

True to the work of
Yah Veh Elohim —
Adonay — Eternal I AM —
Creator — Judge.

True to the mission of
Yah Shua Messiah
— Adonay — Eternal I AM
— Creator — Saviour.

exeGeses

parallel BIBLE

a literal translation and transliteration of Scripture

True to the ministry
of the Holy Spirit —
Indwelling Paraclete —
Endower of Spirituals —
Birther of Eternal Life.

True to the enduements
of the Holy Spirit
— Ministries of Service
— Energies of Dynamis
— Attributes of Charismata.

This
exeGeses
is the
Peculiar Possession
of

Presented

this _____ day
of the _____ month
in the _____ year

of our
Adonay Yah Shua Messiah;

On the occasion of

by

OUR STATEMENT OF TRUST:

We trust in the Deity of
Yah Veh the Creator,
Adonay Yah Shua Messiah the Redeemer,
Holy Spirit the Enduer,
and the infallibility of Scripture.

OUR PURPOSE:

To prepare and publish a
Literal Translation and Transliteration of Scripture
in as many tongues
as the days of the years of our lives allow.

OUR LEGAL STATUS:

The term, a nonprofit religious corporation,
is the legal status approved by the State of California
and confirmed by the United States of America.

THIS LEGAL STATUS

allows you to endow the ministry
with your offerings and bequests,
and deduct them from your taxable income
as prescribed by law.

We invite your support with halal to Yah Veh.

Our 800 Telephone Number is:
9 BIBLE 9

exeGeses

a non profit religious corporation
POBox 1776 • Orange CA • 92668

exeGeses

parallel BIBLE

exeGeses, the literal translation and transliteration of Scripture,
published in three editions:

1. exeGESes ready research BIBLE:

The Authorized King James Version transformed into a literal translation and transliteration, with myriads of exeges at the point of occurrence.

All exeges are defined in the Lexicon and coded to Strong's Concordance.

2. exeGESes companion BIBLE:

Presents the essence of the *exeGESes ready research BIBLE*, written with awe and reverence in the classic contemporary language of today, closely following the active tense of the Hebrew manuscripts.

3. exeGESes parallel BIBLE is two Bibles in one:

exeGESes ready research BIBLE in the left column,

exeGESes companion BIBLE in the right column.

Now you may read for research, and read for inspiration —
ever knowing that you have a literal translation and transliteration of Scripture at hand.

exeGESes may be freely used and reproduced in part
in the furtherance of the Evangelism of Elohim,
provided that acknowledgement be given to exeGeses.

The First Edition,
The AUTHORIZED KING JAMES VERSION of 1611 in exeGeses,
© 1992 by Herb Jahn, Exegete.

The Second Edition,
exeGeses ready research BIBLE,
© 1993 by Herb Jahn, Exegete.

The Third Edition,
exeGeses companion BIBLE,
© 1994 by Herb Jahn, Exegete.

This Fourth Edition,
exeGeses parallel BIBLE,
© 1994 by Herb Jahn, Exegete.

Library of Congress Catalog Number 94—075789
Printed in the United States of America.

Our 800 Telephone Number: 9 BIBLE 9

exeGeses

a non profit religious corporation
POBox 1776 • Orange CA • 92668

Acknowledgement

*Thank you, Dawn,
for your
encouragement, endurance,
and
editorial excellence.*

exeGeses

vi

a nonprofit religious corporation

POBox 1776 • Orange CA • 92668

In order to straight-cut what Scripture teaches,
it is necessary to know what Scripture says.

Welcome, Dear Friend,

To the *exeGESes parallel BIBLE* — a blessed new experience in Scripture understanding.

In the year 1975, when I entrusted my whole being to Adonay, He instructed me to give up my profession and to hearken to His leading.

Adonay then led me directly to His Word, the Scripture. Even though I had thought of myself as a theologian, I was soon aware of how much I did not know.

Adonay brought this to my attention when I began to diligently search the Scripture to understand the literal meanings of **spirit** and **soul**, and their distinguishing differences. I soon discovered that most versions translated **nephesh**, the Hebrew word for **soul**, into more than forty different words. Then I discovered that **pneuma**, the Hellenic word for **spirit** was consistently translated **spirit** or **ghost** with one glaring exception; and that one exception, *John Yahn* 3:8, is a serious mistranslation.

Now those are just two words. What would I discover if I researched every Hebrew, Aramaic, and Hellenic word of Scripture — more than 14,000 words? And how would I be able to share this knowledge with the world?

Why not take the most revered Version, and insert these exegesese right within the Scripture passage?

That was it! — the Authorized King James Version with its inspiration, and the exegesese with their expositions. And thus began the most blessed ten years of my life; and the First Edition, The Authorized King James Version of 1611 in exeGesese was birthed.

And in less than one year, Bible Colleges are using it as a text; Messianic Congregations are using it to witness of the Messiah; and the First Edition was exhausted.

And after another year of proofing and editing, the *exeGESes ready research BIBLE*, also based on the Authorized King James Version was introduced.

And thus the *exeGESes ready research BIBLE* fills the need of all who, as I, hold the Authorized King James Version in highest regard.

But there was yet no literal translation and transliteration of the Scripture in the language of today. So we applied all the research gained from the ten years invested in the first two editions, and translated and transliterated the Scripture in, what I prefer to call, Classic Contemporary English.

And so the *exeGESes companion BIBLE* was birthed.

And with the advent of computers, even I in my prime of life, was able to "cut and paste " a few thousand pages from the *exeGESes ready research BIBLE* and the *exeGESes companion BIBLE* and produce this *exeGESes parallel BIBLE*.

So this is our purpose — that you hold in your hand, and read the Authorized King James Version exactly as first published — and at the very same moment, and without any further research, have the *exeGESes* at your fingertips.

Let's take a step by step journey so that you may better see for yourself all that the *exeGESes* affords you — how the *exeGESes* will enrich your spiritual life, enlighten your spiritual understanding, and deepen your knowledge of Scripture.

SCRIPTURE is the word of Elohim inscribed to humanity. Scripture (singular) consists of 66 volumes of Scriptures (plural).

The Old Covenant was originally inscribed on scrolls in Hebraic, and Aramaic (also known as Chaldean). The New Covenant was inscribed on scrolls in Hebraic, Aramaic, and Hellenic (also known as Bible Greek).

MANUSCRIPT DISTINCTIONS

All the oldest manuscript copies of both covenants consisted exclusively of **CAPITAL LETTERS** with no **lower case letters**. The Old Covenant manuscripts consisted of consonants only. Vowels were added by a points system in the Masoretic text between the second and fifteenth centuries Anno Domini.

The *exeGesēs ready research BIBLE* in the left column follows the tenses of the Authorized King James Version.

However, the Old Covenant was written primarily in the present active tenses. The *exeGesēs companion BIBLE* in the right column retains this present active tense, and brings to life a new experience of personal involvement in the reading.

Whereas the SEPTUAGINT VERSION Hellenized the Old Covenant, the *exeGesēs companion BIBLE* Hebraizes the awe and majesty that was originally in the New Covenant before it was Hellenized.

The language of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah was Aramaic and Hebrew. And so all his Old Covenant quotations must be accurately translated from the Hebrew. Whenever Yah Veh spoke to the Apostle Paulos, it was in the Hebrew language. Most often, when Adonay Yah Shua Messiah did a sign, his recorded language was in Hebrew or Aramaic. Even some of his final words on the stake are recorded in Hebrew.

DEFINITIONS:

exegesēs *plural noun* — the expository critiques of Scripture.

ready *adjective* — expert; fitted for immediate use; prepared.

research *adjective* — pertaining to exhaustive investigation; studious inquiry.

companion *noun* — literally, to co—bread, as in communion; that which co—partakes.

parallel *noun* — lying evenly, side by side: thus this *exeGesēs parallel BIBLE* presents the *exeGesēs ready research BIBLE* and the *exeGesēs companion BIBLE* side by side.

BIBLE *noun* — Book; when capitalized, refers to the Scripture.

literal *adjective* — according to the letter; precise, exact.

All of the exegesēs have been thoroughly researched and then translated and/or transliterated as literally as possible.

translation *noun* — the rendering of a **word** from one language to another.

Through the years some words have taken on different meanings. In 1611, **charity** meant **love**; whereas today it means **alms**. Read 1 Corinthians 13:1. Also, many different manuscriptal words have been translated to the same English word. For example: Where the Authorized Version does not distinguish between the Hellenic verbs **agapao** (love) and **phileo** (befriend), the *EXEGESSES* does. Read *John Yahn* 21:15–17.

transliteration *noun* — the rendering of an **alphabet** from one language to another.

Hundreds of words, which in most Versions have been **translated**, are now **transliterated** in the *EXEGESSES*. To mention just a few – **amen**, **apostolize**, **charism**, **charisma**, **Diabolos**, **eucharist**, **Gay Hinnom**, **goyim**, **hades**, **Halalu Yah**, **hanukkah**, **hubris**, **menorah**, **metamorphose**, **parousia**, **shabbath**, **shalom**, **sheol**, **tartarus**, **torah** – all these and more are clearly explicated in the LEXICON.

TRANSLITERATION of NAMES:

TRANSLITERATION is of even more importance when dealing with **names** because of their rich meanings.

Elohim the Father first revealed his **name** to Mosheh as **HYH** – the eternal I AM. Elohim the Son also revealed himself as the eternal I AM. Read Exodus 3:13,14, *John Yahn* 4:26, 8:58.

The inscribers revealed his **name** as **YHVH** – sequentially as early as Genesis 2:4, and chronologically as early as *Job Iyob* 1:6.

The *EXEGESSES* presents his **name** vowel pointed as **Yah Veh**.

Most Versions often render the **name Yah Veh** incorrectly with the **title LORD** – all capital letters. This is a caving in to the traditions of certain Hebrews who said his **name** was too holy to pronounce. It is more likely that the ancient Hebrews feared the extreme consequences of dishonoring the **name Yah Veh**. For the Hebrews used the **name Yah Veh** to covenant, and whenever the covenant was broken, serious consequences followed. Read Leviticus 19:12. However, they do transliterate his **name** in very few verses. See Exodus 6:3, Psalm 83:18, *Isaiah Yesha Yah* 12:2, 28:4; also see Genesis 22:14, Exodus 17:15, Judges 6:24, Psalm 23:1 for **compound names**.

In most Versions, the **name Yah Veh** is also mistranslated with the **title Lord** throughout the New Covenant. One reason is because the Hellene has no equivalent word for **Yah Veh** – and uses *Kurios* throughout.

However there is a clue in the Hellene to distinguish the **name LORD Yah Veh** from the **title Lord Adonay**. In almost* every instance where the **title Lord Adonay** is meant, *Lord Adonay* is preceded by the article **the**, or the possessive pronouns **me** or **my**. In almost* every instance where the **name LORD Yah Veh** is meant, the article or pronouns are absent. Also, the context may indicate whether *Lord Adonay* or *LORD Yah Veh* is meant. You may confirm this by reading the margins of the Scofield Reference Edition of 1917.

*We say **almost** because of variant manuscripts.

The Hebrew transliteration of the **name** of our *Lord Adonay* is **Yah Shua**.

The LEXICON defines **Yah Shua** as **Yah Saves**. With this research, we can now understand the full import of the following verse, which the EXEGESES presents thus:

And she births a son;
and calls his name Yah Shua,
for he saves his people from their sins. *Matthew Matthaios* 1:21

Transliteration is also of utmost importance in the name **Yah Hudah**, his people who are called by His name. Read Genesis 29:35, together with 2 Chronicles 7:14. Also see the SUMMARY of YAH HUDAH in the LEXICON.

TRANSLATION and TRANSLITERATION of TITLES:

The EXEGESES distinguishes between the different Hebrew and Aramaic words usually translated **God – El, Eli, Elah, Elohim**; as well as the different words usually translated **Lord – adon, adoni, Adonay**.

The EXEGESES transliterates accurately from the Hebrew the **title** of **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**. All Messianists will find confirmation of their hope in this EXEGESES.

LEXICON:

You will particularly appreciate the LEXICON beginning on page 1866. All the EXEGESES are verifiable by the expository critiques in the LEXICON, and by Strong's Exhaustive Concordance.

The LEXICON thoroughly explains the importance of the word **word** – and why it is used in both verbal and nounal forms.

The SUMMARIES give you a thorough digest of certain subjects and roots of words.

Now you can easily satisfy your desire for deeper research – for every word in the LEXICON is number coded to Strong's Exhaustive Concordance. This is especially helpful because more and more of the old reliable research materials are being republished, also number coded to Strong's Exhaustive Concordance.

My petition is that Adonay Yah Shua Messiah be pleased to place His seal on the work of my life by spiritually enriching the work of your life.

In the name of Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,

Herb Jahn, Exegete

I invite all exegetes to critique this *EXEGESES parallel BIBLE* in the hope that future editions may be less imperfect.

Recommended Materials for In-Depth Research of Scripture

1. This **exeGes** *parallel BIBLE* unites, under one cover, two most accurate literal translations and transliterations — the **exeGes** *ready research BIBLE* and the **exeGes** *companion BIBLE*. With these **exeGes** you can accurately research every word of Scripture.

2. **Strong's Exhaustive Concordance, Complete and Unabridged**: this masterpiece is the layperson's key to unlocking the meaning of every word of Scripture. Published by World Bible Publishers.

In order to understand the format of Strong's Exhaustive Concordance, it is of utmost importance to read the General Preface in the front, plus the PLAN OF THE BOOK preceding the Dictionary of the Words in the Hebrew Bible, and preceding the Dictionary of the Words in the Greek Testament in the back of Strong's Exhaustive Concordance. Only then will one be able to distinguish between definitions and renderings.

Beware of some editions which omit important sections of the Concordance.

The following books render in-depth research beyond the scope of Strong's Exhaustive Concordance:

3. **Gesenius' Hebrew-Chaldee Lexicon to the Old Testament**: a dictionary numerically coded to Strong's Exhaustive Concordance with an exhaustive English index.

4. **Thayer's Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament**: a dictionary numerically coded to Strong's Exhaustive Concordance.

5. **Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament**: compiled by Harris, Archer, and Waltke: a two volume work which presents the Hebrew and Aramaic words by their root families, and distinguishes parts of speech. In the recommended edition, the Index lists the Strong's Exhaustive Concordance number followed by the Theological Wordbook number which directs one to the root word.

6. **Vine's Expository Dictionary of Biblical Words**: coded to Strong's Exhaustive Concordance; while the Old Testament section is incomplete, the New Testament section lists the words by their roots, in their most common King James usage, and also lists the parts of speech. The Strong's Exhaustive Concordance code number follows the Greek (Hellenic) spelling. Published by World Bible Publishers.

7. **The Englishman's Hebrew and Chaldee Concordance of the Old Testament**: by George V. Wigram; numerically coded to Strong's Exhaustive Concordance. The words are listed approximately in the numbering sequence of Strong's Exhaustive Concordance. Following this, every King James rendering of the word is italicized and presented in Scripture sequence.

8. **The Englishman's Greek Concordance of the New Testament**: by George V. Wigram; numerically coded to Strong's Exhaustive Concordance. The words are listed approximately in the numbering sequence of Strong's Exhaustive Concordance. Following this, every King James rendering of the word is italicized and presented in Scripture sequence.

The preceding books are old standards, painstakingly prepared by patient men. Only the most recent editions have been republished coded to Strong's Exhaustive Concordance.

9. **The Treasury of Scripture Knowledge**: a precious book of 500,000 Scripture References and Parallel Passages. With this book, simply select any verse or phrase of Scripture you wish to research, and it lists definitions, explanations, and related verses. This book is ancient and virtually unknown. This book is a light that illuminates in the darkest of darkness. Published by World Bible Publishers.

There they are — nine books — the wealth of thousands of years of research, which one may purchase with minimal sacrifice — the combined knowledge of which will add hundreds of years of research to your life.

What you do with this knowledge is your responsibility — your opportunity.

exeGesese

parallel BIBLE

CDRom Table of Contents

VOLUME ONE	TORAH	NACHUM NAHUM	1397
GENESIS	12	HABAKKUK	1400
EXODUS	97	SEPHAN YAH ZEPHANIAH	1404
LEVITICUS	171	HAGGAY HAGGAI	1408
NUMBERS	225	ZECHAR YAH ZECHARIAH	1411
DEUTERONOMY	301	MALACHI	1426
VOLUME TWO	HISTORY	VOLUME FIVE	EVANGELISMS
YAH SHUA JOSHUA	364	YAHN JOHN *	1430
JUDGES	410	MATTHAIOS MATTHEW	1474
1 SHEMU EL SAMUEL	454	MARKOS MARK	1531
2 SHEMU EL SAMUEL	511	LOUKAS LUKE	1567
1 SOVEREIGNS KINGS	559	ACTS	1627
2 SOVEREIGNS KINGS	616	VOLUME SIX	EPISTLES
1 CHRONICLES	670	ROMANS	1688
2 CHRONICLES	722	1 CORINTHIANS	1712
EZRA	784	2 CORINTHIANS	1735
NECHEM YAH NEHEMIAH	803	GALATIANS	1750
VOLUME THREE	POETRY	EPHESIANS	1758
RUTH *	829	PHILIPPIANS	1766
ESTER ESTHER	835	COLOSSIANS	1772
IYOB JOB	850	1 THESSALONIKEUS THESSALONIANS	1778
PSALMS	891	2 THESSALONIKEUS THESSALONIANS	1783
PROVERBS	998	1 TIMO THEOS TIMOTHY	1786
THE CONGREGATIONER ECCLESIASTES	1034	2 TIMO THEOS TIMOTHY	1793
SONG OF SHELOMOH SOLOMON	1046	TITUS	1798
LAMENTATIONS	1053	PHILEMON	1801
VOLUME FOUR	PROPHETS	HEBREWS	1803
YESHA YAH ISAIAH	1061	YAAQOVOS JAMES	1821
YIRME YAH JEREMIAH	1145	1 PETROS PETER	1827
YECHYZQ EL EZEKIEL	1243	2 PETROS PETER	1834
DANI EL DANIEL	1330	YAH HUDAH JUDE	1839
HOSHEA HOSEA	1358	1 YAHN JOHN *	1841
YAH EL JOEL	1370	2 YAHN JOHN *	1847
AMOS	1375	3 YAHN JOHN *	1848
OBAD YAH OBADIAH	1385	APOCALYPSE REVELATION *	1849
YONAH JONAH	1387	VOLUME SEVEN	
MICAH MICAH	1390	LEXICON	1878

* **exeGesese** allots Scripture into Six Subject Headings.

Therefore the **POEMS** of **RUTH** and **LAMENTATIONS** are transplaced to **POETRY**.

And as **YAHN** is the Genesis of the New Covenant, it precedes the synoptic evangelisms. Thus also **LOUKAS** and **ACTS** appear in their proper sequence. The New Covenant then concludes with the **EPISTLES** and the **APOCALYPSE** of **YAHN**.

Memorizing these Subject Headings gives you an overview of the format of Scripture.

***exeGes* parallel BIBLE**
 — two Bibles in parallel columns:

LEFT COLUMN:

exeGes ready research BIBLE.

FORMAT:

The King James text is in regular type.

The text under exegeses is in oblique type.

The text of the exegeses is in bold type.

CREATION

1 In the beginning
 God **Elohim** created the *heaven* **heavens** and the earth.
 2 And the earth *was without form* **being waste**, and void;
 and darkness was upn the face of the *deep* **abyss**.
 And the Spirit of God **Elohim**
moved **brooded** upon the face of the waters.

RIGHT COLUMN:

exeGes companion BIBLE.

FORMAT:

The text is predominantly in regular type.

The *exeGes* companion BIBLE more accurately follows the present active tense wherever the manuscripts so indicate.

CREATION

1 In the beginning
 Elohim creates the heavens and the earth
 2 — the earth being waste and void
 with darkness upon the face of the abyss:
 and the Spirit of Elohim
 broods on the face of the waters.

GENESIS 1

exeGesces ready research BIBLE

1 In the beginning
God **Elohim** created the *heaven* **heavens** and the earth.
2 And the earth *was without form* **being waste**, and void;
and darkness was upon the face of the *deep* **abyss**.
And the Spirit of God **Elohim**
moved **brooded** upon the face of the waters.

3 And God **Elohim** said,
Let there be light:
and there *was* **became** light.
4 And God **Elohim** saw the light, that it was good:
and God *divided* **Elohim separated**
between the light *from* **and between** the darkness.
5 And God **Elohim** called the light Day,
and the darkness he called Night.
And the evening and the morning
were **became** the first day.

6 And God **Elohim** said,
Let there be a *firmament* **an expanse**
in the midst of the waters,
and let it *divide* **separate** the waters from the waters.
7 And God *made* **Elohim worked** the *firmament* **expanse**,
and *divided* **separated** the waters
which were under the *firmament* **expanse**
from the waters
which were above the *firmament* **expanse**:
and *it was so* **thus it became**.
8 And God **Elohim** called the *firmament* **expanse**
Heaven **Heavens**.
And the evening and the morning
were **became** the second day.

9 And God **Elohim** said,
Let the waters under the *heaven* **heavens**
be gathered together **congregate** unto one place,
and let the dry *land* **appear** **be seen**:
and *it was so* **thus it became**.
10 And God **Elohim** called the dry *land* Earth;
and the *gathering together* **congregating** of the waters
called he Seas:
and God **Elohim** saw that it was good.
11 And God **Elohim** said,
Let the earth *bring forth* grass **sprout sprouts**,
the herb *yielding* **seeding** seed,
and the fruit tree *yielding* **working** fruit
after his kind **in species**,
whose seed is in itself, upon the earth:
and *it was so* **thus it became**.
12 And the earth *brought forth* grass **sprouted herbs**,
and herb *yielding* **seeding** seed *after his kind* **in species**,
and the tree *yielding* **working** fruit,
whose seed was in itself, *after his kind* **in species**:
and God **Elohim** saw that it was good.
13 And the evening and the morning
were **became** the third day.

14 And God **Elohim** said,
Let there be lights
in the *firmament* **expanse** of the *heaven* **heavens**
to *divide* **separate** **between** the day
from **and between** the night;
and let them be for signs, and for seasons,
and for days, and years:
15 And let them be for lights
in the *firmament* **expanse** of the *heaven* **heavens**
to *give light upon* **light up** the earth:
and *it was so* **thus it became**.
16 And God *made* **Elohim worked** two great lights;
the greater light *to rule* **for the reign of** the day,
and the lesser light *to rule* **for the reign of** the night:
he made the stars also.
17 And God *set* **Elohim gave** them
in the *firmament* **expanse** of the *heaven* **heavens**
to *give light upon* **light up** the earth,
18 And *to rule* **reign** over the day and over the night,
and *to divide* **separate** **between** the light
from **and between** the darkness:

CREATION

DAY ONE

DAY TWO

DAY THREE

DAY FOUR

GENESIS 1

exeGesces companion BIBLE

1 In the beginning
Elohim creates the heavens and the earth
— the earth being waste and void
with darkness upon the face of the abyss:
and the Spirit of Elohim
broods on the face of the waters.

3 And Elohim says, Light, be!
— and light becomes.

4 And Elohim sees the light *is* good:
and Elohim separates
between the light and between the darkness:
and Elohim calls the light Day
and he calls the darkness Night:
and evening becomes and morning becomes
day first.

6 And Elohim says,
Expanse, be midst the waters
— to separate the waters from the waters!

7 And Elohim works the expanse
and separates the waters under the expanse
from the waters above the expanse
— and so be it:
8 and Elohim calls the expanse, Heavens:
and evening becomes and morning becomes
day two.

9 And Elohim says,
Waters under the heavens,
congregate unto one place!
And dry, be seen!
— and so be it.

10 And Elohim calls the dry, Earth;
and he calls the congregating of the waters, Seas:
and Elohim sees *it is* good.

11 And Elohim says, Earth, sprout sprouts!
— the herb seeding seed
and the fruit tree working fruit in species,
self—seeded, on the earth!
— and so be it.

12 And the earth sprouts herbs
and the herb seeds seed in species
and the tree works self—seeding fruit in species:
and Elohim sees *it is* good:
13 and evening becomes and morning becomes
day three.

14 And Elohim says,
Lights, be in the expanse of the heavens!
— to separate
between the day and between the night;
and for signs and for seasons
and for days and years:
15 and be for lights in the expanse of the heavens
to light up the earth:
— and so be it.

16 And Elohim works two great lights:
the greater light for the reign of the day
and the lesser light for the reign of the night;
and the stars:
and Elohim
gives them in the expanse of the heavens
to light up the earth;
17 and to reign over the day and over the night;
and to separate
between the light and between the darkness;

CREATION

DAY ONE

DAY TWO

DAY THREE

DAY FOUR

GENESIS 1, 2

exeGesces ready research BIBLE

19 and God **Elohim** saw that it was good.
And the evening and the morning
were **became** the fourth day.

20 And God **Elohim** said,
Let the waters *bring forth abundantly* **teem**
the moving creature **with teemers**
that *hath life* **have a living soul**,
and fowl **flyers** that may fly above the earth
in the open firmament **upon the face of the expanse**
of heaven **the heavens**.

21 And God **Elohim** created great **whales monsters**,
and every living creature **soul** that *moveth* **creepeth**,
which the waters *brought forth abundantly* **teemed**,
after their kind **in species**,
and every winged fowl *after his kind* **flyer in species**:
and God **Elohim** saw that it was good.

22 And God **Elohim** blessed them, saying,
Be fruitful **Bear fruit**, and *multiply* **abound**,
and fill the waters in the seas,
and let fowl *multiply* **flyers abound** in the earth.

23 And the evening and the morning
were **became** the fifth day.

DAY FIVE

24 And God **Elohim** said,
Let the earth bring forth the living creature **soul**
after his kind **in species**,
cattle **animals**, and *creeping thing* **creepers**,
and *beast of* **live beings on** the earth
after his kind **in species**:
and it was so **thus it became**.

25 And God *made* **Elohim worked**
the *beast of* **live beings on** the earth *after his kind* **in species**,
and *cattle* **after their kind** **animals in species**,
and every thing that *creepeth* **creeper** upon the earth **soil**
after his kind **in species**:
and God **Elohim** saw that it was good.

26 And God **Elohim** said,
Let us *make* **man work Adam** in our image,
after our likeness:
and let them *have dominion* **subjugate**
over the fish of the sea,
and over the fowl **flyers** of the **air heavens**,
and over the *cattle* **animals**, and over all the earth,
and over every *creeping thing* **creeper**
that creepeth upon the earth.

27 So God **Elohim** created *man* **Adam** in his *own* image,
in the image of God **Elohim** created he him;
male and female created he them.

28 And God **Elohim** blessed them,
and God **Elohim** said unto them,
Be fruitful **Bear fruit**, and *multiply* **abound**,
and *replenish* **fill** the earth, and subdue it:
and *have dominion* **subjugate** over the fish of the sea,
and over the fowl **flyers** of the **air heavens**,
and over every *living thing* **live being**
that *moveth* **creepeth** upon the earth.

29 And God **Elohim** said, Behold,
I have given you every herb *bearing* **seeding** seed,
which is upon the face of all the earth, and every tree,
in the which is the fruit of a tree *yielding* **seeding** seed;
to you it shall be for **meat food**.

30 And to every *beast* **live being** of the earth,
and to every fowl **flyer** of the **air heavens**,
and to every thing that *creepeth* **creeper** upon the earth,
wherein there is *life* **a living soul**,
I have given — every green herb for **meat food**:
and it was so **thus it became**.

31 And God **Elohim**
saw every thing **all** that he had *made* **worked**,
and, behold, it was very **mighty** good.
And the evening and the morning
were **became** the sixth day.

DAY SIX

2 Thus the heavens and the earth were finished,
and all the host of them.

DAY SEVEN

2 And on the seventh day

GENESIS 1, 2

exeGesces companion BIBLE

19 and Elohim sees *it is* good:
— and so be it,
and evening becomes and morning becomes
day four.

20 And Elohim says,
Waters, teem with teemers having a living soul!
And flyers, fly above the earth
on the face of the expanse of the heavens!

21 And Elohim creates great monsters;
and every living soul that creeps
which the waters teem in species;
and every winged flyer in species:
and Elohim sees *it is* good.

22 And Elohim blesses them, saying,
Bear fruit and abound
and fill the waters in the seas
and abound flyers in the earth:
and evening becomes and morning becomes
day five.

DAY FIVE

24 And Elohim says,
Earth, bring forth the living soul in species
— animals and creepers
and live beings on the earth in species:
— and so be it.

25 And Elohim
works live beings on the earth in species
and animals in species
and every creeper on the soil in species:
and Elohim sees *it is* good.

26 And Elohim says,
We work Adam in our image, after our likeness!
— to subjugate over the fish of the sea
and over the flyers of the heavens
and over the animals and over all the earth
and over every creeper creeping on the earth.

27 And Elohim creates Adam in his image;
he creates him in the image of Elohim;
he creates them male and female.

DAY SIX

28 And Elohim blesses them
and Elohim says unto them, Bear fruit;
and abound and fill the earth and subdue:
and subjugate over the fish of the sea
and over the flyers of the heavens
and over every live being creeping on the earth.

29 And Elohim says, Behold,
I give you every herb *seeding* seed
on the face of all the earth;
and every tree
wherein *is* the fruit of a tree *seeding* seed;
to be food to you
and to every live being of the earth
and to every flyer of the heavens
and to every creeper on the earth
wherein there *is* a living soul
— every green herb for food:
— and so be it.

31 And Elohim sees all he worked
and behold *it is* mighty good:
— and so be it
evening becomes and morning becomes
day six.

2 And the heavens and the earth
and all their host *are* finished.

2 And by the seventh day

DAY SEVEN

GENESIS 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

God ended **Elohim finished** his work
which he had *made worked*;
and he *rested shabbathized* on the seventh day
from all his work which he had *made worked*.
3 And God **Elohim** blessed the seventh day,
and *sanctified hallowed* it:
because that in it
he had *rested shabbathized* from all his work
which God **Elohim** created and *made worked*.

RESUME' OF CREATION

4 These are the generations
of the heavens and of the earth
when they were created,
in the day that *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*
made worked the earth and the heavens,
5 And every *plant shrub* of the field
before it was in the earth,
and every herb of the field before it *grew sprouted*:
for *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*
had not caused it to rain upon the earth,
and there was *not a man no Adam*
to *till serve* the *ground soil*.
6 But there *went up ascended* a mist from the earth,
and *watered moistened* the whole face of the *ground soil*.
7 And *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*
formed *man Adam* of the dust of the *ground soil*,
and *breathed puffed* into his nostrils the breath of life;
and *man Adam* became a living soul.

THE GARDEN OF EDEN

8 And *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*
planted a garden eastward in Eden;
and there he put *the man Adam* whom he had formed.
9 And out of the *ground soil*
made the LORD God to grow Yah Veh Elohim sprouted
every tree that is *pleasant to the sight desirable in visage*,
and good for food;
the tree of life also in the midst of the garden,
and the tree of knowledge of good and evil.

FOUR RIVERS

10 And a river went out of Eden
to *water moisten* the garden;
and from thence it was *parted separated*,
and became into four heads.
11 The name of the first is *Pison Pishon*:
that is it which *compasseth surroundeth*
the *whole* land of Havilah,
where there is gold;
And the gold of that land is good:
there is bdellium and the onyx stone.
12 And the name of the second river is *Gihon Gichon*:
the same is it that *compasseth surroundeth*
the *whole* land of *Ethiopia Kush*.
13 And the name of the third river is *Hiddeke/ Hiddeqel*:
that is it which goeth toward the east of *Assyria Ashshur*.
And the fourth river is Euphrates.
14 And *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*
took *the man Adam*,
and put him into the garden of Eden
to *dress serve* it and to *keep guard* it.
15 And *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*
commanded the man misvahed Adam, saying,
Of every tree of the garden
in eating, thou mayest *freely* eat:
16 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil,
thou shalt not eat of it:
for in the day that thou eatest thereof
in dying, thou shalt *surely* die.
17 And *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* said,
It is not good that *the man Adam* should be alone;
I *will make shall work* him an help meet for him.
18 And out of the *ground soil*
the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim
formed every *beast live being* of the field,
and every *fowl flyer* of the *air heavens*;
and brought *them* unto Adam
to see what he *would should* call them:
and whatsoever Adam called every living *creature soul*,
that was the name thereof.

GENESIS 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Elohim finishes the work he worked;
and on the seventh day
he shabbathizes from all the work he worked:
3 and Elohim blesses the seventh day and hallows it:
because Elohim shabbathizes therein
from all the work he created and worked.

RESUME' OF CREATION

4 These *are* the generations
of creating the heavens and of the earth
in the day Yah Veh Elohim
worked the earth and the heavens;
5 and no shrub of the field is yet in the earth
and no herb of the field sprouts:
for Yah Veh Elohim had not yet rained on the earth
and with no Adam to serve the soil.
6 And a mist ascends from the earth
and moistens the whole face of the soil:
7 and Yah Veh Elohim
forms Adam of the dust of the soil
and puffs into his nostrils the breath of life;
and Adam becomes a living soul.

THE GARDEN OF EDEN

8 And Yah Veh Elohim
plants a garden eastward in Eden;
and there he puts Adam whom he formed:
9 and from the soil
Yah Veh Elohim sprouts every tree
desirable in visage and good for food;
and the tree of life midst the garden
with the tree of knowledge of good and evil.

FOUR RIVERS

10 And a river goes from Eden to moisten the garden;
and separates from there and becomes four heads.
11 The name of the first, Pishon:
surrounding the land of Havilah where there *is* gold;
12 and the gold of that land *is* good:
there *is* bdellium and the onyx stone.
13 And the name of the second river, Gichon:
surrounding the land of Kush.
14 And the name of the third river, Hiddeqel:
going east of Ashshur.
And the fourth river, Euphrates.
15 And Yah Veh Elohim takes Adam
and puts him into the garden of Eden
to serve it and to guard it:
16 and Yah Veh Elohim misvahs Adam, saying,
Of every tree of the garden,
in eating, eat:
17 and of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil,
eat not:
for in the day you eat thereof,
in dying, you die.
18 And Yah Veh Elohim says,
Not good — Adam being alone;
I work a helper for him.
19 And from the soil
Yah Veh Elohim forms every live being of the field
and every flyer of the heavens;
and brings to Adam to see what he calls them:
and whatever Adam calls every living soul,
is its name.

GENESIS 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

20 And Adam gave called names to all *cattle* animals,
and to the *fowl* flyers of the *air* heavens,
and to every *beast* live being of the field;
but for Adam there was not found an help meet for him.

21 And the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim
caused a deep sound sleep to fall upon Adam,
and he slept:
and he took one of his ribs,
and closed up shut the flesh instead underneath thereof;

22 And the rib,
which the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim had taken
from man Adam,
made builded he a woman,
and brought her unto the man Adam.

23 And Adam said,
This is now at this time bone of my bones,
and flesh of my flesh:
she this shall be called Woman,
because she was taken out of Man.

24 Therefore Thus shall a man
leave his father and his mother,
and shall cleave adhere unto his wife woman:
and they shall be one flesh.

25 And they the two were both naked,
the man Adam and his wife woman,
and were not ashamed.

FALL OF HUMANITY

3 Now the serpent was became more subtil
than any *beast* live being of the field
which the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim had made worked.
And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God Elohim said,

2 Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?
And the woman said unto the serpent,
We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden:

3 But of the fruit of the tree
which is in the midst of the garden,
God Elohim hath said, Ye shall not eat of it,
neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die.

4 And the serpent said unto the woman,
In dying, Ye shall not surely die:

5 For God doth know Elohim knoweth
that in the day ye eat thereof,
then your eyes shall be opened,
and ye shall be as gods Elohim, knowing good and evil.

6 And when the woman saw
that the tree was good for food,
and that it was pleasant desirable to the eyes,
and a tree to be desired to make one wise comprehend,
she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat,
and gave also unto her husband man with her;
and he did eat.

7 And the eyes of them both the two were opened,
and they knew that they were naked;
and they sewed fig leaves together,
and made worked themselves aprons girdles.

8 And they heard the voice
of the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim
walking in the garden in the cool wind of the day:
and Adam and his wife woman hid themselves
from the presence face of the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim
amongst the trees of the garden.

9 And the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim called unto Adam,
and said unto him, Where art thou?

10 And he said, I heard thy voice in the garden,
and I was afraid awed, because I was naked;
and I hid myself.

11 And he said, Who told thee that thou wast naked?
Hast thou eaten of the tree,
whereof I commanded misvahed thee
that thou shouldest not eat?

12 And the man Adam said,
The woman whom thou gavest to be with me,
she gave me of the tree, and I did eat.

13 And the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim
said unto the woman,
What is this that thou hast done worked?

And the woman said,
The serpent beguiled deceived me, and I did eat.

GENESIS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

20 And Adam calls names to all animals
and to the flyers of the heavens
and to every live being of the field;
but for Adam, no helper is found for him.

21 And Yah Veh Elohim fells a sound sleep on Adam;
and he sleeps:

22 and he takes one of his ribs
and shuts the flesh underneath;
and from the rib Yah Veh Elohim takes from Adam,
he builds a woman and brings her to Adam.

23 And Adam says,
This is at this time bone of my bones
and flesh of my flesh:
call this, Woman — for she is taken from Man.

24 Thus a man leaves his father and his mother
and adheres to his woman — being one flesh.

25 And the two are naked
— Adam and his woman, and they shame not.

WOMAN

FALL OF HUMANITY

3 Now the serpent
being more subtil than any live being of the field
Yah Veh Elohim worked,
he says to the woman, Has Elohim truly said,
Eat not of every tree of the garden?

2 And the woman says to the serpent,
We eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden:
3 and of the fruit of the tree midst the garden,
Elohim says,
Neither eat thereof, nor touch, lest you die.

4 And the serpent says to the woman,
In dying, you die not:
5 for Elohim knows that in the day you eat thereof,
then your eyes open
and you, being as Elohim, know good and evil.

6 And the woman sees the tree is good for food
and desirable to the eyes
and a tree to desire to comprehend;
and she takes of the fruit thereof and eats;
and also gives to her man with her; and he eats.

7 And the eyes of the two open
and they know they are naked;
and they sew fig leaves together
and work themselves girdles.

8 And they hear the voice of Yah Veh Elohim
walking in the garden in the wind of the day:
and Adam and his woman hide themselves
from the face of Yah Veh Elohim
among the trees of the garden.

9 And Yah Veh Elohim calls to Adam
and says to him, Where are you?

10 And he says,
I hear your voice in the garden;
and I awe because I am naked;
and I hide myself.

11 And he says, Who told you you are naked?
Ate you of the tree
whereof I misvahed you to not eat?

12 And Adam says, The woman you gave me,
she gave me of the tree and I ate.

13 And Yah Veh Elohim says to the woman,
What is this you worked?

And the woman says,
The serpent deceived me and I ate.

GENESIS 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 And the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** said unto the serpent,
Because thou hast *done* **worked** this,
thou art cursed above all *cattle* **animals**,
and above every *beast* **live being** of the field;
upon thy belly shalt thou go,
and dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life:
15 And I *will* **shall** put enmity
between thee and **between** the woman,
and between thy seed and **between** her seed;
it **he** shall *bruise* **crush** thy head,
and thou shalt *bruise* **crush** his heel.
16 Unto the woman he said,
I will greatly multiply **In abounding, I shall abound**
thy *sorrow* **contortion** and thy conception;
in sorrow **contortion**
thou shalt *bring forth children* **birth sons**;
and thy desire shall be to thy *husband* **man**,
and he shall *rule* **reign** over thee.
17 And unto Adam he said,
Because thou hast hearkened
unto the voice of thy *wife* **woman**,
and hast eaten of the tree,
of which I *commanded* **misvahed** thee,
saying, Thou shalt not eat of it:
cursed is the *ground* **soil** for thy sake;
in *sorrow* **contortion** shalt thou eat of it
all the days of thy life;
18 Thorns also and thistles
shall it *bring forth* **sprout** to thee;
and thou shalt eat the herb of the field;
19 In the sweat of thy *face* **nostrils**
shalt thou eat bread,
till thou return unto the *ground* **soil**;
for out of it wast thou taken:
for dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return.
20 And Adam called his *wife's* **woman's** name
Eve **Havvah**;
because she was the mother of all living.
21 Unto Adam also and to his *wife* **woman**
did the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim**
make **worked** coats of skins,
and *clothed* **enrobed** them.
22 And the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** said,
Behold, *the man* **Adam** is become as one of us,
to know good and evil:
and now, lest he *put forth* **spread** his hand,
and take also of the tree of life, and eat,
and live *for ever*: **eternally** —
23 *Therefore the LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim**
sent him forth from the garden of Eden,
to *till* **serve** the *ground* **soil** from whence he was taken.
24 So he *drove out the man* **expelled Adam**;
and he *placed* **tabernacled**
at the east of the garden of Eden *Cherubims* **Cherubim**,
and a flaming sword which turned *every way*,
to *keep* **guard** the way of the tree of life.

THE FIRST TWINS

4 And Adam knew *Eve* **Havvah** his *wife* **woman**;
and she conceived, and *bare* **birthed** *Cain* **Qayin**, and said,
I have *gotten* **chatted** a man from *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
2 And she again *bare* **birthed** his brother Abel.
And Abel *was a keeper of sheep* **tended flocks**,
but *Cain* **was a tiller of** **Qayin served** the *ground* **soil**.
3 And *in process of time* **at day's end, so be** it *came to pass*,
that *Cain* **Qayin** brought of the fruit of the *ground* **soil**
an offering unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
4 And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock
and of the fat thereof.
And *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
had respect **looked** unto Abel and to his offering:
5 But unto *Cain* **Qayin** and to his offering
he *had not respect* **looked not**.
And *Cain* **Qayin** was *very wroth* **mightily inflamed**,
and his *countenance* **face** fell.
6 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Cain* **Qayin**,
Why art thou *wroth* **inflamed**?
and why is thy *countenance* **face** fallen?
7 If thou *doest well*—**pleasest**,

GENESIS 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 And Yah Veh Elohim says to the serpent,
Because you worked this,
you *are* cursed above all animals
and above every live being of the field;
on your belly you go
and eat dust all the days of your life:
15 and I put enmity
between you and between the woman
and between your seed and between her seed;
he crushes your head
and you crush his heel.
16 To the woman he says, In abounding,
I abound your contortion and your conception;
in contortion, birth your sons;
and your desire *is* to your man
and he reigns over you.
17 And to Adam he says,
Because you hearkened to the voice of your woman
and ate of the tree, of which I misvahed you,
saying, Eat not thereof;
cursed *is* the soil for your sake:
in contortion, eat thereof all the days of your life;
18 and it sprouts thorns and thistles to you;
and eat the herb of the field:
19 in the sweat of your nostrils, eat your bread,
until you return to the soil;
for thereof you *were* taken:
for dust you *are* and to dust you return.
20 And Adam calls the name of his woman Havvah;
because she *is* the mother of all living.
21 And Yah Veh Elohim works coats of skins
for Adam and to his woman and enrobes them.
22 And Yah Veh Elohim says,
Behold, Adam being as one of us,
knows good and evil:
and now, lest he spread his hand
and also take of the tree of life
and eat and live eternally —
23 Yah Veh Elohim sends him
from the garden of Eden
to serve the soil whence he was taken;
so he expels Adam:
24 and at the east of the garden of Eden
he tabernacles Cherubim
and the flame of the sword
turns to guard the way of the tree of life.

THE FIRST TWINS

4 And Adam knows Havvah his woman;
and she conceives and births Qayin and says,
I chatted a man from Yah Veh.
2 — and she adds to birth his brother Abel:
— and Abel becomes a tender of flocks
and Qayin becomes a server of the soil.
3 And so be it, at the end of days,
Qayin brings an offering of the fruit of the soil
to Yah Veh;
4 and Abel, he also brings of the firstlings of his flock
and of the fat thereof:
and Yah Veh looks to Abel and to his offering;
5 and to Qayin and to his offering he looks not:
and Qayin inflames mightily and his face falls.
6 And Yah Veh says to Qayin,
Why *are* you inflamed?
and why *is* your face fallen?
7 If you well—please,

GENESIS 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

shalt thou not be *accepted* **exalted**?
and if thou *doest not* well—**pleasest not**,
sin *lieth* **croucheth** at the *door* **portal**.
And unto thee shall be his desire,
and thou shalt *rule* **reign** over him.

FIRST SLAUGHTER

8 And *Cain* **Qayin** talked with Abel his brother:
and **so be** it *came to pass*, when they were in the field,
that *Cain* **Qayin** rose up against Abel his brother,
and *slew* **slaughtered** him.

9 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Cain* **Qayin**,
Where is Abel thy brother?
And he said, I know not:
Am I my brother's *keeper* **guardian**?

10 And he said, What hast thou *done* **worked**?
the voice of thy brother's blood
crieth unto me from the *ground* **soil**.

11 And now art thou cursed from the *earth* **soil**,
which hath *opened* **gaped** her mouth
to *receive* **take** thy brother's blood from thy hand;
When thou *tillest* **servest** the *ground* **soil**,
it shall not *henceforth* **again**
yield **give** unto thee her *strength* **force**;
a fugitive and *a vagabond* **to waver and to wander**
shalt thou be in the earth.

13 And *Cain* **Qayin** said unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
My *punishment* **perversity** is greater than I can bear.
Behold, thou hast *driven* **expelled** me *out* this day
from the face of the *earth* **soil**;
and from thy face shall I be hid;
and I shall be
a fugitive and *a vagabond* **to waver and to wander**
in the earth;
and **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
that every one that findeth me shall *slay* **slaughter** me.

15 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto him,
Therefore **Thus** whosoever *slayeth* *Cain* **slaughtereth Qayin**,
vengeance shall be taken on him
he shall be avenged sevenfold.

And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** set a *mark* **sign** upon *Cain* **Qayin**,
lest any finding him should *kill* **smite** him.

16 And *Cain* **Qayin** went out
from the *presence* **face** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *dwelt* **settled** in the land of Nod, on the east of Eden.

17 And *Cain* **Qayin** knew his *wife* **woman**;
and she conceived, and *bare* *Enoch* **birthed Hanoch**:
and he builded a city, and called the name of the city,
after the name of his son, *Enoch* **Hanoch**.

GENEALOGY OF HANOCH

18 And unto *Enoch* **Hanoch** was *born* **birthed** Irad:
and Irad *begat* *Mehujael* **birthed Mechuya El**:
and *Mehujael* *begat* *Methusael*
Mechuya El birthed Methusha El:
and *Methusael* *begat* *Lamech* **Methusha El birthed Lemech**.

19 And *Lamech* **Lemech** took unto him two *wives* **women**:
the name of the one was *Adah*,
and the name of the *other* *Zillah* **second Sillah**.

20 And *Adah* *bare* *Jabal* **birthed Yabal**:
he was the father of such as *dwelt* **settle** in tents,
and of such as *have* *cattle* **chattel**.

21 And his brother's name was *Jubal* **Yubal**:
he was the father of all such
as *handle* **manipulate** the harp and *organ* **woodwinds**.

22 And *Zillah* **Sillah**,
she also *bare* *Tubalcain* **birthed Tubal Qayin**,
an instructor **a sharpener**
of every artificer in *brass* **copper** and iron:
and the sister of *Tubalcain* **Tubal Qayin** was Naamah.

SECOND SLAUGHTER

23 And *Lamech* **Lemech** said unto his *wives* **women**,
Adah and *Zillah* **Sillah**,
Hear my voice; ye *wives* **women** of *Lamech* **Lemech**,
hearken unto my *speech* **sayings**:
for I have *slain* **slaughtered** a man *to* **for** my *wounding* **wound**,
and a *young man* **to** **child** **for** my *hurt* **lash**.

24 If *Cain* **Qayin** shall be avenged sevenfold,
truly *Lamech* **Lemech** seventy and sevenfold.

BIRTH OF SHETH

25 And Adam knew his *wife* **woman** again;

GENESIS 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

are you not exalted?
and if you well—please not,
sin crouches at the portal:
and his desire *is* toward you; and you reign over him.

FIRST SLAUGHTER

8 And Qayin talks with Abel his brother:
and so be it, in the field,
Qayin rises against Abel his brother
and slaughters him.

9 And Yah Veh says to Qayin,
Where *is* Abel your brother?

And he says, I know not!
Am I the guardian of my brother?

10 And he says, What worked you?
The voice of the blood of your brother
cries to me from the soil:
and now you *are* cursed from the soil
— which gapes her mouth
to take the blood of your brother from your hand:
when you serve,
the soil never again gives you her force;
— being a waverer and a wanderer in the earth.

13 And Qayin says to Yah Veh,
My perversity *is* greater than I can bear.
Behold, you expel me this day
from the face of the soil;
and from your face I am hid;
and I become a waverer and wanderer in the earth;
and so be it, every one who finds me slaughters me.

15 And Yah Veh says to him,
Thus whoever slaughters Qayin *is* avenged sevenfold.
— and Yah Veh sets a sign on Qayin,
lest any finding him smite him.

16 And Qayin goes from the face of Yah Veh
and settles in the land of Nod, on the east of Eden:
and Qayin knows his woman;
and she conceives and births Hanoch:
and he builds a city and calls the name of the city
after the name of his son, Hanoch.

GENEALOGY OF HANOCH

18 And Hanoch births Irad:
and Irad births Mechuya El:
and Mechuya El births Methusha El:
and Methusha El births Lemech.

19 And Lemech takes two women:
the name of the one, Adah
and the name of the second, Sillah.
And Adah births Yabal
— the father of such as settle in tents
and of such as chattel.

21 And the name of his brother, Yubal
— the father of all such
as manipulate the harp and woodwinds.
And Sillah, she also births Tubal Qayin
— a sharpener of every artificer in copper and iron:
and the sister of Tubal Qayin, Naamah.

SECOND SLAUGHTER

23 And Lemech says to his women, Adah and Sillah,
Hear my voice, you women of Lemech;
hearken to my sayings:
for I slaughtered a man for my wound
and a child for my lash.

24 If Qayin *is* avenged sevenfold,
truly Lemech seventy—sevenfold.

BIRTH OF SHETH

25 And Adam knows his woman again;

GENESIS 4, 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and she *bare* **birthed** a son, and called his name **Seth Sheth**:
For *God Elohim*, said she,
hath *appointed set* me another seed instead of Abel,
whom *Cain slew* **Qayin slaughtered**.
26 And to **Seth Sheth**,
to him also there was *born* **birthed** a son;
and he called his name Enos:
then began *men to call* **the calling**
upon the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

GENEALOGY OF ADAM

5 This is the *book scroll* of the generations of Adam.
In the day that *God Elohim* created *man Adam*,
in the likeness of *God made Elohim worked* he him;
2 Male and female created he them;
and blessed them, and called their name Adam,
in the day when they were created.
3 And Adam lived an hundred and thirty years,
and *begat a son* **birthed** in his own likeness,
and after his image;
and called his name **Seth Sheth**:
4 And the days of Adam
after he had *begotten Seth* **birthed Sheth**
were eight hundred years:
and he *begat* **birthed** sons and daughters:
5 And all the days that Adam lived
were nine hundred **years** and thirty years: and he died.
6 And **Seth Sheth** lived an hundred **years** and five years,
and *begat* **birthed** Enos:
7 And **Seth Sheth** lived after he *begat* **birthed** Enos
eight hundred **years** and seven years,
and *begat* **birthed** sons and daughters:
8 And all the days of **Seth Sheth**
were nine hundred **years** and twelve years: and he died.
9 And Enos lived ninety years,
and *begat* **Cainan** **birthed Qeyan**:
10 And Enos lived after he *begat* **Cainan** **birthed Qeyan**
eight hundred **years** and fifteen years,
and *begat* **birthed** sons and daughters:
11 And all the days of Enos
were nine hundred **years** and five years: and he died.
12 And **Cainan Qeyan** lived seventy years,
and *begat* **Mahalaleel** **birthed Ma Halal El**:
13 And **Cainan Qeyan** lived
after he *begat* **Mahalaleel** **birthed Ma Halal El**
eight hundred **years** and forty years,
and *begat* **birthed** sons and daughters:
14 And all the days of **Cainan Qeyan**
were nine hundred **years** and ten years: and he died.
15 And **Mahalaleel Ma Halal El**
lived sixty **years** and five years,
and *begat* **Jared** **birthed Yered**:
16 And **Mahalaleel Ma Halal El** lived
after he *begat* **Jared** **birthed Yered**
eight hundred **years** and thirty years,
and *begat* **birthed** sons and daughters:
17 And all the days of **Mahalaleel Ma Halal El**
were eight hundred **years** ninety and five years:
and he died.
18 And **Jared Yered** lived
an hundred sixty **years** and two years,
and he *begat* **Enoch** **birthed Hanoch**:
19 And **Jared Yered** lived after he *begat* **Enoch** **birthed Hanoch**
eight hundred years,
and *begat* **birthed** sons and daughters:
20 And all the days of **Jared Yered**
were nine hundred **years** sixty and two years:
and he died.
21 And **Enoch Hanoch** lived sixty and five years,
and *begat* **Methuselah** **birthed Methusha Lach**:
22 And **Enoch Hanoch** walked with *God Elohim*
after he *begat* **Methuselah** **birthed Methusha Lach**
three hundred years,
and *begat* **birthed** sons and daughters:
23 And all the days of **Enoch Hanoch**
were three hundred **years** sixty and five years:
24 And **Enoch Hanoch** walked with *God Elohim*:
and he was not; for *God Elohim* took him.
25 And **Methuselah Methusha Lach**
lived an hundred **years** eighty and seven years,

GENESIS 4, 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and she births a son and calls his name Sheth:
for Elohim has set me another seed instead of Abel
— whom Qayin slaughtered.
26 And Sheth, he also births a son;
and he calls his name Enos:
then begins the calling on the name of Yah Veh.

GENEALOGY OF ADAM

5 This is the scroll of the generations of Adam:
in the day Elohim created Adam,
in the likeness of Elohim worked he him;
2 male and female created he them;
and blessed them and called their name Adam
in the day they were created.
3 And Adam lives a hundred and thirty years
and births in his own likeness and after his image;
and calls his name Sheth:
4 and the days of Adam after he births Sheth
are eight hundred years:
and he births sons and daughters:
5 — and all the days Adam lives
— nine hundred years and thirty years: and he dies.
6 And Sheth lives a hundred years and five years
and births Enos:
7 and after Sheth births Enos
he lives eight hundred years and seven years
and births sons and daughters:
8 and all the days of Sheth
— nine hundred years and twelve years: and he dies.
9 And Enos lives ninety years and births Qeyan:
10 and after Enos births Qeyan
he lives eight hundred years and fifteen years
and births sons and daughters:
11 — and all the days of Enos
— nine hundred years and five years: and he dies.
12 And Qeyan lives seventy years
and births Ma Halal El:
13 and after Qeyan births Ma Halal El
he lives eight hundred years and forty years
and births sons and daughters:
14 and all the days of Qeyan
— nine hundred years and ten years: and he dies.
15 And Ma Halal El lives
sixty years and five years
and births Yered:
16 and after Ma Halal El births Yered
he lives eight hundred years and thirty years
and births sons and daughters:
17 and all the days of Ma Halal El
— eight hundred years ninety—five years:
and he dies.
18 And Yered lives
a hundred sixty years and two years
and he births Hanoch:
19 and after Yered births Hanoch
he lives eight hundred years
and births sons and daughters:
20 and all the days of Yered
— nine hundred years sixty—two years:
and he dies.
21 And Hanoch lives sixty—five years
and births Methusha Lach:
22 and after he births Methusha Lach
Hanoch walks with Elohim three hundred years
and births sons and daughters:
23 and all the days of Hanoch
— three hundred years sixty—five years:
24 and Hanoch walks with Elohim:
and he is not; for Elohim takes him.
25 And Methusha Lach lives
a hundred years eighty—seven years

GENESIS 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

26 and *begat* **Lamech** **birthed** **Lemech**.
And *Methuselah* **Methusha Lach** lived
after he *begat* **Lamech** **birthed** **Lemech**
seven hundred **years** eighty and two years,
and *begat* **birthed** sons and daughters:
27 And all the days of *Methuselah* **Methusha Lach**
were nine hundred **years** sixty and nine years:
and he died.
28 And *Lamech* **Lemech** lived
an hundred **years** eighty and two years,
and *begat* **birthed** a son:
29 And he called his name *Noah* **Noach**, saying,
This *same* **one** shall *comfort* **sigh over** us
concerning our work and *toil* **scars** of our hands,
because of the *ground* **soil**
which *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh** hath cursed.
30 And *Lamech* **Lemech** lived
after he *begat* **Noah** **birthed** **Noach**
five hundred **years** ninety and five years,
and *begat* **birthed** sons and daughters:
31 And all the days of *Lamech* **Lemech**
were seven hundred **years** seventy and seven years:
and he died.
32 And *Noah* **Noach** was **a son of** five hundred years *old*:
and *Noah* *begat* **Noach** **birthed**
Shem, Ham, and *Japheth* **Yepheth**.
SONS OF ELOHIM TAKE DAUGHTERS OF HUMANITY
6 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when *men* **humanity** began to *multiply* **abound by** **myriads**
on the face of the *earth* **soil**,
and daughters were *born* **birthed** unto them,
2 That the sons of *God* **Elohim**
saw the daughters of *men* **humanity**
that they were *fair* **goodly**;
and they took them *wives* **women**
of all which they chose.
THE SHORTENED LIFE SPAN
3 And *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh** said,
My spirit shall not *always* **strive** **eternally** **plead**
with *man* **humanity**,
for **in his erring inadvertently**, that he *also is* **be** flesh:
yet his days shall be an hundred and twenty years.
THE NEPHILIM
4 There were *giants* **Nephilim** in the earth in those days;
and also *after that* **thus**,
when the sons of *God* **Elohim**
came in unto the daughters of *men* **humanity**,
and they *bare children* **birthed** to them,
the same **became** **mighty men**
which were of *old* **originally**, men of *renown* **name**.
5 And *GOD* **Yah Veh** saw
that the *wickedness* **evil** of *man* **humanity**
was great in the earth,
and that every imagination
of the *thoughts* **fabrications** of his heart
was only evil *continually* **every day**.
6 And it *repented the* **LORD** **Yah Veh** **sighed**
that he had *made man* **worked** **humanity** on the earth,
and it *grieved him* **contorted** at his heart.
7 And *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh** said,
I *will* **destroy man** **shall wipe out** **humanity**
whom I have created
from the face of the *earth* **soil**;
both man, and beast **from human to animal**,
and the *creeping thing* **creeper**,
and the *fowls* **flyers** of the *air* **heavens**;
for it *repenteth me* **I sigh** that I have *made* **worked** them.
8 But *Noah* **Noach** found *grace* **charism**
in the eyes of *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh**.
GENEALOGY OF NOACH
9 These are the generations of *Noah* **Noach**:
Noah **Noach** was a just man
and *perfect* **integrious** in his generations,
and *Noah* **Noach** walked with *God* **Elohim**.
10 And *Noah* *begat* **Noach** **birthed** three sons,
Shem, Ham, and *Japheth* **Yepheth**.
11 The earth also was *corrupt* **ruined**
before God **at the face of** **Elohim**,
and the earth was filled with violence.

GENESIS 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and births Lemech.
26 And after Methusha Lach births Lemech
he lives seven hundred years eighty—two years
and births sons and daughters:
27 and all the days of Methusha Lach
— nine hundred years sixty—nine years:
and he dies.
28 And Lemech lives
a hundred years eighty—two years
and births a son:
29 and he calls his name Noach, saying,
This one sighs over us
concerning our work and the scars of our hands,
because of the soil Yah Veh cursed.
30 And after Lemech births Noach
he lives five hundred years ninety—five years
and births sons and daughters:
31 and all the days of Lemech
— seven hundred years seventy—seven years:
and he dies.
32 And Noach *is* a son of five hundred years:
and Noach births Shem, Ham and Yepheth.
SONS OF ELOHIM TAKE DAUGHTERS OF HUMANITY
6 And so be it,
humanity begins to abound by myriads
on the face of the soil;
and they birth daughters:
2 and the sons of Elohim
see that the daughters of humanity are goodly;
and they take women of all they choose.
THE SHORTENED LIFE SPAN
3 And Yah Veh says,
My spirit pleads not eternally with humanity,
for in his erring inadvertently, he *is* flesh:
yet so be his days, a hundred and twenty years.
THE NEPHILIM
4 There are Nephilim in the earth in those days;
and also thus:
when the sons of Elohim
come in to the daughters of humanity
and they birth to them, mighty *ones*;
originally men of name:
5 and Yah Veh sees
that the evil of humanity *is* great in the earth
and that every imagination
of the fabrications of his heart
is only evil every day.
6 And Yah Veh sighs
that he worked humanity on the earth
and it contorts at his heart:
7 and Yah Veh says,
I wipe out humanity whom I have created
from the face of the soil
— from human to animal
and the creeper and the flyers of the heavens;
for I sigh that I worked them.
8 — but Noach found charism in the eyes of Yah Veh.
GENEALOGY OF NOACH
9 These *are* the generations of Noach:
Noach *is* a just man and integrious in his generations;
and Noach walks with Elohim:
10 and Noach births three sons,
Shem, Ham and Yepheth.
11 And the earth is ruined at the face of Elohim
and the earth is filled with violence:

GENESIS 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 And God looked upon **Elohim saw** the earth,
and, behold, it was *corrupt* **ruined**;
for all flesh had *corrupted* **ruined** his way upon the earth.

THE FLOOD

13 And God **Elohim** said unto *Noah* **Noach**,
The end of all flesh is come *before me* **at my face**;
for the earth is filled with violence
through them **at their face**;
and, behold, I *will destroy* **shall ruin** them with the earth.
14 Make **Work** thee an ark of gopher wood **timber**;
rooms **ests** shalt thou *make* **work** in the ark,
and shalt pitch *it* **the housing**
within and without with pitch.
15 And *this is the fashion which* **thus**
thou shalt *make it of* **work it**:
The length of the ark shall be three hundred cubits,
the breadth of it fifty cubits,
and the height of it thirty cubits.
16 A window shalt thou *make* **work** to the ark,
and in a cubit shalt thou finish it above;
and the *door* **portal** of the ark
shalt thou set in the side thereof;
with *lower* **nether**, second, and third *stories*
shalt thou *make* **work** it.
17 And, behold, I, even I,
do bring a flood of waters upon the earth,
to *destroy* **ruin** all flesh, wherein is the *breath* **spirit** of life,
from under *heaven* **the heavens**;
and every thing all that is in the earth shall *die* **expire**.
18 But with thee *will I establish* **shall I raise** my covenant;
and thou shalt come into the ark,
thou, and thy sons, and thy *wife* **woman**,
and thy sons' *wives* **women** with thee.
19 And of every *living thing* **live being** of all flesh,
two of every *sort* **each** shalt thou bring into the ark,
to *keep* **preserve** them alive with thee;
they shall be male and female.
20 Of *fowls after their kind* **flyers in species**,
and of *cattle after their kind* **animals in species**,
of every *creeping thing* **creeper** of the earth **soil**
after his kind **in species**,
two of every *sort* **each** shall come unto thee,
to *keep* **them alive live**.
21 And take thou unto thee of all food that is eaten,
and thou shalt gather it to thee;
and it shall be for food for thee, and for them.
22 Thus *did* **Noah worked**;
according to all
that *God commanded* **Elohim misvahed** him,
so *did* **worked** he.
7 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto *Noah* **Noach**,
Come thou and all thy house into the ark;
for thee have I seen *righteous before me* **just at my face**
in this generation.
2 Of every *clean beast* **pure animal**
thou shalt take to thee *by sevens* **seven by seven**,
the *male* **man** and his *female* **woman**:
and of *beasts animals* that are not *clean* **pure** by two,
the *male* **man** and his *female* **woman**.
3 Of *fowls* **flyers** also of the *air* **heavens**
by sevens **seven by seven**, the male and the female;
to *keep* **that seed alive might live**
upon the face of all the earth.
4 For yet **again** seven days,
and I *will* **shall** cause it to rain upon the earth
forty days and forty nights;
and every *living substance* **risen being**
that I have *made* **worked**
will I destroy **shall I wipe out**
from off the face of the earth.
5 And *Noah did* **Noach worked** according unto all
that *the LORD commanded* **Yah Veh misvahed** him.
6 And *Noah* **Noach** was a son of six hundred years *old*
when the flood of waters was upon the earth.
7 And *Noah* **Noach** went in, and his sons,
and his *wife* **woman**, and his sons' *wives* **women**
with him, into the ark,
because **at the face** of the waters of the flood.
8 Of *clean beasts* **pure animals**,

GENESIS 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 and Elohim sees the earth
and behold, it is ruined;
for all flesh on the earth had ruined his way.

THE FLOOD

13 And Elohim says to Noach,
The end of all flesh comes at my face;
for the earth is filled with violence at their face;
and behold, I ruin them with the earth.
14 Work an ark of gopher timber;
work nests in the ark
and pitch the housing in and out with pitch:
and work it thus:
the length of the ark, three hundred cubits;
the width, fifty cubits; and the height, thirty cubits.
15 Work a window to the ark
and in a cubit finish it above;
and set the portal of the ark in the side;
work it with nether, second and third.
17 And behold, I, even I,
bring a flood of waters on the earth,
to ruin all flesh, wherein *is* the spirit of life,
from under the heavens;
so that all in the earth expires.
18 But with you I raise my covenant;
and you come into the ark
— you and your sons and your woman
and the women of your sons with you.
19 And of every live being of all flesh,
bring two of each into the ark
to preserve alive with you
— being male and female:
20 of flyers in species and of animals in species,
of every creeper of the soil in species,
two of each come to you, to live:
and take of all food that *is* eaten
and gather it to yourselves
— being for food for you and for them.
22 Thus Noach works:
according to all Elohim misvahs him, thus he works.
7 And Yah Veh says to Noach,
Come, you and all your house, into the ark;
for I see you *are* just at my face in this generation.
2 Of every pure animal take to you seven by seven,
the man and his woman:
and of animals that *are* not pure by two,
the man and his woman.
3 Of flyers also of the heavens seven by seven,
the male and the female;
so that the seed lives on the face of all the earth.
4 For again seven days
and I rain on the earth forty days and forty nights;
and every risen being whom I worked
I wipe out from the face of the earth.
5 And Noach works
according to all Yah Veh misvahs him.
6 And Noach *is* a son of six hundred years
when the flood of waters becomes on the earth.
7 And Noach goes into the ark
with his sons and his woman
and with the women of his sons
at the face of the waters of the flood:
of animals pure,

GENESIS 7, 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and of *beasts* **animals** that are not *clean pure*,
and of *fowls* **flyers**,
9 and of every *thing* **all** that creepeth upon the *earth* **soil**,
There went in two and two
unto *Noah* **Noach** into the ark,
the male and the female,
10 as *God* **Elohim** had *commanded* *Noah* **misvahed** **Noach**.
And **so be** it *came to pass* after seven days,
that the waters of the flood were upon the earth.
11 **In the year**
— the six hundredth year of *Noah's* **Noach's** life,
in the second month, the seventeenth day of the month,
the same **this** day were all the fountains
of the great *deep* **broken up** **abyss split**,
and the windows of *heaven* were **the heavens** opened.
12 And the *rain* **downpour** was upon the earth
forty days and forty nights.
13 In the selfsame day entered *Noah* **Noach**,
and Shem, and Ham, and *Japheth* **Yepheth**,
the sons of *Noah* **Noach**,
and *Noah's* wife **Noach's** woman,
and the three *wives* **women** of his sons with them,
into the ark;
14 They, and every *beast* **live being**
after his kind **in species**,
and all the *cattle* *after their kind* **animals in species**,
and every *creeping thing* **creeper**
that creepeth upon the earth *after his kind* **in species**,
and every *fowl* *after his kind* **flyer in species**,
every bird of every *sort* **wing**.
15 And they went in unto *Noah* **Noach** into the ark,
two and two of all flesh,
wherein is the *breath* **spirit** of life.
16 And they that went in,
went in male and female of all flesh,
as *God* **Elohim** had *commanded* **misvahed** him:
and *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh** shut him in.
17 And the flood was forty days upon the earth;
and the waters *increased* **abounded**, and bare up the ark,
and it was lift up above the earth.
18 And the waters prevailed **mightily**,
and *were increased greatly* **abounded mightily**
upon the earth;
and the ark went upon the face of the waters.
19 And the waters prevailed **mightily**,
exceedingly **mightily mighty** upon the earth;
and all the high *hills* **mountains**,
that were under the whole *heaven* **heavens**, were covered.
20 Fifteen cubits upward
did the waters prevail **mightily**;
and the mountains were covered.
21 And all flesh *died* **expired**
that *moved* **creeped** upon the earth,
both of *fowl* **flyers**, and of *cattle* **animals**,
and of *beast* **live beings**,
and of every *creeping thing* **teemer**
that *creepeth* **teemeth** upon the earth,
and every *man* **human**:
22 All in whose nostrils was the breath **of the spirit** of life,
of all that was in the *dry land* **parched area**, died.
23 And every *living substance* **risen being**
was *destroyed* **wiped out**
which was upon the face of the *ground* **soil**,
both man **from human**, and *cattle* **animals**,
and the *creeping things* **creepers**,
and the *fowl* **flyers** of the *heaven* **heavens**;
and they were *destroyed* **wiped out** from the earth:
and *Noah* **Noach** only *remained alive* **survived**,
and they that were with him in the ark.
24 And the waters prevailed **mightily** upon the earth
an hundred and fifty days.
8 And *God* **Elohim** remembered *Noah* **Noach**,
and every *living thing* **live being**, and all the *cattle* **animals**
that was **were** with him in the ark:
and *God* **made** **Elohim** had a wind to pass over the earth,
and the waters asswaged;
2 The fountains also of the *deep* **abyss**
and the windows of *heaven* **the heavens**
were *stopped* **shut**,

GENESIS 7, 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and of animals not pure;
and of flyers and of all creeping on the soil,
9 there go in two and two to Noach into the ark
— the male and the female,
as Elohim misvahed Noach.
10 And so be it, after seven days,
the waters of the flood become on the earth.
11 In the year
— the six hundredth year of the life of Noach,
in the second month,
the seventeenth day of the month,
this day all the fountains of the great abyss split
and the windows of the heavens open.
12 And the downpour becomes on the earth
forty days and forty nights.
13 In the same day Noach
and Shem and Ham and Yepheth the sons of Noach
and the woman of Noach
and the three women of his sons with them,
enter into the ark
14 — they and every live being in species
and all the animals in species
and every creeper creeping on the earth in species
and every flyer in species
— every bird of every wing:
15 and they go in to Noach into the ark
— two by two of all flesh wherein *is* the spirit of life.
16 And going in,
they go in male and female of all flesh,
as Elohim misvahed him:
and Yah Veh shuts him in.
17 And so be the flood, forty days on the earth;
and the waters abound and bear the ark
and lift it above the earth:
18 and the waters prevail mightily
and abound mightily on the earth;
and the ark goes on the face of the waters:
19 and the waters prevail mightily
— mightily mighty on the earth;
and cover all the high mountains
under the whole heavens:
20 fifteen cubits upward the waters prevail mightily;
and cover the mountains.
21 And all flesh creeping on the earth expires
— both of flyers and of animals and of live beings
and of every teemer teeming on the earth
and every human:
22 all in whose nostrils
is the breath of the spirit of life,
of all in the parched area, die.
23 And every risen being on the face of the soil
is wiped out
— from human and animals and the creepers
and the flyers of the heavens;
are wiped out from the earth:
and only Noach
and those with him in the ark survive:
24 and the waters prevail mightily on the earth
a hundred and fifty days.
8 And Elohim remembers Noach
and every live being
and all the animals with him in the ark:
and Elohim passes a wind over the earth
and the waters asswage;
and the fountains of the abyss
and the windows of the heavens shut

GENESIS 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the rain **downpour** from heaven the heavens
was restrained;

3 And the waters returned from off the earth
continually **going and returning**;
and after the end of the hundred and fifty days
the waters were abated.

4 And the ark rested in the seventh month,
on the seventeenth day of the month,
upon the mountains of Ararat.

5 And the waters *decreased* **abated**
continually **going and returning** until the tenth month:
in the tenth *month*, on the first *day* of the month,
were the tops of the mountains seen.

6 And **so be** it came to pass at the end of forty days,
that Noah **Noach** opened the window of the ark
which he had *made* **worked**;
7 And he sent forth a raven,
which went forth *to* **going** and *fro* **returning**,
until the waters were dried up from off the earth.

8 Also he sent forth a dove from him,
to see if the waters were abated
from off the face of the *ground* **soil**;

9 But the dove found no rest for the sole of her foot,
and she returned unto him into the ark,
for the waters were on the face of the whole earth:
then he *put forth* **spread** his hand, and took her,
and pulled her in unto him into the ark.

10 And he *stayed* **waited** yet other seven days;
and again he sent forth the dove out of the ark;

11 And the dove came in to him in the evening **time**;
and, *lo* **behold**, in her mouth was an olive leaf plucked off:
so Noah **Noach** knew
that the waters were abated from off the earth.

12 And he *stayed* **waited** yet other seven days;
and sent forth the dove;
which returned not again unto him any more.

13 And **so be** it came to pass
in the six hundredth and first year,
in the first *month*, the first *day* of the month,
the waters were *dried up* **parched** from off the earth:
and Noah **Noach**
removed **turned aside** the covering of the ark,
and *looked* **saw**, and, behold,
the face of the *ground* **soil** was *dry* **parched**.

14 And in the second month,
on the seven and twentieth day of the month,
was the earth dried.

15 And God *spake* **Elohim worded** unto Noah **Noach**,
saying,

16 Go forth of the ark, thou, and thy *wife* **woman**,
and thy sons, and thy sons' *wives* **women** with thee.

17 Bring forth with thee
every *living thing* **live being** that is with thee,
of all flesh, *both* of *fowl* **flyers**, and of *cattle* **animals**,
and of every *creeping thing* **creeper**
that creepeth upon the earth;
that they may *breed abundantly* **teem** in the earth,
and *be fruitful* **bear fruit**,
and *multiply* **abound** upon the earth.

18 And Noah **Noach** went forth, and his sons,
and his *wife* **woman**,
and his sons' *wives* **women** with him:

19 Every *beast* **live being**, every *creeping thing* **creeper**,
and every *fowl* **flyer**,
and *whatsoever* **all that** creepeth upon the earth,
after their kinds **by families**, went forth out of the ark.

THE SACRIFICE ALTAR OF NOACH

20 And Noah **Noach**
builted *an a* **sacrifice** altar unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
and took of every *clean beast* **pure animal**,
and of every *clean fowl* **pure flyer**,
and *offered burnt offerings* **holocausted holocausts**
on the **sacrifice** altar.

21 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
smelled **scented** a sweet *savour* **scent**;
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said in his heart,
I will **shall** not again *curse* **abase** the *ground* **soil** any more
for *man's* **humanity's** sake;
for the imagination of *man's* **humanity's** heart

GENESIS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the downpour from the heavens restrains;
3 and the waters return from off the earth
— going and returning;
and after the end of the hundred and fifty days
the waters abate.

4 And in the seventh month,
on the seventeenth day of the month,
the ark rests on the mountains of Ararat:
5 and the waters abate
going and returning until the tenth month:
in the tenth, on the first of the month,
the tops of the mountains appear.

6 And so be it, at the end of forty days,
Noach opens the window of the ark he worked:
7 and he sends forth the raven,
which goes — going and returning,
until the waters dry from the earth:

8 and he sends a dove from him
to see if the waters abated from the face of the soil;
9 but the dove finds no rest for the sole of her foot
and she returns to him in the ark;
for the waters *are* on the face of the whole earth:
then he spreads his hand and takes her
and pulls her in to him into the ark.

10 And he waits yet another seven days;
and again he sends the dove from the ark;

11 and the dove comes in to him in the evening time;
and behold, in her mouth, a plucked olive leaf:
so Noach knows the waters abate from off the earth.

12 And he waits yet another seven days;
and sends the dove;
who returns not again to him any more.

13 And so be it, in the six hundredth and first year,
in the first, the first of the month,
the waters parch from the earth:
and Noach turns aside the covering of the ark
and sees, and behold,
the face of the soil is parched.

14 And in the second month,
on the twenty—seventh day of the month,
the earth dries:

15 and Elohim words to Noach, saying,
16 Go from the ark, you and your woman,
with your sons and the women of your sons:
17 bring every live being with you
— of all flesh, flyers and of animals
and of every creeper creeping on the earth;
to teem in the earth
and bear fruit and abound on the earth.

18 And Noach goes with his sons,
his woman and the women of his sons,
19 every live being, every creeper and every flyer
and all creeping on the earth,
by families, go from the ark.

THE SACRIFICE ALTAR OF NOACH

20 And Noach builds a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh;
and takes of every pure animal
and of every pure flyer
and holocausts holocausts on the sacrifice altar.

21 And Yah Veh scents a sweet scent;
and Yah Veh says in his heart,
I never again abase the soil
for sake of humanity;
for the imagination of the heart of humanity

GENESIS 8, 9

exeGeser ready research BIBLE

is evil from his youth;
neither will **shall** I again smite *any more*
every *thing living* **live being**, as I have *done* **worked**.
22 While **As yet all the days** of the earth *remaineth*,
seedtime **seed** and harvest, and cold and heat,
and summer and winter, and day and night
shall not cease **shabbathize**.

THE BOW COVENANT OF ELOHIM

9 And God **Elohim** blessed *Noah* **Noach** and his sons,
and said unto them, *Be fruitful* **Bear fruit**,
and *multiply* **abound**, and *replenish* **fill** the earth.
2 And the *fear* **awesomeness** of you
and the *dread* **terror** of you
shall be upon every *beast* **live being** of the earth,
and upon every *fowl* **flyer** of the *air* **heavens**,
upon all that *moveth* **creepeth** upon the *earth* **soil**,
and upon all the fishes of the sea;
into your hand are they *delivered* **given**.
3 Every *moving thing that liveth* **living creeper**
shall be *meat* for you;
even as the green herb have I given you all *things*.
4 But **Only** flesh with the *life* **soul** thereof,
which is the blood thereof, shall ye not eat.
5 And surely your blood of your *lives* **souls**
will **shall** I require;
at the hand of every *beast* **live being**
will **shall** I require it,
and at the hand of *man* **humanity**;
at the hand of every man's brother
will **shall** I require the *life* **soul** of *man* **humanity**.
6 Whoso *sheddeth* *man's* **poureth human** blood,
by *man* **humanity** shall his blood be *shed* **poured**:
for in the image of God **Elohim**
made **worked** he *man* **humanity**.
7 And you, *be ye fruitful* **bear fruit**, and *multiply* **abound**;
bring forth abundantly **teem** in the earth,
and *multiply* **abound** therein.
8 And God *spake* **Elohim said** unto *Noah* **Noach**,
and to his sons with him, saying,
9 And I, behold, I *establish* **raise** my covenant with you,
and with your seed after you;
10 And with every living *creature* **soul** that is with you,
of the *fowl* **flyers**, of the *cattle* **animals**,
and of every *beast* **live being** of the earth with you;
from all that go out of the ark,
to every *beast* **live being** of the earth.
11 And I will *establish* **shall raise** my covenant with you;
neither shall all flesh be cut off any more
by the waters of a flood;
neither shall there any more be a flood
to *destroy* **ruin** the earth.
12 And God **Elohim** said,
This is the *token* **sign** of the covenant
which I *make* **set** between me and **between** you
and every living *creature* **soul** that is with you,
for *perpetual* **eternal** generations:
13 I do *set* **give** my bow in the cloud,
and it shall be for a *token* **sign** of a covenant
between me and the earth.
14 And **so be** it shall *come to pass*,
when I *bring* **overcloud** a cloud over the earth,
that the bow shall be seen in the cloud:
15 And I will **shall** remember my covenant,
which is between me and **between** you
and every living *creature* **soul** of all flesh;
and the waters shall *no more* **never again**
become a flood to *destroy* **ruin** all flesh.
16 And the bow shall be in the cloud;
and I will *look upon* **shall see** it,
that I may remember the *everlasting* **eternal** covenant
between God **Elohim**
and **between** every living *creature* **soul** of all flesh
that is upon the earth.
17 And God **Elohim** said unto *Noah* **Noach**,
This is the *token* **sign** of the covenant,
which I have *established* **raised** between me
and all flesh that is upon the earth.
18 And the sons of *Noah* **Noach**,
that went forth of the ark,

GENESIS 8, 9

exeGeser companion BIBLE

is evil from his youth;
I never again smite every live being
as I worked;
22 as all the days of the earth remain
— seed and harvest and cold and heat
and summer and winter and day and night
shabbathize not.

THE BOW COVENANT OF ELOHIM

9 And Elohim blesses Noach and his sons
and says to them,
Bear fruit and abound and fill the earth.
2 And the awesomeness of you
and the terror of you
becomes on every live being of the earth
and on every flyer of the heavens,
on all who creep on the soil
and on all the fishes of the sea;
into your hand they are given.
3 Every living creeper is for you;
even as the green herb, I give you all.
4 Only flesh with the soul, which is the blood, eat not.
5 And surely I require the blood of your souls;
at the hand of every live being I require
and at the hand of humanity;
at the hand of the brother of every man
I require the soul of humanity.
6 Whoever pours human blood,
thus be his blood poured by humanity:
for he worked humanity in the image of Elohim.
7 And you, bear fruit and abound;
teem in the earth and abound.
8 And Elohim says to Noach and to his sons with him,
saying,
9 And I, behold, I raise my covenant with you
and with your seed after you;
10 and with every living soul with you
— of the flyers, of the animals
and of every live being of the earth with you;
from all who go from the ark
to every live being of the earth:
11 and I raise my covenant with you;
neither is all flesh cut off any more
by the waters of a flood;
nor is there any more a flood to ruin the earth.
12 And Elohim says,
This is the sign of the covenant
I set between me and between you
and every living soul with you
for eternal generations:
13 I give my bow in the cloud
— a sign of a covenant
between me and between the earth:
14 and so be it,
when I overcloud a cloud over the earth,
that the bow be seen in the cloud:
15 and I remember my covenant
between me and between you
and every living soul of all flesh;
and the waters never again
become a flood to ruin all flesh.
16 And the bow becomes in the cloud; and I see it:
to remember the eternal covenant between Elohim
and between every living soul of all flesh
on the earth.
17 And Elohim says to Noach,
This is the sign of the covenant,
I raise between me
and between all flesh on the earth.
18 And the sons of Noach, going from the ark,

GENESIS 9, 10

exeGeser ready research BIBLE

were Shem, and Ham, and Japheth Yepheth:
and Ham is the father of Canaan Kenaan.

19 These are the three sons of Noah Noach:
and of them was the whole earth overspread scattered.

THE INTOXICATION OF NOACH

20 And Noah Noach
began to be an husbandman a man of the soil,
and he planted a vineyard:
21 And he drank of the wine,
and was drunken intoxicated;
and he was uncovered within exposed midst his tent.
22 And Ham, the father of Canaan Kenaan,
saw the nakedness of his father,
and told his two brethren without.

23 And Shem and Japheth Yepheth took a garment cloth,
and laid set it

upon both their the shoulders of the two of them,
and went backward,
and covered the nakedness of their father;
and their faces were backward,
and they saw not their father's nakedness.

24 And Noah Noach awoke from his wine,
and knew what his younger son
had done worked unto him.

25 And he said, Cursed be Canaan Kenaan;
a servant of servants shall he be unto his brethren.

26 And he said,
Blessed be the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Shem;
and Canaan Kenaan shall be his servant.

27 God Elohim shall enlarge Japheth Yepheth,
and he shall dwell tabernacle in the tents of Shem;
and Canaan Kenaan shall be his servant.

28 And Noah Noach lived after the flood
three hundred years and fifty years.

29 And all the days of Noah Noach
were nine hundred years and fifty years: and he dies.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF NOACH

10

Now these are the generations
of the sons of Noah Noach,
Shem, Ham, and Japheth Yepheth:
and unto them were sons born birthed after the flood.

2 The sons of Japheth Yepheth;
Gomer, and Magog, and Madai Maday,
and Javan Yavan, and Tubal,
and Meshech, and Tiras.

3 And the sons of Gomer;
Ashkenaz, and Riphath, and Togarmah.

4 And the sons of Javan Yavan;
Elishah Eli Shah, and Tarshish,
Kittim Kittiym, and Dodanim.

5 By these were the isles of the Gentiles goyim
divided separated in their lands;
every one each man after his tongue,
after their families, in their nations goyim.

6 And the sons of Ham;
Cush Kush, and Mizraim Misraim,
and Phut Put, and Canaan Kenaan.

7 And the sons of Cush Kush;
Seba, and Havilah, and Sabtah,
and Raamah, and Sabtechah:
and the sons of Raamah;

8 Sheba, and Dedan.
And Cush begat Kush birthed Nimrod:
he began to be a mighty one in the earth.

9 He was a mighty hunter
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
wherefore thus it is said,

10 Even as Nimrod the mighty hunter
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
And the beginning of his kingdom sovereignty
was Babel, and Erech,
and Accad Akkad, and Calneh Kalneh,
in the land of Shinar.

11 Out of that land went forth Ashshur,
and builded Nineveh,
and the city Rehoboth Rechovoth, and Calah Kelach,

12 And Resen between Nineveh and Calah Kelach:

GENESIS 9, 10

exeGeser companion BIBLE

are Shem and Ham and Yepheth:
and Ham is the father of Kenaan.

19 These are the three sons of Noach:
and they scatter throughout the whole earth.

THE INTOXICATION OF NOACH

20 And Noach begins to be a man of the soil
and he plants a vineyard:
21 and he drinks of the wine and intoxicates;
and he exposes himself midst his tent.
22 And Ham, the father of Kenaan,
sees the nakedness of his father
and tells his two brothers outside:
23 and Shem and Yepheth take a cloth
and set it on the shoulders of the two of them
and go backward and cover the nakedness of their father;
with their faces backward
and they see not the nakedness of their father.

24 And Noach awakens from his wine
and knows what his younger son worked to him:
25 and he says, Curse Kenaan;
he becomes a servant of servants to his brethren.

26 And he says,
Blessed be Yah Veh Elohim of Shem;
and Kenaan becomes his servant.

27 Elohim enlarges Yepheth
to tabernacle in the tents of Shem;
and Kenaan becomes his servant.

28 And Noach lives after the flood
three hundred years and fifty years:

29 and all the days of Noach
— nine hundred years and fifty years: and he dies.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF NOACH

10

And these are the generations
of the sons of Noach:
Shem, Ham and Yepheth:
and they birth sons after the flood.

2 The sons of Yepheth:
Gomer and Magog and Maday and Yavan
and Tubal and Meshech and Tiras.

3 And the sons of Gomer:
Ashkenaz and Riphath and Togarmah.

4 And the sons of Yavan:
Eli Shah and Tarshish, Kittiyim and Dodanim.

5 By these were the isles of the goyim
separated in their lands;
each man by his tongue, by their families,
in their goyim.

6 And the sons of Ham:
Kush and Misraim and Put and Kenaan.

7 And the sons of Kush:
Seba and Havilah and Sabtah
and Raamah and Sabtechah.

8 And the sons of Raamah:
Sheba and Dedan.

9 And Kush births Nimrod:
he begins to be mighty in the earth.
He is a mighty hunter at the face of Yah Veh:
thus it is said,
Even as Nimrod the mighty hunter
at the face of Yah Veh.

10 And the beginning of his sovereignty
is Babel and Erech and Akkad and Kalneh
in the land of Shinar.

11 From that land Ashshur goes and builds Nineveh
and the city Rechovoth and Kelach;
12 And Resen between Nineveh and Kelach

GENESIS 10, 11

exeGeser ready research BIBLE

the same is a great city.
13 And Mizraim begat Ludim **Misraim** birthed **Ludiym**,
and Anamim, and Lehabim, and *Naphtuhim* **Naphtuchim**,
14 And *Pathrusim* **Pathrsimm**, and *Casluhim* **Kasluhim**,
(out of whom came *Philistim* **Peleshethiym**),
and *Caphtorim* **Kaphtorim**.
15 And *Canaan* **Kenaar**
begat birthed Sidon his *firstborn* **firstbirthed**, and Heth,
16 And the *Jebusite* **Yebusiy**,
and the *Amorite* **Emoriy**, and the *Girgasite* **Girgashiy**,
17 And the *Hivite* **Hivviy**,
and the *Arkite* **Arqiy**, and the *Sinite* **Siniy**,
18 And the *Arvadite* **Arvadiy**,
and the *Zemarite* **Semariy**, and the *Hamathite* **Hamathi**:
and afterward were the families
of the *Canaanites* spread abroad **Kenaaraniy scattered**.
19 And the border of the *Canaanites* **Kenaaraniy**
was from Sidon,
as thou comest to Gerar, unto *Gaza* **Azzah**;
as thou goest, unto *Sodom* **Sedom**, and *Gomorrah* **Amorah**,
and Admah, and *Zeboim* **Seboim**,
even unto *Lasha* **Lesha**.
20 These are the sons of Ham,
after their families, after their tongues,
in their *countries* **lands**, and in their *nations* **goyim**.
21 Unto Shem also,
the father of all the *children* **sons** of *Eber* **Heber**,
the brother of *Japheth* **Yepheth** the *elder* **greater**,
even to him were *children* born **birthed**.
22 The *children* **sons** of Shem;
Elam, and *Asshur* **Ashshur**,
and *Arphaxad* **Arpachshad**, and Lud, and Aram.
23 And the *children* **sons** of Aram;
Uz **Us**, and Hul, and Gether, and Mash.
24 And *Arphaxad* **begat** *Salah* **Arpachshad** birthed **Shelach**;
and *Salah* **begat** *Eber* **Shelach** birthed **Heber**.
25 And unto *Eber* **Heber** were born **birthed** two sons:
the name of one was Peleg;
for in his days was the earth divided;
and his brother's name was *Joktan* **Yoqtan**.
26 And *Joktan* **begat** *Yoqtan* **birthed** Almodad, and Sheleph,
and *Hazarmaveth* **Hasar Maveth**, and *Jerah* **Yerach**,
27 And *Hadoram* **Hado Ram**,
and Uzal, and *Diklah* **Diqlah**,
28 And Obal, and *Abimael* **Abi Mael**, and Sheba,
29 And Ophir, and Havilah, and *Jobab* **Yobab**:
all these were the sons of *Joktan* **Yoqtan**.
30 And their *dwelling* **settlement** was from Mesha,
as thou goest unto Sephar a mount of the east.
31 These are the sons of Shem,
after their families, after their tongues,
in their lands, after their *nations* **goyim**.
32 These are the families of the sons of *Noah* **Noach**,
after their generations, in their *nations* **goyim**:
and by these were the *nations* **divided** **goyim separated**
in the earth after the flood.

THE TOWER OF BABEL

11 And the whole earth was of one *language* **lip**,
and of one *speech* **word**.
2 And **so be** it came to pass,
as they *journeyed* **pulled stakes** from the east,
that they found a *plain* **valley** in the land of Shinar;
and they *dwelt* **settled** there.
3 And they said *one* **man to another** **friend**,
Go to **Give**, let us make brick,
and **in burning**, burn them *thoroughly*.
And they had **there became** brick for stone,
and *slime* had they **there became** bitumin for mortar.
4 And they said, *Go to* **Give**,
let us build us a city and a tower,
whose top may *reach* **be** unto *heaven* **the heavens**;
and let us *make* **work** us a name,
lest we be scattered abroad
upon the face of the whole earth.
5 And the *LORD* **came down** *Yah Veh* **descended**
to see the city and the tower,
which the *children* **sons** of *men* **humanity** builded.
6 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said, Behold, the people is one,
and they have all one *language* **lip**;

GENESIS 10, 11

exeGeser companion BIBLE

— a great city.
13 And Misraim births Ludiym
and Anamim and Lehabim and Naphtuchim
and Pathrsimm and Kasluhim
— from whom came Peleshethiym
and Kaphtorim.
15 And Kenaar births Sidon his *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
and Heth,
16 and the Yebusiy and the Emoriy and the Girgashiy
17 and the Hivviy and the Arqiy and the Siniy
18 and the Arvadiy and the Semariy
and the Hamathi:
and afterward the families of the Kenaaraniy scatter.
19 And the border of the Kenaaraniy is from Sidon,
as you come to Gerar, to Azzah;
as you go to Sedom and Amorah
and Admah and Seboim, to Lesha.
20 These are the sons of Ham,
by their families, by their tongues,
in their lands, in their goyim.
21 As to Shem, the father of all the sons of Heber,
the brother of Yepheth the greater, he also births.
22 The sons of Shem:
Elam and Ashshur and Arpachshad
and Lud and Aram.
23 And the sons of Aram:
Us and Hul and Gether and Mash.
24 And Arpachshad births Shelach;
and Shelach births Heber:
25 And Heber births two sons:
the name of one, Peleg;
for in his days the earth is divided;
and the name of his brother, Yoqtan.
26 And Yoqtan births Almodad and Sheleph
and Hasar Maveth and Yerach
and Hado Ram and Uzal and Diqlah
28 and Obal and Abi Mael and Sheba
29 and Ophir and Havilah and Yobab:
all these are the sons of Yoqtan.
And their settlement is from Mesha,
as you go to Sephar a mount of the east.
31 These are the sons of Shem,
by their families, by their tongues,
in their lands, by their goyim.
32 These are the families of the sons of Noah,
by their generations, in their goyim:
and by these
the goyim separate in the earth after the flood.

THE TOWER OF BABEL

11 And the whole earth
is of one lip and of one word.
2 And so be it, as they pull stakes from the east,
they find a valley in the land of Shinar
and settle there.
3 And they say, man to friend,
Give, we make brick and in burning, burn them;
the brick is for stone
and bitumin is for mortar.
4 And they say,
Give, we build us a city and a tower
whose top is to the heavens;
and we work us a name,
lest we be scattered abroad
on the face of the whole earth.
5 And Yah Veh descends
to see the city and the tower
the sons of humanity build:
6 and Yah Veh says,
Behold, the people is one with one lip to all;

GENESIS 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and this they begin to *do work*:
and now *nothing naught*
will **shall** be *restrained clipped* from them,
which they have *imagined intrigued* to **do work**.
7 Go to **Give**, let us go *down descend*,
and there *confound mix up* their **language lip**,
that they **man** may not *understand hear*
8 one *another's speech his friend's lip*.
So the **LORD Yah Veh**
scattered them abroad from thence
upon the face of all the earth:
and they *left off ceased* to build the city.
9 Therefore is the name of it called Babel;
because the **LORD Yah Veh** did there
confound mix up the **language lip** of all the earth:
and from thence did the **LORD Yah Veh**
scatter them abroad upon the face of all the earth.

GENEALOGY OF SHEM

10 These are the generations of Shem:
Shem was **a son of** an hundred years *old*,
and *begat Arphaxad birthed Arpachshad*
two years after the flood:
11 And Shem lived
after he *begat Arphaxad birthed Arpachshad*
five hundred years,
and *begat birthed* sons and daughters.
12 And *Arphaxad Arpachshad* lived five and thirty years,
and *begat Salah birthed Shelach*:
13 And *Arphaxad Arpachshad* lived
after he *begat Salah birthed Shelach*
four hundred **years** and three years,
and *begat birthed* sons and daughters.
14 And *Salah Shelach* lived thirty years,
and *begat begat birthed Eber birthed Heber*:
15 And *Salah Shelach* lived after he *begat Eber birthed Heber*
four hundred **years** and three years,
and *begat birthed* sons and daughters.
16 And *Eber Heber* lived four and thirty years,
and *begat birthed* Peleg:
17 And *Eber Heber* lived after he *begat birthed* Peleg
four hundred **years** and thirty years,
and *begat birthed* sons and daughters.
18 And Peleg lived thirty years, and *begat birthed* Reu:
19 And Peleg lived after he *begat birthed* Reu
two hundred **years** and nine years,
and *begat birthed* sons and daughters.
20 And Reu lived two and thirty years,
and *begat birthed* Serug:
21 And Reu lived after he *begat birthed* Serug
two hundred **years** and seven years,
and *begat birthed* sons and daughters.
22 And Serug lived thirty years,
and *begat Nahor birthed Nachor*:
23 And Serug lived after he *begat Nahor birthed Nachor*
two hundred years,
and *begat birthed* sons and daughters.
24 And *Nahor Nachor* lived nine and twenty years,
and *begat Terah birthed Terach*:
25 And *Nahor Nachor* lived
after he *begat Terah birthed Terach*
an hundred **years** and nineteen years,
and *begat birthed* sons and daughters.
26 And *Terah Terach* lived seventy years,
and *begat birthed* Abram, *Nahor Nachor*, and Haran.
27 Now these are the generations of *Terah Terach*:
Terah begat Terach birthed Abram, *Nahor Nachor*, and Haran;
and Haran *begat birthed* Lot.
28 And Haran died
before at the face of his father *Terah Terach*
in the land of his *nativity kindred*,
in Ur of the *Chaldees Kesediyim*.
29 And Abram and *Nahor Nachor*
took them *wives women*:
the name of Abram's *wife woman* was *Sarai Saray*;
and the name of *Nahor's wife Nachor's woman*,
Milchah Milchah, the daughter of Haran,
the father of *Milchah Milchah*,
and the father of *Iscah Yiskah*.
30 But *Sarai Saray* was *barren sterile*; she had no child.

GENESIS 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they begin to work this:
and now naught is clipped from them,
of which they intrigue to work.
7 Give, we descend and mix up their lip,
that man not hear the lip of his friend.

8 And from there,
Yah Veh scatters them abroad
on the face of all the earth:
and they cease to build the city.
9 So the name thereof *is* called Babel;
because there
Yah Veh mixes up the lip of all the earth:
and from there
Yah Veh scatters them abroad
on the face of all the earth.

GENEALOGY OF SHEM

10 These are the generations of Shem:
Shem *is* a son of a hundred years,
and *births* Arpachshad two years after the flood:
11 and after Shem *births* Arpachshad
he lives five hundred years
and *births* sons and daughters.
12 And Arpachshad lives thirty—five years
and *births* Shelach:
13 and after Arpachshad *births* Shelach
he lives four hundred years and three years
and *births* sons and daughters.
14 And Shelach lives thirty years
and *births* Heber:
15 and after Shelach *births* Heber
he lives four hundred years and three years
and *births* sons and daughters.
16 And Heber lives thirty—four years
and *births* Peleg:
17 and after Heber *births* Peleg
he lives four hundred years and thirty years
and *births* sons and daughters.
18 And Peleg lives thirty years and *births* Reu:
19 and after Peleg *births* Reu
he lives two hundred years and nine years
and *births* sons and daughters.
20 And Reu lives thirty—two years
and *births* Serug:
21 and after Reu *births* Serug
he lives two hundred years and seven years
and *births* sons and daughters.
22 And Serug lives thirty years and *births* Nachor:
23 and after Serug *births* Nachor
he lives two hundred years
and *births* sons and daughters.
24 And Nachor lives twenty—nine years
and *births* Terach:
25 and after Nachor *births* Terach
he lives a hundred years and nineteen years
and *births* sons and daughters.
26 And Terach lives seventy years
and *births* Abram, Nachor and Haran.
27 And these *are* the generations of Terach:
Terach *births* Abram, Nachor and Haran;
and Haran *births* Lot:
28 and Haran dies at the face of his father Terach
in the land of his kindred, in Ur of the Kesediyim.
29 And Abram and Nachor take women:
the name of the woman of Abram, Saray;
and the name of the woman of Nachor, Milchah
daughter of Haran,
father of Milchah and father of Yiskah.
30 And Saray *is* sterile; she has no child.

GENESIS 11, 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

31 And *Terah* **Terach** took Abram his son,
and Lot the son of Haran his son's son,
and *Sarai* **Saray** his daughter in law,
his son Abram's *wife* **woman**;
and they went forth with them
from Ur of the *Chaldees* **Kesediym**,
to go into the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**;
and they came unto Haran, and *dwelt* **settled** there.
32 And the days of *Terah* **Terach**
were two hundred **years** and five years:
and *Terah* **Terach** died in Haran.

YAH VEH CALLS ABRAM

12 Now the **LORD** **Yah Veh** had said unto Abram,
Get thee out of **Go from** thy *country* **land**,
and from thy kindred, and from thy father's house,
unto a land that I *will shew thee* **shall have thee see**:
2 And I *will make* **shall work** of thee a great *nation* **goyim**,
and I *will* **shall** bless thee,
and *make* **greaten** thy name *great*;
and thou shalt be a blessing:
3 And I *will* **shall** bless them that bless thee,
and curse him that *curseth* **abaseth** thee:
and in thee shall all families of the *earth* **soil** be blessed.
4 So Abram *departed* **went**,
as the **LORD** **Yah Veh** had *spoken* **worded** unto him;
and Lot went with him:
and Abram was a **son of** seventy and five years *old*
when he departed out of Haran.
5 And Abram took *Sarai* **Saray** his *wife* **woman**,
and Lot his brother's son,
and all their *substance* **acquisitions**
that they had *gathered* **acquired**,
and the souls that they had *gotten* **worked** in Haran;
and they went forth
to go into the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**;
and into the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan** they came.
6 And Abram passed through the land
unto the place of *Sichem*,
unto the *plain* **mighty oak** of *Moreh*.
And the *Canaanite* **Kenaaniy** was then in the land.
7 And the **LORD** **Yah Veh**
appeared unto **was seen by** Abram,
and said, Unto thy seed *will* **shall** I give this land:
and there builded he *an* **a sacrifice** altar
unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**,
who appeared unto him **whom he had seen**.
8 And he removed from thence
unto a mountain on the east of *Bethel* **Beth El**,
and *pitched* **spread** his tent,
having *Bethel on the west* **Beth El seaward**,
and *Hai on the east* **Ay eastward**:
and there he builded *an* **a sacrifice** altar
unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**,
and called upon the name of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**.
9 And *in pulling stakes*,
Abram *journeyed, going on still* **pulled stakes**,
toward the south.
10 And there was a famine in the land:
and Abram *went down* **descended** into *Egypt* **Misrayim**
to sojourn there;
for the famine was *grievous* **heavy** in the land.
11 And *so be it came to pass*,
when he was *come near* **approached**
to enter into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
that he said unto *Sarai* **Saray** his *wife* **woman**,
Behold *now* **I beseech**,
I know that thou art a fair woman to *look upon* **in visage**:
12 Therefore *so be it shall come to pass*,
when the *Egyptians* **Misrayim** shall see thee,
that they shall say, This is his *wife* **woman**:
and they *will kill* **shall slaughter** me,
but they *will save* **shall preserve** thee alive.
13 Say, I *pray* **beseech** thee, thou art my sister:
that it may *be well with* **well—please** me for thy sake;
and my soul shall live because of thee.
14 And *so be it came to pass*, that,
when Abram was come into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
the *Egyptians beheld* **Misrayim saw** the woman
that she was *very* **mighty** fair.

GENESIS 11, 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

31 And Terach takes Abram his son
and Lot the son of Haran the son of his son
and Saray his daughter in law
the woman of his son Abram;
and they go with them from Ur of the Kesediym
to go into the land of Kenaan;
and they come to Haran and settle there.
32 And the days of Terach
— two hundred years and five years:
and Terach dies in Haran.

YAH VEH CALLS ABRAM

12 And Yah Veh says to Abram,
Go from your land and from your kindred
and from the house of your father
to a land I show you:
2 and I work you to become a great goyim
and I bless you and greaten your name;
that you become a blessing:
3 and I bless them who bless you
and curse him who abases you:
and in you all families of the soil become blessed.
4 So Abram goes, as Yah Veh worded to him;
and Lot goes with him:
and Abram is a son of seventy—five years
when he departs from Haran:
5 and Abram takes Saray his woman
and Lot the son of his brother
and all the acquisitions they acquired
and the souls they worked in Haran;
and they go — go to the land of Kenaan;
and to the land of Kenaan they come:
6 and Abram passes through the land
to the place of *Sichem* — to the mighty oak of *Moreh*.
— and the Kenaaniy is in the land.
7 And Yah Veh is seen by Abram, and says,
To your seed I give this land!
— and there he builds a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh,
who is seen by him.
8 And from there
he removes to a mountain east of *Beth El*
and spreads his tent,
having *Beth El seaward* and *Ay eastward*:
and there he builds a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh
and calls on the name of Yah Veh.
9 And in pulling stakes,
Abram pulls stakes toward the south:
10 and there is a famine in the land:
and Abram descends into *Misrayim* to sojourn there;
for the famine is heavy in the land.
11 And so be it,
when he approaches to enter into *Misrayim*,
he says to Saray his woman, Behold I beseech,
I know that you are a fair woman in visage:
12 so be it,
when the *Misrayim* see you,
that they say, This is his woman:
and they slaughter me, and they preserve you alive.
13 Say, I beseech you, you are my sister:
that they well—please me for your sake;
and my soul lives because of you.
14 And so be it, when Abram comes into *Misrayim*,
the *Misrayim* see the woman — mighty fair:

GENESIS 12, 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 The *princes* also **governors** of Pharaoh **Paroh** saw her,
and *commended* **halaled** her *before Pharaoh* **unto Paroh**:
and the woman was taken into *Pharaoh's* **Paroh's** house.
16 And he *entreated* **well—pleased** Abram *well* for her sake:
and he had *sheep* **flocks**, and oxen, and he *asses* **burros**,
and *menservants* **servants**, and *maidservants* **maids**,
and she *asses* **burros**, and camels.
17 And the **LORD Yah Veh** plagued *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
and his house with great plagues
because of *Sarai* **Saray** Abram's *wife's* **woman's word**.
18 And *Pharaoh* **Paroh** called Abram, and said,
What is this that thou hast *done* **worked** unto me?
why didst thou not tell me that she was thy *wife* **woman**?
19 Why saidst thou, She is my sister?
so I might have taken her to me to *wife* **woman**:
now therefore behold thy *wife* **woman**,
take *her*, and go thy way.
20 And *Pharaoh* **commanded** **Paroh misvahed** his men
concerning him:
and they sent him away, and his *wife* **woman**,
and all that he had.

ABRAM AND LOT SEPARATE

13

And Abram
went up **ascended** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
he, and his *wife* **woman**, and all that he had,
and Lot with him, *into* **toward** the south.
2 And Abram was *very rich* **mighty heavy**
in *cattle* **chattel**, in silver, and in gold.
3 And he went on his journeys
from the south even to *Bethel* **Beth El**,
unto the place where his tent had been at the beginning,
between *Bethel* **Beth El** and *Hai* **Ai**;
4 Unto the place of the **sacrifice** altar,
which he had *made* **worked** there at the first:
and there Abram
called on the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
5 And Lot also, which went with Abram,
had flocks, and *herds* **oxen**, and tents.
6 And the land was not able to bear them,
that they might *dwell* **settle** together:
for their *substance* **acquisition** was great,
so that they could not *dwell* **settle** together.
7 And there was a strife
between the *herdmen* **tenders** of Abram's *cattle* **chattel**
and the *herdmen* **tenders** of Lot's *cattle* **chattel**:
and the *Canaanite* **Kenaaniy** and the *Perizzite* **Perizziy**
dwelled **settled** then in the land.
8 And Abram said unto Lot, Let there be no strife,
I *pray* **beseech** thee, between me and **between** thee,
and between my *herdmen* **tenders**
and **between** thy *herdmen* **tenders**;
for we be **men** — brethren.
9 Is not the whole land *before thee* **at thy face**?
separate thyself, I *pray* **beseech** thee, from me:
if *thou wilt take* the left *hand*,
then I *will* **shall** go to the right;
or if *thou depart* to the right *hand*,
then I *will* **shall** go to the left.
10 And Lot lifted up his eyes,
and *beheld* **saw** all the *plain* **environs** of *Jordan* **Yarden**,
that it was *well watered* **moistened** every where,
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**
destroyed **Sodom ruining Sedom** and *Gomorrah* **Amorah**,
even as the garden of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
like the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
as thou comest unto *Zoar* **Soar**.
11 Then Lot chose him
all the *plain* **environs** of *Jordan* **Yarden**;
and Lot *journeyed* **pulled stakes** east:
and they separated *themselves*
the one **man from the other** **brother**.
12 Abram *dwelled* **settled** in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
and Lot *dwelled* **settled** in the cities of the *plain* **environs**,
and pitched his tent toward *Sodom* **Sedom**.
13 But the men of *Sodom* **Sedom** were *wicked* **evil**
and *sinner* **before the LORD** **exceedingly**
sinned at the face of Yah Veh mightily.
14 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto Abram,
after that Lot was separated from him,

GENESIS 12, 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 the governors of Paroh see her
and halal her to Paroh:
and they take the woman into the house of Paroh:
and he well—pleases Abram for her sake:
and he has flocks and oxen and he burros
and servants and maids and she burros and camels.
17 And Yah Veh plagues Paroh
and his house with great plagues
because of the word of Saray the woman of Abram:
and Paroh calls Abram and says,
What work you unto me?
18 Why tell you me not she *is* your woman?
19 Why say you, She *is* my sister
— and I took her as my woman?
Now behold, your woman; take her and go your way.
20 And Paroh misvahed his men concerning him:
and they send him away
with his woman and all he has.

ABRAM AND LOT SEPARATE

13

And Abram ascends from Misrayim,
he and his woman and all he has
and Lot with him, toward the south:
2 and Abram *is* mighty heavy in chattel,
in silver and in gold:
3 and he goes on his journeys
from the south even to Beth El,
to the place where his tent was at the beginning
between Beth El and Ai
4 — to the place of the sacrifice altar
which he worked there at the first:
and there Abram calls on the name of Yah Veh.
5 And Lot also, who goes with Abram,
has flocks and oxen and tents.
6 And because their acquisition *is* so great,
the land *is* not able to bear them to settle together
— so that they cannot settle together.
7 And there is a strife
between the tenders of the chattel of Abram
and the tenders of the chattel of Lot:
and the Kenaaniy and the Perizziy settle in the land.
8 And Abram says to Lot, I beseech you,
that there be no strife between me and between you
and between my tenders and between your tenders
— for we are men — brothers.
9 *Is* not the whole land at your face?
Separate, I beseech you, from me:
if left, I go to the right; or if right, I go to the left.
10 And Lot lifts his eyes
and sees all the environs of Yarden
— moistened everywhere,
at the face of Yah Veh ruining Sedom and Amorah,
as the garden of Yah Veh, as the land of Misrayim,
as you come to Soar:
11 and Lot chooses all the environs of Yarden;
and Lot pulls stakes east:
and they separate — man from brother.
12 Abram settles in the land of Kenaan
and Lot settles in the cities of the environs
and pitches his tent toward Sedom.
13 And the men of Sedom *are* evil
and sin mightily at the face of Yah Veh.
14 And after Lot separates from him
Yah Veh says to Abram,

GENESIS 13, 14

exeGes *ready research BIBLE*

Lift up *now* thine eyes,
and *look see* from the place where thou art
northward, and southward,
and eastward, and *westward seaward*:
15 For all the land which thou seest,
to thee *will shall* I give it,
and to thy seed *for ever unto eternity*.
16 And I *will make shall set* thy seed
as the dust of the earth:
so that if a man can number the dust of the earth,
then shall thy seed also be numbered.
17 Arise, walk through the land in the length of it
and in the breadth of it;
for I *will shall* give it unto thee.
18 Then Abram removed his tent,
and came and *dwelt settled*
in the *plain mighty oak* of Mamre, which is in Hebron,
and built there *an a sacrifice* altar
unto the *LORD Yah Veh*.

ABRAM RESCUES LOT

14

And *so be* it *came to pass*,
in the days of Amraphel *king sovereign* of Shinar,
Arioch king Aryoch sovereign of Ellasar,
Chedorlaomer king Kedorlaomer sovereign of Elam,
and Tidal *king sovereign of nations goyim*;
2 That these *made worked* war
with Bera *king sovereign* of Sodom *Sedom*,
and with Birsha *king sovereign* of Gomorrah *Amorah*,
Shinab *king sovereign* of Admah,
and *Schemeber Shem Eber*
king sovereign of Zeboiim *Seboim*,
and the *king sovereign* of Bela, which is *Zoar Soar*.
3 All these were joined together
in the *vale valley* of Siddim, which is the salt sea.
4 Twelve years they served *Chedorlaomer Kedorlaomer*,
and in the thirteenth year they rebelled.
5 And in the fourteenth year
came *Chedorlaomer Kedorlaomer*,
and the *kings sovereigns* that were with him,
and smote the *Rephaims Rephaim*
in Ashteroth *Karnaim Qarnaim*,
and the *Zuzims Zuziym* in Ham,
and the *Emims Emim* in Shaveh *Kiriathaim Qiryathayim*,
6 And the *Horites Horiy* in their mount Seir,
unto *Elparan El Paran*, which is by the wilderness.
7 And they returned, and came to *Enmishpat En Mishpat*,
which is *Kadesh Qadesh*,
and smote all the *country field*
of the *Amalekites Amaleqiy*,
and also the *Amorites Emoriy*,
that *dwelt settled* in *Hazezontamar Haseson Tamar*.
8 And there went out the *king sovereign* of Sodom *Sedom*,
and the *king sovereign* of Gomorrah *Amorah*,
and the *king sovereign* of Admah,
and the *king sovereign* of Zeboiim *Seboim*,
and the *king sovereign* of Bela (the same is *Zoar Soar*):
and they *joined battle arrayed in war* with them
in the *vale valley* of Siddim;
9 With *Chedorlaomer Kedorlaomer*
the *king sovereign* of Elam,
and with Tidal *king sovereign* of *nations goyim*,
and Amraphel *king sovereign* of Shinar,
and *Arioch king Aryoch sovereign* of Ellasar;
four *kings sovereigns* with five.
10 And the *vale valley* of Siddim
was *full of slimepits wells — wells of bitumin*;
and the *kings sovereigns*
of Sodom *Sedom* and Gomorrah *Amorah* fled,
and fell there;
and they that *remained survived* fled to the mountain.
11 And they took all the *goods acquisitions*
of Sodom *Sedom* and Gomorrah *Amorah*,
and all their *victuals food*, and went their way.
12 And they took Lot, Abram's brother's son,
who *dwelt settled* in Sodom *Sedom*,
and his *goods acquisitions*, and *departed went*.
13 And there came *one that had escaped an escapee*,
and told Abram the Hebrew;
for he *dwelt tabernacled*

GENESIS 13, 14

exeGes *companion BIBLE*

Lift your eyes and see from the place where you *are*
northward and southward and eastward and seaward:
15 for all the land you see,
I give to you and to your seed unto eternity:
16 and I set your seed as the dust of the earth:
so that if a man can number the dust of the earth,
then be your seed also numbered.
17 Arise, walk through the land
to the length and to the width; for I give it to you.
18 And Abram removes his tent
and comes and settles
in the mighty oak of Mamre in Hebron
and builds there a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh.

ABRAM RESCUES LOT

14

And so be it,
in the days of Amraphel sovereign of Shinar,
Aryoch sovereign of Ellasar,
Kedorlaomer sovereign of Elam
and Tidal sovereign of goyim:
2 that these work war with Bera sovereign of Sedom
and with Birsha sovereign of Amorah,
Shinab sovereign of Admah,
and Shem Eber sovereign of Seboim,
and the sovereign of Bela, which is Soar:
3 these all joined together in the valley of Siddim
— the salt sea.
4 Twelve years they serve Kedorlaomer
and in the thirteenth year they rebel:
5 and in the fourteenth year
Kedorlaomer and the sovereigns with him
come and smite the Rephaim in Ashteroth Qarnaim
and the Zuziym in Ham
and the Emim in Shaveh Qiryathayim
and the Horiy in their mount Seir
unto El Paran by the wilderness.
6 And they return and come to En Mishpat — Qadesh
and smite all the field of the Amaleqiy
and also the Emoriy settling in Haseson Tamar.
7 And the sovereign of Sedom
and the sovereign of Amorah
and the sovereign of Admah
and the sovereign of Seboim
and the sovereign of Bela — Soar
8 go and array in war with them in the valley of Siddim
— with Kedorlaomer sovereign of Elam
and with Tidal sovereign of goyim
and Amraphel sovereign of Shinar
and Aryoch sovereign of Ellasar
— four sovereigns with five.
9 And the valley of Siddim *is wells*
— wells of bitumin;
and the sovereigns of Sedom and Amorah flee
and fall there;
and they who survive flee to the mountain:
11 and they take all the acquisitions
and all the food of Sedom and Amorah
and go their way:
12 and they take Lot, the son of the brother of Abram,
who settles in Sedom
with his acquisitions and go.
13 And an escapee comes
and tells Abram the Hebrew;
and he tabernacles

GENESIS 14, 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

in the plain mighty oak of Mamre the Amorite Emoriy,
brother of Eshcol, and brother of Aner:

and these were confederate masters of a covenant
with Abram.

14 And when Abram heard
that his brother was taken captive captured,
he armed drew his trained servants hanukked,
born birthed in his own house,
three hundred and eighteen,
and pursued them unto Dan.

15 And he divided allotted himself against them,
he and his servants, by night,
and smote them, and pursued them unto Hobah,
which is on the left hand of Damascus Dammeseq.

16 And he brought back returned
all the goods his acquisitions,
and also brought again returned his brother Lot,
and his goods acquisitions,
and the women also, and the people.

17 And the king sovereign of Sodom Sedom
went out to meet him
after his return from the slaughter smiting
of Chedorlaomer Kedorlaomer,
and of the kings sovereigns that were with him,
at the valley of Shaveh,
which is the king's dale Ham Melech.

MALKI SEDEQ

18 And Melchizedek Malki Sedeq
king sovereign of Salem Shalem
brought forth bread and wine:
and he was the priest of the most high God El Elyon.

19 And he blessed him, and said,
Blessed be Abram of the most high God El Elyon,
possessor of heaven who chatted the heavens and earth:

20 And blessed be the most high God El Elyon,
which hath
delivered thine enemies bucklered thy tribulators
into thy hand.

21 And he gave him tithes of all.

22 And the king sovereign of Sodom Sedom
said unto Abram, Give me the persons souls,
and take the goods acquisitions to thyself.

22 And Abram said to the king sovereign of Sodom Sedom,
I have lift up mine hand unto the LORD Yah Veh,
the most high God El Elyon,

23 the possessor of heaven who chatted the heavens and earth,
That I will shall not take from a thread
even to a shoelatchet,

and that I will shall not take any thing aught that is thine,
lest thou shouldest say,

24 I have made Abram rich enriched Abram:

Save Except only that
which the young men lads have eaten,
and the portion allotment of the men
which went with me,

Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre;

let them take their portion allotment.

THE COVENANT OF YAH VEH TO ABRAM

15 After these things the word of the LORD Yah Veh
came became unto Abram in a vision, saying,
Fear Awe not, Abram: I am thy shield buckler,
and thy exceeding great reward mighty abounding hire.

2 And Abram said, Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh,
what wilt shalt thou give me, seeing I go childless barren,
and the steward son of the holdings of my house
is this Eliezer of Damascus Dammeseq?

3 And Abram said, Behold,
to me thou hast given no seed:
and, lo behold, one born in a son of my house
is mine heir supersedeth me.

4 And, behold,
the word of the LORD Yah Veh came unto him, saying,
This shall not be thine heir supersede thee;
but he that shall come forth
out of thine own bowels inwards
shall be thine heir supersede thee.

5 And he brought him forth abroad outside, and said,
Look now I beseech, toward heaven the heavens,

GENESIS 14, 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

in the mighty oak of Mamre the Emoriy,
the brother of Eshcol and brother of Aner
— masters of a covenant with Abram.

14 And Abram hears his brother is captured,
he draws his hanukked,
— three hundred and eighteen
birthed in his own house
and pursues them to Dan.

15 And he allots against them by night
— he and his servants
and smites them and pursues them to Hobah
at the left of Dammeseq.

16 And he returns all his acquisitions
and also returns his brother Lot and his acquisitions
and also the women and the people:
17 and the sovereign of Sedom goes out to meet him
after his return from the smiting of Kedorlaomer
and the sovereigns with him
at the valley of Shaveh — Ham Melech.

MALKI SEDEQ

18 And Malki Sedeq sovereign of Shalem
brings bread and wine;
and he is priest of El Elyon:

19 and he blesses him and says,
Blessed is Abram of El Elyon,
who chattels the heavens and earth:
20 and blessed is El Elyon,
who bucklers your tribulators into your hand.
— and he gives him tithes of all.

21 And the sovereign of Sedom says to Abram,
Give me the souls
and take the acquisitions to yourself.

22 And Abram says to the sovereign of Sedom,
I lift my hand to Yah Veh, El Elyon,
who chattels the heavens and earth,
23 that I not take from a thread even to a shoelatchet
and that I not take aught of yours,
lest you say, I enriched Abram!

24 — except only what the lads eat
and the allotment of the men who go with me
— Aner, Eshcol and Mamre;
they take their allotment.

THE COVENANT OF YAH VEH TO ABRAM

15 After these words,
so be the word of Yah Veh to Abram in a vision,
saying, Awe not, Abram! I am your buckler
and your mighty abounding hire.

2 And Abram says, Adonay Yah Veh,
what give you me — seeing I go barren
and the son of the holdings of my house
is this Eli Ezer of Dammeseq?

3 And Abram says, Behold, you give me no seed!
And behold, a son of my house supersedes me!

4 And behold, the word of Yah Veh says to him,
This one supersedes you not;
but he coming from your own inwards
supersedes you.

5 And he brings him outside and says,
Look, I beseech, toward the heavens

GENESIS 15, 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and tell **scribe** the stars,
if thou be able to *number* **scribe** them:
and he said unto him,
So **Thus** shall thy seed be.
6 And he *believed* **trusted** in the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and he *counted* **fabricated** it to him
for *righteousness* **justness**.
7 And he said unto him, *I am the LORD I* — **Yah Veh**
that brought thee out of Ur of the *Chaldees* **Kesediym**,
to give thee this land to *inherit* **possess** it.
8 And he said, *Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*,
whereby shall I know that I shall *inherit* **possess** it?
9 And he said unto him,
Take me an heifer of three *years old*,
and a she goat of three *years old*,
and a ram of three *years old*,
and a turtledove, and a *young pigeon* **youngling**.
10 And he took unto him all these,
and *divided* **sectioned** them in the midst,
and *laid each piece* **gave the sections**
one against another **man meeting friend**:
but the birds *divided* **sectioned** he not.
11 And when the *fowls* **swoopers**
came down **descended** upon the carcasses,
Abram drove them away.
12 And when the sun was going down,
a *deep sound* **sleep** fell upon Abram; and, *lo* **behold**,
an *horror* **a terror** of great darkness fell upon him.
13 And he said unto Abram,
Know of a surety **In knowing, know**
that thy seed shall be a *stranger* **sojourner**
in a land that is not their's,
and shall serve them;
and they shall *afflict* **humble** them four hundred years;
14 And also that *nation* **goyim**, whom they shall serve,
will I judge **shall I plead their cause**:
and *afterward* **thus** shall they come out
with great *substance* **acquisitions**.
15 And thou shalt go to thy fathers in *peace* **shalom**;
thou shalt be *buried* **entombed**
in a *good old age* **grayness**.
16 But in the fourth generation
they shall *come* **return** hither *again*:
for the *iniquity* **perversity** of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**
is not yet *full* **at shalom**.
17 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
that, when the sun went down, and it was *dark* **dusk**,
behold a smoking furnace,
and a *burning lamp* **flambeau of fire**
that passed between those pieces.
18 In the *same* **that** day
the **LORD** made **Yah Veh** cut a covenant with Abram,
saying, Unto thy seed have I given this land,
from the river of *Egypt* **Misrayim** unto the great river,
the river Euphrates:
19 The *Kenites* **Qeyniy**, and the *Kenizzites* **Qenaziy**,
and the *Kadmonites* **Qadmoniy**,
20 And the *Hittites* **Hethiy**,
and the *Perizzites* **Perizziy**, and the *Rephaims* **Rephaim**,
21 And the *Amorites* **Emoriy**, and the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
and the *Girgashites* **Girgashiy**, and the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**.
SARAY AND HAGAR

16

Now *Sarai* **Saray** Abram's *wife* **woman**
bare **birthed** him no children:
and she had an *handmaid* **a maid**,
an Egyptian **a Misrayim**, whose name was Hagar.
2 And *Sarai* **Saray** said unto Abram,
Behold *now* **I beseech**,
the **LORD** **Yah Veh** hath restrained me from *bearing* **birthing**:
I *pray* **beseech** thee, go in unto my maid;
it may be that **perhaps**
I may *obtain* **children** **be builded** by her.
And Abram hearkened to the voice of *Sarai* **Saray**.
3 And *Sarai* **Saray** Abram's *wife* **woman**
took Hagar her maid the *Egyptian* **Misrayim**,
after Abram had dwelt ten years
at the end of ten years that Abram had settled
in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,

GENESIS 15, 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and scribe the stars,
if you are able to scribe them:
— and he says to him, Thus becomes your seed.
6 And he trusts in Yah Veh;
and he fabricates it to himself for justness.
7 And he says to him, I — Yah Veh
who had you come from Ur of the Kesediym,
to give you this land to possess.
8 And he says, Adonay Yah Veh,
whereby know I that I possess it?
9 And he says to him, Take to me a heifer of three
and a she goat of three and a ram of three
and a turtledove and a youngling.
10 And he takes all these to him
and sections them in the midst
and gives the sections man meeting friend:
but the birds he sections not.
11 And when the swoopers descend on the carcasses,
Abram drives them away.
12 And the sun goes down
and a sound sleep falls on Abram;
and behold, a terror of great darkness befalls him:
and he says to Abram,
13 In knowing, know that your seed
is a sojourner in a land not theirs:
and they serve them;
and they humble them four hundred years:
and also that goyim whom they serve
— I plead their cause:
and thus they come out with great acquisitions.
15 And you go to your fathers in shalom;
— entombed in good grayness:
and in the fourth generation they return here:
for the perversity of the Emoriy is not yet at shalom.
17 And so be it,
when the sun sets and it is dusk,
behold, a smoking furnace and a flambeau of fire
passes between those pieces.
18 In that day Yah Veh cuts a covenant with Abram,
saying, To your seed I gave this land
— from the river of Misrayim
to the great river — the river Euphrates:
19 the Qeyniy and the Qenaziy and the Qadmoniy
20 and the Hethiy and the Perizziy and the Rephaim
21 and the Emoriy and the Kenaaniy
and the Girgashiy and the Yebusiy.

SARAY AND HAGAR

16

Now Saray the woman of Abram births not to him;
and she has a maid, a Misrayim, her name, Hagar:
2 and Saray says to Abram, Behold, I beseech,
Yah Veh restrains me from birthing:
I beseech you, go in to my maid;
perhaps I be built by her.
3 And Abram hearkens to the voice of Saray:
and Saray the woman of Abram
takes her maid, Hagar the Misrayim,
at the end of ten years
of Abram settling in the land of Kenaan

GENESIS 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and gave her to her husband man Abram
to be his wife woman.

4 And he went in unto Hagar, and she conceived:
and when she saw that she had conceived,
her mistress lady was despised abased in her eyes.

5 And Sarai Saray said unto Abram,
My wrong violence be upon thee:
I have given my maid into thy bosom;
and when she saw that she had conceived,
I was despised abased in her eyes:
the LORD Yah Veh judge between me and thee.

6 But Abram said unto Sarai Saray,
Behold, thy maid is in thy hand;
do work to her as it pleaseth thee is good in thine eyes.
And when Sarai dealt hardly with Saray humbled her,
she fled from her face.

7 And the angel of the LORD Yah Veh
found her by a fountain of water in the wilderness,
by the fountain in the way to Shur.

8 And he said, Hagar, Sarai's Saray's maid,
whence camest thou?
and whither wilt shalt thou go?
And she said,
I flee from the face of my mistress Sarai lady Saray.

9 And the angel of the LORD Yah Veh said unto her,
Return to thy mistress lady,
and submit humble thyself under her hands.

10 And the angel of the LORD Yah Veh said unto her,
In abounding,
I will multiply I shall abound thy seed exceedingly,
that it shall not be numbered scribed
for multitude abundance.

11 And the angel of the LORD Yah Veh said unto her,
Behold, thou art with child hast conceived,
and shalt bear birth a son,
and shalt call his name Ishmael Yishma El;
because the LORD Yah Veh
hath heard thy affliction humiliation.

12 And he will shall be a wild man human runner;
his hand will shall be against every man,
and every man's hand against him;
and he shall dwell tabernacle
in the presence at the face of all his brethren.

13 And she called the name of the LORD Yah Veh
that spake worded unto her, Thou God seest me El Roi:
for she said,
Have I also here looked seen after him that seeth me?
Wherefore the well was called
Beerlahairoi Beer Lachay Roi;
behold, it is between Kadesh Qadesh and Bered.

15 And Hagar bare birthed Abram a son:
and Abram called his son's name,
which Hagar bare birthed, Ishmael Yishma El.

16 And Abram
was fourscore a son of eighty and six years old,
when Hagar bare Ishmael birthed Yishma El to Abram.

17 And when so be it, Abram
was a son of ninety years and nine years old,
the LORD appeared to Yah Veh was seen by Abram,
and said unto him, I am the Almighty God I — El Shadday;
walk before me at my face,
and be thou perfect integrious.

2 And I will make shall give my covenant between me
and between thee,
and will multiply shall abound thee
exceedingly mightily mighty.

ABRAM RENAMED ABRAHAM

3 And Abram fell on his face:
and God talked Elohim worded with him, saying,
4 As for me Surely — I, behold, my covenant is with thee,
and thou shalt be a father
of many nations a multitude of goyim.

5 Neither shall thy name any more be called Abram,
but thy name shall be Abraham;
for a father of many nations a multitude of goyim
have I made given thee.

6 And I will make shall give thee
exceeding fruitful to mighty mightily bear fruit,
and I will make nations of thee shall give thee to be a goyim,

GENESIS 16, 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and gives her to her man Abram to be his woman.

4 And he goes in to Hagar and she conceives:
and when she sees that she conceives,
she abases her lady in her eyes.

5 And Saray says to Abram, My violence is on you:
I — I give my maid into your bosom;
and she sees that she conceives,
and is abased in her eyes:
Yah Veh judge between me and you.

6 And Abram says to Saray,
Behold, your maid is in your hand;
work to her as is good in your eyes.
— and Saray humbles her and she flees from her face.

7 And the angel of Yah Veh
finds her by a fountain of water in the wilderness
— by the fountain in the way to Shur:
and he says, Hagar, maid of Saray,
whence come you? And where go you?

And she says, I flee from the face of my lady Saray.

9 And the angel of Yah Veh says to her,
Return to your lady
and humble yourself under her hands.

10 And the angel of Yah Veh says to her,
In abounding, I abound your seed,
that it not be scribed for abundance.

11 And the angel of Yah Veh says to her,
Behold, you conceive and birth a son;
and call his name Yishma El;
because Yah Veh hears your humiliation:
and he is a human runner
with the hand of every man against him;
and he tabernacles at the face of all his brethren.

13 And she calls the name of Yah Veh
who words to her, El Roi/El Sees:
for she says,
Even here see I him who sees me?

14 Therefore the well is called Beer Lachay Roi;
behold — between Qadesh and Bered.

15 And Hagar births Abram a son:
and Abram calls the name of his son,
whom Hagar births, Yishma El:
and Abram is a son of eighty — six years,
when Hagar births Yishma El to Abram.

17 And so be it,
Abram is a son of ninety years and nine years
and Yah Veh is seen by Abram
and says to him, I am El Shadday;
walk at my face and be integrious:
and I give my covenant
between me and between you
and abound you mightily mighty.

ABRAM RENAMED ABRAHAM

3 And Abram falls on his face:
and Elohim words with him, saying,
4 Surely I — behold, my covenant is with you
and you become a father of a multitude of goyim:
and your name is no more called Abram,
but your name becomes Abraham;
for a father of a multitude of goyim I give you:
and I give you to mighty mightily bear fruit
and I give you to become a goyim;

GENESIS 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 and *kings* **sovereigns** shall come out of thee.
And I *will establish* **shall raise** my covenant
between me and **between** thee
and thy seed after thee in their generations
for an *everlasting* **eternal** covenant,
to be a *God* **Elohim** unto thee, and to thy seed after thee.
8 And I *will* **shall** give unto thee,
and to thy seed after thee,
the land *wherein thou art a stranger* **of thy sojournings**,
all the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
for an *everlasting* **eternal** possession;
and I *will* **shall** be their *God* **Elohim**.

COVENANT OF CIRCUMCISION

9 And *God* **Elohim** said unto Abraham,
Thou shalt *keep* **guard** my covenant therefore,
thou, and thy seed after thee in their generations.
10 This is my covenant, which ye shall *keep* **guard**,
between me and **between** you
and **between** thy seed after thee;
Every *man child* **male** among you shall be circumcised.
11 And ye shall *circumcise* **clip** the flesh of your foreskin;
and it shall be a *token* **sign** of the covenant
betwixt **between** me and **between** you.
12 And he that is a **son of** eight days *old*
shall be circumcised among you,
every *man child* **male** in your generations,
he that is *born* **birthed** in the house,
or *bought with money* **a chattel of silver**
of any **a son of a** stranger, which is not of thy seed.
13 He that is *born* **birthed** in thy house,
and he that is *bought with thy money* **a chattel of silver**,
in circumcising,
must needs **shall certainly** be circumcised:
and my covenant shall be in your flesh
for an *everlasting* **eternal** covenant.
14 And the uncircumcised *man child* **male**
whose flesh of his foreskin is not circumcised,
that soul shall be cut off from his people;
he hath broken my covenant.

SARAY RENAMED SARAH

15 And *God* **Elohim** said unto Abraham,
As for *Sarai* **Saray** thy *wife* **woman**,
thou shalt not call her name *Sarai* **Saray**,
but Sarah shall her name be.
16 And I *will* **shall** bless her,
and give thee a son also of her:
yea, I *will* **shall** bless her,
and she shall be a *mother of nations* **goyim**;
kings **sovereigns** of people shall be of her.
17 Then Abraham fell upon his face, and laughed,
and said in his heart,
shall a *child be born unto him* **he birth**,
that is a **son of** an hundred years *old*?
and shall Sarah,
that is a **daughter of** ninety years *old*, **bear birth**?
18 And Abraham said unto *God* **Elohim**,
O that *Ishmael* **Yishma El**
might live *before thee* **at thy face**!
19 And *God* **Elohim** said, Sarah thy *wife* **woman**
shall **bear birth** thee a son *indeed* **truly**;
and thou shalt call his name *Isaac* **Yischaq**;
and I *will establish* **shall raise** my covenant with him
for an *everlasting* **eternal** covenant,
and with his seed after him.
20 And as for *Ishmael* **Yishma El**, I have heard thee:
Behold, I have blessed him,
and *will make* **shall have** him *fruitful* **bear fruit**,
and *will multiply* **shall abound** him
exceedingly **mightily mighty**;
twelve *princes* **hierarchs** shall he *beget* **birth**,
and I *will make* **shall give** him for a great *nation* **goyim**.
21 But my covenant
will I establish **shall I raise** with *Isaac* **Yischaq**,
which Sarah shall **bear birth** unto thee
at this *set time* **season** in the next year.
22 And he *left off talking* **finished wording** with him,
and *God went up* **Elohim ascended** from Abraham.
23 And Abraham took *Ishmael* **Yishma El** his son,
and all that were *born* **birthed** in his house,

GENESIS 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 and sovereigns come from you:
and I raise my covenant
between me and between you
and your seed after you in their generations
for an eternal covenant,
to become Elohim to you and to your seed after you:
8 and I give to you and to your seed after you
the land of your sojournings
— all the land of Kenaan for an eternal possession;
and I become their Elohim.

COVENANT OF CIRCUMCISION

9 And Elohim says to Abraham, Guard my covenant
— you and your seed after you in their generations:
10 this *is* my covenant to guard
between me and between you
and between your seed after you;
circumcise every male among you:
11 and clip the flesh of your foreskin;
and it becomes a sign of the covenant
between me and between you:
12 and circumcise the son of eight days among you
— every male in your generations
— birthed in the house,
or a chattel of silver of a son of a stranger
not of your seed;
13 he who births in your house
and he who *is* a chattel of silver,
in circumcising, certainly circumcise:
that my covenant becomes in your flesh
for an eternal covenant:
14 and the uncircumcised male
whose flesh of his foreskin *is* not circumcised,
that soul becomes cut off from his people;
he broke my covenant.

SARAY RENAMED SARAH

15 And Elohim says to Abraham,
As for Saray your woman,
call not her name Saray, for her name *is* Sarah:
16 and I bless her and also give you a son of her:
yes, I bless her, that she becomes a goyim;
sovereigns of people become of her.
17 Then Abraham falls on his face and laughs
and says in his heart,
Birth — a son of a hundred years?
And Sarah, a daughter of ninety years, birth?
18 And Abraham says to Elohim,
O that Yishma El live at your face!
19 And Elohim says, Truly,
in birthing, Sarah your woman births you a son;
call his name Yischaq;
and I raise my covenant for an eternal covenant
with him and with his seed after him.
20 And as for Yishma El, I hear you:
behold, I bless him — fruitbearing
and abound him mightily mighty;
he births twelve hierarchs
and I give him for a great goyim.
21 But I raise my covenant with Yischaq,
whom Sarah births you at this season in the next year.
22 And he finishes wording with him
and Elohim ascends from Abraham:
23 and Abraham takes Yishma El his son
and all birthed in his house

GENESIS 17, 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and all that were
bought with his money a **chattel of silver**,
 every male among the men of Abraham's house;
 and circumcised the flesh of their foreskin
 in the selfsame day,
 as *God Elohim* had **said worded** unto him.
 24 And Abraham
 was a **son of** ninety years *old* and nine **years**,
 when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.
 25 And *Ishmael Yishma El* his son was thirteen *years old*,
 when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.
 26 In *the selfsame* **that** day was Abraham circumcised,
 and *Ishmael Yishma El* his son.
 27 And all the men of his house, *born birthed* in the house,
 and *bought with money* a **chattel of silver**
 of the **son of** a stranger,
 were circumcised with him.

THREE VISITORS

18

And *the LORD Yah Veh*
appeared unto **was seen by** him
 in the *plains mighty oak* of Mamre;
 and he sat in the tent **door opening** in the heat of the day;
 2 And he lift up his eyes and *looked saw*, and, *lo behold*,
 three men **stood stationed themselves** by him:
 and when he saw them,
 he ran to meet them from the tent **door opening**,
 and *bowed himself prostrated* toward the *ground earth*,
 3 And said, My *Lord Adonay*, *if now If*, **I beseech thee**,
 I have found *favour charism* in thy *sight eyes*,
 pass not away, *I pray beseech* thee, from thy servant:
 4 Let a little water, *I pray beseech* you, be *fetcht taken*,
 and *wash bathe* your feet,
 and *rest yourselves lean* under the tree:
 5 And *I will fetch shall take* a morsel of bread,
 and *comfort support* ye your hearts;
 after that ye shall pass on:
 for therefore are ye *come passed* to your servant.
 And they said, *So do work*, as thou hast *said worded*.
 6 And Abraham hastened into the tent unto Sarah,
 and said, *Make ready quickly Hasten*
 three *measures seahs* of fine *meal flour*,
 knead *it*, and *make cakes upon the hearth work ashcakes*.
 7 And Abraham ran unto the *herd oxen*,
 and *fetcht a calf took a son of the oxen* tender and good,
 and gave it unto a *young man lad*;
 and he hastened to *dress work* it.
 8 And he took butter, and milk,
 and the *calf son of the oxen*
 which he had *dressed worked*,
 and *set it before them gave it at their face*;
 and he stood by them under the tree, and they did eat.
 9 And they said unto him,
 Where is Sarah thy *wife woman*?
 And he said, Behold, in the tent.
 10 And he said,
In returning, *I will certainly shall* return unto thee
 according to the time of life,
 and, *lo behold*, Sarah thy *wife woman* shall have a son.
 And Sarah heard it in the tent **door opening**,
 which was behind him.
 11 Now Abraham and Sarah were *old aged*
 and well stricken in *age days*;
 and it ceased to be with Sarah
 after the *manner way* of women.
 12 Therefore Sarah laughed within herself, saying,
After I am waxed old worn out
 shall I have pleasure,
 my *lord adoni* being *old aged* also?
 13 And *the LORD Yah Veh* said unto Abraham,
Wherefore Why did Sarah laugh, saying,
Shall I of a surety bear truly birth?
a child, which am old I — aged?
 14 *Is any thing word too hard marvelous*
 for *the LORD Yah Veh*?
 At the *time appointed season I will shall* return unto thee,
 according to the time of life,
 and Sarah shall have a son.
 15 Then Sarah denied, saying, I laughed not;
 for she was *afraid awed*.

GENESIS 17, 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and all the chattels of silver
 — every male
 among the men of the house of Abraham;
 and circumcises the flesh of their foreskin
 in this selfsame day, as Elohim worded to him.
 24 And Abraham *is* a son
 of ninety years and nine years,
 being circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin:
 25 and Yishma El his son *is* a son of thirteen,
 being circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin:
 26 in this day
 Abraham and Yishma El his son become circumcised.
 27 And all the men of his house
 — birthed in the house
 and the chattels of silver of the son of a stranger
 become circumcised with him.

THREE VISITORS

18

And Yah Veh is seen by him
 in the mighty oaks of Mamre:
 and he sits in the tent opening in the heat of the day;
 2 and he lifts his eyes and sees, and behold,
 three men station themselves by him:
 and he sees them
 and runs to meet them from the tent opening
 and prostrates himself toward the earth,
 3 and says, My Adonay, If, I beseech you,
 I find charism in your eyes,
 pass not away, I beseech you, from your servant:
 4 take a little water, I beseech you,
 and bathe your feet and lean under the tree:
 5 and I take a morsel of bread, to support your hearts;
 and after that, you pass on:
 this is why you pass to your servant.
 And they say, Work thus, as you word.
 6 And Abraham hastens into the tent to Sarah
 and says, Hasten three seahs of fine flour,
 knead and work ashcakes.
 7 And Abraham runs to the oxen
 and takes a tender and good son of the oxen
 and gives it to a lad; and he hastens to work it:
 8 and he takes butter and milk
 and the son of the oxen he worked
 and gives it at their face;
 and he stands by them under the tree and they eat.
 9 And they say to him, Where *is* Sarah your woman?
 And he says, Behold, in the tent.
 10 And he says, In returning,
 I return to you according to the time of life
 and behold, to Sarah your woman — a son.
 — and Sarah hears it in the tent opening behind him.
 11 Now Abraham and Sarah
 are aged and well stricken in days;
 and the way of women ceased with Sarah:
 12 and Sarah laughs within herself, saying,
After I am worn out, have I pleasure,
 my adoni also being aged?
 13 And Yah Veh says to Abraham,
 Why this? Sarah laughs, saying,
 I — truly birth? I — aged?
 14 *Is any word too marvelous for Yah Veh?*
 At the season I return to you,
 according to the time of life
 and Sarah has a son.
 15 Then Sarah denies, saying, I laughed not;
 for she awes.

GENESIS 18

exeGeser ready research BIBLE

16 And he said, Nay; but thou didst laugh.
And the men rose up from thence,
and looked toward Sodom at the face of Sedom:
and Abraham went with them
to bring send them on the way.

17 And the LORD Yah Veh said,
Shall I hide from Abraham that thing which I do work;
18 Seeing that
in becoming, Abraham shall surely become
a great and mighty nation goyim,
and all the nations goyim of the earth
shall be blessed in him?
19 For I know him,
that he will command shall misvah his children sons
and his household after him,
and they shall keep guard the way of the LORD Yah Veh,
to do justice work justness and judgment;
that the LORD Yah Veh may bring upon Abraham
that which he hath spoken worded of him.

20 And the LORD Yah Veh said,
Because the cry of Sodom and Gomorrah Amorah
is great,
and because their sin is very grievous mighty heavy;
21 I will go down shall descend now,
and see whether they have done altogether fully worked
according to the cry of it, which is come unto me;
and if not, I will shall know.

22 And the men turned their faces from thence,
and went toward Sodom Sedom:
but Abraham stood yet still
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.

23 **ABRAHAM INTERCEDES WITH YAH VEH**
And Abraham drew near, and said,
Wilt Shalt thou also destroy scrape away
the righteous just with the wicked?
24 Peradventure there be fifty righteous just
within midst the city:
wilt shalt thou also destroy scrape away
and not spare the place
for the fifty righteous just that are therein within?
25 That be far Far be it from thee
to do after work this manner word,
to slay deathify the righteous just with the wicked:
and that the righteous it should be,
the just as the wicked,
that be far far be it from thee:
Shall not the Judge of all the earth
do right work judgment?

26 And the LORD Yah Veh said,
If I find in Sodom Sedom fifty righteous just
within midst the city,
then I will shall spare all the place for their sakes.

27 And Abraham answered and said,
Behold now I beseech,
I have taken upon me willed to speak word
unto the Lord Adonay,
which am but I — dust and ashes:
28 Peradventure there shall lack five
of the fifty righteous just:
wilt shalt thou destroy ruin all the city for lack of five?
And he said, If I find there forty and five,
I will shall not destroy ruin it.

29 And he spake worded unto him yet again, and said,
Peradventure there shall be forty found there.
And he said, I will shall not do work it for forty's sake.

30 And he said unto him, Oh I beseech,
let not the Lord be angry Adonay inflame,
and I will speak shall word:
Peradventure there shall thirty be found there.
And he said,
I will shall not do work it, if I find thirty there.

31 And he said, Behold now I beseech,
I have taken upon me willed to speak word
unto the Lord Adonay:
Peradventure there shall be twenty found there.
And he said, I will shall not destroy ruin it for twenty's sake.

32 And he said, Oh let not the Lord be angry Adonay inflame,
and I will speak shall word
yet but this once only this time:

GENESIS 18

exeGeser companion BIBLE

And he says, No — but you laughed.

16 And the men rise from there, at the face of Sedom:
and Abraham goes with them
to send them on their way.

17 And Yah Veh says,
Hide I what I work from Abraham?
18 seeing that in becoming,
Abraham becomes a great and mighty goyim,
with all the goyim of the earth being blessed in him?
19 For I know him,
that he misvahs his sons and his household after him
and they guard the way of Yah Veh,
to work justness and judgment;
so that Yah Veh brings on Abraham
what he words of him.

20 And Yah Veh says,
Because the cry of Sedom and Amorah is great
and because their sin is mighty heavy;
21 I now descend
and see whether they have fully worked
according to the cry thereof, which comes to me:
and if not, I know.

22 — and the men turn their faces from there
and go toward Sedom:
and Abraham stands still at the face of Yah Veh.

ABRAHAM INTERCEDES WITH YAH VEH

23 And Abraham draws near and says,
is it so that you scrape away the just with the wicked?
24 Perhaps there be fifty just midst the city:
is it so that you scrape away and not spare the place
for the fifty just inside?
25 Far be it from you to work this word,
to deathify the just with the wicked:
and that it be, as the just, as the wicked.
Far be it from you!
The Judge of all the earth, works he not judgment?

26 And Yah Veh says,
If I find in Sedom fifty just midst the city,
then I spare all the place for their sakes.

27 And Abraham answers and says,
Behold, I beseech, I will to word to Adonay,
I — dust and ashes:
28 Perhaps there lack five of the fifty just:
you — ruin the whole city for five?

And he says,
If I find there forty — five, I ruin not.

29 And he words to him yet again and says,
Perhaps there be forty found there.

And he says, I work it not for sake of forty.

30 And he says, I beseech,
Adonay, inflame not and I word:
Perhaps thirty be found there.

And he says, I work not, if I find thirty there.

31 And he says, Behold, I beseech,
I will to word to Adonay:
Perhaps there be twenty found there.

And he says, I ruin not for sake of twenty.

32 And he says, Oh Adonay, inflame not;
and I word this time only:

GENESIS 18, 19

exeGeser ready research BIBLE

Peradventure ten shall be found there.

And he said, I will **shall** not *destroy* **ruin** it for ten's sake.

33 And the **LORD Yah Veh** went his way,
as soon as he had *left communing* **finished wording**
with Abraham:
and Abraham returned unto his place.

SEDOM SCRAPED AWAY

19

And there came two angels
to *Sodom* **Sedom** at even;

and Lot sat in the *gate* **portal** of *Sodom* **Sedom**:
and Lot seeing them rose up to meet them;

and he *bowed himself* **prostrated**
with his *face* **nostrils** toward the *ground* **earth**;

2 And he said, Behold *now* I **beseech**, my *lords* **adonim**,
turn in, I *pray* **beseech** you, into your servant's house,
and *tarry all night* **stay overnight**,
and *wash* **bathe** your feet,
and ye shall *rise up* **start** early, and go on your ways.

And they said, Nay;

but we *will abide* **shall stay**

in the *street* **all night** **broadway** **overnight**.

3 And he *pressed upon* **urged** them *greatly* **mightily**;
and they turned in unto him, and entered into his house;
and he *made* **worked** them a *feast* **banquet**,
and did bake *unleavened bread* **matsah**, and they did eat.

4 But before they lay down,
the men of the city, *even* the men of *Sodom* **Sedom**,
compassed **surrounded** the house *round*,
both old and young **from aged to lad**,

all the people from every *quarter* **extremity**:

5 And they called unto Lot, and said unto him,
Where are the men which came in to thee this night?
bring them out unto us, that we may know them.

6 And Lot went out at the *door* **portal** unto them,
and shut the door after him,

7 And said, I *pray* **beseech** you, brethren,
do not so wickedly **vilify not**.

8 Behold *now* I **beseech**,

I have two daughters which have not known man;
let me, I *pray* **beseech** you, bring them out unto you,
and *do* **work** ye to them as is good in your eyes:
only unto these men *do* **nothing work no word**;
for therefore came they
under the shadow of my *roof* **beams**.

9 And they said, *Stand* **Draw** back.

And they said *again*, This one *fellow* came in to sojourn,
and *in judging*, he *will needs be* a **shall** judge:
now *will we deal worse with* **shall we vilify** thee,
(rather) than *with* them.

And they *pressed sore* **urged mightily** upon the man,
even Lot, and came near to break the door.

10 But the men *put forth* **spread** their hand,
and pulled Lot into the house to them,
and shut to the door.

11 And they smote the men
that were at the *door* **portal** of the house with blindness,
both small and great:
so that they wearied themselves to find the *door* **portal**.

12 And the men said unto Lot,
Hast thou here any besides?

son in law, and thy sons, and thy daughters,
and whatsoever thou hast in the city,
bring them out of this place:

13 For we *will destroy* **shall ruin** this place,
because the cry of them *is waxen great* **greateneth**
before at the face of the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and the **LORD Yah Veh** hath sent us to *destroy* **ruin** it.

14 And Lot went out,

and *spake* **worded** unto his *sons in law* **in laws**,
which *married* **had taken** his daughters,
and said, *Up* **Arise**, get you out of this place:
for the **LORD** will *destroy* **Yah Veh shall ruin** this city.

But he seemed as one that *mocked* **ridiculed**
unto his *sons in law* **in the eyes of his in laws**.

15 And *when* **as** the *morning* **arose dawn ascended**,
then the angels hastened Lot, saying,
Arise, take thy *wife* **woman**, and thy two daughters,
which are *here* **found**;

GENESIS 18, 19

exeGeser companion BIBLE

Perhaps ten be found there.

33 And he says, I ruin not for sake of the ten.
— and Yah Veh goes his way
as soon as he finishes wording with Abraham:
and Abraham returns to his place.

SEDOM SCRAPED AWAY

19

And two angels come to Sedom at evening;

and Lot sits in the portal of Sedom:

and Lot sees and rises to meet them;

and he prostrates — nostrils to the earth;

2 and he says, Behold I beseech, my adonim,
turn in, I beseech you, into the house of your servant
and stay overnight and bathe your feet
and start early and go on your ways.

And they say, No;

but we stay in the wideway overnight.

3

And he urges them mightily;

and they turn in to him and enter his house;
and he works them a banquet and bakes matsah
and they eat.

4

But ere they lie down,
the men of the city — the men of Sedom
surround the house
— from aged to lad

— all the people from every extremity:

5

and they call to Lot and say to him,
Where are the men who came in to you this night?
bring them out to us, for us to know them.

6

And Lot goes to them at the portal

and shuts the door after him,

7

and says, I beseech you, brothers, vilify not:

8

behold, I beseech,

I have two daughters who know no man;
I — I beseech you, I bring them out to you
and you work to them as is good in your eyes:
only work no word to these men;
and so they come under the shadow of my beams.

9

And they say, Draw back.

And they say, This one came in to sojourn
and in judging, he judges:
now we vilify you, rather than them.

And they urge mightily on the man, Lot
and come near to break the door.

10

And the men spread their hand
and pull Lot into the house to them
and shut the door:

11

and they smite the men at the portal of the house
with blindness
— both small and great:
so that they weary themselves to find the portal.

12

And the men say to Lot,

Have you here any besides?

Your in laws and your sons and your daughters
and whatever you have in the city,
bring them from this place;

13

for we ruin this place:

because their cry greatens at the face of Yah Veh;
and Yah Veh sends us to ruin it.

14

And Lot goes and words to his in laws

who took his daughters,

and says, Rise, get from this place:

for Yah Veh ruins this city!

— but he seems as one who ridicules
in the eyes of his in laws.

15

And as the dawn ascends, the angels hasten Lot,
saying, Rise,
take your woman and your two daughters
whom you find;

GENESIS 19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

lest thou be *consumed* **scraped away**
in the *iniquity* **perversity** of the city.
16 And while he lingered,
the men laid hold upon his hand,
and upon the hand of his *wife* **woman**,
and upon the hand of his two daughters;
the LORD **Yah Veh**
being *merciful* **compassionate** unto him:
and they brought him forth, and set him without the city.
17 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when they had brought them *forth abroad* **out**,
that he said, Escape for thy *life* **soul**;
look not behind thee,
neither stay thou in all the *plain* **environs**;
escape to the mountain,
lest thou be *consumed* **scraped away**.
18 And Lot said unto them,
Oh I beseech, not so, my *Lord* **adoni**:
19 Behold *now I beseech*,
thy servant hath found *grace* **charism** in thy *sight* **eyes**,
and thou hast *magnified* **greatened** thy mercy,
which thou hast *shewed* **worked** unto me
in *saving* **preserving** my *life* **soul alive**;
and I cannot escape to the mountain,
lest some evil *take me* **adhere**, and I die:
20 Behold *now I beseech*,
this city is near to flee unto, and it is a little one:
Oh I beseech, let me escape thither,
(is it not a little one?) and my soul shall live.
21 And he said unto him, *See* **Behold**,
I have *accepted thee* **spared thy face**
concerning this *thing* **word** also,
that I *will* **shall** not *overthrow* **overturn** this city,
for the which thou hast *spoken* **worded**.
22 Haste thee, escape thither;
for I *cannot do any thing* **can work no word**
till thou be come thither.
Therefore the name of the city was called *Zoar* **Soar**.
23 The sun was risen upon the earth
when Lot entered into *Zoar* **Soar**.
24 Then *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
rained upon *Sodom* **Sedom** and upon *Gomorrah* **Amorah**
brimstone **sulphur** and fire
from *the LORD* **Yah Veh** out of *heaven* **the heavens**;
25 And he *overthrew* **overturned** those cities,
and all the *plain* **environs**,
and all the *inhabitants of that* **settled** the cities,
and that which *grew* **sprouted** upon the *ground* **soil**.
26 But his *wife* **woman** looked back from behind him,
and she became a *pillar* **statue** of salt.
27 And Abraham *gat up* **started** early in the morning
to the place where he stood
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**:
28 And he looked *toward* **at the face of**
Sodom **Sedom** and *Gomorrah* **Amorah**,
and *toward* **at the face of**
all the land of the *plain* **environs**,
and *beheld* **saw**, and, *lo* **behold**,
the smoke of the *country* **went up** **land ascended**
as the smoke of a furnace.
29 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when *God* **Elohim**
destroyed **ruined** the cities of the *plain* **environs**,
that *God* **Elohim** remembered Abraham,
and sent Lot out of the midst of the *overthrow* **overturning**,
when he *overthrew* **overturned** the cities
in the which Lot *dwelt* **settled**.
30 And Lot *went up* **ascended** out of *Zoar* **Soar**,
and *dwelt* **settled** in the mountain,
and his two daughters with him;
for he *feared* **awed** to *dwelt* **settle** in *Zoar* **Soar**:
and he *dwelt* **settled** in a cave, he and his two daughters.
THE CHILDREN OF THE DAUGHTERS OF LOT
31 And the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** said unto the *younger* **lesser**,
Our father is old **hath aged**,
and there is not a man in the earth to come in unto us
after the *manner* **way** of all the earth:
32 *Come* **Go**, let us make our father drink wine,
and we *will* **shall** lie with him,

GENESIS 19

exeGeses companion BIBLE

lest you be scraped away
in the perversity of the city.
16 And he lingers
and the men uphold his hand
and the hand of his woman
and the hand of his two daughters;
Yah Veh being compassionate to him:
and they bring him and set him outside the city.
17 And so be it, when he brings them out, he says,
Escape for your soul;
neither look behind you, nor stay in all the environs!
Escape to the mountain, lest you be scraped away.
18 And Lot says to them,
Oh I beseech, not so, my adonim:
19 behold I beseech,
your servant found charism in your eyes
and you greatened your mercy,
which you worked to me in preserving my soul alive;
and I cannot escape to the mountain,
lest some evil adhere and I die:
20 behold, I beseech,
this city is near to flee to and it is a little one:
I beseech, that I escape thither,
— is it not a little one?
and my soul lives.
21 And he says to him, Behold,
I spare your face concerning this word also,
that I not overturn this city for which you word.
22 Hasten! Escape thither!
for I can work no word until you come there
— so they call the name of the city Soar.
23 The sun rises on the earth and Lot enters Soar:
24 and Yah Veh rains sulphur and fire
on Sedom and on Amorah
from Yah Veh from the heavens;
25 and he overturns those cities
and all the environs;
and all who settle the cities
and all that sprouts on the soil:
26 but his woman looks back from behind him
and she becomes a statue of salt.
27 And Abraham starts early in the morning
to the place where he stood at the face of Yah Veh:
28 and he looks at the face of Sedom and Amorah
and at the face of all the land of the environs;
and sees, and behold,
the smoke of the land ascends
as the smoke of a furnace.
29 And so be it,
as Elohim ruins the cities of the environs,
Elohim remembers Abraham;
and sends Lot from midst the overturning
in overturning the cities in which Lot settled:
30 and Lot ascends from Soar
and settles in the mountain with his two daughters;
for he awes to settle in Soar:
and he settles in a cave — he and his two daughters.
THE CHILDREN OF THE DAUGHTERS OF LOT
31 And the firstbirthed says to the lesser,
Our father ages
and there is no man in the earth to come in to us
after the way of all the earth:
32 come, we have our father drink wine
and we lie with him

GENESIS 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

33 that we may *preserve enliven* seed of our father.
And they made their father drink wine that night:
and the *firstborn firstbirthed* went in, and lay with her father;
and he perceived not when she lay down,
nor when she arose.
34 And **so be** it *came to pass* on the morrow,
that the *firstborn firstbirthed* said unto the *younger lesser*,
Behold, I lay yesternight with my father:
let us make him drink wine this night also;
and go thou in, and lie with him,
that we may *preserve enliven* seed of our father.
35 And they made their father drink wine that night also:
and the *younger lesser* arose, and lay with him;
and he perceived not when she lay down,
nor when she arose.
36 Thus *were both the the two* daughters of Lot
with child conceived by their father.
37 And the *firstborn bare firstbirthed birthed* a son,
and called his name Moab:
the same who is the father
of the *Moabites Moabiyim* unto this day.
38 And the *younger lesser*, she also *bare birthed* a son,
and called his name *Benammi Ben Ammi*:
the same who is the father
of the *children sons* of Ammon unto this day.

ABRAHAM PULLS STAKES

20

And Abraham
journeyed pulled stakes from thence
toward the south *country land*,
and *dwelled settled* between *Kadesh Qadesh* and Shur,
and sojourned in Gerar.
2 And Abraham said of Sarah his *wife woman*,
She is my sister:
and *Abimelech king Abi Melech sovereign* of Gerar sent,
and took Sarah.
3 But *God Elohim* came to *Abimelech Abi Melech*
in a dream by night,
and said to him, Behold, thou *art but a dead man diest*,
for the woman which thou hast taken;
for she is a *man's wife married to a master*.
4 But *Abimelech Abi Melech*
had not *come near approached* her:
and he said, *Lord Adonay*,
wilt shalt thou *slay slaughter* also
a *righteous nation just goyim*?
5 Said he not unto me, She is my sister?
and she, even she herself said, He is my brother:
in the integrity of my heart
and innocency of my *hands palms*
have I *done worked* this.
6 And *God Elohim* said unto him in a dream,
Yea, I know that thou *didst workedst* this
in the integrity of thy heart;
for I also withheld thee from sinning against me:
therefore *suffered gave* I thee not to touch her.
7 Now therefore restore the man his *wife woman*;
for he is a prophet, and he shall pray for thee,
and thou shalt live:
and if thou restore her not,
know thou that *in dying*, thou shalt *surely die*,
thou, and all that are thine.
8 Therefore *Abimelech Abi Melech*
rose started early in the morning,
and called all his servants,
and *told worded* all these *things words* in their ears:
and the men were *sore afraid mightily awed*.
9 Then *Abimelech Abi Melech* called Abraham,
and said unto him,
What hast thou *done worked* unto us?
and what have I *offended sinned against* thee,
that thou hast brought on me
and on my *kingdom sovereigndom* a great sin?
thou hast *done deeds worked works* unto me
that ought not to be *done worked*.
10 And *Abimelech Abi Melech* said unto Abraham,
What sawest thou,
that thou hast *done worked* this *thing word*?

GENESIS 19, 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to enliven seed of our father.
33 And that night, they have their father drink wine:
and the firstbirthed goes in and lies with her father;
and he perceives neither when she lies down
nor when she rises.
34 And so be it, on the morrow,
the firstbirthed says to the lesser,
Behold, I lay yesternight with my father:
we have him drink wine this night also;
and go you in and lie with him,
so that we enliven seed of our father.
35 And they have their father drink wine
this night also:
and the lesser rises and lies with him;
and he perceives neither when she lies down,
nor when she rises.
36 Thus the two daughters of Lot
conceive from their father.
37 And the firstbirthed births a son
and calls his name Moab
— the father of the Moabiyim to this day:
and the lesser also births a son
and calls his name Ben Ammi:
— the father of the sons of Ammon to this day.

ABRAHAM PULLS STAKES

20

And from there
Abraham pulls stakes toward the south land
and settles between Qadesh and Shur
and sojourns in Gerar.
2 And Abraham says of Sarah his woman,
She is my sister:
and Abi Melech sovereign of Gerar
sends and takes Sarah:
3 and Elohim comes to Abi Melech
in a dream by night and says to him,
Behold, you die;
for the woman you take *is* married to a master.
4 And Abi Melech had not approached her:
and he says, Adonay,
slaughter you also a just goyim?
5 Says he not to me, She *is* my sister?
and she — even she herself says, He *is* my brother:
in the integrity of my heart
and innocency of my palms worked I this.
6 And Elohim says to him in a dream,
Yes, I know you work this
in the integrity of your heart;
for I also withheld you
— even I from sinning against me:
so I gave you to not touch her:
7 and now restore the man his woman;
for he *is* a prophet;
and he prays for you to live:
and if you restore her not,
know this, in dying, you die,
you and all who *are* yours.
8 And Abi Melech starts early in the morning
and calls all his servants
and words all these words in their ears:
and the men awe mightily:
9 and Abi Melech calls Abraham and says to him,
What work you unto us?
And what sin I against you,
that you bring a great sin
on me and on my sovereigndom?
you work works unto me
that ought not to be worked.
10 And Abi Melech says to Abraham,
What see you, that you work this word?

GENESIS 20, 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

11 And Abraham said, Because I *thought said*,
Surely **Only** the *fear awe* of **God Elohim**
is not in this place;
and they *will slay shall slaughter* me
for my *wife's sake* **woman's word**.

12 And yet *indeed truly* she is my sister;
she is the daughter of my father,
but not the daughter of my mother;
and she became my *wife* **woman**.

13 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when **God Elohim** caused me to *wander stray*
from my father's house,
that I said unto her,
This is thy *kindness mercy*
which thou shalt *shew work* unto me;
at every place whither we shall come,
say of me, He is my brother.

14 And *Abimelech* **Abi Melech** took *sheep flocks*, and oxen,
and *menservants servants*, and *womenservants maids*,
and gave them unto Abraham,
and restored him Sarah his *wife* **woman**.

15 And *Abimelech* **Abi Melech** said,
Behold, my land *is before thee be at thy face*:
dwelt settle where it *pleaseth thee be good in thine eyes*.

16 And unto Sarah he said, Behold,
I have given thy brother a thousand *pieces of silver*:
behold, he is to thee a covering of the eyes,
unto all that are with thee, and with all *other*:
thus she was reprov'd.

17 So Abraham prayed unto **God Elohim**:
and **God Elohim** healed *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**,
and his *wife* **woman**, and his *maidservants maids*;
and they *bare children* **birthed**.

18 For **in restraining**,
the LORD Yah Veh had *fast closed up restrained*
all the wombs of the house of *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**,
because for sake of the word of Sarah
Abraham's *wife* **woman**.

SARAH BIRTHS YISCHAQ

21 And *the LORD Yah Veh*
visited Sarah as he had said,
and *the LORD did* **Yah Veh worked** unto Sarah
as he had *spoken* **worded**.

2 For Sarah conceived,
and *bare birthed* Abraham a son in his old age,
at the *set time* **season**
of which **God Elohim** had *spoken* **worded** to him.

3 And Abraham called the name of his son
that was *born birthed* unto him,
whom Sarah *bare birthed* to him, **Isaac Yischaq**.

4 And Abraham circumcised his son **Isaac Yischaq**
being a son of eight days *old*,
as **God Elohim** had *commanded* **misvahed** him.

5 And Abraham was **a son of** an hundred years *old*,
when his son **Isaac Yischaq** was *born birthed* unto him.

6 And Sarah said,
God Elohim hath *made worked* me to laugh,
so that all that hear will shall laugh with me.

7 And she said,
Who *would should* have *said uttered* unto Abraham,
that Sarah should have *given children suck suckled sons*?
for I have *born birthed* him a son in his old age.

8 And the child grew, and was weaned:
and Abraham *made worked* a great **banquet**
the *same day* that **Isaac Yischaq** was weaned.

9 And Sarah saw the son of Hagar the **Egyptian Misrayim**,
which she had *born birthed* unto Abraham,
mocking ridiculing.

10 Wherefore she said unto Abraham,
Cast out **Expel** this *bondwoman maid* and her son:
for the son of this *bondwoman maid*
shall not *be heir with supersede* my son,
even with **Isaac Yischaq**.

11 And the *thing word* was very **grievous mighty evil**
in Abraham's *sight eyes* because of his son.

12 And **God Elohim** said unto Abraham,
Let it not be *grievous evil* in thy *sight eyes*
because of the lad,
and because of thy *bondwoman maid*;

GENESIS 20, 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

11 And Abraham says, Because I say,
Only the awe of Elohim *is not in this place*;
and they slaughter me for word of my woman:
and yet truly she *is my sister*:
she *is the daughter of my father*
but not the daughter of my mother;
and she became my woman.

13 And so be it,
when Elohim strayed me from the house of my father,
I say to her, This *is the mercy you work to me*:
every place we go, say of me, He *is my brother*.

14 And Abi Melech takes flocks and oxen
and servants and maids
and gives them to Abraham
and restores him Sarah his woman:
and Abi Melech says,
Behold, my land at your face:
settle where it is good in your eyes.

16 And to Sarah he says, Behold,
I give your brother a thousand silver:
behold, he is to you a covering of the eyes,
to all who are with you and with all:
thus she *is reprov'd*.

17 So Abraham prays to Elohim:
and Elohim heals Abi Melech
and his woman and his maids;
and they birth.

18 For in restraining, Yah Veh restrains
all the wombs of the house of Abi Melech
for sake of the word of Sarah
the woman of Abraham.

SARAH BIRTHS YISCHAQ

21 And Yah Veh visits Sarah as he said
and Yah Veh works to Sarah as he worded:
and Sarah conceives
and births Abraham a son in his old age
at the season Elohim worded to him:
and Abraham calls the name of the son he births,
whom Sarah births to him, Yischaq;
and Abraham circumcises his son Yischaq
— a son of eight days,
as Elohim misvahed him:
and Abraham *is a son of* a hundred years
when he births his son Yischaq.

6 And Sarah says, Elohim works me laughter;
all who hear laugh with me.

7 And she says,
Who utters to Abraham, that Sarah ever suckle sons
— to birth him a son for his old age?

8 And the child grows and weans:
and Abraham works a great banquet
the day they wean Yischaq.

9 And Sarah sees the son of Hagar the Misrayim,
whom she birthed to Abraham, ridiculing:
and she says to Abraham,
Expel this maid and her son:
for the son of this maid supersedes not my son
— with Yischaq.

11 And the word is mighty evil in the eyes of Abraham
because of his son:
and Elohim says to Abraham,
Villify not in your eyes because of the lad
and because of your maid:

GENESIS 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

in all that Sarah hath said unto thee,
hearken unto her voice;
for in Isaac **Yischaq** shall thy seed be called.
13 And also of the son of the *bondwoman* **maid**
will I make a nation shall I set a goyim,
because he is thy seed.
14 And Abraham *rose up* **started** early in the morning,
and took bread, and a *bottle* **skin** of water,
and gave it unto Hagar,
putting it on her shoulder, and the child,
and sent her away:
and she *departed* **went**,
and *wandered* **strayed** in the wilderness
of *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**.
15 And the water
was *spent in* **finished off from** the *bottle* **skin**,
and she cast the child under one of the shrubs.
16 And she went,
and sat her down *over against him* **opposite**,
a *good way off* **away**, as it were a bowshot:
for she said, Let me not see the death of the child.
And she sat *over against him* **far removed**,
and lift up her voice, and wept.
17 And *God* **Elohim** heard the voice of the lad;
and the angel of *God* **Elohim**
called to Hagar out of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and said unto her, What aileth thee, Hagar? *fear* **awe** not;
for *God* **Elohim** hath heard the voice of the lad
where he is.
18 Arise, lift up the lad,
and *hold* **strengthen** him in thine hand;
for I *will make* **shall set** him a great *nation* **goyim**.
19 And *God* **Elohim** opened her eyes,
and she saw a well of water;
and she went, and filled the *bottle* **skin** with water,
and gave the lad drink.
20 And *God* **Elohim** was with the lad;
and he grew, and *dwelt* **settled** in the wilderness,
and *became an archer* **abounded with the bow**.
21 And he *dwelt* **settled** in the wilderness of Paran:
and his mother took him a *wife* **woman**
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
22 And **so be** it *came to pass* at that time,
that *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**
and *Phichol* **Pichol** the *chief captain* **governor** of his host
spake **said** unto Abraham, saying,
God **Elohim** is with thee in all that thou *doest* **workest**:
23 Now therefore *swear* **oath** unto me here by *God* **Elohim**
that thou *wilt* **shalt** not *deal falsely* **falsify** with me,
nor with my *son* **offspring**,
nor with my *son's son* **posterity**:
but according to the *kindness* **mercy**
that I have *done* **worked** unto thee,
thou shalt *do* **work** unto me,
and to the land wherein thou hast sojourned.
24 And Abraham said, I *will swear* **shall oath**.
25 And Abraham reproved *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**
because of a well of water,
which *Abimelech's* **Abi Melech's** servants
had *violently taken away* **stripped**.
26 And *Abimelech* **Abi Melech** said,
I *wot* **perceived** not
who hath *done* **worked** this *thing* **word**:
neither didst thou tell me, neither yet heard I of it,
but **until** to day.
27 And Abraham took *sheep* **flocks** and oxen,
and gave them unto *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**;
and *both* **the two** of them *made* **cut** a covenant.
28 And Abraham
set **stationed** seven ewe lambs of the flock by themselves.
29 And *Abimelech* **Abi Melech** said unto Abraham,
What *mean* — these seven ewe lambs
which thou hast *set* **stationed** by themselves?
30 And he said,
For these seven ewe lambs shalt thou take of my hand,
so that they may be a witness unto me,
that I have digged this well.
31 Wherefore he called that place *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**;
because there they *sware* **oathed** — *both* **the two** of them.

GENESIS 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

in all that Sarah says to you, hearken to her voice;
for your seed is called in Yischaq:
13 and I also set a goyim of the son of the maid
because he is your seed.
14 And Abraham starts early in the morning
and takes bread and a skin of water
and gives it to Hagar,
putting it and the child on her shoulder
and sends her away:
and she goes and strays
in the wilderness of Beer Sheba:
15 and the water is finished off from the skin
and she casts the child under one of the shrubs.
16 And she goes and sits down opposite
— away — about a bowshot:
for she says, O that I not see the death of the child.
— and she sits far removed
and lifts her voice and weeps.
17 And Elohim hears the voice of the lad;
and the angel of Elohim
calls to Hagar from the heavens, and says to her,
What ails you, Hagar? Awe not!
For Elohim hears the voice of the lad where he is.
18 Rise! Lift the lad and strengthen him in your hand;
for I set him to be a great goyim.
19 And Elohim opens her eyes
and she sees a well of water;
and she goes and fills the skin with water
and gives the lad drink.
20 And Elohim is with the lad;
and he grows and settles in the wilderness
and abounds with the bow:
21 and he settles in the wilderness of Paran:
and his mother takes him a woman
from the land of Misrayim.
22 And so be it, at that time,
Abi Melech and Pichol the governor of his host
say to Abraham, saying,
Elohim is with you in all you work:
23 and now oath to me here by Elohim
that you falsify neither with me,
nor with my offspring, nor with my posterity:
but according to the mercy I work to you,
you also work to me
— and to the land wherein you sojourn.
24 And Abraham says, I oath.
25 And Abraham reproves Abi Melech
because of a well of water,
which the servants of Abi Melech stripped.
26 And Abi Melech says,
I neither perceived who worked this word:
nor told you me, nor yet I — I hear until today.
27 And Abraham takes flocks and oxen
and gives them to Abi Melech;
and the two of them cut a covenant:
28 and Abraham stations seven ewe lambs of the flock
by themselves.
29 And Abi Melech says to Abraham,
What are these seven ewe lambs
you station by yourselves?
30 And he says,
Take these seven ewe lambs from my hand,
to become a witness to me that I digged this well.
31 So he calls that place Beer Sheba;
because there they oath — the two of them:

GENESIS 21, 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

32 Thus they made **cut** a covenant
at Beersheba **Beer Sheba**:
then *Abimelech* **Abi Melech** rose up,
and *Pichol* **Pichol** the *chief captain* **governor** of his host,
and they returned
into the land of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
33 And *Abraham* **he** planted a grove
in Beersheba **Beer Sheba**,
and called there on the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the *everlasting God* **eternal El**.
34 And Abraham sojourned
in the *Philistines'* land **of the Peleshethiym** many days.

ELOHIM TESTS ABRAHAM

22 And **so be** it came to pass, after these *things* **words**,
that *God did tempt* **Elohim tested** Abraham,
and said unto him, Abraham:
and he said, Behold, *here I am* — **I**.
2 And he said, Take now thy son,
thine only *son* **Isaac** **Yischaq**, whom thou lovest,
and *get thee* **go thou** into the land of *Moriah* **Mori Yah**;
and *offer* **holocaust** him there
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**
upon one of the mountains
which I *will tell thee* **of shall say**.
3 And Abraham *rose up* **started** early in the morning,
and *saddled* **harnessed** his ass **he burro**,
and took two of his *young men* **lads** with him,
and *Isaac* **Yischaq** his son,
and *clave* **split** the wood **timber**
for the *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
and rose up, and went unto the place
of which *God* **Elohim** had told him.
4 Then on the third day Abraham lifted up his eyes,
and saw the place afar off.
5 And Abraham said unto his *young men* **lads**,
Abide **Sit** ye here with the ass **he burro**;
and I and the lad *will* **shall** go *yonder* **thus**
and *worship* **prostrate**,
and *come again* **return** to you.
6 And Abraham took the wood **timber**
of the *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
and *laid set* it upon *Isaac* **Yischaq** his son;
and he took the fire in his hand, and a knife;
and they went *both* **the two** of them together.
7 And *Isaac spake* **Yischaq said** unto Abraham his father,
and said, My father:
and he said, Here *am* — **I**, my son.
And he said, Behold the fire and the wood **timber**:
but where is the lamb for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**?
8 And Abraham said, My son,
God will provide himself **Elohim shall see** a lamb
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
so they went *both* **the two** of them together.
9 And they came to the place
which *God* **Elohim** had told him of;
and Abraham built *an* **a sacrifice** altar there,
and *laid* **arranged** the wood **timber** *in order*,
and bound *Isaac* **Yischaq** his son,
and *laid set* him on the **sacrifice** altar
upon **above** the wood **timber**.
10 And Abraham *stretched forth* **spread** his hand,
and took the knife to *slay* **slaughter** his son.
11 And the angel of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
called unto him out of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and said, Abraham, Abraham:
and he said, Here *am* — **I**.
12 And he said, *Lay* **Spread** not thine hand upon the lad,
neither *do* **work** thou *any thing* **ought** unto him:
for *now* **at this time**
I know that thou *fearest* **God** **awest Elohim**,
seeing thou hast not withheld thy son,
thine only *son* from me.
13 And Abraham lifted up his eyes,
and *looked* **saw**, and behold,
behind *him* a ram *caught* **held** in a thicket by his horns:
and Abraham went and took the ram,
and *offered* **holocausted** him up
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**
in the stead of his son.

GENESIS 21, 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

32 and they cut a covenant at Beer Sheba:
then Abi Melech and Pichol the governor of his host
rise and return to the land of the Peleshethiy.
33 And he plants a grove in Beer Sheba
and calls on the name of Yah Veh, the eternal El:
34 and Abraham sojourns
in the land of the Peleshethiym many days.

ELOHIM TESTS ABRAHAM

22 And so be it, after these words,
Elohim tests Abraham, and says to him, Abraham!

And he says, Behold, — I.

2 And he says, Take now your son,
your only Yischaq, whom you love;
and go into the land of Mori Yah:
and holocaust him there for a holocaust
on one of the mountains I say.

3 And Abraham starts early in the morning
and harnesses his he burro
and takes two of his lads with him
and Yischaq his son;
and splits the timber for the holocaust
and rises and goes to the place Elohim told him.

4 On the third day Abraham lifts his eyes
and sees the place afar off:
5 and Abraham says to his lads,
Sit here with the he burro;
and I and the lad go thus and prostrate
and return to you.

6 And Abraham takes the timber of the holocaust
and sets it on Yischaq his son;
and he takes the fire in his hand and a knife;
and they go — the two of them together.

7 And Yischaq says to Abraham his father
and says, My father!

And he says, Here — I, my son.

And he says, Behold the fire and the timber:
but where *is* the lamb for a holocaust?

8 And Abraham says, My son,
Elohim sees the lamb for a holocaust.

9 So they go — the two of them together
and they come to the place Elohim told him;
and Abraham builds a sacrifice altar there
and arranges the timber and binds Yischaq his son
and sets him on the sacrifice altar above the timber
10 — and Abraham spreads his hand
and takes the knife to slaughter his son.

11 And the angel of Yah Veh
calls to him from the heavens
and says, Abraham! Abraham!

And he says, Here — I.

12 And he says, Neither spread your hand on the lad,
nor work ought to him:
for at this time I know you awe Elohim,
seeing you withhold not your son
— your only from me.

13 And Abraham lifts his eyes and sees, and behold,
behind a ram held in a thicket by his horns:
and Abraham goes and takes the ram
and holocausts him for a holocaust
in the stead of his son:

GENESIS 22, 23

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 And Abraham called the name of that place
Jehovahjireh **Yah Veh Yireh**:
as it is said to this day,
15 In the mount of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** it shall be seen.
And the angel of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
called unto Abraham out of *heaven* **the heavens**
the second time,
16 And said, By myself have I *sworn* **oathed**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
for because thou hast *done* **worked** this *thing* **word**,
and hast not withheld thy son, thine only son:
17 That in blessing, I *will* **shall** bless thee,
and in *multiplying* **abounding**,
I *will multiply* **shall abound** thy seed
as the stars of the *heaven* **heavens**,
and as the sand which is upon the sea *shore* **edge**;
and thy seed shall possess the *gate* **portal** of his enemies;
18 And in thy seed
shall all the *nations* **goyim** of the earth be blessed;
because thou hast *obeyed* **heard** my voice.
19 So Abraham returned unto his *young men* **lads**,
and they rose up
and went together to *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**;
and Abraham *dwelt* **settled** at *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**.
20 And **so be** it *came to pass*, after these *things* **words**,
that it was told Abraham, saying,
Behold, *Milcah* **Milchah**,
she hath also *born children* **birthed sons**
unto thy brother *Nahor* **Nachor**;
21 Huz his *firstborn* **firstbirthed**, and Buz his brother,
and *Kemuel* **Qemu El** the father of Aram,
22 And *Chesed* **Kesed**, and Hazo, and Pildash,
and *Jidlaph* **Yidlaph**, and *Bethuel* **Bethu El**.
23 And *Bethuel* **begat Rebekah Bethu El birthed Ribqah**:
these eight *Milcah* **Milchah**
did *bear* **birth** to *Nahor* **Nachor**, Abraham's brother.
24 And his concubine, whose name was Reumah,
she *bare* **birthed** also *Tebah* **Tebach**, and *Gaham* **Gacham**,
and *Thahash* **Thachash**, and Maachah.

THE DEATH OF SARAH

23 And **the life of** Sarah was an hundred years
and seven **years** and twenty years *old*:
these were — the years of the life of Sarah.
2 And Sarah died in *Kirjatharba* **Qiryath Arba**;
the same is Hebron in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**:
and Abraham came to *mourn* **chop** for Sarah,
and to weep for her.
3 And Abraham *stood up* **arose**
from *before* **the face of** his *dead* **who died**,
and *spake* **worded** unto the sons of Heth, saying,
4 I am a *stranger* **sojourner** and a *sojourner* **settler**
with you:
give me a possession of a *buryingplace* **tomb** with you,
that I may *bury* **my dead** **entomb mine who died**
out of my sight **from my face**.
5 And the *children* **sons** of Heth answered Abraham,
saying unto him,
6 Hear us, my *lord* **adoni**:
thou art a *mighty prince* **hierarch of Elohim** among us:
in the choice of our *sepulchres* **tombs**
bury thy dead **entomb thine who died**;
none **no man** of us
shall *withhold* **restrain** from thee his *sepulchre* **tomb**,
but that thou mayest
bury thy dead **entomb thine who died**.
7 And Abraham *stood up* **arose**,
and *bowed himself* **prostrated** to the people of the land,
even to the children **sons** of Heth.
8 And he *communed* **worded** with them, saying,
If it be your *mind* **soul**
that I should *bury* **my dead** **entomb mine who died**
out of my sight **from my face**;
hear me, and *intreat* **intercede** for me
to Ephron the son of *Zohar* **Sochar**,
9 That he may give me the cave of Machpelah,
which he hath, which is in the end of his field;
for *as much money as it is worth* **its full silver**
he shall give it me
for a possession of a *buryingplace* **tomb** amongst you.

GENESIS 22, 23

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 and Abraham calls the name of that place
Yah Veh Yireh/Appears
— as it is said in the mount to this day,
Yah Veh Yireh/Is seen!
15 And the angel of Yah Veh
calls to Abraham from the heavens the second time,
and says, I oath by myself
— an oracle of Yah Veh
for because you work this word
and withhold not your son, your only:
that blessing, I bless you
and abounding,
I abound your seed as the stars of the heavens
and as the sand on the sea edge;
and your seed possesses the portal of his enemies;
and in your seed
bless all the goyim of the earth;
because you hear my voice.
— and Abraham returns to his lads
and they rise and go together to Beer Sheba;
and Abraham settles at Beer Sheba.
20 And so be it, after these words, they tell Abraham,
saying, Behold, Milchah
— she also births sons to your brother Nachor:
21 Huz his firstbirth and Buz his brother
and Qemu El the father of Aram
and Kesed and Hazo and Pildash
and Yidlaph and Bethu El.
23 — and Bethu El births Ribqah:
Milchah births these eight to Nachor
the brother of Abraham.
24 And his concubine whose name is Reumah
— she also births Tebach and Gacham
and Thachash and Maachah.

THE DEATH OF SARAH

23 And the life of Sarah is a hundred years
and seven years and twenty years
— the years of the life of Sarah:
and Sarah dies in Qiryath Arba;
— Hebron in the land of Kenaan:
and Abraham comes to chop and to weep for Sarah:
and Abraham rises from the face of his who died
and words to the sons of Heth, saying,
4 I am a sojourner and a settler with you:
give me a possession of a tomb with you
to entomb mine who died from my face.
5 And the sons of Heth answer Abraham,
saying to him,
6 Hear us, my adoni:
you are a hierarch of Elohim among us:
in the choice of our tombs entomb yours who died;
no man of us restrains from you his tomb,
to entomb yours who died.
7 And Abraham rises and prostrates
to the people of the land — the sons of Heth:
and he words with them, saying,
If it is your soul
that I entomb mine who died from my face;
hear me and intercede for me
to Ephron the son of Sochar,
9 to give me the cave of Machpelah,
— his in the end of his field;
for its full silver
give it me for a possession of a tomb among you.

GENESIS 23, 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 And Ephron dwelt **settled**
among the *children* **sons** of Heth:
and Ephron the *Hittite* **Hethiy** answered Abraham
in the *audience* **ears** of the *children* **sons** of Heth,
even of all that went in at the *gate* **portal** of his city,
saying,
11 Nay, my *lord* **adoni**, hear me: the field give I thee,
and the cave that is therein, I give it thee;
in the *presence* **eyes** of the sons of my people
give I it thee:
bury thy dead **entomb thine who died**.
12 And Abraham *bowed down himself* **prostrated**
before **at the face of** the people of the land.
13 And he *spake* **worded** unto Ephron
in the *audience* **ears** of the people of the land, saying,
But if **only** thou *wilt give it*, I *pray thee* **shalt** hear me:
I *will* **shall** give thee *money* **silver** for the field;
take it of me,
and I *will* **bury shall entomb**
my dead **mine who died** there.
14 And Ephron answered Abraham, saying unto him,
15 My *lord* **adoni**, hearken unto me:
the land *is worth* four hundred shekels of silver;
what is that *betwixt* **between** me and thee?
bury therefore thy dead **entomb thine who died**.
16 And Abraham hearkened unto Ephron;
and Abraham weighed to Ephron the silver,
which he had *named* **worded**
in the *audience* **ears** of the sons of Heth,
four hundred shekels of silver,
current money **as passeth** with the merchant.
17 And the field of Ephron
which was in Machpelah,
which was *before* **at the face of** Mamre,
the field, and the cave which was therein,
and all the trees that were in the field,
that were in all the borders round about,
were made sure **raised**
18 Unto Abraham for a *possession* **chattel**
in the *presence* **eyes** of the *children* **sons** of Heth,
before **in front of** all that went in at the *gate* **portal** of his city.
19 And *after this thus*,
Abraham *buried* **entombed** Sarah his *wife* **woman**
in the cave of the field of Machpelah
before **at the face of** Mamre:
the same is Hebron in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**.
20 And the field, and the cave that is therein,
were made sure **raised** unto Abraham
for a *possession* of a *buryingplace* **tomb**
by the sons of Heth.

YISCHAQ AND RIBQAH

24 And Abraham *was old* **had aged**,
and well stricken in *age* **days**:
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
had blessed Abraham in all *things*.
2 And Abraham said
unto his *eldest* **elder** servant of his house,
that *ruled* **reigned** over all that he had,
Put, I pray thee, thy hand under my *thigh* **flank**:
3 And I *will make thee swear* **shall oath thee**
by *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the God **Elohim** of heaven **the heavens**,
and *the God* **Elohim** of the earth,
that thou shalt not take a *wife* **woman** unto my son
of the daughters of the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
among whom I *dwelt* **settle**:
4 But thou shalt go unto my *country* **land**,
and to my kindred,
and take a *wife* **woman** unto my son *Isaac* **Yischaq**.
5 And the servant said unto him,
Peradventure the woman *will* **willeth** not be *willing*
to *follow* **go after** me unto this land:
in returning, must I *needs bring* **return** thy son *again*
unto the land from whence thou camest?
6 And Abraham said unto him,
Beware **Guard** thou
that thou *bring* **return** not my son thither *again*.
7 *The LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of heaven **the heavens**,
which took me from my father's house,

GENESIS 23, 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 And Ephron settles among the sons of Heth:
and Ephron the Hethiy answers Abraham
in the ears of the sons of Heth,
of all entering the portal of his city, saying,
11 No, my adoni, hear me: I give you the field
and I give you the cave therein
— I give you in the eyes of the sons of my people:
entomb yours who died.
12 And Abraham prostrates
at the face of the people of the land:
and he words to Ephron
13 in the ears of the people of the land, saying,
If only you hear me:
I give you silver for the field; take it of me:
and there I entomb mine who died.
14 And Ephron answers Abraham, saying to him,
15 My adoni, hearken to me:
the land — four hundred shekels of silver;
what *is* that between me and between you?
entomb yours who died.
16 And Abraham hearkens to Ephron;
and Abraham weighs to Ephron the silver
he words in the ears of the sons of Heth
— four hundred shekels of silver
as passes with the merchant.
17 And the field of Ephron in Machpelah
at the face of Mamre
— the field and the cave therein
and all the trees in the field,
in all the borders all around
are raised
18 to Abraham for a chattel
in the eyes of the sons of Heth,
in front of all who go in at the portal of his city.
19 And thus, Abraham entombs Sarah his woman
in the cave of the field of Machpelah
at the face of Mamre
— Hebron in the land of Kenaan:
and the field and the cave therein
20 *are raised* to Abraham for a possession of a tomb
by the sons of Heth.

YISCHAQ AND RIBQAH

24 And Abraham ages — well stricken in days:
and Yah Veh blesses Abraham in all:
2 and Abraham says to the elder servant of his house
who reigns over all he has,
Put, I pray you, your hand under my flank:
3 and I oath you by Yah Veh,
Elohim of the heavens and Elohim of the earth,
that you not take a woman to my son
of the daughters of the Kenaaniy,
among whom I settle:
4 but go to my land and to my kindred
and take a woman to my son Yischaq.
5 And the servant says to him,
Perhaps the woman wills not
to go after me to this land:
in returning,
return I your son to the land whence you came?
6 And Abraham says to him,
Guard that you not return my son there.
7 Yah Veh Elohim of the heavens
who took me from the house of my father

GENESIS 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and from the land of my kindred,
and which *spake* **worded** unto me,
and that *sware* **oathed** unto me, saying,
Unto thy seed *will* **shall** I give this land;
he shall send his angel *before thee* **at thy face**,
and thou shalt take a *wife* **woman** unto my son from thence.
8 And if the woman *will* **willeth** not be *willing*
to *follow* **go after** thee,
then thou shalt be *clear* **exonerated** from this my oath:
only *bring* **return** not my son thither *again*.
9 And the servant put his hand
under the *thigh* **flank** of Abraham his *master* **adoni**,
and *sware* **oathed** to him concerning that *matter* **word**.
10 And the servant took ten camels
of the camels of his *master* **adoni**, and *departed* **went**;
for all the goods of his *master* **adoni** were in his hand:
and he arose, and went to *Mesopotamia* **Aram Naharaim**,
unto the city of *Nahor* **Nachor**.
11 And he made his camels to kneel *down* without the city
by a well of water at the time of the evening,
even the time that women go out to draw water **to bail**.
12 And he said, O *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim**
of my *master* **adoni** Abraham, I pray thee,
send me good speed **happen upon my face** this day,
and *shew kindness* **work mercy**
unto my *master* **adoni** Abraham.
13 Behold, I *stand here* **station myself**
by the *well* **fountain** of water;
and the daughters of the men of the city
come out to *draw* **bail** water:
14 And let it *come to pass* **become**,
that the *damsel* **lass** to whom I shall say,
Let down **Spread** thy pitcher, I pray thee, that I may drink;
and she shall say,
Drink, and I *will* **shall** give thy camels drink also:
let *the same* be she that thou hast *appointed* **approved**
for thy servant *Isaac* **Yischaq**;
and thereby shall I know
that thou hast *shewed kindness* **worked mercy**
unto my *master* **adoni**.
15 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
before he had *done speaking* **finished wording**,
that, behold, *Rebekah* **Ribqah** came out,
who was *born* **birthed** to *Bethuel* **Bethu El**,
son of *Milcah* **Milchah**,
the *wife* **woman** of *Nahor* **Nachor**, Abraham's brother,
with her pitcher upon her shoulder.
16 And the *damsel* **lass**
was *very fair* to *look upon* **mighty good looking**,
a virgin, neither had any man known her:
and she *went down* **descended** to the *well* **fountain**,
and filled her pitcher, and *came up* **ascended**.
17 And the servant ran to meet her, and said,
Let me, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
drink a little water of thy pitcher.
18 And she said, Drink, my *lord* **adoni**:
and she hastened,
and *let down* **lowered** her pitcher upon her hand,
and gave him drink.
19 And when she had *done* **finished** giving him drink,
she said, I *will draw water* **shall bail** for thy camels also,
until they have *done* **finished** drinking.
20 And she hastened,
and emptied her pitcher into the trough,
and ran again unto the well to *draw water* **bail**,
and *drew* **bailed** for all his camels.
21 And the man wondering at her *held his peace* **hushed**,
to *wit* **perceive** whether *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
had *made* **prospered** his journey *prosperous* or not.
22 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
as the camels had *done* **finished** drinking,
that the man took a golden *earring* **nosering**
of *half a shekel* **a bekah** weight,
and two bracelets for her hands
of ten *shekels* weight of gold;
23 And said, Whose daughter art thou?
tell me, I pray thee:
is there *room* **a place** in thy father's house
for us to *lodge in* **stay overnight**?

GENESIS 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and from the land of my kindred
and who had worded to me
and who oathed to me, saying,
I give this land to your seed
— he sends his angel at your face
to take a woman to my son from there.
8 And if the woman wills not to go after you,
then you are exonerated from this my oath:
only return not my son there.
9 And the servant puts his hand
under the flank of Abraham his adoni
and oaths to him concerning that word.
10 And the servant takes ten camels
of the camels of his adoni and goes;
and all the goods of his adoni in his hand:
and he rises and goes to Aram Naharaim
to the city of Nachor:
11 and he kneels his camels outside the city
by a well of water at the time of the evening
— at bailing time.
12 And he says,
O Yah Veh Elohim of my adoni Abraham,
I pray you, happen at my face this day
and work mercy to my adoni Abraham:
13 behold, I station myself by the fountain of water;
and the daughters of the men of the city
come to bail water:
14 and so be it, that the lass to whom I say,
Spread your pitcher, I pray you, Give me drink;
and she says,
Drink and I also give your camels drink
— that you approve her for your servant Yischaq;
and thereby I know
that you work mercy to my adoni.
15 And so be it, ere he finishes wording,
that behold, Ribqah,
who was birthed to Bethu El, son of Milchah,
woman of Nachor, brother of Abraham,
comes with her pitcher on her shoulder:
16 and the lass is mighty good looking,
a virgin, no man having known her:
and she descends to the fountain
and fills her pitcher and ascends.
17 And the servant runs to meet her and says,
I beseech you,
give me a little water from your pitcher to drink.
18 And she says, Drink, my adoni:
and she hastens and lowers the pitcher on her hand
and gives him drink:
19 and she finishes giving him drink
and she says, I also bail for your camels
until they finish drinking.
20 — and she hastens
and empties her pitcher into the trough
and runs again to the well to bail
and bails for all his camels.
21 And the man, wondering at her, hushes,
to perceive whether Yah Veh
prosperes his journey or not.
22 And so be it, as the camels finish drinking,
the man takes a golden nosering of a bekah weight
and two bracelets for her hands of ten weight of gold;
23 and says, Whose daughter are you?
Tell me, I pray you,
is there place in the house of your father
for us to stay overnight?

GENESIS 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

24 And she said unto him,
I am the daughter of *Bethuel* **Bethu El**
the son of *Milchah* **Milchah**,
which she *bare* **birthed** unto *Nahor* **Nachor**.
25 She said moreover unto him,
We have both **much** straw and provender *enough*,
and *room to lodge in* **place to stay overnight**.
26 And the man bowed *down his head*,
and *worshipped the LORD* **prostrated to Yah Veh**.
27 And he said,
Blessed be *the LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim**
of my *master* **adoni** Abraham,
who hath not *left destitute* **forsaken** my *master* **adoni**
of his mercy and his truth:
I being in the way, the LORD **Yah Veh** led me
to the house of my *master's* **adoni's** brethren.
28 And the *damsel* **lass** ran,
and told them of her mother's house these *things* **words**.
29 And *Rebekah* **Ribqah** had a brother,
and his name was Laban:
and Laban ran out unto the man, unto the *well* **fountain**.
30 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when he saw the *earring* **nosering**
and bracelets upon his sister's hands,
and when he heard the words
of *Rebekah* **Ribqah** his sister, saying,
Thus *spake* **worded** the man unto me;
that he came unto the man; and, behold,
he stood by the camels at the *well* **fountain**.
31 And he said, Come in,
thou blessed of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
wherefore standest thou without?
for I have prepared the house,
and *room* **place** for the camels.
32 And the man came into the house:
and he *ungirded* **loosed** his camels,
and gave straw and provender for the camels,
and water to *wash* **bathe** his feet,
and the men's feet that were with him.
33 And there was set *meat before him* **at his face** to eat:
but he said, I *will* **shall** not eat,
until I have *told mine errand* **worded my word**.
And he said, *Speak on* **Word**.
34 And he said, I am Abraham's servant.
35 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath blessed my *master* **greatly** **adoni mightily**;
and he *is become great* **greatened**:
and he hath given him
flocks, and *herds* **oxen**, and silver, and gold,
and *menservants* **servants**, and *maidservants* **maids**,
and camels, and *asses* **he burros**.
36 And Sarah my *master's wife* **adoni's woman**
bare **birthed** a son to my *master* **adoni** when she was *old* **aged**:
and unto him hath he given all that he hath.
37 And my *master* **made me swear** **adoni oathed me**,
saying, Thou shalt not take a *wife* **woman** to my son
of the daughters of the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
in whose land I *dwelt* **settle**:
38 But thou shalt go unto my father's house,
and to my *kindred* **family**,
and take a *wife* **woman** unto my son.
39 And I said unto my *master* **adoni**,
Peradventure
the woman *will* **willeth** not *follow* **to go after** me.
40 And he said unto me,
The LORD **Yah Veh**, *before whom* **at whose face** I walk,
will **shall** send his angel with thee,
and prosper thy way;
and thou shalt take a *wife* **woman** for my son
of my *kindred* **family**, and of my father's house:
41 Then shalt thou be *clear* **exonerated** from *this* my oath,
when thou comest to my *kindred* **family**;
and if they give not thee *one*,
thou shalt be *clear* **exonerated** from my oath.
42 And I came this day unto the *well* **fountain**, and said,
O LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim**
of my *master* **adoni** Abraham,
if now thou *do* prosper my way which I go:
43 Behold, I *stand* **station myself** by the *well* **fountain** of water;

GENESIS 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

24 And she says to him,
I *am* the daughter of Bethu El the son of Milchah
whom she birthed to Nachor.
25 She also says to him,
We have both much straw and provender
and place to stay overnight.
26 And the man bows and prostrates to Yah Veh:
27 and he says,
Blessed be Yah Veh Elohim of my adoni Abraham,
who forsakes not my adoni
of his mercy and his truth:
I — in the way, Yah Veh leads me
to the house of the brothers of my adoni.
28 And the lass runs and tells these words
to them of the house of her mother.
29 And Ribqah has a brother whose name is Laban:
and Laban runs out to the man, to the fountain:
30 and so be it,
when he sees the nosering
and bracelets on the hands of his sister
and when he hears the words of Ribqah his sister,
saying, Thus the man words to me;
that he comes to the man; and behold,
he stands by the camels at the fountain:
31 and he says, Come in, you blessed of Yah Veh;
why stand outside?
for I prepare the house and place for the camels.
32 And the man comes to the house:
and he loosens his camels
and gives straw and provender for the camels
and water to bathe his feet
and the feet of the men with him.
33 And they set at his face to eat:
but he says, I eat not until I word my word.
And he says, Word.
34 And he says, I *am* servant of Abraham:
35 and Yah Veh blessed my adoni mightily
and he greatened:
and he gave him flocks and oxen
and silver and gold and servants and maids
and camels and he burros.
36 And Sarah the woman of my adoni
birthed a son to my adoni when she was aged:
and gave him all he has.
37 And my adoni oathed me, saying,
Take not a woman to my son
of the daughters of the Kenaaniy
in whose land I settle:
38 but go to the house of my father and my family
and take a woman to my son.
39 And I say to my adoni,
Perhaps the woman wills to not go after me.
40 And he says to me,
Yah Veh, at whose face I walk,
sends his angel with you to prosper your way;
take a woman for my son
of my family and of the house of my father:
41 then you become exonerated from my oath
when you come to my family:
and if they not give you,
you become exonerated from my oath.
42 And I come this day to the fountain and say,
O Yah Veh Elohim of my adoni Abraham,
if now you prosper the way I go:
43 behold, I station myself by the fountain of water;

GENESIS 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and **so be** it shall come to pass,
 that when the virgin cometh forth to draw water **bail**,
 and I say to her, Give me, I pray thee,
 a little water of thy pitcher to drink;
 44 And she say to me, Both drink thou,
 and I **will shall** also draw **bail** for thy camels:
 let *the same* **that** be the woman
 whom *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *appointed out* **approved**
 for my *master's* **adoni's** son.
 45 And before I had *done speaking* **finished wording**
 in mine heart, behold,
Rebekah **Ribqah** came forth
 with her pitcher on her shoulder;
 and she *went down* **descended** unto the *well* **fountain**,
 and *drew water* **bailed**:
 and I said unto her, Let me drink, I pray thee.
 46 And she *made haste* **hastened**,
 and *let down* **lowered** her pitcher *from her shoulder*,
 and said, Drink,
 and I *will give* **shall water** thy camels *drink* also:
 so I drank, and she *made* **watered** the camels *drink* also.
 47 And I asked her, and said, Whose daughter art thou?
 And she said, the daughter of *Bethuel* **Bethu El**,
Nahor's **Nachor's** son,
 whom *Milcah* bare **Milchah** *birthed* unto him:
 and I put the *earring* **nosering** upon her *face* **nostrils**,
 and the bracelets upon her hands.
 48 And I bowed *down* **my head**,
 and *worshipped the LORD* **prostrated to Yah Veh**,
 and *blessed the LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim**
 of my *master* **adoni** Abraham,
 which had led me in the *right way* **of truth**
 to take my *master's* **adoni's** brother's daughter
 unto his son.
 49 And now
 if ye *will deal kindly* **shall work in mercy** and *truly* **truth**
 with my *master* **adoni**, tell me:
 and if not, tell me;
 that I may *turn* **face** to the right *hand*, or to the left.
 50 Then Laban and *Bethuel* **Bethu El** answered and said,
 The *thing word* proceedeth from *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
 we cannot *speak* **word** unto thee *bad* **evil** or good.
 51 Behold, *Rebekah is before* **Ribqah** *faceth* thee,
 take *her*, and go,
 and let her be thy *master's* **adoni's** son's *wife* **woman**,
 as *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded**.
 52 And **so be** it came to pass,
 that, when Abraham's servant heard their words,
 he *worshipped the LORD* **prostrated to Yah Veh**,
bowing himself **prostrating** to the earth.
 53 And the servant brought forth
jewels **instruments** of silver,
 and *jewels* **instruments** of gold,
 and *raiment* **clothing**, and gave *them* to *Rebekah* **Ribqah**:
 he gave also to her brother and to her mother
 precious *things*.
 54 And they did eat and drink,
 he and the men that were with him,
 and *tarried all night* **stayed overnight**;
 and they rose up in the morning, and he said,
 Send me away unto my *master* **adoni**.
 55 And her brother and her mother said,
 Let the *damsel abide* **lass sit** with us *a few* days,
 at the *least* **or** ten; after that she shall go.
 56 And he said unto them, *Hinder* **Delay** me not,
 seeing *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath prospered my way;
 send me away that I may go to my *master* **adoni**.
 57 And they said, We *will* **shall** call the *damsel* **lass**,
 and *inquire* **ask** at her mouth.
 58 And they called *Rebekah* **Ribqah**, and said unto her,
Wilt **Shalt** thou go with this man?
 And she said, I *will* **shall** go.
 59 And they sent away *Rebekah* **Ribqah** their sister,
 and her *nurse* **suckler**,
 and Abraham's servant, and his men.
 60 And they blessed *Rebekah* **Ribqah**, and said unto her,
 Thou art our sister,
 be thou *the mother of thousands* **myriads** of millions,

GENESIS 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and so be it,
 that when the virgin comes to bail
 and I say to her, Give me, I pray you,
 a little water from your pitcher to drink;
 44 and she says to me, Both, you drink;
 and I also bail for your camels
 — let that be the woman
 whom Yah Veh approves for the son of my adoni.
 45 And ere I finish wording in mine heart, behold,
 Ribqah comes with her pitcher on her shoulder;
 and she descends to the fountain and bails:
 and I say to her, Give me drink, I pray you.
 46 And she hastens and lowers her pitcher
 and says, Drink and I water your camels also:
 so I drink and she waters the camels also.
 47 And I ask her and say, Whose daughter are you?
 And she says, the daughter of Bethu El,
 the son of Nachor, whom Milchah birthed to him.
 — and I put the nosering on her nostrils
 and the bracelets on her hands:
 48 and I bow and prostrate to Yah Veh
 and bless Yah Veh Elohim of my adoni Abraham,
 who led me in the way of truth
 to take the daughter of the brother of my adoni
 to his son.
 49 And now
 if you work in mercy and truth with my adoni,
 tell me:
 and if not, tell me;
 so that I face right, or left.
 50 Then Laban and Bethu El answer and say,
 The word proceeds from Yah Veh:
 we cannot word to you evil or good.
 51 Behold, Ribqah faces you, take and go,
 to become the woman of the son of your adoni
 as Yah Veh worded.
 52 And so be it,
 when the servant of Abraham hears their words,
 he prostrates to Yah Veh — prostrating to the earth:
 53 and the servant brings instruments of silver
 and instruments of gold and clothing
 and gives them to Ribqah:
 he also gives preciousnesses
 to her brother and to her mother:
 54 and they eat and drink — he and the men with him
 and stay overnight;
 and they rise in the morning,
 and he says, Send me to my adoni.
 55 And her brother and her mother say,
 Let the lass sit with us days — or ten;
 and after that, go.
 56 And he says to them, Delay me not,
 seeing Yah Veh prospers my way;
 send me to go to my adoni.
 57 And they say,
 We call the lass and ask at her mouth.
 58 And they call Ribqah and say to her,
 Go you with this man?
 And she says, I go.
 59 And they send Ribqah their sister and her suckler
 and the servant of Abraham and his men:
 60 and they bless Ribqah and say to her,
 You are our sister — become myriads of millions,

GENESIS 24, 25

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and let thy seed
possess the **gate portal** of those which hate them.
61 And *Rebekah* **Ribqah** arose, and her *damsels* **lasses**,
and they rode upon the camels,
and followed **went after** the man:
and the servant took *Rebekah* **Ribqah**, and went *his way*.
62 And *Isaac* **Yischaq** came from the way
of the well *Lahairoi* **Beer Lachay Roi**;
for he *dwelt* **settled** in the south *country* **land**.
63 And *Isaac* **Yischaq** went out to meditate in the field
at the *eventide* **face of the evening**;
and he lifted up his eyes, and saw,
and, behold, the camels were coming.
64 And *Rebekah* **Ribqah** lifted up her eyes,
and when she saw *Isaac* **Yischaq**,
she *lighted* **fell** off the camel.
65 For she had said unto the servant,
What **very** man is this
that walketh in the field to meet us?
And the servant had said, It is my *master* **adoni**;
therefore she took a veil, and covered herself.
66 And the servant *told Isaac* **described to Yischaq**
all *things* **words** that he had *done* **worked**.
67 And *Isaac* **Yischaq** brought her
into his mother Sarah's tent,
and took *Rebekah* **Ribqah**,
and she became his *wife* **woman**; and he loved her:
and *Isaac* was *comforted* **Yischaq sighed**
after his mother's *death*.

ABRAHAM TAKES QETURAH

25

Then again Abraham took a *wife* **woman**,
and her name was *Keturah* **Qeturah**.
2 And she *bare* **birthed** him Zimran, and *Jokshan* **Yoqshan**,
and Medan, and *Midian* **Midyan**,
and *Ishbak* **Yishbaq**, and *Shuah* **Shuach**.
3 And *Jokshan* **begat Yoqshan birthed** Sheba, and Dedan.
And the sons of Dedan were *Asshurim* **Ashshuriym**,
and *Letushim* **Letushiym**, and *Leummim* **Leummiym**.
4 And the sons of *Midian* **Midyan**;
Ephah, and Epher, and Hanoch,
and *Abidah* **Abi Dah**, and *Eldaah* **El Daah**.
All these were the *children* **sons of Keturah Qeturah**.
5 And Abraham gave all that he had unto *Isaac* **Yischaq**.
6 But unto the sons of the concubines,
which Abraham had, Abraham gave gifts,
and sent them away from *Isaac* **Yischaq** his son,
while he yet lived, eastward, unto the east country.

DEATH OF ABRAHAM

7 And these are the days of the years
of Abraham's life which he lived,
an hundred **years**
threescore and fifteen **and seventy years and five** years.

8 Then Abraham *gave up the ghost* **expired**,
and died in a good *old age* **grayness**,
an old man **aged**, and *full of years* **satisfied**;
and was gathered to his people.
9 And his sons *Isaac* **Yischaq** and *Ishmael* **Yishma El**
buried **entombed** him in the cave of Machpelah,
in the field of Ephron
the son of *Zohar* **Sochar** the *Hittite* **Hethiy**,
which is *before* **at the face of** Mamre;
10 The field which Abraham *purchased* **chatteded**
of the sons of Heth:
there was Abraham *buried* **entombed**,
and Sarah his *wife* **woman**.
11 And **so be** it came to *pass*,
after the death of Abraham,
that *God* **Elohim** blessed his son *Isaac* **Yischaq**;
and *Isaac* **dwelt Yischaq settled**
by the well *Lahairoi* **Beer Lachay Roi**.

GENEALOGY OF YISHMA EL

12 Now these are the generations of *Ishmael* **Yishma El**,
Abraham's son, whom Hagar the *Egyptian* **Misrayim**,
Sarah's *handmaid* **maid**, *bare* **birthed** unto Abraham:
13 And these are the names
of the sons of *Ishmael* **Yishma El**,
by their names, according to their generations:
the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of *Ishmael* **Yishma El**,
Nebajoth **Nebayoth**;

GENESIS 24, 25

exeGeses companion BIBLE

so that your seed possesses the portal
of those who hate it.
61 And Ribqah and her lasses rise
and ride on the camels and go after the man:
and the servant takes Ribqah and goes.
62 And Yischaq
comes from the way of Beer Lachay Roi;
for he settles in the south land:
63 and Yischaq goes to meditate in the field
at the face of the evening;
and he lifts his eyes and sees,
and behold, the camels coming.
64 And Ribqah lifts her eyes
and she sees Yischaq, and she falls off the camel:
65 and she says to the servant,
Who *is* this very man walking in the field to meet us?
And the servant says, It *is* my adoni.
— and she takes a veil and covers herself.
66 And the servant describes to Yischaq
all words he worked.
67 And Yischaq brings her
into the tent of his mother Sarah
and takes Ribqah:
and she becomes his woman; and he loves her:
and Yischaq sighs after his mother.

ABRAHAM TAKES QETURAH

25

And Abraham adds to take a woman;
and her name *is* Qeturah:
2 and she births him Zimran and Yoqshan
and Medan and Midyan and Yishbaq and Shuach.

3 And Yoqshan births Sheba and Dedan.

4 And the sons of Dedan:
Ashshuriym and Letushiym and Leummiym.
And the sons of Midyan;
Ephah and Epher and Hanoch
and Abi Dah and El Daah.
All these *are* the sons of Qeturah.

5 And Abraham gives all he has to Yischaq.
6 And to the sons of the concubines Abraham has,
Abraham gives gifts
and sends them away from Yischaq his son
while he yet lives
eastward, to the east country.

DEATH OF ABRAHAM

7 And these *are* the days of the years
of the life Abraham lives:
a hundred years and seventy years and five years.
8 and Abraham expires and dies in a good grayness
— aged and satisfied — gathered to his people.
9 And his sons Yischaq and Yishma El
entomb him in the cave of Machpelah
in the field of Ephron the son of Sochar the Hethiy
at the face of Mamre;
10 in the field Abraham chatteded of the sons of Heth:
there they entomb Abraham and Sarah his woman.
11 And so be it, after the death of Abraham,
Elohim blesses his son Yischaq;
and Yischaq settles by Beer Lachay Roi.

GENEALOGY OF YISHMA EL

12 Now these *are* the generations of Yishma El
the son of Abraham,
whom Hagar the Misrayim the maid of Sarah
birthed to Abraham:
13 and these *are* the names of the sons of Yishma El,
by their names, according to their generations:
the firstbirth of Yishma El, Nebayoth;

GENESIS 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and Kedar **Qedar**, and *Adbeel* **Adbe El**, and Mibsam,
14 And Mishma, and Dumah, and Massa,
15 Hadar, and Tema,
Jetur **Yetur**, Naphish, and *Kedemah* **Qedemah**:
16 These are the sons of *Ishmael* **Yishma El**,
and these are their names,
by their *towns* **courts**, and by their *castles* **walls**;
twelve *princes* **hierarchs**
according to their *nations* **peoples**.
17 And these are the years of the life of *Ishmael* **Yishma El**,
an hundred **years** and thirty **years** and seven years:
and he *gave up the ghost* **expired** and died;
and was gathered unto his people.
18 And they *dwelt* **tabernacled** from Havilah unto Shur,
that is before Egypt at the face of Misrayim,
as thou goest toward *Assyria* **Ashshur**:
and he *died in the presence of* **fell facing** all his brethren.
GENEALOGY OF YISCHAQ
19 And these are the generations of *Isaac* **Yischaq**,
Abraham's son:
Abraham *begat Isaac* **birthed Yischaq**:
20 And *Isaac Yischaq* was a son of forty years old
when he took *Rebekah* **Ribqah** to wife woman,
the daughter of *Bethuel* **Bethu El**
the *Syrian Aramiy of Padanaram* **Paddan Aram**,
the sister to Laban the *Syrian Aramiy*.
21 And *Isaac Yischaq*
intreated the *LORD Yah Veh* for his wife woman,
because she was *barren* **sterile**:
and the *LORD Yah Veh* was intreated of him,
and *Rebekah* **Ribqah** his wife woman conceived.
22 And the *children sons*
struggled together **crushed** within her;
and she said, If it be so, why *am* I thus?
And she went to enquire of the *LORD Yah Veh*.
23 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto her,
Two *nations* **goyim** are in thy *womb* **belly**,
and two *manner of people* **nations**
shall be separated from thy *bowels* **inwards**;
and the *one people* **nation**
shall be stronger than the *other people* **nation**;
and the *elder* **greater** shall serve the *younger* **lesser**.
24 And when her days to *be delivered* **birth** were fulfilled,
behold, *there were* twins in her *womb* **belly**.
25 And the first came out *red ruddy*,
all over like an hairy *garment* **mighty mantle**;
and they called his name *Esau* **Esav**.
26 And after that came his brother out,
and his hand took hold on *Esau's* **Esav's** heel;
and his name was called *Jacob* **Yaaqov**:
and *Isaac Yischaq* was *threescore* a son of sixty years old
when she *bare* **birthed** them.
27 And the *boys* **lads** grew:
and *Esau* **Esav**
was a *cunning hunter* **man knowing hunting**,
a man of the field;
and *Jacob Yaaqov* was a *plain* **an integrious** man,
dwelling **settling** in tents.
28 And *Isaac Yischaq* loved *Esau* **Esav**,
because
he did eat of his venison of the hunt in his mouth:
but *Rebekah* **Ribqah** loved *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.
ESAV SELLS HIS FIRSTRIGHTS
29 And *Jacob* **sod Yaaqov** **seethed** pottage:
and *Esau* **Esav** came from the field,
and he was *faint* **languid**:
30 And *Esau* **Esav** said to *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
Feed me, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
with that same red pottage of that red, red;
for I am *faint* **languid**:
therefore was his name called Edom.
31 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** said,
Sell me this day thy *birthright* **firstrights**.
32 And *Esau* **Esav** said, Behold,
I am *at the point* **going** to die:
and what profit shall this *birthright* **do firstrights be** to me?
33 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** said, *Swear* **Oath** to me this day;
and he *sware* **oathed** unto him:
and he sold his *birthright* **firstrights** unto *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.

GENESIS 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and Qedar and Adbe El and Mibsam
14 and Mishma and Dumah and Massa
15 Hadar and Tema
Yetur, Naphish and Qedemah:
16 these are the sons of Yishma El
and these are their names,
by their courts and by their walls;
twelve hierarchs according to their peoples.
17 And these are the years of the life of Yishma El,
a hundred years and thirty years and seven years:
and he expires and dies — gathered to his people.
18 And they tabernacle from Havilah to Shur,
at the face of Misrayim as you go toward Ashshur:
and he falls facing all his brothers.
GENEALOGY OF YISCHAQ
19 And these are the generations of Yischaq
the son of Abraham:
Abraham births Yischaq:
20 and Yischaq is a son of forty years
and he takes Ribqah to woman,
the daughter of Bethu El the Aramiy of Paddan Aram
the sister to Laban the Aramiy.
21 And Yischaq intreats Yah Veh for his woman
because she is sterile:
and Yah Veh is intreated by him
and Ribqah his woman conceives:
22 and the sons crush within her;
and she says, If it be so, why am I thus?
— and she goes to enquire of Yah Veh.
23 And Yah Veh says to her,
Two goyim are in your belly
and two nations be separated from your inwards;
and nation is stronger than nation;
and the greater serves the lesser.
24 And her days to birth fulfill;
and behold, twins in her belly:
25 and the first comes out ruddy,
hairy all over as a mighty mantle;
and they call his name Esav:
26 and after that his brother comes out
and his hand takes hold on the heel of Esav
and they call his name Yaaqov:
and Yischaq is a son of sixty years
when she births them.
27 And the lads grow:
and Esav is a man knowing hunting
— a man of the field;
and Yaaqov — an integrious man, settling in tents:
28 and Yischaq loves Esav,
because of the hunt in his mouth;
and Ribqah loves Yaaqov.
ESAV SELLS HIS FIRSTRIGHTS
29 And Yaaqov seethes pottage:
and Esav comes from the field, languid:
30 and Esav says to Yaaqov,
Feed me, I beseech you, of that red, red;
for I languish:
— so they call his name Edom/Red.
31 And Yaaqov says, Sell me this day your firstrights.
32 And Esav says, Behold, I am going to die:
and what profit is this firstrights to me?
33 And Yaaqov says, Oath to me this day.
— and he oaths to him
and he sells his firstrights to Yaaqov:

GENESIS 25, 26

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

34 Then Jacob **Yaaqov** gave **Esau Esav**
bread and pottage of lentiles;
and he did eat and drink, and rose up, and went his way:
thus **Esau Esav** despised his *birthright* **firstrights**.
YISCHAQ AND ABI MELECH

26 And there was a famine in the land,
beside **apart from** the first famine
that was in the days of Abraham.
And **Isaac Yischaq** went unto **Abimelech Abi Melech**
king **sovereign** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym** unto Gerar.
2 And the **LORD** appeared unto **Yah Veh** was **seen by** him,
and said, *Go* **Descend** not down into *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
dwell **tabernacle** in the land which I shall *tell thee of* **say**:
3 Sojourn in this land,
and I will be **I AM** with thee, and will **shall** bless thee;
for unto thee, and unto thy seed,
I will **shall** give all these *countries* **lands**,
and I will *perform* **shall raise** the oath
which I *sware* **oathed** unto Abraham thy father;
4 And I will *make* **shall abound** thy seed to *multiply*
as the stars of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and will **shall** give unto thy seed all these countries;
and in thy seed
shall all the *nations* **goyim** of the earth be blessed;
5 Because that Abraham *obeyed* **heard** my voice,
and *kept* **guarded** my *charge* **guard**,
my *commandments* **misvoth**,
my statutes, and my *laws* **torahs**.
6 And **Isaac dwelt Yischaq settled** in Gerar:
7 And the men of the place asked him of his *wife* **woman**;
and he said, She is my sister:
for he *feared* **awed** to say, *She is my wife* **woman**;
lest, *said he*,
the men of the place should *kill* **slaughter** me
for *Rebekah* **Ribqah**;
because she was *fair to look upon* **good in visage**.
8 And **so be** it came to *pass*,
when he had *been there a long time* **prolonged his days**,
that **Abimelech Abi Melech**
king **sovereign** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**
looked *out at* **through** a window, and saw, and, behold,
Isaac **Yischaq** was *sporting* **entertaining**
with *Rebekah* **Ribqah** his *wife* **woman**.
9 And **Abimelech Abi Melech** called **Isaac Yischaq**,
and said, Behold, of a surety she is thy *wife* **woman**:
and how saidst thou, She is my sister?
And **Isaac Yischaq** said unto him,
Because I said, Lest I die for her.
10 And **Abimelech Abi Melech** said,
What is this thou hast *done* **worked** unto us?
one of the people
might *lightly* have *lien* **lain** with thy *wife* **woman**,
and thou shouldest have brought guiltiness upon us.
11 And **Abimelech Abi Melech**
charged **misvahed** all his people, saying,
He that toucheth this man or his *wife* **woman**
in deathifying, shall *surely be put to death* **be deathified**.
12 Then **Isaac Yischaq** *sowed* **seeded** in that land,
and *received* **found** in the same year an hundredfold:
and the **LORD** **Yah Veh** blessed him.
13 And the man *waxed great* **greatened**,
and *went forward in walking*, **walked**,
and *grew until he became very great*
in greatening, he greatened:
14 For he had *possession* **chattel** of flocks,
and *possession* **chattel** of herds **oxen**,
and *great store of servants* **servantry**:
and the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym** envied him.
15 For all the wells which his father's servants had digged
in the days of Abraham his father,
the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym** had stopped them,
and filled them with *earth* **dust**.
16 And **Abimelech Abi Melech** said unto **Isaac Yischaq**,
Go from us; for thou art *much* **mightily** mightier than we.
17 And **Isaac departed Yischaq went** thence,
and *pitched his tent* **encamped**
in the *valley* **wadi** of Gerar, and *dwelt* **settled** there.
18 And **Isaac Yischaq returned**
and *digged again* the wells of water,

GENESIS 25, 26

exeGeses companion BIBLE

34 and Yaaqov gives Esav
bread and pottage of lentiles;
and he eats and drinks and rises and goes his way:
thus Esav despises his firstrights.

YISCHAQ AND ABI MELECH

26 And there *is* a famine in the land,
apart from the first famine in the days of Abraham:
and Yischaq goes to Abi Melech
sovereign of the **Peleshethiym** to Gerar.

2 And Yah Veh is seen by him
and says, Descend not into Misrayim;
tabernacle in the land I say:
3 sojourn in this land
and I AM with you and bless you;
for I give all these lands to you and to your seed
and I raise the oath I oathed to Abraham your father
4 and I abound your seed as the stars of the heavens
and give all these countries to your seed:
and in your seed
all the goyim of the earth bless themselves
5 — because Abraham heard my voice
and guarded my guard,
my misvoth, my statutes and my torahs.

6 And Yischaq settles in Gerar:
7 and the men of the place ask him of his woman;
and he says, My sister:
for he awes to say, My woman;
lest the men of the place slaughter me for Ribqah;
because she *is* of good visage.

8 And so be it, as his days prolong,
Abi Melech *sovereign of the* **Peleshethiym**
looks through a window and sees, and behold,
Yischaq entertaining with **Ribqah** his woman:
9 and **Abi Melech** calls **Yischaq** and says,
Behold, surely she *is* your woman:
and how say you, She *is* my sister?

And Yischaq says to him,
Because, I say, Lest I die for her.

10 And **Abi Melech** says,
What *is* this you work to us?
Had one of the people lain with your woman,
you had brought guiltiness on us.

11 And **Abi Melech** misvahs all his people, saying,
Whoever touches this man or his woman
in deathifying, deathify him.

12 Then **Yischaq** seeds in that land
and in the same year finds a hundredfold:
and **Yah Veh** blesses him.
13 And the man greatens
and in walking, he walks;
and in greatening, he greatens:
14 and he has chattel of flocks and chattel of oxen
and great servantry:
and the **Peleshethiym** envy him.
15 For all the wells the servants of his father dug
in the days of Abraham his father,
the **Peleshethiym** stopped them
and filled them with dust.

16 And **Abi Melech** says to **Yischaq**, Go from us;
for you become mightily mightier than we.

17 And **Yischaq** goes from there
and encamps in the wadi of Gerar and settles there:
18 and **Yischaq** returns and digs the wells of water,

GENESIS 26, 27

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

which they had digged in the days of Abraham his father;
for the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym** had stopped them
after the death of Abraham:
and he called their names after the names
by which his father had called them.
19 And *Isaac's* **Yischaq's** servants
digged in the *valley* **wadi**,
and found there a well of *springing* **living** water.
20 And the *herdmen* **tenders** of Gerar
did strive with *Isaac's herdmen* **the tenders of Yischaq**,
saying, The water is ours:
and he called the name of the well **Eseq**;
because they *strove* **contended** with him.
21 And they digged another well, and strove for that also:
and he called the name of it **Sitnah**.
22 And he removed from thence,
and digged another well;
and for that they strove not:
and he called the name of it *Rehoboth* **Rechovoth**;
and he said, *For now* **At this time**
the LORD **Yah Veh** hath *made room* **widened** for us,
and we shall *be fruitful* **bear fruit** in the land.
23 And he went up **ascended** from thence
to *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**.
24 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
appeared unto **was seen by** him the same night,
and said, *I am the God* **I — Elohim** of Abraham thy father:
fear **awe** not, for I *am* with thee, and *will* **shall** bless thee,
and *multiply* **abound** thy seed
for my servant Abraham's sake.
25 And he builded *an* **a sacrifice** altar there,
and called upon the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *pitched* **spread** his tent there:
and there *Isaac's* **Yischaq's** servants digged a well.
THE COVENANT OF YISCHAQ WITH ABI MELECH
26 Then *Abimelech* **Abi Melech** went to him from Gerar,
and *Ahuzzath* **Achuz Zath** one of his *friends* **companions**,
and *Phichol* **Pichol**
the chief captain **governor** of his *army* **host**.
And *Isaac* **Yischaq** said unto them,
Wherefore **Why** come ye to me,
seeing ye hate me, and have sent me away from you?
28 And they said, *We saw certainly* **In seeing, we see**
that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** was with thee: and we said,
Let there be *now* **I beseech**, an oath *betwixt* **between** us,
even betwixt **between** us and thee,
and let us *make* **cut** a covenant with thee;
29 That thou *wilt do* **shalt work** us no *hurt* **evil**,
as we have not touched thee,
and as we have *done* **worked** unto thee
nothing but **only** good,
and have sent thee away in *peace* **shalom**:
thou art *now* **at this time**
the blessed of the LORD **Yah Veh**.
30 And he *made* **worked** them a *feast* **banquet**,
and they did eat and drink.
31 And they rose up *betimes* in the morning,
and *sware one* **oathed man** to another **brother**:
and *Isaac* **Yischaq** sent them away,
and they *departed* **went** from him in *peace* **shalom**.
32 And *so be* it *came to pass* the same day,
that *Isaac's* **Yischaq's** servants came,
and told him concerning the well which they had digged,
and said unto him, We have found water.
33 And he called it *Shebah* **Shibah**:
therefore the name of the city
is *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba** unto this day.
34 And *Esau* **Esav** was a **son of** forty years *old*
when he took to *wife* **woman**
Judith **Yah Hudith**
the daughter of *Beeri* the *Hittite* **Hethiy**,
and *Bashemath* **Bosmath**
the daughter of *Elon* the *Hittite* **Hethiy**:
35 Which were a *grief of mind* **bitter spirit**
unto *Isaac* **Yischaq** and to *Rebekah* **Ribqah**.

THE INADVERTENT BLESSING OF YISCHAQ

27 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
that when *Isaac* was *old* **Yischaq had aged**,
and his eyes were *dim* **weak**, so that he could not see,

GENESIS 26, 27

exeGeses companion BIBLE

which they dug in the days of Abraham his father;
for the Peleshethiym stopped them
after the death of Abraham:
and he calls their names
after the names his father called them.
19 And the servants of Yischaq dig in the wadi
and find there a well of living water:
and the tenders of Gerar
strive with the tenders of Yischaq,
saying, The water *is* ours:
and he calls the name of the well Eseq/Strife;
because they contend with him:
21 and they dig another well and strive for that also:
and he calls the name thereof Sitnah/Opposition:
and he removes from there and digs another well;
and for that they strive not:
and he calls the name thereof Rechovoth/Wideway;
and he says,
At this time Yah Veh widens for us
and we bear fruit in the land.
23 And he ascends from there to Beer Sheba:
and Yah Veh appears to him the same night
and says, I — Elohim of Abraham your father:
awe not, for I *am* with you and bless you
and abound your seed
for sake of my servant Abraham.
25 And he builds a sacrifice altar there
and calls on the name of Yah Veh
and spreads his tent there:
and there the servants of Yischaq dig a well.
THE COVENANT OF YISCHAQ WITH ABI MELECH
26 Then Abi Melech goes to him from Gerar
with Achuz Zath one of his companions
and Pichol the governor of his host.
27 And Yischaq says to them,
Why come to me,
seeing you hate me and sent me away from you?
28 And they say, In seeing,
we see Yah Veh is with you: and we say,
Let there become, I beseech, an oath between us
— between us and you
and that we cut a covenant with you
that you work us no evil:
29 as we touched you not
and as we worked only good to you
and sent you away in shalom:
you *are* at this time the blessed of Yah Veh.
30 And he works them a banquet
and they eat and drink:
31 and in the morning
they rise and oath man to brother:
and Yischaq sends them away
and they go from him in shalom.
32 And so be it, the same day,
the servants of Yischaq come
and tell him concerning the well they dug
and say to him, We found water.
33 And he called it Shibah/Seven:
so the name of the city
is Beer Sheba/Well Seven* to this day.
*Seven, as in an oath
34 And Esav *is* a son of forty years
when he takes to woman
Yah Hudith the daughter of Beeri the Hethiy
and Bosmath the daughter of Elon the Hethiy:
35 who *are* a bitter spirit to Yischaq and to Ribqah.

THE INADVERTENT BLESSING OF YISCHAQ

27 And so be it,
Yischaq ages and his eyes weaken for seeing;

GENESIS 27

exeGeser ready research BIBLE

1 he called *Esau Esav* his **eldest greater** son,
and said unto him, My son:
and he said unto him, Behold, *here am* — I.
2 And he said, Behold now, I *am old have aged*,
I know not the day of my death:
3 Now therefore *take bear*, I pray thee,
thy **weapons instruments**, thy quiver and thy bow,
and go out to the field,
and *take me some venison* **hunt me a hunt**;
4 And *make work* me *savoury meat delicacies*,
such as I love,
and bring it to me, that I may eat;
that my soul may bless thee before I die.
5 And *Rebekah Ribqah* heard
when *Isaac spake Yischaq worded* to *Esau Esav* his son.
And *Esau Esav* went to the field to hunt *for venison a hunt*,
and to bring it.
6 And *Rebekah spake Ribqah said* unto *Jacob Yaaqov*
her son, saying, Behold,
I heard thy father *speak word* unto *Esau Esav* thy brother,
7 saying,
Bring me *venison hunt*,
and *make work* me *savoury meat delicacies*,
that I may eat,
and bless thee *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh*
before at the face of my death.
8 Now therefore, my son, *obey hear* my voice
according to that which I *command misvah* thee.
9 Go now to the flock,
and *fetch take* me from thence two good kids of the goats;
and I *will make shall work* them
savoury meat delicacies for thy father,
such as he loveth:
10 And thou shalt bring it to thy father, that he may eat,
and that he may bless thee *before at the face of* his death.
11 And *Jacob Yaaqov* said to *Rebekah Ribqah* his mother,
Behold, *Esau Esav* my brother is a hairy man,
and I am a smooth man:
12 My father peradventure *will shall* feel me,
and I shall seem to *him in his eyes* as a deceiver;
and I shall bring a *curse an abasement* upon me,
and not a blessing.
13 And his mother said unto him,
Upon me be thy *curse abasement*, my son:
only *obey hear* my voice, and go *fetch take* me them.
14 And he went,
and *fetch took*, and brought them to his mother:
and his mother *made savoury meat worked delicacies*,
such as his father loved.
15 And *Rebekah Ribqah*
took *goodly raiment desirable clothing*
of her *eldest son Esau greater son Esav*,
which were with her in the house,
and *put them upon Jacob enrobed Yaaqov*
her younger son:
16 And she put the skins of the kids of the goats
upon his hands, and upon the smooth of his neck:
17 And she gave
the *savoury meat delicacies* and the bread,
which she had *prepared worked*,
into the hand of her son *Jacob Yaaqov*.
18 And he came unto his father, and said, My father:
and he said, Here *am* — I; who art thou, my son?
19 And *Jacob Yaaqov* said unto his father,
I am Esau I — *Esav* thy *firstborn firstbirthed*;
I have *done worked*
according as thou *badest worded* me:
arise, I *pray beseech* thee, sit and eat of my *venison hunt*,
that thy soul may bless me.
20 And *Isaac Yischaq* said unto his son,
How is it that thou hast *found it so quickly hasted to find*,
my son?
And he said, Because *the LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
brought it to me happened at my face.
21 And *Isaac Yischaq* said unto *Jacob Yaaqov*,
Come near, I *pray beseech* thee,
that I may *feel touch* thee, my son,
whether thou be my very son *Esau Esav* or not.

GENESIS 27

exeGeser companion BIBLE

1 he calls *Esav* his greater son,
and says to him, My son!
And he says to him, Behold — I.
2 And he says, Behold now, I age;
I know not the day of my death:
3 and now, I pray you, bear your instruments
— your quiver and your bow
and go to the field and hunt me a hunt;
4 and work me delicacies such as I love:
and bring to me to eat
so that my soul blesses you ere I die.
5 And Ribqah hears as Yischaq words to Esav his son:
and Esav goes to the field to hunt a hunt and bring it.
6 And Ribqah says to Yaaqov her son, saying,
Behold, I heard your father word to Esav your brother,
7 saying,
Bring me a hunt and work me delicacies;
and I eat and bless you at the face of Yah Veh
at the face of my death.
8 And now my son, hear my voice
— what I misvah you.
9 Go now to the flock
and take two good kids of the goats from there;
and I work delicacies for your father,
such as he loves:
10 and bring it to your father to eat
and he blesses you at the face of his death.
11 And Yaaqov says to Ribqah his mother,
Behold, Esav my brother *is* a hairy man
and I a smooth man:
12 perhaps my father feels me
and in his eyes I become a deceiver;
and I bring on me an abasement and not a blessing.
13 And his mother says to him,
On me *become* your abasement, my son:
only hear my voice and go take me them.
14 And he goes
and takes and brings them to his mother:
and his mother works delicacies,
such as his father loves:
15 and Ribqah takes desirable clothing
of her greater son Esav
which *are* with her in the house;
and enrobes Yaaqov her younger son:
16 and she puts the skins of the kids of the goats
on his hands and on the smooth of his neck:
17 and she gives the delicacies
and the bread she worked
into the hand of her son Yaaqov.
18 And he goes to his father and says, My father.
And he says, Here — I.
Who *are* you, my son?
19 And Yaaqov says to his father,
I — Esav your firstbirth;
I worked as you worded me:
rise, I beseech you, sit and eat of my hunt,
and that your soul bless me.
20 And Yischaq says to his son,
How hastened you to find, my son?
And he says,
Because Yah Veh your Elohim happened at my face.
21 And Yischaq says to Yaaqov,
Come near, I beseech you, and I touch you, my son,
whether you be my very son Esav or not.

GENESIS 27

exeGeser ready research BIBLE

22 And Jacob **Yaaqov**
went near unto **Isaac Yischaq** his father;
and he felt him, and said,
The voice is *Jacob's Yaaqov's* voice,
but the hands are the hands of **Esav Esav**.
23 And he *discerned* **recognized** him not,
because his hands were hairy,
as his brother **Esav's** hands:
so he blessed him.
24 And he said, Art thou my very son **Esav Esav**?
And he said, I *am*.
25 And he said, Bring it near to me,
and I *will* **shall** eat of my son's **venison hunt**,
that my soul may bless thee.
And he brought it near to him, and he did eat:
and he brought him wine, and he drank.
26 And his father **Isaac Yischaq** said unto him,
Come near *now* **I beseech**, and kiss me, my son.
27 And he came near, and kissed him:
and he *smelled* **scented**
the *smell* **scent** of his *raiment* **clothing**,
and blessed him, and said,
See, the *smell* **scent** of my son
is as the *smell* **scent** of a field
which the **LORD Yah Veh** hath blessed:
28 Therefore **God Elohim** give thee
of the dew of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and the fatness of the earth,
and *plenty of corn* **an abundance of crop** and *wine* **juice**:
29 Let people serve thee,
and nations *bow down* **prostrate** to thee:
be lord over thy brethren,
and let thy mother's sons *bow down* **prostrate** to thee:
cursed be every one that curseth thee,
and blessed be he that blesseth thee.
30 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
as soon as **Isaac Yischaq**
had *made an end of* **finished** blessing **Jacob Yaaqov**,
and **Jacob Yaaqov** was yet scarce **hardly** gone out
from the *presence* **face** of **Isaac Yischaq** his father,
that **Esav Esav** his brother came in from his hunting.
31 And he also had *made savoury meat* **worked delicacies**,
and brought it unto his father, and said unto his father,
Let my father arise, and eat of his son's **venison hunt**,
that thy soul may bless me.
32 And **Isaac Yischaq** his father said unto him,
Who art thou?
And he said, I am thy son, thy *firstborn* **Esav firstbirthed Esav**.
33 And **Isaac Yischaq** trembled
very exceedingly **a mighty great trembling**,
and said, Who?
where is he that hath *taken venison* **hunted the hunt**,
and brought it me,
and I have eaten of all before thou camest,
and have blessed him? yea, and he shall be blessed.
34 And when **Esav Esav** heard the words of his father,
he cried with a great and *exceeding* **mighty** bitter cry,
and said unto his father,
Bless me, *even* me also, O my father.
35 And he said, Thy brother came with *subtily* **fraud**,
and hath taken away thy blessing.
36 And he said,
Is not he rightly named **Jacob**?
So that his name be called Yaaqov;
for he hath *supplanted me* **tripped my heel**
these two times:
he took away my *birthright* **firstrights**;
and, behold, now he hath taken away my blessing.
And he said,
Hast thou not *reserved* **set aside** a blessing for me?
37 And **Isaac Yischaq** answered and said unto **Esav Esav**,
Behold, I have *made* **set** him thy lord,
and all his brethren have I given to him for servants;
and with *corn* **crop** and *wine* **juice** have I sustained him:
and what shall I *do* **work** now unto thee, my son?
38 And **Esav Esav** said unto his father,
Hast thou but one blessing, my father?

GENESIS 27

exeGeser companion BIBLE

22 And Yaaqov goes near to Yischaq his father;
and he feels him and says,
The voice *is* the voice of Yaaqov
but the hands *are* the hands of Esav.
23 — and he recognizes him not
because his hands *are* hairy
as the hands of his brother Esav:
and he blesses him:
24 and he says, Are you he — my son Esav?

And he says, I.

25 And he says, Bring it near to me
and I eat of the hunt of my son;
so that my soul blesses you.

And he brings it near to him and he eats;
and he brings him wine and he drinks:
and his father Yischaq says to him,
26 Come near, I beseech, and kiss me, my son.

27 And he comes near and kisses him:
and he scents the scent of his clothing
and blesses him and says,
See, the scent of my son
is as the scent of a field Yah Veh blesses:
28 and Elohim gives you of the dew of the heavens
and the fatness of the earth
and an abundance of crop and juice:
29 peoples serve you
and nations prostrate to you:
be lord over your brothers
and the sons of your mother prostrate to you:
cursed *are* they who curse you
and blessed *are* they who bless you.

30 And so be it,
as soon as Yischaq finishes blessing Yaaqov
and Yaaqov hardly goes
from the face of Yischaq his father,
Esav his brother comes in from his hunting:
31 and he also works delicacies
and brings them to his father and says to his father,
My father, rise and eat of the hunt of his son
so that your soul blesses me.

32 And Yischaq his father says to him, Who *are* you?

And he says, I *am* your son, your firstbirth Esav.

33 And Yischaq trembles a mighty great trembling
and says, Who?
Where *is* he who hunted the hunt and brought it
and I ate of all ere you came, and I blessed him?
yes, and he is blessed.

34 When Esav hears the words of his father,
he cries a great and mighty bitter cry
and says to his father,
Bless me — me also, O my father.

35 And he says, Your brother came with fraud
and took your blessing.
36 And he says,
His name *is* called Yaaqov;
for he has tripped my heel these two times:
he took away my firstrights;
and behold, now he takes away my blessing.

And he says, Set you not aside a blessing for me?

37 And Yischaq answers and says to Esav,
Behold, I set him your lord
and I gave him all his brothers for servants;
and with crop and juice I sustained him:
and what work I now to you, my son?

38 And Esav says to his father,
Have you but one blessing, my father?

GENESIS 27, 28

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

39 bless me, *even* — me also, O my father.
 And Esau **Esav** lifted up his voice, and wept.
 And Isaac **Yischaq** his father answered
 and said unto him, Behold,
 thy *dwelling settlement* shall be the fatness of the earth,
 and of the dew of *heaven* **the heavens** from *above* **Elyon**;
 40 And by thy sword shalt thou live,
 and shalt serve thy brother;
 and **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
 when thou shalt have *the dominion* **rambled on**,
 that thou shalt break his yoke from off thy neck.
 41 And Esau *hated Jacob* **Esav opposed Yaaqov**
 because of the blessing wherewith his father blessed him:
 and Esau **Esav** said in his heart,
 The days of mourning for my father *are at hand* **approach**;
 then *will* **shall** I *slay* **slaughter** my brother *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.
 42 And these words of Esau **Esav** her *elder* **greater** son
 were told to *Rebekah* **Ribqah**;
 and she sent and called *Jacob* **Yaaqov** her younger son,
 and said unto him, Behold, thy brother *Esau* **Esav**,
 as touching thee, doth *comfort* **sigh over** himself,
purposing to kill **slaughter** thee.
 43 Now therefore, my son, *obey* **hear** my voice;
 and arise, flee thou to Laban my brother to Haran;
 44 And *tarry* **settle** with him a few days,
 until thy brother's fury turn away;
 45 Until thy brother's *anger* **wrath** turn away from thee,
 and he forget that which thou hast *done* **worked** to him:
 then I *will* **shall** send, and *fetch* **take** thee from thence:
 why should I be *deprived* **bereaved** also
 of you *both* **two** in one day?
 46 And *Rebekah* **Ribqah** said to *Isaac* **Yischaq**,
 I am *weary of* **abhor** my life
because at the face of the daughters of Heth:
 if *Jacob* **Yaaqov** take a *wife* **woman**
 of the daughters of Heth,
 such as these *which are* of the daughters of the land,
what good shall my life do me **why live**?

YAAQOV AT BETH EL

28

And Isaac **Yischaq** called *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
 and blessed him, and *charged* **misvahed** him,
 and said unto him,
 Thou shalt not take a *wife* **woman**
 of the daughters of *Canaan* **Kenaan**.
 2 Arise, go to *Padanaram* **Paddan Aram**,
 to the house of *Bethuel* **Bethu El** thy mother's father;
 and take thee a *wife* **woman** from thence
 of the daughters of Laban thy mother's brother.
 3 And *God Almighty* **El Shadday** bless thee,
 and *make* **have** thee *fruitful* **bear fruit**,
 and *multiply* **abound** thee,
 that thou mayest be a *multitude* **congregation** of people;
 4 And give thee the blessing of Abraham,
 to thee, and to thy seed with thee;
 that thou mayest *inherit* **possess** the land
wherein thou art a stranger **of thy sojournings**,
 which *God* **Elohim** gave unto Abraham.
 5 And Isaac **Yischaq** sent away *Jacob* **Yaaqov**;
 and he went to *Padanaram* **Paddan Aram** unto Laban,
 son of *Bethuel* **Bethu El** the *Syrian* **Aramiy**,
 the brother of *Rebekah* **Ribqah**,
Jacob's **Yaaqov's** and *Esau's* **Esav's** mother.
 6 When *Esau* **Esav** saw
 that Isaac **Yischaq** had blessed *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
 and sent him away to *Padanaram* **Paddan Aram**,
 to take him a *wife* **woman** from thence;
 and that as he blessed him
 he gave **misvahed** him a *charge*, saying,
 Thou shalt not take a *wife* **woman**
 of the daughters of *Canaan* **Kenaan**;
 7 And that *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
obeyed **hearkened unto** his father and his mother,
 and was gone to *Padanaram* **Paddan Aram**;
 8 And *Esau* **Esav**
 seeing that the daughters of *Canaan* **Kenaan**
pleased not Isaac **were evil in the eyes of Yischaq** his father;

GENESIS 27, 28

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Bless me — me also, O my father.
 — and Esav lifts up his voice and weeps.
 39 And Yischaq his father answers and says to him,
 Behold,
 the fatness of the earth is your settlement
 and of the dew of the heavens from Elyon;
 40 and you live by your sword
 and serve your brother;
 and so be it, as you ramble on,
 that you break his yoke from your neck.
 41 And Esav opposes Yaaqov
 because of the blessing
 wherewith his father blessed him:
 and Esav says in his heart,
 The days of mourning for my father approach;
 then I slaughter my brother Yaaqov.
 42 And they tell Ribqah
 these words of Esav her greater son:
 and she sends and calls Yaaqov her younger son
 and says to him, Behold,
 your brother Esav sighs over himself regarding you,
 to slaughter you:
 43 and now my son, hear my voice;
 and rise, flee to Laban my brother to Haran;
 44 and settle with him a few days
 until the fury of your brother turns away;
 45 until the wrath of your brother turns from you
 and forgets what you worked to him:
 and I send and take you from there:
 why bereave me also of you two in one day?
 46 And Ribqah says to Yischaq,
 I abhor my life at the face of the daughters of Heth:
 if Yaaqov takes a woman of the daughters of Heth,
 such as these of the daughters of the land, why live?

YAAQOV AT BETH EL

28

And Yischaq calls Yaaqov
 and blesses him and misvahs him, and says to him,
 Take not a woman of the daughters of Kenaan.
 2 Rise, go to Paddan Aram,
 to the house of Bethu El the father of your mother;
 and from there
 take a woman of the daughters
 of Laban the brother of your mother:
 3 and El Shadday blesses you
 to bear fruit and abound you
 and there become a congregation of people;
 4 and give you the blessing of Abraham
 — to you and to your seed with you;
 to possess the land of your sojournings
 which Elohim gave to Abraham.
 5 And Yischaq sends Yaaqov:
 and he goes to Paddan Aram to Laban,
 son of Bethu El the Aramiy the brother of Ribqah
 the mother of Yaaqov and Esav.
 6 And Esav sees that Yischaq blesses Yaaqov
 and sends him to Paddan Aram
 to take a woman from there;
 and as he blesses him, he misvahs him, saying,
 Take not a woman of the daughters of Kenaan;
 7 and that Yaaqov hearkens
 to his father and his mother
 and goes to Paddan Aram;
 8 and Esav, seeing that the daughters of Kenaan
 are evil in the eyes of Yischaq his father;

GENESIS 28, 29

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

9 Then went *Esau* **Esav** unto *Ishmael* **Yishma El**,
and took unto the *wives* **women** which he had
Mahalath **Machalath**
the daughter of *Ishmael* **Yishma El** Abraham's son,
the sister of *Nebajoth* **Nebayoth**, to be his *wife* **woman**.
THE DREAM OF YAAQOV

10 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
went out from *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**,
and went toward Haran.
11 And he *lighted upon* **encountered** a certain place,
and *tarried* **stayed** there *all night* **overnight**,
because the sun was set;
and he took of the stones of that place,
and *put* **set** them for his *pillows* **headpieces**,
and lay down in that place *to sleep*.
12 And he dreamed,
and behold a ladder *set up* **stationed** on the earth,
and the top of it *reached to heaven* **touched the heavens**:
and behold the angels of *God* **Elohim**
ascending and descending on it.
13 And, behold,
the LORD stood **Yah Veh** **stationed himself** above it,
and said,
I am the LORD God I — **Yah Veh Elohim**
of Abraham thy father,
and *the God of Isaac* **Elohim of Yischaq**:
the land whereon thou liest,
to thee *will* **shall** I give it, and to thy seed;
14 And thy seed shall be as the dust of the earth,
and thou shalt *spread abroad* **break forth**
to the west **sea**, and to the east,
and to the north, and to the south:
and in thee and in thy seed
shall all the families of the *earth* **soil** be blessed.
15 And, behold, I *am* with thee,
and *will keep* **shall guard** thee
in all *places* whither thou goest,
and *will bring* **shall return** thee *again* into this *land* **soil**;
for I *will* **shall** not leave thee,
until I have *done* **worked**
that which I have *spoken* **worded** to thee of.
16 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** awaked out of his sleep,
and he said, Surely *the LORD* **Yah Veh** is in this place;
and I knew it not.
17 And he was *afraid* **awed**, and said,
How *dreadful* **awesome** is this place!
this is none other but *the house of God* **Beth Elohim**,
and this is the *gate* **portal** of *heaven* **the heavens**.
18 And *Jacob rose up* **Yaaqov started** early in the morning,
and took the stone
that he had *put* **set** for his *pillows* **headpieces**,
and set it up for a *pillar* **monolith**,
and poured oil upon the top of it.
19 And he called the name of that place *Bethel* **Beth El**:
but the name of that city was *called* **Luz** at the first.
20 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** vowed a vow, saying,
If *God will* **Elohim shall** be with me,
and *will keep* **shall guard** me in this way that I go,
and *will* **shall** give me bread to eat,
and *raiment* **clothing** to *put on* **enrobe**,
21 So that I *come again* **return** to my father's house
in *peace* **shalom**;
then shall *the LORD* **Yah Veh** be my *God* **Elohim**:
22 And this stone, which I have set for a *pillar* **monolith**,
shall be *God's house* **Beth Elohim**:
and of all that thou shalt give me
I will surely give the tenth
In tithing, I shall tithe unto thee.

YAAQOV AND RACHEL

29 Then *Jacob* **Yaaqov** *went on his journey* **lifted his feet**,
and *came* **went** into the land of the *people* **sons** of the east.
2 And he *looked saw*, and behold, a well in the field,
and, *lo* **behold**,
there were three *flocks* **droves** of *sheep* **flocks**
lying **crouched** by it;
for out of that well
they *watered* **moistened** the *flocks* **droves**:
and a great stone was upon the well's mouth.
3 And thither were all the *flocks* **droves** gathered:

GENESIS 28, 29

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 Esav goes to Yishma El and takes and adds
Machalath the daughter of Yishma El
the son of Abraham the sister of Nebayoth
to the women he has, to be his woman.
THE DREAM OF YAAQOV

10 And Yaaqov goes out from Beer Sheba
and goes toward Haran:
11 and he encounters a certain place
and stays there overnight, because the sun had set;
and he takes stones of that place
and sets them for his headpieces;
and lays down in that place:
12 and he dreams, and behold,
a ladder stationed on the earth
and the top thereof touches the heavens:
and behold the angels of Elohim
ascending and descending thereon:
13 and behold,
Yah Veh stations himself above it and says,
I — Yah Veh Elohim of Abraham your father
and Elohim of Yischaq:
I give the land whereon you lie
to you and to your seed;
14 and your seed becomes as the dust of the earth
and you break forth to the sea and to the east
and to the north and to the south:
and in you and in your seed
all the families of the soil become blessed.
15 And behold, I *am* with you
and guard you everywhere you go;
and return you into this soil;
for I leave you not
until I work what I word to you.
16 And Yaaqov wakens from his sleep, and he says,
Surely Yah Veh *is* in this place;
and I know it not.
17 And he awes and says,
How awesome this place!
this *is* none other but Beth Elohim
and this *is* the portal of the heavens.
18 And Yaaqov starts early in the morning
and takes the stone he set for his headpieces
and sets it for a monolith;
and pours oil on the top thereof:
19 and he calls the name of that place Beth El:
but the name of that city was Luz at first.
20 And Yaaqov vows a vow, saying,
Elohim is with me
and guards me in this way I go
and gives me bread to eat and clothing to enrobe,
so that I return to the house of my father in shalom;
then Yah Veh becomes my Elohim:
21 and this stone, which I set for a monolith,
becomes Beth Elohim:
22 and of all you give me, in tithing, I tithe to you.

YAAQOV AND RACHEL

29 Then Yaaqov lifts his feet
and goes into the land of the sons of the east:
2 and he sees, and behold, a well in the field
and behold, three droves of flocks crouch by it;
for from that well they moisten the droves:
and a great stone *is* on the mouth of the well:
3 and all the droves gather there:

GENESIS 29

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and they rolled the stone from the well's mouth,
and watered **moistened** the *sheep flock*,
and put **returned** the stone *again*
upon the well's mouth in his place.
4 And **Jacob Yaaqov** said unto them,
My brethren, whence be ye?
And they said, Of Haran are we.
5 And he said unto them,
Know ye Laban the son of **Nahor Nachor**?
And they said, We know him.
6 And he said unto them, Is he *well at shalom*?
And they said, He is *well at shalom*: and, behold,
Rachel his daughter cometh with the *sheep flock*.
7 And he said, *Lo Behold,*
it is yet high day the day is great,
neither is it time
that the *cattle chattel* should be gathered *together*:
water moisten ye the *sheep flock*,
and go and *feed tend* them.
8 And they said, We cannot,
until all the *flocks droves* be gathered *together*,
and *till* they roll the stone from the well's mouth;
then we *water moisten* the *sheep flock*.
9 And while he *yet spake still worded* with them,
Rachel came with her father's *sheep flock*:
for she *kept tended* them.
10 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when **Jacob Yaaqov** saw Rachel
the daughter of Laban his mother's brother,
and the *sheep flocks* of Laban his mother's brother,
that **Jacob Yaaqov** went near,
and rolled the stone from the well's mouth,
and watered **moistened** the flock of Laban
his mother's brother.
11 And **Jacob Yaaqov** kissed Rachel,
and lifted *up* his voice, and wept.
12 And **Jacob Yaaqov** told Rachel
that he was her father's brother,
and that he was **Rebekah's Ribqah's** son:
and she ran and told her father.
13 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when Laban heard the *tidings report*
of **Jacob Yaaqov** his sister's son,
that he ran to meet him, and embraced him,
and kissed him, and brought him to his house.
And he **told described to** Laban all these *things words*.
14 And Laban said to him,
Surely thou art my bone and my flesh.
And he *abode settled* with him
the space of a month **of days**.
15 And Laban said unto **Jacob Yaaqov**,
Because thou art my brother,
shouldest thou *therefore* serve me *for nought gratuitously*?
tell me, what shall thy *wages hire* be?
16 And Laban had two daughters:
the name of the *elder greater* was Leah,
and the name of the younger was Rachel.
17 Leah was tender eyed;
but Rachel was beautiful **in form**
and *well favoured beautiful in visage*.
18 And **Jacob Yaaqov** loved Rachel; and said,
I **will shall** serve thee seven years
for Rachel thy younger daughter.
19 And Laban said, It is better that I give her to thee,
than that I should give her to another man:
abide settle with me.
20 And **Jacob Yaaqov** served seven years for Rachel;
and they *seemed unto him were in his eyes*
but a few days day,
for the in his love he had to her.
21 And **Jacob Yaaqov** said unto Laban,

GENESIS 29

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and they roll the stone from the mouth of the well
and moisten the flock
and return the stone in place
on the mouth of the well.
4 And Yaaqov says to them,
My brothers, whence are you?
And they say, Of Haran — we.
5 And he says to them,
Know you Laban the son of Nachor?
And they say, We know him.
6 And he says to them, Is he at shalom?
And they say, He is at shalom: and behold,
Rachel his daughter comes with the flock.
7 And he says, Behold, the day is great,
it is not time to gather the chattel:
moisten the flock and go and tend them.
8 And they say, We cannot,
until all the droves gather
and they roll the stone from the mouth of the well:
then we moisten the flock.
9 And while he still words with them,
Rachel comes with the flock of her father
— for she tends them.
10 And so be it, when Yaaqov sees Rachel
the daughter of Laban the brother of his mother
and the flocks of Laban the brother of his mother,
Yaaqov goes near
and rolls the stone from the mouth of the well
and moistens the flock of Laban
the brother of his mother.
11 And Yaaqov kisses Rachel
and lifts his voice and weeps:
12 and Yaaqov tells Rachel
that he is the brother of her father
and that he is the son of Ribqah
— and she runs and tells her father.
13 And so be it,
when Laban hears the report
of Yaaqov the son of his sister,
he runs to meet him and embraces him
and kisses him and brings him to his house:
and he describes all these words to Laban.
14 And Laban says to him,
Surely you are my bone and my flesh.
— and he settles with him a month of days.
15 And Laban says to Yaaqov,
Because you are my brother,
serve you me gratuitously?
Tell me, what is your hire?
16 And Laban has two daughters:
the name of the greater, Leah
and the name of the younger, Rachel.
17 Leah is tender eyed;
but Rachel is beautiful in form
and beautiful in visage:
18 and Yaaqov loves Rachel, and says,
I serve you seven years
for Rachel your younger daughter.
19 And Laban says, It is better that I give her to you,
than give her to another man:
settle with me.
20 And Yaaqov serves seven years for Rachel;
and in his eyes, they are but a day in his love to her:
21 and Yaaqov says to Laban,

GENESIS 29, 30

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

Give me my *wife* **woman**, for my days are fulfilled,
that I may go in unto her.

22 And Laban gathered *together* all the men of the place,
and *made* **worked** a *feast* **banquet**.

23 And **so be** it *came to pass* in the evening,
that he took Leah his daughter, and brought her to him;
and he went in unto her.

24 And Laban gave unto his daughter Leah
Zilpah his maid for *an* **handmaid** **a maid**.

25 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
that in the morning, behold, it was Leah:
and he said to Laban,
What is this thou hast *done* **worked** unto me?
did not I serve with thee for Rachel?
wherefore then hast thou *beguiled* **deceived** me?

26 And Laban said,
It must not be so *done* **worked** in our *country* **place**,
to give the younger
before **at the face of** the *firstborn* **firstborned**.
fulfill her week,

27 and we *will* **shall** give thee this also for the service
which thou shalt serve with me
yet seven other years.

28 And *Jacob did* **Yaaqov** **worked** so,
and fulfilled her week:
and he gave him Rachel his daughter to *wife* **woman** also.

29 And Laban gave to Rachel his daughter
Bilhah his *handmaid* **maid** to be her maid.

30 And he went in also unto Rachel,
and he loved also Rachel more than Leah,
and served with him yet seven other years.

31 And when *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh** saw
that Leah was hated,
he opened her womb: but Rachel was *barren* **sterile**.

32 And Leah conceived, and *bare* **birthed** a son,
and she called his name *Reuben* **Reu Ben**: for she said,
Surely the **LORD** **For this cause** **Yah Veh**
hath *looked upon* **seen** my *affliction* **humiliation**;
now *therefore* **for this cause**
my *husband will* **man shall** love me.

33 And she conceived again, and *bare* **birthed** a son;
and said,
Because *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh** hath heard I was hated,
he hath *therefore* given me this *son* also:
and she called his name *Simeon* **Shimon**.

34 And she conceived again, and *bare* **birthed** a son;
and said,
Now this time
will **shall** my *husband* **man** be joined unto me,
because I have *born* **birthed** him three sons:
therefore was his name called Levi.

35 And she conceived again, and *bare* **birthed** a son:
and she said,
Now **At this time**
will I praise the **LORD** **shall I spread hands to** **Yah Veh**:
therefore she called his name *Judah* **Yah Hudah***;
and *left bearing* **was stayed from birthing**.

*see Yah Hudah in Lexicon

30

And when Rachel saw
that she *bare* **Jacob** **birthed** **Yaaqov** no *children* **sons**,
Rachel envied her sister; and said unto *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
Give me *children* **sons**, or *else* **and if not** I die.

2 And *Jacob's anger* **Yaaqov's wrath**
was kindled against Rachel:
and he said, Am I in *God's* **Elohim's** stead,
who hath withheld from thee the fruit of the *womb* **belly**?

3 And she said, Behold my maid Bilhah, go in unto her;
and she shall birth upon my knees,
that I may also have children by her.

4 And she gave him Bilhah her *handmaid* **maid**
to *wife* **woman**:
and *Jacob* **Yaaqov** went in unto her.

5 And Bilhah conceived,
and *bare* **Jacob** **birthed** **Yaaqov** a son.

6 And Rachel said,
God **Elohim** hath *judged me* **pleaded my cause**,
and hath also heard my voice, and hath given me a son:
therefore called she his name Dan.

GENESIS 29, 30

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Give me my woman;
for I fulfilled my days to go in to her.

22 And Laban gathers all the men of the place
and works a banquet:
23 and so be it, in the evening,
he takes Leah his daughter and brings her to him;
and he goes in to her.

24 And Laban gives his daughter Leah
Zilpah his maid as her maid.

25 And so be it, in the morning,
behold, it *is* Leah:
and he says to Laban,
What *is* this you worked to me?
Served I not you for Rachel?
Why deceived you me?

26 And Laban says,
It *is* not worked thus in our place,
to give the younger at the face of the firstbirth:
27 fulfill her week
and we give you this also
for the service you serve with me
yet another seven years.

28 And thus Yaaqov works and fulfills her week:
and he also gives him Rachel his daughter to woman:
29 and Laban gives Rachel his daughter
Bilhah his maid as her maid.

30 And he also goes in to Rachel
and he also loves Rachel more than Leah
and serves with him yet another seven years.

31 And when Yah Veh sees that Leah *is* hated,
he opens her womb: and Rachel *is* sterile:
32 and Leah conceives and births a son
and she calls his name Reu Ben:
for, she says,
For this cause Yah Veh sees my humiliation;
for this cause my man loves me.

33 And she conceives again and births a son;
and says, Because Yah Veh hears I *am* hated,
he also gives me this.
— and she calls his name Shimon.

34 And she conceives again and births a son;
and says,
Now this time my man joins me
because I birthed him three sons:
so his name *is* called Levi.

35 And she conceives again and births a son:
and she says,
At this time I spread hands to Yah Veh:
so she calls his name Yah Hudah*;
and stays from birthing.

*see Yah Hudah in Lexicon

30

And Rachel sees that she births not to Yaaqov;
and Rachel envies her sister; and says to Yaaqov,
Give me sons — and if not I die.

2 And Yaaqov kindles his wrath against Rachel:
and he says, Am I in the stead of Elohim?
Who withholds the fruit of the belly from you?

3 And she says, Behold my maid Bilhah, go in to her;
and she births on my knees
that I also have children by her.

4 And she gives him Bilhah her maid to woman:
and Yaaqov goes in to her:

5 and Bilhah conceives and births Yaaqov a son:
6 and Rachel says, Elohim pleaded my cause
and also heard my voice and gives me a son:
so she calls his name Dan.

GENESIS 30

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

7 And Bilhah Rachel's maid conceived again,
and *bare* Jacob **birthed Yaaqov** a second son.
8 And Rachel said, With *great* wrestlings of **Elohim**
have I wrestled with my sister, and I have prevailed:
and she called his name Naphtali.
9 When Leah saw
that she had *leftbearing* **stayed from birthing**,
she took Zilpah her maid,
and gave her Jacob **Yaaqov** to *wife* **woman**.
10 And Zilpah Leah's maid *bare* Jacob **birthed Yaaqov** a son.
11 And Leah said, A *troop* **Fortune** cometh:
and she called his name Gad.
12 And Zilpah Leah's maid
bare Jacob **birthed Yaaqov** a second son.
13 And Leah said, *Happy* **Blithesome** am I,
for the daughters *will* **shall** call me *blessed* **blithed**:
and she called his name Asher.
14 And *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
went in the days of wheat harvest,
and found mandrakes in the field,
and brought them unto his mother Leah.
Then Rachel said to Leah,
Give me, I *pray* **beseech** thee, of thy son's mandrakes.
15 And she said unto her,
Is it a *small matter* **petty**
that thou hast taken my *husband* **man**?
and *wouldest* **shouldest** thou take away
my son's mandrakes also?
And Rachel said,
Therefore he shall lie with thee tonight
for thy son's mandrakes.
16 And Jacob **Yaaqov** came out of the field in the evening,
and Leah went out to meet him, and said,
Thou must come in unto me;
for *surely* **in hiring**, I have hired thee
with my son's mandrakes.
And he lay with her that night.
17 And *God* **Elohim** hearkened unto Leah,
and she conceived,
and *bare* Jacob **birthed Yaaqov** the fifth son.
18 And Leah said, *God* **Elohim** hath given me my hire,
because I have given my *maiden* **maid**
to my *husband* **man**:
and she called his name *Issachar* **Yissachar**.
19 And Leah conceived again,
and *bare* Jacob **birthed Yaaqov** the sixth son.
20 And Leah said,
God **Elohim** hath *endued* **endowed** me
with a good *dowry* **endowment**;
now will **this time shall** my *husband* **man** dwell with me,
because I have *born* **birthed** him six sons:
and she called his name Zebulun.
21 And afterwards she *bare* **birthed** a daughter,
and called her name Dinah.
22 And *God* **Elohim** remembered Rachel,
and *God* **Elohim** hearkened to her, and opened her womb.
23 And she conceived, and *bare* **birthed** a son; and said,
God **Elohim** hath taken away my *reproach* **disgrace**:
24 And she called his name *Joseph* **Yoseph**; and said,
The LORD **Yah Veh** shall add to me another son.
25 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when Rachel had *born* **Joseph birthed Yoseph**,
that Jacob **Yaaqov** said unto Laban, Send me away,
that I may go unto mine own place,
and to my *country* **land**.
26 Give me my *wives* **women** and my children,
for whom I have served thee, and let me go:
for thou knowest my service
which I have *done* **served** thee.
27 And Laban said unto him, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
if I have found *favour* **charism** in thine eyes, *tarry*:
for I have *learned by experience* **prognosticated**
that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath blessed me for thy sake.

GENESIS 30

exeGeses companion BIBLE

7 And Bilhah the maid of Rachel conceives again
and births Yaaqov a second son:
8 and Rachel says, With wrestlings of Elohim
I wrestled with my sister and I prevail!
— and she calls his name Naphtali.
9 And Leah sees she *is* stayed from birthing,
she takes Zilpah her maid
and gives her to Yaaqov to woman.
10 And Zilpah the maid of Leah
births Yaaqov a son:
11 and Leah says, A Fortune comes:
and she calls his name Gad.
12 And Zilpah the maid of Leah
births Yaaqov a second son:
13 — and Leah says, Blithesome — I,
for the daughters call me blithed:
and she calls his name Asher.
14 And Reu Ben goes in the days of wheat harvest
and finds mandrakes in the field
and brings them to his mother Leah:
and Rachel says to Leah,
Give me, I beseech you,
of the mandrakes of your son.
15 And she says to her,
Is it petty that you took my man?
And you also take the mandrakes of my son?
And Rachel says,
So he lies with you tonight
for the mandrakes of your son.
16 And Yaaqov comes from the field in the evening
and Leah goes out to meet him and says,
You must come in to me;
for in hiring, I hired you
with the mandrakes of my son.
— and he lies with her that night.
17 And Elohim hearkens to Leah
and she conceives and births Yaaqov a fifth son.
18 And Leah says, Elohim gave me my hire,
because I gave my maid to my man:
and she calls his name Yissachar.
19 And Leah conceives again
and births Yaaqov a sixth son:
20 and Leah says,
Elohim endows me — a good endowment;
this time my man dwells with me,
because I birth him six sons:
and she calls his name Zebulun.
21 And afterwards she births a daughter
and calls her name Dinah.
22 And Elohim remembers Rachel
and Elohim hearkens to her and opens her womb:
23 and she conceives and births a son;
and says, Elohim takes my disgrace.
— and she calls his name Yoseph;
and says, Yah Veh adds to me another son.
24 And so be it, when Rachel births Yoseph,
that Yaaqov says to Laban, Send me away,
to go to my own place and to my land:
25 give me my women and my children
for whom I served you
and let me go:
for you know the service I served you.
26 And Laban says to him, I beseech you,
if I have found charism in your eyes —
for I prognosticate
that Yah Veh blesses me for your sake.

GENESIS 30

exeGeser ready research BIBLE

28 And he said, Appoint me thy wages **hire**,
and I *will* **shall** give it.

29 And he said unto him,
Thou knowest how I have served thee,
and how thy *cattle* **chattel** was with me.

30 For it was little which thou hadst
before I came **at my face**,
and it is *now increased* **broken forth**
unto a *multitude* **an abundance**;
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath blessed thee
since my coming **at my foot**:
and now when shall I *provide* **work**
for mine own house also?

31 And he said, What shall I give thee?
And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** said,
Thou shalt not give me *any thing* **ought**:
if thou *wilt do* **shalt work** this *thing* **word** for me,
I *will again feed* **shall return and tend**
and *keep* **guard** thy flock.

32 I *will* **shall** pass through all thy flock to day,
removing **turning aside** from thence
all the *speckled* **branded** and spotted *cattle* **lambs**,
and all the brown *cattle* **lambs** among the *sheep* **lambs**,
and the spotted and *speckled* **branded** among the goats:
and of *such* **they** shall be my hire.

33 So **Thus** shall my *righteousness* **justness** answer for me
in *time to come* **the day of the morrow**,
when it shall come for my hire before thy face:
every one **all** that is not *speckled* **branded** and spotted
among the goats,
and brown among the *sheep* **lambs**,
that shall be counted stolen with me.

34 And Laban said, Behold,
I *would it might* **O that it** be according to thy word.

35 And he *removed* **turned aside** that day
the he goats that were ringstraked and spotted,
and all the she goats
that were *speckled* **branded** and spotted,
and every one that had *some* white in it,
and all the brown among the *sheep* **lambs**,
and gave them into the hand of his sons.

36 And he set three days' journey
betwixt **between** himself and *Jacob* **between** **Yaaqov**:
and *Jacob* **fed** **Yaaqov** **tended**
the rest of Laban's flocks **that remained**.

37 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** took him *rods* **sprouts**
of *green* **fresh** poplar, and of the hazel and chestnut tree;
and *pilled* **peeled** white *strakes* **peels** in them,
and *made* **peeled** the white *appear*
which was in the *rods* **sprouts**.

38 And he set the *rods* **sprouts** which he had *pilled* **peeled**
before **in front of** the flocks in the *gutters* **troughs**
in the watering troughs when the flocks came to drink,
that they should conceive when they came to drink.

39 And the flocks conceived
before **in front of** the *rods* **sprouts**,
and *brought forth* **cattle** **birthed** flocks
ringstraked, *speckled* **branded**, and spotted.

40 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** did separate the lambs,
and set **gave** the faces of the flocks
toward the ringstraked,
and all the brown in the flock of Laban;
and he put his own *flocks* **droves** by themselves,
and put them not unto Laban's *cattle* **flocks**.

41 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
whensoever the *stronger* **cattle** **conspired** flocks did conceive,
that *Jacob* **laid** **Yaaqov** **set** the *rods* **sprouts**
before **in front of** the eyes
of the *cattle* **flocks** in the *gutters* **troughs**,
that they might conceive among the *rods* **sprouts**.

42 But when the *cattle* **were** **feeble** flocks **languished**,
he put them not in:
so the *feebler* **languishing** were Laban's,
and the stronger *Jacob's* **Yaaqov's**.

43 And the man *increased* **broke forth**
exceedingly **mightily** **mighty**,
and had much *cattle* **flocks**,
and *maidservants* **maids**, and *menservants* **servants**,
and camels, and *asses* **he burros**.

GENESIS 30

exeGeser companion BIBLE

28 And he says, Appoint me your hire and I give.

29 And he says to him,
You know how I served you
and how your chattel was with me:
for you had little ere I came at your face;
and now it breaks forth in abundance
and Yah Veh blesses you at my foot.
And now, when work I — I also for my own house?

31 And he says, What give I you?
And Yaaqov says, You — give me naught
— if you work this word for me:
I return and tend and guard your flock:
I pass through all your flock today,
and turn aside from there
all the branded and spotted lambs
and all the brown lambs among the lambs
and the spotted and branded among the goats:
and they become my hire.

32 Thus my justness answers for me
in the day of the morrow,
when it comes for my hire at your face:
all that *is* not branded and spotted among the goats
and brown among the lambs,
that be counted stolen with me.

33 And Laban says, Behold,
O that it be according to your word.

34 And that day he turns aside the he goats
the ringstraked and the spotted
and all the she goats that *are* branded and spotted
and every one with white in it
and all the brown among the lambs
and gives them into the hand of his sons.

35 And he sets a journey of three days
between himself and between Yaaqov:
and Yaaqov tends the flocks of Laban that remain.

36 And Yaaqov takes sprouts of fresh poplar
and of the hazel and chestnut tree;
and peels white peels in them
and peels the white in the sprouts:
and he sets the sprouts he peeled
in front of the flocks in the troughs
— in the watering troughs
when the flocks come to drink,
so that they conceive when they come to drink.

37 And the flocks conceive in front of the sprouts
and birth flocks
— ringstraked, branded and spotted.

38 And Yaaqov separates the lambs
and gives the faces of the flocks
toward the ringstraked
and all the brown in the flock of Laban;
and he puts his own droves by themselves
and puts them not to the flocks of Laban.

39 And so be it,
whenever the conspired flocks conceive,
Yaaqov set the sprouts
in front of the eyes of the flocks in the troughs
so that they conceive among the sprouts:
and when the flocks languished,
he puts them not in:
so the languishing *are* for Laban
and the stronger for Yaaqov.

40 And the man breaks forth mightily mighty
and has much flocks
and maids and servants and camels and he burros.

GENESIS 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

YAAQOV FLEES

31 And he heard the words of Laban's sons, saying,
Jacob Yaaqov hath taken away all that was our father's;
 and of that which was our father's
 hath he *gotten* **worked** all this *glory* **honour**.
 2 And *Jacob Yaaqov*
beheld **saw** the *countenance* **face** of Laban,
 and, behold,
 it was not toward him as *before* **three yesters ago**.
 3 And *the LORD Yah Veh* said unto *Jacob Yaaqov*,
 Return unto the land of thy fathers, and to thy kindred;
 and *I will be* **I AM** with thee.
 4 And *Jacob Yaaqov* sent
 and called Rachel and Leah to the field unto his flock,
 5 And said unto them,
 I see your father's *countenance* **face**,
 that it is not toward me as *before* **three yesters ago**;
 but *the God Elohim* of my father hath been with me.
 6 And ye know that with all my *power* **force**
 I have served your father.
 7 And your father hath *deceived* **mocked** me,
 and changed my *wages* **hire** ten times;
 but *God suffered* **Elohim gave** him not to *hurt* **vilify** me.
 8 If he said thus,
 The *speckled* **branded** shall be thy *wages* **hire**;
 then all the *cattle bare* **speckled** **flocks birthed** **branded**:
 and if he said thus,
 The ringstraked shall be thy hire;
 then *bare* **birthed** all the *cattle* **flocks** ringstraked.
 9 Thus *God Elohim* hath *taken away* **stripped**
 the *cattle* **chattel** of your father, and given them to me.
 10 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
 at the time that the *cattle* **flocks** conceived,
 that I lifted up mine eyes, and saw in a dream,
 and, behold, the *rams* **he goats**
 which *leaped* **ascended** upon the *cattle* **flocks**
 were ringstraked, *speckled* **branded**, and grised.
 11 And the angel of *God Elohim*
spake **said** unto me in a dream, *saying*, *Jacob Yaaqov*:
 And I said, Here *am* — I.
 12 And he said, Lift up *now* **I beseech**, thine eyes, and see,
 all the *rams* **he goats**
 which *leap* **ascend** upon the *cattle* **flocks**
 are ringstraked, *speckled* **branded**, and grised:
 for I have seen all that Laban *doeth* **worketh** unto thee.
 13 *I am the God of Bethel* I — **El of Beth El**,
 where thou anointedst the *pillar* **monolith**,
 and where thou vowedst a vow unto me:
 now arise, get thee out from this land,
 and return unto the land of thy kindred.
 14 And Rachel and Leah answered and said unto him,
 Is there yet any *portion* **allotment** or inheritance for us
 in our father's house?
 15 Are we not *counted* **fabricated** of him strangers?
 for he hath sold us,
 and **in consuming**, hath *quite devoured* **consumed**
 also our *money* **silver**.
 16 For all the riches
 which *God Elohim* hath *taken* **stripped** from our father,
 that is ours, and our *children's* **sons**:
 now then,
 whatsoever *God Elohim* hath said unto thee, **do work**.
 17 Then *Jacob Yaaqov* rose up,
 and **set** **lifted** his sons and his *wives* **women** upon camels;
 18 And he *carried away* **drove** all his *cattle* **chattel**,
 and all his *goods* **acquisitions**
 which he had *gotten* **acquired**,
 the *cattle* of his *getting* **chattel** **he chatted**,
 which he had *gotten* **acquired**
 in *Padanaram* **Paddan Aram**,
 for to go to *Isaac* **Yischaq** his father
 in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**.
 19 And Laban went to shear his *sheep* **flock**:
 and Rachel had stolen the *images* **teraphim**
 that were her father's.
 20 And *Jacob Yaaqov* stole away
unawares to **the heart** of Laban the *Syrian* **Aramiy**,
 in that he told him not that he fled.
 21 So he fled with all that he had;

GENESIS 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

YAAQOV FLEES

31 And he hears the words of the sons of Laban,
 saying, Yaaqov takes all our father has;
 yes, from what our father has, he works all this honor.
 2 And Yaaqov sees the face of Laban
 and behold, it is not toward him as three yesters ago.
 3 And Yah Veh says to Yaaqov,
 Return to the land of your fathers and to your kindred;
 and I AM with you.
 4 And Yaaqov sends
 and calls Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock,
 and says to them,
 I see that the face of your father
 is not toward me as three yesters ago;
 but Elohim of my father is with me.
 6 And you know I serve your father with all my force:
 and your father mocked me
 and changed my hire ten times;
 but Elohim gives him to not vilify me:
 if he says thus, The branded are your hire;
 then all the flocks birth branded:
 and if he says thus, The ringstraked are your hire;
 then all the flocks birth ringstraked:
 9 thus Elohim strips the chattel of your father
 and gives them to me.
 10 And so be it, at the time the flocks conceive,
 I lift my eyes and see in a dream, and behold,
 the he goats ascending on the flocks
 are ringstraked, branded and grised.
 11 And the angel of Elohim says to me in a dream,
 Yaaqov!
 And I say, Here — I!
 12 And he says, Lift up, I beseech, your eyes and see,
 all the he goats ascending on the flocks
 are ringstraked, branded and grised:
 for I see all Laban works to you.
 13 I — El of Beth El
 — where you anointed the monolith
 and where you vowed a vow to me:
 now rise, get from this land
 and return to the land of your kindred.
 14 And Rachel and Leah answer and say to him,
 Have we yet any allotment or inheritance for us
 in the house of our father?
 15 Are we not fabricated by him as strangers?
 For he sold us;
 and in consuming, he also consumed our silver:
 16 for all the riches Elohim stripped from our father,
 are ours and our sons:
 now then, whatever Elohim says to you, work.
 17 Then Yaaqov rises
 and lifts his sons and his women on camels;
 and he drives all his chattel
 and all the acquisitions he acquired
 — the chattel he chatted
 which he acquired in Paddan Aram,
 to go to Yischaq his father in the land of Kenaan.
 19 And Laban goes to shear his flock:
 and Rachel steals the teraphim of her father;
 20 and Yaaqov steals the heart of Laban the Aramiy
 in not telling him that he flees.
 21 So he flees with all he has;

GENESIS 31

exeGeser ready research BIBLE

and he rose up, and passed over the river,
and set his face toward the mount *Gilead* **Gilad**.
22 And it was told Laban on the third day
that *Jacob* **Yaaqov** was fled.
23 And he took his brethren with him,
and pursued after him seven days' journey;
and they *overtook* **adhered to** him
in the mount *Gilead* **Gilad**.
24 And *God* **Elohim** came to Laban the *Syrian* **Aramiy**
in a dream by night, and said unto him,
Take heed **Guard** that thou *speak* **word** not
to *Jacob* either **Yaaqov** from good or bad to evil.
25 Then Laban overtook *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.
Now *Jacob* **Yaaqov** had *pitched* **staked** his tent in the mount:
and Laban with his brethren
pitched **staked** in the mount of *Gilead* **Gilad**.
26 And Laban said to *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
What hast thou *done* **worked**,
that thou hast stolen away *unawares to me* **from my heart**,
and *carried away* **driven** my daughters,
as *captives taken* **captured** with the sword?
27 Wherefore didst thou flee away *secretly* **to hide**,
and steal away from me; and didst not tell me,
that I might have sent thee away
with *mirth* **cheerfulness**, and with songs,
with *tabret* **tambourine**, and with harp?
28 And hast not *suffered* **allowed** me
to kiss my sons and my daughters?
29 thou hast now *done* **foolishly** **follied** in so *doing* **working**.
It is in the *power* **el** of my hand
to *do you* **hurt** **work you evil**:
but the *God* **Elohim** of your father
spake **worded** unto me yesternight, saying,
Take **Guard** thou *heed* that thou *speak* **word** not
to *Jacob* either **Yaaqov** from good or bad to evil.
30 And now, *though*
in going, thou *wouldest* **needs be gone** **goest**,
because **in yearning**, thou *sore longedst* **yearnedst**
after thy father's house,
yet wherefore hast thou stolen my *gods* **elohim**?
31 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** answered and said to Laban,
Because I was *afraid* **awed**: for I said,
Peradventure **Lest**
thou *wouldest take by force* **shouldest strip**
thy daughters from me.
32 With whomsoever thou findest thy *gods* **elohim**,
let him not live:
before **at the face of** our brethren
discern **recognize** thou what is thine with me,
and take it to thee.
For *Jacob* **knew** **Yaaqov** **discerned** not
that Rachel had stolen them.
33 And Laban went into *Jacob's* **Yaaqov's** tent,
and into Leah's tent,
and into the two *maidservants'* **maids'** tents;
but he found them not.
Then went he out of Leah's tent,
and entered into Rachel's tent.
34 Now Rachel had taken the *images* **teraphim**,
and put them in the camel's *furniture* **saddle**,
and sat upon them.
And Laban *searched* **groped** all the tent,
but found them not.
35 And she said to her father,
Let it not *displease* **inflame the eyes of my lord** **adoni**
that I cannot rise up *before thee* **at thy face**;
for the *custom* **way** of women is upon me.
And he searched, but found not the *images* **teraphim**.
36 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** was *wroth* **inflamed**,
and *chode* **chided** with Laban:
and *Jacob* **Yaaqov** answered and said to Laban,
What is my *trespass* **rebellion**?
37 what is my sin, that thou hast so hotly pursued after me?
Whereas thou hast searched all my stuff,
For what cause hast thou groped all my instruments?
what hast thou found
of all thy household *stuff* **instruments**?
set it *here* **thus**
before **in front of** my brethren and thy brethren,

GENESIS 31

exeGeser companion BIBLE

and he rises and passes over the river
and sets his face toward the mount Gilad.
22 And on the third day
they tell Laban that Yaaqov fled:
23 and he takes his brothers with him
and pursues after him a journey of seven days;
and they adhere to him in the mount Gilad.
24 And Elohim comes to Laban the Aramiy
in a dream by night and says to him,
Guard that you word not to Yaaqov
from good to evil.
25 — and Laban overtakes Yaaqov.
And Yaaqov stakes his tent in the mount:
and Laban with his brothers
stake in the mount of Gilad.
26 And Laban says to Yaaqov,
What work you,
that you steal from my heart and drive my daughters
as captured with the sword?
27 Why hide you to flee and steal from me
— and not tell me
— and I send you with cheerfulness and with songs,
with tambourine and with harp?
28 And allow me not
to kiss my sons and my daughters?
You now folly in so working.
29 It is in the el of my hand to work you evil:
but Elohim of your father worded to me yesternight,
saying,
Guard that you not word to Yaaqov
from good to evil.
30 And now, in going, you go;
because in yearning,
you yearn after the house of your father:
But why stole you my elohim?
31 And Yaaqov answers and says to Laban,
Because I awe: for I say,
Lest you strip your daughters from me.
32 With whomever you find your elohim, lives not!
At the face of our brothers
recognize what is with me
and take it to yourself.
— for Yaaqov discerns not that Rachel stole them.
33 And Laban goes into the tent of Yaaqov
and into the tent of Leah
and into the tent of the two maids;
but he finds them not:
then he goes from the tent of Leah
and enters into the tent of Rachel.
34 And Rachel takes the teraphim
and puts them in the saddle of the camel
and sits on them:
and Laban gropes all the tent, but finds them not.
35 And she says to her father,
So be it that the eyes of my adoni not inflame
because I cannot rise at your face;
for the way of women is on me.
36 And he searches, but finds not the teraphim:
and Yaaqov inflames and chides with Laban:
and Yaaqov answers and says to Laban,
What is my rebellion?
37 What is my sin, that you so hotly pursue after me?
You grope all my instruments:
what found you of all your household instruments?
set it thus in front of my brothers and your brothers,

GENESIS 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

38 that they may **judge reprove**
betwixt us both between the two of us.
 This twenty years have I been with thee;
 thy ewes and thy she goats
 have not *cast their young aborted*,
 and the rams of thy flock have I not eaten.
 39 That which was torn *of beasts*
I brought not unto thee; I bare the loss of it
I brought not unto thee for the sin (offering);
 of my hand didst thou *require seek* it,
whether stolen by day, or stolen by night.
 40 *Thus I was;*
 in the day the *drought parch* consumed me,
 and the frost by night;
 and my sleep *departed fled* from mine eyes.
 41 Thus have I been twenty years in thy house;
 I served thee fourteen years for thy two daughters,
 and six years for thy **cattle flocks**:
 and thou hast changed my wages **hire** ten times.
 42 *Except the God Unless Elohim* of my father,
the God Elohim of Abraham,
 and the fear of *Isaac Yischaq*, had been with me,
 surely thou hadst sent me away now empty.
God Elohim hath seen mine *affliction humiliation*
 and the labour of my *hands palms*,
 and *rebuked reproved* thee yesternight.
 43 And Laban answered and said unto *Jacob Yaaqov*,
 These daughters are my daughters,
 and these *children sons* are my *children sons*,
 and these **cattle flocks** are my **cattle flocks**,
 and all that thou seest is mine:
 and what *can I do shall I work* this day
 unto these my daughters,
 or unto their *children sons* which they have *born birthed*?
 44 Now therefore come thou,
 let us **make cut** a covenant, I and thou;
 and let it be for a witness between me and thee.
 45 And *Jacob Yaaqov* took a stone,
 and **set lifted it up** for a **pillar monolith**.
 46 And *Jacob Yaaqov* said unto his brethren,
Gather Glean stones;
 and they took stones, and **made worked** an heap:
 and they did eat there upon the heap.
 47 And Laban called it
Jegarsahadutha Yegar Sahadutha/Heap of Witness:
 but *Jacob Yaaqov* called it
Galeed Gal Ed/Heap of Witness.
 48 And Laban said,
 This heap is a witness
 between me and **between** thee this day.
 Therefore was the name of it called
Galeed Gal Ed/Heap of Witness;
THE MISPEH BENEDICTION
 49 And *Mizpah Mispah*; for he said,
The LORD Yah Veh watch
 between me and **between** thee,
 when we are *absent one hidden man* from *another friend*.
 50 If thou shalt *afflict humble* my daughters,
 or if thou shalt take *other wives women*
 beside my daughters, no man is with us;
 see, *God Elohim* is witness
betwixt between me and **between** thee.
 51 And Laban said to *Jacob Yaaqov*,
 Behold this heap, and behold this **pillar monolith**,
 which I have *cast poured*
betwixt between me and **between** thee:
 52 This heap *be* witness,
 and this **pillar be monolith** witness,
 that I *will shall* not pass over this heap to thee,
 and that thou shalt not pass over this heap
 and this **pillar monolith** unto me, for *harm evil*.
 53 *The God Elohim* of Abraham,
 and *the God Elohim* of *Nahor Nachor*,
the God Elohim of their father, judge *betwixt between* us.
 And *Jacob sware Yaaqov oathed*
 by the fear of his father *Isaac Yischaq*.
 54 Then *Jacob offered Yaaqov sacrificed* a sacrifice
 upon the mount,
 and called his brethren to eat bread:

GENESIS 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

to reprove between the two of us.
 38 These twenty years I *am* with you;
 your ewes and your she goats aborted not
 and the rams of your flock I ate not:
 39 and I brought not the torn to you for the sin;
 of my hand you sought
 — stolen by day, or stolen by night.
 40 So be I;
 in the day the parch consumes me
 and the frost by night;
 and my sleep flees from my eyes.
 41 Thus — twenty years in your house;
 I served you fourteen years for your two daughters
 and six years for your flocks:
 and you changed my hire ten times.
 42 Unless Elohim of my father — Elohim of Abraham
 and the fear of Yischaq were with me,
 surely you had now sent me away empty.
 Elohim sees my humiliation
 and the labour of my palms;
 and reprov'd you yesternight.
 43 And Laban answers and says to Yaaqov,
 These daughters *are* my daughters
 and these sons my sons
 and these flocks my flocks;
 and all you see *is* mine:
 and what work I this day to these my daughters,
 or to their sons whom they birthed?
 44 And now come,
 let us cut a covenant — I and you;
 to be a witness between me and you.
 45 And Yaaqov takes a stone
 and lifts it for a monolith:
 46 and Yaaqov says to his brothers, Glean stones!
 — and they take stones and work a heap:
 and they eat there on the heap.
 47 And Laban calls it
 Yegar Sahadutha/Heap of Witness:
 but Yaaqov calls it
 Gal Ed/Heap of Witness.
 48 And Laban says,
 This heap *is* a witness
 between me and between you this day.
 So they call the name thereof
 Gal Ed/Heap of Witness;
 49 and Mispah;
THE MISPEH BENEDICTION
 for he says,
 Yah Veh watch between me and between you,
 when we hide, man from friend.
 50 If you humble my daughters,
 or if you take women beside my daughters
 — no man *is* with us — see
 Elohim *is* witness between me and between you.
 51 And Laban says to Yaaqov,
 Behold this heap and behold this monolith
 which I pour between me and between you:
 52 this heap witnesses and this monolith witnesses,
 that I not pass over this heap to you
 and that you not pass over this heap
 and this monolith to me, for evil.
 53 Elohim of Abraham and Elohim of Nachor,
 Elohim of their father, judges between us.
 — and Yaaqov oaths by the fear of his father Yischaq.
 54 Then Yaaqov sacrifices a sacrifice on the mount
 and calls his brothers to eat bread:

GENESIS 31, 32

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and they did eat bread,
and tarried all night **stayed overnight** in the mount.
55 And early in the morning Laban *rose up* **started**,
and kissed his sons and his daughters, and blessed them:
and Laban *departed* **went**, and returned unto his place.

ANGELS OF ELOHIM ENCOUNTER YAAQOV

32

And Jacob **Yaaqov** went on his way,
and the angels of *God* **met Elohim** encountered him.
2 And when Jacob **Yaaqov** saw them, he said,
This is *God's* **host Camp Elohim**:
and he called the name of that place
Mahanaim **Machanayim/Double Camp**.
3 And Jacob **Yaaqov** sent *messengers* **angels**
before him to *Esau* **at the face of Esav** his brother
unto the land of Seir, the *country* **field** of Edom.
4 And he *commanded* **misvahed** them, saying,
Thus shall ye *speak* **say** unto my *lord* *Esau* **adoni Esav**;
Thy servant *Jacob* **Yaaqov** saith thus,
I have sojourned with Laban,
and *stayed* **delayed** there until now:
5 And I have oxen, and asses **he burros**, flocks,
and *menservants* **servants**, and *womenservants* **maids**:
and I have sent to tell my *lord* **adoni**,
that I may find *grace* **charism** in thy *sight* **eyes**.
6 And the *messengers* **angels** returned to *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
saying, We came to thy brother *Esau* **Esav**,
and also he cometh to meet thee,
and four hundred men with him.
7 Then *Jacob* **Yaaqov** was *greatly afraid* **mightily awed**
and *distressed* **depressed**:
and he *divided* **halved** the people that was with him,
and the flocks, and *herds* **oxen**, and the camels,
into two *bands* **camp**s;
8 And said,
If *Esau* **Esav** come to the one *company* **camp**,
and smite it,
then the other *company* **camp** which is *left* **surviveth**
shall escape.
9 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** said,
O *God* **Elohim** of my father Abraham,
and *God* **Elohim** of my father *Isaac* **Yischaq**,
the LORD **Yah Veh** which saidst unto me,
Return unto thy *country* **land**, and to thy kindred,
and I *will deal well with* **shall well—please** thee:
10 I am *not worthy of* **less than** the least
of all the mercies, and of all the truth,
which thou hast *shewed* **worked** unto thy servant;
for with my staff I passed over this *Jordan* **Yarden**;
and now I am become two *bands* **camp**s.
11 *Deliver* **Rescue** me, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
from the hand of my brother, from the hand of *Esau* **Esav**:
for I *fear* **awe** him, lest he *will* **shall** come and smite me,
and the mother with the *children* **sons**.
12 And thou saidst,
I will surely do
In well—pleasing, I shall well—please thee *good*,
and *make* **set** thy seed as the sand of the sea,
which cannot be *numbered* **scribed**
for multitude **abundance**.
13 And he *lodged* **stayed overnight** there that same night;
and took of that which came to his hand
a present **an offering** for *Esau* **Esav** his brother;
14 Two hundred she goats, and twenty he goats,
two hundred ewes, and twenty rams,
15 Thirty *milch* **suckling** camels with their *colts* **sons**,
forty *kine* **heifer**, and ten *bulls* **bullocks**,
twenty she *asses* **burros**, and ten foals.
16 And he *delivered* **gave** them
into the hand of his servants,
every **drove** by *drove* **themselves**;
and said unto his servants,
Pass over *before me* **from my face**,
and put a *space* **respiration**
betwixt **between** drove and **between** drove.
17 And he *commanded* **misvahed** the *foremost* **first**,
saying, When *Esau* **Esav** my brother meeteth thee,
and asketh thee, saying,
Whose art thou? and whither goest thou?
and whose are these *before thee* **at thy face**?

GENESIS 31, 32

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and they eat bread and stay overnight in the mount:
55 and early in the morning Laban starts
and kisses his sons and his daughters
and blesses them:
and Laban goes and returns to his place.

ANGELS OF ELOHIM ENCOUNTER YAAQOV

32

And Yaaqov goes on his way
and the angels of Elohim encounter him:
2 and when Yaaqov sees them, he says,
This is Camp Elohim!
— and he calls the name of that place
Machanayim/Double Camp.
3 And Yaaqov sends angels
at the face of Esav his brother
to the land of Seir, the field of Edom:
4 and he misvahs them, saying,
Say thus to my adoni Esav:
Your servant Yaaqov says thus:
I sojourned with Laban and delayed there until now:
5 and I have oxen and he burros,
flocks and servants and maids:
and I send to tell my adoni,
to find charism in your eyes.
6 And the angels return to Yaaqov, saying,
We came to your brother Esav
and he also comes to meet you
with four hundred men.
7 And Yaaqov awes mightily and is depressed:
and he halves the people with him
and the flocks and oxen and the camels
into two camps;
8 and says,
If Esav comes to the one camp and smites it,
then the other camp which survives escapes.
9 And Yaaqov says,
O Elohim of my father Abraham
and Elohim of my father Yischaq,
Yah Veh who says to me,
Return to your land and to your kindred
and I well—please you:
10 I am less than the least
of all the mercies and of all the truth,
you worked to your servant;
for with my staff I passed over this Yarden;
and now I become two camps:
11 rescue me, I beseech you,
from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esav:
for I awe him, lest he comes and smites me
and the mother with the sons.
12 And you — you say,
In well—pleasing, I well—please you
and set your seed as the sand of the sea
which cannot be scribed for abundance.
13 And he stays there overnight that same night;
and takes of what comes to his hand
— an offering for Esav his brother:
14 two hundred she goats and twenty he goats
two hundred ewes and twenty rams
15 thirty suckling camels with their sons
forty heifer and ten bullocks
twenty she burros and ten foals:
16 and he gives them into the hand of his servants,
drove by **drove**;
and says to his servants, Pass over from my face
and put a respiration
between drove and between drove.
17 And he misvahs the first, saying,
When Esav my brother meets you and asks you,
saying, Whose are you? And where go you?
And whose are these at your face?

GENESIS 32, 33

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 Then thou shalt say,
They be thy servant *Jacob's* **Yaaqov's**;
it is a *present* **an offering**
sent unto my *lord Esau* **adoni Esav**:
and, behold, also he is behind us.

19 And so *commanded* **misvahed** he the second,
and the third,
and all that *followed* **came after** the droves, saying,
On this manner shall ye speak **Ye shall word this word**
unto *Esau* **Esav**, when ye find him.

20 And say ye moreover,
Behold, thy servant *Jacob* **Yaaqov** is behind us.
For he said,
I will *appease him* **shall kapar/atone at his face**
with the *present* **offering** that goeth *before me* **at my face**,
and afterward I will **shall** see his face;
peradventure he will *accept of me* **shall lift at my face**.

21 So *went the present over* **the offering passed**
before him **at his face**:
and himself *lodged* **stayed overnight** that night
in the *company* **camp**.

22 And he rose up that night,
and took his two *wives* **women**,
and his two *womenservants* **maids**,
and his eleven *sons* **children**,
and passed over the ford *Jabbok* **Yabboq**.

23 And he took them,
and *sent* **passed** them over the *brook* **wadi**,
and *sent* **passed** over that he had. **YAAQOV WRESTLES**

24 And *Jacob was left* **Yaaqov remained** alone;
and there wrestled a man with him
until the *breaking* **ascending** of the *day* **dawn**.

25 And when he saw that he prevailed not against him,
he touched the hollow of his *thigh* **flank**;
and the hollow of *Jacob's thigh* **Yaaqov's flank**
was *out of joint* **dislocated**, as he wrestled with him.

26 And he said, *Let me go* **Send me away**,
for the *day breaketh* **dawn ascendeth**.

And he said, I will **shall** not let thee go **send thee away**,
except **unless** thou bless me. **YAAQOV NAMED YISRA EL**

27 And he said unto him, What is thy name?
And he said, *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.

28 And he said, Thy name
shall be *called* **said** no more *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
but *Israel* **Yisra El**:
for as a *prince hast thou power* **thou hast prevailed**
with *God* **Elohim** and with men,
and hast prevailed.

29 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** asked him, and said,
Tell me, I *pray* **beseech** thee, thy name.
And he said,
Wherefore is it that thou dost ask after my name?
And he blessed him there.

30 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** called the name of the place
Peniel **Peni El**:
for I have seen *God* **Elohim** face to face,
and my *life* **soul** is *preserved* **rescued**.

31 And as he passed over *Penuel* **Peni El**
the sun rose upon him,
and he *halted* **limped** upon his *thigh* **flank**.

32 Therefore the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
eat not of the sinew which *shrank* **shriveled**,
which is upon the hollow of the *thigh* **flank**, unto this day:
because
he touched the hollow of *Jacob's thigh* **Yaaqov's flank**
in the sinew that *shrank* **shriveled**. **YAAQOV MEETS ESAV**

33 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** lifted up his eyes,
and *looked* **saw**, and, behold,
Esau **Esav** came, and with him four hundred men.
And he *divided* **halved** the children unto Leah,
and unto Rachel, and unto the two *handmaids* **maids**.

2 And he put the *handmaids* **maids** and their children
foremost **first**,
and Leah and her children after,
and Rachel and *Joseph* **hindermost** **Yoseph behind**.

3 And he passed over *before them* **at their face**,

GENESIS 32, 33

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 Then you say, Of your servant Yaaqov
— an offering sent to my adoni Esav:
and behold, he also is behind us.

19 And thus he misvahs the second and the third
and all who come after the droves, saying,
Word this word to Esav, when you find him:
and also say,
Behold, your servant Yaaqov is behind us:
for he says,
I kapar/atone at his face
with the offering that goes at my face
and afterward, I see his face:
perhaps he lifts at my face.

21 So the offering passes from his face:
and he stays overnight that night in the camp:
and he rises that night
and takes his two women and his two maids
and his eleven children
and passes over the ford Yabboq:
and he takes them and passes them over the wadi
and passes over what he has. **YAAQOV WRESTLES**

24 And Yaaqov remains alone;
and there a man wrestles with him
until the ascending of the dawn:
and when he sees that he prevails not against him,
he touches the hollow of his flank;
and the hollow of the flank of Yaaqov
dislocates as he wrestles with him:
and he says, Send me away,
for the dawn ascends.

And he says, I send you not away,
unless you bless me. **YAAQOV NAMED YISRA EL**

27 And he says to him, What is your name?
And he says, Yaaqov.

28 And he says,
Your name is said no more Yaaqov, but Yisra El:
for you prevail with Elohim and with men
— and prevail.

29 And Yaaqov asks him and says,
Tell me, I beseech you, your name.
And he says, Why ask you my name?
— and he blesses him there.

30 And Yaaqov calls the name of the place Peni El:
for I saw Elohim face to face
and my soul is rescued.

31 And as he passes over Peni El the sun rises on him
and he limps on his flank.

32 Therefore, to this day, the sons of Yisra El
eat not of the sinew which shriveled,
which is on the hollow of the flank:
because he touched the hollow of the flank of Yaaqov
in the sinew that shriveled. **YAAQOV MEETS ESAV**

33 And Yaaqov lifts his eyes and sees,
and behold, Esav comes, with four hundred men:
and he halves the children to Leah
and to Rachel and to the two maids:
and he puts the maids and their children first
and Leah and her children after
and Rachel and Yoseph behind.
And he passes over at their face

GENESIS 33

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and bowed himself **prostrated** to the ground earth
seven times,
until he came near to his brother.
4 And *Esau* **Esav** ran to meet him, and embraced him,
and fell on his neck, and kissed him: and they wept.
5 And he lifted up his eyes,
and saw the women and the children;
and said, Who are those with thee?
And he said, The children which *God* **Elohim**
hath *graciously given* **granted charism** to thy servant.
6 Then the *handmaidens* **maids** came near,
they and their children,
and they bowed themselves **prostrated**.
7 And Leah also with her children came near,
and bowed themselves **prostrated**:
and after came *Joseph* **Yoseph** near and Rachel,
and they bowed themselves **prostrated**.
8 And he said,
What *meanest thou* by **be to thee**
all this *drove* **camp** which I met?
And he said,
These are to find *grace* **charism**
in the *sight* **eyes** of my *lord* **adoni**.
9 And *Esau* **Esav** said, I have *enough* **much**, my brother;
keep that thou hast unto thyself.
10 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** said, Nay, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
if, *now* **I beseech**,
I have found *grace* **charism** in *thy sight* **thine eyes**,
then *receive* **take** my *present* **offering** at my hand:
for therefore I have seen thy face,
as *though I had* **having** seen the face of *God* **Elohim**,
and thou wast pleased *with me*.
11 Take, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
my blessing that is brought to thee;
because *God* **Elohim**
hath *dealt graciously with* **granted me charism**,
and because I have *enough* **all**.
And he urged him, and he took it.
12 And he said, Let us *take our journey* **pull stakes**,
and let us go, and I *will* **shall** go before thee.
13 And he said unto him,
My *lord* **adoni** knoweth that the children are tender,
and the flocks and *herds* **oxen** with *young* **sucklings**
are with me:
and if men should *overdrive* **beat** them one day,
all the flock *will* **shall** die.
14 Let my *lord* **adoni**, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
pass over *before* **at the face of** his servant:
and I *will* **lead on softly** **shall guide gently**,
according as *the cattle that goeth* **to the foot of the work**
before me **at my face**,
and **according to the foot of** the children
be able to endure,
until I come unto my *lord* **adoni** unto Seir.
15 And *Esau* **Esav** said, Let me, *now* **I beseech**,
leave with thee *some of the folk* **people** that are with me.
And he said, What needeth it?
let me find *grace* **charism**
in the *sight* **eyes** of my *lord* **adoni**.
16 So *Esau* **Esav** returned that day on his way unto Seir.
17 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** journeyed **pulled stakes**
to *Succoth* **Sukkoth/Brush Arbors**,
and built him an house,
and *made booths* **worked sukkoth/brush arbors**
for his *cattle* **chattel**:
therefore the name of the place is called
Succoth **Sukkoth/Brush Arbors**.
18 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** came to Shalem,
a city of Shechem,
which is in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
when he came from *Padanaram* **Paddan Aram**;
and *pitched his tent* **encamped**
before **at the face of** the city.
19 And he *bought* **chattel**
a parcel **an allotment** of a field,
where he had spread his tent,
at the hand of the *children* **sons** of Hamor,
Shechem's father,
for an hundred *pieces of money* **ingots**.

GENESIS 33

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and prostrates to the earth seven times,
until he comes near his brother.
4 And Esav runs to meet him and embraces him
and falls on his neck and kisses him: and they weep:
5 and he lifts his eyes
and sees the women and the children;
and says, Who *are* these with you?
And he says, The children which Elohim
granted charism to your servant.
6 Then the maids come near
— they and their children;
and they prostrate:
7 and Leah also with her children comes near
and they prostrate:
and after Yoseph and Rachel come near
and they prostrate.
8 And he says,
What *are* this to you — all this camp I meet?
And he says,
These *are* to find charism in the eyes of my adoni.
9 And Esav says, I have much, my brother;
keep what you have to yourself.
10 And Yaaqov says, No, I beseech you,
if, I beseech, I find charism in your eyes,
then take my offering from my hand:
because I see your face as seeing the face of Elohim;
and you *are* pleased.
11 Take, I beseech you, the blessing I bring you;
because Elohim grants me charism
and because I have all.
— and he urges him and he takes.
12 And he says, Let us pull stakes and go;
and I go ahead of you.
13 And he says to him,
My adoni knows that the children *are* tender
and the flocks and oxen with sucklings *are* with me:
and if men beat them one day, all the flock die.
14 Let my adoni, I beseech you,
pass over at the face of his servant:
and I guide gently,
according to the foot of the work at my face
and according to the foot of the children,
until I come to my adoni to Seir.
15 And Esav says, Let me, I beseech, leave with you
some of the people who are with me.
And he says, Why this?
for I find charism in the eyes of my adoni.
16 So Esav returns that day on his way to Seir:
17 and Yaaqov pulls stakes to Sukkoth/Brush Arbors
and builds a house for himself
and works sukkoth/brush arbors for his chattel:
so he calls the name of the place
Sukkoth/Brush Arbors.
18 And as he goes from Paddan Aram
Yaaqov comes to Shalem
a city of Shechem in the land of Kenaan;
and encamps at the face of the city:
19 and he chattels an allotment of a field
for a hundred ingots
from the hand of the sons of Hamor
the father of Shechem
— where he spreads his tent.

GENESIS 33, 34

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

20 And he erected **stationed** there an a sacrifice altar,
and called it *Elelohelsrael* **El Elohe Yisra El**.

DINAH FOULED

34

And Dinah the daughter of Leah,
which she *bare* **birthed** unto *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
went out to see the daughters of the land.
2 And when Shechem
the son of Hamor the *Hivite* **Hivviy**,
prince **hierarch** of the *country* **land**, saw her,
he took her, and lay with her, and *defiled* **humbled** her.
3 And his soul *clave* **adhered** unto Dinah
the daughter of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and he loved the *damsel* **lass**,
and *spake kindly* **worded**
unto the *damsel* **heart of the lass**.
4 And Shechem *spake* **said** unto his father Hamor,
saying, *Get* **Take** me this *damsel* **child** to *wife* **woman**.
5 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** heard
that he had *defiled* **fouled** Dinah his daughter:
now his sons were with his *cattle* **chattel** in the field:
and *Jacob* **held his peace** **Yaaqov hushed**
until they were come.
6 And Hamor the father of Shechem
went out unto *Jacob* **Yaaqov** to *commune* **word** with him.
7 And the sons of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
came out of the field when they heard it:
and the men *were* **grieved** **contorted**,
and they were *very* **wroth** **mighty inflamed**,
because he had *wrought* **worked** folly in *Israel* **Yisra El**
in lying with *Jacob's* **Yaaqov's** daughter;
which *thing* ought not to be *done* **worked**.
8 And Hamor *communed* **worded** with them, saying,
The soul of my son Shechem
longeth for **is attached to** your daughter:
I *pray* **beseech** you give her him to *wife* **woman**.
9 And *make ye marriages* **intermarry** with us,
and give your daughters unto us,
and take our daughters unto you.
10 And ye shall *dwelt* **settle** with us:
and the land shall be *before you* **at your face**;
dwelt **settle** and *trade* **merchandise** ye therein,
and *get ye* **possessions** **possess** therein.
11 And Shechem
said unto her father and unto her brethren,
Let me find *grace* **charism** in your eyes,
and what ye shall say unto me I *will* **shall** give.
12 Ask **Abound upon** me
never so much **a mighty** dowry and gift,
and I *will* **shall** give according as ye shall say unto me:
but give me the *damsel* **lass** to *wife* **woman**.
13 And the sons of *Jacob* **Yaaqov** answered
Shechem and Hamor his father deceitfully,
and *said* **worded**,
because he had *defiled* **fouled** Dinah their sister:
14 And they said unto them,
We cannot *do* **work** this *thing* **word**,
to give our sister to *one* **a man**
that is *uncircumcised* **foreskined**;
for that were a reproach unto us:
15 But in this *will* **shall** we consent unto you:
If ye *will* **shall** be as we be,
that every male of you be circumcised;
16 Then *will* **shall** we give our daughters unto you,
and we *will* **shall** take your daughters to us,
and we *will* **shall** dwell **shall settle** with you,
and we *will* **shall** become one people.
17 But if ye *will* **shall** not hearken unto us,
to be circumcised;
then *will* **shall** we take our daughter,
and we *will* **shall** be gone.
18 And their words
pleased well—**pleased the eyes of** Hamor,
and Shechem Hamor's son.
19 And the young *man* **lad**
deferred **delayed** not to *do* **work** the *thing* **word**,
because he had delight in *Jacob's* **Yaaqov's** daughter:
and he was more honourable
than all the house of his father.
20 And Hamor and Shechem his son

GENESIS 33, 34

exeGeses companion BIBLE

20 And there he stations a sacrifice altar
and calls it El Elohe Yisra El.

DINAH FOULED

34

And Dinah,
the daughter Leah birthed to Yaaqov,
goes out to see the daughters of the land:
2 and when Shechem the son of Hamor the Hivviy,
hierarch of the land, sees her,
he takes her and lies down with her and humbles her:
3 and his soul adheres to Dinah
the daughter of Yaaqov;
and he loves the lass
and words to the heart of the lass.
4 And Shechem says to his father Hamor,
saying, Take me this child to woman.
5 And Yaaqov hears
that he fouled Dinah his daughter:
and his sons *are* with his chattel in the field:
and Yaaqov hushes until they come:
6 and Hamor the father of Shechem
goes out to Yaaqov to word with him:
7 and when the sons of Yaaqov hear
they come from the field:
and the men contort and inflame mightily,
because he worked folly in Yisra El
in lying with the daughter of Yaaqov;
which ought not to be worked.
8 And Hamor words with them, saying,
The soul of my son Shechem
is attached to your daughter:
I beseech you, give her him to woman:
9 and intermarry with us
and give your daughters to us
and take our daughters to you:
10 and settle with us:
and the land is at your face:
settle and merchandise therein and possess therein.
11 And Shechem says to her father
and to her brothers,
Let me find charism in your eyes
and as you say to me, I give:
12 abound on me a mighty dowry and gift
and I give according as you say to me:
but give me the lass to woman.
13 And the sons of Yaaqov answer
Shechem and Hamor his father deceitfully
because he had fouled Dinah their sister,
and word,
14 and say to them, We cannot work this word,
to give our sister to a man — foreskined;
for that *is* a reproach to us:
15 but in this we consent to you:
If you become as we,
that every male of you circumcise;
16 then we give you our daughters
and we take your daughters to us
and we settle with you and we become one people:
17 and if you hearken not to us — to circumcise;
then we take our daughter and we go.
18 And their words well—please the eyes of Hamor
and Shechem the son of Hamor:
19 and the young lad delays not to work the word,
because he delights in the daughter of Yaaqov:
and he being more honorable
than all the house of his father.
20 And Hamor and Shechem his son

GENESIS 34, 35

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

came unto the *gate* **portal** of their city,
 and *communed* **worded** with the men of their city, saying,
 21 These men are *peaceable* **at shalom** with us;
 therefore let them *dwelt* **settle** in the land,
 and *trade* **merchandise** therein;
 for the land, behold,
 it is *large enough* for them **broadhanded at their face**;
 let us take their daughters to us for *wives* **women**,
 and let us give them our daughters.
 22 Only herein *will* **shall** the men consent unto us
 for to *dwelt* **settle** with us, to be one people,
 if every male among us be circumcised,
 as they are circumcised.
 23 Shall not their *cattle* **chattel**
 and their *substance* **all they chatted**
 and every *beast* **animal** of theirs be ours?
 only let us consent unto them,
 and they *will* **shall settle** with us.
 24 And unto Hamor and unto Shechem his son
 hearkened all that went out of the *gate* **portal** of his city;
 and every male was circumcised,
 all that went out of the *gate* **portal** of his city.
 25 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
 on the third day, when they were *sore* **pained**,
 that two of the sons of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
Simeon **Shimon** and Levi, Dinah's brethren,
 took each man his sword,
 and came upon the city *boldly* **confidently**,
 and *slew* **slaughtered** all the males.
 26 And they *slew* **slaughtered**
 Hamor and Shechem his son
 with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword,
 and took Dinah out of Shechem's house,
 and went out.
 27 The sons of *Jacob* **Yaaqov** came upon the *slain* **pierced**,
 and *spoiled* **plundered** the city,
 because they had *defiled* **fouled** their sister.
 28 They took their *sheep* **flocks**,
 and their oxen, and their *asses* **he burros**,
 and that which was in the city,
 and that which was in the field,
 29 And all their *wealth* **valuables**,
 and all their *little ones* **toddlers**,
 and *captured* their *wives* **took captive women**,
 and *spoiled* **plundered** even all that was in the house.
 30 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** said to *Simeon* **Shimon** and Levi,
 Ye have troubled me to make me to stink
 among the *inhabitants* of **them that settle** the land,
 among the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
 and the *Perizzites* **Perizziy**;
 and I *being* few **men** in number,
 they shall gather *themselves together* against me,
 and *slay* **smite** me;
 and I shall be *destroyed* **desolated**, I and my house.
 31 And they said,
 Should he *deal* **work** with our sister
 as with an *harlot* **one that whoreth**?

YAAQOV MOVES TO BETH EL

35 And *God* **Elohim** said unto *Jacob* **Yaaqov**, Arise,
 go up **ascend** to *Bethel* **Beth El**, and *dwelt* **settle** there:
 and *make* **work** there *an* **a sacrifice** altar unto *God* **El**,
 that *appeared unto* **was seen by** thee
 when thou fleddest
 from the face of *Esau* **Esav** thy brother.
 2 Then *Jacob* **Yaaqov** said unto his household,
 and to all that were with him,
 Put away **Turn aside** the strange *gods* **elohim**
 that are among you,
 and be *clean* **purified**, and change your *garments* **clothes**:
 3 And let us arise, and go up **ascend** to *Bethel* **Beth El**;
 and I *will* **make** **shall work** there
an **a sacrifice** altar unto *God* **El**,
 who answered me in the day of my *distress* **tribulation**,
 and was with me in the way which I went.
 4 And they gave unto *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
 all the strange *gods* **elohim** which were in their hand,
 and all their *earrings* **noserings** which were in their ears;
 and *Jacob hid* **Yaaqov buried** them under the oak
 which was by Shechem.

GENESIS 34, 35

exeGeses companion BIBLE

come to the portal of their city
 and word with the men of their city, saying,
 21 These men are at shalom with us;
 so let them settle in the land
 and merchandise therein;
 for the land behold, *is* broadhanded at their face;
 let us take their daughters to us for women
 and give them our daughters:
 22 only herein consent the men to us
 to settle with us — to become one people,
 if every male among us circumcise
 as they circumcise.
 23 Their chattel and all they chattel
 and every animal of theirs
 — are they not ours?
 Only let us consent to them
 so that they settle with us.
 24 And all who go from the portal of his city
 hearken to Hamor and to Shechem his son;
 and every male
 — all who go from the portal of his city circumcises.
 25 And so be it, on the third day, in their paining,
 two of the sons of Yaaqov,
 Shimon and Levi, brothers of Dinah,
 each man takes his sword
 and comes on the city confidently
 and slaughters all the males:
 26 and they slaughter Hamor and Shechem his son
 with the mouth of the sword
 and take Dinah from the house of Shechem and go.
 27 The sons of Yaaqov come on the pierced
 and plunder the city,
 because they fouled their sister:
 28 they take their flocks
 and their oxen and their he burros
 and that in the city and that in the field
 29 and all their valuables and all their toddlers
 and capture their women
 and even plunder all that *is* in the house.
 30 And Yaaqov says to Shimon and Levi,
 You have troubled me to make me to stink
 among them who settle the land
 — among the Kenaaniy and the Perizziy:
 and I — few men in number,
 they gather against me and smite me;
 and desolate me — I and my house.
 31 And they say,
 Works he our sister as one who whores?

YAAQOV MOVES TO BETH EL

35 And Elohim says to Yaaqov, Rise,
 ascend to Beth El and settle there:
 and work there a sacrifice altar to El;
 who was seen by you
 when you fled the face of Esav your brother.
 2 And Yaaqov says to his household
 and to all with him,
 Turn aside the strange elohim among you
 and purify and change your clothes:
 3 and we rise and ascend to Beth El;
 and I work there a sacrifice altar to El,
 who answers me in the day of my tribulation
 and is with me in the way I go.
 4 And they give Yaaqov
 all the strange elohim in their hand
 and all their noserings in their ears;
 and Yaaqov buries them under the oak by Shechem:

GENESIS 35

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 And they journeyed **pulled stakes**:
and the terror of *God Elohim*
was upon the cities that were round about them,
and they did not pursue after the sons of *Jacob Yaaqov*.

6 So *Jacob Yaaqov* came to Luz,
which is in the land of *Canaan Kenaan*,
that is, *Bethel Beth El*,
he and all the people that were with him.

7 And he built there *an a sacrifice* altar,
and called the place *Elbethel El Beth El*:
because there *God Elohim*
appeared exposed himself unto him,
when he fled from the face of his brother.

8 But *Deborah Rebekah's nurse Ribqah's suckler* died,
and she was *buried entombed* beneath *Bethel Beth El*
under an oak:
and the name of it was called *Allonbachuth Allon Bachuth*.

9 And *God Elohim*
appeared unto Jacob was seen by Yaaqov again,
when he came out of *Padanaram Paddan Aram*,
and blessed him.

ELOHIM CONFIRMS THE NAME YISRA EL

10 And *God Elohim* said unto him,
Thy name is *Jacob Yaaqov*:
thy name shall not be called any more *Jacob Yaaqov*,
but *Israel Yisra El* shall be thy name:
and he called his name *Israel Yisra El*.

11 And *God Elohim* said unto him,
I am God Almighty I — El Shadday:
be fruitful bear fruit and *multiply abound*;
a *nation goyim*
and a *company congregation of nations goyim*
shall be of thee,
and *kings sovereigns* shall come out of thy loins;

12 And the land
which I gave Abraham and *Isaac Yischaq*,
to thee I *will shall* give it,
and to thy seed after thee *will shall* I give the land.

13 And *God went up Elohim ascended* from him
in the place where he *talked worded* with him.

14 And *Jacob set up Yaaqov stationed a pillar monolith*
in the place where he *talked worded* with him,
even a pillar monolith of stone:
and he *poured libated a drink offering libation* thereon,
and he *poured libated* oil thereon.

15 And *Jacob Yaaqov* called the name of the place
where *God spake Elohim worded* with him,
Bethel Beth El.

16 And they journeyed **pulled stakes** from *Bethel Beth El*;
and there was *but a little way still a bit of land*
to come to Ephrath:
and Rachel *travailed birthed*, and she had hard *labour birth*.

17 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
when she was in hard *labour birthing*,
that the *midwife accoucheuse* said unto her,
Fear Awe not; thou shalt have this son also.

18 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
as her soul was in departing, (for she died)
that she called his name *Benoni Ben Oni*:
but his father called him *Benjamin Ben Yamin*.

19 And Rachel died,
and was *buried entombed* in the way to Ephrath,
which is *Bethlehem Beth Lechem*.

20 And *Jacob Yaaqov*
set a pillar stationed a monolith upon her *grave tomb*:
that is the *pillar monolith* of Rachel's *grave tomb*
unto this day.

21 And *Israel journeyed Yisra El pulled stakes*,
and spread his tent beyond *the tower of Edar Migdal Eder*.

22 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
when *Israel dwelt Yisra El tabernacled* in that land,
that *Reuben Reu Ben* went and lay with Bilhah
his father's concubine:
and *Israel Yisra El* heard it.

THE GENEALOGY OF YAAQOV

23 Now the sons of *Jacob Yaaqov* were twelve:
The sons of Leah;
Reuben Reu Ben, *Jacob's firstborn Yaaqov's firstbirthed*,
and *Simeon Shimon*, and Levi, and *Judah Yah Hudah*,

GENESIS 35

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 and they pull stakes:
and the terror of Elohim
on the cities surrounding them;
and they pursue not after the sons of Yaaqov.
So Yaaqov comes to Luz
in the land of Kenaan — Beth El
— he and all the people with him:
and he builds there a sacrifice altar
and calls the place El Beth El:
because there Elohim exposed himself to him,
when he fled the face of his brother.

8 And Deborah the suckler of Ribqah dies
and they entomb her beneath Beth El under an oak:
and they call the name thereof Allon Bachuth.

9 And Elohim appears to Yaaqov again,
when he comes from Paddan Aram,
and blesses him.

ELOHIM CONFIRMS THE NAME YISRA EL

10 And Elohim says to him, Your name is Yaaqov:
your name is no more called Yaaqov,
but Yisra El is your name:
and he calls his name Yisra El.

11 And Elohim says to him, I — El Shadday:
bear fruit and abound;
a goyim and a congregation of goyim
become from you;
and sovereigns come from your loins:
and the land I gave Abraham and Yischaq,
I give to you
and to your seed after you I give the land.

13 And Elohim ascends from him
from the place he worded with him:
and Yaaqov stations a monolith
in the place he worded with him
— even a monolith of stone:
and he libates a libation thereon
and he libates oil thereon:

15 and Yaaqov calls the name of the place
Elohim worded with him, Beth El.

16 And they pull stakes from Beth El;
and there is still a bit of land to come to Ephrath:
and Rachel births and she has hard birth.

17 And so be it, in her hard birthing,
the accoucheuse says to her,
Awe not; you have this son also.

18 And so be it,
as her soul departs — for she dies
she calls his name Ben Oni
— and his father calls him Ben Yamin.

19 And Rachel dies and they entomb her
in the way to Ephrath — Beth Lechem:
and Yaaqov stations a monolith on her tomb
— the monolith of the tomb of Rachel to this day.

21 And Yisra El pulls stakes
and spreads his tent beyond Migdal Eder:
and so be it,
as Yisra El tabernacles in that land,
Reu Ben goes and lies with Bilhah
the concubine of his father:
and Yisra El hears it.

THE GENEALOGY OF YAAQOV

And the sons of Yaaqov are twelve:

23 The sons of Leah:
Reu Ben, the firstbirth of Yaaqov
and Shimon and Levi and Yah Hudah

GENESIS 35, 36

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and *Issachar* **Yissachar**, and Zebulun:
24 The sons of Rachel;
Joseph **Yoseph**, and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**:
25 And the sons of *Billhah*, Rachel's *handmaid* **maid**;
Dan, and *Naphtali*:
26 And the sons of *Zilpah*, Leah's *handmaid* **maid**:
Gad, and *Asher*:
these are the sons of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
which were *born* **birthed** to him in *Padanaram* **Paddan Aram**.
27 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** came unto *Isaac* **Yischaq** his father
unto *Mamre*,
unto the city of *Arbah* **Qiryath Arba**, which is *Hebron*,
where *Abraham* and *Isaac* **Yischaq** sojourned.
28 And the days of *Isaac* **Yischaq**
were an hundred **years** and *fourscore* **eighty** years.
29 And *Isaac* gave up the *ghost* **Yischaq expired**, and died,
and was gathered unto his people,
being old **aged** and *full* **satisfied** of days:
and his sons *Esau* **Esav** and *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
buried **entombed** him.

THE GENEALOGY OF ESAV

36 Now **And** these are the generations of *Esau* **Esav**,
who is *Edom*.
2 *Esau* **Esav** took his *wives* **women**
of the daughters of *Canaan* **Kenaan**;
Adah the daughter of *Elon* the *Hittite* **Hethiy**,
and *Aholibamah* **Oholi Bamah** the daughter of *Anah*
the daughter of *Zibeon* **Sibon** the *Hivite* **Hivviy**;
3 And *Bashemath* **Bosmath** *Ishmael's* **Yishma El's** daughter,
sister of *Nebajoth* **Nebayoth**.
4 And *Adah* bare **birthed** to *Esau* **Eliphaz Esav, Eli Phaz**;
and *Bashemath* bare *Reuel* **Bosmath birthed Reu El**;
5 And *Aholibamah* bare *Jeush* **Oholi Bamah birthed Yeush**,
and *Jaalam* **Yalam**, and *Korah* **Qorach**:
these are the sons of *Esau* **Esav**,
which were *born* **birthed** unto him
in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**.
6 And *Esau* **Esav** took his *wives* **women**,
and his sons, and his daughters,
and all the *persons* **souls** of his house,
and his *cattle* **chattel**, and all his *beasts* **animals**,
and all his *substance* **he chatteled**,
which he had *got* **acquired** in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**;
and went into the *country* **land**
from the face of his brother *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.
7 For their *riches* **acquisitions** were more
than that they might *dwell* **settle** together;
and the land *wherein* they were *strangers* **of their sojournings**
could not bear them
because **at the face** of their *cattle* **chattel**.
8 Thus *dwelt* *Esau* **Esav settled** in mount *Seir*:
Esau **Esav** is *Edom*.
9 And these are the generations of *Esau* **Esav**
the father of the *Edomites* **Edomiy** in mount *Seir*:
10 These are the names of *Esau's* **Esav's** sons;
Eliphaz **Eli Phaz** the son of *Adah*
the *wife* **woman** of *Esau* **Esav**,
Reuel **Reu El** the son of *Bashemath* **Bosmath**
the *wife* **woman** of *Esau* **Esav**.
11 And the sons of *Eliphaz* **Eli Phaz** were
Teman, *Omar*, *Zepho* **Sepho**, and *Gatam*,
and *Kenaz* **Qenaz**.
12 And *Timna* was concubine to *Eliphaz* **Eli Phaz**
Esau's **Esav's** son;
and she bare **birthed** to *Eliphaz* **Amalek Eli Phaz, Amaleq**:
these were the sons of *Adah* *Esau's* **wife Esav's woman**.
13 And these are the sons of *Reuel* **Reu El**;
Nahath **Nachath**, and *Zerah* **Zerach**,
Shammah, and *Mizzah*:
these were the sons of *Bashemath* **Bosmath**
Esau's **wife Esav's woman**.
14 And these were the sons of *Aholibamah* **Oholi Bamah**,
the daughter of *Anah* the daughter of *Zibeon* **Sibon**,
Esau's **wife Esav's woman**:
and she bare **birthed** to *Esau* **Esav**
Jeush **Yeush**, and *Jaalam* **Yalam**, and *Korah* **Qorach**.
15 These were *dukes* **chiliarchs** of the sons of *Esau* **Esav**:
the sons of *Eliphaz* **Eli Phaz**
the *firstborn* son **firstbirthed** of *Esau* **Esav**;

GENESIS 35, 36

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and *Yissachar* and Zebulun.
24 The sons of Rachel:
Yoseph and Ben Yamin.
25 And the sons of *Billhah* the maid of Rachel:
Dan and *Naphtali*.
26 And the sons of *Zilpah* the maid of Leah:
Gad and *Asher*.
These are the sons of *Yaaqov*
birthed to him in *Padan Aram*.
27 And *Yaaqov* comes to *Yischaq* his father to *Mamre*,
to *Qiryath Arba* — *Hebron*,
where *Abraham* and *Yischaq* sojourned.
28 And the days of *Yischaq*
are a hundred years and eighty years:
and *Yischaq* expires and dies
and is gathered to his people
— aged and satisfied of days:
and his sons *Esav* and *Yaaqov* entomb him.

THE GENEALOGY OF ESAV

36 And these are the generations of *Esav* — *Edom*.
2 *Esav* takes his women of the daughters of *Kenaan*:
Adah the daughter of *Elon* the *Hethiy*;
and *Oholi Bamah* the daughter of *Anah*
the daughter of *Sibon* the *Hivviy*;
and *Bosmath* the daughter of *Yishma El*
the sister of *Nebayoth*.
3
4 And *Adah* births *Eli Phaz* to *Esav*:
and *Bosmath* births *Reu El*:
5 and *Oholi Bamah*
births *Yeush* and *Yalam* and *Qorach*:
these are the sons of *Esav*
birthed to him in the land of *Kenaan*.
6 And *Esav* takes his women
and his sons and his daughters
and all the souls of his house
and his chattel and all his animals
and all he chatteled,
which he acquired in the land of *Kenaan*;
and goes into the land
from the face of his brother *Yaaqov*.
7 For their acquisitions were more
than to settle together;
and the land of their sojournings
could not bear them at the face of their chattel.
8 Thus *Esav* settles in mount *Seir*: *Esav* — *Edom*.
9 And these are the generations of *Esav*
the father of the *Edomiy* in mount *Seir*.
10 These are the names of the sons of *Esav*:
Eli Phaz the son of *Adah* the woman of *Esav*,
Reu El the son of *Bosmath* the woman of *Esav*.
11 And the sons of *Eli Phaz*:
Teman, *Omar*, *Sepho* and *Gatam* and *Qenaz*.
12 And *Timna* is concubine
to *Eli Phaz* the son of *Esav*;
and she births *Amaleq* to *Eli Phaz*:
these are the sons of *Adah* the woman of *Esav*.
13 And these are the sons of *Reu El*:
Nachath and *Zerach*, *Shammah* and *Mizzah*
— these are the sons of *Bosmath* the woman of *Esav*.
14 And these are the sons of *Oholi Bamah*
the daughter of *Anah* the daughter of *Sibon*
the woman of *Esav*:
and she births *Yeush* and *Yalam* and *Qorach* to *Esav*.
15 These are chiliarchs of the sons of *Esav*:
the sons of *Eli Phaz* the firstbirth son of *Esav*:

GENESIS 36

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 16 *duke chiliarch* Teman, *duke chiliarch* Omar,
duke Zepho chiliarch Sepho,
duke Kenaz chiliarch Qenaz,
Duke Korah chiliarch Qorach, *duke chiliarch* Gatam,
and duke Amalek chiliarch Amaleq:
 these are the *dukes chiliarchs*
 that came of *Eliphaz Eli Phaz* in the land of Edom;
 these were the sons of Adah.
- 17 And these are the sons of *Reuel Reu El*
Esau's Esav's son;
duke Nahath chiliarch Nachath,
duke Zerach chiliarch Zerach,
duke chiliarch Shammah, *duke chiliarch* Mizzah:
 these are the *dukes chiliarchs* that came of *Reuel Reu El*
 in the land of Edom;
 these are the sons of *Bashemath Bosmath*
Esau's wife Esav's woman.
- 18 And these are the sons of *Aholibamah Oholi Bamah*
Esau's wife Esav's woman;
duke Jeush chiliarch Yeush, *duke Jaalam chiliarch* Yalam,
duke Korah chiliarch Qorach:
 these were the *dukes chiliarchs*
 that came *Aholibamah* of *Oholi Bamah*
 the daughter of Anah, *Esau's wife Esav's* woman.
- 19 These are the sons of *Esau Esav*, who is Edom,
 and these are their *dukes chiliarchs*.
- 20 These are the sons of *Seir the Horite Horiy*,
 who *inhabited settled* the land;
 Lotan, and Shobal, and *Zibeon Sibon*, and Anah,
 And Dishon, and *Ezer Eser*, and Dishan:
 these are the *dukes chiliarchs* of the *Horites Horiy*,
 the *children sons* of *Seir* in the land of Edom.
- 21 And the *children sons* of Lotan were Hori and Hemam;
 and Lotan's sister was Timna.
- 22 And the *children sons* of Shobal were these;
 Alvan, and *Manahath Manachath*, and Ebal,
 Shepho, and Onam.
- 23 And these are the *children sons* of *Zibeon Sibon*;
 both *Ajah Ayah*, and Anah:
 this was that Anah
 that found the *mules hot springs* in the wilderness,
 as he *fed tended* the *asses he burros* of *Zibeon Sibon*
 his father.
- 24 And the *children sons* of Anah were these;
 Dishon,
 and *Aholibamah Oholi Bamah* the daughter of Anah.
- 25 And these are the *children sons* of Dishon;
 Hemdan, and Eshban,
 and *Ithran Yithran*, and *Cheran Keran*.
 The *children sons* of *Ezer Eser* are these;
 Bilhan, and Zaavan, and *Akan Aqan*.
- 26 The *children sons* of Dishan are these;
 Uz Us, and Aran.
- 27 These are the *dukes chiliarchs*
 that came of the *Horites Horiy*;
duke chiliarch Lotan, *duke chiliarch* Shobal,
duke Zibeon chiliarch Sibon, *duke chiliarch* Anah,
Duke chiliarch Dishon, *duke Ezer chiliarch Eser*,
duke chiliarch Dishan:
 these are the *dukes chiliarchs* that came of Hori,
 among their *dukes chiliarchs* in the land of Seir.
- 28 And these are the *kings sovereigns*
 that reigned in the land of Edom,
 before there reigned at the face of the reign
 of any *king sovereign*
 over the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*.
- 29 And Bela the son of Beor reigned in Edom:
 and the name of his city was Dinhabah.
- 30 And Bela died,
 and *Jobab Yobab*
 the son of *Zerach Zerach* of *Bozrah Bosrah*
 reigned in his stead.
- 31 And *Jobab Yobab* died,
 and Husham of the land of *Temani Temaniy*
 reigned in his stead.
- 32 And Husham died,
 and Hadad the son of Bedad,
 who smote *Midian Midyan* in the field of Moab,
 reigned in his stead:

GENESIS 36

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 16 chiliarch Teman, chiliarch Omar,
 chiliarch Sepho, chiliarch Qenaz,
 chiliarch Qorach, chiliarch Gatam,
 chiliarch Amaleq:
 these are the chiliarchs of Eli Phaz
 in the land of Edom;
 — the sons of Adah.
- 17 And these are the sons of Reu El the son of Esav:
 chiliarch Nachath, chiliarch Zerach,
 chiliarch Shammah, chiliarch Mizzah:
 these are the chiliarchs of Reu El in the land of Edom;
 these are the sons of Bosmath the woman of Esav.
- 18 And these are the sons of Oholi Bamah
 the woman of Esav:
 chiliarch Yeush, chiliarch Yalam, chiliarch Qorach:
 these are the chiliarchs of Oholi Bamah
 the daughter of Anah, the woman of Esav.
- 19 These are the sons of Esav — Edom
 and these are their chiliarchs.
- 20 These are the sons of Seir the Horiy
 who settle the land:
 Lotan and Shobal and Sibon and Anah
 and Dishon and Ezer and Dishan:
 these are the chiliarchs of the Horiy
 the sons of Seir in the land of Edom.
- 21 And the sons of Lotan are Hori and Hemam:
 and the sister of Lotan is Timna.
- 22 And the sons of Shobal are these:
 Alvan and Manachath and Ebal
 Shepho and Onam.
- 23 And these are the sons of Sibon;
 both Ayah and Anah:
 this is that Anah
 who found the hot springs in the wilderness,
 as he tended the he burros of Sibon his father.
- 24 And these are the sons of Anah:
 Dishon and Oholi Bamah the daughter of Anah.
- 25 And these are the sons of Dishon:
 Hemdan and Eshban and Yithran and Keran.
- 26 These are the sons of Ezer:
 Bilhan and Zaavan and Aqan.
- 27 These are the sons of Dishan:
 Us and Aran.
- 28 These are the chiliarchs of the Horiy:
 chiliarch Lotan, chiliarch Shobal,
 chiliarch Sibon, chiliarch Anah,
 chiliarch Dishon, chiliarch Ezer, chiliarch Dishan:
 these are the chiliarchs of Hori
 among their chiliarchs in the land of Seir.
- 29 And these are the sovereigns
 who reigned in the land of Edom,
 at the face of the reign of any sovereign
 over the sons of Yisra El.
- 30 And Bela the son of Beor reigns in Edom:
 and the name of his city is Dinhabah.
- 31 And Bela dies
 and Yobab the son of Zerach of Bosrah
 reigns in his stead.
- 32 And Yobab dies
 and Husham of the land of Temaniy
 reigns in his stead.
- 33 And Husham dies
 and Hadad the son of Bedad
 who smote Midyan in the field of Moab
 reigns in his stead:

GENESIS 36, 37

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

36 and the name of his city was Avith.
And Hadad died,
and Samlah of *Masrekah* **Masreqah**
reigned in his stead.
37 And Samlah died,
and *Saul Shaul* of *Rehoboth* **Rechovoth** by the river
reigned in his stead.
38 And *Saul Shaul* died,
and *Baalhanan* **Baal Chanan** the son of Achbor
reigned in his stead.
39 And *Baalhanan* **Baal Chanan**
the son of Achbor died,
and Hadar reigned in his stead:
and the name of his city was Pau;
and his *wife's* **woman's** name was *Mehetabel* **Mehetab El**,
the daughter of Matred,
the daughter of *Mezahab* **Me Zahab**.
40 And these are the names
of the *dukes* **chiliarchs** that came of *Esau* **Esav**,
according to their families, after their places,
by their names;
duke Timnah **chiliarch Timna**, *duke* **chiliarch** Alvah,
duke Jetheth **chiliarch Yetheth**,
41 *Duke Aholibamah* **chiliarch Oholi Bamah**,
duke **chiliarch** Elah, *duke* **chiliarch** Pinon,
42 *Duke Kenaz* **chiliarch Qenaz**,
duke **chiliarch** Teman, *duke* **chiliarch** Mibzar,
43 *Duke Magdiel* **chiliarch Magdi El**, *duke* **chiliarch** Iram:
these be the *dukes* **chiliarchs** of Edom,
according to their *habitations* **settlements**
in the land of their possession:
he is *Esau* **Esav** the father of the *Edomites* **Edomiy**.

37

And *Jacob* dwelt **Yaaqov** settled in the land
wherein his father was a *stranger* **sojourned**,
in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**.

2 These are the generations of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.

THE DREAMS OF YOSEPH

Joseph **Yoseph**, being a son of seventeen years old,
was *feeding* **tending** the flock with his brethren;
and the lad was with the sons of *Billhah*,
and with the sons of *Zilpah*, his father's *wives* **women**:
and *Joseph* **Yoseph** brought unto his father
their *evil report* **slander**.
3 Now *Israel* **Yisra El** loved *Joseph* **Yoseph**
more than all his *children* **sons**,
because he was the son of his old age:
and he *made* **worked** him a **coverall** coat of many colours.
4 And when his brethren saw
that their father loved him more than all his brethren,
they hated him,
and could not *speak* **peaceably** **word shalom** unto him.
5 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** dreamed a dream,
and he told it his brethren:
and they hated him yet *the more* **again**.
6 And he said unto them, Hear, I *pray* **beseech** you,
this dream which I have dreamed:
7 For, behold,
we were *binding* **tying** sheaves *in* **midst** the field,
and, *lo* **behold**, my sheaf arose,
and also *stood upright* **stationed itself**;
and, behold, your sheaves *stood* **turned** round about,
and *made obeisance* **prostrated** to my sheaf.
8 And his brethren said to him,
In reigning,
Shalt thou *indeed* reign over us?
or **in having reign**,
shalt thou *indeed* have *dominion* **reign** over us?
And they hated him yet *the more* **again**
for his dreams, and for his words.
9 And he dreamed yet another dream,
and *told* **described** it to his brethren, and said,
Behold, I have dreamed a dream *more* **again**;
and, behold, the sun and the moon and the eleven stars
made obeisance **prostrated** to me.
10 And he *told* **described** it to his father,
and to his brethren:
and his father rebuked him, and said unto him,
What is this dream that thou hast dreamed?

GENESIS 36, 37

exeGesés companion BIBLE

36 and the name of his city *is* Avith.
And Hadad dies
and Samlah of *Masreqah*
reigns in his stead.
37 And Samlah dies
and Shaul of *Rechovoth* by the river
reigns in his stead.
38 And Shaul dies
and Baal Chanan the son of Achbor
reigns in his stead.
39 And Baal Chanan the son of Achbor dies
and Hadar
reigns in his stead:
and the name of his city *is* Pau;
and the name of his woman *is* *Mehetab El*
the daughter of Matred the daughter of *Me Zahab*.
40 And these *are* the names of the chiliarchs of *Esav*,
according to their families, according to their places,
by their names;
chiliarch *Timna*, chiliarch *Alvah*, chiliarch *Yetheth*,
41 chiliarch *Oholi Bamah*,
chiliarch *Elah*, chiliarch *Pinon*,
42 chiliarch *Qenaz*,
chiliarch *Teman*, chiliarch *Mibzar*,
43 chiliarch *Magdi El*, chiliarch *Iram*:
these *are* the chiliarchs of *Edom*,
according to their settlements
in the land of their possession:
he *is* *Esav* the father of the *Edomiy*.

37

And *Yaaqov* settles in the land
of the sojourning of his father
— in the land of *Kenaan*.

2 These *are* the generations of *Yaaqov*.

THE DREAMS OF YOSEPH

Yoseph, a son of seventeen years,
tends the flock with his brothers;
and the lad with the sons of *Billhah*
and with the sons of *Zilpah*, the women of his father:
and *Yoseph* brings their slander to his father.
3 *Yisra El* loves *Yoseph* more than all his sons,
because he *is* the son of his old age:
and he works him a coverall coat.
4 And when his brothers see
that their father loves him more than all his brothers
they hate him;
and cannot word *shalom* to him.
5 And *Yoseph* dreams a dream
and he tells his brothers:
and they hate him yet again.
6 And he says to them,
Hear, I beseech you, this dream I dreamed:
7 that behold,
we are tying sheaves *midst* the field,
and behold, my sheaf rises and also stations itself;
and behold, your sheaves turn around
and prostrate to my sheaf.
8 And his brothers say to him,
In reigning, reign you over us?
— *in reigning*, reign over us?
— and they hate him yet again
for his dreams and for his words.
9 And he dreams yet another dream
and describes it to his brothers and says,
Behold, I dreamed a dream again;
and behold,
the sun and the moon and the eleven stars
prostrate to me.
10 And he describes it to his father
and to his brothers:
and his father rebukes him and says to him,
What *is* this dream you dreamed?

GENESIS 37

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

Shall I and thy mother and thy brethren indeed come
to *bow down ourselves* **prostrate** to thee to the earth?
11 And his brethren envied him;
but his father *observed* **guarded** the *saying word*.
12 And his brethren went to *feed* **tend** their father's flock
in Shechem.
13 And *Israel* **Yisra El** said unto *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
Do not thy brethren *feed the flock* **tend** in Shechem?
come, and I *will* **shall** send thee unto them.
And he said to him, Here *am* — I.
14 And he said to him, Go, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
see whether it be *well* **shalom** with thy brethren,
and *well* **shalom** with the flocks;
and *bring* **return** me word *again*.
So he sent him out of the *vale* **valley** of Hebron,
and he came to Shechem.
15 And a *certain* man found him,
and, behold, he was wandering in the field:
and the man asked him, saying, What seekest thou?
16 And he said, I seek my brethren:
tell me, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
where they *feed their flocks* **tend**.
17 And the man said,
They *are departed* **have pulled stakes** hence;
for I heard them say, Let us go to Dothan.
And *Joseph* **Yoseph** went after his brethren,
and found them in Dothan.
CONSPIRACY AGAINST YOSEPH
18 And when they saw him afar off,
even before he *came near unto* **approached** them,
they conspired against him to *slay* **deathify** him.
19 And they said *one* **man** to *another* **brother**,
Behold, this *dreamer* **very master of dreams** cometh.
20 Come now therefore, and let us *slay* **slaughter** him,
and cast him into *some pit* **a well**, and we *will* **shall** say,
Some evil *beast* **live being** hath devoured him:
and we shall see what *will* **shall** become of his dreams.
21 And *Reuben* **Reu Ben** heard it,
and he *delivered* **rescued** him out of their hands;
and said, Let us not *kill him* **smite his soul**.
22 And *Reuben* **Reu Ben** said unto them,
Shed **Pour** no blood,
but cast him into this *pit* **well** that is in the wilderness,
and *lay* **spread** no hand upon him;
that he might *rid* **rescue** him out of their hands,
to *deliver* **return** him to his father *again*.
23 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
when *Joseph* **Yoseph** was come unto his brethren,
that they stript *Joseph* **Yoseph** out of his coat,
his **the coverall** coat of *many colours* that was on him;
24 And they took him, and cast him into a *pit* **well**:
and the *pit* **well** was empty, there was no water in it.
25 And they sat down to eat bread:
and they lifted up their eyes and *looked* **saw**, and, behold,
a *company* **caravan** of *Ishmeelites* **Yishma Eliy**
came from *Gilead* **Gilad** with their camels
bearing spicery and balm and myrrh,
going to *carry it down to* **Egypt** **descend it to Misrayim**.
26 And *Judah* **Yah Hudah** said unto his brethren,
What *profit* **gain** is it if we *slay* **to slaughter** our brother,
and *conceal* **cover** his blood?
27 Come,
and let us sell him to the *Ishmeelites* **Yishma Eliy**,
and let not our hand be upon him;
for he is our brother and our flesh.
And his brethren *were* **content** **hearkened**.
28 Then there passed by
Midianites merchantmen **men** — **Midyaniy merchants**;

GENESIS 37

exeGeses companion BIBLE

In coming, come we
— I and your mother and your brothers
to prostrate to you to the earth?
11 And his brothers envy him;
and his father guards the word:
12 and his brothers go to tend the flock of their father
in Shechem.
13 And Yisra El says to Yoseph,
Your brothers, tend they not in Shechem?
Come, and I send you to them.
And he says to him, Here — I.
14 And he says to him, Go, I beseech you,
see the shalom of your brothers
and the shalom of the flocks
and return me word.
— and he sends him from the valley of Hebron
and comes to Shechem.
15 And a man finds him;
and behold, he wanders in the field:
and the man asks him, saying, What seek you?
16 And he says, I seek my brothers!
Tell me, I beseech you, where they tend.
17 And the man says,
They pulled stakes from here;
for I heard them say, Let us go to Dothan.
— and Yoseph goes after his brothers
and finds them in Dothan.
CONSPIRACY AGAINST YOSEPH
18 And when they see him afar off,
even ere he approaches them,
they conspire against him to deathify him:
19 and they say, man to brother,
Behold, this very master of dreams comes.
20 and now, come and slaughter him
and cast him into a well;
and we say,
Some evil live being devoured him!
— and we see what becomes of his dreams.
21 And Reu Ben hears it
and he rescues him from their hands;
and says, Smite not his soul.
22 And Reu Ben says to them, Pour no blood,
but cast him into this well in the wilderness
and spread no hand on him!
— in order to rescue him from their hands
to return him to his father.
23 And so be it,
when Yoseph comes to his brothers,
they strip the coat from Yoseph
— his *coverall* coat on him;
24 and they take him and cast him into a well:
and the well *is* empty — no water therein:
and they sit down to eat bread:
and they lift their eyes and see, and behold,
a caravan of Yishma Eliy
coming from Gilad with their camels
— bearing spicery and balm and myrrh
going to descend to Misrayim.
26 And Yah Hudah says to his brothers,
What gain *is* there to slaughter our brother
and cover his blood?
27 Come, and we sell him to the Yishma Eliy
so that our hand not be on him;
for he *is* our brother and our flesh.
— and his brothers hearken.
28 And men pass by — Midyaniy merchants;

GENESIS 37, 38

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they drew
and lifted up Joseph ascended Yoseph out of the pit well,
and sold Joseph Yoseph to the Ishmeelites Yishma Ely
for twenty pieces of silver:
29 And they brought Joseph Yoseph into Egypt Misrayim.
And Reuben Reu Ben returned unto the pit well;
and, behold, Joseph Yoseph was not in the pit well;
and he rent ripped his clothes.
30 And he returned unto his brethren, and said,
The child is not; and I, whither shall I go?
31 And they took Joseph's Yoseph's coat,
and killed slaughtered a kid of the goats,
and dipped the coat in the blood;
32 And they sent the coverall coat of many colours,
and they brought it to their father; and said,
This have we found:
know now Recognize, I beseech,
whether it be thy son's coat or no.
33 And he knew recognized it, and said,
It is my son's coat;
an evil beast live being hath devoured him;
Joseph is without doubt rent in pieces
in tearing, Yoseph is torn.
34 And Jacob rent Yaaqov ripped his clothes,
and put sackcloth saq upon his loins,
and mourned for his son many days.
35 And all his sons and all his daughters
rose up to comfort sigh over him;
but he refused to be comforted sighed over; and he said,
For I will go down shall descend into the grave sheol
unto my son mourning.
Thus his father wept for him.
36 And the Midianites Midyaniym
sold him into Egypt Misrayim
unto Potiphar, an officer a eunuch of Pharaoh's Paroh's,
and captain governor of the guard slaughterers.

38

And so be it came to pass at that time,
that Judah Yah Hudah
went down descended from his brethren,
and turned in to a certain Adullamite man — an Adullamiy,
whose name was Hirah.
2 And Judah Yah Hudah saw there a daughter
of a certain Canaanite man — a Kenaaniy,
whose name was Shuah;
and he took her, and went in unto her.
3 And she conceived, and bare birthed a son;
and he called his name Er.
4 And she conceived again, and bare birthed a son;
and she called his name Onan.
5 And she yet again conceived, and bare birthed a son;
and called his name Shelah:
and he was at Chezib Kezib, when she bare birthed him.
6 And Judah Yah Hudah
took a wife woman for Er his firstborn firstbirthed,
whose name was Tamar.
7 And Er, Judah's firstborn Yah Hudah's firstbirthed,
was wicked evil in the sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh;
and the LORD slew Yah Veh deathified him.
8 And Judah Yah Hudah said unto Onan,
Go in unto thy brother's wife woman,
and marry her be her levirate,
and raise up seed to thy brother.
9 And Onan knew that the seed should not be his;
and so be it came to pass,
when he went in unto his brother's wife woman,
that he spilled ruined it on the ground earth,
lest that he should give seed to his brother.
10 And the thing that which he did worked
displeased the LORD was evil in the eyes of Yah Veh:
wherefore he slew deathified him also.
11 Then said Judah Yah Hudah to Tamar
his daughter in law,
Remain Settle, a widow at thy father's house,
till Shelah my son be grown: for he said,
Lest peradventure he die also, as his brethren did.
And Tamar went and dwelt settled in her father's house.

GENESIS 37, 38

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they draw and ascend Yoseph from the well
and sell Yoseph to the Yishma Ely for twenty silver:
and they bring Yoseph into Misrayim.
29 And Reu Ben returns to the well,
and behold, Yoseph is not in the well;
and he rips his clothes:
30 and he returns to his brothers and says,
The child is not; and I — where go I?
31 And they take the coat of Yoseph
and slaughter a kid of the goats
and dip the coat in the blood:
32 and they send the coverall coat
and bring it to their father; and say,
We found this! Recognize, I beseech,
whether it be the coat of your son, or no.
33 And he recognizes it and says,
It is the coat of my son;
an evil live being devoured him:
in tearing, Yoseph is torn.
34 — and Yaaqov rips his clothes
and puts saq on his loins
and mourns for his son many days.
35 And all his sons and all his daughters
rise to sigh over him;
but he refuses to be sighed over; and he says,
For — I descend mourning into sheol — to my son.
— thus his father weeps for him.
36 And the Midyaniym sell him into Misrayim
to Potiphar, a eunuch of Paroh
and governor of the slaughterers.

38

And so be it, at that time,
Yah Hudah descends from his brothers
and turns to a man
— an Adullamiy whose name is Hirah:
2 and Yah Hudah sees there a daughter of a man
— a Kenaaniy whose name is Shuah:
and he takes her and goes in to her;
3 and she conceives and births a son;
and he calls his name Er.
4 And she conceives again and births a son;
and she calls his name Onan.
5 And she yet again, and births a son;
and calls his name Shelah:
and he is at Kezib, when she births him.
6 And Yah Hudah takes a woman for Er his firstborn,
whose name is Tamar.
7 And Er, the firstbirth of Yah Hudah,
is evil in the eyes of Yah Veh;
and Yah Veh deathifies him.
8 And Yah Hudah says to Onan,
Go in to the woman of your brother
and be her levirate
and raise up seed to your brother.
9 And Onan knows that the seed is not his;
and so be it,
when he goes in to the woman of his brother,
he ruins it on the earth,
lest he give seed to his brother.
10 And what he works is evil in the eyes of Yah Veh:
and he deathifies him also.
11 Then Yah Hudah
says to Tamar his daughter in law,
Settle, a widow at the house of your father,
until Shelah my son grows: for he says,
Lest he die — even he, as his brothers.
And Tamar goes and settles in the house of her father.

YAH HUDAH AND TAMAR

GENESIS 38

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 And in process of time as the days abounded
the daughter of Shuah,
Judah's wife **Yah Hudah's woman** died;
and Judah was comforted **Yah Hudah sighed**,
and went up **ascended**
unto his *sheepshearers* **flockshearers** to *Timnath* **Timnah**,
he and his friend Hirah the *Adullamite* **Adullamiy**.
THE WHOREDOM OF YAH HUDAH

13 And it was told Tamar, saying, Behold,
thy father in law *goeth up* **ascendeth** to *Timnath* **Timnah**
to shear his *sheep* **flock**.
14 And she
put her widow's garments off from her
turned aside the clothing of her widowhood,
and covered her with a veil, and wrapped herself,
and sat in *an open place* **the portal of the fountain**,
which is by the way to *Timnath* **Timnah**;
for she saw that Shelah was grown,
and she was not given unto him to *wife* **woman**.
15 When Judah **Yah Hudah** saw her,
he *thought* **fabricated** her
to be an *harlot* **one that whoreth**;
because she had covered her face.
16 And he turned unto her by the way, and said,
Go to **Give**, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
let me come in unto thee;
(for he knew not that she was his daughter in law.)
And she said, What *wilt* **shalt** thou give me,
that thou mayest come in unto me?
17 And he said, I *will* **shall** send thee
a kid **of the goats** from the flock.
And she said,
Wilt **Shalt** thou give me a pledge, till thou send it?
And he said, What pledge shall I give thee?
18 And she said, Thy *signet* **seal**, and thy *bracelets* **braids**,
and thy *staff* **rod** that is in thine hand.
And he gave it her, and came in unto her,
and she conceived by him.
19 And she arose, and went away,
and *laid by* **turned aside** her veil from her,
and *put on* **enrobed**
the *garments* **clothes** of her widowhood.
20 And Judah **Yah Hudah** sent the kid **of the goats**
by the hand of his friend the *Adullamite* **Adullamiy**,
to receive **take** his pledge from the woman's hand:
but he found her not.
21 Then he asked the men of that place, saying,
Where is the *harlot* **hallowed whore**,
that was *openly* **at the opening of the fountain**
by the way side?
And they said,
There was no *harlot* in this place **hallowed whore here**.
22 And he returned to Judah **Yah Hudah**, and said,
I cannot find her;
and also the men of the place said,
that there was no
harlot in this place **hallowed whore here**.
23 And Judah **Yah Hudah** said, Let her take it to her,
lest we be *shamed* **a disrespect**:
behold, I sent this kid, and thou hast not found her.
24 And **so be** it *came to pass*, about three months after,
that it was told Judah **Yah Hudah**, saying,
Tamar thy daughter in law hath *played the* **harlot whored**;
and also, behold,
she is with child **hath conceived**
by *whoredom* **whoredoms**.
And Judah **Yah Hudah** said,
Bring her forth, and let her be burnt.
25 When she was brought forth,
she sent to her father in law, saying,
By the man, whose these are,
am I with child **have I conceived**:
and she said, *Discern* **Recognize**, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
whose are these,
the *signet* **seal**, and *bracelets* **braids**, and *staff* **rod**.

GENESIS 38

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 And as the days abound,
the daughter of Shuah,
the woman of Yah Hudah dies:
and Yah Hudah sighs
and ascends to his flockshearers to Timnah,
he and his friend Hirah the Adullamiy.
THE WHOREDOM OF YAH HUDAH

13 And they tell Tamar, saying, Behold,
your father in law ascends to Timnah
to shear his flock.

14 And she turns aside the clothing of her widowhood
and covers her with a veil and wraps herself
and sits in the portal of the fountain
by the way to Timnah;
for she sees that Shelah is grown
and she was not given to him to woman.

15 When Yah Hudah sees her,
he fabricates her to be one who whores;
because she covers her face:
16 and he turns to her by the way and says,
Give, I beseech you, that I come in to you;
— for he knows not she *is* his daughter in law.
And she says, What give you me, to come in to me?

17 And he says,
I send you a kid of the goats from the flock.
And she says,
What pledge give you me, until you send it?

18 And he says, What pledge give I you?
And she says,
Your seal and your braids and the rod in your hand.
And he gives her and comes in to her
— and she conceives by him.

19 And she rises and goes and turns aside her veil
and enrobes the clothes of her widowhood:
20 and Yah Hudah sends the kid of the goats
by the hand of his friend the Adullamiy,
to take his pledge from the hand of the woman;
and he finds her not.

21 Then he asks the men of that place, saying,
Where *is* the hallowed whore,
who was at the opening of the fountain
by the way side?
And they say, There was no hallowed whore here.

22 And he returns to Yah Hudah and says,
I cannot find her;
and also the men of the place say,
that there was no hallowed whore here.

23 And Yah Hudah says, Let her take them to herself,
lest we become disrespected:
behold, I send this kid and you find her not.

24 And so be it, about three months after,
they tell Yah Hudah, saying,
Tamar your daughter in law has whored;
and also, behold, she conceived by whoredoms.
And Yah Hudah says, Bring her, and burn her.

25 They bring her,
and she sends to her father in law, saying,
By the man, whose these *are*, I conceived!
And she says, Recognize, I beseech you,
whose these *are* — the seal and braids and rod.

GENESIS 38, 39

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

26 And Judah acknowledged Yah Hudah recognized them,
and said,
She hath been *more righteous* justified more than I;
because that I gave her not to Shelah my son.
And he knew her again no more.
27 And **so be** it came to pass in the time of her travail birthing,
that, behold, twins were in her womb belly.
28 And **so be** it came to pass, when she travailed birthed,
that the one put gave out his a hand:
and the midwife accoucheuse took
and bound upon his hand a scarlet thread,
saying, This came out first.
29 And **so be** it came to pass,
as he drew turned back his hand,
that, behold, his brother came out:
and she said, How hast thou broken forth breached?
this breach be upon thee:
therefore his name was called Pharez Peres.
30 And afterward came out his brother,
that had the scarlet thread upon his hand:
and his name was called Zarah Zerach.

YOSEPH IN MISRAYIM

39

And Joseph Yoseph
was brought down descended to Egypt Misrayim;
and Potiphar, an officer a eunuch of Pharaoh Paroh,
captain governor of the guard slaughterers,
an Egyptian a man — a Misrayim,
bought chatteled him
of the hands of the Ishmeelites Yishma Eliy,
which had brought descended him down thither.
2 And the LORD Yah Veh was with Joseph Yoseph,
and he was a prosperous prospering man;
and he was in the house of his master adoni
the Egyptian Misrayim.
3 And his master adoni
saw that the LORD Yah Veh was with him,
and that the LORD made Yah Veh prospered
all that he did to prosper worked in his hand.
4 And Joseph Yoseph found grace charism
in his sight eyes,
and he served ministered to him:
and he made had him overseer oversee over his house,
and all that he had he put gave into his hand.
5 And **so be** it came to pass,
from the time that he had made him overseer
since he had him overseer
in his house, and over all that he had,
that the LORD Yah Veh
blessed the Egyptian's Misrayim's house
for Joseph's Yoseph's sake;
and the blessing of the LORD Yah Veh
was upon all that he had in the house, and in the field.
6 And he left all that he had in Joseph's Yoseph's hand;
and he knew not ought he had,
save the bread which he did eat.
And Joseph Yoseph
was a goodly person beautiful in form,
and well favoured beautiful in visage.
7 And **so be** it came to pass, after these things words,
that his master's wife adoni's woman
cast lifted her eyes upon Joseph Yoseph;
and she said, Lie with me.
8 But he refused,
and said unto his master's wife adoni's woman,
Behold, my master wotteth perceiveth not
what is with me in the house,
and he hath committed given all that he hath to my hand;
9 There is none greater in this house than I;
neither hath he kept back withheld
any thing aught from me but thee,
because thou art his wife woman:
how then can I do work this great wickedness evil,
and sin against God Elohim?
10 And **so be** it came to pass,
as she spake worded to Joseph Yoseph day by day,
that he hearkened not unto her,
to lie by beside her, or to be with her.
11 And **so be** it came to pass, about this time day,
that Joseph he went into the house

GENESIS 38, 39

exeGeses companion BIBLE

26 And Yah Hudah recognizes them, and says,
She is more justified than I;
because I gave her not to Shelah my son.
— and he knew her again no more.
27 And so be it, in the time of her birthing,
that, behold, twins in her belly.
28 And so be it,
as she births, the one gives out a hand:
and the accoucheuse
takes and binds scarlet on his hand,
saying, This came out first.
29 And so be it, as he turns back his hand,
behold, his brother comes out:
and she says, How have you breached?
This breach be upon you!
— and he calls his name Peres.
30 And afterward his brother comes out,
with the scarlet on his hand:
and he calls his name Zerach.

YOSEPH IN MISRAYIM

39

And Yoseph descends to Misrayim;
and Potiphar, a eunuch of Paroh,
governor of the slaughterers, a man — a Misrayim,
chattels him from the hands of the Yishma Eliy,
who descended him there.
2 And Yah Veh is with Yoseph
and he is a prosperous man;
and he is in the house of his adoni the Misrayim.
3 And his adoni sees that Yah Veh is with him
and that Yah Veh prospers all that he works
in his hand:
4 and Yoseph finds charism in his eyes
and he ministers to him:
and he has him oversee over his house
and gives all he has into his hand.
5 And so be it,
ever since he has him oversee in his house
and over all he has,
Yah Veh blesses the house of the Misrayim
because of Yoseph;
and the blessing of Yah Veh is on all he has
in the house and in the field:
6 and he leaves all he has in the hand of Yoseph;
and he knows not aught of what he has
— except the bread he eats.
And Yoseph is beautiful in form
and beautiful in visage.
7 And so be it, after these words,
that the woman of his adoni lifts her eyes on Yoseph;
and she says, Lie with me.
8 But he refuses, and says to the woman of his adoni,
Behold, my master perceives not
what is with me in the house
and he gives all he has into my hand;
9 no one in this house is greater than I;
and he withholds naught from me except you,
because you are his woman:
how then work I this great evil
and sin against Elohim?
10 And so be it, as she words to Yoseph day by day,
he hearkens not to her,
to lie beside her, or to be with her:
11 and so be it, this day,
he goes into the house

GENESIS 39, 40

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

to do work his business work;
and there was none no man of the men of the house
there within the house.
12 And she caught captured him by his garment clothes,
saying, Lie with me:
and he left his garment clothes in her hand,
and fled, and got him out.
13 And so be it came to pass,
when she saw
that he had left his garment clothes in her hand,
and was fled forth out,
14 That she called unto the men of her house,
and spake said unto them, saying,
See, he hath brought in a man — an Hebrew unto us
to mock ridicule us;
he came in unto me to lie with me,
and I cried called with a loud great voice:
15 And so be it came to pass,
when he heard that I lifted up my voice and cried called,
that he left his garment with clothes beside me,
and fled, and got him out.
16 And she laid up set his garment by clothes beside her,
until his lord adoni came home.
17 And she spake worded unto him
according to these words, saying,
The Hebrew servant, which thou hast brought unto us,
came in unto me to mock ridicule me:
18 And so be it came to pass,
as I lifted up my voice and cried called,
that he left his garment with clothes beside me,
and fled out.
19 And so be it came to pass,
when his master adoni
heard the words of his wife woman,
which she spake worded unto him, saying,
After this manner did word worked thy servant to me;
that his wrath was kindled.
20 And Joseph's master Yoseph's adoni took him,
and put gave him into the prison tower house,
a place where the king's prisoners sovereign's bound
were bound:
and he was there in the prison tower house.
21 But the LORD Yah Veh was with Joseph Yoseph,
and shewed spread him mercy,
and gave him favour charism in the sight eyes
of the keeper governor of the prison tower house.
22 And the keeper governor of the prison tower house
committed to Joseph's gave into Yoseph's hand
all the prisoners that were bound
in the prison tower house;
and whatsoever they did worked there,
he was the doer worker of it.
23 The keeper governor of the prison tower house
looked not to any thing saw after naught
that was under his hand;
because the LORD Yah Veh was with him,
and that which he did worked,
the LORD Yah Veh made it to prosper.

YOSEPH INTERPRETS DREAMS

40 And so be it came to pass after these things words,
that the butler of the king sovereign of Egypt Misrayim
and his baker had offended sinned against their lord adoni
the king sovereign of Egypt Misrayim.
2 And Pharaoh Paroh was wroth enraged
against two of his officers eunuchs,
against the chief governor of the butlers,
and against the chief governor of the bakers.
3 And he put gave them in ward under guard
in the house
of the captain governor of the guard slaughterers,
into the prison tower house,
the place where Joseph Yoseph was bound.
4 And the captain governor of the guard slaughterers
charged Joseph mustered Yoseph with them,
and he served ministered to them:
and they continued a season in ward day under guard.
5 And they dreamed a dream both the two of them,
each man his dream in one night,

GENESIS 39, 40

exeGeses companion BIBLE

to work his work;
and there no man of the men of the house
is within the house:
12 and she captures him by his clothes,
saying, Lie with me!
— and he leaves his clothes in her hand
and flees and gets out.
13 And so be it,
when she sees he leaves his clothes in her hand,
and flees,
14 she calls to the men of her house
and says to them, saying,
See, he brings a man to us
— a Hebrew to ridicule us;
he comes in to me to lie with me
and I call with a great voice:
15 and so be it,
when he hears me lift my voice and call,
he leaves his clothes beside me
and flees and gets out.
— and she sets his clothes beside her
until his adoni comes home.
17 And she words to him according to these words,
saying,
The Hebrew servant, whom you brought to us,
came in to me, to ridicule me:
18 and so be it, as I lift up my voice and call,
he leaves his clothes beside me and flees.
19 And so be it,
when his adoni hears the words
his woman words to him, saying,
After this word your servant worked to me
— his wrath kindles.
20 And the adoni of Yoseph takes him
and gives him into the tower house,
a place where the bound of the sovereign
are bound:
and there he is in the tower house.
21 And Yah Veh is with Yoseph
and spreads him mercy;
and gives him charism
in the eyes of the governor of the tower house:
22 and the governor of the tower house
gives into the hand of Yoseph
all who are bound in the tower house:
and whatever they work there,
he is the worker thereof:
23 the governor of the tower house
sees after naught under his hand;
because Yah Veh is with him
and whatever he works, Yah Veh prospers.

YOSEPH INTERPRETS DREAMS

40 And so be it, after these words,
the butler of the sovereign of Misrayim
and his baker sin against their adoni
the sovereign of Misrayim:
2 and Paroh rages against two of his eunuchs
— against the governor of the butlers
and against the governor of the bakers:
3 and he gives them under guard in the house
of the governor of the slaughterers
— in the tower house
the place where Yoseph is bound:
4 and the governor of the slaughterers
musters Yoseph with them
and he ministers to them:
and they continue a day under guard.
5 And they dream a dream, the two of them
— each man his dream in one night

GENESIS 40

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

each man according to the interpretation of his dream,
the butler and the baker
of the king **sovereign** of Egypt **Misrayim**,
which were bound in the **prison tower house**.

6 And **Yoseph** came in unto them in the morning,
and **looked upon** **saw** them,
and, behold, they were **sad wroth**.

7 And he asked **Pharaoh's officers Paroh's eunuchs**
that were with him
in under the **ward guard** of his **lord's adoni's** house,
saying,
Wherefore **look ye so sadly** **are your faces evil** to day?

8 And they said unto him,
We have dreamed a dream,
and there is no interpreter of it.
And **Yoseph** said unto them,
Do Be not interpretations **belong to God of Elohim?**
tell describe me them, I **pray beseech** you.

9 And the **chief butler governor of the butlers**
told described his dream to **Yoseph**,
and said to him,
In my dream, behold, a vine was **before me at my face**;
And in the vine were three **branches tendrils**:
and it was as **though it budded blossoming**,
and her blossoms **shot forth ascended**;
and the clusters thereof **brought forth ripe ripened** grapes:
And **Pharaoh's Paroh's** cup was in my hand:
and I took the grapes,
and pressed them into **Pharaoh's Paroh's** cup,
and I gave the cup into **Pharaoh's hand Paroh's palm**.

12 And **Yoseph** said unto him,
This is the interpretation of it:
The three **branches tendrils** are three days:
Yet **Again** within three days
shall **Pharaoh Paroh** lift up thine head,
and restore thee unto thy **place station**:
and thou shalt **deliver Pharaoh's give Paroh's** cup
into his hand,
after the **former manner first judgment**
when thou wast his butler.

14 But **think on remember** me
when it shall be well with thee **thou be well—pleased**,
and **shew kindness work mercy**, I **pray beseech** thee,
unto me,
and **make mention of remember** me unto **Pharaoh Paroh**,
and bring me out of this house:

15 For **indeed in stealing**, I was stolen away
out of the land of the Hebrews:
and here also have I **done nothing worked naught**
that they should put me into the **dungeon well**.

16 When the **chief baker governor of the bakers**
saw that the interpretation was good,
he said unto **Yoseph**,
I also was in my dream, and, behold,
I had three white — **three perforated** baskets on my head:
And in the uppermost basket
there was of **all manner of bakemeats the work of a baker**
for **Pharaoh Paroh**;
and the **birds flyers** did eat them
out of the basket upon my head.

18 And **Yoseph** answered and said,
This is the interpretation thereof:
The three baskets are three days:
Yet **Again** within three days
shall **Pharaoh Paroh** lift up thy head from off thee,
and shall hang thee on a tree;
and the **birds flyers** shall eat thy flesh from off thee.

20 And it came to pass **became** the third day,
which was **Pharaoh's Paroh's** birthday,
that he **made worked** a **feast banquet** unto all his servants:
and he lifted up the head
of the **chief butler governor of the butlers**
and **the head**
of the **chief baker governor of the bakers**
among his servants.

21 And he restored the **chief butler governor of the butlers**
unto his butlership again;
and he gave the cup into **Pharaoh's hand Paroh's palm**:
But he hanged the **chief baker governor of the bakers**:

GENESIS 40

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— each man
according to the interpretation of his dream;
the butler and the baker of the sovereign of Misrayim
who are bound in the tower house.

6 And Yoseph comes in to them in the morning
and sees them and behold, they are wroth:
and he asks the eunuchs of Paroh who are with him
under the guard of the house of his adoni, saying,
Why are your faces evil today?

8 And they say to him, We dreamed a dream,
and there is no interpreter thereof.

And Yoseph says to them,
Are not interpretations from Elohim?
Describe me them, I beseech you.

9 And the governor of the butlers
describes his dream to Yoseph and says to him,
In my dream, behold, a vine at my face;
and in the vine, three tendrils as blossoming;
and her blossoms ascend:
and the clusters thereof ripen grapes:
and the cup of Paroh is in my hand:
and I take the grapes
and press them into the cup of Paroh
and I give the cup into the palm of Paroh.

12 And Yoseph says to him,
This is the interpretation thereof:
The three tendrils are three days:
yet within three days Paroh lifts your head
and restores you to your station:
and you give the cup of Paroh into his hand,
as the first judgment when you were his butler.

14 But remember me when you are well—pleased;
and work mercy, I beseech you, to me
and remember me to Paroh
and bring me from this house:
for in stealing,
I was stolen from the land of the Hebrews:
and here also
I worked naught that they put me into the well.

16 When the governor of the bakers
sees the interpretation is good,
he says to Yoseph,
I also — in my dream, and behold,
three perforated baskets on my head:
and in the uppermost basket
are the works of a baker for Paroh;
and the flyers eat them from the basket on my head.

18 And Yoseph answers and says,
This is the interpretation thereof:
The three baskets are three days:
again within three days
Paroh lifts your head from off you
and hangs you on a tree;
and the flyers eat your flesh from you.

20 And so be it, the third day, the birthday of Paroh,
he works a banquet to all his servants:
and he lifts the head of the governor of the butlers
and the head of the governor of the bakers
among his servants:
and he restores the governor of the butlers
to his butlership again;
and he gives the cup into the palm of Paroh:
and he hangs the governor of the bakers:

GENESIS 40, 41

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 as Joseph Yoseph had interpreted to them.
Yet did not the chief butler **governor of the butlers**
remember Joseph Yoseph, but forgot him.

PAROH DREAMS

41

And so be it came to pass
at the end of two full years years of days,
that Pharaoh Paroh dreamed:
and, behold, he stood by the river.
2 And, behold, there came up ascended out of the river
seven well favoured kine heifers beautiful visaged
and fattleshed;
and they fed grazed in a meadow the bulrushes.
3 And, behold,
seven other kine came up heifers ascended after them
out of the river,
ill favoured evil visaged and leanfleshed thinfleshed;
and stood by the other kine heifers
upon the brink edge of the river.
4 And the ill favoured evil visaged
and leanfleshed kine thinfleshed heifers
did eat up the seven
well favoured beautiful visaged and fat kine heifers.
So Pharaoh Paroh awoke.
5 And he slept and dreamed the second time:
and, behold,
seven ears of corn came up ascended upon one stalk stem,
rank fat and good.
6 And, behold,
seven thin ears and blasted with the east wind easterly
sprung up after them.
7 And the seven thin ears
devoured swallowed the seven rank fat and full ears.
And Pharaoh Paroh awoke, and, behold, it was a dream.
8 And so be it came to pass in the morning
that his spirit was troubled agitated;
and he sent and called for
all the magicians of Egypt Misrayim,
and all the wise men thereof:
and Pharaoh told Paroh described them his dream;
but there was none that could interpret them
unto Pharaoh Paroh.
9 Then spake worded
the chief butler governor of the butlers
unto Pharaoh Paroh, saying,
I do remember my faults sins this day:
10 Pharaoh Paroh was wrath enraged with his servants,
and put gave me in ward under guard
in the captain governor of the guard's slaughterer's house,
both me and the chief baker governor of the bakers:
11 And we dreamed a dream in one night, I and he;
we dreamed each man
according to the interpretation of his dream.
12 And there was there with us a young man lad,
an Hebrew,
servant to the captain governor of the guard slaughterers;
and we told described to him,
and he interpreted to us our dreams;
to each man according to his dream he did interpret.
13 And so be it came to pass,
as he interpreted to us, so it was;
me he restored unto mine office my station,
and him he hanged.
14 Then Pharaoh Paroh sent and called Joseph Yoseph,
and they brought ran him hastily out of the dungeon well:
and he shaved himself, and changed his raiment clothes,
and came in unto Pharaoh Paroh.
15 And Pharaoh Paroh said unto Joseph Yoseph,
I have dreamed a dream,
and there is none that can interpret it:
and I have heard say of thee,
that thou canst understand hearest a dream to interpret it.
16 And Joseph Yoseph answered Pharaoh Paroh,
saying, It is not in me Except for I:
God Elohim shall give Pharaoh Paroh
an answer of peace shalom.
17 And Pharaoh said Paroh worded unto Joseph Yoseph,
In my dream, behold,
I stood upon the bank edge of the river:
18 And, behold,

GENESIS 40, 41

exeGesés companion BIBLE

as Yoseph interprets to them.

23

Yet the governor of the butlers
remembers not Yoseph, but forgets him.

PAROH DREAMS

41

And so be it, at the end of two years of days,
Paroh dreams: and behold, he stands by the river:
2 and behold, seven heifers ascend from the river
— beautiful visaged and fattleshed;
and they graze in the bulrushes:
3 and behold,
seven other heifers ascend after them from the river
— evil visaged and thinfleshed
and they stand by the heifers on the edge of the river:
4 and the evil visaged and thinfleshed heifers
eat up the seven beautiful visaged and fat heifers
— and Paroh wakes.
5 And he sleeps and dreams the second: and behold,
seven ears ascend on one stem, fat and good:
6 and behold,
seven thin ears blasted by the easterly
spring up after them:
7 and the thin ears swallow the seven fat and full ears
— and Paroh wakes, and behold, it is a dream.
8 And so be it, in the morning, his spirit agitates;
and he sends and calls for
all the magicians of Misrayim and all the wise thereof:
and Paroh describes his dream;
and there is no interpreter to Paroh.
9 Then the governor of the butlers words to Paroh,
saying, I remember my sins this day:
10 Paroh raged with his servants
and gave me under guard
in the house of the governor of the slaughterer
— me and the governor of the bakers:
11 and we dreamed a dream in one night
— I and he — we dreamed
— each man
according to the interpretation of his dream.
12 And there is a lad with us — a Hebrew,
servant to the governor of the slaughterers;
and we describe to him
and he interprets to us our dreams;
to each man according to his dream he interprets.
13 And so be it, as he interprets to us, so be it;
he restores me to my station and he hangs him.
14 Then Paroh sends and calls Yoseph
and they run him from the well:
and he shaves and changes his clothes
and comes in to Paroh.
15 And Paroh says to Yoseph,
I dreamed a dream and there is no interpreter:
and I hear say of you,
that you hear a dream to interpret it.
16 And Yoseph answers Paroh, saying,
Except for I:
Elohim answers Paroh with shalom.
17 And Paroh words to Yoseph,
In my dream, behold, I stand on the edge of the river:
18 and behold,

GENESIS 41

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

there *came up* **ascended** out of the river seven *kine* **heifers**,
fatfleshed and *well favoured* **of beautiful form**;
and they *fed in a meadow* **grazed in the bulrushes**:
19 And, behold,
seven other *kine came up* **heifers ascended** after them,
poor and *very ill favoured* **mighty evil formed**
and *leanfleshed* **emaciated flesh**, such as I never saw
in all the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim** for *badness* **evil**:
20 And the *lean* **emaciated**
and the *ill favoured* *kine* **evil heifers**
did eat up the first seven fat *kine* **heifers**:
21 And when they had
eaten them up **entered their inwards**,
it could not be known **they were not seen**
that they had eaten them **entering their inwards**;
but they were still *ill favoured* **evil visaged**,
as at the beginning.
So I awoke.
22 And I saw in my dream, and, behold,
seven ears *came up* **ascended** in one *stalk* **stem**,
full and good:
23 And, behold, seven ears, withered, thin,
and blasted with the *east wind* **easterly**,
sprung up after them:
24 And the thin ears
devoured **swallowed** the seven good ears:
and I *told said* this unto the magicians;
but there was none *that could declare it to* **tell me**.
25 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** said unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
The dream of *Pharaoh* **Paroh** is one:
God **Elohim** hath *shewed* *Pharaoh* **told Paroh**
what he is about to *do* **work**.
26 The seven good *kine* **heifer** are seven years;
and the seven good ears are seven years:
the dream is one.
27 And the seven *thin* **emaciated**
and *ill favoured* *kine* **evil heifers**
that *came up* **ascended** after them are seven years;
and the seven empty ears
blasted with the *east wind* **easterly**
shall be seven years of famine.
28 This is the *thing word*
which I have *spoken* **worded** unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**:
What *God* **Elohim** is about to *do* **work**
he *sheweth unto* *Pharaoh* **hath Paroh to see**.
29 Behold,
there come seven years of great *plenty* **sufficiency**
throughout all the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
30 And there shall arise after them
seven years of famine;
and all the *plenty* **sufficiency** shall be forgotten
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
and the famine shall *consume* **finish off** the land;
31 And the *plenty* **sufficiency**
shall not be known in the land
by reason **at the face** of that famine *following* **thus**;
for it shall be *very grievous* **mighty heavy**.
32 And for that the dream was *doubled* **duplicated**
unto *Pharaoh* **twice Paroh two times**;
it is because the *thing word* is established by *God* **Elohim**,
and *God* **Elohim**
will shortly bring it **shall hasten to pass work**.
33 Now therefore let *Pharaoh* **look out Paroh seek** a man
discreet **discerning** and wise,
and set him over the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
34 Let *Pharaoh* **do Paroh work** this,
and let him *appoint officers* **muster overseers**
over the land,
and take up the fifth part **over a fifth** of the land
of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
in the seven *plenteous* years of **sufficiency**.
35 And let them gather all the food of those good years
that come,
and *lay up* **corn heap grain**
under the hand of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
and let them *keep* **guard** food in the cities.
36 And that food shall be for *store* **overseeing** to the land
against the seven years of famine,
which shall be in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;

GENESIS 41

exeGeses companion BIBLE

seven heifers ascend from the river
— fatfleshed and of beautiful form;
and they graze in the bulrushes:
19 and behold, seven other heifers ascend after them
— poor and mighty evilly formed
and emaciated flesh
such as I have never seen in all the land of Misrayim
for evil:
20 and the emaciated and the evil heifers
ate the first seven fat heifers:
21 and entered their inwards,
they *are* not seen entering their inwards;
and they *are* still evilly visaged as at the beginning
— and I waken.
22 And I see in my dream, and behold,
seven ears ascend in one stem, full and good:
23 and behold, seven ears,
withered, thin, blasted with the easterly,
spring up after them:
24 and the thin ears swallow the seven good ears.
— and I say this to the magicians;
and there *is* none to tell me.
25 And Yoseph says to Paroh,
The dream of Paroh is one:
Elohim told Paroh what he is about to work.
26 The seven good heifers are seven years;
and the seven good ears are seven years:
the dream is one.
27 And the seven emaciated and evil heifers
ascending after them are seven years;
and the seven empty ears blasted with the easterly
are seven years of famine.
28 This *is* the word I worded to Paroh:
What Elohim *is* about to work, he has Paroh see.
29 Behold, there come seven years of great sufficiency
throughout all the land of Misrayim:
and after them rise seven years of famine:
and all the sufficiency of the land of Misrayim
is forgotten;
and the famine finishes off the land:
31 and the sufficiency is not known in the land
at the face of the famine
— for it *is* mighty heavy.
32 And because of duplicating the dream
to Paroh two times;
surely the word is established by Elohim;
and Elohim hastens to work.
33 And now Paroh, seek a man discerning and wise
and set him over the land of Misrayim.
34 Paroh, work this;
and muster overseers over the land
— over a fifth of the land of Misrayim
in the seven years of sufficiency:
and have them gather all the food
of those good years that come
and heap grain under the hand of Paroh
and have them guard food in the cities:
and that food is for overseeing to the land
for the seven years of famine in the land of Misrayim

GENESIS 41

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

37 that the land *perish not* **not be cut** through the famine.
And the *thing word*
was good in **well—pleased** the eyes of *Pharaoh Paroh*,
and in the eyes of all his servants.
38 And *Pharaoh Paroh* said unto his servants,
Can we find *such a one as this is thus*,
a man in whom the Spirit of *God Elohim* is?
39 And *Pharaoh Paroh* said unto *Yoseph Yoseph*,
Forasmuch as God Since Elohim
hath *shewed thee all this* **made all this known to thee**,
there is none so *discreet discerning* and wise as thou art:
40 Thou shalt be over my house,
and according unto thy word shall
all my people be ruled **shall kiss thy mouth**:
only in the throne **will shall** I be greater than thou.
41 And *Pharaoh Paroh* said unto *Yoseph Yoseph*,
See **Behold**,
I have set **given** thee over all the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
42 And *Pharaoh Paroh*
took off **turned aside** his *ring signet* from his hand,
and put **gave** it upon *Yoseph's Yoseph's* hand,
and arrayed **enrobed** him
in vestures **clothes** of *fine white* linen,
and put a gold chain about his neck;
43 And he *made caused* him to ride
in the second chariot which he had;
and they *cried before him* **called at his face**,
Bow the knee Kneel:
and he *made gave* him *ruler*
over all the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
44 And *Pharaoh Paroh* said unto *Yoseph Yoseph*,
I am Pharaoh I — Paroh,
and without thee shall no man lift up his hand or foot
in all the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
45 And *Pharaoh Paroh* called *Yoseph's Yoseph's* name
Zaphnathpaaneah Sophnath Paneach;
and he gave him to *wife woman* Asenath
the daughter of *Potipherah Poti Phera* priest of On.
And *Yoseph Yoseph*
went out over all the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
46 And *Yoseph Yoseph* was a **son** of thirty years *old*
when he stood *before Pharaoh at the face of Paroh*
king sovereign of *Egypt Misrayim*.
And *Yoseph Yoseph* went out
from the *presence face* of *Pharaoh Paroh*,
and went *throughout* **passed through**
all the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
47 And in the seven *plenteous* years **of sufficiency**
the earth *brought forth* **worked** by handfuls.
48 And he gathered up all the food of the seven years,
which were in the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
and *laid up gave* the food in the cities:
the food of the field, which was round about every city,
laid he up in the same **gave he among them**.
49 And *Yoseph gathered corn* **Yoseph heaped grain**
as the sand of the sea,
very much mightily **abounding**,
until he *left numbering* **ceased scribing**:
for it was without number — innumerable.
YOSEPH BIRTHS MENASH SHEH AND EPHRAYIM
50 And unto *Yoseph Yoseph* were *born birthed* two sons
before the years of famine came,
which Asenath
the daughter of *Potipherah Poti Phera* priest of On
bare birthed unto him.
51 And *Yoseph Yoseph* called the name
of the *firstborn Manasseh* **firstbirthed Menash Sheh**:
For *God Elohim*, *said he*,
hath made me forget all my *toil drudgery*,
and all my father's house.
52 And the name of the second called he *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**:
For *God Elohim* hath caused me to be *fruitful bear fruit*
in the land of my *affliction* **humiliation**.
53 And the seven years of *plenteousness* **sufficiency**,
that was in the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
were ended **finished**.
54 And the seven years of *dearth* **famine**
began to come entered,
according as *Yoseph Yoseph* had said:

GENESIS 41

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— that the land not be cut through the famine.
37 And the word well—pleases the eyes of Paroh
and the eyes of all his servants:
and Paroh says to his servants,
Can we find thus
— a man in whom the Spirit of Elohim is?
39 And Paroh says to Yoseph,
Since Elohim has you know all this,
no one is as discerning and wise as you:
you — you be over my house;
all my people kiss your mouth:
only in the throne I am greater than you.
41 And Paroh says to Yoseph, Behold,
I give you over all the land of Misrayim.
42 — and Paroh turns aside his signet from his hand
and gives it on the hand of Yoseph;
and enrobes him in clothes of white linen
and puts a gold chain about his neck;
43 and he has him ride in his second chariot;
and they call at his face, Kneel!
— and he gives him over all the land of Misrayim.
44 And Paroh says to Yoseph, I — Paroh!
And without you no man lifts his hand or foot
in all the land of Misrayim.
45 And Paroh calls the name of Yoseph,
Sophnath Paneach;
and he gives him to woman
Asenath the daughter of Poti Phera priest of On:
and Yoseph goes over the land of Misrayim.
46 And Yoseph is a son of thirty years
as he stands at the face of Paroh
sovereign of Misrayim:
and Yoseph goes from the face of Paroh
and passes through all the land of Misrayim.
47 And in the seven years of sufficiency
the earth works by handfuls:
48 and he gathers all the food of the seven years
in the land of Misrayim;
and gives the food in the cities
— the food of the field, around every city,
he gives among them:
49 and Yoseph heaps grain as the sand of the sea
— mightily abounding,
until he ceases scribing — innumerable.
YOSEPH BIRTHS MENASH SHEH AND EPHRAYIM
50 And ere the years of famine comes,
two sons are birthed to Yoseph
which Asenath the daughter of Poti Phera priest of On
births to him:
51 and Yoseph calls the name of the firstbirth
Menash Sheh
— for Elohim has me forget all my drudgery
and all the house of my father.
52 And he calls the name of the second
Ephrayim:
for Elohim has me to bear fruit
in the land of my humiliation.
53 And the seven years of sufficiency
in the land of Misrayim finish:
54 and the seven years of famine begin to enter
as Yoseph said:

GENESIS 41, 42

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the dearth **famine** was in all lands;
but in all the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim** there was bread.
55 And when all the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
was famished,
the people cried to *Pharaoh* **Paroh** for bread:
and *Pharaoh* **Paroh** said unto all the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
Go unto *Joseph* **Yoseph**; what he saith to you, *do work*.
56 And the famine was over all the face of the earth:
and *Joseph* **Yoseph** opened all the storehouses,
and sold **marketed kernels** unto the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**;
and the famine waxed sore **prevailed**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
57 And all *countries* **lands** came into *Egypt* **Misrayim**
to *Joseph* **Yoseph** for to *buy corn* **market for kernels**;
because that the famine was so sore **prevailed** in all lands.

THE BROTHERS OF YOSEPH GO TO MISRAYIM

42

Now when *Jacob* **Yaaqov** saw
that there was *corn* **were kernels** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
Jacob **Yaaqov** said unto his sons,
Why do ye look one upon another **What see ye?**
2 And he said, Behold,
I have heard that there *is corn* **are kernels**
in *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
get you down **descend** thither,
and *buy* **market for kernels** for us from thence;
that we may live, and not die.
3 And *Joseph's* **Yoseph's** ten brethren
went down **descended**
to *buy corn* **market for kernels of grain** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
4 But *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**, *Joseph's* **Yoseph's** brother,
Jacob **Yaaqov** sent not with his brethren; for he said,
Lest *peradventure* mischief *befall* **confront** him.
5 And the sons of *Israel* **Yisra El** came
to *buy corn* **market for kernels** among those that came:
for the famine was in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**.
6 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** was the governor over the land,
and he it was that sold **marketed kernels**
to all the people of the land:
and *Joseph's* **Yoseph's** brethren came,
and *bowed down themselves* **prostrated** before him,
with their *faces* **nostrils** to the earth.
7 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** saw his brethren,
and he *knew* **recognized** them,
but *made himself strange unto them*
they recognized him not,
and *spake roughly* **he worded sternly** unto them;
and he said unto them, Whence come ye?
And they said, From the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**
to *buy* **market for kernels for food**.
8 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** *knew* **recognized** his brethren,
but they *knew* **recognized** not him.
9 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** remembered the dreams
which he dreamed of them,
and said unto them, Ye are spies;
to see the nakedness of the land ye are come.
10 And they said unto him, Nay, my *lord* **adoni**,
but to *buy* **market for kernels for food**
are thy servants come.
11 We are all one man's sons;
we are *true men* **upright**, thy servants are no spies.
12 And he said unto them, Nay,
but to see the nakedness of the land ye are come.
13 And they said, Thy servants are twelve brethren,
the sons of one man in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**;
and, behold, the youngest is this day with our father,
and one is not.
14 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** said unto them,
That is it that I *spake* **have worded** unto you, saying,
Ye are spies:
15 Hereby ye shall be *proved* **proofed**:
By the *life of Pharaoh* **living Paroh**
ye shall not go *forth* hence,
except your youngest brother come hither.
16 Send one of you, and let him *fetch* **take** your brother,
and ye shall be *kept* **bound** in prison,

GENESIS 41, 42

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the famine *is* in all lands:
but in all the land of Misrayim there is bread.
55 And all the land of Misrayim famishes
and the people cry to Paroh for bread:
and Paroh says to all the Misrayim,
Go to Yoseph! Whatever he says to you, work!
56 And the famine is over all the face of the earth:
and Yoseph opens all the storehouses
and markets kernels to the Misrayim:
and the famine prevails in the land of Misrayim:
57 and all lands come to Misrayim to Yoseph
to market for kernels;
because the famine prevails in all lands.

THE BROTHERS OF YOSEPH GO TO MISRAYIM

42

And Yaaqov sees there are kernels in Misrayim;
and Yaaqov says to his sons, What see you?
2 And he says, Behold,
I hear that there are kernels in Misrayim:
descend there
and market for kernels for us from there
so that we live and not die.
3 And the ten brothers of Yoseph
descend to market for kernels of grain in Misrayim:
4 and Yaaqov
sends not Ben Yamin the brother of Yoseph
with his brothers;
for he says, Lest mischief confronts him.
5 And the sons of Yisra El come
to market for kernels among those who come:
for the famine is in the land of Kenaan:
6 and Yoseph is the governor over the land
and he markets the kernels
to all the people of the land.
7 And the brothers of Yoseph come
and prostrate with their nostrils to the earth:
and Yoseph sees his brothers
and he recognizes them;
but they recognize him not;
and he words sternly to them:
and he says to them, Whence come you?
8 And they say, From the land of Kenaan
to market for kernels for food.
9 And Yoseph recognizes his brothers,
but they recognize him not:
and Yoseph remembers the dreams
he dreamed of them;
and says to them, You are spies;
you come to see the nakedness of the land.
10 And they say to him, No, my adoni;
but your servants come to market for kernels for food:
11 we are all sons of one man;
we are upright, your servants are no spies.
12 And he says to them,
No! You come to see the nakedness of the land.
13 And they say, Your servants are twelve brothers,
the sons of one man in the land of Kenaan;
and behold, the youngest is this day with our father
and one is not.
14 And Yoseph says to them,
That is why I word to you, saying, You are spies!
15 Hereby proof yourselves:
By the living Paroh
you go not from here,
unless your youngest brother comes here.
16 Send one of you to take your brother
while we bind you in prison,

GENESIS 42

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

that your words may be *proved* **proofed**,
whether there be *any* truth in you:
or else **and if not** by the *life* of Pharaoh **living Paroh**
surely ye are spies.

17 And he **took** them *all together* **away**
into ward **under guard** three days.

18 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** said unto them the third day,
This *do* **work**, and live; for I *fear God* **awe Elohim**:
19 If ye be *true men* **upright**, let one of your brethren
be bound in the house *of your prison* **under guard**:
go ye, carry *corn* **kernels** for the famine of your houses:
20 But bring your youngest brother unto me;
so **thus** shall your words be *verified* **amened**,
and ye shall not die.

21 And they *did* **worked** so.
And they *put* **one man to another brother**,
We are *verily* **truly** guilty concerning our brother,
in that we saw the *anguish* **tribulation** of his soul,
when he besought us,
and we *would not hear* **hearkened not**;
therefore is this *distress* **tribulation** come upon us.

22 And *Reuben* **Reu Ben** answered them, saying,
Spake **Said** I not unto you, saying,
Do not sin **Sin not** against the child;
and ye *would not hear* **hearkened not**?
therefore, behold, also his blood is required.

23 And they knew not
that *Joseph understood* **Yoseph heard** them;
for he *spake unto them by an interpreter*
a translator was between them.

24 And he turned *himself about* **around** from them,
and wept;
and returned to them *again*,
and *communed* **worded** with them,
and took from them *Simeon* **Shimon**,
and bound him *before* **in front of** their eyes.

25 Then *Joseph commanded* **Yoseph misvahed**
to fill their *sacks* **instruments** with *corn* **grain**,
and to restore every man's *money* **silver** into his *sack* **saq**,
and to give them *provision* **hunt** for the way:
and thus *did* **worked** he unto them.

26 And they laded their *asses* **he burros**
with the *corn* **kernels**,
and *departed* **went** thence.

27 And as one of them opened his *sack* **saq**
to give his ass **he burro** provender in the *inn* **lodge**,
he *espied* **saw** his *money* **silver**;
for, behold, it was in his sack's mouth.

28 And he said unto his brethren,
My money **silver** is restored;
and, *lo* **behold**, it is even in my sack:
and their heart failed them,
and they *were afraid* **trembled**,
saying *one man to another brother*,
What is this that *God* **Elohim** hath *done* **worked** unto us?

29 And they came unto *Jacob* **Yaaqov** their father
unto the land of *Canaan* **Kanaan**,
and told him all that befell unto them; saying,
30 The man, who is the *lord* **adoni** of the land,
spake roughly **worded sternly** to us,
and *took* **gave** us for spies of the *country* **land**.

31 And we said unto him,
We are *true men* **upright**; we are no spies:
32 We be twelve brethren, sons of our father;
one is not, and the youngest is this day with our father
in the land of *Canaan* **Kanaan**.

33 And the man, the *lord* **adoni** of the *country* **land**,
said unto us,
Hereby shall I know that ye are *true men* **upright**;
leave one of your brethren *here* with me,
and take *food* for the famine of your households,
and be gone:

34 And bring your youngest brother unto me:
then shall I know that ye are no spies,
but that ye are *true men* **upright**:
so *will* **shall I deliver** **give** you your brother,
and ye shall *traffic* **merchandise** in the land.

35 And **so be** it came to pass
as they *emptied* **poured** out their *sacks* **saqs**, that, behold,

GENESIS 42

exeGeses companion BIBLE

to proof your words
whether there *is* truth in you:
and if not, by the living Paroh, surely you *are* spies.

17 And he takes them away under guard three days:
18 and the third day, Yoseph says to them,
Work this and live; for I awe Elohim:
19 if you *are* upright, have one of your brothers
be bound in the house under guard:
you go, carry kernels for the famine of your houses:
20 but bring your youngest brother to me:
and thus amen your words, and you die not.
— and thus they work.

21 And they say man to brother,
We *are* truly guilty concerning our brother,
in that we saw the tribulation of his soul
when he besought us and we hearkened not;
so this tribulation comes on us.

22 And Reu Ben answers them, saying,
Said I not to you, saying, Sin not against the child!
— and you hearkened not?
and behold, also his blood *is* required.

23 And they know not that Yoseph hears them;
for there *is* a translator between them:
24 and he turns around from them and weeps;
and returns to them and words with them
and takes Shimon from them
and binds him in front of their eyes.

25 Then Yoseph misvahs
to fill their instruments with grain
and to restore the silver of every man into his saq
and to give them hunt for the way:
— and thus he works to them.

26 And they load their he burros with the kernels
and go from there:
27 and as one of them opens his saq
to give his he burro provender in the lodge,
he sees his silver;
for behold, it *is* in the mouth of his sack:
28 and he says to his brothers,
My silver is restored;
and behold, even in my sack!

And their hearts fail them and they tremble,
saying man to brother,
What *is* this that Elohim works to us?

29 And they come to Yaaqov their father
to the land of Kenaan
and tell him all that befell them; saying,
30 The man, the adoni of the land,
words sternly to us
and gives us as spies of the land.

31 And we say to him,
We *are* upright; we are no spies:
32 we *are* twelve brothers, sons of our father;
one is not and the youngest *is* this day with our father
in the land of Kenaan.

33 And the man, the adoni of the land, says to us,
Hereby know I that you *are* upright;
leave one of your brothers with me
and take for the famine of your households, and go:
34 and bring your youngest brother to me:
then I know that you *are* no spies,
but that you *are* upright:
I give you your brother
and you merchandise in the land.

35 And so be it,
they pour out their saqs, and behold,

GENESIS 42, 43

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

every man's bundle of money **silver** was in his sack **saq**:
and when *both* they and their father
saw the bundles of money **silver**, they were *afraid* **awed**.
36 And *Jacob* **Yaaqov** their father said unto them,
Me have ye bereaved of *my children*:
Joseph **Yoseph** is not, and *Simeon* **Shimon** is not,
and ye *will* **shall** take *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin** away:
all these *things* are against me.
37 And *Reuben* **spake Reu Ben** said unto his father,
saying, *Slay* **Deathify** my two sons,
if I *bring* **return** him not to thee:
deliver **give** him into my hand,
and I *will bring* **shall return** him to thee *again*.
38 And he said,
My son shall not go *down* **descend** with you;
for his brother is dead, and he is *left* **surviveth** alone:
if mischief *befall* **confront** him
by the way in the which ye go,
then shall ye *bring down* **descend** my *gray hairs* **grayness**
with *sorrow* **grief** to the grave **sheol**.

THE BROTHERS OF YOSEPH RETURN TO MISRAYIM

43 And the famine was *sore* **heavy** in the land.
2 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when they had *eaten up* **finished eating** the *corn* **kernels**
which they had brought out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
their father said unto them, *Go again* **Return**,
buy us **market for us kernels for** a little food.
3 And *Judah* **spake Yah Hudah** said unto him, saying,
In witnessing, The man *did solemnly protest* **witnessed**
unto us, saying, Ye shall not see my face,
except **unless** your brother be with you.
4 If thou *wilt* **shalt** send our brother with us,
we will go down **shall descend**
and *buy* **market for thee kernels for** food:
5 But if thou *wilt* **shalt** not send him,
we will **shall** not go *down* **descend**:
for the man said unto us, Ye shall not see my face,
except **unless** your brother be with you.
6 And *Israel* **Yisra El** said,
Wherefore *dealt ye so ill with* **have ye vilified** me,
as to tell the man whether ye had yet a brother?
7 And they said,
In asking, The man asked us *straitly* of our state,
and of our kindred, saying,
Is your father yet alive? have ye *another* **a** brother?
and we told him
according to the *tenor* **mouth** of these words:
In knowing, *how* could we *certainly* know
that he *would* **should** say,
Bring **Descend** your brother *down*?
8 And *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
said unto *Israel* **Yisra El** his father,
Send the lad with me, and we *will* **shall** arise and go;
that we may live, and not die,
both we, and thou, and also our *little ones* **toddlers**.
9 I *will be surety* **shall pledge** for him;
of my hand shalt thou require him:
if I bring him not unto thee,
and set him *before* **facing** thee,
then *let me bear the blame* **have I sinned against thee**
for ever **all days**:
10 For *except* **if** we had **not** lingered,
surely now **by this time** we had returned this second time.
11 And their father *Israel* **Yisra El** said unto them,
If *it must be* so now, *do* **work** this;
take of the best *fruits* **pluckings** in the land
in your *vessels* **instruments**,
and *carry down* **descend** the man a *present* **an offering**,
a little balm, and a little honey, spices, and myrrh,
nuts **pistachios**, and almonds:
12 And take double *money* **silver** in your hand;
and the *money* **silver** that was *brought again* **returned**
in the mouth of your sacks,
carry it again **return** in your hand;
peradventure it was an *oversight* **error**:
13 Take also your brother,
and arise, *go again* **return** unto the man:
14 And *God Almighty* **El Shadday** give you *mercy* **mercies**
before **at the face of** the man,

GENESIS 42, 43

exeGeses companion BIBLE

the silver of the bundles of every man *is* in his saq:
and when they and their father
see the bundles of silver, they awe.
36 And Yaaqov their father says to them,
You bereave me:
Yoseph is not; and Shimon is not:
and take you Ben Yamin away:
all these are against me.
37 And Reu Ben says to his father, saying,
Deathify my two sons, if I return him not to you:
give him into my hand and I return him to you.
38 And he says, My son descends not with you;
for his brother *is* dead and he alone survives:
if mischief confronts him by the way you go,
then you descend my grayness with grief to sheol.

THE BROTHERS OF YOSEPH RETURN TO MISRAYIM

43 And the famine *is* heavy in the land.
2 And so be it,
when they finish eating the kernels
they brought from Misrayim,
their father says to them, Return,
market for us kernels for a little food.
3 And Yah Hudah says to him, saying,
In witnessing, the man witnessed to us, saying,
You see not my face,
unless your brother *is* with you.
4 If you send our brother with us,
we descend and market kernels for food for you:
5 but if you send him not, we descend not:
for the man says to us, You see not my face,
unless your brother *is* with you.
6 And Yisra El says,
Why vilify you me,
as to tell the man whether you had yet a brother?
7 And they say,
In asking, the man asked us of our state
and of our kindred, saying,
Is your father yet alive? Have you a brother?
and we tell him
according to the mouth of these words:
in knowing, how know we that he says,
Descend your brother?
8 And Yah Hudah says to Yisra El his father,
Send the lad with me and we rise and go;
so that we live and not die
— both we and you and also our toddlers.
9 I — I pledge for him;
you require him from my hand
if I bring him not to you and set him facing you
— then I have sinned against you all days:
10 for had we not lingered,
by this time we had returned this second time.
11 And their father Yisra El says to them,
If so, now work this;
take of the best pluckings in the land
in your instruments
and descend an offering to the man
— a little balm and a little honey, spices and myrrh,
pistachios and almonds:
12 and take double silver in your hand;
and the silver that was returned
in the mouth of your sacks,
return it in your hand;
perahaps it was an error:
13 also take your brother and rise, return to the man:
14 and El Shadday give you mercies
at the face of the man,

GENESIS 43

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

that he may send away your other brother,
and Benjamin **Ben Yamin**.
If I be bereaved of my children In bereaving,
I am bereaved.

15 And the men took that **present offering**,
and they took double **money silver** in their hand
and Benjamin **Ben Yamin**; and rose up,
and went down **descended to Egypt Misrayim**,
and stood **before Joseph at the face of Yoseph**.

16 And when **Joseph Yoseph**
saw Benjamin **Ben Yamin** with them,
he said to the ruler of **one over** his house,
Bring these men home,
and **slay slaughter a slaughter**, and **make ready prepare**;
for these men shall **dine eat** with me at noon.

17 And the man **did worked as Joseph bade Yoseph said**;
and the man brought the men
into **Joseph's Yoseph's** house.

18 And the men were **afraid awed**,
because they were brought into **Joseph's Yoseph's** house;
and they said, Because of the **money word of the silver**
that was returned in our sacks at the **first time beginning**
are we brought in;
that he may **seek occasion roll** against us,
and fall upon us,
and take us for **bondmen servants**,
and our **asses he burros**.

19 And they came near
to the **steward man of Joseph's Yoseph's** house,
and they **communed worded** with him
at the **door portal** of the house,

20 And said, O **sir adoni**,
In descending, we came **indeed down descended**
at the **first time beginning**
to **buy market for kernels for** food:

21 And **so be** it came to pass,
when we came to the **inn lodge**,
that we opened our sacks, and, behold,
every man's **money silver** was in the mouth of his sack,
our **money silver** in full weight:
and we have **brought returned** it **again** in our hand.

22 And other **money silver**
have we **brought down descended** in our hands
to **buy market for kernels for** food:
we **cannot tell perceive not**
who put our **money silver** in our sacks.

23 And he said, **Peace Shalom** be to you, **fear awe** not:
your **God Elohim**, and the **God Elohim** of your father,
hath given you **hidden** treasure in your sacks:
I had your **money silver**.

24 And he brought **Simeon Shimon** out unto them.
And the man
brought the men into **Joseph's Yoseph's** house,
and gave them water, and they **washed bathed** their feet;
and he gave their **asses he burros** provender.

25 And they **made ready prepared** the **present offering**
against Joseph until Yoseph came at noon:
for they heard that they should eat bread there.

26 And when **Joseph Yoseph** came home,
they brought him the **present offering**
which was in their hand into the house,
and **bowed themselves prostrated** to him to the earth.

27 And he asked them of their **welfare shalom**,
and said, Is your father **well at shalom**,
the **old man elder** of whom ye **spake said**?
Is he yet alive?

28 And they **answered said**,
Thy servant our father is **in good health at shalom**,
he is yet alive.
And they bowed **down their heads**,
and **made obeisance prostrated**.

29 And he lifted up his eyes,
and saw his brother **Benjamin Ben Yamin**,
his mother's son, and said,
Is this your younger brother,
of whom ye **spake said** unto me?
And he said,
God be gracious unto thee Elohim grant thee charism,
my son.

GENESIS 43

exeGeses companion BIBLE

that he send away your other brother and Ben Yamin.
— in bereaving, I am bereaved.

15 And the men take this offering
and they take double silver in their hand
and Ben Yamin;
and rise and descend to Misrayim
and stand at the face of Yoseph.

16 And when Yoseph sees Ben Yamin with them,
he says to the one over his house,
Bring these men home
and slaughter a slaughter and prepare;
for these men eat with me at noon.

17 And the man works as Yoseph says;
and the man brings the men
into the house of Yoseph:
and the men awe,
because they are brought into the house of Yoseph;
and they say,
Because of the word of the silver
that was returned in our sacks at the beginning
they bring us in
— to roll against us and fall on us
and take us for servants and our he burros.

19 And they come near
to the man of the house of Yoseph
and they word with him at the portal of the house,
and say, O adoni, in descending,
we descended at the beginning
to market for kernels for food:

21 and so be it, when we came to the lodge,
we opened our sacks, and behold,
the silver of every man *is* in the mouth of his sack
— our silver in full weight;
and we return it in our hand:

22 and we descend other silver in our hands
to market for kernels for food:
we perceive not who put our silver in our sacks.

23 And he says, Shalom to you! Awe not!
Your Elohim and the Elohim of your father,
gave you hidden treasure in your sacks:
I have your silver.

24 And he brings Shimon to them.
And the man brings the men
into the house of Yoseph
and gives them water and they bathe their feet;
and he gives their he burros provender.

25 And they prepare the offering
until Yoseph comes at noon:
for they hear that they eat bread there:
and when Yoseph comes home,
they bring him the offering in their hand
into the house
and prostrate to him to the earth.

27 And he asks them of their shalom
and says, Is your father at shalom?
— the elder of whom you say, is he yet alive?

28 And they say,
Your servant our father *is* at shalom, he is yet alive.
— and they bow and prostrate.

29 And he lifts his eyes
and sees his brother Ben Yamin,
the son of his mother,
and says, Is this your younger brother,
of whom you said to me?

And he says,
Elohim grant you charism, my son.

GENESIS 43, 44

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

30 And *Yoseph* made haste **Yoseph** hastened;
for his *bowels* **mercies** did yearn upon his brother:
and he sought where to weep;
and he entered into his chamber, and wept there.
31 And he *washed* **bathed** his face, and went out,
and refrained himself, and said, Set on bread.
32 And they set on for him by himself,
and for them by themselves,
and for the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
which did eat with him, by themselves:
because the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
might **can** not eat bread with the Hebrews;
for that is an *abomination* **abhorrence**
unto the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**.
33 And they sat *before him* **at his face**,
the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** according to his *birthright* **firstrights**,
and the *youngest* **lesser** according to his *youth* **youngness**:
and the men marvelled *one at another* **man to friend**.
34 And he *took and sent messes* **loaded loads** unto them
from *before him* **his face**:
but *Benjamin's mess* **Ben Yamin's load**
was **abounded** five *times so much* **hands**
as any of their's **than the loads of all**.
And they drank, and *were merry* **intoxicated** with him.

THE BROTHERS OF YOSEPH DEPART

44 And he *commanded* **misvahed**
the steward of his house, saying,
Fill the men's sacks with food,
as much as they can *carry* **bear**,
and put every man's *money* **silver** in his sack's mouth.
2 And put my *cup* **bowl**, the silver *cup* **bowl**,
in the sack's mouth of the youngest,
and his *corn money* **kernel silver**.
And he *did* **worked** according to the word
that *Joseph* **Yoseph** had *spoken* **worded**.
3 As soon as the morning was light,
the men were sent away, they and their *asses* **he burros**.
4 And when they were gone out of the city,
and not yet far *off* **removed**,
Joseph **Yoseph** said unto his *house* **steward**,
Up **Arise**, *follow* **pursue** after the men;
and when thou dost overtake them, say unto them,
Wherefore have ye *rewarded* **shalamed ye** evil for good?
5 Is not this it in which my *lord* **adoni** drinketh,
and *whereby* **indeed he divineth**
in prognosticating, he prognosticateth?
ye have *done evil* **vilified** in so *doing* **working**.
6 And he overtook them,
and he *spake* **worded** unto them these same words.
7 And they said unto him,
Wherefore *saith* **wordeth** my *lord* **adoni** these words?
God forbid **Far be it** that thy servants should *do* **work**
according to this *thing* **word**:
8 Behold, the *money* **silver**,
which we found in our sacks' mouths,
we *brought again* **returned** unto thee
out of the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**:
how then should we steal
out of thy *lord's* **adoni's** house silver or gold?
9 With whomsoever of thy servants it be found,
both let him die,
and we also
will **shall** be my *lord's* **bondmen** **adoni's** servants.
10 And he said,
Now also let it be according unto your words:
thus he with whom it is found shall be my servant;
and ye shall be *blameless* **innocent**.
11 Then they *speedily* **took down** **hastily lowered**
every man his sack to the *ground* **earth**,
and opened every man his sack.
12 And he searched, and began at the *eldest* **greater**,
and *left* **finished** at the youngest:
and the *cup* **bowl** was found
in *Benjamin's* **Ben Yamin's** sack.
13 Then they *rent* **ripped** their clothes,
and laded every man his *ass* **he burro**,
and returned to the city.
14 And *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and his brethren
came to *Joseph's* **Yoseph's** house; for he was yet there:

GENESIS 43, 44

exeGeses companion BIBLE

30 And Yoseph hastens;
for his mercies yearn on his brother:
and he seeks where to weep;
and he enters his chamber and weeps there:
and he bathes his face and goes out
and restrains himself and says, Set on bread.
31
32 And they set on for him by himself
and for them by themselves
and for the Misrayim who eat with him by themselves
— because the Misrayim
cannot eat bread with the Hebrews;
for that *is* an abhorrence to the Misrayim.
33 And they sit at his face,
the firstbirth according to his firstrights
and the lesser according to his youngness:
and the men marvel, man to friend:
and he loads loads to them from his face:
but the load of Ben Yamin
abounds five hands more than the loads of all.
— and they drink and intoxicate with him.

THE BROTHERS OF YOSEPH DEPART

44 And he misvahs the steward of his house, saying,
Fill the sacks of the men with food
— as much as they can bear;
and put the silver of every man
in the mouth of his sack.
2 And put my bowl — the silver bowl,
in the mouth of the sack of the youngest
with his kernel silver.
And he works according to the word Yoseph words:
3 The morning is light,
and they send the men away
— them and their he burros:
4 and when they go from the city, not yet far removed,
Yoseph says to his house steward,
Rise! Pursue after the men!
And when you overtake them, say to them,
Why shalam you evil for good?
5 Is not this from which my adoni drinks?
And in prognosticating, he prognosticates?
You vilify in so working.
6 — and he overtakes them
and he words these same words to them.
7 And they say to him,
Why words my adoni these words?
Far be it that your servants work
according to this word:
8 behold, the silver,
we found in the mouths of our sacks,
we returned to you from the land of Kenaan!
Why then steal we silver or gold
from the house of your adoni?
9 With whomever of your servants you find,
both — he dies and we become servants of my adoni.
10 And he says,
Now also, according to your words, so be it:
thus he with whom we find, becomes my servant;
and you be innocent.
11 And hastily
they lower the sack of every man to the earth
and open the sack of every man:
12 and he searches and begins at the greatest
and finishes at the youngest:
and find the bowl in the sack of Ben Yamin:
13 and they rip their clothes
and every man loads his he burro
and returns to the city.
14 And Yah Hudah and his brothers
come to the house of Yoseph for he is yet there:

GENESIS 44

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they fell before him at his face on the ground earth.
 15 And Joseph Yoseph said unto them,
 What deed work is this that ye have done worked?
 wot know ye not that such a man as I
 can certainly divine in prognosticating, prognosticateth?
 16 And Judah Yah Hudah said,
 What shall we say unto my lord adoni?
 what shall we speak word?
 or how shall we clear justify ourselves?
 God Elohim hath found out
 the iniquity perversity of thy servants:
 behold, we are my lord's adoni's servants,
 both we, and he also
 with whom in whose hand the cup bowl is found.
 17 And he said,
 God forbid Far be it that I should do work so:
 but the man in whose hand the cup bowl is found,
 he shall be my servant;
 and as for you,
 get you up ascend ye in peace shalom unto your father.
 18 Then Judah Yah Hudah came near unto him,
 and said, Oh my lord adoni, let thy servant,
 I pray thee, speak word a word in my lord's adoni's ears,
 and let not thine anger thy wrath
 burn kindle against thy servant:
 for thou art even as Pharaoh Paroh.
 19 My lord adoni asked his servants, saying,
 Have ye a father, or a brother?
 20 And we said unto my lord adoni,
 We have a father, an old man aged,
 and a child of his old age, a little one youngster;
 and his brother is dead,
 and he alone is left remaineth of his mother,
 and his father loveth him.
 21 And thou saidst unto thy servants,
 Bring Descend him down unto me,
 that I may set mine eyes upon him.
 22 And we said unto my lord adoni,
 The lad cannot leave his father:
 for if he should leave his father,
 his father would die he should die.
 23 And thou saidst unto thy servants,
 Except If your youngest brother
 come down descend not with you,
 ye shall see my face no more never again.
 24 And so be it came to pass
 when we came up ascended unto thy servant my father,
 we told him the words of my lord adoni.
 25 And our father said, Go again Return,
 and buy us market us kernels for a little food.
 26 And we said, We cannot go down descend:
 if our youngest brother be with us,
 then will shall we go down descend:
 for we may not see the man's face,
 except unless our youngest brother be with us.
 27 And thy servant my father said unto us,
 Ye know that my wife bare woman birthed me two sons:
 28 And the one went out from me, and I said,
 Surely In tearing, he is torn in pieces;
 and I saw him not since:
 29 And if ye take this also from me my face,
 and mischief befall him,
 ye shall bring down descend my gray hairs grayness
 with sorrow evil to the grave sheol.
 30 Now therefore when I come to thy servant my father,
 and the lad be not with us;
 seeing that his life soul is bound up in the lad's life soul;
 31 So be it shall come to pass,
 when he seeth that the lad is not with us,
 that he will shall die:
 and thy servants shall bring down descend
 the gray hairs grayness of thy servant our father
 with sorrow grief to the grave sheol.
 32 For thy servant became surety pledged
 for the lad unto my father, saying,
 If I bring him not unto thee,
 then I shall bear the blame to have sinned
 against my father for ever all days.
 33 Now therefore, I pray beseech thee,

GENESIS 44

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they fall at his face on the earth.
 15 And Yoseph says to them,
 What work is this that you work?
 Know you not that such a man as I
 in prognosticating, prognosticates?
 16 And Yah Hudah says,
 What say we to my adoni? What word we?
 Or how justify we ourselves?
 Elohim finds out the perversity of your servants:
 behold, we are servants to my adoni
 — both we
 and he also in whose hand they found the bowl.
 17 And he says, Far be it that I so work:
 but the man in whose hand they found the bowl,
 he becomes my servant;
 and as for you, you ascend in shalom to your father.
 18 Then Yah Hudah comes near to him and says,
 Oh my adoni,
 let your servant word a word in the ears of my adoni
 and kindle not your wrath against your servant:
 for you are even as Paroh.
 19 My adoni asked his servants, saying,
 Have you a father, or a brother?
 20 And we say to my adoni,
 We have a father — aged
 and a child of his old age, a youngster;
 and his brother died:
 and he alone remains of his mother;
 and his father loves him.
 21 And you said to your servants,
 Descend him to me, that I set my eyes on him.
 22 And we said to my adoni,
 The lad cannot leave his father:
 for if he leaves his father, he dies.
 23 And you said to your servants,
 If your youngest brother descend not with you,
 you see my face never again.
 24 And so be it,
 we ascended to your servant my father
 and we told him the words of my adoni.
 25 And our father said,
 Return and market us kernels for a little food.
 26 And we said, We cannot descend:
 if our youngest brother be with us,
 then we descend:
 for we see not the face of the man
 unless our youngest brother is with us.
 27 And your servant my father said to us,
 You know that my woman birthed me two:
 28 and the one goes out from me
 and I say, In tearing, he is torn;
 and I see him not since:
 29 and if you take this also from my face
 and mischief befalls him,
 you descend my grayness with evil to sheol.
 30 And now, when I come to your servant my father,
 and the lad is not with us;
 seeing that his soul is bound up in the soul of the lad;
 31 so be it, when he sees not the lad, he dies:
 and your servants descend
 the grayness of your servant our father
 with grief to sheol.
 32 For your servant pledged for the lad to my father,
 saying, If I bring him not to you,
 then I have sinned against my father all days.
 33 And now, I beseech you,

GENESIS 44, 45

exeGeser ready research BIBLE

let thy servant *abide* **sit** instead of the lad
 a *bondman* **servant** to my lord **adoni**;
 and let the lad *go up* **ascend** with his brethren.
 34 For how shall I *go up* **ascend** to my father,
 and the lad be not with me?
 lest peradventure I see the evil
 that shall *come on* **find** my father.

YOSEPH REVEALS HIS IDENTITY

45 Then *Joseph* **Yoseph** could not refrain himself
before **in front of** all them
 that *stood* **stationed themselves** by him;
 and he *cried* **called**, Cause every man to go out from me.
 And there stood no man with him,
 while *Joseph* **Yoseph**
 made himself known unto his brethren.
 2 And he *wept aloud* **gave his voice in weeping**;
 and the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
 and the house of *Pharaoh* **Paroh** heard.
 3 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** said unto his brethren,
 I am *Joseph* **Yoseph**; doth my father yet live?
 And his brethren could not answer him;
 for they were *troubled* **terrified** at his *presence* **face**.
 4 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** said unto his brethren,
 Come near to me, I *pray* **beseech** you.
 And they came near.
 And he said, I am *Joseph* **Yoseph** your brother,
 whom ye sold into *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
 5 Now therefore *be not grieved* **neither contort**,
 nor *angry with yourselves* **inflame in your eyes**,
 that ye sold me hither:
 for *God* **Elohim** did send me *before you* **from your face**
 to *preserve life* **enliven**.
 6 For these two years hath the famine been in the land:
 and yet there are five years,
 in the which there shall neither be
earing **ploughing** nor harvest.
 7 And *God* **Elohim** sent me *before you* **from your face**
 to *preserve* **set** you a *posterity* **survivor** in the earth,
 and to *save* **preserve** your lives
 by a great *deliverance* **escape**.
 8 So now it was not you that sent me hither,
 but *God* **Elohim**:
 and he hath *made* **set** me a father to *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
 and *lord* **adoni** of all his house,
 and a *ruler* **sovereign**
 throughout all the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
 9 Haste ye, and *go up* **ascend** to my father,
 and say unto him,
 Thus saith thy son *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
God **Elohim** hath *made* **set** me
lord **adoni** of all *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
come down **descend** unto me, *tarry* **stay** not:
 10 And thou shalt *dwelt* **settle** in the land of Goshen,
 and thou shalt be near unto me,
 thou, and thy *children* **sons**,
 and thy *children's children* **sons' sons**,
 and thy flocks, and thy *herds* **oxen**, and all that thou hast:
 11 And there *will* **shall** I nourish thee;
 for yet there are five years of famine;
 lest thou, and thy household, and all that thou hast,
come to poverty **be dispossessed**.
 12 And, behold, your eyes see,
 and the eyes of my brother *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
 that it is my mouth that *speaketh* **wordeth** unto you.
 13 And ye shall tell my father
 of all my *glory* **honour** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
 and of all that ye have seen;
 and ye shall haste
 and *bring down* **descend** my father hither.
 14 And he fell
 upon his brother *Benjamin's* **Ben Yamin's** neck,
 and wept; and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin** wept upon his neck.
 15 Moreover he kissed all his brethren,
 and wept upon them:
 and after that his brethren *talked* **worded** with him.
 16 And the *fame* **voice** thereof
 was heard in *Pharaoh's* **Paroh's** house, saying,
Joseph's **Yoseph's** brethren are come:
 and it **well**—pleased **the eyes of Pharaoh Paroh well**,

GENESIS 44, 45

exeGeser companion BIBLE

instead of the lad,
 sit your servant as servant to my adoni;
 and ascend the lad with his brothers.
 34 For how ascend I to my father
 and the lad is not with me?
 lest perhaps I see the evil that finds my father.

YOSEPH REVEALS HIS IDENTITY

45 And Yoseph cannot refrain himself
 in front of all who station themselves by him;
 and he calls, Have every man go out from me!
 And no man stands with him,
 as Yoseph has his brothers know who he is:
 2 and he gives his voice in weeping:
 and the Misrayim and the house of Paroh hear.
 3 And Yoseph says to his brothers,
 I *am* Yoseph! Is my father yet alive?
 — and his brothers cannot answer him;
 for they terrify at his face.
 4 And Yoseph says to his brothers,
 Come near me, I beseech you.
 — and they come near.
 And he says, I *am* Yoseph your brother
 whom you sold into Misrayim:
 5 and now, neither contort nor inflame your eyes,
 that you sold me here:
 for Elohim sent me from your face to enliven.
 6 For these two years the famine is in the land:
 and there *are* yet five years,
 in which there is neither ploughing nor harvest:
 7 and Elohim sent me from your face
 to set of you a survivor in the earth
 and to preserve your lives by a great escape.
 8 And now, you
 — you sent me not here, but Elohim:
 and he set me, father to Paroh
 and adoni of all his house
 and a sovereign throughout all the land of Misrayim.
 9 Hasten and ascend to my father
 and say to him, Thus says your son Yoseph,
 Elohim set me adoni of all Misrayim!
 Descend to me! Stay not!
 10 And settle in the land of Goshen and be near to me
 — you and your sons and the sons of your sons
 and your flocks and your oxen and all you have;
 11 and there I nourish you:
 for there *are* yet five years of famine;
 lest you and your household and all that you have,
 become dispossessed.
 12 And behold, your eyes
 and the eyes of my brother Ben Yamin see,
 that my mouth words to you:
 13 and you tell my father of all my honor in Misrayim
 and of all you see;
 and hasten and descend my father here.
 14 And he falls on the neck of his brother Ben Yamin
 and weeps;
 and Ben Yamin weeps on his neck:
 15 and he kisses all his brothers and weeps on them:
 and after that his brothers word with him.
 16 And the voice thereof
 becomes heard in the house of Paroh, saying,
 The brothers of Yoseph have come!
 — and it well—pleases the eyes of Paroh

GENESIS 45, 46

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and the eyes of his servants.
 17 And Pharaoh **Paroh** said unto Joseph **Yoseph**,
 Say unto thy brethren, This *do work* ye;
 lade your beasts, and go,
 get you unto the land of *Canaan Kenaan*;
 18 And take your father and your households,
 and come unto me:
 and I *will shall* give you
 the good of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
 and ye shall eat the fat of the land.
 19 Now thou art *commanded misvahed*, this *do work* ye;
 take you wagons out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*
 for your *little ones toddlers*, and for your *wives women*,
 and *bring bear* your father, and come.
 20 Also regard *let not your eye spare*
 your *stuff instruments*;
 for the good of all the land of *Egypt Misrayim* is your's.
 21 And the *children sons* of *Israel did Yisra El worked* so:
 and Joseph **Yoseph** gave them wagons,
 according to the *commandment mouth* of *Pharaoh Paroh*,
 and gave them *provision hunt* for the way.
 22 To all of them he gave each man
 changes of *raiment clothes*;
 but to *Benjamin Ben Yamin*
 he gave three hundred *pieces of silver*,
 and five changes of *raiment clothes*.
 23 And to his father he sent *after this manner thus*;
 ten asses **he burros**
 laden with the *good things goods* of *Egypt Misrayim*,
 and ten she asses **burros**
 laden with *corn grain* and bread and *meat food*
 for his father by the way.
 24 So he sent his brethren away, and they *departed went*:
 and he said unto them,
 See that ye *fall not out not quiver* by the way.
 25 And they *went up ascended* out of *Egypt Misrayim*,
 and came into the land of *Canaan Kenaan*
 unto *Jacob Yaaqov* their father,
 26 And told him, saying, *Joseph Yoseph* is yet alive,
 and he is *governor sovereign*
 over all the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
 And *Jacob's Yaaqov's* heart *fainted exhausted*,
 for he *believed trusted* them not.
 27 And they *told him worded*
 all the words of *Joseph Yoseph*,
 which he had *said worded* unto them:
 and when he saw the wagons
 which *Joseph Yoseph* had sent to *carry bear* him,
 the spirit of *Jacob Yaaqov* their father *revived enlivened*:
 28 And *Israel Yisra El* said, *It is enough Great*;
Joseph Yoseph my son is yet alive:
 I *will shall* go and see him before I die.

YAAQOV MOVES TO MISRAYIM

46 And *Israel took his journey Yisra El pulled* stakes
 with all that he had,
 and came to *Beersheba Beer Sheba*,
 and *offered sacrificed* sacrifices
 unto the *God Elohim* of his father *Isaac Yischaq*.
 2 And *God spake Elohim said* unto *Israel Yisra El*
 in the visions of the night,
 and said, *Jacob Yaaqov, Jacob Yaaqov*.
 And he said, Here *am — I*.
 3 And he said, I *am God — El*, the *God Elohim* of thy father:
fear awe not to go down *descend* into *Egypt Misrayim*;
 for I *will shall* there *make set* of thee a great *nation goyim*:
 4 I *will go down shall descend* with thee
 into *Egypt Misrayim*;
 and *in ascending*,
 I *will shall* also *surely bring ascend* thee *up again*:
 and *Joseph Yoseph* shall put his hand upon thine eyes.
 5 And *Jacob Yaaqov* rose up from *Beersheba Beer Sheba*:
 and the sons of *Israel Yisra El*
carried Jacob bore Yaaqov their father,
 and their *little ones toddlers*, and their *wives women*,
 in the wagons which *Pharaoh Paroh* had sent
 to *carry bear* him.
 6 And they took their *cattle chattel*,
 and their *goods acquisitions*,

GENESIS 45, 46

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and the eyes of his servants.
 17 And Paroh says to Yoseph,
 Say to your brothers, Work this:
 Load your beasts and go
 and get to the land of Kenaan;
 18 and take your father and your households
 and come to me:
 and I give you the good of the land of Misrayim
 and you eat the fat of the land.
 19 Now you — you are misvahed; work this:
 take wagons from the land of Misrayim
 for your toddlers and for your women
 and bear your father and come.
 20 And that your eye spare not your instruments;
 for the good of all the land of Misrayim *is* yours.
 — and thus the sons of Yisra El work.
 And Yoseph gives them wagons
 according to the mouth of Paroh;
 and gives them hunt for the way:
 22 he gives all of them — to each man
 changes of clothes:
 but to Ben Yamin
 he gives three hundred silver
 and five changes of clothes:
 23 and to his father he sends thus:
 ten he burros
 loaded with the goods of Misrayim;
 and ten she burros
 loaded with grain and bread and food
 for his father by the way.
 24 — thus he sends his brothers away and they go:
 and he says to them,
 See that you not quiver by the way.
 25 And they ascend from Misrayim
 and come into the land of Kenaan
 to Yaaqov their father,
 26 and tell him, saying, Yoseph *is* yet alive
 and he *is* sovereign over all the land of Misrayim.
 — and the heart of Yaaqov *is* exhausted
 for he trusts them not.
 27 And they word all the words
 Yoseph worded to them:
 and when he sees the wagons
 Yoseph sent to bear him,
 the spirit of Yaaqov their father enlivens:
 28 and Yisra El says, Great!
 Yoseph my son *is* yet alive:
 I go and see him ere I die.

YAAQOV MOVES TO MISRAYIM

46 And Yisra El pulls stakes with all he has
 and comes to Beer Sheba;
 and sacrifices sacrifices
 to the Elohim of his father Yischaq.
 2 And Elohim says to Yisra El
 in the visions of the night,
 and says, Yaaqov! Yaaqov!
 And he says, Here — I.
 3 And he says, I — El — Elohim of your father:
 awe not to descend into Misrayim;
 for there I set of you a great goyim:
 I descend with you into Misrayim;
 and in ascending, I also ascend you:
 and Yoseph puts his hand on your eyes.
 4 And Yaaqov rises from Beer Sheba:
 and the sons of Yisra El bear Yaaqov their father
 and their toddlers and their women
 in the wagons Paroh sent to bear him:
 6 and they take the chattel and the acquisitions

GENESIS 46

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

7 which they had gotten **acquired**
in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
and came into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
8 *Jacob* **Yaaqov**, and all his seed with him:
His sons, and his sons' sons with him,
his daughters, and his sons' daughters,
and all his seed
brought he with him into *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
GENEALOGY OF ALL WHO CAME TO MISRAYIM
8 And these are the names
of the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
which came into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
Jacob **Yaaqov** and his sons:
9 *Reuben*, *Jacob's firstborn* **Reu Ben**, **Yaaqov's firstbirthed**.
And the sons of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**;
Hanoch, and Phallu,
and *Hezron* **Hesron**, and *Carmi* **Karmi**.
10 And the sons of *Simeon* **Shimon**;
Jemuel **Yemu El**, and *Yamin* **Yamiyn**,
and *Ohad*, and *Jachin* **Yachin**, and *Zohar* **Sochar**,
and *Shaul* the son of a *Canaanitish* **Kenaaniy** woman.
11 And the sons of *Levi*;
Gershon, *Kohath* **Qehath**, and *Merari*.
12 And the sons of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
Er, and Onan, and *Shelah*,
and *Pharez* **Peres**, and *Zarah* **Zerach**:
but Er and Onan died in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**.
And the sons of *Pharez* **Peres**
were *Hezron* **Hesron** and *Hamul*.
13 And the sons of *Issachar* **Yissachar**;
Tola, and *Phuvah* **Puvvah**, and *Job*, and *Shimron*.
14 And the sons of *Zebulun*;
Sered, and *Elon*, and *Jahleel* **Yachle El**.
15 These be the sons of *Leah*,
which she *bare* **birthed** unto *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
in *Padanaram* **Paddan Aram**,
with his daughter *Dinah*:
all the souls of his sons and his daughters
were thirty and three.
16 And the sons of *Gad*;
Ziphion **Siphyon**, and *Haggi*, *Shuni*, and *Ezbon* **Esbon**,
Eri **Eriy**, and *Arodi* **Arodiy**, and *Areli* **Ar Eli**.
17 And the sons of *Asher*;
Jimnah **Yimnah**, and *Ishuah* **Yishvah**,
and *Isui* **Yishviy**, and *Beriah*,
and *Serach* **Serach** their sister:
and the sons of *Beriah*;
Heber, and *Malchiel* **Malki El**.
18 These are the sons of *Zilpah*,
whom *Laban* gave to *Leah* his daughter,
and these she *bare* **birthed** unto *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
even sixteen souls.
19 The sons of *Rachel* *Jacob's wife* **Yaaqov's woman**;
Joseph **Yoseph**, and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**.
20 And unto *Joseph* **Yoseph** in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
were *born* *Manasseh* **birthed Menash Sheh**
and *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
which *Asenath*
the daughter of *Potipherah* **Poti Phera** priest of *On*
bare **birthed** unto him.
21 And the sons of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
were *Belah*, and *Becher*, and *Ashbel*,
Gera, and *Naaman*, *Ehi* **Achi**, and *Rosh*,
Muppim, and *Huppim*, and *Ard*.
22 These are the sons of *Rachel*,
which were *born* **birthed** to *Jacob* **Yaaqov**:
all the souls were fourteen.
23 And the sons of *Dan*;
Hushim.
24 And the sons of *Naphtali*;

GENESIS 46

exeGeses companion BIBLE

they acquired in the land of *Kenaan*
and come into *Misrayim*
— *Yaaqov* and all his seed with him:
7 and he brings his sons and the sons of his sons
his daughters and the daughters of his sons
and all his seed with him into *Misrayim*.

GENEALOGY OF ALL WHO COME TO MISRAYIM

8 And these are the names of the sons of *Yisra El*
who comes to *Misrayim*:

Yaaqov and his sons:
Reu Ben, the firstbirth of *Yaaqov*.

9 And the sons of *Reu Ben*:
Hanoch and *Phallu* and *Hesron* and *Karmi*.

10 And the sons of *Shimon*:
Yemu El and *Yamiyn*
and *Ohad* and *Yachin* and *Sochar*
and *Shaul* the son of a *Kenaaniy* woman.

11 And the sons of *Levi*:
Gershon, *Qehath* and *Merari*.

12 And the sons of *Yah Hudah*:
Er and *Onan* and *Shelah* and *Peres* and *Zerach*
and *Er* and *Onan* die in the land of *Kenaan*.

And the sons of *Peres*:
Hesron and *Hamul*.

13 And the sons of *Yissachar*:
Tola and *Puvvah* and *Job* and *Shimron*.

14 And the sons of *Zebulun*:
Sered and *Elon* and *Yachle El*.

15 These are the sons of *Leah*,
whom she birthed to *Yaaqov* in *Padan Aram*
with his daughter *Dinah*.
— all the souls of his sons and his daughters
are thirty—three.

16 And the sons of *Gad*:
Siphyon and *Haggi*, *Shuni* and *Esbon*,
Eriy and *Arodiy* and *Ar Eli*.

17 And the sons of *Asher*:
Yimnah and *Yishvah* and *Yishviy* and *Beriah*
and *Serach* their sister.

And the sons of *Beriah*:
Heber and *Malki El*.

18 These are the sons of *Zilpah*
whom *Laban* gave to *Leah* his daughter
whom she birthed to *Yaaqov* — sixteen souls.

19 The sons of *Rachel* the woman of *Yaaqov*:
Yoseph and *Ben Yamin*;
20 and birthed to *Yoseph* in the land of *Misrayim*:
Menash Sheh and *Ephrayim*,
whom *Asenath*
the daughter of *Poti Phera* priest of *On*
birthed to him.

21 And the sons of *Ben Yamin*:
Belah and *Becher* and *Ashbel*,
Gera and *Naaman*, *Achi* and *Rosh*,
Muppim and *Huppim* and *Ard*.

22 These are the sons of *Rachel* birthed to *Yaaqov*:
all the souls are fourteen.

23 And the sons of *Dan*:
Hushim.

24 And the sons of *Naphtali*:

GENESIS 46, 47

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

Jahzeel **Yachse El**, and Guni, and Jezer **Yeser**, and Shillem.
 25 These are the sons of Bilhah,
 which Laban gave unto Rachel his daughter,
 and she *bare* **birthed** these unto **Jacob Yaaqov**:
 all the souls were seven.
 26 All the souls
 that came with **Jacob Yaaqov** into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
 which came out of his *loins* **flank**,
 besides **Jacob's Yaaqov's** sons' *wives* **women**,
 all the souls were *threescore* **sixty** and six;
 27 And the sons of **Joseph Yoseph**,
 which were *born* **birthed** him in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
 were two souls:
 all the souls of the house of **Jacob Yaaqov**,
 which came into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
 were *threescore and ten* **seventy**.
 28 And he sent **Judah Yah Hudah**
before him **from his face** unto **Joseph Yoseph**,
 to direct his face unto Goshen;
 and they came into the land of Goshen.
 29 And **Joseph** made ready **Yoseph** his chariot,
 and *went up* **ascended** to meet **Israel Yisra El** his father,
 to Goshen, and *presented himself unto* **was seen by** him;
 and he fell on his neck,
 and wept on his neck *a good while* **again**.
 30 And **Israel Yisra El** said unto **Joseph Yoseph**,
Now **This time** let me die, since I have seen thy face,
 because thou art yet **still** alive.
 31 And **Joseph Yoseph** said unto his brethren,
 and unto his father's house,
I will go up **shall ascend**, and *shew* **Pharaoh tell Paroh**,
 and say unto him, My brethren, and my father's house,
 which were in the land of **Canaan Kenaan**,
 are come unto me;
 32 And the men *are* **shepherds tend flocks**,
for their trade hath been to feed cattle — **men of chattel**;
 and they have brought their flocks, and their *herds* **oxen**,
 and all that they have.
 33 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
 when **Pharaoh Paroh** shall call you,
 and shall say, What is your *occupation* **work**?
 34 That ye shall say,
 Thy *servants' trade* **servants**
hath **have** been *about cattle* **men of chattel**
 from our youth even until now,
 both we, and also our fathers:
 that ye may *dwell* **settle** in the land of Goshen;
 for every *shepherd* **all who tend flocks**
is **are** an *abomination* **abhorrence**
 unto the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**.

YAAQOV IN MISRAYIM

47 Then **Joseph Yoseph** came and told **Pharaoh Paroh**,
 and said, My father and my brethren,
 and their flocks, and their *herds* **oxen**,
 and all that they have,
 are come out of the land of **Canaan Kenaan**;
 and, behold, they are in the land of Goshen.
 2 And he took *some of the end* of his brethren, *even* five men,
 and presented them *unto* **Pharaoh at the face of Paroh**.
 3 And **Pharaoh Paroh** said unto his brethren,
 What is your *occupation* **work**?
 And they said unto **Pharaoh Paroh**,
 Thy servants *are* **shepherds tend flocks**,
 both we, and also our fathers.
 4 They said moreover unto **Pharaoh Paroh**,
 For to sojourn in the land are we come;
 for thy servants have no pasture for their flocks;
 for the famine is *sore* **heavy**
 in the land of **Canaan Kenaan**:
 now therefore, we *pray* **beseech** thee,
 let thy servants *dwell* **settle** in the land of Goshen.
 5 And **Pharaoh's spake Paroh said** unto **Joseph Yoseph**,
 saying, Thy father and thy brethren are come unto thee:
 6 The land of *Egypt* **Misrayim** is *before thee* **at thy face**;
 in the best of the land
make **have** thy father and brethren to *dwell* **settle**;
 in the land of Goshen let them *dwell* **settle**:
 and if thou knowest *any men of activity* **valour** among them,
 then *make* **set** them *rulers* **governors** over my *cattle* **chattel**.

GENESIS 46, 47

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Yachse El and Guni and Yeser and Shillem.
 25 These *are* the sons of Bilhah
 whom Laban gave to Rachel his daughter
 and she birthed these to Yaaqov;
 all the souls *are* seven.
 26 All the souls coming with Yaaqov into Misrayim,
 coming from his flank,
 besides the women of the sons of Yaaqov;
 all the souls *are* sixty—six;
 27 and the sons of Yoseph
 birthed to him in Misrayim, *are* two souls:
 all the souls of the house of Yaaqov,
 coming into Misrayim, *are* seventy.
 28 And he sends Yah Hudah
 from his face to Yoseph,
 to direct his face to Goshen;
 and they come to the land of Goshen:
 29 and Yoseph binds his chariot
 and ascends to meet Yisra El his father,
 to Goshen and he sees him;
 and he falls on his neck and weeps on his neck again.
 30 And Yisra El says to Yoseph,
 This time I die, since seeing your face,
 because you *are* still alive.
 31 And Yoseph says to his brothers
 and to the house of his father,
 I ascend and tell Paroh and say to him,
 My brothers and the house of my father
 from the land of Kenaan, come to me;
 32 and the men tend flocks — men of chattel;
 and they bring their flocks and their oxen
 and all they have.
 33 And so be it,
 when Paroh calls you and says, What *is* your work?
 34 You say,
 Your servants are men of chattel from our youth
 even until now — both we and our fathers;
 and that you settle in the land of Goshen
 — for all who tend flocks
 are an abhorrence to the Misrayim.

YAAQOV IN MISRAYIM

47 Then Yoseph comes and tells Paroh and says,
 My father and my brothers
 and their flocks and their oxen and all they have
 have come from the land of Kenaan;
 and behold, they *are* in the land of Goshen.
 2 And he takes five men from the end of his brothers
 and presents them at the face of Paroh.
 3 And Paroh says to his brothers, What *is* your work?
 And they say to Paroh, Your servants tend flocks
 — both we and our fathers.
 4 And they say to Paroh,
 We come to sojourn in the land;
 for your servants have no pasture for their flocks;
 for the famine *is* heavy in the land of Kenaan:
 and now, we beseech you,
 that you settle your servants in the land of Goshen.
 5 And Paroh says to Yoseph, saying,
 Your father and your brothers come to you:
 the land of Misrayim *is* at your face;
 6 settle your father and brothers in the best of the land
 — settle them in the land of Goshen:
 and if you know any men of valour among them,
 set them governors over my chattel.

GENESIS 47

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

7 And Joseph **Yoseph** brought in Jacob **Yaaqov** his father,
and set **stood** him *before Pharaoh at the face of Paroh:*
and Jacob **Yaaqov** blessed *Pharaoh Paroh.*

8 And *Pharaoh Paroh* said unto Jacob **Yaaqov**,
How old art thou
How many are the days of the years of thy life?

9 And Jacob **Yaaqov** said unto *Pharaoh Paroh*,
The days of the years of my *pilgrimage sojournings*
are an hundred **years** and thirty years:
few and evil have the days of the years of my life been,
and have not *attained reached*
unto the days of the years of the life of my fathers
in the days of their *pilgrimage sojournings.*

10 And Jacob **Yaaqov** blessed *Pharaoh Paroh*,
and went out from *before Pharaoh the face of Paroh.*

11 And Joseph **Yoseph**
placed settled his father and his brethren,
and gave them a possession
in the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
in the best of the land, in the land of Rameses,
as *Pharaoh Paroh* had *commanded misvahed.*

12 And Joseph **Yoseph** nourished his father,
and his brethren, and all his father's household,
with bread,
according to **the mouths** of their *families toddlers.*

13 And there was no bread in all the land;
for the famine was *very sore mighty heavy*,
so that the land of *Egypt Misrayim*
and all the land of *Canaan Kenaan*
fainted by reason were rabid at the face of the famine.

14 And Joseph **Yoseph**
gathered up gleaned all the *money silver*
that was found in the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
and in the land of *Canaan Kenaan*,
for the *corn kernels* which they *bought marketed:*
and Joseph **Yoseph** brought the *money silver*
into *Pharaoh's Paroh's* house.

15 And when *money silver* failed
in the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
and in the land of *Canaan Kenaan*,
all the *Egyptians Misrayim* came unto Joseph **Yoseph**,
and said, Give us bread:
for why should we die in thy presence?
for the *money faileth silver is consumed.*

16 And Joseph **Yoseph** said, Give your *cattle chattel*;
and I **will shall** give you for your *cattle chattel*,
if *money fail silver be consumed.*

17 And they brought their *cattle chattel*
unto Joseph **Yoseph**:
and Joseph **Yoseph** gave them bread
in exchange for horses,
and for the **chattel of the flocks**,
and for the *cattle chattel* of the *herds oxen*,
and for the *asses he burros*:
and he *fed sustained* them with bread
for all their *cattle chattel* for that year.

18 When that year was *ended consummated*,
they came unto him the second year, and said unto him,
We **will shall** not *hide conceal* it from my *lord adoni*,
how that our *money silver is spent consumed*;
my *lord adoni* also
hath our *herds chattel* of *cattle animals*;
there is not ought left naught surviveth
in the sight at the face of my *lord adoni*,
but our bodies, and our *lands soil*:

19 Wherefore shall we die *before in front of* thine eyes,
both we and our *land soil*?
buy chattelize us and our *land soil* for bread,
and we and our *land soil*
will shall be servants unto *Pharaoh Paroh*:
and give us seed, that we may live, and not die,
that the *land soil* be not desolate.

20 And Joseph **Yoseph** *bought chatted*
all the *land soil* of *Egypt Misrayim* for *Pharaoh Paroh*;
for the *Egyptians Misrayim* sold every man his field,
because the famine prevailed over them:
so the land became *Pharaoh's Paroh's*.

21 And as for the people,
he *removed passed* them to cities

GENESIS 47

exeGeses companion BIBLE

7 And Yoseph enters Yaaqov his father
and stands him at the face of Paroh:
and Yaaqov blesses Paroh.

8 And Paroh says to Yaaqov,
How many *are* the days of the years of your life?

9 And Yaaqov says to Paroh,
The days of the years of my sojournings
are a hundred years and thirty years:
few and evil be the days of the years of my life:
and reach not
to the days of the years of the life of my fathers
in the days of their sojournings.

10 And Yaaqov blesses Paroh
and goes from the face of Paroh:
and Yoseph settles his father and his brothers
and gives them a possession in the land of Misrayim
— in the best of the land, in the land of Rameses,
as Paroh misvahed.

12 And Yoseph nourishes his father and his brothers
and all the household of his father with bread,
according to the mouths of their toddlers:
and there *is* no bread in all the land;
for the famine *is* mighty heavy
so that the land of Misrayim and the land of Kenaan
are rabid at the face of the famine.

14 And Yoseph gleans all the silver they find
in the land of Misrayim and in the land of Kenaan
for the kernels for which they market:
and Yoseph brings the silver into the house of Paroh:
and when the silver fails
in the land of Misrayim and in the land of Kenaan,
all the Misrayim come to Yoseph, and say,
Give us bread!
Why die we in your presence?
although the silver *is* consumed.

16 And Yoseph says, Give your chattel;
and I give you for your chattel, if silver *is* consumed.

17 And they bring their chattel to Yoseph:
and Yoseph gives them bread
for horses and for the chattel of the flocks
and for the chattel of the oxen and for the he burros:
and he sustains them with bread
for all their chattel for that year.

18 And that year consummates:
and they come to him the second year
and say to him,
We conceal not from my adoni,
how that our silver *is* consumed;
my adoni also has our chattel of animals;
naught survives at the face of my adoni
except our bodies and our soil:
Why die we in front of your eyes
— both we and our soil?
Chattelize us and our soil for bread
and we and our soil become servants to Paroh:
and give us seed, that we live and not die,
that the soil not become desolate.

20 And Yoseph
chattels all the soil of Misrayim for Paroh;
for every Misrayim man sells his field,
because the famine prevails over them:
so the land becomes to Paroh:
and as for the people,
he passes them to cities

GENESIS 47, 48

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

from one the end of the borders of Egypt Misrayim
even to the other end thereof.
22 Only the land soil of the priests
bought chatted he not;
for the priests had a portion statute
assigned them of Pharaoh from Paroh,
and did eat consumed their portion statute
which Pharaoh Paroh gave them:
wherefore they sold not their lands soil.
23 Then Joseph Yoseph said unto the people,
Behold, I have bought chatted you this day
and your land soil for Pharaoh Paroh:
lo behold, here is — seed for you,
and ye shall sow seed the land soil.
24 And so be it shall come to pass in the increase produce,
that ye shall give the fifth part unto Pharaoh Paroh,
and four parts shall be your own, for seed of the field,
and for your food, and for them of your households,
and for food for your little ones toddlers.
25 And they said, Thou hast saved preserved our lives:
let us find grace charism
in the sight eyes of my lord adoni,
and we will shall be Pharaoh's Paroh's servants.
26 And Joseph made it Yoseph set a law statute
over the land of Egypt Misrayim unto this day,
that Pharaoh Paroh should have the fifth part,
except the land soil of the priests only,
which became not Pharaoh's Paroh's.
27 And Israel Yisra El
dwelt settled in the land of Egypt Misrayim,
in the country land of Goshen;
and they had possessions possessed therein,
and grew bore fruit,
and multiplied exceedingly abounded mightily.
28 And Jacob Yaaqov
lived in the land of Egypt Misrayim seventeen years:
so the whole age days of the years of Jacob's Yaaqov's life
was an hundred forty years and seven years.
29 And the time drew nigh day approached
that Israel must Yisra El die:
and he called his son Joseph Yoseph, and said unto him,
If now I have found grace charism in thy sight eyes,
put, I pray beseech thee, thy hand under my thigh flank,
and deal kindly work in mercy and truly truth with me;
bury entomb me not, I pray beseech thee,
in Egypt Misrayim:
30 But I will shall lie with my fathers,
and thou shalt carry bear me out of Egypt Misrayim,
and bury entomb me in their buryingplace tomb.
And he said,
I will do as thou hast said I shall work thy word.
31 And he said, Swear Oath unto me.
And he sware oathed unto him.
And Israel bowed himself Yisra El prostrated
upon the bed's head.

THE FINAL DAYS OF YISRA EL

48 And so be it came to pass
after these things words,
that one told Joseph Yoseph, Behold, thy father is sick:
and he took with him his two sons,
Manasseh Menash Sheh and Ephraim Ephrayim.
2 And one told Jacob Yaaqov, and said,
Behold, thy son Joseph Yoseph cometh unto thee:
and Israel Yisra El strengthened himself,
and sat upon the bed.
3 And Jacob Yaaqov said unto Joseph Yoseph,
God Almighty appeared unto El Shadday was seen by me
at Luz in the land of Canaan Kanaan, and blessed me,
4 And said unto me, Behold,
I will make shall have thee fruitful bear fruit,
and multiply abound thee,
and I will make of shall give thee
a multitude congregation of people;
and will shall give this land to thy seed after thee
for an everlasting eternal possession.
5 And now thy two sons,
Ephraim Ephrayim and Manasseh Menash Sheh,
which were born birthed unto thee
in the land of Egypt Misrayim

GENESIS 47, 48

exeGeses companion BIBLE

from the end of the borders of Misrayim
even to the end thereof.
22 Only he chattels not the soil of the priests;
for the priests have a statute from Paroh
and they consume the statute Paroh gave them:
so they sold not their soil.
23 Then Yoseph says to the people,
Behold, this day, I chattel you and your soil for Paroh:
behold, seed for you; seed the soil:
24 and so be it, of the produce,
give a fifth to Paroh; and four become your own
for seed of the field
and for your food and for them of your households
and for food for your toddlers.
25 And they say, You preserved our lives!
We find charism in the eyes of my adoni
and we become the servants of Paroh.
26 And Yoseph
set a statute over the land of Misrayim
to this day,
that Paroh have the fifth,
except that the soil of the priests
becomes not to Paroh.
27 And Yisra El settles in the land of Misrayim
in the land of Goshen;
and they possess therein
and bear fruit and abound mightily:
28 and Yaaqov
lives in the land of Misrayim seventeen years:
so the days of the years of the life of Yaaqov
are a hundred forty years and seven years.
29 And the day approaches that Yisra El die:
and he calls his son Yoseph and says to him,
If now I find charism in your eyes,
put, I beseech you, your hand under my flank
and work in mercy and truth with me;
entomb me not, I beseech you, in Misrayim:
30 but lay me with my fathers
and bear me from Misrayim
and entomb me in their tomb.
And he says, I work your word.
31 And he says, Oath to me.
And he oaths to him.
— and Yisra El prostrates on the head of the bed.

THE FINAL DAYS OF YISRA EL

48 And so be it, after these words,
someone tells Yoseph, Behold, your father is sick:
and he takes with him his two sons,
Menash Sheh and Ephrayim.
2 And someone tells Yaaqov and says,
Behold, your son Yoseph comes to you.
— and Yisra El strengthens himself
and sits on the bed.
3 And Yaaqov says to Yoseph,
El Shadday appeared to me
at Luz in the land of Kanaan and blesses me,
4 and says to me, Behold,
I have you bear fruit and abound you
and I give you a congregation of people;
and give this land to your seed after you
for an eternal possession.
5 And now your two sons,
Ephrayim and Menash Sheh,
birthed to you in the land of Misrayim

GENESIS 48

exeGes *ready research BIBLE*

before **until** I came unto thee into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
are mine;
as *Reuben* **Reu Ben** and *Simeon* **Shimon**,
they shall be mine.
6 And thy *issue* **kindred**,
which thou *begettest* **birthest** after them,
shall be thine,
and shall be called after the name of their brethren
in their inheritance.
7 And as for me, when I came from *Padan*,
Rachel died by me
in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan** in the way,
when yet there was *but a little way* **still a bit of land**
to come unto *Ephrath*:
and I *buried* **entombed** her there in the way of *Ephrath*;
the same is *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**.
8 And *Israel* beheld *Joseph's* **Yisra El** saw **Yoseph's** sons,
and said, Who are these?
9 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** said unto his father,
They are my sons,
whom *God* **Elohim** hath given me *in this place*.
And he said, *Bring* **Take** them, I pray thee, unto me,
and I *will* **shall** bless them.
10 Now the eyes of *Israel* **Yisra El** were *dim* **heavy** for age,
so that he could not see.
And he brought them near unto him;
and he kissed them, and embraced them.
11 And *Israel* **Yisra El** said unto *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
I had not *thought* **prayed** to see thy face: and, *lo* **behold**,
God **Elohim** hath *shewed* me **see** also thy seed.
12 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** brought them out
from between his knees,
and he *bowed* **prostrated** himself
with his *face* **nostrils** to the earth.
13 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** took **the two of** them both,
Ephraim **Ephrayim** in his right hand
toward *Israel's* **Yisra El's** left hand,
and *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** in his left hand
toward *Israel's* **Yisra El's** right hand,
and brought them near unto him.
14 And *Israel* **Yisra El**
stretched out **spread** his right hand,
and *laid* **put** it upon *Ephraim's* **Ephrayim's** head,
who was the *younger* **lesser**,
and his left hand upon *Manasseh's* **Menash Sheh's** head,
guiding his hands wittingly **crossing his hands**;
for *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** was the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**.
15 And he blessed *Joseph* **Yoseph**, and said,
God **Elohim**, *before whom* **at whose face**
my fathers Abraham and *Isaac* **Yischaq** did walk,
the God **Elohim** which *fed* **tended** me
all my life long unto this day,
16 The Angel which redeemed me from all evil,
bless the lads;
and let my name be *named* **called** on them,
and the name of my fathers Abraham and *Isaac* **Yischaq**;
and let them *grow* **spawn as fish** into a multitude
in the midst of the earth.
17 And when *Joseph* **Yoseph** saw that his father
laid **put** his right hand
upon the head of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
it *displeased him* **was evil in his eyes**:
and he *held up* **upheld** his father's hand,
to *remove it* **turn it aside** from *Ephraim's* **Ephrayim's** head
unto *Manasseh's* **Menash Sheh's** head.
18 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** said unto his father,
Not so, my father: for this is the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**;
put thy right *hand* upon his head.
19 And his father refused, and said,
I know *it*, my son, I know *it*:
he also shall become a people,
and he also shall *be* **great** **greaten**:
but *truly* his younger brother shall be greater than he,
and his seed shall become
a *multitude* **fulness of nations** **goyim**.
20 And he blessed them that day, saying,
In thee shall *Israel* **Yisra El** bless, saying,
God **make Elohim** set thee
as *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** and as *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**:

GENESIS 48

exeGes *companion BIBLE*

until I came to you into *Misrayim*, they *are* mine;
as *Reu Ben* and *Shimon*, they *are* mine:
6 and your kindred, which you birthed after them,
they *are* yours:
call them after the name of their brothers
in their inheritance.
7 And as for me, when I came from *Padan*,
Rachel died by me in the land of *Kenaan* in the way
when there was still a bit of land to come to *Ephrath*:
and I entombed her there
in the way of *Ephrath* — *Beth Lechem*.
8 And *Yisra El* sees the sons of *Yoseph*, and says,
Who *are* these?
9 And *Yoseph* says to his father, They *are* my sons,
whom *Elohim* gave me.
And he says, Take them, I pray you, to me;
and I bless them.
10 And the eyes of *Yisra El* became heavy from aging
so that he cannot see:
and he brings them near him;
and he kisses them and embraces them.
11 And *Yisra El* says to *Yoseph*,
I had not prayed to see your face: and behold,
Elohim also shows me your seed.
12 And *Yoseph* brings them out
from between his knees
and he prostrates with his nostrils to the earth:
13 and *Yoseph* takes the two of them,
Ephrayim in his right
toward the left of *Yisra El*;
and *Menash Sheh* in his left
toward the right of *Yisra El*
and brings them near to him:
14 and *Yisra El* spreads his right
and puts it on the head of *Ephrayim* the lesser
and his left on the head of *Menash Sheh*
— crossing his hands;
for *Menash Sheh* *is* the firstbirth.
15 And he blesses *Yoseph* and says, *Elohim*,
at whose face
my fathers Abraham and *Yischaq* walked,
Elohim who tends me all my life long to this day,
16 the Angel who redeems me from all evil,
bless the lads:
and call my name on them
and the name of my fathers Abraham and *Yischaq*:
and that they spawn as fish into a multitude
midst of the earth.
17 And *Yoseph* sees
that his father put his right on the head of *Ephrayim*;
and it *is* evil in his eyes:
and he upholds the hand of his father
to turn it aside from the head of *Ephrayim*
to the head of *Menash Sheh*:
18 and *Yoseph* says to his father,
Not so, my father: for this *is* the firstbirth;
put your right on his head.
19 And his father refuses and says,
I know, my son, I know:
he also becomes a people and he also greatens:
but his younger brother becomes greater than he
and his seed becomes a fulness of *goyim*.
20 And he blesses them that day, saying,
In you, *Yisra El* blesses, saying,
Elohim sets you as *Ephrayim* and as *Menash Sheh*:

GENESIS 48, 49

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and he set Ephraim Ephrayim
before Manasseh at the face of Menash Sheh.
21 And Israel Yisra El said unto Joseph Yoseph,
Behold, I die: but God Elohim shall be with you,
and bring return you again unto the land of your fathers.
22 Moreover I have given to thee
one portion shoulder above thy brethren,
which I took out of the hand of the Amorite Emoriy
with my sword and with my bow.

YAAQOV BLESSES HIS SONS

49 And Jacob Yaaqov called unto his sons,
and said, Gather yourselves together,
that I may tell you that which shall befall confront you
in the last final days.
2 Gather yourselves together, and hear,
ye sons of Jacob Yaaqov;
and hearken unto Israel Yisra El your father.
3 Reuben Reu Ben, thou art my firstborn firstbirthed,
my might force, and the beginning of my strength,
the excellency remainder of dignity exalting,
and the excellency remainder of power strength:
4 Unstable Frothy as water,
thou shalt not excel remain
because thou wentest up ascendest to thy father's bed;
then defiledst profanest thou it:
he went up ascendest to my couch.
5 Simeon Shimon and Levi are brethren;
instruments of cruelty violence
are in their habitations swords.
6 O my soul, come not thou into their secret;
unto their assembly congregation,
mine honour, be not thou united:
for in their anger wrath they slew slaughtered a man,
and in their selfwill pleasure
they digged down a wall hamstrung oxen.
7 Cursed be their anger wrath, for it was fierce strong;
and their wrath fury, for it was cruel hardened:
I will divide shall allot them in Jacob Yaaqov,
and scatter them in Israel Yisra El.
8 Judah Yah Hudah,
thou art he whom thy brethren shall praise spread hands:
thy hand shall be in the neck of thine enemies;
thy father's children sons
shall bow down prostrate before thee.
9 Judah Yah Hudah is a lion's whelp:
from the prey, my son, thou art gone up ascendest:
he stooped down kneeled, he couched crouched as a lion,
and as an old a roaring lion;
who shall rouse him up?
10 The sceptre scion
shall not depart turn aside from Judah Yah Hudah,
nor a lawgiver statute setter from between his feet,
until Shiloh come;
and unto him
shall the gathering obedience of the people be.
11 Binding his foal unto the vine,
and his ass's colt she burro's son unto the choice vine;
he washed laundered his garments robes in wine,
and his clothes veil in the blood of grapes:
12 His eyes shall be red flush with wine,
and his teeth white with milk.
13 Zebulun shall dwell tabernacle at the haven of the sea;
and he shall be for an haven of ships;
and his border flank shall be unto Zidon Sidon.
14 Issachar Yissachar is a strong ass bony he burro
couching down crouching
between two burdens the stalls:
15 And he saw that rest was good,
and the land that it was pleasant pleased;
and bowed his shoulder to bear,
and became a servant unto tribute to serve as a vassal.
16 Dan shall judge plead the cause of his people,
as one of the tribes scions of Israel Yisra El.
17 Dan shall be a serpent by the way,
an adder in the path, that biteth the horse heels,
so that his rider shall fall backward.
18 I have waited for awaited thy salvation,
O LORD Yah Veh.
19 Gad, a troop shall overcome troop against him:

GENESIS 48, 49

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and he sets Ephrayim at the face of Menash Sheh.

21 And Yisra El says to Yoseph,
Behold, I die: and Elohim be with you
and return you to the land of your fathers.
22 Moreover I give to you
one shoulder above your brothers,
which I took from the hand of the Emoriy
with my sword and with my bow.

YAAQOV BLESSES HIS SONS

49 And Yaaqov calls to his sons, and says,
Gather
and I tell you what confronts you in the final days.
2 Gather and hear, you sons of Yaaqov
and hearken to Yisra El your father.
3 Reu Ben, my firstbirth:
you — my force and the beginning of my strength;
the remainder of exaltation
and the remainder of strength:
4 frothy as water, you remain not,
because you ascended to the bed of your father;
then you profaned it:
he ascended to my couch.
5 Shimon and Levi:
brothers with instruments of violence in their swords:
6 come not into their secret, O my soul;
to their congregation, unite not, O my honor:
for in their wrath they slaughtered a man
and in their pleasure they hamstrung oxen:
7 cursed be their wrath, for it is strong;
and their fury, for it is hard:
I allot them in Yaaqov and scatter them in Yisra El.
8 Yah Hudah:
you to whom your brothers spread hands:
your hand is on the neck of your enemies;
the sons of your father prostrate to you:
9 Yah Hudah is a whelp of a lion:
from the prey, my son, you ascend:
he kneels; he crouches as a lion and as a roaring lion;
who rouses him?
10 Neither turns the scion aside from Yah Hudah
nor a statute setter from between his feet
until Shiloh come;
and the obedience of the people is his:
11 binding his foal to the vine
and the son of his she burro to the choice;
he launders his robes in wine
and his veil in the blood of grapes:
12 his eyes flush with wine
and his teeth whiten with milk.
13 Zebulun:
he tabernacles at the haven of the sea:
and he is for a haven of ships;
and his flank is to Sidon.
14 Yissachar:
a bony he burro
crouching between the stalls:
15 and he sees that rest is good
and that the land pleases;
and bows his shoulder to bear
and becomes to serve as a vassal.
16 Dan:
he pleads the cause of his people,
as one of the scions of Yisra El:
17 Dan becomes a serpent by the way
— an adder in the path who bites the horse heels,
so that his rider falls backward.
18 I await your salvation, O Yah Veh.
19 Gad:
a troop troops against him:

GENESIS 49, 50

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but he shall overcome at the last troop against the heel.
cp Genesis 3:15
20 Out of Asher his bread shall be *fat* **fatten**,
and he shall *yield royal dainties* **give sovereign delicacies**.
21 Naphtali is a hind *let loose* **sent away**:
he giveth *goodly words* **glorious sayings**.
22 Joseph **Yoseph** is a fruitful *bough* **son**,
even a fruitful *bough* **son** by a *well* **fountain**;
whose *branches run* **daughters pace** over the wall:
23 The *archers* **masters of arrows**
have *sorely grieved* **embittered** him,
and shot at *him*, and *hated* **opposed** him:
24 But his bow *abode in strength* **settled perennial**,
and the arms of his hands were *made strong* **solidified**
by the hands
of the *mighty God* **Almighty of Jacob Yaaqov**;
(from thence is the *shepherd* **he who tendeth**,
the stone of *Israel* **Yisra El**.)
25 Even by the *God* **El** of thy father, who shall help thee;
and by the *Almighty* **Shadday**, who shall bless thee
with blessings of *heaven above* **the heavens most high**,
blessings of the *deep abyss* that *lieth* **croucheth** under,
blessings of the breasts, and of the womb:
26 The blessings of thy father have prevailed **mightily**
above the blessings of *my progenitors* **whom I conceived**
unto the *utmost bound* **limits**
of the *everlasting* **eternal** hills:
they shall be on the head of *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
and on the *crown of the head* **scalp** of him
that was *separate from* a **Separatist** of his brethren.
27 *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin** shall *ravin* **tear** as a wolf:
in the morning he shall devour the prey,
and at *night evening* he shall *divide* **allot the spoil loot**.
28 All these are the twelve *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and this is it that their father *spake* **worded** unto them,
and blessed them;
every *one* **man** according to his blessing he blessed them.
29 And he *charged* **misvahed** them, and said unto them,
I am to be gathered unto my people:
bury **entomb** me with my fathers in the cave
that is in the field of Ephron the *Hittite* **Hethiy**,
30 In the cave that is in the field of Machpelah,
which is *before* **at the face** of Mamre,
in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
which Abraham *bought* **chatted**
with the field of Ephron the *Hittite* **Hethiy**
for a possession of a *buryingplace* **tomb**.
31 There they *buried* **entombed** Abraham
and Sarah his *wife* **woman**;
there they *buried Isaac* **entombed Yischaq**
and *Rebekah* **Ribqah** his *wife* **woman**;
and there I *buried* **entombed** Leah.
32 The *purchase* **chattel** of the field and of the cave
that is therein was from the *children* **sons** of Heth.
33 And when *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
had *made an end of commanding* **finished misvahing**
his sons,
he gathered up his feet into the bed,
and *yielded up the ghost* **expired**,
and was gathered unto his people.
50 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** fell upon his father's face,
and wept upon him, and kissed him.
2 And *Joseph* **commanded Yoseph misvahed** his servants
the *physicians* **healers** to embalm his father:
and the *physicians* **healers** embalmed *Israel* **Yisra El**.
3 And forty days were fulfilled for him;
for so are fulfilled the days of those which are embalmed:
and the *Egyptians* **mourned Misrayim wept** for him
threescore and ten **seventy** days.
4 And when the days of his *mourning* **weeping** were past,
Joseph **spake Yoseph worded**
unto the house of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**, saying,
If *now* **I beseech**, I have found *grace* **charism** in your eyes,
speak word, I *pray* **beseech** you,
in the ears of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**, saying,

GENESIS 49, 50

exeGesés companion BIBLE

but he troops against the heel.
cp Genesis 3:15
20 Asher:
his bread fattens
and he gives delicacies to the sovereign.
21 Naphtali:
a hind sent away:
he gives glorious sayings.
22 Yoseph:
a fruitful son — a fruitful son by a fountain;
whose daughters pace over the wall:
23 the masters of arrows embitter him
and shoot and oppose him:
24 and his bow settles perennial
and the arms of his hands solidify
by the hands of the Almighty of Yaaqov
— from there *is* he who tends,
the stone of Yisra El:
25 by El of your father, who helps you;
and by Shadday, who blesses you
with blessings of the heavens most high
— blessings of the abyss that crouch under
— blessings of the breasts and of the womb:
26 the blessings of your father prevail mightily
above the blessings of those whom I conceived
to the limits of the eternal hills:
they be on the head of Yoseph
and on his scalp who *is* a Separatist of his brothers.
27 Ben Yamin:
he tears as a wolf:
in the morning he devours the prey
and at evening he allots the loot.
28 All these:
the twelve scions of Yisra El:
and this *is* it what their father words to them;
and he blesses them
— every man according to his blessing
he blesses them.
29 And he misvahs them, and says to them,
I gather unto my people:
entomb me with my fathers in the cave
in the field of Ephron the Hethiy
— in the cave in the field of Machpelah
at the face of Mamre in the land of Kenaan;
which Abraham chatted
with the field of Ephron the Hethiy
for a possession of a tomb.
31 There they entombed Abraham
and Sarah his woman;
there they entombed Yischaq
and Ribqah his woman;
and there I entombed Leah
32 — in the chattel of the field and of the cave therein
of the sons of Heth.
33 And Yaaqov finishes misvahing his sons,
and he gathers his feet into the bed and expires
— and *is* gathered to his people.
50 And Yoseph falls on the face of his father
and weeps on him and kisses him:
2 and Yoseph misvahs his servants the healers
to embalm his father:
3 and the healers embalm Yisra El.
4 And they fulfill forty days for him;
for thus they fulfill the days of the embalmed:
and the Misrayim weep for him seventy days.
4 And when the days of his weeping pass,
Yoseph words to the house of Paroh, saying,
If I beseech, I find charism in your eyes,
word, I beseech you, in the ears of Paroh, saying,

GENESIS 50

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 My father *made me swear* **oathed me**, saying,
 Lo **Behold**, I die:
 in my *grave* **tomb** which I have digged for me
 in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
 there shalt thou *bury* **entomb** me.
Now therefore let me *go up* **ascend**, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
 and *bury* **entomb** my father,
 and I *will come again* **shall return**.
6 And *Pharaoh* **Paroh** said,
 Go up **Ascend**, and *bury* **entomb** thy father,
 according as he *made* **oathed** thee *swear*.
7 And *Joseph went up* **Yoseph ascended**
 to *bury* **entomb** his father:
 and with him *went up* **ascended**
 all the servants of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
 the elders of his house,
 and all the elders of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
8 And all the house of *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
 and his brethren, and his father's house:
 only their *little ones* **toddlers**, and their flocks,
 and their *herds* **oxen**, they left in the land of Goshen.
9 And there *went up* **ascended** with him
 both chariots and *horsemen* **cavalry**:
 and it was a *very great company* **mighty heavy camp**.
10 And they came to the threshingfloor of *Atad* **Thorns**,
 which is beyond *Jordan* **Yarden**,
 and there they *mourned* **chopped**
 with a great and *very sore* **mighty heavy**
 lamentation **chopping**:
 and he *made* **worked** a mourning
 for his father seven days.
11 And when *the inhabitants of* **they who settled** the land,
 the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
 saw the mourning
 in the *floor* **threshingfloor** of *Atad* **Thorns**, they said,
 This is a *grievous* **heavy** mourning
 to the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**:
 wherefore
 the name of it was called *Abelmizraim* **Abel Misrayim**,
 which is beyond *Jordan* **Yarden**.
12 And his sons *did* **worked** unto him
 according as he *commanded* **misvahed** them:
13 For his sons *carried* **bore** him
 into the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
 and *buried* **entombed** him
 in the cave of the field of Machpelah,
 which Abraham *bought* **chatted** with the field
 for a possession of a *buryingplace* **tomb**
 of Ephron the *Hittite* **Hethiy**,
 before **at the face of** Mamre.
14 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** returned into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
 he, and his brethren,
 and all that *went up* **ascended** with him
 to *bury* **entomb** his father,
 after he had *buried* **entombed** his father.
15 And when *Joseph's* **Yoseph's** brethren
 saw that their father was dead, they said,
 Joseph will peradventure hate
 What if Yoseph shall oppose us,
 and *will certainly requite us* **in returning, shall return**
 all the evil which we *did* **dealt** unto him.
16 And they *sent a messenger* **misvahed**
 unto *Joseph* **Yoseph**, saying,
 Thy father *did* **command** **misvahed**
 before he died **at the face of his death**, saying,
17 *So* **Thus** shall ye say unto *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
 Forgive **Bear**, I *pray thee now* **O I beseech, I beseech**,
 the *trespass* **rebellion** of thy brethren, and their sin;
 for they *did* **unto** **dealt** thee evil:
 and *now* **I beseech**, we *pray* **beseech** thee,
 forgive **bear** the *trespass* **rebellion**
 of the servants of the *God* **Elohim** of thy father.
 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** wept
 when they *spake* **worded** unto him.
18 And his brethren also
 went and fell down *before* **at** his face;
 and they said, Behold, we be thy servants.
19 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** said unto them, *Fear* **Awe** not:
 for *am* I in the place of *God* **Elohim**?

GENESIS 50

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 My father oathed me, saying, Behold, I die:
 entomb me in the tomb I dug for myself
 in the land of Kenaan:
 and now ascend me, I beseech you,
 to entomb my father; and I return.
6 And Paroh says,
 Ascend and entomb your father,
 according as he oathed you.
7 And Yoseph ascends to entomb his father:
 and all the servants of Paroh ascend with him
 — the elders of his house
 and all the elders of the land of Misrayim
 and all the house of Yoseph
 and his brothers and the house of his father:
8 only their toddlers and their flocks and their oxen
 they leave in the land of Goshen:
9 and both chariots and cavalry ascend with him:
 and the camp is mighty heavy.
10 And they come to the Threshingfloor of Thorns
 beyond Yarden;
 and there they chop
 with a great and mighty heavy chopping:
 and he works a mourning for his father seven days.
11 And when the Kenaaniy who settle the land,
 see the mourning in the Threshingfloor of Thorns,
 they say, This is a heavy mourning to the Misrayim:
 so they call the name thereof Abel Misrayim
 — beyond Yarden.
12 And his sons work to him
 according as he misvahed them:
13 for his sons bear him to the land of Kenaan
 and entomb him in the cave of the field of Machpelah
 which Abraham chatted with the field
 for a possession of a tomb of Ephron the Hethiy,
 at the face of Mamre.
14 And Yoseph returns to Misrayim
 — he and his brothers
 and all who ascended with him to entomb his father
 — after he entombed his father.
15 And when the brothers of Yoseph
 see that their father is dead,
 they say, What if Yoseph opposes us;
 and in returning, returns all the evil we dealt him?
16 And they misvah Yoseph, saying,
 Your father, at the face of his death,
 misvahed, saying,
17 Say thus to Yoseph, Bear, O I beseech, I beseech,
 the rebellion of your brothers and their sin;
 for they dealt you evil:
 and I beseech, we beseech you,
 bear the rebellion
 of the servants of the Elohim of your father.
 — and Yoseph weeps when they word to him.
18 And his brothers also
 go and fall at his face;
 and they say, Behold, we are your servants.
19 And Yoseph says to them, Awe not:
 for am I in the place of Elohim?

GENESIS 50

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

20 But as for you, ye *thought fabricated* evil against me;
but *God meant Elohim fabricated* it unto good,
to *bring to pass in order to work*, as it is this day,
to save **preserve** much people alive.

Romans 8:28

21 Now therefore *fear awe* ye not:
I will **shall** nourish you, and your *little ones toddlers*.
And he *comforted sighed over* them,
and *spake kindly worded unto them their heart*.

22 And *Joseph dwelt Yoseph settled* in *Egypt Misrayim*,
he, and his father's house:
and *Joseph Yoseph* lived an hundred and ten years.

23 And *Joseph Yoseph*
saw *Ephraim's children Ephrayim's sons*
of the third *generation*:
the *children sons* also of Machir
the son of *Manasseh Menash Sheh*
were *brought up birthed* upon *Joseph's Yoseph's* knees.

THE DEATH OF YOSEPH

24 And *Joseph Yoseph* said unto his brethren, I die:
and *God will surely in visiting, Elohim shall* visit you,
and *bring ascend* you out of this land
unto the land which he *sware oathed* to Abraham,
to *Isaac Yischaq*, and to *Jacob Yaaqov*.

25 And *Joseph took an oath of Yoseph oathed*
the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*, saying,
God will surely

26 **In visiting, Elohim shall** visit you,
and ye shall *carry up ascend* my bones from hence.
So *Joseph Yoseph* died,
being a son of an hundred and ten years *old*:
and they embalmed him,
and he was put in a *coffin an ark* in *Egypt Misrayim*.

GENESIS 50

exeGeses companion BIBLE

20 But as for you, you fabricated evil against me;
but Elohim fabricated it to good,
in order to work, as this day,
to preserve many people alive.

Romans 8:28

21 And now, awe not:
I nourish you and your toddlers.
— and he sighs over them and words to their heart.

22 And Yoseph settles in Misrayim
— he and the house of his father
— and Yoseph lives a hundred and ten years.

23 And Yoseph sees the sons of Ephrayim to the third:
also the sons of Machir the son of Menash Sheh
birthed on the knees of Yoseph.

THE DEATH OF YOSEPH

24 And Yoseph says to his brothers, I die:
and in visiting, Elohim visits you
and ascends you from this land
to the land he oathed to Abraham
to Yischaq and to Yaaqov.

25 And Yoseph oaths the sons of Yisra El, saying,
In visiting, Elohim visits you
and you, ascend my bones from here.

26 So Yoseph dies,
a son of a hundred and ten years:
and they embalm him
and put him in an ark in Misrayim.

EXODUS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SONS OF YISRA EL IN MISRAYIM

1 Now **And** these are the names
of the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**,
which came into *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
every man and his household came with *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.
2 *Reuben* **Reu Ben**, *Simeon* **Shimon**,
Levi, and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
3 *Issachar* **Yissachar**, *Zebulun*, and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
4 *Dan*, and *Naphtali*, *Gad*, and *Asher*.
5 And all the souls
that came out of the *loins* **flank** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
were seventy souls:
for *Joseph* **Yoseph** was in *Egypt* **Misrayim** already.
6 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** died,
and all his brethren, and all that generation.
7 And the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**
were fruitful **bore fruit**,
and increased abundantly **teemed**,
and multiplied **abounded**,
and waxed exceeding mighty **mighty mightily mightier**;
and the land was filled with them.
8 Now there arose up a new *king* **sovereign**
over *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
which knew not *Joseph* **Yoseph**.
9 And he said unto his people,
Behold, the people of the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**
are *more* **greater** and mightier than we:
10 Come on **Give**, let us deal wisely with them;
lest they multiply **abound**,
and it come to pass **become**, that,
when there falleth out **we are confronted in** any war,
they join **be added** also
unto *our enemies* **them who hate us**,
and fight against us,
and so get **ascend** them up out of the land.
11 Therefore they did set over them
taskmasters **vassal governors**
to afflict **humble** them with their burdens.
And they built for *Pharaoh* **treasure Paroh storage** cities,
Pithom and *Raamses* **Rameses**.
12 But the more they afflicted **humbled** them,
the more **thus** they multiplied **abounded**
and grew **thus they broke forth**.
And they were grieved **abhorred**
because **at the face** of the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**.
13 And the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
made the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**
to serve with *rigour* **tyranny**:
14 And they made **embittered** their lives *bitter*
with hard *bondage* **service**, in mortar, and in brick,
and in all *manner of* service in the field:
all their service, wherein they made them serve,
was with *rigour* **tyranny**.
15 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
spake **said** to the Hebrew *midwives* **accoucheuses**,
of which the name of the one was Shiphrah,
and the name of the *other* **second** Puah:
16 And he said,
When ye *do the office of a midwife* **accoucheuse**
to the Hebrew women,
and see them upon the *stools* **stones**;
if it be a son, then ye shall *kill* **deathify** him:
but if it be a daughter, then she shall live.
17 But the *midwives* **accoucheuses**
feared God **awed Elohim**,
and *did* **worked** not
as the *king* **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
commanded them **had worded**,
but *saved* **preserved** the *men* children alive.
18 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
called for the *midwives* **accoucheuses**,
and said unto them,
Why have ye *done* **worked** this *thing* **word**,
and have *saved* **preserved** the *men* children alive?
19 And the *midwives* **accoucheuses**
said unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
Because the Hebrew women
are not as the *Egyptian* **Misrayim** women;
for they are lively, and *are delivered* **birth**

EXODUS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SONS OF YISRA EL IN MISRAYIM

1 And these *are* the names of the sons of Yisra El,
coming into Misrayim;
every man and his household coming with Yaaqov:
2 Reu Ben, Shimon, Levi and Yah Hudah,
3 Yissachar, Zebulun and Ben Yamin,
4 Dan and Naphtali, Gad and Asher.
5 And all the souls
coming from the flank of Yaaqov *are* seventy souls:
as for Yoseph, he *is* in Misrayim.
6 And Yoseph
and all his brothers and all that generation die:
7 and the sons of Yisra El bear fruit
and teem and abound mighty mightily mightier;
and they fill the land.
8 And a new sovereign rises over Misrayim,
who knows not Yoseph:
9 and he says to his people,
Behold, the people of the sons of Yisra El
are greater and mightier than we:
10 give, deal wisely with them, lest they abound;
and so be it, when war confronts us,
they also add to them who hate us
and fight against us
and thus ascend from the land.
11 And they set vassal governors over them
to humble them with their burdens:
and they build storage cities for Paroh,
Pithom and Rameses:
12 and the more they humble them,
thus they abound and thus they break forth:
and they *are* abhorred
at the face of the sons of Yisra El.
13 And the Misrayim
have the sons of Yisra El serve with tyranny:
14 and they embitter their lives with hard service,
in mortar and in brick and in all service in the field:
all their service, wherein they have them serve,
is with tyranny.
15 And the sovereign of Misrayim
says to the Hebrew accoucheuses,
of which the name of the one *is* Shiphrah
and the name of the second Puah:
16 and he says,
When you accoucheuse to the Hebrews
and see them on the stones;
if it be a son, deathify him:
but if it be a daughter, she lives.
17 But the accoucheuses awe Elohim
and work not as the sovereign of Misrayim words;
but preserve the children alive.
18 And the sovereign of Misrayim
calls for the accoucheuses
and says to them, Why work you this word
and preserve the children alive?
19 And the accoucheuses say to Paroh,
Because the Hebrews
are not as the Misrayim women;
for they *are* lively and birth

EXODUS 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

ere the *midwives accoucheuses* come in unto them.
20 Therefore *God dealt well Elohim was well—pleased*
with the *midwives accoucheuses*:
and the people *multiplied abounded*,
and waxed very *mighty mighty mightier*.
21 And *so be it came to pass*,
because the *midwives accoucheuses*
feared God awed Elohim,
that he *made worked* them houses.
22 And *Pharaoh charged Paroh misvahed* all his people,
saying,
Every son that is *born birthed* ye shall cast into the river,
and every daughter ye shall *save preserve* alive.

BIRTH OF MOSHEH

2 And there went a man of the house of Levi,
and took to *wife* a daughter of Levi.
2 And the woman conceived, and *bare birthed* a son:
and when she saw him that he was a goodly *child*,
she hid him three *months moons*.
3 And when she could not *longer still* hide him,
she took for him an ark of bulrushes,
and daubed it with *slime bitumin* and with *pitch asphalt*,
and put the child therein;
and she *laid put* it in the *flags reeds*
by the river's *brink edge*.
4 And his sister stood afar off,
to *wit perceive*
what *would should* be *done worked* to him.
5 And the daughter of *Pharaoh Paroh*
came down descended to *wash bathe* herself at the river;
and her maidens walked along by the river's *side hand*;
and when she saw the ark among the *flags reeds*,
she sent her maid to *fetch take* it.
6 And when she had opened it, she saw the child:
and, behold, the *babe lad* wept.
And she had compassion on him, and said,
This is *one of the Hebrews' children*.
7 Then said his sister to *Pharaoh's Paroh's* daughter,
shall I go and call to thee a *nurse woman suckler*
of the Hebrew *women*,
that she may *nurse suckle* the child for thee?
8 And *Pharaoh's Paroh's* daughter said to her, Go.
And the *maid virgin* went and called the child's mother.
9 And *Pharaoh's Paroh's* daughter said unto her,
Take Carry this child away, and *nurse suckle* it for me,
and I *will shall* give thee thy *wages hire*.
10 And the woman took the child, and *nursed suckled* it.
And the child grew,
and she brought him unto *Pharaoh's Paroh's* daughter,
and he became her son.
And she called his name *Moses Mosheh*:
and she said, Because I drew him out of the water.

MOSHEH SMITES A MISRAYIM

11 And *so be it came to pass* in those days,
when *Moses Mosheh* was grown,
that he went out unto his brethren,
and *looked on saw* their burdens:
and he *spied an Egyptian saw a man — a Misrayim*
smiting a *man* — an Hebrew, one of his brethren.
12 And he *looked this way faced thus* and *that way thus*,
and when he saw *that there was* no man,
he *slew smote* the *Egyptian Misrayim*,
and *hid buried* him in the sand.
13 And when he went out the second day,
behold, two men of the Hebrews strove together:
and he said to *him that did the wrong the wicked*,
Wherefore smitest thou thy *fellow friend*?
14 And he said, Who *made set* thee
a *prince man — a governor* and a judge over us?
intendest sayest thou to *kill slaughter* me,
as thou *killedst slaughteredst* the *Egyptian Misrayim*?
And *Moses feared Mosheh awed*, and said,
Surely this *thing word* is known.

EXODUS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

ere the accoucheuses come in to them.
20 And Elohim is well—pleased
with the accoucheuses:
and the people abound mighty mightily mightier.
21 And so be it,
because the accoucheuses awe Elohim,
that he works them houses.
22 And Paroh misvahs all his people, saying,
Every son you birth, cast into the river
and every daughter, preserve alive.

BIRTH OF MOSHEH

2 And a man of the house of Levi
goes and takes a daughter of Levi;
2 and the woman conceives and births a son:
and when she sees he is goodly
she hides him three moons:
3 and when she cannot still hide him
she takes for him an ark of bulrushes
and daubs it with bitumin and with asphalt
and puts the child therein;
4 and she puts it in the reeds by the edge of the river:
and his sister stands afar off
to perceive what is worked to him.
5 And the daughter of Paroh
descends to bathe herself at the river;
and her maidens walk along by the hand of the river;
and when she sees the ark among the reeds
she sends her maid to take it;
6 and opens it and sees him — the child:
and behold, the lad weeps:
and she has compassion on him, and says,
This is of the children of the Hebrews.
7 Then his sister says to the daughter of Paroh,
Go I and call a woman suckler of the Hebrews
to suckle the child for you?
8 And the daughter of Paroh says to her, Go.
— and the virgin goes
and calls the mother of the child.
9 And the daughter of Paroh says to her,
Carry this child and suckle it for me
and I give you your hire.
— and the woman takes the child and suckles it.
10 And the child grows
and she brings him to the daughter of Paroh
and he becomes her son:
and she calls his name Mosheh:
and she says,
Because I drew him from the water.

MOSHEH SMITES A MISRAYIM

11 And so be it, in those days,
Mosheh grows up;
and he goes out to his brothers
and sees their burdens:
and he sees a man — a Misrayim
smiting a man — a Hebrew, one of his brothers:
12 and he faces thus and thus and sees no man;
and he smites the Misrayim
and buries him in the sand.
13 And he goes out the second day, and behold,
two men of the Hebrews striving together:
and he says to the wicked, Why smite your friend?
14 And he says,
Who set you for a man governor and a judge over us?
Say you to slaughter me
as you slaughtered the Misrayim?
And Mosheh awes and says,
Surely this word is known.

EXODUS 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 Now when Pharaoh Paroh heard this thing,
he sought to slay Moses slaughter Mosheh.
But Moses Mosheh fled from the face of Pharaoh Paroh,
and dwelt settled in the land of Midian Midyan:
and he sat down by a well.

16 Now the priest of Midian Midyan had seven daughters:
and they came and drew water bailed,
and filled the troughs to water moisten their father's flock.

17 And the shepherds tenders came
and drove expelled them away:
but Moses stood up Mosheh rose and helped saved them,
and watered moistened their flock.

18 And when they came to Reuel Reu El their father,
he said, How is it
that ye are come so soon have hastened to come to day?

19 And they said, An Egyptian A man — a Misrayim
delivered rescued us
out of the hand of the shepherds tenders,
and also drew water enough
in bailing, he also bailed for us,
and watered moistened the flock.

20 And he said unto his daughters,
And where is he? why is it that ye have left the man?
call him, that he may eat bread.

21 And Moses was content Mosheh willed
to dwell settle with the man:
and he gave Moses Mosheh
Zipporah Sipporah his daughter.

22 And she bare birthed him a son,
and he called his name Gershom:
for he said,
I have been a stranger sojourner in a strange land.

23 And so be it came to pass
in process of time those many days,
that the king sovereign of Egypt Misrayim died:
and the children sons of Israel Yisra El sighed
by reason because of the bondage service, and they cried,
and their cry came up ascended unto God Elohim
by reason because of the bondage service.

24 And God Elohim heard their groaning,
and God Elohim remembered his covenant
with Abraham, with Isaac Yischaq,
and with Jacob Yaaqov.

25 And God Elohim
looked upon saw the children sons of Israel Yisra El,
and God had respect unto them Elohim perceived.

THE BURNING BUSH

3 Now Moses kept Mosheh tended the flock
of Jethro Yithro his father in law,
the priest of Midian Midyan:
and he led drove the flock
to the backside of the desert wilderness,
and came to the mountain of God Elohim, even to Horeb.

2 And the angel of the LORD Yah Veh
appeared unto was seen by him
in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush:
and he looked saw, and, behold,
the bush burned kindled with fire,
and the bush was not consumed.

3 And Moses Mosheh said,
I will now Let me, I beseech thee, turn aside,
and see this great sight visage,
why the bush is not burnt consumed.

4 And when the LORD Yah Veh
saw that he turned aside to see,
God Elohim called unto him out of the midst of the bush,
and said, Moses Mosheh, Moses Mosheh.
And he said, Here am — I.

5 And he said, Draw Approach not nigh hither:
put off thy shoes from off thy feet,
for the place whereon thou standest is holy ground soil.

6 Moreover he said, I am the God I — Elohim of thy father,
the God Elohim of Abraham,
the God Elohim of Isaac Yischaq,
and the God Elohim of Jacob Yaaqov.
And Moses Mosheh hid his face;
for he was afraid awed to look upon God Elohim.

7 And the LORD Yah Veh said,
In seeing, I have surely seen

EXODUS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 And Paroh hears of this
and seeks to slaughter Mosheh.
and Mosheh flees from the face of Paroh
and settles in the land of Midyan
— and he sits by a well.

16 And the priest of Midyan has seven daughters:
and they come and bail
and fill the troughs to moisten the flock of their father:

17 and the tenders come and expel them:
and Mosheh rises and saves them
and moistens their flock.

18 And they come to Reu El their father, and he says,
How is it that you hasten to come today?

19 And they say, A man — a Misrayim rescued us
from the hand of the tenders
and in bailing, he also bailed for us
and moistened the flock.

20 And he says to his daughters,
And where is he? Why is this, that you leave the man?
Call him to eat bread.

21 And Mosheh wills to settle with the man;
and he gives Mosheh Sipporah his daughter:
and she births a son
and he calls his name Gershom:
for he says, I become a sojourner in a strange land.

23 And so be it, in these many days,
the sovereign of Misrayim dies:
and the sons of Yisra El sigh because of the service;
and they cry because of the service
and their cry ascends to Elohim:
and Elohim hears their groaning
and Elohim remembers his covenant with Abraham
with Yischaq and with Yaaqov:
and Elohim sees the sons of Yisra El
and Elohim perceives.

THE BURNING BUSH

3 And Mosheh tends the flock of Yithro his in law
the priest of Midyan:
and he drives the flock
to the backside of the wilderness
and comes to the mountain of Elohim — to Horeb.

2 And the angel of Yah Veh appears to him
in a flame of fire from midst a bush:
and he sees and behold, the bush kindles with fire,
and the bush is not consumed.

3 And Mosheh says, I turn aside, I beseech you,
see this great visage
— why the bush is not consumed.

4 And Yah Veh sees he turns aside to see,
and Elohim calls to him from midst the bush,
and says, Mosheh! Mosheh!

And he says, Here — I.

5 And he says, Approach not here:
put your shoes off your feet;
for the place whereon you stand is holy soil.

6 And he says,
I — Elohim of your father; Elohim of Abraham;
Elohim of Yischaq and Elohim of Yaaqov.

And Mosheh hides his face;
for he awes to look on Elohim.

7 And Yah Veh says,
In seeing, I see

EXODUS 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the affliction **humiliation** of my people
 which are in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
 and have heard their cry
 by reason **at the face** of their *taskmasters* **extractors**;
 for I know their sorrows;

8 And I *am* come down **descend** to deliver them
 out of the hand of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
 and to *bring* **ascend** them up out of that land
 unto a good land and a large **broad**,
 unto a land flowing with milk and honey;
 unto the place of the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
 and the *Hittites* **Hethiy**, and the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
 and the *Perizzites* **Perizziy**, and the *Hivites* **Hivviy**,
 and the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**.

9 Now therefore, behold,
 the cry of the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
 is come unto me:
 and I have also seen the oppression
 wherewith the *Egyptians* **Misrayim** oppress them.

10 Come **Go** now therefore,
 and I *will* **shall** send thee unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
 that thou mayest bring forth my people
 the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.

11 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto *God* **Elohim**,
 Who am I, that I should go unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
 and that I should bring forth
 the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**?

12 **ELOHIM REVEALS HIMSELF AS I AM WHO I AM**
 And he said,
Certainly I will be **For this cause I AM** with thee;
 and this shall be a *token* **the sign** unto thee,
 that I have sent thee:
 When thou hast brought forth the people
 out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
 ye shall serve *God* **Elohim** upon this mountain.

13 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto *God* **Elohim**, Behold,
 when I come unto the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
 and shall say unto them,
 The *God* **Elohim** of your fathers hath sent me unto you;
 and they shall say to me, What is his name?
 what shall I say unto them?

14 And *God* **Elohim** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
 I AM **THAT WHO I AM**:
 and he said,
 Thus shalt thou say
 unto the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
 I AM hath sent me unto you.

Read Yahn 8:58

15 And *God* **Elohim**
 said *moreover* **again** unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
 Thus shalt thou say
 unto the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
 The *LORD* *God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of your fathers,
 the *God* **Elohim** of Abraham,
 the *God* **Elohim** of *Isaac* **Yischaq**,
 and the *God* **Elohim** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
 hath sent me unto you:
 this is my name *for ever* **eternally**,
 and this is my memorial
 unto all *generations* **generation to generation**.

16 Go, and gather the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El** together,
 and say unto them,
 The *LORD* *God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of your fathers,
 the *God* **Elohim** of Abraham,
 of *Isaac* **Yischaq**, and of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
 appeared unto **was seen by** me, saying,
In visiting, I have *surely* visited you,
 and seen that which is *done* **worked** to you
 in *Egypt* **Misrayim**:

17 And I have said, I *will bring* **shall ascend** you up
 out of the affliction **humiliation** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
 unto the land of the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
 and the *Hittites* **Hethiy**, and the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
 and the *Perizzites* **Perizziy**, and the *Hivites* **Hivviy**,
 and the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**,
 unto a land flowing with milk and honey.

18 And they shall hearken to thy voice:
 and thou shalt come,
 thou and the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**,

EXODUS 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the humiliation of my people
 in Misrayim
 and hear their cry at the face of their exactors;
 for I know their sorrows;
 and I descend to deliver them
 from the hand of the Misrayim
 — ascend them from that land
 to a good and broad land
 to a land flowing with milk and honey;
 to the place of the Kenaaniy and the Hethiy
 and the Emoriy and the Perizziy
 and the Hivviy and the Yebusiy;

8 and now, behold,
 the cry of the sons of Yisra El comes to me:
 and I also see the oppression
 wherewith the Misrayim oppress them.

9 Go now, and I send you to Paroh,
 to bring forth my people the sons of Yisra El
 from Misrayim.

10 And Mosheh says to Elohim,
 Who *am* I, to go to Paroh
 and bring forth the sons of Yisra El from Misrayim?

ELOHIM REVEALS HIMSELF AS I AM WHO I AM

11 And he says, For this cause I AM with you;
 and this *is* your sign, that I sent you:
 In bringing the people from Misrayim,
 you serve Elohim on this mountain.

12 And Mosheh says to Elohim, Behold,
 I come to the sons of Yisra El and say to them,
 The Elohim of your fathers has sent me to you;
 and they say to me, What *is* his name?
 What say I to them?

13 And Elohim says to Mosheh,
 I AM who I AM:
 and he says, Say thus to the sons of Yisra El,
 I AM sent me to you.

Read Yahn 8:58

14 And again Elohim says to Mosheh,
 Say thus to the sons of Yisra El,
 Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers, Elohim of Abraham,
 Elohim of Yischaq and Elohim of Yaaqov,
 sends me to you:
 this *is* my name eternally
 and this *is* my memorial generation to generation.

15 Go and gather the elders of Yisra El
 and say to them,
 Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers, Elohim of Abraham,
 of Yischaq and of Yaaqov, was seen by me, saying,
 In visiting, I visit you,
 — what *is* worked to you in Misrayim:
 and I say,
 I ascend you from the humiliation of Misrayim
 to the land of the Kenaaniy and the Hethiy
 and the Emoriy and the Perizziy
 and the Hivviy and the Yebusiy
 — to a land flowing with milk and honey.

16 And they hearken to your voice:
 and you come — you and the elders of Yisra El,

EXODUS 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

unto the king **sovereign** of Egypt **Misrayim**,
and ye shall say unto him,
The **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of the Hebrews
hath met with **happened upon** us:
and now let us go, we beseech thee,
three days' journey into the wilderness,
that we may sacrifice
to the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**.
19 And I am sure
that the king **sovereign** of Egypt **Misrayim**
will **shall** not let **give** you to go,
no, not by a **mighty strong** hand.
20 And I will stretch out **shall spread** my hand,
and smite Egypt **Misrayim** with all my **wonders marvels**
which I will do **shall work** in the midst thereof:
and after that he will let **shall send** you go away.
21 And I will **shall** give this people **favour charism**
in the **sight eyes** of the **Egyptians Misrayim**:
and **so be** it shall come to pass,
that, when ye go, ye shall not go empty:
22 But every woman shall **borrow ask**
of her **neighbour fellow tabernacler**,
and of her that sojourneth in her house,
jewels instruments of silver,
and **jewels instruments** of gold,
and **raiment clothes**:
and ye shall put them upon your sons,
and upon your daughters;
and ye shall **spoil strip** the **Egyptians Misrayim**.

THE SIGNS OF YAH VEH TO MOSHEH

4 And **Moses Mosheh** answered and said,
But, behold, they will **shall** not believe **trust** me,
nor hearken unto my voice: for they will **shall** say,
The **LORD Yah Veh**
hath not **appeared unto** **been seen** by thee.
2 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto him,
What is that in thine hand?
3 And he said, A rod.
And he said, Cast it on the **ground earth**.
And he cast it on the **ground earth**,
and it became a serpent;
and **Moses Mosheh** fled from **before the face** of it.
4 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto **Moses Mosheh**,
Put forth **Spread** thine hand, and **take hold** it by the tail.
And he put forth **spread** his hand, and **caught held** it,
and it became a rod in his **hand palm**:
5 That they may believe **trust**
that the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of their fathers,
the **God Elohim** of Abraham,
the **God Elohim** of Isaac **Yischaq**,
and the **God Elohim** of Jacob **Yaaqov**,
hath **appeared unto** **been seen** by thee.
6 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said **furthermore again** unto him,
Put now **I beseech thee**, thine hand into thy bosom.
And he put his hand into his bosom:
and when he took it out, behold,
his hand was leprous as snow.
7 And he said,
Put **Return** thine hand into thy bosom **again**.
And he put **returned** his hand into his bosom **again**;
and plucked it out of his bosom, and, behold,
it was **turned again returned** as his **other** flesh.
8 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
if they will **shall** not believe **trust** thee,
neither hearken to the voice of the first sign,
that they will believe **shall trust** the voice of the latter sign.
9 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
if they will **shall** not believe **trust** also these two signs,
neither hearken unto thy voice,
that thou shalt take of the water of the river,
and pour it upon the **dry land**:
and the water which thou takest out of the river
shall become blood upon the **dry land**:
10 And **Moses Mosheh** said unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
O my **Lord Adonay**, I am not **eloquent a man of words**,
neither **heretofore for three yesters ago**,
nor since thou hast **spoken worded** unto thy servant:
but I am **slow heavy** of **speech mouth**,
and of a **slow heavy** tongue.

EXODUS 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to the sovereign of Misrayim, and say to him,
Yah Veh Elohim of the Hebrews has happened on us:
and now let us go, we beseech you,
a journey of three days into the wilderness
to sacrifice to Yah Veh our Elohim.
19 And I — I know that the sovereign of Misrayim
gives that you not go — no, not by a strong hand.
20 And I spread my hand
and smite Misrayim with all the marvels
I work in their midst:
and after that he sends you away.
21 And I give this people charism
in the eyes of the Misrayim:
and so be it, when you go, you not go empty:
22 but every woman asks of her fellow tabernacler
and of her who sojourns in her house,
instruments of silver and instruments of gold
and clothes:
and put them on your sons and on your daughters;
and you strip the Misrayim.

THE SIGNS OF YAH VEH TO MOSHEH

4 And Mosheh answers and says,
And behold, they neither trust me,
nor hearken to my voice:
for they say, Yah Veh was not seen by you.
2 And Yah Veh says to him,
What is that in your hand?
And he says, A rod.
3 And he says, Cast it on the earth.
— and he casts it on the earth
and it becomes a serpent;
and Mosheh flees from its face.
4 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Spread your hand and hold it by the tail.
— and he spreads his hand and holds it
and it becomes a rod in his palm:
5 so that they trust
that Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers,
Elohim of Abraham, Elohim of Yischaq
and Elohim of Yaaqov was seen by you.
6 And again Yah Veh says to him,
Put, I beseech you, your hand into your bosom.
— and he puts his hand into his bosom:
and when he takes it out, behold,
his hand is leprous as snow.
7 And he says,
Return your hand into your bosom.
— and he returns his hand into his bosom;
and plucks it from his bosom
and behold, it returns as his flesh.
8 And so be it, if they neither trust you,
nor hearken to the voice of the first sign,
that they trust the voice of the latter sign:
9 and so be it,
if they neither trust also these two signs,
nor hearken to your voice,
then take of the water of the river
and pour it on the dry:
and the water you take from the river
becomes blood on the dry.
10 And Mosheh says to Yah Veh,
O my Adonay, I am not a man of words
— neither for three yesters ago
nor since you have worded to your servant:
but I am heavy of mouth and heavy of tongue.

EXODUS 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 11 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto him,
Who hath *made man's* **set the human** mouth?
or who *maketh* **setteth** the *dumb* **mute**, or deaf,
or the *seeing* **open—eyed**, or the blind?
have not I *the* **LORD Yah Veh**?
- 12 Now therefore go, and I *will* **shall** be with thy mouth,
and *teach* **direct** thee what thou shalt say **word**.
- 13 And he said, O my *Lord* **Adonay**,
send, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
by the hand of him whom thou *wilt* **shalt** send.
- 14 And the *anger* **wrath** of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
was kindled against *Moses* **Mosheh**, and he said,
Is not *Aaron* **Aharon** the *Levite* **Levy** thy brother?
I know that **in wording**, he can *speak* **word** well.
And also, behold, he cometh forth to meet thee:
and when he seeth thee,
he *will be glad* **shall cheer** in his heart.
- 15 And thou shalt *speak* **word** unto him,
and put words in his mouth:
and I *will* **shall** be with thy mouth, and with his mouth,
and *will teach* **shall direct** you what ye shall *do* **work**.
- 16 And he shall *be thy spokesman* **word for thee**
unto the people:
and he shall be,
even he shall be to thee
instead in the stead of a mouth,
and thou shalt be to him
instead in the stead of *God* **Elohim**.
- 17 And thou shalt take this rod in thine hand,
wherewith thou shalt *do* **work** signs.
- 18 And *Moses* **Mosheh** went
and returned to *Jethro* **Yithro** his *father* in law,
and said unto him, Let me go, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
and return unto my brethren
which are in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and see whether they be *yet* **still** alive.
And *Jethro* **Yithro** said to *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Go in *peace* **shalom**.
- 19 And *the* **LORD Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**
in *Midian* **Midyan**,
Go, return into *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
for all the men are dead which sought thy *life* **soul**.
- 20 And *Moses* **Mosheh** took his *wife* **woman** and his sons,
and *set* **rode** them upon *an ass* a **he burro**,
and he returned to the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
and *Moses* **Mosheh** took the rod of *God* **Elohim**
in his hand.
- 21 And *the* **LORD Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
When thou goest to return into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
see that thou *do* **work** all those *wonders* **omens**
before Pharaoh **at the face of Paroh**,
which I have put in thine hand:
but I *will harden* **shall callous** his heart,
that he shall not *let* **send** the people *go* **away**.
- 22 And thou shalt say unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
Thus saith *the* **LORD Yah Veh**,
Israel **Yisra El** is my son, *even my firstborn* **firstbirthed**:
- 23 And I say unto thee, *Let* **Send** my son *go* **away**,
that he may serve me:
and if thou refuse to *let* **send** him *go* **away**,
behold, I *will slay* **shall slaughter** thy son,
even thy firstborn **firstbirthed**.
- 24 And **so be** it *came to pass*
by the way in the *inn* **lodge**,
that *the* **LORD Yah Veh** met him,
and sought to *kill* **deathify** him.
- 25 Then *Zipporah* **Sipporah** took a sharp stone,
and cut off the foreskin of her son,
and *cast it at* **that it touched** his feet, and said,
Surely a bloody *husband* **groom** art thou to me.
- 26 So he *let* **sent** him *go* **away**:
then she said, A bloody *husband* **groom** *thou art*,
because of the circumcision.
- 27 And *the* **LORD Yah Veh** said to *Aaron* **Aharon**,
Go into the wilderness to meet *Moses* **Mosheh**.
And he went, and met him in the mount of *God* **Elohim**,
and kissed him.
- 28 And *Moses* **Mosheh** told *Aaron* **Aharon**
all the words of *the* **LORD Yah Veh** who had sent him,

EXODUS 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 11 And Yah Veh says to him,
Who set the human mouth?
Or who set the mute, or deaf,
or the open—eyed, or the blind?
Have not I — Yah Veh?
- 12 Now go and I — I am with your mouth
and direct you what to word.
- 13 And he says, O my Adonay, send, I beseech you,
by the hand of him whom you send.
- 14 And the wrath of Yah Veh
kindles against Mosheh, and he says,
Is not Aharon the Leviy your brother?
I know that in wording, he words well:
and also, behold, he comes to meet you:
and when he sees you, he cheers in his heart.
and you word to him and put words in his mouth:
and I — I am with your mouth and with his mouth
and direct you what to work.
- 16 And he words for you to the people:
and he becomes to you in the stead of a mouth
and you become to him in the stead of Elohim:
and take this rod in your hand
wherewith you work signs.
- 18 And Mosheh goes and returns to Yithro his in law,
and says to him, Let me go, I beseech you,
and return to my brothers in Misrayim
and see whether they are still alive.
- And Yithro says to Mosheh, Go in shalom.
- 19 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh in Midyan,
Go, return into Misrayim:
for all the men who sought your soul have died.
- 20 And Mosheh takes his woman and his sons
and rides them on a he burro
and he returns to the land of Misrayim:
and Mosheh takes the rod of Elohim in his hand.
- 21 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
When you go to return into Misrayim,
see that you work all those omens
I put in your hand
at the face of Paroh:
but I callous his heart
that he not send the people away.
- 22 And you say to Paroh, Thus says Yah Veh:
Yisra El is my son — my firstbirth:
and I say to you,
Send my son away, that he serve me:
and if you refuse to send him away,
behold, I slaughter your son — your firstbirth.
- 24 And so be it, on the way, in the lodge,
Yah Veh meets him
and seeks to deathify him.
- 25 Then Sipporah takes a sharp stone
and cuts off the foreskin of her son,
so that it touches his feet and says,
Surely a bloody groom are you to me.
— and he sends him away.
- 26 Then she says, A bloody groom,
because of the circumcision.
- 27 And Yah Veh says to Aharon,
Go into the wilderness to meet Mosheh.
— and he goes and meets him in the mount of Elohim
and kisses him.
- 28 And Mosheh tells Aharon
all the words that Yah Veh sent him

EXODUS 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and all the signs
which he had *commanded* **misvahed** him.
29 And Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon** went
and gathered *together*
all the elders of the *children* **sons** of **Israél Yisra El**:
30 And Aaron *spake* **Aharon worded** all the words
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had *spoken* **worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**,
and *did* **worked** the signs in the *sight* **eyes** of the people.
31 And the people *believed* **trusted**:
and when they heard that *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
had visited the *children* **sons** of **Israél Yisra El**,
and that he had
looked upon **seen** their *affliction* **humiliation**,
then they bowed *their heads* and *worshipped* **prostrated**.

MOSHEH AND AHARON AT THE FACE OF PAROH

5 And afterward
Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon** went in,
and told *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
Thus saith *the LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim**
of **Israél Yisra El**,
Let **Send** my people *go away*,
that they may *hold a feast* **celebrate** unto me
in the wilderness.
2 And *Pharaoh* **Paroh** said, Who is *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that I should *obey* **hear** his voice
to let **Israél** go **send Yisra El away**?
I know not *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
neither will I let **Israél** go **shall I send Yisra El away**.
3 And they said,
The God **Elohim** of the Hebrews hath met with us:
let us go, we *pray* **beseech** thee,
three days' journey into the *desert* **wilderness**,
and sacrifice unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**;
lest he *fall upon* **encounter** us with pestilence,
or with the sword.
4 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
said unto them,
Wherefore do ye, *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon**,
let **expel** the people from their works?
get you **go ye** unto your burdens.
5 And *Pharaoh* **Paroh** said, Behold,
the people of the land now are many,
and ye make them *rest* **shabbathize** from their burdens.
6 And *Pharaoh* **commanded** **Paroh misvahed** the same day
the *taskmasters* **exactors** of the people, and their officers,
saying,
7 Ye shall *no more* **not again**
give the people straw to make brick,
as *heretofore* **three yesters ago**:
let them go and gather straw for themselves.
8 And the *tale* **quantity** of the bricks,
which they *did make heretofore* **worked three yesters ago**,
ye shall *lay* **set** upon them;
ye shall not diminish *ought* thereof for they be *idle* **lazy**;
therefore they cry, saying,
Let us go and sacrifice to our *God* **Elohim**.
9 Let *there more work* **the service**
be *laid* **heavy** upon the men,
that they may *labour* **work** therein;
and let them not *regard vain* **look unto false** words.
10 And the *taskmasters* **exactors** of the people went out,
and their officers,
and they *spake* **said** to the people, saying,
Thus saith *Pharaoh* **Paroh**, I will **shall** not give you straw.
11 Go ye, get **take** you straw where ye can find it:
yet not ought **that no word** of your *work* **service**
shall be diminished.
12 So the people were scattered abroad
throughout all the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
to gather stubble instead of straw.
13 And the *taskmasters* **exactors** hastened them, saying,
Fulfil **Finish** your works,
your *daily tasks* **day by day words**,
as when there was **became** straw.
14 And the officers of the *children* **sons** of **Israél Yisra El**,
which *Pharaoh's* **taskmasters** **Paroh's exactors**
had set over them,
were *beaten* **smitten**, and *demand* **saying**,

EXODUS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and all the signs he misvahed him:
29 and Mosheh and Aharon
go and gather all the elders of the sons of Yisra El:
30 and Aharon words all the words
Yah Veh worded to Mosheh
and works the signs in the eyes of the people:
31 and the people trust:
and when they hear
that Yah Veh visits the sons of Yisra El
and that he sees their humiliation,
they bow and prostrate.

MOSHEH AND AHARON AT THE FACE OF PAROH

5 And afterward Mosheh and Aharon
go in and tell Paroh,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
Send my people away,
to celebrate to me in the wilderness.
2 And Paroh says, Who *is* Yah Veh,
that I hear his voice to send Yisra El away?
I neither know Yah Veh nor send I Yisra El away.
3 And they say, Elohim of the Hebrews met with us:
let us go, we beseech you,
a journey of three days into the wilderness
and sacrifice to Yah Veh our Elohim;
lest he encounter us
with pestilence or with the sword.
4 And the sovereign of Misrayim says to them,
Why do you, Mosheh and Aharon,
expel the people from their works?
Go to your burdens.
5 And Paroh says, Behold,
the people of the land now *are* many
and you shabbathize them from their burdens.
6 And the same day,
Paroh misvahs the exactors of the people
and their officers, saying,
7 Never again give the people straw for brickmaking,
as three yesters ago:
let them go and gather straw for themselves:
and set on them the quantity of bricks
they worked three yesters ago:
diminish naught thereof, for they are lazy:
so they cry, saying,
Let us go and sacrifice to our Elohim.
9 Let the service be heavy on the men and their work;
and look not to false words.
10 And the exactors and the officers of the people
go out and say to the people, saying,
Thus says Paroh, I give you no straw.
11 You — you go: take straw where you find it:
that no word of your service diminishes.
12 — and the people scatter
throughout all the land of Misrayim
to gather stubble instead of straw.
13 And the exactors hasten them, saying,
Finish your works, your day by day words,
as when there is straw.
14 And the officers of the sons of Yisra El,
whom the exactors of Paroh set over them,
are smitten, saying,

EXODUS 5, 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

Wherefore have ye not **fulfilled finished** your task **statute**
in making brick both yesterday and to day,
as **heretofore three yesters ago?**

15 Then the officers of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*
came and cried unto *Pharaoh Paroh*, saying,
Wherefore **dealest workest** thou thus with thy servants?

16 There is no straw given unto thy servants,
and they say to us, **Make Work** brick:
and, behold, thy servants are **beaten smitten**;
but the **fault sin** is in thine own people.

17 But he said, *Ye are idle Lazy, ye are idle lazy:*
therefore ye say,
Let us go and **do sacrifice to the LORD Yah Veh**.
18 Go therefore now, **and work serve**;
for there shall no straw be given you,
yet shall ye **deliver give the tale gauge** of bricks.

19 And the officers of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*
did see that they were in evil **case**, after it was said,
Ye shall not **minish ought diminish**
from your bricks of your **daily task day by day word**.

20 And they **met encountered**
Moses Mosheh and *Aaron Aharon*,
who **stood stationed themselves**
in the way to confront them,
as they came forth from *Pharaoh Paroh*:
21 And they said unto them,
The LORD look upon you Yah Veh see thee, and judge;
because ye have
made our savour to be abhorred stunk our scent
in the eyes of *Pharaoh Paroh*,
and in the eyes of his servants,
to **put give** a sword in their hand to **slay slaughter** us.

22 And *Moses Mosheh* returned unto the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and said, *Lord Adonay*,
wherefore hast thou *so evil entreated vilified* this people?
why is it that thou hast sent me?

23 For since I came to *Pharaoh Paroh*
to **speak word** in thy name,
he hath *done evil to vilified* this people;
neither hast thou delivered thy people at all
in rescuing, thou hast not rescued thy people.

6 Then the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto *Moses Mosheh*,
Now shalt thou see
what I **will do shall work** to *Pharaoh Paroh*:
for with a strong hand
shall he **let send** them **go away**,
and with a strong hand
shall he **drive expel** them out of his land.

2 And *God spake Elohim worded* unto *Moses Mosheh*,
and said unto him, *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*:
3 And I **appeared unto was seen by** Abraham,
unto Isaac **by Yischaq**, and unto Jacob **by Yaaqov**,
by the name of God Almighty as El Shadday,
but by my name **JEHOVAH Yah Veh**
was I not known to them.

4 And I have also **established raised** my covenant
with them,
to give them the land of *Canaan Kanaan*,
the land of their **pilgrimage sojournings**,
wherein they **were strangers sojourned**.

5 And I have also heard the groaning
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
whom the *Egyptians Misrayim*
keep in bondage cause to serve;
and I have remembered my covenant.

6 Wherefore say **Say thus**
unto the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh,
and I **will shall** bring you out
from under the burdens of the *Egyptians Misrayim*,
and I **will rid shall rescue** you
out of their **bondage service**,
and I **will shall** redeem you
with a **stretched out spread** arm,
and with great judgments:

7 And I **will shall** take you to me **for** — a people,
and I **will shall** be to you a **God — Elohim**:
and ye shall know
that I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your **God Elohim**,

EXODUS 5, 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Why finish you not your statute of brickmaking
both yesterday and today, as three yesters ago?

15 Then the officers of the sons of Yisra El
come and cry to Paroh, saying,
Why work you thus with your servants?
16 They give no straw to your servants
and they say to us, Work brick!
And behold, your servants are smitten;
but the sin *is* in your own people.

17 And he says, Lazy, lazy:
so you say,
Let us go and sacrifice to Yah Veh.
18 And now, go; serve:
and no straw is given you:
yet you give the gauge of bricks.

19 And the officers of the sons of Yisra El
see that they *are* in evil, saying,
Diminish not bricks of your day by day word.

20 And they encounter Mosheh and Aharon
who station themselves
to confront them as they come from Paroh:
21 and they say to them,
Yah Veh see you and judge!
Because you stink our scent
in the eyes of Paroh and in the eyes of his servants
to give a sword in their hand to slaughter us.

22 And Mosheh returns to Yah Veh and says,
Adonay, Why vilify you this people?
Why send you me?

23 For since I come to Paroh to word in your name,
he vilifies this people;
in rescuing, you rescue not your people.

6 Then Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Now you see what I work to Paroh:
for with a strong hand he sends them away
and with a strong hand he expels them from his land.

2 And Elohim words to Mosheh
and says to him, I — Yah Veh:
3 and I was seen
by Abraham, by Yischaq and by Yaaqov
as El Shadday;
but I was not known to them by my name Yah Veh:
4 and I also raised my covenant with them
to give them the land of Kanaan
— the land of their sojournings
wherein they sojourn:
5 and I also heard the groaning of the sons of Yisra El
whom the Misrayim serve:
and I remember my covenant.

6 Say thus to the sons of Yisra El,
I — Yah Veh and I bring you out
from under the burdens of the Misrayim:
and I rescue you from their service
and I redeem you with spread arm
and with great judgments:
7 and I take you to me — a people
and I — to you — Elohim:
and you know — I — Yah Veh your Elohim,

EXODUS 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which bringeth you out
from under the burdens of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**.
8 And I *will shall* bring you in unto the land,
concerning the which I *did swear* **lifted my hand**
to give it to Abraham,
to *Isaac* **Yischaq**, and to *Jacob* **Yaaqov**;
and I *will shall* give it you for *an heritage* **a possession**:
I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh**.
9 And *Moses spake so* **Mosheh worded thus**
unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
but they hearkened not unto *Moses* **Mosheh**
for *anguish* **shortness** of spirit,
and for *cruel bondage* **hard service**.
10 And *the LORD spake* **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
11 Go in, *speak word* unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
king sovereign of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
that he *let* **send**
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* go **Yisra El away** out of his land.
12 And *Moses spake* **Mosheh worded**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**, saying,
Behold, the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
have not hearkened unto me;
how then shall *Pharaoh* **Paroh** hear me,
who am — **I** of uncircumcised lips?
13 And *the LORD spake* **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh** and unto *Aaron* **Aharon**,
and *gave* **misvahed** them *a charge*
unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
king sovereign of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
to bring the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL
14 These be the heads of their fathers' houses:
The sons of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Hanoch, and Pallu,
Hezron **Hesron**, and *Carmi* **Karmi**:
these be the families of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**.
15 And the sons of *Simeon* **Shimon**;
Jemuel **Yemu El**, and *Jamin* **Yamiyn**,
and Ohad and *Jachin* **Yachin**, and *Zohar* **Sochar**,
and Shaul the son of a *Canaanitish* **Kenaaniy** woman:
these are the families of *Simeon* **Shimon**.
16 And these are the names of the sons of Levi
according to their generations;
Gershon, and *Kohath* **Qehath**, and Merari:
and the years of the life of Levi
were an hundred thirty and seven years.
17 The sons of Gershon;
Libni, and *Shimi* **Shimiy**, according to their families.
18 And the sons of *Kohath* **Qehath**;
Amram **Am Ram**, and *Izhar* **Yishar**,
and Hebron, and *Uzziel* **Uzzi El**:
and the years of the life of *Kohath* **Qehath**
were an hundred thirty and three years.
19 And the sons of Merari;
Mahali **Machli** and Mushi:
these are the families of Levi
according to their generations.
20 And *Amram* **Am Ram** took him *Jochebed* **Yah Chebed**
his *father's sister* **aunt** to *wife* **woman**;
and she *bare* **birthed** him *Aaron* **Aharon** and *Moses* **Mosheh**:
and the years of the life of *Amram* **Am Ram**
were an hundred and thirty and seven years.
21 And the sons of *Izhar* **Yishar**;
Korah **Qorach**, and Nepheg, and Zichri.
22 And the sons of *Uzziel* **Uzzi El**;
Mishael **Misha El**,
and *Elzaphan* **El Saphan**, and *Zithri* **Sithri**.
23 And *Aaron* **Aharon** took him *Elisheba* **Eli Sheba**,
daughter of *Amminadab* **Ammi Nadab**,
sister of *Naashon* **Nahshon**, to *wife* **woman**;
and she *bare* **birthed** him Nadab, and *Abihu* **Abi Hu**,
Eleazar **El Azar**, and *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**.
24 And the sons of *Korah* **Qorachiy**;
Assir, and *Elkanah* **El Qanah**, and *Abiasaph* **Abi Asaph**:
these are the families of the *Korhites* **Qorachiy**.

EXODUS 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

who brings you out
from under the burdens of the Misrayim:
8 and I bring you to the land,
concerning which I lifted my hand
to give it to Abraham, to Yischaq and to Yaaqov;
and I give it you for a possession:
I — Yah Veh.
9 And thus Mosheh words to the sons of Yisra El:
but they hearken not to Mosheh
for shortness of spirit and for hard service.
10 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
11 Go in, word to Paroh sovereign of Misrayim,
to send the sons of Yisra El away from his land.
12 And Mosheh words at the face of Yah Veh, saying,
Behold, the sons of Yisra El hearken not to me;
how then hears Paroh me — I of uncircumcised lips?
13 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh and to Aharon
to misvah to the sons of Yisra El
and to Paroh sovereign of Misrayim
to bring the sons of Yisra El
from the land of Misrayim.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL
14 These are the heads of the houses of their fathers:
the sons of Reu Ben the firstbirth of Yisra El:
Hanoch and Pallu, Hesron and Karmi
— these are the families of Reu Ben.
15 And the sons of Shimon:
Yemu El and Yamiyn
and Ohad and Yachin and Sochar
and Shaul the son of a Kenaaniy woman
— these are the families of Shimon.
16 And these are the names of the sons of Levi
according to their generations:
Gershon and Qehath and Merari
— and the years of the life of Levi
— a hundred thirty—seven years.
17 The sons of Gershon:
Libni and Shimiy, according to their families.
18 And the sons of Qehath:
Am Ram and Yishar and Hebron and Uzzi El
— and the years of the life of Qehath
— a hundred thirty—three years.
19 And the sons of Merari:
Machli and Mushi
— these are the families of Levi
according to their generations.
20 And Am Ram takes Yah Chebed his aunt
to woman:
and she births him Aharon and Mosheh
— and the years of the life of Am Ram
— a hundred and thirty—seven years.
21 And the sons of Yishar:
Qorach and Nepheg and Zichri.
22 And the sons of Uzzi El:
Misha El and El Saphan and Sithri.
23 And Aharon takes Eli Sheba
daughter of Ammi Nadab, sister of Nahshon,
to woman:
and she births him Nadab and Abi Hu,
El Azar and Iy Thamar.
24 And the sons of Qorachiy:
Assir and El Qanah and Abi Asaph
— these are the families of the Qorachiy.

EXODUS 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

25 And Eleazar **El Azar** Aaron's **Aharon's** son took him one of the daughters of **Putiel Puti El** to wife **woman**; and she **bare birthed** him **Phinehas Phinechas**: these are the heads of the fathers of the **Levites Leviym** according to their families.

26 These are that **Aaron Aharon** and **Moses Mosheh**, to whom *the LORD Yah Veh* said, Bring out the **children sons of Israel Yisra El** from the land of **Egypt Misrayim** according to their **armies hosts**.

27 These are they which *spake worded* to **Pharaoh Paroh** *king sovereign* of **Egypt Misrayim**, to bring out the **children sons of Israel Yisra El** from **Egypt Misrayim**: these are that **Moses Mosheh** and **Aaron Aharon**.

28 And **so be** it came to pass on the day when *the LORD spake Yah Veh worded* unto **Moses Mosheh** in the land of **Egypt Misrayim**,

29 That *the LORD spake Yah Veh worded* unto **Moses Mosheh**, saying, *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*: speak **word** thou unto **Pharaoh Paroh** *king sovereign* of **Egypt Misrayim** all that I say **speak** unto thee.

30 And **Moses Mosheh** said *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh*, Behold, I am — of uncircumcised lips, and how shall **Pharaoh Paroh** hearken unto me?

THE CALLOUSED HEART OF PAROH

7 And *the LORD Yah Veh* said unto **Moses Mosheh**, See, I have **made given** thee a **god as Elohim** to **Pharaoh Paroh**: and **Aaron Aharon** thy brother shall be thy prophet.

2 Thou shalt *speak word* all that I *command misvah* thee: and **Aaron Aharon** thy brother shall *speak word* unto **Pharaoh Paroh**, that he send the **children sons of Israel Yisra El** out of his land.

3 And I *will shall* harden **Pharaoh's Paroh's** heart, and *multiply abound* my signs and my **wonders omens** in the land of **Egypt Misrayim**.

4 But **Pharaoh Paroh** shall not hearken unto you, that I may *lay give* my hand upon **Egypt Misrayim**, and bring forth mine **armies hosts**, and my people the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**, out of the land of **Egypt Misrayim** by great judgments.

5 And the **Egyptians Misrayim** shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*, when I *stretch forth spread* mine hand upon **Egypt Misrayim**, and bring out the **children sons of Israel Yisra El** from among them.

6 And **Moses Mosheh** and **Aaron did Aharon worked** as *the LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed* them, so *did worked* they.

7 And **Moses Mosheh** was *fourscore a son of eighty years old*, and **Aaron Aharon** *fourscore a son of eighty years* and three years *old*, when they *spake worded* unto **Pharaoh Paroh**.

8 And *the LORD spake Yah Veh said* unto **Moses Mosheh** and unto **Aaron Aharon**, saying,

9 When **Pharaoh Paroh** shall *speak word* unto you, saying, *Shew a miracle Give an omen* for you: then thou shalt say unto **Aaron Aharon**, Take thy rod, and cast it *before Pharaoh at the face of Paroh*, and it shall become a **serpent monster**.

10 And **Moses Mosheh** and **Aaron Aharon** went in unto **Pharaoh Paroh**, and they *did so worked* as *the LORD Yah Veh had commanded misvahed*: and **Aaron Aharon** cast down his rod *before Pharaoh at the face of Paroh*, and *before at the face of* his servants, and it became a **serpent monster**.

11 Then **Pharaoh Paroh** also called the wise **men** and the sorcerers: now the magicians of **Egypt Misrayim**, they also *did in like manner worked thus*

EXODUS 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

25 And El Azar the son of Aharon takes of the daughters of Puti El to woman: and she births him Phinechas — these are the heads of the fathers of the Leviym according to their families.

26 These are that Aharon and Mosheh to whom Yah Veh said, Bring the sons of Yisra El from the land of Misrayim by their hosts:

27 these are they who worded to Paroh sovereign of Misrayim, to bring out the sons of Yisra El from Misrayim — these are that Mosheh and Aharon.

28 And so be it, on the day Yah Veh words to Mosheh in the land of Misrayim,

29 Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying, I — Yah Veh: word to Paroh sovereign of Misrayim all that I speak to you.

30 And Mosheh says at the face of Yah Veh, Behold, I — of uncircumcised lips and how hearkens Paroh to me?

THE CALLOUSED HEART OF PAROH

7 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh, See, I give you as Elohim to Paroh: and Aharon your brother is your prophet: word all I misvah you: and Aharon your brother words to Paroh to send the sons of Yisra El from his land: and I harden the heart of Paroh and abound my signs and my omens in the land of Misrayim; and Paroh hearkens not to you: and I give my hand on Misrayim and bring forth my hosts and my people the sons of Yisra El from the land of Misrayim by great judgments: and the Misrayim know I — Yah Veh, when I spread my hand on Misrayim and bring out the sons of Yisra El from among them.

6 And Mosheh and Aharon work as Yah Veh misvahs them: and Mosheh is a son of eighty years and Aharon is a son of eighty years and three years when they word to Paroh.

8 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh and to Aharon, saying, When Paroh words to you, saying, Give an omen! — then you say to Aharon, Take your rod and cast it at the face of Paroh! — and it becomes a monster.

10 And Mosheh and Aharon go in to Paroh and they work as Yah Veh misvahed: and Aharon casts down his rod at the face of Paroh and at the face of his servants and it becomes a monster.

11 And Paroh also calls the wise and the sorcerers: and the magicians of Misrayim also work thus

EXODUS 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 with their enchantments **flamings**.
 For they cast down every man his rod,
 and they became **serpents monsters**:
 but Aaron's **Aharon's** rod swallowed up their rods.
 13 And he **hardened Pharaoh's calloused** Paroh's heart,
 that he hearkened not unto them;
 as the **LORD Yah Veh** had said **worded**.
 14 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto **Moses Mosheh**,
Pharaoh's Paroh's heart is **hardened calloused**,
 he refuseth to **let send** the people **go away**.
 15 **Get Go** thee unto **Pharaoh Paroh** in the morning;
lo behold, he goeth out unto the water;
 and thou shalt **stand station** thyself
 by the river's **brink edge** against he come to confront him;
 and the rod which was turned to a serpent
 shalt thou take in thine hand.
 16 And thou shalt say unto him,
The LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of the Hebrews
 hath sent me unto thee, saying,
Let Send my people **go away**,
 that they may serve me in the wilderness:
 and, behold,
 hitherto thus thou **wouldest hearest** not hear.
 17 Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**,
 In this thou shalt know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*:
 behold, I **will shall** smite with the rod that is in mine hand
 upon the waters which are in the river,
 and they shall be turned to blood.
 18 And the fish that is in the river shall die,
 and the river shall stink;
 and the **Egyptians Misrayim**
 shall lothe to drink of the water of the river.
 19 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
spake said unto **Moses Mosheh**,
 Say unto **Aaron Aharon**,
 Take thy rod, and **stretch out spread** thine hand
 upon the waters of **Egypt Misrayim**,
 upon their streams, upon their rivers,
 and upon their **ponds marshes**,
 and upon all their **pools congregations** of water,
 that they may become blood;
 and that there may be blood
 throughout all the land of **Egypt Misrayim**,
 both in **vessels of wood timber**, and in **vessels** of stone.
 20 And **Moses Mosheh** and **Aaron did Aharon worked** so,
 as the **LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed**;
 and he lifted up the rod,
 and smote the waters that were in the river,
 in the **sight eyes** of **Pharaoh Paroh**,
 and in the **sight eyes** of his servants;
 and all the waters that were in the river
 were turned to blood.
 21 And the fish that was in the river died;
 and the river stank,
 and the **Egyptians Misrayim**
 could not drink of the water of the river;
 and there was blood
 throughout all the land of **Egypt Misrayim**.
 22 And the magicians of **Egypt Misrayim**
did worked so with their enchantments:
 and **Pharaoh's Paroh's** heart was **hardened calloused**,
 neither did he hearken unto them;
 as the **LORD Yah Veh** had said **worded**.
 23 And **Pharaoh Paroh** turned **his face**
 and went into his house,
 neither did he set his heart to this also.
 24 And all the **Egyptians Misrayim**
 digged round about the river for water to drink;
 for they could not drink of the water of the river.
 25 And seven days were fulfilled,
 after that the **LORD Yah Veh** had smitten the river.
8 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh said** unto **Moses Mosheh**,
 Go unto **Pharaoh Paroh**, and say unto him,
 Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**,
Let Send my people **go away**, that they may serve me.
 2 And if thou refuse to **let send** them **go away**,
 behold, I **will shall** smite all thy borders with frogs:
 3 And the river shall **bring forth teem** with frogs abundantly,

EXODUS 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

with their flamings:
 12 and every man casts down his rod
 and they become monsters:
 but the rod of Aharon swallows their rods.
 13 — and he callouses the heart of Paroh,
 in that he hearkens not to them;
 as Yah Veh worded.
 14 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
 The heart of Paroh *is* calloused:
 he refuses to send the people away.
 15 Go to Paroh in the morning;
 behold, he goes to the water;
 and you station yourself
 by the river edge to confront him;
 and take the rod which turned into a serpent
 in your hand,
 and say to him,
 Yah Veh Elohim of the Hebrews sends me to you,
 saying, Send my people away
 to serve me in the wilderness:
 and behold, thus until now you hear not.
 17 Thus says Yah Veh,
 In this you know I — Yah Veh:
 behold, with the rod in my hand
 I smite on the waters in the river
 and they turn to blood:
 18 and the fish in the river die and the river stink:
 and the Misrayim loathe to drink
 of the water of the river.
 19 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
 Say to Aharon, Take your rod
 and spread your hand on the waters of Misrayim
 — on their streams, on their rivers
 and on their marshes
 and on all their congregations of water
 — and they become blood;
 and blood becomes in all the land of Misrayim
 — both in timber and in stone.
 20 And thus Mosheh and Aharon work
 as Yah Veh misvahed;
 and he lifts the rod and smites the waters in the river
 in the eyes of Paroh and in the eyes of his servants;
 and all the waters in the river turn to blood:
 21 and the fish in the river die and the river stinks
 and the Misrayim
 cannot drink of the water of the river:
 and there *is* blood in all the land of Misrayim.
 22 And the magicians of Misrayim
 work thus with their enchantments:
 and the heart of Paroh callouses
 — he hearkens not to them,
 as Yah Veh worded.
 23 — and Paroh turns his face and goes into his house
 and sets not his heart even to this.
 24 And all the Misrayim
 dig around the river for water to drink;
 for they cannot drink the water of the river.
 25 And seven days fulfill,
 after Yah Veh smote the river:
8 and Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
 Go to Paroh and say to him,
 Thus says Yah Veh:
 Send my people away, to serve me:
 and if you refuse to send them away,
 behold, I smite all your borders with frogs:
 and the river teems with frogs

EXODUS 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which shall go up **ascend** and come into thine house,
and into thy bedchamber, and upon thy bed,
and into the house of thy servants, and upon thy people,
and into thine ovens,
and into thy *kneadingtroughs* **doughboards**:
4 And the frogs shall *come up* **ascend** both on thee,
and upon thy people, and upon all thy servants.
5 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh** said unto Moses **Mosheh**,
Say unto Aaron **Aharon**,
Stretch forth **Spread** thine hand with thy rod
over the streams, over the rivers,
and over the *ponds* **marshes**,
and cause frogs to *come up* **ascend**
upon the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
6 And Aaron stretched out **Aharon spread** his hand
over the waters of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
and the frogs *came up* **ascended**,
and covered the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
7 And the magicians *did* **worked** so
with their enchantments,
and *brought up* **ascended** frogs
upon the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
8 Then *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
called for Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon**,
and said, Intreat the LORD **Yah Veh**,
that he may *take away* **turn aside** the frogs from me,
and from my people;
and I *will let* **shall send** the people go *away*,
that they may *do* sacrifice unto the LORD **Yah Veh**.
9 And Moses **Mosheh** said unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
Glory **Embellish** over me:
when shall I intreat for thee,
and for thy servants, and for thy people,
to *destroy* **cut** the frogs from thee and thy houses,
that they may *remain* **survive** in the river only?
10 And he said, *To* **By the** morrow.
And he said, Be it according to thy word:
that thou mayest know that there is none
like unto the LORD **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**.
11 And the frogs shall *depart* **turn aside** from thee,
and from thy houses,
and from thy servants, and from thy people;
they shall *remain* **survive** in the river only.
12 And Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon**
went out from *Pharaoh* **Paroh**:
and Moses **Mosheh** cried unto the LORD **Yah Veh**
because **for word** of the frogs
which he had *brought* **set** against *Pharaoh* **Paroh**.
13 And the LORD *did* **Yah Veh worked**
according to the word of Moses **Mosheh**;
and the frogs died out of the houses,
out of the *villages* **courts**, and out of the fields.
14 And they *gathered* **heaped** them together upon heaps:
and the land stank.
15 But when *Pharaoh* **Paroh** saw that there was respite,
he *hardened* **calloused** his heart,
and hearkened not unto them;
as the LORD **Yah Veh** had *said* **worded**.
16 And the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto Moses **Mosheh**,
Say unto Aaron **Aharon**,
Stretch out **Spread** thy rod, and smite the dust of the land,
that it may become *lice* **stingers**
throughout all the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
17 And they *did* **worked** so;
for Aaron **Aharon**
stretched out **spread** his hand with his rod,
and smote the dust of the earth,
and it became *lice* **stingers**
in *man* **humanity**, and in *beast* **animal**;
all the dust of the land became *lice* **stingers**
throughout all the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
18 And the magicians
did **worked** so with their enchantments
to bring forth *lice* **stingers**, but they could not:
so there were *lice* **stingers** upon *man* **humanity**,
and upon *beast* **animal**.
19 Then the magicians said unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
This is the finger of *God* **Elohim**:
and *Pharaoh's* **Paroh's** heart was *hardened* **calloused**,

EXODUS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— which ascend and come into your house
and into your bedchamber and on your bed
and into the house of your servants
and on your people and into your ovens
and into your doughboards
— and the frogs ascend
both on you
and on your people and on all your servants.
5 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Say to Aharon,
Spread your hand with your rod
over the streams, over the rivers and over the marshes
and ascend the frogs on the land of Misrayim.
6 And Aharon spreads his hand
over the waters of Misrayim;
and the frogs ascend and cover the land of Misrayim:
and the magicians work thus
with their enchantments
and ascend frogs on the land of Misrayim.
8 And Paroh calls for Mosheh and Aharon
and says, Intreat Yah Veh to turn aside the frogs
from me and from my people;
and I send the people away to sacrifice to Yah Veh.
9 And Mosheh says to Paroh,
Embellish over me: when intreat I for you
and for your servants and for your people,
to cut the frogs from you and your houses,
to survive in the river only?
10 And he says, By the morrow.
And he says, As you word!
— so that you know
there *is* none like to Yah Veh our Elohim:
and turn the frogs aside from you
and from your houses
and from your servants and from your people;
to survive in the river only.
12 And Mosheh and Aharon go out from Paroh:
and Mosheh cries to Yah Veh
for word of the frogs he set against Paroh.
13 And Yah Veh works
according to the word of Mosheh:
and the frogs die from the houses
from the courts and from the fields:
and they heap them together on heaps
and the land stinks.
14 — and Paroh sees there is respite,
and he callouses his heart and hearkens not to them;
as Yah Veh had worded.
16 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Say to Aharon, Spread your rod
and smite the dust of the land,
so that stingers become
throughout all the land of Misrayim.
17 And they work thus:
for Aharon spreads his hand with his rod
and smites the dust of the earth
and stingers become in humanity and in animal;
all the dust of the land becomes stingers
throughout all the land of Misrayim.
18 — and the magicians
work thus with their enchantments
to bring forth stingers, but they cannot:
so there stingers become on humanity and on animal.
19 Then the magicians says to Paroh,
This *is* the finger of Elohim:
and the heart of Paroh callouses

EXODUS 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and he hearkened not unto them;
as the LORD **Yah Veh** had said **worded**.
20 And the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto **Moses Mosheh**,
Rise up **Start** early in the morning,
and stand *before Pharaoh* **at the face of Paroh**;
lo behold, he cometh forth to the water;
and say unto him, Thus saith the LORD **Yah Veh**,
Let **Send** my people *go away*, that they may serve me.
21 Else, if thou *wilt shalt* not let **send** my people *go away*,
behold,
I *will shall* send swarms of flies **swarmers** upon thee,
and upon thy servants, and upon thy people,
and into thy houses:
and the houses of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
shall be full of swarms of flies **swarmers**,
and also the *ground soil* whereon they are.
22 And I *will sever shall distinguish* in that day
the land of Goshen,
in which my people *dwelt stay*,
that no swarms of flies **swarmers** shall be there;
to the end so that thou mayest know
that I am the LORD I — **Yah Veh** in the midst of the earth.
23 And I *will shall* put a *division* **redemption**
between my people and **between** thy people:
to by the morrow shall this sign be.
24 And the LORD *did* **Yah Veh** worked so;
and there came a *grievous swarm of flies* **heavy swarmers**
into the house of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
and into his servants' houses,
and into all the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
the land was *corrupted ruined*
by reason at the face of the swarm of flies **swarmers**.
25 And *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
called for *Moses* **Mosheh** and for *Aaron* **Aharon**, and said,
Go ye, sacrifice to your *God* **Elohim** in the land.
26 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said,
It is not *meet established* so to *do work*;
for we shall sacrifice
the *abomination abhorrence* of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
to the LORD **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**:
lo behold, shall we sacrifice
the *abomination abhorrence* of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
before in front of their eyes, and *will shall* they not stone us?
27 We *will shall* go
three days' journey into the wilderness,
and sacrifice to the LORD **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
as he shall *command say to* us.
28 And *Pharaoh* **Paroh** said,
I *will let shall send* you *go away*,
that ye may sacrifice
to the LORD **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
in the wilderness;
only **in being far removed**,
ye shall not *go very far away be far removed*:
intreat for me.
29 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said, Behold, I go out from thee,
and I *will shall* intreat the LORD **Yah Veh**
that the swarms of flies **swarmers**
may *depart turn aside* from *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
from his servants, and from his people, to morrow:
but only let not *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
deal deceitfully any more add to mock again
in not *letting sending* the people *go away*
to sacrifice to the LORD **Yah Veh**.
30 And *Moses* **Mosheh** went out from *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
and intreated the LORD **Yah Veh**.
31 And the LORD *did* **Yah Veh** worked
according to the word of *Moses* **Mosheh**;
and he *removed turned aside*
the swarms of flies **swarmers** from *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
from his servants, and from his people;
there *remained survived* not one.
32 And *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
hardened calloused his heart at this time also,
neither *would he let sent he* the people *go away*.
9 Then the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Go in unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**, and *tell word* him,
Thus saith the LORD *God* **Yah Veh Elohim**
of the Hebrews,

EXODUS 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and he hearkens not to them
— as Yah Veh had worded.
20 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Start early in the morning
and stand at the face of Paroh;
behold, he comes to the water;
and say to him, Thus says Yah Veh:
Send my people away to serve me:
21 else, if you send not my people away,
behold, I send swarmers on you and on your servants
and on your people and into your houses:
and the houses of the Misrayim
become full of swarmers
and also become on the soil:
22 and in that day, I distinguish the land of Goshen,
in which my people stay,
so that no swarmers become there:
so that you know I — Yah Veh midst the earth:
23 and I put a redemption
between my people and between your people:
by the morrow this sign becomes.
24 And thus Yah Veh works:
and heavy swarmers come into the house of Paroh
and into the houses of his servants
and into all the land of Misrayim:
the land ruins at the face of the swarmers.
25 And Paroh calls for Mosheh and for Aharon
and says, Go, sacrifice to your Elohim in the land.
26 And Mosheh says,
It is not established thus to work;
for we sacrifice the abhorrence of the Misrayim
to Yah Veh our Elohim:
behold, we sacrifice the abhorrence of the Misrayim
in front of their eyes
and they stone us not.
27 We go a journey of three day into the wilderness
and sacrifice to Yah Veh our Elohim,
as he says to us.
28 And Paroh says, I send you away,
to sacrifice to Yah Veh your Elohim in the wilderness:
only in removing afar, remove not afar:
intreat for me.
29 And Mosheh says, Behold, I go from you
and I intreat Yah Veh to turn aside the swarmers
from Paroh, from his servants and from his people
tomorrow:
only that Paroh not add to mock again
in not sending the people away
to sacrifice to Yah Veh.
30 And Mosheh goes out from Paroh
and intreats Yah Veh:
31 and Yah Veh works
according to the word of Mosheh;
and he turns aside the swarmers from Paroh
from his servants and from his people
— not one survives.
32 And Paroh callouses his heart at this time also,
and sends not the people away.
9 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Go in to Paroh and word to him,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of the Hebrews:

EXODUS 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 Let **Send** my people go **away**, that they may serve me.
For if thou refuse to *let* **send** them go **away**,
and *wilt* **shalt** hold them still,
3 Behold, the hand of the **LORD Yah Veh**
is shall be upon thy **cattle chattel** which is in the field,
upon the horses, upon the asses **he burros**,
upon the camels, upon the oxen,
and upon the **sheep flocks**:
there shall be
a very *grievous murrain* **mighty heavy pestilence**.
4 And the **LORD Yah Veh** shall *sever* **distinguish**
between the **cattle chattel** of **Israel Yisra El**
and the **cattle chattel** of **Egypt Misrayim**:
and there shall *nothing* **no word** die
of all that is the *children's* **to the sons** of **Israel Yisra El**.
5 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
appointed a set time **set a season**, saying,
To **By the** morrow
the **LORD Yah Veh** shall *do* **work** this *thing* **word**
in the land.
6 And the **LORD** *did* **Yah Veh worked** that *thing* **word**
on the morrow,
and all the **cattle chattel** of **Egypt Misrayim** died:
but of the **cattle chattel**
of the *children* **sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
died not one.
7 And **Pharaoh Paroh** sent, and, behold,
there was not one
of the **cattle chattel** of the **Israelites Yisra Eliy** dead.
And the heart of **Pharaoh** was *hardened* **Paroh calloused**,
and he *did* **sent** not *let* the people go **away**.
8 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
said unto **Moses Mosheh** and unto **Aaron Aharon**,
Take to you *handfuls* **fists full** of ashes of the furnace,
and let **Moses Mosheh** sprinkle it
toward the *heaven* **heavens**
in the *sight* **eyes** of **Pharaoh Paroh**.
9 And it shall become small dust
in all the land of **Egypt Misrayim**,
and shall be a **boil an ulcer**
breaking forth with blains **blossoming pus**
upon *man* **humanity**, and upon *beast* **animal**,
throughout all the land of **Egypt Misrayim**.
10 And they took ashes of the furnace,
and stood *before* **Pharaoh at the face of Paroh**;
and **Moses Mosheh** sprinkled it up
toward *heaven* **the heavens**;
and it became a **boil an ulcer**
breaking forth with blains **blossoming pus**
upon *man* **humanity**, and upon *beast* **animal**.
11 And the magicians could not stand
before **Moses at the face of Mosheh**
because of the boils **at the face of the ulcers**;
for the **boil ulcer** was upon the magicians,
and upon all the **Egyptians Misrayim**.
12 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
hardened **calloused** the heart of **Pharaoh Paroh**,
and he hearkened not unto them;
as the **LORD Yah Veh** had *spoken* **worded**
unto **Moses Mosheh**.
13 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto **Moses Mosheh**,
Rise up **Start** early in the morning,
and stand *before* **Pharaoh at the face of Paroh**,
and say unto him,
Thus saith the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim**
of the Hebrews,
14 Let **Send** my people go **away**, that they may serve me.
For *I will* **shall** at this time
send all my plagues upon thine heart,
and upon thy servants, and upon thy people;
that thou mayest know that there is none like me
in all the earth.
15 For now *I will* **stretch out shall spread** my hand,
that I may smite thee and thy people with pestilence;
and thou shalt be cut off from the earth.
16 And *in very deed* **But** for this *cause*
have I *raised* **stood** thee up,
for to shew in thee **so as to have thee see** my **power force**;
and that my name may be **declared scribed**

EXODUS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 Send my people away to serve me:
for if you refuse to send them away
and still hold them,
3 behold, the hand of Yah Veh
becomes on your chattel in the field
— on the horses, on the he burros, on the camels,
on the oxen and on the flocks
— a mighty heavy pestilence:
and Yah Veh distinguishes
4 between the chattel of Yisra El
and between the chattel of Misrayim:
and of all that of the sons of Yisra El, no word dies:
and Yah Veh sets a season, saying,
5 By the morrow, Yah Veh works this word in the land!
6 — and Yah Veh works that word on the morrow
and all the chattel of Misrayim die:
but not one of the chattel of the sons of Yisra El dies.
7 And Paroh sends and behold,
not even one of the chattel of the Yisra Eliy die:
and the heart of Paroh callouses
and he sends not the people away.
8 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh and to Aharon,
Take fists full of ashes of the furnace;
and Mosheh,
9 sprinkle it toward the heavens in the eyes of Paroh:
and it becomes small dust
in all the land of Misrayim
and becomes an ulcer
blossoming pus on humanity and on animal
throughout all the land of Misrayim.
10 And they take ashes of the furnace
and stand at the face of Paroh;
and Mosheh sprinkles it toward the heavens;
and it becomes an ulcer
blossoming pus on humanity and on animal:
11 and the magicians cannot stand
at the face of Mosheh
at the face of the ulcers:
for the ulcer becomes on the magicians
and on all the Misrayim.
12 — and Yah Veh callouses the heart of Paroh
and hearkens not to them
— as Yah Veh worded to Mosheh.
13 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Start early in the morning
and stand at the face of Paroh, and say to him,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of the Hebrews,
Send my people away to serve me:
14 for at this time, I send all my plagues on your heart
and on your servants and on your people;
so that you know
there is none like me in all the earth:
15 for now I spread my hand
to smite you and your people with pestilence;
and cut you off from the earth.
16 And yet, for this I stood you,
so as to have you see my force;
and to scribe my name

EXODUS 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

throughout all the earth.
 17 As yet exaltest thou thyself against my people,
 that thou *will shall* not *let send* them *go away*?
 18 Behold, to morrow about this time
 I *will shall* cause it to rain
 a *very grievous mighty heavy* hail,
 such as hath not been in *Egypt Misrayim*
since the foundation from the day of founding thereof
 even until now.
 19 Send therefore now,
 and gather **withdraw** thy *cattle chattel*,
 and all that thou hast in the field;
 for upon every *man human* and *beast animal*
 which shall be found in the field,
 and shall not be *brought gathered* home,
 the hail shall *come down descend* upon them,
 and they shall die.
 20 He that *feared awed* the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*
 among the servants of *Pharaoh Paroh*
 made his servants and his *cattle chattel*
 flee into the houses:
 21 And he that *regarded set* not his heart
unto the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*
 left his servants and his *cattle chattel* in the field.
 22 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto *Moses Mosheh*,
Stretch forth Spread thine hand
 toward *heaven the heavens*,
 that there may be hail in all the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
 upon *man humanity*, and upon *beast animal*,
 and upon every herb of the field,
throughout in the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
 23 And *Moses stretched forth Mosheh spread* his rod
 toward *heaven the heavens*:
 and the *LORD sent thunder Yah Veh gave voice* and hail,
 and the fire
ran along upon the ground came down to earth;
 and the *LORD Yah Veh* rained hail
 upon the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
 24 So there was hail,
 and fire *mingled with taken midst* the hail,
very grievous mighty heavy,
 such as there was none like it
 in all the land of *Egypt Misrayim*
 since it became a *nation goyim*.
 25 And the hail smote
 throughout all the land of *Egypt Misrayim*
 all that was in the field,
both man and beast from human unto animal;
 and the hail smote every herb of the field,
 and brake every tree of the field.
 26 Only in the land of Goshen,
 where the *children sons of Israel Yisra El* were,
 was there no hail.
 27 And *Pharaoh Paroh* sent,
 and called for *Moses Mosheh* and *Aaron Aharon*,
 and said unto them, I have sinned this time:
the LORD Yah Veh is righteous just,
 and I and my people are wicked.
 28 Intreat the *LORD Yah Veh* (for it is *enough great*)
 that there be no *more*
mighty thunders voices of Elohim and hail;
 and I *will let shall send* you *go away*,
 and ye shall *stay no longer not add to stay*.
 29 And *Moses Mosheh* said unto him,
 As soon as I am gone out of the city,
 I *will shall* spread abroad my *hands palms*
 unto the *LORD Yah Veh*;
 and the *thunder voice* shall cease,
 neither shall there be any more hail;
 that thou mayest know
 how that the earth is *the LORD'S Yah Veh's*.
 30 But as for thee and thy servants,
 I know that ye *will shall* not yet *fear still awe*
the LORD God at the face of Yah Veh Elohim.
 31 And the flax and the barley was smitten:
 for the barley was *in the ear unripened*,
 and the flax was *bolled budded*.
 32 But the wheat and the *rie spelt* were not smitten:
 for they were not *grown up dark*.

EXODUS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

throughout all the earth.
 17 Still, you exalt yourself against my people,
 in that you send them not away.
 18 Behold, tomorrow about this time,
 I rain a mighty heavy hail,
 such as became not in Misrayim
 from the day of its founding, even until now.
 19 And now, send: withdraw your chattel
 and all you have in the field;
 for on every human and animal found in the field
 and not gathered home,
 the hail descends, and they die.
 20 He who awes the word of Yah Veh
 among the servants of Paroh
 has his servants and his chattel flee into the houses:
 21 and he who sets not his heart
 to the word of Yah Veh
 leaves his servants and his chattel in the field.
 22 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
 Spread your hand toward the heavens,
 that hail become in all the land of Misrayim
 — on humanity and on animal
 and on every herb of the field
 in the land of Misrayim.
 23 And Mosheh spreads his rod toward the heavens:
 and Yah Veh gives voice and hail
 and the fire comes down to earth;
 and Yah Veh rains hail on the land of Misrayim:
 24 and there hail and fire become taken midst the hail
 — mighty heavy, such as none being like it
 in all the land of Misrayim
 since it became a goyim:
 25 and throughout all the land of Misrayim
 the hail smites all that *is* in the field
 — from human to animal:
 and the hail smites every herb of the field
 and breaks every tree of the field.
 26 Only in the land of Goshen,
 where the sons of Yisra El are, no hail becomes.
 27 And Paroh sends and calls for Mosheh and Aharon
 and says to them, I sinned this time:
 Yah Veh *is* just; and I and my people wicked.
 28 Intreat Yah Veh — for it *is* great
 that there be no voices of Elohim and hail;
 and I send you away and add not that you stay.
 29 And Mosheh says to him,
 In going from the city, I spread my palms to Yah Veh;
 and the voice ceases:
 that there becomes no more hail;
 so that you know that the earth *is* of Yah Veh:
 30 but as for you and your servants,
 I know that you still awe not
 at the face of Yah Veh Elohim:
 31 and the flax and the barley *is* smitten;
 for the barley *is* unripe and the flax buds:
 32 and the wheat and the spelt are not smitten:
 for they are not dark.

EXODUS 9, 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

33 And Moses **Mosheh** went out of the city
from **Pharaoh Paroh**,
and spread abroad his **hands palms**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**:
and the **thunders voices** and hail ceased,
and the rain was not poured upon the earth.
34 And when **Pharaoh Paroh** saw that the rain
and the hail and the **thunders voices** were ceased,
he **sinned yet more added to sin**,
and **hardened calloused** his heart, he and his servants.
35 And the heart of **Pharaoh Paroh**
was **hardened calloused**,
neither would **sent** he let
the **children sons of Israel go Yisra El away**;
as the **LORD Yah Veh** had **spoken worded**
by **Moses the hand of Mosheh**.

10 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto **Moses Mosheh**,
Go in unto **Pharaoh Paroh**:
for I have **hardened calloused** his heart,
and the heart of his servants,
that I might **shew set** these my signs
before him in his midst:
2 And that thou mayest **tell describe**
in the ears of thy son, and of thy son's son,
what **things** I have **wrought exploited** in **Egypt Misrayim**,
and my signs which I have **done set** among them;
that ye may know how that **I am the LORD I — Yah Veh**.
3 And **Moses Mosheh** and **Aaron Aharon**
came in unto **Pharaoh Paroh**, and said unto him,
Thus saith the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim**
of the Hebrews,
How long wilt **Until when shalt** thou refuse
to humble thyself **before me at my face?**
let **send** my people **go away**, that they may serve me.
4 *Else* **Because**,
if thou refuse to let **send** my people **go away**, behold,
to morrow **will shall** I bring the locusts
into thy **coast borders**:
5 And they shall cover the **face eye** of the earth,
that one cannot be able to see the earth:
and they shall eat
the **residue remainder** of that which is escaped,
which **remaineth surviveth** unto you from the hail,
and shall eat every tree
which **groweth sprouteth** for you out of the field:
6 And they shall fill thy houses,
and the houses of all thy servants,
and the houses of all the **Egyptians Misrayim**;
which neither thy fathers, nor thy fathers' fathers
have seen,
since the day that they were upon the **earth soil**
unto this day.
And he turned **himself his face**,
and went out from **Pharaoh Paroh**.
7 And **Pharaoh's Paroh's** servants said unto him,
How long shall this man be a snare unto us?
let **send** the men **go away**,
that they may serve the **LORD Yah Veh** their **God Elohim**:
knowest thou not yet that **Egypt Misrayim** is destroyed?
8 And **Moses Mosheh** and **Aaron Aharon**
were **brought again returned** unto **Pharaoh Paroh**:
and he said unto them,
Go, serve the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**:
but who are they that shall go?
9 And **Moses Mosheh** said,
We **will shall** go with our **young lads**
and with our **old aged**,
with our sons and with our daughters,
with our flocks and with our **herds will oxen shall** we go;
for we **must hold a feast a celebration**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
10 And he said unto them,
Let the **LORD Yah Veh** be so with you,
as I **will let shall send** you **go away**,
and your **little ones toddlers**:
look to it **see**; for evil is **before you at thy face**.
11 Not so: go now ye **that are men mighty**,
and serve the **LORD Yah Veh**; for that ye did **desire seek**.
And they were **driven out expelled**

EXODUS 9, 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

33 And Mosheh goes from the city — from Paroh
and spreads his palms to Yah Veh:
and the voices and hail cease
and the rain pours not on the earth.

34 And when Paroh sees that the rain
and the hail and the voices cease,
he adds to sin and callouses his heart
— he and his servants.

35 And the heart of Paroh callouses,
and he sends not the sons of Yisra El away;
as Yah Veh worded by the hand of Mosheh.

10 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh, Go in to Paroh:
for I callous his heart and the heart of his servants
so as to set these my signs in his midst:
and that you describe
in the ears of your son and of the son of your son
what I exploited in Misrayim
and the signs I set among them;
that you know I — Yah Veh.

3 And Mosheh and Aharon come in to Paroh
and say to him,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of the Hebrews:
Until when refuse you to humble yourself at my face?
Send my people away to serve me:
4 for if you refuse to send my people away, behold,
tomorrow I bring the locusts into your borders:
5 and they cover the eye of the earth,
that no one can see the earth:
and they eat the remainder which escaped
— which survives to you from the hail;
and eat every tree
which sprouts for you from the field:
6 and they fill your houses
and the houses of all your servants
and the houses of all the Misrayim;
which neither your fathers
nor the fathers of your fathers have ever seen
since the day they became on the soil, to this day.
— and he turns his face and goes out from Paroh.

7 And the servants of Paroh say to him,
How long becomes this man a snare to us?
Send the men away to serve Yah Veh their Elohim!
Know you not yet that Misrayim is destroyed?

8 And Mosheh and Aharon return to Paroh:
and he says to them,
Go, serve Yah Veh your Elohim!
But who and who goes?

9 And Mosheh says,
We go with our lads and with our aged
with our sons and with our daughters;
we go with our flocks and with our oxen;
for we celebrate to Yah Veh.

10 And he says to them,
So be it, Yah Veh **be** with you,
as I send you and your toddlers away:
See! For evil is at your face.
11 Not so! Go now, you mighty,
and serve Yah Veh; for what you seek.
— and they are expelled

EXODUS 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 12 from *Pharaoh's presence Paroh's face.*
And the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses Mosheh,*
Stretch out Spread thine hand
over the land of *Egypt Misrayim* for the locusts,
that they may *come up ascend*
upon the land of *Egypt Misrayim,*
and eat every herb of the land,
even all that *the hail hath left survived the hail.*
- 13 And *Moses stretched forth Mosheh spread* his rod
over the land of *Egypt Misrayim,*
and the LORD **Yah Veh**
brought drove an east wind upon the land
all that day, and all *that night;*
and when it was morning,
the east wind *brought bore* the locusts.
- 14 And the locusts
went up ascended over all the land of *Egypt Misrayim,*
and rested in all the *coasts borders* of *Egypt Misrayim:*
very grievous mighty heavy were they;
before facing them there were no such locusts as they,
neither after them shall be such.
- 15 For they covered the *face eye* of the whole *earth land,*
so that the land was darkened;
and they did eat every herb of the land,
and all the fruit of the trees
which *the hail had left remained of the hail:*
and there remained not any green *thing* in the trees,
or in the herbs of the field,
through all the land of *Egypt Misrayim.*
- 16 Then *Pharaoh Paroh*
called for *Moses Mosheh* and *Aaron Aharon* in haste;
and he said, I have sinned
against the LORD **Yah Veh** your *God Elohim,*
and against you.
- 17 Now therefore *forgive bear,* I *pray beseech* thee,
my sin only this *once one time,*
and intreat the LORD **Yah Veh** your *God Elohim,*
that he may *take away turn aside* from me
this death only.
- 18 And he went out from *Pharaoh Paroh,*
and intreated the LORD **Yah Veh.**
- 19 And the LORD **Yah Veh**
turned a mighty strong *west seaward* wind,
which *took away bore* the locusts,
and cast *blast* them into the *Red Reed* sea;
there *remained survived* not one locust
in all the *coasts borders* of *Egypt Misrayim.*
- 20 But the LORD **Yah Veh**
hardened Pharaoh's calloused Paroh's heart,
so that he would *sent* not let
the *children sons* of *Israel go Yisra El* away.
- 21 And the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses Mosheh,*
Stretch out Spread thine hand toward *heaven the heavens,*
that there may be darkness
over the land of *Egypt Misrayim,*
even darkness which may be felt.
- 22 And *Moses stretched forth Mosheh spread* his hand
toward *heaven the heavens;*
and there was a *thick darkened* darkness
in all the land of *Egypt Misrayim* three days:
They saw not *one another man to brother,*
neither rose any from his place for three days:
but all the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
had light in their *dwellings settlements.*
- 24 And *Pharaoh Paroh* called unto *Moses Mosheh,*
and said, Go ye, serve the LORD **Yah Veh;**
only let your flocks and your *herds oxen* be stayed:
let your *little ones toddlers* also go with you.
- 25 And *Moses Mosheh* said,
Thou must give us **into our hands**
also sacrifices and *burnt offerings holocausts,*
that we may *sacrifice work*
unto the LORD **Yah Veh** our *God Elohim.*
- 26 Our *cattle chattel* also shall go with us;
there shall not an hoof *be left survive* behind;
for thereof must we take
to serve the LORD **Yah Veh** our *God Elohim;*
and we know not
with what we must serve the LORD **Yah Veh,**

EXODUS 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- from the face of Paroh.
- 12 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Spread your hand over the land of Misrayim
for the locusts to ascend on the land of Misrayim
and eat every herb of the land
— even all that survived the hail.
- 13 And Mosheh spreads his rod
over the land of Misrayim
and Yah Veh drives an east wind on the land
all that day and all that night:
and morning becomes
and the east wind births the locusts:
and the locusts ascend
over all the land of Misrayim
and rest in all the borders of Misrayim
— mighty heavy:
neither at their face became such locusts as these
nor after them become such:
- 15 for they cover the eye of the whole land
so that the land darkens;
and they eat every herb of the land
and all the fruit of the trees
which remains of the hail:
and not any green remains in the trees
or in the herbs of the field
through all the land of Misrayim.
- 16 And Paroh calls for Mosheh and Aharon in haste;
and he says,
I have sinned against Yah Veh your Elohim
and against you:
and now bear, I beseech you, my sin
only this one time
and intreat Yah Veh your Elohim,
to turn aside from me this death only.
- 18 And he goes out from Paroh and intreats Yah Veh:
19 and Yah Veh turns a mighty strong seaward wind
which births the locusts
and blasts them into the Reed sea;
not one locust survives in all the borders of Misrayim.
20 — and Yah Veh callouses the heart of Paroh
so that he sends not the sons of Yisra El away.
- 21 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Spread your hand toward the heavens
that there be darkness over the land of Misrayim
— even darkness which becomes felt.
- 22 And Mosheh spreads his hand toward the heavens;
and there becomes a darkened darkness
in all the land of Misrayim three days:
23 they neither see man to brother
nor rise any from his place for three days:
but all the sons of Yisra El
have light in their settlements.
- 24 And Paroh calls to Mosheh, and says,
Go you! Serve Yah Veh!
— only leave your flocks and your oxen behind:
your toddlers also go with you.
- 25 And Mosheh says,
You also give into our hands sacrifices and holocausts
to work to Yah Veh our Elohim:
our chattel also go with us;
not a hoof survives behind;
for we take thereof to serve Yah Veh our Elohim;
and we — we know not how to serve Yah Veh

EXODUS 10—12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

27 until we come thither.
But the **LORD Yah Veh**
hardened **Pharaoh's calloused Paroh's** heart
and he would **willed** not let to send them go away.

28 And **Pharaoh Paroh** said unto him,
Get thee **Go thou** from me,
take heed to **guard** thyself, see my face no more **not again**;
for in that day thou seest my face thou shalt die.

29 And **Moses Mosheh** said,
Thou hast spoken well **worded thus**,
I will **shall** see thy face again no more.

11 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto **Moses Mosheh**,
Yet will **shall** I bring one plague more
upon **Pharaoh Paroh**,
and upon **Egypt Misrayim**;
afterwards he will let **shall send** you go away hence:
when he shall let **send** you go away,
in expelling,
he shall surely thrust **expel** you out hence altogether fully.

2 Speak **Word** now in the ears of the people,
and let every man borrow **ask** of his neighbour **friend**,
and every woman of her neighbour **friend**,
jewels **instruments** of silver
and jewels **instruments** of gold.

3 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
gave **granted** the people favour **charism**
in the sight **eyes** of the **Egyptians Misrayim**.
Moreover the man **Moses Mosheh**
was very **mighty** great in the land of **Egypt Misrayim**,
in the sight **eyes** of **Pharaoh's Paroh's** servants,
and in the sight **eyes** of the people.

4 And **Moses Mosheh** said, Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**,
About midnight
will **shall** I go out into the midst of **Egypt Misrayim**:
And all the **firstborn firstbirthed**
in the land of **Egypt Misrayim** shall die,
from the **firstborn firstbirthed** of **Pharaoh Paroh**
that sitteth upon his throne,
even unto the **firstborn firstbirthed** of the **maidservant maid**
that is behind the **mill millstones**;
and all the **firstborn firstbirthed** of **beasts animals**.

6 And there shall be a great cry
throughout all the land of **Egypt Misrayim**,
such as there was **became** none like it,
nor shall be like it any more **again**.

7 But against any of the **children sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
shall not a dog **move point** his tongue,
against man or **beast animal**:
that ye may know how that the **LORD Yah Veh**
doth put a difference **distinguisheth**
between the **Egyptians Misrayim**
and **between Israel Yisra El**.

8 And all these thy servants
shall come down **descend** unto me,
and bow down themselves **prostrate** unto me, saying,
Get thee out,
and all the people that follow thee **at thy feet**:
and after that I will **shall** go out.
And he went out from **Pharaoh Paroh**
in a great anger **fuming wrath**.

9 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto **Moses Mosheh**,
Pharaoh Paroh shall not hearken unto you;
that my wonders **omens** may be multiplied **abound**
in the land of **Egypt Misrayim**.

10 And **Moses Mosheh** and **Aaron Aharon**
did **worked** all these wonders **omens**
before **Pharaoh at the face of Paroh**:
and the **LORD Yah Veh**
hardened **Pharaoh's calloused Paroh's** heart,
so that he would **should** not let send
the **children sons** of **Israel go Yisra El** away out of his land.

THE PASACH

12

And the **LORD spake Yah Veh** said
unto **Moses Mosheh** and **Aaron Aharon**
in the land of **Egypt Misrayim**, saying,
This month shall be unto you
the **beginning head** of months:
it shall be the first month of the year to you.

2

EXODUS 10—12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

until we come there.
27 — and Yah Veh callouses the heart of Paroh
and he wills to not send them away.

28 And Paroh says to him,
Go you from me! Guard yourself!
Never see my face again!
For in the day you see my face, you die.

29 And Mosheh says,
As you word thus,
I never see your face again.

11 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
I bring yet one plague on Paroh and on Misrayim;
afterwards he sends you away from here:
when he sends you away,
in expelling, he expels you fully.
2 Word now in the ears of the people
that every man ask of his friend
and every woman of her friend
instruments of silver and instruments of gold.

3 And Yah Veh grants the people charism
in the eyes of the Misrayim:
also the man Mosheh
is mighty great in the land of Misrayim
in the eyes of the servants of Paroh
and in the eyes of the people.

4 And Mosheh says, Thus says Yah Veh,
About midnight, I go midst the Misrayim:
5 and all the firstbirth in the land of Misrayim die
— from the firstbirth of Paroh
who sits on his throne
even to the firstbirth of the maid
behind the millstones;
and all the firstbirth of animals.

6 And a great cry
becomes throughout all the land of Misrayim
such as had never become, nor ever become:
7 but against any of the sons of Yisra El
not a dog points his tongue against man or animal:
so that you know how Yah Veh distinguishes
between Misrayim and between Yisra El:
8 and all your servants descend to me
and prostrate to me, saying,
You and all the people at your feet, Get out!
and after that I go out.
— and he goes out from Paroh in a fuming wrath.

9 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Paroh hearkens not to you;
so that my omens abound in the land of Misrayim.
10 — and Mosheh and Aharon
work all these omens at the face of Paroh:
and Yah Veh callouses the heart of Paroh
so that he sends not the sons of Yisra El away
from his land.

12 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh and Aharon
in the land of Misrayim, saying,
2 This month is the head of months to you
— the first month of the year to you:

THE PASACH

EXODUS 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 *Speak* **Word** ye
unto all the *congregation* **witness** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
saying, In the tenth *day* of this month
they shall take to them every man a lamb,
according to the house of their fathers,
a lamb for an house:
4 And if the household be *too little* **diminished**
for the lamb,
let him and his *neighbour* **fellow tabernacler**
next unto his house
take it according to the *number* **evaluation** of the souls;
every man according to **the food** of his *eating* **mouth**
shall *make your count* **ye estimate** for the lamb.
5 Your lamb shall be *without blemish* **integrity**,
a *male of the first year* **yearling son**:
ye shall take it out from the *sheep* **lambs**,
or from the goats:
6 And ye shall *keep* **guard** it up
until the fourteenth day of the same month:
and the whole *assembly* **congregation**
of the *congregation* **witness** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
shall *kill* **slaughter** it *in the evening* **between evenings**.
7 And they shall take of the blood,
and *strike* **give** it on the two side posts
and on the *upper door post* **lintel** of the houses,
wherein they shall eat it.
8 And they shall eat the flesh in that night,
roast with fire, and *unleavened bread* **matsah**;
and with *bitter herbs* **bitters** they shall eat it.
9 Eat not of it raw,
nor *sodden at all* **in stewing, stewed** with water,
but roast with fire;
his head with his legs,
and with the *purtenance* **inwards** thereof.
10 And ye shall let *nothing* **naught** of it
remain until the morning;
and that which remaineth of it until the morning
ye shall burn with fire.
11 And thus shall ye eat it;
with your loins girded, your shoes on your feet,
and your staff in your hand; and ye shall eat it in haste:
it is the *LORD'S* **passover** **Yah Veh's pasach**.
12 For I *will* **shall** pass through
the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim** this night,
and *will* **shall** smite all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
both *man* **human** and *beast* **animal**;
and against all the *gods* **elohim** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
I *will execute* **shall work** judgment:
I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh**.
13 And the blood shall be to you
for a *token* **sign** upon the houses where ye are:
and when I see the blood, I *will pass* **shall leap** over you,
and the plague shall not be upon you
to *destroy* **ruin** you,
when I smite the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
MEMORIAL DAY
14 And this day shall be unto you for a memorial;
and ye shall *keep it* **celebrate** a *feast* **celebration**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** throughout your generations;
ye shall *keep it a feast* **celebrate**
by an *ordinance for ever* **eternal statute**.
15 Seven days shall ye eat *unleavened bread* **matsah**;
even **surely** the first day
ye shall *put away leaven* **shabbathize yeast**
out of your houses:
for whosoever eateth *leavened bread* **fermentation**
from the first day until the seventh day,
that soul shall be cut off from *Israel* **Yisra El**.
16 And in the first day there shall be an holy convocation,
and in the seventh day
there shall be an holy convocation to you;
no *manner of work* shall be *done* in them,
save **except** that which every *man* **soul** must eat,
that only may be *done* **worked** of you.
17 And ye shall *observe* **guard**
the *feast of unleavened bread* **matsah**;
for in this selfsame day have I brought your *armies* **hosts**
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:

EXODUS 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 word to all the witness of Yisra El, saying,
In the tenth of this month
every man take a lamb,
for the house of their fathers
— a lamb for a house:
4 and if the household be too diminished for the lamb,
he and his fellow tabernacler next to his house
take for the evaluation of the souls;
every man according to the food of his mouth
estimate for the lamb:
5 an integrity lamb, a yearling son:
take from the lambs, or from the goats:
6 and guard it
until the fourteenth day of the same month:
and the whole congregation of the witness of Yisra El
slaughters it between evenings:
7 and takes of the blood
and gives it on the two side posts
and on the lintel of the houses, wherein they eat it:
8 and eat the flesh in that night,
roast with fire and matsah;
eat it with bitters:
9 neither eat it raw
nor in stewing, stewed with water
— but roast with fire;
his head with his legs and with its inwards:
10 and naught thereof remains until the morning;
and what remains thereof until the morning
you burn with fire.
And eat it thus:
with your loins girded, your shoes on your feet,
and your staff in your hand; and you eat it in haste:
it is the pasach of Yah Veh.
11 For I pass through the land of Misrayim this night
and smite all the firstbirth in the land of Misrayim
— both human and animal;
and I work judgment
against all the elohim of Misrayim:
I — Yah Veh.
12 And the blood becomes a sign to you
on the houses where you are:
and when I see the blood, I leap over you:
and the plague becomes not on you to ruin you
when I smite the land of Misrayim.
MEMORIAL DAY
14 And this day becomes your memorial:
celebrate a celebration to Yah Veh
throughout your generations;
celebrate by an eternal statute:
seven days you eat matsah;
surely the first day
you shabbathize yeast from your houses:
for whoever eats fermentation
from the first day until the seventh day,
that soul becomes cut off from Yisra El.
And the first day is a holy convocation
and the seventh day
becomes a holy convocation to you;
work not therein,
except what every soul eat
— only work that:
and guard the matsah;
for in this selfsame day I bring your hosts
from the land of Misrayim:

EXODUS 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

therefore shall ye observe **guard** this day
in your generations
by an *ordinance for ever* **eternal statute**.
18 In the first *month*,
on the fourteenth day of the month at even,
ye shall eat *unleavened bread* **matsah**,
until the one and twentieth day of the month at even.
19 Seven days
shall there be no *leaven* **yeast** found in your houses:
for whosoever eateth that which is *leavened* **fermented**,
even that soul shall be cut off
from the *congregation* **witness of Israel Yisra El**,
whether he be a *stranger sojourner*,
or *born* **native** in the land.
20 Ye shall eat *nothing leavened* **naught fermented**;
in all your *habitations* **settlements**
shall ye eat *unleavened bread* **matsah**.
21 Then *Moses* **Mosheh**
called for all the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and said unto them,
Draw out and take you a *lamb of the flock*
according to your families,
and *kill* **slaughter** the *passover* **pasach**.
22 And ye shall take a *bunch* **bundle** of hyssop,
and dip it in the blood that is in the bason,
and *strike* **touch** the lintel and the two side posts
with the blood that is in the bason;
and *none* **no man** of you shall go out
at the *door* **portal** of his house until the morning.
23 For *the LORD will* **Yah Veh shall** pass through
to smite the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**;
and when he seeth the blood upon the lintel,
and on the two side posts,
the LORD **Yah Veh**
will pass **shall leap** over the *door* **portal**,
and *will* **shall not suffer** *give* the *destroyer* **ruiner**
to come in unto your houses to smite you.
24 And ye shall *observe* **guard** this *thing* **word**
for an *ordinance* **eternal statute**
to thee and to thy sons *for ever*.
25 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
when ye be come to the land
which *the LORD will* **Yah Veh shall** give you,
according as he hath *promised* **worded**,
that ye shall *keep* **guard** this service.
26 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
when your *children* **sons** shall say unto you,
What mean ye by this service?
27 That ye shall say,
It is the sacrifice
of *the LORD'S passover* **Yah Veh's pasach**,
who *passed* **leaped** over the houses
of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
when he smote the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
and *delivered* **rescued** our houses.
And the people bowed the *head*
and *worshipped* **prostrated**.
28 And the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El** went away,
and *did* **worked**
as *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had *commanded* **misvahed**
Moses **Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon**,
so *did* **worked** they.
29 And **so be** it *came to pass*, that at midnight
the LORD **Yah Veh** smote all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
from the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
that sat on his throne
unto the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of the captive
that was in the *dungeon* **well**;
and all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of *cattle* **animals**.
30 And *Pharaoh* **Paroh** rose up in the night,
he, and all his servants, and all the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**;
and there was a great cry in *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
for there was not a house
where there was not one *dead* **who died**.
31 And he called for *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon**
by night, and said,
Rise up, and get you forth from among my people,
both ye and the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**;

EXODUS 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and you guard this day in your generations
by an eternal statute.
18 In the first,
on the fourteenth day of the month at evening,
eat matsah
until the twenty—first day of the month:
seven days
no yeast is found in your houses:
for whoever eats any fermented,
cut off that soul from the witness of Yisra El
— among sojourners or among natives in the land.
20 Eat naught fermented:
in all your settlements, eat matsah.
21 Then Mosheh calls for all the elders of Yisra El
and says to them,
Draw out and take of the flock for your families
and slaughter the pasach:
and take a bundle of hyssop
and dip it in the blood in the bason:
and touch the lintel and the two side posts
with the blood in the bason:
and no man of you goes out
at the portal of his house until morning:
23 for Yah Veh passes through to smite the Misrayim;
and when he sees the blood on the lintel
and on the two side posts,
Yah Veh leaps over the portal
and gives not
that the ruiner come in to your houses to smite you.
24 And you guard this word for an eternal statute
— to you and to your sons.
25 And so be it,
when you come to the land Yah Veh gives you,
as he worded,
that you guard this service.
26 And so be it, when your sons say to you,
What is this service you have?
27 That you say,
It is the sacrifice of the pasach of Yah Veh,
who leaped over the houses of the sons of Yisra El
in Misrayim
when he smote the Misrayim and rescued our houses.
— and the people bow and prostrate.
28 And the sons of Yisra El go and work
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh and Aharon
— thus they work.
29 And so be it,
at midnight Yah Veh smites all the firstbirthed
in the land of Misrayim,
from the firstbirth of Paroh sitting on his throne
to the firstbirth of the captives in the well;
and all the firstbirth of animals:
and Paroh rises at night
— he and all his servants and all the Misrayim;
and there becomes a great cry in Misrayim;
for there is not a house
where there is not one who died.
31 And he calls for Mosheh and Aharon by night
and says, Rise! Get out from among my people
— both you and the sons of Yisra El;

EXODUS 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and go, serve the LORD Yah Veh,
as ye have said **worded**.

32 Also take your flocks and your *herds oxen*,
as ye have said **worded**, and be gone; and bless me also.

33 And the Egyptians **Misrayim**
were *urgent* **prevailed** upon the people,
that they might send them out of the land in haste;
for they said, We be *all dead men* **about to die**.

34 And the people *took* **bore** their dough
before it was *leavened* **fermented**,
their *kneadingtroughs* **doughboards**
being bound up in their clothes upon their shoulders.

35 And the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
did **worked** according to the word of *Moses* **Mosheh**;
and they *borrowed* **asked** of the Egyptians **Misrayim**
jewels **instruments** of silver,
and *jewels* **instruments** of gold,
and *raiment* **clothes**:

36 And the LORD **Yah Veh**
gave **granted** the people *favour* **charism**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the Egyptians **Misrayim**,
so that they lent unto them such things as they required.
And they *spoiled* the Egyptians
— **asking and stripping the Misrayim**.

37 And the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
journeyed **pulled stakes** from Rameses
to *Succoth* **Sukkoth/Brush Arbors**,
about six hundred thousand on foot
that were *men* **mighty**,
beside children **apart from toddlers**.

38 And a *mixed multitude* **great rabble**
went up **ascended** also with them;
and flocks, and *herds* **oxen**,
even very much **cattle mighty heavy chattel**.

39 And they baked
unleavened cakes **matsah ashcakes** of the dough
which they brought forth out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
for it was not *leavened* **fermented**;
because they were *thrust* **expelled** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and could not *tarry* **linger**,
neither had they *prepared* **worked** for themselves
any *victual* **hunt**.

40 Now the *sojourning* **settlements**
of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
who *dwelt* **settled** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
was four hundred **years** and thirty years.

41 And **so be** it *came to pass*
at the end of the four hundred **years** and thirty years,
even the selfsame day **so be** it *came to pass*,
that all the hosts of the LORD **Yah Veh**
went out from the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.

42 It is a night to be *much observed* **guarded**
unto the LORD **Yah Veh**
for bringing them out from the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
this is that night of the LORD **Yah Veh**
to be *observed* **guarded**
of all the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
in their generations.

43 And the LORD **Yah Veh**
said unto *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon**,
This is the *ordinance* **statute** of the *passover* **pasach**:
There shall no **son of a** stranger eat thereof:
But every man's servant
that is *bought for money* **a chattel of silver**,
when thou hast circumcised him,
then shall he eat thereof.

45 A *foreigner* **settler** and an *hired servant* **hireling**
shall not eat thereof.

46 In one house shall it be eaten;
thou shalt not carry forth ought of the flesh
abroad out of the house;
neither shall ye break a bone thereof.

47 All the *congregation* **witness of Israel Yisra El**
shall *keep* **work** it.

48 And when a *stranger* **sojourner** shall sojourn with thee,
and *will keep* **shall work** the *passover* **pasach**
to the LORD **Yah Veh**,
let all his males be circumcised,
and then let him *come near* **approach** and *keep* **work** it;

EXODUS 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and go, serve Yah Veh, as you worded:
32 take both your flocks and your oxen,
as you worded, and be gone; and bless me also.

33 And the Misrayim prevail on the people,
that they send them from the land in haste;
for they say, We all die!

34 And the people bear their dough ere it ferments
— binding their doughboards
in their clothes on their shoulders.

35 And the sons of Yisra El
work according to the word of Mosheh;
and they ask of the Misrayim
instruments of silver, instruments of gold and clothes:
36 and Yah Veh grants the people charism
in the eyes of the Misrayim,
— asking and stripping the Misrayim.

37 And the sons of Yisra El
pull stakes from Rameses to Sukkoth/Brush Arbors,
about six hundred thousand on foot — the mighty,
apart from toddlers:
38 and a great rabble also ascends with them;
and flocks and oxen — mighty heavy chattel:
39 and they bake matsah ashcakes of the dough
they bring from Misrayim,
for it is not fermented;
because they were expelled from Misrayim
and could not linger,
and they worked not any hunt for themselves.

40 The settlements of the sons of Yisra El
who settled in Misrayim,
is four hundred years and thirty years.

41 And so be it,
at the end of the four hundred years and thirty years,
even that selfsame day, so be it,
all the hosts of Yah Veh go from the land of Misrayim.
42 It is a night to be guarded to Yah Veh
for bringing them from the land of Misrayim:
this is that night of Yah Veh to be guarded
by all the sons of Yisra El in their generations.

43 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh and Aharon,
This is the statute of the pasach:
no son of a stranger eats thereof:
44 and every servant of a man
who is a chattel of silver,
when you circumcise him,
then he eats thereof:

45 a settler and a hireling eats not thereof.

46 Eat in one house:
neither carry forth aught of the flesh from the house;
nor break a bone thereof:
47 all the witness of Yisra El work it.

48 And when a sojourner sojourns with you
and works the pasach to Yah Veh,
circumcise all his males:
and then have him approach and work it;

EXODUS 12, 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and he shall be as one that is born a native in the land:
for no uncircumcised person shall eat thereof.
49 One law **torah** shall be
to him that is homeborn **the native**,
and unto the stranger **sojourner**
that sojourneth among you.
50 Thus *did* **worked** all the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**;
as the **LORD** commanded **Yah Veh** **misvahed**
Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon**, so *did* **worked** they.
51 And **so be** it came to pass the selfsame day,
that the **LORD** **Yah Veh**
did bring the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**
out of the land of **Egypt** **Misrayim** by their **armies** **hosts**.

13

And the **LORD** spake **Yah Veh** **worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
2 Sanctify **Hallow** unto me all the **firstborn** **firstbirthed**,
whatsoever openeth **every burster** of the womb
among the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**,
both of man **among human** and of beast **among animal**:
it is mine.
3 And Moses **Mosheh** said unto the people,
Remember this day,
in which ye came out from **Egypt** **Misrayim**,
out of the house of **bondage** **servants**;
for by strength of hand
the **LORD** **Yah Veh** brought you out from *this place* **thus**:
there shall no **leavened bread** **fermentation** be eaten.
4 This day came ye out in the month **Abib**.
5 And it shall be
when the **LORD** **Yah Veh** shall bring thee
into the land of the **Canaanites** **Kenaaniy**,
and the **Hittites** **Hethiy**, and the **Amorites** **Emoriy**,
and the **Hivites** **Hivviy**, and the **Jebusites** **Yebusiy**,
which he **sware** **oathed** unto thy fathers to give thee,
a land flowing with milk and honey,
that thou shalt **keep** **serve** this service in this month.
6 Seven days thou shalt eat **unleavened bread** **matsah**,
and in the seventh day
shall be a **feast** **celebration** to the **LORD** **Yah Veh**.
7 **Unleavened bread** **Matsah** shall be eaten seven days;
and there shall no **leavened bread** **fermentation**
be seen with thee,
neither shall there be **leaven** **yeast** seen with thee
in all thy **quarters** **borders**.
8 And thou shalt **shew** **tell** thy son in that day, saying,
This is done because of that
which the **LORD** **did** **Yah Veh** **worked** unto me
when I came forth out of **Egypt** **Misrayim**.
9 And it shall be for a sign unto thee upon thine hand,
and for a memorial between thine eyes,
that the **LORD'S** **law** **Yah Veh's torah**
may be in thy mouth:
for with a strong hand hath the **LORD** **Yah Veh**
brought thee out of **Egypt** **Misrayim**.
10 Thou shalt therefore **keep** **guard** this **ordinance** **statute**
in his season from **year** **day** to **year** **day**.
11 And it shall be
when the **LORD** **Yah Veh** shall bring thee
into the land of the **Canaanites** **Kenaaniy**,
as he **sware** **oathed** unto thee and to thy fathers,
and shall give it thee,
12 That thou shalt **set apart** **pass** unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**
all that openeth **every burster** of the matrix,
and every **firstling** **fetus**
that *cometh* **bursteth** of a **beast** **an animal**
which *thou hast* **became thee**;
the males shall be the **LORD'S** **Yah Veh's**.
13 And every **firstling** **burster** of an **ass** **a he burro**
thou shalt redeem with a lamb;
and if thou **wilt** **shalt** not redeem it,
then thou shalt break his neck:
and all the **firstborn** **firstbirthed** of man **humanity**
among thy children **sons** shalt thou redeem.
14 And it shall be
when thy son asketh thee *in time to come* **to morrow**,
saying, What is this?
that thou shalt say unto him, By strength of hand
the **LORD** **Yah Veh** brought us out from **Egypt** **Misrayim**,

EXODUS 12, 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and he becomes as a native in the land
— for no uncircumcised eats thereof
— one torah to the native
and to the sojourner who sojourns among you.
50 Thus work all the sons of Yisra El:
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh and Aharon,
thus they work.
51 And so be it, the selfsame day,
Yah Veh brings the sons of Yisra El
from the land of Misrayim by their hosts.

HALLOWING THE FIRSTBIRTH

13

And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Hallow to me all the firstbirths
— every burster of the womb
among the sons of Yisra El
— among human and among animal: it is mine.
3 And Mosheh says to the people,
Remember this day you come from Misrayim
— from the house of servants;
for by strength of hand, Yah Veh brought you out:
eat no fermentation.
4 This day you come out in the month Abib.
5 And so be it,
when Yah Veh brings you to the land
of the Kenaaniy and the Hethiy and the Emoriy
and the Hivviy and the Yebusiy
— which he oathed to your fathers to give you
— a land flowing with milk and honey
that you serve this service in this month:
seven days you eat matsah
and the seventh day is a celebration to Yah Veh:
eat matsah seven days:
yes, neither is fermentation seen with you
nor yeast seen with you in all your borders.
8 And tell your son in that day, saying,
Because of what Yah Veh worked to me
in going from Misrayim.
9 — and it becomes a sign for you on your hand
and for a memorial between your eyes,
that the torah of Yah Veh is in your mouth:
for with a strong hand
Yah Veh brings you from Misrayim.
10 — and guard this statute
in his season from day to day.
11 And so be it, when Yah Veh brings you
into the land of the Kenaaniy,
as he oaths to you and to your fathers to give you,
pass every burster of the matrix to Yah Veh
and every fetus that bursts from an animal of yours;
the males are for Yah Veh:
and redeem every burster of a he burro
with a lamb;
and if you redeem it not, then break his neck:
and redeem every firstbirth of humanity
among your sons.
14 And so be it,
when your son asks you on the morrow,
saying, What is this?
Say to him, By strength of hand
Yah Veh brought us out from Misrayim,

EXODUS 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

15 from the house of bondage servants:
And **so be** it came to pass,
when Pharaoh Paroh
would hardly let **calloused from sending us go away**,
that the LORD slew **Yah Veh slaughtered**
all the **firstborn firstbirthed** in the land of Egypt Misrayim,
both the **firstborn firstbirthed of man humanity**,
and the **firstborn firstbirthed of beast animal**:
therefore I sacrifice to the LORD **Yah Veh**
all that openeth **every burster of the matrix**, being males;
but all the **firstborn firstbirthed of my children sons** I redeem.
16 And it shall be for a **token sign** upon thine hand,
and for **frontlets phylacteries** between thine eyes:
for by strength of hand
the LORD **Yah Veh** brought us forth
out of Egypt **Misrayim**.
17 And **so be** it came to pass,
when Pharaoh Paroh had let **sent** the people go away,
that God **Elohim** led them not *through* the way
of the land of the **Philistines Peleshethiym**,
although **because** that was near;
for God **but because Elohim** said,
Lest peradventure the people **repent sigh**
when they see war,
and they return to Egypt **Misrayim**:
18 But God led **Elohim turned** the people about around,
through the way of the wilderness of the **Red Reed** sea:
and the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**
went up **harnessed ascended in ranks of five**
out of the land of Egypt **Misrayim**.
19 And **Moses Mosheh**
took the bones of **Joseph Yoseph** with him:
for **in oathing**, he had **straitly sworn oathed**
the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**, saying,
God will surely **In visiting, Elohim shall** visit you;
and ye shall **carry up ascend** my bones
away hence with you.
20 And they took their journey **pulled stakes**
from Succoth **Sukkoth/Brush Arbors**,
and encamped in Etham,
in the **edge end** of the wilderness.
21 And the LORD **Yah Veh** went before them **at their face**
by day in a pillar of a cloud, to lead them the way;
and by night in a pillar of fire, to give them light;
to go by day and night:
22 He took **departed not away**
the pillar of the cloud by day,
nor the pillar of fire by night,
from before **the face of the people**.

PAROH PURSUES THE SONS OF YISRA EL

14 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto **Moses Mosheh**, saying,
2 Speak **Word** unto the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
that they turn and encamp
before **Pihahiroth at the face of Pi Ha Hiroth**,
between Migdol and the sea,
over against **Baalzephon at the face of Baal Sefhon**:
before it shall ye encamp by the sea.
3 For **Pharaoh will Paroh shall** say
of the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
They are entangled in the land,
the wilderness hath shut them in.
4 And I will **harden Pharaoh's shall callous Paroh's** heart,
that he shall **follow pursue** after them;
and I will **shall be honoured upon Pharaoh through Paroh**,
and **upon through** all his **host valiant**;
that the **Egyptians Misrayim** may know
that I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh**.
And they **did worked** so.
5 And it was told the **king sovereign of Egypt Misrayim**
that the people fled:
and the heart of **Pharaoh Paroh** and of his servants
was turned against the people,
and they said, Why have we **done worked** this,
that we have **let Israel go sent Yisra El away**
from serving us?
6 And he **made ready bound** his chariot,
and took his people with him:
7 And he took six hundred chosen chariots,

EXODUS 13, 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

15 from the house of servants:
and so be it,
Paroh callouses from sending us away,
and Yah Veh slaughters all the firstbirth
in the land of Misrayim
— both the firstbirth of humanity
and the firstbirth of animal:
so I sacrifice
every male burster of the matrix to Yah Veh;
and redeem all the firstbirth of my sons.
16 And it becomes for a sign on your hand
and for phylacteries between your eyes:
for by strength of hand
Yah Veh brings us forth from Misrayim.
17 And so be it,
when Paroh sends the people away,
Elohim leads them not
by the way of the land of the Peleshethiym
because that *is* near;
but because Elohim said,
Lest perhaps the people sigh when they see war
and return to Misrayim:
18 and Elohim turns the people around,
through the way of the wilderness of the Reed sea:
and the sons of Yisra El ascend in ranks of five
from the land of Misrayim.
19 And Mosheh takes the bones of Yoseph with him:
for in oathing, he oaths the sons of Yisra El,
saying, In visiting, Elohim visits you;
and ascend my bones away from here with you.
20 And they pull stakes from Sukkoth/Brush Arbors
and encamp in Etham, in the end of the wilderness.
21 And Yah Veh goes at their face
by day in a pillar of a cloud, to lead them the way;
and by night in a pillar of fire, to give them light;
to go by day and night:
22 he departs neither the pillar of the cloud by day,
nor the pillar of fire by night,
from the face of the people.

PAROH PURSUES THE SONS OF YISRA EL

14 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Word to the sons of Yisra El,
to turn and encamp at the face of Pi Ha Hiroth
between Migdol and the sea
at the face of Baal Sefhon:
encamp opposite from it by the sea.
3 For Paroh said of the sons of Yisra El,
They entangle in the land;
the wilderness shuts them in.
4 And I callous the heart of Paroh
to pursue after them;
that I become honored through Paroh
and through all his valiant;
that the Misrayim knows I — Yah Veh.
— and thus they work.
5 And they tell the sovereign of Misrayim
that the people flee:
and the heart of Paroh and of his servants
turns against the people
and they say, Why work we this,
— to send Yisra El away from serving us?
6 And he binds his chariot
and takes his people with him:
7 and he takes six hundred chosen chariots

EXODUS 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 and all the chariots of Egypt **Misrayim**,
and *captains* **tertiaries** over every one of them.
And the **LORD Yah Veh**
hardened **calloused** the heart of *Pharaoh Paroh*
king sovereign of Egypt **Misrayim**,
and he pursued after the *children sons* of Israel **Yisra El**:
and the *children sons* of Israel **Yisra El**
went out with an *high* **lifted** hand.
9 But the *Egyptians* **Misrayim** pursued after them,
all the horses and chariots of *Pharaoh Paroh*,
and his *horsemen* **cavalry**, and his *army* **valiant**,
and overtook them encamping by the sea,
beside *Pihahiroth* **Pi Ha Hiroth**,
before *Baalzephon* **at the face of Baal Sephon**.
10 And when *Pharaoh drew nigh* **Paroh approached**,
the *children sons* of Israel **Yisra El** lifted up their eyes,
and, behold,
the *Egyptians* **marched Misrayim pulled stakes** after them;
and they were *sore afraid* **mightily awed**:
and the *children sons* of Israel **Yisra El**
cried out unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
11 And they said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Because there were no *graves* **tombs** in Egypt **Misrayim**,
hast thou taken us away to die in the wilderness?
wherefore hast thou *dealt* **worked** thus with us,
to carry us forth out of Egypt **Misrayim**?
12 Is not this the word
that we *did tell* **worded** thee in Egypt **Misrayim**,
saying, *Let us alone* **Cease!**,
that we may serve the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**?
For it had been better for us
to serve the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
than that we should die in the wilderness.
13 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto the people,
Fear **Awe** ye not, stand still,
and see the salvation of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
which he *will shew* **shall work** to you to day:
for the *Egyptians* **Misrayim** whom ye have seen to day,
ye shall see them again no more *for ever* **eternally**.
14 The **LORD Yah Veh** shall fight for you,
and ye shall *hold your* **peace hush**.
15 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Wherefore criest thou unto me?
Speak **word** unto the *children sons* of Israel **Yisra El**,
that they *go forward* **pull stakes**:
16 But lift thou up thy rod,
and *stretch out* **spread** thine hand over the sea,
and *divide* **split** it:
and the *children sons* of Israel **Yisra El**
shall go on dry *ground* through the midst of the sea.
17 And I, behold,
I *will harden* **shall callous** the hearts
of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
and they shall follow them:
and I *will get me honour* **shall be honoured**
upon Pharaoh **through Paroh**,
and *upon* **through** all his *host* **valiant**,
upon **through** his chariots,
and *upon* **through** his *horsemen* **cavalry**.
18 And the *Egyptians* **Misrayim** shall know
that I *am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**,
when I *have gotten me honour* **shall be honoured**
upon Pharaoh **through Paroh**, *upon* **through** his chariots,
and *upon* **through** his *horsemen* **cavalry**.
19 And the angel of *God* **Elohim**,
which went
before **from the face of** the camp of Israel **Yisra El**,
removed **pulled stakes** and went behind them;
and the pillar of the cloud *went* **pulled stakes**
from *before* their face, and stood behind them:
20 And it came
between the camp of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
and *between* the camp of Israel **Yisra El**;
and it was a cloud and darkness to them,
but it *gave light* **illuminated** by night to these:
so that the one
came **approached** not near the other all the night.
21 And *Moses* **Mosheh**
stretched out **spread** his hand over the sea;

EXODUS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 and all the chariots of Misrayim
and tertiaryaries over everyone of them:
and Yah Veh callouses the heart of Paroh
sovereign of Misrayim
and he pursues after the sons of Yisra El:
and the sons of Yisra El
go out with lifted hand:
9 and the Misrayim pursue after them
— all the horses and chariots of Paroh
and his cavalry and his valiant;
and overtake them encamping by the sea
beside Pi Ha Hiroth
at the face of Baal Sephon.
10 And when Paroh approaches,
the sons of Yisra El lift their eyes, and behold,
the Misrayim pull stakes after them;
and they awe mightily.
11 And the sons of Yisra El cry out to Yah Veh,
and say to Mosheh,
Because there are no tombs in Misrayim,
take you us away to die in the wilderness?
Why work you thus with us
— to carry us forth from Misrayim?
12 Is not this the word we worded you in Misrayim,
saying, Cease — and we serve the Misrayim?
For better for us to serve the Misrayim
than die in the wilderness.
13 And Mosheh says to the people, Awe not!
Stand still and see the salvation of Yah Veh
which he works to you today:
for the Misrayim whom you see today,
you see them never again any more eternally:
Yah Veh fights for you — and you hush.
14 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh, Why cry to me?
Word to the sons of Yisra El to pull stakes:
and you — lift your rod
and spread your hand over the sea and split it:
and the sons of Yisra El
go midst the sea on dry.
15 And I, behold,
I callous the hearts of the Misrayim
and they follow them:
and I become honored through Paroh
and through all his valiant
— through his chariots and through his cavalry:
and the Misrayim know I — Yah Veh,
when I become honored through Paroh
— through his chariots and through his cavalry.
16 And the angel of Elohim
who goes from the face of the camp of Yisra El
pulls stakes and goes behind them;
and the pillar of the cloud pulls stakes
from their face and stands behind them:
and comes between the camp of the Misrayim
and between the camp of Yisra El;
and it becomes a cloud and darkness to them,
but it illuminates by night to these:
so that the one approaches not the other all the night.
21 And Mosheh spreads his hand over the sea;

EXODUS 14, 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the LORD **Yah Veh** caused the sea to go back
by a strong east wind all that night,
and made **set** the sea **dry land parched**,
and the waters were **divided split**.
22 And the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**
went into the midst of the sea upon the **dry ground**:
and the waters were a wall unto them
on their right **hand**, and on their left.
23 And the **Egyptians Misrayim** pursued,
and went in after them to the midst of the sea,
even all **Pharaoh's Paroh's** horses,
his chariots, and his **horsemen cavalry**.
24 And **so be** it came to pass, that in the morning watch
the LORD **Yah Veh** looked
unto the **host camp** of the **Egyptians Misrayim**
through the pillar of fire and of the cloud,
and **troubled agitated**
the **host camp** of the **Egyptians Misrayim**,
And **took off clogged** their chariot wheels,
that they drave them **heavily with heaviness**:
so that the **Egyptians Misrayim** said,
Let us flee from the face of **Israel Yisra El**;
for the LORD **Yah Veh** fighteth for them
against the **Egyptians Misrayim**.
25 And the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto **Moses Mosheh**,
Stretch out Spread thine hand over the sea,
that the waters may **come again return**
upon the **Egyptians Misrayim**,
upon their chariots, and upon their **horsemen cavalry**.
26 And **Moses Mosheh**
stretched forth spread his hand over the sea,
and the sea returned to **his strength perennial**
when **at the face of** the morning **appeared**;
and the **Egyptians Misrayim** fled **against from confronting** it;
and the LORD **Yah Veh**
overthrew shook off the **Egyptians Misrayim**
in the midst of the sea.
27 And the waters returned,
and covered the chariots, and the **horsemen cavalry**,
and all the **host valiant of Pharaoh Paroh**
that came into the sea after them;
there **remained survived** not so much as **even** one of them.
28 But the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**
walked upon **dry land** in the midst of the sea;
and the waters were a wall unto them
on their right **hand**, and on their left.
29 Thus the LORD **Yah Veh** saved Israel that day
out of the hand of the **Egyptians Misrayim**;
and **Israel Yisra El** saw the **Egyptians Misrayim**
dead who died upon the sea **shore edge**.
30 And **Israel Yisra El** saw that great **work hand**
which the LORD **did Yah Veh worked**
upon the **Egyptians Misrayim**:
and the people **feared the LORD awed Yah Veh**,
and **believed the LORD trusted Yah Veh**,
and his servant **Moses Mosheh**.

THE SONG OF MOSHEH AND THE SONS OF YISRA EL

15 Then sang **Moses Mosheh**
and the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**
this song unto the LORD **Yah Veh**, and **spake said**, saying,
I **will shall** sing unto the LORD **Yah Veh**,
for **in triumphing**, he hath triumphed **gloriously**:
the horse and his rider
hath he **thrown hurled** into the sea.
2 The LORD **Yah** is my strength and song,
and he is become my salvation:
he is my **God El**,
and I **will prepare shall rest** him **an in his** habitation;
my father's **God Elohim**, and I **will shall** exalt him.
3 The LORD **Yah Veh** is a man of war:
the LORD **Yah Veh** is his name.
4 **Pharaoh's Paroh's** chariots and his **host valiant**
hath he **cast poured** into the sea:
his chosen **captains tertiaries** also
are drowned in the **Red Reed** sea.
5 The **depths abysses** have covered them:
they **sank descended** into the **bottom deep** as a stone.
6 Thy right **hand, O LORD Yah Veh**,

EXODUS 14, 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and Yah Veh turns back the sea
by a strong east wind all that night
and parches the sea and splits the waters.
22 And the sons of Yisra El
go midst the sea on the dry:
and the waters *are* a wall to them
on their right and on their left.
23 And the Misrayim pursue
and go in after them midst the sea
— all the horses of Paroh,
his chariots and his cavalry.
24 And so be it, in the morning watch,
Yah Veh looks to the camp of the Misrayim
through the pillar of fire and of the cloud
and agitates the camp of the Misrayim;
and clogs* their chariot wheels
so that they drive them with heaviness:
so that the Misrayim say,
Let us flee from the face of Yisra El;
for Yah Veh fights for them against the Misrayim.
*clogs: see Lamsa
25 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Spread your hand over the sea,
and return the waters on the Misrayim
on their chariots and on their cavalry.
26 And Mosheh spreads his hand over the sea
and the sea returns perennial
at the face of the morning;
and the Misrayim flee from confronting it;
and Yah Veh shakes off the Misrayim midst the sea:
and the waters return
and cover the chariots and the cavalry
and all the valiant of Paroh
who come into the sea after them;
not even one of them survives.
27 And the sons of Yisra El walk on dry midst the sea;
and the waters *are* a wall to them
on their right and on their left:
and that day,
Yah Veh saves Israel from the hand of the Misrayim;
and Yisra El sees the Misrayim die on the sea edge:
and Yisra El sees the great hand
Yah Veh worked on the Misrayim:
and the people awe Yah Veh
and trust Yah Veh and his servant Mosheh.

THE SONG OF MOSHEH AND THE SONS OF YISRA EL

15 Then Mosheh and the sons of Yisra El
sing this song to Yah Veh, and say, saying,
I sing to Yah Veh,
for in triumphing, he triumphs:
he hurls the horse and rider into the sea.
2 Yah becomes my strength and song
and he becomes my salvation:
my El; and I rest in his habitation:
Elohim of my father; and I exalt him.
3 Yah Veh *is* a man of war:
Yah Veh *is* his name.
4 The chariots of Paroh and all his valiant
he pours into the sea:
and his chosen tertiaries
drown in the Reed sea:
the abysses cover them:
they descend into the deep as a stone.
5 Your right, O Yah Veh,

EXODUS 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

is become *glorious* **mighty** in *power force*:
thy right *hand*, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
hath *dashed in pieces* **disintegrated** the enemy.
7 And in the *greatness* **abundance**
of *thine excellency* **thy pomp**
thou hast *overthrown* **demolished** them
that rose *up against thee*:
thou sentest forth thy *wrath* **fuming**,
which consumed them as stubble.
8 And with the *blast* **spirit/wind** of thy nostrils
the waters were *gathered together* **heaped**,
the *floods* **flows** stood upright as an heap,
and the *depths* **abysses** were *congealed* **curdled**
in the heart of the sea.
9 The enemy said, I *will* **shall** pursue, I *will* **shall** overtake,
I *will* **shall** allot the *spoil* **loot**;
my *lust* **soul** shall be *satisfied upon* **filled of** them;
I *will* **shall** draw my sword,
my hand shall *destroy* **dispossess** them.
10 Thou didst *blow* **puff** with thy *wind* **spirit/wind**,
the sea covered them:
they sank as lead in the mighty waters.
11 Who is like unto thee, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
among the *gods* **el**?
who is like thee, *glorious* **mighty** in holiness,
fearful **awesome** in *praises* **halals**,
doing wonders **working marvels**?
12 Thou *stretchedst out* **extendedst** thy right *hand*,
the earth swallowed them.
13 Thou in thy mercy
hast led forth the people which thou hast redeemed:
thou hast guided them in thy strength
unto thy holy habitation **of rest**.
14 The people shall hear, and *be afraid* **quiver**:
sorrow **pangs** shall take hold on
the *inhabitants of Palestina* **them who settled Pelesheth**.
15 Then the *dukes* **chiliarchs** of Edom
shall be *amazed* **terrified**;
the mighty *men* of Moab,
trembling shall take hold upon them;
all the *inhabitants of Canaan* **they who settled Kenaan**
shall melt away.
16 *Fear* **Terror** and *dread* **fear** shall fall upon them;
by the greatness of thine arm
they shall be as still as a stone;
till thy people pass over, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
till the people pass over,
which thou hast *purchased* **chatteded**.
17 Thou shalt bring them in,
and plant them in the mountain of thine inheritance,
in the *place* **establishment**, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which thou hast made for thee to *dwell* **settle** in,
in the *Sanctuary* **Holies**, O *LORD* **Adonay**,
which thy hands have established.
18 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall reign
for ever **eternally** and *ever* **eternally**.
19 For the horse of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
went in with his chariots
and with his *horsemen* **cavalry** into the sea,
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
brought again **returned** the waters of the sea upon them;
but the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
went on dry *land* in the midst of the sea.

THE SONG OF MIRYAM

20 And *Miriam* **Miryam** the prophetess,
the sister of *Aaron* **Aharon**,
took a *timbrel* **tambourine** in her hand;
and all the women went out after her
with *timbrels* **tambourines** and with **round** dances.
21 And *Miriam* **Miryam** answered them,
Sing ye to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
for **in triumphing**, he hath triumphed *gloriously*;
the horse and his rider
hath he *thrown* **hurled** into the sea.

THE WATERS OF MARAH

22 So *Moses* *brought Israel* **Mosheh had Yisra El** **pull stakes**
from the *Red* **Reed** sea,
and they went out into the wilderness of Shur;

EXODUS 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

becomes mighty in force:
your right, O Yah Veh,
disintegrates the enemy.
7 And in the abundance of your pomp
you demolish all who rise:
you send your fuming
to consume them as stubble.
8 And with the spirit/wind of your nostrils
the waters heap:
the flows stand upright as a heap
and the abysses curdle in the heart of the sea.
9 The enemy says, I pursue!
I overtake! I allot the loot!
My soul *is* filled of them:
I draw my sword;
my hand dispossesses them.
10 You puff your spirit/wind;
the sea covers them:
they sink as lead
in the mighty waters.
11 Who *is* like you, O Yah Veh, among the *el*?
Who *is* like you, mighty in holiness?
— awesome in halals, working marvels?
12 You spread your right;
the earth swallows them:
you in your mercy
lead the people you redeem:
you guide them in your strength
to your holy habitation of rest.
13 The people hear and quiver:
pangs take hold on them who settle Pelesheth:
14 Then the chiliarchs of Edom terrify;
the mighty of Moab, trembling,
take hold on them;
all who settle Kenaan melt away.
15 Terror and fear fall on them;
by the greatness of your arm
they become as still as a stone;
until your people pass over, O Yah Veh,
until the people you chattel pass over.
16 You bring them in
and plant them in the mountain of your inheritance
— in the establishment, O Yah Veh,
which you made for you to settle in
— in the Holies, O Adonay,
which your hands established.
17 Yah Veh reigns eternally and eternally.
18 For the horse of Paroh
goes in;
with his chariots and with his cavalry
into the sea:
and Yah Veh returns the waters of the sea on them;
and the sons of Yisra El go on dry midst the sea.

THE SONG OF MIRYAM

20 And Miryam the prophetess, the sister of Aharon,
takes a tambourine in her hand;
and all the women follow her
with tambourines and with round dances.
21 And Miryam answers them,
Sing to Yah Veh,
for in triumphing, he triumphs;
he hurls the horse and his rider into the sea.

THE WATERS OF MARAH

22 And Mosheh
has Yisra El pull stakes from the Reed sea;
and they go to the wilderness of Shur:

EXODUS 15, 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they went three days in the wilderness,
and found no water.
23 And when they came to Marah,
they could not drink of the waters of Marah,
for they were bitter:
therefore the name of it was called Marah.
24 And the people murmured against Moses **Mosheh**,
saying, What shall we drink?
25 And he cried unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and the **LORD shewed him Yah Veh pointed out** a tree,
which when he had cast into the waters,
the waters were *made sweet* **sweetened**:
there he *made set* for them
a statute and *an ordinance* **a judgment**,
and there he *proved* **tested** them,
26 And said,
If **in hearkening**, thou *wilt diligently* **shalt** hearken
to the voice of the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
and *wilt do* **shalt work**
that which is *right* **straight** in his *sight* **eyes**,
and *wilt give ear* **shalt hearken**
to his *commandments* **misvoth**,
and *keep* **guard** all his statutes,
I *will* **shall** put none of these *diseases* **sicknesses**
upon thee,
which I have *brought* **put** upon the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**:
for I am the **LORD** that *healeth thee* **I — Yah Veh Raphah**.
27 And they came to Elim,
where were twelve *wells* **fountains** of water,
and *threescore and ten* **seventy** palm trees:
and they encamped there by the waters.
16 And they *took their journey* **pulled stakes** from Elim,
and all the *congregation* **witness**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
came unto the wilderness of Sin,
which is between Elim and *Sinai* **Sinay**,
on the fifteenth day of the second month
after their departing out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
2 And the whole *congregation* **witness**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
murmured against Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon**
in the wilderness:
3 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** said unto them,
Would to God **O that** we had *died* **given to die**
by the hand of the **LORD Yah Veh**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
when we *sat* **settled** by the flesh *pots* **cauldrons**,
and when we did eat bread to *the full* **satiety**;
for ye have brought us forth into this wilderness,
to *kill* **deathify** this whole *assembly* **congregation**
with *hunger* **famine**.
MANNA AND QUAIL
4 Then said the **LORD Yah Veh** unto Moses **Mosheh**,
Behold,
I *will* **shall** rain bread from *heaven* **the heavens** for you;
and the people shall go out
and *gather a certain rate* **glean their word**
every day **day by day**, that I may *prove* **test** them,
whether they *will* **shall** walk in my *law* **torah**, or no.
5 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*, that on the sixth day
they shall prepare that which they bring in;
and it shall be *twice as much* **double**
as they *gather daily* **glean day by day**.
6 And Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon**
said unto all the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
At even, then ye shall know that the **LORD Yah Veh**
hath brought you out from the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
7 And in the morning,
then ye shall see the *glory* **honour** of the **LORD Yah Veh**;
for that he heareth your murmurings
against the **LORD Yah Veh**:
and what are we, that ye murmur against us?
8 And Moses **Mosheh** said, *This shall be*,
when the **LORD Yah Veh** shall give you
in the evening flesh to eat,
and in the morning bread to *the full* **satiety**;
for that the **LORD Yah Veh** heareth your murmurings
which ye murmur against him:
and what are we?

EXODUS 15, 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they go three days in the wilderness
and find no water:
23 and they come to Marah
and cannot drink of the waters of Marah
for they are bitter:
so they call the name Marah.
24 And the people murmur against Mosheh,
saying, What drink we?
25 And he cries to Yah Veh;
and Yah Veh points out a tree
which he casts into the waters
— and the waters sweeten:
and there he sets a statute and a judgment for them
and there he tests them:
26 and says, If in hearkening,
you hearken to the voice of Yah Veh your Elohim
and work straight in his eyes
and hearken to his misvoth
and guard all his statutes,
I put none of these sicknesses on you,
which I put on the Misrayim:
for I — Yah Veh Raphah.
27 And they come to Elim;
and there are twelve fountains of water
and seventy palm trees:
and there they encamp by the waters.
16 And they pull stakes from Elim;
and all the witness of the sons of Yisra El
come to the wilderness of Sin
between Elim and Sinay
— on the fifteenth day of the second month
after departing from the land of Misrayim:
2 and the whole witness of the sons of Yisra El
murmur against Mosheh and Aharon
in the wilderness.
3 And the sons of Yisra El say to them,
O that we were given to die by the hand of Yah Veh
— in the land of Misrayim
when we settled by the flesh cauldrons
and when we ate bread to satiety;
for you bring us into this wilderness,
to deathify this whole congregation with famine.
MANNA AND QUAIL
4 Then Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Behold, I rain bread from the heavens for you;
and the people go out
and glean their day by day word:
and I test them,
whether they walk in my torah, or no.
5 And so be it, on the sixth day,
they prepare what they bring in;
and it becomes double
of what they glean day by day.
6 And Mosheh and Aharon
say to all the sons of Yisra El,
At evening, you know that Yah Veh
brings you from the land of Misrayim:
7 and in the morning,
you see the honor of Yah Veh;
for he hears your murmurings against Yah Veh:
And who are we, that you murmur against us?
8 And Mosheh says,
In the evening, Yah Veh gives you flesh to eat
and in the morning bread to satiety;
for Yah Veh hears the murmurings
you murmur against him!
And who are we?

EXODUS 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

your murmurings are not against us,
but against *the LORD Yah Veh*.

9 And Moses spake **Mosheh** said unto Aaron **Aharon**,
Say unto all the congregation **witness**
of the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**,
Come near *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh*:
for he hath heard your murmurings.

10 And **so be** it came to pass,
as Aaron spake **Aharon** worded
unto the whole congregation **witness**
of the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**,
that they *looked set their face* toward the wilderness,
and, behold, the *glory honour* of the **LORD Yah Veh**
appeared was seen in the cloud.

11 And the **LORD** spake **Yah Veh** worded
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
12 I have heard the murmurings
of the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**:
speak word unto them, saying,
At even Between evenings ye shall eat flesh,
and in the morning ye shall *be filled satiate* with bread;
and ye shall know
that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh* your *God Elohim*.

13 And **so be** it came to pass,
that at even
the quails *came up ascended*, and covered the camp:
and in the morning
the dew lay round about the **host camp**.

14 And when the dew that lay *was gone up ascended*,
behold, upon the face of the wilderness
there lay a small round thing a thin shred,
as *small thin* as the hoar frost on the **ground earth**.

15 And when the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El** saw it,
they said *one man to another brother*, *It is manna*:
for they wist not what it was.

And Moses **Mosheh** said unto them, This is the bread
which the **LORD Yah Veh** hath given you to eat **for food**.

16 This is the *thing word*
which the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *commanded misvahed*,
Gather Glean of it every man
according to *his eating the food of his mouth*,
an omer *for every man per cranium*,
according to the number of your *persons souls*;
take ye every man for them which are in his tents.

17 And the children **sons** of Israel *did Yisra El worked* so,
and gathered **gleaned**,
some *more greatened*, some *less lessened*.

18 And when they *did mete measured* it with an omer,
he that *gathered much greatened*
had *nothing over no leftovers*,
and he that *gathered little lessened*
had no lack;
they *gathered gleaned* every man
according to *his eating the food of his mouth*.

19 And Moses **Mosheh** said,
Let no man *leave of it let it remain* till the morning.
20 Notwithstanding
they hearkened not unto Moses **Mosheh**;
but *some of them left of it men let it remain*
until the morning,
and it *bred worms raised maggots*, and stank:
and Moses **Mosheh** was *wroth enraged* with them.

21 And they gathered **gleaned** it
every morning **by morning**
every man according to *his eating the food of his mouth*:
and when the sun *waxed hot heated*, it melted.

22 And **so be** it came to pass, that on the sixth day
they gathered *twice as much gleaned double* bread,
two omers for one man:
and all the **rulers hierarchs** of the congregation **witness**
came and told Moses **Mosheh**.

23 And he said unto them,
This is that which the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *said worded*,
To morrow is the **rest shabbathism**
of the holy **sabbath shabbath** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**:
bake that which ye *will shall* bake to day,
and *see the stew* that ye *will see the shall* stew;
and that which remaineth over **all the leftovers**
lay up **leave** for you to be **kept guarded** until the morning.

EXODUS 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Your murmurings are not against us,
but against Yah Veh!

9 And Mosheh says to Aharon,
Say to all the witness of the sons of Yisra El,
Come near at the face of Yah Veh:
for he hears your murmurings.

10 And so be it, as Aharon words
to the whole witness of the sons of Yisra El,
they set their face toward the wilderness;
and behold,
the honor of Yah Veh appears in the cloud.

11 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
12 I hear the murmurings of the sons of Yisra El!
Word to them, saying,
Between evenings you eat flesh
and in the morning satiate with bread;
and you know I — Yah Veh your Elohim.

13 And so be it,
at evening the quails ascend and cover the camp;
and in the morning the dew lies around the camp;
and the dew that lies ascends:
and behold, on the face of the wilderness
— a thin shred; as thin as the hoarfrost on the earth.

15 And when the sons of Yisra El see it,
they say, man to brother, Manna:
for they know not what it is.

And Mosheh says to them, This *is* the bread
which Yah Veh gives you for food:
this *is* the word Yah Veh misvahed,
Glean thereof, every man,
according to the food of his mouth
— an omer per cranium,
according to the number of your souls:
take, every man of you, for them in his tents.

17 And the sons of Yisra El work thus and glean;
some greater, some lessen:
18 and when they measure it with an omer,
he who greatens has no leftovers
and he who lessens has no lack:
every man gleaned
according to the food of his mouth.

19 And Mosheh says,
No man leave any until the morning.

20 And they hearken not to Mosheh
and men leave it until the morning;
and it raises maggots and stinks:
and Mosheh rages with them.

21 And they glean morning by morning
— every man according to the food of his mouth:
and when the sun heats, it melts.

22 And so be it, on the sixth day,
they glean double bread, two omers for one:
and all the hierarchs of the witness
come and tell Mosheh.

23 And he says to them,
This *is* what Yah Veh worded:
tomorrow *is* the shabbathism
of the holy shabbath to Yah Veh:
bake what you bake and stew what you stew;
and leave all the leftovers
for you to guard until the morning.

EXODUS 16, 17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

24 And they *laid it up* **left it** till the morning,
as *Moses bade* **Mosheh misvahed:**
and it did not stink,
neither was there any *worm* **maggot** therein.
25 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said, Eat that to day;
for to day is a *sabbath* **shabbath** unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh:**
to day ye shall not find it in the field.
26 Six days ye shall *gather* **glean** it;
but on the seventh day, *which is the sabbath* **shabbath**,
in it there shall be none.
27 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
that there went out *some of the people*
on the seventh day for to *gather* **glean**,
and they found none.
28 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
How long refuse ye to *keep* **guard**
my *commandments* **misvoth** and my *laws* **torahs**?
29 See, for that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath given you
the *sabbath* **shabbath**,
therefore he giveth you on the sixth day
the bread of two days;
abide ye **sit** — every man in his place,
let no man go out of his place on the seventh day.
30 So the people *rested* **shabbathized** on the seventh day.
31 And the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
called the name thereof *Manna*:
and it was like coriander seed, white;
and the taste of it was like wafers *made* with honey.
32 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said, This is *the thing* **that**
which the LORD commandeth **Yah Veh misvaheth**,
Fill an omer of it **A full omer**
to be *kept* **guarded** for your generations;
that they may see the bread
wherewith I have fed you in the wilderness,
when I brought you forth
from the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
33 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto *Aaron* **Aharon**,
Take a pot, and *put* **give** an omer full of manna therein,
and *lay* **set it up before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh**,
to be *kept* **guarded** for your generations.
34 As *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**,
so *Aaron laid* **Aharon set it up**
before the Testimony at the face of the Witness,
to be *kept* **guarded**.
35 And the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
did eat manna forty years,
until they came to a land *inhabited* **settled**;
they did eat manna,
until they came
unto the *borders* **ends** of the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**.
36 Now an omer is the tenth *part* of an ephah.

WATER FROM THE ROCK

17

And all the *congregation* **witness**
of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
journeyed **pulled stakes** from the wilderness of Sin,
after their journeys,
according to
the *commandment* **mouth of the LORD Yah Veh**,
and *pitched* **encamped** in Rephidim:
and there was no water for the people to drink.
2 Wherefore the people
did chide **strove** with *Moses* **Mosheh**, and said,
Give us water that we may drink.
And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto them,
Why *chide* **strive** ye with me?
wherefore do ye *tempt the LORD* **test Yah Veh**?
3 And the people thirsted there for water;
and the people murmured against *Moses* **Mosheh**,
and said, Wherefore is this
that thou hast *brought us up* **ascended us**
out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
to *kill* **deathify** us and our *children* **sons**
and our *cattle* **chattel** with thirst?
4 And *Moses* **Mosheh** cried unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
saying, What shall I *do* **work** unto this people?
they be almost ready to **in a little they** stone me.
5 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Go **Pass on before at the face of the people**,

EXODUS 16, 17

exeGeses companion BIBLE

24 — and they leave it until the morning,
as Mosheh misvahs:
and it neither stinks nor *is* any maggot therein.
25 And Mosheh says, Eat that today;
for today *is* a shabbath to Yah Veh:
today you find none in the field.
26 Six days you glean;
but on the seventh day, the shabbath, none becomes.
27 And so be it,
some of the people go to glean on the seventh day
and they find none.
28 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
How long refuse you
to guard my misvoth and my torahs?
29 See, for Yah Veh gives you the shabbath:
so on the sixth day
he gives you the bread of two days:
sit — every man in his place,
that no man go from his place on the seventh day.
30 — and the people shabbathize on the seventh day.
31 And the house of Yisra El
calls its name Manna:
and it *is* as coriander seed, white;
and its taste, as wafers with honey.
32 And Mosheh says, This *is* what Yah Veh misvahed
— to guard a full omer for your generations;
so that they see the bread
wherewith I feed you in the wilderness,
in bringing you from the land of Misrayim.
33 And Mosheh says to Aharon,
Take a pot and give a full omer of manna therein
and set it at the face of Yah Veh
to guard for your generations.
34 As Yah Veh misvahs Mosheh,
thus Aharon sets it at the face of the Witness,
to guard:
35 and the sons of Yisra El eat manna forty years,
until they come to a land settled;
they eat manna
until they come to the ends of the land of Kenaan.
36 And an omer *is* the tenth of an ephah.

WATER FROM THE ROCK

17

And all the witness of the sons of Yisra El
pull stakes from the wilderness of Sin,
on their journeys according to the mouth of Yah Veh;
and encamp in Rephidim:
and there *is* no water for the people to drink.
2 And the people strive with Mosheh
and say, Give us water to drink.
And Mosheh says to them, Why strive with me?
Why test you Yah Veh?
3 And there the people thirst for water;
and the people murmur against Mosheh and say,
Why ascended you us from Misrayim,
to deathify us and our sons and our chattel
with thirst?
4 And Mosheh cries to Yah Veh, saying,
What work I to this people?
In a little they stone me.
5 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Pass on at the face of the people

EXODUS 17, 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and take with thee of the elders of *Israel Yisra El*;
and thy rod, wherewith thou smotest the river,
take in thine hand, and go.
6 Behold, I will **shall** stand *before thee at thy face*
there upon the rock in Horeb;
and thou shalt smite the rock,
and there shall come water out of it,
that the people may drink.
And *Moses did Mosheh worked* so
in the *sight eyes* of the elders of *Israel Yisra El*.
7 And he called the name of the place *Massah Testing*,
and *Meribah Strife*,
because of the *chiding striving*
of the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*,
and because they *tempted the LORD tested Yah Veh*,
saying, *Is the LORD Yah Veh* among us, or not?
8 Then came *Amalek Amaleq*,
and fought with *Israel Yisra El* in Rephidim.
9 And *Moses Mosheh* said unto *Joshua Yah Shua*,
Choose us *out* men, and go *out*,
fight with *Amalek Amaleq*:
to morrow I will *stand shall station myself*
on the top of the hill
with the rod of *God Elohim* in mine hand.
10 So *Joshua did Yah Shua worked*
as *Moses Mosheh* had said to him,
and fought with *Amalek Amaleq*:
and *Moses Mosheh*, *Aaron Aharon*, and *Hur*
went up ascended to the top of the hill.
11 And *so be* it came to pass,
when *Moses held up Mosheh lifted* his hand,
that *Israel Yisra El* prevailed *mightily*:
and when he *let down rested* his hand,
Amalek Amaleq prevailed *mightily*.
12 But *Moses Mosheh* hands were heavy;
and they took a stone, and put it under him,
and he sat thereon;
and *Aaron Aharon* and *Hur stayed up upheld* his hands,
the one on *the one this* side,
and the *other one* on *the other that* side;
and his hands were *steady trustworthy*
until the going down of the sun.
13 And *Joshua Yah Shua*
discomfited Amalek vanquished Amaleq and his people
with the *edge mouth* of the sword.
14 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto *Moses Mosheh*,
Write Inscribe this for a memorial in a *book scroll*,
and *rehearse set* it in the ears of *Joshua Yah Shua*:
for I will *utterly put in wiping out, I shall wipe out*
the *remembrance memorial* of *Amalek Amaleq*
from under *heaven the heavens*.
15 And *Moses Mosheh* built *an a sacrifice* altar,
and called the name of it *Jehovahnissi Yah Veh Nissi*:
16 For he said,
Because the LORD hath sworn that
The hand of Yah is my ensign:
the LORD will have Yah Veh shall war
with *Amalek Amaleq* from generation to generation.

PRIEST YITHRO ADVISES MOSHEH

18 When *Jethro Yithro*, the priest of *Midian Midyan*,
Moses' Mosheh's father in law,
heard of all that *God Elohim* had *done worked*
for *Moses Mosheh*, and for *Israel Yisra El* his people,
and that the *LORD Yah Veh*
had brought *Israel Yisra El* out of *Egypt Misrayim*;
2 Then *Jethro Yithro, Moses' Mosheh's father* in law,
took *Zipporah Sipporah, Moses' wife Mosheh's woman*,
after he had sent her back *her dowries*,
3 And her two sons;
of which the name of the one was *Gershom*;
for he said,
I have been an *alien a sojourner* in a strange land:
4 And the name of the *other one* was *Eliezer Eli Ezer*;
for the *God Elohim* of my father, *said he*, was mine help,
and *delivered rescued* me
from the sword of *Pharaoh Paroh*:
5 And *Jethro Yithro, Moses' Mosheh's father* in law,
came with his sons and his *wife woman*
unto *Moses Mosheh* into the wilderness,

EXODUS 17, 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and take *some* of the elders of *Yisra El* with you
and take the rod with which you smote the river
in your hand and go.
6 Behold,
I stand at your face there on the rock in Horeb:
and you smite the rock
and water comes out and the people drink.
And *Mosheh works* thus
in the eyes of the elders of *Yisra El*:
7 and he calls the name of the place *Testing and Strife*
because of the striving of the sons of *Yisra El*
and because of testing of *Yah Veh*,
saying, *Is Yah Veh* among us, or not?
8 Then *Amaleq* comes
and fights with *Yisra El* in Rephidim.
9 And *Mosheh* says to *Yah Shua*,
Choose us men; and go fight *Amaleq*:
tomorrow I station myself on the top of the hill
with the rod of *Elohim* in my hand.
10 So *Yah Shua* works as *Mosheh* says to him
and fights *Amaleq*:
and *Mosheh, Aharon* and *Hur*
ascend to the top of the hill:
11 And so be it, when *Mosheh* lifts his hand,
Yisra El prevails mightily:
and when he rests his hand,
Amaleq prevails mightily:
12 and the hands of *Mosheh get* heavy;
and they take a stone and put it under him
and he sits thereon;
and *Aaron* and *Hur* uphold his hands
— the one on this side and the one on that side;
and his hands *are* trustworthy
until the going down of the sun.
13 — and *Yah Shua* vanquishes *Amaleq*
and his people with the mouth of the sword.
14 And *Yah Veh* says to *Mosheh*,
Inscribe this in a scroll for a memorial
and set it in the ears of *Yah Shua*:
for in wiping out, I wipe out the memorial of *Amaleq*
from under the heavens.
15 And *Mosheh* builds a sacrifice altar
and calls the name thereof *Yah Veh Nissi*:
16 for he says, The hand of *Yah is* my ensign:
Yah Veh wars against *Amaleq*
from generation to generation.

PRIEST YITHRO ADVISES MOSHEH

18 And *Yithro*,
priest of *Midyan*, in law of *Mosheh*
hears of all *Elohim* worked for *Mosheh*
and for *Yisra El* his people
— that *Yah Veh* brought *Yisra El* from *Misrayim*:
2 then *Yithro*, in law of *Mosheh*
takes *Sipporah*, woman of *Mosheh*, with her dowries
3 and her two sons;
of whom the name of the one *is* *Gershom*;
for he says, I become a sojourner in a strange land:
4 and the name of the one *is* *Eli Ezer*;
for the *Elohim* of my father, *is* my help
and rescues me from the sword of *Paroh*.
5 And *Yithro*, in law of *Mosheh*,
comes with his sons and his woman
to *Mosheh* into the wilderness,

EXODUS 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 where he encamped at the mount of God **Elohim**:
And he said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
I thy *father* in law *Jethro* **Yithro** am come unto thee,
and thy *wife* **woman**, and her two sons with her.
7 And *Moses* **Mosheh** went out to meet his *father* in law,
and *did obeisance* **prostrated**, and kissed him;
and they asked *each other* **man to friend**
of their *welfare* **shalom**;
and they came into the tent.
8 And *Moses* told **Mosheh** described to his *father* in law
all that the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
had *done* **worked** unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
and to the *Egyptians* **Misrayim** for *Israel's* **Yisra El's** sake,
and all the travail
that had *come upon* **found** them by the way,
and how the *LORD* **Yah Veh** *rescued* them.
9 And *Jethro* **Yithro** rejoiced for all the goodness
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *done* **worked**
to *Israel* **Yisra El**,
whom he had *delivered* **rescued**
out of the hand of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**.
10 And *Jethro* **Yithro** said, Blessed be the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
who hath *delivered* **rescued** you
out of the hand of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
and out of the hand of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
who hath *delivered* **rescued** the people
from under the hand of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**.
11 Now I know
that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** is greater than all *gods* **elohim**:
for in the *thing* **word** wherein they *dealt proudly* **seethed**
he was above them.
12 And *Jethro* **Yithro**, *Moses's* **Mosheh's** *father* in law,
took a *burnt offering* **holocaust** and sacrifices
for *God* **Elohim**:
and *Aaron* **Aharon** came,
and all the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
to eat bread with *Moses's* **Mosheh's** *father* in law
before God **at the face of Elohim**.
13 And **so be** it *came to pass* on the morrow,
that *Moses* **Mosheh** sat to judge the people:
and the people stood by *Moses* **Mosheh**
from the morning unto the evening.
14 And when *Moses's* **Mosheh's** *father* in law
saw all that he *did* **worked** to the people, he said,
What is this *thing* **word**
that thou *doest* **workest** to the people?
why sittest thou thyself alone,
and all the people *stand* **station themselves** by thee
from morning unto even?
15 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto his *father* in law,
Because the people come unto me
to enquire of *God* **Elohim**:
16 When they have a *matter* **word**, they come unto me;
and I judge between *one* **man** and *another* **friend**,
and I do make them know
the statutes of *God* **Elohim**, and his *laws* **torahs**.
17 And *Moses's* **Mosheh's** *father* in law said unto him,
The *thing* **word** that thou *doest* **workest** is not good.
18 *Thou wilt surely wear away*
In wilting, thou shalt wilt
both thou, and this people that is with thee:
for this *thing* **word** is too heavy for thee;
thou art not able to *perform* **work** it thyself alone.
19 Harken now unto my voice,
I will shall *give thee* **counsel thee**,
and *God* **Elohim** shall be with thee:
Be thou for the people
to *God—ward* **in front of Elohim**,
that thou mayest bring the *causes* **words** unto *God* **Elohim**:
20 And thou shalt *teach* **enlighten** them
ordinances **statutes** and *laws* **torahs**,
and shalt *shew them* **make known** the way
wherein they *must* **walk**,
and the work that they *must* **do work**.
21 Moreover thou shalt *provide* **seek** out of all the people
able **valiant** men,
such as *fear God* **awe Elohim**,
men of truth, hating *covetousness* **greed**;
and *place* **such** **set** over them,

EXODUS 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 where he encamps at the mount of Elohim:
and he says to Mosheh,
I, your in law, Yithro come to you
with your woman and with her two sons.
7 And Mosheh goes to meet his in law
and prostrates and kisses him;
and they ask man to friend of their shalom;
and they come into the tent:
8 and Mosheh describes to his in law
all Yah Veh worked to Paroh
and to the Misrayim for sake of Yisra El
and all the travail that found them by the way
and how Yah Veh rescued them.
9 And Yithro rejoices for all the goodness
Yah Veh worked to Yisra El
whom he rescued from the hand of the Misrayim:
10 and Yithro says, Blessed — Yah Veh,
who rescued you from the hand of the Misrayim
and from the hand of Paroh;
who rescued the people
from under the hand of the Misrayim.
11 Now I know
Yah Veh is greater than all elohim:
for in the word wherein they see the
he is above them.
12 And Yithro, in law of Mosheh,
takes a holocaust and sacrifices for Elohim:
and Aharon comes with all the elders of Yisra El,
to eat bread with the in law of Mosheh
at the face of Elohim.
13 And so be it, on the morrow,
Mosheh sits to judge the people:
and the people stand by Mosheh
from the morning to the evening.
14 And when the in law of Mosheh
sees all he works to the people, he says,
What word is this that you work to the people?
Why sit you yourself alone?
And all the people station themselves by you
from morning to evening?
15 And Mosheh says to his in law,
Because the people come to me to enquire of Elohim:
16 when they have a word, they come to me;
and I judge between man and friend
and I have them know
the statutes of Elohim and his torahs.
17 And the in law of Mosheh says to him,
The word you work is not good:
in wilting, you wilt
— both you and this people with you;
for this word is too heavy for you:
you are not able to work it yourself alone.
19 Harken now to my voice, I counsel you:
and Elohim is with you:
you become for the people in front of Elohim,
to bring the words to Elohim:
20 and enlighten them statutes and torahs
and have them know
the way to walk and the work to work:
21 and you — seek valiant men from all the people
such as awe Elohim, men of truth, hating greed;
and over them

EXODUS 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

to be rulers **governors** of thousands,
and rulers **governors** of hundreds,
rulers **governors** of fifties,
and rulers **governors** of tens:
22 And let them judge the people at all seasons times:
and it shall be,
that every great *matter* **word** they shall bring unto thee,
but every small *matter* **word** they shall judge:
so shall it be *easier* **lightened** for thyself,
and they shall bear *the* **burden** with thee.
23 If thou shalt *do* **work** this *thing* **word**,
and *God* **command** **Elohim misvah** thee so,
then thou shalt be able to *endure* **stand**,
and all this people shall also go to their place
in *peace* **shalom**.
24 So *Moses* **Mosheh** hearkened
to the voice of his *father* in law,
and *did* **worked** all that he had said.
25 And *Moses* **Mosheh** chose *able* **valiant** men
out of all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and *made* **gave** them heads over the people,
rulers **governors** of thousands,
rulers **governors** of hundreds,
rulers **governors** of fifties,
and *rulers* **governors** of tens.
26 And they judged the people at all seasons times:
the hard *causes* **words** they brought unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
but every small *matter* **word** they judged themselves.
27 And *Moses* **Mosheh**
let **sent** his *father* in law *depart* **away**;
and he went his way into his own land.

MOSHEH ON MOUNT SINAY

19

In the third month,
when the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
were gone forth out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
the same day
came they into the wilderness of *Sinai* **Sinay**.
2 For they were *departed* **pulled stakes** from Rephidim,
and were come to the *desert* **wilderness** of *Sinai* **Sinay**,
and had *pitched* **encamped** in the wilderness;
and there *Israel* **Yisra El** camped *before* **in front of** the mount.
3 And *Moses* went up **Mosheh ascended** unto *God* **Elohim**,
and *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh** called unto him
out of the mountain, saying,
Thus shalt thou say to the house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and tell the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
4 Ye have seen
what I *did* **worked** unto the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
and how I bare you on eagles' wings,
and brought you unto myself.
5 Now therefore,
if in hearing, ye will *obey* **shall hear** my voice *indeed*,
and *keep* **guard** my covenant,
then ye shall be a peculiar *treasure* **possession** unto me
above all people:
for all the earth is mine:
6 And ye shall be unto me
a *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of priests,
and an holy *nation* **goyim**.
These are the words which thou shalt *speak* **word**
unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
2 Petros 2:9, Apocalypse 1:6
7 And *Moses* **Mosheh** came
and called for the elders of the people,
and *laid* **before** **set n front of** their faces all these words
which *the* **LORD** **commanded** **Yah Veh misvahed** him.
8 And all the people answered together, and said,
All that *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded**
we will do **shall work**.
And *Moses* **Mosheh** returned the words of the people
unto *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh**.
9 And *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Lo **Behold**,
I come unto thee in a *thick* **an overclouding** cloud,
that the people may hear when I *speak* **word** with thee,
and *believe* **trust** thee *for ever* **eternally**.
And *Moses* **Mosheh** told the words of the people
unto *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh**.
10 And *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,

EXODUS 18, 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

set governors of thousands, governors of hundreds,
governors of fifties and governors of tens:
22 and have them judge the people at all times:
and so be it,
that they bring you every great word;
but every small word they judge:
and thus lightens yourself
and they bear with you.
23 If you work this word and Elohim misvah you so,
then you become able to stand
and all this people also go to their place in shalom.
24 And Mosheh hearkens to the voice of his in law
and works all he says:
25 and Mosheh chooses valiant men from all Yisra El
— governors of thousands, governors of hundreds,
governors of fifties and governors of tens:
26 and they judge the people at all times:
they bring the hard words to Mosheh;
but every small word they judge themselves.
27 And Mosheh sends his in law away;
and he goes his way into his own land.

MOSHEH ON MOUNT SINAY

19

In the third month,
of the going of the sons of Yisra El
from the land of Misrayim
— that same day
they come to the wilderness of Sinay:
and they pull stakes from Rephidim
and come to the wilderness of Sinay
and encamp in the wilderness:
and there Yisra El camps in front of the mount.
3 And Mosheh ascends to Elohim
and Yah Veh calls to him from the mountain, saying,
Say thus to the house of Yaaqov
and tell the sons of Yisra El,
4 You saw what I worked to the Misrayim
and how I birthed you on wings of eagles
and brought you to myself:
5 and now, if in hearing,
you hear my voice and guard my covenant,
then you — you become to me
a peculiar possession above all people:
for all the earth is mine:
6 and you become to me a sovereigndom of priests
and a holy goyim.
These are the words you word to the sons of Yisra El.
2 Petros 2:9, Apocalypse 1:6
7 And Mosheh comes
and calls for the elders of the people
and in front of their faces
sets all these words Yah Veh misvahed him.
8 And all the people answer together and say,
All Yah Veh words, we work.
And Mosheh
returns the words of the people to Yah Veh:
9 and Yah Veh says to Mosheh, Behold,
I come to you in an overclouding cloud,
so that the people hear when I word with you
and trust you eternally.
— and Mosheh tells Yah Veh
the words of the people.
10 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,

EXODUS 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Go unto the people,
and sanctify **hallow** them to day and to morrow,
and let them wash **launder** their clothes,
11 And be ready *against* **prepared** the third day:
for the third day
the LORD will come down **Yah Veh shall descend**
in the sight **eyes** of all the people
upon mount *Sinai* **Sinay**.
12 And thou shalt set *bounds* **borders**
unto the people round about, saying,
Take heed to **Guard** yourselves,
that ye go **ascend** not up into the mount,
or touch the *border* **end** of it:
whosoever toucheth the mount
in deathifying, shall be *surely put to death* **deathified**:
13 There shall not an hand touch it,
but **in stoning**, he shall *surely* be stoned,
or **in shooting**, shall be shot through;
whether it be *beast* **animal** or man, it shall not live:
when the *trumpet soundeth long* **jubilee draweth**,
they shall come up **ascend** to the mount.
14 And *Moses* **Mosheh**
went down **descended** from the mount unto the people,
and sanctified **hallowed** the people;
and they washed **laundered** their clothes.
15 And he said unto the people,
Be ready **prepared** against the third day:
come not at your *wives* **women**.
16 And **so be** it came to pass
on the third day in the morning,
that there were *thunders* **voices** and lightnings,
and a *thick* **heavy** cloud upon the mount,
and the voice of the *trumpet* **shophar**
exceeding loud **mighty strong**;
so that all the people that was in the camp trembled.
17 And *Moses* **Mosheh**
brought forth the people out of the camp
to meet with *God* **Elohim**;
and they stood at the nether *part* of the mount.
18 And mount *Sinai* **Sinay**
was *altogether on a smoke* **totally fuming**,
because the LORD **the face of Yah Veh**
descended upon it in fire:
and the smoke thereof
ascended as the smoke of a furnace,
and the whole mount *quaked greatly* **trembled mightily**.
19 And when the voice of the *trumpet* **shophar**
in sounding, sounded long,
and waxed *louder and louder* **mightily mighty**,
Moses spake **Mosheh worded**,
and *God* **Elohim** answered him by a voice.
20 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came down **descended** upon mount *Sinai* **Sinay**,
on the top of the mount:
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** called *Moses* **Mosheh**
up to the top of the mount;
and *Moses went up* **Mosheh ascended**.
21 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Go down **Descend**, *charge* **witness to** the people,
lest they break through unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
to gaze **see**,
and many of them *perish* **fall**.
22 And let the priests also,
which come near to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
sanctify **hallow** themselves,
lest the *LORD* **Yah Veh** break forth upon them.
23 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
The people cannot come up **ascend** to mount *Sinai* **Sinay**:
for thou *chargedst* **witnessedst to** us, saying,
Set *bounds* **borders** about the mount,
and sanctify **hallow** it.
24 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto him,
Away **Go**, *get thee down* **descend**,
and thou shalt come up **ascend**,
thou, and *Aaron* **Aharon** with thee:
but let not the priests and the people break through
to come up **ascend** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
lest he break forth upon them.

EXODUS 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Go to the people;
and hallow them today and tomorrow
and have them launder their clothes,
and prepare the third day:
for the third day Yah Veh descends
in the eyes of all the people on mount Sinai.
12 And set borders to the people around you, saying,
Guard yourselves,
that you not ascend into the mount,
or touch the end thereof:
whoever touches the mount
in deathifying, *is* deathified:
13 no hand touches it,
or in stoning, he *is* stoned; or in shooting, *is* shot:
whether animal or man, it lives not.
— when they prolong the jubilee,
they ascend to the mount.
14 And Mosheh descends from the mount
to the people;
and he hallows the people;
and they launder their clothes:
and he says to the people,
Prepare against the third day;
come not near your women.
16 And so be it, on the third day, in the morning,
voices become
— and lightnings and a heavy cloud on the mount
and the voice of the shophar — mighty strong;
so that all the people in the camp tremble.
17 And Mosheh brings the people from the camp
to meet with Elohim;
and they stand at the nether of the mount:
and mount Sinai totally fumes:
for the face of Yah Veh descends on it in fire:
and the smoke thereof
ascends as the smoke of a furnace
and the whole mount trembles mightily.
19 And in sounding,
the voice of the shophar sounds long
— mightily mighty,
Mosheh words; and Elohim answers him by a voice:
20 and Yah Veh descends on mount Sinai
— on the top of the mount:
and Yah Veh calls Mosheh to the top of the mount;
and Mosheh ascends.
21 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Descend, witness to the people,
lest they break through to Yah Veh to see
— and many of them fall:
22 and have the priests who come near to Yah Veh
also hallow themselves;
lest Yah Veh break forth on them.
23 And Mosheh says to Yah Veh,
The people cannot ascend to mount Sinai:
for you witnessed to us, saying,
Set borders around the mount and hallow it.
24 And Yah Veh says to him,
Go! Descend!
And you ascend — you and Aharon with you:
but the priests and the people break not through
to ascend to Yah Veh,
lest he break forth on them.

EXODUS 19, 20

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

25 So Moses **Mosheh** went down **descended** unto the people,
and **spake said** unto them.

THE TEN WORDS OF ELOHIM

20 And *God spake* **Elohim worded** all these words,
saying,
2 *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh thy God Elohim,*
which have brought thee
out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim,*
out of the house of *bondage servants.*
3 Thou shalt have no other *gods elohim*
before me above my face.
4 Thou shalt not *make work* unto thee
any *graven image sculptile,*
or any *likeness of any thing similitude*
that is in *heaven the heavens* above,
or that is in the earth beneath,
or that is in the water under the earth.
5 Thou shalt not *bow down prostrate* thyself to them,
nor serve them:
for I *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
am a jealous *God El,*
visiting the *iniquity perversity* of the fathers
upon the *children sons*
unto the third and fourth *generation* of them that hate me;
6 And *shewing working* mercy
unto thousands of them that love me,
and *keep guard* my *commandments misvoth.*
7 Thou shalt not *take bear* the name
of *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
in *vain defamation;*
for *the LORD Yah Veh*
will shall not *hold exonerate* him *guiltless*
that *taketh beareth* his name in *vain defamation.*
8 Remember the *sabbath shabbath* day,
to *keep it holy hallow* it.
9 Six days shalt thou *labour serve,*
and *do work* all thy work:
10 But the seventh day is the *sabbath shabbath*
of *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim:*
in it thou shalt not *do work* any work,
thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter,
thy *manservant servant,* nor thy *maidservant maid,*
nor thy *cattle animals,*
nor thy *stranger sojourner* that is within thy *gates portals:*
11 For in six days *the LORD made Yah Veh worked*
heaven the heavens and earth,
the sea, and all that in them is,
and rested the seventh day:
wherefore *the LORD Yah Veh*
blessed the *sabbath shabbath* day, and hallowed it.
12 Honour thy father and thy mother:
that thy days may be *long prolonged* upon the *land soil*
which *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim* giveth thee.
13 Thou shalt not *kill murder.*
14 Thou shalt not *commit adultery adulterize.*
15 Thou shalt not steal.
16 Thou shalt not *bear answer* a false witness
against thy *neighbour friend.*
17 Thou shalt not *covet desire*
thy *neighbour's friend's* house,
thou shalt not *covet desire*
thy *neighbour's wife friend's* woman,
nor his *manservant servant,* nor his *maidservant maid,*
nor his ox, nor his ass **he burro,**
nor any thing **ought** that is thy *neighbour's friend's.*
18 And all the people saw the *thunderings voices,*
and the *lightnings flambeaus,*
and the *noise voice* of the *trumpet shophar,*
and the mountain smoking;
and when the people saw it,
they *removed shook,* and stood afar off.
19 And they said unto *Moses Mosheh,*
Speak Word thou with us, and we *will shall* hear:
but let not *God speak Elohim word* with us, lest we die.
20 And *Moses Mosheh* said unto the people,
Fear Awe not:
for *God Elohim* is come **so as** to *prove test* you,
and that his *fear awe* may be **before in front of** your faces,
that ye sin not.

EXODUS 19, 20

exeGeses companion BIBLE

25 So Mosheh descends to the people
and says to them,

THE TEN WORDS OF ELOHIM

20 And Elohim words all these words, saying,
2 I — Yah Veh your Elohim,
who brought you from the land of Misrayim,
from the house of servants.
3 Have no other elohim above my face.
4 Work not to yourself
any sculptile or any similitude
of that in the heavens above
or that in the earth beneath
or that in the water under the earth:
5 neither prostrate yourself to them, nor serve them:
for I Yah Veh your Elohim *am* a jealous El,
visiting the perversity of the fathers on the sons
to the third and fourth of them who hate me;
and working mercy to the thousands
who love me and guard my misvoth.
7 Bear not the name of Yah Veh your Elohim
in defamation;
for Yah Veh exonerates him not
who bears his name in defamation.
8 Remember the shabbath day, to hallow it:
9 six days you serve and work all your work:
10 but the seventh day
is the shabbath of Yah Veh your Elohim:
work no work therein;
neither you, nor your son, nor your daughter,
nor your servant, nor your maid, nor your animals,
nor your sojourner within your portals:
11 for in six days
Yah Veh worked the heavens and earth,
the sea and all therein;
and rested the seventh day:
so Yah Veh blessed the shabbath day
and hallowed it.
12 Honor your father and your mother:
that your days be prolonged on the soil
which Yah Veh your Elohim gives you.
13 Murder not.
14 Adulterize not.
15 Steal not.
16 Answer not a false witness against your friend.
17 Desire not the house of your friend;
desire not the woman of your friend;
neither his servant, nor his maid,
nor his ox, nor his he burro,
nor ought that *is* of your friend.
18 And all the people see voices and the flambeaus
and the voice of the shophar
and the mountain smoking:
and when the people see, they shake and stand afar.
19 And they say to Mosheh,
Word with us and we hear:
but have not Elohim word with us, lest we die.
20 And Mosheh says to the people,
Awe not:
for Elohim comes so as to test you
and that his awe be in front of your faces
so that you sin not.

EXODUS 20, 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

21 And the people stood afar off,
and Moses **Mosheh** drew near
unto the *thick dripping* darkness where *God Elohim* was.
22 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto Moses **Mosheh**,
Thus thou shalt say
unto the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
Ye have seen that I have *talked worded* with you
from *heaven the heavens*.
23 Ye shall not *make work* with me *gods elohim* of silver,
neither shall *make work* unto you *gods elohim* of gold.
24 An **A sacrifice** altar of *earth soil*
thou shalt *make work* unto me,
and shalt sacrifice thereon thy *burnt offerings holocausts*,
and thy *peace offerings shelamim*,
thy *sheep flocks*, and thine oxen:
in all places where I *record memorialize* my name
I *will shall* come unto thee, and I *will shall* bless thee.
25 And if thou *wilt make shalt work* me
an **a sacrifice** altar of stone,
thou shalt not build it of hewn stone:
for if thou *lift up shake* thy *tool sword* upon it,
thou hast *polluted profaned* it.
26 Neither shalt thou *go up by steps ascend by degrees*
unto *mine my sacrifice* altar,
that thy nakedness be not *discovered exposed* thereon.

JUDGMENTS FOR SERVANTS

21 Now these are the judgments
which thou shalt set *before them at their face*.
2 If thou *buy chattelize* an Hebrew servant,
six years he shall serve:
and in the seventh he shall go out
free for nothing gratuitously liberated.
3 If he came in *by himself with his body*,
he shall go out *by himself with his body*:
if he were *married master of a woman*,
then his *wife woman* shall go out with him.
4 If his *master adoni* have given him a *wife woman*,
and she have *born birthed* him sons or daughters;
the *wife woman* and her children
shall be her *master's adoni's*,
and he shall go out *by himself with his body*.
5 And if the servant *in saying*, shall *plainly say*,
I love my *master adoni*,
my *wife woman*, and my *children sons*;
I *will shall* not go out *free liberated*:
6 Then his *master adoni*
shall bring him unto *the judges Elohim*;
he shall also bring him to the door, or unto the door post;
and his *master adoni*
shall bore his ear through with an aul;
and he shall serve him *for ever eternally*.

JUDGMENTS FOR MAIDS

7 And if a man sell his daughter to be a *maid servant maid*,
she shall not go out as the *maidservants servants do*.
8 If she *please not be evil in the eyes of* her *master adoni*,
who hath betrothed her to himself,
then shall he let her be redeemed:
to sell her unto a strange *nation people*
he shall have no *power reign*,
seeing he hath dealt *deceitfully covertly* with her.
And if he have betrothed her unto his son,
he shall deal with her
after the *manner judgment* of daughters.
10 If he take him another *wife*;
her *food flesh*, her *raiment covering*,
and her *duty of marriage cohabitation*,
shall he not diminish.
11 And if he *do work* not these three unto her,
then shall she go out *free gratuitously*
without *money silver*.

JUDGMENTS FOR INJURIES

12 He that smiteth a man, so that he die,
in deathifying, he shall be surely put to death deathified.
13 And if a man *lie not in wait lurketh not*,
but *God Elohim*
deliver letteth him *happen* into his hand;
then I *will appoint shall set* thee a place
whither he shall flee.

EXODUS 20, 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

21 And the people stand afar off
and Mosheh draws near to the dripping darkness
where Elohim is:
22 and Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Say thus to the sons of Yisra El,
You see that I word with you from the heavens.
23 Neither work me elohim of silver
nor work yourselves elohim of gold:
24 but work to me a sacrifice altar of soil
and sacrifice thereon
your holocausts and your shelamim
— your flocks and your oxen
in all places wherever I memorialize my name
I come to you and I bless you:
25 and if you work me a sacrifice altar of stone,
build it not of hewn stone:
for if you shake your sword on it, you profane it:
26 and ascend not to my sacrifice altar by degrees,
so that your nakedness be not exposed thereon.

JUDGMENTS FOR SERVANTS

21 Now set these judgments at their face:
2 When you chattelize a Hebrew servant,
he serves six years:
and in the seventh he goes out gratuitously liberated.
3 If he comes in with his body,
he goes out with his body:
if he was master of a woman,
then his woman goes out with him.
4 If his adoni gives him a woman
and she births him sons or daughters;
the woman and her children are to her adoni
and he goes out with his body.
5 And if in saying, the servant says,
I love my adoni, my woman and my sons;
I go not out liberated:
6 then his adoni brings him to Elohim;
he also brings him to the door or to the door post;
and his adoni bores through his ear with an aul;
and he serves him eternally.

JUDGMENTS FOR MAIDS

7 And when a man sells his daughter for a maid,
she goes not out as the servants.
8 If she is evil in the eyes of her adoni,
who betrothed her to himself,
then he redeems her — sells her to a strange people;
he has no reign:
seeing he deals covertly with her.
9 And if he betroths her to his son,
he deals with her after the judgment of daughters.
10 If he takes another to himself;
her flesh, her covering and her cohabitation,
he diminishes not:
11 and if he works not these three to her,
then she goes out gratuitously without silver.

JUDGMENTS FOR INJURIES

12 He who smites a man, thus he dies:
in deathifying, deathify him.
13 And if a man lurks not,
but Elohim happens him into his hand;
then I set you a place for him to flee.

EXODUS 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 But if a man come presumptuously seethe upon his neighbour friend, to slay slaughter him with guile strategy; thou shalt take him from mine my sacrifice altar, that he may die.

15 And he that smiteth his father, or his mother, in deathifying, shall be surely put to death deathified.

16 And he that stealeth a man, and selleth him, or if he be found in his hand, in deathifying, he shall surely be put to death be deathified.

17 And he that curseth abaseth his father, or his mother, in deathifying, shall surely be put to death be deathified.

18 And if men strive together, and one man smite another friend with a stone, or with his fist, and he die not, but keepeth falleth on his bed: If he rise again, and walk abroad out upon his staff crutch, then shall he that smote him be quit exonerated: only he shall pay give for the loss of his time his shabbathism, and shall cause him to be thoroughly healed.

20 And if a man smite his servant, or his maid, with a rod scion, and he die under his hand; in avenging, he shall be surely punished avenged.

21 Notwithstanding Only, if he continue a day or two stay two days, he shall not be punished avenged: for he is his money silver.

22 If men strive, and hurt smite a woman with child that she conceive, so that her fruit depart from her, and yet no mischief follow: in penalizing, he shall be surely punished penalized, according as the woman's husband master will lay shall set upon him; and he shall pay give as the judges determine.

23 And if any mischief follow, then thou shalt give life soul for life soul, Eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot, Burning Blister for burning blister, wound for wound, stripe lash for stripe lash.

24 And if a man smite the eye of his servant, or the eye of his maid, that it perish ruin; he shall let send him go free away liberated for his eye's sake.

27 And if he smite out fell his manservant's servant's tooth, or his maidservant's maid's tooth; he shall let send him go free away liberated for his tooth's sake.

28 If an ox gore butt a man or a woman, that they die: then in stoning, the ox shall surely be stoned, and his flesh shall not be eaten; but the owner master of the ox shall be quit exonerated.

29 But if the ox were wont to push hath butted with his horn in time past three yesters ago, and it hath been testified witnessed to his owner master, and he hath not kept guarded him in, but that he hath killed deathified a man or a woman; the ox shall be stoned, and his owner master also shall be put to death deathified.

30 If there be laid set on him a sum of money a koper/an atonement, then he shall give for the ransom redemption of his life soul whatsoever is laid set upon him.

31 Whether If he have gored butted a son, or have gored butted a daughter, according to this judgment shall it be done worked unto him.

32 If the ox shall push butt a manservant servant or a maidservant maid; he shall give unto their master adoni thirty shekels of silver, and the ox shall be stoned.

33 And if a man shall open a pit well,

EXODUS 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 And if a man seethes against his friend, to slaughter him with strategy, take him from my sacrifice altar to die.

15 And he who smites his father, or his mother, in deathifying, deathify him.

16 And he who steals a man and sells him, or if they find him in his hand, in deathifying, deathify him.

17 And he who abases his father, or his mother, in deathifying, deathify him.

18 And if men strive together and man smites friend with a stone or with his fist, and he die not, but falls on his bed: if he rises and walks out on his crutch, then exonerate him who smote him: only he gives for his shabbathism and has him thoroughly healed.

20 And if a man smites his servant, or his maid, with a scion, and he dies under his hand, in avenging, avenge him.

21 Only, if he stays two days, he is not avenged: for he is his silver.

22 If men strive, and smite a woman that she conceives, so that her fruit departs from her and yet no mischief follows, in penalizing, penalize him, according as the master of the woman sets on him; and he gives according to the judges.

23 And if any mischief follows, then you give soul for soul, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot, blister for blister, wound for wound, lash for lash.

24 And if a man smites the eye of his servant, or the eye of his maid, that it ruins; he sends him away liberated because of his eye.

27 And if he fells the tooth of his servant or the tooth of his maid, he sends him away liberated because of his tooth.

28 If an ox butt a man or a woman so that they die, then in stoning, stone the ox and eat not his flesh; but exonerate the master of the ox.

29 But if the ox butted with his horn three yesters ago and it was witnessed to his master and he guards him not, and deathifies a man or a woman, stone the ox and deathify his master also.

30 If a koper/an atonement is set on him, then he gives whatever is set on him to redeem his soul.

31 If he butts a son or butts a daughter, work to him according to this judgment.

32 If the ox butts a servant or a maid; he gives their adoni thirty shekels of silver and stones the ox.

33 And if a man opens a well,

EXODUS 21, 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

or if a man shall dig a *pit well*, and not cover it,
and an ox or an *ass he burro* fall therein;
34 The owner **master** of the *pit well*
shall *make it good shalam*,
and *give money return silver*
unto the owner **master** of them;
and *the dead beast that which died* shall be his.
35 And if one man's ox *hurt another's butt friend's ox*,
that he die;
then they shall sell the live ox,
and *divide halve* the *money silver* of it;
and *the dead ox that which died* also
they shall *divide halve*.
36 Or if it be known that the ox
hath *used to push in time past butted three yesters ago*,
and his owner **master** hath not *kept guarded* him in;
in shalaming, he shall *surely pay shalam*
ox for ox;
and *the dead that which died* shall be his own.

JUDGMENTS FOR PROPERTIES

22 If a man shall steal an ox, or a *sheep lamb*,
and *kill slaughter* it, or sell it;
he shall *restore shalam* five oxen for an ox,
and four *sheep flocks* for a *sheep lamb*.
2 If a thief be found *breaking up digging*,
and be smitten that he die,
there shall no blood be *shed* for him.
3 If the sun be risen upon him,
there shall be blood *shed* for him;
for he should make full restitution
in shalaming, he shall shalam;
if he have *nothing naught*,
then he shall be sold for his theft.
4 **If in finding**,
the theft be *certainly* found in his hand alive,
whether it be **from** ox, or *ass he burro*, or *sheep lamb*;
he shall *restore double shalam twofold*.
5 If a man shall cause a field or vineyard
to be *eaten consumed*,
and shall *put send* in his beast,
and shall *feed in another man's consume another's* field;
of the best of his own field,
and of the best of his own vineyard,
shall he *make restitution shalam*.
6 If fire break out, and *catch be found* in thorns,
so that the *stacks heaps* of corn,
or the *standing corn stalks*, or the field,
be consumed *therewith*;
he that kindled the *fire kindling*
in shalaming, shall *surely make restitution shalam*.
7 If a man shall *deliver give* unto his *neighbour friend*
money silver or *stuff instruments* to *keep guard*,
and it be stolen out of the man's house;
if the thief be found,
let him *pay double shalam twofold*.
8 If the thief be not found,
then the master of the house
shall *be brought unto the judges approach Elohim*,
to see *whether if* he have **not** put his hand
unto his *neighbour's goods friend's work*.
9 For *all manner every word* of *trespass rebellion*,
whether it be for ox, for *ass he burro*, for *sheep lamb*,
for *raiment clothes*, or for any *manner of lost thing*,
which another *challengeth saith* to be his,
the *cause word* of *both the two* parties
shall come *before the judges in front of Elohim*;
and whom *the judges Elohim*
shall *condemn declare wicked*,
he shall *pay double shalam twofold*
unto his *neighbour friend*.
10 If a man *deliver give* unto his *neighbour friend*
an ass a he burro, or an ox, or a *sheep lamb*,
or any *beast animal*, to *keep guard*;
and it die, or be *hurt broken*, or *driven away captured*,
no man seeing it:
11 Then shall an oath of *the LORD Yah Veh*
be between **the two** of them *both*,
that he hath not put his hand
unto his *neighbour's friend's* goods;

EXODUS 21, 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

or if a man digs a well and covers not,
and an ox or a *he burro* falls therein;
34 the master of the well shalams
and returns silver to their master;
and what died *is* his.
35 And if an ox of one man
butts an ox of his friend so that he dies;
then they sell the live ox and halve the silver;
and they also halve what died.
36 Or if it be known
that the ox butted three yesters ago
and his master guarded him not;
in shalaming, he shalams ox for ox;
and that which died *is* his own.

JUDGMENTS FOR PROPERTIES

22 If a man steals an ox, or a lamb
and slaughters or sells it;
he shalams five oxen for an ox
and four flocks for a lamb.
2 If they find a thief digging;
and smite him that he dies,
pour no blood for him.
3 If the sun rises on him, *pour* his blood;
in shalaming, he shalams:
if he has naught, sell him for his theft.
4 If in finding, you find the theft in his hand alive
— whether ox, or he burro, or lamb;
he shalams twofold.
5 If a man consumes a field or vineyard
and sends in his beast
and consumes the field of another,
he shalams of the best of his own field
and of the best of his own vineyard.
6 If fire breaks out and finds thorns,
so that the heaps of corn
or the stalks or the field consume;
in shalaming, whoever kindles the kindling,
shalams.
7 If a man gives his friend
silver or instruments to guard,
and it *is* stolen from the house of the man,
if the thief *is* found, he shalams twofold:
if the thief *is* not found,
then the master of the house approaches Elohim,
to see if he had not put his hand
to the work of his friend.
9 For every word of rebellion
— for ox, for he burro, for lamb, for clothes,
or for any lost,
which another says is his,
the word of the two parties comes in front of Elohim:
and whomever Elohim declares wicked,
shalams twofold to his friend.
10 If a man gives his friend
a he burro, or an ox, or a lamb,
or any animal to guard;
and it dies or *is* broken or captured
— no man seeing it:
11 then have an oath of Yah Veh
between the two of them,
that he has not put his hand to the goods of his friend;

EXODUS 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the owner **master** of it shall *accept take* thereof,
and he shall not *make it good shalam*.
12 And if **in stealing**, it be stolen from him,
he shall *make restitution shalam*
unto the owner **master** thereof.
13 If **in tearing**, it be torn *in pieces*,
then let him bring it for witness,
and he shall not *make good shalam* that which was torn.
14 And if a man *borrow ought ask* of his neighbour **friend**,
and it be *hurt broken*, or die,
the owner **master** thereof being not with it,
in shalaming, he shall *surely make it good shalam*.
15 But if the owner **master** thereof be with it,
he shall not *make it good shalam*:
if it be an *hired thing hireling*, it came for his hire.

GENERAL JUDGMENTS

16 And if a man *entice dupe* a maid **virgin**
that is not betrothed, and lie with her,
in endowing,
he shall *surely* endow her to be his wife **woman**.
17 If **in refusing**,
her father *utterly* refuse to give her unto him,
he shall *pay money weigh silver*
according to the dowry of virgins.
18 Thou shalt not *suffer preserve* a witch **sorcerer** to live.
19 Whosoever lieth with a *beast an animal*,
in deathifying, shall *surely be put to death be deathified*.
20 He that sacrificeth unto any god **elohim**,
save **except** unto the **LORD Yah Veh** only,
in being devoted, he shall be *utterly destroyed devoted*.
21 Thou shalt neither vex **oppress** a stranger **sojourner**,
nor *oppress pressure* him:
for ye were *strangers sojourners*
in the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
22 Ye shall not *afflict humble* any widow,
or *fatherless child orphan*.
23 If **in humbling**, thou *afflict humble* them *in any wise*,
and **in crying**, they cry *at all* unto me,
in hearing, I will *shall* *surely* hear their cry;
24 And my wrath shall wax *hot kindle*,
and I will *kill shall slaughter* you with the sword;
and your wives **women** shall be widows,
and your children *fatherless sons orphans*.
25 If thou lend *money silver* to any of my people
that is *poor by humbled with* thee,
thou shalt not be to him as an *usurer a lender*,
neither shalt thou *lay set* upon him usury.
26 If **in pledging**, thou *at all take pledged*
thy neighbour's raiment **friend's clothes** to *pledge*,
thou shalt *deliver return* it unto him
by that until the sun goeth down:
27 For that is his covering only,
it is his *raiment clothes* for his skin:
wherein shall he *sleep lie down*?
and **so be** it shall *come to pass*,
when he crieth unto me, that I will *shall* hear;
for I am *gracious charismatic*.
28 Thou shalt not *revile the gods abase Elohim*,
nor curse the ruler **hierarch** of thy people.
29 Thou shalt not delay
to offer the first of thy ripe fruits, and of thy liquors
the fulness of thy juices:
the *firstborn firstbirthed* of thy sons shalt thou give unto me.
30 *Likewise Thus* shalt thou *do work*
with thine oxen, and with thy *sheep flocks*:
seven days it shall be with his *dam mother*;
on the eighth day thou shalt give it me.
31 And ye shall be holy men unto me:
neither shall ye eat any flesh
that is torn *of beasts* in the field;
ye shall cast it to the dogs.

JUDGMENT AND MERCY

23 Thou shalt not *raise a false bear a vain* report:
put not thine hand with the wicked
to be an *unrighteous witness a witness of violence*.

EXODUS 22, 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and its master takes, and he shalams not.
12 And if in stealing, it *is* stolen from him,
he shalams to the master:
13 if in tearing, it *is* torn,
then he brings it for witness;
and he shalams not what was torn.
14 And if a man asks of his friend
and it *is* broken, or dies
— the master not being with it;
in shalaming, he shalams:
15 but if its master *is* with it, he shalams not:
if it *is* a hireling, it comes for his hire.

GENERAL JUDGMENTS

16 And if a man dupes a virgin who *is* not betrothed
and lies with her,
in endowing, he endows her as his woman.
17 If in refusing,
her father refuses to give her to him,
he weighs silver according to the dowry of virgins.
18 Preserve not a sorcerer to live.
19 Whoever lies with an animal,
in deathifying, deathify him.
20 He who sacrifices to any elohim,
except to Yah Veh only,
in being devoted, devote him.
21 Neither oppress a sojourner, nor pressure him:
for you were sojourners in the land of Misrayim.
22 Humble not any widow or orphan:
23 if in humbling, you humble them
and in crying, they cry to me,
in hearing, I hear their cry;
24 and I kindle my wrath
and slaughter you with the sword;
that your women become widows
and your sons orphans.
25 If you lend silver to any of my people
who *are* humbled with you,
neither be to him as a lender,
nor set on him usury.
26 If in pledging,
you pledge the clothes of your friend,
return it to him until the sun goes down:
27 for that *is* his only covering;
it *is* his clothes for his skin:
Wherein lies he down?
And so be it, when he cries to me, I hearken;
for I *am* charismatic.
28 Neither abase Elohim
nor curse the hierarch of your people.
29 Delay not the fulness of your juices.
Give me the firstbirth of your sons.
30 Work thus with your oxen and with your flocks:
seven days it *is* with his mother;
on the eighth day you give it me.
31 And you, become holy men to me.
Eat no flesh that *is* torn in the field;
cast it to the dogs.

JUDGMENT AND MERCY

23 Neither bear a vain report:
nor put your hand with the wicked
to become a witness of violence.

EXODUS 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 Thou shalt not follow a *multitude* **many** to do evil;
neither shalt thou *speak* **witness** in a *cause* **dispute**
to *decline after* **deviate** many to *wrest judgment* **pervert**;

3 Neither shalt thou *countenance* a **esteem** the poor man
in his *cause* **dispute**.

4 If thou *meet* **encounter** thine enemy's ox
or his *ass going astray* **he burro straying**,
in returning,
thou shalt *surely bring it back* **return it** to him *again*.

5 If thou see the *ass* **he burro** of him that hateth thee
lying **crouched** under his burden,
and *wouldst forbear* **shouldst cease** to *help* **release** him,
in releasing, thou shalt *surely help with* **release** him.

6 Thou shalt not *wrest* **deviate** the judgment of thy poor
in his *cause* **dispute**.

7 *Keep thee far* **Be thou far removed**
from a false *matter* **word**;
and the innocent and *righteous* **just**
slay **slaughter** thou not:
for I *will* **shall** not justify the wicked.

8 And thou shalt take no *gift* **bribe**:
for the *gift* **bribe** blindeth the *wise* **open—eyed**,
and perverteth the words of the *righteous* **just**.

9 Also thou shalt not oppress a *stranger* **sojourner**:
for ye know the *heart* **soul** of a *stranger* **sojourner**,
seeing **because** ye were *strangers* **sojourners**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.

10 And six years thou shalt *sow* **seed** thy land,
and shalt gather in the *fruits* **produce** thereof:

11 But the seventh year thou shalt *let it rest* **release it**
and *lie still* **leave it alone**;
that the *poor* **needy** of thy people may eat:
and *what they leave* **the remainder**,
the *beasts* **live beings** of the field shall eat.
In like manner thou shalt *deal* **work** with thy vineyard,
and with thy *oliveyard* **olives**.

12 Six days thou shalt *do* **work** thy work,
and on the seventh day thou shalt *rest* **shabbathize**:
that thine ox and thine *ass* **he burro** may rest,
and the son of thy *handmaid* **maid**,
and the *stranger* **sojourner**, may be refreshed.

13 And in all *things* that I have said unto you
be *circumspect* **on guard**:
and *make no mention of* **memorialize not**
the name of other *gods* **elohim**,
neither let it be heard out of thy mouth.

THREE CELEBRATIONS

14 Three *times* **paces**
thou shalt *keep* a *feast* **celebrate** unto me in the year.

15 Thou shalt *keep* **guard**
the *feast* **celebration** of *unleavened bread* **matsah**:
(thou shalt eat *unleavened bread* **matsah** seven days,
as I *commanded* **misvahed** thee,
in the *time appointed* **season** of the month Abib;
for in it thou camest out from *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
and none shall *appear* **be seen**
before me **at my face** empty:)

16 And the *feast* **celebration** of harvest,
the firstfruits of thy *labours* **works**,
which thou hast *sown* **seeded** in the field:
and the *feast* **celebration** of ingathering,
which is in the end of the year,
when thou hast gathered in thy *labours* **works**
out of the field.

17 Three times in the year
all thy males shall *appear* **be seen**
before the Lord **GOD at the face of Adonay Yah Veh**.

18 Thou shalt not *offer* **sacrifice** the blood of my sacrifice
with *leavened bread* **fermentation**;
neither shall the *fat of my sacrifice* **celebration**
remain **stay overnight** until the morning.

19 The first of the firstfruits of thy *land* **soil**
thou shalt bring into the house
of the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**.

20 Thou shalt not *seethe* **stew** a kid in his mother's milk.

THE ANGEL OF YAH VEH

Behold, I send an Angel *before thee* **at thy face**,
to *keep* **guard** thee in the way,
and to bring thee into the place which I have prepared.

EXODUS 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 Neither follow many to evil;
nor witness in a dispute
to deviate many to pervert.

3 Esteem not the poor in his dispute.

4 If you encounter an ox of your enemy
or his he burro straying,
in returning, return it to him.

5 If you see the he burro of him who hates you
crouched under his burden
and cease to release him,
in releasing, release him.

6 Deviate not the judgment of your poor
in his dispute.

7 Remove afar from a false word;
and the innocent and just slaughter you not:
for I justify not the wicked.

8 And take no bribe:
for the bribe blinds the open—eyed
and perverts the words of the just.

9 And oppress not a sojourner:
for you know the soul of a sojourner,
because you were sojourners in the land of Misrayim.

10 And six years seed your land
and gather in the produce thereof:

11 but the seventh, release it and leave it alone
for the needy of your people to eat:
and the remainder, the live beings of the field to eat.
In like manner work with your vineyard
and with your olives.

12 Six days work your work
and on the seventh day shabbathize:
so that your ox and your he burro rest
and the son of your maid and the sojourner refresh.

13 And in all that I say to you, guard:
neither memorialize the name of other elohim,
nor let it be heard from your mouth.

THREE CELEBRATIONS

14 Celebrate three paces to me in the year.

15 Guard the celebration of matsah:
eat matsah seven days,
as I misvahed you, in the season of the month Abib;
for in it you came from Misrayim:
and not be seen empty at my face.

16 And the celebration of harvest:
the firstfruits of the works you seeded in the field.

And the celebration of ingathering:
— in the end of the year
when you ingather your works from the field.

17 Three times in the year
have all your males be seen
at the face of Adonay Yah Veh:

18 neither sacrifice the blood of my sacrifice
with fermentation;
nor the celebration stay overnight until the morning.

19 Bring the first of the firstfruits of your soil
into the house of Yah Veh your Elohim.

Stew not a kid in the milk of his mother.

THE ANGEL OF YAH VEH

20 Behold, I send an angel at your face
to guard you in the way;
and to bring you to the place I prepared.

EXODUS 23, 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

21 Beware of him **On guard at his face,**
and obey **hear** his voice, *provoke* **embitter** him not;
for he *will* **shall** not *pardon* **bear**
your *transgressions* **rebellions:**
for my name is in him.

22 But if **in hearing,** thou shalt *indeed* **obey hear** his voice,
and **do work** all that I *speak* **word;**
then I *will* **shall** be an enemy unto thine enemies,
and an *adversary* unto *thine adversaries*
besiege them who tribulate thee.

23 For mine Angel shall go *before thee* **at thy face,**
and bring thee in unto the *Amorites* **Emoriy,**
and the *Hittites* **Hethiy,** and the *Perizzites* **Perizziy,**
and the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy,** the *Hivites* **Hivviy,**
and the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy:**
and I *will* **shall** cut them off.

24 Thou shalt not *bow down* **prostrate**
to their *gods* **elohim,**
nor serve them, nor *do* **work** after their works:
but **in demolishing,**
thou shalt *utterly overthrow* **demolish** them,
and **in breaking,**
quite break down their *images* **monoliths.**
And ye shall serve
the LORD **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim,**
and he shall bless thy bread, and thy water;
and I *will* take **shall turn** sickness away
from the midst of thee.

26 There shall *nothing* cast their *young* **naught abort,**
nor be *barren* **sterile,** in thy land:
the number of thy days I *will* **shall** fulfil.

27 I *will* **shall** send my fear *before thee* **at thy face,**
and *will* **destroy shall agitate** all the people
to whom thou shalt come,
and I *will* make **shall give that** all thine enemies
turn their *backs* **neck** unto thee.

28 And I *will* **shall** send hornets *before thee* **at thy face,**
which shall *drive out* **expel** the *Hivite* **Hivviy,**
the *Canaanite* **Kenaaniy,** and the *Hittite* **Hethiy,**
from *before thee* **thy face.**

29 I *will* **shall** not *drive* **expel** them out
from *before thee* **thy face** in one year;
lest the land become desolate,
and the *beast* **live being** of the field
multiply **be many** against thee.

30 By little and little
I *will* **drive shall expel** them out from *before thee* **thy face,**
until thou *be* *increased* **bear fruit,** and inherit the land.

31 And I *will* **shall** set thy *bounds* **borders**
from the *Red* **Reed** sea
even unto the sea of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym,**
and from the *desert* **wilderness** unto the river:
for I *will* **deliver** the *inhabitants of*
shall give them who settled the land
into your hand;
and thou shalt *drive* **expel** them out
before thee **from thy face.**

32 Thou shalt *make* **cut** no covenant with them,
nor with their *gods* **elohim.**

33 They shall not *dwell* **settle** in thy land,
lest they *make* **cause** thee **to** sin against me:
for if thou serve their *gods* **elohim,**
it *will* **surely shall** be a snare unto thee.

YAH VEH CUTS A COVENANT

24 And he said unto *Moses* **Mosheh,**
Come up **Ascend** unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh,**
thou, and *Aaron* **Aharon,** *Nadab,* and *Abihu* **Abi Hu,**
and seventy of the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El;**
and *worship* **prostrate** ye afar off.

2 And *Moses* **Mosheh** alone
shall come near *the LORD* **Yah Veh:**
but they shall not come nigh;
neither shall the people *go up* **ascend** with him.

3 And *Moses* **Mosheh** came
and *told* **described to** the people
all the words of *the LORD* **Yah Veh,**
and all the judgments:
and all the people answered with one voice, and said,

EXODUS 23, 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

21 Guard at his face
and hear his voice, embitter him not;
for he bears not your rebellions:
for my name *is* in him.

22 But if in hearing, you hear his voice,
and work all I word;
then I become an enemy to your enemies
and besiege them who tribulate you.

23 For my angel goes at your face
and brings you to the Emoriy
and the Hethiy and the Perizziy and the Kenaaniy
the Hivviy and the Yebusiy:
and I cut them off.

24 Neither prostrate to their elohim,
nor serve them, nor work after their works:
but in demolishing, demolish them
and in breaking, break their monoliths;
and serve Yah Veh your Elohim:
and he blesses your bread and your water;
and I turn away sickness from your midst.

25 and he blesses your bread and your water;
and I turn away sickness from your midst.

26 There is neither the aborted
nor the sterile, in your land:
the number of your days I fulfil.

27 I send my fear at your face
and agitate all the people to whom you come
and I give
so that all your enemies turn their neck to you:
and I send hornets at your face
to expel the Hivviy, the Kenaaniy and the Hethiy
from your face.

28 to expel the Hivviy, the Kenaaniy and the Hethiy
from your face.

29 I expel them not from your face in one year;
lest the land become desolate
and the live being of the field be many against you:

30 little by little I expel them from your face,
until you bear fruit and inherit the land.

31 And I set your borders from the Reed sea
even to the sea of the Peleshethiym
and from the wilderness to the river:
for I give them who settle the land into your hand;
and you expel them from your face.

32 Neither cut covenant with them
nor with their elohim:
settle them not in your land
lest they cause you to sin against me:
for if you serve their elohim,
it becomes a snare to you.

YAH VEH CUTS A COVENANT

24 And he says to Mosheh,
Ascend to Yah Veh,
you and Aharon, Nadab and Abi Hu
and seventy of the elders of Yisra El;
and prostrate afar off.

2 And Mosheh approaches Yah Veh alone:
and they come not nigh
and the people ascend not with him.

3 And Mosheh comes and describes to the people
all the words of Yah Veh and all the judgments.

And all the people answer with one voice, and say,

EXODUS 24, 25

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

All the words which the LORD Yah Veh hath said worded will shall we do work.

4 And Moses wrote Mosheh inscribed all the words of the LORD Yah Veh, and rose up started early in the morning, and builded an a sacrifice altar under the hill mountain, and twelve pillars monoliths, according to the twelve tribes scions of Israel Yisra El.

5 And he sent young men lads of the children sons of Israel Yisra El, which offered burnt offerings holocausted holocausts, and sacrificed sacrifices peace offerings — shelamim of oxen bullocks unto the LORD Yah Veh.

6 And Moses Mosheh took half of the blood, and put it in basons bowls; and half of the blood he sprinkled on the sacrifice altar.

7 And he took the book scroll of the covenant, and read recalled in the audience ears of the people: and they said,

All that the LORD Yah Veh hath said worded will shall we do work, and be obedient hearken.

8 And Moses Mosheh took the blood, and sprinkled it on the people, and said, Behold the blood of the covenant, which the LORD Yah Veh hath made cut with you concerning all these words.

9 Then went up Moses ascended Mosheh, and Aaron Aharon, Nadab, and Abihu Abi Hu, and seventy of the elders of Israel Yisra El:

10 And they saw the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El: and there was under his feet as it were a paved transparent work of a sapphire stone, and as it were the body skeleton of heaven the heavens in his clearness purity.

11 And upon the nobles of the children sons of Israel Yisra El he laid spread not his hand: also they saw God Elohim, and did eat and drink.

12 And the LORD Yah Veh said unto Moses Mosheh, Come up Ascend to me into the mount, and be there: and I will shall give thee tables slabs of stone, and a law torah and commandments misvoth which I have written inscribed; that thou mayest teach direct them.

13 And Moses Mosheh rose up, and his minister Joshua Yah Shua: and Moses went up Mosheh ascended into the mount of God Elohim.

14 And he said unto the elders, Tarry Settle ye here for us, until we come again return unto you: and, behold, Aaron Aharon and Hur are with you: if any man have any matters to do be a master of words, let him come unto them.

15 And Moses went up Mosheh ascended into the mount, and a cloud covered the mount.

16 And the glory honour of the LORD Yah Veh abode tabernacled upon mount Sinai Sinay, and the cloud covered it six days: and the seventh day he called unto Moses Mosheh out of the midst of the cloud.

17 And the sight visage of the glory honour of the LORD Yah Veh was like devouring consuming fire on the top of the mount in the eyes of the children sons of Israel Yisra El.

18 And Moses Mosheh went into the midst of the cloud, and gat him up ascended into the mount: and Moses Mosheh was in the mount forty days and forty nights.

THE VOLUNTARY EXALTMET FOR THE HALLOWED REFUGE

25

And the LORD spake Yah Veh worded unto Moses Mosheh, saying, Speak Word unto the children sons of Israel Yisra El, that they bring take me an offering exaltment: of every man that giveth it willingly with his heart of all whose heart volunteereth ye shall take my offering exaltment.

EXODUS 24, 25

exeGeses companion BIBLE

All the words Yah Veh words, we work.

4 And Mosheh inscribes all the words of Yah Veh and starts early in the morning and builds a sacrifice altar under the mountain and twelve monoliths for the twelve scions of Yisra El:

5 and he sends lads of the sons of Yisra El, who holocaust holocausts and sacrifice sacrifices — shelamim of bullocks to Yah Veh:

6 and Mosheh takes half of the blood and puts it in bowls; and half of the blood he sprinkles on the sacrifice altar:

7 and he takes the scroll of the covenant and recalls in the ears of the people.

And they say, All Yah Veh words, we work and hearken.

8 And Mosheh takes the blood and sprinkles it on the people and says, Behold the blood of the covenant Yah Veh cut with you concerning all these words.

9 Then Mosheh ascends with Aharon Nadab and Abi Hu and seventy of the elders of Yisra El: and they see Elohim of Yisra El: and there under his feet — as a transparent work of a sapphire stone, — as a skeleton of the heavens in his purity.

10 And on the nobles of the sons of Yisra El he spreads not his hand: and they see Elohim and eat and drink.

11 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh, Ascend to me into the mount and be there: and I give you slabs of stone and a torah and misvoth which I inscribed to direct them.

12 And Mosheh and his minister Yah Shua rise: and Mosheh ascends into the mount of Elohim: and he says to the elders, Settle here for us, until we return to you: and behold, Aharon and Hur are with you: if any man is a master of words, have him come to them.

13 And Mosheh ascends into the mount; and a cloud covers the mount: and the honor of Yah Veh tabernacles on mount Sinay and the cloud covers it six days: and the seventh day he calls to Mosheh from midst the cloud: and the visage of the honor of Yah Veh is as consuming fire on the top of the mount in the eyes of the sons of Yisra El.

14 And Mosheh goes midst the cloud and ascends the mount: and Mosheh is on the mount forty days and forty nights.

THE VOLUNTARY EXALTMET FOR THE HALLOWED REFUGE

25 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying, Word to the sons of Yisra El, to take me an exaltment: from all whose heart volunteers, take my exaltment:

25

2

EXODUS 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 And this is the offering exaltment
which ye shall take of them;
gold, and silver, and brass copper,
4 And blue, and purple, and scarlet,
and fine white linen, and goats' hair,
5 And rams' skins dyed red reddened, and badgers' skins,
and shittim wood timber,
6 Oil for the light, spices for anointing oil,
and for sweet incense of aromatics,
7 Onyx stones,
and stones to be set — fillings in the ephod,
and in the breastplate.
8 And let them make work me a sanctuary holies;
that I may dwell tabernacle among them.
9 According to all that I shew have thee see,
after the pattern of the tabernacle,
and the pattern of all the instruments thereof,
even so shall ye make work it.

PATTERN FOR THE ARK

10 And they shall make work
an ark of shittim wood timber:
two cubits and a half shall be the length thereof,
and a cubit and a half the breadth thereof,
and a cubit and a half the height thereof.
11 And thou shalt overlay it with pure gold,
within and without shalt thou overlay it,
and shalt make work upon it
a crown moulding of gold round about.
12 And thou shalt cast pour
four rings signets of gold for it,
and put give them in the four corners supports thereof;
and two rings signets shall be in the one side of it,
and two rings signets in the other second side of it.
13 And thou shalt make work staves
of shittim wood timber,
and overlay them with gold.
14 And thou shalt put the staves into the rings signets
by the sides of the ark,
that the ark may be borne with them.
15 The staves shall be in the rings signets of the ark:
they shall not be taken turned aside from it.
16 And thou shalt put give into the ark
the testimony witness which I shall give thee.
17 And thou shalt make work
a mercy seat kapporeth of pure gold:
two cubits and a half shall be the length thereof,
and a cubit and a half the breadth thereof.
18 And thou shalt make work
two cherubims cherubim of gold,
of beaten work spinnings shalt thou make work them,
in the two ends of the mercy seat kapporeth.
19 And make work one cherub on the one this end,
and the other one cherub on the other that end:
even of the mercy seat kapporeth
shall ye make work the cherubims cherubim
on the two ends thereof.
20 And the cherubims cherubim
shall stretch forth spread their wings on high upward,
covering the mercy seat kapporeth with their wings,
and their faces shall look one man to another brother;
toward the mercy seat kapporeth
shall the faces of the cherubims cherubim be.
21 And thou shalt put give the mercy seat kapporeth
above upon the ark;
and in the ark
thou shalt put give the testimony witness
that I shall give thee.
22 And there I will meet shall congregate with thee,
and I will commune shall word with thee
from above the mercy seat kapporeth,
from between the two cherubims cherubim
which are upon the ark of the testimony witness,
of all things which I will give shall misvah thee
in commandment
unto the children sons of Israel Yisra El.

PATTERN FOR THE TABLE

23 Thou shalt also make work a table of shittim wood timber:
two cubits shall be the length thereof,
and a cubit the breadth thereof,

EXODUS 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 and this is the exaltment you take from them;
gold and silver and copper
4 and blue and purple and scarlet
and white linen and of goats,
5 and reddened skins of rams and skins of badgers
and shittim timber:
6 oil for the light, spices for anointing oil
and for incense of aromatics,
7 onyx stones and stones
— fillings in the ephod and in the breastplate.
8 And have them work me a holies
that I tabernacle among them:
9 according to all I show you,
after the pattern of the tabernacle
and the pattern of all its instruments,
even work thus.

PATTERN FOR THE ARK

10 And they work an ark of shittim timber:
two cubits and a half long
and a cubit and a half wide
and a cubit and a half high.
11 And overlay it with pure gold
— overlay in and out
and on it work a moulding of gold around:
12 and pour four signets of gold for it
and give them in its four supports;
and two signets in the one side
and two signets in the second side:
13 and work staves of shittim timber
and overlay them with gold:
14 and put the staves into the signets
by the sides of the ark to bear the ark:
15 the staves be in the signets of the ark:
so that they turn not aside from it.
16 And in the ark give the witness I give you:
17 and work a kapporeth of pure gold:
two cubits and a half long
and a cubit and a half wide:
18 and work two cherubim of gold:
work them of spinnings
in the two ends of the kapporeth:
19 and work one cherub on this end
and the other one cherub on that end:
work the cherubim on the two ends of the kapporeth.
20 And have the cherubim spread their wings upward
covering the kapporeth with their wings:
with their faces man to brother toward the kapporeth
— so be the faces of the cherubim.
21 And give the kapporeth above on the ark;
and give the witness I gave you in the ark.
22 And there I congregate with you
and I word with you from above the kapporeth,
from between the two cherubim
on the ark of the witness,
of all I misvah you to the sons of Yisra El.

PATTERN FOR THE TABLE

23 And work a table of shittim timber:
two cubits long and a cubit wide

EXODUS 25, 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 24 and a cubit and a half the height thereof.
And thou shalt overlay it with pure gold,
and **make work** thereto
a *crown* **moulding** of gold round about.
- 25 And thou shalt **make work** unto it a border
of an *hand breadth* a **palm span** round about,
and thou shalt **make work** a golden *crown* **moulding**
to the border thereof round about.
- 26 And thou shalt **make work** for it
four *rings* **signets** of gold,
and **put** give the *rings* **signets** in the four *corners* **edges**
that are on the four feet thereof.
- 27 Over against **Along side** the border
shall the *rings* **signets** be
for places of the staves to bear the table.
- 28 And thou shalt **make work** the staves
of shittim wood **timber**,
and overlay them with gold,
that the table may be borne with them.
- PATTERN FOR THE INSTRUMENTS**
- 29 And thou shalt **make work** the dishes thereof,
and *spoons* **bowls** thereof, and covers thereof,
and *bowls* **exoneration basins** thereof,
to cover withal **libate with**:
of pure gold shalt thou **make work** them.
- 30 And thou shalt **set** give upon the table
shewbread **face bread**
before me always **at my face continually**.
- 31 And thou shalt **make work** a *candlestick* **menorah**
of pure gold:
of *beaten work* **spinning**
shall the *candlestick* **menorah** be **made worked**:
his *shaft* **flank**, and his *branches* **stems**, his *bowls*,
his *knops* **finials**, and his *flowers* **blossoms**,
shall be of the same.
- 32 And six *branches* **stems** shall come out of the sides of it;
three *branches* **stems** of the *candlestick* **menorah**
out of the one side,
and three *branches* **stems** of the *candlestick* **menorah**
out of the other **second** side:
- 33 Three *bowls* **made like unto almonds** **almond shaped**,
with a *knop* **finial** and a *flower* **blossom**
in one *branch* **stem**;
and three *bowls* **made like almonds** **almond shaped**
in the other *branch* **one stem**,
with a *knop* **finial** and a *flower* **blossom**:
so in the six *branches* **stems**
that come out of the *candlestick* **menorah**.
- 34 And in the *candlestick* **menorah** shall be four *bowls*
made like unto almonds **almond shaped**,
with their *knops* **finials** and their *flowers* **blossoms**.
- 35 And there shall be a *knop* **finial**
under two *branches* **stems** of the same,
and a *knop* **finial** under two *branches* **stems** of the same,
and a *knop* **finial** under two *branches* **stems** of the same,
according to the six *branches* **stems**
that proceed out of the *candlestick* **menorah**.
- 36 Their *knops* **finials** and their *branches* **stems**
shall be of the same:
all it shall be one *beaten work* **spinning** of pure gold.
- PATTERN FOR THE LAMPS**
- 37 And thou shalt **make work** the seven lamps thereof:
and they shall **light** **holocaust** the lamps thereof,
that they may **give** **light** **illuminate**
over against **the face** of it.
- 38 And the tongs thereof, and the *snuffdishes* **trays** thereof,
shall be of pure gold.
- 39 Of a *talent* **A round** of pure gold shall he **make work** it,
with all these *vessels* **instruments**.
- 40 And **look** **see** that thou **make work** them
after their pattern,
which was *shewed thee* **thou sawest** in the mount.
- PATTERN FOR THE TABERNACLE**
- 26 Moreover thou shalt **make work** the tabernacle
with ten curtains of *fine* **white** twined linen,
and blue, and purple, and scarlet:
with *cherubims* **cherubim**,
of *cunning work* **the work of a fabricator**
shalt thou **make work** them.

EXODUS 25, 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 24 and a cubit and a half high:
and overlay it with pure gold
and work thereto a moulding of gold all around:
- 25 and work to it a border of a palm span all around:
and work a golden moulding to its border all around:
- 26 and work four signets of gold for it
and give the signets in the four edges on its four feet:
along side the border be the signets
for places of the staves to bear the table:
- 27 and work the staves of shittim timber
and overlay them with gold to bear the table.
- PATTERN FOR THE INSTRUMENTS**
- 29 And the dishes and the bowls and the covers
and the exoneration basins to libate with:
work them of pure gold.
- 30 And on the table give face bread
at my face continually.
- 31 And work a menorah of pure gold:
of spinning, work the menorah:
his flank and his stems, his bowls,
his finials and his blossoms, be of the same:
and six stems come from its sides;
three stems of the menorah from the one side
and three stems of the menorah from the second side:
- 32 three bowls — almond shaped,
with a finial and a blossom in one stem;
and three bowls — almond shaped,
with a finial and a blossom in one stem:
thus in the six stems coming from the menorah.
- 33 And in the menorah, four bowls — almond shaped
with their finials and their blossoms:
with a finial under two stems of the same
and a finial under two stems of the same
and a finial under two stems of the same
— according to the six stems
proceeding from the menorah:
- 34 their finials and their stems of the same:
all one spinning of pure gold.
- PATTERN FOR THE LAMPS**
- 37 And work its seven lamps:
and they holocaust the lamps thereof,
to illuminate over against the face thereof.
- 38 And its tongs and its trays of pure gold:
a round of pure gold he works it,
with all these instruments.
- 39 And see that you work them after their pattern
you saw on the mount.
- PATTERN FOR THE TABERNACLE**
- 26 And work the tabernacle
with ten curtains of white twined linen
and blue and purple and scarlet:
work them with cherubim, the work of a fabricator:

EXODUS 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 The length of one curtain shall be eight and twenty cubits, and the breadth of one curtain four cubits: and every one of the curtains shall have one measure.

3 The five curtains shall be *coupled together* **joined one woman to another sister**; and *other* five curtains shall be *coupled* **joined one woman to another sister**.

4 And thou shalt *make* **work** loops of blue upon the edge of the one curtain from the *selvedge* **end** in the *coupling* **joint**; and likewise shalt thou *make* **work** in the uttermost edge of *another* curtain, in the *coupling* **joint** of the second.

5 Fifty loops shalt thou *make* **work** in the one curtain, and fifty loops shalt thou *make* **work** in the *edge* **end** of the curtain that is in the *coupling* **joint** of the second; that the loops may take hold *one woman to another sister*.

6 And thou shalt *make* **work** fifty *taches* **hooks** of gold, and *couple* **join** the curtains *together* **woman to sister** with the *taches* **hooks**: and it shall be one tabernacle.

7 And thou shalt *make* **work** curtains of goats' *hair* to be a *covering* **tent** upon the tabernacle: eleven curtains shalt thou *make* **work**.

8 The length of one curtain shall be thirty cubits, and the breadth of one curtain four cubits: and the eleven curtains shall be all of one measure.

9 And *thou* shalt *couple* **join** five curtains by themselves, and six curtains by themselves, and shalt double the sixth curtain in the *forefront* **front at the face** of the *tabernacle* **tent**.

10 And thou shalt *make* **work** fifty loops on the edge of the one curtain that is outmost in the *coupling* **joint**, and fifty loops in the edge of the curtain *which coupleth* **in the joint** of the second.

11 And thou shalt *make* **work** fifty *taches* **hooks** of brass **copper**, and put the *taches* **hooks** into the loops, and *couple* **join** the tent together, that it may be one.

12 And the *remnant that remaineth* **leftover extension** of the curtains of the tent, the half curtain *that remaineth* **leftover**, shall *hang* **spread** over the *backside* **back** of the tabernacle.

13 And a cubit *on the one side* **from this**, and a cubit *on the other side of that* **from that** *which remaineth* **is leftover** in the length of the curtains of the tent, it shall *hang* **spread** over the sides of the tabernacle *on from this side and on from that side*, to cover it.

14 And thou shalt *make* **work** a covering for the tent of rams' skins *dyed red* **reddened**, and a covering above of badgers' skins.

15 And thou shalt *make* **work** boards for the tabernacle of shittim wood **timber** standing up.

16 Ten cubits shall be the length of a board, and a cubit and a half *cubit* shall be the breadth of one board.

17 Two *tenons* **hands** shall there be in one board, *set in order one against another* **equidistant woman to sister**: thus shalt thou *make* **work** for all the boards of the tabernacle.

18 And thou shalt *make* **work** the boards for the tabernacle, twenty boards on the south *side* **edge** southward.

19 And thou shalt *make* **work** forty sockets of silver under the twenty boards; two sockets under one board for his two *tenons* **hands**, and two sockets under *another one* board for his two *tenons* **hands**.

20 And for the second side of the tabernacle on the north *side* **edge** there shall be twenty boards:

21 And their forty sockets of silver;

EXODUS 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 the length of one curtain, twenty—eight cubits and the width of one curtain, four cubits: — and everyone of the curtains has one measure: join five curtains woman to sister and join five curtains woman to sister: and work loops of blue on the edge of the one curtain from the end in the joint: and work likewise in the uttermost edge of curtain in the joint of the second:

5 work fifty loops in the one curtain and work fifty loops in the end of the curtain in the joint of the second; so that the loops take hold woman to sister.

6 And work fifty hooks of gold and join the curtains woman to sister with the hooks: and it becomes one tabernacle.

7 And work curtains of goats for a tent on the tabernacle; work eleven curtains:

8 the length of one curtain, thirty cubits and the width of one curtain, four cubits; and the eleven curtains all of one measure: and join five curtains by themselves and six curtains by themselves: and double the sixth curtain in the front at the face of the tent:

10 and work fifty loops on the edge of the one curtain which *is* outermost in the joint; and fifty loops in the edge of the curtain in the joint of the second: and work fifty hooks of copper; and put the hooks into the loops and join the tent together, that it become one.

12 And the leftover extension of the curtains of the tent: spread the half curtain which *is* leftover, over the back of the tabernacle: and a cubit from this and a cubit from that which *is* leftover in the length of the curtains of the tent, spread it over the sides of the tabernacle from this and from that, to cover it.

14 And work a covering for the tent of reddened ram skins and a covering above of badger skins: and work boards for the tabernacle of shittim timber standing up: ten cubits the length of a board and a cubit and a half the width of one board — two hands in one board, equidistant woman to sister: thus you work for all the boards of the tabernacle: and work the boards for the tabernacle: twenty boards on the south edge southward: and work forty sockets of silver under the twenty boards; two sockets under one board for his two hands and two sockets under one board for his two hands.

20 And for the second side of the tabernacle: on the north edge, twenty boards; and their forty sockets of silver:

21

EXODUS 26, 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

two sockets under one board,
and two sockets under *another one* board.
22 And for the *sides flanks* of the tabernacle
westward **seaward**
thou shalt *make work* six boards.
23 And two boards shalt thou *make work*
for the corners of the tabernacle in the *two sides flanks*.
24 And they shall be
coupled together beneath twinned downward,
and they shall be *coupled together twinned*
above the head of it unto one *ring signet*:
thus shall it be for **the two of** them *both*;
they shall be for the two corners.
25 And they shall be eight boards,
and their sockets of silver, sixteen sockets;
two sockets under one board,
and two sockets under *another one* board.
26 And thou shalt *make work* bars of shittim wood **timber**;
five for the boards of the one side of the tabernacle,
27 And five bars
for the boards of the *other second* side of the tabernacle,
and five bars for the boards of the side of the tabernacle,
for the *two sides westward flanks seaward*.
28 And the middle bar in the midst of the boards
shall *reach spread* from end to end.
29 And thou shalt overlay the boards with gold,
and *make work* their *rings signets* of gold
for places for the bars:
and thou shalt overlay the bars with gold.
30 And thou shalt *rear up raise* the tabernacle
according to the *fashion judgment* thereof
which *was shewed thee thou sawest* in the mount.
31 And thou shalt *make work* a veil of blue,
and purple, and scarlet, and *fine white* twined linen
of *cunning work the work of a fabricator*:
with *cherubims cherubim* shall it be made:
32 And thou shalt *hang give* it
upon four pillars of shittim wood overlaid with gold:
their hooks shall be of gold,
upon the four sockets of silver.
33 And thou shalt *hang up give* the veil
under the *taches hooks*,
that thou mayest bring in thither within the veil
the ark of the *testimony witness*:
and the veil shall *divide separate* unto you
between the *holy place holies*
and **between** the *most holy holy of holies*.
34 And thou shalt *put give* the *mercy seat kapporeth*
upon the ark of the *testimony witness*
in the *most holy place holy of holies*.
35 And thou shalt set the table without the veil,
and the *candlestick menorah* over against the table
on the side of the tabernacle *toward the south southward*:
and thou shalt *put give* the table on the north side.
36 And thou shalt *make an hanging work a covering*
for the *door opening* of the tent,
of blue, and purple, and scarlet,
and *fine white* twined linen,
wrought with *needlework embroidery work*.
37 And thou shalt *make work* for the *hanging covering*
five pillars of shittim wood and overlay them with gold,
and their hooks shall be of gold:
and thou shalt *cast pour* five sockets of *brass copper*
for them.

PATTERN FOR THE ALTAR

27 And thou shalt *make an work a sacrifice* altar
of shittim wood **timber**,
five cubits long, and five cubits broad;
the **sacrifice** altar shall be foursquare:
and the height thereof shall be three cubits.
2 And thou shalt *make work* the horns of it
upon the four corners thereof:
his horns shall be of the same:
and thou shalt overlay it with *brass copper*.
3 And thou shalt *make work* his *pans cauldrons*
to *receive his ashes de—ash*,
and his shovels, and his *basons sprinklers*,
and his *fleshhooks forks*, and his *firepans trays*:

EXODUS 26, 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

two sockets under one board
and two sockets under one board.
22 And for the flanks of the tabernacle seaward:
work six boards.
23 and work two boards
for the corners of the tabernacle in the flanks:
and twin them downward
24 and twin them above the head to one signet:
so be it for the two of them;
they become for the two corners:
and they become eight boards
and their sockets of silver, sixteen sockets:
two sockets under one board
and two sockets under one board.
25 And work bars of shittim timber:
five for the boards
of the one side of the tabernacle;
and five bars for the boards
of the second side of the tabernacle;
and five bars for the boards
of the side of the tabernacle
for the flanks seaward:
26 and spread the middle bar midst the boards
from end to end.
27 And overlay the boards with gold
and work their signets of gold for places for the bars:
and overlay the bars with gold.
28
29 And raise the tabernacle
according to the judgment thereof
which you saw in the mount.
30
31 And work a veil
of blue and purple and scarlet and white twined linen
— the work of a fabricator:
make it with cherubim:
and give it on four pillars of shittim
overlaid with gold:
32 their hooks of gold on the four sockets of silver:
and give the veil under the hooks,
to bring in the ark of the witness within the veil:
and the veil separates to you
between the holies and between the holy of holies.
33
34 And give the kapporeth on the ark of the witness
in the holy of holies.
35
36 And set the table outside the veil
and the menorah over against the table
on the side of the tabernacle southward:
and give the table on the north side.
37
38 And work a covering for the opening of the tent,
of blue and purple and scarlet
and white twined linen,
wrought with embroidery work:
and for the covering
work five pillars of shittim
and overlay them with gold
and their hooks of gold:
and pour five sockets of copper for them.

PATTERN FOR THE ALTAR

27 And work a sacrifice altar of shittim timber
five cubits long and five cubits wide;
the sacrifice altar *is* foursquare:
and its height, three cubits:
2 and work its horns on its four corners:
his horns of the same
— and overlay it with copper.
3 And work his cauldrons to de—ash
and his shovels and his sprinklers
and his forks and his trays:

EXODUS 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

all the **vessels instruments** thereof
thou shalt **make work** of **brass copper**.
4 And thou shalt **make work** for it a **grate screen**
of network of **brass copper**;
and upon the net
shalt thou **make work** four **brases rings copper signets**
in the four **corners ends** thereof.
5 And thou shalt **put give** it under the **compass rim**
of the **sacrifice** altar **beneath downward**,
that the net may be even to the midst of the **sacrifice** altar.
6 And thou shalt **make work** staves
for the **sacrifice** altar,
staves of shittim **wood timber**,
and overlay them with **brass copper**.
7 And the staves shall be **put**
into the **rings signets**,
and the staves shall be
upon the two sides of the **sacrifice** altar, to bear it.
8 Hollow with **boards slabs** shalt thou **make work** it:
as it was **shewed thee thou sawest** in the mount,
so shall they **make work** it.
PATTERN FOR THE COURT
9 And thou shalt **make work** the court of the tabernacle:
for the south **side edge** southward
there shall be hangings for the court
of **fine white** twined linen
of an hundred cubits long for one **side edge**:
10 And the twenty pillars thereof
and their twenty sockets shall be of **brass copper**;
the hooks of the pillars and their **fillets attachments**
shall be of silver.
11 And likewise for the north **side edge** in length
there shall be hangings of an hundred **cubits** long,
and his twenty pillars and their twenty sockets
of **brass copper**;
the hooks of the pillars and their **fillets attachments**
of silver.
12 And for the breadth of the court
on the **west side seaward edge**
shall be hangings of fifty cubits:
their pillars ten, and their sockets ten.
13 And the breadth of the court
on the east **side eastward edge toward the rising**
shall be fifty cubits.
14 The hangings of one **side of the gate shoulder**
shall be fifteen cubits:
their pillars three, and their sockets three.
15 And on the **other side second shoulder**
shall be hangings fifteen **cubits**:
their pillars three, and their sockets three.
16 And for the **gate portal** of the court
shall be an **hanging a covering** of twenty cubits,
of blue, and purple, and scarlet,
and **fine white** twined linen,
wrought with **needlework embroidery work**:
and their pillars shall be four, and their sockets four.
17 All the pillars round about the court
shall be **filleted attached** with silver;
their hooks shall be of silver,
and their sockets of **brass copper**.
18 The length of the court shall be an hundred cubits,
and the breadth fifty every where,
and the height five cubits of **fine white** twined linen,
and their sockets of **brass copper**.
19 All the **vessels instruments** of the tabernacle
in all the service thereof,
and all the **pins stakes** thereof,
and all the **pins stakes** of the court,
shall be of **brass copper**.
20 And thou shalt **command misvah**
the **children sons** of Israel **Yisra El**,
that they **bring take** thee pure oil olive
beaten pestled for the light,
to cause **holocaust** the lamp to **burn always continually**.
21 In the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation
without the vail,
which is **before in front of** the **testimony witness**,
Aaron Aharon and his sons shall **order arrange** it

EXODUS 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

work all its instruments of copper.
4 And work a screen of network of copper for it;
and on the network
four copper signets in the four ends:
5 and give it under the rim
of the sacrifice altar downward,
so that the net
becomes to the middle of the sacrifice altar.
6 And work staves for the sacrifice altar
— staves of shittim timber;
and overlay them with copper:
7 and the staves into the signets,
with the staves on the two sides of the sacrifice altar
to bear it:
8 work it hollow with slabs: as you saw in the mount.
— so they work it.
PATTERN FOR THE COURT
9 And work the court of the tabernacle:
for the south edge southward,
hangings for the court of white twined linen
of a hundred cubits long for one edge:
10 and the twenty pillars
and their twenty sockets of copper;
the hooks of the pillars and their attachments
of silver.
11 And likewise for the north edge in length,
hangings of a hundred long
and his twenty pillars and their twenty sockets
of copper;
the hooks of the pillars and their attachments
of silver.
12 And for the width of the court
on the seaward edge, hangings of fifty cubits:
their pillars ten and their sockets ten.
13 And for the width of the court
on the east edge toward the rising, fifty cubits:
14 the hangings of one shoulder, fifteen cubits:
their pillars three and their sockets three:
15 and on the second shoulder, hangings of fifteen:
their pillars three and their sockets three.
16 And for the portal of the court,
a covering of twenty cubits
of blue and purple and scarlet
and white twined linen,
wrought with embroidery work:
and their pillars four and their sockets four.
17 All the pillars around the court attach with silver;
their hooks of silver and their sockets of copper.
18 The length of the court, a hundred cubits
and the width, fifty everywhere
and the height, five cubits of white twined linen
and their sockets of copper.
19 All the instruments of the tabernacle
in all their service;
and all the stakes
— all the stakes of the court, of copper.
20 And misvah the sons of Yisra El
to take pure olive oil pestled for the light
to holocaust the lamp continually.
21 In the tent of the congregation outside the veil,
in front of the witness,
Aharon and his sons arrange it

EXODUS 27, 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

from evening to morning
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
it shall be an eternal statute for ever
unto their generations

on the behalf of the children sons of Israel Yisra El.

PATTERN FOR THE PRIESTAL CLOTHES

28

And take **oblate** thou unto thee
Aaron **Aharon** thy brother, and his sons with him,
from among the children sons of Israel **Yisra El**,
that he may minister unto me in the priest's office
priest the priesthood unto me,
even Aaron **Aharon**, Nadab and *Abihu* **Abi Hu**,
Eleazar **El Azar** and *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**,
Aaron's **Aharon's** sons.

2 And thou shalt **make work** holy garments clothes
for Aaron **Aharon** thy brother
for glory **honour** and for beauty **adornment**.

3 And thou shalt **speak word**
unto all that are wise hearted,
whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom,
that they may
make Aaron's garments work Aharon's clothes
to consecrate **hallow** him,
that he may minister unto me in the priest's office
priest the priesthood unto me.

4 And these are the garments clothes
which they shall **make work**;
a breastplate, and an ephod, and a robe **mantle**,
and a brodered coat, a *mitre* **tiara**, and a girdle:
and they shall **make work** holy garments clothes
for Aaron **Aharon** thy brother, and his sons,
that he may minister unto me in the priest's office
priest the priesthood unto me.

PATTERN FOR THE EPHOD

5 And they shall take gold, and blue, and purple,
and scarlet, and *fine* **white** linen.

6 And they shall **make work** the ephod
of gold, of blue, and of purple, of scarlet,
and *fine* **white** twined linen,
with *cunning* **fabricated** work.

7 It shall have the two shoulderpieces thereof
joined at the two *edges* **ends** thereof;
and so it shall be joined *together*.

8 And the *curious* **fabricated** girdle of the ephod,
which is upon it, shall be of the same,
according to the work thereof;
even of gold, of blue, and purple, and scarlet,
and *fine* **white** twined linen.

9 And thou shalt take two onyx stones,
and *grave* **engrave** on them
the names of the children sons of Israel **Yisra El**:
Six of their names on one stone,
and the other six names of the rest **which remain**
on the other **second** stone,
according to their *birth* **generations**.

11 With the work of an engraver in stone,
like the engravings of a *signet* **seal**,
shalt thou engrave the two stones
with the names of the children sons of Israel **Yisra El**:
thou shalt **make work** them
to be set in *ouches* **surrounded by brocades** of gold.

12 And thou shalt put the two stones
upon the shoulders of the ephod
for stones of memorial
unto the children sons of Israel **Yisra El**:
and Aaron **Aharon** shall bear their names
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh
upon his two shoulders for a memorial.

13 And thou shalt **make ouches work brocades** of gold;
14 And two chains of pure gold at the ends;
of wreathen work shalt thou **make work** them,
and *fasten* **give** the wreathen chains
to the *ouches* **brocades**.

PATTERN FOR THE BREASTPLATE OF JUDGMENT

15 And thou shalt **make work** the breastplate of judgment
with *cunning* **fabricated** work;
after the work of the ephod thou shalt **make work** it;
of gold, of blue, and of purple, and of scarlet,
and of *fine* **white** twined linen, shalt thou **make work** it.

EXODUS 27, 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

from evening to morning at the face of Yah Veh:
— an eternal statute to their generations
on the behalf of the sons of Yisra El.

PATTERN FOR THE PRIESTAL CLOTHES

28

And oblate to yourself
Aharon your brother and his sons with him,
from among the sons of Yisra El,
that he priest the priesthood to me
— Aharon,
Nadab and Abi Hu, El Azar and Iy Thamar,
sons of Aharon.

2 And work holy clothes for Aharon your brother
for honor and for adornment:

3 and word to all the wise hearted
whom I fill with the spirit of wisdom,
to work the clothes of Aharon to hallow him,
that he priest the priesthood to me:
4 and these are the clothes they work:
a breastplate and an ephod
and a mantle and a brodered coat
a tiara and a girdle:
and they work holy clothes
for Aharon your brother and his sons,
to priest the priesthood to me.

PATTERN FOR THE EPHOD

5 And they take gold and blue and purple and scarlet
and white linen:
6 and they work the ephod
of gold, blue and purple,
and scarlet and white twined linen,
with fabricated work.
7 It joins the two shoulderpieces at their two ends;
and so be it joined.

8 And the fabricated girdle of the ephod thereon
is of the same
according to its work
— of gold, blue and purple
and scarlet and white twined linen.

9 And take two onyx stones
and engrave on them
the names of the sons of Yisra El:
10 six of their names on one stone
and their six remaining names on the second stone
according to their generations
11 — with the work of an engraver in stone,
as the engravings of a seal,
engrave the two stones
with the names of the sons of Yisra El:
12 work them, surrounded by brocades of gold:
and put the two stones
on the shoulders of the ephod
for stones of memorial to the sons of Yisra El:
and Aharon bears their names
on his two shoulders for a memorial
at the face of Yah Veh:
and work brocades of gold;
13 and two chains of pure gold at the ends;
14 work them of wreathen work
and give the wreathen chains to the brocades.

PATTERN FOR THE BREASTPLATE OF JUDGMENT

15 And work the breastplate of judgment
with fabricated work;
work it after the work of the ephod:
work it of gold, blue and purple
and scarlet and white twined linen

EXODUS 28

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 16 Foursquare it shall be being doubled;
a span shall be the length thereof,
and a span shall be the breadth thereof.
- 17 And thou shalt set **fill** in it
settings fillings of stones,
even four rows of stones:
the *first* row shall be
a sardius, a topaz, and a carbuncle:
this shall be the first row.
- 18 And the second row shall be
an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond.
- 19 And the third row
a *ligure* **an opal**, an agate, and an amethyst.
- 20 And the fourth row
a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper:
they shall be set **embroidered** in gold
in their *inclosings* **fillings**.
- 21 And the stones shall be with the names
of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
twelve, according to their names,
like the engravings of a *signet seal*;
every *one* **man** with his name shall they be
according to the twelve *tribes* **scions**.
- 22 And thou shalt **make work** upon the breastplate
chains at the *ends* **twisted** of wreathen work of pure gold.
- 23 And thou shalt **make work** upon the breastplate
two *rings* **signets** of gold,
and shalt **put give** the two *rings* **signets**
on the two ends of the breastplate.
- 24 And thou shalt **put give**
the two *wreathen chains* **wreaths** of gold
in the two *rings* **signets**
which are on the ends of the breastplate.
- 25 And the *other* two ends
of the two *wreathen chains* **wreaths**
thou shalt **fasten give** in the two *ouches* **brocades**,
and **put give** them on the shoulder pieces of the ephod
before it at the face of the front.
- 26 And thou shalt **make work** two *rings* **signets** of gold,
and thou shalt put them
upon the two ends of the breastplate
in the *border* **edge** thereof,
which is in the *side* of **over against**
the ephod *inward* **housing**.
- 27 And two *other* *rings* **signets** of gold
thou shalt **make work**,
and shalt **put give** them on the two *sides* **shoulders**
of the ephod *underneath* **downward**,
toward the forepart **at the face of the front** thereof,
over against **along side** the *other* *coupling* **joint** thereof,
above the *curious* **fabricated** girdle of the ephod.
- 28 And they shall bind the breastplate
by the *rings* **signets** thereof
unto the *rings* **signets** of the ephod
with a *lace* **braid** of blue,
that it may be above the *curious* **fabricated** girdle
of the ephod,
and that the breastplate be not *loosed* **removed**
from the ephod.
- 29 And Aaron **Aharon** shall bear
the names of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
in the breastplate of judgment upon his heart,
when he goeth in unto the *holy place* **holies**,
for a memorial
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh continually.
- 30 And thou shalt **put give** in the breastplate of judgment
the Urim and the Thummim;
and they shall be upon *Aaron's* **Aharon's** heart,
when he goeth in
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
and Aaron **Aharon** shall bear the judgment
of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El** upon his heart
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh continually.
- PATTERN FOR THE EPHOD MANTLE**
- 31 And thou shalt **make work** the *robe* **mantle**
of the ephod *all of* **totally** blue.
- 32 And there shall be *an hole* **a mouth** in the top of it,
in the midst thereof:
it shall have a *binding* **an edging** of woven work

EXODUS 28

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 16 — foursquare, being doubled;
a span its length and a span its width:
- 17 and fill in fillings of stones
— four rows of stones:
a row of sardius, topaz and carbuncle
— the first row;
and the second row:
emerald, sapphire and diamond;
- 18 and the third row:
opal, agate and amethyst;
- 19 and the fourth row:
beryl and onyx and jasper
— embroidered in gold in their fillings.
- 20 And the stones,
according to the names of the sons of Yisra El,
twelve, according to their names
as the engravings of a seal;
— every man with his name
according to the twelve scions.
- 21
- 22 And on the breastplate
work twisted chains of wreathen work of pure gold:
- 23 and on the breastplate
work two signets of gold
and give the two signets
on the two ends of the breastplate:
- 24 and give the two wreaths of gold
in the two signets on the ends of the breastplate:
- 25 and give the two ends of the two wreaths
in the two brocades;
and give them on the shoulder pieces of the ephod
at the face of the front:
and work two signets of gold
and put them on the two ends of the breastplate
in the edge over against the ephod housing:
- 26 and work two signets of gold
and give them on the two shoulders
of the ephod downward
— at the face of the front along side the joint
above the fabricated girdle of the ephod.
- 27
- 28 And they bind the breastplate by its signets
to the signets of the ephod with a braid of blue,
so that it be above the fabricated girdle of the ephod
and so that the breastplate
be not removed from the ephod.
- 29 And Aharon bears
the names of the sons of Yisra El
in the breastplate of judgment on his heart
when he goes in to the holies
for a memorial at the face of Yah Veh continually.
- 30 And you give in the breastplate of judgment
the Urim and the Thummim;
and they be on the heart of Aharon,
when he goes in at the face of Yah Veh:
and Aharon bears the judgment
of the sons of Yisra El on his heart
at the face of Yah Veh continually.
- PATTERN FOR THE EPHOD MANTLE**
- 31 And work the mantle of the ephod totally of blue.
- 32 And a mouth be in the top, in the middle:
with an edging of woven work

EXODUS 28, 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

round about the *hole* **mouth** of it,
as it were the *hole* **mouth** of an habergeon,
that it be not *rent* **ripped**.
33 And *beneath* upon the *hem* **drape** of it
thou shalt *make* **work** pomegranates of blue,
and of purple, and of scarlet,
round about the *hem* **drape** thereof;
and bells of gold *between* **among** them round about:
34 A golden bell and a pomegranate,
a golden bell and a pomegranate,
upon the *hem* **drape** of the *robe* **mantle** round about.
35 And it shall be upon *Aaron* **Aharon** to minister:
and his *sound* **voice** shall be heard when he goeth in
unto the *holy* **place** **holies**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
and when he cometh out, that he die not.

PATTERN FOR THE TIARA

36 And thou shalt *make* **work**
a *plate* **blossom** of pure gold,
and *grave* **engrave** upon it,
like the engravings of a *signet* **seal**,
HOLINESS TO THE LORD HOLY TO YAH VEH.
37 And thou shalt put it on a blue *lace* **braid**,
that it may be upon the *mitre* **tiara**;
upon the forefront at the face of the front
of the mitre tiara it shall be.
38 And it shall be upon *Aaron's* **Aharon's** forehead,
that *Aaron* **Aharon** may bear
the *iniquity* **perversity** of the *holy things* **holies**,
which the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
shall hallow in all their holy gifts;
and it shall be *always* **continually** upon his forehead,
that they may be *accepted* **pleasing**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
39 And thou shalt embroider the coat of *fine* **white** linen,
and thou shalt *make* **work** the *mitre* **tiara**
of fine white linen,
and thou shalt *make* **work** the girdle
of needlework **embroidery work**.
40 And for *Aaron's* **Aharon's** sons
thou shalt *make* **work** coats,
and thou shalt *make* **work** for them girdles,
and *bonnets* **turbans** shalt thou *make* **work** for them,
for *glory* **honour** and for *beauty* **adornment**.
41 And thou shalt put them
upon *Aaron* **Aharon** thy brother, and his sons with him;
and shalt anoint them,
and *consecrate* **them** **fill their hand**,
and *sanctify* **hallow** them,
that they may *minister unto me in the priest's office*
priest the priesthood unto me.
42 And thou shalt *make* **work** them linen breeches
to cover **the flesh** of their nakedness;
from the loins even unto the *thighs* **flank** they shall reach:
43 And they shall be upon *Aaron* **Aharon**,
and upon his sons,
when they come in
unto the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
or when they come near unto the *sacrifice* **altar**
to minister in the *holy* **place** **holies**;
that they bear not *iniquity* **perversity**, and die:
it shall be a an eternal statute *for ever* unto him
and his seed after him.

HALLOWING THE PRIESTS

29

And this is the *thing* **word**
that thou shalt *do* **work** unto them to hallow them,
to *minister unto me in the priest's office*
priest the priesthood unto me:
Take one *young* bullock **son of the oxen**,
and two **integrious** rams *without blemish*,
2 And *unleavened bread* **matsah**,
and **matsah** cakes *unleavened tempered* **mingled** with oil,
and **matsah** wafers *unleavened* anointed with oil:
of wheat flour shalt thou *make* **work** them.
3 And thou shalt *put* **give** them into one basket,
and *bring* **oblate** them in the basket,
with the bullock and the two rams.
4 And *Aaron* **Aharon** and his sons thou shalt *bring* **oblate**

EXODUS 28, 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

all around its mouth — as the mouth of a habergeon,
so that it not rip.
33 And on the drape, work pomegranates
of blue and of purple and of scarlet around the drape;
and bells of gold among and around them
34 — a golden bell and a pomegranate
a golden bell and a pomegranate
around the drape of the mantle.
35 And so be it on Aharon to minister:
that his voice be heard when he goes in to the holies
at the face of Yah Veh
and when he comes out, that he die not.

PATTERN FOR THE TIARA

36 And work a blossom of pure gold
and engrave thereon as the engravings of a seal,
HOLY TO YAH VEH.
37 And put it on a blue braid, that it be on the tiara;
at the face of the front of the tiara, so be it.
38 And so be it on the forehead of Aharon
— so that Aharon bears the perversity of the holies
which the sons of Yisra El hallow
in all their holy gifts;
and so be it continually on his forehead,
that they be pleasing at the face of Yah Veh.
39 And embroider the coat of white linen
and work the tiara of white linen
and work the girdle of embroidery work.
40 And work coats for the sons of Aharon
and work girdles for them
and work turbans for them
for honor and for adornment.
41 And put them on Aharon your brother
and his sons with him;
and anoint them and fill their hand and hallow them,
to priest the priesthood to me.
42 And work them linen breeches
to cover the flesh of their nakedness;
reaching from the loins even to the flank:
and so be they on Aharon and on his sons
when they come in the tent of the congregation
or when they come near the sacrifice altar
to minister in the holies;
that they not bear perversity and die.
— an eternal statute to him and his seed after him.

HALLOWING THE PRIESTS

29

And this *is* the word
you work to them to hallow them
— to priest the priesthood to me:
take one bullock son of the oxen
and two integrious rams
2 and matsah and matsah cakes mingled with oil
and matsah wafers anointed with oil;
work them of wheat flour:
3 and give them into one basket
and oblate them in the basket
with the bullock and the two rams:
4 and oblate Aharon and his sons

EXODUS 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

unto the *door opening*
of the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation,
and shalt *wash baptize* them with water.
5 And thou shalt take the *garments clothes*,
and put upon *Aaron Aharon* the coat,
and the *robe mantle* of the ephod,
and the ephod, and the breastplate,
and gird him with the *curious fabricated* girdle
of the ephod:
6 And thou shalt *put give* the *mitre tiara* upon his head,
and *put give* the holy *crown separatism*
upon the *mitre tiara*.
7 Then shalt thou take the anointing oil,
and pour it upon his head, and anoint him.
8 And thou shalt *bring oblate* his sons,
and put coats upon them.
9 And thou shalt gird them with girdles,
Aaron Aharon and his sons,
and *put bind* the *bonnets turbans* on them:
and the *priest's office priesthood* shall be their's
for a *perpetual an eternal* statute:
and thou shalt *consecrate Aaron fill the hand of Aharon*
and *the hand of* his sons.
10 And thou shalt cause a bullock
to be *brought before obliterated at the face of*
the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation:
and *Aaron Aharon* and his sons shall *put prop* their hands
upon the head of the bullock.
11 And thou shalt *kill slaughter* the bullock
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
by the *door opening*
of the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation.
12 And thou shalt take of the blood of the bullock,
and *put give* it upon the horns of the *sacrifice* altar
with thy finger,
and pour all the blood
beside at the bottom foundation of the *sacrifice* altar.
13 And thou shalt take
all the fat that covereth the inwards,
and the caul that is above the liver,
and the two *kidneys reins*, and the fat that is upon them,
and *burn incense* them upon the *sacrifice* altar.
14 But the flesh of the bullock, and his skin, and his dung,
shalt thou burn with fire without the camp:
it is a *sin offering for the sin*.
15 Thou shalt also take one ram;
and *Aaron Aharon* and his sons shall *put prop* their hands
upon the head of the ram.
16 And thou shalt *slay slaughter* the ram,
and thou shalt take his blood,
and sprinkle it round about upon the *sacrifice* altar.
17 And thou shalt
cut the ram in pieces dismember the members of the ram,
and *wash baptize* the inwards of him, and his legs,
and *put give* them unto his *pieces members*,
and unto his head.
18 And thou shalt *burn incense* the whole ram
upon the *sacrifice* altar:
it is a *burnt offering holocaust* unto the *LORD Yah Veh*:
it is a *sweet savour scent of rest*,
an offering made by fire a firing unto the *LORD Yah Veh*.
19 And thou shalt take the *other second* ram;
and *Aaron Aharon* and his sons
shall *put prop* their hands upon the head of the ram.
20 Then shalt thou *kill slaughter* the ram,
and take of his blood,
and *put give* it
upon the tip of the right ear of *Aaron Aharon*,
and upon the tip of the right ear of his sons,
and upon the *thumb great digit* of their right hand,
and upon the great *toe digit* of their right foot,
and sprinkle the blood upon the *sacrifice* altar
round about.
21 And thou shalt take of the blood
that is upon the *sacrifice* altar, and of the anointing oil,
and sprinkle it upon *Aaron Aharon*,
and upon his *garments clothes*,
and upon his sons,
and upon the *garments clothes* of his sons with him:

EXODUS 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to the opening of the tent of the congregation;
and baptize them with water:
5 and take the clothes
and put the coat and the mantle of the ephod
and the ephod and the breastplate on Aharon;
and gird him with the fabricated girdle of the ephod:
6 and give the tiara on his head
and give the holy separatism on the tiara:
7 and take the anointing oil
and pour it on his head and anoint him.
8 And oblate his sons and put coats on them:
9 and gird Aharon and his sons with girdles
and bind the turbans on them:
and the priesthood becomes theirs
for an eternal statute:
and fill the hand of Aharon and the hand of his sons.
10 And oblate a bullock
at the face of the tent of the congregation:
and Aharon and his sons
prop their hands on the head of the bullock:
11 and you slaughter the bullock
at the face of Yah Veh
by the opening of the tent of the congregation:
12 and take of the blood of the bullock
and give it on the horns of the sacrifice altar
with your finger;
and pour all the blood
at the foundation of the sacrifice altar:
13 and take all the fat covering the inwards
and the caul above the liver
and the two reins and the fat on them;
and incense them on the sacrifice altar:
14 and burn the flesh of the bullock
and his skin and his dung
with fire outside the camp:
it is for the sin.
15 And take one ram:
and Aharon and his sons
prop their hands on the head of the ram;
16 and you slaughter the ram and take his blood
and sprinkle it around on the sacrifice altar:
17 and dismember the members of the ram
and baptize his inwards and his legs
and give them to his members and to his head:
18 and incense the whole ram on the sacrifice altar:
it is a holocaust to Yah Veh
— a scent of rest, a firing to Yah Veh.
19 And take the second ram:
and Aharon and his sons
prop their hands on the head of the ram:
20 and you slaughter the ram and take of his blood
and give it on the tip of the right ear of Aharon
and on the tip of the right ear of his sons
and on the great digit of their right hand
and on the great digit of their right foot;
and sprinkle the blood around on the sacrifice altar:
21 and take of the blood on the sacrifice altar
and of the anointing oil
and sprinkle on Aharon and on his clothes
and on his sons
and on the clothes of his sons with him:

EXODUS 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and he shall be hallowed,
and his *garments* **clothes**,
and his sons, and his sons' *garments* **clothes** with him.
22 Also thou shalt take of the ram the fat and the rump,
and the fat that covereth the inwards,
and the caul above the liver, and the two *kidneys* **reins**,
and the fat that is upon them,
and the right *shoulder* **hindleg**;
for it is a ram of *consecration* **fulfillments**:
23 And one *loaf* **round** of bread,
and one *cake* of *oiled* bread **of oil**,
and one wafer
out of the basket of the *unleavened bread* **matsah**
that is *before the LORD* **at the face of Yah Veh**:
24 And thou shalt put all
in the *hands* **palms** of Aaron **Aharon**,
and in the *hands* **palms** of his sons;
and shalt wave them for a wave *offering*
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**.
25 And thou shalt *receive* **take** them of their hands,
and *burn* **incense** them upon the **sacrifice** altar
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
for a *sweet savour* **scent of rest**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**:
it is an offering made by fire **a firing**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
26 And thou shalt take the breast of the ram
of *Aaron's consecration* **Aharon's fulfillments**,
and wave it for a wave *offering*
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**:
and it shall be thy part.
27 And thou shalt *sanctify* **hallow** the breast
of the wave *offering*,
and the *shoulder* **hindleg** of the *heave offering* **exaltment**,
which is waved, and which is *heaved up* **lifted**,
of the ram of the *consecration* **fulfillments**,
even of that which is for Aaron **Aharon**,
and of that which is for his sons:
28 And it shall be *Aaron's* **Aharon's** and his sons'
by a **for an eternal** statute *for ever*
from the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**:
for it is an *heave offering* **exaltment**:
and it shall be an *heave offering* **exaltment**
from the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
of the sacrifice of their *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
even their *heave offering* **exaltment**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
29 And the holy *garments* **clothes** of Aaron **Aharon**
shall be his sons' after him,
to be anointed therein,
and to be *consecrated* **fill their hands** in them.
30 And that son that is priest in his stead
shall *put* **enrobe** them *on seven days*,
when he cometh
into the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation
to minister in the *holy place* **holies**.
31 And thou shalt take the ram
of the *consecration* **fulfillments**,
and *seethe* **stew** his flesh in the *holy place* **holies**.
32 And Aaron **Aharon** and his sons
shall eat the flesh of the ram,
and the bread that is in the basket
by the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation.
33 And they shall eat those *things*
wherewith the atonement was made
which were to kapar/atone,
to *consecrate* **fill their hands** and to *sanctify* **hallow** them:
but a stranger shall not eat thereof,
because they are holy.
34 And if ought of the flesh
of the *consecrations* **fulfillments**,
or of the bread, remain unto the morning,
then thou shalt burn *the remainder* **that which remaineth**
with fire:
it shall not be eaten, because it is holy.
35 And thus shalt thou *do* **work** unto Aaron **Aharon**,
and to his sons,

EXODUS 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and he and his clothes become hallowed
with his sons and the clothes of his sons with him:
22 and of the ram, take the fat and the rump
and the fat covering the inwards
and the caul above the liver
and the two reins and the fat on them
and the right hindleg;
for it is a ram of fulfillments:
23 and one round of bread and one bread of oil
and one wafer from the basket of the matsah
at the face of Yah Veh:
24 and put all in the palms of Aharon
and in the palms of his sons;
and wave them for a wave at the face of Yah Veh:
25 and take them from their hands
and incense them on the sacrifice altar
for a holocaust, for a scent of rest
at the face of Yah Veh
— a firing to Yah Veh.
26 And take the breast of the ram
of the fulfillments of Aharon
and wave it for a wave at the face of Yah Veh:
and it becomes your part.
27 And hallow the breast of the wave
and the hindleg of the exaltment,
which is waved and which is lifted
of the ram of the fulfillments
— of that for Aharon and of that for his sons:
28 and it becomes to Aharon and his sons
for an eternal statute from the sons of Yisra El
— an exaltment:
and it becomes an exaltment from the sons of Yisra El
of the sacrifice of their shelamim,
— their exaltment to Yah Veh.
29 And the holy clothes of Aharon
become his sons after him, for anointing therein
and to fill their hands therein:
30 and that son who is priest in his stead
enrobes them seven days,
when he comes into the tent of the congregation
to minister in the holies.
31 And you take the ram of the fulfillments
and stew his flesh in the holies:
32 and Aharon and his sons eat the flesh of the ram
and the bread in the basket
by the opening of the tent of the congregation:
33 and they eat those which kapar/atone
— to fill their hands and to hallow them:
but no stranger eats thereof, because they are holy.
34 And if ought of the flesh
of the fulfillments or of the bread
remains to the morning,
burn what remains with fire:
it is not eaten, because it is holy.
35 And thus you work to Aharon and to his sons,

EXODUS 29, 30

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

according to all *things*
which I have *commanded* **misvahed** thee:
seven days shalt thou *consecrate* *them* **fill their hands**.
36 And thou shalt *offer* **work** every day a bullock
for a sin offering for atonement **kippurim for sin**:
and thou shalt *cleanse* **sacrifice for sin**
on the sacrifice altar,
when thou *hast made atonement* **shalt kapar/atone** for it,
and thou shalt anoint it, to *sanctify* **hallow** it.
37 Seven days thou shalt *make an atonement* **kapar/atone**
for the **sacrifice** altar, and *sanctify* **hallow** it;
and it shall be *an* **a sacrifice** altar
most holy — **a holy of holies**:
whatsoever toucheth the **sacrifice** altar
shall be *holy* **hallowed**.
38 Now this is that
which thou shalt *offer* **work** upon the **sacrifice** altar;
two lambs *of the first year* **yearling sons**
day by day continually.
39 The one lamb
thou shalt *offer* **work** in the morning;
and the *other* **second** lamb
thou shalt *offer at even* **work between evenings**:
40 And with the one lamb a tenth *deal* of flour
mingled with the fourth *part* of an hin
of beaten **pestled** oil;
and the fourth *part* of an hin of wine
for a *drink offering* **libation**.
41 And the *other* **second** lamb
thou shalt *offer at even* **work between evenings**,
and shalt *do* **work** thereto
according to the *meat offering* of the morning,
and according to the *drink offering* **libation** thereof,
for a *sweet savour* **scent of rest**,
an offering made by fire **a firing** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
42 This shall be a continual *burnt offering* **holocaust**
throughout your generations
at the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**:
where **in congregating**,
I *will meet* **shall congregate** with you,
to *speak* **word** there unto thee.
43 And there I *will meet* **shall congregate**
with the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
and the *tabernacle* shall be *sanctified* **to be hallowed**
by my *glory* **honour**.
44 And I *will sanctify* **shall hallow**
the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
and the **sacrifice** altar:
I *will sanctify* **shall hallow** also
both *Aaron* **Aharon** and his sons,
to *minister to me in the priest's office*
priest the priesthood unto me.
45 And I *will dwell* **shall tabernacle**
among the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
and *will* **shall** be their *God* **Elohim**.
46 And they shall know
that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**,
that brought them forth
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
that I may *dwell* **tabernacle** among them:
I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**.

PATTERN FOR THE SACRIFICE ALTAR

30 And thou shalt *make an* **work a sacrifice** altar
to *burn* **incence** incense upon:
of *shittim wood* **timber** shalt thou *make* **work** it.
2 A cubit shall be the length thereof,
and a cubit the breadth thereof;
foursquare shall it be:
and two cubits shall be the height thereof:
the horns thereof shall be of the same.
3 And thou shalt overlay it with pure gold,
the *top* **roof** thereof,
and the *sides* **walls** thereof round about,
and the horns thereof;
and thou shalt *make* **work** unto it
a *crown* **moulding** of gold round about.
4 And two golden **rings** **signets** shalt thou *make* **work** to it

EXODUS 29, 30

exeGesés companion BIBLE

according to all I *misvah* you
— seven days you fill their hands:
and every day you work a bullock
— a *kippurim* for sin:
and you sacrifice for sin on the sacrifice altar
when you *kapar/atone* for it:
and you anoint it to hallow it.
37 Seven days you *kapar/atone*
for the sacrifice altar and hallow it;
and it becomes a sacrifice altar — a holy of holies:
whatever touches the sacrifice altar
becomes hallowed.
38 Now this *is* what you work on the sacrifice altar:
two lambs — yearling sons, day by day continually:
39 work the one lamb in the morning
and work the second lamb between evenings:
40 and with the one lamb a tenth of flour
mingled with the fourth of a hin of pestled oil;
and the fourth of a hin of wine for a libation.
41 And work the second lamb between evenings
and work thereto
according to the offering of the morning
and according to the libation thereof,
for a scent of rest — a firing to Yah Veh
— a continual holocaust
throughout your generations
at the opening of the tent of the congregation
at the face of Yah Veh:
where in congregating, I congregate with you,
there to word to you:
43 and there I congregate with the sons of Yisra El;
and it becomes hallowed by my honor.
44 And I hallow
the tent of the congregation and the sacrifice altar:
and I hallow Aharon and his sons
to priest the priesthood to me:
45 and I tabernacle among the sons of Yisra El
and become their Elohim:
46 and they know that I — Yah Veh their Elohim,
brought them from the land of Misrayim,
that I tabernacle among them:
— I — Yah Veh their Elohim.

PATTERN FOR THE SACRIFICE ALTAR

30 And work a sacrifice altar to incense incense
— work it of *shittim* timber:
2 a cubit long and a cubit wide
— being foursquare: and two cubits high:
the horns thereof of the same:
3 and overlay it with pure gold,
around its roof and its walls and its horns:
and work a moulding of gold around it:
4 and work two golden signets to it

EXODUS 30

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

under the crown **moulding** of it,
by the two *corners* **sides** thereof,
upon the two sides of it shalt thou *make* **work** it;
and they shall be for *places* **housings**
for the staves to bear it *withal*.

5 And thou shalt *make* **work** the staves
of shittim wood **timber**,
and overlay them with gold.

6 And thou shalt *put* **give** it *before* **at the face** of the vail
that is by the ark of the *testimony* **witness**,
before **at the face** of the *mercy seat* **kapporeth**
that is over the *testimony* **witness**,
where I *will* **shall** meet with thee.

7 And Aaron **Aharon** shall *burn* **incense** thereon
sweet incense **of aromatics**
every morning **by morning**;
when he *dresseth* **well**—*prepareth* the lamps,
he shall *burn* incense upon it.

8 And when Aaron *lighteth* **Aharon holocausteth** the lamps
at even **between evenings**,
he shall *burn* incense upon it,
a *perpetual* **continual** incense
before the LORD **at the face** of **Yah Veh**
throughout your generations.

9 Ye shall *offer* **holocaust** no strange incense thereon,
nor *burnt sacrifice* **holocaust**, nor *meat* offering;
neither shall ye
pour drink offering **libate a libation** thereon.

10 And Aaron **Aharon**
shall *make an atonement* **kapar/atone**
upon the horns of it once in a year
with the blood
of the *sin offering* of *atonements* **kippurim for sin**;
once in the year
shall he *make atonement* **kapar/atone** upon it
throughout your generations:
it is *most holy* **a holy of holies** unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

KIPPURIM GIFT

11 And *the LORD* *spake* **Yah Veh** *worded*
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
12 When thou *takest* **bearest** the *sum* **heads**
of the *children* **sons** of **Israel** **Yisra El**
after their number **who were mustered**,
then shall they give every man
a *ransom* **a koper/an atonement** for his soul
unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
when thou *numberest* **musterest** them;
that there be no plague among them,
when thou *numberest* **musterest** them.

13 This they shall give,
every one that passeth among them
that are *numbered* **mustered**,
half a shekel after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**:
(a shekel is twenty gerahs:)
an half shekel
shall be the *offering* **exaltment**
of *the LORD* **unto Yah Veh**.

14 Every one that passeth among them
that are *numbered* **mustered**,
from **sons** of twenty years *old* and above,
shall give an *offering* **exaltment** unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

15 The rich shall not *give more* **abound**,
and the poor
shall not *give less* **diminish** than half a shekel,
when they give an *offering* **exaltment**
unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for your souls.

16 And thou shalt take
the *atonement money* **kippurim silver**
of the *children* **sons** of **Israel** **Yisra El**,
and shalt *appoint* **give** it for the service
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation;
that it may be a memorial
unto the *children* **sons** of **Israel** **Yisra El**
before the LORD **at the face** of **Yah Veh**,
to *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for your souls.

PATTERN FOR THE LAVER

17 And *the LORD* *spake* **Yah Veh** *worded*
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,

EXODUS 30

exeGesés companion BIBLE

under its moulding by its two sides
— work it on its two sides:
and they become housings for the staves to bear it.

5 And work the staves of shittim timber
and overlay them with gold:

6 and give it at the face of the veil
by the ark of the witness
at the face of the kapporeth over the witness
where I meet with you.

7 And Aharon incenses incense of aromatics thereon
morning by morning:
when he well—prepares the lamps
he incenses thereon:

8 and when Aharon holocausts the lamps
between evenings,
he incenses a continual incense thereon
at the face of Yah Veh throughout your generations.

9 Holocaust no strange incense thereon
— neither holocaust, nor offering:
nor libate a libation thereon:
and Aharon kapars/atones
on the horns thereof once in a year
with the blood of the kippurim for sin:
once in a year he kapars/atones on it
throughout your generations:
— a holy of holies to Yah Veh.

KIPPURIM GIFT

11 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
12 When you bear the heads of the sons of Yisra El
who *are* mustered,
then every man gives
a koper/an atonement for his soul to Yah Veh
when you muster them:
that no plague becomes among them,
when you muster them.

13 This they give
— everyone passing among them who *are* mustered:
a half shekel after the shekel of the holies
— a shekel *is* twenty gerahs:
a half shekel *is* the exaltment to Yah Veh.

14 Everyone passing among them who *are* mustered
— sons of twenty years and above
gives an exaltment to Yah Veh.
The rich abound no *more*
and the poor diminish no *less* than a half shekel
to give an exaltment to Yah Veh
to kapar/atone for your souls:

16 and you take the kippurim silver
of the sons of Yisra El
and give it for the service
of the tent of the congregation;
to become a memorial to the sons of Yisra El
at the face of Yah Veh,
to kapar/atone for your souls.

PATTERN FOR THE LAVER

17 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,

EXODUS 30

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

18 Thou shalt also make **work** a laver of brass **copper**,
and his *foot* also **base** of brass **copper**,
to wash *withal* **baptize**:
and thou shalt *put* **give** it
between the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation
and **between** the **sacrifice** altar,
and thou shalt *put* **give** water therein.
19 For *Aaron* **Aharon** and his sons
shall wash **baptize** their hands and their feet thereat:
20 When they go
into the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
they shall wash **baptize** with water, that they die not;
or when they come near to the **sacrifice** altar to minister,
to *burn offering made by fire* **incense** a **firing**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
21 So they shall wash **baptize** their hands and their feet,
that they die not:
and it shall be a **an eternal** statute *for ever* to them,
even to him and to his seed throughout their generations.

FORMULA FOR THE ANOINTING OIL

22 Moreover *the LORD* *spake* **Yah Veh** **worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
23 Take thou also unto thee *principal* **head** spices,
of *pure* **clear** myrrh five hundred *shekels*,
and of *sweet* **spice** cinnamon half so much,
even two hundred and fifty *shekels*,
and of *sweet* **calamus** **spice** **stems**
two hundred and fifty *shekels*,
24 And of *cassia* five hundred *shekels*,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **hallowed** **refuge**,
and of oil olive an hin:
25 And thou shalt *make* **work** it an oil of holy ointment,
an ointment compound a **perfume** of ointments
after the *art* **work** of the *apothecary* **perfumer**:
it shall be an holy anointing oil.
26 And thou shalt anoint
the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation therewith,
and the ark of the *testimony* **witness**,
27 And the table and all his *vessels* **instruments**,
and the *andlestick* **menorah** and his *vessels* **instruments**,
and the **sacrifice** altar of incense,
28 And the **sacrifice** altar of *burnt offering* **holocaust**
with all his *vessels* **instruments**,
and the laver and his *foot* **base**.
29 And thou shalt *sanctify* **hallow** them,
that they may be *most holy* a **holy of holies**:
whatsoever toucheth them shall be *holy* **hallowed**.
30 And thou shalt anoint *Aaron* **Aharon** and his sons,
and *consecrate* **hallow** them, that they may
minister unto me in the priest's office
priest the **priesthood** unto me.
31 And thou shalt *speak* **word**
unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, saying,
This shall be an holy anointing oil unto me
throughout your generations.
32 Upon *man's* **human** flesh shall it not be poured,
neither shall ye *make* **work** any other like it,
after the composition of it as **this formula**:
it is — holy, and it shall be holy unto you.
33 *Whosoever* **Any man**
compoundeth **who** **perfumeth** any like it,
or *whosoever* **putteth** any **giveth** of it upon a stranger,
shall even be cut off from his people.
34 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Take unto thee *sweet* **spices** **aromatics**,
stacte, and onycha, and galbanum;
these *sweet* **spices** **aromatics** with pure frankincense:
of each shall there be a like weight **being equal**:
35 And thou shalt *make* **work** it a **perfume** **an incense**,
a *confection* **perfume**
after the art of the *apothecary* **perfumer**,
tempered together **salted**, pure and holy:
36 And **in** **pulverizing**,
thou shalt *beat some of it very small* **pulverize** it,
and *put* **give** of it
before the testimony **at the face** of the **witness**
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
where I *will* **shall** meet with thee:
it shall be unto you *most holy* a **holy of holies**.

EXODUS 30

exeGesés companion BIBLE

18 Work also a laver of copper and its base of copper,
to baptize:
and give it between the tent of the congregation
and between the sacrifice altar;
and you give water therein:
19 for Aharon and his sons
to baptize their hands and their feet therein:
20 when they go into the tent of the congregation
they baptize with water so that they die not
— or when they come near to the sacrifice altar
to minister — to incense a firing to Yah Veh:
21 then they baptize their hands and their feet,
so that they die not:
and it becomes an eternal statute to them
— to him and to his seed
throughout their generations.

FORMULA FOR THE ANOINTING OIL

22 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
23 And you, take to yourself head spices:
of clear myrrh five hundred
and of cinnamon spice half as much
— two hundred and fifty;
and of spice stems, two hundred and fifty;
24 and of cassia five hundred
after the shekel of the hallowed refuge;
and of olive oil a hin:
25 and work an oil of holy ointment,
a perfume of ointments
after the work of the perfumer:
it becomes a holy anointing oil:
26 and anoint the tent of the congregation therewith
and the ark of the witness
27 and the table and all his instruments
and the menorah and his instruments
and the sacrifice altar of incense
28 and the sacrifice altar of holocaust
and all his instruments;
and the laver and his base:
29 and hallow them
and they become a holy of holies:
whatever touches them becomes hallowed:
30 and anoint Aharon and his sons and hallow them
to priest the priesthood to me.
31 And word to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
This becomes a holy anointing oil to me
throughout your generations.
32 Neither pour it on human flesh,
nor work any other like this formula
— holy: and so be it, holy to you.
33 Any man who perfumes any like it,
or whoever gives thereof on a stranger,
becomes cut off from his people.
34 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Take aromatics
— stacte and onycha and galbanum;
these aromatics with pure frankincense
— being equal:
35 and work an incense
— a perfume after the art of the perfumer
— salted, pure and holy:
36 and in pulverizing, pulverize it
and give thereof at the face of the witness
in the tent of the congregation,
where I meet with you:
it becomes to you a holy of holies.

EXODUS 30, 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

37 And as for the perfume **incense**
which thou shalt **make work**,
ye shall not **make work** to yourselves
according to the *composition thereof* **this formula**:
it shall be unto thee holy for the **LORD Yah Veh**.
38 *Whosoever Any man who*
shall **make work** like unto that,
to *smell scent* thereto,
shall even be cut off from his people.

BESAL EL SPIRIT FILLED

31

And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses Mosheh*, saying,
2 See, I have called by name **Bezaleel Besal El**
the son of Uri, the son of Hur,
of the *tribe* **rod of Judah Yah Hudah**:
3 And I have filled him with the spirit of *God Elohim*,
in wisdom, and in *understanding discernment*,
and in knowledge,
and in all *manner of workmanship* **his work**,
4 To *devise cunning works* **fabricate fabrications**,
to work in gold, and in silver, and in *brass* **copper**,
5 And in *cutting engraving* of stones, to *set fill* them,
and in *carving engraving* of timber,
to work in all *manner of workmanship* **work**.
6 And I, behold, I have given with him *Aholiab Oholi Ab*,
the son of *Ahisamach Achi Samach*, of the *tribe* **rod of Dan**:
and in the hearts of all that are wise hearted
I have *put given* wisdom,
that they may **make work**
all that I have *commanded misvahed* thee;
7 The *tabernacle tent* of the congregation,
and the ark of the *testimony witness*,
and the *mercy seat kapporeth* that is thereupon,
and all the *furniture instruments* of the *tabernacle tent*,
8 And the table and his *furniture instruments*,
and the pure *Candlestick menorah*
with all his *furniture instruments*,
and the *sacrifice* altar of incense,
9 And the *sacrifice* altar of *burnt offering holocaust*
with all his *furniture instruments*,
and the laver and his *foot base*,
10 And the *cloths* **clothes of service stitching**,
and the holy *garments* **clothes** for Aaron **Aharon** the priest,
and the *garments* **clothes** of his sons,
to *minister in the priest's office*
priest the priesthood,
11 And the anointing oil,
and sweet incense of **aromatics**
for the *holy place holies*:
according to all that I have *commanded misvahed* thee
shall they **do work**.
12 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses Mosheh*, saying,
13 *Speak Word* thou also
unto the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**, saying,
Verily Surely my *sabbaths shabbaths* ye shall **keep guard**:
for it is a sign between me and **between** you
throughout your generations;
that ye may know that *I am the LORD I* — **Yah Veh**
that *doth sanctify halloweth* you.
14 Ye shall **keep guard** the *sabbath shabbath* therefore;
for it is holy unto you:
every one that *defileth profaneth* it,
in being deathified,
shall *surely be put to death be* **deathified**:
for whosoever *doeth worketh* any work therein,
that soul shall be cut off from among his people.
15 Six days may work be *done worked*;
but in the seventh **day**
is the *sabbath shabbath* of *rest shabbathism*,
holy to the **LORD Yah Veh**:
whosoever *doeth worketh* any work
in the *sabbath shabbath* day,
in being deathified,
he shall *surely be put to death be* **deathified**.
16 *Wherefore* the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
shall **keep guard** the *sabbath shabbath*,
to *observe work* the *sabbath shabbath*
throughout their generations,

EXODUS 30, 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

37 And as for the incense you work:
work not to yourselves according to this formula:
it becomes to you holy for Yah Veh.
38 Any man who works like it, to scent thereto,
even he becomes cut off from his people.

BESAL EL SPIRIT FILLED

31

And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 See, I call by name Besal El
the son of Uri the son of Hur
of the rod of Yah Hudah:
3 and I fill him with the spirit of Elohim
— in wisdom and in discernment and in knowledge
and in all his work:
4 to fabricate fabrications;
to work in gold and in silver and in copper;
5 and in engraving of stones, to fill them;
and in engraving of timber, to work in all work.
6 And I, behold, with him I give Oholi Ab
the son of Achi Samach of the rod of Dan:
and in the hearts of all the wise hearted
I give wisdom to work all I misvah you
7 — the tent of the congregation
and the ark of the witness
and the kapporeth thereon
and all the instruments of the tent
8 and the table and his instruments
and the pure menorah and all his instruments
and the sacrifice altar of incense
9 and the sacrifice altar of holocaust
and all his instruments
and the laver and his base
10 and the clothes of stitching
and the holy clothes for Aharon the priest
and the clothes of his sons to priest the priesthood
11 and the anointing oil
and incense of aromatics for the holies:
according to all I misvah you, they work.
12 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
13 Word also to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
Only, guard my shabbaths:
for it is a sign between me and between you
throughout your generations;
that you know I — Yah Veh hallow you:
guard the shabbath; for it is holy to you:
everyone who profanes it,
in deathifying, is deathified:
for whoever works any work therein,
that soul becomes cut off from among his people.
15 Six days you work your work;
the seventh day is the shabbath of shabbathism
— holy to Yah Veh:
whoever works any work in the shabbath day,
in deathifying, deathify him.
16 And the sons of Yisra El guard the shabbath,
to work the shabbath throughout their generations,

EXODUS 31, 32

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

17 for a perpetual **an eternal** covenant.
It is a sign between me
and **between** the *children sons* of *Yisra El*
for ever **eternally**:
for in six days the **LORD Yah Veh**
made heaven **worked the heavens** and earth,
and on the seventh day he *rested* **shabbathized**,
and was refreshed.

THE SLABS OF WITNESS

18 And he gave unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
when he had
made an end of *communing* **finished wording**
with him upon mount *Sinai* **Sinay**,
two *tables* **slabs of testimony witness**, *tables* **slabs** of stone,
written **inscribed** with the finger of *God* **Elohim**.

THE MOLTEN CALF

32 And when the people saw
that *Moses* **Mosheh** delayed
to *come down* **descend** out of the mount,
the people *gathered themselves together* **congregated**
unto *Aaron* **Aharon**, and said unto him,
Up Arise, make **work** us *gods* **elohim**,
which shall go *before us* **at our face**;
for as for this *Moses* **Mosheh**,
the man that *brought* **ascended** us *up*
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
we *wot* **know** not what is become of him.
2 And *Aaron* **Aharon** said unto them,
Break off the golden *earrings* **noserings**,
which are in the ears of your *wives* **women**,
of your sons, and of your daughters,
and bring them unto me.
3 And all the people
brake off the golden *earrings* **noserings**
which were in their ears,
and brought them unto *Aaron* **Aharon**.
4 And he *received* **took** them at their hand,
and *fashioned* **formed** it with a *graving tool* **stylus**,
after he had *made* **worked** it a molten calf:
and they said, These be thy *god* **elohim**, O *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which *brought* **ascended** thee *up*
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
5 And when *Aaron* **Aharon** saw it,
he built *an* **a sacrifice** altar *before* **at the face of** it;
and *Aaron* **made proclamation** **Aharon called**, and said,
To morrow is a *feast* **celebration** to the **LORD Yah Veh**.
6 And they *rose up* **started** early on the morrow,
and *offered burnt offerings* **holocausted holocausts**,
and brought *peace offerings* **shelamim**;
and the people sat down to eat and to drink,
and rose up to *play* **entertain**.
7 And the **LORD** said **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Go, *get thee down* **descend**;
for thy people, which thou *broughtest* **ascendest**
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
have *corrupted* **ruined** themselves:
8 They have turned aside *quickly* **suddenly**
out of the way which I *commanded* **misvahed** them:
they have *made* **worked** them a molten calf,
and have *worshipped* **prostrated** to it,
and have sacrificed thereunto, and said,
These be thy *gods* **elohim**, O *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which have *brought* **ascended** thee *up*
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
9 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
I have seen this people, and, behold,
it is a *stiffnecked* **hard necked** people:
10 Now therefore *let* **leave** me *alone*,
that my wrath may *wax hot* **kindle** against them,
and that I may *consume* **finish** them **off**:
and I *will make* **shall work** of thee a great *nation* **goyim**.

YAH VEH REVEALS HIS GLORY

11 And *Moses* **besought** **Mosheh stroked the face of**
the **LORD Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim**, and said,
LORD O Yah Veh,
why doth thy wrath *wax hot* **kindle** against thy people,
which thou hast brought forth
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**

EXODUS 31, 32

exeGesés companion BIBLE

17 for an eternal covenant
— a sign between me
and between the sons of *Yisra El* eternally:
for in six days *Yah Veh* worked the heavens and earth
and on the seventh day
he *shabbathized* and refreshed.

THE SLABS OF WITNESS

18 And when he finishes wording with *Mosheh*
on mount *Sinay*,
he gives him two slabs of witness — slabs of stone
inscribed by the finger of *Elohim*.

THE MOLTEN CALF

32 And the people see
that *Mosheh* delays descending from the mount:
and the people congregate to *Aharon* and say to him,
Rise, work us *elohim* to go at our face;
for as for this *Mosheh*,
the man who ascended us from the land of *Misrayim*,
we know not what became of him.

2 And *Aharon* says to them,
Break off the golden noserings
in the ears of your women
and your sons and your daughters
and bring them to me.

3 And all the people
break off the golden noserings in their ears
and bring them to *Aharon*:

4 and he takes them from their hand
and with a stylus
forms and works a molten calf thereof:
and they say, These *are* your *elohim*, O *Yisra El*,
who ascended you from the land of *Misrayim*.

5 And *Aharon* sees,
and builds a sacrifice altar at the face thereof:
and *Aharon* calls and says,
Tomorrow *is* a celebration to *Yah Veh*.

6 And they start early on the morrow
and holocaust holocausts and bring *shelamim*:
and the people sit down to eat and to drink
and rise to entertain.

7 And *Yah Veh* words to *Mosheh*,
Go! Descend!
For your people
whom you ascended from the land of *Misrayim*
ruin themselves:

8 they suddenly turn aside
from the way I *misvahed* them:
they work themselves a molten calf
and prostrate to it and sacrifice thereto, and say,
These *are* your *elohim*, O *Yisra El*,
who ascended you from the land of *Misrayim*.

9 And *Yah Veh* says to *Mosheh*,
I see this people, and behold,
it *is* a hard necked people:
10 and now, leave me,
and I kindle my wrath against them
and I finish them off:
and I work of you a great *goyim*.

YAH VEH REVEALS HIS GLORY

11 And *Mosheh* strokes the face
of *Yah Veh* his *Elohim* and says,
O Yah Veh,
why kindle your wrath against your people
whom you brought from the land of *Misrayim*

EXODUS 32

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

with great power **force**, and with a mighty **strong** hand?
12 Wherefore **Why**
 should the *Egyptians speak* **Misrayim say**, and say,
 For *mischief evil* did he bring them out,
 to *slay slaughter* them in the mountains,
 and to *consume finish* them **off**
 from the face of the *earth soil*?
 Turn from thy *fierce fuming* wrath,
 and *repent sigh* of this evil against thy people.
13 Remember Abraham, *Isaac Yischaq*, and *Israel Yisra El*,
 thy servants,
 to whom thou *swarest oathest* by thine own self,
 and *saidst wordest* unto them,
 I *will multiply shall abound* your seed
 as the stars of *heaven the heavens*,
 and all this land that I have *spoken of said*
 will shall I give unto your seed,
 and they shall inherit it *for ever eternally*.
14 And *the LORD repented* **Yah Veh sighed** of the evil
 which he *thought to do had worded to work*
 unto his people.
15 And *Moses Mosheh* turned **his face**,
 and *went down descended* from the mount,
 and the two *tables slabs* of the *testimony witness*
 were in his hand:
the *tables slabs* were *written inscribed* on both their sides;
 on the one side and on the other
 were they *written inscribed*.
16 And the *tables slabs* were the work of *God Elohim*,
 and the *writing inscribing*
 was the *writing inscribing* of *God Elohim*,
 graven engraved upon the *tables slabs*.
17 And when *Joshua Yah Shua*
heard the *noise voice* of the people as they shouted,
 he said unto *Moses Mosheh*,
 There is a *noise voice* of war in the camp.
18 And he said, It is not the voice of them
 that *shout answer* for *mastery might*,
 neither is it the voice of them
 that *cry answer* for being *overcome vanquished*:
 but the *noise of them that sing voice of the humble*
 do I hear.
19 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
 as soon as he *came nigh unto approached* the camp,
 that he saw the calf, and the **round** dancing;
 and *Moses' anger waxed hot Mosheh's wrath kindled*,
 and he cast the *tables slabs* out of his hands,
 and brake them beneath the mount.
20 And he took the calf which they had *made worked*,
 and burnt it in the fire,
 and *ground pulverized* it to powder,
 and *strawed winnowed* it
 upon **the face** of the water,
 and made the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El* drink of it.
21 And *Moses Mosheh* said unto *Aaron Aharon*,
 What *did worked* this people unto thee,
 that thou hast brought so great a sin upon them?
22 And *Aaron Aharon* said,
Let not the *anger wrath* of my *lord wax hot adoni kindle*:
 thou knowest the people,
 that they are set on *mischief evil*.
23 For they said unto me, *Make Work us gods elohim*,
 which shall go *before us at our face*:
 for as for this *Moses Mosheh*,
 the man that *brought us up ascended us*
 out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
 we *wot know* not what is become of him.
24 And I said unto them,
Whosoever hath any gold, let them break it off.
 So they gave it me:
 then I cast it into the fire, and there came out this calf.
25 And when *Moses Mosheh* saw
 that the people were *naked exposed*;
 (for *Aaron Aharon* had *made exposed* them *naked*
 unto their *shame whisperings*
 among their *enemies uprisers*;)
26 Then *Moses Mosheh*
 stood in the *gate portal* of the camp, and said,
 Who is on *the LORD'S Yah Veh's* side?

EXODUS 32

exeGesés companion BIBLE

with great force and with a strong hand?
12 Why have the Misrayim say, saying,
 For evil he brought them out
 — to slaughter them in the mountains
 and to finish them off from the face of the soil?
 Turn from your fuming wrath
 and sigh of this evil against your people:
 remember your servants,
13 Abraham, Yischaq and Yisra El,
 to whom you oathed by your own self
 and worded to them,
 I abound your seed as the stars of the heavens
 and all this land that I said I give to your seed:
 and they inherit it eternally.
14 — and Yah Veh sighs of the evil
 he worded to work to his people.
15 And Mosheh turns his face
 and descends from the mount
 with the two slabs of the witness in his hand:
 the slabs *are* inscribed on both their sides;
 on the one side and on the other *are* they inscribed:
16 and the slabs *are* the work of Elohim
 and the inscribing *is* the inscribing of Elohim,
 engraved on the slabs.
17 And when Yah Shua
 hears the voice of the people as they shout,
 he says to Mosheh,
 A voice of war in the camp.
18 And he says,
 It *is* neither the voice of them who answer of might,
 nor *is* it the voice of them who answer of vanquish:
 but it *is* the voice of the humble I hear.
19 And so be it, as soon as he approaches the camp,
 he sees the calf and the round dancing:
 and Mosheh kindles his wrath
 and he casts the slabs from his hands
 and breaks them beneath the mount:
 and he takes the calf they worked
 and burns it in the fire and pulverizes it
 and winnows it on the face of the water;
 and makes the sons of Yisra El drink thereof.
20 And Mosheh says to Aharon,
 What work this people to you,
 that you bring so great a sin on them?
21 And Aharon says,
 Kindle not your wrath, my adoni:
 you know the people *are* set on evil.
22 And they say to me,
 Work us elohim to go at our face:
 for as for this Mosheh,
23 the man who ascended us from the land of Misrayim,
 we know not what became of him.
24 And I say to them,
 Whoever has any gold, break it off.
 — and they give me:
 and I cast it into the fire and out comes this calf.
25 And Mosheh sees that the people *are* exposed
 — for Aharon exposed them to whisperings
 among their uprisers:
26 and Mosheh stands in the portal of the camp
 and says, Who *is* on the side of Yah Veh?

EXODUS 32, 33

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

let him come unto me.
And all the sons of Levi gathered *themselves together* unto him.
27 And he said unto them,
Thus saith the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El*,
Put every man his sword by his *side flank*, and go **pass** in and **out turn** from *gate portal* to *gate portal* throughout the camp,
and *slay slaughter* every man his brother, and every man his companion,
and every man his *neighbour near friend*.
28 And the *children sons* of Levi *did worked* according to the word of *Moses Mosheh*:
and there fell of the people that day about three thousand men.
29 For *Moses Mosheh* had said,
Consecrate yourselves Fill your hands to day to the *LORD Yah Veh*,
even every **because** man *upon is against* his son, and *upon against* his brother;
that he may *bestow upon give* you a blessing this day.
30 And **so be** it *came to pass* on the morrow, that *Moses Mosheh* said unto the people,
Ye have sinned a great sin:
and now I *will go up shall ascend* unto the *LORD Yah Veh*;
peradventure perhaps
I shall *make an atonement kapar/atone* for your sin.
31 And *Moses Mosheh* returned unto the *LORD Yah Veh*, and said, *Oh I beseech*,
this people have sinned a great sin, and have *made worked* them *gods elohim* of gold.
32 Yet now, if thou *wilt forgive shalt bear* their sin —; and if not, *blot wipe* me, I *pray beseech* thee,
out of thy *book scroll* which thou hast *written inscribed*.
33 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto *Moses Mosheh*,
Whosoever hath sinned against me, him *will I blot shall I wipe* out of my *book scroll*.
34 Therefore now go, lead the people unto the place of which I have *spoken worded* unto thee:
behold, mine Angel shall go *before thee at thy face*:
nevertheless in the day when I visit I will shall visit their sin upon them.
35 And the *LORD plagued Yah Veh smote* the people, because they *made worked* the calf, which *Aaron made Aharon worked*.
33 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said **worded** unto *Moses Mosheh*,
Depart Go, and go up **ascend** hence, thou and the people which thou hast *brought up ascended* out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
unto the land which I *sware oathed* unto Abraham, to *Isaac Yischaq*, and to *Jacob Yaaqov*, saying,
Unto thy seed *will shall* I give it:
2 And I *will shall* send an angel *before thee at thy face*;
and I *will drive out shall expel*
the *Canaanite Kenaaniy*, the *Amorite Emoriy*, and the *Hittite Hethiy*, and the *Perizzites Perizziy*,
the *Hivite Hivviy*, and the *Jebusite Yebusiy*:
3 Unto a land flowing with milk and honey:
for I *will shall* not go up **ascend** in the midst of thee;
for thou art a *stiffnecked hard necked* people:
lest I *consume thee finish thee off* in the way.
4 And when the people heard these evil *tidings words*, they mourned:
and no man did put on him his ornaments.
5 For the *LORD Yah Veh* had said unto unto *Moses Mosheh*,
Say unto the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
Ye are a *stiffnecked hard necked* people:
I *will come up shall ascend* into the midst of thee
in a *moment blink*,
and *consume finish* thee **off**:
therefore now *put off lower* thy ornaments from thee,
that I may know what to *do work* unto thee.
6 And the *children sons of Israel Yisra El* stripped themselves of their ornaments
by the mount Horeb.

EXODUS 32, 33

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Come to me.
— and all the sons of Levi gather to him.
27 And he says to them,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
Every man put his sword by his flank and pass in and turn from portal to portal throughout the camp
and slaughter every man his brother and every man his companion and every man his near friend.
28 And the sons of Levi work according to the word of Mosheh:
and there fall of the people that day about three thousand men.
29 And Mosheh says,
Fill your hands today to Yah Veh, because man *is against* his son and against his brother;
that he give you a blessing this day.
30 And so be it, on the morrow, Mosheh says to the people,
You sinned a great sin:
and now I ascend to Yah Veh;
perhaps I kapar/atone for your sin.
31 And Mosheh returns to Yah Veh, and says, Oh I beseech,
this people sinned a great sin and worked elohim of gold.
32 Yet now, if you bear their sin —; and if not, wipe me, I beseech you,
from the scroll you inscribed.
33 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Whoever sins against me, I wipe from my scroll:
and now, go, lead the people to the place I worded to you:
behold, my Angel goes at your face:
in the day I visit, I visit their sin on them.
35 — and Yah Veh smites the people because they worked the calf which Aharon worked.
33 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh,
Go and ascend there
— you and the people whom you ascended from the land of Misrayim,
to the land I oathed to Abraham, to Yischaq and to Yaaqov,
saying, To your seed I give it:
and I send an angel at your face;
and I expel the Kenaaniy the Emoriy and the Hethiy and the Perizziy the Hivviy and the Yebusiy
to a land flowing with milk and honey:
for I ascend not in your midst;
for you are a hard necked people:
lest I finish you off in the way.
4 — and when the people hear these evil words, they mourn:
and no man puts on his ornaments.
5 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Say to the sons of Yisra El,
You are a hard necked people:
I ascend in your midst in a blink and finish you off:
and now, lower your ornaments from you,
so that I know what to work to you.
6 — and the sons of Yisra El strip themselves of their ornaments
by the mount Horeb.

EXODUS 33

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 And Moses **Mosheh** took the *tabernacle tent*,
and *pitched spread* it without the camp,
afar off **far removed** from the camp,
and called it the *Tabernacle Tent* of the congregation.
And **so be** it came to pass,
that every one which sought the **LORD Yah Veh**
went out unto the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation,
which was without the camp.

8 And **so be** it came to pass,
when Moses **Mosheh** went out unto the *tabernacle tent*,
that all the people rose up,
and **stood stationed** every man at his tent **door opening**,
and looked after Moses **Mosheh**,
until he was gone into the *tabernacle tent*.

9 And **so be** it came to pass,
as Moses **Mosheh** entered into the *tabernacle tent*,
the cloudy pillar descended,
and stood at the **door opening** of the *tabernacle tent*,
and the **LORD talked he worded** with Moses **Mosheh**.

10 And all the people saw the cloudy pillar
stand at the *tabernacle door tent opening*:
and all the people rose up and **worshipped prostrated**,
every man in his tent **door opening**.

11 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh** face to face,
as a man **speaketh wordeth** unto his friend.
And he turned again into the camp:
but his **servant Joshua minister Yah Shua**,
the son of Nun, a **young man lad**,
departed not out of the *tabernacle midst of the tent*.

12 And Moses **Mosheh** said unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
See, thou sayest unto me, **Bring up Ascend** this people:
and thou hast not **let me know made known**
whom thou **wilt shalt** send with me.
Yet thou hast said, I know thee by name,
and thou hast also found **grace charism** in my **sight eyes**.

13 Now therefore, I **pray beseech** thee,
if I have found **grace charism** in thy **sight eyes**,
shew me now make known, I beseech thy way,
that I may know thee,
that I may find **grace charism** in thy **sight eyes**:
and **consider see** that this **nation goyim** is thy people.

14 And he said, My **presence face** shall go with thee,
and I **will give thee shall rest thee**.

15 And he said unto him,
If thy **presence face** go not with me,
carry ascend us not up hence.

16 For **wherein by what** shall it be known here
that I and thy people
have found **grace charism** in thy **sight eyes**?
is it not in that thou goest with us?
so shall we be separated, I and thy people,
from all the people that are upon the face of the earth.

17 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto Moses **Mosheh**,
I **will do shall work** this **thing word** also
that thou hast **spoken worded**:
for thou hast found **grace charism** in my **sight eyes**,
and I know thee by name.

18 And he said, I beseech thee,
shew me have me see thy **glory honour**.

19 And he said,
I **will make shall cause** all my goodness
pass **before in front of** thee,
and I **will proclaim shall call**
the name of the **LORD before thee Yah Veh at thy face**;
and **will be gracious shall grant charism**
to whom I **will be gracious shall grant charism**,
and **will shew shall mercy** on whom I **will shew shall** mercy.

20 And he said, Thou canst not see my face:
for there shall no **man human** see me, and live.

21 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said, Behold,
there is a place by me,
and thou shalt **stand station thyself** upon a rock:

22 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
while **until** my **glory honour** passeth by,
that I **will shall** put thee in a clift of the rock,
and **will shall** cover thee with my **hand palm**
while I pass by:

EXODUS 33

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 And Mosheh takes the tent
and spreads it outside the camp
far removed from the camp:
and calls it the tent of the congregation.
And so be it,
everyone seeking Yah Veh
goes out to the tent of the congregation
outside the camp.

8 And so be it,
when Mosheh goes out to the tent,
all the people rise
and every man stations at his tent opening
and looks after Mosheh until he goes into the tent.

9 And so be it,
as Mosheh enters into the tent,
the cloudy pillar descends
and stands at the tent opening
and he words with Mosheh.

10 And all the people see the cloudy pillar
standing at the tent opening:
and all the people rise and prostrate
— every man in his tent opening.

11 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh face to face,
as a man words to his friend:
and he turns again into the camp:
but his minister Yah Shua, the son of Nun, a lad,
departs not from midst the tent.

12 And Mosheh says to Yah Veh,
See, you say to me, Ascend this people!
— and I know not whom you send with me.

13 And you say, I know you by name!
and also, that you find charism in my eyes:
and now, I beseech you,
if I find charism in your eyes,
make known, I beseech, your way,
that I know you,
that I find charism in your eyes:
and see that this goyim is your people.

14 And he says, My face goes and I rest you.

15 And he says to him,
If your face goes not, ascend us not there.
For how is it known here
that I and your people find charism in your eyes?
Is it not in that you go with us?
And we are distinguished, I and your people,
from all the people on the face of the earth.

17 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
I also work this word you word:
for you find charism in my eyes
and I know you by name.

18 And he says, I beseech you,
have me see your honor.

19 And he says,
I pass all my goodness in front of you
and I call the name of Yah Veh at your face;
and I grant charism to whom I grant charism
and I mercy whom I mercy.

20 He also says, You cannot see my face:
for no human sees me and lives.

21 Yah Veh also says, Behold, there is a place by me;
and you station yourself on a rock:
and so be it, until my honor passes by,
I put you in a clift of the rock
and cover you with my palm while I pass by:

EXODUS 33, 34

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

23 And I *will take shall turn* away mine hand **my palm**,
and thou shalt see my back *parts*:
but my face shall not be seen.

34 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto *Moses Mosheh*,
Hew Sculpt thee two *tables slabs* of stone like unto the first:
and I *will write shall inscribe* upon these *tables slabs*
the words that were in the first *tables slabs*,
which thou brakest.

2 And be *ready prepared* in the morning,
and *come up ascend* in the morning
unto mount *Sinai Sinay*,
and *present station* thyself there to me
in the top of the mount.

3 And no man shall *come up ascend* with thee,
neither let *any* man be seen throughout all the mount;
neither let the flocks nor *herds feed oxen graze*
before in front of that mount.

4 And he *hewed sculpt* two *tables slabs* of stone
like unto the first;
and *Moses rose up Mosheh started* early in the morning,
and *went up ascended* unto mount *Sinai Sinay*,
as the **LORD Yah Veh** had *commanded misvahed* him,
and took in his hand the two *tables slabs* of stone.

5 And the **LORD Yah Veh** descended in the cloud,
and stood with him there,
and proclaimed the name of the **LORD Yah Veh**.

6 And the **LORD Yah Veh** passed by
before in front of him his face,
and *proclaimed called*,
The LORD Yah Veh, The LORD God Yah Veh El,
merciful and *gracious charismatic*,
longsuffering slow to wrath,
and *abundant great* in *goodness mercy* and truth,
Keeping Guarding mercy for thousands,
forgiving iniquity bearing perversity
and *transgression rebellion* and sin,
and that *will by no means clear the guilty*
in exonerating, shall not exonerate;
visiting the *iniquity perversity* of the fathers
upon the *children sons*,
and upon the *children's children sons' sons*,
unto the third and to the fourth *generation*.

8 And *Moses made haste Mosheh hastened*,
and bowed *his head* toward the earth,
and *worshipped prostrated*.

9 And he said, If now **I beseech**,
I have found *grace charism* in thy *sight eyes*,
O *Lord Adonay*,
let my *Lord Adonay*, I *pray beseech* thee, go among us;
for it is a *stiffnecked hard necked* people;
and *pardon forgive* our *iniquity perversity* and our sin,
and *take us for thine inheritance inherit us*.

YAH VEH CUTS A COVENANT WITH MOSHEH

10 And he said, Behold, I *make cut* a covenant:
before all thy people
I *will do marvels shall work wonders*,
such as have not been *done created* in all the earth,
nor in any *nation goyim*:
and all the people among which thou art
shall see the work of the **LORD Yah Veh**:
for it is a *terrible thing awesome*
that I *will do shall work* with thee.

11 Observe **Guard** thou that
which I *command misvah* thee this day:
behold, I *drive out before thee expel at thy face*
the *Amorite Emoriy*, and the *Canaanite Kenaaniy*,
and the *Hittite Hethiy*, and the *Perizzite Perizziy*,
and the *Hivite Hivviy*, and the *Jebusite Yebusiy*.

12 Take heed to **Guard** thyself,
lest thou *make cut* a covenant
with the *inhabitants of them who settled* the land
whither thou goest,
lest it be for a snare in the midst of thee:

13 But ye shall *destroy pull down* their *sacrifice altars*,
break their *images monoliths*,
and cut down their *groves asherim*:

14 For thou shalt *worship prostrate to* no other *god el*:
for the **LORD Yah Veh**, whose name is Jealous,
is a jealous **God El**:

EXODUS 33, 34

exeGeses companion BIBLE

23 and I turn away my palm that you see my back:
but my face is not seen.

34 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Sculpt two slabs of stone like the first:
and I inscribe on these slabs
the words that were in the first slabs you broke:
2 and prepare in the morning
and ascend in the morning to mount Sinay
and station yourself there to me
on the top of the mount:
3 and no man ascends with you,
and no man is seen throughout all the mount;
and graze not flocks or oxen in front of that mount.

4 And he sculpts two slabs of stone like the first;
and Mosheh starts early in the morning
and ascends to mount Sinay
as Yah Veh misvahed him;
and takes the two slabs of stone in his hand.

5 And Yah Veh descends in the cloud
and stands with him there
and proclaims the name of Yah Veh:
6 and Yah Veh passes by in front of his face and calls,
Yah Veh! Yah Veh El!
Merciful and charismatic, slow to wrath
and great in mercy and truth,
guarding mercy for thousands,
7 bearing perversity and rebellion and sin:
and in exonerating, exonerates not;
visiting the perversity of the fathers on the sons
and on the sons of the sons
to the third and to the fourth.

8 And Mosheh hastens
and bows toward the earth and prostrates:
9 and he says, If, I beseech,
I find charism in your eyes,
O Adonay, my Adonay,
I beseech you, go among us;
for it is a hard necked people;
and forgive our perversity and our sin, and inherit us.

YAH VEH CUTS A COVENANT WITH MOSHEH

10 And he says, Behold, I cut a covenant:
I work wonders in front of all your people,
such as were not created in all the earth
or in any goyim:
and all the people among you
see the work of Yah Veh:
for what I work with you is awesome.
11 Guard what I misvah you this day:
behold, I expel from your face
the Emoriy and the Kenaaniy and the Hethiy
and the Perizziy and the Hivviy and the Yebusiy:
12 guard yourself,
lest you cut a covenant with them who settle the land
where you go;
lest it become a snare in your midst:
13 but pull down their sacrifice altars,
break their monoliths and cut down their asherim:
14 for you prostrate to no other el:
for Yah Veh, whose name is Zealous, is a zealous El:

EXODUS 34

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 Lest thou make **cut** a covenant
with the *inhabitants of* **them who settled** the land,
and they go a *whoring* **whore** after their *gods* **elohim**,
and do sacrifice unto their *gods* **elohim**,
and one call thee, and thou eat of his sacrifice;
16 And thou take of their daughters unto thy sons,
and their daughters
go a *whoring* **whore** after their *gods* **elohim**,
and make thy sons
go a *whoring* **whore** after their *gods* **elohim**.
17 Thou shalt *make* **work** thee no molten *gods* **elohim**.
18 The *feast* **celebration** of *unleavened bread* **matsah**
shalt thou *keep* **guard**.
Seven days thou shalt eat *unleavened bread* **matsah**,
as I *commanded* **misvahed** thee,
in the *time* **season** of the month Abib:
for in the month Abib
thou camest out from *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
19 All that *openeth* **Every burster** of the matrix is mine;
and every *firstling* **burster** among thy *cattle* **chattah**,
whether ox or sheep, that is male **lamb**.
20 But the *firstling of an ass* **he burro that bursteth**
thou shalt redeem with a lamb:
and if thou redeem him not,
then shalt thou break his neck.
All the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of thy sons thou shalt redeem.
And none shall *appear* **be seen**
before me **at my face** empty.
21 Six days thou shalt *work* **serve**,
but on the seventh day thou shalt *rest* **shabbathize**:
in *earing time* **ploughing** and in harvest,
thou shalt *rest* **shabbathize**.
22 And thou shalt *observe* **work**
the *feast* **celebration** of weeks,
of the firstfruits of wheat harvest,
and the *feast* **celebration** of ingathering
at the *year's end* **revolution of the year**.
23 *Thrice* **Three times** in the year
shall all your *menchildren* **appear male sons be seen**
before the Lord GOD at the face of Adonay Yah Veh,
the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El.
24 For I will *cast out* **shall dispossess** the *nations* **goyim**
before thee **from thy face**,
and *enlarge* **widen** thy borders:
neither shall any man desire thy land,
when thou shalt *go up* **ascend** to *appear* **be seen**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh thy God Elohim
thrice **three times** in the year.
25 Thou shalt not *offer* **slaughter**
the blood of my sacrifice with *leaven* **fermentation**;
neither shall the sacrifice
of the *feast* **celebration** of the *passover* **pasach**
be left **stay overnight** unto the morning.
26 The first of the firstfruits of thy *land* **soil**
thou shalt bring unto the house
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**.
Thou shalt not *see* **stew** a kid in his mother's milk.
27 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Write **Inscribe** thou these words:
for after the *tenor* **mouth** of these words
I have *made* **cut** a covenant
with thee and with *Israel* **Yisra El**.
28 And he was there with the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
forty days and forty nights;
he did neither eat bread, nor drink water.
And he *wrote* **inscribed** upon the *tables* **slabs**
the words of the covenant, the ten *commandments* **words**.

THE EFFULGENCE OF MOSHEH

29 And **so be** it came to pass,
when *Moses came down* **Mosheh descended**
from mount *Sinai* **Sinay**
with the two *tables* **slabs of testimony** **witness**
in *Moses'* **Mosheh's** hand,
when he *came down* **descended** from the mount,
that *Moses wist* **Mosheh knew** not
that the skin of his face shone
while he *talked* **worded** with him.
30 And when *Aaron* **Aharon**
and all the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**

EXODUS 34

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 lest you cut a covenant
with them who settle the land;
and they whore after their elohim
and sacrifice to their elohim;
and call you and you eat of his sacrifice;
16 and you take of their daughters to your sons
and their daughters whore after their elohim
and make your sons whore after their elohim.
17 Work no molten elohim.
18 Guard the celebration of matsah.
Seven days you eat matsah, as I misvahed you,
in the season of the month Abib:
for in the month Abib
you came out from Misrayim.
19 Every burster of the matrix *is* mine
— and every burster among your chattel, ox or lamb:
and redeem the he burro that bursts with a lamb:
and if you redeem him not, break his neck:
redeem all the firstbirth of your sons.
And none be seen at my face empty.
21 Six days you serve,
but on the seventh day you shabbathize
— in ploughing and in harvest, you shabbathize:
and work the celebration of weeks,
of the firstfruits of wheat harvest
and the celebration of ingathering
at the revolution of the year.
22 Three times in the year
have all your male sons be seen
at the face of Adonay Yah Veh the Elohim of Yisra El.
24 For I dispossess the goyim from your face
and widen your borders:
no man desires your land
when you ascend
to be seen at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim
three times in the year.
25 Neither slaughter the blood of my sacrifice
with fermentation;
nor have the sacrifice of the celebration of the pasach
stay overnight to the morning:
bring the first of the firstfruits of your soil
to the house of Yah Veh your Elohim.
Stew not a kid in the milk of his mother.
27 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Inscribe these words:
for after the mouth of these words
I cut a covenant with you and with Yisra El.
And there he *is* with Yah Veh
— forty days and forty nights;
he neither eats bread, nor drinks water.
and he inscribes on the slabs
the words of the covenant — the ten words.

THE EFFULGENCE OF MOSHEH

29 And so be it,
when Mosheh descends from mount Sinay
with the two slabs of witness in the hand of Mosheh,
when he descends from the mount,
Mosheh knows not that the skin of his face shines
while he words with him:
30 and Aharon and all the sons of Yisra El

EXODUS 34, 35

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

31 saw *Moses Mosheh*, behold,
the skin of his face shone;
and they were afraid **awed** to come nigh him.
And *Moses Mosheh* called unto them;
and *Aaron Aharon*
and all the *rulers hierarchs* of the *congregation witness*
returned unto him:
and *Moses talked Mosheh worded* with them.
32 And afterward
all the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El* came nigh:
and he gave **misvahed** them *in commandment*
all that *the LORD Yah Veh* had *spoken worded* with him
in mount *Sinai Sinay*.
33 And till *Moses Mosheh*
had *done speaking finished wording* with them,
he *put gave* a veil on his face.
34 But when *Moses Mosheh* went in
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh
to *speak word* with him,
he *took the turned aside his* veil off, until he came out.
And he came out,
and *spake worded* unto the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
that which he was *commanded misvahed*.
35 And the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
saw the face of *Moses Mosheh*,
that the skin of *Moses' Mosheh's* face shone:
and *Moses put Mosheh returned* the veil
upon his face *again*,
until he went in to *speak word* with him.

THE SHABBATH OF SHABBATHISM

35 And *Moses Mosheh*
gathered congregated all the *congregation witness*
of the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El* *together*,
and said unto them, These are the words
which *the LORD Yah Veh* hath *commanded misvahed*,
that ye should *do work* them.
2 Six days shall **the** work be *done worked*,
but on the seventh day
there shall be to you an holy day,
a *sabbath shabbath* of *rest shabbathism*
to *the LORD Yah Veh*:
whosoever *doeth worketh* the work therein
shall be *put to death deathified*.
3 Ye shall kindle no fire
throughout your *habitations settlements*
upon the *sabbath shabbath* day.
TABERNACLE MATERIALS
4 And *Moses spake Mosheh said*
unto all the *congregation witness*
of the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*, saying,
This is the *thing word*
which *the LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed*, saying,
5 Take ye from among you
an *offering exaltment* unto *the LORD Yah Veh*:
whosoever is of a willing heart
everyone whose heart volunteereth,
let him bring it,
an *offering of the LORD exaltment unto Yah Veh*:
gold, and silver, and *brass copper*,
6 And blue, and purple, and scarlet,
and *fine white* linen, and goats' *hair*,
7 And rams' skins *dyed red reddened*, and badgers' skins,
and *shittim wood timber*,
8 And oil for the light, and spices for anointing oil,
and for the *sweet incense of aromatics*,
9 And onyx stones,
and stones *to be set* — **fillings** for the ephod,
and for the breastplate.
10 And every wise hearted among you shall come,
and *make work* all
that *the LORD Yah Veh* hath *commanded misvahed*:
11 The tabernacle, his tent, and his covering,
his *taches hooks*, and his boards, his bars,
his pillars, and his sockets,
12 The ark, and the staves thereof,
with the mercy seat kapporeth,
and the veil of the covering,
13 The table, and his staves, and all his *vessels instruments*,
and the *shewbread face bread*,

EXODUS 34, 35

exeGesés companion BIBLE

see Mosheh,
and behold, the skin of his face shines
and they awe to come near him:
31 and Mosheh calls to them;
and Aharon and all the hierarchs of the witness
return to him:
and Mosheh words with them.
32 And afterward all the sons of Yisra El come nigh:
and he misvahs them
all Yah Veh worded with him in mount Sinay.
33 And Mosheh finishes wording with them
and he gives a veil on his face:
34 and when Mosheh goes in at the face of Yah Veh
to word with him,
he turns aside his veil, until he comes out.
And he comes out
and words to the sons of Yisra El
what he *is* misvahed:
35 and the sons of Yisra El see the face of Mosheh,
that the skin of the face of Mosheh shines:
and Mosheh returns the veil on his face,
until he goes in to word with him.

THE SHABBATH OF SHABBATHISM

35 And Mosheh
congregates all the witness of the sons of Yisra El
and says to them,
These are the words Yah Veh misvahed
— to work them:
2 Six days work the work,
but the seventh day becomes to you a holy
— a shabbath of shabbathism to Yah Veh:
deathify whoever works any work therein:
3 kindle no fire throughout your settlements
on the shabbath day.

TABERNACLE MATERIALS

4 And Mosheh says
to all the witness of the sons of Yisra El, saying,
This *is* the word Yah Veh misvahed, saying,
5 Take from among you an exaltment to Yah Veh:
everyone whose heart volunteers,
bring it — an exaltment to Yah Veh:
gold and silver and copper
and blue and purple and scarlet
and white linen and goats
and reddened rams skins and badgers skins
and shittim timber
6 and oil for the light and spices for anointing oil
and for the incense of aromatics
7 and onyx stones and stones
8 — fillings for the ephod and for the breastplate:
and every wise hearted among you
9 come and work all Yah Veh misvahed:
10 the tabernacle, its tent and its covering,
its hooks and its boards,
11 its bars, its pillars and its sockets,
the ark and the staves thereof,
12 the kapporeth and the veil of the covering,
13 the table and its staves and all its instruments
and the face bread

EXODUS 35

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 The *andlestick* **menorah** also for the light,
and his *furniture* **instruments**,
and his lamps, with the oil for the light,
15 And the incense **sacrifice** altar, and his staves,
and the anointing oil,
and the sweet incense **of aromatics**,
and the *hanging* **covering** for the *door* **opening**,
at the *entering in* **opening** of the tabernacle,
16 The **sacrifice** altar of *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
with his *brasen grate* **copper screen**,
his staves, and all his *vessels* **instruments**,
the laver and his *foot* **base**,
17 The hangings of the court, his pillars, and their sockets,
and the *hanging* **covering** for the *door* **portal** of the court,
18 The *pins* **stakes** of the tabernacle,
and the *pins* **stakes** of the court, and their cords,
19 The *cloths* **clothes** of *service* **stitching**,
to *do service* **minister** in the *holy place* **holies**,
the *holy garments* **clothes** for Aaron **Aharon** the priest,
and the *garments* **clothes** of his sons,
to *minister in the priest's office*
priest the priesthood,
20 And all the *congregation* **witness**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
departed from the *presence* **face** of *Moses* **Mosheh**.
21 And they came,
every one whose heart *stirred him up* **was lifted**,
and every *one* **man**
whom his **whose** spirit *made willing* **volunteered**,
and they brought
the LORD'S offering **Yah Veh's exaltment**
to the work of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
and for all his service, and for the *holy garments* **clothes**.
22 And they came, both men and women,
as many as were willing **hearted**
all whose heart volunteered,
and brought *bracelets* **hooks**, and *earrings* **noserings**,
and rings, and *tablets* **beads**,
all *jewels* **instruments** of gold:
and every man that *offered* **waved**
offered an offering **a wave** of gold
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
23 And every man, with whom was found blue,
and purple, and scarlet, and *fine* **white** linen,
and goats' *hair*, and *red* **reddened** skins of rams,
and badgers' skins, brought them.
24 Every one that *did offer* **exalted** an *offering* **exaltment**
of silver and *brass* **copper**
brought *the LORD'S offering* **Yah Veh's exaltment**:
and every man,
with whom was found *shittim wood* **timber**
for any work of the service, brought it.
25 And all the women that were wise hearted
did spin with their hands,
and brought *that which they had spun* **their spinning**,
both of blue, and of purple, and of scarlet,
and of *fine* **white** linen.
26 And all the women
whose heart *stirred them up* **was lifted** in wisdom
spun goats' *hair*.
27 And the *rulers* **hierarchs** brought onyx stones,
and stones *to be set*, — **fillings** for the ephod,
and for the breastplate;
28 And spice, and oil for the light,
and for the anointing oil,
and for the sweet incense **of aromatics**.
29 The *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
brought a *willing offering* **voluntary**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
every man and woman,
whose heart *made them willing* **volunteered**
to bring for all *manner* of work,
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *commanded* **misvahed**
to be *made* **worked** by the hand of *Moses* **Mosheh**.
30 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said
unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
See,
the LORD **Yah Veh** hath called by name *Bezaleel* **Besal El**
the son of Uri, the son of Hur,

EXODUS 35

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 and the menorah for the light
and its instruments and its lamps
and the oil for the light
15 and the incense sacrifice altar and its staves
and the anointing oil
and the incense of aromatics
and the covering for the opening
at the opening of the tabernacle;
16 the sacrifice altar of holocaust
and its copper screen,
its staves and all its instruments,
the laver and its base,
17 the hangings of the court,
its pillars and their sockets
and the covering for the portal of the court,
18 the stakes of the tabernacle
and the stakes of the court and their cords,
19 the clothes of stitching to minister in the holies
— the holy clothes for Aharon the priest
and the clothes of his sons to priest the priesthood.
20 And all the witness of the sons of Yisra El
depart from the face of Mosheh:
21 and they come — everyone whose heart *is* lifted
and every man whose spirit volunteers:
and they bring the exaltment of Yah Veh
to the work of the tent of the congregation
and for all his service and for the holy clothes.
22 And they come, both men and women,
all whose heart volunteers:
and bring hooks and noserings and rings and beads,
all instruments of gold,
and every man
who waves a wave of gold to Yah Veh:
23 and every man with whom they find blue
and purple and scarlet and white linen
and goats and reddened skins of rams
and skins of badgers, brings them:
24 and every man
who exalts an exaltment of silver and copper
brings the exaltment of Yah Veh:
and every man with whom they find shittim timber
for any work of the service, brings it:
25 and all the wise hearted women
who spin with their hands
bring their spinning,
of blue and purple and scarlet and white linen:
26 and all the women
whose heart lifts in wisdom spin goats.
27 And the hierarchs bring onyx stones
and stones
— fillings for the ephod and for the breastplate
28 and spice and oil for the light
and for the anointing oil
and for the incense of aromatics.
29 The sons of Yisra El bring a voluntary to Yah Veh
— every man and woman whose heart volunteers
to bring all the work Yah Veh misvahed to be worked
by the hand of Mosheh.
30 And Mosheh says to the sons of Yisra El,
See, Yah Veh calls by name Besal El
the son of Uri the son of Hur

EXODUS 35, 36

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

31 of the *tribe* **rod** of Judah **Yah Hudah**;
And he hath filled him with the spirit of *God* **Elohim**,
in wisdom, in *understanding* **discernment**,
and in knowledge,
and in all *manner of workmanship* **his work**;
32 And to *devise curious works* **fabricate fabrications**,
to work in gold, and in silver, and in *brass* **copper**,
33 And in the *cutting* **engraving** of stones, to set **fill** them,
and in *carving* **engraving** of wood **timber**,
to *make* **work** any *manner* **work**
of *cunning work* **fabrications**.
34 And he hath *put* **given** in his heart
that he may *teach* **direct**,
both he, and **Aholiab Oholi Ab**,
the son of *Ahisamach* **Achi Samach**, of the *tribe* **rod** of Dan.
35 Them hath he filled with wisdom of heart,
to work all *manner of work*,
of the engraver,
and of the *cunning workman* **work of a fabricator**,
and of the embroiderer,
in blue, and in purple, in scarlet, and in *fine* **white** linen,
and of the weaver,
even of them that do any **workers of every** work,
and of those that
devise cunning work **fabricate fabrications**.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE TABERNACLE

36

Then *wrought* **worked**
Bezaleel **Besal El** and *Aholiab* **Oholi Ab**,
and every wise hearted man,
in whom *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
put **gave** wisdom and *understanding* **discernment**
to know how to work all *manner of work*
for the service of the *sanctuary* **holies**,
according to all
that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had *commanded* **misvahed**.
2 And *Moses* **Mosheh**
called *Bezaleel* **Besal El** and *Aholiab* **Oholi Ab**,
and every wise hearted man,
in whose heart *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had *put* **given** wisdom,
even every one whose heart **stirred him up** **was lifted**
to *come unto* **approach** the work to *do* **work** it:
3 And they *received* **took at the face** of *Moses* **Mosheh**
all the *offering* **exaltment**,
which the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** had brought
for the work of the service of the *sanctuary* **holies**,
to *make* **work** it *withal*.
And they brought yet unto him *free offerings* **voluntaries**
every morning **morning by morning**.
4 And all the wise *men*,
that *wrought* **worked** all the work of the *sanctuary* **holies**,
came *every man* **man by man** from his work
which they *made* **worked**;
5 And they *spake* **said** unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
The people
bring much more than **abound in bringing** enough
for the service of the work,
which *the LORD* **commanded** **Yah Veh misvahed**
to *make* **work**.
6 And *Moses* **gave commandment** **Mosheh misvahed**,
and they *caused it to be proclaimed* **passed a voice**
throughout the camp, saying,
Let neither man nor woman *make* **work** any more work
for the *offering* **exaltment** of the *sanctuary* **holies**.
So the people were restrained from bringing.
7 For the *stuff* **work** they had
was sufficient for all the work to *make* **work** it,
and *too much* **overflowing**.
8 And *every* **all the** wise hearted *man among them*
that *wrought* **worked** the work of the tabernacle
made **worked** ten curtains of *fine* **white** twined linen,
and blue, and purple, and scarlet:
with *cherubims* **cherubim** of *cunning* **fabricated** work
made **worked** he them.
9 The length of one curtain was twenty and eight cubits,
and the breadth of one curtain four cubits:
the curtains were all of one *size* **measure**.
10 And he *coupled* **joined** the five curtains
one *unto another* **to one**:

EXODUS 35, 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

31 of the rod of Yah Hudah;
and he fills him with the spirit of Elohim
in wisdom, in discernment and in knowledge
and in all his work:
32 and to fabricate fabrications;
to work in gold and in silver and in copper;
33 and in the engraving of stones, to fill them;
and in engraving of timber
to work any work of fabrications:
34 and he gives in his heart to direct
— he and Oholi Ab
the son of Achi Samach of the rod of Dan:
35 he fills them with wisdom of heart,
to work all work of the engraver
and of the work of a fabricator
and of the embroiderer
in blue and in purple, in scarlet and in white linen
and of the weaver — workers of every work
and they who fabricate fabrications.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE TABERNACLE

36

And Besal El and Oholi Ab
and every wise hearted man,
in whom Yah Veh gives wisdom and discernment
to know how to work all work
for the service of the holies,
work according to all Yah Veh misvahed.
2 And Mosheh calls Besal El and Oholi Ab
and every wise hearted man,
in whose heart Yah Veh gives wisdom
— everyone whose heart lifts
who approaches to work the work:
and at the face of Mosheh
3 they all take the exaltment the sons of Yisra El bring
to work the work of the service of the holies:
and they still bring him voluntaries
morning by morning.
4 And all the wise who work all the work of the holies
come man by man from the work they work;
and they say to Mosheh, saying,
5 The people abound in bringing enough
for the service of the work
Yah Veh misvahed to work.
6 And Mosheh misvahs
and they pass a voice throughout the camp, saying,
Neither man nor woman works any more work
for the exaltment of the holies.
— thus they restrain the people from bringing;
7 — for the work *is* sufficient to work all the work
— and overflowing.
8 And all the wise hearted
who work the work of the tabernacle
work ten curtains of white twined linen
and blue and purple and scarlet:
with cherubim of fabricated work he works them.
9 The length of one curtain twenty—eight cubits
and the width of one curtain four cubits:
the curtains, all of one measure.
10 And he joins five curtains one to one

EXODUS 36

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the other five curtains he *coupled* **joined**
one unto another **to one**.
11 And he *made* **worked** loops of blue
on the edge of one curtain
from the *selvedge* **end** in the *coupling* **joint**:
likewise he *made* **worked**
in the uttermost *side* **edge** of another **one** curtain,
in the *coupling* **joint** of the second.
12 Fifty loops *made* **worked** he in one curtain,
and fifty loops *made* **worked** he
in the *edge* **end** of the curtain
which was in the *coupling* **joint** of the second:
the loops *held* **took hold** one curtain to another **one**.
13 And he *made* **worked** fifty *taches* **hooks** of gold,
and *coupled* **joined** the curtains one unto another **to one**
with the *taches* **hooks**:
so it became one tabernacle.
14 And he *made* **worked** curtains of goats' hair
for the tent over the tabernacle:
eleven curtains he *made* **worked** them.
15 The length of one curtain was thirty cubits,
and four cubits was the breadth of one curtain:
the eleven curtains were of one *size* **measure**.
16 And he *coupled* **joined** five curtains by themselves,
and six curtains by themselves.
17 And he *made* **worked** fifty loops
upon the *uttermost* edge of the curtain
in the *coupling* **joint**,
and fifty loops *made* **worked** he
upon the edge of the curtain
which coupleth **with the joint** of the second.
18 And he *made* **worked** fifty *taches* **hooks** of brass **copper**
to couple **join** the tent together, that it might be one.
19 And he *made* **worked** a covering for the tent
of rams' skins *dyed red* **reddened**,
and a covering of badgers' skins above that.
20 And he *made* **worked** boards for the tabernacle
of shittim wood **timber**, standing up.
21 The length of a board was ten cubits,
and the breadth of a board one cubit and a half.
22 One board had two *tenons* **hands**,
equally distant **equidistant** one from another **to one**:
thus did he *make* **work** for all the boards of the tabernacle.
23 And he *made* **worked** boards for the tabernacle;
twenty boards for the south *side* **edge** southward:
24 And forty sockets of silver
he *made* **worked** under the twenty boards;
two sockets under one board for
his two *tenons* **hands**,
and two sockets under another **one** board
for his two *tenons* **hands**.
25 And for the other **second** side of the tabernacle,
which is toward the north *corner* **edge**,
he *made* **worked** twenty boards,
26 And their forty sockets of silver;
two sockets under one board,
and two sockets under another **one** board.
27 And for the *sides* **flanks** of the tabernacle
westward **seaward**
he *made* **worked** six boards.
28 And two boards *made* **worked** he
for the corners of the tabernacle in the *two sides* **flanks**.
29 And they were *coupled* **beneath** **twinned downward**,
and *coupled* **together** **twinned** at the *head* **top** thereof,
to one *ring* **signet**:
thus he *did* **worked** to both **the two** of them
in both the **two** corners.
30 And there were eight boards;
and their sockets were sixteen sockets of silver,
under every **one** board two sockets **and two sockets**.
31 And he *made* **worked** bars of shittim wood **timber**;
five for the boards
of the one side of the tabernacle,
32 And five bars for the boards
of the other **second** side of the tabernacle,
and five bars for the boards
of the tabernacle for the *sides* **westward** **flanks** **seaward**.
33 And he *made* **worked** the middle bar

EXODUS 36

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and he joins five curtains one to one:
11 and he works loops of blue
on the edge of one curtain
from the end in the joint:
he works likewise
in the uttermost edge of one curtain
in the joint of the second:
12 he works fifty loops in one curtain
and he works fifty loops in the end of the curtain
in the joint of the second:
the loops take hold one to one:
13 and he works fifty hooks of gold
and joins the curtains one to one with the hooks:
so it becomes one tabernacle.
14 And he works curtains of goats
for the tent over the tabernacle:
he works eleven curtains:
15 the length of one curtain, thirty cubits
and the width of one curtain, four cubits:
the eleven curtains are of one measure.
16 And he joins five curtains by themselves
and six curtains by themselves:
17 and he works fifty loops
on the edge of the curtain in the joint
and he works fifty loops on the edge of the curtain
with the joint of the second:
18 and he works fifty hooks of copper
to join the tent together, to become one.
19 And he works a covering for the tent
of reddened skins of rams
and a covering skins of badgers above that.
20 And he works boards for the tabernacle
of shittim timber, standing up:
the length of a board, ten cubits
21 and the width of a board, one cubit and a half:
22 one board has two hands, equidistant one to one:
thus he works for all the boards of the tabernacle.
23 And he works boards for the tabernacle;
twenty boards for the south edge southward:
24 and he works forty sockets of silver
under the twenty boards:
two sockets under one board for its two hands
and two sockets under one board
for its two hands.
25 And for the second side of the tabernacle
toward the north edge:
he works twenty boards
26 and their forty sockets of silver;
two sockets under one board
and two sockets under one board.
27 And for the flanks of the tabernacle seaward
he works six boards:
28 and he works two boards
for the corners of the tabernacle in the flanks:
29 and they are twinned downward
and twinned at the top thereof, to one signet:
thus he works to the two of them in the two corners.
30 And there are eight boards:
and their sockets, sixteen sockets of silver;
under everyone board two sockets and two sockets.
31 And he works bars of shittim timber;
five for the boards
of the one side of the tabernacle;
32 and five bars for the boards
of the second side of the tabernacle;
and five bars for the boards
of the tabernacle for the flanks seaward.
33 And he works the middle bar

EXODUS 36, 37

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

to shoot through spread among the boards
from the one end to the other end.
34 And he overlaid the boards with gold,
and made worked their rings signets of gold
to be places housings for the bars,
and overlaid the bars with gold.
35 And he made worked a veil
of blue, and purple, and scarlet,
and fine white twined linen:
with cherubims cherubim
made worked he it of cunning fabricated work.
36 And he made worked thereunto
four pillars of shittim wood,
and overlaid them with gold: their hooks were of gold;
and he cast poured for them four sockets of silver.
37 And he made an hanging worked a covering
for the tabernacle door tent opening
of blue, and purple, and scarlet,
and fine white twined linen,
of needlework embroidery work;
38 And the five pillars of it with their hooks:
and he overlaid
their chapters tops and their fillets attachments with gold:
but their five sockets were of brass copper.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE ARK

37 And Bezaleel Besal El
made worked the ark of shittim wood timber:
two cubits and a half was the length of it,
and a cubit and a half the breadth of it,
and a cubit and a half the height of it:
2 And he overlaid it with pure gold within and without,
and made worked a crown moulding of gold to it
round about.
3 And he cast poured for it four rings signets of gold,
to be set by the four corners supports of it;
even two rings signets upon the one side of it,
and two rings signets upon the other second side of it.
4 And he made worked staves of shittim wood timber,
and overlaid them with gold.
5 And he put the staves into the rings signets
by the sides of the ark, to bear the ark.
6 And he made worked the mercy seat kapporeth
of pure gold:
two cubits and a half was the length thereof,
and one cubit and a half the breadth thereof.
7 And he made worked two cherubims cherubim of gold,
beaten out of one piece of spinnings
made worked he them,
on the two ends of the mercy seat kapporeth;
8 One cherub on the end on this side,
and another one cherub on the other end on that side:
out of the mercy seat kapporeth
made worked he the cherubims cherubim
on the two ends thereof.
9 And the cherubims cherubim
spread out their wings on high upward,
and covered with their wings
over the mercy seat kapporeth,
with their faces one to another man toward brother;
even to toward the mercy seatward kapporeth
were the faces of the cherubims cherubim.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE TABLE

10 And he made worked the table of shittim wood timber:
two cubits was the length thereof,
and a cubit the breadth thereof,
and a cubit and a half the height thereof:
11 And he overlaid it with pure gold,
and made worked thereunto
a crown moulding of gold round about.
12 Also he made worked thereunto a border
of an handbreadth a palm span round about;
and made a crown worked a moulding of gold
for the border thereof round about.
13 And he cast poured for it four rings signets of gold,
and put gave the rings signets upon the four corners edges
that were in the four feet thereof.
14 Over against Along side the border
were the rings signets,
the places housings for the staves to bear the table.

EXODUS 36, 37

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to spread among the boards from end to end:
34 and he overlays the boards with gold
and works their signets of gold
to become housings for the bars;
and overlays the bars with gold:
35 and he works a veil
of blue and purple and scarlet
and white twined linen:
he works it with cherubim of fabricated work:
36 and he works thereto four pillars of shittim
and overlays them with gold:
their hooks are of gold;
and he pours four sockets of silver for them.
37 And he works a covering for the tent opening
of blue and purple and scarlet and white twined linen
of embroidery work
38 with its five pillars with their hooks:
and he overlays their tops and their attachments
with gold:
but their five sockets are of copper.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE ARK

37 And Besal El works the ark of shittim timber:
two cubits and a half long
and a cubit and a half wide
and a cubit and a half high:
2 and he overlays it with pure gold in and out
and works a moulding of gold around it:
3 and he pours four signets of gold for it
by the four supports thereof
— even two signets on the one side
and two signets on the second side.
4 And he works staves of shittim timber
and overlays them with gold:
5 and he puts the staves into the signets
by the sides of the ark, to bear the ark.
6 And he works the kapporeth of pure gold:
two cubits and a half long
and one cubit and a half wide.
7 And he works two cherubim of gold:
he works them of spinnings
on the two ends of the kapporeth
8 — one cherub on the end on this side
and one cherub on the end on that side:
from the kapporeth
he works the cherubim on the two ends thereof:
9 and the cherubim spread their wings upward
and their wings cover over the kapporeth;
with their faces man toward brother;
— the faces of the cherubim toward the kapporeth.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE TABLE

10 And he works the table of shittim timber:
two cubits long and a cubit wide
and a cubit and a half high:
11 and he overlays it with pure gold
and works thereto a moulding of gold around:
and he works thereto a border
of a palm span around;
and works a moulding of gold
for the border thereof around:
12 and he pours four signets of gold for it
and gives the signets
on the four edges in its four feet:
13 along side the border are the signets
— the housings for the staves to bear the table.

EXODUS 37, 38

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 And he made **worked** the staves
of shittim wood **timber**,
and overlaid them with gold, to bear the table.
16 And he made **worked** the vessels **instruments**
which were upon the table,
his dishes, and his *spoons* **bowls**,
and his *bowls* **exoneration basins**,
and his covers to *cover withal* **libate with**, of pure gold.
CONSTRUCTION OF THE MENORAH
17 And he made **worked** the *candlestick* **menorah**
of pure gold:
of beaten work **spinnings**
made **worked** he the *candlestick* **menorah**;
his *shaft* **flank**, and his *branch* **stem**, his bowls,
his *knops* **finials**, and his *flowers* **blossoms**,
were of the same:
18 And six *branches* **stems** going out of the sides thereof;
three *branches* **stems** of the *candlestick* **menorah**
out of the one side thereof,
and three *branches* **stems** of the *candlestick* **menorah**
out of the other **second** side thereof:
19 Three bowls
made after the fashion of almonds **almond shaped**
in one *branch* **stem**, a *knop* **finial** and a *flower* **blossom**;
and three bowls made like almonds **almond shaped**
in another *branch* **one stem**,
a *knop* **finial** and a *flower* **blossom**:
so throughout the six *branches* **stems**
going out of the *candlestick* **menorah**.
20 And in the *candlestick* **menorah** were four bowls
made like almonds **almond shaped**,
his *knops* **finials**, and his *flowers* **blossoms**:
21 And a *knop* **finial**
under two *branches* **stems** of the same,
and a *knop* **finial** under two *branches* **stems** of the same,
and a *knop* **finial** under two *branches* **stems** of the same,
according to the six *branches* **stems** going out of it.
22 Their *knops* **finials** and their *branches* **stems**
were of the same:
all of it was one *beaten work* **spinning** of pure gold.
23 And he made **worked** his seven lamps,
and his *snuffers* **tongs**, and his *snuffdishes* **trays**,
of pure gold.
24 Of a *talent* **round** of pure gold made **worked** he it,
and all the vessels **instruments** thereof.
CONSTRUCTION OF THE INCENSE SACRIFICE ALTAR
25 And he made **worked** the incense **sacrifice** altar
of shittim wood **timber**:
the length of it was a cubit, and the breadth of it a cubit;
it was foursquare; and two cubits was the height of it;
the horns thereof were of the same.
26 And he overlaid it with pure gold,
both the top **roof** of it,
and the *sides* **walls** thereof round about,
and the horns of it:
also he made **worked** unto it
a *crown* **moulding** of gold round about.
27 And he made **worked** two *rings* **signets** of gold for it
under the *crown* **moulding** thereof
by the two *corners* **sides** of it,
upon the two sides thereof,
to be *places* **housings** for the staves to bear it *withal*.
28 And he made **worked** the staves
of shittim wood **timber**,
and overlaid them with gold.
29 And he made **worked** the holy anointing oil,
and the pure incense of *sweet spices* **aromatics**,
according to the work of the apothecary.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE HOLOCAUST SACRIFICE ALTAR

38 And he made **worked** the **sacrifice** altar
of *burnt offering* **holocaust** of shittim wood **timber**:
five cubits was the length thereof,
and five cubits the breadth thereof;
it was foursquare; and three cubits the height thereof.
2 And he made **worked** the horns thereof
on the four corners of it;
the horns thereof were of the same:
and he overlaid it with *brass* **copper**.

EXODUS 37, 38

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 And he works the staves of shittim timber
and overlays them with gold, to bear the table:
16 and he works the instruments on the table
— its dishes and its bowls and its exoneration basins
and its covers to libate with, of pure gold.
CONSTRUCTION OF THE MENORAH
17 And he works the menorah of pure gold:
he works the menorah of spinnings;
its flank and its stem,
its bowls, its finials and its blossoms of the same:
18 and six stems going from the sides;
three stems of the menorah from the one side;
and three stems of the menorah from the second side:
19 three bowls — almond shaped in one stem,
a finial and a blossom;
and three bowls — almond shaped in one stem,
a finial and a blossom:
so throughout the six stems going from the menorah.
20 And in the menorah,
four bowls — almond shaped,
its finials and its blossoms:
21 and a finial under two stems of the same
and a finial under two stems of the same
and a finial under two stems of the same
according to the six stems going therefrom.
22 Their finials and their stems are of the same:
all thereof is one spinning of pure gold.
23 And he works its seven lamps
and its tongs and its trays, of pure gold:
24 he works it and all its instruments
from a round of pure gold.
CONSTRUCTION OF THE INCENSE SACRIFICE ALTAR
25 And he works the incense sacrifice altar
of shittim timber:
a cubit long and a cubit wide — foursquare;
and two cubits high;
its horns of the same:
26 and he overlays it with pure gold
— its roof and its walls all around
and its horns:
and he works to it a moulding of gold all around:
27 and he works two signets of gold for it
under the moulding thereof
by its two sides on its two sides,
to be housings for the staves to bear it.
28 And he works the staves of shittim timber
and overlays them with gold.
29 And he works the holy anointing oil
and the pure incense of aromatics,
according to the work of the apothecary.
**CONSTRUCTION OF THE
HOLOCAUST SACRIFICE ALTAR**
38 And he works the sacrifice altar of holocaust
of shittim timber:
five cubits long and five cubits wide
— foursquare;
and three cubits high.
2 And he works its horns on its four corners
— the horns being of the same:
and he overlays it with copper.

EXODUS 38

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 And he *made worked* all the *vessels instruments*
of the **sacrifice** altar,
the *pots cauldrons*, and the shovels,
and the *basons sprinklers*,
and the *fleshhooks forks*, and the *firepans trays*:
all the *vessels instruments* thereof
made worked he of **brass copper**.
4 And he *made worked* for the **sacrifice** altar
a *brasen grate copper screen* of network
under the *compass rim* thereof
beneath downward unto the midst of it.
5 And he *cast poured* four *rings signets*
for the four ends of the *grate screen of brass copper*,
to be *places housings* for the staves.
6 And he *made worked* the staves of shittim wood **timber**,
and overlaid them with **brass copper**.
7 And he put the staves
into the *rings signets* on the sides of the **sacrifice** altar,
to bear it *withal*;
he *made the altar worked it* hollow with *boards slabs*.
CONSTRUCTION OF THE LAVER
8 And he *made worked* the laver of **brass copper**,
and the *foot base* of it of **brass copper**,
of the *lookingglasses mirrors*
of the *women assembling those that hosted*,
which *assembled hosted* at the *door opening*
of the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation.
CONSTRUCTION OF THE COURT
9 And he *made worked* the court:
on the south *side edge* southward
the hangings of the court were of *fine white* twined linen,
an hundred cubits:
10 Their pillars were twenty,
and their *brasen copper* sockets twenty;
the hooks of the pillars and their *fillets attachments*
were of silver.
11 And for the north *side the hangings were edge*
an hundred cubits,
their pillars were twenty,
and their sockets of **brass copper** twenty;
the hooks of the pillars and their *fillets attachments*
of silver.
12 And for the west *side were seaward edge*
hangings of fifty cubits,
their pillars ten, and their sockets ten;
the hooks of the pillars and their *fillets attachments*
of silver.
13 And for the east *side eastward edge toward the rising*
fifty cubits.
14 The hangings of the one *side of the gate shoulder*
were fifteen cubits;
their pillars three, and their sockets three.
15 And for the *other side second shoulder*
of the court *gate portal*,
on this *hand* and that,
were hangings of fifteen cubits;
their pillars three, and their sockets three.
16 All the hangings of the court round about
were of *fine white* twined linen.
17 And the sockets for the pillars were of **brass copper**;
the hooks of the pillars and their *fillets attachments*
of silver;
and the overlaying of their *chapters tops* of silver;
and all the pillars of the court
were *filleted attached* with silver.
18 And the *hanging covering*
for the *gate portal* of the court
was *needlework embroidery work*,
of blue, and purple, and scarlet,
and *fine white* twined linen:
and twenty cubits was the length,
and the height in the breadth was five cubits,
answerable to along side the hangings of the court.
19 And their pillars were four,
and their sockets of **brass copper** four;
their hooks of silver,
and the overlaying of their *chapters tops*
and their *fillets attachments* of silver.
20 And all the *pins stakes* of the tabernacle,

EXODUS 38

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 And he works
all the instruments of the sacrifice altar
— the cauldrons and the shovels and the sprinklers
and the forks and the trays:
and works all its instruments of copper.
4 And for the sacrifice altar
he works a copper screen of network under its rim
downward to the middle:
5 and he pours four signets
for the four ends of the screen of copper
— housings for the staves:
6 and he works the staves of shittim timber
and overlays them with copper:
7 and he puts the staves
into the signets on the sides of the sacrifice altar,
to bear it:
he works it hollow with slabs.
CONSTRUCTION OF THE LAVER
8 And he works the laver of copper
and the base of copper
with the mirrors of them who host
— host at the opening of the tent of the congregation.
CONSTRUCTION OF THE COURT
9 And he works the court
on the south edge southward:
the hangings of the court *are* of white twined linen,
a hundred cubits;
10 their pillars twenty
and their sockets of copper twenty;
the hooks of the pillars and their attachments
of silver.
11 And for the north edge:
a hundred cubits;
their pillars twenty and their sockets of copper,
twenty;
the hooks of the pillars and their attachments
of silver.
12 And for the seaward edge:
hangings of fifty cubits;
their pillars ten and their sockets ten;
the hooks of the pillars and their attachments
of silver.
13 And for the east edge toward the rising:
fifty cubits;
14 the hangings of the one shoulder fifteen cubits;
their pillars three and their sockets three:
15 and for the second shoulder of the court portal,
on this and that,
hangings of fifteen cubits;
their pillars three and their sockets three.
16 All the hangings of the court all around
are of white twined linen;
17 and the sockets for the pillars of copper;
the hooks of the pillars and their attachments
of silver;
and the overlaying of their tops of silver;
and all the pillars of the court *are* attached with silver.
18 And the covering for the portal of the court
is embroidery work
of blue and purple and scarlet
and white twined linen:
and twenty cubits long and five cubits high and wide
along side the hangings of the court:
19 and their pillars four
and their sockets of copper four;
their hooks of silver and the overlaying of their tops
and their attachments of silver.
20 And all the stakes of the tabernacle

EXODUS 38, 39

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and of the court round about, were of brass **copper**.
21 This is the *sum* **muster** of the tabernacle,
even of the tabernacle of *testimony* **witness**,
as it was counted,
according to the *commandment* **mouth** of Moses **Mosheh**,
for the service of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
by the hand of *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**,
son to Aaron **Aharon** the priest.
22 And *Bezaleel* **Besal El** the son of Uri, the son of Hur,
of the *tribe* **rod** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
made **worked** all that the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed** **Mosheh**.
23 And with him was *Aholiab* **Oholi Ab**,
son of *Ahisamach* **Achi Samach**, of the *tribe* **rod** of Dan,
an engraver, and a *cunning* **workman** **fabricator**,
and an embroiderer in blue, and in purple, and in scarlet,
and *fine* **white** linen.
24 All the gold that was *occupied* **worked** for the work
in all the work of the *holy* **place** **holies**,
even the gold of *for* the *offering* **wave**,
was twenty and nine *talents* **rounds**,
and seven hundred and thirty shekels,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**.
25 And the silver of them
that were *numbered* **mustered** of the *congregation* **witness**
was an hundred *talents* **rounds**,
and a thousand seven hundred
and *threescore and fifteen* **seventy and five** shekels,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**:
26 A *bekah* **for every man** **per cranium**,
that is, half a shekel,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**,
for every one that *went* **passed** to be *numbered* **mustered**,
from a *son of* twenty years *old* and upward,
for six hundred thousand and three thousand
and five hundred and *fifty* **men**.
27 And of the hundred *talents* **rounds** of silver
were *cast* **poured** the sockets of the *sanctuary* **holies**,
and the sockets of the veil;
an hundred sockets of the hundred *talents* **rounds**,
a *talent* **round** for a socket.
28 And of the thousand seven hundred
seventy and five *shekels*
he *made* **worked** hooks for the pillars,
and overlaid their *chapters* **tops**,
and *filleted* **attached** them.
29 And the *brass* **copper** of the *offering* **wave**
was seventy *talents* **rounds**,
and two thousand and four hundred shekels.
30 And therewith he *made* **worked** the sockets
to the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
and the *brasen* **copper** **sacrifice** altar,
and the *brasen* **grate** **copper** **screen** for it,
and all the *vessels* **instruments** of the **sacrifice** altar,
31 And the sockets of the court round about,
and the sockets of the court *gate* **portal**,
and all the *pins* **stakes** of the tabernacle,
and all the *pins* **stakes** of the court round about.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE CLOTHES

39 And of the blue, and purple, and scarlet,
they *made* **cloths** **worked** **clothes** of *service* **stitching**,
to *do* **service** **minister** in the *holy* **place** **holies**,
and *made* **worked** the *holy* **garments** **clothes**
for Aaron **Aharon**;
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed** **Mosheh**.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE EPHOD

2 And he *made* **worked** the ephod
of gold, blue, and purple, and scarlet,
and *fine* **white** twined linen.
3 And they *did* **beat** **expanded** the gold
into *thin* **plates** **sheets**,
and cut it into *wires* **braids**,
to work *it in* **among** the blue, and *in* **among** the purple,
and *in* **among** the scarlet,
and *in* **among** the *fine* **white** linen,
with *cunning* **fabricated** work.
4 They *made* **worked** shoulderpieces for it,

EXODUS 38, 39

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and of the court all around, of copper.
21 This *is* the muster of the tabernacle,
of the tabernacle of witness,
as counted according to the mouth of Mosheh,
for the service of the Leviym,
by the hand of Iy Thamar son of Aharon the priest.
22 And Besal El the son of Uri the son of Hur
of the rod of Yah Hudah
works all Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh:
23 and with him *is* Oholi Ab
son of Achi Samach of the rod of Dan
— an engraver and a fabricator and an embroiderer
in blue and in purple and in scarlet and white linen.
24 All the gold worked for the work
in all the work of the holies
— the gold for the wave
is twenty—nine rounds
and seven hundred and thirty shekels,
after the shekel of the holies.
25 And the silver of those mustered of the witness,
a hundred rounds
and a thousand seven hundred
and seventy five shekels,
after the shekel of the holies:
26 a *bekah* per cranium
— that *is*, a half shekel after the shekel of the holies
for everyone who passes to be mustered,
from a son of twenty years and upward
— for six hundred thousand and three thousand
and five hundred and fifty.
27 And of the hundred rounds of silver
they pour the sockets of the holies
and the sockets of the veil;
a hundred sockets of the hundred rounds,
a round for a socket.
28 And of the thousand seven hundred
and seventy five,
he works hooks for the pillars;
and overlays their tops and attaches them.
29 And the copper of the wave *is* seventy rounds
and two thousand and four hundred shekels:
30 and with them he works the sockets
to the opening of the tent of the congregation
and the copper sacrifice altar
and the copper screen for it
and all the instruments of the sacrifice altar,
and the sockets of the court all around
and the sockets of the court portal
and all the stakes of the tabernacle
and all the stakes of the court all around.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE CLOTHES

39 And of the blue and purple and scarlet
they work clothes of stitching
to minister in the holies;
and work the holy clothes for Aharon;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE EPHOD

2 And he works the ephod
of gold, blue and purple and scarlet
and white twined linen.
3 And they expand the gold into sheets
and cut it into braids,
to work among the blue and among the purple
and among the scarlet and among the white linen
with fabricated work:
4 they work shoulderpieces for it

EXODUS 39

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

to couple **join** it together:

5 by the two *edges* **ends** was it *coupled* **joined** together.
 And the *curious* **fabricated** girdle of his ephod,
 that was upon it,
 was of the same, according to the work thereof;
 of gold, blue, and purple, and scarlet,
 and *fine* **white** twined linen;
 as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
 commanded *Moses* **misvahed Mosheh**.
 6 And they *wrought* **worked** onyx stones
inclosed in ouches **surrounded by brocades** of gold,
graven **engraved**, as *signets are graven* **engravings of seals**,
 with the names of the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**.
 7 And he put them on the shoulders of the ephod,
 that they should be stones for a memorial
 to the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**;
 as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
 commanded *Moses* **misvahed Mosheh**.
CONSTRUCTION OF THE BREASTPLATE
 8 And he *made* **worked** the breastplate
of cunning **fabricated** work like the work of the ephod;
 of gold, blue, and purple, and scarlet,
 and *fine* **white** twined linen.
 9 It was foursquare;
 they *made* **worked** the breastplate double:
 a span was the length thereof,
 and a span the breadth thereof, *being* doubled.
 10 And they *set* **filled** in it four rows of stones:
 the first row was a sardius, a topaz, and a carbuncle:
this was the first row.
 11 And the second row,
 an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond.
 12 And the third row,
 a *ligure* **an opal**, an agate, and an amethyst.
 13 And the fourth row,
 a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper:
 they were *inclosed* **surrounded**
in ouches **by brocades** of gold in their *inclosings* **fillings**.
 14 And the stones were according to the names
 of the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
 twelve, according to their names,
 like the engravings of a *signet* **seal**,
 every *one* **man** with his name,
 according to the twelve *tribes* **scions**.
 15 And they *made* **worked** upon the breastplate
chains at the ends **twisted**, of wreathen work of pure gold.
 16 And they *made* **worked** two *ouches* **brocades** of gold,
 and two gold *rings* **signets**;
 and *put* **gave** the two *rings* **signets**
 in the two ends of the breastplate.
 17 And they *put* **gave** the two
wreathen chains **wreaths** of gold
 in the two *rings* **signets** on the ends of the breastplate.
 18 And the two ends of the two *wreathen chains* **wreaths**
 they *fastened* **gave** in the two *ouches* **brocades**,
 and *put* **gave** them on the shoulderpieces of the ephod,
before it **in front of its face**.
 19 And they *made* **worked** two *rings* **signets** of gold,
 and put them on the two ends of the breastplate,
 upon the *border* **edge** of it,
 which was on the side of the ephod *inward* **housing**.
 20 And they *made* **worked** two *other* golden *rings* **signets**,
 and *put* **gave** them on the two *sides* **shoulders**
 of the ephod *underneath* **downward**,
toward the forepart **in front of the face** of it,
over against **along side** the *other* **coupling joint** thereof,
 above the *curious* **fabricated** girdle of the ephod.
 21 And they did bind the breastplate by his *rings* **signets**
 unto the *rings* **signets** of the ephod
 with a *lace* **braid** of blue,
 that it might be above
 the *curious* **fabricated** girdle of the ephod,
 and that the breastplate
 might not be *loosed* **removed** from the ephod;
 as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
 commanded *Moses* **misvahed Mosheh**.
CONSTRUCTION OF THE MANTLE

22 And he *made* **worked** the *robe* **mantle** of the ephod
 of woven work, *all* **totally** of blue.

EXODUS 39

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to join — join by the two ends.

5 And the fabricated girdle of his ephod
is of the same, according to the work thereof;
 of gold, blue and purple and scarlet
 and white twined linen;
 as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.
 6 And they work onyx stones
 surrounded by brocades of gold,
 engraved, as engravings of seals,
 with the names of the sons of Yisra El:
 7 and he puts them on the shoulders of the ephod
 — stones for a memorial to the sons of Yisra El;
 as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE BREASTPLATE

8 And he works the breastplate
 of fabricated work like the work of the ephod;
 of gold, blue and purple and scarlet
 and white twined linen
 — foursquare:
 they work the breastplate double:
 a span long and a span wide — doubled:
 and they fill in four rows of stones:
 the first row:
 a sardius, a topaz and a carbuncle
 — the first row;
 and the second row:
 an emerald, a sapphire and a diamond;
 12 and the third row:
 an opal, an agate and an amethyst;
 13 and the fourth row:
 a beryl, an onyx and a jasper;
 these *are* surrounded
 by brocades of gold in their fillings:
 14 and the stones *are* according to the names
 of the sons of Yisra El
 — twelve, according to their names,
 like the engravings of a seal
 — every man with his name,
 according to the twelve scions.

15 And on the breastplate they work chains
 of twisted wreathen work of pure gold:
 16 and they work two brocades of gold
 and two gold signets;
 and give the two signets
 in the two ends of the breastplate;
 17 and they give the two wreaths of gold
 in the two signets on the ends of the breastplate:
 18 and the two ends of the two wreaths
 they give in the two brocades;
 and give them on the shoulderpieces of the ephod
 in front of its face:
 and they work two signets of gold
 and put them on the two ends of the breastplate
 — on the edge on the side of the ephod housing:
 and they work two golden signets
 and give them on the two shoulders
 of the ephod downward
 in front of its face, along side its joint,
 above the fabricated girdle of the ephod.

21 And they bind the breastplate by its signets
 to the signets of the ephod with a braid of blue
 to be above the fabricated girdle of the ephod:
 so that the breastplate
 is not removed from the ephod;
 as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE MANTLE

22 And he works the mantle of the ephod
 of woven work, totally of blue:

EXODUS 39

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 And there was *an hole* **a mouth**
in the midst of the *robe* **mantle**,
as the *hole* **mouth** of an habergeon,
with a *band* **an edging** round about the *hole* **mouth**,
that it should not *rend* **rip**.
24 And they *made* **worked** upon the *hems* **drapes**
of the *robe* **mantle**
pomegranates of blue, and purple, and scarlet,
and twined *linen*.
25 And they *made* **worked** bells of pure gold,
and *put* **gave** the bells *between* **midst** the pomegranates
upon the *hem* **drape** of the *robe* **mantle**,
round about *between* **midst** the pomegranates;
26 A bell and a pomegranate, a bell and a pomegranate,
round about the *hem* **drape** of the *robe* **mantle**
to minister in;
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded *Moses* **misvahed** **Mosheh**.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE TUNIC, TIARA, AND BREECHES

27 And they *made* **worked** coats
of *fine* **white** linen of woven work
for *Aaron* **Aharon**, and for his sons,
28 And a *mitre* **tiara** of *fine* **white** linen,
and *goodly* **bonnets** **ornaments of turbans**
of *fine* **white** linen,
and linen breeches of *fine* **white** twined linen,
29 And a girdle of *fine* **white** twined linen,
and blue, and purple, and scarlet,
of *needlework* **embroidery work**;
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded *Moses* **misvahed** **Mosheh**.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE BLOSSOM OF THE HOLY SEPARATISM

30 And they *made* **worked** the *plate* **blossom**
of the *holy* **crown** **separatism** of pure gold,
and *wrote* **inscribed** upon it a *writing* **an inscribing**,
like to the engravings of a *signet* **seal**,
HOLINESS TO THE LORD **HOLY TO YAH VEH**.
31 And they *tyed* **gave** unto it a *lace* **braid** of blue,
to *fasten* **give** it on *high* **upward** upon the *mitre* **tiara**;
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded *Moses* **misvahed** **Mosheh**.

INSPECTION OF THE TABERNACLE

32 Thus was all the *work* **service** of the tabernacle
of the tent of the congregation finished:
and the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
did **worked** according to all
that the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded *Moses* **misvahed** **Mosheh**,
so *did* **worked** they.
33 And they brought the tabernacle unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
the tent, and all his *furniture* **instruments**,
his *taches* **hooks**, his boards, his bars,
and his pillars, and his sockets,
34 And the covering of rams' skins *died* **red** **reddened**,
and the covering of badgers' skins,
and the vail of the covering,
35 The ark of the *testimony* **witness**, and the staves thereof,
and the *mercy seat* **kapporeth**,
36 The table, and all the *vessels* **instruments** thereof,
and the *shewbread* **face bread**,
37 The pure *candlestick* **menorah**, with the lamps thereof,
even with the lamps to be set *in order* **in rows**,
and all the *vessels* **instruments** thereof,
and the oil for light,
38 And the golden **sacrifice** altar, and the anointing oil,
and the *sweet incense* **of aromatics**,
and the *hanging* **covering**
for the *tabernacle door* **tent opening**,
39 The *brasen* **copper** **sacrifice** altar,
and his *grate* **screen** of *brass* **copper**,
his staves, and all his *vessels* **instruments**,
the laver and his *foot* **base**,
40 The hangings of the court, his pillars, and his sockets,
and the *hanging* **covering** for the court *gate* **portal**,
his cords, and his *pins* **stakes**,
and all the *vessels* of the service of the tabernacle,
for the tent of the congregation,

EXODUS 39

exeGesés companion BIBLE

23 And there *is* a mouth midst the mantle
as the mouth of a habergeon
— with an edging around the mouth, that it not rip.
24 And on the drapes of the mantle
they work pomegranates
of blue and purple and scarlet and twined:
25 and they work bells of pure gold
and give the bells midst the pomegranates
on the drape of the mantle all around
midst the pomegranates
26 — a bell and a pomegranate,
a bell and a pomegranate,
all around the drape of the mantle to minister in;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE TUNIC, TIARA, AND BREECHES

27 And they work coats of white linen of woven work
for Aharon and for his sons;
and a tiara of white linen
and ornaments of turbans of white linen
and linen breeches of white twined linen;
29 and a girdle of white twined linen
and blue and purple and scarlet,
of embroidery work;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

CONSTRUCTION OF THE BLOSSOM OF THE HOLY SEPARATISM

30 And they work the blossom of the holy separatism
of pure gold
and inscribe an inscribing thereon,
like the engravings of a seal,
HOLY TO YAH VEH.
31 And they give thereto a braid of blue,
to give it upward on the tiara;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

INSPECTION OF THE TABERNACLE

32 Thus all the service of the tabernacle
of the tent of the congregation *is* finished:
and the sons of Yisra El
work according to all Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh
— thus they work.
33 And they bring the tabernacle to Mosheh,
the tent and all its instruments,
its hooks, its boards, its bars
and its pillars and its sockets,
34 and the covering of reddened skins of rams
and the covering of skins of badgers
and the veil of the covering;
35 the ark of the witness and its staves
and the kapporeth;
36 the table and all its instruments
and the face bread;
37 the pure menorah with its lamps
— with the lamps to be in rows
and all its instruments and the oil for light;
38 and the golden sacrifice altar and the anointing oil
and the incense of aromatics;
and the covering for the tent opening;
39 the copper sacrifice altar and its screen of copper,
its staves and all its instruments,
the laver and its base,
the hangings of the court,
its pillars and its sockets
and the covering for the court portal,
its cords and its stakes
and all the service of the tabernacle
for the tent of the congregation;

EXODUS 39, 40

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

41 The cloths **clothes** of service **stitching**
to do service **minister** in the *holy place* **holies**,
and the holy *garments* **clothes** for Aaron **Aharon** the priest,
and his sons' *garments* **clothes**,
to minister in the *priest's office*
priest the priesthood.
42 According to all that the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded *Moses* **misvahed Mosheh**,
so the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
made **worked** all the *work* **service**.
43 And *Moses* **Mosheh** did look upon all the work,
and, behold, they had *done* **worked** it
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *commanded* **misvahed**,
even so **thus** had they *done* **worked** it:
and *Moses* **Mosheh** blessed them.

ERECTION OF THE TABERNACLE

40 And the *LORD* **spake Yah Veh** worded
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
2 *On the first day of the first month*
On the first day of the month, on the first of the month
shalt thou *set up* **raise** the tabernacle
of the tent of the congregation.
3 And thou shalt put therein
the ark of the *testimony* **witness**,
and cover the ark with the veil.
4 And thou shalt bring in the table,
and *set in order* **arrange**
the things that are to be set in order upon it
its arrangement;
and thou shalt bring in the *candlestick* **menorah**,
and *light* **holocaust** the lamps thereof.
5 And thou shalt *set give* the **sacrifice** altar of gold
for the incense
before at the face of the ark of the *testimony* **witness**,
and put the *hanging* **covering**
of the *door* **opening** to the tabernacle.
6 And thou shalt *set give* the **sacrifice** altar
of **for** the *burnt offering* **holocaust**
before at the face of the *door* **opening**
of the tabernacle of the tent of the congregation.
7 And thou shalt *set give* the **laver**
between the tent of the congregation
and **between** the **sacrifice** altar,
and shalt *put give* water therein.
8 And thou shalt set up the court round about,
and *hang up the hanging* **give the covering**
at the court *gate* **portal**.
9 And thou shalt take the anointing oil,
and anoint the tabernacle, and all that is therein,
and shalt hallow it,
and all the *vessels* **instruments** thereof:
and it shall be holy.
10 And thou shalt anoint the **sacrifice** altar
of the *burnt offering* **for the holocaust**,
and all his *vessels* **instruments**,
and *sanctify* **hallow** the **sacrifice** altar:
and it shall be *an* **a sacrifice** altar
most holy — **a holy of holies**.
11 And thou shalt anoint the laver and his *foot* **base**,
and *sanctify* **hallow** it.
12 And thou shalt *bring* **oblade Aharon** and his sons
unto the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
and *wash* **baptize** them with water.
13 And thou shalt put upon *Aaron* **Aharon**
the holy *garments* **clothes**,
and anoint him, and *sanctify* **hallow** him;
that he may *minister unto me in the priest's office*
priest the priesthood unto me.
14 And thou shalt *bring* **oblade** his sons,
and clothe them with coats:
15 And thou shalt anoint them,
as thou didst anoint their father,
that they may *minister unto me in the priest's office*
priest the priesthood unto me:
for their anointing
shall *surely* be an *everlasting* **eternal** priesthood
throughout their generations.
16 Thus *did* *Moses* **worked Mosheh**:

EXODUS 39, 40

exeGeses companion BIBLE

41 the clothes of stitching to minister in the holies
and the holy clothes for Aharon the priest
and the clothes of his sons
to priest the priesthood.
42 According to all Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh,
thus the sons of Yisra El work all the service.
43 And Mosheh looks on all the work
and behold, they work it as Yah Veh misvahed
— thus they work it:
and Mosheh blesses them.

ERECTION OF THE TABERNACLE

40 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 On the first day of the month, on the first month,
raise the tabernacle of the tent of the congregation:
3 and put therein the ark of the witness
and cover the ark with the veil:
4 and bring in the table and arrange its arrangement;
and bring in the menorah
and holocaust its lamps.
5 And give the sacrifice altar of gold for the incense
at the face of the ark of the witness
and put the covering of the opening to the tabernacle.
6 and give the sacrifice altar for the holocaust
at the face of the opening
of the tabernacle of the tent of the congregation;
7 and give the laver
between the tent of the congregation
and between the sacrifice altar
— and give water therein:
8 and set up the court all around
and give the covering at the court portal:
9 and take the anointing oil
and anoint the tabernacle and all therein
and hallow it and all its instruments:
and it becomes holy:
10 and anoint the sacrifice altar for the holocaust
and all its instruments
and hallow the sacrifice altar:
and it becomes a sacrifice altar — a holy of holies:
11 and anoint the laver and its base and hallow it.
12 And oblate Aharon and his sons
at the opening of the tent of the congregation
and baptize them with water.
13 And put on Aharon the holy clothes;
and anoint him and hallow him
to priest the priesthood to me:
14 and oblate his sons and clothe them with coats:
15 and anoint them, as you anointed their father
to priest the priesthood to me:
for their anointing becomes an eternal priesthood
throughout their generations.
16 Thus Mosheh works:

EXODUS 40

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

according to all
that the LORD commanded **Yah Veh** misvahed him,
so *did* **worked** he.

17 And **so be** it came to pass,
in the first month in the second year,
on the first *day* of the month,
that the tabernacle was *reared up* **raised**.

18 And *Moses reared up* **Mosheh** raised the tabernacle,
and fastened **gave** his sockets,
and set up the boards thereof,
and *put gave* in the bars thereof,
and *reared up* **raised** his pillars.

19 And he spread *abroad* the tent over the tabernacle,
and put the covering of the tent above upon it;
as the LORD commanded *Moses* **Yah Veh** misvahed **Mosheh**.

20 And he took and *put gave* the *testimony* **witness**
into the ark,
and set the staves on the ark,
and *put gave* the *mercy seat* **kapporeth** above upon the ark:

21 And he brought the ark into the tabernacle,
and set up the veil of the covering,
and covered the ark of the *testimony* **witness**;
as the LORD commanded *Moses* **Yah Veh** misvahed **Mosheh**.

22 And he *put gave* the table
in the tent of the congregation,
upon the *side* **flank** of the tabernacle northward,
without the veil.

23 And he set **arranged the arrangement**
of the bread *in order* upon it
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh;
as the LORD **Yah Veh**
had commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**.

24 And he put the *candlestick* **menorah**
in the tent of the congregation, over against the table,
on the *side* **flank** of the tabernacle southward.

25 And he *lighted* **holocausted** the lamps
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh;
as the LORD commanded *Moses* **Yah Veh** misvahed **Mosheh**.

26 And he put the golden **sacrifice** altar
in the tent of the congregation
before at the face of the veil:

27 And he *burnt* **incensed**
sweet incense of aromatics thereon;
as the LORD commanded *Moses* **Yah Veh** misvahed **Mosheh**.

28 And he set up the *hanging* **covering**
at the *door* **opening** of the tabernacle.

29 And he put the **sacrifice** altar
of *burnt offering* **holocaust** by the *door* **opening**
of the tabernacle of the tent of the congregation,
and *offered* **holocausted** upon it
the *burnt offering* **holocaust** and the *meat* offering;
as the LORD commanded *Moses* **Yah Veh** misvahed **Mosheh**.

30 And he set the laver
between the tent of the congregation
and **between** the **sacrifice** altar,
and *put gave* water there, to *wash* **baptize** *withal*.

31 And *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon** and his sons
washed **baptized** their hands and their feet thereat:

32 When they went into the tent of the congregation,
and when they came *near* **approached**
unto the **sacrifice** altar, they *washed* **baptized**;
as the LORD commanded *Moses* **Yah Veh** misvahed **Mosheh**.

33 And he *reared up* **raised** the court
round about the tabernacle and the **sacrifice** altar,
and set up the *hanging* **covering** of the court *gate* **portal**.
So *Moses* **Mosheh** finished the work.

THE HONOR OF YAH VEH FILLS THE TABERNACLE

34 Then a cloud covered the tent of the congregation,
and the *glory* **honour** of the LORD **Yah Veh**
filled the tabernacle.

35 And *Moses* **Mosheh**
was not able to enter into the tent of the congregation,
because the cloud *abode* **tabernacled** thereon,
and the *glory* **honour** of the LORD **Yah Veh**
filled the tabernacle.

36 And when the cloud *was taken up* **ascended**
from over the tabernacle,
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
went onward **pulled stakes** in all their journeys:

EXODUS 40

exeGesés companion BIBLE

according to all Yah Veh misvahed him,
thus he works.

17 And so be it, in the first month,
in the second year, on the first of the month,
the tabernacle is raised:

18 and Mosheh raises the tabernacle
and gives its sockets
and sets up its boards and gives them in its bars
and raises its pillars.

19 And he spreads the tent over the tabernacle
and puts the covering of the tent above it;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

20 And he takes and gives the witness into the ark
and sets the staves on the ark
and gives the kapporeth above the ark:
and he brings the ark into the tabernacle
and sets up the veil of the covering
and covers the ark of the witness;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh:

21 and he gives the table
in the tent of the congregation
on the flank of the tabernacle northward
outside the veil:

22 and he arranges the arrangement of the bread on it
at the face of Yah Veh;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

23 And he puts the menorah
in the tent of the congregation
over against the table,
on the flank of the tabernacle southward:

24 and he holocausts the lamps
at the face of Yah Veh;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

25 And he puts the golden sacrifice altar
in the tent of the congregation at the face of the veil:
and he incenses incense of aromatics thereon;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

26 And he sets up the covering
at the opening of the tabernacle:
and he puts the sacrifice altar of holocaust
by the opening
of the tabernacle of the tent of the congregation;
and holocausts the holocaust and the offering
thereon;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

27 And he sets the laver
between the tent of the congregation
and between the sacrifice altar
and gives water there, to baptize.

28 And Mosheh and Aharon and his sons
baptize their hands and their feet therein:

29 when they go into the tent of the congregation
and when they approach the sacrifice altar,
they baptize;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

30 And he raises the court
around the tabernacle and the sacrifice altar
and sets up the covering of the court portal:
thus Mosheh finishes the work.

THE HONOR OF YAH VEH FILLS THE TABERNACLE

31 And a cloud covers the tent of the congregation
and the honor of Yah Veh fills the tabernacle:
and Mosheh
is not able to enter the tent of the congregation,
because the cloud tabernacles thereon
and the honor of Yah Veh fills the tabernacle.

32 And when the cloud ascends
from over the tabernacle,
the sons of Yisra El pull stakes in all their journeys:

EXODUS 40

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 37 But if the cloud *were not taken up ascended not*,
then they *journeyed pulled stakes* not
till the day that it *was taken up ascended*.
- 38 For the cloud of *the LORD Yah Veh*
was upon the tabernacle by day,
and fire was on it by night,
in the *sight eyes* of all the house of *Israel Yisra El*,
throughout all their journeys.

EXODUS 40

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 37 and if the cloud ascends not,
then they pull stakes not until the day it ascends.
- 38 For the cloud of Yah Veh
is on the tabernacle by day
and fire *is* on it by night
— in the eyes of all the house of Yisra El
throughout all their journeys.

LEVITICUS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

OBLATIONS

- 1 And the LORD **Yah Veh** called unto Moses **Mosheh**,
and spake **worded** unto him
out of the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation, saying,
2 Speak **Word** unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and say unto them,
If any *man* **human** of you
bring an offering **oblite a qorban** unto the LORD **Yah Veh**,
ye shall bring **oblite** your offering **qorban**
of the *cattle* **animals**,
even of the *herd* **oxen**, and of the flock.
- HOLOCAUST QORBANS**
- 3 If his offering **qorban**
be a *burnt sacrifice* **holocaust** of the *herd* **oxen**,
let him offer a **oblite an integrious** male without blemish:
he shall offer **oblite** it
of his own *voluntary will* **at his pleasure**
at the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**.
4 And he shall put **prop** his hand
upon the head of the *burnt offering* **holocaust**;
and it shall be *accepted* **pleasing** for him
to make atonement **kapar/atone** for him.
5 And he shall kill **slaughter** the *bullock* **son of the oxen**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**:
and the priests, *Aaron's* **Aharon's** sons,
shall bring **oblite** the blood,
and sprinkle the blood round about
upon the **sacrifice** altar that is by the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation.
6 And he shall flay **strip** the *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
and cut it into **dismember** his *pieces* **members**.
7 And the sons of *Aaron* **Aharon** the priest
shall put **give** fire upon the **sacrifice** altar,
and lay **arrange** the *wood in order* **timber** upon the fire:
8 And the priests, *Aaron's* **Aharon's** sons,
shall lay **arrange** the *parts* **members**,
the head, and the fat,
in order upon the *wood* **timber** that is on the fire
which is upon the **sacrifice** altar:
9 But his inwards and his legs
shall he wash **baptize** in water:
and the priest shall burn **incense** all on the **sacrifice** altar,
to be a *burnt sacrifice* **holocaust**,
an offering made by fire **a firing**,
of a *sweet savour* **scent of rest**
unto the LORD **Yah Veh**.
10 And if his offering **qorban** be of the flocks,
namely, of the *sheep* **lambs**, or of the goats,
for a *burnt sacrifice* **holocaust**;
he shall bring **oblite** it
a **an integrious** male without blemish.
11 And he shall kill **slaughter** it
on the *side* **flank** of the **sacrifice** altar northward
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**:
and the priests, *Aaron's* **Aharon's** sons,
shall sprinkle his blood round about
upon the **sacrifice** altar.
12 And he shall cut it into **dismember** his *pieces* **members**,
with his head and his fat:
and the priest shall lay **arrange** them *in order*
on the *wood* **timber** that is on the fire
which is upon the **sacrifice** altar:
13 But he shall wash **baptize** the inwards and the legs
with water:
and the priest shall bring **oblite** it all,
and burn **incense** it upon the **sacrifice** altar:
it is a *burnt sacrifice* **holocaust**,
an offering made by fire **a firing**,
of a *sweet savour* **scent of rest**
unto the LORD **Yah Veh**.
14 And if the *burnt sacrifice* **holocaust**
for his offering **qorban** to the LORD **Yah Veh**
be of *fowls* **flyers**,
then he shall bring **oblite** his offering **qorban**
of turtledoves, or of *young pigeons* **sons of doves**.
15 And the priest shall bring **oblite** it
unto the **sacrifice** altar,

LEVITICUS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

OBLATIONS

- 1 And Yah Veh calls to Mosheh
and words to him from the tent of the congregation,
saying,
2 Word to the sons of Yisra El and say to them,
If any human of you oblite a qorban to Yah Veh,
oblite your qorban of the animals,
even of the oxen and of the flock.
- HOLOCAUST QORBANS**
- 3 If his qorban is a holocaust of the oxen
he oblites an integrious male:
he oblites it at his pleasure
at the opening of the tent of the congregation
at the face of Yah Veh;
4 and he props his hand on the head of the holocaust;
and he is pleased to kapar/atone for him.
- 5 And he slaughters the son of the oxen
at the face of Yah Veh;
and the priests, the sons of Aharon, oblite the blood
and sprinkle the blood all around
on the sacrifice altar
by the opening of the tent of the congregation:
6 and he strips the holocaust
and dismembers the members.
- 7 And the sons of Aharon the priest
give fire on the sacrifice altar
and arrange the timber on the fire:
8 and the priests, the sons of Aharon,
arrange the members — the head and the fat
on the timber on the fire on the sacrifice altar:
9 and he baptizes the inwards and the legs in water:
and the priest incenses all on the sacrifice altar
— a holocaust
— a firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh.
- 10 And if his qorban for a holocaust
be of the flocks — of the lambs or of the goats
he oblites an integrious male:
and he slaughters it
on the flank of the sacrifice altar northward
at the face of Yah Veh:
and the priests, the sons of Aharon,
sprinkle the blood all around on the sacrifice altar:
12 and he dismembers the members
with the head and the fat:
and the priest arranges them
on the timber on the fire on the sacrifice altar:
13 and he baptizes the inwards and the legs
with water:
and the priest oblites it all
and incenses it on the sacrifice altar:
— a holocaust
— a firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh.
- 14 And if the holocaust for his qorban to Yah Veh
is of flyers,
then he oblites his qorban
of turtledoves or of sons of doves:
15 and the priest oblites it to the sacrifice altar

LEVITICUS 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and wring off his head,
and burn **incense** it on the **sacrifice** altar;
and the blood thereof shall be wrung out
at the **side wall** of the **sacrifice** altar:
16 And he shall **pluck turn** away his **crop craw**
with his **feathers plumage**,
and cast it beside the **sacrifice** altar
on the **east part eastward**, by the place of the **fat** ashes:
17 And he shall cleave it with the wings thereof,
but shall not **divide separate** it *asunder*;
and the priest shall **burn incense** it
upon the **sacrifice** altar,
upon the **wood timber** that is upon the fire:
it is a **burnt sacrifice holocaust**,
an offering made by fire a **firing**,
of a **sweet savour scent of rest**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.

FLOUR QORBANS

2 And when **any a soul**
will offer shall **obliterate** a **meat offering qorban**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
his offering **qorban** shall be of **fine** flour;
and he shall pour oil upon it,
and **put give** frankincense thereon:
2 And he shall bring it
to **Aaron's Aharon's** sons the priests:
and he shall **take handle** thereof
his handful of the flour thereof,
and of the oil thereof, with all the frankincense thereof;
and the priest shall **burn incense** the memorial of it
upon the **sacrifice** altar,
to be an offering made by fire a **firing**,
of a **sweet savour scent of rest**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**:
3 And the **remnant that which remaineth**
of the **meat** offering
shall be **Aaron's Aharon's** and his sons':
it is a **thing most holy holy of holies**
of the offerings of the **LORD** made by fire
firings unto Yah Veh.
4 And if thou **bring an oblation obliterate** a **qorban**
of a **meat an** offering baken in the oven,
it shall be **unleavened matsah** cakes
of **fine** flour mingled with oil,
or **unleavened matsah** wafers anointed with oil.
5 And if thy **oblation qorban** be a **meat an** offering
baken in a pan on a griddle,
it shall be of **fine matsah** flour **unleavened**,
mingled with oil.
6 Thou shalt part it in **pieces morsels**,
and pour oil thereon:
it is a **meat an** offering.
7 And if thy **oblation qorban** be a **meat an** offering
baken in the fryingpan on a cauldron,
it shall be **made worked** of **fine** flour with oil.
8 And thou shalt bring the **meat** offering
that is **made worked** of these **things**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**:
and when it is **presented obliterated** unto the priest,
he shall bring it unto the **sacrifice** altar.
9 And the priest shall **take lift** from the **meat** offering
a memorial thereof,
and shall **burn incense** it upon the **sacrifice** altar:
it is an offering made by fire a **firing**,
of a **sweet savour scent of rest**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
10 And that which is **left remaineth** of the **meat** offering
shall be **Aaron's Aharon's** and his sons':
it is a **thing most holy holy of holies**
of the offerings of the **LORD** made by fire
firings unto Yah Veh.
11 No **meat** offering,
which ye shall **bring obliterate** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
shall be **made worked** with **leaven fermentation**:
for ye shall **burn incense** no **leaven yeast**, nor any honey,
in any offering of the **LORD** made by fire
firing unto Yah Veh.

LEVITICUS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and wrings off the head
and incenses it on the sacrifice altar;
and wrings out the blood
at the wall of the sacrifice altar:
16 and he turns away the craw with the plumage
and casts it beside the sacrifice altar eastward
by the place of the fat ashes:
17 and he cleaves it with the wings
but separates it not:
and the priest incenses it on the sacrifice altar,
on the timber on the fire:
— a holocaust
— a firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh.

FLOUR QORBANS

2 And when a soul oblates a qorban to Yah Veh,
his qorban is of flour;
and he pours oil thereon
and gives frankincense thereon:
2 and he brings it to the sons of Aharon, the priests:
and he handles his handful of the flour and of the oil
with all the frankincense;
and the priest incenses the memorial thereof
on the sacrifice altar
— a firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh:
and what remains of the offering
is for Aharon and his sons:
— a holy of holies of the firings to Yah Veh.
4 And when you oblate a qorban of an offering
baked in the oven,
work it of matsah cakes of flour mingled with oil
or matsah wafers anointed with oil.
5 And if your qorban *is* an offering on a griddle,
work it of matsah flour mingled with oil:
6 part it in morsels and pour oil thereon:
— an offering.
7 And if your qorban *is* an offering on a cauldron,
work it of flour with oil:
8 and bring the offering worked of these to Yah Veh:
and when it *is* obliterated to the priest,
he brings it to the sacrifice altar:
9 and the priest lifts a memorial from the offering
and incenses it on the sacrifice altar
— a firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh:
10 and what remains of the offering
is for Aharon and his sons
— a holy of holies of the firings to Yah Veh.
11 Work no offering that you oblate to Yah Veh
with fermentation:
for you incense neither yeast nor any honey
in any firing to Yah Veh.

LEVITICUS 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE FIRSTS QORBANS

- 12 As for the *oblation qorban* of the *firstfruits firsts*,
ye shall *oblater* them unto the *LORD Yah Veh*:
but they shall not be *burnt holocausted*
on the *sacrifice* altar for a *sweet savour scent of rest*.
- 13 And every *oblation qorban* of thy *meat* offering
shalt thou *season salt* with salt;
neither shalt thou *suffer shabbathize* the salt
of the covenant of thy *God Elohim*
to be lacking from thy *meat* offering:
with all thine *offerings qorbans* thou shalt *oblater salt*.
- 14 And if thou *offer a meat oblate an* offering
of thy firstfruits unto the *LORD Yah Veh*,
thou shalt *offer oblate* for the *meat* offering of thy firstfruits
green ears of corn unripened dried by the fire,
even corn beaten husks out of *full ears the orchard*.
- 15 And thou shalt *put give* oil upon it,
and *lay set* frankincense thereon:
it is a *meat an* offering.
- 16 And the priest shall *burn incense* the memorial of it,
part of the beaten corn husks thereof,
and *part of the oil* thereof,
with all the frankincense thereof:
it is an *offering made by fire a firing*
unto the *LORD Yah Veh*.

SHELAMIM QORBANS

- 3 And if his *oblation qorban*
be a sacrifice of *peace offering shelamim*,
if he *offer oblate* it of the *herd oxen*;
whether it be a male or female,
he shall *offer oblate* it *without blemish integrious*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
- 2 And he shall *lay prop* his hand
upon the head of his *offering qorban*,
and *kill slaughter* it at the *door opening*
of the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation:
and *Aaron's Aharon's* sons the priests
shall sprinkle the blood
upon the *sacrifice* altar round about.
- 3 And he shall *offer oblate*
of the sacrifice of the *peace offering shelamim*
an offering made by fire a firing
unto the *LORD Yah Veh*;
the fat that covereth the inwards,
and all the fat that is upon the inwards,
- 4 And the two *kidneys reins*,
and the fat that is on them, which is by the flanks,
and the caul above the liver, with the *kidneys reins*,
it shall he *take away twist off*.
- 5 And *Aaron's Aharon's* sons
shall *burn incense* it on the *sacrifice* altar
upon the *burnt sacrifice holocaust*,
which is upon the *wood timber* that is on the fire:
it is an *offering made by fire a firing*,
of a *sweet savour scent of rest*
unto the *LORD Yah Veh*.
- 6 And if his *offering qorban*
for a sacrifice of *peace offering shelamim*
unto the *LORD Yah Veh* be of the flock; male or female,
he shall *offer oblate* it *without blemish integrious*.
- 7 If he *offer oblate* a lamb for his *offering qorban*,
then shall he *offer oblate* it
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
- 8 And he shall *lay prop* his hand
upon the head of his *offering qorban*,
and *kill slaughter* it *before at the face of*
the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation:
and *Aaron's Aharon's* sons
shall sprinkle the blood thereof
round about upon the *sacrifice* altar.
- 9 And he shall *offer oblate*
of the sacrifice of the *peace offering shelamim*
an offering made by fire a firing
unto the *LORD Yah Veh*;
the fat thereof, and the *whole integrious* rump,
it shall he *take twist off*
hard by along side the backbone spine
and the fat that covereth the inwards,
and all the fat that is upon the inwards,

LEVITICUS 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE FIRSTS QORBANS

- 12 As for the qorban of the firsts,
oblater them to Yah Veh:
but holocaust them not on the sacrifice altar
for a scent of rest.
- 13 And salt every qorban of your offering with salt;
shabbathize not the salt
of the covenant of your Elohim
from your offering:
oblater salt with all your qorbans.
- 14 And if you oblater an offering of your firsts
to Yah Veh,
oblater for the offering of your firsts
unripened dried by the fire
— husks from the orchard:
and give oil thereon
and set frankincense thereon:
— an offering.
- 16 And the priest incenses the memorial thereof,
of the husks and of the oil with all the frankincense
— a firing to Yah Veh.

SHELAMIM QORBANS

- 3 And if his qorban *is* a sacrifice of shelamim,
if he oblates it from the oxen
— whether male or female,
he oblates it integrious at the face of Yah Veh.
- 2 And he props his hand on the head of his qorban
and slaughters it
at the opening of the tent of the congregation:
and the sons of Aharon the priests
sprinkle the blood on the sacrifice altar all around:
and he oblates of the sacrifice of the shelamim
— a firing to Yah Veh:
and the fat covering the inwards
and all the fat on the inwards
- 4 and the two reins and the fat by the flanks
and the caul above the liver with the reins
he twists off:
- 5 and the sons of Aharon incense it
on the sacrifice altar on the holocaust,
on the timber on the fire:
— a firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh.
- 6 And if his qorban
for a sacrifice of shelamim to Yah Veh
is from the flock — male or female,
he oblates it integrious.
- 7 if he oblates a lamb for his qorban,
then he oblates it at the face of Yah Veh.
- 8 And he props his hand on the head of his qorban
and slaughters it
at the face of the tent of the congregation:
and the sons of Aharon sprinkle the blood thereof
all around on the sacrifice altar:
and he oblates of the sacrifice of the shelamim
— a firing to Yah Veh:
the fat and the integrious rump along side the spine
he twists off:
and the fat covering the inwards
and all the fat on the inwards:

LEVITICUS 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 And the two *kidneys reins*,
and the fat that is upon them, which is by the flanks,
and the caul above the liver, with the *kidneys reins*,
it shall he *take away twist off*.
11 And the priest shall *burn incense* it
upon the **sacrifice** altar:
it is the *food bread* of the *offering made by fire firing*
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
12 And if his *offering qorban* be a goat,
then he shall *offer oblate* it
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
13 And he shall *lay prop* his hand upon the head of it,
and *kill slaughter* it *before at the face of*
the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation:
and the sons of *Aaron Aharon*
shall sprinkle the blood thereof
upon the **sacrifice** altar round about.
14 And he shall *offer oblate* thereof his *offering qorban*,
even an offering made by fire a firing
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
the fat that covereth the inwards,
and all the fat that is upon the inwards,
15 And the two *kidneys reins*,
and the fat that is upon them, which is by the flanks,
and the caul above the liver, with the *kidneys reins*,
it shall he *take away twist off*.
16 And the priest shall *burn incense* them
upon the **sacrifice** altar:
it is the *food bread* of the *offering made by fire firing*
for a *sweet savour scent of rest*:
all the fat is the **LORD'S Yah Veh's**.
17 It shall be a *perpetual an eternal* statute
for your generations
throughout all your *dwellings settlements*,
that ye eat neither fat nor blood.

PRIESTAL INADVERTENT ERRING QORBANS

4 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses Mosheh*, saying,
2 *Speak Word* unto the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
saying,
If a soul shall sin through *ignorance inadvertent error*
against any of the *commandments misvoth*
of the **LORD Yah Veh**
concerning things which ought not to be *done worked*,
and shall *do against any work one* of them:
3 If the priest that is anointed do sin
according to the *sin guilt* of the people;
then let him *bring oblate* for his sin,
which he hath sinned,
a *young bullock son of the oxen*
without blemish integrious
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** for a *his sin offering*.
4 And he shall bring the bullock unto the *door opening*
of the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh;
and shall *lay prop* his hand upon the bullock's head,
and *kill slaughter* the bullock
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
5 And the priest that is anointed
shall take of the bullock's blood,
and bring it to the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation:
6 And the priest shall dip his finger in the blood,
and sprinkle of the blood seven times
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
before at the face of the vail of the **sanctuary holies**.
7 And the priest shall *put give* some of the blood
upon the horns of the **sacrifice** altar
of *sweet incense of aromatics*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
which is in the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation;
and shall pour all the blood of the bullock
at the *bottom foundation*
of the **sacrifice** altar of the *burnt offering holocaust*,
which is at the *door opening*
of the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation.
8 And he shall *take off lift* from it
all the fat of the bullock for the *sin offering*;
the fat that covereth the inwards,
and all the fat that is upon the inwards,

LEVITICUS 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

10 and the two reins and the fat by the flanks
and the caul above the liver with the reins
he twists off:
11 and the priest incenses it on the sacrifice altar:
— the bread of the firing to Yah Veh.
12 And if his qorban is a goat,
he oblates it at the face of Yah Veh:
13 and he props his hand on the head
and slaughters it
at the face of the tent of the congregation:
and the sons of Aharon sprinkle the blood
on the sacrifice altar all around:
14 and he oblates his qorban
— a firing to Yah Veh:
the fat covering the inwards
and all the fat on the inwards
15 and the two reins and the fat by the flanks
and the caul above the liver with the reins,
he twists off:
16 and the priest incenses them on the sacrifice altar:
— the bread of the firing for a scent of rest:
all the fat is to Yah Veh
17 — an eternal statute for your generations
throughout all your settlements,
that you eat neither fat nor blood.

PRIESTAL INADVERTENT ERRING QORBANS

4 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Word to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
When a soul sins through inadvertent error
against any of the misvoth of Yah Veh
which ought not to be worked
— and works one of them:
3 if the priest who is anointed
sins according to the guilt of the people;
then he oblates for the sin he sinned,
a bullock son of the oxen integrious to Yah Veh for his sin.
4 And he brings the bullock
to the opening of the tent of the congregation
at the face of Yah Veh;
and props his hand on the head of the bullock
and slaughters the bullock at the face of Yah Veh.
5 And the priest who is anointed
takes of the blood of the bullock
and brings it to the tent of the congregation:
6 and the priest dips his finger in the blood
and sprinkles of the blood seven times
at the face of Yah Veh
— at the face of the veil of the holies:
7 and the priest gives of the blood
on the horns of the sacrifice altar
of incense of aromatics
at the face of Yah Veh in the tent of the congregation;
and pours all the blood of the bullock
at the foundation of the sacrifice altar of the holocaust
at the opening of the tent of the congregation.
8 And he lifts of it
all the fat of the bullock for the sin
— the fat covering the inwards
and all the fat on the inwards

LEVITICUS 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 9 And the two *kidneys reins*,
and the fat that is upon them, which is by the flanks,
and the caul above the liver, with the *kidneys reins*,
it shall he *take away twist off*,
- 10 As it was *taken off lifted* from the *bullock ox*
of the sacrifice of *peace offerings shelamim*:
and the priest shall *burn incense* them
upon the *sacrifice* altar of the *burnt offering holocaust*.
- 11 And the skin of the bullock, and all his flesh,
with his head, and with his legs,
and his inwards, and his dung,
- 12 Even the whole bullock
shall he carry forth without the camp
unto a *clean pure* place,
where the *fat* ashes are poured out,
and burn him on the *wood timber* with fire:
where the *fat* ashes are poured out shall he be burnt.
- 13 **CONGREGATIONAL INADVERTENT ERRING QORBANS**
And if the whole *congregation witness* of *Israel Yisra El*
sin through ignorance err inadvertently,
and the *thing word* be *hid concealed*
from the eyes of the *assembly congregation*,
and they have
done somewhat against any worked unto one
of the *commandments misvoth* of the *LORD Yah Veh*
concerning things which should not be *done worked*,
and *are guilty have guilted*;
- 14 When the sin, which they have sinned against it,
is known,
then the congregation shall *offer oblate*
a *young bullock son of the oxen* for the sin,
and bring him *before at the face of*
the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation.
- 15 And the elders of the *congregation witness*
shall *lay prop* their hands upon the head of the bullock
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
and the bullock shall be *killed slaughtered*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
- 16 And the priest that is anointed
shall bring of the bullock's blood
to the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation:
- 17 And the priest shall dip his finger in *some of the blood*,
and sprinkle it seven times
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
even before at the face of the veil.
- 18 And he shall *put give some* of the blood
upon the horns of the *sacrifice* altar
which is *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh*,
that is in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation,
and shall pour out all the blood
at the *bottom foundation* of the *sacrifice* altar
of the *burnt offering holocaust*,
which is at the *door opening*
of the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation.
- 19 And he shall *take lift* all his fat from him,
and *burn incense* it upon the *sacrifice* altar.
- 20 And he shall *do with work* the bullock
as he *did with worked* the bullock
for a *sin offering the sin*,
so shall he *do work* with this:
and the priest
shall *make an atonement kapar/atone* for them,
and it shall be forgiven them.
- 21 And he shall carry forth the bullock without the camp,
and burn him as he burned the first bullock:
it is a *sin offering for the sin of the congregation*.
- 22 **HIERARCHAL INADVERTENT ERRING QORBANS**
When a *ruler hierarch* hath sinned,
and *done somewhat through ignorance*
hath worked an inadvertent error
against any in one of the *commandments misvoth*
of the *LORD Yah Veh* his *God Elohim*
concerning things which should not be *done worked*,
and *is guilty hath guilted*;
- 23 Or if his sin, wherein he hath sinned,
come to his knowledge hath been made known to him;
he shall bring his *offering qorban*, a *kid buck* of the goats,
a male *without blemish integrious*:
- 24 And he shall *lay prop* his hand

LEVITICUS 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 9 and the two reins and the fat thereon by the flanks
and the caul above the liver with the reins
he twists off:
- 10 as they lift it off the ox of the sacrifice of shelamim:
and the priest incenses them
on the sacrifice altar of the holocaust:
- 11 and the skin of the bullock and all the flesh
with the head and with the legs
and the inwards and the dung
- 12 — he carries the whole bullock outside the camp
to a pure place where they pour the fat ashes;
and burns him on the timber with fire:
— burns him where they pour the fat ashes.
- 13 **CONGREGATIONAL INADVERTENT ERRING QORBANS**
And if the whole witness of Yisra El
err inadvertently;
and the word is concealed
from the eyes of the congregation;
and they work one of the misvoth of Yah Veh
not to be worked — and guilt;
14 when the sin they sinned against becomes known;
then the congregation oblates
a bullock son of the oxen for the sin;
and brings him
at the face of the tent of the congregation.
- 15 And the elders of the witness
prop their hands on the head of the bullock
at the face of Yah Veh:
and slaughter the bullock at the face of Yah Veh:
16 and the priest who is anointed
brings of the blood of the bullock
to the tent of the congregation:
17 and the priest dips his finger in the blood
and sprinkles it seven times at the face of Yah Veh
— at the face of the veil:
18 and he gives of the blood
on the horns of the sacrifice altar
at the face of Yah Veh
in the tent of the congregation;
and pours out all the blood
at the foundation of the sacrifice altar of the holocaust
at the opening of the tent of the congregation:
19 and he lifts all the fat thereof
and incenses it on the sacrifice altar:
20 and he works the bullock:
as he worked the bullock for the sin,
thus he works this:
and the priest kapars/atones for them
and they are forgiven:
21 and he carries the bullock outside the camp
and burns him as he burned the first bullock:
— the sin of the congregation.
- 22 **HIERARCHAL INADVERTENT ERRING QORBANS**
When a hierarch sins
and works an inadvertent error
in one of the misvoth of Yah Veh his Elohim
— not to be worked, and guilts;
23 or if his sin, wherein he sinned,
becomes known to him;
he brings his qorban, a buck of the goats,
an integrious male:
24 and he props his hand

LEVITICUS 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

upon the head of the goat **buck**,
and *kill slaughter* it in the place
where they *kill slaughter* the *burnt offering holocaust*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
it is a *sin offering for the sin*.
25 And the priest shall take of the blood
of the sin offering for the sin with his finger,
and *put giveth* it upon the horns
of the **sacrifice** altar of *burnt offering holocaust*,
and shall pour out his blood
at the *bottom foundation*
of the **sacrifice** altar of *burnt offering holocaust*.
26 And he shall *burn incense* all his fat upon the altar,
as the fat of the sacrifice of *peace offerings shelamim*:
and the priest
shall *make an atonement kapar/atone* for him
as *concerning for* his sin, and it shall be forgiven him.
SOULICAL INADVERTENT ERRING QORBANS
27 And if *any one a soul*
of the *common people of the land*
sin through ignorance an inadvertent error,
while he doeth somewhat against any
and worketh unto one
of the *commandments misvoth* of the **LORD Yah Veh**
concerning things which ought not to be *done worked,*
and *be guilty hath* **guilted**;
28 Or if his sin, which he hath sinned,
come to his knowledge hath been made known to him:
then he shall bring his *offering qorban*,
a *kid doe* of the goats,
a female *without blemish integrious*,
for his sin which he hath sinned.
29 And he shall *lay prop* his hand
upon the head of the *sin offering that for the sin*,
and *slay the sin offering slaughter that for the sin*
in the place of the *burnt offering holocaust*.
30 And the priest shall take of the blood thereof
with his finger,
and *put give* it upon the horns of the **sacrifice** altar
of *burnt offering holocaust*,
and shall pour out all the blood thereof
at the *bottom foundation* of the **sacrifice** altar.
31 And he shall *take away twist off* all the fat thereof,
as the fat is taken away from off the sacrifice
of *peace offerings shelamim*;
and the priest shall *burn incense* it
upon the **sacrifice** altar
for a *sweet savour scent of rest* unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and the priest
shall *make an atonement kapar/atone* for him,
and it shall be forgiven him.
32 And if he bring a lamb for a *sin offering the sin*,
he shall bring a female *without blemish integrious*.
33 And he shall *lay prop* his hand
upon the head of the *sin offering that for the sin*,
and *slay it for a sin offering slaughter that for the sin*
in the place
where they *kill slaughter* the *burnt offering holocaust*.
34 And the priest shall take of the blood
of the sin offering that for the sin with his finger,
and *put give* it upon the horns
of the **sacrifice** altar of *burnt offering holocaust*,
and shall pour out all the blood thereof
at the *bottom foundation* of the altar:
35 And he shall *take away twist off* all the fat thereof,
as the fat of the lamb is *taken away twisted off*
from the sacrifice of the *peace offerings shelamim*;
and the priest shall *burn incense* them
upon the **sacrifice** altar,
according to the *offerings made by fire firings*
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**:
and the priest
shall *make an atonement kapar/atone* for his sin
that he hath *committed sinned*,
and it shall be forgiven him.

5

And if a soul sin,
and hear the voice of *swearing oathing*, and is a witness,
whether if he hath seen or known of it;
if he do not *utter tell* it,

LEVITICUS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

on the head of the buck
and slaughters it in the place
they slaughter the holocaust at the face of Yah Veh:
— it is for the sin:
25 and the priest takes of the blood for the sin
with his finger
and gives it
on the horns of the sacrifice altar of holocaust
and pours the blood
at the foundation of the sacrifice altar of holocaust:
26 and he incenses all the fat on the altar,
as the fat of the sacrifice of shelamim:
and the priest kapars/atones for him for his sin
and he becomes forgiven.
SOULICAL INADVERTENT ERRING QORBANS
27 And if a soul of the people of the land
sins an inadvertent error
and works one of the misvoth of Yah Veh
— not to be worked and guilts:
28 or if the sin he sinned becomes known to him,
then he brings his qorban,
a doe of the goats, an integrious female,
for the sin he sinned:
29 and he props his hand on the head
of that for the sin;
and slaughters that for the sin
in the place of the holocaust:
30 and the priest takes of the blood with his finger
and gives it
on the horns of the sacrifice altar of holocaust
and pours out all the blood
at the foundation of the sacrifice altar:
31 and he twists off all the fat,
as they twisted off the fat
from the sacrifice of shelamim;
and the priest incenses it on the sacrifice altar
— a scent of rest to Yah Veh:
and the priest kapars/atones for him
and he becomes forgiven.
32 And if he brings a lamb for the sin,
he brings an integrious female:
33 and he props his hand
on the head of that for the sin;
and slaughters that for the sin
in the place they slaughter the holocaust:
34 and the priest takes of the blood
of that for the sin with his finger
and gives it
on the horns of the sacrifice altar of holocaust
and pours out all the blood
at the foundation of the altar:
35 and he twists off all the fat,
as they twisted off the fat of the lamb
of the sacrifice of the shelamim:
and the priest incenses them on the sacrifice altar
according to the firings to Yah Veh:
and the priest kapars/atones for the sin he sinned
and he becomes forgiven.

5

And when *another* soul sins
— and he hears or witnesses the voice of oathing
— if he sees or knows thereof — and if he tells not

LEVITICUS 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- then he shall bear his *iniquity* **perversity**.
- 2 Or if a soul touch any *unclean thing* **word of foulness**,
whether it be a carcass
of an *unclean beast* **a live being of foulness**,
or a carcass of *unclean cattle* **animals of foulness**,
or the carcass of *unclean creeping things* **teemers of foulness**,
and if it be *hidden* **concealed** from him;
he also shall be *unclean* **fouled**, and *guilty* **have guilted**.
- 3 Or if he touch *the uncleanness of man* **human foulness**,
whatsoever *uncleanness* **foulness** it be
that a *man* shall be *defiled* **withal fouled thereby**,
and it be *hid* **concealed** from him;
when he knoweth of it,
then he shall be *guilty* **have guilted**.
- 4 Or if a soul *swear* **oath**,
pronouncing with his lips
to *do evil* **vilify**, or to *do good* **well—please**,
whatsoever it be
that a *man* **human** shall pronounce with an oath,
and it be *hid* **concealed** from him;
when he knoweth of it,
then he shall be *guilty* **have guilted** in one of these.
- 5 And it shall be,
when he shall be *guilty* **have guilted** in one of these *things*,
that he shall *confess* **wring hands**
that he hath sinned in that thing
for that wherein he sinned:
- 6 And he shall bring *his trespass offering* **for his guilt**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** for his sin which he hath sinned,
a female from the flock,
a *ewe* lamb or a *kid* **doe** of the goats,
for a *sin offering* **the sin**;
and the priest
shall make an *atonement* **kapar/atone** for him
concerning **for** his sin.
- 7 And if *he be not able* **his hand be not sufficient**
to bring *touch* a lamb,
then he shall bring for his *trespass* **guilt**,
which he hath *committed* **sinned**,
two turtledoves, or two *young pigeons* **sons of doves**,
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
one for a *sin offering* **the sin**,
and the other for a *burnt offering* **one for the holocaust**.
- 8 And he shall bring them unto the priest,
who shall *offer* **oblate** that
which is for the *sin offering* first,
and wring off his head *from* **in front of** his neck,
but shall not divide it *asunder*:
- 9 And he shall sprinkle of the blood
of the *sin offering* **that for the sin**
upon the *side* **wall** of the *sacrifice* altar;
and the *rest of the* **surviving** blood shall be wrung out
at the *bottom* **foundation** of the *sacrifice* altar:
it is a *sin offering* **for the sin**.
- 10 And he shall *offer* **work** the second
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
according to the *manner* **judgment**:
and the priest
shall make an *atonement* **kapar/atone** for him
for his sin which he hath sinned,
and it shall be forgiven him.
- 11 But if *he be not able* **his hand be not sufficient**
to bring *attain* two turtledoves,
or two *young pigeons* **sons of doves**,
then he that sinned shall bring for his *offering* **qorban**
the tenth *part* of an ephah of *fine* flour
for a *sin offering* **the sin**;
he shall put no oil upon it,
neither shall he *put* **give** any frankincense thereon:
for it is a *sin offering* **for the sin**.
- 12 Then shall he bring it to the priest,
and the priest shall *take* **handle** his handful of it,
even a memorial thereof,
and *burn* **incense** it on the *sacrifice* altar,
according to the *offerings made by fire* **firings**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
it is a *sin offering* **for the sin**.
- 13 And the priest
shall make an *atonement* **kapar/atone** for him

LEVITICUS 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- he bears his perversity.
- 2 Or if a soul touches any word of foulness,
or a carcass of a live being of foulness,
or a carcass of animals of foulness,
or a carcass of teemers of foulness
— and if it be concealed from him;
he also fouls and guilts.
- 3 Or if he touches human foulness,
whatever foulness it be that he be fouled thereby
and it is concealed from him
— when he knows thereof, he guilts.
- 4 Or if a soul oath,
pronouncing with his lips to vilify or to well—please
— whatever a human pronounces with an oath
and it is concealed from him
— when he knows thereof, he guilts in one of these.
- 5 And so be it, when he guilts in one of these,
he wrings his hands for that wherein he sinned:
and he brings to Yah Veh for his guilt
— it *is* for the sin he sinned
a female of the flock
— a ewe lamb or a doe of the goats for the sin:
and the priest kapars/atones for him for his sin.
- 7 And if his hand *is* not sufficient to touch a lamb,
then he brings for his guilt he sinned,
two turtledoves or two sons of doves to Yah Veh
— one for the sin; and one for the holocaust:
- 8 and he brings them to the priest
who first oblates that for the sin:
and wrings off the head in front of the neck
but divides it not:
- 9 and he sprinkles of the blood of that for the sin
on the wall of the sacrifice altar:
and he wrings out the surviving blood
at the foundation of the sacrifice altar:
— it *is* for the sin.
- 10 And he works the second for a holocaust,
according to the judgment:
and the priest kapars/atones for him
— it *is* for the sin he sinned
and he becomes forgiven.
- 11 And if his hand *is* not sufficient
to attain two turtledoves or two sons of doves,
then he who sins brings for his qorban
the tenth of an ephah of flour for the sin;
he neither puts oil thereon,
nor gives any frankincense thereon:
— it *is* for the sin.
- 12 And he brings it to the priest
and the priest handles his handful thereof
— a memorial thereof
and incenses it on the sacrifice altar
according to the firings to Yah Veh:
— it *is* for the sin.
- 13 And the priest kapars/atones for him

LEVITICUS 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

as touching his sin that he hath sinned in one of these,
and it shall be forgiven him:
and *the remnant* shall be the priest's,
as a *meat* **an offering**.

14 And *the LORD spake* **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
15 If a soul *commit* **treason** a *trespass* **treason**,
and sin *through ignorance* **an inadvertent error**,
in the *holy things* **holies** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
then he shall bring for his *trespass* **guilt**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
a ram *without blemish* **integrious** out of the flocks,
with thy *estimation* **appraisal** by shekels of silver,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**,
for a *trespass offering* **the guilt**.

16 And he shall *make amends* **shalam**
for the *harm that he hath done* **that which he sinned**
in the holy thing **against the holies**,
and shall add the fifth *part* thereto,
and give it unto the priest:
and the priest
shall *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for him
with the ram *of the trespass offering* **for the guilt**,
and it shall be forgiven him.

17 And if a soul sin,
and *commit any* **work one** of these *things*
which are *forbidden* **not** to be *done* **worked**
by the *commandments* **misvoth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
though he *wist* **knew** it not,
yet *is he guilty* **hath he guilted**,
and shall bear his *iniquity* **perversity**.

18 And he shall bring
a ram *without blemish* **integrious** out of the flock,
with thy *estimation* **appraisal**,
for a *trespass offering* **his guilt**, unto the priest:
and the priest
shall *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for him
concerning his *ignorance* **inadvertent error**
wherein he erred **inadvertently** and *wist* **knew** it not,
and it shall be forgiven him.

19 It is a *trespass offering* **for his guilt**:
in having guilted,
he hath *certainly trespassed* **guilted**
against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

6 And *the LORD spake* **Yah Veh**
worded unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
2 If a soul sin, and *commit* **treason** a *trespass* **treason**
against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *lie unto* **deceive** his *neighbour* **friend**
in that which
was delivered him to keep **he was to oversee**,
or in *fellowship* **placing the hand**,
or in a *thing taken away by violence* **by stripping**,
or hath *deceived* **extorted** his *neighbour* **friend**;
3 Or have found that which was lost,
and *lieth* **deceiveth** concerning it,
and *swaereth* **oatheth** falsely;
in any **one** of all these that a *man doeth* **human worketh**,
sinning therein:
4 Then it shall be,
because he hath sinned, and *is guilty* **hath guilted**,
that he shall restore
that which he took violently away
the stripping he stripped,
or the *thing which he hath deceitfully gotten*
extortion he extorted,
or that which
was delivered him to keep **he was overseeing**,
or the lost *thing* which he found,
5 Or all that about which he hath *sworn* **oathed** falsely;
he shall *even restore* **shalam** it *in* to the *principal* **top**,
and shall add the fifth *part* more thereto,
and give it unto him to whom it appertaineth,
in the day of his *trespass offering* **guilt**.

6 And he shall bring *his trespass offering* **for his guilt**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
a ram *without blemish* **integrious** out of the flock,
with thy *estimation* **appraisal**,
for a *trespass offering* **his guilt**, unto the priest:

LEVITICUS 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

concerning his sin he sinned in one of these
— and he becomes forgiven:
and it becomes to the priest — an offering.

14 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
15 When a soul treasons a treason
and sins an inadvertent error in the holies of Yah Veh;
he brings for his guilt to Yah Veh
an integrious ram of the flocks
with your appraisal by shekels of silver
after the shekel of the holies
for the guilt.

16 And he shalams for his sin against the holies;
and adds a fifth and gives it to the priest:
and the priest kapars/atones for him
with the ram for the guilt;
and he becomes forgiven.

17 And if a soul sins
and works one of these not to be worked
by the misvoth of Yah Veh;
though he knows not, yet he guilted
and bears his perversity.

18 And he brings an integrious ram of the flock
with your appraisal, for his guilt, to the priest:
and the priest kapars/atones for him
concerning his inadvertent error
wherein he erred inadvertently and knows it not
and he becomes forgiven.

19 — it is for his guilt:
in having guilted, he guilted against Yah Veh.

6 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 If a soul sin and treasons a treason against Yah Veh
and deceives his friend in what he *is* overseeing
or by placing the hand or by stripping
or extorting his friend;
3 or finds what *is* lost and deceives concerning it
and oaths falsely
— in one of all these that a human works,
sinning therein:
4 then so be it, when he sins and guilted,
that he restore the stripping he stripped
or the extortion he extorted
or what he was overseeing
or the lost he found
5 or all concerning which he oathed falsely
— he shalams it to the top
and adds the fifth thereto
and gives it to whom it pertains,
in the day of his guilt:
6 and for his guilt, he brings to Yah Veh,
a ram integrious from the flock, with your appraisal
for the guilt, to the priest:

LEVITICUS 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 And the priest shall
make an atonement **kapar/atone** for him
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh:**
and it shall be forgiven him
for any thing **one** of all that he hath *done* **worked**
in trespassing therein **wherein he hath guilty.**

TORAH OF THE HOLOCAUST

8 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh,** saying,
9 *Command Aaron* **Misvah Aharon** and his sons, saying,
This is the *law* **torah** of the *burnt offering* **holocaust:**
It is the *burnt offering* **holocaust,**
because of the burning upon the **sacrifice** altar
all night unto the morning,
and the fire of the **sacrifice** altar
shall be burning *in it* **thereon.**
10 And the priest shall *put on* **enrobe**
his linen *garment* **tailoring,**
and his linen breeches shall he *put* **enrobe** upon his flesh,
and *take up* **lift** the **fat** ashes
which the fire hath consumed
with the *burnt offering* **holocaust** on the **sacrifice** altar,
and he shall put them beside the **sacrifice** altar.
11 And he shall *put off* **strip** his *garments* **clothes,**
and *put on* **enrobe** other *garments* **clothes,**
and carry forth the **fat** ashes without the camp
unto a *clean* **pure** place.
12 And the fire upon the **sacrifice** altar
shall be burning in it;
it shall not be put out:
and the priest shall *burn wood* **kindle timber** on it
every morning **by morning,**
and *lay* **arrange** the *burnt offering in order* **holocaust** upon it;
and he shall *burn* **incense** thereon
the fat of the *peace offerings* **shelamim.**
13 The fire shall *ever* **continually** be burning
upon the **sacrifice** altar;
it shall never go out.

TORAH OF THE OFFERING

14 And this is the *law* **torah** of the *meat* offering:
the sons of *Aaron* **Aharon** shall *offer* **oblate** it
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
before the at the face of the sacrifice altar.
15 And he shall *take* **lift** of it his handful,
of the flour of the *meat* offering, and of the oil thereof,
and all the frankincense which is upon the *meat* offering,
and shall *burn* **incense** it upon the **sacrifice** altar
for a *sweet savour* **scent of rest,**
even the memorial of it, unto the **LORD Yah Veh.**
16 And the *remainder* **that which remaineth** thereof
shall *Aaron* **Aharon** and his sons eat:
with *unleavened bread* **matsah** shall it be eaten
in the *holy place* **holies;**
in the court of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation
they shall eat it.
17 It shall not be baked with *leaven* **fermentation.**
I have given it unto them for their *portion* **allotment**
of my *offerings made by fire* **firings;**
it is *most holy* **a holy of holies**
as is the *sin offering* **that for the sin,**
and as the *trespass offering* **that for the guilt.**
18 All the males
among the *children* **sons** of *Aaron* **Aharon** shall eat of it.
It shall be a **an eternal** statute *for ever* in your generations
concerning the
offerings of the LORD made by fire **firings unto Yah Veh**
every one that toucheth them shall be *holy* **hallowed.**

TORAH OF THE PRIESTAL QORBAN

19 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh,** saying,
20 This is the *offering* **qorban**
of *Aaron* **Aharon** and of his sons,
which they shall *offer* **oblate** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
in the day when he is anointed;
the tenth *part* of an ephah of *fine* flour
for a *meat* **continual** offering *perpetual,*
half of it in the morning,
and half thereof *at night* **in the evening.**
21 In a *pan* **On a griddle** it shall be *made* **worked** with oil;

LEVITICUS 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 and the priest *kapars/atones* for him
at the face of *Yah Veh:*
and he is forgiven
for one of all he worked wherein he guilty.

TORAH OF THE HOLOCAUST

8 And *Yah Veh* words to *Mosheh,* saying,
9 *Misvah* **Aharon** and his sons, saying,
This *is* the *torah* of the holocaust:
— the holocaust,
because of the burning on the sacrifice altar
all night to the morning
and the fire of the sacrifice altar burns thereon:
10 and the priest enrobes his linen tailoring
and enrobes his linen breeches on his flesh
and lifts the fat ashes the fire consumes
with the holocaust on the sacrifice altar;
and he puts them beside the sacrifice altar:
11 and he strips his clothes and enrobes other clothes
and carries the fat ashes outside the camp
to a pure place:
12 and the fire on the sacrifice altar burns thereon
— never put out:
and the priest kindles timber thereon
morning by morning
and arranges the holocaust thereon;
and he incenses the fat of the shelamim thereon
13 — the fire burning continually
on the sacrifice altar;
— never going out.

TORAH OF THE OFFERING

14 And this *is* the *torah* of the offering:
the sons of *Aharon* oblate at the face of *Yah Veh,*
at the face of the sacrifice altar:
15 and he lifts thereof
his handful of the flour of the offering and of the oil
and all the frankincense on the offering;
and incenses it on the sacrifice altar for a scent of rest
— the memorial thereof to *Yah Veh:*
and what remains thereof
Aharon and his sons eat
— eat with matsah in the holies
— eat in the court of the tent of the congregation
— bake it not with fermentation:
17 I give it to them for their allotment of my firings
— a holy of holies
as that for the sin and as that for the guilt.
18 All the males among the sons of *Aharon* eat thereof
— an eternal statute in your generations
concerning the firings to *Yah Veh:*
every one touching them becomes hallowed.

TORAH OF THE PRIESTAL QORBAN

19 And *Yah Veh* words to *Mosheh,* saying,
20 This *is* the qorban of *Aharon* and of his sons
which they oblate to *Yah Veh*
in the day he *is* anointed:
the tenth of an ephah of flour for a continual offering
— half in the morning and half in the evening;
21 work it on a griddle with oil

LEVITICUS 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and when it is *baken* **deep fried**, thou shalt bring it in:
and the *baken pieces* **cakes morsels** of the *meat* offering
shalt thou offer **oblate** for a *sweet savour* **scent of rest**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
22 And the priest of his sons that is anointed in his stead
shall offer **work** it:
it is a **an eternal** statute for ever unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
it shall be *wholly burnt* **totally incensed**.
23 For every *meat* offering for the priest
shall be *wholly* **totally** burnt:
it shall not be eaten.

TORAH FOR THE SIN

24 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
25 Speak **Word** unto *Aaron* **Aharon** and to his sons,
saying, This is the *law of the sin offering* **torah for the sin**:
In the place
where the *burnt offering* **holocaust** is *killed* **slaughtered**
shall the *sin offering* **that for the sin** be *killed* **slaughtered**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
it is *most holy* **a holy of holies**.
26 The priest *that offereth it for sin of that for the sin*
shall eat it:
in the *holy place* **holies** shall it be eaten,
in the court of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation.
27 Whatsoever shall touch the flesh thereof
shall be *holy* **hallowed**:
and when there is sprinkled of the blood thereof
upon any *garment* **clothes**,
thou shalt *wash* **launder** that whereon it was sprinkled
in the *holy place* **holies**.
28 But the *earthen vessel* **pottery instrument**
wherein it is *sodden* **stewed** shall be broken:
and if it be *sodden* **stewed**
in a *brasen pot* **copper instrument**,
it shall be both scoured, and *rinsed* **overflowed** in water.
29 All the males among the priests shall eat thereof:
it is *most holy* **a holy of holies**.
30 And *no sin offering* **naught for the sin**,
whereof *any of the blood*
is brought into the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation
to *reconcile withal* **atone** in the *holy place* **holies**,
shall be eaten: it shall be burnt in the fire.

TORAH FOR THE GUILT

7 Likewise this is the *law* **torah**
of the trespass offering for the guilt:
it is *most holy* **a holy of holies**.
2 In the place where they *kill* **slaughter**
the *burnt offering* **holocaust**
shall they *kill the trespass offering*
slaughter for the guilt:
and the blood thereof
shall he sprinkle round about upon the **sacrifice** altar.
3 And he shall offer **oblate** of it all the fat thereof;
the rump, and the fat that covereth the inwards,
4 And the two *kidneys* **reins**,
and the fat that is on them, which is by the flanks,
and the caul that is above the liver,
with the *kidneys* **reins**,
it shall he *take away* **twist off**:
5 And the priest shall *burn* **incense** them
upon the **sacrifice** altar
for an *offering made by fire* **a firing**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**:
it is a *trespass offering* **for the guilt**.
6 Every male among the priests shall eat thereof:
it shall be eaten in the *holy place* **holies**:
it is *most holy* **a holy of holies**.
7 As the *sin offering* is **that for the sin**,
so is the *trespass offering* **that for the guilt**:
there is one *law* **torah** for them:
the priest
that *maketh atonement* **shall kapar/atone** therewith
shall have it.
8 And the priest that *offereth* **oblateth**
any man's *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
even the priest shall have to himself
the skin of the *burnt offering* **holocaust**
which he hath *offered* **oblated**.

LEVITICUS 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— deep fried;
bring in and oblate the cakes morsels of the offering
— a scent of rest to Yah Veh.
22 And the priest of his sons anointed in his stead
works it
— an eternal statute to Yah Veh;
it is totally incensed:
23 and every offering for the priest totally burnt
— not eaten.

TORAH FOR THE SIN

24 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
25 Word to Aharon and to his sons, saying,
This *is* the torah for the sin:
in the place you slaughter the holocaust
slaughter that for the sin at the face of Yah Veh:
— a holy of holies.
26 The priest of that for the sin eats
— eats it in the holies
in the court of the tent of the congregation:
27 all that touches the flesh thereof
becomes hallowed:
and when any of the blood thereof
is sprinkled on any clothes,
launder what was sprinkled on in the holies:
28 and the pottery instrument
whereupon it stewed is broken:
and if it is stewed in a copper instrument
it is both scoured and overflowed in water:
29 all the males among the priests eat thereof:
— a holy of holies.
30 And eat naught of that for the sin,
where the blood thereof
is brought into the tent of the congregation
to atone in the holies
— burn it in the fire.

TORAH FOR THE GUILT

7 And this *is* the torah for the guilt
— a holy of holies.
2 In the place where they slaughter the holocaust
slaughter that for the guilt:
and sprinkle the blood thereof
all around on the sacrifice altar:
3 and he oblates all the fat thereof
— the rump and the fat covering the inwards:
4 and the two reins and the fat on them by the flanks
and the caul above the liver with the reins
he twists off:
5 and the priest incenses them on the sacrifice altar
— a firing to Yah Veh — for the guilt:
6 every male among the priests eats thereof
— eats in the holies — a holy of holies:
7 as that for the sin, thus that for the guilt
— one torah for them:
8 it is for the priest who kapars/atones therewith.
And the priest
who oblates the holocaust of any man,
the priest has the skin of the holocaust he oblated
for himself:

LEVITICUS 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 And all the *meat* offering that is baked in the oven,
and all that is *dressed* **worked** in the *frying pan* **cauldron**,
and in the *pan* **on the griddle**,
shall be the priest's that *offereth* **oblateth** it.
10 And every *meat* offering,
mingled with oil, and *dry* **parched**,
shall all the sons of Aaron **Aharon** have,
one as much as another **as man, as brother**.

TORAH OF THE SHELAMIM

11 And this is the *law* **torah**
of the sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
which he shall *offer* **oblate** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
12 If he *offer* **oblate** it
for a *thanksgiving* **an spread hands praise**,
then he shall *offer* **oblate**
with the sacrifice of *thanksgiving* **spread hands praise**
unleavened **matsah** cakes *mingled* **mixed** with oil,
and *unleavened* **matsah** wafers anointed with oil,
and cakes *mingled* **mixed** with oil, of *fine* flour, **deep** fried.
13 Besides the cakes,
he shall *offer* **oblate** for his *offering* **qorban**
leavened **fermentation** bread
with the sacrifice of *thanksgiving* **spread hands praise**
of his *peace offerings* **shelamim**.
14 And of it he shall *offer* **oblate**
one out of the whole *oblation* **qorban**
for an *heave offering* **exaltment** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and it shall be the priest's that *sprinkleth* the blood
of the *peace offerings* **shelamim**.
15 And the flesh of the sacrifice
of his *peace offerings* **shelamim**
for *thanksgiving* **an spread hands praise**
shall be eaten the same day *that it is offered* **of qorban**;
he shall not leave any of it until the morning.
16 But if the sacrifice of his *offering* **qorban** be a vow,
or a voluntary *offering*,
it shall be eaten the same day
that he *offereth* **oblateth** his sacrifice:
and on the morrow
also *the remainder of it* **that which remaineth**
shall be eaten:
17 But *the remainder* **that which remaineth**
of the flesh of the sacrifice
on the third day shall be burnt with fire.
18 And if *any of the* flesh
of the sacrifice of his *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
in eating, be eaten *at all* on the third day,
it shall not be *accepted* **please**,
neither shall it be *imputed* **fabricated** unto him
that *offereth* **oblateth** it:
it shall be an *abomination* **a stench**,
and the soul that eateth of it
shall bear his *iniquity* **perversity**.
19 And the flesh that toucheth any *unclean thing* **foulness**
shall not be eaten; it shall be burnt with fire:
and as for the flesh,
all that be *clean* **pure** shall eat thereof.
20 But the soul that eateth of the flesh
of the sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
that pertain unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
having his *uncleanness* **foulness** upon him,
even that soul shall be cut off from his people.
21 Moreover the soul
that shall touch any *unclean thing* **foulness**,
as *the uncleanness of man* **human foulness**,
or any *unclean beast* **animal foulness**,
or any abominable *unclean thing* **foulness**,
and eat of the flesh
of the sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
which pertain unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
even that soul shall be cut off from his people.

FORBIDDEN FOODS

22 And the *LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh** worded
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
23 *Speak* **Word** unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
saying, Ye shall eat no *manner* of fat,
of ox, or of *sheep* **lambs**, or of goat.
24 And the fat of the *beast* **that dieth of itself** **carcase**,
and the fat of that which is torn *with* **beasts**,

LEVITICUS 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 and all the offering baked in the oven
and all that *is* worked in the cauldron
and on the griddle,
is for the priest who oblates it:
10 and every offering, mingled with oil and parched,
is for all the sons of Aharon — as man, as brother.

TORAH OF THE SHELAMIM

11 And this *is* the torah of the sacrifice of shelamim
which he oblates to Yah Veh:
12 If he oblates it for a spread hands praise,
then with the sacrifice of spread hands praise
he oblates matsah cakes mixed with oil
and matsah wafers anointed with oil
and cakes mixed with oil — of flour, deep fried:
13 besides the cakes,
he oblates for his qorban fermentation bread
with the sacrifice of spread hands praise
of his shelamim:
14 and he oblates thereof one from the whole qorban
for an exaltment to Yah Veh
and it becomes for the priest
who sprinkles the blood of the shelamim:
and he eats the flesh
of the sacrifice of his shelamim
for a spread hands praise
the same day of qorban;
he leaves not any thereof until the morning.
15 And if the sacrifice of his qorban
is a vow or a voluntary
he eats it the same day he oblates his sacrifice:
and on the morrow
he also eats what remains:
16 but what remains of the flesh of the sacrifice
on the third day is burnt with fire.
17 And if in eating,
he eats the flesh of the sacrifice of his shelamim
on the third day,
it neither pleases
nor fabricates to him who oblates it:
it becomes a stench:
and the soul who eats thereof bears his perversity.
19 And the flesh that touches any foulness, eat not;
burn it with fire:
and as for the flesh, all who are pure eat thereof.
20 But the soul who eats of the flesh
of the sacrifice of shelamim to Yah Veh,
having his foulness on him,
even that soul becomes cut off from his people.
21 Moreover the soul who touches any foulness,
as human foulness or animal foulness
or any abominable foulness,
and eats of the flesh
of the sacrifice of shelamim to Yah Veh,
even that soul becomes cut off from his people.

FORBIDDEN FOODS

22 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
23 Word to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
Eat no fat of ox or lambs or goat:
24 and the fat of the carcase and the fat of what *is* torn

LEVITICUS 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

may be used **worked** in any other use **work**:
but **in eating**, ye shall *in no wise* **not** eat of it.

25 For whosoever eateth the fat of the **beast animal**,
of which men offer an offering made by fire
oblated as a firing unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
even the soul that eateth it
shall be cut off from his people.

26 Moreover ye shall eat no *manner of* blood,
whether it be of **fowl flyer** or of **beast animal**,
in any of your *dwelling* **settlements**.

27 Whatsoever soul it be
that eateth *any manner of* **whole** blood,
even that soul shall be cut off from his people.

PRIESTAL PORTIONS

28 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto **Moses Mosheh**, saying,
29 **Speak Word** unto the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
saying, He that *offereth* **oblateth**
the sacrifice of his *peace offerings* **shelamim**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall bring his *oblation* **qorban** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
of the sacrifice of his *peace offerings* **shelamim**.

30 His own hands shall bring
the *offerings of the LORD made by fire*
firings unto Yah Veh,
the fat with the breast, it shall he bring,
that the breast may be waved for a *wave offering*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.

31 And the priest
shall **burn incense** the fat upon the **sacrifice** altar:
but the breast shall be *Aaron's* **Aharon's** and his sons'.

32 And the right *shoulder* **hindleg**
shall ye give unto the priest
for an *heave offering* **exaltment**
of the sacrifices of your *peace offerings* **shelamim**.

33 He among the sons of **Aaron Aharon**,
that *offereth* **oblateth** the blood
of the *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
and the fat,
shall have the right *shoulder* **hindleg** for his part.

34 For the wave breast
and the *heave shoulder* **hindleg of the exaltment**
have I taken of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
from off the sacrifices of their *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
and have given them
unto **Aaron Aharon** the priest and unto his sons
by a **an eternal** statute *for ever*
from among the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**.

35 This is the *portion* of the anointing of **Aaron Aharon**,
and of the anointing of his sons,
out of the *offerings of the LORD made by fire*
firings unto Yah Veh,
in the day when he *presented* **oblated** them
to *minister unto the LORD in the priest's office*
priest the priesthood unto Yah Veh;

36 Which the **LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed**
to be given them of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
in the day that he anointed them,
by a **an eternal** statute *for ever*
throughout their generations.

37 This is the **law torah** of the *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
of the *meat offering*,
and of the *sin offering* **that for the sin**,
and of the *trespass offering* **that for the guilt**,
and of the *consecrations* **fulfillments**,
and of the sacrifice of the *peace offerings* **shelamim**;

38 Which the **LORD Yah Veh**
commanded Moses misvahed Mosheh
in mount **Sinai Sinai**,
in the day that he **commanded misvahed**
the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
to **offer oblate** their *oblations* **qorbans**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
in the wilderness of **Sinai Sinai**.

PRIESTS ARE HALLOWED

8
2 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto **Moses Mosheh**, saying,
Take **Aaron Aharon** and his sons with him,
and the *garments* **clothes**, and the anointing oil,

LEVITICUS 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

work in any other work:
but in eating, eat not thereof.

25 For whoever eats the fat of the animal,
oblated as a firing to Yah Veh,
even the soul who eats
becomes cut off from his people.

26 And eat no blood in any of your settlements
— whether it be of flyer or of animal:
any soul who eats whole blood,
even that soul, becomes cut off from his people.

PRIESTAL PORTIONS

28 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
29 Word to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
He who oblates the sacrifice of his shelamim
to Yah Veh
brings his qorban to Yah Veh
of the sacrifice of his shelamim:
30 his own hands bring the firings to Yah Veh:
he brings the fat with the breast,
and waves the breast for a wave
at the face of Yah Veh:
31 and the priest incenses the fat on the sacrifice altar:
but the breast becomes for Aharon and his sons.
32 And give the right hindleg to the priest
for an exaltment of the sacrifices of your shelamim.
33 He, among the sons of Aharon,
who oblates the blood and the fat of the shelamim,
has the right hindleg for his part.
34 For I take the wave breast and the hindleg
of the exaltment of the sons of Yisra El
from off the sacrifices of their shelamim
and give them to Aharon the priest and to his sons
— an eternal statute from among the sons of Yisra El.

35 This is the anointing of Aharon
and the anointing of his sons
from the firings to Yah Veh;
in the day he oblates them
to priest the priesthood to Yah Veh;
36 which Yah Veh misvahed to give them
of the sons of Yisra El,
in the day he anoints them,
— an eternal statute throughout their generations.
37 This is the torah for the holocaust
for the offering
and that for the sin and that for the guilt
and for the fulfillments
and for the sacrifice of the shelamim
38 which Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh in mount Sinai,
in the day he misvahed the sons of Yisra El
to oblate their qorbans to Yah Veh,
in the wilderness of Sinai.

PRIESTS ARE HALLOWED

8
2 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
Take Aharon and his sons with him
and the clothes and the anointing oil

LEVITICUS 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and a bullock for the sin offering, and two rams,
and a basket of *unleavened bread matsah*;
3 And gather **congregate** thou
all the *congregation witness together*
unto the *door opening*
of the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation.
4 And *Moses did Mosheh worked*
as the *LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed* him;
and the *assembly witness*
was gathered together congregated unto the *door opening*
of the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation.
5 And *Moses Mosheh* said unto the *congregation witness*,
This is the *thing word*
which the *LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed*
to be *done worked*.
MOSHEH BAPTIZES THE PRIESTS
6 And *Moses Mosheh*
brought Aaron oblated Aharon and his sons,
and *washed baptized* them with water.
7 And he *put gave* upon him the coat,
and girded him with the girdle,
and *clothed enrobed* him with the *robe mantle*,
and *put gave* the ephod upon him,
and he girded him
with the *curious fabricated* girdle of the ephod,
and bound it unto him therewith.
8 And he put the breastplate upon him:
also he *put gave* in the breastplate
the Urim and the Thummim.
9 And he put the *mitre tiara* upon his head;
also upon the *mitre tiara*, even upon his forefront,
did he put the golden *plate blossom*,
the holy *crown separatism*;
as the *LORD Yah Veh*
commanded Moses misvahed Mosheh.
10 And *Moses Mosheh* took the anointing oil,
and anointed the tabernacle and all that was therein,
and *sanctified hallowed* them.
11 And he sprinkled thereof
upon the *sacrifice* altar seven times,
and anointed the *sacrifice* altar
and all his *vessels instruments*,
both the laver and his *foot base*, to *sanctify hallow* them.
12 And he poured of the anointing oil
upon *Aaron's Aharon's* head,
and anointed him, to *sanctify hallow* him.
13 And *Moses Mosheh*
brought Aaron's oblated Aharon's sons,
and *put enrobed* coats upon them,
and girded them with girdles,
and *put bonnets bound turbans* upon them;
as the *LORD Yah Veh*
commanded Moses misvahed Mosheh.
14 And he brought the bullock for the sin offering:
and *Aaron Aharon* and his sons *laid propped* their hands
upon the head of the bullock for the sin offering.
15 And he *slew slaughtered* it;
and *Moses Mosheh* took the blood,
and *put gave* it upon the horns of the *sacrifice* altar
round about with his finger,
and *purified for the sin on* the *sacrifice* altar,
and poured the blood
at the *bottom foundation* of the *sacrifice* altar,
and *sanctified hallowed* it,
to *make reconciliation atone* upon it.
16 And he took all the fat that was upon the inwards,
and the caul above the liver,
and the two *kidneys reins*, and their fat,
and *Moses burned Mosheh incensed* it
upon the *sacrifice* altar.
17 But the bullock,
and his *hide skin*, his flesh, and his dung,
he burnt with fire without the camp;
as the *LORD Yah Veh*
commanded Moses misvahed Mosheh.
18 And he *brought oblated* the ram
for the *burnt offering holocaust*:
and *Aaron Aharon* and his sons
laid propped their hands upon the head of the ram.

LEVITICUS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and a bullock for the sin and two rams
and a basket of matsah:
3 and congregate all the witness
to the opening of the tent of the congregation.
4 — and Mosheh works as Yah Veh misvahed him;
and congregates the witness
to the opening of the tent of the congregation.
5 And Mosheh says to the witness,
This is the word Yah Veh misvahed to work.
MOSHEH BAPTIZES THE PRIESTS
6 And Mosheh oblates Aharon and his sons
and baptizes them in water:
and he gives the coat on him
and girds him with the girdle
and enrobes him with the mantle
and gives the ephod on him
and he girds him
with the fabricated girdle of the ephod
and binds it to him.
8 And he puts the breastplate on him:
and in the breastplate
he gives the Urim and the Thummim.
9 And he puts the tiara on his head:
and on the tiara, on his forefront,
he puts the golden blossom, the holy separatism
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.
10 And Mosheh takes the anointing oil
and anoints the tabernacle and all therein
and hallows them:
and he sprinkles thereof
on the sacrifice altar seven times
and anoints the sacrifice altar and all its instruments,
both the laver and its base, to hallow them:
and he pours of the anointing oil
on the head of Aharon
and anoints him to hallow him.
13 And Mosheh oblates the sons of Aharon
and enrobes coats on them
and girds them with girdles
and binds turbans on them
— as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.
14 And he brings the bullock for the sin:
and Aharon and his sons prop their hands
on the head of the bullock for the sin;
and he slaughters it:
and Mosheh takes the blood with his finger
and gives it all around
on the horns of the sacrifice altar
and for the sin on the sacrifice altar:
and pours the blood
at the foundation of the sacrifice altar and hallows it
to atone thereon.
16 And he takes all the fat on the inwards
and the caul above the liver
and the two reins and their fat
and Mosheh incenses it on the sacrifice altar.
17 And the bullock,
his skin, his flesh and his dung,
he burns with fire outside the camp;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.
18 And he oblates the ram for the holocaust:
and Aharon and his sons
prop their hands on the head of the ram

LEVITICUS 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 19 And he **killed** slaughtered it;
and Moses **Mosheh** sprinkled the blood
upon the **sacrifice** altar round about.
- 20 And he
cut the ram into pieces **dismembered the ram's members**;
and Moses **burnt Mosheh** **incensed** the head,
and the *pieces* **members**, and the fat.
- 21 And he **washed baptised** the inwards and the legs
in water;
and Moses **burnt Mosheh** **incensed** the whole ram
upon the **sacrifice** altar:
it was a *burnt sacrifice* **holocaust**
for a *sweet savour* **scent of rest**,
and an *offering made by fire* **a firing**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
as the **LORD Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**.
- 22 And he **brought obliterated** the *other* **second** ram,
the ram of *consecration* **fulfillments**:
and Aaron **Aharon** and his sons
laid propped their hands upon the head of the ram.
- 23 And he **slew slaughtered** it;
and Moses **Mosheh** took of the blood of it,
and *put gave* it upon the tip of Aaron's **Aharon's** right ear,
and upon the *thumb* **great digit** of his right hand,
and upon the *great toe* **digit** of his right foot.
- 24 And he **brought** Aaron's **obliterated Aharon's** sons,
and Moses *put* **Mosheh** **gave** of the blood
upon the tip of their right ear,
and upon the *thumbs* **great digits** of their right hands,
and upon the *great toes* **digits** of their right feet:
and Moses **Mosheh** sprinkled the blood
upon the **sacrifice** altar round about.
- 25 And he took the fat, and the rump,
and all the fat that was upon the inwards,
and the caul above the liver,
and the two *kidneys* **reins**, and their fat,
and the right *shoulder* **hindleg**:
- 26 And out of the basket of *unleavened bread* **matsah**,
that was before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
he took one *unleavened* **matsah** cake,
and a **one** cake of oiled bread, and one wafer,
and put them on the fat,
and upon the right *shoulder* **hindleg**:
- 27 And he *put gave* all
upon Aaron's *hands* **Aharon's palms**,
and upon his sons' *hands* **palms**,
and waved them for a *wave offering*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
- 28 And Moses **Mosheh**
took them from off their *hands* **palms**,
and burnt them on the **sacrifice** altar
upon the *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
they were *consecrations* **fulfillments**
for a *sweet savour* **scent of rest**:
it is an *offering made by fire* **a firing**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
- 29 And Moses **Mosheh** took the breast,
and waved it for a *wave offering*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
for of the ram of *consecration* **fulfillments**
it was Moses' **Mosheh's** part;
as the **LORD Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**.
- 30 And Moses **Mosheh** took of the anointing oil,
and of the blood which was upon the **sacrifice** altar,
and sprinkled it upon Aaron **Aharon**,
and upon his *garments* **clothes**,
and upon his sons,
and upon his sons' *garments* **clothes** with him;
and sanctified Aaron **hallowed Aharon**,
and his *garments* **clothes**,
and his sons, and his sons' *garments* **clothes** with him.
- 31 And Moses **Mosheh**
said unto Aaron **Aharon** and to his sons,
Boil Stew the flesh at the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation:
and there eat it with the bread
that is in the basket of *consecrations* **fulfillments**,

LEVITICUS 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 19 and he slaughters it:
and Mosheh sprinkles the blood all around
on the sacrifice altar:
- 20 and dismembers the members of the ram:
and Mosheh incenses the head
and the members and the fat:
- 21 and he baptizes the inwards and the legs in water:
and Mosheh incenses the whole ram
on the sacrifice altar
— a holocaust for a scent of rest
— a firing to Yah Veh
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.
- 22 And he oblates the second ram
— the ram of fulfillments:
and Aharon and his sons
prop their hands on the head of the ram:
- 23 and he slaughters it:
and Mosheh takes of the blood
and gives it on the tip of the right ear of Aharon
and on the great digit of his right hand
and on the great digit of his right foot.
- 24 And he oblates the sons of Aharon
and Mosheh gives of the blood
on the tip of their right ear
and on the great digits of their right hands
and on the great digits of their right feet:
and Mosheh sprinkles the blood all around
on the sacrifice altar.
- 25 And he takes the fat and the rump
and all the fat on the inwards
and the caul above the liver
and the two reins and their fat
and the right hindleg:
- 26 and from the basket of matsah
at the face of Yah Veh,
he takes one matsah cake
and one cake of oiled bread and one wafer
and puts them on the fat and on the right hindleg:
- 27 and he gives all on the palms of Aharon
and on the palms of his sons
and waves them for a wave at the face of Yah Veh:
- 28 and Mosheh takes them from their palms
and burns them
on the sacrifice altar on the holocaust:
— fulfillments for a scent of rest
— a firing to Yah Veh.
- 29 And Mosheh takes the breast
and waves it for a wave at the face of Yah Veh:
for that part of the ram of fulfillments is for Mosheh
— as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.
- 30 And Mosheh takes of the anointing oil
and of the blood on the sacrifice altar
and sprinkles it on Aharon and on his clothes
and on his sons
and on the clothes of his sons with him:
and hallows Aharon and his clothes
and the clothes of his sons
and his sons with him.
- 31 And Mosheh says to Aharon and to his sons,
Stew the flesh
at the opening of the tent of the congregation:
and eat it there
with the bread in the basket of fulfillments,

LEVITICUS 8, 9

exeGesés ready research *BIBLE*

as I commanded **misvahed**, saying,
Aaron **Aharon** and his sons shall eat it.
32 And that which remaineth of the flesh and of the bread
shall ye burn with fire.
33 And ye shall not go out of the **door opening**
of the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation in seven days,
until the days of your **consecration fulfillments**
be at an end **fulfilled**:
for seven days shall he *consecrate you fill your hand*.
34 As he hath *done worked* this day,
so the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *commanded misvahed*
to do **work**,
to make an atonement **kapar/atone** for you.
35 Therefore shall ye *abide sit* at the **door opening**
of the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation
day and night seven days,
and keep **guard** the *charge guard* of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
that ye die not: for so I am *commanded misvahed*.
36 So Aaron **Aharon** and his sons
did worked all *things the words*
which the **LORD** *commanded Yah Veh misvahed*
by the hand of *Moses Mosheh*.

PRIESTING THE PRIESTHOOD: SIN AND HOLOCAUST QORBANS

9 And so be it came to pass on the eighth day,
that *Moses Mosheh* called Aaron **Aharon** and his sons,
and the elders of *Israel Yisra El*;
2 And he said unto Aaron **Aharon**,
Take thee a *young calf son of the oxen*
for a *sin offering the sin*,
and a ram for a *burnt offering holocaust*,
without blemish integrious,
and offer **oblate** them
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
3 And unto the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
thou shalt *speak word*, saying,
Take ye a *kid buck* of the goats for a *sin offering the sin*;
and a calf and a lamb, *both of the first year yearling sons*,
without blemish integrious, for a *burnt offering holocaust*;
4 Also a *bullock an ox* and a ram
for *peace offerings shelamim*,
to sacrifice *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh*;
and a *meat an* offering mingled with oil:
for to day
the LORD will appear unto Yah Veh shall be seen by you.
5 And they *brought took* that
which *Moses Mosheh* *commanded Mosheh misvahed*
before at the face of
the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation:
and all the *congregation drew near witness approached*
and stood *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh*.
6 And *Moses Mosheh* said,
This is the *thing word*
which the **LORD** *commanded Yah Veh misvahed*
that ye should *do work*:
and the *glory honour* of the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall *appear unto be seen by you*.
7 And *Moses Mosheh* said unto Aaron **Aharon**,
Go unto the **sacrifice** altar,
and offer thy *sin offering work for thy sin*,
and thy *burnt offering holocaust*,
and make an atonement **kapar/atone** for thyself,
and for the people:
and offer **work** the *offering qorban* of the people,
and make an atonement **kapar/atone** for them;
as the **LORD** *commanded Yah Veh misvahed*.
8 Aaron **Aharon** *therefore*
went unto **oblated** at the **sacrifice** altar,
and slew **slaughtered**
the *calf of the sin offering that for the sin*,
which was for himself.
9 And the sons of Aaron **Aharon**
brought oblated the blood unto him:
and he dipped his finger in the blood,
and *put gave* it upon the horns of the **sacrifice** altar,
and poured out the blood
at the *bottom foundation* of the **sacrifice** altar:

LEVITICUS 8, 9

exeGesés companion *BIBLE*

as I misvahed, saying,
Aharon and his sons eat it:
32 and what remains of the flesh and of the bread
burn with fire:
33 and go not
from the opening of the tent of the congregation
for seven days
until the days of fulfillments:
for seven days he fills your hand.
34 As he works this day,
thus Yah Veh misvahs to work to **kapar/atone** for you:
35 and sit
at the opening of the tent of the congregation
day and night for seven days
and guard the guard of Yah Veh
that you not die:
for thus I am misvahed.
36 — and Aharon and his sons work all the words
Yah Veh misvahed by the hand of Mosheh.

PRIESTING THE PRIESTHOOD: SIN AND HOLOCAUST QORBANS

9 And so be it, on the eighth day,
Mosheh calls Aharon and his sons
and the elders of Yisra El;
2 and he says to Aharon,
Take a son of the oxen for the sin
and an integrious ram for a holocaust
and oblate them at the face of Yah Veh.
3 And word to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
Take a buck of the goats for the sin;
and a calf and a lamb — integrious yearling sons
for a holocaust:
4 and an ox and a ram for shelamim,
to sacrifice at the face of Yah Veh;
and an offering mingled with oil:
for today Yah Veh is seen by you.
5 — and they take what Mosheh misvahs
at the face of the tent of the congregation:
and all the witness approaches
and stands at the face of Yah Veh.
6 And Mosheh says,
This is the word Yah Veh misvahs you:
work it; and you see the honor of Yah Veh.
7 And Mosheh says to Aharon,
Go to the sacrifice altar
and work for your sin and your holocaust
and **kapar/atone** for yourself and for the people:
and work the qorban of the people
and **kapar/atone** for them
— as Yah Veh misvahed.
8 And Aharon oblates at the sacrifice altar
and slaughters that for the sin which is for himself:
9 and the sons of Aharon oblate the blood to him:
and he dips his finger in the blood
and gives it on the horns of the sacrifice altar;
and pours out the blood
at the foundation of the sacrifice altar:

LEVITICUS 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 But the fat, and the *kidneys reins*,
and the caul *above from* the liver
of the *sin offering for the sin*,
he *burnt incensed* upon the *sacrifice* altar;
as the *LORD Yah Veh*
commanded *Moses misvahed Mosheh*.
11 And the flesh and the *hide skin*
he burnt with fire without the camp.
12 And he *slew slaughtered* the *burnt offering holocaust*;
and *Aaron's Aharon's* sons presented unto him the blood,
which he sprinkled round about upon the *sacrifice* altar.
13 And they presented the *burnt offering holocaust*
unto him,
with the *pieces members* thereof and the head:
and he *burnt incensed* them upon the *sacrifice* altar.
14 And he *did wash baptized* the inwards and the legs,
and *burnt incensed* them
upon the *burnt offering holocaust* on the *sacrifice* altar.
15 And he *brought obliterated* the people's *offering qorban*,
and took the *goat buck*,
which was the *sin offering for for the sin* of the people,
and *slew it, and offered it for sin*
slaughtered that for the sin,
as the first.
16 And he *brought obliterated* the *burnt offering holocaust*,
and *offered worked* it according to the *manner decree*.
17 And he *brought obliterated* the *meat offering*,
and *took an handful thereof filled his palm*,
and *burnt incensed* it upon the *sacrifice* altar,
beside apart from
the *burnt sacrifice holocaust* of the morning.
18 He *slew slaughtered* also the *bullock ox* and the ram
for a *sacrifice of peace offerings shelamim*,
which was for the people:
and *Aaron's Aharon's* sons presented unto him the blood,
which he sprinkled upon the *sacrifice* altar round about,
19 And the fat of the *bullock ox* and of the ram,
the rump, and that which covereth the *inwards*,
and the *kidneys reins*, and the caul above the liver:
20 And they put the fat upon the breasts,
and he *burnt incensed* the fat upon the *sacrifice* altar:
21 And the breasts and the right *shoulder hindleg*
Aaron Aharon waved for a *wave offering*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh;
as *Moses commanded Mosheh misvahed*.
22 And *Aaron Aharon*
lifted up his hand toward the people, and blessed them,
and *came down descended*
from *offering of the sin offering working that for the sin*,
and the *burnt offering holocaust*,
and *peace offerings shelamim*.
23 And *Moses Mosheh* and *Aaron Aharon*
went into the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation,
and came out, and blessed the people:
and the *glory honour* of the *LORD Yah Veh*
appeared unto was seen by all the people.
24 And there came a fire out
from *before the LORD the face of Yah Veh*,
and consumed upon the *sacrifice* altar
the *burnt offering holocaust* and the fat:
which when all the people saw,
they shouted, and fell on their faces.

SIN AND DEATH OF THE SONS OF AHARON

10 And Nadab and *Abihu Abi Hu*,
the sons of *Aaron Aharon*,
took *either of them each man* his *censer tray*,
and *put gave* fire therein, and put incense thereon,
and *offered obliterated* strange fire
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
which he *commanded misvahed* them not.
2 And there went out fire
from *the LORD the face of Yah Veh*,
and devoured them,
and they died *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh*.
3 Then *Moses Mosheh* said unto *Aaron Aharon*,
This is it that the *LORD spake Yah Veh worded*, saying,
I *will shall* be *sanctified hallowed* in them
that come nigh me,

LEVITICUS 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

10 and he incenses the fat and the reins
and the caul from the liver of that for the sin,
on the sacrifice altar
— as *Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh*:
and he burns the flesh and the skin
with fire outside the camp:
11 and he slaughters the holocaust:
and the sons of *Aharon* present the blood to him
which he sprinkles all around on the sacrifice altar:
12 and they present the holocaust to him,
with the members and the head:
and he incenses them on the sacrifice altar.
13 And he baptizes the inwards and the legs
and incenses them
on the holocaust on the sacrifice altar.
14 And he oblates the qorban of the people
and takes the buck for the sin of the people
and slaughters that for the sin, as the first:
and he oblates the holocaust
and works it according to the decree:
15 and he oblates the offering and fills his palm
and incenses it on the sacrifice altar
— apart from the holocaust of the morning.
16 And he slaughters the ox and the ram
for a sacrifice of shelamim for the people:
and the sons of *Aharon* present the blood to him
which he sprinkles all around on the sacrifice altar
— with the fat of the ox and of the ram,
the rump and what covers
and the reins and the caul above the liver:
17 and they put the fat on the breasts
and he incenses the fat on the sacrifice altar:
18 and *Aharon* waves the breasts and the right hindleg
for a wave at the face of *Yah Veh*
— as *Mosheh misvahed*.
19 And *Aharon* lifts his hand toward the people
and blesses them
and descends from working that for the sin
and the holocaust and shelamim.
20 And *Mosheh* and *Aaron*
go into the tent of the congregation
and come out and bless the people:
and the honor of *Yah Veh* is seen by all the people:
21 and a fire comes from the face of *Yah Veh*
and consumes the holocaust and the fat
on the sacrifice altar:
which when all the people see,
they shout and fall on their faces.

SIN AND DEATH OF THE SONS OF AHARON

10 And Nadab and *Abi Hu* the sons of *Aharon*
each man takes his tray
and gives fire therein and puts incense thereon
and oblates strange fire at the face of *Yah Veh*
— which he misvahed them not.
2 And fire comes from the face of *Yah Veh*
and devours them;
and they die at the face of *Yah Veh*.
3 And *Mosheh* says to *Aharon*,
It is what *Yah Veh worded*, saying,
I become hallowed in them who come near me

LEVITICUS 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and before **at the face of** all the people
I will **shall** be glorified **honoured**.
And Aaron held his peace **Aharon hushed**.
4 And Moses **Mosheh**
called *Mishael* **Misha El** and *Elzapha* **El Saphan**,
the sons of *Uzziel* **Uzzi El** the uncle of Aaron **Aharon**,
and said unto them, Come near,
carry **bear** your brethren
from before **the face of** the **sanctuary holies**
out of **without** the camp.
5 So they went near **approached**,
and carried **bore** them in their coats
out of **without** the camp;
as Moses **Mosheh** had said **worded**.
6 And Moses **Mosheh** said unto Aaron **Aharon**,
and unto Eleazar **El Azar** and unto *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**,
his sons,
Uncover **Expose** not your heads,
neither rend **tear** your clothes;
lest ye die, and lest **wrath he be enraged**
come upon **all the people with the witness**:
but let your brethren,
the whole house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
bewail **weep over** the burning
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *kindled* **burned**.
7 And ye shall not go out from the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation, lest ye die:
for the anointing oil of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** is upon you.
And they *did* **worked**
according to the word of Moses **Mosheh**.
8 And the *LORD* spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Aaron **Aharon**, saying,
9 Do not drink wine nor *strong drink* **intoxicants**,
thou, nor thy sons with thee,
when ye go into the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
lest ye die:
it shall be a **an eternal** statute *for ever*
throughout your generations:
10 And that ye may *put difference* **separate**
between holy and *unholy* **between profane**,
and between *unclean* **foul** and *clean* **between pure**;
11 And that ye may *teach* **point out**
to the children sons of Israel Yisra El
all the statutes
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded** unto them
by the hand of Moses **Mosheh**.
12 And Moses spake **Mosheh worded** unto Aaron **Aharon**,
and unto Eleazar **El Azar** and unto *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**,
his sons that *were left* **remained**,
Take the *meat* offering that remaineth
of the *offerings of the LORD made by fire*
firings unto Yah Veh,
and eat *it without leaven* **with matsah**
beside the **sacrifice** altar:
for it is *most holy* **a holy of holies**:
13 And ye shall eat it in the *holy place* **holies**,
because it is thy *due* **statute**, and thy sons' *due* **statute**,
of the *sacrifices of the LORD made by fire*
firings unto Yah Veh:
for so I am *commanded* **misvahed**.
14 And the wave breast
and *heave shoulder* **exaltment hindleg**
shall ye eat in a *clean* **pure** place;
thou, and thy sons, and thy daughters with thee:
for they be thy *due* **statute**, and thy sons' *due* **statute**,
which are given out of the sacrifices
of *peace offerings* **shelamim**
of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**.
15 The *heave shoulder* **exaltment hindleg**
and the wave breast
shall they bring
with the *offerings made by fire* **firings** of the fat,
to wave it for a *wave offering*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh;
and it shall be thine, and thy sons' with thee,
by a **an eternal** statute *for ever*;
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *commanded* **misvahed**.
16 **And in seeking**,

LEVITICUS 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and honored at the face of all the people.
— and Aharon hushes.
4 And Mosheh calls Misha El and El Saphan
the sons of Uzzi El the uncle of Aharon
and says to them, Come near,
bear your brothers
from the face of the holies outside the camp.
5 — so they approach
and bear them in their coats outside the camp
— as Mosheh worded.
6 And Mosheh says to Aharon
and to El Azar and to Iy Thamar his sons,
Neither expose your heads nor tear your clothes;
lest you die
and lest he becomes enraged with the witness:
but have your brothers, the whole house of Yisra El,
weep over the burning Yah Veh burns:
7 and go not out
from the opening of the tent of the congregation,
lest you die:
for the anointing oil of Yah Veh *is* on you.
— and they work according to the word of Mosheh.
8 And Yah Veh words to Aharon, saying,
9 Drink not wine or intoxicants
— you and your sons with you
when you go into the tent of the congregation,
lest you die
— an eternal statute throughout your generations:
so as to separate
between holy and between profane
and between foul and between pure:
11 and that you point out to the sons of Yisra El
all the statutes Yah Veh worded to them
by the hand of Mosheh.
12 And Mosheh words to Aharon
and to El Azar and to Iy Thamar his sons who remain,
Take the offering that remains
of the firings to Yah Veh
and eat with matsah beside the sacrifice altar
— a holy of holies:
13 and eat it in the holies,
because it *is* your statute and the statute of your sons
of the firings to Yah Veh:
for so be I misvahed:
14 and eat the wave breast and exaltment hindleg
in a pure place
— you and your sons and your daughters with you:
for they become your statute
and the statute of your sons
— given from the sacrifices of shelamim
of the sons of Yisra El.
15 Bring the exaltment hindleg and the wave breast
with the firings of the fat;
to wave for a wave at the face of Yah Veh;
and it becomes yours and your sons with you,
— an eternal statute — as Yah Veh misvahed.
16 And in seeking,

LEVITICUS 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Moses diligently Mosheh sought the goat
of the sin offering **that for the sin**,
and, behold, it was burnt:
and he was *angry* **enraged**
with Eleazar **El Azar** and *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**,
the sons of Aaron **Aharon** which were left alive **remained**,
saying,
17 Wherefore have ye not eaten
the sin offering **that for the sin** in the *holy place* **holies**,
seeing it is *most holy* **a holy of holies**,
and *God* **he** hath given it you to bear
the *iniquity* **perversity** of the *congregation* **witness**,
to make atonement **kapar/atone** for them
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh?**
18 Behold, the blood of it was not brought in
within the *holy place* **holies**:
in eating, ye should *indeed* have eaten it
in the *holy place* **holies**, as I *commanded* **misvahed**.
19 And Aaron said **Aharon worded** unto Moses **Mosheh**,
Behold,
this day have they *offered* **oblated** for their sin offering
and their *burnt offering* **holocaust**
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**;
and such *things* have *befallen* **confronted** me:
and if I had eaten the *sin offering* **that for the sin** to day,
should it have *been accepted* **well—pleased**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the **LORD Yah Veh?**
20 And when Moses **Mosheh** heard that,
he was *content* **well—pleased in his eyes**.

FOODS: BIDDEN AND FORBIDDEN

11 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh** and to Aaron **Aharon**,
saying unto them,
2 *Speak* **Word** unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
saying, These are the *beasts* **live beings** which ye shall eat
among all the *beasts* **animals** that are on the earth.
3 Whatsoever *parteth* **splitteth** the hoof,
and *is clovenfooted* **cleaveth the cleft of the hoof**,
and *cheweth* **regurgitateth** the cud,
among the *beasts* **animals**, that shall ye eat.
4 *Nevertheless* **Only** these shall ye not eat:
of them that *chew* **regurgitate** the cud,
or of them that *divide* **split** the hoof:
as the camel,
because he *cheweth* **regurgitateth** the cud,
but *divideth* **splitteth** not the hoof;
he is *unclean* **fouled** unto you.
5 And the coney,
because he *cheweth* **regurgitateth** the cud,
but *divideth* **splitteth** not the hoof;
he is *unclean* **fouled** unto you.
6 And the hare,
because he *cheweth* **regurgitateth** the cud,
but *divideth* **splitteth** not the hoof;
he is *unclean* **fouled** unto you.
7 And the *swine* **hog**,
though he *divide* **split** the hoof,
and *be clovenfooted* **cleaveth the cleft of the hoof**,
yet he *cheweth* **regurgitateth** not the cud;
he is *unclean* **fouled** to you.
8 Of their flesh shall ye not eat,
and their carcass shall ye not touch;
they are *unclean* **fouled** to you.
9 These shall ye eat of all that are in the waters:
whatsoever hath fins and scales in the waters,
in the seas, and in the *rivers* **wadies**, them shall ye eat.
10 And all that have not fins and scales in the seas,
and in the *rivers* **wadies**,
of all that *move* **teem** in the waters,
and of any living *thing* **soul** which is in the waters,
they shall be an abomination unto you:
11 They shall be even an abomination unto you;
ye shall not eat of their flesh,
but ye shall
have **abominate** their carcasses *in abomination*.
12 Whatsoever hath no fins nor scales in the waters,
that shall be an abomination unto you.

LEVITICUS 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Mosheh seeks the goat of that for the sin:
and behold, it is burnt:
and he rages with El Azar and Iy Thamar,
the remaining sons of Aharon, saying,
17 Why eat you not that for the sin in the holies
— seeing it is a holy of holies
and he gives it to you
to bear the perversity of the witness
— to kapar/atone for them at the face of Yah Veh?
18 Behold,
bring not the blood thereof within the holies:
in eating, eat it within the holies
— as I misvahed.
19 And Aharon words to Mosheh,
Behold,
this day they oblate for their sin and their holocaust
at the face of Yah Veh;
and such confronts me:
had I eaten that for the sin today,
had it well—pleased the eyes of Yah Veh?
20 — and Mosheh hears,
he is well—pleasing in his eyes.

FOODS: BIDDEN AND FORBIDDEN

11 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh and to Aharon,
saying to them,
2 Word to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
These are the live beings you eat
of all the animals on the earth:
3 whatever splits the hoof
and cleaves the cleft of the hoof
and regurgitates the cud,
among the animals, that you eat.
4 Only these eat not:
of them that regurgitate the cud,
or of them that split the hoof:
as the camel,
though he regurgitates the cud, yet splits not the hoof;
he is foul to you:
5 and the coney,
though he regurgitates the cud, yet splits not the hoof;
he is foul to you:
6 and the hare,
though he regurgitates the cud, yet splits not the hoof;
he is foul to you:
7 and the hog,
though he split the hoof
and cleaves the cleft of the hoof,
yet regurgitates not the cud;
he is foul to you.
8 — neither eat their flesh nor touch their carcass
they are foul to you.
9 These you eat of all in the waters:
whatever has fins and scales in the waters
— in the seas and in the wadies
them you eat:
10 and all with no fins and scales
in the seas and in the wadies
— all that teem in the waters
of any living soul in the waters,
are an abomination to you:
11 yes, they are an abomination to you:
eat not of their flesh and abominate their carcasses.
12 — whatever in the waters
has neither fins nor scales
is an abomination to you:

LEVITICUS 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

13 And these are they
which ye shall *have in abomination* **abominate**
among of the fowls flyers;
they shall not be eaten, they are an abomination:
the eagle, and the ossifrage, and the ospray,
14 And the *vulture* **kite**,
and the *kite after his kind* **hawk in species;**
Every raven *after his kind* **in species;**
15 And the **daughter of the owl**, and the night hawk,
16 and the cuckow, and the hawk *after his kind* **in species**,
17 And the little owl,
and the cormorant, and the great owl,
18 And the swan, and the pelican, and the gier eagle,
19 And the stork, the heron *after her kind* **in species**,
and the *lapwing* **hoopoe**, and the bat.
20 All *fowls* **teemers** that *creep fly*, going upon all four,
shall be an abomination unto you.
21 Yet these may ye eat
of every flying *creeping thing* **teemer**
that goeth upon all four,
which have legs above their feet,
to leap withal upon the earth;
22 Even these of them ye may eat;
the locust *after his kind* **in species**,
and the bald locust *after his kind* **in species**,
and the beetle *after his kind* **in species**,
and the grasshopper *after his kind* **in species**.
23 But all *other flying creeping things* **teemers that fly**,
which have four feet, shall be an abomination unto you.
24 And for these ye shall be **unclean fouled**:
whosoever toucheth the carcase of them
shall be **unclean fouled** until the even.
25 And whosoever beareth *ought* of the carcase of them
shall wash his clothes,
and be **unclean fouled** until the even.
26 *The carcasses of every beast* **Every animal**
which *divideth* **spitteth** the hoof,
and is not *clovenfooted* **cleaveth not the cleft of the hoof**,
nor *cheweth* **regurgitateth** the cud,
are **unclean fouled** unto you:
every one that toucheth them shall be **unclean fouled**.
27 And whatsoever goeth upon his paws,
among all *manner of beasts* **live beings** that go on all four,
those are **unclean fouled** unto you:
whoso toucheth their carcase
shall be **unclean fouled** until the even.
28 And he that beareth the carcase of them
shall wash his clothes,
and be **unclean fouled** until the even:
they are **unclean fouled** unto you.
29 These also shall be **unclean fouled** unto you
among the *creeping things* **teemers**
that *creep teem* upon the earth;
the weasel, and the mouse,
and the tortoise *after his kind* **in species**,
30 And the *ferret* **shrieker**, and the chameleon,
and the lizard, and the snail, and the mole.
31 These are **unclean fouled** to you
among all *that creep* **the teemers**:
whosoever doth touch them, when they be dead,
shall be **unclean fouled** until the even.
32 And upon whatsoever any of them,
when they are dead, doth fall,
it shall be **unclean fouled**;
whether it be any *vessel* **instrument** of wood **timber**,
or *raiment* **clothes**, or skin, or sack **saq**,
whatsoever *vessel* **instrument** it be,
wherein *any work* is **done worked**,
it must be put **put it** into water,
and it shall be **unclean fouled** until the even;
so **thus** it shall be *cleansed* **purified**.
33 And every *earthen vessel* **pottery instrument**,
whereinto **into the midst** any of them falleth,
whatsoever is in *it* **its midst** shall be **unclean fouled**;
and ye shall break it.
34 Of all *meat* **food** which may be eaten,
that on which *such* water cometh shall be **unclean fouled**:
and all drink that may be drunk
in every *such vessel* **instrument** shall be **unclean fouled**.

LEVITICUS 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

13 And of the flyers, abominate these:
eat them not — they *are* an abomination:

the eagle and the ossifrage and the ospray
and the kite and the hawk in species;
14 every raven in species;
15 and the daughter of the owl and the night hawk
and the cuckow and the hawk in species;
16 and the little owl
and the cormorant and the great owl
17 and the swan and the pelican and the gier eagle,
18 and the stork, the heron in species;
19 and the hoopoe and the bat;
20 all teemers that fly, going on all four,
are an abomination to you.

21 Only these:
eat of every flying teemer going on all four
having legs above their feet to leap with on the earth;
22 of them, eat these:
the locust in species
and the bald locust in species
and the beetle in species
and the grasshopper in species.
23 — and all teemers that fly, having four feet,
are an abomination to you.

24 And for these you become foul:
whoever touches their carcase
becomes foul until the evening.
25 And whoever bears of their carcase,
washes his clothes
and becomes foul until the evening:
26 every animal splitting the hoof,
but neither cleaves the cleft of the hoof
nor regurgitates the cud *is* foul to you:
every one who touches them becomes foul.

27 And whatever goes on his paws,
among all live beings that go on all four,
are foul to you:
whoever touches their carcase
becomes foul until the evening.
28 And he who bears their carcase, washes his clothes
and becomes foul until the evening:
they *are* foul to you.

29 And these *are* foul to you
among the teemers teeming on the earth:
the weasel and the mouse
and the tortoise in species,
30 and the shrieker and the chameleon
and the lizard and the snail and the mole;
31 these *are* foul to you among all the teemers:
whoever touches them, in their death,
becomes foul until the evening:
and on whatever any of them,
when they *are* dead, falls,
becomes foul;
whether any instrument of timber
or clothes or skin or saq
— whatever instrument, wherein work *is* worked:
and it becomes foul until the evening;
put it in water: thus be it purified.

33 And every pottery instrument
that falls midst any of them,
whatever *is* in its midst becomes fouled;
and you break it.

34 Of all food to eat, on which such water comes,
becomes foul:
and all drink to drink
in every such instrument becomes foul:

LEVITICUS 11, 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

35 And every thing all whereupon
any part of their carcase falleth shall be **unclean fouled**;
whether it be oven, or ranges for pots,
they shall be **broken pulled** down:
for they are **unclean fouled**
and shall be **unclean fouled** unto you.
36 Nevertheless a fountain or **pit well**,
wherein there is plenty a **congregating** of water,
shall be **clean pure**:
but that which toucheth their carcase
shall be **unclean fouled**.
37 And if any part of their carcase
fall upon any **sowing seeding** seed
which is to be **sown seeded**,
it shall be **clean pure**.
38 But if any water be **put given** upon the seed,
and any part of their carcase fall thereon,
it shall be **unclean fouled** unto you.
39 And if any **beast animal**,
of which ye may eat **which is for food**, die;
he that toucheth the carcase thereof
shall be **unclean fouled** until the even.
40 And he that eateth of the carcase of it
shall wash his clothes,
and be **unclean fouled** until the even:
he also that beareth the carcase of it
shall wash his clothes,
and be **unclean fouled** until the even.
41 And every **creeping thing teemer**
that **creepeth teemeth** upon the earth
shall be an abomination;
it shall not be eaten.
42 Whatsoever goeth upon the belly,
and whatsoever goeth upon all four,
or whatsoever **hath more aboundeth** feet
among all **creeping things teemers**
that **creep teem** upon the earth,
them ye shall not eat; for they are an abomination.
43 Ye shall not
make yourselves **abominable abominate your souls**
with any **creeping thing teemer** that **creepeth teemeth**,
neither shall ye make yourselves **unclean fouled**
with them,
that ye should be **defiled fouled** thereby.
44 For I am the LORD I — **Yah Veh** your God **Elohim**:
ye shall therefore **sanctify hallow** yourselves,
and ye shall be holy; for I am I — holy:
neither shall ye **defile yourselves foul your souls**
with any **manner of creeping thing teemer**
that **creepeth** upon the earth.
45 For I am the LORD I — **Yah Veh**
that **bringeth ascendeth** you up
out of the land of **Egypt Misrayim**,
to be your God **Elohim**:
ye shall therefore be holy, for I am I — holy:
46 This is the **law torah** of the **beasts animals**,
and of the **fowl flyers**,
and of every living **creature soul**
that **moveth creepeth** in the waters,
and of every **creature soul**
that **creepeth teemeth** upon the earth:
47 To make a difference **separate** between
the **unclean fouled** and **between** the **clean pure**,
and between the **beast live being** that may be eaten
and **between** the **beast live being** that may not be eaten.

TORAH ON BIRTHING

12

And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto **Moses Mosheh**, saying,
2 Speak **Word** unto the **children sons** of **Israel Yisra El**,
saying, If a woman have **conceived seed seeded**,
and **born birthed** a **man child male**:
then she shall be **unclean fouled** seven days;
according to the days of the **separation exclusion**
for her **infirmity menstruation** shall she be **unclean fouled**.
3 And in the eighth day
the flesh of his foreskin shall be **circumcised**.
4 And she shall then **continue sit**
in the blood of her purifying three **days** and thirty days;

LEVITICUS 11, 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

35 and all whereupon their carcase falls becomes foul
— oven or ranges for pots
— pull them down for they are foul
— foul to you.
36 Only, a fountain or well
— a congregating of water, is pure:
but what touches their carcase becomes foul.
37 And if their carcase
falls on any seeding seed to be seeded,
it is pure:
38 and if any water is given on the seed
and their carcase fall thereon, it becomes foul to you.
39 And if any animal for food, dies;
he who touches the carcase thereof
becomes foul until the evening:
40 and he who eats of the carcase thereof
washes his clothes
and becomes foul until the evening;
and he who bears the carcase thereof
washes his clothes
and becomes foul until the evening.
41 And every teemer teeming on the earth
is an abomination — not eaten.
42 Whatever goes on the belly
and whatever goes on all four
or whatever abounds with feet
among all teemers teeming on the earth,
eat them not;
for they are an abomination.
43 Neither abominate your souls
with any teeming teemer,
nor foul yourselves with them,
that you become foul thereby.
44 I — Yah Veh your Elohim:
hallow yourselves and be holy;
I — holy:
foul not your souls
with any teemer creeping on the earth.
45 I — Yah Veh
who ascended you from the land of Misrayim,
to become your Elohim:
so you become holy; I — holy.
46 This is the torah of the animals and of the flyers
and of every living soul creeping in the waters
and of every soul teeming on the earth:
47 to separate between the foul and between the pure
and between the live being to eat
and between the live being not to eat.

TORAH ON BIRTHING

12

And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Word to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
If a woman seeds and births a male:
then she becomes foul seven days;
according to the days of the exclusion
— foul for her menstruation:
3 and in the eighth day
circumcise the flesh of his foreskin:
4 and she sits in the blood of her purifying
three days and thirty days:

LEVITICUS 12, 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

she shall **neither** touch *no hallowed thing* the **holies**,
nor *come into* **enter** the *sanctuary* **holies**,
until the days of her purifying be fulfilled.
5 But if she *bear* **birth** a *maid child* **female**,
then she shall be *unclean* **fouled** two weeks,
as in her *separation* **exclusion**:
and she shall *continue* **sit** in the blood of her purifying
threescore **sixty days** and six days.
6 And when the days of her purifying are fulfilled,
for a son, or for a daughter,
she shall bring a lamb *of the first year* a **yearling son**
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
and a *young pigeon* **son of a dove**, or a *turtledove*,
for a *sin offering* **the sin**, unto the *door opening*
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
unto the priest:
7 Who shall *offer* **oblate** it
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**,
and *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for her;
and she shall be *cleansed* **purified**
from the *issue* **fountain** of her blood.
This is the *law* **torah** for her
that hath *born* **birthed** a male or a female.
8 And if *she be not able* **her hand be not sufficient**
to *bring* **find** a lamb,
then she shall *bring* **take** two *turtles* **turtledoves**,
or two *young pigeons* **sons of doves**;
the one for the *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
and the *other* for a *sin offering* **one for the sin**:
and the priest shall *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for her,
and she shall be *clean* **purified**.

TORAH ON LEPROSY

13 And the *LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh** **worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon**, saying,
2 When a *man* **human** shall have in the skin of his flesh
a *rising* **swelling**, a scab, or bright spot,
and it be in the skin of his flesh like the plague of leprosy;
then he shall be brought unto *Aaron* **Aharon** the priest,
or unto one of his sons the priests:
3 And the priest shall *look on* **see** the plague
in the skin of the flesh:
and when the hair in the plague is turned white,
and the plague in *sight* **visage**
be deeper than the skin of his flesh,
it is a plague of leprosy:
and the priest shall *look on* **see** him,
and pronounce him *unclean* **fouled**.
4 If the bright spot be white in the skin of his flesh,
and in *sight* **visage** be not deeper than the skin,
and the hair thereof be not turned white;
then the priest shall shut up him that hath the plague
seven days:
5 And the priest shall *look on* **see** him the seventh day:
and, behold, if the plague in his sight be at a stay,
and the plague spread not in the skin;
then the priest shall shut him up
a **second** seven days *more*:
6 And the priest shall *look on* **see** him *again*
the **second** seventh day:
and, behold, if the plague be *somewhat dark* **faded**,
and the plague spread not in the skin,
the priest shall pronounce him *clean* **purified**:
it is but a scab:
and he shall *wash* **launder** his clothes,
and be *clean* **purified**.
7 But if *in spreading*,
the scab spread *much abroad* in the skin,
after that he hath been seen of the priest
for his *cleansing* **purifying**,
he shall be seen of the priest *again* **a second time**.
8 And if the priest see that, behold,
the scab spreadeth in the skin,
then the priest shall pronounce him *unclean* **fouled**:
it is a leprosy.
9 When the plague of leprosy is in a *man* **human**,
then he shall be brought unto the priest;
10 And the priest shall see him: and, behold,
if the *rising* **swelling** be white in the skin,
and it have turned the hair white,

LEVITICUS 12, 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

she neither touches the holies nor enters the holies
until the days of her purifying are fulfilled.
5 And if she births a female,
then she becomes foul two weeks,
as in her exclusion:
and she sits in the blood of her purifying
sixty days and six days
6 and when the days of her purifying are fulfilled
— for a son or for a daughter,
she brings a lamb — a yearling son for a holocaust
and a son of a dove or a turtledove for the sin
to the opening of the tent of the congregation
— to the priest
7 who oblates it at the face of Yah Veh
and kapars/atones for her:
and she becomes purified
from the fountain of her blood.
This is the torah for her
who births a male or a female:
8 and if her hand is not sufficient to find a lamb
then she takes two turtledoves or two sons of doves
— the one for the holocaust and the one for the sin:
and the priest kapars/atones for her
and she becomes purified.

TORAH ON LEPROSY

13 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh and Aharon,
saying,
2 When a human, in the skin of his flesh,
has a swelling, a scab or bright spot
and it becomes in the skin of his flesh
as the plague of leprosy;
bring him to Aharon the priest
or to one of his sons the priests:
3 and the priest sees the plague in the skin of the flesh:
and when the hair in the plague is turned white
and the visage of the plague
is deeper than the skin of his flesh
— a plague of leprosy:
and the priest sees him and pronounces him foul.
4 If the bright spot is white in the skin of his flesh
and in visage is not deeper than the skin
and the hair thereof turned not white;
then the priest shuts up him who has the plague
seven days;
5 and the priest sees him the seventh day:
and behold, the plague in his sight stands
and the plague spreads not in the skin;
and the priest shuts him up a second seven days:
6 and the priest sees him the second seventh day:
and behold, the plague fades
and the plague spreads not in the skin,
the priest pronounces him purified
— a scab:
and he launders his clothes and becomes purified:
7 and if in spreading, the scab spreads in the skin,
after being seen by the priest for his purifying,
the priest sees him a second time:
8 and the priest sees that, behold,
the scab in the skin spread,
then the priest pronounces him foul
— a leprosy.
9 When the plague of leprosy is in a human,
bring him to the priest:
10 and the priest sees him: and behold,
a white swelling in the skin
and the hair turned white

LEVITICUS 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- and there be *quick raw* the invigoration of living flesh
in the *rising swelling*;
- 11 It is an old leprosy in the skin of his flesh,
and the priest shall pronounce him *unclean fouled*,
and shall not shut him up: for he is *unclean fouled*.
- 12 And if a leprosy *break out abroad in blossoming*,
blossometh in the skin,
and the leprosy cover all the skin
of him that hath the plague
from his head even to his foot,
wheresoever the priest looketh
in the visage of the eyes of the priest;
- 13 Then the priest shall *consider see*: and, behold,
if the leprosy have covered all his flesh,
he shall pronounce him *clean purified*
that hath the plague:
it is all turned white: he is *clean pure*.
- 14 But when raw **in the day living** flesh
appeareth be seen in him,
he shall be *unclean fouled*.
- 15 And the priest shall see the raw *living* flesh,
and pronounce him to be *unclean fouled*:
for the raw *living* flesh is *unclean fouled*: it is a leprosy.
- 16 Or if the raw flesh turn again,
and be *changed turned* unto white,
he shall come unto the priest;
- 17 And the priest shall see him: and, behold,
if the plague be turned into white;
then the priest shall pronounce him *clean purified*
that hath the plague: he is *clean pure*.
- 18 The flesh also, in which, even in the skin thereof,
was a *boil an ulcer*, and is healed,
And in the place of the *boil ulcer*
there be a white *rising swelling*,
or a bright spot, white, and *somewhat* reddish,
and it be *shewed to seen by* the priest;
- 20 And if, when the priest seeth it, behold,
it be in *sight visage* lower than the skin,
and the hair thereof be turned white;
the priest shall pronounce him *unclean fouled*:
it is a plague of leprosy
broken blossoming out of the *boil ulcer*.
- 21 But if the priest *look on it see*, and, behold,
there be no white hairs therein,
and if it be not lower than the skin,
but be *somewhat dark faded*;
- then the priest shall shut him up seven days:
- 22 And if **in spreading**, it spread *much abroad* in the skin,
then the priest shall pronounce him *unclean fouled*:
it is a plague.
- 23 But if the bright spot stay in his place, and spread not,
it is a *burning boil an inflamed ulcer*;
- 24 and the priest shall pronounce him *clean purified*.
Or if there be any flesh, in the skin
whereof there is a hot burning — **a burning of fire**,
and the *quick flesh that burneth invigoration burning*
have a white bright spot, *somewhat* reddish, or white;
- 25 Then the priest shall *look upon see* it: and, behold,
if the hair in the bright spot be turned white,
and it be in *sight visage* deeper than the skin;
it is a leprosy *broken blossoming* out of the burning:
wherefore the priest
shall pronounce him *unclean fouled*:
it is the plague of leprosy.
- 26 But if the priest *look on it see*, and, behold,
there be no white hair in the bright spot,
and it be no lower than the *other* skin,
but be *somewhat dark faded*;
- then the priest shall shut him up seven days:
- 27 And the priest shall *look upon see* him the seventh day:
and if **in spreading**,
- it be spread *much abroad* in the skin,
then the priest shall pronounce him *unclean fouled*:
it is the plague of leprosy.
- 28 And if the bright spot stay in his place,
and spread not in the skin, but it be *somewhat dark faded*;
- it is a *rising swelling* of the burning,
and the priest shall pronounce him *clean purified*:

LEVITICUS 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- and an invigoration of living flesh in the swelling;
- 11 it is an old leprosy in the skin of his flesh
and the priest pronounces him foul
and shuts him not up
— he is foul.
- 12 And if, in blossoming,
a leprosy blossoms in the skin
and the leprosy covers all the skin of the plague
from his head to his foot
in the visage of the eyes of the priest:
then the priest sees: and behold,
the leprosy covers all his flesh,
he pronounces him who has the plague purified:
it all turned white
— he is pure.
- 14 And in the day of living flesh being seen in him,
he is foul:
- 15 and the priest sees the living flesh
and pronounces him foul:
for the living flesh is foul:
— a leprosy.
- 16 Or the raw flesh returns and turns white
he comes to the priest:
- 17 and the priest sees him: and behold,
the plague turned white;
then the priest pronounces him who has the plague,
purified:
— he is pure.
- 18 And the flesh has in it — in the skin
an ulcer and it healed,
and in the place of the ulcer
there becomes a white swelling
or a bright spot, white and reddish
and it is seen by the priest;
- 20 and the priest sees, and behold,
in visage *is* lower than the skin
and the hair turned white;
the priest pronounces him foul:
— a plague of leprosy blossoming from the ulcer.
- 21 And if the priest sees, and behold,
there are no white hairs therein
and it is not lower than the skin,
but faded;
- 22 then the priest shuts him up seven days:
and if in spreading, it spreads in the skin,
then the priest pronounces him foul:
— a plague.
- 23 And if the bright spot stands in his place
and spreads not,
— an inflamed ulcer;
and the priest pronounces him purified.
- 24 Or when flesh has a fiery burning in the skin
and the burning invigoration
has a white bright spot — reddish or white;
then the priest sees: and behold,
if the hair in the bright spot turned white
and in visage *is* deeper than the skin;
it is a leprosy blossoming from the burning:
and the priest pronounces him foul:
— a plague of leprosy.
- 26 And if the priest sees, and behold,
no white hair in the bright spot
and it is no lower than the skin, but faded;
- 27 the priest shuts him up seven days:
and the priest sees him the seventh day:
and if in spreading, it spread in the skin,
then the priest pronounces him foul:
— the plague of leprosy.
- 28 And if the bright spot stands in his place
and spreads not in the skin, but fades;
it is a swelling of the burning:
and the priest pronounces him purified:

LEVITICUS 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- for it is an inflammation of the burning.
- 29 If a man or woman have a plague upon the head or the beard;
- 30 Then the priest shall see the plague: and, behold, if it be in *sight visage* deeper than the skin; and there be in it a yellow thin hair; then the priest shall pronounce him *unclean fouled*: it is a *dry scall*, even a leprosy upon the head or beard.
- 31 And if the priest *look on see* the plague of the scall, and, behold, it be not in *sight visage* deeper than the skin, and that there is no *black dark* hair in it; then the priest shall shut up him that hath the plague of the scall seven days:
- 32 And in the seventh day the priest shall *look on see* the plague: and, behold, if the scall spread not, and there be in it no yellow hair, and the scall be not in *sight visage* deeper than the skin; He shall be shaven, but the scall shall he not shave; and the priest shall shut up him that hath the scall a **second** seven days *more*:
- 34 And in the seventh day the priest shall *look on see* the scall: and, behold, if the scall be not spread in the skin, nor be in *sight visage* deeper than the skin; then the priest shall pronounce him *clean purified*: and he shall *wash launder* his clothes, and be *clean purified*.
- 35 But if in **spreading**, the scall spread *much* in the skin after his *cleansing purifying*;
- 36 Then the priest shall *look on see* him: and, behold, if the scall be spread in the skin, the priest shall not seek for yellow hair; he is *unclean fouled*.
- 37 But if the scall be in his *sight eyes* at a stay, and that there is *black dark* hair *grown up sprouting* therein; the scall is healed, he is *clean pure*: and the priest shall pronounce him *clean purified*.
- 38 If a man also or a woman have in the skin of their flesh bright spots, even white bright spots;
- 39 Then the priest shall *look see*: and, behold, if the bright spots in the skin of their flesh be *darkish faded* white; it is a freckled spot that *groweth blossometh* in the skin; he is *clean pure*.
- 40 And the man whose *hair is fallen off his head baldened*, he is bald; yet is he *clean pure*.
- 41 And he that hath *his hair fallen off baldened* from the *part edge* of his head toward his face, he is forehead *bald high*: yet is he *clean pure*.
- 42 And if there be in the *bald head baldness*, or *bald high* forehead, a white reddish *sore plague*; it is a leprosy *sprung up blossoming* in his *bald head baldness*, or his *bald high* forehead.
- 43 Then the priest shall *look upon it see*: and, behold, if the *rising swelling* of the *sore plague* be white reddish in his *bald head baldness*, or in his *bald high* forehead, as the *in visage like* leprosy *appeareth* in the skin of the flesh;
- 44 He is a leprous man, he is *unclean fouled*: **in fouling**, the priest shall pronounce him *utterly unclean fouled*; his plague is in his head.
- 45 And the leper in whom the plague is, his clothes shall be *rent torn*, and his head *bare exposed*, and he shall put a covering upon his upper lip, and shall *cry call, Unclean, unclean. Fouled! Fouled!*
- 46 All the days wherein the plague shall be in him he shall be *defiled fouled*; he is *unclean fouled*: he shall *dwelt settle* alone; without the camp shall his *habitation settlement* be.

LEVITICUS 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- an inflammation of the burning.
- 29 If a man or woman have a plague on the head or the beard;
- 30 the priest sees the plague: and behold, in visage is deeper than the skin; and a yellow thin hair therein; then the priest pronounces him foul: — a scall, even a leprosy on the head or beard.
- 31 And when the priest sees the plague of the scall and behold, in visage is not deeper than the skin and no dark hair therein; then the priest shuts the plague of the scall seven days:
- 32 and in the seventh day the priest sees the plague: and behold, if the scall spread not and no yellow hair therein and the scall in visage is not deeper than the skin; he shaves himself, but he shaves not the scall; and the priest shuts the scall a second seven days:
- 34 and in the seventh day, the priest sees the scall: and behold, if the scall neither spread in the skin, nor in visage is deeper than the skin; then the priest pronounces him purified: and he launders his clothes and becomes purified.
- 35 And if in spreading, the scall spreads in the skin after his purifying;
- 36 then the priest sees him: and behold, if the scall spread in the skin, the priest seeks not for yellow hair; — he is foul.
- 37 But if, in his eyes, the scall stands and dark hair sprouts therein; the scall is healed: — he is pure: and the priest pronounces him purified.
- 38 And when a man or a woman has bright spots in the skin of their flesh — white bright spots;
- 39 and the priest sees: and behold, the bright spots in the skin of their flesh faded white; it is a freckled spot blossoming in the skin: — he is pure.
- 40 And the man whose head baldens: he is bald; yet pure.
- 41 And he who baldens from the edge of his head toward his face: he is forehead high: yet pure.
- 42 And when there becomes in the baldness or high forehead, a white reddish plague; — a leprosy blossoming in his baldness or his high forehead: and the priest sees: and behold, the swelling of the plague is white reddish in his baldness or in his high forehead — in visage as leprosy in the skin of the flesh; he is a leprous man, he is foul: in being foul, the priest pronounces him foul; his plague is in his head.
- 45 And the leper in whom the plague is, tears his clothes and exposes his head and he puts a covering on his upper lip and calls, Foul! Foul!
- 46 — all the days the plague is in him he becomes foul; — he is foul: he settles alone; outside the camp is his settlement.

LEVITICUS 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

TORAH ON LEPROUS CLOTHES

47 The *garment* **clothes** also
that the plague of leprosy is in,
whether it be a woollen *garment* **clothes**,
or a *linen* *garment* **flax clothes**;
48 Whether it be in the warp, or woof;
of *linen* **flax**, or of woollen;
whether in a skin, or in any *thing* *made* **work** of skin;
49 And if the plague be greenish or reddish
in the *garment* **clothes**, or in the skin,
either **or** in the warp, or in the woof,
or in any *thing* **instrument** of skin;
it is a plague of leprosy,
and *be shewed unto* **shall have** the priest **see**:
50 And the priest shall *look upon* **see** the plague,
and shut *up it that hath* the plague seven days:
51 And he shall *look* **see** on the plague
on the seventh day:
if the plague be spread in the *garment* **clothes**,
either in the warp, or in the woof,
or in a skin, or in any work that is *made* **worked** of skin;
the plague is a *fretting* **bitter** leprosy; it is *unclean* **fouled**.
52 He shall *therefore* burn *that garment* **those clothes**,
whether warp or woof, in woollen or in *linen* **flax**,
or any *thing* **instrument** of skin, wherein the plague is:
for it is a *fretting* **bitter** leprosy;
it shall be burnt in the fire.
53 And if the priest shall *look* **see**, and, behold,
the plague be not spread in the *garment* **clothes**,
either **or** in the warp, or in the woof,
or in any *thing* **instrument** of skin;
54 Then the priest shall *command* **misvah**
that they *wash the thing* **launder that**
wherein the plague is,
and he shall shut it up a **second** seven days *more*:
55 And the priest shall *look on* **see** the plague,
after that it is washed: and, behold,
if the plague have not *changed* **turned** his *colour* **eyes**,
and the plague be not spread; it is *unclean* **fouled**;
thou shalt burn it in the fire; it is *fret inward* **pitted**,
whether it be *bare within* **baldness**
or *without* **high forehead**.
56 And if the priest *look* **see**, and, behold,
the plague be *somewhat dark* **faded**
after the *washing of it* **is laundered**;
then he shall *rend* **rip** it out of the *garment* **clothes**,
or out of the skin, or out of the warp, or out of the woof:
57 And if it *appear* **be seen** still in the *garment* **clothes**,
either in the warp, or in the woof,
or in any *thing* **instrument** of skin;
it is a *spreading plague* **blossoming**;
thou shalt burn that wherein the plague is with fire.
58 And the *garment* **clothes**, either warp, or woof,
or whatsoever *thing* **instrument** of skin it be,
which thou shalt *wash* **launder**,
if the plague be *departed* **turned aside** from them,
then it shall be *washed* **laundered** the second time,
and shall be *clean* **purified**.
59 This is the *law* **torah** of the plague of leprosy
in a *garment* **clothes** of woollen or *linen* **flax**,
either in the warp, or woof,
or any *thing* **instrument** of skins,
to pronounce it *clean* **purified**,
or to pronounce it *unclean* **fouled**.

TORAH ON PURIFYING THE LEPER

14 And the *LORD* *spake* **Yah Veh** worded
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
2 This shall be the *law* **torah** of the leper
in the day of his *cleansing* **purifying**:
He shall be brought unto the priest:
3 And the priest shall go *forth out of* **outside** the camp;
and the priest shall *look* **see**, and, behold,
if the plague of leprosy be healed in the leper;
4 Then shall the priest *command* **misvah**
to take for him that is to be *cleansed* **purified**
two birds *alive* **living** and *clean* **pure**,
and cedar *wood* **timber**, and scarlet, and hyssop:
5 And the priest shall *command* **misvah**
that one of the birds be *killed* **slaughtered**

LEVITICUS 13, 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

TORAH ON LEPROUS CLOTHES

47 And any clothes,
wherein there is the plague of leprosy
— whether woollen clothes or flax clothes
48 whether in the warp or woof;
of flax or of woollen;
whether in a skin or in any work of skin:
49 and if the plague becomes greenish or reddish
in the clothes or in the skin
or in the warp or in the woof
or in any instrument of skin:
— a plague of leprosy and the priest sees:
50 and the priest sees the plague
and shuts the plague seven days:
51 and he sees on the plague on the seventh day:
if the plague spread in the clothes
— either in the warp or in the woof,
or in a skin or in any work worked of skin
— the plague *is* a bitter leprosy — foul.
52 He burns those clothes
whether warp or woof
woollen or flaxen
or any instrument of skin
wherein the plague *is*
— for it *is* a bitter leprosy:
— burn it in the fire.
53 And if the priest sees, and behold,
the plague spread not in the clothes
or in the warp or in the woof,
or in any instrument of skin:
54 then the priest misvahs
them to launder that wherein the plague *is*
and he shuts it a second seven days:
55 and the priest sees the plague,
after it *is* washed: and behold,
if the plague turned not its eyes
and the plague spread not,
— it *is* foul:
burn it in the fire;
— it *is* pitted
— whether baldness or high forehead.
56 And if the priest sees, and behold,
the plague faded after being laundered;
then he rip it from the clothes or from the skin,
or from the warp or from the woof:
57 and if it is still seen in the clothes
— either in the warp or in the woof
or in any instrument of skin;
— a blossoming:
burn with fire wherein the plague *is*:
and the clothes, either warp or woof
or whatever instrument of skin you launder,
if the plague turned aside from them,
then launder it the second time
and it purifies.
59 This *is* the torah of the plague of leprosy
in clothes of woollen or flaxen
either in the warp or woof
or any instrument of skins
— to pronounce it purified, or to pronounce it foul.

TORAH ON PURIFYING THE LEPER

14 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 This is the torah of the leper
in the day of his purifying:
bring him to the priest;
3 and the priest goes outside the camp;
and the priest sees, and behold,
the plague of leprosy in the leper healed;
4 and the priest misvahs
and takes for him who purifies
two living and pure birds
and cedar timber and scarlet and hyssop:
5 and the priest misvahs
to slaughter one of the birds

LEVITICUS 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 in an earthen vessel a pottery instrument
over running living water:
As for the living bird,
he shall take it, and the cedar wood timber,
and the scarlet, and the hyssop,
and shall dip them and the living bird
in the blood of the bird that was killed slaughtered
over the running living water:
7 And he shall sprinkle upon him
that is to be cleansed purified from the leprosy
seven times,
and shall pronounce him clean purified,
and shall let send away the living bird loose
into the open face of the field.
8 And he that is to be cleansed purified
shall wash launder his clothes, and shave off all his hair,
and wash baptize himself in water,
that he may be clean purified:
and after that he shall come into the camp,
and shall tarry settle
abroad out of without his tent seven days.
9 But it shall be on the seventh day,
that he shall shave all his hair off his head
and his beard and his eyebrows,
even all his hair he shall shave off:
and he shall wash launder his clothes,
also he shall wash baptize his flesh in water,
and he shall be clean purified.
10 And on the eighth day
he shall take two he lambs without blemish integrious,
and one ewe lamb of the first year a yearling daughter
without blemish integrious,
and three tenth deals tenths of fine flour
for a meat an offering,
mingled mixed with oil, and one log of oil.
11 And the priest that maketh purifieth him clean
shall present stand the man
that is to be made clean purified, and those things,
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
at the door opening
of the tabernacle tent of the congregation:
12 And the priest shall take one he lamb,
and offer oblate him for a trespass offering the guilt,
and the log of oil,
and wave them for a wave offering
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
13 And he shall slay slaughter the lamb
in the place where he shall kill slaughter
the sin offering that for the sin
and the burnt offering holocaust, in the holy place holies:
for as the sin offering that for the sin is the priest's,
so is the trespass offering that for the guilt:
it is most holy a holy of holies:
14 And the priest shall take some of the blood
of the trespass offering that for the guilt,
and the priest shall put give it
upon the tip of the right ear
of him that is to be cleansed purified,
and upon the thumb great digit of his right hand,
and upon the great toe digit of his right foot:
15 And the priest shall take some of the log of oil,
and pour it into the palm of his own left hand:
16 And the priest shall dip his right finger
in the oil that is in his left hand palm,
and shall sprinkle of the oil with his finger seven times
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
17 And of the rest remainder of the oil
that is in his hand palm
shall the priest put give upon the tip of the right ear
of him that is to be cleansed purified,
and upon the thumb great digit of his right hand,
and upon the great toe digit of his right foot,
upon the blood of the trespass offering that for the guilt:
18 And the remnant that which remaineth
of the oil that is in the priest's hand palm
he shall pour give upon the head of him
that is to be cleansed purified:
and the priest
shall make an atonement kapar/atone for him

LEVITICUS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 in a pottery instrument over living water:
as for the living bird,
he takes it and the cedar timber
and the scarlet and the hyssop
and dips them and the living bird
in the blood of the bird
that was slaughtered over the living water:
7 and on him who purifies from the leprosy
he sprinkles seven times
and pronounces him purified:
and sends away the living bird
into the face of the field:
8 and he who purifies
launders his clothes and shaves all his hair
and baptizes himself in water
to purify:
and after that he comes into the camp
and settles outside his tent seven days:
9 and so be it, on the seventh day,
he shaves all his hair from his head
and his beard and his eyebrows
— he even shaves all his hair:
and he launders his clothes,
and he baptizes his flesh in water
and purifies.
10 And on the eighth day
he takes two integrious lambs
and one integrious yearling daughter ewe lamb
and three tenths of flour for an offering
mixed with oil and one log of oil:
11 and the priest who purifies him
stands the man to be purified;
with them at the face of Yah Veh
at the opening of the tent of the congregation:
12 and the priest takes one he lamb
and oblates him for the guilt;
with the log of oil
13 and waves them for a wave at the face of Yah Veh:
and he slaughters the lamb
in the place
he slaughters that for the sin and the holocaust
in the holies:
for as that for the sin is for the priest
and thus that for the guilt:
— a holy of holies:
14 and the priest takes of the blood
of that for the guilt
and the priest gives it on the tip of the right ear
of him to be purified
— and on the great digit of his right hand
and on the great digit of his right foot:
15 and the priest takes of the log of oil
and pours it into the palm of his own left hand:
16 and the priest dips his right finger
in the oil in his left palm
and sprinkles of the oil with his finger seven times
at the face of Yah Veh:
17 and of the remainder of the oil in his palm
the priest gives on the tip of the right ear
of him to be purified
and on the great digit of his right hand
and on the great digit of his right foot
on the blood of that for the guilt:
18 and what remains of the oil
in the palm of the priest
he gives on the head of him to be purified:
and the priest kapars/atones for him

LEVITICUS 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19 before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
And the priest shall
offer the sin offering **work that for the sin**,
and make an atonement **kapar/atone**
for him that is to be *cleansed* **purified**
from his *uncleanness* **foulness**;
and afterward he shall *kill* **slaughter**
the *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
20 And the priest shall offer **holocaust**
the *burnt offering* **holocaust**
and the *meat offering* upon the **sacrifice** altar:
and the priest
shall make an atonement **kapar/atone** for him,
and he shall be *clean* **purified**.
21 And if he be poor,
and cannot get **his hand hath not attained** so much;
then he shall take one lamb
for a *trespass offering* **the guilt** to be waved,
to make an atonement **kapar/atone** for him,
and one tenth *deal of fine flour mingled* **mixed** with oil
for a *meat* **an offering**, and a log of oil;
22 And two turtledoves,
or two *young pigeons* **sons of doves**,
such as *he is able to get* **his hand attaineth**;
and the one shall be a *sin offering for the sin*,
and the *other a burnt offering* **one for the holocaust**.
23 And he shall bring them on the eighth day
for his *cleansing* **purifying** unto the priest,
unto the *door opening*
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
24 And the priest shall take the lamb
of the *trespass offering* **that for the guilt**, and the log of oil,
and the priest shall wave them for a *wave offering*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
25 And he shall *kill* **slaughter** the lamb
of the *trespass offering* **that for the guilt**,
and the priest shall take *some* of the blood
of the *trespass offering* **that for the guilt**,
and *put* **give** it upon the tip of the right ear
of him that is to be *cleansed* **purified**,
and upon the *thumb* **great digit** of his right hand,
and upon the *great toe* **digit** of his right foot:
26 And the priest shall pour of the oil
into the palm of his own left hand:
27 And the priest shall sprinkle with his right finger
some of the oil that is in his left hand seven times
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
28 And the priest shall *put* **give** of the oil
that is in his *hand* **palm**
upon the tip of the right ear
of him that is to be *cleansed* **purified**,
and upon the *thumb* **great digit** of his right hand,
and upon the *great toe* **digit** of his right foot,
upon the place of the blood
of the *trespass offering* **that for the guilt**:
29 And the *rest* **that which remaineth** of the oil
that is in the priest's *hand* **palm**
he shall *put* **give** upon the head of him
that is to be *cleansed* **purified**,
to make an atonement **kapar/atone** for him
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
30 And he shall offer **work** the one of the turtledoves,
or of the *young pigeons* **sons of doves**,
such as *he can get* **his hand attaineth**;
31 Even such as *he is able to get* **his hand attaineth**,
the one for a *sin offering* **the sin**,
and the *other* **one** for a *burnt offering* **the holocaust**,
with the *meat offering*:
and the priest
shall make an atonement **kapar/atone** for him
that is to be *cleansed* **purified**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
32 This is the *law of him* **torah**
in whom is the plague of leprosy,
whose hand *is not able to get* **attaineth not**
that which pertaineth to his *cleansing* **purifying**.

LEVITICUS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

at the face of Yah Veh:
19 and the priest works that for the sin
and *kapars/atones* for him to be purified
from his foulness:
and afterward he slaughters the holocaust:
20 and the priest holocausts the holocaust
and the offering on the sacrifice altar:
and the priest *kapars/atones* for him
and he purifies.
21 And if he be poor
and his hand attains not so much;
he takes one lamb for the guilt to be waved,
to *kapar/atone* for him
and one tenth flour mixed with oil for an offering
and a log of oil;
22 and two turtledoves or two sons of doves
— such as his hand attains:
and the one becomes for the sin
and the one for the holocaust:
23 and on the eighth day,
he brings them to the priest for his purifying
— to the opening of the tent of the congregation
at the face of Yah Veh.
24 And the priest takes the lamb of that for the guilt
and the log of oil
and the priest waves them for a wave
at the face of Yah Veh:
25 and he slaughters the lamb of that for the guilt
and the priest takes of the blood of that for the guilt
and gives it on the tip of the right ear
of him to be purified
and on the great digit of his right hand
and on the great digit of his right foot:
26 and the priest pours of the oil
into the palm of his own left hand:
27 and the priest sprinkles with his right finger
of the oil in his left hand seven times
at the face of Yah Veh:
28 and the priest gives of the oil in his palm
on the tip of the right ear
of him who becomes purified
and on the great digit of his right hand
and on the great digit of his right foot
on the place of the blood of that for the guilt:
29 and what remains of the oil
in the palm of the priest
he gives on the head of him to be purified
— to *kapar/atone* for him
at the face of Yah Veh.
30 And he works
one of the turtledoves or of the sons of doves,
such as his hand attains;
31 even such as his hand attains
— the one for the sin and the one for the holocaust
with the offering:
and the priest *kapars/atones*
for him to be purified at the face of Yah Veh.
32 — this *is* the torah
in whom the plague of leprosy is
— whose hand attains not to his purifying.

LEVITICUS 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

TORAH ON PURIFYING THE LEPROUS HOUSE

33 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh** and unto Aaron **Aharon**, saying,
34 When ye be come into the land of **Canaan Kenaan**,
which I give to you for a possession,
and I **put give** the plague of leprosy
in a house of the land of your possession;
35 And he that owneth the house
shall come and tell the priest, saying,
It seemeth to me there is as it were **I have seen**
a plague in the house:
36 Then the priest shall **command misvah**
that they **empty prepare** the house,
before the priest go into it to see the plague,
that all that is in the house be not **made unclean fouled**:
and afterward the priest shall go in to see the house:
37 And he shall **look on see** the plague, and, behold,
if the plague be in the **sides walls** of the house
with hollow **strakes depressions**, greenish or reddish,
which in **sight visage** are lower **than from** the wall;
38 Then the priest shall go out of the house
to the **door opening** of the house,
and shut up the house seven days:
39 And the priest shall **come again return** the seventh day,
and shall **look see**: and, behold,
if the plague be spread in the walls of the house;
40 Then the priest shall **command misvah**
that they **take away strip** the stones
in which the plague is,
and they shall cast them into **an unclean a fouled** place
without the city:
41 And he shall cause the house to be scraped
within round about,
and they shall pour out the dust that they scrape off
without the city into **an unclean a fouled** place:
42 And they shall take other stones,
and put them in the **place stead** of those stones;
and he shall take other **morter dust**,
and shall plaister the house.
43 And if the plague **come again return**,
and **break out blossom** in the house,
after that he hath **taken away stripped** the stones,
and after he hath scraped the house,
and after it is plaistered;
44 Then the priest shall come and **look see**, and, behold,
if the plague be spread in the house,
it is a **fretting bitter** leprosy in the house;
it is **unclean fouled**.
45 And he shall **break pull** down the house,
the stones of it, and the timber thereof,
and all the **morter dust** of the house;
and he shall carry them **forth out of without** the city
into **an unclean a fouled** place.
46 Moreover he that goeth into the house
all the **while days** that it is shut up
shall be **unclean fouled** until the even.
47 And he that lieth in the house
shall **wash launder** his clothes;
and he that eateth in the house
shall **wash launder** his clothes.
48 And if the priest shall come in, and **look upon it see**,
and, behold, the plague hath not spread in the house,
after the house was plaistered:
then the priest shall pronounce the house **clean purified**,
because the plague is healed.
49 And he shall take to **cleanse for the sin of** the house
two birds, and cedar **wood timber**,
and scarlet, and hyssop:
50 And he shall **kill slaughter** the one of the birds
in **an earthen vessel a pottery instrument**
over **running living** water
51 And he shall take the cedar **wood timber**,
and the hyssop, and the scarlet, and the living bird,
and dip them in the blood of the **slain slaughtered** bird,
and in the **running living** water,
and sprinkle the house seven times:
52 And he shall **cleanse sacrifice for sin for** the house
with the blood of the bird,
and with the **running living** water,

LEVITICUS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

TORAH ON PURIFYING THE LEPROUS HOUSE

33 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh and to Aharon,
saying,
34 When you come into the land of Kenaan,
which I give to you for a possession
and I give the plague of leprosy
in a house of the land of your possession;
35 and he who owns the house
comes and tells the priest, saying,
I see a plague in the house:
36 then the priest misvahs them to prepare the house
ere the priest goes in to see the plague
so that all in the house be not foul;
and afterward the priest goes in to see the house:
37 and he sees the plague, and behold,
the plague **is** in the walls of the house
with hollow depressions — greenish or reddish,
in visage lower from the wall:
38 then the priest goes from the house
to the opening of the house
and shuts the house seven days:
39 and the priest returns the seventh day and sees,
and behold,
the plague spread in the walls of the house:
40 then the priest misvahs
them to strip the stones wherein the plague **is**
and they cast them into a foul place outside the city:
41 and he scrapes the house inside and all around
and they pour the dust they scrape off
outside the city into a foul place:
42 and they take other stones
and put them in the stead of those stones:
and he takes other dust and plasters the house.
43 And if the plague returns
and blossoms in the house
after he strips the stones
and after he scrapes the house
and after they plaster it;
44 then the priest comes and sees, and behold,
if the plague spread in the house,
it **is** a bitter leprosy in the house;
— it **is** foul.
45 And he pulls down the house,
the stones and the timber
and all the dust of the house:
and he carries them outside the city into a foul place.
46 And he who goes into the house
all the days it **is** shut
becomes foul until the evening:
47 and he who lies in the house launders his clothes
and he who eats in the house launders his clothes:
48 and if in coming in, the priest comes in and sees,
and behold, the plague spread not in the house
after they plaster the house:
then the priest pronounces the house purified
because the plague healed.
49 And for the sin of the house
he takes two birds and cedar timber
and scarlet and hyssop:
50 and he slaughters the one of the birds
in a pottery instrument over living water
and he takes the cedar timber
51 and the hyssop and the scarlet and the living bird
and dips them in the blood of the slaughtered bird
and in the living water
and sprinkles the house seven times:
52 and he sacrifices for sin for the house
with the blood of the bird and with the living water

LEVITICUS 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and with the living bird, and with the cedar wood **timber**,
and with the hyssop, and with the scarlet:
53 But he shall *let go* **send away** the living bird
out of **without** the city into the *open* **face of the** fields,
and *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for the house:
and it shall be clean.
54 This is the *law* **torah**
for all *manner* of plague of leprosy, and scall,
55 And for the leprosy
of a *garment* **clothes**, and of a house,
56 And for a *rising* **swelling**,
and for a scab, and for a bright spot:
57 To *teach* **point out** when it is *unclean* **fouled**,
and when it is *clean* **pure**:
this is the *law* **torah** of leprosy.

TORAH ON FOULING

15

And the *LORD* **spake Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh** and to *Aaron* **Aharon**, saying,
2 *Speak* **Word** unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and say unto them, When **a man** — any man
hath a running issue **fluxeth** out of his flesh,
because of his issue he is unclean **his flux is fouled**.
3 And this shall be his *uncleanness* **foulness**
in his *issue* **flux**:
whether his flesh run with his *issue* **flux**,
or his flesh be stopped from his *issue* **flux**,
it is his *uncleanness* **foulness**.
4 Every bed, whereon he lieth that *hath the issue* **fluxeth**,
is *unclean* **fouled**:
and every *thing* **instrument**, whereon he sitteth,
shall be *unclean* **fouled**.
5 And *whosoever* **the man who** toucheth his bed
shall *wash* **launder** his clothes,
and *bathe* **baptize himself** in water,
and be *unclean* **fouled** until the even.
6 And he that sitteth on *any thing* **ought**
whereon he sat that *hath the issue* **fluxeth**
shall *wash* **launder** his clothes,
and *bathe* **baptize himself** in water,
and be *unclean* **fouled** until the even.
7 And he that toucheth the flesh
of him that *hath the issue* **fluxeth**
shall *wash* **launder** his clothes,
and *bathe* **baptize himself** in water,
and be *unclean* **fouled** until the even.
8 And if he that *hath the issue* **fluxeth**
spit upon him that is *clean* **pure**;
then he shall *wash* **launder** his clothes,
and *bathe* **baptize himself** in water,
and be *unclean* **fouled** until the even.
9 And *what saddle soever* **whatever chariot**
he rideth upon that *hath the issue* **fluxeth**
shall be *unclean* **fouled**.
10 And *whosoever* toucheth *any thing* **ought**
that was under him
shall be *unclean* **fouled** until the even:
and he that beareth *any of those things*
shall *wash* **launder** his clothes,
and *bathe* **baptize himself** in water,
and be *unclean* **fouled** until the even.
11 And *whomsoever* he toucheth
that *hath the issue* **fluxeth**,
and hath not *rinsed* **overflowed** his hands in water,
he shall *wash* **launder** his clothes,
and *bathe* **baptize himself** in water,
and be *unclean* **fouled** until the even.
12 And the *vessel of earth* **pottery instrument**,
that he toucheth which *hath the issue* **fluxeth**,
shall be broken:
and every *vessel* **instrument** of *wood* **timber**
shall be *rinsed* **overflowed** in water.
13 And when he that *hath an issue* **fluxeth**
is *cleansed* **purified** of his *issue* **flux**;
then he shall *number* **scribe** to himself seven days
for his *cleansing* **purifying**,
and *wash* **launder** his clothes,
and *bathe* **baptize** his flesh in *running* **living** water,
and shall be *clean* **purified**.
14 And on the eighth day he shall take to him

LEVITICUS 14, 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and with the living bird and with the cedar timber
and with the hyssop and with the scarlet:
53 but he sends away the living bird
outside the city into the face of the fields
and kapars/atones for the house:
and it becomes clean.
54 This *is* the torah for all plague of leprosy and scall
55 and for the leprosy of clothes and of a house
56 and for a swelling
and for a scab and for a bright spot:
57 to point out when it becomes foul
and when it becomes pure:
— the torah of leprosy.

TORAH ON FOULING

15

And Yah Veh words to Mosheh and to Aharon,
saying,
2 Word to the sons of Yisra El and say to them,
When a man — any man fluxes from his flesh,
his flux *is* foul.
3 And this *is* his foulness in his flux:
whether his flesh runs with his flux
or his flesh stops from his flux:
— it *is* his foulness.
4 Every bed whereon he who fluxes lies
becomes foul:
and every instrument whereon he sits
becomes foul.
5 And the man who touches his bed
launders his clothes and baptizes in water
and becomes foul until the evening.
6 And he who sits on aught
whereon he who fluxes sat,
launders his clothes and baptizes in water
and becomes foul until the evening.
7 And he who touches the flesh of him who fluxes
launders his clothes and baptizes in water
and becomes foul until the evening.
8 And if he who fluxes spits on him who *is* pure;
he launders his clothes and baptizes in water
and becomes foul until the evening.
9 And whatever chariot he who fluxes rides on
becomes foul.
10 And whoever touches aught that was under him
becomes foul until the evening:
and he who bears those
launders his clothes and baptizes in water
and becomes foul until the evening.
11 And whomever he who fluxes touches
and overflows not his hands in water,
launders his clothes and baptizes in water
and becomes foul until the evening.
12 And break the pottery instrument
he who fluxes touches:
and overflow every instrument of timber in water.
13 And when he who fluxes
purifies of his flux;
he scribes himself seven days for his purifying:
and launders his clothes
and baptizes his flesh in living water
and *is* purified:
14 and on the eighth day he takes himself

LEVITICUS 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

two turtledoves, or two young pigeons sons of doves,
and come before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh
unto the door opening
of the tabernacle tent of the congregation,
and give them unto the priest:
15 And the priest shall offer work them,
the one for a sin offering the sin,
and the other one for a burnt offering holocaust;
and the priest shall make an atonement kapar/atone
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh for his issue flux.
16 And if any man's seed of copulation go out from him,
then he shall wash baptize all his flesh in water,
and be unclean fouled until the even.
17 And every garment cloth, and every skin,
whereon is the seed of copulation,
shall be washed laundered with water,
and be unclean fouled until the even.
18 The woman also
with whom man shall lie with seed of copulation,
they shall both bathe baptize themselves in water,
and be unclean fouled until the even.
19 And if a woman have an issue fluxeth,
and her issue flux in her flesh be blood,
she shall be put apart in her exclusion seven days:
and whosoever toucheth her
shall be unclean fouled until the even.
20 And every thing all that she lieth upon
in her separation exclusion shall be unclean fouled:
every thing all also that she sitteth upon
shall be unclean fouled.
21 And whosoever toucheth her bed
shall wash launder his clothes,
and bathe baptize himself in water,
and be unclean fouled until the even.
22 And whosoever toucheth any thing instrument
that she sat upon
shall wash launder his clothes,
and bathe baptize himself in water,
and be unclean fouled until the even.
23 And if it be on her bed,
or on any thing instrument whereon she sitteth,
when he toucheth it,
he shall be unclean fouled until the even.
24 And if in lying, any man lie one lie with her at all,
and her flowers exclusion be upon him,
he shall be unclean fouled seven days;
and all the bed whereon he lieth shall be unclean fouled.
25 And if a woman have an issue flux a flux
of her blood many days
out of not in the time of her separation exclusion,
or if it run flux
beyond the time of her separation exclusion;
all the days of the issue flux of her uncleanness foulness
shall be as the days of her separation exclusion:
she shall be unclean fouled.
26 Every bed whereon she lieth
all the days of her issue flux
shall be unto her as the bed of her separation exclusion:
and whatsoever instrument she sitteth upon
shall be unclean fouled,
as the uncleanness foulness of her separation exclusion.
27 And whosoever toucheth those things
shall be unclean fouled,
and shall wash launder his clothes,
and bathe baptize himself in water,
and be unclean fouled until the even.
28 But if she be cleansed purified of her issue flux,
then she shall number scribe to herself seven days,
and after that she shall be clean purified.
29 And on the eighth day
she shall take unto her two turtledoves,
or two young pigeons sons of doves,
and bring them unto the priest,
to the door opening
of the tabernacle tent of the congregation.
30 And the priest shall offer work the one
for a sin offering the sin,
and the other one for a burnt offering holocaust;
and the priest shall make an atonement kapar/atone for her

LEVITICUS 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

two turtledoves or two sons of doves
and comes at the face of Yah Veh
to the opening of the tent of the congregation
and gives them to the priest:
and the priest works them
15 — one for the sin and one for a holocaust:
and the priest kapars/atones
at the face of Yah Veh for his flux.
16 And when the seed of copulation
goes out from any man,
he baptizes all his flesh in water
and becomes foul until the evening:
and launders with water
every cloth and every skin
whereon the seed of copulation is:
and it becomes foul until the evening.
17
18 And the woman and the man
who lie with seed of copulation
— they baptize in water
and become foul until the evening.
19 And when a woman fluxes
and her flux in her flesh is blood,
she becomes in her exclusion seven days:
and whoever touches her
becomes foul until the evening.
20 And in her exclusion
all she lies on becomes foul:
and all she sits on becomes foul.
21 And whoever touches her bed
launders his clothes and baptizes in water
and becomes foul until the evening.
22 And whoever touches any instrument she sits on
launders his clothes and baptizes in water
and becomes foul until the evening.
23 And if it is on a bed,
or any instrument whereon she sits,
when he touches it
he becomes foul until the evening.
24 And if in lying, any one lies with her
and her exclusion becomes on him,
he becomes foul seven days;
and all the bed whereon he lies becomes foul.
25 And if a woman flux a flux of her blood many days
not in the time of her exclusion;
or if she flux beyond the time of her exclusion;
all the days of the flux of her foulness
become as the days of her exclusion:
she becomes foul.
26 Every bed whereon she lies all the days of her flux
become to her as the bed of her exclusion:
and whatever instrument she sits on becomes foul
as the foulness of her exclusion.
27 And whoever touches those becomes foul
and launders his clothes and baptizes in water
and becomes foul until the evening.
28 And if she purifies of her flux,
then she scribes to herself seven days
and after that she is purified:
and on the eighth day
she takes two turtledoves or two sons of doves
and brings them to the priest
to the opening of the tent of the congregation:
and the priest works the one for the sin
and the one for a holocaust;
and the priest kapars/atones for her

LEVITICUS 15, 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh
for the issue flux of her uncleanness foulness.
31 Thus shall ye separate
the children sons of Israel Yisra El
from their uncleanness foulness;
that they die not in their uncleanness foulness,
when they defile foul my tabernacle that is among them.
32 This is the law torah of him that hath the issue fluxeth,
and of him whose seed of copulation goeth from him,
and is defiled fouled therewith;
33 And of her
that is sick menstrous of her flowers exclusion,
and of him that hath the issue fluxeth the flux,
of the man, and of the woman female,
and of him that lieth with her that is unclean fouled.

TORAH ON KIPPURIM/ATONEMENTS: THE SCAPEGOAT

16

And the LORD Yah Veh
spake worded unto Moses Mosheh
after the death of the two sons of Aaron Aharon,
when they offered obliterated
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh, and died;
2 And the LORD Yah Veh said unto Moses Mosheh,
Speak Word unto Aaron Aharon thy brother,
that he come not at all times
into the holy place within holies that houseth the vail
before at the face of the mercy seat kapporeth,
which is upon the ark; that he die not:
for I will appear shall be seen in the cloud
upon the mercy seat kapporeth.
3 Thus shall Aaron Aharon
come into the holy place holies:
with a young bullock son of the oxen
for a sin offering the sin,
and a ram for a burnt offering holocaust.
4 He shall put on enrobe the holy linen coat,
and he shall have the linen breeches upon his flesh,
and shall be girded with a linen girdle,
and with the linen mitre tiara shall he be attired:
these are holy garments clothes;
therefore shall he wash baptize his flesh in water,
and so put thus enrobe them on.
5 And he shall take of the congregation witness
of the children sons of Israel Yisra El
two kids bucks of the goats for a sin offering the sin,
and one ram for a burnt offering holocaust.
6 And Aaron Aharon shall offer oblate his bullock
of the sin offering for the sin, which is for himself,
and make an atonement kapar/atone for himself,
and for his house.
7 And he shall take the two goats bucks,
and present stand them
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh
at the door opening
of the tabernacle tent of the congregation.
8 And Aaron Aharon shall cast lots give pebbles
upon the two goats bucks;
one lot pebble for the LORD Yah Veh,
and the other lot one pebble for the scapegoat.
9 And Aaron Aharon shall bring oblate the goat buck
upon which
the LORD'S lot fell Yah Veh's pebble ascended,
and offer work him for a sin offering the sin.
10 But the goat buck,
on which the lot fell pebble ascended
to be the scapegoat,
shall be presented stood alive
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
to make an atonement kapar/atone with him,
and to let him go send him away for a scapegoat
into the wilderness.
11 And Aaron Aharon shall bring oblate the bullock
of the sin offering for the sin,
which is for himself,
and shall make an atonement kapar/atone for himself,
and for his house,
and shall kill slaughter the bullock
of the sin offering for the sin
which is for himself:

LEVITICUS 15, 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

at the face of Yah Veh
for the flux of her foulness.
31 Thus you separate the sons of Yisra El
from their foulness;
that they not die in their foulness
when they foul my tabernacle in their midst.
32 This is the torah of him who fluxes
and of him whose seed of copulation goes from him
and fouls therewith:
33 and of her who is menstrous of her exclusion
and of him who fluxes the flux
— of the man and of the female
and of him who lies with her who is foul.

TORAH ON KIPPURIM/ATONEMENTS: THE SCAPEGOAT

16

And Yah Veh words to Mosheh
after the death of the two sons of Aharon,
as they obliterated at the face of Yah Veh and died:
2 and Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Word to Aharon your brother,
to not come at all times
into the holies that houses the veil
at the face of the kapporeth on the ark
— that he not die:
for I appear in the cloud on the kapporeth.
3 Thus Aharon comes into the holies:
with a bullock son of the oxen for the sin
and a ram for a holocaust:
4 he enrobes the holy linen coat
and the linen breeches on his flesh
and girds a linen girdle and attires the linen tiara
— the holy clothes:
and he baptizes his flesh in water
and enrobes them:
5 and of the witness of the sons of Yisra El
he takes two bucks of the goats for the sin
and one ram for a holocaust:
6 and Aharon oblates his bullock for the sin
which is for himself;
and kapars/atones for himself and for his house:
7 and he takes the two bucks
and stands them at the face of Yah Veh
at the opening of the tent of the congregation:
8 and Aharon gives pebbles on the two bucks
— one pebble for Yah Veh
and one pebble for the scapegoat:
9 and Aharon oblates the buck
on which the pebble of Yah Veh ascends
and works him for the sin:
10 and the buck
on which the pebble of the scapegoat ascends
stands alive at the face of Yah Veh
to kapar/atone by him
and to send him away
— a scapegoat into the wilderness.
11 And Aharon oblates the bullock for the sin
which is for himself;
and kapars/atones for himself and for his house
and slaughters the bullock for the sin
which is for himself:

LEVITICUS 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 12 And he shall take a **censer tray**
full of burning coals of fire from off the **sacrifice altar**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
and his **hands fists** full
of sweet incense of **aromatics** beaten *small thin,*
and bring it *within to the housing of the veil:*
13 And he shall **put give** the incense upon the fire
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
that the cloud of the incense
may cover the **mercy seat kapporeth**
that is upon the **testimony witness**, that he die not:
14 And he shall take of the blood of the bullock,
and sprinkle it with his finger
upon the **mercy seat face of the kapporeth** eastward;
and **before upon the face**
of the mercy seat kapporeth
shall he sprinkle of the blood with his finger seven times.
15 Then shall he **kill slaughter** the **goat buck**
of the sin offering for the sin,
that is for the people,
and bring his blood within **the housing of the veil,**
and **do with work** that blood
as he *did with worked* the blood of the bullock,
and sprinkle it upon the **mercy seat kapporeth,**
and **before at the face of the mercy seat kapporeth:**
16 And he shall **make an atonement kapar/atone**
for the **holy place holies,**
because of the **uncleanness foulness**
of the **children sons of Israel Yisra El,**
and because of their **transgressions rebellions**
in all their sins:
and so shall he **do work**
for the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation,
that **remaineth tabernacleth** among them
in the midst of their **uncleanness foulness.**
17 And there shall be no **man human**
in the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation
when he goeth in
to **make an atonement kapar/atone** in the **holy place holies,**
until he come out,
and **have made an atonement kapar/atone** for himself,
and for his household,
and for all the congregation of **Israel Yisra El.**
18 And he shall go out unto the **sacrifice altar**
that is before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
and **make an atonement kapar/atone** for it;
and shall take of the blood of the bullock,
and of the blood of the **goat buck,**
and **put give** it
upon the horns of the **sacrifice altar** round about.
19 And he shall sprinkle of the blood upon it
with his finger seven times, and **cleanse purify** it,
and hallow it from the **uncleanness foulness**
of the **children sons of Israel Yisra El.**
20 And when he hath
made an end of reconciling finished to kapar/atone
in the **holy place holies,**
and the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation,
and the **sacrifice altar,**
he shall **bring oblate** the live **goat buck:**
21 And **Aaron Aharon** shall **lay both prop** his **two hands**
upon the head of the live **goat buck,**
and **confess wring hands** over him
all the **iniquities perversities**
of the **children sons of Israel Yisra El,**
and all their **transgressions rebellions** in all their sins,
putting and give them upon the head of the **goat buck,**
and shall send him away
by the hand of a **fit timely** man into the wilderness:
22 And the **goat buck** shall bear upon him
all their **iniquities perversities**
unto a land **not inhabited of separation:**
and he shall **let go send away** the **goat buck**
in the wilderness.
23 And **Aaron Aharon** shall come
into the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation,
and shall **put off strip** the linen **garments clothes,**
which he **put on enrobed**
when he went into the **holy place holies,**

LEVITICUS 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 12 and he takes a tray full of burning coals of fire
from off the sacrifice altar at the face of Yah Veh
and his fists full of incense of aromatics beaten thin
and brings it to the housing of the veil:
13 and he gives the incense on the fire
at the face of Yah Veh,
so that the cloud of the incense
covers the kapporeth on the witness
that he not die:
14 and he takes of the blood of the bullock
and with his finger,
sprinkles it on the face of the kapporeth eastward;
and with his finger he sprinkles of the blood
on the face of the kapporeth seven times:
15 and he slaughters the buck for the sin
which *is* for the people;
and brings his blood inside the housing of the veil;
and works that blood
as he worked the blood of the bullock;
and sprinkles it on the kapporeth
and at the face of the kapporeth:
16 and he kapars/atones for the holies
because of the foulness of the sons of Yisra El
and because of their rebellions in all their sins:
and thus he works for the face of the congregation
that tabernacles among them midst their foulness:
17 and there is no human
in the tent of the congregation
when he goes in to kapar/atone in the holies
until he comes out:
and he kapars/atones for himself
and for his household
and for all the congregation of Yisra El:
18 and he goes out to the sacrifice altar
at the face of Yah Veh
and kapars/atones for it;
and takes of the blood of the bullock
and of the blood of the buck
and gives it
on the horns of the sacrifice altar all around:
19 and with his finger
he sprinkles thereon of the blood seven times
and purifies it and hallows it
from the foulness of the sons of Yisra El.
20 And when he finishes to kapar/atone in the holies
and the tent of the congregation and the sacrifice altar
he oblates the live buck:
21 and Aharon props his two hands
on the head of the live buck
and wrings hands over him
for all the perversities of the sons of Yisra El
and all their rebellions in all their sins
and gives them on the head of the buck;
and by the hand of a timely man
sends him away into the wilderness:
22 and the buck bears all their perversities on himself
to a land of separation:
and he sends away the buck in the wilderness.
23 And Aharon goes into the tent of the congregation
and strips the linen clothes
he enrobes when he goes into the holies;

LEVITICUS 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and shall leave **set** them there:
24 And he shall wash **baptize** his flesh with water
in the *holy place* **holies**,
and *put on* **enrobe** his *garments* **clothes**, and come forth,
and *offer work* his *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
and the *burnt offering* **holocaust** of the people,
and *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for himself,
and for the people.
25 And the fat of the *sin offering* **that for the sin**
shall he *burn* **incense** upon the **sacrifice** altar.
26 And he that *let go* **sent** the *goat* **buck**
for the scapegoat
shall wash **launder** his clothes,
and wash **baptize** his flesh in water,
and afterward come into the camp.
27 And the bullock for the *sin offering*,
and the *goat* **buck** for the *sin offering*,
whose blood was brought in
to *make atonement* **kapar/atone** in the *holy place* **holies**,
shall one carry forth without the camp;
and they shall burn in the fire their skins,
and their flesh, and their dung.
28 And he that burneth them
shall wash **launder** his clothes,
and wash **baptize** his flesh in water,
and afterward he shall come into the camp.
ANNUAL KOPER/ATONEMENT
29 And this shall be a **an eternal** statute *for ever* unto you:
that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month,
ye shall *afflict* **humble** your souls,
and *do work* no work at all,
whether it be one of your own country — **native**,
or a *stranger* **sojourner** that sojourneth among you:
30 For on that day
shall the priest *make an atonement* **he** **kapar/atone** for you,
to *cleanse* **purify** you,
that ye may be *clean* **purified** from all your sins
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**.
31 It shall be a *sabbath* **shabbath**
of rest — a **shabbathism** unto you,
and ye shall *afflict* **humble** your souls,
by a **an eternal** statute *for ever*.
32 And the priest, whom he shall anoint,
and whom he shall *consecrate* **fill his hand**
to *minister in the priest's office* **priest the priesthood**
in his father's stead,
shall *make the atonement* **kapar/atone**,
and shall *put on* **enrobe** the linen clothes,
even the *holy garments* **clothes**:
33 And he shall *make an atonement* **kapar/atone**
for the *holy sanctuary* **holy of holies**,
and he shall *make an atonement* **kapar/atone**
for the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
and for the **sacrifice** altar,
and he shall
make an atonement **kapar/atone** for the priests,
and for all the people of the congregation.
34 And this shall be
an *everlasting* **eternal** statute unto you,
to *make an atonement* **kapar/atone**
for the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
for all their sins once a year.
And he *did* **worked** as *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**.

TORAH ON SLAUGHTER

17 And the *LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh** **worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
2 *Speak* **Word** unto *Aaron* **Aharon**, and unto his sons,
and unto all the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
and say unto them; This is the *thing* **word**
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *commanded* **misvahed**,
saying,
3 *What man soever* **A man** — **any man**
there be of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that *killeth* **slaughtereth** an ox, or lamb, or goat,
in the camp,
or that *killeth* **slaughtereth** it *out of* **without** the camp,
4 And bringeth it not unto the **door** **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,

LEVITICUS 16, 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and sets them there:
24 and he baptizes his flesh in water in the holies
and enrobes his clothes;
and comes and works his holocaust
and the holocaust of the people
and kapars/atones for himself and for the people:
25 and he incenses the fat of that for the sin
on the sacrifice altar.
26 And he who sent the buck for the scapegoat
launders his clothes and baptizes his flesh in water
and afterward comes into the camp.
27 And the bullock for the sin and the buck for the sin
whose blood they bring to kapar/atone in the holies,
one carries outside the camp;
and in the fire they burn their skins
and their flesh and their dung:
28 and he who burns them
launders his clothes and baptizes his flesh in water
and afterward comes into the camp.
ANNUAL KOPER/ATONEMENT
29 And this becomes an eternal statute to you:
in the seventh month, on the tenth of the month,
humble your souls and work no work,
whether native or sojourner sojourning among you:
30 for on that day he kapars/atones for you,
to purify you,
you purify from all your sins
at the face of Yah Veh.
31 It is a shabbath
— a shabbathism to you to humble your souls
— an eternal statute.
32 And the priest whom he anoints
and whose hand he fills
to priest the priesthood in the stead of his father,
kapars/atones and enrobes the linen clothes
— the holy clothes:
33 and he kapars/atones for the holy of holies;
and he kapars/atones for the tent of the congregation
and for the sacrifice altar;
and he kapars/atones for the priests
and for all the people of the congregation:
34 and this becomes an eternal statute to you
to kapar/atone for the sons of Yisra El
for all their sins once a year.
— and he works as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

TORAH ON SLAUGHTER

17 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Word to Aharon and to his sons
and to all the sons of Yisra El, and say to them;
This is the word Yah Veh misvahed, saying,
3 A man — any man of the house of Yisra El
who slaughters ox or lamb or goat inside the camp,
or who slaughters outside the camp,
and brings it not
4 to the opening of the tent of the congregation,

LEVITICUS 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

to offer an offering **obliterate a qorban**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**

before **at the face of** the tabernacle of the **LORD Yah Veh**;
blood shall be *imputed* **fabricated** unto that man;
he hath *shed* **poured** blood;

and that man shall be cut off from among his people:

5 To the end that the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
may bring their sacrifices, which they *offer* **sacrifice**
in the open **at the face of the field**,
even that they may bring them unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
unto the **door opening**
of the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation, unto the priest,
and *offer* **sacrifice** them for *peace offerings* **shelamim**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.

6 And the priest shall sprinkle the blood
upon the **sacrifice altar of the LORD Yah Veh**
at the **door opening**
of the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation,
and *burn* **incense** the fat
for a *sweet savour* **scent of rest** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.

7 And they shall no more
offer **sacrifice** their sacrifices unto *devils* **bucks**,
after whom they have *gone* a *whoring* **whored**.
This shall be a **an eternal** statute for ever
unto them throughout their generations.

THE SOUL OF THE FLESH

8 And thou shalt say unto them,
Whatsoever man **A man — any man**
there be of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
or of the *strangers* **sojourners** which sojourn among you,
that *offereth* **holocausteth**

9 a *burnt offering* **holocaust** or sacrifice,
And bringeth it not unto the **door opening**
of the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation,
to *offer* **work** it unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
even that man shall be cut off from among his people.

10 And *whatsoever man* **a man — any man**
there be of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
or of the *strangers* **sojourners** that sojourn among you,
that eateth any manner of blood;
I *will* **shall** even *set* **give** my face
against that soul that eateth blood,
and *will* **shall** cut him off from among his people.

THE SOUL OF THE FLESH IS IN THE BLOOD

11 For the *life* **soul** of the flesh is in the blood:
and I have given it to you upon the **sacrifice** altar
to *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for your souls:
for it is the blood

12 that *maketh an atonement* **shall kapar/atone** for the soul.
Therefore I said unto the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
No soul of you shall eat blood,
neither shall any *stranger* **sojourner**
that sojourneth among you eat blood.

13 And *whatsoever man* **a man — any man**
there be of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
or of the *strangers* **sojourners** that sojourn among you,
which hunteth and *catcheth* **to hunt**
any *beast* **live being** or *fowl* **flyer** that may be eaten;
he shall *even* **pour out** the blood thereof,
and cover it with dust.

14 For it is the *life* **soul** of all flesh;
the blood of it is for the *life* **soul** thereof:
therefore I said unto the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
Ye shall eat the blood of no *manner of* flesh:
for the *life* **soul** of all flesh is the blood thereof:
whosoever eateth it shall be cut off.

15 And every soul
that eateth *that which died of itself* **of a carcass**,
or that which was torn *with beasts*,
whether it be one of your own country **native**,
or a *stranger* **sojourner**,
he shall *both* **wash** **launder** his clothes,
and *bathe* **baptize himself** in water,
and be *unclean* **fouled** until the even:
then shall he be *clean* **purified**.

16 But if he *wash* **launder** them not,
nor *bathe* **baptize** his flesh;
then he shall bear his *iniquity* **perversity**.

LEVITICUS 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to obliterate a qorban to Yah Veh
at the face of the tabernacle of Yah Veh;

blood fabricates to that man
— he poured blood;

5 and that man is cut off from among his people
— so that the sons of Yisra El
bring the sacrifices they sacrifice
on the face of the field;

6 yes, they bring them to Yah Veh
to the opening of the tent of the congregation
to the priest;
and sacrifice them for shelamim to Yah Veh:
and the priest sprinkles the blood
on the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh
at the opening of the tent of the congregation;
and incenses the fat for a scent of rest to Yah Veh:
7 and no more sacrifice their sacrifices to bucks
after whom they whored.
— an eternal statute to them
throughout their generations.

THE SOUL OF THE FLESH

8 And say to them,
A man — any man of the house of Yisra El
or of the sojourners sojourning among you
who holocaust a holocaust or sacrifice,
9 and bring it not
to the opening of the tent of the congregation,
to work it to Yah Veh;
that man is cut off from among his people:
10 and a man — any man of the house of Yisra El
or of the sojourners sojourning among you
who eats any manner of blood
— I give my face against that soul who eats blood
and cut him off from among his people.

THE SOUL OF THE FLESH IS IN THE BLOOD

11 For the soul of the flesh is in the blood:
and I give it to you on the sacrifice altar
to kapar/atone for your souls:
for the blood kapars/atones for the soul.

12 So I say to the sons of Yisra El,
that neither any soul of you eats blood,
nor any sojourner sojourning among you eats blood:
13 and a man — any man of the sons of Yisra El
or of the sojourners sojourning among you
who hunts to hunt any live being or flyer to eat;
to pour out the blood thereof and cover it with dust.
14 For it is the soul of all flesh
— its blood is for its soul:

I say to the sons of Yisra El,
Eat no blood of any flesh;
for the soul of all flesh is its blood:
and whoever eats is cut off.

15 And every soul who eats of a carcass, or of torn,
launders his clothes and baptizes in water
and is fouled until evening:
then he is purified:
16 and if he neither launders them nor baptizes his flesh
he bears his perversity.

LEVITICUS 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

18 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh** worded
 unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
 2 Speak **Word** unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 and say unto them,
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your **God Elohim**.
 3 After the *doings* **works** of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
 wherein ye *dwelt* **settled**, shall ye not *do* **work**:
 and after the *doings* **works** of the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
 whither I bring you, shall ye not *do* **work**:
 neither shall ye walk in their *ordinances* **statutes**.
 4 Ye shall *do* **work** my judgments,
 and *keep* **guard** mine ordinances, to walk therein:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your **God Elohim**.
 5 Ye shall *therefore* *keep* **guard** my statutes,
 and my judgments:
 which if a *man* *do* **human work**, he shall live in them:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.
TORAH ON EXPOSING NAKEDNESS
 6 *None of you* **Man** — **no man** shall approach
 to any that is *near of kin* **kinflesh** to him,
 to *uncover* **expose** their nakedness:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.
 7 The nakedness of thy father,
 or the nakedness of thy mother,
 shalt thou not *uncover* **expose**:
 she is thy mother;
 thou shalt not *uncover* **expose** her nakedness.
 8 The nakedness of thy father's *wife* **woman**
 shalt thou not *uncover* **expose**:
 it is thy father's nakedness.
 9 The nakedness of thy sister,
 the daughter of thy father, or daughter of thy mother,
whether she be born at **kindred of home**,
or born abroad **kindred without**,
 even their nakedness thou shalt not *uncover* **expose**.
 10 The nakedness of thy son's daughter,
 or of thy daughter's daughter,
 even their nakedness thou shalt not *uncover* **expose**:
 for theirs is thine own nakedness.
 11 The nakedness of thy father's *wife's* **woman's** daughter,
begotten **kindred** of thy father, she is thy sister,
 thou shalt not *uncover* **expose** her nakedness.
 12 Thou shalt not *uncover* **expose**
 the nakedness of thy father's sister:
 she is thy father's *near kinswoman* **kinflesh**.
 13 Thou shalt not *uncover* **expose**
 the nakedness of thy mother's sister:
 for she is thy mother's *near kinswoman* **kinflesh**.
 14 Thou shalt not *uncover* **expose**
 the nakedness of thy father's brother,
 thou shalt not approach to his *wife* **woman**:
 she is thine aunt.
 15 Thou shalt not *uncover* **expose**
 the nakedness of thy daughter in law:
 she is thy son's *wife* **woman**;
 thou shalt not *uncover* **expose** her nakedness.
 16 Thou shalt not *uncover* **expose**
 the nakedness of thy brother's *wife* **woman**:
 it is thy brother's nakedness.
 17 Thou shalt not *uncover* **expose**
 the nakedness of a woman and her daughter,
 neither shalt thou take her son's daughter,
 or her daughter's daughter,
 to *uncover* **expose** her nakedness;
 for they are her *near kinswomen* **kin**:
 it is *wickedness* **intrigue**.
 18 Neither shalt thou take a *wife* **woman** to her sister,
 to vex **tribulate** her,
 to *uncover* **expose** her nakedness,
 beside the other in her life *time*.
 19 Also thou shalt not approach unto a woman

LEVITICUS 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

18 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
 2 Word to the sons of Yisra El, and say to them,
 I — Yah Veh your Elohim.
 3 Neither work
 after the works of the land of Misrayim,
 wherein you settled;
 nor work after the works of the land of Kenaan,
 where I bring you;
 nor walk in their statutes.
 4 Work my judgments
 and guard my ordinances, to walk therein:
 I — Yah Veh your Elohim.
 5 Guard my statutes and my judgments:
 which if a human works, he lives therein.
 I — Yah Veh.
TORAH ON EXPOSING NAKEDNESS
 6 Man — no man approaches any of his kinflesh
 to expose their nakedness.
 I — Yah Veh.
 7 Expose not the nakedness of your father
 or the nakedness of your mother:
 she *is* your mother; expose not her nakedness.
 8 Expose not the nakedness
 of the woman of your father:
 it *is* the nakedness of your father.
 9 Expose not the nakedness of your sister,
 the daughter of your father
 or daughter of your mother
 — whether kindred of home or kindred outside:
 expose not their nakedness.
 10 Expose not the nakedness
 of the daughter of your son
 or of the daughter of your daughter
 — even their nakedness:
 for theirs *is* your own nakedness.
 11 Expose not the nakedness
 of the daughter of the woman of your father,
 kindred of your father:
 she *is* your sister;
 expose not her nakedness.
 12 Expose not the nakedness
 of the sister of your father:
 she *is* kinflesh of your father.
 13 Expose not the nakedness
 of the sister of your mother:
 for she *is* kinflesh of your mother.
 14 Expose not the nakedness
 of the brother of your father;
 nor approach his woman — she *is* your aunt.
 15 Expose not the nakedness of your daughter in law:
 she *is* the woman of your son:
 expose not her nakedness.
 16 Expose not the nakedness
 of the woman of your brother:
 it *is* the nakedness of your brother.
 17 Expose not the nakedness
 of a woman and her daughter;
 take not the daughter of her son
 or the daughter of her daughter
 to expose her nakedness;
 for they *are* her kin:
 — it *is* intrigue.
 18 Take not a woman to her sister to tribulate her;
 to expose her nakedness beside the other in her life.
 19 And approach not a woman

LEVITICUS 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

to uncover **expose** her nakedness,
as long as she is *put apart in exclusion*
for her *uncleanness* **foulness**.

20 Moreover
thou shalt not *lie carnally with* **copulate to give seed**
to thy neighbour's wife friend's woman,
to *defile* **foul** thyself with her.

21 And thou shalt not *let give* any of thy seed
to pass through the fire to Molech,
neither shalt thou profane the name of thy *God* **Elohim**:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.

ON HOMOSEXUALITY AND BESTIALITY

22 Thou shalt not lie with *mankind* **male**,
as **bedding** with *womankind* **a woman**:
it is *abomination* **abhorrent**.

23 Neither shalt thou *lie give to copulate*
with any *beast* **animal** to *defile* **foul** thyself therewith:
neither shall any woman stand
before a beast **to face an animal**
to *lie down thereto* **copulate**:
it is *confusion* **comingling**.

24 *Defile* **Foul** not ye yourselves in any of these *things*:
for in all these the *nations* **goyim** are *defiled* **fouled**
which I *cast out before you* **sent away from your face**:

25 And the land is *defiled* **fouled**:
therefore

I do visit the *iniquity* **perversity** thereof upon it,
and the land itself vomiteth *out*
her inhabitants **them who settle her**.

26 Ye shall *therefore keep* **guard** my statutes
and my judgments,
and shall not *commit* **work**
any of these abominations **abhorrences**;
neither any of your own nation **native**,
nor *any stranger* **sojourner** that sojourneth among you:

27 (For all these *abominations* **abhorrences**
have the men of the land *done* **worked**,
which were *before you* **at your face**,
and the land is *defiled* **fouled**;))

28 *That* **Lest** the land *spue not you out also* **vomit you**,
when ye *defile* **foul** it,
as it *spued* **vomited** *out the nations* **goyim**
that were before you **at your face**.

29 For whosoever shall *commit* **work**
any of these *abominations* **abhorrences**,
even the souls that *commit* **work** them
shall be cut off from among their people.

30 Therefore shall ye
keep mine ordinance **guard my guard**,
that ye *commit not any one* **work none** of these
abominable customs **abhorrent statutes**,
which were *committed before you* **worked at your face**,
and that ye *defile* **foul** not yourselves therein:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your *God* **Elohim**.

CALL TO HOLINESS

19 And the *LORD* **spake** *Yah Veh* **worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,

2 *Speak* **Word** unto all the *congregation* **witness**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and say unto them, Ye shall be holy:
for I the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim** am holy.
3 Ye shall *fear* **awe** every man his mother, and his father,
and *keep* **guard** my *sabbaths* **shabbaths**:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your *God* **Elohim**.

4 Turn ye not **your face** unto idols,
nor *make* **work** to yourselves molten *gods* **elohim**:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your *God* **Elohim**.

5 And if ye *offer* **sacrifice** a sacrifice
of *peace offerings* **shelamim** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
ye shall *offer* **sacrifice** it at your *own will* **pleasure**.

6 It shall be eaten the same day ye *offer* **sacrifice** it,
and on the morrow:
and if ought remain until the third day,
it shall be burnt in the fire.

7 And if **in eating**, it be eaten *at all* on the third day,
it is *abominable* **a stench**;
it shall not be *accepted* **please**.

8 *Therefore every one* **He** that eateth it
shall bear his *iniquity* **perversity**,

LEVITICUS 18, 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to expose her nakedness,
as long as she *is* in exclusion for her foulness.

20 And copulate not to give seed
to the woman of your friend;
to foul yourself with her.

21 And give not any of your seed
to pass through to Molech:
profane not the name of your Elohim:
I — Yah Veh.

ON HOMOSEXUALITY AND BESTIALITY

22 Lie not with a male as bedding with a woman:
it *is* abhorrent.

23 Give not yourself to copulate with any animal
to foul yourself therewith:
and stand not a woman to face an animal to copulate:
it *is* comingling.

24 Foul not yourselves in any of these:
for in all these the *goyim* foul
— whom I sent away from your face:

25 and the land fouled:
so I visit the perversity thereof thereon;
and the land itself vomits them who settle her.

26 Guard my statutes and my judgments
and work not any of these abhorrences
— native and sojourner sojourning among you:

27 for the men of the land at your face
worked all these abhorrences
and fouled the land;

28 lest the land vomits you, when you foul it,
as it vomited the *goyim* at your face.

29 For whoever works any of these abhorrences,
even the souls that work them
are cut off from among their people.

30 So guard my guard,
that you work none of these abhorrent statutes,
which *are* worked at your face
and that you not foul yourselves therein:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.

CALL TO HOLINESS

19 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Word to all the witness of the sons of Yisra El
and say to them, Be holy:
for I Yah Veh your Elohim — holy.
3 Every man, awe his mother and his father
and guard my shabbaths:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.

4 Neither turn your face to idols,
nor work to yourselves molten elohim:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.

5 And when you sacrifice a sacrifice of shelamim
to Yah Veh,
sacrifice it at your pleasure.

6 Eat it the day you sacrifice it and on the morrow:
and if ought remains until the third day,
burn it in the fire.

7 And if in eating, you eat on the third day,
it *is* a stench — not pleasing.

8 He who eats it bears his perversity,

LEVITICUS 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- because he hath profaned
the *hallowed thing* **holies** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
and that soul shall be cut off from among his people.
- 9 And when ye *reap* **harvest** the harvest of your land,
thou shalt not *wholly* **finish off**
reap **harvesting** the *corners* **edges** of thy field,
neither shalt thou *gather* **glean**
the gleanings of thy harvest.
- 10 And thou shalt not *glean* **exploit** thy vineyard,
neither shalt thou *gather every grape* **glean the stray fruit**
of thy vineyard;
thou shalt leave them
for the *poor* **humbled** and *stranger* **sojourner**:
I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**.
Ye shall not steal, neither *deal falsely* **deceive**,
neither *lie one* **falsify man** to another **friend**.
- ON OATHING BY THE NAME OF YAH VEH**
- 12 And ye shall not *swear* **oath** by my name falsely,
neither shalt thou profane the name of thy *God* **Elohim**:
I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh**.
- 13 Thou shalt not *defraud* **extort** thy *neighbour* **friend**,
neither *rob* **strip** him:
the *wages of him that is hired* **deeds of an hireling**
shall not *abide* **stay** with thee
all night **overnight** until the morning.
- 14 Thou shalt not *curse* **abase** the deaf,
nor *put* **give** a stumblingblock *before* **in front of** the blind,
but shalt *fear* **awe** thy *God* **Elohim**:
I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh**.
- 15 Ye shall *do* **work** no *unrighteousness* **wickedness**
in judgment:
thou shalt not *respect* **exalt** the *person* **face** of the poor,
nor *honor* **esteem** the *person* **face** of the *mighty* **greater**:
but in *righteousness* **justness**
shalt thou judge thy *neighbour* **friend**.
- 16 Thou shalt not *go up and down as* **be** a talebearer
among thy people:
neither shalt thou stand
against the blood of thy *neighbour* **friend**;
I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh**.
- 17 Thou shalt not hate thy brother in thine heart:
thou shalt in *any wise* **reproving**,
rebuke **reprove** thy *neighbour* **friend**,
and not *suffer* **exalt his** sin upon him.
- 18 Thou shalt not avenge,
nor *bear any grudge* **guard**
against the *children* **sons** of thy people,
but thou shalt love thy *neighbour* **friend** as thyself:
I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh**.
- 19 Ye shall *keep* **guard** my statutes.
Thou shalt not let thy *cattle* **gender** **animals copulate**
with a *diverse kind* **heterogenetic inductions**:
thou shalt not *sow* **seed** thy *field* **seed**
with *mingled seed* **heterogenetic inductions**:
neither shall a *garment* **clothes**
mingled **with heterogenetic inductions**
of *linen and woollen* **linsey—woolsey**
come upon **ascend** thee.
- 20 And *whosoever* **any man who**
lieth carnally **giveth seed of copulation**
with **to** a woman, that is a *bondmaid* **maid**,
betrothed to an husband **exposed by a man**,
and **in redeeming**, not at all redeemed,
nor *freedom* **liberty** given her;
she shall be scourged **let there be an inquisition**;
they shall not be *put to death* **deathified**,
because she was not *free* **liberated**.
- 21 And he shall bring
his trespass offering **that for his guilt**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
unto the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
even a ram for a *trespass offering* **the guilt**.
- 22 And the priest
shall *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for him
with the ram of the *trespass offering* **for his guilt**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**
for his sin which he hath *done* **sinned**:

LEVITICUS 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- because he profanes the holies of Yah Veh:
cut off that soul from among his people.
- 9 And when you harvest the harvest of your land,
neither finish off harvesting the edges of your field
nor glean the gleanings of your harvest:
neither exploit your vineyard
nor glean the stray fruit of your vineyard;
leave them for the humbled and sojourner:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.
- 10 Neither steal nor deceive
nor falsify man to friend.
- ON OATHING BY THE NAME OF YAH VEH**
- 12 Neither oath by my name falsely,
nor profane the name of your Elohim:
I — Yah Veh.
- 13 Neither extort your friend nor strip him:
nor withhold the deeds of a hireling
overnight until the morning:
neither abase the deaf
nor give a stumblingblock in front of the blind,
but awe your Elohim:
I — Yah Veh.
- 14 Neither work wickedness in judgment
nor exalt the face of the poor
nor esteem the face of the greater:
but judge your friend in justness:
- 15 neither be a talebearer among your people:
nor stand against the blood of your friend;
I — Yah Veh.
- 16 Hate not your brother in your heart:
in reproving, reprove your friend
and exalt not his sin:
neither avenge
nor guard against the sons of your people,
but love your friend as yourself:
I — Yah Veh.
- 17 Guard my statutes.
- Neither copulate your animals
with heterogenetic inductions:
nor seed your seed
with heterogenetic inductions:
neither clothe
with heterogenetic inductions
nor ascend linsey—woolsey upon you.
- 20 And when a man
gives a woman seed of copulation
— a maid exposed by a man
and in redeeming, neither redeems
nor gives her liberty,
have an inquisition;
they deathify them not,
because she *is* not liberated.
- 21 And he brings that for his guilt to Yah Veh
to the opening of the tent of the congregation
a ram for the guilt:
- 22 and the priest *kapars/atones* for him
with the ram for his guilt at the face of Yah Veh
for the sin he sinned:

LEVITICUS 19, 20

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and the sin which he hath *done* **sinned**
shall be forgiven him.

23 And when ye shall come into the land,
and shall have planted all *manner* of trees for food,
then ye shall count
the fruit thereof as uncircumcised
as uncircumcised, the uncircumcision of the fruit:
three years shall it be as uncircumcised unto you:
it shall not be eaten of.

24 But in the fourth year all the fruit thereof shall be holy
to praise the LORD withal — **halals to Yah Veh.**

25 And in the fifth year shall ye eat of the fruit thereof,
that it may *yield add* unto you
the *increase* **produce** thereof:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God **Elohim.**
Ye shall not eat *any thing aught* with the blood:
neither shall ye *use enchantment* **prognosticate,**
nor observe times.

27 Ye shall not *round* **ruin** the *corners* **edges** of your heads,
neither shalt thou *mar* **ruin** the *corners* **edges** of thy beard.

28 Ye shall not *make any cuttings* **give incisions**
in your flesh for the *dead* **soul,**
nor *print any marks* **give an inscription of a tattoo**
upon you:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.

29 Do not *prostitute* **profane** thy daughter,
to cause her to be a whore;
lest the land *fall to whoredom* **whore,**
and the land become full of *wickedness* **intrigue.**

30 Ye shall *keep* **guard** my *sabbaths* **shabbaths,**
and *reverence* **awe** my *sanctuary* **holies:**
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.

31 *Regard not them that have familiar spirits*
Neither face necromancers,
neither seek after *wizards* **knowers,**
to be *defiled* **fouled** by them:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God **Elohim.**

32 Thou shalt rise up
before the hoary head **at the face of the grayed,**
and *honour* **esteem** the face of the *old man* **aged,**
and *fear* **awe** thy God **Elohim:**
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.

33 And if a *stranger* **sojourner**
sojourn with thee in your land,
ye shall not vex **oppress** him.

34 But the *stranger* **sojourner**
that *dwelleth* **sojourneth** with you
shall be unto you as *one born* **a native** among you,
and thou shalt love him as thyself;
for ye were *strangers* **sojourners**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim:**
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God **Elohim.**

35 Ye shall *do work* no *unrighteousness* **wickedness**
in judgment, in *meteyard* **measurement,**
in weight, or in *measure* **quantity.**
Just balances **Balances of justness,**
just weights **stones of justness,**
a just ephah **an ephah of justness,**
and a *just hin* **hin of justness,** shall ye have:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God **Elohim,**
which brought you out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim.**

37 *Therefore* shall ye *observe* **guard** all my statutes,
and all my judgments, and *do work* them:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.

20

And the *LORD* spake **Yah Veh** worded
unto *Moses* **Mosheh,** saying,
Again, thou shalt say
to the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El,**
Whosoever he be of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El,**
or of the *strangers* **sojourners**
that sojourn in *Israel* **Yisra El,**
that giveth any of his seed unto Molech;
in deathifying, he shall *surely* be *put to death* **deathified:**
the people of the land shall stone him with stones.

3 And I *will set* **shall give** my face against that man,
and *will* **shall** cut him off from among his people;
because he hath given of his seed unto Molech,

LEVITICUS 19, 20

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and the sin he sinned is forgiven.

23 And when you come into the land
and plant all trees for food,
then you count as uncircumcised,
the uncircumcision of the fruit:
three years it is uncircumcised to you
— eat not.

24 But in the fourth year, all the fruit thereof is holy
— halals to Yah Veh:

25 and in the fifth year, eat of the fruit,
that it add its produce to you:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.

26 Eat naught with the blood.
Neither prognosticate nor observe times.
Neither ruin the edges of your heads,
nor ruin the edges of your beard.

28 Neither give incisions in your flesh for the soul,
nor give an inscription of a tattoo on you:
I — Yah Veh.

29 Profane not your daughter to whore;
lest the land whore
and the land become full of intrigue.

30 Guard my shabbaths and awe my holies:
I — Yah Veh.

31 Neither face necromancers,
nor seek after knowers to become foul by them:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.

32 Rise at the face of the grayed
and esteem the face of the aged
and awe your Elohim:
I — Yah Veh.

33 And if a sojourner sojourns with you in your land,
oppress him not:
the sojourner sojourning with you
is to you as a native among you
— and love him as yourself;
for you were sojourners in the land of Misrayim:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.

35 Work no wickedness in judgment,
in measurement, in weight, or in quantity.

36 Have balances of justness,
stones of justness,
an ephah of justness
and a hin of justness,
I — Yah Veh your Elohim
who brought you from the land of Misrayim.

37 Guard all my statutes and all my judgments
and work them:
I — Yah Veh.

20

And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
And to the sons of Yisra El, say,
Any man of the sons of Yisra El
or of the sojourners sojourning in Yisra El,
who gives any of his seed to Molech;
in deathifying, deathify him:
the people of the land stone him with stones.
And I give my face against that man
and cut him off from among his people;
because he gives of his seed to Molech

ON IDOLATRY

ON IDOLATRY

LEVITICUS 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

to defile **foul** my sanctuary **holies**,
and to profane my holy name.
4 And if the people of the land
do any ways **hide in veiling, veil** their eyes from the man,
when he giveth of his seed unto Molech,
and **kill deathify** him not:
5 Then I **will shall** set my face against that man,
and against his family,
and **will shall** cut him off,
and all that go a **whoring whore** after him,
to **commit whoredom whore** with Molech,
from among their people.
6 And the soul that turneth **the face**
after such as have familiar spirits from necromancers,
and *after wizards from knowers,*
to go a **whoring whore** after them,
I **will shall** even set my face against that soul,
and **will shall** cut him off from among his people.
7 Sanctify **Hallow** yourselves therefore, and be ye holy:
for I am the **LORD I — Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**.
8 And ye shall **keep guard** my statutes, and **do work** them:
I am the LORD which sanctify I — Yah Veh hallow you.
9 For every one **man — every man**
that **curseth abaseth** his father or his mother
in deathifying, shall be **surely put to death deathified**:
he hath **curseth abased** his father or his mother;
his blood shall be upon him.
10 And the man that **committeth adultery adulterizeth**
with another a man's wife woman,
even he that **committeth adultery adulterizeth**
with his neighbour's wife friend's woman,
the adulterer and the adulteress
in deathifying, shall **surely be put to death deathified**.
11 And the man that lieth with his father's **wife woman**
hath **uncovered exposed** his father's nakedness:
both the two of them
in deathifying, shall **surely be put to death deathified**;
their blood shall be upon them.
12 And if a man lie with his daughter in law,
both the two of them
in deathifying, shall **surely be put to death deathified**:
they have **wrought confusion worked comingling**;
their blood shall be upon them.
13 If a man also lie with **mankind male**,
as he lieth with bedding with a woman,
both the two of them
have **committed an abomination done an abhorrence**:
in deathifying, they shall **surely be put to death deathified**;
their blood shall be upon them.
14 And if a man take a **wife woman** and her mother,
it is **wickedness intrigue**:
they shall be burnt with fire, both he and they;
that there be no **wickedness intrigue** among you.
15 And if a man **giveth to lie with a beast an animal**,
in deathifying, he shall **surely be put to death deathified**:
and ye shall **slay slaughter** the **beast animal**.
16 And if a woman approach unto any **beast animal**,
and **lie down thereto copulate**,
thou shalt **kill slaughter** the woman,
and the **beast animal**:
in deathifying, they shall **surely be put to death deathified**;
their blood shall be upon them.
17 And if a man shall take his sister,
his father's daughter, or his mother's daughter,
and see her nakedness, and she see his nakedness;
it is a **wicked thing shame**;
and they shall be cut off in the **sight eyes** of their people:
he hath **uncovered exposed** his sister's nakedness;
he shall bear his **iniquity perversion**.
18 And if a man shall lie with a woman
having her sickness — menstous,
and shall **uncover expose** her nakedness;
he hath **discovered stripped naked** her fountain,

LEVITICUS 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to foul my holies and to profane my holy name.
4 And if in veiling,
the people of the land veil their eyes from the man,
when he gives of his seed to Molech
and deathify him not:
5 then I set my face against that man
and against his family
and cut him off
and all who whore after him to whore with Molech,
from among their people.
6 And the soul who turns his face
from necromancers and from knowers,
to whore after them,
I set my face against that soul
and cut him off from among his people.
7 Hallow yourselves so and be holy:
for I — Yah Veh your Elohim.
8 And guard my statutes and work them:
I — Yah Veh hallow you.
9 For a man
— every man who abases his father or his mother
in deathifying, deathify him:
he abases his father or his mother;
his blood *is* on him.
10 And the man
who adulterizes with the woman of a man
— who adulterizes with the woman of his friend,
in deathifying,
deathify the adulterer and the adulteress.
11 And a man who lies with the woman of his father
exposes the nakedness of his father:
in deathifying, deathify the two of them;
their blood *is* on them.
12 And a man who lies with his daughter in law,
in deathifying, deathify the two of them:
they work comingling;
their blood *is* on them.
13 And a man who lies with male,
as bedding with a woman,
the two of them do an abhorrence:
in deathifying, deathify them;
their blood *is* on them.
14 And a man who takes a woman and her mother,
it *is* intrigue:
burn them with fire, both he and they;
that there be no intrigue in your midst.
15 And a man who gives to lie with an animal,
in deathifying, deathify him:
and slaughter the animal.
16 And a woman who approaches any animal
to copulate,
slaughter the woman and the animal:
in deathifying, deathify them;
their blood *is* on them.
17 And a man who takes his sister
the daughter of his father
or the daughter of his mother
and sees her nakedness
and she sees his nakedness;
— a shame:
cut them off in the eyes of their people:
he exposes the nakedness of his sister:
he bears his perversion.
18 And a man who lies with a woman — menstous
and exposes her nakedness;
he strips naked her fountain

LEVITICUS 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and she hath *uncovered* **exposed**
the fountain of her blood:
and *both* **the two** of them shall be cut off
from among **the sons** of their people.
19 And thou shalt not *uncover* **expose** the nakedness
of thy mother's sister, nor of thy father's sister:
for he *uncovereth* **hath stripped naked**
his *near kin* **kinflesh**:
they shall bear their *iniquity* **perversion**.
20 And if a man shall lie with his uncle's *wife* **woman**,
he hath *uncovered* **exposed** his uncle's nakedness:
they shall bear their sin; they shall die *childless* **barren**.
21 And if a man shall take his brother's *wife* **woman**,
it is an *unclean thing* **exclusion**:
he hath *uncovered* **exposed** his brother's nakedness;
they shall be *childless* **barren**.
22 Ye shall *therefore keep* **guard** all my statutes,
and all my judgments, and *do* **work** them:
that the land, whither I bring you to *dwell* **settle** therein,
23 *spue* **vomit** you not out.
And ye shall not walk
in the *manners* **statutes** of the *nation* **goyim**,
which I cast out *before* you **from your face**:
for they *committed* **have worked** all these *things*,
and therefore I abhorred them.
24 But I have said unto you,
Ye shall *inherit* **possess** their *land* **soil**,
and I *will* **shall** give it unto you to possess it,
a land that floweth with milk and honey:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your *God* **Elohim**,
which have separated you from *other* people.
25 Ye shall therefore *put difference* **separate**
between *clean beasts* **pure animals**
and *unclean* **between fouled**,
and between *unclean fowls* **fouled flyers**
and *clean* **between pure**:
and ye shall not *make* **abominate** your souls *abominable*
by *beast* **animal**, or by *fowl* **flyer**,
or by any *manner of living thing* **live being**
that creepeth on the *ground* **soil**,
which I have separated from you as *unclean* **fouled**.
26 And ye shall be holy unto me:
for I *the LORD* **Yah Veh** am holy,
and have *severed* **separated** you from *other* people,
that ye should be mine.
27 A man *also* or woman
that hath a familiar spirit — a necromancer,
or that is a *wizard* **knower**,
in deathifying, shall *surely* be *put to death* **deathified**:
they shall stone them with stones:
their blood shall be upon them.

THE PRIESTHOOD

21 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Speak **Say** unto the priests the sons of *Aaron* **Aharon**,
and say unto them,
There shall none be *defiled* **fouled**
for the *dead* **a soul** among his people:
2 But **Except** for his *kin* **kinflesh**, that is near unto him,
that is, for his mother, and for his father,
and for his son, and for his daughter, and for his brother.
3 And for his sister a virgin, that is nigh unto him,
which hath had no *husband* **man**;
for her may he be *defiled* **fouled**.
4 But *he* **a master** shall not *defile* **foul** himself,
being a chief man among his people, to profane himself.
5 They shall not *make baldness upon* **balden** their head,
neither shall they shave off the *corner* **edge** of their beard,
nor *make* **incise** any *cuttings* **incisions** in their flesh.
6 They shall be holy unto their *God* **Elohim**,
and not profane the name of their *God* **Elohim**:
for the *offerings of the LORD made by fire*
firings unto Yah Veh,
and the bread of their *God* **Elohim**, they do *offer* **oblade**:
therefore they shall be holy.
7 They shall not take a *wife* **woman** that is a whore,
or profane;
neither shall they take a woman
put away **expelled** from her *husband* **man**:
for he is holy unto his *God* **Elohim**.

LEVITICUS 20, 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and she exposes the fountain of her blood:
cut off the two of them
from among the sons of their people.
19 And expose not the nakedness
of the sister of your mother or sister of your father:
for he strips naked his kinflesh:
they bear their perversion.
20 And a man who lies with the woman of his uncle,
he exposes the nakedness of his uncle:
they bear their sin; they die barren.
21 And a man who takes the woman of his brother
— it is exclusion:
he exposes the nakedness of his brother:
they become barren.
22 Guard all my statutes and all my judgments
and work them:
that the land where I bring you to settle
not vomit you.
23 And walk not in the statutes of the goyim,
whom I cast out from your face:
for they work all these
and so I abhor them.
24 But I say to you,
Possess their soil and I give it to you to possess,
a land flowing with milk and honey:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim
who separates you from people.
25 And you,
separate between pure animals and between foul
and between foul flyers and between pure:
and abominate not your souls, by animal or by flyer,
or by any live being creeping on the soil,
which I separated from you as foul.
26 And be holy to me:
for I — Yah Veh — holy;
and separate you from people
to become mine.
27 A man or woman
— a necromancer or a knower,
in deathifying, deathify
— stone them with stones: their blood is on them.

THE PRIESTHOOD

21 And Yah Veh says unto Mosheh,
Say unto the priests the sons of Aharon,
and say to them,
No one fouls himself for a soul among his people
except for his kinflesh who is near unto him
— for his mother and for his father
and for his son and for his daughter
and for his brother
3 and for his virgin sister near him who has no man;
for her he fouls.
4 No master fouls himself among his people
to profane himself:
5 they neither balden their head
nor shave the edge of their beard,
nor incise any incisions in their flesh.
6 They are holy to their Elohim
and profane not the name of their Elohim:
for the firings unto Yah Veh
and the bread of their Elohim, they oblade:
so they are holy.
7 They neither take a woman whore or profane
nor take they a woman expelled from her man:
for he is holy unto his Elohim.

LEVITICUS 21, 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

8 Thou shalt *sanctify* **hallow** him *therefore*;
for he *offereth* **oblateth** the bread of thy *God* **Elohim**;
he shall be holy unto thee:
for I the **LORD I — Yah Veh**,
which *sanctify* **halloweth** you, am holy.
9 And the daughter of *any a man — a priest*,
if she profane herself by *playing the whore* **whoring**,
she profaneth her father: she shall be burnt with fire.
10 And he that is the *high* **great** priest among his brethren,
upon whose head the anointing oil was poured,
and *that is consecrated* **hath filled his hand**
to *put on the garments* **enrobe the clothes**,
shall not *uncover* **expose** his head,
nor *rend* **tear** his clothes;
11 Neither shall he go in to any *dead body* **soul that died**,
nor *defile* **foul** himself for his father, or for his mother;
12 Neither shall he go out of the *sanctuary* **holies**,
nor profane the *sanctuary* **holies** of his *God* **Elohim**;
for the *crown* **separatism** of the anointing oil
of his *God* **Elohim** is upon him:
I am the **LORD I — Yah Veh**.
13 And he shall take a *wife* **woman** in her virginity.
14 A widow, or a *divorced woman* **expelled**,
or profane, or an *harlot* **that whoreth**,
these shall he not take:
but he shall take a virgin of his own people
to *wife* **woman**.
15 Neither shall he profane his seed among his people:
for I the **LORD do sanctify** **Yah Veh hallow** him.
16 And the **LORD spake** **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
17 *Speak* **Word** unto *Aaron* **Aharon**, saying,
Whosoever he be **Any man** of thy seed
in their generations that hath any blemish,
let him not approach
to *offer* **oblade** the bread of his *God* **Elohim**.
18 For whatsoever man he be that hath a blemish,
he shall not approach:
a blind man, or a lame,
or *he that hath a flat nose* **disfigured**,
or *any thing superfluous* **spread**,
19 Or a man that is brokenfooted, or brokenhanded,
20 Or *crookbackt* **archbacked**, or a *dwarf* **thin**,
or that hath a *blemish* **cataract** in his eye,
or be scurvy, or scabbed,
or hath his *stones broken* **testicles castrated**;
21 No man that hath a blemish
of the seed of *Aaron* **Aharon** the priest
shall come nigh to *offer* **oblade**
the *offerings of the LORD made by fire*
firings unto Yah Veh:
he hath a blemish;
he shall not come nigh
to *offer* **oblade** the bread of his *God* **Elohim**.
22 He shall eat the bread of his *God* **Elohim**,
both of the *most holy* **holy of holies**,
and of the *holy* **holies**.
23 Only he shall not go in unto the veil,
nor come nigh unto the **sacrifice** altar,
because he hath a blemish;
that he profane not my *sanctuaries* **holies**:
for I the **LORD do sanctify** **Yah Veh hallow** them.
24 And *Moses told it* **Mosheh worded** unto *Aaron* **Aharon**,
and to his sons,
and unto all the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
22 And the **LORD spake** **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
2 *Speak* **Word** unto *Aaron* **Aharon** and to his sons,
that they separate themselves from the *holy things* **holies**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and that they profane not my holy name *in those things*
which they hallow unto me:
I am the **LORD I — Yah Veh**.
3 Say unto them,
Whosoever he be **The man** of all your seed
among your generations,
that *goeth unto* **approacheth** the *holy things* **holies**,
which the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
hallow unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**,

LEVITICUS 21, 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

8 Hallow him;
for he oblates the bread of thy Elohim:
he is holy to you:
for I — Yah Veh who hallows you — holy.
9 And the daughter of a man — a priest,
when she profanes herself by whoring,
she profanes her father:
burn her with fire.
10 And he who *is* the great priest among his brethren,
upon whose head the anointing oil *is* poured
and fills his hand to enrobe the clothes,
neither exposes his head nor tears his clothes;
he neither goes in to any soul that died
nor fouls himself for his father or for his mother;
neither goes he out of the holies
nor profanes the holies of his Elohim:
for the separatism of the anointing oil
of his Elohim *is* upon him:
I — Yah Veh.
13 And he takes a woman in her virginity.
14 A widow or expelled or profane,
or one who whores, he takes not:
but he takes a virgin of his own people to woman.
15 He profanes not his seed among his people:
for I Yah Veh hallow him.
16 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
17 Word to Aharon, saying,
Any man of your seed
in their generations who has any blemish,
approaches not to oblade the bread of his Elohim.
18 For no man having a blemish, approaches:
a blind man or lame
or disfigured or spread
or a man brokenfooted or brokenhanded
20 or archbacked or thin
or has a cataract in his eye
or scurvied or scabbed
or his testicles castrated
21 — no man of the seed of Aharon the priest
who has a blemish
comes near to oblade the firings unto Yah Veh:
he has a blemish:
he comes not near to oblade the bread of his Elohim.
22 He eats the bread of his Elohim,
both of the holy of holies and of the holies:
23 only he neither goes in to the veil
nor comes near the sacrifice altar
because he has a blemish;
that he not profane my holies:
for I — Yah Veh hallow them.
24 — and Mosheh words to Aharon and to his sons
and to all the sons of Yisra El.
22 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Word to Aharon and to his sons,
to separate themselves
from the holies of the sons of Yisra El
and not profane my holy name
in what they hallow unto me:
I — Yah Veh.
3 Say unto them,
The man of all your seed among your generations,
who approaches the holies,
which the sons of Yisra El hallow to Yah Veh,

LEVITICUS 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

having his *uncleanness* **foulness** upon him,
that soul shall be cut off from my *presence* **face**:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.

4 *What man soever* **Man — whatever man**
of the seed of Aaron **Aharon** is a leper,
or hath a running issue **fluxeth**;
he shall not eat of the *holy things* **holies**,
until he be *clean* **purified**.
And whoso toucheth *any thing* **ought**
that is *unclean* **fouled** by the *dead* **soul**,
or a man whose seed **of copulation** goeth from him;

5 *Or whosoever* **whatever man**
toucheth any *creeping thing* **teemer**,
whereby he may be *made unclean* **fouled**,
or a man **human**
of whom he may take *uncleanness* **his foulness**,
whatsoever *uncleanness* **foulness** he hath;

6 The soul which hath touched any such
shall be *unclean* **fouled** until even,
and shall not eat of the *holy things* **holies**,
unless he *wash* **baptize** his flesh with water.

7 And when the sun is down, he shall be *clean* **purified**,
and shall afterward eat of the *holy things* **holies**;
because it is his *food* **bread**.

8 That *which dieth of itself* **carcase**, or is torn with beasts,
he shall not eat to *defile* **foul** himself therewith;
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.

9 They shall *therefore*
keep mine ordinance **guard my guard**,
lest they bear sin for it, and die therefore, if they profane it:
I the LORD do sanctify **Yah Veh hallow** them.

10 There shall no stranger eat of the *holy thing* **holies**:
a *sojourner* **settler** of the priest,
or an hired servant **hireling**,
shall not eat of the *holy thing* **holies**.
But if the priest *buy* **chattelize** any soul
with *his money* — a **chattel of silver**, he shall eat of it,
and he that is *born* **birthed** in his house:
they shall eat of his *meat* **bread**.
If the priest's daughter also
be married **becometh a man's**
unto a stranger — a **stranger's**,
she may not eat
of an *heave offering* **exaltment** of the *holy things* **holies**.

13 But if the priest's daughter be a widow,
or divorced **expelled**, and have no *child* **seed**,
and is returned unto her father's house, as in her youth,
she shall eat of her father's *meat* **bread**:
but there shall be no stranger eat thereof.

14 And if a man eat of the *holy thing* **holies**
unwittingly **erring inadvertently**,
then he shall *put* **add** the fifth *part* thereof *unto it* **thereto**,
and shall give it unto the priest with the *holy thing* **holies**.

15 And they shall not profane the *holy things* **holies**
of the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**,
which they *offer* **lift** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
Or *suffer* **cause** them to bear
the *iniquity* **perversity** of *trespass* **guilt**,
when they eat their *holy things* **holies**:
for *I the LORD do sanctify* **Yah Veh hallow** them.

17 And *the LORD spake* **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
18 *Speak* **Word** unto Aaron **Aharon**, and to his sons,
and unto all the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**,
and say unto them,
Whatsoever he be **Man — whatever man**
of the house of Israel **Yisra El**,
or of the *strangers* **sons of sojourners** in Israel **Yisra El**,
that *will offer* **shall oblate** his *oblation* **qorban**
for all his vows,
and for all his *freewill offerings* **voluntaries**,
which they *will offer* **shall oblate** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**;

19 *Ye shall offer* at your *own will* **pleasure**
a male without *blemish* **integrious**,
of the *beeves* **oxen**, of the *sheep* **lambs**, or of the goats.
20 But whatsoever hath a blemish,
that shall ye not *offer* **oblate**:
for it shall not be *acceptable* **pleasing** for you.

LEVITICUS 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

having his foulness upon him,
cut off that soul from my face:
I — Yah Veh.

4 Man — whatever man of the seed of Aharon
— leperous or fluxes
eats not of the holies until he purifies.

And whoever touches aught fouled by the soul,
or a man whose seed of copulation goes from him:

5 or whatever man touches any teemer
whereby he fouls himself,
or a human of his foulness
— whatever foulness he has;

6 the soul who touches any such
is fouled until evening:
and eats not of the holies
unless he baptize his flesh in water.

7 And when the sun downs,
he is purified
and afterward eats of the holies
because it is his bread.

8 He eats not a carcase, or torn
to foul himself therewith;
I — Yah Veh.

9 They guard my guard,
and bear no sin for it
or die for it if they profane it:
I — Yah Veh hallow them.

10 No stranger eats of the holies:
a settler of the priest or a hireling,
eats not of the holies.

11 But if the priest chattelizes any soul
— a chattel of silver, he eats thereof
and he who is birthed in his house eats of his bread.

12 And when the daughter of a priest
become to a man — a stranger,
she eats not of an exaltment of the holies.

13 And when the daughter of a priest
becomes a widow, or is expelled,
and has no seed
and returns to the house of her father, as in her youth,
she eats of the bread of her father:
but no stranger eats thereof.

14 And when a man eats of the holies
— erring inadvertently,
he adds the fifth
and gives it to the priest with the holies:
and they profane not the holies
of the sons of Yisra El
which they lift unto Yah Veh;
that they not bear the perversity of guilt
when they eat their holies:
for I — Yah Veh hallow them.

17 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
18 Word unto Aharon and to his sons
and unto all the sons of Yisra El
and say unto them,
Man — whatever man of the house of Yisra El
or of the sons of sojourners in Yisra El
who oblates his qorban for all his vows
and for all his voluntaries,
which they oblate to Yah Veh for a holocaust;
19 — at your pleasure
an integrious male of the oxen
— of the lambs or of the goats:
20 and whatever has a blemish, oblate not:
for it is not pleasing for you.

LEVITICUS 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

21 And whosoever offereth the man that oblateth
a sacrifice of peace offerings **shelamim**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
to accomplish his — a marvelous vow,
or a freewill offering **voluntary**
in beeves **oxen** or sheep **flocks**,
it shall be perfect **integrity** to be accepted **pleasing**;
there shall be no blemish therein.
22 Blind, or broken, or maimed **cut**,
or having a wen **pussed**, or scurvy, or scabbed,
ye shall not offer **oblate** these unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
nor make an offering by fire **give firings** of them
upon the **sacrifice** altar unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
23 Either a bullock **an ox** or a lamb
that hath any thing superfluous **spread**
or lacking in his parts **maimed**,
that mayest thou offer **work**
for a freewill offering **voluntary**;
but for a vow it shall not be accepted **pleasing**.
24 Ye shall not offer **oblate** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
that which is bruised **pinched**, or crushed,
or broken **torn**, or cut;
neither shall ye make any offering thereof **work**
in your land.
25 Neither from a stranger's hand
shall ye offer **oblate** the bread of your God **Elohim**
of any of these;
because their **corruption ruin** is in them,
and blemishes be in them:
they shall not be accepted **pleasing** for you.
26 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
27 When a bullock **an ox**, or a sheep **lamb**,
or a goat, is brought forth **birthed**,
then it shall be seven days under the dam **mother**;
and from the eighth day and thenceforth **beyond**
it shall be accepted **pleasing** for an offering a **qorban**
made by fire a **firing** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
28 And whether it be cow **ox**, or ewe **lamb**,
ye shall not kill **slaughter** it and her young **sons**
both in one day.
29 And when ye will offer shall sacrifice a sacrifice
of thanksgiving — **an spread hands praise**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
offer **sacrifice** it at your own will **pleasure**.
30 On the same day it shall be eaten up;
ye shall leave **let** none of it remain until the morrow:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.
31 Therefore shall ye keep **guard**
my commandments **misvoth**, and do **work** them:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.
32 Neither shall ye profane my holy name;
but I will **shall** be hallowed
among the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh which hallow you,
33 That brought you out of the land of **Egypt Misrayim**,
to be your God **Elohim**:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.

TORAH ON SEASONS

23 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
2 Speak **Word** unto the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**,
and say unto them,
Concerning the feasts **seasons** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
which ye shall proclaim **recall** to be holy convocations,
even these are my feasts **seasons**.

SEASON OF SHABBATH

3 Six days shall work be done **worked**:
but the seventh day
is the sabbath **shabbath** of rest **shabbathism**,
an holy convocation;
ye shall do **work** no work therein:
it is the sabbath **shabbath** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
in all your dwellings **settlements**.

SEASONS TO RECALL

4 These are the feasts **seasons** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
even holy convocations,
which ye shall proclaim **recall** in their seasons.

LEVITICUS 22, 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

21 And the man who oblates
a sacrifice of shelamim to Yah Veh
— a marvelous vow or a voluntary in oxen or flocks,
it is integrity and pleasing
— no blemish therein.
22 Blind or broken or cut
or pussied or scurried or scabbed
— neither oblate these to Yah Veh
nor give firings on the sacrifice altar to Yah Veh.
23 Either an ox or a lamb, spread or maimed,
work for a voluntary;
but it is not pleasing for a vow.
24 Oblate not to Yah Veh
pinched or crushed or torn or cut;
work not in your land.
25 And from the hand of a stranger
oblate not the bread of your Elohim of any of these;
because of the ruin in them
and the blemishes in them:
they are not pleasing for you.
26 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
27 When an ox or a lamb or a goat births,
it is seven days under the mother;
and from the eighth day and beyond
it is pleasing for a qorban
— a firing to Yah Veh.
28 — and slaughter not an ox or ewe lamb
and its sons in one day.
29 And when you sacrifice a sacrifice
— a spread hands praise to Yah Veh
sacrifice it at your pleasure.
30 Eat it on the same day;
let none of it remain until the morrow:
I — Yah Veh.
31 So guard my misvoth and work them:
I — Yah Veh.
32 Profane not my holy name;
and I hallow among the sons of Yisra El:
I — Yah Veh who hallows you
33 — who brought you from the land of Misrayim,
to become your Elohim:
I — Yah Veh.

THE TORAH ON SEASONS

23 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Word to the sons of Yisra El, and say to them,
The seasons of Yah Veh
to recall to be holy convocations
are my seasons.

SEASON OF SHABBATH

3 Six days work the work:
but the seventh day is the shabbath of shabbathism
— a holy convocation;
work no work therein:
it is the shabbath of Yah Veh in all your settlements.

SEASONS TO RECALL

4 These are the seasons of Yah Veh
— holy convocations
to recall in their seasons.

LEVITICUS 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SEASON OF PASACH

- 5 In the fourteenth day of the first month
In the first month, on the fourteenth of the month,
at even between evenings
is the LORD'S passover Yah Veh's pasach.
- 6 And on the fifteenth day of the same month
is the feast celebration of unleavened bread matsah
unto the LORD Yah Veh:
seven days ye must shall eat unleavened bread matsah.
- 7 In the first day ye shall have an holy convocation:
ye shall do work no servile service work therein.
- 8 But ye shall *offer an offering made by fire oblate a firing*
unto the LORD Yah Veh seven days:
in the seventh day is an holy convocation:
ye shall do work no servile service work therein.
- 9 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh**
worded unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
Speak Word unto the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
and say unto them,
When ye be come into the land which I give unto you,
and shall reap harvest the harvest thereof,
then ye shall bring a sheaf an omer
of the firstfruits firsts of your harvest unto the priest:
- 11 And he shall wave the *sheaf omer*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
to be accepted for you at your pleasure:
on the morrow after the sabbath shabbath
the priest shall wave it.
- 12 And ye shall *offer work* that day
when ye wave the sheaf omer
an he lamb without blemish integrious
of the first year — a yearling son
for a burnt offering holocaust unto the LORD Yah Veh.
- 13 And the *meat offering* thereof
shall be two tenth deals of fine tenths flour
mingled mixed with oil,
an offering made by fire a firing unto the LORD Yah Veh
for a sweet savour scent of rest:
and the drink offering libation thereof shall be of wine,
the fourth part of an hin.
- 14 And ye shall eat neither bread, nor parched *corn*,
nor green ears of the orchard,
until the selfsame that day that ye have brought
an offering qorban unto your God Elohim:
it shall be a an eternal statute for ever
throughout your generations
in all your dwellings settlements.
- 15 And ye shall *count scribe* unto you
from the morrow after the sabbath shabbath,
from the day
that ye brought the sheaf omer of the wave offering;
seven sabbaths shabbaths shall be complete integrious:
- 16 Even unto the morrow
after the seventh sabbath shabbath
shall ye number scribe fifty days;
and ye shall offer oblate a new meat offering
unto the LORD Yah Veh.
- 17 Ye shall bring out of your *habitations settlements*
two wave loaves breads of two tenth deals tenths;
they shall be of fine flour;
they shall be baken with leaven fermentation;
they are the firstfruits unto the LORD Yah Veh.
- 18 And ye shall *offer oblate* with the bread
seven lambs without blemish integrious
of the first year — yearling sons,
and one young bullock son of the oxen, and two rams:
they shall be for a burnt offering holocaust
unto the LORD Yah Veh,
with their meat offering, and their drink offerings libations,
even an offering made by fire a firing,
of sweet savour a scent of rest unto the LORD Yah Veh.
- 19 Then ye shall *sacrifice work* one *kid buck* of the goats
for a sin offering the sin,
and two lambs of the first year yearling sons
for a sacrifice of peace offerings shelamim.
- 20 And the priest shall wave them

LEVITICUS 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SEASON OF PASACH

- 5 In the first month, on the fourteenth of the month,
between evenings is the pasach to Yah Veh.
- 6 And on the fifteenth day of the same month
is the celebration of matsah to Yah Veh:
seven days you eat matsah.
- 7 On the first day, have a holy convocation:
work no service work therein:
- 8 but oblate a firing to Yah Veh seven days:
in the seventh day is a holy convocation:
work no service work therein.
- 9 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
 Word to the sons of Yisra El and say to them,
 When you come into the land I give you
 and harvest the harvest thereof,
 bring an omer of the firsts of your harvest
 to the priest:
- 11 and he waves the omer at the face of Yah Veh
 at your pleasure:
 the priest waves it on the morrow after the shabbath:
 and the day you wave the omer
 work an integrious he lamb — a yearling son
 for a holocaust to Yah Veh:
 and the offering thereof,
 two tenths flour mixed with oil
 — a firing to Yah Veh for a scent of rest:
 and the libation thereof,
 — the fourth of a hin of wine:
 and eat neither bread
 nor parched nor of the orchard
 until the day you bring a qorban to your Elohim:
 — an eternal statute throughout your generations
 in all your settlements.
- 15 And scribe to yourselves
 from the morrow after the shabbath,
 from the day you bring the omer of the wave:
 seven integrious shabbaths:
 scribe fifty days
 to the morrow after the seventh shabbath;
 and oblate a new offering to Yah Veh.
 and from your settlements
 bring two wave breads of two tenths
 — of flour baked with fermentation;
 — the firsts to Yah Veh:
 and with the bread
 oblate seven integrious lambs — yearling sons
 and one bullock son of the oxen and two rams:
 they are for a holocaust to Yah Veh
 with their offering and their libations
 — a firing — a scent of rest to Yah Veh.
- 19 Then work one buck of the goats for the sin
 and two lambs yearling sons
 for a sacrifice of shelamim:
 and the priest waves them

LEVITICUS 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

with the bread of the firstfruits for a wave offering
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
with the two lambs:
they shall be holy to the LORD Yah Veh for the priest.
21 And ye shall proclaim on the selfsame day,
that it may be an holy convocation unto you:
ye shall do **work** no servile **service** work therein:
it shall be a **an eternal** statute for ever
in all your *dwelling*s **settlements**
throughout your generations.
22 And when ye reap **harvest** the harvest of your land,
thou shalt not *make clean riddance of* **finish off**
the *corners* **edges** of thy field
when thou *reapest* **harvestest**,
neither shalt thou *gather* **glean**
any gleaning of thy harvest:
thou shalt leave them unto the *poor* **humbled**,
and to the *stranger* **sojourner**:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God Elohim.
SEASON OF BLASTING
23 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
24 Speak **Word** unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
saying,
In the seventh month, in the first *day* of the month,
shall ye have a *sabbath* **shabbathism**,
a memorial of *blowing of trumpets* **blasting**,
an holy convocation.
25 Ye shall do **work** no servile **service** work therein:
but ye shall *offer an offering made by fire* **obliterate a firing**
unto the LORD **Yah Veh**.
SEASON OF YOM KIPPURIM
26 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
27 Also **Only** on the tenth *day* of this seventh month
there shall be a day of atonement **Yom Kippurim**:
it shall be an holy convocation unto you;
and ye shall *afflict* **humble** your souls,
and *offer an offering made by fire* **obliterate a firing**
unto the LORD **Yah Veh**.
28 And ye shall do **work** no work in that same day:
for it is a *day of atonement* **Yom Kippurim**,
to *make an atonement* **kapar/atone for you**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh your God Elohim**.
29 For whatsoever soul it be
that shall not be *afflicted* **humbled** in that same day,
he shall be cut off from among his people.
30 And whatsoever soul it be
that *doeth* **worketh** any work in that same day,
the same soul *will* **shall** I destroy from among his people.
31 Ye shall do **work** no *manner of* work:
it shall be a **an eternal** statute for ever
throughout your generations
in all your *dwelling*s **settlements**.
32 It shall be unto you
a *sabbath* **shabbath** of *rest* **shabbathism**,
and ye shall *afflict* **humble** your souls:
in the ninth *day* of the month at even,
from even unto even,
shall ye *celebrate* **shabbathize** your *sabbath* **shabbath**.
SEASON OF SUKKOTH/BRUSH ARBORS
33 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
34 Speak **Word** unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
saying,
The fifteenth day of this seventh month
shall be the *feast* **celebration**
of *tabernacles* **sukkoth/brush arbors**
for seven days unto the LORD **Yah Veh**.
35 On the first day shall be an holy convocation:
ye shall do **work** no servile **service** work therein.
36 Seven days ye shall
offer an offering made by fire **obliterate a firing**
unto the LORD **Yah Veh**:
on the eighth day shall be an holy convocation unto you;
and ye shall *offer an offering made by fire* **obliterate a firing**
unto the LORD **Yah Veh**:
it is a *solemn assembly* **an abstinence**;
and ye shall do **work** no servile **service** work therein.

LEVITICUS 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

with the bread of the firsts for a wave
at the face of Yah Veh with the two lambs:
they are holy to Yah Veh for the priest:
and on the selfsame day,
proclaim a holy convocation to yourselves:
work no service work therein:
— an eternal statute in all your settlements
throughout your generations.
22 And when you harvest the harvest of your land,
neither finish off the edges of your field
when you harvest,
nor glean any gleaning of your harvest:
leave them to the humbled and to the sojourner:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.
SEASON OF BLASTING
23 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
24 Word to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
In the seventh month, in the first of the month,
have a shabbathism
— a memorial of blasting — a holy convocation.
25 Work no service work therein:
obliterate a firing to Yah Veh.
SEASON OF YOM KIPPURIM
26 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
27 Only, on the tenth of this seventh month
is Yom Kippurim
— a holy convocation to you:
humble your souls
and obliterate a firing to Yah Veh:
and work no work in that same day:
for it is Yom Kippurim, to *kapar/atone* for you
at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim.
29 For whatever soul
humbles not in that same day,
is cut off from among his people.
30 And whatever soul
works any work in that same day,
I destroy that same soul from among his people.
31 Work no work!
— an eternal statute throughout your generations
in all your settlements.
32 It is a shabbath of shabbathism to you
to humble your souls:
in the ninth of the month,
at evening, from evening to evening,
shabbathize your shabbath.
SEASON OF SUKKOTH/BRUSH ARBORS
33 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
34 Word to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
The fifteenth day of this seventh month
is the celebration of sukkoth/brush arbors
for seven days to Yah Veh.
35 The first day *is* a holy convocation:
work no service work therein.
36 Seven days obliterate a firing to Yah Veh:
on the eighth day is a holy convocation to you.
— obliterate a firing to Yah Veh:
— an abstinence — work no service work.

LEVITICUS 23, 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

37 These are the *feasts* **seasons** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
which ye shall *proclaim* **recall** to be holy convocations,
to offer an *offering made by fire* **oblate a firing**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
a *burnt offering* **holocaust**, and a *meat* **an offering**,
a *sacrifice*, and *drink offerings* **libations**,
every *thing upon his day* **word day by day**:
38 Beside the *sabbaths* **shabbaths** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and beside your gifts, and beside all your vows,
and beside all your *freewill offerings* **voluntaries**,
which ye give unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.

SEASON OF SHABBATHISM

39 Also in the fifteenth day of the seventh month,
when ye have gathered in the *fruit* **produce** of the land,
ye shall *keep* **celebrate** a *feast* **celebration**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** seven days:
on the first day shall be a *sabbath* **shabbathism**,
and on the eighth day shall be a *sabbath* **shabbathism**.
40 And ye shall take you on the first day
the boughs of *goodly* **majestic** trees,
branches **palms** of palm trees,
and the *boughs* **fruit** of thick trees,
and willows of the *brook* **wadi**;
and ye shall *rejoice* **cheer**
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh your God Elohim**
seven days.

41 And ye shall *keep it* **celebrate** a *feast* **celebration**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** seven days in the year.
It shall be a **an eternal** statute *for ever* in your generations:
ye shall celebrate it in the seventh month.

42 Ye shall *dwell* **sit** in *booths* **sukkoth/brush arbors**
seven days;
all that are *Israelites born* **Yisra Eliy birthed**
shall *dwell* **sit** in *booths* **sukkoth/brush arbors**:

43 That your generations may know
that I *made* **caused** the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
to *dwell* **sit** in *booths* **sukkoth/brush arbors**,
when I brought them out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God Elohim.

44 And *Moses declared* **Mosheh worded**
unto the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
the *feasts* **seasons** of the **LORD Yah Veh**.

CONGREGATIONAL TENT MENORAH

24 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
2 *Command* **Misvah** the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
that they *bring* **take** unto thee
pure oil olive *beaten* **pestled** for the light,
to cause the lamps to *burn* **holocaust** continually.

3 Without the veil of the *testimony* **witness**,
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
shall *Aaron order* **Aharon arrange** it
from the evening unto the morning
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh continually:
it shall be a **an eternal** statute *for ever* in your generations.

4 He shall *order* **arrange** the lamps
upon the pure *andlestick* **menorah**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh continually.

CONGREGATIONAL TENT CAKES

5 And thou shalt take *fine* flour,
and bake twelve cakes thereof:
two *tenth deals* **tenths** shall be in one cake.
6 And thou shalt set them in two rows, six on a row,
upon the pure table
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
7 And thou shalt *put* **give** pure frankincense
upon each row,
that it may be on the bread for a memorial,
even an *offering made by fire* **a firing**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.

8 *Every sabbath* **On the shabbath — every shabbath day**
he shall *set it in order* **arrange it**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh continually,
being taken from the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
by an *everlasting* **eternal** covenant.

9 And it shall be *Aaron's* **Aharon's** and his sons';
and they shall eat it in the *holy place* **holies**:

LEVITICUS 23, 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

37 These are the seasons of Yah Veh,
to recall for holy convocations
to oblate a firing to Yah Veh
— a holocaust and an offering
a sacrifice and libations:
— every day by day word:
38 beside the shabbaths of Yah Veh
and beside your gifts and beside all your vows
and beside all your voluntaries
which you give to Yah Veh.

SEASON OF SHABBATHISM

39 Only, in the fifteenth day of the seventh month,
when you ingather the produce of the land,
celebrate a celebration to Yah Veh seven days:
the first day, a shabbathism
and the eighth day, a shabbathism:
and on the first day,
40 take the boughs of majestic trees, palms of palm trees
and the fruit of thick trees and willows of the wadi;
and cheer at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim
seven days:
41 and celebrate a celebration to Yah Veh
seven days in the year
— an eternal statute in your generations:
celebrate it in the seventh month.
42 Sit in sukkoth/brush arbors seven days;
all Yisra Eliy birthed, sit in sukkoth/brush arbors
— so that your generations know
that I sat the sons of Yisra El in sukkoth/brush arbors
when I brought them from the land of Misrayim:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.
44 And Mosheh words to the sons of Yisra El
the seasons of Yah Veh.

CONGREGATIONAL TENT MENORAH

24 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 *Misvah* the sons of Yisra El,
to bring you pure olive oil pestled for the light,
to holocaust the lamps continually.

3 Outside the veil of the witness,
in the tent of the congregation,
Aharon arranges it continually
from evening to morning
at the face of Yah Veh:
— an eternal statute in your generations.
4 He arranges the lamps on the pure menorah
at the face of Yah Veh continually.

CONGREGATIONAL TENT CAKES

5 And take flour and bake twelve cakes thereof
— two tenths in one cake:
6 and set them in two rows, six in a row,
on the pure table at the face of Yah Veh:
7 and give pure frankincense on each row,
on the bread to become a memorial
— even a firing to Yah Veh.
8 On the shabbath
— every shabbath day he arranges it
at the face of Yah Veh continually,
being taken from the sons of Yisra El
by an eternal covenant.
9 And it becomes to Aharon and his sons;
and they eat it in the holies:

LEVITICUS 24, 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for it is most holy a holy of holies unto him
of the offering of the LORD made by fire

firing unto Yah Veh

by a perpetual — an eternal statute.

AN ABASER IS STONED

10 And the son of an *Israelitish* **Yisra Eliy** woman,
whose father was an *Egyptian*
a son of a man — a Misrayim,
went out among the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**:
and this son of the *Israelitish woman* **Yisra Eliy**
and a *man of Israel* **an Yisra Eliy man**
strove together in the camp;

11 And the *Israelitish* **Yisra Eliy** woman's son
blasphemed **pierced** the name of the Lord,
and *cursed* **abased**.
And they brought him unto *Moses* **Mosheh**:
(and his mother's name was Shelomith,
the daughter of Dibri, of the *tribe* **rod** of Dan:)

12 And they *put* **set** him in ward under guard,
that the *mind* **mouth** of the LORD **Yah Veh**
might be *shewed* **them expressed**.
13 And the LORD *spake* **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
14 Bring forth
him that hath *cursed* **abased** without the camp;
and let all that heard him
lay **prop** their hands upon his head,
and let all the *congregation* **witness** stone him.
15 And thou shalt *speak* **word**
unto the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**, saying,
Whosoever **A man — any man**
curseth **that abaseth** his God **Elohim** shall bear his sin.
16 And he that *blasphemeth* **pierceth**
the name of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
in deathifying, he shall *surely* be *put to death* **deathified**,
and all the *congregation* **witness**
in stoning, shall *certainly* stone him:
as well the *stranger* **sojourner**,
as he that is *born* **birthed** in the land,
when he *blasphemeth* **pierceth** the name of the LORD,
shall be *put to death* **deathified**.
17 And he a man
that *killeth any man* **smiteth a human soul**,
in deathifying, shall *surely* be *put to death* **deathified**.
18 And he that
killeth a beast **smiteth the soul of an animal**
shall *make it good* **shalam for it**; *beast* **soul** for *beast* **soul**.
19 And if a man
cause **give** a blemish in his *neighbour* **friend**;
as he hath *done* **worked**,
so shall it be *done* **worked** to him;
20 Breach for breach, eye for eye, tooth for tooth:
as he hath *caused* **given** a blemish in a *man* **human**,
so shall it be *done* **given** to him again.
21 And he that *killeth a beast* **smiteth an animal**,
he shall *restore* **shalam** it:
and he that *killeth a man* **smiteth a human**,
he shall be *put to death* **deathified**.
22 Ye shall have one *manner of law* **judgment**,
as well for the *stranger* **sojourner**,
as for *one of your own country* **the native**:
for I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh** your God **Elohim**.
23 And *Moses* *spake* **Mosheh worded**
to the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**,
that they should bring forth him that had *cursed* **abased**
out of **without** the camp, and stone him with stones.
And the *children sons of Israel* **did** **Yisra El** **worked**
as the LORD **Yah Veh**
commanded *Moses* **misvahed** **Mosheh**.

SHABBATH YEAR

25

And the LORD *spake* **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh** in mount *Sinai* **Sinay**, saying,
2 Speak **Word** unto the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**,
and say unto them,
When ye come into the land which I give you,
then shall the land *keep* **shabbathize** a *sabbath* **shabbath**
unto the LORD **Yah Veh**.
3 Six years thou shalt *sow* **seed** thy field,
and six years thou shalt *prune* **pluck** thy vineyard,

LEVITICUS 24, 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— a holy of holies to him of the firing to Yah Veh
— an eternal statute.

AN ABASER IS STONED

10 And the son of an *Yisra Eliy* woman,
a son of a man — a *Misrayim*,
goes out among the sons of *Yisra El*:
and this son of the *Yisra Eliy*
and an *Yisra Eliy* man
strive together in the camp;

11 and the son of the *Yisra Eliy* woman
pierces and abases the name.

And they bring him to *Mosheh*:
— the name of his mother is *Shelomith*
the daughter of *Dibri* of the rod of *Dan*
— and they set him under guard,
that the mouth of *Yah Veh* be expressed.

12 And *Yah Veh* words to *Mosheh*, saying,
13 Bring him who abases outside the camp;
14 and have all who hear him
prop their hands on his head
and have all the witness stone him.

15 And you word to the sons of *Yisra El*, saying,
A man
— any man who abases his *Elohim* bears his sin:
and he who pierces the name of *Yah Veh*,
in deathifying, deathify him;
and in stoning, have all the witness stone him
— the sojourner as well as he who births in the land:
and when he pierces the name, deathify him.

17 And a man who smites a human soul,
in deathifying, deathify him:
18 and he who smites the soul of an animal,
shalam for it; soul for soul:
19 and when a man gives a blemish in his friend;
as he works, work thus to him:
20 breach for breach
eye for eye
tooth for tooth:
as he gives a blemish in a human,
so be it given him.
21 And he who smites an animal,
shalams for it:
and deathify him who smites a human.

22 Have one judgment,
as becomes the sojourner, thus the native:
for I — *Yah Veh* your *Elohim*.

23 And *Mosheh* words to the sons of *Yisra El*,
to bring him who abased
outside the camp and stone him with stones:
and the sons of *Yisra El* work
as *Yah Veh* *misvahed* *Mosheh*.

SHABBATH YEAR

25

And *Yah Veh* words to *Mosheh* in mount *Sinay*,
saying,
2 Word to the sons of *Yisra El* and say to them,
When you come to the land I give you,
shabbathize the land — a shabbath to *Yah Veh*.
3 Six years seed your field
and six years pluck your vineyard

LEVITICUS 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and gather in the **fruit produce** thereof;
4 But in the seventh year
shall be a **sabbath shabbath**
of rest — a **shabbathism** unto the land,
a **sabbath shabbath** for the LORD **Yah Veh**:
thou shalt neither **sow seed** thy field,
nor **prune pluck** thy vineyard.
5 That which groweth of its own accord
spontaneous growth of thy harvest,
thou shalt not **reap harvest**,
neither **gather clip** the grapes
of thy **vine undressed separatism**:
for it is a year of **rest shabbathism** unto the land.
6 And the **sabbath shabbath** of the land
shall be **meat food** for you;
for thee, and for thy servant, and for thy maid,
and for thy **hired servant hireling**,
and for thy **stranger settler** that sojourneth with thee.
7 And for thy **cattle animals**,
and for the **beast live beings** that are in thy land,
shall all the **increase produce** thereof be **meat to eat**.
SHOPHAR OF BLASTING
8 And thou shalt **number scribe**
seven **sabbaths shabbaths** of years unto thee,
seven times seven years;
and the **space days**
of the seven **sabbaths shabbaths** of years
shall be unto thee forty and nine years.
9 Then shalt thou cause
the **trumpet shophar** of the **jubile blasting** to sound **pass**
on the **tenth day of the seventh month**
in the seventh month, on the tenth of the month,
in the **day of atonement Yom Kippurim**
shall ye **make pass** the **trumpet sound shophar**
throughout all your land.
10 And ye shall hallow **that year** — the fiftieth year,
and **proclaim call** liberty throughout all the land
unto all the **inhabitants who settle** thereof:
it shall be a jubile unto you;
and ye shall return every man unto his possession,
and ye shall return every man unto his family.
11 A jubile shall that **year** — the fiftieth year be unto you:
ye shall not **sow seed**, neither **reap harvest**
that which groweth of itself in it the **spontaneous growth**,
nor **gather the grapes clip** in it
of thy **vine undressed separatism**.
12 For it is the jubile; it shall be holy unto you:
ye shall eat the **increase produce** thereof out of the field.
13 In the year of this jubile
ye shall return every man unto his possession.
14 And if **in selling**,
thou **sell ought sellest** unto thy **neighbour friend**,
or **buyest ought chattelizest**
of thy **neighbour's friend's** hand,
ye shall not oppress **one another man to brother**:
15 According to the number of years after the jubile
thou shalt **buy chattelize** of thy **neighbour friend**,
and according
unto the number of years of the **fruits produce**
he shall sell unto thee:
16 According to the **multitude abundance** of years
thou shalt **increase greaten** the **price equity** thereof,
and according to the **fewness diminishing** of years
thou shalt diminish the **price equity** of it:
for according
to the number of the **years of the fruits produce**
doth he sell unto thee.
17 Ye shall not therefore
oppress **one another man to friend**;
but thou shalt **fear awe** thy **God Elohim**
for **I am the LORD I** — **Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**.
18 Wherefore ye shall **do work** my statutes,
and **keep guard** my judgments, and **do work** them;
and ye shall **dwell settle** in the land **in safety confidently**.
19 And the land shall **yield give** her fruit,
and ye shall eat **your fill to satiety**,
and **dwell therein in safety settle confidently**.
20 And if ye shall say,
What shall we eat the seventh year?

LEVITICUS 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and gather in the produce thereof;
4 and the seventh year becomes a shabbath
— a shabbathism to the land;
a shabbath to Yah Veh:
neither seed your field nor pluck your vineyard:
5 nor harvest the spontaneous growth of your harvest,
nor clip the grapes of your separatism:
for it is a year of shabbathism to the land:
6 and the shabbath of the land becomes your food
— for you and for your servant and for your maid
and for your hireling
and for your settler sojourning with you
and for your animals
and for the live beings in your land
— all the produce thereof is to eat.
SHOPHAR OF BLASTING
8 And scribe to yourselves seven shabbaths of years
— seven times seven years;
and the days of the seven shabbaths of years
become forty—nine years to you:
9 and pass the shophar of blasting
in the seventh month, on the tenth of the month,
in Yom Kippurim
pass the shophar throughout all your land:
10 and hallow that year — the fiftieth year
and call liberty throughout all the land
to all the who settle therein:
it becomes a jubilee to you;
and every man returns to his possession
and every man returns to his family.
11 A jubilee year — that fiftieth year to you:
neither seed nor harvest the spontaneous growth,
nor clip of your separatism:
12 for it is the jubilee; it becomes holy to you:
eat the produce thereof from the field.
13 In the year of this jubilee
every man returns to his possession.
14 And when in selling, you sell to your friend,
or chattelize of the hand of your friend,
oppress not man to brother:
15 according to the number of years after the jubilee
chattelize of your friend
and according
to the number of years of the produce
he sells to you:
16 according to the abundance of years
you abound the equity thereof
and according to the diminishing of years
you diminish the equity thereof:
for according
to the number of the produce he sells to you.
17 And oppress not man to friend;
but awe your Elohim
for I — Yah Veh your Elohim.
18 Work my statutes
and guard my judgments and work them;
and settle in the land confidently.
19 And the land gives her fruit
and you eat to satiety and settle confidently.
20 And when you say,
What eat we the seventh year?

LEVITICUS 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

21 behold, we shall not sow **seed**,
nor gather in our *increase* **produce**:
Then I *will command* **shall misvah** my blessing
upon you in the sixth year,
and it shall *bring forth fruit* **work** fruit for three years.
22 And ye shall sow **seed** the eighth year,
and eat yet of old *fruit* **produce** until the ninth year;
until her *fruits* **produce** come in,
ye shall eat of the old *store*.
23 The land shall not be sold *for ever* **ad infinitum**:
for the land is mine,
for ye are *strangers* **sojourners**
and *sojourners* **settlers** with me.
24 And in all the land of your possession
ye shall *grant* **give** a redemption for the land.
25 If thy brother be *waxen poor* **impoverished**,
and hath sold *away some* of his possession,
and if any of his **near of** kin come to redeem it,
then shall he redeem that which his brother sold.
26 And if *the man* **his hand**
have none **findeth not sufficient** to redeem it,
and *himself* **his own hand**
be able **hath attaineth** to redeem it;
27 Then let him *count* **fabricate**
the years of the sale thereof,
and restore the *overplus* **leftovers**
unto the man to whom he sold it;
that he may return unto his possession.
28 But if *he be not able* **his hand findeth not sufficient**
to restore it to him,
then that which is sold shall remain
in the hand of him that hath *bought* **chatted** it
until the year of jubile:
and in the jubile it shall go out,
and he shall return unto his possession.
29 And if a man
sell a *dwelling* **settlement** house in a walled city,
then he may redeem it
within a whole year **until the consummation of the year**
after it is sold;
within a full year may he — **days** to redeem it.
30 And if it be not redeemed
within the *space of a full* **fulfilling of an integrious** year,
then the house that is in the walled city
shall be *established for ever* **raised ad infinitum**
to him that *bought* **chatted** it throughout his generations:
it shall not go out in the jubile.
31 But the houses of the *villages* **courts**
which have no wall round about them
shall be *counted* **fabricated**
as the fields of the *country* **land**:
they may be redeemed,
and they shall go out in the jubile.
32 Notwithstanding the cities of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
and the houses of the cities of their possession,
may the *Levites* **Leviym** redeem *at any time* **eternally**.
33 And if a man **as for him**
purchase **that redeemeth** of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
then the house that was sold,
and the city of his possession,
shall go out in the *year of jubile*:
for the houses of the cities of the *Levites* **Leviym**
are their possession
among the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**.
34 But the field of the suburbs of their cities
may not be sold;
for it is their *perpetual* **eternal** possession.
35 And if thy brother be *waxen poor* **impoverished**,
and *fallen in decay* **his hand shaketh** with thee;
then thou shalt *relieve* **strengthen** him:
yea, though he be a stranger **as a sojourner**,
or a *sojourner* **as a settler**;
that he may live with thee.
36 Take thou no usury of him, or *increase* **bounty**:
but *fear* **awe** thy *God* **Elohim**;
that thy brother may live with thee.
37 Thou shalt not give him thy *money* **silver** upon usury,
nor *lend* **give** him thy *victuals* **food** for increase.
38 I am the **LORD I** — **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**,

LEVITICUS 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

21 behold, we neither seed nor gather in our produce!
Then I misvah my blessing on you
in the sixth year
to work the fruit of three years.
22 And the eighth year, you seed
and eat yet of old produce until the ninth year;
until her produce comes in, eat of the old.
23 Sell not the land ad infinitum:
for the land *is* mine,
for you *are* sojourners and settlers with me:
and in all the land of your possession
give a redemption for the land.
25 When your brother impoverishes
and sells his possession;
and when any of his near of kin comes to redeem it,
then he redeems what his brother sold:
and if his hand finds not sufficient to redeem
and his own hand attains to redeem it;
27 then have him fabricate
the years of the sale thereof
and restore the leftovers
to the man to whom he sold it
so that he returns to his possession.
28 And if his hand
finds not sufficient to restore it to him,
then what *is* sold
remains in the hand of him who chatted it
until the year of jubilee:
and in the jubilee it goes out
and he returns to his possession.
29 And when a man
sells a settlement house in a walled city,
then his rights to redeem
are until the consummation of the year it *is* sold;
— days to redeem it.
30 And if it is not redeemed
within the fulfilling of an integrious year,
then the house in the walled city
raises ad infinitum
to him who chatted it throughout his generations
— it goes not out in the jubilee.
31 And the houses of the courts
having no wall all around them,
are fabricated as the fields of the land
with rights to redeem:
and they go out in the jubilee.
32 And the cities of the Leviym
and the houses of the cities of their possession,
the Leviym have eternal rights to redeem.
33 And as for him who redeems of the Leviym,
both the house that *is* sold
and the city of his possession
go out in the jubilee:
for the houses of the cities of the Leviym
are their possession among the sons of Yisra El.
34 And the field of the suburbs of their cities
never sell;
for it *is* their eternal possession.
35 And if your brother who shakes hands with you
impoverishes,
strengthen him:
yes, as a sojourner or as a settler, to live with you:
36 take no usury of him, or bounty:
but awe your Elohim;
that your brother live with you:
37 neither give him your silver on usury,
nor give him your food for increase:
38 I — Yah Veh your Elohim,

LEVITICUS 25

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

which brought you forth
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
to give you the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
and to be your *God* **Elohim**.

39 And if thy brother *that dwelleth* by thee
be *waxen poor* **impoverished**, and be sold unto thee;
thou shalt not compel him to serve as a bondservant
he shall not serve the service of a servant:

40 But as an *hired servant* **hireling**,
and as a *sojourner* **settler**,
he shall be with thee,
and shall serve thee unto the year of jubile.

41 And then shall he depart from thee,
both he and his *children* **sons** with him,
and shall return unto his own family,
and unto the possession of his fathers shall he return.

42 For they are my servants,
which I brought forth out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
they shall not be *sold as bondmen* **the sale of servants**.

43 Thou shalt not *rule over* **subjugate** him
with *rigour* **tyranny**;
but shalt *fear* **awe** thy *God* **Elohim**.

44 Both thy *bondmen* **servants**, and thy *bondmaids* **maids**,
which thou shalt have,
shall be of the *heathen* **goyim** that are round about you;
of them shall ye *buy bondmen* **chattelize servants**
and *bondmaids* **maids**.

45 Moreover of the *children* **sons** of the *strangers* **settlers**
that do sojourn among you,
of them shall ye *buy* **chattelize**,
and of their families that are with you,
which they *begat* **birthed** in your land:
and they shall be your possession.

46 And ye shall *take* **inherit** them *as an inheritance*
for your *children* **sons** after you,
to *inherit* **possess** them for a possession;
they shall be your *bondmen* **for ever serve you eternally**:
but over your brethren the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
ye shall not *rule* **subjugate**
one over another **man to brother** with *rigour* **tyranny**.

47 And if **the hand** of a sojourner or *stranger* **settler**
wax rich **hath attained** by thee,
and thy brother *that dwelleth* by him
wax poor **be impoverished**,
and sell himself
unto the *stranger* **sojourner** or *sojourner* **settler** by thee,
or to the *stock of the stranger's family*
the sojourner's family be uprooted:

48 After that he is sold he may be redeemed again;
one of his brethren may redeem him:

49 Either his uncle, or his uncle's son, may redeem him,
or *any that is nigh of kin unto him* **kinflesh** of his family
may redeem him;
or if *he be able* **his hand hath attained**,
he may redeem *himself*.

50 And he shall *reckon* **fabricate** with him
that *bought* **chatted** him
from the year that he was sold to him
unto the year of jubile:
and the *price* **silver** of his sale
shall be according unto the number of years,
according to the *time* **days** of an *hired servant* **hireling**
shall it be with him.

51 If there be yet many years *behind*,
according unto **the mouth** of them
he shall *give again the price of* **return** his redemption
out of the *money* **silver**
that he was bought for **for which he became a chattel**.

52 And if there *remain* **survive** but few years
unto the year of jubile,
then he shall *count* **fabricate** with him,
and according unto **the mouth** of his years
shall *he give* **return to** him *again*
the price of **for** his redemption.

53 And as a *yearly hired servant* **year by year hireling**
shall he be with him:
and the other shall not
rule with rigour over **subjugate** him **with tyranny**
in thy *sight* **eyes**.

LEVITICUS 25

exeGeses companion BIBLE

who brought you from the land of Misrayim,
to give you the land of Kenaan
and to be your Elohim.

39 And if your brother by you impoverishes
and is sold to you;
he serves not the service of a servant:
but he becomes with you
as a hireling and as a settler;
and serves you to the year of jubilee:
and then he departs from you
— both he and his sons with him
and returns to his own family
and returns to the possession of his fathers.

42 For they *are* my servants,
whom I brought from the land of Misrayim:
to not be sold as the sale of a servant.

43 Subjugate him not with tyranny;
but awe your Elohim.

44 Both your servants and your maids,
which you have of the goyim all around you
— of them you chattelize servants and maids.

45 And also
of the sons of the settlers who sojourn among you
— chattelize of them and of their families with you,
which they birth in your land:
and they become your possession:
and inherit them for your sons after you
to possess them for a possession
to serve you eternally:
but over your brothers, the sons of Yisra El,
subjugate not man to brother with tyranny.

47 And if the hand
of a sojourner or settler by you attains,
and your brother by him impoverishes
and sells himself to the sojourner or settler by you,
or the family of the sojourner uproots:
after he sells himself, he has a right of redeeming
for one of his brothers to redeem him
— either his uncle or the son of his uncle
to redeem him
— or any kinflesh of his family to redeem him:
or if his hand attains, to redeem himself.

50 And he fabricates with him who chatted him
— from the year he sold himself
to the year of jubilee:
and the silver of his sale
becomes according to the number of years,
according to the days of a hireling, so be it with him.

51 If yet many years, according to their mouth,
he returns his redemption
from the silver for which he became a chattel.

52 And if there survive but few years
to the year of jubilee,
then he fabricates with him
and according to the mouth of his years
he returns to him of his redemption.

53 And he becomes with him
as a year by year hireling:
and the other subjugates him not with tyranny
in your eyes.

LEVITICUS 25, 26

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

54 And if he be not redeemed in these years,
then he shall go out in the year of jubilee,
both he, and his *children sons* with him.
55 For unto me the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*
are servants;
they are my servants whom I brought forth
out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God Elohim.

BLESSING OF OBEDIENCE

26

Ye shall *make work* you no idols
nor *graven image sculptile*,
neither *rear you up raise* a *standing image monolith*,
neither shall ye *set up give* any *image imagery* of stone
in your land,
to *bow down prostrate* unto it:
for *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God Elohim.*
2 Ye shall *keep guard* my *sabbaths shabbaths*,
and *reverence awe* my *sanctuary holies*:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.
3 If ye walk in my statutes,
and *keep guard* my *commandments misvoth*,
and *do work* them;
4 Then I *will shall* give you *rain downpour*
in *due season time*,
and the land shall *yield give* her *increase produce*,
and the trees of the field shall *yield give* their fruit.
5 And your threshing shall reach
unto the *vintage crop*,
and the *vintage crop* shall reach
unto the *sowing time seeding*:
and ye shall eat your bread to *the full satiety*,
and *dwelt settle* in your land *safely confidently*.
6 And I *will shall* give *peace shalom* in the land,
and ye shall lie down,
and none shall *make tremble* you *afraid*:
and I *will rid evil beasts shall cause the evil live being*
to shabbathize out of the land,
neither shall the sword *go pass* through your land.
7 And ye shall *chase pursue* your enemies,
and they shall fall *before you at your face* by the sword.
8 And five of you shall *chase pursue* an hundred,
and an hundred of you
shall *put ten thousand to flight pursue a myriad*:
and your enemies shall fall *before you at your face*
by the sword.
9 For I *will have respect shall turn my face*
unto *toward* you,
and *make you fruitful that you bear fruit*,
and *multiply abound* you,
and *establish raise* my covenant with you.
10 And ye shall eat old store,
and bring forth the old *because of at the face of* the new.
11 And I *will set shall give* my tabernacle among you:
and my soul shall not *abhor loathe* you.
12 And I *will shall* walk among you,
and *will be your God shall be to you, Elohim*,
and ye shall *be my people be to me, people*.
13 *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God Elohim*,
which brought you forth
out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
that ye should not be their *bondmen servants*;
and I have broken the *bands yoke poles* of your yoke,
and *made you go upright carried you erect*.
DISCIPLINE OF DISOBEDIENCE

14

But if ye *will shall* not hearken unto me,
and *will shall* not *do work*
all these *commandments misvoth*;
15 And if ye shall *despise spurn* my statutes,
or if your soul *abhor loathe* my judgments,
so that ye *will shall* not
do work all my *commandments misvoth*,
but that ye break my covenant:

16

I also *will do shall work* this unto you;
I *will even appoint shall visit* over you terror,
consumption emaciation, and the burning ague,
that shall *consume finish off* the eyes,
and cause *sorrow moping of heart soul*:
and ye shall *sow seed* your seed in vain,
for your enemies shall eat it.

LEVITICUS 25, 26

exeGeses companion BIBLE

54 And if he is not redeemed in these years,
he goes out in the year of jubilee
— both he and his sons with him.
55 For to me the sons of Yisra El are servants;
— my servants
whom I brought from the land of Misrayim:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.

BLESSING OF OBEDIENCE

26

Work neither idols nor sculptiles
nor raise a monolith;
nor give any imagery of stone in your land
to prostrate thereto:
for I — Yah Veh your Elohim.
2 Guard my sabbaths and awe my holies:
I — Yah Veh.
3 If you walk in my statutes
and guard and work my misvoth,
then I give you downpour in time
and the land gives her produce
and the trees of the field give their fruit:
and your threshing reaches to the crop
and the crop reaches to the seeding:
and you eat your bread to satiety
and settle in your land confidently:
and I give shalom in the land;
and you lie down and no one trembles you:
and I cause the evil live being
to shabbathize from the land:
that the sword not pass through your land.
7 And you pursue your enemies
and they fall by the sword at your face:
8 and five of you pursue a hundred
and a hundred of you pursue a myriad;
and your enemies fall by the sword at your face.
9 And I turn my face toward you
that you bear fruit and abound;
and raise my covenant with you:
and you eat old store
and bring forth the old at the face of the new.
11 And I give my tabernacle among you:
and my soul loathes you not:
and I walk among you
and become to you, Elohim
and you become to me, people:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim
who brought you from the land of Misrayim
that you not be their servants;
and I break the yoke poles of your yoke
and carry you erect.

DISCIPLINE OF DISOBEDIENCE

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41

42

43

44

45

46

47

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

66

67

68

69

70

71

72

73

74

75

76

77

78

79

80

81

82

83

84

85

86

87

88

89

90

91

92

93

94

95

96

97

98

99

100

101

102

103

104

105

106

107

108

109

110

111

112

113

114

115

116

117

118

119

120

121

122

123

124

125

126

127

128

129

130

131

132

133

134

135

136

137

138

139

140

141

142

143

144

145

146

147

148

149

150

151

152

153

154

155

156

157

158

159

160

161

162

163

164

165

166

167

168

169

170

171

172

173

174

175

176

177

178

179

180

181

182

183

184

185

186

187

188

189

190

191

192

193

194

195

196

197

198

199

200

201

202

203

204

205

206

207

208

209

210

211

212

213

214

215

216

217

218

219

220

221

222

223

224

225

226

227

228

229

230

231

232

233

234

235

236

237

238

239

240

241

242

243

244

245

246

247

248

249

250

251

252

253

254

255

256

257

258

259

260

261

262

263

264

265

266

267

268

269

270

271

272

273

274

275

276

277

278

LEVITICUS 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 17 And I will set **shall give** my face against you,
and ye shall be *slain* **smitten**
before at the face of your enemies:
they that hate you shall *reign over* **subjugate** you;
and ye shall flee when none pursueth you.
- 18 And if ye will **shall** not yet for all this hearken unto me,
then I will *punish* **shall add to discipline** you
seven times *more* for your sins.
- 19 And I will **shall** break
the *pride* **pomp** of your *power* **strength**;
and I will *make* **shall give** your *heaven* **heavens** as iron,
and your earth as *brass* **copper**;
20 And your *strength* **force**
shall be *spent* **consumed** in vain:
for that your land
shall not *yield* **give** her *increase* **produce**,
neither shall the trees of the land *yield* **give** their fruits.
- 21 And if ye walk contrary unto me,
and will **shall** not hearken unto me;
I will *bring* **shall add** seven *times more* **plagues strokes**
upon you according to your sins.
- 22 I will **shall** also send
wild beasts **live beings of the field** among you,
which shall *rob* **bereave** you *of your children*,
and *destroy* **cut** your *cattle* **animals**,
and *make* **diminish** you *few in number*;
and
your high ways shall be desolate **shall desolate your ways**.
- 23 And if ye will **shall** not be *reformed* **disciplined** by me
by these *things*,
but will **shall** walk contrary unto me;
- 24 Then will **shall** I also walk contrary unto you,
and will *punish* **shall smite** you
yet seven *times* for your sins.
- 25 And I will **shall** bring a sword upon you,
that shall *avenge the quarrel* **avenging** of my covenant:
and when ye are gathered *together within* **unto** your cities,
I will **shall** send the pestilence among you;
and ye shall be *delivered* **given**
into the hand of the enemy.
- 26 And when I have broken the *staff rod* of your bread,
ten women shall bake your bread in one oven,
and they shall *deliver you* **restore** your bread *again*
by weight:
and ye shall eat, and not be *satisfied* **satiated**.
- 27 And if ye will **shall** not for all this hearken unto me,
but walk contrary unto me;
- 28 Then I will **shall** walk contrary unto you also in fury;
and I, *even* **yea** I,
will *chastise* **shall discipline** you seven *times* for your sins.
- 29 And ye shall eat the flesh of your sons,
and the flesh of your daughters shall ye eat.
- 30 And I will **shall** destroy your *high places* **bamahs**,
and cut down your *images* **sun icons**,
and *cast* **give** your carcasses
upon the carcasses of your idols,
and my soul shall *abhor* **loathe** you.
- 31 And I will *make* **shall give** your cities
waste **parched areas**,
and *bring your sanctuaries unto desolation*
desolate your holies,
and I will **shall** not *smell* **scent**
the savour of your sweet odours **your scent of rest**.
- 32 And I will **shall**
bring the land into desolation **desolate the land**:
and your enemies which *dwell* **settle** therein
shall be *astonished at it* **desolated**.
- 33 And I will **shall** scatter you among the *heathen* **goyim**,
and will **shall** draw out a sword after you:
and your land shall be desolate,
and your cities *waste* **parched areas**.
- 34 Then shall the land
enjoy **be pleased in** her *sabbaths* **shabbaths**,
as long as it *lieth desolate* **desolateth**,
and ye be in your enemies' land;
even then shall the land *rest* **shabbathize**,
and *enjoy* **be pleased in** her *sabbaths* **shabbaths**.
- 35 As long as it *lieth desolate* **desolateth**
it shall *rest* **shabbathize**;

LEVITICUS 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 17 And I give my face against you,
that you become smitten at the face of your enemies:
that they who hate you subjugate you;
and that you flee when none pursues you.
- 18 And if you yet for all this hearken not to me
I add to discipline you seven times for your sins:
and I break the pomp of your strength;
and I give your heavens as iron
and your earth as copper:
- 20 and your force consumes in vain:
neither your land gives her produce
nor the trees of the land give their fruits.
- 21 And if you walk contrary to me
and hearken not to me;
I add seven strokes on you according to your sins:
and I send live beings of the field among you
to bereave you and cut your animals
and diminish you and desolate your ways.
- 23 And if by these, you are not disciplined by me,
and walk contrary to me,
then I also walk contrary to you
and smite you yet seven for your sins:
and I bring a sword on you
to avenge the avenging of my covenant:
and when you gather to your cities,
I send the pestilence among you;
that you become given into the hand of the enemy:
and in breaking the rod of your bread,
ten women bake your bread in one oven
and they restore your bread by weight:
and you eat and satiate not.
- 27 And if for all this, you hearken not to me
and walk contrary to me;
then I also walk contrary to you in fury;
and I — yes, I discipline you seven for your sins:
and you eat the flesh of your sons
and you eat the flesh of your daughters.
- 30 And I destroy your bamahs
and cut down your sun icons
and give your carcasses on the carcasses of your idols
that my soul loathe you:
- 31 and I give your cities as parched areas
and desolate your holies
and I scent not your scent of rest:
and I desolate the land
and desolate your enemies who settle therein:
and I scatter you among the goyim
and draw a sword after you:
and desolate your land and parch your cities.
- 34 Then the land *is* pleased in her sabbaths
as long as it desolates;
with you in the land of your enemies;
then the land shabbathizes
and *is* pleased in her sabbaths:
as long as it desolates, it shabbathizes;

LEVITICUS 26, 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

because it did not rest **shabbathize**
in your *sabbaths* **shabbaths**,
when ye *dwelt* **settled** upon it.
36 And upon them that *are left alive* **survive** of you
I *will shall* send a *faintness* **timidity** into their hearts
in the lands of their enemies;
and the *sound* **voice** of a *shaken* **driven** leaf
shall *chase* **pursue** them;
and they shall flee, as *fleeing* **retreating** from a sword;
and they shall fall when none pursueth.
37 And they shall *fall* **falter**
one upon another — **man to brother**,
as it were *before* **at the face** of a sword,
when none pursueth:
and ye shall have no *power to stand* **resistance**
before **at the face** of your enemies.
38 And ye shall *perish* **destruct** among the *heathen* **goyim**,
and the land of your enemies shall eat you up.
39 And they that *are left* **survive** of you
shall pine away in their *iniquity* **perversity**
in your enemies' lands;
and also in the *iniquities* **perversities** of their fathers
shall they pine away with them.

THE REWARD FOR WRINGING HANDS

40 If they shall *confess* **wring hands**
for their iniquity perversity,
and the *iniquity* **perversity** of their fathers,
with their *trespass* **treason**
which they *trespassed* **treasoned** against me,
and that also they have walked contrary unto me;
41 And that I also have walked contrary unto them,
and have brought them into the land of their enemies;
if then their uncircumcised hearts be humbled,
and they then *accept of* **be pleased**
in the punishment of their iniquity perversity:
42 Then *will shall* I remember
my covenant with *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and also my covenant with *Isaac* **Yischaq**,
and also my covenant with Abraham
will shall I remember;
and I *will shall* remember the land.
43 The land also shall be left of them,
and shall *enjoy* **be pleased in** her *sabbaths* **shabbaths**,
while she lieth desolate without them:
and they shall *accept* **be pleased**
of the punishment of their iniquity in their perversity:
because,
even because they *despised* **spurned** my judgments,
and because their soul *abhorred* **loathed** my statutes.
44 And *yet* **yea** for all that,
when they be in the land of their enemies,
I *will shall* not *cast* **spurn** them away,
neither *will shall* I *abhor* **loathe** them,
to *destroy* **finish** them *utterly* **off**,
and to break my covenant with them:
for *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**.
45 But I *will shall* for their sakes
remember the covenant of their *ancestors* **first**,
whom I brought forth out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *heathen* **goyim**,
that I might be their *God* **Elohim**:
I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh**.

46 These are the statutes and judgments and *laws* **torahs**,
which *the LORD made* **Yah Veh gave** between him
and *between the children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
in mount *Sinai* **Sinay** by the hand of *Moses* **Mosheh**.

TORAH ON VOWS

27 And *the LORD spake* **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
2 *Speak* **Word** unto the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
and say unto them,
When a man shall *make a singular* **marvel** a vow,
the *persons* **souls** shall be for *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
by thy *estimation* **appraisal**.
3 And thy *estimation* **appraisal** shall be
of the male *from a son of* twenty years *old*
even unto *a son of* sixty years *old*,
even thy *estimation* **appraisal** shall be
fifty shekels of silver,

LEVITICUS 26, 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

because it shabbathizes not in your shabbaths
when you settle there.

36 And on those who survive,
I send a timidity into their hearts
in the lands of their enemies;
and the voice of a driven leaf pursues them;
and they flee as retreating from a sword;
and they fall when none pursues:
37 and they falter — man to brother
as at the face of a sword
when none pursues:
and you have no resistance
at the face of your enemies:
38 and you destruct among the goyim
and the land of your enemies eats you:
39 and those of you who survive
pine away in their perversity
in the lands of your enemies;
and also in the perversities of their fathers
they pine away with them.

THE REWARD FOR WRINGING HANDS

40 And if they wring hands for their perversity
and the perversity of their fathers,
and the treason they treason against me
and also for walking contrary to me;
41 and that I also,
in walking contrary to them
bring them into the land of their enemies
— if they humble their uncircumcised hearts;
and they then be pleased
in the punishment of their perversity
42 — then I remember my covenant with Yaaqov
and also my covenant with Yischaq
and also my covenant with Abraham I remember
— and I remember the land.

43 For they forsake the land
and *are* pleased in her shabbaths
as she lies desolate without them:
and they *are* pleased in their perversity:
because — even because they spurn my judgments
and because their soul loathes my statutes.

44 And yes, for all that,
when they *are* in the land of their enemies,
I neither spurn them nor loathe them
to finish them off
— to break my covenant with them:
for I — Yah Veh their Elohim.

45 But I, for their sakes,
remember the covenant of their first,
whom I brought from the land of Misrayim
in the eyes of the goyim,
that I become their Elohim:
I — Yah Veh.

46 These *are* the statutes and judgments and torahs
Yah Veh gave
between him and between the sons of Yisra El
in mount Sinay by the hand of Mosheh.

TORAH ON VOWS

27 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Word to the sons of Yisra El and say to them,
When a man marvels a vow,
the souls *are* to Yah Veh by your appraisal.

3 And your appraisal, if a male,
a son of twenty years even to a son of sixty years,
your appraisal, fifty shekels of silver

LEVITICUS 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- after the shekel of the sanctuary holies.
- 4 And if it be a female,
then thy *estimation appraisal* shall be
thirty shekels.
- 5 And if it be from a son of five years old
even unto a son of twenty years old,
then thy *estimation appraisal* shall be
of the male twenty shekels,
and for the female ten shekels.
- 6 And if it be from a son of a month old
even unto a son of five years old,
then thy *estimation appraisal* shall be
of the male five shekels of silver,
and for the female thy *estimation appraisal* shall be
three shekels of silver.
- 7 And if it be from a son of sixty years old and above;
if it be a male,
then thy *estimation appraisal* shall be
fifteen shekels,
and for the female ten shekels.
- 8 But if he be poorer impoverished
than thy *estimation beyond thy appraisal*,
then he shall present stand himself
before at the face of the priest,
and the priest shall value appraise him;
according to his ability mouth as his hand hath attained
that vowed shall the priest value appraise him.
- 9 And if it be a beast an animal,
whereof men bring an offering he oblate a qorban
unto the LORD Yah Veh,
all that any man he giveth of such
unto the LORD Yah Veh shall be holy.
- 10 He shall not alter change it,
nor change exchange it,
a good for a bad an evil, or a bad an evil for a good:
and if in exchanging, he shall at all change exchange
beast animal for beast animal,
then it and the exchange thereof shall be holy.
- 11 And if it be any unclean beast fouled animal,
of which they do not offer oblate a sacrifice qorban
unto the LORD Yah Veh,
then he shall present stand the beast animal
before at the face of the priest:
- 12 And the priest shall value appraise it,
whether it be good or bad evil:
as thou valuest it thy appraisal, who art the priest,
so shall it be.
- 13 But if in redeeming, he will at all shall redeem it,
then he shall add a fifth part thereof
unto thy *estimation appraisal*.
- 14 And when a man shall sanctify hallow his house
to be holy unto the LORD Yah Veh,
then the priest shall estimate appraise it,
whether it be good or bad evil:
as the priest shall estimate appraise it,
so shall it stand be raised.
- 15 And if he that sanctified hallowed it
will shall redeem his house,
then he shall add the fifth part of the money silver
of thy *estimation appraisal* unto it,
and it shall be his.
- 16 And if a man
shall sanctify hallow unto the LORD Yah Veh
some part of a field of his possession,
then thy *estimation appraisal* shall be
according to the mouth of the seed thereof:
an homer a chomer of barley seed
shall be valued at fifty shekels of silver.
- 17 If he sanctify hallow his field from the year of jubilee,
according to thy *estimation appraisal*
it shall stand be raised.
- 18 But if he sanctify hallow his field after the jubile,
then the priest
shall reckon fabricate unto him the money silver
according to the mouth of the years that remain,
even unto the year of the jubile,
and it shall be abated from thy *estimation appraisal*.
- 19 And if he that sanctified hallowed the field
will in any wise in redeeming, shall redeem it,

LEVITICUS 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- after the shekel of the holies.
- 4 And if a female,
your appraisal, thirty shekels.
- 5 And if a son,
of five years even to a son of twenty years,
your appraisal of the male, twenty shekels
and for the female, ten shekels.
- 6 And if a son,
of a month to a son of five years,
then your appraisal of the male, five shekels of silver
and your appraisal for the female,
three shekels of silver.
- 7 And if a son, sixty years and above, if a male,
your appraisal, fifteen shekels
and for the female, ten shekels.
- 8 And if he impoverishes beyond your appraisal,
then he stands at the face of the priest;
and the priest appraises him;
according to his mouth
who vows what his hand attained
the priest appraises him.
- 9 And if an animal,
whereof they oblate a qorban to Yah Veh,
all of such that he gives to Yah Veh becomes holy:
he neither changes nor exchanges
a good for an evil or an evil for a good:
and if in exchanging,
he exchanges animal for animal,
then it and the exchange thereof become holy.
- 11 And if any foul animal,
of which they oblate not a qorban to Yah Veh,
then he stands the animal at the face of the priest:
and the priest appraises, whether good or evil:
and as the appraisal of the priest,
so be it.
- 12 And if in redeeming, he redeems it,
then he adds a fifth to your appraisal.
- 14 And if a man hallows his house
to become holy to Yah Veh,
then the priest appraises, whether good or evil:
as the priest appraises,
so be it raised.
- 15 And if he who hallows redeems his house,
then he adds the fifth of the silver of your appraisal
and it becomes his.
- 16 And if a man hallows a field of his possession
to Yah Veh,
then your appraisal,
according to the mouth of the seed thereof
— a chomer of barley seed at fifty shekels of silver.
- 17 If he hallows his field from the year of jubilee,
according to your appraisal,
so be it raised.
- 18 And if he hallows his field after the jubilee,
then the priest fabricates to him the silver
according to the mouth of the years remaining
to the year of the jubilee
and it diminishes from your appraisal.
- 19 And if in redeeming,
he who hallows the field redeems it,

LEVITICUS 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

then he shall add the fifth *part* of the money **silver**
of thy *estimation* **appraisal** unto it,
and it shall be *assured* **raised** to him.
20 And if he *will* **shall** not redeem the field,
or if he have sold the field to another man,
it shall not be redeemed any more.
21 But the field, when it goeth out in the jubile,
shall be holy unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, as a field devoted;
the possession thereof shall be the priest's.
22 And if a *man sanctify* **one hallow** unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
a field *which he hath bought* **of his chattel**,
which is not of the fields of his possession;
23 Then the priest shall *reckon* **fabricate** unto him
the worth of thy *estimation* **appraisal**,
even unto the year of the jubile:
and he shall give thine *estimation* **appraisal** in that day,
as a *holy thing* **holies** unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
24 In the year of the jubile the field shall return unto him
of whom it was *bought* **chattel**,
even to him
to whom the possession of the land *did belong* **be**.
25 And all thy *estimations* **appraisals**
shall be according to the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**:
twenty *gerahs* shall be the shekel.
26 Only the firstling of the *beasts* **animals**,
which should be *the LORD'S* **Yah Veh's** firstling,
no man shall *sanctify* **hallow** it;
whether it be *ox*, or *sheep* **lamb**:
it is *the LORD'S* **Yah Veh's**.
27 And if it be of an *unclean beast* **a fouled animal**,
then he shall redeem it
according to thine *estimation* **appraisal**,
and shall add a fifth *part* of it thereto:
or if it be not redeemed,
then it shall be sold according to thy *estimation* **appraisal**.
28 Notwithstanding *no* **naught** devoted *thing*,
that a man shall devote unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
of all that he hath,
both of man and beast **from human to animal**,
and of the field of his possession,
shall be sold or redeemed:
every **all** devoted *thing*
is *most holy* **a holy of holies** unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
29 *None* **Naught** devoted,
which shall be devoted of *men* **humanity**,
shall be redeemed;
but *in deathifying*, shall *surely* be *put to death* **deathified**.
30 And all the tithe of the land,
whether of the seed of the land, or of the fruit of the tree,
is *the LORD'S* **Yah Veh's**:
it is — holy unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
31 And if *in redeeming*,
a man will at all **he shall** redeem *ought* of his tithes,
he shall add thereto the fifth *part* thereof.
32 And concerning the tithe of the *herd* **oxen**,
or of the flock,
even of whatsoever passeth under the *rod* **scion**,
the tenth shall be holy unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
33 He shall not search whether it be good or *bad* **evil**,
neither shall he change it:
and if *in changing*, he change it *at all*,
then both it and the change thereof shall be holy;
it shall not be redeemed.
34 These are the *commandments* **misvoth**,
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**
for the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
in mount *Sinai* **Sinay**.

LEVITICUS 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

then he adds the fifth of the silver of your appraisal:
and so be it raised to him.
20 And if he redeems not the field,
or if he sells the field to another man,
it is not redeemed any more:
21 and the field, when it goes out in the jubilee,
becomes holy to Yah Veh, a field devoted;
the possession thereof becomes to the priest.
22 And if one hallows a field of his chattel
to Yah Veh,
not of the fields of his possession;
23 then the priest fabricates to him
the value of your appraisal to the year of the jubilee:
and he gives your appraisal in that day
as a holies to Yah Veh.
24 In the year of the jubilee the field returns
to him of whom it was chattered
— to whom the possession of the land was.
25 And all your appraisals
become according to the shekel of the holies
— twenty *gerahs* be the shekel.
26 Only the firstling of the animals
— the firstling of Yah Veh,
no man hallows — whether ox, or lamb
— it becomes to Yah Veh.
27 And if of a foul animal,
then he redeems it according to your appraisal
and adds a fifth:
or if not redeemed,
then it is sold according to your appraisal.
28 Only naught devoted
— that a man devotes to Yah Veh of all he has
— from human to animal
and of the field of his possession
is ever sold or redeemed:
all that is devoted
becomes a holy of holies to Yah Veh.
29 Naught devoted — devoted by humanity,
is redeemed:
but in deathifying, *is* deathified.
30 And all the tithe of the land,
whether of the seed of the land,
or of the fruit of the tree,
becomes to Yah Veh — holy to Yah Veh.
31 And if in redeeming, he redeems of his tithes,
he adds the fifth.
32 And all the tithe of the oxen and of the flock,
— whatever passes under the scion,
the tenth becomes holy to Yah Veh.
33 He neither searches whether good or evil,
nor exchanges:
and if in exchanging, he exchanges it,
then both it and the exchange become holy;
— not redeemed.
34 These *are* the misvoth,
Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh
for the sons of Yisra El in mount Sinay.

NUMBERS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

CENSUS OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

1 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh** worded unto **Moses Mosheh** in the wilderness of **Sinai Sinay**, in the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation, on the first **day** of the second month, in the second year after they were come out of the land of **Egypt Misrayim**, saying,

2 Take **Bear** ye the sum of all the **congregation witness** of the **children sons** of **Israel Yisra El**, after **by** their families, by the house of their fathers, with the number of their names, every male by their **polls craniums**;

3 From **Sons** of twenty years **old** and upward, all that are able to go forth to war **hostility** in **Israel Yisra El**:
thou and **Aaron Aharon** shall **number muster** them by their **armies hosts**.

4 And with you there shall be a man of every **tribe per rod**; every one head of the house of his fathers.

5 And these are the names of the men that shall stand with you:
of the **tribe of Reuben Of Reu Ben**;
Elizur Eli Sur the son of **Shedeur Sheday Ur**.
Of **Simeon Shimon**;
Shelumiel Shelumi El the son of **Zurishaddai Suri Shadday**.
Of **Judah Yah Hudah**;
Nahshon the son of **Amminadab Ammi Nadab**.
Of **Issachar Yissachar**;
Nethaneel Nethan El the son of **Zuar Suar**.
Of **Zebulun**;
Eliab Eli Ab the son of **Helon**.
Of the **children sons** of **Joseph Yoseph**:
of **Ephraim Ephrayim**;
Elishama Eli Shama the son of **Ammihud Ammi Hud**:
of **Manasseh Menash Sheh**;
Gamaliel Gamli El the son of **Pedahzur Pedah Sur**.
Of **Benjamin Ben Yamin**;
Abidan Abi Dan the son of **Gideoni Gidoni**.
Of **Dan**;
Ahiezer Achi Ezer the son of **Ammishaddai Ammi Shaday**.
Of **Asher**;
Pagiel Pagi El the son of **Ocran Ochran**.
Of **Gad**;
Eliasaph Eli Yasaph the son of **Deuel Deu El**.
Of **Naphtali**;
Ahira Achi Ra the son of **Enan**.
These were the **renowned called** of the **congregation witness**, **princes hierarchs** of the **tribes rods** of their fathers, heads of thousands in **Israel Yisra El**.

17 And **Moses Mosheh** and **Aaron Aharon** took these men which are expressed **appointed** by their names:
18 And they **assembled congregated** all the **congregation witness together** on the first **day** of the second month, and they declared their **pedigrees after births** by their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, from **sons** of twenty years **old** and upward, by their **polls craniums**.

19 As the **LORD Yah Veh** commanded **Moses misvahed Mosheh**, so he **numbered mustered** them in the wilderness of **Sinai Sinay**.

20 And the **children sons** of **Reuben Reu Ben**, **Israel's eldest son Yisra El's firstbirthed**, by their generations, after **by** their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, by their **polls craniums**, every male **son** from twenty years **old** and upward, all that were able to go forth to war **hostility**;

NUMBERS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

CENSUS OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

1 And **Yah Veh** words to **Mosheh** in the wilderness of **Sinay** in the tent of the congregation, on the first of the second month, in the second year, after their going from the land of **Misrayim**, saying,

2 Bear the sum of all the witness of the sons of **Yisra El**, by their families, by the house of their fathers, with the number of their names — every male by their craniums; sons of twenty years and upward — all in **Yisra El** going to hostility: you and **Aharon** muster them by their hosts: and there be a man per rod with you — every one a head of the house of his fathers.

5 And these are the names of the men who stand with you:
Of **Reu Ben**:
Eli Sur the son of **Sheday Ur**.
Of **Shimon**:
Shelumi El the son of **Suri Shadday**.
Of **Yah Hudah**:
Nahshon the son of **Ammi Nadab**.
Of **Yissachar**:
Nethan El the son of **Suar**.
Of **Zebulun**:
Eli Ab the son of **Helon**.
Of the sons of **Yoseph**: of **Ephrayim**:
Eli Shama the son of **Ammi Hud**.
Of **Menash Sheh**:
Gamli El the son of **Pedah Sur**.
Of **Ben Yamin**:
Abi Dan the son of **Gidoni**.
Of **Dan**:
Achi Ezer the son of **Ammi Shaday**.
Of **Asher**:
Pagi El the son of **Ocran**.
Of **Gad**:
Eli Yasaph the son of **Deu El**.
Of **Naphtali**:
Achi Ra the son of **Enan**.
These are the called of the witness, hierarchs of the rods of their fathers, heads of thousands in **Yisra El**.
17 And **Mosheh** and **Aharon** take these men, appointed by name:
18 and they congregate all the witness on the first of the second month; and they declare their births by their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, sons of twenty years and upward, by their craniums: as **Yah Veh** misvahs **Mosheh**, thus he musters them in the wilderness of **Sinay**.
20 And the sons of **Reu Ben**, the firstbirth of **Yisra El**, by their generations, by their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, by their craniums, every male son from twenty years and upward, all going to hostility:

NUMBERS 1

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 21 Those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them, even of the *tribe* **rod** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**, were forty and six thousand and five hundred.
- 22 Of the *children* **sons** of *Simeon* **Shimon**, by their generations, *after* **by** their families, by the house of their fathers, those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them, according to the number of the names, by their *polls* **craniums**, every male **son** from twenty years *old* and upward, all that were able to go forth to *war* **hostility**;
- 23 Those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them, even of the *tribe* **rod** of *Simeon* **Shimon**, were fifty and nine thousand and three hundred.
- 24 Of the *children* **sons** of *Gad*, by their generations, *after* **by** their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, *from* **sons of** twenty years *old* and upward, all that were able to go forth to *war* **hostility**;
- 25 Those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them, even of the *tribe* **rod** of *Gad*, were forty and five thousand six hundred and fifty.
- 26 Of the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, by their generations, *after* **by** their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, *from* **sons of** twenty years *old* and upward, all that were able to go forth to *war* **hostility**;
- 27 Those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them, even of the *tribe* **rod** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, were *threescore and fourteen* **seventy and four** thousand and six hundred.
- 28 Of the *children* **sons** of *Issachar* **Yissachar**, by their generations, *after* **by** their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, *from* **sons of** twenty years *old* and upward, all that were able to go forth to *war* **hostility**;
- 29 Those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them, even of the *tribe* **rod** of *Issachar* **Yissachar**, were fifty and four thousand and four hundred.
- 30 Of the *children* **sons** of *Zebulun*, by their generations, *after* **by** their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, *from* **sons of** twenty years *old* and upward, all that were able to go forth to *war* **hostility**;
- 31 Those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them, even of the *tribe* **rod** of *Zebulun*, were fifty and seven thousand and four hundred.
- 32 Of the *children* **sons** of *Joseph* **Yoseph**, *namely*, of the *children* **sons** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**, by their generations, *after* **by** their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, *from* **sons of** twenty years *old* and upward, all that were able to go forth to *war* **hostility**;
- 33 Those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them, even of the *tribe* **rod** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**, were forty thousand and five hundred.
- 34 Of the *children* **sons** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**, by their generations, *after* **by** their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, *from* **sons of** twenty years *old* and upward, all that were able to go forth to *war* **hostility**;
- 35 Those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them, even of the *tribe* **rod** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**, were thirty and two thousand and two hundred.
- 36 Of the *children* **sons** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**, by their generations, *after* **by** their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, *from* **sons of** twenty years *old* and upward, all that were able to go forth to *war* **hostility**;
- 37 Those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them, even of the *tribe* **rod** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**, were thirty and five thousand and four hundred.

NUMBERS 1

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 21 their *mustered* of the rod of *Reu Ben*: forty—six thousand and five hundred.
- 22 Of the sons of *Shimon*: by their generations, by their families, by the house of their fathers, their *mustered*, according to the number of the names, by their *craniums*, every male son from twenty years and upward, all going to *hostility*;
- 23 their *mustered* of the rod of *Shimon*: fifty—nine thousand and three hundred.
- 24 Of the sons of *Gad*: by their generations, by their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, sons of twenty years and upward, all going to *hostility*;
- 25 their *mustered* of the rod of *Gad*: forty—five thousand six hundred and fifty.
- 26 Of the sons of *Yah Hudah*: by their generations, by their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, sons of twenty years and upward, all going to *hostility*;
- 27 their *mustered* of the rod of *Yah Hudah*: seventy—four thousand and six hundred.
- 28 Of the sons of *Yissachar*: by their generations, by their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, sons of twenty years and upward, all going to *hostility*;
- 29 their *mustered* of the rod of *Yissachar*: fifty—four thousand and four hundred.
- 30 Of the sons of *Zebulun*: by their generations, by their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, sons of twenty years and upward, all going to *hostility*;
- 31 their *mustered* of the rod of *Zebulun*: fifty—seven thousand and four hundred.
- 32 Of the sons of *Yoseph*: of the sons of *Ephrayim*: by their generations, by their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, sons of twenty years and upward, all going to *hostility*;
- 33 their *mustered* of the rod of *Ephrayim*: forty thousand and five hundred.
- 34 Of the sons of *Menash Sheh*: by their generations, by their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, sons of twenty years and upward, all going to *hostility*;
- 35 their *mustered* of the rod of *Menash Sheh*: thirty—two thousand and two hundred.
- 36 Of the sons of *Ben Yamin*: by their generations, by their families, by the house of their fathers, according to the number of the names, sons of twenty years and upward, all going to *hostility*;
- 37 their *mustered* of the rod of *Ben Yamin*: thirty—five thousand and four hundred.

NUMBERS 1

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

38 Of the *children sons* of Dan, by their generations,
after by their families, by the house of their fathers,
according to the number of the names,
from sons of twenty years *old* and upward,
all that were able to go forth to *war hostility*;
39 Those that were *numbered mustered* of them,
even of the *tribe rod* of Dan,
were *threescore sixty* and two thousand
and seven hundred.
40 Of the *children sons* of Asher,
by their generations, *after by* their families,
by the house of their fathers,
according to the number of the names,
from sons of twenty years *old* and upward,
all that were able to go forth to *war hostility*;
41 Those that were *numbered mustered* of them,
even of the *tribe rod* of Asher,
were forty and one thousand and five hundred.
42 Of the *children sons* of Naphtali,
throughout their generations, *after by* their families,
by the house of their fathers,
according to the number of the names,
from sons of twenty years *old* and upward,
all that were able to go forth to *war hostility*;
43 Those that were *numbered mustered* of them,
even of the *tribe rod* of Naphtali,
were fifty and three thousand and four hundred.
44 These are those that were *numbered mustered*,
which *Moses Mosheh* and *Aaron Aharon*
numbered mustered,
and the *princes hierarchs* of *Israel Yisra El*,
being twelve men:
each *one man* was for the house of his fathers.
45 So were all those that were *numbered mustered*
of the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*,
by the house of their fathers,
from sons of twenty years *old* and upward,
all that were able to go forth to *war hostility*
in *Israel Yisra El*;
46 Even all they that were *numbered mustered*
were six hundred thousand and three thousand
and five hundred and fifty.
47 But the *Levites Leviym*
after by the *tribe rod* of their fathers
were not *numbered mustered* among them.
48 For the *LORD Yah Veh* had *spoken worded*
unto *Moses Mosheh*, saying,
49 Only thou shalt not *number muster*
the *tribe rod* of Levi,
neither *take lift* the *sum heads* of them
among the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*:
50 But thou shalt *appoint have* the *Levites Leviym*
oversee over the tabernacle of *testimony witness*,
and over all the *vessels instruments* thereof,
and over all *things* that belong to it:
they shall bear the tabernacle,
and all the *vessels instruments* thereof;
and they shall minister unto it,
and shall encamp round about the tabernacle.
51 And when the tabernacle *setteth forward pulleth stakes*,
the *Levites Leviym* shall *take it down lower it*:
and when the tabernacle is *to be pitched encamped*,
the *Levites Leviym* shall *set raise* it up:
and the stranger that *cometh near approacheth*
shall be *put to death deathified*.
52 And the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
shall *pitch their tents encamp*,
every man by his own camp,
and every man by his own *standard banner*,
throughout their hosts.
53 But the *Levites Leviym* shall *pitch encamp*
round about the tabernacle of *testimony witness*,
that there be no *wrath rage*
upon the *congregation witness*
of the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*:
and the *Levites Leviym* shall *keep guard* the *charge guard*
of the tabernacle of *testimony witness*.

NUMBERS 1

exeGeses companion BIBLE

38 Of the sons of Dan:
by their generations, by their families,
by the house of their fathers,
according to the number of the names,
sons of twenty years and upward,
all going to hostility;
39 their mustered of the rod of Dan:
sixty—two thousand and seven hundred.
40 Of the sons of Asher:
by their generations, by their families,
by the house of their fathers,
according to the number of the names,
sons of twenty years and upward,
all going to hostility;
41 their mustered of the rod of Asher:
forty—one thousand and five hundred.
42 Of the sons of Naphtali:
by their generations, by their families,
by the house of their fathers,
according to the number of the names,
sons of twenty years and upward,
all going forth to hostility;
43 their mustered of the rod of Naphtali:
fifty—three thousand and four hundred.
44 These *are* their mustered,
whom Mosheh and Aharon mustered
and the hierarchs of Yisra El, being twelve men:
each man being for the house of his fathers.
45 Thus *are* all those mustered of the sons of Yisra El,
by the house of their fathers,
sons of twenty years and upward,
all in Yisra El going to hostility;
46 even all their mustered:
six hundred thousand and three thousand
and five hundred and fifty.
47 But the Leviym by the rod of their fathers
mustered not among them:
48 for Yah Veh worded unto Mosheh, saying,
49 Neither muster the rod of Levi,
nor lift their heads among the sons of Yisra El:
50 and the Leviym oversee
over the tabernacle of witness
and over all the instruments thereof
and over all who belong to it:
they bear the tabernacle
and all the instruments thereof;
and they minister unto it
and encamp all around the tabernacle:
51 and when the tabernacle pulls stakes,
the Leviym lower it:
and when the tabernacle encamps,
the Leviym raise it:
and deathify the stranger who approaches.
52 And the sons of Yisra El encamp
— every man by his own camp
and every man by his own banner
throughout their hosts:
53 and the Leviym encamp
all around the tabernacle of witness,
that no rage become
upon the witness of the sons of Yisra El:
and the Leviym guard the guard
of the tabernacle of witness:

NUMBERS 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

54 And the *children sons of Israel Yisra El* did **worked** according to all that the *LORD Yah Veh* commanded *Moses misvahed Mosheh*, so did **worked** they.

CAMPS OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

2 And the *LORD spake Yah Veh worded* unto *Moses Mosheh* and unto *Aaron Aharon*, saying,
2 Every man of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El* shall **pitch encamp** by his own *standard banner*, with the ensign of their father's house: **far off about in front and round about** the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation shall they **pitch encamp**.
3 And on the east side toward the rising of the sun shall they of the *standard banner* of the camp of *Judah Yah Hudah* pitch throughout their *armies hosts*: and *Nahshon* the son of *Amminadab Ammi Nadab*, shall be *captain hierarch* of the *children sons of Judah Yah Hudah*.
4 And his host, and those that were *numbered mustered* of them, were *threescore and fourteen seventy and four* thousand and six hundred.
5 And those that do pitch next unto him shall be the *tribe rod of Issachar Yissachar*: and *Nethaneel Nethan El* the son of *Zuar Suar*, shall be *captain hierarch* of the *children sons of Issachar Yissachar*.
6 And his host, and those that were *numbered mustered* thereof, were *fifty and four thousand and four hundred*.
7 Then the *tribe rod* of *Zebulun*: and *Eliab Eli Ab* the son of *Helon*, shall be *captain hierarch* of the *children sons* of *Zebulun*.
8 And his host, and those that were *numbered mustered* thereof, were *fifty and seven thousand and four hundred*.
9 All that were *numbered mustered* in the camp of *Judah Yah Hudah* were an *hundred thousand and fourscore eighty* thousand and six thousand and four hundred, throughout their *armies hosts*. These shall first **set forth pull stakes**.
10 On the *south side Southward*, shall be the *standard banner* of the camp of *Reuben Reu Ben* according to their *armies hosts*: and the *captain hierarch* of the *children sons of Reuben Reu Ben*, shall be *Elizur Eli Sur* the son of *Shedeur Sheday Ur*.
11 And his host, and those that were *numbered mustered* thereof, were *forty and six thousand and five hundred*.
12 And those which pitch by him shall be the *tribe rod of Simeon Shimon*: and the *captain hierarch* of the *children sons of Simeon Shimon*, shall be *Shelumiel Shelumi El* the son of *Zurishaddai Suri Shadday*.
13 And his host, and those that were *numbered mustered* of them, were *fifty and nine thousand and three hundred*.
14 Then the *tribe rod* of *Gad*: and the *captain hierarch* of the sons of *Gad*, shall be *Eliasaph Eli Yasaph* the son of *Reuel Reu El*.
15 And his host, and those that were *numbered mustered* of them, were *forty and five thousand and six hundred and fifty*.
16 All that were *numbered mustered* in the camp of *Reuben Reu Ben* were an *hundred thousand and fifty and one thousand and four hundred and fifty*, throughout their *armies hosts*. And they shall **set forth pull stakes** in the second *rank*.
17 Then the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation shall **set forward pull stakes** with the camp of the *Levites Leviym* in the midst of the camp:

NUMBERS 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

54 — and the sons of Yisra El work according to all Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh — thus they work.

CAMPS OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

2 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh and to Aharon, saying,
2 Encamp every man of the sons of Yisra El by his own banner, with the ensign of the house of their father: encamp them in front and all around the tent of the congregation.
3 And on the east side toward the rising, pitch the banner of the camp of Yah Hudah throughout their hosts: and hierarch of the sons of Yah Hudah is Nahshon the son of Ammi Nadab: and his host and their mustered: seventy—four thousand and six hundred.
4 And next to him, pitch the rod of Yissachar: and hierarch of the sons of Yissachar is Nethan El the son of Suar: and his host and their mustered: fifty—four thousand and four hundred.
5 Then the rod of Zebulun: and hierarch of the sons of Zebulun is Eli Ab the son of Helon: and his host and their mustered: fifty—seven thousand and four hundred.
6 All their mustered in the camp of Yah Hudah: a hundred thousand and eighty thousand and six thousand and four hundred throughout their hosts: these pull stakes first.
7 The banner of the camp of Reu Ben is southward according to their hosts: and the hierarch of the sons of Reu Ben is Eli Sur the son of Sheday Ur: and his host and their mustered: forty—six thousand and five hundred.
8 And pitched by him is the rod of Shimon: and the hierarch of the sons of Shimon is Shelumi El the son of Suri Shadday: and his host and their mustered: fifty—nine thousand and three hundred.
9 And the rod of Gad: and the hierarch of the sons of Gad is Eli Yasaph the son of Reu El: and his host and their mustered: forty—five thousand and six hundred and fifty.
10 All their mustered in the camp of Reu Ben: a hundred thousand and fifty—one thousand and four hundred and fifty throughout their hosts: and they pull stakes in the second.
11 Then the tent of the congregation pulls stakes with the camp of the Leviym midst the camp:

NUMBERS 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

as they encamp, so shall they *set forward* **pull stakes**,
man — every man *in his place at hand*
by their *standards* **banners**.
18 *On the west side* **Seaward**,
shall be the *standard* **banner**
of the camp of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
according to their *armies* **hosts**:
and the *captain* **hierarch** of the sons of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
shall be *Elishama* **Eli Shama**
the son of *Ammihud* **Ammi Hud**.
19 And his host,
and those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them,
were forty thousand and five hundred.
20 And by him
shall be the *tribe* **rod** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**:
and the *captain* **hierarch**
of the *children* **sons** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
shall be *Gamaliel* **Gamli El**
the son of *Pedahzur* **Pedah Sur**.
21 And his host,
and those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them,
were thirty and two thousand and two hundred.
22 Then the *tribe* **rod** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**:
and the *captain* **hierarch** of the sons of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
shall be *Abidan* **Abi Dan** the son of *Gideoni* **Gidoni**.
23 And his host,
and those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them,
were thirty and five thousand and four hundred.
24 All that were *numbered* **mustered**
of the camp of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
were an hundred thousand
and eight thousand and an hundred,
throughout their *armies* **hosts**.
And they shall *go forward* **pull stakes** in the third *rank*.
25 The *standard* **banner** of the camp of Dan,
shall be on the *north side* **northward** by their *armies* **hosts**:
and the *captain* **hierarch** of the *children* **sons** of Dan,
shall be *Ahiezer* **Achi Ezer**
the son of *Ammishaddai* **Ammi Shaday**.
26 And his host,
and those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them,
were threescore **sixty** and two thousand
and seven hundred.
27 And those that encamp by him,
shall be the *tribe* **rod** of Asher:
and the *captain* **hierarch** of the *children* **sons** of Asher,
shall be *Pagiel* **Pagi El** the son of *Ocran* **Ochran**.
28 And his host,
and those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them,
were forty and one thousand and five hundred.
29 Then the *tribe* **rod** of Naphtali:
and the *captain* **hierarch** of the *children* **sons** of Naphtali,
shall be *Ahira* **Achi Ra** the son of Enan.
30 And his host,
and those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them,
were fifty and three thousand and four hundred.
31 All they that were *numbered* **mustered**
in the camp of Dan,
were an hundred thousand and fifty and seven thousand
and six hundred.
They shall *go hindmost* **pull stakes behind**
with their *standards* **banners**.
32 These are those which were *numbered* **mustered**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
by the house of their fathers:
all those that were *numbered* **mustered**
of the camps throughout their hosts,
were six hundred thousand and three thousand
and five hundred and fifty.
33 But the *Levites* **Leviym** were not *numbered* **mustered**
among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**.
34 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
did **worked** according to all
that the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**:
so they *pitched* **encamped** by their *standards* **banners**,
and so they *set forward* **pulled stakes**,

NUMBERS 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

as they encamp, thus they pull stakes,
man — every man at hand by their banners.

18 The banner of the camp of Ephrayim
is seaward according to their hosts:
and the hierarch of the sons of Ephrayim
is Eli Shama the son of Ammi Hud:
19 and his host and their mustered:
forty thousand and five hundred.

20 And by him be the rod of Menash Sheh:
and the hierarch of the sons of Menash Sheh
is Gamli El the son of Pedah Sur:
21 and his host and their mustered:
thirty—two thousand and two hundred.

22 Then the rod of Ben Yamin:
and the hierarch of the sons of Ben Yamin,
is Abi Dan the son of Gidoni:
23 and his host and their mustered:
thirty—five thousand and four hundred.

24 All their mustered of the camp of Ephrayim:
a hundred thousand and eight thousand
and a hundred,
throughout their hosts:
and they pull stakes in the third.

25 The banner of the camp of Dan,
is northward by their hosts:
and the hierarch of the sons of Dan
is Achi Ezer the son of Ammi Shaday:
26 and his host and their mustered:
sixty—two thousand and seven hundred.

27 And encamping by him *is* the rod of Asher:
and the hierarch of the sons of Asher
is Pagi El the son of Ochran:
28 and his host and their mustered:
forty—one thousand and five hundred.

29 Then the rod of Naphtali:
and the hierarch of the sons of Naphtali,
is Achi Ra the son of Enan:
30 and his host and their mustered:
fifty—three thousand and four hundred.

31 All their mustered in the camp of Dan:
a hundred thousand and fifty—seven thousand
and six hundred:
they pull stakes behind with their banners.

32 These *are* their mustered of the sons of Yisra El
by the house of their fathers:
all their mustered of the camps throughout their hosts:
six hundred thousand and three thousand
and five hundred and fifty.

33 And the Leviym *are* not mustered
among the sons of Yisra El
— as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.
34 And the sons of Yisra El work according to all
Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh:
thus they encamp by their banners
and thus they pull stakes,

NUMBERS 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

every one after man — every man by their families,
according to the house of their fathers.

PRIESTS OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

- 3 These also are the generations
of Aaron **Aharon** and Moses **Mosheh**
in the day that *the LORD spake* **Yah Veh worded**
with Moses **Mosheh** in mount *Sinai* **Sinay**.
- 2 And these are the names of the sons of Aaron **Aharon**;
Nadab the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**, and *Abihu* **Abi Hu**,
Eleazar **El Azar**, and *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**.
- 3 These are the names of the sons of Aaron **Aharon**,
the priests which were anointed,
whom he consecrated **whose hand he filled**
to minister in the priest's office **priest the priesthood**.
- 4 And Nadab and *Abihu* **Abi Hu**
died before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**,
when they offered **oblated** strange fire
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**,
in the wilderness of *Sinai* **Sinay**,
and they had no *children* **sons**:
and Eleazar **El Azar** and *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**
ministered in the priest's office **priested the priesthood**
in the sight of Aaron **at the face of Aharon** their father.
- 5 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
6 Bring **Oblate** the *tribe* **rod** of Levi near,
and present **stand** them
before Aaron **at the face of Aharon** the priest,
that they may minister unto him.
- 7 And they shall **keep guard** his *charge* **guard**,
and the *charge* **guard** of the whole *congregation* **witness**
before **at the face of** the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
to do **serve** the service of the tabernacle.
- 8 And they shall **keep guard** all the instruments
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
and the *charge* **guard** of the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**,
to do **serve** the service of the tabernacle.
- 9 And thou shalt give the *Levites* **Leviym**
unto Aaron **Aharon** and to his sons:
in giving, they are *wholly* given unto him
out of the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**.
- 10 And thou shalt
appoint Aaron **muster Aharon** and his sons,
and they shall
wait on **guard** their *priest's office* **priesthood**:
and the stranger that *cometh near* **approacheth**,
shall be *put to death* **deathified**.
- 11 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
12 And I, behold, I have taken the *Levites* **Leviym**
from among the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**
instead of all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
that *openeth* **bursteth** the matrix
among the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**:
therefore the *Levites* **Leviym** shall be mine;
- 13 Because all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** are mine;
for on the day that I smote all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
I hallowed unto me
all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** in Israel **Yisra El**,
both man and beast **from human to animal**:
mine shall they be:
I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh**.
- 14 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh** in the wilderness of *Sinai* **Sinay**,
saying,
15 *Number* **Muster** the *children* **sons** of Levi
after **by** the house of their fathers, by their families:
every male, *from a son* of a month *old* and upward,
shalt thou *number* **muster** them.
- 16 And Moses *numbered* **Mosheh mustered** them
according to the *word* **mouth** of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
as he was *commanded* **misvahed**.
- 17 And these were the sons of Levi by their names;
Gershon, and *Kohath* **Qehath**, and Merari.
- 18 And these are the names of the sons of Gershon
by their families;
Libni, and *Shimej* **Shimiy**.
- 19 And the sons of *Kohath* **Qehath** by their families;

NUMBERS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

man — every man by their families,
according to the house of their fathers.

PRIESTS OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

- 3 And these are the generations
of Aharon and Mosheh
in the day Yah Veh worded with Mosheh
in mount *Sinai*.
- 2 And these are the names of the sons of Aharon:
Nadab the firstbirth and Abi Hu,
El Azar and Iy Thamar.
- 3 These are the names of the sons of Aharon,
the priests which were anointed,
whose hand he filled to priest the priesthood.
- 4 And Nadab and Abi Hu die at the face of Yah Veh
when they oblate strange fire at the face of Yah Veh
in the wilderness of *Sinai*:
and they have no sons:
and El Azar and Iy Thamar priest the priesthood
at the face of Aharon their father.
- 5 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
6 Oblate the rod of Levi
and stand them at the face of Aharon the priest
to minister to him.
- 7 Have them guard their guard
and the guard of the whole witness
at the face of the tent of the congregation
to serve the service of the tabernacle:
8 and guard all the instruments
of the tent of the congregation
and the guard of the sons of Yisra El
to serve the service of the tabernacle:
- 9 and give the *Leviym* to Aharon and to his sons:
in giving, give him from the sons of Yisra El:
10 and muster Aharon and his sons
to guard the priesthood:
and deathify the stranger who approaches.
- 11 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
12 And I, behold,
I take the *Leviym* from among the sons of Yisra El
instead of all the firstbirths
who burst the matrix among the sons of Yisra El:
so the *Leviym* become mine;
13 because all the firstbirths are mine;
for on the day I smote all the firstbirths
in the land of *Misrayim*
I hallowed all the firstbirth in Yisra El to myself
— from human to animal: they become mine:
I — Yah Veh.
- 14 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh
in the wilderness of *Sinai*, saying,
15 Muster the sons of Levi
by the house of their fathers, by their families:
every male, a son of a month and upward
— muster them.
- 16 — and Mosheh musters them
according to the mouth of Yah Veh,
as he was misvahed.
- 17 And these are the sons of Levi by their names:
Gershon and Qehath and Merari.
- 18 And these are the names of the sons of Gershon
by their families:
Libni and Shimiy.
- 19 And the sons of Qehath by their families:

NUMBERS 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- Amram **Am Ram**, and Izehar **Yishar**,
Hebron, and *Uzziel* **Uzzi El**.
- 20 And the sons of Merari by their families;
Mahli **Machli**, and Mushi.
These are the families of the *Levites* **Leviym**
according to the house of their fathers.
- 21 Of Gershon was the family of the *Libnites* **Libniy**,
and the family of the *Shimites* **Shimiy**;
these are the families of the *Gershonites* **Gershoniyy**.
- 22 Those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them,
according to the number of all the males,
from sons of a month *old* and upward,
even those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them
were seven thousand and five hundred.
- 23 The families of the *Gershonites* **Gershoniyy**
shall *pitch* **encamp**
behind the tabernacle *westward* **seaward**.
- 24 And the *chief* **hierarch**
of the house of the father of the *Gershonites* **Gershoniyy**,
shall be *Eliasaph* **Eli Yasaph** the son of *Lael* **La El**.
- SERVICE OF THE SONS OF GERSHON**
- 25 And the *charge* **guard** of the sons of Gershon
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
shall be the tabernacle, and the tent,
the covering thereof,
and the *hanging* **covering** for the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
And the hangings of the court,
and the *curtain* **covering** for the *door* **opening** of the court,
which is by the tabernacle,
and by the **sacrifice** altar round about,
and the cords of it for all the service thereof.
- 27 And of *Kohath* **Qehath**
was the family of the *Amramites* **Am Ramiy**,
and the family of the *Izharites* **Yishariy**,
and the family of the *Hebronites* **Hebroniyy**,
and the family of the *Uzzielites* **Uzzi Eliy**;
these are the families of the *Kohathites* **Qehathiy**.
- 28 In the number of all the males,
from sons of a month *old* and upward,
were eight thousand and six hundred,
keeping **guarding** the *charge* **guard** of the *sanctuary* **holies**.
- 29 The families of the sons of *Kohath* **Qehath**
shall *pitch* **encamp** on the *side* **flank** of the tabernacle
southward.
- 30 And the *chief* **hierarch** of the house
of the father of the families of the *Kohathites* **Qehathiy**,
shall be *Elizaphan* **El Saphan** the son of *Uzziel* **Uzzi El**.
And their *charge* **guard** shall be the ark, and the table,
and the *andlestick* **menorah**, and the **sacrifice** altars,
and the *vessels* **instruments** of the *sanctuary* **holies**
wherewith they minister,
and the *hanging* **covering**, and all the service thereof.
- 32 And *Eleazar* **El Azar** the son of *Aaron* **Aharon** the priest,
shall be *chief* **hierarch**
over the *chief* **hierarchy** of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
and have the oversight of them
that *keep* **guard** the *charge* **guard** of the *sanctuary* **holies**.
- 33 Of Merari was the family of the *Mahlites* **Machliy**,
and the family of the *Mushites* **Mushiy**;
these are the families of Merari.
- 34 And those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them,
according to the number of all the males,
from sons of a month *old* and upward,
were six thousand and two hundred.
- 35 And the *chief* **hierarch** of the house
of the father of the families of Merari,
was *Zuriel* **Suri El** the son of *Abihail* **Abi Hail**;
these shall *pitch* **encamp**
on the *side* **flank** of the tabernacle northward.
- 36 And under the *custody* **oversight** and *charge* **guard**
of the sons of Merari,
shall be the boards of the tabernacle,
and the bars thereof,
and the pillars thereof, and the sockets thereof,
and all the *vessels* **instruments** thereof,
and all *that serveth* **the service** thereto,

NUMBERS 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- Am Ram and Yishar, Hebron and Uzzi El.
- 20 And the sons of Merari by their families:
Machli and Mushi.
- These *are* the families of the Leviym
according to the house of their fathers.
- 21 Of Gershon:
the family of the Libniy and the family of the Shimiy:
these *are* the families of the Gershoniyy:
their *mustered*
according to the number of all the males
sons of a month and upward
their *mustered*:
seven thousand and five hundred.
- 23 The families of the Gershoniyy
encamp behind the tabernacle seaward.
- 24 And the hierarch
of the house of the father of the Gershoniyy
is Eli Yasaph the son of La El.
- SERVICE OF THE SONS OF GERSHON**
- 25 And the guard of the sons of Gershon
in the tent of the congregation:
the tabernacle and the tent, the covering thereof;
and the covering for the opening
of the tent of the congregation;
and the hangings of the court;
and the covering for the opening of the court
by the tabernacle
and by the sacrifice altar all around;
and the cords thereof for all the service thereof.
- 27 And of Qehath;
the family of the Am Ramiy
and the family of the Yishariy
and the family of the Hebroniyy
and the family of the Uzzi Eliy:
these *are* the families of the Qehathiy.
- 28 In the number of all the males,
sons of a month and upward,
eight thousand and six hundred,
to guard the guard of the holies.
- 29 The families of the sons of Qehath
encamp on the flank of the tabernacle southward.
- 30 And the hierarch of the house
of the father of the families of the Qehathiy:
El Saphan the son of Uzzi El.
- 31 And their guard *is* the ark and the table
and the menorah and the sacrifice altars
and the instruments of the holies
wherewith they minister;
and the covering and all the service thereof.
- 32 And El Azar the son of Aharon the priest,
is hierarch over the hierarchy of the Leviym
and has the oversight of them
who guard the guard of the holies.
- 33 Of Merari *is* the family of the Machliy
and the family of the Mushiy:
these *are* the families of Merari.
- 34 And their *mustered*,
according to the number of all the males,
sons of a month and upward:
six thousand and two hundred.
- 35 And the hierarch of the house
of the father of the families of Merari:
Suri El the son of Abi Hail:
these encamp
on the flank of the tabernacle northward.
- 36 And the oversight and guard of the sons of Merari
are the boards of the tabernacle and the bars thereof
and the pillars thereof and the sockets thereof
and all the instruments thereof
and all the service thereto;

NUMBERS 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

37 And the pillars of the court round about,
and their sockets, and their *pins* **stakes**, and their cords.

38 But those that encamp
before at the face of the tabernacle toward the east **rising**,
even before at the face of
the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation *eastward* **dawnward**,
shall be *Moses* **Mosheh**, and Aaron **Aharon** and his sons,
keeping guarding the *charge* **guard** of the *sanctuary* **holies**
for the *charge* **guard** of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and the stranger that cometh near
shall be *put to death* **deathified**.

39 All that were *numbered* **mustered** of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
which *Moses* **Mosheh** and Aaron *numbered* **Aharon mustered**
at the *commandment* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
throughout their families,
all the males *from* **sons** of a month *old* and upward,
were twenty and two thousand.

40 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Number **Muster** all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of the males
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
from **sons** of a month *old* and upward,
and *take* **bear** the number of their names.

41 And thou shalt take the *Levites* **Leviym** for me
(*I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*)
instead of all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and the *cattle* **animals** of the *Levites* **Leviym**
instead of all the *firstlings* among the *cattle* **animals**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

42 And *Moses* *numbered* **Mosheh mustered**,
as the *LORD* *commanded* **Yah Veh misvahed** him,
all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

43 And all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** males
by the number of names,
from **sons** of a month *old* and upward,
of those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them,
were twenty and two thousand two hundred
and *threescore and thirteen* **seventy and three**.

44 And the *LORD* *spake* **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
45 Take the *Levites* **Leviym**
instead of all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and the *cattle* **animals** of the *Levites* **Leviym**
instead of their *cattle* **animals**;
and the *Levites* **Leviym** shall be mine:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.

46 And for those that are to be redeemed
of the two hundred
and *threescore and thirteen* **seventy and three**
of the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which are *more than* **left over** of the *Levites* **Leviym**;
47 Thou shalt even take
five — five shekels *apiece* **by the poll** **per cranium**,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies** shalt thou take them:
(the shekel is twenty gerahs.)

48 And thou shalt give the *money* **silver**,
wherewith the *odd number* of them **they who are left over**
is **are** to be redeemed, unto Aaron **Aharon** and to his sons.

49 And *Moses* **Mosheh** took the redemption *money* **silver**
of them that were *over and above* **left over** of them
that were redeemed by the *Levites* **Leviym**:
50 Of the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
took he the *money* **silver**;
a thousand three hundred
and *threescore* **sixty** and five *shekels*,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**:
51 And *Moses* **Mosheh** gave the *money* **silver**
of them that were *redeemed* **redemption**
unto Aaron **Aharon** and to his sons,
according to the *word* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
as the *LORD* *commanded* *Moses* **Yah Veh misvahed** *Mosheh*.

SERVICE OF THE SONS OF QEATH

4 And the *LORD* *spake* **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh** and unto Aaron **Aharon**, saying,
2 Take **Bear** the *sum* **heads** of the sons of *Kohath* **Qeath**

NUMBERS 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

37 and the pillars of the court all around
and their sockets and their stakes and their cords.

38 And encamping at the face of the tabernacle
toward the rising,
at the face of the tent of the congregation dawnward,
are Mosheh and Aharon and his sons,
who guard the guard of the holies
for the guard of the sons of Yisra El;
and deathify the stranger who comes near.

39 All their mustered of the Leviym,
whom Mosheh and Aharon mustered
at the mouth of Yah Veh,
throughout their families,
all the males sons of a month and upward:
twenty—two thousand.

40 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Muster all the firstbirths
of the males of the sons of Yisra El
— sons of a month and upward;
and bear the number of their names.

41 And take the Leviym for me
— I — Yah Veh
instead of all the firstbirths among the sons of Yisra El;
and the animals of the Leviym
instead of all the firstlings among the animals
of the sons of Yisra El.

42 And Mosheh musters, as Yah Veh misvahs him,
all the firstbirth among the sons of Yisra El:
43 and all the firstbirth males
by the number of names,
sons of a month and upward, of their mustered:
twenty—two thousand two hundred
and seventy—three.

44 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
45 Take the Leviym
instead of all the firstbirth among the sons of Yisra El
and the animals of the Leviym
instead of their animals;
and the Leviym become mine
— I — Yah Veh.

46 And of the redeemed
of the two hundred and seventy—three
of the firstbirths of the sons of Yisra El,
left over of the Leviym;
47 take five — five shekels per cranium
— after the shekel of the holies you take them:
— the shekel *is* twenty gerahs:
48 and give the silver,
whereby those left over *are* redeemed,
to Aharon and to his sons.

49 And Mosheh takes the redemption silver
of those left over
of those redeemed by the Leviym.
50 Of the firstbirths of the sons of Yisra El
he takes the silver:
a thousand three hundred and sixty—five
after the shekel of the holies:
51 and Mosheh gives the silver of redemption
to Aharon and to his sons,
according to the mouth of Yah Veh,
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

SERVICE OF THE SONS OF QEATH

4 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh and to Aharon,
saying,
2 Bear the heads of the sons of Qeath

NUMBERS 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 from among the sons of Levi,
after **by** their families, by the house of their fathers,
From **Sons of** thirty years *old* and upward
even until **sons of** fifty years *old*,
all that enter into the host,
to **do work** the work
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation.
4 This shall be the service of the sons of *Kohath* **Qehath**
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
about the *most holy things* **holy of holies**:
5 And when the camp *setteth forward* **pulleth stakes**,
Aaron **Aharon** shall come, and his sons,
and they shall **take down lower** the covering veil,
and cover the ark of *testimony* **witness** with it:
6 And shall **put give** thereon
the covering of badgers' skins,
and shall spread over it a cloth *wholly of* **totally** blue,
and shall put in the staves thereof.
7 And upon the table of *shewbread* **face bread**
they shall spread a cloth of blue,
and **put give** thereon the dishes, and the spoons,
and the *bowls* **exoneration basins**,
and covers *to cover* **withal of libation**:
and the continual bread shall be thereon:
8 And they shall spread upon them a cloth of scarlet,
and cover the same with a covering of badgers' skins,
and shall put in the staves thereof.
9 And they shall take a cloth of blue,
and cover the *candlestick* **menorah** of the light,
and his lamps, and his tongs, and his *snuffdishes* **trays**,
and all the oil *vessels* **instruments** thereof,
wherewith they minister unto it:
10 And they shall **put give** it
and all the *vessels* **instruments** thereof
within a covering of badgers' skins,
and shall **put give** it upon a *bar* **pole**.
11 And upon the golden *sacrifice* altar
they shall spread a cloth of blue,
and cover it with a covering of badgers' skins,
and shall put to the staves thereof:
12 And they shall take all the instruments of ministry,
wherewith they minister in the *sanctuary* **holies**,
and **put give** them in a cloth of blue,
and cover them with a covering of badgers' skins,
and shall **put give** them on a *bar* **pole**:
13 And they shall
take away the ashes from **de—fat** the *sacrifice* altar,
and spread a purple cloth thereon:
14 And they shall **put give** upon it
all the *vessels* **instruments** thereof,
wherewith they minister about it,
even the *censers* **trays**, the *fleshhooks* **forks**,
and the shovels, and the *basons* **sprinklers**,
all the *vessels* **instruments** of the *sacrifice* altar;
and they shall spread upon it
a covering of badgers' skins,
and put to the staves of it.
15 And when *Aaron* **Aharon** and his sons
have *made an end of* **finished**
covering the *sanctuary* **holies**,
and all the *vessels* **instruments** of the *sanctuary* **holies**,
as the camp is to *set forward* **pull stakes**;
after that,
the sons of *Kohath* **Qehath** shall come to bear it:
but they shall not touch *any holy thing* **the holies**,
lest they die.
These *things* are the burden of the sons of *Kohath* **Qehath**
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation.
16 And to the *office* **oversight** of *Eleazar* **El Azar**
the son of *Aaron* **Aharon** the priest
pertaineth the oil for the light,
and the *sweet incense* **of aromatics**,
and the *daily meat* **continual** offering,
and the anointing oil,
and the oversight of all the tabernacle,
and of all that therein is, in the *sanctuary* **holies**,
and in the *vessels* **instruments** thereof.
17 And *the LORD spake* **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh** and unto *Aaron* **Aharon**, saying,

NUMBERS 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 from among the sons of Levi,
by their families, by the house of their fathers,
sons of thirty years and upward to sons of fifty years,
all going to the host,
to work the work in the tent of the congregation.
4 This *is* the service of the sons of *Qehath*
in the tent of the congregation,
the holy of holies:
5 and when the camp pulls stakes,
Aharon and his sons come
and lower the covering veil
and cover the ark of witness with it:
6 and give thereon the covering of skins of badgers
and spread over it a cloth totally blue
and put in the staves thereof:
7 and on the table of face bread
spread a cloth of blue
and give thereon the dishes and the spoons
and the exoneration basins and covers of libation:
and the continual bread thereon:
8 and they spread on them a cloth of scarlet
and cover the same with a covering of skins of badgers
and put in the staves thereof:
9 and take a cloth of blue
and cover the menorah of the light
and his lamps and his tongs and his trays
and all the oil instruments thereof:
wherewith they minister to it:
10 and give it and all the instruments thereof
within a covering of skins of badgers
and give it on a pole:
11 and on the golden sacrifice altar
spread a cloth of blue
and cover it with a covering of skins of badgers
and put in the staves thereof:
12 and take all the instruments of ministry,
wherewith they minister in the holies
and give them in a cloth of blue
and cover them with a covering of skins of badgers
and give them on a pole:
13 and de—fat the sacrifice altar
and spread a purple cloth thereon:
14 and give thereon all the instruments thereof
wherewith they minister
— the trays, the forks
and the shovels and the sprinklers
— all the instruments of the sacrifice altar;
and spread thereon a covering of skins of badgers
and put in the staves thereof.
15 And *Aharon* and his sons finish covering the holies
and all the instruments of the holies,
as the camp pulls stakes.

Afterward, the sons of *Qehath* come to bear it:
but they touch not the holies, lest they die.
— these *are* the burden of the sons of *Qehath*
in the tent of the congregation.
16 And to the oversight of *El Azar*
the son of *Aharon* the priest:
the oil for the light and the incense of aromatics
and the continual offering and the anointing oil
and the oversight of all the tabernacle
and of all therein
— in the holies and in the instruments thereof.
17 And *Yah Veh* words to *Mosheh* and to *Aharon*,
saying,

NUMBERS 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 18 Cut ye not off
the *tribe scion* of the families of the *Kohathites Qehathiy*
from among the *Levites Levium*:
- 19 But thus *do work* unto them,
that they may live, and not die,
when they approach
unto the *most holy things holy of holies*:
Aaron Aharon and his sons shall go in,
and *appoint set* them *every one man by man*
to his service and to his burden:
- 20 But they shall not go in to see
when the *holy things holies* are *covered swallowed*,
lest they die.
- SERVICE OF THE SONS OF GERSHON**
- 21 And the *LORD spake Yah Veh worded*
unto *Moses Mosheh*, saying,
- 22 Take *Bear* also the *sum heads* of the sons of Gershon,
throughout the houses of their fathers, by their families;
- 23 From *Sons of* thirty years *old* and upward
until *sons of* fifty years *old*
shalt thou *number muster* them;
all that enter in to *perform host* the *service hosting*,
to *do serve* the work
in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation.
- 24 This is the service
of the families of the *Gershonites Gershoniyy*,
to serve, and for burdens:
- 25 And they shall bear the curtains of the tabernacle,
and the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation, his covering,
and the covering of the badgers' skins
that is above upon it,
and the *hanging covering* for the *door opening*
of the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation,
- 26 And the hangings of the court,
and the *hanging covering* for the *door opening*
of the *gate portal* of the court,
which is by the tabernacle
and by the *sacrifice* altar round about,
and their cords, and all the instruments of their service,
and all that is *made worked* for them: so shall they serve.
- 27 At the *appointment mouth*
of *Aaron Aharon* and his sons shall be all the service
of the sons of the *Gershonites Gershoniyy*,
in all their burdens, and in all their service:
and ye shall *appoint muster* unto them
in charge guard of all their burdens.
- 28 This is the service
of the families of the sons of Gershon
in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation:
and their *charge guard* shall be
under the hand of *Ithamar Iy Thamar*
the son of *Aaron Aharon* the priest.
- SERVICE OF THE SONS OF MERARI**
- 29 As for the sons of Merari,
thou shalt *number muster* them *after by* their families,
by the house of their fathers;
- 30 From *Sons of* thirty years *old* and upward
even unto *sons of* fifty years *old*
shalt thou *number muster* them,
every one that entereth into the *service hosting*,
to *do the work serve the service*
of the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation.
- 31 And this is the *charge guard* of their burden,
according to all their service
in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation;
the boards of the tabernacle, and the bars thereof,
and the pillars thereof, and sockets thereof,
- 32 And the pillars of the court round about,
and their sockets, and their *pins stakes*, and their cords,
with all their instruments, and with all their service:
and by name,
ye shall *reckon muster* the instruments
of the *charge guard* of their burden.
- 33 This is the service of the families of the sons of Merari,
according to all their service,
in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation,
under the hand of *Ithamar Iy Thamar*
the son of *Aaron Aharon* the priest.

NUMBERS 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 18 Cut not off the scion of the families of the Qehathiy
from among the Levium:
- 19 but work thus to them, that they live and not die,
when they approach the holy of holies:
Aharon and his sons go in
and set them man by man
to his service and to his burden:
- 20 but they go not in
to see when the holies are swallowed,
lest they die.
- SERVICE OF THE SONS OF GERSHON**
- 21 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
22 Bear also the heads of the sons of Gershon
throughout the houses of their fathers,
by their families,
- 23 sons of thirty years and upward
until sons of fifty years
— muster them;
all who enter to host the hosting
— to serve the work in the tent of the congregation.
- 24 This *is* the service
of the families of the Gershoniyy,
to serve and for burdens:
- 25 and they bear the curtains of the tabernacle
and the tent of the congregation,
its covering and the covering of the skins of badgers
above thereon,
and the covering
for the opening of the tent of the congregation,
and the hangings of the court,
and the covering for the opening of the portal
of the court by the tabernacle,
and by the sacrifice altar all around,
and their cords
and all the instruments of their service,
and all that *is* worked for them:
thus they serve.
- 27 At the mouth of Aharon and his sons
is all the service of the sons of the Gershoniyy,
in all their burdens and in all their service:
and muster to them guard of all their burdens.
- 28 This *is* the service
of the families of the sons of Gershon
in the tent of the congregation:
and their guard *is* under the hand of Iy Thamar
the son of Aharon the priest.
- SERVICE OF THE SONS OF MERARI**
- 29 As for the sons of Merari:
muster them by their families,
by the house of their fathers,
- 30 sons of thirty years and upward to sons of fifty years
— muster them,
every one who enters to the hosting,
to serve the service of the tent of the congregation.
- 31 And this *is* the guard of their burden,
according to all their service
in the tent of the congregation:
the boards of the tabernacle and the bars thereof,
and the pillars thereof and sockets thereof,
and the pillars of the court all around,
and their sockets and their stakes and their cords,
with all their instruments and with all their service:
and by name,
muster the instruments of the guard of their burden.
- 33 This *is* the service
of the families of the sons of Merari,
according to all their service
in the tent of the congregation,
under the hand of Iy Thamar
the son of Aharon the priest.

NUMBERS 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

MUSTERING OF THE PRIESTS

34 And Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon**
and the *chief hierarch* of the congregation **witness**
numbered mustered the sons of the *Kohathites* **Qehathiy**
after by their families,
and *after by* the house of their fathers,
35 From **Sons of** thirty years *old* and upward
even unto **sons of** fifty years *old*,
every one that entereth into the *service hosting*,
for the *work service*
in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation:
36 And those that were *numbered mustered* of them
by their families,
were two thousand seven hundred and fifty.
37 These were they that were *numbered mustered*
of the families of the *Kohathites* **Qehathiy**,
all that might *do service serve*
in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation,
which *Moses Mosheh* and *Aaron Aharon*
did number mustered according to
the *commandment mouth* of the *LORD Yah Veh*
by the hand of *Moses Mosheh*.
38 And those that were *numbered mustered*
of the sons of Gershon,
throughout their families, and by the house of their fathers,
39 From **Sons of** thirty years *old* and upward
even unto **sons of** fifty years *old*,
every one that entereth into the *service hosting*,
for the *work service*
in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation,
40 Even those that were *numbered mustered* of them,
throughout their families, by the house of their fathers,
were two thousand and six hundred and thirty.
41 These are they that were *numbered mustered*
of the families of the sons of Gershon,
of all that might *do service serve*
in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation,
whom *Moses Mosheh* and *Aaron Aharon*
did number mustered according to
the *commandment mouth* of the *LORD Yah Veh*.
42 And those that were *numbered mustered*
of the families of the sons of Merari,
throughout their families, by the house of their fathers,
43 From **Sons of** thirty years *old* and upward
even unto **sons of** fifty years *old*,
every one that entereth into the *service hosting*,
for the *work service*
in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation,
44 Even those that were *numbered mustered* of them
after by their families,
were three thousand and two hundred.
45 These be those that were *numbered mustered*
of the families of the sons of Merari,
whom *Moses Mosheh* and *Aaron Aharon*
numbered mustered
according to the *word mouth* of the *LORD Yah Veh*
by the hand of *Moses Mosheh*.
46 All those that were *numbered mustered*
of the *Levites Leviym*,
whom *Moses Mosheh* and *Aaron Aharon*
and the *chief hierarch* of *Israel Yisra El*
numbered mustered,
after by their families,
and *after by* the house of their fathers,
47 From **Sons of** thirty years *old* and upward
even unto **sons of** fifty years *old*,
every one that came
to *do serve* the *service of the ministry*,
and the *service of the burden*
in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation.
48 Even those that were *numbered mustered* of them,
were eight thousand
and five hundred and *fourscore eighty*,
49 According to
the *commandment mouth* of the *LORD Yah Veh*
they were *numbered mustered*
by the hand of *Moses Mosheh*,
every one **man by man** according to his *service*,
and according to his *burden*:

NUMBERS 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

MUSTERING OF THE PRIESTS

34 And Mosheh and Aharon
and the hierarch of the witness
muster the sons of the Qehathiy
by their families, and by the house of their fathers,
35 sons of thirty years and upward
even to sons of fifty years;
every one who enters to the hosting
for the service in the tent of the congregation:
36 and their mustered by their families:
two thousand seven hundred and fifty.
37 These are their mustered
of the families of the Qehathiy
— all who serve in the tent of the congregation,
whom Mosheh and Aharon mustered
according to the mouth of Yah Veh
by the hand of Mosheh.
38 And their mustered of the sons of Gershon,
throughout their families,
and by the house of their fathers,
39 sons of thirty years and upward
even to sons of fifty years,
every one entering into the hosting
for the service in the tent of the congregation
— even their mustered,
40 by their families, by the house of their fathers:
two thousand and six hundred and thirty.
41 These are their mustered
of the families of the sons of Gershon,
of all who serve in the tent of the congregation,
whom Mosheh and Aharon mustered
according to the mouth of Yah Veh.
42 And those mustered
of the families of the sons of Merari,
by their families, by the house of their fathers,
43 sons of thirty years and upward
even to sons of fifty years,
every one who enters to the hosting,
for the service in the tent of the congregation,
44 even their mustered by their families:
three thousand and two hundred.
45 These are their mustered
of the families of the sons of Merari,
whom Mosheh and Aharon mustered
according to the mouth of Yah Veh
by the hand of Mosheh.
46 All their mustered of the Leviym,
whom Mosheh and Aharon
and the hierarch of Yisra El mustered,
by their families, and by the house of their fathers,
47 sons of thirty years and upward
even to sons of fifty years,
every one who comes to serve the service
and the service of the burden
in the tent of the congregation,
48 even their mustered:
eight thousand and five hundred and eighty,
49 according to the mouth of Yah Veh,
mustered by the hand of Mosheh
man by man
according to his service and according to his burden:

NUMBERS 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

thus were they numbered **mustered** of him,
as the LORD **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**.

PURIFYING THE CAMP

5 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
2 Command **Misvah** the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
that they **put send** out of the camp every leper,
and every one that **hath the issue fluxeth**,
and whosoever is defiled by the **dead soul**:
3 **Both From** male and **to** female
shall ye **put out send forth**,
without the camp shall ye **put send** them **forth**;
that they **defile foul** not their camps,
in the midst whereof I dwell **tabernacle**.
4 And the children **sons of Israel did Yisra El worked** so,
and **put sent** them **out forth** without the camp:
as the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded** unto Moses **Mosheh**,
so **did worked** the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**.
5 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
6 Speak **Word** unto the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
When a man or woman shall **commit work** any sin
that men **commit of humanity**,
to do **treason a trespass treason**
against the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and that **person be guilty soul hath** **guilted**;
7 Then they shall **confess wring hands** for their sin
which they have **done worked**:
and he shall **recompense his trespass restore** for his guilt
with the **principal thereof to the top**,
and add unto it the fifth **part** thereof,
and give it unto him
against whom he hath **trespassed** **guilted**.
8 But if the man have no **kinsman redeemer**
to recompense **the trespass unto for his guilt**,
let the **trespass that for the guilt**
be **recompensed returned** unto the LORD **Yah Veh**,
even to the priest;
beside the ram of the **atonement kippurim**,
whereby
an atonement shall be made for him he shall be atoned.
9 And every offering **exaltment** of all the **holy thing holies**
of the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
which they **bring oblate** unto the priest, shall be his.
10 And every man's **hallowed thing holies** shall be his:
whatsoever **any man giveth** the priest, it shall be his.

THE TORAH OF SUSPICIONS

11 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
12 Speak **Word** unto the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
and say unto them,
If **a man** — any man's **wife go aside woman deviate**,
and **commit treason a trespass treason** against him,
13 And a man lie
with her **carnally to give her seed of copulation**,
and it be **hid concealed**
from the eyes of her **husband man**,
and be **kept close hidden**, and she be **defiled fouled**,
and there be no witness against her,
neither she be **taken with the manner manipulated**;
14 And the spirit of **jealousy suspicion**
come **pass** upon him,
and he be **jealous of suspect** his **wife woman**,
and she be **defiled fouled**:
or if the spirit of **jealousy come suspicion pass** upon him,
and he be **jealous of suspect** his **wife woman**,
and she be not **defiled fouled**:
15 Then shall the man
bring his **wife woman** unto the priest,
and he shall bring her **offering qorban** for her,
the tenth **part** of an ephah of barley **meal flour**;
he shall pour no oil upon it,
nor put frankincense thereon;
for it is an offering of **jealousy suspicion**,
an offering of memorial,
bringing **iniquity perversity** to remembrance.
16 And the priest shall **bring oblate** her near,
and set **stand** her **before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh**:

NUMBERS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

thus he musters them
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

PURIFYING THE CAMP

5 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Misvah the sons of Yisra El,
to send from the camp
every leper and every one who fluxes
and every one defiled by a soul:
3 send, from male to female,
send them outside the camp;
that they not foul their camps
midst where I tabernacle.
4 And thus the sons of Yisra El work
and send them outside the camp:
as Yah Veh words to Mosheh
thus the sons of Yisra El work.
5 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
6 Word to the sons of Yisra El,
When a man or woman works any sin of humanity
to treason a treason against Yah Veh
and that soul **guilts**;
7 and wrings hands for the sin he works,
and he restores for his guilt to the top
and adds the fifth thereto,
and gives it to him against whom he **guilted**.
8 And if the man
has no redeemer to recompense
for the guilt,
return that for the guilt to Yah Veh,
even to the priest;
beside the ram of the kippurim,
whereby he atones.
9 And every exaltment of all the holies
of the sons of Yisra El,
which they oblate to the priest, becomes his.
10 And the holies of every man becomes his:
whatever man gives the priest, it becomes his.

THE TORAH OF SUSPICIONS

11 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
12 Word to the sons of Yisra El and say to them,
A man — any man — when his woman deviates
and treasons a treason against him;
13 and a man lies with her to give seed of copulation
and conceals it from the eyes of her man
and hides it
and she becomes foul
and there is no witness against her,
and she was not manipulated;
14 and the spirit of suspicion passes on him
and he suspects his woman and she becomes foul:
or if the spirit of suspicion passes on him
and he suspects his woman
and she becomes not foul:
15 then the man brings his woman to the priest
and he brings her qorban for her,
the tenth of an ephah of barley flour;
he neither pours oil thereon,
nor puts frankincense thereon;
for it is an offering of suspicion
— an offering of memorial
bringing perversity to remembrance.
16 And the priest oblates her
and stands her at the face of Yah Veh:

NUMBERS 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

17 And the priest shall take holy water
in an earthen vessel a **pottery instrument**;
and of the dust that is in the floor of the tabernacle
the priest shall take, and *put* **give** it into the water:
18 And the priest shall *set* **stand** the woman
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
and *uncover* **expose** the woman's head,
and *put* **give** the offering of memorial in her *hands* **palms**,
which is the *jealousy* **suspicion** offering:
and the priest shall have in his hand
the bitter water that *causeth the curse* **curseth**:
19 And the priest shall *charge* **oath** her *by an oath*,
and say unto the woman, If no man have lain with thee,
and if thou hast not
gone aside **deviated** to *uncleanness* **foulness**
with another instead of thy *husband* **man**,
be thou *free* **exonerated** from this bitter water
that *causeth the curse* **curseth**:
20 But if thou hast *gone aside* **deviated**
to another instead of thy *husband* **from thy man**,
and if thou be *defiled* **fouled**,
and some man have *lain* **given to copulate** with thee
beside thine husband **except thy man**:
21 Then the priest shall *charge* **oath** the woman
with an *oath of cursing*,
and the priest shall say unto the woman,
The LORD make **Yah Veh give** thee a *curse* **an oath**
and an oath among thy people,
when the LORD doth make **Yah Veh giveth**
thy *thigh to rot* **flank to fall off**, and thy belly to swell;
22 And this water that *causeth the curse* **curseth**
shall go into thy *bowels* **inwards**,
to make thy belly to swell,
and thy *thigh to rot* **flank to fall off**:
And the woman shall say, Amen, amen.
23 And the priest
shall *write* **inscribe** these *curses* **oaths** in a *book* **scroll**,
and he shall *blot* **wipe** them out with the bitter water:
24 And he shall cause the woman
to drink the bitter water that *causeth the curse* **curseth**:
and the water that *causeth the curse* **curseth**
shall enter into her, and *become bitter* **embitter**.
25 Then the priest
shall take the *jealousy* **suspicion** offering
out of the woman's hand,
and shall wave the offering
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
and *offer* **oblite** it upon the *sacrifice* altar:
26 And the priest
shall *take an handful of* **handle** the offering,
even the memorial thereof,
and *burn* **incense** it upon the *sacrifice* altar,
and afterward shall cause the woman to drink the water.
27 And when he hath made her to drink the water,
then **so be** it *shall come to pass*, that,
if she be *defiled* **fouled**,
and have *done trespass* **treasoned a treason**
against her *husband* **man**,
that the water that *causeth the curse* **curseth**
shall enter into her, and *become bitter* **embitter**,
and her *thigh* **flank** shall *rot* **fall off**:
and the woman shall be a *curse* **an oath**
among her people.
28 And if the woman be not *defiled* **fouled**,
but be *clean* **pure**;
then she shall be *free* **exonerated**,
and shall *conceive* **seed** seed.
29 This is the *law* **torah** of *jealousies* **suspicious**,
when a *wife goeth aside* **woman to another** *deviateth*
instead of her *husband* **man**, and is *defiled* **fouled**;
30 Or when the spirit of *jealousy* **suspicion**
cometh **passeth** upon *him* **a man**,
and he be *jealous* **suspicious** over his *wife* **woman**,
and shall *set* **stand** the woman
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
and the priest shall *execute* **work** upon her
all this *law* **torah**.

NUMBERS 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

17 and the priest takes holy water
in a pottery instrument;
and of the dust of the floor of the tabernacle
the priest takes and gives it in the water:
18 and the priest stands the woman
at the face of Yah Veh
and exposes the head of the woman
and gives the offering of memorial in her palms
— the suspicion offering:
and in his hand
the priest has the bitter water that curses:
19 and the priest oaths and says to the woman,
If no man has lain with you
and if you deviated not to foulness
instead of with your man,
be exonerated from this bitter water that curses:
20 but if you deviated from your man
and if you fouled
and some man gave to copulate with you
— except for your man:
21 then the priest oaths the woman with an oath
and the priest says to the woman,
Yah Veh gives you an oath
— an oath among your people,
when Yah Veh gives
your flank to fall off and your belly to swell;
22 and this water that curses goes into your inwards,
to make your belly swell and your flank fall off.

And the woman says, Amen! Amen!
23 And the priest inscribes these oaths in a scroll
and he wipes them with the bitter water:
24 and he has the woman
drink the bitter water that curses:
and the water that curses
enters into her and embitters.
25 And the priest takes the suspicion offering
from the hand of the woman
and waves the offering at the face of Yah Veh
and oblates it on the sacrifice altar:
26 and the priest handles the offering
— the memorial
and incenses it on the sacrifice altar;
and afterward has the woman drink the water.
27 And when he has her drink the water,
so be it, that if she fouled
and treasoned a treason against her man,
that the water that curses enters into her
and embitters her
and her belly swells and her flank falls off:
and the woman becomes an oath among her people.
28 And if the woman fouled not, but is pure,
then she becomes exonerated and seeds seed.
29 This is the torah of suspicions,
when a woman deviates instead of her man
and fouls;
30 or when the spirit of suspicion passes on a man
and he becomes suspicious of his woman
and stands the woman at the face of Yah Veh
and the priest works all this torah on her.

NUMBERS 5, 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

31 Then shall the man
be *guiltless* **exonerated** from *iniquity* **perversity**,
and this woman shall bear her *iniquity* **perversity**.

THE SEPARATIST VOW OF SEPARATISM

6 And the *LORD* spake **Yah Veh** worded
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
2 Speak **Word** unto the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
and say unto them,
When either man or woman shall separate *themselves*
to vow a vow — **the vow of a Nazarite Separatist**,
to separate *themselves* **marvel** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
3 He shall separate *himself*
from wine and *strong drink* **intoxicants**,
and shall drink no *vinegar of* **fermented** wine,
or *vinegar of strong drink* **fermented intoxicants**,
neither shall he drink any *liquor* **steepings** of grapes,
nor eat *moist* grapes, or dried or **fresh**.
4 All the days of his *separation* **separatism**
shall he eat *nothing* **naught**
that is *made* **worked** of the **wine of the** vine tree,
from the kernels even to the husk.
5 All the days of the vow of his *separation* **separatism**
there shall no razor *come* **pass** upon his head:
until the days be fulfilled,
in the which he separateth *himself*
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
he shall be holy,
and shall let the locks of the hair of his head grow.
6 All the days
that he separateth *himself* **of his vow of separatism**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
he shall come at no *dead body* **soul that died**.
7 He shall not *make* **foul** himself *unclean*
for his father, or for his mother,
for his brother, or for his sister, when they *die* **are dead**:
because the *consecration* **separatism** of his *God* **Elohim**
is upon his head.
8 All the days of his *separation* **separatism**
he is holy unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
9 And if **in dying**,
any *man* **one** die *very suddenly* **in a blink** by him,
and he hath *defiled* **fouled**
the head of his *consecration* **separatism**;
then he shall shave his head
in the day of his *cleansing* **purifying**,
on the seventh day shall he shave it.
10 And on the eighth day
he shall bring two *turtles* **turtledoves**,
or two *young pigeons* **sons of doves**, to the priest,
to the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation:
11 And the priest shall *offer* **work** the one
for a *sin offering* **the sin**,
and the *other* **one** for a *burnt offering* **the holocaust**,
and *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for him,
for that he sinned by the *dead* **soul**,
and shall hallow his head that same day.
12 And he shall
consecrate **separate** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
the days of his *separation* **separatism**,
and shall bring a lamb of the *first year* **a yearling son**
for a *trespass offering* **his guilt**:
but the **first** days that were before shall be *lost* **fallen**,
because his *separation* **separatism** was defiled.
13 And this is the *law* **torah** of the *Nazarite* **Separatist**,
when **in** the days of his *separation* **separatism**
the days are fulfilled:
he shall be brought unto the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation:
14 And he shall *offer* **oblade** his *offering* **qorban**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
one he lamb
of the *first year* **without blemish**
an integrious yearling son
for a *burnt offering* **the holocaust**,
and one ewe lamb
of the *first year* **without blemish**
an integrious yearling daughter
for a *sin offering* **the sin**,

NUMBERS 5, 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

31 Then the man becomes exonerated from perversity
and this woman bears her perversity.

THE SEPARATIST VOW OF SEPARATISM

6 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Word to the sons of Yisra El and say to them,
When either man or woman separate to vow a vow
— the vow of a Separatist,
to marvel to Yah Veh:
3 he separates from wine and intoxicants
and he drinks not fermented wine
or fermented intoxicants,
neither drinks steepings of grapes,
nor grapes — dried or fresh:
4 all the days of his separatism
he eats naught worked of the wine of the vine
— from the kernels even to the husk.
5 All the days of the vow of his separatism
no razor passes on his head:
until the days fulfill wherein he separates to Yah Veh,
he becomes holy
and the locks of the hair of his head grow.
6 All the days of his vow of separatism to Yah Veh
he comes at no soul who died:
7 he fouls not himself for his father or for his mother,
for his brother or for his sister,
when they die:
because the separatism of his Elohim *is* on his head.
8 All the days of his separatism
he becomes holy to Yah Veh.
9 And if in dying, any one by him dies in a blink
and he fouls the head of his separatism;
then he shaves his head in the day of his purifying
— on the seventh day he shaves it:
10 and on the eighth day
he brings two turtledoves, or two sons of doves,
to the priest,
to the opening of the tent of the congregation:
11 and the priest works the one for the sin
and the one for the holocaust
and kapars/atones for him, for he sinned by the soul;
and hallows his head that same day.
12 And he separates the days of his separatism
to Yah Veh;
and brings a lamb — a yearling son for his guilt:
but the first days are fallen,
because his separatism became defiled.
13 And this *is* the torah of the Separatist,
in the days of his separatism
wherein the days fulfill:
bring him
to the opening of the tent of the congregation:
14 to oblate his qorban to Yah Veh
— one he lamb, an integrious yearling son,
for the holocaust
and one ewe lamb, an integrious yearling daughter,
for the sin

NUMBERS 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and one ram *without blemish* **integrious**
for *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
15 And a basket of *unleavened bread* **matsah**,
cakes of *fine flour mingled* **mixed** with oil,
and wafers of *unleavened bread* **matsah** anointed with oil,
and their *meat offering*, and their *drink offerings* **libations**.
16 And the priest shall *bring* **oblate** them
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
and shall *offer his sin offering* **work for his sin**,
and his *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
17 And he shall *offer* **work** the ram
for a sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
with the basket of *unleavened bread* **matsah**:
the priest shall *offer* **work** also his *meat offering*,
and his *drink offering* **libation**.
18 And the *Nazarite* **Separatist**
shall shave the head of his *separation* **separatism**
at the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
and shall take the hair
of the head of his *separation* **separatism**,
and *put* **give** it in the fire which is under the sacrifice
of the *peace offerings* **shelamim**.
19 And the priest shall take
the *sodden shoulder* **stewed foreleg** of the ram,
and one *unleavened* **matsah** cake out of the basket,
and one *unleavened* **matsah** wafer,
and shall *put* **give** them
upon the *hands* **palms** of the *Nazarite* **Separatist**,
after the *hair of his separation* **his separatism** is shaven:
20 And the priest shall wave them for a *wave offering*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
this is holy for the priest,
with the *wave breast* and *heave shoulder* **hindleg**
of the exaltment:
and after that the *Nazarite* **Separatist** may drink wine.
21 This is the *law* **torah**
of the *Nazarite* **Separatist** who hath vowed,
and of his *offering* **qorban** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
for his *separation* **separatism**,
beside that that his hand shall *get* **attain**:
according to the **mouth of the** vow which he vowed,
so he *must do* **shall work**
after the *law* **torah** of his *separation* **separatism**.

A BENEDICTION

22 And the **LORD** *spake* **Yah Veh** **worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
23 *Speak* **Word** unto *Aaron* **Aharon** and unto his sons,
saying,
On this wise **Thus** ye shall bless
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
saying unto them,
24 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** bless thee,
and *keep* **guard** thee:
25 *The LORD* **make** **Yah Veh** **illuminate** his face *shine*
upon thee,
and *be gracious* unto thee **grant thee charism**:
26 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** lift up his *countenance* **face**
upon thee,
and *give* **set** thee *peace* **shalom**.
27 And they shall put my name
upon the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and I *will* **shall** bless them.

HANUKKAH OF THE TABERNACLE

7 And **so be** it *came to pass* on the day
that *Moses* **Mosheh** had *fully* **finished**
set up **raising** the tabernacle,
and had anointed it, and *sanctified* **hallowed** it,
and all the instruments thereof,
both the **sacrifice** altar
and all the *vessels* **instruments** thereof,
and had anointed them, and *sanctified* **hallowed** them;
2 That the *princes* **hierarchs** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
heads of the house of their fathers,
who were the *princes* **hierarchs** of the *tribes* **rods**,
and were **stood** over them that were *numbered* **mustered**,
offered **oblated**:

NUMBERS 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and one integrious ram
for shelamim,
15 and a basket of matsah
— cakes of flour mixed with oil
and wafers of matsah anointed with oil
and their offering and their libations.
16 And the priest oblates them at the face of Yah Veh
and works for his sin and his holocaust:
17 and he works the ram
for a sacrifice of shelamim to Yah Veh,
with the basket of matsah:
and the priest works his offering and his libation.
18 And the Separatist
shaves the head of his separatism
at the opening of the tent of the congregation;
and takes the hair of the head of his separatism
and gives it in the fire
under the sacrifice of the shelamim.
19 And the priest takes the stewed foreleg of the ram
and one matsah cake and one matsah wafer
from the basket
and gives them on the palms of the Separatist
after his separatism is shaven:
20 and the priest waves them for a wave
at the face of Yah Veh:
— it is holy for the priest
with the wave breast and hindleg of the exaltment:
and after that the Separatist drinks wine.
21 This is the torah of the Separatist who vows
and of his qorban to Yah Veh for his separatism,
beside what his hand attains:
according to the mouth of the vow he vows:
thus he works after the torah of his separatism.

A BENEDICTION

22 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
23 Word to Aharon and to his sons, saying,
Thus bless the sons of Yisra El, saying to them,
24 Yah Veh bless you and guard you:
25 Yah Veh illuminate his face on you
and grant you charism:
26 Yah Veh lift up his face on you
and set you at shalom.
27 And they put my name on the sons of Yisra El
and I bless them.

HANUKKAH OF THE TABERNACLE

7 And so be it
on the day Mosheh finishes raising the tabernacle,
he anoints it and hallows it
and all the instruments thereof
— the sacrifice altar and all the instruments thereof
and anoints them and hallows them;
2 that the hierarchs of Yisra El
— heads of the house of their fathers,
hierarchs of the rods,
stand over their mustered, and oblate:

NUMBERS 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 3 And they brought **oblated** their offering **qorban**
before the **LORD** at the face of **Yah Veh**,
six covered wagons, and twelve oxen;
a wagon for two of the **princes hierarchs**,
and for each one an ox:
and they brought them
before at the face of the tabernacle.
- 4 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh said**
unto **Moses Mosheh**, saying,
5 Take it of them,
that they may be to **do serve** the service
of the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation;
and thou shalt give them unto the **Levites Levium**,
to every man according to **the mouth of** his service.
- 6 And **Moses Mosheh** took the wagons and the oxen,
and gave them unto the **Levites Levium**.
- 7 Two wagons and four oxen
he gave unto the sons of **Gershon**,
according to **the mouth of** their service:
- 8 And four wagons and eight oxen
he gave unto the sons of **Merari**,
according unto **the mouth of** their service,
under the hand of **Ithamar Iy Thamar**
the son of **Aaron Aharon** the priest.
- 9 But unto the sons of **Kohath Qehath** he gave none:
because the service of the **sanctuary holies**
belonging unto them
was that they should bear upon their shoulders.
- THE HANUKKAH OF THE SACRIFICE ALTAR**
- 10 And the **princes offered hierarchs oblating**
for dedicating **the hanukkah** of the **sacrifice** altar
in the day that it was anointed,
even the **princes hierarchs**
offered oblating their offering **qorban**
before the **at the face of the sacrifice** altar.
- 11 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto **Moses Mosheh**,
They shall offer **oblating** their offering **qorban**,
each prince on his day
one hierarch a day — one hierarch a day,
for the dedicating **hanukkah** of the **sacrifice** altar.
- 12 And he that offered **oblating** his offering **qorban**
the first day
was **Nahshon** the son of **Aminadab Ammi Nadab**,
of the **tribe rod of Judah Yah Hudah**:
- 13 And his offering **qorban** was one silver **charger dish**,
the weight thereof was an hundred and thirty **shekels**,
one silver **bowl sprinkler** of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the **sanctuary holies**;
both **the two** of them were full of **fine flour**
mingled mixed with oil for a **meat an offering**:
- 14 One **spoon bowl** of ten **shekels** gold, full of incense:
- 15 One young bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram,
one lamb of the first year **a yearling son**
for a **burnt offering holocaust**:
- 16 One **kid buck** of the goats for a **sin offering the sin**:
- 17 And for a sacrifice of **peace offerings shelamim**,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the first year **yearling sons**:
this was the offering **qorban** of **Nahshon**
the son of **Aminadab Ammi Nadab**.
- 18 On the second day
Nethaneel Nethan El the son of **Zuar Suar**,
prince **hierarch** of **Issachar Yissachar**, did offer **oblating**:
- 19 He offered **oblating** for his offering **qorban**
one silver **charger dish**,
the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty **shekels**,
one silver **bowl sprinkler** of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the **sanctuary holies**;
both **the two** of them were full of **fine flour**
mingled mixed with oil for a **meat an offering**:
- 20 One **spoon bowl** of gold of ten **shekels**, full of incense:
- 21 One young bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram,
one lamb of the first year **a yearling son**
for a **burnt offering holocaust**:
- 22 One **kid buck** of the goats for a **sin offering the sin**:
- 23 And for a sacrifice of **peace offerings shelamim**,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the first year **yearling sons**:

NUMBERS 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 3 and they oblate their qorban at the face of Yah Veh:
six covered wagons and twelve oxen;
a wagon for two of the hierarchs
and for each one an ox:
and they bring them at the face of the tabernacle.
- 4 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh, saying,
5 Take it from them
to serve the service of the tent of the congregation;
and give them to the Levium,
to every man according to the mouth of his service.
- 6 And Mosheh takes the wagons and the oxen
and gives them to the Levium:
7 two wagons and four oxen
he gives to the sons of Gershon,
according to the mouth of their service:
8 and four wagons and eight oxen
he gives to the sons of Merari,
according to the mouth of their service
under the hand of Iy Thamar
the son of Aharon the priest:
9 and to the sons of Qehath he gives none:
because the service of the holies belongs to them
and that they bear on their shoulders.
- THE HANUKKAH OF THE SACRIFICE ALTAR**
- 10 And the hierarchs oblate
for the hanukkah of the sacrifice altar
in the day of its anointing;
the hierarchs oblate their qorban
at the face of the sacrifice altar.
- 11 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Have them oblate their qorban,
one hierarch a day — one hierarch a day,
for the hanukkah of the sacrifice altar.
- 12 And oblatting his qorban the first day
is **Nahshon** the son of **Ammi Nadab**
of the rod of **Yah Hudah**:
13 and his qorban:
one silver dish a hundred and thirty weight,
one silver sprinkler of seventy shekels
after the shekel of the holies;
the two of them are full of flour
mixed with oil for an offering:
14 one bowl of ten gold, full of incense:
15 one bullock son of the oxen, one ram,
one lamb yearling son for a holocaust:
16 one buck of the goats for the sin:
17 and for a sacrifice of shelamim,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs yearling sons:
this is the qorban of **Nahshon**
the son of **Ammi Nadab**.
- 18 On the second day
Nethan El the son of **Suar**,
hierarch of **Yissachar**, oblates:
19 he oblates for his qorban:
one silver dish a hundred and thirty weight,
one silver sprinkler of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the holies;
the two of them are full of flour
mixed with oil for an offering:
20 one bowl of gold of ten, full of incense:
21 one bullock son of the oxen, one ram,
one lamb yearling son for a holocaust:
22 one buck of the goats for the sin:
23 and for a sacrifice of shelamim,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs yearling sons:

NUMBERS 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

24 this was the offering **qorban** of *Nethaneel Nethan El*
the son of *Zuar Suar*.
On the third day
Eliab Eli Ab the son of *Helon*,
25 prince **hierarch** of the children **sons** of *Zebulun*, *did offer*:
And his offering **qorban** was one silver charger **dish**,
the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty *shekels*,
one silver *bowl* **sprinkler** of seventy *shekels*,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**;
both the two of them were full of *fine* flour
mingled with oil for a *meat* **an offering**:
26 One golden *spoon* **bowl** of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
27 One young bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram,
one lamb of the first year **a yearling son**
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
28 One *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**:
29 And for a sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the first year **yearling sons**:
this was the offering **qorban** of *Eliab Eli Ab*
the son of *Helon*.
30 On the fourth day
Elizur Eli Sur the son of *Shedeur Shedey Ur*,
31 prince **hierarch** of the children **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
did offer:
And his offering **qorban** was one silver charger **dish**
of the weight of an hundred and thirty *shekels*,
one silver *bowl* **sprinkler** of seventy *shekels*,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**;
both the two of them were full of *fine* flour
mingled with oil for a *meat* **an offering**:
32 One golden *spoon* **bowl** of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
33 One young bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram,
one lamb of the first year **a yearling son**
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
34 One *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**:
35 And for a sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the first year **yearling sons**:
this was the offering **qorban** of *Elizur Eli Sur*
the son of *Shedeur Shedey Ur*.
36 On the fifth day
Shelumiel Shelumi El the son of *Zurishaddai Suri Shadday*,
37 prince **hierarch** of the children **sons** of *Simeon* **Shimon**
did offer:
And his offering **qorban** was one silver charger **dish**,
the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty *shekels*,
one silver *bowl* **sprinkler** of seventy *shekels*,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**;
both the two of them were full of *fine* flour
mingled with oil for a *meat* **an offering**:
38 One golden *spoon* **bowl** of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
39 One young bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram,
one lamb of the first year **a yearling son**
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
40 One *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**:
41 And for a sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the first year **yearling sons**:
this was the offering **qorban** of *Shelumiel Shelumi El*
the son of *Zurishaddai Suri Shadday*.
42 On the sixth day
Eliasaph Eli Yasaph the son of *Deuel Deu El*,
43 prince **hierarch** of the children **sons** of *Gad*, *offered*:
His offering **qorban** was one silver charger **dish**,
of the weight of an hundred and thirty *shekels*,
a silver *bowl* **sprinkler** of seventy *shekels*,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**;
both the two of them were full of *fine* flour
mingled **mixed** with oil for a *meat* **an offering**:
44 One golden *spoon* **bowl** of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
45 One young bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram,
one lamb of the first year **a yearling son**
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
46 One *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**:
47 And for a sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the first year **yearling sons**:
this was the offering **qorban** of *Eliasaph Eli Yasaph*

NUMBERS 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

this is the *qorban* of *Nethan El* the son of *Suar*.
24 On the third day
Eli Ab the son of *Helon*,
hierarch of the sons of *Zebulun*:
25 and his *qorban*:
one silver dish a hundred and thirty weight,
one silver bowl sprinkler of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the holies;
the two of them *are* full of flour
with oil for an offering:
26 one golden bowl of ten, full of incense:
27 one bullock son of the oxen, one ram,
one lamb yearling son for a holocaust:
28 one buck of the goats for the sin:
29 and for a sacrifice of *shelamim*,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs yearling sons:
this is the *qorban* of *Eli Ab* the son of *Helon*.
30 On the fourth day
Eli Sur the son of *Shedey Ur*,
hierarch of the sons of *Reu Ben*:
31 and his *qorban*:
one silver dish a hundred and thirty weight,
one silver sprinkler of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the holies;
the two of them *are* full of flour with oil
for an offering:
32 one golden bowl of ten, full of incense:
33 one bullock son of the oxen, one ram,
one lamb yearling son for a holocaust:
34 one buck of the goats for the sin:
35 and for a sacrifice of *shelamim*,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs yearling sons:
this is the *qorban* of *Eli Sur* the son of *Shedey Ur*.
36 On the fifth day
Shelumi El the son of *Suri Shadday*,
hierarch of the sons of *Shimon*:
37 and his *qorban*:
one silver dish a hundred and thirty weight,
one silver sprinkler of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the holies;
the two of them *are* full of flour
with oil for an offering:
38 one golden bowl of ten, full of incense:
39 one bullock son of the oxen, one ram,
one lamb yearling son for a holocaust:
40 one buck of the goats for the sin:
41 and for a sacrifice of *shelamim*,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs yearling sons:
this is the *qorban* of *Shelumi El*
the son of *Suri Shadday*.
42 On the sixth day
Eli Yasaph the son of *Deu El*,
hierarch of the sons of *Gad*:
43 his *qorban*:
one silver dish a hundred and thirty weight,
a silver sprinkler of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the holies;
the two of them *are* full of flour
mixed with oil for an offering:
44 one golden bowl of ten, full of incense:
45 one bullock son of the oxen, one ram,
one lamb yearling son for a holocaust:
46 one buck of the goats for the sin:
47 and for a sacrifice of *shelamim*,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs yearling sons:
this is the *qorban* of *Eli Yasaph*

NUMBERS 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- the son of Deuel **Deu El**.
48 On the seventh day
Elishama **Eli Shama** the son of *Ammihud* **Ammi Hud**,
prince **hierarch** of the *children* **sons** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
offered:
49 His *offering* **qorban** was one silver *charger* **dish**,
the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty *shekels*,
one silver *bowl* **sprinkler** of seventy *shekels*,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**;
both **the two** of them were full of *fine* flour
mingled **mixed** with oil for a *meat* **an offering**;
50 One golden *spoon* **bowl** of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
51 One *young* bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram,
one lamb of the *first year* **a yearling son**
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
52 One *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**:
53 And for a sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the *first year* **yearling sons**:
this was the *offering* **qorban** of *Elishama* **Eli Shama**
the son of *Ammihud* **Ammi Hud**.
54 On the eighth day
offered *Gamaliel* **Gamli El** the son of *Pedahzur* **Pedah Sur**,
prince **hierarch**
of the *children* **sons** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**:
55 His *offering* **qorban** was one silver *charger* **dish**
of the weight of an hundred and thirty *shekels*,
one silver *bowl* **sprinkler** of seventy *shekels*,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**;
both **the two** of them were full of *fine* flour
mingled **mixed** with oil for a *meat* **an offering**;
56 One golden *spoon* **bowl** of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
57 One *young* bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram,
one lamb of the *first year* **a yearling son**,
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
58 One *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**:
59 And for a sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the *first year* **yearling sons**:
this was the *offering* **qorban** of *Gamaliel* **Gamli El**
the son of *Pedahzur* **Pedah Sur**.
60 On the ninth day
Abidan **Abi Dan** the son of *Gideoni* **Gidoni**,
prince **hierarch**
of the *children* **sons** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**, offered:
61 His *offering* **qorban** was one silver *charger* **dish**,
the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty *shekels*,
one silver *bowl* **sprinkler** of seventy *shekels*,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**;
both **the two** of them were full of *fine* flour
mingled **mixed** with oil for a *meat* **an offering**;
62 One golden *spoon* **bowl** of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
63 One *young* bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram,
one lamb of the *first year* **a yearling son**
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
64 One *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**:
65 And for a sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the *first year* **yearling sons**:
this was the *offering* **qorban** of *Abidan* **Abi Dan**
the son of *Gideoni* **Gidoni**.
66 On the tenth day
Ahiezer **Achi Ezer** the son of *Ammishaddai* **Ammi Shaday**,
prince **hierarch** of the *children* **sons** of *Dan*, offered:
67 His *offering* **qorban** was one silver *charger* **dish**,
the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty *shekels*,
one silver *bowl* **sprinkler** of seventy *shekels*,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**;
both **the two** of them were full of *fine* flour
mingled **mixed** with oil for a *meat* **an offering**;
68 One golden *spoon* **bowl** of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
69 One *young* bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram,
one lamb of the *first year* **a yearling son**
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
70 One *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**:
71 And for a sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the *first year* **yearling sons**:
this was the *offering* **qorban** of *Ahiezer* **Achi Ezer**

NUMBERS 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- the son of Deu El.
48 On the seventh day
Eli Shama the son of Ammi Hud,
hierarch of the sons of Ephrayim:
49 his qorban:
one silver dish a hundred and thirty weight,
one silver sprinkler of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the holies;
the two of them *are* full of flour
mixed with oil for an offering:
50 one golden bowl of ten, full of incense:
51 one bullock son of the oxen, one ram,
one lamb yearling son for a holocaust:
52 one buck of the goats for the sin:
53 and for a sacrifice of shelamim,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs yearling sons:
this is the qorban of Eli Shama the son of Ammi Hud.
54 On the eighth day
Gamli El the son of Pedah Sur,
hierarch of the sons of Menash Sheh:
55 his qorban:
one silver dish a hundred and thirty weight,
one silver sprinkler of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the holies;
the two of them *are* full of flour
mixed with oil for an offering:
56 one golden bowl of ten, full of incense:
57 one bullock son of the oxen, one ram,
one lamb yearling son for a holocaust:
58 one buck of the goats for the sin:
59 and for a sacrifice of shelamim,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs yearling sons:
this is the qorban of Gamli El the son of Pedah Sur.
60 On the ninth day
Abi Dan the son of Gidoni,
hierarch of the sons of Ben Yamin:
61 his qorban:
one silver dish a hundred and thirty weight,
one silver sprinkler of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the holies;
the two of them *are* full of flour
mixed with oil for an offering:
62 one golden bowl of ten, full of incense:
63 one bullock son of the oxen, one ram,
one lamb yearling son for a holocaust:
64 one buck of the goats for the sin:
65 and for a sacrifice of shelamim,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs yearling sons:
this is the qorban of Abi Dan the son of Gidoni.
66 On the tenth day
Achi Ezer the son of Ammi Shaday,
hierarch of the sons of Dan:
67 his qorban:
one silver dish a hundred and thirty weight,
one silver sprinkler of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the holies;
the two of them *are* full of flour
mixed with oil for an offering:
68 one golden bowl of ten, full of incense:
69 one bullock son of the oxen, one ram,
one lamb yearling son for a holocaust:
70 one buck of the goats for the sin:
71 and for a sacrifice of shelamim,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the first year yearling sons:
this is the qorban of Achi Ezer

NUMBERS 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 72 the son of Ammishaddai Ammi Shaday.
On the **day** — **the** eleventh day
Pagiel **Pagi El** the son of Ocran **Ochran**,
prince **hierarch** of the children **sons** of Asher, offered:
- 73 His offering **qorban** was one silver charger **dish**,
the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty *shekels*,
one silver **bowl** **sprinkler** of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary holies*;
both **the two** of them were full of *fine flour*
mingled **mixed** with oil for a *meat* **an** offering:
- 74 One golden *spoon* **bowl** of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
75 One young bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram,
one lamb of the *first year* **a yearling son**
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
- 76 One *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**:
77 And for a sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the *first year* **yearling sons**:
this was the *offering* **qorban** of Pagiel **Pagi El**
the son of Ocran **Ochran**.
- 78 On the **day** — **the** twelfth day
Ahira **Achi Ra** the son of Enan,
prince **hierarch** of the children **sons** of Naphtali, offered:
- 79 His offering **qorban** was one silver charger **dish**,
the weight whereof was an hundred and thirty *shekels*,
one silver **bowl** **sprinkler** of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary holies*;
both **the two** of them were full of *fine flour*
mingled **mixed** with oil for a *meat* **an** offering:
- 80 One golden *spoon* **bowl** of ten *shekels*, full of incense:
81 One young bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram,
one lamb of the *first year* **a yearling son**
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**:
- 82 One *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**:
83 And for a sacrifice of *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs of the *first year* **yearling sons**:
this was the *offering* **qorban** of Ahira **Achi Ra**
the son of Enan.
- 84 This was the *dedicating* **hanukkah** of the **sacrifice** altar,
in the day when it was anointed,
by the *princes* **hierarchs** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
twelve *chargers* **dishes** of silver,
twelve silver **bowls** **sprinklers**, twelve spoons of gold:
- 85 Each *charger* **dish** of silver
weighing an hundred and thirty *shekels*,
each **bowl** **sprinkler** seventy:
all the silver *vessels* **instruments** *weighed*
two thousand and four hundred *shekels*,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary holies*:
- 86 The golden *spoons* **bowls** were twelve, full of incense,
weighing *ten shekels* *apiece* **each bowl, ten, ten**,
after the shekel of the *sanctuary holies*:
all the gold of the *spoons* **bowls**
was an hundred and twenty *shekels*.
- 87 All the oxen for the *burnt offering* **holocaust**
were twelve bullocks, the rams twelve,
the lambs of the *first year* **yearling sons** twelve,
with their *meat* offering:
and the *kids* **bucks** of the goats for *sin offering* **for the sin**
twelve.
- 88 And all the oxen
for the sacrifice of the *peace offerings* **shelamim**
were twenty and four bullocks,
the rams sixty, the he goats sixty,
the lambs of the *first year* **yearling sons** sixty.
This was the *dedicating* **hanukkah** of the **sacrifice** altar,
after that it was anointed.
- 89 And when *Moses* **Mosheh**
was gone into the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation
to *speak* **word** with him,
then he heard the voice of one *speaking* **wording** unto him
from off the *mercy seat* **kapporeth**
that was upon the ark of *testimony* **witness**,
from between the two *cherubims* **cherubim**:
and he *spake* **worded** unto him.

NUMBERS 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- the son of Ammi Shaday.
- 72 On the **day** — the eleventh day
Pagi El the son of Ochran,
hierarch of the sons of Asher:
- 73 his qorban:
one silver dish a hundred and thirty weight,
one silver sprinkler of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the holies;
the two of them *are* full of flour
mixed with oil for an offering:
- 74 one golden bowl of ten , full of incense:
75 one bullock son of the oxen, one ram,
one lamb yearling son for a holocaust:
76 one buck of the goats for the sin:
77 and for a sacrifice of shelamim,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs yearling sons:
this *is* the qorban of Pagi El the son of Ochran.
- 78 On the **day** — the twelfth day
Achi Ra the son of Enan,
hierarch of the sons of Naphtali:
- 79 his qorban:
one silver dish a hundred and thirty weight,
one silver sprinkler of seventy shekels,
after the shekel of the holies;
the two of them *are* full of flour
mixed with oil for an offering:
- 80 one golden bowl of ten, full of incense:
81 one bullock son of the oxen, one ram,
one lamb yearling son for a holocaust:
82 one buck of the goats for the sin:
83 and for a sacrifice of shelamim,
two oxen, five rams, five he goats,
five lambs yearling sons:
this *is* the qorban of Achi Ra the son of Enan.
- 84 This *is* the hanukkah of the sacrifice altar,
in the day of its anointing by the hierarchs of Yisra El:
twelve dishes of silver,
twelve silver sprinklers, twelve spoons of gold:
- 85 each dish of silver a hundred and thirty,
each sprinkler seventy:
all the silver instruments
two thousand and four hundred,
after the shekel of the holies:
- 86 the golden bowls full of incense, twelve,
each bowl, ten, ten, after the shekel of the holies:
all the gold of the bowls, a hundred and twenty.
- 87 All the oxen for the holocaust;
twelve bullocks, the rams twelve,
twelve lambs yearling sons with their offering:
and twelve the bucks of the goats for the sin.
- 88 And all the oxen for the sacrifice of the shelamim:
twenty—four bullocks,
the rams sixty, the he goats sixty,
the lambs yearling sons sixty.
This *is* the hanukkah of the sacrifice altar,
after its anointing.
- 89 And Mosheh goes into the tent of the congregation
to word with him,
he hears the voice of one wording to him
from off the kapporeth on the ark of witness,
from between the two cherubim:
and he words to him.

NUMBERS 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

HOLOCAUST OF THE LAMPS OF THE MENORAH

- 8 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh** worded
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
2 Speak **Word** unto Aaron **Aharon** and say unto him,
When thou *lightest* **holocaustest** the lamps,
the seven lamps shall *give light* **illuminate**
over against **in front of the face of**
the *candlestick* **menorah**.
3 And Aaron *did* **Aharon worked** so;
he *lighted* **holocausted** the lamps thereof
over against **in front of the face of**
the *candlestick* **menorah**,
as the LORD **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**.
4 And this work of the *candlestick* **menorah**
was of *beaten* **spun** gold,
unto the shaft **flank** thereof,
unto the *flowers* **blossoms** thereof, was *beaten work* **spun**:
according unto the *pattern* **vision**
which the LORD **Yah Veh**
had *shewed* Moses **Mosheh see**,
so he *made* **worked** the *candlestick* **menorah**.
PURIFYING THE LEVIYM
5 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh** worded
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
6 Take the *Levites* **Leviym**
from among the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
and *cleanse* **purify** them.
7 And thus shalt thou *do* **work** unto them,
to *cleanse* **purify** them:
Sprinkle water of *purifying* **for the sin** upon them,
and let them *shave* **pass a razor over** all their flesh,
and let them *wash* **launder** their clothes,
and so *make* **purify** themselves *clean*.
8 Then let them take a *young* bullock **son of the oxen**
with his *meat* offering,
even *fine* flour *mingled* **mixed** with oil,
and *another young* a **second** bullock **son of the oxen**
shalt thou take for a *sin offering* **the sin**.
9 And thou shalt *bring* **oblade** the *Levites* **Leviym**
before **at the face of**
the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation:
and thou shalt *gather* **congregate**
the *whole assembly* **witness**
of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El together**:
10 And thou shalt *bring* **oblade** the *Levites* **Leviym**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**:
and the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
shall *put* **prop** their hands upon the *Levites* **Leviym**:
11 And Aaron shall *offer* **wave** the *Levites* **Leviym**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**
for an *offering* **a wave**
of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
that they may *execute* **serve**
the *service of* the LORD **Yah Veh**.
12 And the *Levites* **Leviym** shall *lay* **prop** their hands
upon the heads of the bullocks:
and thou shalt *offer* **work** the one for a *sin offering* **the sin**,
and the *other* **one** for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
unto the LORD **Yah Veh**,
to *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for the *Levites* **Leviym**.
13 And thou shalt *set* **stand** the *Levites* **Leviym**
before Aaron **at the face of Aharon**,
and *before* **at the face of** his sons,
and *offer* **wave** them
for an *offering* **a wave** unto the LORD **Yah Veh**.
14 Thus shalt thou separate the *Levites* **Leviym**
from among the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**:
and the *Levites* **Leviym** shall be mine.
15 And after that shall the *Levites* **Leviym** go in
to *do* **serve** the *service*
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation:
and thou shalt *cleanse* **purify** them,
and *offer* **wave** them for an *offering* **a wave**.
16 For **in giving**, they are *wholly* given unto me
from among the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**;
instead of *such as open every* **every burster of the** womb,
even *instead of the firstborn* **firstbirthed**
of all the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,

NUMBERS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

HOLOCAUST OF THE LAMPS OF THE MENORAH

- 8 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Word to Aharon and say to him,
When you holocaust the lamps,
have the seven lamps
illuminate in front of the face of the menorah.
3 — and thus Aharon works;
he holocausts the lamps
in front of the face of the menorah
— as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.
4 And this work of the menorah is of spun gold,
to the flank thereof to the blossoms thereof
— spun according to the vision
which Yah Veh shows Mosheh
— thus he works the menorah.

PURIFYING THE LEVIYM

- 5 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
6 Take the Leviym from among the sons of Yisra El
and purify them:
7 and work thus to them, to purify them:
sprinkle water for the sin on them:
and they pass a razor over all their flesh
and launder their clothes
and thus purify themselves.
8 And take a bullock son of the oxen and its offering
and flour mixed with oil:
9 and take a second bullock son of the oxen for the sin;
and oblate the Leviym
at the face of the tent of the congregation:
and congregate the witness of the sons of Yisra El:
10 and oblate the Leviym at the face of Yah Veh:
and the sons of Yisra El
prop their hands on the Leviym:
11 and Aharon waves
the Leviym at the face of Yah Veh
for a wave of the sons of Yisra El,
to serve the service of Yah Veh.
12 And the Leviym prop their hands
on the heads of the bullocks:
and you work the one for the sin
and the one for a holocaust to Yah Veh,
to kapar/atone for the Leviym:
13 and stand the Leviym at the face of Aharon
and at the face of his sons
and wave them for a wave to Yah Veh.
14 Thus you separate the Leviym
from among the sons of Yisra El:
and the Leviym become mine.
15 And afterward the Leviym go in
to serve the service of the tent of the congregation:
and you purify them
and wave them for a wave.
16 For in giving, they are given to me
from among the sons of Yisra El:
instead of every burster of the womb
of the firstbirths of all the sons of Yisra El,

NUMBERS 8, 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

17 have I taken them unto me.
For all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** are mine,
both man **human** and *beast* **animal**:
on the day that I smote every *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
I *sanctified* **hallowed** them for myself.
18 And I have taken the *Levites* **Leviym**
for all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
19 And I have given the *Levites* **Leviym**
as a *gift* to *Aaron* — **given** to *Aharon* and to his sons
from among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
to *do* **serve** the service
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
and to *make an atonement* **kapar/atone**
for the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
that there be no plague
among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
when the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
come near **approach** unto the *sanctuary* **holies**.
20 And *Moses* **Mosheh**, and *Aaron* **Aharon**,
and all the *congregation* **witness**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
did **worked** to the *Levites* **Leviym**
according unto all that *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded *Moses* **misvahed** *Mosheh*
concerning the *Levites* **Leviym**,
so *did* **worked** the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
unto them.
21 And the *Levites* **Leviym**, *were purified*, **for the sin**,
and they washed **laundered** their clothes;
and *Aaron* **offered** *Aharon* **waved** them
as an *offering* **a wave**
before the LORD **at the face of** *Yah Veh*;
and *Aaron* **Aharon**
made an atonement **did** *kapar/atone* for them
to *cleanse* **purify** them.
22 And after that went the *Levites* **Leviym** in
to *do* **serve** their service
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation
before Aaron **at the face of** *Aharon*,
and *before* **at the face of** his sons:
as *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
had *commanded* *Moses* **misvahed** *Mosheh*
concerning the *Levites* **Leviym**,
so *did* **worked** they unto them.
23 And *the LORD* **spake** *Yah Veh* **worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
24 This is it that belongeth unto the *Levites* **Leviym**:
from **a son of** twenty and five years *old* and upward
they shall go in to *wait upon* **host** the *service* **hosting**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation:
25 And *from the age* **a son** of fifty years
they shall *cease* **turn away**
waiting upon **from hosting** the *service* **thereof**,
and shall *serve* no more:
26 But shall minister with their brethren
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
to *keep* **guard** the *charge* **guard**,
and shall *do* **serve** no service.
Thus shalt thou *do* **work** unto the *Levites* **Leviym**
touching **regarding** their *charge* **guard**.

THE PASACH

9 And *the LORD* **spake** *Yah Veh* **worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh** in the wilderness of *Sinai* **Sinay**,
in the first month of the second year
after they were come out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
saying,
2 Let the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
also *keep* **work** the *passover* **pasach**
at his *appointed* season.
3 In the fourteenth day of this month,
at even **between evenings**,
ye shall *keep* **work** it in his *appointed* season:
according to all the *rites* **statutes** of it,
and according to all the *ceremonies* **judgments** thereof,
shall ye *keep* **work** it.

NUMBERS 8, 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

I take them to me.
17 For all the firstbirth of the sons of Yisra El are mine,
— human and animal:
on the day I smote every firstbirth
in the land of Misrayim
I hallow them for myself:
and I take the Leviym
18 instead of all the firstbirths of the sons of Yisra El:
and I give the Leviym
19 — give to Aharon and to his sons
from among the sons of Yisra El,
to serve the service of the sons of Yisra El
in the tent of the congregation;
and to kapar/atone for the sons of Yisra El:
that there be no plague among the sons of Yisra El
when the sons of Yisra El approach the holies.
20 And Mosheh and Aharon
and all the witness of the sons of Yisra El,
work to the Leviym
according to all Yah Veh misvahs Mosheh
concerning the Leviym,
thus worked the sons of Yisra El to them.
21 And the Leviym — for the sin,
launder their clothes;
and Aharon waves them
— a wave at the face of Yah Veh;
and Aharon kapars/atones for them to purify them.
22 And afterward
the Leviym go in to serve their service
in the tent of the congregation
at the face of Aharon and at the face of his sons:
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh
concerning the Leviym,
thus they work to them.
23 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
24 This is for the Leviym
from a son of twenty — five years and upward:
they go in to host the hosting
of the tent of the congregation:
25 and a son of fifty years
they turn away from hosting the service
to serve no more:
26 but minister with their brothers
in the tent of the congregation to guard the guard,
but serve no service.
Work thus to the Leviym regarding their guard.

THE PASACH

9 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh
in the wilderness of *Sinay*,
in the first month of the second year
after they come from the land of *Misrayim*, saying,
2 And also have the sons of Yisra El
work the pasach at its season:
3 in the fourteenth day of this month,
between evenings,
work in its season
according to all the statutes thereof
and according to all the judgments thereof
— work it.

NUMBERS 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 4 And Moses spake Mosheh worded
unto the children sons of Israel Yisra El,
that they should keep work the passover pasach.
- 5 And they kept worked the passover pasach
on the fourteenth day of the first month
at even between evenings
in the wilderness of Sinai Sinay:
according to all that the LORD Yah Veh
commanded Moses misvahed Mosheh,
so did worked the children sons of Israel Yisra El.
- 6 And there were certain men,
who were defiled by the dead body soul of a man human,
that they could not keep work the passover pasach
on that day
came before Moses approached at the face of Mosheh
and before Aaron at the face of Aharon on that day:
- 7 And those men said unto him,
We are defiled by the dead body soul of a man human:
wherefore are we kept back,
that we may not offer an offering oblate a qorban
of the LORD Yah Veh in his appointed season
among the children sons of Israel Yisra El?
- 8 And Moses Mosheh said unto them, Stand still,
and I will shall hear
what the LORD will command Yah Veh shall misvah
concerning you.
- 9 And the LORD spake Yah Veh worded
unto Moses Mosheh, saying,
- 10 Speak Word unto the children sons of Israel Yisra El,
saying,
If a man — any man of you or of your posterity generation
shall be unclean fouled by reason of a dead body a soul,
or be in a journey afar off,
yet he shall keep work the passover pasach
unto the LORD Yah Veh.
- 11 The fourteenth day of the second month
at even between evenings they shall keep work it,
and eat it
with unleavened bread matsah and bitter herbs bitters.
- 12 They shall leave let none of it survive
unto the morning,
nor break any bone of it:
according to all the ordinances statutes
of the passover pasach
they shall keep work it.
- 13 But the man that is clean pure, and is not in a journey,
and forbeareth ceaseth to keep work the passover pasach,
even the same soul
shall be cut off from among his people:
because he brought obliterated not
the offering qorban of the LORD Yah Veh
in his appointed season,
that man shall bear his sin.
- 14 And if a stranger sojourner shall sojourn among you,
and will keep shall work the passover pasach
unto the LORD Yah Veh;
according to the ordinance statute of the passover pasach,
and according to the manner judgment thereof,
so thus shall he do work:
ye shall have one ordinance statute,
both for the stranger sojourner,
and for him that was born in the land the native.
- TABERNACLE CLOUD COVER**
- 15 And on the day that the tabernacle was reared up raised
the cloud covered the tabernacle,
namely, the tent of the testimony witness:
and at even there was upon the tabernacle
as it were the appearance the visage of fire,
until the morning.
- 16 So it was always continually:
the cloud covered it by day,
and the appearance visage of fire by night.
- 17 And when the mouth of the cloud
was taken up ascended from the tabernacle tent,
then after that
the children sons of Israel journeyed Yisra El pulled stakes:
and in the place where the cloud abode tabernacled,
there the children sons of Israel Yisra El
pitched their tents encamped.

NUMBERS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 4 And Mosheh words to the sons of Yisra El
to work the pasach:
- 5 and they work the pasach
on the fourteenth day of the first month
between evenings
in the wilderness of Sinay:
according to all Yah Veh misvahs Mosheh,
thus the sons of Yisra El work.
- 6 And there are men,
defiled by the soul of a human,
who cannot work the pasach on that day
who approach at the face of Mosheh
and at the face of Aharon on that day:
and those men say to him,
We are defiled by the soul of a human!
Why are we kept back,
that we not oblate a qorban of Yah Veh in its season
among the sons of Yisra El?
- 8 And Mosheh says to them, Stand still
and I hear what Yah Veh misvahs concerning you.
- 9 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
Word to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
If a man — any man of you, or of your generation
becomes fouled by a soul, or on a far journey,
yet he works the pasach to Yah Veh;
the fourteenth day of the second month
between evenings they work it
and eat it with matsah and bitters:
they neither let any thereof survive to the morning
nor break any bone thereof:
according to all the statutes of the pasach
they work it.
- 13 But the man who is pure and not on a journey
and ceases to work the pasach,
even that same soul
becomes cut off from among his people:
because he oblates not the qorban of Yah Veh
in its season,
that man bears his sin.
- 14 And if a sojourner sojourns among you
and works the pasach to Yah Veh;
according to the statute of the pasach
and according to the judgment thereof,
thus works he:
you have one statute
— both for the sojourner and for the native.
- TABERNACLE CLOUD COVER**
- 15 And on the day they raise the tabernacle
the cloud covers the tabernacle
— the tent of the witness:
and at evening, on the tabernacle,
there is as the visage of fire until the morning.
- 16 And so be it continually:
the cloud covers it and the visage of fire by night.
- 17 And the mouth of the cloud ascends from the tent;
and afterward, the sons of Yisra El pull stakes:
and in the place the cloud tabernacles,
the sons of Yisra El encamp.

NUMBERS 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 18 At the *commandment* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **journeyed** **Yisra El** **pulled stakes**,
and at the *commandment* of the *LORD* **mouth** of *Yah Veh*
they *pitched* **encamped**:
as long as **all the days**
the cloud *abode* **tabernacled** upon the tabernacle
they *rested in their tents* **encamped**.
- 19 And when the cloud
tarried long **prolonged** upon the tabernacle many days,
then the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
kept **guarded** the *charge* **guard** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *journeyed* **pulled stakes** not.
- 20 And so it was, when the cloud
was a *few* **number of** days upon the tabernacle;
according to
the *commandment* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
they *abode in their tents* **encamped**,
and according to
the *commandment* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
they *journeyed* **pulled stakes**.
- 21 And so it was, when the cloud
abode **became** from even unto the morning,
and that the cloud *was taken up* **ascended** in the morning,
then they *journeyed* **pulled stakes**:
whether it was by day or by night
that the cloud *was taken up* **ascended**,
they *journeyed* **pulled stakes**.
- 22 Or *whether it were* — two days, or a month, or a year,
that the cloud *tarried* **prolonged** upon the tabernacle,
remaining **tabernacling** thereon,
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
abode in their tents **encamped**,
and *journeyed* **pulled stakes** not:
but when it *was taken up* **ascended**,
they *journeyed* **pulled stakes**.
- 23 At the *commandment* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
they *rested in the tents* **encamped**,
and at the *commandment* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
they *journeyed* **pulled stakes**:
they *kept* **guarded** the *charge* **guard** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
at the *commandment* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
by the hand of *Moses* **Mosheh**.

BLAST, AND BLAST BLAST OF TRUMPETS

10

- And the *LORD* *spake* **Yah Veh** **worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
Make **Work** thee two trumpets of silver;
of a *whole piece* **spinning** shalt thou *make* **work** them:
that thou mayest use them
for the *calling* **convocation** of the *assembly* **witness**,
and for the journeying of the camps.
- 3 And when they shall *blow* **blast** with them,
all the *assembly* **witness**
shall *assemble* **congregate** *themselves* to thee
at the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation.
- 4 And if they *blow* **blast** but *with one trumpet*,
then the *princes* **hierarchs**,
which are heads of the thousands of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
shall *gather* **congregate** *themselves* unto thee.
- 5 When ye *blow an alarm* **blast blast**,
then the camps that *lie on the east parts* **encamp eastward**
shall *go forward* **pull stakes**.
- 6 When ye *blow an alarm* **blast blast** the second time,
then the camps that *lie on the south side* **encamp southward**
shall *take their journey* **pull stakes**:
they shall *blow an alarm* **blast blast** for their journeys.
- 7 But when the congregation
is to be *gathered* **congregated together**,
ye shall *blow* **blast**,
but ye shall not *sound an alarm* **blast blast**.
- 8 And the sons of *Aaron* **Aharon**, the priests,
shall *blow* **blast** with the trumpets;
and they shall be to you
for an *ordinance for ever* **eternal statute**
throughout your generations.
- 9 And if ye go to war in your land
against the *enemy* **tribulator**
that *oppresseth* **tribulateth** you,
then ye shall *blow an alarm* **blast blast** with the trumpets;

NUMBERS 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 18 At the mouth of *Yah Veh*
the sons of *Yisra El* **pull stakes**
and at the mouth of *Yah Veh*
they *encamp*:
all the days the cloud *tabernacles* on the tabernacle
they *encamp*:
and when the cloud
prolongs on the tabernacle many days,
then the sons of *Yisra El* **guard** the *guard* of *Yah Veh*
and not **pull stakes**.
- 20 And so be it,
when the cloud *is* on the tabernacle
a number of days;
according to the mouth of *Yah Veh*
they *encamp*
and according to the mouth of *Yah Veh*
they *pull stakes*.
- 21 And so be it,
when the cloud *becomes* from evening to morning
— when the cloud *ascends* in the morning,
they *pull stakes*:
whether the cloud *ascends* by day or by night,
they *pull stakes*.
- 22 — two days or a month or a year
that the cloud *prolongs* on the tabernacle,
tabernacling thereon,
the sons of *Yisra El* **encamp** and not **pull stakes**:
but when it *ascends*, they *pull stakes*.
- 23 At the mouth of *Yah Veh* they *encamp*
and at the mouth of *Yah Veh* they *pull stakes*:
they *guard* the *guard* of *Yah Veh*,
at the mouth of *Yah Veh* by the hand of *Mosheh*.

BLAST, AND BLAST BLAST OF TRUMPETS

10

- And *Yah Veh* *words* to *Mosheh*, saying,
2 Work two trumpets of silver;
work them by *spinning*:
to use for the *convocation* of the *witness*
and for the *journeying* of the camps.
- 3 And when they *blast* with them,
all the *witness* *congregates* to you
at the *opening* of the *tent* of the *congregation*.
- 4 And if they *blast* one,
then the *hierarchs*,
the heads of the thousands of *Yisra El*,
congregate to you.
- 5 When you *blast blast*,
the camps *encamping* eastward *pull stakes*.
- 6 When you *blast blast* secondly,
then the camps *encamping* southward *pull stakes*:
they *blast blast* for their *journeys*.
- 7 And to *congregate* the *congregation*, *blast*,
but not *blast blast*.
- 8 And the sons of *Aharon*, the priests,
blast with the trumpets;
and they become an *eternal statute* to you
throughout your generations.
- 9 And when you go to war in your land
against the *tribulator* who *tribulates* you,
then you *blast blast* with the trumpets;

NUMBERS 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- and ye shall be remembered
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh your God Elohim,
and ye shall be saved from your enemies.
- 10 Also in the day of your gladness cheerfulnes,
and in your solemn days seasons,
and in the beginnings heads of your months,
ye shall blow blast with the trumpets
over your burnt offerings holocausts,
and over the sacrifices of your peace offerings shelamim;
that they may be to you for a memorial
before at the face of your God Elohim:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God Elohim.
- 11 **SONS OF YISRA EL PULL STAKES FROM SINAY**
And so be it came to pass,
on the twentieth day of the second month
in the second month, on the twentieth of the month,
in the second year,
that the cloud was taken up ascended
from off the tabernacle of the testimony witness.
- 12 And the children sons of Israel Yisra El
took pulled stakes in their journeys
out of the wilderness of Sinai Sinay;
and the cloud rested tabernacled
in the wilderness of Paran.
- 13 And they first took their journey pulled stakes
according to
the commandment mouth of the LORD Yah Veh
by the hand of Moses Mosheh.
- 14 In the first place The first to pull stakes
went was the standard of the camp
of the children sons of Judah Yah Hudah
according to their armies hosts:
and over his host was Nahshon
the son of Amminadab Ammi Nadab.
- 15 And over the host of the tribe rod
of the children sons of Issachar Yissachar
was Nethaneel Nethan El the son of Zuar Suar.
- 16 And over the host of the tribe rod
of the children sons of Zebulun
was Eliab Eli Ab the son of Helon.
- 17 And the tabernacle was taken down lowered;
and the sons of Gershon and the sons of Merari
set forward pulled stakes, bearing the tabernacle.
- 18 And the standard of the camp of Reuben Reu Ben
set forward pulled stakes according to their armies hosts:
and over his host was Elizur Eli Sur
the son of Shedeur Shedey Ur.
- 19 And over the host of the tribe rod
of the children sons of Simeon Shimon
was Shelumiel Shelumi El
the son of Zurishaddai Suri Shadday.
- 20 And over the host of the tribe rod
of the children sons of Gad
was Eliasaph Eli Yasaph the son of Deuel Deu El.
- 21 And the Kohathites set forward Qehathiy pulled stakes,
bearing the sanctuary holies:
and the other did set up raised the tabernacle
against they came as they arrived.
- 22 And the standard of the camp
of the children sons of Ephraim Ephrayim
set forward pulled stakes according to their armies hosts:
and over his host was Elishama Eli Shama
the son of Ammihud Ammi Hud.
- 23 And over the host of the tribe rod
of the children sons of Manasseh Menash Sheh
was Gamaliel Gamli El the son of Pedahzur Pedah Sur.
- 24 And over the host of the tribe rod
of the children sons of Benjamin Ben Yamin
was Abidan Abi Dan the son of Gideoni Gidoni.
- 25 And the standard of the camp
of the children sons of Dan set forward pulled stakes,
which was the reeward gathered rearward
of all the camps throughout their hosts:
and over his host was Ahiezer Achi Ezer
the son of Ammishaddai Ammi Shaday.

NUMBERS 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- and you become remembered
at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim
and you become saved from your enemies.
- 10 And in the day of your cheerfulness
and in your seasons
and in the heads of your months,
blast with the trumpets over your holocausts
and over the sacrifices of your shelamim;
and they become to you for a memorial
at the face of your Elohim:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.
- 11 **SONS OF YISRA EL PULL STAKES FROM SINAY**
And so be it, in the second month,
on the twentieth of the month, in the second year,
the cloud ascends
from off the tabernacle of the witness:
and the sons of Yisra El pull stakes
in their journeys from the wilderness of Sinay;
and the cloud tabernacles in the wilderness of Paran:
- 12 and they first pull stakes
according to the mouth of Yah Veh
by the hand of Mosheh.
- 13 The first to pull stakes;
the standard of the camp of the sons of Yah Hudah
by their hosts:
and over his host:
Nahshon the son of Ammi Nadab;
- 14 and over the host
of the rod of the sons of Yissachar:
Nethan El the son of Suar;
- 15 and over the host
of the rod of the sons of Zebulun:
Eli Ab the son of Helon.
- 16 And they lower the tabernacle;
and the sons of Gershon and the sons of Merari
pull stakes, bearing the tabernacle:
and the standard of the camp of Reu Ben
pulls stakes by their hosts;
and over his host:
Eli Sur the son of Shedey Ur.
- 17 And over the host
of the rod of the sons of Shimon:
Shelumi El the son of Suri Shadday;
- 18 and over the host
of the rod of the sons of Gad:
Eli Yasaph the son of Deu El.
- 19 And the Qehathiy pull stakes bearing the holies:
and raise the tabernacle as they arrive.
- 20 And the standard of the camp
of the sons of Ephrayim
pull stakes by their hosts:
and over his host:
Eli Shama the son of Ammi Hud.
- 21 And over the host
of the rod of the sons of Menash Sheh:
Gamli El the son of Pedah Sur;
- 22 and over the host
of the rod of the sons of Ben Yamin:
Abi Dan the son of Gidoni.
- 23 And the standard of the camp
of the sons of Dan pull stakes,
and gather rearward
of all the camps throughout their hosts;
and over his host:
Achi Ezer the son of Ammi Shaday.

NUMBERS 10, 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

26 And over the host of the *tribe* **rod**
of the *children* **sons** of Asher
was *Pagiel* **Pagi El** the son of *Ocran* **Ochran**.
27 And over the host of the *tribe* **rod**
of the *children* **sons** of Naphtali
was *Ahira* **Achi Ra** the son of Enan.
28 Thus were the journeyings
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
according to their *armies* **hosts**,
when they *set forward* **pulled stakes**.
29 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto Hobab,
the son of *Raguel* **Reu El** the *Midianite* **Midyaniy**,
Moses' **Mosheh's** *father* in law,
We are *journeying* **pulling stakes**
unto the place of which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said,
I *will* **shall** give it you:
come go thou with us, and we *will* **shall** do thee good:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded** good
concerning *Israel* **Yisra El**.
30 And he said unto him, I *will* **shall** not go;
but I *will* **depart** **shall go** to mine own land,
and to my kindred.
31 And he said, Leave us not, I *pray* **beseech** thee;
forasmuch **for thus** as thou knowest
how we are to encamp in the wilderness,
and thou mayest be to us instead of eyes.
32 And it shall be, if thou go with us, yea,
it shall be, that what goodness
the LORD **Yah Veh** shall *do unto* **well**—**please** us,
the same will **that good shall** we do unto thee.
33 And they *departed* **pulled stakes**
from the mount of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** three days' journey:
and the ark of the covenant of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
went before them **pulled stakes at their face**
in the three days' journey,
to *search* **explore** a *resting place* **rest** for them.
34 And the cloud of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
was upon them by day,
when they *went* **pulled stakes** out of the camp.
35 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when the ark *set forward* **pulled stakes**,
that *Moses* **Mosheh** said, Rise up, *LORD* **O Yah Veh**,
and let thine enemies be scattered;
and let them that hate thee flee *before thee* **thy face**.
36 And when it rested, he said, Return, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
unto the *many thousands* **myriads** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

THE CONSUMING FIRE OF YAH VEH

11 And when the people complained,
it *displeased the LORD* **was evil in Yah Veh's ears**:
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** heard it;
and his *anger* **wrath** was kindled;
and the fire of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
burnt **kindled** among them,
and consumed *them*
that were in the uttermost parts **the ends** of the camp.
2 And the people cried unto *Moses* **Mosheh**;
and when *Moses* **Mosheh** prayed unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the fire was quenched.
3 And he called the name of the place Taberah:
because the fire of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
burnt **kindled** among them.
SONS OF YISRA EL COMPLAIN ABOUT THE MANNA
4 And the *mixt multitude* **gathering**
that was *among them* **in their midst**
fell a lusting **desired a desire**:
and the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
wept again **turned to weep also**, and said,
Who shall give **feed** us flesh to eat?
5 We remember the fish,
which we did eat in *Egypt* **freely Misrayim gratuitously**;
the cucumbers, and the melons,
and the leeks, and the onions, and the garlic:
6 But now our soul is dried away:
there is *nothing* **naught** at all, *beside* **except** this manna,
before **in front of** our eyes.
7 And the manna was as coriander seed,
and the *colour* **eye** thereof as the *colour* **eye** of bdellium.
8 And the people *went about* **flitted**,
and *gathered* **gleaned** it,

NUMBERS 10, 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

26 And over the host
of the rod of the sons of Asher:
Pagi El the son of Ochran;
27 and over the host
of the rod of the sons of Naphtali:
Achi Ra the son of Enan.
28 Thus are the journeyings of the sons of Yisra El
by their hosts,
when they pull stakes.
29 And Mosheh says to Hobab
the son of Reu El the Midyaniy, in law of Mosheh,
We pull stakes to the place of which Yah Veh said,
I give it you:
come with us and we do you good:
for Yah Veh worded good concerning Yisra El.
30 And he says to him, I go not;
but I go to my own land and to my kindred.
31 And he says, Leave us not, I beseech you;
for thus you know how we encamp in the wilderness
and you become to us instead of eyes:
and so be it, if you go with us,
yes, so be it, that what goodness
Yah Veh well—pleases us,
that good we do also to you.
32 And they pull stakes
from the mount of Yah Veh a journey of three days:
and the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
pulls stakes at their face in the journey of three days
to explore a rest for them.
33 — and the cloud of Yah Veh is on them by day,
when they pull stakes from the camp.
34 And so be it, when the ark pulls stakes,
Mosheh says, Rise, O Yah Veh,
and scatter your enemies;
and they who hate you, flee from your face.
35 And when it rests, he says, Return, O Yah Veh,
to the myriads of Yisra El.

THE CONSUMING FIRE OF YAH VEH

11 And the people complain evilly
in the ears of Yah Veh:
and Yah Veh hears and kindles his wrath;
and kindles the fire of Yah Veh among them
and consumes the ends of the camp.
2 And the people cry to Mosheh;
and when Mosheh prays to Yah Veh,
the fire quenches.
3 And he calls the name of the place Taberah/Burning:
because the fire of Yah Veh kindles among them.
SONS OF YISRA EL COMPLAIN ABOUT THE MANNA
4 And the gathering in their midst desires a desire:
and the sons of Yisra El turn to weep and say,
Who feeds us flesh?
5 We remember the fish
we gratuitously ate in Misrayim;
the cucumbers and the melons
and the leeks and the onions and the garlic:
6 but now our soul dries:
there is naught except this manna in front of our eyes.
7 — and the manna is as coriander seed
and the eye thereof as the eye of bdellium.
8 And the people flit and glean it

NUMBERS 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and ground it in *mills* **millstones**, or beat it in a mortar,
and *baked* **stewed** it in *pans* **skillets**,
and *made cakes* **worked** **ashcakes** of it:
and the taste of it was as the taste of *fresh* **juicy** oil.
9 And when the dew
fell **descended** upon the camp in the night,
the manna *fell* **descended** upon it.
10 Then *Moses* **Mosheh** heard the people weep
throughout their families,
every man in the *door* **opening** of his tent:
and the *anger* **wrath** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
was kindled *greatly* **mightily**;
Moses also was displeased
And it was vilifying in Mosheh's eyes.
11 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Wherefore hast thou *afflicted* **vilified** thy servant?
and wherefore
have I not found *favoured* **charism** in thy *sight* **eyes**,
that thou *layest* **settest** the burden of all this people
upon me?
12 Have I conceived all this people?
have I *begotten* **birthed** them,
that thou shouldst say unto me,
Carry **Bear** them in thy bosom,
as a *nursing father* **fosterer**
beareth the sucking child **the suckling**,
unto the *land* **soil**
which thou *swarest* **oathest** unto their fathers?
13 Whence should I have flesh to give unto all this people?
for they weep unto me, saying,
Give us flesh, that we may eat.
14 I am not able to bear all this people alone,
because it is too heavy for me.
15 And if thou *deal* **work** thus with me, *kill* **slaughter** me,
I *pray* **beseech** thee, *out of hand* **slaughter me**,
if I have found *favoured* **charism** in thy *sight* **eyes**;
and let me not see my *wretchedness* **evil**.
YAH VEh PROMISES FLESH TO EAT
16 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Gather unto me seventy men
of the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
whom thou knowest to be the elders of the people,
and officers over them;
and *bring* **take** them
unto the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
that they may stand there with thee.
17 And I *will come down* **shall descend**
and *talk* **word** with thee there:
and I *will take* **shall set aside** of the spirit
which is upon thee,
and *will* **shall** put it upon them;
and they shall bear the burden of the people with thee,
that thou bear it not thyself alone.
18 And say thou unto the people,
Sanctify yourselves against to **Hallow by** the morrow,
and ye shall eat flesh:
for ye have wept in the ears of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
saying, Who shall *give* **feed** us flesh to eat?
for it was *well* **good** with us in *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
therefore the *LORD* **will** **Yah Veh** **shall** give you flesh,
and ye shall eat.
19 Ye shall not eat one day, nor two days,
nor five days, neither ten days, nor twenty days;
20 But even a *whole* month **of days**,
until it come out at your nostrils,
and it be *loathsome* **strange** unto you:
because that ye have
despised the **LORD** **spurned** **Yah Veh**
which is among you,
and have wept *before him* **at his face**, saying,
Why came we forth out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**?
21 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said,
The people, among whom I am,
are six hundred thousand *footmen* **on foot**;
and thou hast said, I *will* **shall** give them flesh,
that they may eat a *whole* month **of days**.
22 Shall the flocks and the *herds* **oxen** be slain for them,
to *suffice* **be found for** them?

NUMBERS 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and grind it in millstones, and beat it in a mortar
and stew it in skillets and work ashcakes thereof:
and the taste thereof *is* as the taste of juicy oil.
9 And as the dew descends on the camp at night
the manna descends thereon.
10 And Mosheh hears the people weep
throughout their families
— every man in the opening of his tent:
and Yah Veh kindles his wrath mightily;
and it *is* vilifying in the eyes of Mosheh.
11 And Mosheh says to Yah Veh,
Why vilify your servant?
And why find I not charism in your eyes
— setting the burden of all this people on me?
12 Conceived I all this people?
Birthed I them — that you say to me,
Bear them in your bosom, as a fosterer the suckling,
to the soil you oathed to their fathers?
13 Whence have I flesh to give to all this people?

For they weep to me, saying,
Give us flesh to eat!
14 I cannot bear all this people alone,
because it *is* too heavy for me!
15 And if you work thus with me, slaughter me!
I beseech you, slaughter me!
if I find charism in your eyes;
that I not see my evil.
YAH VEh PROMISES FLESH TO EAT
16 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Gather to me
seventy men of the elders of Yisra El,
whom you know are elders of the people
and officers over them;
and take them to the tent of the congregation,
to stand there with you:
17 and I descend and word with you there:
and I set aside of the spirit on you
and put it on them
to bear the burden of the people with you,
that you not bear it yourself alone:
18 and say to the people,
hallow yourselves by the morrow, and eat flesh:
for you wept in the ears of Yah Veh,
saying, Who feeds us flesh?
For it was good with us in Misrayim!
And Yah Veh gave you flesh and you ate
— you ate, neither one day nor two days
nor five days nor ten days nor twenty days
— but a month of days,
until it came out your nostrils
and became strange to you
— because you spurned Yah Veh
who *is* among you
and wept at his face, saying,
Why came we from Misrayim?
21 And Mosheh says, The people
— six hundred thousand on foot in my midst;
and you say, Give them flesh to eat a month of days.
22 Slaughter you flocks and oxen for them
and find for them?

NUMBERS 11, 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

or shall all the fish of the sea
be gathered *together* for them,
to suffice **be found** for them?
23 And the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Is the LORD'S **Yah Veh's** hand waxed short **curtailed**?
thou shalt see now whether my word
shall *come to pass* unto **be fall** thee or not.
24 And *Moses* **Mosheh** went out,
and *told* **worded** the people
the words of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and gathered the seventy men of the elders of the people,
and set **stood** them round about the *tabernacle* **tent**.
25 And the LORD **Yah Veh**
came down **descended** in a cloud,
and *spake* **worded** unto him,
and *took* **set aside** of the spirit that was upon him,
and gave it unto the seventy **men** — elders:
and **so be** it *came to pass*, that,
when the spirit rested upon them, they prophesied,
and *did not cease* **but never again**.
26 But there *remained* **survived**
two of the men in the camp,
the name of the one was *Eldad* **El Dad**,
and the name of the *other* **second** Medad:
and the spirit rested upon them;
and they were of them that were *written* **inscribed**,
but went not out unto the *tabernacle* **tent**:
and they prophesied in the camp.
27 And there ran a *young man* **lad**,
and *told* *Moses* **Mosheh**, and said,
Eldad **El Dad** and Medad *do* prophesy in the camp.
28 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** the son of Nun,
the *servant* **minister** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
one of his *young men* **youths**, answered and said,
My lord *Moses* **adoni** **Mosheh**, *forbid* **restrain** them.
29 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto him,
Enviest thou for my sake?
would *God* **O to give**
that all the LORD'S **Yah Veh's** people were prophets,
and that the LORD *would put* **Yah Veh should give**
his spirit upon them!
30 And *Moses* *gat* **Mosheh gathered** him into the camp,
he and the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
YAH VEh PROVIDES QUAILS
31 And *there went forth* a wind from the LORD
Yah Veh pulled a wind,
and brought quails from the sea,
and *let them fall* **left them** by the camp,
as it were a day's journey *on this side* **thus**,
and as it were a day's journey *on the other side* **thus**,
round about the camp,
and as it were two cubits high upon the face of the earth.
32 And the people *stood up* **rose** all that day,
and all that night,
and all the *next* **morrow** day, and they gathered the quails:
he that *gathered* **least lessened**
gathered ten *homers* **chomers**:
and **in spreading**, they spread them *all abroad*
for themselves round about the camp.
33 And while the flesh was yet between their teeth,
ere it was *chewed* **cut**,
the wrath of the LORD **Yah Veh**
was kindled against the people,
and the LORD **Yah Veh** smote the people
with a *very* **mighty** great *plague* **stroke**.
34 And he called the name of that place
Kibrothattaavah **Qibroth Hat Taavah**:
because there
they *buried* **entombed** the people that *lusted* **desired**.
35 And the people *journeyed* **pulled stakes**
from *Kibrothattaavah* **Qibroth Hat Taavah**
unto *Hazeroth* **Haseroth**;
and abode at *Hazeroth* **Haseroth**.
MIRYAM AND AHARON WORD AGAINST MOSHEH

12

And *Miriam* **Miryam** and *Aaron* **Aharon**
spake **worded** against *Moses* **Mosheh**
because of **concerning** the *Ethiopian* **Kushiy** woman
whom he had *married* **taken**:
for he had *married* an *Ethiopian* **taken a Kushiy** woman.

NUMBERS 11, 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Or gather all the fish of the sea for them
and find for them?
23 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Is the hand of Yah Veh curtailed?
See now whether my word befalls you or not.
24 And Mosheh goes out
and words the words of Yah Veh to the people;
and gathers the seventy men
of the elders of the people
and stands them all around the tent.
25 And Yah Veh descends in a cloud
and words to him
and sets aside of the spirit on him
and gives it to the seventy men — elders:
and so be it,
when the spirit rests on them, they prophesy,
but never again.
26 And two of the men in the camp survive
— the name of the one, El Dad
and the name of the second, Medad:
and the spirit rests on them;
and they *were* of those inscribed,
who went not to the tent:
and they prophesy in the camp.
27 And a lad runs and tells Mosheh and says,
El Dad and Medad prophesy in the camp.
28 And Yah Shua the son of Nun,
the youth minister of Mosheh,
answers and says, My adoni Mosheh, restrain them.
29 And Mosheh says to him,
Envy you for my sake?
O to give that all the people of Yah Veh be prophets
and that Yah Veh give his spirit on them!
30 And Mosheh gathers himself into the camp,
he and the elders of Yisra El.
YAH VEh PROVIDES QUAILS
31 And Yah Veh pulls a wind
and brings quails from the sea
and leaves them by the camp,
as a day journey thus and as a day journey thus
all around the camp
— as two cubits high on the face of the earth.
32 And all that day
and all that night and all the morrow day
the people rise and gather the quails
— he the least gathers ten chomers:
and in spreading, they spread them for themselves
all around the camp:
33 and while the flesh *is* yet between their teeth,
ere it *is* cut,
Yah Veh kindles his wrath against the people
and Yah Veh smites the people
with a mighty great stroke.
34 And he calls the name of that place
Qibroth Hat Taavah/Tomb of Desire:
because there they entomb the people who desire.
35 And the people pull stakes
from Qibroth Hat Taavah to Haseroth/Courts;
and abide at Haseroth/Courts.
MIRYAM AND AHARON WORD AGAINST MOSHEH
12 And Miryam and Aharon word against Mosheh
concerning the Kushiy woman he took:
for he took a Kushiy woman.

NUMBERS 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 And they said, Hath *the LORD Yah Veh* indeed spoken **worded** only by *Moses Mosheh*? hath he not spoken **worded** also by us? And *the LORD Yah Veh* heard it.

3 (Now *the man Moses Mosheh* the man was very meek **mighty humble**, above all *the men* **humanity** which were upon the face of the *earth soil*.)

4 And *the LORD spake Yah Veh* said suddenly unto *Moses Mosheh*, and unto *Aaron Aharon*, and unto *Miriam Miryam*, Come out ye three unto the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation. And they three came out.

5 And *the LORD came down Yah Veh* descended in the pillar of the cloud, and stood in the *door opening* of the *tabernacle tent*, and called *Aaron Aharon* and *Miriam Miryam*: and *they both* **the two** came forth.

6 And he said, Hear *now I beseech*, my words: If there be a prophet *among you*, *I the LORD of Yah Veh* will **shall** make myself known unto him in a vision, and will **speak shall word** unto him in a dream.

7 My servant *Moses Mosheh* is not so, who is *faithful trustworthy* in all mine house.

8 With him will I **speak shall I word** mouth to mouth, *even apparently by vision*, and not in *dark speeches riddles*; and the similitude of *the LORD Yah Veh* shall he **behold look at**: wherefore then were ye not *afraid awed* to **speak word** against my servant *Moses Mosheh*?

9 And the *anger wrath* of *the LORD Yah Veh* was kindled against them; and he *departed went*.

10 And the cloud *departed turned aside* from off the *tabernacle tent*; and, behold, *Miriam Miryam* became leprous, *white as snow*: and *Aaron looked upon Miriam Aharon* faced *Miryam*, and, behold, she was leprous.

11 And *Aaron Aharon* said unto *Moses Mosheh*, Alas, my *lord adoni*, I beseech thee, lay **set** not the sin upon us, wherein we have *done foolishly follied*, and wherein we have sinned.

12 Let **I pray**, her not be as one *dead that died*, of whom the flesh is half consumed when he cometh out of his mother's womb.

13 And *Moses Mosheh* cried unto the *LORD Yah Veh*, saying, Heal her *now I beseech*, O *God El*, I beseech thee. And *the LORD Yah Veh* said unto *Moses Mosheh*, If **in spitting**, her father had but spit in her face, should she not be ashamed seven days? let her be shut *out from without* the camp seven days, and after that let her be *received in again gathered*.

15 And *Miriam Miryam* was shut *out from outside* the camp seven days: and the people *journeyed pulled stakes* not till *Miriam Miryam* was brought in *again*.

16 And afterward the people *removed pulled stakes* from *Hazeroth Haseroth*, and *pitched encamped* in the wilderness of Paran.

EXPLORATION OF KENAAN

13

And *the LORD spake Yah Veh* worded unto *Moses Mosheh*, saying, Send thou men, that they may *search explore* the land of *Canaan Kanaan*, which I give unto the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*: of every *tribe rod* of their fathers shall ye send a *man, every one one man* — **one man**, a ruler among them.

3 And *Moses Mosheh* by the *commandment mouth* of *the LORD Yah Veh* sent them from the wilderness of Paran: all those men were heads of the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*.

4 And these were their names: of the *tribe rod* of *Reuben Reu Ben*,

NUMBERS 12, 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 And they say, Words Yah Veh only by Mosheh? Words he not also by us? — and Yah Veh hears it.

3 Now Mosheh the man *is* mighty humble, above all humanity on the face of the soil.

4 And suddenly, Yah Veh says to Mosheh and to Aharon and to Miryam, Come out you three to the tent of the congregation. — and the three come out.

5 And Yah Veh descends in the pillar of the cloud and stands in the opening of the tent and calls Aharon and Miryam: and the two come forth: and he says, Hear I beseech, my words: If your prophet is of Yah Veh I make myself known to him in a vision and word to him in a dream.

7 Not so my servant Mosheh who *is* trustworthy in all my house:

8 I word mouth to mouth with him in vision and not in riddles; and he looks at the similitude of Yah Veh: Why then are you not awed to word against my servant Mosheh?

9 And Yah Veh kindles his wrath against them; and he goes:

10 and the cloud turns aside from off the tent; and behold, Miryam leprous — as snow: and Aharon faces Miryam and behold, she *is* leprous.

11 And Aharon says to Mosheh, Alas, my adoni, I beseech you, set not the sin on us, wherein we folly and wherein we sin: I pray, that she not become as dying — of whom half the flesh consumes when he comes from the womb of his mother.

13 And Mosheh cries to Yah Veh, saying, Heal her, I beseech, O El, I beseech you!

14 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh, If in spitting, had her father but spit in her face, be she not ashamed seven days? Shut her outside the camp seven days and afterward, gather her.

15 And they shut Miryam outside the camp seven days: and the people pull not stakes until they bring Miryam in:

16 and afterward the people pull stakes from Haseroth and encamp in the wilderness of Paran.

EXPLORATION OF KENAAN

13

And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying, Send men to explore the land of Kanaan, which I give to the sons of Yisra El: of every rod of their fathers send one man — one man, a ruler among them.

3 And by the mouth of Yah Veh Mosheh sends them from the wilderness of Paran: all those men — heads of the sons of Yisra El.

4 And these *are* their names: of the rod of Reu Ben:

NUMBERS 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 Shammua the son of Zaccur **Zakkur**.
Of the *tribe* **rod** of Simeon **Shimon**,
Shaphat the son of Hori.

6 Of the *tribe* **rod** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
Caleb **Kaleb** the son of Jephunneh **Yephunneh**.

7 Of the *tribe* **rod** of Issachar **Yissachar**,
Igal **Yigal** the son of Joseph **Yoseph**.

8 Of the *tribe* **rod** of Ephraim **Ephrayim**,
Oshea **Hoshea** the son of Nun.

9 Of the *tribe* **rod** of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**,
Palti the son of Raphu.

10 Of the *tribe* **rod** of Zebulun,
Gaddiel **Gadi El** the son of Sodi.

11 Of the *tribe* **rod** of Joseph **Yoseph**,
namely, of the *tribe* **rod** of Manasseh **Menash Sheh**,
Gaddi the son of Susi.

12 Of the *tribe* **rod** of Dan,
Ammiel **Ammi El** the son of Gemalli.

13 Of the *tribe* **rod** of Asher,
Sethur the son of Michael **Michah El**.

14 Of the *tribe* **rod** of Naphtali,
Nachbi **Nachbi** the son of Vophsi.

15 Of the *tribe* **rod** of Gad,
Geuel **Geu El** the son of Machi.

16 These are the names of the men
which Moses **Mosheh** sent to *spy out* **explore** the land.
And Moses **Mosheh** called Oshea **Hoshea** the son of Nun
Jehoshua **Yah Shua**.

17 And Moses **Mosheh** sent them
to *spy out* **explore** the land of Canaan **Kanaan**,
and said unto them,
Get you up **Ascend** this way southward,
and go up **ascend** into the mountain:
18 And see the land, what it is,
and the people that *dwelleth* **settleth** therein,
whether they be strong or weak, few or many;
19 And what the land is that they *dwel* **settle** in,
whether it be good or *bad* **evil**;
and what cities they be that they *dwel* **settle** in,
whether in *tents* **camp**s, or in *strong holds* **fortresses**;
20 And what the land is,
whether it be fat or *lean* **emaciated**,
whether there be *wood* **timber** therein, or not.
And be ye of good courage **prevail ye**,
and bring **take** of the fruit of the land.
Now the time was the *time* **days**
of the *firstripe* **firstlings** grapes.

21 So they went up **ascended**,
and searched **explored** the land
from the wilderness of Zin **Sin** unto Rehob **Rechob**,
as men come to Hamath.

22 And they ascended by the south,
and came unto Hebron;
where Ahiman **Achi Man**, Sheshai **Sheshay**,
and Talmi **Talmay**,
the children **birthed** of Anak, were.
(Now Hebron was built seven years
before Zoan at the face of Soan in Egypt **Misrayim**.)

23 And they came unto the brook **wadi** of Eshcol,
and cut down from thence
a branch **twig** with one cluster of grapes,
and they bare it between two upon a staff **pole**;
and they brought **also** of the pomegranates, and of the figs.

24 The place was called the brook **wadi** Eshcol,
because of the *cluster of grapes* **clusters**
which the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**
cut down from thence.

25 And they returned from *searching of* **exploring** the land
after at the end of forty days.

NUMBERS 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Shammua the son of Zakkur;

5 of the rod of Shimon:
Shaphat the son of Hori;

6 of the rod of Yah Hudah:
Kaleb the son of Yephunneh;

7 of the rod of Yissachar:
Yigal the son of Yoseph;

8 of the rod of Ephrayim:
Hoshea the son of Nun;

9 of the rod of Ben Yamin:
Palti the son of Raphu;

10 of the rod of Zebulun:
Gadi El the son of Sodi;

11 of the rod of Yoseph: of the rod of Menash Sheh:
Gaddi the son of Susi;

12 of the rod of Dan:
Ammi El the son of Gemalli;

13 of the rod of Asher:
Sethur the son of Michah El;

14 of the rod of Naphtali:
Nachbi the son of Vophsi;

15 of the rod of Gad:
Geu El the son of Machi.

16 These are the names of the men
Mosheh sends to explore the land.

And Mosheh calls Hoshea the son of Nun Yah Shua;
and Mosheh sends them
to explore the land of Kanaan
and says to them,
Ascend this way southward
and ascend into the mountain:
and see what the land is;
18 and the people who settle therein,
whether strong or weak, few or many;
19 and what is the land they settle in,
whether good or evil;
and what are the cities they settle in,
whether in camps, or in fortresses;
20 and what is the land,
whether fat or emaciated,
whether or not there is timber therein:
and prevail and take of the fruit of the land:
the time is the days of the firstlings grapes.

21 And they ascend and explore the land
from the wilderness of Sin to Rechob
as men come to Hamath:

22 and they ascend from the south
and come to Hebron;
where Achi Man, Sheshay and Talmay are
— the birthed of Anak.
— and Hebron was built seven years
at the face of Soan in Misrayim.

23 And they come to the wadi of Eshcol
and they cut down a twig with one cluster of grapes;
and they bear it between two on a pole;
also of the pomegranates and of the figs.

24 The place is called the wadi Eshcol,
because of the clusters
the sons of Yisra El cut down from there.

25 And they return from exploring the land
at the end of forty days.

26 And they went
and came to Moses **Mosheh**, and to Aaron **Aharon**,
and to all the *congregation witness*
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
unto the wilderness of Paran, to **Kadesh Qadesh**;
and *brought back returned* word unto them,
and unto all the *congregation witness*,
and *shewed them had them see* the fruit of the land.

27 And they *told described to* him, and said,
We came unto the land whither thou sentest us,
and surely it floweth with milk and honey;
and this is the fruit of it.

28 *Nevertheless Finally*
the people be strong that *dwell settle* in the land,
and the cities are *walled fortified*, and very **mighty** great:
and moreover we saw the *children birthed* of Anak there.

29 *The Amalekites Amaleq*
 dwell settleth in the land of the south:
and the *Hittites Hethiy*, and the *Jebusites Yebusiy*,
and the *Amorites Emoriy*, *dwell settle* in the mountains:
and the *Canaanites dwell Kenaaniy settle* by the sea,
and by the *coast hand of Jordan Yarden*.

30 And *Caleb Kaleb* stilled the people
 before Moses in front of Mosheh, and said,
In ascending, Let us *go up at once ascend*, and possess it;
for we are well able to *overcome it prevail*.

31 But the men that *went up ascended* with him said,
We be not able to *go up ascend* against the people;
for they are stronger than we.

32 And they brought up *an evil report a slander* of the land
which they had *searched explored*
unto the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
saying, The land,
through which we have *gone passed to search explore* it,
is a land that eateth up
 the inhabitants thereof them who settled;
and all the people that we saw in *it their midst*
are men of a *great stature measure*.

33 And there we saw the *giants Nephilim*,
the sons of Anak, which come of the *giants Nephilim*:
and we were in our own *sight eyes* as grasshoppers,
and so we were in their *sight eyes*.

THE SONS OF YISRA EL MURMUR

14 And all the *congregation witness*
lifted up **and gave** their voice, and cried;
and the people wept that night.

2 And all the *children sons of Israel Yisra El* murmured
against Moses **Mosheh** and against Aaron **Aharon**:
and the whole *congregation witness* said unto them,
 Would God O that we had died
in the land of *Egypt Misrayim!*
or *would God O* that we had died in this wilderness!

3 And wherefore hath *the LORD Yah Veh*
brought us unto this land, to fall by the sword,
that our *wives women* and our children
should be a *prey plunder?*
were it not better for us to return into *Egypt Misrayim?*

4 And they said *one man to another brother*,
Let us *make a captain give a head*,
and let us return into *Egypt Misrayim*.

5 Then Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon**
fell *on their faces before at the face of* all the
 assembly congregation of the *congregation witness*
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*.

6 And *Joshua Yah Shua* the son of Nun,
and *Caleb Kaleb* the son of *Jephunneh Yephunneh*,
which were of them that *searched explored* the land,
 rent ripped their clothes:

7 And they *spake said* unto all the *company witness*
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*, saying,
The land, which we passed through to *search it explore*,
is *an exceeding a mighty mighty* good land.

8 If *the LORD Yah Veh* delight in us,
then he *will shall* bring us into this land, and give it us;
a land which floweth with milk and honey.

9 Only rebel not ye against *the LORD Yah Veh*,
neither *fear awe* ye the people of the land;
for they are bread for us:

26 And they come
and go to Mosheh and to Aharon
and to all the witness of the sons of Yisra El,
to the wilderness of Paran, to Qadesh;
and return word to them and to all the witness
and has them see the fruit of the land.

27 And they describe to him and say,
We went to the land you sent us
and surely it flows with milk and honey
and this *is* the fruit thereof:

28 only, the people settling in the land *are* strong
and the cities fortified and mighty great:
and we saw the birthed of Anak there:

29 the Amaleqiy settle in the land of the south:
and the Hethiy and the Yebusiy
and the Emoriy settle in the mountains:
and the Kenaaniy settle by the sea
and by the hand of Yarden.

30 And Kaleb stills the people in front of Mosheh,
and says,
In ascending, we ascend and possess it;
for we can prevail.

31 And the men who ascended with him say,
We cannot ascend against the people;
for they *are* stronger than we.

32 And they bring up a slander
of the land they explored
to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
The land we passed through to explore
 is a land that eats them who settle there;
and all the people we saw in their midst
 are men of measure:

33 and there we saw the Nephilim,
the sons of Anak of the Nephilim:
and we *were* in our own eyes as grasshoppers
and so we *were* in their eyes.

THE SONS OF YISRA EL MURMUR

14 And all the witness
lift and give their voice and cry;
and the people weep that night.

2 And all the sons of Yisra El
murmur against Mosheh and against Aharon:
and all the witness say to them,
O that we had died in the land of Misrayim!
O that we had died in this wilderness!

3 And why brings Yah Veh us to this land,
to fall by the sword?
And our women and our children become a plunder?
 Were it not better for us to return into Misrayim?

4 And they say man to brother,
We give us a head and return to Misrayim.

5 Then Mosheh and Aharon fall at the face
of all the congregation
of the witness of the sons of Yisra El:
and Yah Shua the son of Nun
and Kaleb the son of Yephunneh,
being of them who explored the land,
rip their clothes:

7 and they say to all the witness of the sons of Yisra El,
saying,
The land, we passed through to explore,
 is a mighty mighty good land:
if Yah Veh delights in us,
he brings us into this land and gives it us
— a land flowing with milk and honey:
only neither rebel against Yah Veh,
nor awe the people of the land;
for they *are* bread for us:

NUMBERS 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 their defence is *departed* **turned aside** from them,
and the *LORD Yah Veh* is with us: *fear* **awe** them not.
But all the *congregation* **witness**
bade **said to** stone them with stones.
And the *glory* **honour** of the *LORD Yah Veh*
appeared **was seen**
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation
before **at the face** of all the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
11 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
How long *will* **shall** this people *provoke* **scorn** me?
and how long *will* **shall** it be ere they *believe* **trust** me,
for all the signs
which I have *shewed* **worked** among them?
12 I *will* **shall** smite them with the pestilence,
and *disinherit* **dispossess** them,
and *will* **make shall work** of thee a greater *nation* **goyim**
and mightier than they.
MOSHEH PLEADS FOR THE SONS OF YISRA EL
13 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto the *LORD Yah Veh*,
Then the *Egyptians* **Misrayim** shall hear it,
(for thou *broughtest up* **ascendest** this people
in thy *might* **force** from among them;)
14 And they *will* **shall** tell it
to the *inhabitants* of **them that settled** this land:
for they have heard that thou *LORD Yah Veh*
art among this people,
that thou *LORD Yah Veh* art seen *face* **eye** to *face* **eye**,
and that thy cloud standeth over them,
and that thou goest *before* **them at their face**,
by day *time* in a pillar of a cloud,
and in a pillar of fire by night.
15 Now if thou shalt *kill* **deathify** all this people
as one man,
then the *nations* **goyim**
which have heard the *fame* **report** of thee
will **shall say**, saying,
16 *Because* the *LORD Yah Veh* was not able
to bring this people
into the land which he *sware* **oathed** unto them,
therefore he hath *slain* **slaughtered** them in the wilderness.
17 And now, I beseech thee,
let the *power* **force** of my *Lord* be great **Adonay** **greaten**,
according as thou hast *spoken* **worded**, saying,
18 *The LORD Yah Veh* is *longsuffering* **slow to wrath**,
and of great mercy,
forgiving iniquity **bearing perversity**
and *transgression* **rebellion**,
and *by no means* **clearing the guilty**
in exonerating, exonerateth not,
visiting the *iniquity* **perversity** of the fathers
upon the *children* **sons**
unto the third and fourth *generation*.
19 *Pardon* **Forgive**, I beseech thee,
the *iniquity* **perversity** of this people
according unto the greatness of thy mercy,
and as thou hast *forgiven* **borne** this people,
from *Egypt* **Misrayim** even until now.
YAH VEH FORGIVES THE SONS OF YISRA EL
20 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said,
I have *pardoned* **forgiven** according to thy word:
21 But as truly as I live,
all the earth shall be filled
with the *glory* **honour** of the *LORD Yah Veh*.
22 *Because* all those men
which have seen my *glory* **honour**, and my *miracles* **signs**,
which I *did* **worked**
in *Egypt* **Misrayim** and in the wilderness,
and have *tempted* **tested** me now these ten times,
and have not hearkened to my voice;
23 Surely they shall not see the land
which I *sware* **oathed** unto their fathers,
neither shall any of them that *provoked* **scorned** me see it:
24 But my servant *Caleb* **Kaleb**,
because he had another spirit with him,
and hath followed me fully,
him *will* **shall** I bring into the land whereinto he went;
and his seed shall possess it.
25 (Now the *Amalekites* **Amaleqiy**
and the *Canaanites* **dwelt** **Kenaaniy** **settled** in the valley.)

NUMBERS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

their defence turns aside from them
and Yah Veh *is* with us:
— awe them not.
10 And all the witness say to stone them with stones.
And the honor of Yah Veh
is seen in the tent of the congregation
at the face of all the sons of Yisra El:
11 and Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Until when this people scorn me?
And until when ere they trust me,
for all the signs I worked among them?
12 I smite them with the pestilence
and dispossess them;
and work of you a greater goyim
— mightier than they.
MOSHEH PLEADS FOR THE SONS OF YISRA EL
13 And Mosheh says to Yah Veh,
Then the Misrayim hear;
for you ascended this people from among them
by your force;
14 and they tell them who settle this land:
for they heard
that you Yah Veh are among this people,
that you Yah Veh are seen eye to eye
and that your cloud stands over them;
and that you go at their face
in a pillar of a cloud by day
and in a pillar of fire by night:
15 and if you deathify all this people as one man,
then the goyim who hear the report of you,
say, saying,
16 Yah Veh *is* not able to bring this people
into the land he oathed them
— he slaughters them in the wilderness.
17 And now, I beseech you,
that the force of my Adonay greaten,
as you worded, saying,
18 Yah Veh — slow to wrath and great of mercy,
bearing perversity and rebellion
and in exonerating, exonerates not,
visiting the perversity of the fathers on the sons
to the third and fourth.
19 Forgive, I beseech you,
the perversity of this people
according to the greatness of your mercy
and as you bear this people,
from Misrayim even until now.
YAH VEH FORGIVES THE SONS OF YISRA EL
20 And Yah Veh says,
I forgive according to your word:
21 but as truly as I live,
all the earth fills with the honor of Yah Veh.
22 *Because* all those men
who see my honor and my signs
which I worked in Misrayim and in the wilderness;
and now they test me these ten times
and hearken not to my voice;
23 neither they see the land I oathed to their fathers,
nor any who scorn me see it
— except my servant Kaleb:
24 because there becomes another spirit with him
and follows me fully
— him I bring to the land he goes;
and his seed possesses it.
25 And the Amaleqiy and the Kenaaniy
settle in the valley.

NUMBERS 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

To morrow *turn* you **shall pull stakes**,
and get you into **unto the face of** the wilderness
by the way of the **Red Reed** sea.
26 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh** and unto Aaron **Aharon**, saying,
27 How long shall I bear with
— this evil **congregation witness**,
which murmur against me?
I have heard the murmurings
of the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**,
which they murmur against me.
28 Say unto them, *As truly as I live I live*,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
as ye have *spoken* **worded** in mine ears,
so **will shall I do work** to you:
29 Your carcasses shall fall in this wilderness;
and all that were **numbered mustered** of you,
according to your whole number,
from **sons of** twenty years *old* and upward
which have *murmured* **complained** against me.
30 *Doubtless* ye shall not come into the land,
concerning which I **sware lifted my hand**
to make **that** you *dwell* **tabernacle** therein,
save **Caleb except Kaleb**
the son of **Jephunneh Yephunneh**,
and **Joshua Yah Shua** the son of Nun.
31 But your *little ones* **toddlers**,
which ye said should be a **prey plunder**,
them **will shall I** bring in,
and they shall know the land
which ye have *despised* **spurned**.
32 But as for you, your carcasses,
they shall fall in this wilderness.
33 And your **children sons**
shall **wander tend** in the wilderness forty years,
and bear your whoredoms,
until your carcasses be **wasted consumed** in the wilderness.
34 After the number of the days
in which ye *searched* **explored** the land, *even* forty days,
each day for a year **a day for a year, a day for a year**,
shall ye bear your *iniquities* **perversities**,
even — forty years,
and ye shall know my *breach of promise* **alienation**.
35 I the **LORD Yah Veh** have *said* **worded**,
I will surely do it **If I work not**
unto all this evil **congregation witness**,
that are *gathered together* **congregated** against me:
in this wilderness they shall be consumed,
and there they shall die.
36 And the men,
which Moses **Mosheh** sent to *search* **explore** the land,
who returned,
and made all the **congregation witness**
to murmur against him,
by bringing up a slander upon the land,
37 Even those men
that did bring up the *evil report* **slander** upon the land,
died by the plague
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**.
38 But **Joshua Yah Shua** the son of Nun,
and **Caleb Kaleb** the son of **Jephunneh Yephunneh**,
which were of the men
that went to *search* **explore** the land,
lived *still*.
39 And Moses *told* **Mosheh worded** these *sayings* **words**
unto all the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**:
and the people mourned *greatly* **mightily**.
40 And they *rose up* **started** early in the morning,
and *gat them up* **ascended** into the top of the mountain,
saying, *Lo* **Behold**, we be here,
and *will go up* **shall ascend** unto the place
which the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *promised* **said**:
for we have sinned.
41 And Moses **Mosheh** said,
Wherefore now do ye *transgress* **trespass**
the *commandment* **mouth of the LORD Yah Veh**?
but it shall not prosper.
42 *Go not up* **Ascend not**,
for the **LORD Yah Veh** is not among you;

NUMBERS 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Tomorrow, pull stakes, to the face of the wilderness
by the way of the Reed sea.
26 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh and to Aharon,
saying,
27 Until when murmur they
this evil witness against me?
I hear the murmurings
the sons of Yisra El murmur against me.
28 Say to them, I live,
— an oracle of Yah Veh,
as you word in my ears, thus work I to you:
your carcasses fall in this wilderness;
and all those mustered of you,
according to your whole number,
sons of twenty years and upward
who complain against me
30 you — you come not into the land,
which I lifted my hand that you tabernacle therein
— except Kaleb the son of Yephunneh
and Yah Shua the son of Nun:
31 and your toddlers, whom you say *are* a plunder,
them bring I in;
that they know the land you spurned.
32 And as for you,
your carcasses — they fall in this wilderness:
33 and your sons tend in the wilderness forty years
and bear your whoredoms,
until your carcasses are consumed in the wilderness.
34 As the number of the days you explored the land
— forty days,
a day for a year, a day for a year,
you bear your perversities
— forty years
that you know my alienation.
35 I Yah Veh have worded,
If I work not to all this evil witness
who congregate against me:
in this wilderness they are consumed
and here they die.
36 And the men Mosheh sent to explore the land,
who returned
and had all the witness murmur against him,
by bringing up a slander on the land,
even those men
37 who brought the slander on the land,
died by the plague at the face of Yah Veh.
38 But Yah Shua the son of Nun
and Kaleb the son of Yephunneh,
of the men who went to explore the land, lived.
39 — and Mosheh words these words
to all the sons of Yisra El:
and the people mourn mightily.
40 And they start early in the morning
and ascend into the top of the mountain,
saying, Behold, we are here
— ascended to the place of which Yah Veh said:
— for we sinned.
41 And Mosheh says, Why this?
You trespass the mouth of Yah Veh
but it prospers not!
42 Ascend not, for Yah Veh *is* not among you;

NUMBERS 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 43 that ye be not smitten *before* **at the face** of your enemies.
For the *Amalekites* **Amaleqiy**
and the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
are there *before you* **at your face**,
and ye shall fall by the sword:
because ye are turned away
from the **LORD following Yah Veh**,
therefore the **LORD will Yah Veh** shall not be with you.
44 But **in ascending**, they *presumed to go up* **ascended**
unto the **hill mountain** top:
nevertheless the ark of the covenant
of the **LORD Yah Veh**, and *Moses* **Mosheh**,
departed not out of the camp.
45 Then the *Amalekites* came down **Amaleqiy descended**,
and the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
which *dwelt* **settled** in that **hill mountain**,
and smote them, and *discomfited* **crushed** them,
even unto Hormah.

CELEBRATION SEASONS

- 15** And the **LORD spake Yah Veh** worded
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
2 *Speak* **Word** unto the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
and say unto them,
When ye *be come* **have entered**
into the land of your *habitations* **settlements**,
which I give unto you,
3 And *will make an offering by fire* **shall work a firing**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
a *burnt offering* **holocaust**, or a sacrifice,
in performing **or marvel** a vow,
or in a *freewill offering* **voluntary**,
or in your *solemn feasts* **seasons**,
to make **work** a *sweet savour* **scent of rest**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
of the *herd* **oxen**, or of the flock:
4 Then shall he that *offereth* **oblateth** his *offering* **qorban**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
bring a meat **oblateth** an offering of a tenth *deal* of flour
mingled **mixed** with the fourth *part* of an hin of oil.
5 And the fourth *part* of an hin of wine
for a *drink offering* **libation** shalt thou *prepare* **work**
with the *burnt offering* **holocaust** or sacrifice,
for one lamb.
6 Or for a ram,
thou shalt *prepare* **work** for a *meat* **an** offering
two *tenth deals* **tenths** of flour
mingled **mixed** with the third *part* of an hin of oil.
7 And for a *drink offering* **libation**
thou shalt *offer* **oblate** the third *part* of an hin of wine,
for a *sweet savour* **scent of rest** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
8 And when thou *preparest* **workest**
a *bullock* **son of the oxen**
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
or for a sacrifice *in performing* **or marvel** a vow,
or *peace offerings* **shelamim** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**:
9 Then shall he *bring* **oblate** with a *bullock* **son of the oxen**
a *meat* **an** offering of three *tenth deals* **tenths** of flour
mingled **mixed** with half an hin of oil.
10 And thou shalt *bring* **oblate** for a *drink offering* **libation**
half an hin of wine,
for an *offering made by fire* **a firing**,
of a *sweet savour* **scent of rest** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
11 Thus shall it be *done* **worked** for one *bullock* **ox**,
or for one ram, or for a lamb **of the sheep**,
or a *kid* **of the goats**.
12 According to the number that ye shall *prepare* **work**,
so **thus** shall ye *do* **work** to every one
according to their number.
13 *All that are born of the country* **Each native**
shall *do* **work** these *things* after this manner,
in *offering an offering made by fire* **oblating a firing**,
of a *sweet savour* **scent of rest** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
14 And if a *stranger* **sojourner** sojourn with you,
or whosoever be among you in your generations,
and *will offer an offering made by fire* **shall work a firing**,
of a *sweet savour* **scent of rest** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
as ye *do* **work**, so he shall *do* **work**.
15 One *ordinance* **statute**
shall be *both* for you of the congregation,

NUMBERS 14, 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- that you not *be* smitten at the face of your enemies:
43 for the Amaleqiy and the Kenaaniy
are there at your face; and you fall by the sword:
because you turned from following Yah Veh,
so Yah Veh *is* not with you.
44 And in ascending,
they ascend to the mountain top:
and the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh and Mosheh
depart not from the camp:
45 and the Amaleqiy
and the Kenaaniy who settle in that mountain
descend and smite them and crush them to Hormah.

CELEBRATION SEASONS

- 15** And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Word to the sons of Yisra El, and say to them,
When you enter the land of your settlements,
which I give you,
3 and work a firing to Yah Veh
— a holocaust, or a sacrifice,
or marvel a vow;
or in a voluntary or in your seasons
work a scent of rest to Yah Veh
of the oxen or of the flock:
4 he who oblates his qorban to Yah Veh
oblates an offering of a tenth of flour
mixed with the fourth of a hin of oil;
5 and for a libation
work the fourth of a hin of wine
for the holocaust or for the sacrifice
for one lamb.
6 Or for a ram,
work an offering — two tenths flour
mixed with the third of a hin of oil:
7 and for a libation, oblate the third of a hin of wine,
for a scent of rest to Yah Veh.
8 And when you work a son of the oxen
for a holocaust or for a sacrifice
or marvel a vow or shelamim to Yah Veh:
9 then he oblates with a son of the oxen
an offering of three tenths flour
mixed with half a hin of oil:
10 and oblates for a libation, half a hin of wine,
for a firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh.
11 Work thus for one ox or for one ram
or for a lamb of the sheep or of the goats:
12 according to the number that you work,
work thus to every one according to their number:
13 each native works these after this manner
in oblatting a firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh.
14 And if a sojourner sojourns with you,
or whoever *is* among you in your generations
and works a firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh;
as you work, thus he works:
15 one statute for you of the congregation

NUMBERS 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and also for the *stranger sojourner*
that sojourneth with you,
an *ordinance for ever eternal statute* in your generations:
as ye are, so shall the *stranger sojourner* be
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh.**
16 One *law torah* and one *manner judgment*
shall be for you,
and for the *stranger sojourner* that sojourneth with you.
17 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses Mosheh*, saying,
18 *Speak Word* unto the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
and say unto them,
When ye come into the land whither I bring you,
19 Then it shall be, that,
when ye eat of the bread of the land,
ye shall *offer up exalt* an *heave offering exaltment*
unto the **LORD Yah Veh.**
20 Ye shall *offer up exalt* a cake of the first of your dough
for an *heave offering exaltment*:
as ye do
the *heave offering exaltment* of the threshingfloor,
so shall ye *heave exalt* it.
21 Of the first of your dough
ye shall give unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
an *heave offering exaltment* in your generations.
22 And if ye have erred **inadvertently**,
and not *observed worked*
all these *commandments misvoth*,
which the **LORD Yah Veh**
hath *spoken worded* unto *Moses Mosheh*,
23 Even all that the **LORD Yah Veh**
hath *commanded misvahed* you
by the hand of *Moses Mosheh*,
from the day that the **LORD Yah Veh**
commanded Moses misvahed,
and *henceforward beyond* among your generations;
24 Then it shall be,
if ought be *committed worked*
by *ignorance inadvertent error*
without the *knowledge from the eyes*
of the *congregation witness*,
that all the *congregation witness*
shall *offer work* one *young bullock son of the oxen*
for a *burnt offering holocaust*,
for a *sweet savour scent of rest* unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
with his *meat offering*, and his *drink offering libation*,
according to the *manner judgment*,
and one *kid buck* of the goats for a *sin offering the sin*.
25 And the priest shall *make an atonement kapar/atone*
for all the *congregation witness*
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
and it shall be forgiven them;
for it is *ignorance inadvertent error*:
and they shall bring their *offering qorban*,
a *sacrifice made by fire firing* unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and their *sin offering that for their sin*
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**,
for their *ignorance inadvertent error*:
26 And it shall be forgiven all the *congregation witness*
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
and the *stranger sojourner* that sojourneth among them;
seeing all the people were in *ignorance inadvertent error*.
27 And if any **one** soul sin
through ignorance by inadvertent error,
then he shall *bring oblate of the goats*,
a *she goat of the first year yearling daughter*
for a *sin offering the sin*.
28 And the priest
shall *make an atonement kapar/atone* for the soul
that *sinneth ignorantly erreth inadvertently*,
when he sinneth by *ignorance inadvertent error*
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**,
to *make an atonement kapar/atone* for him;
and it shall be forgiven him.
29 Ye shall have one *law torah* for him
that *sinneth through ignorance worketh inadvertent error*,
both for him that is born the native
among the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
and for the *stranger sojourner* that sojourneth among them.

NUMBERS 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and for the sojourner sojourning with you
— an eternal statute in your generations:
as you, thus the sojourner at the face of Yah Veh:
one torah and one judgment for you
and for the sojourner sojourning with you.
17 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
18 Word to the sons of Yisra El, and say to them,
When you come into the land where I bring you,
19 so be it, when you eat of the bread of the land,
exalt an exaltment to Yah Veh:
20 exalt a cake of the first of your dough
for an exaltment:
as the exaltment of the threshingfloor,
thus you exalt.
21 Give of the first of your dough to Yah Veh
an exaltment in your generations.
22 And when you err inadvertently
and work not all these misvoth
which Yah Veh worded to Mosheh,
— all Yah Veh misvahed you
by the hand of Mosheh
— from the day Yah Veh misvahed and beyond
among your generations;
23 so be it,
if ought *is* worked by inadvertent error
from the eyes of the witness,
all the witness
works one bullock son of the oxen for a holocaust
for a scent of rest to Yah Veh
with his offering and his libation
according to the judgment:
and one buck of the goats for the sin.
25 And the priest kapars/atones
for all the witness of the sons of Yisra El
and they *are* forgiven;
for it *is* an inadvertent error:
and they bring their qorban,
a firing to Yah Veh and that for their sin
at the face of Yah Veh,
for their inadvertent error:
26 and all the witness of the sons of Yisra El
and the sojourner sojourning among them
are forgiven;
seeing all the people *are* in inadvertent error.
27 And if one soul sin by inadvertent error,
then he oblates of the goats,
a yearling daughter for the sin.
28 And the priest kapars/atones for the soul
who errs inadvertently,
when he sins by inadvertent error
at the face of Yah Veh, to kapar/atone for him;
and he *is* forgiven.
29 One torah for him who works an inadvertent error
— the native among the sons of Yisra El
and for the sojourner sojourning among them.

NUMBERS 15, 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

30 But the soul that *doeth ought* **worketh**
presumptuously **with lifted hand**,
whether he be born in the land of **native**,
or a **stranger of sojourner**,
the same reproacheth the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and that soul shall be cut off from among his people.
31 Because he hath despised
the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and hath broken his *commandment* **misvah**,
in cutting off, that soul shall *utterly* be cut off;
his *iniquity* **perversity** shall be upon him.
32 And while the *children* **sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
were in the wilderness,
they found a man that gathered *sticks* **timber**
upon the *sabbath* **shabbath** day.
33 And they that found him gathering *sticks* **timber**
brought him **had him approach**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon**,
and unto all the *congregation* **witness**.
34 And they *put* **set** him *in ward* **under guard**,
because it was not *declared* **expressed**
what should be *done* **worked** to him.
35 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
In deathifying,
The man shall be *surely put to death* **deathified**:
all the *congregation* **witness** shall stone him with stones
without the camp.
36 And all the *congregation* **witness**
brought him without the camp,
and stoned him with stones, and he died;
as the **LORD Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**.
37 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
38 *Speak* **Word** unto the *children* **sons** of **Israel Yisra El**,
and *bid them* **say** that they *make* **work** them *fringes* **tassels**
in the borders of their *garments* **clothes**
throughout their generations,
and that they *put* **give** upon the *fringe* **tassel** of the borders
a *ribband* **braid** of blue:
39 And it shall be unto you for a *fringe* **tassel**,
that ye may *look upon it* **see**, and remember
all the *commandments* **misvoth** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and *do* **work** them;
and that ye *seek* **explore** not
after your own heart and **after** your own eyes,
after which ye *use to go* a *whoring* **whored**:
40 That ye may remember,
and *do* **work** all my *commandments* **misvoth**,
and be holy unto your *God* **Elohim**.
41 *I am the LORD I* — **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**,
which brought you out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
to be your *God* **Elohim**:
I am the LORD I — **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**.

REBELLION OF QORACH

16 Now *Korah* **Qorach**, the son of *Izhar* **Yishar**,
the son of *Kohath* **Qehath**, the son of *Levi*,
and *Dathan* and *Abiram* **Abi Ram**, the sons of *Eliab* **Eli Ab**,
and *On*, the son of *Peleth*, sons of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**,
took men:
2 And they rose up *before Moses* **at the face of Mosheh**,
with certain of the *children* **sons** of **Israel Yisra El**,
two hundred and fifty *princes* **hierarchs**
of the *assembly* **witness**,
famous in **the called** of the congregation,
men of *renown* **name**:
3 And they *gathered themselves together* **congregated**
against *Moses* **Mosheh** and against *Aaron* **Aharon**,
and said unto them, *Ye take* too much upon you,
seeing all the *congregation* **witness** are holy,
every one of them,
and the **LORD Yah Veh** is among them:
wherefore then *lift* **exalt** ye up yourselves
above the congregation of the **LORD Yah Veh**?
4 And when *Moses* **Mosheh** heard it, he fell upon his face:
5 And he *spake* **worded** unto *Korah* **Qorach**
and unto all his *company* **witness**, saying,
Even to morrow

NUMBERS 15, 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

30 And the soul who works with lifted hand
— native or sojourner
reproaches Yah Veh;
and that soul becomes cut off from among his people:
31 because he despises the word of Yah Veh
and breaks his misvah:
in cutting off, that soul becomes cut off;
his perversity *is* on him.
32 And the sons of Yisra El *are* in the wilderness,
and they find a man
gathering timber on the shabbath day:
33 and they who find him gathering timber
have him approach Mosheh and Aharon
and all the witness:
34 and they set him under guard,
because it *is* not expressed what to work to him.
35 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
In deathifying, deathify the man:
have all the witness
stone him with stones outside the camp.
36 And all the witness
brings him outside the camp
and stones him with stones and he dies
— as Yah Veh misvahs Mosheh.
37 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
38 Word to the sons of Yisra El and say to them
to work tassels in the borders of their clothes
throughout their generations;
and to give a braid of blue
on the tassel of the borders:
39 and it becomes a tassel for you
to see and remember all the misvoth of Yah Veh
and work them;
and that you not explore
after your own heart and after your own eyes,
after which you whore:
40 that you remember and work all my misvoth
and become holy to your Elohim.
41 I — Yah Veh your Elohim
who brought you from the land of Misrayim,
to become your Elohim:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.

REBELLION OF QORACH

16 Now Qorach the son of Yishar
the son of Qehath the son of Levi
and Dathan and Abi Ram the sons of Eli Ab
and On the son of Peleth sons of Reu Ben
take and rise at the face of Mosheh,
with certain of the sons of Yisra El
— two hundred and fifty hierarchs of the witness
of the called of the congregation — men of name:
2 and they congregate
against Mosheh and against Aharon
and say to them, You *are* too much!,
for all the witness — all of them *are* holy
and Yah Veh *is* among them!
So why exalt yourselves
above the congregation of Yah Veh?
3 And Mosheh hears, and falls on his face:
4 and he words to Qorach and to all his witness,
5 saying, On the morrow

NUMBERS 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

the LORD will shew **Yah Veh** shall make known
 who are his, and who is holy;
 and will **shall** cause him to *come near unto* **approach** him:
 even him whom he hath chosen
 will **shall** he cause to *come near unto* **approach** him.
 6 This *do* **work**; Take you *censers* **trays**,
 7 *Korah* **Qorach**, and all his *company* **witness**;
 And *put* **give** fire therein, and put incense in them
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh to morrow:
 and it shall be
 that the man whom *the LORD Yah Veh* doth choose,
 he shall be holy:
 ye take — too much *upon you*, ye sons of Levi.
 8 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto *Korah* **Qorach**,
 Hear, I *pray* **beseech** you, ye sons of Levi:
 9 Seemeth it but a *small thing* **petty** unto you,
 that *the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El* hath separated you
 from the *congregation* **witness** of *Israel Yisra El*,
 to *bring* **oblite** you *near* to himself
 to *do* **serve** the service of the tabernacle
of the LORD Yah Veh,
 and to stand *before at the face of* the *congregation* **witness**
 to minister unto them?
 10 And he hath
brought thee near to thee to **approach** him,
 and all thy brethren the sons of Levi with thee:
 and seek ye the priesthood also?
 11 For which cause both **Thus** thou
 and all thy *company* **witness**
are gathered congregated together
against the LORD Yah Veh:
 and what is *Aaron* **Aharon**, that ye murmur against him?
 12 And *Moses* **Mosheh**
 sent to call *Dathan and Abiram* **Abi Ram**,
 the sons of *Eliab* **Eli Ab**: which said,
 We will **shall** not *come up* **ascend**:
 13 Is it a *small thing* **petty**
 that thou hast *brought us up* **ascended us**
 out of a land that floweth with milk and honey,
 to *kill* **deathify** us in the wilderness?
except thou make thyself altogether a prince
In marshalling, marshallest thou over us?
 14 Moreover **Also** thou hast not brought us
 into a land that floweth with milk and honey,
 or given us inheritance of fields and vineyards:
wilt shalt thou *put bore* out the eyes of these men?
 we will **shall** not *come up* **ascend**.
 15 And *Moses* **Mosheh** was very *wroth* **mightily inflamed**,
 and said unto *the LORD Yah Veh*,
Respect not thou **Turn not thy face to** their offering:
 I have not *taken* **lifted** one *ass* **he burro** from them,
 neither have I *hurt* **vilified** one of them.
 16 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto *Korah* **Qorach**,
 Be thou and all thy *company* **witness**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
 thou, and they, and *Aaron* **Aharon**, to morrow:
 17 And take every man his *censer* **tray**,
 and *put* **give** incense in them,
 and *bring* **oblite** ye
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh
 every man his *censer* **tray**,
 two hundred and fifty *censers* **trays**;
 thou also, and *Aaron* **Aharon**,
 each of you **every man** his *censer* **tray**.
 18 And they took every man his *censer* **tray**,
 and *put* **gave** fire in them, and *laid* **set** incense thereon,
 and stood in the *door* **opening**
 of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation
 with *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon**.
 19 And *Korah* **gathered** **Qorach** **congregated**
 all the *congregation* **witness** against them
 unto the *door* **opening**
 of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation:
 and the *glory* **honour** of *the LORD Yah Veh*
appeared unto **was seen by** all the *congregation* **witness**.
 20 And *the LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh** **worded**
 unto *Moses* **Mosheh** and unto *Aaron* **Aharon**, saying,

NUMBERS 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Yah Veh knows who *are* his and who is holy;
 and has him approach
 — even him whom he chooses to approach him.
 6 Work this; Take trays,
 7 Qorach and all his witness;
 and give fire therein and put incense therein
 at the face of Yah Veh tomorrow:
 and so be it,
 the man whom Yah Veh chooses, he *is* holy:
 you *are* too much, you sons of Levi.
 8 And Mosheh says to Qorach,
 9 Hear, I beseech you, you sons of Levi:
 seems it but petty to you,
 that Elohim of Yisra El separated you
 from the witness of Yisra El
 to oblate you to himself
 — to serve the service of the tabernacle of Yah Veh
 and to stand at the face of the witness
 to minister to them?
 10 Yes, he has you approach him
 — you and all your brothers the sons of Levi with you
 — and seek you the priesthood also?
 11 Thus you and all your witness
 congregate against Yah Veh:
 and what *is* Aharon, that you murmur against him?
 12 And Mosheh sends to call Dathan and Abi Ram
 the sons of Eli Ab:
 who say, We ascend not:
 13 Is it petty that you ascended us
 from a land flowing with milk and honey,
 to deathify us in the wilderness?
 — and in marshalling, marshall over us?
 14 Yes, you neither brought us
 into a land flowing with milk and honey,
 nor gave us inheritance of fields and vineyards:
 bore you out the eyes of these men?
 We ascend not!
 15 And Mosheh inflames mightily,
 and says to Yah Veh,
 Turn not your face to their offering:
 I neither lifted one he burro from them,
 nor vilified I one of them.
 16 And Mosheh says to Qorach,
 You and all your witness, be at the face of Yah Veh
 — you and they and Aharon, tomorrow:
 17 and every man take his tray
 and give incense therein
 and oblate at the face of Yah Veh
 — every man his tray — two hundred and fifty trays;
 — you and Aharon — every man his tray.
 18 And every man takes his tray
 and gives fire therein and sets incense thereon
 and stands
 in the opening of the tent of the congregation
 with Mosheh and Aharon.
 19 And Qorach
 congregates all the witness against them
 to the opening of the tent of the congregation:
 and the honor of Yah Veh is seen by all the witness.
 20 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh and to Aharon,
 saying,

NUMBERS 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 21 Separate yourselves
from among this *congregation* **witness**,
that I may *consume* **finish** them off in a *moment* **blink**.
- 22 And they fell upon their faces, and said,
O *God* **El**, the *God* **Elohim** of the spirits of all flesh,
shall one man sin,
and *wilt* thou be *wroth* **enraged**
with all the *congregation* **witness**?
- 23 And the *LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
- 24 *Speak* **Word** unto the *congregation* **witness**, saying,
Get you up **Ascend** ye
from **round** about the tabernacle of *Korah* **Qorach**,
Dathan, and *Abiram* **Abi Ram**.
- 25 And *Moses* **Mosheh** rose up
and went unto *Dathan* and *Abiram* **Abi Ram**;
and the elders of *Israel* **followed** **Yisra El** went after him.
- 26 And he *spake* **worded** unto the *congregation* **witness**,
saying, *Depart* **Turn aside**, I *pray* **beseech** you,
from the tents of these wicked men,
and touch *nothing* **naught** of theirs,
lest ye be *consumed* **scraped away** in all their sins.
- 27 So they *gat up* **ascended** from the tabernacle
of *Korah* **Qorach**, *Dathan*, and *Abiram* **Abi Ram**,
on every side **round about**:
and *Dathan* and *Abiram* **Abi Ram** came out,
and *stood* **stationed themselves**
in the *door* **opening** of their tents,
and their *wives* **women**,
and their sons, and their *little children* **toddlers**.
- 28 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said,
Hereby ye shall know
that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath sent me
to *do* **work** all these works;
for I have not done them and not of mine own *mind* **heart**.
- 29 If these men die
the common death of all *men* **humanity**,
or if they be visited
after the visitation of all *men* **humanity**;
then the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath not sent me.
- 30 But if the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
make a new thing **create a creature**,
and the *earth* **open** **soil gape** her mouth,
and swallow them up,
with all that *appertain unto them* **they have**,
and they *go down quick* **descend alive** into the *pit* **sheol**;
then ye shall understand that these men
have *provoked the* *LORD* **scorned** **Yah Veh**.
- 31 And **so be** it came to pass,
as he had *made an end* **finished**
of speaking **wording** all these words,
that the *ground* **clave asunder** **soil split**
that was under them:
- 32 And the earth opened her mouth,
and swallowed them up, and their houses,
and all the *men* **humanity**
that *appertained unto Korah* **were for** **Qorach**,
and all their *goods* **acquisitions**.
- 33 They, and all that *appertained to them* **they had**,
went down **descended** alive into the pit,
and the earth closed upon them:
and they *perished* **destructed**
from among the congregation.
- 34 And all *Israel* **Yisra El** that were round about them
fled at the *cry* **voice** of them:
for they said, Lest the earth swallow us up *also*.
- 35 And there came out a fire from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and consumed the two hundred and fifty men
that *offered* **oblated** incense.
- 36 And the *LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
- 37 *Speak* **Say** unto *Eleazar* **El Azar**
the son of *Aaron* **Aharon** the priest,
that he *take up* **lift** the *censers* **trays**
out of **between** the burning,
and *scatter* **winnow** thou the fire yonder;
for they are hallowed.
- 38 The *censers* **trays** of these sinners
against their own souls,

NUMBERS 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 21 Separate yourselves from among this witness
and I finish them off in a blink.
- 22 And they fall on their faces and say,
O El, the Elohim of the spirits of all flesh,
one man sins
and enrage you with all the witness?
- 23 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
24 Word to the witness, saying,
Ascend from all around the tabernacle
of Qorach, Dathan and Abi Ram.
- 25 And Mosheh rises
and goes to Dathan and Abi Ram;
and the elders of Yisra El go after him:
- 26 and he words to the witness, saying,
Turn aside, I beseech you,
from the tents of these wicked men
and touch naught of theirs
lest you be scraped away in all their sins.
- 27 So they ascend from all around the tabernacle
of Qorach, Dathan and Abi Ram;
and Dathan and Abi Ram come out
and station themselves in the opening of their tents
with their women and their sons and their toddlers.
- 28 And Mosheh says,
Hereby you know that Yah Veh sends me
to work all these works;
and not of my own heart.
- 29 If these men die
the common death of all humanity,
or if they be visited after the visitation of all humanity;
then Yah Veh has not sent me:
but if Yah Veh creates a creation
and the soil gapes her mouth and swallows them
with all they have,
and they descend alive into sheol;
then understand that these men scorn Yah Veh.
- 31 And so be it,
as he finishes wording all these words,
that the soil under them splits:
- 32 and the earth opens her mouth
and swallows them and their houses
and all the humanity of Qorach
and all their acquisitions:
- 33 they and all they have descends alive into the pit
and the earth closes in on them:
and they destruct from among the congregation.
- 34 And all Yisra El all around them flees at their voice:
for they say, Lest the earth swallow us!
- 35 And a fire comes out from Yah Veh
and consumes the two hundred and fifty men
who oblate incense.
- 36 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
37 Say to El Azar the son of Aharon the priest,
to lift the trays between the burning
and winnow the fire yonder;
for they are hallowed
— the trays of these sinners
against their own souls:

NUMBERS 16, 17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

let them make **work** them *broad plates* **expanded sheets**
for a *covering* **an overlay** of the **sacrifice** altar:
for they *offered* **oblated** them
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
therefore they are hallowed:
and they shall be a sign
unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El.**
39 And *Eleazar* **El Azar** the priest
took the *brasen censers* **copper trays,**
wherewith they that were burnt had *offered* **oblated;**
and they *were made broad plates* **expanded them**
for a *covering of the* **to overlay the sacrifice** altar:
40 To be a memorial
unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El,**
so that no **man** — stranger,
which is not of the seed of *Aaron* **Aharon,**
come near **approach** to offer incense
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh;
that he be not as *Korah* **Qorach,**
and as his *company* **witness:**
as *the LORD said* **Yah Veh worded** to him
by the hand of *Moses* **Mosheh.**

SONS OF YISRA EL MURMUR

41 But on the morrow
all the *congregation* **witness**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** murmured
against *Moses* **Mosheh** and against *Aaron* **Aharon,** saying,
Ye have *killed* **deathified**
the people of *the LORD* **Yah Veh.**
42 And **so be** it *came to pass,*
when the *congregation* **was gathered** **witness congregated**
against *Moses* **Mosheh** and against *Aaron* **Aharon,**
that they *looked* **turned their face**
toward the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation:
and, behold, the cloud covered it,
and the *glory* **honour** of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
appeared **was seen.**
43 And *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon** came
before **at the face**
of the tabernacle tent of the congregation.
44 And *the LORD spake* **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh,** saying,
45 Get you up from among this *congregation* **witness,**
that I may *consume* **finish** them **off** as in a *moment* **blink.**
And they fell upon their faces.
46 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto *Aaron* **Aharon,**
Take a *censer* **tray,**
and *put* **give** fire therein from off the **sacrifice** altar,
and put on incense,
and *go* **carry it** quickly unto the *congregation* **witness,**
and *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for them:
for there is *wrath* **rage** gone out
from the *LORD* **face of Yah Veh;**
the plague is begun.
47 And *Aaron* **Aharon** took
as *Moses* **commanded** **Mosheh worded,**
and ran into the midst of the congregation;
and, behold, the plague was begun among the people:
and he *put on* **gave** incense,
and *made an atonement* **did kapar/atone** for the people.
48 And he stood
between *the dead* **those that died** and the living;
and the plague was *stayed* **restrained.**
49 Now they that died in the plague
were fourteen thousand and seven hundred,
beside them that died
about the *matter* **word** of *Korah* **Qorach.**
50 And *Aaron* **Aharon** returned unto *Moses* **Mosheh**
unto the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation:
and the plague was *stayed* **restrained.**

THE ROD OF AHARON BLOSSOMS

17 And *the LORD spake* **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh,** saying,
2 *Speak* **Word** unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El,**
and take of every one of them a rod — **a rod**
according to the house of their fathers,
of all their *princes* **hierarchs**
according to the house of their fathers twelve rods:

NUMBERS 16, 17

exeGeses companion BIBLE

work them into expanded sheets
for an overlay of the sacrifice altar:
for they *oblade* them at the face of *Yah Veh,*
so they become hallowed:
and they become a sign to the sons of *Yisra El.*
39 And *El Azar* the priest takes the copper trays,
with which they who were burnt had obladed;
and they expanded them to overlay the sacrifice altar
40 — a memorial to the sons of *Yisra El;*
so that any man — stranger,
not of the seed of *Aharon,*
approaches not
to offer incense at the face of *Yah Veh;*
that he become not as *Qorach* and as his witness:
as *Yah Veh* worded to him by the hand of *Mosheh.*

SONS OF YISRA EL MURMUR

41 But on the morrow
all the witness of the sons of *Yisra El*
murmur against *Mosheh* and against *Aharon,* saying,
You deathified the people of *Yah Veh.*
42 And so be it, when the witness
congregates against *Mosheh* and against *Aharon,*
they turn their face
toward the tent of the congregation:
and behold, the cloud covers it
and the honor of *Yah Veh* is seen.
43 And *Mosheh* and *Aharon*
come at the face of the tent of the congregation:
44 and *Yah Veh* words to *Mosheh,* saying,
45 Get from among this witness
and I finish them off as in a blink.
— and they fall on their faces.
46 And *Mosheh* says to *Aharon,*
Take a tray
and give fire therein from off the sacrifice altar
and put on incense
and carry it quickly to the witness
and *kapar/atone* for them:
for a rage goes out from the face of *Yah Veh;*
the plague begins.
47 And *Aharon* takes as *Mosheh* worded,
and runs midst the congregation;
and behold, the plague among the people begins:
and he gives incense
and *kapars/atones* for the people:
48 and he stands between the dying and the living;
and the plague restrains.
49 — and they who died in the plague
— fourteen thousand and seven hundred,
beside them who died about the word of *Qorach.*
50 And *Aharon* returns to *Mosheh*
to the opening of the tent of the congregation:
and the plague restrains.

THE ROD OF AHARON BLOSSOMS

17 And *Yah Veh* words to *Mosheh,* saying,
2 Word to the sons of *Yisra El,*
that every one of them take a rod
— a rod for the house of their father,
of all their hierarchs
for the house of their fathers, twelve rods:

NUMBERS 17, 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 write **inscribe** thou every man's name upon his rod.
And thou shalt write Aaron's **inscribe Aharon's** name
upon the rod of Levi:
for one rod shall be for the head
of the house of their fathers.
4 And thou shalt lay **set** them up
in the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation
before **at the face of the testimony witness**,
where I will **shall** meet with you.
5 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
that the man's rod, whom I shall choose, shall blossom:
and I will make **shall cause** to cease from me
the murmurings of the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**,
whereby they murmur against you.
6 And **Moses spake Mosheh worded**
unto the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**,
and every one of their **princes hierarchs**
gave him a rod apiece, for each prince one
one rod per hierarch — one rod per hierarch,
according to their fathers' houses, even twelve rods:
and the rod of Aaron **Aharon** was among their rods.
7 And **Moses laid up Mosheh set** the rods
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**
in the **tabernacle tent** of witness.
8 And **so be** it came to pass, that on the morrow
Moses **Mosheh** went into the **tabernacle tent** of witness;
and, behold,
the rod of Aaron **Aharon** for the house of Levi
was **budded blossomed**,
and brought forth **buds blossoms**,
and **bloomed blossomed** blossoms, and yielded almonds.
9 And **Moses Mosheh** brought out all the rods
from **before the LORD the face of Yah Veh**
unto all the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**:
and they **looked saw**, and took every man his rod.
10 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto **Moses Mosheh**,
Bring Aaron's Return Aharon's rod again
before the **testimony at the face of the witness**,
to be kept **guarded** for a **token sign**
against the **rebels sons of rebellion**;
and thou shalt **quite take away finish off**
their murmurings from me, that they die not.
11 And **Moses did so Mosheh worked**:
as the **LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed** him,
so **did worked** he.
12 And the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**
spake said unto **Moses Mosheh**, saying,
Behold, we **die expire**,
we **perish destruct**, we all **perish destruct**.
13 Whosoever
cometh any thing near unto **in approaching, approacheth**
the tabernacle of the **LORD Yah Veh** shall die:
shall we be consumed with **dying — to expire?**

MINISTRY OF THE TENT OF WITNESS

18

And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto **Aaron Aharon**,
Thou and thy sons and thy father's house with thee
shall bear the **iniquity perversity** of the **sanctuary holies**:
and thou and thy sons with thee
shall bear the **iniquity perversity** of your priesthood.
2 And thy brethren also of the **tribe rod** of Levi,
the **tribe scion** of thy father, **bring oblate** thou with thee,
that they may be joined unto thee, and minister unto thee:
but thou and thy sons with thee **shall minister**
before **at the face of the tabernacle tent** of witness.
3 And they shall **keep guard** thy **charge guard**,
and the **charge guard** of all the **tabernacle tent**:
only they shall not **come near approach**
the **vessels instruments**
of the **sanctuary holies** and the **sacrifice** altar,
that neither they, nor ye also, die.
4 And they shall be joined unto thee,
and **keep guard** the **charge guard**
of the **tabernacle tent** of the congregation,
for all the service of the **tabernacle tent**:
and a stranger shall not **come near approach** unto you.
5 And ye shall **keep guard**
the **charge guard** of the **sanctuary holies**,
and the **charge guard** of the **sacrifice** altar:

NUMBERS 17, 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

inscribe the name of every man on his rod:
3 and inscribe the name of Aharon on the rod of Levi:
one rod for the head of the house of their fathers:
4 and set them in the tent of the congregation
at the face of the witness where I meet with you.
5 And so be it,
that the rod of the man whom I choose, blossoms:
and I cease from me
the murmurings of the sons of Yisra El
whereby they murmur against you.
6 And Mosheh words to the sons of Yisra El
and every one of their hierarchs
to give him one rod per hierarch
— one rod per hierarch
for the houses of their fathers — twelve rods:
and the rod of Aharon is among their rods.
7 And Mosheh sets the rods at the face of Yah Veh
in the tent of witness.
8 And so be it,
on the morrow Mosheh goes into the tent of witness;
and behold,
the rod of Aharon for the house of Levi
blossoms forth blossoms
and blossoms blossoms and yields almonds.
9 And Mosheh brings all the rods
from the face of Yah Veh, to all the sons of Yisra El:
and they see and every man takes his rod.
10 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Return the rod of Aharon at the face of the witness,
to guard for a sign against the sons of rebellion;
and finish off their murmurings from me,
that they not die.
11 — and thus Mosheh works
as Yah Veh misvahs him
— thus he works.
12 And the sons of Yisra El say to Mosheh, saying,
Behold! We expire!
We destruct! We all destruct!
13 Whoever, in approaching,
approaches the tabernacle of Yah Veh dies:
We — consumed to expire?

MINISTRY OF THE TENT OF WITNESS

18

And Yah Veh says to Aharon,
You, with your sons and the house of your father
bear the perversity of the holies:
and you, with your sons
bear the perversity of your priesthood:
and also your brothers of the rod of Levi,
the scion of your father, oblate with you:
they join to you and minister to you:
and you, with your sons
at the face of the tent of witness:
and they guard your guard
and the guard of all the tent:
only they approach not
the instruments of the holies and the sacrifice altar
so that they not die — neither they, nor you:
4 and they join you
and guard the guard of the tent of the congregation,
for all the service of the tent
so that no stranger approaches you:
5 and guard the guard of the holies
and the guard of the sacrifice altar

NUMBERS 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- that there be no *wrath* **rage** any more upon the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
- 6 And I, behold,
I have taken your brethren the *Levites* **Leviym** from among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**: to you they are given as a gift for the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, to do **serve** the service of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation.
- 7 Therefore thou and thy sons with thee shall *keep* **guard** your *priest's office* **priesthood** for every *thing* **word** of the *sacrifice* **altar**, and *within* **housing** the veil; and ye shall serve: I have given your *priest's office* **priesthood** unto you as a service of gift:
and the stranger that *cometh near* **approacheth** shall be *put to death* **deathified**.
- 8 And the *LORD* **spake** *Yah Veh* **worded** unto *Aaron* **Aharon**, Behold, I also have given thee the *charge* **guard** of mine *heave offering* **exaltment** of all the *hallowed things* **holies** of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**; unto thee have I given them by *reason of* **for** the anointing, and to thy sons, by an *ordinance for ever* **eternal statute**.
- 9 This shall be thine of the *most holy things* **holy of holies**, reserved from the fire:
every *oblation* **qorban** of theirs,
every *meat offering* of theirs,
and every *sin offering of theirs* **all that for their sin**,
and every *trespass offering of theirs* **all that for their guilt** which they shall *render* **return** unto me, shall be *most holy* **a holy of holies** for thee and for thy sons.
- 10 In the *most holy place* **holy of holies** shalt thou eat it; every male shall eat it: it shall be holy unto thee.
- 11 And this is thine;
the *heave offering* **exaltment** of their gift, with all the *wave offerings* **waves** of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
I have given them unto thee, and to thy sons and to thy daughters with thee, by an *eternal* **eternal** statute *for ever*:
every one that is *clean* **pure** in thy house shall eat of it.
- 12 All the *best fat* of the oil,
and all the *best fat* of the *wine* **juice**,
and of the *wheat* **crop**,
the *firstfruits* **firstlings** of them
which they shall *offer* **give** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
them have I given thee.
- 13 And whatsoever is *first ripe* **firstlings** in the *their* **land**, which they shall bring unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, shall be thine;
every one that is clean in thine house shall eat of it.
- 14 Every *thing* **All that is** devoted in *Israel* **Yisra El** shall be thine.
- 15 Every *thing* **All that openeth** **bursteth** the matrix in all flesh,
which they *bring* **oblate** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, *whether it be of men or beasts* **human or animal**, shall be thine:
nevertheless **in redeeming**,
the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of *man* **humanity** shalt thou *surely* **redeem**,
and the firstling of *unclean beasts* **fouled animals** shalt thou **redeem**.
- 16 And those that are to be redeemed from **sons of** a month *old* shalt thou **redeem**, according to thine *estimation* **appraisal**, for the *money* **silver** of five shekels, after the shekel of the *sanctuary* **holies**, which is twenty *gerahs*.
- 17 But the firstling of a *cow* **an ox**, or the firstling of a *sheep* **lamb**, or the firstling of a goat, thou shalt not **redeem**; they are holy: thou shalt sprinkle their blood upon the *sacrifice* **altar**, and shalt *burn* **incense** their fat for an *offering made by fire* **a firing**, for a *sweet savour* **scent of rest** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

NUMBERS 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- so that there be no more rage on the sons of Yisra El.
- 6 And I — behold, I take your brothers the Leviym from among the sons of Yisra El: and give them to you, a gift for Yah Veh, to serve the service of the tent of the congregation.
- 7 And you, with your sons, guard your priesthood for every word of the sacrifice altar and the housing of the veil — and you serve:
I give you priesthood, a service of gift: and deathify the stranger who approaches.
- 8 And Yah Veh words to Aharon,
And I — behold, I give you the guard of my exaltment of all the holies of the sons of Yisra El; I give them to you and to your sons for the anointing by an eternal statute:
this becomes yours
of the holy of holies from the fire:
every qorban of theirs to every offering of theirs and all that for their sin and all that for their guilt which they return to me,
becomes a holy of holies for you and for your sons:
- 10 in the holy of holies, eat it — every male, eat it: it becomes holy to you.
- 11 And this *is* yours:
the exaltment of their gift with all the waves of the sons of Yisra El
I give you
and your sons and your daughters with you by an eternal statute:
every pure one in your house eats thereof:
- 12 all the fat of the oil
and all the fat of the juice and of the crop,
the firstlings of all they give to Yah Veh, I give you:
and whatever firstlings in their land,
which they bring to Yah Veh, become yours:
every clean one in your house eats thereof.
- 14 all the devoted in Yisra El become yours:
all that bursts the matrix of all flesh,
which they oblate to Yah Veh — human or animal, becomes yours:
only, in redeeming,
redeem the firstbirths of humanity
and redeem the firstlings of foul animals:
and of those to redeem, sons of a month,
redeem according to your appraisal,
for the silver of five shekels,
after the shekel of the holies,
which *is* twenty *gerahs*.
But the firstling of an ox,
or the firstling of a lamb,
or the firstling of a goat,
redeem not — they *are* holy:
sprinkle their blood on the sacrifice altar
and incense their fat
for a firing for a scent of rest to Yah Veh.

NUMBERS 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 And the flesh of them shall be thine,
as the wave breast and as the right *shoulder* **hindleg**
are thine.

19 All the *heave offerings* **exaltments**
of the *holy things* **holies**,
which the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
offer **exalt** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
have I given thee,
and thy sons and thy daughters with thee,
by a **an eternal** statute for ever:
it is a covenant of salt for ever **eternal**
before the *LORD* **at the face of Yah Veh**
unto thee and to thy seed with thee.

20 And the *LORD* spake **Yah Veh** said unto *Aaron* **Aharon**,
Thou shalt have no inheritance in **not inherit** their land,
neither shalt thou have any part **allotment** among them:
I am thy part **allotment** and thine inheritance
among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

21 And, behold, I have given the *children* **sons** of *Levi*
all the tenth in *Israel* **Yisra El** for an inheritance,
in exchange for their service which they serve,
even the service
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation.

22 Neither must **shall** the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
henceforth come near **ever again approach**
the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
lest they bear sin, and die.

23 But the *Levites* **Leviym** shall *do* **serve** the service
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
and they shall bear their *iniquity* **perversity**:
it shall be a **an eternal** statute for ever
throughout your generations,
that among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
they have **shall inherit** no inheritance.

24 But the tithes of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which they offer **exalt**
as an *heave offering* **exaltment** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
I have given to the *Levites* **Leviym** to inherit:
therefore I have said unto them,
Among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
they shall have **inherit** no inheritance.

25 And the *LORD* spake **Yah Veh** worded
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,

26 Thus speak **word** unto the *Levites* **Leviym**,
and say unto them,
When ye take of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
the tithes which I have given you from them
for your inheritance,
then ye shall offer up **exalt**
an *heave offering* **exaltment** of it
for the *LORD* **unto Yah Veh**,
even a *tenth part* **tithe** of the tithe.

27 And this your *heave offering* **exaltment**
shall be *reckoned* **fabricated** unto you,
as *though it were* the *corn* **crop** of the threshingfloor,
and as the fulness of the *winepress* **trough**.

28 Thus ye also shall
offer **exalt** an *heave offering* **exaltment**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** of all your tithes,
which ye receive **take**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and ye shall give thereof
the *LORD's* *heave offering* **Yah Veh's exaltment**
to *Aaron* **Aharon** the priest.

29 Out of all your gifts ye shall offer **exalt**
every heave offering **the whole exaltment**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
of all the *best* **fat** thereof,
even the *hallowed part* **holies** thereof out of it.

30 Therefore thou shalt say unto them,
When ye have *heaved* **lifted** the *best* **fat** thereof from it,
then it shall be *counted* **fabricated** unto the *Levites* **Leviym**
as the *increase* **produce** of the threshingfloor,
and as the *increase* **produce** of the *winepress* **trough**.

31 And ye shall eat it in every place,
ye and your households:
for it is your *reward* **hire in exchange** for your service
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation.

32 And ye shall bear no sin by reason of it,

NUMBERS 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 And their flesh becomes yours,
as the wave breast and as the right hindleg *are* yours.

19 All the exaltments of the holies,
the sons of Yisra El exalt to Yah Veh,
I give you and your sons and your daughters with you
by an eternal statute:
— a covenant of salt eternal at the face of Yah Veh
to you and to your seed with you.

20 And Yah Veh says to Aharon,
You neither inherit their land
nor have any allotment among them:
I — your allotment and your inheritance
among the sons of Yisra El.

21 And behold, I give the sons of Levi
all the tenth in Yisra El — an inheritance
in exchange for the service they serve
— even the service of the tent of the congregation.

22 And the sons of Yisra El
never again approach the tent of the congregation,
lest they bear sin and die:
and the Leviym serve the service
of the tent of the congregation
and they bear their perversity
— an eternal statute throughout your generations:
that among the sons of Yisra El
they inherit no inheritance.

24 But the tithes of the sons of Yisra El,
which they exalt as an exaltment to Yah Veh,
I give to the Leviym to inherit:
so I say to them,
Among the sons of Yisra El,
they inherit no inheritance.

25 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
26 Thus word to the Leviym, and say to them,
When you take the tithes of the sons of Yisra El
which I give you for your inheritance,
then exalt an exaltment thereof to Yah Veh,
a tithe of the tithe:
27 and this your exaltment becomes fabricated to you
as the crop of the threshingfloor
and as the fulness of the trough.
28 Thus you exalt — you also,
an exaltment to Yah Veh
of all the tithes you take of the sons of Yisra El;
and give of the exaltment of Yah Veh
to Aharon the priest.
29 Of all your gifts,
exalt the whole exaltment of Yah Veh
of all the fat thereof, of the holies thereof.

30 Say to them, When you lift the fat from it,
that it becomes fabricated to the Leviym
as the produce of the threshingfloor
and as the produce of the trough:
31 and eat it in every place, you and your households:
for it is your hire in exchange for your service
in the tent of the congregation.
32 And you bear no sin for it,

NUMBERS 18, 19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

when ye have *heaved* **lifted** from it the *best fat* of it:
neither shall ye *pollute* **profane** the *holy things* **holies**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, lest ye die.

THE WATER OF EXCLUSION

19

And the **LORD** spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh** and unto *Aaron* **Aharon**, saying,

2

This is the *ordinance* **statute** of the *law* **torah**
which the **LORD** **Yah Veh** hath *commanded* **misvahed**,
saying,

Speak **Word** unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that they *bring* **take** thee a red heifer

3

without spot **integrious**, wherein is no blemish,
and upon which never *came* **ascended** a yoke:

3

And ye shall give her unto *Eleazar* **El Azar** the priest,
that he may bring her forth without the camp,
and *one* shall *slay* **slaughter** her *before* **at** his face:

4

And *Eleazar* **El Azar** the priest
shall take of her blood with his finger,
and sprinkle of her blood *directly before* **toward the face**
of the tabernacle tent of the congregation seven times:

5

And *one* shall burn the heifer in his *sight* **eyes**;
her skin, and her flesh, and her blood, with her dung,
shall he burn:

6

And the priest shall take cedar wood **timber**,
and hyssop, and scarlet,
and cast it into the midst of the burning of the heifers.

7

Then the priest shall *wash* **launder** his clothes,
and he shall *bathe* **baptize** his flesh in water,
and afterward he shall come into the camp,
and the priest shall be *unclean* **fouled** until the even.

8

And he that burneth her
shall *wash* **launder** his clothes in water,
and *bathe* **baptize** his flesh in water,
and shall be *unclean* **fouled** until the even.

9

And a man that is *clean* **pure**
shall gather *up* the ashes of the heifers,
and *lay* **set** them *up*
without the camp in a *clean* **pure** place,
and it shall be *kept* **guarded**
for the *congregation* **witness**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
for a water of *separation* **exclusion**:
it is a *purification* **for sin** **for the sin**.

10

And he that gathereth the ashes of the heifer
shall *wash* **launder** his clothes,
and be *unclean* **fouled** until the even:
and it shall be unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and unto the *stranger* **sojourner**
that sojourneth among them,
for a **an eternal** statute *for ever*.

11

He that toucheth
the *dead body of any man* **human soul that died**
shall be *unclean* **fouled** seven days.

12

He shall purify *himself* **for his sin** with it
on the third day,
and on the seventh day he shall be *clean* **purified**:
but if he purify not *himself* **for his sin** the third day,
then the seventh day he shall not be *clean* **purified**.

13

Whosoever toucheth
the *dead body of any man* **human soul that died**
— that is dead,

and purifieth not *himself* **for his sin**,
defileth **fouleth** the tabernacle of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**;
and that soul shall be cut off from *Israel* **Yisra El**:
because the water of *separation* **exclusion**
was not sprinkled upon him,
he shall be *unclean* **fouled**;
his *uncleanness* **foulness** is yet upon him.

14

This is the *law* **torah**,
when a *man* **human** dieth in a tent:
all that come into the tent, and all that is in the tent,
shall be *unclean* **fouled** seven days.

15

And every open *vessel* **instrument**,
which hath no *covering* **bound clasp braided** upon it,
is *unclean* **fouled**.

16

And whosoever toucheth one
that is *slain* **pierced** with a sword
in the *open* **face of the** fields,
or a *dead body* **that which died**,

NUMBERS 18, 19

exeGeses companion BIBLE

when you lift the fat from it.
And profane not the holies of the sons of Yisra El,
lest you die.

THE WATER OF EXCLUSION

19

And Yah Veh words to Mosheh and to Aharon,
saying,

2

This *is* the statute of the torah
Yah Veh misvahed, saying,
Word to the sons of Yisra El,
to bring you an integrious red heifer,
wherein *is* no blemish

3

and on which a yoke never ascended:
and give her to El Azar the priest
to bring her forth outside the camp
and slaughter her at his face:
and with his finger

4

El Azar the priest takes of her blood
and sprinkles of her blood
toward the face of the tent of the congregation
seven times:

5

and he burns the heifer in his eyes
— her skin and her flesh and her blood,
with her dung, he burns:

6

and the priest takes cedar timber
and hyssop and scarlet
and casts it midst the burning of the heifers:

7

then the priest launders his clothes
and baptizes his flesh in water;
and afterward he comes into the camp;
and the priest becomes foul until the evening.

8

And he who burns her
launders his clothes in water
and baptizes his flesh in water
and becomes foul until the evening.

9

And a pure man gathers the ashes of the heifers
and sets them outside the camp in a pure place
and guards it for the witness of the sons of Yisra El
for a water of exclusion:
— *it is* for the sin.

10

And whoever gathers the ashes of the heifer
launders his clothes and becomes foul until evening:
and it becomes to the sons of Yisra El
and to the sojourner sojourning among them,
for an eternal statute

11

He who touches the human soul who died
becomes foul seven days:

12

he purifies for his sin with it on the third day,
and on the seventh day, he purifies:
but if he purifies not for his sin the third day,
then the seventh day he purifies not.

13

Whoever touches the human soul who died
— who *is* dead
and purifies not for his sin,
fouls the tabernacle of Yah Veh;
and that soul becomes cut off from Yisra El:
the water of exclusion not being sprinkled on him
he becomes foul;
his foulness *is* still on him.

14

This *is* the torah,
when a human dies in a tent:
all who come into the tent and all inside the tent,
becomes foul seven days:

15

and every open instrument,
with no clasp braided thereon,
becomes foul:
and whoever

16

touches someone pierced with a sword
in the face of the fields,
or that died,

NUMBERS 19, 20

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- or a bone of a man **human**, or a grave **tomb**, shall be *unclean* **fouled** seven days.
- 17 And for an *unclean person* **the fouled** they shall take of the *ashes* **dust** of the *burnt* **burning** heifer of purification for sin, and *running* **living** water shall be *put* **given** thereto in a *vessel* **an instrument**:
- 18 And a *clean person* **pure man** shall take hyssop, and dip it in the water, and sprinkle it upon the tent, and upon all the *vessels* **instruments**, and upon the *persons* **souls** that were there, and upon him that touched a bone, or one *slain* **pierced**, or one *dead* **died**, or a *grave* **tomb**:
- 19 And the *clean person* **pure** shall sprinkle upon the *unclean* **fouled** on the third day, and on the seventh day: and on the seventh day he shall *purify himself* **sacrifice for his sin**, and *wash* **launder** his clothes, and *bathe* **baptize himself** in water, and shall be *clean* **purified** at even.
- 20 But the man that shall be *unclean* **fouled**, and shall not *purify himself* **for his sin**, that soul shall be cut off from among the congregation, because he hath *defiled* **fouled** the *sanctuary* **holies** of the **LORD Yah Veh**: the water of *separation* **exclusion** hath not been sprinkled upon him; he is *unclean* **fouled**.
- 21 And it shall be a *perpetual* **an eternal** statute unto them, that he that sprinkleth the water of *separation* **exclusion** shall *wash* **launder** his clothes; and he that toucheth the water of *separation* **exclusion** shall be *unclean* **fouled** until even.
- 22 And whatsoever the *unclean person* **fouled** toucheth shall be *unclean* **fouled**; and the soul that toucheth it shall be *unclean* **fouled** until even.

DEATH OF MIRYAM

- 20 Then came the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, even the whole *congregation* **witness**, into the desert of *Zin* **Sin** in the first month: and the people *abode* **settled** in *Kadesh* **Qadesh**; and *Miriam* **Miryam** died there, and was *buried* **entombed** there.
- 2 And there was no water for the *congregation* **witness**: and they gathered *themselves together* against *Moses* **Mosheh** and against *Aaron* **Aharon**.
- 3 And the people *chode* **chided** with *Moses* **Mosheh**, and spake, saying, *Would God* **O** that we had *died* **expired** when our brethren *died* **expired** before the **LORD** at the **face of Yah Veh!**
- 4 And why have ye brought up the congregation of the **LORD Yah Veh** into this wilderness, that we and our *cattle* **beasts** should die there?
- 5 And wherefore have ye *made* **ascended** us to come up out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**, to bring us in unto this evil place? it is no place of seed, or of figs, or of vines, or of pomegranates; neither is there any water to drink.
- 6 And *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon** went from the *presence* **face** of the *assembly* **congregation** unto the *door* **opening** of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation, and they fell upon their faces: and the *glory* **honour** of the **LORD Yah Veh** appeared unto **was seen by** them.

WATER OF MERIBAH/STRIFE

- 7 And the **LORD** spake **Yah Veh worded** unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying, Take the rod, and *gather* **congregate** thou the *assembly* **witness** together, thou, and *Aaron* **Aharon** thy brother, and *speak* **word** ye unto the rock *before* **in front of** their eyes; and it shall give forth his water,

NUMBERS 19, 20

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- or a bone of a human, or a tomb, becomes foul seven days.
- 17 And the foul take of the dust of the burning heifer of purification for sin and give living water thereto in an instrument: and a pure man takes hyssop and dips it in the water and sprinkles it on the tent and on all the instruments and on the souls there and on him who touches a bone or one pierced or died or a tomb:
- 19 and the pure sprinkles on the foul on the third day and on the seventh day: and on the seventh day he sacrifices for his sin and launders his clothes and baptizes in water and purifies at evening.
- 20 And the man who becomes foul and purifies not for his sin, that soul becomes cut off midst the congregation because he fouled the holies of Yah Veh: the water of exclusion not being sprinkled on him — he is foul.
- 21 And it becomes an eternal statute to them, that he who sprinkles the water of exclusion launders his clothes; and he who touches the water of exclusion becomes foul until evening.
- 22 And whatever the foul touches, becomes foul; and the soul that touches becomes foul until evening.

DEATH OF MIRYAM

- 20 Then the sons of Yisra El come — the whole witness, into the desert of Sin in the first month: and the people settle in Qadesh; and Miryam dies there and is entombed there.
- 2 And there is no water for the witness: and they gather against Mosheh and against Aharon.
- 3 And the people chide with Mosheh, and speak, saying, O that we had expired when our brothers expired at the face of Yah Veh!
- 4 And why brought you the congregation of Yah Veh into this wilderness — we and our beasts, to die there?
- 5 And why ascended you us from Misrayim, to bring us in to this evil place? — neither place of seed or of figs or of vines or of pomegranates; nor any water to drink.
- 6 And Mosheh and Aharon go from the face of the congregation to the opening of the tent of the congregation and they fall on their faces: and the honor of Yah Veh is seen by them.

WATER OF MERIBAH/STRIFE

- 7 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying, Take the rod and congregate the witness — you and Aharon your brother and word to the rock in front of their eyes; and it gives forth water:

NUMBERS 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and thou shalt bring forth to them water out of the rock:
so **thus** thou shalt give
the congregation **witness** and their beasts drink.
9 And Moses **Mosheh** took the rod
from before the **LORD the face of Yah Veh**,
as he *commanded* **misvahed** him.
10 And Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon**
gathered **congregated** the congregation together
before **at the face of** the rock,
and he said unto them, Hear *now* **I beseech**, ye rebels;
must we fetch you water out of this rock?
11 And Moses **Mosheh** lifted up his hand,
and with his rod he smote the rock **twice two times**:
and the **much** water came out *abundantly*,
and the congregation **witness** drank, and their beasts also.
12 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh said**
unto Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon**,
Because ye *believed* **trusted** me not,
to *sanctify* **hallow** me
in the eyes of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
therefore ye shall not bring this congregation
into the land which I have given them.
13 This is the water of *Meribah* **Meribah/Strife**;
because the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
strove with the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and he was *sanctified* **hallowed** in them.
14 And Moses **Mosheh** sent *messengers* **angels**
from *Kadesh* **Qadesh** unto the *king* **sovereign** of Edom,
Thus saith thy brother *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Thou knowest all the travail that hath *befallen* **found** us:
15 How our fathers
went down **descended** into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and we have *dwelt* **settled** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**
a long time **many days**;
and the *Egyptians* **vexed** **Misrayim vilified** us,
and our fathers:
16 And when we cried unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
he heard our voice, and sent an angel,
and hath brought us forth out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
and, behold, we are in *Kadesh* **Qadesh**,
a city in the *uttermost* **end** of thy border:
17 Let us pass, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
through thy *country* **land**:
we *will shall* not pass through the fields,
or through the vineyards,
neither *will shall* we drink of the water of the wells:
we *will shall* go by the *king's high* way **of the sovereign**,
we *will shall* not **turn deviate**
to the right *hand* nor to the left,
until we have passed thy borders.
18 And Edom said unto him, Thou shalt not pass by me,
lest I come out *against* **confronting** thee with the sword.
19 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** said unto him,
We *will go* **shall ascend** by the high way:
and if I and my *cattle* **chattel** drink of thy water,
then I *will pay for it* **shall give their price**:
I *will shall* only, without *doing any thing else* **a word**,
go **pass** through on my feet.
20 And he said, Thou shalt not *go* **pass** through.
And Edom came out *against* **confronting** him
with much **heavy with** people, and with a strong hand.
21 Thus Edom refused
to *give Israel passage* **let Yisra El pass** through his border:
wherefore *Israel turned away* **Yisra El deviated** from him.

DEATH OF AHARON

22 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
even the whole congregation **witness**,
journeyed **pulled stakes** from *Kadesh* **Qadesh**,
and came unto mount Hor.
23 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh said**
unto Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon** in mount Hor,
by the *coast* **border** of the land of Edom, saying,
24 Aaron **Aharon** shall be gathered unto his people:
for he shall not enter
into the land which I have given
unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
because ye rebelled against my *word* **mouth**
at the water of *Meribah* **Strife**.
25 Take Aaron **Aharon** and Eleazar **El Azar** his son,

NUMBERS 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and bring them water from the rock
and thus give the witness and their beasts drink.
9 And Mosheh takes the rod from the face of Yah Veh,
as he misvahed him:
10 and Mosheh and Aharon
congregate the congregation at the face of the rock
and he says to them,
Hearken, I beseech, you rebels!
Fetch we water for you from this rock?
11 And Mosheh lifts his hand
and with his rod he smites the rock two times:
and much water comes out
and the witness and their beasts drink.
12 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh and Aharon,
Because you trust not in me
to hallow me in the eyes of the sons of Yisra El,
so you bring not this congregation
into the land I gave them.
13 This *is* the water of Meribah/Strife;
because the sons of Yisra El strove with Yah Veh
and he was hallowed in them.
14 And Mosheh sends angels
from Qadesh to the sovereign of Edom,
Thus says your brother Yisra El,
You know all the travail that found us:
how our fathers descend into Misrayim
and settle in Misrayim many days;
and the Misrayim vilify us and our fathers:
16 and when we cry to Yah Veh,
he hears our voice and sends an angel
and brings us from Misrayim:
and behold, we are in Qadesh,
a city in the end of your border:
17 Let us pass, I beseech you, through your land:
we neither pass through the fields
or through the vineyards,
nor drink of the water of the wells:
we go by the way of the sovereign;
we deviate neither to the right nor to the left
until we pass your borders.
18 And Edom says to him, You pass not by me,
lest I confront you with the sword.
19 And the sons of Yisra El say to him,
We ascend by the high way:
and if I and my chattel drink of your water,
then I give their price:
I only, without a word, pass through on my feet.
20 And he says, You pass not through.
— and Edom confronts him
heavy with people and with a strong hand.
21 Thus Edom refuses Yisra El
to pass through his border:
and Yisra El deviates from him.

DEATH OF AHARON

22 And the sons of Yisra El — the whole witness
pull stakes from Qadesh and come to mount Hor.
23 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh and Aharon
in mount Hor, by the border of the land of Edom,
saying,
24 Gather Aharon to his people:
for he enters not
into the land I gave to the sons of Yisra El,
because you rebel against my mouth
at the water of Meribah/Strife.
25 Take Aharon and El Azar his son

NUMBERS 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

26 and bring **ascend** them up unto mount Hor:
And strip Aaron **Aharon** of his garments **clothes**,
and put them upon Eleazar **El Azar** his son:
and Aaron **Aharon** shall be gathered unto his people,
and shall die there.

27 And Moses did **Mosheh worked**
as the **LORD** commanded **Yah Veh misvahed**:
and they went up **ascended** into mount Hor
in the sight **eyes** of all the congregation **witness**.

28 And Moses **Mosheh** stripped Aaron **Aharon**
of his garments **clothes**,
and put **enrobed** them upon Eleazar **El Azar** his son;
and Aaron **Aharon** died there in the top of the mount:
and Moses **Mosheh** and Eleazar **El Azar**
came down **descended** from the mount.

29 And when all the congregation **witness** saw
that Aaron was dead **Aharon had expired**,
they mourned **wept** for Aaron **Aharon** thirty days,
even all the house of Israel **Yisra El**.

21 And when king **sovereign** Arad
the Canaanite **Kenaaniy**,
which dwelt **settled** in the south,
heard tell that Israel **Yisra El** came
by the way of the spies **Atharim**;
then he fought against Israel **Yisra El**,
and took some **captured** of them **prisoners captives**.

2 And Israel **Yisra El** vowed a vow
unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**, and said,
If in giving, thou wilt indeed deliver shalt give this people
into my hand,
then I will utterly destroy shall devote their cities.

3 And the **LORD** **Yah Veh**
hearkened to the voice of Israel **Yisra El**,
and delivered up gave the Canaanites **Kenaaniy**;
and they utterly destroyed devoted them and their cities:
and he called the name of the place Hormah.

YAH VEH SENDS SERAPH SERPENTS

4 And they journeyed pulled stakes from mount Hor
by the way of the Red **Reed** sea,
to compass surround the land of Edom:
and the soul of the people
was much discouraged curtailed because of the way.

5 And the people spake worded
against God **Elohim**, and against Moses **Mosheh**,
Wherefore have ye brought ascended us up
out of Egypt **Misrayim** to die in the wilderness?
for there is no bread, neither is there any water;
and our soul loatheth abhorreth this light bread.

6 And the **LORD** **Yah Veh** sent fiery **seraph** serpents
among the people, and they bit the people;
and much people of Israel **Yisra El** died.

7 Therefore the people came to Moses **Mosheh**, and said,
We have sinned,

for we have spoken worded
against the **LORD** **Yah Veh**, and against thee;
pray unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**,

that he take away turn aside the serpents from us.
And Moses **Mosheh** prayed for the people.

8 And the **LORD** **Yah Veh** said unto Moses **Mosheh**,
Make **Work** thee a fiery serpent **seraph**,
and set it upon a pole:

and so be it shall come to pass,
that every one that is bitten,
when he looketh upon it seeth, shall live.

9 And Moses made **Mosheh worked**
a serpent of brass **copper**, and put it upon a pole,
and so be it came to pass,
that if a serpent had bitten any man,
when he beheld looked at the serpent of brass **copper**,
he lived.

SONS OF YISRA EL PULL STAKES

10 And the children sons of Israel **Yisra El**
set forward pulled stakes,
and pitched encamped in Oboth.

11 And they journeyed pulled stakes from Oboth,
and pitched encamped at Ijeabarim Iye Ha Abiram,
in the wilderness which is before at the face of Moab,
toward the sunrising sun downward.

12 From thence they removed pulled stakes,

NUMBERS 20, 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

26 and ascend them to mount Hor:
and strip Aharon of his clothes
and put them on El Azar his son:
and gather Aharon to die there.

27 And Mosheh works as Yah Veh misvahs:
and they ascend mount Hor
in the eyes of all the witness:

28 and Mosheh strips Aharon of his clothes
and enrobes them on El Azar his son;
and Aharon dies there in the top of the mount:
and Mosheh and El Azar descend from the mount.

29 And all the witness sees that Aharon expired
and they weep for Aharon thirty days
— all the house of Yisra El.

21

And sovereign Arad the Kenaaniy,
who settles in the south,
hears tell that Yisra El comes by the way of Atharim;
he fights Yisra El and captures captives of them.

2 And Yisra El vows a vow to Yah Veh and says,
If in giving, you give this people into my hand,
then I devote their cities.

3 — and Yah Veh hearkens to the voice of Yisra El
and gives the Kenaaniy;
and they devote them and their cities:
and he calls the name of the place Hormah.

YAH VEH SENDS SERAPH SERPENTS

4 And they pull stakes from mount Hor
by the way of the Reed sea
to surround the land of Edom:
and the soul of the people curtains
because of the way.

5 And the people
word against Elohim and against Mosheh,
Why ascended you us from Misrayim
to die in the wilderness?
for there is neither bread nor water;
and our soul abhors this light bread.

6 And Yah Veh sends seraph serpents
among the people
and they bite the people;
and much people of Yisra El die.

7 And the people come to Mosheh and say,
We sinned,
for we worded against Yah Veh and against you;
pray to Yah Veh, to turn aside the serpents from us.
— and Mosheh prays for the people.

8 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
work a seraph and set it on a pole:
and so be it,
every one who is bitten, when he sees, lives.

9 And Mosheh works a serpent of copper
and puts it on a pole:
and so be it,
if a serpent bites any man,
when he looks at the serpent of copper, he lives.

SONS OF YISRA EL PULL STAKES

10 And the sons of Yisra El pull stakes
and encamp in Oboth:
and they pull stakes from Oboth
and encamp at Iye Ha Abiram
in the wilderness at the face of Moab
toward the sun downward:
from there they pull stakes

NUMBERS 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

13 and pitched **encamped** in the valley **wadi** of Zared.
From thence they removed **pulled stakes**,
and pitched **encamped** on the other side of Arnon,
which is in the wilderness that cometh out
of the **coasts borders** of the **Amorites Emoriy**:
for Arnon is the border of Moab,
between Moab and the **Amorites Emoriy**.

14 Wherefore it is said
in the **book scroll** of the wars of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
What he did **Vaheb** in the **Red Reed** sea,
and in the **brooks wadies** of Arnon,
15 And at the stream of the **brooks storm channels**
that goeth down **spreadeth**
to the **dwelling of settlement** at Ar,
and lieth upon the border of Moab.

16 And from thence they went to **Beer to the well**:
that is the well whereof
the **LORD spake Yah Veh said** unto **Moses Mosheh**,
Gather the people together,
and I **will shall** give them water.

17 Then **Israel Yisra El** sang this song,
Spring up **Ascend**, O well; sing ye **answer** unto it:
18 The **princes governors** digged the well,
the **nobles volunteers** of the people digged it,
by the **direction of the lawgiver statute setter**,
with their **staves crutches**.

And from the wilderness they went to Mattanah:
19 And from Mattanah to **Nahaliel Nachali El**:
and from **Nahaliel Nachali El** to Bamoth:
20 And from Bamoth in the valley,
that is in the **country field** of Moab, to the top of Pisgah,
which **looketh toward Jeshimon**
at the face of the desolation.

21 And **Israel Yisra El** sent **messengers angels**
unto **Sihon Sichon king sovereign** of the **Amorites Emoriy**,
saying,
22 Let me pass through thy land:
we **will shall** not **turn deviate** into the fields,
or into the vineyards;
we **will shall** not drink of the waters of the well:
but we **will shall** go along by the **king's high sovereign's** way,
until we **be past pass** thy borders.

23 And **Sihon Sichon**
would not suffer Israel gave not Yisra El
to pass through his border:
but **Sihon Sichon** gathered all his people together,
and went out **against Israel confronting Yisra El**
into the wilderness:
and he came to **Jahaz Yahsah**,
and fought against **Israel Yisra El**.

24 And **Israel Yisra El** smote him
with the **edge mouth** of the sword,
and possessed his land from Arnon unto **Jabbok Yabboq**,
even unto the **children sons** of Ammon:
for the border of the **children sons** of Ammon was strong.

25 And **Israel Yisra El** took all these cities:
and **Israel dwelt Yisra El settled** in all the cities
of the **Amorites Emoriy**,
in Heshbon, and in all the **villages daughters** thereof.

26 For Heshbon was the city of **Sihon Sichon**
the **king sovereign** of the **Amorites Emoriy**,
who had fought against
the **former king head sovereign** of Moab,
and taken all his land out of his hand, even unto Arnon.

27 Wherefore
they that **speak in proverbs proverbialize** say,
Come into Heshbon,
let the city of **Sihon Sichon** be built and prepared:
28 For there is a fire gone out of Heshbon,
a flame from the city of **Sihon Sichon**:
it hath consumed Ar of Moab,
and the **lords masters** of the **high places bamahs** of Arnon.

29 Woe to thee, Moab! thou art **undone destroyed**,
O people of **Chemosh Kemosh**:
he hath given his sons that escaped, and his daughters,
into captivity unto **Sihon Sichon**
king sovereign of the **Amorites Emoriy**.

30 We have shot at them;
Heshbon is **perished destroyed** even unto Dibon,

NUMBERS 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

13 and encamp in the wadi of Zared:
from there they pull stakes
and encamp on the other side of Arnon
— in the wilderness
that comes from the borders of the Emoriy:
for Arnon is the border of Moab
between Moab and the Emoriy.

14 Therefore
it says in the scroll of the wars of Yah Veh,
Vaheb in the Reed sea
and in the wadies of Arnon,
15 and at the stream of the storm channels
that spreads to the settlement at Ar
and lies on the border of Moab.

16 And from there to the well
— the well whereof Yah Veh said to Mosheh,
Gather the people together and I give them water.

17 Then Yisra El sings this song,
Ascend, O well;
answer:
18 the governors dig the well,
the volunteers of the people dig,
by the statute setters with their crutches.
And from the wilderness they go to Mattanah:
19 and from Mattanah to Nachali El:
and from Nachali El to Bamoth:
20 and from Bamoth in the valley in the field of Moab,
to the top of Pisgah at the face of the desolation.

21 And Yisra El sends angels
to Sihon sovereign of the Emoriy, saying,
22 Let me pass through your land:
we neither deviate into the fields
or into the vineyards;
nor drink of the waters of the well:
but we go along by the way of the sovereign
until we pass your borders.

23 And Sihon gives not Yisra El
to pass through his border:
but Sihon gathers all his people together
and goes and confronts Yisra El in the wilderness:
and he comes to Yahsah who fights Yisra El:
24 and Yisra El smites him
with the mouth of the sword
and possesses his land from Arnon to Yabboq
to the sons of Ammon:
for the border of the sons of Ammon is strong.

25 And Yisra El takes all these cities:
and Yisra El settles in all the cities of the Emoriy,
in Heshbon and in all the daughters thereof.

26 For Heshbon is a city of Sihon
the sovereign of the Emoriy,
who fought the head sovereign of Moab
and takes all his land from his hand, to Arnon.

27 So they who proverbialize say,
Come into Heshbon,
build the city of Sihon and prepare:
28 for there a fire goes from Heshbon
a flame from the city of Sihon:
it consumes Ar of Moab
and the masters of the bamahs of Arnon.

29 Woe to you, Moab!
You destruct, O people of Kemosh!
He gives his sons and his daughters who escape
to captivity to Sihon sovereign of the Emoriy.

30 And we shoot them!
Heshbon destructs even to Dibon

NUMBERS 21, 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and we have *laid desolated* them waste
even unto *Nophah Nophach*,
which reacheth unto Medeba.
31 Thus *Israel dwelt Yisra El settled*
in the land of the *Amorites Emoriy*.
32 And *Moses Mosheh* sent to spy out *Jaazer Yazer*,
and they took *captured* the *villages daughters* thereof,
and *drove out dispossessed* the *Amorites Emoriy*
that were there.
33 And they turned and went up
from their face they ascended by the way of Bashan:
and Og the *king sovereign* of Bashan
went out *against confronting* them,
he, and all his people, to the *battle war* at Adrei.
34 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto *Moses Mosheh*,
Fear Awe him not:
for I have *delivered given* him into thy hand,
and all his people, and his land;
and thou shalt *do work* to him
as thou *didst workedst* unto *Sihon Sichon*
king sovereign of the *Amorites Emoriy*,
which *dwelt settled* at Heshbon.
35 So they smote him, and his sons, and all his people,
until *there was none left him alive no survivor survived*:
and they possessed his land.

BALAQ AND BILAM

22

And the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
set forward pulled stakes,
and *pitched encamped* in the plains of Moab
on this side *Jordan Yarden* by *Jericho Yericho*.
2 And *Balak Balaq* the son of *Zippor Sippor*
saw all that *Israel Yisra El* had *done worked*
to the *Amorites Emoriy*.
3 And Moab was *sore mighty* afraid
at the face of the people,
because they were many:
and Moab was *distressed abhorred*
because at the face of the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*.
4 And Moab said unto the elders of *Midian Midyan*,
Now shall this *company congregation*
lick up all that are round about us,
as the ox licketh up the *grass green* of the field.
And *Balak Balaq* the son of *Zippor Sippor*
was *king sovereign* of the *Moabites Moab* at that time.
5 He sent *messengers angels* therefore
unto *Balaam Bilam* the son of Beor to Pethor,
which is by the river
of the land of the *children sons* of his people,
to call him, saying, Behold,
there is a people come out from *Egypt Misrayim*:
behold, they cover the *face eye* of the earth,
and they *abide over against settle in front of* me:
6 *Come Go* now therefore, I *pray beseech* thee,
curse me this people; for they are too mighty for me:
peradventure I shall prevail, that we may smite them,
and that I may drive them out of the land:
for I wot **know** that he whom thou blestest is blessed,
and he whom thou cursest is cursed.
7 And the elders of Moab
and the elders of *Midian Midyan*
departed went with the *rewards* of divination
in their hand;
and they came unto *Balaam Bilam*,
and *spake worded* unto him the words of *Balak Balaq*.
8 And he said unto them,
Lodge Stay here *this night overnight*,
and I *will bring shall return* you word *again*,
as the *LORD Yah Veh* shall *speak word* unto me:
and the *princes governors* of Moab
abode settled with *Balaam Bilam*.
9 And *God Elohim* came unto *Balaam Bilam*, and said,
What men are these with thee?
10 And *Balaam Bilam* said unto *God Elohim*,
Balak Balaq the son of *Zippor Sippor*,
king sovereign of Moab, hath sent unto me, *saying*,
Behold, there is a people come out of *Egypt Misrayim*,
which covereth the *face eye* of the earth:
11 *come go* now, curse me them;

NUMBERS 21, 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and we desolate them from Nophach to Medeba.
31 — thus Yisra El settles in the land of the Emoriy.
32 And Mosheh sends to spy Yazer
and they capture the daughters thereof
and dispossess the Emoriy there:
33 and they ascend from their face
by the way of Bashan:
and Og the sovereign of Bashan
goes out confronting them — he and all his people
to the war at Adrei.
34 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh, Awe him not:
for I give him into your hand
— all his people and his land;
and work to him as you worked to Sichon
sovereign of the Emoriy, who settles at Heshbon.
35 So they smite him and his sons and all his people,
until no survivor survives:
and they possess his land.

BALAQ AND BILAM

22

And the sons of Yisra El pull stakes
and encamp in the plains of Moab
on this side Yarden by Yericho.
2 And Balaq the son of Sippor
sees all Yisra El works to the Emoriy.
3 And Moab is mighty afraid at the face of the people,
because they are many:
and Moab abhors the face of the sons of Yisra El.
4 And Moab says to the elders of Midyan,
Now this congregation licks up all
who are all around us
as the ox licks the green of the field.
And Balaq the son of Sippor
is sovereign of Moab at that time.
5 He sends angels to Bilam the son of Beor to Pethor,
by the river of the land of the sons of his people,
to call him, saying, Behold,
a people comes from Misrayim:
and behold, they cover the eye of the earth
and they settle in front of me:
6 go now therefore, I beseech you,
curse me this people; for they are too mighty for me:
perhaps I prevail to smite them
— to drive them from the land:
for I know that whom you bless is blessed
and whom you curse is cursed.
7 And the elders of Moab and the elders of Midyan
go with the divination in their hand;
and they come to Bilam
and word the words of Balaq to him.
8 And he says to them, Stay here overnight
and I return word to you as Yah Veh words to me.
— and the governors of Moab settle with Bilam.
9 And Elohim comes to Bilam and says,
Who are these men with you?
10 And Bilam says to Elohim,
Balaq the son of Sippor sovereign of Moab
sends for me:
11 behold, a people comes from Misrayim,
who cover the eye of the earth:
go now, curse them for me;

NUMBERS 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

peradventure
I shall *be able* **prevail** to *overcome* **fight** them,
and *drive* **expel** them out.

12 And God **Elohim** said unto **Balaam Bilam**,
Thou shalt not go with them;
thou shalt not curse the people: for they are blessed.

13 And **Balaam Bilam** rose up in the morning,
and said unto the *princes* **governors** of **Balak Balaq**,
Get you **Go** into your land:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** refuseth
to *give me* **leave** **allow me** to go with you.

14 And the *princes* **governors** of Moab rose up,
and they went unto **Balak Balaq**, and said,
Balaam Bilam refuseth to come with us.

15 And **Balak Balaq** sent yet again *princes* **governors**,
more **greater**, and more honourable than they.

16 And they came to **Balaam Bilam**, and said to him,
Thus saith **Balak Balaq** the son of **Zippor Sippor**,
Let *nothing* **naught**, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
hinder thee from coming unto me:

17 For **in honouring**,
I will *promote* thee unto very great honour
I shall honour thee mightily,
and I will *do* **shall work** whatsoever thou sayest unto me:
come therefore **go**, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
curse me this people.

18 And **Balaam Bilam** answered
and said unto the servants of **Balak Balaq**,
If **Balak would Balaq should** give me
his house full of silver and gold,
I cannot go *beyond* **trespass** the word **mouth**
of the **LORD Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**,
to *do* **work** less or *more* **greater**.

19 Now therefore, I *pray* **beseech** you,
tarry **settle** ye also here this night,
that I may know what the **LORD Yah Veh**
will *say* **shall word** unto me *more* **again**.

BILAM AND THE ANGEL OF YAH VEH

20 And God **Elohim** came unto **Balaam Bilam** at night,
and said unto him,
If the men come to call thee, rise up, and go with them;
but yet **surely** the word which I shall *say* **word** unto thee,
that shalt thou *do* **work**.

21 And **Balaam Bilam** rose up in the morning,
and *saddled* **harnessed** his ass **she burro**,
and went with the *princes* **governors** of Moab.

22 And God's *anger* **Elohim's wrath** was kindled
because he went:
and the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh** stood in the way
for an *adversary* **a satan** against him.
Now he was riding upon his ass **she burro**,
and his two *servants* **were lads** with him.

23 And the ass **she burro**
saw the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**
standing **stationed** in the way,
and his sword drawn in his hand:
and the ass **she burro**
turned aside **deviated** out of the way,
and went into the field:
and **Balaam Bilam** smote the ass **she burro**,
to *turn* **deviate** her into the way.

24 But the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**
stood in a path of the vineyards,
a wall being on this side, and a wall on that side.

25 And when the ass **she burro**
saw the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
she *thrust* **pressed** herself unto the wall,
and *crushed* **Balaam's pressed** **Bilam's** foot
against the wall:
and he smote her again.

26 And the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**
went further **passed again**,
and stood in a *narrow* **constricted** place,
where was no way to turn
either to the right *hand* or to the left.

27 And when the ass **she burro**
saw the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
she *fell down* **crouched** under **Balaam Bilam**:
and **Balaam's anger** was **Bilam's wrath** kindled,

NUMBERS 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

perhaps I prevail to fight them and expel them.

12 And Elohim says to Bilam,
Go not with them.
Curse not the people: for they *are* blessed.

13 And Bilam rises in the morning
and says to the governors of Balaq,
Go to your land:
for Yah Veh refuses to allow me to go with you.

14 And the governors of Moab rise
and go to Balaq and say,
Bilam refuses to come with us.

15 And Balaq adds yet to send governors,
greater and more honorable than they:
and they come to Bilam, and say to him,
Thus says Balaq the son of Sippor,
Let naught, I beseech you,
hinder you from coming to me:
for in honoring, I honor you mightily
and I work whatever you say to me:
go, I beseech you, curse this people for me.

18 And Bilam answers
and says to the servants of Balaq,
If Balaq give me his house full of silver and gold,
I cannot trespass the mouth of Yah Veh my Elohim,
to work less or greater:
and now, I beseech you,
settle you also here this night,
so that I know what Yah Veh adds to word to me.

BILAM AND THE ANGEL OF YAH VEH

20 And Elohim comes to Bilam at night
and says to him,
If the men come to call you, rise and go with them;
and work the word I word to you.

21 And Bilam rises in the morning
and harnesses his she burro
and goes with the governors of Moab:
and Elohim kindles his wrath, because he goes:
and the angel of Yah Veh stands in the way
— a satan against him:
and he rides his she burro and with his two lads.

23 And the she burro
sees the angel of Yah Veh stationed in the way
with his sword drawn in his hand:
and the she burro deviates from the way
and goes into the field.
— and Bilam smites the she burro
to deviate her into the way.

24 And the angel of Yah Veh
stands in a path of the vineyards
— a wall on this side and a wall on that side:
and the she burro sees the angel of Yah Veh
and she presses to the wall
and presses the foot of Bilam against the wall:
— and he smites her again.

26 And the angel of Yah Veh passes again
and stands in a constricted place
where there is no way to turn
— either to the right or to the left:
and the she burro sees the angel of Yah Veh
and she crouches under Bilam:
and Bilam kindles his wrath

NUMBERS 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- and he smote the ass **she burro** with a staff.
 28 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
 opened the mouth of the ass **she burro**,
 and she said unto **Balaam Bilam**,
 What have I **done worked** unto thee,
 that thou hast smitten me these three **times paces**?
 29 And **Balaam Bilam** said unto the ass **she burro**,
 Because thou hast **mocked exploited** me:
I would O that there were a sword in mine hand,
 for now *would I kill should I have slaughtered* thee.
 30 And the ass **she burro** said unto **Balaam Bilam**,
 Am not I *thine ass thy she burro*,
 upon which thou hast ridden
 ever since I was thine unto this day?
was I ever wont to do so unto thee
In using, have I ever been used to work so unto thee?
 And he said, Nay.
 31 Then the **LORD Yah Veh**
 opened **exposed** the eyes of **Balaam Bilam**,
 and he saw the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**
standing stationed in the way,
 and his sword drawn in his hand:
 and he bowed *down his head*,
 and *fell flat prostrated* on his **face nostrils**.
 32 And the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto him,
 Wherefore hast thou smitten thine ass **she burro**
 these three **times paces**?
 behold, I went out to *withstand be a satan* to thee,
 because thy way is *perverse precipitous before in front of* me:
 33 And the ass **she burro** saw me,
 and **turned deviated her face** from me
 these three **times paces**:
unless she had if she had not
 turned **deviated her face** from me,
 surely now also I had *slain slaughtered* thee,
 and saved **preserved** her alive.
 34 And **Balaam Bilam**
 said unto the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
 I have sinned;
 for I knew not
 that thou *stoodest stationed thyself* in the way
against to confront me:
 now therefore,
 if it *displease thee be vilifying in thine eyes*,
 I *will get me back again shall turn back*.
 35 And the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**
 said unto **Balaam Bilam**,
 Go with the men:
but only finally the word that I shall **speak word** unto thee,
 that thou shalt **speak word**.
 So **Balaam Bilam** went
 with the **princes governors** of **Balak Balaq**.
 36 And when **Balak Balaq** heard
 that **Balaam Bilam** was come,
 he went out to meet him unto a city of Moab,
 which is in the border of Arnon,
 which is in the **utmost coast end border**.
 37 And **Balak Balaq** said unto **Balaam Bilam**,
In sending, Did I not *earnestly* send unto thee to call thee?
 wherefore camest thou not unto me?
 am I not able *indeed truly*
 to *promote thee to honour thee*?
 38 And **Balaam Bilam** said unto **Balak Balaq**,
lo behold, I am come unto thee:
have I now any power at all to say any thing
in being able, am I able to word aught?
 the word that **God Elohim** putteth in my mouth,
 that shall I **speak word**.
 39 And **Balaam Bilam** went with **Balak Balaq**,
 and they came unto **Kirjathhuzoth Qiryath Husoth**.
 40 And **Balak Balaq** offered **sacrificed** oxen and **sheep flocks**,
 and sent to **Balaam Bilam**,
 and to the **princes governors** that were with him.
 41 And **so be** it came to pass on the morrow,
 that **Balak Balaq** took **Balaam Bilam**,
 and brought **ascended** him up
 into the **high places of Baal unto Bamah Baal**,
 that thence he might see
 the **utmost part ends** of the people.

NUMBERS 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- and smites the she burro with a staff.
 28 And Yah Veh opens the mouth of the she burro
 and she says to Bilam,
 What work I to you,
 that you smite me these three paces?
 29 And Bilam says to the she burro,
 Because you exploit me:
 O that a sword become in my hand,
 for by now I had slaughtered you.
 30 And the she burro says to Bilam,
 Am not I your she burro
 whom you rode ever since I was yours
 — to this day?
 In using, have I ever been used to work thus to you?
 And he says, No.
 31 And Yah Veh exposes the eyes of Bilam
 and he sees the angel of Yah Veh
 stationed in the way
 with his sword drawn in his hand:
 and he bows and prostrates on his nostrils.
 32 And the angel of Yah Veh says to him,
 Why smite you your she burro these three paces?
 Behold, I — I go out to be a satan to you,
 because your way *is precipitous* in front of me:
 33 and the she burro sees me
 and deviates her face from me these three paces:
 had she not deviated her face from me,
 surely by now I had slaughtered you
 and preserved her alive.
 34 And Bilam says to the angel of Yah Veh,
 I sinned!
 For I knew not that you stationed yourself in the way
 to confront me:
 and now, if it vilifies in your eyes, I turn back.
 35 And the angel of Yah Veh says to Bilam,
 Go with the men:
 finally, word the word I word to you.
 — and Bilam goes with the governors of Balaq.
 36 And when Balaq hears that Bilam comes,
 he goes out to meet him to a city of Moab
 in the border of Arnon — in the end border.
 37 And Balaq says to Bilam,
 In sending, send I not to you to call you?
 Why come you not to me?
 Am I not truly able to honor you?
 38 And Bilam says to Balaq, behold, I come to you:
 in being able, am I able to word aught?
 The word Elohim puts in my mouth, I word.
 39 And Bilam goes with Balaq
 and they come to Qiryath Husoth:
 40 and Balaq sacrifices oxen and flocks
 and sends to Bilam and to the governors with him:
 41 and so be it, on the morrow,
 Balaq takes Bilam and ascends him to Bamah Baal
 — there to see the ends of the people.

NUMBERS 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

The ORACLES OF BILAM

23 And Balaam Bilam said unto Balak Balaq,
Build me here seven sacrifice altars,
and prepare me here seven oxen bullocks and seven rams.

2 And Balak did Balaq worked
as Balaam Bilam had spoken worded;
and Balak Balaq and Balaam Bilam
offered holocausted on every sacrifice altar
a bullock and a ram.

3 And Balaam Bilam said unto Balak Balaq,
Stand by thy burnt offering holocaust, and I will shall go:
peradventure
the LORD will come Yah Veh shall happen to meet me:
and whatsoever word he sheweth me he hath me see
I will shall tell thee.

4 And he went to an high place the barrens.
And God met Balaam Elohim happened upon Bilam:
and he said unto him,
I have prepared arranged seven sacrifice altars,
and I have offered holocausted upon every sacrifice altar
a bullock and a ram.

5 And the LORD Yah Veh
put a word in Balaam's Bilam's mouth, and said,
Return unto Balak Balaq, and thus thou shalt speak word.

6 And he returned unto him, and, lo behold,
he stood stationed himself
by his burnt sacrifice holocaust,
he, and all the princes governors of Moab.

7 And he took up lifted his parable proverb, and said,
Balak Balaq the king sovereign of Moab
hath brought led me from Aram,
out of the mountains of the east, saying,
Come Go, curse me Jacob Yaaqov,
and come go, defy Israel enrage Yisra El.

8 How shall I curse pierce, whom God El hath not cursed?
or how shall I defy enrage,
whom the LORD Yah Veh hath not defied enraged?
For from the top of the rocks I see him,
and from the hills I behold observe him:
lo behold, the people shall dwell tabernacle alone,
and shall not be reckoned fabricated
among the nations goyim.

10 Who can count number the dust of Jacob Yaaqov,
and the number of the fourth part of Israel Yisra El?
Let me my soul die the death of the righteous straight,
and let my last end finality be like his!

11 And Balak Balaq said unto Balaam Bilam,
What hast thou done worked unto me?
I took thee to curse mine enemies, and, behold,
in blessing, thou hast blessed them altogether.

12 And he answered and said,
Must Shall I not take heed guard to speak word
that which the LORD Yah Veh hath put in my mouth?

13 And Balak Balaq said unto him,
Come Go, I pray beseech thee,
with me unto another place,
from whence thou mayest see them:
thou shalt see but the utmost part final end of them,
and shalt not see them all:
and curse me them from thence.

14 And he brought took him
into the field of Zophim Watchers, to the top of Pisgah,
and built seven sacrifice altars,
and offered holocausted a bullock and a ram
on every sacrifice altar.

15 And he said unto Balak Balaq,
Stand here thus by thy burnt offering holocaust,
while I meet the LORD yonder happen over there.

16 And the LORD Yah Veh
met Balaam happened upon Bilam,
and put a word in his mouth, and said,
Go again Return unto Balak Balaq, and say word thus.

17 And when he came to him, behold,
he stood stationed himself by his burnt offering holocaust,
and the princes governors of Moab with him.
And Balak Balaq said unto him,
What hath the LORD spoken Yah Veh worded?

18 And he took up his parable proverb, and said,
Rise up, Balak Balaq, and hear;

NUMBERS 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

The ORACLES OF BILAM

23 And Bilam says to Balaq,
Build me here seven sacrifice altars
and prepare me here seven bullocks and seven rams.
— and Balaq works as Bilam worded;
and Balaq and Bilam holocaust a bullock and a ram
on every sacrifice altar.

3 And Bilam says to Balaq,
Stand by your holocaust and I go:
perhaps Yah Veh happens to meet me:
and whatever word he has me see, I tell you.

4 And he goes to the barrens
and Elohim happens on Bilam, and he says to him,
I arrange seven sacrifice altars
and I holocaust a bullock and a ram
on every sacrifice altar.

5 And Yah Veh puts a word in the mouth of Bilam,
and says,
Return to Balaq and word thus.

6 And he returns to him, and behold,
he stations himself by his holocaust
— he and all the governors of Moab:
and he lifts his proverb, and says,
Balaq the sovereign of Moab leads me from Aram
— from the mountains of the east,
Go, curse Yaaqov for me!
And go, enrage Yisra El!

8 How pierce I whom El curses not?
Or how enrage I whom Yah Veh enrages not?
For from the top of the rocks I see him
and from the hills I observe him:
behold, the people tabernacle alone
and are not fabricated among the goyim.
Who numbers the dust of Yaaqov?
And the number of the fourth of Yisra El?
Let my soul die the death of the straight
and let my finality be like his!

11 And Balaq says to Bilam,
What work you to me?
I take you to curse my enemies;
and behold, in blessing, you bless them.

12 And he answers and says,
Guard I not to word what Yah Veh puts in my mouth?

13 And Balaq says to him,
Come, I beseech you, with me to another place,
from whence you see them:
you see but the final end of them
— but not see them all:
and curse them for me from there.

14 And he takes him
into the field of Watchers, to the top of Pisgah
and builds seven sacrifice altars
and holocausts a bullock and a ram
on every sacrifice altar.

15 And he says to Balaq,
Stand thus by your holocaust,
while I happen over there.

16 And Yah Veh happens on Bilam
and puts a word in his mouth, and says,
Return to Balaq and word thus.

17 And he comes to him, and behold,
he stations himself by his holocaust
and the governors of Moab with him.
And Balaq says to him, What words Yah Veh?

18 And he takes up his proverb and says,
Rise, Balaq and hear!

NUMBERS 23, 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

19 hearken unto me, thou son of Zippor Sippor:
 God El is not a man, that he should lie;
 neither the son of man **humanity**,
 that he should *repent* **sigh**:
 hath he said, and shall he not *do* **work** it?
 or hath he *spoken* **worded**,
 and shall he not *make it good* **raise**?

20 Behold, I have *received commandment* **taken** to bless:
 and he hath blessed; and I cannot *reverse* **turn** it.

21 He hath not *beheld iniquity* **looked at the mischief**
 in Jacob **Yaaqov**,
 neither hath he seen *perverseness* **drudgery**
 in Israel **Yisra El**:
the LORD Yah Veh his *God Elohim* is with him,
 and the shout of a *king* **sovereign** is among them.

22 *God El* brought them out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
 he hath as *it were* the strength of an *unicorn* **a reem**.

23 Surely there is no *enchantment* **prognostication**
 against Jacob **Yaaqov**,
 neither is there any divination against *Israel* **Yisra El**:
 according to this time
 it shall be said of Jacob **Yaaqov** and of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 What hath *God* wrought **El done**!

24 Behold, the people shall rise up as a *great* **roaring** lion,
 and lift up himself as a *young* lion:
 he shall not lie down until he eat of the prey,
 and drink the blood of the *slain* **pierced**.

25 And *Balak Balaq* said unto *Balaam Bilam*,
 Neither *curse* **pierce** them at all, nor bless them at all.

26 But *Balaam Bilam* answered and said unto *Balak Balaq*,
Told Worded not I to thee, saying,
 All that *the LORD* speaketh **Yah Veh wordeth**,
 that I *must do* **work**?

27 And *Balak Balaq* said unto *Balaam Bilam*,
Come Go, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
 I will *bring* **shall take** thee unto another place;
peradventure it will **perhaps it shall be straight**
please God in the eyes of Elohim
 that thou mayest curse me them from thence.

28 And *Balak brought Balaam Balaq took Bilam*
 unto the top of Peor,
that looketh toward Jeshimon
at the face of the desolation.

29 And *Balaam Bilam* said unto *Balak Balaq*,
 Build me here seven **sacrifice** altars,
 and prepare me here seven bullocks and seven rams.

30 And *Balak did Balaq worked* as *Balaam Bilam* had said,
 and offered a bullock and a ram
 on every **sacrifice** altar.

24 And when *Balaam Bilam* saw
 that it *pleased the LORD* **was good in the eyes of Yah Veh**
 to bless *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 he went not, as *at other times* **time by time**,
 to *seek for enchantments* **confront prognostications**,
 but he set his face toward the wilderness.

2 And *Balaam Bilam* lifted up his eyes,
 and he saw *Israel abiding in his tents* **Yisra El tabernacling**
 according to their *tribes* **scions**;
 and the spirit of *God Elohim* came upon him.

3 And he *took up* **lifted** his *parable* **proverb**, and said,
Balaam An oracle of Bilam the son of Beor *hath said*,
and the man An oracle of the master
 whose eyes **were shut**
are open hath said **but now unveiled**:
He hath said, **An oracle of him**
 which heard the *words sayings of God El*,
 which saw the vision of *the Almighty* **Shadday**,
 falling *into a trance*, but having his eyes *open* **exposed**:
 How goodly are thy tents, O *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
 and thy tabernacles, O *Israel* **Yisra El**!

6 As the *valleys* **wadies** are they spread forth,
 as gardens by the river's side,
 as the *trees of lign* aloes
 which *the LORD Yah Veh* hath planted,
 and as cedar trees beside the waters.

7 He shall *pour* **flow** the water out of his *buckets* **pails**,
 and his seed shall be in many waters,
 and his *king* **sovereign**
 shall be *higher* **more exalted** than Agag,

NUMBERS 23, 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Hearken to me, you son of Sippor!
 El is neither a man, that he lies;
 nor the son of humanity, that he sighs:
 Says he ever, and not work?
 Or words he ever, and it not rise?

20 Behold, I take to bless:
 and he blesses and I cannot turn it.

21 He neither looks at the mischief in Yaaqov,
 nor sees the drudgery in Yisra El:
 Yah Veh his Elohim *is* with him
 and the shout of of a sovereign *is* among them.
 El brings them from Misrayim;
 he has as the strength of a reem.

23 Surely
 there *is* neither prognostication against Yaaqov,
 nor any divination against Yisra El:
 according to this time
 it *is* said of Yaaqov and of Yisra El,
 What El works!

24 Behold, the people rise as a roaring lion
 and lift himself as a lion:
 he lies not down until he eats of the prey
 and drinks the blood of the pierced.

25 And Balaq says to Bilam,
 Neither pierce them at all nor bless them at all.

26 And Bilam answers and says to Balaq,
 Worded I not to you, saying,
 All Yah Veh words, I work?

27 And Balaq says to Bilam, Come, I beseech you,
 I take you to another place;
 perhaps it be straight in the eyes of Elohim
 that you curse them for me from there.

28 — and Balaq takes Bilam to the top of Peor,
 at the face of the desolation.

29 And Bilam says to Balaq,
 Build me here seven sacrifice altars
 and prepare me here seven bullocks and seven rams.

30 — and Balaq works as Bilam says
 and offers a bullock and a ram
 on every sacrifice altar.

24 And Bilam sees
 it *is* good in the eyes of Yah Veh to bless Yisra El,
 and he goes not, as time by time,
 to confront prognostications,
 but he sets his face toward the wilderness:
 and Bilam lifts his eyes
 and sees Yisra El tabernacling by their scions;
 and the spirit of Elohim comes on him:
 and he lifts his proverb and says,
 — an oracle of Bilam the son of Beor
 — an oracle of the master
 whose eyes *were* shut but now unveiled:
 — an oracle of him who hears the sayings of El,
 who sees the vision of Shadday,
 falling, but eyes exposed,
 How goodly your tents, O Yaaqov
 and your tabernacles, O Yisra El!
 As the wadies they spread,
 as gardens by the side of the river
 as the aloes Yah Veh plants
 and as cedar trees beside the waters.
 He flows the water from his pails
 and his seed *is* in many waters:
 and his sovereign is more exalted than Agag

NUMBERS 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and his kingdom **sovereigndom** shall be exalted.
8 God **El** brought him forth out of Egypt **Misrayim**;
he hath as *it were* the strength of an **unicorn a reem**:
he shall eat up the **nations goyim** his **enemies tribulators**,
and shall **break craunch** their bones,
and **pierce strike** them through with his arrows.
9 He **couched kneeled**, he lay down as a lion,
and as a **great roaring** lion:
who shall **stir rouse** him up?
Blessed is he that blesseth thee,
and cursed is he that curseth thee.
10 And **Balak's anger Balaq's wrath**
was kindled against **Balaam Bilam**,
and he **smote clapped** his **hands palms** together:
and **Balak Balaq** said unto **Balaam Bilam**,
I called thee to curse mine enemies, and, behold,
in **blessing**,
thou hast **altogether** blessed them these three times.
11 Therefore now flee thou to thy place:
I thought to promote thee unto great honour
I had said, In honouring, I honour thee;
but, *lo behold*,
the **LORD Yah Veh** hath **kept withheld** thee back
from honour.
12 And **Balaam Bilam** said unto **Balak Balaq**,
Spake Worded I not also to thy **messengers angels**
which thou sentest unto me, saying,
13 If **Balak would Balaq should** give me
his house full of silver and gold,
I cannot **go beyond trespass**
the **commandment mouth** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
to **do either work** good or **bad evil**
of mine own **mind heart**;
but what the **LORD saith Yah Veh wordeth**,
that **will shall** I **speak word**?
14 And now, behold, I go unto my people:
come go therefore, and I **will advertise shall counsel** thee
what this people shall **do work** to thy people
in the **latter final** days.
15 **ORACLE OF BILAM TO THE SON OF BEOR**
And he **took up lifted** his **parable proverb**, and said,
Balaam An oracle of Bilam the son of Beor *hath said*,
and the man **An oracle of the master**
whose eyes **were shut**
are open hath said but now unveiled:
16 *He hath said, An oracle of him*
which heard the **words sayings** of God **El**,
and knew the knowledge of the **most High Elyon**,
which saw the vision of the **Almighty Shadday**,
falling **into a trance**, but having his eyes **open uncovered**:
17 I shall see him, but not now:
I shall **behold observe** him, but not near:
there shall **come tread** a Star out of **Jacob Yaaqov**,
and a **Sceptre Scion** shall rise out of **Israel Yisra El**,
and shall **smite strike** the **corners edges** of Moab,
and **destroy undermine** all the **children sons** of Sheth.
18 **ORACLE OF BILAM TO YISRA EL**
And Edom shall be a possession,
Seir also shall be a possession for his enemies;
and **Israel Yisra El** shall **do work** valiantly.
19 Out of **Jacob Yaaqov**
shall come he that shall have dominion,
and shall destroy him that **remaineth surviveth** of the city.
20 **ORACLE OF BILAM TO AMALEQ**
And when he **looked on Amalek saw Amaleq**,
he **took up lifted** his **parable proverb**, and said,
Amalek Amaleq was the first of the **nations goyim**;
but his **latter end finality**
shall be *that he perish for ever eternal destruction*.
21 **ORACLE OF BILAM TO THE QAYINIY**
And he **looked on the Kenites saw the Qayiniy**,
and **took up lifted** his **parable proverb**, and said,
Strong is Perennial be thy **dwellingplace settlement**,
and thou puttest thy nest in a rock.
22 Nevertheless
the **Kenite Qayiniy** shall be **wasted consumed**,
until **Asshur when Ashshur**
shall **carry thee away captive capture** thee.

NUMBERS 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and his sovereigndom becomes exalted.
8 El brings him from Misrayim;
he has as strength of a reem:
he eats the goyim his tribulators
and craunches their bones
and strikes with his arrows.
9 He kneels, he lies down as a lion
— as a roaring lion — who rouses him?
Blessed, he who blesses you
and cursed, he who curses you.
10 And Balaq kindles his wrath against Bilam
and he claps his palms together:
and Balaq says to Bilam,
I call you to curse my enemies, and behold,
in blessing, you bless them these three times.
11 and now flee to your place.
12 I had said, In honoring, I honor you;
but, behold, Yah Veh withholds you from honor.
13 And Bilam says to Balaq,
Worded I not also to your angels
whom you sent me, saying,
14 If Balaq gives me his house full of silver and gold,
I cannot trespass the mouth of Yah Veh,
to work good or evil of my own heart?
And what Yah Veh words, I word?
15 And now, behold, I go to my people:
come, and I counsel you
what this people work to your people
in the final days.
16 **ORACLE OF BILAM TO THE SON OF BEOR**
And he lifts his proverb and says,
— an oracle of Bilam the son of Beor
— an oracle of the master
whose eyes were shut but now unveiled:
17 — an oracle of him who hears the sayings of El
and knows the knowledge of Elyon:
who sees the vision of Shadday,
falling, with eyes uncovered:
I see him, but not now:
I observe him, but not near:
a Star treads from Yaaqov
and a Scion rises from Yisra El
and strikes the edges of Moab
and undermines all the sons of Sheth.
18 **ORACLE OF BILAM TO YISRA EL**
And Edom becomes a possession,
and Seir becomes a possession for his enemies;
and Yisra El works valiantly.
19 From Yaaqov
comes he who has dominion
and destroys him who survives of the city.
20 **ORACLE OF BILAM TO AMALEQ**
And he sees Amaleq,
and lifts his proverb and says,
Amaleq, the first of the goyim;
and his finality, eternal destruction.
21 **ORACLE OF BILAM TO THE QAYINIY**
And he sees the Qayiniy
and lifts his proverb and says,
Perennial, your settlement
and your nest, set in a rock:
but the Qayiniy is consumed
when Ashshur captures you.

NUMBERS 24, 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 And he took up **lifted** his *parable* **proverb**,
and said, *Alas* **Woe**,
who shall live when *God doeth* **El setteth** this!
24 And ships *shall come*
from the *coast* **hand** of *Chittim* **Kittim**,
and shall *afflict* *Asshur* **humble** *Ashshur*,
and shall *afflict* *Eber* **humble** *Heber*,
and he also shall *perish for ever* **be to eternal destruction**.
25 And *Balaam* **Bilam** rose up,
and went and returned to his place:
and *Balak* **Balaq** also went his way.

YISRA EL JOINS BAAL PEOR

25 And *Israel* **abode** **Yisra El** **settled** in *Shittim*,
and the people began to *commit whoredom* **whore**
with the daughters of *Moab*.
2 And they called the people
unto the sacrifices of their *gods* **elohim**:
and the people did eat,
and *bowed down* **prostrated** to their *gods* **elohim**.
3 And *Israel* **Yisra El**
joined *himself* unto *Baalpeor* **Baal Peor**:
and the *anger* **wrath** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
was kindled against *Israel* **Yisra El**.
4 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Take all the heads of the people,
and *hang* **impale** them up
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh** against the sun,
that the *fierce anger* **fuming wrath** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
may be turned away from *Israel* **Yisra El**.
5 And *Moses* **Mosheh**
said unto the judges of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Slay ye every one his **Men, slaughter your** men
that were joined unto *Baalpeor* **Baal Peor**.
6 And, behold,
one a man of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** came
and *brought unto* **approached** his brethren
with a *Midianitish* **Midyaniy** woman
in the *sight* **eyes** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
and in the *sight* **eyes** of all the *congregation* **witness**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
who were weeping before the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation.
7 And when *Phinehas* **Phinechas**,
the son of *Eleazar* **El Azar**,
the son of *Aaron* **Aharon** the priest, saw it,
he rose up from among the *congregation* **witness**,
and took a javelin in his hand;
8 And he went after the man of *Israel* **Yisra El**
into the *tent* **belly**,
and *thrust both* **stabbed the two** of them through,
the man of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and the woman *through* **into** her belly.
So the plague was *stayed* **restrained**
from the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
9 And those that died in the plague
were twenty and four thousand.
10 And the *LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh** **worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
11 *Phinehas* **Phinechas**, the son of *Eleazar* **El Azar**,
the son of *Aaron* **Aharon** the priest,
hath turned my *wrath* **fury** away
from the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
while he was *zealous for my sake* **envied over my envy**
among them,
that I *consumed not* **finished not off**
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** in my *jealousy* **envy**.
12 Wherefore say, Behold,
I give unto him my covenant of *peace* **shalom**:
13 And he shall have it, and his seed after him,
even the covenant of an *everlasting* **eternal** priesthood;
because he was *zealous* **envied** for his *God* **Elohim**,
and *made an atonement* **did kapar/atone**
for the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
14 Now the name of the **man**
Israelite — **the Yisra Eliy** that was *slain* **smitten**,
even that was slain with the *Midianitish* **Midyaniy** woman,
was *Zimri*, the son of *Salu* **Sallu**,
a *prince* **hierarch** of a *chief* **father's** house
among the *Simeonites* **Shimoniy**.

NUMBERS 24, 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

23 And he lifts his proverb and says, Woe,
who lives when El sets this?
24 And ships from the hand of Kittim,
humble Ashshur and humble Heber:
and he also becomes to eternal destruction.
25 — and Bilam rises and goes
and returns to his place:
and Balaq also goes his way.

YISRA EL JOINS BAAL PEOR

25 And Yisra El settles in Shittim
and the people begin to whore
with the daughters of Moab:
2 and they call the people
to the sacrifices of their elohim:
and the people eat and prostrate to their elohim:
3 and Yisra El joins Baal Peor.
4 And Yah Veh kindles his wrath against Yisra El;
and Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Take all the heads of the people
and impale them at the face of Yah Veh
against the sun;
so that the fuming wrath of Yah Veh
turns from Yisra El.
5 And Mosheh says to the judges of Yisra El,
Men, slaughter your men who joined Baal Peor.
6 And behold, a man of the sons of Yisra El comes
and approaches his brothers with a Midyaniy woman
in the eyes of Mosheh
and in the eyes
of all the witness of the sons of Yisra El
weeping
at the opening of the tent of the congregation.
7 And when Phinechas the son of El Azar
the son of Aharon the priest, sees it,
he rises from among the witness
and takes a javelin in his hand;
8 and he goes after the man of Yisra El into the belly
and stabs the two of them through
— the man of Yisra El and the woman into her belly:
thus the plague restrains from the sons of Yisra El.
9 — and they who die in the plague,
twenty—four thousand.
10 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
11 Phinechas the son of El Azar
the son of Aharon the priest
turns my fury from the sons of Yisra El,
in envying over my envy among them,
so that in my envy
I not finish off the sons of Yisra El.
12 So say, Behold,
I give him my covenant of shalom:
and he and his seed after him
— even the covenant of an eternal priesthood;
because he envies for his Elohim
and kapars/atones for the sons of Yisra El.
14 And the name of the man
— the smitten Yisra Eliy
— slain with the Midyaniy woman,
is Zimri the son of Sallu,
a hierarch of the house of a father
among the Shimoniy:

NUMBERS 25, 26

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 And the name of the *Midianitish* **Midyaniy** woman
that was *slain smitten* was *Cozbi* **Kozbi**,
the daughter of *Zur* **Sur**;
he was head over a *people* **peoples**,
and of a *chief* **hierarch of a father's** house in *Midian* **Midyan**.
16 And the *LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh** **worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
17 **Vex** **Tribulate** the *Midianites* **Midyaniy**, and smite them:
18 For they **vex** **tribulate** you with their *wiles* **deceit**,
wherewith they have *beguiled* **deceived** you
in the *matter* **word** of *Peor*,
and in the *matter* **word** of *Cozbi* **Kozbi**,
the daughter of a *prince* **hierarch of Midian** **Midyan**,
their sister,
which was slain in the day of the plague
for *Peor's* **sake** **word**.

SECOND MUSTER OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

26 And **so be** it *came to pass*, after the plague,
that the *LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh** **worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh** and unto *Eleazar* **El Azar**
the son of *Aaron* **Aharon** the priest, saying,
2 Take **Bear** the *sum* **heads** of all the *congregation* **witness**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
from **sons of** twenty years *old* and upward,
throughout **by** their fathers' house,
all that are able to go to *war* **the hostility** in *Israel* **Yisra El**.
3 And *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Eleazar* **El Azar** the priest
spake **worded** with them in the plains of *Moab*
by *Jordan* **Yarden** near *Jericho* **Yericho**, saying,
4 Take the *sum of the people*,
from **Sons of** twenty years *old* and upward;
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded *Moses* **misvahed** **Mosheh**
and the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
which went forth out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF REU BEN

5 *Reuben* **Reu Ben**,
the *eldest son* **firstbirthed** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**;
Hanoch,
of *whom* *cometh* the family of the *Hanochites* **Hanochiy**:
of *Pallu*, the family of the *Palluites* **Palluiy**:
6 Of *Hezron* **Hesron**,
the family of the *Hezronites* **Hesroniy**:
of *Carmi* **Karmi**, the family of the *Carmites* **Karmiy**.
7 These are the families of the *Reubenites* **Reu Beniy**:
and they that were *numbered* **mustered** of them
were forty and three thousand
and seven hundred and thirty.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF PALLU

8 And the sons of *Pallu*;
Eliab **Eli Ab**.
9 And the sons of *Eliab* **Eli Ab**;
Nemuel **Nemu El**, and *Dathan*, and *Abiram* **Abi Ram**.
This is that *Dathan* and *Abiram* **Abi Ram**,
which were *famous* **called** in the *congregation* **witness**,
who strove
against *Moses* **Mosheh** and against *Aaron* **Aharon**
in the *company* **witness** of *Korah* **Qorach**,
when they strove against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
10 And the earth opened her mouth,
and swallowed them up together with *Korah* **Qorach**,
when that *company* **died at that witness's death**,
what time **and** the fire *devoured* **consumed**
two hundred and fifty men:
and they became a sign.

Notwithstanding

11 the *children* **sons** of *Korah* **Qorach** died not.
12 The sons of *Simeon* after their **Shimon** by families:
of *Nemuel* **Nemu El**,
the family of the *Nemuelites* **Nemu Eliy**:
of *Yamin* **Yamiyn**, the family of the *Jaminites* **Yamiyniy**:
of *Jachin* **Yachin**, the family of the *Jachinites* **Yachiniy**:
13 Of *Zerah* **Zerach**, the family of the *Zarhites* **Zerachiy**:
of *Shaul*, the family of the *Shaulites* **Shauliy**.
14 These are the families of the *Simeonites* **Shimoniy**,
twenty and two thousand and two hundred.

NUMBERS 25, 26

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 and the name of the smitten Midyaniy woman,
Kozbi the daughter of Sur
the head over a peoples
and hierarch of the house of a father in Midyan.
16 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
17 Tribulate the Midyaniy and smite them:
18 for they tribulate you with their deceit,
whereby they deceive you in the word of Peor
and in the word of Kozbi,
the daughter of a hierarch of Midyan, their sister
— slain in the day of the plague for the word of Peor.

SECOND MUSTER OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

26 And so be it, after the plague,
Yah Veh words to Mosheh
and to El Azar the son of Aharon the priest, saying,
2 Bear the heads
of all the witness of the sons of Yisra El
— sons of twenty years and upward
by the house of their fathers
— all going to the hostility in Yisra El.
3 And Mosheh and El Azar the priest word with them
in the plains of Moab by Yarden near Yericho, saying,
4 Sons of twenty years and upward;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh
and the sons of Yisra El,
who go from the land of Misrayim.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF REU BEN

5 Reu Ben, the firstbirth of Yisra El:
the sons of Reu Ben:
Hanoch, of the family of the Hanochiy;
of Pallu, the family of the Palluiy;
6 of Hesron, the family of the Hesroniy;
of Karmi, the family of the Karmiy;
7 these are the families of the Reu Beniy:
and their mustered
— forty—three thousand
and seven hundred and thirty.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF PALLU

8 And the sons of Pallu:
Eli Ab.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF ELI AB

9 And the sons of Eli Ab:
Nemu El and Dathan and Abi Ram
— the Dathan and Abi Ram, the called of the witness,
who strove against Mosheh and against Aharon
in the witness of Qorach,
when they strove against Yah Veh:
10 and the earth opened her mouth
and swallowed them together with Qorach
at the death of that witness,
when the fire consumed two hundred and fifty men:
and they became a sign.
11 — but the sons of Qorach died not.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF SHIMON

12 The sons of Shimon by families:
of Nemu El, the family of the Nemu Eliy;
of Yamiyn, the family of the Yamiyniy;
13 of Yachin, the family of the Yachiniy;
of Zerach, the family of the Zerachiy;
of Shaul, the family of the Shauliy.
14 These are the families of the Shimoniy
— twenty—two thousand and two hundred.

NUMBERS 26

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF GAD

- 15 The children **sons** of Gad *after their by* families:
of Zephon **Sephoni**,
the family of the *Zephonites* **Sephoni**;
of Haggi, the family of the *Haggites* **Haggi**;
of Shuni, the family of the *Shunites* **Shuni**;
16 Of Ozni, the family of the *Oznites* **Ozni**;
of Eri **Eri**, the family of the *Erites* **Eri**;
17 Of Arod **Arodi**, the family of the *Arodites* **Arodi**;
of Areli, the family of the *Arelites* **Areli**.
18 These are the families of the *children sons* of Gad
according to those that were *numbered mustered* of them,
forty thousand and five hundred.
19 The sons of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** were Er and Onan;
and Er and Onan died in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF YAH HUDAH

- 20 And the sons of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
after their by families were;
of Shelah, the family of the *Shelanites* **Shelani**;
of Pharez **Peres**, the family of the *Pharzites* **Peresi**;
of Zerah **Zerach**, the family of the *Zarhites* **Zerachiy**.
21 And the sons of Pharez **Peres** were;
of Hezron **Hesron**, the family of the *Hezronites* **Hezroniy**;
of Hamul, the family of the *Hamulites* **Hamuliy**.
22 These are the families of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
according to those *that were numbered mustered* of them,
threescore and sixteen seventy and six thousand
and five hundred.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF YISSACHAR

- 23 Of the sons of *Issachar* *after their* **Yissachar** *by* families:
of Tola, the family of the *Tolaites* **Tolai**;
of Pua **Puah**, the family of the *Punites* **Puni**;
24 Of *Jashub* **Yashub**,
the family of the *Jashubites* **Yashubiy**;
of Shimron, the family of the *Shimronites* **Shimroniy**.
25 These are the families of *Issachar* **Yissachar**
according to those that were *numbered mustered* of them,
threescore sixty and four thousand and three hundred.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF ZEBULUN

- 26 Of the sons of Zebulun *after their by* families:
of Sered, the family of the *Sardites* **Sardi**;
of Elon, the family of the *Elonites* **Eloni**;
of *Jahleel* **Yachle El**,
the family of the *Jahleelites* **Yachle Eli**.
27 These are the families of the *Zebulunites* **Zebuluniy**
according to those that were *numbered mustered* of them,
threescore sixty thousand and five hundred.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF MENASH SHEH

THE SON OF YOSEPH

- 28 The sons of *Joseph* *after their* **Yoseph** *by* families
were *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** and *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**.
29 Of the sons of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**:
of Machir, the family of the *Machirites* **Machiriy**;
and Machir *begat Gilead* **birthed Gilad**;
of *Gilead* **Gilad** *come* the family of the *Gileadites* **Giladiy**.
30 These are the sons of *Gilead* **Gilad**:
of *Jeezer* **Iy Ezer**, the family of the *Jeezerites* **Iy Ezeriy**;
of *Helek* **Heleq**, the family of the *Helekites* **Heleqiy**;
31 And of *Asriel* **Asri El**,
the family of the *Asrielites* **Asri Eliy**
and of Shechem,
the family of the *Shechemites* **Shechemiy**
32 And of *Shemida* **Shemiya**,
the family of the *Shemidaites* **Shemidaiy**;
and of Hopher, the family of the *Hopherites* **Hopheriy**.
33 And *Zelophehad* **Seloph Had** the son of Hopher
had no sons, but daughters:
and the names of the daughters
of *Zelophehad* **Seloph Had**
were *Mahlah* **Machlah**, and Noah,
Hoglah, *Milchah* **Milchah**, and *Tirzah* **Tirsah**.
34 These are the families of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
and those that were *numbered mustered* of them,
fifty and two thousand and seven hundred.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF EPHRAYIM

THE SON OF YOSEPH

- 35 These are the sons of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
after their by families:

NUMBERS 26

exeGeses companion BIBLE

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF GAD

- 15 The sons of Gad by families:
of Sephoni, the family of the Sephoni;
of Haggi, the family of the Haggi;
of Shuni, the family of the Shuni;
16 of Ozni, the family of the Ozni;
of Eri, the family of the Eri;
17 of Arodi, the family of the Arodi;
of Areli, the family of the Areli;
18 these *are* the families of the sons of Gad
according to their mustered
— forty thousand and five hundred.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF YAH HUDAH

- 19 The sons of Yah Hudah *are* Er and Onan:
and Er and Onan died in the land of Kenaan.

- 20 And the sons of Yah Hudah by families:
of Shelah, the family of the Shelani;
of Peres, the family of the Peresi;
of Zerah, the family of the Zerachiy.

- 21 And the sons of Peres:
of Hesron, the family of the Hezroniy;
of Hamul, the family of the Hamuliy;
22 these *are* the families of Yah Hudah
according to their mustered
— seventy—six thousand and five hundred.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF YISSACHAR

- 23 Of the sons of Yissachar by families:
of Tola, the family of the Tolai;
of Puah, the family of the Puni;
24 of Yashub, the family of the Yashubiy;
of Shimron, the family of the Shimroniy;
25 these *are* the families of Yissachar
according to their mustered
— sixty—four thousand and three hundred.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF ZEBULUN

- 26 Of the sons of Zebulun by families:
of Sered, the family of the Sardi;
of Elon, the family of the Eloni;
of Yachle El, the family of the Yachle Eli;
27 these *are* the families of the Zebuluniy
according to their mustered
— sixty thousand and five hundred.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF MENASH SHEH

THE SON OF YOSEPH

- 28 The sons of Yoseph by families
— of Menash Sheh and Ephrayim:
of the sons of Menash Sheh:
of Machir, the family of the Machiriy;
and Machir *births* **birthed Gilad**;
of Gilad, the family of the Giladiy;
30 these *are* the sons of Gilad:
of Iy Ezer, the family of the Iy Ezeriy;
of Heleq, the family of the Heleqiy;
31 and of Asri El, the family of the Asri Eliy;
and of Shechem, the family of the Shechemiy;
and of Shemiya, the family of the Shemidaiy;
32 and of Hopher, the family of the Hopheriy;
33 and Seloph Had the son of Hopher has no sons,
but daughters:
and the names of the daughters of Seloph Had:
Machlah and Noah, Hoglah, Milchah and Tirsah;
34 these *are* the families of Menash Sheh
and their mustered
— fifty—two thousand and seven hundred.

MUSTER OF THE SONS OF EPHRAYIM

THE SON OF YOSEPH

- 35 These *are* the sons of Ephrayim by families:

NUMBERS 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- of Shuthelah **Shu Telach**,
the family of the *Shuthalhites* **Shu Telachiy**:
of Becher, the family of the *Bachrites* **Becheriy**:
of *Tahan* **Tachan**, the family of the *Tahanites* **Tachaniy**.
36 And these are the sons of *Shuthelah* **Shu Thelach**:
of Eran, the family of the *Eranites* **Eraniy**.
37 These are the families of the sons of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
according to those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them,
thirty and two thousand and five hundred.
These are the sons of *Joseph* after their **Yoseph** by families.
MUSTER OF THE SONS OF BEN YAMIN
38 The sons of *Benjamin* after their **Ben Yamin** by families:
of Bela, the family of the *Belaïtes* **Belaïy**:
of Ashbel, the family of the *Ashbelites* **Ashbeliy**:
of *Ahram* **Achi Ramiy**,
the family of the *Ahramites* **Ach Ramiy**:
39 Of *Shupham* **Shuphupham**,
the family of the *Shuphamites* **Shuphuphamiy**:
of Hupham, the family of the *Huphamites* **Huphamiy**.
40 And the sons of Bela were Ard and Naaman:
of Ard, the family of the *Ardites* **Ardiy**:
and of Naaman, the family of the *Naamites* **Naamiy**.
41 These are the sons of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
after their **by** families:
and they that were *numbered* **mustered** of them
were forty and five thousand and six hundred.
MUSTER OF THE SONS OF DAN
42 These are the sons of Dan after their **by** families:
of *Shuham* **Shucham**,
the family of the *Shuhamites* **Shuchamiy**.
These are the families of Dan after their **by** families.
43 All the families of the *Shuhamites* **Shuchamiy**,
according to those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them,
were *threescore* **sixty** and four thousand and four hundred.
MUSTER OF THE SONS OF ASHER
44 Of the *children* **sons** of Asher after their **by** families:
of *Jimna* **Yimnah**, the family of the *Jimnites* **Yimnahy**:
of *Jesui* **Yishvi**, the family of the *Jesuites* **Yishviy**:
of Beriah, the family of the *Beriites* **Beriïy**.
45 Of the sons of Beriah:
of Heber, the family of the *Heberites* **Heberiy**:
of *Malchiel* **Malki El**,
the family of the *Malchielites* **Malki Eliy**.
46 And the name of the daughter of Asher
was *Sarah* **Serach**.
47 These are the families of the sons of Asher
according to those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them;
who were fifty and three thousand and four hundred.
MUSTER OF THE SONS OF NAPHTALI
48 Of the sons of Naphtali after their **by** families:
of *Jahzeel* **Yachse El**,
the family of the *Jahzeelites* **Yachse Eliy**:
of Guni, the family of the *Gunites* **Guniy**:
49 Of *Jezer* **Yeser**, the family of the *Jezerites* **Yeseriy**:
of Shillem, the family of the *Shillemites* **Shillemiy**.
50 These are the families of Naphtali
according to their **by** families:
and they that were *numbered* **mustered** of them
were forty and five thousand and four hundred.
51 These were the *numbered* **mustered**
of the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**,
six hundred thousand
and a thousand seven hundred and thirty.
52 And the *LORD* spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
53 Unto these the land shall be *divided* **apportioned**
for an inheritance according to the number of names.
54 To many
thou shalt *give* the *more* **greaten** the inheritance,
and to few
thou shalt *give* the *less* **diminish** the inheritance:
to every *one* **man** shall his inheritance be given
according to **the mouth** of those
that were *numbered* **mustered** of him.
55 Notwithstanding
the land shall be *divided* **apportioned** by *lot* **pebble**:
according to the names of the *tribes* **rods** of their fathers
they shall inherit.
56 According to the *lot* **mouth of the pebble**

NUMBERS 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- of Shu Telach, the family of the Shu Telachiy;
of Becher, the family of the Becheriy;
of Tachan, the family of the Tachaniy;
and these *are* the sons of Shu Thelach:
of Eran, the family of the Eraniy;
37 these *are* the families of the sons of Ephrayim
according to their *mustered*
— thirty—two thousand and five hundred.
— these *are* the sons of Yoseph by families.
MUSTER OF THE SONS OF BEN YAMIN
38 The sons of Ben Yamin by families:
of Bela, the family of the Belaïy;
of Ashbel, the family of the Ashbeliy;
of Achi Ramiy, the family of the Ach Ramiy;
39 of Shuphupham, the family of the Shuphuphamiy;
of Hupham, the family of the Huphamiy;
40 and the sons of Bela:
Ard and Naaman:
of Ard, the family of the Ardiy;
and of Naaman, the family of the Naamiy;
41 these *are* the sons of Ben Yamin by families:
and their *mustered*
— forty—five thousand and six hundred.
MUSTER OF THE SONS OF DAN
42 These *are* the sons of Dan by families:
of Shucham, the family of the Shuchamiy;
these *are* the families of Dan by families;
43 all the families of the Shuchamiy,
according to their *mustered*
— sixty—four thousand and four hundred.
MUSTER OF THE SONS OF ASHER
44 Of the sons of Asher by families:
of Yimnah, the family of the Yimnahy;
of Yishvi, the family of the Yishviy;
of Beriah, the family of the Beriïy;
45 of the sons of Beriah:
of Heber, the family of the Heberiy;
of Malki El, the family of the Malki Eliy;
46 and the name of the daughter of Asher
is Serach;
47 these *are* the families of the sons of Asher
according to their *mustered*
— fifty—three thousand and four hundred.
MUSTER OF THE SONS OF NAPHTALI
48 Of the sons of Naphtali by families:
of Yachse El, the family of the Yachse Eliy;
of Guni, the family of the Guniy;
49 of Yeser, the family of the Yeseriy;
of Shillem, the family of the Shillemiy;
50 these *are* the families of Naphtali by families:
and their *mustered*
— forty—five thousand and four hundred.
51 These *are* the *mustered* of the sons of Yisra El
— six hundred thousand
and a thousand seven hundred and thirty.
52 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
53 Apportion them the land
— an inheritance
according to the number of names:
to many, *greaten* the inheritance
and to few, *diminish* the inheritance:
give every man his inheritance
according to the mouth of those *mustered* by him.
55 Only, apportion the land by pebble:
so that they inherit
by the names of the rods of their fathers:
56 according to the mouth of the pebble

NUMBERS 26, 27

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

shall the *possession* **inheritance** thereof
be *divided* **apportioned** between many and few.

MUSTER OF THE LEVIYM

- 57 And these are they that were *numbered* **mustered**
of the *Levites after their* **Leviym** by families:
of Gershon, the family of the *Gershonites* **Gershoniyy**;
of Kohath **Qehath**, the family of the *Kohathites* **Qehathiy**;
of Merari, the family of the *Merarites* **Merariyy**.
58 These are the families of the *Levites* **Leviym**:
the family of the *Libnites* **Libniyy**,
the family of the *Hebronites* **Hebroniyy**,
the family of the *Mahlites* **Machliyy**,
the family of the *Mushites* **Mushiyy**,
the family of the *Korathites* **Qorachiyy**.
And Kohath *begat* Amram **Qehath** *birthed* Am Ram.
59 And the name of Amram's wife Am Ram's woman
was Jochebed **Yah Chebed**, the daughter of Levi,
whom her mother *bare* **birthed** to Levi in Egypt **Misrayim**:
and she *bare* **birthed** unto Amram Am Ram
Aaron **Aharon** and Moses **Mosheh**,
and Miriam **Miryam** their sister.
60 And unto Aaron **Aharon** was *born* **birthed**
Nadab, and Abihu **Abi Hu**,
Eleazar **El Azar**, and Ithamar **Iy Thamar**.
61 And Nadab and Abihu **Abi Hu** died,
when they *offered* **oblated** strange fire
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**.
62 And those that were *numbered* **mustered** of them
were twenty and three thousand,
all males *from* **sons of** a month *old* and upward:
for they were not *numbered* **mustered**
among the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
because there was no inheritance given them
among the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**.
63 These are they that were *numbered* **mustered**
by Moses **Mosheh** and Eleazar **El Azar** the priest,
who *numbered* **mustered**
the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
in the plains of Moab
by Jordan **Yarden** near Jericho **Yericho**.
64 But among these there was not a man of them
whom Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon** the priest
numbered **mustered**,
when they *numbered* **mustered**
the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
in the wilderness of Sinai **Sinay**.
65 For the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had said of them,
In deathifying, They shall *surely* **die** **be deathified**
in the wilderness.
And there was **remained** not left a man of them,
save Caleb **except** **Kaleb**
the son of Jephunneh **Yephunneh**,
and Joshua **Yah Shua** the son of Nun.

INHERITANCE OF THE DAUGHTERS OF YISRA EL

- 27 Then *came* **approached**
the daughters of Zelophehad **Seloph Had**,
the son of Hopher, the son of Gilead **Gilad**,
the son of Machir,
the son of Manasseh **Menash Sheh**,
of the families of Manasseh **Menash Sheh**
the son of Joseph **Yoseph**:
and these are the names of his daughters;
Mahlah **Machlah**, Noah, and Hoglah,
and Milcah **Milchah**, and Tirzah **Tirsah**.
2 And they stood *before* Moses **at the face of Mosheh**,
and *before* Eleazar **at the face of El Azar** the priest,
and *before* the *princes* **at the face of the hierarchs**
and all the *congregation* **witness**,
by the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation, saying,
3 Our father died in the wilderness,
and he was not *in* **midst** the *company* **witness**
of them that *gathered* **congregated** *themselves* **together**
against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
in the *company* **witness** of Korah **Qorach**;
but died in his own sin, and had no sons.
4 Why should the name of our father
be done away from among his family,
because he hath no son?

NUMBERS 26, 27

exeGeses companion BIBLE

becomes the inheritance thereof
— apportioned between many and few.

MUSTER OF THE LEVIYM

- 57 And these are their *mustered*
of the Leviym by families:
of Gershon, the family of the Gershoniyy;
of Qehath, the family of the Qehathiy;
of Merari, the family of the Merariyy;
58 these are the families of the Leviym:
the family of the Libniyy,
the family of the Hebroniyy,
the family of the Machliyy,
the family of the Mushiyy,
the family of the Qorachiyy.
And Qehath *births* Am Ram.
59 And the name of the woman of Am Ram
is Yah Chebed the daughter of Levi
who *birthed* to Levi in Misrayim:
and she *births* to Am Ram
Aharon and Mosheh and Miryam their sister.
60 And Aharon *births*
Nadab and Abi Hu, El Azar and Iy Thamar.
61 And Nadab and Abi Hu die
when they *oblade* strange fire at the face of Yah Veh:
62 and their *mustered*
— twenty—three thousand,
all males *sons of* a month and upward:
for they are not *mustered* among the *sons of* Yisra El,
because there no inheritance is given them
among the *sons of* Yisra El.
63 These are their *mustered*
by Mosheh and El Azar the priest,
who *mustered* the *sons of* Yisra El
in the plains of Moab by Yarden near Yericho:
64 and among these there *is* not a man of them
whom Mosheh and Aharon the priest *mustered*
when they *mustered* the *sons of* Yisra El
in the wilderness of Sinay.
65 For Yah Veh said of them,
In *dying*, they die in the wilderness.
And there remains not a man of them
except Kaleb the son of Yephunneh
and Yah Shua the son of Nun.

INHERITANCE OF THE DAUGHTERS OF YISRA EL

- 27 Then approach the daughters of Seloph Had
the son of Hopher the son of Gilad
the son of Machir the son of Menash Sheh
of the families of Menash Sheh the son of Yoseph:
and these are the names of his daughters;
Machlah, Noah and Hoglah
and Milchah and Tirsah:
2 and they stand at the face of Mosheh
and at the face of El Azar the priest
and at the face of the hierarchs and all the witness,
by the opening of the tent of the congregation,
saying,
3 Our father died in the wilderness
and he was not among the witness
that congregated against Yah Veh
in the witness of Qorach;
but died in his own sin and had no sons.
4 Why diminish the name of our father
from among his family because he has no son?

NUMBERS 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 Give unto us *therefore* a possession
among the brethren of our father.
And *Moses Mosheh*
brought obliterated their *cause judgment*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.

6 And *the LORD spake Yah Veh said* unto *Moses Mosheh,*
saying,
7 The daughters of *Zelophehad Seloph Had*
speak right have worded thus:
in giving, thou shalt *surely* give them a possession
of an inheritance among their father's brethren;
and thou shalt cause the inheritance of their father
to pass unto them.

8 And thou shalt *speak word*
unto the *children sons of Israel Yisra El,* saying,
If a man die, and have no son,
then ye shall cause his inheritance
to pass unto his daughter.
9 And if he have no daughter,
then ye shall give his inheritance unto his brethren.
10 And if he have no brethren,
then ye shall give his inheritance
unto his father's brethren.
11 And if his father have no brethren,
then ye shall give his inheritance
unto *his kinsman that is next to him the kinflesh*
of his family,
and he shall possess it:
and it shall be unto the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*
a statute of judgment,
as *the LORD commanded Moses Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.*

12 And *the LORD Yah Veh said* unto *Moses Mosheh,*
Get thee up Ascend into this mount Abarim,
and see the land which I have given
unto the *children sons of Israel Yisra El.*
13 And when thou hast seen it,
thou also shalt be gathered unto thy people,
as *Aaron Aharon* thy brother was gathered.
14 For ye rebelled against my *commandment mouth*
in the *desert wilderness of Zin Sin,*
in the strife of the *congregation witness,*
to *sanctify hallow* me at the water
before in front of their eyes:
that is the water of *Meribah Strife*
in *Kadesh Qadesh* in the wilderness of *Zin Sin.*

MOSHEH MISVAHS YAH SHUA

15 And *Moses spake Mosheh worded*
unto *the LORD Yah Veh,* saying,
16 Let *the LORD Yah Veh,*
the *God Elohim* of the spirits of all flesh,
set muster a man over the *congregation witness,*
17 Which may go out *before them at their face,*
and which may go in *before them at their face,*
and which may lead them out,
and which may bring them in;
that the *congregation witness of the LORD Yah Veh*
be not as *sheep flocks* which have no *shepherd tender.*

18 And *the LORD Yah Veh said* unto *Moses Mosheh,*
Take thee *Joshua Yah Shua* the son of Nun,
a man in whom is the spirit,
and *lay prop* thine hand upon him;
19 And *set stand* him
before Eleazar at the face of El Azar the priest,
and *before at the face of* all the *congregation witness;*
and *give misvah* him a *charge* in their *sight eyes.*

20 And thou shalt *put give*
some of thine honour majesty upon him,
that all the *congregation witness*
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*
may be *obedient hearken.*

21 And he shall stand
before Eleazar at the face of El Azar the priest,
who shall ask *counsel* for him
after the judgment of Urim
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
at his *word mouth* shall they go out,
and at his *word mouth* they shall come in,
both he, and all the *children sons of Israel Yisra El* with him,
even all the *congregation witness.*

NUMBERS 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

5 Give us a possession
among the brothers of our father.
— and Mosheh oblates their judgment
at the face of Yah Veh.

6 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh, saying,
7 Thus word the daughters of Seloph Had:
In giving, give them a possession of an inheritance
among the brothers of their father;
and pass the inheritance of their father to them.

8 And word to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
If a man die and have no son,
then pass his inheritance to his daughter:
9 and if he have no daughter,
then give his inheritance to his brothers:
10 and if he have no brothers,
then give his inheritance to the brothers of his father:
11 and if his father have no brothers,
then give his inheritance to the kinflesh of his family
and he possesses it:
and so be it to the sons of Yisra El,
a statute of judgment,
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.
12 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Ascend this mount Abarim
and see the land I gave to the sons of Yisra El:
13 and when you see it,
you also gather to your people,
as Aharon your brother was gathered:
14 for you rebelled against my mouth
in the wilderness of Sin,
in the strife of the witness,
to hallow me at the water in front of their eyes:
— the water of Meribah/Strife
in Qadesh in the wilderness of Sin.

MOSHEH MISVAHS YAH SHUA

15 And Mosheh words to Yah Veh, saying,
16 Yah Veh, Elohim of the spirits of all flesh,
muster a man over the witness
17 to go out at their face and go in at their face
and to lead them out and to bring them in;
so that the witness of Yah Veh
become not as flocks having no tender.

18 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh,
Take Yah Shua the son of Nun,
a man in whom the Spirit is
and prop your hand on him;
19 and stand him at the face of El Azar the priest
and at the face of all the witness;
and misvah him in their eyes:
20 and give of your majesty on him,
that all the witness of the sons of Yisra El hearken:
21 and stand him at the face of El Azar the priest
to ask for him
after the judgment of Urim
at the face of Yah Veh:
at his mouth they go out
and at his mouth they come in
— both he and all the sons of Yisra El with him
— even all the witness.

NUMBERS 27, 28

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

22 And Moses did **Mosheh** worked
as the **LORD** commanded **Yah Veh** misvahed him:
and he took *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
and set **stood** him
before *Eleazar* **at the face of** **El Azar** the priest,
and before **at the face of** all the *congregation* **witness**:
23 And he *laid* **propped** his hands upon him,
and gave **misvahed** him a *charge*,
as the **LORD** commanded **Yah Veh** worded
by the hand of *Moses* **Mosheh**.

DAILY OBLATIONS TO YAH VEH

28

And the **LORD** spake **Yah Veh** worded
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
2 Command **Misvah** the children **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
and say unto them,
My offering **qorban**,
and my bread for my *sacrifices* made by fire **firings**,
for a sweet savour unto me **scent of my rest**,
shall ye *observe* **guard**
to offer **oblate** unto me in their *due* season.
3 And thou shalt say unto them,
This is the offering made by fire **firing**
which ye shall offer **oblate** unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**;
two lambs
of the first year without spot **yearling sons integrious**
day by day **daily**, for a continual *burnt offering* **holocaust**.
4 The one lamb shalt thou offer **work** in the morning,
and the other **second** lamb
shalt thou offer at even **work between evenings**;
5 And a tenth part of an ephah of flour
for a meat **an** offering,
mingled **mixed** with
the fourth part of an hin of *beaten* **pestled** oil.
6 It is a continual *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
which was *ordained* **worked** in mount *Sinai* **Sinay**
for a sweet savour **scent of rest**,
a sacrifice made by fire **firing** unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**.
7 And the *drink offering* **libation** thereof
shall be the fourth part of an hin for the one lamb:
in the *holy place* **holies**
shalt thou cause the *strong wine* **intoxicants**
to be *poured* **libated** unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**
for a *drink offering* **libation**.
8 And the other **second** lamb
shalt thou offer at even **work between evenings**:
as the meat offering of the morning,
and as the *drink offering* **libation** thereof,
thou shalt offer **work** it, a *sacrifice* made by fire **firing**,
of a sweet savour **scent of rest** unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**.

SHABBATH OBLATIONS TO YAH VEH

9 And on the *sabbath* **shabbath** day
two lambs
of the first year without spot **yearling sons integrious**,
and two *tenth deals* **tenths** of flour for a meat **an** offering,
mingled **mixed** with oil,
and the *drink offering* **libation** thereof:
10 This is the *burnt offering* **holocaust**
of every *sabbath* **the shabbath on the shabbath**,
beside the continual *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
and his *drink offering* **libation**.

MONTHLY OBLATIONS TO YAH VEH

11 And in the *beginnings* **heads** of your months
ye shall offer **oblate** a *burnt offering* **holocaust**
unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**;
two *young bullocks* **son bullocks of the oxen**,
and one ram,
seven lambs
of the first year without spot **yearling sons integrious**;
12 And three *tenth deals* **tenths** of flour
for a meat **an** offering,
mingled **mixed** with oil, for one bullock;
and two *tenth deals* **tenths** of flour for a meat **an** offering,
mingled **mixed** with oil, for one ram;
13 And a *several tenth deal* **tenth and a tenth** of flour
mingled **mixed** with oil
for a meat **an** offering unto one lamb;
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**
of a sweet savour **scent of rest**,
a *sacrifice* made by fire **firing** unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**.

NUMBERS 27, 28

exeGeses companion BIBLE

22 And Mosheh works as Yah Veh misvahs him:
and he takes Yah Shua
and stands him at the face of El Azar the priest
and at the face of all the witness:
23 and he props his hands on him and misvahs him
as Yah Veh worded by the hand of Mosheh.

DAILY OBLATIONS TO YAH VEH

28

2 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
Misvah the sons of Yisra El, and say to them,
Guard my qorban
and my bread for my firings for a scent of my rest;
to oblate to me in their season:
and say to them,
This is the firing you oblate to Yah Veh:
two integrious lambs yearling sons daily
for a continual holocaust:
4 work the one lamb in the morning
and work the second lamb between evenings;
5 and a tenth of an ephah of flour for an offering
mixed with the fourth of a hin of pestled oil;
6 — a continual holocaust,
work it in mount Sinay
for a scent of rest, a firing to Yah Veh:
7 and the libation thereof,
the fourth of a hin for the one lamb:
libate the intoxicants in the holies
to Yah Veh for a libation:
8 and work the second lamb between evenings:
as the offering of the morning
and as the libation thereof,
work it, a firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh.

SHABBATH OBLATIONS TO YAH VEH

9 And on the shabbath day
two integrious lambs yearling sons
and two tenths of flour for an offering mixed with oil
and the libation thereof:
10 this is the holocaust
of the shabbath on the shabbath,
beside the continual holocaust and its libation.

MONTHLY OBLATIONS TO YAH VEH

11 And in the heads of your months,
oblate a holocaust to Yah Veh:
two son bullocks of the oxen and one ram
and seven integrious lambs yearling sons;
12 and three tenths of flour for an offering,
mixed with oil, for one bullock;
and two tenths of flour for an offering,
mixed with oil, for one ram;
13 and a tenth and a tenth of flour mixed with oil,
for an offering to one lamb;
for a holocaust of a scent of rest
— a firing to Yah Veh:

NUMBERS 28, 29

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 And their *drink offerings libations* shall be half an hin of wine unto a bullock, and the third *part* of an hin unto a ram, and a fourth *part* of an hin unto a lamb: this is the *burnt offering holocaust of every month by month* throughout the months of the year.

15 And one *kid buck* of the goats for a *sin offering the sin* unto the **LORD Yah Veh** shall be *offered worked*, beside the continual *burnt offering holocaust*, and his *drink offering libation*.

PASACH TO YAH VEH

16 And in the *fourteenth day of the first month* **And in the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month** is the *passover pasach of the LORD Yah Veh*.

17 And in the *fifteenth day of this month* is the *feast celebration*: seven days shall *unleavened bread matsah* be eaten.

18 In the first day shall be an holy convocation; ye shall *do work* no *manner work of servile therein service*:

19 But ye shall *offer oblate a sacrifice made by fire firing* for a *burnt offering holocaust* unto the **LORD Yah Veh**; two *young bullocks sons of the oxen*, and one ram, and seven lambs *of the first year yearling sons*: they shall be unto you *without blemish integrious*:

20 And their *meat offering* shall be of flour *mingled mixed* with oil: three *tenth deals tenths* shall ye *offer work* for a bullock, and two *tenth deals tenths* for a ram;

21 A *several tenth deal tenth and a tenth* shalt thou *offer work* for every **one** lamb, throughout the seven lambs:

22 And one *goat for a sin offering buck for the sin*, to *make an atonement kapar/atone* for you.

23 Ye shall *offer work* these beside the *burnt offering holocaust* in the morning, which is for a continual *burnt offering holocaust*.

24 After **As** this *manner* ye shall *offer work* daily, throughout the seven days, the *meat bread of the sacrifice made by fire firing*, of a *sweet savour scent of rest* unto the **LORD Yah Veh**: it shall be *offered worked* beside the continual *burnt offering holocaust*, and his *drink offering libation*.

25 And on the seventh day ye shall have an holy convocation; ye shall *do no servile work no work of service*.

THE OFFERING OF WEEKS UNTO YAH VEH

26 Also in the day of the *firstfruits, firstlings* when ye *bring oblate* a new *meat offering* unto the **LORD Yah Veh**, after your weeks *be out*, ye shall have an holy convocation; ye shall *do no servile work no work of service*:

27 But ye shall *offer oblate the burnt offering holocaust* for a *sweet savour scent of rest* unto the **LORD Yah Veh**; two *young son bullocks of the oxen*, one ram, seven lambs *of the first year yearling sons*;

28 And their *meat offering of flour mingled mixed* with oil, three *tenth deals tenths* unto one bullock, two *tenth deals tenths* unto one ram,

29 A *several tenth deal tenth and a tenth* unto one lamb, *throughout for* the seven lambs;

30 And one *kid buck* of the goats, to *make an atonement kapar/atone* for you.

31 Ye shall *offer work* them beside the continual *burnt offering holocaust*, and his *meat offering*, (they shall be unto you *without blemish integrious*) and their *drink offerings libations*.

BLASTINGS TO YAH VEH

29

And in the seventh month, on the first *day* of the month, ye shall have an holy convocation; ye shall *do no servile work no work of service*: it is a day of *blowing the trumpets blastings* unto you.

NUMBERS 28, 29

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 and their libations, half of a hin of wine to a bullock and a third of a hin to a ram and a fourth of a hin to a lamb: this *is* the month by month holocaust throughout the months of the year: and work one buck of the goats for the sin to Yah Veh, beside the continual holocaust and his libation.

PASACH TO YAH VEH

16 And in the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month, *is* the pasach of Yah Veh: and in the fifteenth day of this month, *is* the celebration: seven days eat matsah.

18 The first day *is* a holy convocation; work no work of service: but oblate a firing for a holocaust to Yah Veh; two sons of the oxen and one ram and seven integrious lambs yearling sons: and their offering, of flour mixed with oil: work three tenths for a bullock and two tenths for a ram: work a tenth and a tenth for one lamb throughout the seven lambs: and one buck for the sin to kapar/atone for you.

22 Work these beside the holocaust of the morning — the continual holocaust.

24 Work this daily, throughout the seven days, the bread of the firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh: work it beside the continual holocaust and its libation: and on the seventh day, have a holy convocation: work no work of service.

THE OFFERING OF WEEKS TO YAH VEH

26 And in the day of the firstlings, when you oblate a new offering to Yah Veh, after your weeks, have a holy convocation: work no work of service: and oblate the holocaust for a scent of rest to Yah Veh; two son bullocks of the oxen, one ram, seven lambs yearling sons; and their offering of flour mixed with oil, three tenths to one bullock, two tenths to one ram, a tenth and a tenth to one lamb for the seven lambs; and one buck of the goats, to kapar/atone for you: work them beside the continual holocaust and its offering: they and their libations being integrious.

29

And in the seventh month, on the first of the month, have a holy convocation; work no work of service: it *is* a day of blastings to you:

BLASTINGS TO YAH VEH

NUMBERS 29

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 2 And ye shall offer **work** a burnt offering **holocaust** for a sweet savour **scent of rest** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**; one young bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram, and seven lambs
of the first year without blemish **yearling sons integrious**:
- 3 And their *meat* offering shall be of flour mingled **mixed** with oil, three *tenth deals* **tenths** for a bullock, and two *tenth deals* **tenths** for a ram,
4 And one tenth *deal* for one lamb, throughout the seven lambs:
- 5 And one *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**, to make an atonement **kapar/atone** for you:
- 6 Beside the burnt offering **holocaust** of the month, and his *meat* offering, and the daily burnt offering **continual holocaust**, and his *meat* offering, and their *drink offerings* **libations**, according unto their *manner* **judgment**, for a sweet savour **scent of rest**, a sacrifice made by fire **firing** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
- HOLY CONVOCATIONS TO YAH VEH**
- 7 And ye shall have on the tenth *day* of this seventh month an holy convocation; and ye shall afflict **humble** your souls: ye shall *not do any* **work no work** therein:
- 8 But ye shall offer **oblite** a burnt offering **holocaust** unto the **LORD Yah Veh** for a sweet savour **scent of rest**; one young bullock **son of the oxen**, one ram, and seven lambs of the first year **yearling sons**; they shall be unto you *without blemish* **integrious**:
- 9 And their *meat* offering shall be of flour mingled **mixed** with oil, three *tenth deals* **tenths** to a bullock, and two *tenth deals* **tenths** to one ram,
10 A several *tenth deal* **tenth and a tenth** for one lamb, throughout the seven lambs:
- 11 One *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**; beside the *sin offering* **that for the sin** of atonement **kippurim**, and the continual burnt offering **holocaust**, and the *meat* offering of it, and their *drink offerings* **libations**.
- 12 And on the fifteenth day of the seventh month ye shall have an holy convocation; ye shall *do no servile* work **no work of service**, and ye shall keep **celebrate** a feast **celebration** unto the **LORD Yah Veh** seven days:
- 13 And ye shall offer **oblite** a burnt offering **holocaust**, a sacrifice made by fire **firing**, of a sweet savour **scent of rest** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**; thirteen young bullocks **sons of the oxen**, two rams, and fourteen lambs of the first year **yearling sons**; they shall be *without blemish* **integrious**:
- 14 And their *meat* offering shall be of flour mingled **mixed** with oil, three *tenth deals* **tenths** unto every **each** bullock of the thirteen bullocks, two *tenth deals* **tenths** to each ram of the two rams,
15 And a several *tenth deal* **tenth and a tenth** to each lamb of the fourteen lambs:
- 16 And one *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**; beside the continual burnt offering **holocaust**, his *meat* offering, and his *drink offering* **libation**.
- 17 And on the second day ye shall offer twelve young bullocks **sons of the oxen**, two rams, fourteen lambs
of the first year *without spot* **yearling sons integrious**:
- 18 And their *meat* offering and their *drink offerings* **libations** for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs, shall be according to their number, after the *manner* **judgment**:
- 19 And one *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**; beside the continual burnt offering **holocaust**, and the *meat* offering thereof, and their *drink offerings* **libations**.
- 20 And on the third day eleven bullocks, two rams,

NUMBERS 29

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 2 and work a holocaust for a scent of rest to Yah Veh; one son of the oxen, one ram
and seven integrious lambs yearling sons:
3 and their offering, of flour mixed with oil, three tenths for a bullock, and two tenths for a ram,
4 and one tenth for one lamb, throughout the seven lambs:
5 and one buck of the goats for the sin, to kapar/atone for you:
6 beside the holocaust of the month and its offering and the continual holocaust and its offering and their libations, according to their judgment, for a scent of rest — a firing to Yah Veh.
- HOLY CONVOCATIONS TO YAH VEH**
- 7 And on the tenth of this seventh month, have a holy convocation and humble your souls: work no work:
8 but oblate a holocaust to Yah Veh for a scent of rest; one bullock son of the oxen, one ram
and seven integrious lambs yearling sons:
9 and their offering, of flour mixed with oil, three tenths to a bullock, and two tenths to one ram,
10 a tenth and a tenth for one lamb, throughout the seven lambs:
11 one buck of the goats for the sin; beside that for the sin of kippurim and the continual holocaust and the offering thereof and their libations.
- 12 And on the fifteenth day of the seventh month, have a holy convocation; work no work of service
and celebrate a celebration to Yah Veh seven days:
13 — a firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh; thirteen bullocks sons of the oxen, two rams
and fourteen integrious lambs yearling sons:
14 and their offering, of flour mixed with oil, three tenths to every each bullock of the thirteen bullocks, two tenths to each ram of the two rams,
15 and a tenth and a tenth to each lamb of the fourteen lambs:
16 and one buck of the goats for the sin; beside the continual holocaust, its offering and its libation.
- 17 And on the second day, twelve bullocks sons of the oxen, two rams, and fourteen integrious lambs yearling sons:
18 and their offering and their libations for the bullocks, for the rams and for the lambs, be according to their number, after the judgment:
19 and one buck of the goats for the sin; beside the continual holocaust and the offering thereof and their libations.
- 20 And on the third day eleven bullocks, two rams,

NUMBERS 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- fourteen lambs
21 of the first year without blemish **yearling sons integrious;**
And their *meat* offering
and their *drink offerings* **libations**
for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs,
shall be according to their number,
after the *manner* **judgment:**
22 And one *goat for a sin offering* **buck for the sin;**
beside the continual *burnt offering* **holocaust,**
and his *meat* offering, and his *drink offering* **libation.**
23 And on the fourth day ten bullocks, two rams,
and fourteen lambs
24 of the first year without blemish **yearling sons integrious:**
Their *meat* offering and their *drink offerings* **libations**
for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs,
shall be according to their number,
after the *manner* **judgment:**
25 And one *kid* **buck** of the goats for a *sin offering* **the sin;**
beside the continual *burnt offering* **holocaust,**
his *meat* offering, and his *drink offering* **libation.**
26 And on the fifth day nine bullocks, two rams,
and fourteen lambs
27 of the first year without blemish **yearling sons integrious:**
And their *meat* offering
and their *drink offerings* **libations**
for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs,
shall be according to their number,
after the *manner* **judgment:**
28 And one *goat for a sin offering* **buck for the sin;**
beside the continual *burnt offering* **holocaust,**
and his *meat* offering, and his *drink offering* **libation.**
29 And on the sixth day eight bullocks, two rams,
and fourteen lambs
30 of the first year without blemish **yearling sons integrious:**
And their *meat* offering
and their *drink offerings* **libations**
for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs,
shall be according to their number,
after the *manner* **judgment:**
31 And one *goat for a sin offering* **buck for the sin;**
beside the continual *burnt offering* **holocaust,**
his *meat* offering, and his *drink offering* **libation.**
32 And on the seventh day seven bullocks, two rams,
and fourteen lambs
33 of the first year without blemish **yearling sons integrious:**
And their *meat* offering
and their *drink offerings* **libations**
for the bullocks, for the rams, and for the lambs,
shall be according to their number,
after the *manner* **judgment:**
34 And one *goat for a sin offering* **buck for the sin;**
beside the continual *burnt offering* **holocaust,**
his *meat* offering, and his *drink offering* **libation.**
35 On the eighth day
ye shall have a *solemn assembly* **an abstinence:**
ye shall *do no servile work* **no work of service therein:**
36 But ye shall *offer a burnt offering* **oblade a holocaust,**
a *sacrifice made by fire* **firing,**
of a *sweet savour* **scnt of rest** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh:**
one bullock, one ram,
seven lambs
37 of the first year without blemish **yearling sons integrious:**
Their *meat* offering and their *drink offerings* **libations**
for the bullock, for the ram, and for the lambs,
shall be according to their number,
after the *manner* **judgment:**
38 And one *goat for a sin offering* **buck for the sin;**
beside the continual *burnt offering* **holocaust,**
and his *meat* offering, and his *drink offering* **libation.**
39 These *things* ye shall *do work*
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** in your *set feasts* **seasons,**
beside your *vows*, and your *freewill offerings* **voluntaries,**
for your *burnt offerings* **holocausts,**
and for your *meat offerings*,
and for your *drink offerings* **libations,**
and for your *peace offerings* **shelamim.**
40 And *Moses* **Mosheh** told the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
according to all that the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded *Moses* **misvahed Mosheh.**

NUMBERS 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- fourteen integrious lambs yearling sons:
21 and their offering and their libations
for the bullocks, for the rams and for the lambs,
be according to their number, after the judgment:
22 and one buck for the sin;
beside the continual holocaust
and its offering and its libation.
23 And on the fourth day ten bullocks, two rams
24 fourteen integrious lambs yearling sons:
their offering and their libations
for the bullocks, for the rams and for the lambs,
be according to their number, after the judgment:
25 and one buck of the goats for the sin;
beside the continual holocaust,
its offering and its libation.
26 And on the fifth day nine bullocks, two rams
27 and fourteen integrious lambs yearling sons:
and their offering and their libations
for the bullocks, for the rams and for the lambs,
be according to their number after the judgment:
28 and one buck for the sin;
beside the continual holocaust
and its offering and its libation.
29 And on the sixth day eight bullocks, two rams
30 and fourteen integrious lambs yearling sons:
and their offering and their libations
for the bullocks, for the rams and for the lambs,
be according to their number, after the judgment:
31 and one buck for the sin;
beside the continual holocaust,
its offering and its libation.
32 And on the seventh day seven bullocks, two rams
33 and fourteen integrious lambs yearling sons:
and their offering and their drink libations
for the bullocks, for the rams and for the lambs,
be according to their number, after the judgment:
34 and one buck for the sin;
beside the continual holocaust,
its offering and its libation.
35 On the eighth day have an abstinence:
work no work of service:
36 and oblate a holocaust,
a firing of a scent of rest to Yah Veh:
one bullock, one ram,
seven integrious lambs yearling sons:
37 their offering and their libations
for the bullock, for the ram and for the lambs,
be according to their number, after the judgment:
38 and one buck for the sin;
beside the continual holocaust
and its offering and its libation.
39 Work these to Yah Veh in your seasons,
beside your vows and your voluntaries,
for your holocausts and for your offerings
and for your libations and for your shelamim.
40 — and Mosheh tells the sons of Yisra El
according to all that Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

NUMBERS 30

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

VOWS UNTO YAH VEh

30

And Moses spake **Mosheh worded**
 unto the heads of the **tribes rods**
 concerning the *children sons* of **Israel Yisra El**, saying,
 This is the *thing word*
 which the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *commanded misvahed*.
 2 If a man vow a vow unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
 or swear **oath** an oath to bind his soul with a bond;
 he shall not *break profane* his word,
 he shall *do work* according to all
 that proceedeth out of his mouth.
 3 If a woman also vow a vow unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
 and bind *herself* by a bond,
 being in her father's house in her youth;
 4 And her father hear her vow,
 and her bond wherewith she hath bound her soul,
 and her father shall *hold his peace at her hush*;
 then all her vows shall *stand be raised*,
 and every bond wherewith she hath bound her soul
 shall *stand be raised*.
 5 But if her father disallow her in the day that he heareth;
 not any of her vows,
 or of her bonds wherewith she hath bound her soul,
 shall *stand be raised*:
 and the **LORD Yah Veh** shall forgive her,
 because her father disallowed her.
 6 And if she *had at all an husband became a man's*,
 when she vowed **her vows were upon her**,
 or uttered *ought out the utterance* of her lips,
 wherewith she bound her soul;
 7 And her **husband man** heard it,
 and *held his peace hushed* at her
 in the day that he heard it:
 then her vows shall *stand be raised*,
 and her bonds wherewith she bound her soul
 shall *stand be raised*.
 8 But if her **husband man** disallowed her
 on the day that he heard it;
 then he shall *make break* her vow which she vowed,
 and *that which she uttered with the utterance* of her lips,
 wherewith she bound her soul, *of none effect*:
 and the **LORD Yah Veh** shall forgive her.
 9 But every vow of a widow,
 and of her that is divorced or expelled,
 wherewith they have bound their souls,
 shall *stand be raised* against her.
 10 And if she vowed in her **husband's man's** house,
 or bound her soul by a bond with an oath;
 11 And her **husband man** heard it,
 and *held his peace hushed* at her, and disallowed her not:
 then all her vows shall *stand be raised*,
 and every bond wherewith she bound her soul
 shall *stand be raised*.
 12 But if *in breaking*,
 her **husband man** hath *utterly made broken* them void
 on the day he heard them;
 then whatsoever proceeded out of her lips
 concerning her vows,
 or concerning the bond of her soul,
 shall not *stand be raised*:
 her **husband man** hath *made broken* them void;
 and the **LORD Yah Veh** shall forgive her.
 13 Every vow, and every *binding bonded* oath
 to afflict **humble** the soul,
 her **husband man** may *establish raise* it,
 or her **husband man** may *make it void break*.
 14 But *if in hushing*,
 her **husband altogether hold his peace man husheth**
 at her from day by day;
 then he *establisheth raiseth* all her vows, or all her bonds,
 which *are be* upon her:
 he *confirmeth raiseth* them,
 because he *held his peace hushed* at her
 in the day that he heard them.
 15 But *if in breaking*
 he shall *any ways make them void break them*
 after that he hath heard them;
 then he shall bear her *iniquity perversity*.

NUMBERS 30

exeGesés companion BIBLE

VOWS TO YAH VEh

30

And Mosheh words to the heads of the rods
 concerning the sons of Yisra El, saying,
 This *is* the word Yah Veh misvahs:
 2 When a man vows a vow to Yah Veh,
 or oaths an oath to bind a bond on his soul,
 he profanes not his word;
 he works according to all proceeding from his mouth.
 3 And when a woman vows a vow to Yah Veh,
 and in her youth
 binds a bond in the house of her father;
 4 and her father hears the vow
 and the bond she binds on his soul,
 and her father hushes;
 then all her vows become raised:
 and every bond she binds on her soul
 becomes raised.
 5 And if, in the day he hears,
 her father disallows her;
 none of her vows
 or of the bonds she binds on her soul
 become raised:
 and Yah Veh forgives her,
 because her father disallowed her.
 6 And if she becomes to a man,
 and her vows *are* on her,
 or binds the utterance of her lips on her soul;
 7 and her man hears,
 and in the day he hears, hushes;
 then her vows become raised
 and the bonds she binds on her soul become raised:
 8 and if, on the day he hears, her man disallows her,
 then he breaks the vow she vowed
 and the utterance of her lips she bound on her soul;
 and Yah Veh forgives her.
 9 And the vow of a widow or an expelled,
 all she binds on her soul
 becomes raised against her:
 10 and if she vowed in the house of her man,
 or bound a bond on her soul with an oath;
 11 and her man hears, and hushes at her,
 and disallows her not;
 then all her vows become raised
 and every bond she bound on her soul
 becomes raised.
 12 And if in breaking,
 her man breaks them on the day he hears them;
 then whatever proceeded from her lips
 concerning her vows,
 or concerning the bond on her soul,
 becomes not raised:
 her man broke them and Yah Veh forgives her.
 13 Every vow and every bonded oath
 to humble the soul,
 her man raises or her man breaks.
 14 And if in hushing,
 her man hushes at her day by day;
 then he raises all her vows and all her bonds
 being on her:
 he raises them
 because he hushed at her in the day he heard them.
 15 And if in breaking,
 he breaks them after he hears them;
 then he bears her perversity.

NUMBERS 30, 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 These are the statutes,
which the LORD **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**,
between a man and his wife **woman**,
between the father and his daughter,
being yet in her youth in her father's house.

SONS OF YISRA EL AVENGE THE MIDYANIY

31 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh**, saying,
2 Avenge the **avengement**
of the children sons of Israel **Yisra El**
of the Midianites **Midyaniy**:
afterward shalt thou be gathered unto thy people.
3 And Moses spake **Mosheh worded** unto the people,
saying,
Arm some **Equip men** of yourselves unto the war **hostility**,
and let them go against the Midianites **Midyaniy**,
and avenge the LORD **give the avengement of Yah**
of Midian **on Midyan**.
4 Of every tribe a thousand
A thousand per rod — a thousand per rod,
throughout all the tribes **rods of Israel Yisra El**,
shall ye send to the war **hostility**.
5 So there were delivered **set apart**
out of the thousands of Israel **Yisra El**,
a thousand slain of every tribe **pierced per rod**,
twelve thousand armed **equipped** for war **hostility**.
6 And Moses **Mosheh** sent them to the war **hostility**,
a thousand of every tribe **per rod**,
them and Phinehas **Phinechas**
the son of Eleazar **El Azar** the priest,
to the war **hostility**,
with the holy instruments,
and the trumpets to **blow blast** in his hand.
7 And they warred **hosted** against the Midianites **Midyaniy**,
as the LORD **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**;
and they slew **slaughtered** all the males.
8 And they slew **slaughtered**
the kings **sovereigns** of Midian **Midyan**,
beside the rest of them that were slain **pierced**; namely,
Evi, and Rekem **Reqem**, and Zur **Sur**, and Hur, and Reba,
five kings **sovereigns** of Midian **Midyan**:
Balaam **Bilam** also the son of Beor
they slew **slaughtered** with the sword.
9 And the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**
took **captured** all the women of Midian **Midyan** captives,
and their little ones **toddlers**,
and took the spoil **plunder** of all their cattle **animals**,
and all their flocks **chattel**, and all their goods **valuables**.
10 And they burnt all their cities
wherein they dwelt **of their settlements**,
and all their goodly castles **walls**, with fire.
11 And they took all the spoil **loot**, and all the prey,
both of men **human** and of beasts **animal**.
12 And they brought the captives,
and the prey, and the spoil **loot**,
unto Moses **Mosheh** and Eleazar **El Azar** the priest,
and unto the congregation **witness**
of the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
unto the camp at the plains of Moab,
which are by Jordan **Yarden** near Jericho **Yericho**.
13 And Moses **Mosheh**, and Eleazar **El Azar** the priest,
and all the princes **hierarchs** of the congregation **witness**,
went forth to meet them without the camp.
14 And Moses **Mosheh** was **wrath enraged**
with the officers of the host **them who oversee the valiant**,
with the captains **governors** over thousands,
and captains **governors** over hundreds,
which came from the battle **hostility of war**.
15 And Moses **Mosheh** said unto them,
Have ye saved **preserved** all the women **females** alive?
16 Behold, these **caused became**
to the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
through the counsel **word** of Balaam **Bilam**,
to commit trespass **set treason** against the LORD **Yah Veh**
in the matter **word** of Peor,
and there was a plague
among the congregation **witness** of the LORD **Yah Veh**.

NUMBERS 30, 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

16 These are the statutes Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh
between a man and his woman,
between the father and his daughter,
still in her youth in the house of her father.

SONS OF YISRA EL AVENGE THE MIDYANIY

31 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
2 Avenge the avengement
of the sons of Yisra El against the Midyaniy:
and afterward, gather to your people.
3 And Mosheh words to the people, saying,
Equip some of your men to the hostility;
and have them go against Midyaniy
and give the avengement of Yah on Midyan.
4 Send a thousand per rod — a thousand per rod
of all the rods of Yisra El to the hostility.
5 So they set apart, of the thousands of Yisra El,
a thousand piercers per rod,
twelve thousand equipped for hostility:
6 and Mosheh sends them to the hostility
— a thousand per rod
— them and Phinechas the son of El Azar the priest
to the hostility with the holy instruments;
and in his hand, the trumpets to blast.
7 And they host against the Midyaniy
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh;
and they slaughter all the males:
8 and they slaughter the sovereigns of Midyan,
beside the rest whom they pierced
— Evi and Reqem and Sur and Hur and Reba
— five sovereigns of Midyan:
and they slaughter Bilam the son of Beor
with the sword:
9 and the sons of Yisra El
capture all the women of Midyan and their toddlers
and take the plunder of all their animals
and all their chattel and all their valuables:
10 and they burn all their cities of settlements
and all their walls, with fire:
11 and they take all the loot and all the prey,
— human and animal:
12 and they bring
the captives and the prey and the loot,
to Mosheh and El Azar the priest
and to the witness of the sons of Yisra El,
to the camp at the plains of Moab
by Yarden near Yericho.
13 And Mosheh and El Azar the priest
and all the hierarchs of the witness,
go forth to meet them outside the camp.
14 And Mosheh is enraged
with them who oversee the valiant
— with the governors over thousands
and governors over hundreds
who come from the hostility of war.
15 And Mosheh says to them,
Preserved you all the females alive?
16 Behold, these become to the sons of Yisra El,
through the word of Bilam,
to set treason against Yah Veh in the word of Peor
and a plague among the witness of Yah Veh.

NUMBERS 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 17 Now therefore
kill slaughter every male among the *little ones toddlers*,
 and *kill slaughter* every woman that hath known man
 by *lying bedding* with *him a male*.
- 18 But all the
women children toddlers among the women,
 that have not known
 a man by *lying with him bedding with a male*,
 keep **preserve** alive for yourselves.
- 19 And *do ye abide encamp* without the camp seven days:
 whosoever hath *killed slaughtered* any *person soul*,
 and whosoever hath touched any *slain pierced*,
 purify *both yourselves for your sins* and your captives
 on the third day, and on the seventh day.
- 20 And purify **for your sins** your *raiment clothes*,
 and all *that is made instruments* of skins,
 and all work of goats' *hair*,
 and all *things instruments* made of *wood timber*.
- 21 And *Eleazar El Azar* the priest
 said unto the men of *war hostility*
 which went to the *battle war*,
 This is the *ordinance statute* of the *law torah*
 which *the LORD Yah Veh*
 commanded *Moses misvahed Mosheh*;
- 22 Only the gold, and the silver, the *brass copper*,
 the iron, the tin, and the lead,
 23 Every *thing word* that may abide the fire,
 ye shall *make pass* it go through the fire,
 and it shall be *clean purified*:
 nevertheless it shall be purified **for your sins**
 with the water of *separation exclusion*:
 and all that abideth not the fire
 ye shall *make go pass* through the water.
- 24 And ye shall *wash launder* your clothes
 on the seventh day,
 and ye shall be *clean purified*,
 and afterward ye shall come into the camp.
- HALVING THE PREY**
- 25 And *the LORD spake Yah Veh said*
 unto *Moses Mosheh*, saying,
 26 Take **Bear** the *sum top* of the prey
 that was taken **of the captives**,
 both of *man human* and of *beast animal*,
 thou, and *Eleazar El Azar* the priest,
 and the *chief head* fathers of the *congregation witness*:
 27 And *divide halve* the prey into two parts;
 between them that *took manipulated* the war upon them,
 who went out to *battle the hostility*,
 and between all the *congregation witness*:
 28 And *levy a tribute lift an assessment*
 unto *the LORD Yah Veh*
 of the men of war which went out to battle:
 one soul of five hundred,
 both of the *persons humans*, and of the *beeves oxen*,
 and of the *asses he burros*, and of the *sheep flocks*:
 29 Take it of their half,
 and give it unto *Eleazar El Azar* the priest,
 for an *heave offering exaltment*
 of *the LORD unto Yah Veh*.
- 30 And of the *children sons* of *Israel's Yisra El's* half,
 thou shalt take one *portion possession* of fifty,
 of the *persons humans*,
 of the *beeves oxen*, of the *asses he burros*,
 and of the *flocks*, of all *manner of beasts animals*,
 and give them unto the *Levites Leviym*,
 which *keep guard* the *charge guard*
 of the tabernacle of *the LORD Yah Veh*.
- 31 And *Moses Mosheh* and *Eleazar El Azar* the priest
 did *worked* as *the LORD Yah Veh*
 commanded *Moses misvahed Mosheh*.
- 32 And the *booty prey*,
 being the *rest remainder* of the *prey plunder*
 which the men of *war hostility* had *caught plundered*,
 was six hundred thousand and seventy thousand
 and five thousand *sheep flocks*,
- 33 And *threescore and twelve seventy and two* thousand
beeves oxen,
- 34 And *threescore sixty* and one thousand *asses he burros*,

NUMBERS 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 17 And now slaughter every male among the toddlers
 and slaughter every woman who has known man
 by bedding with a male:
- 18 and all the toddlers among the women,
 who have not known bedding with a male,
 preserve alive for yourselves.
- 19 Whoever slaughters any soul
 and whoever touches any pierced,
 encamp outside the camp seven days
 and purify for your sins and your captives
 on the third day and on the seventh day:
- 20 and for your sins, purify your clothes
 and all instruments of skins and all work of goats
 and all instruments made of timber.
- 21 And El Azar the priest says to the men of hostility
 who go to the war,
 This is the statute of the torah
 Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh:
- 22 only the gold and the silver, the copper,
 the iron, the tin and the lead,
 23 every word that abides the fire:
 pass it through the fire and it purifies:
 only it purifies for your sins
 with the water of exclusion:
 and all that abides not the fire,
 pass through the water:
- 24 and launder your clothes on the seventh day
 and purify
 and afterward come into the camp.
- HALVING THE PREY**
- 25 And Yah Veh says to Mosheh, saying,
 26 Bear the top of the prey of the captives,
 both of human and of animal,
 you and El Azar the priest
 and the head fathers of the witness:
 and halve the prey into two parts;
 between them who manipulate the war
 who go out to the hostility
 and between all the witness:
 28 and lift an assessment to Yah Veh
 of the men of war who go out to battle:
 one soul of five hundred,
 both of the humans and of the oxen
 and of the he burros and of the flocks;
 29 take of their half
 and give it to El Azar the priest
 for an exaltment to Yah Veh.
- 30 And of the half of the sons of Yisra El,
 take one possession of fifty
 of the humans, of the oxen, of the he burros
 and of the flocks, of all animals;
 and give them to the Leviym
 who guard the guard of the tabernacle of Yah Veh.
- 31 And Mosheh and El Azar the priest work
 as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.
- 32 And the prey, being the remainder of the plunder
 which the men of hostility plundered:
 six hundred thousand and seventy thousand
 and five thousand flocks,
 33 and seventy—two thousand oxen,
 34 and sixty—one thousand he burros,

NUMBERS 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

35 And thirty and two thousand in all,
of women that had not known man
by *lying bedding* with him **and of human souls**,
— **all the souls are thirty and two thousand.**

36 And the half,
which was the *portion allotment* of them
that went out to *war* **the hostility**,
was in number three hundred thousand
and seven and thirty thousand
and five hundred *sheep flocks*:

37 And the *LORD'S tribute* **Yah Veh's assessment**
of the *sheep flocks* was six hundred
and *threescore and fifteen* **seventy and five.**

38 And the *beeves* **oxen** were thirty and six thousand;
of which the *LORD'S tribute* **Yah Veh's assessment**
was *threescore and twelve* **seventy and two.**

39 And the *asses* **he burros**
were thirty thousand and five hundred;
of which the *LORD'S tribute* **Yah Veh's assessment**
was *threescore* **sixty** and one.

40 And the *persons* **souls of humanity**
were sixteen thousand;
of which the *LORD'S tribute* **Yah Veh's assessment**
was thirty and two *persons* **souls.**

41 And *Moses* **Mosheh** gave the *tribute assessment*,
which was
the *LORD'S* *heave offering* **Yah Veh's exaltment**,
unto *Eleazar* **El Azar** the priest,
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded *Moses* **misvahed Mosheh.**

42 And of the *children* **sons** of *Israel's* **Yisra El's** half,
which *Moses* **divided Mosheh halved**
from the men that *warred* **hosted**,

43 (Now the half
that pertained unto the congregation **for the witness**
was three hundred thousand and thirty thousand
and seven thousand and five hundred
sheep of the flocks,

44 And thirty and six thousand *beeves* **oxen**,
45 And thirty thousand *asses* **he burros** and five hundred,
46 And sixteen thousand *persons* **souls of humanity**;))
47 Even of the *children* **sons** of *Israel's* **Yisra El's** half,
Moses **Mosheh** took one *portion* **possession** of fifty,
both of man **human** and of *beast* **animal**,
and gave them unto the *Levites* **Leviym**,
which *kept* **guarded** the *charge* **guard**
of the tabernacle of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded *Moses* **misvahed Mosheh.**

48 And the *officers* which were over **they who oversaw**
thousands of the host,
the *captains* **governors** of thousands,
and *captains* **governors** of hundreds,
came near unto *Moses* **Mosheh**:

49 And they said unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
Thy servants have *taken* **lifted** the *sum* **heads**
of the men of war which are under our *charge* **hand**,
and *there lacketh not one* **no** man of us **was oversighted.**

50 We have *therefore*
brought an oblation **oblated a qorban**
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
what every man hath *gotten* **found**,
of *jewels* **instruments** of gold, *chains* **anklets**,
and *bracelets*, *rings* **signets**, *earrings*, and *tablets* **beads**,
to *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for our souls
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh.**

51 And *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Eleazar* **El Azar** the priest
took the gold of them,
even all *wrought* *jewels* **works of instruments.**

52 And all the gold of the *offering* **exaltment**
that they *offered up to the LORD* **exalted unto Yah Veh**,
of the *captains* **governors** of thousands,
and of the *captains* **governors** of hundreds,
was sixteen thousand seven hundred and fifty shekels.

53 (For the men of *war* **hostility**
had *taken* *spoil* **plundered**, every man for himself.)

54 And *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Eleazar* **El Azar** the priest
took the gold

NUMBERS 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

35 and of women who had not known man
by bedding with him and of human souls,
— all the souls, thirty—two thousand.

36 And the half,
the allotment of them who go out to the hostility,
number three hundred thousand
and thirty—seven thousand
and five hundred flocks.

37 And their assessment to Yah Veh:
of the flocks, six hundred and seventy—five;
and the oxen, thirty—six thousand;
and their assessment to Yah Veh, seventy—two;
and the he burros, thirty thousand
and five hundred;

38 and their assessment to Yah Veh, sixty—one:
and the souls of humanity, sixteen thousand;
and their assessment to Yah Veh, thirty—two souls.

40 And Mosheh gives the assessment,
the exaltment to Yah Veh,
to El Azar the priest,
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

41 And the half to the sons of Yisra El,
which Mosheh halves from the men who host,
— the half for the witness,
three hundred thousand and thirty thousand
and seven thousand and five hundred of the flocks,
and thirty—six thousand oxen,
and thirty thousand and five hundred he burros,
and sixteen thousand souls of humanity;
of the half of the sons of Yisra El,
Mosheh takes one possession of fifty,
of human and of animal
and gives them to the Leviym,
who guard the guard of the tabernacle of Yah Veh;
as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.

42 And they who oversee thousands of the host,
the governors of thousands
and governors of hundreds
come near to Mosheh:
and they say to Mosheh,
Your servants lifted the heads
of the men of war under our hand
and oversighted no man of us:
we oblata a qorban for Yah Veh,
of what every man found:
instruments of gold, anklets and bracelets,
signets, earrings and beads,
to kapar/atone for our souls at the face of Yah Veh.

43 And Mosheh and El Azar the priest
take the gold from them, all works of instruments:
and all the gold of the exaltment
they exalt to Yah Veh,
of the governors of thousands
and of the governors of hundreds,
sixteen thousand seven hundred and fifty shekels
— the men of hostility had plundered,
every man for himself:
and Mosheh and El Azar the priest take the gold

NUMBERS 32

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

We will **shall** build
sheepfolds **flock walls** here for our *cattle* **chattel**,
 and cities for our *little ones* **toddlers**:
 17 But we ourselves will **shall** go ready *armed* **equipped**
before at the face of the children sons of Israel **Yisra El**,
 until we have brought them unto their place:
 and our *little ones* **toddlers** shall *dwell* **settle**
 in the *fenced* **fortified** cities
because of the at the face of them
inhabitants of who settled the land.
 18 We will **shall** not return unto our houses,
 until the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
 have inherited every man his inheritance.
 19 For we will **shall** not inherit with them
 on yonder side *Jordan* **Yarden**, or *forward* **beyond**;
 because our inheritance is fallen to us
 on this side *Jordan eastward* **Yarden toward the rising**.
 20 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto them,
 If ye will *do* **shall work** this *thing* **word**,
 if ye will **shall** go *armed* **equipped**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh to war,
 21 And will go **shall pass** all of you
armed **equipped** over *Jordan* **Yarden**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
 until he hath *driven out* **dispossessed** his enemies
 from *before him* **his face**,
 22 And the land be subdued
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
 then afterward ye shall return,
 and be *guiltless* **innocent**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
 and *before Israel at the face of Yisra El*;
 and this land shall be your possession
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
 23 But if ye will **shall** not *do work* so, behold,
 ye have sinned against *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
 and *be sure* **perceive that** your sin will **shall** find you out.
 24 Build you cities for your *little ones* **toddlers**,
 and *folds* **walls** for your *sheep* **flocks**;
 and *do work* that
 which hath proceeded out of your mouth.
 25 And the *children sons* of *Gad*
 and the *children sons* of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
spake **said** unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
 Thy servants will *do* **shall work**
 as my *lord* **commandeth** **adoni misvaheth**.
 26 Our *little ones* **toddlers**, our *wives* **women**,
 our *flocks* **chattel**, and all our *cattle* **animals**,
 shall be there in the cities of *Gilead* **Gilad**:
 27 But thy servants will **shall** pass over,
 every man *armed* **equipped** for *war* **hostility**,
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh to battle war,
 as my *lord* **saith** **adoni wordeth**.
 28 So concerning them
Moses **commanded** **Mosheh misvahed**
Eleazar **El Azar** the priest,
 and *Joshua* **Yah Shua** the son of *Nun*,
 and the *chief head* fathers of the *tribes* **rods**
 of the *children sons* of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
 29 And *Moses* **Mosheh** said unto them,
 If the *children sons* of *Gad*
 and the *children sons* of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
 will **shall** pass with you over *Jordan* **Yarden**,
 every man *armed* **equipped** to *battle war*,
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
 and the land shall be subdued *before you at your face*;
 then ye shall give them the land of *Gilead* **Gilad**
 for a possession:
 30 But if they will **shall** not pass over with you
armed **equipped**,
 they shall *have possessions* **possess** among you
 in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**.
 31 And the *children sons* of *Gad*
 and the *children sons* of *Reuben* **Reu Ben** answered,
 saying,
 As *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *said* **worded** unto thy servants,
 so will **shall** we *do work*.
 32 We will **shall** pass over *armed* **equipped**

NUMBERS 32

exeGeses companion BIBLE

We build flock walls here for our chattel
 and cities for our toddlers:
 17 but we ourselves go ready equipped
 at the face of the sons of Yisra El,
 until we bring them to their place:
 and our toddlers settle in the fortified cities
 at the face of them who settle the land:
 18 we return not to our houses
 until every man of the sons of Yisra El
 inherits his inheritance:
 19 for we inherit not with them
 on yonder side Yarden, or beyond;
 because our inheritance falls to us
 on this side Yarden toward the rising.
 20 And Mosheh says to them,
 If you work this word,
 if you go equipped at the face of Yah Veh to war,
 21 and all of you pass equipped over Yarden
 at the face of Yah Veh,
 until he dispossesses his enemies from his face,
 22 and subdue the land at the face of Yah Veh:
 then afterward you return and become innocent
 at the face of Yah Veh and at the face of Yisra El;
 and this land becomes your possession
 at the face of Yah Veh.
 23 And if you work not so, behold,
 you sin against Yah Veh:
 and perceive that your sin finds you out.
 24 Build cities for your toddlers
 and walls for your flocks;
 and work as proceeds from your mouth.
 25 And the sons of Gad and the sons of Reu Ben
 say to Mosheh, saying,
 26 Your servants work as my adoni misvahs:
 our toddlers, our women,
 our chattel and all our animals,
 be there in the cities of Gilad:
 27 but your servants pass over,
 every man equipped for hostility,
 at the face of Yah Veh to war,
 as my adoni worded.
 28 And concerning them
 Mosheh misvahs El Azar the priest
 and Yah Shua the son of Nun
 and the head fathers of the rods
 of the sons of Yisra El:
 29 and Mosheh says to them,
 If the sons of Gad and the sons of Reu Ben
 pass over Yarden with you,
 every man equipped to war, at the face of Yah Veh,
 and the land subdues at your face;
 30 then give them the land of Gilad for a possession:
 but if they pass not over with you equipped,
 they possess among you in the land of Kenaan.
 31 And the sons of Gad and the sons of Reu Ben
 answer, saying,
 32 As Yah Veh worded to your servants, thus we work:
 we — we pass over equipped

NUMBERS 32, 33

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh
into the land of Canaan Kenaan,
that the possession of our inheritance
on this side Jordan Yarden may be ours.
33 And Moses Mosheh gave unto them,
even to the children sons of Gad,
and to the children sons of Reuben Reu Ben,
and unto half the tribe scion of Manasseh Menash Sheh
the son of Joseph Yoseph,
the kingdom sovereignty of Siho
king sovereign of the Amorites Emoriy,
and the kingdom sovereignty of Og
king sovereign of Bashan,
the land, with the cities thereof in the coasts borders,
even the cities of the country land round about.
34 And the children sons of Gad
built Dibon, and Ataroth, and Aroer,
35 And Atroth, Shopphan, and Jaazer Yazer, and Jogbehah,
36 And Bethnimrah Beth Nimrah,
and Bethharan Beth Ha Ran,
fenced fortified cities: and folds walls for sheep flocks.
37 And the children sons of Reuben Reu Ben
built Heshbon, and Elealeh El Aleh,
and Kirjathaim Qiryathaim,
38 And Nebo, and Baalmeon Baal Meon,
(their names being changed turned around,) and Shibmah Sibmah:
and gave other names called by name,
the names unto the cities which they builded.
39 And the children sons of Machir
the son of Manasseh Menash Sheh
went to Gilead Gilad, and took captured it,
and dispossessed the Amorite Emoriy which was in it.
40 And Moses Mosheh gave Gilead Gilad
unto Machir the son of Manasseh Menash Sheh;
and he dwelt settled therein.
41 And Jair Yair the son of Manasseh Menash Sheh
went and took captured
the small towns living areas thereof,
and called them Havothjair Havoth Yair.
42 And Nobah Nobach went
and took Kenath captured Qenath,
and the villages daughters thereof,
and called it Nobah Nobach, after his own name.

RESUME' OF THE JOURNEYS OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

33 These are the journeys
of the children sons of Israel Yisra El,
which went forth out of the land of Egypt Misrayim
with their armies hosts
under the hand of Moses Mosheh and Aaron Aharon.
2 And Moses wrote Mosheh inscribed
their goings out proceedings according to their journeys
by the commandment mouth of the LORD Yah Veh:
and these are their journeys
according to their goings out proceedings.
3 And they departed pulled stakes from Rameses
in the first month, on the fifteenth day of the first month;
on the morrow after the passover pasach
the children sons of Israel Yisra El
went out with an high lifted hand
in the sight eyes of all the Egyptians Misrayim.
4 For the Egyptians Misrayim
buried entombed all their firstborn firstbirthed,
which the LORD Yah Veh had smitten among them:
upon their gods elohim also
the LORD executed Yah Veh worked judgments.
5 And the children sons of Israel Yisra El
removed pulled stakes from Rameses,
and pitched encamped in Succoth Sukkoth/Brush Arbors.
6 And they departed pulled stakes
from Succoth Sukkoth/Brush Arbors,
and pitched encamped in Etham,
which is in the edge end of the wilderness.
7 And they removed pulled stakes from Etham,
and turned again unto Pihahiroth Pi Ha Hiroth,
which is before Baalzephon at the face of Baal Sephon:
and they pitched before encamped at the face of Migdol.
8 And they departed pulled stakes
from before Pihahiroth the face of Piha Hiroth,

NUMBERS 32, 33

exeGesés companion BIBLE

at the face of Yah Veh to the land of Kenaan,
and the possession of our inheritance
on this side Yarden becomes ours.
33 And Mosheh gives them
— the sons of Gad and the sons of Reu Ben
and half the scion of Menash Sheh the son of Yoseph,
the sovereignty of Siho sovereign of the Emoriy
and the sovereignty of Og sovereign of Bashan
— the land, with the cities thereof in the borders,
— the cities of the land all around.
34 And the sons of Gad
build Dibon and Ataroth and Aroer
35 and Atroth, Shopphan and Yazer and Jogbehah
36 and Beth Nimrah and Beth Ha Ran
— fortified cities: and walls for flocks.
37 And the sons of Reu Ben
build Heshbon and El Aleh and Qiryathaim
and Nebo and Baal Meon
— their names being turned around
and Sibmah:
and calls names to the cities they build by name.
39 And the sons of Machir the son of Menash Sheh
goes to Gilad and captures it
and dispossesses the Emoriy therein.
40 And Mosheh gives Gilad
to Machir the son of Menash Sheh;
and he settles therein.
41 And Yair the son of Menash Sheh
goes and captures the living areas thereof
and calls them Havoth Yair:
42 and Nobach goes and captures Qenath
and the daughters thereof
and calls it Nobach, after his own name.

RESUME' OF THE JOURNEYS OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

33 These are the journeys of the sons of Yisra El,
who go from the land of Misrayim with their hosts
under the hand of Mosheh and Aharon:
2 and Mosheh inscribes their proceedings
according to their journeys by the mouth of Yah Veh:
and these are their journeys
according to their proceedings.
3 And they pull stakes from Rameses
in the first month,
on the fifteenth day of the first month;
on the morrow after the pasach
the sons of Yisra El go out with lifted hand
in the eyes of all the Misrayim:
4 and the Misrayim entomb all their firstbirths
whom Yah Veh smote among them:
and Yah Veh worked judgments on their elohim.
5 And the sons of Yisra El pull stakes from Rameses
and encamp in Sukkoth/Brush Arbors:
6 and they pull stakes from Sukkoth/Brush Arbors
and encamp in Etham in the end of the wilderness:
7 and they pull stakes from Etham
and turn again to Pi Ha Hiroth
at the face of Baal Sephon
and they encamp at the face of Migdol:
8 and they pull stakes from the face of Pi Ha Hiroth

NUMBERS 33

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and passed through the midst of the sea
into the wilderness,
and went three days' journey in the wilderness of Etham,
and pitched **encamped** in Marah.
9 And they removed **pulled stakes** from Marah,
and came unto Elim:
and in Elim were twelve fountains of water,
and *threescore and ten* **seventy** palm trees;
and they pitched **encamped** there.
10 And they removed **pulled stakes** from Elim,
and encamped by the *Red* **Reed** sea.
11 And they removed **pulled stakes** from the *Red* **Reed** sea,
and encamped in the wilderness of Sin.
12 And they took their journey **pulled stakes**
out of the wilderness of Sin,
and encamped in *Dophkah* **Dophqah**.
13 And they departed **pulled stakes**
from *Dophkah* **Dophqah**,
and encamped in Alush.
14 And they removed **pulled stakes** from Alush,
and encamped at Rephidim,
where was no water for the people to drink.
15 And they departed **pulled stakes** from Rephidim,
and pitched **encamped** in the wilderness of *Sinai* **Sinay**.
16 And they removed **pulled stakes**
from the *desert* **wilderness** of *Sinai* **Sinay**,
and pitched **encamped**
at *Kibrothhattaavah* **Qibroth Hat Taavah**.
17 And they departed **pulled stakes**
from *Kibrothhattaavah* **Qibroth Hat Taavah**,
and encamped at *Hazereth* **Haseroth**.
18 And they departed **pulled stakes**
from *Hazereth* **Haseroth**,
and pitched **encamped** in Rithmah.
19 And they departed **pulled stakes** from Rithmah,
and pitched **encamped** at *Rimmonparez* **Rimmon Phares**.
20 And they departed **pulled stakes**
from *Rimmonparez* **Rimmon Phares**,
and pitched **encamped** in Libnah.
21 And they removed **pulled stakes** from Libnah,
and pitched **encamped** at Rissah.
22 And they journeyed **pulled stakes** from Rissah,
and pitched **encamped** in *Kehelathah* **Qehelathah**.
23 And they went **pulled stakes**
from *Kehelathah* **Qehelathah**,
and pitched **encamped** in mount *Shapher* **Shepher**.
24 And they removed **pulled stakes**
from mount *Shapher* **Shepher**,
and encamped in Haradah.
25 And they removed **pulled stakes** from Haradah,
and pitched **encamped** in *Makheloth* **Maqheloth**.
26 And they removed **pulled stakes**
from *Makheloth* **Maqheloth**,
and encamped at *Tahath* **Tachath**.
27 And they departed **pulled stakes** from *Tahath* **Tachath**,
and pitched **encamped** at *Tarah* **Terach**.
28 And they removed **pulled stakes** from *Tarah* **Terach**,
and pitched **encamped** in *Mithcah* **Mithqah**.
29 And they went **pulled stakes** from *Mithcah* **Mithqah**,
and pitched **encamped** in Hashmonah.
30 And they departed **pulled stakes** from Hashmonah,
and encamped at Moseroth.
31 And they departed **pulled stakes** from Moseroth,
and pitched **encamped** in *Benejaakan* **Bene Yaaqan**.
32 And they removed **pulled stakes**
from *Benejaakan* **Bene Yaaqan**,
and encamped at *Horhagidgad* **Hor Hag Gidgad**.
33 And they went **pulled stakes**
from *Horhagidgad* **Hor Hag Gidgad**,
and pitched **encamped** in *Jotbathah* **Yotbathah**.
34 And they removed **pulled stakes**
from *Jotbathah* **Yotbathah**,
and encamped at *Ebronah* **Hebronah**.
35 And they departed **pulled stakes**
from *Ebronah* **Hebronah**,
and encamped at *Eziongaber* **Esyon Geber**.
36 And they removed **pulled stakes**
from *Eziongaber* **Esyon Geber**,

NUMBERS 33

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and pass through midst the sea into the wilderness
and go a three day journey in the wilderness of Etham
and encamp in Marah:
9 and they pull stakes from Marah and come to Elim;
and in Elim *are* twelve fountains of water
and seventy palm trees;
and they encamp there:
10 and they pull stakes from Elim
and encamp by the Reed sea:
11 and they pull stakes from the Reed sea
and encamp in the wilderness of Sin:
12 and they pull stakes from the wilderness of Sin
and encamp in Dophqah:
13 and they pull stakes from Dophqah
and encamp in Alush:
14 and they pull stakes from Alush
and encamp at Rephidim
where there *is* no water for the people to drink:
15 and they pull stakes from Rephidim
and encamp in the wilderness of Sinay:
16 and they pull stakes from the wilderness of Sinay
and encamp at Qibroth Hat Taavah:
17 and they pull stakes from Qibroth Hat Taavah
and encamp at Haseroth:
18 and they pull stakes from Haseroth
and encamp in Rithmah:
19 and they pull stakes from Rithmah
and encamp at Rimmon Phares:
20 and they pull stakes from Rimmon Phares
and encamp in Libnah:
21 and they pull stakes from Libnah
and encamp at Rissah:
22 and they pull stakes from Rissah
and encamp in Qehelathah:
23 and they pull stakes from Qehelathah
and encamp in mount Shepher:
24 and they pull stakes from mount Shepher
and encamp in Haradah:
25 and they pull stakes from Haradah
and encamp in Maqheloth:
26 and they pull stakes from Maqheloth
and encamp at Tachath:
27 and they pull stakes from Tachath
and encamp at Terach:
28 and they pull stakes from Terach
and encamp in Mithqah:
29 and they pull stakes from Mithqah
and encamp in Hashmonah:
30 and they pull stakes from Hashmonah
and encamp at Moseroth:
31 and they pull stakes from Moseroth
and encamp in Bene Yaaqan:
32 and they pull stakes from Bene Yaaqan
and encamp at Hor Hag Gidgad:
33 and they pull stakes from Hor Hag Gidgad
and encamp in Yotbathah:
34 and they pull stakes from Yotbathah
and encamp at Hebronah:
35 and they pull stakes from Hebronah
and encamp at Esyon Geber:
36 and they pull stakes from Esyon Geber

NUMBERS 33

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and pitched **encamped** in the wilderness of *Zin Sin*,
which is *Kadesh Qadesh*.

37 And they removed **pulled stakes** from *Kadesh Qadesh*,
and pitched **encamped** in mount *Hor*,
in the *edge end* of the land of *Edom*.

38 And *Aaron Aharon* the priest
went up **ascended** into mount *Hor*
at the *commandment mouth* of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and died there,
in the fortieth year after the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
were come out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
in the first day of the fifth month.

39 And *Aaron Aharon*
was a **son** an hundred and twenty and three years *old*
when he died **at his death** in mount *Hor*.

40 And *king sovereign* *Arad the Canaanite Kenaaniy*,
which dwelt **settled** in the south
in the land of *Canaan Kenaan*,
heard of the coming of the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*.

41 And they departed **pulled stakes** from mount *Hor*,
and pitched **encamped** in *Zalmonah Sal Monah*.

42 And they departed **pulled stakes**
from *Zalmonah Sal Monah*,
and pitched **encamped** in *Punon*.

43 And they departed **pulled stakes** from *Punon*,
and pitched **encamped** in *Oboth*.

44 And they departed **pulled stakes** from *Oboth*,
and pitched **encamped** in *Ijeabarim Iye Ha Abiram*,
in the border of *Moab*.

45 And they departed **pulled stakes** from *lim Iyiy*,
and pitched **encamped** in *Dibongad*.

46 And they removed **pulled stakes** from *Dibongad*,
and encamped in *Almondiblathaim Almon Diblathaim*.

47 And they removed **pulled stakes**
from *Almondiblathaim Almon Diblathaim*,
and pitched **encamped** in the mountains of *Abarim*,
before **at the face** of *Nebo*.

48 And they departed **pulled stakes**
from the mountains of *Abarim*,
and pitched **encamped** in the plains of *Moab*
by *Jordan Yarden* near *Jericho Yericho*.

49 And they pitched **encamped** by *Jordan Yarden*,
from *Bethjesimoth Beth Ha Yeshimoth*
even unto *Abelshittim Abel Hash Shittim*
in the plains of *Moab*.

50 And the *LORD spake Yah Veh worded*
unto *Moses Mosheh* in the plains of *Moab*
by *Jordan Yarden* near *Jericho Yericho*, saying,
51 *Speak Word* unto the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*,
and say unto them,
When ye are passed over *Jordan Yarden*
into the land of *Canaan Kenaan*;
52 Then ye shall *drive out dispossess*
the *inhabitants of who settled* the land
from *before you your face*,
and destroy all their *pictures imageries*,
and destroy **desolate** all their molten images,
and quite *pluck down desolate*
all their *high places bamahs*;

53 And ye shall dispossess the *inhabitants of the* land,
and dwell **settle** therein:
for I have given you the land to possess it.

54 And ye shall *divide inherit* the land by *lot pebble*
for an inheritance among your families:
and to the more
ye shall *give the more* **greaten the** inheritance,
and to the fewer
ye shall *give the less* **diminish the** inheritance:
every man's *inheritance*
shall be in the place where his *lot pebble* falleth;
according to the *tribes rods* of your fathers
ye shall inherit.

55 But if ye *will shall* not *drive out dispossess*
the *inhabitants of them who settled* the land
from *before you your face*;
then **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
that those which ye let remain of them
shall be *pricks barbs* in your eyes, and thorns in your sides,

NUMBERS 33

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and encamp in the wilderness of *Sin — Qadesh*:
37 and they pull stakes from *Qadesh*
and encamp in mount *Hor*,
in the end of the land of *Edom*:
38 and *Aharon the priest* ascends mount *Hor*
at the mouth of *Yah Veh*
and dies there,
in the fortieth year after the sons of *Yisra El*
came from the land of *Misrayim*,
in the first of the fifth month.

39 And *Aharon*
is a son of a hundred and twenty—three years
at his death in mount *Hor*.

40 And sovereign *Arad the Kenaaniy*,
who settles in the south in the land of *Kenaan*,
hears of the coming of the sons of *Yisra El*:
41 and they pull stakes from mount *Hor*
and encamp in *Sal Monah*:
42 and they pull stakes from *Sal Monah*
and encamp in *Punon*:
43 and they pull stakes from *Punon*
and encamp in *Oboth*:
44 and they pull stakes from *Oboth*
and encamp in *Iye Ha Abiram* in the border of *Moab*:
45 and they pull stakes from *Iyiy*
and encamp in *Dibongad*:
46 and they pull stakes from *Dibongad*
and encamp in *Almon Diblathaim*:
47 and they pull stakes from *Almon Diblathaim*
and encamp in the mountains of *Abarim*
at the face of *Nebo*:
48 and they pull stakes from the mountains of *Abarim*
and encamp in the plains of *Moab*
by *Yarden* near *Yericho*:
49 and they encamp by *Yarden*
from *Beth Ha Yeshimoth* even to *Abel Hash Shittim*
in the plains of *Moab*.

50 And *Yah Veh* words to *Mosheh*
in the plains of *Moab* by *Yarden* near *Yericho*, saying,
51 Word to the sons of *Yisra El*, and say to them,
When you pass over *Yarden* into the land of *Kenaan*,
52 dispossess them who settle the land from your face;
and destroy all their imageries
and desolate all their molten images
and desolate all their bamahs:
53 and dispossess the land, and settle therein:
for I give you the land to possess:
54 and you, inherit the land by pebble
— an inheritance among your families:
and to the more, greaten the inheritance
and to the fewer, diminish the inheritance:
— every man in the place where his pebble falls;
to inherit according to the rods of your fathers:
55 and if you dispossess not them who settle the land
from your face;
then so be it, they who remain
become barbs in your eyes and thorns in your sides

NUMBERS 33, 34

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and shall vex **tribulate** you
in the land wherein ye *dwell* **settle**.
56 Moreover **so be** it *shall come to pass* ,
that I shall *do* **work** unto you,
as I thought to *do* **work** unto them.
cp 2 Corinthians 12:7

ALLOTING THE BORDERS OF KENAAN TO THE SONS OF YISRA EL

34

And the *LORD* spake **Yah Veh** worded
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
2 *Command* **Misvah** the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and say unto them,
When ye come into the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**;
(this is the land that shall fall unto you for an inheritance,
even the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**
with the *coasts* **borders** thereof.)
3 Then your south *quarter* **edge**
shall be from the wilderness of *Zin* **Sin**
along by the *coast* **hand** of Edom,
and your south border
shall be the *outmost coast* **ends** of the salt sea eastward:
4 And your border shall *turn* **surround** from the south
to the ascent of Akrabdim, and pass on to *Zin* **Sin**:
and the *going forth* **exits** thereof shall be
from the south to *Kadeshbarnea* **Qadesh Barnea**,
and shall go on to *Hazaraddar* **Hasar Addar**,
and pass on to *Azmon* **Asmon**:
5 And the border
shall *fetch a compass* **surround** from *Azmon* **Asmon**
unto the *river* **wadi** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and the *goings out of it* **exits** shall be at the sea.
6 And as for the *western* **seaward** border,
ye shall even have the great sea for a border:
this shall be your *west* **seaward** border.
7 And this shall be your north border:
from the great sea
shall *point out* **survey** for you mount Hor:
8 From mount Hor ye shall *point out your border* **survey**
unto the entrance of Hamath;
and the *goings forth* **exits** of the border
shall be to *Zedad* **Sedad**:
9 And the border shall go on to Ziphron,
and the *goings out of it* **exits**
shall be at *Hazarenan* **Hasar Enan**:
this shall be your north border.
10 And ye shall *point* **mark** out your east border
from *Hazarenan* **Hasar Enan** to Shepham:
11 And the *coast* **border** shall *go down* **descend**
from Shepham to Riblah, on the east side of *Ain* **Ayin**;
and the border shall descend,
and shall *reach* **extend** unto the *side* **shoulder**
of the sea of *Chinnereth* **Kinneroth** eastward:
12 And the border shall *go down* **descend**
to *Jordan* **Yarden**,
and the *goings out of it* **exits** shall be at the salt sea:
this shall be your land
with the *coasts* **borders** thereof round about.
13 And *Moses* commanded **Mosheh** **misvahed**
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, saying,
This is the land which ye shall inherit by *lot* **pebble**,
which *the LORD* commanded **Yah Veh** **misvahed**
to give unto the nine *tribes* **rods**, and to the half *tribe* **rod**:
14 For the *tribe* **rod**
of the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
according to the house of their fathers,
and the *tribe* **rod** of the *children* **sons** of Gad
according to the house of their fathers,
have *received their inheritance* **taken**;
and half the *tribe* **rod** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
have *received* **taken** their inheritance:
15 The two *tribes* **rods** and the half *tribe* **rod**
have *received* **taken** their inheritance
on this side *Jordan* **Yarden** near *Jericho* **Yericho** eastward,
toward the *sunrising* **rising**.
16 And the *LORD* spake **Yah Veh** worded
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
17 These are the names of the men
which shall *divide* **inherit** the land unto you:

NUMBERS 33, 34

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and tribulate you in the land wherein you settle;
56 and so be it,
I work to you as I thought to work to them.
cp 2 Corinthians 12:7

ALLOTING THE BORDERS OF KENAAN TO THE SONS OF YISRA EL

34

2 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
Misvah the sons of Yisra El, and say to them,
When you come to the land of Kenaan;
— this *is* the land that falls to you by inheritance
— the land of Kenaan with the borders thereof:
3 then the south edge
from the wilderness of Sin along by the hand of Edom
— yes, the south border is yours
from the ends of the salt sea eastward:
4 and the border surrounds
from the south to the ascent of Akrabdim
and passes on to Sin:
and the exits
are from the south to Qadesh Barnea;
and go on to Hasar Addar and pass on to Asmon:
5 and the border surrounds
from Asmon to the wadi of Misrayim
and the exits are at the sea.
6 And as for the seaward border,
even the great sea is your border:
this is your seaward border.
7 And this is your north border:
from the great sea
survey mount Hor for yourselves
8 — survey from mount Hor
to the entrance of Hamath;
and the exits of the border are to Sedad:
9 and the border goes on to Ziphron
and the exits are at Hasar Enan:
this is your north border.
10 and mark out your east border
from Hasar Enan to Shepham:
11 and the border descends
from Shepham to Riblah, on the east side of Ayin;
and the border descends and spreads
to the shoulder of the sea of Kinneroth eastward:
12 and the border descends to Yarden
and the exits are at the salt sea:
this becomes your land
with the borders thereof all around.
13 And Mosheh misvahs the sons of Yisra El, saying,
This *is* the land you inherit by pebble,
which Yah Veh misvahed
to give to the nine rods and to the half rod:
14 for the rod of the sons of Reu Ben
according to the house of their fathers
and the rod of the sons of Gad
according to the house of their fathers, took;
and half the rod of Menash Sheh
took their inheritance:
15 the two rods and the half rod
took their inheritance
on this side Yarden near Yericho eastward,
toward the rising.
16 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
17 These *are* the names of the men
who inherit the land to you:

NUMBERS 34, 35

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

18 Eleazar **El Azar** the priest,
and Joshua **Yah Shua** the son of Nun.
And ye shall take
one prince **one hierarch** — **one hierarch**
of every **tribe rod**,
to divide the land by inheritance **inherit the land**.
19 And the names of the men are these:
Of the **tribe rod** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
Caleb **Kaleb** the son of Jephunneh **Yephunneh**.
20 And of the **tribe rod**
of the children **sons** of Simeon **Shimon**,
Shemuel **Shemu El** the son of Ammihud **Ammi Hud**.
21 Of the **tribe rod** of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**,
Elidad **Eli Dad** the son of Chislon **Kislon**.
22 And the prince **hierarch** of the **tribe rod**
of the children **sons** of Dan,
Bukki **Buqqi** the son of Jogli **Yogli**.
23 The prince **hierarch**
of the children **sons** of Joseph **Yoseph**,
for the **tribe rod**
of the children **sons** of Manasseh **Menash Sheh**,
Hanniel **Hanni El** the son of Ephod.
24 And the prince **hierarch** of the **tribe rod**
of the children **sons** of Ephraim **Ephrayim**,
Kemuel **Qemu El** the son of Shiptan.
25 And the prince **hierarch** of the **tribe rod**
of the children **sons** of Zebulun,
Elizaphan **El Saphan** the son of Parnach.
26 And the prince **hierarch** of the **tribe rod**
of the children **sons** of Issacha **Yissachar**,
Paltiel **Palti El** the son of Azzan.
27 And the prince **hierarch** of the **tribe rod**
of the children **sons** of Asher,
Ahihud **Achi Hud** the son of Shelomi.
28 And the prince **hierarch** of the **tribe rod**
of the children **sons** of Naphtali,
Pedahel **Pedah El** the son of Ammihud **Ammi Hud**.
29 These are they
whom the LORD commanded **Yah Veh misvahed**
to divide the inheritance unto the children of Israel
the sons of Yisra El to inherit
in the land of Canaan **Kenaan**.

ALLOTING CITIES OF THE LEVIYM

35 And the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded**
unto Moses **Mosheh** in the plains of Moab
by Jordan **Yarden** near Jericho **Yericho**, saying,
2 Command **Misvah** the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**,
that they give unto the Levites **Leviym**
of the inheritance of their possession
cities to dwell **settle** in;
and ye shall give also unto the Levites **Leviym**
suburbs for the cities round about them.
3 And the cities shall they have to dwell **settle** in;
and the suburbs of them shall be for their **cattle animals**,
and for their **goods acquisitions**,
and for all their **beasts live beings**.
4 And the suburbs of the cities,
which ye shall give unto the Levites **Leviym**,
shall reach **be** from the wall of the city and outward
a thousand cubits round about.
5 And ye shall measure from without the city
on the east **side edge** two thousand cubits,
and on the south **side edge** two thousand cubits,
and on the west **side seaward edge** two thousand cubits,
and on the north **side edge** two thousand cubits;
and the city shall be in the midst:
this shall be to them the suburbs of the cities.

ALLOTING CITIES OF REFUGE TO THE LEVIYM

6 And among the cities
which ye shall give unto the Levites **Leviym**,
there shall be six cities for refuge,
which ye shall appoint **give** for the manslayer **murderer**,
that he may flee thither:
and to them ye shall add **give** forty and two cities.
7 So all the cities which ye shall give to the Levites **Leviym**
shall be forty and eight cities:
them shall ye give with their suburbs.
8 And the cities which ye shall give
shall be of the possession of the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**:

NUMBERS 34, 35

exeGesés companion BIBLE

El Azar the priest and Yah Shua the son of Nun.
18 And take one hierarch
— one hierarch of every rod to inherit the land.
19 And these are the names of the men:
of the rod of Yah Hudah:
Kaleb the son of Yephunneh;
20 and of the rod of the sons of Shimon:
Shemu El the son of Ammi Hud;
21 of the rod of Ben Yamin:
Eli Dad the son of Kislon;
22 and the hierarch of the rod of the sons of Dan:
Buqqi the son of Yogli;
23 the hierarch of the sons of Yoseph
for the rod of the sons of Menash Sheh:
Hanni El the son of Ephod;
24 and the hierarch of the rod of the sons of Ephrayim:
Qemu El the son of Shiptan;
25 and the hierarch of the rod of the sons of Zebulun:
El Saphan the son of Parnach;
26 and the hierarch of the rod of the sons of Yissachar:
Palti El the son of Azzan;
27 and the hierarch of the rod of the sons of Asher:
Achi Hud the son of Shelomi;
28 and the hierarch of the rod of the sons of Naphtali:
Pedah El the son of Ammi Hud.
29 These are they whom Yah Veh misvahed
— the sons of Yisra El
to inherit in the land of Kenaan.

ALLOTING CITIES OF THE LEVIYM

35 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh
in the plains of Moab by Yarden near Yericho, saying,
2 Misvah the sons of Yisra El,
to give the Leviym cities to settle
for the inheritance of their possession:
and also give the Leviym
suburbs for the cities all around them:
and the cities to settle in are for them;
and the suburbs are for their animals
and for their acquisitions
and for all their live beings.
4 And the suburbs of the cities you give the Leviym,
are from the wall of the city and outward
— a thousand cubits all around:
5 and measure from outside the city
— on the east edge two thousand cubits
and on the south edge two thousand cubits
and on the seaward edge two thousand cubits
and on the north edge two thousand cubits;
with the city in the middle:
these are their suburbs of the cities.

ALLOTING CITIES OF REFUGE TO THE LEVIYM

6 And the cities you give to the Leviym,
six cities are for refuge
to give the murderer to flee to:
and give them forty—two cities.
7 So all the cities you give to the Leviym,
forty—eight cities — them with their suburbs:
8 and the cities you give
are of the possession of the sons of Yisra El:

NUMBERS 35

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

from them that have many ye shall give many **greeten**;
 but from *them that have few* ye shall give few **lessen**:
 every one **man** shall give of his cities
 unto the *Levites* **Leviym**
 according to **the mouth** of his inheritance
 which he inheriteth.

9 And the *LORD* spake **Yah Veh** worded
 unto *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,

10 Speak **Word** unto the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
 and say unto them,
 When ye *be come* **pass** over *Jordan* **Yarden**
 into the land of *Canaan* **Kenaar**;

11 Then ye shall *appoint* you **And happen upon** cities
 to be cities of refuge for you;
 that the *slayer* **murderer** may flee thither,
 which *killeth any person* **smiteth a soul**
 at *unawares* **by inadvertent error**.

12 And they shall be unto you
 cities for refuge from the *avenger* **redeemer**;
 that the *manslayer* **murderer** die not,
 until he stand
before at the face of the congregation **witness**
 in judgment.

13 And of these cities which ye shall give
 six cities shall ye *have* **be** for refuge.

14 Ye shall give three cities on this side *Jordan* **Yarden**,
 and three cities shall ye give
 in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaar**,
 which shall be cities of refuge.

15 These six cities shall be a refuge,
 both for the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
 and for the *stranger* **sojourner**,
 and for the *sojourner* **settler** among them:
 that every one that *killeth any person* **smiteth a soul**
unawares may **by inadvertent error** flee thither.

16 And if he smite him with an instrument of iron,
 so that he die, he is a murderer:
in deathifying,
 the murderer shall *surely be put to death* **be deathified**.

17 And if he *smite him with throwing* **by handling** a stone,
 wherewith he may die, and he die, he is a murderer:
in deathifying,
 the murderer shall *surely be put to death* **be deathified**.

18 Or if he *smite him*
 with an hand *weapon* **instrument of wood** **timber**,
 wherewith he may die, and he die, he is a murderer:
in deathifying,

19 the murderer shall *surely be put to death* **be deathified**.
 The *revenger* **redeemer** of blood himself
 shall *slay* **deathify** the murderer:
 when he *meeteth* **encountereth** him,
 he shall *slay* **deathify** him.

20 But if he *thrust* **shove** him of hatred,
 or hurl at him by *laying of wait* **lurking**, that he die;

21 Or in enmity smite him with his hand, that he die:
in deathifying,
 he that smote him
 shall *surely be put to death* **be deathified**;
 for he is a murderer:
 the *revenger* **redeemer** of blood
 shall *slay* **deathify** the murderer,
 when he *meeteth* **encountereth** him.

22 But if he *thrust* **shove** him *suddenly* **in a blink**
 without enmity,
 or have cast upon him any *thing* **instrument**
 without *laying of wait* **lurking**,

23 Or with any stone, wherewith a man may die,
 seeing him not, and *cast it upon* **it felleth** him, that he die,
 and was not his enemy, neither sought his *harm* **evil**:

24 Then the *congregation* **witness** shall judge
 between *the slayer* **him who smote**
 and the *revenger* **redeemer** of blood
 according to these judgments:

25 And the *congregation* **witness**
 shall *deliver* **rescue** the *slayer* **murderer**
 out of the hand of the *revenger* **redeemer** of blood,
 and the *congregation* **witness** shall restore him
 to the city of his refuge, whither he was fled:

NUMBERS 35

exeGesés companion BIBLE

from the many, you greeten;
 and from the few, you lessen:
 every man gives of his cities to the Leviym
 according to the mouth of the inheritance he inherits.

9 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh, saying,
 10 Word to the sons of Yisra El, and say to them,
 When you pass over Yarden to the land of Kenaar;
 11 and happen on cities
 — your cities of refuge for the murderer to flee to
 — who smites a soul by inadvertent error;
 12 and they are your cities of refuge
 from the redeemer
 — that the murderer not die
 until he stands in judgment at the face of the witness.

13 And of these cities you give
 — your six cities of refuge:
 14 give three cities on this side Yarden
 and give three cities in the land of Kenaar
 for cities of refuge.

15 These six cities are a refuge
 for the sons of Yisra El and for the sojourner
 and for the settler in their midst:
 for every one who smites a soul by inadvertent error
 to flee there.

16 And if he smites him with an instrument of iron,
 so that he dies, he *is* a murderer:
 in deathifying, deathify the murderer.

17 And if by handling a stone,
 wherewith he dies, and he dies, he *is* a murderer:
 in deathifying, deathify the murderer.

18 Or if a hand instrument of timber,
 wherewith he dies, and he dies, he *is* a murderer:
 in deathifying, deathify the murderer.

19 The redeemer of blood himself
 deathifies the murderer:
 when he encounters him, he deathifies him.

20 And if in hatred, he shoves him,
 or hurls at him by lurking, that he die;
 21 or in enmity smites him with his hand, that he die:
 in deathifying, deathify him who smites him;
 for he *is* a murderer:
 the redeemer of blood deathifies the murderer,
 when he encounters him.

22 And if, in a blink, without enmity, he shoves him,
 or casts on him any instrument, without lurking,
 23 or with any stone, whereby a man dies,
 not seeing him, and it befalls him, that he dies
 and was neither his enemy, nor sought his evil:
 24 then the witness judge between him who smites
 and between the redeemer of blood
 according to these judgments:
 25 and the witness rescues the murderer
 from the hand of the redeemer of blood
 and the witness restores him
 to the city of his refuge, from which he fled:

NUMBERS 35, 36

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and he shall *abide settle* in it
unto the death of the *high great* priest,
which was anointed with the holy oil.
26 But if the *slayer murderer* shall at any time
come without the border of the city of his refuge,
whither he was fled;
27 And the *revenger redeemer* of blood
find him without the borders of the city of his refuge,
and the *revenger redeemer* of blood
kill murder the slayer murderer;
he shall not be guilty of blood:
28 Because he should have *remained settled*
in the city of his refuge
until the death of the *high great* priest:
but after the death of the *high great* priest
the *slayer murderer* shall return
into the land of his possession.
29 So these *things* shall be for a statute of judgment
unto you
throughout your generations
in all your *dwellings settlements*.
30 Whoso *killeth any person smiteth a soul*,
the murderer shall be *put to death murdered*
by the mouth of witnesses:
but one witness shall not *testify answer*
against *any person a soul*
to cause him to die *unto his death*.
31 Moreover
ye shall take no *satisfaction koper/atonement*
for the *life soul* of a murderer,
which is *guilty of wicked unto death*:
but *in being deathified*,
he shall be *surely put to death deathified*.
32 And ye shall take no *satisfaction koper/atonement*
for him that is fled to the city of his refuge,
that he should *come again return*
to *dwell settle* in the land,
until the death of the priest.
33 So ye shall not *pollute profane* the land wherein ye are:
for blood it *defileth profaneth* the land:
and the land cannot be *cleansed kapar/atoned*
of *for* the blood that is *shed poured* therein,
but *except* by the blood of him that *shed poured* it.
34 *Defile Foul* not therefore
the land which ye shall *inhabit settle*,
wherein I dwell *midst I tabernacle*:
for I the LORD I — *Yah Veh*
dwell tabernacle among the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*.

ALLOTMENT OF THE DAUGHTERS OF YISRA EL

36 And the *chief heads of the* fathers
of the families of the *children sons* of *Gilead Gilad*,
the son of Machir,
the son of *Manasseh Menash Sheh*,
of the families of the sons of *Joseph Yoseph*,
came near approached,
and *spake before Moses worded at the face of Moshah*,
and *before the princes at the face of the hierarchs*,
the *chief heads of the* fathers
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*:
2 And they said,
The LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed my lord adoni
to give the land for an inheritance by *lot pebble*
to the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*:
and my *lord adoni*
was *commanded misvahed by the LORD Yah Veh*
to give the inheritance
of *Zelophehad Seloph Had* our brother
unto his daughters.
3 And if they be *married women* to any of the sons
of the *other tribes scions*
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
then shall their inheritance
be taken from the inheritance of our fathers,
and shall be *put added* to the inheritance
of the *tribe rod* whereunto they are received:
so *thus* shall it be taken
from the *lot pebble* of our inheritance.

NUMBERS 35, 36

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and he settles there until the death of the great priest
who was anointed with the holy oil.
26 But if, at any time,
the murderer comes outside the border
of the city of his refuge, where he flees;
27 and the redeemer of blood
finds him outside the borders of the city of his refuge
and the redeemer of blood murders the murderer;
he is not guilty of blood:
28 because he was to settle in the city of his refuge
until the death of the great priest:
but after the death of the great priest
the murderer returns to the land of his possession.
29 And these become your statute of judgment
throughout your generations, in all your settlements.
30 Whoever smites a soul,
murder the murderer by the mouth of witnesses:
but one witness answers not against a soul
as to his death.
31 And take no *koper/atonement*
for the soul of a murderer
who is wicked unto death:
and in deathifying, deathify him.
32 And take no *koper/atonement*
for him who flees to the city of his refuge,
to return to settle in the land
until the death of the priest.
33 And profane not the land wherein you are;
for blood profanes the land:
and you cannot *kapar/atoned* the land
for the blood poured therein,
except by the blood of him who poured it.
34 Foul not the land wherein you settle
in whose midst I tabernacle:
I — *Yah Veh tabernacle* among the sons of *Yisra El*.

ALLOTMENT OF THE DAUGHTERS OF YISRA EL

36 And the heads of the fathers
of the families of the sons of *Gilad* the son of *Machir*
the son of *Menash Sheh*,
of the families of the sons of *Yoseph*
approach and word at the face of Moshah
and at the face of the hierarchs
the heads of the fathers of the sons of *Yisra El*,
and they say,
Yah Veh misvahed my adoni
to give the land — an inheritance by pebble
to the sons of *Yisra El*:
and *Yah Veh misvahed my adoni*
to give the inheritance of *Seloph Had* our brother
to his daughters:
3 and they become women to any other sons
of the scions of the sons of *Yisra El*,
then their inheritance
is taken from the inheritance of our fathers
and added to the inheritance
of the *rod* whereunto they are received:
thus it is taken from the pebble of our inheritance:

NUMBERS 36

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 And when the jubile
of the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El** shall be,
then shall their inheritance
be *put added* unto the inheritance
of the *tribe rod* whereunto they are received:
so shall their inheritance be taken away
from the inheritance of the *tribe rod* of our fathers.

5 And *Moses commanded* **Mosheh misvahed**
the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
according to the *word mouth of the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
saying,
The *tribe rod* of the sons of *Joseph Yoseph*
hath *said worded well*.
This is the *thing word*
which the *LORD doth command* **Yah Veh misvaheth**
concerning the daughters of *Zelophehad Seloph Had*,
saying, Let them *marry be women*
to whom they think best of whom is good in their eyes;
only to the family of the *tribe rod* of their father
shall they *marry be women*.

7 So **Thus** shall not the inheritance
of the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
remove turn around from *tribe rod* to *tribe rod*:
for every *one man* of the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
shall *keep himself adhere* to the inheritance
of the *tribe rod* of his fathers.

8 And every daughter, that possesseth an inheritance
in any *tribe rod* of the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**,
shall be *wife woman* unto one of the family
of the *tribe rod* of her father,
that the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
may *enjoy possess* every man
the inheritance of his fathers.

9 Neither shall the inheritance *remove turn around*
from *one tribe to another tribe rod to rod*;
but every *one man* of the *tribes rods*
of the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
shall *keep himself adhere* to his own inheritance.

10 Even as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**,
so *did worked* the daughters of *Zelophehad Seloph Had*:
For *Mahlah* **Machlah**, *Tirzah* **Tirsah**, and *Hoglah*,
and *Milcah* **Milchah**, and *Noah*,
the daughters of *Zelophehad Seloph Had*,
were *married women*
unto their *father's brothers' uncle's* sons:
And they *were married into* **became women**
of the families of the sons of *Manasseh Menash Sheh*
the son of *Joseph Yoseph*,
and their inheritance remained
in the *tribe rod* of the family of their father.

13 These are the *commandments misvoth*
and the judgments,
which the *LORD commanded* **Yah Veh misvahed**
by the hand of *Moses Mosheh*
unto the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
in the plains of Moab
by *Jordan Yarden* near *Jericho Yericho*

NUMBERS 36

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 and if it is the jubilee of the sons of Yisra El,
then their inheritance
is added to the inheritance of the rod
whereunto they *are* received:
thus their inheritance is taken away
from the inheritance of the rod of our fathers.

5 And Mosheh misvahs the sons of Yisra El
according to the mouth of Yah Veh, saying,
The rod of the sons of Yoseph worded:
This *is* the word Yah Veh misvahs
concerning the daughters of Seloph Had, saying,
Let them be women of whom *is* good in their eyes;
only that they be women
to the family of the rod of their father:
thus the inheritance of the sons of Yisra El
turns not around from rod to rod:
for every man of the sons of Yisra El
adheres to the inheritance of the rod of his fathers:
and let every daughter who possesses an inheritance
in any rod of the sons of Yisra El,
become woman
to one of the family of the rod of her father,
so that every man of the sons of Yisra El
possesses the inheritance of his fathers.

9 Turn not the inheritance around from rod to rod;
but every man of the rods of the sons of Yisra El
adheres to his own inheritance.

10 As Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh,
thus worked the daughters of Seloph Had:
for Machlah, Tirsah and Hoglah
and Milchah and Noah,
the daughters of Seloph Had,
become women of the sons of their uncle:
and they become women
of the families of the sons of Menash Sheh
the son of Yoseph:
and their inheritance
remains in the rod of the family of their father.

13 These *are* the misvoth and the judgments,
Yah Veh misvahed by the hand of Mosheh
to the sons of Yisra El
in the plains of Moab by Yarden near Yericho.

DEUTERONOMY 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

RESUME' OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

1 These be the words
 which *Moses spake* **Mosheh worded**
 unto all *Israel* **Yisra El**
 on this side *Jordan* **Yarden** in the wilderness,
 in the plain *over against* **opposite** the *Red sea* **reeds**,
 between Paran, and Tophel, and Laban,
 and Hazeroth, and *Dizahab* **Di Zahab**.
 2 (There are eleven days' *journey* from Horeb
 by the way of mount Seir
 unto *Kadeshbarnea* **Qadesh Barnea**.)
 3 And **so be** it *came to pass* in the fortieth year,
 in the eleventh month, on the first *day* of the month,
 that *Moses spake* **Mosheh worded**
 unto the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
 according unto all that the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
 had *given in commandment* **misvahed**
 unto **concerning** them;
 4 After he had *slain Sihon* **smitten Sichon**
 the *king* **sovereign** of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
 which *dwelt* **settled** in Heshbon,
 and Og the *king* **sovereign** of Bashan,
 which *dwelt* **settled** at Astaroth in Edrei:
 5 On this side *Jordan* **Yarden**, in the land of Moab,
began Moses **Mosheh willed**
 to *declare* **explain** this *law* **torah**, saying,
 6 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
spake **worded** unto us in Horeb, saying,
ye have dwelt long enough **settled too much**
 in this mount:
 7 Turn *you* **your face**, and *take your journey* **pull stakes**,
 and go to the mount of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
 and unto all the *places* **tabernacles** nigh thereunto,
 in the plain, in the *hills* **mountains**,
 and in the *vale* **lowlands**, and in the south,
 and by the sea *side* **haven**,
 to the land of the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**, and unto Lebanon,
 unto the great river, the river Euphrates.
 8 *Behold* **See**,
 I have *set* **given** the land *before you* **at your face**:
 go in and possess the land
 which *the LORD* **sware** **Yah Veh oathed** unto your fathers,
 Abraham, *Isaac* **Yischaq**, and *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
 to give unto them and to their seed after them.
 9 And I *spake* **said** unto you at that time, saying,
 I am not able to bear you myself alone:
RESUME' ON DELEGATING JUDGMENT
 10 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
 hath *multiplied* **abounded** you, and, behold,
 ye are this day as the stars of *heaven* **the heavens**
 for *multitude* **abundance**.
 11 (*The LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of your fathers
make **add to** you a thousand times
 so many *more* as ye are,
 and bless you, as he hath *promised* **worded** you!)
 12 How can I myself alone bear your *cumbrance* **pressure**,
 and your burden, and your *strife* **dispute**?
 13 *Take* **Give** you wise men,
 and *understanding* **discerning**,
 and known among your *tribes* **scions**,
 and I *will make* **shall set** them *rulers* **heads** over you.
 14 And ye answered me, and said,
 The *thing* **word** which thou hast spoken
 is good *for us to do* **work**.
 15 So I took the *chief* **head** of your *tribes* **scions**,
 wise men, and known,
 and *made* **gave** them heads over you,
captains **governors** over thousands,
 and *captains* **governors** over hundreds,
 and *captains* **governors** over fifties,
 and *captains* **governors** over tens,
 and officers among your *tribes* **scions**.
 16 And I *charged* **misvahed** your judges at that time,
 saying, *Hear the causes* **Hearken**
 between your brethren,
 and judge *righteously* **justness**
 between every man and his brother,
 and the *stranger* **sojourner** that is with him.

DEUTERONOMY 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

RESUME' OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

1 These *are* the words Mosheh worded to all Yisra El
 on this side Yarden in the wilderness,
 in the plain opposite the reeds,
 between Paran and Tophel and Laban
 and Hazeroth and Di Zahab
 2 — eleven days from Horeb by the way of mount Seir
 to Qadesh Barnea.
 3 And so be it, in the fortieth year,
 in the eleventh month, on the first of the month,
 Mosheh words to the sons of Yisra El,
 according to all Yah Veh misvahed concerning them;
 4 after he smote Sichon the sovereign of the Emoriy
 who settled in Heshbon
 and Og the sovereign of Bashan
 who settled at Astaroth in Edrei:
 5 on this side Yarden in the land of Moab,
 Mosheh willed to explain this torah, saying,
 6 Yah Veh our Elohim worded to us in Horeb, saying,
 You settle too much in this mount:
 7 turn your face and pull stakes
 and go to the mount of the Emoriy
 and to all the tabernacles nearby
 — in the plain, in the mountains and in the lowlands
 and in the south and by the sea haven,
 to the land of the Kenaaniy and to Lebanon,
 to the great river, the river Euphrates.
 8 See, I give the land at your face:
 go in and possess the land
 Yah Veh oathed to give your fathers,
 Abraham, Yischaq and Yaaqov
 and their seed after them.
 9 And I said to you at that time, saying,
 I am not able to bear you myself alone:

RESUME' ON DELEGATING JUDGMENT

10 Yah Veh your Elohim abounded you, and behold,
 you *are* this day as the stars of the heavens
 for abundance.
 11 Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers
 added to you a thousand times as many as you *are*,
 and blessed you, as he worded you!
 12 How can I myself alone bear your pressure
 and your burden and your disputes?
 13 Give wise and discerning men,
 known among your scions;
 and I set them heads over you.
 14 And you answered me and said,
 The word you speak *is* good to work.
 15 And I took the head of your scions
 wise men and known
 and gave them heads over you
 — governors over thousands
 and governors over hundreds
 and governors over fifties
 and governors over tens
 and officers among your scions.
 16 And I misvahed your judges at that time, saying,
 Hearken between your brothers
 and judge justness
 between every man and his brother
 and the sojourner with him:

DEUTERONOMY 1

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

17 Ye shall not
respect persons **recognize faces** in judgment;
but ye shall hear the small as well as the great;
ye shall not *be afraid of* **fear** the face of man;
for the judgment is *God's* **Elohim's**:
and the *cause* **word** that is too hard for you,
bring **approach** it unto me, and I *will* **shall** hear it.
18 And I *commanded* **misvahed** you at that time
all the *things* **words** which ye should *do* **work**.

RESUME! ON SENDING EXPLORERS TO ESHCOL

19 And when we *departed* **pulled stakes** from Horeb,
we went through
all that great and *terrible* **awesome** wilderness,
which ye saw by the way
of the mountain of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
commanded **misvahed** us;
and we came to *Kadeshbarnea* **Qadesh Barnea**.
20 And I said unto you,
ye are come unto the mountain of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
doth **shall** give unto us.

21 *Behold* **See**, the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
hath set **given** the land *before thee* **at thy face**:
go up **ascend** and possess it,
as the *LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of thy fathers
hath said **worded** unto thee;
fear **awe** not, neither be *discouraged* **dismayed**.

22 And ye *came near* **approached** unto me
every one of you, and said,
We *will* **shall** send men *before us* **from our face**,
and they shall *search us out* **explore** the land,
and *bring us* **return** word *again* **to us**
by what way we *must go up* **shall ascend**,
and into what cities we shall come.

23 And the *saying* **word**
pleased me well **well**—**pleased my eyes**:
and I took twelve men of you,
one of a *tribe* **man per scion**:

24 And they turned **their face**,
and *went up* **ascended** into the mountain,
and came unto the *valley* **wadi** of Eshcol,
and *searched* **spied** it out.

25 And they took of the fruit of the land in their hands,
and *brought* **descended** it *down* unto us,
and *brought us* **returned** word *again* **unto us**,
and said, It is a good land
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
doth **shall** give us.

RESUME! OF THE REBELLION OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

26 Notwithstanding
ye *would not go up* **willed to not ascend**,
but rebelled against the *commandment* **mouth**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**:
27 And ye murmured in your tents, and said,
Because the *LORD* **hated us** of **Yah Veh's hatred**,
he hath brought us forth out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
to *deliver* **give** us into the hand of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
to *destroy* **desolate** us.

28 Whither shall we *go up* **ascend**?
our brethren have *discouraged* **melted** our heart, saying,
The people is greater and *taller* **more exalted** than we;
the cities are great and *walled* **fortified**
up to *heaven* **the heavens**;
and moreover
we have seen the sons of the *Anakims* **Anakiy** there.

29 Then I said unto you, Dread not,
neither *be afraid of* **awe** them.

30 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
which goeth *before you* **at your face**,
he shall fight for you,
according to all
that he *did* **worked** for you in *Egypt* **Misrayim**
before **in fron of** your eyes;

31 And in the wilderness, where thou hast seen
how that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** bare thee,
as a man doth bear his son,
in all the way that ye went, until ye came into this place.

DEUTERONOMY 1

exeGeses companion BIBLE

17 recognize not faces in judgment;
and hear the small as well as the great:
fear not the face of man;
for the judgment *is* of Elohim:
and for the word that *is* too hard for you,
approach me and I hear it.
18 And I misvahed you at that time
all the words for you to work.

RESUME! ON SENDING EXPLORERS TO ESHCOL

19 And when we pulled stakes from Horeb,
we went through
all that great and awesome wilderness,
you saw by the way the mountain of the Emoriy,
as Yah Veh our Elohim misvahed us;
and we came to Qadesh Barnea.

20 And I said to you,
Come to the mountain of the Emoriy
which Yah Veh our Elohim gives us:
see, Yah Veh your Elohim
gives the land at your face:
ascend and possess it,
as Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers words you;
neither awe, nor dismay.

22 And you approached me,
every one of you, and said,
We send men from our face to explore the land
and return word of which way to ascend
and into what cities to come.

23 And the word well—pleased my eyes:
and I took twelve men of you — one man per scion:
and they turned their face
and ascended the mountain
and came to the wadi of Eshcol to spy:
and they took of the fruit of the land in their hands
and descended it to us, and returned word to us,
and said,
It is a good land Yah Veh our Elohim gives us.

RESUME! OF THE REBELLION OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

26 But you willed to not ascend
and rebelled against the mouth
of Yah Veh your Elohim:
27 and you murmured in your tents and said,
Because of the hatred of Yah Veh,
he brings us from the land of Misrayim,
to give us into the hand of the Emoriy, to desolate us.
28 Where ascend we?
Our brothers melted our heart, saying,
The people *is* greater and more exalted than we;
the cities *are* great and fortified to the heavens;
and we also saw the sons of the Anakiy there.

29 Then I said to you, Neither dread nor awe them.
30 Yah Veh your Elohim, who goes at your face,
fights for you,
according to all he worked for you in Misrayim
in front of your eyes:
31 and in the wilderness, where you saw
how Yah Veh your Elohim bore you
as a man bears his son,
in all the way you go,
until you came to this place.

DEUTERONOMY 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

32 Yet in this *thing* **word** ye did not *believe* **trust**
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**,

33 Who went in the way *before you* **at your face**,
to *search* **explore** you out a place
to *pitch your tents in* **encamp**,
in fire by night,
to *shew* **have** you **see** by what way ye should go,
and in a cloud by day.

34 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** heard the voice of your words,
and was *wroth* **enraged**, and *sware* **oathed**, saying,
35 Surely *there* shall not one of these men
of this evil generation see that good land,
which I *sware* **oathed** to give unto your fathers.

36 Save *Caleb* **Except Caleb**
the son of *Jephunneh* **Yephunneh**;
he shall see it,
and to him *will* **shall** I give the land
that he hath trodden upon,
and to his *children* **sons**,
because he hath
wholly followed the LORD **fulfilled to follow Yah Veh**.

37 Also the *LORD* **Yah Veh** was angry with me
for your sakes, saying,
Thou also shalt not go in thither.

38 But *Joshua* **Yah Shua** the son of Nun,
which standeth *before thee* **at your face**,
he shall go in thither:
encourage **strengthen** him:
for he shall cause *Israel* **Yisra El** to inherit it.

39 Moreover your *little ones* **toddlers**,
which ye said, should be a *prey* **plunder**,
and your *children* **sons**,
which in that day
had no knowledge between good and evil,
they shall go in thither,
and unto them *will* **shall** I give it,
and they shall possess it.

40 But as for you, turn *you* **your face**,
and *take your journey* **pull stakes** into the wilderness
by the way of the *Red* **Reed** sea.

41 Then ye answered and said unto me,
We have sinned against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
we will go up **shall ascend** and fight,
according to all that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
commanded **misvahed** us.

And when ye had girded on every man
his *weapons* **instruments** of war,
ye were ready to *go up* **ascend** into the *hill* **mountain**.

42 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto me, Say unto them,
Go not up **Ascend not**, neither fight;
for I am not among you;
lest ye be smitten *before* **at the face of** your enemies.

43 So I *spake* **worded** unto you;
and ye *would not hear* **hearkened not**,
but rebelled
against the *commandment* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *went presumptuously up* **ascended seething**
into the *hill* **mountain**.

44 And the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
which *dwelt* **settled** in that mountain,
came out *against* **confronting** you,
and *chased* **pursued** you, as bees *do* **work**,
and *destroyed* **crushed** you in Seir, even unto Hormah.

45 And ye returned and wept
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**;
but the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
would not hearken **hearkened not** to your voice,
nor *give ear* **hearkened** unto you.

46 So ye *abode* **settled** in *Kadesh* **Qadesh** many days,
according unto the days that ye *abode* **settled** there.

RESUME' OF THE WANDERINGS OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

2 Then we turned **our face**,
and *took our journey* **pulled stakes** into the wilderness
by the way of the *Red* **Reed** sea,
as the *LORD* *spake* **Yah Veh worded** unto me:
and we *compassed* **surrounded** mount Seir many days.

2 And the *LORD* *spake* **Yah Veh said** unto me, saying,

DEUTERONOMY 1, 2292

exeGesés companion BIBLE

32 Yet, in this word
you trusted not Yah Veh your Elohim,
33 who went in the way at your face,
to explore a place for you to encamp,
in fire by night, to see which way to go;
and in a cloud by day:

34 and Yah Veh heard the voice of your words
and enraged and oathed, saying,

35 Surely not one of these men of this evil generation
sees that good land,
which I oathed to give to your fathers
— except Caleb the son of Yephunneh;
36 he sees;
and I give the land he trods to him and to his sons,
because he fulfills to follow Yah Veh.

37 And Yah Veh was angry with me for your sakes,
saying, You also go not in there.

38 Yah Shua the son of Nun, who stands at your face,
he goes in there: you, strengthen him:
for he has Yisra El to inherit it:

39 and your toddlers
whom you say are a plunder,
and your sons
who in that day had no knowledge of good and evil,
they go in there;
and I give it to them to possess:
40 and you, turn your face,
and pull stakes into the wilderness
by the way of the Reed sea.

41 Then you answered and said to me,
We sin against Yah Veh;
we ascend and fight
according to all Yah Veh our Elohim misvahs us.

And every man of you
girded on his instruments of war,
and you were ready to ascend into the mountain.

42 And Yah Veh said to me, Say to them,
Neither ascend, nor fight;
for I *am* not among you;
lest you be smitten at the face of your enemies.

43 And I worded to you and you hearkened not,
but rebelled against the mouth of Yah Veh
and ascended the mountain, seething:

44 and the Emoriy, settling that mountain,
came out confronting you
and pursued you, as bees work;
and crushed you in Seir, even to Hormah:

45 and you returned and wept at the face of Yah Veh;
and Yah Veh neither hearkened to your voice
nor hearkened to you:
46 and you settled in Qadesh many days,
according to the days you settled there.

RESUME' OF THE WANDERINGS OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

2 And we turned our face
and pulled stakes into the wilderness
by the way of the Reed sea,
as Yah Veh worded to me:
and we surrounded mount Seir many days.

2 And Yah Veh said to me, saying,

DEUTERONOMY 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 Ye have compassed **surrounded** this mountain
long enough **too much**:
turn you **your face** northward.

4 And *command* **misvah** thou the people, saying,
ye are to pass through the *coast* **border** of your brethren
the *children* **sons** of *Esau* **Esav**, which *dwell* **settle** in Seir;
and they shall *be afraid of* **awe** you:
take ye good heed unto yourselves **guard mightily**
therefore:

5 *Meddle not with* **Throttle** them **not**;
for I *will* **shall** not give you of their land, no,
not so much as a *foot* **breadth** **step of the sole of a foot**;
because I have given mount Seir unto *Esau* **Esav**
for a possession.

6 Ye shall *buy meat* **market for kernels for food** of them
for *money* **silver**, that ye may eat;
and ye shall also *buy* **dig** water of them
for *money* **silver**, that ye may drink.

7 For the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
hath blessed thee in all the works of thy hand:
he knoweth thy walking through this great wilderness:
these forty years
the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** hath been with thee;
thou hast lacked *nothing* **no word**.

8 And when we passed by from our brethren
the *children* **sons** of *Esau* **Esav**, which *dwelt* **settled** in Seir,
through the way of the plain from Elath,
and from *Eziongaber* **Esyon Geber**,
we turned **our face**
and passed by the way of the wilderness of Moab.

9 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto me,
Distress **Besiege** not the *Moabites* **Moabiy**,
neither *contend with* **throttle** them in *battle* **war**:
for I *will* **shall** not give thee of their land for a possession;
because I have given Ar
unto the *children* **sons** of Lot for a possession.

10 The *Emims* **dwelt** **Emim** **settled** therein
in times past **at their face**,
a people great, and many, and *tall* **exalted**,
as the *Anakims* **Anakiy**;

11 Which also were *accounted* **giants** **fabricated** **Rephaim**,
as the *Anakims* **Anakiy**;
but the *Moabites* **Moabiy** call them *Emims* **Emim**.

12 The *Horims* **Horim** also *dwelt* **settled** in Seir
beforetime **at their face**;
but the *children* **sons** of *Esau* **Esav** succeeded them,
when they had *destroyed* **desolated** them
from *before* them **their face**,
and *dwelt* **settled** in their stead;
as *Israel did* **Yisra El** **worked**
unto the land of his possession,
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** gave unto them.

13 Now rise up, *said I*,
and *get* **pass** you over the *brook* **wadi** Zered.
And we *went* **passed** over the *brook* **wadi** Zered.

14 And the *space* **day**
in which we came from *Kadeshbarnea* **Qadesh Barnea**,
until we were *come* **passed** over the *brook* **wadi** Zered,
was thirty and eight years;
until all the generation of the men of war
were *wasted* **consumed** out from among the *host* **camp**,
as *the LORD* **sware** **Yah Veh** **oathed** unto them.

15 For indeed the hand of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
was against them,
to *destroy* **agitate** them from among the *host* **camp**,
until they were consumed.

16 So **be** it *came to pass*,
when all the men of war were consumed
and *dead* **died** from among the people,

17 That *the LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh** **worded** unto me, saying,
18 *Thou art* to pass over through Ar,
the *coast* **border** of Moab, this day:

19 And when thou *comest nigh* **approachest**
over against **opposite** the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
distress **besiege** them not, nor *meddle with* **throttle** them:
for I *will* **shall** not give thee of the land
of the *children* **sons** of Ammon any possession;
because I have given it unto the *children* **sons** of Lot
for a possession.

DEUTERONOMY 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 You surround this mountain too much:
turn your face northward:

4 and misvah the people, saying,
You *are* passing through the border of your brothers
the sons of Esav, who settle in Seir;
and they awe you: guard mightily:
5 throttle them not;
for I give you not of their land
— no, not so much as a step of the sole of a foot;
because I give mount Seir to Esav for a possession.

6 Market for kernels for food of them for silver, to eat;
and also dig water of them for silver, to drink:
7 for Yah Veh your Elohim
blessed you in all the works of your hand:
he knew your walking through this great wilderness:
these forty years Yah Veh your Elohim was with you;
you lacked no word.

8 And we passed by
from our brothers the sons of Esav, settling in Seir;
through the way of the plain from Elath
and from Esyon Geber;
and we turned our face
and passed by the way of the wilderness of Moab.

9 And Yah Veh said to me,
Neither besiege the Moabiy nor throttle them in war:
for I give you not of their land for a possession;
because I give Ar to the sons of Lot for a possession.

10 The Emim settled therein at their face,
a great people and many and exalted,
as the Anakiy;

11 who also were fabricated to be Rephaim,
as the Anakiy;
and the Moabiy call them Emim.

12 The Horim also settled in Seir at their face;
but the sons of Esav succeeded them
and desolated them from their face
and settled in their stead;
as Yisra El worked to the land of his possession,
which Yah Veh gave them.

13 Now rise, and pass over the wadi Zered.
— and we passed over the wadi Zered.

14 And the day we came from Qadesh Barnea,
until we passed over the wadi Zered,
is thirty—eight years;
until all the generation of the men of war
were consumed from among the camp,
as Yah Veh oathed to them.

15 For indeed the hand of Yah Veh opposed them,
to agitate them from among the camp,
until they were consumed.

16 — and so be it, all the men of war were consumed,
and died from among the people.

17 And Yah Veh worded to me, saying,
18 This day, pass over through Ar the border of Moab:
19 and when you approach
opposite the sons of Ammon,
neither besiege them nor throttle them:
for I give you no possession
of the land of the sons of Ammon;
because I gave it to the sons of Lot for a possession.

DEUTERONOMY 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

20 (That also was accounted fabricated
a land of *giants* **Rephaim**:
giants dwelt **Rephaim settled** therein
in old time **at their face**;
and the *Ammonites* **Ammoniy** call them
Zamzummims **Zamzomiym**;
21 A people great, and many, and *tall* **exalted**,
as the *Anakims* **Anakiy**;
but the *LORD* destroyed **Yah Veh desolated** them
before them **at their face**;
and they succeeded them, and *dwelt* **settled** in their stead:
22 As he *did* **worked** to the *children* **sons of Esau** **Esav**,
which *dwelt* **settled** in Seir,
when he destroyed the *Horims* **Horim**
from before them **their face**;
and they succeeded them,
and *dwelt* **settled** in their stead even unto this day:
23 And the *Avims* **Avvim**
which *dwelt* **settled** in *Hazerim* **Haserim**,
even unto Azzah,
the *Caphtorims* **Kaphtorim**,
which came forth out of *Caphtor* **Kaphtor**,
destroyed them, and *dwelt* **settled** in their stead.)
RESUME' OF THE DEFEAT OF SICHON
24 Rise ye up, take your *journey* **pull stakes**,
and pass over the *river* **wadi** Arnon: *behold* **see**,
I have given into thine hand
Sihon **Sichon** the *Amorite* **Emoriy**,
king **sovereign** of Heshbon, and his land:
begin to possess it,
and *contend* with **throttle** him in *battle* **war**.
25 This day *will* **shall** I begin
to *put* **give** the *dread* **fear** of thee and the *fear* **awe** of thee
upon the *nations* **face of the people**
that are under the whole *heaven* **of the heavens**,
who shall hear report of thee, and shall *tremble* **quiver**,
and *be in anguish* **because of thee writhe at thy face**.
26 And I sent *messengers* **angels**
out of the wilderness of *Kedemoth* **Qedemoth**
unto *Sihon king* **Sichon sovereign** of Heshbon
with words of *peace* **shalom**, saying,
27 Let me pass through thy land:
I *will* **shall** go along **the way** by the *high* **way**,
I *will* **shall** neither turn **aside**
unto the right *hand* **nor** to the left.
28 Thou shalt *sell* **market** me *meat* **kernels for my food**
for *money* **silver**, that I may eat;
and give me water for *money* **silver**, that I may drink:
only I *will* **shall** pass through on my feet;
29 (As the *children* **sons of Esau** **Esav**
which *dwelt* **settle** in Seir,
and the *Moabites* **Moabiy** which *dwelt* **settle** in Ar,
did **worked** unto me;)
until I shall pass over *Jordan* **Yarden** into the land
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim** giveth us.
30 But *Sihon king* **Sichon sovereign** of Heshbon
would **willed to** not let us pass by him:
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** hardened his spirit,
and *made* **strengthened** his heart *obstinate*,
that he might *deliver* **give** him into thy hand,
as *appeareth* this day.
31 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto me, *Behold* **See**,
I have begun to give *Sihon* **Sichon** and his land
before thee **at thy face**:
begin to possess, that thou mayest *inherit* **possess** his land.
32 Then *Sihon* **Sichon** came out *against* **confronting** us,
he and all his people, to *fight* **war** at *Jahaz* **Yahsah**.
33 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
delivered **gave** him *before us* **at our face**;
and we smote him, and his sons, and all his people.
34 And we *took* **captured** all his cities at that time,
and *utterly* **destroyed** **devoted** the **few** men,
and the women, and the *little ones* **toddlers**, of every city,
we left *none* **no survivors** to *remain* **survive**:
35 Only the *cattle* **animals**
we *took* **for a prey** **plundered** unto ourselves,
and the *spoil* **loot** of the cities which we *took* **captured**.
36 From Aroer,
which is by the *brink* **edge** of the *river* **wadi** of Arnon,

DEUTERONOMY 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

20 That also was fabricated a land of Rephaim:
wherein the Rephaim settled at their face;
and the Ammoniy called them Zamzomiym;
21 a people great and many,
and exalted as the Anakiy;
but Yah Veh desolated them at their face;
and they succeeded them and settled in their stead:
22 as he worked to the sons of Esav
who settled in Seir,
when he destroyed the Horim from their face;
and they succeeded them
and settled in their stead, even to this day:
23 and the Avvim who settled in Haserim,
even to Azzah,
the Kaphtorim who came from Kaphtor,
destroyed them and settled in their stead.

RESUME' OF THE DEFEAT OF SICHON

24 Rise, pull stakes
and pass over the wadi Arnon:
see, into your hand, I give Sichon the Emoriy,
sovereign of Heshbon and his land:
begin to possess it and throttle him in war.
25 I begin, this day,
to give the fear of you and the awe of you
on the face of the people
under the whole of the heavens,
who hear the report of you and quiver
— who writhe at your face.
26 And I sent angels from the wilderness of Qedemoth
to Sichon sovereign of Heshbon
with words of shalom, saying,
27 Let me pass through your land:
I go along the way by the way,
I turn aside, neither to the right nor to the left:
28 to market kernels for my food for silver, to eat;
and give me water for silver, to drink:
only, I pass through on my feet;
29 as the sons of Esav who settle in Seir
and the Moabiy who settle in Ar worked to me;
until I passed over Yarden into the land
Yah Veh our Elohim gave us.
30 But Sichon sovereign of Heshbon
willed to not let us pass by him:
for Yah Veh your Elohim hardened his spirit
and strengthened his heart,
to give him into your hand, as this day.
31 And Yah Veh said to me, See,
I begin to give Sichon and his land at your face:
begin to possess — to possess his land.
32 Then Sichon came confronting us
— he and all his people, to war at Yahsah:
33 and Yah Veh our Elohim gave him at our face;
and we smote him and his sons and all his people:
34 and we captured all his cities at that time
and devoted the few men and the women
and the toddlers of every city:
we left no survivors to survive:
35 only we plundered the animals to ourselves
and captured the loot of the cities.
36 From Aroer, by the edge of the wadi of Arnon

DEUTERONOMY 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and from the city that is by the *river wadi*,
even unto *Gilead Gilad*,
there was not one city too *strong* lofted for us:
the **LORD Yah Veh** our *God Elohim*
delivered gave all unto us **at our face**:
37 Only unto the land of the *children sons* of Ammon
thou *camest* **approachest** not,
nor unto any *place* **hand** of the *river Jabbok wadi Yabboq*,
nor unto the cities in the mountains,
nor unto whatsoever
the **LORD Yah Veh** our *God* forbad **Elohim** misvahed us.

3

Then we turned **our face**,
and went up **ascended** the way to Bashan:
and Og the *king sovereign* of Bashan
came out *against* **confronting** us,
he and all his people, to *battle* **war** at Edrei.
2 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto me, **Fear Awe** him not:
for I will deliver **shall give** him,
and all his people, and his land, into thy hand;
and thou shalt *do* **work** unto him
as thou *didst* **workedst** unto *Sihon Sichon*
king sovereign of the *Amorites Emoriy*,
which *dwelt* **settled** at Heshbon.
3 So the **LORD Yah Veh** our *God Elohim*
delivered gave into our hands Og also,
the *king sovereign* of Bashan, and all his people:
and we smote him until
4 *none was left to him remaining* **no survivors survived**.
And we *took* **captured** all his cities at that time,
there was not a city which we took not from them,
threescore sixty cities, all the *region* **boundaries** of Argob,
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of Og in Bashan.
5 All these cities were *fenced* **fortified**
with high walls, gates, and bars;
beside *unwalled towns* **suburban cities**
a *great many* **mightily abounding**.
6 And we *utterly destroyed* **devoted** them,
as we *did* **worked** unto *Sihon Sichon*
king sovereign of Heshbon,
utterly destroying **devoting** the *few* men,
women, and *children* **toddlers**, of every city.
7 But all the *cattle* **animals**, and the *spoil* **loot** of the cities,
we *took for a prey* **plundered** to ourselves.
8 And we took at that time out of the hand
of the two *kings* **sovereigns** of the *Amorites Emoriy*
the land that was on this side *Jordan Yarden*,
from the *river wadi* of Arnon unto mount Hermon;
9 (Which Hermon the *Sidonians Sidoniy* call Sirion;
and the *Amorites Emoriy* call it Shenir;)
10 All the cities of the plain,
and all *Gilead Gilad*, and all Bashan,
unto Salchah and Edrei,
cities of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of Og in Bashan.
11 For only Og *king sovereign* of Bashan
remained **survived**
of the remnant of *giants* **Rephaim**;
behold his bedstead was a bedstead of iron;
is it not in *Rabbath* **Rabbah**
of the *children sons* of Ammon?
nine cubits was the length thereof,
and four cubits the breadth of it, after the cubit of a man.

RESUME' OF THE ALLOTMENT OF LAND

12 And this land, which we possessed at that time,
from Aroer, which is by the *river wadi* Arnon,
and half mount *Gilead Gilad*, and the cities thereof,
gave I unto the *Reubenites* **Reu Beniy**
and to the *Gadites* **Gadiy**.
13 And the *rest* **remainder** of *Gilead Gilad*, and all Bashan,
being the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of Og,
gave I unto the half *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**;
all the *region* **boundaries** of Argob, with all Bashan,
which was called the land of *giants* **Rephaim**.
14 *Jair Yair* the son of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
took all the *country* **boundaries** of Argob
unto the *coasts* **borders** of *Geshuri* **the Geshuriy**
and *Maachathi* **Maachahiy**;
and called them after his own name,
Bashanhavothjair **Bashan Havoth Yair**, unto this day.

DEUTERONOMY 2, 3295

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and from the city by the wadi — even to Gilad,
not one city was too lofty for us:
Yah Veh our Elohim gave all at our face.
37 Only we approached
neither the land of the sons of Ammon,
nor to any hand of the wadi Yabboq,
nor to the cities in the mountains,
nor to whatever Yah Veh our Elohim misvahed us.

RESUME' OF THE DEFEAT OF OG

3

And we turned our face
and ascended the way to Bashan:
and Og the sovereign of Bashan
came out confronting us
— he and all his people, to war at Edrei.
2 And Yah Veh said to me, Awe him not:
for I give him and all his people and his land
into your hand;
and work to him
as you worked to Sichon sovereign of the Emoriy,
who settles at Heshbon.
3 So Yah Veh our Elohim
also gave into our hands
Og the sovereign of Bashan and all his people:
and we smote him until no survivors survived:
and we captured all his cities at that time,
4 there is not a city which we took not from them
— sixty cities, all the boundaries of Argob,
the sovereigndom of Og in Bashan
— all these cities
5 fortified with high walls, gates and bars;
beside suburban cities mightily abounding:
6 and we devoted them,
as we worked to Sichon sovereign of Heshbon
— devoting the few men, women and toddlers,
of every city:
7 and all the animals and the loot of the cities,
we plundered to ourselves.
8 And we took, at that time,
from the hand of the two sovereigns of the Emoriy
the land this side of Yarden
from the wadi of Arnon to mount Hermon
— which Hermon the Sidoniy called Sirion;
9 and the Emoriy called Shenir;
10 all the cities of the plain
and all Gilad and all Bashan, to Salchah and Edrei,
cities of the sovereigndom of Og in Bashan.
11 For only Og sovereign of Bashan
of the remnant of Rephaim survived;
behold his bedstead — a bedstead of iron;
Is it not in Rabbah of the sons of Ammon?
nine cubits the length thereof
and four cubits the width thereof,
after the cubit of a man.

RESUME' OF THE ALLOTMENT OF LAND

12 And this land, which we possessed at that time,
from Aroer by the wadi Arnon
and half mount Gilad and the cities thereof,
I gave to the Reu Beniy and to the Gadiy:
13 and the remainder of Gilad and all Bashan,
being the sovereigndom of Og,
I gave to the half scion of Menash Sheh;
all the boundaries of Argob, with all Bashan,
called the land of Rephaim.
14 Yair the son of Menash Sheh
took all the boundaries of Argob
to the borders of the Geshuriy and Maachahiy;
and called them after his own name,
Bashan Havoth Yair, to this day:

DEUTERONOMY 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

15 And I gave *Gilead* **Gilad** unto Machir.
16 And unto the *Reubenites* **Reu Beniy**
and unto the *Gadites* **Gadiy**
I gave from *Gilead* **Gilad** even unto the *river* **wadi Arnon**
half midst the *valley* **wadi,**
and the border even unto the *river* **Jabbok wadi Yabboq,**
which is the border of the *children* **sons** of Ammon;
17 The plain also, and *Jordan* **Yarden,**
and the *coast* **border thereof,**
from *Chinnereth* **Kinneroth** even unto the sea of the plain,
even the salt sea,
under *Ashdothpishgah* **Ashdoth Pishgah**
eastward **toward the rising.**
18 And I *commanded* **misvahed** you at that time, saying,
the LORD **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
hath given you this land to possess it:
ye shall pass over *armed* **equipped**
before at the face of your brethren
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El,**
all that are *meet for the war* **sons of valour.**
19 But your *wives* **women,** and your *little ones* **toddlers,**
and your *cattle* **chattel,**
(for I know that ye have much *cattle* **chattel,)**
shall *abide* **settle** in your cities which I have given you;
20 Until *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
have given rest unto your brethren, as well as unto you,
and until they also possess the land
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
hath given them beyond *Jordan* **Yarden:**
and then shall ye return every man unto his possession,
which I have given you.
RESUME' OF YAH VEH'S FORBIDDING MOSHEH
21 And I *commanded* *Joshua* **misvahed Yah Shua**
at that time, saying,
Thine eyes have seen
all that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
hath *done* **worked** unto these two *kings* **sovereigns:**
so shall *the LORD* **do** **Yah Veh work**
unto all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**
whither thou passest.
22 Ye shall not *fear* **awe** them:
for the LORD **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
he shall fight for you.
23 And I besought *the LORD* **Yah Veh** at that time, saying,
24 O *Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh,**
thou hast begun to
shew **have** thy servant *see* thy greatness,
and thy *mighty* **strong** hand:
for what *God* **El** is there in *heaven* **the heavens** or in earth,
that can *do* **work** according to thy works,
and according to thy might?
25 I *pray* **beseech** thee, let me *go* **pass** over,
and see the good land that is beyond *Jordan* **Yarden,**
that goodly mountain, and Lebanon.
26 But *the LORD* **was wroth with Yah Veh** passed over me
for your sakes **because of you,**
and *would not hear me* **heard me not:**
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto me,
Let it suffice thee **Too much;**
speak no more **word not again**
unto me of this *matter* **word.**
27 Get **Ascend** thee *up* into the top of Pishgah,
and lift up thine eyes *westward* **seaward,**
and northward and southward,
and *eastward* **toward the rising,**
and *behold* **see** it with thine eyes:
for thou shalt not *go* **pass** over this *Jordan* **Yarden.**
28 But *charge* *Joshua* **misvah Yah Shua,**
and *encourage* **strengthen** him,
and *strengthen* **toughen** him:
for he shall *go* **pass** over *before at the face of* this people,
and he shall cause them to inherit the land
which thou shalt see.
29 So we *abode* **settled** in the valley
over against Bethpeor **opposite Beth Peor.**
MOSHEH LAYS OUT THE TORAH

4 Now therefore hearken, O *Israel* **Yisra El,**
unto the statutes and unto the judgments,
which I teach you, for to *do* **work** them, that ye may live,

DEUTERONOMY 3, 4296

exeGesés companion BIBLE

15 and I gave Gilad to Machir:
16 and to the Reu Beniy and to the Gadiy
I gave from Gilad even to the wadi Arnon
— to the middle of the wadi
and the border even to the wadi Yabboq,
which *is* the border of the sons of Ammon;
17 the plain also and Yarden and the border,
from Kinneroth even to the sea of the plain,
even the salt sea,
under Ashdoth Pishgah toward the rising.
18 And I misvahed you at that time, saying,
Yah Veh your Elohim
gives you this land to possess:
pass over equipped
at the face of your brothers the sons of Yisra El,
all you sons of valour:
19 only, settle your women and your toddlers
and your chattel,
— for I know that you have much chattel
in the cities I give you;
20 until Yah Veh gives rest to your brothers
as well as to you;
and until they also possess the land
Yah Veh your Elohim gives them beyond Yarden:
and then return
— every man of you to his possession,
which I give you.
RESUME' OF YAH VEH'S FORBIDDING MOSHEH
21 And I misvahed Yah Shua at that time, saying,
Your eyes see all that Yah Veh your Elohim
worked to these two sovereigns:
thus Yah Veh works
to all the sovereigndoms where you pass.
22 Awe them not:
for Yah Veh your Elohim fights for you.
23 And I besought Yah Veh at that time, saying,
24 O Adonay Yah Veh,
you — you begin to show your servant
your greatness and your strong hand:
for what *El* *is* there in the heavens or in earth
who works according to your works
and according to your might?
25 I beseech you, pass me over
to see the good land beyond Yarden
— that goodly mountain and Lebanon.
26 But because of you, Yah Veh passed over me
and heard me not:
and Yah Veh said to me,
Too much; never again word this word to me.
27 Ascend into the top of Pishgah
and lift your eyes seaward
and northward and southward
and toward the rising
— see it with your eyes:
for you pass not over this Yarden:
and misvah Yah Shua
and strengthen him and toughen him:
for he passes over at the face of this people
and he has them inherit the land you see.
29 — and we settled in the valley opposite Beth Peor.
MOSHEH LAYS OUT THE TORAH
4 And now hearken, O Yisra El,
to the statutes and to the judgments I teach you
— to work them — to live

DEUTERONOMY 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and go in and possess the land
which the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of your fathers
giveth you.
2 Ye shall not add unto the word
which I *command* **misvah** you,
neither shall ye diminish *ought* from it,
that ye may *keep* **guard** the *commandments* **misvoth**
of the LORD **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
which I *command* **misvah** you.
3 Your eyes have seen
what the LORD *did* **Yah Veh worked**
because of *Baalpeor* **Baal Peor**:
for all the men
that *followed* *Baalpeor* **went after Baal Peor**,
the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
hath destroyed them from among you.
4 But ye that did *cleave* **adhere**
unto the LORD **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
are alive every one of you this day.
5 Behold **See**, I have taught you statutes and judgments,
even as the LORD **Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**
commanded **misvahed** me,
that ye should *do so in* **so work midst** the land
whither ye go to possess it.
6 *Keep* **Guard** *therefore* and *do* **work** them;
for this is your wisdom
and your *understanding* **discernment**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *nations* **people**,
which shall hear all these statutes, and say,
Surely this great *nation* **goyim**
is a wise and *understanding* **discerning** people.
7 For what *nation* **goyim** is there so great,
who hath *God* **Elohim** so nigh unto them,
as the LORD **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim** is in all *things*
that we call upon him for?
8 And what *nation* **goyim** is there so great,
that hath statutes and judgments so *righteous* **just**
as all this *law* **torah**,
which I set *before you* **at your face** this day?
9 Only *take heed to* **guard** thyself,
and *keep* **guard** thy soul *diligently* **mightily**,
lest thou forget the *things* **words**
which thine eyes have seen,
and lest they *depart* **turn aside** from thy heart
all the days of thy life:
but teach them thy sons, and thy sons' sons;
10 *Specially* the day
that thou stoodest *before* **at the face of**
the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** in Horeb,
when the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto me,
Gather me **Congregate** the people *together*,
and I *will* **shall** make them hear my words,
that they may learn to *fear* **awe** me
all the days that they shall live upon the *earth* **soil**,
and that they may teach their *children* **sons**.
11 And ye *came near* **approached**
and stood under the mountain;
and the mountain *burned* **kindled** with fire
unto the *midst* **heart** of *heaven* **the heavens**,
with darkness, clouds, and *thick* **dripping** darkness.
12 And the LORD *spake* **Yah Veh worded** unto you
out of the midst of the fire:
ye heard the voice of the words,
but saw no *similitude* **manifestation**;
only ye heard **except** a voice.
13 And he *declared* **told** unto you his covenant,
which he *commanded* **misvahed** you to *perform* **work**,
even ten *commandments* **words**;
and he *wrote* **inscribed** them
upon two *tables* **slabs** of stone.
14 And the LORD *commanded* **Yah Veh misvahed** me
at that time
to teach you statutes and judgments,
that ye might *do* **work** them
in the land whither ye *go* **pass** over to possess it.
15 **MOSHEH WARNS AGAINST IDOLATRY**
Take ye therefore good heed unto yourselves
Guard your souls mightily;
for ye saw no *manner of similitude* **manifestation**

DEUTERONOMY 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and go in and possess the land
Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers gives you:
2 neither add to the word I misvah you,
nor diminish from it
— to guard the misvoth of Yah Veh your Elohim
that I misvah you.
3 Your eyes saw
what Yah Veh worked because of Baal Peor:
for all the men who went after Baal Peor,
Yah Veh your Elohim destroyed from your midst.
4 But you who adhered to Yah Veh your Elohim
— every one of you *is* alive this day.
5 See, I taught you statutes and judgments,
even as Yah Veh my Elohim misvahed me,
to work thus midst the land you go to possess.
6 Guard and work;
for this *is* your wisdom and your discernment
in the eyes of the people who hear all these statutes;
and say, Surely this great goyim
is a wise and discerning people!
7 For what goyim, so great,
who has Elohim so nigh them,
as Yah Veh our Elohim, for all we call on him?
8 And what goyim, so great,
whose statutes and judgments as just as all this torah,
which I set at your face this day?
9 Only guard yourself and guard your soul mightily,
lest you forget the words your eyes saw;
and lest they turn aside from your heart
all the days of your life:
but teach them to your sons
and the sons of your sons.
10 The day you stood
at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim in Horeb,
when Yah Veh said to me,
Congregate the people to hear my words
— to learn to awe me all the days they live on the soil
and to teach their sons.
11 And you approached
and stood under the mountain;
and the mountain kindled with fire
to the heart of the heavens
with darkness, clouds and dripping darkness:
and Yah Veh worded to you from midst the fire:
you heard the voice of the words,
but saw no manifestation — except a voice.
12 And he told you the covenant
he misvahed you to work
— ten words;
and he inscribed them on two slabs of stone.
13 And at that time, Yah Veh misvahed me
to teach you statutes and judgments
— to work them
in the land you pass over to possess.
MOSHEH WARNS AGAINST IDOLATRY
15 Guard your souls mightily;
for you saw no manifestation

DEUTERONOMY 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

on the day
that the LORD spake **Yah Veh worded** unto you in Horeb
out of the midst of the fire:
16 Lest ye *corrupt* **ruin yourselves**,
and make **work** you a *graven image* **sculptile**,
the *similitude* **manifestation** of any *figure* **figurine**,
the *likeness* **pattern** of male or female,
17 The *likeness* **pattern** of any *beast* **animal**
that is on the earth,
the *likeness* **pattern** of any winged fowl
that flieth in the *air* **heavens**,
18 The *likeness* **pattern** of any *thing* **ought**
that creepeth on the *ground* **soil**,
the *likeness* **pattern** of any fish
that is in the waters beneath the earth:
19 And lest thou lift up thine eyes
unto *heaven* **the heavens**,
and when thou seest the sun, and the moon, and the stars,
even all the host of *heaven* **the heavens**,
shouldst be driven to *worship* **prostrate to** them,
and serve them,
which the LORD **Yah Veh thy God Elohim**
hath *divided* **allotted** unto all *nations* **people**
under the whole *heaven* **of the heavens**.
20 But the LORD **Yah Veh** hath taken you,
and brought you forth out of the iron furnace,
even out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
to be unto him a people of inheritance, as ye are this day.
21 Furthermore the LORD **Yah Veh** was angry with me
for because of your sakes **words**,
and *sware* **oathed**
that I should not *go* **pass** over *Jordan* **Yarden**,
and that I should not go in unto that good land,
which the LORD **Yah Veh thy God Elohim**
giveth thee for an inheritance:
22 But I *must* die in this land,
I *must* **shall** not *go* **pass** over *Jordan* **Yarden**:
but ye shall *go* **pass** over, and possess that good land.
23 Take heed **Guard** unto yourselves,
lest ye forget the covenant
of the LORD **Yah Veh your God Elohim**,
which he *made* **cut** with you,
and make **work** you a *graven image* **sculptile**,
or the *likeness of any thing* **manifestation**,
which the LORD **Yah Veh thy God Elohim**
hath *forbidden* **misvahed** thee.
24 For the LORD **Yah Veh thy God Elohim**
is a consuming fire, even a jealous *god* **El**.
25 When thou shalt *beget children* **birth sons**,
and *children's children* **sons' sons**,
and ye shall have *remained long* **lingered** in the land,
and shall *corrupt* **ruin yourselves**,
and make a *graven image* **sculptile**,
or the *likeness of any thing* **manifestation**,
and shall *do* **work** evil
in the *sight eyes of the LORD* **Yah Veh thy God Elohim**,
to *provoke* **vex** him to *anger* **wrath**:
26 I call *heaven* **the heavens** and earth
to witness against you this day,
that *in* **destructing**,
ye shall *soon* *utterly* *perish* **suddenly destruct**
from off the land
whereunto ye *go* **pass** over *Jordan* **Yarden** to possess it;
ye shall not prolong your days upon it,
but *in* **desolating**, shall *utterly* *be* *destroyed* **be desolated**.
27 And the LORD **Yah Veh** shall scatter you
among the nations,
and ye shall be *left few* **few men** in number
that survive among the *heathen* **people**,
whither the LORD **Yah Veh** shall *lead* **drive** you.
28 And there ye shall serve *gods* **elohim**,
the work of *men's* **human** hands, *wood* **timber** and stone,
which neither see, nor hear, nor eat, nor *smell* **scent**.
29 But if from thence
thou shalt seek the LORD **Yah Veh thy God Elohim**,
thou shalt find *him*,
if thou seek him with all thy heart and with all thy soul.
30 When thou art in tribulation,
and all these *things* **words** are *come upon* **have found** thee,

DEUTERONOMY 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

on the day Yah Veh worded to you in Horeb
from midst the fire:
16 lest you ruin, and work a sculptile
— the manifestation of any figurine
the pattern of male or female,
17 the pattern of any animal on the earth,
the pattern of any winged fowl flying in the heavens,
18 the pattern of aught creeping on the soil,
the pattern of any fish in the waters beneath the earth:
19 and lest you lift up your eyes to the heavens
and when you see the sun and the moon
and the stars and all the host of the heavens
and be driven to prostrate to them and serve them
— which Yah Veh your Elohim
allotted to all people under the whole of the heavens.
20 But Yah Veh took you
and brought you from the iron furnace
— even from Misrayim,
to becomes his people of inheritance, as this day.
21 And Yah Veh was angry with me
because of your words;
and oathed that I not pass over Yarden
and that I not go in to that good land,
which Yah Veh your Elohim
gave you — an inheritance:
22 and I die in this land; I pass not over Yarden:
and you pass over and possess that good land.
23 Guard yourselves,
lest you forget the covenant of Yah Veh your Elohim,
which he cut with you
— and work yourselves a sculptile or a manifestation
of which Yah Veh your Elohim misvahed you.
24 For Yah Veh your Elohim
is a consuming fire — a jealous El.
25 When you birth sons and sons of sons
and linger in the land and ruin
and make a sculptile or a manifestation
and work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh your Elohim,
to vex him to wrath:
26 I call the heavens and earth
to witness against you this day,
that in destructing,
you suddenly destruct from off the land
whereunto you pass over Yarden to possess;
that you prolong not your days thereon,
but in desolating, become desolated:
27 and Yah Veh scatter you among the nations
and you be few men in number
of the people who survive,
where Yah Veh drives you.
28 And there you serve elohim,
the work of human hands — timber and stone,
which neither see nor hear nor eat nor scent.
29 And if from there
you seek Yah Veh your Elohim
— and find if you seek him
with all your heart and with all your soul
— when you are in tribulation
and all these words find you

DEUTERONOMY 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

even in the latter final days,
if thou turn to the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**,
and shalt be obedient **hearken** unto his voice;

YAH VEh, A MERCIFUL EL

31 (For the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**
is a merciful God **El**)
he will **shall** not forsake thee **let thee loose**,
neither **destroy** **ruin** thee,
nor forget the covenant of thy fathers
which he **sware** **oathed** unto them.
32 For ask now I **beseech**,
of the days that are past **first days**,
which were before thee **at thy face**,
since the day that
God **Elohim** created man **humanity** upon the earth,
and ask from the one side **end of heaven the heavens**
unto the other **end of the heavens**,
whether there hath been **become** any such thing
as this great thing **word** is, or hath been heard like it?
33 Did ever people hear the voice of God **Elohim**
speaking **wording** out of the midst of the fire,
as thou hast heard, and live?
34 Or hath God assayed **Elohim tested**
to go and take him a nation **goyim**
from the midst of another nation **goyim**,
by temptations **testings**, by signs, and by wonders **omens**,
and by war, and by a mighty **strong** hand,
and by a stretched out **spread** arm,
and by great **terrors** **awesomenesses**,
according to all that the LORD **Yah Veh** your God **Elohim**
did **worked** for you in Egypt before **Misrayim** in your eyes?
35 Unto thee it was shewed **You have seen**,
that thou mightest know
that the LORD **Yah Veh** he is God **Elohim**;
there is none else beside him.
36 Out of heaven **the heavens**
he made **had** thee to hear his voice,
that he might **instruct** **discipline** thee:
and upon earth he **shewed** **had** thee to see his great fire;
and thou heardest his words out of the midst of the fire.
37 And because he loved thy fathers,
therefore he chose their seed after them,
and brought thee out in his sight **at his face**
with his mighty power **force** out of Egypt **Misrayim**;
38 To drive out nations **dispossess** **goyim**
from before thee **thy face**
greater and mightier than thou art,
to bring thee in, to give thee their land for an inheritance,
as it is this day.
39 Know therefore this day,
and consider it **let it return** in thine heart,
that the LORD **Yah Veh**
he is God **Elohim** in heaven **the heavens** above,
and upon the earth beneath: there is none else.
40 Thou shalt keep **guard** therefore his statutes,
and his **commandments** **misvoth**,
which I **command** **misvah** thee this day,
that it may go well with **well**—**please** thee,
and with thy children **sons** after thee,
and that thou mayest prolong thy days upon the earth **soil**,
which the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim** giveth thee,
for ever **all days**.

MOSHEH SEPARATES CITIES OF REFUGE

41 Then **Moses** severed **Mosheh** separated three cities
on this side **Jordan** **Yarden** toward the sunrising;
42 That the slayer **murderer** might flee thither,
which should **kill** **murder** his neighbour **friend**
unawares **unknowingly**,
and hated him not in times past **three yesters ago**;
and that fleeing unto one of these cities he might live:
43 *Namely, Bezer* **Beser** in the wilderness,
in the plain country **land**, of the **Reubenites** **Reu Beni**;
and Ramoth in **Gilead** **Gilad**, of the **Gadites** **Gadi**;
and Golan in Bashan, of the **Manassites** **Menash Shehiy**.

RESUME' OF THE TORAH

44 And this is the law **torah** which **Moses** **Mosheh** set
before **at the face of** the children **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**:
45 These are the **testimonies** **witnesses**,
and the statutes, and the judgments,

DEUTERONOMY 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— even in the final days,
if you turn to Yah Veh your Elohim
and hearken to his voice;

YAH VEh, A MERCIFUL EL

31 for Yah Veh your Elohim is a merciful El;
he neither lets you loose nor ruins you,
nor forgets the covenant of your fathers
which he oathed to them.
32 For ask, I beseech,
of the first days at your face,
since the day Elohim created humanity on the earth,
from the end of the heavens
to the end of the heavens,
whether there has been such as this great word,
or has been heard the like?
33 Has a people ever heard the voice of Elohim
wording from midst the fire, as you heard, and lived?
34 Or has Elohim tested
to go and take him a goyim from midst a goyim,
by testings, by signs and by omens and by war
and by a strong hand and by a spread arm
and by great awesomenesses,
according to all Yah Veh your Elohim
worked for you in Misrayim in your eyes?
35 You saw, so that you know that Yah Veh Elohim
— none else beside him.
36 From the heavens he had you hear his voice,
to discipline you:
and on earth he had you see his great fire;
and had you hear his words from midst the fire.
37 And because he loved your fathers,
he chose their seed after them
and brought you out at his face
with his mighty force from Misrayim;
to dispossess from your face
goyim greater and mightier than you;
to bring you in,
to give you their land — an inheritance,
as this day.
39 Know this day, and return it in your heart,
that Yah Veh is Elohim in the heavens above
and on the earth beneath — none else.
40 And guard his statutes and his misvoth,
which I misvah you this day,
that it well—please you and your sons after you
and that you prolong your days on the soil,
which Yah Veh your Elohim gives you for all days.

MOSHEH SEPARATES CITIES OF REFUGE

41 Then Mosheh separates three cities
on this side Yarden toward the sunrising;
42 for the murderer to flee to
— who murders his friend unknowingly,
who hated him not three yesters ago;
and that fleeing to one of these cities he lives:
43 — Beser in the wilderness,
in the plain land, of the Reu Beni;
and Ramoth in Gilad, of the Gadiy;
and Golan in Bashan, of the Menash Shehiy.

RESUME' OF THE TORAH

44 And this is the torah Mosheh set
at the face of the sons of Yisra El:
45 these are the witnesses
and the statutes and the judgments,

DEUTERONOMY 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which *Moses spake* **Mosheh worded**
unto the *children sons* of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
after they came forth out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
46 On this side *Jordan* **Yarden**,
in the valley *over against Bethpeor* **opposite Beth Peor**,
in the land of *Sihon* **Sichon**
king sovereign of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
who *dwelt* **settled** at Heshbon,
whom *Moses* **Mosheh**
and the *children sons* of *Israel* **Yisra El** smote,
after they were come forth out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
47 And they possessed his land,
and the land of *Og king* **sovereign** of Bashan,
two *kings* **sovereigns** of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
which were on this side *Jordan* **Yarden**
toward the sunrising;
48 From Aroer,
which is by the *bank* **edge** of the *river* **wadi** Arnon,
even unto mount Sion, which is Hermon,
49 And all the plain on this side *Jordan* **Yarden**
eastward **toward the rising**,
even unto the sea of the plain, under the springs of Pisgah.

RESUME' OF STATUTES AND JUDGMENTS

5 And *Moses* **Mosheh** called all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and said unto them, Hear, O *Israel* **Yisra El**,
the statutes and judgments
which I *speak* **word** in your ears this day,
that ye may learn them,
and *keep* **guard**, and *do* **work** them.
2 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
made **cut** a covenant with us in Horeb.
3 *The LORD* **made** **Yah Veh cut** not this covenant
with our fathers, but with us,
even us, who are all of us here alive this day.
4 *The LORD* **talked** **Yah Veh worded** with you
face to face in the mount out of the midst of the fire,
5 (I stood between *the LORD* **Yah Veh** and you
at that time,
to *shew* **tell** you the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
for ye were afraid by reason **awed at the face** of the fire,
and *went* **ascended** not up into the mount;) saying,
6 *I am the LORD thy God* **I — Yah Veh thy Elohim**,
which brought thee out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
from the house of *bondage* **servants**.
7 Thou shalt have none other *gods* **elohim**
before **in fron** of me.
8 Thou shalt not
make **work** thee any *graven image* **sculptile**,
or any *likeness* of any *thing* **manifestation**
that is in *heaven* **the heavens** above,
or that is in the earth beneath,
or that is in the waters beneath the earth:
9 Thou shalt not
bow down **prostrate** *thyself* unto them, nor serve them:
for *I the LORD thy God* **I — Yah Veh thy Elohim**
am a jealous *God* **El**,
visiting the *iniquity* **perversity** of the fathers
upon the *children* **sons**
unto the third and fourth *generation* of them that hate me,
10 And *shewing* **working** mercy
unto thousands of them that love me
and *keep* **guard** my *commandments* **misvoth**.
11 Thou shalt not
take **bear** the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
in *vain* **defamation**:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
will **shall** not hold him *guiltless* **exonerate** him
that *taketh* **beareth** his name in *vain* **defamation**.
12 *Keep* **Guard** the *sabbath* **shabbath** day
to *sanctify* **hallow** it,
as *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
hath *commanded* **misvahed** thee.
13 Six days thou shalt *labour* **serve**,
and *do* **work** all thy work:
14 But the seventh day is the *sabbath* **shabbath**
of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**:
in it thou shalt not *do* **work** any work,
thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter,
nor thy *manservant* **servant**, nor thy *maidservant* **maid**,

DEUTERONOMY 4, 5300

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Mosheh worded to the sons of Yisra El,
after they came from Misrayim.
46 On this side Yarden,
in the valley opposite Beth Peor,
in the land of Sichon sovereign of the Emoriy,
who settled at Heshbon,
whom Mosheh and the sons of Yisra El smote,
as they came from Misrayim:
47 and possessed his land
and the land of Og sovereign of Bashan
— two sovereigns of the Emoriy,
on this side Yarden toward the sunrising;
48 from Aroer, by the edge of the wadi Arnon,
even to mount Sion — Hermon,
49 and all the plain on this side Yarden
toward the rising,
even to the sea of the plain
under the springs of Pisgah.

RESUME' OF STATUTES AND JUDGMENTS

5 And Mosheh calls all Yisra El, and says to them,
Hear, O Yisra El,
the statutes and judgments
I word in your ears this day
— to learn them and guard and work them.
2 Yah Veh our Elohim
cut a covenant with us in Horeb:
3 Yah Veh cut not this covenant with our fathers
but with us — we here this day — all of us alive.
4 Yah Veh worded face to face with you
in the mount from midst the fire,
5 I stood between Yah Veh and you at that time,
to tell you the word of Yah Veh:
for you awed at the face of the fire
and ascended not into the mount;
saying,
6 I — Yah Veh your Elohim,
who brought you from the land of Misrayim,
from the house of servants.
7 Have no other elohim in front of me.
8 Work not any sculptile or any manifestation
of that in the heavens above,
or that in the earth beneath,
or in the waters beneath the earth:
9 neither prostrate to them, nor serve them:
for I — Yah Veh your Elohim, am a jealous El,
visiting the perversity of the fathers on the sons
to the third and fourth of them who hate me,
and working mercy to thousands of them
who love me and guard my misvoth.
10
11 Bear not the name of Yah Veh your Elohim
in defamation:
for Yah Veh exonerates him not
who bears his name in defamation.
12 Guard the shabbath day to hallow it,
as Yah Veh your Elohim misvahed you.
13 Six days you serve and work all your work:
14 but the seventh day
is the shabbath of Yah Veh your Elohim:
never work any work therein,
— you, your son, your daughter,
your servant, your maid,

DEUTERONOMY 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

nor thine ox, nor thine ass **he burro**,
nor any of thy *cattle* **animals**,
nor thy *stranger* **sojourner** that is within thy *gates* **portals**;
that thy *manservant* **servant** and thy *maidservant* **maid**
may rest as well as thou.

15 And remember that thou wast a servant
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
brought thee out thence
through a *mighty* **strong** hand
and by a *stretched out* **spread** arm:
therefore *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
commanded **misvahed** thee
to *keep* **guard** the *sabbath* **shabbath** day.

16 Honour thy father and thy mother,
as *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
hath *commanded* **misvahed** thee;
that thy days may be prolonged,
and that it may *go well with* **well**—**please** thee,
in the *land* **soil**
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** giveth thee.

17 Thou shalt not *kill* **murder**.

18 Neither shalt thou *commit adultery* **adulterize**.

19 Neither shalt thou steal.

20 Neither shalt thou *bear false* **answer** a **vain** witness
against thy *neighbour* **friend**.

21 Neither shalt thou desire
thy *neighbour's wife* **friend's woman**,
neither shalt thou *covet* **desire**
thy *neighbour's* **friend's** house,
his field, or his *manservant* **servant**,
or his *maidservant* **maid**, his ox, or his *ass* **he burro**,
or *any thing* **ought** that is thy *neighbour's* **friend's**.

22 These words *the LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh** **worded**
unto all your *assembly* **congregation**
in the mount out of the midst of the fire,
of the cloud, and of the *thick* **dripping** darkness,
with a great voice: and he added *no more* **not**.
And he *wrote* **inscribed** them in two *tables* **slabs** of stone,
and *delivered* **gave** them unto me.

23 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when ye heard the voice out of the midst of the darkness,
(for the mountain *did burn* **kindled** with fire,)
that ye *came near unto* **approached** me,
even all the heads of your *tribes* **scions**, and your elders;

24 And ye said, Behold,
the LORD **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
hath *shewed us* **see** his *glory* **honour** and his greatness,
and we have heard his voice out of the midst of the fire:
we have seen this day
that *God doth talk* **Elohim** **wordeth** with *man* **humanity**,
and he liveth.

25 Now therefore why should we die?
for this great fire *will* **shall** consume us:
if we hear the voice
of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **any more** **Elohim** **again**,
then we shall die.

26 For who is there of all flesh,
that hath heard the voice of the living *God* **Elohim**
speaking **wording** out of the midst of the fire,
as we have, and lived?

27 Go thou near, and hear all
that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim** shall say:
and *speak* **word** thou unto us
all that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
shall *speak* **word** unto thee;
and we *will* **shall** hear it, and *do* **work** it.

28 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** heard the voice of your words,
when ye *spake* **worded** unto me;
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto me,
I have heard the voice of the words of this people,
which they have *spoken* **worded** unto thee:
they have well—**pleasingly** said
all that they have *spoken* **worded**.

29 O **give** that there were such an heart in them,
that they *would fear* **should awe** me,
and *keep* **guard** all my *commandments* **misvoth** *always* **all days**,
that it might *be well with* **well**—**please** them,
and with their *children* **for ever** **sons** **eternally**!

DEUTERONOMY 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

your ox, your he burro, your animals,
your sojourner within your portals;
that your servant and your maid rest as well as you.

15 And remember that you were a servant
in the land of Misrayim
and that Yah Veh your Elohim brought you from there
by a strong hand and by a spread arm:
so Yah Veh your Elohim misvahs you
to guard the shabbath day.

16 Honor your father and your mother,
as Yah Veh your Elohim misvahed you;
that your days be prolonged
and that it well—please you,
in the soil Yah Veh your Elohim gives you.

17 Murder not.

18 Adulterize not.

19 Steal not.

20 Answer not a vain witness against your friend.

21 Neither desire the woman of your friend,
nor desire the house of your friend
— his field or his servant or his maid
his ox or his he burro,
or aught of your friend.

22 Yah Veh worded these words
to all your congregation in the mount
from midst the fire of the cloud
and of the dripping darkness,
with a great voice:
and he added not.
And he inscribed them in two slabs of stone
and gave them to me.

23 And so be it,
as you heard the voice from midst the darkness,
for the mountain kindled with fire,
that you approached me
— all the heads of your scions and your elders;
and you said, Behold,
Yah Veh our Elohim
has us see his honor and his greatness
and we hear his voice from midst the fire:
we see this day that Elohim words with humanity
and he lives.

25 And now, why die we?
for this great fire consumes us:
if we hear the voice of Yah Veh our Elohim again,
we die.

26 For who *is* there of all flesh,
who hears the voice of the living Elohim
wording from midst the fire, as we, and lives?

27 Go near, and hear all Yah Veh our Elohim says:
and you — you word to us
all Yah Veh our Elohim words to you;
and we hearken, and work it.

28 And Yah Veh heard the voice of your words
you worded to me;
and Yah Veh said to me,
I hear the voice of the words of this people,
which they word to you:
they well—pleasingly say all they word.

29 O give that there were such a heart in them,
that they awe me and guard all my misvoth all days,
that it well—please them and their sons eternally!

DEUTERONOMY 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

30 Go say to them, *Get Return* you into your tents *again*.
31 But as for thee, stand thou here by me,
and I *will speak shall word* unto thee
all the *commandments misvoth*,
and the statutes, and the judgments,
which thou shalt teach them,
that they may *do work* them
in the land which I give them to possess it.
32 Ye shall *observe guard to do work therefore*
as the *LORD Yah Veh* your *God Elohim*
hath *commanded misvahed* you:
Ye shall not turn aside to the right *hand* or to the left.
33 ye shall walk in all the ways
which the *LORD Yah Veh* your *God Elohim*
hath *commanded misvahed* you,
that ye may live, and that it may be *well good* with you,
and that ye may prolong your days
in the land which ye shall possess.

6 Now these are the *commandments misvoth*,
the statutes, and the judgments,
which the *LORD Yah Veh* your *God Elohim*
commanded misvahed to teach you,
that ye might *do work* them
in the land whither ye go *pass over* to possess it:
2 That thou mightest *fear awe*
the *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*,
to *keep guard* all his statutes
and his *commandments misvoth*,
which I *command misvah* thee,
thou, and thy son, and thy son's son,
all the days of thy life;
and that thy days may be prolonged.
3 Hear *therefore, O Israél Yisra El*,
and *observe guard to do work* it;
that it may be *well with well—please* thee,
and that ye may *increase abound* mightily,
as the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of thy fathers
hath *promised worded unto* thee,
in the land that floweth with milk and honey.
4 Hear, *O Israél Yisra El*:
The *LORD Yah Veh* our *God Elohim*
is one *LORD Yah Veh*:
5 And thou shalt love the *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
with all thine heart, and with all thy soul,
and with all thy might.
6 And these words,
which I *command misvah* thee this day,
shall be in thine heart:
7 And thou shalt *teach point* them *diligently*
unto thy *children sons*,
and shalt *talk word* of them
when thou sittest in thine house,
and when thou walkest by the way,
and when thou liest down,
and when thou risest up.
8 And thou shalt bind them for a sign upon thine hand,
and they shall be
as *frontlets phylacteries* between thine eyes.
9 And thou shalt *write inscribe* them
upon the posts of thy house, and on thy *gates portals*.
10 And it shall be,
when the *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
shall have brought thee into the land
which he *sware oathed* unto thy fathers,
to Abraham, to *Isaac Yischaq*, and to *Jacob Yaaqov*,
to give thee great and goodly cities,
which thou buildedst not,
11 And houses full of all good *things*,
which thou filledst not,
and wells *digged hewn*,
which thou *diggedst hewest* not,
vineyards and olive trees,
which thou plantedst not;
when thou shalt have eaten and be *full satiated*;
12 Then *beware guard* lest thou forget the *LORD Yah Veh*,
which brought thee forth
out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
from the house of *bondage servants*.
13 Thou shalt *fear awe* the *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*,

DEUTERONOMY 5, 6302

exeGesés companion BIBLE

30 Go say to them, Return to your tents.
31 But as for you, you stand here by me
and I word to you
all the misvoth and the statutes and the judgments
to teach them
— to work them in the land I give them to possess it.
32 Guard to work
as Yah Veh your Elohim misvahs you:
turn not aside to the right or to the left.
33 Walk in all the ways
Yah Veh your Elohim misvahs you,
that you live and that it be good with you
and that you prolong your days
in the land you possess.

6 Now these are the misvoth
the statutes and the judgments
Yah Veh your Elohim misvahed to teach you
— to work in the land you pass over to possess:
2 to awe Yah Veh your Elohim,
to guard all his statutes
and the misvoth I misvahed you
— you and your son and the son of your son
all the days of your life;
and to prolong your days.
3 Hear, *O Yisra El* and guard to work;
that it well—please you;
and as Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers
worded to you,
that you abound mightily
in the land flowing with milk and honey.
4 Hear, *O Yisra El*!
Yah Veh our Elohim *is* one Yah Veh!
5 And love Yah Veh your Elohim with all your heart
and with all your soul and with all your might.
6 And these words,
I misvah you this day, become in your heart:
7 and point them out to your sons
and word of them
when you sit in your house
and when you walk by the way
and when you lie down
and when you rise up:
8 and bind them for a sign on your hand
and to become phylacteries between your eyes:
9 and inscribe them on the posts of your house
and on your portals.
10 And so be it,
when Yah Veh your Elohim brings you into the land
he oathed to your fathers
— to Abraham, to Yischaq and to Yaaqov,
to give you great and goodly cities
which you built not,
11 and houses full of all goods which you filled not
and hewn wells which you hewed not,
vineyards and olive trees which you planted not;
and eat and satiate;
12 then guard, lest you forget Yah Veh,
who brought you from the land of Misrayim,
from the house of servants.
13 Awe Yah Veh your Elohim

DEUTERONOMY 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and serve him, and shalt swear **oath** by his name.
14 Ye shall not go after other **gods elohim**,
of the **gods elohim** of the people
which are round about you;
15 (For *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
is a jealous **God El** among you)
lest the **anger wrath** of *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
be kindled against thee,
and destroy thee from off the face of the **earth soil**.
16 Ye shall not **tempt test**
the LORD Yah Veh your God Elohim,
as, **in testing** ye **tempted tested** him in *Massah*.
17 **In guarding**, ye shall **diligently keep guard**
the **commandments misvoth**
of *the LORD Yah Veh your God Elohim*,
and his **testimonies witnesses**, and his statutes,
which he hath **commanded misvahed** thee.
18 *And thou shalt do work*
that which is **right straight** and good
in the **sight eyes** of *the LORD Yah Veh*:
that it may **be well with well**—**please** thee,
and that thou mayest go in and possess the good land
which *the LORD sware Yah Veh oathed* unto thy fathers.
19 To **cast out expel** all thine enemies
from **before thee thy face**,
as *the LORD Yah Veh hath spoken worded*.
20 And when thy son asketh thee
in time to come on the morrow, saying,
What mean the **testimonies witnesses**,
and the statutes, and the judgments,
which *the LORD Yah Veh our God Elohim*
hath **commanded misvahed** you?
21 Then thou shalt say unto thy son,
We were *Pharaoh's bondmen Paroh's servants*
in *Egypt Misrayim*;
and *the LORD Yah Veh* brought us out of *Egypt Misrayim*
with a **mighty strong** hand:
22 *And the LORD Yah Veh*
shewed gave signs and **wonders omens**,
great and **sore evil**,
upon *Egypt Misrayim*, upon *Pharaoh Paroh*,
and upon all his household, **before in fron of** our eyes:
23 And he brought us out from thence,
that he might bring us in, to give us the land
which he **sware oathed** unto our fathers.
24 *And the LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed us*
to **do work** all these statutes,
to **fear the LORD awe Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**,
for our good **always all days**,
that he might preserve us alive, as it is at this day.
25 And it shall be our **righteousness justness**,
if we **observe guard to do work**
all these **commandments misvoth**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh our God Elohim,
as he hath **commanded misvahed** us.

THE TORAH ON MINGLING

7 When *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
shall bring thee into the land whither thou goest
to possess it,
and hath **cast plucked out** many **nations goyim**
before thee at thy face,
the **Hittites Hethiy**, and the **Girgashites Girgashiy**
and the **Amorites Emoriy**, and the **Canaanites Kenaaniy**,
and the **Perizzites Perizziy**, and the **Hivites Hivviy**,
and the **Jebusites Yebusiy**,
seven **nations goyim** greater and mightier than thou;
2 And when *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
shall **deliver give** them **before thee at thy face**;
thou shalt smite them,
and **utterly destroy in devoting, devote** them;
thou shalt **make cut** no covenant with them,
nor **shew mercy grant charism** unto them:
3 Neither shalt thou **make marriages intermarry** with them;
thy daughter thou shalt not give unto his son,
nor his daughter shalt thou take unto thy son.
4 For they **will shall** turn away **aside** thy son
from following me,
that they may serve other **gods elohim**:

DEUTERONOMY 6, 7 303

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and serve him and oath by his name:
14 go not after other elohim
— of the elohim of the people all around you;
for Yah Veh your Elohim
is a jealous El in your midst
— lest the wrath of Yah Veh your Elohim
kindles against you
and destroys you from the face of the soil.
16 Test not Yah Veh your Elohim,
as in testing, you tested him.
17 In guarding,
guard the misvoth of Yah Veh your Elohim
and his witnesses and his statutes
he misvahed you:
18 and work what is straight and good
in the eyes of Yah Veh:
that it well—please you
and that you go in and possess the good land
Yah Veh oathed to your fathers:
19 — to expel all your enemies from your face,
as Yah Veh worded.
20 And when your son asks you on the morrow,
saying, What mean the witnesses
and the statutes and the judgments
Yah Veh our Elohim misvahed you?
21 Then you say to your son,
We were servants of Paroh in Misrayim;
and Yah Veh brought us from Misrayim
with a strong hand:
22 and Yah Veh gave signs and omens,
great and evil,
on Misrayim, on Paroh and on all his household,
in front of our eyes:
23 and he brought us out from there
to bring us in,
— to give us the land he oathed to our fathers.
24 And Yah Veh misvahed us
to work all these statutes
— to awe Yah Veh our Elohim for our good all days,
to preserve us alive, as at this day.
25 And it becomes our justness,
when we guard to work all these misvoth
at the face of Yah Veh our Elohim,
as he misvahed us.

THE TORAH ON MINGLING

7 When Yah Veh your Elohim
brings you to the land where you go, to possess it,
and plucks many goyim from your face
— the Hethiy and the Girgashiy
and the Emoriy and the Kenaaniy
and the Perizziy and the Hivviy and the Yebusiy
— seven goyim greater and mightier than you;
2 and when Yah Veh your Elohim
gives them at your face,
smite them; and in devoting, devote them:
neither cut a covenant with them
nor grant charism to them:
3 neither intermarry with them;
nor give your daughter to his son,
nor take his daughter to your son.
4 For he turns aside your son from following me
to serve other elohim:

DEUTERONOMY 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 so will shall the anger **wrath** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
be kindled against you, and destroy thee suddenly.
But thus shall ye *deal* **work** with them;
ye shall *destroy* **pull down** their **sacrifice** altars,
and break down their *images* **monoliths**,
and cut down their *groves* **asherim**,
and burn their *graven images* **sculptiles** with fire.
6 For thou art an holy people
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**:
the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** hath chosen thee
to be a *special* **peculiar** people unto himself,
above all people that are upon the face of the *earth* **soil**.
7 The **LORD Yah Veh**
did not *set his love upon* **attach himself to** you,
nor *choose* **chose** you,
because ye were more *in number* **abundant**
than any people;
for ye were the fewest of all people:
8 But because the **LORD** *loved* of **Yah Veh's love to** you,
and because he *would keep* **should guard** the oath
which he had *sworn* **oathed** unto your fathers,
hath the **LORD Yah Veh** brought you out
with a *mighty* **strong** hand,
and redeemed you out of the house of *bondmen* **servants**,
from the hand of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
king **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
9 Know therefore that the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
he is *God* **Elohim**, the *faithful God* **trustworthy El**,
which *keepeth* **guardeth** covenant and mercy
with them that love him
and *keep* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**
to a thousand generations;
10 And *repayeth* **doth shalam** them
that hate him to their face, to destroy them:
he *will* **shall** not be *slack* **delay** to him that hateth him,
he *will* **repay** **shall shalam** him to his face.
11 Thou shalt *therefore*
keep **guard** the *commandments* **misvoth**,
and the statutes, and the judgments,
which I *command* **misvah** thee this day, to *do* **work** them.
12 Wherefore **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
if **because** ye hearken to these judgments,
and *keep* **guard**, and *do* **work** them,
that the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
shall *keep* **guard** unto thee the covenant and the mercy
which he *sware* **oathed** unto thy fathers:
13 And he *will* **shall** love thee, and bless thee,
and *multiply* **abound** thee:
he *will* **shall** also bless the fruit of thy *womb* **belly**,
and the fruit of thy *land* **soil**,
thy *corn* **crop**, and thy *wine* **juice**, and thine oil,
the *increase* **fetus** of thy *kine* **yoke**,
and the *flocks* **riches** of thy *sheep* **flocks**,
in the *land* **soil** which he *sware* **oathed** unto thy fathers
to give thee.
14 Thou shalt be blessed above all people:
there shall not be male **sterile** or female *barren* **sterile**
among you, or among your *cattle* **animals**.
15 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
will take **shall turn** away from thee all sickness,
and *will* **shall** put none
of the evil diseases of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
which thou knowest, upon thee;
but *will* **lay** **shall give** them upon all them that hate thee.
16 And thou shalt consume all the people
which the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
shall *deliver* **give** thee;
thine eye shall *have no pity upon* **not spare** them:
neither shalt thou serve their *gods* **elohim**;
for that *will* **shall** be a snare unto thee.
17 If thou shalt say in thine heart,
These *nations* **goyim** are *more* **greater** than I;
how can I dispossess them?
18 Thou shalt not be *afraid of* **awe** them:
but shalt well remember
what the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
did **worked** unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
and unto all *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
19 The great *temptations* **testings** which thine eyes saw,

DEUTERONOMY 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

so that Yah Veh kindles his wrath against you
and destroys you suddenly.
5 But work thus with them;
pull down their sacrifice altars
and break down their monoliths
and cut down their asherim
and burn their sculptiles with fire.
6 For you are a holy people to Yah Veh your Elohim:
Yah Veh your Elohim chose you
to be his peculiar people
above all people on the face of the soil.
7 Yah Veh neither attached himself to you
nor chose you
because you were more abundant than any people
— for you were the fewest of all people:
8 but because of the love of Yah Veh to you
and because of guarding the oath
he oathed to your fathers,
Yah Veh brought you out with a strong hand
and redeemed you from the house of servants
— from the hand of Paroh sovereign of Misrayim.
9 And you know that Yah Veh your Elohim
is Elohim — the trustworthy El
— who guards covenant and mercy
with them who love him;
and guards his misvoth
to a thousand generations;
and them who hate him
10 he shalams to their face, to destroy them:
he delays not to him who hates him
— he shalams him to his face.
11 Guard to work the misvoth
and the statutes and the judgments
I misvah you this day.
12 And so be it,
because you hearken to these judgments
and guard and work them,
that Yah Veh your Elohim
guards to you the covenant and the mercy
he oathed to your fathers:
13 and he loves you and blesses you
and abounds you:
and blesses the fruit of your belly
and the fruit of your soil
— your crop and your juice and your oil
and the riches of your flocks
in the soil he oathed to your fathers to give you.
14 Blessed — you above all people:
no sterile male or sterile female
becomes among you, or among your animals:
15 and Yah Veh turns all sickness from you
and puts none of the evil diseases of Misrayim,
which you know, on you;
but gives them on all who hate you:
16 and you consume all the people
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you:
your eye spares them not:
you serve not their elohim;
for that becomes a snare to you.
17 If you say in your heart,
These goyim are greater than I;
how can I dispossess them?
18 Awe them not:
but remember well
what Yah Veh your Elohim worked to Paroh
and to all Misrayim;
19 the great testings your eyes saw

DEUTERONOMY 7, 8

exeGes *ready research BIBLE*

and the signs, and the wonders **omens**,
and the **mighty strong** hand,
and the *stretched out* **spread** arm,
whereby *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
brought thee out:
so shall *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
do **work** unto all the people
of whom thou art afraid **whose face thou awest**.
20 Moreover *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
will **shall** send the hornet among them,
until they that are left **survive**,
and hide themselves from thee **thy face**,
be destroyed.
21 Thou shalt not be *affrighted* **terrified** at them **their face**:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** is among you,
a **mighty God** **great El** and **terrible awesome**.
22 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
will **put out** **shall pluck** those *nations* **goyim**
before thee **from thy face**
by little and little **bit by bit**:
thou mayest not **be able**
consume them at once **to finish them off suddenly**,
lest the *beasts* **live beings** of the field
increase **abound** upon thee.
23 But *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
shall **deliver** **give** them unto thee **thy face**,
and shall **destroy** **quake** them
with a **mighty destruction** **great confusion**,
until they be **destroyed** **desolated**.
24 And he shall **deliver** **give** their *kings* **sovereigns**
into thine hand,
and thou shalt destroy their name
from under *heaven* **the heavens**:
there shall no man be able to stand
before thee **at thy face**,
until thou have **destroyed** **desolated** them.
25 The *graven images* **sculptiles** of their *gods* **elohim**
shall ye burn with fire:
thou shalt not desire the silver or gold that is on them,
nor take it unto thee, lest thou be snared therein:
for it is an *abomination* **abhorrence**
to *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**.
26 Neither shalt thou bring an *abomination* **abhorrence**
into thine house,
lest thou be a *cursed thing* **devoted** like it:
but **in abominating**, thou shalt *utterly detest* **abominate** it,
and **in abhorring**, thou shalt *utterly* abhor it;
for it is a *cursed thing* **devoted**.

GUARDING THE MISVOTH

8 All the *commandments* **misvoth**
which I *command* **misvah** thee this day
shall ye *observe* **guard** to *do* **work**,
that ye may live, and *multiply* **abound**,
and go in and possess the land
which *the LORD* **sware** **Yah Veh** **oathed** unto your fathers.
2 And thou shalt remember all the way
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
led **carried** thee these forty years in the wilderness,
to humble thee, and to *prove* **test** thee,
to know what was in thine heart,
whether thou *wouldest*
keep **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**, or no.
3 And he humbled thee,
and *suffered* **famished** thee to *hunger*,
and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not,
neither did thy fathers know;
that he might make **known** to thee *know*
that *man* **humanity** doth not live by bread only,
but by *every word* **all**
that proceedeth out of the mouth of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
doth *man* **humanity** live.
4 Thy *raiment* **clothes**
waxed not old **neither wore out** upon thee,
neither did thy foot swell, these forty years.
5 Thou shalt also consider in thine heart,
that, as a man *chasteneth* **disciplineth** his son,
so *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
chasteneth **disciplineth** thee.

DEUTERONOMY 7, 8305

exeGes *companion BIBLE*

and the signs and the omens and the strong hand
and the spread arm,
whereby Yah Veh your Elohim brought you out:
thus Yah Veh your Elohim works to all the people
whose face you awe.
20 And Yah Veh your Elohim
sends the hornet among them;
until they who survive
— who hide themselves from your face
are destroyed.
21 Terrify not at their face:
for Yah Veh your Elohim *is* among you
— a great El and awesome.
22 And Yah Veh your Elohim
plucks those goyim from your face bit by bit:
you are not able to finish them off suddenly
lest the live beings of the field abound on you:
23 but Yah Veh your Elohim
gives them at your face
and quakes them with a great confusion,
until they desolate:
24 and he gives their sovereigns into your hand
and you destroy their name from under the heavens:
no man *is* able to stand at your face
until you desolate them.
25 Burn the sculptiles of their elohim with fire:
neither desire the silver or gold that *is* on them,
nor take it to you, lest you be snared therein:
for it *is* an abhorrence to Yah Veh your Elohim.
26 Neither bring an abhorrence into your house,
lest you be devoted as it:
but in abominating, abominate it
and in abhorring, abhor it;
for it *is* devoted.

GUARDING THE MISVOTH

8 Guard to work all the misvoth I misvah you this day
so that you live and abound;
and go in and possess the land
Yah Veh oathed to your fathers:
2 and remember all the way
Yah Veh your Elohim carried you
these forty years in the wilderness
— to humble you and to test you
— to know what was in your heart,
whether or not you guarded his misvoth:
3 and he humbled you
and famished you and fed you with manna,
which neither you knew,
nor your fathers knew;
to make known to you
that humanity lives not by bread only:
but that humanity lives
by all that proceeds from the mouth of Yah Veh.
4 Neither your clothes wore out on you,
nor your foot swelled these forty years.
5 And consider in your heart,
as a man disciplines his son,
thus Yah Veh your Elohim disciplines you.

DEUTERONOMY 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 Therefore thou shalt keep **guard** the *commandments* **misvoth**
of the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
to walk in his ways, and to **fear awe** him.

7 For the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
bringeth thee into a good land,
a land of *brooks* **wadies** of water,
of fountains and *depths* **abysses**
that spring out of valleys and *hills* **mountains**;

8 A land of wheat, and barley,
and vines, and *fig trees* **figs**, and pomegranates;
a land of oil olive, and honey;

9 A land wherein thou shalt eat bread
without *scarceness* **poverty**,
thou shalt not lack *any thing* **ought** in it;
a land whose stones are iron,
and out of whose *hills* **mountains**
thou mayest *dig brass* **hew copper**.

10 When thou hast eaten and art *full* **satiated**,
then thou shalt bless *the LORD Yah Veh* thy *God* **Elohim**
for the good land which he hath given thee.

11 *Beware* **Guard** that thou forget not
the LORD Yah Veh thy *God* **Elohim**,
in not *keeping* **guarding** his *commandments* **misvoth**,
and his judgments, and his statutes,
which I *command* **misvah** thee this day:

12 Lest when thou hast eaten and art *full* **satiated**,
and hast built goodly houses, and *dwelt* **settled** therein;

13 And when thy *herds* **oxen** and thy flocks
multiply **abound**,
and thy silver and thy gold *is multiplied* **aboundeth**,
and all that thou hast *is multiplied* **aboundeth**;

14 Then thine heart be lifted up,
and thou forget *the LORD Yah Veh* thy *God* **Elohim**,
which brought thee forth
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
from the house of *bondage* **servants**;

15 Who *led* **carried** thee through
that great and *terrible* **awesome** wilderness,
wherein were *fiery* **seraph** serpents, and scorpions,
and *drought* **thirst**, where there was no water;
who brought thee forth water out of the rock of flint;

16 Who fed thee in the wilderness with manna,
which thy fathers knew not,
that he might humble thee,
and that he might *prove* **test** thee,
to *do well—please* thee *good* at thy latter end;

17 And thou say in thine heart,
My *power* **force** and the might of mine hand
hath *gotten* **worked** me this *wealth* **valour**.

18 But thou shalt remember
the LORD Yah Veh thy *God* **Elohim**:
for it is he that giveth thee *power* **force**
to *get wealth* **work valour**,
that he may *establish* **raise** his covenant
which he *sware* **oathed** unto thy fathers, as it is this day.

19 And it shall be,
if *in forgetting*, thou *do at all* forget
the LORD Yah Veh thy *God* **Elohim**,
and walk after other *gods* **elohim**, and serve them,
and *worship* **prostrate to** them,
I *testify* **witness** against you this day
that *in destructing*, ye shall *surely* **perish destruct**.

20 As the *nations* **goyim**
which *the LORD Yah Veh* destroyeth
before your face **at thy face**, so shall ye *perish* **destruct**;
because ye *would not be obedient* **hearkened not**
unto the voice of *the LORD Yah Veh* your *God* **Elohim**.

RESUME' OF THE INTERVENTIONS OF YAH VEH

9 Hear, O *Israel* **Yisra El**:
Thou art to pass over *Jordan* **Yarden** this day,
to go in to possess *nations* **goyim**
greater and mightier than thyself,
cities great and *fenced* **fortified** up to *heaven* **the heavens**,

2 A people great and *tall* **exalted**,
the *children* **sons** of the *Anakims* **Anakiy**,
whom thou — **thou** knowest,
and of whom thou — **thou** hast heard *say*,
Who can stand
before **at the face of** the *children* **sons** of Anak!

DEUTERONOMY 8, 9306

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 Guard the *misvoth* of Yah Veh your Elohim,
to walk in his ways and to awe him.

7 For Yah Veh your Elohim
brings you into a good land
— a land of *wadies* of water; of fountains and abysses
springing from valleys and mountains;
a land of wheat and barley
and vines and figs and pomegranates;
a land of olive oil and honey;

9 a land wherein you eat bread without poverty
and lack naught therein;
a land whose stones are iron
and from whose mountains you hew copper.

10 And when you eat and satiate,
bless Yah Veh your Elohim
for the good land he gives you.

11 Guard that you not forget Yah Veh your Elohim,
by not guarding his *misvoth*
and his judgments and his statutes
which I *misvah* you this day:

12 lest when you eat and satiate
and build goodly houses and settle;

13 and when your oxen and your flocks abound
and your silver and your gold abound
and all you have abounds;

14 and your heart lifts
and you forget Yah Veh your Elohim
who brought you from the land of Misrayim
from the house of servants:
who carried you through
that great and awesome wilderness
of seraph serpents and scorpions and thirst
— where there was no water:
who brought water from the rock of flint;

16 who fed you in the wilderness with manna
which your fathers knew not
— to humble you and to test you
— to well—please you at your latter end;
and you said in your heart,
My force and the might of my hand
worked me this valour.

18 And remember Yah Veh your Elohim:
for he gives you force to work valour,
in order to raise his covenant
which he oathed to your fathers,
as this day.

19 And so be it,
if in forgetting, you forget Yah Veh your Elohim
and walk after other elohim
and serve them and prostrate to them,
I witness against you this day
that in destructing, you destruct.

20 As the goyim Yah Veh destroyed at your face,
thus you destruct;
because you hearken not
to the voice of Yah Veh your Elohim.

RESUME' OF THE INTERVENTIONS OF YAH VEH

9 Hear, O Yisra El:
This day you pass over Yarden
to go in to possess goyim
greater and mightier than yourself
— cities great and fortified to the heavens
— a people great and exalted
— the sons of the Anakiy,
whom you — you know
and of whom you — you heard
who stood himself at the face of the sons of Anak!

DEUTERONOMY 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 Understand **Know** therefore this day,
that the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**
is he which *goeth passeth* over *before thee at thy face*;
as a consuming fire he shall *destroy desolate* them,
and he shall *bring subdue* them *down before at thy face*:
so **thus** shalt thou *drive dispossess* them out,
and *destroy* them *quickly suddenly*,
as the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *said worded* unto thee.
4 Speak **Say** not thou in thine heart,
after that the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**
hath cast **expelled** them out from *before thee thy face*,
saying, For my *righteousness justness*
the **LORD Yah Veh** hath brought me in
to possess this land:
but for the wickedness of these *nations goyim*
the **LORD doth drive Yah Veh dispossesseth** them out
from *before thee thy face*.
5 Not for thy *righteousness justness*,
or for the *uprightness straightness* of thine heart,
dost thou go to possess their land:
but for the wickedness of these *nations goyim*
the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**
doth *drive dispossesseth* them out
from *before thee thy face*,
and that he may *perform raise* the word
which the **LORD sware Yah Veh oathed** unto thy fathers,
Abraham, *Isaac Yischaq*, and *Jacob Yaaqov*.
6 Understand therefore,
that the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**
giveth thee not this good land to possess it
for thy *righteousness justness*;
for thou art a *stiffnecked hard necked* people.
RESUME' OF IDOLATRIES
7 Remember, and forget not,
how thou *provokedst enragedst*
the **LORD thy God to wrath Yah Veh thy Elohim**
in the wilderness:
from the day that thou
didst depart out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
until ye came unto this place,
ye have been rebellious against the **LORD Yah Veh**.
8 Also in Horeb
ye *provoked the LORD enraged Yah Veh to wrath*,
so that the **LORD Yah Veh** was angry with you
to have *destroyed desolated* you.
9 When I was *gone up ascended* into the mount
to *receive take* the *tables slabs* of stone,
even the *tables slabs* of the covenant
which the **LORD made Yah Veh cut** with you,
then I *abode settled* in the mount
forty days and forty nights,
I neither did eat bread nor drink water:
10 And the **LORD delivered Yah Veh gave** unto me
two *tables slabs* of stone
written inscribed with the finger of **God Elohim**;
and on them was *written* according to all the words,
which the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded** with you
in the mount out of the midst of the fire
in the day of the *assembly congregation*.
11 And **so be** it *came to pass*
at the end of forty days and forty nights,
that the **LORD Yah Veh**
gave me the two *tables slabs* of stone,
even the *tables slabs* of the covenant.
12 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto me, Arise,
get thee down quickly descend suddenly from hence;
for thy people
which thou hast brought forth out of *Egypt Misrayim*
have *corrupted ruined* themselves;
they are *quickly suddenly* turned aside
out of the way which I *commanded misvahed* them;
they have *made worked* them a molten *image*.
13 Furthermore the **LORD spake Yah Veh said** unto me,
saying, I have seen this people, and, behold,
it is a *stiffnecked hard necked* people:
14 Let me alone, that I may *destroy desolate* them,
and *blot wipe* out their name from under *heaven the heavens*:
and I *will make shall work* of thee a *nation goyim*
mightier and greater than they.

DEUTERONOMY 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 And know this day,
Yah Veh your Elohim — he passes over at your face;
as a consuming fire he desolates them
and he subdues them at your face:
thus you dispossess them and destroy them suddenly,
as Yah Veh worded to you.
4 Say not in your heart,
after Yah Veh your Elohim
expels them from your face,
saying, Because of my justness
Yah Veh brings me in to possess this land:
but because of the wickedness of these goyim
Yah Veh dispossesses them from your face.
5 Not for your justness,
or for the straightness of your heart
go you to possess their land:
but for the wickedness of these goyim
Yah Veh your Elohim
dispossesses them from your face
— to raise the word Yah Veh oathed to your fathers
— Abraham, Yischaq and Yaaqov:
6 and understand this:
that Yah Veh your Elohim
gives you not this good land to possess
because of your justness;
for you are a hard necked people.
RESUME' OF IDOLATRIES
7 Remember and forget not
how you enraged Yah Veh your Elohim
in the wilderness:
from the day you departed from the land of Misrayim
until you came to this place
you are rebellious against Yah Veh.
8 Even in Horeb you enraged Yah Veh,
so that Yah Veh was angry with you to desolate you.
9 When I ascended the mount
to take the slabs of stone
— the slabs of the covenant Yah Veh cut with you,
I settled in the mount forty days and forty nights:
I neither ate bread nor drank water:
and Yah Veh gave me two slabs of stone
inscribed with the finger of Elohim:
and on them, according to all the words
Yah Veh worded with you
in the mount from midst the fire
in the day of the congregation.
10 And so be it,
at the end of forty days and forty nights,
Yah Veh gave me the two slabs of stone
— the slabs of the covenant:
and Yah Veh said to me,
Rise! Descend suddenly from here!
For the people you brought forth from Misrayim
ruin themselves;
suddenly they turn from the way I misvahed them;
they work themselves a molten.
11 And Yah Veh says to me, saying,
I see this people; and behold, a hard necked people:
leave me alone, to desolate them;
and wipe out their name from under the heavens:
and I work a goyim of you
mightier and greater than they.

DEUTERONOMY 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

15 So I turned **my face**
and *came down* **descended** from the mount,
and the mount *burned* **kindled** with fire:
and the two *tables* **slabs** of the covenant
were in my two hands.

16 And I *looked* **saw**, and, behold,
ye had sinned
against *the LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**,
and had *made* **worked** you a molten calf:
ye had turned aside *quickly* **suddenly** out of the way
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
had *commanded* **misvahed** you.

17 And I *took* **manipulated** the two *tables* **slabs**,
and cast them out of my two hands,
and brake them *before* **in fron of** your eyes.

18 And I fell down
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**,
as at the first, forty days and forty nights:
I did neither eat bread, nor drink water,
because of all your sins which ye sinned,
in doing wickedly **working evil**
in the sight eyes of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
to provoke him to anger **vex him**.

19 For I was afraid *of to face*
the *anger* **wrath** and *hot displeasure* **fury**,
wherewith the LORD **Yah Veh**
was *wroth* **enraged** against you to *destroy* **desolate** you.
But *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hearkened unto me at that time also.

20 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
was *very* **mighty** angry with *Aaron* **Aharon**
to have *destroyed* **desolated** him:
and I prayed for *Aaron* **Aharon** also the same time.

21 And I took your sin,
the calf which ye had *made* **worked**,
and burnt it with fire, and *stamped* **crushed** it,
and ground it *very small* **well**,
even until it was *as small* **pulverized** as dust:
and I cast the dust thereof into *the brook* **wadi**
that descended out of the mount.

22 And at Taberah, and at *Massah* **Testing**,
and at *Kibrothhattaavah* **Qibroth Hat Taavah**,
ye *provoked the LORD* to *wrath* **enraged Yah Veh**.

23 Likewise when *the LORD* **Yah Veh** sent you
from *Kadeshbarnea* **Qadesh Barnea**,
saying, *Go up* **Ascend**
and possess the land which I have given you;
then ye rebelled against the *commandment* **mouth**
of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**,
and ye *believed* **trusted** him not,
nor hearkened to his voice.

24 Ye have been rebellious against *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
from the day that I knew you.

25 Thus I fell down
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**
forty days and forty nights, as I fell down *at the first*;
because *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had said
he would destroy **to desolate** you.

26 I prayed therefore unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and said, O *Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**,
destroy **ruin** not thy people and thine inheritance,
which thou hast redeemed through thy greatness,
which thou hast brought forth out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
with a *mighty* **strong** hand.

27 Remember thy servants,
Abraham, Isaac **Yischaq**, and *Jacob* **Yaaqov**;
look **turn** not **your face**
unto the stubbornness of this people,
nor to their wickedness, nor to their sin:

28 Lest the land whence thou broughtest us out say,
Because *the LORD* **Yah Veh** was not able to bring them
into the land which he *promised* **worded** them,
and because *he hated them* **of his hatred**,
he hath brought them out
to *slay* **deathify** them in the wilderness.

29 Yet they *are* thy people and thine inheritance,
which thou broughtest out
by thy *mighty power* **great force**
and by thy *stretched out* **spread** arm.

DEUTERONOMY 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

15 So I turned my face and descended from the mount
and the mount kindled with fire:
and the two slabs of the covenant
were in my two hands.

16 And I saw and behold,
you sinned against Yah Veh your Elohim
and worked a molten calf:
suddenly you turned aside from the way
Yah Veh misvahed you:

17 and I manipulated the two slabs
and cast them from my two hands
and broke them in front of your eyes:

18 and I fell down at the face of Yah Veh as at the first
— forty days and forty nights:
I neither ate bread nor drank water,
because of all the sins you sinned,
by working evil in the eyes of Yah Veh — to vex him.

19 For I became afraid to face the wrath and fury,
Yah Veh enraged against you to desolate you:
and Yah Veh hearkened to me at that time also.

20 And Yah Veh was mighty angry with Aharon
so as to desolate him:
and I also prayed for Aharon the same time:

21 and I took your sin, the calf you worked,
and burnt it with fire and crushed it
and ground it well until it pulverized as dust:
and I cast the dust thereof into the wadi
that descended from the mount.

22 And at Taberah/Burning and at Massah/Testing
and at Qibroth Hat Taavah/Tombs of Desire,
you enraged Yah Veh.

23 Likewise when Yah Veh sent you
from Qadesh Barnea, saying,
Ascend! Possess the land I give you;
you rebelled
against the mouth of Yah Veh your Elohim
and you neither trusted him
nor hearkened to his voice.

24 You became rebellious against Yah Veh
from the day I knew you:
and I fell at the face of Yah Veh
forty days and forty nights, as I had fallen;
because Yah Veh said to desolate you.

25

26 And I prayed to Yah Veh and said,
O Adonay Yah Veh,
ruin not your people and your inheritance,
which you redeemed through your greatness,
which you brought forth from Misrayim
with a strong hand:
remember your servants,
Abraham and Yischaq and Yaaqov:
turn your face
neither to the stubbornness of this people,
nor to their wickedness, nor to their sin:

28 lest the land whence you brought us out says,
Because Yah Veh was not able to bring them
into the land he worded them:
and because of his hatred,
he brought them out
to deathify them in the wilderness.

29 Yet they *are* your people and your inheritance,
whom you brought out
by your great force and by your spread arm.

DEUTERONOMY 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

RESUME! OF THE SECOND TWO SLABS

10 At that time *the LORD Yah Veh* said unto me,
Hew Sculpt thee two *tables slabs* of stone
 like unto the first,
 and *come up ascend* unto me into the mount,
 and *make work* thee an ark of *wood timber*.
 2 And I *will write shall inscribe* on the *tables slabs*
 the words that were in the first *tables slabs*
 which thou brakest,
 and thou shalt put them in the ark.
 3 And I *made worked* an ark of shittim *wood timber*,
 and *hewed sculpt* two *tables slabs* of stone
 like unto the first,
 and *went up ascended* into the mount,
 having the two *tables slabs* in mine hand.
 4 And he *wrote inscribed* on the *tables slabs*,
 according to the first *writing inscribing*,
 the ten *commandments words*,
 which *the LORD spake Yah Veh worded* unto you
 in the mount out of the midst of the fire
 in the day of the *assembly congregation*:
 and *the LORD Yah Veh* gave them unto me.
 5 And I turned *myself my face*
 and *came down descended* from the mount,
 and put the *tables slabs* in the ark
 which I had *made worked*;
 and there they be,
 as *the LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed* me.
 6 And the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*
 took their journey *pulled stakes* from
Beeroth of the children of Jaakan Beeroth Bene Yaaqan
 to *Mosera Moserah*:
 there *Aaron Aharon* died,
 and there he was *buried entombed*;
 and *Eleazar El Azar* his son
ministered in the priest's office priested the priesthood
 in his stead.
 7 From thence they *journeyed pulled stakes*
 unto *Gudgodah*;
 and from *Gudgodah to Jotbathah Yotbathah*,
 a land of *rivers wadies* of waters.
 8 At that time
the LORD Yah Veh separated the *tribe scion* of Levi,
 to bear the ark of the covenant of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
 to stand *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh*
 to minister unto him, and to bless in his name,
 unto this day.
 9 Wherefore Levi hath no *part allotment* nor inheritance
 with his brethren;
the LORD Yah Veh is his inheritance,
 according as *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
promised had worded to him.
 10 And I stayed in the mount,
 according to the first *time days*,
 forty days and forty nights;
 and *the LORD Yah Veh* hearkened unto me
 at that time also,
 and *the LORD would Yah Veh willed*
 to not *destroy ruin* thee.
 11 And *the LORD Yah Veh* said unto me,
 Arise, take thy journey *before at the face of* the people,
 that they may go in and possess the land,
 which I *sware oathed* unto their fathers to give unto them.

AWE YAH VEH

12 And now, *Israel Yisra El*,
 what doth *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
 require *ask* of thee,
 but to *fear the LORD awe Yah Veh thy God Elohim*,
 to walk in all his ways, and to love him,
 and to serve *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
 with all thy heart and with all thy soul,
 13 To *keep guard* the *commandments misvoth*
 of *the LORD Yah Veh*, and his statutes,
 which I *command misvah* thee this day for thy good?
 14 Behold, the *heaven heavens*
 and the *heaven heavens of the heavens*
is the LORD's are to Yah Veh thy God Elohim,
 the earth also, with all that therein is.

DEUTERONOMY 10 309

exeGesés companion BIBLE

RESUME! OF THE SECOND TWO SLABS

10 At that time Yah Veh said to me,
 Sculpt two slabs of stone like the first;
 and ascend to me into the mount
 and work an ark of timber:
 2 and I inscribe the words on the slabs
 of the first slabs you broke;
 and put them in the ark.
 3 And I worked an ark of shittim timber
 and sculpted two slabs of stone like the first
 and ascended the mount
 with the two slabs in my hand.
 4 And he inscribed on the slabs
 according to the first inscribing
 — the ten words Yah Veh worded to you
 in the mount from midst the fire
 in the day of the congregation:
 and Yah Veh gave me them:
 5 and I turned my face
 and descended from the mount
 and put the slabs in the ark I worked;
 and there they be, as Yah Veh misvahed me.
 6 And the sons of Yisra El pulled stakes
 from Beeroth Bene Yaaqan to Moserah:
 and there Aharon died and there he was entombed;
 and El Azar his son
 priested the priesthood in his stead.
 7 From there they pulled stakes to Gudgodah;
 and from Gudgodah to Yotbathah
 — a land of wadies of waters.
 8 At that time Yah Veh separated the scion of Levi,
 to bear the ark of the of Yah Veh,
 to stand at the face of Yah Veh
 to minister to him and to bless in his name
 — to this day.
 9 So Levi has neither allotment nor inheritance
 with his brothers:
 Yah Veh *is* his inheritance
 according as Yah Veh your Elohim worded to him.
 10 And I stayed in the mount,
 according to the first days, forty days and forty nights;
 and Yah Veh hearkened to me at that time also
 and Yah Veh willed to not ruin you:
 11 and Yah Veh said to me,
 Rise, take your journey at the face of the people,
 that they go in and possess the land,
 which I oathed to their fathers to give them.

AWE YAH VEH

12 And now, Yisra El,
 what asks Yah Veh your Elohim of you,
 but to awe Yah Veh your Elohim
 — to walk in all his ways and to love him
 and to serve Yah Veh your Elohim
 with all your heart and with all your soul;
 13 to guard the misvoth of Yah Veh and his statutes
 which I misvah you this day for your good?

14 Behold, the heavens
 and the heavens of the heavens
 are to Yah Veh your Elohim
 and the earth and all therein.

DEUTERONOMY 10, 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 Only the LORD Yah Veh
had a delight in **attached himself to** thy fathers
to love them,
and he chose their seed after them,
even you above all people, as it is this day.
16 Circumcise therefore the foreskin of your heart,
and be no more *stiffnecked* **hard necked**.
17 For the LORD Yah Veh your God Elohim
is God of gods **Elohim of Elohim**,
and Lord of lords **Adonay of adonim**,
a great God **El**, a mighty, and a terrible **awesome**,
which regardeth **lifteth** not persons **faces**,
nor taketh reward **bribe**:
18 He doth execute **worketh** the judgment
of the *fatherless* **orphan** and widow,
and loveth the *stranger* **sojourner**,
in giving him *food* **bread** and *raiment* **clothes**.
19 Love ye therefore the *stranger* **sojourner**:
for ye were strangers **sojourners**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
20 Thou shalt fear **awe**
the LORD Yah Veh thy God **Elohim**;
him shalt thou serve, and to him shalt thou *cleave* **adhere**,
and swear **oath** by his name.
21 He is thy *praise* **halal**, and he is thy God **Elohim**,
that hath *done* **worked** for thee
these great and terrible **awesome things**,
which thine eyes have seen.
22 Thy fathers went down **descended** into *Egypt* **Misrayim**
with *threescore and ten persons* **seventy souls**;
and now the LORD Yah Veh thy God **Elohim**
hath made **set** thee as the stars of *heaven* **the heavens**
for *multitude* **abundance**.

LOVE YAH VEH

11

Therefore
thou shalt love the LORD Yah Veh thy God **Elohim**,
and keep **guard** his *charge* **guard**,
and his statutes, and his judgments,
and his *commandments* **misvoth**, *alway* **all days**.
2 And know ye this day:
for I speak — not with your *children* **sons**
which have not known,
and which have not seen the *chastisement* **discipline**
of the LORD Yah Veh your God **Elohim**,
his greatness, his *mighty* **strong** hand,
and his *stretched out* **spread** arm,
3 And his *miracles* **signs**, and his *acts* **works**,
which he *did* **worked** in the midst of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh** the *king* **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and unto all his land;
4 And what he *did* **worked**
unto the *army* **valiant** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
unto their horses, and to their chariots;
how he made **overflowed** the water of the *Red* **Reed** sea
to *overflow* **at the face** of them as they pursued after you,
and how the LORD Yah Veh hath destroyed them
unto this day;
5 And what he *did* **worked** unto you in the wilderness,
until ye came into this place;
6 And what he *did* **worked**
unto Dathan and *Abiram* **Abi Ram**,
the sons of *Eliab* **Eli Ab**, the son of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**:
how the earth *opened* **gaped** her mouth,
and swallowed them up,
and their households, and their tents,
and *all the substance* **every risen being**
that was *in* **at** their *possession* **feet**,
in the midst of all *Israel* **Yisra El**:
7 But your eyes have seen
all the great *acts* **works** of the LORD Yah Veh
which he *did* **worked**.
8 Therefore
shall ye keep **guard** all the *commandments* **misvoth**
which I *command* **misvah** you this day,
that ye may be *strong* **prevail**,
and go in and possess the land,
whither ye go pass over to possess it;
9 And that ye may prolong your days in the *land* **soil**,
which the LORD sware **Yah Veh oathed** unto your fathers

DEUTERONOMY 10, 11 310

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 Only, Yah Veh attached himself to your fathers
to love them;
and he chose their seed after them
— you above all people, as this day.
16 And circumcise the foreskin of your heart
and be no more hard necked:
for Yah Veh your Elohim
— Elohim of Elohim and Adonay of adonim,
the great El, the mighty and the awesome,
who neither lifts faces,
nor takes bribes:
18 who works the judgment of the orphan and widow
and loves the sojourner
in giving him bread and clothes.
19 Love the sojourner:
for you were sojourners in the land of Misrayim.
20 Awe Yah Veh your Elohim;
serve him and adhere to him and oath by his name.
21 He is your halal and he is your Elohim
who worked these great and awesome for you,
which your eyes see.
22 Your fathers descended into Misrayim
with seventy souls;
and now Yah Veh your Elohim
sets you as the stars of the heavens for abundance.

LOVE YAH VEH

11

And you, love Yah Veh your Elohim
and guard his guard
and his statutes and his judgments and his misvoth
all days.
2 And you, know this day
— not your sons who knew not and who saw not
the discipline of Yah Veh your Elohim
— his greatness, his strong hand and his spread arm
and his signs and his works
which he worked midst Misrayim
to Paroh the sovereign of Misrayim
and to all his land;
4 and what he worked to the valiant of Misrayim
— to their horses and to their chariots;
how he overflowed the water of the Reed sea
at their face as they pursued after you;
and how Yah Veh destroyed them to this day;
5 and what he worked to you in the wilderness
until you came to this place;
6 and what he worked to Dathan and Abi Ram
the sons of Eli Ab the son of Reu Ben
— how the earth gaped her mouth
and swallowed them
and their households and their tents
and every risen being at their feet midst all Yisra El:
7 but your eyes see
all the great works Yah Veh worked.
8 Guard all the misvoth I misvah you this day;
that you prevail and go in and possess the land
where you go pass over to possess it;
9 and that you prolong your days in the soil
Yah Veh oathed to your fathers

DEUTERONOMY 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

to give unto them and to their seed,
a land that floweth with milk and honey.
10 For the land, whither thou goest in to possess it,
is not as the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
from whence ye came out,
where thou sowedst **seededst** thy seed,
and wateredst **moistenedst** it with thy foot,
as a garden of herbs:
11 But the land, whither ye go **pass over** to possess it,
is a land of *hills mountains* and valleys,
and drinketh water of the rain of *heaven the heavens*:
12 A land which *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
careth for **seeketh**:
the eyes of *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
are *always continually* upon it,
from the beginning of the year
even unto the end of the year.
13 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
if **in hearing**,
ye shall *hearken diligently unto hear*
my *commandments misvoth*
which I *command misvah* you this day,
to love *the LORD Yah Veh your God Elohim*,
and to serve him with all your heart and with all your soul,
14 That I *will shall* give you
the rain of your land in his *due season time*,
the *first early* rain and the *latter after* rain,
that thou mayest gather in thy *corn crop*,
and thy *wine juice*, and thine oil.
15 And I *will send grass shall give herbage* in thy fields
for thy *cattle animals*,
that thou mayest eat and *be full satiate*.
16 Take heed **Guard** to yourselves,
that your heart be not *deceived deluded*,
and ye turn *aside*,
and serve other *gods elohim*,
and *worship prostrate* to them;
17 And then *the LORD'S Yah Weh's* wrath
be kindled against you,
and he *shut up restrain* the *heaven heavens*,
that there be no rain,
and that the *land yield soil give* not her *fruit produce*;
and lest ye *perish destruct* quickly from off the good land
which *the LORD Yah Veh* giveth you.
18 Therefore shall ye *lay up set* these my words
in your heart and in your soul,
and bind them for a sign upon your hand,
that they may be as *frontlets phylacteries*
between your eyes.
19 And ye shall teach them your *children sons*,
speaking wording of them
when thou sittest in thine house,
and when thou walkest by the way,
when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.
20 And thou shalt *write inscribe* them
upon the door posts of thine house,
and upon thy *gates portals*:
21 That your days may *be multiplied abound*,
and the days of your *children sons*,
in the *land soil* which *the LORD sware Yah Veh oathed*
unto your fathers to give them,
as the days of *heaven the heavens* upon the earth.
22 For if **in guarding**,
ye shall *diligently keep guard*
all these *commandments misvoth*
which I *command misvah* you, to *do work* them,
to love *the LORD Yah Veh your God Elohim*,
to walk in all his ways, and to *cleave adhere* unto him;
23 Then *will the LORD shall Yah Veh*
drive out dispossess all these *nations goyim*
from *before you your face*,
and ye shall possess greater *nations goyim*
and mightier than yourselves.
24 Every place whereon the soles of your feet shall tread
shall be yours:
from the wilderness and Lebanon,
from the river, the river Euphrates,
even unto the *uttermost latter* sea
shall your *coast border* be.

DEUTERONOMY 11 311

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to give to them and to their seed
— a land flowing with milk and honey.
10 For the land you go to possess
is not as the land of Misrayim whence you came
— where you seeded your seed
and moistened with your foot as a garden of herbs:
11 but the land, you pass over to possess
is a land of mountains and valleys;
and drinks water of the rain of the heavens:
12 a land Yah Veh your Elohim searched out:
the eyes of Yah Veh your Elohim
are continually thereon
— from the beginning of the year
even to the end of the year.
13 And so be it, if in hearing,
you hear the misvoth I misvah this day,
to love Yah Veh your Elohim,
and to serve him
with all your heart and with all your soul,
14 That I give your land rain in time
— the early rain and the after rain;
and you gather in your crop
and your juice and your oil:
15 and I give herbage in your fields for your animals
so that you eat and satiate.
16 Guard yourselves, lest you delude your heart,
and turn and serve other elohim
and prostrate to them;
17 and Yah Weh kindles his wrath against you
and restrains the heavens that there be no rain
and that the soil give not her produce;
and lest you destruct quickly from off the good land
Yah Veh gives you.
18 Set these my words in your heart and in your soul
and bind them for a sign on your hand,
to be as phylacteries between your eyes:
19 and teach them to your sons, wording of them,
when you sit in your house
and when you walk by the way,
when you lie down, and when you rise up;
20 and inscribe them on the door posts of your house
and on your portals:
21 that your days and the days of your sons abound
in the soil Yah Veh oathed to give your fathers
as the days of the heavens on the earth.
22 For if in guarding,
you guard all these misvoth I misvah you,
to work them
— to love Yah Veh your Elohim,
to walk in all his ways and to adhere to him;
23 then Yah Veh
dispossesses all these goyim from your face
and you possess goyim
greater and mightier than yourselves.
24 Every place whereon the soles of your feet tread
becomes yours
— from the wilderness and Lebanon
— from the river — the river Euphrates
even to the latter sea
becomes your border.

DEUTERONOMY 11, 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

25 There shall no man be able to stand
before you **at thy face**:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**
shall lay **give** the fear of you
and the **dread awesomeness** of you
upon **the face of** all the land that ye shall tread upon,
as he hath **said worded** unto you.
26 Behold **See**, I set **before you at thy face** this day
a blessing and a **curse an abasement**;
27 A blessing,
if ye **obey hear** the **commandments misvoth**
of the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**,
which I **command misvah** you this day:
28 And a **curse an abasement**,
if ye **will shall** not **obey hear** the **commandments misvoth**
of the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**,
but turn aside out of the way
which I **command misvah** you this day,
to go after other **gods elohim**, which ye have not known.
29 And **so be it shall come to pass**,
when the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**
hath brought thee in unto the land
whither thou goest to possess it,
that thou shalt **put give** the blessing upon mount Gerizim,
and the **curse abasement** upon mount Ebal.
30 Are they not on the other side **Jordan Yarden**,
by **after** the way
where the sun goeth down **of the entrance of the sun**,
in the land of the **Canaanites Kenaaniy**,
which **dwelt settle** in the **champaign plains**
over against **opposite** Gilgal,
beside the **plains mighty oaks** of Moreh?
31 For ye shall pass over **Jordan Yarden**
to go in to possess the land
which the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim** giveth you,
and ye shall possess it, and **dwelt settle** therein.
32 And ye shall **observe guard to do work**
all the statutes and judgments
which I set **before you at thy face** this day.

THE TORAH ON POSSESSING THE LAND

12 These are the statutes and judgments,
which ye shall **observe guard to do work** in the land,
which the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of thy fathers
giveth thee to possess it,
all the days that ye live upon the **earth soil**.
2 **In destroying**, Ye shall **utterly** destroy all the places,
wherein the **nations goyim** which ye shall possess
served their **gods elohim**,
upon the **high exalted** mountains, and upon the hills,
and under every green tree:
3 And ye shall **overthrow pull down** their **sacrifice** altars,
and break their **pillars monoliths**,
and burn their **groves asherim** with fire;
and ye shall **hew cut** down the **graven images sculptiles**
of their **gods elohim**,
and destroy the names of them out of that place.
4 Ye shall not **do work** so
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**.
5 But unto the place
which the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim** shall choose
out of all your **tribes scions** to put his name there,
even unto his **habitation tabernacle** shall ye seek,
and thither thou shalt come:
6 And thither
ye shall bring your **burnt offerings holocausts**,
and your sacrifices, and your tithes,
and **heave offerings exaltments** of your hand,
and your vows, and your **freewill offerings voluntaries**,
and the firstlings of your **herds oxen** and of your flocks:
7 And there ye shall eat
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh your **God Elohim**,
and ye shall **rejoice cheer**
in all that ye **put unto every spreading of** your hand unto,
ye and your households,
wherein the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**
hath blessed thee.
8 Ye shall not **do work** after all **the things those**
that ye **do work** here this day,
every man whatsoever is **right straight** in his own eyes.

DEUTERONOMY 11, 12 312

exeGeses companion BIBLE

25 No man is able to stand at your face:
for Yah Veh your Elohim
gives the fear of you and the awesomeness of you
on the face of all the land you tread on,
as he worded to you.
26 See, I set at your face this day
a blessing and an abasement:
27 a blessing:
if you hear the misvoth of Yah Veh your Elohim,
which I misvah you this day:
28 and an abasement:
if you hear not the misvoth of Yah Veh your Elohim,
but turn from the way I misvah you this day,
to go after other elohim, which you know not.
29 And so be it,
when Yah Veh your Elohim
brings you to the land you go to possess,
give the blessing on mount Gerizim
and the abasement on mount Ebal.
30 are they not on the other side Yarden,
behind the way of the entrance of the sun,
in the land of the Kenaaniy,
who settle in the plains opposite Gilgal,
beside the mighty oaks of Moreh?
31 Pass over Yarden;
go possess the land Yah Veh your Elohim gives you
— possess it and settle therein:
32 and guard to work all the statutes and judgments
I set at your face this day.

THE TORAH ON POSSESSING THE LAND

12 These are the statutes and judgments
to guard to work in the land,
Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers gives you to possess
all the days you live on the soil.
2 In destroying, destroy all the places,
wherein the goyim you possess
serve their elohim
— on the exalted mountains and on the hills
and under every green tree:
3 and pull down their sacrifice altars
and break their monoliths
and burn their asherim with fire;
and cut down the sculptiles of their elohim
and destroy their names from that place.
4 But work not thus to Yah Veh your Elohim.
5 But to the place
Yah Veh your Elohim chooses of all your scions
to put his name there,
seek and enter his tabernacle:
6 and bring your holocausts and your sacrifices
and your tithes and exaltments of your hand
and your vows and your voluntaries
and the firstlings of your oxen and of your flocks:
7 and there at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim
eat and cheer in every spreading of your hand
— you and your households,
wherein Yah Veh your Elohim blessed you.
8 Work not after all those we work here this day,
every man whatever is straight in his own eyes:

DEUTERONOMY 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 For ye are not as yet come
to the rest and to the inheritance,
which *the LORD Yah Veh* your *God Elohim* giveth you.
10 But when ye go **pass** over *Jordan Yarden*,
and dwell **settle** in the land
which *the LORD Yah Veh* your *God Elohim*
giveth **hath** you to inherit,
and when he giveth you rest
from all your enemies round about,
so that ye dwell in *safety settle confidently*;
11 Then there shall be a place
which *the LORD Yah Veh* your *God Elohim* shall choose
to cause his name to dwell **tabernacle** there;
thither shall ye bring all that I *command misvah* you;
your *burnt offerings holocausts*, and your sacrifices,
your tithes,
and the *heave offering exaltment* of your hand,
and all your choice vows
which ye vow unto *the LORD Yah Veh*:
12 And ye shall *rejoice cheer*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh your *God Elohim*,
ye, and your sons, and your daughters,
and your *menservants servants*,
and your *maidservants maids*,
and the *Levite Levy* that is within your *gates portals*;
forasmuch as for which cause
he hath no *part allotment* nor inheritance with you.
13 Take heed to **Guard** thyself that thou
offer **holocaust** not thy *burnt offerings holocausts*
in every place that thou seest:
14 But in the place
which *the LORD Yah Veh* shall choose
in one of thy *tribes scions*,
there thou shalt
offer **holocaust** thy *burnt offerings holocausts*,
and there thou shalt
do **work** all that I *command misvah* thee.
15 *Notwithstanding Only*
thou mayest *kill sacrifice* and eat flesh
in all thy *gates portals*,
whatsoever thy soul *lusteth after desireth*,
according to the blessing
of *the LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
which he hath given thee:
the *unclean fouled* and the *clean pure* may eat thereof,
as of the *roebuck gazelle*, and as of the hart.
16 Only ye shall not eat the blood;
ye shall pour it upon the earth as water.
17 Thou mayest not eat within thy *gates portals*
the tithe of thy *corn crop*,
or of thy *wine juice*, or of thy oil,
or the firstlings of thy *herds oxen*, or of thy flock,
nor any of thy vows which thou vovest,
nor thy *freewill offerings voluntaries*,
or *heave offering exaltment* of thine hand:
18 But thou *must* eat them
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh thy *God Elohim*
in the place which *the LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
shall choose,
thou, and thy son, and thy daughter,
and thy *manservant servant*, and thy *maidservant maid*,
and the *Levite Levy* that is within thy *gates portals*:
and thou shalt *rejoice cheer*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh thy *God Elohim*
in all that thou *puttest spreadest* thine hands unto.
19 Take heed to **Guard** thyself
that thou forsake not the *Levite Levy*
as long as thou livest all thy days upon the *earth soil*.
20 When *the LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
shall *enlarge widen* thy border,
as he hath *promised worded* unto thee,
and thou shalt say, I *will shall* eat flesh,
because thy soul *longeth desireth* to eat flesh;
thou mayest eat flesh,
whatsoever thy soul *lusteth after desireth*.
21 If the place which *the LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
hath chosen to put his name there
be too far **removed** from thee,

DEUTERONOMY 12 313

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 for you come not yet
to the rest and to the inheritance,
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you:
10 and pass over Yarden
and settle in the land
Yah Veh your Elohim has you inherit
and he gives you rest
from all your enemies all around you,
so that you settle confidently;
11 and so be it,
the place Yah Veh your Elohim chooses
to tabernacle his name,
bring all I misvah you
— your holocausts and your sacrifices
your tithes and the exaltment of your hand
and all your choice vows you vowed to Yah Veh:
12 and cheer at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim
— you and your sons and your daughters
and your servants and your maids
and the *Levite* within your portals;
for which cause
he has neither allotment nor inheritance with you.
13 Guard yourself
that you not holocaust your holocausts
in every place you see:
14 but in the place Yah Veh chooses
in one of your scions,
there you holocaust your holocausts
and there you work all I misvah you.
15 Only, sacrifice and eat flesh in all your portals,
— whatever your soul desires
according to the blessing
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you:
the foul and the pure eat thereof,
as of the gazelle and as of the hart.
16 Only, eat not the blood;
pour it on the earth as water.
17 Eat not within your portals,
the tithe of your crop
or of your juice or of your oil
or the firstlings of your oxen or of your flock;
or any of the vows you vowed,
or your voluntaries or exaltment of your hand:
18 but eat them at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim
in the place Yah Veh your Elohim chooses
— you and your son and your daughter
and your servant and your maid
and the *Levite* within your portals:
and cheer at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim
in all you spread your hands to.
19 Guard to not forsake the *Levite*
all your days on the soil.
20 When Yah Veh your Elohim widens your border
as he worded to you,
and you say, I eat flesh,
because your soul desires to eat flesh;
eat flesh
— whatever your soul desires!
21 When the place Yah Veh your Elohim
chooses to put his name
is too far removed from you,

DEUTERONOMY 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

then thou shalt *kill* **sacrifice**
of thy *herd* **oxen** and of thy flock,
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath given thee,
as I have *commanded* **misvahed** thee,
and thou shalt eat in thy *gates* **portals**
whatsoever thy soul *lusteth after* **desireth**.
22 Even as the *roebeuck* **gazelle** and the hart is eaten,
so thou shalt eat them:
the *unclean* **fouled** and the *clean* **pure**
shall eat of them *alike* **together**.
23 Only *be sure* **prevail** that thou eat not the blood:
for the blood is the *life* **soul**;
and thou mayest not eat the *life* **soul** with the flesh.
24 Thou shalt not eat it;
thou shalt pour it upon the earth as water.
25 Thou shalt not eat it;
that it may *go well with* **well**—**please** thee,
and with thy *children* **sons** after thee,
when thou shalt *do that which is right* **work straight**
in the *sight eyes* of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
26 Only thy *holy things* **holies** which thou hast,
and thy vows,
thou shalt *take* **bear**,
and go unto the place
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall choose:
27 And thou shalt
offer **work** thy *burnt offerings* **holocausts**,
the flesh and the blood,
upon the **sacrifice** altar
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**:
and the blood of thy sacrifices shall be poured *out*
upon the **sacrifice** altar
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
and thou shalt eat the flesh.
28 *Observe* **Guard** and hear all these words
which I *command* **misvah** thee,
that it may *go well with* **well**—**please** thee,
and with thy *children* **sons** after thee *for ever* **eternally**,
when thou *doest* **workest**
that which is good and *right* **straight**
in the *sight eyes* of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**.
29 When *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
shall cut off the *nations* **goyim** from *before thee* **thy face**,
whither thou goest to possess them,
and thou *succeedest* **possessest** them,
and *dwellest* **settlest** in their land;
30 *Take heed to* **Guard** thyself
that thou be not snared by following them,
after that they be *destroyed* **desolated**
from *before thee* **thy face**;
and that thou enquire not after their *gods* **elohim**, saying,
How did these *nations* **goyim** serve their *god* **elohim**?
even so *will* **shall** I *do* **work** likewise.
31 Thou shalt not *do* **work** so
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**:
for every *abomination* **abhorrence** to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which he hateth,
have they *done* **worked** unto their *gods* **elohim**;
for even their sons and their daughters
they have burnt in the fire to their *gods* **elohim**.
32 What *thing* **word** soever I *command* **misvah** you,
observe **guard** to *do* **work** it:
thou shalt not add thereto, nor diminish from it.

THE TORAH ON IDOLATRY

13 If there arise among you a prophet,
or a dreamer of dreams,
and giveth thee a sign or a *wonder* **an omen**,
2 And the sign or the *wonder* **omen**
come to pass **becometh**,
whereof he *spake* **worded** unto thee, saying,
Let us go after other *gods* **elohim**,
which thou hast not known, and let us serve them;
3 Thou shalt not hearken unto the words of that prophet,
or that dreamer of dreams:
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
proveth **testeth** you,
to know
whether ye love the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
with all your heart and with all your soul.

DEUTERONOMY 12, 13 314

exeGesés companion BIBLE

then sacrifice of your oxen and of your flock
Yah Veh gives you,
as I misvahed you,
eat whatever your soul desires
within your portals:
22 only, as you eat the gazelle and the hart,
thus eat them
— the foul and the pure — eat them together.
23 Only, prevail that you not eat the blood:
for the blood *is* the soul;
and eat not the soul with the flesh.
24 Eat not!
25 Pour it on the earth as water.
Eat not
that it well—please you and your sons after you
when you work straight in the eyes of Yah Veh.
26 Only, bear your holies and your vows,
and go to the place Yah Veh chooses:
27 and work your holocausts
— the flesh and the blood
on the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh your Elohim:
and pour the blood of your sacrifices
on the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh your Elohim
and eat the flesh.
28 Guard and hear all these words I misvah you
that it well—please you
and your sons after you eternally,
when you work good and straight
in the eyes of Yah Veh your Elohim.
29 When Yah Veh your Elohim
cuts off the goyim from your face,
where you go to possess them
and you possess them and settle in their land;
30 guard yourself
lest you become snared by following them,
after being desolated from your face;
and that you enquire not after their elohim, saying,
How served these goyim their Elohim?
Work I thus likewise?
31 Work not thus to Yah Veh your Elohim:
for every abhorrence Yah Veh hates,
they worked to their elohim;
even burning their sons and their daughters
in the fire to their elohim.
32 Whatever word I misvah you, guard to work it:
neither add thereto, nor diminish therefrom.

THE TORAH ON IDOLATRY

13 When a prophet or a dreamer of dreams
rises among you,
and gives you a sign or an omen;
2 and brings the sign or the omen,
whereof he words to you, saying,
Let us go after other elohim you have not known
and let us serve them!
3 — hearken not to the words of that prophet,
or that dreamer of dreams:
for Yah Veh your Elohim *is* testing you,
to know whether you love Yah Veh your Elohim
with all your heart and with all your soul.

DEUTERONOMY 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 Ye shall walk after the **LORD Yah Veh** your God **Elohim**,
and fear **awe** him,
and keep **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**,
and obey **hear** his voice,
and ye shall serve him, and *cleave* **adhere** unto him.
5 And that prophet, or that dreamer of dreams,
shall be *put to death* **deathified**;
because he hath *spoken* **worded**
to turn you away **that you revolt**
from the **LORD Yah Veh** your God **Elohim**,
which brought you out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and redeemed you out of the house of *bondage* **servants**,
to *thrust* **drive** thee out of the way
which the **LORD Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**
commanded **misvahed** thee to walk in.
So **Thus** shalt thou *put the* **burn** evil away
from the midst of thee.
6 If thy brother, the son of thy mother, or thy son,
or thy daughter, or the *wife* **woman** of thy bosom,
or thy friend, which is as thine own soul,
entice **god** thee *secretly* **covertly**, saying,
Let us go **Come** and serve other *gods* **elohim**,
which thou hast not known, thou, nor thy fathers;
7 *Namely*, of the *gods* **elohim** of the people
which are round about you,
nigh unto thee, or far off from thee,
from the *one* end of the earth
even unto the *other* end of the earth;
8 Thou shalt not *consent* **will** unto him,
nor hearken unto him;
neither shall thine eye pity him, neither shalt thou spare,
neither shalt thou *conceal* **cover** him:
9 But **in slaughtering**, thou shalt *surely kill* **slaughter** him;
thine hand shall be first upon him
to *put him to death* **deathify** him,
and afterwards the hand of all the people.
10 And thou shalt stone him with stones, that he die;
because he hath sought to *thrust* **drive** thee away
from the **LORD Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**,
which brought thee out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
from the house of *bondage* **servants**.
11 And all *Israel* **Yisra El** shall hear, and fear **awe**,
and shall *do no more* **add not to work**
any such wickedness **according to this evil word**
as this is among you.
12 If thou shalt hear *say* in one of thy cities,
which the **LORD Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**
hath given thee to *dwell* **settle** there, saying,
13 *Certain men, the children* **sons** of *Belial* **Beli Yaal**,
are gone out from among you,
and have *withdrawn* **driven**
the inhabitants of them that settled their city, saying,
Let us go and serve other *gods* **elohim**,
which ye have not known;
14 Then shalt thou enquire,
and *make search* **probe**, and ask *diligently* **well**;
and, behold, *if it be* truth,
and the *thing certain* **word established**,
that such *abomination* **abhorrence**
is *wrought* **worked** among you;
15 **In smiting**, Thou shalt *surely* smite
the inhabitants of them that settled that city
with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword,
destroying it utterly **devoting it**, and all that is therein,
and the *cattle* **animals** thereof,
with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword.
16 And thou shalt gather all the *spoil* **loot** of it
into the midst of the *street* **wideway** thereof,
and shalt burn with fire the city,
and all the *spoil* **loot** thereof *every whit* **totally**,
for the **LORD Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**:
and it shall be an heap for *ever* **eternity**;
it shall not be built again.
17 And there shall *cleave* **adhere**
nought of the *cursed* **devoted** *thing* to thine hand:
that the **LORD Yah Veh** may turn
from the *fierceness of his anger* **his fuming wrath**,
and *shew* **give** thee mercy **mercies**,

DEUTERONOMY 13 315

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 Walk after Yah Veh your Elohim
and awe him and guard his misvoth
and hear his voice and serve him and adhere to him:
5 and deathify that prophet or that dreamer of dreams;
because he words to you
to revolt from Yah Veh your Elohim
— who brought you from the land of Misrayim
and redeemed you from the house of servants;
and to drive you from the way
wherein Yah Veh your Elohim misvahed you to walk.
Thus burn evil from your midst.
6 When your brother, the son of your mother,
or your son or your daughter,
or the woman of your bosom,
or your friend who *is* as your own soul,
goads you covertly, saying,
Come and serve other elohim
whom you know not — you, nor thy fathers;
7 of the elohim of the people all around you
near you or far from you,
from the end of the earth
even unto the end of the earth:
8 neither will to him nor hearken to him;
your eye neither pity him nor spare him
nor cover for him:
9 but in slaughtering, slaughter him;
first, your hand on him to deathify him;
and afterwards, the hand of all the people:
10 and stone him with stones that he die;
because he sought to drive you
from Yah Veh your Elohim
— who brought you from the land of Misrayim
from the house of servants:
11 and all Yisra El hears and awes
and adds to not work among you
according to this evil word.
12 When, in one of the cities
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you to settle,
you hear, saying,
13 Men, sons of Beli Yaal, go among you,
and drive them who settle the city, saying,
Come and serve other elohim
whom you know not!
14 — then inquire and probe and ask well;
and behold, *if it is the* truth,
and the word established,
that such abhorrence *is* worked among you;
15 in smiting, smite them who settle that city
with the mouth of the sword;
devote it and all therein and the animals thereof
with the mouth of the sword:
16 and gather all the loot thereof
midst the wideway thereof;
and burn the city and all the loot thereof with fire
— totally for Yah Veh your Elohim:
and it becomes a heap for eternity;
never to be built again.
17 And adhere naught of the devoted to your hand:
so that Yah Veh turns from his fuming wrath
and gives you mercies;

DEUTERONOMY 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and have compassion upon **mercy** thee,
and multiply **abound** thee,
as he hath **sworn** **oathed** unto thy fathers;
18 When thou shalt hearken
to the voice of the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**,
to keep **guard** all his **commandments misvoth**
which I **command** **misvah** thee this day,
to **do work** that which is **right straight**
in the eyes of the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**.

THE TORAH ON MUTILATION

14

Ye are the **children sons**
of the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**:
ye shall not cut yourselves,
nor **make set** any baldness between your eyes
for the **dead that which died**.
2 For thou art an holy people
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**,
and the **LORD Yah Veh** hath chosen thee
to be a peculiar people unto himself,
above all the **nations goyim**
that are upon the **earth face of the soil**.

THE TORAH ON EATING

3 Thou shalt not eat any **abominable thing** **abhorrence**.
4 These are the **beasts animals** which ye shall eat:
the ox, the **sheep lamb of the lambs**,
and the **goat lamb of the goats**,
5 The hart, and the **roeback gazelle**,
and the fallow deer, and the wild goat,
and the pygarg, and the wild ox, and the chamois.
6 And every **beast animal** that **parteth splitteth** the hoof,
and cleaveth the cleft into two **claws hoofs**,
and **cheweth regurgitateth** the cud
among the **beasts animals**,
that ye shall eat.
7 Nevertheless these ye shall not eat:
of them that **chew regurgitate** the cud,
or of them that **divide split** the cloven hoof;
as the camel, and the hare, and the coney:
for they **chew regurgitate** the cud, but divide not the hoof;
therefore they are **unclean fouled** unto you.

8 And the **swine hog**,
because it **divideth splitteth** the hoof,
yet cheweth not the cud,
it is unclean unto you:
ye shall **not neither** eat of their flesh,
nor touch their **dead** carcase.
9 These ye shall eat of all that are in the waters:
all that have fins and scales, shall ye eat:
10 And whatsoever hath not fins and scales,
ye may not eat; it is **unclean fouled** unto you.
11 Of all **clean pure** birds ye shall eat.
12 But these are they of which ye shall not eat:
the eagle, and the ossifrage, and the ospraying,
13 And the glede, and the kite,
and the vulture **after his kind in species**,
14 And every raven **after his kind in species**,
15 And the **daughter of the owl**, and the night hawk,
and the cuckow, and the hawk **after his kind in species**,
16 The little owl, and the great owl, and the swan,
17 And the pelican, and the gier eagle, and the cormorant,
18 And the stork, and the heron **after her kind in species**,
and the lapwing, and the bat.
19 And every creeping **thing that flieth flyer**
is **unclean fouled** unto you:
they shall not be eaten.

20 But of all **clean fowls pure flyers**, ye may eat.
21 Ye shall not eat of any **thing that dieth of itself carcase**:
thou shalt give it unto the **stranger sojourner**
that is in thy **gates portals**, that he may eat it;
or thou mayest sell it unto **an alien a stranger**:
for thou art an holy people
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**.
Thou shalt not **seethe stew** a kid in his mother's milk.

THE TORAH ON TITHING

22 **In tithing**,
Thou shalt **truly** tithe all the **increase produce** of thy seed,
that the field bringeth forth year by year.
23 And thou shalt eat **before at the face of**
the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**,

DEUTERONOMY 13, 14 316

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and mercies you and abounds you,
as he has oathed to your fathers
18 — when you hearken
to the voice of Yah Veh your Elohim
— to guard all his misvoth
which I misvah you this day
— to work what is straight
in the eyes of Yah Veh your Elohim.

THE TORAH ON MUTILATION

14

You are the sons of Yah Veh your Elohim:
neither cut yourselves,
nor set any baldness between your eyes
for them who die.
2 For you are a holy people to Yah Veh your Elohim
and Yah Veh chose you
to be a peculiar people unto himself,
above all the goyim upon the face of the soil.

THE TORAH ON EATING

3 Eat not any abhorrence.
4 These are the animals to eat:
the ox, the lamb of the lambs and the lamb of the goats,
5 the hart and the gazelle
and the fallow deer and the wild goat
and the pygarg and the wild ox and the chamois:
6 and every animal that splits the hoof
and cleaves the cleft into two hoofs
and regurgitates the cud among the animals,
eat.

7 Only, these eat not:
who regurgitate the cud, who split the cloven hoof
— as the camel and the hare and the coney:
for they regurgitate the cud but divide not the hoof;
they are foul to you:
8 and the hog,
because it splits the hoof yet chews not the cud,
it is unclean unto you:
neither eat their flesh nor touch their carcase.

9 Eat these of all in the waters:
all that have fins and scales, eat:
10 and whatever has not fins and scales, eat not:
it is foul to you.

11 Of all pure birds, eat;
12 but these, eat not:
the eagle and the ossifrage and the ospraying
and the glede and the kite
13 and the vulture in species;
14 and every raven in species;
15 and the daughter of the owl and the night hawk
and the cuckow and the hawk in species;
16 the little owl and the great owl and the swan
and the pelican and the gier eagle
17 and the cormorant
18 and the stork and the heron in species;
and the lapwing and the bat:
19 and every creeping flyer is foul to you:
eat not:
20 and all pure flyers, eat.

21 Eat not of any carcase:
give it to the sojourner in your portals to eat;
or sell it to a stranger:
for you are a holy people to Yah Veh your Elohim.
Stew not a kid in the milk of his mother.

THE TORAH ON TITHING

22 In tithing, tithe all the produce of your seed,
that the field brings forth year by year:
23 and eat at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim,

DEUTERONOMY 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

in the place which he shall choose
to *place* **tabernacle** his name there,
the tithe of thy *corn* **crop**,
of thy *wine* **juice**, and of thine oil,
and the firstlings of thy *herds* **oxen** and of thy flocks;
that thou mayest learn to *fear* **awe**
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **always Elohim all days**.
24 And if the way *be too long* **abound** for thee,
so that thou art not able to *carry* **bear** it;
or if the place be too far **removed** from thee,
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
shall choose to set his name there,
when the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
hath blessed thee:
25 Then shalt thou *turn* **give** it into *money* **silver**,
and bind up the *money* **silver** in thine hand,
and shalt go unto the place
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** shall choose:
26 And thou shalt *bestow* **give** that *money* **silver**
for whatsoever thy soul *lusteth after* **desireth**,
for oxen, or for *sheep* **flocks**,
or for wine, or for *strong drink* **intoxicants**,
or for whatsoever thy soul *desireth* **asketh**:
and thou shalt eat there
before the *LORD* **at the face of Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
and thou shalt *rejoice* **cheer**, thou, and thine household,
27 And the *Levite* **Leviy** that is within thy *gates* **portals**;
thou shalt not forsake him;
for he hath no *part* **allotment** nor inheritance with thee.
28 At the end of three years
thou shalt bring forth
all the tithe of thine *increase* **produce** the same year,
and shalt *lay* **set** it up within thy *gates* **portals**:
29 And the *Levite* **Leviy**,
(because he hath no *part* **allotment** nor inheritance
with thee,)
and the *stranger* **sojourner**, and the *fatherless* **orphan**,
and the widow, which are within thy *gates* **portals**,
shall come, and shall eat and *be satisfied* **satiate**;
that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** may bless thee
in all the work of thine hand which thou *doest* **workest**.

THE TORAH ON DEBT RELEASE

15 At the end of *every* seven years **work**
thou shalt *make* **work** a release.
2 And this is the *manner* **word** of the release:
Every *creditor* that **master whose hand** lendeth ought
unto his *neighbour* **friend** shall release it;
he shall not exact it of his *neighbour* **friend**,
or of his brother;
because it is called the *LORD'S* **Yah Veh's** release.
3 Of a *foreigner* **stranger** thou mayest exact it *again*:
but that which is thine with thy brother
thine hand shall release;
4 *Save when* **Finally**,
that there shall be no *poor* **needy** among you;
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall greatly bless thee
in the land which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
giveth thee for an inheritance to possess it:
5 Only if **in hearing**,
thou *carefully hearken unto* **hearest**
the voice of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
to *observe* **guard** to *do* **work**
all these *commandments* **misvoth**
which I *command* **misvah** thee this day.
6 For the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** blesseth thee,
as he *promised* **worded** thee:
and thou shalt *lend* **pledge** unto many *nations* **goyim**,
but thou shalt not *borrow* **pawn**;
and thou shalt reign over many *nations* **goyim**
but they shall not reign over thee.
7 If there be among you
a *poor man* **needy** of one of thy brethren
within *any* **one** of thy *gates* **portals** in thy land
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** giveth thee,
thou shalt not *harden* **strengthen** thine heart,
nor shut thine hand from thy *poor* **needy** brother:
8 But thou shalt open thine hand wide unto him,

DEUTERONOMY 14, 15 317

exeGeses companion BIBLE

in the place he chooses to tabernacle his name there
— the tithe of the crop of your juice and of your oil,
and the firstlings of your oxen and of your flocks;
that you learn to awe Yah Veh your Elohim all days.
24 And when your way abounds
so that you *are* not able to bear it;
or when the place
Yah Veh your Elohim chooses to set his name
is too far removed from you,
when Yah Veh your Elohim blesses you:
25 then give it to silver
and bind up the silver in your hand
and go to the place Yah Veh your Elohim chooses:
26 and give that silver for whatever your soul desires
— for oxen or for flocks
or for wine or for intoxicants,
or for whatever your soul asks:
and eat there at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim
and cheer — you and your household,
27 and forsake not the Leviy within your portals;
for he has neither allotment nor inheritance with you.
28 At the end of three years — that same year
bring all the tithe of your produce
and set it within your portals:
29 and the Leviy,
because he has neither allotment
nor inheritance with you,
and the sojourner and the orphan and the widow
within your portals,
come and eat and satiate;
so that Yah Veh your Elohim blesses you
in all the work your hand works.

THE TORAH ON DEBT RELEASE

15 At the end of seven years, work a release
2 — and this *is* the word of the release:
every master whose hand lends ought to his friend
releases it;
he exacts not of his friend or of his brother;
because it *is* called, the release of Yah Veh.
3 Of a stranger you exact:
but whatever of yours *is* with your brother,
your hand releases;
4 except when there are no needy among you.
For Yah Veh greatly blesses you in the land
Yah Veh your Elohim
gives you — an inheritance to possess:
5 only, in hearing,
hear the voice of Yah Veh your Elohim,
to guard to work all these misvoth
I misvah you this day:
6 for Yah Veh your Elohim blesses you,
as he worded you.
Pledge to many goyim, but pawn not;
that you reign over many goyim
but they not reign over you.
7 When there are any needy among you
of one of your brothers
within one of your portals in your land
which Yah Veh your Elohim gives you,
neither strengthen your heart
nor shut your hand from your needy brother:
8 but open your hand wide to him

DEUTERONOMY 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and in **pledging**, shalt surely *lend* **pledge** him sufficient for his *need* **lack**, in that which he *wanteth* **lacketh**.

9 Beware **Guard** that there be not a *thought* **word** in thy *wicked* heart of **Beli Yaal**, saying,
The seventh year, the year of release,
is at hand **approacheth**;
and thine eye *be evil* **vilify** against thy *poor* **needy** brother,
and thou givest him nought;
and he *cry* **call** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** against thee,
and it be sin unto thee.

10 **In giving**, Thou shalt *surely* give him,
and thine heart shall not be *grieved* **vilified**
when thou givest unto him:
because that for this *thing* **word**
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
shall bless thee in all thy works,
and in all that thou *puttest* **spreadest** thine hand *unto*.

11 For the *poor* **needy** shall never cease out of the land:
therefore I *command* **misvah** thee, saying,
Thou shalt open thine hand wide unto thy brother,
to thy *poor* **humbled**, and to thy needy, in thy land.

12 And if thy brother, an Hebrew *man*,
or an *Hebrew woman* **Hebrewess**,
be sold unto thee, and serve thee six years;
then in the seventh year thou shalt *let him go* **send him**
free **liberated** from thee.

13 And when thou sendest him *out*
free **liberated** from thee,
thou shalt not *let him go away* **send him** empty:

14 **In adorning**, Thou shalt *furnish* **adorn** him *liberally*
out of thy flock, and out of thy **threshing** floor,
and out of thy *winepress* **trough**:
of that wherewith
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** hath blessed thee
thou shalt give unto him.

15 And thou shalt remember
that thou wast a *bondman* **servant**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** redeemed thee:
therefore I *command* **misvah** thee this *thing* **word** to day.

16 And it shall be, if he say unto thee,
I *will* **shall** not go away from thee;
because he loveth thee and thine house,
because he is *well* **good** with thee;

17 Then thou shalt take an aul,
and *thrust* **give** it through his ear unto the door,
and he shall be thy servant *for ever* **eternally**.
And also unto thy *maidservant* **maid**
thou shalt *do* **work** likewise.

18 It shall not *seem* **be** hard *unto thee* **in thine eyes**,
when thou sendest him away *free* **liberated** from thee;
for he hath been *worth*
a double *hired servant* **hire of an hireling** to thee,
in serving thee six years:
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
shall bless thee in all that thou *doest* **workest**.

19 All the firstling males
that *come* **birthed** of thy *herd* **oxen** and of thy flock,
thou shalt *sanctify* **hallow**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**:
thou shalt *do no work* **not serve**
with the firstling of thy *bullock* **ox**,
nor shear the firstling of thy *sheep* **flocks**.

20 Thou shalt eat it
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
year by year
in the place which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall choose,
thou and thy household.

21 And if there be any blemish therein,
as if it be lame, or blind, or have any *ill* **evil** blemish,
thou shalt not sacrifice it
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**.

22 Thou shalt eat it within thy *gates* **portals**:
the *unclean* **fouled** and the *clean person* **pure**
shall eat it alike **together**,
as the *roeibuck* **gazelle**, and as the hart.

23 Only thou shalt not eat the blood thereof;
thou shalt pour it upon the *ground* **earth** as water.

DEUTERONOMY 15 318

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and in **pledging**,
pledge him sufficient for the lack he lacks.

9 Guard that there be no word
in your heart of Beli Yaal, saying,
The seventh year, the year of release, approaches;
and you vilify your eye against your needy brother
and you give him naught;
and he calls to Yah Veh against you
and it becomes sin to you;

10 in giving, give him
and vilify not your heart when you give him:
because for this word
Yah Veh your Elohim blesses you in all your works
and in all you spread your hand.

11 For the needy never cease from the land:
so I misvah you, saying,
Open your hand wide to your brother,
to your humbled and to your needy, in your land.

12 And if your brother, a Hebrew, or a Hebrewess,
is sold to you; and serves you six years;
then in the seventh year send him liberated from you.

13 And when you send him from you, liberated,
send him not empty:
in adorning, adorn him from your flock
and from your threshing floor and from your trough:
of whatever Yah Veh your Elohim blessed you,
you give him:

15 and remember that you *were* a servant
in the land of Misrayim;
and Yah Veh your Elohim redeemed you:
so I misvah you this word today.

16 And so be it, if he says to you,
I go not from you!
— because he loves you and your house,
because he *is* good with you;
then take an aul
and give it through his ear to the door
and he becomes your servant eternally:
and also work likewise to your maid.

18 And be not hard in your eyes,
to send him away from you liberated;
for he has been a double hire of a hireling to you,
in serving you six years:
and Yah Veh your Elohim
blesses you in all you work.

19 Hallow all the firstling males
birthed of your oxen and of your flock
to Yah Veh your Elohim:
neither serve with the firstling of your ox
nor shear the firstling of your flocks:
eat it at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim
year by year
in the place Yah Veh chooses
— you and your household.

21 And when there is any blemish therein,
lame, or blind, or any evil blemish,
sacrifice it not to Yah Veh your Elohim:
eat it within your portals
— the foul and the pure together
as the gazelle and as the hart.

23 Only, eat not the blood thereof;
pour it as water on the earth.

DEUTERONOMY 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE TORAH ON PREPARING THE PASACH

16 Observe **Guard** the month of Abib,
and keep **work** the *passover* **pasach**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God Elohim*:
for in the month of Abib
the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God Elohim*
brought thee forth out of *Egypt Misrayim* by night.
2 Thou shalt therefore sacrifice the *passover* **pasach**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God Elohim*,
of the flock and the *herd oxen*,
in the place which the **LORD Yah Veh** shall choose
to *place tabernacle* his name there.
3 Thou shalt eat no *leavened bread* **fermentation** with it;
seven days
shalt thou eat *unleavened bread* **matsah** therewith,
even the bread of *affliction* **humiliation**;
for thou camest forth
out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim* in haste:
that thou mayest remember the day
when thou camest forth out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*
all the days of thy life.
4 And there shall be no *leavened bread* **yeast**
seen with thee in all thy *coast* **border** seven days;
neither shall *there any thing aught* of the flesh,
which thou sacrificedst the first day at even,
remain **stay** overnight all night until the morning.
5 Thou mayest **canst** not sacrifice the *passover* **pasach**
within any **one** of thy *gates* **portals**,
which the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God Elohim* giveth thee:
6 But at the place
which the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God Elohim* shall choose
to *place tabernacle* his name in,
there thou shalt sacrifice the *passover* **pasach** at even,
at the going down of the sun,
at the season
that thou camest forth out of *Egypt Misrayim*.
7 And thou shalt *roast* **stew** and eat it in the place
which the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God Elohim* shall choose:
and thou shalt turn **thy face** in the morning,
and go unto thy tents.
8 Six days thou shalt eat *unleavened bread* **matsah**:
and on the seventh day
shall be a *solemn assembly* **an abstinence**
to the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God Elohim*:
thou shalt **do work** no work *therein*.

THE TORAH ON THE CELEBRATION OF WEEKS

9 Seven weeks shalt thou *number* **scribe** unto thee:
begin to *number* **scribe** the seven weeks
from *such time as* **when**
thou beginnest to *put* the sickle to the *corn stalks*.
10 And thou shalt *keep* **work**
the *feast* **celebration** of weeks
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God Elohim* voluntarily
with a *tribute of a freewill offering* **voluntary**
of thine hand,
which thou shalt give *unto the Lord thy God*,
according as the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God Elohim*
hath blessed thee:
11 And thou shalt *rejoice* **cheer**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh** thy *God Elohim*,
thou, and thy son, and thy daughter,
and thy *manservant* **servant**, and thy *maidservant* **maid**,
and the *Levite* **Leviy** that is within thy *gates* **portals**,
and the *stranger* **sojourner**, and the *fatherless* **orphan**,
and the widow, that are among you,
in the place which the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God Elohim*
hath chosen to *place tabernacle* his name there.
12 And thou shalt remember
that thou wast a *bondman* **servant** in *Egypt Misrayim*:
and thou shalt *observe* **guard** and *do work* these statutes.

THE TORAH ON THE CELEBRATION OF SUKKOTH/BRUSH ARBORS

13 Thou shalt *observe* **work** the *feast* **celebration**
of *tabernacles* **Sukkoth/Brush Arbors** seven days,
after that thou hast gathered in
thy *corn* **threshingfloor** and thy *wine* **trough**:
14 And thou shalt *rejoice* **cheer** in thy *feast* **celebration**,
thou, and thy son, and thy daughter,

DEUTERONOMY 16 319

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE TORAH ON PREPARING THE PASACH

16 Guard the month of Abib
and work the pasach to Yah Veh your Elohim:
for in the month of Abib,
Yah Veh your Elohim
brought you from Misrayim by night.
2 And sacrifice the pasach to Yah Veh your Elohim,
of the flock and the oxen,
in the place Yah Veh chooses
to tabernacle his name there.
3 Eat no fermentation with it;
seven days, eat matsah, the bread of humiliation;
for you came from the land of Misrayim in haste:
so that you remember the day
you came from the land of Misrayim
all the days of your life.
4 And no yeast is seen with you
in all your border seven days;
and none of the flesh
you sacrifice the first day at evening,
stays overnight all night until the morning.
5 You cannot sacrifice the pasach
within one of the portals,
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you:
6 but at the place Yah Veh your Elohim chooses
to tabernacle his name
— there you sacrifice the pasach at evening
at the going down of the sun,
at the season you came from Misrayim.
7 And stew and eat in the place
Yah Veh your Elohim chooses:
and turn your face in the morning
and go to your tents.
8 Six days you eat matsah:
and the seventh day
becomes an abstinence to Yah Veh your Elohim
— work no work.

THE TORAH ON THE CELEBRATION OF WEEKS

9 Scribe seven weeks to yourselves:
begin to scribe the seven weeks
from when you begin the sickle to the stalks:
10 and work the celebration of weeks
to Yah Veh your Elohim voluntarily
with a voluntary of your hand,
which you give as Yah Veh your Elohim blesses you:
11 and cheer at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim
— you and your son and your daughter
and your servant and your maid
and the Leviy within your portals
and the sojourner and the orphan and the widow
among you,
in the place Yah Veh your Elohim
chooses to tabernacle his name.
12 And remember,
you were a servant in Misrayim:
and guard and work these statutes.

THE TORAH ON THE CELEBRATION OF SUKKOTH/BRUSH ARBORS

13 Work the celebration of Sukkoth/Brush Arbors
seven days after
you ingather your threshingfloor and your trough:
14 and cheer in your celebration
— you and your son and your daughter

DEUTERONOMY 16, 17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- and thy *manservant* **servant**, and thy *maidservant* **maid**,
and the *Levite* **Levi**, the *stranger* **sojourner**,
and the *fatherless* **orphan**, and the widow,
that are within thy *gates* **portals**.
- 15 Seven days shalt thou *keep a solemn feast* **celebrate**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
in the place which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall choose:
because the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
shall bless thee in all thine *increase* **produce**,
and in all the works of thine hands,
therefore thou shalt *surely rejoice* **be cheerful**.
- 16 Three times in a year shall all thy males *appear* **be seen**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
in the place which he shall choose;
in the *feast* **celebration** of *unleavened bread* **matsah**,
and in the *feast* **celebration** of weeks,
and in the *feast* **celebration**
of *tabernacles* **Sukkoth/Brush Arbors**:
and they shall not *appear* **be seen**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh** empty:
17 Every man
shall give as he **as the gift of his hand** is able,
according to the blessing
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
which he hath given thee.
- THE TORAH ON SETTING JUDGES AND OFFICERS**
- 18 Judges and officers shalt thou *make* **give** thee
in all thy *gates* **portals**,
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** giveth thee,
throughout thy *tribes* **scions**:
and they shall judge the people
with *just* judgment of **justness**.
- 19 Thou shalt not *wrest* **deviate** judgment;
thou shalt not *respect persons* **recognize faces**,
neither take a *gift* **bribe**:
for a *gift* **bribe** doth blind the eyes of the wise,
and pervert the words of the *righteous* **just**.
- 20 *That which is altogether just* shalt thou follow
Justness — pursue justness,
that thou mayest live, and *inherit* **possess** the land
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** giveth thee.
- THE TORAH ON IDOLATRY**
- 21 Thou shalt not plant thee a *grove* **an asherah**
of any trees *near unto* **beside** the *sacrifice* altar
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
which thou shalt *make* **thee work**.
- 22 Neither shalt thou
set thee up any image **raise a monolith**;
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** hateth.
- THE TORAH ON SACRIFICES**
- 17 Thou shalt not sacrifice
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
any *bullock* **ox**, or *sheep* **lamb**,
wherein is blemish, or any *evilfavouredness* **evil word**:
for that is an *abomination* **abhorrence**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**.
- THE TORAH ON APOSTATES**
- 2 If there be found among you,
within any *one* of thy *gates* **portals**
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** giveth thee,
man or woman,
that hath *wrought wickedness* **worked evil**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
in *transgressing* **trespassing** his covenant,
3 And hath gone and served other *gods* **elohim**,
and *worshipped* **prostrated** to them,
either the sun, or moon,
or any of the host of *heaven* **the heavens**,
which I have not *commanded* **misvahed**;
4 And it be told thee, and thou hast heard of it,
and enquired *diligently* **well**, and, behold,
it be *true* **truth**, and the *thing* **certain** **word established**,
that such *abomination* **abhorrence**
is *wrought* **worked** in *Israel* **Yisra El**:
5 Then shalt thou bring forth that man or that woman,
which have *committed* **worked**
that *wicked thing* **evil word**,
unto thy *gates* **portals**,
even that man or that woman,

DEUTERONOMY 16, 17 320

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- and your servant and your maid and the *Levity*,
the sojourner and the orphan and the widow
within your portals.
- 15 Celebrate seven days to Yah Veh your Elohim
in the place Yah Veh chooses:
because Yah Veh your Elohim
blesses you in all your produce
and in all the works of your hands
— only cheerful.
- 16 Three times in a year
have all your males be seen
at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim
in the place he chooses;
in the celebration of matsah
and in the celebration of weeks
and in the celebration of Sukkoth/Brush Arbors:
that they not be seen empty at the face of Yah Veh:
17 every man — with the gift of his hand
according to the blessing
Yah Veh your Elohim gave you.
- THE TORAH ON SETTING JUDGES AND OFFICERS**
- 18 Give yourselves judges and officers
in all your portals,
which Yah Veh your Elohim gives you
throughout your scions:
to judge the people with judgment of justness.
- 19 Neither deviate judgment
nor recognize faces nor take a bribe:
for a bribe blinds the eyes of the wise
and perverts the words of the just.
- 20 Justness — pursue justness,
that you live and possess the land
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you.
- THE TORAH ON IDOLATRY**
- 21 Neither plant an asherah of any trees
beside the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh your Elohim
which you work,
nor raise a monolith;
22 which Yah Veh your Elohim hates.
- THE TORAH ON SACRIFICES**
- 17 Sacrifice not to Yah Veh your Elohim
any ox or lamb
wherein *is* blemish or any evil word:
for that *is* an abhorrence to Yah Veh your Elohim.
- THE TORAH ON APOSTATES**
- 2 When among you, within one of your portals
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you,
you find a man or woman who works evil
in the eyes of Yah Veh your Elohim,
in trespassing his covenant,
3 and goes and serves other elohim
and prostrates to them
— either the sun or moon
or any of the host of the heavens,
which I misvah not to;
4 and you are told and you hear thereof;
and enquire well, and behold, it be truth,
and the word is established,
of such abhorrence being worked in Yisra El:
5 bring that man or that woman
who worked that evil word to your portals
— that man or that woman

DEUTERONOMY 17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and shalt stone them with stones, till they die.
 6 At the mouth of two witnesses, or three witnesses,
 shall he that is *worthy of death* **to be deathified**
be put to death deathified;
 but at the mouth of one witness
 he shall not be *put to death deathified*.
 7 The hands of the witnesses shall be first upon him
to put him to death deathify him,
 and afterward the hands of all the people.
 So thou shalt *put burn* the evil away from among you.

THE TORAH ON JUDGMENT

8 If there arise a *matter word*
too hard for that marveleth thee in judgment,
 between blood and blood, between plea and plea,
 and between *stroke plague and stroke plague*,
 being *matters words of controversy dispute*
 within thy *gates portals*:
 then shalt thou arise,
 and *get thee up ascend* into the place
 which *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim* shall choose;
 9 And thou shalt come unto the priests the *Levites Levium*,
 and unto the judge that shall be in those days,
 and enquire;
 and they shall *shew tell* thee
 the *sentence word of the mouth judgment*:
 10 And thou shalt *do work*
 according to the *sentence word of judgment his mouth*,
 which they of that place
 which *the LORD Yah Veh* shall choose
 shall *shew tell* thee;
 and thou shalt *observe guard to do work*
 according to all that they *inform point out* to thee:
 11 According to the *sentence mouth of the law torah*
 which they shall *teach point out* to thee,
 and according to the judgment which they shall tell thee,
 thou shalt *do work*:
 thou shalt not *decline turn aside*
 from the *sentence word* which they shall *shew tell* thee,
 to the right *hand*, nor to the left.
 12 And the man
 that *will do presumptuously shall work arrogance*,
 and *will shall* not hearken unto the priest
 that standeth to minister there
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh thy God Elohim,
 or unto the judge, even that man shall die:
 and thou shalt *put burn* away the evil from *Israel Yisra El*.
 13 And all the people shall hear, and *fear awe*,
 and *do no more presumptuously not see*the.

THE TORAH ON SOVEREIGNS

14 When thou art come unto the land
 which *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim* giveth thee,
 and shalt possess it, and shalt *dwelt settle* therein,
 and shalt say, I *will shall* set a *king sovereign* over me,
 like as all the *nations goyim* that are *about all around* me;
 15 In *setting*,
 Thou shalt *in any wise* set him *king sovereign* over thee,
 whom *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim* shall choose:
 one from among thy brethren
 shalt thou set *king sovereign* over thee:
 thou *mayest canst* not set *give a man*
 — a stranger over thee, which is not thy brother.
 16 But he shall not *multiply abound* horses to himself,
 nor cause the people to return to *Egypt Misrayim*,
 to the end that he should *multiply abound* horses:
 forasmuch as *the LORD Yah Veh* hath said unto you,
 Ye shall henceforth return *no more not again* that way.
 17 Neither shall he
multiply wives abound women to himself,
 that his heart turn not away:
 neither shall he *greatly multiply mightily abound*
 to himself silver and gold.
 18 And it shall be,
 when he sitteth upon the throne
 of his *kingdom sovereigndom*,
 that he shall *write inscribe* him
 a *copy duplicate* of this law *torah* in a *book scroll*
 out of that
 which is *before at the face of* the priests the *Levites Levium*:
 19 And it shall be with him,

DEUTERONOMY 17 321

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and stone them with stones until they die.
 6 At the mouth of two witnesses or three witnesses,
 in deathifying, deathify;
 but at the mouth of one witness
 deathify him not.
 7 First the hands of the witnesses
 are on him to deathify him;
 and afterward the hands of all the people.
 Thus you burn the evil from your midst.

THE TORAH ON JUDGMENT

8 Whenever a word rises
 that marvels you in judgment
 — between blood and blood, between plea and plea,
 and between plague and plague
 — words of dispute within your portals:
 then rise,
 and ascend the place Yah Veh your Elohim chooses;
 and come to the priests the Leviym
 and to the judge of those days; and inquire:
 and they tell you the word of the judgment:
 10 and work according to the word of the mouths
 of them of the place Yah Veh chooses
 tell you;
 and guard to work according to all
 they point out to you
 11 — according to the mouth of the torah
 they point out to you:
 and work according to the judgment
 they tell you:
 turn not aside from the word they tell you
 — right or left.
 12 And the man who works arrogance,
 and hearkens not to the priest
 who stands to minister there
 at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim, or to the judge,
 even that man dies:
 and you burn away the evil from Yisra El.
 13 — and all the people hear and awe and not see the.

THE TORAH ON SOVEREIGNS

14 When you come to the land
 Yah Veh your Elohim gives you,
 and possess it and settle therein;
 and you say, I set a sovereign over me,
 as all the goyim all around me!
 15 — in setting, set him sovereign over you,
 whom Yah Veh your Elohim chooses:
 set one from among your brothers
 sovereign over you:
 you cannot give a man
 — a stranger over you, who is not your brother.
 16 Only, he abounds not horses to himself;
 returns not the people to Misrayim to abound horses:
 since Yah Veh says to you,
 Never again return that way.
 17 He neither abounds women to himself
 nor turns away his heart
 nor mightily abounds silver and gold to himself.
 18 And so be it,
 when he sits on the throne of his sovereigndom,
 he inscribes himself
 a duplicate of this torah in a scroll
 from that at the face of the priests the Leviym:
 19 and so be it with him,

DEUTERONOMY 17, 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and he shall *read recall* therein all the days of his life:
 that he may learn
 to *fear the LORD* **awe Yah Veh** his *God Elohim*,
 to *keep guard* all the words
 of this *law torah* and these statutes,
 to *do work* them:
 20 That his heart be not lifted up above his brethren,
 and that he turn not aside from the *commandment misvah*,
 to the right *hand*, or to the left:
 to the end that he may prolong his days
 in his *kingdom sovereignty*,
 he, and his *children sons*, in the midst of *Israel Yisra El*.

THE TORAH ON THE PRIESTAL ALLOTMENTS

18 The priests the *Levites Leviym*,
 and all the *tribe scion* of Levi,
 shall have no *part allotment* nor inheritance
 with *Israel Yisra El*:
 they shall eat
 the *offerings of the LORD made by fire*
firings unto Yah Veh,
 and his inheritance.
 2 Therefore
 shall they have no inheritance among their brethren:
 the *LORD Yah Veh* is their inheritance,
 as he hath *said worded* unto them.
 3 And this shall be the priest's *due judgment*
 from the people,
 from them that *offer sacrifice* a sacrifice,
 whether it be ox or *sheep lamb*;
 and they shall give unto the priest the *shoulder foreleg*,
 and the two cheeks, and the *maw belly*.
 4 The *firstfruit firstling* also of thy *corn crop*,
 of thy *wine juice*, and of thine oil,
 and the first of the *fleece shearing* of thy sheep,
 shalt thou give him.
 5 For the *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
 hath chosen him out of all thy *tribes scions*,
 to stand to minister in the name of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
 him and his sons *for ever all days*.
 6 And if a *Levite Leviy*
 come from *any one* of thy *gates portals*
 out of all *Israel Yisra El*, where he sojourned,
 and come with all the desire of his *mind soul*
 unto the place which the *LORD Yah Veh* shall choose;
 7 Then he shall minister
 in the name of the *LORD Yah Veh* his *God Elohim*,
 as all his brethren the *Levites Leviym* do,
 which stand there
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
 8 They shall have
like portions allotment by allotment to eat,
 beside that which cometh of the *sale his sales*
 of his *patrimony the fathers'*.

THE TORAH ON APOSTATIZING

9 When thou art come into the land
 which the *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim* giveth thee,
 thou shalt not learn to *do work*
 after the *abominations abhorrences*
 of those *nations goyim*.
 10 There shall not be found among you any one
 that *maketh passeth* his son or his daughter to *pass*
 through the fire,
 or that *useth divination a diviner*,
 or an *observer of times a cloudgazer*,
 or an *enchanter a prognosticator*, or a *witch sorcerer*.
 11 Or a charmer *that charms*,
 or a *consulter with familiar spirits*
an inquirer of a necromancer,
 or a *wizard knower*,
 or a *necromancer an inquirer of the deathified*.
 12 For all that *do work* these *things*
 are an *abomination abhorrence* unto the *LORD Yah Veh*:
 and because of these *abominations abhorrences*
 the *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
 doth *drive dispossess* them out from *before thee thy face*.
 13 Thou shalt be *perfect integrious*
 with the *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*.
 14 For these *nations goyim*, which thou shalt possess,

DEUTERONOMY 17, 18 322

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and he recalls therein all the days of his life:
 to learn to awe Yah Veh his Elohim,
 to guard all the words of this torah and these statutes,
 to work them:
 20 to not lift his heart above his brothers,
 and to not turn aside from the misvah — right or left:
 and to prolong his days in his sovereignty,
 — he and his sons, midst Yisra El.

THE TORAH ON THE PRIESTAL ALLOTMENTS

18 The priests the Leviym and all the scion of Levi,
 have neither allotment nor inheritance with Yisra El:
 they eat the firings to Yah Veh and his inheritance:
 and they have no inheritance among their brothers:
 Yah Veh is their inheritance, as he worded to them.
 2 And so be it,
 3 the judgment for the priest from the people
 — from them who sacrifice a sacrifice
 — whether ox or lamb:
 give the priest the foreleg
 and the two cheeks and the belly
 and the firstling of your crop
 — of your juice and of your oil
 and the first of the shearing of your sheep
 give him.
 5 For Yah Veh your Elohim
 chose him from all your scions,
 to stand to minister in the name of Yah Veh
 — he and his sons all days.
 6 And if a Leviy comes from one of your portals
 from all Yisra El, where he sojourns,
 and comes with all the desire of his soul
 to the place Yah Veh chooses,
 7 then he ministers
 in the name of Yah Veh his Elohim
 — as all his brothers the Leviym
 who stand there at the face of Yah Veh.
 8 Theirs is the allotment by allotment to eat,
 besides what comes from his sales of the fathers.

THE TORAH ON APOSTATIZING

9 When you come to the land
 Yah Veh your Elohim gives you,
 learn to not work
 after the abhorrences of those goyim.
 10 lest you find any among you
 who passes his son or his daughter through the fire
 or a diviner or a cloudgazer
 or a prognosticator or a sorcerer
 or a charmer who charms
 or an inquirer of a necromancer or a knower
 or an inquirer of the deathified:
 for all who work these
 are an abhorrence to Yah Veh:
 and because of these abhorrences
 Yah Veh your Elohim
 dispossesses them from your face.
 13 Be integrious with Yah Veh your Elohim:
 14 for these goyim, whom you possess,

DEUTERONOMY 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

hearkened unto *observers of times* **cloudgazers**,
and unto diviners:

but as for thee,

the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
hath not *suffered* **given** thee so to do.

THE TORAH ON PROPHETS

15 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
will **shall** raise up unto thee a Prophet
from the midst of thee,
of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;
16 According to all that thou *desiredst* **askedst**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** in Horeb
in the day of the *assembly* **congregation**, saying,
Let me not hear again
the voice of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**,
neither let me see this great fire any more, that I die not.
17 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto me,
They have *well spoken* **well—pleased**
that which they have *spoken* **worded**.
18 I will **shall** raise them up a Prophet
from among their brethren, like unto thee,
and will *put* **shall give** my words in his mouth;
and he shall *speak* **word** unto them all
that I shall *command* **misvah** him.
19 And **so be** it shall *come to pass*,
that *whosoever* **what man**
will **shall** not hearken unto my words
which he shall *speak* **word** in my name,
I will **shall** require it of him.
20 But the prophet,
which shall *presume* **seethe**
to *speak* **word** a word in my name,
which I have not *commanded* **misvahed** him
to *speak* **word**,
or that shall *speak* **word**
in the name of other *gods* **elohim**,
even that prophet shall die.

THE TEST OF THE PROPHET

21 And if thou say in thine heart,
How shall we know the word
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath not *spoken* **worded**?
22 When a prophet *speaketh* **wordeth**
in the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
if the *thing follow* **word become** not,
nor *come to pass* **arrive**,
that is the *thing* **word**
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath not *spoken* **worded**,
but the prophet hath
spoken it presumptuously **worded arrogance**:
thou shalt not *be afraid of* **fear** him.

THE TORAH ON CITIES OF REFUGE

19 When the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
hath cut off the *nations* **goyim**,
whose land
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** giveth thee,
and thou *succeedest* **possessest** them,
and *dweldest* **settlest** in their cities, and in their houses;
2 Thou shalt separate three cities for thee
in the midst of thy land,
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
giveth thee to possess it.
3 Thou shalt prepare thee a way,
and divide the *coasts* **borders** of thy land,
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
giveth thee to inherit, into *three parts* **thirds**,
that every *slayer* **murderer** may flee thither.
4 And this is the *case* **word** of the *slayer* **murderer**,
which shall flee thither, that he may live:
Whoso *killeth* **smiteth** his *neighbour* **friend**
ignorantly **unknowingly**,
whom he hated not *in time past* **three yesters ago**;
5 As when a man goeth into the *wood* **forest**
with his *neighbour* **friend** to *hew wood* **chop timber**,
and his hand *fetcheth a stroke with* **driveth** the axe
to cut down the tree,
and the *head* **iron** slippeth from the *helve* **timber**,
and *lighteth upon* **findeth** his *neighbour* **friend**,
that he die;
he shall flee unto one of those cities, and live:

DEUTERONOMY 18, 19 323

exeGesés companion BIBLE

hearken to cloudgazers and to diviners:
but as for you,
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you not thus.

THE TORAH ON PROPHETS

15 Yah Veh your Elohim
raises a Prophet to you from your midst
— of your brothers, like me;
hearken to him;
16 according to all you asked of Yah Veh your Elohim
in Horeb — in the day of the congregation, saying,
O that I never again
hear the voice of Yah Veh my Elohim,
never again see this great fire, that I not die.
17 And Yah Veh says to me,
They well—please in what they word:
18 I raise them a Prophet from among their brothers
— like you;
and I give my words in his mouth:
to word to them all that I misvah him.
19 And so be it,
whatever man hearkens not
to the words he words in my name,
I require it of him.
20 Only, the prophet,
who seethes to word a word in my name,
which I never misvahed him to word,
or words in the name of other elohim,
even that prophet dies.

THE TEST OF THE PROPHET

21 And when you say in your heart,
How know we the word Yah Veh worded not?
22 When a prophet words in the name of Yah Veh,
if the word neither becomes, nor arrives,
that *is* the word Yah Veh has not worded,
that prophet worded arrogance:
fear him not.

THE TORAH ON CITIES OF REFUGE

19 When Yah Veh your Elohim cuts off the goyim
whose land Yah Veh your Elohim gives you;
and you possess them
and settle in their cities and in their houses;
2 separate three cities for you midst the land
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you to possess.
3 Prepare a way and divide the borders of the land
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you to inherit into thirds,
to become for every murderer to flee to.
4 And this *is* the word of the murderer,
who flees there, and lives:
Whoever smites his friend unknowingly,
whom he hated not three yesters ago;
5 as when a man goes to the forest
with his friend to chop timber
and his hand drives the axe to cut down the tree
and the iron slips from the timber
and finds his friend, that he dies;
he flees to one of those cities and lives:

DEUTERONOMY 19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

6 Lest the avenger redeemer of the blood
pursue the slayer murderer,
while his heart is hot, and overtake him,
because the way is long aboundeth,
and slay him smite his soul
whereas he was not worthy when he had no judgment
of death,
inasmuch as because he hated him not
in time past three yesters ago.

7 Wherefore I command misvah thee, saying,
Thou shalt separate three cities for thee.

8 And if the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim
enlarge widen thy coast border,
as he hath sworn oathed unto thy fathers,
and give thee all the land
which he promised worded to give unto thy fathers;
9 If thou shalt keep guard
all these commandments misvoth to do work them,
which I command misvah thee this day,
to love the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim,
and to walk ever all days in his ways;
then shalt thou add three cities more for thee,
beside these three:

10 That innocent blood be not shed poured in thy land,
which the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim
giveth thee for an inheritance,
and so blood be upon thee.

11 But if any man hate his neighbour friend,
and lie in wait lurk for him, and rise up against him,
and smite him mortally his soul that he die,
and fleeth into one of these cities:

12 Then the elders of his city
shall send and fetch take him thence,
and deliver give him
into the hand of the avenger redeemer of blood,
that he may die.

13 Thine eye shall not pity spare him,
but thou shalt put burn away
the guilt of for the innocent blood from Israel Yisra El,
that it may go well be good with thee.

THE TORAH ON LAND BORDERS

14 Thou shalt not remove
thy neighbour's landmark friend's border,
which they of old time at the first have set
in thine inheritance,
which thou shalt inherit in the land
that the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim
giveth thee to possess it.

THE TORAH ON WITNESSES

15 One witness shall not rise up against a man
for any iniquity perversity, or for any sin,
in any sin that he sinneth:
at the mouth of two witnesses,
or at the mouth of three witnesses,
shall the matter word be established raised.

16 If a false witness witness of violence rise up
against any man
to testify answer against him
that which is wrong revolting;

17 Then both the two men,
between whom the controversy dispute is,
shall stand before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
before at the face of the priests and the judges,
which shall be in those days;

18 And the judges shall
make diligent inquisition inquire well:
and, behold, if the witness be a false witness,
and hath testified witnessed falsely against his brother;

19 Then shall ye do work unto him,
as he had thought intrigued
to have done worked unto his brother:
so shalt thou put the evil away from among you.

20 And those which remain survive shall hear,
and fear awe,
and shall henceforth commit add to work
no more any such word of evil among you.

21 Thine eye shall not pity spare;
but life shall go for life soul for soul, eye for eye,
tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot.

DEUTERONOMY 19 324

exeGeses companion BIBLE

6 lest the redeemer of the blood
pursue the murderer while his heart is hot
and overtakes him because the way abounds
and he smites the soul of him
who has no judgment of death
— because he hated him not three yesters ago:

7 so I misvah you, saying,
Separate three cities for yourselves.

8 And if Yah Veh your Elohim widens your border
as he oathed to your fathers;
and gives you all the land
he worded to give your fathers;

9 when you guard all these misvoth, to work them,
which I misvah you this day
— to love Yah Veh your Elohim
and to walk all days in his ways;
then add three cities more for you besides these three:

10 so that innocent blood is not poured in the land
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you — an inheritance
and blood becomes on you.

11 And when a man hates his friend
and lurks for him and rises against him
and smites his soul that he dies,
and flees to one of these cities:

12 then the elders of his city send and take him
and give him to the hand of the redeemer of blood,
that he dies.

13 Your eye spares him not,
and you burn the innocent blood from Yisra El,
that it be good with you.

THE TORAH ON LAND BORDERS

14 Remove not the border of your friend
which they first set in your inheritance,
which you inherit in the land
that Yah Veh your Elohim gives you to possess it.

THE TORAH ON WITNESSES

15 Raise not one witness against a man
for any perversity or for any sin in any sin he sins.
But by the mouth of two witnesses,
or by the mouth of three witnesses,
raise the word.

16 When a witness of violence rises against any man
to answer against him what is revolting;
then the two men, between whom the dispute is,
stand at the face of Yah Veh
— at the face of the priests and the judges,
being in those days;

17 and the judges inquire well:
and behold, if the witness is a false witness
and witnesses falsely against his brother;
then work to him
as he intrigued to work to his brother:
thus you burn the evil from among you.

20 And they who survive, hear and awe,
and add not to work such word of evil among you.

21 Your eye spares not:
soul for soul, eye for eye, tooth for tooth,
hand for hand, foot for foot.

20 When thou goest out to *battle war*
against thine enemies,
and seest horses, and chariots,
and a people more than thou,
be not afraid of awe them **not**:
for the *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim* is with thee,
which *brought ascended* thee up
out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
2 And it shall be,
when ye *are come nigh approach* unto the *battle war*,
that the priest shall approach
and *speak word* unto the people,
3 And shall say unto them, Hear, O *Israel Yisra El*,
ye approach this day unto battle against your enemies:
let not your hearts *faint tenderize*,
fear awe not, and do not *tremble hasten*,
neither be ye terrified *because of them at their face*;
4 For the *LORD Yah Veh* your *God Elohim*
is he that goeth with you,
to fight for you against your enemies, to save you.
5 And the officers shall *speak word* unto the people,
saying, What man is there that hath built a new house,
and hath not *dedicated hanukkahed* it?
let him go and return to his house,
lest he die in the *battle war*,
and another man *dedicate hanukkah* it.
6 And what man is he that hath planted a vineyard,
and hath not yet *eaten plucked* of it?
let him *also* go and return unto his house,
lest he die in the *battle war*,
and another man *eat pluck* of it.
7 And what man is there
that hath betrothed a *wife woman*,
and hath not taken her?
let him go and return unto his house,
lest he die in the *battle war*, and another man take her.
8 And the officers
shall *speak further word again* unto the people,
and they shall say,
What man is there that *is fearful aweth*
and *fainthearted tender of heart*?
let him go and return unto his house,
lest his brethren's heart *faint melt* as well as his heart.
9 And it shall be,
when the officers
have *made an end of speaking finished wording*
unto the people
that they shall *make captains muster governors*
of the *armies hosts* to *lead head* the people.
10 When thou *comest nigh approachest* unto a city
to fight against it,
then *proclaim peace call shalom* unto it.
11 And it shall be,
if it make thee answer of *peace shalom*,
and open unto thee,
then it shall be,
that all the people that is found therein
shall be *tributaries vassals* unto thee,
and they shall serve thee.
12 And if it *will make no peace shall not shalom* with thee,
but *will make shall work* war against thee,
then thou shalt besiege it:
13 And when the *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
hath *delivered given* it into thine hands,
thou shalt smite every male thereof
with the *edge mouth* of the sword:
14 But the women, and the *little ones toddlers*,
and the *cattle animals*, and all that is in the city,
even all the *spoil loot* thereof,
shalt thou *take plunder* unto thyself;
and thou shalt eat the *spoil loot* of thine enemies,
which the *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
hath given thee.
15 Thus shalt thou *do work* unto all the cities
which are *very mighty* far off from thee,
which are not of the cities of these *nations goyim*.
16 But of the cities of these people,

20 When you go to war against your enemies
and see horses and chariots
and a people more than you,
awe them not:
for Yah Veh your Elohim *is* with you
— who ascended you from the land of Misrayim.
2 And so be it, when you approach the war,
the priest approaches and words to the people,
3 and says to them, Hear, O Yisra El,
you approach this day to battle against your enemies:
neither tenderize your hearts
nor awe nor hasten nor terrify at their face;
4 for Yah Veh your Elohim *is* he who goes with you,
to fight for you against your enemies, to save you.
5 And the officers word to the people, saying,
What man has built a new house
and not hanukkahed it?
Have him go and return to his house,
lest he die in the war and another man hanukkah it.
6 And what man planted a vineyard
and not yet plucked thereof?
Have him go and return to his house,
lest he die in the war and another man pluck thereof.
7 And what man has betrothed a woman
and not taken her?
Have him go and return to his house,
lest he die in the war and another man take her.
8 And the officers word again to the people, and say,
What man awes, and *is* tender of heart?
Have him go and return to his house,
lest the heart of his brothers melt as well as his heart.
9 — and so be it,
when the officers finish wording to the people
they muster governors of the hosts
to head the people.
10 When you approach to a city to fight against it,
call shalom to it:
11 and so be it,
if it answers you of shalom and opens to you,
then so be it,
all the people found therein
become your vassals and serve you.
12 And if it shalams not with you,
but works war against you, besiege it:
13 and when Yah Veh your Elohim
gives it in your hands,
smite every male thereof
with the mouth of the sword:
14 but the women and the toddlers
and the animals and all within the city
— even all the loot thereof, plunder to yourself;
and eat the loot of your enemies
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you.
15 Thus work to all the cities mighty far from you,
who *are* not of the cities of these goyim.
16 Only, of the cities of these people,

DEUTERONOMY 20, 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

which the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**
doth give thee for an inheritance,
thou shalt save **preserve** alive
nothing **naught** that breatheth:
17 But in **devoting**, thou shalt *utterly destroy* **devote** them;
namely, the Hittites Hethiy, and the Amorites Emoriy,
the Canaanites Kenaaniy, and the Perizzites Perizziy,
the Hivites Hivviy, and the Jebusites Yebusiy;
as the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**
hath *commanded* **misvahed** thee:
18 That they teach you not to *do* **work**
after all their *abominations* **abhorrences**,
which they have *done* **worked** unto their gods **elohim**;
so should **and thus** sin
against the LORD **Yah Veh** your God **Elohim**.
19 When thou shalt besiege a city *a long time* **many days**,
in *making war* **fighting** against it to *take* **capture** it,
thou shalt not *destroy* **ruin** the trees thereof
by *forcing* **driving** an axe against them:
for thou mayest eat of them,
and shalt not cut them *down*
(for the tree of the field is man's life)
to employ them in the siege
O humanity,
face ye the tree of the field to besiege you?:
20 Only the trees which thou knowest
that they be not trees for *meat* **food**,
thou shalt *destroy* **ruin** and cut them down;
and thou shalt build *bulwarks* **sieges**
against the city that *maketh* **worketh** war with thee,
until it be *subdued* **topple**.

THE TORAH ON UNKNOWN ASSASSINS

21 If one be found *slain* **pierced** in the *land* **soil**
which the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**
giveth thee to possess it, *lying* **fallen** in the field,
and it be not known who hath slain him:
2 Then thy elders and thy judges shall come forth,
and they shall measure unto the cities
which are round about him that is *slain* **pierced**:
3 And it shall be,
that the city
which is *next* **nearest** unto the *slain man* **pierced**,
even the elders of that city
shall take an heifer **of the oxen**,
which hath not *been wrought with* **served**,
and which hath not drawn in the yoke;
4 And the elders of that city
shall *bring down* **descend** the heifer
unto a *rough valley* **perennial wadi**,
which is neither *eared* **served** nor *sown* **seeded**,
and shall *strike off* **break** the heifer's neck
there in the *valley* **wadi**:
5 And the priests the sons of Levi shall come near;
for them the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**
hath chosen to minister unto him,
and to bless in the name of the LORD **Yah Veh**;
and by their *word* **mouth**
shall every *controversy* **dispute**
and every *stroke* **plague** be *tried*:
6 And all the elders of that city,
that are *next* **near** unto the *slain man* **pierced**,
shall *wash* **baptize** their hands over the heifer
that is beheaded **whose neck is broken** in the *valley* **wadi**:
7 And they shall answer and say,
Our hands have not *shed* **poured** this blood,
neither have our eyes seen it.
8 *Be merciful* **Kapar/Atone**, O LORD **Yah Veh**,
unto thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
whom thou hast redeemed,
and *lay* **give** not innocent blood
unto thy people *of Israel's charge* **midst Yisra El**.
And the blood shall *be forgiven them* **kapar/atone**.
9 So shalt thou *put* **burn** away
the *guilt of* innocent blood from among you,
when thou shalt *do that which is right* **work straight**
in the *sight eyes* of the LORD **Yah Veh**.

THE TORAH ON THE CAPTURED WOMAN

10 When thou goest forth to war against thine enemies,

DEUTERONOMY 20, 21 326

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Yah Veh your Elohim gives you — an inheritance,
preserve naught alive that breathes:
17 but in devoting, devote them
— the Hethiy and the Emoriy
the Kenaaniy and the Perizziy
the Hivviy and the Yebusiy
as Yah Veh your Elohim misvahed you:
18 so that they not teach you
to work after all the abhorrences
they worked to their elohim
— and thus sin against Yah Veh your Elohim.
19 When you besiege a city many days,
to fight against it to capture it,
ruin not the trees thereof
by driving an axe against them:
eat of them, but cut them not
O humanity,
goes the tree of the field at your face to besiege you?
20 Only, the trees you know *are* not trees for food,
ruin and cut them;
and build sieges
against the city working war with you
until it topples.

THE TORAH ON UNKNOWN ASSASSINS

21 When you find someone pierced
on the soil Yah Veh your Elohim gives you to possess
— fallen in the field
and know not who pierced him:
2 then your elders and your judges come
and measure to the cities all around the pierced:
3 and so be it,
the city nearest to the pierced,
even the elders of that city
take a heifer of the oxen which neither served
nor drawn in the yoke;
4 and the elders of that city
descend the heifer to a perennial wadi,
— neither served nor seeded
and break the neck of the heifer there in the wadi:
5 and the priests the sons of Levi come near;
for Yah Veh your Elohim
chooses them to minister to him
and to bless in the name of Yah Veh;
and by their mouth
is every dispute and every plague:
6 and all the elders of the city near the pierced,
baptize their hands over the heifer
whose neck they broke in the wadi:
7 and they answer and say,
Neither our hands poured this blood,
nor our eyes seen.
8 **Kapar/Atone**, O Yah Veh,
to your people *Yisra El* whom you redeemed;
and give not innocent blood
midst your people *Yisra El*.
— and the blood *kapars/atones*.
9 Thus you burn the innocent blood from among you,
when you work straight in the eyes of Yah Veh.

THE TORAH ON THE CAPTURED WOMAN

10 When you go to war against your enemies

DEUTERONOMY 21, 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim
hath delivered **given** them into thine hands,
and thou hast taken **captured** them *captive*,
11 And seest among the captives
a *beautiful* woman **fair in form**,
and hast a *desire* **attached** unto her,
that thou *wouldest have* **shouldst take** her
to *as thy wife* **woman**;
12 Then thou shalt bring her home to **midst** thine house,
and she shall shave her head, and *pare* **work** her nails;
13 And she shall *put* **turn aside**
the *raiment* **clothes** of her captivity *from off her*,
and shall *remain* **settle** in thine house,
and *bewail* **weep over** her father and her mother
a *full month* **moon of days**:
and after that thou shalt go in unto her,
and be **marry** her *husband*,
and she shall be thy *wife* **woman**.
14 And it shall be, if thou have no delight in her,
then thou shalt *let* **send** her *go away*
whither she will **as her soul desireth**;
but **in selling**, thou shalt not sell her *at all*
for *money* **silver**,
thou shalt not *make merchandise of* **tyrannize** her,
because thou hast humbled her.

THE TORAH ON FIRSTBIRTHED

15 If a man have two *wives* **women**,
one beloved, and *another* **one** hated,
and they have *born* **birthed** him *children* **sons**,
both the beloved and the hated;
and if the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** son be hers that was hated:
16 Then it shall be,
when he maketh **the day** his sons to inherit
that which he hath,
that he *may* **can** not make
the son of the beloved *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
before **face** the son of the hated,
which is indeed — the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**:
17 But he shall *acknowledge* **recognize**
the son of the hated for the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**,
by giving him a *double portion* **twofold mouth**
of all that *he hath* **be found with him**:
for he is the beginning of his strength;
the *right of the firstborn* **judgment of firstrights** is his.

THE TORAH ON A REVOLTING AND REBELLIOUS SON

18 If a man have a *stubborn* **revolting** and rebellious son,
which *will* **shall** not *obey* **hearken**
to the voice of his father, or the voice of his mother,
and that, when they have *chastened* **disciplined** him,
will **shall** not hearken unto them:
19 Then shall his father and his mother
lay hold on **capture** him,
and bring him out unto the elders of his city,
and unto the *gate* **portal** of his place;
20 And they shall say unto the elders of his city,
This our son is *stubborn* **revolting** and rebellious,
he *will* **doth** not *obey* **hearken to** our voice;
he is a glutton, and a *drunkard* **carouser**.
21 And all the men of his city shall stone him with stones,
so shalt thou *put* **burn** evil away from among you;
and all *Israel* **Yisra El** shall hear, and *fear* **awe**.

THE TORAH ON EXECUTION

22 And if a man *have committed* **becometh** a sin
worthy — a **judgment** of death,
and he be to be *put to death* **deathified**,
and thou hang him on a tree:
23 His *body* **carcase**
shall not *remain all night* **stay overnight** upon the tree,
but **in entombing**,
thou shalt *in any wise* **bury** **entomb** him that day;
(for he that is hanged
is accursed **hath an abasement** of God Elohim;)
that thy *land* **soil** be not defiled,
which the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim
giveth thee for an inheritance.

THE TORAH ON SUNDRY MATTERS

22 Thou shalt not see
thy brother's ox or his *sheep* **go astray** **lamb driven**,

DEUTERONOMY 21, 22 327

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and Yah Veh your Elohim gives them in your hands
and you capture them,
11 and among the captives, see a woman fair in form
and *are* attached to her,
and you take her as your woman;
12 bring her midst your house:
and she shaves her head and works her nails
13 and she turns aside the clothes of her captivity
and settles in your house;
and weeps over her father and her mother
a moon of days:
and after that you go in to her and marry her
and she becomes your woman.
14 And so be it, if you delight not in her,
send her away as her soul desires;
but in selling, you neither sell her for silver,
nor tyrannize her,
because you humbled her.

THE TORAH ON FIRSTBIRTHS

15 When a man has two women,
one beloved and one hated,
and they birth him sons
— both the beloved and the hated;
and if the firstbirth son be hers that was hated:
16 then so be it,
the day his sons inherit what he has,
that he cannot make the son of the beloved firstbirth
face the son of the hated firstbirth:
17 but he recognizes
the son of the hated as the firstbirth,
by giving him a twofold mouth
of all they find with him:
for he *is* the beginning of his strength;
the judgment of firstrights *is* his.

THE TORAH ON A REVOLTING AND REBELLIOUS SON

18 When a man has a revolting and rebellious son,
who hearkens not
to the voice of his father or the voice of his mother
and that, when they discipline him,
he hearkens not to them:
19 then his father and his mother capture him
and bring him to the elders of his city
and to the portal of his place;
20 and they say to the elders of his city,
This our son *is* revolting and rebellious,
he hearkens not to our voice;
he *is* a glutton and a carouser.
21 And all the men of his city stone him with stones
and he dies:
thus you burn evil from among you.
— and all Yisra El hears and awes.

THE TORAH ON EXECUTION

22 And if there is a sin in a man
— a judgment of death
and you deathify him and you hang him on a tree;
23 stay not his carcase on the tree overnight,
but in entombing, entomb him that day;
for he who *is* hanged has an abasement of Elohim;
that your soil be not defiled,
which Yah Veh your Elohim
gives you — an inheritance.

THE TORAH ON SUNDRY MATTERS

22 See not the ox or the lamb of your brother driven,

DEUTERONOMY 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and *hide* **conceal** thyself from them:
 in returning,
 thou shalt *in any case bring* **return** them *again*
 unto thy brother.
2 And if thy brother be not nigh unto thee,
 or if thou know him not,
 then thou shalt *bring* **gather** it
 unto **the midst** of thine own house,
 and it shall be with thee until thy brother seek after it,
 and thou shalt restore it to him *again*.
3 *In like manner* **Thus** shalt thou *do* **work**
 with his ass **he burro**;
 and so **thus** shalt thou *do* **work** with his *raiment* **clothes**;
 and with all lost *thing* of thy brother's,
 which he hath lost, and thou hast found,
 shalt thou *do* **work** likewise:
 thou *mayest not hide* **art not able to conceal** thyself.
4 Thou shalt not see thy brother's ass **he burro**
 or his ox fall down by the way,
 and *hide* **conceal** thyself from them:
 in raising,
 thou shalt *surely help him to lift* **raise** them *up again*.
5 The woman shall not wear **bear**
 that which pertaineth unto a man **a mighty's instruments**,
 neither shall a *man* **mighty**
 put on **enrobe** a woman's garment:
 for all that *do* **work** so are *abomination* **abhorrence**
 unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**.
6 If a bird's nest *chance to be before thee* **confront thy face**
 in the way in any tree, or on the *ground* **earth**,
 whether they be young ones **chicks**, or eggs,
 and the *dam sitting* **mother crouching**
 upon the *young* **chicks**, or upon the eggs,
 thou shalt not take the *dam* **mother** with the *young* **son**:
7 But **in sending away**,
 thou shalt
 in any wise let the dam go **send away the mother**,
 and take the *young* **son** to thee;
 that it may *be well with well*—**please** thee,
 and that thou mayest prolong thy days.
8 When thou buildest a new house,
 then thou shalt
 make a battlement **work a parapet** for thy roof,
 that thou *bring* **set** not blood upon thine house,
 if **in falling**, any man fall from thence.
9 Thou shalt not sow **seed** thy vineyard
 with *divers seeds* **heterogenetic inductions**:
 lest the *fruit* **fulness** of thy seed
 which thou hast sown **seeded**,
 and the *fruit* **produce** of thy vineyard, be defiled.
10 Thou shalt not plow
 with an ox and an *ass* **a he burro** together.
11 Thou shalt not
 wear a garment of divers sorts **enrobe linsey woolsey**,
 as of woollen and *linen* **flax** together.
12 Thou shalt *make* **work** three *fringes* **threads**
 upon the four *quarters* **borders** of thy *vesture* **covering**,
 wherewith thou coverest *thyself*.
 THE TORAH ON VIRGINITY
13 If any man take a *wife* **woman**,
 and go in unto her, and hate her,
14 And *give occasions* **set exploitations** of *speech* **words**
 against her,
 and bring up an evil name upon her, and say,
 I took this woman, and when I *came to* **approached** her,
 I found *her not a maid* **no virginity in her**:
15 Then shall the father of the *damsel* **lass**,
 and her mother,
 take and bring forth
 the tokens of the damsel's **lass'** virginity
 unto the elders of the city in the *gate* **portal**:
16 And the damsel's father shall say unto the elders,
 I gave my daughter unto this man to *wife* **woman**,
 and he hateth her;
17 And, *lo* **behold**,
 he hath *given occasions* **set exploitations** of *speech* **words**
 against her, saying,
 I found
 not thy daughter a maid **no virginity in thy daughter**;

DEUTERONOMY 22 328

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and conceal yourself from them:
 in returning, return them to your brother:
2 and if your brother is not near you
 or if you know him not,
 then gather it midst your own house
 and it is with you until your brother seeks after it:
 and restore it to him.
3 Thus you work with his he burro;
 and thus you work with his clothes;
 and with all that is lost of your brother
 which he lost and you found, work likewise:
 you cannot conceal yourself.
4 See not the he burro of your brother
 and his ox fall by the way
 and conceal yourself from them:
 in raising, raise them.
5 Neither bear the instruments of the mighty
 upon a woman,
 nor the mighty enrobe that of the woman:
 for all who work thus
 are abhorrence to Yah Veh your Elohim.
6 If the nest of a bird confronts your face
 in the way in any tree or on the earth
 — chicks or eggs
 and the mother crouches
 on the chicks or on the eggs,
 take not the mother with the son:
7 but in sending away, send away the mother
 and take the son to you;
 that it well—please you
 and you prolong your days.
8 When you build a new house,
 work a parapet for your roof,
 so if in falling, any man falls from there
 you set not blood on your house.
9 Seed not your vineyard
 with heterogenetic inductions:
 lest the fulness of the seed you seed
 and the produce of your vineyard, becomes defiled:
10 plow not with an ox and a he burro together:
11 enrobe not linsey woolsey
 as of woollen and flax together:
12 work threads on the four borders of your covering
 wherewith you cover.
 THE TORAH ON VIRGINITY
13 If any man takes a woman
 and goes in to her and hates her
 and set exploitations of words
 and brings up an evil name on her, and says,
 I took this woman and when I approached her
 I found no virginity in her!
14 — then the father and mother of the lass
 take and bring of the virginity of the lass
 to the elders of the city in the portal:
15 and the father of the damsel says to the elders,
 I gave my daughter to this man to woman
 and he hates her;
16 and behold,
 he has set exploitations of words, saying,
 I found no virginity in your daughter;

DEUTERONOMY 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and yet these are *the tokens* of my daughter's virginity.
And they shall spread the cloth
before **at the face** of the elders of the city.
18 And the elders of that city shall take that man
and *chastise* **discipline** him;
19 And they shall *amerce* **penalize** him
in an hundred *shekels* of silver,
and give them unto the father of the *damsel* **lass**,
because he hath brought up an evil name
upon a virgin of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and she shall be his *wife* **woman**;
he *may* **can** not *put* **send** her away all his days.
20 But if this *thing* **word** be *true* **truth**,
and *the tokens* of virginity
be not found for the *damsel* **lass**:
21 Then they shall bring out the *damsel* **lass**
to the *door* **opening** of her father's house,
and the men of her city
shall stone her with stones that she die:
because she hath *wrought* **worked** folly in *Israel* **Yisra El**,
to *play* the whore in her father's house:
so shalt thou *put* **burn** evil away from among you.
22 If a man be found lying with a woman
married to an *husband* **a master**,
then they shall *both* **the two** of them die,
both the man that lay with the woman, and the woman:
so shalt thou *put* **burn** away evil from *Israel* **Yisra El**.
23 If a *damsel* **lass** that is a virgin
be betrothed unto an *husband* **man**,
and a man find her in the city, and lie with her;
24 Then ye shall bring **the two** of them *both*
out unto the *gate* **portal** of that city,
and ye shall stone them with stones that they die;
the *damsel* **lass**,
because **for the word** that she cried not, being in the city;
and the man,
because **for the word** that
he hath humbled his *neighbour's wife* **friend's woman**:
so thou shalt *put* **burn** away evil from among you.
25 But if a man find a betrothed *damsel* **lass** in the field,
and the man *force* **take strong hold** of her,
and lie with her:
then the man only that lay with her shall die.
26 But unto the *damsel* **lass**
thou shalt *do nothing* **work no word**;
there is in the *damsel* **lass** no sin *worthy* of death:
for as when a man riseth against his *neighbour* **friend**,
and *slayeth* him **murdureth his soul**,
even so is this *matter* **word**:
27 For he found her in the field,
and the betrothed *damsel* **lass** cried,
and there was none to save her.
28 If a man find a *damsel* **lass** that is a virgin,
which is not betrothed,
and *lay hold on* **capture** her, and lie with her,
and they be found;
29 Then the man that lay with her
shall give unto the *damsel's* **lass's** father
fifty *shekels* of silver,
and she shall be his *wife* **woman**;
because he hath humbled her,
he *may* **can** not *put* **send** her away all his days.
30 A man shall not take his father's *wife* **woman**,
nor *discover* **expose** his father's *skirt* **border**.

THE TORAH ON CONGREGATIONAL EXCLUSIONS

23 He that is wounded *in the stones* or **castrated**,
or hath his *privy member* **penis** cut off,
shall not enter
into the congregation of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
2 A bastard shall not enter
into the congregation of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
even to his tenth generation shall he not enter
into the congregation of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
3 An *Ammonite* **Ammoniy** or *Moabite* **Moabiy**
shall not enter
into the congregation of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
even to their tenth generation shall they not enter
into the congregation of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
for ever **eternally**:

DEUTERONOMY 22, 23 329

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and yet these *are* of the virginity of my daughter.
And they spread the cloth
at the face of the elders of the city:
18 and the elders of that city take that man
and discipline him;
19 and they penalize him a hundred silver
and give them to the father of the lass,
because he brought an evil name
on a virgin of Yisra El:
and she becomes his woman;
he cannot send her away all his days.
20 And if this word be truth
and virginity is not found for the lass:
21 then they bring the lass
to the opening of the house of her father:
and the men of her city
stone her with stones so that she dies:
because she worked folly in Yisra El
to whore in the house of her father:
thus you burn evil from among you.
22 When they find a man
lying with a woman married to a master,
then they — the two of them die,
both the man lying with the woman and the woman:
thus you burn evil from Yisra El.
23 When a lass — a virgin betrothed to a man
and a man finds her in the city and lies with her;
24 then you bring the two of them
to the portal of that city
and stone them with stones that they die;
the lass, for the word
that she cried not, being in the city;
and the man, for the word
that he humbled the woman of his friend:
thus you burn evil from among you.
25 And if a man finds a betrothed lass in the field
and the man takes strong hold of her
and lies with her:
26 then only the man who lies with her dies:
and work no word to the lass;
there *is* no sin of death in the lass:
for as when a man rises against his friend
and murders his soul,
even thus *is* this word:
27 for he found her in the field
and the betrothed lass cried
with no one to save her.
28 When a man finds a lass — a virgin not betrothed
and captures her and lies with her
and they find them;
29 then the man who lies with her
gives fifty silver to the father of the lass
and she becomes his woman:
and because he humbled her
he cannot send her away all his days.
30 A man neither takes the woman of his father,
nor exposes the border of his father.

THE TORAH ON CONGREGATIONAL EXCLUSIONS

23 He who is wounded or castrated
or has his penis cut off
enters not to the congregation of Yah Veh:
2 a bastard
enters not to the congregation of Yah Veh
— even to his tenth generation
enters not to the congregation of Yah Veh:
3 an Ammoniy or Moabiy
enters not to the congregation of Yah Veh
— even to their tenth generation
enter not to the congregation of Yah Veh
eternally:

DEUTERONOMY 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 Because **For word** that they met anticipated you not
with bread and with water in the way,
when ye came forth out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
and because they hired against thee
Balaam **Bilam** the son of Beor of Pethor
of *Mesopotamia* **Aram Naharaim**, to curse abase thee.
5 Nevertheless the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
would **willed to** not hearken unto *Balaam* **Bilam**;
but the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
turned the *curse* **abasement** into a blessing unto thee,
because the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** loved thee.
6 Thou shalt not seek their *peace* **shalom**
nor their *prosperity* **good** all thy days *for ever* **eternally**.
7 Thou shalt not abhor an *Edomite* **Edomiy**;
for he is thy brother:
thou shalt not abhor an *Egyptian* **a Misrayim**;
because thou wast a *stranger* **sojourner** in his land.
8 The *children* **sons** that are *begotten* **birthed** of them
shall enter into the congregation of the **LORD Yah Veh**
in their third generation.

THE TORAH ON SANITATION

9 When the *host* **camp** goeth forth against thine enemies,
then keep **guard** thee from every *wicked thing* **evil word**.
10 If there be among you any man,
that is not *clean* **pure**
by reason of uncleanness that chanceth him by night
from happenings of the night,
then shall he go *abroad out of* **outside** the camp,
he shall not come *within* **midst** the camp:
11 But it shall be,
when at the face of evening cometh on,
he shall *wash* **baptize himself** with water:
and when the sun is down,
he shall come *into* **midst** the camp again.

THE TORAH ON SANITATION ECOLOGY

12 Thou shalt have a *place* **hand** also without the camp,
whither thou shalt go *forth abroad* **without**:
13 And thou shalt
have a paddle **take** upon thy *weapon* **ear**;
and it shall be,
when thou *wilt ease thyself abroad* **shalt sit without**,
thou shalt dig therewith,
and shalt turn back
and cover *that which cometh from thee* **thy excrement**:
14 For the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
walketh in the midst of thy camp, to *deliver* **rescue** thee,
and to give up thine enemies *before thee* **at thy face**;
therefore shall thy camp be holy:
that he see no *unclean thing* **word of nakedness** in thee,
and turn away *from* **after** thee.

THE TORAH ON SERVANTS

15 Thou shalt not deliver unto his *master* **adoni**
the servant which is escaped from his *master* **adoni** unto thee:
16 He shall *dwelt* **settle** with thee, even among you,
in that place which he shall choose
in one of thy *gates* **portals**,
where it *liketh him best* **is good for him**:
thou shalt not oppress him.

THE TORAH ON HALLOWED WHORES

17 There shall be no **hallowed** whore
of the daughters of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
nor a *sodomite* **hallowed whoremaster**
of the sons of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
18 Thou shalt not bring the *hire* **payoff**
of a *whore* **one that whoreth**, or the price of a dog,
into the house of the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
for any vow:
for even *both these* **two** are *abomination* **an abhorrence**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**.

THE TORAH ON USURY

19 Thou shalt not *lend upon usury to* **usure** thy brother;
usury of *money* **silver**, usury of *victuals* **food**,
usury of any
thing that is lent upon usury **word of a usurer**:
20 Unto a stranger, thou mayest *lend upon usury* **usure**;
but unto thy brother, thou shalt not *lend upon usury* **usure**:
that the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** may bless thee
in *all that thou settest* **every spreading of** thine hand
in the land whither thou goest to possess it.

DEUTERONOMY 23 330

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 for word that they anticipated you not
with bread and with water in the way,
when you came from *Misrayim*;
and because they hired
Bilam the son of Beor of Pethor of *Aram Naharaim*
against you to abase you:
5 and *Yah Veh* your *Elohim*
willed to not hearken to *Bilam*;
but *Yah Veh* your *Elohim*
turned the abasement to a blessing to you,
because *Yah Veh* your *Elohim* loved you:
6 seek neither their *shalom* nor their *good*
all your days — eternally.
7 Neither abhor an *Edomiy*;
for he *is* your brother:
nor abhor a *Misrayim*;
because you *were* a sojourner in his land.
8 The *sons* birthed of them
enter to the congregation of *Yah Veh*
in their third generation.

THE TORAH ON SANITATION

9 When the camp goes forth against your enemies,
then guard from every evil word.
10 If there be among you any man,
not pure from happenings of the night,
he goes outside the camp;
he comes not midst the camp:
11 but so be it,
at the face of evening, he baptizes with water:
and when the sun *is* down,
he comes midst the camp again.

THE TORAH ON SANITATION ECOLOGY

12 And have a handle outside the camp,
where you go outside:
13 and take it on your ear;
and so be it,
when you sit outside, dig therewith
and turn back and cover your excrement:
14 for *Yah Veh* your *Elohim* walks midst your camp
to rescue you;
and to give up your enemies at your face;
so your camp is holy:
so that he sees no word of nakedness in you
and turns after you.

THE TORAH ON SERVANTS

15 Deliver not to his *adoni*
the servant who escaped to you
from his *adoni*:
16 he settles with you
— among you in the place he chooses
in one of your portals,
where it *is* good for him:
oppress him not.

THE TORAH ON HALLOWED WHORES

17 No one of the daughters of *Yisra El*
becomes a hallowed whore;
and no one of the sons of *Yisra El*
becomes a hallowed whoremaster:
18 bring not the payoff of whoring,
or the price of a dog,
to the house of *Yah Veh* your *Elohim*
for any vow:
for even these two are an abhorrence
to *Yah Veh* your *Elohim*.

THE TORAH ON USURY

19 Usure not your brother
— usury of silver, usury of food,
usury of any word of a usurer:
20 usure a stranger;
but your brother, usure not:
so that *Yah Veh* your *Elohim*
blesses you in every spreading of your hand
in the land you go to possess.

- 21 When thou shalt vow a vow
unto *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*,
thou shalt not *slack delay to pay shalam* it:
for *in requiring*,
the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim
will *shall surely* require it of thee;
and it *would* be sin in thee.
- 22 But if thou shalt *forbear cease* to vow,
it shall be no sin in thee.
- 23 That which *is gone proceeded* out of thy lips
thou shalt *keep guard and perform work*;
even a *freewill offering voluntary*,
according as thou hast vowed
unto *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*,
which thou hast *promised worded* with thy mouth.

THE TORAH ON GLEANING

- 24 When thou comest
into thy *neighbour's friend's* vineyard,
then thou mayest eat grapes
thy fill at thine own pleasure to fill thy soul;
but thou shalt not *put give* any in thy *vessel instrument*.
- 25 When thou comest
into the *standing corn stalks* of thy *neighbour friend*,
then thou mayest pluck the ears with thine hand;
but thou shalt not move a sickle
unto thy *neighbour's standing corn friend's stalks*.

THE TORAH ON THE SCROLL OF DIVORCEMENT

- 24 When a man hath taken a *wife woman*
and married her,
and it *come to pass becometh*,
that she find no *favour charism* in his eyes,
because he hath found some
uncleanness word of nakedness in her:
then let him *write inscribe* her a *bill scroll* of divorcement,
and give it in her hand, and send her out of his house.
- 2 And when she is departed out of his house,
she may go and be another man's *wife*.
- 3 And if the latter *husband man* hate her,
and *write inscribe* her a *bill scroll* of divorcement,
and giveth it in her hand,
and sendeth her out of his house;
or if the latter *husband man* die,
which took her to be his *wife woman*;
- 4 Her *former husband first master*, which sent her away,
may can not return to take her *again*
to be as his wife woman,
after that she is *defiled fouled*;
for that is *abomination abhorrence*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
and thou shalt not cause the land to sin,
which *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
giveth thee for an inheritance.

THE TORAH ON SUNDRY MATTERS

- 5 When a man hath taken a new *wife woman*,
he shall not go out to *war the hostility*,
neither shall he
be charged with pass any business word over him:
but he shall be *free exonerated* at home one year,
and shall cheer *up his wife woman* which he hath taken.
- 6 No man shall take the *nether millstone*
or the upper millstone to pledge:
for he taketh a *man's life soul* to pledge.
- 7 If a man be found stealing *any a soul* of his brethren
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
and *maketh merchandise of tyrannizeth* him,
or selleth him;
then that thief shall die;
and thou shalt *put burn* evil away from among you.
- 8 *Take heed On guard* in the plague of leprosy,
that thou *observe diligently guard mightily*,
and *do work* according to all
that the priests the *Levites Levim*
shall *teach point out to* you:
as I *commanded misvahed* them,
so ye shall *observe guard to do work*.
- 9 Remember what *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
did worked unto *Miriam Miryam* by the way,
after that ye were come forth out of *Egypt Misrayim*.

- 21 When you vow a vow to Yah Veh your Elohim,
delay not to shalam it:
for in requiring, Yah Veh your Elohim requires of you;
and it becomes sin in you:
and when you cease to vow
it becomes not sin in you.
- 23 Guard and work what proceeds from your lips
as you vow to Yah Veh your Elohim
— even the voluntary you word with your mouth.

THE TORAH ON GLEANING

- 24 When you come to the vineyard of your friend,
eat grapes to fill your soul;
but give not any in your instrument:
when you come to the stalks of your friend,
pluck the ears with your hand;
but move not a sickle to the stalks of your friend.

THE TORAH ON THE SCROLL OF DIVORCEMENT

- 24 When a man takes a woman and marries her
and so be it, she finds no charism in his eyes,
because he finds some word of nakedness in her:
and he inscribes her a scroll of divorcement
and gives it in her hand and sends her from his house:
and when she departs from his house,
and she goes and becomes to another man:
and the latter man hates her
and inscribes her a scroll of divorcement
and gives it in her hand and sends her from his house:
or the latter man who took her to be his woman, dies;
her first master, who sent her away,
cannot return to take her as his woman
after she fouls;
for that *is* abhorrence at the face of Yah Veh:
lest the land sin,
which Yah Veh your Elohim gives you
— an inheritance.

THE TORAH ON SUNDRY MATTERS

- 5 When a man takes a new woman,
he neither goes to the hostility
nor passes any word over him:
but exonerate him at home one year
to cheer the woman he takes.
- 6 No man takes the millstone
or the upper millstone to pledge:
for he takes a soul to pledge.
- 7 When you find a man stealing a soul
from his brothers — of the sons of Yisra El
and tyrannizes him or sells him;
that thief dies;
and you burn evil from among you.
- 8 On guard in the plague of leprosy,
that you guard mightily
and work all the priests the Levim point out to you:
as I misvahed them, thus guard to work.
- 9 Remember what Yah Veh your Elohim
worked to Miryam by the way,
after you came from Misrayim.

DEUTERONOMY 24, 25

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 When thou dost lend
thy *brother any thing* **friend a loan**,
thou shalt not go into his house
to *fetch* **pledge** his pledge.

11 Thou shalt stand *abroad* **without**,
and the man to whom thou dost lend
shall bring out the pledge *abroad* **without** unto thee.

12 And if the man be *poor* **humbled**,
thou shalt not *sleep* **lie down** with his pledge:

13 In *any case* **returning**,
thou shalt *deliver* **return** him the pledge *again*
when the sun goeth down,
that he may *sleep* **lie down** in his own *raiment* **clothes**,
and bless thee:
and it shall be *righteousness* **justness** unto thee
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh thy God Elohim.

14 Thou shalt not oppress an *hired servant* **hireling**
that is *poor* **humbled** and needy,
whether he be of thy brethren,
or of thy *strangers* **sojourners**
that are in thy land within thy *gates* **portals**:

15 At his day thou shalt give him his hire,
neither shall the sun go down upon it;
for he is *poor* **humbled**,
and *setteth* **lifteth** his *heart* **soul** upon it:
lest he *cry* **call** against thee unto *the LORD Yah Veh*,
and it be sin unto thee.

16 The fathers
shall not be *put to death* **deathified** for the *children* **sons**,
neither shall the *children* **sons**
be *put to death* **deathified** for the fathers:
every man
shall be *put to death* **deathified** for his own sin.

17 Thou shalt not *pervert* **deviate** the judgment
of the *stranger* **sojourner**, nor of the *fatherless* **orphan**;
nor take a widow's *raiment* **clothes** to pledge:

18 But thou shalt remember
that thou wast a *bondman* **servant** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
redeemed thee thence:
therefore I *command* **misvah** thee
to *do* **work** this *thing* **word**.

19 When thou *cuttest down* **harvestest** thine harvest
in thy field,
and hast forgot a *sheaf* **an omer** in the field,
thou shalt not *go again* **return** to *fetch* **take** it:
it shall be for the *stranger* **sojourner**,
for the *fatherless* **orphan**, and for the widow:
that *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim* may bless thee
in all the work of thine hands.

20 When thou beatest thine olive tree,
thou shalt not *go over the boughs again* **shake after thee**:
it shall be for the *stranger* **sojourner**,
for the *fatherless* **orphan**, and for the widow.

21 When thou *gatherest* **clippest** the grapes
of thy vineyard,
thou shalt not *glean it afterward* **exploit after thee**:
it shall be for the *stranger* **sojourner**,
for the *fatherless* **orphan**, and for the widow.

22 And thou shalt remember
that thou wast a *bondman* **servant**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
therefore I *command* **misvah** thee
to *do* **work** this *thing* **word**.

25 If there be a *controversy* **dispute** between men,
and they come unto judgment,
that *the judges may judge them* **they be judged**;
then they shall justify the *righteous* **just**,
and *condemn* **declare wicked** the wicked.

2 And it shall be,
if the wicked *man be worthy to be beaten* **son be smitten**,
that the judge shall cause him to *lie down* **fall**,
and to be *beaten before* **smitten at** his face,
sufficient according to his *fault* **wickedness**,
by a certain number.

3 Forty *stripes* he may give him **smites**,
and not *exceed* **add**:
lest, if he should *exceed* **add**,
and *beat* **smite** him above these with many *stripes* **strokes**,

DEUTERONOMY 24, 25 332

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 When you lend your friend a loan,
go not to his house to pledge his pledge:
stand outside;
and the man to whom you lend
brings the pledge outside to you.

12 And if the man is humbled,
lie not down with his pledge:
in returning,
return the pledge to him when the sun goes down,
so that he lies down in his own clothes
and blesses you:
and it becomes your justness
at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim.

14 Oppress not a hireling, humbled and needy,
of your brothers or of the sojourners
in your land within your portals:
in his day, give him his hire,
that the sun not go down thereon;
for he is humbled and lifts his soul thereon:
lest he call Yah Veh against you
and it becomes sin to you.

16 Neither deathify the fathers for the sons;
nor deathify the sons for the fathers:
deathify every man for his own sin.

17 Neither deviate the judgment of the sojourner
nor of the orphan;
nor take the clothes of a widow to pledge:
and remember
that you were a servant in Misrayim
and Yah Veh your Elohim redeemed you there:
so I misvah you to work this word.

19 When you harvest your harvest in your field,
and forget an omer in the field, return not to take it:
it becomes for the sojourner,
for the orphan and for the widow:
and Yah Veh your Elohim blesses you
in all the work of your hands.

20 When you beat your olive tree, shake not after you:
it becomes for the sojourner,
for the orphan and for the widow.

21 When you clip the grapes of your vineyard,
exploit not after you:
it becomes for the sojourner,
for the orphan and for the widow:
and remember,
you were a servant in the land of Misrayim:
so I misvah you to work this word.

25 When a dispute becomes between men
and they come to judgment to be judged;
then they justify the just
and declare wicked the wicked:
and so be it, if the wicked son becomes smitten,
that the judge has him fall
and someone smites him at his face,
sufficient according to his wickedness
by a certain number
— forty smites and add not:
lest, if he add
and smite him above these with many strokes,

DEUTERONOMY 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

then thy brother
 should seem vile unto thee **be abased in thine eyes.**
 4 Thou shalt not muzzle the ox
 when he treadeth **thresheth** out the corn.

THE TORAH ON THE LEVIRATE

5 If brethren dwell **settle** together,
 and one of them die, and have no *child* **son**,
 the *wife of the dead* **woman of him who died**
 shall not marry *without unto* **an outsider man**
 — a stranger:
 her *husband's brother* **levirate** shall go in unto her,
 and take her to him to *wife* **woman**,
 and perform the *duty of an husband's brother* unto her
be her levirate.
 6 And it shall be,
 that the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** which she *bear*eth **birtheth**
 shall succeed **be raised** in the name of his brother
which is dead **who died**,
 that his name be not *put* **wiped** out of *Israel* **Yisra El.**
 7 And if the man *like not* **be not delighted**
 to take his *brother's wife* **become a levirate**,
 then let his *brother's wife* **her of the levirate**
 go up **ascend** to the gate **portal** unto the elders,
 and say, My *husband's brother* **levirate**
 refuseth to raise up unto his brother
 a name in *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 he will not perform the *duty of my husband's brother*
he willeth to not be my levirate.
 8 Then the elders of his city shall call him,
 and *speak* **word** unto him:
 and if he stand to it, and say,
 I *like* **delight** not to take her;
 9 Then shall his *brother's wife* **the woman of the levirate**
 come unto him in the *presence* **eyes** of the elders,
 and *loose* **strippeth** his shoe from off his foot,
 and spit in his face, and shall answer and say,
 So **Thus** shall it be *done* **worked** unto that man
 that *will* **shall** not build up his brother's house.
 10 And his name shall be called in *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 The house of him that hath his shoe loosed.

THE TORAH ON SUNDRY MATTERS

11 When men strive together one with another,
 and the *wife* **woman** of the one *draweth near* **approacheth**
 for to *deliver* **rescue** her *husband* **man**
 out of the hand of him that smiteth him,
 and *putteth forth* **spreadeth** her hand,
 and *taketh him by the secrets* **layeth hold on his pudenda:**
 12 Then thou shalt cut off her *hand* **palm**,
 thine eye shall not *pity* **spare** her.
 13 Thou shalt not have in thy *bag* **pouch**
divers weights **a stone and a stone**,
 a great and a small.
 14 Thou shalt not have in thine house
divers measures **an ephah and an ephah**,
 a great and a small.
 15 But thou shalt have
a perfect and just weight
a stone of shalom and justness,
a perfect and just measure
an ephah of shalom and justness
 shalt thou have:
 that thy days may be *lengthened* **prolonged**
 in the *land* **soil**
 which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** giveth thee.
 16 For all that *do* **work** such *things*,
 and all that *do unrighteously* **work wickedness**,
 are an *abomination* **abhorrence**
 unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim.**
 17 Remember what *Amalek did* **Amaleq worked** unto thee
 by the way,
 when ye were come forth out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
 18 How he *met* **happened upon** thee by the way,
 and *smote the hindmost of* **curtailed** thee,
 even all that were *feeble* **weak** behind thee,
 when thou wast *faint* **languid** and *wear*y **belaboured**;
 and he *feared* **awed** not *God* **Elohim.**
 19 Therefore it shall be,
 when the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
 hath *given thee rest* **rested thee**

DEUTERONOMY 25 333

exeGesés companion BIBLE

then your brother becomes abased in your eyes.
 4 Muzzle not the ox when he threshes the corn.

THE TORAH ON THE LEVIRATE

5 When brothers settle together
 and one of them dies, having no son,
 the woman of him who died
 marries not an outsider man — a stranger:
 her levirate goes in to her
 and takes her to him to woman
 and becomes her levirate:
 6 and so be it, the firstbirth she births
 becomes raised in the name of his brother who died,
 that his name becomes not wiped out from Yisra El.
 7 And if the man delights not to become a levirate,
 then let her of the levirate
 ascend to the portal, to the elders, and say,
 My levirate refuses to raise a name to his brother
 in Yisra El,
 he wills to not become my levirate.
 8 And the elders of his city call him and word to him:
 and if he stands to it and says,
 I delight not to take her!
 9 — then the woman of the levirate
 comes to him in the eyes of the elders
 and strips his shoe from his foot
 and spits in his face and answers, and says,
 So be it worked to the man
 who builds not the house of his brother!
 10 — and in Yisra El, his name becomes called,
 The house of him whose shoe is loosed.

THE TORAH ON SUNDRY MATTERS

11 When men strive together one with another
 and the woman of the one
 approaches to rescue her man
 from the hand of him who smites him,
 and spreads her hand and lays hold on his pudenda;
 12 cut off her palm:
 your eye spares her not.
 13 Have not in your pouch
 a stone and a stone — a great and a small;
 14 have not in your house
 an ephah and an ephah — a great and a small:
 15 but have a stone of shalom and justness,
 an ephah of shalom and justness:
 to prolong your days on the soil
 Yah Veh your Elohim gives you.
 16 For all who work such
 and all who work wickedness,
 are an abhorrence to Yah Veh your Elohim.
 17 Remember what Amaleq worked to you
 by the way
 when you came forth from Misrayim
 18 — how he happened on you by the way
 and curtailed you
 — even all the weak behind you
 as you languished and belaboured
 — and he awed not Elohim.
 19 So be it,
 when Yah Veh your Elohim rests you

DEUTERONOMY 25, 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

from all thine enemies round about,
in the land which *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
giveth thee for an inheritance to possess it,
that thou shalt blot **wipe** out
the remembrance **memorial** of **Amalek Amaleq**
from under *heaven* **the heavens**;
thou shalt not forget it.

THE TORAH ON FIRSTLINGS AND TITHES

26

And it shall be,
when thou art come in unto the land
which *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
giveth thee for an inheritance,
and possesseth it, and *dwellest* **settlest** therein;
2 That thou shalt take
of the first of all the fruit of the *earth soil*,
which thou shalt bring of thy land
that *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim* giveth thee,
and shalt put it in a basket,
and shalt go unto the place
which *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
shall choose to place his name there.
3 And thou shalt go unto the priest
that shall be in those days,
and say unto him,
I *profess* **tell** this day
unto *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*,
that I am come unto the *country land*
which *the LORD sware* **Yah Veh oathed** unto our fathers
for to give us.
4 And the priest shall take the basket out of thine hand,
and set it *down before the* **at the face of the sacrifice** altar
of *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*.
5 And thou shalt *speak* **answer** and say
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh thy God Elohim,
A Syrian ready to perish **A destroyed Aramiy**
was my father,
and he *went down* **descended** into *Egypt Misrayim*,
and sojourned there with a few **men**,
and became there a *nation* **goyim**,
great, mighty, and *populous* **many**:
6 And the *Egyptians Misrayim* evil entreated us,
and *afflicted* **humbled** us,
and *laid* **gave** upon us hard *bondage* **service**:
7 And when we cried
unto *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of our fathers,
the LORD Yah Veh heard our voice,
and *looked on* **saw** our *affliction* **humiliation**,
and our *labour* **drudgery**, and our oppression:
8 And *the LORD Yah Veh*
brought us forth out of *Egypt Misrayim*
with a *mighty* **strong** hand,
and with an *outstretched* **spread** arm,
and with great *terribleness* **awesomeness**,
and with signs, and with *wonders* **omens**:
9 And he hath brought us into this place,
and hath given us this land,
even a land that floweth with milk and honey.
10 And now, behold,
I have brought the *firstfruits* **firstlings of the fruit**
of the *land soil*,
which thou, O *LORD Yah Veh*, hast given me.
And thou shalt *set* **leave** it
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh thy God Elohim,
and *worship* **prostrate**
11 *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh thy God Elohim*:
And thou shalt *rejoice* **cheer** in every good *thing*
which *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
hath given unto thee, and unto thine house,
thou, and the *Levite* **Leviy**,
and the *stranger* **sojourner** that is among you.
12 When thou hast *made an end of* **finished off**
tithing all the tithes of thine *increase* **produce**
the third year, which is the year of tithing,
and hast given it unto the *Levite* **Leviy**,
the *stranger* **sojourner**,
the *fatherless* **orphan**, and the widow,
that they may eat within thy *gates* **portals**,
and be *filled* **satiated**;

DEUTERONOMY 25, 26 334

exeGesés companion BIBLE

from all your enemies all around,
in the land Yah Veh your Elohim gives you
— an inheritance to possess
— to wipe out the memorial of Amaleq
from under the heavens;
forget it not.

THE TORAH ON FIRSTLINGS AND TITHES

26

And so be it,
when you come in to the land
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you — an inheritance
and possess it and settle therein;
2 that you take of the first of all the fruit of the soil,
which you bring from the land
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you;
and put it in a basket and go to the place
Yah Veh your Elohim chooses to place his name:
3 and go to the priest being in those days
and say to him,
I tell this day to Yah Veh your Elohim,
that I come to the land
Yah Veh oathed to our fathers to give us.
4 — and the priest takes the basket from your hand
and sets it at the face of the sacrifice altar
of Yah Veh your Elohim.
5 And you answer at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim,
and say, My father was a destroyed Aramiy;
and he descended to Misrayim
and sojourned there with a few men
and became a goyim
— great, mighty and many:
6 and the Misrayim evilly entreated us
and humbled us and gave us hard service:
7 and we cried to Yah Veh Elohim of our fathers:
Yah Veh heard our voice and saw our humiliation
and our drudgery and our oppression:
8 and Yah Veh brought us from Misrayim
with a strong hand and with a spread arm
and with great awesomenesses
and with signs and with omens:
9 and he brought us to this place
and gave us this land
— a land flowing with milk and honey:
10 and now, behold,
I bring the firstlings of the fruit of the soil,
which you, O Yah Veh, give me:
and leave it at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim
and prostrate at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim:
11 and cheer in all the good Yah Veh your Elohim
gives you and your house
— you and the Leviy and the sojourner among you.
12 When you finish off
tithing all the tithes of your produce of the third year
— the year of tithing
and give to the Leviy, the sojourner,
the orphan and the widow,
that they eat inside your portals and satiate:

DEUTERONOMY 26, 27

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

13 Then thou shalt say
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh thy God Elohim,
I have brought away burnt the hallowed things holies
out of mine house,
and also have given them unto the Levite Levi,
and unto the stranger sojourner,
to the fatherless orphan, and to the widow,
according to all thy commandments misvoth
which thou hast commanded misvahed me:
I have not transgressed trespassed
thy commandments misvoth,
neither have I forgotten them.

14 I have not eaten thereof in my mourning mischief,
neither have I taken burnt away ought thereof
for any unclean fouled use,
nor given ought thereof for the dead for them that died:
but I have hearkened
to the voice of the LORD Yah Veh my God Elohim,
and have done worked according to all
that thou hast commanded misvahed me.
Look down from thy holy habitation,
from heaven the heavens,
and bless thy people Israel Yisra El,
and the land soil which thou hast given us,
as thou swarest oatesth unto our fathers,
a land that floweth with milk and honey.

16 This day the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim
hath commanded misvahed thee
to do work these statutes and judgments:
thou shalt therefore keep guard and do work them
with all thine heart, and with all thy soul.

17 Thou hast avouched the LORD said this day
to be that Yah Veh become thy God Elohim,
and to walk in his ways, and to keep guard his statutes,
and his commandments misvoth, and his judgments,
and to hearken unto his voice:

18 And the LORD Yah Veh hath avouched said this day
to be that thou become his peculiar people,
as he hath promised worded unto thee,
and that thou shouldest
keep guard all his commandments misvoth;

19 And to make give thee most high
above all nations goyim which he hath made worked,
in praise halal, and in name, and in honour adornment;
and that thou mayest be an holy people
unto the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim,
as he hath spoken worded.

THE STONES OF THE WORDS OF THE TORAH

27 And Moses Mosheh with the elders of Israel Yisra El
commanded misvahed the people, saying,
Keep Guard all the commandments misvoth
which I command misvah you this day.

2 And it shall be
on the day when ye shall pass over Jordan Yarden
unto the land
which the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim giveth thee,
that thou shalt set raise thee up great stones,
and plaister them with plaister:

3 And thou shalt write inscribe upon them
all the words of this law torah,
when thou art passed over,
that thou mayest go in unto the land
which the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim giveth thee,
a land that floweth with milk and honey;
as the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of thy fathers
hath promised worded unto thee.

4 Therefore it shall be
when ye be gone passed over Jordan Yarden,
that ye shall set up raise these stones,
which I command misvah you this day, in mount Ebal,
and thou shalt plaister them with plaister.

THE SACRIFICE ALTAR OF STONES

5 And there shalt thou build an a sacrifice altar
unto the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim,
an a sacrifice altar of stones:
thou shalt not lift up any iron tool upon them.

6 Thou shalt build the sacrifice altar
of the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim
of whole stones of shalom:

DEUTERONOMY 26, 27 335

exeGeses companion BIBLE

13 and you say, at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim,
I burn the holies from my house
and also give them to the Levite and to the sojourner,
to the orphan and to the widow,
according to all the misvoth you misvahed me:
I neither trespassed your misvoth nor forgot them:

14 I neither ate thereof in my mischief
nor burnt thereof for any foul use
nor given thereof for them who died:
but I hearkened to the voice of Yah Veh my Elohim
and worked according to all you misvahed me.

15 Look down from your holy habitation
— from the heavens
and bless your people Yisra El
and the soil you give us
as you oathed to our fathers
— a land flowing with milk and honey.

16 This day Yah Veh your Elohim
misvahs you to work these statutes and judgments:
and guard and work them
with all your heart and with all your soul.

17 You say this day
for Yah Veh to become your Elohim
and to walk in his ways;
and to guard his statutes
and his misvoth and his judgments;
and to hearken to his voice.

18 And Yah Veh says this day
for you to become his peculiar people,
as he worded to you:
and to guard all his misvoth;
and gives that you become most high
above all goyim he worked
— in halal and in name and in adornment;
to become a holy people to Yah Veh your Elohim,
as he worded.

THE STONES OF THE WORDS OF THE TORAH

27 And Mosheh and the elders of Yisra El
misvah the people, saying,
Guard all the misvoth I misvah you this day.

2 And so be it,
on the day you pass over Yarden
to the land Yah Veh your Elohim gives you,
raise great stones and plaster them with plaster:
and in passing over,
inscribe on them all the words of this torah,
as you go to the land Yah Veh your Elohim gives you
— a land flowing with milk and honey;
as Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers worded to you.

4 And so be it, in passing over Yarden,
raise the stones I misvah you this day
in mount Ebal;
and plaster them with plaster.

THE SACRIFICE ALTAR OF STONES

5 And build there a sacrifice altar
to Yah Veh your Elohim
— a sacrifice altar of stones:
lift no iron on them:

6 build the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh your Elohim
of stones of shalom:

DEUTERONOMY 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and thou shalt offer burnt offerings **holocaust holocausts** thereon
 unto the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**:
 7 And thou shalt offer peace offerings **sacrifice shelamim**,
 and shalt eat there, and rejoice **cheer**
 before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**.
 8 And thou shalt write **inscribe** upon the stones
 all the words of this law very plainly **torah well explained**.
 9 And Moses **Mosheh** and the priests the **Leviym**
 spake **worded** unto all **Israel Yisra El**, saying,
 Take heed, and hearken, O **Israel Yisra El**;
 this day thou art become
 the people of the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**.
 10 Thou shalt therefore obey **hear** the voice
 of the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**,
 and do **work** his **commandments misvoth**
 and his statutes,
 which I **command misvah** thee this day.
THE TWELVE CURSES FROM MOUNT EBAL
 11 And Moses **Mosheh**
 charged **misvahed** the people the same day, saying,
 12 These shall stand upon mount Gerizim
 to bless the people,
 when ye are come **passed over Jordan Yarden**;
 Simeon **Shimon**, and Levi, and Judah **Yah Hudah**,
 and Issachar **Yissachar**, and Joseph **Yoseph**,
 and Benjamin **Ben Yamin**:
 13 And these shall stand upon mount Ebal
 to curse **for the abasement**;
 Reuben **Reu Ben**, Gad, and Asher,
 and Zebulun, Dan, and Naphtali.
 14 And the **Leviym** shall speak **answer**,
 and say unto all the men of **Israel Yisra El**
 with a loud **lifted** voice,
 15 Cursed be the man
 that maketh **worketh** any **graven sculptile** or molten **image**,
 an **abomination abhorrence** unto the LORD **Yah Veh**,
 the work of the hands of the **craftsman engraver**,
 and putteth it in a **secret place hideout**.
 And all the people shall answer and say, Amen.
 16 Cursed be he
 that **setteth light be abased** by his father or his mother.
 And all the people shall say, Amen.
 17 Cursed be he
 that removeth his **neighbour's landmark friend's border**.
 And all the people shall say, Amen.
 18 Cursed be he
 that maketh **causeth** the blind to **wander err inadvertently**
 out of the way.
 And all the people shall say, Amen.
 19 Cursed be he
 that **perverteth deviateth** the judgment
 of the **stranger sojourner**,
fatherless orphan, and widow.
 And all the people shall say, Amen.
 20 Cursed be he
 that lieth with his father's **wife woman**;
 because he **uncovereth exposeth** his father's **skirt border**.
 And all the people shall say, Amen.
 21 Cursed be he
 that lieth with any **manner of beast animal**.
 And all the people shall say, Amen.
 22 Cursed be he
 that lieth with his sister,
 the daughter of his father, or the daughter of his mother.
 And all the people shall say, Amen.
 23 Cursed be he
 that lieth with his **mother** in law.
 And all the people shall say, Amen.
 24 Cursed be he
 that smiteth his **neighbour secretly friend covertly**.
 And all the people shall say, Amen.

DEUTERONOMY 27 336

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and holocaust holocausts
 to Yah Veh your Elohim thereon:
 7 and sacrifice shelamim
 and eat there
 and cheer at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim.
 8 And on the stones,
 inscribe all the words of this torah well explained.
 9 And Mosheh and the priests the Leviym
 word to all Yisra El, saying,
 Heed and hearken, O Yisra El;
 this day
 you become the people of Yah Veh your Elohim:
 10 and hear the voice of Yah Veh your Elohim
 and work his misvoth and his statutes,
 which I misvah you this day.
THE TWELVE CURSES FROM MOUNT EBAL
 11 And that day,
 Mosheh misvahs the people, saying,
 12 Stand these on mount Gerizim to bless the people
 when you pass over Yarden:
 Shimon and Levi and Yah Hudah
 and Yissachar and Yoseph and Ben Yamin.
 13 And stand these on mount Ebal for the abasement:
 Reu Ben, Gad and Asher and Zebulun,
 Dan and Naphtali.
 14 And the Leviym answer with lifted voice
 and say to all the men of Yisra El,
 15 Cursed is the man
 who works any sculptile or molten
 — an abhorrence to Yah Veh
 the work of the hands of the engraver,
 and puts it in a hideout.
 16 And all the people answer, and say, Amen!
 Cursed
 he who is abased by his father or his mother.
 — and all the people say, Amen.
 17 Cursed
 he who removes the border of his friend.
 — and all the people say, Amen.
 18 Cursed
 he who causes the blind
 to err inadvertently from the way.
 — and all the people say, Amen.
 19 Cursed
 he who deviates the judgment of the sojourner,
 orphan and widow.
 — and all the people say, Amen.
 20 Cursed
 he who lies with the woman of his father;
 because he exposes the border of his father.
 — and all the people say, Amen.
 21 Cursed
 he who lies with any animal.
 — and all the people say, Amen.
 22 Cursed
 he who lies with his sister,
 the daughter of his father
 or the daughter of his mother.
 — and all the people say, Amen.
 23 Cursed
 he who lies with his in law.
 — and all the people say, Amen.
 24 Cursed
 he who covertly smites his friend.
 — and all the people say, Amen.

DEUTERONOMY 27, 28

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 25 Cursed be he
that taketh **reward a bribe**
to *slay* **smite** an innocent *person* **soul**.
And all the people shall say, Amen.
- 26 Cursed be he
that *confirmeth* **raiseth** not
all the words of this *law* **torah** to *do* **work** them.
And all the people shall say, Amen.

THE BLESSINGS OF OBEDIENCE

- 28** And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
if **in hearkening**, thou shalt hearken *diligently*
unto the voice of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
to *observe* **guard** and to *do* **work**
all his *commandments* **misvoth**
which I *command* **misvah** thee this day,
that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
will set **shall give** thee on **most** high
above all *nations* **goyim** of the earth:
2 And all these blessings shall come on thee,
and overtake thee,
if thou shalt hearken
unto the voice of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**.
3 Blessed shalt thou be in the city,
and blessed shalt thou be in the field.
4 Blessed shall be the fruit of thy *body* **belly**,
and the fruit of thy *ground* **soil**,
and the fruit of thy *cattle* **animals**,
the *increase* **fetus** of thy *kine* **yoke**,
and the *flocks* **riches** of thy *sheep* **flocks**.
5 Blessed shall be thy basket and thy *store* **doughboard**.
6 Blessed shalt thou be when thou comest in,
and blessed shalt thou be when thou goest out.
7 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** shall *cause* **give** thine enemies
that rise up against thee
to be smitten *before* **at** thy face:
they shall come out against thee one way,
and flee *before* **thee** **thy face** seven ways.
8 *The LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall *command* **misvah** the blessing upon thee
in thy *storehouses* **ingatherings**,
and in all that thou *settest* **spreadest** thine hand *unto*;
and he shall bless thee in the land
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** giveth thee.
9 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** shall *establish* **raise** thee
an holy people unto himself,
as he hath *sworn* **oathed** unto thee,
if thou shalt *keep* **guard** the *commandments* **misvoth**
of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** and walk in his ways.
10 And all people of the earth shall see
that *thou art called by the name of the LORD*
that the name of Yah Veh be called upon thee;
and they shall *be afraid of* **awe** thee.
11 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall *make* **overflow** thee *plenteous* in goods,
in the fruit of thy *body* **belly**,
and in the fruit of thy *cattle* **animals**,
and in the fruit of thy *ground* **soil**,
in the *land* **soil**
which *the LORD* **sware** **Yah Veh oathed** unto thy fathers
to give thee.
12 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** shall open unto thee
his good treasure,
the *heaven* **heavens**
to give the rain unto thy land in his *season* **time**,
and to bless all the work of thine hand:
and thou shalt lend unto many *nations* **goyim**,
and thou shalt not borrow.
13 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall *make* **give** thee the head,
and not the tail;
and thou shalt be above only,
and thou shalt not be *beneath* **downward**;
if that thou hearken unto the *commandments* **misvoth**
of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
which I *command* **misvah** thee this day,
to *observe* **guard** and to *do* **work** them:
14 And thou shalt not *go* **turn** aside from any of the words
which I *command* **misvah** thee this day,
to the right *hand*, or to the left,
to go after other *gods* **elohim** to serve them.

DEUTERONOMY 27, 28 337

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 25 Cursed
he who takes a bribe to smite an innocent soul.
— and all the people say, Amen.
- 26 Cursed
he who raises not all the words of this torah
to work them.
— and all the people say, Amen.

THE BLESSINGS OF OBEDIENCE

- 28** And so be it, if in hearkening,
you hearken to the voice of Yah Veh your Elohim,
to guard and to work all his misvoth
which I misvah you this day,
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you
— most high above all goyim of the earth:
2 and all these blessings come on you
and overtake you;
because you hearken
to the voice of Yah Veh your Elohim.
3 Blessed, you in the city
and blessed, you in the field;
4 blessed, the fruit of your belly
and the fruit of your soil;
and the fruit of your animals
— the fetus of your yoke and the riches of your flocks;
5 blessed, your basket and your doughboard:
6 blessed in your coming and blessed in your going.
7 Yah Veh gives your enemies who rise against you
— smitten at your face:
they come against you one way
and flee your face seven ways.
8 Yah Veh misvahs blessing on you
in your ingatherings
and in all you spread your hand to;
and blesses you in the land
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you.
9 Yah Veh raises you — a holy people to himself,
as he oathed to you,
when you guard the misvoth of Yah Veh your Elohim
and walk in his ways:
10 and all people of the earth see
the name of Yah Veh called upon you;
and they awe you:
11 and Yah Veh overflows you in goods
— in the fruit of your belly
and in the fruit of your animals
and in the fruit of your soil
— the soil Yah Veh oathed to your fathers
to give you.
12 Yah Veh opens his good treasure to you
— the heavens to give the rain to your land in its time
and to bless all the work of your hand:
and you lend to many goyim and you borrow not.
13 And Yah Veh gives you the head
and not the tail;
and you become only upward
and you never become downward;
when you hearken to the misvoth
of Yah Veh your Elohim,
which I misvah you this day to guard and to work:
14 and turn not aside from any of the words
I misvah you this day
— right or left,
to go after other elohim to serve them.

DEUTERONOMY 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE CURSINGS OF DISOBEDIENCE

15 But **so be** it shall come to pass,
if thou wilt **shalt** not hearken
unto the voice of the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**,
to observe **guard** to do **work**
all his **commandments misvoth** and his statutes
which I **command misvah** thee this day;
that all these **curse abasements** shall come upon thee,
and overtake thee:

16 Cursed shalt thou be in the city,
and cursed shalt thou be in the field.

17 Cursed shall be thy basket and thy **store doughboard**.

18 Cursed shall be the fruit of thy **body belly**,
and the fruit of thy **land soil**,
the **increase fetus** of thy **kine yoke**,
and the **flocks riches** of thy **sheep flocks**.

19 Cursed shalt thou be when thou comest in,
and cursed shalt thou be when thou goest out.

20 The **LORD Yah Veh** shall send upon thee cursing,
vexation confusion, and rebuke,
in all that thou **settest spreadest** thine hand unto
for to do **work**,
until thou be **destroyed desolated**,
and until thou **perish quickly destruct suddenly**;
because **at the face**
of the **wickedness evil** of thy **doings exploits**,
whereby thou hast forsaken me.

21 The **LORD Yah Veh**
shall make the pestilence cleave unto thee,
until he have **consumed finished** thee **off**
from **off** the **land soil**,
whither thou goest to possess it.

22 The **LORD Yah Veh** shall smite thee
with a **consumption an emaciation**,
and with a fever, and with an inflammation,
and with **an extreme burning a fevered fever**,
and with the sword,
and with blasting, and with **mildew palegreen**;
and they shall pursue thee until thou **perish destruct**.

23 And thy **heaven that is heavens** over thy head
shall be **brass copper**,
and the earth that is under thee shall be iron.

24 The **LORD Yah Veh** shall **make give** the rain of thy land
powder and dust:
from **heaven the heavens**
shall it **come down descend** upon thee,
until thou be **destroyed desolated**.

25 The **LORD Yah Veh** shall **cause give** thee to be smitten
before at the face of thine enemies:
thou shalt go out one way against them,
and flee seven ways **before them from their face**:
and shalt be removed
into all the **kingdoms sovereigndoms** of the earth.

26 And thy carcase shall be **meat for food**
unto all **fowls flyers** of the **air heavens**,
and unto the **beasts animals** of the earth,
and no man shall **fray cause** them away **to tremble**.

27 The **LORD will Yah Veh shall** smite thee
with the **botch ulcer** of **Egypt Misrayim**,
and with the **emerods hemorrhoids**,
and with the **scab scurvy**, and with the itch,
whereof thou canst not be healed.

28 The **LORD Yah Veh** shall smite thee
with **madness insanity**, and blindness,
and **astonishment consternation** of heart:

29 And thou shalt grope at **noonday noon**,
as the blind gropeth in darkness,
and thou shalt not prosper in thy ways:
and thou shalt be only
oppressed and **spoiled evermore stripped all days**,
and no man shall save thee.

30 Thou shalt betroth a **wife woman**,
and another man shall **lie with rape** her:
thou shalt build an house,
and thou shalt not **dwell settle** therein:
thou shalt plant a vineyard,
and shalt not **gather the grapes pluck** thereof.

31 Thine ox shall be **slain slaughtered**
before in front of thine eyes,

DEUTERONOMY 28 338

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE CURSINGS OF DISOBEDIENCE

15 And so be it, if you hearken not
to the voice of Yah Veh your Elohim
— to guard to work all his misvoth and his statutes
which I misvah you this day,
that all these abasements come on you
and overtake you:

16 you, cursed in the city
and you, cursed in the field:

17 cursed, your basket and your doughboard.

18 cursed, the fruit of your belly
and the fruit of your soil;
the fetus of your yoke
and the riches of your flocks:

19 cursed in your coming and cursed in your going.

20 Yah Veh sends on you
cursing, confusion and rebuke,
in all you spread your hand to work,
until you become desolated
and until you suddenly destruct
at the face of the evil of your exploits
whereby you forsake me.

21 Yah Veh adheres the pestilence to you,
until he finishes you off from the soil
you go to possess.

22 Yah Veh smites you with an emaciation
and with a fever and with an inflammation
and with a fevered fever and with the sword
and with blasting and with palegreen;
and they pursue you until you destruct:
and your heavens over your head become copper
and the earth under you becomes iron.

23 Yah Veh gives the rain of your land
as powder and dust:
to descend on you from the heavens
until you desolate:

24 Yah Veh gives you,
smitten at the face of your enemies:
you go against them one way
and flee their face seven ways:
— removed into all the sovereigndoms of the earth.

25 And your carcase becomes food
for all flyers of the heavens
and for the animals of the earth
and no man trembles them.

26 Yah Veh smites you with the ulcer of Misrayim
and with the hemorrhoids
and with the scurvy and with the itch
whereof you cannot be healed.

27 Yah Veh smites you with insanity and blindness
and consternation of heart:
and at noon,
you grope in darkness as the blind grope;
and you prosper not in your ways:
and you become only oppressed and stripped all days
and no man saves you.

28 You betroth a woman and another man rapes her;
you build a house and you settle not therein;
you plant a vineyard and pluck not thereof:
your ox, slaughtered in front of your eyes

DEUTERONOMY 28

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and thou shalt not eat thereof;
 thine ass **he burro** shall be *violently taken away* **stripped**
 from *before* thy face,
 and shall not be *restored* **returned** to thee:
 thy *sheep* **flocks** shall be given unto thine enemies,
 and thou shalt have none to *rescue* **save** them.
 32 Thy sons and thy daughters
 shall be given unto another people,
 and thine eyes shall *look* **see**,
 and fail *with longing* for them all the day long;
 and there shall be no *might* **el** in thine hand.
 33 The fruit of thy *land* **soil**, and all thy labours,
 shall a *nation* **people** which thou knowest not eat up;
 and thou shalt be only oppressed and crushed
always **all days**:
 34 So that thou shalt be *mad* **insane**
 for the *sight* **visage** of thine eyes which thou shalt see.
 35 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall smite thee
 in the knees, and in the legs,
 with a *sore* **botch** **an evil ulcer** that cannot be healed,
 from the sole of thy foot
 unto *the top of thy head* **thy scalp**.
 36 The *LORD* **Yah Veh**
 shall *bring* **carry** thee, and thy *king* **sovereign**
 which thou shalt *set* **raise** over thee,
 unto a *nation* **goyim**
 which neither thou nor thy fathers have known;
 and there shalt thou serve other *gods* **elohim**,
wood **timber** and stone.
 37 And thou shalt become *an astonishment* **a desolation**,
 a proverb, and a *byword* **gibe**, among all *nations* **people**
 whither *the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall *lead* **drive** thee.
 38 Thou shalt carry much seed out into the field,
 and shalt gather but little in;
 for the locust shall consume it.
 39 Thou shalt plant vineyards, and *dress* **servest** them,
 but shalt neither drink of the wine, nor gather the grapes;
 for the *worms* **maggots** shall eat them.
 40 Thou shalt have *olive trees* **olives**
 throughout all thy *coasts* **borders**,
 but thou shalt not anoint *thyself* with the oil;
 for thine olive shall *cast his fruit* **slip**.
 41 Thou shalt *beget* **birth** sons and daughters,
 but thou shalt not enjoy them;
 for they shall go into captivity.
 42 All thy trees and fruit of thy *land* **soil**
 shall the locust *consume* **possess**.
 43 The *stranger that is within thee* **sojourner in thy midst**
 shall *get up above thee* **ascend**
very high **upward and upward**;
 and thou shalt *come down* **descend**
very low **downward and downward**.
 44 He shall lend to thee, and thou shalt not lend to him:
 he shall be the head, and thou shalt be the tail.
 45 Moreover all these *curses* **abasements**
 shall come upon thee,
 and shall pursue thee, and overtake thee,
 till thou be *destroyed* **desolated**;
 because thou hearkenedst not
 unto the voice of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
 to *keep* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**
 and his statutes which he *commanded* **misvahed** thee:
 46 And they shall be upon thee
 for a sign and for a *wonder* **an omen**,
 and upon thy seed *for ever* **eternally**.
 47 Because thou servedst not
the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
 with *joyfulness* **cheerfulness**,
 and with *gladness* **goodness** of heart,
 for the abundance of all *things*;
 48 Therefore shalt thou serve thine enemies
 which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall send against thee,
 in *hunger* **famine**, and in thirst, and in nakedness,
 and in want of all *things*:
 and he shall *put* **give** a yoke of iron upon thy neck,
 until he have *destroyed* **desolated** thee.
 49 *The LORD* **Yah Veh**
 shall *bring* **lift** a *nation* **goyim** against thee from far,
 from the end of the earth, *as swift* as the eagle flieth;

DEUTERONOMY 28 339

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and you not eat thereof;
 your he burro, stripped at your face
 — never to return to you;
 your flocks, given to your enemies
 and no one saves them:
 32 your sons and your daughters,
 given to another people;
 and your eyes see,
 and fail for them all the day long;
 and there *is* no *el* in your hand.
 33 The fruit of your soil and all your labours,
 eaten by a people you know not;
 and you become
 only oppressed and crushed all days:
 so that you become insane
 because of the visage your eyes see.
 34 Yah Veh smites you in the knees and in the legs,
 with an evil ulcer that cannot be healed,
 from the sole of your foot to your scalp:
 Yah Veh carries you
 and the sovereign you raise over you,
 to a goyim
 whom neither you nor your fathers know;
 and there you serve other elohim
 — timber and stone.
 37 And you become a desolation,
 a proverb and a gibe,
 among all people Yah Veh drives you.
 38 You carry much seed to the field
 but ingather little;
 for the locust consumes it:
 39 you plant vineyards and serve them,
 but neither drink the wine nor gather the grapes;
 for the maggots eat them:
 40 you have olives throughout all your borders,
 but you anoint not with the oil;
 for your olive slips:
 41 you birth sons and daughters but enjoy them not;
 for they go to captivity:
 42 all your trees and fruit of your soil
 the locust possesses.
 43 The sojourner in your midst
 ascends upward and upward;
 and you descend downward and downward.
 44 He lends to you and you lend not to him:
 he becomes the head and you become the tail.
 45 And all these abasements come upon you
 and pursue you and overtake you
 until you become desolated
 — because you hearken not
 to the voice of Yah Veh your Elohim
 — to guard his misvoth and his statutes
 which he misvahed you:
 46 and they become for a sign and for an omen
 on you and on your seed eternally:
 47 because you serve not Yah Veh your Elohim
 with cheerfulness and with goodness of heart
 for the abundance of all
 — you serve the enemies
 Yah Veh sends against you
 in famine and in thirst and in nakedness
 and in want of all:
 and he gives a yoke of iron upon your neck,
 until he desolates you:
 49 Yah Veh lifts a goyim against you from afar
 — from the end of the earth, as the eagle flies;

DEUTERONOMY 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

a nation **goyim**
 whose tongue thou shalt not *understand* **hear**;
 50 A nation **goyim** of fierce countenance **strong of face**,
 which shall not regard **exalt**
 the person **face** of the *old aged*,
 nor *shew favour* **grant charism** to the *young lads*:
 51 And he shall eat the fruit of thy *cattle* **animals**,
 and the fruit of thy *land* **soil**,
 until thou be *destroyed* **desolated**:
 which also **and there** shall not leave thee **survive**
 either *corn* **crop**, *wine* **juice**, or oil,
 or the *increase* **fetus** of thy *kine* **yoke**,
 or *flocks* **riches** of thy *sheep* **flocks**,
 until he have destroyed thee.
 52 And he shall *besiege* **tribulate** thee
 in all thy *gates* **portals**,
 until thy high and *fenced* **fortified** walls
 come down **topple**,
 wherein thou *trustedst* **confidest**, throughout all thy land:
 and he shall *besiege* **tribulate** thee in all thy *gates* **portals**
 throughout all thy land,
 which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
 hath given thee.
 53 And thou shalt eat the fruit of thine own *body* **belly**,
 the flesh of thy sons and of thy daughters,
 which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
 hath given thee,
 in the siege, and in the *straitness* **distress**,
 wherewith thine enemies shall distress thee:
 54 So that the man that is tender among you,
 and very **mighty** delicate,
 his eye shall be evil toward his brother,
 and toward the *wife* **woman** of his bosom,
 and toward the remnant of his *children* **sons**
 which he shall leave **remain**:
 55 So that he *will* **shall** not give to any **one** of them
 of the flesh of his *children* **sons** whom he shall eat:
 because he hath *nothing left* **naught to survive** him
 in the siege, and in the *straitness* **distress**,
 wherewith thine enemies shall distress thee
 in all thy *gates* **portals**.
 56 The tender and delicate *woman* among you,
 which *would* **should** not *adventure* **test**
 to set the sole of her foot upon the *ground* **earth**
 for delicateness and tenderness,
 her eye shall be evil
 toward the *husband* **man** of her bosom,
 and toward her son, and toward her daughter,
 57 And toward her *young one* **fetus**
 that cometh out from between her feet,
 and toward her *children* **sons** which she shall *bear* **birth**:
 for she shall eat them for *want* **lack** of all *things*
secretly **covertly** in the siege and *straitness* **distress**,
 wherewith thine enemy shall distress thee
 in thy *gates* **portals**.
 58 If thou *wilt* **shalt** not *observe* **guard**
 to *do* **work** all the words of this *law* **torah**
 that are *written* **inscribed** in this *book* **scroll**,
 that thou mayest *fear* **awe**
 this *glorious* **honoured** and *terrible* **awesome** name,
THE LORD THY GOD **YAH VEH THY ELOHIM**;
 59 Then the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
will **shall** make thy *plagues* **wonderful** **strokes marvelous**,
 and the *plagues* **strokes** of thy seed,
 even great *plagues* **strokes**,
 and of long *continuance* — **trustworthy**,
 and sore **evil** sicknesses,
 and of long *continuance* — **trustworthy**.
 60 Moreover he *will* **bring** **shall restore** upon thee
 all the diseases of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
 which thou wast afraid of **at their face**;
 and they shall *cleave* **adhere** unto thee.
 61 Also every sickness, and every *plague* **stroke**,
 which is not *written* **inscribed**
 in the *book* **scroll** of this *law* **torah**,
 them *will* the *LORD* **shall** *Yah Veh*
bring **ascend** upon thee,
 until thou be *destroyed* **desolated**.
 62 And ye shall be *left* **survive** few **men** in number,

DEUTERONOMY 28 340

exeGesés companion BIBLE

a goyim whose tongue you hear not;
 50 a goyim strong of face
 who neither exalts the face of the aged
 nor grants charism to the lads:
 51 and he eats the fruit of your animals
 and the fruit of your soil until you desolate:
 and no crop survives — juice or oil
 or the fetus of your yoke or the riches of your flocks
 until he destroys you:
 52 and he tribulates you in all your portals
 until your high and fortified walls topple
 — wherein you confided, throughout all your land:
 and he tribulates you in all your portals
 throughout all the land
 Yah Veh your Elohim gives you:
 53 and you eat the fruit of your own belly
 — the flesh of your sons and of your daughters;
 whom Yah Veh your Elohim gives you
 in the siege and in the distress,
 wherewith your enemies distress you:
 54 so that the man among you
 — tender and mighty delicate,
 his eye becomes evil toward his brother
 and toward the woman of his bosom
 and toward the remnant of his sons who remain:
 55 so that he gives not one of them
 of the flesh of his sons whom he eats:
 because he has none to survive him
 in the siege and in the distress,
 wherewith your enemies distress you
 in all your portals.
 56 The tender and delicate among you,
 who tests not to set the sole of her foot on the earth
 because of delicateness and tenderness,
 her eye becomes evil toward the man of her bosom
 and toward her son and toward her daughter
 and toward her fetus coming from between her feet
 and toward the sons she births:
 57 for she eats them covertly
 for lack of all in the siege and distress,
 wherewith your enemies distress you in your portals.
 58 If you guard not to work
 all the words of this torah inscribed in this scroll,
 to awe this honored and awesome name,
 YAH VEH YOUR ELOHIM;
 59 then Yah Veh makes your strokes marvelous
 and the strokes of your seed,
 great strokes and trustworthy;
 and evil sicknesses, trustworthy:
 60 and he restores on you all the diseases of Misrayim
 you feared at their face;
 and they adhere to you:
 61 also every sickness and every stroke
 not inscribed in the scroll of this torah,
 Yah Veh ascends them on you until you desolate:
 62 and you survive, few men in number,

DEUTERONOMY 28, 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

whereas ye were as the stars of heaven **the heavens**
 for *multitude* **abundance**;
 because thou *wouldest* **heardest** not obey the voice
 of the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**.
 63 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
 that as the **LORD Yah Veh** rejoiced over you
 to do you good **well—please you**,
 and to multiply **abound** you;
 so the **LORD will Yah Veh** shall rejoice over you
 to destroy you,
 and to bring **desolate** you to nought;
 and ye shall be *plucked* **uprooted** from off the *land* **soil**
 whither thou goest to possess it.
 64 And the **LORD Yah Veh** shall scatter thee
 among all people,
 from the *one* end of the earth
 even unto the *other* **end of the earth**;
 and there thou shalt serve other *gods* **elohim**,
 which neither thou nor thy fathers have known,
 even wood **timber** and stone.
 65 And among these *nations* **goyim**
 shalt thou *find* **no ease** **not blink**,
 neither shall the sole of thy foot *have* rest:
 but the **LORD Yah Veh** shall give thee there
 a *trembling* **quivering** heart,
 and failing of eyes, and sorrow of *mind* **soul**:
 66 And thy life shall *hang in doubt* **be in suspense**
 before **in front** of thee;
 and thou shalt fear day and night,
 and shalt *none* **assurance** **have no trust** of thy life:
 In the morning thou shalt say,
 67 *Would God* **O that it be given that** it were even!
 and at even thou shalt say,
would God **O that it be given that** it were morning!
 for the fear of thine heart wherewith thou shalt fear,
 and for the *sight* **vision** of thine eyes which thou shalt see.
 68 And the **LORD Yah Veh** shall *bring* **return** thee
 into *Egypt* **Misrayim** again with ships,
 by the way whereof I *spake* **said** unto thee,
 Thou shalt see it *no more* **not** again:
 and there ye shall be ye sold unto your enemies
 for *bondmen* **servants** and *bondwomen* **maids**,
 and no man shall *buy* **chattel** you.

29

YAH VEH CUTS ANOTHER COVENANT

These are the words of the covenant,
 which the **LORD Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**
 to make **cut** with the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
 in the land of Moab,
 beside the covenant which he *made* **cut**
 with them in Horeb.
 2 And *Moses* **Mosheh** called unto all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 and said unto them, Ye have seen all
 that the **LORD did Yah Veh** worked **before in fron** of your eyes
 in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim** unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
 and unto all his servants, and unto all his land;
 3 The great *temptations* **testings**
 which thine eyes have seen,
 the signs, and those great *miracles* **omens**:
 4 Yet the **LORD Yah Veh** hath not given you
 an heart to perceive, and eyes to see, and ears to hear,
 unto this day.
 5 And I have *led* **carried** you forty years in the wilderness:
 your clothes are not *waxen* **old worn out** upon you,
 and thy shoe is not *waxen* **old worn out** upon thy foot.
 6 Ye have not eaten bread,
 neither have ye drunk wine or *strong drink* **intoxicants**:
 that ye might know
 that *I am the* **LORD I — Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**.
 7 And when ye came unto this place,
Sihon **Sichon** the *king* **sovereign** of Heshbon,
 and Og the *king* **sovereign** of Bashan,
 came out *against* **confronting** us unto *battle* **war**,
 and we smote them:
 8 And we took their land, and gave it for an inheritance
 unto the *Reubenites* **Reu Beniy** and to the *Gadites* **Gadiy**,
 and to the half *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Shiy**.
 9 **Keep Guard** therefore the words of this covenant,
 and *do* **work** them,

DEUTERONOMY 28, 29 341

exeGesés companion BIBLE

whereas you were as the stars of the heavens
 for abundance;
 all because you hear not the voice
 of Yah Veh your Elohim.
 63 And so be it,
 as Yah Veh rejoiced over you
 to well—please you and to abound you;
 thus Yah Veh rejoices over you
 to destroy you and to desolate you;
 64 and uproot you from the soil you go to possess:
 and Yah Veh scatters you among all people
 from the end of the earth to the end of the earth;
 and there you serve other elohim
 which neither you nor your fathers know
 — timber and stone.
 65 And among these goyim
 you neither blink nor rest the sole of your foot:
 and there Yah Veh gives you a quivering heart
 and failing of eyes and sorrow of soul:
 66 and suspends your life in front of you;
 and you fear day and night
 and trust not in your life:
 67 in the morning you say,
 O to give that it become evening!
 and at evening you say,
 O to give that it become morning!
 — for the fear of your heart that you fear
 and for the vision of your eyes that you see.
 68 And Yah Veh returns you to Misrayim with ships
 by the way I said to you,
 You see it never again:
 and there you sell yourselves to your enemies
 for servants and maids
 — and no man chattels you.

YAH VEH CUTS ANOTHER COVENANT

29

These *are* the words of the covenant,
 Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh
 to cut with the sons of Yisra El in the land of Moab
 — beside the covenant he cut with them in Horeb:
 2 and Mosheh calls all Yisra El and says to them,
 You saw all Yah Veh worked in front of your eyes
 in the land of Misrayim
 — to Paroh and to all his servants and to all his land
 3 — the great testings your eyes saw,
 the signs and those great omens:
 4 yet Yah Veh gives you not
 a heart to perceive and eyes to see and ears to hear
 to this day:
 5 and I carried you forty years in the wilderness:
 neither your clothes wore out on you,
 nor shoe wore out on your foot:
 6 neither ate you bread,
 nor drank you wine or intoxicants:
 so that you know I — Yah Veh your Elohim.
 7 And you came to this place,
 Sihon the sovereign of Heshbon
 and Og the sovereign of Bashan came
 confronting us to war
 — and we smote them:
 8 and we took their land and gave it — an inheritance
 to the Reu Beniy and to the Gadiy
 and to the half scion of Menash Shehiy.
 9 Guard the words of this covenant and work them,

DEUTERONOMY 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that ye may prosper **comprehend** in all that ye *do work*.
 10 Ye stand this day all of you
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh your God Elohim;
 your *captains heads* of your *tribes scions*,
 your *elders*, and your *officers*,
 with all the men of *Israel Yisra El*,
 11 Your *little ones toddlers*, your *wives women*,
 and thy *stranger sojourner* that is *in within* thy camp,
 from the hewer of thy **wood timber**
 unto the drawer of thy water:
 12 That thou shouldst *enter pass* into covenant
 with *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*,
 and into his oath,
 which *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*
maketh cutteth with thee this day:
 13 That he may *establish raise* thee to day
 for a people unto himself,
 and that he may be unto thee a *God — Elohim*,
 as he hath *said worded* unto thee,
 and as he hath *sworn oathed* unto thy fathers,
 to Abraham, to *Isaac Yischaq*, and to *Jacob Yaaqov*.
 14 Neither with you only
 do I *make cut* this covenant and this oath;
 15 But with him that standeth here with us this day
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh our God Elohim,
 and also with him that is not here with us this day:
 16 (For ye know how we have *dwelt settled*
 in the land of *Egypt Misrayim*;
 and how we came *through midst* the *nations goyim*
 which ye passed by;
 17 And ye have seen their *abominations abhorrences*,
 and their idols,
wood timber and stone, silver and gold,
 which were among them:)
 18 Lest there should be among you
 man, or woman, or family, or *tribe scion*,
 whose heart turneth away this day
from the LORD the face of Yah Veh our God Elohim,
 to go and serve the *gods elohim* of these *nations goyim*;
 a root that beareth *gall the fruit of rosh* and wormwood;
 19 And it *come to pass becometh*,
 when he heareth the words of this *curse oath*,
 that he bless himself in his heart, saying,
 I shall have *peace shalom*,
 though I walk in the *imagination warp* of mine heart,
 to *add drunkenness scrape together satiation* to thirst:
 20 *The LORD Yah Veh* will not *spare forgive* him,
 but then the *anger wrath* of the *LORD Yah Veh*
 and his jealousy shall *smoke fume* against that man,
 and all the *curses oaths*
 that are *written inscribed* in this *book scroll*
 shall *lie crouch* upon him,
 and *the LORD Yah Veh* shall *blot wipe* out his name
 from under *heaven the heavens*.
 21 And *the LORD Yah Veh* shall separate him unto evil
 out of all the *tribes scions* of *Israel Yisra El*,
 according to all the *curses oaths* of the covenant
 that are *written inscribed*
 in this *book scroll* of the *law torah*:
 22 So that the *latter* generation *to come*
 of your *children sons* that shall *rise up* after you,
 and the stranger that shall come from a far land,
 shall say, when they see the *plagues strokes* of that land,
 and the sicknesses
 which *the LORD Yah Veh* hath *laid stroked* upon it;
 23 And that the whole land thereof
 is *brimstone sulphur*, and salt, and burning,
 that it is not *sown seeded*, nor *beareth sprouteth*,
 nor any *grass groweth herbage ascendeth* therein,
 like the overthrow of
Sodom Sedom, and *Gomorrah Amorah*,
Admah, and *Zeboim Seboim*,
 which *the LORD overthrew Yah Veh overturned*
 in his *anger wrath*, and in his *wrath fury*:
 24 Even all *nations goyim* shall say,
 Wherefore hath *the LORD Yah Veh*
done worked thus unto this land?
what meaneth the heat of — this great anger fuming wrath?

DEUTERONOMY 29 342

exeGesés companion BIBLE

so that you comprehend all you work.
 10 You stand this day — all of you
 at the face of Yah Veh your Elohim:
 your heads of your scions,
 your elders and your officers,
 with all the men of Yisra El,
 your toddlers, your women,
 11 and the sojourner inside your camp
 — from the hewer of your timber
 to the drawer of your water:
 12 to pass the covenant of Yah Veh your Elohim
 and his oath,
 which Yah Veh your Elohim cuts with you this day
 — to raise you today, a people to himself;
 and that he become to you — Elohim
 — as he worded to you
 and as he oathed to your fathers
 — to Abraham, to Yischaq and to Yaaqov:
 14 and not with you only
 cut I this covenant and this oath;
 15 but with him who stands here with us this day
 at the face of Yah Veh our Elohim;
 and also with him who is not here with us this day:
 16 for you know
 how we settled in the land of Misrayim;
 and how we came midst the goyim
 whom you passed by;
 17 and you saw their abhorrences and their idols
 — timber and stone, silver and gold among them:
 18 lest there be among you
 man or woman or family or scion
 whose heart turns this day
 from the face of Yah Veh our Elohim,
 to go and serve the elohim of these goyim;
 lest there be among you
 a root that bears the fruit of rosh and wormwood.
 19 And so be it,
 he hears the words of this oath,
 and blesses himself in his heart,
 saying, I have shalom,
 though I walk in the warp of my heart,
 to scrape together the satiated with the thirsty:
 20 Yah Veh wills to not forgive him;
 for then the wrath and the jealousy of Yah Veh
 fumes against that man;
 and all the oaths inscribed in this scroll
 crouch upon him;
 and Yah Veh wipes his name
 from under the heavens:
 21 and Yah Veh separates him
 from all the scions of Yisra El
 unto evil,
 according to all the oaths of the covenant
 inscribed in this scroll of the torah:
 22 so that the latter generation
 of your sons who rise after you
 and the stranger who comes from a far land, say,
 — when they see the strokes of that land
 and the sicknesses Yah Veh strokes thereon
 23 — and the whole land thereof
 of sulphur and salt and burning
 — neither seeded nor sprouting
 nor any herbage ascending therein
 — as the overthrow
 of Sedom and Amorah, Admah and Seboim
 whom Yah Veh overturned
 in his wrath and in his fury
 — even all goyim say,
 24 Why works Yah Veh thus to this land?
 — this great fuming wrath?

DEUTERONOMY 29, 30

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

25 Then men shall say,
Because they have forsaken the covenant
of the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of their fathers,
which he *made* **cut** with them
when he brought them forth
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
26 For they went and served other *gods* **elohim**,
and *worshipped* **prostrated** to them,
gods **elohim** whom they knew not,
and whom he had not *given* **allotted** unto them:
27 And the *anger* **wrath** of the LORD **Yah Veh**
was kindled against this land,
to bring upon it all the *curses* **abasements**
that are *written* **inscribed** in this *book* **scroll**:
28 And the LORD *rooted* **Yah Veh uprooted** them
out of their *land* **soil** in *anger* **wrath**,
and in *wrath*, and in *great indignation* **rage**,
and cast them into another land, as it is this day.
29 The *secret things* **hidden** belong unto
the LORD **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**:
but those *things* which are *revealed* **exposed**
belong unto us and to our *children* **for ever sons eternally**,
that we may *do* **work** all the words of this *law* **torah**.

THE OPEN INVITATION OF YAH VEH

30 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
when all these *things* **words** are come upon thee,
the blessing and the *curse* **abasement**,
which I have *set before thee* **given at thy face**,
and thou shalt *call* **restore** them to *mind* **heart**
among all the *nations* **goyim**,
whither the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
hath driven thee,
2 And shalt return
unto the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
and shalt *obey* **hear** his voice
according to all that I *command* **misvah** thee this day,
thou and thy *children* **sons**,
with all thine heart, and with all thy soul;
3 That then the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
will **shall** turn thy captivity,
and *have compassion upon* **shall mercy** thee,
and *will* **shall** return and gather thee
from all the *nations* **goyim**,
whither the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
hath scattered thee.
4 If any of thine be driven out
unto the *outmost parts* **ends of heaven the heavens**,
from thence *will the LORD* **shall Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
gather thee,
and from thence *will* **shall** he *fetch* **take** thee:
5 And the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
will **shall** bring thee
into the land which thy fathers possessed,
and thou shalt possess it;
and he *will do thee good* **shall well—please thee**,
and *multiply* **abound** thee above thy fathers.
6 And the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
will **shall** circumcise thine heart,
and the heart of thy seed,
to love the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
with all thine heart, and with all thy soul,
that thou mayest live **for thy life**.
7 And the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
will put **shall give** all these *curses* **oaths**
upon thine enemies, and on them that hate thee,
which *persecuted* **pursued** thee.
8 And thou shalt return
and *obey* **hear** the voice of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and *do* **work** all his *commandments* **misvoth**
which I *command* **misvah** thee this day.
9 And the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
will make thee **plenteous shall overflow thee**
in every work of thine hand,
in the fruit of thy *body* **belly**,
and in the fruit of thy *cattle* **animals**,
and in the fruit of thy *land* **soil**, for good:
for the LORD **Yah Veh**
will again **shall return** to rejoice over thee for good,
as he rejoiced over thy fathers:

DEUTERONOMY 29, 30 343

exeGeses companion BIBLE

25 Then men say,
Because they forsake the covenant
of Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers,
which he cut with them
when he brought them from the land of Misrayim:
26 and they go and serve other elohim
and prostrate to them
— elohim they never knew
and whom he never allotted to them:
27 and Yah Veh kindles his wrath against this land
to bring thereon
all the abasements inscribed in this scroll:
28 and Yah Veh uproots them from their soil in wrath
— in wrath and in great rage
and casts them to another land, as this day.
29 The hidden *are* to Yah Veh our Elohim:
and the exposed *are* to us and to our sons eternally,
that we work all the words of this torah.

THE OPEN INVITATION OF YAH VEH

30 And so be it,
when all these words come on you
— the blessing and the abasement
that I give at your face;
and you restore them to heart among all the goyim
where Yah Veh your Elohim has driven you;
2 and you return to Yah Veh your Elohim
and hear his voice
according to all I misvah you this day
— you and your sons
with all your heart and with all your soul;
3 then Yah Veh your Elohim turns your captivity
and mercies you
and returns and gathers you from all the goyim
— wherever Yah Veh your Elohim scattered you:
4 and so be it,
if you are expelled to the ends of the heavens,
from thence Yah Veh your Elohim gathers you;
and from thence he takes you:
5 and Yah Veh your Elohim brings you
to possess the land your fathers possessed:
and he well—pleases you
and abounds you above your fathers:
6 and Yah Veh your Elohim
circumcises your heart and the heart of your seed
— to love Yah Veh your Elohim
with all your heart and with all your soul
for your life:
7 and Yah Veh your Elohim gives all these oaths
on your enemies and on them who hate you
— who pursue you.
8 And you return and hear the voice of Yah Veh
and work all his misvoth which I misvah you this day:
9 and Yah Veh your Elohim
overflows you in every work of your hand
— in the fruit of your belly
and in the fruit of your animals
and in the fruit of your soil, for good:
for Yah Veh returns to rejoice over you for good,
as he rejoiced over your fathers:

DEUTERONOMY 30, 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 If thou shalt hearken unto the voice
of the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**,
to keep **guard**
his *commandments* **misvoth** and his statutes
which are *written* **inscribed**
in this *book* **scroll** of the *law* **torah**,
and if thou turn unto the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**
with all thine heart, and with all thy soul.
11 For this *commandment* **misvah**
which I *command* **misvah** thee this day,
it is not *hidden from* **too marvelous** for thee,
neither is it far off.
12 It is not in *heaven* **the heavens**,
that thou *shouldest say* **saying**,
Who shall go up **ascend** for us to *heaven* **the heavens**,
and *bring* **take** it unto us,
that we may hear it, and *do* **work** it?
13 Neither is it beyond the sea,
that thou *shouldest say* **saying**,
Who shall go **pass** over the sea for us,
and *bring* **take** it unto us,
that we may hear it, and *do* **work** it?
14 But the word is very **mighty** nigh unto thee,
in thy mouth, and in thy heart,
that thou mayest *do* **work** it.

cp Romans 10:6—9

THE OFFER OF YAH VEH OF LIFE AND GOOD

15 See, I have *set before thee* **given at thy face** this day
life and good, and death and evil;
16 In that I *command* **misvah** thee this day
to love the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**,
to walk in his ways,
and to *keep* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**
and his statutes and his judgments,
that thou mayest live and *multiply* **increase**:
and the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim** shall bless thee
in the land whither thou goest to possess it.
17 But if thine heart turn *away*,
so that thou *wilt* **shalt** not hear,
but shalt be *drawn away* **driven**,
and *worship* **prostrate to** other *gods* **elohim**,
and serve them;
18 I *denounce* **tell** unto you this day,
that *in destructing*, ye shall *surely* **perish destruct**,
and that ye shall not
prolong your days upon the *land* **soil**,
whither thou passest over *Jordan* **Yarden**
to go to possess it.
19 I call *heaven* **the heavens** and earth
to *record* **witness** this day against you,
that I have *set before you* **given at your face**
life and death, blessing and *cursing* **abasement**:
therefore choose life,
that both thou and thy seed may live:
20 That thou mayest love
the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**,
and that thou mayest *obey* **hear** his voice,
and that thou mayest *cleave* **adhere** unto him:
for he is thy life, and the length of thy days:
that thou mayest *dwell* **settle** in the *land* **soil**
which the LORD *sware* **Yah Veh** *oathed* unto thy fathers,
to Abraham, to *Isaac* **Yischaq**, and to *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
to give them.

MOSHEH CALLS YAH SHUA

31 And *Moses* **Mosheh** went
and *spake* **worded** these words unto all *Israel* **Yisra El**.
2 And he said unto them,
I am a **son of** an hundred and twenty years *old* this day;
I can no more go out and come in:
also the LORD **Yah Veh** hath said unto me,
Thou shalt not go **pass** over this *Jordan* **Yarden**.
3 The LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**,
he *will go* **shall pass** over *before thee* **at thy face**,
and he *will destroy* **shall desolate** these *nations* **goyim**
from *before thee* **thy face**,
and thou shalt possess them:
and *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
he shall go over *before thee* **at thy face**,
as the LORD **Yah Veh** hath said **worded**.

DEUTERONOMY 30, 31 344

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 for you hearken
to the voice of Yah Veh your Elohim
— to guard his misvoth and his statutes
inscribed in this scroll of the torah:
for you turn to Yah Veh your Elohim
with all your heart and with all your soul.
11 For this misvah I misvah you this day,
is neither too marvelous for you, nor afar:
12 nor in the heavens, saying,
Who ascends the heavens and brings it to us,
to hear it and work it?
13 — nor beyond the sea, saying,
Who passes over the sea and brings it to us,
to hear it and work it?
14 But the word *is* mighty near you
— in your mouth and in your heart,
to work it.

cp Romans 10:6—9

THE OFFER OF YAH VEH OF LIFE AND GOOD

15 See, I give at your face this day
life and good and death and evil;
16 in that I misvah you this day
to love Yah Veh your Elohim,
to walk in his ways
and to guard his misvoth
and his statutes and his judgments,
so that you live and increase:
and Yah Veh your Elohim blesses you
in the land you go to possess.
17 And if you turn your heart so that you hear not;
and be driven to prostrate to other elohim
and to serve them;
18 I tell you this day,
that in destructing, you destruct;
and that you not prolong your days
on the soil you pass over Yarden to go to possess.
19 I call the heavens and earth
to witness this day against you,
that I give at your face
life and death, blessing and abasement:
choose life, so that both you and your seed live:
20 and that you love Yah Veh your Elohim
and that you hear his voice
and that you adhere to him:
for he *is* your life and your length of days:
and that you settle in the soil
Yah Veh oathed to give your fathers
— to Abraham, to Yischaq and to Yaaqov.

MOSHEH CALLS YAH SHUA

31 And Mosheh goes
and words these words to all Yisra El:
2 and he says to them,
I am a son of a hundred and twenty years this day;
I can no more go and come:
and Yah Veh said to me,
You pass not over this Yarden.
3 Yah Veh your Elohim
— he passes over at your face
and he desolates these goyim from your face
and you possess them:
Yah Shua — he goes over at your face,
as Yah Veh worded:

DEUTERONOMY 31

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 4 And the LORD **Yah Veh** shall *do work* unto them
as he *did worked* to *Sihon Sichon* and to *Og,*
kings sovereigns of the *Amorites Emoriy,*
and unto the land of them, whom he destroyed.
- 5 And the LORD **Yah Veh** shall give them up
before at your face,
that ye may *do work* unto them
according unto all the *commandments misvoth*
which I have *commanded misvahed* you.
- 6 *Be strong and of a good courage*
In strenthening, be strengthened,
fear not neither awe, nor be afraid of them awe their face:
for the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God Elohim,*
he it is that doth go with thee;
he *will shall* not *fail let loose* of thee,
nor forsake thee.
- 7 And Moses **Mosheh** called unto *Joshua Yah Shua,*
and said unto him in the *sight eyes* of all *Israel Yisra El,*
Be strong and of a good courage
In strenthening, be strengthened:
for thou *must shalt* go with this people unto the land
which the LORD **Yah Veh**
hath *sworn oathed* unto their fathers to give them;
and thou shalt cause them to inherit it.
- 8 And the LORD **Yah Veh,**
he it is that doth go *before thee at thy face;*
he *will shall* be with thee,
he *will shall* not *fail thee let thee loose,*
neither forsake thee:
fear awe not, neither be *dismayed terrified.*
- MOSHEH INSCRIBES THE TORAH**
- 9 And Moses wrote **Mosheh** inscribed this *law torah,*
and *delivered gave* it unto the priests the sons of Levi,
which bare the ark of the covenant of the LORD **Yah Veh,**
and unto all the elders of *Israel Yisra El.*
- 10 And Moses *commanded Mosheh misvahed* them,
saying, At the end of every seven years,
in the *solemnity season* of the year of release,
in the *feast celebration*
of *tabernacles Sukkoth/Brush Arbors,*
- 11 When all *Israel Yisra El* is come to *appear be seen*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh thy *God Elohim*
in the place which he shall choose,
thou shalt *read recall* this *law torah*
before in front of all *Israel Yisra El* in their *hearing ears.*
- 12 *Gather Congregate* the people *together,*
men and women, and *children toddlers,*
and thy *stranger sojourner* that is within thy *gates portals,*
that they may hear, and that they may learn,
and *fear the LORD awe Yah Veh* your *God Elohim,*
and *observe guard* to *do work*
all the words of this *law torah:*
- 13 And that their *children sons,*
which have not known *any thing,*
may hear, and learn
to *fear awe the LORD Yah Veh* your *God Elohim,*
as long as *all days* ye live in the *land soil*
whither ye *go pass* over *Jordan Yarden* to possess it.
- YAH VEH SPEAKS TO MOSHEH AND YAH SHUA**
- 14 And the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses Mosheh,*
Behold, thy days approach that thou *must die:*
call *Joshua Yah Shua,* and *present station* yourselves
in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation,
that I may *give misvah* him a *charge.*
And *Moses Mosheh* and *Joshua Yah Shua* went,
and *presented stationed* themselves
in the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation.
- 15 And the LORD *appeared Yah Veh was seen*
in the *tabernacle tent* in a pillar of a cloud:
and the pillar of the cloud
stood over the *door opening* of the *tabernacle tent.*
- 16 And the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto *Moses Mosheh,*
Behold, thou shalt *sleep lie* with thy fathers;
and this people *will shall* rise up,
and *go a whoring whore* after the *gods elohim*
of the strangers of the land,
whither they go to be among them,
and *will shall* forsake me,
and break my covenant which I have *made cut* with them.

DEUTERONOMY 31 345

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 4 and Yah Veh works to them
as he worked to *Sichon* and to *Og*
sovereigns of the *Emoriy*
and their land, whom he destroyed:
and Yah Veh gives them at your face,
to work to them
according to all the *misvoth* I *misvahed* you.
In *strenthening, strengthen;*
neither awe them nor awe their face;
for Yah Veh your *Elohim* — he goes with you;
he neither lets you loose nor forsakes you.
- 7 And *Mosheh* calls to *Yah Shua*
and says to him in the eyes of all *Yisra El,*
In *strenthening, strengthen:*
for you go with this people to the land
Yah Veh oathed to give their fathers to inherit:
and *Yah Veh* — he goes at your face;
he is with you;
he neither lets you loose nor forsakes you:
neither awe nor terrify.
- MOSHEH INSCRIBES THE TORAH**
- 9 And *Mosheh* inscribes this torah;
and gives it to the priests the sons of *Levi*
who bear the ark of the covenant of *Yah Veh*
and to all the elders of *Yisra El.*
- 10 And *Mosheh* *misvahs* them, saying,
At the end of seven years
in the season of the year of release
in the celebration of *Sukkoth/Brush Arbors*
— when all *Yisra El* comes
to be seen at the face of *Yah Veh* your *Elohim*
in the place he chooses,
recall this torah in front of all *Yisra El* in their ears.
- 12 *Congregate* the people
— men and women and toddlers
and the sojourner inside your portals,
to hear and to learn
and to awe *Yah Veh* your *Elohim*
and guard to work all the words of this torah:
and that their sons who know not,
hear and learn to awe *Yah Veh* your *Elohim,*
all days you live
in the soil you pass over *Yarden* to possess.
- YAH VEH SPEAKS TO MOSHEH AND YAH SHUA**
- 14 And *Yah Veh* says to *Mosheh,*
Behold, your days approach to die:
call *Yah Shua*
and station yourselves in the tent of the congregation
and I *misvah* him.
— and *Mosheh* and *Yah Shua* go
and station themselves in the tent of the congregation.
- 15 And *Yah Veh* is seen in the tent
in a pillar of a cloud:
and the pillar of the cloud
stands over the opening of the tent:
and *Yah Veh* says to *Mosheh,*
Behold, you lie with your fathers;
and this people rises and whores
after the *elohim* of the strangers of the land
among whom they go;
and forsake me:
and break the covenant I cut with them:

DEUTERONOMY 31

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

17 Then my anger **wrath**
shall be kindled against them in that day,
and I *will shall* forsake them,
and I *will shall* hide my face from them,
and they shall be devoured,
and many evils and *troubles tribulations*
shall *befall find* them;
so that they *will shall* say in that day,
Are not these evils come upon us,
because our God **Elohim** is not among us?
18 And **in hiding**,
I *will surely shall* hide my face in that day
for all the evils which they shall have *wrought worked*,
in that they are turned unto **the face of other gods elohim**.
THE NEW SONG
19 Now therefore *write inscribe* ye this song for you,
and teach it the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*:
put it in their mouths,
that this song may be a witness for me
against the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*.
20 For when I shall have brought them into the **land soil**
which I *sware oathed* unto their fathers,
that floweth with milk and honey;
and they shall have eaten and *filled themselves satiated*,
and *waxen fat fattened*;
then *will shall* they turn
unto **the face of other gods elohim**,
and serve them,
and *provoke scorn* me, and break my covenant.
21 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
when many evils and *troubles tribulations*
are befallen have found them,
that this song shall *testify answer*
against them at their face as a witness;
for it shall not be forgotten
out of the mouths of their seed:
for I know their imagination which they *go about work*,
even now this day,
before I have brought them
into the land which I *sware oathed*.
22 *Moses therefore wrote Mosheh inscribed* this song
the same day,
and taught it the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*.
23 And he gave *Joshua misvahed Yah Shua* the son of Nun
a charge, and said,
Be strong and of a good courage
In strengthening, be strengthened:
for thou shalt bring the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*
into the land which I *sware oathed* unto them:
and I *will shall* be with thee.
24 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when *Moses Mosheh* had *made an end finished*
of writing inscribing the words of this **law torah**
in a **book scroll**,
until they were *finished consummated*,
25 That *Moses Mosheh*
commanded misvahed the **Levites**,
which bare the ark of the covenant of **the LORD Yah Veh**,
saying,
26 Take this **book scroll** of the **law torah**,
and put it in the side of the ark of the covenant
of **the LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**,
that it may be there for a witness against thee.
27 For I know thy rebellion, and thy *stiff hard* neck:
behold, while I am yet alive with you this day,
ye have been rebellious against **the LORD Yah Veh**;
and how much more after my death?
28 *Gather Congregate* unto me
all the elders of your *tribes scions*, and your officers,
that I may speak these words in their ears,
and call *heaven the heavens* and earth
to record against them.
29 For I know that after my death
ye will utterly corrupt yourselves
in ruining, ye shall ruin,
and turn aside from the way
which I have *commanded misvahed* you;
and evil *will befall shall confront* you
in the **latter final** days;

DEUTERONOMY 31 346

exeGesés companion BIBLE

17 and I kindle my wrath against them in that day
and I forsake them and I hide my face from them:
and they become devoured
and many evils and tribulations find them;
so that they say in that day,
Come not these evils upon us,
because our Elohim *is* not among us?
18 — and in hiding, I hide my face in that day
for all the evils they work,
in that they turn to the face of other elohim.

THE NEW SONG

19 So now inscribe this song for yourselves
and teach the sons of Yisra El:
put it in their mouths,
that this song become a witness for me
against the sons of Yisra El:
20 and I bring them to the soil I oathed to their fathers
flowing with milk and honey:
and they eat and satiate and fatten
and turn to the face of other elohim and serve them
and scorn me and break my covenant.
21 And so be it,
when many evils and tribulations find them,
this song answers at their face for a witness
not to be forgotten from the mouths of their seed:
for I know the imagination they work this day,
ere I bring them to the land I oathed.
22 — and Mosheh inscribes this song the same day
and teaches the sons of Yisra El.
23 And he misvahs Yah Shua the son of Nun,
and says,
In strengthening, strengthen:
for you bring the sons of Yisra El
to the land I oathed to them:
and I — I — with you.
24 And so be it,
when Mosheh finishes
inscribing the words of this torah in a scroll,
until they *are* consummated,
that Mosheh misvahs the Levitims,
who bear the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh, saying,
25 Take this scroll of the torah
and put it in the side of the ark of the covenant
of Yah Veh your Elohim
to become for a witness against you.
27 For I — I know your rebellion and your hard neck:
behold, I — while I am yet alive with you this day,
you, being rebellious against Yah Veh,
how much more after my death?
28 Congregate to me
all the elders of your scions and your officers;
and I speak these words in their ears
and call the heavens and earth
to record against them:
29 for I know that after my death
in ruining, you ruin
and turn from the way I misvah you;
and evil confronts you in the final days;

DEUTERONOMY 31, 32

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

because ye will do **shall work** evil
in the *sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh,*
to *provoke vex* him to anger
through the work of your hands.
30 And Moses spake **Mosheh worded**
in the ears of all the congregation of *Israel Yisra El*
the words of this song, until they were **ended consummated.**
cp Apocalypse 15:3,4

MOSHEH SINGS THE NEW SONG

32 Give ear **Hearken,** O ye heavens,
and I will speak **shall word;**
and hear, O earth,
the words **sayings** of my mouth.
2 My doctrine shall *drop drip* as the rain,
my *speech sayings* shall *distil flow* as the dew,
as the *small rain shower* upon the tender *herb sprout,*
and as the showers upon the *grass herbage:*
3 Because I will *publish shall recall*
the name of the *LORD Yah Veh:*
ascribe give ye greatness unto our *God Elohim.*
4 He is the Rock, his *work is perfect deed is integrious:*
for all his ways are judgment:
a God an El of truth trust and without *iniquity wickedness,*
just and *right straight* is he.
5 They have *corrupted ruined to* themselves,
their spot is not the spot of his children
they are not his sons:
they are a *perverse pervert*
and *crooked twisted* generation.
6 Do **Deal** ye thus *requite the LORD unto Yah Veh,*
O foolish people and unwise?
is not he thy father that hath *bought chattered* thee?
hath he not *made worked* thee, and established thee?
7 Remember the days of *old eternal,*
consider discern the years
of many generations — the years generation to generation:
ask thy father, and he will *shew shall tell* thee;
thy elders, and they will *tell thee shall say.*
8 When the *Most High Elyon*
divided to the nations their inheritance
had the goyim to inherit,
when he separated the sons of *Adam humanity,*
he set **stationed** the *bounds borders* of the people
according to the number
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El.*
9 For the *LORD'S portion Yah Veh's allotment*
is his people;
Jacob Yaaqov is the *lot boundary* of his inheritance.
10 He found him in a *desert wilderness* land,
and in the waste howling *wilderness desolation;*
he *led turned* him about **around,**
he *instructed him had him discern,*
he *kept guarded* him as the *apple pupil* of his eye.
11 As an eagle *stirreth up waketh* her nest,
fluttereth over her *young younglings,*
spreadeth *abroad* her wings,
taketh them, beareth them on her *wings pinions:*
12 So the *LORD Yah Veh* alone did lead him,
and there was no strange *god el* with him.
13 He *made had* him ride
on the *high places bamahs* of the earth,
that he might eat the *increase produce* of the fields;
and he *made had* him to suck honey out of the rock,
and oil out of the flinty rock;
14 Butter of *kine oxen,* and milk of *sheep flocks,*
with fat of *lambs rams,*
and rams of the *breed sons* of Bashan,
and **he** goats, with the fat of *kidneys reins* of wheat;
and thou didst drink the *pure fermented* blood
of the grape.
15 But *Jeshurun waxed fat Yeshurun fattened,* and kicked:
thou art *waxen fat fattened,*
thou art *grown thick thickened,*
thou art *covered with fatness fattened;*
then he forsook *God Elohah* which *made worked* him,
and *lightly esteemed disgraced* the Rock of his salvation.
16 They *provoked him to aroused his* jealousy
with *strange gods strangers,*
with abominations *provoked vexed* they him to anger.

DEUTERONOMY 31, 32 347

exeGesés companion BIBLE

because you work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh
— to vex him through the work of your hands.
30 — and Mosheh words
in the ears of all the congregation of Yisra El
the words of this song, until they are consummated.
cp Apocalypse 15:3, 4

MOSHEH SINGS THE NEW SONG

32 Hearken, O you heavens and I word;
and hear, O earth, the sayings of my mouth!
2 My doctrine drips as the rain;
my sayings flow as the dew
— as the shower on the tender sprout
and as the showers on the herbage:
3 because I recall the name of Yah Veh:
give greatness to our Elohim.
4 The Rock — his deed *is* integrious:
for all his ways *are* judgment:
El of trust and without wickedness,
just and straight *is* he.
5 They ruin themselves;
they *are* not his sons:
— a perverted and twisted generation.
6 Deal you thus to Yah Veh,
O foolish people and unwise?
Is he not your father who chattered you?
Has he not worked you and established you?
7 Remember the days eternal,
discern the years — generation to generation:
ask your father and he tells you;
your elders and they say.
8 When Elyon had the goyim to inherit,
when he separated the sons of humanity,
he stationed the borders of the people
according to the number of the sons of Yisra El.
9 For the allotment of Yah Veh *is* his people;
Yaaqov is the boundary of his inheritance.
10 He finds him in a wilderness land
and in the waste howling desolation;
he turns him around; he has him discern;
he guards him as the pupil of his eye.
11 As an eagle waking her nest,
fluttering over her younglings,
spreading her wings,
takes them, bears them on her pinions:
12 thus Yah Veh alone leads him
and there *is* no strange el with him.
13 He rides him on the bamahs of the earth,
to eat the produce of the fields;
to suck honey from the rock
and oil from the flinty rock
— butter of oxen and milk of flocks
with fat of rams and rams of the sons of Bashan
and he goats, with the fat of reins of wheat;
and you drink the fermented blood of the grape.
14 And Yeshurun fattens and kicks:
you fatten; you thicken; you fattened;
then he forsakes Elohah who worked him
and disgraces the Rock of his salvation.
15 They arouse his jealousy with strangers
and with abominations they vex him:

DEUTERONOMY 32

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 17 They sacrificed unto *devils* **demons**, not to *God* **Elohah**;
to *gods* **elohim** whom they knew not,
to *new gods that came newly up* **new** — **from nearby**,
whom your fathers feared not
who whirled not your fathers.
- 18 Of **Remember** the Rock that *begat* **birthed** thee
thou art *unmindful*,
and **thou** hast forgotten *God* **El** that formed thee.
- 19 And when the *LORD* **Yah Veh** saw it,
he *abhorred* **scorned** them,
because of the *provoking* **vexation** of his sons,
and of his daughters.
- 20 And he said, I *will* **shall** hide my face from them,
I *will* **shall** see *what their end shall be* **their finality**:
for they are a very froward generation,
children in whom is no faith **sons** — **not trustworthy**.
- 21 They have moved me to jealousy
with *that which is not God* **their non—el**;
they have *provoked* **vexed** me to *anger* with their vanities:
and I *will* **shall** move them to jealousy
with those which are not a people;
I *will* **provoke** **shall vex** them to *anger*
with a foolish *nation* **goyim**.
- 22 For a fire is kindled in *mine anger* **my wrath**,
and shall burn unto the *lowest hell* **nethermost sheol**,
and shall consume the earth with her *increase* **produce**,
and *set on fire* **inflamm**e the foundations of the mountains.
- 23 I *will* **heap** *mischiefs* **shall scrape together evils**
upon them;
I *will* **spend** **shall finish off** mine arrows upon them.
- 24 They shall be *burnt* **exhausted** with *hunger* **famine**,
and devoured with burning heat,
and with bitter *destruction* **ruin**:
I *will* **shall** also send the teeth of *beasts* **animals**
upon them,
with the poison of *serpents* **creepers** of the dust.
- 25 The sword without,
and terror *within* **from the chambers**,
shall *destroy both* **bereave**
the *young man* **youth** and the virgin,
the suckling also with the man of *gray hairs* **grayness**.
- 26 I said,
I *would* **scatter** **should blow** them *into corners* **away**,
I *would* **make** *the remembrance of them* **to cease**
I should shabbathize their memorial from among men:
- 27 *Were it not that I* **If I had not** feared
the *wrath* **vexation** of the enemy,
lest their *adversaries* **tribulators**
should *behave themselves strangely* **discern**
and lest they should say, Our hand is *high* **lifted**,
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath not *done* **worked** all this.
- 28 For they are a *nation void* **goyim destroyed** of counsel,
neither is there *any understanding* **discernment** in them.
- 29 O that they were wise,
that they *understood* **comprehended** this,
that they *would consider* **should discern**
their *latter end* **finality**!
- 30 How should one *chase* **pursue** a thousand,
and two *put ten thousand to flight* **pursue a myriad**,
except **unless** their Rock had sold them,
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had shut them up?
- 31 For their rock is not as our Rock,
even our enemies themselves being judges.
- 32 For their vine is of the vine of *Sodom* **Sedom**,
and of the fields of *Gomorrah* **Amorah**:
their grapes are grapes of *gall* **rosh**,
their clusters are bitter:
- 33 Their wine is the poison of *dragons* **monsters**,
and the cruel *venom* **rosh** of asps.
- 34 Is not this *laid up in store* **stored** with me,
and sealed up among my treasures?
- 35 *To me belongeth* **vengeance** **Mine be the avenging**
and *recompence* **retribution**;
their foot shall *slide in due* **slip in** time:
for the day of their calamity is *at hand* **near**,
and *the things* **those** that shall *come* **impend** upon them
make haste **hasten**.
- 36 For the *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall judge his people,
and *repent himself* **sigh** for his servants,

DEUTERONOMY 32 348

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 17 they sacrifice to demons, not to Elohah;
to elohim whom they knew not
— new — from nearby,
who whirled not your fathers.
- 18 Remember the Rock who birthed you:
you forgot the El who formed you.
- 19 And Yah Veh sees, and scorns,
because of the vexation
of his sons and of his daughters.
- 20 And he says, I hide my face from them,
I see their finality:
— a very froward generation;
sons — not trustworthy:
- 21 they move me to jealousy with their non—el;
they vex me with their vanities:
and I move them to jealousy by a non—people;
I vex them by a foolish goyim.
- 22 For I kindle a fire in my wrath
and burn to the nethermost sheol
and consume the earth with her produce
and inflame the foundations of the mountains.
- 23 I scrape together evils on them;
I finish off my arrows on them.
- 24 Exhausted by famine,
devoured by burning heat and bitter ruin:
I also send the teeth of animals on them,
with the poison of creepers of the dust.
- 25 The sword outside
and terror from the chambers
bereaves both youth and virgin,
the suckling with the man of grayness.
- 26 I say, I blow them away,
I shabbathize their memorial from among men.
- 27 If not, I fear the vexation of the enemy,
lest their tribulators discern;
and lest they say, Our hand is lofty!
and, Yah Veh worked not all this.
- 28 — for they are a goyim destroyed of counsel
and there is no discernment in them.
- 29 O that they were wise
— to comprehend this
— to discern their finality!
- 30 How pursues one a thousand
and two that a myriad flee
— unless their Rock sold them
and Yah Veh shut them up?
- 31 For their rock is not as our Rock,
as even our enemies themselves judge.
- 32 For their vine is of the vine of Sedom
and of the fields of Amorah:
their grapes, grapes of rosh with bitter clusters:
their wine is the poison of monsters
and the cruel rosh of asps.
- 34 Is this not stored with me
and sealed up among my treasures?
- 35 Mine is the avenging and retribution;
their foot slips in time:
for the day of their calamity is near
and that impending on them, hastens.
- 36 For Yah Veh judges his people
and sighs for his servants,

DEUTERONOMY 32, 33

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

when he seeth that their *power hand* is gone **disappeared**,
and there is none *shut up* **that restrains**, or left.
37 And he shall say, Where are their *gods* **elohim**,
their rock in whom they *trusted* **sought refuge**,
38 Which did eat the fat of their sacrifices,
and drank the wine of their *drink offerings* **libation**?
let them rise up and help you,
and be your *protection* **covert**.
39 See now that I, even I, am he,
and there is no *god* **elohim** with me:
I *kill* **deathify**, and I *make alive* **enliven**;
I *wound* **strike**, and I *heal*:
neither is there any
that can *deliver* **escape** out of my hand.
40 For I lift up my hand to *heaven* **the heavens**,
and say, I live for ever **eternally**.
41 If I *whet* **pointen**
my glittering **the lightning of my sword**,
and mine hand take hold on judgment;
I *will render vengeance* **shall return avengement**
to *mine enemies* **my tribulators**,
and *will reward* **shall shalam** them that hate me.
42 I *will* **shall** make mine arrows
drunk **intoxicate** with blood,
and my sword shall devour flesh;
and that with the blood of the *slain* **pierced**
and of the captives,
from the *beginning of revenges* **heads of the leaders**
upon the enemy.
43 *Rejoice* **Shout**, O ye *nations* **goyim**, with his people:
for he *will* **shall** avenge the blood of his servants,
and *will render vengeance* **shall return avengement**
to his *adversaries* **tribulators**,
and *will be merciful* **shall kapar/atone** unto his *land* **soil**,
and to his people.
44 And *Moses* **Mosheh** came and *spake* **worded**
all the words of this song in the ears of the people,
he, and *Hoshea* **Yah Shua** the son of Nun.
45 And *Moses* **Mosheh**
made an end of speaking **finished wording** all these words
to all *Israel* **Yisra El**:
46 And he said unto them,
Set your hearts unto all the words
which I *testify* **witness** among you this day,
which ye shall *command* **misvah** your *children* **sons**
to *observe* **guard to do work**,
all the words of this *law* **torah**.
47 For it is not a vain *thing* **word** for you;
because it is your life:
and through this *thing* **word**
ye shall prolong your days in the *land* **soil**,
whither ye *go* **pass** over *Jordan* **Yarden** to possess it.
MOSHEH ASCENDS MOUNT NEBO
48 And the *LORD* **spake** *Yah Veh* **worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh** that selfsame day, saying,
49 *Get thee up* **Ascend** into this mountain Abarim,
unto mount Nebo, which is in the land of Moab,
that is over against Jericho **at the face of Yericho**;
and *behold* **see** the land of *Canaan* **Kanaan**,
which I give unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
for a possession:
50 And die in the mount whither thou *goest up* **ascendest**,
and be gathered unto thy people;
as *Aaron* **Aharon** thy brother died in mount Hor,
and was gathered unto his people:
51 Because ye *trespassed* **treasoned** against me
among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
at the waters of *Meribah*—*Kadesh* **Strife at Qadesh**,
in the wilderness of *Zin* **Sin**;
because ye *sanctified* **hallowed** me not
in the midst of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
52 Yet thou shalt see the land *before* **in front of** thee;
but thou shalt not go thither unto the land
which I give the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
THE BLESSINGS OF MOSHEH ON THE SONS OF YISRA EL

33

And this is the blessing,
wherewith *Moses* **Mosheh** the man of *God* **Elohim**
blessed the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
before **at the face of** his death.

DEUTERONOMY 32, 33 349

exeGesés companion BIBLE

when he sees their hand disappear
and no one restrains.
37 And he says, Where *are* their *elohim*?
— their rock in whom they sought refuge
38 who ate the fat of their sacrifices
and drank the wine of their libation?
Raise them to help you and be your covert.
39 See now that I — I *am* he
and there *is* no Elohim with me:
I deathify and I enliven; I strike and I heal:
no one escapes my hand.
40 For I lift my hand to the heavens
and say, I live eternally.
41 If I *pointen* the lightning of my sword
and my hand holds on judgment,
I return avengement to my tribulators
and shalam them who hate me.
42 I intoxicate my arrows with blood
and my sword devours flesh;
from the blood of the pierced and of the captives
— from the heads of the leaders of the enemy.
43 Shout, O you *goyim*, with his people:
for he avenges the blood of his servants
and returns avengement to his tribulators
and kapars/atones to his soil and to his people.
44 And Mosheh comes and words
all the words of this song in the ears of the people,
— he and Yah Shua the son of Nun:
45 and Mosheh finishes wording all these words
to all Yisra El:
46 and he says to them,
Set your hearts
to all the words I witness among you this day
— for you to misvah your sons to guard to work
— all the words of this torah.
47 For this *is* no vain word for you;
because it *is* your life:
and through this word,
prolong your days in the soil,
where you pass over Yarden to possess it.
MOSHEH ASCENDS MOUNT NEBO
48 And Yah Veh words to Mosheh
this selfsame day, saying,
49 Ascend this mount Abarim
to mount Nebo in the land of Moab
at the face of Yericho;
and see the land of Kanaan
I give to the sons of Yisra El for a possession:
and die in the mount you ascend
and be gathered to your people;
as Aharon your brother died in mount Hor
and gathered to his people:
50 because you treasoned against me
among the sons of Yisra El
at the waters of Meribah/Strife at Qadesh,
in the wilderness of Sin;
because you hallowed me not
midst the sons of Yisra El.
51 Yet you see the land in front of you;
but you go not to the land I give the sons of Yisra El.
THE BLESSINGS OF MOSHEH ON THE SONS OF YISRA EL
33 And this *is* the blessing,
wherewith Mosheh the man of Elohim
blessed the sons of Yisra El at the face of his death:

DEUTERONOMY 33

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

2 And he said, the **LORD Yah Veh** came from *Sinai Sinay*,
and rose up from Seir unto them;
he shined forth from mount Paran,
and he came with *ten thousands myriads of saints holy*:
from his right *hand*
went a *fiery law* **decree of fire** for them.

3 Yea, he *loved* **cherished** the people;
all his *saints holy* are in thy hand:
and they *sat down camped* at thy feet;
every one shall *receive* **bear** of thy words.

4 *Moses commanded* **Mosheh misvahed** us a *law torah*,
even the *inheritance possession*
of the congregation of *Jacob Yaaqov*.

5 And he was *king sovereign* in *Jeshurun Yeshurun*,
when the heads of the people
and the *tribes scions* of *Israel Yisra El*
were gathered *together*.

6 Let *Reuben Reu Ben live*, and not die;
and let *not* his men be *few* a **number**.

7 And this is the *blessing of Judah Yah Hudah*:
and he said, Hear, **LORD O Yah Veh**,
the voice of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and bring him unto his people:
let his hands be *sufficient* **great** for him;
and be thou an help to him from his *enemies* **tribulators**.

8 And of Levi he said,
Let thy Thummim and thy Urim
be with thy *holy one* **men of mercy**,
whom thou didst *prove test*
at *Massah Testing*,
and with whom thou didst strive
at the waters of *Meribah Strife*;

9 Who said unto his father and to his mother,
I have not seen him;
neither *did he acknowledge* **recognized he** his brethren,
nor knew his own *children sons*:
for they have *observed* **guarded** thy *word sayings*,
and *kept* **guarded** thy covenant.

10 They shall *teach* **point out**
Jacob to Yaaqov thy judgments,
and *Israel Yisra El* thy *law torah*:
they shall put incense *before thee* **at thy nostrils**,
and *whole burnt sacrifice* **totally**
upon *thine* **thy sacrifice** altar.

11 Bless, **LORD Yah Veh**, his *substance* **valour**,
and *accept the work* **be pleased in the deeds** of his hands;
smite strike through the loins of them that rise against him,
and of them that hate him,
that they rise not **from rising** again.

12 And of *Benjamin Ben Yamin* he said,
The beloved of the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall *dwell in safety* **tabernacle confidently** by him;
and the *Lord* shall cover him all the day long,
and he shall *dwell* **tabernacle** between his shoulders.

13 And of *Joseph Yoseph* he said,
Blessed of the **LORD Yah Veh** be his land,
for the precious *things of heaven* **the heavens**,
for the dew,
and for the *deep abyss* that *coucheth* **croucheth** beneath,

14 And for the precious *fruits* **produce**
brought forth by the sun,
and for the precious *things*
put forth **thrust** by the moon,
And for the *chief things* **tops**
of the ancient mountains,
and for the precious *things*
of the *lasting* **eternal** hills,

16 And for the precious *things*
of the earth and fulness thereof,
and for the *good will* **pleasure** of him
that *dwelt* **tabernacleth** in the bush:
let the *blessing* it come upon the head of *Joseph Yoseph*,
and upon the *top of the head* **scalp** of him
that was *separated* a **Separatist** from his brethren.

17 His *glory* **majesty** is like the firstling of his *bullock ox*,
and his horns are like the horns of *unicorns* a **reem**:
with them he shall *push* **butt** the people together
to the *ends* **finality** of the earth:

DEUTERONOMY 33 350

exeGeses companion BIBLE

2 and he says,
Yah Veh comes from Sinay
and rises from Seir to them;
he shines from mount Paran
and he comes with myriads of holy:
from his right goes a decree of fire for them.

3 Yes, he cherishes the people;
all his holy are in your hand:
and they camp at your feet;
every one bears of your words.

4 Mosheh misvahs us a torah,
even the possession of the congregation of Yaaqov:
and he is sovereign in Yeshurun,
in the gathering of the heads of the people
— the scions of Yisra El.

6 Reu Ben lives and dies not;
and his men become numerous.

7 And this for Yah Hudah:
and he says,
Hear, O Yah Veh, the voice of Yah Hudah
and bring him to his people:
greaten his hands for him;
and become his help from his tribulators.

8 And of Levi he says,
Your Thummim and your Urim
be with your men of mercy,
whom you tested at Massah/Testing
and with whom you strove
at the waters of Meribah/Strife:

9 who says to his father and to his mother,
I saw him not:
he neither recognized his brothers
nor knew his own sons:
for they guarded your sayings
and guarded your covenant.

10 They point out your judgments to Yaaqov
and your torah to Yisra El:
they put incense at your nostrils,
totally on your sacrifice altar.
Yah Veh, bless his valour
and be pleased in the deeds of his hands;
strike the loins of them who rise against him
and of them who hate him,
from rising again.

12 And of Ben Yamin he says,
The beloved of Yah Veh
tabernacles confidently by him;
and covers him all the day long
and he tabernacles between his shoulders.

13 And of Yoseph he says,
Blessed of Yah Veh be his land,
for the preciousnesses of the heavens;
for the dew
and for the abyss that crouches beneath;
and for the preciousnesses produced by the sun;
and for the preciousnesses thrust by the moon;
and for the tops of the ancient mountains;
and for the preciousnesses of the eternal hills;
and for the preciousnesses of the earth
and fulness thereof;
and for the pleasure of him
who tabernacles in the bush:
it comes on the head of Yoseph
and on the scalp of him
who was a Separatist from his brothers.
His majesty is the firstling of his ox
and his horns the horns of a reem:
with them he butts the people together
to the finality of the earth:

DEUTERONOMY 33, 34

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they are the *ten thousands* **myriads** of Ephraim **Ephrayim**,
and they are the thousands of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**.

18 And of Zebulun he said,
Rejoice **Cheer**, Zebulun, in thy going out;
and, *Issachar* **Yissachar**, in thy tents.
19 They shall call the people unto the mountain;
there they shall
offer sacrifice sacrifices of *righteousness* **justness**:
for they shall suck of the *abundance* **bounty** of the seas,
and of *treasures hid* **that covered and buried** in the sand.

20 And of Gad he said,
Blessed be he that *enlargeth* **wideneth** Gad:
he *dwelleth* **tabernacleth** as a *roaring* lion,
and teareth the arm
with the crown of the head — **yea the scalp**.
21 And *he provided* **his eye is on** the first *part* for himself,
because there,
in a *portion* **an allotment** of the *lawgiver* **statute setter**,
was he *seated* **covered**;
and he came with the heads of the people,
he *executed* **worked**
the *justice* **justness** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and his judgments with *Israel* **Yisra El**.

22 And of Dan he said,
Dan is a lion's whelp: he shall leap from Bashan.
23 And of Naphtali he said,
O Naphtali, satisfied with *favoured* **pleasure**,
and full with the blessing of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
possess thou the west **seaward** and the south.

24 And of Asher he said,
Let Asher be blessed with *children* **sons**;
let him be *acceptable* **pleasing** to his brethren,
and let him dip his foot in oil.
25 Thy shoes shall be iron and *brass* **copper**;
and as thy days, *so* shall thy strength be.
26 There is none like
unto the *God El* of *Jeshurun* **Yeshurun**,
who rideth upon the *heaven* **heavens** in thy help,
and in his *excellency* **pomp** on the *sky* **vapour**.

27 The *eternal God* **ancient Elohim**
is thy *refuge* **habitation**,
and underneath are the *everlasting* **eternal** arms:
and he shall *thrust out* **expel** the enemy
from *before thee* **thy face**;
and shall say, *Destroy them* **Desolate**.
28 *Israel* **Yisra El** then
shall *dwelt in safety* **tabernacle confidently** alone:
the fountain of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
shall be upon a land of *corn* **crop** and *wine* **juice**;
also his heavens shall *drop down* **drip** dew.
29 *Happy* **Blithe** art thou, O *Israel* **Yisra El**:
who is like unto thee,
O people saved by the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the *shield* **buckler** of thy help,
and who is the sword of thy *excellency* **pomp!**
and thine enemies

shall be *found liars* unto **emaciate in front** of thee;
and thou shalt tread upon their *high places* **bamahs**.

MOSHEH ASCENDS MOUNT NEBO

34

And *Moses* **Mosheh**
went up **ascended** from the plains of Moab
unto the mountain of Nebo, to the top of Pisgah,
that is over against Jericho **at the face of Yericho**.
And the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
shewed him **had him see** all the land of *Gilead* **Gilad**,
unto Dan,
2 And all Naphtali, and the land of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
and *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
and all the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
unto the *utmost* **latter** sea,
3 And the south,
and the *plain* **environs** of the valley of *Jericho* **Yericho**,
the city of palm trees **Ir Hat Temarim**, unto *Zoar* **Soar**.
4 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto him,
This is the land which I *swore* **oathed** unto Abraham,
unto *Isaac* **Yischaq**, and unto *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
saying, I *will* **shall** give it unto thy seed:
I have caused thee to see it with thine eyes,
but thou shalt not *go* **pass** over thither.

DEUTERONOMY 33, 34 351

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they are the myriads of Ephrayim
and they are the thousands of Menash Sheh.

18 And of Zebulun he says,
Cheer, Zebulun, in your going out;
and, Yissachar, in your tents.
19 They call the people to the mountain;
there they sacrifice sacrifices of justness:
for they suck of the bounty of the seas
and of those covered and buried in the sand.

20 And of Gad he says,
Blessed by him who widens is Gad:
he tabernacles as a lion
and tears the arm — yes, the scalp:
and his eye is on the first for himself,
because there,
the allotment of the statute setter is covered;
and he comes with the heads of the people:
he works the justness of Yah Veh
and his judgments with Yisra El.

22 And of Dan he says,
Dan is the whelp of a lion: he leaps from Bashan.

23 And of Naphtali he says,
O Naphtali, satisfied with pleasure
and full of the blessing of Yah Veh:
possess the seaward and the south.

24 And of Asher he says,
Asher is blessed with sons;
he becomes pleasing to his brothers
and dips his foot in oil.

25 Your shoes are iron and copper;
and as your days, thus your strength.
26 No one is like the El of Yeshurun,
who rides on the heavens in your help
and in his pomp on the vapour.

27 The ancient Elohim is your habitation
and underneath are the eternal arms:
and he expels the enemy from your face;
and says, Desolate!

28 And Yisra El tabernacles confidently alone:
the fountain/eye of Yaaqov
is on a land of crop and juice;
also his heavens drip dew.
29 Blithe — you, O Yisra El:
who is like to you?
A people saved by Yah Veh
— the buckler of your help
and the sword of your pomp!
and your enemies emaciate in front of you;
and you tread on their bamahs.

MOSHEH ASCENDS MOUNT NEBO

34

And Mosheh ascends from the plains of Moab
to the mountain of Nebo
to the top of Pisgah at the face of Yericho:
and Yah Veh shows him all the land of Gilad to Dan,
2 and all Naphtali
and the land of Ephrayim and Menash Sheh
and all the land of Yah Hudah to the latter sea
3 and the south
and the environs of the valley of Yericho
the city of palm trees /Ir Hat Temarim to Soar.

4 And Yah Veh says to him,
This is the land I oathed
to Abraham, to Yischaq and to Yaaqov,
saying, I give it to your seed:
I have you to see it with your eyes,
but you pass not over there.

DEUTERONOMY 34

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE DEATH OF MOSHEH

- 5 So Moses **Mosheh** the servant of the **LORD Yah Veh**
died there in the land of Moab,
according to the word **mouth of the LORD Yah Veh**.
- 6 And he *buried* **entombed** him
in a valley in the land of Moab,
over against Bethpeor **in front of Beth Peor**:
but no man knoweth of his *sepulchre* **tomb** unto this day.
- 7 And Moses **Mosheh**
was **a son of** an hundred and twenty years *old*
when he died **at his death**:
his eye was not *dim* **weak**,
nor his *natural force* **abated freshness fled**.
- 8 And the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
wept for Moses **Mosheh** in the plains of Moab thirty days:
so the days of weeping and mourning for Moses **Mosheh**
were *ended* **consummated**.
- 9 And Joshua **Yah Shua** the son of Nun
was full of the spirit of wisdom;
for Moses **Mosheh** had *laid* **propped** his hands upon him:
and the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
hearkened unto him,
and *did* **worked** as the **LORD Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**.
- 10 And there arose not a prophet *since* **again**
in **Israel Yisra El** like unto Moses **Mosheh**,
whom the **LORD Yah Veh** knew face to face,
In all the signs and the *wonders* **omens**,
which the **LORD Yah Veh** sent him to *do* **work**
in the land of **Egypt Misrayim** to **Pharaoh Paroh**,
and to all his servants, and to all his land,
- 12 And in all that *mighty* **strong** hand,
and in all the great *terror* **awesomeness**
which Moses *shewed* **Mosheh worked**
in the *sight* **eyes** of all **Israel Yisra El**.

DEUTERONOMY 34 352

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE DEATH OF MOSHEH

- 5 So Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh
dies there in the land of Moab
according to the mouth of Yah Veh:
- 6 and he entombs him in a valley in the land of Moab
in front of Beth Peor:
but no man knows of his tomb to this day.
- 7 And Mosheh *is* a son of a hundred and twenty years
at his death:
neither his eye weakened, nor his freshness fled.
- 8 And the sons of Yisra El
weep for Mosheh in the plains of Moab thirty days:
and the days of weeping and mourning for Mosheh
consummate.
- 9 And Yah Shua the son of Nun
is full of the spirit of wisdom;
for Mosheh had propped his hands on him:
and the sons of Yisra El hearken to him
and work as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.
- 10 And never again rose there a prophet in Yisra El
like Mosheh,
whom Yah Veh knew face to face;
in all the signs and the omens
Yah Veh sent him to work in the land of Misrayim
— to Paroh and to all his servants and to all his land;
- 12 and in all that strong hand
and in all the great awesomeness
Mosheh worked in the eyes of all Yisra El.

JOSHUA 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH VEH MISVAHS YAH SHUA

1 Now **And** after the death of *Moses* **Mosheh**
the servant of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
so be it came to pass,
that *the LORD* spake **Yah Veh** said unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
the son of Nun, *Moses'* minister, saying,
2 *Moses* **Mosheh** my servant *is dead* **died**;
now therefore arise, go **pass** over this *Jordan* **Yarden**,
thou, and all this people,
unto the land which I do give to them,
even to the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
3 Every place that the sole of your foot shall tread upon,
that have I given unto you,
as I *said* **worded** unto *Moses* **Mosheh**.
4 From the wilderness and this Lebanon
even unto the great river,
the river Euphrates, all the land of the *Hittites* **Hethiy**,
and unto the great sea
toward the *going down* **entry** of the sun,
shall be your *coast* **border**.
5 There shall not any man be able to stand
before thee **at thy face** all the days of thy life:
as I was with *Moses* **Mosheh**, so I *will* **shall** be with thee:
I will **shall** not *fail* **let** thee **down**, nor forsake thee.
6 **Be strong strengthened**
and of a *good courage* **encouraged**:
for unto this people
shalt thou divide for an inheritance the land,
which I *sware* **oathed** unto their fathers to give them.
7 Only be thou *strong* **strengthened**
and *very courageous* **mightily encouraged**,
that thou mayest *observe* **guard** to *do* **work**
according to all the *law* **torah**,
which *Moses* **Mosheh** my servant
commanded **misvahed** thee:
turn not **aside** from it to the right *hand* or to the left,
that thou mayest *prosper* **comprehend**
whithersoever thou goest.
8 *This book* **The scroll** of the *law* **this torah**
shall not depart out of thy mouth;
but thou shalt meditate therein **by** day and **by** night,
that thou mayest *observe* **guard** to *do* **work**
according to all that is *written* **inscribed** therein:
for then thou shalt *make thy way prosperous* **prosper**,
and then thou shalt *have good success* **comprehend**.
9 Have not I *commanded* **misvahed** thee?
Be strong strengthened
and of a *good courage* **encouraged**;
be not *afraid* **awed**, neither be thou *dismayed* **terrified**:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** is with thee
whithersoever thou goest.
YAH SHUA MISVAHS THE OFFICERS
10 Then *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
commanded **misvahed** the officers of the people, saying,
11 *Pass through* **over midst** the *host* **camp**,
and *command* **misvah** the people, saying,
Prepare you **victuals** **hunt**;
for within three days
ye shall pass over this *Jordan* **Yarden**,
to go in to possess the land,
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
giveth you to possess it.
12 And to the *Reubenites* **Reu Beniy**,
and to the *Gadites* **Gadiy**,
and to half the *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
spake Joshua **said Yah Shua**, saying,
13 Remember the word which *Moses* **Mosheh**
the servant of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded **misvahed** you, saying,
The LORD **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
hath *given you rest* **rested thee**,
and hath given you this land.
14 Your *wives* **women**, your *little ones* **toddlers**,
and your *cattle* **chattel**, shall *remain* **settle** in the land
which *Moses* **Mosheh** gave you
on this side *Jordan* **Yarden**;
but ye shall pass *before* **at the face** of your brethren
armed in ranks of five,

YAH SHUA 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH VEH MISVAHS YAH SHUA

1 And so be it,
after the death of Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh,
Yah Veh says to Yah Shua the son of Nun,
the minister of Mosheh, saying,
2 Mosheh my servant died;
and now rise, pass over this Yarden
— you and all this people
to the land I give them — to the sons of Yisra El.
3 Every place the sole of your foot treads, I give you,
as I worded to Mosheh
— from this wilderness and Lebanon
even to the great river — the river Euphrates,
all the land of the Hethiy,
and to the great sea toward the entry of the sun
becomes your border.
4 No man is able to stand at your face
all the days of your life:
as I became with Mosheh, I become with you:
I neither let you down nor forsake you.
5 Strengthen! Encourage!
Divide the land for an inheritance to this people,
which I oathed to their fathers to give them.
6 Only, strengthen and encourage mightily
to guard to work according to all the torah
Mosheh my servant misvahed you:
turn not aside from it — right or left,
so that wherever you go, you comprehend.
7 Remove not the scroll of this torah
from your mouth;
but meditate therein by day and by night;
guarding to work according to all inscribed therein:
and then you prosper and then you comprehend.
8 Misvahed I you not?
Strengthen! Encourage! Neither awe nor terrify!
— for Yah Veh your Elohim *is* with you
wherever you go.

YAH SHUA MISVAHS THE OFFICERS

10 Then Yah Shua misvahs the officers of the people,
saying,
11 Pass over midst the camp and misvah the people,
saying, Prepare your hunt;
for within three days you pass over this Yarden
to go in to possess the land
Yah Veh your Elohim gives you to possess.
12 And to the Reu Beniy and to the Gadiy
and to half the scion of Menash Sheh
Yah Shua says, saying,
13 Remember the word
Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh misvahed you, saying,
Yah Veh your Elohim rests you,
and gives you this land
14 — to your women, your toddlers, and your chattel,
to settle in the land
Mosheh gave you beyond Yarden;
and you, pass at the face of your brothers
in ranks of five

JOSHUA 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 all the mighty *men* of valour, and help them;
Until *the LORD Yah Veh*
have given **hath rested** your brethren *rest*,
as *he hath given you*,
and they also have possessed the land
which *the LORD Yah Veh* your *God Elohim* giveth them:
then ye shall return unto the land of your possession,
and enjoy **possess** it,
which *Moses Mosheh, the LORD'S Yah Veh's* servant
gave you on this side *Jordan Yarden*
toward the *sunrising from the rising sun*.
16 And they answered *Joshua Yah Shua*, saying,
All that thou *commandest misvahest* us
we will do **shall work**,
and whithersoever thou sendest us, we will **shall** go.
17 According as we hearkened unto *Moses Mosheh*
in all *things*,
so will **shall** we hearken unto thee:
only *the LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim* be with thee,
as he was with *Moses Mosheh*.
18 *Whosoever he be Every man* that doth rebel
against thy *commandment mouth*,
and will **shall** not hearken unto thy words
in all that thou *commandest misvahest* him,
he shall be *put to death deathified*:
only be *strong strengthend*
and of a *good courage encouraged*.

RACHAB PROTECTS THE SPIES

2 And *Joshua Yah Shua* the son of Nun
sent out of Shittim
two men to spy *secretly quietly*, saying,
Go view **see** the land, even *Jericho Yericho*.
And they went,
and came into an *harlot's a woman whore's* house,
named *Rahab Rachab*, and *lodged lay down* there.
2 And it was *told said*
to the king sovereign of *Jericho Yericho*, saying,
Behold, there came men in hither to night
of the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
to search out **explore** the *country land*.
3 And the *king sovereign* of *Jericho Yericho*
sent unto *Rahab Rachab*, saying,
Bring forth the men that are come to thee,
which are entered into thine house:
for they be come
to search out **explore** all the *country land*.
4 And the woman took the two men, and hid them,
and said thus,
There came men unto me,
but I *wist knew* not whence they were:
5 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
about the time of at the shutting of the *gate portal*,
when it was dark, that the men went out:
whither the men went I *wot know* not:
pursue after them *quickly hastily*;
for ye shall overtake them.
6 But she had *brought ascended* them *up*
to the roof of the house,
and hid them with the *stalks timbers* of flax,
which she had *laid in order aligned* upon the roof.
7 And the men pursued after them
the way to *Jordan Yarden* unto the *fords passages*:
and as soon as they which pursued after them
were gone out,
they shut the *gate portal*.
8 And before they were laid down,
she *came up ascended* unto them upon the roof;
9 And she said unto the men,
I know that *the LORD Yah Veh* hath given you the land,
and that your terror is fallen upon us,
and that all the *inhabitants settlers* of the land
faint because of you melt at thy face.
10 For we have heard how *the LORD Yah Veh*
dried up withered the water of the *Red Reed* sea
for you **at thy face**,
when ye *came went* out of *Egypt Misrayim*;
and what ye *did worked*
unto the two *kings sovereigns* of the *Amorites Emoriy*,

YAH SHUA 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 — all the mighty of valour and help them;
until Yah Veh rests your brothers, as you,
and they possess the land
Yah Veh your Elohim gave them:
then return to the land of your possession
and possess it,
which Mosheh, the servant of Yah Veh gave you
on this side Yarden from the rising sun.
16 And they answer Yah Shua, saying,
All you misvah us, we work;
and wherever you send us, we go:
17 according to all wherein we hearkened to Mosheh,
thus we hearken to you:
only, Yah Veh your Elohim be with you
as he was with Mosheh.
18 Every man who rebels against your mouth,
and hearkens not to all the words you misvah him,
deathify him:
Strengthen! Encourage!

RACHAB PROTECTS THE SPIES

2 And Yah Shua the son of Nun
sends two men from Shittim to spy quietly,
saying, Go see the land of Yericho.
— and they go, and come to the house of a woman
— a whore named Rachab, and lie down there.
2 And it is said to the sovereign of Yericho, saying,
Behold, men of the sons of Yisra El
came in tonight to explore the land.
3 And the sovereign of Yericho sends to Rachab,
saying, Bring the men who came to you
who entered your house:
for they came to explore all the land.
4 And the woman takes the two men,
and hides them, and says thus,
Men came to me, but I know not whence:
5 and so be it, at the shutting of the portal, at dark,
the men went:
where the men went, I know not:
pursue after them hastily and overtake them.
6 And she ascends them to the roof;
and hides them with the timbers of flax
she aligned on the roof:
and the men pursue after them
the way to Yarden to the passages:
and as soon as they pursue them,
they shut the portal.
7 And ere they lie down,
she ascends to them on the roof;
and says to the men,
I know Yah Veh gives you the land
and that your terror befalls us;
and that all the settlers of the land
melt at your face:
10 for we hear how Yah Veh
withered the water of the Reed sea at your face,
in your going from Misrayim;
and what you worked
to the two sovereigns of the Emoriy

JOSHUA 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that were on the other side *Jordan Yarden*,
Sihon **Sichon** and Og, whom ye *utterly destroyed devoted*.
11 And as soon as we had heard these things,
our hearts did melt,
neither did there *remain rise up* any more
courage **spirit/wind** in any man,
because of you **at thy face**:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** your *God Elohim*,
he is *God Elohim* in *heaven the heavens* above,
and in earth beneath.
12 Now therefore, I *pray beseech* you,
swear **oath** unto me by the **LORD Yah Veh**,
since **surely** I have *shewed worked* you *kindness mercy*,
that ye *will shall* also *shew kindness work mercy*
unto my father's house,
and give me a true *token sign*:
13 And that ye *will shall* save alive
my father, and my mother,
and my brethren, and my sisters, and all that they have,
and *deliver rescue* our *lives souls* from death.
14 And the men *answered said* to her,
Our *life for your's soul instead of your's to die*,
if ye *utter tell* not this our *business word*.
And it shall be **give**,
when the **LORD Yah Veh** hath given us the land,
that we *will deal kindly shall work mercy*
and *truly truth* with thee.
15 Then she *let descended* them *down* by a cord
through the window:
for her house was upon the *town wall*,
and she *dwelt settled* upon the wall.
16 And she said unto them, *Get you Go* to the mountain,
lest the pursuers meet you;
and hide yourselves there three days,
until the pursuers be returned:
and afterward may ye go your way.
17 And the men said unto her,
We *will shall* be *blameless innocent* of this thine oath
which thou hast made us *swear oath*.
18 Behold, when we come into the land,
thou shalt bind this *line cord* of scarlet thread
in the window
by which thou *didst let descended* us *down* by:
and thou shalt *bring gather* thy father, and thy mother,
and thy brethren, and all thy father's household,
home unto thee unto thy house.
19 And **so be** it shall be,
that whosoever
shall go out of the doors of thy house
into the street outside,
his blood shall be upon his head,
and we *will shall* be *guiltless innocent*:
and whosoever shall be with thee in the house,
his blood shall be on our head, if any hand be upon him.
20 And if thou *utter tell* this our *business word*,
then we *will shall* be *quit innocent* of thine oath
which thou hast made us to *swear oath*.
21 And she said, According unto your words, so be it.
And she sent them away, and they *departed went*:
and she bound the scarlet *line cord* in the window.
22 And they went, and came unto the mountain,
and *abode settled* there three days,
until the pursuers were returned:
and the pursuers sought them throughout all the way,
but found them not.
23 So the two men returned,
and descended from the mountain,
and passed over,
and came to *Joshua Yah Shua* the son of Nun,
and *told scribed* him all *things that befell found* them:
24 And they said unto *Joshua Yah Shua*,
Truly the LORD Surely Yah Veh
hath *delivered given* into our hands all the land;
for even all the *inhabitants settlers* of the *country land*
do faint because of us melt at our face.
SONS OF YISRA EL PASS OVER YARDEN

3 And *Joshua rose Yah Shua started* early in the morning;

YAH SHUA 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

on the other side Yarden
— Sichon and Og, whom you devoted:
11 we hear and our hearts melt,
and no more spirit/wind rises in any man at your face:
for Yah Veh your Elohim is Elohim
in the heavens above and on the earth below.
12 And now I beseech you, oath to me by Yah Veh,
surely I worked you mercy,
that you also work mercy to the house of my father,
and give me a true sign:
13 that you save alive my father and my mother
and my brothers and my sisters and all they have,
and rescue our souls from death.
14 And the men say to her,
Our soul dies for yours, if you tell not this word;
and in giving, when Yah Veh gives us the land,
we work mercy and truth with you.
15 Then she descends them by a cord
through the window:
for her house is on the wall
and she settles on the wall.
16 And she says to them, Go to the mountain,
lest the pursuers meet you;
and hide yourselves three days, until the pursuers return:
and afterward go your way.
17 And the men say to her,
We are innocent of this your oath
which you had us oath.
18 Behold, when we come into the land,
bind this cord of scarlet thread in the window
whereby you descended us:
and gather your father, and your mother,
and your brothers,
and all the household of your father
to your house:
and so be it,
19 whoever goes outside the doors of your house,
his blood is on his head, and we are innocent:
and whoever is in the house with you,
if any hand is on him, his blood is on our head:
and if you tell this our word,
20 then we are innocent of this oath you had us oath.
21 And she says, According to your words, so be it.
and she sends them away and they go;
and she binds the scarlet cord in the window.
22 And they go and come to the mountain
and settle there three days until the pursuers return:
and the pursuers seek them all the way
but find them not.
23 So the two men return
and descend from the mountain and pass over
and come to Yah Shua the son of Nun;
and scribe him all they found:
24 and they say to Yah Shua,
Surely Yah Veh gives all the land into our hands;
for even all the settlers of the land melt at our face.

SONS OF YISRA EL PASS OVER YARDEN

3 And Yah Shua starts early in the morning;

JOSHUA 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and they removed **pulled stakes** from Shittim,
and came to *Jordan Yarden*,
he and all the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
and lodged **stayed overnight** there
before they passed over.
2 And **so beit** came to pas,
after **at the end of** three days,
that the officers went **passed over**
through **midst** the *host camp*;
3 And they *commanded* **misvahed** the people, saying,
When ye see the ark of the covenant
of the **LORD Yah Veh your God Elohim**,
and the priests the *Levites Leviym* bearing it,
then ye shall *remove* **pull stakes** from your place,
and go after it.
4 Yet there shall be a *space* **distance** between you and it,
about two thousand cubits by measure:
come **approach** not *near* unto it,
that ye may know the way by which ye must go:
for ye have not passed this way
heretofore **three yesters ago**.
5 And *Joshua Yah Shua* said unto the people,
Sanctify **Hallow** yourselves:
for to morrow
the LORD will do wonders **Yah Veh shall work marvels**
among you.
6 And *Joshua spake* **Yah Shua said** unto the priests, saying,
Take up **Lift** the ark of the covenant,
and pass over *before* **at the face of** the people.
And they *took up* **lifted** the ark of the covenant,
and went *before* **at the face of** the people.
7 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto *Joshua Yah Shua*,
This day *will* **shall** I begin to *magnify* **greaten** thee
in the *sight eyes* of all *Israel Yisra El*,
that they may know that,
as I was with *Moses Mosheh*, so I *will* **shall** be with thee.
8 And thou shalt *command* **misvah** the priests
that bear the ark of the covenant, saying,
When ye are come
to the *brink* **edge** of the water of *Jordan Yarden*,
ye shall stand still in *Jordan Yarden*.
9 And *Joshua Yah Shua*
said unto the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
Come *hither* **near**, and hear the words
of the **LORD Yah Veh your God Elohim**.
10 And *Joshua Yah Shua* said,
Hereby ye shall know
that the living *God El* is among you,
and that **in dispossessing**,
he *will without fail* **drive out shall dispossess**
from *before you* **your face**
the *Canaanites Kenaaniy*, and the *Hittites Hethiy*,
and the *Hivites Hivviy*, and the *Perizzites Perizziy*,
and the *Girgashites Girgashiy*, and the *Amorites Emoriy*,
and the *Jebusites Yebusiy*.
11 Behold,
the ark of the covenant of the *Lord Adonay* of all the earth
passeth over *before you* **at thy face** into *Jordan Yarden*.
12 Now therefore take you twelve men
out of the *tribes scions of Israel Yisra El*,
out of every *tribe* a **scion one** man.
13 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
as soon as the soles of the feet
of the priests that bear the ark of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
the *Lord Adonay* of all the earth,
shall rest in the waters of *Jordan Yarden*,
that the waters of *Jordan Yarden* shall be cut off
from — the waters that *come down* **descend** from above;
and they shall stand *upon an heap* — **one heap**.
14 And **so be** it came to pass,
when the people *removed* **pulled stakes** from their tents,
to pass over *Jordan Yarden*,
and the priests bearing the ark of the covenant
before **at the face of** the people;
And as they that bare the ark
were come unto *Jordan Yarden*,
and the feet of the priests that bare the ark
were dipped in the *brim* **edge** of the water,

YAH SHUA 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and they pull stakes from Shittim and come to Yarden
— he and all the sons of Yisra El;
and stay there overnight ere they pass over.
2 And so be it, at the end of three days,
the officers pass over midst the camp;
3 and they misvah the people, saying,
When you see
the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh your Elohim,
and the priests the Leviym bearing it,
then pull stakes from your place, and go after it;
4 there being a distance between you and it
— about two thousand cubits by measure:
approach not to it
so that you know the way to go:
for you passed not this way three yesters ago.
5 And Yah Shua says to the people,
Hallow yourselves:
for tomorrow Yah Veh works marvels among you.
6 And Yah Shua says to the priests, saying,
Lift the ark of the covenant
and pass over at the face of the people.
— and they lift the ark of the covenant,
and come at the face of the people.
7 And Yah Veh says to Yah Shua,
This day I begin to greaten you
in the eyes of all Yisra El,
so that they know,
as I became with Mosheh, thus I become with you;
8 misvah the priests bearing the ark of the covenant,
saying,
When you come to the edge of the water of Yarden,
stand still in Yarden.
9 And Yah Shua says to the sons of Yisra El,
Come near, hear the words of Yah Veh your Elohim!
10 And Yah Shua says,
Hereby you know that the living El is among you;
and in dispossessing, he dispossesses from your face
the Kenaaniy and the Hethiy and the Hivviy
and the Perizziy and the Girgashiy
and the Emoriy and the Yebusiy.
11 Behold,
the ark of the covenant of Adonay of all the earth
passes at your face into Yarden:
12 and now, take twelve men of the scions of Yisra El
— one man — one man per scion:
and so be it,
as soon as the soles of the feet of the priests
who bear the ark of Yah Veh
— the Adonay of all the earth
rest in the waters of Yarden,
the waters of Yarden
— the waters descending from above
cut off and stand — one heap.
13 And so be it,
when the people pull stakes from their tents
to pass over Yarden;
and the priests bear the ark of the covenant
at the face of the people;
14 as they who bear the ark come to Yarden;
and the feet of the priests who bear the ark
dip in the edge of the water

JOSHUA 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

(for Jordan overfloweth Yarden filleth over all his banks
all the time day of harvest,)

16 That the waters which came down from above
stood and rose up upon an heap – one heap
very far mighty far removed from the city Adam,
that is beside Zaretan Sarethan:
and those that came down descended
toward the sea of the plain, even the salt sea,
failed consummated, and were cut off:
and the people passed over right against Jericho Yericho.

17 And the priests
that bare the ark of the covenant of the LORD Yah Veh
stood firm established on dry ground a parched area
in the midst of Jordan Yarden,
and all the Israelites Yisra Eliy passed over
on dry ground a parched area,
until all the people goyim
were passed clean finished passing
over Jordan Yarden.

MEMORIAL STONES

4 And so be it came to pass,
when all the people goyim
were clean passed finished passing
over Jordan Yarden,
that the LORD Yah Veh
spake said unto Joshua Yah Shua, saying,
2 Take you twelve men out of the people,
out of every tribe a scion one man,
3 And command misvah ye them, saying,
Take Lift you hence out of the midst of Jordan Yarden,
out of the place
where the priests' feet stood firm established,
twelve stones,
and ye shall carry pass them over with you,
and leave them in the lodging place lodge,
where ye shall lodge stay overnight this night.
4 Then Joshua Yah Shua called the twelve men,
whom he had prepared
of the children sons of Israel Yisra El,
out of every tribe a scion one man:
5 And Joshua Yah Shua said unto them,
Pass over before at the face of the ark
of the LORD Yah Veh your God Elohim
into the midst of Jordan Yarden,
and take you up lift every man of you
a one stone upon his shoulder,
according unto the number of the tribes scions
of the children sons of Israel Yisra El:
6 That this may be a sign among you,
that when your children sons ask their fathers
in time to come to morrow, saying,
What mean ye by these stones?
7 Then ye shall answer say to them,
That the waters of Jordan Yarden were cut off
before at the face of the ark of the covenant
of the LORD Yah Veh;
when it passed over Jordan Yarden,
the waters of Jordan Yarden were cut off:
and these stones shall be for a memorial
unto the children sons of Israel for ever Yisra El eternally.
8 And the children sons of Israel did so Yisra El worked
as Joshua commanded Yah Shua misvahed,
and took up lifted twelve stones
out of the midst of Jordan Yarden,
as the LORD spake Yah Veh worded
unto Joshua Yah Shua,
according to the number of the tribes scions
of the children sons of Israel Yisra El,
and carried passed them over with them
unto the place where they lodged,
and laid them down set them there.
9 And Joshua set up Yah Shua raised twelve stones
in the midst of Jordan Yarden,
in the place where the feet of the priests
which bare the ark of the covenant stood:
and they are there unto this day.
10 For the priests which bare the ark
stood in the midst of Jordan Yarden,

YAH SHUA 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— for Yarden overflows its banks
all the days of harvest;

16 the waters coming from above stand and rise
— one heap
— mighty far removed
from Adam City beside Sarethan:
and they who descend
toward the sea of the plain, the salt sea,
are consummated and cut off:
and the people pass over right against Yericho:
and the priests
17 bearing the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
stand established on a parched area midst Yarden,
and all the Yisra Eliy pass over on a parched area,
until all the goyim finish passing over Yarden.

MEMORIAL STONES

4 And so be it,
when all the goyim finish passing over Yarden,
Yah Veh says to Yah Shua, saying,
2 Take twelve men from the people,
one man — one man per scion,
3 and misvah them, saying,
Lift twelve stones from midst Yarden
whence the feet of the priests stand established
and pass them over with you;
and leave them in the lodge
where you stay overnight this night.

4 Then Yah Shua
calls the twelve men of the sons of Yisra El
whom he had prepared
— one man — one man per scion:
5 and Yah Shua says to them,
Pass over
at the face of the ark of Yah Veh your Elohim
midst Yarden:
and every man of you lift one stone on his shoulder,
according to the number of the scions
of the sons of Yisra El
to be a sign among you:
6 so when your sons ask tomorrow, saying,
What mean you by these stones?
7 Then you say to them,
Because of the waters of Yarden being cut off
at the face of the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh;
when it passed over Yarden
the waters of Yarden being cut off:
and these stones become a memorial
to the sons of Yisra El eternally.

8 And the sons of Yisra El work as Yah Shua misvahed,
and lift twelve stones from midst Yarden
as Yah Veh worded to Yah Shua;
according to the number of the scions
of the sons of Yisra El;
and pass them over with them to the place they lodge
and set them there:
9 and Yah Shua raises twelve stones midst Yarden,
in the place where the feet of the priests
who bear the ark of the covenant stand:
and there they are to this day.
10 and the priests who bear the ark
stand midst Yarden

JOSHUA 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

until every thing **word** was finished
that the **LORD Yah Veh**
commanded Joshua **misvahed Yah Shua**
to speak **word** unto the people,
according to all that
Moses commanded Joshua **Mosheh misvahed Yah Shua:**
and the people hastened and passed over.
11 And **so be** it came to pass,
when all the people
were clean passed **finished passing** over,
that the ark of the **LORD Yah Veh** passed over,
and the priests, in the presence at the face of the people.
12 And the children **sons** of Reuben **Reu Ben**,
and the children **sons** of Gad,
and half the tribe **scion** of Manasseh **Menash Sheh**,
passed over **armed in ranks of five**
before at the face of the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**,
as Moses spake **Mosheh worded** unto them:
13 About forty thousand
prepared **equipped** for war **hostility**
passed over before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**
unto battle **war**, to the plains of Jericho **Yericho**.
14 On that day
the **LORD magnified Joshua Yah Veh** **greatened Yah Shua**
in the sight **eyes** of all Israel **Yisra El**;
and they feared **awed** him,
as they feared Moses **awed Mosheh**,
all the days of his life.
15 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
spake **said** unto Joshua **Yah Shua**, saying,
16 Command **Misvah** the priests
that bear the ark of the testimony **witness**,
that they come up **ascend** out of Jordan **Yarden**.
17 Joshua **Yah Shua** therefore
commanded **misvahed** the priests, saying,
Come **Ascend** ye up out of Jordan **Yarden**.
18 And **so be** it came to pass,
when the priests
that bare the ark of the covenant of the **LORD Yah Veh**
were come up **ascended**
out of the midst of Jordan **Yarden**,
and the soles of the priests' feet
were lifted up **torn** unto the dry land **parched area**,
that the waters of Jordan **Yarden**
returned unto their place,
and flowed **went** over all his banks,
as they did before **three yesters ago**.
19 And the people came up **ascended** out of Jordan **Yarden**
on the tenth day of the first month,
and encamped in Gilgal,
in the east border **from the rising** of Jericho **Yericho**.
20 And those twelve stones,
which they took out of Jordan **Yarden**,
did Joshua pitch **Yah Shua raised** in Gilgal.
21 And he spake **said** unto
the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**, saying,
When your children **sons** shall ask their fathers
in time to come **tomorrow**, saying,
What mean these stones?
22 Then ye shall let your children **sons** know, saying,
Israel came **Yisra El passed** over this Jordan **Yarden**
on dry land.
23 For the **LORD Yah Veh** your God **Elohim**
dried up **withered** the waters of Jordan **Yarden**
from before you **your face**, until ye were passed over,
as the **LORD Yah Veh** your God **Elohim**
did **worked** to the Red **Reed** sea,
which he dried up **withered** from before us **our face**,
until we were gone **passed** over:
24 That all the people of the earth might know
the hand of the **LORD Yah Veh**, that it is **mighty strong**:
that ye might fear **awe**
the **LORD Yah Veh** your God for ever **Elohim all days**.
5 And **so be** it came to pass,
when all the kings **sovereigns** of the Amorites **Emoriy**,
which were
on the side of Jordan westward **Yarden seaward**,

YAH SHUA 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

until every word Yah Veh misvahed to Yah Shua
to word to the people is finished
— according to all Mosheh misvahed Yah Shua:
and the people hasten and pass over.
11 And so be it,
when all the people finish passing over,
the ark of Yah Veh and the priests pass over
at the face of the people;
12 and the sons of Reu Ben and the sons of Gad
and half the scion of Menash Sheh
pass over in ranks of five
at the face of the sons of Yisra El
— as Mosheh worded them:
13 — about forty thousand equipped for hostility
pass over at the face of Yah Veh
to the plains of Jericho to war.
14 On that day
Yah Veh greatens Yah Shua in the eyes of all Yisra El;
and they awe him as they awed Mosheh
all the days of his life.
15 And Yah Veh says to Yah Shua, saying,
16 Misvah the priests who bear the ark of the witness
to ascend from Yarden.
17 — and Yah Shua misvahs the priests,
saying, Ascend from Yarden.
18 And so be it, when the priests
who bear the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
ascend from midst Yarden,
and the soles of the feet of the priests
tear to the parched area,
the waters of Yarden return to their place,
and go over all its banks as three yesters ago.
19 And the people ascend from Yarden
on the tenth of the first month,
and encamp in Gilgal by the rising of Jericho:
and those twelve stones they took from Yarden,
Yah Shua raises in Gilgal.
20 And he says to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
When your sons ask their fathers tomorrow, saying,
What mean these stones?
21 — then have your sons know, saying,
Yisra El passed over this Yarden on dry:
22 for Yah Veh your Elohim
withered the waters of Yarden
from your face until you passed over
— as Yah Veh your Elohim worked to the Reed sea,
which he withered from our face,
until we passed over:
23 so that all the people of the earth
know that the hand of Yah Veh is strong:
that you awe Yah Veh your Elohim all days.
5 And so be it,
when all the sovereigns of the Emoriy
on the seaward side of Yarden,

JOSHUA 5

exeGesus ready research BIBLE

and all the *kings* **sovereigns** of the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
which were by the sea,
heard that *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
had *dried up* **withered** the waters of *Jordan* **Yarden**
from *before* **the face of** the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
until we were passed over,
that their heart melted,
neither was there *spirit* **spirit/wind** in them any more,
because at the face of the children **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**.

SONS OF YISRA EL CIRCUMCISED

2 At that time
the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
Make **Work** thee *sharp knives* **swords of rocks**,
and *circumcise again* **return and circumcise**
the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El** the second time.

3 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
made **worked** him *sharp knives* **swords of rocks**,
and circumcised the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
at the hill of the foreskins
at Gibeah Haaraloth/Hill of the Foreskins.

4 And this is the *cause* **word**
why *Joshua* **Yah Shua** did circumcise:
All the people that *came* **went** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
that were males, *even* all the men of war,
died in the wilderness by the way,
after they *came* **went** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.

5 Now **Surely** all the people that *came out* **went**
were circumcised:
but all the people that were *born* **birthed** in the wilderness
by the way
as they *came forth* **went** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
them they had not circumcised.

6 For the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
walked forty years in the wilderness,
till all the *people* **goyim** that were men of war,
which *came* **went** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**, were consumed,
because they *obeyed* **hearkened** not
unto the voice of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
unto whom *the LORD* **sware** **Yah Veh** **oathed**
that he *would* **shall** not *shew* **have** them **see** the land,
which *the LORD* **sware** **Yah Veh** **oathed** unto their fathers
that he *would* **shall** give us,
a land that floweth with milk and honey.

7 And their *children* **sons**,
whom he raised up in their stead,
them *Joshua* **Yah Shua** circumcised:
for they were uncircumcised,
because they had not circumcised them by the way.

8 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when they had *done* **consummated**
circumcising all the *people* **goyim**,
that they *abode* **settled** in their places in the camp,
till they *were* **whole** **revived**.

9 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
This day have I rolled away
the reproach of *Egypt* **Misrayim** from off you.
Wherefore the name of the place is called Gilgal
unto this day.

THE MANNA CEASES

10 And the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
encamped in Gilgal,
and *kept* **worked** the *passover* **pasach**
on the fourteenth day of the month at *even* **evening**
in the plains of *Jericho* **Yericho**.

11 And they did eat of the *old corn* **leftovers** of the land
on the morrow after the *passover* **pasach**,
unleavened cakes **matsahs**,
and *parched* **corn** **scorched** in the selfsame day.

12 And the manna ceased on the morrow
after they had eaten of the *old corn* **leftovers** of the land;
neither had the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El** manna
any more;
but they did eat of the *fruit* **produce**
of the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan** that year.

YERICHO FALLS

13 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when *Joshua* **Yah Shua** was by *Jericho* **Yericho**,
that he lifted up his eyes and *looked* **saw**, and, behold,

YAH SHUA 5

exeGesus companion BIBLE

and all the sovereigns of the Kenaaniy by the sea,
hear that Yah Veh withered the waters of Yarden
from the face of the sons of Yisra El
until we pass over,
their heart melts:
there is no spirit/wind in them any more,
at the face of the sons of Yisra El.

SONS OF YISRA EL CIRCUMCISED

2 At that time Yah Veh said to Yah Shua,
Work swords of rocks,
and return and circumcise
the sons of Yisra El the second time.

3 And Yah Shua worked swords of rocks,
and circumcised the sons of Yisra El
at Gibeah Haaraloth/Hill of the Foreskins.

4 And because of this word Yah Shua circumcises:
because all the people coming from Misrayim
— the males — all the men of war
died in the wilderness by the way
coming from Misrayim.

5 Surely all the people coming, were circumcised:
but all the people
birthed in the wilderness by the way,
coming from Misrayim, are not circumcised:
forty years the sons of Yisra El
walked in the wilderness
— until all the goyim men of war,
coming from Misrayim, were consumed,
because they hearkened not to the voice of Yah Veh:
to whom Yah Veh oathed that they not see the land
Yah Veh oathed to their fathers to give us
— a land flowing with milk and honey:

7 and their sons, whom he raised in their stead,
Yah Shua circumcised:
for they were uncircumcised,
because they circumcised them not by the way.

8 And so be it,
when they consummate circumcising all the goyim,
they settle in their places in the camp
until they revive.

9 And Yah Veh says to Yah Shua,
This day I roll the reproach of Misrayim from off you.
— so the name of the place is called Gilgal
to this day.

THE MANNA CEASES

10 And the sons of Yisra El encamp in Gilgal
and work the pasach
on the fourteenth day of the month at evening
in the plains of Yericho:
and they eat of the leftovers of the land
on the morrow after the pasach
— matsahs, and scorched in the same day:
and on the morrow the manna ceases
after they eat of the leftovers of the land;
the sons of Yisra El have no more manna;
and they eat of the produce of the land of Kenaan that year.

YERICHO FALLS

13 And so be it, as Yah Shua is by Yericho,
he lifts his eyes and sees, and behold,

JOSHUA 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

there stood a man over against him
with his sword drawn in his hand:
and Joshua **Yah Shua** went unto him, and said unto him,
Art thou for us, or for our **adversaries tribulators**?
14 And he said, Nay; but as **captain governor**
of the *host of the LORD* **Yah Veh Sabaoth** am I now come.
And Joshua **Yah Shua** fell on his face to the earth,
and *did worship prostrated*, and said unto him,
15 What saith **wordeth** my *lord adoni* unto his servant?
And the **captain governor**
of the *LORD'S host* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
said unto Joshua **Yah Shua**,
Loose Pluck thy shoe from off thy foot;
for the place whereon thou standest is holy.
And Joshua *did so* **Yah Shua worked thus**.
6 Now Jericho **In shutting, Yericho** was *straitly* shut up
because from the face
of the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**:
none went out, and none came in.
2 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto Joshua **Yah Shua**,
See, I have given into thine hand *Jericho* **Yericho**,
and the *king sovereign* thereof,
and the *mighty men* of valour.
3 And ye shall *compass surround* the city,
all ye men of war,
and go round about the city *once one time*.
Thus shalt thou *do work* six days.
4 And seven priests shall bear *before at the face of* the ark
seven *trumpets shophars* of *rams' horns jubilee*:
and the seventh day
ye shall *compass surround* the city seven times,
and the priests shall *blow blast* with the *trumpets shophars*.
5 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
that when they
make a long blast with the ram's draw on the jubilee horn,
and when ye hear the *sound voice* of the *trumpet shophar*,
all the people shall shout with a great *shout shouting*;
and the wall of the city shall fall *down flat under it*,
and the people shall ascend *up*
every man straight before him.
6 And Joshua **Yah Shua** the son of Nun called the priests,
and said unto them, *Take up Lift* the ark of the covenant,
and let seven priests
bear seven *trumpets shophars* of *rams' horns jubilee*
before at the face of the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
7 And he said unto the people,
Pass on, and *compass surround* the city,
and let him that is *armed equipped* pass on
before at the face of the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
8 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when Joshua *had spoken* **Yah Shua said** unto the people,
that the seven priests
bearing the seven *trumpets shophars* of *rams' horns jubilee*
passed on *before the LORD at the face of* **Yah Veh**,
and *blew blast* with the *trumpets shophars*:
and the ark of the covenant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
followed walked after them.
9 And the *armed men went equipped walked*
before at the face of the priests
that *blew blast* with the *trumpets shophars*,
and the *rereward came gathering walked* after the ark,
the priests going on,
and *blowing blasting* with the *trumpets shophars*.
10 And Joshua **Yah Shua**
had *commanded misvahed* the people, saying,
Ye shall not shout,
nor *make any noise with let your voice be heard*,
neither shall any word *proceed go* out of your mouth,
until the day I *bid you say* shout; then shall ye shout.
11 So the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
compassed surrounded the city,
going about it *once one time*:
and they came into the camp,
and *lodged stayed overnight* in the camp.

YAH SHUA 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

a man standing opposite him
with his sword drawn in his hand:
and Yah Shua goes to him, and says to him,
Are you for us, or for our tribulators?
14 And he says, No:
but as governor of Yah Veh Sabaoth I now come.
And Yah Shua falls on his face to the earth,
and prostrates, and says to him,
What words my adoni to his servant?
15 And the governor of Yah Veh Sabaoth
says to Yah Shua,
Pluck your shoe from your foot;
for the place whereon you stand is holy.
— and thus Yah Shua works.
6 In shutting, Yericho is shut
from the face of the sons of Yisra El:
no one going, and no one coming.
2 And Yah Veh says to Yah Shua,
See, I give in your hand, Yericho
and the sovereign and the mighty of valour:
3 surround the city, all you men of war,
and go all around the city one time:
work thus six days:
4 and seven priests at the face of the ark
bear seven shophars of jubilee:
and the seventh day surround the city seven times,
and the priests blast with the shophars.
5 And so be it,
when they draw on the jubilee horn,
and when you hear the voice of the shophar,
all the people shout a great shout;
and the wall of the city falls under it,
and the people ascend, each straight in front of him.
6 And Yah Shua the son of Nun calls the priests,
and says to them, Lift the ark of the covenant.
— and seven priests bear seven shophars of jubilee
at the face of the ark of Yah Veh.
7 And he says to the people,
Pass on, and surround the city,
and he who is equipped
pass on at the face of the ark of Yah Veh.
8 And so be it,
when Yah Shua says to the people,
the seven priests bearing the seven shophars of jubilee
pass on at the face of Yah Veh,
and blast with the shophars:
and the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
walks after them;
9 and the equipped walk at the face of the priests
who blast the shophars;
and the gathering walks after the ark
going on and blasting with the shophars.
10 And Yah Shua misvahs the people, saying,
Neither shout, nor have your voice heard,
nor any word go from your mouth,
until the day I say, Shout! then, shout!
11 And the ark of Yah Veh surrounds the city,
going around one time:
and they come into the camp
and stay overnight in the camp.

JOSHUA 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 And *Joshua rose* **Yah Shua started** early in the morning,
and the priests
took up **lifted** the ark of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
13 And seven priests
bearing seven *trumpets* **shophars** of *rams' horns* **jubilee**
before **at the face of** the ark of the **LORD Yah Veh**
went on *continually* **in walking, walked,**
and blew **blast** with the *trumpets* **shophars:**
and the *armed men* **equipped** went before **from their face;**
but the *rereward* **gathering**
came after the ark of the **LORD Yah Veh,**
the priests going on,
and blowing **blasting** with the *trumpets* **shophars**.
14 And the second day
they *compassed* **surrounded** the city *once one time,*
and returned into the camp:
so they *did* **worked** six days.
15 And **so be** it *came to pass,* on the seventh day,
that they *rose* **started** early
about the *dawning* **ascending of the day dawn,**
and *compassed* **surrounded** the city
after the same *manner* **judgment** seven times:
only on that day
they *compassed* **surrounded** the city seven times.
16 And **so be** it *came to pass,* at the seventh time,
when the priests *blew* **blast** with the *trumpets* **shophars,**
Joshua Yah Shua said unto the people, Shout;
for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath given you the city.
17 And the city shall *be* **accused** **become devoted,**
even it, and all that are therein, to the **LORD Yah Veh:**
only *Rahab* **Rachab** the *harlot* **whore** shall live,
she and all that are with her in the house,
because she hid the *messengers* **angels** that we sent.
18 And ye, *in any wise* keep **only guard** yourselves
from the *accursed thing* **devoted,**
lest ye *make yourselves* **accused** **become devoted,**
when ye take of the *accursed thing* **devotement,**
and *make* **set** the camp of *Israel* **Yisra El**
a *curse* **devotement,** and trouble it.
19 But all the silver, and gold,
and *vessels* **instruments** of *brass* **copper** and iron,
are *consecrated* **holy** unto the **LORD Yah Veh:**
they shall come into the treasury of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
20 So the people shouted
when the priests *blew* **and blast** with the *trumpets* **shophars:**
and **so be** it *came to pass,*
when the people heard
the *sound* **voice** of the *trumpet* **shophar,**
and the people shouted with a great *shout* **shouting,**
that the wall fell *down* flat,
so that the people *went up* **ascended** into the city,
every man straight before him,
and they *took* **captured** the city.
21 And they *utterly* **destroyed** **devoted**
all that was in the city,
both man and woman,
young and old **from lad and to old man,**
and ox, and *sheep* **lamb,** and *ass* **he burro,**
with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword.
22 But *Joshua Yah Shua* had said
unto the two men that had spied out the *country* **land,**
Go into the *harlot's* **woman's** house,
and bring out thence the woman, and all that she hath,
as ye *sware* **oathed** unto her.
23 And the *young men* **lads** that were spies went in,
and brought out *Rahab* **Rachab,**
and her father, and her mother,
and her brethren, and all that she had;
and they brought out all her *kindred* **family,**
and left them without the camp of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
24 And they burnt the city with fire,
and all that was therein:
only the silver, and the gold,
and the *vessels* **instruments** of *brass* **copper** and of iron,

YAH SHUA 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 And Yah Shua starts early in the morning
and the priests lift the ark of Yah Veh:
13 and seven priests
bearing seven shophars of jubilee
at the face of the ark of Yah Veh
in walking, walk and blast with the shophars:
and the equipped go at their face;
and the gathering comes after the ark of Yah Veh
— going and blasting with the shophars.
14 And the second day
they surround the city one time,
and return to the camp:
thus they work six days.
15 And so be it, on the seventh day,
they start early about the ascending of dawn,
and surround the city
after the same judgment seven times:
except on that day
they surround the city seven times.
16 And so be it, the seventh time,
the priests blast the shophars,
and Yah Shua says to the people, Shout!
— for Yah Veh gives you the city!
17 And the city becomes devoted to Yah Veh
— it and all therein:
only, Rachab the whore lives
— she and all with her in the house,
because she hid the angels we sent.
18 And you, be on guard of the devoted,
lest you become devoted
when you take of the devotement;
and set the camp of Yisra El
a devotement, and trouble it.
19 But all the silver and gold
and instruments of copper and iron,
are holy to Yah Veh:
they come into the treasury of Yah Veh.
20 So the people shout and blast with the shophars:
and so be it,
when the people hear the voice of the shophar
and the people shout with a great shouting
the wall falls flat;
so that the people ascended into the city;
and every man straight in front of him
captures the city:
21 and they devote all that is in the city
— both man and woman — from lad to old man
and ox and lamb and he burro
with the mouth of the sword.
22 And to the two men who spied the land,
Yah Shua says,
Go into the house of the woman,
and bring out the woman and all she has,
as you oathed to her.
23 And the lads, the spies go in,
and bring out Rachab and her father and her mother
and her brothers and all she has;
and they bring out all her family,
and leave them outside the camp of Yisra El:
24 and they burn the city and all therein with fire:
only, they give the silver and the gold
and the instruments of copper and of iron

JOSHUA 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

25 they *put* gave into the treasury
of the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
And *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
saved *Rahab* **Rachab** the *harlot* **whore** alive,
and her father's household, and all that she had;
and she *dwelleth in Israel* **settleteth within Yisra El**
even unto this day;
because she hid the *messengers* **angels**,
which *Joshua* **Yah Shua** sent to spy out *Jericho* **Yericho**.
26 And *Joshua* **adjured Yah Shua** **oathed** them at that time,
saying,
Cursed be the man
before the LORD **from the face of Yah Veh**,
that riseth up and buildeth this city *Jericho* **Yericho**:
he shall lay the foundation thereof
in his *firstborn* **firstbirthed**,
and in his *youngest son* **lesser**
shall he *set up* **station** the *gates* **doors**.
27 So *the LORD* **Yah Veh** was with *Joshua* **Yah Shua**;
and his fame was *noised* **became**
throughout all the *country* **land**.

THE TREASON OF ACHAN

7 But the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
committed **treasoned** a *trespass* **treason**
in the *accursed thing* **devotement**:
for Achan, the son of *Carmi* **Karmi**,
the son of *Zabdi*, the son of *Zerah* **Zerach**,
of the *tribe* **rod** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
took of the *accursed thing* **devotement**:
and the *anger* **wrath** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
was kindled against the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
2 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** sent men from *Jericho* **Yericho**
to *Ai* **Ay**, which is beside *Bethaven* **Beth Aven**,
on the east *side* of *Bethel* **Beth El**,
and *spake* **said** unto them, saying,
Go up **Ascend** and *view* **spy** the *country* **land**.
And the men *went up* **ascended** and *viewed* **spied** **Ay**.
3 And they returned to *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
and said unto him, Let not all the people *go up* **ascend**;
but let about two or three thousand men
go up **ascend** and smite *Ai* **Ay**;
and make not all the people to labour thither;
for they are *but* **few**.
4 So there *went up* **ascended** thither of the people
about three thousand men:
and they fled *before* **from the face** of the men of *Ai* **Ay**.
5 And the men of *Ai* **Ay**
smote of them about thirty and six men:
for they *chased* **pursued** them
from *before* **the face** of the *gate* **portal**
even unto *Shebarim*,
and smote them in the *going down* **descent**:
wherefore the hearts of the people melted,
and became as water.
6 And *Joshua* **rent** **Yah Shua** **ripped** his clothes,
and fell to the earth upon his face
before **at the face** of the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
until the *eventide* **evening**,
he and the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and *put* **ascended** dust upon their heads.
7 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** said,
Alas **Aha**, O *Lord* **GOD** **Adonay** **Yah Veh**,
wherefore **in passing**, **why** hast thou at all brought *passed*
this people over *Jordan* **Yarden**,
to *deliver* **give** us into the hand of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
to destroy us?
would to **GOD** **if only** we had *been* **content** **willed**,
and *dwelt* **settled** on the other side *Jordan* **Yarden**!
8 O *Lord* **Adonay**, what shall I say,
when *Israel* **Yisra El** turneth **back** their *backs* **necks**
before **at the face** of their enemies!
9 For the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
and all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land shall hear of it,
and shall *environ* **surround** us *round*,
and cut off our name from the earth:
and what *wilt* **shalt** thou *do* **work** unto thy great name?
10 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
Get thee up **Arise**;

YAH SHUA 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

to the treasury of the house of Yah Veh.
25 And Yah Shua saves Rachab the whore alive
with the household of her father and all she has;
and she settles within Yisra El to this day;
because she hid the angels
Yah Shua sent to spy out Yericho.
26 And Yah Shua oathed them at that time, saying,
Cursed from the face of Yah Veh
be the man who rises and builds this city Yericho:
he lays his firstbirthed in the foundation thereof,
and in his lesser, he stations the doors.
27 So Yah Veh is with Yah Shua;
and his fame becomes throughout all the land.

THE TREASON OF ACHAN

7 But the sons of Yisra El
treason a treason in the devotement:
for Achan the son of Karmi the son of Zabdi
the son of Zerah of the rod of Yah Hudah
takes of the devotement:
and Yah Veh kindles his wrath
against the sons of Yisra El.
2 And Yah Shua sends men from Yericho to Ay
beside Beth Aven on the east of Beth El,
and says to them, saying,
Ascend and spy the land.
— and the men ascend and spy Ay.
3 And they return to Yah Shua, and say to him,
Ascend not all the people;
but ascend about two or three thousand men
to smite Ay;
so that not all the people labor there;
for they are few.
4 And three thousand men of the people ascend;
and they flee from the face of the men of Ay:
and the men of Ay
smite about thirty—six of their men:
for they pursue them from the face of the portal
to Shebarim;
and smite them in the descent:
and the hearts of the people melt
and become as water.
6 And Yah Shua rips his clothes,
and falls to the earth on his face
at the face of the ark of Yah Veh until the evening
— he and the elders of Yisra El;
and ascend dust on their heads.
7 And Yah Shua says, Aha,
O Adonay Yah Veh,
in passing, why pass this people over Yarden
to give us into the hand of the Emoriy to destroy us?
O that we had willed
and settled on the other side Yarden!
O Adonay, what say I,
when Yisra El turns their necks
from the face of their enemies?
For the Kenaaniy
and all the settlers of the land hear of it,
and surround us and cut off our name from the earth:
and what work you to your great name?
10 And Yah Veh says to Yah Shua, Rise!

JOSHUA 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

11 wherefore *liest fallest* thou thus upon thy face?
Israel Yisra El hath sinned,
and they have also *transgressed trespassed* my covenant
which I *commanded misvahed* them:
for they have even taken
of the *accursed thing devotement*,
and have also stolen, and *dissembled deceived* also,
and they have *put set* it
even among their own *stuff instruments*.
12 Therefore the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
could not *stand rise*
before at the face of their enemies,
but turned their *backs necks*
before at the face of their enemies,
because they were *accursed devoted*:
neither *will shall* I be with you *any more again*,
except unless ye *destroy desolate*
the *accursed devotement* from among you.
13 *Up Arise*, *sanctify hallow* the people, and say,
Sanctify Hallow yourselves against to morrow:
for thus saith
the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of *Israel Yisra El*,
There is an *accursed thing a devotement*
in the midst of thee, O *Israel Yisra El*:
thou canst not *stand rise*
before at the face of thine enemies,
until ye *take away turn aside*
the *accursed thing devotement* from among you.
14 In the morning therefore
ye shall *be brought approach*
according to your *tribes scions*:
and *so be* it *shall be*,
that the *tribe scion*
which the *LORD taketh Yah Veh captureth*
shall *come approach* according to the families thereof;
and the family
which the *LORD Yah Veh* shall *take capture*
shall *come approach* by households;
and the household
which the *LORD Yah Veh* shall *take capture*
shall *come man approach mighty* by *man mighty*.
15 And *so be* it *shall be*,
that he that is *taken captured*
with the *accursed thing devotement*
shall be burnt with fire, he and all that he hath:
because he hath *transgressed trespassed*
the covenant of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and because he hath *wrought worked* folly
in *Israel Yisra El*.
16 So *Joshua Yah Shua*
rose up started early in the morning,
and *brought Israel approached Yisra El*
by their *tribes scions*;
and the *tribe scion* of *Judah Yah Hudah*
was *taken captured*:
17 And he *brought approached*
the family of *Judah Yah Hudah*;
and he *took captured* the family of the *Zarhites Zerachiy*:
and he *brought approached*
the family of the *Zarhites Zerachiy*
man mighty by *man mighty*;
and *Zabdi* was *taken captured*:
18 And he *brought approached* his household
man mighty by *man mighty*;
and *Achan*, the son of *Carmi Karmi*,
the son of *Zabdi*, the son of *Zerah Zerach*,
of the *tribe rod* of *Judah Yah Hudah*, was *taken captured*.
19 And *Joshua Yah Shua* said unto *Achan*,
My son, *give set*, I *pray beseech* thee,
glory honour to the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*
of *Israel Yisra El*,
and *make confession give spread hands* unto him;
and tell me now what thou hast *done worked*;
hide conceal it not from me.
20 And *Achan* answered *Joshua Yah Shua*, and said,
Indeed Truly I have sinned against
the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of *Israel Yisra El*,
and thus and thus have I *done worked*:

YAH SHUA 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

What is this, that you fall on your face thus?
11 *Yisra El* sinned;
and they also trespassed my covenant
which I misvahed them:
and also take of the devotement,
and also steal; and also deceive;
and also set it among their own instruments:
12 and the sons of *Yisra El*
cannot rise at the face of their enemies;
but turn their necks from the face of their enemies
because they become devoted:
I add not to be with you again
unless you desolate the devotement among you.
13 Rise, hallow the people, and say,
Hallow yourselves against tomorrow:
for thus says *Yah Veh Elohim* of *Yisra El*,
A devotement *is* in your midst, O *Yisra El*:
you cannot rise at the face of your enemies,
until you turn aside the devotement among you.
14 In the morning, approach by your scions:
and so be it,
the scion *Yah Veh* captures
approaches by families:
and the family *Yah Veh* captures
approaches by households:
and the household *Yah Veh* captures
approaches mighty by mighty.
15 And so be it,
he who is captured with the devotement
is burnt with fire — he and all he has:
because he trespassed the covenant of *Yah Veh*
and because he has worked folly in *Yisra El*.
16 So *Yah Shua* starts early in the morning,
and approaches *Yisra El* by their scions;
and captures the scion of *Yah Hudah*:
17 and he approaches the family of *Yah Hudah*;
and captures the family of the *Zerachiy*:
and he approaches the family of the *Zerachiy*
mighty by *mighty*;
and captures *Zabdi*:
18 and he approaches his household
mighty by *mighty*;
and captures *Achan*, the son of *Karmi*,
the son of *Zabdi*, the son of *Zerach*,
of the rod of *Yah Hudah*.
19 And *Yah Shua* says to *Achan*,
My son, I beseech you,
set honor to *Yah Veh Elohim* of *Yisra El*,
and give spread hands to him;
and tell me now what you worked;
conceal it not from me.
20 And *Achan* answers *Yah Shua*, and says,
Truly I sinned against *Yah Veh Elohim* of *Yisra El*,
and thus and thus I worked:

JOSHUA 7, 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 21 When I saw among the spoils
a goodly *Babylonish garment* **Babel mighty mantle**,
and two hundred shekels of silver,
and a wedge **one tongue** of gold of fifty shekels weight,
then I *coveted* **desired** them, and took them;
and, behold,
they are hid in the earth in the midst of my tent,
and the silver under it.
- 22 So *Joshua* **Yah Shua** sent *messengers* **angels**,
and they ran unto the tent;
and, behold, it was hid in his tent, and the silver under it.
- 23 And they took them out of the midst of the tent,
and brought them unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
and unto all the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and *laid* **poured** them out
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**.
- 24 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua**, and all *Israel* **Yisra El** with him,
took Achan the son of *Zerah* **Zerach**,
and the silver, and the *garment* **mighty mantle**,
and the wedge **tongue** of gold,
and his sons, and his daughters,
and his oxen, and his *asses* **he burros**,
and his *sheep* **flock**, and his tent, and all that he had:
and they *brought* **ascended** them
unto the valley of Achor.
- 25 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** said, Why hast thou troubled us?
the LORD **Yah Veh** shall trouble thee this day.
And all *Israel* **Yisra El** stoned him with stones,
and burned them with fire,
after they had stoned them with stones.
- 26 And they raised over him
a great heap of stones unto this day.
So *the LORD* **Yah Veh** turned
from the *fierceness* **fuming** of his *anger* **wrath**.
Wherefore the name of that place was called,
The valley of Achor, unto this day.

SONS OF YISRA EL CONQUER AY

- 8** And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
Fear **Awe** not, neither be thou *dismayed* **terrified**:
take all the people of war with thee,
and arise, *go up* **ascend** to *Ai* **Ay**: see,
I have given into thy hand the *king* **sovereign** of *Ai* **Ay**,
and his people, and his city, and his land:
- 2 And thou shalt *do* **work** to *Ai* **Ay** and her *king* **sovereign**
as thou *didst* **workedst** unto *Jericho* **Yericho**
and her *king* **sovereign**:
only the spoil thereof, and the *cattle* **animals** thereof,
shall ye *take for a prey* **plunder ye** unto yourselves:
lay thee an ambush **lurk** for the city behind it.
- 3 So *Joshua* **Yah Shua** arose, and all the people of war,
to *go up* **ascend** against *Ai* **Ay**:
and *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
chose out thirty thousand mighty men of valour,
and sent them away by night.
- 4 And he *commanded* **misvahed** them, saying, *Behold* **See**,
ye shall *lie in wait* **lurk** against the city,
even behind the city:
go not very **mighty** far from the city,
but be ye all *ready* **prepared**:
- 5 And I, and all the people that are with me,
will **shall** approach unto the city:
and *so be* it *shall come to pass*,
when they *come out against* **go to confront** us,
as at the first,
that we *will* **shall** flee *before them* **from their face**,
(For they *will come out* **shall go** after us)
till we have *drawn* **torn** them from the city;
for they *will* **shall** say,
They flee *before us* **from our face**, as at the first:
therefore we *will* **shall** flee *before them* **from their face**.
- 7 Then ye shall rise up from the *ambush* **lurk**,
and *seize upon* **possess** the city:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
will deliver **shall give** it into your hand.

YAH SHUA 7, 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 21 when I saw among the spoils
a goodly Babel mighty mantle
and two hundred shekels of silver
and one tongue of gold of fifty shekels weight,
then I desire them, and take them;
and behold, they are hid in the earth midst my tent,
and the silver under it.
- 22 So Yah Shua sends angels, and they run to the tent;
and behold,
it is hidden in his tent with the silver under it:
and they take them from midst the tent,
and bring them to Yah Shua
and to all the sons of Yisra El;
and pour them out at the face of Yah Veh.
- 24 And Yah Shua and all Yisra El with him
take Achan the son of Zerach
and the silver and the mighty mantle
and the tongue of gold
and his sons and his daughters
and his oxen and his he burros and his flock
and his tent and all he has;
and ascend them to the valley of Achor.
- 25 And Yah Shua says, Why trouble you us?
Yah Veh troubles you this day.
And all Yisra El stones him with stones,
and burns them with fire
after they stone them with stones.
- 26 And they raise over him
a great heap of stones to this day.
Thus Yah Veh turns from the fuming of his wrath.
So the name of that place is called,
The Valley of Achor, to this day.

SONS OF YISRA EL CONQUER AY

- 8** And Yah Veh says to Yah Shua,
Neither awe nor terrify:
take all the people of war with you, and rise;
ascend to Ay:
see, I give into your hand
the sovereign of Ay and his people
and his city and his land:
work to Ay and her sovereign
as you worked to Yericho and her sovereign:
only, plunder the spoil thereof and the animals thereof
to yourselves:
lurk for the city behind it.
- 3 So Yah Shua and all the people of war
rise to ascend against Ay:
and Yah Shua
chooses thirty thousand mighty men of valour,
and sends them away by night.
- 4 And he misvahs them, saying,
See, lurk against the city behind the city:
go not mighty far from the city, and prepare
— all of you:
- 5 and I and all the people with me approach the city:
and so be it, when they come to confront us,
we flee from their face, as at first
— and they come after us
until we tear them from the city;
for, they say, They flee our face, as at first:
and we flee their face:
- 7 then rise from the lurk and possess the city:
for Yah Veh your Elohim gives it into your hand.

JOSHUA 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 And **so be** it shall be,
when ye have *taken* **apprehended** the city,
that ye shall *set* **burn** the city on fire:
according to the *commandment word*
of the *LORD Yah Veh*
shall ye *do* **work**.
See, I have *commanded* **misvahed** you.
9 *Joshua* therefore **Yah Shua** sent them *forth*:
and they went to *lie in ambush* **lurk**,
and *abode* **settled** between *Bethel* **Beth El** and *Ai* **Ay**,
on the *west side* **seaward** of *Ai* **Ay**:
but *Joshua* **lodged** **Yah Shua** **stayed overnight** that night
among the people.
10 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
rose up **started** early in the morning,
and *numbered* **mustered** the people,
and *went up* **ascended**, he and the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
before **at the face of** the people to *Ai* **Ay**.
11 And all the people, *even the people* of war
that were with him,
went up **ascended**, and *drew nigh* **near**,
and came before the city,
and *pitched* **encamped** on the *north side* of *Ai* **Ay**:
now there was a valley between them and *Ai* **Ay**.
12 And he took about five thousand men,
and set them to *lie in ambush* **lurk**
between *Bethel* **Beth El** and *Ai* **Ay**,
on the *west side* **seaward** of the city.
13 And when they had set the people,
even all the host **camp** that was on the north of the city,
and their *liers in wait* **heel trippers**
on the *west* **seaward** of the city,
Joshua **Yah Shua** went that night
into the midst of the valley.
14 And **so be** it came to pass,
when the *king* **sovereign** of *Ai* **Ay** saw it,
that they hastened and *rose up* **started** early,
and the men of the city went out
against Israel **to meet** **Yisra El** *to battle war*,
he and all his people,
at a *time appointed* **season**, *before* **at the face of** the plain;
but he *wist* **knew** not
that there were *liers in ambush* **lurkers** against him
behind the city.
15 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** and all *Israel* **Yisra El**
made as if they were beaten **touched**
before them **at their face**,
and fled by the way of the wilderness.
16 And all the people that were in *Ai* **Ay**
were called together **cried** to pursue after them:
and they pursued after *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
and were *drawn* **traced** away from the city.
17 And there was **survived** not a man *left*
in *Ai* **Ay** or *Bethel* **Beth El**,
that went not out after *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and they left the city open,
and pursued after *Israel* **Yisra El**.
18 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
Stretch out the *spear* **dart** that is in thy hand
toward *Ai* **Ay**;
for I *will* **shall** give it into thine hand.
And *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
stretched out the *spear* **dart** that he had in his hand
toward the *city* **Ay**.
19 And the *ambush* **lurkers**
arose quickly out of their place,
and they ran as soon as he had *stretched out* **spread** his hand:
and they entered into the city, and *took* **captured** it,
and hastened and *set* **burned** the city on fire.
20 And when the men of *Ai* **looked** **Ay** **faced** behind them,
they saw, and, behold,
the smoke of the city ascended *up to heaven* **the heavens**,
and they had no *power* **hand** to flee
this way **here** or *that way* **there**:
and the people that fled to the wilderness
turned back upon the pursuers.
21 And when *Joshua* **Yah Shua** and all *Israel* **Yisra El**
saw that the *ambush* **lurkers** had *taken* **captured** the city,

YAH SHUA 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 And so be it,
when you apprehend the city, burn the city on fire:
work according to the word of Yah Veh.
See, I misvah you.
9 — and Yah Shua sends them:
and they go to lurk
and settle between Beth El and Ay, seaward of Ay:
and that night
Yah Shua stays overnight among the people.
10 And Yah Shua starts early in the morning
and musters the people and ascends
— he and the elders of Yisra El
at the face of the people to Ay:
11 and all the people of war ascend with him
and draw near and come in front of the city
and encamp on the north of Ay:
and a valley is between them and Ay.
12 And he takes about five thousand men
and sets them to lurk
between Beth El and Ay seaward of the city:
13 and they set the people — all the camp
north of the city,
and their heel trippers seaward of the city,
and Yah Shua goes that night midst the valley.
14 And so be it, when the sovereign of Ay sees,
they hasten and start early
and the men of the city go out to meet Yisra El to war
— he and all his people,
at a season, at the face of the plain;
but he knows not
there are lurkers against him behind the city.
15 And Yah Shua and all Yisra El
are as touched at their face;
and flee by the way of the wilderness:
16 and all the people in Ay cry out to pursue them:
and they pursue Yah Shua
and tear away from the city.
17 not a man survives in Ay or Beth El,
who goes not after Yisra El:
they leave the city open and pursue after Yisra El.
18 And Yah Veh says to Yah Shua,
Spread the dart in your hand toward Ay;
for I give it into your hand.
— and Yah Shua spreads the dart in his hand
toward Ay.
19 And the lurkers rise quickly from their place,
and run as soon as he spreads his hand:
and they enter the city and capture it;
and hasten and burn the city with fire:
20 and when the men of Ay face behind them,
they see, and behold,
the smoke of the city ascends to the heavens,
and they have no hand to flee — here or there:
and the people fleeing to the wilderness
turn back against the pursuers.
21 And Yah Shua and all Yisra El
see the lurkers capture the city

JOSHUA 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and that the smoke of the city ascended,
then they turned *again* **back**,
and *slew* **smote** the men of *Ai* **Ay**.
22 And the other *issued* **went** out of the city
against **to meet** them;
so they were in the midst of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
some **these** on this side, and *some* **those** on that side:
and they smote them,
so that they let none of them remain or escape
so that no escapee survived.
23 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Ai* **Ay**
they *took* **apprehended** alive,
and *brought* **approached** him to *Joshua* **Yah Shua**.
24 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when *Israel* **Yisra El**
had *made an end of slaying* **finished slaughtering**
all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Ai* **Ay** in the field,
in the wilderness wherein they *chased* **pursued** them,
and when they were all fallen
on the *edge* **mouth** of the sword,
until they were consumed,
that all the *Israelites* **Yisra Eliy** returned unto *Ai* **Ay**,
and smote it with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword.
25 And **so be** it was,
that all that fell that day, both of men and women,
were twelve thousand, *even* all the men of *Ai* **Ay**.
26 For *Joshua drew* **Yah Shua turned** not his hand back,
wherewith he *stretched out* **spread** the spear,
until he had *utterly destroyed* **devoted**
all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Ai* **Ay**.
27 Only the *cattle* **animals** and the spoil of that city
Israel took for a prey **Yisra El plundered** unto themselves,
according unto the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
which he *commanded Joshua* **misvahed Yah Shua**.
28 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** burnt *Ai* **Ay**,
and *made set* it an heap for *ever* **eternity**,
even a desolation unto this day.
29 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Ai* **Ay**
he hanged on a tree until *eventide* **evening time**:
and as soon as the sun was down,
Joshua commanded **Yah Shua misvahed**
that they should *take* **bring** his carcass
down from the tree,
and cast it
at the *entering* **opening** of the *gate* **portal** of the city,
and raise thereon a great heap of stones,
that remaineth unto this day.

THE ALTAR OF YAH SHUA TO YAH VEH

30 Then *Joshua* **Yah Shua** built *an* **a sacrifice** altar
unto the *LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
in mount Ebal,
31 As *Moses* **Mosheh** the servant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded **misvahed** the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
as it is *written* **inscribed**
in the *book* **scroll** of the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
an **a sacrifice** altar of *whole* **complete** stones,
over which no man hath *lift up* any **waved** iron:
and they *offered* **holocausted** thereon
burnt offerings **holocausts** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and sacrificed *peace offerings* **shelamim**.
32 And he *wrote* **inscribed** there upon the stones
a *copy* **duplicate** of the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
which he *wrote* **inscribed**
in the *presence* **face** of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
33 And all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and their elders, and officers, and their judges,
stood on this side the ark and on that side
before the priests the *Levites* **Leviym**,
which bare the ark of the covenant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
as well the *stranger* **sojourner**,
as *he that was born among them* **the native**;
half of them *over against* **toward** mount Gerizim,
and half of them *over against* **toward** mount Ebal;
as *Moses* **Mosheh** the servant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
had *commanded before* **first misvahed**,
that they should bless the people of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
34 And afterward
he *read* **called out** all the words of the *law* **torah**,

YAH SHUA 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the smoke of the city ascending,
they turn back and smite the men of *Ay*:
22 and the others come from the city to meet them;
thus they *are* midst *Yisra El*
— these on this side and those on that side:
and they smite them,
so that no escapee survives.
23 And they apprehend the sovereign of *Ay* alive,
and approach him to *Yah Shua*.
24 And so be it,
Yisra El finishes slaughtering
all the settlers of *Ay* in the field
— in the wilderness where they pursue them;
— they all fall on the mouth of the sword;
until they are consumed:
and all the *Yisra Eliy* return to *Ay*
and smite it with the mouth of the sword.
25 And so be it,
all who fall that day, both of men and women,
are twelve thousand, all the men of *Ay*.
26 For *Yah Shua* turned not back his hand
wherewith he spread the spear,
until he devoted all the settlers of *Ay*:
27 only, the animals and the spoil of that city
Yisra El plundered to themselves,
according to the word *Yah Veh* misvahed *Yah Shua*.
28 And *Yah Shua* burns *Ay*,
and sets it a heap for eternity
— a desolation to this day:
29 and he hangs the sovereign of *Ay*
on a tree until evening time:
and as soon as the sun is down,
Yah Shua misvahs
them to bring his carcass down from the tree
and cast it at the opening of the portal of the city;
and raises thereon a great heap of stones, to this day.

THE ALTAR OF YAH SHUA TO YAH VEH

30 *Yah Shua* builds a sacrifice altar
to *Yah Veh Elohim* of *Yisra El* in mount Ebal,
31 as *Mosheh* the servant of *Yah Veh*
misvahed the sons of *Yisra El*
— as inscribed in the scroll of the torah of *Mosheh*
— a sacrifice altar of complete stones
over which no man ever waved an iron:
and they holocaust holocausts to *Yah Veh* thereon,
and sacrifice shelamim:
32 and there on the stones
he inscribes a duplicate of the torah of *Mosheh*
which he inscribes in the face of the sons of *Yisra El*.
33 And all *Yisra El*
and their elders and officers and their judges
stand on this side the ark and on that side
in front of the priests the *Leviym*,
who bear the ark of the covenant of *Yah Veh*
— as the sojourner, as the native;
half of them toward mount Gerizim
and half of them toward mount Ebal;
as *Mosheh* the servant of *Yah Veh* first misvahed,
to bless the people of *Yisra El*.
34 And afterward
he calls out all the words of the torah

JOSHUA 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the blessings and *cursings* **abasements**,
according to all that is *written* **inscribed**
in the *book* **scroll** of the *law* **torah**.

35 There was not a word
of all that *Moses commanded* **Mosheh misvahed**,
which *Joshua read* **Yah Shua called not out**
before **in front of** all the congregation of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
with the women, and the *little ones* **toddlers**,
and the *strangers* **sojourners**
that *were conversant* **walked** among them.

PEOPLES UNITE AGAINST YAH SHUA AND YISRA EL

9 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when all the *kings* **sovereigns**
which were on this side *Jordan* **Yarden**,
in the *hills* **mountains**, and in the *valleys* **lowlands**,
and in all the *coasts* **havens** of the great sea
over *against* **toward** Lebanon,
the *Hittite* **Hethiy**, and the *Amorite* **Emoriy**,
the *Canaanite* **Kenaaniy**, the *Perizzite* **Perizziy**,
the *Hivite* **Hivviy**, and the *Jebsite* **Yebusiy**, heard thereof;

2 That they gathered themselves together,
to fight with *Joshua* **Yah Shua** and with *Israel* **Yisra El**,
with one *accord* **mouth**.

THE STRATEGY OF THE SETTLERS OF GIBON

3 And when the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Gibeon* **Gibon**
heard what *Joshua* **Yah Shua** had *done* **worked**
unto *Jericho* **Yericho** and to *Ai* **Ay**,

4 They did work *wilily* **strategy**,
and went and made as if they had been ambassadors,
and took *old sacks* **worn out saqs**
upon their *asses* **he burros**,

5 and wine *bottles* **skins**,
old worn out, and *rent* **split**, and *bound up* **bandaged**;

6 And *old worn out* shoes
and *clouted* **patched** upon their feet,
and *old garments* **worn out clothes** upon them;
and all the bread of their *provision* **hunt**
was *dry* **withered** and *mouldy* **crumbly**.

7 And they went to *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
unto the camp at *Gilgal*,
and said unto him, and to the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
We be come from a far *country* **land**:
now therefore *make* **cut** ye a *league* **covenant** with us.

8 And the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
said unto the *Hivites* **Hivviy**,
Peradventure **Perhaps** ye *dwell* **settle** among us;
and how shall we *make* **cut** a *league* **covenant** with you?

9 And they said unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
We are **be** thy servants.
And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** said unto them,
Who are ye? and from whence come ye?

10 And they said unto him,
From a *very far country* **mighty far land**
thy servants are come
because of the name

of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**:
for we have heard the fame of him,
and all that he *did* **worked** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,

11 And all that he *did* **worked**
to the two *kings* **sovereigns** of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
that were beyond *Jordan* **Yarden**,
to *Sihon king* **Sichon sovereign** of Heshbon,
and to *Og king* **sovereign** of Bashan,
which was at Ashtaroth.

12 Wherefore our elders
and all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of our *country* **land**
spake **said** to us, saying,
Take *victuals* with you **hunt in your hand** for the journey,
and go to meet them, and say unto them,

13 We are *your* **be** thy servants:
therefore now *make* **cut** ye a *league* **covenant** with us.

14 This our bread we took *hot* **warm** for our provision
out of our houses
on the day we *came forth* **went** to go unto you;
but now, behold,

15 it is *dry* **withered**, and it is *mouldy* **crumbled**:
And these *bottles* **skins** of wine,
which we filled, were new;

YAH SHUA 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— the blessings and abasements
according to all inscribed in the scroll of the torah:
35 not a word, of all Mosheh misvahed,
is not called out by Yah Shua
in front of all the congregation of Yisra El
— with the women, and the toddlers,
and the sojourners walking among them.

PEOPLES UNITE AGAINST YAH SHUA AND YISRA EL

9 And so be it,
all the sovereigns on this side Yarden
— in the mountains and in the lowlands
and in all the havens of the great sea toward Lebanon
— the Hethiy and the Emoriy
the Kenaaniy the Perizziy
the Hivviy and the Yebusiy hear thereof;
2 and they gather themselves together
to fight Yah Shua and Yisra El with one mouth.

THE STRATEGY OF THE SETTLERS OF GIBON

3 And the settlers of Gibon
hear what Yah Shua worked to Yericho and to Ay,
4 and they work strategy, and come,
and make out to be ambassadors;
and take worn out saqs on their he burros,
and worn out and split and bandaged wine skins,
5 and worn out and patched shoes on their feet,
and worn out clothes on themselves;
and all the bread of their hunt
is withered and crumbly.

6 And they go to Yah Shua to the camp at Gilgal,
and say to him, and to the men of Yisra El,
We come from a far land:
and now cut a covenant with us.

7 And the men of Yisra El say to the Hivviy,
Perhaps you settle among us;
and how cut we a covenant with you?

8 And they say to Yah Shua, We, your servants.

And Yah Shua says to them,
Who are you? Whence come you?

9 And they say to him,
From a mighty far land your servants come;
because of the name of Yah Veh your Elohim:
for we hear of his fame,
and all he works in Misrayim,
and all he works

10 to the two sovereigns of the Emoriy beyond Yarden
— to Sichon sovereign of Heshbon,
and to Og sovereign of Bashan at Ashtaroth:
and our elders and all the settlers of our land
say to us, saying,

11 Take hunt in your hand for the journey
and go to meet them, and say to them,
We, your servants:
and now cut covenant with us.

12 We took this bread from our houses, warm
for our provision
on the day we came to come to you;
and now, behold, it withered and crumbled:
and we filled these skins of wine, new;

JOSHUA 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and, behold, they be *rent split*:
and these our *garments clothes* and our shoes
are become *old worn*
by reason of the very long **the mighty great** journey.
14 And the men took of their *virtuals hunt*,
and asked not *counsel* at the mouth of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
15 And *Joshua Yah Shua*
made peace worked shalom with them,
and *made cut a league covenant* with them, to let them live:
and the *princes hierarchs* of the *congregation witness*
sware oathed unto them.
SONS OF YISRA EL HONOUR THEIR OATH
16 And **so be** it came to pass, at the end of three days
after they had *made cut a league covenant* with them,
that they heard that they were their neighbours,
and that they *dwelt settled* among them.
17 And the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*
journeyed pulled stakes,
and came unto their cities on the third day.
Now their cities were *Gibeon Gibon*,
and *Chephirah Kephirah*, and Beeroth,
and *Kirjathjearim Kirjath Arim*.
18 And the *children sons of Israel Yisra El* smote them not,
because the *princes hierarchs* of the *congregation witness*
had *sworn oathed* unto them
by the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel Yisra El*.
And all the *congregation witness*
murmured against the *princes hierarchs*.
19 But all the *princes hierarchs*
said unto all the *congregation witness*,
We have *sworn oathed* unto them
by the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel Yisra El*:
now therefore we **may are** not able to touch them.
20 This we *will do shall work* to them;
we *will shall* even let them live,
lest *wrath rage* be upon us,
because of the oath which we *sware oathed* unto them.
21 And the *princes hierarchs* said unto them,
Let them live;
but let them be *hewers choppers* of *wood timber*
and *drawers bailers* of water
unto all the *congregation witness*;
as the *princes hierarchs* had *promised worded* them.
22 And *Joshua Yah Shua* called for them,
and he *spake worded* unto them, saying,
Wherefore have ye *beguiled deceived* us, saying,
We are very **mighty** far from you;
when ye *dwelt settle* among us?
23 Now therefore ye are cursed,
and there shall none of you be *freed cut off*
from being *bondmen servants*,
and *hewers choppers* of *wood timber*
and *drawers bailers* of water
for the house of my **God Elohim**.
24 And they answered *Joshua Yah Shua*, and said,
In telling, Because it was *certainly* told thy servants,
how that the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**
commanded misvahed his servant *Moses Mosheh*
to give you all the land,
and to *destroy desolate*
all the *inhabitants settlers* of the land
from *before you thy face*,
therefore we were *sore afraid mighty awed*
of our *lives because of you souls at thy face*,
and have *done worked* this *thing word*.
25 And now, behold, we are in thine hand:
as it seemeth good and *right straight*
unto thee **in thine eyes** to *do work* unto us, *do work*.
26 And so *did worked* he unto them,
and delivered them out of the hand
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
that they *slew slaughtered* them not.
27 And *Joshua made Yah Shua gave* them that day
hewers choppers of *wood timber*
and *drawers bailers* of water
for the *congregation witness*,
and for the **sacrifice** altar of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
even unto this day, in the place which he should choose.

YAH SHUA 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and behold, they split:
and these our clothes and our shoes;
worn by the mighty great journey.
14 And the men take of their hunt,
and ask not at the mouth of Yah Veh:
and Yah Shua works shalom with them
and cuts a covenant with them that they live:
and the hierarchs of the witness oath to them.
SONS OF YISRA EL HONOR THEIR OATH
16 And so be it, at the end of three days,
after they cut a covenant with them,
they hear they are neighbours settling among them.
17 And the sons of Yisra El pull stakes
and come to their cities on the third day:
and their cities are Gibon
and Kephirah and Beeroth and Kirjath Arim:
18 and the sons of Yisra El smite them not
because the hierarchs of the witness
oathed to them by Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El.
And all the witness murmurs against the hierarchs.
19 And all the hierarchs say to all the witness,
We oathed to them by Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
and now we are not able to touch them.
20 This we work to them — that they live
lest rage be on us,
because of the oath we oathed to them.
21 And the hierarchs say to them,
They live;
and become choppers of timber and bailers of water
to all the witness;
as the hierarchs had worded them.
22 And Yah Shua calls for them, and words to them,
saying, Why deceived you us,
saying, We are mighty far from you
— when you settle among us?
23 Now you are cursed,
and none of you is cut off from being servants
and choppers of timber and bailers of water
for the house of my Elohim.
24 And they answer Yah Shua, and say,
In telling, your servants were told
how Yah Veh your Elohim
misvahed his servant Mosheh to give you all the land,
and to desolate all the settlers of the land
from your face;
and we awed mightily of our souls at your face
and worked this word:
25 and now, behold, we are in your hand:
and as seems good and straight in your eyes to work,
work.
26 And thus he works them,
and delivers them
from the hand of the sons of Yisra El
that they not slaughter them:
27 And Yah Shua gives them that day
to become choppers of timber and bailers of water
for the witness and for the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh
— even to this day in the place he chooses.

JOSHUA 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE DAY THE SUN STOOD STILL

10 Now **And so be** it came to pass,
when Adonizedec **Adoni Sedeq**
king **sovereign** of Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**
had heard how **Joshua Yah Shua** had taken **Ai** captured **Ay**,
and had **utterly destroyed** devoted it;
as he had **done worked**
to Jericho **Yericho** and her **king sovereign**,
so he had **done worked** to **Ai Ay** and her **king sovereign**;
and how the **inhabitants settlers** of **Gibeon Gibon**
had made peace **did shalam** with **Israel Yisra El**,
and were among them;

2 That they **feared greatly** **awed mightily**,
because **Gibeon Gibon** was a great city,
as one of the royal cities,
and because it was greater than **Ai Ay**,
and all the men thereof were mighty.

3 Wherefore **Adonizedec Adoni Sedeq**,
king **sovereign** of Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**,
sent unto Hoham **king sovereign** of Hebron,
and unto Piram **king sovereign** of **Jarmuth Yarmuth**,
and unto **Japhia Yaphia**, **king sovereign** of Lachish,
and unto **Debir** **king sovereign** of Eglon, saying,
4 **Come up Ascend** unto me, and help me,
that we may smite **Gibeon Gibon**:
for it **hath made peace did shalam** with **Joshua Yah Shua**
and with the **children sons** of **Israel Yisra El**.

5 Therefore
the five **kings sovereigns** of the **Amorites Emoriy**,
the **king sovereign** of Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**,
the **king sovereign** of Hebron,
the **king sovereign** of **Jarmuth Yarmuth**,
the **king sovereign** of Lachish,
the **king sovereign** of Eglon,
gathered themselves together, and **went up ascended**,
they and all their **hosts camps**,
and encamped **before Gibeon** **against Gibon**,
and **made war** **against fought** it.

6 And the men of **Gibeon Gibon**
sent unto **Joshua Yah Shua** to the camp to Gilgal,
saying, Slack not thy hand from thy servants;
come up ascend to us quickly, and save us, and help us:
for all the **kings sovereigns** of the **Amorites Emoriy**
that **dwelt settle** in the mountains
are gathered together against us.

7 So **Joshua Yah Shua** ascended from Gilgal,
he, and all the people of war with him,
and all the mighty **men** of valour.

8 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto **Joshua Yah Shua**,
Fear Awe them not:
for I have **delivered given** them into thine hand;
there shall not a man of them
stand **before thee at thy face**.

9 **Joshua Yah Shua** therefore came unto them suddenly,
and **went up ascended** from Gilgal all night.

10 And the **LORD discomfited Yah Veh** **agitated** them
before Israel at the face of Yisra El,
and **slew smote** them with a great **slaughter stroke**
at **Gibeon Gibon**,
and **chased pursued** them along the way
that goeth up to Bethhoron **of the ascent of Beth Horon**,
and smote them to **Azekah Azeqah**,
and unto **Makkedah Maqqedah**.

11 And **so be** it came to pass,
as they fled from **before Israel the face of Yisra El**,
and were in
the **going down to Bethhoron** **descent of Beth Horon**,
that the **LORD Yah Veh** cast down great stones
from **heaven the heavens**
upon them unto **Azekah Azeqah**, and they died:
they were **more greater** which died with hailstones
than they whom the **children sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
slew slaughtered with the sword.

12 Then **spake Joshua worded Yah Shua**
to the **LORD Yah Veh** in the day
when the **LORD Yah Veh**
delivered up gave the **Amorites Emoriy**

YAH SHUA 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE DAY THE SUN STOOD STILL

10 And so be it,
Adoni Sedeq sovereign of Yeru Shalem
hears that Yah Shua captured Ay and devoted it
— as he worked to Yericho and her sovereign
thus he worked to Ay and her sovereign
— and how the settlers of Gibon shalam with Yisra El
and are among them:
and they awe mightily
because Gibon is a great city
— as one of the royal cities;
and because it is greater than Ay;
and all the men thereof are mighty.

2

3 And Adoni Sedeq sovereign of Yeru Shalem
sends to Hoham sovereign of Hebron
and to Piram sovereign of Yarmuth
and to Yaphia sovereign of Lachish
and to Debir sovereign of Eglon, saying,
4 Ascend to me and help me smite Gibon:
for it shalams with Yah Shua
and with the sons of Yisra El.

5 So the five sovereigns of the Emoriy
— the sovereign of Yeru Shalem,
the sovereign of Hebron,
the sovereign of Yarmuth,
the sovereign of Lachish,
the sovereign of Eglon,
gather together and ascend
— they and all their camps
and encamp against Gibon and fight.

6 And the men of Gibon
send to Yah Shua to the camp to Gilgal,
saying, Slack not your hand from your servants;
ascend to us quickly, and save us, and help us:
for all the sovereigns of the Emoriy
settling in the mountains
gather together against us.

7 So Yah Shua ascends from Gilgal
— he and all the people of war with him
and all the mighty of valour.

8 And Yah Veh says to Yah Shua, Awe them not:
for I give them into your hand;
not a man of them stands at your face.

9 And Yah Shua comes to them suddenly
and ascends from Gilgal all night:
10 and Yah Veh agitates them at the face of Yisra El
and smites them with a great stroke at Gibon;
and pursues them
along the way of the ascent of Beth Horon
and smites them to Azeqah and to Maqqedah.

11 And so be it,
as they flee the face of Yisra El
and are in the descent of Beth Horon,
Yah Veh casts great stones from the heavens
on them to Azeqah, and they die:
and they who died with hailstones
are greater than they
whom the sons of Yisra El slaughtered with the sword.

12 Yah Shua words to Yah Veh
in the day Yah Veh gives the Emoriy

JOSHUA 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

before **at the face of** the children sons of Israel **Yisra El**,
and he said in the *sight eyes* of Israel **Yisra El**,
Sun, stand thou still upon *Gibeon* **Gibon**;
and thou, Moon, in the valley of *Ajalon* **Ayalon**.
13 And the sun stood still, and the moon stayed,
until the *people* **goyim** had avenged themselves
upon their enemies.
Is not this *written inscribed*
in the *book scroll* of *Jasher* **the straight?**
So the sun stood still in the midst of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and hastened not to go down
about a *whole* **an integrious** day.
14 And there was no day like that
before at the face of it or after it,
that *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hearkened unto the voice of a man:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** fought for *Israel* **Yisra El**.
15 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** returned,
and all *Israel* **Yisra El** with him, unto the camp to Gilgal.
FIVE SOVEREIGNS HIDE
16 But these five *kings* **sovereigns** fled,
and hid themselves in a cave at *Makkedah* **Maqqedah**.
17 And it was told *Joshua* **Yah Shua**, saying,
The five *kings* **sovereigns** are found
hid in a cave at *Makkedah* **Maqqedah**.
18 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** said,
Roll great stones upon the mouth of the cave,
and *set* **oversee** men by it for to *keep* **guard** them:
19 And stay ye not, but pursue after your enemies,
and *smite the hindmost of* **curtail** them;
and *smite* **give** them not to enter into their cities:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
hath *delivered* **given** them into your hand.
20 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
when *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
and the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
had *made an end of slaying* **finished** them **off**
with a *very* **mighty** great *slaughter* **stroke**,
till they were consumed,
that the *rest* **survivors** which *remained* **survived** of them
entered into *fenced* **fortified** cities.
21 And all the people returned to the camp
to *Joshua* **Yah Shua** at *Makkedah* **Maqqedah**
in *peace* **shalom**:
none *moved* **pointened** his tongue
against any *man* of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
FIVE SOVEREIGNS SLAUGHTERED
22 Then said *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
Open the mouth of the cave,
and bring out those five *kings* **sovereigns** unto me
out of the cave.
23 And they *did* **worked** so,
and brought forth those five *kings* **sovereigns** unto him
out of the cave,
the *king* **sovereign** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
the *king* **sovereign** of *Hebron*,
the *king* **sovereign** of *Jarmuth* **Yarmuth**,
the *king* **sovereign** of *Lachish*,
and the *king* **sovereign** of *Eglon*.
24 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
when they brought out those *kings* **sovereigns**
unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
that *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
called for all the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and said unto the *captains* **commanders**
of the men of war
which went with him, *Come near* **Approach**,
put set your feet
upon the necks of these *kings* **sovereigns**.
And they *came near* **approached**,
and *put set* their feet upon the necks of them.
25 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** said unto them,
Fear **Awe** not, nor be *dismayed* **terrified**,
be *strong* **strengthened** and of *good* **courage** **encouraged**:
for thus shall *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
do **work** to all your enemies against whom ye fight.

YAH SHUA 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

at the face of the sons of Yisra El:
and he says in the eyes of Yisra El,
Sun, stand still on Gibon!
and, Moon, in the valley of Ayalon!
13 And the sun stands still and the moon stays
until the goyim avenge themselves on their enemies.
Is not this inscribed in the scroll of the straight?
So the sun stands still midst the heavens,
and hastens to not go down about an integrious day.
14 And there became no day like that
at the face of it or after it,
that Yah Veh hearkened to the voice of a man:
for Yah Veh fights for Yisra El.
15 And Yah Shua returns
— and all Yisra El with him,
to the camp to Gilgal.
FIVE SOVEREIGNS HIDE
16 And these five sovereigns flee
and hide in a cave at Maqqedah.
17 And Yah Shua is told, saying,
The five sovereigns are found
hidden in a cave at Maqqedah.
18 And Yah Shua says,
Roll great stones on the mouth of the cave,
and oversee men by it to guard them:
19 and you stay not;
but pursue your enemies and curtail them;
give them not to enter into their cities:
for Yah Veh your Elohim gives them into your hand.
20 And so be it,
Yah Shua and the sons of Yisra El finish them off
with a mighty great stroke
until they are consumed;
and the surviving survivors enter into fortified cities:
21 and all the people return to Yah Shua
to the camp at Maqqedah in shalom:
none pointen his tongue
against any man of the sons of Yisra El.
FIVE SOVEREIGNS SLAUGHTERED
22 Yah Shua says,
Open the mouth of the cave,
and bring those five sovereigns to me from the cave.
23 — and thus they work,
and bring those five sovereigns to him from the cave:
the sovereign of Yeru Shalem,
the sovereign of Hebron,
the sovereign of Yarmuth,
the sovereign of Lachish,
and the sovereign of Eglon.
24 And so be it,
they bring those sovereigns to Yah Shua;
and Yah Shua calls for all the men of Yisra El,
and says to the commanders of the men of war
who come with him,
Approach!
Set your feet on the necks of these sovereigns.
— and they approach
and set their feet on their necks.
25 And Yah Shua says to them,
Neither awe nor terrify! Strengthen! Encourage!
For thus Yah Veh works
to all your enemies whom you fight.

JOSHUA 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 26 And afterward *Joshua* **Yah Shua** smote them,
and *slew* **deathified** them, and hanged them on five trees:
and they were hanging upon the trees until the evening.
- 27 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
at the time of the going down of the sun,
that *Joshua* **commanded** **Yah Shua** **misvahed**,
and they *took* **brought** them down off the trees,
and cast them into the cave wherein they had been hid,
and *laid* **set** great stones in the cave's mouth,
which remain until this very day.
- 28 And that day
Joshua **took** **Makkedah** **Yah Shua** **captured** **Maqqedah**,
and smote it with the **edge** **mouth** of the sword,
and the **king** **sovereign** thereof
he *utterly* **destroyed** **devoted**,
them, and all the souls that were therein;
he let none remain **no survivors** **survived**:
and he *did* **worked**
to the **king** **sovereign** of **Makkedah** **Maqqedah**
as he *did* **worked**
unto the **king** **sovereign** of **Jericho** **Yericho**.
- YAH SHUA CONQUERS SOUTHERN PELESHETH**
- 29 Then *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
passed from **Makkedah** **Maqqedah**,
and all **Israel** **Yisra El** with him, unto Libnah,
and fought against Libnah:
- 30 And the **LORD** *delivered* **Yah Veh** **gave** it also,
and the **king** **sovereign** thereof,
into the hand of **Israel** **Yisra El**;
and he smote it with the **edge** **mouth** of the sword,
and all the souls that were therein;
he let none remain in it **no survivors** **survived**;
but *did* **worked** unto the **king** **sovereign** thereof
as he *did* **worked**
unto the **king** **sovereign** of **Jericho** **Yericho**.
- 31 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** passed from Libnah,
and all **Israel** **Yisra El** with him, unto Lachish,
and encamped against it, and fought against it:
- 32 And the **LORD** *delivered* **Yah Veh** **gave** Lachish
into the hand of **Israel** **Yisra El**,
which *took* **captured** it on the second day,
and smote it with the **edge** **mouth** of the sword,
and all the souls that were therein,
according to all that he had *done* **worked** to Libnah.
- 33 Then **Horam** **king** **sovereign** of Gezer
came up **ascended** to help Lachish;
and *Joshua* **Yah Shua** smote him and his people,
until *he had left him none remaining* **no survivors** **survived**.
- 34 And from Lachish *Joshua* **Yah Shua** passed unto Eglon,
and all **Israel** **Yisra El** with him;
and they encamped against it, and fought against it:
- 35 And they *took* **captured** it on that day,
and smote it with the **edge** **mouth** of the sword,
and all the souls that were therein
he *utterly* **destroyed** **devoted** that day,
according to all that he had *done* **worked** to Lachish.
- 36 And *Joshua* **went up** **Yah Shua** **ascended** from Eglon,
and all **Israel** **Yisra El** with him, unto Hebron;
and they fought against it:
- 37 And they *took* **captured** it,
and smote it with the **edge** **mouth** of the sword,
and the **king** **sovereign** thereof, and all the cities thereof,
and all the souls that were therein;
he left none remaining **no survivors** **survived**,
according to all that he had *done* **worked** to Eglon;
but *destroyed it* **utterly** **devoted it**,
and all the souls that were therein.
- 38 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** returned,
and all **Israel** **Yisra El** with him, to Debir;
and fought against it:
- 39 And he *took* **captured** it,
and the **king** **sovereign** thereof, and all the cities thereof;
and they smote them with the **edge** **mouth** of the sword,
and *utterly* **destroyed** **devoted** all the souls
that were therein;
he left none remaining **no survivors** **survived**:

YAH SHUA 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 26 And afterward Yah Shua smites them
and deathifies them and hangs them on five trees:
and they hang on the trees until the evening:
and so be it,
at the time of the going down of the sun
Yah Shua misvahs:
and they bring them down off the trees
and cast them into the cave wherein they hid;
and set great stones in the mouth of the cave
until this very day.
- 28 And that day Yah Shua captures Maqqedah,
and smites it with the mouth of the sword;
and devotes the sovereign thereof
— them, and all the souls therein;
— no survivors survive:
and he works to the sovereign of Maqqedah
as he worked to the sovereign of Yericho.
- YAH SHUA CONQUERS SOUTHERN PELESHETH**
- 29 And Yah Shua and all Yisra El
pass from Maqqedah to Libnah;
and fights Libnah:
- 30 and Yah Veh also gives it and the sovereign thereof
into the hand of Yisra El;
and he smites it and all the souls therein
with the mouth of the sword;
no survivors survive:
and he works to the sovereign thereof
as he worked to the sovereign of Yericho.
- 31 And Yah Shua and all Yisra El
passes from Libnah to Lachish;
and encamps against it, and fights against it:
- 32 and Yah Veh gives Lachish into the hand of Yisra El
— who capture it on the second day
and smites it and all the souls therein
with the mouth of the sword
according to all he worked to Libnah.
- 33 Horam sovereign of Gezer
ascends to help Lachish;
and Yah Shua smites him and his people
until no survivors survive.
- 34 And from Lachish,
Yah Shua and all Yisra El pass to Eglon;
and they encamp against it, and fight against it:
and they capture it that day
and smite it with the mouth of the sword
— and he devotes all the souls therein that day,
according to all he worked to Lachish.
- 36 And Yah Shua and all Yisra El
ascend from Eglon, to Hebron;
and they fight against it
and capture it:
and smite it and the sovereign thereof
and all the cities thereof and all the souls therein
with the mouth of the sword; no survivors survive:
according to all he worked to Eglon;
but devoted it and all the souls therein.
- 38 And Yah Shua and all Yisra El
return to Debir; and fights against it:
- 39 and he captures it
and the sovereign thereof and all the cities thereof;
and they smite them with the mouth of the sword,
and devote all the souls therein;
no survivors survive:

JOSHUA 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

as he had *done* **worked** to Hebron,
so he *did* **worked** to Debir,
and to the *king* **sovereign** thereof;
as he had *done* **worked** also to Libnah,
and to her *king* **sovereign**.
40 So *Joshua* **Yah Shua** smote all the *country* **land**
of the *hills* **mountains**, and of the south,
and of the *vale* **lowland**, and of the springs,
and all their *kings* **sovereigns**:
he left none remaining **no survivors survived**,
but *utterly destroyed all that breathed* **devoted all having breath**,
as the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El**
commanded **misvahed**.
41 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** smote them
from *Kadeshbarnea* **Qadesh Barnea**
even unto *Gaza* **Azzah**,
and all the *country* **land** of Goshen,
even unto *Gibeon* **Gibon**.
42 And all these *kings* **sovereigns** and their land
did *Joshua* **take** **Yah Shua capture** at one time,
because the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El**
fought for *Israel* **Yisra El**.
43 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** returned,
and all *Israel* **Yisra El** with him, unto the camp to Gilgal.
YAH SHUA CONQUERS NORTHERN PELESHETH
11 And **so be** it came to pass,
when *Jabin king* **Yabyn sovereign** of *Hazor* **Hasor**
had heard those *things*,
that he sent to *Jobab* **Yobab**, *king* **sovereign** of Madon,
and to the *king* **sovereign** of Shimron,
and to the *king* **sovereign** of Achshaph,
2 And to the *kings* **sovereigns**
that were on the north of the mountains,
and of the plains south of *Chinneroth* **Kinneroth**,
and in the *valley* **lowland**,
and in the *borders* **heights** of Dor *on the west* **seaward**,
3 And to the *Canaanite* **Kenaaniy**
on from the east **rising** and *on the west* **seaward**,
and to the *Amorite* **Emoriy**, and the *Hittite* **Hethiy**,
and the *Perizzite* **Perizziy**, and the *Jebusite* **Yebusiy**
in the mountains,
and to the *Hivite* **Hivviy** under Hermon
in the land of *Mizpeh* **Mispeh**.
4 And they went out,
they and all their *hosts* **camp**s with them, much people,
even as the sand that is upon the sea *shore* **lip**
in *multitude* **abundance**,
with horses and chariots *very* **mighty** many.
5 And when all these *kings* **sovereigns**
were *met together* **congregated**,
they came and *pitched* **encamped** together
at the waters of Merom, to fight against *Israel* **Yisra El**.
6 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
Be Awe not afraid because of them **their face**:
for to morrow about this time
will **shall** I *deliver* **give** them up
all *slain before* **Israel** **pierced at the face of Yisra El**:
thou shalt *hough* **hamstring** their horses,
and burn their chariots with fire.
7 So *Joshua* **Yah Shua** came,
and all the people of war with him,
against them by the waters of Merom suddenly;
and they fell upon them.
8 And the *LORD* **delivered** **Yah Veh** gave them
into the hand of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
who smote them,
and *chased* **pursued** them unto great *Zidon* **Sidon**,
and unto *Misrephothmaim* **Misrephoth Mayim**,
and unto the valley of *Mizpeh* **Mispeh**
eastward **from the rising**;
and they smote them,
until they left them *none remaining* **no survivors survived**.
9 And *Joshua* **did** **Yah Shua** **worked** unto them
as the *LORD* **bade** **Yah Veh** said to him:
he *houghed* **hamstrung** their horses,
and burnt their chariots with fire.
10 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** at that time turned back,
and took *Hazor* **captured** **Hasor**,

YAH SHUA 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

as he worked to Hebron,
thus he works to Debir and to the sovereign thereof
as he also worked to Libnah and to her sovereign.
40 So Yah Shua smites all the land of the mountains
and of the south and of the lowland and of the springs
and all their sovereigns:
no survivors survive,
but devotes all having breath,
as Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El misvahed.
41 And Yah Shua smites them
from Qadesh Barnea to Azzah
and all the land of Goshen to Gibon:
42 and Yah Shua captures
all these sovereigns and their land at one time;
because Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El fights for Yisra El.
43 And Yah Shua and all Yisra El
return to the camp to Gilgal.

YAH SHUA CONQUERS NORTHERN PELESHETH

11 And so be it,
Yabyn sovereign of Hasor hears,
and he sends to Yobab sovereign of Madon
and to the sovereign of Shimron
and to the sovereign of Achshaph;
2 and to the sovereigns
north of the mountains
and of the plains south of Kinneroth
and in the lowland
and in the heights of Dor seaward;
3 and to the Kenaaniy from the rising and seaward;
and to the Emoriy and the Hethiy
and the Perizziy and the Yebusiy in the mountains;
and to the Hivviy under Hermon
in the land of Mizpeh:
4 and they go
— they with all their camps — many people
— as the sand on the sea lip in abundance
with horses and chariots; mighty many:
5 and all these sovereigns congregate;
and come and encamp together
at the waters of Merom
to fight against Yisra El.
6 And Yah Veh says to Yah Shua,
Awe not their face:
for tomorrow about this time
I give them all pierced at the face of Yisra El:
hamstring their horses
and burn their chariots with fire.
7 So Yah Shua, with all the people of war,
come against them suddenly by the waters of Merom;
and fell them:
8 and Yah Veh gives them into the hand of Yisra El
who smites them and pursues them
to great Sidon and to Misrephoth Mayim
and to the valley of Mizpeh from the rising;
they smite them until no survivors survive:
9 and Yah Shua works to them
as Yah Veh said to him:
he hamstring their horses
and burns their chariots with fire.
10 And at that time,
Yah Shua turns back and captures Hasor;

JOSHUA 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and smote the *king* **sovereign** thereof with the sword:
for *Hazor beforetime* **Hasor formerly**
was the head of all those *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**.
11 And they smote all the souls that were therein
with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword,
utterly destroying **devoting** them:
there was *not any left to breathe* **no survivor having breath**:
and he burnt *Hazor* **Hasor** with fire.
12 And all the cities of those *kings* **sovereigns**,
and all the *kings* **sovereigns** of them,
did Joshua take **Yah Shua capture**
and smote them with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword,
and he *utterly destroyed* **devoted** them,
as *Moses* **Mosheh** the servant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded **misvahed**.
13 But *as for* the cities
that stood still *in their strength* **on their heap**,
Israel **Yisra El** burned none of them,
save Hazor **except Hasor** only;
that *did Joshua* **Yah Shua** burn.
14 And all the spoil of these cities, and the *cattle* **animals**,
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
took for a prey **plundered** unto themselves;
but every *man* **human**
they smote with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword,
until they had *destroyed* **desolated** them,
neither left they any *to breathe* **survivor having breath**.
15 *As the LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh** his servant,
so *did Moses* **command Joshua** **Mosheh misvahed Yah Shua**,
and so *did Joshua* **Yah Shua** **worked**;
he left *nothing undone* **no word turned aside**
of all that the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**.
16 So *Joshua* **Yah Shua** took all that land,
the *hills* **mountains**, and all the south *country* **land**,
and all the land of Goshen, and the *valley* **lowland**,
and the plain, and the mountain of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and the *valley of the same* **lowland**;
17 *Even* from the mount Halak,
that *goeth up* **ascendeth** to Seir,
even unto *Baalgad* **Baal Gad**
in the valley of Lebanon under mount Hermon:
and all their *kings* **sovereigns** he *took* **captured**,
and smote them, and *slew* **deathified** them.
18 *Joshua made* **Yah Shua worked** war
a long time **many days**
with all those *kings* **sovereigns**.
19 There was not a city that *made peace* **did shalam**
with the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
save the Hivites **Hivviy**
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Gibeon* **Gibon**:
all *other* they took in *battle* **war**.
20 For it was of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
to *harden* **callous** their hearts,
that they should *come against Israel* **meet Yisra El**
in battle **war**,
that he might *destroy* **devote** them *utterly*,
and that they might have no *favour* **supplication**,
but that he might *destroy* them,
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded Moses **misvahed Mosheh**.
21 And at that time came *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
and cut off the *Anakims* **Anaqiy** from the mountains,
from Hebron, from Debir, from Anab,
and from all the mountains of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and from all the mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
Joshua destroyed **Yah Shua devoted** them *utterly*
with their cities.
22 There was none of the *Anakims* **left** **Anaqiy** **survived**
in the land of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
only in *Gaza* **Azzah**, in Gath, and in Ashdod,
there *remained* **survived**.
23 So *Joshua* **Yah Shua** took the whole land,
according to all that the *LORD* **said** **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh**;
and *Joshua* **Yah Shua** gave it for an inheritance
unto *Israel* **Yisra El**

YAH SHUA 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and smites the sovereign thereof with the sword:
for formerly
Hasor was the head of all those sovereigndoms.
11 And they smite all the souls therein
with the mouth of the sword
— devoting them — no survivor having breath:
and he burns Hasor with fire:
12 and Yah Shua
captures all the cities of those sovereigns
and all their sovereigns,
and smites them with the mouth of the sword
— devoting them
as Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh misvahed.
13 And Yisra El burns none of the cities
standing by their heap
— except Hasor only, Yah Shua burns:
14 and the sons of Yisra El plunder
all the spoil of these cities and the animals
to themselves;
only, they smite every human
with the mouth of the sword until they desolate:
they leave no survivor having breath.
15 As Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh his servant,
thus Mosheh misvahed Yah Shua,
and thus Yah Shua works;
of all Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh
he leaves no word turned aside.
16 And Yah Shua takes all that land
— the mountains and all the south land
and all the land of Goshen and the lowland
and the plain and the mountain of Yisra El
and the lowland
17 — from mount Halak ascending to Seir
to Baal Gad in the valley of Lebanon
under mount Hermon:
and captures all their sovereigns
and smites them and deathifies them.
18 Yah Shua works war many days
with all those sovereigns
19 — not a city shalams with the sons of Yisra El,
except the Hivviy the settlers of Gibon:
they take all in war.
20 For it was of Yah Veh to callous their hearts
— to meet Yisra El in war — to devote them,
so that they have no supplication
but that he destroy them
— as Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh.
21 And at that time,
Yah Shua comes
and cuts off the Anaqiy from the mountains
— from Hebron, from Debir, from Anab,
and from all the mountains of Yah Hudah,
and from all the mountains of Yisra El:
Yah Shua devotes them with their cities.
22 None of the Anaqiy survive
in the land of the sons of Yisra El:
only, in Azzah, in Gath, and in Ashdod
they survive.
23 So Yah Shua takes the whole land,
according to all Yah Veh worded to Mosheh;
and Yah Shua gives it to Yisra El for an inheritance

JOSHUA 11, 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

according to their *divisions* allotment
by their *tribes* scions.

And the land rested from war.

WORDS OF THE DAYS OF THE DEFEATED SOVEREIGNS

- 12 Now these are the *kings* sovereigns of the land,
which the *children* sons of Israel **Yisra El** smote,
and possessed their land on the other side *Jordan* **Yarden**
toward **from** the rising of the sun,
from the *river* **wadi** Arnon unto mount Hermon,
and all the plain *on the east* **from the rising**:
2 *Sihon* **Sichon**, *king* sovereign of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
who dwelt settled in Heshbon,
and ruled reigning from Aroer,
which is upon the *bank* lip of the *river* **wadi** Arnon,
and from the middle of the *river* **wadi**,
and from half *Gilead* **Gilad**,
even unto the *river* **Jabbok** **wadi** Yabboq,
which is the border of the *children* sons of Ammon;
3 And from the plain to the sea of *Chinneroth* **Kinneroth**
on the east **from the rising**, and unto the sea of the plain,
even the salt sea *on the east* **from the rising**,
the way to *Bethjeshimoth* **Beth Ha Yeshimoth**;
and *from the south* southward,
under *Ashdothpishgah* **Ashdoth Pishgah**:
4 And the *coast* border of Og, *king* sovereign of Bashan,
which was of the remnant of the *giants* **Rephaim**,
that dwelt settled at Ashtaroth and at Edrei,
5 And reigned in mount Hermon,
and in *Salchah* **Salchah**, and in all Bashan,
unto the border of the *Geshurites* **Geshuriy**
and the *Maachathites* **Maachahiy**, and half *Gilead* **Gilad**,
the border of *Sihon* *king* **Sichon** sovereign of Heshbon.
6 Them did
Moses **Mosheh** the servant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
and the *children* sons of Israel **Yisra El** smite:
and *Moses* **Mosheh** the servant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
gave it for a possession unto the *Reubenites* **Reu Beni**,
and the *Gadites* **Gadiy**,
and the half *tribe* scion of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**.
7 And these are the *kings* sovereigns of the *country* land
which *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
and the *children* sons of Israel **Yisra El**
smote on this side *Jordan* *on the west* **Yarden seaward**,
from *Baalgad* **Baal Gad** in the valley of Lebanon
even unto the mount Halak,
that goeth up ascendeth to Seir;
which *Joshua* **Yah Shua** gave
unto the *tribes* scions of Israel **Yisra El**
for a possession according to their *divisions* allotment;
8 In the mountains, and in the *valleys* lowlands,
and in the plains, and in the springs,
and in the wilderness, and in the south *country* land;
the *Hittites* **Hethiy**, the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
and the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**, the *Perizzites* **Perizziy**,
the *Hivites* **Hivviy**, and the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**:
9 The *king* sovereign of *Jericho* **Yericho**, one;
the *king* sovereign of *Ai* **Ay**,
which is beside *Bethel* **Beth El**, one;
10 The *king* sovereign of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, one;
the *king* sovereign of *Hebron*, one;
11 The *king* sovereign of *Jarmuth* **Yarmuth**, one;
the *king* sovereign of *Lachish*, one;
12 The *king* sovereign of *Eglon*, one;
the *king* sovereign of *Gezer*, one;
13 The *king* sovereign of *Debir*, one;
the *king* sovereign of *Geder*, one;
14 The *king* sovereign of *Hormah*, one;
the *king* sovereign of *Arad*, one;
15 The *king* sovereign of *Libnah*, one;
the *king* sovereign of *Adullam*, one;
16 The *king* sovereign of *Makkedah* **Maqqedah**, one;
the *king* sovereign of *Bethel* **Beth El**, one;
17 The *king* sovereign of *Tappuah* **Tappuach**, one;
the *king* sovereign of *Hepher*, one;
18 The *king* sovereign of *Aphek* **Apheq**, one;
the *king* sovereign of *Lasharon*, one;
19 The *king* sovereign of *Madon*, one;
the *king* sovereign of *Hazor* **Hasor**, one;

YAH SHUA 11, 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

according to their allotment by their scions.
— and the land rests from war.

WORDS OF THE DAYS OF THE DEFEATED SOVEREIGNS

- 12 Now these are the sovereigns of the land
the sons of Yisra El smite,
and possess their land beyond Yarden
from the rising of the sun
— from the wadi Arnon to mount Hermon
and all the plain from the rising.
2 Sichon sovereign of the Emoriy settles in Heshbon:
reigning from Aroer on the lip of the wadi Arnon
and from the middle of the wadi
and from half Gilad to the wadi Yabboq
— the border of the sons of Ammon;
3 and from the plain to the sea of Kinneroth
from the rising and to the sea of the plain
— the salt sea from the rising,
the way to Beth Ha Yeshimoth;
and southward under Ashdoth Pishgah:
4 and the border of Og, sovereign of Bashan,
of the remnant of the Rephaim,
settling at Ashtaroth and at Edrei;
5 and reigning in mount Hermon
and in Salchah and in all Bashan;
to the border of the Geshuriy
and the Maachahiy and half Gilad
— the border of Sichon sovereign of Heshbon.
6 Them Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh
and the sons of Yisra El smite:
and Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh
gives it for a possession to the Reu Beni
and the Gadiy and the half scion of Menash Sheh.
7 And these are the sovereigns of the land
Yah Shua and the sons of Yisra El
smite on this side Yarden seaward
— from Baal Gad in the valley of Lebanon
to the mount Halak ascending to Seir;
Yah Shua gives to the scions of Yisra El
for a possession according to their allotment:
8 in the mountains and in the lowlands
and in the plains and in the springs
and in the wilderness and in the south land;
the Hethiy, the Emoriy, and the Kenaaniy,
the Perizziy, the Hivviy, and the Yebusiy:
9 the sovereign of Yericho, one;
the sovereign of Ay beside Beth El, one;
10 the sovereign of Yeru Shalem, one;
the sovereign of Hebron, one;
11 the sovereign of Yarmuth, one;
the sovereign of Lachish, one;
12 the sovereign of Eglon, one;
the sovereign of Gezer, one;
13 the sovereign of Debir, one;
the sovereign of Geder, one;
14 the sovereign of Hormah, one;
the sovereign of Arad, one;
15 the sovereign of Libnah, one;
the sovereign of Adullam, one;
16 the sovereign of Maqqedah, one;
the sovereign of Beth El, one;
17 the sovereign of Tappuach, one;
the sovereign of Hepher, one;
18 the sovereign of Apheq, one;
the sovereign of Lasharon, one;
19 the sovereign of Madon, one;
the sovereign of Hasor, one;

JOSHUA 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

20 The king **sovereign** of *Shimronmeron* **Shimron Meron**, one;
the king **sovereign** of Achshaph, one;
21 The king **sovereign** of Taanach, one;
the king **sovereign** of Megiddo, one;
22 The king **sovereign** of *Kedesh* **Qedesh**, one;
the king **sovereign** of *Jokneam* **Yoqne Am**
of *Carmel* **Karmel**, one;
23 The king **sovereign** of Dor in the *coast heights* of Dor, one;
the king **sovereign** of the *nations* **goyim** of Gilgal, one;
24 The king **sovereign** of *Tirzah* **Tirsah**, one:
all the *kings* **sovereigns** thirty and one.

PELESHETH REMAINS TO BE CONQUERED

13

Now *Joshua* **And Yah Shua**
was *old and stricken in years* **ages in days**;
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto him,
Thou *art old and stricken in years* **hasst aged in days**,
and there *remaineth* **surviveth** yet
very *much* **a mighty abounding** of land to be possessed.
2 This is the land that yet *remaineth* **surviveth**:
all the *borders* **region** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and all *Geshuri*,
3 From *Sihor* **Shichor**,
which is *before Egypt* **at the face of Misrayim**,
even unto the borders of *Ekron* **Eqron** northward,
which is *counted* **fabricated** to the *Canaanite* **Kenaaniy**:
five *lords* **ringleaders** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**;
the *Gazathites* **Azzahiy**, and the *Ashdothites* **Ashdodiy**,
the *Eshkalonites* **Ashqeloniy**, the *Gittites* **Gittiy**,
and the *Ekronites* **Eqroniy**; also the *Avites* **Avviy**:
4 From the *south* **Southward**,
all the land of the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
and *Mearah* **the cave** that is beside the *Sidonians* **Sidoniy**
unto *Aphek* **Apheq**, to the borders of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**:
5 And the land of the *Giblites* **Gibliy**, and all *Lebanon*,
toward from the sunrising **rising sun**,
from *Baalgad* **Baal Gad** under mount *Hermon*
unto the entering into *Hamath*.
6 All the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the *hill country* **mountains**
from *Lebanon* unto *Misrephothmaim* **Misrephoth Mayim**,
and all the *Sidonians* **Sidoniy**,
them *will* **shall I drive out dispossess**
from *before* **the face of the children sons of Israel** **Yisra El**:
only *divide thou it by lot* **let it fall**
unto the *Israelites* **Yisra Eliy** for an inheritance,
as I have *commanded* **misvahed** thee.
7 Now therefore *divide* **allot** this land
for an inheritance unto the nine *tribes* **scions**,
and the half *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
8 With whom
the *Reubenites* **Reu Beniy** and the *Gadites* **Gadiy**
have *received* **taken** their inheritance,
which *Moses* **Mosheh** gave them,
beyond *Jordan eastward* **Yarden from the rising**,
even as *Moses* **Mosheh** the servant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
gave them;
9 From *Aroer*,
that is upon the *bank lip* of the *river* **wadi** *Arnon*,
and the city that is in the midst of the *river* **wadi**,
and all the plain of *Medeba* unto *Dibon*;
10 And all the cities of *Sihon* **Sichon**
king **sovereign** of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
which reigned in *Heshbon*,
unto the border of the *children* **sons** of *Ammon*;
11 And *Gilead* **Gilad**,
and the border of the *Geshurites* **Geshuriy**
and *Maachathites* **Maachahiy**, and all mount *Hermon*,
and all *Bashan* unto *Salchah* **Salchah**;
12 All the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *Og* in *Bashan*,
which reigned in *Ashtaroth* and in *Edrei*,
who *remained* **survived**
of the remnant of the *giants* **Rephaim**:
for these did *Moses* **Mosheh** smite,
and *cast them out* **dispossess**.
13 Nevertheless the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
expelled not the *Geshurites* **Geshuriy**,
nor the *Maachathites* **Maachahiy**:
but the *Geshurites* **Geshuriy**
and the *Maachathites* **Maakaiky**

YAH SHUA 12, 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

20 the sovereign of Shimron Meron, one;
the sovereign of Achshaph, one;
21 the sovereign of Taanach, one;
the sovereign of Megiddo, one;
22 the sovereign of Qedesh, one;
the sovereign of Yoqne Am of Karmel, one;
23 the sovereign of Dor in the heights of Dor, one;
the sovereign of the goyim of Gilgal, one;
24 the sovereign of Tirsah, one:
— all the sovereigns thirty—one.

PELESHETH REMAINS TO BE CONQUERED

13

And Yah Shua ages in days:
and Yah Veh says to him, You have aged in days,
and there survives
a mighty abounding of land to possess.
This is the land surviving:
2 all the region of the Peleshethiy and all Geshuriy
3 — from Shichor at the face of Misrayim
to the borders of Eqron northward
— fabricated to the Kenaaniy:
five ringleaders of the Peleshethiy;
the Azzahiy and the Ashdodiy
the Ashqeloniy the Gittiy and the Eqroniy
— also the Avviy;
4 southward:
all the land of the Kenaaniy
and the cave beside the Sidoniy to Aphek
— to the borders of the Emoriy:
5 the land of the Gibliy and all Lebanon;
from the rising sun
— from Baal Gad under mount Hermon
to the entering to Hamath:
6 all the settlers of the mountains
from Lebanon to Misrephoth Mayim
and all the Sidoniy
I dispossess from the face of the sons of Yisra El:
— fell it to the Yisra Eliy for an inheritance
as I misvahed you.
7 Now allot this land for an inheritance
to the nine scions and the half scion of Menash Sheh
8 — with whom the Reu Beniy and the Gadiy
take their inheritance
— which Mosheh gave them
beyond Yarden from the rising;
as Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh gave them;
9 from Aroer on the lip of the wadi Arnon
and the city midst the wadi
and all the plain of Medeba to Dibon;
10 and all the cities of Sichon sovereign of the Emoriy
who reigns in Heshbon
to the border of the sons of Ammon;
11 and Gilad and the border of the Geshuriy
and Maachahiy and all mount Hermon
and all Bashan to Salchah;
12 all the sovereigndom of Og in Bashan
who reigns in Ashtaroth and in Edrei
— who survives of the remnant of the Rephaim:
for these Mosheh smote and dispossessed.
13 The sons of Yisra El
expelled neither the Geshuriy nor the Maachahiy:
but the Geshuriy and Maakaiky

JOSHUA 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

14 dwell **settle** among the Israelites **Yisra Eliy** until this day.
Only unto the *tribe* **scion** of Levi
he gave none inheritance;
the sacrifices of the LORD God of Israel made by fire
the firings of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
are their inheritance, as he *said* **worded** unto them.
15 And Moses **Mosheh** gave
unto the *tribe* **rod** of the *children* **sons** of **Reuben Reu Ben**
inheritance according to their families.
16 And their *coast* **border** was from Aroer,
that is on the *bank* **lip** of the *river* **wadi** Arnon,
and the city that is in the midst of the *river* **wadi**,
and all the plain by Medeba;
17 Heshbon, and all her cities that are in the plain;
Dibon, and *Bamoth—baal* **Bahmah Baal**,
and *Beth—baal—meon* **Beth Baal Meon**,
18 And *Jahaza* **Yahsah**,
and *Kedemoth* **Qedemoth**, and Mephaath,
19 And *Kirjathaim* **Kirjathaim**, and Sibmah,
and *Zarethshahar* **Sereth Hash Shachar**
in the mount of the valley,
20 And *Bethpeor* **Beth Peor**,
and *Ashdothpisgah* **Ashdoth Pisgah**,
and *Bethjeshimoth* **Beth Ha Yeshimoth**,
21 And all the cities of the plain,
and all the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *Sihon* **Sichon**
king **sovereign** of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
which reigned in Heshbon,
whom *Moses* **Mosheh** smote
with the *princes* **hierarchs** of *Midian* **Midyan**,
Evi, and *Rekem* **Reqem**, and *Zur* **Sur**, and Hur, and Reba,
which were *dukes* **libates** of *Sihon* **Sichon**,
dwelling **settling** in the *country* **land**.
22 *Balaam* **Bilam** also the son of Beor,
the *soothsayer* **diviner**,
did the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
slay **slaughter** with the sword
among them that were *slain* **pierced** by them.
23 And the border of the *children* **sons** of **Reuben Reu Ben**
was *Jordan* **Yarden**, and the border thereof.
This was the inheritance
of the *children* **sons** of **Reuben Reu Ben** after their families,
the cities and the *villages* **courts** thereof.
24 And *Moses* **Mosheh** gave *inheritance*
unto the *tribe* **rod** of Gad,
even unto the *children* **sons** of Gad
according to their families.
25 And their *coast* **border** was *Jazer* **Yazer**,
and all the cities of *Gilead* **Gilad**,
and half the land of the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
unto Aroer that is *before* **at the face of** Rabbah;
26 And from Heshbon
unto *Ramathmizpeh* **Ramah Ham Mispah**, and Betonim;
and from *Mahanaim* **Machanayim**
unto the border of Debir;
27 And in the valley, *Betharam* **Beth Ha Ram**,
and *Bethnimrah* **Beth Nimrah**,
and *Succoth* **Sukkoth/Brush Arbors**, and *Zaphon* **Saphon**,
the rest of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *Sihon* **Sichon**
king **sovereign** of Heshbon,
Jordan **Yarden** and his border,
even unto the edge of the sea of *Chinnereth* **Kinneroth**
on the other side *Jordan* **eastward** **Yarden from the rising**.
28 This is the inheritance
of the *children* **sons** of Gad after their families,
the cities, and their *villages* **courts**.
29 And *Moses* **Mosheh** gave *inheritance*
unto the half *tribe* **rod** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**:
and this was the possession of the half *tribe* **scion**
of the *children* **sons** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
by their families.
30 And their *coast* **border**
was from *Mahanaim* **Machanayim**, all Bashan,
all the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
of *Og* *king* **sovereign** of Bashan,
and all the *towns* **living areas** of *Jair* **Yair**,
which are in Bashan, *threescore* **sixty** cities:
31 And half *Gilead* **Gilad**, and Ashtaroth, and Edrei,

YAH SHUA 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

settle among the Yisra Eliy until this day.
14 Only, to the scion of Levi
he gives no inheritance;
the firings of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
are their inheritance, as he worded.
15 And Mosheh
gives to the rod of the sons of Reu Ben
for their families:
16 and their border is from Aroer
on the lip of the wadi Arnon
and the city midst the wadi
and all the plain by Medeba;
17 Heshbon and all her cities in the plain;
Dibon and Bahmah Baal and Beth Baal Meon
18 and Yahsah and Qedemoth and Mephaath
19 and Kirjathaim and Sibmah
and Sereth Hash Shachar
in the mount of the valley;
20 and Beth Peor
and Ashdoth Pisgah and Beth Ha Yeshimoth;
21 and all the cities of the plain
and all the sovereigndom of Sichon:
sovereign of the Emoriy who reigned in Heshbon
whom Mosheh smote with the hierarchs of Midyan;
Evi and Reqem and Sur and Hur and Reba
— libates of Sichon settling in the land:
22 the sons of Yisra El also slaughtered Bilam
the son of Beor the diviner with the sword
among them whom they pierced.
23 And the border of the sons of Reu Ben
is Yarden and the border thereof.
This is the inheritance
of the sons of Reu Ben after their families,
the cities and the courts thereof.
24 And Mosheh gives to the rod of Gad
to the sons of Gad for their families;
25 and their border:
Yazer and all the cities of Gilad
and half the land of the sons of Ammon
to Aroer at the face of Rabbah;
26 and from Heshbon
to Ramah Ham Mispah and Betonim;
and from Machanayim to the border of Debir;
27 and in the valley:
Beth Ha Ram and Beth Nimrah
and Sukkoth/Brush Arbors and Saphon,
the rest of the sovereigndom of Sichon
sovereign of Heshbon,
Yarden and his border,
to the edge of the sea of Kinneroth
beyond Yarden from the rising.
28 — this is the inheritance
of the sons of Gad after their families,
the cities and their courts.
29 And Mosheh gives to the half rod of Menash Sheh:
of the half scion of the sons of Menash Sheh
by their families;
30 and their border:
from Machanayim, all Bashan,
all the sovereigndom of Og sovereign of Bashan
and all the living areas of Yair, in Bashan, sixty cities:
31 and half Gilad and Ashtaroth and Edrei,

JOSHUA 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

cities of the kingdom **sovereigndom** of Og in Bashan,
were pertaining unto the children **sons** of Machir
the son of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
even to the one half of the children **sons** of Machir
by their families.

32 These are the countries which *Moses* **Mosheh**
did distribute for inheritance in the plains of Moab,
on the other side *Jordan* **Yarden**,
by *Jericho* **Yericho**, eastward from the rising.

33 But unto the tribe **scion** of *Levi*
Moses **Mosheh** gave not any **no** inheritance:
the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
was their inheritance, as he said **worded** unto them.

ALLOTMENT OF THE LAND OF KENAAN

14

And these are the countries which
the children **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** inherited
in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
which *Eleazar* **El Azar** the priest,
and *Joshua* **Yah Shua** the son of *Nun*,
and the heads of the fathers
of the tribes **rods** of the children **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
distributed for inheritance to them.

2 By lot **pebble** was their inheritance,
as the *LORD* commanded **Yah Veh misvahed**
by the hand of *Moses* **Mosheh**,

3 for the nine tribes **rods**, and for the half tribe **rod**.
For *Moses* **Mosheh** had given the inheritance
of two tribes **rods** and an half tribe **rod**
on the other side *Jordan* **Yarden**:

4 but unto the *Levites* **Leviym**
he gave none inheritance among them.

4 For the children **sons** of *Joseph* **Yoseph**
were two tribes **rods**,

Manasseh **Menash Sheh** and *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**:
therefore they gave no part **allotment**

unto the *Levites* **Leviym** in the land,
save cities to dwell in **settle**, with their suburbs
for their cattle **chattel**

5 and for their substance **which they chattedel**.
As the *LORD* **Yah Veh**

commanded *Moses* **misvahed Mosheh**,
so the children **sons** of *Israel* **did Yisra El worked**,
and they divided **allotted** the land.

THE CLAIM OF KALEB

6 Then the children **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
came near unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua** in *Gilgal*:
and *Caleb* **Kaleb**
the son of *Jephunneh* **Yephunneh** the *Kenezite* **Qenaziy**
said unto him,

Thou knowest the thing **word**
that the *LORD* said **Yah Veh worded**
unto *Moses* **Mosheh** the man of *God* **Elohim**
concerning me and thee in *Kadeshbarnea* **Qadesh Barnea**.

7 I was a son of Forty years old was I
when *Moses* **Mosheh** the servant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
sent me from *Kadeshbarnea* **Qadesh Barnea**
to espy out the land;
and I brought **returned** him word *again*
as it was in mine heart.

8 Nevertheless my brethren
that went up **ascended** with me
made the heart of the people melt:
but I wholly **fully** followed **after**
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**.

9 And *Moses* **sware Mosheh oathed** on that day, saying,
Surely the land whereon thy feet have trodden
shall be thine inheritance,
and thy children's for ever **son's eternally**,
because thou hast wholly **fully** followed **after**
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**.

10 And now, behold,
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath kept me alive,
as he said **worded**, these forty and five years,
even since the *LORD* **when Yah Veh**
spake **worded** this word unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
while the children of *Israel* **Yisra El**
wandered **walked** in the wilderness:

YAH SHUA 13, 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

cities of the sovereignty of Og in Bashan
sons of Machir the son of *Menash Sheh*,
to the one half of the sons of Machir by their families.

32 Mosheh distributed these for inheritance
in the plains of Moab beyond Yarden
by Yericho, from the rising.

33 But to the scion of *Levi*
Mosheh gave no inheritance:
Yah Veh Elohim of *Yisra El* is their inheritance
as he worded to them.

ALLOTMENT OF THE LAND OF KENAAN

14

And these are those
the sons of *Yisra El* inherit in the land of *Kenaan*;
which *El Azar* the priest
and *Yah Shua* the son of *Nun*
and the heads of the fathers
of the rods of the sons of *Yisra El*
distribute for their inheritance:

2 their inheritance is by pebble,
as *Yah Veh* misvahed by the hand of *Mosheh*
for the nine rods and for the half rod.

3 For *Mosheh* gives the inheritance
of two rods and a half rod beyond Yarden:
and he gives no inheritance among the *Leviym*.

4 For the sons of *Yoseph* are two rods
— *Menash Sheh* and *Ephrayim*:
and they give no allotment to the *Leviym* in the land
except cities to settle
with their suburbs for the chattel they chattedel.
As *Yah Veh* misvahed *Mosheh*,
thus the sons of *Yisra El* work and allot the land.

THE CLAIM OF KALEB

6

Then the sons of *Yah Hudah*
come near to *Yah Shua* in *Gilgal*:
and *Kaleb* the son of *Yephunneh* the *Qenaziy*
says to him,

You know the word
Yah Veh worded to *Mosheh* the man of *Elohim*
concerning me and you in *Qadesh Barnea*.

7 I — a son of forty years
when *Mosheh* the servant of *Yah Veh*
sent me from *Qadesh Barnea* to spy the land;
and I returned him word as it was in my heart:
and my brothers who ascended with me
melted the heart of the people;

8 but I fully followed after *Yah Veh* my *Elohim*.
9 And on that day, *Mosheh* oathed, saying,
Surely the land whereon your feet trod
the inheritance is yours and your sons, eternally
because you followed after *Yah Veh* my *Elohim*.

10 And now behold, *Yah Veh*, as he worded,
keeps me alive these forty—five years
— since *Yah Veh* worded this word to *Mosheh*
while *Yisra El* walked in the wilderness

JOSHUA 14, 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and now, *lo* **behold**, I am this day
fourscore a son of **eighty** and five years *old*.
11 As yet I am as strong this day
as I was in the day that *Moses* **Mosheh** sent me:
as my *strength* **force** was then,
even so is my *strength* **force** now,
12 for war, *both* to go out, and to come in.
Now therefore give me this mountain,
whereof the *LORD* *spake* **Yah Veh worded** in that day;
for thou *heardest* in that day
how the *Anakims* **Anaqiy** were there,
and that the cities were great and *fenced* **cut off**:
if so be the *LORD* *will* **Yah Veh shall** be with me,
then I shall *be able to drive them out* **dispossess them**,
as the *LORD* *said* **Yah Veh worded**.
13 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** blessed him,
and gave unto *Caleb* **Kaleb**
the son of *Jephunneh* **Yephunneh**
Hebron for an inheritance.
14 Hebron therefore
became the inheritance of *Caleb* **Kaleb**
the son of *Jephunneh* **Yephunneh** the *Kenezite* **Qenaziy**
unto this day,
because that he *wholly* **fully** followed **after**
the *LORD* *God* **Yah Veh Elohim of Israel** **Yisra El**.
15 And the name of Hebron before
was *Kirjatharba* **Qiryath Arba**;
which Arba was a great man — a **great human**
among the *Anakims* **Anaqiy**.
And the land *had rest* **rested** from war.

THE BOUNDARIES OF YAH HUDAH

15 This then was the *lot* **pebble**
of the *tribe* **rod** of the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
by their families;
even to the border of Edom
the wilderness of *Zin* **Sin** southward
was the *uttermost part* **extremity**
of the *south coast* **southward border**.
2 And their south border
was from the *shore* **end** of the salt sea,
from the *bay that looketh* **tongue at the face** southward:
3 And it went out to the south side
to *Maalehacrabbim* **Maaleh Acrabbim**,
and passed along to *Zin* **Sin**,
and ascended *up* on the south side
unto *Kadeshbarnea* **Qadesh Barnea**,
and passed along to *Hezron* **Hesron**,
and went *up* **ascended** to *Adar* **Addar**,
and *fetches a compass* **turned about** to *Karkaa* **Qarqa**:
4 From *thence* it passed toward *Azmon* **Asmon**,
and went out unto the *river* **wadi** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
and the *goings out* **exits** of that *coast* **border**
were at the sea:
this shall be your *south coast* **southward border**.
5 And the east border was the salt sea,
even unto the end of *Jordan* **Yarden**.
And their border in the north *quarter* **edge**
was from the *bay* **tongue** of the sea
at the *uttermost part* **extremity** of *Jordan* **Yarden**:
6 And the border
went *up* **ascended** to *Bethhogla* **Beth Chogla**,
and passed along
by the north of *Betharabah* **Beth Arabah**;
and the border went *up* **ascended**
to the stone of *Bohan* the son of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**:
7 And the border went *up* **ascended** toward *Debir*
from the valley of *Achor*,
and so northward, *looking toward* **at the face** of *Gilgal*,
that is *before* **in front** of
the *going up to Adummim* **Ascent of Adummim**,
which is on the south side of the *river* **wadi**:
and the border
passed toward the waters of *Enshemesh* **En Shemesh**,
and the *goings out* **exits** thereof were at *Enrogel* **En Rogel**:
8 And the border went *up* **ascended**
by the valley of the son of *Hinnom* **Hinnom/Burning**
unto the south *side* **shoulder** of the *Jebusite* **Yebusiy**;
the same is *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:

YAH SHUA 14, 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and now, behold,
I *am* this day a son of eighty—five years.
11 As yet I *am* as strong this day
as the day *Mosheh* sent me:
as my *force* then, thus my *force* now;
for war, to go and to come:
12 and now, give me this mountain,
whereof *Yah Veh* worded in that day;
for you heard in that day how the *Anaqiy* were there
and that the cities were great and cut off:
if so be,
Yah Veh be with me and I *dispossessed* them
as *Yah Veh* worded.
13 And *Yah Shua* blesses him
and gives *Kaleb* the son of *Yephunneh*
Hebron for an inheritance.
14 So Hebron becomes the inheritance
of *Kaleb* the son of *Yephunneh* the *Qenaziy*
to this day,
because he fully followed after *Yah Veh Elohim* of *Yisra El*.
15 And the former name of Hebron was *Qiryath Arba*;
— a great human among the *Anaqiy*.
And the land rests from war.

THE BOUNDARIES OF YAH HUDAH

15 And so be it,
the pebble for the rod of the sons of *Yah Hudah*
for their families:
the border of Edom
to the wilderness of *Sin* southward
is the extremity of the southward border:
2 and their south border is from the end of the salt sea
from the tongue at the face southward:
3 and goes to the south side to *Maaleh Acrabbim*
and passes along to *Sin*
and ascends on the south side to *Qadesh Barnea*
and passes along to *Hesron*
and ascends to *Addar*
and turns around to *Qarqa*
and passes toward *Asmon*
and goes to the wadi of *Misrayim*:
and the exits of that border are at the sea.
— this is your southward border.
5 And the east border:
the salt sea to the end of *Yarden*.
And the border in the north edge:
from the tongue of the sea
at the extremity of *Yarden*;
6 and the border ascends to *Beth Chogla*
and passes along by the north of *Beth Arabah*;
and the border ascends
to the stone of *Bohan* the son of *Reu Ben*;
7 and the border ascends toward *Debir*
from the valley of *Achor* and so northward
at the face of *Gilgal*
in front of the *Ascent of Adummim*
on the south side of the wadi:
and the border
passes toward the waters of *En Shemesh*;
and the exits thereof are at *En Rogel*;
and the border ascends
8 by the valley of the son of *Hinnom/Burning*
to the south shoulder of the *Yebusiy*
which is *Yeru Shalem*;

JOSHUA 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the border went up **ascended**
to the top of the mountain
that lieth before **at the face of**
the valley of *Hinnom* **Hinnom/Burning**
westward **seaward**,
which is at the end of
the valley of the giants **Gaymek Rephaim** northward:
9 And the border was **drawn surveyed**
from the top of the **hill mountain**
unto the fountain
of the water of *Nephtoah* **Mayim Nephtoach**,
and went out to the cities of mount Ephron;
and the border was **drawn surveyed** to *Baalah* **Baal Ah**,
which is *Kirjathjearim* **Qiryath Arim**:
10 And the border **compassed went about**
from *Baalah* westward **Baal Ah seaward** unto mount Seir,
and passed along
unto the **side shoulder** of mount *Jearim* **Yearim**,
which is *Chesalon* **Kesalon**, on the north **side**,
and went down **descended**
to *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh**,
and passed on to Timnah:
11 And the border went out
unto the **side shoulder** of *Ekron* **Eqron** northward:
and the border was **drawn surveyed** to *Shicron* **Shikkeron**,
and passed along to mount *Baalah* **Baal Ah**,
and went out unto *Jabneel* **Yabne El**;
and the **goings out exits** of the border were at the sea.
12 And the **west seaward** border was to the great sea,
and the **coast border** thereof.
This is the **coast border**
of the **children sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
round about according to their families.
13 And unto *Caleb* **Kaleb** the son of *Jephunneh* **Yephunneh**
he gave a **part an allotment**
among the **children sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
according to
the **commandment mouth** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
to *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
even the city of *Arba* **Qiryath Arba**
the father of *Anak* **Anaq**, which city is Hebron.
14 And *Caleb* **Kaleb**
drove **dispossessed** thence the three sons of *Anak* **Anaq**,
Sheshai **Sheshay**, and *Ahiman* **Achiy Man**,
and *Talmay* **Talmay**,
the **children birthed** of *Anak* **Anaq**.
15 And he went up **ascended** thence
to the **inhabitants settlers** of *Debir*:
and the name of *Debir* before
was *Kirjathsepher* **Qiryath Sepher**.
16 And *Caleb* **Kaleb** said,
He that smiteth *Kirjathsepher* **Qiryath Sepher**,
and taketh **captureth** it,
to him **will shall** I give *Achsah* my daughter
to **wife woman**.
17 And *Othniel* **Othni El** the son of *Kenaz* **Qenaz**,
the brother of *Caleb* **Kaleb**, **took captured** it:
and he gave him *Achsah* his daughter
to **wife woman**.
18 And **so be** it came to pass, as she came unto him,
that she moved **goaded** him to ask of her father a field:
and she **lighted alighted** off her **ass he burro**;
and *Caleb* **Kaleb** said unto her,
What **wouldest thou – to thee?**
19 Who answered **said**, Give me a blessing;
for thou hast given me a south land;
give me also **springs fountains** of water.
And he gave her the upper **springs fountains**,
and the **nether springs nethermost fountains**.
20 This is the inheritance
of the **tribe rod** of the **children sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
according to their families.
21 And the **uttermost extremity** cities
of the **tribe rod** of the **children sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
toward the **coast border** of Edom southward
were *Kabzeel* **Qabse El**, and *Eder*, and *Jagur* **Yagur**,
22 And *Kinah* **Qinah**, and *Dimonah*, and *Adadah*,

YAH SHUA 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the border ascends to the top of the mountain
at the face of the valley of *Hinnom*/Burning seaward
at the end of *Gaymek Rephaim* northward;
9 and the border is surveyed
from the top of the mountain
to the fountain of *Mayim Nephtoach*
and goes to the cities of mount Ephron;
and the border is surveyed to *Baal Ah*
which is *Qiryath Arim*;
10 and the border goes all around
from *Baal Ah* seaward to mount Seir
and passes along to the shoulder of mount Yearim
which is *Kesalon*, on the north;
and descends to *Beth Shemesh*
and passes on to *Timnah*;
11 and the border
goes to the shoulder of *Eqron* northward;
and the border is surveyed to *Shikkeron*
and passes along to mount *Baal Ah*
and goes to *Yabne El*;
and the exits of the border are at the sea.
12 And the seaward border:
to the great sea and the border thereof.
— this is the border of the sons of *Yah Hudah*
all around according to their families.
13 And he gives *Kaleb* the son of *Yephunneh*
an allotment among the sons of *Yah Hudah*
according to the mouth of *Yah Veh* to *Yah Shua*:
Qiryath Arba the father of *Anaq*, which is *Hebron*.
14 And *Kaleb*
dispossesses thence the three sons of *Anaq*,
Sheshay and *Achiy Man* and *Talmay*
— birthed of *Anaq*:
15 and he ascends thence to the settlers of *Debir*:
and the former name of *Debir* was *Qiryath Sepher*.
16 And *Kaleb* says,
He who smites *Qiryath Sepher* and captures it,
I give him *Achsah* my daughter to woman.
17 — and *Othni El* the son of *Qenaz*,
the brother of *Kaleb*, captures it:
and he gives him *Achsah* his daughter to woman.
18 And so be it, as she comes,
she goads him to ask her father for a field:
and she alights from her he burro;
and *Kaleb* says to her, What — to you?
19 And she says, Give me a blessing;
give me a south land;
and give me fountains of water.
— and he gives her the upper fountains
and the nethermost fountains.
20 — the inheritance
of the rod of the sons of *Yah Hudah* for their families.
21 And the extremity cities
of the rod of the sons of *Yah Hudah*
toward the border of Edom southward
are *Qabse El* and *Eder* and *Yagur*
and *Qinah* and *Dimonah* and *Adadah*
22

JOSHUA 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 And *Kedesh* **Qedesh**,
and *Hazor* **Hasor**, and *Ithnan* **Yithnan**,
24 Ziph, and Telem, and Bealoth,
25 And *Hazor* **Hasor**, Hadattah, and *Kerioth* **Qerioth**,
and *Hezron* **Hesron**, which is *Hazor* **Hasor**,
26 Amam, and Shema, and Moladah,
27 And *Hasargaddah* **Hasar Gaddah**,
and Heshmon, and *Bethpalet* **Beth Palet**,
28 And *Hasarshual* **Hasar Shual**,
and *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**, and *Bizjothjah* **Bizyoth Yah**,
29 *Baalah* **Baal Ah**, and *lim* **Iyim**, and *Azem* **Esem**,
30 And *Eltolad* **El Tolad**, and *Chesil* **Kesil**, and Hormah,
31 And *Ziklag* **Siqlag**, and Madmannah, and Sansannah,
32 And Lebaoth, and *Shilhim* **Shilchim**,
and *Ain* **Ayin**, and Rimmon:
all the cities are twenty and nine,
with their *villages* **courts**:
33 And in the *valley* **lowland**,
Eshtaol, and *Zoreah* **Sorah**, and Ashnah,
34 And *Zanoah* **Zanoach**, and *Engannim* **En Gannim**,
Tappuah **Tappuach**, and *Enam* **En Am**,
35 *Jarmuth* **Yarmuth**, and Adullam,
Socoh **Sochoh**, and *Azekah* **Azeqah**,
36 And *Sharaim* **Shaarayim**, and *Adithaim* **Adithayim**,
and Gederah, and *Gederothaim* **Gederothayim**;
fourteen cities with their *villages* **courts**:
37 *Zenan* **Senan**, and Hadashah,
and *Migdalgad* **Migdal Gad**,
38 And *Dilean* **Dilan**,
and *Mizpeh* **Mispeh**, and *Joktheel* **Yoqueh El**,
39 Lachish, and *Bozkath* **Bosqath**, and Eglon,
40 And *Cabbon* **Kabbon**,
and *Lahmam* **Lachmam**, and Kithlish,
41 And Gederoth, *Bethdagon* **Beth Dagon**,
and Naamah, and *Makkeedah* **Maqqedah**;
sixteen cities with their *villages* **courts**:
42 Libnah, and Ether, and Ashan,
43 And *Jiphtah* **Yiphtach**, and Ashnah, and *Nezib* **Nesib**,
44 And *Keilah* **Qeilah**, and Achzib, and Mareshah;
nine cities with their *villages* **courts**:
45 *Ekron* **Eqron**,
with her *towns* **daughters** and her *villages* **courts**:
46 From *Ekron* **Eqron** even unto the sea,
all that lay near at the hand of Ashdod,
with their *villages* **courts**:
47 Ashdod
with her *towns* **daughters** and her *villages* **courts**,
Gaza **Azzah**
with her *towns* **daughters** and her *villages* **courts**,
unto the *river* **wadi** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and the *great sea*, **sea of the** border thereof:
48 And in the mountains,
Shamir, and *Jattir* **Yattir**, and *Socoh* **Sochoh**,
49 And Dannah,
and *Kirjathsannah* **Qiryath Sannah**, which is Debir,
50 And Anab, and Eshtemoh, and Anim,
51 And Goshen, and Holon, and Giloh;
eleven cities with their *villages* **courts**:
52 Arab, and Dumah, and *Eshean* **Eshan**,
53 And *Janum* **Yanim**,
and *Bethtappuah* **Beth Tappuach**, and *Aphekah* **Apheqah**,
54 And Humtah,
and *Kirjatharba* **Qiryath Arba**, which is Hebron,
and *Zior* **Sior**;
nine cities with their *villages* **courts**:
55 Maon, *Carmel* **Karmel**, and Ziph, and *Jutta* **Yuttah**,
56 And *Jezeel* **Yizre El**,
and *Jokdeam* **Yoqde Am**, and *Zanoah* **Zanoach**,
57 *Cain* **Qayin**, *Gibeah* **Gibah**, and Timnah;
ten cities with their *villages* **courts**:
58 *Halhul* **Halchul**, *Bethzur* **Beth Sur**, and Gedor,
59 And Maarath,
and *Bethanath* **Beth Anoth**, and *Eltekon* **El Teqon**;
six cities with their *villages* **courts**:
60 *Kirjathbaal* **Qiryath Baal**,
which is *Kirjathjearim* **Qiryath Arim**,
and Rabbah;
two cities with their *villages* **courts**:

YAH SHUA 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

23 and Qedesh and Hasor and Yithnan
24 and Ziph and Telem and Bealoth
25 and Hasor, Hadattah and Qerioth
Hesron which is Hasor
26 Amam and Shema and Moladah
27 and Hasar Gaddah and Heshmon and Beth Palet
28 and Hasar Shual and Beer Sheba and Bizyoth Yah
29 Baal Ah and Iyim and Esem
30 and El Tolad and Kesil and Hormah
31 and Siqlag and Madmannah and Sansannah
32 — all the cities with their courts are twenty—nine.
33 And in the lowland:
Eshtaol and Sorah and Ashnah
34 and Zanoach and En Gannim
Tappuach and En Am
35 Yarmuth and Adullam Sochoh and Azeqah
36 and Shaarayim and Adithayim
and Gederah and Gederothayim
— fourteen cities with their courts.
37 Senan and Hadashah and Migdal Gad
38 and Dilan and Mispeh and Yoqthe El
39 Lachish and Bosqath and Eglon
40 and Kabbon and Lachmam and Kithlish
41 and Gederoth
Beth Dagon and Naamah and Maqqedah
— sixteen cities with their courts.
42 Libnah and Ether and Ashan
43 and Yiphtach and Ashnah and Nesib
44 and Qeilah and Achzib and Mareshah
— nine cities with their courts.
45 Eqron with her daughters and her courts;
46 from Eqron to the sea
— all at the hand of Ashdod with their courts.
47 Ashdod with her daughters and her courts;
Azzah with her daughters and her courts;
to the wadi of Misrayim
and the sea of the border thereof.
48 And in the mountains:
Shamir and Yattir and Sochoh
49 and Dannah and Qiryath Sannah which is Debir
50 and Anab and Eshtemoh and Anim
51 and Goshen and Holon and Giloh
— eleven cities with their courts.
52 Arab and Dumah and Eshan
53 and Yanim and Beth Tappuach and Apheqah
54 and Humtah and Qiryath Arba which is Hebron
and Sior
— nine cities with their courts.
55 Maon, Karmel and Ziph and Yuttah
56 and Yizre El and Yoqde Am and Zanoach
57 Qayin, Gibah and Timnah
— ten cities with their courts.
58 Halchul, Beth Sur and Gedor
59 and Maarath and Beth Anoth and El Teqon
— six cities with their courts.
60 Qiryath Baal which is Qiryath Arim and Rabbah
— two cities with their courts.

JOSHUA 15—17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

61 In the wilderness,
Betharabah **Beth Arabah**, Middin, and *Secacah* **Sechachah**,
62 And Nibshan,
and the city of Salt **Ir Ham Melach**, and *Engedi* **En Gedi**;
six cities with their *villages* **courts**.
63 As for the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
could not *drive* **dispossess** them out;
but the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**
dwell **settle** with the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** unto this day.

THE BOUNDARIES OF YOSEPH

16 And the *lot* **pebble**
of the *children* **sons** of *Joseph* **Yoseph**
fell **goeth** from *Jordan* **Yarden** by *Jericho* **Yericho**,
unto the water of *Jericho* **Yericho** on **from** the east **rising**,
to the wilderness
that *goeth up* **ascendeth** from *Jericho* **Yericho**
throughout mount *Bethel* **Beth El**,
2 And *goeth out* from *Bethel* **Beth El** to *Luz*,
and *passeth* along
unto the borders of *Archi* **Arki** to *Ataroth*,
3 And *goeth down* westward **descendeth** seaward
to the *coast* **border** of *Japhletiy* **Yaphletiy**,
unto the *coast* **border**
of *Bethhoron* **Beth Horon** the nether,
and to *Gezer*;
and the *goings out* **exits** thereof are at the sea.
4 So the *children* **sons** of *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
Manasseh **Menash Sheh** and *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
took their inheritance.

THE BOUNDARIES OF EPHRAYIM

5 And the border of the *children* **sons** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
according to their families was *thus*:
even the border of their inheritance
on the east *side* **from the rising**
was *Atarothaddar* **Atroth Addar**,
unto *Bethhoron* the upper **Beth Horon Elyon**;
6 And the border went out toward the sea
to *Michmethah* on the north *side*;
and the border went about eastward **from the rising**
unto *Taanathshiloh* **Taanath Shiloh**,
and passed by it on the east **from the rising**
to *Janohah* **Yanochah**;
7 And it went down **descended**
from *Janohah* **Yanochah** to *Ataroth*,
and to *Naarath* **Naarah**,
and came **reached** to *Jericho* **Yericho**,
and went out at *Jordan* **Yarden**.
8 The border went out
from *Tappuah* westward **Tappuach** seaward
unto the *river Kanan* **wadi Qanah**;
and the *goings out* **exits** thereof were at the sea.
This is the inheritance
of the *tribe* **rod** of the *children* **sons** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
by their families.
9 And the separate cities
for the *children* **sons** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
were among the inheritance
of the *children* **sons** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
all the cities with their *villages* **courts**.
10 And they *drove* **dispossessed** not out
the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy** that *dwelt* **settled** in *Gezer*:
but the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
dwelt **settle** among the *Ephraimites* **Ephrayimiy**
unto this day,
and serve under *tribute* **a vassal**.

THE BOUNDARIES OF MENASH SHEH

17 There was also a *lot* **pebble**
for the *tribe* **rod** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**;
for he was the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of *Joseph* **Yoseph**; to wit,
for *Machir* the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
the father of *Gilead* **Gilad**:
because he was a man of war,
therefore he had *Gilead* **Gilad** and *Bashan*.

YAH SHUA 15—17

exeGeses companion BIBLE

61 In the wilderness:
Beth Arabah, Middin and *Sechachah*
62 and Nibshan and *Ir Ham Melach* and *En Gedi*
— six cities with their courts.
63 As for the *Yebusiy*, the settlers of *Yeru Shalem*,
the sons of *Yah Hudah* cannot dispossess them;
but the *Yebusiy* settle with the sons of *Yah Hudah*
at *Yeru Shalem* to this day.

THE BOUNDARIES OF YOSEPH

16 And the pebble of the sons of *Yoseph*
goes from *Yarden* by *Yericho*
to the water of *Yericho* from the rising
to the wilderness;
and ascends from *Yericho* in mount *Beth El*;
2 and goes from *Beth El* to *Luz*
and passes along to the borders of *Arki* to *Ataroth*;
3 and descends seaward to the border of *Yaphletiy*
— to the border of *Beth Horon* the nether
and to *Gezer*;
and the exits are at the sea.
4 So the sons of *Yoseph*, *Menash Sheh* and *Ephrayim*,
take their inheritance.

THE BOUNDARIES OF EPHRAYIM

5 The border of the sons of *Ephrayim*
is by their families:
the border of their inheritance from the rising
is *Atroth Addar* to *Beth Horon Elyon*;
6 and the border goes toward the sea
to *Michmethah* on the north;
and the border goes around from the rising
to *Taanath Shiloh*
and passes by it from the rising to *Yanochah*;
7 and descends from *Yanochah*
to *Ataroth* and to *Naarah*
and reaches to *Yericho*
and goes out at *Yarden*;
8 the border goes from *Tappuach*
seaward to the *wadi Qanah*;
the exits are at the sea.
— this is the inheritance
of the rod of the sons of *Ephrayim* for their families.
9 and the separate cities for the sons of *Ephrayim*
among the inheritance of the sons of *Menash Sheh*
— all the cities with their courts.
10 And they dispossess not
the *Kenaaniy* who settle in *Gezer*:
but the *Kenaaniy* settle among the *Ephrayimiy*
to this day, and serve a vassal.

THE BOUNDARIES OF MENASH SHEH

17 And so be it,
a pebble for the rod of *Menash Sheh*;
for he is the firstbirthed of *Yoseph*
— for *Machir* the firstbirthed of *Menash Sheh*
the father of *Gilad*:
because he is a man of war he has *Gilad* and *Bashan*.

JOSHUA 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 There was also
a lot for the rest of **remaining for**
the *children sons* of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
by their families;
for the *children sons* of *Abiezer* **Abi Ezer**,
and for the *children sons* of *Helek* **Heleq**,
and for the *children sons* of *Asriel* **Asri El**,
and for the *children sons* of Shechem,
and for the *children sons* of Hopher,
and for the *children sons* of *Shemida* **Shemi Da**:
these were the male *children sons*
of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
the son of *Joseph* **Yoseph** by their families.
3 But *Zelophehad* **Seloph Had**, the son of Hopher,
the son of *Gilead* **Gilad**, the son of Machir,
the son of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
had no sons, but daughters:
and these are the names of his daughters,
Mahlah **Machlah**, and Noah,
Hoglah, *Milchah* **Milchah**, and *Tirzah* **Tirsah**.
4 And they came near **approached**
before *Eleazar* **at the face of El Azar** the priest,
and before *Joshua* **at the face of Yah Shua** the son of Nun,
and before the *princes* **at the face of the hierarchs**, saying,
the *LORD* **commanded Moses** **Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh**
to give us an inheritance among our brethren.
Therefore according
to the *commandment* **mouth of the LORD** **Yah Veh**
he gave them an inheritance
among the brethren of their father.
5 And there fell ten *portions* **boundaries**
to *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
beside the land of *Gilead* **Gilad** and Bashan,
which were on the other side *Jordan* **Yarden**;
6 Because the daughters of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
had **inherited** an inheritance among his sons:
and the *rest* **remaining of Manasseh's** **Menash Sheh's** sons
had the land of *Gilead* **Gilad**.
7 And the *coast* **border of Manasseh** **Menash Sheh**
was from Asher to Michmethah,
that lieth before **at the face of** Shechem;
and the border went along on the right *hand*
unto the *inhabitants* **settlers of Entappuah** **En Tappuach**.
8 Now *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
had the land of *Tappuah* **Tappuach**:
but *Tappuah* **Tappuach**
on the border of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
belonged was to the *children sons* of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**;
9 And the *coast* **border** descended
unto the *river Kanah* **wadi Qanah**,
southward of the *river* **wadi**:
these cities of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
are among the cities of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**:
the *coast* **border of Manasseh** **Menash Sheh** also
was on the north *side* of the *river* **wadi**,
and the *outgoings* **exits** of it were at the sea:
10 Southward it was *Ephraim's* **Ephrayim's**,
and northward it was *Manasseh's* **Menash Sheh's**,
and the sea is his border;
and they met together in Asher on the north,
and in *Issachar* **Yissachar** from the east **rising**.
11 And *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
had in *Issachar* **Yissachar** and in Asher
Bethshean **Beth Shaan** and her *towns* **daughters**,
and *Ibleam* **Yible Am** and her *towns* **daughters**,
and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of Dor
and her *towns* **daughters**,
and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Endor* **En Dor**
and her *towns* **daughters**,
and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of Taanach
and her *towns* **daughters**,
and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of Megiddo
and her *towns* **daughters**,
even three *countries* **hills**.
12 Yet the *children sons* of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
could not
drive out the inhabitants of **dispossess** those cities;

YAH SHUA 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 And there remains for the sons of Menash Sheh
for their families:
for the sons of Abi Ezer
and for the sons of Heleq
and for the sons of Asri El
and for the sons of Shechem
and for the sons of Hopher
and for the sons of Shemi Da:
these are the male sons of Menash Sheh
the son of Yoseph by their families.
3 As for Seloph Had,
the son of Hopher the son of Gilad
the son of Machir the son of Menash Sheh
has no sons, only, daughters:
and these are the names of his daughters:
Machlah and Noah
Hoglah, *Milchah* and *Tirsah*.
4 And they approach
at the face of El Azar the priest
and at the face of Yah Shua the son of Nun
and at the face of the hierarchs
saying, Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh
to give us an inheritance among our brothers.
and at the mouth of Yah Veh
he gave them an inheritance
among the brothers of their father.
5 And ten boundaries fall to Menash Sheh
— beside the land of Gilad and Bashan
on beyond Yarden;
6 because the daughters of Menash Sheh
inherited an inheritance among his sons:
and the remaining of the sons of Menash Sheh
have the land of Gilad.
7 And the border of Menash Sheh
is from Asher to Michmethah at the face of Shechem;
and the border goes along on the right
to the settlers of En Tappuach;
8 Menash Sheh has the land of Tappuach:
and Tappuach on the border of Menash Sheh
is to the sons of Ephrayim;
9 and the border descends to the wadi Qanah
southward of the wadi:
these cities of Ephrayim
are among the cities of Menash Sheh:
the border of Menash Sheh is north of the wadi
and the exits are at the sea.
10 And southward is to Ephrayim
and northward is to Menash Sheh
and the sea is his border;
and they meet in Asher on the north
and in Yissachar from the rising.
11 And Menash Sheh has in Yissachar and in Asher
Beth Shaan and her daughters
and *Yible Am* and her daughters
and the settlers of Dor and her daughters
and the settlers of En Dor and her daughters
and the settlers of Taanach and her daughters
and the settlers of Megiddo and her daughters
— three hills.
12 Yet the sons of Menash Sheh
cannot dispossess those cities;

JOSHUA 17, 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

13 but the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
would dwell **willed to settle** in that land.
Yet **And so be** it came to pass,
when the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**
were waxen strong **strengthened**,
that they put **gave** the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
to tribute **vassal**,
but in **dispossessing**,
did not **utterly drive dispossess** them out.
14 And the children **sons of Joseph Yoseph**
spake **worded** unto Joshua **Yah Shua**, saying,
Why hast thou given me but one **lot pebble**
and one **portion to inherit boundary of inheritance**,
seeing I am a great people,
forasmuch as the LORD even as Yah Veh
hath blessed me hitherto?
15 And Joshua answered **Yah Shua said** to them,
If thou be a great people,
then **get thee up ascend** to the wood country **forest**,
and cut down for thyself there
in the land of the *Perizzites* **Perizziy**
and of the *giants* **Rephaim**,
if mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
be too narrow **pressed** for thee.
16 And the children **sons of Joseph Yoseph** said,
The *hill* **mountain** is not enough **found** for us:
and all the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
that dwell **settle** in the land of the valley
have chariots of iron,
both they who are of *Bethshean* **Beth Shaan**
and her towns **daughters**,
and they who are of the valley of *Jezreel* **Yizre El**.
17 And Joshua spake **Yah Shua said**
unto the house of *Joseph Yoseph*,
even to *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** and to *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
saying,
Thou art a great people, and hast great *power* **force**:
thou shalt not have one *lot only* **pebble**:
18 But the mountain shall be thine;
for it is a wood **forest**, and thou shalt cut it down:
and the *outgoings* **exits** of it shall be thine:
for thou shalt
drive out **dispossess** the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
though they have iron chariots,
and though they be strong.

THE ALLOTMENT OF THE REST OF THE LAND

18 And the whole *congregation* **witness**
of the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**
assembled **congregated together** at Shiloh,
and set up **tabernacled**
the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation there.
And the land was subdued *before them* **at their face**.
2 And there remained
among the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**
seven tribes **scions**,
which had not yet *received* **allotted** their inheritance.
3 And Joshua **Yah Shua** said
unto the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
How long are ye slack to go to possess the land,
which *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of your fathers
hath given you?
4 Give out from among you
three men for *each tribe* **a scion**:
and I **will shall** send them,
and they shall rise, and **go walk** through the land,
and *describe* **chart it by mouth**
according to the inheritance of them;
and they shall come *again* to me.
5 And they shall **divide allot** it into seven *parts* **allotments**:
Judah **Yah Hudah**
shall **abide stand** in their *coast* **border** on the south,
and the house of *Joseph Yoseph*
shall **abide stand** in their *coast* **border** on the north.
6 Ye shall therefore *describe* **chart** the land
into seven *parts* **allotments**,
and bring *the description* hither to me,
that I may cast *lots* **pebbles** for you here
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**.

YAH SHUA 17, 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

but the Kenaaniy will to settle in this land.
13 And so be it,
when the sons of Yisra El strengthen
they give the Kenaaniy to vassal;
but in dispossessing, dispossess them not.
14 And the sons of Yoseph word to Yah Shua, saying,
Why give you me but one pebble
and one boundary of inheritance?
I — a great people whom Yah Veh blesses until now!
15 And Yah Shua says to them,
If you are a great people,
ascend to the forest and cut down for yourself there
in the land of the Perizziy and of the Rephaim
— if mount Ephrayim is too pressed for you.
16 And the sons of Yoseph say,
We find that the mountain is not for us:
and all the Kenaaniy
who settle in the land of the valley
have chariots of iron
— they of Beth Shaan and her daughters
and they of the valley of Yizre El.
17 And Yah Shua says to the house of Yoseph
— to Ephrayim and to Menash Sheh
saying, You art a great people and have great force:
you have not one pebble
but the mountain is yours;
for it is a forest; cut it down;
and the exits are yours:
for you are to dispossess the Kenaaniy
— though they have iron chariots
— though they be strong.

THE ALLOTMENT OF THE REST OF THE LAND

18 And the whole witness of the sons of Yisra El
congregates at Shiloh
and there they tabernacle
the tent of the congregation:
and the land is subdued at their face:
2 and among the sons of Yisra El
remain seven scions
who allotted not their inheritance.
3 And Yah Shua says to the sons of Yisra El,
How long slack you to go to possess the land
Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers gives you?
4 Give out from among you three men per scion:
and I send them to rise and walk through the land
and chart it by mouth according to their inheritance;
and then come to me.
5 — allot it into seven allotments:
Yah Hudah stands in their border on the south;
and the house of Yoseph
stands in their border on the north:
6 chart the land into seven allotments
and bring here to me;
and I cast pebbles for you here
at the face of Yah Veh our Elohim.

JOSHUA 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 But the Levites **Leviym**
have no *part* **allotment** among you;
for the priesthood of the **LORD Yah Veh**
is their inheritance:
and Gad, and **Reuben Reu Ben**,
and half the *tribe* **scion** of **Manasseh Menash Sheh**,
have received **taken** their inheritance
beyond **Jordan Yarden** on the east,
which **Moses Mosheh** the servant of the **LORD Yah Veh**
gave them.

CHARTING THE LAND

8 And the men arose, and went away:
and **Joshua charged Yah Shua misvahed** them
that went to *describe* **chart** the land, saying,
Go and walk through the land, and *describe* **chart** it,
and *come again* **return** to me,
that I may here cast *lots* **pebbles** for you
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh** in Shiloh.
9 And the men went and passed through the land,
and *described* **charted** it by cities
into seven *parts* **allotments** in a *book* **scroll**,
and came again to **Joshua Yah Shua**
to the *host* **camp** at Shiloh.
10 And **Joshua Yah Shua**
cast *lots* **pebbles** for them in Shiloh
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**:
and there **Joshua divided Yah Shua allotted** the land
unto the *children* **sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
according to their *divisions* **allotment**.

THE PEBBLE OF BEN YAMIN

11 And the *lot* **pebble** of the *tribe* **rod**
of the *children* **sons** of **Benjamin Ben Yamin**
came up **ascended** according to their families:
and the *coast* **border** of their *lot* **came forth** **pebble went**
between the *children* **sons** of **Judah Yah Hudah**
and the *children* **sons** of **Joseph Yoseph**.
12 And their border on the north *side* **edge**
was from **Jordan Yarden**;
and the border *went up* **ascended**
to the *side* **shoulder** of **Jericho Yericho** on the north *side*,
and *went up* **ascended** through the mountains
westward **seaward**;
and the *goings out* **exits** thereof
were at the wilderness of **Bethaven Beth Aven**.
13 And the border *went* **passed** over
from thence toward **Luz**,
to the *side* **shoulder** of **Luz**, which is **Bethel Beth El**,
southward;
and the border descended to **Atarothadar Ataroth Addar**,
near the *hill* **mountain**
that *lieth* on the south side
of the nether **Bethhoron Beth Horon**.
14 And the border was *drawn* **thence surveyed**,
and *compassed* **went about** the *corner* **edge** of the sea
southward,
from the *hill* **mountain**
that *lieth* before **Bethhoron** **at the face of Beth Horon**
southward;
and the *goings out* **exits** thereof
were at **Kirjathbaal Qiryath Baal**,
which is **Kirjathjearim Qiryath Arim**,
a city of the *children* **sons** of **Judah Yah Hudah**:
this was the *west* **quarter** **sea edge**.
15 And the south *quarter* **edge**
was from the end of **Kirjathjearim Qiryath Arim**,
and the border went out on the *west* **sea**,
and went out to the *well* **fountain**
of *waters* of **Nephtoah Mayim Nephtoach**:
16 And the border *came down* **descended**
to the end of the mountain
that *lieth* before **at the face**
of the valley of the son of Hinnom Hinnom/Burning,
and which is in the valley of the *giants* **Rephaim**
on the north,
and descended to the valley of **Hinnom Hinnom/Burning**,
to the *side* **shoulder** of **Jebusi Yebusi** on the south,
and descended to **Enrogel En Rogel**,
17 And was *drawn* **surveyed** from the north,

YAH SHUA 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 For the Leviym have no allotment among you;
for the priesthood of Yah Veh is their inheritance:
and Gad and Reu Ben
and the half scion of Menash Sheh
take their inheritance beyond Yarden on the east,
which Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh gives them.

CHARTING THE LAND

8 And the men rise and go:
and Yah Shua misvahs them going to chart the land,
saying, Go and walk through the land
and chart it and return to me;
and I cast pebbles for you
at the face of Yah Veh in Shiloh.
9 And the men go and pass through the land
and chart it in a scroll
by cities into seven allotments;
and come again to Yah Shua to the camp at Shiloh.
10 And Yah Shua casts pebbles for them in Shiloh
at the face of Yah Veh:
and there Yah Shua allots the land
to the sons of Yisra El
according to their allotment.

THE PEBBLE OF BEN YAMIN

11 And the pebble of the rod of the sons of Ben Yamin
ascends according to their families:
and the border of their pebble goes
between the sons of Yah Hudah
and the sons of Yoseph.
12 And their border on the north edge is from Yarden;
and the border ascends
to the shoulder of Yericho on the north;
and ascends through the mountains seaward;
and the exits are at the wilderness of Beth Aven;
13 and the border passes over from there toward Luz
— to the shoulder of Luz, which is Beth El,
southward;
and the border descends to Ataroth Addar
near the mountain
on the south side of the nether Beth Horon;
and the border is surveyed
and goes around the edge of the sea
southward;
from the mountain at the face of Beth Horon
southward;
and the exits are at Qiryath Baal
which is Qiryath Arim,
a city of the sons of Yah Hudah;
this is the sea edge:
and the south edge:
from the end of Qiryath Arim;
and the border goes on the sea
and goes to the fountain of Mayim Nephtoach:
14 and the border descends
to the end of the mountain
at the face of the valley of the son of Hinnom/Burning
in the valley of Rephaim on the north;
and descends to the valley of Hinnom/Burning
to the shoulder of Yebusi on the south;
and descends to En Rogel;
15 and is surveyed from the north

JOSHUA 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and went forth to *Enshemesh En Shemesh*,
and went forth toward Geliloth,
which is over against the *going up ascent* of Adummim,
and descended to the stone of Bohan
the son of *Reuben Reu Ben*,
18 And passed along toward the *side shoulder*
over against Arabah toward the plain northward,
and went down **descended** unto *Arabah* the plain:
19 And the border passed along
to the *side shoulder* of *Bethhogla Beth Chogla* northward:
and the *outgoings exits* of the border
were at the north *bay tongue* of the salt sea
at the south end of *Jordan Yarden*:
this was the south *coast border*.
20 And *Jordan Yarden* was the border of it
on the east *side edge*.
This was the inheritance
of the *children sons* of *Benjamin Ben Yamin*,
by the *coasts borders* thereof round about,
according to their families.

CITIES OF BEN YAMIN

21 Now the cities of the *tribe rod*
of the *children sons* of *Benjamin Ben Yamin*
according to their families were *Jericho Yericho*,
and *Bethhogla Beth Chogla*, and the valley of *Keziz Qesis*,
22 And *Betharabah Beth Arabah*,
and *Zemaraim Semarayim*, and *Bethel Beth El*,
23 And *Avim Avviy*, and *Parah*, and *Ophrah*,
24 And *Chepharhaamonai Kephrah Ammonai*,
and *Ophni Opheniy*, and *Gaba Geba*;
twelve cities with their *villages courts*:
25 *Gibeon Gibon*, and *Ramah*, and *Beeroth*,
26 And *Mizpeh Mispeh*, and *Chephirah Kephirah*,
and *Mozah Mosah*,
27 And *Rekem Reqem*, and *Irpeel Yirpe El*, and *Taralah*,
28 And *Zelah Sela*, *Eleph Chiliarch*,
and *Jebusi Yebusi*, which is *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
Gibeath Gibath, and *Kirjath Qiryath*;
fourteen cities with their *villages courts*.
This is the inheritance
of the *children sons* of *Benjamin Ben Yamin*
according to their families.

THE PEBBLE OF SHIMON

19 And the second *lot pebble*
came forth went to *Simeon Shimon*,
even for the *tribe rod*
of the *children sons* of *Simeon Shimon*
according to their families:
and their inheritance was within the inheritance
of the *children sons* of *Judah Yah Hudah*.
2 And they had in their inheritance *Beersheba Beer Sheba*,
and *Sheba*, and *Moladah*,
3 And *Hasarshual Hasar Shual*,
and *Balah*, and *Azem Esem*,
4 And *Eltolad El Tolad*, and *Bethul Bethu El*, and *Hormah*,
5 And *Ziklag Siqlag*, and *Bethmarcaboth Beth Markaboth*,
and *Hasarsusah Hasar Susah*,
6 And *Bethlebaoth Beth Lebaoth*,
and *Sharuhen Sharuchen*;
thirteen cities and their *villages courts*:
7 *Ain Ayin*, *Remmon Rimmon*, and *Ether*, and *Ashan*;
four cities and their *villages courts*:
8 And all the *villages courts*
that were round about these cities
to *Baalathbeer Baalath Beer*,
Ramath Ramah of the south.
This is the inheritance
of the *tribe rod* of the *children sons* of *Simeon Shimon*
according to their families.
9 Out of the *portion boundaries*
of the *children sons* of *Judah Yah Hudah*
was the inheritance
of the *children sons* of *Simeon Shimon*:
for the *part allotment*
of the *children sons* of *Judah Yah Hudah*
was too much for them:
therefore the *children sons* of *Simeon Shimon*
had their inheritance within the inheritance of them.

YAH SHUA 18, 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and goes to En Shemesh;
and goes toward Geliloth
over against the ascent of Adummim;
and descends to the stone of Bohan
the son of Reu Ben;
18 and passes along toward the shoulder
toward the plain northward
and descends to the plain;
and the border passes along
19 to the shoulder of Beth Chogla northward;
and the exits of the border
are at the north tongue of the salt sea
at the south end of Yarden;
— this is the south border:
20 and Yarden borders it on the east edge.
— this is the inheritance of the sons of Ben Yamin
by the borders all around, for their families.

CITIES OF BEN YAMIN

21 Now the cities
for the rod of the sons of Ben Yamin
for to their families
are Yericho and Beth Chogla and the valley of Qesis
and Beth Arabah and Semarayim and Beth El
and Avviy and Parah and Ophrah
22 and Kephrah Ammonai and Opheniy and Geba
23 — twelve cities with their courts:
24 Gibon and Ramah and Beeroth
25 and Mispeh and Kephirah and Mosah
26 and Reqem and Yirpe El and Taralah
27 and Sela, Chiliarch
28 and Yebusi which is Yeru Shalem
Gibath and Qiryath
— fourteen cities with their courts.
— this is the inheritance of the sons of Ben Yamin
according to their families.

THE PEBBLE OF SHIMON

19 And the second pebble goes to Shimon
for the rod of the sons of Shimon
for their families:
and their inheritance is midst the inheritance
of the sons of Yah Hudah:
and within their inheritance
2 they have Beer Sheba and Sheba and Moladah
3 and Hasar Shual and Balah and Esem
4 and El Tolad and Bethu El and Hormah
5 and Siqlag and Beth Markaboth and Hasar Susah
6 and Beth Lebaoth and Sharuchen
— thirteen cities and their courts:
7 Ayin, Rimmon and Ether and Ashan
— four cities and their courts:
8 and all the courts around these cities
to Baalath Beer;
Ramah of the south.
This is the inheritance
of the rod of the sons of Shimon for their families.
9 From the boundaries of the sons of Yah Hudah
is the inheritance of the sons of Shimon:
for the allotment of the sons of Yah Hudah
is too much for them:
so the inheritance of the sons of Shimon
is within their inheritance.

JOSHUA 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE PEBBLE OF ZEBULON

10 And the third *lot* **pebble**
came up ascended for the *children sons* of Zebulun
 according to their families:
 and the border of their inheritance was unto Sarid:
 11 And their border *went up ascended* toward the sea,
 and Maralah, and reached to *Dabbasheth Dabbesheth*,
 and reached to the *river wadi*
that is before Jokneam at the face of Yoqne Am;
 12 And turned from Sarid eastward
 toward the *sunrising rising sun*
 unto the border of *Chislothabor Kisloth Tabor*,
 and then goeth *out* to Daberath,
 and *goeth up ascendeth* to *Japhia Yaphia*,
 13 And from thence *passeth on* along
on the east from the rising
 to Gittahhepher, to *Ittahkazin Eth Qasin*,
 and goeth *out* to *Remmonmethoar Rimmon*
which is surveyed to Neah;
 14 And the border *compasseth surroundeth* it
 on the north *side* to Hannathon:
 and the *outgoings exits* thereof
 are in the valley of *Jiphthahel Yiphtach El*:
 15 And *Kattath Qattath*, and Nahallal, and Shimron,
 and *Idalah Yidalah*, and *Bethlehem Beth Lechem*:
 twelve cities with their *villages courts*.
 16 This is the inheritance of the *children sons* of Zebulun
 according to their families,
 these cities with their *villages courts*.

THE PEBBLE OF YISSACHAR

17 And the fourth *lot* **pebble**
came out went to *Issachar Yissachar*,
 for the *children sons* of *Issachar Yissachar*
 according to their families.
 18 And their border was toward *Jezreel Yizre El*,
 and *Chesulloth Kesulloth*, and Shunem,
 19 And *Haphraim Haphrayim*,
 and *Shihon Shiyon*, and *Anaharath Anacharath*,
 20 And Rabbith, and *Kishion Qishyon*, and *Abes Abes*,
 21 And Remeth, and *Engannim En Gannim*,
 and *Enhaddah En Haddah*, and *Bethpazzez Beth Patses*;
 22 And the *coast border* reacheth to Tabor,
 and *Shahazimah Shachasom*,
 and *Bethshemesh Beth Shemesh*;
 and the *outgoings exits* of their border
 were at *Jordan Yarden*:
 sixteen cities with their *villages courts*.
 23 This is the inheritance
 of the *tribe rod* of the *children sons* of *Issachar Yissachar*
 according to their families,
 the cities and their *villages courts*.

THE PEBBLE OF ASHER

24 And the fifth *lot* **pebble**
came out went for the *tribe rod* of the *children sons* of Asher
 according to their families.
 25 And their border was *Helkath Helqath*,
 and Hali, and Beten, and Achshaph,
 26 And *Alammelech Alam Melech*, and Amad, and Misheal;
 and reacheth to *Carmel westward Karmel seaward*,
 and to *Shihorlibnath Shichor Libnath*;
 27 And turneth toward the *sunrising rising sun*
 to *Bethdagon Beth Dagon*, and reacheth to Zebulun,
 and to the valley of *Jiphthahel Yiphtach El*
 toward the north *side* of *Bethemek Beth Ha Emeq*,
 and *Neiel Nei El*,
 and goeth *out* to *Cabul Kabul* on the left *hand*,
 28 And *Hebron Ebron*, and *Rehob Rechob*,
 and Hammon, and *Kanah Qanah*,
 even unto great *Zidon Sidon*;
 29 And *then* the *coast border* turneth to Ramah,
 and to the *strong fortified* city *Tyre Sor*;
 and the *coast border* turneth to Hosah;
 and the *outgoings exits* thereof are at the sea
 from the *coast region border boundaries* to Achzib:
 30 Ummah also, and *Aphek Apheq*, and *Rehob Rechob*:
 twenty and two cities with their *villages courts*.

YAH SHUA 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE PEBBLE OF ZEBULON

10 And the third pebble
 ascends for the sons of Zebulun
 for their families:
 and the border of their inheritance is to Sarid:
 11 and their border ascends toward the sea
 and Maralah and reaches to Dabbesheth
 and reaches to the wadi at the face of Yoqne Am;
 12 and turns from Sarid eastward toward the rising sun
 to the border of Kisloth Tabor;
 and then goes to Daberath and ascends to Yaphia;
 13 and from there passes along
 from the rising to Gittahhepher, to Eth Qasin
 and goes to Rimmon which is surveyed to Neah;
 14 and the border surrounds it
 on the north to Hannathon:
 and the exits are in the valley of Yiphtach El;
 15 Qattath and Nahallal and Shimron
 and Yidalah and Beth Lechem;
 — twelve cities with their courts.
 16 — this is the inheritance of the sons of Zebulun
 for their families
 — these cities with their courts.

THE PEBBLE OF YISSACHAR

17 The fourth pebble goes to Yissachar
 for the sons of Yissachar for their families:
 18 and their border is toward Yizre El
 and Kesulloth and Shunem
 19 and Haphrayim and Shiyon and Anacharath
 20 and Rabbith and Qishyon and Abes
 21 and Remeth and En Gannim
 and En Haddah and Beth Patses;
 22 and the border reaches to Tabor
 and Shachasom and Beth Shemesh;
 and the exits of their border are at Yarden;
 — sixteen cities with their courts.
 23 — this is the inheritance
 of the rod of the sons of Yissachar for their families,
 the cities and their courts.

THE PEBBLE OF ASHER

24 And the fifth pebble
 goes for the rod of the sons of Asher
 for their families:
 25 and their border is Helqath
 and Hali and Beten and Achshaph
 26 and Alam Melech and Amad and Misheal;
 and reaches to Karmel seaward
 and to Shichor Libnath;
 27 and turns toward the rising sun
 to Beth Dagon and reaches to Zebulun
 and to the valley of Yiphtach El
 toward the north of Beth Ha Emeq and Nei El
 and goes to Kabul on the left;
 28 and Ebron and Rechob
 and Hammon and Qanah
 to great Sidon;
 29 and the border turns to Ramah
 and to the fortified city Sor;
 and the border turns to Hosah;
 and the exits are at the sea
 from the border boundaries to Achzib;
 30 and Ummah and Apheq and Rechob;
 — twenty—two cities with their courts.

JOSHUA 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

31 This is the inheritance of the *tribe* **rod**
of the *children* **sons** of Asher
according to their families,
these cities with their *villages* **courts**.

THE PEBBLE OF NAPHTALI

32 The sixth *lot* **pebble**
came out **went** to the *children* **sons** of Naphtali,
even for the *children* **sons** of Naphtali
according to their families.
33 And their *coast* **border** was from Heleph,
from Allon to *Zaanannim* **Saanannim**, and Adami,
Nekeb **Neqeb**, and *Jabneel* **Yabne El**,
unto *Lakum* **Laqqum**;
and the *outgoings* **exits** thereof were at *Jordan* **Yarden**:
34 And *then* the *coast* **border** turneth *westward* **seaward**
to *Aznohtabor* **Aznoth Tabor**,
and goeth *out* from thence to *Hukkok* **Huqqoq**,
and reacheth to Zebulun on the *south* **side**,
and reacheth to Asher on the *west* **sea side**,
and to *Judah* **Yah Hudah** upon *Jordan* **Yarden**
toward the *sunrising* **rising sun**.

35 And the *fenced* **fortified** cities are *Ziddim* **Siddim**,
Zer **Ser**, and Hammath,
Rakkath **Raqqath**, and *Chinnereth* **Kinneroth**,
36 And Adamah, and Ramah, and *Hazor* **Hasor**,
37 And *Kedesh* **Qedesh**, and Edrei, and *Enhazor* **En Hasor**,
38 And *Iron* **Yiron**, and *Migdalel* **Migdal El**,
Horem, and *Bethanath* **Beth Anath**,
and *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh**;
nineteen cities with their *villages* **courts**.

39 This is the inheritance of the *tribe* **rod**
of the *children* **sons** of Naphtali
according to their families,

THE PEBBLE OF DAN

40 And the seventh *lot* **pebble**
came out **went** for the *tribe* **rod**
of the *children* **sons** of Dan
according to their families.
41 And the *coast* **border** of their inheritance
was *Zorah* **Sorah**, and Eshtaol,
and *Irshemesh* **Ir Shemesh**,
42 And *Shaalabbin* **Shaalbim**,
and *Ajalon* **Ayalon**, and *Jethlah* **Yithlah**,
43 And *Elon*, and *Thimnathah* **Timnah**, and *Ekron* **Eqron**,
44 And *Eltekeh* **El Teqeh**, and Gibbethon, and Baalath,
45 And *Jehud* **Yah Hudah**, and *Beneberak* **Bene Beraq**,
and *Gathrimmon* **Gath Rimmon**,
46 And *Mejarkon* **Me Hay Yarqon**, and *Rakkon* **Raqqon**,
with the border *before* **Japho** toward **Yapho**.
47 And the *coast* **border** of the *children* **sons** of Dan
went out *too little* for them:
therefore the *children* **sons** of Dan
went up **ascended** to fight against Leshem,
and *took* **captured** it,
and smote it with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword,
and possessed it, and *dwelt* **settled** therein,
and called Leshem, Dan,
after the name of Dan their father.
48 This is the inheritance of the *tribe* **rod**
of the *children* **sons** of Dan
according to their families,
these cities with their *villages* **courts**.

THE PEBBLE OF YAH SHUA

49 When they had *made an end of* **finished**
dividing the land for inheritance
by their *coasts* **borders**,
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** gave an inheritance
to *Joshua* **Yah Shua** the son of Nun among them:
50 According to the *word* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
they gave him the city which he asked,
even *Timnathserah* **Timnah Heres**
in mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**:
and he built the city, and *dwelt* **settled** therein.
51 These are the inheritances,
which *Eleazar* **El Azar** the priest,
and *Joshua* **Yah Shua** the son of Nun,
and the heads of the fathers of the *tribes* **rods**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,

YAH SHUA 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

31 — this is the inheritance of the rod
of the sons of Asher for to their families,
— these cities with their courts.

THE PEBBLE OF NAPHTALI

32 The sixth pebble goes to the sons of Naphtali
for the sons of Naphtali for their families:
33 and their border is from Heleph;
from Allon to Saanannim and Adami
Neqeb and Yabne El to Laqqum;
and the exits are at Yarden:
34 and the border turns seaward to Aznoth Tabor
and goes from thence to Huqqoq
and reaches to Zebulun on the south;
and reaches to Asher on the sea;
and to Yah Hudah on Yarden
toward the rising sun:
35 and the fortified cities are Siddim,
Ser and Hammath, Raqqath and Kinneroth
and Adamah and Ramah and Hasor
36 and Qedesh and Edrei and En Hasor
37 and Yiron and Migdal El
38 Horem and Beth Anath and Beth Shemesh;
— nineteen cities with their courts.
39 — this is the inheritance of the rod
of the sons of Naphtali
according to their families.

THE PEBBLE OF DAN

40 The seventh pebble
goes for the rod of the sons of Dan for their families:
41 and the border of their inheritance
is Sorah and Eshtaol and Ir Shemesh
and Shaalbim and Ayalon and Yithlah
42 and Elon and Timnah and Eqron
43 and El Teqeh and Gibbethon and Baalath
44 and Yah Hudah and Bene Beraq
45 and Gath Rimmon
46 and Me Hay Yarqon and Raqqon
with the border toward Yapho:
47 and the border of the sons of Dan
goes out from them:
and the sons of Dan
ascend to fight against Leshem and capture it;
and smite it with the mouth of the sword
and possess it and settle therein;
and call Leshem, Dan
after the name of Dan their father:
48 — this is the inheritance
of the rod of the sons of Dan for their families
— these cities with their courts.

THE PEBBLE OF YAH SHUA

49 When they finish
dividing the land for inheritance by their borders,
the sons of Yisra El give an inheritance
to Yah Shua the son of Nun among them:
50 according to the mouth of Yah Veh
they give him the city for which he asked
— Timnah Heres in mount Ephrayim:
and he builds the city and settles therein.

51 These are the inheritances
El Azar the priest and Yah Shua the son of Nun
and the heads of the fathers of the rods
of the sons of Yisra El,

JOSHUA 19—21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

divided for an inheritance by *lot pebble* in Shiloh
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
at the door opening
of the tabernacle tent of the congregation.
So they made an end of finished
dividing allotting the country land.

20

The LORD Yah Veh
also spake worded unto Joshua Yah Shua, saying,
Speak Word to the children sons of Israel Yisra El,
saying, Appoint Give out for you cities of refuge,
whereof I spake worded unto you
by the hand of Moses Mosheh:
That the slayer murderer
that killeth any person smiteth a soul
unawares and unwittingly
by inadvertent error unknowingly
may flee thither:
and they shall be your refuge
from the avenger redeemer of blood.
And when he that doth flee unto one of those cities
shall stand at the entering portal
of the gate portal of the city,
and shall declare word his cause word
in the ears of the elders of that city,
they shall take gather him into the city unto them,
and give him a place,
that he may dwell settle among them.
And if the avenger redeemer of blood pursue after him,
then they shall not deliver shut the slayer murderer up
into his hand;
because he smote his neighbour friend
unwittingly unknowingly,
and hated him not beforetime three yesters ago.
And he shall dwell settle in that city,
until he stand
before at the face of the congregation witness
for judgment,
and until the death of the high great priest
that shall be in those days:
then shall the slayer murderer return,
and come unto his own city, and unto his own house,
unto the city from whence he fled.
And they appointed hallowed
Kedesh Qedesh in Galilee Galiyl in mount Naphtali,
and Shechem in mount Ephraim Ephrayim,
and Kirjatharba Qiryath Arba, which is Hebron,
in the mountain of Judah Yah Hudah.
And on the other side Jordan Yarden
by Jericho eastward Yericho toward the rising,
they assigned Bezer gave Beser
in the wilderness upon the plain
out of the tribe rod of Reuben Reu Ben,
and Ramoth in Gilead Gilad out of the tribe rod of Gad,
and Golan in Bashan
out of the tribe rod of Manasseh Manesh Sheh.
These were the cities appointed
for all the children sons of Israel Yisra El,
and for the stranger sojourner
that sojourneth among them,
that whosoever killeth any person smiteth a soul
at unawares by inadvertent error might flee thither,
and not die
by the hand of the avenger redeemer of blood,
until he stood
before at the face of the congregation witness.

THE PEBBLE OF THE LEVIYM

21

Then came near
the heads of the fathers of the Levites Leviym
unto Eleazar El Azar the priest,
and unto Joshua Yah Shua the son of Nun,
and unto the heads of the fathers
of the tribes rods of the children sons of Israel Yisra El;
And they spake worded unto them at Shiloh
in the land of Canaan Kanaan, saying,
the LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed
by the hand of Moses Mosheh
to give us cities to dwell settle in,

YAH SHUA 19—21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

divide for an inheritance by pebble in Shiloh
at the face of Yah Veh
at the opening of the tent of the congregation.
— thus they finish allotting the land.

CITIES OF REFUGE

20

Yah Veh words to Yah Shua, saying,
Word to the sons of Yisra El, saying,
Give yourselves cities of refuge,
as I worded to you by the hand of Mosheh:
for the murderer who smites a soul
by inadvertent error unknowingly to flee to:
to be your refuge from the redeemer of blood.
And when one flees to one of those cities
and stands at the portal of the portal of the city
and words his word
in the ears of the elders of that city,
they gather him into the city to themselves
and give him a place to settle among them.
And when the redeemer of blood pursues after him,
they shut not the murderer into his hand
— because he smote his friend unknowingly
and hated him not three yesters ago:
and he settles in that city
until he stands at the face of the witness for judgment
until the death of the great priest being in those days:
then the murderer returns
and comes to his own city and to his own house
to the city whence he fled.
And they hallow Qedesh Galiyl in mount Naphtali
and Shechem in mount Ephrayim
and Qiryath Arba, which is Hebron
in the mountain of Yah Hudah:
and beyond Yarden by Yericho toward the rising
they gave Beser in the wilderness on the plain
from the rod of Reu Ben
and Ramoth in Gilad
from the rod of Gad
and Golan in Bashan
from the rod of Manesh Sheh.
These are the appointed cities
for all the sons of Yisra El
and for the sojourner sojourning among them,
for whoever smites a soul by inadvertent error
to flee to
and not die by the hand of the redeemer of blood
until he stands at the face of the witness.

THE PEBBLE OF THE LEVIYM

21

Then the heads of the fathers of the Leviym
come near El Azar the priest
and Yah Shua the son of Nun
and the heads of the fathers
of the rods of the sons of Yisra El;
and they word to them at Shiloh
in the land of Kanaan,
saying, Yah Veh, by the hand of Mosheh,
misvahed to give us cities to settle in

JOSHUA 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 with the suburbs thereof for our **cattle animals**.
And the **children sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
gave unto the **Levites Leviym** out of their inheritance,
at the **commandment mouth** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
these cities and their suburbs.

THE PEBBLE OF THE QOHATHIY

4 And the **lot came out pebble went**
for the families of the **Kohathites Qohathiy**:
and the **children sons** of **Aaron Aharon** the priest,
which were of the **Levites Leviym**,
had by **lot pebble**
out of the **tribe rod** of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and out of the **tribe rod** of **Simeon Shimoniyy**,
and out of the **tribe rod** of **Benjamin Ben Yamin**,
thirteen cities.

5 And the **rest remaining**
of the **children sons** of **Kohath Qohath**
had by **lot pebble** out of the families
of the **tribe rod** of **Ephraim Ephrayim**,
and out of the **tribe rod** of **Dan**,
and out of the half **tribe rod** of **Manasseh Menash Sheh**,
ten cities.

THE PEBBLE OF GERSHON

6 And the **children sons** of **Gershon**
had by **lot pebble** out of the families
of the **tribe rod** of **Issachar Yissachar**,
and out of the **tribe rod** of **Asher**,
and out of the **tribe rod** of **Naphtali**,
and out of the half **tribe rod** of **Manasseh Menash Sheh**
in **Bashan**, thirteen cities.

THE PEBBLE OF MERARI

7 The **children sons** of **Merari** by their families
had out of the **tribe rod** of **Reuben Reu Ben**,
and out of the **tribe rod** of **Gad**,
and out of the **tribe rod** of **Zebulun**,
twelve cities.

8 And the **children sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
gave by **lot pebble** unto the **Levites Leviym**
these cities with their suburbs,
as the **LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed**
by the hand of **Moses Mosheh**.

THE PEBBLE OF AHARON

9 And they gave out of the **tribe rod**
of the **children sons** of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and out of the **tribe rod**
of the **children sons** of **Simeon Shimon**,
these cities which are *here mentioned* **called** by name.

10 Which the **children sons** of **Aaron Aharon**,
being of the families of the **Kohathites Qehathiy**,
who were of the **children sons** of **Levi**, had:
for theirs was the first **lot pebble**.

11 And they gave them *the city of* **Arba Qiryath Arba**
the father of **Anak Anaq**, which city is **Hebron**,
in the **hill country mountains** of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
with the suburbs thereof round about it.

12 But the fields of the city,
and the **villages courts** thereof,
gave they to **Caleb Kaleb**
the son of **Jephunneh Yephunneh** for his possession.

13 Thus they gave
to the **children sons** of **Aaron Aharon** the priest
Hebron with her suburbs,
to be a city of refuge for the **slayer murderer**;

14 And **Jattir Yattir** with her suburbs,
and **Eshtemoa** with her suburbs,

15 And **Holon** with her suburbs,
and **Debir** with her suburbs,

16 And **Ain Ayin** with her suburbs,
and **Juttah Yuttah** with her suburbs,
and **Bethshemesh Beth Shemesh** with her suburbs;
nine cities out of those two **tribes scions**.

17 And out of the **tribe rod** of **Benjamin Ben Yamin**,
Gibeon Gibon with her suburbs,

18 **Geba** with her suburbs,
Anathoth with her suburbs,
and **Almon** with her suburbs;

YAH SHUA 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 with the suburbs thereof for our animals.
And the sons of Yisra El
give to the Leviym from their inheritance
at the mouth of Yah Veh
these cities and their suburbs.

THE PEBBLE OF THE QOHATHIY

4 And the pebble for the families of the Qohathiy
and the pebble for the sons of Aharon the priest
of the Leviym,
comes from the rod of Yah Hudah
and from the rod of Shimoniyy
and from the rod of Ben Yamin
— thirteen cities.

5 And the pebble for the remaining sons of Qohath
comes from the families of the rod of Ephrayim
and from the rod of Dan
and from the half rod of Menash Sheh
— ten cities.

THE PEBBLE OF GERSHON

6 And the pebble of the sons of Gershon
comes from the families of the rod of Yissachar
and from the rod of Asher
and from the rod of Naphtali
and from the half rod of Menash Sheh in Bashan
— thirteen cities.

THE PEBBLE OF MERARI

7 For the sons of Merari, for their families,
comes from the rod of Reu Ben
and from the rod of Gad
and from the rod of Zebulun
— twelve cities.

8 And the sons of Yisra El, by pebble,
give these cities with their suburbs to the Leviym,
as Yah Veh misvahed by the hand of Mosheh.

THE PEBBLE OF AHARON

9 And from the rod of the sons of Yah Hudah
and from the rod of the sons of Shimon
they give these cities which are called by name;
10 which the sons of Aharon
of the families of the Qehathiy
of the sons of Levi, have;
for theirs is the first pebble:

11 and they give them **Qiryath Arba**
the father of **Anaq**, which is **Hebron**,
in the mountains of Yah Hudah
with the suburbs thereof all around:

12 and the fields of the city and the courts thereof,
they give to **Kaleb** the son of **Yephunneh**
for his possession.

13 And they give the sons of Aharon the priest
Hebron with her suburbs

being a city of refuge for the murderer;
and **Libnah** with her suburbs
and **Yattir** with her suburbs

and **Eshtemoa** with her suburbs
and **Holon** with her suburbs

and **Debir** with her suburbs
and **Ayin** with her suburbs

and **Yuttah** with her suburbs
and **Beth Shemesh** with her suburbs

— nine cities from those two scions:

17 and from the rod of Ben Yamin

Gibeon Gibon with her suburbs

Geba with her suburbs

Anathoth with her suburbs

18 and **Almon** with her suburbs

JOSHUA 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 19 four cities.
All the cities
of the *children sons* of Aaron **Aharon**, the priests,
were thirteen cities with their suburbs.
- THE PEBBLE OF QEATH**
- 20 And the families of the *children sons* of Kohath **Qeath**,
the *Levites Levim* which remained
of the *children sons* of Kohath **Qeath**,
even they had the cities of their *lot pebble*
out of the *tribe rod* of Ephraim **Ephrayim**.
- 21 For they gave them Shechem
with her suburbs in mount Ephraim **Ephrayim**,
to be a city of refuge for the *slayer murderer*;
and Gezer with her suburbs,
- 22 And Kibzaim **Qibsayim** with her suburbs,
and Bethhoron **Beth Horon** with her suburbs;
four cities.
- 23 And out of the *tribe rod* of Dan,
Eltekeh **El Teqeh** with her suburbs,
Gibbethon with her suburbs,
- 24 Aijalon **Ayalon** with her suburbs,
Gat—rimmon **Gath Rimmon** with her suburbs;
four cities.
- 25 And out of the half *tribe rod*
of Manasseh **Menash Sheh**,
Tanach **Taanach** with her suburbs,
and Gathrimmon **Gath Rimmon** with her suburbs;
two cities.
- 26 All the cities were ten with their suburbs
for the families of the *children sons* of Kohath **Qeath**
that remained.
- THE PEBBLE OF GERSHON**
- 27 And unto the *children sons* of Gershon,
of the families of the *Levites Levim*,
out of the *other half tribe rod* of Manasseh **Menash Sheh**
they gave Golan in Bashan with her suburbs,
to be a city of refuge for the *slayer murderer*;
and Beeshterah **Beesh Terah** with her suburbs;
two cities.
- 28 And out of the *tribe rod* of Issachar **Yissachar**,
Kishon **Qishyon** with her suburbs,
Dabareh **Dabarath** with her suburbs,
Jarmuth **Yarmuth** with her suburbs,
Engannim **En Gannim** with her suburbs;
four cities.
- 29 And out of the *tribe rod* of Asher,
Mishal with her suburbs,
Abdon with her suburbs,
- 30 Helkath **Helqath** with her suburbs,
and Rehob **Rechob** with her suburbs;
four cities.
- 31 And out of the *tribe rod* of Naphtali,
Kedesh in Galilee **Qedesh Galiyl** with her suburbs,
to be a city of refuge for the *slayer murderer*;
and Hammothdor **Hammoth Dor** with her suburbs,
and Kartan **Qartan** with her suburbs;
three cities.
- 32 All the cities of the *Gershonites Gershoni*
according to their families
were thirteen cities with their suburbs.
- THE PEBBLE OF MERARI**
- 34 And unto the families of the *children sons* of Merari,
the *rest remaining* of the *Levites Levim*,
out of the *tribe rod* of Zebulun,

YAH SHUA 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 19 — four cities.
All the cities
of the sons of Aharon, the priests
— thirteen cities with their suburbs.
- THE PEBBLE OF QEATH**
- 20 And the families of the sons of Qeath
— the Levim remaining of the sons of Qeath
have the cities of their pebble
from the rod of Ephrayim.
- 21 And they give them Shechem
with her suburbs in mount Ephrayim
to be a city of refuge for the murderer;
and Gezer with her suburbs
and Qibsayim with her suburbs
and Beth Horon with her suburbs
— four cities.
- 23 And from the rod of Dan:
El Teqeh with her suburbs
Gibbethon with her suburbs
Ayalon with her suburbs
Gath Rimmon with her suburbs
— four cities.
- 25 And from the half rod of Menash Sheh:
Taanach with her suburbs
and Gath Rimmon with her suburbs
— two cities.
- 26 All the cities with their suburbs *are* ten
for the remaining families of the sons of Qeath.
- THE PEBBLE OF GERSHON**
- 27 And to the sons of Gershon
of the families of the Levim
from the half rod of Menash Sheh:
Golan in Bashan with her suburbs
to be a city of refuge for the murderer;
and Beesh Terah with her suburbs
— two cities.
- 28 And from the rod of Yissachar:
Qishyon with her suburbs
Dabarath with her suburbs
Yarmuth with her suburbs
En Gannim with her suburbs
— four cities.
- 30 And from the rod of Asher:
Mishal with her suburbs
Abdon with her suburbs
Helqath with her suburbs
and Rechob with her suburbs
— four cities.
- 32 And from the rod of Naphtali:
Qedesh Galiyl with her suburbs
to be a city of refuge for the murderer;
and Hammoth Dor with her suburbs
and Qartan with her suburbs
— three cities.
- 33 All the cities of the Gershoni
for their families
— thirteen cities with their suburbs.
- THE PEBBLE OF MERARI**
- 34 And to the families of the sons of Merari
remaining of the Levim from the rod of Zebulun:

JOSHUA 21, 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

35 *Jokneam* **Yoqne Am** with her suburbs,
and *Kartah* **Qartah** with her suburbs,
Dimnah with her suburbs,
Nahalal with her suburbs;
four cities.

36 And out of the *tribe* **rod** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**,
Bezer with her suburbs,
37 and Jahazah with her suburbs,
Kedemoth with her suburbs,
and Mephaath with her suburbs;
four cities.

38 And out of the *tribe* **rod** of Gad,
Ramoth in *Gilead* **Gilad** with her suburbs,
to be a city of refuge for the *slayer* **murderer**;
39 and *Mahanaim* **Machanayim** with her suburbs,
Heshbon with her suburbs,
Jazer **Yazer** with her suburbs;
four cities in all.

40 So all the cities
for the *children* **sons** of Merari by their families,
which were remaining
of the families of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
were by their *lot* **pebble** twelve cities.

41 All the cities of the *Levites* **Leviym**
within the possession of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
were forty and eight cities with their suburbs.

42 These cities were *every one* **city by city**
with their suburbs round about them:
thus were all these cities.

43 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** gave unto *Israel* **Yisra El**
all the land which he *sware* **oathed**
to give unto their fathers;
and they possessed it, and *dwelt* **settled** therein.

44 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** gave them rest round about,
according to all that he *sware* **oathed** unto their fathers:
and there stood not a man of all their enemies
before them **at their face**;
the *LORD* **delivered** **Yah Veh** gave all their enemies
into their hand.

45 There *failed* **fell** not ought of any good *thing* **word**
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *spoken* **worded**
unto the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**; all *came to pass* **became**.

SOME RODS RETURN HOME

22

Then *Joshua* **Yah Shua** called
the *Reubenites* **Reu Beniy**, and the *Gadites* **Gadiy**,
and the half *tribe* **rod** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
2 And said unto them, ye have *kept* **guarded** all
that *Moses* **Mosheh** the servant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded **misvahed** you,
and have *obeyed* **heard** my voice
in all that I *commanded* **misvahed** you:
3 Ye have not left your brethren these many days
unto this day,
but have *kept* **guarded** the *charge* **guard**
of the *commandment* **misvah**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**.

4 And now the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
hath *given rest* unto **rested** your brethren,
as he *promised* **worded** them:
therefore now *return* **face** ye,
and *get you* **go** unto your tents,
and unto the land of your possession,
which *Moses* **Mosheh** the servant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
gave you on the other side *Jordan* **Yarden**.

THE GREATEST MISVAH

5 But *take diligent heed* **guard mightily**
to *do* **work** the *commandment* **misvah** and the *law* **torah**,
which *Moses* **Mosheh** the servant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
charged **misvahed** you,
to love the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**,
and to walk in all his ways,

YAH SHUA 21, 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Yoqne Am with her suburbs
and Qartah with her suburbs
Dimnah with her suburbs
Nahalal with her suburbs
— four cities.

36 And from the rod of Reu Ben:
Bezer with her suburbs
and Jahazah with her suburbs
37 Kedemoth with her suburbs
and Mephaath with her suburbs
— four cities.

38 And from the rod of Gad:
Ramoth in Gilad with her suburbs,
to be a city of refuge for the murderer;
and Machanayim with her suburbs
39 Heshbon with her suburbs
Yazer with her suburbs
— four cities in all.

40 So all the cities
for the sons of Merari by their families,
remaining of the families of the Leviym,
by their pebble
— twelve cities.

41 All the cities of the Leviym
within the possession of the sons of Yisra El
— forty—eight cities with their suburbs.

42 These cities are city by city
with their suburbs all around them:
thus are all these cities.

43 And Yah Veh gives Yisra El
all the land he oathed to give their fathers;
and they possess it and settle therein.

44 And Yah Veh gives them rest all around,
according to all he oathed to their fathers:
and not a man of all their enemies
stands at their face;
Yah Veh gives all their enemies into their hand.

45 There fall not ought of any good word
which Yah Veh worded to the house of Yisra El;
so be it all.

SOME RODS RETURN HOME

22

Then Yah Shua calls the Reu Beniy and the Gadiy
and the half rod of Menash Sheh,
2 and says to them, You —
you guarded all Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh
misvahed you;
3 and heard my voice in all I misvahed you:
you left not your brothers these many days
to this day,
but guarded the guard
of the misvah of Yah Veh your Elohim.

4 And now Yah Veh your Elohim
rests your brothers as he worded them:
and now face and go to your tents
— to the land of your possession
Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh
gave you beyond Yarden.

THE GREATEST MISVAH

5 But guard mightily
to work the misvah and the torah,
Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh misvahed you:
to love Yah Veh your Elohim
and to walk in all his ways;

JOSHUA 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and to keep **guard** his *commandments* **mitsvoth**,
and to *cleave* **adhere** unto him,
and to serve him
with all your heart and with all your soul.
6 So *Joshua* **Yah Shua** blessed them, and sent them away:
and they went unto their tents.
7 Now to the *one* half
of the *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
Moses **Mosheh** had given *possession* in *Bashan*:
but unto the *other* half thereof
gave *Joshua* **Yah Shua** among their brethren
on this side *Jordan* westward **Yarden seaward**.
And when *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
sent them away also unto their tents,
then he blessed them,
8 And he *spake* **said** unto them, saying,
Return with much *riches* **holdings** unto your tents,
and with very **mighty** much *cattle* **chattel**,
with silver, and with gold,
and with *brass* **copper**, and with iron,
and with
very much raiment **a mighty abundance of clothes**:
divide **allot** the spoil of your enemies with your brethren.
9 And the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
and the *children* **sons** of *Gad*
and the half *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
returned,
and *departed* **went** from the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
out of *Shiloh*, which is in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
to go unto the *country* **land** of *Gilead* **Gilad**,
to the land of their possession,
whereof they were possessed,
according to the *word* **mouth** of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**
by the hand of *Moses* **Mosheh**.

THE REBEL ALTAR

10 And when they came
unto the *borders* **region** of *Jordan* **Yarden**,
that are in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
and the *children* **sons** of *Gad*
and the half *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
built there *an* **a sacrifice** altar by *Jordan* **Yarden**,
a great **sacrifice** altar to *see to* **the sight**.
11 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** heard say,
Behold, the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
and the *children* **sons** of *Gad*
and the half *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
have built *an* **a sacrifice** altar
over *against* **toward** the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
in the *borders* **region** of *Jordan* **Yarden**,
at the *passage* **this side**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
12 And when the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** heard of it,
the whole *congregation* **witness**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
gathered **congregated** themselves together at *Shiloh*,
to go up **ascend** to *war* **host** against them.
13 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
sent unto the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**,
and to the *children* **sons** of *Gad*,
and to the half *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
into the land of *Gilead* **Gilad**,
Phinehas **Pinechas** the son of *Eleazar* **El Azar** the priest,
14 And with him ten *princes* **hierarchs**,
of each *chief house* **house of the fathers**,
a *prince* **one hierarch**
throughout all the *tribes* **rods** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and each *one* **man** was an head
of the house of their fathers
among the thousands of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
15 And they came
unto the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**,
and to the *children* **sons** of *Gad*,
and to the half *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
unto the land of *Gilead* **Gilad**,
and they *spake* **worded** with them, saying,
16 Thus saith the whole *congregation* **witness**
of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**,

YAH SHUA 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to guard his misvoth
and to adhere to him;
and to serve him
with all your heart and with all your soul.
6 Thus Yah Shua blesses them and sends them away:
and they go to their tents.
7 And Mosheh gives to the half scion of Menash Sheh
in Bashan:
and Yah Shua gives to the half among their brothers
beyond Yarden seaward:
and Yah Shua sends them to their tents
and blesses them,
8 and says to them, saying,
Return to your tents with much holdings
and with mighty much chattel;
with silver and with gold
and with copper and with iron
and with a mighty abundance of clothes:
allot the spoil of your enemies with your brothers.
9 And the sons of Reu Ben and the sons of Gad
and the half scion of Menash Sheh return
and come from the sons of Yisra El
— from Shiloh in the land of Kenaan,
to go to the land of Gilad
— to the land of their possession
whereof they possess
according to the mouth of Yah Veh
by the hand of Mosheh.

THE REBEL ALTAR

10 And they come to the region of Yarden
in the land of Kenaan;
and the sons of Reu Ben and the sons of Gad
and the half scion of Menash Sheh
build a sacrifice altar by Yarden
— a great sacrifice altar to the sight.
11 And the sons of Yisra El hear say,
Behold, the sons of Reu Ben and the sons of Gad
and the half scion of Menash Sheh
build a sacrifice altar toward the land of Kenaan
in the region of Yarden
this side of the sons of Yisra El.
12 And when the sons of Yisra El hear,
the whole witness of the sons of Yisra El
congregate at Shiloh
to ascend to host against them:
and the sons of Yisra El
send to the sons of Reu Ben and to the sons of Gad
and to the half scion of Menash Sheh,
in the land of Gilad,
Pinechas the son of *El Azar* the priest;
14 with ten hierarchs
— one hierarch of each house of the fathers
throughout all the rods of Yisra El;
and each man is a head of the house of their fathers
among the thousands of Yisra El.
15 And they come
to the sons of Reu Ben and to the sons of Gad
and to the half scion of Menash Sheh
to the land of Gilad;
and they word with them, saying,
16 Thus says the whole witness of Yah Veh,

JOSHUA 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

What trespass **treason** is this
that ye have *committed* **treasoned**
against the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
to turn away this day
from *following the LORD* **after Yah Veh**,
in that ye have builded you *an a sacrifice* altar,
that ye might rebel this day against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**?
17 Is the *iniquity* **perversity** of Peor too little for us,
from which we are not *cleansed* **purified** until this day,
although there was a plague
in the *congregation* **witness** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
18 But that ye must turn away this day
from *following the LORD* **after Yah Veh**?
and it *will* **shall** be,
seeing ye rebel to day against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that to morrow he *will* **shall** be *wroth* **enraged**
with the whole *congregation* **witness** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
19 *Notwithstanding* **Surely**,
if the land of your possession be *unclean* **foul**,
then pass ye over unto the land
of the possession of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
wherein the *LORD'S* **Yah Veh's** tabernacle
dwelleth **tabernacleth**,
and take possession among us:
but rebel not against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
nor rebel against us,
in building you *an a sacrifice* altar
beside **except** the *sacrifice* altar
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**.
20 Did not Achan the son of *Zerah* **Zerach**
commit **treason** a *trespass* **treason**
in the *accursed thing* **devotement**,
and *wrath* **rage** fell
on all the *congregation* **witness** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
and that man *perished* **expired** not alone
in his *iniquity* **perversity**.
21 Then the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
and the *children* **sons** of *Gad*
and the half *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
answered, and *said* **worded**
unto the heads of the thousands of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
22 *The LORD God of gods* **Yah Veh El of elohim**,
the LORD God of gods **Yah Veh El of elohim**,
he knoweth,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** he shall know; if it be in rebellion,
or if in *transgression* **treason** against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
(save us not this day,)
23 That we have built us *an a sacrifice* altar
to turn from *following the LORD* **after Yah Veh**,
or if to *offer thereon burnt offering* **holocaust a holocaust**
or *meat offering*,
or if to *offer peace offerings* **work shelamim** thereon,
let the *LORD* **Yah Veh** himself *require* **beseech** it;
24 And if we have not *rather done* **worked** it
for *fear* **concern** of this *thing* **word**, saying,
In time to come **To morrow**
your *children* **sons** might *speak* **say** unto our *children* **sons**,
saying, What have ye to do
with the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
25 For the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *made* **given** *Yarden*
a border between us and you,
ye *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
and *children* **sons** of *Gad*;
ye have no *part* **allotment** in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
so **thus** shall your *children* **sons**
make our *children* **sons** cease
from *fearing the LORD* **in not awing Yah Veh**.
26 Therefore we said,
Let us now *prepare* **work** to build us *an a sacrifice* altar,
not for *burnt offering* **holocaust**, nor for sacrifice:
27 But that it may be a witness between us, and you,
and our generations after us,
that we might *do* **serve** the service of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
before him **at his face** with our *burnt offerings* **holocausts**,
and with our sacrifices,
and with our *peace offerings* **shelamim**;
that your *children* **sons** may not say to our *children* **sons**
in time to come **to morrow**,

YAH SHUA 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

What is this treason
you treason against Elohim of Yisra El
— to turn away this day from after Yah Veh
by building a sacrifice altar
— to rebel this day against Yah Veh?
17 Is the perversity of Peor too little for us
from which we are not purified until this day
— a plague in the witness of Yah Veh
18 to turn away this day from after Yah Veh?
And so be it,
today you rebel against Yah Veh;
and tomorrow
he enrages with the whole witness of Yisra El.
19 Surely,
if the land of your possession is foul,
pass over to the land of the possession of Yah Veh
— wherein the tabernacle of Yah Veh tabernacles;
and take possession among us:
but neither rebel against Yah Veh
nor rebel against us by building a sacrifice altar
except the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh our Elohim.
20 Treasoned not Achan the son of Zerach a treason
in the devotement
— and rage fell on all the witness of Yisra El?
and that man expired not alone in his perversity.
21 And the sons of Reu Ben and the sons of Gad
and the half scion of Menash Sheh answer
and word to the heads of the thousands of Yisra El,
22 El of elohim — Yah Veh
El of elohim — Yah Veh — he knows
— and Yisra El he knows
— if in rebellion — if in treason against Yah Veh
you save us not this day
23 — if we build us a sacrifice altar
to turn from after Yah Veh,
— if to holocaust a holocaust or offering
— if to work shelamim thereon
Yah Veh himself beseeches.
24 And if we work not concerning this word,
saying, Tomorrow your sons say to our sons,
saying, What have you to do
with Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El?
25 for Yah Veh gave Yarden
for a border between us and between you,
you sons of Reu Ben and sons of Gad;
you have no allotment in Yah Veh:
thus your sons cause our sons to cease
by not awing Yah Veh.
26 So we say,
We now work to build us a sacrifice altar,
neither for holocaust nor for sacrifice:
27 but to be a witness
between us and between you
and our generations after us;
to serve the service of Yah Veh at his face
with our holocausts and with our sacrifices
and with our shelamim;
that your sons not say to our sons tomorrow,

JOSHUA 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

28 ye have no part allotment in the LORD Yah Veh.
Therefore said we, that **so be** it shall be,
when they should *so* say to us
or to our generations *in time to come to morrow*,
that we may say *again*,
Behold **See** the pattern
of the **sacrifice** altar of the LORD Yah Veh,
which our fathers *made worked*,
not for *burnt offerings holocausts*, nor for sacrifices;
but it is a witness between us and you.

29 *God forbid* **Far be it**
that we should rebel against the LORD Yah Veh,
and turn this day from *following the LORD after Yah Veh*,
to build an **a sacrifice** altar for *burnt offerings holocausts*,
for *meat offerings*, or for sacrifices,
beside **apart from** the **sacrifice** altar
of the LORD Yah Veh our God Elohim
that is before **at the face of** his tabernacle.

30 And when *Phinehas* **Pinechas** the priest,
and the *princes* **hierarchs** of the *congregation* **witness**
and heads of the thousands of *Israel* **Yisra El**
which were with him,
heard the words that the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
and the *children* **sons** of Gad
and the *children* **sons** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
spake worded,
it *pleased them well—pleased their eyes*.

31 And *Phinehas* **Pinechas**
the son of *Eleazar* **El Azar** the priest
said unto the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**,
and to the *children* **sons** of Gad,
and to the *children* **sons** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
This day
we perceive that the LORD Yah Veh is among us,
because ye have not
committed **treasoned** this *trespass* **treason**
against the LORD Yah Veh:
now **then** ye have *delivered* **rescued**
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
out of the hand of the LORD Yah Veh.

32 And *Phinehas* **Pinechas**
the son of *Eleazar* **El Azar** the priest,
and the *princes* **hierarchs**,
returned from the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**,
and from the *children* **sons** of Gad,
out of the land of *Gilead* **Gilad**,
unto the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
to the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and *brought* **returned** them word *again*.

33 And the *thing* **pleased word well—pleased**
the eyes of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
blessed *God* **Elohim**,
and did not *intend* **say** to *go up* **ascend** against them
in *battle* **hosting**,
to *destroy* **ruin** the land
wherein the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben** and Gad
dwelt **settled**.

34 And the *children* **sons** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
and the *children* **sons** of Gad called the **sacrifice** altar
Ed **Witness**:
for it shall be a witness between us
that the LORD Yah Veh is *God* **Elohim**.

23 And **so be** it came to *pass*,
a *long time* **after** **after many days**
that the LORD Yah Veh
had *given rest unto* *Israel* **rested** *Yisra El*
from all their enemies round about,
that *Joshua* **Yah Shua** waxed old
and stricken *in age* **and come into days**.

2 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** called for all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and for their elders, and for their heads,
and for their judges, and for their officers,
and said unto them,
I am old and stricken *in age* **and come into days**:

3 And ye have seen all
that the LORD Yah Veh your *God* **Elohim**

YAH SHUA 22, 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

You have no allotment in Yah Veh.
28 So say we, so be it,
when they say to us or to our generations tomorrow,
that we say,
See the pattern of the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh
our fathers worked
— neither for holocausts nor for sacrifices;
but as a witness between us and between you.

29 Far be it that we rebel against Yah Veh
and turn this day from after Yah Veh
to build a sacrifice altar for holocausts
for offerings or for sacrifices
apart from the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh our Elohim
at the face of his tabernacle.

30 And when Pinechas the priest
and the hierarchs of the witness
and heads of the thousands of Yisra El with him
hear the words
the sons of Reu Ben and the sons of Gad
and the sons of Menash Sheh word,
it well—pleases their eyes.

31 And Pinechas the son of El Azar the priest
says to the sons of Reu Ben and to the sons of Gad
and to the sons of Menash Sheh,
This day we perceive that Yah Veh is among us;
because you treasoned not this treason
against Yah Veh:
then you have rescued the sons of Yisra El
from the hand of Yah Veh.

32 And Pinechas the son of El Azar the priest
and the hierarchs return
from the sons of Reu Ben and from the sons of Gad
from the land of Gilad to the land of Kenaan
to the sons of Yisra El;
and return them word:
and the word well—pleases
the eyes of the sons of Yisra El;
and the sons of Yisra El bless Elohim
and say not to ascend to host against them
to ruin the land
wherein the sons of Reu Ben and Gad settle.

34 And the sons of Reu Ben and the sons of Gad
call the sacrifice altar, Witness:
for it witnesses between us that Yah Veh is Elohim.

23 And so be it, after many days,
Yah Veh rests Yisra El
from all their enemies all around;
and Yah Shua is old and stricken
and comes into days.

2 And Yah Shua calls for all Yisra El
and for their elders and for their heads
and for their judges and for their officers
and says to them,
I am old and stricken and come into days:
and you — you saw all that Yah Veh your Elohim

JOSHUA 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

hath *done* **worked** unto all these *nations* **goyim**
because of you **at thy face**;
for the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**
is he that hath fought for you.
4 Behold **See**, I have *divided* **felled** unto you by lot
these *nations* **goyim** that *remain* **survive**,
to be an inheritance for your *tribes* **scions**,
from *Jordan* **Yarden**,
with all the *nations* **goyim** that I have cut off,
even unto the great sea *westward* **at the entry of the sun**.
5 And the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**,
he shall expel them from *before you* **thy face**,
and *drive* **dispossess** them from *out of your sight* **thy face**;
and ye shall possess their land,
as the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**
hath *promised* **worded** unto you.
6 Be ye therefore *very courageous* **mighty strong**
to *keep* **guard** and to *do* **work** all that is *written* **inscribed**
in the *book* **scroll** of the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
that ye turn not aside therefrom
to the right *hand* or to the left;
7 That ye come not among these *nations* **goyim**,
these that *remain* **survive** among you;
neither *make mention of* **memorialize**
the name of their *gods* **elohim**,
nor *cause to swear* **oath** by them, neither serve them,
nor *bow* **prostrate** yourselves unto them:
8 But *cleave* **adhere**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**,
as ye have *done* **worked** unto this day.
9 For the **LORD Yah Veh**
hath *driven out* **dispossessed** from *before you* **thy face**
great *nations* **goyim** and *strong* **mighty**:
but *as for you*,
no man hath been able to stand *before you* **at thy face**
unto this day.
10 One man of you shall *chase* **pursue** a thousand:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**,
he *it is that* fighteth for you,
as he hath *promised* **worded** you.
11 Take good *heed* **Guard** *mightily* therefore
unto *yourselves* **your souls**,
that ye love the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**.
12 Else if **in turning back**, ye *do in any wise go* **turn** back,
and *cleave* **adhere**
unto the remnant of these *nations* **goyim**,
even these that *remain* **survive** among you,
and shall *make marriages* **intermarry** with them,
and go in unto them, and they to you:
13 **In knowing**, Know *for a certainty*
that the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**
will no more drive out **shall not add to dispossess**
any of these nations **goyim** from *before you* **thy face**;
but they shall be snares, and *traps* **snares** unto you,
and scourges in your sides, and thorns in your eyes,
until ye *perish* **destruct** from off this good *land* **soil**
which the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**
hath given you.
14 And, behold,
this day I am going the way of all the earth:
and ye know in all your hearts and in all your souls,
that not one *thing* **word** hath *failed* **fallen**
of all the good *things* **words**
which the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God** **Elohim** **worded**
concerning you;
all are come *to pass* unto you,
and not one *thing* **word** hath *failed* **fallen** thereof.
15 Therefore **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
that as all good *things* **words** are come upon you,
which the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God** **Elohim**
promised **worded** you;
so **thus** shall the **LORD Yah Veh**
bring upon you all evil *things* **words**,
until he have *destroyed* **desolated** you
from off this good *land* **soil**
which the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God** **Elohim**
hath given you.

YAH SHUA 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

worked to all these goyim at your face;
for Yah Veh your Elohim *is* he who fought for you.
4 See, I felled for you these goyim who survive
to be an inheritance for your scions
— from Yarden, and all the goyim I cut off,
to the great sea at the entry of the sun.
5 And Yah Veh your Elohim
expels them from your face
and dispossesses them from your face;
and you possess their land
as Yah Veh your Elohim worded you.
6 Be mighty strong
to guard and to work all
inscribed in the scroll of the torah of Mosheh
— that you not turn aside, right or left;
that you not go among these goyim
who survive among you;
neither memorialize the name of their elohim
nor oath by them nor serve them
nor prostrate to them:
8 but adhere to Yah Veh your Elohim,
as you work to this day.
9 For Yah Veh dispossessed from your face
great and mighty goyim:
as for you
— no man stands at your face to this day.
10 One man of you pursues a thousand:
for Yah Veh your Elohim fights for you
as he worded to you.
11 Guard your souls mightily
to love Yah Veh your Elohim.
12 Else, if in turning back, you turn back,
and adhere to the remnant of these goyim
who survive among you
— and intermarry with them
and go in to them and they to you.
13 In knowing, know this:
Yah Veh your Elohim
adds not to dispossess these goyim from your face;
and they become snares — snares to you
and scourges in your sides and thorns in your eyes*
until you destruct from off this good soil
which Yah Veh your Elohim has given you.
*cp 2 Corinthians 12:7
14 And behold,
this day I go the way of all the earth:
and you know in all your hearts and in all your souls
that not one word falls
of all the good words
Yah Veh your Elohim worded concerning you;
all comes to you;
not one word thereof falls.
15 So be it, as all good words come on you,
which Yah Veh your Elohim words you;
thus Yah Veh brings on you all evil words,
until he desolates you from off this good soil
which Yah Veh your Elohim gives you;

JOSHUA 23, 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 When ye have *transgressed* **trespassed** the covenant
of the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**,
which he *commanded* **misvahed** you,
and have gone and served other **gods elohim**,
and bowed yourselves to them;
then shall the *anger* **wrath** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
be kindled against you,
and ye shall *perish* **destruct** quickly
from off the good land
which he hath given unto you.

YAH SHUA REVIEWS HISTORY

24

And *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
gathered all the *tribes* **scions** of **Israel Yisra El**
to Shechem,
and called for the elders of **Israel Yisra El**,
and for their heads,
and for their judges, and for their officers;
and they *presented* **set themselves**
before God **at the face of Elohim**.
2 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** said unto all the people,
Thus saith
the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of **Israel Yisra El**,
Your fathers *dwelt* **settled**
on the other side of the *flood in old time* **river originally**,
even Terah **Terach**,
the father of Abraham, and the father of Nachor:
and they served other **gods elohim**.
3 And I took your father Abraham
from the other side of the *flood* **river**,
and *led* **walked** him
throughout all the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
and *multiplied* **abounded** his seed,
and gave him *Isaac* **Yischaq**.
4 And I gave unto *Isaac* **Yischaq**
Jacob **Yaaqov** and *Esau* **Esav**:
and I gave unto *Esau* **Esav** mount Seir, to possess it;
but *Jacob* **Yaaqov** and his *children* **sons**
went down **descended** into *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
5 I sent *Moses* **Mosheh** also and *Aaron* **Aharon**,
and I *plagued* **smote** **Misrayim**,
according to that which I *did* **worked** among them:
and afterward I brought you out.
6 And I brought your fathers out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
and ye came unto the sea;
and the *Egyptians* **Misrayim** pursued after your fathers
with chariots and *horsemen* **cavalry**
unto the *Red* **Reed** sea.
7 And when they cried unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
he *put* **set** darkness between you
and *between* the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
and brought the sea upon them, and covered them;
and your eyes have seen
what I have *done* **worked** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
and ye *dwelt* **settled** in the wilderness
a long season **many days**.
8 And I brought you into the land of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
which *dwelt* **settled** on the other side *Jordan* **Yarden**;
and they fought with you:
and I gave them into your hand,
that ye might possess their land;
and I *destroyed* **desolated** them from *before you* **thy face**.
9 Then *Balak* **Balaq** the son of *Zippor* **Sippor**,
king **sovereign** of Moab,
arose and *warred* **fought** against **Israel Yisra El**,
and sent and called *Balaam* **Bilam** the son of Beor
to *curse* **abase** you:
10 But I *would* **willed to** not hearken unto *Balaam* **Bilam**;
therefore *in blessing*, he blessed you *still*:
so I delivered you out of his hand.
11 And you *went* **passed over** *Jordan* **Yarden**,
and came unto *Jericho* **Yericho**:
and the *men* **masters** of *Jericho* **Yericho**
fought against you,
the *Amorites* **Emoriy**, and the *Perizzites* **Perizziy**
and the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**, and the *Hittites* **Hethiy**,
and the *Girgashites* **Girgashiy**, the *Hivites* **Hivviy**,
and the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**;
and I *delivered* **gave** them into your hand.

YAH SHUA 23, 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

16 in trespassing the covenant of Yah Veh your Elohim
which he misvahed you;
and go and serve other elohim
and bow yourselves to them;
then Yah Veh kindles his wrath against you
and you destruct quickly
from off the good land he has given to you.

YAH SHUA REVIEWS HISTORY

24

And Yah Shua
gathers all the scions of Yisra El to Shechem
and calls for the elders of Yisra El and for their heads
and for their judges and for their officers;
and they set at the face of Elohim.
2 And Yah Shua says to all the people,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
Your fathers originally settled beyond the river
— Terach the father of Abraham the father of Nachor
and they served other elohim:
and I took your father Abraham
from beyond the river
and walked him through all the land of Kenaan;
and abounded his seed and gave him Yischaq:
and I gave Yischaq Yaaqov and Esav:
and I gave Esav mount Seir to possess;
but Yaaqov and his sons descended into Misrayim.
and I sent Mosheh and Aharon
and I smote Misrayim as I worked among them:
and afterward I brought you out.
3 And I brought your fathers from Misrayim:
and you came to the sea;
and the Misrayim pursued your fathers
with chariots and cavalry to the Reed sea.
4 And when they cried to Yah Veh,
he set darkness
between you and between the Misrayim
and brought the sea on them and covered them;
and your eyes saw what I worked in Misrayim:
and you settled in the wilderness many days.
5 And I brought you to the land of the Emoriy
who settled beyond Yarden;
and they fought with you:
and I gave them into your hand to possess their land;
and I desolated them from your face.
6 And Balaq the son of Sippor sovereign of Moab
rose and fought against Yisra El
and sent and called Bilam the son of Beor
to abase you;
but I willed to not hearken to Bilam:
and in blessing, he blessed you:
thus I delivered you from his hand.
7 And you passed over Yarden and came to Yericho:
and the masters of Yericho fought against you
— the Emoriy and the Perizziy
and the Kenaaniy and the Hethiy and the Girgashiy
the Hivviy and the Yebusiy;
and I gave them into your hand:

JOSHUA 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 12 And I sent the hornet *before you* **from thy face**,
which drove them out from *before you* **thy face**,
even the two *kings* **sovereigns** of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**;
but not with thy sword, nor with thy bow.
- 13 And I have given you a land for which ye did not labour,
and cities which ye built not, and ye *dwelt* **settle** in them;
of the vineyards and oliveyards which ye planted not
do ye eat.

YAH SHUA CHALLENGES YISRA EL

- 14 Now therefore *fear the LORD* **awe Yah Veh**,
and serve him in *sincerity* **integrity** and in truth:
and *put away* **turn aside**
the *gods* **elohim** which your fathers served
on the other side of the *flood river*,
and in *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
and serve ye *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
- 15 And if it *seem evil unto you* **vilify your eyes**
to serve *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
choose you this day *whom* **ever** ye *will* **shall** serve;
whether the *gods* **elohim** which your fathers served
that were on the other side of the *flood river*,
or the *gods* **elohim** of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
in whose land ye *dwelt* **settle**:
but as for me and my house,
we *will* **shall** serve *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
- 16 And the people answered and said,
God forbid **Far be it**
that we should forsake *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to serve other *gods* **elohim**;
- 17 For *the LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
he *it is that brought* **ascended** us up and our fathers
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
from the house of *bondage* **servants**,
and which *did* **worked** those great signs in our *sight* **eyes**,
and *preserved* **guarded** us in all the way wherein we went,
and among all the people
through **among** whom we passed:
- 18 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
drove out from *before us* **our face** all the people,
even the *Amorites* **Emoriy** which *dwelt* **settled** in the land:
therefore will we also **shall** serve *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
for he is our *God* **Elohim**.
- 19 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** said unto the people,
Ye cannot serve *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
for he is an holy *God* **Elohim**; he is a jealous *God* **El**;
he *will* **shall** not *forgive* **lift** your *transgressions* **rebellions**
nor your sins.
- 20 If ye forsake *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and serve strange *gods* **elohim**,
then he *will* **shall** turn and *do you hurt* **vilify you**,
and *consume you* **finish you off**,
after that he hath *done you good* **well—pleased you**.
- 21 And the people said unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
Nay; but we *will* **shall** serve *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
- 22 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** said unto the people,
Ye are witnesses against yourselves
that ye have chosen you *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to serve him.
- 23 And they said, We are witnesses.
- 24 Now therefore *put away* **turn aside**, *said he*,
the strange *gods* **elohim** which are among you,
and *incline* **spread** your heart
unto *the LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
- 24 And the people said unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
The LORD **Yah Veh** our *God* **will** **Elohim shall** we serve,
and his voice *will* **shall** we *obey* **hear**.
- 25 So *Joshua* **made** **Yah Shua cut** a covenant
with the people that day,
and set them a statute and *an ordinance* **a judgment**
in Shechem.
- 26 And *Joshua* **wrote** **Yah Shua inscribed** these words
in the *book* **scroll** of the *law* **torah** of *God* **Elohim**,
and took a great stone,

YAH SHUA 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 12 and I sent the hornet from your face
who drove them from your face
— the two sovereigns of the Emoriy
— neither with your sword nor with your bow:
- 13 and I gave you a land for which you labored not
and cities which you built not
and you settled in them;
of the vineyards and oliveyards
which you planted not,
you eat.

YAH SHUA CHALLENGES YISRA EL

- 14 Now awe Yah Veh
and serve him in integrity and in truth:
and turn aside the elohim your fathers served
beyond the river and in Misrayim;
and serve Yah Veh:
- 15 and if it vilify your eyes to serve Yah Veh,
choose you this day whomever you serve
— whether the elohim your fathers served
beyond the river;
or the elohim of the Emoriy
in whose land you settle:
but as for me and my house, we serve Yah Veh.
- 16 And the people answer and say,
Far be it
that we forsake Yah Veh to serve other elohim;
for Yah Veh our Elohim
ascended us and our fathers
from the land of Misrayim
from the house of servants
and worked those great signs in our eyes;
and guarded us in all the way we went
and among all the people among whom we passed:
and Yah Veh drove all the people from our face
— even the Emoriy who settled in the land:
we also serve Yah Veh; for he is our Elohim.
- 19 And Yah Shua says to the people,
You cannot serve Yah Veh:
for he is a holy Elohim; he is a jealous El;
he lifts neither your rebellions nor your sins.
When you forsake Yah Veh
and serve strange elohim
he turns and vilifies you and finishes you off
after he has well — pleased you.
- 21 And the people say to Yah Shua,
No! But we serve Yah Veh.
- 22 And Yah Shua says to the people,
You are witnesses against yourselves
that you have chosen Yah Veh — to serve him.
- And they say, We are witnesses.
- 23 And now, turn aside the strange elohim among you
and spread your heart to Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El.
- 24 And the people say to Yah Shua,
Yah Veh our Elohim we serve:
and his voice we hear!
- 25 And Yah Shua cuts a covenant
with the people that day
and sets them a statute and a judgment in Shechem:
and Yah Shua inscribes these words
in the scroll of the torah of Elohim
and takes a great stone

JOSHUA 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and set **raised** it up there under an oak,
that was by the *sanctuary* **holies** of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
27 And **Joshua Yah Shua** said unto all the people,
Behold, this stone shall be a witness unto us;
for it hath heard
all the *words* **sayings** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
which he *spake* **worded** unto us:
it shall be therefore a witness unto you,
lest ye deny your **God Elohim**.
28 So **Joshua** let **Yah Shua** sent the people *depart away*,
every man unto his inheritance.

THE ENTOMBMENT OF YAH SHUA

29 And **so be** it came to *pass*, after these *things* **words**,
that **Joshua Yah Shua** the son of Nun,
the servant of the **LORD Yah Veh**, died,
being a son of an hundred and ten years *old*.
30 And they *buried* **entombed** him
in the border of his inheritance
in *Timnathserah* **Timnah Heres**,
which is in mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
on the north *side* of the *hill* **mountain** of Gaash.

THE FIDELITY OF YISRA EL

31 And **Israel Yisra El** served the **LORD Yah Veh**
all the days of **Joshua Yah Shua**,
and all the days of the elders
that *overlived* **Joshua prolonged Yah Shua**,
and which had known
all the works of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
that he had *done* **worked** for **Israel Yisra El**.
32 And the bones of **Joseph Yoseph**,
which the *children* **sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
brought up **ascended** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
buried **entombed** they in Shechem,
in a *parcel* **field** of *ground* **allotment**
which *Jacob* *bought* **Yaaqov chattedel**
of the sons of Hamor the father of Shechem
for an hundred *pieces of silver* **ingots**:
and it became the inheritance
of the *children* **sons** of **Joseph Yoseph**.
33 And **Eleazar El Azar** the son of **Aaron Aharon** died;
and they *buried* **entombed** him in a hill
that *pertained to* **Phinehas of Pinechas** his son,
which was given him in mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**.

YAH SHUA 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and raises it there under an oak
by the holies of Yah Veh.
27 And Yah Shua says to all the people,
Behold, this stone becomes a witness to us;
for it hears all the sayings Yah Veh words to us:
it becomes a witness to you
lest you deny your Elohim.
28 So Yah Shua sends the people away
— every man to his inheritance.

THE ENTOMBMENT OF YAH SHUA

29 And so be it, after these words,
Yah Shua the son of Nun the servant of Yah Veh dies
— a son of a hundred and ten years:
and they entomb him
in the border of his inheritance
in Timnah Heres in mount Ephrayim
north of the mountain of Gaash.

THE FIDELITY OF YISRA EL

31 And Yisra El serves Yah Veh
all the days of Yah Shua
and all the days the elders prolonged after Yah Shua
— who knew all the works
Yah Veh worked for Yisra El.
32 And the bones of Yoseph,
which the sons of Yisra El ascend from Misrayim,
they entomb in Shechem
— in a field of allotment Yaaqov chattedel
from the sons of Hamor the father of Shechem
for a hundred ingots:
and thus it became the inheritance
of the sons of Yoseph.
33 And El Azar the son of Aharon dies;
and they entomb him in a hill of Pinechas his son,
given him in mount Ephrayim.

JUDGES 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YISRA EL CAPTURES KENAAN

- 1 Now **And** after the death of *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
so **be** it came to pass,
that the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
asked the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, saying,
Who shall go up **ascend** for us
against the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
first, **to begin** to fight against them?
2 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said,
Judah **Yah Hudah** shall go up **ascend**:
behold, I have *delivered* **given** the land into his hand.
3 And *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
said unto *Simeon* **Shimon** his brother,
Come up **Ascend** with me into my *lot* **pebble**,
that we may fight against the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**;
and I likewise *will* **shall** go with thee into thy *lot* **pebble**.
4 So *Simeon* **Shimon** went with him.
And *Judah* went up **Yah Hudah ascended**;
and the *LORD* *delivered* **Yah Veh gave**
the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy** and the *Perizzites* **Perizziy**
into their hand:
and they *slew* **smote** of them in *Bezek* **Bezeq**
ten thousand men.
5 And they found *Adonibezek* **Adoni Bezeq**
in *Bezek* **Bezeq**;
and they fought against him,
and they *slew* **smote** the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
and the *Perizzites* **Perizziy**.
6 But *Adonibezek* **Adoni Bezeq** fled;
and they pursued after him, and *caught* **possessed** him,
and *cut* **chopped** off
his thumbs and his great toes
the great digits of his hands and of his feet.
7 And *Adonibezek* **Adoni Bezeq** said,
Threescore and ten kings **Seventy sovereigns**,
having their thumbs and their great toes
the great digits of their hands and of their feet
cut **chopped** off,
gathered their meat **gleaned** under my table:
as I have *done* **worked**,
so *God hath requited* **Elohim did shalam** me.
And they brought him to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and there he died.
YAH HUDAH CAPTURES YERU SHALEM
8 Now the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
had fought against *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and had *taken* **captured** it,
and smitten it with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword,
and *set* **sent** the city on fire.
9 And afterward the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
went down **descended** to fight
against the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
that *dwelt* **settled** in the mountain,
and in the south, and in the *valley* **lowland**.
10 And *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
went against the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
that *dwelt* **settled** in Hebron:
(now the name of Hebron before
was *Kirjatharba* **Qiryath Arba**.)
and they *slew* **Sheshai smote Sheshay**,
and *Ahiman* **Achih Man**, and *Talmay* **Talmay**.
KALEB CAPTURES DEBIR
11 And from thence
he went against the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Debir*:
and the name of *Debir* before
was *Kirjathsepher* **Qiryath Sepher**:
12 And *Caleb* **Kaleb** said,
He that smiteth *Kirjathsepher* **Qiryath Sepher**
and *taketh* **captureth** it,
to him *will* **shall** I give *Achsah* my daughter
to *wife* **woman**.
13 And *Othniel* **Othni El** the son of *Kenaz* **Qenaz**,
Caleb's **Kaleb's** younger brother, *took* **captured** it:
and he gave him *Achsah* his daughter
to *wife* **woman**.
THE SEDUCTION OF ACHSAH
14 And so **be** it came to pass, when she came to him,
that she *moved* **goaded** him to ask of her father a field:

JUDGES 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YISRA EL CAPTURES KENAAN

- 1 And so be it, after the death of *Yah Shua*,
the sons of *Yisra El* ask *Yah Veh*, saying,
Who ascends for us against the *Kenaaniy*
to begin to fight against them?
2 And *Yah Veh* says, *Yah Hudah* ascend:
behold, I give the land into his hand.
3 And *Yah Hudah* says to *Shimon* his brother,
Ascend with me into my pebble,
to fight against the *Kenaaniy*;
and I — I go with you into your pebble.
— and *Shimon* goes with him.
4 And *Yah Hudah* ascends;
and *Yah Veh* gives the *Kenaaniy* and the *Perizziy*
into their hand:
and they smite them in *Bezeq* — ten thousand men.
5 And they find *Adoni Bezeq* in *Bezeq*:
and they fight against him
and they smite the *Kenaaniy* and the *Perizziy*:
and *Adoni Bezeq* flees;
6 and they pursue him and possess him
and chop off the great digits of his hands and feet.
7 And *Adoni Bezeq* says,
Seventy sovereigns,
— the great digits of their hands and their feet
chopped off
glean under my table:
as I worked, thus *Elohim* *shalams* me.
— and they bring him to *Yeru Shalem*
and there he dies.
YAH HUDAH CAPTURES YERU SHALEM
8 And the sons of *Yah Hudah*
fight against *Yeru Shalem* and capture it;
and smite it with the mouth of the sword
and send the city on fire:
9 and afterward the sons of *Yah Hudah*
descend to fight against the *Kenaaniy*
who settle in the mountain
and in the south and in the lowland:
and *Yah Hudah*
goes against the *Kenaaniy* who settle in *Hebron*
— the former name of *Hebron* is *Qiryath Arba*
and they smite *Sheshay* and *Achih Man* and *Talmay*.
KALEB CAPTURES DEBIR
11 And from there
he goes against the settlers of *Debir*:
and the former name of *Debir* is *Qiryath Sepher*.
12 And *Kaleb* says,
To him who smites *Qiryath Sepher* and captures it,
I give *Achsah* my daughter to woman.
— and *Othni El* the son of *Qenaz*
the younger brother of *Kaleb* captures it;
and he gives him *Achsah* his daughter to woman.
THE SEDUCTION OF ACHSAH
14 And so be it, when she comes,
she goads him to ask of her father a field:

JUDGES 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- and she *lighted* **alighted** from off her ass **he burro**;
and *Caleb* **Kaleb** said unto her,
What *wilt thou* **is to thee**?
- 15 And she said unto him, Give me a blessing:
for thou hast given me a south land;
give me also *springs* **fountains** of water.
And *Caleb* **Kaleb** gave her the upper *springs* **fountains**
and the nether *springs* **fountains**.
- 16 And the *children* **sons** of the *Kenite* **Qayiniy**,
Moses' **Mosheh's** father in law,
went up **ascended**
out of the *city of palm trees* **Ir Hat Temarim**
with the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
into the wilderness of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
which *lieth* **be** in the south of Arad;
and they went and *dwelt* **settled** among the people.
- YAH HUDAH DEVOTES SEPHATH**
- 17 And *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
went with *Simeon* **Shimon** his brother,
and they *slew* **smote** the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
that *inhabited* *Zephath* **settled Sephath**,
and *utterly destroyed* **devoted** it.
And the name of the city was called Hormah.
- THE CAPTURED CITIES**
- 18 Also *Judah* took **Yah Hudah** captured
Gaza **Azzah** with the *coast* **border** thereof,
and *Askelon* **Ashqelon** with the *coast* **border** thereof,
and *Ekron* **Eqron** with the *coast* **border** thereof.
- 19 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** was with *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
and he *drove out* **dispossessed**
the *inhabitants* of mountain;
but could not *drive out* **dispossess**
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the valley,
because they had chariots of iron.
- 20 And they gave Hebron unto *Caleb* **Kaleb**,
as *Moses* said **Mosheh** worded:
and he *expelled* **dispossessed** thence
the three sons of *Anak* **Anaq**.
- 21 And the *children* **sons** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
did not *drive out* **dispossess** the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**
that *inhabited* *Jerusalem* **settled Yeru Shalem**;
but the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**
dwelt **settle** with the *children* **sons** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** unto this day.
- 22 And the house of *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
they also *went up* **ascended** against *Bethel* **Beth El**;
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** was with them.
- 23 And the house of *Joseph* **Yoseph**
sent to descry *Bethel* **explore Beth El**.
(Now the name of the city before was Luz.)
- 24 And the *spies* **guards** saw a man
come forth out of **leave** the city,
and they said unto him,
Shew us **Have us see**, we *pray* **beseech** thee,
the entrance into the city,
and we *will shew* **shall work** thee mercy.
- 25 And when he *shewed* **had** them **see**
the entrance into the city,
they *smote* the city with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword;
but they *let go* **sent away** the man and all his family.
- 26 And the man went into the land of the *Hittites* **Hethiy**,
and built a city, and called the name thereof Luz:
which is the name thereof unto this day.
- THE UNCONQUERED CITIES**
- 27 Neither did *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
drive out **dispossess**
the *inhabitants* of *Bethshean* **Beth Shean**
and her *towns* **daughters**,
nor *Taanach* and her *towns* **daughters**,
nor the *inhabitants* **settlers** of Dor
and her *towns* **daughters**,
nor the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Ibleam* **Yible Am**
and her *towns* **daughters**,
nor the *inhabitants* **settlers** of Megiddo
and her *towns* **daughters**:
but the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
would dwell **willed to settle** in that land.

JUDGES 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- and she alights off her he burro;
and Kaleb says to her, What — to you?
- 15 And she says to him, Give me a blessing:
give me a south land
and give me fountains of water.
— and Kaleb gives her
the upper fountains and the nether fountains.
- 16 And the sons of the Qayiniy,
father in law of Mosheh,
ascend from Ir Hat Temarim
with the sons of Yah Hudah
into the wilderness of Yah Hudah
in the south of Arad;
and they come and settle among the people.
- YAH HUDAH DEVOTES SEPHATH**
- 17 And Yah Hudah goes with Shimon his brother
and they smite the Kenaaniy who settle Sephath
and devote it.
And the name of the city *is* called Hormah.
- THE CAPTURED CITIES**
- 18 And Yah Hudah captures
Azzah with the border thereof
and Ashqelon with the border thereof
and Eqron with the border thereof:
and Yah Veh is with Yah Hudah;
and he dispossesses the mountain
but dispossesses not the settlers of the valley
because they have chariots of iron.
- 20 And they give Hebron to Kaleb as Mosheh worded:
and he dispossesses the three sons of Anaq;
and the sons of Ben Yamin
dispossess not the Yebusiy who settle Yeru Shalem;
but the Yebusiy settle with the sons of Ben Yamin
in Yeru Shalem to this day.
- 22 And the house of Yoseph ascends against Beth El:
and Yah Veh *is* with them.
- 23 And the house of Yoseph sends to explore Beth El
— the former name of the city *is* Luz.
- 24 And the guards see a man leave the city
and they say to him,
Have us see, we beseech you, the entrance to the city
and we work you mercy.
- 25 And he has them see the entrance into the city,
and they smite the city with the mouth of the sword;
and send away the man and all his family:
and the man goes to the land of the Hethiy
and builds a city;
and calls the name thereof Luz
— the name thereof to this day.
- THE UNCONQUERED CITIES**
- 27 Menash Sheh dispossesses
neither Beth Shean and her daughters
nor Taanach and her daughters
nor the settlers of Dor and her daughters
nor the settlers of Yible Am and her daughters
nor the settlers of Megiddo and her daughters;
and the Kenaaniy will to settle in that land:

JUDGES 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

28 And **so be** it came to pass,
when Israel was strong **Yisra El strengthened**,
that they put **set** the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy** to *tribute* **vassal**,
and in **dispossessing**,
did not *utterly drive* **dispossess** them out.
29 Neither did *Ephraim drive out* **Ephrayim dispossess**
the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy** that *dwelt* **settled** in Gezer;
but the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
dwelt **settled** in Gezer among them.
30 Neither did Zebulun *drive out* **dispossess**
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Kitron* **Qitron**,
nor the *inhabitants* **settlers** of Nahalol;
but the *Canaanites* *dwelt* **Kenaaniy settled** among them,
and became *tributaries* **vassals**.
31 Neither did Asher *drive out* **dispossess**
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Accho* **Akko**,
nor the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Zidon* **Sidon**,
nor of *Ahlab* **Ach Lab**, nor of Achzib,
nor of Helbah, nor of *Aphik* **Aphék**, nor of *Rehob* **Rechob**:
32 But the *Asherites* **Asheriyy**
dwelt **settled** among the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land:
for they did not *drive* **dispossess** them out.
33 Neither did Naphtali *drive out* **dispossess**
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh**,
nor the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Bethanath* **Beth Anath**;
but he *dwelt* **settled** among the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land:
nevertheless the *inhabitants* **settlers**
of *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh**
and of *Bethanath* **Beth Anath**
became *tributaries* **vassals** unto them.
34 And the *Amorites* **Emoriyy**
forced **pressed** the *children* **sons** of Dan
into the mountain:
for they would not *suffer* **did not allow** them
to *come down* **descend** to the valley:
35 But the *Amorites* would *dwell* **Emoriyy** **willed to settle**
in mount Heres in *Ajalon* **Ayalon**, and in Shaalbim:
yet the hand of the house of *Joseph* **Yoseph**
prevailed **was heavy**,
so that they became *tributaries* **vassals**.
36 And the *coast* **border** of the *Amorites* **Emoriyy**
was from the *going up to* **Akrabbim** **ascent of Acrabbim**,
from the rock, and upward.

THE ANGEL OF YAH VEH AT BOCHIM

2 And an angel of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came up **ascended** from Gilgal to Bochim,
and said,
I made you to *go up* **ascend** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and have brought you unto the land
which I *sware* **oathed** unto your fathers; and I said,
I *will never* **shall not** break my covenant with you
eternally.
2 And ye shall *make* **cut** no *league* **covenant**
with the *inhabitants* **settlers** of this land;
ye shall *throw* **pull** down their *sacrifice* **altars**:
but ye have not *obeyed* **hearkened unto** my voice:
why have ye *done* **worked** this?
3 Wherefore I also said,
I *will* **shall** not *drive* **dispossess** them out
from *before you* **thy face**;
but they shall be *as* **thorns** in your sides,
and their *gods* **elohim** shall be a snare unto you.
4 And **so be** it came to pass,
when the angel of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
spake **worded** these words
unto all the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that the people lifted up their voice, and wept.
5 And they called the name of that place Bochim:
and they sacrificed there unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

THE DEATH OF YAH SHUA

6 And when *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
had *let* **sent** the people *go away*,
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** went
every man unto his inheritance to possess the land.
7 And the people served the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
all the days of *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,

JUDGES 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

28 and so be it, when Yisra El strengthens,
they set the Kenaaniy to vassal
and in dispossessing, dispossess them not.
29 And Ephrayim dispossesses
not the Kenaaniy who settle in Gezer;
and the Kenaaniy settle in Gezer among them.
30 Zebulun dispossesses
neither the settlers of Qitron
nor the settlers of Nahalol;
and the Kenaaniy settle among them
and become their vassals.
31 Asher dispossesses
neither the settlers of Akko
nor the settlers of Sidon
nor of Ach Lab nor of Achzib
nor of Helbah nor of Aphék nor of Rechob:
and the Asheriyy settle among the Kenaaniy
the settlers of the land:
for they dispossess them not.
33 Naphtali dispossesses
neither the settlers of Beth Shemesh
nor the settlers of Beth Anath;
and he settles among the Kenaaniy
the settlers of the land:
and the settlers of Beth Shemesh and of Beth Anath
become their vassals.
34 And the Emoriyy
press the sons of Dan into the mountain:
for they allow them not to descend to the valley:
35 and the Emoriyy will to settle
in mount Heres in Ayalon and in Shaalbim:
yet the hand of the house of Yoseph is heavy
so that they become vassals:
36 and the border of the Emoriyy
is from the ascent of Acrabbim,
from the rock and upward.

THE ANGEL OF YAH VEH AT BOCHIM

2 And the angel of Yah Veh
ascends from Gilgal to Bochim,
and says, I ascended you from Misrayim
and brought you to the land I oathed to your fathers;
and I said,
I break not my covenant with you eternally:
and you,
cut no covenant with the settlers of this land;
pull down their sacrifice altars
— and you hearken not to my voice:
Why work you this?
3 And I also said,
I dispossess them not from your face;
but they become in your sides
and their elohim becomes a snare to you.
4 And so be it,
when the angel of Yah Veh words these words
to all the sons of Yisra El,
the people lift their voice and weep:
5 and they called the name of that place Bochim:
and there they sacrifice to Yah Veh.

THE DEATH OF YAH SHUA

6 And Yah Shua sends the people away;
every man of the sons of Yisra El
goes to his inheritance to possess the land:
7 and the people serve Yah Veh
all the days of Yah Shua

JUDGES 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and all the days of the elders
that *outlived Joshua* **prolonged days after Yah Shua**,
who had seen all the great works of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that he *did* **worked for Israel Yisra El**.
8 And *Joshua* **Yah Shua** the son of Nun,
the servant of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, died,
being a son of an hundred and ten years *old*.
9 And they *buried* **entombed** him
in the border of his inheritance
in *Timnathheres* **Timnah Heres**,
in the mount of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
on the north *side of the hill* **Mount Gaash**.
THE NEW GENERATIONS SERVE BAALIM
10 And also all that generation
were gathered unto their fathers:
and there arose another generation after them,
which knew not *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
nor yet the works
which he had *done* **worked for Israel Yisra El**.
11 And the *children* **sons of Israel did Yisra El worked** evil
in the *sight eyes of the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and served Baalim:
12 And they forsook
the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of their fathers,
which brought them out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and *followed* **went after** other *gods* **elohim**,
of the *gods* **elohim** of the people
that were round about them,
and *bowed* **prostrated** themselves unto them,
and *provoked the LORD to anger* **vexed Yah Veh**.
13 And they forsook *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and served Baal and Ashtaroth.
14 And the *anger* **wrath of the LORD **Yah Veh**
was hot **kindled** against *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and he *delivered* **gave** them
into the hands of *spoilers* **plunderers**
that *spoiled* **plundered** them,
and he sold them
into the hands of their enemies round about,
so that they could not *any longer* **still** stand
before **at the face of** their enemies.
15 Whithersoever they went out,
the hand of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** was against them for evil,
as *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had *said* **worded**,
and as *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had *sworn* **oathed** unto them:
and they were *greatly distressed* **mightily depressed**.
YAH VEH RAISES JUDGES
16 Nevertheless *the LORD* **Yah Veh** raised up judges,
which *delivered* **saved** them
out of the hand of those that *spoiled* **plundered** them.
17 And yet they *would* **did** not hearken unto their judges,
but they *went a whoring* **whored** after other *gods* **elohim**,
and *bowed* **prostrated** themselves unto them:
they turned *quickly* **hastily aside**
out of the way which their fathers walked in,
obeying **hearing** the *commandments* **mitsvoth**
of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
but they did **worked** not so.
18 And when *the LORD* **Yah Veh** raised them up judges,
then *the LORD* **Yah Veh** was with the judge,
and *delivered* **saved** them out of the hand of their enemies
all the days of the judge:
for *it repented the LORD* **Yah Veh sighed**
because of their groanings
by reason of them that oppressed them
at the face of their oppressors
and *vexed* **oppressed** them.
19 And **so be** it came to *pass*, when the judge was dead,
that they returned,
and *corrupted* **ruined** themselves more than their fathers,
in *following* **going after** other *gods* **elohim** to serve them,
and to *bow down* **prostrate** unto them;
they *ceased* **fell** not from their *own doings* **exploits**,
nor from their *stubborn* **hard** way.
20 And the *anger* **wrath of the LORD **Yah Veh**
was hot **kindled** against *Israel* **Yisra El**; and he said,
Because that this *people* **goyim**
hath *transgressed* **trespassed** my covenant****

JUDGES 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— and all the days of the elders
who prolonged days after Yah Shua
— who saw all the great works
Yah Veh worked for Yisra El.
8 And Yah Shua the son of Nun
the servant of Yah Veh dies
— a son of a hundred and ten years:
and they entomb him
9 in the border of his inheritance
— in Timnah Heres in the mount of Ephrayim
on the north of Mount Gaash.
THE NEW GENERATIONS SERVE BAALIM
10 And all that generation also gathers to their fathers:
and another generation rises after them
who neither know Yah Veh
nor the works he worked for Yisra El:
11 and the sons of Yisra El
work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh
and serve Baalim:
12 and they forsake Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers
who brought them from the land of Misrayim:
and they go after other elohim
— of the elohim of the people all around them;
and prostrate themselves to them, and vex Yah Veh:
13 and they forsake Yah Veh
and serve Baal and Ashtaroth.
14 And Yah Veh kindles his wrath against Yisra El
and he gives them into the hands of plunderers
who plunder them;
and he sells them into the hands of their enemies
all around,
so that they cannot stand at the face of their enemies.
15 Wherever they go
the hand of Yah Veh is against them for evil
as Yah Veh worded and as Yah Veh oathed to them:
and they are mightily depressed.
YAH VEH RAISES JUDGES
16 And Yah Veh raises judges
who save them from the hand of their plunderers;
17 and they also hearken not to their judges:
and they whore after other elohim
and prostrate themselves to them:
they turn aside hastily
from the way their fathers walked
hearing the misvoth of Yah Veh
— thus they work not.
18 And Yah Veh raises them judges,
and Yah Veh is with the judge
and saves them from the hand of their enemies
all the days of the judge:
for Yah Veh sighs because of their groanings
at the face of their oppressors;
and oppresses them.
19 And so be it, at the death of the judge,
they return, more ruinous than their fathers,
by going after other elohim
to serve them and to prostrate to them;
they neither fall from their exploits
nor from their hard way.
20 And Yah Veh kindles his wrath against Yisra El;
and he says,
Because this goyim trespasses my covenant

JUDGES 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

21 which I commanded **misvahed** their fathers,
and have not hearkened unto my voice;
I also will **shall** not **add to**
henceforth drive out any **dispossess man**
from before them **their face** of the **nations goyim**
which *Joshua* **Yah Shua** left when he died:
22 That through them I may *prove Israel* **test Yisra El**,
whether they will **keep shall guard**
the way of the **LORD Yah Veh** to walk therein,
as their fathers *did keep it* **guarded**, or not.
23 Therefore the **LORD Yah Veh**
left **set** those **nations goyim**,
without driving **by not dispossessing** them out hastily;
neither *delivered* **gave** he them
into the hand of *Joshua* **Yah Shua**.

YAH VEh TESTS YISRA EL

3 Now these are the **nations goyim**
which the **LORD** left **Yah Veh set**,
to *prove Israel* **test Yisra El** by them,
even as many of *Israel* as had not known
all the wars of *Canaan* **Kenaan**;
2 Only that the generations
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** might know,
to teach them war,
at the **least only** such
as before **formerly** knew *nothing* **naught** thereof;
3 Namely,
five *lords* **ringleaders** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and all the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
and the *Sidonians* **Sidoniyy**,
and the *Hivites* **Hivviyy**
that *dwelt* **settled** in mount *Lebanon*,
from mount *Baalhermon* **Baal Hermon**
unto the entering in of *Hamath*.
4 And they were to *prove Israel* **test Yisra El** by them,
to know whether they *would* **should** hearken
unto the *commandments* **mitsvoth** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
which he commanded **misvahed** their fathers
by the hand of *Moses* **Mosheh**.
5 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
dwelt **settled** among
the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**, *Hittites* **Hethiy**,
and *Amorites* **Emoriyy**, and *Perizzites* **Perizziyy**,
and *Hivites* **Hivviyy**, and *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**:
6 And they took their daughters to be their *wives* **women**,
and gave their daughters to their sons,
and served their *gods* **elohim**.

JUDGE OTHNI EL

7 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
did **worked** evil in the *sight* **eyes** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and forgot the **LORD Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**,
and served *Baalim* and the *groves* **asherim**.
8 Therefore the *anger* **wrath** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
was *hot* **kindled** against *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and he sold them into the hand of
Chushanrishathaim **Kushan Rishathaim**
king **sovereign** of *Mesopotamia* **Aram Naharaim**:
and the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
served *Chushanrishathaim* **Kushan Rishathaim** eight years.
9 And when the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
cried unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
the **LORD Yah Veh** raised up a *deliverer* **saviour**
to the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
who *delivered* **saved** them,
even *Othniel* **Othni El** the son of *Kenaz* **Qenaz**,
Caleb's **Kaleb's** younger brother.
10 And the *Spirit* of the **LORD Yah Veh** came upon him,
and he judged *Israel* **Yisra El**, and went out to war:
and the **LORD** *delivered* **Yah Veh gave**
Chushanrishathaim **Kushan Rishathaim**,
king **sovereign** of *Mesopotamia* **Aram** into his hand;
and his hand prevailed
against *Chushanrishathaim* **Kushan Rishathaim**.
11 And the land *had* **rest** **rested** forty years.
And *Othniel* **Othni El** the son of *Kenaz* **Qenaz** died.

YISRA EL IN SERVITUDE

12 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**

JUDGES 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

21 which I misvahed their fathers;
and hearken not to my voice;
I also add to not dispossess from their face
any man of the goyim *Yah Shua* left when he died:
22 and through them, I test *Yisra El*,
whether they guard the way of *Yah Veh*
to walk therein as their fathers guarded,
or not.
23 And *Yah Veh* sets those goyim
— neither dispossessing them hastily
nor giving them into the hand of *Yah Shua*.

YAH VEh TESTS YISRA EL

3 These are the goyim *Yah Veh* set to test *Yisra El*
by all who knew not all the wars of *Kenaan*;
2 whom only,
the generations of the sons of *Yisra El* know
to teach them war;
only, such as formerly knew them not;
3 five ringleaders of the *Peleshethiy*
and all the *Kenaaniyy* and the *Sidoniyy* and the *Hivviyy*
who settle in mount *Lebanon*
— from mount *Baal Hermon*
to the entering in of *Hamath*:
4 to test *Yisra El* by them
— to know whether they hearken
to the *misvoth* of *Yah Veh*
which he misvahed their fathers
by the hand of *Mosheh*.

5 And the sons of *Yisra El* settle among the *Kenaaniyy*
Hethiy and *Emoriyy* and *Perizziyy*
and *Hivviyy* and *Yebusiy*:
6 and they take their daughters to be their women
and give their daughters to their sons
and serve their *elohim*.

JUDGE OTHNI EL

7 And the sons of *Yisra El*
work evil in the eyes of *Yah Veh*;
and forget *Yah Veh* their *Elohim*
and serve the *baalim* and the *asherim*.
8 And *Yah Veh* kindles his wrath against *Yisra El*
and sells them into the hand of *Kushan Rishathaim*
sovereign of *Aram Naharaim*:
and the sons of *Yisra El*
serve *Kushan Rishathaim* eight years.

9 And the sons of *Yisra El* cry to *Yah Veh*
and *Yah Veh* raises a saviour to the sons of *Yisra El*
who saves them
— *Othni El* the son of *Qenaz*
the younger brother of *Kaleb*.
10 And the *Spirit* of *Yah Veh* comes on him
and he judges *Yisra El* and goes to war:
and *Yah Veh* gives
Kushan Rishathaim *sovereign* of *Aram* into his hand;
and his hand prevails against *Kushan Rishathaim*:
11 and the land rests forty years:
and *Othni El* the son of *Qenaz* dies.

YISRA EL IN SERVITUDE

12 And the sons of *Yisra El*

JUDGES 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

did **added to work** evil again
in the *sight eyes* of the **LORD Yah Veh**:
and the **LORD Yah Veh** strengthened Eglon
the *king sovereign* of Moab against *Israel Yisra El*,
because they had *done worked* evil
in the *sight eyes* of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
13 And he gathered unto him
the *children sons* of Ammon and *Amalek Amaleq*,
and went and smote *Israel Yisra El*,
and possessed the *city of palm trees Ir Hat Temarim*.
14 So the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
served Eglon the *king sovereign* of Moab eighteen years.
EHUD THE SAVIOUR
15 But when the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
cried unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
the **LORD Yah Veh** raised them up a *deliverer saviour*,
Ehud the son of Gera, a *Benjamite Ben Yaminiy*,
a man *lefthanded shut of his right hand*:
and by *him his hand* the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
sent a *present an offering* unto Eglon
the *king sovereign* of Moab.
16 But Ehud *made worked* him a *dagger sword*
which had two edges, of a *cubit span* length;
and he did gird it under his *raiment tailoring*
upon his right *thigh flank*.
17 And he *brought oblating* the *present offering*
unto Eglon *king sovereign* of Moab:
and Eglon was a very *mighty fat man*.
18 And when he had *made an end finished*
to offer *oblating* the *present offering*,
he sent away the people that bare the *present offering*.
19 But he himself turned *again* from the *quarries sculptiles*
that were by Gilgal, and said,
I have a *secret errand covert word* unto thee,
O *king sovereign*:
who said, *Keep silence Hush*.
And all that stood by him went out from him.
20 And Ehud came unto him;
and he was *sitting settled*
in a *summer parlour an upper room of cooling*,
which he had for himself alone.
And Ehud said,
I have a *message word* from *God Elohim* unto thee.
And he arose out of his *seat throne*.
21 And Ehud *put sent* forth his *left hand*,
and took the *dagger sword* from his right *thigh flank*,
and *thrust staked* it into his belly:
22 And the *haft handle* also went in after the blade;
and the fat *closed upon shut through* the blade,
so that he could not draw the *dagger sword*
out of his belly;
and the *dirt it* came out *at the anus*.
23 Then Ehud went forth through the *porch portico*,
and shut the doors of the *parlour upper room* upon him,
and *locked enclosed* them.
24 When he was *gone out went*, his servants came;
and when they saw that, behold,
the doors of the *parlour upper room*
were *locked enclosed*, they said,
Surely he covereth his feet
in his *summer cooling* chamber.
25 And they *tarried waited* till they were *ashamed shamed*:
and, behold,
he opened not the doors of the *parlour upper room*;
therefore they took a key, and opened *them*: and, behold,
their *lord adoni* was fallen down
dead having died on the earth.
26 And Ehud escaped while they *tarried lingered*,
and passed beyond the *quarries sculptiles*,
and escaped unto *Seirath Seirah*.
27 And *so be* it came to pass, when he was come,
that he *blew blast* a *trumpet shophar*
in the mountain of *Ephraim Ephrayim*,
and the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
went down *descended* with him from the mount,
and he *before them at their face*.
28 And he said unto them, *Follow Pursue* after me:

JUDGES 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

add to work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh:
and Yah Veh strengthens
Eglon the sovereign of Moab against Yisra El
because they work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh.
13 And he gathers to himself
the sons of Ammon and Amaleq;
and goes and smites Yisra El
and possesses Ir Hat Temarim.
14 — and the sons of Yisra El
serve Eglon the sovereign of Moab eighteen years.
EHUD THE SAVIOUR
15 And the sons of Yisra El cry to Yah Veh
and Yah Veh raises them a saviour
— Ehud the son of Gera — a Ben Yaminiy
— a man shut of his right hand:
and by his hand
the sons of Yisra El send an offering
to Eglon the sovereign of Moab;
16 and Ehud works a sword of two edges; a span long;
and he girds it under his tailoring on his right flank.
17 And he oblates the offering
to Eglon sovereign of Moab
— Eglon is a mighty fat man.
18 And when he finishes oblatting the offering
he sends away the people who bear the offering.
19 But he himself turns from the sculptiles by Gilgal
and says, I have a covert word to you, O sovereign.
He says, Hush!
— and all who stand by him go from him.
20 And Ehud comes to him;
and he settles in an upper room of cooling
which he has for himself alone.
And Ehud says,
I have a word from Elohim to you!
— and he rises from his throne.
21 And Ehud sends his left
and takes the sword from his right flank
and stakes it into his belly:
22 and the handle also goes in after the blade;
and the fat shuts through the blade
so that he cannot draw the sword from his belly;
and it comes out at the anus.
23 Then Ehud goes through the portico
and shuts the doors of the upper room on him
and encloses them.
24 And he goes, and his servants come;
and they see, behold,
the doors of the upper room are enclosed, they say,
Surely he covers his feet in his cooling chamber.
25 And they wait until they shame: and behold,
he opens not the doors of the upper room;
and they take the key and open: and behold,
their adoni fallen down on the earth — dead.
26 And as they linger
Ehud escapes and passes beyond the sculptiles
and escapes to Seirah:
27 and so be it, when he comes,
he blasts a shophar in the mountain of Ephrayim
and the sons of Yisra El descend the mount with him
— with him at their face.
28 And he says to them, Pursue after me:

JUDGES 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for the LORD **Yah Veh** hath delivered given
your enemies the *Moabites* **Moabiy**
into your hand.

And they went down **descended** after him,
and took **captured** the *fords* **passages of Jordan Yarden**
toward Moab,

and **suffered allowed** not a man to pass over.

29 And they **slew smote** of Moab at that time
about ten thousand men,
all *lusty* **fat**, and all men of valour;
and there escaped not a man.

30 So Moab was subdued that day
under the hand of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

And the land *had rest* **fourscore rested eighty** years.

SHAMGAR

31 And after him was Shamgar the son of Anath,
which **slew smote** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
six hundred men with an ox goad:
and he also *delivered* **Israel saved Yisra El**.

SONS OF YISRA EL ARE SOLD

4 And the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
again did **added to work** evil
in the *sight* **eyes of the LORD Yah Veh**,
when Ehud was dead **died**.
2 And the LORD **Yah Veh** sold them
into the hand of *Jabin* **Yabyn**
king **sovereign** of *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
that reigned in *Hazor* **Hasor**;
the *captain* **governor** of whose host was Sisera,
which *dwelt* **settled**
in *Harosheth* **by Harosheth/Engravers**
of the *Gentiles* **Goyim**.

3 And the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
cried unto the LORD **Yah Veh**:
for he had nine hundred chariots of iron;
and twenty years he *mightily* **strongly** oppressed
the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**.

DEBORAH

4 And Deborah, a **woman** prophetess,
the *wife* **woman** of *Lapidoth* **Lappidoth**,
she judged *Israel* **Yisra El** at that time.

5 And she *dwelt* **settled** under the palm tree of Deborah
between Ramah and *Bethel* **Beth El**
in mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**;
and the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
came up **ascended** to her for judgment.

6 And she sent and called *Barak* **Baraq**
the son of *Abinoam* **Abi Noam**
out of *Kedeshnaphtali* **Kedesh Naphtali**,
and said unto him,

Hath not the LORD **God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
commanded **misvahed**, saying,
Go and draw toward mount Tabor,
and take with thee ten thousand men
of the *children* **sons** of Naphtali
and of the *children* **sons** of Zebulun?

7 And I *will* **shall** draw unto thee
to the *river* **Kishon wadi Qishon** Sisera,
the *captain* **governor** of *Jabin's* **army Yabyn's host**,
with his chariots and his multitude;
and I *will* **deliver shall give** him into thine hand.

8 And *Barak* **Baraq** said unto her,
If thou *wilt* **shalt** go with me, then I *will* **shall** go:
but if thou *wilt* **shalt** not go with me,
then I *will* **I shall** not go.

9 And she said, **In walking**,
I *will* **surely go shall walk** with thee:
notwithstanding **finally**
the journey that thou *takest* **walkest**
shall not be for thine *honour* **adornment**;
for the LORD **Yah Veh** shall sell Sisera
into the hand of a woman.

And Deborah arose,
and went with *Barak* **Baraq** to *Kedesh* **Qedesh**.

10 And *Barak* **Baraq**
called **cried unto** Zebulun and Naphtali
to *Kedesh* **Qedesh**;

JUDGES 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for Yah Veh
gives your enemies the Moabiy into your hand.
— and they descend after him
and capture the passages of Yarden toward Moab
and allow not a man to pass over.

29 And at that time
they smite about ten thousand men of Moab
— all fat — all men of valour;
and not a man escapes.

30 So Moab is subdued that day
under the hand of Yisra El.
— and the land rests eighty years.

SHAMGAR

31 And after him, Shamgar the son of Anath,
who smites six hundred men of the Peleshethiy
with an ox goad:
and he also saves Yisra El.

SONS OF YISRA EL ARE SOLD

4 And after Ehud dies,
the sons of Yisra El
add to work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh:
and Yah Veh sells them
into the hand of Yabyn sovereign of Kenaan,
who reigns in Hasor
— Sisera is governor of his host
— who settles by Harosheth/Engravers of the Goyim.
3 And the sons of Yisra El cry to Yah Veh:
for he has nine hundred chariots of iron;
and he strongly oppresses the sons of Yisra El
twenty years.

DEBORAH

4 And Deborah
a woman prophetess — a woman of Lappidoth
judges Yisra El at that time:
5 and she settles under the palm tree of Deborah
between Ramah and Beth El in mount Ephrayim:
and the sons of Yisra El ascend to her for judgment.

6 And she sends and calls Baraq the son of Abi Noam
from Kedesh Naphtali
and says to him,
Misvahs not Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
Go and draw toward mount Tabor
and take with you ten thousand men
of the sons of Naphtali and of the sons of Zebulun?
7 and I draw the governor of the host of Yabyn to you
— with his chariots and his multitude
at the wadi Qishon Sisera;
and I give him into your hand.

8 And Baraq says to her,
If you go with me, I go!
If you go not with me, I go not!

9 And she says, In walking, I walk with you:
finally,
the journey you walk is not for your adornment;
for Yah Veh sells Sisera into the hand of a woman.
— and Deborah rises and goes with Baraq to Qedesh.

10 And Baraq cries to Zebulun and Naphtali
to Qedesh;

JUDGES 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and he went up ascended
with ten thousand men at his feet:
and Deborah went up ascended with him.
11 Now Heber the Kenite Qayiniy,
which was of the children sons of Hobab
the father in law of Moses Mosheh,
had severed separated himself from the Kenites Qayiniy,
and pitched spread his tent
unto the plain mighty oaks of Zaanaim Saanayim,
which is by Kedesh Qedesh.
12 And they shewed told Sisera
that Barak Baraq the son of Abinoam Abi Noam
was gone up ascended to mount Tabor.
13 And Sisera gathered together cried for all his chariots,
even nine hundred chariots of iron,
and all the people that were with him,
from Harosheth the engravers of the Gentiles goyim
unto the river of Kishon Qishon.
14 And Deborah said unto Barak Baraq, Up Arise;
for this is the day in which the LORD Yah Veh
hath delivered given Sisera into thine hand:
is not the LORD Yah Veh
gone out before thee at thy face?
So Barak went down Baraq descended from mount Tabor,
and ten thousand men after him.
15 And the LORD discomfited Yah Veh agitated Sisera,
and all his chariots, and all his host camp,
with the edge mouth of the sword
before Barak at the face of Baraq;
so that Sisera lighted down descended off his chariot,
and fled away on his feet.
16 But Barak Baraq pursued after the chariots,
and after the host camp,
unto Harosheth the engravers of the Gentiles goyim:
and all the host camp of Sisera
fell upon the edge mouth of the sword;
and there was not a man left not one survived.
17 Howbeit Sisera fled away on his feet
to the tent of Jael Yael
the wife woman of Heber the Kenite Qayiniy:
for there was peace shalom
between Jabin Yabyn the king sovereign of Hazor Hasor
and the house of Heber the Kenite Qayiniy.
18 And Jael Yael went out to meet Sisera,
and said unto him,
Turn in, my lord adoni, turn in to me; fear awe not.
And when he had turned in unto her into the tent,
she covered him with a mantle blanket.
19 And he said unto her, Give me, I pray beseech thee,
a little water to drink; for I am thirsty thirst.
And she opened a bottle skin of milk,
and gave him drink, and covered him.
20 Again he said unto her,
Stand in the door opening of the tent, and it shall be,
when any man doth come and enquire ask of thee,
and say, Is there any man here? that thou shalt say, No.
21 Then Jael Yael Heber's wife woman
took a nail stake of the tent,
and took set an hammer in her hand,
and went softly quietly unto him,
and smote staked the nail stake into his temples,
and fastened drove it into the ground earth:
for he was fast sound asleep and weary fluttered.
So he died.
22 And, behold, as Barak Baraq pursued Sisera,
Jael came out Yael went to meet him,
and said unto him, Come,
and I will shew thee shall have thee see
the man whom thou seekest.
And when he came into her tent,
behold, Sisera lay dead had fallen and died,
and the nail stake was in his temples.
23 So God Elohim subdued on that day
Jabin Yabyn the king sovereign of Canaan Kenaan
before at the face of the children sons of Israel Yisra El.

JUDGES 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and he ascends with ten thousand men at his feet:
and Deborah ascends with him.
11 And Heber the Qayiniy of the sons of Hobab
the father in law of Mosheh
separates himself from the Qayiniy
and spread his tent
to the mighty oaks of Saanayim by Qedesh.
12 And they tell Sisera
that Baraq the son of Abi Noam
ascends to mount Tabor.
13 And Sisera cries for all his chariots
— nine hundred chariots of iron
and all the people with him
— from Harosheth/the engravers of the goyim
to the river of Qishon.
14 And Deborah says to Baraq, Rise!
For this is the day
Yah Veh gives Sisera into your hand:
Goes not Yah Veh at your face?
— and Baraq descends from mount Tabor
with ten thousand men after him.
15 And Yah Veh agitates Sisera
and all his chariots and all his camp
with the mouth of the sword at the face of Baraq;
so that Sisera descends off his chariot
and flees on his feet.
16 And Baraq pursues
after the chariots and after the camp
to Harosheth/the engravers of the goyim:
and all the camp of Sisera
falls on the mouth of the sword
— not one survives.
17 And Sisera flees on his feet to the tent of Yael
the woman of Heber the Qayiniy:
for there is shalom
between Yabyn the sovereign of Hasor
and between the house of Heber the Qayiniy.
18 And Yael goes to meet Sisera, and says to him,
Turn in, my adoni, turn in to me; awe not.
— and he turns in to her into the tent
and she covers him with a blanket.
19 And he says to her, Give me, I beseech you,
a little water to drink, for I thirst.
— and she opens a skin of milk
and gives him drink and covers him.
20 Again he says to her,
Stand in the opening of the tent, and so be it,
when any man comes and asks of you, and says,
Is there any man here? that you say, No.
21 Then Yael, the woman of Heber, takes a tent stake
and sets a hammer in her hand
and goes quietly to him
and stakes the stake into his temples
and drives it into the earth:
for he is sound asleep and flutters:
and thus he dies.
22 And behold, as Baraq pursues Sisera,
Yael goes to meet him and says to him,
Come! See the man you seek!
And he comes into her,
and behold, Sisera — fallen and dead
— and the stake in his temples.
23 And that day,
Elohim subdues Yabyn the sovereign of Kenaan
at the face of the sons of Yisra El.

JUDGES 4, 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

24 And the hand of the children sons of Israel Yisra El prospered in going, did go, and prevailed did go hard against Jabin Yabyn the king sovereign of Canaan Kenaan, until they had destroyed Jabin cut off Yabyn king sovereign of Canaan Kenaan.

THE SONG OF DEBORAH AND BARAQ

5 Then sang Deborah and Barak Baraq the son of Abinoam **Abi Noam** on that day, saying,
2 Praise **Bless** ye the **LORD Yah Veh** for the avenging leading the leaders of Israel Yisra El, when the people willingly offered volunteered themselves.
3 Hear, O ye kings sovereigns; give ear **hearken**, O ye princes potentates; I, even I, will — I shall sing unto the **LORD Yah Veh**; I will sing praise shall pluck to the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of Israel Yisra El.
4 **LORD O Yah Veh**, when thou wentest out of Seir, when thou marchedst pacedst out of the field of Edom, the earth trembled quaked, and the heavens dropped dripped, the thick clouds also dropped dripped water.
5 The mountains melted flowed from before the **LORD the face of Yah Veh**, even that **Sinai Sinai** from before the face of the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of Israel Yisra El.
6 In the days of Shamgar the son of Anath, in the days of **Jael Yael**, the highways were unoccupied abandoned, and the travellers walkers of paths walked through byways crooked ways.
7 The inhabitants of the villages suburbanites ceased, they ceased in Israel Yisra El, until that I Deborah arose, that I arose a mother in Israel Yisra El.
8 They chose new gods **elohim**; then was war fighting in the gates portals: was there a shield buckler or spear javelin seen among forty thousand in Israel Yisra El?
9 My heart is toward the governors statute setters of Israel Yisra El, that offered themselves willingly volunteered among the people.
Bless ye the **LORD Yah Veh**.
10 Speak **Meditate**, ye that ride on white asses she burros, ye that sit in judgment settle in tailoring, and walk by the way.
11 They that are delivered from the noise of archers
By the voice in rank in the places of drawing water troughs, there shall they rehearse celebrate the righteous acts justnesses of the **LORD Yah Veh**, even the righteous acts justnesses toward the inhabitants of his villages suburbanites in Israel Yisra El:
then shall the people of the **LORD Yah Veh** go down descend to the gates portals.
12 Awake, awake, Deborah: awake, awake, utter word a song: arise, **Barak Baraq**, and lead thy captivity captive, thou son of **Abinoam Abi Noam**.
13 Then he made him that remaineth surviveth have dominion subjugate over the nobles among the people: the **LORD Yah Veh** made me have dominion subjugate over the mighty.
14 Out of **Ephraim Ephrayim** was there a root of them against **Amalek Amaleq**; after thee, **Benjamin Ben Yamin**, among thy people; out of **Machir** came down governors descended the statute setters, and out of **Zebulun** they that handle draw with the pen scion of the writer scribe.
15 And the princes governors of **Issachar Yissachar** were with Deborah; even **Issachar Yissachar**, and also **Barak Baraq**: he was sent on foot into the valley.
For the divisions of **Reuben Reu Ben** there were great thoughts statutes of heart.

JUDGES 4, 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

24 And in going, the hand of the sons of Yisra El goes — goes hard against Yabyn the sovereign of Kenaan, until they cut off Yabyn sovereign of Kenaan.

THE SONG OF DEBORAH AND BARAQ

5 And on that day, Deborah and Baraq the son of **Abi Noam** sing, saying,
2 Bless **Yah Veh** for leading the leaders of Yisra El, for a people volunteering themselves.
3 Hear, you sovereigns! Hearken, you potentates! I — I sing to **Yah Veh**; I pluck to **Yah Veh Elohim** of Yisra El.
4 O **Yah Veh**, you go from Seir; you pace from the field of Edom; the earth quakes and the heavens drip: also the thick clouds drip water:
5 the mountains flow from the face of **Yah Veh** — this **Sinai** from the face of **Yah Veh Elohim** of Yisra El.
6 In the days of **Shamgar** the son of **Anath**, in the days of **Yael**, the highways are abandoned and the walkers of paths walk through crooked ways.
7 The suburbanites cease — cease in Yisra El until I, Deborah, rise — rise a mother in Yisra El.
8 They choose new elohim; then fight in the portals: is there a buckler or javelin seen among forty thousand in Yisra El?
9 My heart is toward the statute setters of Yisra El, who volunteer among the people. Bless you **Yah Veh**.
10 Meditate, you who ride on white she burros, you who settle in tailoring and walk by the way.
11 By the voice in rank in the troughs, there they celebrate the justnesses of **Yah Veh**, the justnesses toward the suburbanites in Yisra El: then the people of **Yah Veh** descend to the portals.
12 Awake! Awake, O Deborah! Awake! Awake, word a song! Rise, O **Baraq**, and lead your captivity captive! — you son of **Abi Noam**.
13 Then he has him who survives subjugate over the nobles among the people: **Yah Veh** has me subjugate over the mighty.
14 From **Ephrayim**, their root is against **Amaleq**; after you, **Ben Yamin**, among your people; from **Machir** the statute setters descend; and from **Zebulun** they who draw with the scion of the scribe.
15 And the governors of **Yissachar** are with Deborah; as **Yissachar**, thus **Baraq** — sent on foot into the valley. As for the divisions of **Reu Ben** great are the statutes of heart.

JUDGES 5, 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 Why abodest **seatest** thou
among **between** the *sheepfolds stalls*,
to hear the *bleatings hisses* of the *flocks droves*?
For the divisions of *Reuben Reu Ben*
there were great *searchings probings* of heart.

17 *Gilead abode Gilad tabernacled* beyond *Jordan Yarden*:
and why did Dan *remain sojourn* in ships?
Asher continued settled on the sea *shore haven*,
and *abode tabernacled* in his *breaches breakwater*.

18 Zebulun and Naphtali were a people
that jeopardated exposed to reproach their *lives souls*
unto the *death dying* in the high places of the field.

19 The *kings sovereigns* came and fought,
then fought the *kings sovereigns* of *Canaan Kenaan*
in *Taanach* by the waters of *Megiddo*;
they took no gain of *money silver*.

20 They fought from *heaven the heavens*;
the stars in their *courses highways* fought against *Sisera*.

21 The *river wadi* of *Kishon Qishon*
swept bore them away,
that ancient *river wadi*, the *river Kishon wadi Qishon*.
O my soul, thou hast trodden down strength.

22 Then were the *horsehoofs horse heelprints*
broken hammered by the means of the *pransings*,
the *pransings* of their mighty ones.

23 Curse ye *Meroz*, said the angel of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
in cursing, curse ye *bitterly* the *inhabitants settlers* thereof;
because they came not to the help of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
to the help of the *LORD Yah Veh* against the mighty.

24 Blessed above women shall *Jael Yael*
the *wife woman* of *Heber the Kenite Qayiniy* be,
blessed shall she be above women in the tent.
He asked water, and she gave *him* milk;
she *brought forth approached with* butter
in a *lordly dish mighty bason*.

26 She *put spread* her hand to the *nail stake*,
and her right *hand* to the *workmen's toiler's* hammer;
and *with the hammer she smote she hammered* *Sisera*,
she *smote off crushed* his head,
when she had *pierced struck*
and *stricken passed* through his temples.

27 **At Between** her feet he bowed, he fell, he lay down:
at between her feet he bowed, he fell:
where he bowed, there he fell down *dead ravaged*.

28 The mother of *Sisera* looked out at a window,
and cried through the lattice,
Why is his chariot *so long delayed* in coming?
why *tarry delay* the *wheels steps* of his chariots?

29 Her wise *ladies governesses* answered her,
yea, she returned *answer sayings* to herself,
Have they not *sped found*?

30 have they *not divided allotted* the *prey spoil*;
to every *man the head mighty*
a *damsel maiden* or two *maidens*;
to *Sisera a prey spoil* of *divers colours dyes*,
a *prey spoil* of *divers colours dyes*
of *needlework embroidery*
of *divers colours dyes* of *needlework embroidery*
on both sides,
meet for the necks of *them that take the spoil the spoilers*?

31 So let all thine enemies *perish destruct*,
O *LORD Yah Veh*:
but let them that love him be as the sun
when he goeth *forth* in his might.
And the land *had rest rested* forty years.

A PERSECUTION OF THE MIDYANIY, THE AMALEKIY, AND THE SONS OF THE EAST

6 And the *children sons* of *Israel did Yisra El worked* evil
in the *sight eyes* of the *LORD Yah Veh*:
and the *LORD delivered Yah Veh* gave them
into the hand of *Midian Midyan* seven years.

2 And the hand of *Midian Midyan*
prevailed against *Israel Yisra El*:
and *because at the face* of the *Midianites Midyaniy*
the *children sons* of *Israel made Yisra El worked* them
the *dens caverns* which are in the mountains,
and caves, and *strong holds huntholds*.

3 And so it was, when *Israel Yisra El* had sown *seeded*,

JUDGES 5, 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

16 Why seat you between the stalls?
To hear the hisses of the droves?
As for the divisions of Reu Ben
great are the probings of heart.

17 Gilad tabernacles beyond Yarden:
and Dan — why sojourns he in ships?
Asher settles on the sea haven
and tabernacles in his breakwater.

18 Zebulun and Naphtali are a people exposed
— to reproach their souls
— to die in the high places of the field.

19 The sovereigns come and fight,
and the sovereigns of Kenaan fight in Taanach
by the waters of Megiddo;
they take no gain of silver.

20 They fight from the heavens;
the stars in their highways fight against Sisera.

21 The wadi of Qishon bears them away
— that ancient wadi — the wadi Qishon.
O my soul, you tread down strength.

22 Then hammered are the horse heelprints
by the pransings
— the pransings of their mighty ones.

23 Curse you Meroz, says the angel of Yah Veh,
in cursing, curse the settlers thereof;
because they came not to the help of Yah Veh
— to the help of Yah Veh against the mighty.

24 Blessed — above women
— Yael the woman of Heber the Qayiniy,
blessed — above women in the tent.

25 He asks water and she gives milk;
she approaches with butter in a mighty bason;
she spreads her hand to the stake
and her right to the hammer of the toiler;
she hammers Sisera; she crushes his head;
she strikes and passes through his temples.

27 Between her feet he bowed; he fell; he layed:
between her feet he bowed, he fell:
where he bowed, there he fell ravaged.

28 The mother of Sisera looks out a window
and cries through the lattice.
What delays his chariot in coming?
What delays the steps of his chariots?

29 Her wise governesses answer her;
yes, she returns sayings to herself.
Found they not?
Allot they the spoil to the head mighty?
A maiden or two maidens to Sisera?
A spoil of dyes — a spoil of dyes of embroidery
— of dyes of embroidery on both sides
for the necks of the spoilers?

31 Thus all your enemies destruct, O Yah Veh:
but they who love him are as the sun
when he goes in his might.
— and the land rests forty years.

A PERSECUTION OF THE MIDYANIY, THE AMALEKIY, AND THE SONS OF THE EAST

6 And the sons of Yisra El
work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh;
and Yah Veh gives them
into the hand of Midyan seven years:
2 and the hand of Midyan prevails against Yisra El:
and at the face of the Midyaniy
the sons of Yisra El work themselves
caverns in the mountains and caves and huntholds.
3 And so be it, Yisra El seeds;

JUDGES 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that the Midianites came up **Midyan** ascended,
and the Amalekites **Amalekiy**,
and the children **sons** of the east,
even they came up **ascended** against them;
4 And they encamped against them,
and **destroyed ruined** the increase **produce** of the earth,
till thou come unto **Gaza enter Azzah**,
and left no sustenance **no invigoration survived**
for **Israel Yisra El**,
neither **sheep lamb**, nor ox, nor ass **he burro**.
5 For they came up **ascended**
with their **cattle chattel** and their tents,
and they came as **grasshoppers locusts**
for multitude **in sufficient abundance**;
for both they and their camels were without number:
and they entered into the land to **destroy ruin** it.
6 And **Israel Yisra El**
was greatly impoverished **mighty lanquished**
because **at the face** of the Midianites **Midyaniy**;
and the children **sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
cried unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
7 And **so be** it came to pass,
when the children **sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
cried unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
because of the Midianites **Midyan**,
8 That the **LORD Yah Veh** sent a man — a prophet
unto the children **sons** of **Israel Yisra El**,
which said unto them, Thus saith
the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of **Israel Yisra El**,
I brought **ascended** you up from **Egypt Misrayim**,
and brought you forth
out of the house of **bondage servants**;
9 And I delivered **rescued** you
out of the hand of the **Egyptians Misrayim**,
and out of the hand of all that oppressed you,
and drave them out from **before you thy face**,
and gave you their land;
10 And I said unto you,
I am the **LORD I — Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**;
fear **awe** not the gods **elohim** of the **Amorites Emoriy**,
in whose land ye **dwelt settle**:
but ye have not **obeyed hearkened unto** my voice.
11 **THE ANGEL OF YAH VEH VISITS GIDON**
And there came an angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and sat **settled** under an oak which was in Ophrah,
that pertained unto **Joash of Yah Ash**
the **Abiezrite Abi Ezeriy**:
and his son **Gideon Gidon**
threshed wheat by the winepress,
to **hide it cause it to flee**
from the **face** of the Midianites **Midyaniy**.
12 And the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**
appeared unto was seen by him, and said unto him,
The **LORD Yah Veh** is with thee,
thou mighty **man** of valour.
13 And **Gideon Gidon** said unto him, Oh my **Lord Adonay**,
if the **LORD Yah Veh** be with us,
why then **is has** all this **befallen found** us?
and where be all his **miracles marvels**
which our fathers **told us of scribed us**, saying,
Did not the **LORD Yah Veh**
bring ascend us up from **Egypt Misrayim**?
but now the **LORD Yah Veh** hath forsaken us,
and delivered **given** us
into the **hands palms** of the Midianites **Midyaniy**.
14 And the **LORD looked upon Yah Veh faced** him,
and said, Go in this thy **might force**,
and thou shalt save **Israel Yisra El**
from the **hand palm** of the Midianites **Midyaniy**:
have not I sent thee?
15 And he said unto him, Oh my **Lord Adonay**,
wherewith shall I save **Israel Yisra El**? behold,
my **family thousand** is poor in **Manasseh Menash Sheh**,
and I am the **least lesser** in my father's house.
16 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto him,
Surely I will Because I shall be with thee,
and thou shalt smite the Midianites **Midyaniy** as one man.

GIDON

JUDGES 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the Midyan and the Amalekiy
and the sons of the east ascend
— ascend against them
and encamp against them
4 and ruin the produce of the earth
unto the entering Azzah;
and no invigoration survives for Yisra El
— neither lamb nor ox nor he burro:
5 for they ascend with their chattel and their tents
and they come as locusts in sufficient abundance;
for both they and their camels are without number:
and they enter the land to ruin it:
6 and Yisra El
is mighty lanquished at the face of the Midyaniy;
and the sons of Yisra El cry to Yah Veh.
7 And so be it,
the sons of Yisra El cry to Yah Veh
because of Midyan;
8 and Yah Veh sends a man — a prophet
to the sons of Yisra El,
who says to them,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
I ascended you from Misrayim
and brought you from the house of servants;
9 and I rescued you from the hand of the Misrayim
and from the hand of all who oppressed you;
and drove them from your face
and gave you their land.
10 And I say to you, I — Yah Veh your Elohim;
awe not the elohim of the Emoriy
in whose land you settle:
and you hearken not to my voice.

GIDON

THE ANGEL OF YAH VEH VISITS GIDON

11 And an angel comes from Yah Veh,
who settles under an oak in Ophrah
— of Yah Ash the Abi Ezeriy:
and his son Gidon threshes wheat by the winepress
so that it flees from the face of the Midyaniy.
12 And the angel of Yah Veh is seen by him,
and says to him,
Yah Veh be with you, you mighty of valour.
13 And Gidon says to him, Oh my Adonay,
— and Yah Veh is with us!
Why **does** all this find us?
And where are all his marvels our fathers scribed us,
saying,
Has not Yah Veh ascended us from Misrayim?
And now, Yah Veh, forsakes he us?
And gives us into the palms of the Midyaniy?
14 And Yah Veh faces him and says,
Go in this — your force
and save Yisra El from the palm of the Midyaniy.
Have not I sent you?
15 And he says to him, Oh my Adonay,
What? I save Yisra El?
Behold, my thousand is poor in Menash Sheh
and I am the lesser in the house of my father.
16 And Yah Veh says to him, Because I am with you;
and you, smite the Midyaniy as one man.

JUDGES 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 17 And he said unto him,
If now I have found *grace* **charism** in thy *sight* **eyes**,
then *shew* **work** me a sign
that thou *talkest* **wordest** with me.
- 18 Depart not hence, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
until I come unto thee,
and bring forth my *present* **offering**,
and set it *before thee* **at thy face**.
And he said,
I *will tarry* **shall settle** until thou *come again* **return**.
- 19 And *Gideon* **Gidon** went in,
and *made ready* **worked a kid doe goat**,
and *unleavened cakes* **matsahs** of an ephah of flour:
the flesh he *put set* in a basket,
and he *put set* the broth in a *pot* **skillet**,
and brought it out unto him under the oak,
and *presented it* **approached**.
- 20 And the angel of *God* **Elohim** said unto him,
Take the flesh and the *unleavened cakes* **matsahs**,
and *lay them set* upon this rock, and pour out the broth.
And he *did* **worked** so.
- 21 Then the angel of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
put sent forth the end of the staff that was in his hand,
and touched the flesh and the *unleavened cakes* **matsahs**;
and there *rose up* **ascended** fire out of the rock,
and consumed the flesh
and the *unleavened cakes* **matsahs**.
Then the angel of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
departed out of his sight **went from his eyes**.
- 22 And when *Gideon* **Gidon**
perceived saw that he was an angel of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Gideon **Gidon** said, *Alas* **Aha**,
O Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh!**
for *because* **thus**
I have seen an angel of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** face to face.
- 23 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto him,
Peace **Shalom** be unto thee; *fear* **awe** not:
thou shalt not die.
- 24 Then *Gideon* **Gidon** built *an a* **sacrifice** altar there
unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and called it *Jehovahshalom* **Yah Veh Shalom**:
unto this day
it is yet in Ophrah of the *Abiezrites* **Abi Ezeriy**.
- 25 And *so be* it *came to pass*, the same night,
that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto him,
Take thy father's young *bullock* **steer ox**,
even the second bullock of seven years *old*,
and *throw down* **demolish** the **sacrifice** altar of Baal
that thy father hath,
and cut down the *grove* **asherah** that is by it:
And build *an a* **sacrifice** altar
unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
upon the top of this *rock* **stronghold**,
in the ordered place **by the arrangement**,
and take the second bullock,
and *offer* **holocaust** a *burnt sacrifice* **holocaust**
with the *wood* **timber** of the *grove* **asherah**
which thou shalt cut down.
- 27 Then *Gideon* **Gidon** took ten men of his servants,
and *did* **worked**
as *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had *said* **worded** unto him:
and *so be* it was,
because he *feared* **awed** his father's household,
and the men of the city,
that he could not *do work* it by day,
that he *did* **worked** it by night.
- 28 And when the men of the city
arose **started** early in the morning, behold,
the **sacrifice** altar of Baal was *cast* **pulled** down,
and the *grove* **asherah** was cut down that was by it,
and the second bullock
was *offered* **holocausted**
upon the **sacrifice** altar *that was* built.
- 29 And they said *one man to another* **friend**,
Who hath *done* **worked** this *thing* **word**?
And when they enquired and *asked* **sought**, they said,
Gideon **Gidon** the son of *Joash* **Yah Ash**
hath *done* **worked** this *thing* **word**.

JUDGES 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 17 And he says to him,
If now I find charism in your eyes,
work me a sign that you are wording with me:
- 18 depart not hence, I beseech you,
until I come to thee
and bring my offering and set it at your face.
- And he says,
I settle until you return.
- 19 And Gidon goes in and works a doe goat
and matsahs of an ephah of flour:
he sets the flesh in a basket
and sets the broth in a skillet
and brings it to him under the oak and approaches.
- 20 And the angel of Elohim says to him,
Take the flesh and the matsahs
and set on this rock and pour out the broth.
— and he works thus.
- 21 Then the angel of Yah Veh
sends the end of the staff in his hand,
and touches the flesh and the matsahs;
and fire ascends from the rock
and consumes the flesh and the matsahs.
— and the angel of Yah Veh goes from his eyes.
- 22 And Gidon sees he is the angel of Yah Veh;
and Gidon says, Aha, O Adonay Yah Veh!
for thus I have seen the angel of Yah Veh face to face.
- 23 And Yah Veh says to him,
Shalom to you! Awe not! You die not!
- 24 And there Gidon builds a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh
and calls it Yah Veh Shalom:
to this day it is still in Ophrah of the Abi Ezeriy.
- 25 And so be it, the same night,
Yah Veh says to him,
Take the young steer ox of your father
and the second bullock of seven years;
and demolish the sacrifice altar of Baal of your father
and cut down the asherah by it:
- 26 and build a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh your Elohim
on top of this stronghold by the arrangement;
and take the second bullock
and holocaust a holocaust
with the timber of the asherah you cut down.
- 27 And Gidon takes ten men of his servants
and works as Yah Veh words to him:
and so be it,
because he awes the household of his father
and the men of the city,
he cannot work it by day
so he works it by night.
- 28 And the men of the city start early in the morning;
and behold,
the sacrifice altar of Baal is pulled down
and the asherah by it is cut down;
and the second bullock
is holocausted on the sacrifice altar he built.
- 29 And they say man to friend,
Who worked this word?
And they enquire and seek, and they say,
Gidon the son of Yah Ash worked this word.

JUDGES 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

30 Then the men of the city said unto *Joash* **Yah Ash**,
Bring out thy son, that he may die:
because he hath cast **pulled** down
the **sacrifice** altar of Baal,
and because he hath cut down
the **grove asherah** that was by it.

31 And *Joash* **Yah Ash** said unto all that stood against him,
Will Shall ye plead for Baal? *will shall* ye save him?
he that *will shall* plead for him,
let him be *put to death* **deathified** whilst it is yet morning:
if he be a *god* **an elohim**, let him plead for himself,
because *one* **he** hath cast **pulled** down his **sacrifice** altar.

32 Therefore on that day
he called him *Jerubbaal* **Yerub Baal**, saying,
Let Baal plead against him,
because he hath *thrown* **pulled** down his **sacrifice** altar.

33 Then all *the Midianites* **Midyaniy**
and *the Amalekites* **Amaleqiy**
and the *children* **sons** of the east were gathered together,
and *went* **passed** over,
and *pitched* **encamped** in the valley of *Jezeel* **Yizre El**.

34 But the Spirit of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
came upon Gideon **enrobed Gidon**,
and he *blew* **blast** a trumpet **shophar**;
and *Abiezer* was gathered **Abi Ezer** cried after him.

35 And he sent *messengers* **angels**
throughout all *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**;
who also was *gathered* **cried** after him:
and he sent *messengers* **angels** unto Asher,
and unto Zebulun, and unto Naphtali;
and they *came up* **ascended** to meet them.

GIDON AND THE SHEARING

36 And *Gideon* **Gidon** said unto *God* **Elohim**,
If thou *wilt* **shalt** save *Israel* **Yisra El** by mine hand,
as thou hast *said* **worded**,

37 Behold, I *will put* **shall place** a *fleece* **shearing** of wool
in the *floor* **threshingfloor**;
and if the dew be on the *fleece* **shearing** only,
and *it be dry* **parched** upon all the earth *beside*,
then shall I know that
thou *wilt* **shalt** save *Israel* **Yisra El** by mine hand,
as thou hast *said* **worded**.

38 And **so be** it was *so*:
for he *rose up* **started** early on the morrow,
and *thrust* **squeezed** the *fleece* **shearing** together,
and wringed the dew out of the *fleece* **shearing**,
a *bow* **bason** full of water.

39 And *Gideon* **Gidon** said unto *God* **Elohim**,
Let not *thine anger* be *hot* **thy wrath** **kindle** against me,
and I *will speak* **shall word** but this *once* **one time**:
let me *prove* **test**, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
but this *once* **one time** with the *fleece* **shearing**;
let it now be *dry* **parched** only upon the *fleece* **shearing**,
and upon all the *ground* **earth** let there be dew.

40 And *God* **did** **Elohim** **worked** so that night:
for it was *dry* **parched** upon the *fleece* **shearing** only,
and there was dew on all the *ground* **earth**.

GIDON DEFEATS THE MIDYANIY

7 Then *Jerubbaal* **Yerub Baal**, who is *Gideon* **Gidon**,
and all the people that were with him,
rose up **started** early,
and *pitched* **encamped**
beside *the well of Harod* **En Harod**:
so that the *host* **camp** of the *Midianites* **Midyaniy**
were on the north *side* of them,
by the hill of Moreh, in the valley.

2 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Gideon* **Gidon**,
The people that are with thee are too many for me
to give the *Midianites* **Midyaniy** into their hands,
lest *Israel* **vaunt** **Yisra El** **boast** themselves against me,
saying, Mine own hand hath saved me.

3 Now therefore *go to* **I beseech**,
proclaim **call out** in the ears of the people, saying,
Whosoever is *fearful* **aweth** and *afraid* **trembleth**,
let him return
and *depart early* **skip about** from mount *Gilead* **Gilad**.
And there returned of the people
twenty and two thousand;

JUDGES 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

30 Then the men of the city say to Yah Ash,
Bring out your son to die:
because he pulled down the sacrifice altar of Baal
and because he cut down the asherah by it.

31 And Yah Ash says to all who stand against him,
You — plead you for Baal? You — you save him?
Deathify him who pleads for him by morning:
if he *is* an elohim, he pleads for himself,
because he pulled down his sacrifice altar.

32 And on that day he calls him Yerub Baal, saying,
Baal pleads against him,
because he pulled down his sacrifice altar.

33 Then all Midyaniy and Amaleqiy
and the sons of the east gather together
and pass over and encamp in the valley of Yizre El.

34 And the Spirit of Yah Veh enrobes Gidon
and he blasts a shophar;
and Abi Ezer cries after him:
and he sends angels throughout all Menash Sheh;
who also cry after him:
and he sends angels to Asher
and to Zebulun and to Naphtali;
and they ascend to meet them.

GIDON AND THE SHEARING

36 And Gidon says to Elohim,
If you save Yisra El by my hand, as you worded,
behold,
I place a shearing of wool in the threshingfloor;
and if the dew is on the shearing only,
and parched on all the earth
— then I know
you save Yisra El by my hand as you worded.

38 And so be it, he starts early on the morrow,
and squeezes the shearing together
and wrings the dew from the shearing
— a bason full of water.

39 And Gidon says to Elohim,
Kindle not your wrath against me
and I word but this one time:
I test, I beseech you,
but this one time with the shearing;
parch it only, on the shearing
and on all the earth be dew.

40 And that night, Elohim works thus:
for there is parch on the shearing only,
and there is dew on all the earth.

GIDON DEFEATS THE MIDYANIY

7 Then Yerub Baal, who is Gidon,
and all the people with him start early
and encamp beside En Harod:
with the camp of the Midyaniy being north of them
by the hill of Moreh in the valley.

2 And Yah Veh says to Gidon,
The people with you are too many for me
to give the Midyaniy into their hands
— lest Yisra El boast itself against me,
saying, My own hand saves me!
So now I beseech,
call out in the ears of the people saying,
Whoever awes and trembles,
return and skip about from mount Gilad.
— and twenty—two thousand of the people return;

JUDGES 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and there *remained* **survived** ten thousand.
4 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto *Gideon* **Gidon**,
The people are yet *too* many;
bring them down unto the water,
and I *will try* **shall refine** them for thee there:
and it shall be, *that* of whom I say unto thee,
This shall go with thee, the same shall go with thee;
and of whomsoever I say unto thee,
This shall not go with thee, the same shall not go.
5 So he brought down the people unto the water:
and the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto *Gideon* **Gidon**,
Every one that lappeth of the water with his tongue,
as a dog lappeth, him shalt thou set by himself;
likewise
every one that boweth down upon his knees to drink.
6 And the number of them that lapped,
putting their hand to their mouth,
were three hundred men:
but all the rest of the people
bowed down upon their knees to drink water.
7 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto *Gideon* **Gidon**,
By the three hundred men that lapped
will **shall** I save you,
and *deliver* **give** the *Midianites* **Midyaniy** into thine hand:
and let all the other people go every man unto his place.
8 So the people took *victuals* **hunt** in their hand,
and their *trumpets* **shophars**:
and he sent *all the rest of Israel*
every man of **Yisra El** unto his tent,
and *retained* **upheld** those three hundred men:
and the *host* **camp** of *Midian* **Midyaniy**
was beneath him in the valley.
9 And **so be** it *came to pass*, the same night,
that the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto him,
Arise, *get* **descend** thee *down* unto the *host* **camp**;
for I have *delivered* **given** it into thine hand.
10 But if thou *fear* **awe** to *go down* **descend**,
go **descend** thou with *Phurah* **Purah** thy *servant* **lad**
down to the *host* **camp**:
11 And thou shalt hear what they *say* **word**;
and afterward shall thine hands be strengthened
to *go down* **descend** unto the *host* **camp**.
Then *went* **descended** he *down*
with *Phurah* **Purah** his *servant* **lad**
unto the *outside* **edge** of the armed men
that were in the *host* **camp**.
12 And the *Midianites* **Midyaniy** and the *Amalekites* **Amaleqiy**
and all the *children* **sons** of the east
lay along **are fallen** in the valley
like *grasshoppers* **locusts** for *multitude* **abundance**;
and their camels were without number,
as the sand by the sea *side* **lip** for *multitude* **abundance**.
13 And when *Gideon* **Gidon** was come, behold,
there was a man
that *told* **scribed** a dream unto his *fellow* **friend**,
and said, Behold, I dreamed a dream, and, *lo* **behold**,
a cake of barley bread *tumbled* **overturned**
into the *host* **camp** of *Midian* **Midyaniy**,
and came unto a tent, and smote it that it fell,
and overturned it **upward**, that the tent *lay along* **fell**.
14 And his *fellow* **friend** answered and said,
This is *nothing* **naught** else
save the sword of *Gideon* **Gidon**
the son of *Joash* **Yah Ash**, a man of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
for into his hand
hath *God* **delivered** *Midian* **Elohim** **given** *Midyaniy*,
and all the *host* **camp**.
15 And it was *so*,
when *Gideon* **Gidon**
heard the *telling* **renumerating** of the dream,
and the *interpretation* **breaking forth** thereof,
that he *worshipped* **prostrated**,
and returned into the *host* **camp** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and said, Arise;
for the **LORD Yah Veh**
hath *delivered* **given** into your hand
the *host* **camp** of *Midian* **Midyaniy**.
16 And he divided the three hundred men

JUDGES 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and ten thousand survive.
4 And Yah Veh says to Gidon,
The people are still many;
bring them down to the water
and there I refine them for you:
and so be it, of whom I say to you,
This goes with you, the same goes with you;
and of whomever I say to you,
This goes not with you, the same goes not.
5 So he brings the people to the water:
and Yah Veh says to Gidon,
Every one who laps the water with his tongue,
as a dog laps, set him by himself;
likewise every one who bows on his knees to drink:
6 — and the number
who lap their hand to their mouth
is three hundred men:
and all the rest of the people
bow on their knees to drink water.
7 And Yah Veh says to Gidon,
By the three hundred men who lap, I save you;
and give the Midyaniy into your hand:
and all the other people go — each man to his place.
8 So the people take their hunt in their hand
and their shophars:
and he sends every man of Yisra El to his tent
and upholds those three hundred men:
and the camp of Midyaniy is below him in the valley.
9 And so be it, that same night, Yah Veh says to him,
Rise! Descend to the camp!
For I give it into your hand:
and if you awe to descend,
descend with Purah your lad to the camp:
and hear what they word;
and afterward strengthen your hands
to descend to the camp.
10 And he descends with Purah his lad
to the edge of the armed men in the camp:
and the Midyaniy and the Amaleqiy
and all the sons of the east fall in the valley
— as locusts for abundance;
and their camels without number
— as the sand by the sea lip for abundance.
11 And Gidon comes, and behold,
a man scribing a dream to his friend;
and says, Behold, I dreamed a dream,
and behold, a cake of barley bread
overturns in the camp of Midyaniy
and comes to a tent and smites it so that it falls
— overturns it upward, so that the tent falls.
12 And his friend answers and says,
This is none other except the sword of Gidon
the son of Yah Ash — a man of Yisra El:
Elohim gives Midyaniy and all the camp
into his hand.
13 And so be it,
Gidon hears the renumerating of the dream
and the breaking forth thereof,
and he prostrates and returns to the camp of Yisra El,
and says, Rise!
For Yah Veh gives the camp of Midyaniy
into your hand:
14 and he divides the three hundred men

JUDGES 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

into three *companies* **heads**,
and he *put a trumpet* **gave shophars** in every man's hand,
with empty pitchers,
and *lamps* **flambeaus** within the pitchers.
17 And he said unto them, *Look on* **See unto me**,
and *do work* likewise: and, behold,
when I come to the *outside* **edge** of the camp,
it shall be that, as I *do work*, so shall ye *do work*.
18 When I *blow blast* with a *trumpet* **shophar**,
I and all that are with me,
then *blow blast* ye the *trumpets* **shophars** also
on every side of round about all the camp, and say,
The sword of the LORD **Of Yah Veh**,
and of *Gideon* **Gidon**.
19 So *Gideon* **Gidon**,
and the hundred men that were with him,
came unto the *outside* **edge** of the camp
in the beginning of the middle watch;
and **in raising**,
they had *but newly set* **raised** the *watch* **guard**:
and they *blew blast* the *trumpets* **shophars**,
and *brake* **shattered** the pitchers that were in their hands.
20 And the three *companies* **heads**
blew blast the *trumpets* **shophars**, and *brake* the pitchers,
and held the *lamps* **flambeaus** in their left hands,
and the *trumpets* **shophars** in their right hands
to *blow blast* *withal*:
and they *cried* **called out**,
The sword of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, and of *Gideon* **Gidon**.
21 And they stood every man in his place
round about the camp;
and all the *host* **camp** ran, and *cried* **shouted**, and fled.
22 And the three hundred *blew blast* the *trumpets* **shophars**,
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
set every man's sword against his *fellow* **friend**,
even throughout all the *host* **camp**:
and the *host* **camp** fled to *Bethshittah* **Beth Hath Shittah**
in *Zererath* **Seredah**,
and to the *border* **lip** of *Abelmeholah* **Abel Mecholah**,
unto *Tabbath*.
23 And the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
gathered themselves together **cried** out of *Naphtali*,
and out of *Asher*, and out of all *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
and pursued after the *Midianites* **Midyaniy**.
24 And *Gideon* **Gidon** sent *messengers* **angels**
throughout all mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**, saying,
Come down **Descend**
against to meet the *Midianites* **Midyaniy**,
and *take before* **capture in front of** them
the waters unto *Bethbarah* **Beth Barah** and *Jordan* **Yarden**.
Then all the men of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
gathered themselves together **cried out**,
and *took* **captured** the waters
unto *Bethbarah* **Beth Barah** and *Jordan* **Yarden**.
25 And they *took* **captured** two *princes* **governors**
of the *Midianites* **Midyaniy**, Oreb and Zeeb;
and they *slew* **slaughtered** Oreb
upon the rock Oreb,
and Zeeb they *slew* **slaughtered**
at the *winepress* **trough** of Zeeb,
and pursued *Midian* **Midyaniy**,
and brought the heads of Oreb and Zeeb
to *Gideon* **Gidon** on the other side *Jordan* **Yarden**.
MEN OF EPHRAYIM FEEL SLIGHTED
8 And the men of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** said unto him,
In working,
Why hast thou *erved us thus* **worked this word**,
that thou calledst us not,
when thou wentest to fight with the *Midianites* **Midyaniy**?
And they *did chide* **contended** with him *sharply* **strongly**.
2 And he said unto them,
What have I *done* **worked** now in comparison of you?
Is not the gleaning of the *grapes of Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
better than the *vintage* **crop** of *Abiezer* **Abi Ezer**?
3 *God* **Elohim** hath *delivered* **given** into your hands
the *princes* **governors** of *Midian* **Midyaniy**, Oreb and Zeeb:
and what was I able to *do work* in comparison of you?
Then their *anger was abated* **spirit slackened** toward him,
when he had *said* **worded** that **word**.

JUDGES 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

into three heads;
and he gives in the hand of every man
shophars and empty pitchers
and flambeaus within the pitchers.
17 And he says to them,
See me; and work likewise:
and behold, when I come to the edge of the camp,
so be it, as I work, you work:
18 when I blast with a shophar, I — and all with me,
then you blast the shophars all around all the camp
and say, Of Yah Veh! and, Of Gidon!
19 So Gidon and the hundred men with him,
come to the edge of the camp
in the beginning of the middle watch;
and in raising, they raise the guard:
and they blast the shophars
and shatter the pitchers in their hands:
20 and the three heads
blast the shophars and break the pitchers
and hold the flambeaus in their left hands
and the shophars in their right hands to blast:
and they call out,
A sword! Of Yah Veh! and, Of Gidon!
21 And every man stands in his place
all around the camp;
and all the camp runs and shouts and flees:
22 and the three hundred blast the shophars
and Yah Veh sets the sword of every man
against his friend
throughout all the camp:
and the camp flees to Beth Has Shittah in Seredah
to the lip of Abel Mecholah — to Tabbath.
23 And the men of Yisra El
— of Naphtali and of Asher and of all Menash Sheh
cry out and pursue after the Midyaniy.
24 And Gidon sends angels
throughout all mount Ephrayim, saying,
Descend to meet the Midyaniy
and capture the waters to Beth Barah and Yarden
in front of them.
Then all the men of Ephrayim cry out
and capture the waters to Beth Barah and Yarden:
25 and they capture two governors of the Midyaniy
— Oreb and Zeeb;
and they slaughter Oreb on rock Oreb
and they slaughter Zeeb at the trough of Zeeb;
and pursue Midyaniy
and bring the heads of Oreb and Zeeb
to Gidon beyond Yarden.
MEN OF EPHRAYIM FEEL SLIGHTED
8 And the men of Ephrayim say to him,
In working, why work you this word,
to not call us,
when you go to fight with the Midyaniy?
— and they strongly contend with him.
2 And he says to them,
What work I now compared to you?
Is not the gleaning of Ephrayim
better than the crop of Abi Ezer?
3 Elohim gave into your hands
the governors of Midyaniy, Oreb and Zeeb:
and what can I work compared to you?
— and he words that word,
and they slacken their spirit toward him.

JUDGES 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 And Gideon Gidon came to Jordan Yarden,
and passed over,
he, and the three hundred men that were with him,
faint languid, yet pursuing them.

5 And he said
unto the men of Succoth Sukkoth/Brush Arbors,
Give, I pray beseech you, loaves rounds of bread
unto the people *that follow me at my feet*;
for they be *faint languid*,
and I am pursuing
after Zebah Zebach and Zalmunna Sal Munna,
kings sovereigns of Midian Midyaniy.

6 And the *princes governors*
of Succoth Sukkoth/Brush Arbors said,
Are the *hands palms*
of Zebah Zebach and Zalmunna Sal Munna
now in thine hand,
that we should give bread unto thine *army host*?
And Gideon Gidon said,
Therefore when *the LORD Yah Veh* hath *delivered given*
Zebah Zebach and Zalmunna Sal Munna
into mine hand,
then I *will tear shall thresh* your flesh
with the thorns of the wilderness and with *briers flints*.

8 And he *went up ascended* thence to Penuel Penu El,
and *spake worded* unto them *likewise thus*:
and the men of Penuel Penu El answered him
as the men of Succoth Sukkoth/Brush Arbors
had answered *him*.

9 And he *spake said* also unto the men of Penuel Penu El,
saying, When I *come again return in peace shalom*,
I *will break shall pull* down this tower.

10 Now Zebah Zebach and Zalmunna Sal Munna
were in Karkor Qarqor,
and their *hosts camps* with them,
about fifteen thousand *men*,
all that *were left remained* of all the *hosts camps*
of the *children sons* of the east:
for there fell an hundred and twenty thousand men
that drew sword.

11 And Gideon *went up Gidon ascended*
by the way of them that *dwelt tabernacled* in tents
on the east of Nobah Nobach and Jogbehah Yogbehah,
and smote the *host camp*; for the *host camp* was secure.

12 And when
Zebah Zebach and Zalmunna Sal Munna fled,
he pursued after them, and *took captured*
the two *kings sovereigns of Midian Midyaniy*,
Zebah Zebach and Zalmunna Sal Munna,
and *discomfited trembled* all the *host camp*.

13 And Gideon Gidon the son of Joash Yah Ash
returned from *battle war*
before the *ascent of the sun was up*,
And *caught captured* a *young man lad*
of the men of Succoth Sukkoth/Brush Arbors,
and *enquired asked* of him:
and he *described inscribed* unto him
the *princes governors of Succoth Sukkoth/Brush Arbors*,
and the elders thereof,
even threescore and seventeen seventy seven men.

15 And he came unto the men
of Succoth Sukkoth/Brush Arbors, and said,
Behold Zebah Zebach and Zalmunna Sal Munna,
with whom ye *did upbraid reproached* me, saying,
Are the *hands palms*
of Zebah Zebach and Zalmunna Sal Munna
now in thine hand,
that we should give bread unto thy men that are weary?
And he took the elders of the city,
and thorns of the wilderness and *briers flints*,
and with them he *taught caused* the men
of Succoth Sukkoth/Brush Arbors to *know*.

17 And he *beat pulled* down the tower of Penuel Penu El,
and *slew slaughtered* the men of the city.

18 Then said he
unto Zebah Zebach and Zalmunna Sal Munna,
What manner of men Who were they
whom ye *slew slaughtered* at Tabor?

JUDGES 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 And Gidon comes to Yarden
— he and the three hundred men with him
and pass over, languid, yet pursuing them:
and he says to the men of Sukkoth/Brush Arbors,
Give, I beseech you,
rounds of bread to the people at my feet
for they are languid;
and I pursue after Zebach and Sal Munna
sovereigns of Midyaniy.

6 And the governors of Sukkoth/Brush Arbors say,
Are the palms of Zebach and Sal Munna
now in your hand
— that we give bread to your host?

7 And Gidon says, So,
Yah Veh gives Zebach and Sal Munna into my hand,
and I thresh your flesh
with the thorns of the wilderness and with flints.

8 And he ascends to Penu El
and words to them thus:
and the men of Penu El answer him
as the men of Sukkoth/Brush Arbors answered.

9 And he says also to the men of Penu El, saying,
When I return in shalom, I pull down this tower.

10 And Zebach and Sal Munna are in Qarqor
and their camps with them, about fifteen thousand
— all who remain
of all the camps of the sons of the east:
for there fell a hundred and twenty thousand men
drawing sword.

11 And Gidon ascends
by the way of them who tabernacle in tents
on the east of Nobach and Yogbehah;
and smites the camp; for the camp is secure:
and Zebach and Sal Munna flee
and he pursues them
and captures the two sovereigns of Midyaniy
— Zebach and Sal Munna
and all the camp trembles.

13 And Gidon the son of Yah Ash
returns from war in front of the ascent of the sun,
and captures a lad
of the men of Sukkoth/Brush Arbors;
and asks of him:
and he inscribes to him
of the governors of Sukkoth/Brush Arbors
and the elders thereof — seventy—seven men.

15 And he comes to the men
of Sukkoth/Brush Arbors and says,
Behold Zebach and Sal Munna,
with whom you reproached me, saying,
Are the palms of Zebach and Sal Munna
now in your hand,
that we give bread to your men who are weary?

16 And he takes the elders of the city
and thorns of the wilderness and flints
and with them he has the men
of Sukkoth/Brush Arbors to know:
and he pulls down the tower of Penu El
and slaughters the men of the city.

18 Then he says to Zebach and Sal Munna,
How are the men you slaughtered at Tabor?

JUDGES 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

And they answered **said**, As thou art, so were they **thus**;
each one resembled **according to the form**
of the children sons of a king one sovereign.
19 And he said, They were my brethren,
even the sons of my mother:
as the LORD **Yah Veh** liveth, if ye had saved them alive,
I would **should** not **slay slaughter** you.
20 And he said unto **Jether Yether** his firstborn firstbirthed,
Up **Arise**, and **slay slaughter** them.
But the youth **lad** drew not his sword:
for he feared **awed**, because he was yet a youth **lad**.
21 Then **Zebah Zebach** and **Zalmunna Sal Munna** said,
Rise thou, and **fall encounter** upon us:
for as the man is, so is **thus** his strength **might**.
And **Gideon Gidon** arose, and **slew slaughtered**
Zebah Zebach and **Zalmunna Sal Munna**,
and took away the ornaments **pendants**
that were on their camels' necks.

THE EPHOD OF GIDON

22 Then the men of **Israel Yisra El**
said unto **Gideon Gidon**,
Rule Reign thou over us,
both thou, and thy son, and thy son's son also:
for thou hast **delivered saved** us
from the hand of **Midian Midyaniy**.
23 And **Gideon Gidon** said unto them,
I will **shall** not **rule reign** over you,
neither shall my son **rule reign** over you:
the LORD **Yah Veh** shall **rule reign** over you.
24 And **Gideon Gidon** said unto them,
I would desire a request **ask a petition** of you,
that ye would **should** give me every man
the earrings **noserings** of his prey **spoil**.
(For they had golden earrings **noserings**,
because they were **Ishmaelites Yishma Eliy**.)
25 And they answered **said**,
In giving, We will willingly **shall** give them.
And they spread a garment **cloth**,
and did cast therein every man
the earrings **noserings** of his prey **spoil**.
26 And the weight of the golden earrings **noserings**
that he requested **asked**
was a thousand and seven hundred **shekels** of gold;
beside ornaments **crescents**, and **collars pendants**,
and purple raiment **covering**
that was on the kings **sovereigns** of **Midian Midyaniy**,
and beside the **chains chokers**
that were about their camels' necks.
27 And **Gideon made Gidon worked** an ephod thereof,
and **put placed** it in his city, even in **Ophrah**:
and all **Israel Yisra El**
went thither a whoring **whored** after it:
which thing became a snare unto **Gideon Gidon**,
and to his house.

SUMMARY

28 Thus was **Midian Midyaniy** subdued
before at the face of the children sons of **Israel Yisra El**,
so that they **lifted up added to not lift** their heads *no more*.
And the country was in quietness **land rested** forty years
in the days of **Gideon Gidon**.
29 And **Jerubbaal Yerub Baal** the son of **Joash Yah Ash**
went and **dwelt settled** in his own house.
30 And **Gideon Gidon** had threescore and ten **seventy** sons
of his body **begotten going out of his flank**:
for he had many **wives women**.
31 And his concubine that was in **Shechem**,
she also **bare birthed** him a son,
whose name he **called Abimelech set Abi Melech**.
32 And **Gideon Gidon** the son of **Joash Yah Ash**
died in a good **old age grayness**,
and was **buried entombed**
in the **sepulchre tomb** of **Joash Yah Ash** his father,
in **Ophrah** of the **Abiezrites Abi Ezeriy**.

YISRA EL WHORES

33 And **so be** it came to pass,
as soon as **Gideon was dead Gidon had died**,

JUDGES 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And they say, As you, thus they;
each one according to the form
of the sons of one sovereign.
19 And he says,
My brothers — sons of my mother:
as **Yah Veh** lives, had you saved them alive,
I had not slaughtered you.
20 And he says to **Yether his firstbirthed**,
Rise! slaughter them!
And the lad draws not his sword:
for he awes, because he is still a lad.
21 Then **Zebach and Sal Munna** say,
Rise! Encounter us!
As the man, thus his **might!**

And **Gidon** rises
and slaughters **Zebach and Sal Munna**
and takes the pendants on the necks of their camels.

THE EPHOD OF GIDON

22 Then the men of **Yisra El** say to **Gidon**,
Reign over us
— both you and your son and the son of your son:
for you saved us from the hand of **Midyaniy**.
23 And **Gidon** says to them,
Neither I reign over you, nor my son reigns over you:
Yah Veh reigns over you.
24 And **Gidon** says to them, I ask a petition of you,
that every man of you
give me the noserings of his spoil.
— they have golden noserings
for they are **Yishma Eliy**.
25 And they say, In giving, we give them.
And they spread a cloth
and every man casts therein the noserings of his spoil:
26 and the weight of the golden noserings he asks
is a thousand and seven hundred of gold
— beside crescents and pendants and purple covering
on the sovereigns of **Midyaniy**
— beside the chokers
around the necks of their camels.
27 And **Gidon** works an ephod thereof
and places it in his city — in **Ophrah**:
and all **Yisra El** whores after it:
which becomes a snare to **Gidon** and to his house.

SUMMARY

28 Thus he subdues **Midyaniy**
at the face of the sons of **Yisra El**
so that they add not to lift their heads;
and the land rests forty years in the days of **Gidon**.
29 And **Yerub Baal** the son of **Yah Ash**
goes and settles in his own house.
30 And **Gidon** has seventy sons come from his flank
— for he has many women:
31 and his concubine in **Shechem**
also births him a son
on whom he set the name **Abi Melech**.

THE DEATH OF GIDON

32 And **Gidon** the son of **Yah Ash**
dies in a good grayness;
and is entombed in the tomb of **Yah Ash** his father
in **Ophrah** of the **Abi Ezeriy**.

YISRA EL WHORES

33 And so be it, as soon as **Gidon** dies,

JUDGES 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El** turned *again* **back**,
and *went a whoring* **whored** after Baalim,
and *made Baalberith* **set Baal Berith** their *god* **elohim**.
34 And the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
remembered not *the LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**,
who had *delivered* **rescued** them out of the hands
of all their enemies *on every side* **round about**:
35 Neither *shewed* **worked** they *kindness* **mercy**
to the house of *Jerubbaal* **Yerub Baal**,
namely, Gideon **Gidon**,
according to all the goodness
which he had *shewed* **worked** unto *Israel* **Yisra El**.

THE CONSPIRACY OF ABI MELECH

9 And *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**
the son of *Jerubbaal* **Yerub Baal**
went to Shechem unto his mother's brethren,
and *communed* **worded** with them,
and with all the family
of the house of his mother's father, saying,
2 *Speak* **Word**, I *pray* **beseech** you,
in the ears of all the *men* **masters** of Shechem,
Whether is better for you,
either that all the sons of *Jerubbaal* **Yerub Baal**,
which are *threescore and ten persons* **seventy men**,
reign over you,
or that one reign over you?
remember also that I am your bone and your flesh.
3 And his mother's brethren *spake* **worded** of him
in the ears of all the *men* **masters** of Shechem
all these words:
and their hearts *inclined* **spread**
to follow *Abimelech* **after Abi Melech**;
for they said, He is our brother.
4 And they gave him
threescore and ten pieces of silver **seventy silvers**
out of the house of *Baalberith* **Baal Berith**,
wherewith *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**
hired vain and *light persons* **frothy men**,
which *followed* **went after** him.
5 And he went unto his father's house at Ophrah,
and *slew* **slaughtered** his brethren
the sons of *Jerubbaal* **Yerub Baal**,
being threescore and ten persons **seventy men**,
upon one stone:
notwithstanding
yet *Jotham* **Yah Tham**
the youngest son of *Jerubbaal* **Yerub Baal**
was *left* **remained**; for he hid himself.
6 And all the *men* **masters** of Shechem
gathered together,
and all the house of Millo, and went,
and *made Abimelech king* **reigned Abi Melech sovereign**,
by the *plain* **mighty oak** of the *pillar station*
that was in Shechem.
7 And when they told it to *Jotham* **Yah Tham**,
he went and stood in the top of mount Gerizim,
and lifted up his voice, and *cried* **called out**,
and said unto them, Hearken unto me,
ye *men* **masters** of Shechem,
that *God* **Elohim** may hearken unto you.
8 **In going**, The trees *went forth on a time* **have gone**
to anoint a *king* **sovereign** over them;
and they said unto the olive tree, Reign thou over us.
9 But the olive tree said unto them,
should I *leave* **forsake** my fatness,
wherewith by me they honour *God* **Elohim** and man,
and go to *be promoted* **wave** over the trees?
10 And the trees said to the fig tree,
Come thou, and reign over us.
11 But the fig tree said unto them,
should I forsake my sweetness,
and my good *fruit* **produce**,
and go to *be promoted* **wave** over the trees?
12 Then said the trees unto the vine,
Come thou, and reign over us.
13 And the vine said unto them,
should I *leave* **forsake** my *wine* **juice**,
which cheereth *God* **Elohim** and man,

JUDGES 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the sons of Yisra El turn back and whore after Baalim
and set Baal Berith their elohim.
34 And the sons of Yisra El
neither remember Yah Veh their Elohim
who rescued them from the hands
of all their enemies all around:
35 nor worked they mercy
to the house of Yerub Baal — Gidon,
according to all the goodness
he worked to Yisra El.

THE CONSPIRACY OF ABI MELECH

9 And Abi Melech the son of Yerub Baal
goes to Shechem to the brothers of his mother
and words with them and with all the family
of the house of the father of his mother, saying,
2 Word, I beseech you,
in the ears of all the masters of Shechem,
which is better for you:
either that all the sons of Yerub Baal
— seventy men reign over you?
Or that one reign over you?
Remember also that I am your bone and your flesh.
3 And brothers of his mother word all his words
in the ears of all the masters of Shechem:
and they spread their hearts to follow Abi Melech;
for, they say, He is our brother.
4 And they give him seventy silvers
from the house of Baal Berith,
wherewith Abi Melech hires vain and frothy men
to go after him:
5 and he goes to the house of his father at Ophrah
and slaughters his brothers the sons of Yerub Baal
— seventy men on one stone:
and Yah Tham
the youngest son of Yerub Baal remains;
because he hides himself:
6 and all the masters of Shechem
and all the house of Millo gather together
and go and have sovereign Abi Melech reign
by the mighty oak of the station in Shechem.
7 And when they tell Yah Tham,
he goes and stands in the top of mount Gerizim
and lifts his voice and calls out and says to them,
Hearken to me, you masters of Shechem,
and Elohim hearkens to you!
8 In going,
the trees go to anoint a sovereign over them;
and they say to the olive tree, Reign over us.
9 And the olive tree says to them,
I — forsake I my fatness
wherewith by me they honor Elohim and man
— to go wave over the trees?
10 And the trees say to the fig tree,
Come and reign over us.
11 And the fig tree says to them,
I — forsake I my sweetness and my good produce
— to go wave over the trees?
12 Then the trees say to the vine,
Come and reign over us.
13 And the vine says to them,
I — forsake I my juice which cheers Elohim and man

JUDGES 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

14 and go to be promoted **wave** over the trees?
Then said all the trees unto the *bramble thorn*,
Come thou, and reign over us.

15 And the *bramble thorn* said unto the trees,
If in truth ye anoint me *king sovereign* over you,
then *come and put your trust seek refuge* in my shadow:
and if not, let fire *come go* out of the *bramble thorn*,
and devour the cedars of Lebanon.

16 Now therefore,
if ye have *done worked* truly and *sincerely integriously*,
in that ye have *made Abimelech king Abi Melech to reign*,
and if ye have *dealt well worked good*
with *Jerubbaal Yerub Baal* and his house,
and have *done worked* unto him
according to the *deserving dealing* of his hands;
17 (For my father fought for you,
and *adventured his life far cast his soul from him*,
and *delivered rescued* you
out of the hand of *Midian Midyaniy*;
18 And ye are risen up against my father's house this day,
and have *slain slaughtered* his sons,
threescore and ten persons seventy men, upon one stone,
and have made *Abimelech Abi Melech*,
the son of his *maidservant maid*,
king to reign over the *men masters* of Shechem,
because he is your brother;)
19 If ye then
have *dealt worked* truly and *sincerely integriously*
with *Jerubbaal Yerub Baal* and with his house this day,
then *rejoice cheer* ye in *Abimelech Abi Melech*,
and let him also *rejoice cheer* in you:
20 But if not,
let fire *come out go* from *Abimelech Abi Melech*,
and *devour consume* the *men masters* of Shechem,
and the house of Millo;
and let fire *come out go*
from the *men masters* of Shechem,
and from the house of Millo,
and *devour Abimelech consume Abi Melech*.
21 And *Jotham ran away Yah Tham fled*,
and fled, and went to Beer, and *dwelt settled* there,
for fear from the face of *Abimelech Abi Melech* his brother.

THE FALL OF ABI MELECH AND SHECHEM

22 When *Abimelech Abi Melech*
had *reigned dominated* three years over *Israel Yisra El*,
23 Then *God Elohim* sent an evil spirit
between *Abimelech Abi Melech*
and the *men masters* of Shechem;
and the *men masters* of Shechem
dealt *treacherously covertly* with *Abimelech Abi Melech*:
24 That the *cruelty violence* done
to the *threescore and ten seventy* sons
of *Jerubbaal Yerub Baal* might come,
and their blood
be *laid set* upon *Abimelech Abi Melech* their brother,
which *slew slaughtered* them;
and upon the *men masters* of Shechem,
which *aided him strengthened his hands*
in the *killing slaughter* of his brethren.
25 And the *men masters* of Shechem
set *liers in wait lurkers* for him
in the top of the mountains,
and they *robbed stripped* all
that *came passed* along that way by them:
and it was told *Abimelech Abi Melech*.
26 And Gaal the son of Ebed came with his brethren,
and *went passed* over to Shechem:
and the *men masters* of Shechem
put their confidence confided in him.
27 And they went out into the fields,
and *gathered clipped* their vineyards,
and *trod the grapes treaded*,
and *made merry worked halals*,
and went into the house of their *god elohim*,
and did eat and drink,
and *cursed Abimelech belittled Abi Melech*.
28 And Gaal the son of Ebed said,

JUDGES 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to go wave over the trees?

14 Then all the trees say to the thorn,
Come and reign over us.

15 And the thorn says to the trees,
If in truth you anoint me sovereign over you,
then seek refuge in my shadow:
and if not, fire comes from the thorn
and consumes the cedars of Lebanon.

16 And now, if you work truly and integriously
and have Abi Melech to reign;
and if you work good with Yerub Baal and his house;
and work to him
according to the dealing of his hands;
17 — for my father fought for you
and cast his soul from him
and rescued you from the hand of Midyaniy:
18 and you rise against the house of my father this day
and slaughter his sons
— seventy men, on one stone,
and have Abi Melech the son of his maid
to reign over the masters of Shechem
— because he is your brother;
19 if you then work truly and integriously
with Yerub Baal and with his house this day,
then cheer in Abi Melech and he cheers in you:
20 and if not,
fire comes from Abi Melech
to consume the masters of Shechem
and the house of Millo;
and fire comes from the masters of Shechem
and from the house of Millo
and consumes Abi Melech.
21 — and Yah Tham flees
— flees and goes to Beer and settles there
from the face of Abi Melech his brother.

THE FALL OF ABI MELECH AND SHECHEM

22 Abi Melech dominates over Yisra El three years;
23 and Elohim sends an evil spirit
between Abi Melech and the masters of Shechem;
and the masters of Shechem
deal covertly with Abi Melech:
24 so that the violence
to the seventy sons of Yerub Baal comes;
and their blood is set on Abi Melech their brother
who slaughtered them;
and on the masters of Shechem
who strengthened his hands
in the slaughter of his brothers.

25 And the masters of Shechem set lurkers for him
in the top of the mountains;
and they strip all who pass along by their way:
and Abi Melech is told:
26 and Gaal the son of Ebed comes with his brothers
and passes over to Shechem:
and the masters of Shechem confide in him:
27 and they go to the fields
and clip their vineyard and tread and work halals;
and go into the house of their elohim to eat and drink;
and belittle Abi Melech.

28 And Gaal the son of Ebed says,

JUDGES 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Who is *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**,
and who is Shechem, that we should serve him?
is not he the son of *Jerubbaal* **Yerub Baal**?
and Zebul his *officer* **overseer**?
serve the men of Hamor the father of Shechem:
for why should we serve him?
29 *And would to God* **O that Elohim give**
that this people were under my hand!
then *would* **should** I
remove *Abimelech* **turn aside** **Abi Melech**.
And he said to *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**,
30 *Increase thine army* **Greaten thy host**, and *come out* **go**.
And when Zebul the *ruler* **governor** of the city
heard the words of Gaal the son of Ebed,
his *anger* **wrath** was kindled.
31 And he sent *messengers* **angels**
unto *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**
privily **deceitfully/to Tormah**, saying, Behold,
Gaal the son of Ebed and his brethren
be come to Shechem; and, behold,
they *fortify* **besiege** the city against thee.
32 Now therefore *up* **arise** by night,
thou and the people that is with thee,
and *lie in wait* **lurk** in the field:
33 And it shall be, that in the morning,
as soon as the sun *is up* **riseth**, thou shalt *rise* **start** early,
and *set upon* **spread over** the city: and, behold,
when he and the people that is with him
come out **go** against thee,
then mayest thou *do* **work** to them
as thou shalt find occasion.
34 And *Abimelech* **Abi Melech** rose up,
and all the people that were with him, by night,
and they *laid wait* **lurked** against Shechem
in four *companies* **heads**.
35 And Gaal the son of Ebed went out,
and stood in the *entering* **opening**
of the *gate* **portal** of the city:
and *Abimelech* **Abi Melech** rose up,
and the people that were with him,
from *lying in wait* **lurking**.
36 And when Gaal saw the people, he said to Zebul,
Behold, *there come* people **descend down**
from the top of the mountains.
And Zebul said unto him,
Thou seest the shadow of the mountains
as if they were men.
37 And Gaal *spake* **worded** again, and said,
See *there come* people **descend down**
by the *middle* **summit** of the land,
and *another company* **one head** come *along* **journeying**
by the *plain* **mighty oak** of Meonenim.
38 Then said Zebul unto him,
Where is now thy mouth, wherewith thou saidst,
Who is *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**, that we should serve him?
is not this the people that thou hast *despised* **spurned**?
go out, I *pray* **beseech** now, and fight with them.
39 And Gaal went out *before* **from the face**
of the men **masters** of Shechem,
and fought with *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**.
40 And *Abimelech* **chased** **Abi Melech** **pursued** him,
and he fled *before him* **from his face**,
and many were *overthrown* **fallen** and *wounded* **pierced**,
even unto the *entering* **opening of the gate** **portal**.
41 And *Abimelech* **dwelt** **Abi Melech** **settled** at Arumah:
and Zebul *thrust* **drove out** Gaal and his brethren,
that they should not *dwell* **settle** in Shechem.
42 And **so be** it *came to pass*, on the morrow,
that the people went out into the field;
and they told *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**.
43 And he took the people,
and divided them into three *companies* **heads**,
and *laid wait* **lurked** in the field, and *looked* **saw**,
and, behold,
the people were *come* **gone forth** out of the city;
and he rose up against them, and smote them.
44 And *Abimelech* **Abi Melech**,
and the *company* **head** that was with him,

JUDGES 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Who is Abi Melech and who is Shechem
that we serve him?
Is not he the son of Yerub Baal?
And Zebul his overseer?
Serve the men of Hamor the father of Shechem!
And why serve him?
29 O that Elohim give this people under my hand!
then I turn Abi Melech aside.
And he says to Abi Melech,
Greaten your host and go.
30 And when Zebul the governor of the city
hears the words of Gaal the son of Ebed,
his wrath kindles:
31 and he sends angels to Abi Melech
— deceitfully/to Tormah, saying,
Behold, Gaal the son of Ebed and his brothers
come to Shechem;
and behold, they besiege the city against you.
32 Now rise by night — you and the people with you
and lurk in the field:
33 and so be it, in the morning,
as soon as the sun rises,
start early and spread over the city:
and behold,
he and the people with him come against you,
and you then work to them as you find occasion.
34 And Abi Melech and all the people with him
rise by night and lurk against Shechem in four heads:
35 and Gaal the son of Ebed comes
and stands in the opening of the portal of the city:
and Abi Melech and the people with him
rise up from lurking.
36 And Gaal sees the people,
and he says to Zebul, Behold,
people descend from the top of the mountains.
And Zebul says to him,
You see the shadow of the mountains as men.
37 And Gaal words again, and says,
See! People descend by the summit of the land
and one head comes
journeying by the mighty oak of Meonenim.
38 And Zebul says to him,
Where is now your mouth, wherewith you said,
Who is Abi Melech — to serve him?
Is not this the people you spurned?
Go out now, I beseech, and fight them.
39 And Gaal goes from the face
of the masters of Shechem
and fights Abi Melech:
40 and Abi Melech pursues him as he flees his face;
and many fall pierced at the opening of the portal.
41 — and Abi Melech settles at Arumah:
and Zebul drives out Gaal and his brothers
so that they settle not in Shechem.
42 And so be it, on the morrow,
the people go into the field and tell Abi Melech:
43 and he takes the people
and divides them into three heads
and lurks in the field and sees;
and behold, the people come from the city;
and he rises against them and smites them.
44 And Abi Melech and the heads with him

JUDGES 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

rushed **spread** forward,
and stood in the *entering opening*
of the *gate portal* of the city:
and the two *other companies heads*
ran upon **stripped** all *the people* that were in the fields,
and *slew smote* them.
45 And *Abimelech Abi Melech*
fought against the city all that day;
and he *took captured* the city,
and *slew slaughtered* the people that was therein,
and *beat pulled* down the city,
and *sowed seeded* it with salt.
46 And when all the *men masters*
of the tower of Shechem heard that,
they entered into *an hold a tower*
of the *house of the god Beth El* Berith.
47 And it was told *Abimelech Abi Melech*,
that all the *men masters* of the tower of Shechem
were gathered together.
48 And *Abimelech Abi Melech*
gat ascended him up to mount *Zalmon Salmon*,
he and all the people that were with him;
and *Abimelech Abi Melech* took an ax in his hand,
and cut down a *bough branch* from the trees,
and *took lifted* it, and *laid set* it on his shoulder,
and said unto the people that were with him,
What ye have seen me *do work*,
make haste hasten, and *do work* as I have *done*.
49 And all the people likewise
cut down every man his *bough branch*,
and *followed Abimelech went after Abi Melech*,
and *put set* them to the *hold tower*,
and *set burnt* the *hold tower* on fire upon them;
so that all the men
of the tower of Shechem died also,
about a thousand men and women.
50 Then went *Abimelech Abi Melech* to *Thebez Tebes*,
and encamped against *Thebez Tebes*,
and *took captured* it.
51 But there was a *strong tower tower of strength*
within the city,
and thither fled all the men and women,
and all *they the masters* of the city, and shut it to them,
and *gat ascended* them up to the *top roof* of the tower.
52 And *Abimelech Abi Melech* came unto the tower,
and fought against it,
and *went hard came near*
unto the *door portal* of the tower to burn it with fire.
53 And a *certain one* woman
cast a *piece slice* of a *an upper* millstone
upon *Abimelech's Abi Melech's* head,
and all to *brake crush* his *skull cranium*.
54 Then he called *hastily quickly* unto the *young man lad*
his *armourbearer instrument bearer*, and said unto him,
Draw thy sword, and *slay deathify* me,
that men say not of me, A women *slew slaughtered* him.
And his *young man thrust lad stabbed* him through,
and he died.
55 And when the men of *Israel Yisra El*
saw that *Abimelech was dead Abi Melech had died*,
they *departed went* every man unto his place.
56 Thus *God rendered Elohim turned back*
the *wickedness evil* of *Abimelech Abi Melech*,
which he *did worked* unto his father,
in *slaying slaughtering* his seventy brethren:
57 And all the evil of the men of Shechem
did God render Elohim turned back upon their heads:
and upon them came the *curse abasement*
of *Jotham Yah Tham* the son of *Jerubbaal Yerub Baal*.

JUDGE TOLA

10

And after *Abimelech Abi Melech*
there arose to *defend Israel save Yisra El*
Tola the son of Puah, the son of Dodo,
a man of *Issachar Yissachar*;
and he *dwelt settled* in Shamir
in mount *Ephraim Ephrayim*.

2 And he judged *Israel Yisra El* twenty and three years,
and died, and was *buried entombed* in Shamir.

JUDGES 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

spread forward
and stand in the opening of the portal of the city:
and the two heads strip all in the fields
and smite them:
45 and Abi Melech fights against the city all that day;
and captures the city
and slaughters the people therein
and pulls down the city and seeds it with salt.
46 And all the masters of the tower of Shechem hear
and they enter a tower of Beth El Berith:
47 and they tell Abi Melech
that all the masters of the tower of Shechem
gather together.
48 And Abi Melech ascends to mount Salmon
— he and all the people with him;
and Abi Melech takes an ax in his hand
and cuts down a branch from the trees
and lifts it and sets it on his shoulder;
and says to the people with him,
What you see me work, hasten and work as I.
49 And all the people likewise
— each man cuts down his branch
and goes after Abi Melech
and sets it to the tower
to burn the tower on fire on them;
so that all the men of the tower of Shechem also die
— about a thousand men and women.
50 Then Abi Melech goes to Tebes
and encamps against Tebes and captures it:
51 and there is a strong tower within the city
where all the men and women
and all the masters of the city flee
and shut it to them;
and they ascend to the roof of the tower.
52 And Abi Melech comes to the tower
and fights against it;
and comes near the portal of the tower
to burn it with fire.
53 And one woman casts a slice of an upper millstone
on Abi Melech's head and crushes his cranium.
54 And he quickly calls to his instrument bearer lad
and says to him,
Draw your sword and deathify me
— that men not say of me, A women slaughtered him.
And his lad stabs him through and he dies:
55 and the men of Yisra El see that Abi Melech dies
and each man goes to his place.
56 Thus Elohim turns back the evil
Abi Melech worked to his father
in slaughtering his seventy brothers:
57 and Elohim turns all the evil
of the men of Shechem back on their heads:
and on them comes the abasement
of Yah Tham the son of Yerub Baal.
10 And after Abi Melech,
Tola the son of Puah the son of Dodo
a man of Yissachar
rises to save Yisra El;
and he settles in Shamir in mount Ephrayim;
and he judges Yisra El twenty — three years:
and dies and is entombed in Shamir.
2

JUDGE TOLA

JUDGES 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

JUDGE YAIR

3 And after him arose *Jair Yair*, a *Gileadite Giladiy*,
and judged *Israel Yisra El* twenty and two years.

4 And he had thirty sons that rode on thirty ass colts,
and they had thirty cities,
which are called *Havothjair Havoth Yair* unto this day,
which are in the land of *Gilead Gilad*.

5 And *Jair Yair* died,
and was buried entombed in *Camon Qamon*.

YISRA EL ABANDONS YAH VEH

6 And the children sons of *Israel Yisra El*
did added to work evil again
in the sight eyes of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and served Baalim, and Ashtaroth,
and the gods *elohim* of *Syria Aram*,
and the gods *elohim* of *Zidon Sidon*,
and the gods *elohim* of Moab,
and the gods *elohim* of the children sons of Ammon,
and the gods *elohim* of the *Philistines Peleshethiy*,
and forsook the *LORD Yah Veh*, and served not him.

7 And the anger wrath of the *LORD Yah Veh*
was hot kindled against *Israel Yisra El*,
and he sold them
into the hands of the *Philistines Peleshethiy*,
and into the hands of the children sons of Ammon.

8 And that year
they vexed harassed and oppressed crushed
the children sons of *Israel Yisra El*:
eighteen years, all the children sons of *Israel Yisra El*
that were on the other side *Jordan Yarden*
in the land of the *Amorites Emoriy*,
which is in *Gilead Gilad*.

9 Moreover the children sons of Ammon
passed over *Jordan Yarden*
to fight also against *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and against *Benjamin Ben Yamin*,
and against the house of *Ephraim Ephrayim*;
so that *Israel Yisra El*
was sore distressed mightily depressed.

10 And the children sons of *Israel Yisra El*
cried unto the *LORD Yah Veh*, saying,
We have sinned against thee,
both because we have forsaken our *God Elohim*,
and also served Baalim.

11 And the *LORD Yah Veh*
said unto the children sons of *Israel Yisra El*,
Did not I deliver you from the *Egyptians Misrayim*,
and from the *Amorites Emoriy*,
from the children sons of Ammon,
and from the *Philistines Peleshethiy*?

12 The *Zidonians Sidoniy* also,
and the *Amalekites Amaleq*,
and the *Maonites Maon*, did oppress you;
and ye cried to me,
and I delivered saved you out of their hand.

13 Yet ye have forsaken me,
and served other gods *elohim*:
wherefore I will deliver you no more add not to save you.

14 Go and cry unto the gods *elohim*
which ye have chosen;
let them deliver save you in the time of your tribulation.

15 And the children sons of *Israel Yisra El*
said unto the *LORD Yah Veh*, We have sinned:
do work thou unto us
whatsoever seemeth good unto thee in thine eyes;
deliver rescue us only, we pray beseech thee, this day.

16 And they put away turned aside
the strange gods *elohim of strangers* from among them,
and served the *LORD Yah Veh*:
and his soul was grieved shortened
for the misery toil of *Israel Yisra El*.

JUDGE YIPHTACH

17 Then the children sons of Ammon
were gathered together cried out,
and encamped in *Gilead Gilad*.
And the children sons of *Israel Yisra El*
assembled themselves together gathered,
and encamped in *Mizpeh Mispeh*.

JUDGES 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

JUDGE YAIR

3 And after him Yair a Giladiy rises
and judges Yisra El twenty—two years;
and he has thirty sons who ride on thirty colts;
and they have thirty cities in the land of Gilad
called Havoth Yair to this day:

5 and Yair dies and is entombed in Qamon.

YISRA EL ABANDONS YAH VEH

6 And the sons of Yisra El
add to work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh
and serve Baalim and Ashtaroth
and the elohim of Aram
and the elohim of Sidon
and the elohim of Moab
and the elohim of the sons of Ammon
and the elohim of the Peleshethiy
and forsake Yah Veh and serve him not.

7 And Yah Veh kindles his wrath against Yisra El;
and he sells them into the hands of the Peleshethiy
and into the hands of the sons of Ammon:

8 and that year
they harass and crush the sons of Yisra El
eighteen years
— all the sons of Yisra El beyond Yarden
in the land of the Emoriy in Gilad:
and the sons of Ammon pass over Yarden
to fight against Yah Hudah and against Ben Yamin
and against the house of Ephrayim;
so that Yisra El is mightily depressed.

10 And the sons of Yisra El cry to Yah Veh, saying,
We sin against you
because we forsake our Elohim and serve Baalim.

11 And Yah Veh says to the sons of Yisra El,
By the Misrayim and by the Emoriy
by the sons of Ammon and by the Peleshethiy
and the Sidoniy and Amaleq and Maon
you were oppressed;
and you cried to me and I saved you from their hand:

13 and you — you forsake me and serve other elohim:
so I add not to save you:

14 go and cry to the elohim you chose;
have them save you in the time of your tribulation.

15 And the sons of Yisra El say to Yah Veh,
We sin!
Work to us whatever seems good in your eyes;
only, rescue us, we beseech you, this day.
— and they turn aside the elohim of strangers
from among them
and serve Yah Veh:
and his soul shortens for the toil of Yisra El.

JUDGE YIPHTACH

17 And the sons of Ammon cry out
and encamp in Gilad;
and the sons of Yisra El gather
and encamp in Mizpeh:

JUDGES 10, 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 And the people and **princes governors** of Gilead **Gilad** said *one man to another friend*,
What man *is he that will shall* begin to fight against the *children sons* of Ammon?
he shall be head
over all the *inhabitants settlers* of Gilead **Gilad**.

11 Now **Jephthah Yiphtach** the *Gileadite Giladiy* was a mighty *man* of valour,
and he was the son of an *harlot a whore*:
and Gilead *begat Jephthah Gilad birthed Yiphtach*.

2 And *Gilead's wife bare Gilad's woman birthed* him sons;
and his *wife's woman's* sons grew up,
and they *thrust out Jephthah expelled Yiphtach*,
and said unto him,
Thou shalt not inherit in our father's house;
for thou art the son of a *strange another* woman.

3 Then **Jephthah Yiphtach** fled from *the face* of his brethren,
and *dwelt settled* in the land of Tob:
and there were gathered vain men to **Jephthah Yiphtach**,
and went out with him.

4 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
in process of time after days,
that the *children sons* of Ammon *made war fought* against Israel **Yisra El**.

5 And **so be** it was so,
that when the *children sons* of Ammon *made war fought* against Israel **Yisra El**,
the elders of Gilead **Gilad** went to *fetch Jephthah take Yiphtach*
out of the land of Tob:

6 And they said unto **Jephthah Yiphtach**,
Come, and be our *captain commander*,
that we may fight with the *children sons* of Ammon.

7 And **Jephthah Yiphtach** said unto the elders of Gilead **Gilad**,
Did not ye hate me,
and expel me out of my father's house?
and why are ye come unto me now
when ye *are in distress tribulate*?

8 And the elders of Gilead **Gilad** said unto **Jephthah Yiphtach**,
Therefore we turn *again back* to thee now,
that thou mayest go with us,
and fight *against the children sons* of Ammon,
and be our head
over all the *inhabitants settlers* of Gilead **Gilad**.

9 And **Jephthah Yiphtach** said unto the elders of Gilead **Gilad**,
If ye *bring me home again turn me back*
to fight *against the children sons* of Ammon,
and the **LORD deliver Yah Veh give** them
before me at my face,
shall I be your head?

10 And the elders of Gilead **Gilad** said unto **Jephthah Yiphtach**,
The LORD be witness Yah Veh hearken between us,
if we *do work* not so according to thy words.

11 Then **Jephthah Yiphtach** went with the elders of Gilead **Gilad**,
and the people *made set* him
head and *captain commander* over them:
and **Jephthah uttered Yiphtach worded** all his words
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh
in Mizpeh **Mispeh**.

12 And **Jephthah Yiphtach** sent *messengers angels*
unto the *king sovereign* of the *children sons* of Ammon,
saying, What hast thou to do with me,
that thou art come against me to fight in my land?

13 And the *king sovereign* of the *children sons* of Ammon
answered said
unto the *messengers angels* of **Jephthah Yiphtach**,
Because Israel **Yisra El** took away my land,
when they *came up ascended* out of Egypt **Misrayim**,
from Arnon even unto **Jabbok Yabboq**,
and unto **Jordan Yarden**:
now therefore restore those *lands again*
peaceably in shalom.

JUDGES 10, 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 and man to friend,
the people and governors of Gilad say,
Whatever man begins to fight the sons of Ammon
becomes head over all the settlers of Gilad.

11 Now Yiphtach the Giladiy is mighty of valour
and he is the son of a whore:
and Gilad births Yiphtach;
and the woman of Gilad births him sons;
and the sons of his woman grow up
and expel Yiphtach;
and say to him,
You inherit not in the house of our father;
for you are the son of another woman.

3 And Yiphtach flees from the face of his brothers
and settles in the land of Tob:
and there vain men gather to Yiphtach
and go out with him.

4 And so be it, after days,
the sons of Ammon fight Yisra El:
and so be it,
the sons of Ammon fight Yisra El;
and the elders of Gilad
go to take Yiphtach from the land of Tob:
and they say to Yiphtach,
Come and be our commander
to fight the sons of Ammon.

7 And Yiphtach says to the elders of Gilad,
Did not you hate me
and expel me from the house of my father?
Why come to me now when you tribulate?

8 And the elders of Gilad say to Yiphtach,
So now, we turn back to you;
to go with us and fight the sons of Ammon:
and be our head over all the settlers of Gilad.

9 And Yiphtach says to the elders of Gilad,
If you turn me back to fight the sons of Ammon
and Yah Veh gives them at my face,
become I your head?

10 And the elders of Gilad say to Yiphtach,
Yah Veh hearken between us,
if we work not thus according to your word.

11 And Yiphtach goes with the elders of Gilad;
and the people set him their head and commander:
and Yiphtach words all his words
at the face of Yah Veh in Mispeh.

12 And Yiphtach sends angels
to the sovereign of the sons of Ammon,
saying, What have you to do with me,
that you are come to me to fight me in my land?

13 And the sovereign of the sons of Ammon
says to the angels of Yiphtach,
Because Yisra El took away my land,
when they ascended from Misrayim,
from Arnon to Yabboq and to Yarden:
now restore them in shalom.

JUDGES 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

JUDGE YIPHTACH DEFENDS THE HONOUR OF YISRA EL

14 And *Jephthah Yiphtach*
sent messengers again **added to send angels**
unto the *king sovereign* of the *children sons* of Ammon:
15 And said unto him, Thus saith *Jephthah Yiphtach*,
Israel Yisra El took not away the land of Moab,
nor the land of the *children sons* of Ammon:
16 But when *Israel Yisra El*
came up **ascended** from *Egypt Misrayim*,
and walked through the wilderness
unto the *Red Reed* sea, and came to *Kadesh Qadesh*;
17 Then *Israel Yisra El* sent *messengers angels*
unto the *king sovereign* of Edom, saying,
Let me, I *pray beseech* thee, pass through thy land:
but the *king sovereign* of Edom
would not **hearken hearkened not** thereto.
And in like manner
they sent unto the *king sovereign* of Moab:
but he would not **consent willed not**:
and *Israel abode Yisra El settled* in *Kadesh Qadesh*.
18 Then they went along through the wilderness,
and *compassed surrounded* the land of Edom,
and the land of Moab,
and came by the *east side rising of the sun*
of the land of Moab,
and *pitched encamped* on the other side of Arnon,
but came not within the border of Moab:
for Arnon was the border of Moab.
19 And *Israel Yisra El* sent *messengers angels*
unto *Sihon king Sichon sovereign* of the *Amorites Emoriy*,
the *king sovereign* of Heshbon;
and *Israel Yisra El* said unto him,
Let us pass, we *pray beseech* thee,
through thy land *into unto* my place.
20 But *Sihon Sichon* trusted not *Israel Yisra El*
to pass through his *coast border*:
but *Sihon Sichon* gathered all his people together,
and *pitched encamped* in *Jahaz Yahsah*,
and fought *against Israel Yisra El*.
21 And the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of *Israel Yisra El*
delivered Sihon gave Sichon and all his people
into the hand of *Israel Yisra El*, and they smote them:
so *Israel Yisra El* possessed
all the land of the *Amorites Emoriy*,
the *inhabitants settlers* of that *country land*.
22 And they possessed
all the *coasts borders* of the *Amorites Emoriy*,
from Arnon even unto *Jabbok Yabboq*,
and from the wilderness even unto *Jordan Yarden*.
23 So now the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of *Israel Yisra El*
hath dispossessed the *Amorites Emoriy*
from *before the face of* his people *Israel Yisra El*,
and shouldst thou possess it?
24 Wilt **Shalt** not thou possess that
which *Chemosh Kemosh* thy *god elohim*
giveth thee to possess?
So whomsoever the *LORD Yah Veh our God Elohim*
shall *drive out dispossess* from *before us our face*,
them *will shall* we possess.
25 And now art thou any *thing* better than *Balak Balaq*
the son of *Zippor Sippor*, *king sovereign* of Moab?
in striving, did he ever strive against *Israel Yisra El*,
or **in fighting**, did he ever fight against them,
26 While *Israel dwelt Yisra El settled*
in Heshbon and her *towns daughters*,
and in Aroer and her *towns daughters*,
and in all the cities
that be along by the *coasts hand* of Arnon,
three hundred years?
why therefore
did ye not *recover rescue* them within that time?
27 Wherefore I have not sinned against thee,
but thou *doest workest* me *wrong evil*
to *war fight* against me:
the *LORD Yah Veh* the Judge be judge this day
between the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
and **between** the *children sons* of Ammon.

JUDGES 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

JUDGE YIPHTACH DEFENDS THE HONOR OF YISRA EL

14 And Yiphtach adds to send angels
to the sovereign of the sons of Ammon:
15 and says to him, Thus says Yiphtach,
Yisra El took neither the land of Moab
nor the land of the sons of Ammon:
16 for in ascending from Misrayim
Yisra El walked through the wilderness
to the Reed sea and came to Qadesh.
17 And Yisra El sent angels to the sovereign of Edom,
saying, Let me, I beseech you,
pass through your land?
And the sovereign of Edom hearkened not thereto:
and also the sovereign of Moab;
and he willed not:
and Yisra El settled in Qadesh.
18 And he went through the wilderness
and surrounded the land of Edom
and the land of Moab
and came by the rising of the sun of the land of Moab
and encamped beyond Arnon;
but came not within the border of Moab:
for Arnon is the border of Moab.
19 And Yisra El sent angels
to Sichon sovereign of the Emoriy
the sovereign of Heshbon;
and Yisra El said to him,
Let us pass, we beseech you,
through your land to my place?
20 And Sichon trusted not Yisra El
to pass through his border:
but Sichon gathered all his people together
and encamped in Yahsah and fought Yisra El:
21 and Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
gave Sichon and all his people
into the hand of Yisra El; and they smote them:
so Yisra El possesses
all the land of the Emoriy — the settlers of that land.
22 And they possess all the borders of the Emoriy
from Arnon to Yabboq
and from the wilderness to Yarden.
23 And now Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
dispossesses the Emoriy
from the face of his people Yisra El
— that you possess it?
24 Possess you not what Kemosh your elohim
gave you to possess?
So whomever Yah Veh our Elohim
dispossesses from our face, them we possess.
25 And now are you any better than Balaq
the son of Sippor sovereign of Moab?
in striving, strives he against Yisra El?
or in fighting, fights he against them
— while Yisra El settles
in Heshbon and her daughters
and in Aroer and her daughters
and in all the cities along by the hand of Arnon
for three hundred years?
Why rescue you not them within that time?
27 I — I sin not against you;
but you work me evil to fight me:
Yah Veh the Judge judges this day
between the sons of Yisra El
and between the sons of Ammon.

JUDGES 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

28 Howbeit the king sovereign
of the children sons of Ammon
hearkened not unto the words of Jephthah Yiphtach
which he sent him.

29 Then the Spirit of the LORD Yah Veh
came upon Jephthah Yiphtach,
and he passed over Gilead Gilad,
and Manasseh Menash Sheh,
and passed over Mizpeh Mispeh of Gilead Gilad,
and from Mizpeh Mispeh of Gilead Gilad
he passed over unto the children sons of Ammon.

THE VOW OF JUDGE YIPHTACH

30 And Jephthah Yiphtach
vowed a vow unto the LORD Yah Veh, and said,
If in giving, thou shalt without fail deliver give
the children sons of Ammon into mine hands,
Then it shall be,
that whatsoever cometh forth which goeth
of the doors of my house to meet me,
when I return in peace shalom
from the children sons of Ammon,
shall surely be the LORD'S Yah Veh's,
and I will offer shall holocaust it up
for a burnt offering holocaust.

32 So Jephthah Yiphtach passed over
unto the children sons of Ammon to fight against them;
and the LORD Yah Veh
delivered gave them into his hands.

33 And he smote them from Aroer,
even till thou come to Minnith, even twenty cities,
and unto the plain of the vineyards Abel Keramin,
with a very mighty great slaughter stroke.
Thus the children sons of Ammon were subdued
before at the face of the children sons of Israel Yisra El.

THE DAUGHTER OF JUDGE YIPHTACH

34 And Jephthah Yiphtach came to Mizpeh Mispeh
unto his house, and, behold,
his daughter came out went to meet him
with timbrels tambourines and with round dances:
and she was his only child;
beside her he had neither son nor daughter.

35 And so be it came to pass, when he saw her,
that he rent ripped his clothes, and said,
Alas Aha, my daughter!
in kneeling,
thou hast brought me very low caused me to kneel,
and thou art one of them that trouble me:
for I have opened gaped my mouth unto the LORD Yah Veh,
and I cannot go turn back.

36 And she said unto him, My father,
if thou hast opened gaped thy mouth
unto the LORD Yah Veh,
do work to me according to that
which hath proceeded went out of thy mouth;
forasmuch as the LORD since Yah Veh
hath taken worked vengeance for thee of thine enemies,
even of the children sons of Ammon.

37 And she said unto her father,
Let this thing word be done worked for me:
let release me alone two months,
that I may go up ascend and down descend
upon the mountains,
and bewail weep over my virginity,
I and my fellows friends.

38 And he said, Go.
And he sent her away for two months:
and she went with her companions friends,
and bewailed wept over her virginity upon the mountains.

39 And so be it came to pass, at the end of two months,
that she returned unto her father,
who did worked with her
according to his vow which he had vowed:
and she knew no man.

40 And it was a custom statute in Israel Yisra El,
That the daughters of Israel Yisra El
went yearly from days by days
to lament celebrate the daughter of Jephthah Yiphtach
the Gileadite Giladiy four days in a year.

JUDGES 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

28 The sovereign of the sons of Ammon
hearkens not to the words Yiphtach sends him:
29 and the Spirit of Yah Veh comes on Yiphtach:
and he passes over Gilad and Menash Sheh
and passes over Mispeh of Gilad;
and from Mispeh of Gilad
he passes over the sons of Ammon.

THE VOW OF JUDGE YIPHTACH

30 And Yiphtach vows a vow to Yah Veh
and says, If in giving
you give the sons of Ammon into my hands,
then so be it,
whatever comes from the doors of my house
to meet me
when I return in shalom from the sons of Ammon
becomes to Yah Veh;
and I holocaust it for a holocaust.

32 So Yiphtach passes over
to the sons of Ammon to fight them;
and Yah Veh gives them into his hands:
33 he smites them from Aroer
until you come to Minnith — twenty cities
and to Abel Keramin
with a mighty great stroke.
Thus he subdues the sons of Ammon
at the face of the sons of Yisra El.

THE DAUGHTER OF JUDGE YIPHTACH

34 And Yiphtach comes to his house in Mispeh;
and behold, his daughter comes to meet him
with tambourines and with round dances:
and she is his only, child;
beside her he has neither son nor daughter:
and so be it, when he sees her,
he rips his clothes and says,
Aha, my daughter! In kneeling, I kneel
and you become the one for whom I kneel:
for I gaped my mouth to Yah Veh
and I cannot turn back.

36 And she says to him, My father,
you gaped your mouth to Yah Veh:
work to me what comes from your mouth;
since Yah Veh worked vengeance for you
on your enemies the sons of Ammon.

37 And she says to her father,
Work this word for me:
Release me two months,
to ascend and descend on the mountains
and weep over my virginity
— I and my friends.

38 And he says, Go.
— and he sends her away for two months:
and she goes with her friends
and weeps over her virginity on the mountains.

39 And so be it, at the end of two months,
she returns to her father,
who worked with her the vow he vowed:
and she knew not a man.

40 And it is a statute in Yisra El,
that the daughters of Yisra El
come days by days
to celebrate the daughter of Yiphtach the Giladiy
four days a year.

JUDGES 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE EPHRAYIM FEEL SLIGHTED

- 12 And the men of Ephraim Ephrayim gathered themselves together were summoned, and went passed over northward, and said unto Jephthah Yiphtach, Wherefore passedst thou over to fight against the children sons of Ammon, and didst not call us to go with thee? we will shall burn thine house upon thee with fire.
- 2 And Jephthah Yiphtach said unto them, I and my people were at great men of mighty strife with the children sons of Ammon; and when I called cried to you, ye delivered saved me not out of their hands.
- 3 And when I saw that ye delivered saved me not, I put set my life soul in my hands palms, and passed over against the children sons of Ammon, and the LORD Yah Veh delivered gave them into my hand: wherefore then are ye come up ascended unto me this day, to fight against me?
- JUDGE YIPHTACH FIGHTS WITH EPHRAYIM
- 4 Then Jephthah Yiphtach gathered together all the men of Gilead Gilad, and fought with Ephraim Ephrayim: and the men of Gilead Gilad smote Ephraim Ephrayim, because they said, ye Gileadites Giladiy are fugitives escapees of Ephraim Ephrayim among the Ephraimites Ephrayimiy, and among the Manassites Menash Shiy.
- 5 And the Gileadites Giladiy took captured the passages of Jordan Yarden before the Ephraimites Ephrayimiy: and so be it was so, that when those Ephraimites Ephrayimiy which were escaped escapees said, Let me go pass over; that the men of Gilead Gilad said unto him, Art thou an Ephraimite Ephrayim? If he said, Nay;
- 6 Then said they unto him, Say now Shibboleth: and he said Sibboleth: for he could not frame prepare to pronounce it word right. Then they took held him, and slew slaughtered him at the passages of Jordan Yarden: and there fell at that time of the Ephraimites Ephrayimiy forty and two thousand.
- JUDGE YIPHTACH
- 7 And Jephthah Yiphtach judged Israel Yisra El six years. Then died Jephthah Yiphtach the Gileadite Giladiy, and was buried entombed in one of the cities of Gilead Gilad.
- JUDGE IBSAN
- 8 And after him Ibsan of Bethlehem Beth Lechem judged Israel Yisra El.
- 9 And he had thirty sons, and thirty daughters, whom he sent abroad, and took in thirty daughters from abroad for his sons. And he judged Israel Yisra El seven years.
- 10 Then died Ibsan Ibsan, and was buried entombed at Bethlehem Beth Lechem.
- JUDGE ELON
- 11 And after him Elon, a Zebulonite Zebuluniy, judged Israel Yisra El; and he judged Israel Yisra El ten years. And Elon the Zebulonite Zebuluniy died, and was buried entombed in Aijalon Ayalon in the country land of Zebulun.
- JUDGE ABDON
- 13 And after him Abdon the son of Hillel, a Pirathonite Pirathoniy, judged Israel Yisra El.
- 14 And he had forty sons and thirty nephews sons' sons, that rode on threescore and ten ass seventy colts: and he judged Israel Yisra El eight years.
- 15 And Abdon the son of Hillel the Pirathonite Pirathoniy died, and was buried entombed in Pirathon in the land of Ephraim Ephrayim, in the mount of the Amalekites Amaleqiy.

JUDGES 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE EPHRAYIM FEEL SLIGHTED

- 12 And they summon the men of Ephrayim; and they pass over northward and say to Yiphtach, Why pass you over to fight the sons of Ammon and call not us to go with you? We burn your house on you with fire!
- 2 And Yiphtach says to them, I became a man of mighty strife — I and my people with the sons of Ammon; and when I cried to you, you saved me not from their hands; and when I saw you saved me not, I set my soul in my palms and passed over against the sons of Ammon; and Yah Veh gives them into my hand. Why then ascend you to me this day, to fight me?
- JUDGE YIPHTACH FIGHTS EPHRAYIM
- 4 Then Yiphtach gathers all the men of Gilad and fights Ephrayim: and the men of Gilad smite Ephrayim, because they say, You Giladiy are escapees of Ephrayim among the Ephrayimiy and among the Menash Shiy.
- 5 And the Giladiy capture the passages of Yarden in front of the Ephrayimiy: and so be it, when those Ephrayimiy escapees say, Let me pass over! that the men of Gilad say to him, Are you an Ephrayim? If he says, No!
- 6 then they say to him, Say now Shibboleth: and he says Sibboleth: for he prepares not to word right: and they hold him and slaughter him at the passages of Yarden: and there falls at that time of the Ephrayimiy forty — two thousand.
- JUDGE YIPHTACH
- 7 And Yiphtach judges Yisra El six years; and Yiphtach the Giladiy dies and is entombed in the cities of Gilad.
- JUDGE IBSAN
- 8 And after him, Ibsan of Beth Lechem judges Yisra El: And he has thirty sons and thirty daughters he sends abroad; and takes in thirty daughters from abroad for his sons: and he judges Yisra El seven years: and Ibsan dies and is entombed at Beth Lechem.
- JUDGE ELON
- 11 And after him, Elon a Zebuluniy judges Yisra El; and he judges Yisra El ten years: and Elon the Zebuluniy dies and is entombed in Ayalon in the land of Zebulun.
- JUDGE ABDON
- 13 And after him, Abdon the son of Hillel, a Pirathoniy, judges Yisra El: and he has forty sons and thirty sons of sons who ride on seventy colts: and he judges Yisra El eight years: and Abdon the son of Hillel the Pirathoniy dies and is entombed in Pirathon in the land of Ephrayim in the mount of the Amaleqiy.

JUDGES 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SONS OF YISRA EL GIVEN OVER TO THE PELESHETHIY

13

And the *children* sons of Israel **Yisra El**
did **added to work** evil again
in the *sight* eyes of the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and the **LORD** delivered **Yah Veh** gave them
into the hand of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** forty years.

THE BIRTH OF SHIMSHON FORETOLD

2 And there was a *certain* **one** man of *Zorah* **Sorah**,
of the family of the *Danites* **Daniy**,
whose name was *Manoah* **Manoach**;
and his *wife* **woman** was *barren* **sterile**, and *bare* **birthed** not.

3 And the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**
appeared unto **was seen by** the woman, and said unto her,
Behold now, thou art *barren* **sterile**, and *bearest* **birthest** not:
but thou shalt conceive, and *bear* **birth** a son.

4 Now therefore *beware* **guard**, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
and drink not wine nor *strong drink* **intoxicants**,
and eat not any *unclean thing* **foulness**:

5 For, *lo* **behold**,
thou shalt conceive, and *bear* **birth** a son;
and no razor shall *come* **ascend** on his head:
for the *child* **lad** shall be a *Nazarite* **Separatist**
unto *God* **Elohim** from the *womb* **belly**:
and he shall begin to *deliver* **Israel** **save** *Yisra El*
out of the hand of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.

6 Then the woman came
and *told* **said to** her *husband* **man**, saying,
A man of *God* **Elohim** came unto me,
and his *countenance* **visage**
was like the *countenance* **visage**
of an angel of *God* **Elohim**,
very terrible **mighty awesome**:
but I asked him not whence he was,
neither told he me his name:

7 But he said unto me,
Behold, thou shalt conceive, and *bear* **birth** a son;
and now drink no wine nor *strong drink* **intoxicants**,
neither eat any *unclean thing* **foulness**:
for the *child* **lad** shall be a *Nazarite* **Separatist**
to *God* **Elohim** from the *womb* **belly**
to the day of his death.

8 Then *Manoah* **Manoach** intreated the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and said, O my *Lord* **Adonay**, let **I** **beseech**,
the man of *God* **Elohim** which thou didst send
come again unto us,
and *teach* **direct** us what we shall *do* **work**
unto the *child* **lad** that shall be *born* **birthed**.

9 And *God* **Elohim**
hearkened to the voice of *Manoah* **Manoach**;
and the angel of *God* **Elohim** came again unto the woman
as she *sat* **settled** in the field:
but *Manoah* **Manoach** her *husband* **man** was not with her.

10 And the woman made haste, and ran,
and *shewed* **told** her *husband* **man**, and said unto him,
Behold, the man *hath appeared unto* **was seen by** me,
that came unto me *the other* **that** day.

11 And *Manoah* **Manoach** arose,
and went after his *wife* **woman**,
and came to the man, and said unto him,
Art thou the man that *spakest* **wordest** unto the woman?
And he said, I am.

12 And *Manoah* **Manoach** said,
Now let **And so be** thy words *come* **pass**.
How shall we order the child,
and how shall we do unto him

13 **What is the judgment of the lad, and his work?**
And the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**
said unto *Manoah* **Manoach**,
Of all that I said unto the woman let her *beware* **guard**.
She may not eat of *any thing* **ought**
that *cometh* **goeth** of the vine,
neither let her drink wine or *strong drink* **intoxicants**,
nor eat any *unclean thing* **foulness**:

14 all that I *commanded* **misvahed** her let her *observe* **guard**.
15 And *Manoah* **Manoach**
said unto the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
I *pray* **beseech** thee, let us *detain* **restrain** thee,

JUDGES 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SONS OF YISRA EL GIVEN OVER TO THE PELESHETHIY

13

And the sons of Yisra El
add to work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh:
and Yah Veh gives them
into the hand of the Peleshethiy forty years.

THE BIRTH OF SHIMSHON FORETOLD

2 And so be it,
there is some man of Sorah of the family of Daniy
his name is Manoach;
and his woman is sterile and births not.

3 And the woman sees the angel of Yah Veh;
and he says to her, Behold now,
you are sterile and birth not:
but when you conceive, you birth a son.

4 Now guard, I beseech you,
and drink neither wine nor intoxicants
nor eat any foulness:
5 for, behold, you conceive and birth a son:
ascend no razor on his head.

— and from the belly
the lad becomes a Separatist to Elohim;
and he begins to save Yisra El
from the hand of the Peleshethiy.

6 Then the woman comes and says to her man,
saying, A man of Elohim came to me;
and his visage
is as the visage of an angel of Elohim
— mighty awesome:
but I neither ask him where he is from,
nor tells he me his name:

7 and he says to me,
Behold, you conceive and birth a son;
and now drink neither wine nor intoxicants
nor eat any foulness:
for the lad becomes a Separatist to Elohim
from the belly to the day of his death.

8 Then Manoach intreats Yah Veh, and says,
O my Adonay, I beseech,
have the man of Elohim whom you sent
come again to us;
and direct us what to work to the lad to be birthed.

9 And Elohim hearkens to the voice of Manoach;
and the angel of Elohim comes again to the woman
as she settles in the field;

10 and Manoach her man is not with her:
and the woman hastens and runs and tells her man
and says to him,
Behold, I see the man who came to me that day.

11 And Manoach rises and goes after his woman
and comes to the man, and says to him,
Are you the man who worded to the woman?

And he says, I am.

12 And Manoach says,
Now let your words become.
What is the judgment of the lad and his work?

13 And the angel of Yah Veh says to Manoach,
Of all I say to the woman, have her guard:
14 she neither eats aught of what goes from the vine
nor drinks wine nor intoxicants
nor eats any foulness:
all I misvah her, have her guard.

15 And Manoach says to the angel of Yah Veh,
I beseech you, that we restrain you,

JUDGES 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

until we shall have *made ready* worked a kid doe goat
for thee at thy face.

16 And the angel of the LORD Yah Veh
said unto Manoah Manoach,
Though thou *detain* restrain me,
I will shall not eat of thy bread:
and if thou wilt offer shalt work a burnt offering holocaust,
thou must offer it shalt holocaust unto the LORD Yah Veh.

For Manoah Manoach knew not
that he was an angel of the LORD Yah Veh.
17 And Manoah Manoach
said unto the angel of the LORD Yah Veh,
What is thy name,
that when thy sayings come to pass words become,
we may do thee honour?

18 And the angel of the LORD Yah Veh said unto him,
Why askest thou thus after my name,
seeing it is secret marvellous?

19 So Manoah Manoach
took a kid doe goat with a meat an offering,
and offered it holocausted upon a rock
unto the LORD Yah Veh:
and the angel did wonderously
and in working, he worked marvellously;
and Manoah Manoach and his wife woman
looked on saw.

20 For so be it came to pass,
when the flame went up ascended
toward heaven the heavens from off the sacrifice altar,
that the angel of the LORD Yah Veh
ascended in the flame of the sacrifice altar.
And Manoah Manoach and his wife woman
looked on it saw,
and fell on their faces to the ground earth.

21 But the angel of the LORD Yah Veh
did no more appear added not to be seen
to Manoah Manoach and to his wife woman.

Then Manoah Manoach knew
that he was an angel of the LORD Yah Veh.
22 And Manoah Manoach said unto his wife woman,
In dying, We shall surely die,
because we have seen God Elohim.

23 But his wife woman said unto him,
If the LORD Yah Veh were pleased delighted
to kill deathify us,
he would should not have received taken
a burnt offering holocaust and a meat an offering
at our hands,
neither would should he have shewed us us see
all these things,
nor would should as at this time
have told us such things as these us hear thus.

THE BIRTH OF SHIMSHON

24 And the woman bare birthed a son,
and called his name Samson Shimshon:
and the child lad grew,
and the LORD Yah Veh blessed him.
25 And the Spirit of the LORD Yah Veh
began to move agitate him at times in the camp of Dan
between Zorah Sorah and Eshtaol.

THE MARRIAGE OF SHIMSHON

14 And Samson Shimshon
went down descended to Timnath Timnah,
and saw a woman in Timnath Timnah
of the daughters of the Philistines Peleshethiy.
2 And he came up ascended,
and told his father and his mother, and said,
I have seen a woman in Timnath Timnah
of the daughters of the Philistines Peleshethiy:
now therefore get take her for me to wife woman.
3 Then his father and his mother said unto him,
Is there never not a woman
among the daughters of thy brethren,
or among all my people,
that thou goest to take a wife woman
of the uncircumcised Philistines Peleshethiy?
And Samson Shimshon said unto his father,

JUDGES 13, 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

until we work a doe goat at your face.

16 And the angel of Yah Veh says to Manoach,
Though you restrain me, I eat not of your bread:
and if you work a holocaust, holocaust it to Yah Veh.

17 Manoach knows not he is the angel of Yah Veh:
and Manoach says to the angel of Yah Veh,
What is your name,
so when your words become, we honor you?

18 And the angel of Yah Veh says to him,
Why ask you thus after my name,
seeing it is marvellous?

19 So Manoach
takes a doe goat with an offering
and holocausts it to Yah Veh on a rock:
and in working, he works marvellously;
and Manoach and his woman see:

20 and so be it,
the flame ascends from off the sacrifice altar
toward the heavens:
and the angel of Yah Veh
ascends in the flame of the sacrifice altar:
and Manoach and his woman see
and fall on their faces to the earth:

21 and the angel of Yah Veh
adds not to be seen by Manoach and his woman:
then Manoach knows he is the angel of Yah Veh.

22 And Manoach says to his woman,
In dying, we die; because we saw Elohim.

23 But his woman says to him,
If Yah Veh delights to deathify us,
he had neither taken a holocaust and an offering
at our hands,
nor had us see all these,
nor as at this time had us hear thus.

THE BIRTH OF SHIMSHON

24 And the woman births a son
and calls his name Shimshon:
and the lad grows and Yah Veh blesses him:
25 and at times,
the Spirit of Yah Veh begins to agitate him
in the camp of Dan between Sorah and Eshtaol.

THE MARRIAGE OF SHIMSHON

14 And Shimshon descends to Timnah;
and sees a woman in Timnah
of the daughters of the Peleshethiy:
2 and he ascends
and tells his father and his mother and says,
I saw a woman in Timnah
of the daughters of the Peleshethiy;
and now take her for me to woman.

3 And his father and his mother say to him,
Is there not a woman
among the daughters of your brothers
or among all my people
— that you go to take a woman
of the uncircumcised Peleshethiy?

And Shimshon says to his father,

JUDGES 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 Get **Take** her for me;
for she *pleaseth me well* **be straight in mine eyes.**
But his father and his mother
knew not that it was of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
that he sought an occasion
against the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy:**
for at that time the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
had *dominion* **reigned over Israel Yisra El.**
5 Then *went Samson down* **Shimshon descended,**
and his father and his mother, to *Timnath* **Timnah,**
and came to the vineyards of *Timnath* **Timnah:**
and, behold,
a *young lion* **whelp of the lionesses**
roared *against* **in meeting** him.
6 And the Spirit of the *LORD Yah Veh*
came mightily upon **prospered over** him,
and he *rent* **clove** him
as he *would have rent* **had cloven** a kid,
and he had *nothing* **naught** in his hand:
but he told not his father or his mother
what he had *done* **worked.**
7 And he *went down* **descended,**
and *talked* **worded** with the woman;
and she *pleased* **was straight**
Samson well **in the eyes of Shimshon.**
8 And after a *time* **many days** he returned to take her,
and he turned aside to see the *carcase* **ruin** of the lion:
and, behold,
there was a *swarm* **witness** of bees and honey
in the *carcase* **body** of the lion.
9 And he *took* **crumbled** thereof in his *hands* **palms,**
and *went in walking,* **walked** on eating,
and *came* **went** to his father and mother,
and he gave them, and they did eat:
but he told not them
that he had *taken* **crumbled** the honey
out of the *carcase* **body** of the lion.
10 So his father *went down* **descended** unto the woman:
and *Samson made* **Shimshon worked** there
a *feast* **banquet;**
for so used the *young men* **youths to do work.**
11 And **so be** it *came to pass,* when they saw him,
that they *brought* **took** thirty companions to be with him.
12 And *Samson* **Shimshon** said unto them,
I *will* **shall** now *put forth* **propound** a riddle unto you:
if **in telling,** ye can *certainly declare* **tell** me it
within the seven days of the *feast* **banquet,**
and find it out,
then I *will* **shall** give you thirty *sheets* **wraps**
and thirty change of *garments* **clothes:**
13 But if ye cannot *declare* **tell** it me,
then shall ye give me thirty *sheets* **wraps**
and thirty change of *garments* **clothes.**
And they said unto him,
14 *Put forth* **Propound** thy riddle, that we may hear it.
And he said unto them,
Out of the eater *came forth* **meat went food,**
and out of the strong *came forth* **went** sweetness.
And they could not in three days *expound* **tell** the riddle.
15 And **so be** it *came to pass,* on the seventh day,
that they said unto *Samson's wife* **Shimshon's woman,**
Entice thy *husband* **man,**
that he may *declare* **tell** unto us the riddle,
lest we burn thee and thy father's house with fire:
have ye called us to *take that we have* **dispossess us?**
is it not so?
16 And *Samson's wife* **Shimshon's woman**
wept *before* **in front of** him, and said,
Thou dost but hate me, and lovest me not:
thou hast *put forth* **propounded** a riddle
unto the *children* **sons** of my people,
and hast not told it me.
And he said unto her, Behold,
I have not told it my father nor my mother,
and shall I tell it thee?
17 And she wept *before* **in front of** him the seven days,
while their *feast* **lasted banquet became:**

JUDGES 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Take her for me; for she is straight in my eyes.
4 — and his father and his mother
know not that it is of Yah Veh
to seek an occasion against the Peleshethiy:
at that time the Peleshethiy reign over Yisra El.
5 Then Shimshon and his father and his mother
descend to Timnah
and come to the vineyards of Timnah:
and behold,
a whelp of the lionesses roars in to meet him:
6 and the Spirit of Yah Veh prospers over him;
and he cleaves him as he cleaves a kid
with naught in his hand:
but he tells not his father or his mother
what he worked.
7 — and he descends and words with the woman;
and she is straight in the eyes of Shimshon.
8 And after many days he returns to take her;
and he turns aside to see the ruin of the lion:
and behold,
9 a witness of bees and honey in the body of the lion:
and he crumbles thereof in his palms
and in walking, walks on eating
and goes to his father and mother;
and he gives them and they eat:
but he tells them not
that he crumbled the honey from the body of the lion.
10 And his father descends to the woman:
and Shimshon works a banquet there;
for thus the youths worked.
11 And so be it, when they see him,
they take thirty companions to be with him.
12 And Shimshon says to them,
I now propound a riddle to you:
if in telling,
you tell me within the seven days of the banquet
and find it out,
I give you thirty wraps and thirty changes of clothes:
13 and if you cannot tell me,
you give me thirty wraps and thirty change of clothes.
And they say to him,
Propound your riddle, so that we hear it.
14 And he says to them,
From the eater goes food
and from the strong goes sweetness.
— and they cannot in three days tell the riddle.
15 And so be it, on the seventh day,
they say to the woman of Shimshon,
Entice your man to tell to us the riddle;
lest we burn you
and the house of your father with fire.
Have you called for us to dispossess us?
Is it not so?
16 And the woman of Shimshon weeps in front of him
and says, You hate me and love me not:
you propound a riddle to the sons of my people
and tell me not.
And he says to her, Behold,
I tell neither my father nor my mother
— and tell I you?
17 And she weeps in front of him the seven days,
while their banquet becomes:

JUDGES 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and **so be** it came to pass, on the seventh day,
that he told her,
because she *lay sore upon* **oppressed** him:
and she told the riddle to the *children* **sons** of her people.
18 And the men of the city said unto him
on the seventh day before the sun went down,
What is sweeter than honey?
And what is stronger than a lion?
and he said unto them,
If ye had not plowed with my heifer,
ye had not found out my riddle.
19 And the Spirit of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came upon **prospered** over him,
and he went down **descended** to *Ashkelon* **Ashqelon**,
and slew **smote** thirty men of them,
and took their *spoil* **clothes**,
and gave *change of garments* **changes** unto them
which *expounded* **told** the riddle.
And his *anger* was **wrath** kindled,
and he went up **ascended** to his father's house.
20 But *Samson's wife* **Shimshon's woman**
was given to his companion,
whom he had *used as his friend* **befriended**.

SHIMSHON AVENGES THE PELESHETHIY

15

But **so be** it came to pass,
within a while after days later,
in the *time of* wheat harvest,
that *Samson* **Shimshon** visited his *wife* **woman**
with a *kid* **doe goat**; and he said,
I will **shall** go in to my *wife* **woman** into the chamber.
But her father *would not suffer* **allowed** him **not** to go in.
2 And her father said,
In saying, I *verily thought* **had said**
that **in hating**, thou hadst *utterly* hated her;
therefore I gave her to thy companion:
is not her younger sister *fairer* **better** than she?
take her, I *pray* **beseech** thee, instead of her.
3 And *Samson* **Shimshon** said concerning them,
Now **This time** shall I be more *blameless* **exonerated**
than the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
though I *do* **work** them a *displeasure* **evil**.
4 And *Samson* **Shimshon** went
and *caught* **captured** three hundred foxes,
and took *firebrands* **flambeaus**,
and *turned* **faced** them tail to tail,
and *put a firebrand* **set one flambeau** in the midst
between two tails.
5 And when he had
set **burnt** the *brands* **flambeaus** on fire,
he *let* **sent** them go **away**
into the *standing corn* **stalks** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and burnt up *both the shocks* **heaps**,
and also the *standing corn* **stalks**,
with the vineyards and olives.
6 Then the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** said,
Who hath *done* **worked** this?
And they *answered* **said**, *Samson* **Shimshon**,
the son in law of the *Timnite* **Timnahiy**,
because he had taken his *wife* **woman**,
and given her to his companion.
And the *Philistines* **came up** **Peleshethiy ascended**,
and burnt her and her father with fire.
7 And *Samson* **Shimshon** said unto them,
Though ye have *done* **worked** this,
yet *will* **shall** I be avenged of you,
and after that I *will* **shall** cease.
8 And he smote them *hip and thigh* **leg unto flank**
with a great *slaughter* **stroke**:
and he went down **descended**
and *dwelt* **settled** in the *top* **cleft** of the rock Etam.
9 Then the *Philistines* **went up** **Peleshethiy ascended**,
and *pitched* **encamped** in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and spread themselves in *Lehi* **Lechi**.
10 And the men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** said,
Why are ye *come up* **ascended** against us?
And they *answered* **said**,
To bind *Samson* **Shimshon** are we *come up* **ascended**,
to *do* **work** to him as he hath *done* **worked** to us.

JUDGES 14, 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and so be it, on the seventh day,
because she oppresses him, he tells her;
and she tells the riddle to the sons of her people.
18 And the men of the city say to him
on the seventh day ere the sun goes,
What is sweeter than honey?
And what is stronger than a lion?
And he says to them,
Unless you had plowed with my heifer,
you had not found out my riddle.
19 And the Spirit of Yah Veh prospers over him;
and he descends to Ashqelon
and smites thirty of their men;
and takes their clothes
and gives the changes to them who tell the riddle.
And he kindles his wrath
and he ascends to the house of his father.
20 But the woman of Shimshon
becomes to his companion whom he befriended.

SHIMSHON AVENGES THE PELESHETHIY

15

And so be it, days later in the wheat harvest,
Shimshon visits his woman with a doe goat;
and he says,
I go in to my woman into the chamber.
— and her father allows him not to go in.
2 And her father says,
In saying, I say; in hating, you hated her;
and I gave her to your companion!
Is not her younger sister better than she?
Take her, I beseech you, in her stead.
3 And Shimshon says concerning them,
This time I am exonerated more than the Peleshethiy
though I work them evil.
4 And Shimshon goes
and captures three hundred foxes;
and takes flambeaus and faces them tail to tail;
and sets one flambeau in the midst between two tails:
5 and he burns the flambeaus on fire
and sends them away
into the stalks of the Peleshethiy;
and burns the heaps and the stalks
with the vineyards and olives.
6 Then the Peleshethiy say, Who works this?
And they say,
Shimshon the son in law of the Timnahiy;
because he took his woman
and gave her to his companion.
— and the Peleshethiy ascend
and burn her and her father with fire.
7 And Shimshon says to them,
Though you work this,
yet I avenge you; and after that I cease.
— and he smites them leg to flank
with a great stroke:
and he descends
and settles in the cleft of the rock Etam.
9 And the Peleshethiy ascend
and encamp in Yah Hudah
and spread themselves in Lechi.
10 And the men of Yah Hudah say,
Why ascend you against us?
And they say, We ascend to bind Shimshon
— to work to him as he worked to us.

JUDGES 15, 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

11 Then three thousand men of Judah **Yah Hudah** went **descended** to the *top cleft* of the rock Etam, and said to *Samson* **Shimshon**,
Knowest thou not that the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** are *rulers* **sovereigns** over us?
what is this that thou hast *done* **worked** unto us?
And he said unto them,
As they *did* **worked** unto me,
so have I *done* **worked** unto them.

12 And they said unto him,
We *are come down* **descended** to bind thee,
that we may *deliver* **give** thee
into the hand of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
And *Samson* **Shimshon** said unto them,
Swear **Oath** unto me,
that ye *will* **shall** not *fall* **encounter** upon me yourselves.
And they *spake* **said** unto him, saying, No;
but **in binding**, we *will* **shall** bind thee *fast*,
and *deliver* **give** thee into their hand:
but **in killing**, *surely* we *will* **shall** not kill thee.
And they bound him with two new *CORDS* **ropes**,
and *brought* **ascended** him *up* from the rock.

14 And when he came unto *Lehi* **Lechi**,
the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** shouted *against* **meeting** him:
and the Spirit of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came mightily upon **prospered over** him,
and the *CORDS* **ropes** that were upon his arms
became as flax that was burnt with fire,
and his bands *loosed* **melted** from off his hands.

15 And he found a *new jawbone* **fresh jaw** of an ass **a he burro**,
and *put* **sent** forth his hand, and took it,
and *slew* **smote** a thousand men therewith.

16 And *Samson* **Shimshon** said,
With the *jawbone* **jaw** of an ass **a he burro**,
heaps upon heaps,
with the jaw of an ass **a he burro**
have I *slain* **smitten** a thousand men.

17 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when he had *made an end of speaking* **finished wording**,
that he cast away the *jawbone* **jaw** out of his hand,
and called that place *Ramathlehi* **Ramah Lechi/Jaw Heights**.

18 And he was *sore athirst* **mighty thirsty**,
and called on the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, and said,
Thou hast given this great *deliverance* **salvation**
into the hand of thy servant:
and now shall I die for thirst,
and fall into the hand of the uncircumcised?

19 But *God* **clave an hollow place** **Elohim split a socket**
that was in the jaw,
and there *came* **went** water *thereout*;
and when he had drunk, his spirit *came again* **returned**,
and he *revived* **enlivened**:
wherefore he called the name thereof
Enhakkore **En Hak Qore/Fountain of the Caller**,
which is in *Lehi* **Lechi** unto this day.

20 And he judged *Israel* **Yisra El**
in the days of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** twenty years.

SHIMSHON AND THE LURKERS

16 Then went *Samson* **Shimshon** to *Gaza* **Azzah**,
and saw there an *harlot* **a woman whore**,
and went in unto her.

2 And it was *told the Gazites*, **they say to the Azzahiy**, saying
Samson **Shimshon** is come hither.
And they *compassed him in*, **surrounded**
and *laid wait* **lurked** for him all night
in the *gate* **portal** of the city,
and *were quiet* **hushed** all the night, saying,
In the morning, when it is *day* **light**,
we shall *kill* **slaughter** him.

3 And *Samson* **Shimshon** lay till midnight,
and arose at midnight,
and *took* **possessed** the doors of the *gate* **portal** of the city,
and the two posts,
and *went away with them* **pulled**, bar and all,
and *put* **set** them upon his shoulders,
and *carried* **ascended** them *up*
to the top of an *hill* **a mountain**
that is *before* **at the face of** Hebron.

JUDGES 15, 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

11 And three thousand men of Yah Hudah descend to the cleft of the rock Etam; and say to Shimshon,
Know you not that the Peleshethiy are sovereigns over us?
What work you to us?
And he says to them,
As they work to me, thus I work to them.

12 And they say to him,
We descend to bind you,
to give you into the hand of the Peleshethiy.

And Shimshon says to them,
Oath to me,
that you yourselves not encounter me.

13 And they say to him, saying, No;
but in binding, we bind you
and give you into their hand:
but in killing, we kill you not.
— and they bind him with two new ropes
and ascend him from the rock.

14 And when he comes to Lechi,
the Peleshethiy shout meeting him;
and the Spirit of Yah Veh prospers over him;
and the ropes on his arms
become as flax burnt with fire;
and his bands melt off his hands:
and he finds a fresh jaw of a he burro
and sends forth his hand and takes it
and smites a thousand men therewith.

16 And Shimshon says,
With the jaw of a he burro, heaps on heaps;
with the jaw of a he burro I smite a thousand men.
— and so be it, he finishes wording,
and casts the jaw from his hand
and calls that place Ramah Lechi/Jaw Heights.

18 And he is mighty thirsty
and calls on Yah Veh and says,
You give this great salvation
into the hand of your servant!
And now, die I for thirst,
and fall into the hand of the uncircumcised?

19 And Elohim split a socket in the jaw
and water comes;
and he drinks, and his spirit returns and he enlivens:
so he calls the name thereof
En Hak Qore/Fountain of the Caller:
it is in Lechi to this day.

20 And he judges Yisra El
in the days of the Peleshethiy twenty years.

SHIMSHON AND THE LURKERS

16 Then Shimshon goes to Azzah
and sees a woman whore and goes in to her.

2 And they say to the Azzahiy, Shimshon comes here.
— and they surround the portal of the city all night
and lurk for him and hush all night,
saying,
Until the morning light, and we slaughter him.

3 And Shimshon lies down until midnight
and rises at midnight;
and possesses the doors and the two posts
of the portal of the city;
and pulls them, bar and all,
and sets them on his shoulders
and ascends them to the top of a mountain
at the face of Hebron.

JUDGES 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SHIMSHON AND DELILAH

4 And **so be** it came to pass, afterward,
that he loved a woman in the valley **wadi** of Sorek **Soreq**,
whose name was Delilah.

5 And the lords **ringleaders** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
came up **ascended** unto her, and said unto her,
Entice him, and see wherein his great **strength force** lieth,
and by what *means* we may prevail against him,
that we may bind him to **afflict humble** him;
and we *will* **shall** give thee every *one* **man** of us
eleven hundred *pieces of silver* **silvers**.

6 And Delilah said to *Samson* **Shimshon**,
Tell me, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
wherein thy great **strength force** lieth,
and wherewith thou mightest be bound
to **afflict humble** thee.

7 And *Samson* **Shimshon** said unto her,
If they bind me with seven *green withs* **fresh cords**,
that were never dried **parched**,
then shall I be *weak* **worn**,
and be as *another man* **one human**.

8 Then the lords **ringleaders** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
brought up **ascended** to her seven *green withs* **fresh cords**
which had not been *dried* **parched**,
and she bound him with them.

9 Now there were men *lying in wait* **lurking**,
abiding **settling** with her in the chamber.
And she said unto him,
The *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** be upon thee,
Samson **Shimshon**.

And he *brake* **tore** the *withs* **cords**,
as a *thread* **braid** of *tow* **tuft** is *broken* **orn**
when it *toucheth* **scentheth** the fire.
So his **strength force** was not known.

10 And Delilah said unto *Samson* **Shimshon**,
Behold, thou hast mocked me, and *told me* **worded** lies:
now tell me, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
wherewith thou mightest be bound.

11 And he said unto her,
If **in binding**, they bind me *fast* with new ropes
that never were occupied
wherewith work hath never been done,
then shall I be *weak* **worn**, and be as *another* **one** man.

12 Delilah therefore took new ropes
and bound him therewith,
and said unto him,
The *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** be upon thee,
Samson **Shimshon**.

And there were *liers in wait* **lurkers**
abiding **settling** in the chamber.
And he *brake* **tore** them from off his arms like a thread.

13 And Delilah said unto *Samson* **Shimshon**,
Hitherto **Thither** thou hast mocked me,
and *told* **worded** me lies:
tell me wherewith thou mightest be bound.

And he said unto her,
If thou weavest the seven *locks* **braids** of my head
with the web.

14 And she *fastened* **staked** it with the *pin* **stake**,
and said unto him,
The *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** be upon thee,
Samson **Shimshon**.

And he awaked out of his sleep,
and *went away* **pulled**
with the *pin* **stake** of the *beam* **weaver**, and with the web.

15 And she said unto him,
How canst thou say, I love thee,
when thine heart is not with me?
thou hast mocked me these three times,
and hast not told me
wherein thy great **strength force** lieth.

16 And **so be** it came to pass,
when she *pressed* **oppressed** him *daily* **all days**
with her words, and urged him,
so that his soul was *vexed unto death* **shortened to die**;

17 That he told her all his heart, and said unto her,
There hath not *come* **ascended** a razor upon mine head;
for I have been a *Nazarite* **Separatist** unto *God* **Elohim**

JUDGES 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SHIMSHON AND DELILAH

4 And so be it, afterward,
he loves a woman in the wadi of Soreq
her name *is* Delilah.

5 And the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy
ascend to her and say to her,
Entice him; and see wherein his great force *is*
and how to prevail against him
— so as to bind him to humble him;
and each man of us gives you eleven hundred silvers.

6 And Delilah says to Shimshon,
Tell me, I beseech you, wherein your great force *is*
and how to bind you to humble you.

7 And Shimshon says to her,
If they bind me with seven fresh cords, never parched,
then I become worn, and become as one human.

8 Then the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy
ascend seven fresh cords to her
which have not been parched;
and she binds him with them.

9 And men lurk
— settling in the chamber with her:
and she says to him,
The Peleshethiy on you, Shimshon!

And he tears the cords
as a braid of tuft is torn when it scents the fire:
and his force is not known.

10 And Delilah says to Shimshon,
Behold, you mock me and word lies:
now tell me, I beseech you, how to bind you.

11 He says to her,
If in binding, they bind me with new ropes
which have never been worked,
then I wear out, and become as one man.

12 And Delilah takes new ropes
and binds him therewith;
and says to him,
The Peleshethiy on you, Shimshon!

And lurkers settle in the chamber:
and he tears them from his arms as a thread.

13 And Delilah says to Shimshon,
Until now you mock me and word lies!
Tell me how to bind you.

And he says to her,
If you weave the seven braids of my head
with the web.

14 And she stakes them with the stake
and says to him,
The Peleshethiy on you, Shimshon!

And he wakes from his sleep
and pulls out the stake of the weaver and the web.

15 And she says to him,
How say you, I love you,
when your heart is not with me?
You mock me these three times
and tell me not wherein your great force *is*.

16 And so be it,
when she oppresses him all days with her words
and urges him,
his soul shortens to die;
and he tells her all his heart and says to her,
No razor ascends my head;
for I *am* a Separatist to Elohim

JUDGES 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

from my mother's womb belly:
if I be shaven,
then my strength will go **force shall turn** from me,
and I shall become **weak worn**,
and be like any **other man one human**.
18 And when Delilah saw
that he had told her all his heart,
she sent and called for the **lords ringleaders**
of the **Philistines Peleshethiy**, saying,
Come up Ascend this once one time,
for he hath **shewed told** me all his heart.
Then the **lords ringleaders** of the **Philistines Peleshethiy**
came up ascended unto her,
and **brought money ascended silver** in their hand.
19 And she made him sleep upon her knees;
and she called for a man,
and she caused him
to shave off the seven **locks braids** of his head;
and she began to **afflict abase** him,
and his **strength went force turned** from him.
20 And she said, The **Philistines Peleshethiy** be upon thee,
Samson Shimshon.
And he awoke out of his sleep, and said,
I will **shall** go out as at **other times before time by time**,
and shake myself.
And he **wist knew** not that **the LORD Yah Veh**
was departed had turned aside from him.
21 But the **Philistines took Peleshethiy possessed** him,
and **put bore** out his eyes,
and brought him down to **Gaza Azzah**,
and bound him with fetters of **brass copper**;
and he did grind in the **prison house house of binding**.
22 Howbeit the hair of his head
began to **grow again sprout** after he was shaven.
THE DEATH OF SHIMSHON
23 Then the **lords ringleaders** of the **Philistines Peleshethiy**
gathered them together
for to **offer sacrifice** a great sacrifice
unto Dagon their **god elohim**,
and to **rejoice cheer**:
for they said, Our **god elohim**
hath **delivered Samson given Shimshon** our enemy
into our hand.
24 And when the people saw him,
they **praised haled** their **god elohim**: for they said,
Our **god elohim** hath delivered into our hands our enemy,
and the **destroyer parcher** of our **country land**,
which **slew many of us abounded our pierced**.
25 And **so be** it came to pass,
when their hearts were **merry goodly**, that they said,
Call for **Samson Shimshon**,
that he may **make entertain** us sport.
And they called for **Samson Shimshon**
out of the **prison house house of binding**;
and he **made entertained** them sport:
and they **set stood** him between the pillars.
26 And **Samson Shimshon**
said unto the lad that held him by the hand,
Suffer Allow me that I may **feel touch** the pillars
whereupon the house **standeth be established**,
that I may lean upon them.
27 Now the house was **full filled** of men and women;
and all the **lords ringleaders** of the **Philistines Peleshethiy**
were there;
and there were upon the roof
about three thousand men and women,
that **beheld saw**
while **Samson made sport Shimshon entertained**.
28 And **Samson Shimshon** called unto **the LORD Yah Veh**,
and said, O **Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh**,
remember me, I **pray beseech** thee,
and strengthen me, I **pray beseech** thee,
only this **once one time**, O **God Elohim**,
that I may **be at once avenged avenge the avengement**
of the **Philistines Peleshethiy** for my two eyes.
29 And **Samson Shimshon**
took hold of clasped the two middle pillars

JUDGES 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

from the belly of my mother:
if I become shaven,
my force turns from me and I become worn
and become as any one human.
18 And when Delilah sees
that he tells her all his heart,
she sends and calls the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy,
saying,
Ascend this one time, for he tells me all his heart.
And the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy ascend to her
and ascend silver in their hand:
19 and she has him sleep on her knees;
and she calls for a man
to shave the seven braids of his head;
and she begins to abase him
and his force turns from him.
20 And she says,
The Peleshethiy on you, Shimshon!
And he awakens from his sleep and says,
I go out as time by time and shake myself.
— and he knows not that Yah Veh turned from him.
21 And the Peleshethiy possess him
and bore out his eyes;
and bring him down to Azzah
and bind him with fetters of copper;
and he grinds in the house of binding;
22 and after he is shaven
the hair of his head begins to sprout.
THE DEATH OF SHIMSHON
23 Then the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy
gather together
to sacrifice a great sacrifice to Dagon their elohim
and to cheer:
for they say, Our elohim
gives Shimshon our enemy into our hand.
24 And when the people see him,
they halal their elohim: for they say,
Into our hands
our elohim delivers our enemy
and the parcher of our land,
who abounded our pierced.
25 And so be it,
when their hearts are goodly, they say,
Call for Shimshon to entertain us.
— and they call for Shimshon
from the house of binding;
and he entertains them:
and they stand him between the pillars.
26 And Shimshon
says to the lad holding him by the hand,
Allow me to touch the pillars
whereupon the house is established
— to lean on them.
27 And the house is full of men and women;
and all the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy are there
— and on the roof
about three thousand men and women see
while Shimshon entertains.
28 And Shimshon calls to Yah Veh, and says,
O Adonay Yah Veh, remember me, I beseech you;
strengthen me, I beseech you,
only, this one time, O Elohim,
to avenge the avengement
of the Peleshethiy for my two eyes.
29 And Shimshon clasps the two middle pillars

JUDGES 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

upon which the house **stood** was established,
and on which it was **borne up propped**,
of the one with his right **hand**,
and of the **other one** with his left.
30 And *Samson Shimshon* said,
Let *me my soul* die with the *Philistines Peleshethiy*.
And he **bowed spread** himself with *all his* might **force**;
and the house fell upon the *lords ringleaders*,
and upon all the people that were therein.
So the dead which he **slew deathified** at his death
were **more greater** than they
which he **slew deathified** in his life.
31 Then his brethren and all the house of his father
came down descended,
and **took lifted** him, and **brought ascended** him up,
and **buried entombed** him
between *Zorah Sorah* and *Eshtaol*
in the *buryingplace tomb* of *Manoah Manoach* his father.
And he judged *Israel Yisra El* twenty years.

THE IDOLS OF MICHAH YAH

17 And there was a man of mount *Ephraim Ephrayim*,
whose name was *Micah Michah Yah*.
2 And he said unto his mother,
The eleven hundred shekels of silver
that were taken from thee,
about which thou **cursedest oathest**,
and **spakest said** of also in mine ears, behold,
the silver is with me; I took it.
And his mother said,
Blessed be thou of the *LORD Yah Veh*, my son.
3 And when he had restored
the eleven hundred *shekels of silver silvers* to his mother,
his mother said,
In hallowing, I had **wholly dedicated hallowed** the silver
unto the *LORD Yah Veh* from my hand for my son,
to **make a graven image work a sculptile**
and a **molten image molting**;
now therefore I **will shall** restore it unto thee.
4 Yet he restored the *money silver* unto his mother;
and his mother took two hundred *shekels of silver*,
and gave them to the *founder refiner*,
who **made worked** thereof a *graven image sculptile*
and a **molten image molting**;
and they were in the house of *Micah Michah Yah*.
5 And the man *Micah Michah Yah*
had an house of *gods elohim*,
and **made worked** an ephod, and teraphim,
and **consecrated filled the hand of** one of his sons,
who became his priest.
6 In those days
there was no *king sovereign* in *Israel Yisra El*,
but every man **did worked**
that which was *right straight* in his own eyes.
7 And there was a *young man lad*
out of *Bethlehemjudah Beth Lechem Yah Hudah*
of the family of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
who was a *Levite Levity*, and he sojourned there.
8 And the man **departed went** out of the city
from *Bethlehemjudah Beth Lechem Yah Hudah*
to sojourn where he could find a *place*:
and he came to mount *Ephraim Ephrayim*
to the house of *Micah Michah Yah*,
as he **journeyed worked his way**.
9 And *Micah Michah Yah* said unto him,
Whence comest thou?
And he said unto him, I am a *Levite Levity*
of *Bethlehemjudah Beth Lechem Yah Hudah*,
and I go to sojourn where I may find a *place*.
10 And *Micah Michah Yah* said unto him,
Dwell Settle with me,
and be unto me a father and a priest,
and I **will shall** give thee ten *shekels of silver*
by the year daily,
and a **suit an appraisal of apparel clothes**,
and thy **victuals invigoration**. So the *Levite Levity* went in.
11 And the *Levite Levity*
was **content willed** to **dwelt settle** with the man;
and the *young man lad* was unto him as one of his sons.

JUDGES 16, 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

whereon the house is established
and whereon it is propped
— the one with his right and the one with his left.
30 And Shimshon says,
O that my soul die with the Peleshethiy.
— and he spreads himself with force;
and the house falls on the ringleaders
and on all the people therein.
So the dead he deathified at his death
are greater than those he deathified in his life.
31 And his brothers and all the house of his father
descend and lift him and ascend him and entomb him
between Sorah and Eshtaol
in the tomb of Manoach his father:
and he judges Yisra El twenty years.

THE IDOLS OF MICHAH YAH

17 And there is a man of mount Ephrayim,
his name is Michah Yah:
2 and he says to his mother,
The eleven hundred shekels of silver taken from you,
of your oath you also say in my ears;
behold, the silver is with me; I took it.
And his mother says,
Blessed — you of Yah Veh, my son.
3 And he restores
the eleven hundred silvers to his mother,
and his mother says,
In hallowing,
I hallow the silver to Yah Veh from my hand
for my son to work a sculptile and a molting:
and now I restore it to you.
4 He restores the silver to his mother;
and his mother takes two hundred silver
and gives them to the refiner,
who works a sculptile and a molting thereof:
and they are in the house of Michah Yah.
5 And the man Michah Yah has a house of elohim
and works an ephod and teraphim
and fills the hand of one of his sons
who becomes his priest.
6 In those days there is no sovereign in Yisra El;
and every man works straight in his own eyes:
7 and there is a lad of Beth Lechem Yah Hudah
of the family of Yah Hudah — a Levity
and he sojourns there:
8 and the man goes from the city
of Beth Lechem Yah Hudah
to find where to sojourn:
and as he works his way
he comes to mount Ephrayim
to the house of Michah Yah.
9 And Michah Yah says to him, Whence come you?
And he says to him,
I am a Levity of Beth Lechem Yah Hudah;
and I go to find where to sojourn.
10 And Michah Yah says to him,
Settle with me
and become my father and priest;
and I give you ten silver daily
and an appraisal of clothes and your invigoration.
— and the Levity goes in.
11 And the Levity wills to settle with the man;
and the lad is as one of his sons to him:

JUDGES 17, 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 And Micah Michah Yah
consecrated filled the hand of the Levite Levi;
and the young man lad became his priest,
and was in the house of Micah Michah Yah.
13 Then said Micah Michah Yah, Now know I
that the LORD will do me good Yah Veh is well—pleased,
seeing I have a Levite Levi to my priest.

THE SCION OF THE DANIY SEEK AN INHERITANCE

18

In those days
there was no king sovereign in Israel Yisra El;
and in those days the tribe scion of the Danites Daniy
sought them an inheritance to dwell settle in;
for unto that day

all their inheritance had not fallen unto them
among the tribes scions of Israel Yisra El.

2

And the children sons of Dan
sent of their family five men from their coasts, men
— sons of valour, from Zorah Sorah, and from Eshtaol,
to spy out the land, and to search probe it;
and they said unto them, Go, search probe the land:
who when they came to mount Ephraim Ephrayim,
to the house of Micah Michah Yah,
they lodged stayed overnight there.

3

When they were by the house of Micah Michah Yah,
they knew recognized the voice
of the young man lad the Levite Levi:
and they turned in thither, and said unto him,
Who brought thee hither?
and what makest workest thou in this place?
and what hast thou here?

4

And he said unto them,
Thus and thus dealeth worketh
Micah with Michah Yah unto me,
and hath hired me, and I am his priest.

5

And they said unto him,
Ask counsel, we pray beseech thee, of God Elohim,
that we may know whether our way which we go
shall be prosperous prosper.

6

And the priest said unto them, Go in peace shalom:
before the LORD in front of Yah Veh
is be your way wherein ye go.

THE SCION OF THE DANIY COME TO LAISH

7

Then the five men departed went, and came to Laish,
and saw the people that were therein within,
how they dwelt careless settled confidently,
after the manner judgment of the Sidonians Sidoniy,
quiet rested and secure confident;
and there was no magistrate restrainer in the land,
that might put them to shame them in any thing word;
and they were far from the Sidonians Sidoniy,
and had no business word with any man humanity.

8

And they came unto their brethren
to Zorah Sorah and Eshtaol:
and their brethren said unto them, What say ye?

9

And they said,
Arise, that we may go up ascend against them:
for we have seen the land, and, behold,
it is very mighty good:
and are ye still hush ye?

10

be not slothful to go, and to enter to possess the land.
When ye go,
ye shall come unto a people secure confident,
and to a large land broad of hands:
for God Elohim hath given it into your hands;
a place where there is no want lack of any thing word
that is in the earth.

11

And there went pulled from thence
of the family of the Danites Daniy,
out of Zorah Sorah and out of Eshtaol,
six hundred men

12

appointed girded with weapons instruments of war.
And they went up ascended,
and pitched encamped in Kirjathjearim Qiryath Arim,
in Judah Yah Hudah:
wherefore they called that place

Mahanedan Machaneh Dan/Camp of Dan unto this day:

JUDGES 17, 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 and Michah Yah fills the hand of the Levi;
and the lad becomes his priest
in the house of Michah Yah.

13

Then Michah Yah says,
Now I know that Yah Veh is well—pleased,
seeing I have a Levi to my priest.

THE SCION OF THE DANIY SEEK AN INHERITANCE

18

In those days,
there is no sovereign in Yisra El;
and in those days
the scion of the Daniy seek an inheritance to settle;
for up to that day,
their inheritance fell not to them
among the scions of Yisra El.

2

And the sons of Dan
send five men of their family of their men
— sons of valour from Sorah and from Eshtaol
to spy out the land and to probe it:
and they say to them, Go, probe the land.

3

And they come to mount Ephrayim,
to the house of Michah Yah,
and they stay there overnight:
and they are by the house of Michah Yah,
and they recognize the voice of the lad the Levi:
and they turn in there, and say to him,
Who brought you here?
And what work you here?
And what have you here?

4

And he says to them,
Michah Yah works thus and thus to me;
he hired me and I am his priest.

5

And they say to him,
Ask counsel, we beseech you, of Elohim,
to know whether the way we go prospers.

6

And the priest says to them, Go in shalom:
Yah Veh goes in front of the way you go.

THE SCION OF THE DANIY COME TO LAISH

7

Then the five men go and come to Laish
and see the people within
— how they settle confidently
after the judgment of the Sidoniy
— rested and confident;
and there is no restrainer in the land
to shame them in word;
and they are far from the Sidoniy
and have no word with humanity:
and they come to their brothers
at Sorah and Eshtaol.

8

And their brothers say to them, What — you?

9

And they say, Rise!
We ascend against them!
For we saw the land;
and behold, it is mighty good!
And you, hush!
Be not slothful to go, to enter to possess the land.
When you go,
you come to a people confident
and to a land broad of hands:
for Elohim gives it into your hands;
a place of no lack of any word in the earth.

10

11

And of all the family of the Daniy
— from Sorah and from Eshtaol
six hundred men girded with instruments of war
pull from there:

12

and they ascend and encamp in Qiryath Arim
in Yah Hudah:
so they call that place
Machaneh Dan/Camp of Dan
to this day:

JUDGES 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 13 behold, it is behind Kirjathjearim **Qiryath Arim**.
And they passed thence
unto mount Ephraim **Ephrayim**,
and came unto the house of Micah **Michah Yah**.
- 14 Then answered the five men
that went to spy out the *country* **land** of Laish,
and said unto their brethren,
Do ye know that there is in these houses an ephod,
and teraphim, and a *graven image* **sculptile**,
and a molten *image*?
now therefore *consider* **perceive** what ye have to *do* **work**.
- 15 And they turned *thitherward* **aside**,
and came to the house
of the *young man* **lad** the Levite **Leviy**,
even unto the house of Micah **Michah Yah**,
and *saluted him* **asked of him shalom**.
- 16 And the six hundred men
appointed **girded** with their *weapons* **instruments** of war,
which were of the *children* **sons** of Dan,
stood **stationed themselves**
by the *entering* **opening** of the *gate* **portal**.
- 17 And the five men that went to spy out the land
went up **ascended**, and came in thither,
and took the *graven image* **sculptile**, and the ephod,
and the teraphim, and the molten *image*:
and the priest *stood* **stationed himself**
in the *entering* **opening** of the *gate* **portal**
with the six hundred men that were *appointed* **girded**
with *weapons* **instruments** of war.
- 18 And these went
into Micah's house **the house of Michah Yah**,
and *fetches* **took** the *carved image* **sculptile**, the ephod,
and the teraphim, and the molten *image*.
Then said the priest unto them, What *do* **work** ye?
And they said unto him, *Hold thy peace* **Hush**,
lay set thine hand upon thy mouth, and go with us,
and be to us a father and a priest:
is it better for thee to be a priest
unto the house of one man,
or that thou be a priest
unto a *tribe* **scion** and a family in *Israel* **Yisra El**?
- 20 And the priest's heart was *glad* **well—pleased**,
and he took the ephod, and the teraphim,
and the *graven image* **sculptile**,
and went in the midst of the people.
- 21 So they turned **face** and *departed* **went**,
and *put set* the *little ones* **toddlers** and the *cattle* **chattel**
and the *carriage before* **honourable at the face** of them.
- 22 And when they were a *good way* **far removed**
from the house of Micah **Michah Yah**,
the men that were in the houses
near to Micah's house **the house of Michah Yah**
were gathered together **cried out**,
and *overtook* **adhered to** the *children* **sons** of Dan.
- 23 And they *cried* **out** unto the *children* **sons** of Dan.
And they turned their faces,
and said unto Micah **Michah Yah**, What aileth thee,
that thou *comest with such a company* **criest out**?
- 24 And he said,
Ye have taken away my *gods* **elohim**
which I *made* **worked**,
and the priest, and ye *are gone away* **have gone**:
and what have I more?
and what is this that ye say unto me, What *aileth* thee?
- 25 And the *children* **sons** of Dan said unto him,
Let not thy voice be heard among us,
lest *angry fellows* **men bitter of soul**
run upon **encounter** thee,
and *thou lose thy life* **thy soul be gathered**,
with the *lives* **souls** of thy household.
- 26 And the *children* **sons** of Dan went their way:
and when Micah **Michah Yah** saw
that they were too strong for him,
he turned **face** and *went* **turned back** unto his house.
- 27 And they took *the things* **those**
which Micah **Michah Yah** had *made* **worked**,
and the priest which he had, and came unto Laish,

JUDGES 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 13 behold, it is behind Qiryath Arim.
And from there, they pass to mount Ephrayim
and come to the house of Michah Yah.
- 14 Then the five men
who go to spy out the land of Laish
answer and say to their brothers,
Know you, that in these houses,
there are an ephod
and a teraphim and a sculptile and a molten?
Now perceive what to work.
- 15 And they turn aside
and come to the house of the lad the Leviy
— to the house of Michah Yah
and ask shalom of him:
- 16 and the six hundred men of the sons of Dan
girt with their instruments of war,
station themselves by the opening of the portal:
and the five men who go to spy the land
ascend and come in thither;
and take the sculptile and the ephod
and the teraphim and the molten:
and the priest stations himself
in the opening of the portal
with the six hundred men
girt with instruments of war:
- 18 and they go in the house of Michah Yah
and take the sculptile and the ephod
and the teraphim and the molten.
- And the priest says to them, What work you?
- 19 And they say to him, Hush!
Set your hand on your mouth and come with us
and become to us a father and a priest:
is it better for you to be a priest
to the house of one man?
Or that you be a priest
to a scion and a family in Yisra El?
- 20 And the heart of the priest is well—pleased;
and he takes the ephod
and the teraphim and the sculptile
and goes midst the people:
and they turn face and go
and set the toddlers and the chattel
and the honorable at their face.
- 21 And they become far removed
from the house of Michah Yah;
and the men in the houses
near the house of Michah Yah
cry out and adhere to the sons of Dan
— and they cry out to the sons of Dan.
- And they turn their faces and say to Michah Yah,
What *is it* to you, that you cry out?
- 24 And he says,
You take the elohim I worked and the priest
and you go!
What more have I?
What is this that you say to me, What — to you?
And the sons of Dan say to him,
O that your voice not be heard among us,
lest men bitter of soul encounter you
and gather your soul
with the souls of your household.
- 26 And the sons of Dan go their way;
and Michah Yah sees they are too strong for him:
and he turns face and turns back to his house.
- 27 And they take what Michah Yah worked
and the priest he had;
and come to Laish

JUDGES 18, 19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

unto a people
that were at quiet and secure **rested confidently**:
and they smote them with the **edge mouth** of the sword,
and burnt the city with fire.
28 And there was no **deliverer rescuer**,
because it was far from **Zidon Sidon**,
and they had no **business word** with *any man* **humanity**;
and it was in the valley that lieth
by **Bethrehob Beth Rechob**.
And they built a city, and **dwelt settled** therein.
29 And they called the name of the city Dan,
after the name of Dan their father,
who was **born birthed** unto **Israel Yisra El**:
howbeit but the name of the city was Laish at the first.
30 And the **children sons** of Dan
set up raised the **graven image sculptile**:
and **Jonathan Yah Nathan**,
the son of Gershom, the son of **Manasseh Menash Sheh**,
he and his sons were priests to the **tribe scion** of Dan
until the day of the **captivity exile** of the land.
31 And they set them up
Micah's graven image Michah's sculptile,
which he **made worked**,
all the **time days**
that the house of **God Elohim** was in Shiloh.

THE WHORING CONCUBINE OF A LEVY

19 And **so be** it came to pass, in those days,
when there was no **king sovereign** in **Israel Yisra El**,
that there was a **certain Levite, man — a Levy**
sojourning on the **side flank** of mount **Ephraim Ephrayim**,
who took to him **a woman — a concubine**
out of **Bethlehemjudah Beth Lechem Yah Hudah**.
2 And his concubine played the whore against him,
and went away from him unto her father's house
to **Bethlehemjudah Beth Lechem Yah Hudah**,
and was there four **whole months of days**.
3 And her **husband man** arose, and went after her,
to **speak friendly word** unto her **heart**,
and to **bring return** her **again**,
having his **servant lad** with him,
and a **couple pair** of **asses he burros**:
and she brought him into her father's house:
and when the father of the **damsel lass** saw him,
he **rejoiced cheered** to meet him.
4 And his father in law, the **damsel's lass' father**,
retained held him;
and he **abode settled** with him three days:
so they did eat and drink,
and **lodged stayed overnight** there.
5 And **so be** it came to pass, on the fourth day,
when they **arose started** early in the morning,
that he rose up to **depart go**:
and the **damsel's lass' father** said unto his son in law,
Comfort Support thine heart with a morsel of bread,
and afterward go your way.
6 And they **sat down settled**,
and did eat and drink both of them together:
for the **damsel's lass' father** had said unto the man,
Be content, I pray beseech thee,
and **tarry all night that thou wilt stay overnight**,
and let thine heart be **merry well—pleased**.
7 And when the man rose up to **depart go**,
his father in law urged him:
therefore
he **lodged there again returned and stayed overnight**.
8 And he **arose started** early in the morning
on the **fifth day to depart go**;
and the **damsel's lass' father** said,
Comfort Support thine heart, I **pray beseech** thee.
And they **tarried lingered** until **afternoon the day declined**,
and they did eat both of them.
9 And when the man rose up to **depart go**,
he, and his concubine, and his servant,
his father in law, the **damsel's lass' father**, said unto him,
Behold, now the day **draweth slacketh** toward evening,
I **pray beseech** you **tarry all night stay overnight**:
behold, the day **groweth to an end encampeth**,

JUDGES 18, 19

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— to a people resting confidently:
and they smite them with the mouth of the sword
and burn the city with fire:
and there is no rescuer
because it is far from Sidon;
and they have no word with humanity;
and it is in the valley by Beth Rechob.
28
And they build a city and settle therein:
29 and they call the name of the city Dan,
after the name of Dan their father,
who was birthed to Yisra El:
but formerly, the name of the city is Laish.
30 And the sons of Dan raise the sculptile:
and Yah Nathan
the son of Gershom the son of Menash Sheh
— he and his sons are priests to the scion of Dan
until the day of the exile of the land:
31 and they set up the sculptile Michah worked
all the days the house of Elohim is in Shiloh.

THE WHORING CONCUBINE OF A LEVY

19 And so be it, in those days,
there is no sovereign in Yisra El,
and there is a man — a Levy
sojourning on the flank of mount Ephrayim,
who takes a woman — a concubine
from Beth Lechem Yah Hudah:
2 and his concubine whores against him;
and goes from him to the house of her father
to Beth Lechem Yah Hudah;
and she is there four months of days:
3 and her man rises and goes after her
to word to her heart to return,
having his lad and a pair of he burros with him:
and she brings him into the house of her father:
and when the father of the lass sees him,
he cheers to meet him.
4 And his father in law, the father of the lass,
holds him;
and he settles with him three days:
so they eat and drink and stay overnight.
5 And so be it, on the fourth day,
they start early in the morning;
and as he rises to go,
the father of the lass says to his son in law,
Support your heart with a morsel of bread
and afterward go your way.
6 And they settle and eat and drink
— both of them together:
and the father of the lass says to the man,
I beseech you, to will to stay overnight
and to well — please your heart.
7 And the man rises to go,
and his father in law urges him;
and he returns and stays overnight:
8 and on the fifth day
he starts early in the morning to go;
and the father of the lass says,
Support your heart, I beseech you.
— and they linger until the day declines;
and they both eat.
9 And the man rises to go
— he and his concubine and his servant,
and his father in law, the father of the lass,
says to him,
Behold, now the day slackens toward evening,
I beseech you, stay overnight;
behold, the day encamps,

JUDGES 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

lodge **stay overnight** here,
that thine heart may be *merry well—pleased*;
and to morrow *get you start* early on your way,
that thou mayest go *home to thy tent*.
10 But the man *would willed to not*
tarry that night stay overnight,
but he rose up and *departed went*,
and came over against *Jebus Yebus*,
which is *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*;
and there were with him
two asses saddled a pair of he burros harnessed,
his concubine also was with him.
11 And when they were by *Jebus Yebus*,
the day was *far spent mightily subdued*;
and the *servant lad* said unto his *master adoni*,
Come, I *pray beseech* thee,
and let us turn in into this city of the *Jebusites Yebusiy*,
and lodge **stay overnight** in it.
12 And his *master adoni* said unto him,
We *will shall* not turn aside hither
into the city of a stranger,
that is not of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*;
we *will shall* pass over to *Gibeah Gibah*.
13 And he said unto his *servant lad*, Come,
and let us *draw near approach* to one of these places
to lodge *all night stay overnight*,
in *Gibeah Gibah*, or in Ramah.
14 And they passed on and went their way;
and the sun went down upon them
when they were by Gibeah beside Gibah,
which *belongeth be to Benjamin Ben Yamin*.
15 And they turned aside *thither*,
to go in and to lodge **stay overnight** in *Gibeah Gibah*:
and when he went in,
he *sat him down seated* in a *street Broadway* of the city:
for there was no man
that *took gathered* them into his house
to lodging **stay overnight**.
16 And, behold,
there came an old man from his work
out of the field at even,
which was *also a man* of mount *Ephraim Ephrayim*;
and he sojourned in *Gibeah Gibah*:
but the men of the place were *Benjamites Ben Yaminiy*.
17 And when he had lifted up his eyes,
he saw a *wayfaring caravan*,
a man in the *street Broadway* of the city:
and the old man said,
Whither goest thou? and whence comest thou?
18 And he said unto him,
We are passing
from *Bethlehemjudah Beth Lechem Yah Hudah*
toward the *side flank* of mount *Ephraim Ephrayim*;
from thence am I:
and I went to *Bethlehemjudah Beth Lechem Yah Hudah*,
but I am *now* going to the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*;
and there is no man that *receiveth gathereth* me to house.
19 Yet there is both straw and provender
for our asses **he burros**;
and there is bread and wine also for me,
and for thy *handmaid maid*,
and for the young man which is with thy *servants lads*:
there is no *want lack* of any *thing word*.
20 And the old man said, *Peace Shalom* be with thee;
howsoever let only all thy *wants lie lacks be* upon me;
only lodge **stay overnight** not in the *street Broadway*.
21 So he brought him into his house,
and gave *provender unto foddered*
the asses **he burros**:
and they *washed baptized* their feet,
and did eat and drink.
THE SONS OF BELI YAAL EXPLOIT THE CONCUBINE
22 Now as they were
making well—preparing their hearts *merry*,
behold, the men of the city,
certain men, sons of *Belial Beli Yaal*,
beset the house round about, and beat at the door,
and *spake said* to the *master man* of the house,

JUDGES 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

stay here overnight, to well—please your heart;
and tomorrow start early on your way,
to go to your tent.
10 And the man wills to not stay overnight,
and he rises and goes and comes over against Yebus
which is Yeru Shalem:
and there *are* a pair of harnessed he burros with him,
and his concubine *is* with him.
11 And they *are* by Yebus,
and the day subdues mightily;
and the lad says to his adoni,
Come, I beseech you,
turn in into this city of the Yebusiy
and stay overnight therein.
12 And his adoni says to him,
We turn not aside into the city of a stranger
who is not of the sons of Yisra El:
but we pass over to Gibah.
13 And he says to his lad,
Come and approach one of these places
to stay overnight
— in Gibah, or in Ramah.
14 And they pass on and go their way;
and the sun goes down on them beside Gibah,
which is to Ben Yamin:
and they turn aside
to go in and to stay overnight in Gibah:
and when he goes in,
he seats himself in a Broadway of the city:
for no man gathers them into his house
to stay overnight:
and behold,
an old man comes from his work
from the field at evening
— a man of mount Ephrayim who sojourns in Gibah:
and the men of the place *are* Ben Yaminiy.
17 And he lifts his eyes, and sees a caravan,
a man in the Broadway of the city:
and the old man says,
Whither go you? and whence come you?
18 And he says to him,
We pass from Beth Lechem Yah Hudah
toward the flank of mount Ephrayim
from whence I *am*:
and I go to Beth Lechem Yah Hudah,
and I go to the house of Yah Veh;
and no man gathers me to his house.
19 And there are yet both straw and provender
for our he burros;
and bread and wine for me and for your maid
and for the young man with your lads:
there is no lack of any word.
20 And the old man says, Shalom to you;
only, all your lacks be on me;
only, stay not overnight in the Broadway.
21 So he brings him into his house
and foddere the he burros:
and they baptize their feet and eat and drink.
THE SONS OF BELI YAAL EXPLOIT THE CONCUBINE
22 They well—prepare their hearts,
and behold, the men of the city
— men — sons of Beli Yaal
beset the house all around and beat at the door
and say to the man of the house

JUDGES 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the old man, saying,
Bring forth the man that came into thine house,
that we may know him.
23 And the man, the master of the house,
went out unto them, and said unto them,
Nay No, my brethren, *nay*,
I pray beseech you, do vilify not so wickedly;
seeing after that this man is come into mine house,
do work not this folly.
24 Behold, here is my daughter a maiden virgin,
and his concubine;
them I will shall bring out now,
and humble ye abase them,
and do work with them
what seemeth good unto you in your eyes:
but unto this man do work not
so vile a thing this word of folly.
25 But the men would willed to not hearken to him:
so the man took held his concubine,
and brought her forth out unto them;
and they knew her,
and abused exploited her all the night until the morning:
and when the day began to spring dawn ascended,
they let sent her go away.
26 Then came the woman
in the dawning at the turning of the face
of the day morning,
and fell down at the door portal of the man's house
where her lord adoni was, till it was light.
27 And her lord adoni rose up in the morning,
and opened the doors of the house,
and went out to go his way: and, behold,
the woman his concubine
was fallen down at the door portal of the house,
and her hands were upon the threshold.
28 And he said unto her, Up Arise, and let us be going.
But none answered.
Then the man took her up upon an ass a he burro,
and the man rose up, and gat went him unto his place.
29 And when he was come into his house,
he took a knife,
and laid hold on his concubine,
and divided dismembered her, together with her bones,
into twelve pieces members,
and sent her into all the coasts borders of Israel Yisra El.
30 And it was so became, that all that saw it said,
There was no such deed done Thus hath not been nor seen
from the day that the children sons of Israel Yisra El
came up ascended out of the land of Egypt Misrayim
unto this day:
consider of set to yourselves upon it,
take advice consult, and speak your minds word.

THE SONS OF YISRA EL ATTACK THE SONS OF BEN YAMIN

20 Then all the children sons of Israel Yisra El went out,
and the congregation witnesses
was gathered congregated together as one man,
from Dan even to Beersheba Beer Sheba,
with the land of Gilead Gilad,
unto the LORD Yah Veh in Mizpeh Mispeh.
2 And the chief chiefs of all the people,
even of all the tribes scions of Israel Yisra El,
presented set themselves in the assembly congregation
of the people of God Elohim,
four hundred thousand footmen that drew sword.
3 (Now the children sons of Benjamin Ben Yamin
heard that the children sons of Israel Yisra El
were gone up ascended to Mizpeh Mispeh.)
Then said the children sons of Israel Yisra El,
Tell Word us, how was this wickedness evil?
4 And the Levite Levij,
the husband man of the woman that was slain murdered,
answered and said,
I came into Gibeah Gibah
that belongeth to Benjamin Ben Yamin,
I and my concubine, to lodge stay overnight.
5 And the men masters of Gibeah Gibah rose against me,

JUDGES 19, 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— the old man, saying,
Bring forth the man who came into your house,
that we may know him.
23 And the man — the master of the house
goes out to them and says to them,
No, my brothers, I beseech you, vilify not;
after this man comes into my house,
work not this folly.
24 Behold, my daughter
— a virgin and his concubine;
I bring them out now: abase them
and work with them as seems good in your eyes:
but work not this word of folly to this man.
25 And the men will to not hearken to him:
so the man holds his concubine
and brings her out to them;
and they know her and exploit her all night
until morning:
and when the dawn ascends, they send her away.
26 Then the woman comes
at the turning of the face of the morning
and falls at the portal of the house of the man
where her adoni is, until it is light.
27 And her adoni rises in the morning
and opens the doors of the house
and goes out to go his way:
and behold, the woman his concubine
fallen at the portal of the house
— her hands on the threshold.
28 And he says to her, Rise and we go.
— and there is no answer.
And the man takes her on a he burro
and the man rises and goes to his place:
and he comes into his house
and takes a knife and lays hold on his concubine
and dismembers her with her bones
into twelve members;
and sends her into all the borders of Yisra El.
30 And so be it, all who see it, say,
Thus has neither been nor seen
from the day
the sons of Yisra El
ascended from the land of Misrayim
to this day!
Set on it! Consult and word!

THE SONS OF YISRA EL ATTACK THE SONS OF BEN YAMIN

20 And all the sons of Yisra El go out
and the witness congregates as one man
— from Dan even to Beer Sheba
with the land of Gilad to Yah Veh in Mispeh:
2 and the chiefs of all the people
— of all the scions of Yisra El,
set themselves in the congregation
of the people of Elohim
— four hundred thousand footmen who draw sword.
3 The sons of Ben Yamin
hear that the sons of Yisra El ascend to Mispeh.
And the sons of Yisra El say,
Word, how becomes this evil?
4 And the Levij,
the man of the woman who is murdered,
answers and says,
I come to Gibeah to Ben Yamin
— I and my concubine, to stay overnight:
and the masters of Gibah rose against me

JUDGES 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and beset **surrounded** the house *round about*
upon me by night,
and *thought to have slain* **considered slaughtering** me:
and my concubine have they **forced abased**,
that she *is dead* **died**.

6 And I **took possessed** my concubine,
and *cut her in pieces* **dismembered her**,
and sent her throughout all the **country fields**
of the inheritance of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
for they have *committed lewdness* **worked intrigue**
and folly in *Israel* **Yisra El**.

7 Behold, ye are all *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**;
give here your **advice word** and counsel.

8 And all the people arose as one man, saying,
We will not any **No man shall** go to his tent,
neither *will* **shall** we any **man of us**
turn into his house.

9 But now this shall be the *thing* **word**
which we *will do* **shall work** to *Gibeah* **Gibah**;
we will go up by lot — **by pebble** against it;
And we *will* **shall** take ten men of an hundred
throughout all the *tribes* **scions of Israel Yisra El**,
and an hundred of a thousand,
and a thousand out of *ten thousand* **a myriad**,
to *fetch victual* **take hunt** for the people,
that they may *do* **work**,
when they come to *Gibeah* **Gibah** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
according to all the folly
that they have *wrought* **worked** in *Israel* **Yisra El**.

11 So all the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
were gathered against the city,
knit together **companions** as one man.

12 And the *tribes* **scions of Israel Yisra El** sent men
through all the *tribe* **scion of Benjamin Ben Yamin**, saying,
What *wickedness* **evil** is this that is *done* among you?

13 Now therefore *deliver us* **give** the men,
the *children* **sons of Belial Beli Yaal**,
which are in *Gibeah* **Gibah**,
that we may *put* **deathify** them to *death*,
and *put* **burn** away evil from *Israel* **Yisra El**.
But the *children of Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
would **willed to** not hearken to the voice of their brethren
the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**.

14 But **And** the *children* **sons of Benjamin Ben Yamin**
gathered themselves *together* out of the cities
unto *Gibeah* **Gibah**,
to go out to *battle* **war** against
the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**.

15 And the *children* **sons of Benjamin Ben Yamin**
were *numbered at that time* **mustered daily**
out of the cities
twenty and six thousand men that drew sword,
beside the *inhabitants* **settlers of Gibeah Gibah**,
which were *numbered* **mustered**
seven hundred chosen men.

16 Among all this people
there were seven hundred chosen men
lefthanded **bound of their right hand**;
every one could sling stones at an hair *breadth*,
and not *miss* **miss the mark/sin**.

17 And the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
beside *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
were *numbered* **mustered** four hundred thousand men
that drew sword: all these were men of war.

18 And the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El** arose,
and *went up* **ascended** to the house of *God* **Elohim**,
and asked counsel of *God* **Elohim**, and said,
Which **Whoever** of us shall go *up first* **at the beginning**
to the *battle* **war**
against the *children* **sons of Benjamin Ben Yamin**?
And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said,
Judah shall go up first **Yah Hudah, at the beginning**.

19 And the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
rose up in the morning,
and encamped against *Gibeah* **Gibah**.

20 And the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
went out to *battle* **war** against *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**;
and the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**

JUDGES 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and surrounded the house on me by night
and considered slaughtering me:
and abased my concubine that she died.

6 And I possessed my concubine
and dismembered her;
and send her throughout all the fields
of the inheritance of Yisra El:
for they work intrigue and folly in Yisra El.

7 Behold, you are all sons of Yisra El;
give here your word and counsel.

8 And all the people rise as one man, saying,
No man goes to his tent,
and no man turns to his house:

9 and now,
this is the word we work by pebble against Gibah;
we take ten men of a hundred
throughout all the scions of Yisra El;
and a hundred of a thousand
and a thousand of a myriad
to take hunt for the people,
that when they come to Gibah of Ben Yamin,
to work according to all the folly
they worked in Yisra El.

11 And all the men of Yisra El gather against the city
— companions as one man:
and the scions of Yisra El send men
through all the scion of Ben Yamin, saying,
What evil is this among you?

13 Now give the men
— the sons of Beli Yaal in Gibah
and we deathify them
and thus burn away evil from Yisra El.

And Ben Yamin
wills to not hearken to the voice of their brothers
the sons of Yisra El:
and the sons of Ben Yamin
gather from the cities to Gibah,
to go to war against the sons of Yisra El.

14

15 And daily
the sons of Ben Yamin muster from the cities
twenty—six thousand men who draw sword;
beside the settlers of Gibah,
who muster seven hundred chosen men:
among all this people
are seven hundred chosen men
bound of their right hand;
every one slinging stones at a hair,
and none sin/miss the mark.

16

17 And beside Ben Yamin, the men of Yisra El
muster four hundred thousand men who draw sword
— all men of war.

18 And the sons of Yisra El rise
and ascend to the house of Elohim
and ask counsel of Elohim, and say,
Who of us goes to war at the beginning
against the sons of Ben Yamin?

And Yah Veh says, Yah Hudah, at the beginning.

19 And the sons of Yisra El rise in the morning
and encamp against Gibah:
and the men of Yisra El
go to war against Ben Yamin:
and the men of Yisra El

JUDGES 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 21 *put themselves in array lined up*
to fight **war** against them at *Gibeah* **Gibah**.
And the *children sons of Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
came forth **went** out of *Gibeah* **Gibah**,
and destroyed **ruined** down to the ground **earth**
of the *Israelites* **Yisra Eliy** that day
twenty and two thousand men.
- 22 And the people the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
encouraged **strengthened** themselves,
and set their battle in array **lined up to war** again
in the place
where they *put themselves in array* **lined up** the first day.
23 (And the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
went up **ascended**
and wept before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**
until even,
and asked counsel of the **LORD Yah Veh**, saying,
Shall I *go up* **approach** again to *battle war*
against the *children sons of Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
my brother?
And the **LORD Yah Veh** said, *Go up* **Ascend** against him.)
- 24 And the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
came near **approached**
against the *children sons of Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
the second day.
- 25 And *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin** went forth
against **meeting** them out of *Gibeah* **Gibah**
the second day,
and destroyed down **ruined** to the ground **earth**
of the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El** again
eighteen thousand men; all these drew the sword.
- 26 Then all the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**,
and all the people, *went up* **ascended**,
and came unto the house of *God* **Elohim**, and wept,
and sat **settled** there
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
and fasted that day until even,
and offered burnt offerings **holocausted holocausts**
and peace offerings **shelamim**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
- 27 And the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
enquired **asked** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
(for the ark of the covenant of *God* **Elohim**
was there in those days,
And *Phinehas* **Pinechas**,
the son of *Eleazar* **El Azar**, the son of *Aaron* **Aharon**,
stood **before at the face of** it in those days,) saying,
Shall I yet again go out to *battle war*
against the *children sons of Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
my brother,
or shall I cease?
And the **LORD Yah Veh** said, *Go up* **Ascend**;
for to morrow
I will deliver **shall give** them into thine hand.
- 29 And *Israel* **Yisra El** set *liers in wait* **lurkers**
round about *Gibeah* **Gibah**.
- 30 And the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
went up **ascended**
against the *children sons of Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
on the third day,
and *put themselves in array* **lined up**
against *Gibeah* **Gibah**, as at other times **time by time**.
- 31 And the *children sons of Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
went out **against to meet** the people,
and were *drawn* **tor**n away from the city;
and they began to smite of the people, and *kill* **pierce**,
as at other times **time by time**, in the highways,
of which one *goeth up* **ascendeth**
to the house of *God* **Elohim**,
and the other **one** to *Gibeah* **Gibah** in the field,
about thirty men of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
- 32 And the *children sons of Benjamin* **Ben Yamin** said,
They are smitten down *before us* **at our face**, as at the first.
But the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El** said, Let us flee,
and draw **tear** them **away** from the city
unto the highways.
- 33 And all the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
rose up out of their place,

JUDGES 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- line up to war against them at Gibah.
- 21 And the sons of Ben Yamin go from Gibah
and ruin to the earth of the Yisra Eliy that day
twenty—two thousand men.
- 22 And the people — the men of Yisra El
strengthen themselves and line up to war again
in the place they lined up the first day.
- 23 And the sons of Yisra El ascend
and weep at the face of Yah Veh until evening;
and ask counsel of Yah Veh, saying,
Add I to approach to war
against the sons of Ben Yamin — my brother?
- 24 And Yah Veh says, Ascend against him.
— and the sons of Yisra El approach
against the sons of Ben Yamin the second day.
- 25 And Ben Yamin goes to meet them from Gibah
the second day;
and ruins to the earth of the sons of Yisra El again
eighteen thousand men — all who draw the sword.
- 26 And all the sons of Yisra El and all the people
ascend and come to the house of Elohim and weep;
and settle there at the face of Yah Veh;
and fast that day until evening;
and holocaust holocausts and shelamim
at the face of Yah Veh.
- 27 And the sons of Yisra El ask of Yah Veh
— for the ark of the covenant of Elohim
is there in those days;
- 28 and Pinechas the son of El Azar the son of Aharon
stands at the face of it in those days, saying,
Go I yet again to war against the sons of Ben Yamin
— my brother?
Or cease?
- And Yah Veh says, Ascend;
for tomorrow I give them into your hand.
- 29 And Yisra El sets lurkers all around Gibah:
30 and on the third day
the sons of Yisra El
ascend against the sons of Ben Yamin
and line up against Gibah, as time by time:
31 and the sons of Ben Yamin
come out to meet the people;
and they tear away from the city
and begin to smite and pierce the people
— about thirty men of Yisra El, as time by time
— in the highways
whereby one ascends to the house of Elohim
and to Gibah in the field.
- 32 And the sons of Ben Yamin say,
They are smitten at our face, as at the first.
- But the sons of Yisra El say,
We flee
and tear them away from the city to the highways.
- 33 And all the men of Yisra El rise from their place

JUDGES 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and put themselves in array lined up
at Baaltamar **Baal Tamar**:
and the *liers in wait* **lurkers** of Israel **Yisra El**
came forth out of their places,
even out of the *meadows* **barrens** of Gibeah **Gibah**.
34 And there came against Gibeah **Gibah**
ten thousand chosen men out of all Israel **Yisra El**,
and the *battle* **war** was sore **heavy**:
but they knew not that evil was near **touch**ed them.
35 And the **LORD Yah Veh** smote Benjamin **Ben Yamin**
before Israel **at the face** of **Yisra El**:
and the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**
destroyed **ruined** of the *Benjamites* **Ben Yamin** that day
twenty and five thousand and an hundred men:
all these drew the sword.
36 So the *children* **sons** of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**
saw that they were smitten:
for the men of Israel **Yisra El**
gave place to the *Benjamites* **Ben Yamin**,
because they *trusted* **confided**
unto the *liers in wait* **lurkers**
which they had set beside Gibeah **Gibah**.
37 And the *liers in wait* **lurkers** hastened,
and *rushed* **spread** upon Gibeah **Gibah**;
and the *liers in wait* **lurkers** drew *themselves* along,
and smote all the city with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword.
38 Now there was an *appointed sign* **a season**
between the men of Israel **Yisra El**
and the *liers in wait* **lurkers**,
that they should make
a *great flame* **an abounding heaviness**
with smoke *rise up* **ascending** out of the city.
39 And when the men of Israel **Yisra El**
retired **returned** in the *battle* **war**,
Benjamin **Ben Yamin** began to smite and *kill* **pierce**
of the men of Israel **Yisra El** about thirty persons:
for they said,
Surely **In being smitten**, they are smitten *down*
before us **at our face**, as in the first *battle* **war**.
40 But when the *flame* **signal** began to *arise up* **holocaust**
out of the city with a pillar of smoke,
the *Benjamites* **looked** **Ben Yamin** **turned face**
behind them, and, behold,
the *flame of the city* **ascended up** **totally holocausted**
to *heaven* **the heavens**.
41 And when the men of Israel **Yisra El** turned again,
the men of Benjamin were *amazed* **Ben Yamin hastened**:
for they saw that evil was *come* **touch**ed upon them.
42 Therefore they turned *their backs*
before **at the face** of the men of Israel **Yisra El**
unto the way of the wilderness;
but the *battle* **war** overtook them;
and them which came out of the cities
they *destroyed* **ruined** in the midst of them.
43 Thus they *inclosed* **surrounded**
the *Benjamites* **Ben Yamin** **round about**,
and *chased* **pursued** them,
and trode them down with ease
over against Gibeah **Gibah**
toward **from the sunrising** **rising sun**.
44 And there fell of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**
eighteen thousand men;
all these were men of valour.
45 And they turned **face** and fled toward the wilderness
unto the rock of Rimmon:
and they gleaned of them in the highways
five thousand men;
and *pursued* **hard adhered** after them unto Gidom,
and *slew* **smote** two thousand men of them.
46 So that all which fell that day of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**
were twenty and five thousand men that drew the sword;
all these were men of valour.
47 But six hundred men turned **face**
and fled to the wilderness unto the rock Rimmon,
and *abode* **settled** in the rock Rimmon four months.
48 And the men of Israel *turned again* **Yisra El turned**
upon the *children* **sons** of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**,
and smote them with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword,

JUDGES 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and line up at Baal Tamar:
and the lurkers of Yisra El come from their places
— from the barrens of Gibah:
34 ten thousand chosen men of all Yisra El
and come against Gibah;
and the war is heavy:
but they know not that evil touches them.
35 And Yah Veh
smites Ben Yamin at the face of Yisra El:
and that day
the sons of Yisra El ruin of the Ben Yamin
twenty—five thousand and a hundred men
— all who draw the sword.
36 And the sons of Ben Yamin see they are smitten:
for the men of Yisra El give place to the Ben Yamin,
because they confide in the lurkers
they set beside Gibah:
37 and the lurkers hasten and spread on Gibah;
and the lurkers draw along
and smite all the city with the mouth of the sword.
38 And there becomes a season
to the men of Yisra El with the lurkers,
to make an abounding heaviness
of smoke ascend from the city.
39 And the men of Yisra El return in the war,
and Ben Yamin begins to smite and pierce
about thirty persons of the men of Yisra El:
for they say,
In smiting, they are smitten at our face
as in the first war.
40 And the signal — a pillar of smoke
begins to holocaust from the city,
the Ben Yamin turn face behind them, and behold,
the city totally holocausts to the heavens.
41 And the men of Yisra El turn again,
and the men of Ben Yamin hasten:
for they see that evil touches them:
42 and they turn from the face of the men of Yisra El
to the way of the wilderness;
and the war overtakes them:
and they ruin them who come in their midst
from the cities.
43 Thus they surround the Ben Yamin
and pursue them
and tread them down with ease
over against Gibah from the rising sun.
44 And eighteen thousand men of Ben Yamin fall
— all men of valour:
45 and they turn face and flee toward the wilderness
to the rock of Rimmon:
and they glean five thousand of their men
in the highways;
and adhere after them to Gidom;
and smite two thousand of their men:
46 and all who fall that day of Ben Yamin
— twenty—five thousand men
who draw the sword — all men of valour.
47 And six hundred men turn face
and flee to the wilderness to the rock Rimmon
and settle in the rock Rimmon four months:
and the men of Yisra El
turn on the sons of Ben Yamin
and smite them with the mouth of the sword

JUDGES 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

as well the men **integrity** of every city,
as the beast **even animals**,
and all that came to hand **were found**:
also they set on fire all the cities that they came to **found**.

THE OVERLOOKED SCION OF YISRA EL

21 Now the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
had *sworn* **oathed** in *Mizpeh* **Mispeh**, saying,
There shall not any **a man** of us give his daughter
unto *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin** to *wife* **woman**.
2 And the people came to the house of *Elohim*,
and *abode* **settled** there till even
before God **at the face of Elohim**,
and lifted up their voices, and wept *sore* **a great weeping**;
3 And said,
O *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
why is **becometh** this come to pass in *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that there should be to day one *tribe* **scion**
lacking **overlooked** in *Israel* **Yisra El**?
4 And **so be** it came to pass, on the morrow,
that the people *rose* **started** early,
and built there *an* **a sacrifice** altar,
and offered *burnt offerings* **holocausted holocausts**
and *peace offerings* **shelamim**.
5 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** said,
Who is there among all the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
that came **ascended** not up with the congregation
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**?
For they had made a great oath concerning him
that came **ascended** not up
to the *LORD* **Yah Veh** to *Mizpeh* **Mispeh**, saying,
In deathifying, He shall *surely* be put to death **deathified**.
6 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
repented them **sighed**
for *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin** their brother, and said,
There is one *tribe* **scion** cut off from *Israel* **Yisra El** this day.
7 How shall we *do* **work** for *wives* **women**
for them that remain,
seeing we have *sworn* **oathed** by the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
that we *will* **shall** not give them of our daughters
to *wives* **women**?
8 And they said,
What one is there of the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
that came **ascended** not up to *Mizpeh* **Mispeh**
to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**?
And, behold, there came *none* **no man** to the camp
from *Jabeshgilead* **Yabesh Gilad**
to the *assembly* **congregation**.
9 For the people were *numbered* **mustered**,
and, behold, there were *none* **no man**
of the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jabeshgilead* **Yabesh Gilad**
there.
10 And the *congregation* **witnesses** sent thither
twelve thousand men of the *valiantest* **sons of valour**,
and *commanded* **misvahed** them, saying,
Go and smite
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jabeshgilead* **Yabesh Gilad**
with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword,
with the women and the *children* **toddlers**.
11 And this is the *thing* **word** that ye shall *do* **work**,
ye shall *utterly* **destroy** *devote* every male,
and every woman
that hath *lain by man* **known bedding with male**.
12 And they found among
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jabeshgilead* **Yabesh Gilad**
four hundred *young* **lass** virgins,
that had known no man by *lying* **bedding** with any male:
and they brought them unto the camp to Shiloh,
which is in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan**.
13 And the whole *congregation* **witness**
sent *some* to *speak* **word**
to the *children* **sons** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
that were in the rock Rimmon,
and to call *peaceably* **shalom** unto them.
14 And *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
came again **returned** at that time;
and they gave them *wives* **women**
which they had saved alive
of the women of *Jabeshgilead* **Yabesh Gilad**:

JUDGES 20, 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— the integrity of city, to animals,
and to all they find:
also they set on fire all the cities they find.

THE OVERLOOKED SCION OF YISRA EL

21 And the men of *Yisra El* oath in *Mispeh*,
saying, No man of us
gives his daughter to Ben Yamin to woman.
2 And the people come to the house of *Elohim*
and settle there until evening at the face of *Elohim*
and lift their voices and weep a great weeping;
3 and say, O *Yah Veh Elohim* of *Yisra El*,
why becomes this in *Yisra El*,
that today one scion is overlooked in *Yisra El*?
4 And so be it, on the morrow,
the people start early and build there a sacrifice altar
and holocaust holocausts and shelamim.
5 And the sons of *Yisra El* say,
Who among all the scions of *Yisra El*
ascends not with the congregation to *Yah Veh*?
For a great oath became concerning him
who ascends not to *Yah Veh* to *Mispeh*,
saying, In deathifying, deathify him.
6 And the sons of *Yisra El*
sigh for *Ben Yamin* their brother, and say,
There is one scion cut off from *Yisra El* this day.
7 How work we women for them who remain,
seeing we oathed by *Yah Veh*
that we not give them of our daughters to women?
8 And they say,
Which one of the scions of *Yisra El*
ascended not to *Mispeh* to *Yah Veh*?
And, behold,
no man of *Yabesh Gilad*
came to the camp to the congregation:
9 and the people muster themselves,
and, behold,
no man of the settlers of *Yabesh Gilad*.
10 And the witness
sends twelve thousand men of the sons of valour,
and misvahs them, saying,
Go and smite the settlers of *Yabesh Gilad*
with the women and the toddlers
with the mouth of the sword:
11 and this is the word you work:
devote every male
and every woman
having known bedding with a male.
12 And among the settlers of *Yabesh Gilad*
they find four hundred lass virgins,
who know no man by bedding with any male:
and they bring them to the camp to Shiloh
in the land of *Kenaan*:
13 and the whole witness sends and words
to the sons of *Ben Yamin* in the rock Rimmon,
and calls shalom to them.
14 And *Ben Yamin* returns at that time;
and they give them women whom they saved alive
of the women of *Yabesh Gilad*:

JUDGES 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and yet so they *sufficed* them not **found not so for them.**
15 And the people
repented them **sighed** for Benjamin **Ben Yamin**,
because that the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
had made **worked** a breach
in the *tribes* **scions** of Israel **Yisra El.**
16 Then the elders of the *congregation* **witness** said,
How shall we *do* **work**
for *wives* **women** for them that remain,
seeing the women are *destroyed* **desolated**
out of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**?
17 And they said,
There must be an inheritance **A possession** for them
that be escaped **of the escapees** of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**,
that a *tribe* **no scion**
be not *destroyed* **wiped** out of Israel **Yisra El.**
18 Howbeit
we may **can** not give them *wives* **women** of our daughters:
for the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El** have *sworn* **oathed**,
saying, Cursed be he
that giveth a *wife* **woman** to Benjamin **Ben Yamin.**
19 Then they said, Behold,
there is a *feast* **celebration** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
in Shiloh *yearly* **from days by days**
in a place which is on the north *side* of Beth El,
on the east side **toward the sun rising** of the highway
that *goeth up* **ascendeth**
from *Bethel* **Beth El** to Shechem,
and on the south of Lebonah.
20 Therefore they *commanded* **misvahed**
the *children* **sons** of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**, saying,
Go and *lie in wait* **lurk** in the vineyards;
21 And see, and, behold, if the daughters of Shiloh
come out to dance **go and whirl** in **round** dances,
then *come* **go** ye out of **from** the vineyards,
and catch you every man his *wife* **woman**
of the daughters of Shiloh,
and go to the land of Benjamin **Ben Yamin.**
22 And it shall be, when their fathers or their brethren
come unto us to *complain* **contend**,
that we *will* **shall** say unto them,
Be favourable **Grant charism** unto them for our sakes:
because we *reserved* **took** not
to each man his *wife* **woman** in the war:
for ye did not give unto them at this time,
that ye *should be guilty* **had guilty.**
23 And the *children* **sons** of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**
did **worked** so,
and *took* **lifted** them *wives* **women**,
according to their number,
of them that *danced* **whirled**, whom they *caught* **stripped**:
and they went and returned unto their inheritance,
and *repaired* **strengthened** the cities,
and *dwelt* **settled** in them.
24 And the *children* **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**
departed **walked** thence at that time,
every man to his *tribe* **scion** and to his family,
and they went out from thence
every man to his inheritance.
25 In those days
there was no *king* **sovereign** in Israel **Yisra El**:
every man *did* **worked**
that which was *right* **straight** in his own eyes.

JUDGES 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they still find not for them.
15 And the people sigh for Ben Yamin,
because Yah Veh worked a breach
in the scions of Yisra El.
16 Then the elders of the witness say,
How work we women for them who remain,
seeing the women of Ben Yamin are desolated?
17 And they say,
A possession of the escapees is to Ben Yamin
— that no scion of Yisra El becomes wiped out.
18 But we
— we cannot give them women of our daughters:
for the sons of Yisra El oathed, saying,
Cursed — he who gives a woman to Ben Yamin.
19 Then they say, Behold,
there is a celebration of Yah Veh from days by days
in Shiloh north of Beth El
toward the sun rising of the highway
that ascends from Beth El to Shechem,
and on the south of Lebonah.
20 And they misvah the sons of Ben Yamin, saying,
Go and lurk in the vineyards;
21 and see, and behold,
whether the daughters of Shiloh
go and whirl in round dances;
then every man goes from the vineyards
and catches his woman of the daughters of Shiloh,
and goes to the land of Ben Yamin.
22 And so be it,
when their fathers or their brothers
come to us to contend,
we say unto them,
Grant them charism for our sakes:
because each man took not his woman in the war:
for you gave neither them at that time, nor guilty.
23 And thus the sons of Ben Yamin work,
and lift women, according to their number,
of them who whirl, whom they strip:
and they go and return to their inheritance
and strengthen the cities and settle in them.
24 And the sons of Yisra El
walk up and down at that time
— every man to his scion and to his family;
and from there, every man goes to his inheritance.
25 In those days
there is no sovereign in Yisra El:
every man works straight in his own eyes.

1 SAMUEL 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE WOMEN OF EL QANAH

1 Now there was **And so be it,**
a certain **one** man of *Ramathaimzophim* **Ramahayim Sophim,**
of mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim,**
and his name was *Elkanah* **El Qanah,**
the son of *Jerocham* **Yerocham,**
the son of *Elihu* **Eli Hu,** the son of *Tohu* **Tochu,**
the son of *Zuph* **Suph,** an *Ephrathite* **Ephrathiy:**
2 And he had two *wives* **women;**
the name of the one was Hannah,
and the name of the *other* **second** Peninnah:
and Peninnah had children, but Hannah had no children.
3 And this man
went up **ascended** out of his city **yearly days by days**
to worship **prostrate** and to sacrifice
unto the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth** in Shiloh.
And the two sons of Eli, Hophni and *Phinehas* **Pinechas,**
the priests of the *LORD* **Yah Veh,** were there.
4 And when the *time* was **day became**
that *Elkanah* offered **El Qanah** sacrificed,
he gave to Peninnah his *wife* **woman,**
and to all her sons and her daughters, portions:
5 But unto Hannah
he gave a *worthy* **one double faced** portion;
for he loved Hannah:
6 but the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had shut up her womb.
And her *adversary* **tribulation**
also provoked **vexed** her *sore* to vexation,
for to *make* **irritate** her *fret,*
7 because the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had shut up her womb.
And as he *did so* **so he worked** year by year,
when she went up **ascended often enough**
to the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh,**
so she *provoked* **vexed** her;
therefore she wept, and did not eat.
8 Then said *Elkanah* **El Qanah** her *husband* **man** to her,
Hannah, why weepst thou? and why eatest thou not?
and why is thy heart *grieved* **villified?**
am not I better to thee than ten sons?
9 So Hannah rose up after they had eaten in Shiloh,
and after they had drunk.
Now Eli the priest sat **settled** upon a *seat* **throne**
by a post of the *temple* **manse** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh.**
10 And she was in *bitterness* **bitter** of soul,
and prayed unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh,**
and in *weeping,* wept *sore.*
11 And she vowed a *vow,* and said,
O *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth,**
if in *seeing,* thou *wilt indeed* look **seest**
on the *affliction* **humiliation** of *thine* **handmaid thy maid,**
and remember me,
and not forget *thine* **handmaid thy maid,**
but *wilt* **shalt** give unto *thine* **handmaid thy maid**
a man *child* **seed,**
then I *will* **shall** give him unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
all the days of his life,
and there shall no razor *come* **ascend** upon his head.

12 And **so be it** it came to *pass,*
as she *continued* **praying** **abounded to pray**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh,**
that Eli *marked* **guarded** her mouth.
THE VEXATION OF HANNAH
13 Now Hannah, she *spake* **worded** in her heart;
only her lips *moved* **quivered,**
but her voice was not heard:
therefore Eli *thought* **fabricated**
she had been *drunken* **intoxicated.**
14 And Eli said unto her,
How long *wilt* **shalt** thou be *drunken* **intoxicated?**
put away **turn aside** thy wine from thee.
15 And Hannah answered and said, No, my *lord* **adoni,**
I am a woman of a *sorrowful* **hard in** spirit:
I have drunk neither wine nor *strong drink* **intoxicants,**
but have poured out my soul
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh.**
16 Count **Give** not *thine* **handmaid thy maid**
for **as at the face of** a daughter of *Belial* **Beli Yaal:**

1 SHEMU EL 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE WOMEN OF EL QANAH

1 And so be it, one man
of Ramahayim Sophim of mount Ephrayim;
and his name is El Qanah,
the son of Yerocham the son of Eli Hu
the son of Tochu the son of Suph — an Ephrathiy:
2 and he has two women;
the name of the one is Hannah,
and the name of the second Peninnah:
and Peninnah has children
but Hannah has no children.
3 And this man ascends from his city days by days
to prostrate and to sacrifice
to Yah Veh Sabaoth in Shiloh:
and there are the two sons of Eli,
Hophni and Pinechas, the priests of Yah Veh:
4 and so be it, the day El Qanah sacrifices,
he gives portions to Peninnah his woman,
and to all her sons and her daughters:
5 and he gives one double faced portion to Hannah;
because he loves Hannah:
and Yah Veh shut her womb;
6 and her tribulation also vexes her to vexation
to irritate her;
because Yah Veh shut her womb.
7 And thus he works year by year,
as she ascends often enough to the house of Yah Veh,
thus she is vexed;
and she weeps, and eats not.
8 And El Qanah her man says to her,
Hannah, why weep you? aAnd why eat you not?
And why villify your heart?
Am not I better to thee than ten sons?
9 — and Hannah rises in Shiloh
after they eat and after they drink.
Now Eli the priest settles on a throne
by a post of the manse of Yah Veh:
10 and she is bitter of soul and prays to Yah Veh:
and in weeping, she weeps;
11 and she vows a vow, and says,
O Yah Veh Sabaoth,
if in seeing, you see the humiliation of your maid,
and remember me, and forget not your maid,
but give your maid a man seed,
then I give him to Yah Veh all the days of his life,
and no razor ascends on his head.
12 And so be it,
as she abounds to pray at the face of Yah Veh,
that Eli guards her mouth.

THE VEXATION OF HANNAH

13 And Hannah words within her heart;
only, her lips quiver, but her voice is not heard:
so Eli fabricates she is intoxicated:
14 and Eli says unto her,
Until when are you intoxicated?
Turn aside from your wine.
15 And Hannah answers and says, No, my adoni,
I am a woman, hard in spirit:
I drink neither wine nor intoxicants,
but pour out my soul at the face of Yah Veh:
16 Give not your maid
as the face of a daughter of Beli Yaal:

1 SAMUEL 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for out of the abundance of my *complaint meditation*
and *grief vexation* have I *spoken worded* hitherto.
17 Then Eli answered and said, Go in *peace shalom*:
and the *God Elohim* of *Israel Yisra El*
grant give thee thy petition that thou hast asked of him.
18 And she said, Let *thine handmaid thy maid*
find *grace charism* in thy *sight eyes*.
So the woman went her way, and did eat,
and her *countenance face* was no more *sad*.

THE BIRTH OF SHEMU EL

19 And they rose up in the morning early,
and *worshipped prostrated*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
and returned, and came to their house to Ramah:
and *Elkanah El Qanah* knew Hannah his *wife woman*;
and the *LORD Yah Veh* remembered her.
20 Wherefore *so be* it *came to pass*,
when the time was come about in revolution of days
after Hannah had conceived, that she *bare birthed* a son,
and called his name *Samuel Shemu El*, *saying*,
Because I have asked him of *the LORD Yah Veh*.
21 And the man *Elkanah El Qanah*, and all his house,
went up ascended
to offer *sacrifice unto the LORD Yah Veh*
the *yearly sacrifice sacrifice of days*, and his vow.
22 But Hannah *went ascended* not up;
for she said unto her *husband man*,
I will not go up until the child When the lad be weaned,
and then I *will shall* bring him,
that he may *appear be seen*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
and there *abide for ever settle eternally*.
23 And *Elkanah El Qanah* her *husband man* said unto her,
Do Work what seemeth thee good in *thine eyes*;
tarry settle until thou have weaned him;
only *the LORD establish Yah Veh raise* his word.
So the woman *abode settled*,
and *gave suckled* her son *suck* until she weaned him.
24 And when she had *weaned him dealt*,
she *took him ascended* him up with her,
with three bullocks,
and one ephah of flour, and a *bottle bag* of wine,
and brought him
unto the house of *the LORD Yah Veh* in Shiloh:
and the *child lad* was *young but a lad*.
25 And they *slew slaughtered* a bullock,
and brought the *child lad* to Eli.
26 And she said, Oh my *lord adoni*,
as thy soul liveth, my *lord adoni*,
I am the woman that *stood stationed* by thee here,
praying unto *the LORD Yah Veh*.
27 For this *child lad* I prayed;
and *the LORD Yah Veh* hath given me my petition
which I asked of him:
28 Therefore also I have lent him to *the LORD Yah Veh*;
as long as *all the days* he liveth
he shall be lent to *the LORD Yah Veh*.
And he *worshipped prostrated*
the LORD to Yah Veh there.

THE PRAYER OF PRAISE OF HANNAH

2 And Hannah prayed, and said,
My heart *rejoiceth jumpeth for joy* in *the LORD Yah Veh*,
mine horn is exalted in *the LORD Yah Veh*:
my mouth is enlarged over mine enemies;
because I *rejoice cheer* in thy salvation.
2 There is none holy as *the LORD Yah Veh*:
for there is none *beside except* thee:
neither is there any rock like our *God Elohim*.
3 *Talk no more Abound not thy word*
so *exceeding proudly high and lofty*;
let not *arrogancy come out impudence go* of your mouth:
for *the LORD Yah Veh* is a *God an El* of knowledge,
and by him *actions exploits* are *weighed gauged*.
4 The bows of the mighty *men* are *broken crushed*,
and they that stumbled are girded with *strength valour*.
5 They that were *full satisfied*
have hired out themselves for bread;
and they that were *hungry famished* ceased:

1 SHEMU EL 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for I word from the abundance
of my meditation and vexation.

17 Then Eli answers and says, Go in shalom:
and *may Elohim* of *Yisra El*
give the petition you ask of him.

18 And she says,
O that your maid find charism in your eyes.
— and the woman goes her way, and eats,
and her face is no more.

THE BIRTH OF SHEMU EL

19 And they rise early in the morning
and prostrate at the face of Yah Veh;
and return and come to their house to Ramah:
and El Qanah knows Hannah his woman;
and Yah Veh remembers her.

20 And so be it,
in the revolution of days after Hannah conceives,
she births a son and calls his name Shemu El
— because I asked him of Yah Veh.

21 And the man El Qanah, and all his house,
ascend to sacrifice the sacrifice of days
and his vow to Yah Veh.

22 And Hannah ascends not;
for she says to her man,
When the lad weans
then I bring him to be seen at the face of Yah Veh
and settle there eternally.

23 And El Qanah her man says to her,
Work what seems good in your eyes;
settle until you wean him;
only, *may* Yah Veh raise his word.

24 So the woman settles,
and suckles her son until she weans him:
and she weans him and ascends him with her
with three bullocks
and one ephah of flour and a bag of wine;
and brings him to the house of Yah Veh in Shiloh:
and the lad is but a lad:
25 and they slaughter a bullock
and bring the lad to Eli.

26 And she says, Oh my adoni,
as your soul lives, my adoni,
I am the woman who stationed here by you,
praying unto Yah Veh:
— for this lad I prayed;
and Yah Veh gives me the petition I asked of him:
27 and also I lend him to Yah Veh;
28 all the days he lives he becomes lent to Yah Veh.
— and he prostrates to Yah Veh there.

THE PRAYER OF PRAISE OF HANNAH

2 And Hannah prays and says,
My heart jumps for joy in Yah Veh;
my horn exalts in Yah Veh:
my mouth enlarges over my enemies
because I cheer in your salvation.
2 None is holy as Yah Veh
— none except you:
— no rock like our Elohim.
3 Neither abound your word so high and lofty;
nor comes impudence from your mouth:
for Yah Veh is an El of knowledge
and by him are exploits gauged.

4 The bows of the mighty are crushed,
and they who stumble gird with valour:
5 the satisfied hire themselves out for bread;
and they who famish, cease:

1 SAMUEL 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

so that the barren **sterile** hath *born* **birthed** seven;
and she that hath many *children* **sons**
is waxed feeble **languisheth**.
6 *The LORD killeth* **Yah Veh deathifieth**,
 and *maketh alive* **enliveneth**:
he *bringeth down* **descendeth** to the grave **sheol**,
 and *bringeth up* **ascendeth**.
7 *The LORD maketh poor* **Yah Veh dispossesseth**,
 and *maketh rich* **enricheth**:
 he *bringeth low* **abaseth**, and *lifteth up*.
8 He *raiseth up* the poor out of the dust,
 and *lifteth up* the *beggar* **needy** from the dunghill,
 to set them among *princes* **volunteers**,
 and to make them inherit the throne of *glory* **honour**:
 for the pillars of the earth are *the LORD'S* **Yah Veh's**,
 and he hath set the world upon them.
9 He *will keep* **shall guard** the feet of his *saints* **mercied**,
 and the wicked shall be *silent* **hushed** in darkness;
 for by *strength* **force** shall no man prevail **mightily**.
10 *The adversaries* **contenders** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
 shall be *broken to pieces* **terrified**;
 out of *heaven* **the heavens** shall he thunder upon them:
 the LORD **Yah Veh** shall *judge* **rule**
 the *ends* **finality** of the earth;
 and he shall give strength unto his *king* **sovereign**,
 and exalt the horn of his anointed.
11 And *Elkanah* **El Qanah** went to Ramah to his house.
 And the *child* **lad** did minister unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
 before at the face of Eli the priest.

THE SONS OF ELI

12 Now the sons of Eli were sons of *Belial* **Beli Yaal**;
 they knew not *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
13 And the priest's *custom* **judgment** with the people was,
 that, when any man *offered* **sacrificed** sacrifice,
 the priest's *servant* **lad** came,
 while the flesh was *in seething* **stewing**,
 with a *fleshhook* **fork** of three teeth in his hand;
14 And he *struck* **smote** it into the *pan* **laver**,
 or *kettle* **boiler**, or caldron, or *pot* **skillet**;
 all that the *fleshhook* **brought up** **fork ascended**
 the priest took for himself.
 So they *did* **worked** in Shiloh
 unto all the *Israelites* **Yisra Eliy** that came *thither*.
15 Also before they *burnt* **incensed** the fat,
 the priest's *servant* **lad** came,
 and said to the man that sacrificed,
 Give flesh to roast for the priest;
 for he *will not have sodden* **shall take no stewed** flesh
 of thee,
 but *raw* **live**.
16 And if any man said unto him,
 In incensing, Let them *not fail to burn* **incense** the fat
 presently as this day,
 and *then* take as *much* as thy soul desireth;
 then he *would answer* **should say** to him, *Nay*;
 but thou shalt give it me now:
 and if not, I *will* **shall** take it by *force* **strength**.
17 Wherefore the sin of the *young men* **lads**
 was very **mighty** great
 before the LORD at the face of **Yah Veh**:
 for men *abhorred* **scorned**
 the offering of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

THE LADHOOD MINISTRY OF SHEMU EL

18 But *Samuel* **Shemu El** ministered
 before the LORD at the face of **Yah Veh**,
 being a child — a **lad**, girded with a linen ephod.
19 Moreover his mother
 made **worked** him a little *coat* **mantle**,
 and *brought* **ascended** it to him
 from year to year **days by days**,
 when she *came up* **ascended** with her *husband* **man**
 to offer **sacrifice** the yearly sacrifice of **days**.
20 And Eli blessed *Elkanah* **El Qanah** and his *wife* **woman**,
 and said,
 The LORD give **Yah Veh set** thee seed of this woman
 for the *loan* **petition** which is lent to *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
 And they went unto their *own* **home** **place**.
21 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** visited Hannah,

1 SHEMU EL 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

so that the sterile births seven;
and she with many sons, languishes.
6 Yah Veh deathifies, and enlivens;
 he descends to sheol, and ascends:
7 Yah Veh dispossesses, and enriches;
 he abases, and lifts:
8 he raises the poor from the dust;
 and lifts the needy from the dunghill
 — to set them among volunteers
 — to inherit the throne of honor:
 for the pillars of the earth are unto Yah Veh
 and on them he set the world.
9 He guards the feet of his mercied
 and the wicked hush in darkness;
 for no man prevails mightily by force.
10 Yah Veh — his contenders terrify;
 from the heavens he thunders on them:
 Yah Veh rules the finality of the earth;
 he gives his sovereign strength
 and exalts the horn of his anointed.
11 And El Qanah goes to his house in Ramah:
 and the lad ministers to Yah Veh
 at the face of Eli the priest.

THE SONS OF ELI

12 And the sons of Eli are sons of Beli Yaal;
 they know not Yah Veh.
13 And the judgment of the priest with the people is,
 when any man sacrifices sacrifice,
 that while the flesh stews,
 the lad of the priest comes
 with a fork of three teeth in his hand;
14 and he smites it into the laver
 or boiler or caldron or skillet;
 and all that ascends with the fork
 the priest takes for himself:
 thus they work to all the Yisra Eliy
 who come to Shiloh.
15 And ere they incense the fat,
 the lad of the priest comes
 and says to the man who sacrifices,
 Give the priest flesh to roast;
 and he takes no stewed flesh from you — only, live.
16 And the man says unto him,
 In incensing, incense the fat, as this day,
 and take as your soul desires.
 And he says to him, Give it to me now:
 and if not, I take it by strength.
17 Wherefore the sin of the lads is mighty great
 at the face of Yah Veh:
 because men scorn the offering of Yah Veh.

THE LADHOOD MINISTRY OF SHEMU EL

18 And Shemu El ministers at the face of Yah Veh
 — a lad, girt with a linen ephod:
19 and his mother works him a little mantle,
 and ascends it to him days by days,
 as she ascends with her man
 to sacrifice the sacrifice of days.
20 And Eli blesses El Qanah and his woman,
 and says,
 Yah Veh sets you seed of this woman
 for the petition she asked of Yah Veh.
21 And they go to their place;
 and Yah Veh visits Hannah

1 SAMUEL 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

so that she conceived,
and bare **birthed** three sons and two daughters.
And the *child Samuel* **lad Shemu El** grew
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**.
22 Now Eli was very **mighty** old,
and heard
all that his sons *did* **worked** unto all *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and how they lay with the women that *assembled* **hosted**
at the *door* **opening**
of the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation.
23 And he said unto them,
Why *do* **work** ye *such things* **according to these words**?
for I hear of your evil *dealings* **words** by all this people.
24 Nay, my sons; for it is no good report that I hear:
ye make the *LORD'S* **Yah Veh's** people
to *transgress* **trespass**.
25 If one man sin against *another* **man**,
the *judge* **Elohim** shall *judge* **pray** for him:
but if a man sin against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
who shall *intreat* **pray** for him?
Notwithstanding
they hearkened not unto the voice of their father,
because the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
would *slay* **desired** to *deathify* them.
26 And the *child Samuel* grew **lad Shemu El** walked on
and **greatened**,
and was *in favour* **goodly** both with the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and also with men.
PROPHECY AGAINST THE HOUSEHOLD OF ELI
27 And there came a man of *God* **Elohim** unto Eli,
and said unto him, Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Did I plainly appear **In exposing, exposed I**
unto the house of thy father,
when they were in *Egypt* **Misrayim**
in *Pharaoh's* **Paroh's** house?
28 And did I choose him
out of all the tribes **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El** to be my priest,
to *offer* **holocaust** upon *mine* **my sacrifice** altar,
to *burn* **incense** incense,
to *wear* **bear** an ephod *before me* **at my face**?
and did I give unto the house of thy father
all the *offerings made by fire* **firings**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
29 Wherefore *kick* **trample** ye
at my sacrifice and at mine offering,
which I have *commanded* **misvahed** in my habitation;
and honourest thy sons above me,
to *make yourselves fat with the chiefest* **cut the firstlings**
of all the offerings of *Israel* **Yisra El** my people?
30 Wherefore **Therefore**,
the *LORD* **God of Israel** saith
an oracle of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
In saying, I said *indeed* that thy house,
and the house of thy father,
should walk *before me for ever* **at my face eternally**:
but now the *LORD* saith **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
Be it far from me;
for them that honour me I *will* **shall** honour,
and they that despise me shall *be* **lightly esteemed** I **abase**.
31 Behold, the days come,
that I *will* **shall** cut off thine arm,
and the arm of thy father's house,
that there shall not be an old man in thine house.
32 And thou shalt see an *enemy* **look at the tribulation**
in of my habitation,
in all the *wealth* which *God* **Elohim**
shall *give* **Israel well**—**prepare for Yisra El**:
and there shall not be an old man in thine house
for ever **all days**.
33 And the man of thine,
whom I shall not cut off from *mine* **my sacrifice** altar,
shall *be to consume* **finish off** thine eyes,
and *to grieve thine heart* **lanquish thy soul**:
and all the increase of thine house
shall **these men** die *in the flower of their age*.
34 And this shall be a sign unto thee,
that shall come upon thy two sons,
on Hophni and *Phinehas* **Pinechas**;

1 SHEMU EL 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

so that she conceives and births
three sons and two daughters:
and the lad Shemu El grows at the face of Yah Veh.
22 And Eli *is* mighty old,
and hears of all his sons work to all Yisra El;
and how they lie down with the women who host
at the opening of the tent of the congregation.
23 And he says to them,
Why work you according to these words?
for I hear of your evil words by all this people.
24 No, my sons; for it is no good report that I hear:
you cause the people of Yah Veh to trespass.
25 When one man sins against man,
Elohim prays for him:
but when a man sins against Yah Veh,
who prays for him?
And they hearken not to the voice of their father,
because Yah Veh desires to deathify them.
26 And the lad Shemu El walks on and greatens,
and is goodly
— both with Yah Veh and also with men.
PROPHECY AGAINST THE HOUSEHOLD OF ELI
27 And a man of Elohim comes to Eli,
and says to him, Thus says Yah Veh:
In exposing,
exposed I myself to the house of your father
when they were in Misrayim in the house of Paroh?
28 And of all the scions of Yisra El
choose I him to be my priest?
— to holocaust on my sacrifice altar?
To incense incense?
— to bear an ephod at my face?
— to give the house of your father
all the firings of the sons of Yisra El?
29 Why trample you at my sacrifice and at my offering
which I misvah in my habitation?
— and honor your sons above me
to cut the firstlings of all the offerings
of Yisra El my people?
30 So
— an oracle of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
In saying, I say,
that your house and the house of your father
walk at my face eternally:
and now
— an oracle of Yah Veh
far be it from me;
for they who honor me, I honor;
and they who despise me, I abase.
31 Behold, the days come,
that I cut off your arm
and the arm of the house of your father
that there not be an old man in your house.
32 And you,
look at the tribulation of my habitation,
in all that Elohim well—prepares for Yisra El:
that there not be an old man in your house all days:
33 and the man of yours,
whom I cut not off from my sacrifice altar,
finishes off your eyes and lanquishes your soul:
and of all the increase of your house, these men die.
34 And this is a sign to you to come on your two sons
— on Hophni and Pinechas;

1 SAMUEL 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

in one day they shall die both of them.
35 And I *will shall* raise me up a *faithful trustworthy* priest,
that shall *do work* according to that which is in mine heart
and in my *mind soul*:
and I *will shall* build him a *sure permanent* house;
and he shall walk *before at the face of* mine anointed
for ever *all days*.
36 And *so be* it *shall come to pass*,
that every one that *is left remaineth* in thine house
shall come and *crouch prostrate* to him
for a *piece coin* of silver and a *morsel round* of bread,
and shall say, *Put Scrape* me, I *pray beseech* thee,
into one of the *priests' offices priesthood's*,
that I may eat a *piece morsel* of bread.

THE CALLING OF SHEMU EL

3 And the *child Samuel lad Shemu El*
ministered unto *the LORD Yah Veh*
before at the face of Eli.
And the word of *the LORD Yah Veh*
was *precious esteemed* in those days;
there was no *open vision broken forth*.
2 And *so be* it *came to pass*, at that *time day*,
when Eli was laid down in his place,
and his eyes began to *wax dim fade*, that he could not see;
3 And ere the lamp of *God went out Elohim quenched*
in the *temple manse of the LORD Yah Veh*,
where the ark of *God Elohim* was,
and *Samuel Shemu El* was laid down *to sleep*;
4 That *the LORD Yah Veh* called *Samuel Shemu El*:
and he *answered said*, *Here am I Behold, I*.
5 And he ran unto Eli, and said,
Here am I Behold, I; for thou calledst me.
And he said, I called not; *turn back*, lie down *again*.
And he went and lay down.
6 And *the LORD Yah Veh* called yet again,
Samuel Shemu El.
And *Samuel Shemu El* arose and went to Eli, and said,
Here am I Behold, I; for thou didst call me.
And he *answered said*, I called not, my son;
turn back, lie down *again*.
7 Now *Samuel Shemu El*
did not yet know *the LORD Yah Veh*,
neither was the word of *the LORD Yah Veh*
yet *revealed exposed* unto him.
8 And *the LORD Yah Veh*
called *Samuel Shemu El* again the third time.
And he arose and went to Eli, and said,
Here am I Behold, I; for thou didst call me.
And Eli *perceived discerned*
that *the LORD Yah Veh* had called the *child lad*.
9 Therefore Eli said unto *Samuel Shemu El*, Go, lie down:
and *so be* it *shall be*, if he call thee,
that thou shalt say, *Speak Word, LORD O Yah Veh*;
for thy servant heareth.
So *Samuel Shemu El* went and lay down in his place.
10 And *the LORD Yah Veh* came, and stood,
and called as at *other times time by time*,
Samuel Shemu El, Samuel Shemu El.
Then *Samuel answered Shemu El said*, *Speak Word*;
for thy servant heareth.
11 And *the LORD Yah Veh* said to *Samuel Shemu El*,
Behold, I *will do shall work* a *thing word* in *Israel Yisra El*,
at which both the ears of every one that heareth it
shall tingle.
12 In that day I *will perform shall raise* against Eli
all *things those* which I have *spoken worded*
concerning his house:
when I begin, I *will shall* also *make an end finish*.
13 For I have told *And I tell* him
that I *will shall* judge his house *for ever eternally*
for the *iniquity perversity* which he knoweth;
because his sons *made abased* themselves *vile*,
and he *restrained dimmed* them not.
14 And therefore
I have *sworn oathed* unto the house of Eli,
that the *iniquity perversity* of Eli's house
shall not be *purged kapar/atone* with sacrifice nor offering
for ever *eternally*.

1 SHEMU EL 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

in one day they die — both of them:
35 and I raise me a trustworthy priest,
to work according to what is in my heart
and in my soul:
and I build him a permanent house;
and he walks at the face of my anointed all days.
36 And so be it,
every one who remains in your house
comes and prostrates to him
for a coin of silver and a round of bread,
and says, Scrape me, I beseech you,
into one of the priesthoods,
that I may eat a morsel of bread.

THE CALLING OF SHEMU EL

3 And the lad Shemu El
ministers to Yah Veh at the face of Eli:
and in those days the word of Yah Veh is esteemed
— no vision breaks forth.
2 And so be it, at that day,
Eli lies down in his place
and his eyes begin to fade so he cannot see;
3 and in the manse of Yah Veh
where the ark of Elohim is
they had not yet quenched the lamp of Elohim;
and Shemu El lies down.
4 Yah Veh calls Shemu El:
and he says, Behold, I!
5 — and he runs to Eli and says,
Behold, I; for you call me.
And he says, I called not; turn back; lie down.
6 And he goes and lies down.
And Yah Veh adds to call, Shemu El!
And Shemu El rises and goes to Eli and says,
Behold, I; for you call me.
And he says, I called not, my son;
turn back; lie down.
7 Now Shemu El neither knows Yah Veh yet
nor is the word of Yah Veh exposed to him yet.
8 And Yah Veh adds to call Shemu El the third time;
and he rises and goes to Eli and says,
Behold, I; for you call me.
9 And Eli discerns that Yah Veh calls the lad;
and Eli says to Shemu El, Go, lie down:
and so be it, if he calls you, that you say,
Word, O Yah Veh; for your servant hears.
10 So Shemu El goes and lies down in his place;
and Yah Veh comes and stands
and as time by time, calls, Shemu El! Shemu El!
Then Shemu El says, Word; for your servant hears.
11 And Yah Veh says to Shemu El,
Behold, I work a word in Yisra El,
at which both ears of every one who hears, tingles.
12 In that day I raise against Eli
all whom I worded concerning his house
— begin, and finish:
13 and I tell him that I judge his house eternally
for the perversity of which he knows;
because his sons abase themselves
and he dims them not:
14 and so I oath to the house of Eli,
that the perversity of the house of Eli kapars/atones
with neither sacrifice nor offering eternally.

1 SAMUEL 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

15 And *Samuel Shemu El* lay until the morning,
and opened the doors of the house of *the LORD Yah Veh*.
And *Samuel feared Shemu El* awed
to *shew tell* Eli the vision.

16 Then Eli called *Samuel Shemu El*, and said,
Samuel Shemu El, my son.
And he *answered said*, *Here am I Behold, I*.
And he said, What is the *thing word*
that *the LORD hath said he hath worded* unto thee?
I *pray beseech* thee *hide conceal* it not from me:
God do Elohim work so to thee, and *more so add* also,
if thou *hide any thing conceal a word* from me
of all the *things words* that he *said hath worded* unto thee.

18 And *Samuel Shemu El* told him every *whit word*,
and *hid nothing concealed naught* from him.
And he said, It is *the LORD Yah Veh*:
let him *do work* what seemeth *him good in his eyes*.

19 And *Samuel Shemu El* grew,
and *the LORD Yah Veh* was with him,
and did let none of his words fall to the *ground earth*.

20 And all *Israel Yisra El*
from Dan even to *Beersheba Beer Sheba*
knew that *Samuel Shemu El* was *established trustworthy*
to be a prophet of *the LORD Yah Veh*.

21 And *the LORD Yah Veh*
appeared again added to be seen in Shiloh:
for *the LORD Yah Veh*
revealed himself exposed to *Samuel Shemu El*
in Shiloh by the word of *the LORD Yah Veh*.

4 And the word of *Samuel Shemu El*
came to all *Israel Yisra El*.

THE ARK CAPTURED

Now *Israel Yisra El* went out
against to meet the Philistines Peleshethiy to battle war,
and *pitched encamped* beside *Ebenezer Eben Ezer*:
and the *Philistines Peleshethiy*
pitched encamped in *Aphek Apheq*.

2 And the *Philistines Peleshethiy*
put themselves in array lined up
against Israel to meet Yisra El:
and when they *joined battle allowed war*,
Israel Yisra El was smitten
before at the face of the Philistines Peleshethiy:
and they *slew smote* of the *army ranks* in the field
about four thousand men.

3 And when the people were come into the camp,
the elders of *Israel Yisra El* said,
Wherefore hath *the LORD Yah Veh* smitten us to day
before at the face of the Philistines Peleshethiy?
Let us *fetch take*
the ark of the covenant of *the LORD Yah Veh*
out of Shiloh unto us,
that, when it cometh among us,
it may save us out of the *hand palm* of our enemies.

4 So the people sent to Shiloh,
that they might *bring bear* from thence
the ark of the covenant
of *the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*,
which *dwelleth settleth* between the *cherubims cherubim*:
and the two sons of Eli, Hophni and *Phinehas Pinechas*,
were there with the ark of the covenant of *God Elohim*.

5 And when the ark of the covenant of *the LORD Yah Veh*
came into the camp,
all *Israel Yisra El* shouted with a great *shout shouting*,
so that the earth *rang again quaked*.

6 And when the *Philistines Peleshethiy*
heard the *noise voice* of the *shout shouting*, they said,
What *meaneth be* the *noise voice*
of this great *shout shouting* in the camp of the Hebrews?
And they *understood knew*
that the ark of *the LORD Yah Veh*
was come into the camp.

7 And the *Philistines were afraid Peleshethiy awed*,
for they said, *God Elohim* is come into the camp.
And they said, Woe unto us!
for there hath not been such a *thing*
heretofore since three yesters ago.

8 Woe unto us! who shall *deliver rescue* us

1 SHEMU EL 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

15 And Shemu El lies down until the morning
and opens the doors of the house of Yah Veh:
and Shemu El awes to tell Eli the vision.

16 And Eli calls Shemu El and says,
Shemu El, my son.

And he says, Behold, I.

17 And he says, What is the word he words to you?
I beseech you, conceal not from me:
may Elohim work thus to you and thus also add,
if you conceal from me
one word of all the words he worded to you.

18 And Shemu El tells him every word
and conceals naught from him.

And he says, It is Yah Veh:
may he work what seems good in his eyes.

19 And Shemu El grows and Yah Veh is with him;
and none of his words fall to the earth.

20 And all Yisra El from Dan even to Beer Sheba
knows Shemu El as a trustworthy prophet of Yah Veh:
and Yah Veh adds to appear in Shiloh:
for Yah Veh exposes to Shemu El
in Shiloh by the word of Yah Veh:

4 and the word of Shemu El comes to all Yisra El.

THE ARK CAPTURED

And Yisra El goes out to meet the Peleshethiy to war
and encamps beside Eben Ezer;
and the Peleshethiy encamp in Apheq;
2 and the Peleshethiy line up to meet Yisra El:
and they allow war
and the Peleshethiy smite Yisra El at their face:
and they smite about four thousand men of the ranks
in the field:

3 and when the people come into the camp
the elders of Yisra El say,
Yah Veh — why smites he us today
at the face of the Peleshethiy?
Let us take the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
from Shiloh to us;
to come among us
and save us from the palm of our enemies.

4 So the people send to Shiloh,
and from there
bear the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh Sabaoth
which settles between the cherubim:
and Hophni and Pinechas the two sons of Eli
are there with the ark of the covenant of Elohim:
5 and when the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
comes into the camp,
all Yisra El shouts a great shout
so that the earth quakes.

6 And the Peleshethiy hear the voice of the shout,
and they say,
What is the voice of this great shout
in the camp of the Hebrews?

And they know
that the ark of Yah Veh comes into the camp:
7 and the Peleshethiy awe,
for they say, Elohim comes into the camp.

And they say, Woe to us!
for such never became since three yesters ago.
8 Woe to us!
Who rescues us

1 SAMUEL 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

out of the hand of these mighty *Gods Elohim?*
these are the *Gods Elohim*
that smote the *Egyptians Misrayim*
with all the *plagues strokes* in the wilderness.
9 *Be strong Strengthen* and *quit yourselves like be* men,
O ye Philistines Peleshethiy,
that ye be not servants unto the Hebrews,
as they have *been to served* you:
quit yourselves like be men, and fight.
10 And the *Philistines Peleshethiy* fought,
and *Israel Yisra El* was smitten,
and they fled every man into his tent:
and there was a *very mighty* great *slaughter stroke*;
for there fell of *Israel Yisra El*
thirty thousand *footmen on foot*.
11 And the ark of *God Elohim* was taken;
and the two sons of Eli, Hophni and *Phinehas Pinechas,*
were *slain deathified*.

THE DEATH OF ELI

12 And there ran a man of *Benjamin Ben Yamin*
out of the *army ranks,*
and came to Shiloh the same day
with his *clothes rent tailoring ripped,*
and with *earth soil* upon his head.
13 And when he came, *lo behold,*
Eli *sat settled* upon a *seat throne*
by the *wayside hand of the way* watching:
for his heart trembled for the ark of *God Elohim*.
And when the man came into the city, and told it,
all the city cried out.
14 And when Eli heard the *noise voice* of the *crying cry,*
he said, What *meaneth the noise is the voice*
of this *tumult multitude?*
And the man came in hastily, and told Eli.
15 Now Eli was a *son of* ninety and eight years *old;*
and his eyes were *dim arose,* that he could not see.
16 And the man said unto Eli,
I am he that came out of the *army ranks,*
and I fled to day out of the *army ranks*.
And he said, What is *there done the word,* my son?
17 And the *messenger he who evangelized*
answered and said, *Israel Yisra El* is fled
before the Philistines at the face of the Peleshethiy,
and there hath been also a great *slaughter plague*
among the people,
and thy two sons also, Hophni and *Phinehas Pinechas,*
are *dead deathified,*
and the ark of *God Elohim* is taken.
18 And *so be* it came to pass,
when he *made mention of remembered*
the ark of *God Elohim,*
that he fell from off the *seat throne* backward
by *through* the *side handle* of the *gate portal,*
and his neck brake, and he died:
for he was an old man, and heavy.
And he had judged *Israel Yisra El* forty years.

THE BIRTH OF IY CHABOD

19 And his daughter in law,
Phinehas' wife Pinechas' woman,
was with *child conceived,* near to be *delivered birth:*
and when she heard the *tidings report*
that the ark of *God Elohim* was taken,
and that her father in law and her *husband man*
were *dead deathified,*
she bowed herself and *travailed birthed;*
for her pains came *turned* upon her.
20 And about the time of *her death she died*
the women *that stood stationed* by her
said *worded* unto her,
Fear Awe not; for thou hast *born birthed* a son.
But she answered not,
neither did she *regard it set her heart*.
21 And she *named called* the *child Ichabod lad Iy Chabod,*
saying,
The *glory honour* is *departed exiled* from *Israel Yisra El:*
because the ark of *God Elohim* was taken,
and because of her father in law and her *husband man*.
22 And she said,

1 SHEMU EL 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

from the hand of these mighty *elohim*
— these *elohim* who smote the *Misrayim*
with all the *strokes* in the wilderness?
9 Strengthen! Become men, O you *Peleshethiy!*
— that you not be servants to the Hebrews
as they served you.
Become men! And fight!
10 And the *Peleshethiy* fight and smite *Yisra El;*
and every man flees to his tent:
and there is a mighty great stroke;
for thirty thousand of *Yisra El* on foot fall.
11 And they take the ark of *Elohim;*
and deathify Hophni and *Pinechas* the two sons of *Eli*.

THE DEATH OF ELI

12 And a man of the ranks of *Ben Yamin* runs
and comes to Shiloh the same day
with his tailoring ripped and with soil on his head:
and he comes, and behold,
13 *Eli* settles on a throne by the hand of the way
watching:
for his heart trembles for the ark of *Elohim:*
and the man comes into the city and tells it,
and all the city cries out.

14 And *Eli* hears the voice of the cry,
and he says, What is the voice of this multitude?
— and the man comes in hastily and tells *Eli*.

15 And *Eli* is a son of ninety—eight years;
and his eyes rise so he cannot see.

16 And the man says to *Eli,*
I come from the ranks
and today I flee from the ranks.

And he says, What is the word, my son?

17 And he who evangelizes, answers and says,
Yisra El flees the face of the *Peleshethiy*
and also a great plague became among the people
— and they also deathified your two sons
Hophni and *Pinechas;*
and took the ark of *Elohim*.

18 And so be it,
he remembers the ark of *Elohim,*
and he falls off the throne backward
through the handle of the portal;
and his neck breaks and he dies:
for he is an old man and heavy.
And he judges *Yisra El* forty years.

THE BIRTH OF IY CHABOD

19 And his daughter in law, the woman of *Pinechas,*
conceives, near to birth:
and when she hears the report
that they took the ark of *Elohim*
and deathified her father in law and her man,
she bows herself and births;
for her pains turn on her.

20 And about the time she dies,
the women stationed by her
word to her, *Awe* not; you birth a son.

21 But she neither answers, nor sets her heart:
and she calls the lad *Iy Chabod,*
saying, The honor is exiled from *Yisra El!*
— because they took the ark of *Elohim*
and because of her father in law and her man.

22 And she says,

1 SAMUEL 4—6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

The glory honour is departed exiled from Israel Yisra El:
for the ark of God Elohim is taken.

THE ARK REMOVED

5 And the Philistines Peleshethiy
took the ark of God Elohim,
and brought it from Ebenezer Eben Ezer unto Ashdod.
2 When the Philistines Peleshethiy
took the ark of God Elohim,
they brought it into the house of Dagon,
and set it by beside Dagon.
3 And when they of Ashdod the Ashdodiy
arose started early on the morrow, behold,
Dagon was fallen upon his face to the earth
before at the face of the ark of the LORD Yah Veh.
And they took Dagon,
and set returned him in his place again.
4 And when they
arose started early on the morrow morning, behold,
Dagon was fallen upon his face to the ground earth
before at the face of the ark of the LORD Yah Veh;
and the head of Dagon and both the palms of his hands
were cut off upon the threshold;
only the stump of Dagon was left survived to him.
5 Therefore neither the priests of Dagon,
nor any that come into Dagon's house,
tread on the threshold of Dagon in Ashdod unto this day.
6 But the hand of the LORD Yah Veh
was heavy upon them of Ashdod,
and he destroyed desolated them,
and smote them with emerods hemorrhoids,
even Ashdod and the coasts borders thereof.
7 And when the men of Ashdod saw that it was so,
they said, The ark of the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El
shall not abide settle with us:
for his hand is sore hard upon us,
and upon Dagon our god elohim.
8 They sent therefore and gathered all the lords ringleaders
of the Philistines Peleshethiy unto them, and said,
What shall we do work
with the ark of the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El?
And they answered said,
Let the ark of the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El
be carried about go unto Gath.
And they carried turned the ark
of the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El about thither.
9 And it was so became, that,
after they had carried turned it about,
the hand of the LORD Yah Veh was against the city
with a very mighty great destruction confusion:
and he smote the men of the city, both small and great,
and they had emerods in their secret parts
hemorrhoids erupted.
10 Therefore they sent the ark of God Elohim
to Ekron Eqron.
And so be it came to pass,
as the ark of God Elohim came to Ekron Eqron,
that the Ekronites Eqroniy cried out, saying,
They have brought turned about the ark
of the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El to us,
to slay deathify us and our people.
11 So they sent and gathered together
all the lords ringleaders of the Philistines Peleshethiy,
and said,
Send away the ark of the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El,
and let it go again return to his own place,
that it slay deathify us not, and our people:
for there was a deadly destruction confusion of death
throughout all the city;
the hand of God Elohim was very mighty heavy there.
12 And the men that died not
were smitten with the emerods hemorrhoids:
and the cry of the city
went up ascended to heaven the heavens.

THE ARK RETURNED

6 And the ark of the LORD Yah Veh
was in the country field of the Philistines Peleshethiy
seven months.
2 And the Philistines Peleshethiy

1 SHEMU EL 4—6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

The honor is exiled from Yisra El:
because they took the ark of Elohim.

THE ARK REMOVED

5 And the Peleshethiy take the ark of Elohim
and bring it from Eben Ezer to Ashdod:
2 and the Peleshethiy take the ark of Elohim
and bring it into the house of Dagon
and set it beside Dagon.
3 And the Ashdodiy start early on the morrow,
and behold, Dagon fallen on his face to the earth
at the face of the ark of Yah Veh;
and they take Dagon and return him in his place.
4 And when they start early on the morrow morning,
behold, Dagon fallen on his face to the earth
at the face of the ark of Yah Veh;
and the head of Dagon and both palms of his hands
are cut off on the threshold;
only, Dagon survives.
5 So neither the priests of Dagon
nor any who come into the house of Dagon
tread on the threshold of Dagon in Ashdod
to this day.
6 But the hand of Yah Veh is heavy on Ashdod;
and he desolates them
and smites them with hemorrhoids
— Ashdod and the borders thereof.
7 And the men of Ashdod see,
and so be it, they say,
The ark of the Elohim of Yisra El settles not with us:
for his hand is hard on us
and on Dagon our elohim.
8 So they send and gather all the ringleaders
of the Peleshethiy to them and say,
What work we with the ark of Elohim of Yisra El?
And they say,
The ark of Elohim of Yisra El goes to Gath.
And they turn around the ark of Elohim of Yisra El:
and so be it, after they turn it around,
the hand of Yah Veh is against the city
with a mighty great confusion:
and he smites the men of the city,
both small and great;
and hemorrhoids erupt.
10 So they send the ark of Elohim to Eqron:
and so be it, as the ark of Elohim comes to Eqron,
the Eqroniy cry out, saying,
They turn around the ark of Elohim of Yisra El to us,
to deathify us and our people.
11 So they send
and gather all the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy
and say, Send the ark of Elohim of Yisra El:
to return to its own place,
that it not deathify us and our people:
for there becomes a confusion of death
throughout all the city;
the hand of Elohim is mighty heavy there.
12 And the men who die not
are smitten with the hemorrhoids:
and the cry of the city ascends to the heavens.

THE ARK RETURNED

6 And the ark of Yah Veh
is in the field of the Peleshethiy seven months:
2 and the Peleshethiy

1 SAMUEL 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

called for the priests and the diviners, saying,
What shall we **do work** to the ark of the **LORD Yah Veh?**
tell us have us know
wherewith we shall send it to his place.
3 And they said,
If ye send away the ark of the **God Elohim** of **Israel Yisra El**,
send it not empty;
but in **returning**, any wise return him
a trespass offering for the guilt:
then ye shall be healed,
and it shall be known to you
why his hand is not **removed turned aside** from you.
4 Then said they,
What shall be *the trespass offering for the guilt*
which we shall return to him?
They answered **said**,
Five golden *emerods* **hemorrhoids**, and five golden mice,
according to the number
of the **lords ringleaders** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy:**
for one plague was on you all,
and on your **lords ringleaders**.
5 Wherefore ye shall **make work**
images of your *emerods* **hemorrhoids**,
and images of your mice that **mar ruin** the land;
and ye shall give *glory* **honour**
unto the **God Elohim** of **Israel Yisra El:**
peradventure perhaps
he **will lighten shall slighen** his hand from off you,
and from off your **gods elohim**, and from off your land.
6 Wherefore then do ye **harden callous** your hearts,
as the *Egyptians* **Misrayim** and *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
hardened calloused their hearts?
when he had *wrought wonderfully* **exploited** among them,
did they not **let send** the people **go away**,
and they *departed* **went?**
7 Now therefore **make a work one** new **cart wagon**,
and take two *milch kine* **suckling heifers**,
on which there hath *come* **ascended** no yoke,
and **tie hitch** the *kine* **heifers** to the **cart wagon**,
and **bring turn** their *calves* **sons**
home from them **to their house:**
8 And take the ark of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and **lay give** it upon the **cart wagon**;
and **put set** the *jewels* **instruments** of gold,
which ye return him for *a trespass offering* **the guilt**,
in a coffer by the side thereof;
and send it away, that it may go.
9 And see,
if it *goeth up* **ascendeth**
by the way of his own *coast* **border**
to *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh**,
then he hath *done* **worked** us this great evil:
but if not,
then we shall know
that it is not his hand that *smote* **touched** us:
it was a **chance happening** that happened to us.
10 And the men *did* **worked** so;
and took two *milch kine* **suckling heifers**,
and *tyed* **hitched** them to the **cart wagon**,
and **shut up** **restrained** their *calves* **sons**
at home **the house:**
11 And they *laid* **set** the ark of the **LORD Yah Veh**
upon the **cart wagon**,
and the coffer with the mice of gold
and the images of their *emerods* **hemorrhoids**.
12 And the *kine* **heifers** took the straight way
to the way of *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh**,
and **went along the highway in going, did go on one path**,
lowing bellowing as they went,
and turned not aside to the right *hand* or to the left;
and the **lords ringleaders** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
went after them
unto the border of *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh**.
13 And they of *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh**
were *reaping* **harvesting** their wheat harvest in the valley:
and they lifted up their eyes,
and saw the ark, and *rejoiced* **cheered** to see it.

1 SHEMU EL 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

call for the priests and the diviners, saying,
What work we to the ark of Yah Veh?
— to know how to send it to his place.
3 And they say,
When you send the ark of Elohim of Yisra El,
send it not empty;
but in returning, return it with that for the guilt:
then you become healed;
and know why his hand turns not aside from you.
4 Then they say, What return we to him for the guilt?
They say,
Five golden hemorrhoids and five golden mice,
according to the number
of the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy:
for one plague is on you all and on your ringleaders.
5 Work images of your hemorrhoids
and images of your mice that ruin the land;
and give honor to Elohim of Yisra El:
perhaps he slighens his hand from off you
and from off your elohim and from off your land.
6 Why callous your hearts,
as the Misrayim and Paroh calloused their hearts?
When he exploited among them,
sent they not the people away — and they went?
7 So now work one new wagon;
and take two suckling heifers
on which no yoke ascended;
and hitch the heifers to the wagon;
and turn their sons to their house:
and take the ark of Yah Veh
and give it on the wagon;
and set the instruments of gold
which you return him for the guilt
in a coffer by the side thereof;
and send it away, to go;
9 and see:
if it ascends by the way of its own border
to Beth Shemesh,
then he works us this great evil:
but if not,
then we know it is not his hand that touches us:
it is a happening that happens us.
10 And thus the men work;
and take two suckling heifers
and hitch them to the wagon
and restrain their sons at the house:
11 and on the wagon they set the ark of Yah Veh
and the coffer with the mice of gold
and the images of their hemorrhoids.
12 And the heifers take the straight way
to the way of Beth Shemesh
and in going, go on one path, bellowing as they go,
and turn not aside, right or left;
and the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy go after them
to the border of Beth Shemesh.
13 And they of Beth Shemesh
harvest their wheat harvest in the valley:
and they lift their eyes
and see the ark and cheer to see it:

1 SAMUEL 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 14 And the cart **wagon** came into the field of *Joshua* **Yah Shua**, a *Bethshemite* **Beth Shemeshiy**, and stood there, where there was a great stone: and they *clave* **split** the wood **timber** of the cart **wagon**, and offered **holocausted** the *kine* **heifers** a *burnt offering* **holocaust** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
- 15 And the *Levites* **Leviym** took down **descended** the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, and the coffer that was with it, wherein the *jewels* **instruments** of gold were, and *put* **set** them on the great stone: and the men of *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh** offered *burnt offerings* **holocausted holocausts** and sacrificed sacrifices the same day unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
- 16 And when the five *lords* **ringleaders** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** had seen it, they returned to *Ekron* **Eqron** the same day.
- 17 And these are the golden *emerods* **hemorrhoids** which the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** returned for a *trespass offering* **the guilt** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**; for *Ashdod* one, for *Gaza* **Azzah** one, for *Askelon* **Ashqelon** one, for *Gath* one, for *Ekron* **Eqron** one;
- 18 And the golden mice, according to the number of all the cities of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** belonging to the five *lords* **ringleaders**, both of *fenced* **fortified** cities, and of *country* villages **of the suburbs**, even unto the great stone of *Abel*, whereon they *set down* **descended** the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**: which stone remaineth unto this day in the field of *Joshua* **Yah Shua**, the *Bethshemite* **Beth Shemeshiy**.
- 19 And he smote the men of *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh**, because they had *looked* **seen** into the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, even he smote of the people fifty thousand and *threescore and ten* **seventy** men: and the people *lamented* **mourned**, because the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had smitten *many* of the people with a great *slaughter* **stroke**.
- 20 And the men of *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh** said, Who is able to stand *before* **at the face** of this holy *LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim**? and to whom shall he *go up* **ascend** from us?
- 21 And they sent *messengers* **angels** to the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Kirjathjearim* **Qiryath Arim**, saying, The *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** have brought again the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**; come **descend** ye down, and *fetch* **ascend** it up to you.
- 7 And the men of *Kirjathjearim* **Qiryath Arim** came, and *fetches up* **ascended** the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, and brought it into the house of *Abinadab* **Abi Nadab** in the hill **Gibah**, and *sanctified* **hallowed** *Eleazar* **El Azar** his son to *keep* **guard** the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
- 2 And *so be* it came to *pass*, while **from the day** the ark *abode* **settled** in *Kirjathjearim* **Qiryath Arim**, that the *time was long* **days abounded**; for it was twenty years: and all the house of *Israel* **Yisra El** lamented after the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
- 3 And *Samuel* **Spake** *Shemu El* **said** unto all the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**, saying, If ye do return unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** with all your hearts, then *put away* **turn aside** the strange *gods* **elohim** and *Ashtaroth* from among you, and prepare your hearts unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, and serve him only: and he *will deliver* **shall rescue** you out of the hand of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
- 4 Then the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** did *put away* **turned aside** *Baalim* and *Ashtaroth*,

1 SHEMU EL 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 14 and the wagon comes into the field of *Yah Shua*, a *Beth Shemeshiy*; and stands there: and a great stone is there: and they split the timber of the wagon and holocaust the heifers — a holocaust to *Yah Veh*.
- 15 And the *Leviym* descend the ark of *Yah Veh* with the coffer wherein the instruments of gold are; and set them on the great stone: and the same day the men of *Beth Shemesh* holocaust holocausts and sacrifice sacrifices to *Yah Veh*:
- 16 and the five ringleaders of the *Peleshethiy* see it, and return to *Eqron* the same day.
- 17 And these are the golden hemorrhoids the *Peleshethiy* return to *Yah Veh* for the guilt: for *Ashdod* one; for *Azzah* one; for *Ashqelon* one; for *Gath* one; for *Eqron* one: and the golden mice: for the number of all the cities of the *Peleshethiy* belonging to the five ringleaders of fortified cities and of villages of the suburbs even to the great *Abel*; whereon they descend the ark of *Yah Veh*: to this day in the field of *Yah Shua* the *Beth Shemeshiy*.
- 19 And he smites the men of *Beth Shemesh* because they saw into the ark of *Yah Veh*; and of the people he smites fifty thousand and seventy men: and the people mourn because *Yah Veh* smites the people a great stroke.
- 20 And the men of *Beth Shemesh* say, Who is able to stand at the face of *Yah Veh*, this holy *Elohim*? And to whom ascends he from us?
- 21 And they send angels to the settlers of *Qiryath Arim* saying, The *Peleshethiy* bring again the ark of *Yah Veh*; they descend and ascend it to you.
- 7 And the men of *Qiryath Arim* come and ascend the ark of *Yah Veh* and bring it into the house of *Abi Nadab* in *Gibah*; and hallow *El Azar* his son to guard the ark of *Yah Veh*.
- 2 And so be it, from the day the ark settles in *Qiryath Arim*, that the days abound; for it is twenty years: and all the house of *Yisra El* laments after *Yah Veh*.
- 3 And *Shemu El* says to all the house of *Yisra El*, saying, If you return to *Yah Veh* with all your hearts, then turn aside the strange *elohim* and *Ashtaroth* from among you and prepare your hearts to *Yah Veh* and serve him only, and he rescues you from the hand of the *Peleshethiy*.
- 4 Then the sons of *Yisra El* turn aside *Baalim* and *Ashtaroth*

1 SAMUEL 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and served the LORD Yah Veh only.

5 And Samuel Shemu El said,
Gather all Israel Yisra El to Mizpeh Mispeh,
and I will shall pray for you unto the LORD Yah Veh.
6 And they gathered together to Mizpeh Mispeh,
and drew bailed water, and poured it out
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
and fasted on that day, and said there,
We have sinned against the LORD Yah Veh.
And Samuel Shemu El
judged the children sons of Israel Yisra El
in Mizpeh Mispeh.

PELESHETHIY SUBDUED

7 And when the Philistines Peleshethiy heard
that the children sons of Israel Yisra El
were gathered together to Mizpeh Mispeh,
the lords ringleaders of the Philistines Peleshethiy
went up ascended against Israel Yisra El.
And when the children sons of Israel Yisra El heard it,
they were afraid awed
at the face of the Philistines Peleshethiy.
8 And the children sons of Israel Yisra El
said to Samuel Shemu El,
Cease Hush not to cry
unto the LORD Yah Veh our God Elohim for us,
that he will shall save us
out of the hand of the Philistines Peleshethiy.
9 And Samuel Shemu El took a sucking one milking lamb,
and offered it for a burnt offering holocausted a holocaust
wholly totally unto the LORD Yah Veh:
and Samuel Shemu El
cried unto the LORD Yah Veh for Israel Yisra El;
and the LORD heard Yah Veh answered him.
10 And as Samuel Shemu El
was offering up holocausted the burnt offering holocaust,
the Philistines Peleshethiy drew near
to battle war against Israel Yisra El:
but the LORD Yah Veh thundered
with a great thunder voice on that day
upon the Philistines Peleshethiy,
and discomfited agitated them;
and they were smitten before Israel at the face of Yisra El.
11 And the men of Israel Yisra El
went out of Mizpeh Mispeh,
and pursued the Philistines Peleshethiy, and smote them,
until they came under Bethcar Beth Kar.
12 Then Samuel Shemu El took a one stone,
and set it between Mizpeh Mispeh and Shen,
and called the name of it Ebenezer Eben Ezer, saying,
Hitherto hath the LORD Yah Veh helped us.
13 So the Philistines Peleshethiy were subdued,
and they came no more added not to come
into the coast border of Israel Yisra El:
and the hand of the LORD Yah Veh
was against the Philistines Peleshethiy
all the days of Samuel Shemu El.
14 And the cities which the Philistines Peleshethiy
had taken from Israel Yisra El
were restored to Israel Yisra El,
from Ekron Eqron even unto Gath;
and the coasts borders thereof
did Israel deliver Yisra El rescue
out of the hands of the Philistines Peleshethiy.
And there was peace became shalom
between Israel Yisra El and between the Amorites Emoriy.
15 And Samuel Shemu El judged Israel Yisra El
all the days of his life.
16 And he went enough from year to year
in circuit and turned around to Bethel Beth El,
and Gilgal, and Mizpeh Mispeh,
and judged Israel Yisra El in all those places.
17 And his return was to Ramah; for there was his house;
and there he judged Israel Yisra El;
and there he built an a sacrifice altar
unto the LORD Yah Veh.

THE DISHONEST SONS OF SHEMU EL

8 And so be it came to pass,
when Samuel was old Shemu El aged,

1 SHEMU EL 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and serve Yah Veh only.

5 And Shemu El says,
Gather all Yisra El to Mispeh
and I pray for you to Yah Veh.
6 And they gather to Mispeh
and bail water and pour it out at the face of Yah Veh
and fast on that day, and say there,
We sinned against Yah Veh.

And Shemu El judges the sons of Yisra El in Mispeh.

PELESHETHIY SUBDUED

7 And the Peleshethiy hear
that the sons of Yisra El gather to Mispeh,
and the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy
ascend against Yisra El:
and the sons of Yisra El hear
and they awe at the face of the Peleshethiy.
8 And the sons of Yisra El say to Shemu El,
Hush not to cry to Yah Veh our Elohim for us,
to save us from the hand of the Peleshethiy.
9 And Shemu El takes one milking lamb
and holocausts a holocaust totally to Yah Veh:
and Shemu El cries to Yah Veh for Yisra El;
and Yah Veh answers him.
10 And as Shemu El holocausts the holocaust,
the Peleshethiy draw near to war against Yisra El:
but on that day Yah Veh thunders
with a great voice on the Peleshethiy;
and agitates them and smites them
at the face of Yisra El.
11 And the men of Yisra El go from Mispeh
and pursue the Peleshethiy and smite them
until they come under Beth Kar.
12 And Shemu El takes one stone
and sets it between Mispeh and Shen
and calls the name of it Eben Ezer, saying,
Hitherto Yah Veh helps us.
13 So they subdue the Peleshethiy
and they add not to come into the border of Yisra El:
and the hand of Yah Veh is against the Peleshethiy
all the days of Shemu El:
14 and the cities the Peleshethiy took from Yisra El
are restored to Yisra El — from Eqron even to Gath;
and Yisra El rescues the borders thereof
from the hands of the Peleshethiy:
and shalom becomes
between Yisra El and between the Emoriy:
15 and Shemu El judges Yisra El all the days of his life:
16 and he goes enough from year to year
and turns around to Beth El and Gilgal and Mispeh
and judges Yisra El in all those places:
17 and he returns to Ramah; for his house is there:
and there he judges Yisra El;
and there he builds a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh.

THE DISHONEST SONS OF SHEMU EL

8 And so be it, Shemu El ages;

1 SAMUEL 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

1 that he *made set* his sons judges over *Israel Yisra El*.
2 Now the name of his *firstborn firstbirthed son*
was *Joel Yah El*;
and the name of his second, *Abiah Abi Yah*:
they were judges in *Beersheba Beer Sheba*.
3 And his sons walked not in his ways,
but *turned aside spread* after *lucre greed*,
and took bribes, and perverted judgment.
ELDERS OF YISRA EL REQUEST A SOVEREIGN
4 Then all the elders of *Israel Yisra El*
gathered themselves together,
and came to *Samuel Shemu El* unto Ramah,
5 And said unto him, Behold, thou art *old hast aged*,
and thy sons walk not in thy ways:
now *make set* us a *king sovereign* to judge us
like all the *nations goyim*.
6 But the *thing word*
displeased Samuel was evil in the eyes of Shemu El,
when they said, Give us a *king sovereign* to judge us.
And *Samuel Shemu El* prayed unto the *LORD Yah Veh*.
7 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto *Samuel Shemu El*,
Hearken unto the voice of the people
in all that they say unto thee:
for they have not *rejected refused* thee,
but they have *rejected refused* me,
that I should not reign over them.
8 According to all the works which they have *done worked*
since the day
that I *brought ascended* them *up out of Egypt Misrayim*
even unto this day,
wherewith they have forsaken me,
and served other *gods elohim*,
so *do work* they also unto thee.
9 Now therefore hearken unto their voice:
howbeit yet protest solemnly
only in witnessing, witness unto them,
and *shew tell* them the *manner judgment*
of the *king sovereign* that shall reign over them.
10 And *Samuel Shemu El*
told said all the words of the *LORD Yah Veh*
unto the people that asked of him a *king sovereign*.
11 And he said, This *will shall* be the *manner judgment*
of the *king sovereign* that shall reign over you:
He *will shall* take your sons,
and *appoint set* them for himself,
for his chariots, and to be his *horsemen cavalry*;
and *some shall run before at the face of* his chariots.
12 And he *will appoint shall set* him
captains governors over thousands,
and *captains governors* over fifties;
and *will shall* set them
to *ear plough* his *ground ploughing*,
and to *reap harvest* his harvest,
and to *make work* his instruments of war,
and instruments of his chariots.
13 And he *will shall* take your daughters
to be *confectionaries perfumers*,
and to be *cooks slaughterers*, and to be bakers.
14 And he *will shall* take your fields, and your vineyards,
and your oliveyards, *even* the best of them,
and give them to his servants.
15 And he *will shall* take the *tenth tithe* of your seed,
and of your vineyards,
and give to his *officers eunuchs*, and to his servants.
16 And he *will shall* take your *menservants servants*,
and your *maidservants maids*,
and your goodliest *young men youths*,
and your *asses he burros*, and *put work* them to his work.
17 He *will shall* take the *tenth tithe* of your *sheep flock*:
and ye shall be his servants.
18 And ye shall cry out in that day
because at the face of your king sovereign
which ye shall have chosen you;
and the *LORD Yah Veh*
will shall not *hear you answer you* in that day.
19 Nevertheless the people refused to *obey hear*
the voice of *Samuel Shemu El*;
and they said, Nay;
but we *will shall* have a *king sovereign* over us;

1 SHEMU EL 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and he sets his sons judges over Yisra El:
2 and the name of his firstbirthed son is Yah El
and the name of his second, Abi Yah
— judges in Beer Sheba:
3 and his sons walk not in his ways,
but spread after greed
and take bribes and pervert judgment.
ELDERS OF YISRA EL REQUEST A SOVEREIGN
4 Then all the elders of Yisra El
gather themselves together
and come to Shemu El to Ramah,
5 and say to him, Behold, you age;
and your sons walk not in your ways:
now set us a sovereign to judge us
— as all the goyim.
6 And the word is evil in the eyes of Shemu El,
when they say, Give us a sovereign to judge us.
— and Shemu El prays to Yah Veh.
7 And Yah Veh says to Shemu El,
Hearken to the voice of the people
in all they say to you:
for they refuse not you; but they refuse me;
— that I not reign over them.
8 According to all the works they worked
since the day I ascended them from Misrayim
even to this day;
wherewith they forsake me and serve other elohim,
thus also they work to you:
9 and now, hearken to their voice:
only, in witnessing, witness to them;
and tell them the judgment
of the sovereign who reigns over them.
10 And Shemu El says all the words of Yah Veh
to the people who ask a sovereign of him:
11 and he says,
This becomes the judgment
of the sovereign who reigns over you:
He takes your sons and sets them for himself
for his chariots and for his cavalry;
at the face of his chariots;
12 and sets for himself
governors over thousands and governors over fifties;
and sets them
to plough his ploughing and to harvest his harvest;
and to work his instruments of war
and instruments of his chariots:
13 and he takes your daughters for perfumers
and for slaughterers and for bakers:
14 and he takes your fields and your vineyards
and your oliveyards — the best of them
and gives them to his servants:
15 and he takes the tithe
of your seed and of your vineyards
and gives to his eunuchs and to his servants:
16 and he takes your servants and your maids
and your goodliest youths and your he burros
and works them to his work:
17 he takes the tithe of your flock:
and you become his servants:
18 and in that day
you cry out at the face of your sovereign
whom you choose:
and in that day Yah Veh answers you not.
19 And the people
refuse to hear the voice of Shemu El;
and they say, No — a sovereign over us;

1 SAMUEL 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

20 That we also may be like all the *nations* **goyim**;
and that our *king* **sovereign** may judge us,
and go out *before us* **from our face**,
and fight our *battles* **wars**.
21 And *Samuel* **Shemu El**
heard all the words of the people,
and he *rehearsed* **worded** them
in the ears of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
22 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said to *Samuel* **Shemu El**,
Hearken unto their voice,
and make them a *king* **that they have a sovereign reign**.
And *Samuel* **Shemu El** said unto the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Go ye every man unto his city.

SHEMU EL ANOINTS SHAUL

9 Now there was a man of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
whose name was *Kish* **Qish**,
the son of *Abiel* **Abi El**, the son of *Zeror* **Seror**,
the son of *Bechorath*,
the son of *Aphiah* **Aphiach**,
a *Benjamite* **Ben Yaminiy**, a *mighty man* of *power* **valour**.
2 And he had a son, whose name was *Saul* **Shaul**,
a *choice young man* **youth**, and a goodly:
and there was not
among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
a goodlier *person* **man** than he:
from his shoulders and upward
he was higher than any of the people.
3 And the *asses* **she burros** of *Kish* **Qish**
Saul's **Shaul's** father were lost.
And *Kish* **Qish** said to *Saul* **Shaul** his son,
Take now one of the *servants* **lads** with thee, and arise,
go seek the *asses* **she burros**.
4 And he passed through mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
and passed through the land of *Shalisha* **Shalishah**,
but they found them not:
then they passed through the land of *Shalim* **Shaalim**,
and there they were not:
and he passed through the land
of the *Benjamites* **Ben Yaminiy**,
but they found them not.
5 And when they were come to the land of *Zuph* **Suph**,
Saul **Shaul** said to his *servant* **lad** that was with him,
Come, and let us return;
lest my father *leave caring* **cease** for the *asses* **she burros**,
and *take thought* **be concerned** for us.
6 And he said unto him, Behold now,
there is in this city a man of *God* **Elohim**,
and he is an honourable man;
all that he *saith* **wordeth**
cometh surely to pass **in becoming, becometh**:
now let us go thither;
peradventure **perhaps** he can *shew* **tell** us
our way that we should go.
7 Then said *Saul* **Shaul** to his *servant* **lad**, But, behold,
if we go, what shall we bring the man?
for the bread
is spent **hath disappeared** in our *vessels* **instruments**,
and there is not a *present* **gift** to bring
to the man of *God* **Elohim**:
what have we?
8 And the *servant* **lad** added
and answered *Saul* **Shaul** again, and said, Behold,
I have here at **There is found in my** hand
the fourth *part* of a shekel of silver:
that *will* **shall** I give to the man of *God* **Elohim**,
to tell us our way.
9 (*Beforetime in Israel* **Formerly in Yisra El**,
when a man went to enquire of *God* **Elohim**,
thus he *spake* **saith**,
Come, and let us go to the seer:
for *he that is now called a* **the Prophet of today**
was *beforetime* **formerly** called a Seer.)
10 Then said *Saul* **Shaul** to his *servant* **lad**,
Well said **Good word**; come, let us go.
So they went unto the city
where the man of *God* **Elohim** was.
11 And as they went up **ascended**
the *hill* to **ascent** of the city,

1 SHEMU EL 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

20 that we also become as all the *goyim*;
and that our sovereign judge us
and go from our face and fight our wars.
21 And Shemu El hears all the words of the people
and he words them in the ears of Yah Veh.
22 And Yah Veh says to Shemu El,
Hearken to their voice,
to have a sovereign reign.
And Shemu El says to the men of Yisra El,
Go you every man to his city.

SHEMU EL ANOINTS SHAUL

9 And there is a man of Ben Yamin
his name is *Qish*
— the son of *Abi El* the son of *Seror*
the son of *Bechorath* the son of *Aphiach*
— a *Ben Yaminiy*, *mighty* of *valour*:
and he has a son, his name is *Shaul*
— a *youth* and goodly:
and among the sons of *Yisra El*
there is not a goodlier man than he:
from his shoulders and upward
he is higher than any of the people.
3 And the *she burros* of *Qish* the father of *Shaul*
are lost:
and *Qish* says to *Shaul* his son,
Take now one of the *lads* with you and rise;
go seek the *she burros*.
4 And he passes through mount *Ephrayim*
and passes through the land of *Shalishah*
and they find them not:
then they pass through the land of *Shaalim*
and they are not:
and he passes through the land of the *Ben Yaminiy*,
and they find them not.
5 And they come to the land of *Suph*,
and *Shaul* says to his *lad* with him,
Come; we return;
lest my father *cease* for the *she burros*
and be concerned for us.
6 And he says to him, Behold now,
there is a man of *Elohim* in this city
— an *honorable* man;
and in *becoming*, all he words becomes:
now let us go there;
perhaps he tells us the way to go.
7 Then says *Shaul* to his *lad*, And behold,
if we go, what we bring the man?
for the bread disappears in our *instruments*
and there is no gift to bring to the man of *Elohim*.
What have we?
8 And the *lad* adds to answer *Shaul* and says,
Behold, I find in my hand
the fourth of a shekel of silver:
which I give to the man of *Elohim* to tell us our way.
9 Formerly in *Yisra El*,
when a man went to enquire of *Elohim*,
he said thus,
Come and let us go to the seer!
— for the *Prophet* of today was formerly called, *Seer*.
10 Then *Shaul* says to his *lad*,
Good word! Come! We go!
— so they go to the city where the man of *Elohim* is.
11 They ascend the ascent of the city,

1 SAMUEL 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

they found young maidens lasses
going out to draw **bail** water,
and said unto them, Is the seer here?
12 And they answered them, and said, He is;
behold, he is *before you at thy face*:
make haste now, for he came to day to the city;
for there is a sacrifice of the people
to day in the *high place bamah*:
13 As soon as ye be come into the city,
thus ye shall *straightway* find him,
before he go up **ascendeth** to the *high place bamah* to eat:
for the people **will shall** not eat until he come,
because he doth bless the sacrifice;
and *afterwards thus* they eat that be *bidden called*.
Now therefore *get you up ascend ye*;
for *about this time to day* ye shall find him.
14 And they *went up ascended* into the city:
and when they were come into **the midst** of the city,
behold,
Samuel came out against Shemu El went to meet them,
for to go up **ascend** to the *high place bamah*.
15 Now the **LORD Yah Veh**
had told *Samuel exposed to Shemu El* in his ear
a **one** day *before Saul came at the face of Shaul's coming*,
saying,
16 To morrow about this time
I **will shall** send thee a man
out of the land of *Benjamin Ben Yamin*,
and thou shalt anoint him
to be *captain eminent* over my people *Israel Yisra El*,
that he may save my people
out of the hand of the *Philistines Peleshethiy*:
for I have *looked upon seen* my people,
because their cry is come unto me.
17 And when *Samuel Shemu El* saw *Saul Shaul*,
the **LORD** said unto **Yah Veh** answered him,
Behold the man whom I *spake said* to thee of!
this same shall *reign over restrain* my people.
18 Then *Saul Shaul* drew near to *Samuel Shemu El*
in **the midst** of the *gate portal*, and said,
Tell me, I *pray beseech* thee, where the seer's house is.
19 And *Samuel Shemu El* answered *Saul Shaul*,
and said, I am the seer:
go up before me ascend at my face
unto the *high place bamah*;
for ye shall eat with me to day,
and to *morrow in the morning*
I **will let shall send** thee *go away*,
and **will shall** tell thee all that is in thine heart.
20 And as for *thine asses thy she burros*
that were lost three days ago,
set not thy *mind heart* on them; for they are found.
And on whom is all the desire of *Israel Yisra El*?
Is it not on thee, and on all thy father's house?
21 And *Saul Shaul* answered and said,
Am not I a *Benjamite Ben Yaminiy*,
of the smallest of the *tribes scions* of *Israel Yisra El*?
and my family the *least lesser* of all the families
of the *tribe scion* of *Benjamin Ben Yamin*?
wherefore then *speakest wordest* thou so to me?
22 And *Samuel Shemu El*
took *Saul Shaul* and his *servant lad*,
and brought them into the *parlour chamber*,
and **made gave** them *sit in the chiefest head* place
among them that were *bidden called*,
which were about thirty *persons men*.
23 And *Samuel Shemu El* said unto the *cook slaughterer*,
Bring Give the portion which I gave thee,
of which I said unto thee, Set it by thee.
24 And the *cook slaughterer*
took up **lifted** the *shoulder leg*,
and that which was upon it,
and set it *before Saul at the face of Shaul*.
And *Samuel he* said, Behold that which *is left surviveth*!
set it *before thee at thy face*, and eat:
for unto this *time season*
hath it been *kept guarded* for thee since I said,
I have *invited called* the people.

1 SHEMU EL 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they find lasses going to bail water
and say to them, Is the Seer here?
12 And they answer them and say, He is!
Behold, he is at your face:
hasten now, for he comes today to the city;
for today there is a sacrifice of the people
in the bamah:
13 as soon as you come to the city, thus you find him;
ere he ascends to the bamah to eat:
for the people eat not until he comes,
because he blesses the sacrifice;
and thus those called, eat:
and now ascend; for today you find him.
14 And they ascend into the city:
and they come midst the city, and behold,
Shemu El goes to meet them,
to ascend to the bamah.
15 And Yah Veh exposes in the ear of Shemu El
one day at the face of the coming of Shaul, saying,
16 Tomorrow about this time
I send you a man from the land of Ben Yamin:
anoint him to be eminent over my people Yisra El,
to save my people from the hand of the Peleshethiy:
for I see my people, because their cry comes to me.
17 And when Shemu El sees Shaul,
Yah Veh answers him,
Behold the man of whom I said!
This one restrains my people.
18 Then Shaul draws near to Shemu El
midst the portal, and says,
Tell me, I beseech you,
where is the house of the seer?
19 And Shemu El answers Shaul and says,
I am the seer:
ascend at my face to the bamah;
for today you eat with me;
and in the morning I send you away;
and tell you all that is in your heart.
20 And as for your she burros
that were lost three days ago,
set not your heart on them; for they are found.
And on whom is all the desire of Yisra El?
Is it not on you and on all the house of your father?
21 And Shaul answers and says,
Am not I a Ben Yaminiy,
of the smallest of the scions of Yisra El?
and my family the lesser of all the families
of the scion of Ben Yamin?
Why then word you thus to me?
22 And Shemu El takes Shaul and his lad
and brings them into the chamber;
and gives them head place among the called
— about thirty men.
23 And Shemu El says to the slaughterer,
Give the portion I give you,
of which I say to you, Set it by you.
24 And the slaughterer lifts the leg and what is thereon
and sets it at the face of Shaul.
And he says, Behold what survives!
Set it at your face and eat:
to this season it was guarded for you saying,
I called the people.

1 SAMUEL 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

25 So Saul Shaul did eat with Samuel Shemu El that day.
And when they were come down **descended**
from the *high place bamah* into the city,
Samuel communed **he worded** with Saul Shaul
upon the *top of the house roof*.
26 And they arose **started** early:
and **so be** it came to pass,
about the *spring ascent* of the *day dawn*,
that Samuel Shemu El called Saul Shaul
to the *top of the house roof*, saying,
Up Arise, that I may send thee away.
And Saul Shaul arose, and they went out both of them,
he and Samuel Shemu El, *abroad out*.
27 And as they were *going down descending*
to the end of the city,
Samuel Shemu El said to Saul Shaul,
Bid the servant Say that the lad pass on
before us from our face,
(and he passed on), but stand thou still *a while today*,
that I may *shew have* thee **hear** the word of *God Elohim*.

THE ANOINTING OF SHAUL

10 Then Samuel Shemu El took a *vial flask* of oil,
and poured it upon his head, and kissed him, and said,
Is it not because *the LORD Yah Veh* hath anointed thee
to be *captain eminent* over his inheritance?
2 When thou art *departed gone* from me to day,
then thou shalt find two men by Rachel's *sepulchre tomb*
in the border of *Benjamin Ben Yamin* at *Zelzah Selsach*;
and they *will shall* say unto thee,
The asses **she burros** which thou wentest to seek
are found: and, *lo behold*,
thy father hath left the *care word* of the asses **she burros**,
and *sorroweth is concerned* for you, saying,
What shall I *do work* for my son?
3 Then shalt thou *go on forward pass beyond* from thence,
and thou shalt come to the *plain mighty oak* of Tabor,
and there *shall meet thee shalt thou find* three men
going up ascending to God Elohim to Bethel Beth El,
one *carrying bearing* three kids,
and *another carrying one bearing*
three *loaves rounds* of bread,
and *another carrying one bearing a bottle bag* of wine:
4 And they *will salute shall ask shalom* of thee,
and give thee two *loaves of bread breads*;
which thou shalt *receive take* of their hands.
5 After that thou shalt come to the hill of *God Elohim*,
where is the *garrison station* of the *Philistines Peleshethiy*:
and **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
when thou art come thither to the city,
that thou shalt meet a *company line* of prophets
coming down descending from the *high place bamah*
with a *psaltery bagpipe*, and a *tabret tambourine*,
and a *pipe flute*, and a harp, *before them at their face*;
and they shall prophesy:
6 And the Spirit of *the LORD Yah Veh*
will come shall prosper upon thee,
and thou shalt prophesy with them,
and shalt be turned into another man.
7 And let it be, when these signs are come unto thee,
that thou *do work*
as occasion serve thee thy hand findeth;
for *God Elohim* is with thee.
8 And thou shalt *go down descend*
before me at my face to Gilgal; and, behold,
I *will come down shall descend* unto thee,
to *offer burnt offerings holocaust holocausts*,
and to sacrifice sacrifices of *peace offerings shelamim*:
seven days shalt thou *tarry wait*, till I come to thee,
and *shew have* thee **know** what thou shalt *do work*.
9 And it was *so became*,
that when he had turned **to face** his *back shoulder*
to go from Samuel Shemu El,
God gave Elohim turned to him another heart:
and all those signs *came to pass became* that day.
10 And when they came thither to the *hill Gibah*,
behold, a *company line* of prophets met him;
and the Spirit of *God came Elohim prospered* upon him,
and he prophesied among them.

1 SHEMU EL 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

25 So Shaul eats with Shemu El that day:
and they descend from the bamah to the city,
and he words with Shaul on the roof:
26 and they start early, and so be it,
about the ascent of the dawn,
Shemu El calls Shaul to the roof, saying,
Rise, and I send you away.
— and Shaul rises and they both go out
— he and Shemu El — out.
27 And they descend to the end of the city,
and Shemu El says to Shaul,
Say the lad to pass on from our face — to pass on;
but you stand until today, to hear the word of Elohim.

THE ANOINTING OF SHAUL

10 And Shemu El takes a flask of oil
and pours it on his head and kisses him and says,
Is it not because Yah Veh anoints you
eminent over his inheritance?
2 When you go from me today,
you find two men by the tomb of Rachel
in the border of Ben Yamin at Selsach;
and they say to you,
The she burros you went to seek are found:
and behold,
your father left the word of the she burros
and is concerned for you,
saying, What work I for my son?
3 And pass beyond from there
and go to the mighty oak of Tabor;
and there you find three men
ascending to Elohim to Beth El
— one bearing three kids
and one bearing three rounds of bread
and one bearing a bag of wine:
4 and they ask shalom of you
and give you two breads;
take them from their hands:
5 after that, come to the hill of Elohim
where the station of the Peleshethiy is:
and so be it, when you come to the city,
you meet a line of prophets
descending from the bamah
with a bagpipe and a tambourine
and a flute and a harp at their face;
and they prophesy:
6 and the Spirit of Yah Veh prospers on you
and you prophesy with them
and turn into another man.
7 And so be it, when these signs come to you,
work as your hand finds;
for Elohim is with you:
8 and descend at my face to Gilgal; and behold,
I descend to you to holocaust holocausts
and to sacrifice sacrifices of shelamim:
wait seven days, until I come to you,
and have you know what to work.
9 And so be it,
when he turns to face his shoulder
to go from Shemu El,
Elohim turns another heart to him:
and all those signs become that day.
10 And they come to Gibah,
and behold, a line of prophets meet him;
and the Spirit of Elohim prospers on him
and he prophesies among them.

1 SAMUEL 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

11 And **so be** it came to pass,
when all that knew him *beforetime* **three yesters ago**
saw that, behold,
he prophesied among the prophets,
then the people said *one* **man to another friend**,
What is this that is come unto the son of *Kish* **Qish**?
Is *Saul* **Shaul** also among the prophets?
12 And *one* **a man** of the same place answered and said,
But who is their father?
Therefore it became a proverb,
Is *Saul* **Shaul** also among the prophets?
13 And when he had
made an end of **finished** prophesying,
he came to the *high place* **bamah**.
14 And *Saul's* **Shaul's** uncle
said unto him and to his *servant* **lad**,
Whither went ye?
And he said, To seek the *asses* **she burros**:
and when we saw that they were no where,
we came to *Samuel* **Shemu El**.
15 And *Saul's* **Shaul's** uncle said, Tell me, I pray thee,
what *Samuel* **Shemu El** said unto you.
16 And *Saul* **Shaul** said unto his uncle,
In telling, He told us *plainly*
that the *asses* **she burros** were found.
But of the *matter* **word** of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
whereof *Samuel* **spake** **Shemu El saith**, he told him not.
SHAUL SET AS SOVEREIGN
17 And *Samuel* **Shemu El**
called **summoned** the people *together*
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** to *Mizpeh* **Mispeh**;
18 And said unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Thus saith
the *LORD* **God** *Yah Veh Elohim* of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
I brought up *Israel* **ascended** *Yisra El*
out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and delivered **rescued** you
out of the hand of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
and out of the hand of all *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**,
and of them that oppressed you:
19 And ye have this day *rejected* **refused** your *God* **Elohim**,
who himself saved you
out of all your *adversities* **evils** and your tribulations;
and ye have said unto him, *Nay*,
but set a *king* **sovereign** over us.
Now therefore *present* **set** yourselves
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**
by your *tribes* **scions**, and by your thousands.
20 And when *Samuel* **Shemu El** had caused
all the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
to come near **approach**,
the *tribe* **scion** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
was taken **captured**.
21 When he had caused
the *tribe* **scion** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
to come near **approach** by their families,
the family of *Matri* was taken **captured**,
and *Saul* **Shaul** the son of *Kish* **Qish** was taken **captured**:
and when they sought him, he could not be found.
22 Therefore
they *enquired* **asked** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** further,
if the man should yet come *thither* **hither**.
And the *LORD* **answered** **Yah Veh said**,
Behold he hath hid himself among the *stuff* **instruments**.
23 And they ran and *fetches* **took** him thence:
and when he stood among the people,
he was higher than any of the people
from his shoulders and upward.
24 And *Samuel* **Shemu El** said to all the people,
See ye him whom the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath chosen,
that there is none like him among all the people?
And all the people shouted, and said,
God save the king **The sovereign lives**.
25 Then *Samuel* **told** **Shemu El worded** to the people
the *manner* **judgment** of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
and wrote it **inscribed** in a *book* **scroll**,
and laid **set** it up before the *LORD* **at the face of Yah Veh**.

1 SHEMU EL 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

11 And so be it,
all who knew him three yesters ago, see;
and behold, he prophesies among the prophets,
and the people say, man to friend,
What is this that becomes to the son of Qish?
Is Shaul also among the prophets?
12 And a man of the same place answers and says,
And who is their father?
So, so be it, a proverb,
Is Shaul also among the prophets?
13 And he finishes prophesying,
and he comes to the bamah.
14 And the uncle of Shaul says to him and to his lad,
Where went you?
And he says, To seek the she burros:
and we see that they are nowhere,
and we come to Shemu El.
15 And the uncle of Shaul says, Tell me, I pray you,
what Shemu El says to you.
16 And Shaul says to his uncle,
In telling, he tells us they found the she burros:
but of the word of the sovereigndom,
whereof Shemu El says, he tells him not.
SHAUL SET AS SOVEREIGN
17 And Shemu El
summons the people to Yah Veh to Mispeh;
and says to the sons of Yisra El,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
I ascended Yisra El from Misrayim
and rescued you from the hand of Misrayim
and from the hand of all sovereigndoms
and of them who oppressed you:
19 and you have, this day, refused your Elohim,
who himself
saved you from all your evils and your tribulations;
and you said to him,
No! But set a sovereign over us.
And now, set yourselves at the face of Yah Veh
by your scions and by your thousands.
20 And Shemu El has all the scions of Yisra El approach,
and captures the scion of Ben Yamin:
21 and he has the scion of Ben Yamin
approach by their families,
and captures the family of Matri;
and captures Shaul the son of Qish:
and when they seek him, he is not found.
22 So they ask Yah Veh further,
if the man yet comes hither.
And Yah Veh says,
Behold he hides himself among the instruments.
23 And they run and take him thence:
and he stands among the people,
and he is higher than any of the people
from his shoulders and upward.
24 And Shemu El says to all the people,
See him whom Yah Veh chooses
— there is no one like him among all the people?
And all the people shout and say,
The sovereign lives!
25 Then Shemu El words to the people
the judgment of the sovereigndom
and inscribes in a scroll
and sets it at the face of Yah Veh.

1 SAMUEL 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

And Samuel Shemu El sent all the people away,
every man to his house.
26 And Saul/Shaul also
went home to his house to Gibeah Gibah;
and there went with him a band of valiant men,
whose hearts God Elohim had touched.
27 But the children sons of Belial Beli Yaal said,
How shall this man save us?
And they despised him, and brought no presents offerings.
But he held his peace hushed.

SHAUL DEFEATS THE AMMONIY

11 Then Nahash Nachash the Ammonite Ammoniy
came up ascended,
and encamped against Jabeshgilead Yabesh Gilad:
and all the men of Jabesh Yabesh
said unto Nahash Nachash,
Make Cut a covenant with us,
and we will shall serve thee.
2 And Nahash Nachash the Ammonite Ammoniy
answered said to them,
On By this condition
will shall I make a covenant cut with you,
that I may thrust bore out all your right eyes,
and lay it for a reproach upon all Israel Yisra El.
3 And the elders of Jabesh Yabesh said unto him,
Give us seven days' respite Slacken seven days,
that we may send messengers angels
unto all the coasts borders of Israel Yisra El:
and then, if there be no man to save us,
we will shall come out to thee.
4 Then came the messengers angels
to Gibeah Gibah of Saul Shaul,
and told the tidings worded the words
in the ears of the people:
and all the people lifted up their voices, and wept.
5 And, behold,
Saul Shaul came after the herd oxen out of the field;
and Saul Shaul said,
What aileth be to the people that they weep?
And they told scribed him
the tidings words of the men of Jabesh Yabesh.
6 And the Spirit of God Elohim
came prospered upon Saul Shaul
when he heard those tidings words,
and his anger wrath was kindled greatly mightily.
7 And he took a yoke of oxen,
and hewed dismembered them in pieces,
and sent them
throughout all the coasts borders of Israel Yisra El
by the hands of messengers angels, saying,
Whosoever cometh goeth not forth
after Saul Shaul and after Samuel Shemu El,
so shall it be done worked unto his oxen.
And the fear of the LORD Yah Veh fell on the people,
and they came out with went as one consent man.
8 And when he numbered mustered them in Bezek Bezeq,
the children sons of Israel Yisra El
were three hundred thousand,
and the men of Judah Yah Hudah thirty thousand.
9 And they said unto the messengers angels that came,
Thus shall ye say
unto the men of Jabeshgilead Yabesh Gilad,
To morrow, by that time the sun be hot,
ye shall have help salvation.
And the messengers angels came
and shewed told it to the men of Jabesh Yabesh;
and they were glad cheered.
10 Therefore the men of Jabesh Yabesh said,
To morrow we will shall come out unto you,
and ye shall do work with us
all that seemeth good unto you in your eyes.
11 And it was so on the morrow,
that Saul put Shaul set the people
in three companies heads;
and they came into the midst of the host camp
in the morning watch,
and slew smote the Ammonites Ammoniy
until the heat of the day:

1 SHEMU EL 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And Shemu El sends all the people
— every man to his house:
26 and Shaul also goes to his house to Gibah;
and with him,
go valiant men whose hearts Elohim touches.
27 And the sons of Beli Yaal say,
How — this man save us?
And they despise him and bring no offerings.
But he hushes.

SHAUL DEFEATS THE AMMONIY

11 And Nachash the Ammoniy ascends
and encamps against Yabesh Gilad:
and all the men of Yabesh say to Nachash,
Cut a covenant with us, and we serve you.
2 And Nachash the Ammoniy says to them,
By this I cut with you,
that I bore out all your right eyes
and lay it for a reproach on all Yisra El.
3 And the elders of Yabesh say to him,
Slacken seven days;
and we send angels to all the borders of Yisra El:
and if there is no man to save us,
we come to you.
4 And the angels come to Gibah of Shaul
and word the words in the ears of the people:
and all the people lift their voices and weep.
5 And behold,
Shaul comes after the oxen from the field;
and Shaul says,
The people — why weep they?
6 And they scribe him the words of the men of Yabesh:
and the Spirit of Elohim
prosperes on Shaul when he hears those words
and kindles his wrath mightily;
and he takes a yoke of oxen and dismembers them
and by the hands of angels,
sends them throughout all the borders of Yisra El
saying,
Whoever goes not after Shaul and after Shemu El,
so be it worked to his oxen.
7 And the fear of Yah Veh falls on the people
and they go as one man:
8 and he musters them in Bezeq,
of the sons of Yisra El, three hundred thousand;
and of the men of Yah Hudah, thirty thousand.
9 And they say to the angels who come,
Say thus to the men of Yabesh Gilad:
Tomorrow, by the heat of the sun,
you have salvation.
— and the angels come
and tell it to the men of Yabesh;
and they cheer.
10 And the men of Yabesh say,
Tomorrow we come to you;
and you work to us all that seems good in your eyes.
11 And so be it, on the morrow,
Shaul sets the people in three heads;
and they come midst the camp in the morning watch
and smite the Ammoniy until the heat of the day:

1 SAMUEL 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and so be it came to pass,
that they which *remained* **survived** were scattered,
so that two of them *were not left* **survived not** together.
12 And the people said unto *Samuel* **Shemu El**,
Who is he that said, shall *Saul* **Shaul** reign over us?
bring **give** the men,
that we may *put* **deathify** them to death.
13 And *Saul* **Shaul** said,
There shall not a man be *put to death* **deathified** this day:
for to day *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
hath *wrought* **worked** salvation in *Israel* **Yisra El**.
14 Then said *Samuel* **Shemu El** to the people,
Come, and let us go to Gilgal,
and renew the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** there.
15 And all the people went to Gilgal;
and there they *made* **Saul king had Shaul reign**
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh** in Gilgal;
and there they sacrificed
sacrifices of *peace offerings* **shelamim**
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**;
and there *Saul* **Shaul** and all the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
rejoiced greatly **cheered mightily**.

THE FAREWELL OF SHEMU EL

12 And *Samuel* **Shemu El** said unto all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Behold, I have hearkened unto your voice
in all that ye said unto me,
and have *made a king a* **sovereign reign** over you.
2 And now, behold,
the *king* **sovereign** walketh *before you at thy face*:
and I am old and *grayheaded* **grayed**;
and, behold, my sons are with you:
and I have walked *before you at thy face*
from my *childhood* **youth** unto this day.
3 Behold, here I am:
witness **answer** against me
before the **LORD in front of Yah Veh**,
and *before* **in front of** his anointed:
whose ox have I taken?
or whose *ass* **he burro** have I taken?
or whom have I *defrauded* **extorted**?
whom have I *oppressed* **crushed**?
or of whose hand
have I *received any bribe* **taken a koper/an atonement**
to *blind* **veil** mine eyes therewith?
and I *will* **shall** restore it you.
4 And they said, Thou hast not *defrauded* **extorted** us,
nor *oppressed* **crushed** us,
neither hast thou taken ought of any man's hand.
5 And he said unto them,
The **LORD Yah Veh** is witness against you,
and his anointed is witness this day,
that ye have not found ought in my hand.
And they *answered* **said**, He is witness.
6 And *Samuel* **Shemu El** said unto the people,
It is *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
that *advanced* **Moses worked Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon**,
and that *brought* **ascended** your fathers up
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
7 Now therefore stand still,
that I may *reason* **judge** with you
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**
of all the *righteous acts* **justnesses of the** **LORD Yah Veh**,
which he *did* **worked** to you and to your fathers.
8 When *Jacob* **Yaaqov** was come into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and your fathers cried unto *the* **LORD Yah Veh**,
then *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
sent *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon**,
which brought forth your fathers out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and *made* **settled** them *dwell* in this place.
9 And when they forgot
the **LORD Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**,
he sold them into the hand of *Sisera*,
captain **governor** of the host of *Hazor* **Hasor**,
and into the hand of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and into the hand of the *king* **sovereign** of Moab,
and they fought against them.
10 And they cried unto *the* **LORD Yah Veh**,
and said, We have sinned,
because we have forsaken *the* **LORD Yah Veh**,

1 SHEMU EL 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and so be it, they who survive scatter,
so that no two of them survive together.
12 And the people say to Shemu El,
Who says, Shaul reigns over us?
Give the men, and we deathify them.
13 And Shaul says,
Deathify no man this day:
for today Yah Veh works salvation in Yisra El.
14 Then Shemu El says to the people,
Come and go to Gilgal
and renew the sovereigndom there.
15 And all the people go to Gilgal;
and have Shaul reign in Gilgal
at the face of Yah Veh;
and sacrifice sacrifices of shelamim
at the face of Yah Veh;
and Shaul and all the men of Yisra El cheer mightily.

THE FAREWELL OF SHEMU EL

12 And Shemu El says to all Yisra El,
Behold, I hearken to your voice in all you say to me;
and have a sovereign reign over you:
2 and now behold, the sovereign walks at your face:
and I am old and grayed;
and behold, my sons are with you:
and I walk at your face from my youth to this day.
3 Behold, here *am* I:
answer against me
in front of Yah Veh and in front of his anointed:
Whose ox took I?
Whose he burro took I?
Whom extorted I?
Whom crushed I?
Of whose hand took I a koper/an atonement
to veil my eyes therewith?
— and I restore it to you.
4 And they say,
You neither extorted us nor crushed us
nor taken aught from the hand of any man.
5 And he says to them,
Yah Veh *is* witness against you
and his anointed *is* witness this day,
that you find not aught in my hand.
6 And they say, He *is* witness.
7 And Shemu El says to the people,
Yah Veh worked Mosheh and Aharon
— ascended your fathers from the land of Misrayim.
8 And now stand still,
and I judge you at the face of Yah Veh
of all the justnesses Yah Veh
worked to you and to your fathers.
9 Yaaqov came into Misrayim
and your fathers cried to Yah Veh;
and Yah Veh sent Mosheh and Aharon,
to bring your fathers from Misrayim
and settle them in this place:
and they forgot Yah Veh their Elohim,
and he sold them into the hand of *Sisera*
governor of the host of *Hasor*
and into the hand of the *Peleshethiy*
and into the hand of the sovereign of Moab;
and they fought against them:
10 and they cried to Yah Veh and said, We sinned,
because we forsook Yah Veh

1 SAMUEL 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and have served Baalim and Ashtaroth:
but now *deliver* **rescue** us out of the hand of our enemies,
and we *will* **shall** serve thee.

11 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** sent *Jerubbaal* **Yerub Baal**,
and Bedan, and *Jephthah* **Yiphtach**, and *Samuel* **Shemu El**,
and *delivered* **rescued** you
out of the hand of your enemies
on every side **round about**,
and ye *dwelled safe* **settled securely**.

12 And when ye saw that *Nahash* **Nachash**
the *king* **sovereign** of the *children* **sons** of Ammon
came against you,
ye said unto me, Nay;
but a *king* **sovereign** shall reign over us:
when the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
was your *king* **sovereign**.

13 Now therefore
behold the *king* **sovereign** whom ye have chosen,
and whom ye have *desired* **asked!** and, behold,
the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *set* **given** a *king* **sovereign** over you.
If ye *will* **shall** *awe* **Yah Veh**,
and serve him, and *obey* **hear** his voice,
and not rebel
against the *commandment* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
then shall both ye
and also the *king* **sovereign** that reigneth over you
continue *following* **after**
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**:

15 But if ye *will* **shall** not
obey **hear** the voice of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
but rebel against
the *commandment* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
then shall the hand of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
be against you, as it was against your fathers.

16 Now therefore **however**
stand and see this great *thing* **word**,
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
will do before **shall work in front of** your eyes.
Is it not wheat harvest to day?
I *will* **shall** call unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and he shall *send* **thunder** *give* **voice** and rain;
that ye may perceive and see
that your *wickedness* **evil** is great,
which ye have *done* **worked**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
in asking you a *king* **sovereign**.

18 So *Samuel* **Shemu El** called unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
sent **thunder** *gave* **voice** and rain that day:
and all the people *greatly feared* **mightily awed**
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** and *Samuel* **Shemu El**.

19 And all the people said unto *Samuel* **Shemu El**,
Pray for thy servants
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**, that we die not:
for we have added unto all our sins this evil,
to ask us a *king* **sovereign**.

20 And *Samuel* **Shemu El** said unto the people,
Fear **Awe** not:
ye have *done* **worked** all this *wickedness* **evil**:
yet turn not aside from *following* the *LORD* **after** *Yah Veh*,
but serve the *LORD* **Yah Veh** with all your heart;

21 And turn ye not aside:
for then should ye go after *vain things* **wasteness**,
which cannot *profit* **benefit** nor *deliver* **rescue**;
for they are *vain* **waste**.

22 For the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
will **shall** not *forsake* **abandon** his people
for his great name's sake:
because *it hath pleased* the *LORD* **Yah Veh** *hath* **willed**
to *make* **work** you his people.

23 Moreover as for me,
God forbid **Far be it**
that I should sin against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
in ceasing to pray for you:
but I *will* **teach** **shall** *direct* you
the good and the *right* **straight** way:
Only *fear* the *LORD* **awe** *Yah Veh*,

1 SHEMU EL 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and served Baalim and Ashtaroth:
and now, rescue us from the hand of our enemies
and we serve you.

11 And Yah Veh sent Yerub Baal
and Bedan and Yiphtach and Shemu El
and rescued you from the hand of your enemies
all around;
and you settled securely.
And you saw
Nachash the sovereign of the sons of Ammon
come against you,
and you said to me, No;
But a sovereign reigns over us!
— and Yah Veh your Elohim is your sovereign.

12 And now behold,
the sovereign you chose, for whom you asked!
and behold, Yah Veh gives a sovereign over you.

13 If you awe Yah Veh
and serve him and hearken to his voice
and rebel not against the mouth of Yah Veh,
then both you,
and also the sovereign who reigns over you,
continue after Yah Veh your Elohim:
15 and if you hear not the voice of Yah Veh,
and rebel against the mouth of Yah Veh,
then the hand of Yah Veh
becomes against you, as it is against your fathers:
16 and now stand and see this great word
Yah Veh works in front of your eyes.

17 Is today not the wheat harvest?
I call to Yah Veh and he gives voice and rain;
so that you perceive and see what great evil
you work in the eyes of Yah Veh
— in your asking for a sovereign.

18 So Shemu El calls to Yah Veh;
and Yah Veh gives voice and rain that day:
and all the people
awe Yah Veh and Shemu El mightily.

19 And all the people say to Shemu El,
Pray to Yah Veh your Elohim
that we your servants not die:
for we added to all our sins this evil
— to ask us a sovereign.

20 And Shemu El says to the people, Awe not:
for all this evil you worked:
only, turn not aside from after Yah Veh,
but serve Yah Veh with all your heart;
21 turn not aside:
for then you go after wasteness,
which neither benefits nor rescues;
for they are waste.

22 For Yah Veh abandons not his people
for sake of his great name:
because Yah Veh wills to work you *to be* his people.

23 I also, far be it that I sin against Yah Veh,
in ceasing to pray for you;
but I direct you to the good and the straight way:
24 only, awe Yah Veh

1 SAMUEL 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and serve him in truth with all your heart:
for consider see

25 how great things he hath done for he greatens you.
But if in vilifying, ye shall still do wickedly vilify,
ye shall be consumed scraped away,
both ye and your king sovereign.

WAR WITH THE PELESHETHIY

13

Saul reigned one year

Shaul was a son of a year in his reigning;

2 and when he had reigned two years over Israel **Yisra El**,
Saul **Shaul** chose him
three thousand men of Israel **Yisra El**;
whereof two thousand were with Saul **Shaul** in Michmash
and in mount *Bethel* **Beth El**,
and a thousand were with Jonathan **Yah Nathan**
in *Gibeah* **Gibah** of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**;
and the rest of the people he sent every man to his tent.

3 And Jonathan **Yah Nathan** smote the garrison station
of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** that was in Geba,
and the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** heard of it.

And Saul blew **Shaul blast** the trumpet **shophar**
throughout all the land, saying,
Let the Hebrews hear.

4 And all Israel **Yisra El** heard say
that Saul **Shaul** had smitten
a garrison station of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and that Israel **Yisra El** also was had in abomination stank
with the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.

And the people were called together summoned
after Saul **Shaul** to Gilgal.

5 And the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
gathered themselves together to fight with Israel **Yisra El**,
thirty thousand chariots,
and six thousand horsemen cavalry,
and people as the sand which is on the sea shore lip

in multitude abundance:
and they came up ascended,
and pitched encamped in Michmash,
eastward from *Bethaven* **Beth Aven**.

6 When the men of Israel **Yisra El**
saw that they were in a strait tribulated,
(for the people were distressed exacted,)
then the people did hide themselves in caves,
and in thickets crevices, and in rocks,
and in high places towers, and in pits wells.

7 And some of the Hebrews
went passed over Jordan Yarden
to the land of Gad and *Gilead* **Gilad**.
As for Saul **Shaul**, he was yet in Gilgal,
and all the people followed trembled after him trembling.

8 And he tarried waited seven days
according to the set time season
that Samuel had appointed with Shemu El:
but Samuel **Shemu El** came not to Gilgal;
and the people were scattered from him.

9 And Saul **Shaul** said,
Bring hither near a burnt offering holocaust to me,
and peace offerings shelamim.
And he offered holocausted the burnt offering holocaust.

10 And so be it came to pass,
that as soon as he had made an end of finished
offering holocausting the burnt offering holocaust,
behold, Samuel **Shemu El** came;
and Saul **Shaul** went out to meet him,
that he might salute bless him.

11 And Samuel **Shemu El** said,
What hast thou done worked?
And Saul **Shaul** said,
Because I saw that the people were scattered from me,
and that thou camest not

12 within the days appointed season of days,
and that the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
gathered themselves together at Michmash;
Therefore said I, The *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
will come down shall descend now upon me to Gilgal,
and I have not

made supplication stroked the face
unto the LORD of Yah Veh:

1 SHEMU EL 12, 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and serve him in truth with all your heart:
for see how he greatens you.

25 But if in vilifying, you vilify,
you are scraped away
— both you and your sovereign.

WAR WITH THE PELESHETHIY

13

Shaul is a son of a year in his reigning

2 — he reigns two years over Yisra El:
Shaul chooses three thousand of Yisra El for himself:
whereof two thousand are with Shaul
in Michmash and in mount Beth El;
and a thousand are with Yah Nathan
in *Gibah* of Ben Yamin:
and of the rest of the people
he sends each man to his tent.

3 And Yah Nathan
smites the station of the *Peleshethiy* in Geba
and the *Peleshethiy* hear.

And Shaul blasts the *shophar* throughout all the land,
saying, Hear, O Hebrews.

4 And all Yisra El hears say
that Shaul smote a station of the *Peleshethiy*;
and also that Yisra El stinks with the *Peleshethiy*.

5 And they summon the people after Shaul to Gilgal:
and the *Peleshethiy* gather to fight Yisra El
— thirty thousand chariots and six thousand cavalry
— people as the sand on the sea lip in abundance:
and they ascend and encamp in Michmash
eastward from Beth Aven.

6 And the men of Yisra El see they are tribulated
— that the people are exacted
— and the people hide themselves in caves
and in crevices and in rocks
and in towers and in wells:
7 and the Hebrews pass over Yarden
to the land of Gad and *Gilad*:
and Shaul is yet in Gilgal;
and all the people tremble after him:
and he waits seven days
8 according to the season with Shemu El:
and Shemu El comes not to Gilgal;
and the people scatter from him.

9 And Shaul says,
Bring near me a holocaust and shelamim!
— and he holocausts the holocaust.

10 And so be it,
as soon as he finishes holocausting the holocaust,
behold, Shemu El comes;
and Shaul goes out to meet him, to bless him.

11 And Shemu El says, What worked you?

12 And Shaul says,
Because I see the people scatter from me
and you come not within the season of days
and the *Peleshethiy* gather at Michmash:
and I say,

Now the *Peleshethiy* descend on me to Gilgal
and I stroked not the face of Yah Veh:

1 SAMUEL 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

I forced **restrained** myself therefore,
and offered **holocausted** a burnt offering **holocaust**.
13 And Samuel **Shemu El** said to Saul **Shaul**,
Thou hast done foolishly **follied**:
thou hast not kept **guarded** the commandment **misvah**
of the **LORD Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**,
which he commanded **misvahed** thee:
for now would the **LORD should Yah Veh**
have established thy **kingdom sovereignty**
upon **Israel for ever Yisra El eternally**.
14 But now thy **kingdom sovereignty**
shall not continue **rise**:
the **LORD Yah Veh**
hath sought him a man after his own heart,
and the **LORD Yah Veh** hath commanded **misvahed** him
to be captain **eminence** over his people,
because thou hast not kept **guarded** that
which the **LORD commanded Yah Veh misvahed** thee.
15 And Samuel **Shemu El** arose,
and gat **ascended** him up from Gilgal
unto **Gibeah Gibah** of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**.
And Saul numbered **Shaul mustered** the people
that were present **found** with him, about six hundred men.
16 And Saul **Shaul**, and Jonathan **Yah Nathan** his son,
and the people that were present **found** with them,
abode **settled** in **Gibeah Gibah** of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**:
but the **Philistines Peleshethiy** encamped in Michmash.
17 And the **spoilers came ruiners went** out of the camp
of the **Philistines Peleshethiy** in three **companies heads**:
one **company head** turned to **face**
unto the way that leadeth to Ophrah,
unto the land of Shual:
18 And another **company one head** turned to **face**
the way to **Bethhoron Beth Horon**:
and another **company one head** turned to **face**
the way of the border
that looketh to the valley of **Zeboim Seboim**
toward the wilderness.
19 Now there was no **smith artificer** found
throughout all the land of **Israel Yisra El**:
for the **Philistines Peleshethiy** said,
Lest the Hebrews **make work** them swords or spears:
20 But all the **Israelites Yisra Eliy**
went down descended to the **Philistines Peleshethiy**,
to sharpen every man his share,
and his **coulter plowshare**,
and his ax, and his **mattock pick**.
21 Yet they had a file **with mouths** for the mattocks,
and for the **coulters plowshares**, and for the **triple** forks,
and for the axes, and to **sharpen station** the goads.
22 **And So be** it came to pass, in the day of **battle war**,
that there was neither sword nor spear
found in the hand of any of the people
that were with **Saul Shaul** and **Jonathan Yah Nathan**:
but with **Saul Shaul** and with **Jonathan Yah Nathan** his son
was there found.
23 And the **garrison standing camp**
of the **Philistines Peleshethiy**
went out to the passage of Michmash.

THE VICTORY OF YAH NATHAN

14 Now **so be** it came to pass, upon a day,
that **Jonathan Yah Nathan** the son of **Saul Shaul** said
unto the young man **lad** that bare his **armour instruments**,
Come, and let us go **pass over**
to the **Philistines' garrison Peleshethiy's standing camp**,
that is on the other side **beyond this**.
But he told not his father.
2 And **Saul tarried Shaul settled**
in the **uttermost part extremity** of **Gibeah Gibah**
under a pomegranate tree which is in Migron:
and the people that were with him
were about six hundred men;
3 And **Ahiah Achiy Yah**, the son of **Ahitub Achiy Tub**,
Ichabod's ly Chabod's brother,
the son of **Phinehas Pinechas**, the son of **Eli**,
the **LORD'S Yah Veh's** priest in Shiloh,
wearing **bearing** an ephod.

1 SHEMU EL 13, 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I restrain myself and holocaust a holocaust.
13 And Shemu El says to Shaul, You follied:
you guarded not the misvah of Yah Veh your Elohim
which he misvahed you:
for by now
Yah Veh had established your sovereignty
on Yisra El eternally:
14 and now, your sovereignty rises not:
Yah Veh sought a man after his own heart
and Yah Veh misvahs him eminence over his people,
because you guarded not
what Yah Veh misvahed you.
15 And Shemu El rises
and ascends from Gilgal to Gibah of Ben Yamin.
And Shaul musters the people found with him
— about six hundred men:
16 and Shaul and Yah Nathan his son
and the people found with them
settle in Gibah of Ben Yamin:
and the Peleshethiy encamp in Michmash.
17 And ruiners go from the camp of the Peleshethiy
in three heads:
one head turns to face the way to Ophrah
to the land of Shual:
18 and one head turns to face the way to Beth Horon:
and one head turns to face the way of the border
that looks to the valley of Seboim
toward the wilderness.
19 Now they find no artificer
throughout all the land of Yisra El:
for the Peleshethiy say,
Lest the Hebrews work swords or spears:
20 and all the Yisra Eliy descend to the Peleshethiy
and every man sharpens his share
and his plowshare and his ax and his pick;
21 and have a file with mouths for the mattocks
and for the plowshares and for the triple forks
and for the axes and to station the goads.
22 And so be it, in the day of war,
they find neither sword nor spear
in the hand of any of the people
with Shaul and Yah Nathan:
but with Shaul and with Yah Nathan his son,
they find:
23 and the standing camp of the Peleshethiy
go out to the passage of Michmash.

THE VICTORY OF YAH NATHAN

14 And so be it, on a day,
Yah Nathan the son of Shaul
says to the lad who bears his instruments,
Come and we pass over
to the standing camp of the Peleshethiy beyond;
and he tells not his father:
2 and Shaul settles in the extremity of Gibah
under a pomegranate tree in Migron:
3 and the people with him are about six hundred men;
and Achiy Yah the son of Achiy Tub,
the brother of ly Chabod
the son of Pinechas the son of Eli
priest of Yah Veh in Shiloh bears an ephod:

1 SAMUEL 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 And the people knew not
that *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** was gone.
And between the passages,
by which *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** sought to go **pass** over
unto the *Philistines'* **garrison** **Peleshethiy's standing camp**,
there was a *sharp* **tooth of the** rock on the one side,
and a *sharp* **tooth of the** rock on the *other* **one** side:
and the name of the one was *Bozez* **Boses**
and the name of the *other* **one** *Seneh*.
5 The *forefront* **tooth** of the one
was *situate* **pillared** northward
over against **opposite** Michmash,
and the *other* **one** southward
over against *Gibeah* **opposite** *Gibah*.
6 And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** said
to the *young man* **lad** that bare his *armour* **instruments**,
Come, and let us go **pass** over
unto the *garrison* **standing camp** of these uncircumcised:
it may be **perhaps**
that the *LORD* will **Yah Veh** shall work for us:
for there is no *restraint* **hindrance** to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
to save by many or by few.
7 And his *armourbearer* **instrument bearer** said unto him,
Do **Work** all that is in thine heart:
turn thee **spread**; behold,
I am with thee according to thy heart.
8 Then said *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**,
Behold, we *will* **shall** pass over unto these men,
and we *will* **discover** **shall expose** ourselves unto them.
9 If they say thus unto us,
Tarry **Hush** until we *come to* **touch** you;
then we *will* **shall** stand *still* in our place,
and *will* **shall** not go up **ascend** unto them.
10 But if they say thus, *Come up* **Ascend** unto us;
then we *will* go up **shall ascend**:
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *delivered* **given** them into our hand:
and this shall be a sign unto us.
11 And both of them *discovered* **exposed** themselves
unto the *garrison* **standing camp**
of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**:
and the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** said, Behold,
the Hebrews come *forth* out of the holes
where they had hid themselves.
12 And the men of the *garrison* **station**
answered *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**
and his *armourbearer* **instrument bearer**, and said,
Come up **Ascend** to us, and we
will shew you a thing **shall have you know a word**.
And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** said
unto his *armourbearer* **instrument bearer**,
Come up **Ascend** after me:
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *delivered* **given** them
into the hand of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
13 And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**
climbed up **ascended** upon his hands and upon his feet,
and his *armourbearer* **instrument bearer** after him:
and they fell *before* *Jonathan* **at the face of** *Yah Nathan*;
and his *armourbearer* **instrument bearer**
slew **deathified** after him.
14 And that first *slaughter* **stroke**,
which *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**
and his *armourbearer* **instrument bearer** *smote*,
was about twenty men,
within as it were an half **furrow of an acre of land field**,
which a yoke of oxen might plow.
15 And there was trembling in the *host* **camp**,
in the field, and among all the people:
the *garrison* **standing camp**, and the *spoilers* **ruiners**,
they also trembled, and the earth quaked:
so it was a *very great* trembling of **Elohim**.
16 And the *watchmen* **watchers** of *Saul* **Shaul**
in *Gibeah* **Gibah** of *Benjamin* looked **Ben Yamin** saw;
and, behold, the multitude melted away, and they went on
beating down one another **descending and hammering**.
17 Then said *Saul* **Shaul**
unto the people that were with him,
Number **Muster** now, and see who is gone from us.

1 SHEMU EL 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the people know not that *Yah Nathan* is gone:
4 and between the passages
by which *Yah Nathan* seeks to pass over
to the standing camp of the *Peleshethiy*,
there is a tooth of the rock on the one side
and a tooth of the rock on the one side:
and the name of the one is *Boses*/**Bleached Linen**
and the name of the one *Seneh*/**Bush**:
5 the tooth of the one
is pillared northward opposite *Michmash*
and the one southward opposite *Gibah*.
6 And *Yah Nathan*
says to the lad who bears his instruments,
Come, and we pass over
to the standing camp of these uncircumcised:
perhaps *Yah Veh* works for us:
for there is no hindrance to *Yah Veh*
to save by many or by few.
7 And his instrument bearer says to him,
Work all that is in your heart! Spread!
Behold, I *am* with you according to your heart.
8 Then *Yah Nathan* says,
Behold, we pass over to these men
and expose ourselves to them:
9 if they say thus to us,
Hush until we touch you!
— then we stand in our place
and ascend not to them.
10 And if they say thus, Ascend to us!
— we ascend:
for *Yah Veh* gives them into our hand:
and this is our sign.
11 And both of them expose themselves
to the standing camp of the *Peleshethiy*:
and the *Peleshethiy* say,
Behold, the Hebrews come from the holes
where they hide themselves.
12 And the men of the station
answer *Yah Nathan* and his instrument bearer,
and say,
Ascend to us and we have you know a word.
And *Yah Nathan* says to his instrument bearer,
Ascend after me:
for *Yah Veh* gives them into the hand of *Yisra El*.
13 And *Yah Nathan*
ascends on his hands and on his feet
and his instrument bearer after him:
and they fall at the face of *Yah Nathan*;
and his instrument bearer after him deathifies:
14 and the first stroke
Yah Nathan and his instrument bearer smite
is about twenty men
— within as it were a half furrow of an acre of a field.
15 And they tremble in the camp, in the field,
and among all the people:
the standing camp and the ruiners also tremble;
and the earth quakes
— and so be it, a trembling of *Elohim*:
16 and the watchers of *Shaul*
in *Gibah* of *Ben Yamin* see;
and behold, the multitude melts away
and they go on — descending and hammering.
17 And *Shaul* says to the people with him,
Muster now and see who is gone from us.

1 SAMUEL 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

And when they had **numbered mustered**, behold,
Jonathan Yah Nathan
and his *armourbearer instrument bearer* were not *there*.
18 And *Saul Shaul* said unto *Ahiah Achiy Yah*,
Bring *hither near* the ark of *God Elohim*.
For the ark of *God Elohim* was at that *time day*
with the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*.
19 And **so be** it came to *pass*,
while *Saul talked Shaul worded* unto the priest,
that the *noise multitude*
that was in the *host camp* of the *Philistines Peleshethiy*
went in walking, walked on and *increased greatedened*:
and *Saul Shaul* said unto the priest,
Withdraw Gather thine hand.
20 And *Saul Shaul* and all the people that were with him
assembled themselves cried out together,
and they came to the *battle war*: and, behold,
every man's sword was against his *fellow friend*,
and there was a *very mighty great discomfiture confusion*.
21 Moreover
the Hebrews that were with the *Philistines Peleshethiy*
before that time three yesters ago,
which *went up ascended* with them *into all around* the camp
from the country round about,
even they also turned to be with the *Israelites Yisra Eliy*
that were with *Saul Shaul* and *Jonathan Yah Nathan*.
22 Likewise all the men of *Israel Yisra El*
which had hid themselves in mount *Ephraim Ephrayim*,
when they heard that the *Philistines Peleshethiy* fled,
even they also
followed hard adhered after them in the *battle war*.
23 So the *LORD Yah Veh* saved *Israel Yisra El* that day:
and the *battle war* passed over unto *Bethaven Beth Aven*.
24 And the men of *Israel Yisra El*
were distressed exacted that day:
for *Saul Shaul* had *adjured oathed* the people, saying,
Cursed be the man
that eateth *any food bread* until evening,
that I may be avenged on mine enemies.
25 So none of the people tasted *any food bread*.
And all *they of* the land came to a *wood forest*;
and there was honey upon the *ground face of the field*.
26 And when the people were come into the *wood forest*,
behold, *the honey dropped a flowing of honey*;
but no man *put reached* his hand to his mouth:
for the people *feared awed* the oath.
27 But *Jonathan Yah Nathan* heard not
when his father *charged oathed* the people with the oath:
wherefore
he *put sent* forth the end of the rod that was in his hand,
and dipped it in an *honeycomb forest*,
and *put returned* his hand to his mouth;
and his eyes were enlightened.
28 Then answered *one a man* of the people, and said,
In oathing,
Thy father *straitly charged oathed* the people with an oath,
saying, Cursed be the man that eateth *any food* this day.
29 And the people were *faint fluttered*.
Then said *Jonathan Yah Nathan*,
My father hath troubled the land:
see, I *pray beseech* you,
how mine eyes have been enlightened,
because I tasted a little of this honey.
30 *How much more Also*, if *haply only* the people
in eating, had eaten *freely* to day
of the spoil of their enemies which they found?
for had there not been now a much greater slaughter
for now, hath not the stroke greatedened
among the *Philistines Peleshethiy*?
31 And they smote the *Philistines Peleshethiy* that day
from Michmash to *Aijalon Ayalon*:
and the people were *very faint mighty fluttered*.
32 And the people *flew worked* upon the spoil,
and took *sheep flock*, and oxen, and *calves sons of oxen*,
and *slew slaughtered* them on the *ground earth*:
and the people did eat them with the blood.
33 Then they told *Saul Shaul*, saying, Behold,

1 SHEMU EL 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— and they muster, and behold,
Yah Nathan and his instrument bearer are not.
18 And Shaul says to Achiy Yah,
Bring near the ark of Elohim.
— for that day
the ark of Elohim is with the sons of Yisra El.
19 And so be it, as Shaul words to the priest,
that in walking,
the multitude in the camp of the Peleshethiy walks on
and greatens.
And Shaul says to the priest, Gather your hand.
20 And Shaul and all the people with him
cry out together;
and they come to the war; and behold,
the sword of every man is against his friend
and there is a mighty great confusion:
21 and the Hebrews
who were with the Peleshethiy three yesters ago
— who ascended with them all around the camp
turn around to be with the Yisra Eliy
— with Shaul and Yah Nathan:
22 and all the men of Yisra El
who hid themselves in mount Ephrayim,
hear that the Peleshethiy flee,
even they also adhere after them in the war.
23 So Yah Veh saves Yisra El that day;
and the war passes over to Beth Aven:
24 and that day the men of Yisra El exact.
And Shaul oaths the people, saying,
Cursed is the man who eats bread until evening,
and I become avenged on my enemies.
— and none of the people taste bread.
25 And all the land comes to a forest;
and there is honey on the face of the field:
26 and the people come to the forest,
and behold, a flowing of honey;
and no man reaches his hand to his mouth:
for the people awe the oath.
27 And Yah Nathan heard not
his father oath the people with the oath:
and he sends forth the end of the rod in his hand
and dips it in a forest;
and returns his hand to his mouth:
and his eyes enlighten.
28 Then a man of the people answers, and says,
In oathing,
your father oathed the people with an oath,
saying, Cursed is the man who eats food this day:
and the people flutter.
29 Then Yah Nathan says, My father troubles the land:
see, I beseech you, how my eyes enlighten,
because I tasted a little of this honey.
30 and if in eating, the people had eaten today
of the spoil of their enemies which they found:
because now,
is not the stroke greatedened among the Peleshethiy?
31 And that day they smite the Peleshethiy
from Michmash to Ayalon:
and the people flutter mightily:
32 and the people work on the spoil
and take flock and oxen and sons of oxen
and slaughter them on the earth:
and the people eat them with the blood.
33 And they tell Shaul, saying, Behold,

1 SAMUEL 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

the people sin against the **LORD Yah Veh**,
in that they eat with the blood.
And he said, Ye have *transgressed* **concealed**:
roll a great stone unto me this day.
34 And *Saul/Shaul* said,
Disperse Scatter yourselves among the people,
and say unto them,
Bring me *hither* **near** every man his ox,
and every man his *sheep* **lamb**,
and *slay* **slaughter** them here, and eat;
and sin not against the **LORD Yah Veh**
in eating with the blood.
And all the people brought **near**
every man his ox *with him* **in his hand** that night,
and *slew* **slaughtered** them there.
35 And *Saul/Shaul* built an **a sacrifice** altar
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**:
the same was the first **he began to build the sacrifice** altar
that he built unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
36 And *Saul/Shaul* said,
Let us go *down* **descend** after the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
by night,
and *spoil* **plunder** them until the morning light,
and let us not *leave* **survive** a man of them.
And they said,
Do **Work** whatsoever seemeth good
unto thee **in thine eyes**.
Then said the priest,
Let us *draw near* **approach** hither unto *God* **Elohim**.
37 And *Saul/Shaul* asked counsel of *God* **Elohim**,
shall I go *down* **descend** after the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**?
wilt **shalt** thou *deliver* **give** them
into the hand of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
But he answered him not that day.
38 And *Saul/Shaul* said,
Draw ye near hither, all the *chief* **chiefs** of the people:
and know and see wherein this sin hath been this day.
39 For, as the **LORD Yah Veh** liveth,
which saveth *Israel* **Yisra El**,
though it be in *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** my son,
in dying, he shall *surely* die.
But there was not a man among all the people
that answered him.
40 Then said he unto all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Be ye on one side,
and I and *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** my son
will **shall** be on the *other* **one** side.
And the people said unto *Saul* **Shaul**,
Do **Work** what seemeth good unto thee **in thine eyes**.
41 Therefore *Saul* **Shaul** said
unto the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Give a perfect lot **Show integrity**.
And *Saul/Shaul* and *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**
were *taken* **captured**:
but the people *escaped* **went**.
42 And *Saul/Shaul* said,
Cast lots **Fell** between me
and *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** my son.
And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** was *taken* **captured**.
43 Then *Saul* **Shaul** said to *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**,
Tell me what thou hast *done* **worked**.
And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** told him, and said,
I did but taste **In tasting, I tasted** a little honey
with the end of the rod that was in mine hand,
and, *lo* **behold**, I must die.
44 And *Saul* answered *Shaul* said,
God do so and more **Elohim work thus and add** also:
for **in dying**, thou shalt *surely* die, *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**.
45 And the people said unto *Saul* **Shaul**,
shall *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** die,
who hath *wrought* **worked** this great salvation
in *Israel* **Yisra El**?
God forbid **Far be it**: as the **LORD** — **Yah Veh** liveth,
there shall not one hair of his head
fall to the *ground* **earth**;
for he hath *wrought* **worked** with *God* **Elohim** this day.
So the people *rescued* **redeemed** *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**,
that he died not.

1 SHEMU EL 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

the people sin against Yah Veh
in that they eat with the blood.
And he says, You have concealed:
roll a great stone to me this day.
34 And Shaul says,
Scatter yourselves among the people and say to them,
Bring near me
the ox of every man and the lamb of every man
and slaughter here and eat:
and sin not against Yah Veh in eating with the blood.
And that night all the people bring near
the ox of every man in his hand
and slaughters there:
35 and Shaul builds a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh:
and he begins to build a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh.
36 And Shaul says,
We descend after the Peleshethiy by night
and plunder them until the morning light
that not a man of them survives.
And they say,
Work whatever seems good in your eyes.
And the priest says,
Approach hither to Elohim.
37 And Shaul asks counsel of Elohim,
Descend I after the Peleshethiy?
Give you them into the hand of Yisra El?
— and he answers him not that day.
38 And Shaul says,
Draw near here, all you chiefs of the people:
and know and see wherein this sin becomes this day.
39 For, Yah Veh lives, who saves Yisra El,
though it be in Yah Nathan my son,
in dying, he dies.
— and not a man among all the people answers him.
40 Then he says to all Yisra El,
You — you *are* on one side
and I and Yah Nathan my son *are* on one side.
And the people say to Shaul,
Work what seems good in your eyes.
41 And Shaul says to Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
Show integrity.
And they capture Shaul and Yah Nathan:
and the people go.
42 And Shaul says,
Fell between me and Yah Nathan my son.
And they capture Yah Nathan.
43 Then Shaul says to Yah Nathan,
Tell me what you worked.
And Yah Nathan tells him and says,
In tasting, I tasted a little honey
with the end of the rod in my hand;
behold, I die.
44 And Shaul says,
Elohim works thus and adds also:
for in dying, you die, Yah Nathan.
45 And the people say to Shaul,
Yah Nathan
— who worked this great salvation in Yisra El
— die?
Far be it: Yah Veh lives,
not one hair of his head falls to the earth;
for he worked with Elohim this day.
— and the people redeem Yah Nathan, that he not die.

1 SAMUEL 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

46 Then *Saul* went up **Shaul** ascended
from following **after** the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**;
and the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** went to their own place.
47 So *Saul* **Shaul**
took captured the kingdom **sovereigndom**
over *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and fought against all his enemies
on every side **round about**,
against *Moab*,
and against the *children* **sons** of *Ammon*,
and against *Edom*,
and against the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Zobah* **Sobah**,
and against the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**;
and whithersoever he turned *himself* **his face**,
he *vexed them* **dealt wickedly**.
48 And he gathered an host **worked valour**,
and smote the *Amalekites* **Amaleq**,
and delivered *Israel* **rescued Yisra El**
out of the hands of *them that spoiled them* **their plunderers** .
49 Now the sons of *Saul* **Shaul** were *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**,
and *Ishui* **Yishvi**, and *Melchishua* **Malki Shua**:
and the names of his two daughters were these;
the name of the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** *Merab*,
and the name of the younger *Michal*:
50 And the name of *Saul's wife* **Shaul's woman**
was *Ahinoam* **Achiv Noam**,
the daughter of *Ahimaaz* **Achiv Maas**:
and the name of the *captain* **governor** of his host
was *Abner* **Abi Ner**, the son of *Ner*, *Saul's* **Shaul's** uncle.
51 And *Kish* **Qish** was the father of *Saul* **Shaul**;
and *Ner* the father of *Abner* **Abi Ner**
was the son of *Abiel* **Abi El**.
52 And there was *sore* **tough** war
against the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
all the days of *Saul* **Shaul**:
and when *Saul* **Shaul** saw any *strong* **mighty** man,
or any *valiant* **man** **son of valour**,
he took gathered him unto him.

YAH VEH REJECTS SHAUL AS SOVEREIGN

15 *Samuel* **Shemu El** also said unto *Saul* **Shaul**,
The LORD **Yah Veh** sent me to anoint thee
to be *king* **sovereign** over his people, over *Israel* **Yisra El**:
now therefore hearken thou unto the voice
of the words of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
2 Thus saith *the LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
I remember **visit** that
which *Amalek* did **Amaleq** worked to *Israel* **Yisra El**,
how he laid wait set for him in the way,
when he came up ascended from *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
3 Now go and smite *Amalek* **Amaleq**,
and utterly destroy devote all that they have,
and spare them not;
but slay deathify both man and woman,
infant and suckling from suckling and infant,
ox and sheep lamb, camel and ass he burro.
4 And *Saul* gathered **Shaul** heard the people together,
and numbered mustered them in *Telaim*,
two hundred thousand footmen on foot,
and ten thousand men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
5 And *Saul* **Shaul** came to a city of *Amalek* **Amaleq**,
and laid wait lurked in the valley wadi.
6 And *Saul* **Shaul** said unto the *Kenites* **Qayiniy**,
Go, depart turn aside, get you down descend ye
from among the *Amalekites* **Amaleq**,
lest I destroy gather you with them:
for ye shewed kindness worked mercy
to all the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
when they came up ascended out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
So the *Kenites* departed **Qayiniy** turned aside
from among the *Amalekites* **Amaleq**.
7 And *Saul* **Shaul** smote the *Amalekites* **Amaleq**
from *Havilah* until thou comest to *Shur*,
that is over against *Egypt* at the face of *Misrayim*.
8 And he took apprehended *Agag*
the *king* **sovereign** of the *Amalekites* **Amaleq** alive,
and utterly destroyed devoted all the people
with the edge mouth of the sword.
9 But *Saul* **Shaul** and the people spared *Agag*,

1 SHEMU EL 14, 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

46 Then *Shaul* ascends from after the *Peleshethiy*:
and the *Peleshethiy* go to their own place:
47 and *Shaul* captures the sovereignty over *Yisra El*
and fights all his enemies all around
— against *Moab* and against the sons of *Ammon*
and against *Edom* and against the sovereigns of *Sobah*
and against the *Peleshethiy*:
and wherever he turns his face,
he deals wickedly:
48 and he works valour and smites the *Amaleq*;
and rescues *Yisra El*
from the hands of their plunderers.
49 And the sons of *Shaul*:
Yah Nathan and *Yishvi* and *Malki Shua*;
and the names of his two daughters:
the name of the firstbirthed *Merab*,
and the name of the younger *Michal*;
and the name of the woman of *Shaul*:
50 *Achiv Noam* the daughter of *Achiv Maas*;
and the name of the governor of his host:
Abi Ner the son of *Ner* the uncle of *Shaul*;
51 and *Qish* is the father of *Shaul*:
and *Ner* the father of *Abi Ner* is the son of *Abi El*.
52 And there is tough war against the *Peleshethiy*
all the days of *Shaul*:
and when *Shaul* sees
any mighty man or any son of valour,
he gathers him to him.

YAH VEH REJECTS SHAUL AS SOVEREIGN

15 And *Shemu El* says to *Shaul*,
Yah Veh sends me
to anoint you sovereign over his people
— over *Yisra El*:
and now,
hearken to the voice of the words of *Yah Veh*;
Thus says *Yah Veh Sabaoth*:
I visit what *Amaleq* worked to *Yisra El*
— how he set for him in the way
in ascending from *Misrayim*.
3 Now go and smite *Amaleq*
and devote all they have and spare them not;
deathify both man and woman,
from suckling and infant,
ox and lamb, camel and he burro.
4 And *Shaul* hears the people
and musters them in *Telaim*
— two hundred thousand on foot
and ten thousand men of *Yah Hudah*:
5 and *Shaul* comes to a city of *Amaleq*
and lurks in the wadi.
6 And *Shaul* says to the *Qayiniy*, Go! Turn aside!
Descend from midst the *Amaleq*
lest I gather you with them:
for you worked mercy to all the sons of *Yisra El*
when they ascended from *Misrayim*.
— and the *Qayiniy* turn aside from midst *Amaleq*.
7 And *Shaul* smites the *Amaleq*
from *Havilah* until you come to *Shur*
at the face of *Misrayim*:
and he apprehends alive
8 *Agag* the sovereign of the *Amaleq*
and devotes all the people
with the mouth of the sword.
9 And *Shaul* and the people spare *Agag*

1 SAMUEL 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and the best of the **sheep flock**, and of the oxen,
and of the *fatlings* **second sort**, and the *lambs* **rams**,
and all that was good,
and would **willed to** not *utterly destroy* **devote** them:
but every *thing* **all** that was vile and *refuse* **molten**,
that they *destroyed* **utterly devoted**.

10 Then came the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
unto *Samuel* **Shemu El**, saying,
11 *It repenteth me* **I sigh**
that I have *set up* **Saul to be king Shaul to reign sovereign**:
for he is turned back from *following* **after** me,
and hath not *performed* **raised** my *commandments* **words**.
And it *grieved* **Samuel** **inflamed Shemu El**;
and he *cried* unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** all night.
12 And when *Samuel* **rose** **Shemu El started** early
to meet *Saul* **Shaul** in the morning,
it was told *Samuel* **Shemu El**, saying,
Saul **Shaul** came to *Carmel* **Karmel**, and, behold,
he *set him up a place* **stationed him a hand**,
and is gone about, and passed on,
and *gone down* **descended** to Gilgal.
13 And *Samuel* **Shemu El** came to *Saul* **Shaul**:
and *Saul* **Shaul** said unto him,
Blessed be thou of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
I have *performed* **raised**
the *commandment* **word** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
14 And *Samuel* **Shemu El** said, What *meaneth* then
this *bleating* **voice** of the *sheep* **flock** in mine ears,
and the *lowing* **voice** of the oxen which I hear?
15 And *Saul* **Shaul** said,
They have brought them from the *Amalekites* **Amaleqiy**:
for the people spared
the best of the *sheep* **flock** and of the oxen,
to sacrifice unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**;
and the *rest* **remainder** we have *utterly destroyed* **devoted**.
16 Then *Samuel* **Shemu El** said unto *Saul* **Shaul**,
Stay **Loosen up**, and I *will* **shall** tell thee
what the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *said* **worded** to me this night.
17 And he said unto him, *Say on* **Word**.
And *Samuel* **Shemu El** said,
When thou wast little in thine own *sight* **eyes**,
wast thou not *made* the head
of the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** anointed thee *king* **sovereign**
over *Israel* **Yisra El**?
18 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** sent thee on a journey,
and said,
Go and *utterly destroy* **devote**
the sinners the *Amalekites* **Amaleq**,
and fight *against* them
until they be *consumed* **finished off**.
19 Wherefore then didst thou not
obey **hearken to** the voice of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
but didst *fly* **swoop** upon the spoil,
and didst **workest** evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**?
20 And *Saul* **Shaul** said unto *Samuel* **Shemu El**,
Yea, I have *obeyed* **heard** the voice of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and have *gone* **went** the way
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** sent me,
and have brought Agag
the *king* **sovereign** of *Amalek* **Amaleq**,
and have *utterly destroyed* **devoted**
the *Amalekites* **Amaleq**.
21 But the people took of the spoil, *sheep* **flock** and oxen,
the *chief* of the *things* **firstlings**
which should have been *utterly destroyed* **devoted**,
to sacrifice unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
in Gilgal.
22 And *Samuel* **Shemu El** said,
Hath the *LORD* as *great* **Yah Veh** delight
in *burnt offerings* **holocausts** and sacrifices,
as in *obeying* **hearing** the voice of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**?
Behold, to *obey* **hear** is better than sacrifice,
and to *hearken* than the fat of rams.
23 For rebellion is as the sin of *witchcraft* **divination**,

1 SHEMU EL 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and the best of the flock and of the oxen
and of the second sort and the rams
and all the good;
and wills to not devote them:
but they devote all the vile and molten.

10 And the word of Yah Veh comes to Shemu El,
saying,
11 I sigh that I have Shaul to reign sovereign:
for he turns back from after me
and raises not my words.
— and it inflames Shemu El
and he cries to Yah Veh all night.

12 And Shemu El starts early
to meet Shaul in the morning,
and they tell Shemu El, saying,
Shaul comes to Karmel; and behold,
he stations himself a hand:
and he goes around and passes on
and descends to Gilgal.

13 And Shemu El comes to Shaul:
and Shaul says to him,
Blessed — you of Yah Veh:
I raise the word of Yah Veh.

14 And Shemu El says,
What then — this voice of the flock in my ears?
And the voice of the oxen I hear?

15 And Shaul says,
They bring them from the Amaleqiy:
for the people
spared the best of the flock and of the oxen,
to sacrifice to Yah Veh your Elohim;
and the remainder we devote.

16 Then Shemu El says to Shaul,
Loosen up
and I tell you what Yah Veh worded me this night.

And he says to him, Word.

17 And Shemu El says,
Is it not, though you are little in your own eyes,
are you not the head of the scions of Yisra El?
And Yah Veh anoints you sovereign over Yisra El?
And Yah Veh sends you on a journey, and says,
Go and devote the sinners the Amaleq!
Fight them until you finish them off!

19 And why hearken you not to the voice of Yah Veh,
but swoop on the spoil
and work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh?

20 And Shaul says to Shemu El,
Because — I heard the voice of Yah Veh
and went the way Yah Veh sent me
and brought Agag the sovereign of Amaleq
and devoted Amaleq;
21 and the people took of the spoil
— of the flock and oxen,
the firstlings of the devoted,
to sacrifice to Yah Veh your Elohim in Gilgal.

22 And Shemu El says,
Delights Yah Veh in holocausts and sacrifices
as much as in hearing the voice of Yah Veh?
Behold, hearing is better than sacrificing;
and hearkening, than the fat of rams.
23 For rebellion is the sin of divination

1 SAMUEL 15, 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and stubbornness is as *iniquity mischief* and *idolatry teraphim*.

Because thou hast *rejected refused*
the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
he hath also *rejected refused* thee
from *being king sovereign*.

24 And *Saul Shaul* said unto *Samuel Shemu El*,
I have sinned: for I have *transgressed trespassed*
the *commandment mouth* of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and thy words:

because I *feared awed* the people,
and *obeyed heard* their voice.

25 Now therefore, I *pray beseech* thee, *pardon lift* my sin,
and turn *again back* with me,
that I may *worship the LORD prostrate to Yah Veh*.

26 And *Samuel Shemu El* said unto *Saul Shaul*,
I *will shall* not return with thee:
for thou hast *rejected refused*
the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and the *LORD Yah Veh* hath *rejected refused* thee
from being *king sovereign* over *Israel Yisra El*.

27 And as *Samuel Shemu El* turned about to go away,
he laid hold upon the *skirt borders* of his mantle,
and it *rent ripped*.

28 And *Samuel Shemu El* said unto him,
The LORD Yah Veh hath *rent ripped*
the *kingdom sovereignty* of *Israel Yisra El*
from thee this day,
and hath given it to a *neighbour friend* of thine,
that is better than thou.

29 And also the *Strength Perpetuity* of *Israel Yisra El*
will shall not *lie falsify* nor *repent sigh*:
for he is not a *man human*, that he should *repent sigh*.

30 Then he said, I have sinned:
yet honour me now, I *pray beseech* thee,
before in front of the elders of my people,
and *before Israel in front* of *Yisra El*,
and turn *again back* with me,
that I may *worship prostrate*
the *LORD to Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*.

31 So *Samuel Shemu El* turned *again back* after *Saul Shaul*;
and *Saul worshipped the LORD Shaul prostrated to Yah Veh*.

32 Then said *Samuel Shemu El*,
Bring ye *hither near* to me *Agag*
the *king sovereign* of the *Amalekites Amaleq*.
And *Agag* came unto him delicately.
And *Agag* said,
Surely the bitterness of death is *past turned aside*.

33 And *Samuel Shemu El* said,
As the sword hath *made bereaved* women *childless*,
so shall thy mother be *childless bereft* among women.
And *Samuel hewed Shemu El cleaved* *Agag* in pieces
before the LORD at the face of *Yah Veh* in *Gilgal*.

34 Then *Samuel Shemu El* went to *Ramah*;
and *Saul went up Shaul ascended* to his house
to *Gibeah Gibah* of *Saul Shaul*.

35 And *Samuel Shemu El*
came no more added not to see *Saul Shaul*
until the day of his death:
nevertheless Samuel surely Shemu El
mourned for Saul Shaul:
and the *LORD repented Yah Veh sighed*
that he had *made Saul king Shaul reign*
over *Israel Yisra El*.

SHEMU EL IN BETH LECHEM

16 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto *Samuel Shemu El*,
How long *wilt shalt* thou mourn for *Saul Shaul*,
seeing I have *rejected refused* him
from reigning over *Israel Yisra El*?
fill thine horn with oil, and go,
I *will shall* send thee to *Jesse Yishay*
the *Bethlehemite Beth Lechemiy*:
for I have *provided seen* me
a *king sovereign* among his sons.

2 And *Samuel Shemu El* said, How *can shall* I go?
if *Saul Shaul* hear it, he *will kill shall slaughter* me.

And the *LORD Yah Veh* said,
Take an heifer *with thee of the ox in thy hand*, and say,
I *am have* come to sacrifice to the *LORD Yah Veh*.

1 SHEMU EL 15, 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and stubbornness, mischief and teraphim:
because you refuse the word of Yah Veh
he also refuses you from *being* sovereign.

24 And Shaul says to Shemu El, I sinned:
for I trespassed the mouth of Yah Veh
and your words:

25 because I awed the people and heard their voice:
and now, I beseech you, lift my sin
and turn back with me to prostrate to Yah Veh.

26 And Shemu El says to Shaul,
I return not with you:
for you refused the word of Yah Veh
and Yah Veh refuses you
from being sovereign over Yisra El.

27 And as Shemu El turns about to go away,
he holds the border of his mantle — and it rips.

28 And Shemu El says to him,
Yah Veh rips the sovereignty of Yisra El
from you this day;
and gives it to your friend — better than you:
and also, the Perpetuity of Yisra El
neither falsifies nor sighs:
for he *is* no human, that he sighs.

30 Then he says, I sinned!
Honor me now, I beseech you,
in front of the elders of my people
and in front of Yisra El
and turn back with me,
to prostrate to Yah Veh your Elohim.
31 — and Shemu El turns back after Shaul;
and Shaul prostrates to Yah Veh.

32 And Shemu El says,
Bring near me Agag the sovereign of the Amaleq.

And Agag comes to him delicately: and Agag says,
Surely the bitterness of death is turned aside.

33 And Shemu El says,
As the sword bereaves women,
thus be your mother bereft among women.
— and Shemu El cleaves Agag in pieces
at the face of Yah Veh in Gilgal.

34 And Shemu El goes to Ramah;
and Shaul ascends to his house to Gibah of Shaul:
and Shemu El adds not to see Shaul
until the day of his death:
surely Shemu El mourns for Shaul:
and Yah Veh sighs to have Shaul reign over Yisra El.

SHEMU EL IN BETH LECHEM

16 And Yah Veh says to Shemu El,
How long mourn you for Shaul,
seeing I refuse him to reign over Yisra El?
Fill your horn with oil and go!
I send you to Yishay the Beth Lechemiy:
for I see a sovereign among his sons.

2 And Shemu El says, How go I?
When Shaul hears, he slaughters me.

And Yah Veh says,
Take a heifer of the ox in your hand and say,
I come to sacrifice to Yah Veh;

1 SAMUEL 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 3 And call Jesse **Yishay** to the sacrifice,
and I *will shew thee* **shall have thee know**
what thou shalt *do* **work**:
and thou shalt anoint unto me
him whom I *name* **say** unto thee.
- 4 And *Samuel did* **Shemu El worked**
that which *the LORD spake* **Yah Veh worded**,
and came to *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**.
And the elders of the *town* **city**
trembled *at his coming* **to meet him**, and said,
Comest thou *peaceably* **in shalom**?
And he said, *Peaceably* **In shalom**:
I am come to sacrifice unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
sanctify **hallow** yourselves,
and come with me to the sacrifice.
- And he *sanctified* Jesse **hallowed Yishay** and his sons,
and called them to the sacrifice.
- 6 And **so be** it came to pass, when they were come,
that he *looked on Eliab* **saw Eli Ab**, and said,
Surely *the LORD'S* **Yah Veh's** anointed is *before* **in front of** him.
- 7 But *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto *Samuel* **Shemu El**,
Look not on his *countenance* **visage**,
or on the height of his *stature* **height**;
because I have refused him:
for the LORD seeth — not as *man* **humanity** seeth;
for man **humanity**
looketh on **seeth** the *outward appearance* **eyes**,
but *the LORD* **looketh on** **Yah Veh seeth** the heart.
- 8 Then Jesse **Yishay** called *Abinadab* **Abi Nadab**,
and made him pass
before Samuel **at the face of Shemu El**.
And he said, Neither hath *the LORD* **Yah Veh** chosen this.
Then Jesse **Yishay** made Shammah to pass by.
And he said, Neither hath *the LORD* **Yah Veh** chosen this.
- 10 Again, Jesse **Yishay** made seven of his sons
to pass *before Samuel* **at the face of Shemu El**.
And *Samuel* **Shemu El** said unto Jesse **Yishay**,
The LORD **Yah Veh** hath not chosen these.
- 11 And *Samuel* **Shemu El** said unto Jesse **Yishay**,
Are here all thy *children* **integrious lads**?
And he said, There *remaineth* **surviveth** yet the youngest,
and, behold, he *keepeth* **tendeth** the *sheep* **flock**.
And *Samuel* **Shemu El** said unto Jesse **Yishay**,
Send and *fetch* **take** him:
for we will **shall** not *sit down* **turn around**
till he come hither.
- DAVID ANOINTED**
- 12 And he sent, and brought him in. Now he was ruddy,
and *withal* of a beautiful *countenance* **eyes**,
and goodly to *look to* **see**.
And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said, Arise, anoint him:
for this is he.
- 13 Then *Samuel* **Shemu El** took the horn of oil,
and anointed him in the midst of his brethren:
and the Spirit of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
came **prospered** upon David
from that day *forward* **onward**.
So *Samuel* **Shemu El** rose up, and went to Ramah.
- AN EVIL SPIRIT FROM YAH VEH**
- 14 But the Spirit of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
departed **turned aside** from Saul **Shaul**,
and an evil spirit from *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
troubled **frightened** him.
- 15 And Saul's **Shaul's** servants said unto him, Behold now,
an evil spirit from *God* **troubleth** **Elohim frighteneth** thee.
- 16 Let our *lord* **adoni** now *command* **say to** thy servants,
which are *before thee* **at thy face**, to seek out a man,
who is a cunning player **a knowing strummer** on an harp:
and **so be** it shall come to pass,
when the evil spirit from *God* **Elohim** is upon thee,
that he shall *play* **strum** with his hand,
and thou shalt be *well* **good**.
- 17 And Saul **Shaul** said unto his servants,
Provide **See** me now a man
that can play well **well—prepared and a good strummer**,
and bring him to me.
- 18 Then answered one of the *servants* **lads**,
and said, Behold,

1 SHEMU EL 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 3 and call Yishay to the sacrifice
and I have you know what to work:
and anoint to me whom I say to you.
- 4 And Shemu El works what Yah Veh words
and comes to Beth Lechem:
and the elders of the city tremble to meet him
and say, Come you in shalom?
- 5 And he says,
I come in shalom to sacrifice to Yah Veh:
hallow yourselves and come with me to the sacrifice.
— and he hallows Yishay and his sons
and calls them to the sacrifice.
- 6 And so be it, they come,
and he sees Eli Ab and says,
Surely the anointed of Yah Veh is in front of him.
- 7 And Yah Veh says to Shemu El,
Look not on his visage
or on the height of his height;
because I refuse him:
— not as humanity sees;
for humanity sees the eyes
and Yah Veh sees the heart.
- 8 Then Yishay calls Abi Nadab
and passes him at the face of Shemu El:
and he says, Yah Veh chooses not this.
- 9 Then Yishay passes Shammah by.
And he says, Yah Veh chooses not this.
- 10 Again, Yishay passes seven of his sons
at the face of Shemu El:
and Shemu El says to Yishay,
Yah Veh chooses not these.
- 11 And Shemu El says to Yishay,
Are these all your integrious lads?
- And he says, There survives yet the youngest;
and behold, he tends the flock.
- And Shemu El says to Yishay, Send and take him:
for we turn not around until he comes hither.
- DAVID ANOINTED**
- 12 And he sends and brings him in:
and he is ruddy
and of beautiful eyes and goodly to see.
And Yah Veh says, Rise! Anoint him! For this is he.
- 13 Then Shemu El takes the horn of oil,
and anoints him midst his brothers:
and the Spirit of Yah Veh prospers on David
from that day onward.
— and Shemu El rises and goes to Ramah.
- AN EVIL SPIRIT FROM YAH VEH**
- 14 The Spirit of Yah Veh turns aside from Shaul
and an evil spirit from Yah Veh frightens him.
And Shaul's servants say to him, Behold now,
an evil spirit from Elohim frightens you.
Have our adoni
say to your servants at your face
to seek out a man — a knowing strummer on a harp:
and so be it,
when the evil spirit from Elohim is on you,
that he strum with his hand and it is good.
- 17 And Shaul says to his servants,
See for me a man
well—prepared and a good strummer
and bring him to me.
- 18 And one of the lads answers and says, Behold,

1 SAMUEL 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

I have seen a son of Jesse **Yishay**
the *Bethlehemite* **Beth Lechemiy**,
that is *cunning in playing* a **knowledgeable strummer**,
and a mighty valiant *man*, and a man of war,
and prudent **discerning** in matters words,
and a *comely person* **man of form**,
and the LORD **Yah Veh** is with him.
19 Wherefore *Saul Shaul*
sent messengers **angels** unto Jesse **Yishay**, and said,
Send me David thy son, which is with the *sheep* **flock**.
20 And Jesse **Yishay** took an *ass laden* a **he burro**
with bread, and a *bottle* **skin** of wine,
and a *kid* **one doe goat**,
and sent them by **the hand of** David his son
unto *Saul Shaul*.
21 And David came to *Saul Shaul*,
and stood *before him* **at his face**:
and he loved him *greatly* **mightily**;
and he became his *armourbearer* **instrument bearer**.
22 And *Saul Shaul* sent to Jesse **Yishay**, saying,
Let David, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
stand *before me* **at my face**;
for he hath found *favour* **charism** in my *sight* eyes.
23 And **so be** it came to pass,
when the *evil spirit* from *God Elohim*
was upon *Saul Shaul*,
that David took an harp,
and *played* **strummed** with his hand:
so *Saul was refreshed* **Shaul respired**, and was *well* **good**,
and the evil spirit *departed* **turned aside** from him.

DAVID AND GOLYATH

17

Now the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
gathered *together* their *armies* **camp**s to *battle* war,
and were gathered *together* at *Shochoh* **Sochoh**,
which *belongeth* **be** to Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and pitched **encamped**
between *Shochoh* **Sochoh** and *Azekah* **between** *Azeqah*,
in *Ephesdammim* **Ephes Dammim**.
2 And *Saul Shaul* and the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
were gathered *together*,
and pitched **encamped** by the valley of Elah,
and set the *battle in array* **lined up for war**
against **to meet** the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
3 And the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** stood on a mountain
on the *one* **this** side,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** stood on a mountain
on the *other* **that** side:
and there was a valley between them.
4 And there went out a *champion* **man of double size**
out of the camp of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
named *Goliath* **Golyath**, of Gath,
whose height was six cubits and a span.
5 And he had an helmet of *brass* **copper** upon his head,
and he was *armed* **enrobed** with a *coat* **habergeon** of mail;
and the weight of the *coat* **habergeon**
was five thousand shekels of *brass* **copper**.
6 And he had *greaves* **shinguards** of *brass* **copper**
upon his *legs* **feet**,
and a *target* **dart** of *brass* **copper**
between his shoulders.
7 And the *staff* **timber** of his spear
was like a weaver's beam;
and his spear's *head* **weighed** **blade**
be six hundred shekels of iron:
and one bearing a shield
went *before* **at the face** of him.
8 And he stood and *cried* **called out**
unto the *armies* **ranks** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and said unto them,
Why are ye *come* **gone out**
to set your *battle in array* **line up for war**?
am not I a *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
and ye servants to *Saul Shaul*?
choose **cut** you a man for you,
and let him *come down* **descend** to me.
9 If he be able to fight with me, and to *kill* **smite** me,
then *will* **shall** we be your servants:
but if I prevail against him, and *kill* **smite** him,

1 SHEMU EL 16, 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I saw a son of Yishay the Beth Lechemiy
— a knowledgeable strummer
and mighty valiant and a man of war
— discerning in words and a man of form
and Yah Veh is with him.
19 And Shaul sends angels to Yishay and says,
Send me David your son, who *is* with the flock.
20 And Yishay takes a he burro
with bread and a skin of wine and one doe goat
and sends them by the hand of David his son
to Shaul:
21 and David comes to Shaul and stands at his face;
and he loves him mightily;
and he becomes his instrument bearer.
22 And Shaul sends to Yishay, saying,
O that David, I beseech you, stand at my face;
for he finds charism in my eyes.
23 And so be it,
the spirit from Elohim is on Shaul,
and David takes a harp and strums with his hand:
so that Shaul respire and is good;
and the evil spirit turns aside from him.

DAVID AND GOLYATH

17

And the Peleshethiy gather their camps to war;
and gather at Sochoh of Yah Hudah;
and encamp between Sochoh and between Azeqah
in Ephes Dammim:
2 and Shaul and the men of Yisra El gather
and encamp by the valley of Elah
and line up for war to meet the Peleshethiy.
3 And the Peleshethiy
stand on a mountain on this side;
and Yisra El
stands on a mountain on that side
with a valley between.
4 And a man of double size,
named Golyath, of Gath,
comes from the camp of the Peleshethiy;
his height *is* six cubits and a span;
5 and he has a helmet of copper on his head
and he is enrobed with a habergeon of mail;
and the weight of the habergeon,
five thousand shekels of copper:
6 and he has shinguards of copper on his feet
and a dart of copper between his shoulders;
7 and the timber of his spear
is as the beam of a weaver;
and the blade of his spear
is six hundred shekels of iron:
and one bearing a shield goes at his face.
8 And he stands and calls out to the ranks of Yisra El
and says to them,
Why go you to line up for war?
am not I a Peleshethiy and you servants to Shaul?
Cut a man of yours and descend him to me:
9 if he is able to fight me and to smite me,
then we become your servants:
and if I prevail against him and smite him,

1 SAMUEL 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

then shall ye be our servants, and serve us.
10 And the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy** said,
I *defy* **reproach** the *armies* **ranks** of *Israel* **Yisra El** this day;
11 give me a man, that we may fight together.
When *Saul* **Shaul** and all *Israel* **Yisra El**
heard those words of the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
they were *dismayed* **terrified**,
and *greatly afraid* **mightily awed**.
12 Now David was the son of a **man**,
that *Ephrathite* — **an Ephrathiy**
of *Bethlehemjudah* **Beth Lechem Yah Hudah**,
whose name was *Jesse* **Yishay**; and he had eight sons:
and the man went among men for an old man
in the days of *Saul* **Shaul**.
13 And the three *eldest* **greatest** sons of *Jesse* **Yishay** went
and *followed* **Saul went after Shaul to the battle war**:
and the names of his three sons
that went to the *battle* **war** were
Eliab **Eli Ab** the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**,
and *next unto him* **Abinadab second Abi Nadab**,
and the third *Shammah*.
14 And David was the youngest:
and the three *eldest* **greatest**
followed **Saul went after Shaul**.
15 But David went and returned from *Saul* **Shaul**
to *feed* **tend** his father's *sheep* **flock**
at *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**.
16 And the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy** drew near
morning **starting early** and evening,
and *presented* **set** himself forty days.
17 And *Jesse* **Yishay** said unto David his son,
Take now for thy brethren an ephah of this parched *corn*,
and these ten *loaves* **bread**,
and run to the camp of thy brethren;
18 And carry these ten *cheeses* **slices of milk**
unto the *captain* **governor** of their thousand,
and *look how* **visit** thy brethren *fare* **for shalom**,
and take their pledge.
19 Now *Saul* **Shaul**, and they,
and all the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
were in the valley of *Elah*,
fighting with the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
20 And David *rose up* **started** early in the morning,
and left the *sheep* **flock** with a *keeper* **guard**,
and *took* **lifted**, and went,
as *Jesse* **Yishay** had *commanded* **misvahed** him;
and he came to the *trench* **route**,
as the *host* **valiant** was going forth to the *fight* **ranks**,
and shouted for the *battle* **war**.
21 For *Israel* **Yisra El** and the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
had *put the battle in array* **lined up**,
army against army **ranks meeting ranks**.
22 And David left his *carriage* **instrument**
in the hand of the *keeper* **guard** of the *carriage* **instrument**,
and ran into the *army* **ranks**,
and came and *saluted* **asked** his brethren **of shalom**.
23 And as he *talked worded* with them, behold,
there *came up* **ascended**
the *champion* **man of double size**,
the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy** of *Gath*,
Goliath **Golyath** by name,
out of the *armies* **ranks** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and *spake according to the same* **worded these words**:
and David heard them.
24 And all the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
when they saw the man,
fled from *him* **his face**,
and were *sore afraid* **mightily awed**.
25 And the men of *Israel* — **the Yisra Eliy** said,
Have ye seen this man that *is come up* **ascended**?
surely to *defy* *Israel* **reproach Yisra El**
is he *come up* **ascended**:
and **so be** it *shall be*, that the man who *killesh* **smiteth** him,
the *king will* **sovereign shall** enrich him with great riches,
and *will* **shall** give him his daughter,
and *make* **works to liberate** his father's house *free*
in *Israel* **Yisra El**.
26 And David *spake* **said** to the men that stood by him,

1 SHEMU EL 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

then you become our servants and serve us.
10 And the Peleshethiy say,
I reproach the ranks of Yisra El this day;
give me a man, to fight together.
11 And Shaul and all Yisra El
hear the words of the Peleshethiy,
and they are terrified and mightily awed.
12 And David is a son of a man
— an Ephrathiy of Beth Lechem Yah Hudah,
his name *is* Yishay; and he has eight sons:
and the man goes among men for an old man
in the days of Shaul.
13 And the three greatest sons of Yishay go
— go after Shaul to the war:
and the names of his three sons
who go to the war *are* Eli Ab the firstbirthed
and second Abi Nadab and the third Shammah;
and David is the youngest:
and the three greatest go after Shaul:
but David goes and returns from Shaul
to tend the flock of his father at Beth Lechem.
14 And the Peleshethiy draws near
starting early and evening
and sets himself forty days.
15 And Yishay says to David his son,
Take now for your brothers
an ephah of this parched and these ten bread
and run to the camp of your brothers;
and carry these ten slices of milk
to the governor of their thousand
and visit your brothers for shalom
and take their pledge.
16 Now Shaul and they and all the men of Yisra El
are in the valley of Elah fighting the Peleshethiy:
and David starts early in the morning
and leaves the flock with a guard;
and lifts and goes as Yishay misvahs him:
and he comes to the route,
as the valiant go forth to the ranks
and shout for the war:
21 and Yisra El and the Peleshethiy line up
— ranks meeting ranks.
22 And David leaves his instrument
in the hand of the guard of the instrument;
and runs into the ranks
and comes and asks his brothers of shalom:
and as he words with them, behold,
the man of double size ascends
from the ranks of the Peleshethiy
— the Peleshethiy of Gath, Golyath by name,
and he words these words; and David hears.
23 And all the men of Yisra El see the man,
and they flee his face mightily awed:
and the men — the Yisra Eliy say,
See you this man who ascends?
He ascends to reproach Yisra El:
and so be it, the man who smites him,
the sovereign enriches him with great riches
and gives him his daughter
and works to liberate the house of his father in Yisra El.
24 And David says to the men who stand by him,

1 SAMUEL 17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

saying, What shall be *done* **worked** to the man
that *killeth* **smite** this *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
and *taketh away* **turneth aside** the reproach
from *Israel* **Yisra El**?

for who is this uncircumcised *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
that he should *defy* **reproach** the *armies* **ranks**
of the living *God* **Elohim**?

27 And the people *answered* **said** to him
after this *manner* **word**, saying,
So **Thus** shall it be *done* **worked**
to the man that killeth him.

28 And *Eliab* **Eli Ab** his *eldest* **greatest** brother
heard when he *spake* **worded** unto the men;
and *Eliab's anger* **Eli Ab's wrath**
was kindled against David, and he said,
Why *camest* **descendest** thou *down* hither?
and with whom
hast thou left those few *sheep* **flock** in the wilderness?
I know thy *pride* **arrogance**,
and the *naughtiness* **evil** of thine heart;
for thou art *come down* **descended**
that thou mightest see the *battle* **war**.

29 And David said, What have I now *done* **worked**?
Is there not a *cause* **word**?

30 And he turned from **beside** him toward another,
and *spake* **said** after the same *manner* **word**:
and the people *answered him again* **returned word**
after the former *manner* **word**.

31 And when the words were heard
which David *spake* **worded**,
they *rehearsed* **told** them *before Saul* **at the face of Shaul**:
and he *sent for* **took** him.

32 And David said to *Saul* **Shaul**,
Let no *man's* **human's** heart *fail* **fall** because of him;
thy servant *will* **shall** go
and fight with this *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**.

33 And *Saul* **Shaul** said to David,
Thou art not able to go against this *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**
to fight with him:
for thou art *but* a *youth* **lad**,
and he a man of war from his youth.

34 And David said unto *Saul* **Shaul**,
Thy servant *kept* **was tending** his father's *sheep* **flock**,
and there came a lion, and a bear,
and *took* **lifted** a lamb out of the *flock* **drove**:
And I went out after him, and smote him,
and *delivered* **rescued** it out of his mouth:
and when he arose against me,
I *caught* **held** him by his beard,
and smote him, and *slew* **deathified** him.

36 Thy servant *slew* **smote** both the lion and the bear:
and this uncircumcised *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**
shall be as one of them,
seeing he hath *defied* **reproached** the *armies* **ranks**
of the living *God* **Elohim**.

37 David said moreover,
The LORD **Yah Veh** that *delivered* **rescued** me
out of the *paw* **hand** of the lion,
and out of the *paw* **hand** of the bear,
he *will deliver* **shall rescue** me
out of the hand of this *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**.

And *Saul* **Shaul** said unto David,
Go, and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** be with thee.

38 And *Saul* **armed** **Shaul enrobed** David
with his *armour* **uniform**,
and he *put* **gave** an helmet of *brass* **copper** upon his head;
also he *armed* **enrobed** him
with a *coat* **habergeon** of mail.

39 And David girded his sword upon his *armour* **uniform**,
and he *assayed* **willed** to go;
for he had not *proved* **tested** it.

And David said unto *Saul* **Shaul**, I cannot go with these;
for I have not *proved* **tested** them.

And David *put* **turned** them *off him* **aside**.

40 And he took his staff in his hand,
and chose him five smooth stones out of the *brook* **wadi**,
and *put* **set** them in a *shepherd's bag* **tender's instrument**
which he had, even in a *scrip* **pouch**;

1 SHEMU EL 17

exeGeses companion BIBLE

saying, What work you to the man
who smites this Peleshethiy
and turns aside the reproach from Yisra El?
Who is this uncircumcised Peleshethiy,
to reproach the ranks of the living Elohim?

27 And the people say to him after this word, saying,
Thus be it worked to the man who kills him.

28 And Eli Ab his greatest brother
hears when he words to the men;
and Eli Ab kindles his wrath against David,
and he says, Why descend you hither?
And with whom
leave you those few flock in the wilderness?
I know your arrogance and the evil of your heart;
for you descend to see the war.

29 And David says,
What work I now? Is there no word?

30 and he turns from beside him toward another
and says after the same word:
and the people return word as the former word:
and they hear the words David words;
and they tell them at the face of Shaul:
and he takes him.

31 and they hear the words David words;
and they tell them at the face of Shaul:
and he takes him.

32 And David says to Shaul,
O that no human heart fall because of him;
your servant goes and fights this Peleshethiy.

33 And Shaul says to David,
You are not able to go fight this Peleshethiy:
for you are a lad; and he a man of war from his youth.

34 And David says to Shaul,
As your servant tends the flock of his father,
a lion and a bear came
and lifted a lamb from the drove:
and I went out after him and smote him
and rescued it from his mouth:
and he rose against me,
and I held him by his beard
and smote him and deathified him:

36 your servant smote both the lion and the bear:
and this uncircumcised Peleshethiy
becomes as one of them,
seeing he reproaches the ranks of the living Elohim.

37 And David says,
Yah Veh who rescued me from the hand of the lion
and from the hand of the bear
— he rescues me from the hand of this Peleshethiy.

And Shaul says to David,
Go! And Yah Veh be with you!

38 And Shaul enrobes David with his uniform
and gives a helmet of copper on his head;
and he enrobes him with a habergeon of mail:
and David girds his sword on his uniform
and he wills to go without testing.

And David says to Shaul, I cannot go with these;
for I have not tested them.

40 And David turns them aside;
and he takes his staff in his hand
and chooses five smooth stones from the wadi
and sets them in the instrument of the tender
he has in a pouch;

1 SAMUEL 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and his sling was in his hand:
and he drew near to the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**.
41 And **in walking**,
the *Philistine* came **Peleshethiy** walked on
and drew near **approached** unto David;
and the man that bare the shield
went before him **at his face**.
42 And when the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy** looked about,
and saw David, he *disdained* **despised** him:
for he was *but a youth* **lad**, and ruddy,
and of a *fair countenance* **handsome visage**.
43 And the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy** said unto David,
Am I a dog, that thou comest to me with staves?
And the *Philistine* **cursed** **Peleshethiy** belittled David
by his *gods* **elohim**.
44 And the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy** said to David,
Come to me, and I *will* **shall** give thy flesh
unto the *fowls* **flyers** of the *air* **heavens**,
and to the *beasts* **animals** of the field.
45 Then said David to the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
Thou comest to me with a sword,
and with a spear, and with a *shield* **dart**
but I come to thee
in the name of the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the *God* **Elohim** of the *armies* **ranks** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
whom thou hast *defied* **reproached**.
46 This day *will* the *LORD* **shall** **Yah Veh**
deliver **shut** thee into mine hand;
and I *will* **shall** smite thee,
and *take* **turn aside** thine head from thee;
and I *will* **shall** give the carcasses
of the *host* **camp** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** this day
unto the *fowls* **flyers** of the *air* **heavens**,
and to the *wild beasts* **live beings** of the earth;
that all the earth may know
that there is a *God* **an Elohim** in *Israel* **Yisra El**.
47 And all this *assembly* **congregation** shall know
that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** saveth not with sword and spear:
for the *battle is the LORD'S* **war be Yah Veh's**,
and he *will* **shall** give you into our hands.
48 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
when the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy** arose, and came,
and drew *nigh* **approached** to meet David,
that David hasted,
and ran toward the *army* **ranks**
to meet the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**.
49 And David *put* **spread** his hand
in his *bag* **instrument**,
and took thence a stone, and slang it,
and smote the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy** in his forehead,
that the stone sunk into his forehead;
and he fell upon his face to the earth.
50 So David prevailed over the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**
with a sling and with a stone,
and smote the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
and *slew* **deathified** him;
but there was no sword in the hand of David.
51 Therefore David ran,
and stood upon the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
and took his sword, and drew it out of the sheath thereof,
and *slew* **deathified** him, and cut off his head therewith.
And when the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
saw their *champion was dead* **mighty had died**, they fled.
52 And the men of *Israel* **Yisra El** and of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
arose, and shouted,
and pursued the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
until thou come to the valley,
and to the *gates* **portals** of *Ekron* **Eqron**.
And the *wounded* **pierced** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
fell down **descended** by the way to *Shaaraim* **Shaarayim**,
even unto Gath, and unto *Ekron* **Eqron**.
53 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** returned
from *chasing* **hotly pursuing**
after the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and they *spoiled* **plundered** their *tents* **camp**s.
54 And David took the head of the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
and brought it to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
but he *put* **set** his *armour* **instruments** in his tent.

1 SHEMU EL 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and his sling is in his hand:
and he draws near the Peleshethiy:
41 and in walking,
the Peleshethiy walks and approaches David;
and the man bearing the shield at his face.
42 And the Peleshethiy
looks around and sees David;
and he despises him:
for he is a lad and ruddy and of a handsome visage.
43 And the Peleshethiy says to David,
Am I a dog, that you come to me with staves?
— and the Peleshethiy belittles David by his elohim.
44 And the Peleshethiy says to David,
Come to me
and I give your flesh to the flyers of the heavens
and to the animals of the field.
45 Then says David to the Peleshethiy,
You come to me with a sword
and with a spear and with a dart:
but I come to you in the name of Yah Veh Sabaoth
— Elohim of the ranks of Yisra El
whom you reproach.
46 This day Yah Veh shuts you into my hand;
and I smite you and turn aside your head from you:
and this day
I give the carcasses of the camp of the Peleshethiy
to the flyers of the heavens
and to the live beings of the earth;
so that all the earth knows
there is an Elohim in Yisra El:
47 and all this congregation know
that Yah Veh saves not with sword and spear:
for the war is to Yah Veh
and he gives you into our hands.
48 And so be it, the Peleshethiy rises,
and comes and approaches to meet David,
and David hastens and runs toward the ranks
to meet the Peleshethiy:
49 and David spreads his hand in his instrument
and he takes a stone from it and slings it
and smites the Peleshethiy in his forehead
so that the stone sinks into his forehead;
and he falls on his face to the earth.
50 And David prevails over the Peleshethiy
with a sling and with a stone
and smites the Peleshethiy and deathifies him;
and there is no sword in the hand of David:
51 and David runs and stands on the Peleshethiy
and takes his sword and draws it from its sheath
and deathifies him and cuts off his head therewith.
And the Peleshethiy see their mighty died
and they flee:
52 and the men of Yisra El and of Yah Hudah
rise and shout and pursue the Peleshethiy
until you come to the valley
and to the portals of Eqron:
and the pierced of the Peleshethiy
descend by the way to Shaarayim
— to Gath and to Eqron:
53 and the sons of Yisra El return
from hotly pursuing the Peleshethiy
and plunder their camps:
54 and David takes the head of the Peleshethiy
and brings it to Yeru Shalem;
and he sets his instruments in his tent.

1 SAMUEL 17, 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

55 And when **Saul Shaul** saw David go forth
against to meet the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
 he said unto *Abner* **Abi Ner**,
 the *captain* **governor** of the host,
Abner **Abi Ner**, whose son is this *youth* **lad**?
 And *Abner* **Abi Ner** said, As thy soul liveth,
 O *king* **sovereign**, I cannot tell **know not**.
 56 And the *king* **sovereign** said,
Enquire **Ask** thou whose son the *stripling* **lad** is.
 57 And as David returned
 from the *slaughter* of **smiting** the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
Abner **Abi Ner** took him,
 and brought him *before* **Saul** at the **face** of **Shaul**
 with the head of the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy** in his hand.
 58 And *Saul* **Shaul** said to him,
 Whose son art thou, thou *young man* **lad**?
 And David *answered* **said**,
 I am the son of thy servant *Jesse* **Yishay**
 the *Bethlehemite* **Beth Lechemiy**.

DAVID AND YAH NATHAN

18

And **so be** it came to pass,
 when he had *made an end of speaking* **finished wording**
 unto *Saul* **Shaul**,
 that the soul of *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**
 was *knit* **bound** with the soul of David,
 and *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** loved him as his own soul.
 2 And *Saul* **Shaul** took him that day,
 and *would let him go no more home*
gave him not to return to his father's house.
 3 Then *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** and David
made **cut** a covenant,
 because he loved him as his own soul.
 4 And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**
 stripped himself of the *robe* **mantle** that was upon him,
 and gave it to David, and his *garments* **uniform**,
 even to his sword, and to his bow, and to his girdle.
 5 And David went out whithersoever *Saul* **Shaul** sent him,
 and *behaved himself wisely* **comprehended**:
 and *Saul* **Shaul** set him over the men of war,
 and he was *accepted* **well—pleasing**
 in the *sight eyes* of all the people,
 and also in the *sight eyes* of *Saul's* **Shaul's** servants.
 6 And **so be** it came to pass, as they came,
 when David was returned
 from the *slaughter* of **smiting** the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
 that the women
came **went** out of all cities of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 singing and **round** dancing,
 to meet *king* **Saul** **sovereign** **Shaul**,
 with *tabrets* **tambourines**, with *joy* **cheer**,
 and with *instruments* of *musick* **triangles**.
 7 And the women answered *one another*
 as they *played* **entertained**, and said,
Saul **Shaul** hath *slain* **smitten** his thousands,
 and David his *ten thousands* **myriads**.
 8 And *Saul* **Shaul** was very *wroth* **mighty inflamed**,
 and the *saying* **displeased him** **word was evil in his eyes**;
 and he said,
 They have *ascribed* **given** unto David
ten thousands **myriads**,
 and to me they have
ascribed **but given** thousands:
 and what *can he have more*
 but the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**?
 9 And *Saul* **Shaul** eyed David from that
 day and *forward* **beyond**.
 SHAUL FEARS DAVID

SHAUL FEARS DAVID

1 SHEMU EL 17, 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

55 And Shaul sees David
 going to meet the Peleshethiy;
 and he says to Abi Ner the governor of the host,
 Abi Ner, whose son is this lad?
 And Abi Ner says, As your soul lives, O sovereign,
 I know not.
 56 And the sovereign says, Ask whose son the lad is.
 57 And David returns from smiting the Peleshethiy,
 and Abi Ner takes him
 and brings him at the face of Shaul
 with the head of the Peleshethiy in his hand.
 58 And Shaul says to him, Whose son are you, lad?
 And David says,
 I am the son of your servant
 Yishay the Beth Lechemiy.

DAVID AND YAH NATHAN

18

And so be it, he finishes wording to Shaul,
 and the soul of Yah Nathan
 binds with the soul of David;
 and Yah Nathan loves him as his own soul.
 2 And Shaul takes him that day
 and gives him to not return to the house of his father.
 3 And Yah Nathan and David cut a covenant
 because he loves him as his own soul:
 4 and Yah Nathan strips himself
 of the mantle on him and of his uniform
 even to his sword and to his bow and to his girdle
 and gives it to David.
 5 And David goes wherever Shaul sends him
 and comprehends:
 and Shaul sets him over the men of war:
 and he is well—pleasing in the eyes of all the people
 and also in the eyes of the servants of Shaul.
 6 And so be it, as they come,
 as David returns from smiting the Peleshethiy,
 that the women go from all cities of Yisra El
 singing and round dancing
 to meet sovereign Shaul with tambourines
 with cheer and with triangles.
 7 And the women answer as they entertain, and say,
 Shaul smites his thousands and David his myriads.
 8 And Shaul inflames mightily
 and the word is evil in his eyes;
 and he says,
 To David they give myriads
 and to me they give thousands:
 and what more, except the sovereigndom?
 9 — and Shaul eyes David from that day and beyond.
 SHAUL FEARS DAVID

SHAUL FEARS DAVID

11

And so be it, on the morrow,
 the evil spirit from Elohim prospers on Shaul;
 and he prophesies midst the house:
 and David strums with his hand, as day by day:
 and there is a spear in the hand of Shaul:
 and Shaul casts the spear;
 for, he says, I smite David even to the wall.
 And David turns aside from his face two times:

1 SAMUEL 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 And Saul was afraid **Shaul awed at the face** of David,
because the **LORD Yah Veh** was with him,
and was departed **turned aside** from Saul **Shaul**.

13 Therefore
Saul removed him **Shaul turned aside** from him,
and made **set** him his **captain governor** over a thousand;
and he went out and came in
before **at the face of** the people.

14 And David behaved himself wisely **comprehended**
in all his ways;
and the **LORD Yah Veh** was with him.

15 Wherefore when Saul **Shaul** saw that he
behaved himself very wisely **comprehended mightily**,
he was afraid of him **sojourned from his face**.

16 But all **Israel Yisra El** and **Judah Yah Hudah**
loved David,
because he went out and came in
before them **at their face**.

17 And Saul **Shaul** said to David,
Behold my **elder greater** daughter Merab,
her **will shall** I give thee to **wife woman**:
only be thou **valiant a son of valour** for me,
and fight the **LORD'S battles Yah Veh's wars**.

For Saul **Shaul** said, Let not mine hand
be upon him,
but let the hand of the **Philistines Peleshethiy**
be upon him.

18 And David said unto Saul **Shaul**, Who am I?
and what is my life, or my father's family in **Israel Yisra El**,
that I should be son in law to the **king sovereign**?

19 But **And so be** it came to pass,
at the time when Merab Saul's **Shaul's** daughter
should have been given to David,
that she was given unto **Adriel Adri El**
the **Meholathite Mecholathiy** to **wife woman**.

20 And Michal Saul's **Shaul's** daughter loved David:
and they told Saul **Shaul**,
and the **thing pleased him word was straight in his eyes**.

21 And Saul **Shaul** said, I **will shall** give him her,
that she may be a snare to him,
and that the hand of the **Philistines Peleshethiy**
may be against him.

Wherefore Saul **Shaul** said to David **a second time**,
Thou shalt this day be my son in law
in the one of the **twain**.

22 And Saul commanded **Shaul misvahed** his servants,
saying, **Commune Word** with David **secretly undercover**,
and say, Behold, the **king sovereign** hath delight in thee,
and all his servants love thee:
now therefore be the **king's sovereign's** son in law.

23 And Saul's **Shaul's** servants
spake **worded** those words in the ears of David.
And David said, Seemeth it to you **in your eyes**
a **light thing trifling** to be a **king's sovereign's** son in law,
seeing that I am a **poor man impoverished**,
and **lightly esteemed abased**?

24 And the servants of Saul **Shaul** told him, saying,
On this manner **According to these words**
spake **worded** David.

25 And Saul **Shaul** said, Thus shall ye say say to David,
The **king desireth sovereign delighteth** not any dowry,
but an hundred foreskins of the **Philistines Peleshethiy**,
to be avenged of the **king's sovereign's** enemies.
But Saul thought **Shaul fabricated** to make David fall
by the hand of the **Philistines Peleshethiy**.

26 And when his servants told David these words,
it pleased David well
the word was straight in David's eyes
to be the **king's sovereign's** son in law:
and the days were not **expired fulfilled**.

27 Wherefore David arose and went, he and his men,
and **slew smote** of the **Philistines Peleshethiy**
two hundred men;
and David brought their foreskins,
and they gave them **in full tale fully** to the **king sovereign**,
that he might be the **king's sovereign's** son in law.
And Saul **Shaul** gave him Michal
his daughter to **wife woman**.

1 SHEMU EL 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

12 and Shaul awes at the face of David,
because Yah Veh is with him
and turns aside from Shaul:
and Shaul turns aside from him
and sets him his governor over a thousand:
and he goes and comes at the face of the people.

13 Therefore
And David comprehends in all his ways;
and Yah Veh is with him:

14 and Shaul sees that he comprehends mightily,
and he sojourns from his face:
and all Yisra El and Yah Hudah love David,
because he goes and comes at their face.

15 And Shaul says to David,
Behold my greater daughter Merab,
I give you her to woman:
only, become a son of valour for me
and fight the wars of Yah Veh.

And Shaul says, That my hand becomes not on him,
but that the hand of the Peleshethiy becomes on him.

16 And David says to Shaul, Who am I?
And what is my life?
Or the family of my father in Yisra El?
And that I become son in law to the sovereign?

17 And so be it, at the time
to give Merab the daughter of Shaul to David,
he gives her to Adri El the Mecholathiy to woman.

18 And Michal the daughter of Shaul loves David:
and they tell Shaul;
and the word is straight in his eyes.

19 And Shaul says, I give her to him,
for a snare to him;
and that the hand of the Peleshethiy be against him.
So Shaul says to David a second time,
This day you become my son in law.

20 And Shaul misvahs his servants,
Word with David undercover, and say,
Behold, the sovereign delights in you
and all his servants love you:
and now become son in law to the sovereign.

21 And the servants of Shaul
word those words in the ears of David.

And David says, Seems it trifling in your eyes
to become son in law to the sovereign
— seeing that I am impoverished and abased?

22 And the servants of Shaul tell him, saying,
David words according to these words.

23 And Shaul says, Say thus to David:
The sovereign delights not in any dowry
except a hundred foreskins of the Peleshethiy;
to be avenged of the enemies of the sovereign.

And Shaul fabricates
that David fall by the hand of the Peleshethiy:
and his servants tell David these words;
and the word is straight in the eyes of David
— to be the son in law of the sovereign:
but the days never fulfill.

24 And David rises and goes, he and his men,
and smite two hundred men of the Peleshethiy;
and David brings their foreskins;
and they give them fully to the sovereign,
to become son in law to the sovereign.
— and Shaul gives him Michal his daughter
to woman.

1 SAMUEL 18, 19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

28 And Saul **Shaul** saw and knew
that the **LORD Yah Veh** was with David,
and that Michal *Saul's* **Shaul's** daughter loved him.

29 And *Saul* was yet the more afraid of
Shaul added to awe to face David;
and *Saul Shaul* became David's enemy
continually **all days**.

30 Then the *princes* **governors**
of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** went forth:
and **so be** it came to *pass*, after they went forth,
that David
behaved himself more wisely **comprehended more**
than all the servants of *Saul Shaul*;
so that his name was *much set by* **mightily esteemed**.

SHAUL ATTEMPTS TO DEATHIFY DAVID

19

And *Saul Shaul*
spake **worded** to *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** his son,
and to all his servants,
that they should **kill deathify** David.

2 But *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**, *Saul's* **Shaul's** son
delighted *much* **mightily** in David:
and *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** told David, saying,
Saul Shaul my father seeketh to **kill deathify** thee:
now therefore, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
take *heed* **guard** to thyself until the morning,
and *abide in a secret place* **settle covertly**,
and *hide thyself*:

3 And I *will* **shall** go out
and stand *beside* **at the hand of** my father
in the field where thou art,
and I *will commune* **shall word** with my father of thee;
and what I see, that I *will* **shall** tell thee.

4 And *Jonathan spake* **Yah Nathan worded** good of David
unto *Saul Shaul* his father, and said unto him,
Let not the *king* **sovereign** sin against his servant,
against David;
because he hath not sinned against thee,
and because his works
have been *to thee—ward* very good **mighty toward thee**:
For he *did put his life set his soul* in his *hand* **palm**,
and *slew* **smote** the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
and the **LORD wrought** **Yah Veh worked** a great salvation
for all *Israel* **Yisra El**:
thou sawest it, and didst *rejoice* **cheer**:
wherefore then *wilt* **shalt** thou sin against innocent blood,
to *slay* **deathify** David *without a cause* **gratuitously**?

6 And *Saul Shaul*
hearkened unto the voice of *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**:
and *Saul* **sware** **Shaul oathed**,
As the **LORD Yah Veh** liveth,
he shall not be *slain* **deathified**.

7 And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** called David,
and *Jonathan shewed* **Yah Nathan told** him
all those *things* **words**.

And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** brought David to *Saul Shaul*,
and he was *in his presence* **at his face**,
as *in times past* **three yesters ago**.

8 And there was *war* **added to be war**:
and David went out,
and fought with the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and *slew* **smote** them with a great *slaughter* **stroke**;
and they fled from *him* **his face**.

9 And the evil spirit from the **LORD Yah Veh**
was upon *Saul Shaul*,
as he *sat* **settled** in his house
with his *javelin* **spear** in his hand:
and David *played* **strummed** with his hand.

10 And *Saul Shaul* sought to smite David
even to the wall with the *javelin* **spear**:
but he *slipped away* **burst forth**
out of Saul's presence **from Shaul's face**,
and he smote the *javelin* **spear** into the wall:
and David fled, and escaped that night.

11 *Saul Shaul* also sent *messengers* **angels**
unto David's house, to *watch* **guard** him,
and to *slay* **deathify** him in the morning:
and Michal David's *wife* **woman** told him, saying,
If thou save **rescue** not thy *life* **soul** to night,

1 SHEMU EL 18, 19

exeGeses companion BIBLE

28 And Shaul sees and knows Yah Veh is with David
and that Michal the daughter of Shaul loves him:
29 and Shaul adds to awe to face David;
and Shaul becomes an enemy of David all days.

30 And the governors of the Peleshethiy come:
and so be it, after they come,
David comprehends more
than all the servants of Shaul;
so that his name is mightily esteemed.

SHAUL ATTEMPTS TO DEATHIFY DAVID

19

And Shaul words
to Yah Nathan his son and to all his servants
to deathify David:

2 and Yah Nathan son of Shaul
delights mightily in David:
and Yah Nathan tells David, saying,
Shaul my father seeks to deathify you:
and now, I beseech you,
guard yourself until the morning
and settle covertly and hide:

3 And I — I go and stand at the hand of my father
in the field where you are
and word of you with my father;
and what I see, I tell you.

4 And Yah Nathan words good of David
to Shaul his father and says to him,
O that the sovereign not sin against his servant
— against David;
because he sins not against you
and because his works toward you are very mighty:
for he set his soul in his palm
and smote the Peleshethiy;
and Yah Veh worked a great salvation for all Yisra El:
you saw and cheered:
so why sin against innocent blood,
to deathify David gratuitously?

6 And Shaul hearkens to the voice of Yah Nathan:
and Shaul oaths, As Yah Veh lives,
deathify him not.

7 And Yah Nathan calls David
and Yah Nathan tells him all those words:
and Yah Nathan brings David to Shaul
and he is at his face as three yesters ago.

8 And there adds to be war:
and David goes out and fights the Peleshethiy
and smites them with a great stroke;
and they flee his face.

9 And the evil spirit from Yah Veh is on Shaul,
as he settles in his house with his spear in his hand:
and David strums with his hand:
and Shaul seeks to smite David
to the wall with the spear:
but he bursts forth from the face of Shaul
and he smites the spear into the wall:
and David flees and escapes that night.

11 And Shaul sends angels to the house of David
to guard him — to deathify him in the morning:
and Michal the woman of David tells him, saying,
If you rescue not your soul tonight,

1 SAMUEL 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 to morrow thou shalt be **slain deathified**.
So Michal *let* **descended** David *down*
through a window:
and he went, and fled, and escaped.

13 And Michal took *an image* **the teraphim**,
and *laid it* **set them** in the bed,
and *put a pillow* **set a mattress** of goats' hair **doe goats**
for his *bolster* **headpieces**,
and covered *it* **them** with a cloth.

14 And when *Saul* **Shaul**
sent *messengers* **angels** to take David,
she said, He is sick.

15 And *Saul/Shaul* sent the *messengers* **angels** *again*
to see David, saying,
Bring **Ascend** him *up* to me in the bed,
that I may *slay* **deathify** him.

16 And when the *messengers* **angels** were come in,
behold, there *was an image* **were the teraphim** in the bed,
with a *pillow* **mattress** of goats' hair **doe goats'**
for his *bolster* **headpieces**.

17 And *Saul/Shaul* said unto Michal,
Why hast thou deceived me so,
and sent away mine enemy, that he is escaped?
And Michal *answered Saul* **said to Shaul**,
He said unto me, *Let me go* **Send me away**;
why should I *kill* **deathify** thee?

18 So David fled, and escaped,
and came to *Samuel* **Shemu El** to Ramah,
and told him all that *Saul/Shaul* had *done* **worked** to him.
And he and *Samuel* **Shemu El** went
and *dwelt* **settled** in *Naioth* **Navith**.

19 And it was told *Saul/Shaul*, saying,
Behold, David is at *Naioth* **Navith** in Ramah.

20 And *Saul/Shaul* sent *messengers* **angels** to take David:
and when they saw the *company* **assembly** of the prophets
prophesying,
and *Samuel* **Shemu El**
standing *as appointed* **stationed** over them,
the Spirit of *God* **Elohim**
was upon the *messengers* **angels** of *Saul/Shaul*,
and they also prophesied.

21 And when it was told *Saul/Shaul*,
he sent other *messengers* **angels**,
and they prophesied likewise.
And *Saul/Shaul* sent *messengers* **angels** *again*
the third time,
and they prophesied also.

22 Then went he also to Ramah,
and came to a great well that is in Sechu:
and he asked and said,
Where are *Samuel* **Shemu El** and David?
And one said, Behold, they be at *Naioth* **Navith** in Ramah.

23 And he went thither to *Naioth* **Navith** in Ramah:
and the Spirit of *God* **Elohim** was upon him also,
and *he went in walking*, he **walked** on, and prophesied,
until he came to *Naioth* **Navith** in Ramah.

24 And he stripped off his clothes also,
and prophesied *before Samuel* **at the face of Shemu El**
in like manner **also**,
and *lay down* **fell** naked all that day and all that night.
Wherefore they say,
Is *Saul/Shaul* also among the prophets?

DAVID AND YAH NATHAN CUT A COVENANT

20 And David fled from *Naioth* **Navith** in Ramah,
and came and said
before Jonathan **at the face of Yah Nathan**,
What have I *done* **worked**?
what is *mine iniquity* **my perversion**?
and what is my sin *before* **at the face of** thy father,
that he seeketh my *life* **soul**?

2 And he said unto him, *God forbid* **Far be it**;
thou shalt not die:
behold, my father *will do nothing* **shall work naught**
either — great **word** or small **word**,
but that he *will shew it me* **shall expose in mine ear**:
and why should my father hide this *thing* **word** from me?
it is not so.

3 And David *sware* **oathed** moreover, and said,

1 SHEMU EL 19, 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

tomorrow they deathify you.

12 So Michal descends David through a window:
and he goes and flees and escapes:
And Michal takes the teraphim
and set them in the bed;
and sets a mattress of doe goats for his headpieces
and covers them with a cloth.

14 And Shaul sends angels to take David,
and she says, He is sick.

15 And Shaul sends the angels to see David, saying,
Ascend him to me in the bed, and I deathify him.

16 And the angels come in,
and behold, the teraphim in the bed,
with a mattress of doe goats for their headpieces.

17 And Shaul says to Michal,
Why have you deceived me so
and send away my enemy to escape?

And Michal says to Shaul,
He says to me, Send me away.
Why deathify you?

18 So David flees and escapes
and comes to Shemu El to Ramah;
and tells him all Shaul works to him:
and he and Shemu El go and settle in Navith.

19 And someone tells Shaul, saying,
Behold, David is at Navith in Ramah.

20 And Shaul sends angels to take David:
and they see the assembly of the prophets prophesying
and Shemu El stands stationed over them,
the Spirit of Elohim is on the angels of Shaul
and they also prophesy.

21 And someone tells Shaul
and he sends other angels and they also prophesy:
and Shaul sends angels the third time
and they also prophesy.

22 Then he goes to Ramah
and comes to a great well in Sechu:
and he asks and says,
Where are Shemu El and David?
And one says, Behold, at Navith in Ramah.

23 And he goes to Navith in Ramah:
and the Spirit of Elohim is on him — him also
and in walking, he walks on and prophesies
until he comes to Navith in Ramah:
and he strips his clothes — he also
and prophesies at the face of Shemu El
and falls naked all that day and all that night.
So they say,
Is Shaul also among the prophets?

DAVID AND YAH NATHAN CUT A COVENANT

20 And David flees from Navith in Ramah
and comes at the face of Yah Nathan and says,
What work I? What is my perversion?
What is my sin at the face of your father
that he seeks my soul?

2 And he says to him, Far be it! You die not!
Behold, my father works naught
— great word or small word,
that he exposes not in my ear:
And why hides my father this word from me?
Is this not so?

3 And David oaths again and says,

1 SAMUEL 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

In knowing, Thy father *certainly* knoweth
that I have found *grace* **charism** in thine eyes;
and he saith, Let not *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** know this,
lest he be *grieved* **contorted**:
but truly as *the LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth,
and as thy soul liveth,
there is but a *step* **stride** between me and death.
4 Then said *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** unto David,
Whatsoever thy soul *desireth* **saith**,
I will even do **shall work** it for thee.
5 And David said unto *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**,
Behold, to morrow is the new moon,
and I should *not fail to sit* **in sitting**,
I sit with the *king at meat* **sovereign to eat**:
but let me go **send me away**,
that I may hide myself in the field
unto the third *day* at even.
6 If **in visiting**, thy father *at all miss me* **visit me**,
then say,
In asking, David *earnestly* asked *leave* of me
that he might run to *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem** his city:
for there is a *yearly sacrifice* **sacrifice of days** there
for all the family.
7 If he say thus, *It is well* **Good**;
thy servant shall have *peace* **shalom**:
but if **in inflaming**, he be *very wroth* **inflamed**,
then be *sure* **know** that evil is *determined* **finished off** by him.
8 Therefore
thou shalt *deal kindly* **work mercy** with thy servant;
for thou hast brought thy servant
into a covenant of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** with thee:
notwithstanding, if there be in me *iniquity* **perversity**,
slay **deathify** me thyself;
for why shouldst thou bring me to thy father?
9 And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** said, Far be it from thee:
for if **in knowing**, I knew *certainly*
that evil were *determined* **finished** by my father
to come upon thee,
then *would* **should** not I tell it thee?
10 Then said David to *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**,
Who shall tell me?
or what if thy father answer thee *roughly* **hardly**?
11 And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** said unto David,
Come, and let us go out into the field.
And they went out both of them into the field.
12 And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** said unto David,
O *LORD God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
when I have *sounded* **probed** my father about to morrow
any time, or the third *day*,
and, behold, if there be good toward David,
and I then send not unto thee,
and *shew it thee* **expose it in thine ear**;
13 *The LORD* **Yah Veh**
do so and much more **work thus and add**
to *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**:
but if it *please* **well—please** my father
to *do thee evil* **vilify thee**,
then I *will shew it thee* **shall expose it in thine ear**,
and send thee away,
that thou mayest go in *peace* **shalom**:
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** be with thee,
as he hath been with my father.
14 And thou shalt not only while yet I live
shew **work** me the *kindness* **mercy** of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that I die not:
15 But also thou shalt not cut off thy *kindness* **mercy**
from my house *for ever* **eternally**:
no, not when *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath cut off the enemies of David
every *one* **man** from the face of the *earth* **soil**.
16 So *Jonathan* made a covenant **And Yah Nathan cut**
with the house of David, *saying*,
Let *the LORD* even *require* **Yah Veh seek** it
at the hand of David's enemies.
17 And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**
caused David to *swear again* **add an oath**,
because he loved him:
for he loved him as he loved his own soul.

1 SHEMU EL 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

In knowing,
your father knows I find charism in your eyes;
and he says,
O that Yah Nathan not know this, lest he contort.
— and truly as Yah Veh lives and as your soul lives
there *is* but a stride between me and death.
4 And Yah Nathan says to David,
Whatever your soul says, I work for you.
5 And David says to Yah Nathan,
Behold, tomorrow is the new moon;
and in sitting, I sit with the sovereign to eat:
send me away to hide in the field
until the third evening.
6 If in visiting, your father visits after me, say *this*,
In asking, David asked of me
to run to Beth Lechem his city:
for there is a sacrifice of days there for all the family.
7 If he say thus, Good!
shalom to your servant:
and if in inflaming, he inflames,
then know that he finishes off evil.
8 And work mercy with your servant;
for you brought your servant
into a covenant of Yah Veh with you:
and, if there be perversity in me,
deathify me yourself.
And why this — to bring me to your father?
9 And Yah Nathan says, Far be it from you:
for in knowing, had I known
that my father finishes off evil to come on you,
had I not told you?
10 Then says David to Yah Nathan,
Who tells me?
Or what if your father answers you hardly?
11 And Yah Nathan says to David,
Come and let us go into the field.
— and they both go into the field.
12 And Yah Nathan says to David,
O Elohim of Yisra El,
when I probe my father about this time tomorrow
— or the third;
and behold, if there be good toward David
and I send not to you to expose it in your ear;
13 *may* Yah Veh work and add thus to Yah Nathan:
but if it well—pleases my father to vilify you,
then I expose it in your ear
and send you away to go in shalom:
and Yah Veh be with you as he is with my father:
14 and not only, while I still live
work me the mercy of Yah Veh that I not die:
15 neither cut off your mercy from my house eternally:
nor when Yah Veh cuts off the enemies of David
— every man from the face of the soil.
16 And Yah Nathan cuts with the house of David,
and Yah Veh seeks it
at the hand of the enemies of David:
17 and Yah Nathan has David add an oath,
because he loves him:
for he loves him as he loves his own soul.

1 SAMUEL 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

18 Then *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** said to David,
To morrow is the new moon:
and thou shalt be *misséd* **inspected**,
because thy seat *will shall* be *empty inspected*.
19 And when thou hast stayed three days,
then thou shalt *go down quickly* **descend mightily**,
and come to the place where thou didst hide thyself
when the business was in hand in the day of work,
and shalt *remain by* **settle beside** the stone Ezel.
20 And I *will shall* shoot three arrows on the side thereof,
as *though I shot* **sent** at a *mark* **target**.
21 And, behold, I *will shall* send a lad,
saying, Go, find out the arrows.
If *in saying*, I *expressly* say unto the lad,
Behold, the arrows are on this side of thee, take them;
then come thou:
for there is *peace* **shalom** to thee, and no *hurt* **word**;
as *the LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth.
22 But if I say thus unto the *young man* **lad**,
Behold, the arrows are beyond thee; go thy way:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath sent thee away.
23 And as *touching the matter* **the word**
which thou and I have *spoken of* **worded**, behold,
the LORD **Yah Veh** be between thee and me
for ever **eternally**.
24 So David hid himself in the field:
and when the new moon was come,
the *king sat him* **sovereign settled** down to eat *meat* **bread**.
25 And the *king sat* **sovereign settled** upon his seat
as *at other times* **time by time**,
even upon a seat by the wall:
and *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** arose,
and *Abner sat* **Abi Ner settled** by *Saul's* **Shaul's** side,
and David's place was *empty* **inspected**.
26 Nevertheless
Saul spake not any thing **Shaul worded naught** that day:
for he *thought* **said**,
Something **A happening** hath *befallen* **happened** him,
he is not *clean* **pure**; surely he is not *clean* **pure**.
27 And **so be** it *came to pass*, on the morrow,
which was the second *day* of the month,
that David's place was *empty* **inspected**:
and *Saul* **Shaul** said unto *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** his son,
Wherefore
cometh not the son of *Jesse* **Yishay** to *meat* **bread**,
neither yesterday, nor to day?
28 And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** answered *Saul* **Shaul**,
In asking, David *earnestly* asked *leave* of me
to go to *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**:
29 And he said, *Let me go* **Send me away**,
I *pray* **beseech** thee;
for our family hath a sacrifice in the city;
and my brother,
he hath *commanded* **misvahed** me *to be there*:
and now, if I have found *favoured* **charism** in thine eyes,
let me *get away* **escape**, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
and see my brethren.
Therefore he cometh not unto the *king's* **sovereign's** table.
30 Then *Saul's anger* **Shaul's wrath**
was kindled against *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**,
and he said unto him,
Thou son of the *perverse* **perverted** rebellious *woman*,
do not I know
that thou hast chosen the son of *Jesse* **Yishay**
to thine own *confusion* **shame**,
and unto the *confusion* **shame** of thy mother's nakedness?
31 For *as long as* **all the days**
the son of *Jesse* **Yishay** liveth upon the *ground* **soil**,
thou shalt not be established,
nor thy *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
Wherefore now send and *fetch* **take** him unto me,
for he *shall surely die* **is a son of death**.
32 And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**
answered *Saul* **Shaul** his father,
and said unto him,
Wherefore shall he be *slain* **deathified**?
what hath he *done* **worked**?
33 And *Saul* **Shaul** cast a *javelin* **spear** at him to smite him:

1 SHEMU EL 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

18 And Yah Nathan says to David,
Tomorrow *is* the new moon:
and they inspect you and inspect your seat:
and on the third,
descend mightily
and come to the place you hid yourself
in the day of work;
and settle beside the stone Ezel:
20 and I shoot three arrows on the side thereof
— send as at a target:
21 and behold, I send a lad,
Go, find the arrows.
If in saying, I say to the lad,
Behold, the arrows are on this side of you, take them!
— then come:
for there is shalom to you and no word:
Yah Veh lives:
22 and if I say to the lad thus:
Behold, the arrows beyond you!
— go your way, for Yah Veh sends you away.
23 And the word you and I word, behold,
Yah Veh *is* between you and me eternally.
24 So David hides himself in the field:
and the new moon comes,
and the sovereign settles down to eat bread.
25 And the sovereign settles on his seat
— as time by time on a seat by the wall:
and Yah Nathan rises
and Abi Ner settles by the side of Shaul
and they inspect the place of David.
26 And Shaul words naught that day:
for he says, A happening happened to him,
he is not pure; surely not pure.
27 And so be it, on the morrow,
the second of the month,
they inspect the place of David:
and Shaul says to Yah Nathan his son,
Why comes not the son of Yishay to bread
either yesterday or today?
28 And Yah Nathan answers Shaul,
In asking, David asked of me to go to Beth Lechem:
29 and he says, Send me away, I beseech you;
for our family has a sacrifice in the city;
and my brother misvahs me:
and now, if I find charism in your eyes,
let me escape, I beseech you, and see my brothers.
— so he comes not
to the table of the sovereign.
30 Then Shaul kindles his wrath against Yah Nathan
and he says to him,
You son of the perverted rebellious,
know I not
that you chose the son of Yishay to your own shame
and to the shame of the nakedness of your mother?
31 For all the days the son of Yishay lives on the soil,
neither you establish nor your sovereigndom:
and now, send and take him to me;
for he is a son of death.
32 And Yah Nathan answers Shaul his father
and says to him,
Why deathify him? What works he?
33 And Shaul casts a spear at him to smite him:

1 SAMUEL 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

whereby Jonathan **Yah Nathan** knew that it was
determined **fully finished** of his father
to slay **deathify** David.
34 So Jonathan **Yah Nathan**
arose from the table in *fiere anger* **fuming wrath**,
and did eat no *meat* **bread** the second day of the month:
for he was *grieved* **contorted** for David,
because his father had *done* **shamed** him *shame*.
35 And **so be** it *came to pass*, in the morning,
that Jonathan **Yah Nathan** went out into the field
at the *time appointed* **season** with David,
and a little lad with him.
36 And he said unto his lad,
Run, find out now the arrows which I shoot.
And as the lad ran,
he shot an arrow *beyond* **to pass over** him.
37 And when the lad was come to the place of the arrow
which Jonathan **Yah Nathan** had shot,
Jonathan *cried* **Yah Nathan called out** after the lad,
and said, Is not the arrow beyond thee?
38 And Jonathan *cried* **Yah Nathan called out** after the lad,
Make speed **Quickly, haste hasten**, stay not.
And Jonathan's **Yah Nathan's** lad gathered up the arrows,
and came to his *master* **adoni**.
39 But the lad knew *not any thing* **naught**:
only Jonathan **Yah Nathan** and David
knew the *matter* **word**.
40 And Jonathan **Yah Nathan**
gave his *artillery* **instrument** unto his lad,
and said unto him, Go, carry them to the city.
41 And as soon as the lad was gone,
David arose *out of a place toward* **from beside** the south,
and fell on his *face* **nostrils** to the *ground* **earth**,
and *bowed* **prostrated** himself three times:
and they kissed *one another* **man to friend**,
and wept *one with another* **man to friend**,
until David *exceeded* **greatened**.
42 And Jonathan **Yah Nathan** said to David,
Go in *peace* **shalom**,
forasmuch as we have *sworn* **oathed** both of us
in the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, saying,
The LORD **Yah Veh** be between me and **between** thee,
and between my seed and thy seed *for ever* **eternally**.
And he arose and *departed* **went**:
and Jonathan **Yah Nathan** went into the city.

HOLY BREAD

21

Then came David to Nob
to Ahimelech **Achiy Melech** the priest:
and Ahimelech **Achiy Melech**
was *afraid* **trembled** at the meeting of David,
and said unto him,
Why art thou alone, and no man with thee?
2 And David said unto Ahimelech **Achiy Melech** the priest,
The *king* **sovereign**
hath *commanded* **misvahed** me a *business* **word**,
and hath said unto me, Let no man know *any thing* **ought**
of the *business* **word** whereabouts I send thee,
and what I have *commanded* **misvahed** thee:
and I have *appointed* my *servants* **lads to know**
to at such and such a place.
3 Now therefore what is under thine hand?
give me five *loaves of* bread in mine hand,
or what there is *present* **found**.
4 And the priest answered David, and said,
There is no *common* **profane** bread under mine hand,
but there is *hallowed* **holy** bread;
if the *young men* **lads** have *kept* **guarded** themselves
at least **only** from women.
5 And David answered the priest, and said unto him,
Of a truth women have been *kept* **restrained** from us
about these three days **as three yesters ago**,
since I *came out* **went**,
and the *vessels* **instruments** of the *young men* **lads**
are holy,
and *the bread is* in a *manner* **common profane way**,
yea, though it were *sanctified* **hallowed** this day
in the *vessel* **instrument**.
6 So the priest gave him *hallowed* bread **the holy**:

1 SHEMU EL 20, 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

whereby Yah Nathan knows
that his father has fully finished to deathify David.
34 And Yah Nathan
rises from the table in fuming wrath
and eats no bread the second day of the month:
for he contorts for David,
because his father shames him.
35 And so be it, in the morning,
Yah Nathan goes out into the field
at the season with David
and a little lad with him:
36 and he says to his lad, Run, find the arrows I shoot.
The lad runs,
and he shoots an arrow to pass over him:
37 and the lad comes to the place of the arrow
Yah Nathan shot;
and Yah Nathan calls out after the lad and says,
Is not the arrow beyond you?
38 And Yah Nathan calls out after the lad,
Quickly! Hasten! Stay not!
And the lad of Yah Nathan gathers up the arrows
and comes to his adoni:
39 and the lad knows naught:
only, Yah Nathan and David know the word.
40 And Yah Nathan gives his instrument to his lad;
and says to him, Go, carry them to the city.
41 And as soon as the lad goes,
David rises from beside the south
and falls on his nostrils to the earth
and prostrates himself three times:
and they kiss man to friend and weep man to friend,
until David greatens.
42 And Yah Nathan says to David, Go in shalom;
inasmuch as we oathed, both of us,
in the name of Yah Veh, saying,
Yah Veh be between me and between you
and between my seed and between your seed eternally.
— and he rises and goes:
and Yah Nathan goes into the city.

HOLY BREAD

21

And David comes to Nob,
to Achiy Melech the priest:
and Achiy Melech trembles at meeting David,
and says to him,
Why are you alone and no man with you?
2 And David says to Achiy Melech the priest,
The sovereign misvahs a word and says to me,
Let no man know ought
of the word whereof I send you
and what I misvah you:
and I have my lads know at such and such a place.
3 And now, what is under your hand?
give me five bread in my hand,
or whatever is found.
4 And the priest answers David and says,
There is no profane bread under my hand,
but there is holy bread;
but only, if the lads guard themselves from women.
5 And David answers the priest and says to him,
Of a truth we restrain from women
as three yesters ago, since I went;
and the instruments of the lads are holy;
though the way be profane
yes, this day it is hallowed in the instrument.
6 So the priest gives him the holy:

1 SAMUEL 21, 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but the shewbread face bread,
that was taken **twisted off**
from before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
to put **set** hot bread in the day when it was taken away.
7 Now a certain man of the servants of Saul/Shaul
was there that day,
detained **restrained**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh;
and his name was Doeg, an Edomite Edomiy,
the chiefest **mighty** of the herdmen **tenders**
that belonged to Saul of Shaul.
8 And David said unto Ahimelech Achiy Melech,
And is there not here under thine hand spear or sword?
for I have neither brought **taken** my sword
nor my weapons with me **instruments in my hand**,
because the king's business **sovereign's word**
required haste **be urgent**.
9 And the priest said,
The sword of Goliath Golyath the Philistine Peleshethiy,
whom thou **slewest smotest** in the valley of Elah, behold,
it is here **wrapped veiled** in a cloth behind the ephod:
if thou wilt **shalt** take that, take it:
for there is no other **save that here except thus**.
And David said, There is none like that; give it me.
10 And David arose and fled that day
for fear **from the face** of Saul Shaul,
and went to Achish the **king sovereign** of Gath.
11 And the servants of Achish said unto him,
Is not this David the **king sovereign** of the land?
did they not **sing answer** one to another of him
thus in round dances, saying,
Saul Shaul hath **slain smitten** his thousands,
and David his **ten thousands myriads**?
12 And David laid **set** up these words in his heart,
and was **sore afraid mightily awed**
at the face of Achish the **king sovereign** of Gath.
13 And he changed his **behaviour perception**
before them in their eyes,
and **feigned himself mad halaled** in their hands,
and **scrabbled marked** on the doors of the **gate portal**,
and let his **spittle fall down saliva descend** upon his beard.
14 Then said Achish unto his servants,
Lo **Behold**, ye see the man is **mad insane**:
wherefore **then** have ye brought him to me?
15 Have I need of **mad men Lack I insanity**,
that ye have brought this **fellow**
to play **the mad man insane** in my presence?
shall this **fellow** come into my house?

DAVID AT CAVE ADULLAM AND MISPEH

22

David therefore **departed went** thence,
and escaped to the cave Adullam:
and when his brethren and all his father's house heard it,
they **went down descended** thither to him.
2 And every **one man** that was in distress,
and every **one man** that was **in debt had an exactor**,
and every **one man** that was **discontented bitter of soul**,
gathered themselves unto him;
and he became a **captain governor** over them:
and there were with him about four hundred men.
3 And David went thence to Mizpeh Mispeh of Moab:
and he said unto the **king sovereign** of Moab,
Let my father and my mother, I **pray beseech** thee,
come forth, and be go with you,
till I know what **God will do Elohim shall work** for me.
4 And he **brought led** them
before the **king at the face of the sovereign** of Moab:
and they **dwelt settled** with him all the **while day**
that David was in the hold.
5 And the prophet Gad said unto David,
Abide Settle not in the hold; **depart go**,
and get thee into the land of Judah **Yah Hudah**.
Then David **departed went**,
and came into the forest of Hareth.

1 SHEMU EL 21, 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for there is no bread there but the face bread
which is twisted off at the face of Yah Veh,
to set hot bread the day it is taken away.
7 And a man of the servants of Shaul
is there that day,
restrained at the face of Yah Veh;
his name is Doeg — an Edomiy,
the mighty of the tenders of Shaul.
8 And David says to Achiy Melech,
Is there not here under your hand spear or sword?
for I have neither taken my sword
nor my instruments in my hand,
because the word of the sovereign is urgent.
9 And the priest says,
The sword of Golyath the Peleshethiy,
whom you smote in the valley of Elah, behold,
it is here veiled in a cloth behind the ephod:
if in taking, take:
for there is no other here except this.
And David says, There is none like that; give me.
10 And David rises that day
and flees the face of Shaul;
and goes to Achish the sovereign of Gath.
11 And the servants of Achish say to him,
Is not this David the sovereign of the land?
Answered they not one another
in round dances thus, saying,
Shaul smites his thousands and David his myriads?
12 And David sets these words in his heart;
and awes mightily
at the face of Achish the sovereign of Gath:
13 and he changes his perception in their eyes
and halals in their hands
and marks on the doors of the portal
and descends his saliva on his beard.
14 Then Achish says to his servants,
Behold, you see the man is insane:
Why bring him to me?
15 Lack I insanity,
that you bring this **one** to play insane in my presence?
— this **one** to come in my house?

DAVID AT CAVE ADULLAM AND MISPEH

22

And David goes thence
and escapes to the cave Adullam:
and his brothers and all the house of his father hear
and descend to him there.
2 And every man in distress
and every man who has an exactor
and every man who is bitter of soul,
gather themselves to him;
and he becomes governor over them:
— about four hundred men with him.
3 And from there, David goes to Mispeh of Moab:
and he says to the sovereign of Moab,
Allow my father and my mother, I beseech you,
to go with you,
until I know what Elohim works for me.
4 And he leads them
at the face of the sovereign of Moab:
and they settle with him
all the days David is in the hold.
5 And the prophet Gad says to David,
Settle not in the hold;
go and get into the land of Yah Hudah.

Then David goes and comes to the forest of Hareth.

1 SAMUEL 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SHAUL DEATHIFIES THE PRIESTS OF NOB

6 When Saul Shaul heard
that David was *discovered* **seen**,
and the men that were with him,
(now Saul abode Shaul settled in Gibeah Gibah
under a tree grove in Ramah, having his spear in his hand,
and all his servants were *standing* **stationed** about him;)
7 Then Saul Shaul said unto his servants
that stood **stationed** about him,
Hear now, ye Benjamites Ben Yaminiy;
will shall the son of Jesse Yishay
give every one of you fields and vineyards,
and make **set** you all *captains* **governors** of thousands,
and *captains* **governors** of hundreds;
8 That all of you have conspired against me,
and there is none that *sheweth me* **exposeth in mine ear**
that my son hath *made a league* **cut**
with the son of Jesse Yishay,
and there is none of you that is *sorry* **sick** for me,
or *sheweth unto me* **exposeth in mine ear**
that my son hath *stirred* **raised** up my servant against me,
to *lie in wait* **lurk**, as at this day?
9 Then answered Doeg the Edomite Edomiy,
which was *set* **stationed** over the servants of Saul Shaul,
and said, I saw the son of Jesse Yishay coming to Nob,
to Ahimelech Achiy Melech the son of Ahitub Achiy Tub.
10 And he *enquired* **asked** of the LORD Yah Veh for him,
and gave him *victuals* **hunt**, and gave him the sword
of Goliath Golyath the Philistine Peleshethiy.
11 Then the king **sovereign** sent to call
Ahimelech Achiy Melech the priest,
the son of Ahitub Achiy Tub,
and all his father's house, the priests that were in Nob:
and they came all of them to the king **sovereign**.
12 And Saul Shaul said,
Hear now, thou son of Ahitub Achiy Tub.
And he *answered* **said**, Here I am, my lord adoni.
13 And Saul Shaul said unto him,
Why have ye conspired against me,
thou and the son of Jesse Yishay,
in that thou hast given him bread, and a sword,
and hast *enquired* **asked** of God Elohim for him,
that he should rise against me,
to *lie in wait* **lurk**, as at this day?
14 Then Ahimelech Achiy Melech
answered the king **sovereign**, and said,
And who is so *faithful* **amenable** among all thy servants
as David,
which is the king's **sovereign's** son in law,
and *goeth at thy bidding* **turneth aside at hearing thee**,
and is honourable in thine house?
15 Did I *then* **daily** begin to *enquire* **ask** of God Elohim
for him?
be it far from me:
let not the king *impute* **sovereign set** any thing word
unto his servant,
nor to all the house of my father:
for thy servant knew *nothing* **no word** of all this,
less or more **great**.
16 And the king **sovereign** said,
In dying, Thou shalt *surely* die,
Ahimelech Achiy Melech, thou, and all thy father's house.
17 And the king **sovereign** said unto the *footmen* **runners**
that stood **stationed** about him,
Turn, and *slay* **deathify** the priests of the LORD Yah Veh:
because their hand also is with David,
and because they knew when he fled,
and *did not shew it to me* **exposed it not in mine ear**.
But the servants of the king **sovereign**
would not put **willed to not send** forth their hand
to *fall* **encounter** upon the priests of the LORD Yah Veh.
18 And the king **sovereign** said to Doeg,
Turn thou, and *fall* **encounter** upon the priests.
And Doeg the Edomite Edomiy turned,
and he *fell* **encountered** upon the priests,
and *slew* **deathified** on that day

1 SHEMU EL 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SHAUL DEATHIFIES THE PRIESTS OF NOB

6 And Shaul hears
that David and the men with him have been seen;
— and Shaul settles in Gibah under a grove in Ramah
with his spear in his hand
and all his servants station around him.
7 And Shaul says to his servants stationed around him,
Hear now, you Ben Yaminiy;
Gives the son of Yishay
fields and vineyards to every one of you?
Sets he you all governors of thousands
and governors of hundreds
8 that you all conspire against me?
And no one exposes in my ear
that my son cut with the son of Yishay?
And none of you is sick for me?
And exposing in my ear
that my son raises my servant to lurk against me
as this day?
9 And Doeg the Edomiy
who is stationed over the servants of Shaul
answers and says,
I saw the son of Yishay coming to Nob
— to Achiy Melech the son of Achiy Tub:
10 and he asked of Yah Veh for him;
and he gave him hunt
and gave him the sword of Golyath the Peleshethiy.
11 Then the sovereign sends to call
Achiy Melech the priest the son of Achiy Tub
and all the house of his father — the priests in Nob:
and they all come to the sovereign.
12 And Shaul says, Hear now, you son of Achiy Tub.
And he says, Here, I, my adoni.
13 And Shaul says to him,
Why conspire you against me
— you and the son of Yishay
in that you gave him bread and a sword
and asked of Elohim for him to rise against me,
to lurk, as at this day?
14 And Achiy Melech answers the sovereign,
and says,
And who is as amenable among all your servants
as David the son in law of the sovereign
— who turns aside to hear you
— who is honorable in your house?
15 Begin I daily to ask of Elohim for him?
Far be it from me!
O that the sovereign set no word
— neither to his servant
nor to all the house of my father:
for your servant knows no word of all this
— less or great.
16 And the sovereign says,
In dying, you die, Achiy Melech
— you and all the house of your father.
17 And the sovereign says to the runners
stationed around him,
Turn and deathify the priests of Yah Veh:
because their hand is also with David;
and because they know when he flees
and expose it not in my ear.
And the servants of the sovereign
will to not send forth their hand
to encounter the priests of Yah Veh.
18 And the sovereign says to Doeg,
Turn and encounter the priests.
And Doeg the Edomiy turns and encounters the priests;
and deathifies on that day

1 SAMUEL 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19 fourscore **eighty** and five persons men
that *did wear* **bore** a linen ephod.
And Nob, the city of the priests,
smote he with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword,
both men and women, *children* **infants** and sucklings,
and oxen, and asses **he burros**, and *sheep* **lambs**,
with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword.
20 And one of the sons of *Ahimelech* **Achih Melech**
the son of *Ahitub* **Achih Tub**, named *Abiathar* **Abi Athar**,
escaped, and fled after David.
21 And *Abiathar shewed* **Abi Athar** told David
that *Saul* **Shaul**
had *slain the LORD's* **slaughtered Yah Veh's** priests.
22 And David said unto *Abiathar* **Abi Athar**,
I knew it that day,
when Doeg the *Edomite* **Edomiy** was there,
that *in telling*, he *would surely* **should** tell *Saul* **Shaul**:
I have *occasioned the death* **gone about**
of all the *persons* **souls** of thy father's house.
23 *Abide* **Settle** thou with me, *fear* **awe** not:
for he that seeketh my *life* **soul** seeketh thy *life* **soul**:
but with me thou shalt be in *safeguard* **guard**.

DAVID SAVES QEILAH

23

Then they told David, saying, Behold,
the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** fight against *Keilah* **Qeilah**,
and they *rob* **plunder** the threshingfloors.
2 Therefore David *enquired* **asked** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
saying, Shall I go and smite these *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**?
And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto David,
Go, and smite the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and save *Keilah* **Qeilah**.
3 And David's men said unto him,
Behold, we be *afraid* **awed** here in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**:
how much more then if we come to *Keilah* **Qeilah**
against the *armies* **ranks** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**?
4 Then David
enquired of the LORD yet again
added yet to ask of Yah Veh.
And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** answered him and said,
Arise, go down **descend** to *Keilah* **Qeilah**;
for I *will deliver* **shall give** the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
into thine hand.
5 So David and his men went to *Keilah* **Qeilah**,
and fought with the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and *brought away* **drove** their *cattle* **chattel**,
and smote them with a great *slaughter* **stroke**.
So David saved the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Keilah* **Qeilah**.

SHAUL PURSUES DAVID

6 And *so be* it came to pass, when *Abiathar* **Abi Athar**
the son of *Ahimelech* **Achih Melech**
fled to David to *Keilah* **Qeilah**,
that he *came down* **descended** with an ephod in his hand.
7 And it was told *Saul* **Shaul**
that David was come to *Keilah* **Qeilah**.
And *Saul/Shaul* said,
God Elohim hath *delivered* **recognized** him
into mine hand; for he is shut in,
by entering into a *town* **city**
that hath *gates* **doors** and bars.
8 And *Saul/Shaul*
called **hearkened** all the people together to war,
to go *down* **descend** to *Keilah* **Qeilah**,
to besiege David and his men.
9 And David knew that *Saul* **Shaul**
secretly practised mischief **plotted evil** against him;
and he said to *Abiathar* **Abi Athar** the priest,
Bring *hither* **near** the ephod.
10 Then said David,
O *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
In hearing, thy servant hath *certainly* heard
that *Saul* **Shaul** seeketh to come to *Keilah* **Qeilah**,
to *destroy* **ruin** the city for my sake.
11 **Will Shall** the men **masters** of *Keilah* **Qeilah**
deliver **shut** me up into his hand?
will Saul come down **shall Shaul descend**,
as thy servant hath heard?
O *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
I beseech thee, tell thy servant.

1 SHEMU EL 22, 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

19 eighty—five men bearing a linen ephod:
and he smites Nob, the city of the priests,
with the mouth of the sword
— both men and women, infants and sucklings
and oxen and he burros and lambs,
with the mouth of the sword.
20 And one of the sons of Achih Melech
the son of Achih Tub, named Abi Athar,
escapes and flees after David:
21 and Abi Athar tells David
that Shaul slaughtered priests of Yah Veh.
22 And David says to Abi Athar,
I knew the day Doeg the Edomiy was there,
that in telling, he tells Shaul:
I surround
all the souls of the house of your father.
23 Settle with me! Awe not!
For he who seeks my soul seeks your soul:
and with me you are guarded.

DAVID SAVES QEILAH

23

And they tell David, saying,
Behold, the Peleshethiy fight Qeilah;
and they plunder the threshingfloors.
2 And David asks Yah Veh, saying,
Go I and smite these Peleshethiy?
And Yah Veh says to David,
Go and smite the Peleshethiy and save Qeilah.
3 And the men of David say to him,
Behold, we awe here in Yah Hudah!
How much more, if we come to Qeilah
against the ranks of the Peleshethiy?
4 And David adds again to ask Yah Veh:
and Yah Veh answers him and says,
Rise! Descend to Qeilah!
For I give the Peleshethiy into your hand.
5 So David and his men go to Qeilah
and fight the Peleshethiy and drive their chattel
and smite them with a great stroke:
thus David saves the settlers of Qeilah.
6 And so be it,
Abi Athar the son of Achih Melech
flees to David to Qeilah,
and he descends with an ephod in his hand:
and they tell Shaul that David comes to Qeilah.
And Shaul says,
Elohim recognizes him into my hand;
for he shut himself in
by entering a city with doors and bars.
8 And Shaul hearkens all the people to war
to descend to Qeilah
to besiege David and his men.
9 And David knows Shaul plots evil against him;
and he says to Abi Athar the priest,
Bring near the ephod.
10 And David says, O Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
In hearing, your servant hears
that Shaul seeks to come to Qeilah
to ruin the city for my sake:
11 The masters of Qeilah, shut they me into his hand?
Descends Shaul, as your servant hears?
O Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
I beseech you, tell your servant.

1 SAMUEL 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 And the LORD Yah Veh said,
He will come down shall descend.
Then said David,
Will Shall the men masters of Keilah Qeilah
deliver shut me and my men into the hand of Saul Shaul?
And the LORD Yah Veh said,
They will deliver shall shut thee up.
13 Then David and his men,
which were about six hundred men,
arose and departed went out of Keilah Qeilah,
and went whithersoever they could go
in walking, they walked.
And it was told Saul Shaul
that David was escaped from Keilah Qeilah;
and he forbare ceased to go forth.
14 And David abode settled in the wilderness
in strong holds huntholds,
and remained settled in a mountain
in the wilderness of Ziph.
And Saul Shaul sought him every day,
but God delivered Elohim gave him not into his hand.
15 And David saw that Saul Shaul
was come out went to seek his life soul:
and David was in the wilderness of Ziph in a wood forest.
16 And Jonathan Yah Nathan, Saul's Shaul's son arose,
and went to David into the wood forest,
and strengthened his hand in God Elohim.
17 And he said unto him, Fear Awe not:
for the hand of Saul Shaul my father shall not find thee;
and thou shalt be king reign over Israel Yisra El,
and I shall be next second unto thee;
and that also Saul Shaul my father knoweth.
18 And they two made cut a covenant
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
and David abode settled in the wood forest,
and Jonathan Yah Nathan went to his house.
19 Then came up ascended the Ziphites Ziphiy
to Saul Shaul to Gibeah Gibah, saying,
Doth not David hide himself with us
in strong holds huntholds in the wood forest,
in the hill of Hachilah,
which is on the south right of Jeshimon Yeshimon?
20 Now therefore, O king sovereign,
come down descend
according to all the desire yearning of thy soul
to come down descend;
and our part shall be
to deliver shut him into the king's sovereign's hand.
21 And Saul Shaul said,
Blessed be ye of the LORD Yah Veh;
for ye have compassion on me.
22 Go, I pray beseech you, prepare yet,
and know and see his place where his haunt foot is,
and who hath seen him there:
for it is told said to me
that he dealeth very subtilly
in strategizing, he strategizeth.
23 See therefore, and take knowledge know
of all the lurking places refuges where he hideth himself,
and come return ye again to me
with the certainty prepared,
and I will shall go with you:
and so be it shall come to pass, if he be in the land,
that I will shall search him out
throughout all the thousands of Judah Yah Hudah.
24 And they arose, and went to Ziph
before Saul from the face of Shaul:
but David and his men were in the wilderness of Maon,
in the plain on the south right of Jeshimon Yeshimon.
25 Saul Shaul also and his men went to seek him.
And they told David:
wherefore he came down descended into a rock,
and abode settled in the wilderness of Maon.
And when Saul Shaul heard that,
he pursued after David in the wilderness of Maon.
26 And Saul Shaul went on this side of the mountain,
and David and his men on that side of the mountain:

1 SHEMU EL 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And Yah Veh says, He descends.
12 Then David says,
The masters of Qeilah,
shut they me and my men into the hand of Shaul?
And Yah Veh says, They shut you.
13 Then David and his men — about six hundred men
rise and go from Qeilah:
and in walking, they walk.
And they tell Shaul that David escapes from Qeilah;
and he ceases to go:
14 and David settles in the wilderness in huntholds
and settles in a mountain in the wilderness of Ziph;
and Shaul seeks him every day
but Elohim gives him not into his hand:
15 and David sees that Shaul goes to seek his soul:
and David is in the wilderness of Ziph in a forest:
16 and Yah Nathan, the son of Shaul
rises and goes to David into the forest
and strengthens his hand in Elohim.
17 And he says to him, Awe not:
for the hand of Shaul my father finds you not;
and you reign over Yisra El
and I become second to you;
as Shaul my father also knows.
18 And the two cut a covenant
at the face of Yah Veh:
and David settles in the forest
and Yah Nathan goes to his house.
19 And the Ziphiy ascend to Shaul to Gibah, saying,
Is not David hiding himself with us
in huntholds in the forest in the hill of Hachilah
on the right of Yeshimon?
20 Now, O sovereign, descend
— according as all your soul yearns to descend;
and our part
is to shut him into the hand of the sovereign.
21 And Shaul says,
Blessed — you of Yah Veh; for you compassion me.
22 Go, I beseech you, prepare yet,
and know and see his place where his foot is.
Who saw him there?
For someone says to me,
in strategizing, he strategizes:
and see and know all the refuges
where he hides himself;
and return to me prepared;
and I go with you:
and so be it, if he is in the land,
I search him out
throughout all the thousands of Yah Hudah.
24 And they rise
and come from the face of Shaul to Ziph:
and David and his men are in the wilderness of Maon
in the plain at the right of Yeshimon.
25 And Shaul and his men go to seek him:
and they tell David:
so he descends into a rock
and settles in the wilderness of Maon.
And Shaul hears,
and pursues after David in the wilderness of Maon:
26 and Shaul goes on this side of the mountain
and David and his men on that side of the mountain:

1 SAMUEL 23, 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and David made haste hastened
to get away for fear of Saul go from the face of Shaul;
for Saul Shaul and his men
compassed surrounded David and his men round about
to take apprehend them.
27 But there came a messenger an angel unto Saul Shaul,
saying, Haste thee, and come;
for the Philistines Peleshethiy
have invaded stripped the land.
28 Wherefore Saul Shaul returned
from pursuing after David,
and went against to meet the Philistines Peleshethiy:
therefore they called that place
Selahammahlekoth
29 Sela Ham Machleqoth/The Rock of Allotments.
And David went up ascended from thence,
and dwelt settled in strong holds huntholds
at Engedi En Gedi.

DAVID SPARES THE LIFE OF SHAUL

24

And so be it came to pass,
when Saul Shaul was returned
from following after the Philistines Peleshethiy,
that it was told him, saying, Behold,
David is in the wilderness of Engedi En Gedi.
2 Then Saul Shaul took three thousand chosen men
out of all Israel Yisra El,
and went to seek David and his men
upon the face of the rocks of the wild goats ibexes.
3 And he came to the sheepcotes flock walls by the way,
where was a cave;
and Saul Shaul went in to cover his feet:
and David and his men
remained settled in the sides flanks of the cave.
4 And the men of David said unto him,
Behold the day
of which the LORD Yah Veh said unto thee,
Behold,
I will deliver shall give thine enemy into thine hand,
that thou mayest do work to him
as it shall seem good unto thee well—please thine eyes.
Then David arose, and cut off the skirt border
of Saul's robe privily Shaul's mantle undercover.
5 And so be it came to pass, afterward,
that David's heart smote him,
because he had cut off Saul's skirt Shaul's border.
6 And he said unto his men,
The LORD forbid Far be it
that I should do work this thing word
unto my master adoni,
the LORD'S Yah Veh's anointed,
to stretch send forth mine hand against him,
seeing he is the anointed of the LORD Yah Veh.
7 So David stayed cleaved his servants men
with these words,
and suffered allowed them not to rise against Saul Shaul.
But Saul Shaul rose up out of the cave,
and went on his way.
8 David also arose afterward, and went out of the cave,
and cried called out after Saul Shaul, saying,
My lord adoni the king sovereign.
And when Saul Shaul looked behind him,
David stooped bowed with his face nostrils to the earth,
and bowed himself prostrated.
9 And David said to Saul Shaul,
Wherefore hearest thou men's human words, saying,
Behold, David seeketh thy hurt evil?
10 Behold, this day thine eyes have seen
how that the LORD Yah Veh
had delivered given thee to day
into mine hand in the cave:
and some bade me kill said to slaughter thee:
but mine eye spared thee;
and I said,
I will shall not put send forth mine hand
against my lord adoni;
for he is the LORD'S Yah Veh's anointed.
11 Moreover, my father, see, yea,
see the skirt borders of thy robe mantle in my hand:

1 SHEMU EL 23, 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and David hastens to go from the face of Shaul;
for Shaul and his men
surround David and his men to apprehend them.
27 And an angel comes to Shaul, saying,
Hasten and come!
For the Peleshethiy strip the land.
28 And Shaul returns from pursuing David
and goes to meet the Peleshethiy:
so they call that place
Sela Ham Machleqoth/The Rock of Allotments.
29 And David ascends from there
and settles in huntholds at En Gedi.

DAVID SPARES THE LIFE OF SHAUL

24

And so be it,
Shaul returns from after the Peleshethiy,
and they tell him, saying,
Behold, David is in the wilderness of En Gedi.
2 And Shaul takes three thousand chosen men
of all Yisra El;
and goes to seek David and his men
on the face of the rocks of the ibexes:
3 and he comes to the flock walls by the way
and a cave is there;
and Shaul goes in to cover his feet:
and David and his men
settle in the flanks of the cave.
4 And the men of David say to him,
Behold the day of which Yah Veh says to you,
Behold, I give your enemy into your hand,
to work to him as it well—pleases your eyes.
And David rises
and cuts off the border
of the mantle undercover of Shaul.
5 And so be it, afterward,
the heart of David smites him,
because he cut off the border of Shaul:
6 and he says to his men,
Far be it, that I work this word to my adoni,
the anointed of Yah Veh
— to send my hand against him
seeing he is the anointed of Yah Veh.
7 And David cleaves his men with these words
and allows them not to rise against Shaul;
and Shaul rises from the cave and goes on his way:
8 and David rises afterward and goes from the cave
and calls out after Shaul, saying,
My adoni the sovereign!
Shaul looks behind him
and David bows with his nostrils to the earth
and prostrates:
9 and David says to Shaul,
Why hear you human words, saying,
Behold, David seeks your evil?
10 Behold, this day your eyes see
how that today
Yah Veh gave you into my hand in the cave:
and said to slaughter you; but I spared you:
and I said, I send not my hand against my adoni;
for he is the anointed of Yah Veh:
and see, my father,
— see the borders of your mantle in my hand:

1 SAMUEL 24, 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for in that I cut off the *skirt border* of thy robe **mantle**,
and **killed slaughtered** thee not,
know thou and see that there is neither evil
nor *transgression* **rebellion** in mine hand,
and I have not sinned against thee;
yet thou *huntest lurkest* my soul to take it.
12 The LORD **Yah Veh** judge between me and **between** thee,
and the LORD **Yah Veh** avenge me of thee:
but mine hand shall not be upon thee.
13 As saith the proverb of the ancients,
Wickedness *proceedeth* **goeth** from the wicked:
but mine hand shall not be upon thee.
14 After whom
is the *king sovereign* of Israel **come out Yisra El gone?**
after whom dost thou pursue?
after a dead dog, after a **one** flea.
15 The LORD **Yah Veh** therefore be *judge advocate*,
and judge between me and **between** thee, and see,
and plead my *cause* **plea**,
and *deliver* **judge** me out of thine hand.
16 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when David
had *made an end of speaking* **finished wording**
these words unto *Saul Shaul*, that *Saul Shaul* said,
Is this thy voice, my son David?
And *Saul Shaul* lifted up his voice, and wept.
17 And he said to David,
Thou art more *righteous* **just** than I:
for thou hast *rewarded* **dealt** me good,
whereas I have *rewarded* **dealt** thee evil.
18 And thou hast *shewed* **told** this day
how that thou hast *dealt well* **worked good** with me:
forasmuch as when the LORD **Yah Veh**
had *delivered* **shut** me into thine hand,
thou *killedst* **slaughteredst** me not.
19 For if a man find his enemy,
will he let him go **shall he send him away**
well away **in a good way?**
wherefore the LORD reward **Yah Veh shalam** thee *good*
for that thou hast *done* **worked** unto me this day.
20 And now, behold, I know well
that **in reigning**, thou shalt *surely be king* **reign**,
and that the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of Israel **Yisra El**
shall *be established* **rise** in thine hand.
21 Swear **Oath** now therefore unto me
by the LORD **Yah Veh**,
that thou *wilt* **shalt** not cut off my seed after me,
and that thou *wilt* **shalt** not *destroy* **desolate** my name
out of my father's house.
22 And David *sware* **oathed** unto *Saul Shaul*.
And *Saul Shaul* went *home* **to his house**;
but David and his men
gat **ascended** them *up* unto the hold.

THE DEATH OF SHEMU EL

25

And *Samuel* **Shemu El** died;
and all the *Israelites* **Yisra Eliy** were gathered *together*,
and *lamented* **chopped over** him,
and *buried* **entombed** him in his house at Ramah.
And David arose,
and *went down* **descended** to the wilderness of Paran.
2 And there was a man in Maon,
whose *possessions* **works** were in *Carmel* **Karmel**;
and the man was very **mighty** great,
and he had three thousand *sheep* **flock**,
and a thousand **doe** goats:
and he was shearing his *sheep* **flock** in *Carmel* **Karmel**.
3 Now the name of the man was Nabal;
and the name of his *wife* **Abigail** **woman Abi Gail**:
and *she* was a woman
of good *understanding* **comprehension**,
and of a beautiful *countenance* **form**:
but the man was *churlish* **hard** and evil
in his *doings* **exploits**;
and he was *of the house of Caleb* **a Kalebiy**.
4 And David heard in the wilderness
that Nabal did shear his *sheep* **flock**.
5 And David sent out ten *young men* **lads**,
and David said unto the *young men* **lads**,

1 SHEMU EL 24, 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for I cut off the border of your mantle
and slaughtered you not:
know and see that there is neither evil
nor rebellion in my hand;
nor sin I against you;
yet you lurk my soul to take it:
12 Yah Veh judge between me and between you
and Yah Veh avenge me of you:
but my hand becomes not upon you.
13 As the proverb of the ancients says,
Wickedness goes from the wicked:
but my hand becomes not on you.
14 After whom goes the sovereign of Yisra El?
After whom pursues he?
After a dead dog? After one flea?
15 Yah Veh becomes advocate and judge
between me and between you
and see and plead my plea
and judge me from your hand.
16 And so be it,
David finishes wording these words to Shaul,
and Shaul says, Is this your voice, my son David?
And Shaul lifts his voice and weeps;
and says to David,
You are more just than I:
for you deal me good, whereas I deal you evil:
18 and you tell this day how you work good with me:
how Yah Veh shut me into your hand,
and you slaughtered me not:
19 and that a man finding his enemy,
sends him away in a good way:
may Yah Veh shalam you
for what you work to me this day.
20 And now, behold, I know well,
that in reigning, you reign
and the sovereigndom of Yisra El rises in your hand.
21 Oath now to me by Yah Veh,
that you not cut off my seed after me
and that you not desolate my name
from the house of my father.
22 And David oaths to Shaul.
And Shaul goes to his house;
and David and his men ascend to the hold.

THE DEATH OF SHEMU EL

25

Shemu El dies
and all the Yisra Eliy gathers and chops over him
and entomb him in his house at Ramah.
And David rises
and descends to the wilderness of Paran.
2 And a man in Maon, whose works *are* in Karmel
— the man is mighty great
and has three thousand flock
and a thousand doe goats:
and he shears his flock in Karmel.
3 The name of the man *is* Nabal;
and the name of his woman, Abi Gail
— a woman of good comprehension
and of a beautiful form:
but the man is hard and evil in his exploits
— and he is a Kalebiy.
4 And in the wilderness
David hears that Nabal shears his flock:
5 and David sends out ten lads
and David says to the lads,

1 SAMUEL 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Get you up **Ascend** to Carmel **Karmel**, and go to Nabal,
and greet him **ask him of shalom** in my name:
6 And thus shall ye say to him *that liveth in prosperity,*
Peace be both **Life and shalom** to thee,
and *peace be* **shalom** to thine house,
and *peace be* **shalom** unto all that thou hast.
7 And now I have heard that thou hast shearers:
now thy *shepherds* **tenders** which were with us,
we hurt **shamed** them not,
neither was there ought *missing* **overseen** unto them,
all the *while* **days** they were in *Carmel* **Karmel**.
8 Ask thy *young men* **lads**,
and they *will shew* **shall tell** thee.
Wherefore
let the *young men* **lads** find *favour* **charism** in thine eyes:
for we come in a good day:
give, I pray **beseech** thee,
whatsoever *cometh* to thine hand **findeth**
unto thy servants, and to thy son David.
9 And when David's *young men* **lads** came,
they *spake* **worded** to Nabal according to all those words
in the name of David, and *ceased* **rested**.
10 And Nabal answered David's servants, and said,
Who is David? and who is the son of *Jesse* **Yishay**?
there *be many* **abound by the myriads**
servants now a days that break away every man
from **the face of his master adoni**.
11 Shall I *then* take my bread, and my water,
and my *flesh* **slaughterer** that I have *killed* **slaughtered**
for my shearers,
and give it unto men, whom I know not whence they be?
12 So David's *young men* **lads** turned their way,
and *went again* **turned back**,
and came and told him all those *sayings* **words**.
13 And David said unto his men,
Gird ye on every man his sword.
And they girded on every man his sword;
and David also girded on his sword:
and there *went up* **ascended** after David
about four hundred men;
and two hundred *abode* **settled** by the *stuff* **instruments**.
14 But one **lad** of the *young men* **lads**
told *Abigail* **Abi Gail**, Nabal's *wife* **woman**, saying,
Behold,
David sent *messengers* **angels** out of the wilderness
to *salute* **bless** our *master* **adoni**;
and he *railed on* **swooped upon** them.
15 But the men were very **mighty** good unto us,
and we were not *hurt* **shamed**,
neither *missed we any thing* **was aught overseen**,
as long as **all the days**
we were *conversant* **walked** with them,
when we were in the fields:
16 They were a wall unto us both by night and **by day**,
all the *while* **days** we were with them
keeping **tending the sheep flock**.
17 Now therefore know and *consider* **see**
what thou *wilt do* **shalt work**;
for evil is *determined* **finished** against our *master* **adoni**,
and against all his household:
for he is *such* **too much of** a son of *Belial* **Beli Yaal**,
that a man cannot speak to him **to word to**.
18 Then *Abigail made haste* **Abi Gail hastened**,
and took two hundred *loaves* **bread**s,
and two *bottles* **bags** of wine,
and five *sheep ready dressed* **flock worked**,
and five *measures* **seahs** of parched *corn*,
and an hundred *clusters of raisins* **raisincakes**,
and two hundred *cakes* **lumps** of figs,
and *laid set* them on *asses* **he burros**.
19 And she said unto her *servants* **lads**,
Go on before me **Pass over at my face**;
behold, I come after you.
But she told not her *husband* **man** Nabal.
20 And it was so **became**, as she rode on the *ass* **he burro**,
that she *came down* **descended**
by the covert of the *hill* **mountain**,

1 SHEMU EL 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Ascend to Karmel and go to Nabal
and ask him of shalom in my name:
6 and say thus to him, Life and shalom to you;
and shalom to your house;
and shalom to all you have.
7 And now I hear that you have shearers:
now your tenders who are with us,
we neither shamed them nor oversaw aught of theirs
all their days in Karmel:
8 ask your lads and they tell you:
may the lads find charism in your eyes:
for we come in a good day:
give, I beseech you, whatever your hand finds
to your servants and to your son David.
9 And the lads of David come,
and they word all those words to Nabal
in the name of David; and rest.
10 And Nabal answers the servants of David and says,
Who is David? Who is the son of Yishay?
Now a days servants abound by the myriads
— every man who breaks away
from the face of his adoni:
11 Take I my bread and my water
and the slaughter I slaughter for my shearers
and give it to men
whom I know not whence they are?
12 So the lads of David turn their way
and return and come and tell him all those words.
13 And David says to his men,
Every man, girt his sword!
— and every man girt his sword
and David also girt his sword:
and about four hundred men ascend after David
and two hundred settle by the instruments.
14 And one lad of the lads tells Abi Gail,
the woman of Nabal, saying, Behold,
David sends angels from the wilderness
to bless our adoni;
and he swoops on them:
15 and the men were mighty good to us
and we neither shamed nor was aught overseen
all the days we walked with them
when we were in the fields:
16 they were a wall to us, both by night and by day,
all the days we were with them tending the flock.
17 So now know and see what you work;
for evil finishes off against our adoni
and against all his household:
for he is too much of a son of Beli Yaal to word to.
18 And Abi Gail hastens
and takes two hundred breads and two bags of wine
and five worked flocks and five seahs of parched
and a hundred raisincakes
and two hundred lumps of figs
— and sets them on he burros.
19 And she says to her lads, Pass over at my face;
behold, I come after you.
— and she tells not her man Nabal.
20 And so be it, she rides on the he burro,
and she descends by the covert of the mountain;

1 SAMUEL 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and, behold, David and his men
came down against **descended to meet** her;
and she met them.
21 Now David had said, Surely in vain **falsehood**
have I **kept guarded**
all that this **fellow one** hath in the wilderness,
so that **nothing naught** was **missed overseen**
of all that **pertained unto him he hath**:
and he hath **requited returned** me evil for good.
22 *So and more also do God* **Thus add Elohim to work**
unto the enemies of David,
if I leave **let survive** of all that **pertain to him he hath**
by **toward** the morning light
any that **pisseth urinateth** against the wall.
23 And when *Abigail* **Abi Gail** saw David, she hastened,
and **lighted descended** off the **ass he burro**,
and fell **before at the nostrils of** David on her face,
and **bowed prostrated** herself to the **ground earth**,
24 And fell at his feet, and said, Upon me, my **lord adoni**,
upon me let this **iniquity perversity** be:
and let **thine handmaid thy maid**, I **pray beseech** thee,
speak word in thine **audience ears**,
and hear the words of **thine handmaid thy maid**.
25 Let not my **lord adoni**, I **pray beseech** thee,
regard set to his heart this man of **Belial Beli Yaal**,
even Nabal: for as his name is, so is he;
Nabal is his name, and folly is with him:
but I **thine handmaid thy maid**
saw not the **young men lads** of my **lord adoni**,
whom thou didst send.
26 Now therefore, my **lord adoni**,
as the **LORD Yah Veh** liveth, and as thy soul liveth,
seeing the **LORD Yah Veh** hath withholden thee
from coming to **shed blood**,
and from **avenging saving** thyself with thine own hand,
now let thine enemies,
and they that seek evil to my **lord adoni**, be as Nabal.
27 And now this blessing which **thine handmaid thy maid**
hath brought unto my **lord adoni**,
let it even be given unto the **young men lads**
that **follow walk at the feet of** my **lord adoni**.
28 I **pray beseech** thee, *forgive lift* the **trespass rebellion**
of **thine handmaid thy maid**:
for the LORD will certainly make
in working, Yah Veh shall work
my **lord a sure adoni an amenable** house;
because my **lord adoni**
fighteth the **battles wars** of the **Lord Yah Veh**,
and evil hath not been found in thee all thy days.
29 Yet a **man human** is risen to pursue thee,
and to seek thy soul:
but the soul of my **lord adoni**
shall be bound in the bundle of life
with the **LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim**;
and the souls of thine enemies,
them shall he sling out,
as out **in the midst** of the **middle hollow** of a sling.
30 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
when the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall have **done worked** to my **lord adoni**
according to all the good that he hath **spoken worded**
concerning thee,
and shall have **appointed misvahed** thee
ruler eminent over **Israel Yisra El**;
31 That this shall be **no grief unto not stagger** thee,
nor **offence a stumblingblock** of heart unto my **lord adoni**,
either that thou hast **shed poured** blood
causeless gratuitously,
or that my **lord adoni** hath **avenged saved** himself:
but when the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall have dealt **well well—pleasingly** with my **lord adoni**,
then remember **thine handmaid thy maid**.
32 And David said to *Abigail* **Abi Gail**,
Blessed
be the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of **Israel Yisra El**,
which sent thee this day to meet me:
33 And blessed be thy **advice perception**,
and blessed be thou, which **has kept restrained** me this day

1 SHEMU EL 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and behold, David and his men descend to meet her;
and she meets them.
21 And David says, Surely in falsehood
guarded I all this one has in the wilderness,
so that naught of all he has was overseen:
and he returns me evil for good:
22 *may* Elohim add to work thus
to the enemies of David,
if, of all he has,
I let survive toward the morning light
any who urinate against the wall.
23 And Abi Gail sees David,
and she hastens and descends off the he burro
and falls on her face at the nostrils of David;
and prostrates herself to the earth
and falls at his feet and says,
24 On me, my adoni, this perversity:
and *may* your maid, I beseech you, word in your ears;
hear the words of your maid:
25 *may* not my adoni, I beseech you,
set his heart to this man of Beli Yaal, Nabal:
for as his name, thus is he:
Nabal is his name and folly is with him:
but I your maid
saw not the lads of my adoni whom you sent.
26 And now, my adoni,
as Yah Veh lives and as your soul lives,
seeing Yah Veh withheld you from coming to blood
and from saving yourself by your own hand,
now *may* your enemies
and they who seek evil to my adoni, be as Nabal:
27 and now this blessing
which your maid brings to my adoni,
may it even be given to the lads
who walk at the feet of my adoni:
28 I beseech you, lift the rebellion of your maid:
for in working,
Yah Veh works an amenable house for my adoni;
because my adoni fights the wars of Yah Veh
and no evil is found in you all your days:
29 yet a human rises to pursue you
and to seek your soul:
but the soul of my adoni is bound in the bundle of life
with Yah Veh your Elohim;
and he slings the souls of your enemies,
as midst the hollow of a sling.
30 And so be it,
when Yah Veh works to my adoni
according to all the good he worded concerning you
and misvahs you eminent over Yisra El;
31 that this neither stagger you,
nor be a stumblingblock of heart to my adoni,
either that you pour blood gratuitously,
or that my adoni save himself:
and Yah Veh deals well—pleasingly with my adoni,
then remember your maid.
32 And David says to Abi Gail,
Blessed — Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
who sends you this day to meet me:
33 and blessed — your perception
and blessed — you who restrains me this day

1 SAMUEL 25, 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

from coming to *shed* blood,
and from *avenging saving* myself with mine own hand.
34 For in very deed **But**,
as the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El** liveth,
which hath kept **withheld** me back
from *hurting vilifying* thee,
except **unless** thou hadst hastened and come to meet me,
surely there had not been left **remained** unto Nabal
by the morning light
any that *pisseth* **urinatheth** against the wall.
35 So David *received took* of her hand
that which she had brought him, and said unto her,
Go up **Ascend** in peace **shalom** to thine house;
see, I have hearkened to thy voice,
and have *accepted spared* thy person **face**.
36 And *Abigail* **Abi Gail** came to Nabal;
and, behold, he held a *feast banquet* in his house,
like the *feast banquet* of a **king sovereign**;
and Nabal's heart was *merry good* within him,
for he was very *drunken mighty intoxicated*:
wherefore she told him *nothing no word*,
less or *more great*, until the morning light.
37 But **so be** it came to pass, in the morning,
when the wine was gone out of Nabal,
and his *wife woman* had told him these *things words*,
that his heart died within him, and he became as a stone.
38 And **so be** it came to pass, about ten days *after*,
that the LORD **Yah Veh** smote Nabal, and he died.
39 And when David heard that Nabal was dead **had died**,
he said, Blessed be the LORD **Yah Veh**,
that hath pleaded the *cause plea* of my reproach
from the hand of Nabal,
and hath *kept restrained* his servant from evil:
for the LORD **Yah Veh**
hath returned the *wickedness evil* of Nabal
upon his own head.
And David sent
and *communed worded* with *Abigail* **Abi Gail**,
to take her to him to *wife woman*.
40 And when the servants of David
were come to *Abigail* **Abi Gail** to **Carmel**,
they *spake worded* unto her, saying,
David sent us unto thee,
to take thee to him to *wife woman*.
41 And she arose, and *bowed prostrated* herself
on her *face nostrils* to the earth, and said, Behold,
let *thine handmaid thy maid* be a *servant maid*
to wash **bathe** the feet of the servants of my lord **adoni**.
42 And *Abigail* **Abi Gail** hastened,
and arose and rode upon *an ass a he burro*,
with five *damsels lasses* of hers
that went *after her at her feet*;
and she went after the *messengers angels* of David,
and became his *wife woman*.
43 David also took
Ahinoam **Achiy Noam** of **Jezreel Yizre El**;
and they were also both of them his *wives women*.
44 But **Saul Shaul** had given Michal his daughter,
David's *wife woman*,
to Phalti the son of Laish, which was of Gallim.

DAVID SPARES SHAUL AGAIN

26

And the *Ziphites* **Ziphiy** came unto **Saul Shaul**
to *Gibeah* **Gibah**, saying,
Doth not David hide himself
in the hill of Hachilah,
which is before Jeshimon at the face of Yeshimon?
2 Then **Saul Shaul** arose,
and went down **descended** to the wilderness of Ziph,
having three thousand chosen men of **Israel Yisra El**
with him,
to seek David in the wilderness of Ziph.
3 And **Saul pitched Shaul encamped**
in the hill of Hachilah,
which is before Jeshimon at the face of Yeshimon,
by the way.
But David *abode settled* in the wilderness,
and he saw that **Saul Shaul** came after him
into the wilderness.

1 SHEMU EL 25, 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

from coming to blood
and from saving myself by my own hand.
34 And as Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El lives,
who withheld me from vilifying you,
unless you had hastened to come to meet me,
there had not remained to Nabal
by the morning light
any who urinates against the wall.
35 And David takes from her hand
what she brings him, and says to her,
Ascend in shalom to your house!
See, I hearken to your voice and spare your face.
36 And Abi Gail comes to Nabal;
and behold, he holds a banquet in his house,
as the banquet of a sovereign;
and the heart of Nabal is good within him,
and he is mighty intoxicated:
she tells him no word, less or great,
until the morning light.
37 And so be it, in the morning,
the wine is gone from Nabal
and his woman tells him these words;
and his heart dies within him
and he becomes as a stone.
38 And so be it, about ten days,
and Yah Veh smites Nabal and he dies.
39 And David hears Nabal is dead,
and he says, Blessed — Yah Veh,
who pleads the plea of my reproach
from the hand of Nabal;
and restrains his servant from evil:
for Yah Veh returns the evil of Nabal
on his own head.
And David sends and words with Abi Gail
to take her to him to woman:
40 and the servants of David
come to Abi Gail to Karmel,
and they word to her, saying,
David sends us to you, to take you to him to woman.
41 And she rises and prostrates herself
on her nostrils to the earth and says,
Behold, your maid
— a maid to bathe the feet
of the servants of my adoni.
42 And Abi Gail hastens and rises
and rides on a he burro
with five of her lasses who go at her feet;
and she goes after the angels of David
and becomes his woman.
43 And David takes Achiy Noam of Yizre El;
and they both are also his women.
44 And Shaul gives Michal his daughter
the woman of David
to Phalti the son of Laish of Gallim.

DAVID SPARES SHAUL AGAIN

26

And the Ziphiy come to Shaul to Gibah,
saying, Is David not hiding
in the hill of Hachilah at the face of Yeshimon?
2 Shaul rises and descends to the wilderness of Ziph,
with three thousand chosen men of Yisra El
to seek David in the wilderness of Ziph:
3 and Shaul encamps in the hill of Hachilah
at the face of Yeshimon, by the way.
And David settles in the wilderness
and he sees that Shaul comes after him
into the wilderness:

1 SAMUEL 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 David therefore sent out spies,
and understood **knew** that Saul **Shaul**
was come in very deed **prepared**.

5 And David arose, and came to the place
where Saul **Shaul** had pitched **encamped**:
and David beheld **saw** the place where Saul **Shaul** lay,
and Abner **Abi Ner** the son of Ner,
the captain **governor** of his host:
and Saul **Shaul** lay in the trench **route**,
and the people pitched **encamped** round about him.

6 Then answered David
and said to Ahimelech **Achiv Melech** the Hittite **Hethiy**,
and to Abishai **Abi Shai** the son of Zeruah **Seruyah**,
brother to Joab **Yah Ab**, saying,
Who will go down **shall descend** with me
to Saul **Shaul** to the camp?
And Abishai **Abi Shai** said,
I will go down **shall descend** with thee.

7 So David and Abishai **Abi Shai**
came to the people by night: and, behold,
Saul **Shaul** lay sleeping within the trench **route**,
and his spear stuck **pierced** in the ground **earth**
at his bolster **headpieces**:
but Abner **Abi Ner** and the people lay round about him.

8 Then said Abishai **Abi Shai** to David,
God **Elohim** hath delivered **shut** thine enemy
into thine hand this day:
now therefore let me smite him, I pray **beseech** thee,
with the spear even to the earth **at once one time**,
and I will not smite him the second time.

9 And David said to Abishai **Abi Shai**,
Destroy **Ruin** him not:
for who can stretch **send** forth his hand
against the LORD'S **Yah Veh's** anointed,
and be **guiltless exonerated**?

10 David said furthermore, As the LORD **Yah Veh** liveth,
the LORD **Yah Veh** shall smite him;
or his day shall come to die;
or he shall descend into battle **war**,
and perish **be scraped away**.

11 The LORD forbid **Far be it**
that I should stretch **send** forth mine hand
against the LORD'S **Yah Veh's** anointed:
but, I pray **beseech** thee,
take thou now the spear that is at his bolster **headpieces**,
and the cruse of water, and let us go.

12 So David took the spear and the cruse of water
from Saul's bolster **Shaul's headpieces**;
and they gat them away **went**,
and no man saw it, nor knew it, neither awaked:
for they were all asleep;
because a deep **sound** sleep from the LORD **Yah Veh**
was fallen upon them.

13 Then David went **passed** over to the other side,
and stood on the top of an hill **a mountain** afar off;
a great space **place** being between them:
And David cried **called out** to the people,
and to Abner **Abi Ner** the son of Ner, saying,
Answerest thou not, Abner **Abi Ner**?

14 Then Abner **Abi Ner** answered and said,
Who art thou that criest **callest** to the king **sovereign**?

15 And David said to Abner **Abi Ner**,
Art not thou a **valiant** man?
and who is like to thee in Israel **Yisra El**?
wherefore then hast thou not kept **guarded**
thy lord **adoni** the king **sovereign**?
for there came one of the people in
to destroy **ruin** the king **sovereign** thy lord **adoni**.

16 This thing **word** is not good
that thou hast done **worked**.
As the LORD **Yah Veh** liveth,
ye are worthy to die **sons of death**,
because ye have not kept **guarded** your master **adoni**,
the LORD'S **Yah Veh's** anointed.

And now see where the king's **sovereign's** spear is,
and the cruse of water that was at his bolster **headpieces**.

17 And Saul **knew Shaul recognized** David's voice,
and said, Is this thy voice, my son David?

1 SHEMU EL 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 and David sends spies
and knows Shaul comes prepared:

5 and David rises
and comes to the place where Shaul encamps:
and David sees the place where Shaul lies
and Abi Ner the son of Ner the governor of his host:
and Shaul lies in the route;
and the people encamp all around him.

6 Then David answers Achiv Melech the Hethiy
and Abi Shai the son of Seruyah brother to Yah Ab
and says, saying,
Who descends with me to Shaul to the camp?

And Abi Shai says, I descend with you.

7 So David and Abi Shai
come to the people by night: and behold,
Shaul lies sleeping within the route
with his spear pierced in the earth at his headpieces:
and Abi Ner and the people lie all around him.

8 Then Abi Shai says to David,
Elohim shuts your enemy into your hand this day:
now let me smite him, I beseech you,
with the spear even to the earth one time
— and not a second time.

9 And David says to Abi Shai, Ruin him not:
for who may send his hand
against the anointed of Yah Veh
and be exonerated?

10 David says, As Yah Veh lives, Yah Veh smites him;
or his day comes to die;
or he descends into war and is scraped away:
far be it

11 that I send my hand against the anointed of Yah Veh:
but, I beseech you,
take now the spear at his headpieces
and the cruse of water; and we go.

12 And David takes the spear and the cruse of water
from the headpieces of Shaul;
and they go and no man sees it
— neither knows nor wakens, for they all sleep;
because a sound sleep from Yah Veh falls on them.

13 Then David passes over to the other side
and stands on the top of a mountain afar off
— a great place between them:

14 and David calls to the people
and to Abi Ner the son of Ner
saying, Answer you not, Abi Ner?

Then Abi Ner answers and says,
Who are you who calls to the sovereign?

15 And David says to Abi Ner,
Are not you a man?
Who in Yisra El likens to you?
Why guard you not your adoni the sovereign?
For one of the people
came in to ruin the sovereign your adoni:
this word you work is not good:
Yah Veh lives — you are sons of death,
because you guard not your adoni,
the anointed of Yah Veh:
and now see where the spear of the sovereign is
and the cruse of water at his headpieces.

17 And Shaul recognizes the voice of David
and says, Is this your voice, my son David?

1 SAMUEL 26, 27

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

And David said, It is my voice,
my *lord adoni*, O *king sovereign*.
18 And he said, Wherefore doth my *lord adoni*
thus pursue after his servant?
for what have I *done worked*?
or what evil is in mine hand?
19 Now therefore, I *pray beseech* thee,
let my *lord adoni* the *king sovereign*
hear the words of his servant.
If the *LORD Yah Veh*
have *stirred goaded* thee up against me,
let him *accept scent* an offering:
but if they be the *children sons* of men *humanity*,
cursed be they *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh*;
for they have driven me out this day
from *abiding being scraped*
in the inheritance of the *LORD Yah Veh*, saying,
Go, serve other *gods elohim*.
20 Now therefore, let not my blood fall to the earth
before at the face of the *LORD Yah Veh*:
for the *king sovereign of Israel Yisra El*
is *come out gone* to seek a *one* flea,
as when one *doth hunt pursueth* a partridge
in the mountains.
21 Then said *Saul Shaul*, I have sinned:
return, my son David:
for I *will shall vilify thee* no more *do thee harm*,
because my soul was *precious valued* in thine eyes
this day: behold,
I have *played the fool follied*,
and have *inadvertently erred*
exceedingly mightily abounding.
22 And David answered and said,
Behold the *king's sovereign's* spear!
and let one of the *young men lads*
come pass over and *fetch take* it.
23 The *LORD render Yah Veh return* to every man
his *righteousness justness*
and his *faithfulness trustworthiness*;
for the *LORD Yah Veh*
delivered gave thee into my hand to day,
but I *would not stretch willed to not send* forth mine hand
against the *LORD'S Yah Veh's* anointed.
24 And, behold, as thy *life soul* was *much set by greated*
this day in mine eyes,
so let my *life soul* be *much set by greated*
in the eyes of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and let him *deliver rescue* me out of all tribulation.
25 Then *Saul Shaul* said to David,
Blessed be thou, my son David:
in working, thou shalt *both do great things work*,
and *in prevailing*, also shalt *still* prevail.
So David went on his way,
and *Saul Shaul* returned to his place.

DAVID AND THE PELESHETHIY

27 And David said in his heart,
I shall now *perish be scraped away* one day
by the hand of *Saul Shaul*:
there is *nothing naught* better for me
than that I should speedily escape
into the land of the *Philistines Peleshethiy*;
and *Saul Shaul* shall *despair of me quit me*,
to seek me any more in any *coast border* of *Israel Yisra El*:
so *in escaping*, shall I escape out of his hand.
2 And David arose, and he passed over
with the six hundred men that were with him
unto Achish, the son of Maoch,
king sovereign of Gath.
3 And David *dwelt settled* with Achish at Gath,
he and his men, every man with his household,
even David with his two *wives women*,
Ahinoam Achiy Noam the *Jezreelitess Yizre Eliyth*,
and *Abigail Abi Gail* the *Carmelitess Karmeliyth*,
Nabal's *wife woman*.
4 And it was told *Saul Shaul* that David was fled to Gath:
and he *sought no more again added not to seek* for him.
5 And David said unto Achish,
If I have now found *grace charism* in thine eyes,

1 SHEMU EL 26, 27

exeGeses companion BIBLE

And David says, My voice,
my adoni, O sovereign!
18 And then he says, Why this
— my adoni pursuing his servant?
What work I? What evil *is* in my hand?
19 Now I beseech you,
that my adoni the sovereign
hear the words of his servant:
If Yah Veh goads you against me,
have him scent an offering:
and if sons of humanity,
cursed *are* they at the face of Yah Veh;
for they drive me out this day
from being scraped into the inheritance of Yah Veh,
saying, Go, serve other elohim.
20 And now, *may* my blood not fall to the earth
at the face of Yah Veh:
for the sovereign of Yisra El goes to seek one flea
as one pursues a partridge in the mountains.
21 Then says Shaul, I sinned!
Return, my son David, for I vilify you no more,
because my soul is valued in your eyes this day:
behold,
I follied and inadvertently erred mightily aboundingly.
22 And David answers and says,
Behold the spear of the sovereign!
Pass one of the lads over and take it:
23 and Yah Veh returns
his justness and his trustworthiness to every man;
for Yah Veh gave you into my hand today,
but I willed to not send my hand
against the anointed of Yah Veh:
24 and behold,
as your soul greatens this day in my eyes,
so *may* my soul greaten in the eyes of Yah Veh;
and rescue me from all tribulation.
25 Then Shaul says to David,
Blessed — you, my son David:
in working, work;
and in prevailing, prevail.
— and David goes his way
and Shaul returns to his place.

DAVID AND THE PELESHETHIY

27 And David says in his heart,
And now I become scraped away one day
by the hand of Shaul:
there is naught better for me
than to speedily escape
into the land of the Peleshethiy;
so that Shaul quits seeking me any more
in any border of Yisra El:
and in escaping, I escape from his hand.
2 And David rises
and passes over with his six hundred men
to Achish the son of Maoch the sovereign of Gath:
3 and David settles with Achish at Gath
— he and his men — every man with his household,
David with his two women,
Achiy Noam the Yizre Eliyth
and Abi Gail the Karmeliyth — the woman of Nabal.
4 And they tell Shaul that David flees to Gath:
and he adds not to seek for him.
5 And David says to Achish,
If I now find charism in your eyes,

1 SAMUEL 27, 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

let them give me a place
in some town in the country **one of the cities of the field**,
that I may dwell **settle** there:
for why should thy servant dwell **settle**
in the royal **sovereigndom** city with thee?
6 Then Achish gave him *Ziklag* **Siqlag** that day:
wherefore *Ziklag* pertaineth **Siqlag** **becometh**
unto the *kings* **sovereigns** of Judah **Yah Hudah**
unto this day.
7 And the *time* **number of days** that David dwelt **settled**
in the *country* **field** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
was a full year of **days** and four months.
8 And David and his men went up **ascended**,
and invaded **stripped** the *Geshurites* **Geshuriy**,
and the *Gezrites* **Gezeriy**, and the *Amalekites* **Amaleqiy**:
for those *nations* were of old **they were originally**
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land,
as thou goest to Shur,
even unto the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
9 And David smote the land,
and left neither man nor woman alive,
and took away the *sheep* **flock**, and the oxen,
and the *asses* **he burros**, and the camels,
and the *apparel* **covering**,
and returned, and came to Achish.
10 And Achish said,
Whither have ye *made a road* **stripped** to day?
And David said, Against the south of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and against the south of the *Jerahmeelites* **Yerachme Eliy**,
and against the south of the *Kenites* **Qayiniy**.
11 And David saved **let** neither man nor woman *alive* **live**,
to bring *tidings* to Gath, saying, Lest they should tell on us,
saying, So *did* **worked** David,
and so will **thus shall** be his *manner* **judgment**
all the *while* **days** he dwelleth **settlet**
in the *country* **field** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
12 And Achish believed **trusted** David, saying,
He hath made his people Israel utterly to *abhor* him;
In stinking, he stinketh among his people Yisra El;
therefore he shall be my servant for ever **eternally**.

THE NECROMANCER OF EN DOR

28

And **so be** it came to pass, in those days,
that the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
gathered their *armies* **camp**s together for warfare **hostility**,
to fight with *Israel* **Yisra El**.
And Achish said unto David,
In knowing, Know thou *assuredly* **this**
that thou shalt go out with me to *battle* **into the camp**,
thou and thy men.
2 And David said to Achish,
Surely **Thus** thou shalt know
what thy servant can *do* **work**.
And Achish said to David,
Therefore will I make **I shall set** thee
keeper **guard** of mine head for ever **all days**.
3 Now *Samuel* was dead **Shemu El died**,
and all *Israel* had lamented **Yisra El chopped over** him,
and buried **entombed** him in Ramah, even in his own city.
And *Saul* **Shaul** had put away **turned aside**
those that had familiar spirits **the necromancers**,
and the *wizards* **knowers**, out of the land.
4 And the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
gathered *themselves* together,
and came and pitched **encamped** in Shunem:
and *Saul* **Shaul** gathered all *Israel* **Yisra El** together,
and they pitched **encamped** in Gilboa.
5 And when *Saul* **Shaul** saw
the *host* **camp** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
he was afraid **awed**,
and his heart *greatly* **mightily** trembled.
6 And when *Saul* **Shaul**
enquired **asked** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** answered him not,
neither by dreams, nor by Urim, nor by prophets.
7 Then said *Saul* **Shaul** unto his servants,
Seek me a woman
that hath a *familiar spirit* — **a baalah**,
that I may go to her, and enquire of her.

1 SHEMU EL 27, 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

give me a place in one of the cities of the field
to settle there:
for why settle your servant with you
in the sovereigndom city?
6 Then that day Achish gives him *Siqlag*:
so *Siqlag*
becomes to the sovereigns of Yah Hudah to this day:
and the number of days
7 David settles in the field of the *Peleshethiy*
is a full year of days and four months.
8 And David and his men ascend and strip
the *Geshuriy* and the *Gezeriy* and the *Amaleqiy*:
for they are originally the settlers of the land
as you go to Shur to the land of *Misrayim*:
9 and David smites the land
and leaves neither man nor woman alive;
and takes away the flock and the oxen
and the he burros and the camels and the covering
and returns and comes to Achish.
10 And Achish says, Where stripped you today?
And David says, Against the south of Yah Hudah
and against the south of the *Yerachme Eliy*
and against the south of the *Qayiniy*.
11 And David lets neither man nor woman live
to bring to Gath,
saying, Lest they tell on us,
saying, So worked David and thus be his judgment
all the days he settles in the field of the *Peleshethiy*.
12 And Achish trusts David, saying,
In stinking, he stinks among his people *Yisra El*;
so he becomes my servant eternally.

THE NECROMANCER OF EN DOR

28

And so be it, in those days,
the *Peleshethiy* gather their camps for hostility,
to fight *Yisra El*.
And Achish says to David,
In knowing, know this:
that you go with me into the camp
— you and your men.
2 And David says to Achish,
Thus you know what your servant works.
And Achish says to David,
So I set you guard of my head all days.
3 And *Shemu El* dies
and all *Yisra El* chops over him
and entombs him in Ramah, even in his own city.
And *Shaul* turns aside
the necromancers and the knowers from the land.
4 And the *Peleshethiy* gather
and come and encamp in Shunem:
and *Shaul* gathers all *Yisra El*
and they encamp in Gilboa:
5 and *Shaul* sees the camp of the *Peleshethiy*,
and he awes and his heart trembles mightily.
6 And *Shaul* asks of *Yah Veh*,
and *Yah Veh* answers him not
— neither by dreams nor by Urim nor by prophets.
7 Then *Shaul* says to his servants, Seek me a woman
— a *baalah* to go to and enquire of her.

1 SAMUEL 28

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

And his servants said to him, Behold, there is a woman
that hath a familiar spirit — a baalah
at Endor **En Dor**.

8 And Saul disguised himself **Shaul searched**,
and put on **enrobed** other raiment **clothes**,
and he went, and two men with him,
and they came to the woman by night:
and he said, I pray **beseech** thee,
divine unto me by the *familiar spirit* **necromancer**,
and bring me him up **ascend him to me**,
whom I shall name **say** unto thee.

9 And the woman said unto him, Behold,
thou knowest what *Saul Shaul* hath *done* **worked**,
how he hath cut off
those that have familiar spirits **the necromancers**,
and the *wizards* **knowers**, out of the land:
wherefore then layest thou a snare for my *life* **soul**,
to cause me to die **deathify me**?

10 And *Saul* **sware Shaul** **oathed** to her
by the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, saying,
As the *LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth,
there shall no punishment **perversion** happen to thee
for this *thing* **word**.

11 Then said the woman,
Whom shall I bring up **ascend** unto thee?
And he said, Bring me up *Samuel* **Ascend Shemu El**.

12 And when the woman saw *Samuel* **Shemu El**,
she cried with a *loud* **great** voice:
and the woman *spake* **said** to *Saul Shaul*, saying,
Why hast thou deceived me? for thou art *Saul Shaul*.

13 And the *king* **sovereign** said unto her,
Be not *afraid* **awed**: for what sawest thou?
And the woman said unto *Saul Shaul*,
I saw *gods* **elohim** ascending out of the earth.

14 And he said unto her, What **be his** form is *he of*?
And she said, An old man *cometh up* **ascendeth**;
and he is covered with a mantle.
And *Saul Shaul* perceived that it was *Samuel* **Shemu El**,
and he *stooped* **bowed**
with his *face* **nostrils** to the *ground* **earth**,
and *bowed* **prostrated** himself.

15 And *Samuel* **Shemu El** said to *Saul Shaul*,
Why hast thou *disquieted* **quivered** me,
to bring **ascend** me up?
And *Saul* **answered Shaul** **said**,
I am *sore* **mighty** distressed;
for the *Philistines* **make war** **Peleshethiy** **fight** against me,
and *God* **Elohim** is *departed* **turned aside** from me,
and answereth me no more,
neither by **the hand of** prophets, nor by dreams:
therefore I have called thee,
that thou mayest make known unto me
what I shall *do* **work**.

16 Then said *Samuel* **Shemu El**,
Wherefore then dost thou ask of me,
seeing the *LORD* **Yah Veh** is *departed* **turned aside** from thee,
and is become thine enemy?

17 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *done* **worked** to him,
as he *spake* **worded** by me **my hand**:
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *rent* **ripped**
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** out of thine hand,
and given it to thy *neighbour* **friend**, even to David:

18 Because thou *obeyedst* **heardest** not
the voice of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
nor *executedst* **workedst** his *fierce* **fuming** wrath
upon *Amalek* **Amaleq**,
therefore hath the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
done **worked** this *thing* **word** unto thee this day.

19 Moreover the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
will **shall** also deliver *Israel* **give Yisra El** with thee
into the hand of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**:
and to morrow shalt thou and thy sons be with me:
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** also
shall deliver **give** the *host* **camp** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
into the hand of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.

20 Then *Saul Shaul* fell *straightway* **hastily**
all **the fulness of his stature** along on the earth,
and was *sore afraid* **mightily** **awed**,

1 SHEMU EL 28

exeGeses companion BIBLE

And his servants say to him, Behold, a woman
— a baalah at En Dor.

8 And Shaul searches and enrobes other clothes;
and he goes with two men
and they come to the woman by night.
And he says, I beseech you,
divine to me by the necromancer
and ascend to me whom I say to you.

9 And the woman says to him, Behold,
you know what Shaul works
— how he cut off the necromancers and the knowers
from the land.
Why lay you a snare for my soul to deathify me?

10 And Shaul oaths to her by Yah Veh, saying,
Yah Veh lives,
no perversion happens to you for this word.

11 Then the woman says,
Whom ascend I to you?
And he says, Ascend Shemu El.

12 And the woman sees Shemu El,
and cries with a great voice:
and the woman says to Shaul, saying,
Why deceive you me? You are Shaul.

13 And the sovereign says to her,
Awe not! What see you?
And the woman says to Shaul,
I see elohim ascending from the earth.

14 And he says to her, What is his form?
And she says, An old man ascends;
and he covers with a mantle.
And Shaul perceives it is Shemu El:
and he bows with his nostrils to the earth
and prostrates himself.

15 And Shemu El says to Shaul,
Why quiver you me to ascend me?
And Shaul says, I am mightily distressed;
for the Peleshethiy fight me
and Elohim turns aside from me
and answers me no more
— neither by the hand of prophets nor by dreams:
so I call you,
to have me know what to work.

16 Then says Shemu El, Why then ask you of me,
seeing Yah Veh turns aside from you
and becomes your enemy?
And Yah Veh works to himself
as he worded by my hand:
for Yah Veh rips the sovereigndom from your hand
and gives it to your friend — to David:
because you neither hearkened to the voice of Yah Veh
nor worked his fuming wrath on Amaleq:
so Yah Veh works this word to you this day.

19 Yes, Yah Veh also gives Yisra El with you
into the hand of the Peleshethiy:
and tomorrow you and your sons are with me:
and Yah Veh gives the camp of Yisra El
into the hand of the Peleshethiy.

20 Then Shaul falls hastily
the fulness of his stature along on the earth
— mightily **awed**

1 SAMUEL 28, 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

because of the words of Samuel Shemu El:
and there was no *strength* **force** in him;
for he had eaten no bread all the day, nor all the night.
21 And the woman came unto Saul **Shaul**,
and saw that he was *sore troubled* **mighty terrified**,
and said unto him, Behold,
thine handmaid thy maid hath *obeyed* **heard** thy voice,
and I have *put set* my *life soul* in my *hand* **palm**,
and have hearkened unto thy words
which thou *spakest* **wordest** unto me.
22 Now therefore, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
hearken thou also
unto the voice of *thine handmaid thy maid*,
and let me set a morsel of bread *before thee* **at thy face**;
and eat, that thou mayest have *strength* **force**,
when thou goest on thy way.
23 But he refused, and said, I *will* **shall** not eat.
But his servants, together with the woman,
compelled **urged** him;
and he hearkened unto their voice.
So he arose from the earth, and *sat* **settled** upon the bed.
24 And the woman had a *fat calf* **calf of the stall**
in the house;
and she hasted, and *killed* **sacrificed** it,
and took flour, and kneaded,
and did bake *unleavened bread* **matsah** thereof:
25 And she brought it **near**
before Saul **at the face of Shaul**,
and *before* **at the face of** his servants; and they did eat.
Then they rose up, and went away that night.

THE PELESHETHIY DISTRUST DAVID

29 Now the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** gathered *together*
all their *armies* **camp**s to *Aphek* **Apheq**:
and the *Israelites* **Yisra Eliy**
pitched **encamped** by a fountain
which is in *Jezreel* **Yizre El**.
2 And the *lords* **ringleaders** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
passed on by hundreds, and by thousands:
but David and his men passed on
in the rereward **afterward** with Achish.
3 Then said the *princes* **governors** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
What *do* **be** these Hebrews here?
And Achish said
unto the *princes* **governors** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
Is not this David, the servant of *Saul* **Shaul**
the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which hath been with me these days, or these years,
and I have found *no fault* **naught** in him
since **from the day** he fell *unto me* **away** unto this day?
4 And the *princes* **governors** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
were *wroth* **enraged** with him;
and the *princes* **governors** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
said unto him, Make this *fellow* **man** return,
that he may *go again* **return** to his place
which thou hast *appointed* **overseen** for him,
and let him not *go down* **descend** with us to *battle* **war**,
lest in the *battle* **war** he be an *adversary* **a satan** to us:
for wherewith should he *reconcile* **satisfy** himself
unto his *master* **adoni**?
should it not be with the heads of these men?
5 Is not this David,
of whom they *sang* **answered** one to another
in **round** dances, saying,
Saul slew Shaul smote his thousands,
and David his *ten thousands* **myriads**?
6 Then Achish called David, and said unto him,
Surely, as *the LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth,
thou hast been *upright* **straight**,
and thy going out and thy coming in with me
in the *host* **camp** is good in my *sight* **eyes**:
for I have not found evil in thee
since the day of thy coming unto me unto this day:
nevertheless *the lords* **favour thee** not
in the eyes of the ringleaders thou art not good.
7 Wherefore now return, and go in *peace* **shalom**,
that thou *displease* **not the lords**
work not evil in the eyes of the ringleaders
of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.

1 SHEMU EL 28, 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

because of the words of Shemu El:
and there is no force in him;
for he had eaten no bread all day or all night.
21 And the woman comes to Shaul
and sees he is mightily terrified;
and says to him, Behold,
your maid heard your voice
and I set my soul in my palm
and hearkened to the words you worded me.
22 So now, I beseech you,
you also hearken to the voice of your maid;
and I set a morsel of bread at your face;
and eat,
so that you have force when you go on your way.
23 But he refuses and says, I eat not.
And his servants and the woman urge him;
and he hearkens to their voice:
so he rises from the earth and settles on the bed.
24 And the woman has a calf of the stall in the house;
and she hastens and sacrifices;
and takes flour and kneads and bakes matsah thereof:
25 and she brings it near the face of Shaul
and the face of his servants; and they eat.
— and they rise and go away that night.

THE PELESHETHIY DISTRUST DAVID

29 And the Peleshethiy
gather all their camps to Apheq;
and the Yisra Eliy encamp by a fountain in Yizre El:
2 and the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy
pass on by hundreds and by thousands;
and David and his men pass on afterward with Achish.
3 And the governors of the Peleshethiy say,
What are these Hebrews?
And Achish says to the governors of the Peleshethiy,
Is this not David
the servant of Shaul the sovereign of Yisra El,
who became with me these days or these years;
and I found naught in him
from the day he fell away to this day?
4 And the governors of the Peleshethiy
rage against him;
and the governors of the Peleshethiy
say to him, Return this man
— return him to the place you oversee for him
that he not descend with us to war;
lest in the war he becomes a satan to us.
How satisfies he his adoni?
Is it not with the heads of these men?
5 Is not this David,
of whom they answer one another in round dances
saying,
Shaul smites his thousands and David his myriads?
6 Then Achish calls David and says to him,
Surely, Yah Veh lives, you are straight:
your going out and your coming in with me
in the camp is good in my eyes:
for I find no evil in you
since the day of your coming to me to this day:
but in the eyes of the ringleaders you are not good:
7 and now, return and go in shalom,
that you not work evil
in the eyes of the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy.

1 SAMUEL 29, 30

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 And David said unto Achish,
But what have I *done* **worked**?
and what hast thou found in thy servant
so long from the day as I have been *with thee at thy face*
unto this day,
that I may not go fight against the enemies
of my *lord adoni* the *king* **sovereign**?
9 And Achish answered and said to David,
I know that thou art good in my *sight eyes*,
as an angel of *God Elohim*:
notwithstanding
the *princes governors* of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
have said,
He shall not *go up* **ascend** with us to the *battle* **war**.
10 Wherefore now *rise up* **start** early in the morning
with thy *master's adoni's* servants that are come with thee:
and as soon as ye *be up* **start** early in the morning,
and have light, *depart* **go**.
11 So David and his men *rose up* **started** early
to *depart* **go** in the morning,
to return into the land of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
And the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
went up **ascended** to *Jezreel* **Yizre El**.

DAVID DESTROYS THE AMALEQIY

30 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when David and his men
were come to *Ziklag* **Siqlag** on the third day,
that the *Amalekites* **Amaleqiy**
had *invaded* **stripped** the south, and *Ziklag* **Siqlag**,
and smitten *Ziklag* **Siqlag**, and burned it with fire;
2 And had taken the women captives, that were therein:
they *slew not any* **deathified no man**, either great or small,
but *carried* **drove** them away, and went on their way.
3 So David and his men came to the city,
and, behold, it was burned with fire;
and their *wives* **women**,
and their sons, and their daughters
were *taken captives* **captured**.
4 Then David and the people that were with him
lifted up their voice and wept,
until they had no more *power* **force** to weep.
5 And David's two *wives* **women**
were *taken captives* **captured**,
Ahinoam **Achiy Noam** the *Jezreelitess* **Yizre Eliyth**,
and *Abigail* **Abi Gail**
the *wife* **woman** of Nabal the *Carmelite* **Karmeliy**.
6 And David was *greatly distressed* **mighty depressed**;
for the people *spake* **said** of stoning him,
because the soul of all the people was *grieved* **embittered**,
every man for his sons and for his daughters:
but David *encouraged* **strengthened** *himself*
in the *LORD* **Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim**.
7 And David said to *Abiathar* **Abi Athar** the priest,
Ahimelech's **Achiy Melech's** son,
I *pray* **beseech** thee, bring me *hither* **near** the ephod.
And *Abiathar* **Abi Athar** brought *thither* **near** the ephod
to David.
8 And David *enquired* **asked** at the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, saying,
Shall I pursue after this troop? shall I overtake them?
And he *answered* **said to** him, Pursue:
for **in overtaking**, thou shalt *surely* overtake them,
and **in rescuing**, *without fail* **recover all rescue**.
9 So David went,
he and the six hundred men that were with him,
and came to the *brook* **wadi** Besor,
where those that were *left behind* **remained** stayed.
10 But David pursued, he and four hundred men:
for two hundred *abode* **stayed** behind,
which were *so faint* **exhausted**
that they could not *go* **pass** over the *brook* **wadi** Besor.
11 And they found an *Egyptian* **a man** — a *Misrayim*
in the field,
and *brought* **took** him to David, and gave him bread,
and he did eat; and they made him drink water;
12 And they gave him a *piece* **slice** of a *cake* **lump** of figs,
and two *clusters of raisins* **raisincakes**:
and when he had eaten,
his spirit *came again* **returned** to him:

1 SHEMU EL 29, 30

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 And David says to Achish,
But what work I?
What find you in your servant
from the day I became at your face to this day;
that I *may* not go fight against the enemies
of my *adoni* the *sovereign*?
9 And Achish answers David and says,
I know you are good in my eyes
— as an angel of Elohim:
except the governors of the Peleshethiy say,
He ascends not with us to the war.
10 And now start early in the morning
with the servants of your adoni who came with you:
and as soon as you start early in the morning,
and have light, go.
11 And David and his men start early
to go in the morning,
to return to the land of the Peleshethiy:
and the Peleshethiy ascend to Yizre El.

DAVID DESTROYS THE AMALEQIY

30 And so be it, on the third day,
David and his men come to Siqlag:
and the Amaleqiy strip the south and Siqlag
and smite Siqlag and burn it with fire
and capture the women therein:
2 they deathify no man, either great or small,
but drive them away and go on their way.
3 And David and his men come to the city,
and behold, it is burned with fire;
and their women and their sons and their daughters
are **captured**.
4 And David and the people with him
lift their voice and weep,
until they have no more force to weep:
5 for they had captured the two women of David
— Achiy Noam the Yizre Eliyth
and Abi Gail the woman of Nabal the Karmeliy:
6 and David is mighty depressed;
for the people say of stoning him,
because the soul of all the people embitters
— every man for his sons and for his daughters.
7 And David strengthens in Yah Veh his Elohim;
and David says
to Abi Athar the priest the son of Achiy Melech,
I beseech you, bring near the ephod.
— and Abi Athar brings near the ephod to David.
8 And David asks at Yah Veh, saying,
Pursue I after this troop? Overtake them?
And he says to him, Pursue!
In overtaking, overtake!
And in rescuing, rescue!
9 And David goes — he with his six hundred men
and comes to the wadi Besor,
and those remaining, stay:
10 and David pursues — he and four hundred men:
for two hundred stay behind
— too exhausted to pass over the wadi Besor.
11 And they find a man — a Misrayim in the field
and take him to David;
and give him bread and he eats;
and they have him drink water;
12 and they give him a slice of a lump of figs
and two raisincakes:
and he eats, and his spirit returns to him:

1 SAMUEL 30

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for he had eaten no bread, nor drunk any water,
three days and three nights.
13 And David said unto him,
To whom *belongest* **be** thou? and whence *art* **be** thou?
And he said, I am a *young man of Egypt* **lad** — a **Misrayim**,
servant to a **man**, an *Amalekite* **Amaleqiy**;
and my *master* **adoni** left me,
because three days ago I fell sick.
14 We *made an invasion upon* **stripped**
the south of the *Cherethites* **Kerethiy**,
and upon *the coast*
which *belongeth* **be** to *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and upon the south of *Caleb* **Kaleb**;
and we burned *Ziklag* **Siqlag** with fire.
15 And David said to him,
Canst thou bring me down to this *company* **troop**?
And he said, *Swear* **Oath** unto me by *God* **Elohim**,
that thou *wilt* **shalt** neither *kill* **deathify** me,
nor *deliver* **shut** me into the hands of my *master* **adoni**,
and I *will bring* **shall descend** thee down
to this *company* **troop**.
16 And when he had *brought* **descended** him down,
behold, they were *spread abroad* **dispersed**
upon *the face of* all the earth,
eating and drinking, and *dancing* **celebrating**,
because of all the great spoil that they had taken
out of the land of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and out of the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
17 And David smote them
from the *twilight* **evening breeze**
even unto the evening of the *next day* **morrow**:
and there escaped not a man of them,
save four hundred *young men* **lads**,
which rode upon camels, and fled.
18 And David *recovered* **rescued** all
that the *Amalekites* **Amaleqiy** had *carried away* **taken**:
and David rescued his two *wives* **women**.
19 And there was *nothing* **naught** lacking to them,
neither from small nor to great,
neither sons nor daughters, neither spoil,
nor *any thing* **ought** that they had taken to them:
David *recovered* **returned** all.
20 And David took all the flocks and the *herds* **oxen**,
which they drave
before at the face of those *other* **cattle chattel**,
and said, This is David's spoil.
21 And David came to the two hundred men,
which were so *faint* **exhausted**
that they could not *follow* **go with** David,
whom they had *made also to abide* **settled**
at the *brook* **wadi** Besor:
and they went forth to meet David,
and to meet the people that were with him:
and when David came near to the people,
he *saluted* **asked** them *of* **shalom**.
22 Then answered all the *wicked* **evil** men
and *men of Belial* **of Beli Yaal**,
of those **men** that went with David, and said,
Because they went not with us,
we *will* **shall** not give them ought of the spoil
that we have *recovered* **rescued**,
save to every man his *wife* **woman** and his *children* **sons**,
that they may *lead* **drive** them away, and *depart* **go**.
23 Then said David,
Ye shall not *do so* **work thus**, my brethren,
with that which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath given us,
who hath *preserved* **guarded** us,
and *delivered* **given** the *company* **troop**
that came against us into our hand.
24 For who *will* **shall** hearken unto you
in this *matter* **word**?
but as his *part* **allotment** is
that *goeth down* **descendeth** to the *battle* **war**,
so **thus** shall his *part* **allotment** be
that *tarrieth* **settlet**h by the *stuff* **his instruments**:
they shall *part alike* **allot unitedly**.
25 And *it was so* **thus it became**
from that day *forward* **and onward**,

1 SHEMU EL 30

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for he had neither eaten bread nor drank water
three days and three nights.
13 And David says to him,
Whose are you? Whence are you?
And he says, I am a lad — a Misrayim;
servant to a man, an Amaleqiy;
and my adoni leaves me,
because three days ago, I fell sick.
14 We stripped the south of the Kerethiy
and against that which is to Yah Hudah;
and on the south of Kaleb;
and we burned Siqlag with fire.
15 And David says to him,
Bring you me down to this troop?
And he says, Oath to me by Elohim,
that you neither deathify me
nor shut me into the hands of my adoni
— and I descend you to this troop.
16 And he descends him, and behold,
they disperse upon the face of all the earth,
eating and drinking and celebrating,
because of all the great spoil they took
from the land of the Peleshethiy
and from the land of Yah Hudah.
17 And David smites them
from the evening breeze
to the evening of the morrow:
and not a man of them escapes
except four hundred lads flee riding on camels.
18 And David rescues all that the Amaleqiy took:
and David rescues his two women:
19 and they lack naught — from small to great;
neither sons nor daughters;
neither spoil nor ought they took to them:
David returns all:
20 and David takes all the flocks and the oxen,
which they drove at the face of those chattel
and says, This is the spoil for David.
21 And David comes to the two hundred men
who were too exhausted to go with David,
whom they settled at the wadi Besor:
and they go to meet David
and to meet the people with him:
and David comes near to the people,
and he asks shalom of them.
22 And all the evil men of Beli Yaal,
of those men who went with David,
answer and say, Because they went not with us,
we give them naught of the spoil we rescued,
except to every man his woman and his sons
to drive them away and go.
23 And David says, Work not thus, my brothers,
with what Yah Veh gives us,
who guards us from the troop that come against us
and gives them into our hand.
24 And who hearkens to you in this word?
but as his allotment, who descends to the war,
thus his allotment, who settles by his instruments
— they allot unitedly.
25 — and so be it, from that day and onward,

1 SAMUEL 30, 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

that he made **set** it a statute and an ordinance a judgment for Israel **Yisra El** unto this day.

26 And when David came to *Ziklag* **Siqlag**,
 he sent of the spoil unto the elders of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
 even to his friends, saying,
 Behold a present **blessing** for you
 of the spoil of the enemies of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;

27 To them *which were* in *Bethel* **Beth El**,
 and to them *which were* in south Ramoth,
 and to them *which were* in *Jattir* **Yattir**,

28 And to them *which were* in Aroer,
 and to them *which were* in Siphmoth,
 and to them *which were* in Eshtemoa,

29 And to them *which were* in Rachal,
 and to them *which were* in the cities
 of the *Jerahmeelites* **Yerachme Eliy**,
 and to them *which were*
 in the cities of the *Kenites* **Qayiniy**,

30 And to them *which were* in Hormah,
 and to them *which were* in *Chorashan* **Kor Ashan**,
 and to them *which were* in Athach,

31 And to them *which were* in Hebron,
 and to all the places where David himself
 and his men *were wont to haunt* **had walked**.

THE DEATH OF SHAUL

31

Now the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
 fought against *Israel* **Yisra El**:
 and the men of *Israel* **Yisra El** fled
 from *before* **the face of** the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
 and fell *down slain* **pierced** in mount Gilboa.

2 And the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
 followed *hard* **adhered** upon *Saul* **Shaul**
 and upon his sons;
 and the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
 slew *Jonathan* **smote** *Yah Nathan*,
 and *Abinadab* **Abi Nadab**, and *Melchishua* **Malki Shua**,
Saul's **Shaul's** sons.

3 And the *battle went sore* **war was heavy**
 against *Saul* **Shaul**,
 and the *archers hit* **men bow shooters found** him;
 and he was *sore wounded* **mightly writhed**
 of the *archers* **shooters**.

4 Then said *Saul* **Shaul**
 unto his *armourbearer* **instrument bearer**,
 Draw thy sword, and *thrust* **stab** me *through* therewith;
 lest these uncircumcised
 come and *thrust* **stab** me *through*,
 and *abuse* **exploit** me.

But his *armourbearer would* **instrument bearer willed** not;
 for he was *sore afraid* **mightly awed**.
 Therefore *Saul* **Shaul** took a sword, and fell upon it.

5 And when his *armourbearer* **instrument bearer**
 saw that *Saul was dead* **Shaul had died**,
 he fell likewise upon his sword, and died with him.

6 So *Saul* **Shaul** died, and his three sons,
 and his *armourbearer* **instrument bearer**, and all his men,
 that same day together.

7 And when the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
 that were on the other side of the valley,
 and *they that were* on the other side *Jordan* **Yarden**,
 saw that the men of *Israel* **Yisra El** fled,
 and that *Saul* **Shaul** and his sons *were dead* **had died**,
 they forsook the cities, and fled;
 and the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
 came and *dwelt* **settled** in them.

8 And **so be** it *came to pass*, on the morrow,
 when the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
 came to strip the *slain* **pierced**,
 that they found *Saul* **Shaul** and his three sons
 fallen in mount Gilboa.

9 And they cut off his head,
 and stripped off his *armour* **instruments**,
 and sent into the land of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
 round about,
 to *publish* **evangelize** it in the house of their idols,
 and among the people.

10 And they *put* **set** his *armour* **instruments**
 in the house of Ashtaroth:

1 SHEMU EL 30, 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

that he set it a statute and a judgment for Yisra El to this day.

26 And David comes to *Siqlag*,
 and he sends of the spoil
 to the elders of *Yah Hudah* — to his friends, saying,
 Behold, a blessing for you
 of the spoil of the enemies of *Yah Veh*:
 to them in *Beth El*
 and to them in south Ramoth
 and to them in *Yattir*
 and to them in Aroer
 and to them in Siphmoth
 and to them in Eshtemoa
 and to them in Rachal
 and to them in the cities of the *Yerachme Eliy*
 and to them in the cities of the *Qayiniy*
 and to them in Hormah
 and to them in *Kor Ashan*
 and to them in Athach
 and to them in Hebron
 and to all the places where David himself
 and his men walked.

THE DEATH OF SHAUL

31

And the *Peleshethiy* fight *Yisra El*:
 and the men of *Yisra El*
 flee the face of the *Peleshethiy*
 and fall *pierced* in mount Gilboa:
 2 and the *Peleshethiy* adhere to *Shaul* and his sons;
 and the *Peleshethiy* smite *Yah Nathan*
 and *Abi Nadab* and *Malki Shua* — sons of *Shaul*:
 3 and the war is heavy against *Shaul*
 and the bow shooter men find him;
 and he is mighty writhed by the shooters.

4 And *Shaul* says to his instrument bearer,
 Draw your sword and stab me;
 lest these uncircumcised
 come and stab me and exploit me.

But his instrument bearer wills not;
 for he awes mightily:
 and *Shaul* takes a sword and falls on it:
 5 and his instrument bearer sees *Shaul* die,
 and he likewise falls on his sword and dies with him.

6 And *Shaul* dies — and his three sons
 and his instrument bearer and all his men
 that same day together.
 7 And the men of *Yisra El*
 beyond the valley and beyond *Yarden*
 see the men of *Yisra El* flee,
 and *Shaul* and his sons die,
 they forsake their cities and flee;
 and the *Peleshethiy* come and settle in them.

8 And so be it, on the morrow,
 when the *Peleshethiy* come to strip the *pierced*,
 they find *Shaul* and his three sons
 fallen in mount Gilboa:
 9 and they cut off his head
 and strip off his instruments
 and send them all around
 into the land of the *Peleshethiy*
 — to evangelize it in the house of their idols
 and among their people.

10 And they set his instruments
 in the house of Ashtaroth:

1 SAMUEL 31

*exeGes*es ready research *BIBLE*

11 and they *fastened* **staked** his body
to the wall of *Bethshan* **Beth Shaan**.
And when the *inhabitants* **settlers**
of *Jabeshgilead* **Yabesh Gilad**
heard of that which the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
had *done* **worked** to *Saul* **Shaul**;
12 All the *valiant* men of **valour** arose,
and went all night,
and took the body of *Saul* **Shaul** and the bodies of his sons
from the wall of *Bethshan* **Beth Shaan**,
and came to *Jabesh* **Yabesh**, and burnt them there.
13 And they took their bones,
and *buried* **entombed** them under a *tree* **grove**
at *Jabesh* **Yabesh**, and fasted seven days.

1 SHEMU EL 31

*exeGes*es companion *BIBLE*

and they stake his body
to the wall of Beth Shaan.

11 And the settlers of Yabesh Gilad
hear what the Peleshethiy work to Shaul;
12 and all the men of valour rise and go all night
and take the body of Shaul and the bodies of his sons
from the wall of Beth Shaan
and come to Yabesh and burn them there:
13 and they take their bones
and entomb them under a grove at Yabesh
and fast seven days.

2 SAMUEL 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

DAVID HEARS OF THE DEATH OF SHAUL

1 Now **And so be** it came to pass,
after the death of *Saul Shaul*,
when David was returned
from the *slaughter smiting* of the *Amalekites Amaleqiy*,
and David had *abode settled* two days in *Ziklag Siqlag*;
2 It *came even to pass became*, on the third day,
that, behold, a man came out of the camp from *Saul Shaul*
with his clothes *rent ripped*, and *earth soil* upon his head:
and so it was **became**, when he came to David,
that he fell to the earth, and *did obeisance prostrated*.
3 And David said unto him, From whence comest thou?
And he said unto him,
Out of the camp of *Israel Yisra El* am I escaped.
4 And David said unto him,
How went the *matter word*? I *pray beseech* thee, tell me.
And he *answered said*,
That the people are fled from the *battle war*,
and *many an abounding* of the people also are fallen
and *dead die*;
and *Saul Shaul* and *Jonathan Yah Nathan* his son
are dead have died also.
5 And David said unto the *young man lad* that told him,
How knowest thou
that *Saul Shaul* and *Jonathan Yah Nathan* his son
be dead have died?
6 And the young man that told him said,
As I happened by chance In meeting,
as I met upon mount Gilboa, behold,
Saul Shaul leaned upon his spear; and, *lo behold*,
the chariots and *horsemen masters of the cavalry*
followed hard adhered after him.
7 And when he *looked faced* behind him, he saw me,
and called unto me. And I *answered said*, Here am I.
8 And he said unto me, Who art thou?
9 And I *answered said to* him, I am an *Amalekite Amaleqiy*.
He said unto me *again*,
Stand, I *pray beseech* thee, upon me, and slay me:
for anguish is come upon
my embroidered mail possesseth me,
because my *life soul* is yet whole in me.
10 So I stood upon him, and *slew deathified* him,
because I *was sure knew* that he could not live
after that he was fallen:
and I took the *crown separatism* that was upon his head,
and the *bracelet anklet* that was on his arm,
and have brought them hither unto my *lord adoni*.
11 Then David took hold on his clothes,
and *rent ripped* them;
and likewise all the men that were with him:
12 And they *mourned chopped*, and wept,
and fasted until even,
for *Saul Shaul*, and for *Jonathan Yah Nathan* his son,
and for the people of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and for the house of *Israel Yisra El*;
because they were fallen by the sword.
13 And David said unto the young man that told him,
Whence art thou?
And he *answered said*,
I am the son of a *stranger man, a sojourner*,
an *Amalekite Amaleqiy*.
14 And David said unto him,
How wast thou not *afraid awed*
to *stretch send* forth thine hand
to *destroy the LORD'S ruin Yah Veh's* anointed?
15 And David called one of the *young men lads*,
and said, Go near, and *fall encounter* upon him.
And he smote him that he died.
16 And David said unto him,
Thy blood be upon thy head;
for thy mouth hath *testified answered* against thee, saying,
I have *slain the LORD'S deathified Yah Veh's* anointed.

2 SHEMU EL 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

DAVID HEARS OF THE DEATH OF SHAUL

1 And so be it, after the death of Shaul,
David returns from the smiting of the Amaleqiy
and David settles two days in Siqlag:
2 and so be it, on the third day,
behold, a man comes from the camp of Shaul
with his clothes ripped and soil on his head:
and so be it, he comes to David
and falls to the earth and prostrates.
3 And David says to him, Whence come you?
And he says to him,
I escape from the camp of Yisra El.
4 And David says to him,
How goes the word? I beseech you, tell me.
And he says,
The people flee the war
and also an abundance of the people fall and die;
and Shaul and Yah Nathan his son also die.
5 And David says to the lad who tells him,
How know you
that Shaul and Yah Nathan his son die?
6 And the young man tells him saying,
In meeting, as I meet on mount Gilboa,
behold, Shaul leans on his spear;
and behold,
the chariots and masters of the cavalry
adhere after him.
7 And he faces behind him and he sees me
and calls to me. And I say, Here — I.
8 And he says to me, Who are you?
And I say to him, I *am* an Amaleqiy.
9 And he says to me,
Stand, I beseech you, over me and slay me:
for my embroidered mail possesses me,
because my soul is yet whole in me.
10 — and I stand over him and deathify him,
because I know he lives not after he falls:
and I take the separatism on his head
and the anklet on his arm
and bring them here to my adoni.
11 And David holds his clothes and rips them;
and also all the men with him:
12 and they chop and weep and fast until evening
for Shaul and for Yah Nathan his son
and for the people of Yah Veh
and for the house of Yisra El;
because they fall by the sword.
13 And David says to the young man who tells him,
Whence are you?
And he says,
I *am* the son of a man — a sojourner — an Amaleqiy.
14 And David says to him,
How is it you awed not to send your hand
to ruin the anointed of Yah Veh?
15 And David calls one of the lads
and says, Go near, encounter on him.
— and he smites him so that he dies.
16 And David says to him,
Your blood *is* on your head;
for your mouth answers against you, saying,
I deathified the anointed of Yah Veh.

2 SAMUEL 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE LAMENTATION OF DAVID

17 And David lamented with this lamentation
over *Saul Shaul* and over *Jonathan Yah Nathan* his son:
18 (Also he bade them said
to teach the *children sons of Judah Yah Hudah*
the use of the bow:
behold, it is written **inscribed**
in the book **scroll** of *Jasher the straight*.)
Apocalypse 20:12
19 The *beauty splendour* of *Israel Yisra El* is slain **pierced**
upon thy *high places bamahs*:
how are the mighty fallen!
20 Tell it not in Gath,
publish **evangelize** it not
in the *streets outskirts of Askelon Ashqelon*;
lest the daughters of the *Philistines Peleshethiy*
rejoice **cheer**,
lest the daughters of the uncircumcised
triumph **jump for joy**.
21 Ye mountains of Gilboa,
let there be no — **neither** dew,
neither let there be rain, upon you,
nor fields of *offerings exaltments*:
for there the *shield buckler* of the mighty
is vilely cast away **loatheth**,
the *shield buckler* of *Saul Shaul*,
as though he had not been anointed with oil.
22 From the blood of the *slain pierced*,
from the fat of the mighty,
the bow of *Jonathan Yah Nathan*
turned **retreated** not back,
and the sword of *Saul Shaul*
returned not empty.
23 *Saul Shaul* and *Jonathan Yah Nathan*
were lovely and pleasant in their lives,
and in their death they were not *divided separated*:
they were swifter than eagles,
they were stronger than **prevailed mightily over** lions.
24 Ye daughters of *Israel Yisra El*, weep over *Saul Shaul*,
who clothed **enrobed** you in scarlet,
with other *delights pleasures*,
who put on **ascended** ornaments of gold
upon your *apparel robe*.
25 How are the mighty fallen
in the midst of the *battle war*!
O *Jonathan Yah Nathan*,
thou wast *slain pierced* in *thine high places thy bamahs*.
26 I am distressed for thee,
my brother *Jonathan Yah Nathan*:
very *pleasant mighty pleasing* hast thou been unto me:
thy love to me was *wonderful marvellous*,
passing **surpassing** the love of women.
27 How are the mighty fallen,
and the *weapons instruments* of war **perished destructed**!

DAVID ANOINTED SOVEREIGN

2 And so be it came to pass, after this,
that David enquired **asked** of the *LORD Yah Veh*, saying,
Shall I go up **ascend**
into any **one** of the cities of *Judah Yah Hudah*?
And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto him, Go up **Ascend**.
And David said, Whither shall I go up **ascend**?
And he said, Unto Hebron.
2 So David went up **ascended** thither,
and his two wives **women** also,
Ahinoam Achiy Noam the *Jezreelitess Yizre Eliyth*,
and *Abigail Abi Gail*
Nabal's wife **woman** the *Carmelite Karmeliy*.
3 And his men that were with him
did David *bring up ascend*,
every man with his household:
and they *dwelt settled* in the cities of Hebron.
4 And the men of *Judah Yah Hudah* came,
and there they anointed David
king sovereign over the house of *Judah Yah Hudah*.
And they told David, saying,
That the men of *Jabeshgilead Yabesh Gilad*
were they that *buried Saul entombed Shaul*.

2 SHEMU EL 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE LAMENTATION OF DAVID

17 And David laments this lamentation
over Shaul and over Yah Nathan his son:
18 and he says
to teach the sons of Yah Hudah the bow:
Behold, it is inscribed in the scroll of the straight:
Apocalypse 20:12
19 The splendor of Yisra El
is pierced on your bamahs:
how the mighty fall!
20 Neither tell in Gath,
nor evangelize in the outskirts of Ashqelon;
lest the daughters of the Peleshethiy cheer,
lest the daughters of the uncircumcised jump for joy.
21 You mountains of Gilboa,
— neither dew nor rain be on you
nor fields of exaltments:
for there the buckler of the mighty loaths
— the buckler of Shaul as not anointed with oil.
22 From the blood of the pierced
from the fat of the mighty
neither the bow of Yah Nathan retreats
nor the sword of Shaul returns empty.
23 Shaul and Yah Nathan
— lovely and pleasant in their lives
and in their death they separate not:
— swifter than eagles,
they prevail mightily over lions.
24 You daughters of Yisra El, weep over Shaul,
who enrobes you in scarlet with pleasures;
who ascends ornaments of gold on your robe.
25 How the mighty fall midst the war!
O Yah Nathan, you — pierced in your bamahs.
26 I distress for you, my brother Yah Nathan:
mighty pleasing are you to me:
marvellous your love to me
surpassing the love of women.
27 How the mighty fall
and the instruments of war destruct!

DAVID ANOINTED SOVEREIGN

2 And so be it, after this,
David asks of Yah Veh, saying,
Ascend I into one of the cities of Yah Hudah?
And Yah Veh says to him, Ascend.
And David says, Whither ascend I?
And he says, To Hebron.
2 So David ascends thither
and also his two women,
Achiy Noam the Yizre Eliyth
and the woman of Abi Gail, Nabal the Karmeliy:
3 and David ascends with his men
— every man with his household;
and they settle in the cities of Hebron:
4 and the men of Yah Hudah come
and there they anoint David
sovereign over the house of Yah Hudah.
And they tell David, saying,
The men of Yabesh Gilad entombed Shaul.

2 SAMUEL 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 And David sent messengers angels
unto the men of *Jabeshgilead* **Yabesh Gilad**,
and said unto them, Blessed be ye of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that ye have *shewed* **worked** this *kindness* **mercy**
unto your *lord* **adoni**, even unto *Saul* **Shaul**,
and have *buried* **entombed** him.
6 And now *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
shew **kindness** **work** **mercy** and truth unto you:
and I also
will requite **shall work** you this *kindness* **goodness**,
because ye have *done* **worked** this *thing* **word**.
7 Therefore now let your hands be strengthened,
and be ye *valiant* **sons of valour**:
for your *master* **Saul is dead** **adoni Shaul hath died**,
and also the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
have anointed me *king* **sovereign** over them.

THE SON OF SHAUL REIGNS OVER YISRA EL

8 But *Abner* **Abi Ner** the son of Ner,
captain **governor** of *Saul's* **Shaul's** host,
took *Ishbosheth* **Ish Bosheth** the son of *Saul* **Shaul**,
and *brought* **passed** him over to *Mahanaim* **Machanayim**;
9 And *made* **caused** him *king* **to reign** over *Gilead* **Gilad**,
and over the *Ashurites* **Ashshuriy**,
and over *Jezeel* **Yizre El**,
and over *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
and over *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
and over all *Israel* **Yisra El**.
10 *Ishbosheth* **Saul's Ish Bosheth Shaul's** son
was a *son* **of forty years old**
when he began to reign over *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and reigned two years.
But the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
followed **went after** David.
11 And the *time* **number of days**
that David was *king* **sovereign** in Hebron
over the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
was seven years and six months.

CIVIL WAR

12 And *Abner* **Abi Ner** the son of Ner,
and the servants of *Ishbosheth* **Ish Bosheth**
the son of *Saul* **Shaul**,
went out from *Mahanaim* **Machanayim** to *Gibeon* **Gibon**.
13 And *Joab* **Yah Ab** the son of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah**,
and the servants of David,
went out, and met together by the pool of *Gibeon* **Gibon**:
and they *sat down* **settled**,
the one
on the one side of the pool **by the pool here**,
and the *other* **one**
on the other side of the pool **by the pool there**.
14 And *Abner* **Abi Ner** said to *Joab* **Yah Ab**,
Let the *young men* **lads** now arise,
and *play before us* **entertain at our face**.
And *Joab* **Yah Ab** said, Let them arise.
15 Then there arose and *went* **passed** over by number
twelve of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
which pertained to Ishbosheth **of Ish Bosheth**
the son of *Saul* **Shaul**,
and twelve of the servants of David.
16 And *they caught every one* **each man held**
his *fellow* **friend** by the head,
and *thrust* his sword in his *fellow's* **friend's** side;
so they fell *down* **together**:
wherefore that place was called
Helkathazzurim **Helgath Hats Surim**,
which is in *Gibeon* **Gibon**.
17 And there was a *very sore battle* **mighty hard war** that day;
and *Abner* **Abi Ner** was *beaten* **smitten**,
and the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
before **at the face of** the servants of David.
18 And there were three sons of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah** there,
Joab **Yah Ab**, and *Abishai* **Abi Shai**, and *Asahel* **Asa El**:
and *Asahel* **Asa El** was as *light* **swift** of foot
as a *wild roe* **one of the gazelles in the field**.
19 And *Asahel* **Asa El** pursued after *Abner* **Abi Ner**;
and in going
he *turned* **spread** not to the right *hand* nor to the left
from following **Abner after** **Abi Ner**.

2 SHEMU EL 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

5 And David sends angels to the men of Yabesh Gilad
and says to them, Blessed — you of Yah Veh
to work this mercy to your adoni — to Shaul
and entomb him:
6 and now, Yah Veh work mercy and truth to you;
and I also work you this goodness
because you worked this word:
7 and now strengthen your hands
and become sons of valour:
for your adoni Shaul died
and also the house of Yah Hudah
anointed me sovereign over them.

THE SON OF SHAUL REIGNS OVER YISRA EL

8 And Abi Ner the son of Ner,
governor of the host of Shaul,
takes Ish Bosheth the son of Shaul
and passes him over to Machanayim;
9 and has him reign over Gilad
and over the Ashshuriy
and over Yizre El
and over Ephrayim
and over Ben Yamin
and over all Yisra El.
10 Ish Bosheth the son of Shaul is a son of forty years;
and he begins to reign over Yisra El
and reigns two years:
11 only, the house of Yah Hudah goes after David.
And the number of days
David is sovereign in Hebron
over the house of Yah Hudah
is seven years and six months.

CIVIL WAR

12 And Abi Ner the son of Ner
and the servants of Ish Bosheth the son of Shaul
go from Machanayim to Gibon:
13 and Yah Ab the son of Seruyah
and the servants of David
go and meet by the pool of Gibon:
and they settle
— the one by the pool here
and the one by the pool there.
14 And Abi Ner says to Yah Ab,
Have the lads now rise and entertain at our face.
And Yah Ab says, Rise.
15 And they rise and pass over by number
twelve of Ben Yamin of Ish Bosheth the son of Shaul
and twelve of the servants of David:
16 each man holds his friend by the head
and his sword in the side of his friend;
and they fall together:
and they call that place Helgath Hats Surim
— in Gibon.
17 And there is a mighty hard war that day;
and Abi Ner and the men of Yisra El are smitten
at the face of the servants of David.
18 And three sons of Seruyah are there:
Yah Ab and Abi Shai and Asa El:
and Asa El is as swift of foot
as one of the gazelles in the field:
19 and Asa El pursues after Abi Ner;
and in going
he spreads neither to the right nor to the left
after Abi Ner.

2 SAMUEL 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

20 Then *Abner* looked **Abi Ner** faced behind him,
and said, Art thou *Asahel* **Asa El**?
And he answered **said**, I am.
21 And *Abner* **Abi Ner** said to him,
Turn thee aside **Spread** to thy right hand or to thy left,
and lay thee hold on one of the *young men* **lads**,
and take thee his *armour* **clothes**.
But *Asahel* would **Asa El** **willed** to not turn aside
from *following of* **after** him.
22 And *Abner* **Abi Ner**
said again **added to say** to *Asahel* **Asa El**,
Turn thee aside from *following* **after** me:
wherefore should I smite thee to the *ground* **earth**?
how then should I *hold up* **lift** my face
to *Joab* **Yah Ab** thy brother?
23 Howbeit he refused to turn aside:
wherefore *Abner* **Abi Ner**
with the *hinder end* **back** of the spear
smote him under the fifth *rib*,
that the spear *came out* **went** behind him;
and he fell *down* there,
and died *in the same place* **under it**:
and **so be** it *came to pass*,
that as many as came to the place
where *Asahel* **Asa El** fell *down* and died stood still.
24 *Joab* **Yah Ab** also and *Abishai* **Abi Shai**
pursued after *Abner* **Abi Ner**:
and the sun *went down* **descended**
when they were come to the hill of Ammah,
that lieth before *Giah* **at the face of** *Giach*
by the way of the wilderness of *Gibeon* **Gibon**.
25 And the *children* **sons** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
gathered themselves together after *Abner* **Abi Ner**,
and became one *troop* **band**,
and stood on the top of an **one** hill.
26 Then *Abner* **Abi Ner** called to *Joab* **Yah Ab**, and said,
Shall the sword devour *for ever* **in perpetuity**?
knowest thou not
that it *will* **shall** be *bitterness* **bitter** in the latter end?
how long shall it be then, ere thou *bid* **say** to the people
return from *following* **after** their brethren?
27 And *Joab* **Yah Ab** said, *As God* **Elohim** liveth,
unless thou hadst *spoken* **worded**,
surely then in the morning
the people had *gone up* **ascended**
every one **each man** from *following* **after** his brother.
28 So *Joab* **blew** *Yah Ab* **blast** a *trumpet* **shophar**,
and all the people stood still,
and pursued after *Israel* **Yisra El** no more,
neither *fought they any more* **added they yet to fight**.
29 And *Abner* **Abi Ner** and his men
walked all that night through the plain,
and passed over *Jordan* **Yarden**,
and went through all Bithron,
and they came to *Mahanaim* **Machanayim**.
30 And *Joab* **Yah Ab** returned
from *following* **after** *Abner* **Abi Ner**:
and when he had gathered all the people *together*,
there *lacked* **mustered** of David's servants
nineteen men and *Asahel* **Asa El**.
31 But the servants of David had smitten
of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**, and of *Abner's* **Abi Ner's** men,
so that three hundred and *threescore* **sixty** men died.
32 And they *took up* *Asahel* **lifted** *Asa El*,
and *buried* **entombed** him
in the *sepulchre* **tomb** of his father,
which was in *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**.
And *Joab* **Yah Ab** and his men went all night,
and they came to Hebron at *break of day* **light**.

THE HOUSE OF DAVID STRENGTHENED

3 Now there was long war
between the house of *Saul* **Shaul**
and **between** the house of David:
but David
waxed stronger and stronger **walked on strengthened**,
and the house of Saul
waxed weaker and weaker **walked on poor**.

DAVID BIRTHS SONS

2 And unto David were sons *born* **birthed** in Hebron:

2 SHEMU EL 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

20 Then *Abi Ner* faces back and says, Are you *Asa El*?
And he says, I.
21 And *Abi Ner* says to him,
Spread to your right or to your left
and hold on to one of the lads and take his clothes.
— and *Asa El* wills to not turn aside from after him.
22 And *Abi Ner* adds to say to *Asa El*,
Turn aside from after me!
Why smite I you to the earth?
How then lift I my face to *Yah Ab* your brother?
23 And he refuses to turn aside:
and *Abi Ner* smites him under the fifth
with the back of the spear
so that the spear goes out behind him;
and there he falls and dies under it:
and so be it,
all who come to the place where *Asa El* falls and dies
stand still:
24 and *Yah Ab* and *Abi Shai* pursue *Abi Ner*:
and the sun descends
and they come to the hill of Ammah
at the face of *Giach*
by the way of the wilderness of Gibon:
and the sons of *Ben Yamin*
gather themselves together after *Abi Ner*
and become one band
and stand on the top of one hill.
25 And *Abi Ner* calls to *Yah Ab* and says,
The sword — devours it in perpetuity?
Know you not that it embitters in the latter end?
How long be it then, ere you say to the people
to return from after their brothers?
27 And *Yah Ab* says, *Elohim* lives:
unless you had worded,
surely then in the morning the people had ascended
each man from after his brother.
28 So *Yah Ab* blasts a *shophar*
and all the people stand still;
and neither pursue *Yisra El* any more,
nor add still to fight:
and *Abi Ner* and his men
walk all that night through the plain
and pass over *Yarden* and go through all *Bithron*
and come to *Machanayim*.
30 And *Yah Ab* returns from after *Abi Ner*:
and when he gathers all the people
there are mustered, of the servants of David,
nineteen men and *Asa El*:
and the servants of David smite
of *Ben Yamin* and of the men of *Abi Ner*
so that three hundred and sixty men die.
32 And they lift *Asa El*
and entomb him in the tomb of his father
in *Beth Lechem*.
And *Yah Ab* and his men go all night
and come to Hebron at light.

THE HOUSE OF DAVID STRENGTHENS

3 And the war is long
between the house of *Shaul*
and between the house of David:
and David walks on strengthened
and the house of Saul walks on poor.

DAVID BIRTHS SONS

2 And to David sons are birthed in Hebron:

2 SAMUEL 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and his *firstborn* **firstbirthed** was Amnon,
of Ahinoam **Achiy Noam** the *Jezeleitess* **Yizre Eliyth**;
3 And his second, *Chileab* **Kil Ab**, of *Abigail* **Abi Gail**
the *wife* **woman** of Nabal the *Carmelite* **Karmeliy**;
and the third,
Absalom **Abi Shalom** the son of Maachah
the daughter of *Talmai king* **Talmay sovereign** of Geshur;
4 And the fourth,
Adonijah **Adoni Yah** the son of Haggith;
and the fifth,
Shephatiah **Shaphat Yah** the son of *Abital* **Abi Tal**;
5 And the sixth,
Ithream **Yithre Am**, by Eglah David's *wife* **woman**.
These were *born* **birthed** to David in Hebron.

ABI NER UNITES WITH DAVID

6 And **so be** it *came to pass*, while there was war
between the house of *Saul* **Shaul**
and **between** the house of David,
that *Abner made* **Abi Ner strengthened** himself *strong*
for the house of *Saul* **Shaul**.
7 And *Saul* **Shaul** had a concubine,
whose name was *Rizpah* **Rispah**,
the daughter of *Aiah* **Ajah**;
and *Ishbosheth* **he** said to *Abner* **Abi Ner**,
Wherefore hast thou gone in unto my father's concubine?
8 Then was *Abner very* **wroth** **Abi Ner mighty inflamed**
for the words of *Ishbosheth* **Ish Bosheth**,
and said, *Am I* a dog's head,
which against *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
do shew kindness **worketh mercy** this day
unto the house of *Saul* **Shaul** thy father,
to his brethren, and to his *friends* **companions**,
and have not *delivered* **presented** thee
into the hand of David,
that thou *chargest* **visitest** me to day
with a *fault* **perversion** concerning this woman?
9 So *do God* **work Elohim** to *Abner* **Abi Ner**,
and *more* **add** also, except,
as *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *sworn* **oathed** to David,
even so I *do* **work** to him;
10 To *translate* **pass over** the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
from the house of *Saul* **Shaul**,
and to *set up* **raise** the throne of David
over *Israel* **Yisra El** and over *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
from Dan even to *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**.
11 And he could not
answer **Abner** **return** **Abi Ner** a word *again*,
because he *feared* **awed** him.
12 And *Abner* **Abi Ner**
sent *messengers* **angels** to David on his behalf,
saying, Whose is the land?
saying *also*, *Make* **Cut** thy *league* **covenant** with me,
and, behold, my hand shall be with thee,
to *bring* **turn** about all *Israel* **Yisra El** unto thee.
13 And he said, *Well* **Good**;
I *will make* **shall cut** a *league* **covenant** with thee:
but one *thing* **word** I *require* **ask** of thee, *that is* **saying**,
Thou shalt not see my face,
except thou first bring Michal *Saul's* **Shaul's** daughter,
when thou comest to see my face.
14 And David sent *messengers* **angels**
to *Ishbosheth* **Ish Bosheth**, *Saul's* **Shaul's** son, saying,
Deliver **Give** me my *wife* **woman** Michal,
which I *espoused* **betrothed** to me
for an hundred foreskins of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiyy**.
15 And *Ishbosheth* **Ish Bosheth** sent,
and took her from her *husband* **man**,
even from *Phaltiel* **Phalti El** the son of *Laish* **Lush**.
16 And her *husband* **man** went with her
along **walking and** weeping behind her
to *Bahurim* **Bachurim**.
Then said *Abner* **Abi Ner** unto him, Go, return.
And he returned.
17 And *Abner* **Abi Ner** had *communication* **word**
with the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**, saying,
Ye sought for David *in times past* **three yesters ago**
to be *king* **sovereign** over you:
18 Now then *do* **work** it:

2 SHEMU EL 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and his firstbirthed:
Amnon of Achiy Noam the Yizre Eliyth;
3 Kil Ab of Abi Gail the woman of Nabal the Karmeliy;
and the third:
Abi Shalom the son of Maachah
the daughter of Talmay sovereign of Geshur;
4 and the fourth:
Adoni Yah the son of Haggith;
and the fifth:
Shaphat Yah the son of Abi Tal;
5 and the sixth:
Yithre Am of Eglah, the woman of David:
these were birthed to David in Hebron.

ABI NER UNITES WITH DAVID

6 And so be it,
war becomes between the house of Shaul
and between the house of David;
and Abi Ner strengthens himself
for the house of Shaul.
7 And Shaul has a concubine;
her name is Rispah the daughter of Ajah:
and he says to Abi Ner,
Why go you in the concubine of my father?
8 And Abi Ner inflames mightily
for the words of Ish Bosheth
and says, *Am I* the head of a dog
because I work Yah Hudah mercy this day
— to the house of Shaul your father
and to his brothers and to his companions
and present you not into the hand of David
for visiting me today
with a perversion concerning this woman?
9 O that Elohim work thus to Abi Ner, and add also;
except, as Yah Veh oathed to David,
even thus work I to him
— to pass the sovereigndom
from the house of Shaul
and to raise the throne of David
over Yisra El and over Yah Hudah
from Dan even to Beer Sheba.
11 — and he cannot return Abi Ner a word
because he awes him.
12 And Abi Ner
sends angels to David on his behalf,
saying, Whose is the land?
Saying, Cut your covenant with me
and behold, my hand is with you,
to turn all Yisra El around to you.
13 And he says, Good; I cut a covenant with you:
only, I ask one word of you, saying,
You not see my face,
unless you first bring Michal the daughter of Shaul
when you come to see my face.
14 And David sends angels
to Ish Bosheth the son of Shaul, saying,
Give me my woman Michal whom I betrothed to me
for a hundred foreskins of the Peleshethiyy.
15 And Ish Bosheth sends and takes her from her man
— from Phalti El the son of Lush:
and her man goes with her
walking and weeping behind her to Bachurim.
And Abi Ner says to him, Go, return.
— and he returns.
17 And Abi Ner words with the elders of Yisra El,
saying, Three yesters ago
you sought David to be sovereign over you:
18 and now work it:

2 SAMUEL 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for the LORD **Yah Veh** hath spoken said of David,
saying, By the hand of my servant David
I will shall save my people **Israel Yisra El**
out of the hand of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and out of the hand of all their enemies.

19 And *Abner* **Abi Ner**
also spake **worded** in the ears of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**:
and *Abner* **Abi Ner** went also
to speak **word** in the ears of David in Hebron
all that seemed good to *Israel* **in the eyes of Yisra El**,
and that seemed good
to **in the eyes of** the whole house of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**.

20 So *Abner* **Abi Ner** came to David to Hebron,
and twenty men with him.
And David made *Abner* **worked Abi Ner**
and the men that were with him a *feast* **banquet**.

21 And *Abner* **Abi Ner** said unto David,
I will shall arise and go,
and will shall gather all *Israel* **Yisra El**
unto my lord **adoni** the king **sovereign**,
that they may make **cut** a league **covenant** with thee,
and that thou mayest reign
over all that *thine heart* **thy soul** desireth.
And David sent *Abner* **Abi Ner** away;
and he went in *peace* **shalom**.

YAH AB DEATHIFIES ABI NER

22 And, behold, the servants of David and *Joab* **Yah Ab**
came from *pursuing* a troop,
and brought in a great spoil with them:
but *Abner* **Abi Ner** was not with David in Hebron;
for he had sent him away,
and he was gone in *peace* **shalom**.

23 When *Joab* **Yah Ab** and all the host that was with him
were come,
they told *Joab* **Yah Ab**, saying,
Abner **Abi Ner** the son of Ner came to the king **sovereign**,
and he hath sent him away,
and he is gone in *peace* **shalom**.

24 Then *Joab* **Yah Ab** came to the king **sovereign**,
and said, What hast thou *done* **worked**?
behold, *Abner* **Abi Ner** came unto thee;
why is it that thou hast sent him away,
and he is quite gone **in walking, he hath walked away**?

25 Thou knowest *Abner* **Abi Ner** the son of Ner,
that he came to *deceive* **entice** thee,
and to know
thy *going out* **rising** and thy *coming in* **entering**,
and to know all that thou *doest* **workest**.

26 And when *Joab* **Yah Ab**
was come out **went** from David,
he sent *messengers* **angels** after *Abner* **Abi Ner**,
which *brought* **turned** him *again* from the well of Sirah:
but David knew it not.

27 And when *Abner* **Abi Ner** was returned to Hebron,
Joab took **Yah Ab** **turned** him aside
in the *gate* **midst of the portal**
to speak **word** with him *quietly* **serenely**,
and smote him there under the fifth *rib*, that he died,
for the blood of *Asahel* **Asa El** his brother.

28 And afterward when David heard it, he said,
I and my *kingdom* **sovereigndom** are *guiltless* **innocent**
before the LORD for ever **at the face of Yah Veh** **eternally**
from the blood of *Abner* **Abi Ner** the son of Ner:

29 Let it rest **It waiteth** on the head of *Joab* **Yah Ab**,
and on all his father's house;
and let there not *fail* **be cut off**
from the house of *Joab* **Yah Ab**
one that *hath an issue* **floweth**, or that is a leper,
or that *leaneth on* **holdeth** a *staff* **crutch**,
or that falleth on the sword, or that lacketh bread.

30 So *Joab* **Yah Ab**, and *Abishai* **Abi Shai** his brother
slew **Abner** **slaughtered Abi Ner**,
because he had *slain* **deathified**
their brother *Asahel* **Asa El**
at *Gibeon* **Gibon** in the *battle* **war**.

31 And David said to *Joab* **Yah Ab**,
and to all the people that were with him,
Rend **Rip** your clothes, and gird you with *sackcloth* **saq**,

2 SHEMU EL 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for Yah Veh says of David,
saying, By the hand of my servant David
I save my people Yisra El
from the hand of the Peleshethiy,
and from the hand of all their enemies.

19 And Abi Ner
also words in the ears of Ben Yamin:
and Abi Ner also goes
to word in the ears of David in Hebron
all that seems good in the eyes of Yisra El,
and seems good
in the eyes of the whole house of Ben Yamin.

20 And Abi Ner comes to David to Hebron
with twenty men:
and David works a banquet
to Abi Ner and the men with him.

21 And Abi Ner says to David, I rise and go,
and gather all Yisra El to my adoni the sovereign
to cut a covenant with you
to reign over all your soul desires.
— and David sends Abi Ner away;
and he goes in shalom.

YAH AB DEATHIFIES ABI NER

22 And, behold,
the servants of David and Yah Ab
come from the troop
and bring in a great spoil with them:
and Abi Ner is not with David in Hebron;
for he sends him away and he goes in shalom.

23 And Yah Ab and all the host with him
come and tell Yah Ab, saying,
Abi Ner the son of Ner came to the sovereign,
and he sent him away,
and he goes in shalom.

24 And Yah Ab comes to the sovereign,
and says, What work you?
Behold, Abi Ner came to you.
Why sent you him away
— in walking, to walk away?

25 You know Abi Ner the son of Ner
came to entice thee
— to know your rising and your entering,
— to know all you work.

26 And Yah Ab goes from David
and sends angels after Abi Ner
who turn him from the well of Sirah:
and David knows it not.

27 And Abi Ner returns to Hebron
and Yah Ab turns him aside midst the portal
to word with him serenely;
and smites him under the fifth,
so that he dies for the blood of Asa El his brother.

28 And afterward, David hears, and he says,
I and my sovereigndom are eternally innocent
at the face of Yah Veh
from the blood of Abi Ner the son of Ner:

29 it awaits on the head of Yah Ab
and on all the house of his father;
that there not be cut off from the house of Yah Ab
one who flows or is a leper or who holds a crutch
or who falls on the sword or who lacks bread.

30 And Yah Ab and Abi Shai his brother
slaughtered Abi Ner,
because he deathified their brother Asa El
at Gibon in the war.

31 And David says to Yah Ab
and to all the people with him,
Rip your clothes and gird with saq;

2 SAMUEL 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and mourn before **Abner chop at the face of Abi Ner.**
And king **sovereign David himself**
followed the bier **walked after the bed.**
32 And they **buried Abner entombed Abi Ner** in Hebron:
and the king **sovereign** lifted up his voice,
and wept at the **grave tomb of Abner Abi Ner;**
and all the people wept.
33 And the king **sovereign** lamented over **Abner Abi Ner,**
and said, *Died as a fool dieth Abner*
Dieth Abi Ner the death of a fool?
34 Thy hands were not bound,
nor thy feet *put into fetters* **approached copper:**
as a man falleth *before at the face of* wicked men sons,
so fellest thou.
And all the people *wept again* **added to weep** over him.
35 And when all the people came
to cause David to eat meat **chew bread**
while it was yet **still** day,
David *swore* **oathed,** saying,
So do God **Thus work Elohim** to me,
and *more* may **add** also,
if I taste bread, or ought *else* **at all,**
till **the face of** the sun be down.
36 And all the people *took notice of* **recognized it,**
and it *pleased them* **was good in their eyes:**
as whatsoever the king *did* **sovereign worked**
pleased **was good in the eyes of** all the people.
37 For all the people and all *Israel* **Yisra El**
understood **knew** that day
that it was not of the king **sovereign**
to *slay Abner* **deathify Abi Ner** the son of Ner.
38 And the king **sovereign** said unto his servants,
Know ye not
that there is a *prince* **governor** and a great man
fallen this day in *Israel* **Yisra El?**
39 And I am this day *weak* **tender,**
though anointed king **sovereign;**
and these men the sons of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah**
be too hard for me:
the LORD **Yah Veh** shall *reward* **shalam**
the *doer* **worker** of evil according to his *wickedness* **evil.**

ISH BOSHETH IS DEATHIFIED

4 And when *Saul's* **Shaul's** son heard
that *Abner was dead* **Abi Ner died** in Hebron,
his hands *were feeble* **slackened,**
and all the *Israelites* **Yisra Eliy** were *troubled* **terrified.**
2 And *Saul's* **Shaul's** son had two men
that were *captains* **governors of bands troops:**
the name of the one was Baanah,
and the name of the *other* **second** Rechab,
the sons of Rimmon a *Beerothite* **Beerothy,**
of the *children* **sons of Benjamin Ben Yamin:**
(for Beeroth also was *reckoned* **fabricated**
to *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin.**)
3 And the *Beerothites* **Beerothy** fled to *Gittaim* **Gittayim,**
and were sojourners there until this day.)
4 And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan,** *Saul's* **Shaul's** son,
had a son that was *lame* **smitten** of his feet.
He was a **son of** five years *old*
when the *tidings* **reports** came
of *Saul* **Shaul** and *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**
out of *Jezreel* **Yizre El,**
and his *nurse* **foster** *lifted* him up, and fled:
and **so be** it *came to pass,* as she made haste to flee,
that he fell, and *became lame* **limped.**
5 And his name was *Mephibosheth* **Mephi Bosheth.**
And the sons of Rimmon the *Beerothite* **Beerothy,**
Rechab and Baanah, went,
and came about the heat of the day
to the house of *Ishbosheth* **Ish Bosheth,**
who lay on a bed at noon.
6 And they came thither into the midst of the house,
as though they *would have fetched* **should take** wheat;
and they smote him under the fifth *rib:*
and Rechab and Baanah his brother escaped.
7 For when they came into the house,
he lay on his bed in his bedchamber,
and they smote him, and *slew* **deathified** him,

2 SHEMU EL 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and chop at the face of Abi Ner.
And sovereign David walks after the bed:
and they entomb Abi Ner in Hebron:
and the sovereign lifts his voice
and weeps at the tomb of Abi Ner;
and all the people weep.
33 And the sovereign laments over Abi Ner,
and says, Abi Ner — dies he the death of a fool?
34 Neither with hands bound
nor feet approaching copper
— as a man fallen at the face of wicked sons,
you fall.
— and all the people add to weep over him.
35 And all the people come
to have David chew bread while it is still day,
and David oaths, saying,
Thus work Elohim to me, and add also,
if I taste bread or ought at all,
until the face of the sun downs.
36 And all the people recognize
and it is good in their eyes:
that whatever the sovereign works
is good in the eyes of all the people.
37 And that day,
all the people and all Yisra El know
it was not of the sovereign
to deathify Abi Ner the son of Ner.
38 And the sovereign says to his servants,
Know you not that a governor and a great man
is fallen this day in Yisra El?
39 And this day I am tender,
though anointed sovereign;
and these men — the sons of Seruyah
are too hard for me:
Yah Veh shalams the worker of evil
according to his evil.

ISH BOSHETH IS DEATHIFIED

4 And when the son of Shaul hears
that Abi Ner dies in Hebron,
his hands slacken, and all the Yisra Eliy terrify.
2 And the son of Shaul has two men
— governors of troops:
the name of the one, Baanah
and the name of the second, Rechab
the sons of Rimmon a Beerothy
of the sons of Ben Yamin:
for Beeroth is also fabricated to Ben Yamin.
3 And the Beerothy flee to Gittayim,
and are sojourners there until this day.
4 And Yah Nathan, the son of Shaul,
has a son with smitten feet — a son of five years;
as the reports of Shaul and Yah Nathan
come from Yizre El;
and his foster lifts him, and flees:
and so be it, as she hastens to flee,
he falls, and limps:
and his name is Mephi Bosheth.
5 And Rechab and Baanah
the sons of Rimmon the Beerothy go,
and at about the heat of the day
come to the house of Ish Bosheth
who lies down on a bed at noon:
6 and they come midst the house
as though to take wheat;
and smite him under the fifth:
and Rechab and Baanah his brother escape:
7 yes, they come into the house,
he lies down on his bed in his bedchamber;
and they smite him and deathify him

2 SAMUEL 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and beheaded him **twisted off his head**,
and took his head,
and *gat them away* **journeyed** through the plain all night.
8 And they brought the head of *Ishbosheth* **Ish Bosheth**
unto David to Hebron, and said to the *king* **sovereign**,
Behold the head of *Ishbosheth* **Ish Bosheth**
the son of *Saul* **Shaul** thine enemy,
which sought thy *life* **soul**;
and the *LORD* hath avenged **Yah Veh giveth avengements**
to my lord adoni the *king* **sovereign** this day
of *Saul* **Shaul**, and of his seed.
9 And David answered Rechab
and Baanah his brother,
the sons of Rimmon the *Beerothite* **Beerothiy**,
and said unto them, *As the LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth,
who hath redeemed my soul
out of all *adversity* **tribulation**,
10 When one told me, saying,
Behold, *Saul is dead* **Shaul died**,
thinking to have brought good tidings
who in his own eyes became a bringer of evangelism,
I took hold of him,
and **slew slaughtered** him in *Ziklag* **Siqlag**,
who thought that I would have given him a reward
instead of giving him for his *tidings* **evangelism**:
11 *How much more* **Also**, when wicked men
have *slain* **slaughtered** a *righteous person* **just man**
in his own house upon his bed?
shall I not *therefore now* **require seek** his blood
of your hand,
and **take burn** you away from the earth?
12 And David *commanded* **misvahed** his *young men* **lads**,
and they *slew* **slaughtered** them,
and *cut* **chopped** off their hands and their feet,
and hanged them up over the pool in Hebron.
But they took the head of *Ishbosheth* **Ish Bosheth**,
and *buried* **entombed** it
in the *sepulchre* **tomb** of *Abner* **Abi Ner** in Hebron.
DAVID ANOINTED SOVEREIGN
5 Then came all the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
to David unto Hebron, and *spake* **said**, saying,
Behold, we are thy bone and thy flesh.
2 *Also in time past* **three yesters ago**,
when *Saul* **Shaul** was *king* **sovereign** over us,
thou wast he that *leddest* **broughtest** out
and *broughtest in* *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said to thee,
Thou shalt *feed* **tend** my people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and thou shalt be a *captain* **eminent** over *Israel* **Yisra El**.
3 So all the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**
came to the *king* **sovereign** to Hebron;
and *king* **sovereign** David
made **cut** a *league* **covenant** with them in Hebron
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**:
and they anointed David
king **sovereign** over *Israel* **Yisra El**.
4 David was a **son of** thirty years *old*
when he began to reign,
and he reigned forty years.
5 In Hebron he reigned over *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
seven years and six months:
and in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
he reigned thirty and three years
over all *Israel* **Yisra El** and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
6 And the *king* **sovereign** and his men
went to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** unto the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**,
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land:
which *spake* **said** unto David, saying,
Except thou *take away* **turn aside** the blind and the lame,
thou shalt not come in hither:
thinking **saying**, David cannot come in hither.
7 *Nevertheless*
David *took* **captured** the strong hold of *Zion* **Siyon**:
the same is **being** the city of David.
8 And David said on that day,
Whosoever *getteth up* **toucheth** to the *gutter* **culvert**,
and smiteth the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**,
and the lame and the blind,

2 SHEMU EL 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and twist off his head;
and they take his head
and journey through the plain all night.
8 And they bring the head of Ish Bosheth
to David to Hebron;
and say to the sovereign,
Behold the head of Ish Bosheth
the son of Shaul your enemy who sought your soul;
and this day Yah Veh gives
my adoni the sovereign avengements
of Shaul and of his seed.
9 And David answers Rechab and Baanah his brother
the sons of Rimmon the Beerothiy
and says to them, Yah Veh lives,
who redeems my soul from all tribulation,
10 when one told me, saying,
Behold, Shaul died,
who in his own eyes became a bringer of evangelism,
I held him and slaughtered him in Siqlag
— instead of giving him for his evangelism:
11 also, when wicked men slaughter a just man
in his own house on his bed:
so now, Seek I not his blood from your hand?
— burn you away from the earth?
12 And David misvahs his lads;
and they slaughter them
and chop off their hands and their feet
and hang them over the pool in Hebron:
and they take the head of Ish Bosheth
and entomb it in the tomb of Abi Ner in Hebron.

DAVID ANOINTED SOVEREIGN

5 Then all the scions of Yisra El
come to David to Hebron, and say, saying,
Behold, we are your bone and your flesh.
2 Also three yesters ago,
when Shaul was sovereign over us,
it was you who brought out and brought in Yisra El:
and Yah Veh said to you,
Tend my people Yisra El! Be eminent over Yisra El!
3 So all the elders of Yisra El come to the sovereign
to Hebron;
and sovereign David
cuts a covenant with them in Hebron
at the face of Yah Veh:
and they anoint David sovereign over Yisra El.
4 David is a son of thirty years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns forty years.
5 In Hebron he reigns over Yah Hudah
seven years and six months:
and in Yeru Shalem
he reigns thirty—three years
over all Yisra El and Yah Hudah.
6 And the sovereign and his men go to Yeru Shalem
to the Yebusiy, the settlers of the land:
who say to David, saying,
Unless you turn aside the blind and the lame,
enter not here:
and saying, David enters not here.
7 And David captures the stronghold
of Siyon the city of David:
and David says on that day,
Whoever touches to the culvert,
and smites the Yebusiy
and the lame and the blind,

2 SAMUEL 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

that are hated of David's soul,
he shall be chief and captain.
Wherefore they said,
The blind and the lame shall not come into the house.
9 So David dwelt **settled** in the **fort stronghold**,
and called it the city of David.
And David built round about from Millo
and inward **the house**.
10 And **in walking**, David *went* **walked** on,
and *grew great* **walked and greatened**,
and the *LORD God of hosts* **Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**
was with him.
11 And Hiram *king* **sovereign** of Tyre **Sor**
sent *messengers* **angels** to David,
and cedar trees, and *carpenters* **artificers of timber**,
and *masons* **artificers of the stone for the wall**:
and they built David an house.
12 And David perceived that *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
had established him *king* **sovereign** over *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and that he had *exalted* **lifted** his *kingdom* **sovereignty**
for his people *Israel's* **Yisra El's** sake.
13 And David took him
more concubines and *wives* **women**
out of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
after he was come from Hebron:
and there were yet sons and daughters
born **birthed** to David.
14 And these be the names of those
that were *born* **birthed** unto him in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
Shammuah, and Shobab,
and Nathan, and *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
15 *Ibhar* **Yibchar** also, and *Elishua* **Eli Shua**,
and Nepheg, and *Japhia* **Yaphia**,
16 And *Elishama* **Eli Shama**, and *Eliada* **El Ad**,
and *Eliphalet* **Eli Phelet**.
17 But when the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** heard
that they had anointed David
king **sovereign** over *Israel* **Yisra El**,
all the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
came up **ascended** to seek David;
and David heard of it,
and *went down* **descended** to the hold.
18 The *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** also came
and *spread* **dispersed** *themselves* in the valley of Rephaim.
19 And David *enquired* **asked** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
saying,
Shall I *go up* **ascend** to the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**?
wilt **shalt** thou *deliver* **give** them into mine hand?
And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto David, *Go up* **Ascend**:
for **in giving**, I will doubtless *deliver* **shall give**
the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** into thine hand.
20 And David came to *Baalperazim* **Baal Perasim**,
and David smote them there, and said,
The LORD **Yah Veh**
hath *broken forth* **breached** upon mine enemies
before me **at my face**, as the breach of waters.
Therefore he called the name of that place
Baalperazim **Baal Perasim**.
21 And there they left their *images* **idols**,
and David and his men *burned* **lifted** them **away**.
22 And the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
came up yet again **added to ascend**,
and *spread* **dispersed** *themselves* in the valley of Rephaim.
23 And when David *enquired* **asked** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
he said, Thou shalt not *go up* **ascend**;
but *fetch a compass* **go about** behind them,
and come upon them
over against **opposite** the *mulberry trees* **weepers**.
24 And *let it be* **it becometh**,
when thou hearest the *sound* **voice** of a *going* **marching**
in the tops of the *mulberry trees* **weepers**,
that then thou shalt *bestir thyself* **point**:
for then shall the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
go out before thee **at thy face**,
to smite the *host* **camp** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
25 And David *did* **worked** so,
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *commanded* **misvahed** him;
and smote the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
from Geba until thou come to *Gazer* **Gezer**.

2 SHEMU EL 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

whom the soul of David hates.
— because they say,
The blind and the lame enter not into the house.
9 So David settles in the stronghold,
and calls it the city of David;
and David builds the house all around from Millo:
and in walking, David walks
— walks and greatens;
and Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth is with him.
11 And Hiram sovereign of Sor
sends angels to David
— and cedar trees and artificers of timber
and artificers of the stone for the wall;
and they build David a house:
and David perceives that Yah Veh
establishes him sovereign over Yisra El;
and that he lifts his sovereignty
for sake of his people Yisra El.
13 And David takes more concubines and women
from Yeru Shalem,
after coming from Hebron:
and sons and daughters are birthed to David.
14 And these are the names of those
birthed unto him in Yeru Shalem:
Shammuah and Shobab and Nathan and Shelomoh
and Yibchar and Eli Shua and Nepheg and Yaphia
and Eli Shama and El Ad and Eli Phelet.
17 And the Peleshethiy hear
that they anoint David sovereign over Yisra El,
all the Peleshethiy ascend to seek David;
and David hears thereof and descends to the hold:
and the Peleshethiy come
and disperse in the valley of Rephaim.
19 And David asks Yah Veh, saying,
Ascend I to the Peleshethiy?
Give you them into my hand?
And Yah Veh says to David, Ascend!
For in giving, I give the Peleshethiy into your hand.
20 And David comes to Baal Perasim,
and David smites them there, and says,
Yah Veh breaches my enemies at my face
as the breach of waters:
so he calls the name of that place
Baal Perasim/Baal Breach.
21 And there they leave their idols,
and David and his men lift them away:
and the Peleshethiy add to ascend
and to disperse in the valley of Rephaim.
23 And David asks of Yah Veh,
and he says, Ascend not;
but go around behind them,
and come upon them opposite the weepers:
and so be it,
when you hear the voice of marching
in the tops of the weepers,
then you point:
for then Yah Veh goes at your face,
to smite the camp of the Peleshethiy.
25 And thus David works as Yah Veh misvahs him;
and smites the Peleshethiy
from Geba until you come to Gezer.

2 SAMUEL 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

ARK BROUGHT TO YERU SHALEM

6 Again, David gathered together **added to gather**
all the chosen *men of Israel* **Yisra El**, thirty thousand.
2 And David arose, and went with all the people
that were with him from Baale of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
to bring up **ascend** from thence the ark of God **Elohim**,
whose name is called by the name of
the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
that dwelleth **settleth**
between **upon** the *cherubims* **cherubim**.
3 And they set **rode** the ark of God **Elohim**
upon a new cart **wagon**,
and brought **lifted** it out
of the house of *Abinadab* **Abi Nadab**
that was in *Gibeah* **Gibah**:
and Uzzah and *Ahio* **Achyó**,
the sons of *Abinadab* **Abi Nadab**,
drove the new cart **wagon**.
4 And they brought **lifted** it out
of the house of *Abinadab* **Abi Nadab**
which was at *Gibeah* **Gibah**,
accompanying the ark of God **Elohim**:
and *Ahio* went before **Achyó walked at the face of** the ark.
5 And David and all the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
played entertained
before the *LORD at the face of* **Yah Veh**
on all manner of
instruments made of fir wood **cypress timber**,
even on harps, and on *psalteries* **bagpipes**,
and on *timbrels* **tambourines**, and on *cornets* **sistrums**,
and on cymbals.
6 And when they came
to Nachon's threshingfloor,
Uzzah put sent forth his hand to the ark of God **Elohim**,
and took hold of it; for the oxen *shook* **released** it.
7 And the anger **wrath of the LORD **Yah Veh**
was kindled against Uzzah;
and God **Elohim** smote him there for his *error* **deception**;
and there he died by the ark of God **Elohim**.
8 And David was *displeased* **inflamed**,
because the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
had made **breached** a breach upon Uzzah:
and he called the name of the place
Perezuzzah **Peres Uzzah** to this day.
9 And David
was afraid of the *LORD* **awed of Yah Veh** that day,
and said,
How shall the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** come to me?
10 So David would **willed to not remove** **turn aside**
the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** unto him
into the city of David:
but David *carried aside* **spread** it into
the house of *Obededom* **Obed Edom the Gittite** **Gittiy**.
11 And the ark of the *LORD* **continued** **Yah Veh settled**
in the house of *Obededom* **Obed Edom the Gittite** **Gittiy**
three months:
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** blessed *Obededom* **Obed Edom**,
and all his household.
12 And it was told king **sovereign** David, saying,
The LORD **Yah Veh** hath blessed
the house of *Obededom* **Obed Edom**,
and all that *pertaineth* **be** unto him,
because of the ark of God **Elohim**.
So David went
and brought up **ascended** the ark of God **Elohim**
from the house of *Obededom* **Obed Edom**
into the city of David with *gladness* **cheerfulness**.
13 And it was so **became**,
that when they that bare the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
had gone **paced** six paces, he sacrificed oxen and fatlings.
14 And David *danced* **twirled**
before the *LORD at the face of* **Yah Veh**
with all *his might* **strength**;
and David was girded with a linen ephod.
15 So David and all the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
brought up **ascended** the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
with shouting,
and with the *sound* **voice** of the *trumpet* **shophar**.**

2 SHEMU EL 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

ARK BROUGHT TO YERU SHALEM

6 And David adds to gather
all the chosen of *Yisra El* — thirty thousand:
2 and David rises with all the people with him
and goes from Baal *Yah Hudah*;
to ascend the ark of *Elohim* from there
— which is called by the Name
— the Name, *Yah Veh Sabaoth*
— that settles upon the cherubim.
3 And they ride the ark of *Elohim* on a new wagon;
and lift it from the house of *Abi Nadab* in *Gibah*:
and *Uzzah* and *Achyó* the sons of *Abi Nadab*
drive the new wagon:
4 and they lift it
from the house of *Abi Nadab* at *Gibah*,
and accompany the ark of *Elohim*:
and *Achyó* walks at the face of the ark.
5 And David and all the house of *Yisra El*
entertain at the face of *Yah Veh*
on all manner of cypress timber
— on harps and on bagpipes
and on tambourines and on sistrums and on cymbals.
6 And they come to the threshingfloor of *Nachon*;
and *Uzzah* sends to the ark of *Elohim* and holds it;
for the oxen had released it:
7 and *Yah Veh* kindles his wrath against *Uzzah*;
and *Elohim* smites him there for his deception;
and there he dies by the ark of *Elohim*.
8 And David inflames,
because *Yah Veh* breaches a breach on *Uzzah*:
and he calls the name of the place
Peres Uzzah/Breach of Strength to this day.
9 And David awes *Yah Veh* that day and says,
How comes the ark of *Yah Veh* to me?
10 And David wills to not turn aside
the ark of *Yah Veh* to him to the city of David:
and David spreads it
to the house of *Obed Edom* the *Gittiy*:
and the ark of *Yah Veh*
settles in the house of *Obed Edom* the *Gittiy*
three months:
and *Yah Veh* blesses *Obed Edom* and all his house.
12 And they tell sovereign David, saying,
Yah Veh blesses the house of *Obed Edom*
and all he has
because of the ark of *Elohim*.
— and David goes and ascends the ark of *Elohim*
from the house of *Obed Edom*
to the city of David with cheerfulness.
13 And so be it,
they who bear the ark of *Yah Veh* pace six paces
and he sacrifices oxen and fatlings:
14 and David twirls at the face of *Yah Veh*
with all strength;
and David girts with a linen ephod:
15 and David and all the house of *Yisra El*
ascend the ark of *Yah Veh* with shouting
and with the voice of the shophar.

2 SAMUEL 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 And as the ark of the **LORD Yah Veh** came into the city of David, Michal *Saul's* **Shaul's** daughter looked through a window, and saw *king* **sovereign** David leaping and *dancing* **twirling** before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**; and she despised him in her heart.

17 And they brought in the ark of the **LORD Yah Veh**, and set it in his place, in the midst of the *tabernacle* **tent** that David had *pitched* **spread** for it: and David *offered burnt offerings* **holocausted holocausts** and *peace offerings* **shelamim** before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**.

18 And as soon as David had made an end of *finished* **offering burnt offerings holocausting holocausts** and *peace offerings* **shelamim**, he blessed the people in the name of the **LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth**.

19 And he *dealt* **allotted** among all the people, even among the whole multitude of *Israel* **Yisra El**, as well to the women as men, to every *one* a **man one** cake of bread, and a *good piece* **one portion** of flesh, and a *flagon* **one cake** of wine bread. So all the people *departed* **went** every *one* **each man** to his house.

20 Then David returned to bless his household. And Michal the daughter of *Saul* **Shaul** came out **went** to meet David, and said, How *glorious* **honourable** was the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El** to day, who *uncovered* **exposed** himself to day in the eyes of the *handmaids* **maids** of his servants, as one of the vain *fellows* shamelessly uncovereth himself!

21 And David said unto Michal, It was before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**, which chose me before **at the face of** thy father, and before **at the face of** all his house, to *appoint* **misvah** me *ruler* **eminent** over the people of the **LORD Yah Veh**, over *Israel* **Yisra El**: therefore *will* **shall** I *play* **entertain** before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**.

22 And I *will* **shall** yet be more *vile* **abased** than thus, and *will* **shall** be *base* **lowly** in mine own *sight* **eyes**: and of the *maidservants* **maids** which thou hast *spoken of* **said**, of them shall I be *had in honour* **honoured**.

23 Therefore Michal the daughter of *Saul* **Shaul** had no child unto the day of her death.

THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

7 And **so be** it came to pass, when the *king* **sat** **sovereign settled** in his house, and the **LORD Yah Veh** had given him rest round about from all his enemies;

2 That the *king* **sovereign** said unto Nathan the prophet, See now, I *dwelt* **settle** in an house of cedar, but the ark of *God* **Elohim** dwelleth **settlet**h within curtains.

3 And Nathan said to the *king* **sovereign**, Go, do **work** all that is in thine heart; for the **LORD Yah Veh** is with thee.

4 And **so be** it came to pass, that night, that the word of the **LORD Yah Veh** came unto Nathan, saying,

5 Go and *tell* **say** to my servant David, Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**, Shalt thou build me an house for me to *dwelt* **settle** in? Whereas I have not *dwelt* **settled** in any a house since **from the time** **day** that I *brought up* **ascended** the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**, even to this day, but have walked in a tent and in a tabernacle.

7 In all the *places* wherein I have walked with all the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** *spake* **worded** I a word with any **one** of the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,

2 SHEMU EL 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 And as the ark of Yah Veh comes to the city of David, Michal the daughter of Shaul looks through a window and sees sovereign David leaping and twirling at the face of Yah Veh: and she despises him in her heart.

17 And they bring the ark of Yah Veh and set it in place midst the tent David spread for it: and David holocausts holocausts and shelamim at the face of Yah Veh: and as soon as David finishes holocausting holocausts and shelamim, he blesses the people in the name of Yah Veh Sabaoth: and he allots among all the people — among the whole multitude of Yisra El as well to the women as men — to every man one cake of bread and one portion and one cake of fig. — and all the people go — each man to his house.

20 And David returns to bless his household: and Michal the daughter of Shaul goes to meet David and says, How honorable — the sovereign of Yisra El today, who exposes himself today in the eyes of the maids of his servants as one of the vain shamelessly uncovers himself!

21 And David says to Michal, It is at the face of Yah Veh who chose me at the face of your father and at the face of all his house, to misvah me eminent over the people of Yah Veh — over Yisra El: therefore I entertain at the face of Yah Veh: and I abase more than this — lowly in my own eyes: and the maids of which you say, of them I am honored.

23 As for Michal the daughter of Shaul, she has no child to the day of her death.

THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

7 And so be it, the sovereign settles in his house; and Yah Veh gives him rest all around from all his enemies.

2 And the sovereign says to Nathan the prophet, See, I pray you, I settle in a house of cedar, but the ark of Elohim settles within curtains.

3 And Nathan says to the sovereign, Go, work all that is in your heart; for Yah Veh is with you.

4 And so be it, that night, the word of Yah Veh comes to Nathan, saying,

5 Go and say to my servant David, Thus says Yah Veh, You — build me a house to settle in? I settled not in a house from the day I ascended the sons of Yisra El from Misrayim even to this day; and walked in a tent and in a tabernacle.

7 In all wherein I walked with all the sons of Yisra El worded I a word with one of the scions of Yisra El,

2 SAMUEL 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

whom I commanded **misvahed**
to feed **tend** my people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
saying, Why build ye not me an house of cedar?
YAH VEH SABAOTH CUTS A COVENANT WITH DAVID
Now therefore
so **thus** shalt thou say unto my servant David,
Thus saith the *LORD* of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
I took thee from the *sheepcote* **habitation of rest**,
from following **after** the *sheep* **flock**,
to be ruler **eminent** over my people, over *Israel* **Yisra El**:
And I was with thee whithersoever thou wentest,
and have cut off all thine enemies
out of **from** thy *sight* **face**,
and have made **worked** thee a great name,
like unto the name of the great *men* that are in the earth.
Moreover I will appoint **shall set** a place
for my people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and will **shall** plant them,
that they may dwell **tabernacle** in a place of their own,
and move **quiver** no more;
neither shall the *children* **sons** of wickedness
afflict **add to abase** them *any more*,
as *beforetime* **formerly**,
And as *since* **from** the *time* **day**
that I commanded **misvahed** judges
to be over my people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and have caused thee to rest from all thine enemies.
Also the *LORD* **Yah Veh** telleth thee
that he will make **shall work** thee an house.
And when thy days be fulfilled,
and thou shalt sleep **lie down** with thy fathers,
I will set up **shall raise** thy seed after thee,
which shall *proceed* **go** out of thy *bowels* **inwards**,
and I will **shall** establish his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
He shall build an house for my name,
and I will *stablish* **shall establish** the throne
of his *kingdom* **for ever** **sovereigndom** **eternally**.
I will **shall** be *his* **for him**, father,
and he shall be *my* **for me**, son.
If he *commit iniquity* **pervert**,
I will *chasten* **shall reprove** him
with the *rod* **scion** of men,
and with the *stripes* **plagues**
of the *children* **sons** of men **humanity**:
But my mercy
shall not *depart away* **turn aside** from him,
as I *took* **turned** it **aside** from *Saul* **Shaul**,
whom I *put away before thee* **turned aside from thy face**.
And thine house and thy *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
shall be *established for ever* **permanent** **eternally**
before thee **at thy face**:
thy throne shall be *established for ever* **eternally**.
According to all these words,
and according to all this vision,
so did Nathan *speak* **word** unto David.
A PRAYER OF DAVID
Then went *king* **sovereign** David in,
and *sat before the LORD* **settled at the face of Yah Veh**,
and he said, Who am I, O *Lord* **GOD** **Adonay Yah Veh**?
and what is my house, that thou hast brought me hitherto?
And this was yet a *small thing* **little** in thy *sight* **eyes**,
O *Lord* **GOD** **Adonay Yah Veh**;
but thou hast *spoken* **worded** also of thy servant's house
for a great while **to come** **afar off**.
And is this the *manner* **torah** of *man* **humanity**,
O *Lord* **GOD** **Adonay Yah Veh**?
And what *can* **addeth** David
say more **to word** unto thee?
for thou, *Lord* **GOD** **Adonay Yah Veh**,
knowest thy servant.
For thy word's sake, and according to thine own heart,
hast thou *done* **worked** all these *great things* **greatnesses**,
to make thy servant know them.
Wherefore thou art great,
O *LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim**:
for there is none like thee,
neither is *be* there *any* **God** **elohim** beside thee,
according to all that we have heard with our ears.

2 SHEMU EL 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

whom I misvahed to tend my people Yisra El,
saying, Why not build me a house of cedar?
YAH VEH SABAOTH CUTS A COVENANT WITH DAVID
Now say thus to my servant David,
Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
I took you from the habitation of rest
— from after the flock to be eminent over my people
— over Yisra El:
and I am with you wherever you go;
and cut off all your enemies from your face:
and work you a great name
as the name of the great in the earth:
and I set a place for my people Yisra El
and plant them to tabernacle in their own place
that they neither quiver any more
nor that the sons of wickedness add to abase them
— as formerly
— as from the day I misvahed judges
to be over my people Yisra El
and rested you from all your enemies:
and Yah Veh tells you that he works you a house.
And when your days fulfill
and you lie down with your fathers,
I raise your seed after you
who come from your inwards;
and I establish his sovereigndom:
he builds a house for my name
and I establish the throne of his sovereigndom
eternally.
I become to him, father
and he becomes to me, son.
If he perverts,
I reprove him with the scion of men
and with the plagues of the sons of humanity:
but my mercy turns not aside from him
as I turned it aside from Shaul
— whom I turned aside from your face:
and your house and your sovereigndom
are permanent — eternally at your face:
your throne is established eternally.
— according to all these words
and according to all this vision,
Nathan worded to David.
A PRAYER OF DAVID
Then sovereign David goes in
and settles at the face of Yah Veh
and he says, Who am I, O Adonay Yah Veh?
What is my house, that you bring me here?
And this is yet little in your eyes,
O Adonay Yah Veh;
and you also word
of the house of your servant afar off.
And is this the torah of humanity,
O Adonay Yah Veh?
What adds David to word to you?
For you, Adonay Yah Veh, know your servant:
for sake of your word
and according to your own heart
you worked all these greatnesses
— so that your servant knows them.
Therefore you are great, O Yah Veh Elohim:
for there is none like you — no elohim beside you
according to all we hear with our ears.

2 SAMUEL 7, 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

23 And what one *nation* **goyim** in the earth
is *like* as thy people, *even like Israel* as **Yisra El**,
whom *God* **Elohim** went to redeem
for a people to himself,
and to *make* **set** him a name,
and to *do* **work** for you great *things* and *terrible* **awesome**,
for thy land, *before* **at the face** of thy people,
which thou redeemedst to thee from *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
from the *nations* **goyim** and their *gods* **elohim**?
24 For thou hast *confirmed* **established** to thyself
thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**
to be a people unto thee *for ever* **eternally**:
and thou, *LORD* **Yah Veh**, art become their *God* **Elohim**.
25 And now, O *LORD* *God* **Yah Veh Elohim**,
the word that thou hast *spoken* **worded**
concerning thy servant,
and concerning his house,
establish **raise** it *for ever* **eternally**,
and *do* **work** as thou hast *said* **worded**.
26 And let thy name
be *magnified* for ever **greatened eternally**, saying,
The LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
is *the God* **Elohim** over *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and let the house of thy servant David
be established *before thee* **at thy face**.
27 For thou, O *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
God **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
hast *revealed* to **exposed in the ear** of thy servant, saying,
I *will* **shall** build thee an house:
therefore hath thy servant found in his heart
to pray this prayer unto thee.
28 And now, O *Lord* *GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**,
thou art that *God* **Elohim**, and thy words be true,
and thou hast *promised* **worded** this goodness
unto thy servant:
29 Therefore now *let it please thee* **mayest thou will**
to bless the house of thy servant,
that it may continue *for ever* **eternally**
before thee **at thy face**:
for thou, O *Lord* *GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**,
hast *spoken* **worded** it:
and with thy blessing let the house of thy servant
be blessed *for ever* **eternally**.

THE TRIUMPHS OF DAVID

8 And after this **so be** it *came* to *pass*,
that David smote the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and subdued them:
and David took *Methegammah* **Metheg Ha Ammah**
out of the hand of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
2 And he smote Moab, and measured them with a line,
casting **making** them **lie** down to the *ground* **earth**;
even with two lines measured he to *put to death* **deathify**,
and with one full line to keep alive.
And so the *Moabites* **Moabiy** became David's servants,
and *brought gifts* **lifted offerings**.
3 David smote also *Hadadezer* **Hadad Ezer**,
the son of *Rehob* **Rechob**, *king* **sovereign** of *Zobah* **Sobah**,
as he went to *recover* **turn back** his *border* **hand**
at the river Euphrates.
4 And David *took* **captured** from him a thousand *chariots*,
and seven hundred *horsemen* **cavalry**,
and twenty thousand *footmen* **men on foot**:
and David *houghed* **uprooted/hamstrung**
all the *chariot horses*,
but *reserved* **remained** of them *for* an hundred chariots.
5 And when the *Syrians* **Aramiy** of *Damascus* **Dammeseq**
came to *succour* *Hadadezer* **help Hadad Ezer**,
king **sovereign** of *Zobah* **Sobah**,
David *slew* **smote** of the *Syrians* **Aramiy**
two and twenty thousand men.
6 Then David *put* **garrisons** **set stations**
in *Syria* **Aram** of *Damascus* **Dammeseq**:
and the *Syrians* **Aramiy** became servants to David,
and *brought gifts* **lifted offerings**.
And the *LORD* *preserved* **Yah Veh saved** David
whithersoever he went.
7 And David took the shields of gold
that were on the servants of *Hadadezer* **Hadad Ezer**,

2 SHEMU EL 7, 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

23 And what one goyim in the earth is as your people
— as Yisra El,
whom Elohim comes to redeem
— a people to himself;
— to set him a name
and to work for you
great and awesome for your land
at the face of your people
whom you redeemed to yourself from Misrayim
— from the goyim and their elohim?
24 Yes, you establish your people Yisra El to yourself
to become your people eternally:
and you, Yah Veh, to become their Elohim.
25 And now, O Yah Veh Elohim,
the word you word
concerning your servant and concerning his house,
raise it eternally and work as you word.
26 And greaten your name eternally, saying,
Yah Veh Sabaoth — Elohim over Yisra El:
and establish the house of your servant David
at your face.
27 For you, O Yah Veh Sabaoth, Elohim of Yisra El,
exposed in the ear of your servant, saying,
I build you a house:
therefore your servant finds in his heart
to pray this prayer to you.
28 And now, O Adonay Yah Veh,
you are that Elohim and your words are true
and you word this goodness to your servant:
and now,
29 may you will to bless the house of your servant,
to continue eternally at your face:
for you, O Adonay Yah Veh, worded:
and with your blessing
bless the house of your servant eternally.

THE TRIUMPHS OF DAVID

8 And so be it, afterward,
David smites the Peleshethiy and subdues them:
and David takes Metheg Ha Ammah
from the hand of the Peleshethiy:
2 and he smites Moab and measures them with a line,
having them lie down to the earth;
and he measures two lines to deathify
and with one full line to live.
And the Moabiy become servants of David
to lift offerings.
3 And David smites Hadad Ezer
the son of Rehob sovereign of Sobah
as he goes to turn back his hand
at the river Euphrates:
4 and David captures from him
a thousand and seven hundred cavalry
and twenty thousand men on foot:
and David uproots/hamstrings all the chariots;
only, a hundred of their chariots remain.
5 And when the Aramiy of Dammeseq
come to help Hadad Ezer sovereign of Sobah,
David smites of the Aramiy
twenty—two thousand men:
6 and David sets stations in Aram of Dammeseq:
and the Aramiy become servants to David
to lift offerings.
And Yah Veh saves David wherever he goes.
7 And David takes the shields of gold
on the servants of Hadad Ezer

2 SAMUEL 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 and brought them to Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**.
And from *Betah* **Betach**, and from Berothai,
cities of *Hadadezer* **Hadad Ezer**,
king **sovereign** David took
exceeding much brass **mighty abounding copper**.
9 When *Toi* king **sovereign** of Hamath
heard that David had smitten all the *host* **valiant**
of *Hadadezer* **Hadad Ezer**,
10 Then *Toi* sent *Joram* **Yah Ram** his son
unto king **sovereign** David,
to salute ask **shalom** of him, and to bless him,
because he had fought against *Hadadezer* **Hadad Ezer**,
and smitten him:
for *Hadadezer* **Hadad Ezer**
had **been a man of** wars with *Toi*.
And *Joram* brought with him in his hand were
vessels **instruments** of silver,
and vessels **instruments** of gold,
and vessels **instruments** of brass **copper**:
11 Which also king **sovereign** David
did dedicate **hallowed** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
with the silver and gold that he had *dedicated* **hallowed**
of all *nations* **goyim** which he subdued;
12 Of *Syria* **Aram**, and of Moab,
and of the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
and of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**, and of *Amalek* **Amaleq**,
and of the spoil of *Hadadezer* **Hadad Ezer**,
son of *Rehob* **Rechob**, king **sovereign** of *Zobah* **Sobah**.
13 And David *gat* **worked** him a name
when he returned from smiting of the *Syrians* **Aramiy**
in the *valley of salt* **Valley of Salt/Gay Melach**,
being eighteen thousand *men*.
14 And he *put* **garrisons set stations** in Edom;
throughout all Edom *put* **set** he *garrisons* **stations**,
and all they of Edom became David's servants.
And the *LORD* **preserved** **Yah Veh saved** David
whithersoever he went.
15 And David reigned over all *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and David *executed* **worked** judgment and *justice* **justness**
unto all his people.
16 And *Joab* **Yah Ab** the son of *Zeruyah* **Seruyah**
was over the host;
and *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat** the son of *Ahilud* **Achiy Lud**
was *recorder* **remembrancer**;
17 And *Zadok* **Sadoq** the son of *Ahitub* **Achiy Tub**,
and *Ahimelech* **Achiy Melech**
the son of *Abiathar* **Abi Athar**, were the priests;
and *Seraiah* **Sera Yah** was the scribe;
18 And *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**
was over both the *Cherethites* **executioners**
and the *Pelethites* **couriers**;
and David's sons were *chief rulers* **priests**.

THE MERCY OF DAVID

9 And David said, Is there yet any that *is left* **remain**
of the house of *Saul* **Shaul**,
that I may *shew* **work** him *kindness* **mercy**
for *Jonathan's* **Yah Nathan's** sake?
2 And there was of the house of *Saul* **Shaul** a servant
whose name was *Ziba* **Siba**.
And when they had called him unto David,
the king **sovereign** said unto him, Art thou *Ziba* **Siba**?
And he said, Thy servant *is* **he**.
3 And the king **sovereign** said,
Is there *not yet any* **finally**
a man of the house of *Saul* **Shaul**,
that I may *shew* **work** the *kindness* **mercy** of *God* **Elohim**
unto him?
And *Ziba* **Siba** said unto the king **sovereign**,
Jonathan **Yah Nathan** hath yet a son,
which is lame on his **with smitten** feet.
4 And the king **sovereign** said unto him, Where is he?
And *Ziba* **Siba** said unto the king **sovereign**, Behold,
he is in the house of *Machir*,
the son of *Ammiel* **Ammi El**, in *Lodebar* **Lo Debar**.
5 Then king **sovereign** David sent,
and *fetches* **took** him out of the house of *Machir*,
the son of *Ammiel* **Ammi El**, from *Lodebar* **Lo Debar**.
6 Now when *Mephibosheth* **Mephi Bosheth**,

2 SHEMU EL 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 and brings them to *Yeru Shalem*:
and from *Betach* and from Berothai
cities of *Hadad Ezer*
sovereign David takes mighty abounding copper.
9 And *Toi* **sovereign** of Hamath hears
that David smites all the *valiant* of *Hadad Ezer*,
and *Toi* sends *Yah Ram* his son to **sovereign** David,
to ask *shalom* of him and to bless him,
because he had fought against *Hadad Ezer*
and smote him
— for *Hadad Ezer* was a man of wars with *Toi*.
11 And in his hand are instruments of silver
and instruments of gold and instruments of copper:
which **sovereign** David also hallowed to *Yah Veh*,
with the silver and gold he hallowed
of all *goyim* he subdued
12 — of *Aram* and of *Moab* and of the sons of *Ammon*
and of the *Peleshethiy* and of *Amaleq*
and of the spoil of *Hadad Ezer*
son of *Rechob* **sovereign** of *Sobah*.
13 And David works himself a name
when he returns
from smiting eighteen thousand *Aramiy*
in *Gay Melach/Valley of Salt*:
and he sets stations in Edom
14 — he sets stations throughout all Edom
and all they of Edom become servants of David:
and *Yah Veh* saves David wherever he goes:
and David reigns over all *Yisra El*;
and David works judgment and justness
to all his people.
16 And *Yah Ab* the son of *Seruyah*
is over the host;
and *Yah Shaphat* the son of *Achiy Lud*
is remembrancer;
and *Sadoq* the son of *Achiy Tub*
and *Achiy Melech* the son of *Abi Athar* are priests;
and *Sera Yah* is the scribe;
and *Bena Yah* the son of *Yah Yada*
is over both the executioners and the couriers;
and the sons of David are priests.

THE MERCY OF DAVID

9 And David says,
Remain there yet any of the house of *Shaul*
to work mercy for sake of *Yah Nathan*?
2 And there is a servant of the house of *Shaul*;
his name *is* **Siba**:
and they call him to David,
and the **sovereign** says to him, Are you *Siba*?
and the **sovereign** says to him, Are you *Siba*?

And he says, Your servant.

3 And the **sovereign** says,
Is there finally a man of the house of *Shaul*
to whom I work the mercy of *Elohim*?

And *Siba* says to the **sovereign**,
Yah Nathan has yet a son with smitten feet.

4 And the **sovereign** says to him, Where is he?

And *Siba* says to the **sovereign**, Behold,
he is in the house of *Machir* the son of *Ammi El*
in *Lo Debar*.

5 Then **sovereign** David sends and takes him
from the house of *Machir* the son of *Ammi El*
from *Lo Debar*.

6 And *Mephi Bosheth*

2 SAMUEL 9, 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

the son of Jonathan **Yah Nathan**, the son of *Saul/Shaul*,
was come unto David,
he fell on his face, and *did reverence* **prostrated**.
And David said, *Mephibosheth* **Mephi Bosheth**.
And he *answered said*, Behold thy servant!
7 And David said unto him, *Fear* **Awe** not:
for **in working**,
I *will surely shew* **shall work** thee *kindness* **mercy**
for Jonathan **Yah Nathan** thy father's sake,
and *will* **shall** restore thee
all the *land* **field** of *Saul/Shaul* thy father;
and thou shalt eat bread at my table continually.
8 And he *bowed* **prostrated** himself, and said,
What is thy servant,
that thou shouldst *look upon* **face**
such a dead dog as I am?
9 Then the *king* **sovereign** called to *Ziba* **Siba**,
Saul's servant **Shaul's lad**, and said unto him,
I have given unto thy *master's* **adoni's** son
all that *pertained* **became** to *Saul/Shaul*
and to all his house.
10 Thou therefore, and thy sons, and thy servants,
shall *till* **serve** the *land* **soil** for him,
and thou shalt bring in *the* **fruits**,
that thy *master's* **adoni's** son may have *food* **bread** to eat:
but *Mephibosheth* **Mephi Bosheth** thy *master's* **adoni's** son
shall eat bread *alway* **continually** at my table.
Now *Ziba* **Siba** had fifteen sons and twenty servants.
11 Then said *Ziba* **Siba** unto the *king* **sovereign**,
According to all that my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**
hath *commanded* **misvahed** his servant,
so **thus** shall thy servant *do* **work**.
As for *Mephibosheth* **Mephi Bosheth**, *said the king*,
he shall eat at my table,
as one of the *king's* **sovereign's** sons.
12 And *Mephibosheth* **Mephi Bosheth** had a young son,
whose name was *Micha* **Michah Yah**.
And all that *dwelt* **were seated** in the house of *Ziba* **Siba**
were servants unto *Mephibosheth* **Mephi Bosheth**.
13 So *Mephibosheth* **Mephi Bosheth**
dwelt settled in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
for he did eat continually at the *king's* **sovereign's** table;
and was lame on both his feet.

DAVID DEFEATS THE SONS OF AMMON AND THE ARAMIY

10 And **so be** it *came to pass*, after this,
that the *king* **sovereign**
of the *children* **sons** of Ammon died,
and Hanun his son reigned in his stead.
2 Then said David, I *will shew kindness* **shall work mercy**
unto Hanun the son of *Nahash* **Nachash**,
as his father *shewed kindness* **worked mercy** unto me.
And David sent to *comfort* **sigh over** him
by the hand of his servants for his father.
And David's servants
came into the land of the *children* **sons** of Ammon.
3 And the *princes* **governors**
of the *children* **sons** of Ammon
said unto Hanun their *lord* **adoni**,
Thinkst thou that **In thine eyes**
honoureth David *doth honour* thy father,
that he hath sent *comforters* unto **to sigh over** thee?
hath not David *rather* sent his servants unto thee,
so as to *search* **probe** the city, and to spy it out,
and to *overthrow* **overturn** it?
4 Wherefore Hanun took David's servants,
and shaved off the one half of their beards,
and cut off their garments in the middle,
even to their buttocks, and sent them away.
5 When they told it unto David, he sent to meet them,
because the men were *greatly* **mighty** ashamed:
and the *king* **sovereign** said, *Tarry* **Settle** at *Jericho* **Yericho**
until your beards *be grown* **sprout**, and *then* return.
6 And when the *children* **sons** of Ammon
saw that they stank *before* **to** David,

2 SHEMU EL 9, 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

the son of Yah Nathan the son of Shaul
comes to David;
and he falls on his face and prostrates.
And David says, Mephi Bosheth.
And he says, Behold, your servant!
7 And David says to him, Awe not:
for in working, I work you mercy
for sake of Yah Nathan your father;
and restore all the field of Shaul your father to you
— that you eat bread at my table continually.
8 And he prostrates himself and says,
What is your servant,
that you face such a dead dog as I?
9 Then the sovereign calls to Siba the lad of Shaul
and says to him,
All being to Shaul and to all his house
I give to the son of your adoni:
10 and you and your sons and your servants
serve the soil for him and bring in;
so that the son of your adoni has bread to eat:
but Mephi Bosheth the son of your adoni
eats bread at my table continually.
— and Siba has fifteen sons and twenty servants.
11 And Siba says to the sovereign,
According to all my adoni the sovereign
misvahs his servant,
thus your servant works.
As for Mephi Bosheth,
he eats at my table as one of the sons of the sovereign.
12 And Mephi Bosheth has a young son;
his name is Michah Yah.
And all who are seated in the house of Siba
are servants to Mephi Bosheth:
13 and Mephi Bosheth settles in Yeru Shalem
and eats continually at the table of the sovereign;
and is lame on both his feet.

DAVID DEFEATS THE SONS OF AMMON AND THE ARAMIY

10 And so be it, afterward,
the sovereign of the sons of Ammon dies
and Hanun his son reigns in his stead.
2 And David says,
I work mercy to Hanun the son of Nachash
as his father worked mercy to me.
And David sends to sigh over him
by the hand of his servants concerning his father:
and the servants of David
come into the land of the sons of Ammon.
3 And the governors of the sons of Ammon
say to Hanun their adoni,
In your eyes,
is it because David honors your father,
that he sends to sigh over you?
Sends not David his servants to you
to probe the city and to spy it out and to overturn it?
4 And Hanun takes the servants of David
and shaves off one half of their beards
and cuts off their garments in the middle
to their buttocks and sends them away.
5 And they tell David; and he sends to meet them;
because the men shame mightily.
And the sovereign says,
Settle at Yericho until your beards sprout and return.
6 And the sons of Ammon see that they stink to David;

2 SAMUEL 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the children sons of Ammon sent
and hired the Syrians Aramiy of Bethrehob Beth Rechob
and the Syrians Aramiy of Zoba Sobah,
twenty thousand footmen on foot,
and of king sovereign Maachah a thousand men,
and of Ish Tob Ish Tob twelve thousand men.
7 And when David heard of it,
8 he sent Joab Yah Ab, and all the host of the mighty men.
And the children sons of Ammon came out went,
and put the battle in array lined up for war
at the entering in opening of the gate portal:
and the Syrians Aramiy of Zoba Sobah,
and of Rehob Rechob,
and Ish Tob Ish Tob, and Maachah,
were by themselves alone in the field.
9 When Joab Yah Ab saw
that the front face of the battle war was against him
before at their face and behind,
he chose of all the choice men chosen of Israel Yisra El,
and put lined them in array up
against to meet the Syrians Aramiy:
10 And the rest of the people he delivered gave
into the hand of Abishai Abi Shai his brother,
that he might put line them in array up
against to meet the children sons of Ammon.
11 And he said,
If the Syrians be too strong for Aramiy prevail over me,
then thou shalt help save me:
but if the children sons of Ammon
be too strong for prevail over thee,
then I will shall come and help save thee.
12 Be of good courage Strengthen,
and let us play the men — strengthen for our people,
and for the cities of our God Elohim:
and the LORD Yah Veh do that
which seemeth him be good in his eyes.
13 And Joab Yah Ab drew nigh,
and the people that were with him,
unto the battle war against the Syrians Aramiy:
and they fled before him from his face.
14 And when the children sons of Ammon
saw that the Syrians Aramiy were fled,
then fled they also
before Abishai from the face of Abi Shai,
and entered into the city.
So Joab Yah Ab
returned from the children sons of Ammon,
and came to Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.
15 And when the Syrians Aramiy
saw that they were smitten
before Israel at the face of Yisra El,
they gathered themselves together.
16 And Hadarezer Hadar Ezer sent,
and brought out the Syrians Aramiy
that were beyond the river:
and they came to Helam;
and Shobach
the captain governor of the host of Hadarezer Hadar Ezer
went before them from their face.
17 And when it was told David,
he gathered all Israel Yisra El together,
and passed over Jordan Yarden, and came to Helam.
And the Syrians Aramiy
set themselves in array against lined up to meet David,
and fought with him.
18 And the Syrians Aramiy
fled before Israel from the face of Yisra El;
and David slew slaughtered
the men of seven hundred chariots of the Syrians Arami,
and forty thousand horsemen cavalry,
and smote Shobach
the captain governor of their host, who died there.
19 And when all the kings sovereigns
that were servants to Hadarezer Hadar Ezer
saw that they were smitten
before Israel at the face of Yisra El,
they made peace did shalam with Israel Yisra El,
and served them.

2 SHEMU EL 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the sons of Ammon send and hire
the Aramiy of Beth Rechob and the Aramiy of Sobah
twenty thousand on foot;
and of sovereign Maachah a thousand men;
and of Ish Tob twelve thousand men:
7 and David hears
8 and sends Yah Ab and all the host of the mighty:
and the sons of Ammon come
and line up for war at the opening of the portal:
and the Aramiy of Sobah and of Rechob
and Ish Tob and Maachah are alone in the field.
9 And Yah Ab sees the face of the war is against him
— at their face and behind;
and he chooses from all the chosen of Yisra El
and lines them up to meet the Aramiy:
10 and he gives the rest of the people
into the hand of Abi Shai his brother,
to line them up to meet the sons of Ammon.
11 And he says,
If the Aramiy prevail over me, then you save me:
but if the sons of Ammon prevail over you,
then I come and save you.
12 Strengthen! — Strengthen for our people
and for the cities of our Elohim:
and Yah Veh works good in his eyes.
13 And Yah Ab and the people with him
draw near to the war against the Aramiy:
and they flee his face:
14 and the sons of Ammon see the Aramiy,
and they also flee the face of Abi Shai
and enter the city:
and Yah Ab returns from the sons of Ammon
and comes to Yeru Shalem.
15 And the Aramiy
see they are smitten at the face of Yisra El,
and they gather together:
16 and Hadar Ezer sends
and brings the Aramiy beyond the river:
and they come to Helam;
and Shobach the governor of the host of Hadar Ezer
goes from their face.
17 And they tell David,
and he gathers all Yisra El
and passes over Yarden and comes to Helam.
18 And the Aramiy line up to meet David and fight him:
and the Aramiy flee the face of Yisra El;
and David slaughters seven hundred chariots
and forty thousand cavalry of the Aramiy;
and smites Shobach the governor of their host
who dies there.
19 And all the sovereigns,
the servants to Hadar Ezer,
see they are smitten at the face of Yisra El;
and they shalam with Yisra El and serve them:

2 SAMUEL 10, 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

So the Syrians feared Aramiy awed
to help save the children sons of Ammon any more.

DAVID AND BATH SHEBA

11

And so be it came to pass,
after at the turn of the year was expired,
at the time when kings angels go forth to battle,
that David sent Joab Yah Ab, and his servants with him,
and all Israel Yisra El;
and they destroyed ruined the children sons of Ammon,
and besieged Rabbah.

But David tarried still settled at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.

2

And so be it came to pass,
in an eveningtide at evening time,
that David arose from off his bed,
and walked upon the roof of the king's sovereign's house:
and from the roof he saw a woman
washing baptizing herself;
and the woman

was very beautiful to look upon of mighty good visage.

3

And David sent and enquired after the woman.

And one said, Is not this Bathsheba Bath Sheba,
the daughter of Eliam Eli Am,

the wife woman of Uriah Uri Yah the Hittite Hethiy?

4

And David sent messengers angels, and took her;
and she came in unto him, and he lay with her;

for she was purified hallowed
from her uncleanness foulness:
and she returned unto her house.

5

And the woman conceived, and sent and told David,
and said, I am with child have conceived.

6

And David sent to Joab Yah Ab, saying,

Send me Uriah Uri Yah the Hittite Hethiy.

And Joab Yah Ab sent Uriah Uri Yah to David.

7

And when Uriah Uri Yah was come unto him,

David demanded asked of him

how Joab did of the shalom of Yah Ab,

and how of the shalom of the people did,

and how of the shalom of the war prospered.

8

And David said to Uriah Uri Yah,

Go down Descend to thy house,

and wash baptize thy feet.

And Uriah Uri Yah

departed went out of the king's sovereign's house,

and there followed went out after him

a mess of meat an exaltment from the king sovereign.

9

But Uriah slept Uri Yah laid

at the door portal of the king's sovereign's house

with all the servants of his lord adoni,

and went descended not down to his house.

10

And when they had told David, saying,

Uriah went Uri Yah descended not down unto his house,

David said unto Uriah Uri Yah,

Camest thou not from thy a journey?

why then didst thou not

go down descend unto thine house?

11

And Uriah Uri Yah said unto David,

The ark, and Israel Yisra El, and Judah Yah Hudah,

abide settle in tents sukkoth/brush arbors;

and my lord Joab adoni Yah Ab,

and the servants of my lord adoni,

are encamped in upon the open face of the fields;

shall I then go into mine house, to eat and to drink,

and to lie with my wife woman?

as thou livest, and as thy soul liveth,

I will shall not do this thing work such word.

12

And David said to Uriah Uri Yah,

Tarry Settle here to day also,

and to morrow I will let shall send thee depart away.

So Uriah abode Uri Yah settled in Jerusalem Yeru Shalem

that day, and the morrow.

13

And when David had called him,

he did eat and drink before him at his face;

and he made intoxicated him drunk:

and at even he went out to lie on his bed

with the servants of his lord adoni,

2 SHEMU EL 10, 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and the Aramiy awe
to save the sons of Ammon any more.

DAVID AND BATH SHEBA

11

And so be it, at the turn of the year,
at the time angels go forth,
David sends Yah Ab and his servants with him
and all Yisra El;
and they ruin the sons of Ammon
and besiege Rabbah:
and David settles at Yeru Shalem.

2

And so be it, at evening time,
David rises from his bed
and walks on the roof of the house of the sovereign:
and from the roof he sees a woman baptizing herself;
and the woman is of mighty good visage.

3

And David sends and enquires after the woman
and says,

Is not this Bath Sheba the daughter of Eli Am
the woman of Uri Yah the Hethiy?

4

And David sends angels and takes her;
and she comes in to him and he lies down with her;
and she hallows herself from her foulness
and returns to her house.

5

And the woman conceives
and sends and tells David and says, I conceive.

6

And David sends to Yah Ab,

Send me Uri Yah the Hethiy.

— and Yah Ab sends Uri Yah to David.

7

And Uri Yah comes to him,
and David asks of the shalom of Yah Ab
and of the shalom of the people
and of the shalom of the war.

8

And David says to Uri Yah,
Descend to your house and baptize your feet.
And Uri Yah goes from the house of the sovereign
and an exaltment from the sovereign goes after him:
and Uri Yah lies down

9

at the portal of the house of the sovereign
with all the servants of his adoni
and descends not to his house.

10

And they tell David, saying,
Uri Yah descends not to his house.

And David says to Uri Yah,
Came you not from a journey?
Why descend you not to your house?

11

And Uri Yah says to David,
The ark and Yisra El and Yah Hudah
settle in sukkoth/brush arbors;

and my adoni Yah Ab

and the servants of my adoni

encamp on the face of the fields:

and I — go I to my house,

to eat and to drink

and to lie down with my woman?

As you live and as your soul lives,

I work no such word.

12

And David says to Uri Yah,

Settle here today also

and tomorrow I send you away.

13

So Uri Yah settles in Yeru Shalem

that day and the morrow:

and David calls him,

and he eats and drinks at his face;

and he intoxicates him:

and at evening he goes out to lie down on his bed
with the servants of his adoni;

2 SAMUEL 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but went **descended** not down to his house.
14 And **so be** it came to pass, in the morning,
that David wrote **inscribed** a letter **scroll** to **Joab Yah Ab**,
and sent it by the hand of **Uriah Uri Yah**.
15 And he wrote **inscribed** in the letter **scroll**, saying,
Set **Give** ye **Uriah Uri Yah**
in the forefront **at the face**
of the **hottest battle strongest war**,
and **retire turn** ye **back** from **after** him,
that he may be smitten, and die.
16 And **so be** it came to pass,
when **Joab observed Yah Ab guarded** the city,
that he **assigned Uriah gave Uri Yah** unto a place
where he knew that valiant men were.
17 And the men of the city went out,
and fought with **Joab Yah Ab**:
and there fell *some* of the people of the servants of David;
and **Uriah Uri Yah** the **Hittite Hethiy** died also.
18 Then **Joab Yah Ab** sent and told David
all the **things words** concerning the war;
19 And **charged misvahed** the messenger **angel**, saying,
When thou hast **made an end of finished**
telling wording the **matters words** of the war
unto the **king sovereign**,
20 And if **so be** it **becometh**
that the **king's wrath arise sovereign's fury ascend**,
and he say unto thee,
Wherefore approached ye so nigh unto the city
when ye did fight?
knew ye not that they **would should** shoot from the wall?
21 Who smote **Abimelech Abi Melech**
the son of **Jerubbesheth Yerub Besheth**?
did not a woman cast a **piece slice** of a **an upper** millstone
upon him from the wall, that he died in **Thebez Tebes**?
why went **approached** ye **nigh** the wall?
then say thou,
Thy servant **Uriah Uri Yah** the **Hittite Hethiy**
is dead hath died also.
22 So the messenger **angel** went,
and came and **shewed told** David all
that **Joab Yah Ab** had sent him for.
23 And the messenger **angel** said unto David,
Surely the men prevailed **mightily** against us,
and **came out went** unto us into the field,
and we were upon them
even unto the **entering opening** of the **gate portal**.
24 And the shooters shot from off the wall
upon thy servants;
and some of the **king's sovereign's** servants **be dead died**,
and thy servant **Uriah Uri Yah** the **Hittite Hethiy**
is dead died also.
25 Then David said unto the messenger **angel**,
Thus shalt thou say unto **Joab Yah Ab**,
Let not this **thing displease thee word be evil in thine eyes**,
for the sword devoureth one *as well as another* **thus**:
make strengthen thy **battle more strong warfare**
against the city, and **overthrow demolish** it:
and **encourage strengthen** thou him.
26 And when the **wife woman** of **Uriah Uri Yah** heard
that **Uriah Uri Yah** her **husband was dead man died**,
she **mourned chopped** for her **husband master**.
27 And when the mourning was past,
David sent and **fetched gathered** her to his house,
and she became his **wife woman**,
and **bare birthed** him a son.
But the **thing word** that David had **done worked**
displeased the LORD was evil in the eyes of Yah Veh.

NATHAN REBUKES DAVID

12

And the **LORD Yah Veh** sent Nathan unto David.
And he came unto him, and said unto him,
There were two men in one city;
the one rich, and the **other poor one impoverished**.
2 The rich **man** had **exceeding many mighty abounding**
flocks and **herds oxen**:
3 But the **poor impoverished man** had **nothing naught**,
save one little ewe lamb,
which he had **bought chatted** and **nourished up livened**:
and it grew up together with him,
and with his **children sons**;

2 SHEMU EL 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

but he descends not to his house.
14 And so be it, in the morning,
David inscribes a scroll to Yah Ab
and sends it by the hand of Uri Yah:
15 and he inscribes in the scroll, saying,
Give Uri Yah at the face of the strongest war
and you turn back from after him
that he be smitten and die.
16 And so be it, Yah Ab guards the city;
and he gives Uri Yah to a place
where he knows there are valiant men:
17 and the men of the city go and fight Yah Ab:
and there fall of the people of the servants of David;
and Uri Yah the Hethiy also dies.
18 And Yah Ab sends and tells David
all the words concerning the war;
19 and misvahs the angel, saying,
When you finish wording the words of the war
to the sovereign,
20 and so be it, if the fury of the sovereign ascends,
and he says to you,
Why approached you so near the city to fight?
Know you not that they shoot from the wall?
21 Who smote Abi Melech the son of Yerub Besheth?
Cast not a woman a slice of an upper millstone
on him from the wall, that he died in Tebes?
Why approached you the wall?
— then you say,
Your servant Uri Yah the Hethiy also died.
22 And the angel goes and comes and tells David
all Yah Ab sent him for:
23 and the angel says to David,
Surely the men prevail mightily against us
and go to us into the field;
24 and we are on them even to the opening of the portal:
and the shooters shoot on your servants
from off the wall;
and some of the servants of the sovereign died
and your servant Uri Yah the Hethiy also died.
25 Then David says to the angel,
Say thus to Yah Ab,
This word is not evil in your eyes;
for thus the sword devours one:
strengthen your warfare against the city
and demolish it:
and you strengthen him.
26 And the woman of Uri Yah
hears her man Uri Yah died,
and chops for her master:
27 and the mourning passes,
and David sends and gathers her to his house;
and she becomes his woman and births him a son:
and the word David works
is evil in the eyes of Yah Veh.

NATHAN REBUKES DAVID

12

And Yah Veh sends Nathan to David:
and he comes to him and says to him,
Two men are in one city
— the one rich and the one impoverished:
2 the rich has mighty abundant flocks and oxen;
3 but the impoverished has naught
— except one little ewe lamb
which he chatted and livened:
and it grows together with him and with his sons:

2 SAMUEL 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

it did eat of his own *meat* morsel,
and drank of his own cup,
and lay in his bosom, and was unto him as a daughter.
4 And there came a *traveller wayfarer* unto the rich man,
and he spared
to take of his own flock and of his own *herd* oxen,
to *dress* work for the *wayfaring man* caravan
that was come unto him;
but took the *poor impoverished* man's ewe lamb,
and *dressed* worked it for the man that was come to him.
5 And David's anger was greatly *wrath* kindled *mightily*
against the man;
and he said to Nathan, *As the LORD Yah Veh* liveth,
the man that hath *done* worked this thing
shall surely die is a son of death:
6 And he shall *restore* shalam
for the *ewe* lamb fourfold,
because he *did* worked this thing word,
and *because* finally, he had no *pity* compassion.
7 And Nathan said to David, Thou art the man.
Thus saith *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El*,
I anointed thee *king* sovereign over *Israel Yisra El*,
and I *delivered* rescued thee out of the hand of *Saul Shaul*;
8 And I gave thee thy *master's* adoni's house,
and thy *master's* wives *adoni's* women into thy bosom,
and gave thee
the house of *Israel Yisra El* and of *Judah Yah Hudah*;
and if that had been too little,
I *would moreover* have given *had added* unto thee
such these and *such* those things.
9 Wherefore hast thou despised
the *commandment* word of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
to *do* work evil in his *sight* eyes?
thou hast *killed* smitten
Uriah Uri Yah the *Hittite* Hethiy with the sword,
and hast taken his *wife* woman to be thy *wife* woman,
and hast *slain* slaughtered him
with the sword of the *children* sons of Ammon.
10 Now therefore the sword
shall *never* depart *not turn aside* eternally
from thine house;
because finally, thou hast despised me,
and hast taken the *wife* woman
of *Uriah Uri Yah* the *Hittite* Hethiy
to be thy *wife* woman.
11 Thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*, Behold,
I *will* shall raise up evil against thee
out of thine own house,
and I *will* shall take thy *wives* women
before in front of thine eyes,
and give them unto thy *neighbour* friend,
and he shall lie with thy *wives* women
in the *sight* eyes of this sun.
12 For thou *didst* workedst it *secretly* covertly:
but I *will* do shall work this thing word
before in front of all *Israel Yisra El*,
and *before* in front of the sun.
13 And David said unto Nathan,
I have sinned against *the LORD Yah Veh*.
And Nathan said unto David,
The LORD Yah Veh also hath *put away* passed over thy sin;
thou shalt not die.
14 *Howbeit* Finally,
because by this *deed* word thou hast given great occasion
to the enemies of *the LORD Yah Veh* to *blaspheme* scorn,
the *child* son also that is *born* birthed unto thee
in *dying*, shall *surely* die.
15 And Nathan *departed* went unto his house.
And *the LORD* struck *Yah Veh* smote the child
that *Uriah's* wife bare *Uri Yah's* woman birthed unto David,
and it was very sick.
16 David therefore besought *God* Elohim for the *child* lad;
and David fasted *a* fast, and went in,
and *lay* all night stayed overnight upon the earth.
17 And the elders of his house arose, and went to him,
to raise him up from the earth: but he *would* willed not,
neither did he eat *chew* bread with them.

2 SHEMU EL 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

it eats of his own morsel and drinks of his own cup
and lies down in his bosom as his daughter.
4 And a wayfarer comes to the rich man;
and he spares
to take of his own flock and of his own oxen,
to work for the caravan that comes to him:
but takes the ewe lamb of the impoverished man
and works it for the man who comes to him.
5 And David kindles his wrath mightily
against the man;
and he says to Nathan, Yah Veh lives!
The man who works this is a son of death:
6 and have him shalam fourfold for the ewe lamb
because he works this word,
and finally, has no compassion.
7 And Nathan says to David, You are the man!
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
I anointed you sovereign over Yisra El
and I rescued you from the hand of Shaul;
8 and I give you the house of your adoni
and the women of your adoni into your bosom
and give you the house of Yisra El and of Yah Hudah;
and if that be too little,
I had added these and those to you.
9 Why despise you the word of Yah Veh
to work evil in his eyes?
You smote Uri Yah the Hethiy with the sword
and took his woman to be your woman
and slaughtered him with the sword
by the sons of Ammon:
10 and now the sword
turns not aside from your house eternally;
finally, you despised me
and took the woman of Uri Yah the Hethiy
to be your woman.
11 Thus says Yah Veh, Behold,
I raise evil against you from your own house
and I take your women in front of your eyes
and give them to your friend:
to lie down with your women in the eyes of this sun.
12 For you worked covertly:
but I work this word
in front of all Yisra El and in front of the sun.
13 And David says to Nathan,
I sinned against Yah Veh.
And Nathan says to David,
Yah Veh also passes over your sin that you not die.
14 Only, because by this word
you give the enemies of Yah Veh
great occasion to scorn;
and in dying, the son birthed to you dies.
15 — and Nathan goes to his house.
And Yah Veh smites the child
the woman of Uri Yah births to David
and it becomes very sick:
16 and David beseeches Elohim for the lad;
and David fasts a fast;
and goes in and stays overnight on the earth.
17 And the elders of his house rise to him,
to raise him off the earth:
but he neither wills nor chews bread with them.

2 SAMUEL 12, 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 And **so be** it *came to pass*, on the seventh day,
that the child died.
And the servants of David
feared **awed** to tell him that the child *was dead* **died**:
for they said, Behold,
while the child was yet alive, we *spake* **worded** unto him,
and he *would* **hearkened** not *hearken* unto our voice:
how *will* **shall** he then *vex himself* **work himself evil**,
if we *tell* **say** to him that the child *is dead* **died**?
19 But when David saw
that his servants *whispered* **enchanted**,
David *perceived* **discerned** that the child *was dead* **died**:
therefore David said unto his servants,
Is **Hath** the child *dead* **died**?
And they said, *He is dead* **Died**.
20 Then David arose from the earth,
and *washed* **baptized**, and anointed *himself*,
and *changed* **passed** his *apparel* **clothes**,
and came into the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *worshipped* **prostrated**:
then he came to his own house;
and when he *required* **asked**,
they set bread *before* **in front of** him,
and he did eat.
21 Then said his servants unto him,
What *thing* word is this that thou hast *done* **worked**?
thou didst fast and weep for the child,
while it was **being** alive;
but when the child *was dead* **died**,
thou didst rise and eat bread.
22 And he said, While the child was yet alive,
I fasted and wept:
for I said, Who *can tell* **knoweth** whether *GOD* **Yah Veh**
will be gracious to me **shall grant me** **charism**,
that the child may live?
23 But now he *is dead* **died**, wherefore should I fast?
can I bring **return** him *back again*?
I shall go to him, but he shall not return to me.
THE BIRTH OF SHELOMOH
24 And David *comforted* **sighed over**
Bathsheba **Bath Sheba** his *wife* **woman**,
and went in unto her, and lay with her:
and she *bare* **birthed** a son,
and he called his name *Solomon* **Shelomoh**:
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** loved him.
25 And he sent by the hand of Nathan the prophet;
and he called his name *Jedidiah* **Yedid Yah**,
because of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
26 And *Joab* **Yah Ab**
fought against Rabbah of the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
and *took* **captured** the *royal* **sovereigndom** city.
27 And *Joab* **Yah Ab** sent *messengers* **angels** to David,
and said, I have fought against Rabbah,
and *have taken* **captured** the city of waters.
28 Now therefore gather the rest of the people *together*,
and encamp against the city, and *take* **capture** it:
lest I *take* **capture** the city, and it be called after my name.
29 And David gathered all the people *together*,
and went to Rabbah, and fought against it,
and *took* **captured** it.
30 And he took their *king's* **sovereign's** crown
from off his head,
the weight *whereof* was a *talent* — a **round** of gold
with the *precious* **esteemed** stones:
and it was *set* on David's head.
And he brought forth the spoil of the city
in great abundance **mightily abounding**.
31 And he brought forth the people that were therein,
and *put* **set** them under saws,
and under *harrows* **slicers** of iron, and under axes of iron,
and made them pass through the brickkiln:
and thus *did* **worked** he unto all the cities
of the *children* **sons** of Ammon.
So David and all the people
returned unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

AMNON AND TAMAR

13

And **so be** it, *came to pass* after this,
that *Absalom* **Abi Shalom** the son of David

2 SHEMU EL 12, 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 And so be it, on the seventh day, the child dies:
and the servants of David
awe to tell him the child died:
for they say, Behold,
while the child is yet alive, we worded to him
and he hearkened not to our voice:
how then works he himself evil
if we say to him the child died?
19 And David sees his servants enchant,
and David discerns that the child died:
and David says to his servants,
Has the child died?
And they say, Died.
20 And David rises from the earth
and baptizes and anoints and passes his clothes;
and comes into the house of Yah Veh and prostrates:
and comes to his house;
and he asks:
and they set bread in front of him; and he eats.
21 And his servants say to him,
What is this word you work?
You fast and weep for the living child;
and when the child dies, you rise and eat bread.
22 And he says,
While the child is yet alive, I fast and weep:
for I say,
Who knows whether Yah Veh grants me charism
that the child lives?
23 But now he died. Why fast I?
Can I return him?
I go to him, but he returns not to me.
THE BIRTH OF SHELOMOH
24 And David sighs over Bath Sheba his woman
and goes in to her and lies down with her;
and she births a son
and he calls his name Shelomoh:
and Yah Veh loves him:
25 and he sends by the hand of Nathan the prophet;
and he calls his name Yedid Yah,
because of Yah Veh.
26 And Yah Ab fights Rabbah of the sons of Ammon
and captures the sovereigndom city:
and Yah Ab sends angels to David and says,
I fight Rabbah and capture the city of waters:
27 and now gather the rest of the people
and encamp against the city and capture it:
lest I capture the city and call it after my name.
28 And David gathers all the people
and goes to Rabbah and fights it and captures it:
and he takes the crown of their sovereign
off his head
— the weight — a round of gold
with the esteemed stones:
and it is on the head of David:
and he brings forth the spoil of the city
— mightily abounding:
30 and he brings the people therein
and sets them under saws
and under slicers of iron and under axes of iron
and passes them through the brickkiln:
and thus he works
to all the cities of the sons of Ammon:
and David and all the people return to Yeru Shalem.
AMNON AND TAMAR
13 And so be it, after this,
Abi Shalom the son of David

2 SAMUEL 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

had a *fair beautiful* sister, whose name was Tamar;
and Amnon the son of David loved her.
2 And Amnon was so vexed **depressed**,
that he fell sick for his sister Tamar; for she was a virgin;
and Amnon thought it hard
and it was marvellous in the eyes of Amnon
for him to *do any thing work aught* to her.
3 But Amnon had a friend,
whose name was *Jonadab Yah Nadab*,
the son of *Shimeah Shimah* David's brother:
and *Jonadab Yah Nadab*
was a *very subtil mighty wise* man.
4 And he said unto him,
Why art thou, *being the king's sovereign's* son,
lean from day to day poor morning by morning?
wilt shalt thou not tell me?
And Amnon said unto him,
I love Tamar, my brother *Absalom's* **Abi Shalom's** sister.
5 And *Jonadab Yah Nadab* said unto him,
Lay thee down on thy bed, and make thyself sick:
and when thy father cometh to see thee, say unto him,
I pray thee, let my sister Tamar come,
and *give cut* me *meat bread to chew*,
and *dress the meat work cuttings* in my *sight eyes*,
that I may see it, and eat it at her hand.
6 So Amnon lay down, and made himself sick:
and when the *king sovereign* was come to see him,
Amnon said unto the *king sovereign*, I pray thee,
let Tamar my sister come,
and *make bake* me a couple of cakes in my *sight eyes*,
that I may *eat chew* at her hand.
7 Then David sent home to Tamar, saying,
Go now to thy brother Amnon's house,
and *dress work* him *meat cuttings*.
8 So Tamar went to her brother Amnon's house;
and he was laid down.
And she took *flour dough*, and kneaded it,
and *made cakes baked* in his *sight eyes*,
and *did bake ripened* the cakes.
9 And she took a pan,
and poured them out *before him at his face*;
but he refused to eat.
And Amnon said, *Have out Send* all men from me.
And they went out every man from him.
10 And Amnon said unto Tamar,
Bring the *meat cuttings* into the chamber,
that I may *eat chew* of thine hand.
And Tamar took the cakes which she had *made worked*,
and brought them into the chamber to Amnon her brother.
11 And when she had brought them **near** unto him to eat,
he took hold of her, and said unto her,
Come lie with me, my sister.
12 And she *answered said to* him,
Nay, my brother, do not *force humble* me;
for *no such thing ought such ought not*
to be *done worked* in *Israel Yisra El*:
do work not thou this folly.
13 And I, whither shall I cause my *shame reproach* to go?
and as for thee,
thou shalt be as one of the fools in *Israel Yisra El*.
Now therefore, I pray thee,
speak word unto the *king sovereign*;
for he *will shall* not withhold me from thee.
14 Howbeit he *would willed*
to not hearken unto her voice:
but, being *stronger tougher* than she,
forced humbled her, and lay with her.
15 Then Amnon hated her *exceedingly mightily*;
so that the hatred wherewith he hated her
was greater than the love wherewith he had loved her.
And Amnon said unto her, *Arise, be gone go*.

2 SHEMU EL 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

has a beautiful sister, and her name *is* Tamar;
and Amnon the son of David loves her;
2 and Amnon is so depressed
he falls sick for his sister Tamar;
for she *is* a virgin;
and it is marvellous in the eyes of Amnon
to work aught to her.
3 And Amnon has a friend,
and his name *is* Yah Nadab the son of Shimah
the brother of David;
and Yah Nadab *is* a mighty wise man:
4 and he says to him,
Why are you, the son of the sovereign,
so poor morning by morning?
Why not tell me?
And Amnon says to him,
I love Tamar the sister of my brother Abi Shalom.
5 And Yah Nadab says to him,
Lie down on your bed and make yourself sick:
and when your father comes to see you, say to him,
I pray you, have my sister Tamar come
and cut me bread to chew
and work cuttings in my eyes
that I *may* see and eat from her hand.
6 So Amnon lies down and makes himself sick:
and when the sovereign comes to see him
Amnon says to the sovereign, I pray you,
have Tamar my sister come
and bake me a couple of cakes in my eyes,
that I *may* chew from her hand.
7 And David sends home to Tamar, saying,
Go now to the house of your brother Amnon
and work him cuttings.
8 So Tamar goes to the house of her brother Amnon;
and he lies down:
and she takes dough
and kneads and bakes in his eyes
and ripens the cakes:
9 and she takes a pan and pours them at his face;
but he refuses to eat.
And Amnon says, Send all the men from me!
— and every man goes from him.
10 And Amnon says to Tamar,
Bring the cuttings into the chamber,
that I *may* chew from your hand.
And Tamar takes the cakes she worked
and brings them into the chamber
to her brother Amnon:
and she brings them near to him to eat
and he holds her and says to her,
Come lie down with me, my sister.
11 And she says to him,
No, my brother, humble me not;
for such ought not to be worked in *Yisra El*:
work not this folly:
12 And I, where goes my reproach?
And as for you,
you become as one of the fools in *Yisra El*:
and now, I pray you, word to the sovereign;
for he withholds me not from you.
14 Howbeit he wills to not hearken to her voice:
but, being tougher than she,
he humbles her and lies down with her:
and Amnon hates her mightily;
15 so that the hatred wherewith he hates her
is greater than the love wherewith he loved her.
And Amnon says to her, Rise! Go!

2 SAMUEL 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 16 And she said unto him, *There is no cause* **No:**
this evil in sending me away
is greater than the other that thou *didst* **workedst** unto me.
But he *would* **willed** to not hearken unto her.
- 17 Then he called his *servant* **lad** that ministered unto him,
and said, *Put* **Send away** now this *woman* out from me,
and *bolt* **enclose** the door after her.
- 18 And she had a *garment of divers colours* **coverall coat**
upon her:
for with such *robes* **mantles**
were the *king's* **sovereign's** daughters
that were *virgins* **apparelled** **enrobed**.
Then his *servant* **minister** brought her out,
and *bolted* **enclosed** the door after her.
- 19 And Tamar *put* **took** ashes on her head,
and *rent* **ripped**
her *garment of divers colours* **coverall coat**
that was on her,
and *laid* **set** her hand on her head,
and *went* **in walking, walked** on crying.
- 20 And *Absalom* **Abi Shalom** her brother said unto her,
Hath Amnon thy brother been with thee?
but *hold now thy peace* **hush now**, my sister:
he is thy brother;
regard not this thing **set not thy heart to this word**.
So Tamar *remained* **settled** desolate
in her brother *Absalom's* **Abi Shalom's** house.
- 21 But when *king* **sovereign** David
heard of all these *things* **words**,
he was *very wroth* **mightily inflamed**.
- 22 And *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**
spake **worded** unto his brother Amnon
neither good nor *bad* **evil**:
for *Absalom* **Abi Shalom** hated Amnon,
because **for word** that
he had *forced* **abased** his sister Tamar.
- ABI SHALOM DEATHIFIES AMNON**
- 23 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
after two *full years* **years of days**,
that *Absalom* **Abi Shalom** had sheepshearers
in *Baalhazor* **Baal Hasor**,
which is beside *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**:
and *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**
invited **called** all the *king's* **sovereign's** sons.
- 24 And *Absalom* **Abi Shalom** came to the *king* **sovereign**,
and said, Behold now, thy servant hath sheepshearers;
let the *king* **sovereign**, I beseech thee,
and his servants go with thy servant.
- 25 And the *king* **sovereign** said to *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**,
Nay, my son, let us not all now go,
lest we be *chargeable* **too heavy** unto thee.
And he *pressed* **breached** him:
howbeit he *would* **willed** to not go, but blessed him.
- 26 Then said *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**,
If not, I pray thee, let my brother Amnon go with us.
And the *king* **sovereign** said unto him,
Why should he go with thee?
- 27 But *Absalom* **pressed** **Abi Shalom** **breached** him,
that he *let* **sent away** Amnon
and all the *king's* **sovereign's** sons go with him.
- 28 Now *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**
had *commanded* **misvahed** his *servants* **lads**, saying,
Mark **See** ye now
when Amnon's heart is *merry* **good** with wine,
and when I say unto you, *Smite* Amnon;
then **kill** **deathify** him, *fear* **awe** not:
have not I *commanded* **misvahed** you?
be courageous **strengthen**, and be *valiant* **sons of valour**.
- 29 And the *servants* **lads** of *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**
did **worked** unto Amnon
as *Absalom* **Abi Shalom** had *commanded* **misvahed**.
Then all the *king's* **sovereign's** sons arose,
and every man *gat him up* **rode** upon his mule, and fled.
- 30 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
while they were in the way,
that *tidings* **reports** came to David, saying,
Absalom **Abi Shalom**
hath *slain* **smitten** all the *king's* **sovereign's** sons,

2 SHEMU EL 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 16 And she says to him, No!
This evil in sending me away
is greater than the other that you worked me.
— and he wills to not hearken to her.
- 17 And he calls his lad who ministers to him
and says, Send this away from me now
and enclose the door after her.
- 18 And she has a coverall coat on her:
for with such mantles
were the virgin daughters of the sovereign enrobed:
and his minister brings her out
and encloses the door after her.
- 19 And Tamar takes ashes on her head
and rips the coverall coat on her
and sets her hand on her head:
and in walking, walks on crying.
- 20 And Abi Shalom her brother says to her,
Has Amnon your brother been with you?
Hush now, my sister; he is your brother:
set not your heart to this word.
— and Tamar settles desolate
in the house of her brother Abi Shalom.
- 21 And sovereign David hears of all these words
and he is mightily inflamed:
- 22 and Abi Shalom words to his brother Amnon
neither good nor evil:
for Abi Shalom hates Amnon,
for word that he abased his sister Tamar.
- ABI SHALOM DEATHIFIES AMNON**
- 23 And so be it, after two years of days,
Abi Shalom has sheepshearers
in Baal Hasor beside Ephrayim:
and Abi Shalom calls all the sons of the sovereign:
and Abi Shalom comes to the sovereign and says,
Behold now, your servant has sheepshearers;
may the sovereign, I beseech you,
and his servants go with your servant.
- 25 And the sovereign says to Abi Shalom,
No, my son, not all of us go now
lest we be too heavy to you.
— and he breaches on him; but he wills to not go;
and he blesses him.
- 26 And Abi Shalom says,
If not, I pray you, have my brother Amnon go with us.
- And the sovereign says to him,
Why have him go with you?
- 27 And Abi Shalom breaches on him
to send Amnon away
with all the sons of the sovereign.
- 28 And Abi Shalom misvahs his lads, saying,
Now see,
when the heart of Amnon is good with wine,
and I say to you, *Smite* Amnon!
Deathify him! *Awe* not!
I — misvah I you not?
Strengthen! Sons of valour!
- 29 And the lads of Abi Shalom work to Amnon
as Abi Shalom misvahs:
and all the sons of the sovereign rise
and every man rides on his mule and flees.
- 30 And so be it, as they are in the way,
reports come to David, saying,
Abi Shalom smites all the sons of the sovereign

2 SAMUEL 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and there is not one of them *left remaining*.
31 Then the *king sovereign* arose,
and *tore ripped* his *garments clothes*, and lay on the earth;
and all his servants *stood stationed* by
with their *clothes rent ripped*.
32 And *Jonadab Yah Nadab*,
the son of *Shimeah Shimah* David's brother,
answered and said, Let not my *lord suppose adoni say*
that they have *slain deathified* all the *young men lads*
the *king's sovereign's* sons;
for Amnon only *is dead died*:
for by the *appointment mouth* of *Absalom Abi Shalom*
this hath been *determined set*
from the day that he *forced abased* his sister Tamar.
33 Now therefore let not my *lord adoni* the *king sovereign*
take set the *thing word* to his heart, *to think saying*
that all the *king's sovereign's* sons *are dead died*:
for Amnon only *is dead died*.
34 But *Absalom Abi Shalom* fled.
And the *young man lad* that *kept the watch watched*
lifted up his eyes, and *looked saw*, and, behold,
there came much people
by the way of the *hill mountain* side behind him.
35 And *Jonadab Yah Nadab* said unto the *king sovereign*,
Behold, the *king's sovereign's* sons come:
as *according to the word* of thy servant *said*,
so it *is becometh*.
36 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
as soon as he had
made an end of speaking finished wording,
that, behold, the *king's sovereign's* sons came,
and lifted up their voice and wept:
and the *king sovereign* also and all his servants
wept *very sore a mighty great weeping*.
37 But *Absalom Abi Shalom* fled,
and went to *Talmay Talmay*,
the son of *Ammihud Ammi Hud*,
king sovereign of Geshur.
And *David* mourned for his son every day.
38 So *Absalom Abi Shalom* fled, and went to Geshur,
and was there three years.
39 And the *soul of king sovereign* David
longed concluded to go forth unto *Absalom Abi Shalom*:
for he was *comforted sighed* concerning Amnon,
seeing he was *dead died*.

WISE WOMAN OF TEQOHA

14 Now *Joab Yah Ab* the son of *Zeruiah Seruyah*
perceived that the *king's sovereign's* heart
was toward *Absalom Abi Shalom*.
2 And *Joab Yah Ab* sent to *Tekoah Teqoha*,
and *fetched took* thence a wise woman, and said unto her,
I pray thee, feign thyself to be a mourner,
and *put on enrobe* now mourning *apparel clothes*,
and anoint not thyself with oil,
but be as a woman
that had a *long time many days* mourned for the dead:
3 And come to the *king sovereign*,
and *speak on word* this *manner word* unto him.
So *Joab put Yah Ab set* the words in her mouth.
4 And when the woman of *Tekoah Teqohiy*
spake said to the *king sovereign*,
she fell on her *face nostrils* to the *ground earth*,
and *did obeisance prostrated*, and said,
Help Save, O king sovereign.
5 And the *king sovereign* said unto her, What *aiileth* — to thee?
And she *answered said*,
I am *indeed truly* a widow woman,
and *mine husband is dead my man has died*.
6 And thy *handmaid maid* had two sons,
and they two strove together in the field,
and there was *none to part no rescuer between* them,
but the one smote the *other first*, and *slew deathified* him.
7 And, behold,
the whole family is risen against *thine handmaid thy maid*,
and they said, *Deliver Give* him that smote his brother,
that we may *kill deathify* him,
for the *life soul* of his brother whom he *slew slaughtered*;
and we *will destroy shall desolate* the *heir successor* also:

2 SHEMU EL 13, 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and not one of them remains.
31 And the sovereign rises
and rips his clothes and lies down on the earth;
and all his servants station by with ripped clothes.
32 And Yah Nadab
the son of Shimah the brother of David
answers and says, My adoni,
say not that they deathified all the lads
of the sons of the sovereign;
for only, Amnon died:
for this became set by the mouth of Abi Shalom
the day he abased his sister Tamar.
33 And now my adoni the sovereign,
set not the word to your heart, saying,
All the sons of the sovereign died!
— for only, Amnon died.
34 And Abi Shalom flees:
and the lad who watches lifts his eyes and sees;
and behold, much people come
by the way of the mountain side behind him.
35 And Yah Nadab says to the sovereign,
Behold, the sons of the sovereign come:
according to the word of your servant,
so be it.
36 And so be it, as soon as he finishes wording,
behold, the sons of the sovereign come
and lift their voice and weep:
and the sovereign also and all his servants
weep a mighty great weeping:
37 and Abi Shalom flees and goes to Talmay
the son of Ammi Hud sovereign of Geshur;
and mourns for his son every day.
38 And Abi Shalom flees and goes to Geshur
and *is* there three years.
39 And sovereign David
concludes to go to Abi Shalom:
for he sighs concerning Amnon, seeing he died.

WISE WOMAN OF TEQOHA

14 And Yah Ab the son of Seruyah perceives
that the heart of the sovereign is on Abi Shalom:
2 and Yah Ab sends to Teqoha
and takes thence a wise woman and says to her,
I pray you, feign yourself to be a mourner
and enrobe mourning clothes;
and anoint not yourself with oil:
and be as a woman
who mourns for the dead many days:
3 and come to the sovereign
and word this word to him.
— and Yah Ab sets the words in her mouth.
4 And the woman Teqohiy says to the sovereign;
and she falls on her nostrils to the earth
and prostrates and says,
Save, O sovereign.
5 And the sovereign says to her, What — to you?
And she says,
I am truly a widow woman; and my man dies:
6 and your maid has two sons
and the two strive in the field
and there is no rescuer between them,
and the one smites the first and deathifies him:
7 and behold,
the whole family rises against your maid
and they say,
Give him who smote his brother — to deathify him
for the soul of his brother he slaughtered;
and we desolate his successor also:

2 SAMUEL 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and so they shall quench my coal which *is left* **surviveth**,
and shall *not leave to my husband* **set to my man**
neither name nor *remainder* **survivors**
upon the *earth* **face of the soil**.

8 And the *king* **sovereign** said unto the woman,
Go to thine house,
and I *will give charge* **shall misvah** concerning thee.

9 And the woman of *Tekoah* **Teqohiy**
said unto the *king* **sovereign**,
My lord **adoni**, O *king* **sovereign**,
the *iniquity* **perversion** be on me,
and on my father's house:
and the *king* **sovereign** and his throne
be *guiltless* **innocent**.

10 And the *king* **sovereign** said,
Whosoever *saith* **wordeth** ought unto thee,
bring him to me,
and he shall **be added to** not touch thee *any more*.

11 Then said she, I pray thee,
let the *king* **sovereign**
remember the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
that *thou wouldst not suffer*
the *revengers* **redeemers** of blood
to *destroy any more* **not abound to ruin**,
lest they destroy my son.

And he said, *As the LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth,
there shall not one hair of thy son fall to the earth.

12 Then the woman said, Let *thine handmaid* **thy maid**,
I pray thee, *speak one word* a word
unto my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**.

And he said, Say **Word** on.

13 And the woman said,
Wherefore then hast thou *thought* **fabricated**
such a *thing* **word** against the people of *God* **Elohim**?
for the *king* **sovereign** doth *speak* **word** this *thing* **word**
as one which is *faulty* **guilty**,
in that the *king* **sovereign**
doth *not fetch home again* **hath not returned**
his *banished* **expelled**.

14 For *in dying*, we *must needs* die,
and are as water *spilt* **poured** on the *ground* **earth**,
which cannot be gathered up again;
neither doth God respect **because Elohim** taketh *not away*
any person **a soul**:
yet doth he *devise means* **fabricate fabrications**,
that his *banished* **expelled** be not expelled from him.

15 Now therefore that I am come
to *speak of* **word** this *thing* **word**
unto my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**,
it is because the people
have *made* **caused** me *afraid* **to awe**:
and thy *handmaid* **maid** said,
I *will* **shall** now *speak* **word** unto the *king* **sovereign**;
it may be that **perhaps** the *king* **sovereign**
will perform **shall work** the *request* **word**
of his *handmaid* **maid**.

16 For the *king* **will** **sovereign** *shall* hear,
to *deliver* **rescue** his *handmaid* **maid**
out of the *hand* **palm** of the man
that *would destroy* **should desolate** me and my son
together out of the inheritance of *God* **Elohim**.

17 Then *thine handmaid* **thy maid** said,
The word of my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**
shall now *be comfortable* **rest**:
for as an angel of *God* **Elohim**,
so is my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**
to *discern* **hear** good and *bad* **evil**:
therefore the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
will **shall** be with thee.

18 Then the *king* **sovereign** answered
and said unto the woman,
Hide **Conceal** not from me, I pray thee,
the *thing* **word** that I shall ask thee.
And the woman said,
Let my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign** now *speak* **word**.

19 And the *king* **sovereign** said,
Is *not* the hand of *Joab* **Yah Ab** with thee in all this?
And the woman answered and said,

2 SHEMU EL 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and so they quench my coal which survives
and set neither name nor survivors to my man
on the face of the soil.

8 And the sovereign says to the woman,
Go to your house and I misvah concerning you.

9 And the woman Teqohiy says to the sovereign,
My adoni, O sovereign,
the perversion be on me
and on the house of my father:
and the sovereign and his throne be innocent.

10 And the sovereign says,
Bring me whoever words to you,
that he not add to touch you.

11 Then she says, I pray you,
may the sovereign remember Yah Veh your Elohim
— that the redeemers of blood not abound to ruin
lest they destroy my son.

And he says, Yah Veh lives!
Not one hair of your son falls to the earth.

12 And the woman says,
Let your maid, I pray you,
word a word to my adoni the sovereign.

And he says, Word on.

13 And the woman says,
And why fabricate you such a word
against the people of Elohim?
For the sovereign words this word
as one who is guilty,
in that the sovereign returns not his expelled:
for in dying, we die
and are as water poured on the earth,
which *is* not gathered;
because Elohim takes not away a soul:
yet he fabricates fabrications,
that his expelled not be expelled from him:
now I come
to word this word to my adoni the sovereign,
because the people have me to awe:
and your maid says,
I now word to the sovereign;
so that perhaps the sovereign
works the word of his maid.

14 For the sovereign hearkens to rescue his maid
from the palm of the man
who desolates me and my son together
from the inheritance of Elohim.

15 And your maid says,
The word of my adoni the sovereign now rests:
for as an angel of Elohim
thus is my adoni the sovereign
— to hear good and evil:
therefore Yah Veh your Elohim be with you.

16 Then the sovereign answers the woman
and says,
Conceal not from me, I pray you, the word I ask you.

And the woman says,
Let my adoni the sovereign now word.

17 And the sovereign says,
Is the hand of Yah Ab with you in all this?
And the woman answers and says,

2 SAMUEL 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

As thy soul liveth, my lord **adoni** the king **sovereign**,
none no man can turn to the right *hand* or to the left
from ought that my lord **adoni** the king **sovereign**
hath spoken **worded**:
for thy servant **Joab Yah Ab**, he *bade* **misvahed** me,
and he *put set* all these words
in the mouth of *thine handmaid* **thy maid**:
20 To *fetch* **So as to go** about
this form **the face** of *speech* **this word**
hath thy servant **Joab Yah Ab**
done **worked** this *thing* **word**:
and my lord **adoni** is wise,
according to the wisdom of an angel of *God Elohim*,
to know all *things* that are in the earth.
21 And the king **sovereign** said unto **Joab Yah Ab**,
Behold now, I have done **worked** this *thing* **word**:
go *therefore*,
bring **return** the young man **Absalom** *lad* **Abi Shalom** again.
22 And **Joab Yah Ab** fell to the ground **earth** on his face,
and bowed **prostrated** himself,
and thanked **blessed** the king **sovereign**:
and **Joab Yah Ab** said,
To day thy servant knoweth
that I have found *grace* **charism** in thy *sight* **eyes**,
my lord **adoni**, O king **sovereign**,
in that the king **sovereign**
hath fulfilled **worked** the *request* **word** of his servant.
23 So **Joab Yah Ab** arose and went to Geshur,
and brought **Absalom** **Abi Shalom**
to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
24 And the king **sovereign** said,
Let him turn to his own house,
and let him not see my face.
So **Absalom** **Abi Shalom** returned to his own house,
and saw not the king's **sovereign's** face.
25 But in all *Israel* **Yisra El** there was *none no man*
to be much *praised* **mightily** **halaled**
as **Absalom** **Abi Shalom**
for his *beauty* **there was not as handsome a man**:
from the sole of his foot
even to the *crown of his head* **his scalp**
there was no blemish in him.
26 And when he *polled* **shaved** his head,
(for it was at every *year's end* **the end of days by days**
that he *polled* **shaved** it:
because the *hair* **it** was heavy on him,
therefore he *polled* **shaved** it:)
he weighed the hair of his head at two hundred shekels
after the king's *weight* **sovereign's** **stone**.
27 And unto **Absalom** **Abi Shalom**
there were *born* **birthed** three sons,
and one daughter, whose name was Tamar:
she was a woman of a *fair countenance* **beautiful visage**.
28 So **Absalom** dwelt **Abi Shalom** settled
two *full* years of *days* in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and saw not the king's **sovereign's** face.
29 Therefore **Absalom** **Abi Shalom** sent for **Joab Yah Ab**,
to have sent him to the king **sovereign**;
but he *would* **willed to** not come to him:
and when he sent again the second time,
he *would* **willed to** not come.
30 Therefore he said unto his servants,
See, *Joab's field* **Yah Ab's allotment** is near mine **hand**,
and he hath barley there; go and *set* **burn** it on fire.
And **Absalom's** **Abi Shalom's** servants
set the *field* **allotment** on fire.
31 Then **Joab Yah Ab** arose,
and came to **Absalom** **Abi Shalom** unto his house,
and said unto him, Wherefore have thy servants
set my field **burnt mine allotment** on fire?
32 And **Absalom** **Abi Shalom**
answered **Joab** **said to Yah Ab**, Behold,
I sent unto thee, saying, Come hither,
that I may send thee to the king **sovereign**, to say,
Wherefore am I come from Geshur?
it had been good for me to have been there still:
now therefore let me see the king's **sovereign's** face;

2 SHEMU EL 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Your soul lives, my adoni the sovereign,
no man can turn right or left
from aught that my adoni the sovereign words:
for your servant Yah Ab, he misvahed me
and he set all these words in the mouth of your maid:
20 so as to go about the face of this word
your servant Yah Ab worked this word:
and my adoni is wise
as the wisdom of an angel of Elohim,
to know all that is in the earth.
21 And the sovereign says to Yah Ab,
Behold, I pray you, I work this word:
go, return the lad Abi Shalom.
22 And Yah Ab falls to the earth on his face
and prostrates and blesses the sovereign:
and Yah Ab says,
Today your servant knows
that I find charism in your eyes,
my adoni, O sovereign,
in that the sovereign works the word of his servant.
23 And Yah Ab rises and goes to Geshur
and brings Abi Shalom to Yeru Shalem.
24 And the sovereign says,
Have him return to his own house
and not see my face.
So Abi Shalom returns to his own house
and sees not the face of the sovereign:
but in all Yisra El there is no man
as mightily halaled as Abi Shalom;
none become as handsome a man:
from the sole of his foot even to his scalp;
there is no blemish in him.
26 And he shaves his head;
— and at the end of days by days he shaves
— and because it is heavy on him, he shaves;
he weighs the hair of his head at two hundred shekels
after the stone of the sovereign.
27 And three sons are birthed to Abi Shalom
and one daughter; her name is Tamar:
she is a woman of beautiful visage.
28 So Abi Shalom settles
two years of days in Yeru Shalem
and sees not the face of the sovereign.
29 And Abi Shalom sends for Yah Ab,
to send him to the sovereign;
but he wills to not come to him:
and when he sends again the second time,
he wills to not come.
30 And he says to his servants,
See, the allotment of Yah Ab is near my hand,
and he has barley there; go and burn it on fire.
And the servants of Abi Shalom
set the allotment on fire:
31 and Yah Ab rises and comes to Abi Shalom
— to his house and says to him,
Your servants, why burn they my allotment on fire?
32 And Abi Shalom says to Yah Ab, Behold,
I send to you, saying, Come here,
that I may send you to the sovereign, to say,
Why come I from Geshur?
It had been good for me to still be there:
and now have me see the face of the sovereign;

2 SAMUEL 14, 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and if there be any iniquity **perversity** in me,
let him **kill deathify** me.

33 So **Joab Yah Ab** came to the **king sovereign**,
and told him:
and when he had called for **Absalom Abi Shalom**,
he came to the **king sovereign**,
and **bowed prostrated** himself on his **face nostrils**
to the **ground earth**
before the king at the face of the sovereign:
and the **king sovereign** kissed **Absalom Abi Shalom**.

THE CONSPIRACY OF ABI SHALOM

15 And **so be** it came to pass after this,
that **Absalom prepared Abi Shalom worked** him
chariots and horses,
and fifty men to run *before him at his face*.

2 And **Absalom rose up Abi Shalom started** early,
and stood **beside at hand by** the way of the **gate portal**:
and it was **so became**,
that when any man that had a controversy
came to the **king sovereign** for judgment,
then **Absalom Abi Shalom** called unto him, and said,
Of what city art thou?
And he said,
Thy servant is of one of the **tribes scions** of **Israel Yisra El**.

3 And **Absalom Abi Shalom** said unto him,
See, thy **matters words** are good and **right straightforward**;
but there is no man **deputed** of the **king sovereign**
to hear thee.

4 **Absalom Abi Shalom** said moreover,
Oh that I were made Who setteth me judge in the land,
that every man
which hath any **suit plea** or **cause judgment**
might come unto me,
and I *would do him justice should justify him!*
And it was **so became**,
that when any man *came nigh to approached* him
to **do prostrate to** him **obesance**,
he **put sent** forth his hand,
and **took held** him, and kissed him.

6 And on this **manner word**
did Absalom worked Abi Shalom to all **Israel Yisra El**
that came to the **king sovereign** for judgment:
so Absalom Abi Shalom
stole the hearts of the men of **Israel Yisra El**.

7 And **so be** it came to pass,
after at the end of forty years,
that **Absalom Abi Shalom** said unto the **king sovereign**,
I pray thee, let me go and **pay shalam** my vow,
which I have vowed unto *the LORD Yah Veh*, in Hebron.

8 For thy servant vowed a vow
while I *abode settled* at Geshur in **Syria Aram**, saying,
If the LORD shall bring me again indeed
If in returning, Yah Veh shall return me
to **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
then I **will shall** serve *the LORD Yah Veh*.

9 And the **king sovereign** said unto him,
Go in **peace shalom**.
So he arose, and went to Hebron.

10 But **Absalom Abi Shalom** sent spies
throughout all the **tribes scions** of **Israel Yisra El**, saying,
As soon as ye hear the **sound voice** of the **trumpet shophar**,
then ye shall say,
Absalom Abi Shalom reigneth in Hebron.

11 And with **Absalom Abi Shalom**
went two hundred men out of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
that were called;
and they went in their **simplicity integrity**,
and they knew *not any thing a word*.

12 And **Absalom Abi Shalom**
sent for **Ahithophel Achiy Thophel** the **Gilonite Gilohiy**,
David's counsellor, from his city, *even from Giloh*,
while he **offered sacrificed** sacrifices.
And the conspiracy was strong;
for the **many people increased continually walked**
with **Absalom Abi Shalom**.

DAVID FLEES YERU SHALEM

13 And there came a **messenger teller** to David, saying,

2 SHEMU EL 14, 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and if there be perversity in me,
may he deathify me.

33 And Yah Ab comes to the sovereign and tells him:
and he calls for Abi Shalom,
and he comes to the sovereign
and prostrates himself on his nostrils to the earth
at the face of the sovereign:
and the sovereign kisses Abi Shalom.

THE CONSPIRACY OF ABI SHALOM

15 And so be it, afterward,
Abi Shalom works him chariots and horses
and fifty men to run at his face:
and Abi Shalom starts early
and stands at the hand by the way of the portal:
and so be it,
any man who has a controversy
comes to the sovereign for judgment;
and Abi Shalom calls to him and says,
Of what city are you?

And he says,
Your servant is of one of the scions of Yisra El.

3 And Abi Shalom says to him,
See, your words are good and straight;
but there is no man of the sovereign to hear you.

4 And Abi Shalom says,
Who set me judge in the land,
that every man who has any plea or judgment
comes to me to justify him?

5 And so be it,
when any man approaches to prostrate to him,
he sends his hand and holds him and kisses him:
and Abi Shalom works this word to all Yisra El
who come to the sovereign for judgment:
and Abi Shalom steals the hearts
of the men of Yisra El.

7 And so be it, at the end of forty years,
Abi Shalom says to the sovereign,
I pray you, that I *may go*,
and shalam the vow I vowed to Yah Veh in Hebron:
for your servant vowed a vow
while I settled at Geshur in Aram, saying,
If in returning, Yah Veh returns me to Yeru Shalem,
then I serve Yah Veh.

9 And the sovereign says to him, Go in shalom.

And he rises and goes to Hebron:
and Abi Shalom sends spies
throughout all the scions of Yisra El, saying,
As soon as you hear the voice of the shophar,
say, Abi Shalom reigns in Hebron.

11 And two hundred men from Yeru Shalem
who are called
go with Abi Shalom;
and they go in their integrity
and they know not a word.

12 And Abi Shalom
sends for Achiy Thophel the Gilohiy
the counsellor of David
from his city — from Giloh
as he sacrifices sacrifices:
and the conspiracy is strong;
for many people walk with Abi Shalom.

DAVID FLEES YERU SHALEM

13 And a teller comes to David, saying,

2 SAMUEL 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

The hearts of the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
are after *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**.
14 And David said unto all his servants
that were with him at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
Arise, and let us flee;
for **in escaping**, we shall not *else* escape
from *Absalom* **the face of Abi Shalom**:
make speed **hasten** to *depart* **go**,
lest he **hasten and** overtake us *suddenly*,
and *bring* **drive** evil upon us,
and smite the city with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword.
15 And the *king's* **sovereign's** servants
said unto the *king* **sovereign**, Behold,
thy servants *are ready to do* **shall work** whatsoever
my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign** shall *appoint* **choose**.
16 And the *king* **sovereign** went forth,
and all his household *after him* **at his feet**.
And the *king* **sovereign** left ten women,
which were — concubines, to *keep* **guard** the house.
17 And the *king* **sovereign** went forth,
and all the people *after him* **at his feet**,
and *tarried* **stayed** in a *place* **house** that was far off.
18 And all his servants passed on *beside him* **at his hand**;
and all the *Cherethites* **executioners**,
and all the *Pelethites* **couriers**, and all the *Gittites* **Gittiy**,
six hundred men
which came *after him* **at his feet** from Gath,
passed on *before* **at the face of** the *king* **sovereign**.
19 Then said the *king* **sovereign**
to *Ittai* **Ittay** the *Gittite* **Gittiy**,
Wherefore goest thou also with us?
return to thy place,
and *abide* **settle** with the *king* **sovereign**:
for thou art a stranger, and also an exile.
20 Whereas thou camest *but* yesterday,
should I this day
make **have** thee *go up and down* **wander in going** with us?
seeing I go whither I may **go**,
return *thou*, and *take back* **return** thy brethren:
mercy and truth be with thee.
21 And *Ittai* **Ittay** answered the *king* **sovereign**, and said,
As the LORD **Yah Veh** liveth,
and *as my lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign** liveth,
surely in what place
my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign** shall be,
whether in death or life,
even there also *will* **shall** thy servant be.
22 And David said to *Ittai* **Ittay**, Go and pass over.
And *Ittai* **Ittay** the *Gittite* **Gittiy** passed over,
and all his men,
and all the *little ones* **toddlers** that were with him.
23 And all the *country* **land** wept with a *loud* **great** voice,
and all the people passed over:
the *king* **sovereign** also *himself*
passed over the *brook* **Kidron** **wadi Qidron**,
and all the people passed over,
toward **upon the face of** the way of the wilderness.
24 And *lo* **Zadok** **behold** **Sadoq** also,
and all the *Levites* **Leviym** were with him,
bearing the ark of the covenant of *God* **Elohim**:
and they *set down* **firmed** the ark of *God* **Elohim**;
and *Abiathar* went up **Abi Athar** ascended,
until all the people had *done* **consummated**
passing out of the city.
25 And the *king* **sovereign** said unto *Zadok* **Sadoq**,
Carry **Turn** back the ark of *God* **Elohim** into the city:
if I shall find *favour* **charism**
in the eyes of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
he *will bring* **shall turn** me *again* **back**,
and *shew* **have** me *both* **see** it, and his habitation **of rest**:
26 But if he thus say, I have no delight in thee;
behold, *here am I*,
let him *do* **work** to me
as seemeth good *unto him* **in his eyes**.
27 The *king* **sovereign**
said also unto *Zadok* **Sadoq** the priest,
Art not thou a seer?

2 SHEMU EL 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

The hearts of the men of Yisra El are after Abi Shalom.

14 And David says to all his servants
with him at Yeru Shalem,
Rise! Flee!
For in escaping,
we escape not the face of Abi Shalom.
Hasten to go,
lest he hasten and overtake us and drive evil on us
and smite the city with the mouth of the sword.
15 And the servants of the sovereign
say to the sovereign,
Behold, your servants work
whatever my adoni the sovereign chooses.
16 And the sovereign goes forth
with all his household at his feet:
and the sovereign leaves ten women concubines
to guard the house:
and the sovereign goes
with all the people at his feet
and stays in a house afar off:
17 and all his servants pass on at his hand;
and all the executioners and all the couriers
and all the Gittiy
— six hundred men who come at his feet from Gath,
pass on at the face of the sovereign.
19 Then the sovereign says to Ittay the Gittiy,
Why go you — you also with us?
Return to your place and settle with the sovereign:
for you are a stranger and also an exile.
20 Yesterday you come
— and this day *do* I have you wander in going with us?
Seeing that I go wherever I go,
return — return with your brothers:
mercy and truth be with you.
21 And Ittay answers the sovereign and says,
Yah Veh lives and adoni the sovereign lives,
surely in whatever place my adoni the sovereign is
— whether in death or life,
even there also your servant is.
22 And David says to Ittay, Go and pass over.
— and Ittay the Gittiy passes over with all his men
and with all the toddlers.
23 And all the land weeps with a great voice
and all the people pass over:
and the sovereign passes over the wadi Qidron
and all the people pass over
on the face of the way of the wilderness.
24 And behold, Sadoq also,
and all the Leviym with him
bearing the ark of the covenant of Elohim:
and they firm the ark of Elohim;
and Abi Athar ascends,
until all the people
consummate passing from the city.
25 And the sovereign says to Sadoq,
Turn back the ark of Elohim into the city:
if I find charism in the eyes of Yah Veh
he turns me back
and has me see it and his habitation of rest:
and if he says thus: I delight not in you!
Behold, I —
may he work to me as seems good in his eyes.
27 And the sovereign says to Sadoq the priest,
Are you a seer?

2 SAMUEL 15, 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

return into the city in peace **shalom**,
and your two sons with you,
Ahimaaz Achiy Maas thy son,
and *Jonathan Yah Nathan* the son of *Abiathar Abi Athar*.
28 See, I will tarry **shall linger**
in the plain of the wilderness,
until there come word from you to *certify* **tell** me.
29 *Zadok Sadoq* therefore and *Abiathar Abi Athar*
carried turned back the ark of *God Elohim*
to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*: and they *tarried* **settled** there.
30 And David *went up* **ascended**
by the ascent of *mount Olivet the Olives*,
and wept as he *went up* **ascended**,
and had his head covered,
and he *went barefoot* **walked unshod**:
and all the people that was with him
covered every man his head,
and they *went up* **ascended**,
weeping as they *went up* **ascended**.
31 And one told David, saying,
Ahithophel Achiy Thophel is among the conspirators
with *Absalom Abi Shalom*.
And David said, O *LORD Yah Veh*, I pray thee,
turn the counsel of Ahithophel into foolishness
in follying, folly the counsel of Achiy Thophel.
32 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
that when David was come to the top of the *mount*,
where he *worshipped God* **prostrated to Elohim**, behold,
Hushai Hushay the *Archite Arkiy* came to meet him
with his coat *rent* **ripped**, and *earth soil* upon his head:
33 Unto whom David said, If thou passest on with me,
then thou shalt be a burden unto me:
34 But if thou return to the city,
and say unto *Absalom Abi Shalom*,
I will **shall** be thy servant, O *king sovereign*;
as I have been thy father's servant *hitherto* **since then**,
so will **shall** I now also be thy servant:
then mayest thou for me
defeat **break down** the counsel
of *Ahithophel Achiy Thophel*.
35 And hast thou not there with thee
Zadok Sadoq and *Abiathar Abi Athar* the priests?
therefore it shall be,
that what *thing word* soever thou shalt hear
out of the *king's sovereign's* house,
thou shalt tell it
to *Zadok Sadoq* and *Abiathar Abi Athar* the priests.
36 Behold, they have there with them their two sons,
Ahimaaz Achiy Maas, *Zadok's Sadoq's son*,
and *Jonathan Yah Nathan*, *Abiathar's Abi Athar's son*;
and by *them* **their hand**
ye shall send unto me every *thing word* that ye can hear.
37 So *Hushai Hushay* David's friend
came into the city,
and *Absalom Abi Shalom*
came into *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.

DAVID AND SIBA

16 And when David was a little past the top of the *hill*,
behold,
Ziba Siba the servant **lad** of *Mephibosheth Mephi Bosheth*
met him,
with a *couple pair* of *asses saddled* **he burros harnessed**,
and upon them two hundred *loaves of bread*,
and an hundred *bunches of raisins* **raisincakes**,
and an hundred of summer fruits,
and a *bottle* **bag** of wine.
2 And the *king sovereign* said unto *Ziba Siba*,
What meanest thou by these?
And *Ziba Siba* said, The *asses* **he burros**
be for the *king's sovereign's* household to ride on;
and the bread and summer fruit
for the *young men* **lads** to eat;
and the wine,
that such as be *faint* **weary** in the wilderness may drink.
3 And the *king sovereign* said,
And where is thy *master's* **adoni's** son?
And *Ziba Siba* said unto the *king sovereign*, Behold,
he *abideth* **settlet**h at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:

2 SHEMU EL 15, 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Return to the city in *shalom* with your two sons,
Achiy Maas your son
and *Yah Nathan* the son of *Abi Athar*.
28 See, I linger in the plain of the wilderness,
until word comes from you to tell me.
29 And *Sadoq* and *Abi Athar*
return the ark of *Elohim* to *Yeru Shalem*:
and they settle there.
30 And David ascends by the ascent of the *Olives*
and weeps as he ascends with his head covered
and he walks unshod:
and of all the people with him
every man covers his head:
and they ascend; weeping as they ascend.
31 And one tells David, saying,
Achiy Thophel is among the conspirators
with *Abi Shalom*.
And David says, O *Yah Veh*, I pray you,
in follying, folly the counsel of *Achiy Thophel*.
32 And so be it, David comes to the top,
and he prostrates to *Elohim*;
and behold, *Hushay* the *Arkiy* comes to meet him
with his coat ripped and soil on his head.
33 And David says to him, If you pass on with me,
you become a burden to me:
34 and if you return to the city
and say to *Abi Shalom*,
I become your servant, O *sovereign*;
and I become the servant of your father from now on,
and I now also become your servant:
and you break down
the counsel of *Achiy Thophel* for me.
35 And are there not with you
Sadoq and *Abi Athar* the priests?
And so be it,
whatever word you hear
from the house of the *sovereign*,
tell it to *Sadoq* and *Abi Athar* the priests.
36 Behold, their two sons are with them,
Achiy Maas of *Sadoq* and *Yah Nathan* of *Abi Athar*;
and every word you hear, send me by their hand.
37 So *Hushay* the friend of David comes to the city
and *Abi Shalom* comes to *Yeru Shalem*.

DAVID AND SIBA

16 And David is a little past the top,
and behold, *Siba* the lad of *Mephi Bosheth* meets him
with a pair of harnessed he burros;
and on them two hundred bread
and a hundred raisincakes
and a hundred summer fruits
and a bag of wine.

2 And the *sovereign* says to *Siba*,
What mean you by these?
And *Siba* says, The he burros
are for the house of the *sovereign* to ride on;
and the bread and summer fruit for the lads to eat;
and the wine,
for such as are weary in the wilderness to drink.

3 And the *sovereign* says,
Where is the son of your adoni?

And *Siba* says to the *sovereign*,
Behold, he settles at *Yeru Shalem*:

2 SAMUEL 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for he said, To day shall the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
restore me the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of my father.
4 Then said the *king* **sovereign** to *Ziba* **Siba**, Behold,
thine are all *that pertained*
unto *Mephibosheth* **Mephi Bosheth**.
And *Ziba* **Siba** said, I *humbly beseech* **prostrate** to thee
that I may find *grace* **charism** in thy *sight* **eyes**,
my *lord* **adoni**, O *king* **sovereign**. **SHIMI ABASES DAVID**
5 And when *king* **sovereign** David
came to *Bahurim* **Bachurim**, behold,
thence *came out* **went** a man
of the family of the house of *Saul* **Shaul**,
whose name was *Shimei* **Shimi**, the son of Gera:
he *came forth* **went**,
and *cursed still* **abased** as he *came* **went**.
6 And he *cast* **stoned** stones at David,
and at all the servants of *king* **sovereign** David:
and all the people and all the mighty *men*
were on his right *hand* and on his left.
7 And thus said *Shimei* **Shimi** when he *cursed* **abased**,
Come out **Go, come out go**, thou bloody man,
and thou man of *Belial* **Beli Yaal**:
8 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** hath returned upon thee
all the blood of the house of *Saul* **Shaul**,
in whose stead thou hast reigned;
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *delivered* **given** the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
into the hand of *Absalom* **Abi Shalom** thy son:
and, behold, thou art *taken* in thy *mischiefs* **evil**,
because thou art a bloody man.
9 Then said *Abishai* **Abi Shai** the son of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah**
unto the *king* **sovereign**,
Why should this dead dog
curse **abase** my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**?
let me *go* **pass** over, I pray thee,
and *take* **twist** off his head.
10 And the *king* **sovereign** said,
What have I to do with you, ye sons of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah**?
so let him *curse* **abase**,
because *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath said unto him,
Curse **Abase** David.
Who shall then say, Wherefore hast thou *done* **worked** so?
11 And David said to *Abishai* **Abi Shai**,
and to all his servants, Behold,
my son, which *came forth* **went** of my *bowels* **inwards**,
seeketh my *life* **soul**:
how much more now may this *Benjamite* **Ben Yaminiy** do it?
let him alone, and *let him* **curse** **allow him to abase**;
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *bidden* **said** to him.
12 *It may be that* *the LORD* **Perhaps Yah Veh**
will look on mine affliction **shall see my humiliation**,
and that *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
will requite **shall return** me good
for his *cursing* **abasing** this day.
13 And as David and his men went by the way,
Shimei **Shimi** went along on the *hill's* **mountain** side
over against **beside** him,
and *cursed* **abased** as he went,
and *threw* **stoned** stones at **beside** him,
and *cast* **dusted** dust.
14 And the *king* **sovereign**,
and all the people that were with him,
came *weary* **languid**, and refreshed themselves there.
ABI SHALOM APPROACHES YERU SHALEM
15 And *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**,
and all the people of the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
came to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and *Ahithophel* **Achiy Thophel** with him.
16 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
when *Hushai* **Hushay** the *Archite* **Arkiy**, David's friend,
was come unto *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**,
that *Hushai* **Hushay** said unto *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**,
God save the king **Let the sovereign live**,
God save the king **Let the sovereign live**.
17 And *Absalom* **Abi Shalom** said to *Hushai* **Hushay**,
Is this thy *kindness* **mercy** to thy friend?
why wentest thou not with thy friend?

2 SHEMU EL 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for he says, Today the house of *Yisra El*
restores to me the *sovereigndom* of my father.
4 Then the *sovereign* says to *Siba*,
Behold, you are all to *Mephi Bosheth*.
And *Siba* says,
I *prostrate* to you to find *charism* in your eyes,
my *adoni*, O *sovereign*. **SHIMI ABASES DAVID**
5 And *sovereign* David comes to *Bachurim*;
and behold,
there goes a man of the family of the house of *Shaul*;
his name *is* *Shimi* the son of Gera:
he goes and abases as he goes:
6 and he *stones* stones at David
and at all the servants of *sovereign* David:
and all the people and all the mighty
on his right and on his left.
7 And as *Shimi* abases, he says thus:
Go, go, you bloody man and you man of *Beli Yaal*:
8 *Yah Veh* returns on you
all the *blood* of the house of *Shaul*
in whose stead you reign;
and *Yah Veh* gives the *sovereigndom*
into the hand of *Abi Shalom* your son:
and behold, you are in your evil,
because you *are* a man of blood.
9 And *Abi Shai* the son of *Seruyah*
says to the *sovereign*,
This dead dog
— why abases he my *adoni* the *sovereign*?
Pass me over, I pray you, and I twist off his head.
10 And the *sovereign* says,
What have I to do with you, ye sons of *Seruyah*?
he abases thus because *Yah Veh* says to him,
Abase David.
Who then *is* to say, Why work you so?
11 And David says to *Abi Shai* and to all his servants,
Behold, my son who came from my inwards
seeks my soul:
how much more now this *Ben Yaminiy*?
allow him to abase; for *Yah Veh* says to him.
12 Perhaps *Yah Veh* sees my humiliation
and *Yah Veh* returns me good
for his abasing this day.
13 And David and his men go by the way,
and *Shimi* goes along beside him
on the mountain side;
and abases as he goes
and stones stones beside him;
and dusts dust.
14 And the *sovereign* and all the people with him
become languid; and refresh themselves there.
ABI SHALOM APPROACHES YERU SHALEM
15 And *Abi Shalom*
and all the people of the men of *Yisra El*,
come to *Yeru Shalem* with *Achiy Thophel*:
16 and so be it,
Hushay the *Arkiy*, the friend of David,
comes to *Abi Shalom*:
and *Hushay* says to *Abi Shalom*,
The *sovereign* lives! The *sovereign* lives!
17 And *Abi Shalom* says to *Hushay*,
Is this your mercy to your friend?
Why go you not with your friend?

2 SAMUEL 16, 17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 And *Hushai* **Hushay** said unto *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**,
Nay; but whom *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, and this people,
and all the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**, choose,
his *will* **shall** I be, and with him *will* **shall** I *abide* **settle**.
19 And *again* **secondly**, whom should I serve?
should I not *serve in at* the *presence* **face** of his son?
as I have served *in at* thy father's *presence* **face**,
so *will* **shall** I be *in at* thy *presence* **face**.
20 Then said *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**
to *Ahithophel* **Achiy Thophel**,
Give counsel among you what we shall *do* **work**.
21 And *Ahithophel* **Achiy Thophel**
said unto *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**,
Go in unto thy father's concubines,
which he hath *left* **allowed** to *keep* **guard** the house;
and all *Israel* **Yisra El** shall hear
that thou *art* **abhorred** **stinkiest** of thy father:
then shall the hands of all that are with thee
be *strong* **strengthened**.
22 So they spread *Absalom* **Abi Shalom** a tent
upon the *top of the house* **roof**;
and *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**
went in unto his father's concubines
in the *sight* **eyes** of all *Israel* **Yisra El**.
23 And the counsel of *Ahithophel* **Achiy Thophel**,
which he counselled in those days,
was as if a man had *enquired* **asked**
at the *oracle* **word** of *God* **Elohim**:
so was all the counsel of *Ahithophel* **Achiy Thophel**
both with David and with *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**.

THE COUNSEL OF HUSHAY

17

Moreover

Ahithophel **Achiy Thophel** said unto *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**,
Let me now choose out twelve thousand men,
and I *will* **shall** arise and pursue after David this night:
2 And I *will* **shall** come upon him
while he is *weary* **belaboured** and weak handed,
and *will* **make** **shall** *cause* him *afraid* **to tremble**:
and all the people that are with him shall flee;
and I *will* **shall** smite the *king* **sovereign** only:
3 And I *will* **bring back** **shall** *return* all the people
unto thee:
the man whom thou seekest is as if all returned:
so all the people shall be in *peace* **shalom**.
4 And the *saying* **pleased** **word** was **right**
Absalom **well** **in the eyes of** *Abi Shalom*,
and **in the eyes of** all the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
5 Then said *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**,
Call now *Hushai* **Hushay** the *Archite* **Arkiy** also,
and let us hear likewise what *he saith* **is in his mouth**.
6 And when *Hushai* **Hushay**
was come to *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**,
Absalom **spake** **Abi Shalom** said unto him, saying,
Ahithophel **Achiy Thophel**
hath *spoken* **worded** after this *manner* **word**:
shall we *do* **work** after his *saying* **word**?
if not; *spake* **word** thou.
7 And *Hushai* **Hushay** said unto *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**,
The counsel
that *Ahithophel* **Achiy Thophel** hath *given* **counselled**
is not good at this time.
8 For, said *Hushai* **Hushay**,
thou knowest thy father and his men,
that they be mighty *men*,
and they be *chafed in their minds* **bitter of soul**,
as a bear *robbed of her whelps* **bereft** in the field:
and thy father is a man of war,
and *will* **shall** not *lodge* **stay overnight** with the people.
9 Behold, he is hid now in *some pit* **one of the pits**,
or in *some other place* **one of the places**:
and **so be** it *will* **come to pass**,
when some of them be *overthrown* **fallen**
at the *first* **beginning**,
that **in hearing**,
whosoever heareth it **will** **a hearer shall** say,
There is a *slaughter* **plague** among the people
that *follow* *Absalom* **go after** *Abi Shalom*.
10 And he also that is *valiant* **the son of valour**,

2 SHEMU EL 16, 17

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 And Hushay says to Abi Shalom,
No; but whom Yah Veh and this people
and all the men of Yisra El choose,
his I am; and with him I settle.
19 And secondly, whom serve I?
— is it not at the face of his son?
As I served at the face of your father,
thus I at your face.
20 And Abi Shalom says to Achiy Thophel,
Give counsel among you what to work.
21 And Achiy Thophel says to Abi Shalom,
Go in to the concubines of your father,
whom he allowed to guard the house;
so that all Yisra El hears that you stink of your father:
then strengthen the hands of all who are with you.
22 And they spread a tent for Abi Shalom on the roof;
and Abi Shalom goes in
to his concubines of his father
in the eyes of all Yisra El.
23 And the counsel
Achiy Thophel counsels in those days,
is as if a man asks at the word of Elohim:
thus *is* all the counsel of Achiy Thophel
both with David and with Abi Shalom.

THE COUNSEL OF HUSHAY

17

And Achiy Thophel says to Abi Shalom,
I pray you that I *may* choose twelve thousand men
and I rise and pursue after David this night:
and I come on him
— belabored and weak handed; and tremble him:
and all the people with him flee;
and I smite the sovereign only:
and I return all the people to you
— return the man you seek and all:
— all the people being in shalom.
4 — and the word is right in the eyes of Abi Shalom
and in the eyes of all the elders of Yisra El.
5 And Abi Shalom says,
Call, I pray you, Hushay the Arkiy also
and likewise hear what is in his mouth.
6 And Hushay comes to Abi Shalom,
and Abi Shalom says to him, saying,
Achiy Thophel words after this word:
Work we after his word?
If not; you word.
7 And Hushay says to Abi Shalom,
The counsel Achiy Thophel counsels
is not good at this time.
8 For, says Hushay,
you know your father and his men are mighty;
and bitter of soul as a bereft bear in the field:
and your father is a man of war
and stays not overnight with the people.
9 Behold, even now he hides in one of the pits
or in one of the places:
and so be it,
when some of them fall at the beginning,
that in hearing, a hearer says,
There is a plague among the people
who go after Abi Shalom;
and he who also is the son of valour

2 SAMUEL 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

whose heart is as the heart of a lion,
in melting, shall utterly melt:
for all Israel Yisra El knoweth
that thy father is a mighty man,
and they which be with him
are valiant men sons of valour.

11 Therefore I counsel that all Israel Yisra El
in gathering, be generally gathered unto thee,
from Dan even to Beersheba Beer Sheba,
as the sand that is by the sea for multitude abundance;
and that thou go to battle war
in thine own person by yourself.

12 So shall we come upon him
in some place one of the places where he shall be found,
and we will shall light upon him
as the dew falleth on the ground soil:
and of him and of all the men that are with him
there shall not be left so much as remain even one.

13 Moreover, if he be gotten gathered into a city,
then shall all Israel Yisra El
bring ropes bear lines to that city,
and we will draw shall drag it into the river wadi,
until there be not one small stone even a bundle
found there.

14 And Absalom Abi Shalom
and all the men of Israel Yisra El said,
The counsel of Hushai Hushay the Archite Arkiy
is better than the counsel of Ahithophel Achiy Thophel.
For the LORD Yah Veh
had appointed misvahed to defeat break down
the good counsel of Ahithophel Achiy Thophel,
to the intent so that the LORD Yah Veh
might bring evil upon Absalom Abi Shalom.

15 Then said Hushai Hushay unto Zadok Sadoq
and to Abiathar Abi Athar the priests,
Thus and thus did Ahithophel Achiy Thophel counsel
Absalom Abi Shalom and the elders of Israel Yisra El;
and thus and thus have I counselled.

16 Now therefore send quickly, and tell David, saying,
Lodge Stay not overnight
this night in the plains of the wilderness,
but in passing, speedily pass over;
lest the king sovereign be swallowed up,
and all the people that are with him.

17 Now Jonathan Yah Nathan and Ahimaaz Achiy Maas
stayed by Enrogel En Rogel;
for they might could not be seen to come into the city:
and a wench maid went and told them;
and they went and told king sovereign David.

18 Nevertheless a lad saw them,
and told Absalom Abi Shalom:
but they went both of them away quickly,
and came to a man's house in Bahurim Bachurim,
which had a well in his court;
whither they went down descended.

19 And the woman took
and spread a covering over the well's mouth face,
and spread ground corn grits thereon;
and the thing word was not known.

20 And when Absalom's Abi Shalom's servants
came to the woman to the house, they said,
Where is Ahimaaz Achiy Maas and Jonathan Yah Nathan?
And the woman said unto them,
They be gone passed over the brook streamlet of water.
And when they had sought and could not find them,
they returned to Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.

21 And so be it came to pass,
after they were departed went,
that they came up ascended out of the well,
and went and told king sovereign David,
and said unto David,
Arise, and pass quickly over the water:
for thus hath Ahithophel Achiy Thophel
counselled against you.

22 Then David arose,
and all the people that were with him,

2 SHEMU EL 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

whose heart is as the heart of a lion,
in melting, he melts:
for all Yisra El knows
that your father is mighty
and they with him are sons of valour.

11 So I counsel, that in gathering,
all Yisra El gathers to you
— from Dan even to Beer Sheba,
as the sand by the sea for abundance;
and that you go to war by yourself:
and we come upon him
in one of the places where we find him;
and we light on him as the dew falls on the soil:
and of him and of all the men with him
not even one remains:
and if he gathers into a city,
then all Yisra El bears lines to that city
and we drag it into the wadi,
until they find not even a bundle there.

14 And Abi Shalom and all the men of Yisra El say,
The counsel of Hushay the Arkiy
is better than the counsel of Achiy Thophel:
and Yah Veh misvahs to break down
the good counsel of Achiy Thophel,
so that Yah Veh brings evil on Abi Shalom.

15 Then Hushay says
to Sadoq and to Abi Athar the priests,
Achiy Thophel counsels thus and thus
and Abi Shalom and the elders of Yisra El;
and I counsel thus and thus:
and now send quickly and tell David,
saying, Stay not overnight
this night in the plains of the wilderness,
but in passing, pass over;
lest the sovereign and all the people with him
be swallowed.

17 And Yah Nathan and Achiy Maas stay by En Rogel;
for they cannot be seen to come into the city:
and a maid goes and tells them;
and they go and tell sovereign David:
and a lad sees them and tells Abi Shalom:
and both of them go away quickly
and come to a house of the man in Bachurim
which has a well in his court
— wherein they descend:
and the woman takes a covering
and spreads it over the face of the well;
and spreads grits thereon;
and the word is not known.

20 And when the servants of Abi Shalom
come to the house of the woman, they say,
Where are Achiy Maas and Yah Nathan?
And the woman says to them,
They pass over the streamlet of water.
— and they seek and cannot find them
and they return to Yeru Shalem.

21 And so be it, after they go,
they ascend from the well
and go and tell sovereign David,
and say to David,
Rise and pass quickly over the water:
for Achiy Thophel counsels against you thus.
And David and all the people with him rise

2 SAMUEL 17, 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they passed over *Jordan Yarden*:
by the morning light there lacked not one of them
that was not *gone passed over Jordan Yarden*.
23 And when *Ahithophel Achiy Thophel*
saw that his counsel was not *followed worked*,
he *saddled harnessed* his ass *he burro*, and arose,
and *gat him home went* to his house, to his city,
and *put his household in order*
misvahed concerning his house,
and *hanged strangled* himself, and died,
and was *buried entombed*
in the *sepulchre tomb* of his father.
24 Then David came to *Mahanaim Machanayim*.
And *Absalom Abi Shalom* passed over *Jordan Yarden*,
he and all the men of *Israel Yisra El* with him.
25 And *Absalom Abi Shalom*
made set Amasa captain of the host
instead of *Joab Yah Ab*:
which Amasa was a man's son,
whose name was *Ithra Yithra* an *Israelite Yisra Eliy*,
that went in to *Abigail Abi Gail*
the daughter of *Nahash Nachash*,
sister to *Zeruiah Seruyah*, *Joab's Yah Ab's* mother.
26 So *Israel Yisra El* and *Absalom Abi Shalom*
pitched encamped in the land of *Gilead Gilad*.
27 And *so be* it came to pass,
when David was come to *Mahanaim Machanayim*,
that *Shobi* the son of *Nahash Nachash* of *Rabbah*
of the *children sons* of *Ammon*,
and *Machir* the son of *Ammiel Ammi El*
of *Lodebar Lo Debar*,
and *Barzillai Barzillay* the *Gileadite Giladiy* of *Rogelim*,
28 Brought *near* beds, and basons,
and *earthen vessels formed instruments*,
and wheat, and barley, and flour, and parched *corn*,
and beans, and lentiles, and parched *pulse*,
29 And honey, and butter, and *sheep flock*,
and cheese of *kine oxen*,
for David, and for the people that were with him, to eat:
for they said, The people is *hungry famished*,
and *weary languid*, and thirsty, in the wilderness.

DAVID LINES UP FOR WAR

18 And David *numbered mustered* the people
that were with him,
and set *captains governors* of thousands,
and *captains governors* of hundreds over them.
2 And David sent forth a third *part* of the people
under the hand of *Joab Yah Ab*,
and a third *part* under the hand of *Abishai Abi Shai*
the son of *Zeruiah Seruyah*, *Joab's Yah Ab's* brother,
and a third *part*
under the hand of *Ittai Ittay* the *Gittite Gittiy*.
And the *king sovereign* said unto the people,
In going, I will shall surely go forth with you
myself — I also.
3 But the people *answered said*, Thou shalt not go forth:
for if *in fleeing*, we flee away,
they *will shall not care for set their heart on us*;
neither if half of us die,
will shall they care for set their heart on us:
but now thou art *worth as* ten thousand of us:
therefore now
it is better that thou *succour help* us out of the city.
4 And the *king sovereign* said unto them,
What *seemeth you best well—pleaseth your eyes*
I *will do shall work*.
And the *king sovereign*
stood by the *gate side portal handle*,
and all the people *came out went*
by hundreds and by thousands.
5 And the *king commanded sovereign misvahed*
Joab Yah Ab and *Abishai Abi Shai* and *Ittai Ittay*, saying,
Deal gently for my sake with the *young man lad*,
even with Absalom Abi Shalom.
And all the people heard when the *king sovereign*
gave *misvahed* all the *captains charge governors*
the word concerning *Absalom Abi Shalom*.

2 SHEMU EL 17, 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and pass over Yarden until the morning light;
until not one lacks
who passes not over Yarden.
23 And Achiy Thophel sees that his counsel works not,
he harnesses his he burro
and rises and goes to his house — to his city
and misvahs concerning his house;
and strangles himself and dies:
and is entombed in the tomb of his father.
24 And David comes to Machanayim:
and Abi Shalom passes over Yarden
— he and all the men of Yisra El with him.
25 And Abi Shalom sets Amasa captain of the host
in the stead of Yah Ab:
Amasa is a son of a man; his name is Yithra:
an Yisra Eliy who goes in to Abi Gail
the daughter of Nachash
sister to Seruyah the mother of Yah Ab.
26 And Yisra El and Abi Shalom
encamp in the land of Gilad.
27 And so be it,
David comes to Machanayim,
and Shobi the son of Nachash of Rabbah
of the sons of Ammon
and Machir the son of Ammi El of Lo Debar
and Barzillay the Giladiy of Rogelim
28 bring near beds and basons
and formed instruments;
and wheat and barley and flour and parched
and beans and lentiles and parched
29 and honey and butter and flock and cheese of oxen
for David and for the people with him, to eat:
for they say, The people famish and languish
and thirst in the wilderness.

DAVID LINES UP FOR WAR

18 And David musters the people with him
and sets governors of thousands
and governors of hundreds over them:
2 and David sends
a third of the people under the hand of Yah Ab
and a third under the hand of Abi Shai
the son of Seruyah the brother of Yah Ab
and a third under the hand of Ittay the Gittiy.
And the sovereign says to the people,
In going, I — I also go with you.
3 And the people say, You go not:
for in fleeing, if we flee,
neither set they their heart on us;
nor if half of us die,
set they their heart on us:
but now you are as ten thousand of us:
and now it is better that you help us from the city.
4 And the sovereign says to them,
Whatever well—pleases your eyes, I work.
And the sovereign stands by the portal handle
and all the people go by hundreds and by thousands.
5 And the sovereign
misvahs Yah Ab and Abi Shai and Ittay, saying,
For my sake, be gentle to the lad Abi Shalom.
And all the people hear the sovereign
misvah the word to all the governors
concerning Abi Shalom:

2 SAMUEL 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 6 So the people went out into the field
against **Israel to meet Yisra El:**
and the **battle war**
was in the **wood forest of Ephraim Ephrayim;**
- 7 Where the people of **Israel Yisra El** were **slain smitten**
before **at the face of** the servants of David,
and there was there a great **slaughter plague** that day
of twenty thousand **men.**
- 8 For the **battle war** was there scattered
over the **face of all the country land:**
and the **wood forest abounded**
devoured and consumed more people that day
than the sword **devoured consumed.**
- THE DEATH OF ABI SHALOM**
- 9 And **Absalom Abi Shalom**
met faced the servants of David.
And **Absalom Abi Shalom** rode upon a mule,
and the mule
went under the **thick boughs thicket** of a great oak,
and his head caught hold of the oak,
and he was **taken given up**
between the **heaven heavens and between** the earth;
and the mule that was under him **went away passed on.**
And a **certain one** man saw it, and told **Joab Yah Ab,**
and said, Behold,
I saw **Absalom Abi Shalom** hanged in an oak.
And **Joab Yah Ab** said unto the man that told him,
And, behold, thou sawest him,
and why didst thou not smite him there
to the **ground earth?**
and I **would should** have given thee
ten **shekels** of silver, and a **one** girdle.
- 12 And the man said unto **Joab Yah Ab,**
Though If I should **receive weigh**
a thousand **shekels** of silver **in mine hand upon my palm,**
yet would should I not **put send** forth mine hand
against the **king's sovereign's** son:
for in our **hearing ears**
the **king charged sovereign misvahed** thee
and **Abishai Abi Shai** and **Ittai Ittay,** saying,
Beware that none touch the young man Absalom
Guard against the lad — against Abi Shalom.
- 13 Otherwise I should have **wrought worked** falsehood
against mine own **life soul:**
for there is no **matter word**
hid concealed from the **king sovereign,**
and thou thyself
wouldest shouldst have set thyself against me.
- 14 Then said **Joab Yah Ab,**
I may not **tarry wait** thus **with thee at thy face.**
And he took three **darts scions** in his **hand palm,**
and **thrust staked** them
through the heart of **Absalom Abi Shalom,**
while he was yet alive in the **midst heart** of the oak.
- 15 And ten **young men lads**
that bare **Joab's armour Yah Ab's instruments**
compassed surrounded about
and smote **Absalom Abi Shalom,** and **slew deathified** him.
- 16 And **Joab blew Yah Ab blast** the **trumpet shophar,**
and the people returned from pursuing after **Israel Yisra El:**
for **Joab held back Yah Ab restrained** the people.
- 17 And they took **Absalom Abi Shalom,**
and cast him into a great pit in the **wood forest,**
and **laid stationed**
a very **mighty** great heap of stones upon him:
and all **Israel Yisra El** fled every **one man** to his tent.
- 18 Now **Absalom Abi Shalom** in his lifetime
had taken and **reared up stationed** for himself
a **pillar monolith,**
which is in the **king's dale Sovereign's Valley:**
for he said, I have no son
to **keep memorialize** my name **in remembrance:**
and he called the **pillar monolith** after his own name:
and it is called unto this day,
Absalom's place The Hand of Abi Shalom.
- 19 Then said **Ahimaaz Achiy Maas**
the son of **Zadok Sadoq,** says,

2 SHEMU EL 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 6 and the people go to the field to meet Yisra El:
and the war is in the forest of Ephrayim;
where the people of Yisra El are smitten
at the face of the servants of David;
and that day
there is a great plague of twenty thousand:
for the war scatters over the face of all the land:
and that day
the forest abounds and consumes more people
than the sword consumes.
- THE DEATH OF ABI SHALOM**
- 9 And Abi Shalom faces the servants of David:
and Abi Shalom rides on a mule;
and the mule goes under the thicket of a great oak;
and the oak holds his head
given between the heavens and between the earth;
and the mule under him passes on.
- 10 And one man sees it and tells Yah Ab and says,
Behold, I see Abi Shalom hang in an oak.
- 11 And Yah Ab says to the man that tells him,
Behold, you see!
Why smote you not him there to the earth?
— and I had given you ten silver and one girdle.
- 12 And the man says to Yah Ab,
If I weigh a thousand silver on my palm
I send not my hand against the son of the sovereign:
for in our ears
the sovereign misvahed you and Abi Shai and Ittay
saying, Guard against the lad — against Abi Shalom:
or I had worked falsehood against my own soul:
for no word is concealed from the sovereign
— and you yourself had set yourself against me.
- 13
- 14 Then Yah Ab says,
Not so: I await at your face.
- And he takes three scions in his palm
and stakes them through the heart of Abi Shalom
while he is yet alive in the heart of the oak:
and ten lads bearing the instruments of Yah Ab
surround Abi Shalom and smite and deathify him:
and Yah Ab blasts the shophar
and the people return from pursuing Yisra El:
for Yah Ab restrains the people.
- 15
- 16
- 17 And they take Abi Shalom
and cast him into a great pit in the forest
and station a mighty great heap of stones on him:
and all Yisra El flees every man to his tent.
- 18 And in his lifetime Abi Shalom
takes and stations a monolith for himself
in the Valley of the Sovereign:
for he says, I have no son to memorialize my name:
and he calls the monolith after his own name:
and it is called to this day,
The Hand of Abi Shalom.
- 19 Then Achiy Maas the son of Sadoq says,

2 SAMUEL 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Let me now run,
and bear the *king tidings* **sovereign the evangelism**,
how that *the LORD Yah Veh* hath *avenged* **judged** him
from the hand of his enemies.
20 And *Joab Yah Ab* said unto him,
Thou shalt not
bear tidings **be a man evangelizing** this day,
but thou shalt *bear tidings* **evangelize** another day:
but this day thou shalt *bear no tidings* **not evangelize**,
because the *king's* **sovereign's** son *is dead* **died**.
21 Then said *Joab Yah Ab* to *Cushi Kushi*,
Go tell the *king* **sovereign** what thou hast seen.
And *Cushi Kushi*
 bowed prostrated himself unto *Joab Yah Ab*, and ran.
22 Then said *Ahimaaz Achiy Maas* the son of *Zadok Sadoq*
 yet again to Joab added to say to Yah Ab,
But howsoever,
let me, I pray thee, also run after *Cushi Kushi*.
And *Joab Yah Ab* said,
Wherefore *wilt* **shalt** thou run, my son,
seeing that thou
hast no *tidings ready* **evangelism to present**?
23 But howsoever, *said he*, let me run.
And he said unto him, Run.
Then *Ahimaaz Achiy Maas*
ran by the way of the *plain* **environ**,
and *overran Cushi* **passed Kushi**.
24 And David *sat settled* between the two *gates* **portals**:
and the *watchman* **watcher** went up to the roof
over the *gate* **portal** unto the wall, and lifted up his eyes,
and *looked* **saw**, and behold a man running alone.
25 And the *watchman* **cried** **watcher called out**,
and told the *king* **sovereign**.
And the *king* **sovereign** said,
If he be alone, there is *tidings* **evangelism** in his mouth.
And *he came apace in walking, he walked*,
and *drew near* **approached**.
26 And the *watchman* **watcher** saw another man running:
and the *watchman* **watcher** called unto the porter,
and said, Behold *another* **a** man running alone.
And the *king* **sovereign** said,
He also *bringeth tidings* **evangelizeth**.
27 And the *watchman* **watcher** said,
Me thinketh the running **I see the racing**
of the *foremost* **first**
is like the *running* **racing** of *Ahimaaz Achiy Maas*
the son of *Zadok Sadoq*.
And the *king* **sovereign** said, He is a good man,
and cometh with good *tidings* **evangelism**.
28 And *Ahimaaz Achiy Maas* called,
and said unto the *king* **sovereign**, *All is well* **Shalom**.
And he *fell down* **prostrated** to the earth
upon his *face* **nostrils**
 before at the face of the king **sovereign**, and said,
Blessed be *the LORD Yah Veh* thy *God* **Elohim**,
which hath *delivered* **shut** up the men
that lifted up their hand
against my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**.
29 And the *king* **sovereign** said,
Is the *young man Absalom safe* **lad Abi Shalom at shalom**?
And *Ahimaaz answered Achiy Maas* said,
When *Joab Yah Ab* sent the *king's* **sovereign's** servant,
and *me* thy servant,
I saw a great *tumult* **multitude**, but I knew not what it was.
30 And the *king* **sovereign** said unto him,
Turn *aside* **around**, and stand *here* **thus**.
And he turned *aside* **around**, and stood still.
31 And, behold, *Cushi Kushi* came;
and *Cushi Kushi* said, *Tidings is brought* **Evangelism**,
my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**:
for *the LORD Yah Veh* hath *avenged* **judged** thee this day
from the hand of all them that rose up against thee.
32 And the *king* **sovereign** said unto *Cushi Kushi*,

2 SHEMU EL 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Run me to bear the evangelism to the sovereign;
for Yah Veh judged him by the hand of his enemies.
20 And Yah Ab says to him,
You are not a man to evangelize this day;
but to evangelize another day:
but this day you evangelize not
because the son of the sovereign died.
21 Then Yah Ab says to Kushi,
Go tell the sovereign what you saw.
22 And Kushi prostrates himself to Yah Ab and runs:
and Achiy Maas the son of Sadoq
adds to say to Yah Ab,
And whatever it be,
have me, I pray you, also run after Kushi.
And Yah Ab says,
Why is this — that you run, my son,
seeing you have no evangelism to present?
23 And whatever it be, let me run.
And he says to him, Run.
24 And Achiy Maas runs by the way of the environs
and passes Kushi:
25 and David settles between the two portals:
and the watcher goes up to the roof
over the portal to the wall
and lifts his eyes and sees;
and behold, a man running alone:
and the watcher calls out and tells the sovereign.
And the sovereign says,
If he is alone, there is evangelism in his mouth:
and in walking, he walks and approaches.
26 And the watcher sees another man running:
and the watcher calls to the porter and says,
Behold, a man running alone.
And the sovereign says, He also evangelizes.
27 And the watcher says,
I see the racing of the first
as the racing of Achiy Maas the son of Sadoq.
And the sovereign says, He is a good man
and comes with good evangelism.
28 And Achiy Maas calls to the sovereign and says,
Shalom.
And he prostrates to the earth on his nostrils
at the face of the sovereign and says,
Blessed — Yah Veh your Elohim
who shut up the men
who lifted their hand against my adoni the sovereign.
29 And the sovereign says,
Is the lad Abi Shalom at shalom?
And Achiy Maas says,
When Yah Ab sent the servant of the sovereign
and your servant,
I saw a great multitude, but I knew not what *it is*.
30 And the sovereign says,
Turn around and stand.
— and he turns around and stands.
31 And behold, Kushi comes; and Kushi says,
Evangelism, my adoni the sovereign:
for Yah Veh judges you this day
from the hand of all who rise against you.
32 And the sovereign says to Kushi,

2 SAMUEL 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Is the young man Absalom safe **lad** **Abi Shalom** at shalom?

And *Cushi* answered **Kushiy** said,

The enemies of my **lord adoni** the **king sovereign**,
and all that rise against thee to **do vilify** thee **hurt**,
be as that *young man* **lad** is.

33 And the **king** was *much moved* **sovereign quivered**,
and **went up ascended**
to the *chamber* **upper room** over the *gate* **portal**,
and wept:

and as he went, thus he said,

O my son *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**, my son,
my son *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**!

would **God O that** I had died for thee,

O *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**, my son, my son!

DAVID REBUKED FOR MOURNING

19

And it was told *Joab* **Yah Ab**, Behold,
the **king sovereign** weepeth and mourneth
for *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**.

2 And the **victory salvation** that day
was **turned** into mourning unto all the people:
for the people heard say that day

3 how the **king** was *grieved* **sovereign writhed** for his son.
And the people gat them by stealth that day into the city,
as people being ashamed steal away
when they flee in **battle war**.

4 But the **king** covered **sovereign muffled** his face,
and the **king sovereign** cried with a **loud great** voice,

O my son *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**,

O *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**, my son, my son!

5 And *Joab* **Yah Ab** came into the house
to the **king sovereign**, and said,

Thou hast shamed this day the faces of all thy servants,
which this day have **saved rescued** thy **life soul**,
and the **lives souls** of thy sons and of thy daughters,
and the **lives souls** of thy **wives women**,
and the **lives souls** of thy concubines;

6 In that thou lovest thine **enemies haters**,
and hatest thy **friends beloved**.

For thou hast **declared told** this day,
that thou regardest neither **princes governors** nor servants:
for this day I perceive,

that if *Absalom* **Abi Shalom** had lived,
and all we had died this day,

then it had **pleased thee well been straight** in thine eyes.

7 Now therefore arise, go forth,
and **speak comfortably word**
unto **the heart of** thy servants:

for I **swear oath** by the **LORD Yah Veh**,
if thou go not forth,

there will not tarry one no man shall stay overnight
with thee this night:

and that **will shall** be **worse more vilified** unto thee
than all the evil that befell thee from thy youth until now.

8 Then the **king sovereign** arose,
and **sat settled** in the **gate portal**.

And they told unto all the people, saying, Behold,
the **king sovereign** doth **sit settle** in the **gate portal**.

And all the people came

before at the face of the king sovereign:

for *Israel* **Yisra El** had fled every man to his tent.

THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF DAVID IS RESTORED

9 And all the people *were at strife* **pleaded**
throughout all the **tribes scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, saying,

The **king** saved **sovereign rescued** us
out of the **hand palm** of our enemies,
and he **delivered rescued** us

out of the **hand palm** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**;
and now he is fled

out of the land for *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**.

10 And *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**, whom we anointed over us,
is dead hath died in **battle war**.

Now therefore why **speak ye not a word hush ye**
of **bringing returning** the **king back sovereign**?

11 And **king sovereign** David
sent to *Zadok* **Sadoq** and to *Abiathar* **Abi Athar** the priests,
saying, **Speak Word** unto the elders of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
saying, Why are ye the last
to **bring return** the **king sovereign** back to his house?

2 SHEMU EL 18, 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Is the lad Abi Shalom at shalom?

And Kushiy says,
may the enemies of my adoni the sovereign
and all who rise against you to vilify you
become as that lad.

33 And the sovereign quivers
and ascends to the upper room over the portal
and weeps:

and as he goes, he says thus,

O my son Abi Shalom!

My son — my son Abi Shalom!

O that I had died in your stead!

O Abi Shalom! My son — my son!

DAVID REBUKED FOR MOURNING

19

And they tell Yah Ab, and behold,
the sovereign weeps and mourns for Abi Shalom:
and the salvation that day

2 becomes mourning to all the people:
for that day the people hear say
that the sovereign writhes for his son:

3 and that day the people steal away to the city
as shamed people steal away when they flee in war.

4 And the sovereign muffles his face
and the sovereign cries with a great voice,

O my son Abi Shalom!

O Abi Shalom! My son — my son!

5 And Yah Ab comes to the sovereign in the house
and says,

This day you shame the faces of all your servants,
who this day rescued your soul
and the souls of your sons and of your daughters
and the souls of your women
and the souls of your concubines;

6 for you love your haters and hate your beloved:
for this day you tell
that you regard neither governors nor servants:

and I perceive this day,
that had Abi Shalom lived

we had all died this day,

and it had been straight in your eyes.

7 Now rise, go and word to the heart of your servants:
for I oath by Yah Veh, if you go not forth,
no man stays overnight with you this night:
and this *is* more vilifying to you
than all the evil that befell you
from your youth until now.

8 And the sovereign rises and settles in the portal:
and they tell all the people, saying, Behold,
the sovereign settles in the portal.

And all the people come
at the face of the sovereign:
and Yisra El flees every man to his tent.

THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF DAVID IS RESTORED

9 And so be it,
all the people throughout all the scions of Yisra El
plead, saying,

The sovereign rescued us from the palm of our enemies;
and he rescued us from the palm of the Peleshethiy;
and now he flees from the land because of Abi Shalom:

10 and Abi Shalom, whom we anointed over us,
died in war.

And now why hush you in returning the sovereign?

11 And sovereign David
sends to Sadoq and to Abi Athar the priests,
saying, Word to the elders of Yah Hudah,
saying, Why are you the last
to return the sovereign to his house?

2 SAMUEL 19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

(seeing the speech and the word of all Israel Yisra El is come to the king sovereign, even to his house.)

12 Ye are my brethren, ye are my bones and my flesh:
wherefore then are ye the last
to bring back return the king sovereign?
13 And say ye to Amasa,
Art thou not of my bone, and of my flesh?
God do Elohim work so to me, and more add also,
if thou be not captain governor of the host
before me continually at my face all days
in the room of Joab under Yah Ab.
14 And he bowed spread the heart
of all the men of Judah Yah Hudah,
even as the heart of one man;
so that they sent this word unto the king sovereign,
Return thou, and all thy servants.
15 So the king sovereign returned,
and came to Jordan Yarden.
And Judah Yah Hudah came to Gilgal,
to go to meet the king sovereign,
to conduct pass the king sovereign over Jordan Yarden.
16 And Shimei Shimi the son of Gera,
a Benjamite Ben Yaminiy, which was of Bahurim Bachurim,
hasted and came down descended
with the men of Judah Yah Hudah
to meet king sovereign David.
17 And there were
a thousand men of Benjamin Ben Yamin with him,
and Ziba Siba the servant lad of the house of Saul Shaul,
and his fifteen sons and his twenty servants with him;
and they went prospered over Jordan Yarden
before at the face of the king sovereign.
18 And there went passed over a ferry boat raft
to carry pass over the king's sovereign's household,
and to do what he thought work good in his eyes.
And Shimei Shimi the son of Gera fell down
before at the face of the king sovereign,
as he was come passed over Jordan Yarden;
19 And said unto the king sovereign,
Let not my lord adoni
impute iniquity fabricate perversity unto me,
neither do thou remember
that which thy servant did perversely pervert
the day that my lord adoni the king sovereign
went out of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
that the king sovereign should take set it to his heart.
20 For thy servant doth know that I have sinned:
therefore, behold,
I am come the first this day
of all the house of Joseph Yoseph
to go down descend
to meet my lord adoni the king sovereign.
21 But Abishai Abi Shai the son of Zeruiah Seruyah
answered and said,
Shall not Shimei Shimi be put to death deathified for this,
because he cursed abased
the LORD'S Yah Veh's anointed?
22 And David said,
What have I to do with you, ye sons of Zeruiah Seruyah,
that ye should this day be adversaries satans unto me?
shall there any man be put to death deathified
this day in Israel Yisra El?
for do not I know that I am this day
king sovereign over Israel Yisra El?
23 Therefore the king sovereign said unto Shimei Shimi,
Thou shalt not die.
And the king sware sovereign oathed unto him.
24 And Mephibosheth Mephi Bosheth
the son of Saul Shaul
came down descended to meet the king sovereign,
and had neither dressed worked his feet,
nor trimmed worked his beard upper lip,
nor washed laundered his clothes,
from the day the king departed sovereign went
until the day he came again in peace shalom.
25 And so be it came to pass,
when he was come to Jerusalem Yeru Shalem
to meet the king sovereign,

2 SHEMU EL 19

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— and the word of all Yisra El
comes to the sovereign — to his house.

12 You are my brothers
— you are my bones and my flesh.
Why then are you the last to return the sovereign?
13 And say to Amasa,
Are you not of my bone and of my flesh?
Elohim work thus to me and add also
if you become not governor of the host
at my face all days under Yah Ab.
14 And he spreads the heart
of all the men of Yah Hudah as one man;
so that they send to the sovereign,
Return you and all your servants.
15 And the sovereign returns and comes to Yarden:
and Yah Hudah comes to Gilgal
— comes to meet the sovereign
to pass the sovereign over Yarden:
and Shimi the son of Gera
a Ben Yaminiy of Bachurim
hastens and descends with the men of Yah Hudah
to meet sovereign David
17 — with a thousand men of Ben Yamin
and Siba the lad of the house of Shaul
with his fifteen sons and his twenty servants;
and they prosper over Yarden
at the face of the sovereign.
18 And a raft passes over
— passes over the house of the sovereign
to work good in his eyes:
and he passes over Yarden
and Shimi the son of Gera
falls at the face of the sovereign,
and says to the sovereign,
O that my adoni
neither fabricate perversity to me,
nor remember what your servant perverted
the day my adoni the sovereign
went from Yeru Shalem
— that the sovereign set it to his heart:
for your servant knows I sinned:
and behold, I come this day
— the first of all the house of Yoseph
to descend to meet my adoni the sovereign.
21 And Abi Shai the son of Seruyah answers and says,
Was not Shimi deathified for this
— because he abased the anointed of Yah Veh?
22 And David says,
What have I to do with you, you sons of Seruyah,
that this day you are satans to me?
Is any man deathified this day in Yisra El?
For know I not that I — this day
am sovereign over Yisra El?
23 And the sovereign says to Shimi, You die not.
— and the sovereign oaths to him.
24 And Mephi Bosheth the son of Shaul
descends to meet the sovereign;
and has neither worked his feet
nor worked his upper lip
nor laundered his clothes
from the day the sovereign went
until the day he came in shalom.
25 And so be it,
he comes to Yeru Shalem to meet the sovereign,

2 SAMUEL 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that the **king sovereign** said unto him,
Wherefore wentest not thou with me,
Mephibosheth Mephi Bosheth?
26 And he answered **said**, My **lord adoni**,
O **king sovereign**, my servant deceived me:
for thy servant said,
I will saddle **shall harness** me an ass a he burro,
that I may ride thereon, and go to the **king sovereign**;
because thy servant is lame.
27 And he hath *slandered* **treaded upon** thy servant
unto my **lord adoni** the **king sovereign**;
but my **lord adoni** the **king sovereign**
is as an angel of **God Elohim**:
do work therefore what is good in thine eyes.
28 For all of my father's house
were **naught** but **dead men men of death**
before my lord to my adoni the **king sovereign**:
yet didst thou set thy servant
among them that did eat at thine own table.
What **right justness** therefore have I yet
to cry any more unto the **king sovereign**?
29 And the **king sovereign** said unto him,
Why **speakest wordest** thou any more
of thy **matters words**?
I have said, Thou and *Ziba divide* **Siba** allot the **land field**.
30 And *Mephibosheth Mephi Bosheth*
said unto the **king sovereign**, Yea, let him take all,
forasmuch as since my **lord adoni** the **king sovereign**
is come again in **peace shalom** unto his own house.
31 And *Barzillai Barzillay* the **Gileadite Giladiy**
came down descended from Rogelim,
and went **passed** over **Jordan Yarden**
with the **king sovereign**,
to **conduct send** him over **Jordan Yarden**.
32 Now *Barzillai Barzillay*
was a very aged man **aged mightily**,
even fourscore — a son of eighty years old:
and he had *provided* **sustained** the **king sovereign**
of sustenance
while he *lay* **resided** at **Mahanaim Machanayim**;
for he was a very **mighty** great man.
33 And the **king sovereign** said unto *Barzillai Barzillay*,
Come Pass thou over with me,
and I will **feed shall sustain** thee with me
in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
34 And *Barzillai Barzillay* said unto the **king sovereign**,
How long have I to live
How many days are the years of my life,
that I should *go up* **ascend** with the **king sovereign**
unto **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**?
35 I am this day *fourscore* **a son of eighty** years old:
and can I **discern know** between good and evil?
can thy servant taste what I eat or what I drink?
can I hear any more the voice of *singing men* **songsters**
and *singing women* **songstresses**?
wherefore then should thy servant
be yet a burden unto my **lord adoni** the **king sovereign**?
36 Thy servant
will **go shall pass** a little way over **Jordan Yarden**
with the **king sovereign**:
and why, **in dealing**,
should the **king sovereign**
recompense it me with such a reward **deal with me thus**?
37 Let thy servant, I pray thee, turn back again,
that I may die in mine own city,
and be **buried** by the **grave tomb**
of my father and of my mother.
But behold thy servant **Chimham Kimham**;
let him **go pass** over
with my **lord adoni** the **king sovereign**;
and **do work** to him
what shall seem good *unto thee* **in thine eyes**.
38 And the **king answered sovereign said**,
Chimham Kimham shall **go pass** over with me,
and I will **do shall work** to him
that which shall seem good *unto thee* **in thine eyes**:
and whatsoever thou shalt **require choose** of me,
that will **shall I do work** for thee.

2 SHEMU EL 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the sovereign says to him,
Why went you not with me, Mephi Bosheth?
26 And he says, My adoni, O sovereign,
my servant deceived me:
for your servant said,
I harness me a he burro
to ride and go to the sovereign
— because your servant is lame;
27 and he treaded against your servant
to my adoni the sovereign;
and my adoni the sovereign *is* as an angel of Elohim:
so work whatever is good in your eyes:
28 for all of the house of my father
are **naught** but men of death
to my adoni the sovereign:
yet you set your servant
among them who eat at your own table.
What justness have I yet
to cry any more to the sovereign?
29 And the sovereign says to him,
Why word you any more of your words?
I said, You and Siba allot the field.
30 And Mephi Bosheth says to the sovereign,
Yes, have him take all
— since my adoni the sovereign
comes again in shalom to his own house.
31 And Barzillay the Giladiy descends from Rogelim
and passes over Yarden with the sovereign
to send him over Yarden.
32 And Barzillay aged mightily
— a son of eighty years:
and he sustained the sovereign
when he resided at Machanayim;
and he *is* a mighty great man.
33 And the sovereign says to Barzillay,
Pass over with me
and I sustain you with me in Yeru Shalem.
34 And Barzillay says to the sovereign,
How many days are the years of my life,
that I ascend with the sovereign to Yeru Shalem?
35 I am this day a son of eighty years:
Know I good and evil?
Your servant — tastes I what I eat or what I drink?
Hear I any more
the voice of songsters and songstresses?
Why then becomes your servant
yet a burden to my adoni the sovereign?
36 Your servant passes a little way over Yarden
with the sovereign:
In dealing, why deals the sovereign thus with me?
37 O that your servant, I pray you,
return to die in my own city
by the tomb of my father and of my mother:
but behold your servant Kimham;
pass him over with my adoni the sovereign;
and work to him what seems good in your eyes.
38 And the sovereign says,
Kimham passes over with me;
and I work to him what seems good in your eyes:
and whatever you choose of me, I work for you.

2 SAMUEL 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

39 And all the people went **passed** over Jordan **Yarden**.
And when the *king* was come **sovereign passed** over,
the *king* **sovereign** kissed *Barzillai* **Barzillay**,
and blessed him;
and he returned unto his own place.
40 Then the *king* went on **sovereign passed over** to Gilgal,
and *Chimham* went on **Kimham passed over** with him:
and all the people of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
conducted **passed** the *king* **sovereign over**,
and also half the people of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
41 And, behold,
all the men of *Israel* **Yisra El** came to the *king* **sovereign**,
and said unto the *king* **sovereign**,
Why have our brethren the men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
stolen thee away,
and have *brought* **passed** the *king* **sovereign**,
and his household, and all David's men with him,
over *Jordan* **Yarden**?
42 And all the men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
answered the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Because the *king* **sovereign** is near of kin to us:
wherefore then be ye *angry* **inflamed** for this *matter* **word**?
in eating, have we eaten at all
of the *king's* **sovereign's** cost?
or hath he *given* **borne** us any *gift* **offering**?
43 And the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
answered the men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, and said,
We have ten *parts* **hands** in the *king* **sovereign**,
and we have also more *right* in David than ye:
why then did ye *despise* **belittle** us,
that our *advice* **word** should not be first had
in *bringing back* **returning** our *king* **sovereign**?
And the words of the men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
were *fiercer* **harder**
than the words of the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

20

And there *happened to be* **was called** there
a man of *Belial* **Beli Yaal**, whose name was Sheba,
the son of Bichri, a *Benjamite* **Ben Yaminiy**:
and he *blew* **blast** a *trumpet* **shophar**, and said,
We have no *part* **allotment** in David,
neither have we inheritance in the son of *Jesse* **Yishay**:
every man to his tents, O *Israel* **Yisra El**.
2 So every man of *Israel* **Yisra El**
went up **ascended** from after David,
and *followed* **went after** Sheba the son of Bichri:
but the men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
clave **adhered** unto their *king* **sovereign**,
from *Jordan* **Yarden** even to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
3 And David came to his house at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
and the *king* **sovereign**
took the ten women *his* concubines,
whom he had *left* **allowed** to *keep* **guard** the house,
and *put* **gave** them in *ward* **a house of guard**,
and *fed* **sustained** them, but went not in unto them.
So they were *shut up* **bound**
unto the day of their death **they died**,
living in widowhood.
4 Then said the *king* **sovereign** to Amasa,
Assemble **Cry out unto** me the men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
within three days,
and be **stand** thou here *present*.
5 So Amasa went to *assemble*
the men of *Judah* **cried out unto** *Yah Hudah*:
but he *tarried* **lingered**
longer than **beyond** the *set time* **season**
which he had appointed him **to** *congregate*.
6 And David said to *Abishai* **Abi Shai**,
Now shall Sheba the son of Bichri do
us more *harm* **evil** than did *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**:
take thou thy *lord's* **adoni's** servants, and pursue after him,
lest he get **find** him *fenced* **protected** cities,
and *escape us* **deliver himself from our eyes**.
7 And there went out after him *Joab's* **Yah Ab's** men,
and the *Cherethites* **executioners**,
and the *Pelethites* **couriers**, and all the mighty men:
and they went out of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
to pursue after Sheba the son of Bichri.

SHEBA REBELS

2 SHEMU EL 19, 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

39 And all the people pass over Yarden:
and the sovereign passes over;
and the sovereign kisses Barzillay and blesses him;
and he returns to his own place:
40 and the sovereign passes over to Gilgal
and Kimham passes over with him:
and all the people of Yah Hudah
pass the sovereign over
and also half the people of Yisra El.
41 And behold,
all the men of Yisra El come to the sovereign
and say to the sovereign,
Why have our brothers the men of Yah Hudah
stolen you away
— and pass the sovereign and his household
and all the men of David with him over Yarden?
42 And all the men of Yah Hudah
answer the men of Yisra El,
Because the sovereign is near to us:
Why then inflame you for this word?
In eating, eat we that of the sovereign?
Bears he us any offering?
43 And the men of Yisra El
answer the men of Yah Hudah and say,
We have ten hands in the sovereign
and we have also more in David than you.
Why then belittle you us,
that our word be not first to return our sovereign?
— and the words of the men of Yah Hudah
are harder than the words of the men of Yisra El.

20

And so be a man,
called of Beli Yaal, his name is Sheba
the son of Bichria a Ben Yaminiy:
and he blasts a shophar and says,
We have neither allotment in David
nor inheritance in the son of Yishay:
every man to his tents, O Yisra El.
2 And every man of Yisra El ascends from after David
and goes after Sheba the son of Bichri:
and the men of Yah Hudah adhere to their sovereign
— from Yarden even to Yeru Shalem.
3 And David comes to his house at Yeru Shalem;
and the sovereign takes the ten women concubines
whom he allowed to guard the house;
and gives them in a house of guard and sustains them;
but goes not in to them.
Thus they are bound to the day they die
— living in widowhood.
4 Then the sovereign says to Amasa,
Cry out to me the men of Yah Hudah in three days;
and you stand here.
5 So Amasa cries out to Yah Hudah:
but he lingers beyond the season to congregate.
6 And David says to Abi Shai,
Now Sheba the son of Bichri
does us more evil than Abi Shalom:
take the servants of your your adoni and pursue him;
lest he find cities of protection
and delivers himself from our eyes.
7 And the men of Yah Ab go after him
— the executioners and the couriers
and all the mighty;
and they go from Yeru Shalem
to pursue Sheba the son of Bichri:

SHEBA REBELS

2 SAMUEL 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 When they were at the great stone
which is in *Gibeon* **Gibon**,
Amasa went *before them* **at their face**.
And *Joab's garment* **Yah Ab's tailoring**
that he had *put on* **enrobed**
was girded unto him, and upon it a girdle with a sword
fastened **joined** upon his loins in the sheath *thereof*;
and as he went forth it fell out.
9 And *Joab* **Yah Ab** said to Amasa,
Art thou in *health* **shalom**, my brother?
And *Joab took* **Yah Ab held** Amasa by the beard
with the right *hand* **to** kiss him.
10 But Amasa *took no heed to* **regarded not** the sword
that was in *Joab's* **Yah Ab's** hand:
so he smote him therewith in the fifth *rib*,
and *shed* **poured** out his *bowels* **inwards**
to the *ground* **earth**,
and *struck him not again* **repeated not**; and he died.
So *Joab* **Yah Ab** and *Abishai* **Abi Shai** his brother
pursued after Sheba the son of Bichri.
11 And *one a man of Joab's men* **Yah Ab's lads**
stood by him, and said,
He that favoureth Joab **Whoever delighteth in Yah Ab**,
and *he that is* **whoever be** for David,
let him go after *Joab* **Yah Ab**.
12 And Amasa *wallowed* **rolled** in blood
in the midst of the highway.
And when the man saw that all the people stood still,
he *removed* **turned** Amasa out of the highway
into the field, and cast a cloth upon him,
when he saw that every one that came by him stood still.
13 When he was removed out of the highway,
all the *people went on* **men passed over** after *Joab* **Yah Ab**,
to pursue after Sheba the son of Bichri.
14 And he *went* **passed** through
all the *tribes* **scions of Israel** **Yisra El** unto Abel,
and to *Bethmaachah* **Beth Maachah**,
and all the *Berites* **Beriy**:
and they *were gathered together* **congregated**,
and went also after him.
15 And they came and besieged him
in Abel of *Bethmaachah* **Beth Maachah**,
and they *cast up* **poured** a *bank* **mound** against the city,
and it stood in the trench:
and all the people that were with *Joab* **Yah Ab**
battered **ruined** the wall, *to throw it down* **and felled it**.
16 Then *cried* **called out** a wise woman out of the city,
Hear, hear; say, I pray you, unto *Joab* **Yah Ab**,
Come near **Approach** hither,
that I may *speak* **word** with thee.
17 And when he *was come near* **approached** unto her,
the woman said, Art thou *Joab* **Yah Ab**?
And he *answered* **said**, I am he.
Then she said unto him,
Hear the words of *thine handmaid* **thy maid**.
And he *answered* **said**, I do hear.
18 Then she *spake* **said**, saying,
In wording, They *were wont to speak* **worded**
in *old time* **the beginning**, saying,
In asking, They shall *surely* ask *counsel* at Abel:
and so they *ended the matter* **consummated**.
19 I am *one of them that are peaceable* **shalam**
and *faithful in Israel* **am amenable in Yisra El**:
thou seekest to *destroy* **deathify** a city
and a mother in *Israel* **Yisra El**:
why *wilt* **shalt** thou swallow up
the inheritance of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**?
20 And *Joab* **Yah Ab** answered and said,
Far be it, far be it from me,
that I should swallow up or *destroy* **ruin**.
21 The *matter* **word** is not so:
but a man of mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
Sheba the son of Bichri by name,
hath lifted up his hand against the *king* **sovereign**,
even against David: *deliver* **give** him only,
and I *will depart* **shall go** from the city.
And the woman said unto *Joab* **Yah Ab**, Behold,
his head shall be thrown to thee *over* **through** the wall.

2 SHEMU EL 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 and they are at the great stone in Gibon;
and Amasa goes at their face:
and the tailoring Yah Ab enrobes
is girt to him with a girdle
and a sword joins his loins in the sheath:
and as he goes it falls out.
9 And Yah Ab says to Amasa,
Are you in shalom, my brother?
— and Yah Ab holds Amasa by the beard
with his right to kiss him.
10 And Amasa regards not the sword
in the hand of Yah Ab:
and he smites him therewith in the fifth
and pours his inwards to the earth
and repeats it not;
and he dies:
and Yah Ab and Abi Shai his brother
pursue after Sheba the son of Bichri.
11 And a man of the lads of Yah Ab
stands by him and says,
Whoever delights in Yah Ab and whoever is for David
— go after Yah Ab.
12 And Amasa rolls in blood midst the highway:
and the man sees all the people standing still;
and he turns Amasa from the highway into the field
and casts a cloth on him:
and he sees every one coming by him stand still:
and they remove him from the highway:
and all the men pass after Yah Ab
to pursue after Sheba the son of Bichri:
13 and he passes through all the scions of Yisra El
to Abel and to Beth Maachah and all the Beriy;
and they also congregate and go after him:
14 and they go and besiege him
in Abel of Beth Maachah:
and they pour a mound against the city
and it stands in the trench:
and all the people with Yah Ab
ruin the wall and fell it.
15 And a wise woman calls out from the city,
Hear! Hear! I pray you, say to Yah Ab,
Approach here, and I word with you.
16 And he approaches her,
and the woman says, Are you Yah Ab?
And he says, I.
Then she says to him, Hear the words of your maid.
And he says, I hear.
17 Then she says, saying,
In wording, they word in the beginning, saying,
In asking, they ask at Abel:
and so they consummate.
18 I shalam and am amenable in Yisra El:
you seek to deathify a city and a mother in Yisra El:
Why swallow the inheritance of Yah Veh?
19 And Yah Ab answers and says,
Far be it, far be it from me to swallow or ruin:
the word is not thus:
20 but a man of mount Ephrayim
Sheba the son of Bichri by name
lifts his hand against the sovereign — against David:
give him only, and I go from the city.
And the woman says to Yah Ab,
Behold, his head — thrown to you through the wall.

2 SAMUEL 20, 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

22 Then the woman
went unto all the people in her wisdom.
And they cut off the head of Sheba the son of Bichri,
and cast it out to **Joab Yah Ab**.
And he *blew* **blast** a trumpet **shophar**,
and they *retired* **scattered** from the city,
every man to his tent.
And **Joab Yah Ab** returned to **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**
unto the **king sovereign**.
23 Now **Joab Yah Ab**
was over all the host of **Israel Yisra El**:
and **Benaiah Bena Yah** the son of **Jehoiada Yah Yada**
was over the **Cherethites executioners**
and over the **Pelethites couriers**:
24 And **Adoram Adoni Ram** was over the **tribute vassal**:
and **Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat** the son of **Ahilud Achiy Lud**
was **recorder remembrancer**:
25 And **Sheva Sheya** was scribe:
and **Zadok Sadoq** and **Abiathar Abi Athar** were the priests:
26 And **Ira** also the **Jairite Yairiy**
was a **chief ruler priest** about David.

REVENGE OF THE GIBONIY

21 Then there was a famine in the days of David
three years, year after year;
and David
enquired of the LORD **sought the face of Yah Veh**.
And the **LORD answered Yah Veh said**,
It is for **Saul Shaul**, and for **his the** bloody house,
because he *slew* **deathified** the **Gibeonites Giboniy**.
2 And the **king sovereign** called the **Gibeonites Giboniy**,
and said unto them;
(now the **Gibeonites Giboniy**
were not of the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**,
but of the remnant of the **Amorites Emoriy**;
and the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**
had **sworn oathed** unto them:
and **Saul Shaul** sought to *slay smite* them
in his **zeal jealousy**
to the **children sons of Israel Yisra El**
and **Judah Yah Hudah**.)
3 Wherefore David said unto the **Gibeonites Giboniy**,
What shall I **do work** for you?
and wherewith
shall I *make the atonement* **kapar/atone for you**,
that ye may bless the inheritance of the **LORD Yah Veh**?
4 And the **Gibeonites Giboniy** said unto him,
We **will shall** have no silver nor gold of **Saul Shaul**,
nor of his house;
neither for us
shalt thou *kill* **deathify** any man in **Israel Yisra El**.
And he said, What ye shall say,
that **will shall I do work** for you.
5 And they *answered said* to the **king sovereign**,
The man that *consumed finished* us **off**,
and that *devised considered* against us
that we should be *destroyed desolated*
from *remaining standing by*
in any of the **coasts borders of Israel Yisra El**,
6 Let seven men of his sons be *delivered given* unto us,
and we *will hang shall impale* them up
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** in **Gibeah Gibah** of **Saul Shaul**,
whom the **LORD Yah Veh** did choose.
And the **king sovereign** said, I **will shall** give them.
7 But the **king sovereign**
spared **Mephibosheth Mephi Bosheth**,
the son of **Jonathan Yah Nathan** the son of **Saul Shaul**,
because of the **LORD'S Yah Veh's** oath
that was between them,
between David and **Jonathan between Yah Nathan**
the son of **Saul Shaul**.
8 But the **king sovereign**
took the two sons of **Rizpah Rispah**
the daughter of **Aiah Ajah**,
whom she *bare birthed* unto **Saul Shaul**,
Armoni and Mephibosheth Mephi Bosheth;
and the five sons of **Michal** the daughter of **Saul Shaul**,
whom she *brought up birthed* for **Adriel Adri El**
the son of **Barzillai Barzillay** the **Meholathite Mecholathiy**:

2 SHEMU EL 20, 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

22 — and in her wisdom
the woman goes to all the people;
and they cut off the head of Sheba the son of Bichri
and cast it to Yah Ab.

And he blasts a shophar
and they scatter from the city
— every man to his tent:
and Yah Ab returns to Yeru Shalem to the sovereign.

23 And Yah Ab
is over all the host of Yisra El:
and Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada
is over the executioners and over the couriers:
24 and Adoni Ram is over the vassal:
and Yah Shaphat the son of Achiy Lud
is remembrancer:
25 and Sheya is scribe:
and Sadoq and Abi Athar are priests:
26 and also Ira the Yairiy is a priest to David.

REVENGE OF THE GIBONIY

21 And there is a famine in the days of David
— three years — year after year;
and David seeks the face of Yah Veh.

And Yah Veh says,
It is for Shaul and for the bloody house,
because he deathified the Giboniy.

2 And the sovereign calls the Giboniy
and says to them
— now the Giboniy are not of the sons of Yisra El
but of the remnant of the Emoriy
— and the sons of Yisra El oathed to them:
— and Shaul sought to smite them in his jealousy
toward the sons of Yisra El and Yah Hudah:
3 — yes, David says to the Giboniy,
What work I for you?
Wherewith **kapar/atone** I for you
so that you bless the inheritance of Yah Veh?

4 And the Giboniy says to him,
We have silver and gold
neither of Shaul nor of his house;
nor for us to deathify any man in Yisra El.
And he says, Whatever you say, I work for you.

5 And they say to the sovereign,
The man who finishes us off
— who considers against us
desolates us from standing by
in any of the borders of Yisra El:
6 give us seven men of his sons
and we impale them to Yah Veh in Gibah of Shaul,
whomever Yah Veh chooses.

And the sovereign says, I give them.

7 And the sovereign spares Mephi Bosheth
the son of Yah Nathan the son of Shaul
because of the oath of Yah Veh between them
— between David
and between Yah Nathan the son of Shaul.

8 And the sovereign
takes the two sons of Rizpah the daughter of Ajah
whom she birthed to Shaul
— Armoni and Mephi Bosheth;
and the five sons of Michal the daughter of Shaul,
whom she birthed to Adri El
the son of Barzillay the Mecholathiy:

2 SAMUEL 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

9 And he delivered gave them
into the hands of the *Gibeonites* **Giboniy**,
and they *hanged* **impaled** them in the *hill* **mountain**
before the *LORD* **at the face of Yah Veh**:
and they fell *all seven* **sevenfold** together,
and were *put to death* **deathified** in the days of harvest,
in the first *days*, in the beginning of barley harvest.
10 And *Rizpah* **Rispah** the daughter of *Aiah* **Ajah**
took *sackcloth* **saq**, and spread it for her upon the rock,
from the beginning of harvest
until water *dropped* **poured** upon them
out of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and *suffered* **gave**
neither the *birds* **flyers** of the *air* **heavens**
to rest on them by day,
nor the *beasts* **live beings** of the field by night.
11 And it was told David
what *Rizpah* **Rispah** the daughter of *Aiah* **Ajah**,
the concubine of *Saul* **Shaul**, had *done* **worked**.
12 And David went and took the bones of *Saul* **Shaul**
and the bones of *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** his son
from the *men* **masters** of *Jabeshgilead* **Yabesh Gilad**,
which had stolen them
from the *street* **broadway** of *Bethshan* **Beth Shaan**,
where the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** had hanged them,
in the day when the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
had *slain* **smitten** *Saul* **Shaul** in Gilboa:
13 And he *brought up* **ascended** from thence
the bones of *Saul* **Shaul**
and the bones of *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** his son;
and they gathered the bones
of them that were *hanged* **impaled**.
14 And the bones of *Saul* **Shaul**
and *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** his son
buried **entombed** they
in the *country* **land** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin** in *Zelah* **Sela**,
in the *sepulchre* **tomb** of *Kish* **Qish** his father:
and they performed
all that the *king* **commanded** **sovereign misvahed**.
And after that *God* **Elohim** was intreated for the land.
15 Moreover the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
had yet war again with *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and David *went down* **descended**,
and his servants with him,
and fought against the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**:
and David *waxed faint* **fluttered**.
16 And *Ishbibenob* **Yishbo Be Nob**,
which was of the *sons of the giant* **born birthed to Rapha**,
the weight of whose spear
weighed three hundred *shekels of brass* **copper** in weight,
he being girded with a new *sword*,
thought **said** to have *slain* **smitten** David.
17 But *Abishai* **Abi Shai** the son of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah**
succoured **helped** him,
and smote the *Philistine* **Peleshethiy**,
and *killed* **deathified** him.
Then the men of David *sware* **oathed** unto him, saying,
Thou shalt go no more out with us to *battle* **war**,
that thou quench not the *light* **lamp** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
18 And **so be** it came to pass after this,
that there was again
a *battle* **war** with the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** at Gob:
then *Sibbechai* **Sibbechay** the *Hushathite* **Hushathiy**
slew **smote** Saph,
which was of the *sons of the giant* **born birthed to Rapha**.
19 And there was again a *battle* **war** in Gob
with the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
where *Elhanan* **El Hanan**
the son of *Jaareoregim* **Yaare Oregim**,
a *Bethlehemite* **Beth Lechemiy**,
slew the brother of Goliath **smote Golyath**
the *Cittite* **Gittiy**,
the *staff* **timber** of whose spear was like a weaver's beam.
20 And there was yet a *battle* **war** in Gath,
where was a man of *great stature* **measure**,
that had on every hand *six fingers*
and the *digits of his hands* **were six**,

2 SHEMU EL 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 and he gives them into the hands of the Giboniy
and they impale them in the mountain
at the face of Yah Veh:
and they fall sevenfold together
— deathified in the days of harvest
at the first — in the beginning of barley harvest.
10 And Rispah the daughter of Ajah
takes saq and spreads it for her on the rock
— from the beginning of harvest
until water from the heavens pours on them
and gives neither the flyers of the heavens
to rest on them by day
nor the live beings of the field by night.
11 And they tell David
what Rispah the daughter of Ajah,
the concubine of Shaul works:
12 and David goes and takes the bones of Shaul
and the bones of Yah Nathan his son
from the masters of Yabesh Gilad
— who stole them from the Broadway of Beth Shaan,
where the Peleshethiy hanged them
in the day the Peleshethiy smote Shaul in Gilboa:
13 and from there he ascends the bones of Shaul
and the bones of Yah Nathan his son;
and they gather the bones of the impaled;
14 and they entomb the bones of Shaul
and Yah Nathan his son
in the land of Ben Yamin in Sela
in the tomb of Qish his father:
and they perform all the sovereign misvahs:
and after they intreat Elohim for the land.
15 And again the Peleshethiy war with Yisra El;
and David descends with his servants
and fights the Peleshethiy:
and David flutters:
16 and Yishbo Be Nob, who is birthed to Rapha,
whose spear weighs three hundred copper weight
— being girded with a new one
says of smiting David.
17 But Abi Shai the son of Seruyah helps him
and smites the Peleshethiy and deathifies him.
And the men of David oath to him, saying,
Neither go anymore with us to war,
nor quench the lamp of Yisra El.
18 And so be it, after this,
there is war again with the Peleshethiy at Gob:
then Sibbechay the Hushathiy smites Saph,
who is birthed to Rapha.
19 And again there is war with the Peleshethiy in Gob,
and El Hanan
the son of Yaare Oregim a Beth Lechemiy
smites Golyath the Gittiy
the timber of whose spear is as the beam of a weaver:
20 and again there is war in Gath
and there is a man of measure
— the digits of his hands are six

2 SAMUEL 21, 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and on every foot six toes

and the digits of his feet were six,

four and twenty in number;

and he also was *born birthed* to the giant **Rapha**.

21 And when he *defied Israel reproached* Yisra El,

Jonathan **Yah Nathan**

the son of *Shimeah Shimah* the brother of David

slew **smote** him.

22 These four were *born birthed* to the giant **Rapha** in Gath,

and fell by the hand of David,

and by the hand of his servants.

THE SONG OF HALAL OF DAVID

22 And David *spake worded* unto the **LORD Yah Veh**

the words of this song in the day

that the **LORD Yah Veh** had delivered **rescued** him

out of the *hand palm* of all his enemies,

and out of the *hand palm* of **Saul Shaul**:

2 And he said, *The LORD Yah Veh* is my rock,

and my *fortress stronghold*, and my *deliverer escape*;

3 The **God Elohim** of my rock;

in him *will shall* I *trust seek* **refuge**:

he is my **shield buckler**, and the horn of my salvation,

my *high tower secure* **loft**, and my *refuge retreat*,

my saviour; thou savest me from violence.

4 I *will shall* call on the **LORD Yah Veh**,

who is worthy to be praised the **halaled**:

so shall I be saved from mine enemies.

5 When the waves of death *compassed surrounded* me,

the *floods wadies* of *ungodly men* **Beli Yaal**

made me afraid frightened me;

6 The *sorrows cords* of *hell sheol*

compassed me about surrounded me;

the snares of death

prevented confronted me;

7 In my *distress tribulation*

I called upon the **LORD Yah Veh**,

and cried to my **God Elohim**:

and he did hear my voice out of his *temple manse*,

and my *cry did enter into* **be in** his ears.

8 Then the earth shook and *trembled quaked*;

the foundations of *heaven the heavens*

moved quaked and shook,

because he was *wroth inflamed*.

9 There *went up ascended* a smoke out of his nostrils,

and fire out of his mouth devoured:

coals were *kindled burnt* away by it.

10 He *bowed spread* the heavens also,

and *came down descended*;

and *dripping* darkness was under his feet.

11 And he rode upon a cherub, and did fly:

and he was seen

upon the wings of the *wind spirit/wind*.

12 And he *made placed* darkness

pavilions brush arbors round about him,

dark waters, and thick clouds of *the skies vapour*.

13 Through the *brightness before brilliancy in front* of him

were coals of fire *kindled burnt* away.

14 The **LORD Yah Veh**

thundered from *heaven the heavens*,

and the *most High uttered Elyon gave* his voice.

15 And he sent out arrows, and scattered them;

lightning, and *discomfited agitated* them.

16 And the *channels reservoirs* of the sea

appeared were seen,

the foundations of the world

were *discovered exposed*,

at the rebuking of the **LORD Yah Veh**,

at the *blast breath* of the *breath spirit/wind* of his nostrils.

17 He sent from *above high*, he took me;

he drew me out of *many great* waters;

18 He *delivered rescued* me from my strong enemy,

and from them that hated me:

for they were too strong for me.

19 They *prevented confronted* me

in the day of my calamity:

but the **LORD Yah Veh** was my *stay support*.

20 He brought me forth also into a *large place an expanse*:

he *delivered rescued* me, because he delighted in me.

2 SHEMU EL 21, 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the digits of his feet are six

— twenty—four in number:

and he also *is* birthed to **Rapha**:

21 and he reproaches Yisra El

and **Yah Nathan**

the son of *Shimah* the brother of David

smites him.

22 These four are birthed to **Rapha** in Gath

and fall by the hand of David

and by the hand of his servants.

THE SONG OF HALAL OF DAVID

22 And David words the words of this song

to **Yah Veh**

the day **Yah Veh** rescues him

from the palm of all his enemies

and from the palm of **Shaul**:

and he says,

Yah Veh is my rock

and my *stronghold* and my *escape*;

the **Elohim** of my rock

— in him I seek *refuge*:

my *buckler* and the horn of my salvation;

my *secure* **loft** and my *retreat*;

my saviour — you save me from violence.

4 I call on **Yah Veh** — the *halaled*:

and I am saved from my enemies.

5 The waves of death surround me;

the wadies of **Beli Yaal** frighten me;

6 the cords of *sheol* surround me;

the snares of death confront me:

7 in my tribulation I call on **Yah Veh**

and cry to my **Elohim**.

He hears my voice from his manse

and my cry is in his ears:

8 then the earth shakes and quakes;

the foundations of the heavens quake and shake

because he inflames.

9 Smoke from his nostrils ascend

and fire from his mouth consumes:

coals burn away by it.

10 He spreads the heavens and descends;

and dripping darkness *is* under his feet:

and he rides on a cherub and flies

— and is seen on the wings of the *spirit/wind*:

and he places darkness

— *sukkoth/brush arbors* all around him;

dark waters and thick clouds of vapour.

13 Through the brilliancy in front of him

coals of fire burn away:

14 **Yah Veh** thunders from the heavens

and **Elyon** gives his voice:

15 he sends arrows and scatters them;

lights and agitates them.

16 The reservoirs of the sea are seen;

exposed are the foundations of the world

— at the rebuke of **Yah Veh**

— at the breath of the *spirit/wind* of his nostrils.

17 He sends from on high; he takes me;

he draws me from great waters;

18 he rescues me from my strong enemy

— from them who hate me

— for they are too strong for me.

19 They confront me in the day of my calamity

and **Yah Veh** is my support:

20 he brings me to an expanse; he rescues me;

because he delights in me:

2 SAMUEL 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

21 The LORD rewarded **Yah Veh** dealt me
according to my *righteousness* **justness**:
according to the *cleanness* **purity** of my hands
hath he *recompensed* **returned** to me.

22 For I have *kept* **guarded**
the ways of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and have not *wickedly departed* **done wickedly**
from **against** my God **Elohim**.

23 For all his judgments were *before* **in front of** me:
and as for his statutes,
I *did not depart* **turned not aside** from them.

24 I was also *upright before* **integrity** unto him,
and have *kept* **guarded** myself
from *mine iniquity* **my perversity**.

25 Therefore
the LORD **Yah Veh** hath *recompensed* **returned to** me
according to my *righteousness* **justness**;
according to my *cleanness* **purity**
in *his eye sight* **front of his eyes**.

26 With the merciful
thou *wilt shalt* shew thyself merciful,
and with the *upright man* **mighty integrity**
thou *wilt shalt* shew thyself *upright* **integrity**.

27 With the pure
thou *wilt shalt* shew thyself pure;
and with the *froward* **perverted**
thou *wilt shalt* shew thyself *unsavoury* **wrestlest**.

28 And the *afflicted* **humble** people
thou *wilt shalt* **save**:
but thine eyes are upon the *haughty* **lofty**,
that thou mayest *bring* **descend** them *down* **low**.

29 For thou art my lamp, O LORD **Yah Veh**:
and the LORD **Yah Veh**
will lighten **shall illuminate** my darkness.

30 For by thee I have run through a troop:
by my God **Elohim** have I leaped over a wall.

31 As for God **El**, his way is *perfect* **integrity**;
the word **sayings** of the LORD is *tried* **Yah Veh be refined**:
he is a buckler to all them that *trust* **seek refuge** in him.

32 For who is God **El**, *save the LORD* **except Yah Veh**?
and who is a rock, *save* **except** our God **Elohim**?

33 God **El** is my *strength* **stronghold** and *power* **valour**:
and he *maketh* **looseth** my way *perfect* **integrity**.

34 He *maketh* **equalizeth** my feet like hinds' feet:
and *setteth* **standeth** me upon my *high places* **bamahs**.

35 He teacheth my hands to war;
so that a bow of *steel* **copper** is *broken* **bent** by mine arms.

36 Thou hast also given me
the *shield* **buckler** of thy salvation:
and thy *gentleness* **humbling**
hath *made* **abounded** me *great*.

37 Thou hast enlarged my *steps* **paces** under me;
so that my *feet did not slip* **ankles wavered not**.

38 I have pursued mine enemies,
and *destroyed* **desolated** them;
and turned not *again* **back**
until I had *consumed* **finished** them **off**.

39 And I have *consumed* **finished** them **off**,
and *wounded* **stricken** them, that they could not arise:
yea, they are fallen under my feet.

40 For thou hast girded me
with *strength* **valour** to *battle* **war**:
them that rose up against me
hast thou *subdued* **caused to bow** under me.

41 Thou hast also given me the necks of mine enemies,
that I might *destroy* **exterminate** them that hate me.

42 They looked, but there was *none to save* **no savior**;
even unto the LORD **Yah Veh**,
but he answered them not.

43 Then *did I beat* I **pulverized** them
as small as the dust of the earth,
I *did stamp* **pulverized** them
as the mire of the *street* **outway**,
and *did spread* **expanded** them *abroad*.

44 Thou also hast *delivered* **slipped** me **out**
from the strivings of my people,
thou hast *kept* **guarded** me
to be head of the *heathen* **goyim**:

2 SHEMU EL 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

21 Yah Veh deals me according to my justness:
according to the purity of my hands
he returns to me.

22 For I guard the ways of Yah Veh
and do not wickedly against my Elohim:
23 for all his judgments are in front of me;
and his statutes, I turn not aside from them:
24 and I am integrity to him
and guard myself from my perversity.

25 And Yah Veh returns to me
according to my justness
— according to my purity in front of his eyes.

26 With the merciful
you show yourself merciful:
with the mighty integrity
you show yourself integrity:
27 with the pure
you show yourself pure:
and with the perverted
you show yourself a wrestler.

28 And the humble people you save:
but your eyes are on the lofty
for you descend them low.

29 For you are my lamp, O Yah Veh;
O Yah Veh, illuminate my darkness:
30 for by you I run through a troop;
by my Elohim I leap over a wall.

31 El — how integrity his way;
the sayings of Yah Veh how refined
— a buckler to all who seek refuge in him.

32 Who is El, except Yah Veh?
Who is a rock, except our Elohim?
33 El — my stronghold and valour.

And he loosens my way integrity:
34 he equalizes my feet as the hinds
and stands me on my bamahs:
35 teaching my hands to war;
so that my arms bend a bow of copper.

36 And you give me the buckler of your salvation;
and your humbling abounds me:
37 you enlarge my paces under me
so that my ankles waver not.

38 I pursue my enemies and desolate them;
and turn not back until I finish them off:
39 and I finish them off and strike them
and they rise not:
yes — fallen under my feet.

40 And you gird me with valour to war:
they who rise against me
you have to bow under me:
41 you give me the necks of my enemies
— to exterminate them who hate me.

42 They look — there is no saviour;
to Yah Veh — he answers them not:
43 I pulverize them
as small as the dust of the earth,
I pulverize them as the mire of the outway
and expand them.

44 You also slip me from the strivings of my people;
you guard me — head of the goyim:

2 SAMUEL 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

a people which I knew not shall serve me.
 45 Strangers **Sons of the stranger**
 shall *submit themselves unto* **deceive** me:
as soon as they hear at the hearing of the ear,
 they shall *be obedient* **hearken** unto me.
 46 Strangers **Sons of the stranger** shall *fade away* **wither**,
 and they shall
be afraid out of their close places **gird their borders**.
 47 The **LORD Yah Veh** liveth; and blessed be my rock;
 and exalted be the **God Elohim**
 of the rock of my salvation.
 48 *It is God that avengeth* **El giveth** **avengement for me**,
 and that bringeth down the people under me.
 49 And that bringeth me forth from mine enemies:
 thou also hast lifted me up on high
 above them that rose up against me:
 thou hast *delivered* **rescued** me
 from the *violent man* **man of violence**.
 50 *Therefore* **So**
 I *will give thanks* shall **spread hands** unto thee,
 O **LORD Yah Veh**, among the *heathen* **goyim**,
 and I *will sing praises* shall **pluck** unto thy name.
 51 He *is the tower of* **greateneth** salvation
 for his *king* **sovereign**:
 and *sheweth* **worketh** mercy
 to his anointed, unto David,
 and to his seed *for evermore* **eternally**.

THE FINAL WORDS OF DAVID

23

Now these be the last words of David.

An oracle of David the son of *Jesse said* **Yishay**,
 and **an oracle of the man mighty**
 who was raised up on high,
 the anointed of the **God Elohim** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
 and the *sweet psalmist* **pleasantness of the psalms**
 of *Israel* **Yisra El**, *said*,

2 The Spirit of the **LORD spake** **Yah Veh** **worded** by me,
 and his *word* **utterance** was in my tongue.
 3 The **God Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El** *said*,
 the *Rock of Israel* **spake** **Yisra El** **worded** to me,
He that ruleth over men **who dominates over humanity**
 must be just,
ruling **dominating** in the *fear* **awe** of **God Elohim**.
 4 And he shall be as the light of the morning,
 when the sun riseth,
 even a morning without **thick** clouds;
as the tender grass springing **the sprouts** out of the earth
 by *clear shining* **brilliancy** after rain.
 5 Although my house be not so with **God El**;
 yet he hath *made* **set** with me
 an *everlasting* **eternal** covenant,
ordered **aligned** in all *things*, and *sure* **guarded**:
 for this is all my salvation, and all my *desire* **delight**,
 although he make it not to *grow* **sprout**.
 6 But the *sons of Belial* **Beli Yaal**
 shall be all of them as thorns *thrust* **fled** away,
 because they cannot be taken with hands:
 7 But the man that shall touch them
 must be *fenced* **filled** with iron
 and the *staff* **timber** of a spear;
 and **in burning**, they shall be *utterly burned* **burnt** with fire
 in the *same place* **seat**.

THE MIGHTY OF DAVID

8 These be the names of the mighty *men* whom David had:
The Tachmonite that sat in the seat
Tachkemoniy Yosheb Bash Shabbath,
chief head among the captains **tertiaries**;
 the same was Adino
 the *Eznite*; he *lift up his spear* **spearer**
 against eight hundred,
 whom he *slew* **pierced** at one time.
 9 And after him was Eleazar **El Azar**
 the son of Dodo the *Ahohite* **Ach Oachiy**,
 one of the three mighty *men* with David,
 when they *defied* **reproached** the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
 that were there gathered *together* to *battle* **war**,
 and the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
 were *gone away* **had ascended**:
 10 He arose, and smote the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**

2 SHEMU EL 22, 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

a people I know not serve me:
 45 sons of the stranger deceive me;
 at the hearing of the ear they hearken to me:
 46 sons of the stranger wither
 — they gird their borders.
 47 Yah Veh lives; blessed — my rock;
 and exalted — the Elohim of the rock of my salvation.
 48 El gives avengement for me
 and brings down the people under me:
 49 and brings me forth from my enemies.
 You also lift me on high
 above them who rise against me:
 you rescue me from the man of violence.
 50 So I spread hands to you, O Yah Veh,
 among the goyim;
 and I pluck to your name.
 51 He greatens salvation for his sovereign:
 and works mercy to his anointed
 — to David and to his seed eternally.

THE FINAL WORDS OF DAVID

23

And these are the final words of David
 — an oracle of David the son of Yishay;
 an oracle of the mighty raised on high;
 the anointed of the Elohim of Yaaqov
 and the pleasantness of the psalms of Yisra El.

2 The Spirit of Yah Veh words by me
 and his utterance is in my tongue.
 3 The Elohim of Yisra El says
 — the Rock of Yisra El words to me,
 He who dominates over humanity is just;
 dominating in the awe of Elohim:
 4 rising as the light of the morning
 — as the morning sun without thick clouds;
 — as the sprouts from the earth
 by brilliancy after rain.
 5 Although my house is not so with El;
 yet he set an eternal covenant with me
 — aligned in all and guarded:
 for this is all my salvation and all my delight,
 although he sprouts it not.
 6 As for Belí Yaal
 — as a fleeing thorn they all are;
 because they are not taken by hands:
 7 but the man who touches them
 must be filled with iron
 with the timber of a spear;
 and in burning, they are burnt with fire
 in their seat.

THE MIGHTY OF DAVID

8 These are the names of the mighty of David:
 Tachkemoniy Yosheb Bash Shabbath
 — head of the tertiaryaries
 — the same Adino the spearer
 who pierced eight hundred at one time.
 9 And after him
 El Azar the son of Dodo the Ach Oachiy
 — of the three mighty with David,
 they reproached the Peleshethiy
 gathering to war
 — the men of Yisra El ascended
 and he rose and smote the Peleshethiy

2 SAMUEL 23

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

until his hand was weary **belaboured**,
and his hand *clave* **adhered** unto the sword:
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
wrought **worked** a great *victory* **salvation** that day;
and the people returned after him only to *spoil* **strip**.
11 And after him was Shammah
the son of Agee **Age** the *Hararite* **Harariy**.
And the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
were gathered *together into a troop* **alive**,
where was a *piece of ground* **an allotment of field**
full of lentiles:
and the people fled
from **the face of** the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
12 But he stood in the midst of the *ground* **allotment**,
and *defended* **rescued** it,
and *slew* **smote** the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**:
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
wrought **worked** a great *victory* **salvation**.
13 And three of the thirty *chief* **heads**
went down **descended**, and came to David
in the harvest time unto the cave of Adullam:
and the *troop* **living** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
pitched **encamped** in the valley of Rephaim.
14 And David was then in an hold,
and the *garrison* **standing camp** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
was then in *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**.
15 And David *longed* **desired**, and said,
Oh that one *would* **should** give me drink
of the water of the well of *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**,
which is by the *gate* **portal**!
16 And the three mighty *men brake through* **split**
the *host* **camp** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and *drew* **bailed** water
out of the well of *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**,
that was by the *gate* **portal**,
and *took* **lifted** it, and brought it to David:
nevertheless he *would* **willed to** not drink thereof,
but poured it out unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
17 And he said, Be it far from me, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that I should *do* **work** this:
is *not* this the blood of the men
that went in *jeopardy of their lives* **with their souls**?
therefore he *would* **willed to** not drink it.
These *things did* **worked** these three mighty *men*.
18 And *Abishai* **Abi Shai**, the brother of *Joab* **Yah Ab**,
the son of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah**, was *chief* **head** among three.
And he *lifted up* **wakened** his spear against three hundred,
and *slew* **pierced** them, and had the name among three.
19 Was he not most honourable of three?
therefore he was their *captain* **governor**:
howbeit he attained not unto the *first* three.
20 And *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**,
the son of a valiant man, of *Kabzeel* **Qabse El**,
who had done many acts **great in deeds**,
he *slew* **smote** two *lionlike men* **Ari Eliy** of Moab:
he *went down* **descended** also and *slew* **smote** a lion
in the midst of a *pit well* in *time* **a day** of snow:
21 And he *slew an Egyptian* **smote a man**, a *Misrayim*,
a *goodly man* **man of visage**:
and the *Egyptian* **Misrayim** had a spear in his hand;
but he *went down* **descended** to him with a *staff* **scion**,
and *plucked* **stripped** the spear
out of the *Egyptian's* **Misrayim's** hand,
and *slew* **slaughtered** him with his own spear.
22 These *things did* **Benaiah** **worked** **Bena Yah**
the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**,
and had the name among three mighty *men*.
23 He was more honourable than the thirty,
but he attained not to the *first* three.
And David set him over his guard.
24 *Asahel* **Asa El** the brother of *Joab* **Yah Ab**
was one of the thirty;
Ehanan **El Hanan**
the son of *Dodo* of *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**,
Shammah the *Harodite* **Harodiy**,
25 *Elika* **Eli Qa** the *Harodite* **Harodiy**,
Helez **Heles** the *Paltite* **Paltiy**,
26 *Ira* the son of *Ikqesh* **Iqqesh** the *Tekoite* **Teqohiy**,

2 SHEMU EL 23

exeGeses companion BIBLE

until his hand belabored
and his hand adhered to the sword:
and that day Yah Veh worked a great salvation
and the people returned after him only, to strip.
11 And after him
Shammah the son of Age the Harariy:
and the Peleshethiy gathered alive
in an allotment of field full of lentiles:
and the people fled the face of the Peleshethiy:
12 and he stood midst the allotment and rescued it
and smote the Peleshethiy:
and Yah Veh worked a great salvation.
13 And three of the thirty heads descended
and came to David in the harvest time
to the cave of Adullam:
and the living of the Peleshethiy
encamped in the valley of Rephaim:
14 and David was then in a hold
and the standing camp of the Peleshethiy
was then Beth Lechem.
15 And David desired and said,
Oh that someone give me a drink
of the water of the well of Beth Lechem by the portal!
16 And the three mighty
split the camp of the Peleshethiy
and bailed water
from the well of Beth Lechem by the portal
and lifted and brought it to David.
And he willed to not drink thereof
but poured it to Yah Veh:
17 and he said, Far be it from me, O Yah Veh,
that I work this.
Is this the blood of the men who go with their souls?
— and he willed to not drink it.
These three mighty worked all these.
18 And Abi Shai the brother of Yah Ab
the son of Seruyah was head among three:
and he wakened his spear against three hundred
and pierced them
and had a name among three.
19 Was he not most honorable of three?
and he became their governor:
howbeit he attained not to the three.
20 And Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada
the son of a valiant man of Qabse El;
great in deeds:
he smote two Ari Eliy of Moab:
and descended and smote a lion
midst a well in a day of snow:
21 and he smote a man
— a Misrayim — a man of visage:
and the Misrayim had a spear in his hand;
and he descended to him with a scion
and stripped the spear from the hand of the Misrayim
and slaughtered him with his own spear.
22 These worked Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada
and had a name among three mighty:
23 he was more honorable than the thirty
but he attained not to the three:
and David set him over his guard.
24 Asa El the brother of Yah Ab was one of the thirty;
El Hanan the son of Dodo of Beth Lechem,
25 Shammah the Harodiy,
Eli Qa the Harodiy,
26 Heles the Paltiy,
Ira the son of Iqqesh the Teqohiy,

2 SAMUEL 23, 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

27 Abiezer **Abi Ezer** the Anethothite **Anathothiy**,
Mebunnai **Mebunnay** the Hushathite **Hushathiy**,
28 Zalmon **Salmon** the Ahohite **Ach Oachiy**,
Maharai **Maharay** the Netophathite **Netophathiy**,
29 Heleb the son of Baanah, a Netophathite **Netophathiy**,
Ittai **Ittay** the son of Ribai **Ribay** out of Gibeah **Gibah**
of the children sons of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**,
30 Benaiah **Bena Yah** the Pirathonite **Pirathoniy**,
Hiddai of the brooks **wadies** of Gaash,
31 Abialbon **Abi Albon** the Arbathite **Arabahiy**,
Azmaveth the Barhumite **Barhumiy**,
32 Eliahba **El Yachba** the Shaalbonite **Shaalbimiy**,
of the sons of Jashen **Yashen**,
Jonathan **Yah Nathan**,
33 Shammah the Hararite **Harariy**,
Ahiam **Achiy Am** the son of Sharar the Hararite **Harariy**,
34 Eliphelet **Eli Phelet** the son of Ahasbai **Achasbay**,
the son of the Maachathite **Maachahiy**,
Eliam **Eli Am**
the son of Ahithophel **Achiy Thophel** the Gilonite **Gilohiy**,
35 Hezrai **Hesro** the Carmelite **Karmeliy**,
Paaray **Paaray** the Arbite **Arbiy**,
36 Igal **Yigal** the son of Nathan of Zobah **Sobah**,
Bani the Gadite **Gadiy**,
37 Zelek **Seleq** the Ammonite **Ammoniy**,
Nahari **Nachray** the Beerothite **Beerothiy**,
armourbearer **instrument bearer** to Joab **Yah Ab**
the son of Zeruiah **Seruyah**,
38 Ira an Ithrite **Yetheriy**, Gareb an Ithrite **Yetheriy**,
39 Uriah **Uri Yah** the Hittite **Hethiy**:
thirty and seven in all.

DAVID MUSTERS YISRA EL

24

And again the anger **wrath** of the LORD **Yah Veh**
was **added to be** kindled against Israel **Yisra El**,
and he **moved goaded** David against them to say,
Go, number Israel **Yisra El** and Judah **Yah Hudah**.
2 For the king **sovereign** said to Joab **Yah Ab**
the captain **governor** of the host **valiant**,
which was with him,
Go **Flit** now
through all the tribes **scions** of Israel **Yisra El**,
from Dan even to Beersheba **Beer Sheba**,
and number ye the people,
that I may know the number of the people.
3 And Joab **Yah Ab** said unto the king **sovereign**,
Now the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**
add unto the people,
how many soever they be,
an **hundredfold a hundred times**,
and that the eyes of my lord **adoni** the king **sovereign**
may see it:
but why doth my lord **adoni** the king **sovereign**
delight in this **thing word**?
4 Notwithstanding
the king's **sovereign's** word prevailed against Joab **Yah Ab**,
and against the captains **governors** of the host **valiant**.
And Joab **Yah Ab**
and the captains **governors** of the host **valiant**
went out from the presence **face** of the king **sovereign**,
to number **muster** the people of Israel **Yisra El**.
5 And they passed over Jordan **Yarden**,
and pitched **encamped** in Aroer,
on the right side of the city
that lieth in the midst of the river **wadi** of Gad,
and toward Jazer **Yazer**:
6 Then they came to Cilead **Gilad**,
and to the land of Tahtimhodshi **Tahtim Hodshi**;
and they came to Danjaan **Dan Yaan**,
and about to Zidon **Sidon**,
7 And came to the strong hold **fortress** of Tyre **Sor**,
and to all the cities of the Hivites **Hivviy**,
and of the Canaanites **Kenaaniy**:
and they went out to the south of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
even to Beersheba **Beer Sheba**.
8 So when they had gone **flitted** through all the land,
they came to Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**
at the end of nine months and twenty days.
9 And Joab **Yah Ab** gave up the **sum number**

2 SHEMU EL 23, 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

27 Abi Ezer the Anathothiy,
Mebunnay the Hushathiy,
28 Salmon the Ach Oachiy,
Maharay the Netophathiy,
29 Heleb the son of Baanah a Netophathiy,
Ittay the son of Ribay from Gibah
of the sons of Ben Yamin,
30 Bena Yah the Pirathoniy,
Hiddai of the wadies of Gaash,
31 Abi Albon the Arabahiy,
Azmaveth the Barhumiy,
32 El Yachba the Shaalbimiy of the sons of Yashen,
Yah Nathan,
33 Shammah the Harariy,
Achiy Am the son of Sharar the Harariy,
34 Eli Phelet the son of Ahasbay,
the son of the Maachahiy,
Eli Am the son of Achiy Thophel the Gilohiy,
35 Hesro the Karmeliy,
Paaray the Arbiy,
36 Yigal the son of Nathan of Sobah,
Bani the Gadiy,
37 Seleq the Ammoniy,
Nachray the Beerothiy
instrument bearer to Yah Ab the son of Seruyah,
38 Ira an Yetheriy,
Gareb an Yetheriy,
39 Uri Yah the Hethiy:
— thirty—seven in all.

DAVID MUSTERS YISRA EL

24

And Yah Veh
adds to kindle his wrath against Yisra El;
and he goads David against them to say,
Go, number Yisra El and Yah Hudah.
2 And the sovereign says to Yah Ab
the governor of the valiant host with him,
Flit now through all the scions of Yisra El
from Dan even to Beer Sheba;
and number the people
so that I know the number of the people.
3 And Yah Ab says to the sovereign,
Yes, Yah Veh your Elohim adds to the people
— as many as ever they be, a hundred times
that the eyes of my adoni the sovereign see.
But why delights my adoni the sovereign in this word?
4 And the word of the sovereign prevails
against Yah Ab
and against the governors of the valiant:
and Yah Ab and the governors of the valiant
go from the face of the sovereign
to muster the people of Yisra El:
5 and they pass over Yarden and encamp in Aroer,
on the right side of the city
midst the wadi of Gad and toward Yazer:
6 and they come to Gilad
and to the land of Tahtim Hodshi;
and they come to Dan Yaan and around to Sidon;
7 and come to the fortress of Sor
and to all the cities of the Hivviy and of the Kenaaniy;
and they go to the south of Yah Hudah to Beer Sheba.
8 And they flit through all the land:
and at the end of nine months and twenty days
they come to Yeru Shalem:
9 and Yah Ab gives up the number

2 SAMUEL 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

of the *number* census of the people
unto the *king* sovereign:
and there were in *Israel* **Yisra El**
eight hundred thousand valiant *men* that drew the sword;
and the men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
were five hundred thousand men.
10 And David's heart smote him
after that he had *numbered* scribed the people.
And David said unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
I have sinned *greatly* mightily in that I have *done* worked:
and now, I beseech thee, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
take away *pass over* the *iniquity* perversity of thy servant;
for I have done very foolishly *follied* mightily.
11 For when David *was up* arose in the morning,
the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came unto the prophet Gad, David's seer, saying,
12 Go and say *word* unto David,
Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
I offer *lift* thee *these* three things;
choose thee one of them, that I may *do* work it unto thee.
13 So Gad came to David, and told him,
and said unto him,
Shall seven years of famine come unto thee in thy land?
or wilt *shalt* thou flee three months
before thine enemies at the face of thy tribulators,
while they pursue thee?
or that there be three days' pestilence in thy land?
now *advise* perceive, and see
what *answer* word I shall return to him that sent me.
14 And David said unto Gad,
I am in a great strait *tribulate* mightily:
let us fall now into the hand of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
for his mercies are great many:
and let me not fall into the hand of *man* humanity.
15 So the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
sent *gave* a pestilence upon *Israel* **Yisra El**
from the morning even to the time *appointed* of season:
and there died of the people
from Dan even to *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**
seventy thousand men.
16 And when the angel *stretched out* spread his hand
upon *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** to destroy ruin it,
the *LORD* repented **Yah Veh** sighed him of the evil,
and said to the angel that *destroyed* ruined the people,
It is enough: stay slacken now thine hand.
And the angel of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
was by the threshingplace
of *Araunah* **Aravnah** the *Jebusite* **Yebusiy**.
17 And David *spake* said unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
when he saw the angel that smote the people,
and said, *Lo* Behold,
I have sinned, and I have *done wickedly* perverted:
but these *sheep* flock, what have they *done* worked?
let thine hand, I pray thee,
be against me, and against my father's house.
18 And Gad came that day to David, and said unto him,
Go up Ascend,
rear an raise a sacrifice altar unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
in the threshingfloor
of *Araunah* **Aravnah** the *Jebusite* **Yebusiy**.
19 And David, according to the *saying* word of Gad,
went up ascended
as the *LORD* commanded **Yah Veh** misvahed
20 And *Araunah* **Aravnah** looked,
and saw the *king* sovereign and his servants
coming on passing over toward him:
and *Araunah* **Aravnah** went out,
and bowed prostrated himself before to the *king* sovereign
on his face nostrils upon the ground earth.
21 And *Araunah* **Aravnah** said,
Wherefore is my lord adoni the *king* sovereign
come to his servant?
And David said, To buy chattel the threshingfloor of thee,
to build an a sacrifice altar unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that the plague may be *stayed* restrained from the people.
22 And *Araunah* **Aravnah** said unto David,
Let my lord adoni the *king* sovereign

2 SHEMU EL 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

of the census of the people to the sovereign:
and there are of *Yisra El*
eight hundred thousand valiant who draw the sword;
and the men of *Yah Hudah*
five hundred thousand men.
10 And after he scribes the people
the heart of David is smitten:
and David says to *Yah Veh*,
I sinned mightily in what I worked:
and now, I beseech you, O *Yah Veh*,
pass over the perversity of your servant;
for I follied mightily.
11 And David rises in the morning,
and the word of *Yah Veh*
comes to the prophet Gad, the seer of David, saying,
12 Go and word to David, Thus says *Yah Veh*,
I lift you these three:
choose which one to work to you.
13 And Gad comes to David and tells him
and says to him,
Come seven years of famine
to you in your land?
Or flee you three months
from the face of your tribulators
while they pursue you?
Or have three days pestilence in your land?
now perceive and see
which word I return to him who sends me.
14 And David says to Gad, I tribulate mightily:
may we fall now into the hand of *Yah Veh*
— for his mercies are many:
and *may* I not fall to the hand of humanity.
15 And *Yah Veh* gives a pestilence on *Yisra El*
from the morning even to the time of season:
and seventy thousand men of the people die
from Dan even to Beer Sheba.
16 And the angel
spreads his hand on *Yeru Shalem* to ruin it;
and *Yah Veh* sighs of the evil;
and says to the angel who ruined the people,
Enough! Slacken now your hand.
— and the angel of *Yah Veh*
is by the threshingplace of *Aravnah* the *Yebusiy*.
17 And David says to *Yah Veh*
when he sees the angel who smites the people
and says, Behold, I sinned and I perverted:
but these flock, what worked they?
O that your hand, I pray you,
be against me and against the house of my father.
18 And that day Gad comes to David and says to him,
Ascend! Raise a sacrifice altar to *Yah Veh*
in the threshingfloor of *Aravnah* the *Yebusiy*.
19 And David ascends according to the word of Gad
as *Yah Veh* misvahed:
and *Aravnah* looks
and sees the sovereign and his servants
passing toward him:
and *Aravnah* goes out
and prostrates himself to the sovereign
on his nostrils on the earth:
and *Aravnah* says,
Why comes my adoni the sovereign to his servant?
And David says, To chattel your threshingfloor;
to build a sacrifice altar to *Yah Veh*
to restrain the plague from the people.
22 And *Aravnah* says to David,
O that my adoni the sovereign

2 SAMUEL 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

take and offer up **holocaust**
what seemeth **be** good unto him **in his eyes**:
behold, here be **see** — oxen for *burnt sacrifice* **holocaust**,
and threshing *instruments* **sledges**
and other instruments of the oxen for *wood* **timber**.
23 All these *things* did *Araunah* **Aravnah**,
as a *king* **sovereign**, give unto the *king* **sovereign**.
And *Araunah* **Aravnah** said unto the *king* **sovereign**,
The *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* accept **Elohim** please thee.
24 And the *king* **sovereign** said unto *Araunah* **Aravnah**,
Nay; but **in chatteling**,
I will surely buy **shall chattel** it of thee at a price:
neither will **shall I**
offer *burnt offerings* **holocaust holocausts**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**
of that which *doth cost me nothing* **be gratuitous**.
So David *bought* **chattled** the threshingfloor and the oxen
for fifty shekels of silver.
25 And David built there *an* **a sacrifice** altar
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and offered *burnt offerings* **holocausted holocausts**
and *peace offerings* **shelamim**.
So the *LORD* **Yah Veh** was intreated for the land,
and the plague was *stayed* **restrained** from *Israel* **Yisra El**

2 SHEMU EL 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

take and holocaust whatever is good in his eyes:
see — oxen for holocaust and threshing sledges
and instruments of the oxen for timber.
23 Aravnah gives all these
— sovereign to sovereign:
and Aravnah says to the sovereign,
Yah Veh your Elohim *is* pleased of you.
24 And the sovereign says to Aravnah, No:
but in chatteling, I chattel it from you at a price:
I holocaust no holocausts to Yah Veh my Elohim
of what is gratuitous.
— and David chattels the threshingfloor and the oxen
for fifty shekels of silver.
25 And there David builds a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh
and holocausts holocausts and shelamim:
and Yah Veh is intreated for the land
and the plague is restrained from Yisra El.

1 KINGS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

DAVID AGES

1 Now king **And sovereign** David was *old aged*
and stricken in *years days*;
and they covered him with clothes,
but he *gat had* no heat.

2 Wherefore his servants said unto him,
Let there be sought for my *lord adoni* the *king sovereign*
a *young lass* virgin:
and let her stand *before at the face of* the *king sovereign*,
and let her *cherish become acquainted with* him,
and let her lie in thy bosom,
that my *lord adoni* the *king sovereign* may *get have* heat.

3 So they sought for a *fair damsel beautiful lass*
throughout all the *coasts borders of Israel Yisra El*,
and found *Abishag Abi Shag* a *Shunammite Shunemiyth*,
and brought her to the *king sovereign*.

4 And the *damsel lass* was *very fair mighty beautiful*,
and *cherished became acquainted with the king sovereign*,
and ministered to him:
but the *king sovereign* knew her not.

ADONI YAH USURPS LEADERSHIP

5 Then *Adonijah Adoni Yah* the son of Haggith
exalted lifted himself, saying, *I will be king shall reign*:
and he *prepared worked* him
chariots and *horsemen cavalry*,
and fifty men to run *before him at his face*.

6 And his father had not *displeased contorted* him
at any time in all his days saying,
Why hast thou *done worked* so?
and he also was a *very goodly man mighty good of form*;
and *his mother bare him he was birthed*
after *Absalom Abi Shalom*.

7 And *he conferred his words were* with *Joab Yah Ab*
the son of *Zeruiah Seruyah*,
and with *Abiathar Abi Athar* the priest:
and they *following Adonijah after Adoni Yah* helped him.

8 But *Zadok Sadoq* the priest,
and *Benaiah Bena Yah* the son of *Jehoiada Yah Yada*,
and *Nathan* the prophet, and *Shimei Shimi*, and *Rei*,
and the *mighty men which belonged to of David*,
were not with *Adonijah Adoni Yah*.

9 And *Adonijah Adoni Yah*
slew sheep sacrificed flock and *oxen and fat cattle fatlings*
by the stone of *Zoheleth Zocheleth*,
which is by *Enrogel En Rogel*,
and called all his brethren
the *king's sovereign's* sons,
and all the men of *Judah Yah Hudah*
the *king's sovereign's* servants:

10 But *Nathan* the prophet, and *Benaiah Bena Yah*,
and the *mighty men*, and *Solomon Shelomoh* his brother,
he called not.

NATHAN AND BATH SHEBA

11 Wherefore *Nathan spake said* unto *Bathsheba Bath Sheba*
the mother of *Solomon Shelomoh*, saying,
Hast thou not heard
that *Adonijah Adoni Yah* the son of Haggith doth reign,
and *David our lord adoni* knoweth it not?

12 Now therefore come,
let me, I pray thee, give thee counsel,
that thou mayest *save rescue* thine own *life soul*,
and the *life soul* of thy son *Solomon Shelomoh*.

13 Go and *get thee in enter* unto *king sovereign* David,
and say unto him,
Didst not thou, my *lord adoni*, O *king sovereign*,
swear oath unto *thine handmaid thy maid*, saying,
Assuredly *Solomon Shelomoh* thy son shall reign after me,
and he shall *sit settle* upon my throne?
why then doth *Adonijah Adoni Yah* reign?

14 Behold, while thou yet *talkest wordest* there
with the *king sovereign*,
I also *will shall* come in after thee,
and *confirm fulfill/shalam* thy words.

15 And *Bathsheba Bath Sheba*
went in entered unto the *king sovereign* into the chamber:
and the *king* was *very old sovereign aged mightily*;

1 SOVEREIGNS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

DAVID AGES

1 Sovereign David ages — stricken in days;
they cover him with clothes, and he has no heat:

2 so his servants say to him,
We seek a virgin lass for my adoni the sovereign
to stand at the face of the sovereign
to become acquainted with him — to lie in his bosom
so that my adoni the sovereign heats up.

3 So they seek a beautiful lass
throughout all the borders of Yisra El;
and find Abi Shag a Shunemiyth
and bring her to the sovereign:
and the lass is mighty beautiful
and becomes acquainted with the sovereign
and ministers to him;
and the sovereign knows her not.

ADONI YAH USURPS LEADERSHIP

5 And Adoni Yah the son of Haggith lifts himself,
saying, I reign.

He works chariots and cavalry
and fifty men to run at his face:

6 and his father contorts him not all his days
saying, Why have you worked so?

And he also is mighty good of form;
and he was birthed after Abi Shalom:
and his words are with Yah Ab the son of Seruyah
and with Abi Athar the priest:
and they help after Adoni Yah.

8 And Sadoq the priest
and Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada
and Nathan the prophet and Shimi and Rei
and the mighty of David are not with Adoni Yah.

9 And Adoni Yah sacrifices flock and oxen and fatlings
by the stone of Zocheleth by En Rogel;
and calls all his brothers,
sons of the sovereign;
and all the men of Yah Hudah,
servants of the sovereign:

10 and he calls not Nathan the prophet and Bena Yah
and the mighty and Shelomoh his brother.

NATHAN AND BATH SHEBA

11 Nathan says to Bath Sheba the mother of Shelomoh
saying,
Hear you not
that Adoni Yah the son of Haggith reigns
and David our adoni knows it not?
and now come, I pray you,
and I counsel you to rescue your own soul
and the soul of your son Shelomoh:
go and enter to sovereign David,
and say unto him,
Oathed you not, my adoni, O sovereign,
to your maid, saying,
Assuredly Shelomoh your son reigns after me,
and settles on my throne?
Why reigns Adoni Yah?

14 Behold, while you still word with the sovereign,
I also come in after you, and fulfill/shalam your words.

15 And Bath Sheba enters to the sovereign
into the chamber:
and the sovereign ages mightily;

1 KINGS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and Abishag **Abi Shag** the *Shunammite* **Shunemiyth** ministered unto the *king* **sovereign**.
16 And *Bathsheba* **Bath Sheba** bowed, and *did obeisance* **prostrated** unto the *king* **sovereign**.
And the *king* **sovereign** said,
What *wouldest thou* **be it to thee?**
17 And she said unto him, My *lord* **adoni**, thou *swarest* **oathest**
by the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** unto *thine handmaid* **thy maid**, saying,
Assuredly
Solomon **Shelomoh** thy son shall reign after me, and he shall *sit* **settle** upon my throne.
18 And now, behold, *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah** reigneth; and now, my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**, thou knowest it not:
19 And he hath *slain* **sacrificed** oxen and *fat cattle* **fatlings** and *sheep* **flocks** in abundance, and hath called all the sons of the *king* **sovereign**, and *Abiathar* **Abi Athar** the priest, and *Joab* **Yah Ab** the *captain* **governor** of the host: but *Solomon* **Shelomoh** thy servant hath he not called.
20 And thou, my *lord* **adoni**, O *king* **sovereign**, the eyes of all *Israel* **Yisra El** are upon thee, that thou shouldest tell them who shall *sit* **settle** on the throne of my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign** after him.
21 Otherwise **so be** it *shall come to pass*, when my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign** shall *sleep* **lie** with his fathers, that I and my son *Solomon* **Shelomoh** shall be *counted* **offenders** **as sinners**.
22 And, *lo* **behold**, while she yet *talked* **worded** with the *king* **sovereign**, Nathan the prophet also came in.
23 And they told the *king* **sovereign**, saying, Behold Nathan the prophet.
And when he was come in *before* **at the face of** the *king* **sovereign**, he *bowed* **prostrated** himself *before* **at the face of** the *king* **sovereign** with his *face* **nostrils** to the *ground* **earth**.
24 And Nathan said, My *lord* **adoni**, O *king* **sovereign**, hast thou said, *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah** shall reign after me, and he shall *sit* **settle** upon my throne?
25 For he *is gone down* **descended** this day, and hath *slain* **sacrificed** oxen and *fat cattle* **fatlings** and *sheep* **flocks** in abundance, and hath called all the *king's* **sovereign's** sons, and the *captains* **governors** of the host, and *Abiathar* **Abi Athar** the priest; and, behold, they eat and drink *before him* **at his face**, and say,
God save king **Sovereign Adoni Yah** liveth.
26 But me, *even* me thy servant, and *Zadok* **Sadoq** the priest, and *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**, and thy servant *Solomon* **Shelomoh**, hath he not called.
27 Is this *thing* **word** *done by my lord* **of my adoni** the *king* **sovereign**, and thou hast not *shewed* **revealed** it unto thy servant, who should *sit* **settle** on the throne of my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign** after him?
28 Then *king* **sovereign** David answered and said, Call me *Bathsheba* **Bath Sheba**.
And she came *into* **at the face of** the *king's presence* **sovereign**, and stood *before* **at the face of** the *king* **sovereign**.
29 And the *king* **sovereign** *sware* **sovereign** *oathed*, and said,
As the LORD **Yah Veh** liveth,
that hath redeemed my soul out of all *distress* **tribulation**,
30 Even as I *sware* **oathed** unto thee by the *LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, saying, Assuredly
Solomon **Shelomoh** thy son shall reign after me, and he shall *sit* **settle** upon my throne in my stead; even so **in working**,
will I certainly do **shall I work** this day.

1 SOVEREIGNS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and Abi Shag the Shunemiyth ministers to the sovereign:
16 and Bath Sheba bows and prostrates to the sovereign.
And the sovereign says, What — to you?
17 And she says to him, My adoni, you oathed to your maid by Yah Veh your Elohim, Assuredly Shelomoh your son reigns after me and settles on my throne.
18 And now, behold, Adoni Yah reigns; and now, my adoni the sovereign, knows it not:
19 and he sacrifices oxen and fatlings and flocks in abundance; and calls all the sons of the sovereign and Abi Athar the priest and Yah Ab the governor of the host; and Shelomoh your servant he calls not:
20 and you, my adoni, O sovereign, the eyes of all Yisra El are on you, to tell them who settles on the throne of my adoni the sovereign after him:
21 and so be it, that when my adoni the sovereign lies with his fathers I and my son Shelomoh *be* as sinners.
22 And behold, as she still words with the sovereign, Nathan the prophet also comes in:
23 and they tell the sovereign, saying, Behold Nathan the prophet.
— and he comes in at the face of the sovereign, and prostrates himself at the face of the sovereign with his nostrils to the earth.
24 And Nathan says, My adoni, O sovereign, Did you say, Adoni Yah reigns after me and he settles on my throne?
25 For he descends this day and sacrifices oxen and fatlings and flocks in abundance and calls all the sons of the sovereign and the governors of the host and Abi Athar the priest: and behold, they eat and drink at his face and say, Sovereign Adoni Yah lives.
26 But me — me your servant and Sadoq the priest and Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada and your servant Shelomoh, he calls not.
27 If this is the word of my adoni the sovereign then you have not revealed to your servant who settles on the throne of my adoni the sovereign after him?
28 Then sovereign David answers and says, Call Bath Sheba.
— and she comes at the face of the sovereign and stands at the face of the sovereign.
29 And the sovereign oaths and says, Yah Veh lives
— who redeemed my soul from all tribulation: even as I oathed to you by Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El, saying, Assuredly Shelomoh your son reigns after me and he settles on my throne in my stead; even so in working, I work this day.

1 KINGS 1

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 31 Then *Bathsheba* **Bath Sheba** bowed
with *her face* **nostrils** to the earth,
and *did reverence* **prostrated** to the *king* **sovereign**,
and said, Let my *lord king* **adoni sovereign** David
live for ever **eternally**.
- 32 And *king* **sovereign** David said,
Call me *Zadok* **Sadoq** the priest, and Nathan the prophet,
and *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**.
And they came *before* **at the face** of the *king* **sovereign**.
- 33 The *king* **sovereign** also said unto them,
Take with you the servants of your *lord* **adoni**,
and cause *Solomon* **Shelomoh** my son
to ride upon mine own mule,
and *bring* **descend** him down to *Gihon* **Gichon**:
And let *Zadok* **Sadoq** the priest and Nathan the prophet
anoint him there *king* **sovereign** over *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and *blow* **blast** ye with the *trumpet* **shophar**, and say,
God save king **Sovereign Shelomoh liveth**.
- 35 Then ye shall *come up* **ascend** after him,
that he may come and *sit* **settle** upon my throne;
for he shall *be king* **reign** in my stead:
and I have *appointed* **misvahed** him
to *be ruler* **have eminence**
over *Israel* **Yisra El** and over *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
- 36 And *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**
answered the *king* **sovereign**, and said, Amen:
the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim**
of my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign** say so too sayeth thus.
- 37 As *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath been with my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**,
even so be he with *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
and make his throne greater
than the throne of my *lord king* **adoni sovereign** David.
- 38 So *Zadok* **Sadoq** the priest, and Nathan the prophet,
and *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**,
and the *Cherethites* **executioners**,
and the *Pelethites* **couriers**,
went down **descended**,
and caused *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
to ride upon *king* **sovereign** David's mule,
and *brought* **walked** him to *Gihon* **Gichon**.
- 39 And *Zadok* **Sadoq** the priest
took an horn of oil out of the *tabernacle* **tent**,
and anointed *Solomon* **Shelomoh**.
And they *blew* **blast** the *trumpet* **shophar**;
and all the people said,
God save king **Sovereign Shelomoh liveth**.
- 40 And all the people *came up* **ascended** after him,
and the people *pipd* **fluted** with *pipes* **flutes**,
and *rejoiced* **cheered** with great *joy* **cheer**,
so that the earth *rent* **split** with the *sound* **voice** of them.
- 41 And *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah**
and all the *guests* **called** that were with him
heard it as they had *made an end of* **finished** eating.
And when *Joab* **Yah Ab**
heard the *sound* **voice** of the *trumpet* **shophar**, he said,
Wherefore is this *noise* **voice** of the city
being in an uproar **roaring**?
- 42 And while he yet *spake* **worded**, behold,
Jonathan **Yah Nathan**
the son of *Abiathar* **Abi Athar** the priest came;
and *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah** said unto him, Come in;
for thou art a valiant man,
and bringest good *tidings* **evangelism**.
- 43 And *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** answered
and said to *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah**,
Verily **Surely**, our *lord king* **adoni sovereign** David
hath *made* **Solomon king** **Shelomoh to reign**.
- 44 And the *king* **sovereign** hath sent with him
Zadok **Sadoq** the priest, and Nathan the prophet,
and *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**,
and the *Cherethites* **executioners**,
and the *Pelethites* **couriers**,
and they have caused him
to ride upon the *king's* **sovereign's** mule:
And *Zadok* **Sadoq** the priest and Nathan the prophet
have anointed him *king* **sovereign** in *Gihon* **Gichon**:

1 SOVEREIGNS 1

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 31 Then Bath Sheba bows with nostrils to the earth
and prostrates to the sovereign and says,
O that my adoni sovereign David live eternally.
- 32 And sovereign David says,
Call Sadoq the priest and Nathan the prophet
and Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada.
— and they come at the face of the sovereign.
- 33 And the sovereign says to them,
Take with you the servants of your adoni
and have Shelomoh my son ride on my own mule;
and descend him to Gichon:
- 34 and there Sadoq the priest and Nathan the prophet
anoint him sovereign over Yisra El:
and you blast with the shophar and say,
Sovereign Shelomoh lives:
and you ascend after him,
and he comes and settles on my throne;
for he reigns in my stead:
and I misvah him to have eminence
over Yisra El and over Yah Hudah.
- 36 And Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada
answers the sovereign and says, Amen:
Yah Veh Elohim of my adoni the sovereign says thus:
- 37 As Yah Veh became with my adoni the sovereign
even so becomes he with Shelomoh:
and greatens his throne
above the throne of my adoni sovereign David.
- 38 So Sadoq the priest and Nathan the prophet
and Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada
and the executioners and the couriers descend
and ride Shelomoh on the mule of sovereign David
and walk him to Gichon.
- 39 And Sadoq the priest
takes a horn of oil from the tent
and anoints Shelomoh:
and they blast the shophar;
and all the people say, Sovereign Shelomoh lives.
- 40 And all the people ascend after him
and the people flute with flutes
and greatly cheer with cheer
so that the earth splits with their voice:
and Adoni Yah and all the called with him
hear it as they finish eating.
- And Yah Ab hears the voice of the shophar,
and he says, What is this voice of the city roaring?
- 42 And as he yet words, behold,
Yah Nathan the son of Abi Athar the priest comes;
and Adoni Yah says to him, Come in;
for you are a valiant man and bring good evangelism.
- 43 And Yah Nathan answers and says to Adoni Yah,
Surely, our adoni sovereign David
has Shelomoh to reign:
and the sovereign sends with him
Sadoq the priest and Nathan the prophet
and Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada
and the executioners and the couriers
and they ride him on the mule of the sovereign:
and Sadoq the priest and Nathan the prophet
anoint him sovereign in Gichon:

1 KINGS 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they are come up ascended from thence
rejoicing cheering,
so that the city rang again quaked.
This is the noise voice that ye have heard.
46 And also Solomon sitteth Shelomoh settleth
on the throne of the kingdom sovereigndom.
47 And moreover the king's sovereign's servants
came to bless our lord king adoni sovereign David, saying,
God make Elohim well—prepare
the name of Solomon Shelomoh
better than thy name,
and make his throne greater than thy throne.
And the king sovereign
48 bowed prostrated himself upon the bed.
And also thus said the king sovereign,
Blessed be
the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El,
which hath given one to sit settle on my throne this day,
mine eyes even seeing it.
49 And all the guests called
that were with Adonijah Adoni Yah
were afraid trembled, and rose up,
and went every man his way.
50 And Adonijah Adoni Yah
feared because awed at the face of Solomon Shelomoh,
and arose, and went,
and caught hold held on the horns of the sacrifice altar.
51 And it was told Solomon Shelomoh, saying, Behold,
Adonijah Adoni Yah
feareth king Solomon aweth sovereign Shelomoh:
for, lo behold,
he hath caught hold on the horns of the sacrifice altar,
saying,
Let king Solomon sovereign Shelomoh
swear oath unto me to day
that he will shall not slay deathify his servant
with the sword.
52 And Solomon Shelomoh said,
If he will shall shew himself a worthy man son of valour,
there shall not a hair of him fall to the earth:
but if wickedness evil shall be found in him, he shall die.
53 So king Solomon sovereign Shelomoh sent,
and they brought descended him down
from the sacrifice altar.
And he came and bowed prostrated himself
to king Solomon sovereign Shelomoh:
and Solomon Shelomoh said unto him, Go to thine house.
DAVID MISVAHS SHELOMOH
2 Now the days of David drew nigh approached
that he should die;
and he charged Solomon misvahed Shelomoh his son,
saying,
2 I go the way of all the earth:
be thou strong strengthen therefore,
and shew thyself a man manly;
3 And keep guard the charge guard
of the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim,
to walk in his ways, to keep guard his statutes,
and his commandments mitsvoth,
and his judgments, and his testimonies witnesses,
as it is written inscribed
in the law torah of Moses Moshéh,
that thou mayest prosper comprehend
in all that thou doest workest,
and whithersoever thou turnest facest thyself:
4 That the LORD Yah Veh may continue raise his word
which he spake worded concerning me, saying,
If thy children take heed to sons guard their way,
to walk before me at my face in truth
with all their heart and with all their soul,
there shall not fail be cut off from thee
(said he) a man on the throne of Israel Yisra El.
5 Moreover thou knowest also
what Joab Yah Ab the son of Zeruiyah Seruyah
did worked to me,
and — what he did worked to the two captains governors
of the hosts of Israel Yisra El,
unto Abner Abi Ner the son of Ner,

1 SOVEREIGNS 1, 2 551

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they ascend from there cheering
— so that the city quakes
— this is the voice you heard:
and also, Shelomoh settles
46 on the throne of the sovereigndom:
47 and also, the servants of the sovereign
come to bless our adoni sovereign David, saying,
Elohim well—prepares the name of Shelomoh
better than your name
and makes his throne
greater than your throne.
And the sovereign
prostrates himself on the bed:
48 and thus also says the sovereign,
Blessed — Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
who gives one to settle on my throne this day
— my eyes seeing.
49 And all the called with Adoni Yah
tremble and rise and every man goes his way:
50 and Adoni Yah awes at the face of Shelomoh
and rises and goes
and holds on to the horns of the sacrifice altar.
51 And they tell Shelomoh, saying, Behold,
Adoni Yah awes sovereign Shelomoh:
for, behold,
he holds on to the horns of the sacrifice altar,
saying,
O that sovereign Shelomoh oath to me today
that he not deathify his servant with the sword.
52 And Shelomoh says,
If he shows himself a son of valour,
not a hair of his falls to the earth:
but if evil is found in him, he dies.
53 So sovereign Shelomoh sends
and they descend him from the sacrifice altar:
and he comes and prostrates to sovereign Shelomoh:
and Shelomoh says to him, Go to your house.
DAVID MISVAHS SHELOMOH
2 And the days approach for David to die;
and he misvahs Shelomoh his son, saying,
2 I go the way of all the earth:
Strengthen! Manly!
3 Guard the guard of Yah Veh your Elohim!
Walk in his ways!
Guard his statutes and his misvoth
and his judgments and his witnesses
as inscribed in the torah of Mosheh
— so that you comprehend
in all you work and wherever you face:
4 that Yah Veh raise the word
he worded concerning me,
saying, If your sons guard their way,
to walk at my face in truth
with all their heart and with all their soul
not a man of you
is cut off from the throne of Yisra El.
5 And you also know
what Yah Ab the son of Seruyah worked to me;
what he worked to the two governors
of the hosts of Yisra El
— to Abi Ner the son of Ner

1 KINGS 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and unto Amasa the son of *Jether* **Yether**,
whom he *slew* **slaughtered**,
and *shed* **set** the blood of war in *peace* **shalom**,
and *put* **gave** the blood of war
upon his girdle that was about his loins,
and in his shoes that were on his feet.
6 *Do* **Work** therefore according to thy wisdom,
and let not his *hoar head* **grayness**
go down **descend** to the grave **sheol** in *peace* **shalom**.
7 But *shew* **kindness** **work** **mercy**
unto the sons of *Barzillai* **Barzillai** the *Gileadite* **Giladiy**,
and let them be of those that eat at thy table:
for so they *came* **approached** to me
when I fled *because* **from the face** of *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**
thy brother.
8 And, behold,
thou hast with thee *Shimei* **Shimi** the son of Gera,
a *Benjamite* **Ben Yaminiy** of *Bahurim* **Bachurim**,
which *cursed* **abased** me
with a *grievous curse* **reinforced abasement**
in the day when I went to *Mahanaim* **Machanayim**:
but he *came down* **descended**
to meet me at *Jordan* **Yarden**,
and I *sware* **oathed** to him by the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, saying,
I will **shall** not *put* **deathify** thee to *death* with the sword.
9 Now therefore *hold* **exonerate** him not *guiltless*:
for thou art a wise man,
and knowest what thou oughtest to *do* **work** unto him;
but his *hoar head* **grayness**
bring thou down **descend** to the grave **sheol** with blood.
10 So David *slept* **laid** with his fathers,
and was *buried* **entombed** in the city of David.
11 And the days that David reigned over *Israel* **Yisra El**
were forty years:
seven years reigned he in Hebron,
and thirty and three years reigned he
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
12 Then *sat* **Solomon** **settled Shelomoh**
upon the throne of David his father;
and his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
was established *greatly* **mightily**.
ADONI YAH APPROACHES BATH SHEBA
13 And *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah** the son of Haggith
came to *Bathsheba* **Bath Sheba**
the mother of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**.
And she said, *Comest thou* **peaceably in shalom?**
And he said, *Peaceably* **In shalom**.
14 He said moreover,
I have *somewhat to say* **a word** unto thee.
And she said, *Say* **Word** on.
15 And he said,
Thou knowest that the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** was mine,
and that all *Israel* **Yisra El** set their faces on me,
that I should reign:
howbeit the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** is turned about,
and is become my brother's:
for it was his from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
16 And now I ask one petition of thee,
deny me **turn not away my face**.
And she said unto him, *Say* **Word** on.
17 And he said, *Speak* **Say**, I pray thee,
unto *Solomon* **Shelomoh** the *king* **sovereign**,
(for he *will* **shall** not *say* **thee nay** **turn away thy face**.)
that he give me *Abishag* **Abi Shag**
the *Shunammite* **Shunemiyth** to *wife* **woman**.
18 And *Bathsheba* **Bath Sheba** said, *Well* **Good**;
I *will* **shall** **word** for thee unto the *king* **sovereign**.
19 *Bathsheba* **Bath Sheba** therefore
went unto *king* **Solomon** **sovereign** **Shelomoh**,
to *speak* **word** unto him for *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah**.
And the *king* **sovereign** rose up to meet her,
and *bowed* **prostrated** himself unto her,
and *sat down* **settled** on his throne,
and caused a seat to be set
for the *king's* **sovereign's** mother;
and she *sat* **settled** on his right *hand*.
20 Then she said, I *desire* **ask** one small petition of thee;
I *pray thee*, *say me not nay* **Turn not away my face**.

1 SOVEREIGNS 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and to Amasa the son of Yether
— whom he slaughtered
and set the blood of war in shalom
— and gave the blood of war
on his girdle around his loins
and in the shoes on his feet.
6 And work according to your wisdom
that his grayness descend not to sheol in shalom:
7 and work mercy to the sons of Barzillay the Giladiy
to be of those who eat at your table:
for thus they approached me
when I fled the face of Abi Shalom your brother.
8 And behold,
you have with you Shimi the son of Gera,
a Ben Yaminiy of Bachurim
who abased me with a reinforced abasement
the day I went to Machanayim:
and he descended to meet me at Yarden
and I oathed to him by Yah Veh, saying,
I deathify you not with the sword.
9 And now exonerate him not:
for you are a wise man
and know what you ought to work to him;
and his grayness descends to sheol with blood.
10 So David lies down with his fathers
entombed in the city of David:
11 and the days David reigns over Yisra El
are forty years:
he reigns seven years in Hebron
and reigns thirty—three years in Yeru Shalem:
12 and Shelomoh
settles on the throne of David his father;
and his sovereigndom is established mightily.
ADONI YAH APPROACHES BATH SHEBA
13 And Adoni Yah the son of Haggith
comes to Bath Sheba the mother of Shelomoh:
and she says, Come you in shalom?
And he says, In shalom.
14 And he says, I have a word to you.
And she says, Word on.
15 And he says,
You know that the sovereigndom is mine
and that all Yisra El set their faces on me to reign:
howbeit the sovereigndom turns around
and becomes to my brother
— for it is his from Yah Veh.
16 And now I ask one petition of you,
turn not away my face.
And she says to him, Word on.
17 And he says,
Say, I pray you, to Shelomoh the sovereign,
— for he turns not away your face
— to give me Abi Shag the Shunemiyth to woman.
18 And Bath Sheba says, Good;
I word for you to the sovereign.
19 And Bath Sheba goes to sovereign Shelomoh,
to word to him for Adoni Yah:
and the sovereign rises to meet her
and prostrates himself to her and settles on his throne
and sets a seat for the mother of the sovereign;
and she settles at his right.
20 Then she says, I ask one small petition of you;
Turn not away my face.

1 KINGS 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

21 And the king **sovereign** said unto her, Ask on, my mother:
for I will **shall** not say thee nay **turn away thy face**.
And she said,
Let *Abishag* **Abi Shag** the *Shunammite* **Shunemiyyth**
be given to *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah** thy brother
to wife **woman**.

22 And king *Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh** answered
and said unto his mother,
And why dost thou ask
Abishag **Abi Shag** the *Shunammite* **Shunemiyyth**
for *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah**?
ask for him the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** also;
for he is *mine elder* **my greater** brother;
even for him, and for *Abiathar* **Abi Athar** the priest,
and for *Joab* **Yah Ab** the son of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah**.

23 Then king *Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**
sware **oathed** by the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, saying,
God do **Elohim work** so to me, and *more* **add** also,
if *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah** have not *spoken* **worded** this word
against his own *life* **soul**.

24 Now therefore, as the *LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth,
which hath established me,
and set me on the throne of David my father,
and who hath *made* **worked** me an house,
as he *promised* **worded**,
Adonijah **Adoni Yah** shall be *put to death* **deathified**
this day.

25 And king *Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh** sent
by the hand of *Benaiah* **Bena Yah**
the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**;
and he *fell* **encountered** upon him that he died.

26 And unto *Abiathar* **Abi Athar** the priest
said the king **sovereign**,
Get thee **Go** to Anathoth, unto thine own fields;
for thou art *worthy* **a man** of death:
but I will **shall** not
at this time *put thee to death* **deathify thee today**,
because thou barest the ark
of the *Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**
before **at the face of** David my father,
and because thou hast been *afflicted* **humbled**
in all wherein my father was *afflicted* **humbled**.

27 So *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
thrust out **Abiathar expelled** **Abi Athar**
from being priest unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
that he might fulfil the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which he *spake* **worded**
concerning the house of Eli in Shiloh.

YAH AB IS DEATHIFIED

28 Then *tidings* **reports** came to *Joab* **Yah Ab**:
for *Joab* **Yah Ab**
had *turned* **spread** after *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah**,
though he *turned* **spread** not after *Absalom* **Abi Shalom**.
And *Joab* **Yah Ab** fled
unto the *tabernacle* **tent** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and caught hold on the horns of the **sacrifice** altar.

29 And it was told king *Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**
that *Joab* **Yah Ab** was fled
unto the *tabernacle* **tent** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
and, behold, *he is by* **beside** the **sacrifice** altar.
Then *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
sent *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**,
saying, Go, *fall* **encounter** upon him.

30 And *Benaiah* **Bena Yah**
came to the *tabernacle* **tent** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and said unto him,
Thus saith the king **sovereign**, *Come forth* **Go**.
And he said, Nay; but I will **shall** die here.
And *Benaiah* **Bena Yah**
brought the king **returned** word again to the **sovereign**,
saying, Thus *said* **Joab worded** **Yah Ab**,
and thus he answered me.

31 And the king **sovereign** said unto him,
Do **Work** as he hath *said* **worded**,
and *fall* **encounter** upon him, and *bury* **entomb** him;
that thou mayest *take away* **turn aside**
the *innocent* **gratuitous** blood,
which *Joab* **shed** **Yah Ab poured**, from me,

1 SOVEREIGNS 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And the sovereign says to her,
Ask, my mother: for I turn not away your face.

21 And she says,
O that *Abi Shag* the *Shunemiyyth*
be given to *Adoni Yah* your brother to woman.

22 And sovereign *Shelomoh* answers
and says to his mother,
And why ask you
Abi Shag the *Shunemiyyth* for *Adoni Yah*?
Ask you the *sovereigndom* for him also?
For he is my greater brother;
even for him and for *Abi Athar* the priest
and for *Yah Ab* the son of *Seruyah*.

23 Then sovereign *Shelomoh* oaths by *Yah Veh*,
saying, *Elohim work* thus to me and *add* also
if *Adoni Yah* words not this word
against his own soul:
and now, *Yah Veh* lives,
who established me
and set me on the throne of David my father
— who works me a house as he *worded*,
Adoni Yah is deathified this day.

25 And sovereign *Shelomoh* sends
by the hand of *Bena Yah* the son of *Yah Yada*;
and he encounters on him that he dies.

26 And the sovereign says to *Abi Athar* the priest,
Go to Anathoth — to your own fields;
for you are a man of death:
but I deathify you not today,
because you bore the ark of *Adonay* **Yah Veh**
at the face of David my father
— being humbled in all
wherein my father was humbled.

27 So *Shelomoh* expels *Abi Athar*
from being priest to *Yah Veh*;
to fulfill the word *Yah Veh* *worded*
concerning the house of Eli in Shiloh.

YAH AB IS DEATHIFIED

28 And reports come to *Yah Ab*:
for *Yah Ab* spread after *Adoni Yah*
though he spread not after *Abi Shalom*:
and *Yah Ab* flees to the tent of *Yah Veh*
and holds on the horns of the sacrifice altar.

29 And they tell sovereign *Shelomoh*,
Yah Ab flees to the tent of *Yah Veh*;
and behold, beside the sacrifice altar.

Then *Shelomoh* sends *Bena Yah* the son of *Yah Yada*
saying, Go, encounter him.

30 And *Bena Yah* comes to the tent of *Yah Veh*
and says to him,
Thus says the sovereign, Go.
And he says, No; but here I die.

And *Bena Yah* returns word to the sovereign, saying,
Thus *Yah Ab* words and thus he answers me.

31 And the sovereign says to him,
Work as he *worded*
and encounter him and entomb him;
to turn aside the gratuitous blood
Yah Ab poured from me

1 KINGS 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 32 and from the house of my father.
And the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall return his blood upon his own head,
who fell upon **encountered** two men
more *righteous* **just** and better than he,
and *slew* **slaughtered** them with the sword,
my father David not knowing thereof, *to wit*,
Abner **Abi Ner** the son of Ner,
captain **governor** of the host of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and Amasa the son of *Jether* **Yether**,
captain **governor** of the host of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
33 Their blood shall *therefore* return
upon the head of *Joab* **Yah Ab**,
and upon the head of his seed *for ever* **eternally**:
but upon David, and upon his seed,
and upon his house, and upon his throne,
shall there be *peace for ever* **shalom eternally**
from the **LORD Yah Veh**.
34 So *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**
went up **ascended**,
and fell upon **encountered** him, and *slew* **deathified** him:
and he was *buried* **entombed** in his own house
in the wilderness.
35 And the **king sovereign**
put *Benaiah* **gave Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**
in his *room* **stead** over the host:
and *Zadok* **Sadoq** the priest
did the *king put* **sovereign give**
in the *room* **stead** of *Abiathar* **Abi Athar**.
SHIMI IS DEATHIFIED
36 And the **king sovereign** sent
and called for *Shimei* **Shimi**, and said unto him,
Build thee an house in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and *dwelt* **settle** there,
and go not forth thence any *whither* **where**.
37 For **so be** it *shall be*, that on the day thou goest out,
and passest over the *brook Kidron* **wadi Qidron**,
in knowing, thou shalt know *for certain*
that **in dying**, thou shalt *surely* die:
thy blood shall be upon thine own head.
38 And *Shimei* **Shimi** said unto the **king sovereign**,
The *saying* **word** is good:
as my *lord* **adoni** the **king sovereign** hath *said* **worded**,
so **will shall** thy servant *do* **work**.
And *Shimei dwelt* **Shimi settled** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
many days.
39 And **so be** it *came to pass*, at the end of three years,
that two of the servants of *Shimei* **Shimi**
ran away **fled** unto Achish
son of Maachah **king sovereign** of Gath.
And they told *Shimei* **Shimi**, saying,
Behold, thy servants be in Gath.
40 And *Shimei* **Shimi** arose,
and *saddled* **harnessed** his ass **he burro**,
and went to Gath to Achish to seek his servants:
and *Shimei* **Shimi** went,
and brought his servants from Gath.
41 And it was told *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
that *Shimei* **Shimi**
had gone from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** to Gath,
and *was come again* **returned**.
42 And the **king sovereign** sent
and called for *Shimei* **Shimi**, and said unto him,
Did I not make thee to *swear* **oath** by the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and *protested* **witnessed** unto thee, saying,
In knowing, Know *for a certain*, on the day thou goest out,
and walkest *abroad* any *whither* **where**,
that **in dying**, thou shalt *surely* die?
and thou saidst unto me,
The word that I have heard is good.
43 Why then hast thou not *kept* **guarded**
the oath of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and the *commandment* **misvah**
that I have *charged* **misvahed** thee with?
44 The **king sovereign** said *moreover* to *Shimei* **Shimi**,
Thou knowest all the *wickedness* **evil**
which thine heart *is privy to* **perceiveth**,
that thou *didst* **workedst** to David my father:

1 SOVEREIGNS 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 32 and from the house of my father;
and Yah Veh returns his blood on his own head
— who encountered two men
more just and better than he
and slaughtered them with the sword
my father David not knowing thereof
— Abi Ner the son of Ner
governor of the host of Yisra El
and Amasa the son of Yether
governor of the host of Yah Hudah:
33 their blood returns on the head of Yah Ab
and on the head of his seed eternally:
but on David and on his seed
and on his house and on his throne,
there is shalom eternally from Yah Veh.
34 So Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada ascends
and encounters him and deathifies him:
and he is entombed
in his own house in the wilderness:
and the sovereign gives
35 Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada
over the host in his stead:
and the sovereign gives
Sadoq the priest
in the stead of Abi Athar.
SHIMI IS DEATHIFIED
36 And the sovereign sends and calls for Shimi
and says to him,
Build yourself a house in Yeru Shalem
and settle there;
and go not anywhere:
37 and so be it,
the day you go and pass over the wadi Qidron,
in knowing, know that in dying, you die:
your blood being on your own head.
38 And Shimi says to the sovereign, Good word!
As my adoni the sovereign words,
thus your servant works.
— and Shimi settles in Yeru Shalem many days.
39 And so be it, at the end of three years,
that two of the servants of Shimi
flee to Achish son of Maachah sovereign of Gath.
And Shimi is told, saying,
Behold, your servants are in Gath.
40 And Shimi rises and harnesses his he burro
and goes to Gath to Achish to seek his servants:
and Shimi goes and brings his servants from Gath.
41 And they tell Shelomoh
that Shimi goes from Yeru Shalem to Gath
and returns.
42 And the sovereign sends and calls for Shimi
and says to him,
Did I not oath you by Yah Veh
and witness to you, saying,
In knowing, know that on the day you go
and walk any where,
that in dying, you die.
— and you said to me,
The word I hear is good.
43 Why then guarded you not the oath of Yah Veh
and the misvah I misvahed you?
44 The sovereign says to Shimi,
You know all the evil your heart perceives
which you worked to David my father;

1 KINGS 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

therefore the **LORD Yah Veh** shall return thy *wickedness evil*
upon thine own head;
45 And *king Solomon shall be blessed*
blessed be sovereign Shelomoh,
and the *throne of David shall be established*
established be the throne of David
before the **LORD** for ever **at the face of Yah Veh eternally.**
46 So the *king commanded* **sovereign misvahed**
Benaiah Bena Yah the son of *Jehoiada Yah Yada;*
which went out,
and *fell encountered* upon him, that he died.
And the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
was established in the hand of *Solomon Shelomoh.*

SHELOMOH REQUESTS WISDOM

3 And *Solomon made affinity* **Shelomoh intermarried**
with *Pharaoh Paroh, king* **sovereign of Egypt Misrayim,**
and took *Pharaoh's Paroh's* daughter,
and brought her into the city of David,
until he had *made an end of finished*
building his own house,
and the house of the **LORD Yah Veh,**
and the wall of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem* round about.
2 Only the people sacrificed in *high places bamahs,*
because there was no house built
unto the name of the **LORD Yah Veh,** until those days.
3 And *Solomon Shelomoh* loved the **LORD Yah Veh,**
walking in the statutes of David his father:
only he sacrificed and *burnt incense incensed*
in *high places bamahs.*
4 And the *king* **sovereign** went to *Gibeon Gibon*
to sacrifice there;
for that was the great *high place bamah:*
a thousand *burnt offerings holocausts*
did Solomon offer **Shelomoh holocausted**
upon that **sacrifice** altar.
5 In *Gibeon Gibon,*
the **LORD Yah Veh**
appeared to Solomon **was seen by Shelomoh**
in a dream by night:
and *God Elohim* said, Ask what I shall give thee.
6 And *Solomon Shelomoh* said,
Thou hast *shewed worked*
unto thy servant David my father great mercy,
according as he walked *before thee at thy face* in truth,
and in *righteousness justness,*
and in *uprightness straightness* of heart with thee;
and thou hast *kept guarded* for him
this great *kindness mercy,*
that thou hast given him a son to *sit settle* on his throne,
as *it is* this day.
7 And now, O **LORD Yah Veh** my *God Elohim,*
thou hast *made thy servant king reign*
instead of David my father:
and I am *but a little child lad:*
I know not *how* to go out or come in.
8 And thy servant is in the midst of thy people
which thou hast chosen,
a great people, that cannot be numbered
nor *counted scribed* for *multitude abundance.*
9 Give therefore thy servant
an understanding a hearing heart to judge thy people,
that I may discern between good and *bad evil:*
for who is able to judge this
thy *so great a grievous* people?
10 And the *speech word*
pleased the Lord well—pleased the eyes of Adonay,
that *Solomon Shelomoh* had asked this *thing word.*
11 And *God Elohim* said unto him,
Because thou hast asked this *thing word,*
and hast not asked for thyself *long life many days;*
neither hast asked riches for thyself,
nor hast asked the *life soul* of thine enemies;
but hast asked for thyself *understanding discernment*
to *discern hear* judgment;
12 Behold, I have *done worked* according to thy words:
lo behold, I have given thee
a wise and *an understanding discerning* heart;
so that there was none like thee *before thee at thy face,*

1 SOVEREIGNS 2, 3 555

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and Yah Veh returns your evil on your own head:
45 and blessed — sovereign Shelomoh,
and established is the throne of David
at the face of Yah Veh eternally.
46 So the sovereign
misvahs Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada;
who goes out and encounters him that he dies.
And the sovereigndom
is established in the hand of Shelomoh.

SHELOMOH REQUESTS WISDOM

3 And Shelomoh intermarries
with Paroh sovereign of Misrayim;
and takes the daughter of Paroh
and brings her into the city of David
until he finishes building his own house
and the house of Yah Veh
and the wall of Yeru Shalem all around:
2 only, the people sacrifice in bamahs
because of no house being built
to the name of Yah Veh until those days:
3 and Shelomoh loves Yah Veh
walking in the statutes of David his father:
only, he sacrifices and incenses in bamahs:
4 and the sovereign goes to Gibon to sacrifice there;
for that is the great bamah:
Shelomoh holocausts a thousand holocausts
on that sacrifice altar.
5 In Gibon
Yah Veh is seen by Shelomoh in a dream by night:
and Elohim says, Ask what I give you.
6 And Shelomoh says, You worked great mercy
to your servant David my father
according as he walked at your face in truth
and in justness and in straightness of heart with you:
and you guarded this great mercy for him
in that you gave him a son to settle on his throne
as this day:
7 and now, O Yah Veh my Elohim,
you have your servant reign
in the stead of David my father:
and I am a little lad:
I know not to go out or come in:
8 and your servant *is* midst your people
whom you chose — a great people
that can neither be numbered
nor scribed for abundance:
9 give your servant a hearing heart
to judge your people
— to discern between good and evil:
for who is able to judge this — your grievous people?
10 — and the word
well — pleases the eyes of Adonay
that Shelomoh asks this word.
11 And Elohim says to him,
Because you ask this word
and neither ask many days for yourself,
nor ask riches for yourself,
nor ask the soul of your enemies;
but ask for yourself discernment to hear judgment
12 behold, I work according to your words:
behold, I give you a wise and discerning heart;
so that neither is any like you at your face

1 KINGS 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

neither after thee shall any arise like unto thee.
13 And I have also given thee
that which thou hast not asked,
both riches, and honour:
so that there shall *not be any* **be no man**
among the *kings* **sovereigns**
like unto thee all thy days.
14 And if thou *wilt* **shalt** walk in my ways,
to *keep* **guard** my statutes
and my *commandments* **mitsvoth**,
as thy father David did walk,
then I *will lengthen* **shall prolong** thy days.
15 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh** awoke;
and, behold, *it was* a dream.
And he came to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and stood
before **at the face of** the ark of the covenant
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *offered up burnt offerings* **holocausted holocausts**,
and *offered peace offerings* **worked shelamim**,
and *made* **worked** a feast to all his servants.
THE FIRST CASE OF SHELOMOH
16 Then came there two women,
that were harlots — **whores**,
unto the *king* **sovereign**, and stood *before him* **at his face**.
17 And the one woman said, O my *lord* **adoni**,
I and this woman *dwelt* **settle** in one house;
and I *was delivered of a child* **birthed**
with her in the house.
18 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
the third day after that I *was delivered* **birthed**,
that this woman *was delivered* **birthed** also:
and we were together;
there was no stranger with us in the house,
save **except** we two in the house.
19 And this woman's *child* **son** died in the night;
because she *overlaid* **layed down upon** it.
20 And she arose *at midnight* **in the middle of the night**,
and took my son from beside me,
while *thine handmaid* **thy maid** slept,
and laid it in her bosom,
and laid her dead *child* **son** in my bosom.
21 And when I rose in the morning
to *give my child suck* **suckle my son**,
behold, *it was dead* **had died**:
but when I had *considered* **discerned** it in the morning,
behold, it was not my son, which I did *bear* **birth**.
22 And the other woman said, Nay;
but the living is my son, and the dead is thy son.
And this said, No;
but the dead is thy son, and the living is my son.
Thus they *spoke* **worded**
before **at the face of** the *king* **sovereign**.
THE FIRST JUDGMENT OF SHELOMOH
23 Then said the *king* **sovereign**,
The **This** one saith,
This is my son that liveth, and thy son is the dead:
and *the other* **that** saith,
Nay; but thy son is the dead, and my son is the living.
24 And the *king* **sovereign** said, *Bring* **Take** me a sword.
And they brought a sword
before **at the face of** the *king* **sovereign**.
25 And the *king* **sovereign** said,
Divide **Cut** the living child in two,
and give half to the one, and half to the *other* **one**.
26 Then *spoke* **said** the woman
whose the living *child* **son** was unto the *king* **sovereign**,
for her *bowels* **mercies** yearned upon her son,
and she said,
O my *lord* **adoni**, give her the *living child* **live birthed**,
and in *no wise* **slay it deathifying, deathify it not**.
But the other said,
Let it be neither mine nor thine, *but divide* **cut** it.
27 Then the *king* **sovereign** answered and said,
Give her the *living child* **live birthed**,
and in *no wise* **slay it in deathifying, deathify it not**:
she is the mother thereof.
28 And all *Israel* **Yisra El** heard of the judgment

1 SOVEREIGNS 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

nor any rise like you after you:
13 and I also give you what you ask not
— both riches and honor:
so that there be no man among the sovereigns
as you all your days:
14 and if you walk in my ways
to guard my statutes and my misvoth
as your father David walked,
then I prolong your days.
15 And Shelomoh wakens; and behold — a dream:
and he comes to Yeru Shalem
and stands
at the face of the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
and holocausts holocausts and works shelamim
and works a feast to all his servants.
THE FIRST CASE OF SHELOMOH
16 And two women — whores
come to the sovereign and stand at his face:
17 and the one woman says, O my adoni,
I and this woman settle in one house;
and I birthed with her in the house:
18 and so be it,
the third day after I birthed, this woman also birthed:
and we are together
— no stranger with us in the house
except we two in the house:
19 and the son of this woman dies in the night;
because she lies down on it:
20 and she rises in the middle of the night
and takes my son from beside me
while your maid sleeps
and lays it in her bosom;
and lays her dead son in my bosom:
21 and when I rise in the morning to suckle my son
behold, it died:
and I discern in the morning,
and behold, it is not my son, whom I birthed.
22 And the other woman says, No;
but the living *is* my son, and the dead *is* your son.
And this one says, No;
but the dead *is* your son, and the living *is* my son.
— and they word at the face of the sovereign.
THE FIRST JUDGMENT OF SHELOMOH
23 Then the sovereign says,
This one says,
This is my son who lives, and your son *is* the dead:
and that one says,
No; but your son *is* the dead, and my son *is* the living.
24 And the sovereign says, Take me a sword.
— and they bring a sword at the face of the sovereign.
25 And the sovereign says, Cut the living child in two;
and give half to the one and half to the one.
26 Then the woman whose son is the living
says to the sovereign
— for her mercies yearned upon her son
and she says, O my adoni,
give her the live birthed one;
and in deathifying, deathify it not.
And the other said,
O that it neither be mine nor yours! Cut!
27 And the sovereign answers and says,
Give her the live birthed one;
and in deathifying, deathify it not:
she is the mother thereof.
28 And all Yisra El hears of the judgment

1 KINGS 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which the *king* **sovereign** had judged;
and they *feared* **awed at the face of** the *king* **sovereign**:
for they saw that the wisdom of *God* **Elohim**
was in *him* **his midst**, to do **work** judgment.

THE GOVERNORS OF SHELOMOH

4 So *king* **Solomon** **sovereign** **Shelomoh**
was *king* **sovereign** over all *Israel* **Yisra El**.
2 And these were the *princes* **governors** which he had;
Azariah **Azar Yah** the son of *Zadok* **Sadoq** the priest,
3 *Elihoreph* **Eli Horeph** and *Ahiah* **Achiy Yah**,
the sons of Shisha, scribes;
Jehoshaphat **Yah Shaphat** the son of *Ahilud* **Achiy Lud**,
the *recorder* **remembrancer**.
4 And *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**
was over the host:
and *Zadok* **Sadoq** and *Abiathar* **Abi Athar** were the priests:
5 And *Azariah* **Azar Yah** the son of Nathan
was over the *officers* **stationed**:
and *Zabud* the son of Nathan was *principal officer* **priest**,
and the *king's* **sovereign's** friend:
6 And *Ahishar* **Achiy Shar** was over the household:
and *Adoniram* **Adoni Ram** the son of Abda
was over the *tribute* **vassal**.

THE STATIONED OF SHELOMOH

7 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
had twelve *officers* **stationed** over all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which *provided* **victuals for** **sustained** the *king* **sovereign**
and his household:
each man his month in a year **made provision**
each one sustained one month per year.
8 And these are their names:
The son of Hur **Ben Hur**, in mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**:
9 *The son of Dekar* **Ben Deqer**, in *Makaz* **Maqas**,
and in *Shaalbim* and *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh**,
and *Elonbethhanan* **Elon Beth Hanan**:
10 *The son of Hesus* **Ben Hesus**, in *Aruboth* **Arubboth**;
to him *pertained* **Sochoh**,
and all the land of Hopher:
11 *The son of Abinadab* **Ben Abi Nadab**,
in all the *region* **heights** of Dor;
which had *Taphath* the daughter of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
to *wife* **woman**:
12 *Baana* the son of *Ahilud* **Achiy Lud**;
to him *pertained* **Taanach** and **Megiddo**,
and all *Bethshean* **Beth Shaan**,
which is by *Zartanah* **beside Sarethan**
beneath *Jezreel* **Yizre El**,
from *Bethshean* **Beth Shaan**
to *Abelmeholah* **Abel Mecholah**,
even unto the place that is beyond **Jokneam** **Yoqme Am**:
13 *The son of Geber* **Ben Geber**,
in *Ramothgilead* **Ramoth Gilad**;
to him *pertained* the *towns* **living areas** of *Jair* **Yair**
the son of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
which are in *Gilead* **Gilad**;
to him *also pertained* the *region* **boundaries** of *Argob*,
which is in *Bashan*,
threescore **sixty** great cities
with walls and *brases* **copper** bars:
14 *Ahinadab* **Achiy Nadab** the son of *Iddo*
had *Mahanaim* **Machanayim**:
15 *Ahimaaz* **Achiy Maas** was in *Naphtali*;
he *also took* **Basmath** **Bosmath**
the daughter of *Solomon* **Shelomoh** to *wife* **woman**:
16 *Baanah* the son of *Hushai* **Hushay**
was in *Asher* and in *Aloth* **Bealoth**:
17 *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat** the son of *Paruah* **Paruach**,
in *Issachar* **Yissachar**:
18 *Shimei* **Shimi** the son of *Elah* **Ela**,
in *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**:
19 *Geber* the son of *Uri*
was in the *country* **land** of *Gilead* **Gilad**,
in the *country* **land** of *Sihon* **Sichon**
king **sovereign** of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
and of *Og* *king* **sovereign** of *Bashan*;
and he was the *only officer* **one prefect**
which was in the land.

1 SOVEREIGNS 3, 4 557

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the *sovereign* judged;
and they *awe* at the face of the *sovereign*:
for they see the wisdom of *Elohim* in his midst
to work judgment.

THE GOVERNORS OF SHELOMOH

4 And *sovereign* **Shelomoh**
is *sovereign* over all *Yisra El*;
2 and these are his *governors*:
Azar Yah the son of *Sadoq*, **priest**;
3 *Eli Horeph* and *Achiy Yah* the sons of *Shisha*,
scribes;
Yah Shaphat the son of *Achiy Lud*, *remembrancer*;
4 and *Bena Yah* the son of *Yah Yada*, over the host;
and *Sadoq* and *Abi Athar*, *priests*;
5 and *Azar Yah* the son of *Nathan*, over the *stationed*;
and *Zabud* the son of *Nathan*,
priest and *friend* of the *sovereign*;
6 and *Achiy Shar*, over the *household*;
and *Adoni Ram* the son of *Abda*, over the *vassal*.

THE STATIONED OF SHELOMOH

7 And *Shelomoh* has twelve *stationed* over all *Yisra El*
to *sustain* the *sovereign* and his *household*;
each one sustains one month per year;
8 and these are their names:
Ben Hur, in *mount Ephrayim*;
9 *Ben Deqer*, in *Maqas* and in *Shaalbim*;
and *Beth Shemesh* and *Elon Beth Hanan*;
10 *Ben Hesus*, in *Arubboth*
— *also having* *Sochoh* and all the land of *Hopher*;
11 *Ben Abi Nadab*, in all the *heights* of *Dor*
— *having* *Taphath* the daughter of *Shelomoh*
to *woman*;
12 *Baana* the son of *Achiy Lud*
— to him *Taanach* and *Megiddo*,
and all *Beth Shaan* *beside* *Sarethan* below *Yizre El*
from *Beth Shaan* to *Abel Mecholah*
beyond *Yoqme Am*;
13 *Ben Geber*, in *Ramoth Gilad*
— to him the *living areas*
of *Yair* the son of *Menash Sheh* in *Gilad*
— to him the *boundaries* of *Argob* in *Bashan*
— *sixty* great cities with walls and *copper bars*;
14 *Achiy Nadab* the son of *Iddo* has *Machanayim*;
15 *Achiy Maas* in *Naphtali*
— he *also takes* *Bosmath* the daughter of *Shelomoh*
to *woman*;
16 *Baanah* the son of *Hushay* in *Asher* and in *Bealoth*;
17 *Yah Shaphat* the son of *Paruah* in *Yissachar*;
18 *Shimi* the son of *Ela* in *Ben Yamin*;
19 *Geber* the son of *Uri* in the land of *Gilad*
— in the land of *Sichon* *sovereign* of the *Emoriy*
and of *Og* *sovereign* of *Bashan*
— and he is the *one prefect* in the land.

1 KINGS 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE REIGN OF SHELOMOH

20 Judah **Yah Hudah** and *Israel* **Yisra El** were many,
as the sand which is by the sea in *multitude* **abundance**,
eating and drinking, and *making merry* **cheering**.
21 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
reigned **was sovereign** over all *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**
from the river unto the land of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and unto the border of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
they brought *presents* **near offerings**,
and served *Solomon* **Shelomoh** all the days of his life.

THE BREAD OF SHELOMOH

22 And *Solomon's provision* **Shelomoh's bread** for one day
was thirty *measures* **kors** of *fine* flour,
and *threescore measures* **sixty kors** of *meal* flour,
23 Ten fat oxen, and twenty oxen out of the pastures,
and an hundred *sheep* **flocks**,
beside harts, and *roebucks* **gazelles**,
and fallowdeer, and *fatted* **foddered** fowl.
24 For he *had dominion* **subjugated** over all *the region*
on this side the river,
from *Tiphshah* **Tiphshach** even to *Azzah*,
over all the *kings* **sovereigns** on this side the river:
and he had *peace* **shalom**
on all sides **from all his servants** round about him.
25 And *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Israel* **Yisra El**
dwelt safely **settled confidently**,
every man under his vine and under his fig tree,
from Dan even to *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**,
all the days of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**.

26 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
had forty thousand stalls of horses for his chariots,
and twelve thousand *horsemen* **cavalry**.
27 And those *officers* **stationed**
provided victual for king Solomon
sustained sovereign Shelomoh,
and for all that *came* **approached**
unto *king Solomon's* **sovereign Shelomoh's** table,
every man in his month:
they lacked *nothing* **no word**.

THE WISDOM OF SHELOMOH

28 Barley also and straw
for the horses and *dromedaries* **stallions**
brought they unto the place where *the officers* **they** were,
every man according to his *charge* **judgment**.
29 And *God* **Elohim** gave *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
wisdom and *understanding* **discernment**
exceeding much **mightily abounding**,
and *largeness* **broadness** of heart,
even as the sand that is on the sea *shore* **lip**.
30 And *Solomon's* **Shelomoh's** wisdom *excelled* **abounded**
above the wisdom of all
the *children* **sons** of the east *country* **land**,
and all the wisdom of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
31 For he was *wiser* **enwisened**
than **above** all *men* **humanity**;
than *Ethan the* **Ezrahite Zerachiy**, and *Heman*,
and *Chalcol* **Kalkol**, and *Darda*,
the sons of *Mahol* **Machol**:
and his fame was in all *nations* **goyim** round about.
32 And he *spake* **worded** three thousand proverbs:
and his songs were a thousand and five.
33 And he *spake* **worded** of trees,
from the cedar tree that is in Lebanon
even unto the hyssop
that *springeth* **emergeth** out of the wall:
he *spake also* **worded** of *beasts* **animals**,
and of *fowl* **flyers**,
and of *creeping things* **creepers**, and of fishes.
34 And there came of all people
to hear the wisdom of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
from all *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth,
which had heard of his wisdom.

THE ALLIANCE OF SHELOMOH WITH SOVEREIGN HIRAM

5 And *Hiram king* **sovereign** of *Tyre* **Sor**
sent his servants unto *Solomon* **Shelomoh**;
for he had heard that they had anointed him *king* **sovereign**
in the *room* **stead** of his father:

1 SOVEREIGNS 4, 5 558

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE REIGN OF SHELOMOH

20 Yah Hudah and Yisra El
— as many as the sand by the sea in abundance
eating and drinking and cheering:
21 and Shelomoh is sovereign
over all the sovereigndoms
from the river to the land of the Peleshethiy
and to the border of Misrayim:
they bring offerings
and serve Shelomoh all the days of his life.

THE BREAD OF SHELOMOH

22 And the bread of Shelomoh for one day
is thirty kors of flour and sixty kors of flour,
23 ten fat oxen and twenty oxen from the pastures,
and a hundred flocks,
beside harts and gazelles and fallow deer
and foddered fowl:
24 for he subjugates over all on this side the river
from Tiphshach even to Azzah
— over all the sovereigns on this side the river:
and he has shalom
from all his servants all around him:
25 and Yah Hudah and Yisra El settle confidently
every man under his vine and under his fig tree
from Dan even to Beer Sheba
all the days of Shelomoh:
26 and Shelomoh
has forty thousand stalls of horses for his chariots
and twelve thousand cavalry:
27 and those who are stationed
sustain sovereign Shelomoh
and all those
who approach the table of sovereign Shelomoh
every man in his month:
they lack no word:
28 they bring barley and straw
for the horses and stallions
to the place where they are
every man according to his judgment.

THE WISDOM OF SHELOMOH

29 And Elohim gives Shelomoh
wisdom and discernment mightily abounding;
and broadness of heart as the sand on lip of the sea:
30 and the wisdom of Shelomoh abounds
above the wisdom of all the sons of the east land
and all the wisdom of Misrayim:
31 and he enwisens above all humanity
— of Ethan the Zerachiy and Heman
and Kalkol and Darda the sons of Machol:
and his fame is all around the goyim:
32 and he words three thousand proverbs
and his songs a thousand and five:
33 he words of trees
from the cedar tree in Lebanon
even to the hyssop emerging from the wall:
he words of animals and of flyers
and of creepers and of fishes:
34 and from all people
they come to hear the wisdom of Shelomoh
— from all sovereigns of the earth,
to hear of his wisdom.

THE ALLIANCE OF SHELOMOH WITH SOVEREIGN HIRAM

5 And Hiram sovereign of Sor
sends his servants to Shelomoh;
for he hears they anointed him sovereign
in the stead of his father

1 KINGS 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for Hiram was ever **all days** a lover of David.
2 And **Solomon Shelomoh** sent to Hiram, saying,
3 Thou knowest how that David my father
could not build an house
unto the name of the **LORD Yah Veh his God Elohim**
for **at the face of** the wars
which were about **surrounded** him on every side,
until the **LORD Yah Veh**
put **gave** them under the soles of his feet.
4 But now the **LORD Yah Veh my God Elohim**
hath given me rest on every side **round about**,
so that there is neither **adversary a satan**
nor evil **occurrent incident**.
5 And, behold, I **purpose said** to build an house
unto the name of the **LORD Yah Veh my God Elohim**,
as the **LORD spake Yah Veh worded**
unto David my father, saying, Thy son,
whom I will set **shall give** upon thy throne in thy **room stead**,
he shall build an house unto my name.
6 Now **therefore command misvah** thou
that they **hew cut** me cedar trees out of Lebanon;
and my servants shall be with thy servants:
and unto thee will **shall** I give hire for thy servants
according to all that thou shalt **appoint say**:
for thou knowest that there is not among us
any **a man** that **can skill knoweth** to **hew cut** timber
like unto the **Sidonians Sidoniy**.
7 And **so be** it came to pass,
when Hiram heard the words of **Solomon Shelomoh**,
that he **rejoiced greatly cheered mightily**, and said,
Blessed be the **LORD Yah Veh** this day,
which hath given unto David
a wise son over this great people.
8 And Hiram sent to **Solomon Shelomoh**, saying,
I have **considered the things heard those**
which thou sentest to me for:
and I will do **shall work** all thy **desire delight**
concerning timber of cedar,
and concerning timber of **fir cypress**.
9 My servants shall **bring descend** them down
from Lebanon unto the sea:
and I will **convey shall set** them by sea in **floats rafts**
unto the place that thou shalt **appoint send** me,
and will **shall** cause them
to be **discharged scattered** there,
and thou shalt **receive lift** them:
and thou shalt **accomplish work** my **desire delight**,
in giving **food bread** for my household.
10 So Hiram gave **Solomon Shelomoh** cedar trees
and **fir cypress** trees according to all his **desire delight**.
11 And **Solomon Shelomoh** gave Hiram
twenty thousand **measures kors** of wheat
for **food nourishment** to his household,
and twenty **measures kors** of **pure pestled** oil:
thus gave **Solomon Shelomoh** to Hiram year by year.
12 And the **LORD Yah Veh** gave **Solomon Shelomoh** wisdom,
as he **promised worded** him:
and there was **peace shalom**
between Hiram and **Solomon between Shelomoh**;
and they two **made cut** a **league covenant** together.
DRAFTING THE VASSAL
13 And **king Solomon sovereign Shelomoh**
raised ascended a **levy vassal** out of all **Israel Yisra El**;
and the **levy vassal** was thirty thousand men.
14 And he sent them to Lebanon,
ten thousand a month by **courses changes**:
a month they were in Lebanon,
and two months at **home their house**:
and **Adoniram Adoni Ram** was over the **levy vassal**.
15 And **Solomon Shelomoh**
had **threescore and ten seventy** thousand
that **bare burdens burdenbearers**,
and **fourscore eighty** thousand hewers in the mountains;
16 Beside the **chief governor**
of **Solomon's officers Shelomoh's stationed**
which were over the work,
three thousand and three hundred,

1 SOVEREIGNS 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— for Hiram was all days a lover of David.

2 And Shelomoh sends to Hiram, saying,
3 You know how David my father
could not build a house
to the name of Yah Veh his Elohim
at the face of the wars surrounding him on every side,
until Yah Veh gave them under the soles of his feet:
4 and now Yah Veh my Elohim
gives me rest all around
so that there is neither a satan nor evil incident.
5 And behold, I say to build a house
to the name of Yah Veh my Elohim,
as Yah Veh worded to David my father, saying,
Your son whom I give upon your throne
in your stead,
he builds a house to my name.
6 And now you misvah them
to cut me cedar trees from Lebanon:
and my servants be with your servants;
and I give you hire for your servants
according to all you say:
for you know there is not among us
a man who knows to cut timber as the Sidoniy.
7 And so be it,
Hiram hears the words of Shelomoh,
and he cheers mightily, and says,
Blessed — Yah Veh this day
who gives David a wise son over this great people.
8 And Hiram sends to Shelomoh, saying,
I heard what you sent me:
I work all your delight concerning timber of cedar
and concerning timber of cypress:
9 my servants descend them from Lebanon to the sea:
and I set them by sea in rafts
to the place you send me
and scatter them there;
and you lift them and work my delight
by giving bread for my household.
10 And Hiram gives Shelomoh cedar trees
and cypress trees according to all his delight:
11 and Shelomoh gives Hiram
twenty thousand kors of wheat
— nourishment to his household
and twenty kors of pestled oil:
thus Shelomoh gives to Hiram year by year.
12 And Yah Veh gives Shelomoh wisdom
as he worded him:
and there is shalom
between Hiram and between Shelomoh;
and the two cut a covenant.
DRAFTING THE VASSAL
13 And sovereign Shelomoh
ascends a vassal from all Yisra El;
and the vassal is thirty thousand men:
14 and he sends them to Lebanon
— ten thousand a month by changes:
a month in Lebanon and two months at their house:
and Adoni Ram is over the vassal.
15 And Shelomoh
has seventy thousand burdenbearers
and eighty thousand hewers in the mountains;
16 beside the governor of the stationed of Shelomoh
who are over the work
— three thousand and three hundred

1 KINGS 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which ruled **subjugated** over the people that wrought **worked** in the work.

17 And the *king* commanded **sovereign misvahed**, and they brought **pulled** great stones, costly **precious** stones, and hewed stones, to lay the foundation of the house.
18 And *Solomon's Shelomoh's* builders and Hiram's builders *did hew them*, and the *stonesquarers Gibly sculpted*: so they prepared timber and stones to build the house.

THE BUILDING OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

6 And **so be** it came to pass, in the four hundred and eightieth year after the *children sons of Israel Yisra El* were come **gone** out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*, in the fourth year of *Solomon's Shelomoh's* reign over *Israel Yisra El*, in the month *Zif*, which is the second month, that he began to build the house of *the LORD Yah Veh*.
2 And the house which *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh** built for *the LORD Yah Veh*, the length thereof was **threescore sixty** cubits, and the breadth thereof **twenty cubits**, and the height thereof **thirty cubits**.
3 And the porch *before at the face of the temple manse* of the house, **twenty cubits** was the length thereof, *according to at the face of* the breadth of the house; and **ten cubits** was the breadth thereof *before at the face of* the house.
4 And for the house he *made windows* **worked lookouts** of *narrow shuttered* lights.
5 And against the wall of the house he built chambers round about, against the walls of the house round about, *both of the temple manse and of the oracle pulpit*: and he *made chambers* **worked ribs** round about:
6 The nethermost chamber was five cubits broad, and the middle was six cubits broad, and the third was seven cubits broad: for without *in the wall of* the house he *made narrowed rests* **gave ledges** round about, *that the beams should not be fastened not held* in the walls of the house.
7 And the house, when it was in building, was built of stone *made ready before it was brought thither* **which they did shalam at the quarry**: so that there was neither hammer nor ax nor *any tool instrument* of iron heard in the house, while it was in building.
8 The *door portal* for the middle *chamber rib* was in the right *side shoulder* of the house: and they *went up ascended* with *winding spiral* stairs into the middle *chamber*, and out of the middle into the third.
9 So he built the house, and finished it; and *covered cieled* the house with *beams carvings* and *boards shingles* of cedar.
10 And then he built chambers against all the house, five cubits high: and they *rested took hold* on the house with timber of cedar.
11 And the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came to *Solomon Shelomoh*, saying, *Concerning* this house which thou art in building, if thou *wilt shalt* walk in my statutes, and *execute* **work** my judgments, and *keep* **guard** all my *commandments misvoth* to walk in them; then *will shall I perform* **raise** my word with thee, which I *spake worded* unto David thy father:
13 And I *will dwell shall* **tabernacle** among the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*, and *will shall* not forsake my people *Israel Yisra El*.
14 So *Solomon Shelomoh* built the house, and finished it.
15 And he built the walls of the house within with *boards ribs* of cedar,

1 SOVEREIGNS 5, 6 560

exeGesés companion BIBLE

who subjugate the people who work the work.

17 And the sovereign misvahs and they pull great stones — precious stones and hewed stones to lay the foundation of the house:
18 and the builders of Shelomoh and the builders of Hiram and the sculpters of Gibly prepare timber and stones to build the house.

THE BUILDING OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

6 And so be it, in the four hundred and eightieth year after the sons of *Yisra El* go from the land of *Misrayim* — in the fourth year of the reign of *Shelomoh over Yisra El* — the month *Zif* — the second month he begins to build the house of *Yah Veh*.
2 And the house *sovereign Shelomoh* builds for *Yah Veh*, **sixty cubits** long and **twenty wide** and **thirty cubits** high; and the porch at the face of the manse of the house, **twenty cubits** long at the face of the width of the house, and **ten cubits** wide at the face of the house.
4 And for the house he works lookouts of shuttered lights: and against the wall of the house he builds chambers all around against the walls of the house — all around the manse and the pulpit: and he works ribs all around: the nethermost chamber, five cubits wide; and the middle, six cubits wide; and the third, seven cubits wide: and outside the house he gives ledges all around not held to the walls of the house.
7 And in building, the house is built of stone which they shalam at the quarry: so that, in building, they hear neither hammer nor axe nor instrument of iron in the house.
8 The portal for the middle rib is in the right shoulder of the house: and they ascend with spiral stairs to the middle, and from the middle to the third.
9 And he builds the house; and finishes and cieles the house with carvings and shingles of cedar: and he builds chambers against all the house, five cubits high: and they hold on the house with timber of cedar.
11 And the word of *Yah Veh* comes to *Shelomoh*, saying,
12 This house you build, if you walk in my statutes and work my judgments and guard all my misvoth to walk in them; then I raise with you the word I worded to David your father: and I tabernacle among the sons of *Yisra El*, and forsake not my people *Yisra El*.
14 And *Shelomoh* builds and finishes the house: and he builds the walls of the house with ribs of cedar inside

1 KINGS 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

both the floor of the house, and the walls of the ceiling:
and he covered **overlaid** them on the *inside* **house**
with wood **timber**,
and covered **overlaid** the floor of the house
with *planks* **ribs** of *fir* **cypress**.
16 And he built twenty cubits
on the *sides* **flanks** of the house,
both **from** the floor *and* **to** the walls
with *boards* **ribs** of cedar:
he even built them for it *within* **a house**,
even for the *oracle* **pulpit**,
even for the *most holy place* **Holy of Holies**.
17 And the house, that is,
the *temple* **before it** **manse at the face in front**,
was forty cubits *long*.
18 And the cedar of the house within
was carved **were carvings**
with *knops* **knobs** and open *flowers* **blossoms**:
all was cedar; there was no stone seen.
19 And the *oracle* **pulpit**
he prepared in **the midst** of the house within,
to set **give** there
the ark of the covenant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
20 And the *oracle* in the *forepart* **face of the pulpit**
was twenty cubits in length, and twenty cubits in breadth,
and twenty cubits in the height thereof:
and he overlaid it with *pure* **concentrated** gold;
and so covered **overlaid** the **sacrifice** altar
which was of **with** cedar.
21 So *Solomon* **Shelomoh** overlaid the house within
with *pure* **concentrated** gold:
and he made a *partition* **an overpass** by the chains of gold
before **at the face** of the *oracle* **pulpit**;
and he overlaid it with gold.
22 And the whole house he overlaid with gold,
until he had *finished* **consummated** all the house:
also the whole **sacrifice** altar that was by the *oracle* **pulpit**
he overlaid with gold.
23 And within the *oracle* **pulpit**
he made **worked** two *cherubims* **cherubim**
of *olive* **oil** tree, *each* ten cubits high.
24 And five cubits was the one wing of the cherub,
and five cubits the *other* **second** wing of the cherub:
from the *uttermost part* **end** of the one wing
unto the *uttermost part* **end** of the *other* **wing**
were ten cubits.
25 And the *other* **second** cherub was ten cubits:
both the *cherubims* **cherubim**
were of one measure and one *size* **shape**.
26 The height of the one cherub was ten cubits,
and so was it of the *other* **thus the second** cherub.
27 And he set **gave** the *cherubims* **cherubim**
within the inner house:
and they *stretched* **spread** forth the wings
of the *cherubims* **cherubim**,
so that the wing of the one touched the one wall,
and the wing of the *other* **second** cherub
touched the *other* **second** wall;
and their wings touched *one another* **wing to wing**
in the midst of the house.
28 And he overlaid the *cherubims* **cherubim** with gold.
29 And he carved all the walls of the house round about
with *carved figures* **carvings** of *cherubims* **cherubim**
and palm trees and open *flowers* **blossoms**,
within and without.
30 And the floor of the house he overlaid with gold,
within and without.
31 And for the *entering* **portal** of the *oracle* **pulpit**
he made **worked** doors of *olive* **oil** tree:
the *lintel* **pilaster** and side posts
were a fifth *part* of the wall.
32 The two doors also were of *olive* **oil** tree;
and he carved upon them carvings of *cherubims* **cherubim**
and palm trees and open *flowers* **blossoms**,
and overlaid them with gold,
and *spread* **overlaid** gold upon the *cherubims* **cherubim**,
and upon the palm trees.

1 SOVEREIGNS 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— both the floor of the house
and the walls of the ceiling:
and he overlays them on the house with timber
and overlays the floor of the house
with ribs of cypress:
16 and he builds twenty cubits
on the flanks of the house
from the floor to the walls with ribs of cedar:
he even builds a house for the pulpit
— for the Holy of Holies.
17 And the house
— the manse at the face in front, forty cubits;
18 and the cedar inside the house
are carvings with knobs and open blossoms;
all cedar; no stone is seen.
19 And he prepares the pulpit
midst the house inside,
20 to give there the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh:
and the face of the pulpit,
twenty cubits long and twenty cubits wide
and twenty cubits high;
and he overlays it with concentrated gold;
and overlays the sacrifice altar with cedar.
21 And Shelomoh overlays the house inside
with concentrated gold;
and he makes an overpass by the chains of gold
at the face of the pulpit;
and he overlays it with gold:
22 and he overlays the whole house with gold
until he consummates all the house:
and he overlays the whole sacrifice altar by the pulpit
with gold;
23 and inside the pulpit
he works two cherubim of oil tree, ten cubits high:
24 and the one wing of the cherub, five cubits
and the second wing of the cherub, five cubits
— ten cubits from the end of the wing
to the end of the wing.
25 And the second cherub, ten cubits;
both cherubim of one measure and one shape:
26 the height of the one cherub, ten cubits;
and thus the second cherub:
27 and he gives the cherubim inside the inner house;
and they spread the wings of the cherubim
so that the wing of the one
touches the one wall;
and the wing of the second cherub
touches the second wall;
and their wings touch wing to wing midst the house:
28 and he overlays the cherubim with gold.
29 And he carves all the walls of the house all around
with carvings of cherubim
and palm trees and open blossoms
inside and outside:
30 and he overlays the floor of the house with gold
inside and outside:
31 and for the portal of the pulpit
he works doors of oil tree;
the pilaster and side posts, a fifth:
32 the two doors of oil tree;
and on them he carves carvings of cherubim
and palm trees and open blossoms;
and overlays them with gold;
and overlays gold
on the cherubim and on the palm trees:

1 KINGS 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

33 So also *made worked* he
for the *door opening* of the *temple manse*
posts of *olive oil* tree, a fourth *part of the wall*.
34 And the two doors were of *fir cypress* tree:
the two *leaves ribs* of the one door were folding,
and the two *leaves hangings* of the *other second* door
were folding.
35 And he carved *thereon cherubims cherubim*
and palm trees and open *flowers blossoms*:
and *covered overlaid* them with gold
fitted straight upon the *carved engraved* work.
36 And he built the inner court
with three rows of hewed stone,
and a row of cedar beams.
37 In the fourth year
was the foundation of the house
of the *LORD Yah Veh* laid,
in the month Zif:
38 And in the eleventh year, in the month *Bul Buwl*,
which is the eighth month,
was the house finished
throughout all the *parts word* thereof,
and according to all the *fashion judgment* of it.
So was he seven years in building it.

THE BUILDING OF THE HOUSE OF SHELOMOH

7 But *Solomon Shelomoh*
was building his own house thirteen years,
and he finished all his house.
2 He built also the house of the forest of Lebanon;
the length thereof was an hundred cubits,
and the breadth thereof fifty cubits,
and the height thereof thirty cubits,
upon four rows of cedar pillars,
with cedar beams upon the pillars.
3 And it was *covered cieled* with cedar
above upon the *beams ribs*,
that lay on forty five pillars, fifteen in a row.
4 And there were *windows lookouts* in three rows,
and *light window* was against *light window*
in three *ranks steps*.
5 And all the *doors portals* and posts were square,
with the *windows lookouts*:
and *light window* was against *light window*
in three *ranks steps*.
6 And he *made worked* a porch of pillars;
the length thereof was fifty cubits,
and the breadth thereof thirty cubits:
and the porch was *before them at their face*:
and the *other* pillars and the thick beam
were *before them at their face*.
7 Then he *made worked* a porch for the throne
where he might judge, *even* the porch of judgment:
and it was *covered cieled* with cedar
from *one side of the floor to the other floor to floor*.
8 And his house where he *dwelt settled*
had another court *within to house* the porch,
which was of the like work.
Solomon made Shelomoh worked also an house
for *Pharaoh's Paroh's* daughter,
whom he had taken *to wife*, like unto this porch.
9 All these were of *costly precious* stones,
according to the measures of hewed stones,
sawed with saws,
within and without *the house*,
even from the foundation unto the *coping support*,
and so on the outside toward the great court.
10 And the foundation was of *costly precious* stones,
even great stones,
stones of ten cubits, and stones of eight cubits.
11 And above were *costly precious* stones,
after the measures of hewed stones, and cedars.
12 And the great court round about
was with three rows of hewed stones,
and a row of cedar beams,
both for the inner court
of the house of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
and for the porch of the house.

1 SOVEREIGNS 6, 7 562

exeGesés companion BIBLE

33 and thus for the opening of the manse
he works posts of oil tree, a fourth:
34 and the two doors of cypress tree;
the two ribs of the one door fold;
and the two hangings of the second door fold:
35 and he carves cherubim
and palm trees and open blossoms:
and overlays them with gold
straight on the engraved work.
36 And he builds the inner court
with three rows of hewed stone
and a row of cedar beams.
37 In the fourth year, in the month Zif,
the house of Yah Veh is foundationed:
38 and in the eleventh year,
in the month Buwl — the eighth month,
the house is finished
in every word and every judgment:
thus *is* he seven years in building.

THE BUILDING OF THE HOUSE OF SHELOMOH

7 And for thirteen years,
Shelomoh builds his own house;
and he finishes all his house:
2 and he builds the house of the forest of Lebanon,
a hundred cubits long
and fifty cubits wide
and thirty cubits high;
on four rows of cedar pillars
with cedar beams on the pillars;
3 and ciels it with cedar above on the ribs
— on forty five pillars, fifteen in a row:
4 with lookouts in three rows;
and window against window in three steps:
5 and all the portals and posts
square with the lookouts:
with window against window in three steps.
6 And he works a porch of pillars,
fifty cubits long and thirty cubits wide:
with the porch at their face;
and the pillars and the thick beam at their face.
7 And he works a porch for the throne for judging
— the porch of judgment;
and ciels it with cedar from floor to floor.
8 And his house where he settles
has another court to house the porch
— of like work.
And Shelomoh works a house like this porch
for the daughter of Paroh he had taken.
9 All these of precious stones,
according to the measures of hewed stones,
sawed with saws inside and outside the house
— even from the foundation to the support
and so on the outside toward the great court.
10 And the foundation is of precious stones
— even great stones
— stones of ten cubits and stones of eight cubits:
11 and above are precious stones
after the measures of hewed stones and cedars:
12 and the great court all around,
three rows of hewed stones
and a row of cedar beams
— both for the inner court of the house of Yah Veh
and for the porch of the house.

1 KINGS 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE FURNISHINGS OF THE HOUSE OF SHELOMOH

- 13 And king Solomon **sovereign Shelomoh**
sent and fetched **took** Hiram out of Tyre Sor.
- 14 He was a *widow's* **woman's** son
of the *tribe* **rod** of Naphtali,
and his father was a *man of Tyre* **Soriy**,
a *worker in brass* **an engraver in copper**:
and he was filled with wisdom,
and *understanding* **discernment**, and *cunning* **knowledge**
to work all works in *brass* **copper**.
And he came to *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**,
and *wrought* **worked** all his work.
- 15 For he *cast* **formed** two pillars of *brass* **copper**,
of eighteen cubits high *apiece*
was the height of one pillar:
and a *line* **thread** of twelve cubits
did compass either of them about
surrounded the second pillar.
- 16 And he *made* **worked**
two *chapters* **caps** of *molten brass* **poured copper**,
to set **give** upon the tops of the pillars:
the height of the one *chapter* **cap**
was five cubits,
and the height of the *other chapter* **second cap**
was five cubits:
- 17 And nets of *checker* **net** work,
and *wreaths* **threads** of chain work,
for the *chapters* **caps**
which were upon the top of the pillars;
seven for the one *chapter* **cap**,
and seven for the *other chapter* **second cap**.
- 18 And he *made* **worked** the pillars,
and two rows round about upon the one *network* **net**,
to cover the *chapters* **caps** that were upon the top,
with pomegranates:
and so *did* **worked** he for the *other chapter* **second cap**.
- 19 And the *chapters* **caps**
that were upon the top of the pillars
were of lily work in the porch, four cubits.
- 20 And the *chapters* **caps** upon the two pillars
had pomegranates also above,
over against **beside** the belly
which was *by* **beside** the *network* **net**:
and the pomegranates
were two hundred in rows round about
upon the *other chapter* **second cap**.
- 21 And he *set up* **raised** the pillars
in the porch of the *temple* **manse**:
and he *set up* **raised** the right pillar,
and called the name thereof *Jachin* **Yachin**:
and he *set up* **raised** the left pillar,
and called the name thereof Boaz*.
- 22 And upon the top of the pillars was lily work:
so was the work of the pillars *finished* **consummated**.
- *meaning uncertain
- 23 And he *made* **worked** a *molten* **poured** sea,
ten cubits from the one *brim* to the other **lip to lip**:
it was round *all* **round** about,
and his height was five cubits:
and a line of thirty cubits
did compass **surround** it round about.
- 24 And under the *brim* **lip** of it round about
there were *knops compassing* **knobs surrounding** it,
ten in a cubit,
compassing **surrounding** the sea round about:
the *knops* were cast **knobs**,
in being poured, were poured in two rows
when it was cast.
- 25 It stood upon twelve oxen,
three *looking at the face* toward the north,
and three *looking at the face* toward the west **sea**,
and three *looking at the face* toward the south,
and three *looking at the face* toward the east **rising**:
and the sea was set above upon them,
and all their *hinder parts* **backs**
were *inward* **toward the house**.
- 26 And it was an *hand breadth* a **palm span** thick,
and the *brim* **lip** thereof
was *wrought* like the *brim* **work of the lip** of a cup,
with *flowers* **blossoms** of lilies:

1 SOVEREIGNS 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE FURNISHINGS OF THE HOUSE OF SHELOMAH

- 13 And sovereign Shelomoh
sends and takes Hiram from Sor
— a son of a woman of the rod of Naphtali,
and his father a Soriy, an engraver in copper:
and he is filled with wisdom
and discernment and knowledge
to work all works in copper:
and he comes to sovereign Shelomoh
and works all his work:
- 15 and he forms two pillars of copper
one pillar, eighteen cubits high;
and a thread of twelve cubits
surrounds the second pillar:
- 16 and he works two caps of poured copper
to give on the tops of the pillars:
one cap, five cubits high;
and the second cap, five cubits high:
- 17 and nets of net work and threads of chain work
for the caps on the top of the pillars,
seven for the one cap
and seven for the second cap:
- 18 and he works the pillars and two rows
all around the one net
to cover the caps on the top with pomegranates:
and thus he works the second cap:
and the caps on the top of the pillars,
of lily work in the porch, four cubits:
and the caps on the two pillars also above
— beside the belly beside the net:
with two hundred pomegranates in rows
all around on the second cap.
- 21 And he raises the pillars in the porch of the manse:
and he raises the right pillar
and calls the name, Yachin/He Established;
and he raises the left pillar
and calls the name, Boaz/*:
- 22 and on the top of the pillars, lily work:
thus consummates the work of the pillars.
- *meaning uncertain
- 23 And he works a poured sea,
ten cubits lip to lip all around and five cubits high:
and a line of thirty cubits surround it all around:
- 24 and under its lip all around, knobs surround it,
ten in a cubit surround the sea all around;
and the knobs, in being poured, poured in two rows.
- 25 It stands on twelve oxen:
three at the face toward the north
and three at the face toward the sea
and three at the face toward the south
and three at the face toward the rising:
and the sea is upon them above
with all their backs toward the house:
and it is a palm span thick
and the lip as the work of the lip of a cup
with blossoms of lilies

1 KINGS 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

it contained two thousand baths.
27 And he *made worked* ten bases of *brass copper*;
four cubits was the length of one base,
and four cubits the breadth thereof,
and three cubits the height of it.
28 And the work of the bases was *on this manner thus*:
they had borders,
and the borders were between the ledges:
29 And on the borders that were between the ledges
were lions, oxen, and *cherubims cherubim*:
and upon the ledges there was a base above:
and beneath the lions and oxen
were *certain additions made wreaths of thin festoon work*.
30 And every *one* base had four *brasen copper* wheels,
and *plates axles* of *brass copper*:
and the four *corners supports* thereof
had *undersetters shoulder pieces*:
under the laver
were *undersetters molten shoulder pieces poured*,
at the side of every *addition each man a wreath*.
31 And the mouth of it *within housing* the *chapter cap*
and above was a cubit:
but the mouth thereof was round
after the work of the base, a cubit and a half *a cubit*:
and also upon the mouth of it were *gravings carvings*
with their borders, foursquare, not round.
32 And under the borders were four wheels;
and the *axletrees hands* of the wheels
were *joined* to the base:
and the height of a *one* wheel was a cubit and half a cubit.
33 And the work of the wheels
was like the work of a chariot wheel:
their *axletrees hands*, and their *naves rims*,
and their *felloes spokes*, and their *spokes hubs*,
were all *molten poured*.
34 And there were four *undersetters shoulder pieces*
to the four corners of one base:
and the *undersetters shoulder pieces*
were of the very base itself.
35 And in the top of the base
was *there a round compass round about*
of half a cubit high:
and on the top of the base the *ledges hands* thereof
and the borders thereof were of the same.
36 For on the *plates slabs* of the *ledges hands* thereof,
and on the borders thereof,
he *graved engraved*
cherubims cherubim, lions, and palm trees,
according to the *proportion nakedness* of every *one man*,
and *additions wreaths* round about.
37 *After this manner Thus* he *made worked* the ten bases:
all of them had one casting,
one measure, and one *size shape*.
38 Then *made worked* he ten lavers of *brass copper*:
one laver contained forty baths:
and every *one* laver was four cubits:
and upon every one of the ten bases one laver.
39 And he *put gave* five bases
on the right *side shoulder* of the house,
and five on the left *side shoulder* of the house:
and he *set gave* the sea
on the right *side shoulder* of the house
eastward *over against toward* the south.
40 And Hiram *made worked* the lavers,
and the shovels, and the *basons sprinklers*.
So Hiram *made an end finished*
of doing working all the work that he *made worked*
king Solomon for sovereign Shelomoh
for the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*:
41 The two pillars, and the *two* bowls of the *chapters caps*
that were on the top of the two pillars;
and the two *networks nets*,
to cover the two bowls of the *chapters caps*
which were upon the top of the pillars;
42 And four hundred pomegranates
for the two *networks nets*,
even two rows of pomegranates for one *network net*,
to cover the two bowls of the *chapters caps*

1 SOVEREIGNS 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— containing two thousand baths.
27 And he works ten bases of copper;
one base, four cubits long
and four cubits wide and three cubits high:
28 and the work of the bases is thus:
with borders; and borders between the ledges;
29 and on the borders between the ledges:
lions, oxen and cherubim:
and on the ledges, a base above:
and the lions and oxen below
of wreaths of festoon work:
30 and one base has four copper wheels
and axles of copper;
and the four supports have shoulder pieces:
under the laver, shoulder pieces poured
with a wreath at the side of each man:
31 and the mouth of it houses the cap
and above, a cubit:
and the mouth is round after the work of the base,
a cubit and half a cubit:
and also on the mouth of it are carvings
with their borders — foursquare, not round:
32 and under the borders, four wheels;
and the hands of the wheels, to the base:
and one wheel, a cubit and half a cubit high:
33 and the work of the wheels
as the work of a chariot wheel:
their hands and their rims
and their spokes and their hubs,
all poured:
34 and there are four shoulder pieces
to the four corners of one base:
and the shoulder pieces *are* of the very base itself:
35 and in the top of the base all around,
half a cubit high:
and on the top of the base
the hands and the borders of the same:
36 and on the slabs of the hands and on the borders
he engraves cherubim
lions and palm trees
according to the nakedness of man
and wreaths all around.
37 Thus he works the ten bases:
all have one casting, one measure, one shape.
38 And he works ten lavers of copper:
one laver contains forty baths;
one laver, four cubits:
and on every one of the ten bases one laver:
39 and he gives five bases
on the right shoulder of the house
and five on the left shoulder of the house:
and he gives the sea
on the right shoulder of the house
eastward toward the south.
40 And Hiram works the lavers
and the shovels and the sprinklers:
and Hiram finishes
working all the work he worked
for sovereign Shelomoh for the house of Yah Veh:
41 the two pillars and the bowls of the caps
on the top of the two pillars;
and the two nets to cover the two bowls of the caps
on top of the pillars;
42 and four hundred pomegranates for the two nets:
two rows of pomegranates for one net
to cover the two bowls of the caps

1 KINGS 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

43 that were upon **the face of** the pillars;
 44 And the ten bases, and ten lavers on the bases;
 45 And one sea, and twelve oxen under the sea;
 45 And the *pots* **caldrons**, and the shovels,
 and the *basons* **sprinklers**:
 and all these *vessels* **instruments**,
 which Hiram *made* **worked**
 to king Solomon **sovereign Shelomoh**
 for the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
 were of *bright brass* **polished copper**.
 46 In the *plain* **environs** of Jordan **Yarden**
 did the king *cast* **sovereign pour** them,
 in the *clay ground* **compacted soil**
 between *Succoth* **Sukkoth/Brush Arbors**
 and **between** *Zarthan* **Sarethan**.
 47 And Solomon **Shelomoh**
left set all the *vessels* **instruments** *unweighed*,
because they were exceeding many
for the mighty mighty abundance:
 neither was the weight of the *brass* **copper**
found out **probed**.
 48 And Solomon **Shelomoh**
made **worked** all the *vessels* **instruments**
 that *pertained unto* **be in** the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
 the **sacrifice** altar of gold, and the table of gold,
 whereupon the *shewbread* **face bread** was,
 49 And the *candlesticks* **menorahs**
 of *pure* **concentrated** gold,
 five on the right *side*, and five on the left,
before **at the face of** the *oracle* **pulpit**,
 with the *flowers* **blossoms**,
 and the lamps, and the tongs of gold,
 50 And the *bowls* **basons**, and the *snuffers* **tweezers**,
 and the *basons* **sprinklers**, and the *spoons* **bowls**,
 and the *censers* **trays** of *pure* **concentrated** gold;
 and the hinges of gold,
both for the doors of the inner house,
 the *most holy place* **Holy of Holies**,
 and for the doors of the house,
to wit, of the *temple* **manse**.
 51 So was *ended* all the work **shalamed**
 that king Solomon *made* **sovereign Shelomoh** *worked*
 for the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
 And Solomon **Shelomoh** brought in
 the *things which* **holies** of David his father
had dedicated;
 even the silver, and the gold, and the *vessels* **instruments**,
 did he *put* **give** among the treasures
 of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

THE ARK IN THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

8 Then Solomon **Shelomoh**
assembled **congregated** the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 and all the heads of the *tribes* **rods**,
 the *chief* **hierarchs** of the fathers
 of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 unto king Solomon **sovereign Shelomoh**
 in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
 that they might *bring up* **ascend**
 the ark of the covenant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
 out of the city of David, which is *Zion* **Siyon**.
 2 And all the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
assembled themselves **congregated**
 unto king Solomon **sovereign Shelomoh**
 at the *feast* **celebration**
 in the month *Ethanim*, which is the seventh month.
 3 And all the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El** came,
 and the priests *took up* **lifted** the ark.
 4 And they *brought up* **ascended**
 the ark of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
 and the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
 and all the holy *vessels* **instruments**
 that were in the *tabernacle* **tent**,
 even those did the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**
bring up **ascend**.
 5 And king Solomon **sovereign Shelomoh**,
 and all the *congregation* **witness** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 that were *assembled* **congregated** unto him,
 were with him *before* **at the face of** the ark,

1 SOVEREIGNS 7, 8 565

exeGesés companion BIBLE

on the face of the pillars;
 43 and the ten bases and ten lavers on the bases;
 44 and one sea and twelve oxen under the sea;
 45 and the caldrons and the shovels
 and the sprinklers:
 and all the instruments Hiram works
 to sovereign Shelomoh for the house of Yah Veh,
 of polished copper.
 46 In the environs of Yarden
 the sovereign poured them,
 in the compacted soil
 between Sukkoth/Brush Arbors
 and between Sarethan:
 47 and Shelomoh set all the instruments
 for the mighty mighty abundance:
 and they probe not the weight of the copper.
 48 And Shelomoh works all the instruments
 in the house of Yah Veh:
 the sacrifice altar of gold and the table of gold,
 whereon is the face bread,
 49 and the menorahs of concentrated gold
 — five at the right and five at the left
 at the face of the pulpit,
 with the blossoms and the lamps and the tongs
 of gold;
 50 and the basons and the tweezers
 and the sprinklers and the bowls
 and the trays of concentrated gold;
 and the hinges of gold
 for the doors of the inner house — the Holy of Holies
 and for the doors of the house of the manse.
 51 Thus they shalam all the work
 sovereign Shelomoh works
 for the house of Yah Veh.
 And Shelomoh brings in
 the holies of David his father:
 he gives the silver and the gold and the instruments
 among the treasures of the house of Yah Veh.

THE ARK IN THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

8 Then Shelomoh congregates the elders of Yisra El
 and all the heads of the rods
 — the hierarchs of the fathers of the sons of Yisra El
 to sovereign Shelomoh in Yeru Shalem
 — to ascend the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
 from the city of David — Siyon:
 2 and all the men of Yisra El
 congregate to sovereign Shelomoh
 at the celebration
 in the month *Ethanim* — the seventh month:
 3 and all the elders of Yisra El come
 and the priests lift the ark:
 4 and they ascend the ark of Yah Veh
 and the tent of the congregation
 and all the holy instruments in the tent;
 and the priests and the Leviym ascend them.
 5 And sovereign Shelomoh
 and all the witness of Yisra El who congregate to him
 are with him at the face of the ark

1 KINGS 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

sacrificing *sheep* **flock** and oxen,
that could not be *told* **scribed** nor numbered
for *multitude* **abundance**.
6 And the priests brought in
the ark of the covenant of the **LORD Yah Veh**
unto his place,
into the *oracle* **pulpit** of the house,
to the *most holy place* **Holy of Holies**,
even under the wings of the *cherubims* **cherubim**.
7 For the *cherubims* **cherubim** spread forth their two wings
over the place of the ark,
and the *cherubims* **cherubim**
covered the ark and the staves thereof above.
8 And they *drew out* **lengthened** the staves,
that the *ends* **heads** of the staves were seen
out in the *holy place* **holies**
before at the face of the oracle **pulpit**,
and they were not seen without:
and there they are unto this day.
9 There was *nothing* **naught** in the ark
save *only* the two *tables* **slabs** of stone,
which *Moses put* **Mosheh set** there at Horeb,
when the **LORD** made a covenant **Yah Veh cut**
with the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
when they *came* **went** out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
10 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when the priests
were *come* **gone** out of the *holy place* **holies**,
that the cloud filled the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
11 So that the priests could not stand to minister
because at the face of the cloud:
for the *glory* **honour** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
had filled the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
12 Then *spake* **Solomon said Shelomoh**,
The **LORD Yah Veh** said
that he *would dwell* **should tabernacle**
in the *thick* **dripping** darkness.
13 **In building**, I have *surely* built thee an house
to *dwell* **reside** in,
a settled place **an establishment** for thee
to *abide* **settle** in *for ever* **eternally**.
14 And the *king* **sovereign** turned his face about,
and blessed all the congregation of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
(and all the congregation of *Israel* **Yisra El** stood;)
15 And he said, Blessed be
the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El**,
which *spake* **worded** with his mouth
unto David my father,
and hath with his hand fulfilled it, saying,
16 Since the day
that I brought forth my people *Israel* **Yisra El**
out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
I chose no city out of all the *tribes* **scions of Israel Yisra El**
to build an house, that my name might be therein;
but I chose David to be over my people *Israel* **Yisra El**.
17 And it was in the heart of David my father
to build an house for the name of
the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El**.
18 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto David my father,
Whereas **Because** it was in thine heart
to build an house unto my name,
thou didst *well* **good** that it was in thine heart.
19 *Nevertheless* **Only** thou shalt not build the house;
but thy son that shall *come* **go** forth out of thy loins,
he shall build the house unto my name.
20 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
hath *performed* **raised** his word that he *spake* **worded**,
and I am risen *up* in the *room* **stead** of David my father,
and *sit* **settle** on the throne of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
as the **LORD** promised **Yah Veh worded**,
and have built an house for the name
of the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El**.
21 And I have set there a place for the ark,
wherein is the covenant of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
which he *made* **cut** with our fathers,
when he brought them out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.

THE PRAYER OF SHELOMOSH TO HANUKKAH THE HOUSE
And *Solomon* **Shelomoh** stood

1 SOVEREIGNS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

sacrificing flock and oxen
— neither scribed nor numbered for abundance.
6 And the priests bring in
the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh to his place
— to the pulpit of the house
— to the Holy of Holies
under the wings of the cherubim:
7 for the cherubim spread their two wings
over the place of the ark;
and the cherubim
cover over the ark and over the staves from above:
and they lengthen the staves
8 so that the heads of the staves are seen in the holies
at the face of the pulpit
but they are not seen outside;
and there they are to this day:
9 — naught is inside the ark
only, the two slabs of stone Mosheh set there at Horeb
when Yah Veh cut with the sons of Yisra El
as they came from the land of Misrayim.
10 And so be it,
the priests come from the holies;
and the cloud fills the house of Yah Veh
11 so that the priests cannot stand to minister
at the face of the cloud:
for the honor of Yah Veh fills the house of Yah Veh.
12 Then Shelomoh says,
Yah Veh says to tabernacle in the dripping darkness:
13 in building, I built you a house — a residence;
an establishment for you to settle in eternally.
14 And the sovereign turns his face around
and blesses all the congregation of Yisra El:
and all the congregation of Yisra El stands;
15 and he says, Blessed — Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
who worded with his mouth to David my father
and fulfills his hand, saying,
16 Since the day
I brought my people Yisra El from Misrayim,
I chose no city from all the scions of Yisra El
to build a house for my name to be therein;
but I chose David to be over my people Yisra El.
17 And it was in the heart of David my father
to build a house
for the name of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El.
18 And Yah Veh says to David my father,
Because it is in your heart
to build a house to my name,
you do good that it is in your heart:
19 only, you build not the house;
but your son who comes from your loins
— he builds the house to my name.
20 And Yah Veh raises the word he worded
and I rise in the stead of David my father
and settle on the throne of Yisra El
as Yah Veh worded;
and build a house
for the name of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
21 and there I set a place for the ark
wherein is the covenant of Yah Veh
which he cut with our fathers
when he brought them from the land of Misrayim.
THE PRAYER OF SHELOMOSH TO HANUKKAH THE HOUSE
And Shelomoh stands

1 KINGS 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

before **at the face of** the **sacrifice** altar
of the **LORD Yah Veh**
in the presence **front**
of all the congregation of **Israel Yisra El**,
and spread forth his **hands palms**
toward **heaven the heavens**:
23 And he said,
LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El,
there is no **God Elohim** like thee,
in **heaven the heavens** above, or on earth beneath,
who **keepes guardes** covenant and mercy
with thy servants
that walk **before thee at thy face** with all their heart:
24 Who hast **kept guarded**
with thy servant David my father
that thou **promisedst wordes** him:
thou **spakest wordes** also with thy mouth,
and hast fulfilled it with thine hand, as *it is* this day.
25 Therefore now,
LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El,
keep guard with thy servant David my father
that thou **promisedst wordes** him, saying,
There shall not **fail be cut off from** thee
a man in my **sight face**
to **sit settle** on the throne of **Israel Yisra El**;
so that **only if** thy
children take heed to sons guard their way,
that they walk **before me at my face**
as thou hast walked **before me at my face**.
26 And now, O **God Elohim of Israel Yisra El**,
let thy word, I **pray beseech** thee, be **verified amenable**,
which thou **spakest wordes**
unto thy servant David my father.
27 But **will God shall Elohim**
indeed dwell truly settle on the earth?
behold, the **heaven heavens**
and **heaven the heavens of the heavens**
cannot contain thee;
how much less also this house that I have builded?
28 Yet **have thou respect face thou**
unto the prayer of thy servant,
and to his supplication,
O **LORD Yah Veh my God Elohim**,
to hearken unto the **cry shout** and to the prayer,
which thy servant prayeth **before thee at thy face** to day:
29 That thine eyes may be open
toward this house night and day,
even toward the place of which thou hast said,
My name shall be there:
that thou mayest hearken unto the prayer
which thy servant shall **make pray** toward this place.
30 And hearken thou to the supplication of thy servant,
and of thy people **Israel Yisra El**,
when they shall pray toward this place:
and hear thou in **heaven the heavens**
the place of thy dwelling place settlement:
and when thou hearest, forgive.
31 If any man **trespass sin** against his **neighbour friend**,
and an oath be laid upon him to cause him to **swear oath**,
and the oath come
before thine at the face of thy sacrifice altar in this house:
32 Then hear thou in **heaven the heavens**, and **do work**,
and judge thy servants
condemning declaring wicked the wicked,
to **bring give** his way upon his head;
and justifying the **righteous just**,
to give him according to his **righteousness justness**.
33 When thy people **Israel Yisra El** be smitten down
before at the face of the enemy,
because they have sinned against thee,
and shall turn again to thee,
and **confess spread hands** to thy name, and pray,
and **make supplication beseech** unto thee in this house:
34 Then hear thou in **heaven the heavens**,
and forgive the sin of thy people **Israel Yisra El**,
and **bring return** them *again* unto the **land soil**
which thou gavest unto their fathers.

1 SOVEREIGNS 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

at the face of the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh
in front of all the congregation of Yisra El
and spreads his palms toward the heavens;
23 and he says,
Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
there is no Elohim like you
— in the heavens above or on earth beneath,
who guards covenant and mercy with your servants
who walk at your face with all their heart:
24 who, with your servant David my father,
guarded what you worded him:
yes, worded with your mouth
and fulfilled with your hand, as this day.
25 And now, Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
guard with your servant David my father
what you worded him, saying,
There is not cut off from you
a man from my face
to settle on the throne of Yisra El;
if only, your sons guard their way,
to walk at my face as you walked at my face.
26 And now, O Elohim of Yisra El,
may your word, I beseech you, be amenable,
which you worded to your servant David my father.
27 But truly, settles Elohim on the earth?
Behold, the heavens and the heavens of the heavens
contain you not
— in this house I build?
28 Yet face the prayer of your servant
and his supplication, O Yah Veh my Elohim,
to hearken to the shout and to the prayer
your servant prays at your face today:
that your eyes be open
toward this house night and day
— toward the place of which you say,
My name *is* there:
to hearken to the prayer
your servant prays toward this place:
and hearken to the supplication
of your servant and of your people Yisra El
when they pray toward this place:
and hear in the heavens the place of your settlement:
and when you hear, forgive.
31 Whatever any man sins against his friend
and lays an oath on him to have him oath;
and the oath comes
at the face of your sacrifice altar in this house:
32 then hear in the heavens
and work and judge your servants;
declaring wicked the wicked
to give his way on his head;
and justifying the just
to give him according to his justness.
33 When your people Yisra El
are smitten at the face of the enemy
because they sin against you
— and turn again to you
and spread hands to your name and pray
and beseech to you in this house
— then hear in the heavens
and forgive the sin of your people Yisra El
and return them to the soil you gave their fathers.

1 KINGS 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

35 When *heaven is shut up* **the heavens be restrained**,
and there is no rain,
because they have sinned against thee;
if they pray toward this place,
and *confess* **spread hands to** thy name,
and turn from their sin,
when thou *afflictest* **humblest** them:
36 Then hear thou in *heaven* **the heavens**,
and forgive the sin of thy servants,
and of thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that thou *teach* **direct** them the good way
wherein they should walk,
and give rain upon thy land,
which thou hast given to thy people for an inheritance.
37 If there be in the land famine, if there be pestilence,
blasting, *mildew* **pale green**, locust,
or if there be caterpillar;
if their enemy *besiege* **tribulate** them
in the land of their *cities* **portals**;
whatsoever plague, whatsoever *sickness* **disease** there be;
38 What prayer and supplication soever
be *made* by any man,
or by all thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which shall know every *man* **human**
the plague of his own heart,
and spread forth his *hands* **palms** toward this house:
39 Then hear thou in *heaven* **the heavens**
the place of thy dwelling place settlement,
and forgive, and *do* **work**,
and give to every man according to his ways,
whose heart thou knowest;
(for thou, even thou only, knowest the hearts
of all the *children* **sons of men** **humanity**);
40 That they may *fear* **awe** thee
all the days that they live
in the land **upon the face of the soil**
which thou gavest unto our fathers.
41 Moreover concerning a stranger,
that is not of thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
but cometh out of a far *country* **land** for thy name's sake;
42 (For they shall hear of thy great name,
and of thy strong hand, and of thy *stretched out* **spread** arm);
when he shall come and pray toward this house;
43 Hear thou in *heaven* **the heavens**
the place of thy dwelling place settlement,
and *do* **work** according to all
that the stranger calleth to thee for:
that all people of the earth may know thy name,
to *fear* **awe** thee, as *do* thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and that they may know that this house,
which I have builded, is called by thy name.
44 If thy people go out to *battle* **war** against their enemy,
whithersoever **in the way which** thou shalt send them,
and shall pray unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
toward the city which thou hast chosen,
and toward the house that I have built for thy name:
45 Then hear thou in *heaven* **the heavens**
their prayer and their supplication,
and *maintain* **work** their *cause* **judgment**.
46 If they sin against thee,
(for there is no *man* **human** that sinneth not,)
and thou be angry with them,
and *deliver* **give** them to **face** the enemy,
so that
they carry them away captives **their captors capture them**
unto the land of the enemy, far or near;
47 Yet if they shall
bethink themselves in **return their hearts to** the land
whither they were *carried captives* **captured**,
and *repent* **turn**, and *make supplication* **beseech** unto thee
in the land of them that *carried* **captured** them *captives*,
saying, We have sinned,
and have *done perversely* **perverted**,
we have *committed wickedness* **done wickedly**;
48 And so return unto thee with all their heart,
and with all their soul, in the land of their enemies,
which *led* **captured** them *away captive*,
and pray unto thee toward their land,

1 SOVEREIGNS 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

35 When the heavens restrain and there is no rain
because they sin against you
— if they pray toward this place
and spread hands to your name
and turn from their sin
and you humble them:
36 then hear in the heavens
and forgive the sin of your servants
and of your people Yisra El
to direct them the good way to walk
and give rain on the land
you gave to your people for an inheritance.
37 When there is famine in the land
when there is pestilence
when there is blasting, pale green, locust, caterpillar;
whenever their enemy tribulates them
in the land of their portals;
whatever plague, whatever disease;
38 whatever prayer and supplication of any man
or of all your people Yisra El
or of every human
knowing the plague of his own heart
and spreads his palms toward this house,
39 then hear in the heavens
the place of your settlement;
and forgive and work
and give to every man according to his ways
— whose heart you know;
for you — even you only,
know the hearts of all the sons of humanity;
40 that they awe you all the days they live
on the face of the soil you gave our fathers.
41 And also concerning a stranger
— not of your people Yisra El,
but comes from a far land for sake of your name
42 — for they hear of your great name
and of your strong hand
and of your spread arm
— when he comes and prays toward this house;
43 hear in the heavens the place of your settlement
and work according to all the stranger calls to you:
so that all people of the earth know your name
— to awe you, as your people Yisra El;
and so that they know that this house I built
is called by your name.
44 When your people
go out to war against their enemy
in the way you send them,
and pray to Yah Veh toward the city you chose
and toward the house I built for your name,
then in the heavens
45 hear their prayer and their supplication
and work their judgment:
46 when they sin against you
— for no human sins not
— and you become angry with them
and give them to face the enemy
so that their captors capture them
to the land of the enemy — far or near;
47 and they turn their hearts
to the land they were captured
and turn and beseech to you
in the land of them who captured them,
saying, We sinned and perverted;
we did wickedly;
48 and return to you with all their heart
and with all their soul
in the land of their enemies who captured them;
and pray to you toward the land

1 KINGS 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which thou gavest unto their fathers,
the city which thou hast chosen,
and the house which I have built for thy name:
49 Then hear thou their prayer and their supplication
in *heaven* **the heavens**
the place of thy dwelling place settlement,
and *maintain work* their *cause judgment,*
50 And forgive thy people that have sinned against thee,
and all their *transgressions rebellions*
wherein they have *transgressed rebelled* against thee,
and give them *compassion mercies*
before at the face of them
who *carried captured* them *captive,*
that they may *have compassion on mercy* them:
51 For they be thy people, and thine inheritance,
which thou broughtest forth out of *Egypt Misrayim,*
from the midst of the furnace of iron:
52 That thine eyes may be open
unto the supplication of thy servant,
and unto the supplication of thy people *Israel Yisra El,*
to hearken unto them in all that they call for unto thee.
53 For thou didst separate them
from among all the people of the earth,
to be thine inheritance,
as thou *spakest wordest*
by the hand of *Moses Mosheh* thy servant,
when thou broughtest our fathers out of *Egypt Misrayim,*
O Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh.
54 And it was so **became,** that *when Solomon Shelomoh*
had *made an end of finished* praying all this prayer
and supplication unto *the LORD Yah Veh,*
he arose from
before the face of the sacrifice altar of *the LORD Yah Veh,*
from *kneeling bowing* on his knees
with his *hands palms* spread up to *heaven the heavens.*
55 And he stood,
and blessed all the congregation of *Israel Yisra El*
with a *loud great* voice, saying,
56 Blessed be *the LORD Yah Veh,*
that hath given rest unto his people *Israel Yisra El,*
according to all that he *promised worded:*
there hath not *failed fallen*
one word of all his good *promise word,*
which he *promised worded*
by the hand of *Moses Mosheh* his servant.
57 *The LORD Yah Veh* our *God Elohim* be with us,
as he was with our fathers:
let him not leave us, nor forsake us:
58 That he may *incline spread* our hearts unto him,
to walk in all his ways,
and to *keep guard* his *commandments misvoth,*
and his statutes, and his judgments,
which he *commanded misvahed* our fathers.
59 And let these my words,
wherewith I have *made supplication besought*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
be near unto *the LORD Yah Veh* our *God Elohim*
day and night,
that he *maintain work* the *cause judgment* of his servant,
and the *cause judgment* of his people *Israel Yisra El*
at all times the day by day word,
as the *matter word* shall require:
60 That all the people of the earth may know
that *the LORD Yah Veh* is *God Elohim,*
and that *there is* — none else.
61 *Let And so be* your heart *therefore be perfect at shalom*
with *the LORD Yah Veh* our *God Elohim,*
to walk in his statutes,
and to *keep guard* his *commandments misvoth,*
as at this day.

THE HANUKKAH

62 And the *king sovereign,* and all *Israel Yisra El* with him,
offered sacrificed sacrifice
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
63 And *Solomon offered Shelomoh sacrificed*
a sacrifice of *peace offerings shalamim,*
which he *offered sacrificed* unto *the LORD Yah Veh,*
two and twenty thousand oxen,

1 SOVEREIGNS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

you gave their fathers
— the city you chose
and the house I built for your name:
49 then hear their prayer and their supplication
in the heavens the place of your settlement
and work their judgment;
50 and forgive your people who sinned against you
and all the rebellions they rebelled against you
and give them mercies at the face of their captors
that they mercy them:
51 for they *are* your people and your inheritance,
whom you brought from Misrayim
from midst the furnace of iron:
52 that your eyes be open
to the supplication of your servant
and to the supplication of your people Yisra El;
to hearken to them in all they call to you.
53 For you separated them
from among all the people of the earth,
to be your inheritance
as you worded by the hand of Mosheh your servant
when you brought our fathers from Misrayim,
O Adonay Yah Veh.
54 And so be it,
Shelomoh finishes praying all this prayer
and supplication to Yah Veh;
and he rises
from the face of the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh
— from bowing on his knees
with his palms spread to the heavens:
55 and he stands
and blesses all the congregation of Yisra El
with a great voice, saying,
56 Blessed — Yah Veh
who gives rest to his people Yisra El
according to all he words:
there falls not one word
of all the good words he worded
by the hand of Mosheh his servant.
57 Yah Veh our Elohim is with us
as he was with our fathers:
he neither leaves us nor forsakes us:
58 to spread our hearts to him
to walk in all his ways and to guard his misvoth
and his statutes and his judgments
which he misvahed our fathers.
59 And *may* these words
I beseech at the face of Yah Veh
be near Yah Veh our Elohim day and night;
that he work the judgment of his servant
and the judgment of his people Yisra El
the day by day word, as the word requires:
60 that all the people of the earth *may* know
that Yah Veh is Elohim — no one else.
61 And so be your heart at shalom
with Yah Veh our Elohim
— to walk in his statutes and to guard his misvoth
as at this day.
62 And the sovereign and all Yisra El with him,
sacrifice sacrifices at the face of Yah Veh:
63 and Shelomoh sacrifices a sacrifice of shalamim
— sacrifices to Yah Veh
twenty—two thousand oxen

THE HANUKKAH

1 KINGS 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and an hundred and twenty thousand *sheep flocks*.
 So the *king sovereign*
 and all the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*
 dedicated **hanukkah** the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*.
 64 The same day did the *king sovereign*
 hallow the middle of the court that was
before at the face the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*:
 for there he *offered burnt offerings worked holocausts,*
 and *meat offerings,*
 and the fat of the *peace offerings shelamim*:
 because the *brasen copper sacrifice* altar
that was before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh
 was too little
 to receive **contain** the *burnt offerings holocausts,*
 and *meat offerings,*
 and the fat of the *peace offerings shelamim*.
 65 And at that time
Solomon held Shelomoh worked a feast celebration,
 and all *Israel Yisra El* with him, a great congregation,
 from the entering in of Hamath
 unto the *river wadi of Egypt Misrayim,*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh our *God Elohim,*
 seven days and seven days, *even fourteen days.*
 66 On the eighth day he sent the people away:
 and they blessed the *king sovereign,*
 and went unto their tents *joyful cheerful*
 and *glad good* of heart
 for all the goodness
 that the *LORD Yah Veh* had *done worked*
 for David his servant, and for *Israel Yisra El* his people.

YAH VEH IS SEEN BY SHELOMOH

9 And **so be** it came to pass,
 when *Solomon Shelomoh* had finished
 the building of the house of the *LORD Yah Veh,*
 and the *king's sovereign's* house,
 and all *Solomon's Shelomoh's* desire
 which he was *pleased delighted to do work,*
 2 That the *LORD Yah Veh*
 appeared to *Solomon* **was seen by Shelomoh**
 the second time,
 as he *had appeared unto was seen by him*
 at *Gibeon Gibon*.
 3 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto him,
 I have heard thy prayer and thy supplication,
 that thou hast *made before me besought at my face*:
 I have hallowed this house, which thou hast built,
 to *put set* my name there *for ever eternally*;
 and mine eyes and mine heart
 shall be there *perpetually all days*.
 4 And if thou *wilt shalt* walk *before me at my face,*
 as David thy father walked,
 in integrity of heart, and in *uprightness straightness,*
 to *do work*
 according to all that I have *commanded misvahed* thee,
 and *wilt keep shalt guard* my statutes and my judgments:
 5 Then I *will establish shall raise* the throne
 of thy *kingdom sovereigndom*
 upon *Israel for ever Yisra El eternally,*
 as I *promised worded* to David thy father, saying,
 There shall not *fail be cut off from* thee
 a man upon the throne of *Israel Yisra El*.
 6 But if **in turning,**
 ye shall at *all turn from following after* me,
 ye or your *children sons,*
 and *will shall* not
 keep **guard** my *commandments misvoth* and my statutes
 which I have *set before you given at thy face,*
 but go and serve other *gods elohim,*
 and *worship prostrate* to them:
 7 Then *will shall* I cut off *Israel Yisra El*
out from the face of the *land soil*
 which I have given them;
 and this house, which I have hallowed for my name,
will I cast out of my sight shall I send away from my face;
 and *Israel Yisra El* shall be a proverb and a *byword gibe*
 among all people:
 8 And at this house, *which is high Elyon,*

1 SOVEREIGNS 8, 9 570

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and a hundred and twenty thousand flocks.
 Thus the sovereign and all the sons of Yisra El
 hanukkah the house of Yah Veh.
 64 On the same day,
 the sovereign hallows the middle of the court
 at the face the house of Yah Veh:
 for there he works holocausts and offerings
 and the fat of the shelamim:
 because the copper sacrifice altar
 at the face of Yah Veh
 is too little to contain the holocausts and offerings
 and the fat of the shelamim.
 65 And at that time
 Shelomoh works a celebration
 — and all Yisra El with him — a great congregation
 from the entering in of Hamath
 to the wadi of Misrayim
 at the face of Yah Veh our Elohim
 — seven days and seven days — fourteen days.
 66 On the eighth day he sends the people away:
 and they bless the sovereign
 and go to their tents cheerful and good of heart
 for all the goodness Yah Veh worked
 for David his servant and for Yisra El his people.

YAH VEH IS SEEN BY SHELOMOH

9 And so be it,
 Shelomoh finishes building the house of Yah Veh
 and the house of the sovereign
 and all the desire Shelomoh delights to work:
 2 and Yah Veh is seen by Shelomoh the second time,
 as he was seen by him at Gibon.
 3 And Yah Veh says to him,
 I heard the prayer and your supplication
 you besought at my face:
 I hallowed this house you built
 to set my name there eternally;
 my eyes and my heart being there all days.
 4 And you, if you walk at my face,
 as David your father walked
 in integrity of heart and in straightness;
 to work according to all I misvah you
 and guard my statutes and my judgments;
 5 then I raise the throne of your sovereigndom
 on Yisra El eternally,
 as I worded to David your father, saying,
 There is not cut off from you
 a man on the throne of Yisra El.
 6 But if in turning, you turn from after me
 — you or your sons
 and guard not my misvoth and my statutes
 which I give at your face,
 and go and serve other elohim and prostrate to them;
 7 then I cut Yisra El
 from the face of the soil I gave them;
 and this house I hallowed for my name,
 I send from my face;
 and Yisra El becomes a proverb and gibe
 among all people:
 8 and at this house, Elyon,

1 KINGS 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

every one that passeth by it
shall be *astonished* **desolated**, and shall hiss;
and they shall say,
Why hath *the LORD done* **Yah Veh worked** thus
unto this land, and to this house?
9 And they shall *answer say*,
Because they forsook
the LORD **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**,
who brought forth their fathers
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and have taken hold upon other *gods* **elohim**,
and have *worshipped* **prostrated to** them,
and served them:
therefore
hath *the LORD* **Yah Veh** brought upon them all this evil.
10 And **so be** it came to pass, at the end of twenty years,
when *Solomon* **Shelomoh** had built the two houses,
the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
11 (*Now Hiram the king sovereign of Tyre Sor*
had furnished Solomon loaded Shelomoh
with cedar trees and *fir* **cyprus** trees, and with gold,
according to all his desire,)
that then *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh** gave Hiram
twenty cities in the land of *Galilee* **Galiyl**.
12 And Hiram *came out went* from *Tyre* **Sor**
to see the cities which *Solomon* **Shelomoh** had given him;
and they *pleased him not* **were not straight in his eyes**.
13 And he said,
What cities are these which thou hast given me,
my brother?
And he called them the land of *Cabul* **Kabul** unto this day.
14 And Hiram sent to the *king* **sovereign**
sixscore talents **an hundred and twenty rounds** of gold.
15 And this is the *reason* **word** of the *levy* **vassal**
which *king Solomon* **raised** **sovereign Shelomoh lifted**;
for to build the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and his own house, and Millo,
and the wall of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and *Hazor* **Hasor**, and Megiddo, and Gezer.
16 For *Pharaoh* **Paroh**, *king* **sovereign of Egypt** **Misrayim**
had *gone up* **ascended**, and *taken* **captured** Gezer,
and burnt it with fire,
and *slain* **slaughtered** the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**
that *dwelt* **settled** in the city,
and given it for a *present* **dowries** unto his daughter,
Solomon's wife **Shelomoh's woman**.
17 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh** built Gezer,
and *Bethhoron* **Beth Horon** the nether,
18 And Baalath, and Tadmor in the wilderness, in the land,
19 And all the cities of *store* **storage**
that *Solomon* **Shelomoh** had,
and cities for his chariots,
and cities for his *horsemen* **cavalry**,
and that which *Solomon* **the desire of Shelomoh**
that he desired to build in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and in Lebanon, and in all the land of his *dominion* **reign**.
20 And all the people that *were left* **remained**
of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
Hittites **Hethiy**, *Perizzites* **Perizziy**,
Hivites **Hivviy**, and *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**,
which were not of the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
Their *children* **sons** that *were left* **remained** after them
in the land,
whom the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El** also
were not able *utterly to destroy to devote*,
upon those did *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
levy a tribute **ascend a vassal of bondservice service**
unto this day.
22 But of the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
did Solomon **make** **Shelomoh gave** no *bondmen* **servants**:
but they were men of war,
and his servants, and his *princes* **governors**,
and his *captains* **tertiaries**,
and *rulers* **governors** of his chariots,
and his *horsemen* **cavalry**.
23 These were the *chief of the officers* **governors**
that were **stationed** over *Solomon's* **Shelomoh's** work,

1 SOVEREIGNS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

every one who passes by desolates and hisses
and says,
Why works Yah Veh thus
to this land and to this house?
9 And they say,
Because they forsook Yah Veh their Elohim,
who brought their fathers from the land of Misrayim;
and hold on other elohim
and prostrate to them and serve them:
therefore Yah Veh brings all this evil on them.
10 And so be it, at the end of twenty years,
that Shelomoh built the two houses
— the house of Yah Veh
and the house of the sovereign:
11 Hiram sovereign of Sor
loaded Shelomoh
with cedar trees and cyprus trees and with gold
— all he desired;
then sovereign Shelomoh gives Hiram
twenty cities in the land of Galiyl:
12 and Hiram goes from Sor
to see the cities Shelomoh gives him:
but they are not straight in his eyes.
13 And he says,
What cities are these you give me, my brother?
— and he calls them the land of Kabul/Fettered
to this day.
14 And Hiram sends the sovereign
a hundred and twenty rounds of gold:
15 and this is the word of the vassal
sovereign Shelomoh lifts
to build the house of Yah Veh
and his own house and Millo
and the wall of Yeru Shalem
and Hasor and Megiddo and Gezer.
16 Paroh sovereign of Misrayim
ascends and captures Gezer and burns it with fire;
and slaughters the Kenaaniy who settle the city
and gives it for dowries to his daughter,
the woman of Shelomoh.
17 And Shelomoh builds Gezer
and Beth Horon the nether
and Baalath and Tadmor
18 in the wilderness, in the land;
19 and all the cities of storage of Shelomoh
and cities for his chariots and cities for his cavalry;
and the desires Shelomoh desires to build
in Yeru Shalem and in Lebanon
and in all the land of his reign
20 — all the people who remain of the Emoriy,
Hethiy, Perizziy, Hivviy and Yebusiy
who are not of the sons of Yisra El,
21 their sons who remain after them in the land,
whom the sons of Yisra El were not able to devote
— Shelomoh ascends a vassal of service
on them to this day.
22 And of the sons of Yisra El
Shelomoh gives no servants:
but they are men of war
— his servants and his governors and his tertiaryaries
and governors of his chariots and his cavalry:
23 these are the governors
stationed over the work of Shelomoh

1 KINGS 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

five hundred and fifty,
 which *bare rule over* **subjugated** the people
 that *wrought* **worked** in the work.
 24 But *Pharaoh's* **Paroh's** daughter
came up ascended out of the city of David unto her house
 which *Solomon* **he** had built for her:
 then did he build Millo.
 25 And three times in a year *did Solomon* **Shelomoh**
offer burnt offerings **holocausted holocausts**
 and *peace offerings* **shelamim**
 upon the **sacrifice** altar
 which he built unto *the* **LORD Yah Veh,**
 and he *burnt incense upon the altar* **incensed thereon**
 that was before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh.**
 So *did* he *finished* **shalam** the house.
 26 And *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**
made worked a navy of ships in *Eziongeber* **Esyon Geber,**
 which is beside Eloth,
 on the *shore* **lip** of the *Red* **Reed** sea, in the land of Edom.
 27 And Hiram sent in the navy **ships** his servants,
shipmen **men of ships**
 that *had knowledge of* **knew** the sea,
 with the servants of *Solomon* **Shelomoh.**
 28 And they came to Ophir,
 and *fetched* **took** from thence gold,
 four hundred and twenty *talents* **rounds,**
 and brought it to *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh.**

THE SOVEREIGNNESS OF SHEBA

10 And when the *queen* **sovereignness** of Sheba
 heard of the fame of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
 concerning the name of *the* **LORD Yah Veh,**
 she came to *prove* **test** him with *hard questions* **riddles.**
 2 And she came to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
 with a *very great train* **mighty heavy valuables,**
 with camels that *bare* spices,
 and *very* **mighty** much gold, and precious stones:
 and when she was come to *Solomon* **Shelomoh,**
 she *communed* **worded** with him
 of all that was in her heart.
 3 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh** told her all her *questions* **words:**
 there was *not any thing hid* **no word concealed**
 from the *king* **sovereign,** which he told her not.
 4 And when the *queen* **sovereignness** of Sheba
 had seen all *Solomon's* **Shelomoh's** wisdom,
 and the house that he had built,
 5 And the *meat* **food** of his table,
 and the *sitting* **settlement** of his servants,
 and the *attendance* **function** of his ministers,
 and their *apparel* **robes,** and his *cupbearers* **butlers,**
 and his ascent by which he *went up* **ascended**
 unto the house of *the* **LORD Yah Veh;**
 there was no more spirit in her.
 6 And she said to the *king* **sovereign,**
 It was a true *report* **word** that I heard in mine own land
 of thy *acts* **words** and of thy wisdom.
 7 Howbeit I *believed* **trusted** not the words,
 until I came, and mine eyes had seen it:
 and, behold, the half was not told me:
thy **thou hast added** wisdom
 and *prosperity exceedeth* **goodness**
 to the *fame* **report** which I heard.
 8 *Happy* **Blithe** are thy men,
happy **blithe** are these thy servants,
 which stand continually *before thee* **at thy face,**
 and that hear thy wisdom.
 9 Blessed be *the* **LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim,**
 which delighted in thee,
 to *set* **give** thee on the throne of *Israel* **Yisra El:**
 because *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
 loved *Israel for ever* **Yisra El eternally,**
 therefore *made* **set** he thee *king* **sovereign,**
 to *do* **work** judgment and *justice* **justness.**
 10 And she gave the *king* **sovereign**
 an hundred and twenty *talents* **rounds** of gold,
 and of spices *very* **a mighty** great *store* **abundance,**
 and precious stones:
 there came no more such abundance of spices as these
 which the *queen* **sovereignness** of Sheba

1 SOVEREIGNS 9, 10 572

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— five hundred and fifty
 to subjugate the people who work the work.
 24 Only, the daughter of Paroh
 ascends from the city of David
 to the house he built for her:
 then he builds Millo.
 25 And three times in a year
 Shelomoh holocausts holocausts and shelamim
 on the sacrifice altar he built to Yah Veh;
 and he incenses thereon at the face of Yah Veh:
 thus he shalams the house.
 26 And sovereign Shelomoh
 works a navy of ships in Eson Geber beside Eloth
 on the lip of the Reed sea in the land of Edom:
 27 and Hiram sends his servants in the ships
 — men of ships who know the sea,
 with servants of Shelomoh:
 28 and they come to Ophir
 and take gold from there
 — four hundred and twenty rounds
 and bring it to sovereign Shelomoh.

THE SOVEREIGNNESS OF SHEBA

10 And the sovereignness of Sheba
 hears of the fame of Shelomoh
 concerning the name of Yah Veh,
 and she comes to test him with riddles:
 2 and she comes to Yeru Shalem
 with mighty heavy valuables
 — with camels bearing spices
 and mighty much gold and precious stones:
 and she comes to Shelomoh,
 and she words with him of all within in her heart.
 3 And Shelomoh tells her all her words:
 the sovereign conceals no word
 which he tells her not.
 4 And the sovereignness of Sheba
 sees all the wisdom of Shelomoh
 and the house he built
 and the food of his table
 5 and the settlement of his servants
 and the function of his ministers
 and their robes and his butlers
 and the ascent
 whereby he ascends to the house of Yah Veh;
 and there is no more spirit in her.
 6 And she says to the sovereign,
 A true word I hear in my own land
 of your words and of your wisdom:
 7 and I trust not the words,
 until I come and my eyes see:
 and behold, the half is not told me:
 you add wisdom and goodness to the report I heard.
 8 Blithed — your men,
 blithed — these your servants
 who stand continually at your face
 — who hear your wisdom.
 9 Blessed — Yah Veh your Elohim
 who delights in you
 to give you on the throne of Yisra El:
 because Yah Veh loves Yisra El eternally
 he set you sovereign
 to work judgment and justness.
 10 And she gives the sovereign
 a hundred and twenty rounds of gold
 and a mighty great abundance of spices
 and precious stones:
 there comes no more such abundance of spices
 as these which the sovereignness of Sheba

1 KINGS 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 11 gave to king Solomon **sovereign Shelomoh**.
And the **navy ships** also of Hiram,
that **brought lifted** gold from Ophir,
brought in from Ophir
great plenty of almug trees
a mighty abundance of algumim,
and precious stones.
- 12 And the **king sovereign**
made worked of the *almug trees* **algumim**
pillars **banisters** for the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and for the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
harps also and *psalteries* **bagpipes** for singers:
there came no such *almug trees* **algumim**,
nor were seen unto this day.
- 13 And *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**
gave unto the *queen* **sovereigness** of Sheba
all her *desire* **delight**, whatsoever she asked,
beside that which *Solomon* **Shelomoh** gave her
of the hand of his *royal* **sovereign** bounty.
So she *turned* **faced** and went to her own *country* **land**,
she and her servants.
- THE WEALTH AND WISDOM OF SHELOMOH**
- 14 Now the weight of gold
that came to *Solomon* **Shelomoh** in one year
was six hundred *threescore* **sixty** and six
talents **rounds** of gold,
- 15 Beside that *he had* **of** the *merchantmen* **men explorers**,
and of the *traffick* **merchandising** of the *spice* merchants,
and of all the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Arabia* **the mongrels**,
and of the *governors* of the *country* **land**.
- 16 And *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**
made worked two hundred *targets* **shields** of beaten gold:
six hundred *shekels* of gold
went ascended to one *target* **shield**.
- 17 And *he made* three hundred *shields* **bucklers**
of beaten gold;
three *pound* **maneh** of gold
went ascended to one *shield* **buckler**:
and the *king put* **sovereign** gave them
in the house of the forest of Lebanon.
- 18 Moreover
the *king made* **sovereign worked** a great throne of ivory,
and overlaid it with the *best* **purified** gold.
- 19 The throne had six steps,
and the top of the throne was round behind:
and there were *stays* **hands**
on either side **here and there** on the place of the seat,
and two lions stood beside the *stays* **hands**.
- 20 And twelve lions stood there
on the one side and on the other **here and there**
upon the six steps:
there was not *the like made* **such worked**
in any *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
- 21 And all *king Solomon's* **sovereign Sholomoh's**
drinking vessels **instruments** were of gold,
and all the *vessels* **instruments**
of the house of the forest of Lebanon
were of *pure* **concentrated** gold; none were of silver:
it was *nothing accounted of* **not fabricated**
in the days of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**.
- 22 For the *king* **sovereign** had at sea
a *navy* **the ships** of Tarshish with the *navy* **ships** of Hiram:
once in three years came the *navy* **ships** of Tarshish,
bringing bearing gold, and silver,
ivory **tusks**, and apes, and peacocks.
- 23 So *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**
exceeded **greatened**
above all the *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth
for riches and for wisdom.
- 24 And all the earth
sought to Solomon **the face of Shelomoh**,
to hear his wisdom,
which *God* **Elohim** had *put* **given** in his heart.
- 25 And they brought every man his *present* **offering**,
vessels **instruments** of silver,
and *vessels* **instruments** of gold,
and *garments* **clothes**, and armour,
and spices, horses, and mules, a *rate* year by year **word**.

1 SOVEREIGNS 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- gives to sovereign Shelomoh.
- 11 And also the ships of Hiram
that lift gold from Ophir,
bring in from Ophir
a mighty abundance of algumim and precious stones.
- 12 And from the algumim
the sovereign works banisters
for the house of Yah Veh
and for the house of the sovereign;
and harps and bagpipes for singers:
there neither came such algumim
nor was seen to this day.
- 13 And sovereign Shelomoh
gives the sovereignty of Sheba all her delight
— whatever she asks,
beside what Shelomoh gives her
of the hand of his sovereign bounty.
So she faces and goes to her own land
— she and her servants.
- THE WEALTH AND WISDOM OF SHELOMOH**
- 14 And the weight of gold
that comes to Shelomoh in one year,
six hundred sixty—six rounds of gold;
beside that of the men explorers
and of the merchandising of the merchants
and of all the sovereigns of the mongrels
and of the governors of the land.
- 15 And sovereign Shelomoh
works two hundred shields of beaten gold;
six hundred gold ascends to one shield:
and three hundred bucklers of beaten gold;
three maneh of gold ascends to one buckler:
and the sovereign gives them
in the house of the forest of Lebanon.
- 16 And the sovereign works a great throne of ivory
and overlays it with purified gold:
the throne has six steps
and the top of the throne is round behind:
and there are hands
here and there on the place of the seat;
and two lions stand beside the hands:
and twelve lions stand there
here and there on the six steps;
such as is not worked in any sovereigndom.
- 17 And all the drinking instruments
of sovereign Sholomoh are of gold;
and all the instruments
of the house of the forest of Lebanon
are of concentrated gold; none of silver:
such as is not fabricated in the days of Shelomoh.
- 18 For the sovereign has at sea
the ships of Tarshish with the ships of Hiram:
once in three years the ships of Tarshish come,
bearing gold and silver,
tusks and apes and peacocks.
- 19 Thus sovereign Shelomoh
greatens above all the sovereigns of the earth
for riches and for wisdom:
and all the earth seeks the face of Shelomoh
to hear the wisdom Elohim gives in his heart:
and every man brings his offering
— instruments of silver and instruments of gold
and clothes and armour and spices,
horses and mules — a year by year word.

1 KINGS 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

26 And Solomon **Shelomoh** gathered together
chariots and *horsemen* **cavalry**;
and he had a thousand and four hundred chariots,
and twelve thousand *horsemen* **cavalry**,
whom he *bestowed* **guided** in the cities for chariots,
and with the *king* **sovereign** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
27 And the *king* made **sovereign** gave silver
to be in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** as stones,
and cedars made **gave** he to be as the sycamore trees
that are in the *vale* **lowland**, for abundance.
28 And Solomon **Shelomoh** had horses
brought **proceed** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and *linen yarn* **troops**:
the *king's* **sovereign's** merchants
received the *linen yarn* **took the troops** at a price.
29 And a chariot came up **ascended**
and went out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
for six hundred *shekels* of silver,
and an horse for an hundred and fifty:
and so for all the *kings* **sovereigns** of the *Hittites* **Hethiy**,
and for the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Syria* **Aram**,
did they bring them out by *their means* **hand**.

THE WOMEN OF SHELOMOH

11 But *king* Solomon **sovereign** Shelomoh
loved many strange women,
together with the daughter of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
women of the *Moabites* **Moabiy**,
Ammonites **Ammoniy**, *Edomites* **Edomiy**,
Zidonians **Sidoniy**, and *Hittites* **Hethiy**:
2 Of the *nations* **goyim**
concerning which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said
unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Ye shall not go in to them,
neither shall they come in unto you:
for surely they *will turn away* **shall pervert** your heart
after their *gods* **elohim**:
Solomon *clave* **Shelomoh** adhered unto these in love.
3 And he had seven hundred *wives* **women**,
princesses **governesses**, and three hundred concubines:
and his *wives* turned away **women perverted** his heart.
4 For **And so be** it came to pass,
when Solomon was *old* **the time** Shelomoh aged,
that his *wives* turned away **women perverted** his heart
after other *gods* **elohim**:
and his heart was not *perfect* **at shalom**
with the *LORD* **Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim**,
as was the heart of David his father.
5 For Solomon **Shelomoh** went after Ashtoreth
the *goddess* **elohim** of the *Zidonians* **Sidoniy**,
and after *Milcom* **Milchom**
the abomination of the *Ammonites* **Ammoniy**.
6 And Solomon *did* **Shelomoh** worked evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and went **fulfilled** not fully after the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
as did David his father.
7 Then did Solomon **Shelomoh**
build an *high place* **a bamah** for *Chemosh* **Kemosh**,
the abomination of Moab,
in the *hill* **mountain**
that is before *Jerusalem* **at the face** of *Yeru Shalem*,
and for Molech,
the abomination of the *children* **sons** of Ammon.
8 And likewise
did **worked** he for all his strange *wives* **women**,
which *burnt incense* **incensed** and sacrificed
unto their *gods* **elohim**.
9 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
was angry with Solomon **Shelomoh**,
because his heart was *turned* **spread**
from the *LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which *had appeared* unto **was seen** by him
twice **two times**,
10 And had *commanded* **misvahed** him
concerning this *thing* **word**,
that he should not go after other *gods* **elohim**:
but he *kept* **guarded** not
that which the *LORD* **commanded** **Yah Veh** misvahed.

1 SOVEREIGNS 10, 11574

exeGesés companion BIBLE

26 And Shelomoh gathers chariots and cavalry:
and he has a thousand and four hundred chariots
and twelve thousand cavalry
whom he guides in the cities for chariots
and with the sovereign at Yeru Shalem:
27 and the sovereign gives silver in Yeru Shalem
as stones
and gives cedars as the sycamore trees in the lowland
for abundance:
28 and Shelomoh has horses proceed from Misrayim
— and troops:
the merchants of the sovereign
take the troops at a price:
29 and a chariot ascends and goes from Misrayim
for six hundred of silver;
and a horse for a hundred and fifty:
and thus for all the sovereigns of the Hethiy
and for the sovereigns of Aram
they bring them out by hand.

THE WOMEN OF SHELOMOH

11 And sovereign Shelomoh
loves many strange women
together with the daughter of Paroh:
women of the Moabiy, Ammoniy,
Edomiy, Sidoniy and Hethiy,
of the goyim
2 — of which Yah Veh says to the sons of Yisra El,
Neither go in to them, nor them come in to you:
for surely they pervert your heart after their elohim
— Shelomoh adheres to these in love:
3 and he has seven hundred women governesses
and three hundred concubines:
and his women pervert his heart.
4 And so be it, at the time Shelomoh ages,
his women pervert his heart after other elohim:
and his heart is not at shalom
with Yah Veh his Elohim
as the heart of David his father:
5 and Shelomoh goes after Ashtoreth
the elohim of the Sidoniy;
and after Milchom the abomination of the Ammoniy:
6 and Shelomoh works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh
and fulfills not after Yah Veh as David his father.
7 Then Shelomoh builds a bamah for Kemosh
the abomination of Moab
in the mountain at the face of Yeru Shalem;
and for Molech
the abomination of the sons of Ammon:
8 and thus he works for all his strange women
who incense and sacrifice to their elohim:
9 and Yah Veh is angry with Shelomoh
because his heart spreads
from Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
— who was seen by him two times;
10 and misvahed him concerning this word
— to not go after other elohim:
but he guards not what Yah Veh misvahed.

1 KINGS 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

11 Wherefore the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto **Solomon Shelomoh**,
Forasmuch as this is done of thee,
and thou hast not **kept guarded**
my covenant and my statutes,
which I have **commanded misvahed** thee,
in ripping, I will surely **rend shall rip**
the **kingdom sovereigndom** from thee,
and will **shall** give it to thy servant.
12 Notwithstanding
in thy days I will **shall** not **do work** it
for David thy father's sake:
but I will **rend shall rip** it out of the hand of thy son.
13 **Howbeit Only**
I will **shall** not **rend rip** away
all the **kingdom sovereigndom**;
but will **shall** give one **tribe scion** to thy son
for David my servant's sake,
and for **Jerusalem's Yeru Shalem's** sake
which I have chosen.
YAH VEH RAISES A SATAN TO SHELOMOH
14 And the LORD **Yah Veh**
stirred up an adversary raised a satan
unto **Solomon Shelomoh**,
Hadad the Edomite Edomiy:
he was of the **king's sovereign's** seed in Edom.
15 For **so be** it **came to pass**, when David was in Edom,
and **Joab Yah Ab** the **captain governor** of the host
was **gone up ascended to bury entomb** the **slain pierced**,
after he had smitten every male in Edom;
16 (For six months did **Joab remain Yah Ab settle** there
with all **Israel Yisra El**,
until he had cut off every male in Edom):
17 That **Hadad fled**,
he and **certain Edomites men — Edomiy**
of his father's servants with him,
to go into **Egypt Misrayim**;
Hadad being yet a little **child lad**.
18 And they arose out of **Midian Midyaniy**,
and came to Paran:
and they took men with them out of Paran,
and they came to **Egypt Misrayim**,
unto Pharaoh **king sovereign** of **Egypt Misrayim**;
which gave him an house,
and **appointed said for him victuals bread**,
and gave him land.
19 And **Hadad found great favour mighty charism**
in the **sight eyes** of **Pharaoh Paroh**,
so that he gave him to **wife woman**,
the sister of his own **wife woman**,
the sister of **Tahpenes Tachpenes** the **queen lady**.
20 And the sister of **Tahpenes Tachpenes**
bare birthed him **Genubath** his son,
whom **Tahpenes Tachpenes** weaned
in **Pharaoh's midst Paroh's** house:
and **Genubath** was in **Pharaoh's Paroh's** household
among the sons of **Pharaoh Paroh**.
21 And when **Hadad** heard in **Egypt Misrayim**
that **David slept laid** with his fathers,
and that **Joab Yah Ab** the captain of the host
was **dead died**,
Hadad said to **Pharaoh Paroh**,
Let me depart Send me away,
that I may go to mine own **country land**.
22 Then **Pharaoh Paroh** said unto him,
But what hast thou lacked with me, that, behold,
thou seekest to go to thine own **country land**?
And he **answered said, Nothing Naught**:
howbeit
let me go in any wise in sending away, send me away.
23 And **God Elohim**
stirred raised him up **another adversary a satan**,
Rezon the son of **Eliadah Eli Ada**,
which fled from his **lord Hadadezer adoni Hadad Ezer**
king sovereign of **Zobah Sobah**:
24 And he gathered men unto him,
and became **captain governor** over a **band troop**,
when **David slew slaughtered** them of **Zobah**:
and they went to **Damascus Dammeseq**,

1 SOVEREIGNS 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

11 And **Yah Veh** says to **Shelomoh**,
Because you do this,
and guard not my covenant and my statutes
which I misvahed you,
in ripping, I rip the sovereigndom from you
and give it to your servant:
12 only, I work it not in your days
for sake of **David** your father:
but I rip it from the hand of your son:
13 only, I rip not away all the sovereigndom;
but give one scion to your son
for sake of **David** my servant
and for sake of **Yeru Shalem** whom I chose.
YAH VEH RAISES A SATAN TO SHELOMOH
14 And **Yah Veh** raises a satan to **Shelomoh**
— **Hadad** the **Edomiy**
of the seed of the sovereign in **Edom**.
15 And so be it, **David** is in **Edom**
and **Yah Ab** the governor of the host
ascends to entomb the pierced
after he smites every male in **Edom**;
16 **Yah Ab** settles there six months with all **Yisra El**
until he cuts off every male in **Edom**;
and **Hadad** flees — he and men
— **Edomiy** with the servants of his father
to go to **Misrayim**.
— and **Hadad** is still a little lad.
18 And they rise from **Midyaniy** and come to **Paran**;
and they take men from **Paran** with them:
and they come to **Misrayim**
— to **Pharaoh** sovereign of **Misrayim**
who gives him a house
and says to give him bread and land.
19 And **Hadad** finds mighty charism
in the eyes of **Paroh**,
so that he gives him to woman
the sister of his own woman
— the sister of **Tachpenes** the lady:
20 and the sister of **Tachpenes**
births him **Genubath** his son,
whom **Tachpenes** weans midst the house of **Paroh**:
and **Genubath** is in the house of **Paroh**
among the sons of **Paroh**:
21 and when **Hadad** hears in **Misrayim**
that **David** lies down with his fathers,
and that **Yah Ab** the captain of the host dies,
Hadad says to **Paroh**,
Send me away, to go to my own land.
22 And **Paroh** says to him,
But what lack you with me,
that behold, you seek to go to your own land?
And he says, **Naught**:
but in sending away, send me away.
23 And **Elohim** raises a satan
— **Rezon** the son of **Eli Ada**
who had fled from his **adoni**
Hadad Ezer sovereign of **Sobah**
— who gathered men to himself
and became governor over a **troop**
when **David** slaughtered them
and they went to **Dammeseq**

1 KINGS 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and dwelt **settled** therein,
and reigned in *Damascus* **Dammeseq**.
25 And he was an *adversary* a **satan** to *Israel* **Yisra El**
all the days of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
beside the *mischief* **evil** that Hadad did:
and he abhorred *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and reigned over *Syria* **Aram**.
YAROB AM REBELS AGAINST SHELOMOH
26 And *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** the son of Nebat,
an *Ephrathite* **Ephrathiy** of *Zereda* **Seredah**,
Solomon's **Shelomoh's** servant,
whose mother's name was *Zeruah* **Seruah**,
a widow woman,
even he lifted up *his* a hand against the *king* **sovereign**.
27 And this was the *cause* **word**
that he lifted up *his* a hand against the *king* **sovereign**:
Solomon **Shelomoh** built *Millo*,
and *repaired* **shut** the breaches
of the city of David his father.
28 And the man *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
was a *mighty man* of valour:
and *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
seeing the *young man* **lad** that he was *industrious* **worked**,
he made him *ruler* **overseer**
over all the *charge* **burden** of the house of *Joseph* **Yoseph**.
29 And it *came to pass* **became** at that time
when *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
went out of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
that the prophet *Ahijah* **Achiy Yah** the *Shilonite* **Shilohiy**
found him in the way;
and he *had clad* **covered** himself
with a new *garment* **clothes**;
and they two were alone in the field:
30 And *Ahijah* **Achiy Yah**
caught **manipulated** the new *garment* **clothes**
that was on him,
and *rent* **shreaded** it in twelve *pieces* **shreads**:
31 And he said to *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**,
Take thee ten *pieces* **shreads**:
for thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, Behold,
I *will rend* **shall shread** the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
out of the hand of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
and *will* **shall** give ten *tribes* **scions** to thee:
32 (But he shall have one *tribe* **scion**
for my servant David's sake,
and for *Jerusalem's* **Yeru Shalem's** sake,
the city which I have chosen
out of all the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**):
33 Because that they have forsaken me,
and have *worshipped* **prostrated to** Ashtoreth
the *goddess* **elohim** of the *Zidonians* **Sidoniy**,
Chemosh **Kemosh**
the *god* **elohim** of the *Moabites* **Moabiy**,
and *Milcom* **Milchom**
the *god* **elohim** of the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
and have not walked in my ways,
to *do work* that which is *right* **straight** in mine eyes,
and to *keep* **in** my statutes and **in** my judgments,
as did David his father.
34 Howbeit
I *will* **shall** not take the whole *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
out of his hand:
but I *will* **make** **shall set** him
prince **hierarch** all the days of his life
for David my servant's sake, whom I chose,
because he *kept* **guarded**
my *commandments* **misvoth** and my statutes:
35 But I *will* **shall** take the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
out of his son's hand,
and *will* **shall** give it unto thee, *even* ten *tribes* **scions**.
36 And unto his son *will* **shall** I give one *tribe* **scion**,
that David my servant
may have a *light* **always** **lamp all days**
before me **at my face** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
the city which I have chosen me to *put* **set** my name there.
37 And I *will* **shall** take thee,
and thou shalt reign according to all that thy soul desireth,

1 SOVEREIGNS 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and settled and reigned in *Dammeseq*:
25 and he becomes a *satan* to *Yisra El*
all the days of *Shelomoh*
beside all the *evil* Hadad did:
and he abhors *Yisra El* and reigns over *Aram*.
YAROB AM REBELS AGAINST SHELOMOH
26 And *Yarob Am* the son of Nebat
— an *Ephrathiy* of *Seredah*, servant of *Shelomoh*,
the name of whose mother is *Seruah* a widow woman
— lifts a hand against the *sovereign*:
27 and this is the *word*
that he lifts a hand against the *sovereign*:
Shelomoh built *Millo*
and shut the breaches of the city of David his father:
28 and the man *Yarob Am* is *mighty* of valour:
and *Shelomoh* sees how the *lad* works,
and makes him *overseer*
over all the *burden* of the house of *Yoseph*:
29 and so be it, at that time,
Yarob Am goes to *Yeru Shalem*,
and the prophet *Achiy Yah* the *Shilohiy*
finds him in the way;
and he covers himself with new *clothes*;
and the two are alone in the field:
30 and *Achiy Yah*
manipulates the new *clothes* on him
and shreds it in twelve *shreds*:
31 and he says to *Yarob Am*,
Take ten *shreads*:
for thus says *Yah Veh*, the *Elohim* of *Yisra El*,
Behold,
I shred the *sovereigndom* from the hand of *Shelomoh*
and give ten *scions* to you:
32 and he has one *scion* for sake of my servant *David*
and for sake of *Yeru Shalem*
the city I chose from all the *scions* of *Yisra El*:
33 because they forsake me
and prostrate to *Ashtoreth* *elohim* of the *Sidoniy*,
Kemosh *elohim* of the *Moabiy*,
and *Milchom* *elohim* of the *sons* of Ammon;
and walk not in my ways
to work straight in my eyes
and in my statutes and in my judgments
as *David* his father:
34 but I take not the whole *sovereigndom*
from his hand:
but I set him *hierarch* all the days of his life
for sake of *David* my servant;
whom I chose
because he guarded my *misvoth* and my statutes:
35 and I take the *sovereigndom*
from the hand of his son
and give it to you — the ten *scions*:
36 and to his son I give one *scion*;
so *David* my servant has a *lamp* all days
at my face in *Yeru Shalem*
— the city I chose to set my name there.
37 And I take you
and you reign according to all your soul desires

1 KINGS 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

38 and shalt be *king* **sovereign** over *Israel* **Yisra El**.
And **so be** it *shall be*,
if thou *wilt* **shalt** hearken unto all
that I *command* **misvah** thee,
and *wilt* **shalt** walk in my ways,
and *do* **work** that is *right* **straight** in my *sight* **eyes**,
to *keep* **guard**
my statutes and my *commandments* **misvoth**,
as David my servant *did* **worked**;
that I *will* **shall** be with thee,
and build thee a *sure* **trustworthy** house,
as I built for David,
and *will* **shall** give *Israel* **Yisra El** unto thee.
39 And I *will* **shall** for this *afflict* **humble** the seed of David,
but not *for ever* **all days**.
40 *Solomon* **Shelomoh** sought therefore
to *kill* *Jeroboam* **deathify** *Yarob Am*.
And *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** arose,
and fled into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
unto Shishak *king* **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and was in *Egypt* **Misrayim**
until the death of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**.
41 And the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
and all that he *did* **worked**, and his wisdom,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *acts* **words** of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**?
42 And the *time* **days** that *Solomon* **Shelomoh** reigned
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** over all *Israel* **Yisra El**
was forty years.
43 And *Solomon* **slept Shelomoh laid** with his fathers,
and was *buried* **entombed** in the city of David his father:
and *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am** his son reigned in his stead.

YISRA EL REBELS AGAINST RECHAB AM

12

And *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**
went to Shechem:
for all *Israel* **Yisra El** were come to Shechem
to *make* **have** him *king* **reign**.
2 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** the son of Nebat,
who was yet in *Egypt* **Misrayim**, heard of it,
(for he was fled from the *presence* **face**
of *king* *Solomon* **sovereign** *Shelomoh*,
and *Jeroboam* **dwelt** *Yarob Am settled* in *Egypt* **Misrayim**;)
3 That they sent and called him.
And *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
and all the congregation of *Israel* **Yisra El** came,
and *spake* **worded** unto *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**, saying,
4 Thy father *made* **hardened** our yoke *grievous*:
now *therefore* *make* **swiften** thou
the *grievous* service of thy father,
and his heavy yoke which he *put* **gave** upon us, *lighter*,
and we *will* **shall** serve thee.
5 And he said unto them, *Depart* **Go** yet for three days,
then *come again* **return** to me.
And the people *departed* **went**.
6 And *king* *Rehoboam* **sovereign** *Rechab Am*
consulted **counselled** with the *old men* **elders**,
that stood *before* *Solomon* **at the face** of *Shelomoh*
his father while he yet lived, *and said* **saying**,
How do ye *advise* **counsel**
that I may *answer* **return word** to this people?
7 And they *spake* **worded** unto him, saying,
If thou *wilt* **shalt** be a servant unto this people this day,
and *wilt* **shalt** serve them, and answer them,
and *speak* **word** good words to them,
then they *will* **shall** be thy servants *for ever* **all days**.
8 But he forsook the counsel of the *old men* **elders**,
which they had *given* **counselled** him,
and *consulted* **counselled** with the *young men* **children**
that were grown up with him,
and which stood *before* **him at his face**:
9 And he said unto them, What counsel give ye
that we may *answer* **return word** to this people,
who have *spoken* **worded** to me, saying,
Make **Swiften** the yoke
which thy father *did* **put** **gave** upon us *lighter*?
10 And the *young men* **children**
that were grown up with him *spake* **worded** unto him,

1 SOVEREIGNS 11, 12577

exeGesés companion BIBLE

being sovereign over *Yisra El*:
38 and so be it,
if you hearken to all I *misvah* you
and walk in my ways
and work straight in my eyes
— to guard my statutes and my *misvoth*
as David my servant worked;
I am with you
and build you a trustworthy house as I built for David;
and give *Yisra El* to you:
39 and for this I humble the seed of David;
but not all days.
40 And Shelomoh seeks to deathify *Yarob Am*.
And *Yarob Am* rises and flees to *Misrayim*
— to Shishak sovereign of *Misrayim*;
and is in *Misrayim* until the death of Shelomoh.
41 And the rest of the words of Shelomoh
and all he worked and his wisdom
— are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of Shelomoh?
42 And the days Shelomoh reigns
in *Yeru Shalem* over all *Yisra El*,
forty years.
43 And Shelomoh lies down with his fathers
entombed in the city of David his father:
and *Rechab Am* his son reigned in his stead.

YISRA EL REBELS AGAINST RECHAB AM

12

And *Rechab Am* goes to Shechem:
for all *Yisra El* comes to Shechem to have him reign.
2 And so be it,
Yarob Am the son of Nebat,
who is yet in *Misrayim*, hears,
— for he had fled the face of sovereign Shelomoh
and *Yarob Am* settles in *Misrayim*;
and they send and call him.
3
And *Yarob Am*
and all the congregation of *Yisra El* come
and word to *Rechab Am*, saying,
4 Your father hardened our yoke:
now swiften the service of your father
and the heavy yoke he gave on us
and we serve you.
5
And he says to them,
Go yet three days and return to me.
6
And the people go:
and sovereign *Rechab Am* counsels with the elders
who had stood at the face of Shelomoh his father
while he yet lived, saying,
How counsel you, that I return word to this people?
7
And they word to him, saying,
If you are a servant to this people this day
and serve them and answer them
and word good words to them,
then they become your servants all days.
8
And he forsakes the counsel the elders counsel him;
and counsels with the children who grew up with him
— who stand at his face:
9 and he says to them, What counsel give you
that we return word to this people,
who word to me, saying,
Swiften the yoke your father gave on us?
10
And the children who grew up with him
word to him,

1 KINGS 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

saying, Thus shalt thou speak **say** unto this people
that *spake* **worded** unto thee, saying,
Thy father made our yoke heavy,
but *make* **swiften** thou it *lighter* unto us;
thus shalt thou *say* **word** unto them,
My *little finger* **pinky** shall be thicker
than my father's loins.
11 And now whereas my father
did lade you with a heavy yoke,
I *will* **shall** add to your yoke:
my father hath *chastised* **disciplined** you with whips,
but I *will* **chastise** **shall discipline** you with scorpions.
12 So *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** and all the people
came to *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am** the third day,
as the *king* **sovereign** had *appointed* **worded**, saying,
Come **Return** to me *again* the third day.
13 And the *king* **sovereign**
answered the people *roughly* **hard**,
and forsook the *old men's* **elders's** counsel
that they *gave* **counselled** him;
14 And *spake* **worded** to them
after the counsel of the *young men* **children**, saying,
My father made your yoke heavy,
and I *will* **shall** add to your yoke:
my father *also* **chastised** **disciplined** you with whips,
but I *will* **chastise** **shall discipline** you with scorpions.
15 Wherefore
the *king* **sovereign** hearkened not unto the people;
for the *cause* **revolution** was from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that he might *perform* **raise** his *saying* **word**,
which the *LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh worded**
by *Ahijah* **the hand of Achiy Yah** the *Shilonite* **Shilohiy**
unto *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** the son of Nebat.
THE SOVEREIGNDOM DIVIDED
16 So when all *Israel* **Yisra El** saw
that the *king* **sovereign** hearkened not unto them,
the people *answered* **returned word** to the *king* **sovereign**,
saying, What *portion* **allotment** have we in David?
neither have we inheritance in the son of *Jesse* **Yishay**:
to your tents, O *Israel* **Yisra El**:
now see to thine own house, David.
17 So *Israel* **departed** **Yisra El went** unto their tents.
But as for the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
which *dwelt* **settled** in the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
Rehoboam **Rechab Am** reigned over them.
18 Then *king* *Rehoboam* **sovereign Rechab Am**
sent *Adoram* **Adoni Ram**,
who was over the *tribute* **vassal**;
and all *Israel* **Yisra El** stoned him with stones, that he died.
Therefore *king* *Rehoboam* **sovereign Rechab Am**
made speed **strengthened himself**
to *get him up* **ascend** to his chariot,
to flee to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
19 So *Israel* **Yisra El**
rebelled against the house of David unto this day.
20 And **so be** it *came to pass*, when all *Israel* **Yisra El** heard
that *Jeroboam* **was come again** **Yarob Am had returned**,
that they sent and called him
unto the *congregation* **witness**,
and *made* **had** him *king* **reign** over all *Israel* **Yisra El**:
there was none *that followed* **after** the house of David,
but **except** the *tribe* **scion** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** only.
21 And when *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**
was come to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
he *assembled* **congregated**
all the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
with the *tribe* **scion** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
an hundred and *fourscore* **eighty** thousand chosen men,
which *were* **warriors** **worked war**,
to fight against the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
to *bring* **return** the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** *again*
to *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am** the son of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**.
22 But the word of *God* **Elohim**
came unto *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah** the man of *God* **Elohim**,
saying,
23 *Speak* **Say** unto *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**,
the son of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,

1 SOVEREIGNS 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

saying, Say thus to this people who word to you,
saying, Your father made our yoke heavy,
but swiften it to us
— word to them thus,
My pinky is thicker than the loins of my father!
11 And now,
whereas my father loaded you with a heavy yoke,
I add to your yoke:
my father disciplined you with whips;
and I — I discipline you with scorpions.
12 So Yarob Am and all the people
come to Rechab Am the third day
as the sovereign worded,
saying, Return to me the third day:
13 and the sovereign answers the people hard
and forsakes the counsel the elders counsel him;
14 and words to them
after the counsel of the children, saying,
My father made your yoke heavy
and I — I add to your yoke:
my father disciplined you with whips,
and I — I discipline you with scorpions.
15 And the sovereign hearkens not to the people;
for the revolution is from Yah Veh to raise his word
which Yah Veh worded
by the hand of Achiy Yah the Shilohiy
to Yarob Am the son of Nebat.
THE SOVEREIGNDOM DIVIDED
16 And all Yisra El sees
that the sovereign hearkens not to them,
and the people return word to the sovereign,
saying, What allotment have we in David?
Yes, there is no inheritance in the son of Yishay:
to your tents, O Yisra El!
Now see to your own house, O David.
— and Yisra El goes to their tents.
17 As for the sons of Yisra El
who settle in the cities of Yah Hudah,
Rechab Am reigns over them:
18 and sovereign Rechab Am
sends Adoni Ram who is over the vassal;
and all Yisra El stones him with stones, that he dies:
and sovereign Rechab Am strengthens himself
to ascend to his chariot to flee to Yeru Shalem.
19 and Yisra El rebels against the house of David
to this day.
20 And so be it,
all Yisra El hears that Yarob Am returns,
and they send and call him to the witness
and have him reign over all Yisra El:
there is no one after the house of David,
except only, the scion of Yah Hudah.
21 And Rechab Am comes to Yeru Shalem,
and he congregates all the house of Yah Hudah
with the scion of Ben Yamin
— a hundred and eighty thousand
chosen men who work war
— to fight against the house of Yisra El
— to return the sovereigndom
to Rechab Am the son of Shelomoh.
22 And the word of Elohim
is to Shema Yah the man of Elohim, saying,
23 Say to Rechab Am
the son of Shelomoh sovereign of Yah Hudah,

1 KINGS 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and unto all the house
of Judah **Yah Hudah** and Benjamin **Ben Yamin**,
and to the remnant of the people, saying,
24 Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**,
Ye shall not go up **ascend**, nor fight
against your brethren the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**:
return every man to his house;
for this *thing* **word** is from me.
They hearkened therefore to the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and returned to *depart* **go**,
according to the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**.

THE ALTAR OF SACRIFICE OF YAROB AM

25 Then *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
built Shechem in mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
and dwelt **settled** therein;
and went out from thence, and built *Penuel* **Penu El**.
26 And *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** said in his heart,
Now shall the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** return
to the house of David:
27 If this people go up **ascend** to do **work** sacrifice
in the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**
at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
then shall the heart of this people
turn again **return** unto their *lord* **adoni**,
even unto *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**,
king **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and they shall *kill* **slaughter** me,
and go again **return** to *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**,
king **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**.
28 Whereupon the *king* **sovereign** took counsel,
and made **worked** two calves of gold, and said unto them,
It is *too* much for you
to go up **ascend** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
behold thy *gods* **Elohim**, O *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which brought **ascended** thee up
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
29 And he set the one in *Bethel* **Beth El**,
and the *other* **put** **one** gave he in Dan.
30 And this *thing* **word** became a sin:
for the people went
to worship before **at the face** of the one, even unto Dan.
31 And he made **worked** an house of *high places* **bamahs**,
and made **worked** priests of the *lowest* **end** of the people,
which were not of the sons of Levi.
32 And *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
ordained **worked** a *feast* **celebration**
in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day of the month,
like unto the *feast* **celebration** that is in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and he offered **holocausted** upon the **sacrifice** altar.
So *did* **worked** he in *Bethel* **Beth El**,
sacrificing unto the calves that he had made **worked**:
and he placed **stood** in *Bethel* **Beth El**
the priests of the *high places* **bamahs**
which he had made **worked**.
33 So he offered **holocausted** upon the **sacrifice** altar
which he had made **worked** in *Bethel* **Beth El**
the fifteenth day of the eighth month,
even in the month
which he had devised **contrived** of his own heart;
and ordained **worked** a *feast* **celebration**
unto the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**:
and he offered **holocausted** upon the **sacrifice** altar,
and burnt *incense* **incensed**.

THE MAN OF ELOHIM WITH THE WORD OF YAH VEH

13 And, behold,
there came a man of *Cod* **Elohim** out of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
by the word of the **LORD Yah Veh** unto *Bethel* **Beth El**:
and *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** stood by the **sacrifice** altar
to burn incense.
2 And he cried **called out** against the **sacrifice** altar
in the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**, and said,
O **sacrifice** altar, **sacrifice** altar,
thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**; Behold,
a *child* **son** shall be born **birthed** unto the house of David,
Josiah **Yoshi Yah** by name;
and upon thee shall he offer **sacrifice**
the priests of the *high places* **bamahs**
that burn incense upon thee,

1 SOVEREIGNS 12, 13579

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and to all the house of Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin
and to the remnant of the people, saying,
24 Thus says Yah Veh:
Neither ascend
nor fight against your brothers the sons of Yisra El:
return every man to his house;
for this word is from me.
— and they hear the word of Yah Veh
and return to go according to the word of Yah Veh.

THE ALTAR OF SACRIFICE OF YAROB AM

25 And Yarob Am builds Shechem in mount Ephrayim
and settles therein;
and from there, he goes out and builds Penu El:
26 and Yarob Am says in his heart,
Now the sovereigndom returns to the house of David:
27 if this people ascend to work sacrifice
in the house of Yah Veh at Yeru Shalem,
then the heart of this people returns to their adoni
— to Rechab Am sovereign of Yah Hudah;
and they slaughter me
and return to Rechab Am sovereign of Yah Hudah.
28 And the sovereign takes counsel
and works two calves of gold, and says to them,
Too much for you to ascend to Yeru Shalem:
behold your Elohim, O Yisra El,
who ascended you from the land of Misrayim.
29 And he sets the one in Beth El
and gives the one in Dan:
30 and this word becomes a sin:
for the people go at the face of the one, to Dan.
31 And he works a house of bamahs
and works priests of the end of the people
who are not of the sons of Levi:
32 and Yarob Am works a celebration
in the eighth month,
on the fifteenth day of the month,
like the celebration in Yah Hudah:
and he holocausts on the sacrifice altar:
thus he works in Beth El
sacrificing to the calves he worked:
and in Beth El
he stands the priests of the bamahs he worked:
33 and he holocausts on the sacrifice altar
what he worked in Beth El
the fifteenth day of the eighth month,
in the month he contrives of his own heart;
and works a celebration to the sons of Yisra El:
and he holocausts on the sacrifice altar and incenses.

THE MAN OF ELOHIM WITH THE WORD OF YAH VEH

13 And behold,
there comes a man of Elohim from Yah Hudah
by the word of Yah Veh to Beth El:
and Yarob Am stands by the sacrifice altar to incense:
2 and he calls out against the sacrifice altar
in the word of Yah Veh, and says,
Sacrifice altar! Sacrifice altar!
Thus says Yah Veh:
Behold, a son is birthed to the house of David,
Yoshi Yah by name;
and on you
he sacrifices the priests of the bamahs
who incense upon you;

1 KINGS 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and *men's* **human** bones shall be burnt upon thee.
3 And he gave a *sign* **an omen** the same day, saying,
This is the *sign* **omen**
which *the* **LORD Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded**;
Behold, the **sacrifice** altar shall be *rent* **ripped**,
and the *ashes* *that are* **fat** upon it shall be poured out.
4 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when *king* **Jeroboam sovereign Yarob Am**
heard the *saying* **word** of the man of *God* **Elohim**,
which *had cried* **called out**
against the **sacrifice** altar in *Bethel* **Beth El**,
that he *put* **sent** forth his hand from the **sacrifice** altar,
saying, *Lay hold on* **Apprehend** him.
And his hand, which he *put* **sent** forth against him,
dried up **withered**,
so that he could not *pull it in again* **turn it back** to him.
5 The **sacrifice** altar also was *rent* **ripped**,
and the *ashes* **fat** poured out from the **sacrifice** altar,
according to the *sign* **omen**
which the man of *God* **Elohim** had given
by the word of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**.
6 And the *king* **sovereign** answered
and said unto the man of *God* **Elohim**,
Intreat **Stroke** now
the face of *the* **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
and pray for me, that my hand may be restored me *again*.
And the man of *God* **Elohim**
besought the **LORD** **stroked the face of Yah Veh**,
and the *king's* **sovereign's** hand was restored him *again*,
and became as *it was before* **formerly**.
7 And the *king* **sovereign**
said **worded** unto the man of *God* **Elohim**,
Come home with me, and *refresh* **support** thyself,
and I *will* **shall** give thee a *reward* **gift**.
8 And the man of *God* **Elohim**
said unto the *king* **sovereign**,
If thou *wilt* **shalt** give me half thine house,
I *will* **shall** not go in with thee,
neither *will* **shall** I eat bread nor drink water in this place:
9 For so was it *charged* **misvahed** me
by the word of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**, *saying*,
Eat no bread, nor drink water,
nor *turn again* **return** by the same way that thou camest.
10 So he went another way, and returned not
by the way that he came to *Bethel* **Beth El**.
THE DISOBEDIENT PROPHET
11 Now there *dwelt an old* **settled one** *elder* prophet
in *Bethel* **Beth El**;
and his *sons* **son** came and *told* **scribed** him all the works
that the man of *God* **Elohim**
had *done* **worked** that day in *Bethel* **Beth El**:
the words which he had *spoken* **worded**
unto the *king* **sovereign**,
them they *told* **scribed** also to their father.
12 And their father *said* **worded** unto them,
What way went he?
For his sons had seen
what way the man of *God* **Elohim** went,
which came from *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
13 And he said unto his sons,
Saddle me the ass **Harness my he burro**.
So they *saddled him the ass* **harnessed his he burro**:
and he rode thereon,
14 And went after the man of *God* **Elohim**,
and found him *sitting* **settled** under an oak:
and he said unto him,
Art thou the man of **God** **Elohim**
that camest from *Judah* **Yah Hudah**?
And he said, *I am*.
15 Then he said unto him,
Come home with me, and eat bread.
16 And he said, I may not return with thee,
nor go in with thee:
neither *will* **shall** I eat bread nor drink water with thee
in this place:
17 For it was *said* **worded** to me
by the word of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**,
Thou shalt eat no bread nor drink water there,

1 SOVEREIGNS 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and burn human bones upon you.
3 And that same day, he gives an omen,
saying, This is the omen Yah Veh words;
Behold, the sacrifice altar is ripped,
and the fat thereon, poured out.
4 And so be it,
sovereign Yarob Am
hears the word of the man of Elohim
who calls out against the sacrifice altar in Beth El,
and he sends his hand from the sacrifice altar,
saying, Apprehend him.
And the hand he sends against him withers
so that he cannot turn it back to him:
5 and the sacrifice altar rips
and the fat pours from the sacrifice altar
according to the omen the man of Elohim gives
by the word of Yah Veh.
6 And the sovereign answers
and says to the man of Elohim,
Stroke now the face of Yah Veh your Elohim,
and pray for me, that my hand be restored.
And the man of Elohim strokes the face of Yah Veh,
and the hand of the sovereign restores
and becomes as formerly.
7 And the sovereign words to the man of Elohim,
Come home with me and support yourself;
and I give you a gift.
8 And the man of Elohim says to the sovereign,
If you give me half your house,
I neither go in with you
nor eat bread nor drink water in this place:
9 for thus he misvahed me by the word of Yah Veh,
saying, Neither eat bread nor drink water
nor return the way you came.
10 — and he goes another way
and returns not the way he came to Beth El.
THE DISOBEDIENT PROPHET
11 And one elder prophet settles in Beth El;
and his son comes and scribes all the works
the man of Elohim works that day in Beth El
— the words he worded to the sovereign,
they scribe to their father.
12 And their father words to them, What way goes he?
— for his sons see the way
the man of Elohim who came from Yah Hudah goes.
13 And he says to his sons, Harness my he burro.
— and they harness his he burro.
And he rides thereon
and goes after the man of Elohim:
and he finds him settled under an oak:
and he says to him,
Are you the man of Elohim
who comes from Yah Hudah?
And he says, I.
15 Then he says to him,
Come home with me, and eat bread.
16 And he says,
I neither return with you nor go in with you
nor eat bread nor drink water with you in this place:
17 for I was worded by the word of Yah Veh,
Neither eat bread nor drink water there;

1 KINGS 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

nor *turn again* **return** to go by the way that thou camest.
18 He said unto him, I am a prophet also as thou *art*;
and an angel *spake* **worded** unto me
by the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, saying,
Bring **Return** him *back* with thee into thine house,
that he may eat bread and drink water.
But he *lied unto* **had deceived** him.
19 So he *went back* **returned** with him,
and did eat bread in his house, and drank water.
20 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
as they *sat* **settled** at the table,
that the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
came unto the prophet
that *brought him back* **returned him**:
21 And he *cried* **called out** unto the man of *God* **Elohim**
that came from *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, saying,
Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Forasmuch **Because** as thou hast *disobeyed* **rebelled**
the mouth of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and hast not *kept* **guarded** the *commandment* **misvah**
which *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
commanded **misvahed** thee,
22 But *camest back* **returnest**,
and hast eaten bread and drunk water in the place,
of the which *the LORD* *did say* **he worded** to thee,
Eat no bread, and drink no water;
thy carcase shall not come
unto the *sepulchre* **tomb** of thy fathers.
23 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
after he had eaten bread, and after he had drunk,
that he *saddled for him the ass* **harnessed his he burro**,
to wit,
for the prophet whom he had *brought back* **returned**.
24 And when he was gone,
a lion *met* **found** him by the way,
and *slew* **deathified** him:
and his carcase was cast in the way,
and the *ass* **he burro** stood *by* **beside** it,
the lion also stood *by* **beside** the carcase.
25 And, behold, men passed by,
and saw the carcase cast in the way,
and the lion standing *by* **beside** the carcase:
and they came and *told* **worded** it
in the city where the old prophet *dwelt* **settled**.
26 And when the prophet
that *brought* **returned** him *back* from the way
heard thereof,
he said, It is the man of *God* **Elohim**,
who was *disobedient* **rebelled**
unto the *word* **mouth** of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
therefore *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *delivered* **given** him unto the lion,
which hath *orn* **broken** him, and *slain* **deathified** him,
according to the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which he *spake* **worded** unto him.
27 And he *spake* **worded** to his sons, saying,
Saddle me the ass **Harness my he burro**.
And they *saddled* **harnessed** him.
28 And he went and found his carcase cast in the way,
and the *ass* **he burro** and the lion
standing *by* **beside** the carcase:
the lion had not eaten the carcase,
nor *orn* **broken** the *ass* **he burro**.
29 And the prophet *took up* **lifted** the carcase
of the man of *God* **Elohim**,
and *laid* **set** it upon the *ass* **he burro**,
and *brought* **returned** it *back*:
and the *old* **elder** prophet came to the city,
to *mourn* **chop** and to *bury* **entomb** him.
30 And he *laid* **set** his carcase in his own *grave* **tomb**;
and they *mourned* **chopped** over him,
saying, *Alas* **Ho**, my brother!
31 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
after he had *buried* **entombed** him,
that he *spake* **said** to his sons, saying,
When I *am* **dead** **die**,
then *bury* **entomb** me in the *sepulchre* **tomb**
wherein the man of *God* **Elohim** is *buried* **entombed**;

1 SOVEREIGNS 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

nor return to go the way you came.
18 He says to him, I also *am* a prophet as you;
and an angel worded to me by the word of Yah Veh,
saying, Return him with you to your house
to eat bread and drink water.
— and he deceived him:
19 And he returns with him
and eats bread in his house and drinks water.
20 And so be it, they settle at the table,
and the word of Yah Veh
comes to the prophet who returned him:
21 and he calls to the man of Elohim
who came from Yah Hudah,
saying, Thus saith Yah Veh,
Because you rebel the mouth of Yah Veh,
and guard not the misvah
Yah Veh your Elohim misvahs you;
22 and return,
and eat bread and drink water in the place
whereof he worded you,
Neither eat bread nor drink water;
your carcase comes not to the tomb of your fathers.
23 And so be it,
after he eats bread and after he drinks,
he harnesses the he burro,
of the prophet he had returned:
24 and when he goes
a lion finds him by the way and deathifies him:
and his carcase is cast in the way
and the he burro stands beside it,
and the lion stands beside the carcase:
25 and behold, men pass by
and see the carcase cast in the way
and the lion standing beside the carcase:
and they come and word
in the city wherein the old prophet settles.
26 And the prophet who returned him from the way
hears and says,
It is the man of Elohim
who rebelled the mouth of Yah Veh:
therefore Yah Veh gives him to the lion
to break him and deathify him
according to the word Yah Veh worded to him.
27 And he words to his sons,
saying, Harness my he burro.
And they harness:
28 and he goes and finds his carcase cast in the way;
and the he burro and the lion
standing beside the carcase:
the lion had neither eaten the carcase
nor broken the he burro.
29 And the prophet lifts the carcase
of the man of Elohim,
and sets it upon the he burro, and returns it:
and the elder prophet comes to the city to chop
and to entomb him:
30 and he sets his carcase in his own tomb;
and they chop over him, Ho, my brother!
31 And so be it, after he entombs him,
he says to his sons, saying,
When I die, entomb me in the tomb
wherein the man of Elohim is entombed;

1 KINGS 13, 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

lay set my bones beside his bones:
 32 For the saying **word** which he *cried* **called out**
 by the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
 against the **sacrifice** altar in *Bethel* **Beth El**,
 and against all the houses of the *high places* **bamahs**
 which are in the cities of *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
in becoming, shall *surely come to pass* **become**.
 33 After this *thing word*
Jeroboam **Yarob Am** returned not from his evil way,
 but *made again* **returned and worked**
 of the *lowest end* of the people
 priests of the *high places* **bamahs**:
 whosoever would **delighted**,
 he *consecrated him* **filled his hand**,
 and he became *one* of the priests
 of the *high places* **bamahs**.
 34 And this *thing word* became sin
 unto the house of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**, even to cut it off,
 and to *destroy* **desolate** it
 from off the face of the *earth soil*.

THE PROPHECY OF ACHIY YAH AGAINST YAROB AM

14

At that time
Abijah **Abi Yah** the son of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** fell sick.
 2 And *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** said to his *wife* **woman**,
 Arise, I *pray* **beseech** thee, and *disguise* **alter** thyself,
 that *thou be not known* **they not know thee**
 to be the *wife* **woman** of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**;
 and *get thee* **go** to Shiloh:
 behold, there is *Ahijah* **Achiy Yah** the prophet,
 which *told* **worded** me
 that I should be *king* **sovereign** over this people.
 3 And take *with thee* **in thine hand** ten *loaves* **bread**,
 and *cracknels* **crumbs**, and a cruse bottle of honey,
 and go to him:
 he shall tell thee what shall become of the *child* **lad**.
 4 And *Jeroboam's wife* **Yarob Am's woman**
did **worked** so and arose, and went to Shiloh,
 and came to the house of *Ahijah* **Achiy Yah**.
 But *Ahijah* **Achiy Yah** could not see;
 for his eyes *were set* **arose** by reason of his age **grayness**.
 5 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto *Ahijah* **Achiy Yah**,
 Behold, the *wife* **woman** of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** cometh
 to *ask* **enquire** a *thing word* of thee for her son;
 for he is sick:
 thus and thus shalt thou *say* **word** unto her:
 for **so be** it *shall be*, when she cometh in,
 that she shall *feign* **estrangle** herself to be another *woman*.
 6 And it was *so* **became**,
 when *Ahijah* **Achiy Yah** heard the *sound* **voice** of her feet,
 as she came in at the *door* **portal**, that he said,
 Come in, thou *wife* **woman** of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**;
 why *feignest* **estrangest** thou thyself to be another?
 for I am sent to thee with *heavy tidings* **hardness**.
 7 Go, *tell* *Jeroboam* **say** to **Yarob Am**,
 Thus saith
 the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Forasmuch as **Because** I exalted thee
 from among the people,
 and *made* **gave** thee *prince* **eminence**
 over my people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 8 And *rent* **ripped** the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
 away from the house of David, and gave it thee:
 and yet thou hast not been as my servant David,
 who *kept* **guarded** my *commandments* **misvoth**,
 and who *followed* **walked after** me with all his heart,
 to *do* **work** that only
 which was *right* **straight** in mine eyes;
 9 But hast *done* **evil** **vilified to work**
 above all that *were before thee* **at thy face**:
 for thou hast gone and *made* **worked** thee
 other *gods* **elohim**, and molten *images*,
 to *provoke* **vex** me to *anger*,
 and hast cast me behind thy back:
 10 Therefore, behold,
 I *will* **shall** bring evil
 upon the house of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**,
 and *will* **shall** cut off from *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
 him that *pisseth* **urinatheth** against the wall,

1 SOVEREIGNS 13, 14582

exeGeses companion BIBLE

set my bones beside his bones:
 32 for the word he called out
 by the word of Yah Veh
 against the sacrifice altar in Beth El,
 and against all the houses of the bamahs
 in the cities of Shomeron,
 in becoming, they become.
 33 After this word
 Yarob Am returns not from his evil way,
 but returns and works from the ends of the people
 priests of the bamahs:
 whoever delights, he fills his hand,
 and he becomes a priest of the bamahs.
 34 And this word
 becomes the sin of the house of Yarob Am
 to cut off and to desolate from off the face of the soil.

THE PROPHECY OF ACHIY YAH AGAINST YAROB AM

14

At that time,
 Abi Yah the son of Yarob Am sickens;
 2 and Yarob Am says to his woman,
 Rise, I beseech thee, and alter yourself,
 that you not be known to be the woman of Yarob Am;
 and go to Shiloh:
 behold, Achiy Yah the prophet there,
 who worded of me as sovereign over this people:
 3 and take in your hand
 ten bread and crumbs and a container of honey;
 and go to him:
 he tells what becomes of the lad.
 4 And the woman of Yarob Am works thus:
 and rises and goes to Shiloh
 and comes to the house of Achiy Yah.
 — and Achiy Yah cannot see
 for his eyes rise because of his grayness.
 5 And Yah Veh says to Achiy Yah,
 Behold, the woman of Yarob Am comes
 to enquire a word of you for her son;
 for he is sick:
 word thus and thus to her:
 for so be it, when she comes,
 she estrangeth herself to be another.
 6 And so be it,
 Achiy Yah hears the voice of her feet
 as she comes to the portal;
 and he says, Come in, woman of Yarob Am;
 why estrange yourself to be another?
 For I am sent to you with hardness!
 7 Go, say to Yarob Am,
 Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
 Because I exalted you from among the people;
 and gave you eminence over my people Yisra El;
 8 and ripped the sovereigndom
 from the house of David;
 and gave it to you:
 and you became not as my servant David
 — who guarded my misvoth
 — who walked after me with all his heart
 — to work only, straight in my eyes:
 9 and vilified to work above all who are at your face:
 and went and worked other elohim and molten
 to vex me;
 and cast me behind your back:
 therefore, behold,
 10 I bring evil on the house of Yarob Am,
 and cut off from Yarob Am
 him who urinates against the wall,

1 KINGS 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and him that is *shut up restrained*
and left in *Israel Yisra El*,
and will take **shall burn** away the *remnant posterity*
of the house of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*,
as a man *taketh burneth* away dung **balls**,
till it be *all gone consumed*.
11 Him that dieth of *Jeroboam Yarob Am* in the city
shall the dogs eat **devour**;
and him that dieth in the field
shall the *fowls flyers* of the *air eat heavens devour*:
for the *LORD Yah Veh* hath *spoken worded* it.
12 Arise thou therefore, *get thee go* to thine own house:
and when thy feet enter into the city, the child shall die.
13 And all *Israel Yisra El* shall *mourn for chop* over him,
and *bury entomb* him:
for he only of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*
shall come to the *grave tomb*,
because in him there is found *some a good thing word*
toward the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of *Israel Yisra El*
in the house of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*.
14 Moreover the *LORD Yah Veh*
shall raise him *up a king sovereign* over *Israel Yisra El*,
who shall cut off the house of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*
that day:
but what? even now.
15 For the *LORD Yah Veh* shall smite *Israel Yisra El*,
as a *reed is shaken stalk wags* in the water,
and he shall *root up Israel uproot* *Yisra El*
out of this good *land soil*,
which he gave to their fathers,
and shall scatter them beyond the river,
because they have *made worked* their *groves asherim*,
provoking the LORD to anger vexing Yah Veh.
16 And he shall give *Israel Yisra El* up
because of the sins of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*,
who did sin, and who made *Israel Yisra El* to sin.
17 And *Jeroboam's wife Yarob Am's woman* arose,
and *departed went*, and came to *Tirzah Tirsah*:
and when she came to the threshold of the *door house*,
the *child lad* died;
18 And they *buried entombed* him;
and all *Israel mourned for Yisra El chopped* over him,
according to the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
which he *spake worded* by the hand of his servant
Ahijah Achiy Yah the prophet.
19 And the rest of the *acts words* of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*,
how he *warred fought*, and how he reigned, behold,
they are *written inscribed* in the *book scroll*
of the *chronicles words of the days*
of the *kings sovereigns* of *Israel Yisra El*.
20 And the days which *Jeroboam Yarob Am* reigned
were two and twenty years:
and he *slept laid* with his fathers,
and Nadab his son reigned in his stead.
21 **THE REIGN OF RECHAB AM OVER YAH HUDAH**
And *Rehoboam Rechab Am*
the son of *Solomon Shelomoh*
reigned in *Judah Yah Hudah*.
Rehoboam Rechab Am
was a **son of** forty and one years *old*
when he began to reign,
and he reigned seventeen years in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
the city which the *LORD Yah Veh* did choose
out of all the *tribes scions* of *Israel Yisra El*,
to *put set* his name there.
And his mother's name was Naamah
an *Ammonitess Ammoniyth*.
22 And *Judah did Yah Hudah worked* evil
in the *sight eyes* of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and they *provoked caused* him to *jealousy be jealous*
with their sins which they had *committed sinned*,
above all that their fathers had *done worked*.
23 For they also built them *high places bamahs*,
and *images monoliths*, and *groves asherim*,
on every high hill, and under every green tree.
24 And there were also
sodomites hallowed whoremongers in the land:
and they *did worked* according

1 SOVEREIGNS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

him who restrains and is left in *Yisra El*;
and burn away the posterity of the house of *Yarob Am*
as a man burns away dung balls
until they are consumed:
11 he of *Yarob Am* who dies in the city
the dogs devour;
and he who dies in the field
the flyers of the heavens devour:
for *Yah Veh* has worded.
12 And you, rise; go to your own house:
when your feet enter the city, the child dies:
13 and all *Yisra El* chops over him and entombs him:
for of *Yarob Am*, only, he comes to the tomb;
because in him there is found a good word
toward *Yah Veh Elohim* of *Yisra El*
in the house of *Yarob Am*.
14 And *Yah Veh* raises a sovereign over *Yisra El*,
to cut off the house of *Yarob Am* that day.
And what? Even now!
15 For *Yah Veh* smites *Yisra El*
as a stalk wags in the water;
and uproots *Yisra El*
from this good soil he gave to their fathers;
and scatters them beyond the river
because they work their asherim
— vexing *Yah Veh*:
16 and he gives up *Yisra El*
because of the sins *Yarob Am* sins
— who had *Yisra El* sin.
17 And the woman of *Yarob Am* rises;
and goes and comes to *Tirsah*:
and she comes to the threshold of the house
and the lad dies;
and they entomb him;
18 and all *Yisra El* chops over him
— according to the word
Yah Veh worded by the hand of his servant
Achiy Yah the prophet.
19 And the rest of the words of *Yarob Am*
— how he fought and how he reigned
behold, they are inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of *Yisra El*:
20 and the days *Yarob Am* reigns
are twenty—two years:
and he lies down with his fathers;
and *Nadab* his son reigns in his stead.
21 **THE REIGN OF RECHAB AM OVER YAH HUDAH**
And *Rechab Am* the son of *Shelomoh*
reigns in *Yah Hudah*.
Rechab Am is a son of forty—one years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns seventeen years in *Yeru Shalem*
the city *Yah Veh* chose from all the scions of *Yisra El*,
to set his name there:
and the name of his mother,
Naamah — an *Ammoniyth*.
22 And *Yah Hudah* works evil in the eyes of *Yah Veh*;
and they make him jealous with the sins they sin
— above all their fathers worked:
23 and they — they also built *bamahs*
and *monoliths* and *asherim*
on every high hill and under every green tree:
24 and there are also
hallowed whoremongers in the land
who work according

1 KINGS 14, 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

to all the abominations **abhorrences** of the *nations* **goyim**
which *the LORD* cast out **Yah Veh dispossessed**
before **at the face** of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
25 And **so be** it came to pass,
in the fifth year of *king Rehoboam* **sovereign Rechab Am**,
that *Shishak king* **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
came up **ascended** against *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
26 And he took away the treasures
of the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and the treasures of the *king's* **sovereign's** house;
he even took away all:
and he took away all the *shields* **bucklers** of gold
which *Solomon* **Shelomoh** had **made worked**.
27 And *king Rehoboam* **sovereign Rechab Am**
made worked in their stead
brasen shields **copper bucklers**,
and **committed oversaw** them
unto the hands of the *chief* **governor** of the *guard* **runners**,
which **kept guarded** the *door* **portal**
of the *king's* **sovereign's** house.
28 And it was **so became**, when the *king* **sovereign**
went into the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that the *guard* **runners** bare them,
and **brought turned** them back
into the *guard* **runners** chamber.
29 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**,
and all that he **did worked**,
are they not **written inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**?
30 And there was war
between *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**
and **between Jeroboam Yarob Am** all *their* days.
31 And *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**
slept laid with his fathers,
and was **buried entombed** with his fathers
in the city of David.
And his mother's name was Naamah
an *Ammonitess* **Ammoniyth**.
And *Abijam* **Abi Yam** his son reigned in his stead.

THE REIGN OF ABI YAM OVER YAH HUDAH

15

Now in the eighteenth year
of *king Jeroboam* **sovereign Yarob Am** the son of *Nebat*
reigned *Abijam* **Abi Yam** over *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
2 Three years reigned he in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
and his mother's name was Maachah,
the daughter of *Abishalom* **Abi Shalom**.
3 And he walked in all the sins of his father,
which he had **done before him worked at his face**:
and his heart was not **perfect at shalom**
with *the LORD* **Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim**,
as the heart of David his father.
4 Nevertheless for David's sake
did the LORD **Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim**
give gave him a lamp in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
to **set up raise** his son after him,
and to **establish Jerusalem** **station Yeru Shalem**:
5 Because David **did worked** that which was **right straight**
in the eyes of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and turned not aside from **any thing all**
that he **commanded misvahed** him all the days of his life,
save only
in the *matter* **word** of *Uriah* **Uri Yah** the *Hittite* **Hethiy**.
6 And there was war
between *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**
and **between Jeroboam Yarob Am**
all the days of his life.
7 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Abijam* **Abi Yam**,
and all that he **did worked**,
are they not **written inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**?
And there was war
between *Abijam* **Abi Yam** and **between Jeroboam Yarob Am**.
8 And *Abijam* **Abi Yam** **slept laid** with his fathers;
and they **buried entombed** him in the city of David:
and Asa his son reigned in his stead.

1 SOVEREIGNS 14, 15584

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to all the abhorrences of the goyim
whom Yah Veh dispossessed
at the face of the sons of Yisra El.
25 And so be it,
in the fifth year of sovereign Rechab Am,
Shishak sovereign of Misrayim
ascends against Yeru Shalem:
26 and takes the treasures of the house of Yah Veh
and the treasures of the house of the sovereign:
he even takes all:
and he takes all the bucklers of gold
Shelomoh worked:
27 and in their stead
sovereign Rechab Am works copper bucklers
and oversees
the hands of the governor of the runners,
who guard the portal of the house of the sovereign:
28 and so be it,
the sovereign goes to the house of Yah Veh
and the runners bear them
and return them to the runners chamber.
29 And the rest of the words of Rechab Am
and all he worked,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah?
30 And so be it,
war between Rechab Am and between Yarob Am
all days.
31 And Rechab Am lies down with his fathers
— entombed with his fathers in the city of David.
And the name of his mother,
Naamah — an Ammoniyth.
— and Abi Yam his son reigns in his stead.

THE REIGN OF ABI YAM OVER YAH HUDAH

15

And in the eighteenth year
of sovereign Yarob Am the son of Nebat
Abi Yam reigns over Yah Hudah:
2 he reigns three years in Yeru Shalem:
and the name of his mother,
Maachah the daughter of Abi Shalom.
3 And he walks in all the sins
his father worked at his face:
and his heart is not at shalom
with Yah Veh his Elohim
as the heart of David his father:
4 but for sake of David
Yah Veh his Elohim gives him a lamp in Yeru Shalem
— to raise his son after him
and to station Yeru Shalem:
5 because David
worked straight in the eyes of Yah Veh
and turned not aside from all he misvahed him
all the days of his life,
6 except only, in the word of Uri Yah the Hethiy:
and so be it,
war between Rechab Am and between Yarob Am
all the days of his life.
7 And the rest of the words of Abi Yam
and all he worked,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah?
And so be it,
war between Abi Yam and between Yarob Am:
8 and Abi Yam lies down with his fathers;
and they entomb him in the city of David:
and Asa his son reigns in his stead.

1 KINGS 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE REIGN OF ASA OVER YAH HUDAH

9 And in the twentieth year of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*,
king **sovereign** of *Israel Yisra El*
reigned *Asa over Judah Yah Hudah*.
10 And forty and one years reigned he
in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
And his mother's name was *Maachah*,
the daughter of *Abishalom Abi Shalom*.
11 And *Asa did worked* that which was *right straight*
in the eyes of *the LORD Yah Veh*, as *did* David his father.
12 And he *took passed away*
the *sodomites hallowed whoremongers* out of the land,
and *removed turned aside* all the idols
that his fathers had *made worked*.
13 And also *Maachah his mother*,
even her he *removed turned aside* from being *queen lady*,
because she had *made worked* an idol of awe
in a *grove an asherah*;
and *Asa destroyed cut off* her idol of awe,
and burnt it by the *brook Kidron wadi Qidron*.
14 But the *high places bamahs*
were not *removed turned aside*:
nevertheless *Asa's heart was perfect at shalom*
with *the LORD Yah Veh* all his days.
15 And he brought in
the *things which holies* of his father *had dedicated*,
and
the *things which himself had dedicated his own holies*,
into the house of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
silver, and gold, and *vessels instruments*.
16 And there was war between *Asa*
and *Baasha king Basha sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*
all their days.
17 And *Baasha king Basha sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*
went up *ascended* against *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and built *Ramah*,
that he might not *suffer give* any to go out or come in
to *Asa king sovereign* of *Judah Yah Hudah*.
18 Then *Asa took* all the silver and the gold
that were *left remained* in the treasures
of the house of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
and the treasures of the *king's sovereign's* house,
and *delivered gave* them into the hand of his servants:
and *king sovereign Asa*
sent them to *Benhadad Ben Hadad*,
the son of *Tabrimon Tab Rimon*,
the son of *Hezion Hezyon*,
king sovereign of *Syria Aram*,
that *dwelt settled* at *Damascus Dammeseq*, saying,
19 There is a *league covenant* between me
and *between* thee,
and between my father and *between* thy father: behold,
I have sent unto thee a *present bribe* of silver and gold;
come and break thy *league covenant*
with *Baasha king Basha sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*,
that he may *depart ascend* from me.
20 So *Benhadad Ben Hadad*
hearkened unto *king sovereign Asa*,
and sent the *captains governors* of the *hosts valiant*
which he had against the cities of *Israel Yisra El*,
and smote *Ijon Iyon*, and *Dan*,
and *Abelbethmaachah Abel Beth Maachah*,
and all *Cinneroth Kinneroth*, with all the land of *Naphtali*.
21 And *so be* it came to pass,
when *Baasha Basha* heard thereof,
that he *left off ceased* building of *Ramah*,
and *dwelt settled* in *Tirzah Tirsah*.
22 Then *king sovereign Asa*
made a proclamation throughout all Judah
had all Yah Hudah hear;
none was *exempted exonerated*:
and they *took away lifted* the stones of *Ramah*,
and the timber thereof,
wherewith *Baasha Basha* had builded;
and *king sovereign Asa* built with them
Geba of Benjamin Ben Yamin, and *Mizpah Mispah*.
23 The rest of all the *acts words* of *Asa*, and all his might,
and all that he *did worked*, and the cities which he built,

1 SOVEREIGNS 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE REIGN OF ASA OVER YAH HUDAH

9 And in the twentieth year
of *Yarob Am sovereign* of *Yisra El*
Asa reigns over *Yah Hudah*:
10 and he reigns forty—one years in *Yeru Shalem*.
And the name of his mother,
Maachah the daughter of *Abi Shalom*.
11 And *Asa works straight* in the eyes of *Yah Veh*
as *David his father*:
12 and he passes the *hallowed whoremongers*
from the land,
and turns aside all the idols his fathers worked:
13 and also turns aside his mother *Maachah*
from being lady,
because she worked an idol of awe in an *asherah*;
and *Asa cuts off* her idol of awe
and burns it by the *wadi Qidron*:
14 and the *bamahs* are not turned aside:
only, the heart of *Asa* is at *shalom* with *Yah Veh*
all his days:
15 and he brings in the *holies* of his father
and his own *holies*
to the house of *Yah Veh*
— silver and gold and instruments.
16 And so be it, war between *Asa*
and between *Basha sovereign* of *Yisra El*
all their days:
17 and *Basha sovereign* of *Yisra El*
ascends against *Yah Hudah* and builds *Ramah*
that he gives no one to go or to come
to *Asa sovereign* of *Yah Hudah*:
18 and *Asa takes* all the silver and the gold
remaining in the treasures of the house of *Yah Veh*,
and the treasures of the house of the sovereign,
and gives them to the hand of his servants:
and *sovereign Asa*
sends them to *Ben Hadad* the son of *Tab Rimon*
the son of *Hezyon sovereign* of *Aram*;
who settles at *Dammeseq*, saying,
19 There is a covenant between me and between you,
and between my father and between your father:
behold, I sent you a bribe of silver and gold;
come and break your covenant
with *Basha sovereign* of *Yisra El*,
so that he ascends from me.
20 So *Ben Hadad* hearkens unto *sovereign Asa*,
and sends the governors of his valiant
against the cities of *Yisra El*;
and smites *Iyon* and *Dan* and *Abel Beth Maachah*
and all *Kinneroth* with all the land of *Naphtali*.
21 And so be it, *Basha* hears,
and he ceases building *Ramah* and settles in *Tirsah*.
22 Then *sovereign Asa* has all *Yah Hudah* hear
— none is exonerated:
and they lift the stones of *Ramah*,
and the timber wherewith *Basha* built;
and with them,
sovereign Asa builds *Geba* of *Ben Yamin* and *Mispah*.
23 The rest of all the words of *Asa*, and all his might,
and all he worked, and the cities he built,

1 KINGS 15, 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

are they not written **inscribed** in the *book scroll*
of the *chronicles words of the days*
of the *kings sovereigns of Judah Yah Hudah?*
Nevertheless in the time of his old age
he was *diseased sick* in his feet.
24 And Asa *slept laid* with his fathers,
and was *buried entombed* with his fathers
in the city of David his father:
and *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat* his son reigned in his stead.
THE REIGN OF NADAB OVER YAH HUDAH
25 And Nadab the son of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*
began to reign reigned over *Israel Yisra El*
in the second year of Asa
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and reigned over *Israel Yisra El* two years.
26 And he *did worked* evil
in the *sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh*,
and walked in the way of his father,
and in his sin wherewith he made *Israel Yisra El* to sin.
27 And *Baasha Basha* the son of *Ahijah Achiy Yah*,
of the house of *Issachar Yissachar*, conspired against him;
and *Baasha Basha* smote him at Gibbethon,
which *belonged was* to the *Philistines Peleshethiy*;
for Nadab and all *Israel Yisra El*
28 *laid siege to besieged* Gibbethon.
Even in the third year of Asa
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*
did Baasha slay Basha deathified him,
and reigned in his stead.
29 And **so be** it *came to pass*, when he reigned,
that he smote all the house of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*;
he left not to *Jeroboam Yarob Am* any **survivors**
that *breathed hath breath*,
until he had *destroyed desolated* him,
according unto the *saying word of the LORD Yah Veh*,
which he *spake worded* by **the hand** of his servant
Ahijah Achiy Yah the *Shilonite Shilohiy*:
30 Because of the sins of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*
which he sinned,
and which he made *Israel Yisra El* sin,
by his *provocation vexation*
wherewith he *provoked vexed*
the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of *Israel Yisra El* to anger.
31 Now the rest of the *acts words* of Nadab,
and all that he *did worked*,
are they not written **inscribed** in the *book scroll*
of the *chronicles words of the days*
of the *kings sovereigns* of *Israel Yisra El*?
32 And there was war between Asa
and *Baasha king Basha sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*
all their days.
THE REIGN OF BASHA OVER YISRA EL
33 In the third year of Asa
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*
began *Baasha Basha* the son of *Ahijah Achiy Yah*
to reign over all *Israel Yisra El* in *Tirzah Tirsah*,
twenty and four years.
34 And he *did worked* evil
in the *sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh*,
and walked in the way of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*,
and in his sin
wherewith he made *Israel Yisra El* to sin.
16 Then the word of *the LORD Yah Veh*
came to *Jehu Yah Hu*
the son of Hanani against *Baasha Basha*, saying,
2 Forasmuch as I exalted thee out of the dust,
and *made gave* thee **prince eminence**
over my people *Israel Yisra El*;
and thou hast walked in the way of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*,
and hast made my people *Israel Yisra El* to sin,
to *provoke vex* me to anger with their sins;
3 Behold, I *will take shall burn* away
the posterity of *Baasha Basha*,
and the posterity of his house;
and *will make shall give* thy house
like the house of *Jeroboam Yarob Am* the son of Nebat.
4 Him that dieth of *Baasha Basha* in the city
shall the dogs eat **devour**;

1 SOVEREIGNS 15, 16586

exeGesés companion BIBLE

are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah?
Only, in the time of his old age
he was sick in his feet:
24 and Asa lies down with his fathers
and is entombed with his fathers
in the city of David his father:
and Yah Shaphat his son reigns in his stead.
THE REIGN OF NADAB OVER YAH HUDAH
25 And Nadab the son of Yarob Am
reigns over Yisra El
in the second year of Asa sovereign of Yah Hudah;
and reigns over Yisra El two years:
26 and he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh;
and walks in the way of his father
and in his sin wherewith he has Yisra El sin.
27 And Basha the son of Achiy Yah
of the house of Yissachar
conspires against him;
and Basha smites him at Gibbethon
which is to the Peleshethiy;
and Nadab and all Yisra El besiege Gibbethon.
28 Yes, Basha deathifies him
in the third year of Asa sovereign of Yah Hudah
and reigns in his stead.
29 And so be it, he reigns,
and he smites all the house of Yarob Am;
he leaves Yarob Am no survivors to breathe
until he desolates him
according unto the word
Yah Veh worded by the hand of his servant
Achiy Yah the Shilohiy:
30 because of the sins Yarob Am sins,
and which he has Yisra El sin;
by his vexation
whereby he vexes Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El.
31 And the rest of the words of Nadab
and all he worked,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El?
32 And so be it, war between Asa
and between Basha sovereign of Yisra El
all their days.
THE REIGN OF BASHA OVER YISRA EL
33 In the third year of Asa sovereign of Yah Hudah
Basha the son of Achiy Yah
begins to reign over all Yisra El in Tirsah
— twenty—four years:
34 and he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh
and walks in the way of Yarob Am
and in his sin which he has Yisra El sin.
16 And so be it, a word of Yah Veh
comes to Yah Hu the son of Hanani
against Basha, saying,
2 Because I exalted you from the dust
and gave you eminence over my people Yisra El;
and you walk in the way of Yarob Am
and have my people Yisra El sin
— to vex me with their sins:
3 behold, I burn away the posterity of Basha,
and the posterity of his house;
and give your house
as the house of Yarob Am the son of Nebat.
4 He of Basha who dies in the city,
the dogs devour;

1 KINGS 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and him that dieth of his in the fields
shall the *fowls* **flyers** of the *air* eat **heavens devour**.
5 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Baasha* **Basha**,
and what he *did* **worked**, and his might,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
6 So *Baasha* **slept** **Basha** **laid** with his fathers,
and was *buried* **entombed** in *Tirzah* **Tirsah**:
and Elah his son reigned in his stead.
7 And also by the hand of the prophet
Jehu **Yah Hu** the son of Hanani
came the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
against *Baasha* **Basha**, and against his house,
even for all the evil that he *did* **worked**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
in *provoking* **vexing** him to *anger*
with the work of his hands,
in being like the house of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**;
and because he *killed* **smote** him.
THE REIGN OF ELAH OVER YISRA EL
8 In the twenty and sixth year
of Asa *king* **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
began Elah the son of *Baasha* **Basha**
to reign over *Israel* **Yisra El** in *Tirzah* **Tirsah**, two years.
9 And his servant Zimri,
captain **governor** of half his chariots,
conspired against him, as he was in *Tirzah* **Tirsah**,
drinking himself *drunk* **intoxicated**
in the house of *Arza* **Arsa**
steward of *his* **the** house in *Tirzah* **Tirsah**.
10 And Zimri went in and smote him,
and *killed* **deathified** him,
in the twenty and seventh year of Asa
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and reigned in his stead.
11 And **so be** it *came to pass*, when he began to reign,
as soon as he *sat* **settled** on his throne,
that he *slew* **smote** all the house of *Baasha* **Basha**:
he *left* **him** **let survive**
not one that *pisseth* **urinatheth** against a wall,
neither of his *kinsfolks* **redeemers**, nor of his friends.
12 Thus did Zimri
destroy **desolate** all the house of *Baasha* **Basha**,
according to the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which he *spake* **worded** against *Baasha* **Basha**
by *Jehu* **the hand of Yah Hu** the prophet.
13 For all the sins of *Baasha* **Basha**,
and the sins of Elah his son,
by which they sinned,
and by which they made *Israel* **Yisra El** to sin,
in *provoking* **vexing**
the LORD **God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El** to *anger*
with their vanities.
14 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of Elah,
and all that he *did* **worked**,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
THE REIGN OF ZIMRI OVER YISRA EL
15 In the twenty and seventh year of Asa
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
did Zimri reign seven days in *Tirzah* **Tirsah**.
And the people were encamped against Gibbethon,
which *belonged* **be** to the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
16 And the people that were encamped heard say,
Zimri hath conspired,
and hath also *slain* **smitten** the *king* **sovereign**:
wherefore all *Israel* **Yisra El** made Omri,
the *captain* **governor** of the host,
king **reign** over *Israel* **Yisra El** that day in the camp.
17 And Omri *went up* **ascended** from Gibbethon,
and all *Israel* **Yisra El** with him,
and they besieged *Tirzah* **Tirsah**.
18 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when Zimri saw that the city was *taken* **captured**,
that he went
into the *palace* **citadel** of the *king's* **sovereign's** house,

1 SOVEREIGNS 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and he of his who dies in the fields,
the flyers of the heavens devour.
5 And the rest of the words of Basha
and what he worked and his might;
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El?
6 And Basha lies down with his fathers
— entombed in Tirsah:
and Elah his son reigns in his stead.
7 And so be it,
by the hand of the prophet Yah Hu the son of Hanani
the word of Yah Veh
comes against Basha and against his house
for all the evil he works in the eyes of Yah Veh
— in vexing him with the work of his hands
in being as the house of Yarob Am;
and because he smote him.
THE REIGN OF ELAH OVER YISRA EL
8 In the twenty—sixth year
of Asa sovereign of Yah Hudah
Elah the son of Basha
begins to reign over Yisra El in Tirsah, two years:
and his servant Zimri
governor of half his chariots
conspires against him as he is in Tirsah
— drinking himself intoxicated in the house of Arsa
the steward of the house in Tirsah:
and Zimri goes in and smites him
and deathifies him in the twenty—seventh year
of Asa sovereign of Yah Hudah;
and he reigns in his stead.
11 And so be it, he begins to reign;
and as soon as he settles on his throne
he smites all the house of Basha
so that not one who urinates against a wall survives
— neither of his redeemers nor of his friends:
thus Zimri desolates all the house of Basha;
according to the word Yah Veh worded against Basha
by the hand of Yah Hu the prophet:
for all the sins of Basha and the sins of Elah his son
which they sin;
and by which they have Yisra El sin;
in vexing Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
with their vanities.
14 And the rest of the words of Elah,
and all he works,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El?
THE REIGN OF ZIMRI OVER YISRA EL
15 In the twenty—seventh year of Asa
sovereign of Yah Hudah
Zimri reigns seven days in Tirsah.
And the people encamp against Gibbethon
who are to the Peleshethiy.
16 And the people who encamp hear say,
Zimri conspired and smote the sovereign:
wherefore all Yisra El
has Omri become the governor of the host
— to reign over Yisra El that day in the camp:
and Omri ascends from Gibbethon with all Yisra El
and they besiege Tirsah:
18 and so be it, Zimri sees the city captured,
and he goes to the citadel
of the house of the sovereign,

1 KINGS 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and burnt the *king's* **sovereign's** house over him with fire,
and died.

19 For his sins which he sinned in *doing* **working** evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
in walking in the way of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**,
and in his sin which he *did* **worked**,
to make *Israel* **Yisra El** to sin.

20 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of Zimri,
and his *treason* **conspiracy** that he *wrought* **conspired**,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?

THE REIGN OF OMRI OVER YISRA EL

21 Then were the people of *Israel* **Yisra El**
divided **allotted** into two parts:
half of the people *followed* **were after** Tibni
the son of Ginath, to make him *king* **reign**;
and half *followed* **were after** Omri.

22 But the people that *followed* **were after** Omri
prevailed against the people
that *followed* **were after** Tibni the son of Ginath:
so Tibni died, and Omri reigned.

23 In the thirty and first year of Asa
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
began Omri to reign over *Israel* **Yisra El**, twelve years:
six years reigned he in *Tirzah* **Tirsah**.

24 And he *bought* **chatted**
the *hill* **Samaria** **mount Shomeron**
of Shemer for two *talents* **rounds** of silver,
and built on the *hill* **mount**,
and called the name of the city which he built,
after the name of Shemer,
owner **adoni** of the *hill* **mount**, *Samaria* **Shomeron**.

25 But Omri *wrought* **worked** evil
in the eyes of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *did* **worse vilified**
than that were before him **above all at their face**.

26 For he walked in all the way of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
the son of Nebat,
and in his sin wherewith he made *Israel* **Yisra El** to sin,
to *provoke* **vex**
the *LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El** to anger
with their vanities.

27 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of Omri
which he *did* **worked**,
and his might that he *shewed* **worked**,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?

28 So Omri *slept* **laid** with his fathers,
and was *buried* **entombed** in *Samaria* **Shomeron**:
and *Ahab* **Ach Ab** his son reigned in his stead.

THE REIGN OF ACH AB OVER YISRA EL

29 And in the thirty and eighth year of Asa
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
began *Ahab* **Ach Ab** the son of Omri
to reign over *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and *Ahab* **Ach Ab** the son of Omri
reigned over *Israel* **Yisra El** in *Samaria* **Shomeron**
twenty and two years.

30 And *Ahab* **Ach Ab** the son of Omri *did* **worked** evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
above all that were *before him* **at his face**.

31 And *so be* it came to pass,
as if it had been a *light thing* **trifle**
for him to walk in the sins of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
the son of Nebat,

that he took to *wife* **woman**
Jezebel **Iy Zebel** the daughter of *Ethbaal* **Eth Baal**
king **sovereign** of the *Zidonians* **Sidoni**,
and went and served Baal,
and *worshipped* **prostrated** to him.

32 And he *reared up* **raised a sacrifice** altar for Baal
in the house of Baal,
which he had built in *Samaria* **Shomeron**.

33 And *Ahab* **made a grove** **Ach Ab** **worked an asherah**;
and *Ahab* **did more** **Ach Ab** **added to work**

1 SOVEREIGNS 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and burns the house of the sovereign over himself
with fire,
and he dies

19 for the sins he sins in working evil
in the eyes of Yah Veh
— in walking in the way of Yarob Am
and in the sin he works to have Yisra El sin.

20 And the rest of the words of Zimri
and the conspiracy he conspired:
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El?

THE REIGN OF OMRI OVER YISRA EL

21 Then the people of Yisra El allot in two parts:
half of the people after Tibni the son of Ginath
to have him reign;
and half after Omri:
and the people after Omri prevail
against the people after Tibni the son of Ginath:
so Tibni dies and Omri reigns.

23 In the thirty—first year
of Asa sovereign of Yah Hudah
Omri begins to reign over Yisra El, twelve years:
he reigns six years in Tirsah:

24 and he chattels mount Shomeron of Shemer
for two rounds of silver;
and builds on the mount
and calls the name of the city he builds
after the name of Shemer adoni of the mount,
Shomeron.

25 And Omri works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh
and vilifies above all at their face:

26 for he walks in all the way
of Yarob Am the son of Nebat
and in his sin whereby he has Yisra El sin
— to vex Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
with their vanities.

27 And the rest of the words Omri works
and the might he works;
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El?

28 And Omri lies down with his fathers
— entombed in Shomeron:
and Ach Ab his son reigns in his stead.

THE REIGN OF ACH AB OVER YISRA EL

29 And in the thirty—eighth year
of Asa sovereign of Yah Hudah,
Ach Ab the son of Omri
begins to reign over Yisra El:
and Ach Ab the son of Omri
reigns over Yisra El in Shomeron
twenty—two years.

30 And Ach Ab the son of Omri
works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh
above all at his face.

31 And so be it,
as trifling for him to walk in the sins
of Yarob Am the son of Nebat,
he takes to woman Iy Zebel
the daughter of Eth Baal sovereign of the Sidoni;
and goes and serves Baal and prostrates to him:

32 and he raises a sacrifice altar for Baal
in the house of Baal he builds in Shomeron:
33 and Ach Ab works an asherah;
and Ach Ab adds to work

1 KINGS 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

to provoke vex

the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El** to anger
than all the **kings sovereigns** of Israel **Yisra El**
that were before him **at their face**.

34 In his days did **Hiel Hi El** the **Bethelite Beth Eliy**
build **Jericho Yericho**:
he laid the foundation thereof
in **Abiram Abi Ram** his **firstborn firstbirthed**,
and set up **stationed** the **gates doors** thereof
in his **youngest lesser son** Segub,
according to the word of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
which he spake **worded**
by **Joshua the hand of Yah Shua** the son of Nun.

RAVENS SUSTAIN ELI YAH

17

And **Elijah Eli Yah** the **Tishbite Tisbehly**,
who was of the **inhabitants settlers** of **Gilead Gilad**,
said unto **Ahab Ach Ab**,

As the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El** liveth,
before whom **at whose face** I stand,
there shall not be dew nor rain these years,
but according to my **word mouth**.

2 And the word of the LORD **Yah Veh** came unto him,
saying,

3 Get thee **Go** hence, and turn **face** thee eastward,
and hide thyself by the **brook Cherith wadi Kerith**,
that is before **Jordan at the face of Yarden**.

4 And **so be** it shall be, that thou shalt drink of the **brook wadi**;
and I have **commanded misvahed** the ravens
to **feed sustain** thee there.

5 So he went and **did worked**
according unto the word of the LORD **Yah Veh**:
for he went and **dwelt settled**
by the **brook Cherith wadi Kerith**,
that is before **Jordan at the face of Yarden**.

6 And the ravens brought him
bread and flesh in the morning,
and bread and flesh in the evening;
and he drank of the **brook wadi**.

7 And **so be** it came to pass,
after a while **at the end of days**,
that the **brook dried up wadi withered**,
because there had been no rain in the land.

8 And the word of the LORD **Yah Veh** came unto him,
saying,

9 Arise, get thee **go** to **Zarephath Sarephath**,
which **belongeth be** to **Zidon Sidon**,
and **dwelt settle** there: behold,
I have **commanded misvahed** a widow woman there
to sustain thee.

10 So he arose and went to **Zarephath Sarephath**.
And when he came to the **gate portal** of the city, behold,
the widow woman was there gathering of **sticks timber**:
and he called to her, and said,

11 Fetch **Take** me, I **pray beseech** thee,
a little water in a vessel **an instrument**, that I may drink.

11 And as she was going to **fetch take** it,
he called to her, and said,
Bring **Take** me, I **pray beseech** thee,
a morsel of bread in thine hand.

12 And she said,
As the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim** liveth,
I have not a **cake no bakings**,
but an **handful a palmful** of **meal flour** in a **barrel pitcher**,
and a little oil in a cruse: and, behold,
I am gathering two **sticks timbers**,
that I may go in and **dress work** it for me and my son,
that we may eat it, and die.

13 And **Elijah Eli Yah** said unto her, **Fear Awe** not;
go and **do work** as thou hast **said worded**:
but **make work** me thereof a little **cake ashcake** first,
and bring it unto me,
and after **make work** for thee and for thy son.

14 For thus saith
the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**,
The **barrel pitcher** of **meal flour** shall not **waste finish**,
neither shall the cruse of oil **fail lack**,
until the day that the LORD **sendeth Yah Veh giveth** rain
upon the **earth face of the soil**.

1 SOVEREIGNS 16, 17589

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to vex Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El

above all the sovereigns of Yisra El at their face.

34 In his days Hi El the Beth Eliy builds Yericho:
he lays the foundation in Abi Ram his firstbirthed
and stations the doors in his lesser Segub;
according to the word Yah Veh words
by the hand of Yah Shua the son of Nun.

RAVENS SUSTAIN ELI YAH

17

And Eli Yah the Tisbehly of the settlers of Gilad,
says to Ach Ab,
Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El lives,
at whose face I stand,
neither dew nor rain becomes these years,
except as according to my mouth.

2 And the word of Yah Veh comes to him, saying,
3 Go from here and face eastward
and hide yourself by the wadi Kerith
at the face of Yarden:
4 and so be it, drink of the wadi;
and I misvah the ravens to sustain you there.

5 So he goes and works
according to the word of Yah Veh:
he goes and settles by the wadi Kerith
at the face of Yarden:
6 and the ravens bring him
bread and flesh in the morning
and bread and flesh in the evening;
and he drinks of the wadi:
7 and so be it, at the end of days, the wadi withers,
there being no rain in the land.

8 And so be the word of Yah Veh to him, saying,
9 Rise, go to Sarephath, Sidon and settle there:
behold,
I misvah a widow woman there to sustain you.

10 So he rises and goes to Sarephath:
and he comes to the portal of the city
and behold, the widow woman gathers timber:
and he calls to her, and says,
Take me, I beseech you,
a little water in an instrument, to drink.

11 And she goes to take it, and he calls to her,
and says, Take me, I beseech you,
a morsel of bread in your hand.

12 And she says, Yah Veh your Elohim lives,
I have no bakings
except a palmful of flour in a pitcher
and a little oil in a cruse:
and behold, I gather two timbers
to go in and work for me and my son to eat
— and die.

13 And Eli Yah says to her, Awe not!
Go and work as you worded:
but first, work me a little ashcake and bring it to me;
and after, work for you and for your son:
14 for thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
Neither the pitcher of flour finishes off
nor the cruse of oil lack
until the day Yah Veh gives rain
on the face of the soil.

1 KINGS 17, 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 And she went and *did worked* according to the *saying word* of *Elijah Eli Yah*: and she, and he, and her house, did eat *many* days.

16 And the *barrel pitcher* of *meal flour* *wasted finished* not, neither did the cruse of oil *fail lack*, according to the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*, which he *spake worded* by *Elijah the hand* of *Eli Yah*.

ELI YAH ENLIVENS THE SON OF THE WIDOW

17 And *so be* it *came to pass*, after these *things words*, that the son of the woman, the *mistress baalah* of the house, fell sick; and his sickness was *so sore mighty strong*, that *there was remained* no breath *left* in him.

18 And she said unto *Elijah Eli Yah*, What have I to do with thee, O thou man of *God Elohim*? art thou come unto me to call my *sin perversity* to remembrance, and to *slay deathify* my son?

19 And he said unto her, Give me thy son. And he took him out of her bosom, and *carried ascended* him *up* into a *loft an upper room*, where he *abode settled*, and laid him upon his own bed.

20 And he *cried called out* unto the *LORD Yah Veh*, and said, O *LORD Yah Veh* my *God Elohim*, hast thou also *brought evil upon vilified* the widow with whom I sojourn, by *slaying deathifying* her son?

21 And he *stretched measured* himself upon the child three times, and *cried called out* unto the *LORD Yah Veh*, and said, O *LORD Yah Veh* my *God Elohim*, I *pray beseech* thee, let this child's soul *come return* into *him again his inwards*.

22 And the *LORD Yah Veh* heard the voice of *Elijah Eli Yah*; and the soul of the child *came returned* into *him again his inwards*, and he *revived lived*.

23 And *Elijah Eli Yah* took the child, and *brought descended* him *down* out of the *chamber upper room* into the house, and *delivered gave* him unto his mother: and *Elijah Eli Yah* said, See, thy son liveth.

24 And the woman said to *Elijah Eli Yah*, Now by this I know that thou art a man of *God Elohim*, and that the word of the *LORD Yah Veh* in thy mouth is truth.

ELI YAH AND OBAD YAH

18 And *so be* it *came to pass*, after many days, that the word of the *LORD Yah Veh* came to *Elijah Eli Yah* in the third year, saying,
Go, *shew thyself unto Ahab be seen by Ach Ab*; and I *will send shall give* rain upon the *earth face of the soil*.

2 And *Elijah Eli Yah* went to *shew himself unto Ahab be seen of Ach Ab*. And there was a *sore strong* famine in *Samaria Shomeron*.

3 And *Ahab Ach Ab* called *Obadiah Obad Yah*, which was the governor of *his the* house. (Now *Obadiah Obad Yah* *feared the LORD greatly awed Yah Veh mightily*;

4 For it was *so became*, when *Jezebel Iy Zebel* cut off the prophets of the *LORD Yah Veh*, that *Obadiah Obad Yah* took an hundred prophets, and hid them by fifty *men* in a cave, and *fed sustained* them with bread and water.)

5 And *Ahab Ach Ab* said unto *Obadiah Obad Yah*, Go into the land, unto all fountains of water, and unto all *brooks wadies*: *peradventure perhaps* we may find *grass leeks* to save the horses and mules alive, that we *lose not cut off* all the *beasts animals*.

6 So they *divided allotted* the land between them to pass throughout it: *Ahab Ach Ab* went one way by himself, and *Obadiah Obad Yah* went *another one* way by himself.

7 And as *Obadiah Obad Yah* was in the way, behold,

1 SOVEREIGNS 17, 18590

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 And she goes and works according to the word of *Eli Yah*: and she and he and her house, eat for days: and neither the pitcher of flour finishes off nor the cruse of oil lacks; according to the word *Yah Veh* worded by the hand of *Eli Yah*.

ELI YAH ENLIVENS THE SON OF THE WIDOW

17 And so be it, after these words, the son of the woman, the *baalah* of the house, falls sick; and his sickness is mighty strong, no breath remains in him.

18 And she says to *Eli Yah*, What have I to do with you, O you man of *Elohim*? Come you to me to call my perversity to remembrance and to deathify my son?

19 And he says to her, Give me your son.

20 And he takes him from her bosom and ascends him into an upper room where he settles and lays him down on his own bed: and he calls to *Yah Veh* and says, O *Yah Veh* my *Elohim*, vilify you the widow with whom I sojourn by deathifying her son?

21 And he measures himself on the child three times and calls to *Yah Veh* and says, O *Yah Veh* my *Elohim*, I beseech you, return the soul of this child into his inwards.

22 And *Yah Veh* hears the voice of *Eli Yah*; and he returns the soul of the child into his inwards and he lives.

23 And *Eli Yah* takes the child and descends him from the upper room in the house and gives him to his mother: and *Eli Yah* says, See, your son lives.

24 And the woman says to *Eli Yah*, Now this I know that you are a man of *Elohim* and that the word of *Yah Veh* in your mouth is truth.

ELI YAH AND OBAD YAH

18 And so be it, after many days, the word of *Yah Veh* comes to *Eli Yah* in the third year, saying, Go, be seen by *Ach Ab*; and I give rain on the face of the soil. — and *Eli Yah* goes and is seen by *Ach Ab*. — and the famine in *Shomeron* is strong.

3 And *Ach Ab* calls *Obad Yah* the governor of the house. — and *Obad Yah* awes *Yah Veh* mightily. And so be it, *Iy Zebel* cuts off the prophets of *Yah Veh*, and *Obad Yah* takes a hundred prophets and hides the men in a cave by fifties; and sustains them with bread and water.

5 And *Ach Ab* says to *Obad Yah*, Go to the land — to all fountains of water and to all wadies: perhaps we find leeks to save the horses and mules alive and not cut off all the animals.

6 So they allot the land between them to pass throughout it: *Ach Ab* goes one way by himself and *Obad Yah* goes one way by himself: and *Obad Yah* *is* in the way, and behold,

1 KINGS 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Elijah **Eli Yah** met him: and he *knew* **recognized** him,
and fell on his face, and said,
8 Art thou that my *lord* **Elijah adoni Eli Yah**?
And he *answered* **said to** him, I am:
go, *tell* **say to** thy *lord* **adoni**, Behold,
9 *Elijah Eli Yah* is here.
And he said, What have I sinned,
that thou *wouldest* **shouldest** deliver thy servant
into the hand of **Ahab Ach Ab**, to *slay* **deathify** me?
10 As the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim** liveth,
there is no *nation* **goyim** or *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
whither my *lord* **adoni** hath not sent to seek thee:
and when they said, *He is not there* **No**;
he *took an oath* **oathed**
of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** and *nation* **goyim**,
that they found thee not.
11 And now thou sayest, Go, *tell* **say to** thy *lord* **adoni**,
Behold, *Elijah Eli Yah* is here.
12 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
as *soon* as I am gone from thee,
that the Spirit of the **LORD Yah Veh** shall *carry lift* thee
whither I know not;
and so when I come and tell **Ahab Ach Ab**,
and he cannot find thee, he shall *slay* **slaughter** me:
but I thy servant
fear the LORD **awe Yah Veh** from my youth.
13 Was it not told my *lord* **adoni** what I *did* **worked**
when *Jezebel* **Iy Zebel**
slew **slaughtered** the prophets of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
how I hid an hundred men
of the **LORD'S Yah Veh's** prophets
by fifty **men** in a cave,
and *fed* **sustained** them with bread and water?
14 And now thou sayest, Go, *tell* **say to** thy *lord* **adoni**,
Behold, *Elijah Eli Yah* is here:
and he shall *slay* **slaughter** me.
15 And *Elijah Eli Yah* said,
As the **LORD** of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth** liveth,
before whom **at whose face** I stand,
I *will* **shall** surely *shew myself unto* **be seen by** him to day.
16 So *Obadiah* **Obad Yah** went to meet **Ahab Ach Ab**,
and told him:
and **Ahab Ach Ab** went to meet *Elijah Eli Yah*.
17 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when **Ahab Ach Ab** saw *Elijah Eli Yah*,
that **Ahab Ach Ab** said unto him,
Art thou he that troubleth *Israel* **Yisra El**?
18 And he *answered* **said**,
I have not troubled *Israel* **Yisra El**;
but thou, and thy father's house,
in that ye have forsaken
the *commandments* **misvoth** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and thou hast *followed* **walked after** Baalim.
19 Now therefore send,
and gather to me all *Israel* **Yisra El**
unto mount *Carmel* **Karmel**,
and the prophets of Baal four hundred and fifty,
and the prophets of the *groves* **asherim** four hundred,
which eat at *Jezebel's* **Iy Zebel's** table.
20 So **Ahab Ach Ab**
sent unto all the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and gathered the prophets
together unto mount *Carmel* **Karmel**.
21 And *Elijah Eli Yah* came **near** unto all the people,
and said,
How long *halt limp* ye *between* **divided in** two *opinions*?
if the **LORD Yah Veh** be *God* **Elohim**, *follow* **go after** him:
but if Baal, *then follow* **go after** him.
22 And the people answered him not a word.
Then said *Elijah Eli Yah* unto the people,
I, even I only, remain a prophet of the **LORD Yah Veh**;
but Baal's prophets are four hundred and fifty men.
23 Let them therefore give us two bullocks;
and let them choose one bullock for themselves,
and *cut* **dismember** it *in pieces*,
and *lay* **set** it on *wood* **timber**, and *put* **set** no fire *under*:
and I *will dress the other* **shall work one** bullock,
and *lay* **give** it on *wood* **timber**, and *put* **set** no fire *under*:

1 SOVEREIGNS 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Eli Yah meets him and he recognizes him
and falls on his face
and says, Are you he — my adoni Eli Yah?
8 And he says to him, I:
go, say to your adoni,
Behold, Eli Yah!
9 And he says, What have I sinned,
that you deliver your servant to the hand of Ach Ab,
to deathify me?
10 Yah Veh your Elohim lives,
there is no goyim or sovereigndom,
where my adoni has not sent to seek you:
and when they say, Not here!
— he has the sovereigndom and goyim oath
that they found you not.
11 And now you say, Go, say to your adoni,
Behold, Eli Yah:
12 and so be it, as I go from you,
the Spirit of Yah Veh lifts you — I know not where;
and when I come and tell Ach Ab,
and he finds you not, he slaughters me:
and your servant awes Yah Veh from my youth.
13 Has not my adoni been told what I worked;
when Iy Zebel slaughtered the prophets of Yah Veh;
how I hid a hundred men of the prophets of Yah Veh
— by fifty men in a cave
and sustained them with bread and water?
14 And now you say, Go, say to your adoni,
Behold, Eli Yah!
— and he slaughters me.
15 And Eli Yah says, Yah Veh Sabaoth lives,
at whose face I stand,
surely, today I am seen by him.
16 So Obad Yah goes to meet Ach Ab and tells him:
and Ach Ab goes to meet Eli Yah:
and so be it, Ach Ab sees Eli Yah,
and Ach Ab says to him,
Are you he who troubles Yisra El?
18 And he says, Not I who troubles Yisra El:
but you and the house of your father
in that you forsake the misvoth of Yah Veh
and walk after Baalim:
and now send;
gather all Yisra El to me to mount Karmel
and the prophets of Baal four hundred and fifty
and the prophets of the asherim four hundred
who eat at the table of Iy Zebel.
20 — and Ach Ab sends to all the sons of Yisra El
and gathers the prophets to mount Karmel.
21 And Eli Yah comes near all the people, and says,
How long limp you divided in two?
If Yah Veh be Elohim, go after him!
And if Baal, go after him!
— and the people answer him not a word.
22 Then Eli Yah says to the people,
I — I only, remain a prophet of Yah Veh;
but the prophets of Baal
are four hundred and fifty men:
have them give us two bullocks;
and they choose one bullock for themselves
and dismember it and set it on timber and set no fire:
and I work one bullock
and give it on timber and set no fire:

1 KINGS 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

24 And call ye on the name of your *gods* **elohim**,
and I *will* **shall** call on the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
and the *God* **elohim** that answereth by fire,
let him be *God* **Elohim**.
And all the people answered and said,
It is well spoken **Good word**.
25 And *Elijah* **Eli Yah** said unto the prophets of Baal,
Choose you one bullock for yourselves,
and *dress* **work** it first;
for ye are many;
and call on the name of your *gods* **elohim**,
but *put* **set** no fire *under*.
26 And they took the bullock
which was *given* **he gave** them,
and they *dressed* **worked** it,
and called on the name of Baal
from morning even until noon, saying,
O Baal, *hear* **answer** us.
But there was no voice, nor any that answered.
And they leaped upon the **sacrifice** altar
which was *made* **worked**.
27 And it *came to pass* **became** at noon,
that *Elijah* **Eli Yah** mocked them, and said,
Cry aloud **Call out with a great voice**:
for he is a *god* **elohim**;
either he *is talking* **meditateth**,
or he *is pursuing* **withdraweth**, or he is in a journey,
or *peradventure* **perhaps** he sleepeth,
and must be awaked.
28 And they *cried aloud* **called out with a great voice**,
and *cut* **incised** themselves after their *manner* **judgment**
with *knives* **swords** and *lancets* **javelins**,
till the blood *gushed* **poured** out upon them.
29 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when *midday* **noon** was past,
and they prophesied until *the time of*
the *offering* **holocaust** of the *evening sacrifice* **offering**,
that there was neither voice, nor any to answer,
nor any that *regarded* **hearkened**.
30 And *Elijah* **Eli Yah** said unto all the people,
Come near unto me.
And all the people came near unto him.
And he *repaired* **healed**
the **sacrifice** altar of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
that was *broken down* **demolished**.
31 And *Elijah* **Eli Yah** took twelve stones,
according to the number
of the *tribes* **scions** of the sons of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
unto whom the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** came, saying,
Israel **Yisra El** shall be thy name:
32 And with the stones he built *an* **a sacrifice** altar
in the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
and he *made* **worked** a *trench* **channel**
round about the **sacrifice** altar,
as great as would contain **to house**
two measures **seahs** of seed.
33 And he *put* **lined up** the wood **timber** *in order*,
and *cut* **dismembered** the bullock *in pieces*,
and *laid* **set** him on the wood **timber**, and said,
Fill four *barrels* **pitchers** with water,
and pour it on the *burnt sacrifice* **holocaust**,
and on the wood **timber**.
34 And he said, *Do it the second time* **Double**.
And they *did it the second time* **doubled**.
And he said, *Do it the third time* **Triple**.
And they *did it the third time* **tripled**.
35 And the water *ran* **went** round about the **sacrifice** altar;
and he filled the *trench* **channel** also with water.
36 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
at the *time of the offering* **holocaust**
of the *evening sacrifice* **offering**,
that *Elijah* **Eli Yah** the prophet came near, and said,
LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of Abraham,
Isaac **Yischaq**, and of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
let it be known this day
that thou art *God* **Elohim** in *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and that I am thy servant,
and that I have *done* **worked** all these *things* at thy word.

1 SOVEREIGNS 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

24 and you call on the name of your *elohim*
and I call on the name of *Yah Veh*:
and the *elohim* who answers by fire
— he is *Elohim*.
And all the people answer and say, *Good word*.
25 And *Eli Yah* says to the prophets of Baal,
Choose one bullock for yourselves and work it first;
for you are many;
and call on the name of your *elohim*, but set no fire.
26 And they take the bullock he gives them
and they work it;
and call on the name of Baal
from morning even until noon
saying, O Baal, answer us.
— and there is neither voice, nor answer:
and they leap on the sacrifice altar they worked.
27 And so be it, at noon, *Eli Yah* mocks them
and says, Call out with a great voice; for he is *elohim*:
either he meditates
or withdraws or journeys
or perhaps he sleeps and wakens.
28 And they call with a great voice
and incise themselves according to their judgment
with swords and javelins,
until blood pours over them:
29 and so be it, noon passes,
and they prophesy until the holocaust of the offering;
and there is neither voice nor any answering,
nor any hearkening.
30 And *Eli Yah* says to all the people,
Come near to me.
— and all the people come near him.
And he heals the sacrifice altar of *Yah Veh*
that is demolished:
31 and *Eli Yah* takes twelve stones
— according to the number
of the scions of the sons of *Yaaqov*,
— to whom the word of *Yah Veh* became
saying, *Yisra El* becomes your name:
32 and with the stones
he builds a sacrifice altar in the name of *Yah Veh*:
and he works a channel all around the sacrifice altar
to house two seahs of seed:
33 and he lines up the timber
and dismembers the bullock
and sets him on the timber
and says, Fill four pitchers with water
and pour it on the holocaust and on the timber.
34 And he says, *Double!*
— and they double.
And he says, *Triple!*
— and they triple.
35 And the water goes all around the sacrifice altar;
and he also fills the channel with water.
36 And so be it, at the holocaust of the offering,
Eli Yah the prophet comes near and says,
Yah Veh Elohim of Abraham, *Yischaq*, and *Yisra El*,
so be it known this day
that you are *Elohim* in *Yisra El*
and I your servant:
and by your word I work all these.

1 KINGS 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

37 Hear **Answer** me, O **LORD Yah Veh**, hear **answer** me,
that this people may know
that thou art *the LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim**,
and that thou hast turned their heart *back again* **backward**.
38 Then the fire of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** fell,
and consumed the *burnt sacrifice* **holocaust**,
and the *wood* **timber**, and the stones, and the dust,
and licked up the water that was in the *trench* **channel**.
39 And when all the people saw it, they fell on their faces:
and they said,
The LORD Yah Veh, he is *the God Elohim*;
the LORD Yah Veh, he is *the God Elohim*.
40 And *Elijah Eli Yah* said unto them,
Take **Apprehend** the prophets of Baal;
let not *one* a **man** of them escape.
And they *took* **apprehended** them:
and *Elijah brought* **Eli Yah descended** them *down*
to the *brook Kishon* **wadi Qishon**,
and *slew* **slaughtered** them there.
41 And *Elijah Eli Yah* said unto *Ahab Ach Ab*,
Get thee up **Ascend**, eat and drink;
for there is a *sound voice* of *abundance* **multitude** of rain.
42 So *Ahab went up* **Ach Ab ascended** to eat and to drink.
And *Elijah went up* **Eli Yah ascended**
to the top of *Carmel* **Karmel**;
and he *cast* **prostrated** himself *down* upon the earth,
and *put set* his face between his knees,
43 And said to his *servant lad*, *Go up* **Ascend** now,
look *toward* **the way** of the sea.
And he *went up* **ascended**, and looked, and said,
There is *nothing* **naught**.
44 And he said, *Go again* **Turn back** seven times.
And **so be** it *came to pass*,
at the seventh *time*, that he said, Behold,
there *ariseth* **ascendeth** a little **thick** cloud out of the sea,
like as a man's *hand* **palm**.
And he said, *Go up* **Ascend**, say unto *Ahab Ach Ab*,
Prepare **Bind** thy *chariot*,
and *get thee down* **descend**
that the rain *stop* **restrain** thee not.
45 And it *came to pass in the mean while* **became thus**,
that the *heaven was black* **heavens were darkened**
with **thick** clouds and wind, and there was a great rain.
And *Ahab Ach Ab* rode, and went to *Jezeel* **Yizre El**.
46 And the hand of *the LORD Yah Veh*
was on *Elijah Eli Yah*;
and he girded up his loins,
and ran *before Ahab* **at the face of Ach Ab**
to the entrance of *Jezeel* **Yizre El**.

ELI YAH FLEES FROM IY ZEBEL

19 And *Ahab Ach Ab* told *Jezebel Iy Zebel*
all that *Elijah Eli Yah* had *done* **worked**,
and withal how he had *slain* **slaughtered** all the prophets
with the sword.
2 Then *Jezebel Iy Zebel*
sent a *messenger* **an angel** unto *Elijah Eli Yah*, saying,
So let the *gods do* **elohim work** to me,
and *more* **add** also,
if I *make set* not thy *life soul* as the *life soul* of one of them
by to morrow about this time.
3 And when he saw that, he arose,
and went for his *life soul*,
and came to *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**,
which *belongeth be* to *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and *left set* his *servant lad* there.
4 But he himself went a day's journey into the wilderness,
and came and *sat down* **settled** under a **one** juniper tree:
and he *requested* **asked** for *himself* **his soul**
that he might die; and said, *It is* enough;
now, O **LORD Yah Veh**, take away my *life soul*;
for I am not better than my fathers.
5 And as he lay and slept under a **one** juniper tree, behold,
then an angel touched him,
and said unto him, Arise and eat.
6 And he looked, and, behold,
there was a *cake* **an ashcake**
baken on the *coals* **red hot stones**,
and a cruse of water at his head **pieces**.

1 SOVEREIGNS 18, 19593

exeGesés companion BIBLE

37 Answer me, O Yah Veh, answer me,
so that this people knows you are Yah Veh Elohim
and that you turn their heart backward.
38 Then the fire of Yah Veh falls;
and consumes the holocaust
and the timber and the stones and the dust
and licks up the water in the channel.
39 And all the people see, and fall on their faces
and say, Yah Veh, he is Elohim!
Yah Veh, he is Elohim!
40 And Eli Yah says to them,
Apprehend the prophets of Baal;
that not a man of them escape.
— and they apprehend them.
And Eli Yah descends them to the wadi Qishon
and slaughters them there.
41 And Eli Yah says to Ach Ab,
Ascend; eat and drink;
for there is a voice of multitude of rain.
42 — and Ach Ab ascends to eat and to drink.
And Eli Yah ascends to the top of Karmel
and prostrates himself on the earth
and set his face between his knees
43 and says to his lad,
Ascend now; look the way of the sea.
And he ascends and looks and says,
Naught!
And he says, Turn back seven times.
44 And so be it, at the seventh he says, Behold,
a little thick cloud ascends from the sea
— as a palm of a man.
And he says, Ascend, say to Ach Ab,
Bind; and descend that the rain not restrain you.
45 And so be it,
the heavens darken — thick clouds and wind
and a great rain.
— and Ach Ab rides and goes to Yizre El.
46 And the hand of Yah Veh is on Eli Yah;
and he girds his loins
and runs at the face of Ach Ab to enter Yizre El.

ELI YAH FLEES FROM IY ZEBEL

19 And Ach Ab tells Iy Zebel all Eli Yah worked;
and how he slaughtered all the prophets with the sword.
2 And Iy Zebel sends an angel to Eli Yah, saying,
Thus work the elohim and add also;
about this time tomorrow
I set your soul as the soul of one of them.
3 And he sees and rises and goes for his soul
and comes to Beer Sheba, Yah Hudah
and sets his lad there;
and goes by himself
a journey of a day into the wilderness
and comes and settles under one juniper:
and he asks for his soul to die; and says,
Enough now, O Yah Veh, take away my soul;
for I am no better than my fathers.
5 And as he lies down and sleeps under one juniper,
behold, an angel touches him and says to him,
Rise! Eat!
6 And he looks, and behold,
an ashcake baked on red hot stones
and a cruse of water at his head pieces.

1 KINGS 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 And he did eat and drink,
and **returned and** laid him down *again*.
And the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**
came *again* **returned** the second time,
and touched him, and said,
Arise and eat; because the journey is too great for thee.

ELI YAH IN MOUNT HOREB

8 And he arose, and did eat and drink,
and went in the *strength* **substance** of that *meat food*
forty days and forty nights
unto Horeb the mount of *God* **Elohim**.
9 And he came thither unto a cave,
and *lodged* **stayed overnight** there; and, behold,
the word of the **LORD Yah Veh** came to him,
and he said unto him,
What doest thou here, *Elijah* **Eli Yah?**
10 And he said,
In being jealous, I have been *very* jealous
for the **LORD God of hosts Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**:
for the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
have forsaken thy covenant,
thrown down thine **demolished thy sacrifice** altars,
and *slain* **slaughtered** thy prophets with the sword;
and I, *even* I only, *am left* **remain**;
and they seek my *life* **soul**, to take it away.
11 And he said, Go forth,
and stand upon the mount
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**.
And, behold, *the LORD Yah Veh* passed by,
and a great and strong wind *rent* **split** the mountains,
and brake *in pieces* the rocks
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**;
but the LORD Yah Veh was not in the wind:
and after the wind an *earthquake* **a quake**;
but the LORD Yah Veh was not in the *earthquake* **quake**:
12 And after the *earthquake* **quake** a fire;
but the LORD Yah Veh was not in the fire:
and after the fire a still *small* **thin** voice.
13 And it was so **became**, when *Elijah* **Eli Yah** heard it,
that he *wrapped* **veiled** his face in his **mighty** mantle,
and went out,
and stood in the *entering in* **opening** of the cave.
And, behold, *there came* a voice unto him, and said,
What doest thou here, *Elijah* **Eli Yah?**
14 And he said,
In being jealous, I have been *very* jealous
for the **LORD God of hosts Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**:
because the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
have forsaken thy covenant,
thrown down thine **demolished thy sacrifice** altars,
and *slain* **slaughtered** thy prophets with the sword;
and I, *even* I only, *am left* **remain**;
and they seek my *life* **soul**, to take it away.
15 And *the LORD Yah Veh* said unto him, Go,
return on thy way
to the wilderness of *Damascus* **Dammeseq**:
and when thou comest, anoint *Hazael* **Haza El**
to be *king* **sovereign** over *Syria* **Aram**:
16 And *Jehu* **Yah Hu** the son of Nimshi
shalt thou anoint to be *king* **sovereign** over *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and *Elisha* **Eli Shua**
the son of Shaphat of *Abelmeholah* **Abel Mecholah**
shalt thou anoint to be prophet in thy *room* **stead**.
17 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
that him that escapeth the sword of *Hazael* **Haza El**
shall *Jehu* **slay Yah Hu** deathify
and him that escapeth from the sword of *Jehu* **Yah Hu**
shall *Elisha* **slay Eli Shua** deathify.
18 Yet I have *left* **survived** me
seven thousand in *Israel* **Yisra El**,
all the knees which have not bowed unto Baal,
and every mouth which hath not kissed him.
19 So he *departed* **went** thence,
and found *Elisha* **Eli Shua** the son of Shaphat,
who was plowing with twelve yoke of *oxen*
before him **at his face**, and he with the twelfth:
and *Elijah* **Eli Yah** passed by him,
and cast his **mighty** mantle upon him.

1 SOVEREIGNS 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And he eats and drinks and returns and lies down.

7 And the angel of Yah Veh returns a second time
and touches him and says,
Rise! Eat! Because the journey is too great for you.

ELI YAH IN MOUNT HOREB

8 And he rises and eats and drinks
and goes in the substance of that food
forty days and forty nights
to Horeb the mount of Elohim:
9 and he comes to a cave and stays there overnight;
and behold, the word of Yah Veh to him
and says to him, What — to you here, Eli Yah?

10 And he says, In being zealous,
I am zealous for Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth:
for the sons of Yisra El forsook your covenant,
demolished your sacrifice altars
and slaughtered your prophets with the sword;
and I — I only, remain;
and they seek to take away my soul.

11 And he says, Go!
Stand on the mount at the face of Yah Veh.

And behold, Yah Veh passes by
and a great and strong wind splits the mountains
and breaks the rocks at the face of Yah Veh;
Yah Veh is not in the wind:
and after the wind, a quake;
Yah Veh is not in the quake:
and after the quake, a fire;
Yah Veh is not in the fire:
and after the fire, a still thin voice:
and so be it, Eli Yah hears
and veils his face in his mighty mantle;
and goes and stands in the opening of the cave.

And behold, a voice says to him,
What — to you here, Eli Yah?

14 And he says, In being zealous,
I am zealous for Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth:
because the sons of Yisra El forsook your covenant,
demolished your sacrifice altars
and slaughtered your prophets with the sword;
and I — I only, remain;
and they seek to take away my soul.

15 And Yah Veh says to him, Go!
Return on your way to the wilderness of Dammeseq;
and go in and anoint Haza El
sovereign over Aram;
16 and anoint Yah Hu the son of Nimshi
sovereign over Yisra El;
and anoint Eli Shua
the son of Shaphat of Abel Mecholah
prophet in your stead:
17 and so be it,
he who escapes the sword of Haza El
Yah Hu deathifies;
and he who escapes the sword of Yah Hu
Eli Shua deathifies:
18 and I survive seven thousand in Yisra El
— all the knees who bowed not to Baal
and every mouth who kissed him not.

19 And he goes there
and finds Eli Shua the son of Shaphat
plowing with twelve yoke at his face
and he is with the twelfth:
and Eli Yah passes by him
and casts his mighty mantle on him.

1 KINGS 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

20 And he left the oxen, and ran after *Elijah Eli Yah*,
and said, Let me, I pray beseech thee,
kiss my father and my mother,
and then I will follow I shall go after thee.
And he said unto him, Go back again return:
for what have I done worked to thee?
21 And he returned back afterward from him,
and took a yoke of oxen, and slew sacrificed them,
and boiled stewed their flesh
with the instruments of the oxen,
and gave unto the people, and they did eat.
Then he arose, and went after *Elijah Eli Yah*,
and ministered unto him.

ARAM ATTACKS SHOMERON

20

And *Benhadad Ben Hadad*
the king sovereign of *Syria Aram*
gathered all his host valiant together:
and there were thirty and two kings sovereigns with him,
and horses, and chariots;
and he went up ascended
and besieged *Samaria Shomeron*,
and warred fought against it.
2 And he sent messengers angels to *Ahab Ach Ab*,
king sovereign of *Israel Yisra El* into the city,
and said unto him, Thus saith *Benhadad Ben Hadad*,
3 Thy silver and thy gold is mine;
thy wives women also and thy children sons,
even the goodliest, are mine.
4 And the king sovereign of *Israel Yisra El*
answered and said,
My lord adoni, O king sovereign,
according to thy saying word, I am thine,
and all that I have.
5 And the messengers came again angels returned, and said,
Thus speaketh *Benhadad saith Ben Hadad*, saying,
Although I have sent unto thee, saying,
Thou shalt deliver give me thy silver, and thy gold,
and thy wives women, and thy children sons;
6 Yet I will shall send my servants unto thee
to morrow about this time,
and they shall search thine house,
and the houses of thy servants;
and so be it shall be,
that whatsoever is pleasant in the desire of thine eyes,
they shall put set it in their hand, and take it away.
7 Then the king sovereign of *Israel Yisra El*
called all the elders of the land,
and said, Mark Perceive, I pray beseech you,
and see how this man seeketh mischief evil:
for he sent unto me for my wives women,
and for my children sons,
and for my silver, and for my gold;
and I denied withheld him not.
8 And all the elders and all the people said unto him,
Hearken not unto him, nor consent will.
9 Wherefore he said
unto the messengers angels of *Benhadad Ben Hadad*,
Tell Say to my lord adoni the king sovereign,
All that thou didst send for to thy servant at the first
I will do shall work:
but this thing word I may shall not do work.
And the messengers departed angels went,
and brought returned him word again.
10 And *Benhadad Ben Hadad* sent unto him, and said,
The gods do elohim work so unto me, and more add also,
if the dust of *Samaria Shomeron*
shall suffice for handfuls palmfuls
for all the people that follow me at my feet.
11 And the king sovereign of *Israel Yisra El*
answered and said,
Tell Word him, Let not him that girdeth on his harness
boast halal himself as he that putteth it off looseneth.
12 And so be it came to pass,
when *Benhadad he* heard this message word,
as he was drinking,
he and the kings sovereigns
in the pavilions sukkoth/brush arbors,

1 SOVEREIGNS 19, 20595

exeGesés companion BIBLE

20 And he leaves the oxen and runs after *Eli Yah*
and says, Let me, I beseech you,
kiss my father and my mother — and I go after you.
And he says to him, Go! Return!
What work I to you?

21 And he returns from after him
and takes a yoke of oxen and sacrifices them
and stews their flesh with the instruments of the oxen;
and gives to the people and they eat:
and he rises
and goes after *Eli Yah* and ministers to him.

ARAM ATTACKS SHOMERON

20

And *Ben Hadad* the sovereign of *Aram*
gathers all his valiant together:
with thirty—two sovereigns
and horses and chariots;
and he ascends and besieges *Shomeron*
and fights against it.
2 And he sends angels to *Ach Ab* sovereign of *Yisra El*
into the city
and says to him, Thus says *Ben Hadad*,
3 Your silver and your gold
is mine;
and your women and your sons — the goodliest
are mine.
4 And the sovereign of *Yisra El* answers and says,
My adoni, O sovereign,
according to your word, I am yours — and all I have.
5 And the angels return and say,
Thus says *Ben Hadad*, saying,
Although I send to you, saying,
Give me your silver and your gold
and your women and your sons;
6 yet tomorrow about this time
I send my servants to you to search your house
and the houses of your servants;
and so be it, whatever is the desire of your eyes,
they set in their hand and take away.
7 And the sovereign of *Yisra El*
calls all the elders of the land and says,
Perceive, I beseech you
and see how this one seeks evil:
for he sends to me for my women and for my sons
and for my silver and for my gold;
and I withhold not from him.
8 And all the elders and all the people say to him,
Neither hearken, nor will.
9 And he says to the angels of *Ben Hadad*,
Say to my adoni the sovereign,
All you sent for to your servant at the first, I work:
but this word, I cannot work.
— and the angels go and return the word.
10 And *Ben Hadad* sends to him and says,
The elohim work so to me and add also,
if the dust of *Shomeron* suffice for palmfuls
for all the people at my feet.
11 And the sovereign of *Yisra El* answers and says,
Word to him, He who girds
halals not as he who loosens.
12 And so be it,
he hears this word as he is drinking
— he and the sovereigns in the sukkoth/brush arbors;

1 KINGS 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that he said unto his servants,
Set yourselves in array **Line up**.

And they set themselves in array **lined up** against the city.

ARAM DEFEATED

13 And, behold, there came a **approached one** prophet
unto *Ahab king Ach Ab sovereign of Israel Yisra El*, saying,
Thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*,
Hast thou seen all this great multitude? behold,
I **will shall** deliver it into thine hand this day;
and thou shalt know that I am *the LORD Yah Veh*.
14 And *Ahab Ach Ab* said, By whom?
And he said, Thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*,
Even by the *young men lads*
of the *princes governors of the provinces jurisdictions*.
Then he said, Who shall **order bind** the battle war?
And he answered **said**, Thou.
15 Then he **numbered mustered** the *young men lads*
of the *princes governors of the provinces jurisdictions*,
and they were two hundred and thirty two:
and after them he **numbered mustered** all the people,
even all the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
being seven thousand.
16 And they went out at noon.
But *Benhadad Ben Hadad*
was drinking himself *drunk intoxicated*
in the *pavilions sukkoth/brush arbors*,
he and the *kings sovereigns*,
the thirty and two *kings sovereigns* that helped him.
17 And the *young men lads*
of the *princes governors of the provinces jurisdictions*
went out first;
and *Benhadad Ben Hadad* sent out,
and they told him, saying,
There are men **come gone** out of *Samaria Shomeron*.
18 And he said,
Whether If they be come out for *peace shalom*,
take **apprehend** them alive;
or *whether if* they be come out for war,
take **apprehend** them alive.
19 So these *young men lads*
of the *princes governors of the provinces jurisdictions*
came **went** out of the city,
and the *army which followed valiant after* them.
20 And they **slew smote** every one his man:
and the *Syrians Aramiy* fled;
and *Israel Yisra El* pursued them:
and *Benhadad Ben Hadad*,
the *king sovereign of Syria Aram*,
escaped on an horse with the *horsemen cavalry*.
21 And the *king sovereign of Israel Yisra El* went out,
and smote the horses and chariots,
and **slew smote** the *Syrians Aramiy*
with a great *slaughter stroke*.
22 And the prophet came **near**
to the *king sovereign of Israel Yisra El*, and said unto him,
Go, strengthen *thyself*, and **mark perceive**,
and see what thou **doest workest**:
for at the *return turn* of the year
the *king sovereign of Syria Aram*
will come up shall ascend against thee.
23 And the servants of the *king sovereign of Syria Aram*
said unto him,
Their *gods elohim* are *gods elohim* of the *hills mountains*;
therefore they *were stronger than we prevailed over us*;
but let us fight against them in the plain,
and **surely unless**
we shall *be stronger than they prevail over them*.
24 And **do work** this *thing word*,
Take **Turn aside** the *kings sovereigns* away,
every man out of his place,
and **put captains set governors** in their *rooms stead*:
25 And number thee *an army the valiant*,
like the *army valiant that thou hast lost hath fallen*,
horse for horse, and chariot for chariot:
and we **will shall** fight against them in the plain,
and **surely** we shall *be stronger than they prevail over them*.
And he hearkened unto their voice, and **did worked** so.

1 SOVEREIGNS 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and he says to his servants, Line up!
— and they line up against the city.

ARAM DEFEATED

13 And behold,
one prophet approaches Ach Ab sovereign of Yisra El,
saying, Thus says Yah Veh,
See you all this great multitude?
Behold, I deliver it into your hand this day;
so that you know I — Yah Veh.
14 And Ach Ab says, By whom?
And he says, Thus says Yah Veh,
by the lads of the governors of the jurisdictions.
Then he says, Who binds the war?
And he says, You.
15 Then he musters the lads
of the governors of the jurisdictions
— two hundred and thirty two:
and after them he musters all the people
— all the sons of Yisra El — seven thousand:
and they go at noon:
and Ben Hadad is drinking himself intoxicated
in the sukkoth/brush arbors
— he and the sovereigns
— the thirty—two sovereigns who help him.
17 And the lads of the governors of the jurisdictions
go first:
and Ben Hadad sends them out
and they tell him, saying,
Men come from Shomeron!
18 And he says,
If they come for shalom, apprehend them alive;
and if they come for war, apprehend them alive.
19 So these lads of the governors of the jurisdictions
go from the city;
and the valiant after them.
20 And every one smites his man:
and the Aramiy flee; and Yisra El pursues them:
and Ben Hadad the sovereign of Aram
escapes on a horse with the cavalry:
and the sovereign of Yisra El comes
and smites the horses and chariots
and smites the Aramiy with a great stroke.
22 And the prophet
comes near the sovereign of Yisra El
and says to him, Go! Strengthen!
And perceive and see what to work:
for at the turn of the year
the sovereign of Aram ascends against you.
23 And the servants of the sovereign of Aram
say to him,
Their elohim are elohim of the mountains;
therefore they prevail over us;
and we fight them in the plain and prevail over them:
24 and so we work this word:
we turn aside the sovereigns
— every man from his place,
and set governors in their stead:
25 and number the valiant as the valiant who fell
— horse for horse and chariot for chariot:
and we fight them in the plain
and prevail over them.
— and he hearkens to their voice and thus works.

1 KINGS 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

26 And **so be** it came to pass,
at the *return* **turn** of the year,
that *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad**
numbered **mustered** the *Syrians* **Aramiy**,
and went up **ascended** to *Aphek* **Apheq**,
to *fight* **war** against *Israel* **Yisra El**.
27 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
were *numbered* **mustered**,
and were all present **maintained**,
and went against **to meet** them:
and the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
pitched before **encamped in front of** them
like two *little flocks of kids* **bare doe goats**;
but the *Syrians* **Aramiy** filled the *country* **land**.
28 And there came **near** a man of *God* **Elohim**,
and *spake* **said** unto the *king* **sovereign of Israel** **Yisra El**,
and said, Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Because the *Syrians* **Aramiy** have said,
The LORD **Yah Veh** is *God* **Elohim** of the *hills* **mountains**,
but he is not *God* **Elohim** of the valleys,
therefore *will* **shall I**
deliver **give** all this great multitude into thine hand,
and ye shall know *that I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**.
29 And they *pitched* **encamped** one over against the other
seven days.
And *so it was* **became**,
that in the seventh day
the *battle was joined* **war approached**:
and the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
slew **smote** of the *Syrians* **Aramiy**
an hundred thousand *footmen* **on foot** in one day.
30 But the *rest* **remaining** fled to *Aphek* **Apheq**,
into the city;
and there a wall fell upon twenty and seven thousand
of the men that *were left* **remained**.
And *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad** fled,
and came into the city, into an inner chamber.
31 And his servants said unto him, Behold now,
we have heard
that the *kings* **sovereigns** of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
are merciful *kings* **sovereigns**:
let us, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
put sackcloth **set saq** on our loins,
and *ropes* **lines** upon our heads,
and go out to the *king* **sovereign of Israel** **Yisra El**:
perhaps he *will save thy life* **shall let thy soul live**.
32 So they girded *sackcloth* **saq** on their loins,
and put *ropes* **lines** on their heads,
and came to the *king* **sovereign of Israel** **Yisra El**, and said,
Thy servant *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad** saith,
I *pray* **beseech** thee, let *me* **my soul** live.
And he said, Is he yet alive? He is my brother.
33 Now the men
did diligently observe
whether any thing would come from him
prognosticated of him,
and *did hastily catch* **they hastened and snatched** it:
and they said, Thy brother *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad**.
Then he said, Go ye, *bring* **take** him.
Then *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad** came forth **Ben Hadad went** to him;
and he caused him to *come up* **ascend** into the chariot.
34 And *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad** said unto him,
The cities, which my father took from thy father,
I *will* **shall** restore;
and thou shalt *make* **streets set outways** for thee
in *Damascus* **Dammeseq**,
as my father *made* **set** in *Samaria* **Shomeron**.
Then said *Ahab* **he**,
I *will* **shall** send thee away with this covenant.
So he *made* **cut** a covenant with him, and sent him away.
35 **A SON OF THE PROPHETS ORDERS A SMITING**
And a *certain* **one** man of the sons of the prophets
said unto his *neighbour* **friend**
in the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Smite me, I *pray* **beseech** thee.
And the man refused to smite him.
36 Then said he unto him,

1 SOVEREIGNS 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

26 And so be it, at the turn of the year,
Ben Hadad musters the Aramiy
and ascends to Apheq to war against Yisra El:
and the sons of Yisra El
are mustered and maintained;
and go to meet them:
and the sons of Yisra El encamp in front of them
as two bare doe goats;
and the Aramiy fill the land.
28 And a man of Elohim comes near
and says to the sovereign of Yisra El
and says, Thus says Yah Veh,
Because the Aramiy say,
Yah Veh is Elohim of the mountains,
but he is not Elohim of the valleys,
I give all this great multitude into your hand,
that you know I — Yah Veh.
29 And they encamp one over against the other
seven days.
And so be it, in the seventh day,
the war approaches:
and the sons of Yisra El smite of the Aramiy
a hundred thousand on foot in one day:
and the remaining flee to Apheq — to the city;
and a wall falls on twenty — seven thousand
of the men who remain:
and Ben Hadad flees and comes to the city
— to an inner chamber.
31 And his servants say to him, Behold now,
we hear that the sovereigns of the house of Yisra El
are merciful sovereigns:
have us, I beseech you,
set saq on our loins and lines on our heads
and go to the sovereign of Yisra El:
peradventure he keeps your soul alive.
32 And they gird saq on their loins
and put lines on their heads
and come to the sovereign of Yisra El and say,
Your servant Ben Hadad says,
I beseech you, *may* my soul live.
And he says, Is he still alive? he is my brother.
33 Now the men prognosticate of him
and they hasten and snatch:
and they say, Your brother Ben Hadad.
Then he says, Go! Take him!
Then Ben Hadad goes to him;
and he ascends him into the chariot
and says to him,
The cities my father took from your father, I restore;
and set outways for yourself in Dammeseq,
as my father set in Shomeron.
Then he says, I send you away with this covenant.
— and he cuts a covenant with him
and sends him away.
A SON OF THE PROPHETS ORDERS A SMITING
35 And one man of the sons of the prophets
says to his friend,
By the word of Yah Veh, smite me, I beseech you.
And the man refuses to smite him.
36 Then he says to him,

1 KINGS 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Because thou hast not *obeyed* **hearkened**
to the voice of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, behold,
as soon as thou art *departed* **gone** from me,
a lion shall *slay* **smite** thee.

And as soon as he was *departed* **gone** from *him* **his side**,
a lion found him, and *slew* **smote** him.

37 Then he found another man,
and said, Smite me, I *pray* **beseech** thee.
And the man smote him,
so that in smiting he wounded him.

38 So the prophet *departed* **went**,
and *waited* **stood by** for the *king* **sovereign** by the way,
and disguised himself with ashes upon his *face* **eyes**.

39 And as the *king* **sovereign** passed by,
he cried unto the *king* **sovereign**: and he said,
Thy servant went out into the midst of the *battle* **war**;
and, behold, a man turned aside,
and brought a man unto me, and said,
Keep **Guard** this man:

if **in missing**, by *any means* he be missing,
then shall thy *life* **soul** be for his *life* **soul**,
or else thou shalt *pay a talent* **weigh a round** of silver.
40 And as thy servant was *busy* **working** here and there,
he was *gone* **not**.

And the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El** said unto him,
So **Thus** shall thy judgment be;
thyself hast *decided* **appointed it**.

41 And he hastened,
and *took* **turned aside** the ashes *away* from his *face* **eyes**;
and the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
discerned **recognized** him that he was of the prophets.

42 And he said unto him, Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Because thou hast *let go* **sent away** out of thy hand
a man whom I *appointed* to *utter* **devoted to** destruction,
therefore thy *life* **soul** shall go for his *life* **soul**,
and thy people for his people.

43 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
went to his house *heavy* **peevd** and *displeased* **enraged**,
and came to *Samaria* **Shomeron**.

ACH AB COVETS THE VINEYARD OF NABOTH

21 And **so be** it *came to pass*, after these *things* **words**,
that Naboth the *Jezreelite* **Yizre Eliy** had a vineyard,
which was in *Jezreel* **Yizre El**,
hard by **beside** the *palace* **temple** of *Ahab* **Ach Ab**
king **sovereign** of *Samaria* **Shomeron**.

2 And *Ahab* **spake** **Ach Ab** **worded** unto Naboth, saying,
Give me thy vineyard,
that I may have it for a garden of *herbs* **greens**,
because it is *near unto* **beside** my house:
and I **will shall** give thee for it a better vineyard than it;
or, if it seem good to *thee* **in thine eyes**,
I **will shall** give thee the *worth* **price** of it in *money* **silver**.

3 And Naboth said to *Ahab* **Ach Ab**,
The LORD **forbid it me** **Far be it**,
that I should give the inheritance of my fathers unto thee.

4 And *Ahab* **Ach Ab** came into his house
heavy **peevd** and *displeased* **enraged**
because of the word
which Naboth the *Jezreelite* **Yizre Eliy**
had *spoken* **worded** to him:
for he had said,

I **will shall** not give thee the inheritance of my fathers.
And he laid him down upon his bed,
and turned away his face, and *would eat* **ate** no bread.

5 But *Jezebel* **Iy Zebel** his *wife* **woman** came to him,
and *said* **worded** unto him,
Why is thy spirit so *sad* **peevd**, that thou eatest no bread?

6 And he said unto her,
Because I *spake* **worded**
unto Naboth the *Jezreelite* **Yizre Eliy**,
and said unto him, Give me thy vineyard for *money* **silver**;
or else, if it *please* **delight** thee,
I **will shall** give thee *another* **a** vineyard for it:
and he *answered* **said**,

I **will shall** not give thee my vineyard.
7 And *Jezebel* **Iy Zebel** his *wife* **woman** said unto him,
Dost thou now *govern* **work**
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?

1 SOVEREIGNS 20, 21598

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Because you hearken not to the voice of *Yah Veh*,
behold, as soon as you go from me,
a lion smites you.

— and as soon as he goes from his side,
a lion finds him and smites him.

37 Then he finds another man
and says, Smite me, I beseech you.
— and the man smites him,
so that in smiting he wounds him.

38 So the prophet goes
and stands by for the sovereign by the way
and disguises himself with ashes on his eyes:
39 and as the sovereign passes by,
he cries to the sovereign and he says,

Your servant goes midst the war; and behold,
a man turns aside and brings a man to me
and says, Guard this man:
if in missing, he *is* missing,
then your soul *is* for his soul;
or else weigh a round of silver.

40 — and as your servant works here and there,
and he is nowhere.

And the sovereign of *Yisra El* says to him,
Thus your judgment — as you appoint.

41 And he hastens
and turns aside the ashes from his eyes;
and the sovereign of *Yisra El*
recognizes that he is of the prophets;
42 and he says to him, Thus says *Yah Veh*,
Because you send away from your hand
a man whom I devoted to destruction,
so be it, your soul for his soul
and your people for his people.

43 And the sovereign of *Yisra El*
goes to his house peevd and enraged
and comes to *Shomeron*.

ACH AB COVETS THE VINEYARD OF NABOTH

21 And so be it, after these words,
Naboth the *Yizre Eliy* has a vineyard in *Yizre El*
beside the temple of *Ach Ab* sovereign of *Shomeron*:
2 and *Ach Ab* words to Naboth, saying,
Give me your vineyard to be my garden of greens
because it is beside my house:
and for it, I give you a better vineyard;
or if it seems good in your eyes,
I give you the price in silver.

3 And Naboth says to *Ach Ab*,
Far be it, to give you the inheritance of my fathers.

4 And *Ach Ab* comes to his house
peevd and enraged
because of the word
Naboth the *Yizre Eliy* words to him:
for he said,
I give you not the inheritance of my fathers:
and he lies down on his bed
and turns away his face and eats no bread.

5 And *Iy Zebel* his *woman* comes to him
and words to him,
Why is your spirit so peevd, that you eat no bread?

6 And he says to her,
Because I word to Naboth the *Yizre Eliy*
and say to him, Give me your vineyard for silver;
or else, if it delight you, I give you a vineyard for it:
and he says, I give you not my vineyard.

7 And *Iy Zebel* his *woman* says to him,
Work you not the sovereigndom of *Yisra El*?

1 KINGS 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

arise, and eat bread,
and let thine heart be *merry well—pleased*:
I will **shall** give thee the vineyard
of Naboth the *Jezeelite Yizre Eliy*.
8 So she wrote *letters inscribed scrolls*
in *Ahab's Ach Ab's* name,
and sealed them with his seal,
and sent the *letters scrolls*
unto the elders and to the nobles that were in his city,
dwelling settling with Naboth.
9 And she wrote **inscribed** in the *letters scrolls*, saying,
Proclaim Call a fast, and set **seat** Naboth
on high among the head of the people:
10 And set two men, sons of *Belial Beli Yaal*,
before in front of him,
to bear witness against him, saying,
Thou didst *blaspheme bless*
God Elohim and the *king sovereign*.
And then *carry bring* him out,
and stone him, that he may die.
11 And the men of his city, *even* the elders and the nobles
who were the *inhabitants settled* in his city,
did worked as *Jezebel ly Zebel* had sent unto them,
and as it was *written inscribed* in the *letters scrolls*
which she had sent unto them.
12 They *proclaimed called* a fast,
and set **seated** Naboth *on high among the head of* the people.
13 And there came in two men,
children sons of Belial Beli Yaal,
and sat *before settled in front of* him:
and the men of *Belial Beli Yaal* witnessed against him,
even against Naboth, in the presence of the people,
saying, Naboth *did blaspheme God blessed Elohim*
and the *king sovereign*.
Then they *carried brought* him forth out of the city,
and stoned him with stones, that he died.
14 Then they sent to *Jezebel ly Zebel*, saying,
Naboth is stoned, and *is dead hath died*.
15 And **so be** it came to pass,
when *Jezebel ly Zebel* heard that Naboth was stoned,
and was *dead had died*,
that *Jezebel ly Zebel* said to *Ahab Ach Ab*, Arise,
take possession of the vineyard
of Naboth the *Jezeelite Yizre Eliy*,
which he refused to give thee for *money silver*:
for Naboth is not alive, but *dead hath died*.
16 And **so be** it came to pass,
when *Ahab Ach Ab* heard that Naboth was *dead died*,
that *Ahab Ach Ab* rose up to go *down descend*
to the vineyard of Naboth the *Jezeelite Yizre Eliy*,
to take possession of it.
17 And the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*
came to *Elijah Eli Yah* the *Tishbite Tisbehiy*, saying,
18 Arise, go *down descend* to meet *Ahab Ach Ab*
king sovereign of Israel Yisra El,
which is in *Samaria Shomeron*:
behold, he is in the vineyard of Naboth,
whither he *is gone down hath descended* to possess it.
19 And thou shalt *speak word* unto him, saying,
Thus saith the *LORD Yah Veh*,
Hast thou *killed murdered*, and also taken possession?
And thou shalt *speak word thou* unto him, saying,
Thus saith the *LORD Yah Veh*,
In the place
where dogs *licked lapped* the blood of Naboth
shall dogs *lick lap* thy blood, even thine.
20 And *Ahab Ach Ab* said to *Elijah Eli Yah*,
Hast thou found me, O mine enemy?
And he *answered said*, I have found thee:
because thou hast sold thyself to work evil
in the *sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh*.
21 Behold, I will **shall** bring evil upon thee,
and will **take shall burn** away thy posterity,
and will **shall** cut off from *Ahab Ach Ab*
him that *pisseth urinateth* against the wall,
and him that is *shut up restrained*
and left in *Israel Yisra El*,
22 And will **make shall give** thine house

1 SOVEREIGNS 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Rise! Eat bread! Well — please your heart!
I give you the vineyard of Naboth the Yizre Eliy.
8 So she inscribes scrolls in the name of Ach Ab
and seals them with his seal:
and sends the scrolls
to the elders and to the nobles in his city
who settle with Naboth:
9 and she inscribes in the scrolls, saying,
Call a fast and seat Naboth the head of the people:
10 and set two men, sons of Beli Yaal, in front of him,
to witness against him, saying,
You bless Elohim and the sovereign.
— and then bring him out and stone him that he die.
11 And the men of his city
— the elders and the nobles who settle in his city
work as ly Zebel sent them
— as inscribed in the scrolls she sent them:
12 they call a fast
and seat Naboth at the head of the people.
13 And two men come in — sons of Beli Yaal
and settle in front of him:
and the men of Beli Yaal witness against him
— against Naboth in the presence of the people
saying, Naboth blesses Elohim and the sovereign.
And they bring him from the city
and stone him with stones that he dies:
14 and they send to ly Zebel, saying,
They stoned Naboth and he died.
15 And so be it,
ly Zebel hears they stoned Naboth and he died,
and ly Zebel says to Ach Ab, Rise!
Possess the vineyard of Naboth the Yizre Eliy
which he refused to give you for silver:
for Naboth *is* not alive, but died.
16 And so be it,
Ach Ab hears that Naboth died,
and Ach Ab rises to descend
to the vineyard of Naboth the Yizre Eliy, to possess it.
17 And the word of Yah Veh
comes to Eli Yah the Tisbehiy, saying,
18 Rise!
Descend to meet Ach Ab sovereign of Yisra El,
who is in Shomeron:
behold, he *is* in the vineyard of Naboth,
where he descends to possess it:
19 and word to him, saying,
Thus says Yah Veh:
You — murder? And also possess?
And word to him, saying, Thus says Yah Veh:
In the place dogs lapped the blood of Naboth
dogs lap your blood — even yours.
20 And Ach Ab says to Eli Yah,
Have you found me, O my enemy?
And he says, I have found:
because you sold yourself
to work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh:
21 behold, I bring evil on you
and burn away your posterity
and cut off from Ach Ab
all who urinate against the wall
and who *are* restrained and left in Yisra El:
22 and give your house

1 KINGS 21, 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

like the house of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** the son of Nebat,
and like the house of *Baasha* **Basha**
the son of *Ahijah* **Achih Yah**,
for the *provocation* **vexation**
wherewith thou hast *provoked* **vexed** me to anger,
and made *Israel* **Yisra El** to sin.
23 And of *Jezebel* **Iy Zebel** also
spake the LORD **worded Yah Veh**, saying,
The dogs shall *eat Jezebel* **devour Iy Zebel**
by the *wall* **trench** of *Jezreel* **Yizre El**.
24 Him that dieth of *Ahab* **Ach Ab** in the city
the dogs shall *eat* **devour**;
and him that dieth in the field
shall the *fowls* **flyers** of the *air* **eat heavens devour**.
25 But there was none like unto *Ahab* **Ach Ab**,
which did sell himself to work *wickedness* **evil**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
whom *Jezebel* **Iy Zebel** his wife *stirred up* **woman goaded**.
26 And he did *very abominably* **mighty abhorrently**
in *following* **going after** idols,
according to all *things*
as *did* **worked** the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
whom the *LORD* **cast out** **Yah Veh dispossessed**
before **at the face** of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
27 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when *Ahab* **Ach Ab** heard those words,
that he *rent* **ripped** his clothes,
and *put sackcloth* **set saq** upon his flesh, and fasted,
and lay in *sackcloth* **saq**, and *went softly* **walked gently**.
28 And the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came to *Elijah* **Eli Yah** the *Tishbite* **Tisbehiy**, saying,
29 Seest thou how *Ahab* **Ach Ab** humbleth himself
before me **at my face**?
because he humbleth himself *before me* **at my face**,
I *will shall* not bring the evil in his days:
but in his son's days
will shall I bring the evil upon his house.

THE THIRD WAR OF ACH AB WITH ARAM

22 And they *continued* **settled** three years without war
between *Syria* **Aram** and *Israel* **Yisra El**.
2 And **so be** it *came to pass*, in the third year,
that *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**,
the *king* **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
came down **descended**
to the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
3 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
said unto his servants,
Know ye that *Ramoth* in *Gilead* **Gilad** is ours,
and we be *still* **hushed**, and take it not
out of the hand of the *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram**?
4 And he said unto *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**,
Wilt Shalt thou go with me to *battle war*
to *Ramothgilead* **Ramoth Gilad**?
And *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
said to the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
I *am* as thou *art*,
my people as thy people, my horses as thy horses.
5 And *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
said unto the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Enquire, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
at the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** to day.
6 Then the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
gathered the prophets *together*,
about four hundred men, and *said* unto them,
Shall I go against *Ramothgilead* **Ramoth Gilad**
to *battle war*,
or shall I *forbear* **cease**?
And they said, *Go up* **Ascend**;
for the *Lord* **Adonay** shall *deliver* **give** it
into the hand of the *king* **sovereign**.
7 And *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat** said,
Is there not here a prophet of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** *besides*,
that we might enquire of him?
8 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
said unto *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**,
There is yet one man,
Micaiah **Michah Yah** the son of *Imlah* **Yimlah**,
by whom we may enquire of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:

1 SOVEREIGNS 21, 22600

exeGesés companion BIBLE

as the house of Yarob Am the son of Nebat
and as the house of Basha the son of Achih Yah
for the vexation whereby you vex me
and have Yisra El sin.
23 And Yah Veh also words of Iy Zebel, saying,
The dogs devour Iy Zebel by the trench of Yizre El.
24 He who dies of Ach Ab in the city
the dogs devour;
and he who dies in the field
the flyers of the heavens devour.
25 Surely there is none like Ach Ab
who sold himself to work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh
— whom Iy Zebel his woman goaded.
26 And he mighty abhorrently goes after idols
according to all the Emoriy worked
— whom Yah Veh dispossessed
at the face of the sons of Yisra El.
27 And so be it, Ach Ab hears those words,
and he rips his clothes
and sets saq on his flesh and fasts
and lies down in saq and walks gently.
28 And the word of Yah Veh
comes to Eli Yah the Tisbehiy, saying,
29 See how Ach Ab humbles himself at my face?
Because he humbles himself at my face
I bring no evil in his days:
but in the days of his son
I bring the evil on his house.

THE THIRD WAR OF ACH AB WITH ARAM

22 And they settle three years
without war between Aram and Yisra El:
2 and so be it, in the third year,
Yah Shaphat the sovereign of Yah Hudah
descends to the sovereign of Yisra El.
3 And the sovereign of Yisra El says to his servants,
Know you not that Ramoth Gilad is ours?
And we hush in taking it
from the hand of the sovereign of Aram?
4 And he says to Yah Shaphat,
Come with me to war to Ramoth Gilad?
And Yah Shaphat says to the sovereign of Yisra El,
I as you;
my people as your people;
my horses as your horses.
5 And Yah Shaphat says to the sovereign of Yisra El,
Enquire, I beseech you today,
the word of Yah Veh.
6 And the sovereign of Yisra El gathers the prophets
— about four hundred men and says to them,
Go I to war against Ramoth Gilad? Or cease I?
And they say, Ascend;
for Adonay gives it in the hand of the sovereign.
7 And Yah Shaphat says,
Is there not a prophet of Yah Veh here
— to enquire of him?
8 And the sovereign of Yisra El says to Yah Shaphat,
There is still one man,
Michah Yah the son of Yimlah,
by whom we may enquire of Yah Veh:

1 KINGS 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but I hate him;
for he doth not prophesy good concerning me, but evil.
And Jehoshaphat **Yah Shaphat** said,
Let not the **king sovereign** say so.
9 Then the **king sovereign of Israel Yisra El**
called an **officer one eunuch**, and said,
Hasten *hither* **Micaiah Michah Yah** the son of **Imlah Yimlah**.
10 And the **king sovereign of Israel Yisra El**
and **Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat**
the **king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah**
sat **settled** each **man** on his throne,
having *put on* **enrobed their robes clothes**,
in a *void place* **threshingfloor**
in the *entrance* **opening**
of the *gate* **portal of Samaria Shomeron**;
and all the prophets prophesied *before them* **at their face**.
11 And **Zedekiah Sidqi Yah**
the son of **Chenaanah Kenaanah**
made worked him horns of iron:
and he said, Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
With these shalt thou *push butt* the **Syrians Aramiy**,
until thou have *consumed* **finished** them off.
12 And all the prophets prophesied so, saying,
Go up Ascend to Ramothgilead **Ramoth Gilad**,
and prosper:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall *deliver give* it
into the **king's sovereign's** hand.
MICAH YAH PROPHECIES DEFEAT
13 And the *messenger* **angel**
that was gone to call **Micaiah Michah Yah**
spake worded unto him, saying,
Behold now, the words of the prophets
declare are good unto the **king sovereign** with one mouth:
let thy word, I *pray beseech* thee,
be like the word of one of them,
and *speak word* that which is good.
14 And **Micaiah Michah Yah** said,
As the LORD **Yah Veh** liveth,
what *the LORD* **Yah Veh** saith unto me,
that *will shall* I *speak word*.
15 So he came to the **king sovereign**.
And the **king sovereign** said unto him, **Micaiah Michah Yah**,
shall we go against **Ramothgilead Ramoth Gilad**
to *battle war*, or shall we *forbear cease*?
And he *answered said* to him, *Go Ascend*, and prosper:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall *deliver give* it into the hand of the **king sovereign**.
16 And the **king sovereign** said unto him,
How many times shall I *adjure oath* thee
that thou *tell word* me *nothing naught*
but that which is *true truth*
in the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**?
17 And he said,
I saw all **Israel Yisra El** scattered upon the **hills mountains**,
as *sheep flocks* that have *not a shepherd no tender*:
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said, These have no *master adoni*:
let them return every man to his house in *peace shalom*.
18 And the **king sovereign of Israel Yisra El**
said unto **Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat**,
Did I not *tell say* to thee
that he *would should* prophesy no good concerning me,
but evil?
19 And he said,
Hear thou therefore the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
I saw *the LORD* **Yah Veh** *settled* on his throne,
and all the host of *heaven the heavens* standing by him
on his right *hand* and on his left.
20 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said,
Who shall *persuade Ahab entice* **Ach Ab**,
that he may *go up ascend*
and fall at **Ramothgilead Ramoth Gilad**?
And **this one** said *on this manner thus*,
and **another that one** said *on that manner thus*.
21 And there *came forth went* a spirit,
and stood *before the LORD* **at the face of Yah Veh**,
and said, I *will persuade shall entice* him.
22 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto him, *Wherewith How*?
And he said, I *will shall* go forth,

1 SOVEREIGNS 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

but I hate him;
for he prophesies no good concerning me; but evil.
And Yah Shaphat says,
O that the sovereign not say thus.
9 Then the sovereign of Yisra El calls one eunuch
and says, Hasten Michah Yah the son of Yimlah!
10 And the sovereign of Yisra El
and Yah Shaphat the sovereign of Yah Hudah settle
— each man on his throne; their clothes enrobed;
in a threshingfloor
in the opening of the portal of Shomeron:
and all the prophets prophesy at their face.
11 And Sidqi Yah the son of Kenaanah
works himself horns of iron:
and he says, Thus says Yah Veh,
But the Aramiy with these until you finish them off.
12 And all the prophets prophesy thus, saying,
Ascend to Ramoth Gilad and prosper:
for Yah Veh gives it in the hand of the sovereign.
MICAH YAH PROPHECIES DEFEAT
13 And the angel who goes to call Michah Yah
words to him, saying,
Behold now, the words of the prophets
are good to the sovereign with one mouth:
and so be it, I beseech you,
your word as their word — a good word.
14 And Michah Yah says, Yah Veh lives:
what Yah Veh says to me, I word.
15 And he comes to the sovereign;
and the sovereign says to him, Michah Yah,
Go we to war against Ramoth Gilad? Or cease?
And he says to him, Ascend and prosper:
for Yah Veh gives it into the hand of the sovereign.
16 And the sovereign says to him,
How many times oath I you
that you word me naught but truth
in the name of Yah Veh?
17 And he says,
I see all Yisra El scattered on the mountains
as flocks with no tender:
and Yah Veh says, These have no adoni:
return them — every man to his house in shalom.
18 And the sovereign of Yisra El says to Yah Shaphat,
Said I not to you
that he prophesies no good concerning me
— but evil?
19 And he says,
Therefore hear the word of Yah Veh:
I see Yah Veh settled on his throne
and all the host of the heavens stand by him
at his right and at his left.
20 And Yah Veh says,
Who entices Ach Ab
to ascend and fall at Ramoth Gilad?
And this one says thus;
and that one says thus:
21 and a spirit goes and stands at the face of Yah Veh
and says, I entice him.
22 And Yah Veh says to him, How?
And he says, I go

1 KINGS 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and I will be **shall become** a lying false spirit
in the mouth of all his prophets.

And he said,

Thou shalt *persuade* **entice** him, and prevail also:
go forth, and *do* **work** so.

23 Now therefore, behold,
the LORD Yah Veh hath *put* **given** a lying false spirit
in the mouth of all these thy prophets,
and *the LORD Yah Veh* hath *spoken* **worded** evil
concerning thee.

24 But Zedekiah **Sidqi Yah**
the son of *Chenaanah* went **Kenaanah** came near,
and smote *Micaiah Michah Yah* on the cheek, and said,
Which way went **Where passed**
the Spirit of *the LORD Yah Veh* from me
to *speak* **word** unto thee?

25 And *Micaiah Michah Yah* said, Behold,
thou shalt see in that day,
when thou shalt go into an inner chamber to hide thyself.

26 And the **king sovereign** of *Israel Yisra El* said,
Take *Micaiah Michah Yah*,
and *carry* **return** him *back*
unto *Amon* the governor of the city,
and to *Joash Yah Ash* the **king's sovereign's** son;
27 And say, Thus saith the **king sovereign**,
Put **Set** this **fellow one** in the prison **house**,
and *feed* him *with* **have him eat**
bread of **affliction oppression**
and *with* water of **affliction oppression**,
until I come in **peace shalom**.

28 And *Micaiah Michah Yah* said,
If **in returning**, thou return *at all* in **peace shalom**,
the LORD Yah Veh hath not *spoken* **worded** by me.
And he said, Hearken, O people, every one of you.

ACH AB DEATHIFIED

29 So the **king sovereign** of *Israel Yisra El*
and *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*,
the **king sovereign** of *Judah Yah Hudah*
went up **ascended** to *Ramothgilead Ramoth Gilad*.
30 And the **king sovereign** of *Israel Yisra El*
said unto *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*,
I will **shall** disguise myself, and enter into the **battle war**;
but *put* **enrobe** thou *on* thy **robes clothes**.
And the **king sovereign** of *Israel Yisra El* disguised himself,
and went into the **battle war**.

31 But the **king sovereign** of *Syria Aram*
commanded **misvahed**
his thirty and two **captains governors**
that had rule over his chariots, saying,
Fight neither with small nor great,
save only with the **king sovereign** of *Israel Yisra El*.

32 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when the **captains governors** of the chariots
saw *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*, that they said,
Surely it is the **king sovereign** of *Israel Yisra El*.
And they turned *aside* to fight *against* him:
and *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat* cried out.

33 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when the **captains governors** of the chariots *perceived* **saw**
that it was not the **king sovereign** of *Israel Yisra El*,
that they turned back from *pursuing* **after** him.

34 And a *certain* man
drew a bow *at a venture* **in his integrity**,
and smote the **king sovereign** of *Israel Yisra El*
between the joints of the **harness habergeon**:
wherefore he said unto *the driver* of his **chariot charioteer**,
Turn thine hand, and *carry* **bring** me out of the **host camp**;
for I am **wounded sick**.

35 And the **battle increased war ascended** that day:
and the **king sovereign**
was stayed up in his chariot against the *Syrians Aramiy*,
and died at even:
and the blood *ran* **poured** out of the **wound stroke**
into the **midst bosom** of the chariot.

36 And there went **passed** a **proclamation shout**
throughout the **host camp**

1 SOVEREIGNS 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and I become a false spirit
in the mouth of all his prophets.

And he says, Entice him and also prevail:
Go! Work thus!

23 And now behold,
Yah Veh gives a false spirit
in the mouth of all these your prophets
and *Yah Veh* words evil concerning you.

24 And *Sidqi Yah* the son of *Kenaanah* comes near
and smites *Michah Yah* on the cheek and says,
Where passes the Spirit of *Yah Veh* from me
to word to you?

25 And *Michah Yah* says, Behold,
you see in that day
when you go into an inner chamber to hide yourself.

26 And the sovereign of *Yisra El* says,
Take *Michah Yah* and return him
to *Amon* the governor of the city
and to *Yah Ash* the son of the sovereign:
27 and say, Thus says the sovereign,
Set this one in the prison house;
and have him eat
bread of oppression and water of oppression,
until I come in shalom.

28 And *Michah Yah* says,
If in returning, you return in shalom,
Yah Veh words not thus by me.

And he says, Hearken, O people — all of you.

ACH AB DEATHIFIED

29 And the sovereign of *Yisra El*
and *Yah Shaphat* the sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
ascend to *Ramoth Gilad*:
30 and the sovereign of *Yisra El* says to *Yah Shaphat*,
I disguise myself and enter the war;
but you enrobe your clothes.
— and the sovereign of *Yisra El* disguises himself
and goes to war.

31 And the sovereign of *Aram*
misvahs his thirty — two governors
who rule over his chariots, saying,
Fight neither with small nor great,
except only, with the sovereign of *Yisra El*.

32 And **so be** it,
the governors of the chariots see *Yah Shaphat*,
and they say, Surely it is the sovereign of *Yisra El*.

And they turn to fight him:
and *Yah Shaphat* cries out.

33 And **so be** it,
the governors of the chariots see
it is not the sovereign of *Yisra El*,
and they turn back from after him.

34 And a man draws a bow in his integrity
and smites the sovereign of *Yisra El*
between the joints of the **habergeon**:
and he says to his **charioteer**,
Turn your hand and bring me from the camp;
for I am sick.

35 And the war ascends that day:
and the sovereign
stays in his chariot against the *Aramiy*
and dies at evening:
and the blood from the stroke
pours into the bosom of the chariot.

36 And a shout passes through the camp

1 KINGS 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

about the *going down* **descent** of the sun, saying,
Every man to his city,
and every man to his own *country* **land**.
37 So the *king* **sovereign** died,
and was *brought to Samaria* **entered Shomeron**;
and they *buried* **entombed** the *king* **sovereign**
in *Samaria* **Shomeron**.
38 And *one* **washed overflowed** the chariot
in the pool of *Samaria* **Shomeron**;
and the dogs *licked* **lapped** up his blood;
and they *washed* **bathed** his armour;
according unto the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
which he *spake* **worded**.
39 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Ahab* **Ach Ab**,
and all that he *did* **worked**,
and the ivory house which he *made* **built**,
and all the cities that he built,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
40 So *Ahab* **slept Ach Ab** laid with his fathers;
and *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah** his son reigned in his stead.
YAH SHAPHAT REIGNS OVER YISRA EL
41 And *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat** the son of Asa
began to reign over *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
in the fourth year
of *Ahab* **Ach Ab** *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
42 *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
was **a son of** thirty and five years *old*
when he began to reign;
and he reigned twenty and five years
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name was Azubah
the daughter of *Shilhi* **Shilchi**.
43 And he walked in all the ways of Asa his father;
he turned not aside from it,
doing **working** that which was *right* **straight**
in the eyes of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
nevertheless the *high places* **bamahs**
were not *taken away* **turned aside**;
for the people
offered **sacrificed** and *burnt* **incense** **incensed**
yet in the *high places* **bamahs**.
44 And *Jehoshaphat* **made peace** **Yah Shaphat shalamed**
with the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
45 Now the rest of the *acts* **words**
of *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**,
and his might that he *shewed* **worked**,
and how he *warred* **fought**,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**?
46 And the remnant
of the *sodomites* **hallowed whoremongers**,
which *remained* **survived** in the days of his father Asa,
he *took* **burnt** out of the land.
47 There was then no *king* **sovereign** in Edom:
a deputy was **king one** was **stationed as sovereign**.
48 *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
made **worked** ten ships of *Tharshish* **Tarshish**
to go to Ophir for gold: but they went not;
for the ships were broken at *Eziongeber* **Esyon Geber**.
49 Then said *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah** the son of *Ahab* **Ach Ab**
unto *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**,
Let my servants go with thy servants in the ships.
But *Jehoshaphat* **would** **Yah Shaphat willed** not.
50 And *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
slept **laid** with his fathers,
and was *buried* **entombed** with his fathers
in the city of David his father:
and *Jehoram* **Yah Ram** his son reigned in his stead.
ACHAZ YAH REIGNS OVER YISRA EL
51 *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah** the son of *Ahab* **Ach Ab**
began to reign over *Israel* **Yisra El** in *Samaria* **Shomeron**
the seventeenth year of *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and reigned two years over *Israel* **Yisra El**.

1 SOVEREIGNS 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

at about the descent of the sun, saying,
Every man to his city
and every man to his own land.
37 And the sovereign dies and enters Shomeron;
and they entomb the sovereign in Shomeron:
38 and they overflow the chariot
in the pool of Shomeron;
and the dogs lap his blood;
and they bathe his armour;
according to the word Yah Veh worded.
39 And the rest of the words of Ach Ab
and all he worked
and the ivory house he built
and all the cities he built
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El?
40 And Ach Ab lies down with his fathers;
and Achaz Yah his son reigns in his stead.
YAH SHAPHAT REIGNS OVER YISRA EL
41 And Yah Shaphat the son of Asa
begins to reign over Yah Hudah
in the fourth year of Ach Ab sovereign of Yisra El.
42 Yah Shaphat is a son of thirty—five years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns twenty—five years in Yeru Shalem:
and the name of his mother,
Azubah the daughter of Shilchi:
43 and he walks in all the ways of Asa his father;
he turns not aside from it
working straight in the eyes of Yah Veh:
except they turn not aside the bamahs;
for the people
still sacrifice and incense in the bamahs:
44 and Yah Shaphat shalams
with the sovereign of Yisra El.
45 And the rest of the words of Yah Shaphat
— the might he worked and how he fought
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah?
46 And the remnant of the hallowed whoremongers
who survived in the days of his father Asa,
he burns from the land:
47 and there is no sovereign in Edom:
and they station one as sovereign.
48 Yah Shaphat works ten ships of Tarshish
to go to Ophir for gold:
but they go not;
for the ships break down at Esyon Geber.
49 Then Achaz Yah the son of Ach Ab
says to Yah Shaphat,
Have my servants go with your servants in the ships.
— and Yah Shaphat willed not.
50 And Yah Shaphat lies down with his fathers
and is entombed with his fathers
in the city of David his father:
and Yah Ram his son reigns in his stead.
ACHAZ YAH REIGNS OVER YISRA EL
51 Achaz Yah the son of Ach Ab
begins to reign over Yisra El in Shomeron
the seventeenth year of Yah Shaphat
sovereign of Yah Hudah
and reigns two years over Yisra El.

1 KINGS 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

52 And he *did* **worked** evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and walked in the way of his father,
and in the way of his mother,
and in the way of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** the son of Nebat,
who made *Israel* **Yisra El** to sin:
53 For he served Baal, and *worshipped* **prostrated to** him,
and *provoked to anger* **vexed**
the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
according to all that his father had *done* **worked**.

1 SOVEREIGNS 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

52 And he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh
and walks in the way of his father
and in the way of his mother
and in the way of Yarob Am the son of Nebat
who had Yisra El to sin:
53 and serves Baal and prostrates to him
and vexes Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
according to all his father worked.

2 KINGS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH VEH JUDGES ACHAZ YAH

1 Then **And** Moab rebelled against *Israel* **Yisra El**
after the death of *Ahab* **Ach Ab**.
2 And *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah**
fell down through a lattice in his upper *chamber* **room**
that was in *Samaria* **Shomeron**, and was sick:
and he sent *messengers* **angels**, and said unto them,
Go, enquire of *Baalzebub* **Baal Zebub**
the *god* **elohim** of *Ekron* **Eqron**
whether I shall *recover* **live** of this *disease* **sickness**.
3 But the angel of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
said **worded** to *Elijah* **Eli Yah** the *Tishbite* **Tisbehiy**,
Arise, go up **ascend** to meet the *messengers* **angels**
of the *king* **sovereign** of *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
and say **word** unto them,
Is it not because
there is not a *God* **Elohim** in *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that ye go to enquire
of *Baalzebub* **Baal Zebub** the *god* **elohim** of *Ekron* **Eqron**?
4 Now therefore thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Thou shalt not *come down* **descend**
from that bed on which thou art *gone up* **ascended**,
but **in dying**, shalt *surely* die.
And *Elijah* **departed** **Eli Yah** went.
5 And when the *messengers* **angels** turned back unto him,
he said unto them, Why are ye *now* **thus** turned back?
6 And they said unto him,
There *came* **ascended** a man *up* to meet us,
and said unto us, *Go*,
turn again **return** unto the *king* **sovereign** that sent you,
and say **word** unto him, Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Is it not because
there is not a *God* **Elohim** in *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that thou sendest to enquire
of *Baalzebub* **Baal Zebub** the *god* **elohim** of *Ekron* **Eqron**?
therefore thou shalt not *come down* **descend**
from that bed on which thou art *gone up* **ascended**,
but **in dying**, shalt *surely* die.
7 And he *said* **worded** unto them,
What *manner* **is your judgment** of the man *was* he
which *came up* **ascended** to meet you,
and *told* **worded** you these words?
8 And they *answered* **said** to him,
He was *an hairy man* **a man, a master of hair**,
and girt with a girdle of *leather* **skin** about his loins.
And he said, It is *Elijah* **Eli Yah** the *Tishbite* **Tisbehiy**.
9 Then the *king* **sovereign** sent unto him
a *captain* **governor** of fifty with his fifty.
And he *went up* **ascended** to him: and, behold,
he *sat* **settled** on the top of *an hill* **a mountain**.
And he *spake* **worded** unto him,
Thou man of *God* **Elohim**,
the *king* **sovereign** hath *said* **worded**,
Come down **Descend**.
10 And *Elijah* **Eli Yah** answered and *said* **worded**
to the *captain* **governor** of fifty,
If I be a man of *God* **Elohim**,
then let fire
come down **descend** from *heaven* **the heavens**,
and consume thee and thy fifty.
And there *came down* **descended** fire
from *heaven* **the heavens**,
and consumed him and his fifty.
11 *Again also* **And** he **returned and** sent unto him
another *captain* **governor** of fifty with his fifty.
And he answered and *said* **worded** unto him,
O man of *God* **Elohim**, thus hath the *king* **sovereign** said,
Come down **Descend** quickly.
12 And *Elijah* **Eli Yah**
answered and *said* **worded** unto them,
If I be a man of *God* **Elohim**,
let fire *come down* **descend** from *heaven* **the heavens**,
and consume thee and thy fifty.
And the fire of *God* **Elohim**
came down **descended** from *heaven* **the heavens**,
and consumed him and his fifty.
13 And he **returned and** sent *again*
a *captain* **governor** of the third fifty with his fifty.

2 SOVEREIGNS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH VEH JUDGES ACHAZ YAH

1 And Moab rebels against *Yisra El*
after the death of *Ach Ab*.
2 And *Achaz Yah*
falls through a lattice in his upper room
in *Shomeron* and is sick:
and he sends angels and says to them,
Go, enquire of *Baal Zebub* the *elohim* of *Eqron*
if I live of this sickness.
3 And the angel of *Yah Veh*
words to *Eli Yah* the *Tisbehiy*,
Rise, ascend to meet the angels
of the sovereign of *Shomeron* and word to them,
Is it because there is no *elohim* in *Yisra El*,
that you go to enquire
of *Baal Zebub* the *elohim* of *Eqron*?
4 And so thus says *Yah Veh*,
You descend not from that bed you ascended;
but in dying, you die.
And *Eli Yah* goes:
5 and the angel turns back to him,
and he says to them, Why turn you back thus?
6 And they say to him,
A man ascends to meet us, and says to us, *Go!*
Return to the sovereign who sent you
and word to him, Thus says *Yah Veh*,
Is it because there is no *elohim* in *Yisra El*
that you send to enquire
of *Baal Zebub* the *elohim* of *Eqron*?
so you descend not from that bed you ascended;
but in dying, you die.
7 And he words to them,
What is your judgment of the man
who ascended to meet you
and worded you these words?
8 And they say to him,
He is a man, a master of hair
and girt with a girdle of skin around his loins;
and he says he is *Eli Yah* the *Tisbehiy*.
9 Then the sovereign sends him
a governor of fifty with his fifty:
and he ascends to him:
and behold, he settles on the top of a mountain:
and he words to him, You — man of *Elohim*,
the sovereign words, *Descend*.
10 And *Eli Yah* answers
and words to the governor of fifty,
If I *am* a man of *Elohim*,
fire descends from the heavens
and consumes you and your fifty.
— and fire descends from the heavens
and consumes him and his fifty.
11 And he returns and sends him
another governor of fifty with his fifty:
and he answers and words to him,
O man of *Elohim*, thus says the sovereign,
Descend quickly.
12 And *Eli Yah* answers and words to them,
If I *am* a man of *Elohim*,
fire descends from the heavens
and consumes you and your fifty.
— and the fire of *Elohim* descends from the heavens
and consumes him and his fifty.
13 And he returns and sends
a governor of the third fifty with his fifty:

2 KINGS 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

And the third **captain governor** of fifty went up **ascended**,
and came and **fell bowed** on his knees
before Elijah in front of Eli Yah,
and besought him, and **said worded** unto him,
O man of **God Elohim**, I **pray beseech** thee,
let my **life soul**, and the **life soul** of these fifty thy servants,
be precious in thy **sight eyes**.
14 Behold, there **came descended** fire down
from heaven the heavens,
and **burnt up consumed** the two **captains governors**
of the former fifties with their fifties:
therefore let my **life soul**
now be precious in thy **sight eyes**.
15 And the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**
said worded unto **Elijah Eli Yah**,
Go down Descend with him:
be not **afraid of awed to face** him.
And he arose, and **went down descended** with him
unto the **king sovereign**.
16 And he **said worded** unto him,
Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh,
Forasmuch as thou hast sent **messengers angels** to enquire
of **Baalzebub Baal Zebub** the **god elohim** of **Ekron Egron**,
is it not because there is no **God Elohim** in **Israel Yisra El**
to enquire of his word?
therefore thou shalt not **come down descend** off that bed
on which thou art **gone up ascended**,
but **in dying**, shalt **surely** die.
17 So he died according to the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
which **Elijah Eli Yah** had **spoken worded**.
And **Jehoram Yah Ram** reigned in his stead
in the second year of **Jehoram Yah Ram**
the son of **Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat**,
king sovereign of **Judah Yah Hudah**;
because he had no son.
18 Now the rest of the **acts words** of **Ahaziah Achaz Yah**
which he **did worked**,
are they not **written inscribed** in the **book scroll**
of the **chronicles words of the days**
of the **kings sovereigns of Israel Yisra El**?

ELI YAH ASCENDS TO THE HEAVENS

2 And **so be** it **came to pass**,
when the LORD would take up Elijah
Yah Veh should ascend Eli Yah
into **heaven the heavens** by a **whirlwind storm**,
that **Elijah Eli Yah** went with **Elisha Eli Shua** from Gilgal.
2 And **Elijah Eli Yah** said unto **Elisha Eli Shua**,
Tarry Settle here, I **pray beseech** thee;
for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath sent me to **Bethel Beth El**.
And **Elisha Eli Shua** said unto him,
As the LORD Yah Veh liveth, and as thy soul liveth,
I **will shall** not leave thee.
So they **went down descended** to **Bethel Beth El**.
3 And the sons of the prophets that were at **Bethel Beth El**
came forth went to **Elisha Eli Shua**, and said unto him,
Knowest thou that the **LORD Yah Veh**
will shall take away thy **master adoni**
from thy head to day?
And he said, Yea, I know it; **hold ye your peace hush**.
4 And **Elijah Eli Yah** said unto him,
Elisha Eli Shua, tarry settle here, I **pray beseech** thee;
for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath sent me to **Jericho Yericho**.
And he said,
As the LORD Yah Veh liveth, and as thy soul liveth,
I **will shall** not leave thee.
So they came to **Jericho Yericho**.
5 And the sons of the prophets that were at **Jericho Yericho**
came **near to Elisha Eli Shua**, and said unto him,
Knowest thou that the **LORD Yah Veh**
will shall take away thy **master adoni**
from thy head to day?
And he **answered said**,
Yea, I know it; **hold ye your peace hush**.
6 And **Elijah Eli Yah** said unto him,
Tarry Settle, I **pray beseech** thee, here;
for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath sent me to **Jordan Yarden**.
And he said,
As the LORD Yah Veh liveth, and as thy soul liveth,
I **will shall** not leave thee. And they two went on.

2 SOVEREIGNS 1, 2 606

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and the third governor of fifty ascends
and comes and bows on his knees in front of Eli Yah
and beseeches him and words to him,
O man of Elohim, I beseech you,
that my soul and the soul of these fifty,
your servants, be precious in your eyes:
14 behold, fire descended from the heavens
and consumed the two governors of the former fifties
with their fifties:
and now, O that my soul be precious in your eyes.
15 And the angel of Yah Veh words to Eli Yah,
Descend with him: awe not to face him.
— and he rises
and descends with him to the sovereign.
16 And he words to him, Thus says Yah Veh,
Why send you angels
to enquire of Baal Zebub the elohim of Egron,
is it because there is no Elohim in Yisra El
to enquire of his word?
So you descend not from that bed you ascended,
but in dying, you die.
17 And he dies according to the word of Yah Veh
which Eli Yah worded:
and Yah Ram reigns in his stead
in the second year of Yah Ram
the son of Yah Shaphat sovereign of Yah Hudah;
because he has no son.
18 And the rest of the words of Achaz Yah worked,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El?

ELI YAH ASCENDS TO THE HEAVENS

2 And so be it,
Yah Veh ascends Eli Yah into the heavens
by a storm,
and Eli Yah and Eli Shua go from Gilgal.
2 And Eli Yah says to Eli Shua,
Settle here, I beseech you;
for Yah Veh sends me to Beth El.
And Eli Shua says,
Yah Veh lives and your soul lives; I leave you not.
— and they descend to Beth El.
3 And the sons of the prophets at Beth El
go to Eli Shua and say to him,
Know you that today
Yah Veh takes your adoni from your head?
And he says, Yes, I know; hush.
4 And Eli Yah says to him,
Eli Shua, settle here, I beseech you;
for Yah Veh sends me to Yericho.
And he says,
Yah Veh lives and your soul lives; I leave you not.
— and they come to Yericho.
5 And the sons of the prophets at Yericho
come near to Eli Shua and say to him,
Know you that today
Yah Veh takes your adoni from your head?
And he says, Yes, I know it; hush.
6 And Eli Yah says to him,
Settle, I beseech you, here;
for Yah Veh sends me to Yarden.
And he says,
Yah Veh lives and your soul lives; I leave you not.
— and the two go on.

2 KINGS 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 And fifty men of the sons of the prophets went,
and stood to view **opposite** afar off:
and they two stood by *Jordan* **Yarden**.

8 And *Elijah* **Eli Yah** took his **mighty** mantle,
and *wrapped it together* **rolled it up**,
and smote the waters,
and they were *divided* **halved** hither and thither,
so that they two went **passed** over
on *dry ground* **parched area**.

9 And **so be** it came to pass,
when they were *gone* **passed** over,
that *Elijah* **Eli Yah** said unto *Elisha* **Eli Shua**,
Ask what I shall *do* **work** for thee,
before I be taken away from thee.
And *Elisha* **Eli Shua** said, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
let a *double portion* **twofold mouth** of thy spirit
be upon me.

10 And he said, Thou hast asked a hard *thing*:
nevertheless, if thou see me *when I am* taken from thee,
it shall be so unto thee **so be it**;
but if not, *it shall not be* **so be it not**.

11 And **so be** it came to pass,
as they still went in walking, **as they walked on**,
and *talked worded*, that, behold,
there appeared a chariot of fire, and horses of fire,
and *parted* **separated between** them both *asunder*;
and *Elijah went up* **Eli Yah ascended** by a *whirlwind storm*
into *heaven* **the heavens**.

12 And *Elisha* **Eli Shua** saw it, and he cried,
My father, my father, the chariot of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and the *horsemen thereof* **cavalry**.

And he saw him no more:
and he took hold of his own clothes,
and *rent* **shredded** them in two *pieces* **shreds**.

13 He *took up* **lifted** also
the **mighty** mantle of *Elijah* **Eli Yah** that fell from him,
and *went back* **returned**,
and stood by the *bank* **lip** of *Jordan* **Yarden**;
And he took the **mighty** mantle of *Elijah* **Eli Yah**
that fell from him,
and smote the waters, and said,
Where is *the LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Elijah* **Eli Yah**?
and when he also had smitten the waters,
they *parted* **halved** hither and thither:
and *Elisha went* **Eli Shua passed** over.

15 And when the sons of the prophets
which were to view **opposite** at *Jericho* **Yericho** saw him,
they said,
The spirit of *Elijah* **Eli Yah** doth rest on *Elisha* **Eli Shua**.
And they came to meet him,
and *bowed* **prostrated** themselves to the *ground* **earth**
before in front of him.

16 And they said unto him, Behold now,
there be with thy servants fifty *strong men* **sons of valour**;
let them go, we *pray* **beseech** thee,
and seek thy *master* **adoni**:
lest peradventure — **unless** the Spirit of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *taken* **lifted** him up,
and cast him upon *some one* mountain,
or into *some one* valley.
And he said, ye shall not send.

17 And when they urged him till he was *ashamed* **shamed**,
he said, Send. They sent therefore fifty men;
and they sought three days, but found him not.

18 And when they *came* **returned** again to him,
(for he *tarried* **settled** at *Jericho* **Yericho**.)
he said unto them, Did I not say unto you, Go not?

WATERS HEALED

19 And the men of the city said unto *Elisha* **Eli Shua**,
Behold, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
the *situation* **site** of this city is *pleasant* **good**,
as my *lord* **adoni** seeth:
but the water is *naught* **evil**,
and the *ground* **barren** **earth aborteth**.

20 And he said,
Bring **Take** me a new cruse, and *put* **set** salt therein.
And they *brought* **took** it to him.

21 And he went forth unto the spring of the waters,
and cast the salt in there, and said,

2 SOVEREIGNS 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 And fifty men of the sons of the prophets
go and stand opposite afar off;
and the two stand by Yarden;
and Eli Yah takes his mighty mantle
and rolls it up and smites the waters:
and they halve here and there
so that the two pass over on parched area.

9 And so be it, they pass over,
and Eli Yah says to Eli Shua,
Ask what I work for you ere I am taken from you.

And Eli Shua says, I beseech you,
that a twofold mouth of your spirit be on me.

10 And he says, You ask hard:
if you see me taken from you, so be it;
and if not, so be it not.

11 And so be it, in walking, they walk and word;
and behold, a chariot of fire and horses of fire;
and they separate between them both:
and Eli Yah ascends by a storm into the heavens.

12 And Eli Shua sees it and cries,
My father! My father!
The chariot of Yisra El and the cavalry!

And he sees him no more:
and he takes hold of his own clothes
and shreds them in two shreds:
and he lifts the mighty mantle of Eli Yah
that fell from him
and returns and stands by the lip of Yarden;
and he takes the mighty mantle of Eli Yah
that fell from him
and smites the waters and says,
Where is Yah Veh Elohim of Eli Yah?

And he smites the waters
and they halve here and there;
and Eli Shua passes over.

15 And when the sons of the prophets
opposite Yericho see him, they say,
The spirit of Eli Yah rests on Eli Shua.

And they come to meet him
and prostrate themselves to the earth in front of him:
and they say to him, Behold now,
there are with your servants fifty sons of valour;
have them go, we beseech you,
to seek your adoni
— unless the Spirit of Yah Veh lifted him
and cast him on one mountain or in one valley.

And he says, Send not.

17 And they urge him until he shames,
and he says, Send.

And they send fifty men
and they seek three days, and find him not:
and they return to him
— and he settles at Yericho
— and he says to them, Said I not to you, Go not?

WATERS HEALED

19 And the men of the city say to Eli Shua,
Behold, I beseech you,
the site of this city is good, as my adoni sees:
but the water is evil and the earth aborts.

20 And he says,
Take me a new cruse and set salt therein.
— and they take it to him;
and he goes to the spring of the waters,
and casts the salt in there and says,

2 KINGS 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

Thus saith the LORD **Yah Veh**, I have healed these waters;
there shall not be *from thence any* **no** more death
or barren *land*.
22 So the waters were healed unto this day,
according to the *saying* **word** of *Elisha* **Eli Shua**
which he *spake* **worded**.

ELI SHUA RIDICULED
23 And he *went up* **ascended** from thence
unto *Bethel* **Beth El**:

and as he was *going up* **ascending** by the way,
there *came forth* **went** little *children* **lads** out of the city,
and *mocked* **ridiculed** him, and said unto him,
Go up **Ascend**, *thou bald head* **baldy**;
go up **ascend**, *thou bald head* **baldy**.

24 And he *turned* **faced** back, and *looked on* **saw** them,
and *cursed* **abased** them

in the name of the LORD **Yah Veh**.
And there *came forth* **went**
two she bears out of the *wood* **forest**,
and *tare* **split** forty and two children of them.

25 And he went from thence to mount *Carmel* **Karmel**,
and from thence he returned to *Samaria* **Shomeron**.

THE REIGN OF YAH RAM OVER YISRA EL

3 Now *Jehoram* **Yah Ram** the son of *Ahab* **Ach Ab**
began to reign over *Israel* **Yisra El** in *Samaria* **Shomeron**
the eighteenth year of *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and reigned twelve years.

2 And he *wrought* **worked** evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the LORD **Yah Veh**;
but not like his father, and like his mother:
for he *put away* **turned aside** the *image* **monolith** of Baal
that his father had *made* **worked**.

3 Nevertheless he *cleaved* **adhered** unto the sins
of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** the son of Nebat,
which made *Israel* **Yisra El** to sin;
he *departed* **turned** not **aside** therefrom.

THE REBELLION OF MOAB

4 And *Mesha* **king** **sovereign** of Moab
was a *sheepmaster* **brander**,
and *rendered* **returned**
unto the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
an hundred thousand *lamb* **rams**,
and an hundred thousand *rams*, *with the* **wool**.

5 *But* **And so be** it *came to pass*,
when *Ahab* **Ach Ab** was dead,
that the *king* **sovereign** of Moab
rebelled against the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

6 And *king* **Jehoram** **sovereign** **Yah Ram**
went out of *Samaria* **Shomeron** the same *time* **day**,
and *numbered* **mustered** all *Israel* **Yisra El**.

7 And he went and sent to *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
the *king* **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, saying,
The *king* **sovereign** of Moab hath rebelled against me:
wilt **shalt** thou go with me against Moab to *battle* **war**?
And he said, I *will go up* **shall ascend**: I *am* as thou *art*,
my people as thy people, and my horses as thy horses.

8 And he said, Which way shall we *go up* **ascend**?
And he *answered* **said**,

The way through the wilderness of Edom.
9 So the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El** went,
and the *king* **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and the *king* **sovereign** of Edom:
and they *fetchd* a *compass* **went**
of *about* seven days' *journey*:
and there was no water for the *host* **camp**,
and for the *cattle* **animals** that followed *them* **at their feet**.

10 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El** said, *Alas* **Aha!**
that the LORD **Yah Veh** hath called
these three *kings* **together** **sovereigns**,
to *deliver* **give** them into the hand of Moab!

11 But *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat** said,
Is there not here a prophet of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
that we may enquire of the LORD **Yah Veh** by him?
And one of the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel*'s **Yisra El**'s servants
answered and said,
Here is *Elisha* **Eli Shua** the son of Shaphat,
which poured water on the hands of *Elijah* **Eli Yah**.

2 SOVEREIGNS 2, 3 608

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Thus says Yah Veh, I heal these waters;
there is no more death or barren.
22 — and the waters are healed to this day,
according to the word Eli Shua worded.

ELI SHUA RIDICULED

23 And he ascends from thence to Beth El:
and he ascends by the way,
and little lads go from the city
and ridicule him and say to him,
Ascend, baldy! Ascend, baldy!

24 And he faces back and sees them
and abases them in the name of Yah Veh:
and two she bears come from the forest
and split forty—two of the children.

25 And from there he goes to mount Karmel;
and from there he returns to Shomeron.

THE REIGN OF YAH RAM OVER YISRA EL

3 And Yah Ram the son of Ach Ab
begins to reign over Yisra El in Shomeron
the eighteenth year
of Yah Shaphat sovereign of Yah Hudah;
and reigns twelve years:

2 and he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh;
only, not as his father and as his mother:
for he turns aside the monolith of Baal
his father worked:

3 only, he adheres to the sins
of Yarob Am the son of Nebat
who had Yisra El to sin;
he turns not aside therefrom.

THE REBELLION OF MOAB

4 And Mesha sovereign of Moab is a brander;
and he returns a hundred thousand rams
and a hundred thousand rams wool
to the sovereign of Yisra El.

5 And so be it, Ach Ab is dead,
and the sovereign of Moab
rebels against the sovereign of Yisra El:
and the same day

6 the sovereign Yah Ram goes from Shomeron
and musters all Yisra El:
7 and he goes and sends to Yah Shaphat
the sovereign of Yah Hudah, saying,
The sovereign of Moab rebels against me:
come you with me to war against Moab?

And he says, I ascend: I — as you;
my people as your people; my horses as your horses.

8 And he says, Which way ascend we?

And he says,
The way through the wilderness of Edom.

9 And the sovereign of Yisra El
and the sovereign of Yah Hudah
and the sovereign of Edom go:
and they go about a seven day journey:
and there is no water for the camp
and for the animals following at their feet.

10 And the sovereign of Yisra El says, Aha!
Yah Veh calls these three sovereigns
to give them into the hand of Moab!

11 And Yah Shaphat says,
Is there no prophet of Yah Veh here,
by whom to enquire of Yah Veh?

And one of the servants of the sovereign of Yisra El
answers and says,
Here is Eli Shua the son of Shaphat,
who poured water on the hands of Eli Yah.

2 KINGS 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 And Jehoshaphat **Yah Shaphat** said,
The word of the *LORD* is **Yah Veh be** with him.
So the *king sovereign* of *Israel* **Yisra El**
and *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
and the *king sovereign* of *Edom*
went down **descended** to him.

13 And *Elisha* **Eli Shua**
said unto the *king sovereign* of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
What have I to do with thee?
get thee go to the prophets of thy father,
and to the prophets of thy mother.
And the *king sovereign* of *Israel* **Yisra El** said unto him,
Nay: for the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath called these three *kings* **sovereigns** together,
to deliver them into the hand of *Moab*.

14 And *Elisha* **Eli Shua** said,
As the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth** liveth,
before at the face of whom I stand, *surely*,
were it not that for unless I
regard the presence **lift the face**
of *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**,
the *king sovereign* of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
I *would should* not look toward thee, nor see thee.

15 But now *bring take* me a *minstrel* **strummer**.
And **so be** it came to pass,
when the *minstrel* *played* **strummer strummed**,
that the hand of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** came upon him.

16 And he said, Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Make **Work** this *valley wadi* full of *ditches* **dugouts**.

17 For thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
ye shall not see wind, neither shall ye see rain;
yet that *valley wadi* shall be filled with water,
that ye may drink, both ye,
and your *cattle* **chattel**, and your *beasts* **animals**.

18 And this is *but a light thing* **a trifle**
in the *sight eyes* of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
he *will deliver* **shall give**
the *Moabites* **Moabiy** also into your hand.

19 And ye shall smite every *fenced* **fortified** city,
and every choice city, and shall fell every good tree,
and stop all *wells* **fountains** of water,
and *mar* **pain** every good *piece of land* **allotment**
with stones.

20 And **so be** it came to pass, in the morning,
when the *meat* offering was *offered* **holocausted**,
that, behold, there came water by the way of *Edom*,
and the *country* **land** was filled with water.

21 And when all the *Moabites* **Moabiy** heard
that the *kings* **sovereigns**
were come up **ascended** to fight against them,
they *gathered* **called together**
all that were able to *put on armour* **gird a girdle**,
and upward,
and stood in the border.

22 And they *rose up* **started** early in the morning,
and the sun *shone* **rose** upon the water,
and the *Moabites* **Moabiy** saw the water
on the other side **in front** as red as blood:

23 And they said, This is blood:
in being desolated,
the *kings* **sovereigns** are *surely slain* **desolated**,
and they have smitten *one another* **man his friend**:
now therefore, *Moab*, to the spoil.

24 And when they came to the camp of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
the *Israelites* **Yisra Eliy** rose up
and smote the *Moabites* **Moabiy**,
so that they fled *before them* **from their face**:
but they went forward **smiting and they smote**
the *Moabites* **Moabiy** *even in their country*.

25 And they *beat down* **demolished** the cities,
and on every good *piece of land* **allotment**
cast every man his stone, and filled it;
and they stopped all the *wells* **fountains** of water,
and felled all the good trees:
only in *Kirharaseth* **Qir Hareseth**
left they the stones thereof;

26 howbeit the slingers went about it, and smote it.
And when the *king* **sovereign** of *Moab* saw
that the *battle* **war** was too *sore* **strong** for him,

2 SOVEREIGNS 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 And *Yah Shaphat* says,
The word of *Yah Veh* is with him.
— and the sovereign of *Yisra El* and *Yah Shaphat*
and the sovereign of *Edom* descend to him.

13 And *Eli Shua* says to the sovereign of *Yisra El*,
What have I to do with you?
Go to the prophets of your father
and to the prophets of your mother!

And the sovereign of *Yisra El* says to him, No:
for *Yah Veh* calls these three sovereigns together,
to deliver them into the hand of *Moab*.

14 And *Eli Shua* says,
Yah Veh Sabaoth lives — at whose face I stand:
for unless I lift the face of *Yah Shaphat*
the sovereign of *Yah Hudah*,
I neither look toward you nor see you:
but now take me a *strummer*,
and so be it, when the *strummer* strums,
the hand of *Yah Veh* comes on him.

15

16 And he says, Thus says *Yah Veh*,
Work this *wadi* full of *dugouts*:

17 for thus says *Yah Veh*,
you neither see wind nor see rain;
and that *wadi* fills with water and you drink
— both you and your *chattel* and your *animals*:
and this is a trifle in the eyes of *Yah Veh*:
and he gives the *Moabiy* into your hand.

18 Smite every fortified city and every choice city
and fell every good tree
and stop all fountains of water
and pain every good allotment with stones.

19

20 And so be it, in the morning,
they holocaust the offering,
and behold, water comes by the way of *Edom*
and the land fills with water.

21 And all the *Moabiy* hear
that the sovereigns ascend to fight against them,
and they call together
all who gird a girdle and upward;
and stand in the border:

22 and they start early in the morning
and the sun rises on the water;
and the *Moabiy* see the water in front as red as blood:

23 and they say, This is blood:
in being desolated, the sovereigns are desolated
and man smote friend:
and now, *Moab*, to the spoil!

24 And they come to the camp of *Yisra El*;
and *Yisra Eliy* rises and smites the *Moabiy*
so that they flee from their face;
and they smite the *Moabiy*:
and they demolish the cities;
and every man casts his stone
on every good allotment and fills it;
and they stop all the fountains of water
and fell all the good trees:
only, in *Qir Hareseth*
they leave the stones thereof;
and the slingers surround it and smite it.

25

26 And the sovereign of *Moab*
sees the war is too strong for him,

2 KINGS 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

he took with him seven hundred men that drew swords,
to *break split* through
even unto the *king sovereign* of Edom:
but they could not.
27 Then he took his *eldest firstborn* son
that should have reigned in his stead,
and offered *holocausted* him for a *burnt offering holocaust*
upon the wall.
And there was great *indignation rage*
against *Israel Yisra El*:
and they *departed pulled stakes* from him,
and returned to their *own* land.

THE OIL OF THE WIDOW

4 Now there cried
a *certain one* woman of the *wives women*
of the sons of the prophets unto *Elisha Eli Shua*, saying,
Thy servant my *husband is dead man has died*;
and thou knowest that thy servant
did *fear the LORD awe Yah Veh*:
and the *creditor exactor* is come to take unto him
my two *sons children* to be *bondmen servants*.
2 And *Elisha Eli Shua* said unto her,
What shall I *do work* for thee?
tell me, what hast thou in the house?
And she said,
Thine *handmaid Thy maid* hath *not any thing naught*
in the house,
save a *pot except an anointing flask* of oil.
3 Then he said, Go, *borrow ask* thee *vessels instruments*
abroad of all thy *neighbours fellow tabernaclers*,
even empty *vessels instruments*;
4 *borrow not a few diminish not*.
And when thou art come in,
thou shalt shut the door upon thee and upon thy sons,
and shalt pour out into all those *vessels instruments*,
and thou shalt *set aside pluck* that which is full.
5 So she went from him,
and shut the door upon her and upon her sons,
who brought *near the vessels* to her; and she poured out.
6 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
when the *vessels instruments* were *full filled*,
that she said unto her son,
Bring *near* me yet a *vessel an instrument*.
And he said unto her,
There is not a *vessel an instrument* more.
7 And the oil stayed.
Then she came and told the man of *God Elohim*.
And he said, Go, sell the oil,
and *pay shalam* thy *debt lender*,
and live thou and thy *children sons* of the rest.

THE UPPER ROOM OF ELI SHUA

8 And it fell on a day,
that *Elisha Eli Shua* passed to Shunem,
where was a great woman;
and she *constrained laid hold on* him to eat bread.
And *so be* it was,
that as oft as he passed by,
he turned in thither to eat bread.
9 And she said unto her *husband man*, Behold now,
I perceive that this is an holy man of *God Elohim*,
which passeth by us continually.
10 Let us *make work* a little *chamber upper room*,
I *pray beseech* thee, on the wall;
and let us set for him there a bed, and a table,
and a *stool throne*, and a *candlestick menorah*:
and *so be* it *shall be*, when he cometh to us,
that he shall turn in thither.
11 **A SON IS PROPHESED AND BIRTHED**
And it fell on a day, that he came thither,
and he turned *aside* into the *chamber upper room*,
and lay there.
12 And he said to *Cehazi Gay Chazi* his *servant lad*,
Call this *Shunammite Shunemiyth*.
And when he had called her,
she stood *before him at his face*.
13 And he said unto him, Say now unto her,

2 SOVEREIGNS 3, 4 610

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and he takes with him
seven hundred men who draw swords
to split through to the sovereign of Edom:
and they are not able.
27 And he takes his son — his firstbirthed
who reigns in his stead
and holocausts him for a holocaust on the wall:
and there is great rage against Yisra El:
and they pull stakes from him and return to their land.

THE OIL OF THE WIDOW

4 And one woman
of the women of the sons of the prophets
cries to Eli Shua, saying,
Your servant my man died;
and you know your servant awed Yah Veh:
and the exactor comes
to take my two children for servants.
2 And Eli Shua says to her, What work I for you?
Tell me, what have you in the house?
And she says, Your maid has naught in the house,
except an anointing flask of oil.
3 And he says, Go,
ask for instruments of all your fellow tabernaclers
— empty instruments; diminish not:
4 and when you come in
shut the door on you and on your sons;
and pour into all those instruments;
and pluck the full *ones*.
5 So she goes from him
and shuts the door on her and on her sons;
they bring near to her; and she pours.
6 And so be it, the instruments fill up;
and she says to her son,
Bring near me another instrument.
And he says to her,
There are no more instruments.
7 And the oil stays:
and she goes and tells the man of Elohim:
and he says, Go,
sell the oil and shalam your lender
and you and your sons live from the rest.

THE UPPER ROOM OF ELI SHUA

8 And so be it, on a day,
Eli Shua passes to Shunem;
and there is a great woman;
and she lays hold on him to eat bread:
and so so be it, as often as he passes by,
he turns in to eat bread.
9 And she says to her man, Behold now,
I perceive that this is a holy man of Elohim,
who passes by us continually:
10 O that we work, I beseech you,
a little upper room on the wall;
and set a bed and a table there for him;
and a throne and a menorah:
and so be it,
that he comes to us, and turns in here.
11 **A SON IS PROPHESED AND BIRTHED**
And so be it, on a day,
he comes there and turns aside into the upper room
and lies down there:
12 and he says to Gay Chazi his lad,
Call this Shunemiyth.
— and he calls her, and she stands at his face.
13 And he says to him, Say now to her,

2 KINGS 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Behold, thou hast been careful **trembled** for us
with all this *care* **trembling**;
what is to be *done* **worked** for thee?
wouldest **shouldest** thou
be spoken for **that we word** to the *king* **sovereign**,
or to the *captain* **governor** of the host?
And she *answered* **said**,
I *dwell* **settle** among mine own people.
14 And he said, What then is to be *done* **worked** for her?
And *Gehazi answered* **Gay Chazi said**,
Verily **Nevertheless**
she hath no *child* **son**, and her *husband* **man** is old.
15 And he said, Call her.
And when he had called her, she stood in the *door* **portal**.
16 And he said, About this season,
according to the time of life, thou shalt embrace a son.
And she said, Nay, my *lord* **adoni**,
thou man of *God* **Elohim**,
do not lie unto *thine handmaid* **thy maid**.
17 And the woman conceived,
and *bare* **birthed** a son at that season
that *Elisha* **Eli Shua** had *said* **worded** unto her,
according to the time of life.

THE SON DIES

18 And when the child was grown, it fell on a day,
that he went out to his father to the *reapers* **harvesters**.
19 And he said unto his father, My head, my head.
And he said to a lad, *Carry* **Lift** him to his mother.
20 And when he had *taken* **lifted** him,
and brought him to his mother,
he *sat* **settled** on her knees till noon, and *then* died.
21 And she *went up* **ascended**,
and laid him on the bed of the man of *God* **Elohim**,
and shut *the door* upon him, and went out.
22 And she called unto her *husband* **man**, and said,
Send me, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
one of the *young men* **lads**,
and one of the *asses* **she burros**,
that I may run to the man of *God* **Elohim**,
and *come again* **return**.
23 And he said,
Wherefore *wilt* **shalt** thou go to him to day?
it is neither new moon, nor *sabbath* **shabbath**.
And she said, *It shall be well* **Shalom**.
24 Then she *saddled an ass* **harnessed a she burro**,
and said to her *servant* **lad**, Drive, and go *forward*;
slack **restrain** not thy riding for me, except I *bid* **say** to thee.
25 So she went and came unto the man of *God* **Elohim**
to mount *Carmel* **Karmel**.
And *so be* it *came to pass*,
when the man of *God* **Elohim** saw her afar off,
that he said to *Gehazi* **Gay Chazi** his *servant* **lad**,
Behold, *yonder is* that *Shunammite* **Shunemyith**:
26 Run now, I *pray* **beseech** thee, to meet her,
and say unto her,
Is it well **Shalom** with thee?
is it well **Shalom** with thy *husband* **man**?
is it well **Shalom** with the child?
And she *answered* **said**, *It is well* **Shalom**:
27 And when she came to the man of *God* **Elohim**
to the *hill* **mountain**, she *caught* **held** him by the feet:
but *Gehazi came near* **Gay Chazi approaches**
to *thrust* **expel** her away.
And the man of *God* **Elohim** said, *Let* **Release** her *alone*;
for her soul is *vexed* **embittered** within her:
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *hid* **concealed** it from me,
and hath not told me.
28 Then she said, Did I *desire* **ask** a son of my *lord* **adoni**?
did I not say, Do not *deceive* **mislead** me?
29 Then he said to *Gehazi* **Gay Chazi**, Gird up thy loins,
and take my staff in thine hand, and go thy way:
if thou *meet any* **find a** man, *salute* **bless** him not;
and if *any salute* **a man bless** thee, answer him not *again*:
and *lay* **set** my staff upon the face of the *child* **lad**.

2 SOVEREIGNS 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Behold, you tremble all this trembling;
What work we for you?
What word we to the sovereign
— or to the governor of the host?
And she says, I settle among my own people.
14 And he says, What then work we for her?
And Gay Chazi says,
Verily, she has no son and her man is old.
15 And he says, Call her.
— and he calls her, and she stands in the portal.
16 And he says, About this season,
according to the time of life, you embrace a son.
And she says, No, my adoni, you man of Elohim;
lie not to your maid.
17 — and the woman conceives and births a son
at the season Eli Shua worded to her
according to the time of life.

THE SON DIES

18 And the child grows, and so be it, on a day,
he goes to his father to the harvesters,
and he says to his father, My head! My head!
And he says to a lad, Lift him to his mother:
— and he lifts him and brings him to his mother;
and he settles on her knees until noon and dies.
21 And she ascends
and lies him down on the bed of the man of Elohim
and shuts him in and comes out.
22 And she calls to her man and says,
Send me, I beseech,
one of the lads and one of the she burros;
and I run to the man of Elohim and return.
23 And he says, Why go you to him today?
It is neither new moon nor shabbath.
And she says, Shalom.
24 And she harnesses a she burro
and says to her lad, Drive! Go!
Restrain not your riding for me, unless I say so.
25 So she goes and comes to the man of Elohim
— to mount Karmel.
And so be it, the man of Elohim sees her afar off,
and he says to Gay Chazi his lad,
Behold, that Shunemyith:
26 run now, I beseech you, to meet her and say to her,
Shalom with you? Shalom with your man?
Shalom with the child?
And she says, Shalom!
27 And when she comes to the man of Elohim
to the mountain, she holds him by the feet:
and Gay Chazi approaches to expel her.
And the man of Elohim says, Release her;
for her soul is embittered:
and Yah Veh concealed it from me and told me not.
28 Then she says, Asked I a son of my adoni?
Said I not, Mislead me not?
29 Then he says to Gay Chazi, Gird your loins
and take my staff in your hand and go your way:
if you find a man, bless him not;
and if a man bless you, answer him not:
and set my staff on the face of the lad.

2 KINGS 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

30 And the mother of the *child lad* said,
As the **LORD Yah Veh** liveth, and as thy soul liveth,
I will **shall** not leave thee.
And he arose, and *followed* **went after** her.
31 And *Gehazi* **Gay Chazi** passed on
before them **from their face**,
and *laid* **set** the staff upon the face of the *child lad*;
but there was neither voice, nor *hearing* **hearkening**.
Wherefore he *went again* **turned back** to meet him,
and told him, saying, The *child lad* is not awaked.
32 And when *Elisha* **Eli Shua** was come into the house,
behold, the *child was dead* **lad had died**,
and laid upon his bed.

THE SON ENLIVENED

33 He went in therefore,
and shut the door upon them *twain* **both**,
and prayed unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
34 And he *went up* **ascended**, and lay upon the child,
and *put* **set** his mouth upon his mouth,
and his eyes upon his eyes,
and his *hands* **palms** upon his *hands* **palms**:
and *stretched* **prostrated** himself upon the child;
and the flesh of the child *waxed warm* **heated**.
35 Then he returned, and walked in the house
to and fro **once hither and once thither**;
and *went up* **ascended**,
and *stretched* **prostrated** himself upon him:
and the *child lad* sneezed seven times,
and the *child lad* opened his eyes.
36 And he called *Gehazi* **Gay Chazi**, and said,
Call this *Shunammite* **Shunemiyth**.
So he called her.
And when she was come in unto him, he said,
Take up **Lift** thy son.
37 Then she went in, and fell at his feet,
and *bowed* **prostrated** herself to the *ground* **earth**,
and *took up* **lifted** her son, and went out.

ELI SHUA PURGES THE POTTAGE

38 And *Elisha came again* **Eli Shua returned** to Gilgal:
and there was a *dearth* **famine** in the land;
and the sons of the prophets
were sitting before him **settled at his face**:
and he said unto his *servant* **lad**,
Set on the great *pot* **caldron**,
and *seethe* **stew** pottage for the sons of the prophets.
39 And one went out into the field to gather herbs,
and found a *wild vine* **vine of the field**,
and gathered thereof *wild gourds* **cucumbers of the field**
his *lap* **coverall** full, and came and *shred* **cleaved** them
into the *pot* **caldron** of pottage:
for they knew them not.
40 So they poured out for the men to eat.
And **so be** it *came to pass*,
as they were eating of the pottage,
that they cried out, and said,
O *thou* man of *God* **Elohim**,
there is death in the *pot* **caldron**.
And they could not eat thereof.
41 But he said, *Then bring meal* **Take flour**.
And he cast it into the *pot* **caldron**;
and he said, Pour out for the people, that they may eat.
And there was no *harm* **evil word** in the *pot* **caldron**.
42 And there came a man
from *Baalshalisha* **Baal Shalishah**,
and brought the man of *God* **Elohim** bread of the firstfruits,
twenty loaves **bread** of barley,
and *full ears of corn* **of the orchard**
in the *husk* **sack** thereof. And he said,
Give unto the people, that they may eat.
43 And his *servitor* **minister** said,
What, should I *set* **give** this
before at the face of an hundred men?
He said again, Give the people, that they may eat:
for thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**, They shall eat,
and **there** shall *leave remain* thereof.
44 So he *set it before them* **gave it at their face**,

2 SOVEREIGNS 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

30 And the mother of the lad says,
Yah Veh lives and your soul lives,
I leave you not.
— and he rises and goes after her.
31 And Gay Chazi passes on from their face
and sets the staff on the face of the lad;
and there is neither voice nor hearkening:
and he turns back to meet him
and tells him, saying, The lad wakens not.
32 And Eli Shua comes to the house, and behold,
the lad had died and lies on his bed.

THE SON ENLIVENS

33 And he goes in and shuts the door on them both
and prays to Yah Veh:
34 and he ascends and lies down on the child
and sets his mouth on his mouth
and his eyes on his eyes
and his *palms* on his *palms*
and prostrates himself on the child;
and the flesh of the child heats:
35 and he returns and walks in the house
once here and once there;
and ascends and prostrates himself on him:
and the lad sneezes seven times
and the lad opens his eyes.
36 And he calls Gay Chazi and says,
Call this Shunemiyth.
— and he calls her.
And she comes in to him,
and he says, Lift your son.
37 — and she goes in and falls at his feet
and prostrates herself to the earth
and lifts her son and goes out.

ELI SHUA PURGES THE POTTAGE

38 And Eli Shua returns to Gilgal:
and there is a famine in the land;
and the sons of the prophets settle at his face:
and he says to his lad,
Set on the great caldron
and stew pottage for the sons of the prophets.
39 And one goes to the field to gather herbs
and finds a vine of the field;
and gathers his coverall full of cucumbers of the field
and comes and cleaves them
into the caldron of pottage;
for they know not:
40 and they pour for the men to eat.
And so be it, they eat the pottage,
and they cry out and say,
O man of Elohim, death in the caldron!
— and they cannot eat thereof.
41 And he says, Take flour.
— and he casts it into the caldron.
And he says, Pour out for the people to eat.
— and there is no evil word in the caldron.
42 And a man comes from Baal Shalishah
and brings the man of Elohim
bread of the firstfruits, twenty bread of barley;
and of the orchard, in the sack:
and he says, Give to the people to eat.
43 And his minister says,
What? Give this at the face of a hundred men?
He says again, Give to the people to eat:
for thus says Yah Veh, Eat, and some remains.
44 So he gives it at their face;

2 KINGS 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they did eat,
and *left there remained* thereof,
according to the word of the LORD **Yah Veh**.

ELI SHUA HEALS NAAMAN

5 Now Naaman, *captain governor* of the host
of the *king sovereign* of Syria **Aram**,
was a great man *with at the face of his master adoni*,
and *honourable accepted by face*,
because by him
the LORD **Yah Veh** had given *deliverance salvation*
unto Syria **Aram**:
he was also a mighty man in valour, *but he was* — a leper.
2 And the *Syrians Aramiy*
had gone out by *companies troops*,
and had *brought away captive captured*
out of the land of *Israel Yisra El* a little *maid lass*;
and she waited *on at the face of Naaman's wife woman*.
3 And she said unto her *mistress lady*,
Would God my lord O that my adoni
were with faced the prophet that is in *Samaria Shomeron!*
for he would recover that he gather him of his leprosy.
4 And one went in, and told his *lord adoni*, saying,
Thus and thus *said worded* the *maid lass*
that is of the land of *Israel Yisra El*.
5 And the *king sovereign* of Syria **Aram** said, Go to,
go, and I *will shall* send a *letter scroll*
unto the *king sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*.
And he *departed went*,
and took *with him in his hand* ten *talents rounds* of silver,
and six thousand *pieces of gold*,
and ten changes of *raiment clothes*.
6 And he brought the *letter scroll*
to the *king sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*, saying,
Now when this *letter scroll* is come unto thee, behold,
I have *therewith* sent Naaman my servant to thee,
that thou mayest *recover gather* him of his leprosy.
7 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
when the *king sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*
had *read called out* the *letter scroll*,
that he *rent ripped* his clothes, and said,
Am I *God Elohim*, to *kill deathify* and to make alive,
that this man doth send unto me
to *recover gather* a man of his leprosy?
wherefore consider only perceive, I *pray beseech* you,
and see how he *seeketh a quarrel beseeches* against me.
8 And *so be* it *was so*,
when *Elisha Eli Shua* the man of *God Elohim* had heard
that the *king sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*
had *rent ripped* his clothes,
that he sent to the *king sovereign*, saying,
Wherefore hast thou *rent ripped* thy clothes?
let him come now to me,
and he shall know that there is a prophet in *Israel Yisra El*.
9 So Naaman came with his horses and with his chariot,
and stood at the *door portal* of the house of *Elisha Eli Shua*.
10 And *Elisha Eli Shua*
sent a *messenger an angel* unto him, saying,
Go and *wash baptize* in *Jordan Yarden* seven times,
and thy flesh shall *come again return* to thee,
and thou shalt be *clean purified*.
11 But Naaman was *wroth enraged*, and went away,
and said, Behold, I *thought said*,
That in coming, He *will shall* *surely* come out to me,
and stand and call on the name
of the LORD **Yah Veh** his *God Elohim*,
and *strike wave* his hand over the place,
and *recover gather* the leper.
12 Are not *Abana Amanah* and *Pharpar Parpar*,
rivers of *Damascus Dammeseq*,
better than all the waters of *Israel Yisra El*?
may I not *wash baptize* in them, and be *clean purified*?
So he turned *from his face* and went away in a *rage fury*.
13 And his servants came near,
and *spake worded* unto him, and said, My father,
if the prophet had *bid worded* thee
do some a great thing word,
wouldest shouldest thou not have *done worked* it?
how much rather then also, when he saith to thee,
Wash Baptize, and be *clean purified*?

2 SOVEREIGNS 4, 5 613

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they eat and some remains,
according to the word of Yah Veh.

ELI SHUA HEALS NAAMAN

5 And Naaman
governor of the host of the sovereign of Aram
is a great man at the face of his adoni;
accepted by face,
because by him Yah Veh gave salvation to Aram:
he is also a mighty man in valour — a leper.
2 And the Aramiy go by troops
and capture a little lass from the land of Yisra El;
and she waits at the face of the woman of Naaman.
3 And she says to her lady,
O that my adoni face the prophet in Shomeron
to gather him of his leprosy.
4 And one goes in and tells his adoni, saying,
The lass of the land of Yisra El
words thus and thus.
5 And the sovereign of Aram says, Go!
Go, and I send a scroll to the sovereign of Yisra El.
And he goes; and in his hand he takes
ten rounds of silver
and six thousand of gold
and ten changes of clothes:
6 and he brings the scroll to the sovereign of Yisra El,
saying,
And now this scroll comes to you;
and behold, I send Naaman my servant to you
to gather him of his leprosy.
7 And so be it,
the sovereign of Yisra El calls out the scroll,
and he rips his clothes and says,
Am I Elohim? — to deathify and to enliven?
— that this man sends to me
to gather a man of his leprosy?
Only, perceive, I beseech,
and see how he beseeches me.
8 And so be it,
Eli Shua the man of Elohim hears
that the sovereign of Yisra El rips his clothes,
and he sends to the sovereign, saying,
Why rip your clothes?
Have him come to me
so that he knows there is a prophet in Yisra El.
9 And Naaman comes
with his horses and with his chariot
and stands at the portal of the house of Eli Shua.
10 And Eli Shua sends an angel to him, saying,
Go and baptize in Yarden seven times
and your flesh returns to you, and you are purified.
11 And Naaman rages and goes away and says,
Behold, I say to myself,
In coming, he comes to me and stands
and calls on the name of Yah Veh his Elohim
and waves his hand over the place
and gathers the leper!
12 Are not Amanah and Parpar, rivers of Dammeseq,
better than all the waters of Yisra El?
Baptize I not in them and become purified?
— and he turns his face and goes in a fury.
13 And his servants come near and word to him
and say, My father,
had the prophet worded you a great word,
had you not worked it?
And also, he says to you, Baptize and be purified.

2 KINGS 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

14 Then went **descended** he down,
and dipped himself seven times in *Jordan Yarden*,
according to the *saying word* of the man of *God Elohim*:
and his flesh *came again returned*
like unto the flesh of a little *child lad*,
and he was *clean purified*.

15 And he returned to the man of *God Elohim*,
he and all his *company camp*, and came,
and stood *before him at his face*: and he said, Behold,
now I know that there is no *God Elohim* in all the earth,
but except in Israel Yisra El:
now therefore, I *pray beseech* thee,
take a blessing of thy servant.

16 But he said, *As the LORD Yah Veh liveth*,
before whom at whose face I stand,
I *will receive shall take* none.
And he urged him to take it; but he refused.

17 And Naaman said,
Shall there not then If not, I *pray beseech* thee,
let there be given to thy servant
two a pair of mules' burden/load of earth soil?
for thy servant *will shall* henceforth *offer work*
neither *burnt offering holocaust* nor sacrifice
unto other *gods elohim*, but unto *the LORD Yah Veh*.

18 In this *thing word*
the LORD pardon Yah Veh forgive thy servant,
that when my *master adoni*
goeth into the house of Rimmon to *worship prostrate* there,
and he leaneth on my hand,
and I *bow prostrate* myself in the house of Rimmon:
when I *bow down prostrate* myself
in the house of Rimmon,
the LORD pardon Yah Veh forgive thy servant
in this *thing word*.

19 And he said unto him, Go in *peace shalom*.
So he *departed went* from him a *little way bit of earth*.

20 But *Gehazi Gay Chazi*, the *servant lad of Elisha Eli Shua*
the man of *God Elohim*, said,
Behold, my *master adoni* hath *spared restrained*
Naaman this *Syrian Aramiy*,
in not receiving from taking at his hands
that which he brought:
but, *as the LORD Yah Veh liveth*, I *will shall* run after him,
and take *somewhat* of him.

21 So *Gehazi followed Gay Chazi pursued* after Naaman.
And when Naaman saw him running after *him*,
he *lighted down fell away* from the chariot to meet him,
and said, *Is all well Shalom?*

22 And he said, *All is well Shalom*.
My *master adoni* hath sent me, saying, Behold,
even now there be come to me
from mount *Ephraim Ephrayim*
two *young men lads* of the sons of the prophets:
give them, I *pray beseech* thee, a *talent round* of silver,
and two changes of *garments clothes*.

23 And Naaman said,
Be content If you will, take two *talents rounds*.
And he *urged breached* him,
and bound two *talents rounds* of silver in two *bags pouches*,
with two changes of *garments clothes*,
and *laid gave* them upon two of his *servants lads*;
and they bare them *before him at his face*.

24 And when he came to the *tower mound*,
he took them from their hand,
and *bestowed visited* them in the house:
and he *let sent* the men *go away*,
and they *departed went*.

25 But he went in,
and stood *before in front of* his *master adoni*.
And *Elisha Eli Shua* said unto him,
Whence *comest thou, Gehazi Gay Chazi?*
And he said,
Thy servant went *no whither neither here nor there*.

26 And he said unto him, Went not mine heart *with thee*,
when the man turned again from his chariot to meet thee?
Is it a time to *receive money take silver*,
and to *receive garments take clothes*,
and oliveyards, and vineyards, and *sheep flock*, and oxen,
and *menservants servants*, and *maidservants maids*?

2 SOVEREIGNS 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

14 And he descends
and dips himself seven times in Yarden,
according to the word of the man of Elohim:
and his flesh returns as the flesh of a little lad
and he is purified.

15 And he returns to the man of Elohim
— he and all his camp
and come and stand at his face:
and he says, Behold,
now I know there is no Elohim in all the earth
except in Yisra El:
and now, I beseech you,
take a blessing of your servant.

16 But he says, Yah Veh lives,
at whose face I stand, I take none.
— and he urges him to take; but he refuses.

17 And Naaman says, If not, I beseech you,
O that I give your servant a load of soil of a pair of mules?
For your servant works neither holocaust nor sacrifice
to other elohim, except to Yah Veh:
in this word Yah Veh forgive your servant,
that when my adoni
goes into the house of Rimmon to prostrate there
and he leans on my hand;
and I prostrate myself in the house of Rimmon:
when I prostrate myself in the house of Rimmon,
that Yah Veh forgive your servant in this word.

19 And he says to him, Go in shalom.
— and he goes a bit of earth from him.

20 And Gay Chazi
the lad of Eli Shua the man of Elohim says,
Behold, my adoni restrains Naaman this Aramiy
from taking at his hands what he brought:
and, Yah Veh lives, I run after him and take of him.

21 And Gay Chazi pursues Naaman:
and Naaman sees him running after:
and he falls from the chariot to meet him and says,
Shalom?

22 And he says, Shalom!
My adoni sends me, saying, Behold,
now there come to me from mount Ephrayim
two lads of the sons of the prophets:
give them, I beseech thee,
a round of silver and two changes of clothes.

23 And Naaman says, If you will, take two rounds.
— and he breaches him;
and binds rounds of silver in two pouches
with two changes of clothes;
and gives them on two of his lads;
and they bear them at his face.

24 And he comes to the mound,
and he takes them from their hand,
and visits them in the house:
and sends the men away, and they go:
and he goes in and stands in front of his adoni.

And Eli Shua says to him,
Where, Gay Chazi?

And he says,
Your servant went neither here nor there.

26 And he says to him, Went not my heart,
when the man turned from his chariot to meet you?
Is it a time to take silver and to take clothes
and oliveyards and vineyards and flock and oxen
and servants and maids?

2 KINGS 5, 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

27 The leprosy *therefore* of Naaman shall **cleave adhere** unto thee, and unto thy seed *for ever* **eternally**. And he went out from his *presence* **face** a leper as *white* as snow.

THE FLOATING IRON

6 And the sons of the prophets said unto *Elisha* **Eli Shua**, Behold now, the place where we *dwell with thee* **settle at thy face** is *too strait* **tribulated** for us.

2 Let us go, we *pray* **beseech** thee, unto *Jordan* **Yarden**, and take thence every man a **one** beam, and let us *make* **work** us a place there, where we may *dwell* **settle**.
And he *answered* **said**, Go ye.

3 And one said,
 Be content **If you will**, I *pray* **beseech** thee, and go with thy servants.
And he *answered* **said**, I *will* **shall** go.

4 So he went with them.
And when they came to *Jordan* **Yarden**, they cut down *wood* **trees**.

5 But as one was felling a beam, the *ax head* **iron** fell into the water: and he cried, and said, *Alas* **Aha**, *master* **adoni!** for it was *borrowed* **lent**.

6 And the man of *God* **Elohim** said, Where fell it?
And he *shewed him* **had him see** the place.
And he *cut down* **clipped** a *stick* **tree**, and cast it in thither;
and the iron did *swim* **float**.

7 Therefore said he, Take it up to thee.
And he *put out* **spread** his hand, and took it.

8 Then the *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram** *warred* **fought** against *Israel* **Yisra El**, and *took counsel* **counselled** with his servants, saying, In such and such a place shall be my *camp* **encampment**.

9 And the man of *God* **Elohim** sent unto the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, saying, *Beware* **Guard** that thou pass not *such a* **this** place; for thither the *Syrians are come down* **Aramiy descend**.

10 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El** sent to the place which the man of *God* **told** **Elohim** said and *warned* **enlightened** him of, and *saved* **guarded** himself there, not once nor twice.

11 Therefore the heart of the *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram** was *sore troubled* **stormed** for this *thing* **word**; and he called his servants, and said unto them, *will* **shall** ye not *shew* **tell** me which of us is for the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?

12 And one of his servants said,
None, my *lord* **adoni**, O *king* **sovereign**:
but *Elisha* **Eli Shua**, the prophet that is in *Israel* **Yisra El**, telleth the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El** the words that thou *speakest* **wordest** in thy bedchamber.

13 And he said, Go and *spy* **see** where he is, that I may send and *fetch* **take** him.
And it was told him, saying, Behold, *he is* in Dothan.

14 Therefore sent he thither horses, and chariots, and a *great host* **heavy valiant**: and they came by night, and *compassed* **surrounded** the city about.

15 And when the *servant* **lad** of the man of *God* **Elohim** was *risen* **had started** early, and gone forth, behold, *an host* **compassed** **the valiant surrounded** the city both with horses and chariots.
And his *servant* **minister** said unto him, *Alas* **Aha**, my *master* **adoni!** how shall we *do* **work**?

16 And he *answered* **said**, *Fear* **Awe** not: for they that be with us are *more* **greater** than they that be with them.

17 And *Elisha* **Eli Shua** prayed, and said, **LORD** **Yah Veh**, I *pray* **beseech** thee,

2 SOVEREIGNS 5, 6 615

exeGeses companion BIBLE

27 The leprosy of Naaman adheres to you and to your seed eternally.
— and he goes out from his face leperous as snow.

THE FLOATING IRON

6 And the sons of the prophets say to Eli Shua, Behold now, the place we settle at your face is tribulated for us:

2 Let us go, we beseech, to Yarden; and every man take one beam and work us a place to settle.

And he says, Go!

3 And one says, If you will, I beseech, go with your servants.

And he says, I go.

4 And he goes with them: and they come to Yarden and cut down trees: and so be it, as one fells a beam, the iron falls into the water: and he cries out and says, Aha, adoni! It was loaned.

6 And the man of Elohim says, Where fell it?

And he shows the place: and he clips a tree and casts it in there; and the iron floats.

7 And he says, Take it to yourself. — and he spreads his hand and takes it.

8 And the sovereign of Aram fights Yisra El and counsels with his servants, saying, In such and such a place is my encampment.

9 And the man of Elohim sends to the sovereign of Yisra El, saying, Guard that you not pass this place; for the Aramiy descend there:

10 and the sovereign of Yisra El sends to the place of which the man of Elohim says; and enlightens him; and guards himself there — neither once nor twice.

11 And the heart of the sovereign of Aram storms about because of this word; and he calls his servants and says to them, Tell you me not who of us is for the sovereign of Yisra El?

12 And one of his servants says, None, my adoni, O sovereign: for Eli Shua, the prophet in Yisra El, tells the sovereign of Yisra El the words you word in your bedchamber.

13 And he says, Go and see where he is, so that I send and take him.

And they tell him, saying, Behold, in Dothan.

14 And he sends horses and chariots and heavy valiant there: and they come by night and surround the city: and the lad of the man of Elohim starts early and goes forth; and behold, the valiant surround the city both with horses and chariots.

15 And his minister says to him, Aha, my adoni! How work we?

16 And he says, Awe not: for these with us are greater than those with them.

17 And Eli Shua prays and says, Yah Veh, I beseech,

2 KINGS 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

open his eyes, that he may see.
And the LORD **Yah Veh**
opened the eyes of the *young man lad*;
and he saw: and, behold,
the mountain was *full of filled*
with horses and chariots of fire
round about *Elisha Eli Shua*.
18 And when they *came down descended* to him,
Elisha Eli Shua prayed unto the LORD **Yah Veh**, and said,
Smite this *people goyim*, I pray **beseech** thee,
with blindness.
And he smote them with blindness
according to the word of *Elisha Eli Shua*.
19 And *Elisha Eli Shua* said unto them,
This is not the way, neither is this the city:
follow come ye **after** me,
and I *will bring shall walk* you to the man whom ye seek.
But he *led walked* them to *Samaria Shomeron*.
20 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when they were come into *Samaria Shomeron*,
that *Elisha Eli Shua* said, LORD **Yah Veh**,
open the eyes of these *men*, that they may see.
And the LORD **Yah Veh** opened their eyes, and they saw;
and, behold, they were in the midst of *Samaria Shomeron*.
21 And the king **sovereign** of *Israel Yisra El*
said unto *Elisha Eli Shua*, when he saw them,
My father, shall I smite them? shall I smite them?
22 And he *answered said*, Thou shalt not smite them:
wouldest shouldst thou smite those
whom thou hast *taken captive captured*
with thy sword and with thy bow?
set bread and water *before them at their face*,
that they may eat and drink, and go to their *master adoni*.
23 And he *prepared digged* great provision for them:
and when they had eaten and drunk, he sent them away,
and they went to their *master adoni*.
So the *bands troops* of *Syria Aram*
came no more added not to come
into the land of *Israel Yisra El*.
FAMINE IN SHOMERON
24 And **so be** it *came to pass* after this,
that *Benhadad Ben Hadad*, king **sovereign** of *Syria Aram*
gathered all his *host camp*,
and *went up ascended*, and besieged *Samaria Shomeron*.
25 And there was a great famine in *Samaria Shomeron*:
and, behold, they besieged it,
until an *ass's a he burro's* head
was *sold for fourscore eighty* pieces of silver,
and the fourth *part of a cab qab* of dove's *dung dungs*
for five pieces of silver.
26 And as the king **sovereign** of *Israel Yisra El*
was passing by upon the wall,
there cried a woman unto him, saying,
Help Save, my lord **adoni**, O king **sovereign**.
27 And he said,
If the LORD **Yah Veh** do not *help save* thee,
whence shall I *help save* thee?
out of the *barnfloor threshingfloor*,
or out of the *winepress trough*?
28 And the king **sovereign** said unto her, What aileth thee?
And she *answered said*, This woman said unto me,
Give thy son, that we may eat him to day,
and we *will shall* eat my son to morrow.
29 So we *boiled stewed* my son, and did eat him:
and I said unto her on the next day,
Give thy son, that we may eat him:
and she hath hid her son.
30 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when the king **sovereign** heard the words of the woman,
that he *rent ripped* his clothes;
and he passed by upon the wall,
and the people *looked saw*, and, behold,
he had *sackcloth within saq housed* upon his flesh.
31 Then he said, *God do Elohim work* so
and *more add* also to me,
if the head of *Elisha Eli Shua* the son of Shaphat
shall stand on him this day.

2 SOVEREIGNS 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

open his eyes, so that he sees.
And Yah Veh opens the eyes of the lad; and he sees:
and behold,
the mountain fills with horses and chariots of fire
all around Eli Shua.
18 And they descend to him,
and Eli Shua prays to Yah Veh and says,
Smite this goyim, I beseech, with blindness.
— and he smites them with blindness
according to the word of Eli Shua.
19 And Eli Shua says to them,
This is neither the way nor is this the city:
come after me, and I walk you to the man you seek.
— and he walks them to Shomeron.
20 And so be it,
they come into Shomeron, and Eli Shua says,
Yah Veh, open their eyes so that they see.
And Yah Veh opens their eyes and they see;
and behold, they are midst Shomeron.
21 And he sees them,
and the sovereign of Yisra El says to Eli Shua,
Smite I? Smite I, my father?
22 And he says, Smite not!
Do you smite whom you captured
with your sword and with your bow?
Set bread and water at their face
to eat and drink and go to their adoni.
23 And he digs great provision for them:
and they eat and drink;
and he sends them away to go to their adoni:
and the troops of Aram add not to come
into the land of Yisra El.
FAMINE IN SHOMERON
24 And so be it, afterward,
Ben Hadad sovereign of Aram gathers all his camp
and ascends and besieges Shomeron;
25 and there is a great famine in Shomeron:
and behold, they besiege it,
until the head of a he burro *is* eighty silver
and the fourth qab of dove dungs *is* five silver.
26 And as the sovereign of Yisra El
passes by on the wall,
a woman cries out to him, saying,
Save, my adoni, O sovereign.
27 And he says,
If Yah Veh saves you not, how save I you?
From the threshingfloor? Or from the trough?
28 And the sovereign says to her, What ails you?
And she says, This woman said to me,
Give your son to eat today
and eat my son tomorrow:
so we stewed my son and ate him:
29 and I said to her on the next day,
Give your son, to eat him:
and she hid her son.
30 And so be it,
the sovereign hears the words of the woman,
and he rips his clothes;
and he passes by on the wall and the people see;
and behold, he houses saq on his flesh.
31 And he says, Elohim work thus and add also to me,
if the head of Eli Shua the son of Shaphat
stands on him this day.

2 KINGS 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 32 But *Elisha* sat **Eli Shua** settled in his house,
and the elders sat **settled** with him;
and *the king* sent a man from *before him* **his face**:
but ere the *messenger* **angel** came to him,
he said to the elders,
See ye how this son of a murderer
hath sent to *take away* **turn aside** mine head?
look see, when the *messenger* **angel** cometh,
shut the door, and *hold him fast* **press him** at the door:
is not the *sound* **voice** of his *master's* **adoni's** feet
behind **after** him?
33 And while he yet *talked* **worded** with them, behold,
the *messenger* came *down* **angel descended** unto him:
and he said, Behold, this evil is of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**;
what **Why** should I *wait for the* **LORD** **await Yah Veh**
any longer?

ELI SHUA PROPHESES FOOD

- 7 Then *Elisha* **Eli Shua** said,
Hear ye the word of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**;
Thus saith *the* **LORD Yah Veh**,
To morrow about this time
shall a *measure* **seah** of *fine* flour be *sold* for a shekel,
and two *measures* **seahs** of barley for a shekel,
in the *gate* **portal** of *Samaria* **Shomeron**.
2 Then a *lord* **tertiary**
on whose hand the *king* **sovereign** leaned
answered the man of *God* **Elohim**, and said, Behold,
if the **LORD** **though Yah Veh**
would make **should work** windows
in heaven **the heavens**,
might this *thing* **word** be?
And he said, Behold, thou shalt see *it* with thine eyes,
but shalt not eat hereof.
3 And there were four leprous men
at the *entering in* **opening** of the *gate* **portal**:
and they said *one* **man** to *another* **friend**,
Why *sit* **settle** we here until we die?
4 If we say, We *will* **shall** enter into the city,
then the famine is in the city, and we shall die there:
and if we *sit still* **settle** here, we die also.
Now therefore come,
and let us fall unto the *host* **camp** of the *Syrians* **Aramiy**:
if they save us alive, we shall live;
and if they *kill* **deathify** us, we shall *but* die.
5 And they rose up in the *twilight* **evening breeze**,
to go unto the camp of the *Syrians* **Aramiy**:
and when they were come
to the *uttermost part* **extremity** of the camp of *Syria* **Aram**,
behold, there was no man there.
6 For the *Lord* **Adonay**
had *made* the *host* **camp** of the *Syrians* **Aramiy**
to hear a *noise* **voice** of chariots,
and a *noise* **voice** of horses,
even the noise **voice** of a great *host* **valiant**:
and they said *one* **man** to *another* **brother**,
Lo Behold, the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
hath hired against us
the *kings* **sovereigns** of the *Hittites* **Hethiy**,
and the *kings* **sovereigns** of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
to come upon us.
7 Wherefore they arose
and fled in the *twilight* **evening breeze**,
and left their tents,
and their horses, and their *asses* **he burros**,
even the camp as it was, and fled for their *life* **soul**.
8 And when these lepers
came to the *uttermost part* **extremity** of the camp,
they went into one tent, and did eat and drink,
and *carried* **lifted** thence silver, and gold,
and *raiment* **clothes**, and went and hid it;
and *came again* **returned**, and entered into another tent,
and *carried* **lifted** thence *also*, and went and hid it.
9 Then they said *one* **man** to *another* **friend**,
We *do* **work** not well:
this day is a day of *good tidings* **evangelism**,
and we *hold our* **peace** **hush**:
if we *tarry* **wait** till the morning light,
some mischief will come upon **perversion shall find us**:
now therefore come,

2 SOVEREIGNS 6, 7 617

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 32 And Eli Shua settles in his house
and the elders settle with him;
and *he* sends a man from his face:
but ere the angel comes to him, he says to the elders,
You see how this son of a murderer
sends to turn aside my head?
See when the angel comes,
and shut the door and press him at the door.
Is not the voice of feet of his adoni after him?
33 And while he yet words with them, behold,
the angel descends to him:
and he says, Behold, this evil is of Yah Veh!
Why await I Yah Veh any longer?

ELI SHUA PROPHESES FOOD

- 7 And Eli Shua says, Hear the word of Yah Veh;
Thus says Yah Veh, Tomorrow about this time,
a seah of flour for a shekel
and two seahs of barley for a shekel
in the portal of Shomeron.
2 Then a tertiary on whose hand the sovereign leans
answers the man of Elohim and says, Behold,
though Yah Veh work windows in the heavens,
how becomes this word?
And he says, Behold,
you see with your eyes and eat not thereof.
3 And there are four leprous men
at the opening of the portal:
and they say man to friend,
Why settle we here until we die?
4 If we say, We enter into the city,
then the famine is in the city and we die there:
and if we settle here, we die also.
Now come and fall to the camp of the Aramiy:
if they save us alive, we live;
and if they deathify us, we die.
5 And they rise in the evening breeze
to go to the camp of the Aramiy:
and they come to the extremity of the camp of Aram,
and behold, no man is there:
6 for Adonay has the camp of the Aramiy
hear a voice of chariots and a voice of horses
— the voice of a great valiant.
And they say man to brother,
Behold, the sovereign of Yisra El hires against us
the sovereigns of the Hethiy
and the sovereigns of the Misrayim
to come against us.
7 And they rise and flee in the evening breeze
and leave their tents and the camp as it is
and their horses and their he burros
— and flee for their soul:
8 and these lepers come to the extremity of the camp;
and they go into one tent and eat and drink
and lift silver and gold and clothes; and go hide it;
and return and enter into another tent
and lift from there; and go hide it.
9 And they say man to friend, We work not well:
this day is a day of evangelism; and we hush:
if we wait until the morning light, perversion finds us:
and now come

2 KINGS 7, 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

that we may go and tell the king's **sovereign's** household.
10 So they came and called unto the porter of the city:
and they told them, saying,
We came to the camp of the **Syrians Aramiy**, and, behold,
there was no man there, neither voice of **man human**,
but horses **ted bound**, and **asses tied he burros bound**,
and the tents as they were.
11 And he called the porters;
and they told it to the **king's sovereign's** house within.
12 And the **king sovereign** arose in the night,
and said unto his servants,
I **will shall** now **shew tell** you
what the **Syrians Aramiy** have **done worked** to us.
They know that we be **hungry famished**;
therefore are they gone out of the camp
to hide themselves in the field, saying,
When they **come go** out of the city,
we shall **catch apprehend** them alive, and get into the city.
13 And one of his servants answered and said,
Let some take, I **pray beseech** thee,
five of the horses that **remain survive**,
which **are left survive** in the city,
(behold, they are as all the multitude of **Israel Yisra El**
that **are left survive** in it: behold, I say,
they are even as all the multitude of the **Israelites Yisra Ely**
that are consumed:)
and let us send and see.
14 They took therefore two chariot horses;
and the **king sovereign**
sent after the **host camp** of the **Syrians Aramiy**, saying,
Go and see.
15 And they went after them unto **Jordan Yarden**:
and, **lo behold**, all the way
was full of **garments clothes** and **vessels instruments**,
which the **Syrians Aramiy** had cast away in their haste.
And the **messengers angels** returned,
and told the **king sovereign**.
16 And the people went out,
and **spoiled plundered** the **tents camps** of the **Syrians Aramiy**.
So a **measure seah** of **fine** flour was **sold** for a shekel,
and two **measures seahs** of barley for a shekel,
according to the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
17 And the **king appointed sovereign mustered**
the **lord tertiary** on whose hand he leaned
to **have the charge of oversee** the **gate portal**:
and the people **trode upon trampled** him
in the **gate portal**, and he died,
as the man of **God Elohim** had **said worded**,
who **spake worded**
when the **king came down sovereign descended** to him.
18 And **so be** it **came to pass**,
as the man of **God Elohim**
had **spoken worded** to the **king sovereign**, saying,
Two **measures seahs** of barley for a shekel,
and a **measure seah** of **fine** flour for a shekel,
shall be to morrow about this time
in the **gate portal** of **Samaria Shomeron**:
19 And that **lord tertiary** answered the man of **God Elohim**,
and said, Now, behold,
if the LORD though Yah Veh
should **make work** windows in **heaven the heavens**,
might such a **thing word** be?
And he said, Behold,
thou shalt see it with thine eyes, but shalt not eat thereof.
20 And so it fell out unto him:
for the people **trode trampled upon** him in the **gate portal**,
and he died.

ELI SHUA PROPHECIES FAMINE

8 Then **spake Elisha worded Eli Shua** unto the woman,
whose son he had **restored to life enlivened**, saying,
Arise, and go thou and thine household,
and sojourn wheresoever thou canst sojourn:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath called for a famine;
and it shall also come upon the land seven years.
2 And the woman arose, and **did worked**
after the **saying word** of the man of **God Elohim**:
and she went with her household,
and sojourned in the land of the **Philistines Peleshethiy**
seven years.

2 SOVEREIGNS 7, 8 618

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and we go and tell the house of the sovereign.
10 And they come and call the porter of the city:
and they tell for themselves, saying,
We came to the camp of the Aramiy, and behold,
neither man nor voice of human;
but bound horses and bound he burros
and the tents as they were.
11 And he calls the porters;
and they tell it inside the house of the sovereign.
12 And the sovereign rises in the night
and says to his servants,
I now tell you what the Aramiy works to us.
They know that we famish;
and so they go from the camp
to hide themselves in the field,
saying, When they go from the city,
we apprehend them alive and get into the city.
13 And one of his servants answers and says,
Have some take, I beseech you,
five of the horses that survive
— that survive in the city,
— and behold,
they that survive are as all the multitude of Yisra El:
and behold, even as all the multitude of the Yisra Ely
that are consumed —
and let us send and see.
14 And they take two chariot horses;
and the sovereign sends after the camp of the Aramiy,
saying, Go! See!
15 And they go after them to Yarden: and behold,
all the way is full of clothes and instruments,
which the Aramiy cast away in their haste.
— and the angels return and tell the sovereign.
16 And the people go
and plunder the camps of the Aramiy:
and a seah of flour for a shekel
and two seahs of barley for a shekel
according to the word of Yah Veh.
17 And the sovereign musters the tertiary
on whose hand he leans to oversee the portal:
and the people trample him in the portal; and he dies,
— words as the sovereign descends to him.
18 And so be it,
as the man of Elohim words to the sovereign, saying,
Two seahs of barley for a shekel
and a seah of flour for a shekel,
be tomorrow about this time
in the portal of Shomeron:
19 and that the tertiary answered the man of Elohim
and said, Now, behold,
though Yah Veh work windows in the heavens,
how becomes such a word?
And he said, Behold,
you see it with your eyes, but eat not.
— and so it befell him:
and the people trample him in the portal and he dies.

ELI SHUA PROPHECIES FAMINE

8 And Eli Shua words to the woman
whose son he enlivened, saying,
Rise and go — you and your household
and sojourn wherever you **can** sojourn:
for Yah Veh called for a famine;
and also it comes on the land seven years.
2 And the woman rises and works
after the word of the man of Elohim:
and she goes with her household
and sojourns in the land of the Peleshethiy
seven years.

2 KINGS 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE LAND OF THE WOMAN RESTORED

- 3 And **so be** it *came to pass*, at the seven years' end,
that the woman returned
out of the land of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**:
and she went forth to cry unto the *king* **sovereign**
for her house and for her *land* **field**.
- 4 And the *king* **sovereign**
talked **worded** with *Gehazi* **Gay Chazi**
the *servant* **lad** of the man of *God* **Elohim**, saying,
Tell **Scribe** me, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
all the great *things* that *Elisha* **Eli Shua** hath *done* **worked**.
- 5 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
as he was *telling* **scribing** to the *king* **sovereign**
how he had *restored* a *dead body* to *life* **enlivened** the **dead**,
that, behold, the woman,
whose son he had *restored* to *life* **enlivened**,
cried to the *king* **sovereign**
for her house and for her *land* **field**.
And *Gehazi* **Gay Chazi** said,
My *lord* **adoni**, O *king* **sovereign**,
this is the woman, and this is her son,
whom *Elisha* **restored** to *life* **Eli Shua** **enlivened**.
- 6 And when the *king* **sovereign** asked the woman,
she *told* **scribed** to him.
So the *king* **sovereign**
appointed **gave** unto her a *certain officer* **one eunuch**,
saying, Restore all that was hers,
and all the *fruits* **produce** of the field
since the day that she left the land, even until now.
- ELI SHUA PROPHECIES EVIL**
- 7 And *Elisha* **Eli Shua** came to *Damascus* **Dammeseq**;
and *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad**
the *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram** was sick;
and it was told him, saying,
The man of *God* **Elohim** is come hither.
- 8 And the *king* **sovereign** said unto *Hazael* **Haza El**,
Take a *present* **an offering** in thine hand, and go,
meet the man of *God* **Elohim**,
and enquire of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** by him, saying,
shall I *recover* **live** of this *disease* **sickness**?
- 9 So *Hazael* **Haza El** went to meet him,
and took a *present* with *him* **an offering in his hand**,
even of every good *thing* of *Damascus* **Dammeseq**,
forty camels' burden,
and came and stood *before him* **at his face**, and said,
Thy son *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad**
king **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram** hath sent me to thee, saying,
shall I *recover* **live** of this *disease* **sickness**?
- 10 And *Elisha* **Eli Shua** said unto him, Go, say unto him,
In living, Thou *mayest certainly* *recover* **shalt live**:
howbeit the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *shewed* me **see**
that **in dying**, he shall *surely* die.
- 11 And he
settled his countenance stedfastly **stood setting his face**,
until he was *ashamed* **shamed**:
and the man of *God* **Elohim** wept.
- 12 And *Hazael* **Haza El** said, Why weepeth my *lord* **adoni**?
And he *answered* **said**, Because I know the evil
that thou *wilt do* **shalt work**
unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
their *strong holds* **fortresses**
wilt **shalt** thou *set* **send** on fire,
and their *young men* **youths**
wilt **shalt** thou *slay* **slaughter** with the sword,
and *wilt dash* **shalt splatter** their *children* **sucklings**,
and *rip up* **splittest open** their *women* with *child* **conceivers**.
- 13 And *Hazael* **Haza El** said,
But what, is thy servant a dog,
that he should *do* **work** this great *thing* **word**?
And *Elisha* **answered** **Eli Shua** said,
The *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *shewed* me **see**
that thou shalt be *king* **sovereign** over *Syria* **Aram**.
So he *departed* **went** from *Elisha* **Eli Shua**,
and came to his *master* **adoni**; who said to him,
What said *Elisha* **Eli Shua** to thee?
And he *answered* **said**, He *told* **said** to me
that **in living**, thou shouldst *surely* *recover* **live**.
- 15 And **so be** it *came to pass*, on the morrow,
that he took a *thick cloth* **net**, and dipped it in water,

2 SOVEREIGNS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE LAND OF THE WOMAN RESTORED

- 3 And so be it, at the end of seven years,
the woman returns from the land of the Peleshethiy:
and goes to cry to the sovereign
for her house and for her field.
- 4 And the sovereign words
with Gay Chazi the lad of the man of Elohim,
saying, Scribe me, I beseech,
all the great that Eli Shua works.
- 5 And so be it, he scribes to the sovereign
how he enlivened the dead,
and behold, how the woman whose son he enlivened
cries to the sovereign
for her house and for her field.
- And Gay Chazi says, My adoni, O sovereign,
this is the woman and this is her son,
whom Eli Shua enlivened!
- 6 And the sovereign asks the woman,
and she scribes to him.
And the sovereign gives her one eunuch,
saying, Restore all that is hers
and all the produce of the field
since the day she left the land, even until now.
- ELI SHUA PROPHECIES EVIL**
- 7 And Eli Shua comes to Dammeseq;
and Ben Hadad the sovereign of Aram is sick;
and they tell him, saying,
The man of Elohim comes here.
- 8 And the sovereign says to Haza El,
Take an offering in your hand
and go meet the man of Elohim
and enquire of Yah Veh by him,
saying, Live I of this sickness?
- 9 And Haza El goes to meet him
and takes an offering in his hand
even of every good of Dammeseq
— the burden of forty camels
and comes and stands at his face and says,
Your son Ben Hadad
sovereign of Aram sends me to you, saying,
Live I of this sickness?
- 10 And Eli Shua says to him, Go, say to him,
In living, you live:
howbeit Yah Veh shows me,
that in dying, you die.
- 11 — and he stands and sets his face until he shames
and the man of Elohim weeps.
- 12 And Haza El says, Why weeps my adoni?

And he says, Because I know the evil
you work to the sons of Yisra El:
you send their fortresses on fire;
and slaughter their youths with the sword;
and splatter their sucklings
and split open their conceivers.
- 13 And Haza El says, But what?
Is your servant a dog, to work this great word?

And Eli Shua says,
Yah Veh shows me you as sovereign over Aram.
- 14 And he goes from Eli Shua
and comes to his adoni; who says to him,
What says Eli Shua to you?

And he says, He says to me, In living, you live.
- 15 And so be it, on the morrow,
he takes a net and dips it in water

2 KINGS 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and spread it on his face, so that he died;
and Hazael **Haza El** reigned in his stead.

YAH RAM REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

16 And in the fifth year of *Joram* **Yah Ram**
the son of *Ahab king Ach Ab* sovereign of *Israel Yisra El*,
Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat
being then king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
Jehoram Yah Ram the son of *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*,
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah* began to reign.

17 **A son of** Thirty and two years *old*
was he when he began to reign;
and he reigned eight years in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.

18 And he walked in the way
of the kings sovereigns of *Israel Yisra El*,
as *did worked* the house of *Ahab Ach Ab*:
for the daughter of *Ahab Ach Ab* was his wife woman:
and he *did worked* evil
in the sight eyes of the *LORD Yah Veh*.

19 Yet the *LORD would* **Yah Veh** willed to
not *destroy Judah ruin Yah Hudah*
for David his servant's sake,
as he *promised said* to him
to give him *always a light all days a lamp*,
and to his children sons.

20 In his days Edom *revolted rebelled*
from under the hand of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and *made had* a king sovereign reign over themselves.

21 So *Joram went* **Yah Ram** passed over to *Zair Sair*,
and all the chariots with him:
and he rose by night,
and smote the *Edomites Edomiy*
which *compassed surrounded* him about,
and the *captains governors* of the chariots:
and the people fled into their tents.

22 Yet Edom *revolted rebelled*
from under the hand of *Judah Yah Hudah* unto this day.
Then *Libnah revolted rebelled* at the same time.

23 And the rest of the *acts words* of *Joram Yah Ram*,
and all that he *did worked*,
are they not *written inscribed* in the *book scroll*
of the *chronicles words of the days*
of the kings sovereigns of *Judah Yah Hudah*?

24 And *Joram slept* **Yah Ram** laid with his fathers,
and was *buried entombed* with his fathers
in the city of David:
and *Ahaziah Achaz Yah* his son reigned in his stead.

ACHAZ YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

25 In the twelfth year of *Joram* **Yah Ram**
the son of *Ahab king Ach Ab* sovereign of *Israel Yisra El*
did Ahaziah Achaz Yah the son of *Jehoram Yah Ram*,
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah* begin to reign.

26 **A son of** Two and twenty years *old*
was *Ahaziah Achaz Yah* when he began to reign;
and he reigned one year in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.

27 And his mother's name was *Athaliah Athal Yah*,
the daughter of *Omri king sovereign of Israel Yisra El*.
And he walked in the way of the house of *Ahab Ach Ab*,
and *did worked* evil

in the sight eyes of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
as *did* the house of *Ahab Ach Ab*:
for he was the son in law of the house of *Ahab Ach Ab*.

28 And he went with *Joram Yah Ram*
the son of *Ahab Ach Ab*
to the war against *Hazael Haza El*
king sovereign of *Syria Aram* in *Ramothgilead Ramoth Gilad*;
and the *Syrians wounded* *Joram Aramiy* smote *Yah Ram*.

29 And *king Joram went back* sovereign **Yah Ram** returned
to be healed in *Jezeel Yizre El* of the wounds strokes
which the *Syrians Aramiy* had given him smitten
at *Ramah*,

when he fought against *Hazael Haza El*
king sovereign of *Syria Aram*.

And *Ahaziah Achaz Yah* the son of *Jehoram Yah Ram*
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*
went down descended to see *Joram Yah Ram*
the son of *Ahab Ach Ab* in *Jezeel Yizre El*,
because he was sick.

YAH HU REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

9 And *Elisha Eli Shua* the prophet

2 SOVEREIGNS 8, 9 620

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and spreads it on his face, so that he dies:
and Haza El reigns in his stead.

YAH RAM REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

16 And in the fifth year of *Yah Ram*
the son of *Ach Ab* sovereign of *Yisra El*,
Yah Shaphat is sovereign of *Yah Hudah*;
and *Yah Ram* the son of *Yah Shaphat*
sovereign of *Yah Hudah* begins to reign

17 — a son of thirty—two years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns eight years in *Yeru Shalem*:

18 and he walks in the way
of the sovereigns of *Yisra El*
as the house of *Ach Ab* worked:

19 for the daughter of *Ach Ab* is his woman:
and he works evil in the eyes of *Yah Veh*:
yet *Yah Veh* wills to not ruin *Yah Hudah*
for sake of *David* his servant, as he said to him,
to give him, a lamp to his sons all days.

20 In his days,
Edom rebels from under the hand of *Yah Hudah*;
and has a sovereign reign over them.

21 And *Yah Ram* passes over to *Sair*
with all his chariots:
and he rises by night
and smites the *Edomiy* who surround him
and the governors of the chariots:
and the people flee to their tents:
and *Edom* rebels

22 from under the hand of *Yah Hudah* to this day:
and *Libnah* rebels at the same time.

23 And the rest of the words of *Yah Ram*
and all he worked,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of *Yah Hudah*?

24 And *Yah Ram* lies down with his fathers
— entombed with his fathers in the city of *David*:
and *Achaz Yah* his son reigns in his stead.

ACHAZ YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

25 In the twelfth year of *Yah Ram*
the son of *Ach Ab* sovereign of *Yisra El*
Achaz Yah the son of *Yah Ram*
sovereign of *Yah Hudah* begins to reign.
26 *Achaz Yah* is a son of twenty—two years
and he begins to reign;
and he reigns one year in *Yeru Shalem*:
and the name of his mother, *Athal Yah*
the daughter of *Omri* sovereign of *Yisra El*.

27 And he walks in the way of the house of *Ach Ab*
and works evil in the eyes of *Yah Veh*
as the house of *Ach Ab*:
for he is the son in law of the house of *Ach Ab*.

28 And he goes to the war
with *Yah Ram* the son of *Ach Ab*
against *Haza El* sovereign of *Aram* in *Ramoth Gilad*;
and the *Aramiy* smite *Yah Ram*:

29 and sovereign *Yah Ram* returns to *Yizre El*
to heal from the strokes the *Aramiy* smote at *Ramah*
when he fought against *Haza El* sovereign of *Aram*:
and *Achaz Yah*

the son of *Yah Ram* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
descends to *Yizre El*
to see *Yah Ram* the son of *Ach Ab* because he is sick.

YAH HU REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

9 And *Eli Shua* the prophet

2 KINGS 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

called one of the *children sons* of the prophets,
and said unto him, Gird up thy loins,
and take this *box flask* of oil in thine hand,
and go to *Ramothgilead Ramoth Gilad*:
2 And when thou comest thither,
look out see there *Jehu Yah Hu*
the son of *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat* the son of Nimshi,
and go in,
and make him arise up from among his brethren,
and carry him to an inner chamber;
3 Then take the *box flask* of oil, and pour it on his head,
and say, Thus saith the *LORD Yah Veh*,
I have anointed thee *king sovereign* over *Israel Yisra El*.
Then open the door, and flee, and *tarry wait* not.
4 So the *young man lad*,
even the *young man lad* the prophet,
went to *Ramothgilead Ramoth Gilad*.
5 And when he came, behold,
the *captains governors* of the *host valiant*
were *sitting settled*; and he said,
I have an *errand a word* to thee, O captain.
And *Jehu Yah Hu* said, Unto which of all us?
6 And he said, To thee, O *captain governor*.
And he arose, and went into the house;
and he poured the oil on his head, and said unto him,
Thus saith
the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of *Israel Yisra El*,
I have anointed thee *king sovereign*
over the people of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
even over *Israel Yisra El*.
7 And thou shalt smite
the house of *Ahab Ach Ab* thy *master adoni*,
that I may avenge the blood of my servants the prophets,
and the blood of all the servants of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
at the hand of *Jezebel ly Zebel*.
8 For the whole house of *Ahab Ach Ab*
shall *perish destruct*:
and I *will shall* cut off from *Ahab Ach Ab*
him that *pisseth urinateth* against the wall,
and him that is *shut up restrained*
and left in *Israel Yisra El*:
9 And I *will make shall give* the house of *Ahab Ach Ab*
like the house of *Jeroboam Yarob Am* the son of Nebat,
and like the house of *Baasha Basha*
the son of *Ahijah Achiy Yah*:
10 And the dogs shall *eat Jezebel devour ly Zebel*
in the *portion allotment* of *Jezreel Yizre El*,
and there shall be none to *bury entomb* her.
And he opened the door, and fled.
11 Then *Jehu came forth Yah Hu went*
to the servants of his *lord adoni*:
and *one* said unto him, *Is all well Shalom?*
wherefore came this *mad fellow insane* to thee?
And he said unto them,
Ye know the man, and his communication.
12 And they said, It is false; tell us now.
And he said, Thus and thus *spake said* he to me, saying,
Thus saith the *LORD Yah Veh*,
I have anointed thee *king sovereign* over *Israel Yisra El*.
13 Then they hasted,
and took every man his *garment clothes*,
and *put set* it under him on the *top bone* of the *stairs steps*,
and *blew blast* with *trumpets shophars*, saying,
Jehu is king Yah Hu reigneth.
YAH HU DEATHIFIES YAH RAM AND ACHAZ YAH
14 So *Jehu Yah Hu* the son of *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*
the son of Nimshi conspired against *Joram Yah Ram*.
(Now *Joram Yah Ram*
had kept *Ramothgilead guarded Ramoth Gilad*,
he and all *Israel Yisra El*,
because at the face of *Hazael Hazael El*,
king sovereign of *Syria Aram*.
15 But *king Joram sovereign Yah Ram*
was returned to be healed in *Jezreel Yizre El*
of the *wounds strokes*
which the *Syrians Aramiy* had given him *smitten*,
when he fought with *Hazael Hazael El*
king sovereign of *Syria Aram*.)
And *Jehu Yah Hu* said, If it be your *minds souls*,

2 SOVEREIGNS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

calls one of the sons of the prophets and says to him,
Gird your loins and take this flask of oil in your hand
and go to Ramoth Gilad:
2 and when you come there,
see Yah Hu the son of Yah Shaphat the son of Nimshi;
and go in and raise him from among his brothers
and carry him to an inner chamber;
3 and take the flask of oil and pour on his head
and say, Thus says Yah Veh,
I anoint you sovereign over Yisra El!
— then open the door and flee and wait not.
4 And the lad — the lad the prophet
goes to Ramoth Gilad:
5 and he comes, and behold,
the governors of the valiant settle there;
and he says, I have a word to you, O captain.
6 And Yah Hu says, To whom of all of us?
7 And he says, To you, O governor.
8 And he rises and goes into the house;
and pours the oil on his head and says to him,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
I anoint you sovereign over the people of Yah Veh
— over Yisra El:
9 and you, smite the house of Ach Ab your adoni,
to avenge the blood of my servants the prophets
and the blood of all the servants of Yah Veh
at the hand of ly Zebel:
10 for the whole house of Ach Ab destructs:
and I cut off from Ach Ab
he who urinates against the wall
and he who is restrained and left in Yisra El:
and I give the house of Ach Ab
as the house of Yarob Am the son of Nebat
and as the house of Basha the son of Achiy Yah:
11 and the dogs devour ly Zebel
in the allotment of Yizre El;
and there is none to entomb her.
— and he opens the door and flees.
12 And Yah Hu goes to the servants of his adoni:
and says to him, Shalom?
Why comes this insane to you?
13 And he says to them,
You know the man and his communication:
and they say, False! And now you tell us.
14 And he says, Thus and thus says he to me, saying,
Thus says Yah Veh,
I anoint you sovereign over Yisra El.
15 And they hasten
and every man takes his clothes
and sets them under him on the bone of the steps
and blast with shophars, saying,
Yah Hu reigns!
YAH HU DEATHIFIES YAH RAM AND ACHAZ YAH
16 So Yah Hu
the son of Yah Shaphat the son of Nimshi
conspires against Yah Ram:
and Yah Ram guards Ramoth Gilad
— he and all Yisra El
at the face of Hazael El sovereign of Aram:
and sovereign Yah Ram returns to Yizre El
to heal of the strokes the Aramiy smote
when he fought with Hazael El sovereign of Aram.
17 And Yah Hu says, If it is in your soul,

2 KINGS 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

then let *none* **no escapee** go forth *nor* escape
out of the city to go to tell it in *Jezeel* **Yizre El**.
16 So *Jehu* **Yah Hu** rode in a chariot,
and went to *Jezeel* **Yizre El**;
for *Joram* **Yah Ram** lay there.
And *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
was come down **descended** to see *Joram* **Yah Ram**.
17 And there stood a *watchman* **watcher**
on the tower in *Jezeel* **Yizre El**,
and he *spied* **saw** the *company* **throng** of *Jehu* **Yah Hu**
as he came,
and said, I see a *company* **throng**.
And *Joram* **Yah Ram** said, Take an *horseman* **a charioteer**,
and send to meet them,
and let him say, *Is it peace* **Shalom?**
18 So there went one
on *horseback* **riding on a horse** to meet him, and said,
Thus saith the *king* **sovereign**, *Is it peace* **Shalom?**
And *Jehu* **Yah Hu** said,
What hast thou to do with *peace* **shalom?**
turn thee behind me.
And the *watchman* **watcher** told, saying,
The *messenger* **angel** came to them,
but he *cometh not again* **returneth not**.
19 Then he sent out a second
on *horseback* **riding on a horse**,
which came to them, and said,
Thus saith the *king* **sovereign**, *Is it peace* **Shalom?**
And *Jehu* **Yah Hu** said,
What hast thou to do with *peace* **shalom?**
turn thee behind me.
20 And the *watchman* **watcher** told, saying,
He came even unto them,
and *cometh not again* **returneth not**:
and the driving
is like the driving of *Jehu* **Yah Hu** the son of *Nimshi*;
for he driveth *furiously* **insanely**.
21 And *Joram* **Yah Ram** said, *Make ready* **Bind**.
And his chariot was *made ready* **bound**.
And *Joram* **Yah Ram** *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
and *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
went out, each *man* in his chariot,
and they went out *against Jehu* **to meet Yah Hu**,
and *met* **found** him in the *portion* **allotment** of *Naboth*
the *Jezeelite* **Yizre Eliy**.
22 And **so be** it came to pass,
when *Joram* **Yah Ram** saw *Jehu* **Yah Hu**,
that he said, *Is it peace* **Shalom, Jehu Yah Hu?**
And he *answered* **said**, What *peace* **shalom**,
so long as **that** the whoredoms
of thy mother *Jezebel* **ly Zebel**
and her *witchcrafts* **sorceries** are so many?
23 And *Joram* **Yah Ram** turned his hands, and fled,
and said to *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah**,
There is *treachery* **fraud**, O *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah**.
24 And *Jehu* **Yah Hu**
drew a bow with his full strength
filled his hand with a bow,
and smote *Jehoram* **Yah Ram** between his arms,
and the arrow went out at his heart,
and he *sunk* **bowed** down in his chariot.
25 Then said *Jehu* **he** to *Bidkar* **Bidqar** his *captain* **tertiary**,
Take up **Lift**,
and cast him in the *portion* **allotment** of the field
of *Naboth* the *Jezeelite* **Yizre Eliy**:
for remember how that,
when I and thou rode *together* **paired**
after *Ahab* **Ach Ab** his father,
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** laid this burden upon him;
26 Surely I have seen *yesterday* **yesternight**
the blood of *Naboth*, and the blood of his sons,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**;
and I *will requite* **shall shalam** thee in this *plat* **allotment**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
Now therefore *take* **lift**
and cast him into the *plat* of *ground* **allotment**,
according to the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

2 SOVEREIGNS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

let no escapee go from the city
to go tell it in *Yizre El*.
16 So *Yah Hu* rides in a chariot and goes to *Yizre El*;
for *Yah Ram* lies down there:
and *Achaz Yah* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
descends to see *Yah Ram*:
17 and a *watcher* stands on the tower in *Yizre El*;
and he sees the throng of *Yah Hu* as he comes;
and says, I see a throng.
And *Yah Ram* says,
Take a *charioteer* and send to meet them;
and say, *Shalom?*
18 So one goes riding on a horse to meet him
and says,
Thus says the sovereign, *Shalom?*
And *Yah Hu* says,
What have you to do with *shalom?* Turn behind me.
And the *watcher* tells, saying,
The *angel* comes to them; but he returns not:
and he sends out a second riding on a horse
who comes to them and says,
Thus says the sovereign, *Shalom?*
19 And *Yah Hu* says,
What have you to do with *shalom?* Turn behind me.
20 And the *watcher* tells, saying,
He comes to them and returns not:
and the driving
is as the driving of *Yah Hu* the son of *Nimshi*;
for he drives *insanely*.
21 And *Yah Ram* says, *Bind!*
— and they bind his chariot.
And *Yah Ram* sovereign of *Yisra El*
and *Achaz Yah* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
go — each man in his chariot
and they go to meet *Yah Hu*;
and they find him
in the allotment of *Naboth* the *Yizre Eliy*.
22 And so be it, *Yah Ram* sees *Yah Hu*,
and he says, *Shalom, Yah Hu?*
And he says, What *shalom*
when the whoredoms of your mother *Iy Zebel*
and her *sorceries* are many?
23 And *Yah Ram* turns his hands and flees
and says to *Achaz Yah*,
Fraud, O Achaz Yah!
24 And *Yah Hu* fills his hand with a bow
and smites *Yah Ram* between his arms
and the arrow comes out his heart;
and he bows down in his chariot:
and says to *Bidqar* his *tertiary*, *Lift!*
Cast him in the allotment of the field
of *Naboth* the *Yizre Eliy*:
for remember,
when I and you rode paired after *Ach Ab* his father,
Yah Veh laid this burden on him;
26 *yesternight* I see the blood of *Naboth*
and the blood of his sons
— an oracle of *Yah Veh*;
and I *shalam* you in this allotment
— an oracle of *Yah Veh*.
And now, *Lift!*
Cast him into the allotment
according to the word of *Yah Veh*.

2 KINGS 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

27 But when Ahaziah Achaz Yah,
the king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah saw this,
he fled by the way of the garden house.
And Jehu followed Yah Hu pursued after him, and said,
Smite him also in the chariot.
And they did so at the going up ascent to Gur,
which is by Ibleam Yible Am.
And he fled to Megiddo, and died there.
28 And his servants carried rode him in a chariot
to Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
and buried entombed him in his sepulchre tomb
with his fathers in the city of David.
ACHAZ YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH
29 And in the eleventh year of Joram Yah Ram
the son of Ahab Ach Ab
began Ahaziah Achaz Yah to reign over Judah Yah Hudah.
IY ZEBEL DEATHIFIED
30 And when Jehu Yah Hu was come to Jezreel Yizre El,
Jezebel Iy Zebel heard of it;
and she painted set her face eyes in stibium,
and tired well—prepared her head,
and looked out at a window.
31 And as Jehu Yah Hu entered in at the gate portal,
she said, Had Zimri peace shalom,
who slew slaughtered his master adoni?
32 And he lifted up his face to the window, and said,
Who is on my side? who?
And there looked out to him two or three eunuchs.
33 And he said, Throw her down Release her.
So they threw her down released her:
and some of her blood was sprinkled on the wall,
and on the horses:
and he trode trampled her under foot.
34 And when he was come in, he did eat and drink,
and said, Go, see Visit now this cursed woman,
and bury entomb her:
for she is a king's sovereign's daughter.
35 And they went to bury entomb her:
but they found no more of her than the skull cranium,
and the feet, and the palms of her hands.
36 Wherefore they came again returned, and told him.
And he said, This is the word of the LORD Yah Veh,
which he spake worded by the hand of his servant
Elijah Eli Yah the Tishbite Tisbehiy, saying,
In the portion allotment of Jezreel Yizre El
shall dogs eat devour the flesh of Jezebel Iy Zebel:
37 And the carcase of Jezebel Iy Zebel shall be as dung
upon the face of the field
in the portion allotment of Jezreel Yizre El;
so that they shall not say, This is Jezebel Iy Zebel.

THE HOUSEHOLD OF ACH AB IS DEATHIFIED

10

And Ahab Ach Ab
had seventy sons in Samaria Shomeron.
And Jehu wrote letters Yah Hu inscribed scrolls,
and sent to Samaria Shomeron,
unto the rulers governors of Jezreel Yizre El, to the elders,
and to them
that brought up Ahab's children be amenable to Ach Ab,
saying,
2 Now as soon as this letter scroll cometh to you,
seeing your master's adoni's sons are with you,
and there are with you chariots and horses,
a fenced fortified city also, and armour;
3 Look even out the best and meetest straightest
of your master's adoni's sons,
and set him on his father's throne,
and fight for your master's adoni's house.
4 But they were exceedingly afraid mighty awed,
and said, Behold,
two kings sovereigns stood not before him at his face:
how then shall we stand?
5 And he that was over the house,
and he that was over the city, the elders also,
and the bringers up of the children amenable,
sent to Jehu Yah Hu, saying, We are thy servants,
and will do shall work all that thou shalt bid say to us;
we will not make any king shall have no man to reign:
do work thou that which is good in thine eyes.

2 SOVEREIGNS 9, 10 623

exeGesés companion BIBLE

27 And Achaz Yah the sovereign of Yah Hudah sees
and flees by the way of the garden house:
and Yah Hu pursues him and says,
Smite him — him also in the chariot
at the ascent to Gur by Yible Am.
28 And he flees to Megiddo and dies there:
and his servants ride him in a chariot
to Yeru Shalem
and entomb him in his tomb with his fathers
in the city of David.
ACHAZ YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH
29 And in the eleventh year
of Yah Ram the son of Ach Ab
Achaz Yah begins to reign over Yah Hudah.
IY ZEBEL DEATHIFIED
30 And Yah Hu comes to Yizre El,
and Iy Zebel hears;
and she sets her eyes in stibium
and well—prepares her head;
and looks out a window:
31 and Yah Hu enters at the portal,
and she says,
Is there shalom to Zimri the slaughterer of his adoni?
32 And he lifts his face to the window and says,
Who is on my side? Who?
— and two or three eunuchs look to him.
33 And he says, Release her!
— and they release her:
and sprinkle her blood on the wall and on the horses
and trample her under foot.
34 And he comes in, and he eats and drinks
and says, Visit now this cursed; and entomb her:
for she is a daughter of a sovereign.
35 And they go to entomb her:
but they find no more of her than the cranium
and the feet and the palms of her hands:
and they return and tell him.
36 And he says,
This is the word Yah Veh worded
by the hand of his servant
Eli Yah the Tisbehiy, saying,
In the allotment of Yizre El
dogs devour the flesh of Iy Zebel:
37 and the carcase of Iy Zebel becomes as dung
on the face of the field in the allotment of Yizre El;
so that they not say, This is Iy Zebel.

THE HOUSEHOLD OF ACH AB IS DEATHIFIED

10

And Ach Ab has seventy sons in Shomeron:
And Yah Hu inscribes scrolls and sends to Shomeron,
to the governors of Yizre El, to the elders
and to them who are amenable to Ach Ab, saying,
2 And now this scroll comes to you,
seeing the sons of your adoni are with you
and chariots and horses with you
and a fortified city and armour;
3 see to the best and straightest
of the sons of your adoni;
and set him on the throne of his father
and fight for the house of your adoni.
4 And they awe mightily and say, Behold,
two sovereigns stood not at his face:
how then stand we?
5 And him over the house and him over the city
and the elders and the amenable
send to Yah Hu, saying,
We are your servants and work all you say to us;
we have no man to reign:
work what is good in your eyes.

2 KINGS 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 Then he wrote **inscribed** a *letter scroll*
the second time to them, saying,
If ye be mine, and if ye *will shall* hearken unto my voice,
take ye the heads of the men your *master's adoni's* sons,
and come to me to *Jezreel Yizre El* by to morrow this time.
Now the *king's sovereign's* sons,
being seventy persons men,
were with the great men of the city,
which *brought greatened* them up.
7 And **so be** it *came to pass,*
when the *letter scroll* came to them,
that they took the *king's sovereign's* sons,
and *slew slaughtered* seventy *persons men,*
and *put set* their heads in *baskets boilers,*
and sent him them to *Jezreel Yizre El.*
8 And there came a *messenger an angel,*
and told him, saying,
They have brought the heads
of the *king's sovereign's* sons.
And he said, *Lay Set* ye them in two heaps
at the *entering in opening* of the *gate portal*
until the morning.
9 And **so be** it *came to pass,* in the morning,
that he went out, and stood, and said to all the people,
ye be *righteous just:* behold,
I conspired against my *master adoni,*
and *slew slaughtered* him: but who *slew smote* all these?
10 Know now that there shall fall unto the earth
nothing naught of the word of the *LORD Yah Veh,*
which *the LORD spake Yah Veh worded*
concerning the house of *Ahab Ach Ab:*
for *the LORD Yah Veh* hath *done worked*
that which he *spake worded*
by **the hand of** his servant *Elijah Eli Yah.*
11 So *Jehu slew Yah Hu smote* all that *remained survived*
of the house of *Ahab Ach Ab* in *Jezreel Yizre El,*
and all his great men, and *his kinsfolks those he knew,*
and his priests,
until **in surviving,** he left him none *remaining surviving.*
12 And he arose and departed,
and came to *Samaria Shomeron.*
And as he was at
the *shearing tenders' house of binding/Beth Eqed*
in the way,
13 *Jehu Yah Hu*
met with found the brethren of *Ahaziah Achaz Yah,*
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah,* and said,
Who are ye?
And they *answered said,*
We are the brethren of *Ahaziah Achaz Yah;*
and we *go down descend* to *salute bid shalom*
to the children sons of the *king sovereign*
and the *children sons* of the *queen lady.*
14 And he said, *Take Apprehend* them alive.
And they *took apprehended* them alive,
and *slew slaughtered* them
at the *pit well* of the *shearing house of binding/Beth Eqed,*
even two and forty men;
neither *left he survived* any of them.
15 And when he was *departed gone* thence,
he *lighted on Jehonadab found Yah Nadab*
the son of *Rechab* coming to meet him:
and he *saluted blessed* him, and said to him,
Is thine heart *right straight,* as my heart is with thy heart?
And *Jehonadab answered Yah Nadab said,* It is.
If it be, give *me* thine hand.
And he gave *him* his hand;
and he *took ascended* him up to him into the chariot.
16 And he said, Come with me,
and see my zeal for *the LORD Yah Veh.*
So they made him ride in his chariot.
17 And when he came to *Samaria Shomeron,*
he *slew smote* all that *remained survived*
unto *Ahab Ach Ab* in *Samaria Shomeron,*
till he had *destroyed desolated* him,
according to the *saying word* of the *LORD Yah Veh,*
which he *spake worded* to *Elijah Eli Yah.*
18 And *Jehu Yah Hu* gathered all the people *together,*
and said unto them,

2 SOVEREIGNS 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 And he inscribes them a scroll a second time,
saying,
If you *are* mine and if you hearken to my voice,
take the heads of the men
— the sons of your adoni
and come to me to *Yizre El* by this time tomorrow.
The sons of the sovereign
— seventy men are with the great men of the city
— who greatened them.
7 And so be it, the scroll comes to them,
and they take the sons of the sovereign;
and *slaughter* seventy men
and set their heads in boilers
and send him them to *Yizre El.*
8 And an angel comes and tells him, saying,
They bring the heads of the sons of the sovereign.
And he says, Set them in two heaps
at the opening of the portal until the morning.
9 And so be it, in the morning,
he goes and stands and says to all the people,
You are just! Behold, I conspired against my adoni
and *slaughtered* him!
But who *smote* all these?
10 Now you know
that no word of *Yah Veh* falls to the earth
that *Yah Veh* words concerning the house of *Ach Ab:*
for *Yah Veh* works what he worded
by the hand of his servant *Eli Yah.*
11 And *Yah Hu* smites
all the house of *Ach Ab* in *Yizre El* who survive
— all his great men and those he knew and his priests
until in surviving, none survive.
12 And he rises and departs and goes to *Shomeron:*
and he is at the house of binding/*Beth Eqed*
of the tenders in the way;
13 and *Yah Hu* finds the brothers of *Achaz Yah*
sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
and says, Who are you?
And they say, We are the brothers of *Achaz Yah;*
and we descend to bid shalom
to the sons of the sovereign and the sons of the lady.
14 And he says, Apprehend them alive!
And they apprehend them alive
and *slaughter* them at the well
of the house of binding/*Beth Eqed*
— forty—two men — none of whom survive.
15 And he goes from there,
and he finds *Yah Nadab* the son of *Rechab*
coming to meet him:
and he blesses him, and says to him,
Is your heart as straight as my heart with your heart?
And *Yah Nadab* says, So be it.
If so be it, give your hand.
And he gives his hand;
and ascends him to himself in the chariot;
and he says, Come with me
and see my zeal for *Yah Veh.*
17 So they ride him in his chariot:
and when he comes to *Shomeron,*
he smites all who survived *Ach Ab* in *Shomeron*
until he desolates him
according to the word *Yah Veh* worded to *Eli Yah.*
18 And *Yah Hu* gathers all the people
and says to them,

2 KINGS 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 19 *Ahab Ach Ab* served Baal a little;
but *Jehu Yah Hu* shall serve him *much aboundingly*.
Now therefore call unto me all the prophets of Baal,
all his servants, and all his priests;
let *none no man* be *wanting missing*;
for I have a great sacrifice *to do* to Baal;
whosoever shall be *wanting missing*, he shall not live.
But *Jehu did Yah Hu worked* it in *subtily tricky*,
to the intent that he might so as to
destroy the *worshippers servants* of Baal.
- 20 And *Jehu Yah Hu* said,
Proclaim *Hallow* a *solemn private* assembly for Baal.
And they *proclaimed called* it.
- 21 And *Jehu Yah Hu* sent through all *Israel Yisra El*:
and all the *worshippers servants* of Baal came,
so that there was not a man *left surviving* that came not.
And they came into the house of Baal;
and the house of Baal was *full filled*
from *one end mouth* to *another mouth*.
- 22 And he said unto him
that was over the *vestry wardrobe*,
Bring forth *vestments robes*
for all the *worshippers servants* of Baal.
And he brought them forth *vestments robes*.
- 23 And *Jehu Yah Hu* went,
and *Jehonadab Yah Nadab* the son of Rechab,
into the house of Baal,
and said unto the *worshippers servants* of Baal,
Search, and *look see* that there be here with you
none of the servants of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
but the *worshippers servants* of Baal only.
- 24 And when they went in
to offer *work sacrifices* and *burnt offerings holocausts*,
Jehu appointed fourscore Yah Hu set eighty men without,
and said,
If *any a man*
of the men whom I have brought into your hands escape,
he that letteth him go,
his *life soul* shall be for the *life of him his soul*.
- 25 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
as soon as he had *made an end of finished*
offering working the *burnt offering holocaust*,
that *Jehu Yah Hu* said to the *guard runners*
and to the *captains tertiaries*,
Go in, and *slay smite* them;
let *none come forth no man go*.
And they smote them with the *edge mouth* of the sword;
and the *guard runners* and the *captains tertiaries*
cast them out,
and went to the city of the house of Baal.
- 26 And they brought forth the *images monoliths*
out of the house of Baal, and burned them.
- 27 And they
brake pulled down the *image monolith* of Baal,
and *brake pulled* down the house of Baal,
and *made set* it a *draught house sewer* unto this day.
- 28 Thus *Jehu destroyed Yah Hu desolated* Baal
out of *Israel Yisra El*.
- 29 Howbeit *from* the sins of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*
the son of Nebat,
who made *Israel Yisra El* to sin,
Jehu departed not Yah Hu turned not aside
from after them, *to wit*,
the golden calves that were in *Bethel Beth El*,
and that were in Dan.
- 30 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto *Jehu Yah Hu*,
Because thou hast done *well good*
in *executing that which is right working straight* in mine eyes,
and hast *done worked* unto the house of *Ahab Ach Ab*
according to all that was in mine heart,
thy *children sons* of the fourth *generation*
shall *sit settle* on the throne of *Israel Yisra El*.
- 31 But *Jehu took no heed Yah Hu guarded not*
to walk in the *law torah*
of the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of *Israel Yisra El*
with all his heart:
for he *departed turned not aside*
from the sins of *Jeroboam Yarob Am*,
which made *Israel Yisra El* to sin.

2 SOVEREIGNS 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 19 Ach Ab served Baal a little;
Yah Hu serves him aboundingly:
now call to me all the prophets of Baal
— all his servants and all his priests
— no man missing:
for I have a great sacrifice to Baal;
whosoever is missing, lives not.
— and Yah Hu works tricky
so as to destroy the servants of Baal.
- 20 And Yah Hu says,
Hallow a private assembly for Baal!
— and they call it.
- 21 And Yah Hu sends through all Yisra El:
and all the servants of Baal came,
so that no man survives who comes not:
and they come to the house of Baal;
and the house of Baal is filled from mouth to mouth.
- 22 And he says to him who are over the wardrobe,
Bring the robes for all the servants of Baal!
— and he brings the robes.
- 23 And Yah Hu goes to the house of Baal
with Yah Nadab the son of Rechab
and says to the servants of Baal, Search!
See that no servants of Yah Veh are here with you
except the servants of Baal by themselves.
- 24 And they go in to work sacrifices and holocausts,
and Yah Hu sets eighty men outside and says,
The man who allows
any of the men I bring to your hands to escape
— his soul for his soul.
- 25 And so be it, as he finishes working the holocaust,
Yah Hu says to the runners and to the tertiaries,
Go! Smite them! Allow no man to go!
— and they smite them with the mouth of the sword;
and the runners and the tertiaries cast them out,
and go to the city of the house of Baal:
and they bring the monoliths
from the house of Baal
and burn them;
- 26 and they pull down the monolith of Baal
and pull down the house of Baal
and set it a sewer to this day;
- 27 thus Yah Hu desolated Baal from Yisra El.
29 Only, the sins of Yarob Am the son of Nebat
who had Yisra El to sin,
Yah Hu turns not aside from after them
the golden calves in Beth El and in Dan.
- 30 And Yah Veh says to Yah Hu,
Because you work good and straight in my eyes
and work to the house of Ach Ab
according to all in my heart,
your sons to the fourth
settle on the throne of Yisra El.
- 31 And Yah Hu guards not
to walk in the torah of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
with all his heart:
he turns not aside from the sins of Yarob Am,
which has Yisra El to sin.

2 KINGS 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

32 In those days the **LORD Yah Veh**
began to cut *Israel short* **Yisra El** off:
and *Hazael* **Haza El** smote them
in all the *coasts borders* of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
33 From *Jordan* **Yarden**
eastward **toward the rising of the sun**,
all the land of *Gilead* **Gilad**, the *Gadites* **Gadiy**,
and the *Reubenites* **Reu Beni**,
and the *Manassites* **Menash Shiy**,
from *Aroer*, which is by the *river* **wadi Arnon**,
even *Gilead* **Gilad** and *Bashan*.
34 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Jehu* **Yah Hu**,
and all that he *did* **worked**, and all his might,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
35 And *Jehu* **slept** **Yah Hu** laid with his fathers:
and they *buried* **entombed** him in *Samaria* **Shomeron**.
And *Jehoahaz* **Yah Achaz** his son reigned in his stead.

36 And the *time* **day**
that *Jehu* **Yah Hu** reigned over *Israel* **Yisra El**
in *Samaria* **Shomeron** was twenty and eight years.

ATHAL YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

11 And when *Athaliah* **Athal Yah**
the mother of *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah**
saw that her son was *dead* **died**,
she arose
and destroyed all the seed *royal* **of the sovereigndom**.
2 But *Jehosheba* **Yah Sheba**,
the daughter of *king Joram* **sovereign Yah Ram**,
sister of *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah**,
took *Joash* **Yah Ash** the son of *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah**,
and stole him from among the *king's* **sovereign's** sons
which were *slain* **deathified**;
and they hid him, *even* him and his *nurse* **suckler**,
in the bedchamber from *Athaliah* **the face of Athal Yah**,
so that he was not *slain* **deathified**.
3 And he was with her
hid in the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** six years.
And *Athaliah* **Athal Yah** did reign over the land.
4 And the seventh year *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** sent
and *fetches* **took** the *rulers* **governors** over hundreds,
with the *captains* **executioners** and the *guard* **runners**,
and brought them to him
into the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *made* **cut** a covenant with them,
and *took an oath* **oathed** of them
in the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *shewed them* **had them see** the *king's* **sovereign's** son.
5 And he *commanded* **misvahed** them, saying,
This is the *thing* **word** that ye shall *do* **work**;
A third *part* of you that enter in on the *sabbath* **shabbath**
shall even *be keepers of the watch* **guard the guard**
of the *king's* **sovereign's** house;
6 And a third *part* shall be at the *gate* **portal** of *Sur*;
and a third *part* at the *gate* **portal** behind the *guard* **runners**:
so shall ye *keep* **guard** the *watch* **guard** of the house,
that it be not *broken down* **uprooted**.
7 And two *parts* **hands** of all you
that go forth on the *sabbath* **shabbath**,
even they shall *keep* **guard** the *watch* **guard**
of the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
about the *king* **sovereign**.
8 And ye shall *compass* **surround** the *king* **sovereign**
round about,
every man with his *weapons* **instruments** in his hand:
and he that cometh within the *ranges* **ranks**,
let him be *slain* **deathified**:
and be ye with the *king* **sovereign**
as he goeth out and as he cometh in.
9 And the *captains* **governors** over the hundreds
did **worked** according to all *things*
that *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** the priest *commanded* **misvahed**:
and they took every man his men
that were to come in on the *sabbath* **shabbath**,
with them that should go out on the *sabbath* **shabbath**,
and came to *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** the priest.

2 SOVEREIGNS 10, 11626

exeGesés companion BIBLE

32 In those days *Yah Veh* begins to cut off *Yisra El*
and *Haza El* smites them in all the borders of *Yisra El*
33 — from *Yarden* toward the rising of the sun;
all the land of *Gilad*;
the *Gadiy* and the *Reu Beni* and the *Menash Shiy*;
from *Aroer* by the *wadi Arnon*;
even *Gilad* and *Bashan*.
34 And the rest of the words of *Yah Hu*
and all he worked and all his might,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of *Yisra El*?
35 And *Yah Hu* lies down with his fathers:
and they entomb him in *Shomeron*:
and *Yah Achaz* his son reigns in his stead.
36 And the days *Yah Hu* reigns over *Yisra El*
in *Shomeron* are twenty—eight years.

ATHAL YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

11 And *Athal Yah* is the mother of *Achaz Yah*;
and she sees that her son dies;
and she rises
and destroys all the seed of the sovereigndom.
2 And *Yah Sheba* the daughter of sovereign *Yah Ram*
sister of *Achaz Yah*
takes *Yah Ash* the son of *Achaz Yah*
and steals him from among the sons of the sovereign
who are deathified;
and they hide him — him and his suckler
in the bedchamber from the face of *Athal Yah*;
and he is not deathified.
3 And he is hidden with her in the house of *Yah Veh*
for six years:
and *Athal Yah* reigns over the land.
4 And the seventh year *Yah Yada* sends
and takes the governors over hundreds,
with the executioners and the runners
and brings them to him to the house of *Yah Veh*;
and cuts a covenant with them
and has them oath in the house of *Yah Veh*;
and has them see the son of the sovereign.
5 And he misvahs them, saying,
This is the word you work;
a third of you enter in on the shabbath
to guard the guard of the house of the sovereign;
and a third at the portal of *Sur*;
and a third at the portal behind the runners:
thus you guard the guard of the house
that it not be uprooted:
and two hands of you all
go forth on the shabbath
and guard the guard of the house of *Yah Veh*
surrounding the sovereign:
surround the sovereign all around
every man with his instruments in his hand:
and deathify him who comes inside the ranks:
and you be with the sovereign
as he goes and as he comes.
9 And the governors over the hundreds
work according to all *Yah Yada* the priest misvahs:
and every man takes his men
going in on the shabbath
with them coming out on the shabbath
and come to *Yah Yada* the priest.

2 KINGS 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 And to the *captains* **governors** over hundreds
did the priest
give *king* **sovereign** David's spears and shields,
that were in the *temple* **house** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

11 And the *guard* **runners** stood,
every man with his *weapons* **instruments** in his hand,
round about the *king* **sovereign**,
from the right *corner* **shoulder** of the *temple* **house**
to the left *corner* **shoulder** of the *temple* **house**,
along by the **sacrifice** altar and the *temple* **house**.

12 And he brought forth the *king's* **sovereign's** son,
and *put* **gave** the *crown* **separatism** upon him,
and *gave* him the *testimony* **the witness**;
and they made him *king* **reign**, and anointed him;
and they *clapped* **smote** their *hands* **palms**, and said,
God save the king **The sovereign liveth**.

13 And when *Athaliah* **Athal Yah**
heard the noise of the *guard* **runners** and of the people,
she came to the people
into the *temple* **house** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

14 And when she *looked* **saw**, behold,
the *king* **sovereign** stood by a pillar,
as the *manner* **judgment** was,
and the *princes* **governors** and the trumpeters
by the *king* **sovereign**,
and all the people of the land *rejoiced* **cheered**
and *blew* **blast** with trumpets:
and *Athaliah* **rent Athal Yah** *ripped* her clothes,
and *cried* **called out**,
Treason, Treason. Conspiracy! Conspiracy!

15 But *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** the priest *commanded* **misvahed**
the *captains* **governors** of the hundreds,
the *officers* **overseers** of the *host* **valiant**,
and said unto them,
Have her forth without the ranges
Bring out her house by ranks:
and him that *followeth* her **goeth after**,
kill **deathify** with the sword.
For the priest had said,
Let her not be slain **Deathify her not**
in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

16 And they *laid* **set** hands on her;
and she went by the way
by the *which* **entrance** of the horses *came*
into the *king's* **sovereign's** house:
and there was she *slain* **deathified**.

17 And *Jehoiada* **made Yah Yada** *cut* a covenant
between the *LORD* **Yah Veh** and between the *king* **sovereign**
and between the people,
that they should be the *LORD's* **Yah Veh's** people;
between the *king* **sovereign** also and between the people.

18 And all the people of the land
went into the house of Baal, and *brake* **pulled** it down;
his **sacrifice** altars and his images
brake they *in pieces* thoroughly,
and *slew* **slaughtered** Mattan the priest of Baal
before **at the face** of the **sacrifice** altars.
And the priest *appointed* **officers** **set overseers**
over the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

19 And he took the *rulers* **governors** over hundreds,
and the *captains* **executioners**, and the *guard* **runners**,
and all the people of the land;
and they *brought down* **descended** the *king* **sovereign**
from the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and came by the way
of the *gate* **portal** of the *guard* **runners**
to the *king's* **sovereign's** house.

20 And he *sat* **settled** on the throne of the *kings* **sovereigns**.
And all the people of the land *rejoiced* **cheered**,
and the city was *in quiet* **rested**:
and they *slew* **deathified** *Athaliah* **Athal Yah**
with the sword beside the *king's* **sovereign's** house.

21 **YAH ASH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH**
A son of Seven years *old* was *Jehoash* **Yah Ash**
when he began to reign.

12 In the seventh year of *Jehu* **Yah Hu**
Jehoash **Yah Ash** began to reign;
and forty years reigned he in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

2 SOVEREIGNS 11, 12627

exeGesés companion BIBLE

10 And the priest
gives the spears and shields of sovereign David
to the governors over hundreds
in the house of Yah Veh.

11 And every man of the runners stands
with his instruments in his hand
all around the sovereign
— from the right shoulder of the house
to the left shoulder of the house
— by the sacrifice altar and the house.

12 And he brings the son of the sovereign
and gives the separatism and the witness on him;
and they have him reign and anoint him;
and they smite their palms and say,
The sovereign lives.

13 And Athal Yah
hears the noise of the runners and of the people;
and she comes to the people in the house of Yah Veh:

14 and she sees, and behold,
the sovereign standing by a pillar
according to the judgment;
and the governors and the trumpeters
by the sovereign;
and all the people of the land cheering
and blasting with trumpets:
and Athal Yah rips her clothes and calls out,
Conspiracy! Conspiracy!

15 And Yah Yada the priest misvahs
the governors of the hundreds
— the overseers of the valiant
and says to them,
Bring out her house by ranks:
and deathify him who goes after with the sword:
for the priest says,
Deathify her not in the house of Yah Veh.

16 And they set hands on her
and she goes the way of the entrance of the horses
into the house of the sovereign:
and there she is deathified.

17 And Yah Yada cuts a covenant between Yah Veh
and between the sovereign and between the people
to be a people to Yah Veh;
and between the sovereign and between the people.

18 And all the people of the land
go to the house of Baal and pull it down
— they thoroughly break
his sacrifice altars and his images;
and slaughter Mattan the priest of Baal
at the face of the sacrifice altars:
and the priest sets overseers
over the house of Yah Veh:

19 and he takes the governors over hundreds
and the executioners and the runners
and all the people of the land:
and they descend the sovereign
from the house of Yah Veh
and come by the way of the portal of the runners
to the house of the sovereign:
and he settles on the throne of the sovereigns.

20 And all the people of the land cheer
and the city rests:
and they deathify Athal Yah with the sword
beside the house of the sovereign.

21 **YAH ASH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH**
Yah Ash is a son of seven years
when he begins to reign.

12 In the seventh year of Yah Hu
Yah Ash begins to reign;
and he reigns forty years in Yeru Shalem:

2 KINGS 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

1 And his mother's name was Zibiah **Zib Yah**
of Beersheba **Beer Sheba**.

2 And Jehoash *did* **Yah Ash** worked
that which was *right* **straight**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the **LORD Yah Veh** all his days
wherein Jehoiada **Yah Yada** the priest
instructed **taught** him.

3 But the *high places* **bamahs**
were not *taken away* **turned aside**:
the people still sacrificed and *burnt incense* **incensed**
in the *high places* **bamahs**.

4 And Jehoash **Yah Ash** said to the priests,
All the *money* **silver** of the *dedicated things* **holies**
that is brought into the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
even the *money* **silver** of every *one* **man** that passeth
the account,
the *money* **silver**
that every man is set at **of the appraisal of his soul**,
and all the *money* **silver**
that *cometh* **ascendeth** into any man's heart
to bring into the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
Let the priests take it to them,
every man of his acquaintance:
and let them *repair* **strengthen** the breaches of the house,
whosoever any breach shall be found.

6 But **And so be** it was so,
that in the three and twentieth year
of king Jehoash **sovereign Yah Ash**,
the priests had not *repaired* **strengthened**
the breaches of the house.

7 Then king Jehoash **sovereign Yah Ash**
called for Jehoiada **Yah Yada** the priest,
and the *other* priests, and said unto them,
Why *repair* **strengthen** ye not the breaches of the house?
now therefore
receive **take** no *more* **money silver** of your acquaintance,
but *deliver* **give** it for the breaches of the house.

8 And the priests consented
to receive **take** no *more* **money silver** of the people,
neither to *repair* **strengthen** the breaches of the house.

9 But Jehoiada **Yah Yada** the priest took a *chest* **one ark**,
and bored a hole in the *lid* **door** of it,
and set **gave** it beside the **sacrifice** altar, on the right side
as *one* **man** cometh into the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**:
and the priests that *kept* **guarded** the **door** **threshold**
put **gave** therein all the *money* **silver**
that was brought into the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.

10 And **so be** it was so,
when they saw
that there was much *money* **silver** in the *chest* **ark**,
that the *king's* **sovereign's** scribe and the *high* **great** priest
came up **ascended**,
and they *put up in bags* **bound it up**,
and *told* **numbered** the *money* **silver**
that was found in the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.

11 And they gave the *money* **silver**, being *told* **gauged**,
into the hands of them that *did* **worked** the work,
that had the oversight **the overseers**
of the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**:
and they *laid it out* **brought it**
to the *carpenters* **carvers of timber** and builders,
that *wrought* **worked**
upon the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,

12 And to *masons* **wallers**, and hewers of stone,
and to *buy* **chattel** timber and hewed stone
to *repair* **strengthen** the breaches
of the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and for all that was *laid out* **went** for the house
to *repair* **strengthen** it.

13 Howbeit there were not *made* **worked**
for the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**
bowls **basons** of silver, *snuffers* **tweezers**,
basons **sprinklers**, trumpets,
any *vessels* **instruments** of gold,
or *vessels* **instruments** of silver,
of the *money* **silver**
that was brought into the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**:

14 But they gave that
to the *workmen* **those doing the work**,

2 SOVEREIGNS 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the name of his mother, Zib Yah of Beer Sheba.

2 And all his days
Yah Ash works straight in the eyes of Yah Veh
wherein Yah Yada the priest taught him:

3 only, they turn not aside the bamahs:
the people still sacrifice and incense in the bamahs.

4 And Yah Ash says to the priests,
Bring all the silver of the holies
into the house of Yah Veh:
the silver of every man who passes
— the silver of the appraisal of his soul,
all the silver ascending into any heart of man
to bring to the house of Yah Veh,
5 the priests take it to every man of his acquaintance
to strengthen the breaches of the house
wherever they find any breach.

6 And so be it,
in the twenty—third year of sovereign Yah Ash,
the priests had not strengthened
the breaches of the house:

7 and sovereign Yah Ash calls to Yah Yada the priest
and to the priests and says to them,
Why strengthen you not the breaches of the house?
And now take no silver of your acquaintances
but give it for the breaches of the house.

8 And the priests consent
to neither take silver of the people
nor strengthen the breaches of the house:
9 and Yah Yada the priest takes one ark
and bores a hole in the door
and gives it beside the sacrifice altar
— on the right side
as man enters the house of Yah Veh:
and the priests guarding the threshold
give therein
all the silver brought into the house of Yah Veh.

10 And so be it,
they see much silver in the ark,
and the scribe and the great priest of the sovereign
ascend and bind and number the silver
found in the house of Yah Veh:
and they give the gauged silver
into the hands of them who work the work
— the overseers of the house of Yah Veh:
and they bring it to the carvers of timber and builders
who work on the house of Yah Veh;
and to wallers and hewers of stone;
and to chattel timber and hewed stone
to strengthen the breaches of the house of Yah Veh;
and for all that goes to strengthen the house.

12

13 Only, there are no workings
for the house of Yah Veh
— basons of silver, tweezers, sprinklers, trumpets,
any instruments of gold, or instruments of silver,
of the silver brought into the house of Yah Veh:

14 but they give that to them who do the work

2 KINGS 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and repaired **strengthened** therewith
the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
15 Moreover they *reckoned* **fabricated** not with the men,
into whose hand they *delivered* **gave** the **money silver**
to be **bestowed given**
on workmen to those doing the work:
for they *dealt faithfully* **worked trustworthily**.
16 The *trespass money* **silver for the guilt**
and *sin money* **the silver for the sin**
was not brought into the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**:
it was the priests'.
17 Then **Hazael Haza El**
king sovereign of Syria went up **Aram ascended**,
and fought against Gath, and *took* **captured** it:
and **Hazael Haza El** set his face
to go up **ascend** to **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
18 And **Jehoash Yah Ash**
king sovereign of Judah **Yah Hudah**
took all the *hallowed things* **holies**
that **Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat**, and **Jehoram Yah Ram**,
and **Ahaziah Achaz Yah**, his fathers,
kings **sovereigns of Judah** **Yah Hudah**,
had *dedicated* **hallowed**,
and his own *hallowed things* **holies**,
and all the gold that was found in the treasures
of the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and in the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
and sent it to **Hazael Haza El**
king sovereign of Syria **Aram**:
and he went away **ascended** from **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
19 And the rest of the *acts* **words** of **Joash Yah Ash**,
and all that he *did* **worked**,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns of Judah** **Yah Hudah**?
20 And his servants arose,
and *made* **conspired** a conspiracy,
and *slew* **Joash smote** **Yah Ash** in the house of Millo,
which *goeth down* **descendeth** to Silla.
21 For **Jozachar Yah Zachar** the son of Shimeath,
and **Jehozabad Yah Zabad** the son of Shomer, his servants,
smote him, and he died;
and they *buried* **entombed** him with his fathers
in the city of David:
and **Amaziah Amaz Yah** his son reigned in his stead.

YAH ACHAZ REIGNS OVER YISRA EL

13 In the three and twentieth year of **Joash Yah Ash**
the son of **Ahaziah Achaz Yah**
king sovereign of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
Jehoahaz Yah Achaz the son of **Jehu Yah Hu**
began to reign over **Israel Yisra El** in **Samaria Shomeron**,
and reigned seventeen years.
2 And he *did* **worked** that which was evil
in the *sight eyes* of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and *followed* **walked after** the sins of **Jeroboam Yarob Am**
the son of **Nebat**, which made **Israel Yisra El** to sin;
he *departed* **turned** not **aside** therefrom.
3 And the *anger* **wrath** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
was kindled against **Israel Yisra El**,
and he *delivered* **gave** them into the hand
of **Hazael Haza El** *king sovereign of Syria* **Aram**,
and into the hand
of **Benhadad Ben Hadad** the son of **Hazael Haza El**,
all their days.
4 And **Jehoahaz Yah Achaz**
besought the LORD **stroked the face of Yah Veh**,
and the **LORD Yah Veh** hearkened unto him:
for he saw the oppression of **Israel Yisra El**,
because the *king* **sovereign** of **Syria** **Aram** oppressed them.
5 (And the **LORD Yah Veh** gave **Israel Yisra El** a saviour,
so that they went out
from under the hand of the **Syrians Aramiy**:
and the *children* **sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
dwelt **settled** in their tents,
as *beforetime* **three yesters ago**.)
6 Nevertheless they *departed* **turned** not **aside**
from the sins of the house of **Jeroboam Yarob Am**,
who made **Israel Yisra El** sin, but walked therein:

2 SOVEREIGNS 12, 13629

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— who strengthen the house of Yah Veh.
15 And they fabricate not with the men
into whose hand they give the silver
to give to them who do the work:
for they work trustworthily.
16 They bring not the silver for the guilt
and the silver for the sin into the house of Yah Veh
— it is for the priests.
17 Then Haza El sovereign of Aram
ascends and fights Gath and captures it:
and Haza El sets his face to ascend to Yeru Shalem:
and Yah Ash sovereign of Yah Hudah
takes all the holies
Yah Shaphat and Yah Ram and Achaz Yah
his fathers, sovereigns of Yah Hudah,
hallowed:
and his own holies and all the gold
found in the treasures of the house of Yah Veh
and in the house of the sovereign
and sends it to Haza El sovereign of Aram:
and he ascends from Yeru Shalem.
19 And the rest of the words of Yah Ash
and all he worked,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah?
20 And his servants rise and conspire a conspiracy
and smite Yah Ash in the house of Millo,
which descends to Silla.
21 Yes, Yah Zachar the son of Shimeath
and Yah Zabad the son of Shomer, his servants,
smite him and he dies;
and they entomb him with his fathers
in the city of David:
and Amaz Yah his son reigns in his stead.

YAH ACHAZ REIGNS OVER YISRA EL

13 In the twenty—third year of Yah Ash
the son of Achaz Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
Yah Achaz the son of Yah Hu
begins to reign over Yisra El in Shomeron
— seventeen years;
2 and he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh;
and walks after the sins of Yarob Am the son of Nebat
who had Yisra El sin;
he turns not aside therefrom:
3 and Yah Veh kindles his wrath against Yisra El
and he gives them into the hand
of Haza El sovereign of Aram
and into the hand
of Ben Hadad the son of Haza El
all their days:
4 and Yah Achaz strokes the face of Yah Veh
and Yah Veh hears him:
for he sees the oppression of Yisra El
because the sovereign of Aram oppresses them.
5 And Yah Veh gives Yisra El a saviour,
so that they go from under the hand of the Aramiy:
and the sons of Yisra El settle in their tents
as three yesters ago:
6 only, they turn not aside
from the sins of the house of Yarob Am
by which he has Yisra El sin, wherein they walk:

2 KINGS 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- and there remained **stood** the grove **asherah** also
in *Samaria Shomeron*.)
- 7 Neither *did let* he **leave survive** of the people
to *Jehoahaz Yah Achaz* but fifty *horsemen cavalry*,
and ten chariots, and ten thousand *footmen on foot*;
for the *king sovereign* of *Syria Aram* had destroyed them,
and had *made set* them like the dust by threshing.
- 8 Now the rest of the *acts words* of *Jehoahaz Yah Achaz*,
and all that he *did worked*, and his might,
are they not *written inscribed* in the *book scroll*
of the *chronicles words of the days*
of the *kings sovereigns* of *Israel Yisra El*?
- 9 And *Jehoahaz slept Yah Achaz laid* with his fathers;
and they *buried entombed* him in *Samaria Shomeron*:
and *Joash Yah Ash* his son reigned in his stead.
- YAH ASH REIGNS OVER YISRA EL**
- 10 In the thirty and seventh year of *Joash Yah Ash*,
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*
began *Jehoash Yah Ash* the son of *Jehoahaz Yah Achaz*
to reign over *Israel Yisra El* in *Samaria Shomeron*,
and reigned sixteen years.
- 11 And he *did worked* that which was evil
in the *sight eyes* of the *LORD Yah Veh*;
he *departed turned* not *aside*
from all the sins of *Jeroboam Yarob Am* the son of *Nebat*,
who made *Israel Yisra El* sin: but he walked therein.
- 12 And the rest of the *acts words* of *Joash Yah Ash*,
and all that he *did worked*, and his might
wherewith he fought against *Amaziah Amaz Yah*,
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
are they not *written inscribed* in the *book scroll*
of the *chronicles words of the days*
of the *kings sovereigns* of *Israel Yisra El*?
- 13 And *Joash slept Yah Ash laid* with his fathers;
and *Jeroboam sat Yarob Am seated* upon his throne:
and *Joash Yah Ash*
was *buried entombed* in *Samaria Shomeron*
with the *kings sovereigns* of *Israel Yisra El*.
- THE FINAL COUNSEL OF ELI SHUA**
- 14 Now *Elisha Eli Shua* was fallen sick
of his sickness whereof he died.
And *Joash Yah Ash*, the *king sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*
came down descended unto him, and wept over his face,
and said, O my father, my father,
the chariot of *Israel Yisra El*,
and the *horsemen cavalry* thereof.
- 15 And *Elisha Eli Shua* said unto him,
Take bow and arrows.
And he took unto him bow and arrows.
- 16 And he said to the *king sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*,
Put Drive thine hand upon the bow.
And he *put drove* his hand upon it:
and *Elisha Eli Shua* put his hands
upon the *king's sovereign's* hands.
- 17 And he said, Open the window eastward.
And he opened it.
Then *Elisha Eli Shua* said, Shoot.
And he shot. And he said,
The arrow of the *LORD'S deliverance Yah Veh's salvation*,
and the arrow of *deliverance salvation* from *Syria Aram*:
for thou shalt smite the *Syrians Aramiy* in *Aphek Apheq*,
till thou have *consumed finished* them *off*.
- 18 And he said, Take the arrows. And he took them.
And he said unto the *king sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*,
Smite upon the *ground earth*.
And he smote *thrice three times*, and stayed.
- 19 And the man of *God Elohim*
was *wroth enraged* with him, and said,
Thou shouldst have smitten By smiting five or six times;
then hadst thou smitten *Syria Aram*
till thou hadst *consumed finished* it *off*:
whereas now
thou shalt smite *Syria but thrice Aram three times*.

2 SOVEREIGNS 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- and the *asherah* also stands there in *Shomeron*.
- 7 And of the people of *Yah Achaz*
he survives naught but fifty cavalry
and ten chariots and ten thousand on foot;
for the sovereign of *Aram* destroys them
and sets them as the dust by threshing.
- 8 And the rest of the words of *Yah Achaz*
and all he works and his might,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of *Yisra El*?
- 9 And *Yah Achaz* lies down with his fathers;
and they entomb him in *Shomeron*:
and *Yah Ash* his son reigns in his stead.
- YAH ASH REIGNS OVER YISRA EL**
- 10 In the thirty—seventh year of *Yah Ash*
sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
Yah Ash the son of *Yah Achaz*
begins to reign over *Yisra El* in *Shomeron*
— sixteen years:
and he works evil in the eyes of *Yah Veh*;
he turns not aside
from all the sins of *Yarob Am* the son of *Nebat*,
who had *Yisra El* sin: and he walks therein.
- 12 And the rest of the words of *Yah Ash*
and all he works and his might
wherewith he fights *Amaz Yah*
sovereign of *Yah Hudah*,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of *Yisra El*?
- 13 And *Yah Ash* lies down with his fathers;
and *Yarob Am* seats on his throne:
and *Yah Ash* is entombed in *Shomeron*
with the sovereigns of *Yisra El*.
- THE FINAL COUNSEL OF ELI SHUA**
- 14 And *Eli Shua* falls sick of his sickness
whereof he dies:
and *Yah Ash* the sovereign of *Yisra El*
descends to him and weeps over his face
and says, My father! My father!
The chariot of *Yisra El* and their cavalry!
- 15 And *Eli Shua* says to him, Take bow and arrows.
— and he takes bow and arrows.
- 16 And he says to the sovereign of *Yisra El*,
Drive your hand on the bow.
And he drives his hand on it:
and *Eli Shua* puts his hands
on the hands of the sovereign;
and he says, Open the window eastward!
— and he opens.
- Then *Eli Shua* says, Shoot!
— and he shoots.
- And he says,
The arrow of the salvation of *Yah Veh*
and the arrow of the salvation of *Aram*!
Smite the *Aramiy* in *Apheq* until you finish them off.
- 18 And he says, Take the arrows!
— and he takes.
- And he says to the sovereign of *Yisra El*,
Smite to the earth!
— and he smites three times and stays.
- 19 And the man of *Elohim* rages against him and says,
By smiting five or six times
you had smitten *Aram* until you had finished it off:
and now, smite *Aram* three times.

2 KINGS 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE DEATH OF ELI SHUA

20 And *Elisha* **Eli Shua** died,
and they *buried* **entombed** him.
And the *bands* **troops** of the *Moabites* **Moabiy**
invaded the land at the coming in of the year.
21 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
as they were *burying* **entombing** a man, that, behold,
they *spied a band of men* **saw a troop**;
and they cast the man
into the *sepulchre* **tomb** of *Elisha* **Eli Shua**:
and when the man was *let down* **descended**,
and touched the bones of *Elisha* **Eli Shua**,
he *revived* **enlivened**, and *stood up* **arose** on his feet.
22 But *Hazael* **Haza El** *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram**
oppressed *Israel* **Yisra El**
all the days of *Jehoahaz* **Yah Achaz**.
23 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
was gracious **granted charism** unto them,
and *had compassion on* **merciéd** them,
and *had respect* **turned his face** unto them,
because of his covenant
with *Abraham*, *Isaac* **Yischaq**, and *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and *would* **willed to** not *destroy* **ruin** them,
neither cast he them from his *presence* **face** as yet.

BEN HADAD REIGNS OVER ARAM

24 So *Hazael* **Haza El** *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram** died;
and *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad** his son reigned in his stead.
25 And *Jehoash* **Yah Ash** the son of *Jehoahaz* **Yah Achaz**
took again **returned and took out** of the hand
of *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad** the son of *Hazael* **Haza El**
the cities,
which he had taken out of the hand
of *Jehoahaz* **Yah Achaz** his father by war.
Three times did *Joash* **beat** *Yah Ash* **smite** him,
and *recovered* **returned** the cities of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

AMAZ YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

14 In the second year of *Joash* **Yah Ash**
son of *Jehoahaz* **Yah Achaz**
king **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
reigned *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah**
the son of *Joash* **Yah Ash**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
2 He was a **son** of twenty and five years *old*
when he began to reign,
and reigned twenty and nine years
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name was *Jehoaddan* **Yah Addan**
of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
3 And he *did* **worked** that which was right **straight**
in the *sight eyes* of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
yet only not like David his father:
he *did* **worked** according to all *things*
as *Joash* **Yah Ash** his father *did* **worked**.
4 Howbeit
the *high places* **bamahs** were not *taken away* **turned aside**:
as yet **still** the people did sacrifice
and *burnt incense* **incensed** on the *high places* **bamahs**.
5 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
as soon as the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
was *confirmed* **strong** in his hand,
that he *slew* **smote** his servants
which had *slain* **smitten** the *king* **sovereign** his father.
6 But the *children* **sons** of the *murderers* **smitters**
he *slew* **deathified** not:
according unto that which is *written* **inscribed**
in the *book* **scroll** of the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
wherein the *LORD* **commanded** *Yah Veh* **misvahed**, saying,
The fathers shall not be *put to death* **deathified**
for the *children* **sons**,
nor the *children* **be put to death** **sons deathified**
for the fathers;
but every man shall be *put to death* **deathified**
for his own sin.
7 He *slew* **smote** of Edom
in the *valley of salt* **Gay Melach/Valley of Salt**
ten thousand,
and *took Selah* **apprehended the rock** by war,
and called the name of it *Joktheel* **Yogthe El** unto this day.

2 SOVEREIGNS 13, 14631

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE DEATH OF ELI SHUA

20 And Eli Shua dies and they entomb him:
and the troops of the Moabiy invade the land
at the coming in of the year:
21 and so be it, as they entomb a man,
behold, they see a troop;
and they cast the man into the tomb of Eli Shua:
and when the man descends
and touches the bones of Eli Shua,
he enlivens and rises on his feet.
22 And Haza El sovereign of Aram
oppresses Yisra El all the days of Yah Achaz:
23 and Yah Veh grants them charism
and mercies them and turns his face to them
because of his covenant
with Abraham, Yischaq and Yaaqov
and wills neither to ruin them,
nor cast them from his face as yet.

BEN HADAD REIGNS OVER ARAM

24 So Haza El sovereign of Aram dies;
and Ben Hadad his son reigns in his stead:
25 and Yah Ash the son of Yah Achaz returns
and takes the cities
from the hand of Ben Hadad the son of Haza El
which he took by war
from the hand of Yah Achaz his father:
and Yah Ash smites him three times
and returns the cities of Yisra El.

AMAZ YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

14 In the second year of Yah Ash
son of Yah Achaz sovereign of Yisra El,
reigns Amaz Yah
the son of Yah Ash sovereign of Yah Hudah:
2 he is a son of twenty—five years
when he begins to reign;
and reigns twenty—nine years in Yeru Shalem:
and the name of his mother,
Yah Addan of Yeru Shalem.
3 And he works straight in the eyes of Yah Veh;
only, not as David his father:
he works according to all as Yah Ash his father works:
4 only, he turns not aside the bamahs:
the people still sacrifice and incense on the bamahs.
5 And so be it,
when the sovereigndom is strong in his hand
he smites his servants
who smote the sovereign his father:
6 but he deathifies not the sons of the smitters
— as inscribed in the scroll of the torah of Mosheh;
wherein Yah Veh misvahed, saying,
Neither deathify the fathers for the sons,
nor deathify the sons for the fathers;
but deathify every man for his own sin.
7 He smites ten thousand of Edom
in Gay Melach/Valley of Salt
and apprehends the rock by war
and calls the name of it Yogthe El to this day.

2 KINGS 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 8 Then **Amaziah Amaz Yah** sent *messengers* **angels** to **Jehoash Yah Ash**, the son of **Jehoahaz Yah Achaz** son of **Jehu Yah Hu**, *king* **sovereign** of **Israel Yisra El**, saying, Come, let us *look see* one another in the face.
- 9 And **Jehoash Yah Ash** the *king* **sovereign** of **Israel Yisra El** sent to **Amaziah Amaz Yah** *king* **sovereign** of **Judah Yah Hudah**, saying, The *thistle thorn* that was in Lebanon sent to the cedar that was in Lebanon, saying, Give thy daughter to my son to *wife* **woman**: and there passed by a *wild beast* **live being of the field** that was in Lebanon, and *trode down* **trampled** the *thistle thorn*.
- 10 **In smiting**, Thou hast *indeed* smitten Edom, and thine heart hath lifted thee up: *glory of this* **be honoured**, and *tarry* **settle** at home **thy house**: for why shouldst thou *meddle to thy hurt* **coax to evil**, that thou shouldst fall, even thou, and **Judah Yah Hudah** with thee?
- 11 But **Amaziah would not hear Amaz Yah hearkened not**. Therefore **Jehoash Yah Ash** *king* **sovereign** of **Israel** went up **Yisra El** ascended; and he and **Amaziah Amaz Yah**, *king* **sovereign** of **Judah Yah Hudah** looked **saw** one another in the face at **Bethshemesh Beth Shemesh**, which *belongeth* **be** to **Judah Yah Hudah**.
- 12 And **Judah Yah Hudah** was *put to the worse* **smitten** before **Israel** at the face of **Yisra El**; and they fled every man to their tents.
- 13 And **Jehoash Yah Ash** *king* **sovereign** of **Israel Yisra El** took **Amaziah apprehended Amaz Yah**, *king* **sovereign** of **Judah Yah Hudah**, the son of **Jehoash Yah Ash** the son of **Ahaziah Achaz Yah**, at **Bethshemesh Beth Shemesh**, and came to **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**, and brake down the wall of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem** from the *gate* **portal** of **Ephraim Ephrayim** unto the corner *gate* **portal**, four hundred cubits.
- 14 And he took all the gold and silver, and all the *vessels* **instruments** that were found in the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**, and in the treasures of the *king's* **sovereign's** house, and *hostages* **sons as pledges**, and returned to **Samaria Shomeron**.
- 15 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of **Jehoash Yah Ash** which he *did* **worked**, and his might, and how he fought with **Amaziah Amaz Yah**, *king* **sovereign** of **Judah Yah Hudah**, are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll** of the *chronicles* **words of the days** of the *kings* **sovereigns** of **Israel Yisra El**?
- 16 And **Jehoash slept Yah Ash laid** with his fathers, and was *buried* **entombed** in **Samaria Shomeron** with the *kings* **sovereigns** of **Israel Yisra El**; and **Jeroboam Yarob Am** his son reigned in his stead.
- 17 And **Amaziah Amaz Yah** the son of **Joash Yah Ash**, *king* **sovereign** of **Judah Yah Hudah** lived after the death of **Jehoash Yah Ash** son of **Jehoahaz Yah Achaz** *king* **sovereign** of **Israel Yisra El** fifteen years.
- 18 And the rest of the *acts* **words** of **Amaziah Amaz Yah**, are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll** of the *chronicles* **words of the days** of the *kings* **sovereigns** of **Judah Yah Hudah**?
- 19 Now they *made* **conspired** a conspiracy against him in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**: and he fled to **Lachish**; but they sent after him to **Lachish**, and *slew* **deathified** him there.
- 20 And they *brought* **lifted** him on horses: and he was *buried* **entombed** at **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem** with his fathers in the city of **David**.
- AZAR YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH**
- 21 And all the people of **Judah Yah Hudah** took **Azariah Azar Yah**, which was a **son of** sixteen years *old*,

2 SOVEREIGNS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 8 Then **Amaz Yah** sends angels to **Yah Ash** son of **Yah Achaz** son of **Yah Hu** *sovereign* of **Yisra El**, saying, Come! See one another in the face!
- 9 And **Yah Ash** the *sovereign* of **Yisra El** sends to **Amaz Yah** *sovereign* of **Yah Hudah**, saying, The *thorn* in Lebanon sends to the cedar in Lebanon, saying, Give your daughter to my son to *woman*: and a *live being of the field* passes by in Lebanon and *tramples* the *thorn*: in *smiting*, you *smote* **Edom** and your heart lifts you: *be* **honored** and settle at your house: for why *coax* you to *evil* only, to fall — you and **Yah Hudah** with you?
- 11 And **Amaz Yah** hearkens not: and **Yah Ash** *sovereign* of **Yisra El** ascends; and he and **Amaz Yah** *sovereign* of **Yah Hudah** see one another in the face at **Beth Shemesh, Yah Hudah**: and **Yah Hudah** is smitten at the face of **Yisra El**; and every man flees to his tent.
- 13 And **Yah Ash** *sovereign* of **Yisra El** apprehends **Amaz Yah** *sovereign* of **Yah Hudah** the son of **Yah Ash** the son of **Achaz Yah** at **Beth Shemesh**; and comes to **Yeru Shalem** and breaks the wall of **Yeru Shalem** from the *portal* of **Ephrayim** to the corner *portal* — four hundred cubits: and he takes all the gold and silver and all the *instruments* he finds in the house of **Yah Veh** and in the treasures of the house of the *sovereign* — and *sons* as *pledges*; and returns to **Shomeron**.
- 15 And the rest of the words **Yah Ash** worked and his *might* and how he fought with **Amaz Yah** *sovereign* of **Yah Hudah**; are they not *inscribed* in the *scroll* of the words of the days of the *sovereigns* of **Yisra El**?
- 16 And **Yah Ash** lies down with his fathers *entombed* in **Shomeron** with the *sovereigns* of **Yisra El**; and **Yarob Am** his son reigns in his stead.
- 17 And **Amaz Yah** the son of **Yah Ash** *sovereign* of **Yah Hudah** lives after the death of **Yah Ash** *sovereign* of **Yah Hudah** *fifteen* years.
- 18 And the rest of the words of **Amaz Yah**, are they not *inscribed* in the *scroll* of the words of the days of the *sovereigns* of **Yah Hudah**?
- 19 And they conspire a conspiracy against him in **Yeru Shalem**: and he flees to **Lachish**; and they send after him to **Lachish** and *deathify* him there: and they lift him on horses and *entomb* him at **Yeru Shalem** with his fathers in the city of **David**.
- AZAR YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH**
- 21 And all the people of **Yah Hudah** take **Azar Yah** — a son of sixteen years

2 KINGS 14, 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- and made him *king* **reign**
instead of his father *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah**.
22 He built *Elath* **Eloth**,
and restored it to *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
after that the *king* **sovereign**
slept laid with his fathers.
- YAROB AM REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH**
- 23 In the fifteenth year of *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah**
the son of *Joash* **Yah Ash**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
Jeroboam **Yarob Am** the son of *Joash* **Yah Ash**
king **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
began to reign in *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
and *reigned* forty and one years.
24 And he *did* **worked** that which was evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
he *departed* **turned** not **aside** from all the sins
of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** the son of *Nebat*,
who made *Israel* **Yisra El** to sin.
25 He restored the *coast* **border** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
from the entering of *Hamath* unto the sea of the plain,
according to the word
of the *LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which he *spake* **worded**
by the hand of his servant *Jonah* **Yonah**,
the son of *Amittai* **Amittay**, the prophet,
which was of *Gathhepher*.
26 For the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
saw the *affliction* **humiliation** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that it was *very bitter* **mighty** **rebellling**:
for there was not any *shut up* **finally** **restrained**,
nor any **finally** left
nor any helper for *Israel* **Yisra El**.
27 And the *LORD* **said** **Yah Veh** **worded** not
that he *would* **should**
blot **wipe** out the name of *Israel* **Yisra El**
from under *heaven* **the heavens**:
but he saved them by the hand of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
the son of *Joash* **Yah Ash**.
28 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**,
and all that he *did* **worked**,
and his might, how he *warred* **fought**,
and how he *recovered* *Damascus* **returned** *Dammeseq*,
and *Hamath*, which *belonged* to *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
for *Israel* **Yisra El**,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words** of the *days*
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
29 And *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
slept laid with his fathers,
even with the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and *Zachariah* **Zechar Yah** his son reigned in his stead.
- AZAR YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH**
- 15 In the twenty and seventh year of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
king **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
began *Azariah* **Azar Yah** son of *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** to reign.
2 A son of sixteen years *old* was he
when he began to reign,
and he reigned two and fifty years
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name was *Jecholiah* **Yechol Yah**
of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
3 And he *did* **worked** that which was *right* **straight**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
according to all that his father *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah**
had *done* **worked**;
4 Save **Except** that the *high places* **bamahs**
were not *removed* **turned** **aside**:
the people sacrificed and *burnt incense* **incensed** still
on the *high places* **bamahs**.
5 And the *LORD* **smote** **Yah Veh** **touched** the *king* **sovereign**,
so that he was a leper unto the day of his death,
and *dwelt* **settled** in a *several* **liberty** house.
And *Jotham* **Yah Tham** the *king's* **sovereign's** son
was over the house, judging the people of the land.
6 And the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Azariah* **Azar Yah**,
and all that he *did* **worked**,

2 SOVEREIGNS 14, 15633

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- to reign in the stead of his father *Amaz Yah*.
22 He builds *Eloth* and restores it to *Yah Hudah*,
after the sovereign lies down with his fathers.
- YAROB AM REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH**
- 23 In the fifteenth year of *Amaz Yah*
the son of *Yah Ash* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*,
Yarob Am the son of *Yah Ash* sovereign of *Yisra El*
begins to reign in *Shomeron* forty—one years:
24 and he works evil in the eyes of *Yah Veh*:
he turns not aside from all the sins
of *Yarob Am* the son of *Nebat*
who had *Yisra El* to sin.
- 25 He restores the border of *Yisra El*
from the entering of *Hamath* to the sea of the plain
according to the word
Yah Veh Elohim of *Yisra El* worded
by the hand of his servant *Yonah*
the son of *Amittay* the prophet, of *Gathhepher*.
- 26 For *Yah Veh* sees the humiliation of *Yisra El*,
— mighty **rebellling**:
for neither are any finally restrained
nor any finally left
nor any helper for *Yisra El*.
27 And *Yah Veh* words not
to wipe out the name of *Yisra El*
from under the heavens:
but he saves them
by the hand of *Yarob Am* the son of *Yah Ash*.
- 28 And the rest of the words of *Yarob Am*
and all he works and his might and how he fights
and how he returns *Dammeseq* and *Hamath*
to *Yah Hudah* for *Yisra El*:
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of *Yisra El*?
- 29 And *Yarob Am* lies down with his fathers
the sovereigns of *Yisra El*;
and *Zechar Yah* his son reigns in his stead.
- AZAR YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH**
- 15 In the twenty—seventh year of *Yarob Am*
sovereign of *Yisra El*
Azar Yah son of *Amaz Yah* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
begins to reign
2 — a son of sixteen years when he begins to reign
and he reigns fifty—two years in *Yeru Shalem*:
and the name of his mother,
Yechol Yah of *Yeru Shalem*.
- 3 And he works straight in the eyes of *Yah Veh*
according to all his father *Amaz Yah* worked;
4 except the *bamahs* are not turned aside:
the people still sacrifice and incense on the *bamahs*.
- 5 And *Yah Veh* touches the sovereign
so that he is a leper to the day of his death;
and settles in a liberty house:
and *Yah Tham* the son of the sovereign
is over the house, judging the people of the land.
- 6 And the rest of the words of *Azar Yah*
and all he works,

2 KINGS 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- are they not written **inscribed** in the *book scroll* of the *chronicles words of the days* of the *kings sovereigns of Judah Yah Hudah*?
7 So *Azariah slept Azar Yah laid* with his fathers; and they *buried entombed* him with his fathers in the city of David:
and *Jotham Yah Tham* his son reigned in his stead.
8 **ZECHAR YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH**
In the thirty and eighth year of *Azariah Azar Yah*, *king sovereign* of *Judah Yah Hudah* did *Zachariah Zechar Yah* the son of *Jeroboam Yarob Am* reign over *Israel Yisra El* in *Samaria Shomeron* six months.
9 And he *did worked* that which was evil in the *sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh*, as his fathers had *done worked*:
he *departed turned* not *aside* from the sins of *Jeroboam Yarob Am* the son of *Nebath*, who made *Israel Yisra El* to sin.
10 And *Shallum* the son of *Jabesh Yabesh* conspired against him, and smote him *before in front of* the people, and *slew deathified* him, and reigned in his stead.
11 And the rest of the *acts words* of *Zachariah Zechar Yah*, behold, they are *written inscribed* in the *book scroll* of the *chronicles words of the days* of the *kings sovereigns* of *Israel Yisra El*.
12 This was the word of the *LORD Yah Veh* which he *spoke worded* unto *Jehu Yah Hu*, saying, Thy sons shall *sit settle* on the throne of *Israel Yisra El* unto the fourth *generation*.
And so **so be** it *came to pass*.
SHALLUM REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH
13 *Shallum* the son of *Jabesh Yabesh* began to reign in the nine and thirtieth year of *Uzziah Uzzi Yah*, *king sovereign* of *Judah Yah Hudah*; and he reigned a *full month month of days* in *Samaria Shomeron*.
14 For *Menahem Menachem* the son of *Gadi* *went up ascended* from *Tirzah Tirsah*, and came to *Samaria Shomeron*, and smote *Shallum* the son of *Jabesh Yabesh* in *Samaria Shomeron*, and *slew slaughtered* him, and reigned in his stead.
15 And the rest of the *acts words* of *Shallum*, and his conspiracy which he *made conspired*, behold, they are *written inscribed* in the *book scroll* of the *chronicles words of the days* of the *kings sovereigns* of *Israel Yisra El*.
16 Then *Menahem Menachem* smote *Tiphshah Tiphshach*, and all that were therein, and the *coasts borders* thereof from *Tirzah Tirsah*: because they opened not to him, therefore he smote it; and all the *women therein that were with child* **conceivers** he *ripped up split*.
MENACHEM REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH
17 In the nine and thirtieth year of *Azariah Azar Yah*, *king sovereign* of *Judah Yah Hudah* began *Menahem Menachem* the son of *Gadi* to reign over *Israel Yisra El*, and reigned ten years in *Samaria Shomeron*.
18 And he *did worked* that which was evil in the *sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh*: he *departed turned* not *aside* all his days from the sins of *Jeroboam Yarob Am* the son of *Nebath*, who made *Israel Yisra El* to sin.
19 And *Pul* the *king sovereign* of *Assyria Ashshur* came against the land:
and *Menahem Menachem* gave *Pul* a thousand *talents rounds* of silver, that his hand might be with him
to *confirm uphold* the *kingdom sovereigndom* in his hand.
20 And *Menahem Menachem* *exactd brought* the *money silver* of *Israel Yisra El*, even of all the mighty *men of wealth valuables*, of each **one** man fifty shekels of silver, to give to the *king sovereign* of *Assyria Ashshur*.
So the *king sovereign* of *Assyria Ashshur* turned back, and stayed not there in the land.

2 SOVEREIGNS 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words of the days of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah?
7 And Azar Yah lies down with his fathers; entombed with his fathers in the city of David: and Yah Tham his son reigns in his stead.
ZECHAR YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH
8 In the thirty—eighth year of Azar Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah, Zechar Yah the son of Yarob Am reigns over Yisra El in Shomeron six months: and he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh as his fathers worked:
he turns not aside from the sins of Yarob Am the son of Nebat who had Yisra El sin.
10 And Shallum the son of Yabesh conspires against him and smites him in front of the people and deathifies him and reigns in his stead.
11 And the rest of the words of Zechar Yah, behold, are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words of the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El?
12 This is the word of Yah Veh he words to Yah Hu, saying,
Your sons settle on the throne of Yisra El to the fourth. — and so be it.
SHALLUM REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH
13 Shallum the son of Yabesh begins to reign in the thirty—ninth year of Uzzi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah; and he reigns a month of days in Shomeron.
14 And Menachem the son of Gadi ascends from Tirsah and comes to Shomeron and smites Shallum the son of Yabesh in Shomeron — slaughters him and reigns in his stead.
15 And the rest of the words of Shallum and the conspiracy he conspired, behold, are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words of the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El?
16 Then Menachem smites Tiphshach and everyone therein; and the borders from Tirsah because they opened not to him: so he smites it; and splits all the conceivers.
MENACHEM REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH
17 In the thirty—ninth year of Azar Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah Menachem the son of Gadi begins to reign over Yisra El — ten years in Shomeron.
18 And he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh: he turns not aside all his days from the sins of Yarob Am the son of Nebat, who had Yisra El sin.
19 Pul the sovereign of Ashshur comes against the land: and Menachem gives Pul a thousand rounds of silver that his hand be with him to uphold the sovereigndom in his hand: and Menachem brings the silver of Yisra El of all the mighty of valuables; of one man fifty shekels of silver to give to the sovereign of Ashshur: and the sovereign of Ashshur turns back and stays not in the land.

2 KINGS 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 21 And the rest of the acts **words** of Menahem Menachem,
and all that he *did* **worked**,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of Israel Yisra El?
22 And Menahem Menachem
slept **laid** with his fathers;
and Pekahiah Peqach Yah his son reigned in his stead.
PEQACH YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH
23 In the fiftieth year of Azariah Azar Yah
king **sovereign** of Judah Yah Hudah
Pekahiah Peqach Yah the son of Menahem Menachem
began to reign over Israel Yisra El in Samaria Shomeron,
and reigned two years.
24 And he *did* **worked** that which was evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
he *departed* **turned** not **aside**
from the sins of Jeroboam Yarob Am the son of Nebat,
who made Israel Yisra El to sin.
25 But Pekah Peqach the son of Remaliah Remal Yah,
a *captain* **tertiary** of his, conspired against him,
and smote him in Samaria Shomeron,
in the *palace* **citadel** of the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
with Argob and Arieah Aryah,
and with him fifty men
of the *Gileadites* **sons of the Giladiy**:
and he *killed* **deathified** him,
and reigned in his *room* **stead**.
26 And the rest of the acts **words** of Pekahiah Peqach Yah,
and all that he *did* **worked**, behold,
they are *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of Israel Yisra El.
PEQACH REIGNS OVER YISRA EL
27 In the two and fiftieth year of Azariah Azar Yah,
king **sovereign** of Judah Yah Hudah,
Pekah Peqach the son of Remaliah Remal Yah
began to reign over Israel Yisra El in Samaria Shomeron,
and reigned twenty years.
28 And he *did* **worked** that which was evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
he *departed* **turned** not **aside**
from the sins of Jeroboam Yarob Am the son of Nebat,
who made Israel Yisra El to sin.
29 In the days of Pekah Peqach
king **sovereign** of Israel Yisra El
came Tiglathpileser Tilgath Pileser,
king **sovereign** of Assyria Ashshur, and took Ijon Iyon,
and Abelbethmaachah Abel Beth Maachah,
and Janoah Yanochah, and Kedesh Qedesh,
and Hazor Hasor, and Gilead Gilad, and Galilee Galiyl,
all the land of Naphtali,
and *carried* **exiled** them *captive* to Assyria Ashshur.
30 And Hoshea the son of Elah
made **conspired** a conspiracy
against Pekah Peqach the son of Remaliah Remal Yah,
and smote him, and *slew* **deathified** him,
and reigned in his stead,
in the twentieth year of Jotham Yah Tham
the son of Uzziah Uzzi Yah.
31 And the rest of the acts **words** of Pekah Peqach,
and all that he *did* **worked**, behold,
they are *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of Israel Yisra El.
YAH THAM REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH
32 In the second year of Pekah Peqach
the son of Remaliah Remal Yah
king **sovereign** of Israel Yisra El
began Jotham Yah Tham the son of Uzziah Uzzi Yah
king **sovereign** of Judah Yah Hudah to reign.
33 A **son** of Five and twenty years *old*
was he when he began to reign,
and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.
And his mother's name was Jerusha Yerushah,
the daughter of Zadok Sadoq.
34 And he *did* **worked** that which was *right* **straight**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:

2 SOVEREIGNS 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 21 And the rest of the words of Menachem
and all he works,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El?
22 And Menachem lies down with his fathers;
and Peqach Yah his son reigns in his stead.
PEQACH YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH
23 In the fiftieth year of Azar Yah
sovereign of Yah Hudah
Peqach Yah the son of Menachem
begins to reign over Yisra El in Shomeron two years.
24 And he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh:
he turns not aside
from the sins of Yarob Am the son of Nebat
who had Yisra El sin.
25 And Peqach the son of Remal Yah, his tertiary,
conspires against him and smites him in Shomeron,
in the citadel of the house of the sovereign;
with Argob and Aryah
and with fifty men of the sons of the Giladiy:
and he deathifies him and reigns in his stead.
26 And the rest of the words of Peqach Yah
and all he worked, behold,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El?
PEQACH REIGNS OVER YISRA EL
27 In the fifty—second year of Azar Yah
sovereign of Yah Hudah,
Peqach the son of Remal Yah
begins to reign over Yisra El in Shomeron
twenty years.
28 And he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh:
he turns not aside
from the sins of Yarob Am the son of Nebat,
who had Yisra El sin.
29 In the days of Peqach sovereign of Yisra El
Tilgath Pileser sovereign of Ashshur
comes and takes Iyon and Abel Beth Maachah
and Yanochah and Qedesh
and Hasor and Gilad and Galiyl
— all the land of Naphtali
and exiles them to Ashshur.
30 And Hoshea the son of Elah conspires a conspiracy
against Peqach the son of Remal Yah;
and smites him and deathifies him
and reigns in his stead
in the twentieth year
of Yah Tham the son of Uzzi Yah.
31 And the rest of the words of Peqach
and all he worked, behold,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El?
YAH THAM REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH
32 In the second year of Peqach
the son of Remal Yah sovereign of Yisra El
Yah Tham the son of Uzzi Yah
sovereign of Yah Hudah begins to reign:
a son of twenty—five years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns sixteen years in Yeru Shalem:
and the name of his mother,
Yerushah the daughter of Sadoq.
34 And he works straight in the eyes of Yah Veh:

2 KINGS 15, 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

he *did* **worked** according to all
that his father *Uzziah* **Uzzi Yah** had *done* **worked**.
35 Howbeit
the *high places* **bamahs** were not *removed* **turned aside**:
the people sacrificed and *burned incense* **incensed** still
in the *high places* **bamahs**.
He built the *higher gate* **Elyon Portal**
of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
36 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Jotham* **Yah Tham**,
and all that he *did* **worked**,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**?
37 In those days the *LORD* **Yah Veh** began to send
against *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
Rezin **Resin** the *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram**,
and *Pekah* **Peqach** the son of *Remaliah* **Remal Yah**.
38 And *Jotham* **Yah Tham** *laid* with his fathers,
and was *buried* **entombed** with his fathers
in the city of David his father:
and *Ahaz* **Achaz** his son reigned in his stead.

ACHAZ REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

16

In the seventeenth year of *Pekah* **Peqach**
the son of *Remaliah* **Remal Yah**,
Ahaz **Achaz** the son of *Jotham* **Yah Tham**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** began to reign.
2 **A son** of Twenty years *old* was *Ahaz* **Achaz**
when he began to reign,
and reigned sixteen years in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and *did* **worked** not that which was *right* **straight**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim**,
like David his father.
3 But he walked in the way
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, yea,
and made his son to pass through the fire,
according to the *abominations* **abhorrences**
of the *heathen* **goyim**,
whom the *LORD* **cast out** **Yah Veh** *dispossessed*
from *before* **the face** of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
4 And he sacrificed and *burnt incense* **incensed**
in the *high places* **bamahs**,
and on the hills, and under every green tree.
5 Then *Rezin* **Resin** *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram**,
and *Pekah* **Peqach** son of *Remaliah* **Remal Yah**,
king **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
came up **ascended** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** to war:
and they besieged *Ahaz* **Achaz**,
but could not *overcome* **fight** him.
6 At that time *Rezin* **Resin** *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram**
recovered **Elath** *restored* **Eloth** to *Syria* **Aram**,
and *drave* **plucked** the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** from *Elath* **Eloth**:
and the *Syrians* **Edomiy** came to *Elath* **Eloth**,
and *dwelt* **settled** there unto this day.
7 So *Ahaz* **Achaz** sent *messengers* **angels**
to *Tiglathpileser* **Tilgath Pileser**
king **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**, saying,
I am thy servant and thy son: *come up* **ascend**,
and save me out of the *hand* **palm**
of the *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram**,
and out of the *hand* **palm**
of the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which rise up against me.
8 And *Ahaz* **Achaz** took the silver and gold
that was found in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and in the treasures of the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
and sent it for a *present* **bribe**
to the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**.
9 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
hearkened unto him:
for the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
went up **ascended** against *Damascus* **Dammeseq**,
and took **apprehended** it,
and *carried* **the people** of it *captive* **captured it** to *Kir* **Qir**,
and slew *Rezin* **deathified** **Resin**.
10 And *king* **Achaz** *sovereign* **Achaz**
went to *Damascus* **Dammeseq**
to meet *Tiglathpileser* **Tilgath Pileser**,
king **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
and saw *an* **a sacrifice** altar that was at *Damascus* **Dammeseq**:

2 SOVEREIGNS 15, 16636

exeGesés companion BIBLE

he works according to all his father *Uzzi* **Yah** worked:
35 only, the *bamahs* are not turned aside:
the people still sacrifice and incense in the *bamahs*.
He builds *Elyon* **Portal** of the house of *Yah* **Veh**.
36 Now the rest of the words of *Yah* **Tham**
and all he worked,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of *Yah* **Hudah**?
37 In those days
Yah **Veh** begins to send against *Yah* **Hudah**
Resin the sovereign of *Aram*
and *Peqach* the son of *Remal* **Yah**.
38 And *Yah* **Tham** lies down with his fathers
— entombed with his fathers
in the city of David his father:
and *Achaz* his son reigns in his stead.

ACHAZ REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

16

In the seventeenth year of *Peqach*
the son of *Remal* **Yah**,
Achaz the son of *Yah* **Tham**,
sovereign of *Yah* **Hudah** begins to reign.
2 *Achaz* is a son of twenty years
when he begins to reign;
and reigns sixteen years in *Yeru* **Shalem**
and works not straight
in the eyes of *Yah* **Veh** his *Elohim*
as David his father:
3 and he walks in the way of the sovereigns of *Yisra* **El**
yea, and passes his son through the fire
according to the abhorrences of the *goyim*
— whom *Yah* **Veh** *dispossessed*
from the face of the sons of *Yisra* **El**:
4 and he sacrifices and incenses in the *bamahs*
and on the hills and under every green tree.
5 Then *Resin* sovereign of *Aram*
and *Peqach* son of *Remal* **Yah** sovereign of *Yisra* **El**
ascend to *Yeru* **Shalem** to war:
and they besiege *Achaz* but cannot fight.
6 At that time,
Resin sovereign of *Aram* restores *Eloth* to *Aram*
and plucks the *Yah* **Hudiym** from *Eloth*:
and the *Edomiy* come to *Eloth*
and settle there to this day.
7 And *Achaz* sends angels
to *Tilgath Pileser* sovereign of *Ashshur*,
saying, I am your servant and your son:
ascend and save me
from the palm of the sovereign of *Aram*
and from the palm of the sovereign of *Yisra* **El**
who rise against me.
8 And *Achaz* takes the silver and gold
found in the house of *Yah* **Veh**
and in the treasures of the house of the sovereign;
and sends it for a bribe to the sovereign of *Ashshur*:
9 and the sovereign of *Ashshur* hearkens to him:
and the sovereign of *Ashshur*
ascends against *Dammeseq*
and apprehends it and captures it to *Qir*;
and deathifies *Resin*.
10 And sovereign *Achaz* goes to *Dammeseq*
to meet *Tilgath Pileser* sovereign of *Ashshur*
and sees a sacrifice altar at *Dammeseq*:

2 KINGS 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and king Achaz sovereign Achaz
sent to Urijah Uri Yah the priest
the fashion likeness of the sacrifice altar,
and the pattern of it,
according to all the workmanship works thereof.
11 And Urijah Uri Yah the priest built an a sacrifice altar
according to all that king Achaz sovereign Achaz
had sent from Damascus Dammeseq:
so Urijah Uri Yah the priest made worked it
against king Achaz came
unto the coming of sovereign Achaz
from Damascus Dammeseq.
12 And when the king sovereign
was come from Damascus Dammeseq,
the king sovereign saw the sacrifice altar:
and the king sovereign approached to the sacrifice altar,
and offered holocausted thereon.
13 And he burnt incensed his burnt offering holocaust
and his meat offering,
and poured his drink offering libation,
and sprinkled the blood of his peace offerings shelamim,
upon the sacrifice altar.
14 And he brought approached also
the brasen copper sacrifice altar,
which was before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
from the forefront face of the house,
from between the sacrifice altar
and between the house of the LORD Yah Veh,
and put gave it
on the north side flank of the sacrifice altar.
15 And king Achaz sovereign Achaz
commanded Urijah misvahed Uri Yah the priest, saying,
Upon the great sacrifice altar
burn incense the morning burnt offering holocaust,
and the evening meat offering,
and the king's burnt sacrifice sovereign's holocaust,
and his meat offering,
with the burnt offering holocaust
of all the people of the land,
and their meat offering,
and their drink offerings libations;
and sprinkle upon it
all the blood of the burnt offering holocaust,
and all the blood of the sacrifice:
and the brasen copper sacrifice altar
shall be for me to enquire search by.
16 Thus did Urijah worked Uri Yah the priest,
according to all
that king Achaz commanded sovereign Achaz misvahed.
17 And king Achaz sovereign Achaz
cut chopped off the borders of the bases,
and removed twisted off the laver from off them;
and took down descended the sea
from off the brasen copper oxen that were under it,
and put gave it upon the pavement of stones.
18 And the covert portico for the sabbath shabbath
that they had built in the house,
and the king's sovereign's entry without,
turned he
from the face of the house of the LORD Yah Veh
for the king of Assyria
at the face of the sovereign of Ashshur.
19 Now the rest of the acts words of Achaz Achaz
which he did worked,
are they not written inscribed in the book scroll
of the chronicles words of the days
of the kings sovereigns of Judah Yah Hudah?
20 And Achaz slept Achaz laid with his fathers,
and was buried entombed with his fathers
in the city of David:
and Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah his son reigned in his stead.

HOSHEA REIGNS OVER YISRA EL

17 In the twelfth year of Achaz Achaz,
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah
began Hoshea the son of Elah
to reign in Samaria Shomeron
over Israel Yisra El nine years.
2 And he did worked that which was evil
in the sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh,

2 SOVEREIGNS 16, 17637

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and sovereign Achaz sends Uri Yah the priest
a likeness and a pattern of the sacrifice altar
according to all the works thereof:
11 and Uri Yah the priest builds a sacrifice altar
according to all
sovereign Achaz sends from Dammeseq:
thus Uri Yah the priest works it
to the coming of sovereign Achaz from Dammeseq:
and the sovereign comes from Dammeseq
and the sovereign sees the sacrifice altar:
and the sovereign approaches the sacrifice altar
and holocausts thereon:
13 and he incenses his holocaust and his offering
and pours his libation
and sprinkles the blood of his shelamim
on the sacrifice altar:
14 and he approaches the copper sacrifice altar
at the face of Yah Veh
from the face of the house
— from between the sacrifice altar
and between the house of Yah Veh
— and gives it on the north flank of the sacrifice altar:
15 and sovereign Achaz misvahs Uri Yah the priest,
saying, On the great sacrifice altar
incense the morning holocaust
and the evening offering
and the holocaust and offering of the sovereign,
with the holocaust of all the people of the land
and their offering and their libations;
and sprinkle thereon all the blood of the holocaust
and all the blood of the sacrifice:
and the copper sacrifice altar is for me to search by.
16 And Uri Yah the priest
works according to all sovereign Achaz misvahs:
17 and sovereign Achaz
chops off the borders from the bases
and twists off the laver from them;
and descends the sea off the copper oxen under it
and gives it on the pavement of stones:
18 and the portico for the shabbath
they build in the house
and the outside entry of the sovereign,
he turns from the face of the house of Yah Veh
at the face of the sovereign of Ashshur.
19 Now the rest of the words Achaz works,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah?
20 And Achaz lies down with his fathers
and is entombed with his fathers in the city of David:
and Yechizqi Yah his son reigns in his stead.

HOSHEA REIGNS OVER YISRA EL

17 In the twelfth year
of Achaz sovereign of Yah Hudah
Hoshea the son of Elah
begins to reign in Shomeron over Yisra El nine years:
2 and he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh;

2 KINGS 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but not as the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
that were *before him* **at his face**.
3 Against him *came up* **ascended** Shalmaneser
king **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**;
and Hoshea became his servant,
and gave **returned** him *presents* **offerings**.
4 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
found conspiracy in Hoshea:
for he had sent *messengers* **angels** to So,
king **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and brought **holocausted** no present **offering**
to the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
as he had *done* year by year:
therefore the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
shut **restrained** him up,
and bound him in **the house of prison**.
5 Then the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
came up **ascended** throughout all the land,
and *went up* **ascended** to *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
and besieged it three years.
YISRA EL EXILED
6 In the ninth year of Hoshea
the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
took *Samaria* **captured** *Shomeron*,
and *carried* *Israel* away **exiled** *Yisra El*
into *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
and placed **set** them in *Halach* **Halach**
and in *Habor* by the river of *Gozan*,
and in the cities of the *Medes* **Madaim**.
7 For **And** so **be** it was ,
that the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
had sinned against *the LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**,
which had *brought* **ascended** them up
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
from under the hand of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
king **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and had *feared* **awed** other *gods* **elohim**,
8 And walked in the statutes of the *heathen* **goyim**,
whom *the LORD* cast out **Yah Veh** **dispossessed**
from *before* **the face of the children** **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which they had *made* **worked**.
9 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
did *secretly* **covertly** those *things* **words** that were not right
against *the LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**
and they built them *high places* **bamahs** in all their cities,
from the tower of the *watchmen* **guards**
to the *fenced* **fortified** city.
10 And they *set* **stationed** them up *images* **monoliths**
and *groves* **asherim** in every high hill,
and under every green tree:
11 And there they *burnt* *incense* **incensed**
in all the *high places* **bamahs**,
as did the *heathen* **goyim**
whom *the LORD* carried away **Yah Veh** **exiled**
before them **from their face**;
and *wrought* *wicked things* **worked evil words**
to *provoke the LORD* to *anger* **vex Yah Veh**:
12 For they served idols,
whereof *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had said unto them,
Ye shall not *do* **work** this *thing* **word**.
13 Yet *the LORD* testified **Yah Veh** **witnessed**
against *Israel* **Yisra El**, and against *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
by **the hand of** all the prophets, and by all the seers,
saying, Turn ye from your evil ways,
and *keep* **guard**
my *commandments* **misvoth** and my statutes,
according to all the *law* **torah**
which I *commanded* **misvahed** your fathers,
and which I sent to you by **the hand of** my servants
the prophets.
14 Notwithstanding they *would not* **hearkened not**,
but hardened their necks, like to the neck of their fathers,
that did not *believe* **trust**
in *the LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**.
15 And they *rejected* **refused** his statutes,
and his covenant that he *made* **cut** with their fathers,
and his *testimonies* **witnesses**
which he *testified* **witnessed** against them;

2 SOVEREIGNS 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

but not as the sovereigns of Yisra El at his face.
3 Shalmaneser sovereign of Ashshur
ascends against him;
and Hoshea becomes his servant
and returns him offerings:
4 and the sovereign of Ashshur
finds conspiracy in Hoshea:
for he sends angels to So the sovereign of Misrayim
and holocausts no offering
to the sovereign of Ashshur
as year by year:
and the sovereign of Ashshur restrains him
and binds him in the house of prison:
5 and the sovereign of Ashshur ascends to all the land
and ascends to Shomeron and besieges it three years.

YISRA EL EXILED

6 In the ninth year of Hoshea
the sovereign of Ashshur captures Shomeron
and exiles Yisra El to Ashshur;
and sets them in Halach and in Habor
by the river Gozan and in the cities of the Madaim.
7 And so be it,
the sons of Yisra El sin against Yah Veh their Elohim
— who ascended them from the land of Misrayim
from under the hand of Paroh sovereign of Misrayim
— and they awe other elohim
8 which they work:
and walk in the statutes of the goyim
whom Yah Veh dispossessed
from the face of the sons of Yisra El
and from the sovereigns of Yisra El:
9 and the sons of Yisra El
covertly work words that are not right
against Yah Veh their Elohim:
and they build bamahs in all their cities
from the tower of the guards to the fortified city:
10 and they station monoliths and asherim
in every high hill and under every green tree:
11 and incense there in all the bamahs
as the goyim whom Yah Veh exiled from their face;
and work evil words to vex Yah Veh:
12 and serve idols,
whereof Yah Veh said to them, Work not this word!
13 And Yah Veh witnesses
against Yisra El and against Yah Hudah,
by the hand of all the prophets and by all the seers,
saying, Turn from your evil ways
and guard my misvoth and my statutes,
according to all the torah I misvahed your fathers
— which I send to you
by the hand of my servants the prophets.
14 And they hearken not,
and harden their necks, as the neck of their fathers,
who trusted not in Yah Veh their Elohim:
15 and they refuse his statutes
and his covenant which he cut with their fathers
and his witnesses which he witnessed against them;

2 KINGS 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they followed **went after** vanity, and became vain,
and went after the **heathen goyim**
that were round about them,
concerning whom
the **LORD Yah Veh** had **charged misvahed** them,
that they should not **do work** like them.
16 And they left all the **commandments misvoth**
of the **LORD Yah Veh** their **God Elohim**
and **made worked** them molten **images**, even two calves,
and **made a grove worked an asherah**,
and **worshipped prostrated**
to all the host of heaven the heavens,
and served Baal.
17 And they caused their sons and their daughters
to pass through the fire,
and **used divined divination**
and **enchantments prognostications**,
and sold themselves
to **do work** evil in the **sight eyes** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
to **provoke vex** him to **anger**.
18 Therefore the **LORD Yah Veh**
was very **mighty** angry with **Israel Yisra El**,
and **removed turned** them **aside** out of his **sight face**:
there was **none left none survived**
but the **tribe scion** of **Judah Yah Hudah** only.
19 Also **Judah Yah Hudah**
kept **guarded** not the **commandments misvoth**
of the **LORD Yah Veh** their **God Elohim**
but walked in the statutes of **Israel Yisra El**
which they **made worked**.
20 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
rejected refused all the seed of **Israel Yisra El**,
and **afflicted humbled** them,
and **delivered gave** them
into the hand of **spoilers plunderers**,
until he had cast them out of his **sight face**.
21 For he **rent Israel ripped Yisra El**
from the house of David;
and they made **Jeroboam Yarob Am** the son of **Nebat**
king to reign:
and **Jeroboam drave Israel Yarob Am banished Yisra El**
from **following the LORD going after Yah Veh**,
and made them sin a great sin.
22 For the **children sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
walked in all the sins of **Jeroboam Yarob Am**
which he **did worked**;
they **departed turned** not **aside** from them;
23 Until the **LORD removed Yah Veh turned aside**
Israel Yisra El out of his **sight face**,
as he had **said worded**
by **the hand** of all his servants the prophets.
So was **Israel carried away Yisra El exiled**
out of their own **land soil**
to **Assyria Ashshur** unto this day.
24 And the **king sovereign** of **Assyria Ashshur**
brought **men** from **Babylon Babel**, and from **Cuthah Kuth**,
and from **Ava Avva**, and from **Hamath**,
and from **Sepharvaim Sepharvayim**,
and **placed set** them in the cities of **Samaria Shomeron**
instead of the **children sons** of **Israel Yisra El**:
and they possessed **Samaria Shomeron**,
and **dwelt settled** in the cities thereof.
25 And so **be** it was,
at the beginning of their **dwelling settling** there,
that they **feared awed** not the **LORD Yah Veh**:
therefore the **LORD Yah Veh** sent lions among them,
which **slew some of slaughtered among** them.
26 Wherefore they **spake said**
to the **king sovereign** of **Assyria Ashshur**, saying,
The **nations goyim** which thou hast **removed exiled**,
and **placed set** in the cities of **Samaria Shomeron**,
know not the **manner judgment**
of the **God Elohim** of the land:
therefore he hath sent lions among them, and, behold,
they **slay deathify** them,
because they know not the **manner judgment**
of the **God Elohim** of the land.

2 SOVEREIGNS 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they go after vanity and become vain
and go after the goyim all around them
— to whom Yah Veh misvahed to not work like them:
16 and they leave
all the misvoth of Yah Veh their Elohim;
and work molten — two calves
and work an asherah
and prostrate to all the host of the heavens
and serve Baal:
17 and they pass their sons and their daughters
through the fire;
and divine divination and prognostications
and sell themselves
to work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh — to vex him.
18 So Yah Veh angers mightily at Yisra El
and turns them aside from his face:
none survive except only, the scion of Yah Hudah:
19 Yah Hudah also
guards not the misvoth of Yah Veh their Elohim
but walks in the statutes Yisra El works.
20 And Yah Veh refuses all the seed of Yisra El
and humbles them;
and gives them into the hand of plunderers
until he casts them from his face:
21 for he rips Yisra El from the house of David;
and they have Yarob Am the son of Nebat reign:
and Yarob Am
banishes Yisra El from going after Yah Veh
and has them sin a great sin:
22 and the sons of Yisra El
walk in all the sins Yarob Am works:
they turn not aside from them;
23 until Yah Veh turns Yisra El aside from his face,
as he worded
by the hand of all his servants the prophets:
thus Yisra El is exiled from their own soil
to Ashshur to this day.

GOYIM SETTLE IN SHOMERON

24 And the sovereign of Ashshur brings them
from Babel and from Kuth and from Avva
and from Hamath and from Sepharvayim;
and sets them in the cities of Shomeron
in the stead of the sons of Yisra El:
and they possess Shomeron
and settle in the cities thereof.
25 And so be it,
at the beginning of their settling there,
they awe not Yah Veh:
and Yah Veh sends lions among them
to slaughter among them.
26 And they say to the sovereign of Ashshur
saying, The goyim you exiled
and set in the cities of Shomeron
know not the judgment of the Elohim of the land:
and he sends lions among them:
and behold, they deathify them,
because they know not the judgment
of the Elohim of the land.

2 KINGS 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

27 Then the king **sovereign** of Assyria Ashshur
commanded **misvahed**, saying,
Carry **Walk** thither one of the priests
whom ye *brought* **exiled** from thence;
and let them go and *dwell* **settle** there,
and let him *teach* **direct** them
the *manner* **judgment** of the *God* **Elohim** of the land.
28 Then one of the priests
whom they had *carried away* **exiled**
from *Samaria* **Shomeron**
came and *dwelt* **settled** in *Bethel* **Beth El**,
and *taught* **directed** them
how they should *fear the LORD* **awe Yah Veh**.
29 Howbeit *every nation* **goyim by goyim**
made gods **worked elohim** of their own,
and *put* **set** them in the houses of the *high places* **bamahs**
which the *Samaritans* **Shomerony** had *made* **worked**,
every nation **goyim by goyim**
in their cities wherein they *dwelt* **settled**.
30 And the men of *Babylon* **Babel**
made Succothbenoth **worked Sukkoth Benoth**,
and the men of *Cuth* **made Kuth** **worked** Nergal,
and the men of Hamath *made* **worked** Ashima,
31 And the *Avites* **Avviy**
made Nibhaz **worked Nibchaz** and *Tartak* **Tartaq**,
and the *Sepharvites* **Sepharviy** burnt their *children* **sons** in fire
to *Adrammelech* **Adram Melech**
and *Anammelech* **Anam Melech**,
the *gods* **elohim** of *Sepharvaim* **Sepharvayim**.
32 So they *feared the LORD* **awed Yah Veh**,
and *made* **worked** unto themselves
of the *lowest* **end** of them
priests of the *high places* **bamahs**,
which *sacrificed* **worked** for them
in the houses of the *high places* **bamahs**.
33 They *feared the LORD* **awed Yah Veh**,
and served their own *gods* **elohim**,
after the *manner* **judgment** of the *nations* **goyim**
whom they *carried away* **exiled** from thence.
34 Unto this day
they *do* **work** after the former *manners* **judgments**:
they *fear* **awe** not the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
neither *do* **work** they after their statutes,
or after their *ordinances* **judgments**,
or after the *law* **torah** and *commandment* **misvah**
which the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded **misvahed** the *children* **sons** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
whom he *named* *Israel* **on whose name he set**, *Yisra El*;
35 With whom
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *made* **cut** a covenant,
and *charged* **misvahed** them, saying,
Ye shall not *fear* **awe** other *gods* **elohim**,
nor *bow* **prostrate** yourselves to them,
nor serve them, nor sacrifice to them:
36 But the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
who *brought* **ascended** you up
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
with great *power* **force** and a *stretched out* **spread** arm,
him shall ye *fear* **awe**,
and *to* him shall ye *worship* **prostrate**,
and *to* him shall ye *do* sacrifice.
37 And the statutes, and the *ordinances* **judgments**,
and the *law* **torah**, and the *commandment* **misvah**,
which he *wrote* **inscribed** for you,
ye shall *observe* **guard** to *do* for *evermore* **work all days**;
and ye shall not *fear* **awe** other *gods* **elohim**.
38 And the covenant that I have *made* **cut** with you
ye shall not forget;
neither shall ye *fear* **awe** other *gods* **elohim**.
39 But the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
ye shall *fear* **awe**;
and he shall *deliver* **rescue** you
out of the hand of all your enemies.
40 Howbeit they did not hearken,
but they *did* **worked** after their former *manner* **judgment**.
41 So these *nations* **goyim** *feared the LORD* **awed Yah Veh**,
and served their *graven images* **sculptiles**,
both their *children* **sons**, and their *children's children* **son's sons**:
as *did* **worked** their fathers, so *do* **work** they unto this day.

2 SOVEREIGNS 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

27 And the sovereign of Ashshur misvahs, saying,
Walk one of the priests here
whom you exiled from there;
and have them go and settle there
and have him
direct the judgment of the Elohim of the land.
28 And one of the priests they exile from Shomeron
comes and settles in Beth El;
and directs them how to awe Yah Veh:
and goyim by goyim,
they work their own elohim
and set them in the houses of the bamahs
the Shomerony work
— goyim by goyim in the cities wherein they settle:
30 and the men of Babel work Sukkoth Benoth;
and the men of Kuth work Nergal;
and the men of Hamath work Ashima;
31 and the Avviy work Nibchaz and Tartaq;
and the Sepharviy burn their sons in the fire
to Adram Melech and Anam Melech
the elohim of the Sepharvayim.
32 And they awe Yah Veh
and works to themselves — to the end of them
priests of the bamahs
who work for them in the houses of the bamahs.
33 They awe Yah Veh
and served their own elohim
after the judgment of the goyim
whom they exiled from thence.
34 To this day
they work after the former judgments:
they neither awe Yah Veh
nor work after their statutes
— or after their judgments
or after the torah and misvah
Yah Veh misvahed the sons of Yaaqov
— on whom he set the name, Yisra El:
with whom Yah Veh cut a covenant
and misvahed them, saying,
Neither awe other elohim
nor prostrate yourselves to them
nor serve them nor sacrifice to them:
36 but Yah Veh
who ascended you from the land of Misrayim
with great force and spread arm, awe him;
to him, prostrate; to him, sacrifice:
37 and the statutes and the judgments
and the torah and the misvah he inscribed for you,
guard to work all days;
and awe not other elohim:
38 and forget not the covenant I cut with you
and awe not other elohim:
39 but awe Yah Veh your Elohim:
and he rescues you
from the hand of all your enemies.
40 And they hearken not
but they work after their former judgment:
41 and these goyim awe Yah Veh
and serve their sculptiles
— both their sons and sons of their sons:
as their fathers worked, thus work they to this day.

2 KINGS 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YECHIZQI YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

18

Now **so be** it came to pass,
in the third year of Hoshea son of Elah
king sovereign of Israel Yisra El,
that *Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah* the son of *Ahaz Achaz,*
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah began to reign.
2 **A son of** Twenty and five years old
was he when he began to reign;
and he reigned twenty and nine years
in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.*
His mother's name also was Abi,
the daughter of *Zachariah Zechar Yah.*
3 And he *did worked* that which was right **straight**
in the *sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh,*
according to all that David his father *did worked.*
4 He *removed turned aside* the *high places bamahs,*
and brake the *images monoliths,*
and cut down the *groves asherim,*
and *brake in pieces crushed* the *brassen copper* serpent
that *Moses Mosheh* had made **worked:**
for unto those days the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*
did burn incense incensed to it:
and he called it *Nehushtan Coppery/Nechustan.*
5 He *trusted confided*
in the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El;*
so that after him was none like him
among all the *kings sovereigns of Judah Yah Hudah,*
nor any that were *before him at his face.*
6 For he *clave adhered* to the *LORD Yah Veh,*
and *departed turned not aside* from *following after* him,
but *kept guarded* his *commandments misvoth,*
which the *LORD Yah Veh*
commanded Moses misvahed Mosheh.
7 And the *LORD Yah Veh* was with him;
and he *prospered comprehended*
whithersoever he went forth:
and he rebelled
against the *king sovereign of Assyria Ashshur,*
and served him not.
8 He smote the *Philistines Peleshethiy,*
even unto *Gaza Azzah,* and the borders thereof,
from the tower of the *watchmen guards*
to the *fenced fortified* city.
9 And **so be** it came to pass,
in the fourth year
of *king Hezekiah sovereign Yechizqi Yah,*
which was the seventh year of Hoshea
son of Elah *king sovereign of Israel Yisra El,*
that *Shalmaneser king sovereign of Assyria Ashshur*
came up ascended against *Samaria Shomeron,*
and besieged it.
10 And at the end of three years they *took captured* it:
even in the sixth year of *Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah,*
that is in the ninth year of Hoshea
king sovereign of Israel Yisra El,
Samaria Shomeron was *taken captured.*
11 And the *king sovereign of Assyria Ashshur*
did carry away Israel exiled Yisra El unto *Assyria Ashshur,*
and *put guided* them in *Halach Halach*
and in *Habor* by the river of *Gozan,*
and in the cities of the *Medes Madaim:*
12 Because they *obeyed heard* not
the voice of the *LORD Yah Veh* their *God Elohim*
but *transgressed trespassed* his covenant,
and all that *Moses Mosheh*
the servant of the *LORD* *commanded Yah Veh misvahed,*
and *would not hear them hearkened not,*
nor *do worked* them.
13 Now in the fourteenth year
of *king Hezekiah sovereign Yechizqi Yah*
did Sennacherib Sancherib
king sovereign of Assyria Ashshur
come up ascend against all the *fenced cut off* cities
of *Judah Yah Hudah,* and *took apprehended* them.
14 And *Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah*
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah
sent to the *king sovereign of Assyria Ashshur* to *Lachish,*
saying, I have *offended sinned;* return from me:
that which thou *puttest givest* on me *will shall* I bear.

2 SOVEREIGNS 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YECHIZQI YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

18

And so be it, in the third year
of Hoshea son of Elah sovereign of Yisra El,
Yechizqi Yah
the son of Achaz sovereign of Yah Hudah reigns:
2 a son of twenty—five years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns twenty—nine years in Yeru Shalem:
the name of his mother,
Abi the daughter of Zechar Yah:
3 and he works straight in the eyes of Yah Veh,
according to all David his father worked:
4 he turns aside the bamahs
and breaks the monoliths
and cuts down the asherim
and crushes the copper serpent Mosheh worked:
for in those days the sons of Yisra El incensed to it:
and he called it Coppery/Nechustan.
5 He confides in Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El;
and there is none like him
among all the sovereigns of Yah Hudah
— neither after him nor at his face:
6 and he adheres to Yah Veh
and turns not aside from after him;
but guards the misvoth Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh:
7 and Yah Veh is with him;
he comprehends wherever he goes:
and he rebels against the sovereign of Ashshur
and serves him not:
8 he smites the Peleshethiy to Azzah — to the borders;
from the tower of the guards to the fortified city.
9 And so be it,
in the fourth year of sovereign Yechizqi Yah
— the seventh year of Hoshea
son of Elah sovereign of Yisra El,
Shalmaneser sovereign of Ashshur
ascends against Shomeron and besieges it:
10 and at the end of three years they capture it:
in the sixth year of Yechizqi Yah
— in the ninth year of Hoshea sovereign of Yisra El
Shomeron is captured:
11 and the sovereign of Ashshur
exiles Yisra El to Ashshur;
and guides them in Halach and in Habor
by the river Gozan;
and in the cities of the Madaim:
12 because they hearken not
to the voice of Yah Veh their Elohim;
but trespass his covenant;
and all that Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh misvahed
they neither hearken nor work them.
13 And in the fourteenth year
of sovereign Yechizqi Yah,
Sancherib sovereign of Ashshur
ascends against all the cut off cities of Yah Hudah
and apprehends them.
14 And Yechizqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
sends to the sovereign of Ashshur to Lachish
saying, I sinned; turn away from me:
whatever you give on me, I bear.

2 KINGS 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

And the king **sovereign** of Assyria **Ashshur**
appointed **set** unto Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**,
king **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**
three hundred **talents** **rounds** of silver
and thirty **talents** **rounds** of gold.
15 And Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah** gave him all the silver
that was found in the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and in the treasures of the king's **sovereign's** house.
16 At that time did Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**
cut **chop** off the gold from the doors
of the temple **manse** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and from the pillars
which Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**
king **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah** had overlaid,
and gave it to the king **sovereign** of Assyria **Ashshur**.
17 And the king **sovereign** of Assyria **Ashshur**
sent Tartan and **Rabsaris** the chief eunuch
and **Rabshakeh** **Rab Shaqeh**/the chief butler
from Lachish to king Hezekiah **sovereign** **Yechizqi Yah**
with a great host **heavy valiant**
against Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**.
And they went up **ascended**
and came to Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**.
And when they were come up **ascended**,
they came and stood by the conduit **channel**
of the upper pool **Pool Elyon**,
which is in the highway of the fuller's field.
18 And when they had called to the king **sovereign**,
there came **went** out to them **Eliakim El Yaqim**
the son of **Hilkiah Hilqi Yah**,
which was over the household,
and **Shebna** the scribe,
and **Joah Yah Ach** the son of **Asaph**
the recorder **remembrancer**.
19 And **Rabshakeh** **Rab Shaqeh**/the chief butler
said unto them,
Speak **Say** ye now to Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**,
Thus saith the great king **sovereign**,
the king **sovereign** of Assyria **Ashshur**,
What confidence is this wherein thou **trustest** **confidest**?
20 Thou sayest,
(but they are but *vain* words **of lips**.)
I have counsel and *strength* **might** for the war.
Now on whom dost thou **trust** **confide**,
that thou rebellest against me?
21 Now, behold,
thou **trustest** **confidest** upon the staff
of this *bruised* reed **crushed stalk**,
even upon **Egypt Misrayim**,
on which if a man *lean* **prop**,
it *will* **shall** go into his *hand* **palm**, and pierce it:
so is **Pharaoh Paroh**, king **sovereign** of **Egypt Misrayim**
unto all that **trust** **confide** on him.
22 But if ye say unto me,
We **trust** **confide** in the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**:
is not that he,
whose *high* places **bamahs** and whose **sacrifice** altars
Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah** hath *taken away* **turned aside**,
and hath said to Judah **Yah Hudah**
and Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**,
Ye shall *worship before* **prostrate at the face**
of this sacrifice altar in Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**?
23 Now therefore, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
give pledges **pledge** to my *lord* **adoni**
the king **sovereign** of Assyria **Ashshur**,
and I *will deliver* **shall give** thee two thousand horses,
if thou be able on thy part to **set give** riders upon them.
24 How then *wilt* **shalt** thou turn away
the face of one *captain* **governor**
of the least of my *master's* **adoni's** servants,
and *put thy trust* **confide** on **Egypt Misrayim**
for chariots and for *horsemen* **cavalry**?
25 *Am I now come up* **Ascend I now**
without the **LORD Yah Veh**
against this place to *destroy* **ruin** it?
The LORD Yah Veh said to me,
Go up **Ascend** against this land, and *destroy* **ruin** it.
26 Then said **Eliakim El Yaqim** the son of **Hilkiah Hilqi Yah**,
and **Shebna**, and **Joah Yah Ach**,

2 SOVEREIGNS 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And the sovereign of Ashshur
sets to Yechizqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
three hundred rounds of silver
and thirty rounds of gold:
15 and Yechizqi Yah gives him all the silver
found in the house of Yah Veh
and in the treasures of the house of the sovereign.
16 At that time, Yechizqi Yah
chops off the doors of the manse of Yah Veh
and the pillars
Yechizqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah overlaid;
and gives them to the sovereign of Ashshur:
17 and the sovereign of Ashshur
sends Tartan the chief eunuch
and Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler
from Lachish to sovereign Yechizqi Yah
with heavy valiant against Yeru Shalem:
and they ascend and come to Yeru Shalem:
and they ascend
and come and stand by the Pool Elyon
in the highway of the field of the fuller:
18 and they call to the sovereign;
and El Yaqim the son of Hilqi Yah
who is over the household,
and Shebna the scribe,
and Yah Ach the son of Asaph the remembrancer
go out to them.
19 And Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler says to them,
Now say to Yechizqi Yah,
Thus says the great sovereign
the sovereign of Ashshur,
What is this confidence wherein you confide?
20 For you said, They are but words of lips!
I have counsel and might for the war!
Now on whom confide you, to rebel against me?
21 Now, behold,
confide you on the staff of this crushed stalk
— on Misrayim
— on which, if a man prop,
it goes into his palm and pierces?
Thus is Paroh sovereign of Misrayim
to all who confide on him.
22 And if you say to me,
We confide in Yah Veh our Elohim!
— Is that not he,
whose bamahs and whose sacrifice altars
Yechizqi Yah turned aside?
— Who said to Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem,
Prostrate at the face
of this sacrifice altar in Yeru Shalem?
23 And now, I beseech you,
pledge to my adoni the sovereign of Ashshur
and I give you two thousand horses
if you can, for your part, give riders on them.
24 How then turn you away the face of one governor
of the least of the servants of my adoni
to confide on Misrayim for chariots and for cavalry?
25 Now, ascend I without Yah Veh,
against this place to ruin it?
Yah Veh says to me,
Ascend against this land and ruin it.
26 And El Yaqim the son of Hilqi Yah
and Shebna and Yah Ach

2 KINGS 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

unto Rabshakeh **Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler**,
Speak **Word**, I pray beseech thee,
to thy servants in the Syrian language **Aramaic**;
for we understand hear it:
and talk **word** not with us
in the Jews' language **Yah Hudaic**
in the ears of the people that are on the wall.
27 But Rabshakeh **Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler**
said unto them,
Hath my master **adoni** sent me to thy master, and to thee,
to speak **word** these words?
hath he not sent me to the men
which sit **settle** on the wall,
that they may eat their own **dung dungs**,
and drink their own piss **the urine at their feet** with you?
28 Then Rabshakeh **Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler**
stood and cried **called out**
with a loud **great** voice in the Jews' language **Yah Hudaic**,
and spake **worded**, saying,
Hear the word of the great king **sovereign**,
the king **sovereign** of Assyria **Ashshur**:
29 Thus saith the king **sovereign**,
Let not Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah** deceive you:
for he shall not be able to deliver **rescue** you
out of his hand:
30 Neither let Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**
make you trust **confide** in the **LORD Yah Veh**, saying,
In rescuing,
The **LORD** will surely deliver **Yah Veh shall rescue** us,
and this city shall not be delivered **given**
into the hand of the king **sovereign** of Assyria **Ashshur**.
31 Hearken not to Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**:
for thus saith the king **sovereign** of Assyria **Ashshur**,
Make an agreement **Work** with me by a present **blessing**,
and come **go** out to me,
and then eat ye every man of his own vine,
and every one **man** of his fig tree,
and drink ye every one **man** the waters of his **cistern well**:
32 Until I come and take you away
to a land like your own land,
a land of corn **crop** and wine **juice**,
a land of bread and vineyards,
a land of oil olive and of honey,
that ye may live, and not die:
and hearken not unto Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**,
when he *persuadeth* **goadeth** you, saying,
The **LORD** will deliver **Yah Veh shall rescue** us.
33 **In rescuing**,
Hath any of the gods **elohim** of the nations **goyim**
delivered at all **rescued a man** his land
out of the hand of the king **sovereign** of Assyria **Ashshur**?
34 Where are the gods **elohim** of Hamath, and of Arpad?
where are the gods **elohim** of **Sepharvaim Sepharvayim**,
Hena, and **Ivah Avva**?
have they delivered **Samaria rescued Shomeron**
out of mine hand?
35 Who are they
among all the gods **elohim** of the countries **lands**,
that have delivered **rescued** their country **land**
out of mine hand,
that the **LORD Yah Veh**
should deliver **Jerusalem rescue Yeru Shalem**
out of mine hand?
36 But the people held their peace **hushed**,
and answered him not a word:
for the king's commandment **sovereign's misvah** was,
saying, Answer him not.
37 Then came **Eliakim El Yaqim**
the son of **Hilkiah Hilqi Yah**,
which was over the household, and Shebna the scribe,
and **Joah Yah Ach** the son of Asaph
the recorder **remembrancer**,
to Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah** with their clothes **rent ripped**,
and told him the words
of Rabshakeh **Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler**.

19

And so be it came to pass,
when king Hezekiah **sovereign Yechizqi Yah** heard it,
that he **rent ripped** his clothes,
and covered himself with sackcloth **saq**,

2 SOVEREIGNS 18, 19643

exeGesés companion BIBLE

say to Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler,
Word, I beseech you, to your servants in Aramaic;
for we hear it:
and word not with us in Yah Hudaic
in the ears of the people on the wall.
27 And Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler says to them,
My adoni, sends he me
to word these words to your master and to you?
— and not to the men who settle on the wall
— to eat their own dungs
and drink the urine at their feet with you?
28 Then Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler
stands and calls with a great voice in Yah Hudaic,
and words saying,
Hear the word of the great sovereign
— the sovereign of Ashshur;
29 thus says the sovereign,
Neither let Yechizqi Yah deceive you
for he is not able to rescue you from his hand:
30 nor let Yechizqi Yah have you confide in Yah Veh
saying, In rescuing, Yah Veh rescues us;
that this city not be given
into the hand of the sovereign of Ashshur:
31 Hearken not to Yechizqi Yah:
for thus says the sovereign of Ashshur,
Work a blessing with me and come out to me;
and eat — every man of you of his own vine
and every man of his fig tree
and drink — every man of you
of the waters of his well:
32 until I come and take you away
to a land like your own land
— a land of crop and juice
a land of bread and vineyards
a land of oil olive and of honey
— to live and not die:
and hearken not to Yechizqi Yah,
who goads you, saying, Yah Veh rescues us.
33 In rescuing,
have any of the elohim of the goyim
rescued a man his land
from the hand of the sovereign of Ashshur?
34 Where are the elohim of Hamath and of Arpad?
Where are the elohim of Sepharvayim,
Hena and Avva?
Rescued they Shomeron from my hand?
35 Who are they among all the elohim of the lands
who rescued their land from my hand,
that Yah Veh rescue Yeru Shalem from my hand?
36 And the people hush and answer him not a word:
for the misvah of the sovereign is,
saying, Answer him not.
37 Then El Yaqim the son of Hilqi Yah
who is over the household,
and Shebna the scribe,
and Yah Ach the son of Asaph the remembrancer,
come to Yechizqi Yah with their clothes ripped
and tell him the words of Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler.

19

And so be it, sovereign Yechizqi Yah hears,
and he rips his clothes and covers himself with saq

2 KINGS 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and went into the house of the LORD Yah Veh.
2 And he sent *Eliakim El Yaqim*,
which was over the household,
and Shebna the scribe, and the elders of the priests,
covered with sackcloth **saq**,
3 to *Isaiah Yesha Yah* the prophet the son of *Amoz Amos*.
And they said unto him,
Thus saith *Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah*,
This day is a day of *trouble tribulation*,
and of *rebuke reproof*, and *blasphemy scorning*;
for the *children sons* are come to the *birth matrix*,
and there is not *strength force* to bring forth *birth*.
4 It may be the LORD **Perhaps Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**
will shall hear all the words
of *Rabshakeh Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler*,
whom the *king sovereign of Assyria Ashshur*
his *master adoni*
hath sent to reproach the living God **Elohim**;
and will shall reprove the words
which the LORD **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim** hath heard:
wherefore lift up thy prayer
for the *remnant survivors* that are left **found**.
5 So the servants of *king Hezekiah sovereign Yechizqi Yah*
came to *Isaiah Yesha Yah*.
6 And *Isaiah Yesha Yah* said unto them,
Thus shall ye say to your *master adoni*,
Thus saith the LORD **Yah Veh**,
Be **Awe** not afraid at the face of the words
which thou hast heard,
with which the *servants lads*
of the *king sovereign of Assyria Ashshur*
have blasphemed me.
7 Behold, I will send shall give a *blast spirit* upon him,
and he shall hear a *rumour report*,
and shall return to his own land;
and I will shall cause him to fall by the sword
in his own land.
8 So *Rabshakeh Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler* returned,
and found the *king sovereign of Assyria Ashshur*
warring fighting against *Libnah*:
for he had heard
that he was *departed had pulled stakes* from *Lachish*.
9 And when he heard say of *Tirhakah Tirhaqah*
king sovereign of Ethiopia Kush, Behold,
he is come out gone to fight against thee:
he returned and sent *messengers angels* again
unto *Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah*, saying,
10 Thus shall ye speak say to *Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah*,
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah, saying,
Let not thy God **Elohim** in whom thou *trustest confidest*
deceive thee, saying,
Jerusalem Yeru Shalem shall not be *delivered given*
into the hand of the *king sovereign of Assyria Ashshur*.
11 Behold, thou hast heard
what the *kings sovereigns of Assyria Ashshur*
have done worked to all lands,
by *destroying devoting* them utterly:
and shalt thou be *delivered rescued*?
12 Have the *gods elohim of the nations goyim*
delivered rescued them
which my fathers have *destroyed ruined*;
as *Gozan*, and *Haran*, and *Rezeph Reseph*,
and the *children sons* of *Eden* which were in *Thelasar*?
13 Where is the *king sovereign of Hamath*,
and the *king sovereign of Arpad*,
and the *king sovereign*
of the city of *Sepharvaim Sepharvayim*,
of *Hena*, and *Ivah Avva*?
14 And *Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah*
received took the *letter scroll*
of the hand of the *messengers angels*,
and read called it out:
and *Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah*
went up ascended into the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and spread it before the LORD at the face of **Yah Veh**.
15 And *Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah*
prayed before the LORD at the face of **Yah Veh**, and said,
O LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel Yisra El*,

2 SOVEREIGNS 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and goes into the house of Yah Veh.
2 And he sends El Yaqim who is over the household
and Shebna the scribe and the elders of the priests
— covered with saq
to Yesha Yah the prophet the son of Amos:
3 and they say to him,
Thus says Yechizqi Yah:
This day is a day of tribulation
and of reproof and scorning;
for the sons come to the matrix
and there is no force to birth:
4 perhaps Yah Veh your Elohim
hears all the words of Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler
whom his adoni the sovereign of Ashshur
sends to reproach the living Elohim;
and reprove the words Yah Veh your Elohim heard:
and lift a prayer for the survivors that are found.
5 And the servants of sovereign Yechizqi Yah
come to Yesha Yah:
6 and Yesha Yah says to them,
Say thus to your adoni, Yah Veh says thus:
Awe not at the face of the words you heard,
by which the lads of the sovereign of Ashshur
blasphemed me:
7 behold, I give him a spirit;
and he hears a report and returns to his own land;
and I fell him by the sword in his own land.
8 And Rab Shaqeh/the chief butler returns
and finds the sovereign of Ashshur fighting *Libnah*:
for he heard that he pulled stakes from *Lachish*.
9 And when he hears say
of *Tirhaqah* sovereign of *Kush*,
Behold, he goes to fight you!
— he returns and sends angels to Yechizqi Yah,
10 saying,
Say thus to Yechizqi Yah sovereign of *Yah Hudah*,
saying,
Let not your Elohim in whom you confide
deceive you,
saying, *Yeru Shalem* is not given
into the hand of the sovereign of Ashshur:
11 behold, you heard what the sovereigns of Ashshur
work to all lands by devoting them:
— and you — rescued?
12 Rescued the elohim of the goyim
them whom my fathers ruined
— *Gozan* and *Haran* and *Reseph*
and the sons of *Eden* in *Thelasar*?
13 Where is the sovereign of *Hamath*
and the sovereign of *Arpad*
and the sovereign of the city of *Sepharvayim*
— of *Hena* and *Avva*?
14 And Yechizqi Yah
takes the scroll from the hand of the angels
and calls it out:
and Yechizqi Yah ascends into the house of Yah Veh
and spreads it at the face of Yah Veh.
15 And Yechizqi Yah prays at the face of Yah Veh
and says, O Yah Veh Elohim of *Yisra El*

2 KINGS 19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

which *dwellst* **settlest** between the *cherubims* **cherubim**,
thou art the *God* **Elohim**, even thou alone,
of all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the earth;
thou hast *made* **heaven worked the heavens** and earth.
16 *LORD Yah Veh, bow down* **spread** thine ear, and hear:
open, *LORD Yah Veh*, thine eyes, and see:
and hear the words of *Sennacherib* **Sancherib**,
which hath sent him to reproach the living *God* **Elohim**.
17 *Of a truth Truly, LORD Yah Veh*,
the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
have *destroyed* **desolated** the *nations* **goyim**
and their lands,
18 And have *cast* **given** their *gods* **elohim** into the fire:
for they were no *gods* **elohim**,
but the work of *men's* **human** hands,
wood **timber** and stone:
therefore they **and** have destroyed them.
19 Now *therefore*, O *LORD Yah Veh* our *God* **Elohim**,
I beseech thee, save thou us out of his hand,
that all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the earth
may know that thou art *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*,
even thou only.
20 Then *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah** the son of *Amoz* **Amos**
sent to *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**, saying,
Thus saith
the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel **Yisra El**,
That which thou hast prayed to me
against *Sennacherib* **Sancherib**,
king **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
I have heard.
21 This is the word
that *the LORD Yah Veh* hath *spoken* **worded**
concerning him;
The virgin the daughter of *Zion* **Siyon** hath despised thee,
and *laughed* **derided** thee *to scorn*;
the daughter of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
hath shaken her head *at* **after** thee.
22 Whom hast thou reproached and blasphemed?
and against whom hast thou exalted thy voice,
and lifted up thine eyes on high?
even against the Holy *One of Israel* **Yisra El**.
23 By **the hand of** thy *messengers* **angels**
thou hast reproached *the Lord* **Adonay**, and hast said,
With the *multitude* **abundance** of my chariots
I *am come up* **ascend** to the height of the mountains,
to the *sides* **flanks** of Lebanon,
and *will* **shall** cut down
the *tall* **height of** cedar trees thereof,
and the choice *fir* **cypress** trees thereof:
and I *will* **shall** enter
into the lodgings of his *borders* **edges**,
and into the forest of his *Carmel* **Karmel/orchard**.
24 I have digged and drunk strange waters,
and with the sole of my *feet* **steps**
have I *dried up* **parched** all the rivers
of *besieged places* **seige/Masor**.
25 Hast thou not heard *long ago* **from afar**
how I have *done* **worked** it,
and of ancient *times* **days** that I have formed it?
now have I brought it to *pass* **be**,
that thou shouldst be to lay waste
fenced **cut off** cities into *ruinous* **desolate** heaps.
26 *Therefore* **And** their *inhabitants* **settlers**
were of *small power* **short of hand**,
they were *dismayed* **terrified** and *confounded* **shamed**;
they were as the *grass* **herb** of the field,
and as the green *herb* **sprouts**,
as the *grass* **leeks** on the *house tops* **roofs**,
and as *corn* **blasted before it be grown up**
at the face of her stalks.
27 But I know thy *abode* **settlement**, and thy going out,
and thy coming in, and thy *rage* **quaking** against me.
28 Because thy *rage* **quaking** against me
and thy *tumult* **uproar**
is come up **ascendeth** into mine ears,
therefore I *will put* **shall set** my hook in thy *nose* **nostrils**,
and my *bridle* **bit** in thy lips,
and I *will* **shall** turn thee back
by the way by which thou camest.

2 SOVEREIGNS 19

exeGeses companion BIBLE

who settles between the cherubim;
you *are* **Elohim**
— you alone of all the sovereigndoms of the earth;
you worked the heavens and earth:
Yah Veh, spread your ear and hear:
open, Yah Veh, your eyes and see:
and hear the words of Sancherib,
who sends him to reproach the living Elohim.
17 Truly, Yah Veh, the sovereigns of Ashshur
desolated the goyim and their lands,
18 and gave their elohim to the fire:
for they are no elohim
but the work of human hands — timber and stone:
and destroyed them.
19 Now, O Yah Veh our Elohim, I beseech you,
you — save us from his hand;
so that all the sovereigndoms of the earth
know you are Yah Veh Elohim — you only.
20 And Yesha Yah the son of Amos
sends to Yechizqi Yah, saying,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
What you pray to me
against Sancherib sovereign of Ashshur
I hear.
21 This is the word Yah Veh words concerning him:
The virgin the daughter of Siyon
despises you and derides you;
the daughter of Yeru Shalem
shakes her head after you.
22 Whom reproach you and blaspheme?
Against whom exalt you your voice
and lift your eyes on high?
Against the Holy of Yisra El!
23 By the hand of your angels
you reproach Adonay and say,
With the abundance of my chariots
I ascend to the height of the mountains
— to the flanks of Lebanon
and cut down the height of cedar trees thereof
and the choice cypress trees thereof:
and I enter the lodgings of his edges
and the forest of his Karmel/orchard.
24 I dig and drink strange waters;
and with the sole of my steps
I parch all the rivers of seige/Masor.
25 Hear you not from afar, I worked it?
And of ancient days, I formed it?
And now I bring it to become waste
— cut off cities into desolate heaps:
and their settlers are short of hand
terrified and shamed
— as the herb of the field
— as the green sprouts
— as the leeks on the roofs
blasted at the face of her stalks.
27 And I know your settlement
and your going and your coming
and your quaking against me:
because your quaking against me
and your uproar ascends into my ears,
I set my hook in your nostrils and my bit in your lips
and I turn you back the way you came.

2 KINGS 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

29 And this shall be a sign unto thee,
Ye shall eat this year
such things as grow of themselves
of the spontaneous growth,
and in the second year
that which springeth of the same
of the spontaneous sprout;
and in the third year *sow* **seed** ye, and *reap* **harvest,**
and plant vineyards, and eat the fruits thereof.
30 And the *remnant* **escapees** that *is escaped* **survived**
of the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
shall yet again take root downward,
and *bear* **work** fruit upward.
31 For out of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
shall go forth a *remnant* **survivor,**
and *they that escape* **the escapees**
out of mount *Zion* **Siyon:**
the zeal of *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
shall *do* **work** this.
32 Therefore thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
concerning the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur,**
He shall not come into this city,
nor shoot an arrow there,
nor *come before* **precede** it with *shield* **buckler,**
nor *cast* **pour** a *bank* **mound** against it.
33 By the way that he came, by the same shall he return,
and shall not come into this city,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh.**
34 For I *will defend* **shall garrison** this city, to save it,
for mine own sake, and for my servant David's sake.
35 And **so be** it *came to pass* that night,
that the angel of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** went out,
and smote in the camp of the *Assyrians* **Ashshuri**
an hundred *fourscore* **eighty** and five thousand:
and when they *arose* **started** early in the morning, behold,
they were all dead *corpses* **carcasses.**
36 So *Sennacherib* **Sancherib,**
king **sovereign** of *Assyria* **departed** **Ashshur** **pulled stakes,**
and went and returned, and *dwelt* **settled** at Nineveh.
37 And **so be** it *came to pass,*
as he was *worshipping* **prostrating**
in the house of Nisroch his *god* **elohim,**
that *Adrammelech* **Adram Melech** and *Sharezer* **Shareser**
his sons smote him with the sword:
and they escaped into the land of *Armenia* **Ararat.**
And *Esarhaddon* **Esar Chaddon** his son
reigned in his stead.

THE SICKNESS OF YECHIZQI YAH

20 In those days
was *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** sick unto death.
And the prophet *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah** the son of *Amoz* **Amos**
came to him, and said unto him,
Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh,**
Set **Misvah** concerning thine house *in order*
for thou shalt die, and not live.
2 Then he turned his face to the wall,
and prayed unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh,** saying,
3 I beseech thee, O *LORD* **Yah Veh,**
remember now
how I have walked *before thee* **at thy face** in truth
and with a *perfect heart* **heart at shalom,**
and have *done* **worked**
that which is good in thy *sight* **eyes.**
And *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** wept *sore* **a great weeping.**
4 And **so be** it *came to pass,*
afore *Isaiah* **ere Yesha Yah** was gone out
into the middle *court* **city,**
that the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** came to him, saying,
5 Turn *again* **back,**
and *tell* *Hezekiah* **say to Yechizqi Yah**
the *captain* **eminent** of my people,
Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh,**
the *God* **Elohim** of David thy father,
I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears:
behold, I *will* **shall** heal thee:
on the third day thou shalt *go up* **ascend**
unto the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh.**
6 And I *will* **shall** add unto thy days fifteen years;
and I *will* **shall** **rescue** thee and this city

2 SOVEREIGNS 19, 20646

exeGesés companion BIBLE

29 And this is your sign:
this year, eat of the spontaneous growth;
and in the second year, of the spontaneous sprout;
and in the third year, seed and harvest
and plant vineyards and eat the fruits thereof:
30 and the escapees of the house of Yah Hudah
who survive
take root downward and work fruit upward:
31 for survivors go from Yeru Shalem
and escapees from mount Siyon:
the zeal of Yah Veh Sabaoth works this.
32 So thus says Yah Veh
concerning the sovereign of Ashshur:
He neither comes into this city
nor shoots an arrow there
nor precedes it with buckler
nor pours a mound against it:
33 by the way he comes, by the same he returns;
and comes not into this city
— an oracle of Yah Veh:
34 and I garrison this city to save it
for my own sake and for sake of my servant David.
35 And so be it, that night,
the angel of Yah Veh goes out
and smites in the camp of the Ashshuri
— a hundred eighty—five thousand:
and they start early in the morning,
and behold, they are all dead carcasses.
36 And Sancherib, sovereign of Ashshur pulls stakes
and goes and returns and settles at Nineveh:
37 and so be it,
he prostrates in the house of Nisroch his elohim.
and his sons Adram Melech and Shareser
smite him with the sword:
and they escape into the land of Ararat:
and Esar Chaddon his son reigns in his stead.

THE SICKNESS OF YECHIZQI YAH

20 In those days Yechizqi Yah is sick unto death:
and the prophet Yesha Yah the son of Amos
comes to him and says to him,
Thus says Yah Veh, Misvah concerning your house
for you die and live not.
2 And he turns his face to the wall
and prays to Yah Veh, saying,
3 I beseech you, O Yah Veh,
remember, I pray you,
how I walked at your face in truth
and with a heart at shalom
and worked good in your eyes!
— and Yechizqi Yah weeps a great weeping.
4 And so be it,
ere Yesha Yah goes midst the city,
the word of Yah Veh comes to him, saying,
5 Turn back
and say to Yechizqi Yah, the eminent of my people,
Thus says Yah Veh, Elohim of David your father,
I hear your prayer; I see your tears;
behold, I heal you:
on the third day, ascend to the house of Yah Veh:
6 and I add fifteen years to your days;
and I rescue you and this city

2 KINGS 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- out of the *hand palm*
of the *king sovereign* of Assyria Ashshur;
and I will defend **shall garrison** this city
for mine own sake,
and for my servant David's sake.
- 7 And Isaiah **Yesha Yah** said, Take a *lump cake* of figs.
And they took and *laid set* it on the *boil ulcer*,
and he *recovered enlivened*.
- 8 And Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah** said unto Isaiah **Yesha Yah**,
What shall be the sign
that *the LORD will Yah Veh shall* heal me,
and that I shall *go up ascend*
into the house of the *LORD Yah Veh* the third day?
9 And Isaiah **Yesha Yah** said,
This sign shalt thou have of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
that the *LORD Yah Veh*
will do the *thing shall work the word*
that he hath *spoken worded*:
shall the shadow go forward ten degrees,
or go **turn** back ten degrees?
10 And Hezekiah answered **Yechizqi Yah** said,
It is a *light thing trifle*
for the shadow to *go down spread* ten degrees:
nay, but let the shadow return backward ten degrees.
11 And Isaiah **Yesha Yah** the prophet
cried called out unto the *LORD Yah Veh*:
and he *brought turned* the shadow ten degrees backward,
by the **degrees** which it had *gone down descended*
in the *dial degrees* of Ahaz Achaz.
- THE BABEL ENVOYS**
- 12 At that time Berodachbaladan **Berodach Bel Adoni**,
the son of Baladan **Bel Adan**,
king sovereign of Babylon Babel,
sent *letters scrolls* and a *present an offering*
unto Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**:
for he had heard
that Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah** had been sick.
13 And Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah** hearkened unto them,
and *shewed them had them see*
all the house of his *precious things spicery*,
the silver, and the gold,
and the spices, and the *precious best* ointment,
and all the house of his *armour instruments*,
and all that was found in his treasures:
there was *nothing no word* in his house,
nor in all his *dominion reign*,
that Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**
shewed them not had them not see.
- 14 Then came Isaiah **Yesha Yah** the prophet
unto king Hezekiah **sovereign Yechizqi Yah**,
and said unto him,
What said these men?
and from whence came they unto thee?
And Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah** said,
They are come from a far *country land*,
even from Babylon Babel.
- 15 And he said, What have they seen in thine house?
And Hezekiah answered **Yechizqi Yah** said,
All *the things* that are in mine house have they seen:
there is *nothing no word* among my treasures
that I have not *shewed them had them see*.
- 16 And Isaiah **Yesha Yah**
said unto Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**,
Hear the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*.
- 17 Behold, the days come, that all that is in thine house,
and that which thy fathers
have *laid up in store treasured* unto this day,
shall be *carried lifted* into Babylon Babel:
nothing no word shall be left remain,
saith the *LORD Yah Veh*.
- 18 And of thy sons that shall *issue emerge* from thee,
which thou shalt *beget birth*, shall they take away;
and they shall be eunuchs in the *palace temple*
of the *king sovereign* of Babylon Babel.
- 19 Then said Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**
unto Isaiah **Yesha Yah**,
Good is the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*
which thou hast *spoken worded*.

2 SOVEREIGNS 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- from the palm of the sovereign of Ashshur:
and I garrison this city for my own sake
and for the sake of my servant David.
- 7 And Yesha Yah says, Take a cake of figs.
— and they take and set it on the ulcer
and he enlivens.
- 8 And Yechizqi Yah says to Yesha Yah,
What is the sign that Yah Veh heals me
and I ascend into the house of Yah Veh the third day?
- 9 And Yesha Yah says, This is your sign of Yah Veh
that Yah Veh works the word he worded:
that the shadow go forward ten degrees,
or turns back ten degrees.
- 10 And Yechizqi Yah says,
It is a trifle that the shadow spread ten degrees:
no, but have the shadow turn back ten degrees.
- 11 And Yesha Yah the prophet calls to Yah Veh:
and he turns back the shadow ten degrees
by the degrees it descends in the degrees of Achaz.
- THE BABEL ENVOYS**
- 12 At that time Berodach Bel Adoni,
the son of Bel Adan sovereign of Babel
sends scrolls and an offering to Yechizqi Yah:
for he hears Yechizqi Yah is sick:
and Yechizqi Yah hearkens to them
and has them see all the house of his spicery
— the silver and the gold
and the spices and the best ointment
and all the house of his instruments
and all they find in his treasures
— neither word in his house nor in all his reign
that Yechizqi Yah has them not see.
- 14 And Yesha Yah the prophet
comes to sovereign Yechizqi Yah and says to him,
What say these men?
And whence come they to you?
And Yechizqi Yah says,
They come from a far land — from Babel.
- 15 And he says, What saw they in your house?
And Yechizqi Yah says,
I had them see all that is in my house:
there is no word among my treasures
that I had them not see.
- 16 And Yesha Yah says to Yechizqi Yah,
Hear the word of Yah Veh.
Behold, the days come,
that all in your house
which your fathers treasure to this day,
is lifted to Babel — no word remains, says Yah Veh.
And of your sons who emerge from you,
whom you birth, they take away;
to be eunuchs in the temple of the sovereign of Babel.
- 19 Then Yechizqi Yah says to Yesha Yah,
Good is the word of Yah Veh you worded.

2 KINGS 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

And he said, Is it not good,
if peace **shalom** and truth be in my days?

THE DEATH OF YECHIZQI YAH

20 And the rest of the acts words
of Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**,
and all his might, and how he *made* **worked** a pool,
and a *conduit* **channel**, and brought water into the city,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of Judah **Yah Hudah**?

21 And Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah**
slept **laid** with his fathers:
and *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** his son reigned in his stead.

MENASH SHEH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

21 *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
was a **son of** twelve years *old*
when he began to reign,
and reigned fifty and five years in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name was *Hepzibah* **Hepshi Bah**.

2 And he *did* **worked** that which was evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
after the *abominations* **abhorrences** of the *heathen* **goyim**,
whom the *LORD* **cast out** **Yah Veh dispossessed**
before **at the face of** the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

3 For he *built up again* **returned and built**
the *high places* **bamahs**
which *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** his father had destroyed;
and he *reared up* **raised sacrifice** altars for Baal,
and *made a grove* **worked an asherah**,
as *did Ahab* **worked Ach Ab**
king **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and *worshipped* **prostrated**
to all the host of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and served them.

4 And he built **sacrifice** altars
in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
of which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said,
In *Jerusalem* **will I put** **Yeru Shalem shall I set** my name.

5 And he built **sacrifice** altars
for all the host of *heaven* **the heavens**
in the two courts of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

6 And he made his son pass through the fire,
and *observed times* **cloudgazed**,
and *used enchantments* **prognosticated**,
and *dealt* **worked** with *familiar spirits* **necromancers**
and *wizards* **knowers**:
he *wrought much wickedness* **abounded to work evil**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to *provoke* **vex** him to anger.

7 And he set a *graven image* **sculptile** of the *grove* **asherah**
that he had *made* **worked** in the house,
of which the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said to David,
and to *Solomon* **Shelomoh** his son,
In this house, and in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
which I have chosen

out of all *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
will I put **shall I set** my name for ever **eternally**:
Neither *will* **shall I** make the feet of *Israel* **Yisra El**
move any more **waver again**

out of the *land* **soil** which I gave their fathers;
only if they *will observe* **shall guard to do work**
according to all that I have *commanded* **misvahed** them,
and according to all the *law* **torah**
that my servant *Moses* **Mosheh**
commanded **misvahed** them.

9 But they hearkened not:
and *Manasseh* **seduced** **Menash Sheh** **strayed** them
to *do work* more evil than did the *nations* **goyim**
whom the *LORD* **destroyed** **Yah Veh desolated**
before **at the face of** the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

10 And the *LORD* **spake** **Yah Veh worded**
by **the hand of** his servants the prophets, saying,

11 Because *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
king **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**
hath *done* **worked** these *abominations* **abhorrences**,
and hath *done wickedly* **vilified** above all
that the *Amorites* **did** **Emoriy worked**,
which were *before him* **at his face**,
and hath made *Judah* **Yah Hudah** also to sin with his idols:

2 SOVEREIGNS 20, 21648

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And he says,
But not if shalom and truth become in my days.

THE DEATH OF YECHIZQI YAH

20 And the rest of the words of Yechizqi Yah
and all his might
and how he works a pool and a channel
and brings water into the city,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah?

21 And Yechizqi Yah lies down with his fathers:
and Menash Sheh his son reigns in his stead.

MENASH SHEH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

21 Menash Sheh is a son of twelve years
when he begins to reign;
and reigns fifty—five years in Yeru Shalem:
and the name of his mother, Hepshi Bah.

2 And he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh;
after the abhorrences of the goyim,
whom Yah Veh dispossessed
at the face of the sons of Yisra El.

3 And he returns and builds the bamahs
Yechizqi Yah his father destroyed;
and he raises sacrifice altars for Baal
and works an asherah
as Ach Ab sovereign of Yisra El worked;
and prostrates to all the host of the heavens
and serves them.

4 And he builds sacrifice altars
in the house of Yah Veh;
of which Yah Veh said,

5 In Yeru Shalem I set my name:
and he builds sacrifice altars
for all the host of the heavens
in the two courts of the house of Yah Veh:
6 and he passes his son through the fire
and cloudgazes and prognosticates
and works with necromancers and knowers:
he abounds to work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh
to vex him:

7 and he sets a sculptile of the asherah he worked
in the house,
of which Yah Veh said to David
and to Shelomoh his son,
In this house and in Yeru Shalem,
which I chose from all scions of Yisra El,
I set my name eternally:
8 and I add not to waver the feet of Yisra El
from the soil I gave their fathers;
only, if they guard to work
according to all I misvahed them;
and according to all the torah
my servant Mosheh misvahed them.

9 And they hearken not:
and Menash Sheh strays them to work more evil
than the goyim whom Yah Veh desolated
at the face of the sons of Yisra El.

10 And Yah Veh words
by the hand of his servants the prophets, saying,
11 Because Menash Sheh sovereign of Yah Hudah
works these abhorrences
and vilifies above all the Emoriy worked at his face
and also has Yah Hudah sin with his idols:

2 KINGS 21, 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 Therefore thus saith
the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**,
Behold, I am bringing *such* evil
upon *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
that whosoever heareth of it, both his ears shall tingle.
13 And I will stretch **shall spread** over *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
the line of *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
and the *plummet* **plumb line** of the house of *Ahab* **Ach Ab**:
and I will **shall** wipe *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
as a man wipeth a dish **wiping a bowl**, wiping it,
and turning it *upside down* **to descend upon its face**.
14 And I will **forsake shall abandon**
the *remnant* **survivors** of mine inheritance,
and *deliver* **give** them into the hand of their enemies;
and they shall become a *prey* **plunder**
and a *spoil* **plunder** to all their enemies;
15 Because they have *done* **worked** that which was evil
in my *sight* **eyes**,
and have *provoked* **vexed** me to *anger* **since** **from** the day
their fathers *came forth* **went** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
even unto this day.
16 Moreover *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
shed **poured** innocent blood
very much **mighty aboundingly**,
till he had filled *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
from one end **mouth** to *another* **mouth**;
beside his sin wherewith he made *Judah* **Yah Hudah** to sin,
in *doing* **working** that which was evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the LORD **Yah Veh**.
17 Now the rest of the *acts* **words**
of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
and all that he *did* **worked**, and his sin that he sinned,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**?
18 And *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** *slept laid* with his fathers,
and was *buried* **entombed** in the garden of his own house,
in the garden of *Uzza*:
and *Amon* his son reigned in his stead.
AMON REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM
19 *Amon* was **a son of** twenty and two years *old*
when he began to reign,
and he reigned two years in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name was Meshullemeth,
the daughter of *Haruz* **Harus** of *Yotbah* **Yotbah**.
20 And he *did* **worked** that which was evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
as his father *Manasseh* **did** **Menash Sheh** **worked**.
21 And he walked in all the way that his father walked in,
and served the idols that his father served,
and *worshipped* **prostrated** to them:
22 And he forsook
the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of his fathers,
and walked not in the way of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
23 And the servants of *Amon* conspired against him,
and *slew* **deathified** the *king* **sovereign** in his own house.
24 And the people of the land *slew* **smote** all them
that had conspired against *king* **sovereign** *Amon*;
and the people of the land made *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah** his son
king **to reign** in his stead.
25 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Amon*
which he *did* **worked**,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**?
26 And he was *buried* **entombed** in his *sepulchre* **tomb**
in the garden of *Uzza*:
and *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah** his son reigned in his stead.
YOSHI YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

22

Josiah **Yoshi Yah** was **a son of** eight years *old*
when he began to reign,
and he reigned thirty and one years
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name was *Jedidah* **Yedidah**,
the daughter of *Adaiah* **Ada Yah** of *Bosqath* **Bosqath**.
2 And he *did* **worked** that which was *right* **straight**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and walked in all the way of *David* his father,
and turned not aside to the *right* **hand** or to the left.

2 SOVEREIGNS 21, 22649

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 so thus says *Yah Veh Elohim* of *Yisra El*:
Behold, I bring evil on *Yeru Shalem* and *Yah Hudah*
that whoever hears of it, both his ears tingle:
and over *Yeru Shalem*
I spread the line of *Shomeron*
and the *plumb line* of the house of *Ach Ab*:
and I wipe *Yeru Shalem* — wipe as wiping a bowl,
and turn it to descend on its face:
14 and I abandon the survivors of my inheritance
and give them into the hand of their enemies;
to become a *plunder* — a *plunder* to all their enemies
because they work evil in my eyes to vex me
— from the day their fathers came from *Misrayim*
even to this day.
16 And also *Menash Sheh* pours innocent blood
mighty aboundingly,
until he fills *Yeru Shalem* mouth to mouth;
beside his sin wherewith he had *Yah Hudah* sin,
in working evil in the eyes of *Yah Veh*.
17 And the rest of the words of *Menash Sheh*
and all he worked and the sin he sinned,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of *Yah Hudah*?
18 And *Menash Sheh* lies down with his fathers
entombed in the garden of his own house
in the garden of *Uzza*:
and *Amon* his son reigns in his stead.
AMON REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM
19 *Amon* is a son of twenty—two years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns two years in *Yeru Shalem*:
and the name of his mother,
Meshullemeth the daughter of *Harus* of *Yotbah*.
20 And he works evil in the eyes of *Yah Veh*,
as his father *Menash Sheh* worked:
21 and he walks in all the way his father walked
and serves the idols his father served
and prostrates to them:
22 and he forsakes *Yah Veh Elohim* of his fathers
and walks not in the way of *Yah Veh*.
23 And the servants of *Amon* conspire against him
and deathify the sovereign in his own house:
24 and the people of the land
smite all who conspire against sovereign *Amon*;
and the people of the land
have *Yoshi Yah* his son reign in his stead.
25 And the rest of the words *Amon* works,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of *Yah Hudah*?
26 And he is entombed in his tomb
in the garden of *Uzza*:
and *Yoshi Yah* his son reigns in his stead.
YOSHI YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM
22 *Yoshi Yah* is a son of eight years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns thirty—one years in *Yeru Shalem*:
and the name of his mother,
Yedidah the daughter of *Ada Yah* of *Bosqath*.
2 And he works straight in the eyes of *Yah Veh*
and walks in all the way of *David* his father
and turns not aside to the right or to the left.

2 KINGS 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 And **so be** it came to pass,
in the eighteenth year of *king Josiah* **sovereign Yoshi Yah**,
that the *king* **sovereign** sent Shaphan
the son of *Azaliah* **Asal Yah**, the son of Meshullam,
the scribe,
to the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, saying,
4 *Go up* **Ascend** to *Hilkiah* **Hilqi Yah** the *high* **great** priest,
that he may *sum* **consummate** the silver
which is brought into the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which the *keepers* **guards** of the *door* **threshold**
have gathered of the people:
5 And let them *deliver* **give** it
into the hand of the *doers* **workers** of the work,
that *have the oversight of* **oversee**
the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
and let them give it to the *doers* **workers** of the work
which is in the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to *repair* **strengthen** the breaches of the house,
6 Unto *carpenters* **carvers**,
and builders, and *masons* **wallers**,
and to *buy* **chattel** timber and hewn stone
to *repair* **strengthen** the house.
7 Howbeit
there was no *reckoning made* **fabricating** with them
of the *money* **silver**
that was *delivered* **given** into their hand,
because they *dealt faithfully* **worked trustworthily**.
8 And *Hilkiah* **Hilqi Yah** the *high* **great** priest
said unto Shaphan the scribe,
I have found the *book* **scroll** of the *law* **torah**
in the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
And *Hilkiah* **Hilqi Yah** gave the *book* **scroll** to Shaphan,
and he *read* **called it out**.
9 And Shaphan the scribe came to the *king* **sovereign**,
and *brought the king word again*
returned word to the sovereign, and said,
Thy servants have *gathered* **melted** the *money* **silver**
that was found in the house,
and have *delivered* **given** it
into the hand of them that *do* **work** the work,
that *have the oversight of* **oversee**
the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
10 And Shaphan the scribe
shewed **told** the *king* **sovereign**, saying,
Hilkiah **Hilqi Yah** the priest
hath *delivered* **given** me a *book* **scroll**.
And Shaphan *read* **called it out**
before **at the face of** the *king* **sovereign**.
11 And **so be** it came to pass,
when the *king* **sovereign** had heard
the words of the *book* **scroll** of the *law* **torah**,
that he *rent* **ripped** his clothes.
12 And the *king* **commanded** **sovereign** **misvahed**
Hilkiah **Hilqi Yah** the priest,
and *Ahikam* **Achiy Qam** the son of Shaphan,
and Achbor the son of *Michaiah* **Michah Yah**,
and Shaphan the scribe,
and *Asahiah* **Asah Yah** a servant of the *king's* **sovereign's**,
saying,
13 Go ye, enquire of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** for me,
and for the people, and for all *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
concerning the words of this *book* **scroll** that is found:
for great is the *wrath* **fury** of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
that is kindled against us,
because our fathers have not hearkened
unto the words of this *book* **scroll**,
to *do* **work** according unto all
that which is *written* **inscribed** concerning us.
14 So *Hilkiah* **Hilqi Yah** the priest,
and *Ahikam* **Achiy Qam**, and Achbor,
and Shaphan, and *Asahiah* **Asah Yah**,
went unto Huldah the prophetess,
the *wife* **woman** of Shallum the son of *Tikvah* **Tiqvah**,
the son of *Harhas* **Harchas**,
keeper **guard** of the *wardrobe* **clothes**;
(now she *dwelt* **settled** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
in the *college* **second**;)
and they *communed* **worded** with her.
15 And she said unto them,

2 SOVEREIGNS 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 And so be it,
in the eighteenth year of sovereign Yoshi Yah,
the sovereign sends Shaphan the son of Asal Yah
the son of Meshullam the scribe
to the house of Yah Veh saying,
4 Ascend to Hilqi Yah the great priest,
to consummate the silver
brought into the house of Yah Veh
which the guards of the threshold
gathered of the people:
5 to give it into the hand of the workers
who oversee the work of the house of Yah Veh
— to give it to the workers of the work
in the house of Yah Veh
to strengthen the breaches of the house
— to carvers and builders and wallers
— to chattel timber and hewn stone
to strengthen the house:
7 only, fabricate not with them
the silver given into their hand
because they work trustworthily.
8 And Hilqi Yah the great priest
says to Shaphan the scribe,
I found the scroll of the torah
in the house of Yah Veh.
And Hilqi Yah gives the scroll to Shaphan
and he calls it out.
9 And Shaphan the scribe comes to the sovereign
and returns word to the sovereign and says,
Your servants melted the silver found in the house
and gave it to the hand of them who work the work
— who oversee the house of Yah Veh.
10 And Shaphan the scribe tells the sovereign saying,
Hilqi Yah the priest gives me a scroll:
and Shaphan calls it out at the face of the sovereign:
11 and so be it,
the sovereign hears
the words of the scroll of the torah
and he rips his clothes.
12 And the sovereign misvahs Hilqi Yah the priest
and Achiy Qam the son of Shaphan
and Achbor the son of Michah Yah
and Shaphan the scribe
and Asah Yah a servant of the sovereign saying,
13 Go you, enquire of Yah Veh for me
and for the people and for all Yah Hudah
concerning the words of this scroll they found:
for the great fury of Yah Veh kindles against us;
because our fathers hearkened not
to the words of this scroll
— to work according to all inscribed concerning us.
14 And Hilqi Yah the priest
and Achiy Qam and Achbor
and Shaphan and Asah Yah
go to Huldah the prophetess
the woman of Shallum the son of Tiqvah
the son of Harchas the guard of the clothes;
— and she settles in Yeru Shalem — in the second
and they word with her.
15 And she says to them,

2 KINGS 22, 23

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

Thus saith the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**,
Tell **Say** to the man that sent you to me,
16 Thus saith the LORD **Yah Veh**, Behold,
I will **shall** bring evil upon this place,
and upon the *inhabitants* **settlers** thereof,
even all the words of the *book* **scroll**
which the *king* **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**
hath read **called out**:
17 Because they have forsaken me,
and have *burned incense* **incensed**
unto other *gods* **elohim**,
that they might *provoke* **vex** me to anger
with all the works of their hands;
therefore my *wrath* **fury** shall be kindled against this place,
and shall not be quenched.
18 But to the *king* **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**
which sent you to enquire of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
thus shall ye say to him,
Thus saith
the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**,
As touching the words which thou hast heard;
19 Because thine heart was *tender* **tenderized**,
and thou hast humbled thyself
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**,
when thou hearest
what I *spake* **worded** against this place,
and against the *inhabitants* **settlers** thereof,
that they should become
a desolation and a *curse* **an abasement**,
and hast *rent* **ripped** thy clothes,
and wept *before me* **at my face**;
I also have heard *thee*,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
20 Behold therefore,
I will **shall** gather thee unto thy fathers,
and thou shalt be gathered into thy *grave* **tomb**
in *peace* **shalom**;
and thine eyes shall not see all the evil
which I will **shall** bring upon this place.
And they
brought the king word again **returned word to the sovereign**.
YOSHI YAH CUTS A COVENANT

23

And the *king* **sovereign** sent,
and they gathered unto him all the elders
of Judah **Yah Hudah** and of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
2 And the *king* **sovereign**
went up **ascended** into the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and all the men of Judah **Yah Hudah**
and all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
with him,
and the priests, and the prophets, and all the people,
both small and great:
and he read **called out** in their ears
all the words of the *book* **scroll** of the covenant
which was found in the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**.
3 And the *king* **sovereign** stood by a pillar,
and made **cut** a covenant
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**,
to walk after the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and to *keep* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**
and his *testimonies* **witnesses** and his statutes
with all their heart and all their soul,
to *perform* **raise** the words of this covenant
that were *written* **inscribed** in this *book* **scroll**.
And all the people stood to the covenant.
4 And the *king* **commanded** **sovereign** **misvahed**
Hilkiah **Hilqi Yah** the *high* **great** priest,
and the priests of the second order,
and the *keepers* **guards** of the *door* **threshold**,
to bring forth
out of the *temple* **manse** of the LORD **Yah Veh**
all the *vessels* **instruments** that were *made* **worked**
for Baal, and for the *grove* **asherah**,
and for all the host of *heaven* **the heavens**:
and he burned them without *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
in the fields of *Kidron* **Qidron**,
and *carried* **lifted** the *ashes* **dust** of them
unto *Bethel* **Beth El**.

2 SOVEREIGNS 22, 23651

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
Say to the man who sends you to me,
16 Thus says Yah Veh, Behold,
I bring evil on this place and the settlers thereof
— all the words of the scroll
the sovereign of Yah Hudah calls out:
17 because they forsake me
and incense to other elohim
— to vex me with all the works of their hands;
I kindle my fury against this place and quench not.
18 And to the sovereign of Yah Hudah
who sends you to enquire of Yah Veh,
say thus to him:
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
— the words you heard;
19 because you tenderized your heart
and humbled yourself at the face of Yah Veh,
when you heard what I worded against this place
and against the settlers thereof
— that they become a desolation and an abasement
and you ripped your clothes and wept at my face;
I also hear
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
20 So behold, I gather you to your fathers
— gather you to your tomb in shalom
that your eyes not see all the evil I bring on this place.
— and they return word to the sovereign.

YOSHI YAH CUTS A COVENANT

23

And the sovereign sends and gathers to him
all the elders of Yah Hudah and of Yeru Shalem:
2 and the sovereign ascends into the house of Yah Veh
with all the men of Yah Hudah
and all the settlers of Yeru Shalem
and the priests and the prophets and all the people
both small and great:
and he calls out in their ears
all the words of the scroll of the covenant
found in the house of Yah Veh:
and the sovereign stands by a pillar
and cuts a covenant at the face of Yah Veh
— to walk after Yah Veh
and to guard his misvoth
and his witnesses and his statutes
with all their heart and all their soul
— to raise the words of this covenant
inscribed in this scroll:
and all the people stand to the covenant.
4 And the sovereign misvahs Hilqi Yah the great priest
and the priests of the second order
and the guards of the threshold
— to bring from the manse of Yah Veh
all the instruments worked for Baal
and for the asherah
and for all the host of the heavens:
and he burns them outside Yeru Shalem
in the fields of Qidron;
and lifts their dust to Beth El.

2 KINGS 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 And he put down **caused to cease**
the *idolatrous priests* **ascetics**,
whom the *kings* **sovereigns** of Judah **Yah Hudah**
had *ordained* **given**
to *burn* incense in the *high places* **bamahs**
in the cities of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and in the places round about *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
them also that *burned incense* **incensed** unto Baal,
to the sun, and to the moon,
and to the *planets* **constellations**,
and to all the host of *heaven* **the heavens**.
6 And he brought out the *grove* **asherah**
from the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
without *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
unto the *brook Kidron* **wadi Qidron**,
and burned it at the *brook Kidron* **wadi Qidron**,
and *stamped* **pulverized** it *small to powder* **into dust**,
and cast the *powder* **dust** thereof
upon the *graves* **tombs** of the *children* **sons** of the people.
7 And he *brake* **pulled** down the houses
of the *sodomites* **hallowed whoremongers**,
that were by the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
where the women
wove *hangings* **housings** for the *grove* **asherah**.
8 And he brought all the priests
out of the cities of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and *defiled* **fouled** the *high places* **bamahs**
where the priests had *burned incense* **incensed**,
from Geba to *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**,
and *brake* **pulled** down
the *high places* **bamahs** of the *gates* **portals**
that were in the *entering in* **opening** of the *gate* **portal**
of *Joshua* **Yah Shua** the governor of the city,
which were on a man's left *hand*
at the *gate* **portal** of the city.
9 Nevertheless the priests of the *high places* **bamahs**
came **ascended** not up
to the *sacrifice* altar of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
but they did eat of the *unleavened bread* **matsah**
among their brethren.
10 And he *defiled* **fouled** Topheth,
which is in the valley
of the *children* **sons** of *Hinnom* **burning**,
that no man might make his son or his daughter
to pass through the fire to Molech.
11 And he *took away* **caused to cease** the horses
that the *kings* **sovereigns** of Judah **Yah Hudah**
had given to the sun,
at the entering in of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
by the chamber of
Nathanmelech **Nathan Melech** the *chamberlain* **eunuch**,
which was in the suburbs,
and burned the chariots of the sun with fire.
12 And the *sacrifice* altars that were on the *top roof*
of the upper *chamber* **room** of *Ahaz* **Achaz**,
which the *kings* **sovereigns** of Judah **Yah Hudah**
had *made* **worked**,
and the *sacrifice* altars
which *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** had *made* **worked**
in the two courts of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
did the *king* **beat** **sovereign pull** down,
and *brake* **them down** **ran** from thence,
and cast the dust of them
into the *brook Kidron* **wadi Qidron**.
13 And the *high places* **bamahs**
that were *before Jerusalem* **at the face of Yeru Shalem**,
which were on the right *hand*
of the mount of *corruption* **ruin**,
which *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
had builded for *Ashtoreth*
the abomination of the *Zidonians* **Sidoniy**,
and for *Chemosh* **Kemosh**
the abomination of the *Moabites* **Moabiy**,
and for *Milcom* **Milchom**
the *abomination* **abhorrence**
of the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
did the *king* **defile** **sovereign foul**.

2 SOVEREIGNS 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

5 And he ceases the ascetics
whom the sovereigns of Yah Hudah gave
to incense in the bamahs in the cities of Yah Hudah
and in the places all around Yeru Shalem;
also them who incensed to Baal
to the sun and to the moon
and to the constellations
and to all the host of the heavens:
6 and he brings the asherah
from the house of Yah Veh
to outside Yeru Shalem to the wadi Qidron;
and burns it at the wadi Qidron
and pulverized it to dust;
and casts the dust thereof
on the tombs of the sons of the people:
7 and he pulls down the houses
of the hallowed whoremongers
by the house of Yah Veh,
where the women weave housings for the asherah:
8 and he brings all the priests
from the cities of Yah Hudah
and fouls the bamahs where the priests incensed
— from Geba to Beer Sheba;
and pulls down the bamahs of the portals
in the opening of the portal
of Yah Shua the governor of the city
— on the left of man at the portal of the city:
9 only, the priests of the bamahs
ascend not to the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh
in Yeru Shalem,
but they eat of the matsah among their brothers.
10 And he fouls Topheth
in the valley of the sons of Hinnom/burning
— so that no man pass his son or his daughter
through the fire to Molech:
11 and he ceases the horses
the sovereigns of Yah Hudah give to the sun,
at the entering of the house of Yah Veh
by the chamber of Nathan Melech the eunuch
in the suburbs;
and burns the chariots of the sun with fire.
12 And the sovereign pulls down the sacrifice altars
on the roof of the upper room of Achaz
which the sovereigns of Yah Hudah worked,
and the sacrifice altars Menash Sheh worked
in the two courts of the house of Yah Veh;
and runs from there
and casts their dust in the wadi Qidron.
13 And the sovereign fouls
the bamahs at the face of Yeru Shalem
at the right of the mount of ruin,
which Shelomoh the sovereign of Yisra El built
for Ashtoreth
the abomination of the Sidoniy,
and for Kemosh
the abomination of the Moabiy,
and for Milchom
the abhorrence of the sons of Ammon:

2 KINGS 23

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 And he brake in pieces the images **monoliths**,
and cut down the groves **asherim**,
and filled their places with the bones of **men humans**.
15 Moreover the **sacrifice** altar that was at **Bethel Beth El**,
and the **high place bamah**
which **Jeroboam Yarob Am** the son of Nebat,
who made **Israel Yisra El** to sin, had made **worked**,
both that **sacrifice** altar and the **high place bamah**
he **brake pulled** down, and burned the **high place bamah**,
and **stamped pulverized** it **small to powder into dust**,
and burned the **grove asherah**.
16 And as **Josiah Yoshi Yah** turned **himself his face**,
he **spied saw** the **sepulchres tombs**
that were there in the mount,
and sent, and took the bones out of the **sepulchres tombs**,
and burned them upon the **sacrifice** altar,
and **polluted fouled** it,
according to the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
which the man of **God proclaimed Elohim called out**,
who **proclaimed called out** these words.
17 Then he said, What **title monument** is that that I see?
And the men of the city **told said to** him,
It is the **sepulchre tomb** of the man of **God Elohim**,
which came from **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and **proclaimed called out** these **things words**
that thou hast **done worked**
against the **sacrifice** altar of **Bethel Beth El**.
18 And he said, Let him alone;
let no man **move shake** his bones.
So they let his bones **alone escape**,
with the bones of the prophet
that came out of **Samaria Shomeron**.
19 And all the houses also of the **high places bamahs**
that were in the cities of **Samaria Shomeron**,
which the **kings sovereigns** of **Israel Yisra El**
had made **worked**
to **provoke the LORD to anger vex**,
Josiah took away Yoshi Yah turned aside,
and **did worked** to them according to all the **acts works**
that he had **done worked** in **Bethel Beth El**.
20 And he **slew sacrificed**
all the priests of the **high places bamahs**
that were there upon the **sacrifice** altars,
and burned **men's human** bones upon them,
and returned to **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
21 And the **king sovereign**
commanded misvahed all the people, saying,
Keep Work the passover pasach
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**,
as it is **written inscribed**
in the **book scroll** of this covenant.
22 Surely
there was not **holden worked** such a **passover pasach**
from the days of the judges that judged **Israel Yisra El**,
nor in all the days of the **kings sovereigns** of **Israel Yisra El**,
nor of the **kings sovereigns** of **Judah Yah Hudah**;
23 But in the eighteenth year
of **king Josiah sovereign Yoshi Yah**,
wherein this **passover pasach** was **holden worked**
to the **LORD Yah Veh** in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
24 Moreover
the **workers with familiar spirits necromancers**,
and the **wizards knowers**,
and the **images teraphim**, and the idols,
and all the abominations that were **spied seen**
in the land of **Judah Yah Hudah**
and in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
did Josiah put away Yoshi Yah burnt,
that he might **perform raise** the words of the **law torah**
which were **written inscribed** in the **book scroll**
that **Hilkiah Hilqi Yah** the priest
found in the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
25 And like unto him
was there no **king before him sovereign at his face**,
that turned to the **LORD Yah Veh** with all his heart,
and with all his soul, and with all his might,
according to all the **law torah** of **Moses Mosheh**;
neither after him arose there any like him.

2 SOVEREIGNS 23

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 and he breaks the monoliths
and cuts down the asherim
and fills their places with bones of humans:
15 and also the sacrifice altar at Beth El
and the bamah Yarob Am the son of Nebat,
who had Yisra El sin, worked,
both that sacrifice altar and the bamah
he pulls down and burns the bamah
and pulverizes to dust and burns the asherah.
16 And Yoshi Yah turns his face,
and he sees the tombs in the mount;
and sends and takes the bones from the tombs
and burns them on the sacrifice altar and fouls it,
according to the word of Yah Veh
which the man of Elohim called out
— who called out these words.
17 Then he says, What monument is this that I see?
And the men of the city say to him,
It is the tomb of the man of Elohim,
who comes from Yah Hudah
and calls out these words
you worked against the sacrifice altar of Beth El.
18 And he says, Leave him alone;
No man shakes his bones.
— and his bones escape
with the bones of the prophet
who came from Shomeron.
19 And Yoshi Yah also turns aside
all the houses of the bamahs
in the cities of Shomeron
which the sovereigns of Yisra El worked to vex,
and works to them according to all the works
he worked in Beth El:
20 and he sacrifices all the priests of the bamahs
on the sacrifice altars;
and burns human bones on them;
and returns to Yeru Shalem.
21 And the sovereign misvahs all the people,
saying,
Work the pasach to Yah Veh your Elohim,
as inscribed in the scroll of this covenant.
22 Surely such a pasach was never worked
from the days of the judges who judged Yisra El,
neither in all the days of the sovereigns of Yisra El,
nor of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah:
23 but in the eighteenth year of sovereign Yoshi Yah
this pasach was worked to Yah Veh in Yeru Shalem.
24 And Yoshi Yah also burnt
the necromancers and the knowers
and the teraphim and the idols
and all the abominations
seen in the land of Yah Hudah and in Yeru Shalem,
to raise the words of the torah inscribed in the scroll
that Hilqi Yah the priest
found in the house of Yah Veh.
25 And like unto him
became no sovereign at his face
— who turned to Yah Veh with all his heart
and with all his soul and with all his might
— according to all the torah of Mosheh;
nor arose any like unto him after him.

2 KINGS 23, 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

26 *Notwithstanding the LORD Only Yah Veh*
turned not from the *fierceness* **fuming** of his great wrath,
wherewith his *anger* **wrath** was kindled
against *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
because of all the *provocations* **vexations**
that *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** had *provoked* **vexed** him *withal*.
27 *And the LORD Yah Veh* said,
I will remove Judah shall turn aside Yah Hudah also
out of my *sight* **face**,
as I have *removed Israel* **turned aside Yisra El**,
and *will cast off* **shall spurn**
this city *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** which I have chosen,
and the house of which I said, My name shall be there.
28 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**,
and all that he *did* **worked**,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**?
29 In his days *Pharaoh Paroh* Nechoh,
king sovereign of *Egypt* **went up Misrayim ascended**
against the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
to the river Euphrates:
and *king Josiah* **sovereign Yoshi Yah**
went against to meet him;
and he *slew* **deathified** him at Megiddo,
when he had seen him.
30 And his servants *carried* **rode** him in a chariot
dead from Megiddo,
and brought him to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and *buried* **entombed** him in his own *sepulchre* **tomb**.
And the people of the land
took *Jehoahaz* **Yah Achaz** the son of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**,
and anointed him,
and *made him king* **had him reign** in his father's stead.
31 **YAH ACHAZ REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM**
Jehoahaz **Yah Achaz**
was **a son of** twenty and three years *old*
when he began to reign;
and he reigned three months in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name was Hamutal,
the daughter of *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** of Libnah.
32 And he *did* **worked** that which was evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
according to all that his fathers had *done* **worked**.
33 And *Pharaoh Paroh* Nechoh
put him in bands **bound him** at Riblah
in the land of Hamath,
that he might not reign in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
and *put* **gave** the land to a *tribute* **penalty**
of an hundred *talents* **rounds** of silver,
and a *talent* **round** of gold.
34 And *Pharaoh Paroh* Nechoh
made Eliakim **had El Yaqim** the son of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**
king **reign** in the *room* **stead** of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah** his father,
and turned his name to *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**,
and took *Jehoahaz* **Yah Achaz** away:
and he came to *Egypt* **Misrayim**, and died there.
35 And *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**
gave the silver and the gold to *Pharaoh Paroh*;
but he *taxed* **appraised** the land to give the *money* **silver**
according to the *commandment* **mouth** of *Pharaoh Paroh*:
he exacted the silver and the gold
of the people of the land,
of every *one* **man** according to his *taxation* **appraisal**,
to give it unto *Pharaoh Paroh* Nechoh.
36 *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**
was **a son of** twenty and five years *old*
when he began to reign;
and he reigned eleven years in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name was *Zebudah* **Zebidah**,
the daughter of *Pedaiah* **Pedah Yah** of Rumah.
37 And he *did* **worked** that which was evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
according to all that his fathers had *done* **worked**.

24

In his days *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **came up Babel ascended**,
and *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim** became his servant three years:
then he turned and rebelled against him.

2 SOVEREIGNS 23, 24654

exeGeses companion BIBLE

26 Only,
Yah Veh turns not from his *fuming* great wrath,
whereby he kindles his wrath against Yah Hudah,
because of all the *vexations* Menash Sheh vexed him.
27 And Yah Veh says,
I also turn aside Yah Hudah from my face,
as I turned aside Yisra El,
and spurn this city Yeru Shalem which I chose,
and the house of which I said,
My name is there.
28 And the rest of the words of Yoshi Yah
and all he worked,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah?
29 In his days
Paroh Nechoh sovereign of Misrayim
ascends against the sovereign of Ashshur
to the river Euphrates:
and sovereign Yoshi Yah comes to meet him;
and when he sees him, deathifies him at Megiddo.
30 And from Megiddo,
his servants ride him in a chariot — dead;
and bring him to Yeru Shalem
and entomb him in his own tomb.
And the people of the land
take Yah Achaz the son of Yoshi Yah and anoint him
and have him reign in the stead of his father.
31 **YAH ACHAZ REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM**
Yah Achaz is a son of twenty — three years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns three months in Yeru Shalem:
and the name of his mother,
Hamutal the daughter of Yirme Yah of Libnah.
32 And he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh
according to all his fathers worked.
33 And Paroh Nechoh binds him at Riblah
in the land of Hamath,
that he not reign in Yeru Shalem;
and gives a penalty on the land
— a hundred rounds of silver and a round of gold.
34 And Paroh Nechoh
has El Yaqim the son of Yoshi Yah
reign in the stead of Yoshi Yah his father;
and turns his name to Yah Yaqim:
and he takes Yah Achaz away:
and he comes to Misrayim and dies there.
35 And Yah Yaqim
gives the silver and the gold to Paroh;
only, he appraises the land to give the silver
according to the mouth of Paroh:
he exacts the silver and the gold
from the people of the land
— from each man according to his appraisal
to give to Paroh Nechoh.
36 Yah Yaqim is a son of twenty — five years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns eleven years in Yeru Shalem:
and the name of his mother,
Zebidah the daughter of Pedah Yah of Rumah:
and he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh,
according to all his fathers worked.

24

In his days
Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel ascends,
and Yah Yaqim becomes his servant three years:
and he turns and rebels against him:

2 KINGS 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 2 And the LORD **Yah Veh** sent against him
bands **troops** of the *Chaldees* **Kasdiy**,
and bands **troops** of the *Syrians* **Aramiy**,
and bands **troops** of the *Moabites* **Moabiy**,
and bands **troops** of the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
and sent them against *Judah* **Yah Hudah** to destroy it,
according to the word of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
which he *spake* **worded**
by the **hand** of his servants the prophets.
- 3 Surely at the *commandment* **mouth** of the LORD **Yah Veh**
came this upon *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
to *remove* **turn** them **aside** out of his *sight* **face**,
for the sins of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
according to all that he *did* **worked**;
- 4 And also for the innocent blood that he *shed* **poured**:
for he filled *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** with innocent blood;
which the LORD *would* **Yah Veh** **willed**
not *pardon* **to forgive**.
- 5 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**,
and all that he *did* **worked**,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**?
- 6 So *Jehoiakim* **slept** **Yah Yaqim** **laid** with his fathers:
and *Jehoiachin* **Yah Yachin** his son reigned in his stead.
- 7 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
came **added** not *again* **to go** any more out of his land:
for the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel** had taken
from the *river* **wadi** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
unto the river Euphrates
all that pertained to the *king* **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
- YAH YACHIN REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM**
- 8 *Jehoiachin* **Yah Yachin** was a **son** of eighteen years *old*
when he began to reign,
and he reigned in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** three months.
And his mother's name was *Nehushta* **Nechushta**,
the daughter of *Elnathan* **El Nathan**
of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
- 9 And he *did* **worked** that which was evil
in the *sight* **eyes** of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
according to all that his father had *done* **worked**.
- 10 At that time the servants of
Nebuchadnezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
came up **ascended** against *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
and the city was besieged.
- 11 And *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
came against the city, and his servants did besiege it.
- 12 And *Jehoiachin* **Yah Yachin**
the *king* **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
went out to the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
he, and his mother, and his servants,
and his *princes* **governors**, and his *officers* **eunuchs**:
and the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
took him in the eighth year of his reign.
- 13 And he *carried out* **brought** thence
all the treasures of the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and the treasures of the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
and *cut in pieces* **chopped**
all the *vessels* **instruments** of gold
which *Solomon* *king* **Shelomoh** *sovereign* of *Israel* **Yisra El**
had *made* **worked**
in the *temple* **manse** of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
as the LORD **Yah Veh** had *said* **worded**.
- 14 And he *carried away* **exiled** all *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and all the *princes* **governors**,
and all the mighty *men* of valour,
even ten thousand *captives* **exiles**,
and all the *craftsmen* **artificers** and *smiths* **locksmiths**:
none *remained* **survived**,
save **except** the poorest sort of the people of the land.
- 15 And he *carried away* **exiled** *Jehoiachin* **Yah Yachin**
to *Babylon* **Babel**,
and the *king's* **sovereign's** mother,
and the *king's* **wives** **sovereign's** **women**,
and his *officers* **eunuchs**, and the mighty of the land,
those *carried* **walked** he into *captivity* **exile**
from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** to *Babylon* **Babel**.

2 SOVEREIGNS 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 2 and against him, Yah Veh sends
troops of the Kasdiy
and troops of the Aramiy
and troops of the Moabiy,
and troops of the sons of Ammon;
and he sends them against Yah Hudah to destroy it
according to the word Yah Veh worded
by the hand of his servants the prophets:
- 3 only, this became against Yah Hudah
by the mouth of Yah Veh
— to turn them from his face
for the sins of Menash Sheh
according to all he worked;
- 4 and also for the innocent blood he poured:
for he filled Yeru Shalem with innocent blood;
which Yah Veh willed to not forgive.
- 5 And the rest of the words of Yah Yaqim,
and all he worked,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah?
- 6 And Yah Yaqim lies down with his fathers:
and Yah Yachin his son reigns in his stead.
- 7 And the sovereign of Misrayim
adds not to go from his land any more:
for the sovereign of Babel took
all that pertained to the sovereign of Misrayim
— from the wadi of Misrayim to the river Euphrates.
- YAH YACHIN REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM**
- 8 Yah Yachin is a son of eighteen years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns in Yeru Shalem three months:
and the name of his mother,
Nechushta the daughter of El Nathan of Yeru Shalem.
- 9 And he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh
according to all his father worked.
- 10 At that time the servants of
Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
ascend against Yeru Shalem and besiege the city:
and Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
comes against the city and his servants besiege it:
and Yah Yachin the sovereign of Yah Hudah
goes to the sovereign of Babel
— he and his mother and his servants
and his governors and his eunuchs:
and the sovereign of Babel
takes him in the eighth year of his reign:
- 13 and from there
he brings all the treasures of the house of Yah Veh
and the treasures of the house of the sovereign;
and chops all the instruments of gold
Shelomoh sovereign of Yisra El
worked in the manse of Yah Veh
as Yah Veh worded.
- 14 And he exiles all Yeru Shalem
and all the governors and all the mighty of valour
— ten thousand exiles
and all the artificers and locksmiths
— none survive
except the poorest sort of the people of the land.
- 15 And he exiles Yah Yachin to Babel,
and the mother of the sovereign
and the women of the sovereign
and his eunuchs and the mighty of the land:
he walks them from Yeru Shalem to Babel into exile:

2 KINGS 24, 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

16 And all the men of *might* **valour**, even seven thousand,
and *craftsmen* **artificers** and *smiths* **locksmiths** a thousand,
all that were *strong* **mighty** and *apt for* **worked** war,
even them the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
brought captive **exiled** to *Babylon* **Babel**.
17 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
made *Mattaniah* **Mattan Yah** his *father's* **brother** **uncle**
king **reign** in his *stead*,
and *changed* **turned** his name to *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**.
18 **SIDQI YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM**
Zedekiah **Sidqi Yah**
was a **son** of twenty and one years *old*
when he began to reign,
and he reigned eleven years in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name was *Hamutal*,
the daughter of *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** of *Libnah*.
19 And he *did* **worked** that which was *evil*
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
according to all
that *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim** had *done* **worked**.
20 For through the *anger* **wrath** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
so be it *came to pass*
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
until he had cast them out from his *presence* **face**,
that *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah** rebelled
against the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**.

THE FALL OF YERU SHALEM

25 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
in the ninth year of his reign,
in the tenth month, in the tenth *day* of the month,
that *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**,
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel** came,
he, and all his *host* **valiant**,
against *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and *pitched* **encamped** against it;
and they built forts against it round about.
2 And the city was besieged unto the eleventh year
of *king* **Zedekiah** **sovereign** **Sidqi Yah**.
3 And on the ninth *day* of the *fourth* month
the famine prevailed in the city,
and there was no bread for the people of the land.
4 And the city was *broken up* **split**,
and all the men of war *fled* by night
by the way of the *gate* **portal** between two walls,
which is by the *king's* **sovereign's** garden:
(now the *Chaldees* **Kasdiy**
were against the city round about:)
and *the king* went the way toward the plain.
5 And the *army* **valiant** of the *Chaldees* **Kasdiy**
pursued after the *king* **sovereign**,
and overtook him in the plains of *Jericho* **Yericho**:
and all his *army* **valiant** were scattered from him.
6 So they *took* **apprehended** the *king* **sovereign**,
and *brought* **ascended** him up
to the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel** to *Riblah*;
and they *gave* **worded** judgment upon him.
7 And they *slew* **slaughtered**
the sons of *Zedekiah* **before** **Sidqi Yah** in front of his eyes,
and *put out* **blinded** the eyes of *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**,
and bound him with fetters of *brass* **copper**,
and carried him to *Babylon* **Babel**.
8 And in the fifth month, on the seventh *day* of the month,
which is the nineteenth year
of *king* **Nebuchadnezzar** **sovereign** **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
came *Nebuzaradan* **Nebu Zaradan**,
captain of the guard **the great slaughterer**,
a servant of the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
9 And he burnt the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
and all the houses of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and every great *man's* house burnt he with fire.
10 And all the *army* **valiant** of the *Chaldees* **Kasdiy**,
that were with the *captain of the guard* **great slaughterer**,
brake **pulled** down the walls of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
round about.

2 SOVEREIGNS 24, 25656

exeGesés companion BIBLE

16 and all the men of valour seven thousand
and artificers and locksmiths a thousand
— all the mighty who work war — even them
the sovereign of Babel exiles to Babel.
17 And the sovereign of Babel
has Mattan Yah his uncle reign in his stead;
and turns his name to Sidqi Yah.
18 **SIDQI YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM**
Sidqi Yah is a son of twenty—one years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns eleven years in Yeru Shalem:
and the name of his mother,
Hamutal the daughter of Yirme Yah of Libnah.
19 And he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh,
according to all Yah Yaqim worked.
20 For the wrath of Yah Veh
is against Yeru Shalem and against Yah Hudah
until he casts them from his face,
that Sidqi Yah rebels against the sovereign of Babel.

THE FALL OF YERU SHALEM

25 And so be it, in the ninth year of his reign,
in the tenth month, in the tenth of the month,
Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel comes
— he and all his valiant,
against Yeru Shalem and encamps against it
and builds forts all around against it:
2 and besieges the city
3 to the eleventh year of sovereign Sidqi Yah:
and on the ninth of the month
the famine prevails in the city;
and there is no bread for the people of the land:
4 and the city splits
— all the men of war by night
by the way of the portal between two walls
by the garden of the sovereign:
— and the Kasdiy are against the city all around:
and go the way toward the plain.
5 And the valiant of the Kasdiy pursue the sovereign
and overtake him in the plains of Yericho;
and all his valiant scatter from him:
6 and they apprehend the sovereign,
and ascend him to the sovereign of Babel to Riblah;
and they word judgment on him:
7 and they slaughter the sons of Sidqi Yah
in front of his eyes;
and blind the eyes of Sidqi Yah
and bind him with fetters of copper
and carry him to Babel.
8 And in the fifth month, on the seventh of the month
— the nineteenth year
of sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel,
Nebu Zaradan the great slaughterer
a servant of the sovereign of Babel,
comes to Yeru Shalem:
9 and he burns the house of Yah Veh
and the house of the sovereign
and all the houses of Yeru Shalem
and burns every great house with fire:
10 and all the valiant of the Kasdiy
with the great slaughterer
pull down the walls of Yeru Shalem all around.

2 KINGS 25

exeGes ready research BIBLE

- 11 Now the rest of the people
that were **left survived** in the city,
and the fugitives that fell away
to the **king sovereign** of **Babylon Babel**,
with the remnant of the multitude,
did **Nebuzaradan Nebu Zaradan**
the **captain of the guard great slaughterer**
carry away **exile**.
- 12 But the **captain of the guard great slaughterer**
left let survive of the poor of the land
to be vinedressers and **husbandmen plowers**.
- 13 And the pillars of **brass copper**
that were in the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and the bases, and the **brasen copper** sea
that was in the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
did the **Chaldees Kasdiy** break in pieces,
and carried **lifted** the **brass copper** of them
to **Babylon Babel**.
- 14 And the **pots caldrons**, and the shovels,
and the **snuffers tweezers**, and the **spoons bowls**,
and all the **vessels instruments** of **brass copper**
wherewith they ministered, took they away.
- 15 And the **firepans trays**, and the **bowls sprinklers**,
and such **things** as were of gold, in gold,
and of silver, in silver,
the **captain of the guard great slaughterer** took away.
- 16 The two pillars, one sea, and the bases
which **Solomon Shelomoh** had **made worked**
for the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**;
the **brass copper** of all these **vessels instruments**
was **without weight not weighed**.
- 17 The height of the one pillar was eighteen cubits,
and the **chapter cap** upon it was **brass copper**;
and the height of the **chapter cap** three cubits;
and the **wreathen work netting**,
and pomegranates upon the **chapter cap** round about,
all of **brass copper**;
and like unto these
had the second pillar with **wreathen work netting**.
- 18 And the **captain of the guard great slaughterer**
took **Seraiah Sera Yah** the **chief head** priest,
and **Zephaniah Sephan Yah** the second priest,
and the three **keepers guards** of the **door threshold**:
- 19 And out of the city he took an **officer one eunuch**
that was **set overseer** over the men of war,
and five men of them
that were in **saw** the **king's presence sovereign's face**,
which were found in the city,
and the **principal scribe of the governor** of the host,
which **mustered hosted** the people of the land,
and **threescore sixty** men of the people of the land
that were found in the city:
- 20 And **Nebuzaradan Nebu Zaradan**
captain of the **guard slaughterers** took these,
and **brought walked** them
to the **king sovereign** of **Babylon Babel** to Riblah:
And the **king sovereign** of **Babylon Babel** smote them,
and **slew deathified** them at Riblah in the land of Hamath.
So **Judah Yah Hudah** was **carried away exiled**
out of their **land soil**.
- 22 And as for the people
that **remained survived** in the land of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
whom **Nebuchadnezzar Nebukadnets Tsar**
king sovereign of **Babylon** had **left Babel let survive**,
even over them he made **Gedaliah Gedal Yah**
the son of **Ahikam Achiy Qam**, the son of Shaphan,
ruler overseer.
- 23 And when all the **captains governors** of the **armies valiant**,
they and their men,
heard that the **king sovereign** of **Babylon Babel**
had made **Gedaliah governor Gedal Yah overseer**,
there came to **Gedaliah Gedal Yah** to **Mizpah Mispah**,
even **Ishmael Yishma El** the son of **Nethaniah Nethan Yah**,
and **Johanan Yah Hanan** the son of **Careah Qareach**,
and **Seraiah Sera Yah** the son of **Tanhumeth Tanchumeth**
the **Netophathite Netophathiy**,
and **Jaazaniah Yaazan Yah**
the son of a **Maachathite Maachahiy**,
they and their men.

2 SOVEREIGNS 25

exeGes companion BIBLE

- 11 And **Nebu Zaradan** the great slaughterer
exiles the rest of the people in the city who survive
with the fugitives
who fell away to the sovereign of Babel
with the remnant of the multitude:
- 12 and the great slaughterer
had the poor of the land survive
to be vinedressers and plowers.
- 13 And the **Kasdiy** break
the pillars of copper in the house of **Yah Veh**
and the bases
and the copper sea in the house of **Yah Veh**
and lift their copper to Babel:
- 14 and they take away the caldrons and the shovels
and the tweezers and the bowls
and all the instruments of copper
wherewith they ministered:
- 15 and the great slaughterer takes away
the trays and the sprinklers
and such as are of gold in gold
and of silver in silver:
- 16 the two pillars, one sea and the bases
which **Shelomoh** worked for the house of **Yah Veh**;
the copper of all these instruments was not weighed.
- 17 The height of the one pillar, eighteen cubits,
and the cap thereon, copper:
and the height of the cap, three cubits;
and the netting,
and pomegranates on the cap all around
— all of copper:
and like these, the second pillar with netting.
- 18 And the great slaughterer
takes **Sera Yah** the head priest
and **Sephan Yah** the second priest
and the three guards of the threshold:
and from the city he takes one eunuch
— overseer over the men of war
and five of their men
who see the face of the sovereign
whom they find in the city;
and the scribe of the governor of the host
who hosts the people of the land,
and sixty men of the people of the land
whom they find in the city:
- 20 and **Nebu Zaradan** captain of the slaughterers
takes them and walks them
to the sovereign of Babel to Riblah:
and the sovereign of Babel smites them
and deathifies them at Riblah in the land of Hamath:
and he exiles **Yah Hudah** from their soil.
- 22 And as for the people
who survive in the land of **Yah Hudah**,
whom **Nebukadnets Tsar** sovereign of Babel
let survive,
he made **Gedal Yah**
the son of **Achiy Qam** the son of **Shaphan**
overseer over them.
- 23 And all the governors of the valiant
— they and their men
hear that the sovereign of Babel
makes **Gedal Yah** overseer;
and there comes to **Gedal Yah** to **Mispah**
even **Yishma El** the son of **Nethan Yah**
and **Yah Hanan** the son of **Qareach**
and **Sera Yah** the son of **Tanhumeth** the **Netophathiy**
and **Yaazan Yah** the son of a **Maachahiy**
— they and their men:

2 KINGS 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 24 And *Gedaliah* sware **Gedal Yah** oathed to them,
and to their men, and said unto them,
Fear Awe not to be the servants of the *Chaldees Kasdiy*:
dwell settle in the land,
and serve the *king sovereign* of *Babylon Babel*;
and it shall be *well well—pleasing* with you.
- 25 *But And so be* it *came to pass*, in the seventh month,
that *Ishmael Yishma El* the son of *Nethaniah Nethan Yah*,
the son of *Elishama Eli Shama*,
of the seed *royal of the sovereigndom*, came,
and ten men with him,
and smote *Gedaliah Gedal Yah*, that he died,
and the *Jews Yah Hudiym* and the *Chaldees Kasdiym*
that were with him at *Mizpah Mispheh*.
- 26 And all the people, both small and great,
and the *captains governors* of the *armies valiant*,
arose, and came to *Egypt Misrayim*:
for they *were afraid of awed to face* the *Chaldees Kasdiy*.
- 27 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
in the seven and thirtieth year
of the *captivity exile* of *Jehoiachin Yah Yachin*
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
in the twelfth month,
on the seven and twentieth *day* of the month,
that *Evilmerodach Evil Merodach*
king sovereign of *Babylon Babel*
in the year that he began to reign
did lift up the head of *Jehoiachin Yah Yachin*
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*
out of **the house of** prison;
- 28 And he *spake kindly worded good* to him,
and *set gave* his throne
above the throne of the *kings sovereigns*
that were with him in *Babylon Babel*;
- 29 And changed his prison *garments clothes*:
and he did eat bread continually *before him at his face*
all the days of his life.
- 30 And his *allowance ration*
was a continual *allowance ration*
given him of the *king sovereign*,
a daily rate for every day the word day by day,
all the days of his life.

2 SOVEREIGNS 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 24 and Gedal Yah oaths to them and to their men
and says to them,
Awe not to be the servants of the Kasdiy:
settle in the land and serve the sovereign of Babel;
and it is well—pleasing with you.
- 25 And so be it, in the seventh month,
Yishma El the son of Nethan Yah the son of Eli Shama
of the seed of the sovereigndom comes
— and ten men with him
and smites Gedal Yah so that he dies
— he and the Yah Hudiym and the Kasdiym with him
at Mispheh:
- 26 and all the people — both small and great
and the governors of the valiant
rise and come to Misrayim:
for they awe to face the Kasdiy.
- 27 And so be it,
in the thirty—seventh year
of the exile of Yah Yachin sovereign of Yah Hudah,
in the twelfth month,
on the twenty—seventh of the month,
Evil Merodach sovereign of Babel
in the year he begins to reign
lifts the head of Yah Yachin sovereign of Yah Hudah
from the house of prison;
- 28 and he words good to him;
and gives his throne
above the throne of the sovereigns with him in Babel;
- 29 and changes his prison clothes:
and he eats bread continually at his face
all the days of his life:
- 30 and his ration is a continual ration
given him by the sovereign
— the day by day word, all the days of his life.

1 CHRONICLES 1

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

GENEALOGIES: GENEALOGY OF ADAM

1 Adam, Sheth, Enosh,
2 *Kenan Qeynan*, *Mahalaleel Ma Halal El*, *Jered Yered*,
3 Hanoch, *Methuseelah Methu Shelach*,
4 *Lamech Lemech*,
Noah Noach, Shem, Ham, and *Japheth Yepheth*.

GENEALOGY OF YEPHETH

5 The sons of *Japheth Yepheth*;
Gomer, and Magog, and *Madai Maday*, and *Javan Yavan*,
and Tubal, and Meshech, and Tiras.
6 And the sons of Gomer;
Ashchenaz Ashkenaz,
and *Riphath Diphath*, and Togarmah.
7 And the sons of *Javan Yavan*;
Elishah Eli Shah, and Tarshish, *Kittim Kittiy*, and Dodanim.

GENEALOGY OF HAM

8 The sons of Ham;
Cush Kush, and *Misraim Misrayim*,
Put, and *Canaan Kenaan*.
9 And the sons of *Cush Kush*;
Seba, and Havilah, and Sabta,
and Raamah, and Sabtecha.
And the sons of Raamah;
Sheba, and Dedan.
10 And *Cush* begat *Kush* birthed Nimrod:
he began to be mighty upon the earth.
11 And *Misraim* begat *Ludim Misrayim* birthed *Ludiyim*,
and Anamim, and Lehabim, and *Naphtuhim Naphtuchim*,
12 And *Pathrusim Pathrosiym*, and *Casluhim Kasluhim*,
(of whom came went the *Philistines Peleshethiym*,)
and *Caphthorim Kaphtorim*.
13 And *Canaan Kenaan*
begat Zidon birthed *Sidon* his firstborn firstbirthed, and Heth,
14 The *Jebusite Yebusiy* also,
and the *Amorite Emoriy*, and the *Girgashite Girgashiy*,
15 And the *Hivite Hivviy*, and the *Arkite Arqiy*,
and the *Sinite Siniy*,
16 And the *Arvadite Arvadiy*, and the *Zemarite Semariy*,
and the *Hamathite Hamathiy*.

GENEALOGY OF SHEM

17 The sons of Shem;
Elam, and *Asshur Ashshur*, and *Arphaxad Arpachshad*,
and Lud, and Aram, and *Uz Us*, and Hul, and Gether,
and *Meshech Meshek*.
18 And *Arphaxad* begat *Shelah Arpachshad* birthed *Shelach*,
and *Shelah* begat *Eber Shelach* birthed *Heber*.
19 And unto *Eber Heber* were born birthed two sons:
the name of the one was Peleg;
because in his days the earth was divided split:
and his brother's name was *Joktan Yoqtan*.
20 And *Joktan* begat *Yoqtan* birthed Almodad, and Sheleph
and *Hazarmaveth Hasar Maveth*, and *Jerah Yerach*,
21 And *Hadoram* also, and *Uzal*, and *Diklah Diqlah*,
22 And *Ebal*, and *Abimael Abi Mael*, and Sheba,
23 And *Ophir*, and *Havilah*, and *Jobab Yobab*.
All these were the sons of *Joktan Yoqtan*.
24 Shem, *Arphaxad Arpachshad*, *Shelah Shelach*,
25 *Eber Heber*, Peleg, Reu,
26 Serug, Nahor, *Terah Terach*,
27 Abram; the same is Abraham.

GENEALOGY OF ABRAHAM

28 The sons of Abraham;
Isaac Yischaq, and *Ishmael Yishma El*.
29 These are their generations:
The firstborn firstbirthed of *Ishmael Yishma El*,
Nebaioth Nebayoth;
then *Kedar Qedar*, and *Adbeel Adbe El*, and Mibsam,
30 *Mishma*, and *Dumah*, *Massa*, *Hadad*, and *Tema*,
31 *Jetur Yetur*, *Naphish*, and *Kedemah Qedemah*.
These are the sons of *Ishmael Yishma El*.

1 CHRONICLES 1

exeGeses companion BIBLE

GENEALOGIES: GENEALOGY OF ADAM

1 Adam, Sheth, Enosh,
2 Qeynan, Ma Halal El, Yered,
3 Hanoch, Methu Shelach, Lemech,
4 Noach, Shem, Ham, and Yepheth.

GENEALOGY OF YEPHETH

5 The sons of Yepheth:
Gomer and Magog and Maday and Yavan
and Tubal and Meshech and Tiras.
6 And the sons of Gomer:
Ashkenaz and Diphath and Togarmah.
7 And the sons of Yavan:
Eli Shah and Tarshish, Kittiy and Dodanim.

GENEALOGY OF HAM

8 The sons of Ham:
Kus and Misrayim, Put and Kenaan.
9 And the sons of Kush:
Seba and Havilah and Sabta
and Raamah and Sabtecha.
And the sons of Raamah:
Sheba and Dedan.
10 And Kush births Nimrod:
he begins to be mighty upon the earth.
11 And Misrayim births Ludiyim
and Anamim and Lehabim and Naphtuchim
and Pathrosiym and Kasluhim
— of whom come the Peleshethiym,
and Kaphtorim.

13 And Kenaan births Sidon his firstbirthed and Heth;
14 and the Yebusiy and the Emoriy and the Girgashiy
15 and the Hivviy and the Arqiy and the Siniy
16 and the Arvadiy and the Semariy
and the Hamathiy.

GENEALOGY OF SHEM

17 The sons of Shem:
Elam and Ashshur and Arpachshad and Lud
and Aram and Us and Hul and Gether and Meshek.

18 And Arpachshad births Shelach,
and Shelach births Heber.

19 And two sons are birthed to Heber:
the name of the one, Peleg
— because in his days the earth split:
and the name of his brother, Yoqtan.

20 And Yoqtan births Almodad and Sheleph
and Hasar Maveth and Yerach
and Hadoram and Uzal and Diqlah
and Ebal and Abi Mael and Sheba
and Ophir and Havilah and Yobab.
— all these are sons of Yoqtan.

24 Shem, Arpachshad, Shelach,
25 Heber, Peleg, Reu,
26 Serug, Nahor, Terach,
27 Abram — he is Abraham.

GENEALOGY OF ABRAHAM

28 The sons of Abraham:
Yischaq and Yishma El.

29 These are their generations:
the firstbirthed of Yishma El, Nebayoth;
then Qedar and Adbe El and Mibsam
30 Mishma and Dumah, Massa, Hadad and Tema
31 Yetur, Naphish and Qedemah
— these are the sons of Yishma El.

1 CHRONICLES 1

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

32 Now the sons of *Keturah* **Qeturah**,
Abraham's concubine:
she bare **birthed** Zimran, and *Jokshan* **Yoqshan**, and Medan,
and *Midian* **Midyan**, and *Ishbak* **Yishbaq**,
and *Shuah* **Shuach**.
And the sons of *Jokshan* **Yoqshan**;
Sheba, and Dedan.

33 And the sons of *Midian* **Midyan**;
Ephah, and Epher, and Hanoah,
and *Abida* **Abi Dah**, and Eldaah.

34 All these are the sons of *Keturah* **Qeturah**.
And Abraham *begat Isaac* **birthed Yischaq**.
The sons of *Isaac* **Yischaq**;
Esau **Esav** and *Israel* **Yisra El**.

35 The sons of *Esau* **Esav**;
Eliphaz **Eli Phaz**, *Reuel* **Reu El**, and *Jeush* **Yeush**,
and *Jaalam* **Yalam**, and *Korah* **Qorach**.

36 The sons of *Eliphaz* **Eli Phaz**;
Teman, and Omar, *Zephi* **Sephi**, and Gatam,
Kenaz **Qenaz**, and Timna, and *Amalek* **Amaleq**.

37 The sons of *Reuel* **Reu El**;
Nahath **Nachath**, *Zerach* **Zerach**, Shammah, and Mizzah.

38 And the sons of Seir;
Lotan, and Shobal, and *Zibeon* **Sibon**, and Anah,
and Dishon, and *Ezar* **Esar**, and Dishan.

39 And the sons of Lotan;
Hori, and Homam:
and Timna was Lotan's sister.

40 The sons of Shobal;
Alian **Alyan**, and *Manahath* **Manachath**, and Ebal,
Shephi, and Onam.
and the sons of *Zibeon* **Sibon**;
Aiah **Ayah**, and Anah.

41 The sons of Anah;
Dishon.
And the sons of Dishon;
Amram **Hamram**, and Eshban,
and *Ithran* **Yithran**, and *Cheran* **Keran**.

42 The sons of *Ezar* **Esar**;
Bilhan, and Zavan, and *Jakan* **Yaaqan**.
The sons of Dishan;
Uz **Us**, and Aran.

GENEALOGY OF THE SOVEREIGNS OF EDMO

43 Now these are the *kings* **sovereigns**
that reigned in the land of Edom
before at the face of any king **sovereign that** reigned
over the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**;
Bela the son of Beor:
and the name of his city was Dinhabah.

44 And when Bela *was dead* **died**,
Jobab **Yobab** the son of *Zerach* **Zerach** of Bozrah
reigned in his stead.

45 And when *Jobab was dead* **Yobab died**,
Husham of the land of the *Temanites* **Temaniy**
reigned in his stead.

46 And when Husham *was dead* **died**,
Hadad the son of Bedad,
which smote *Midian* **Midyan** in the field of Moab,
reigned in his stead:
and the name of his city was Avith.

47 And when Hadad *was dead* **died**,
Samlah of *Masrekah* **Masreqah** reigned in his stead.

48 And when Samlah *was dead* **died**,
Shaul of *Rehoboth* **Rechovoth** by the river
reigned in his stead.

49 And when Shaul *was dead* **died**,
Baalhanan **Baal Hanan** the son of Achbor
reigned in his stead.

1 CHRONICLES 1

exeGeses companion BIBLE

32 And the sons of Qeturah, concubine of Abraham:
she births Zimran and Yoqshan and Medan
and Midyan and Yishbaq and Shuach.

And the sons of Yoqshan:
Sheba and Dedan.

33 And the sons of Midyan:
Ephah and Epher and Hanoah
and Abi Dah and Eldaah.
— all these are the sons of Qeturah.

34 And Abraham births Yischaq.

The sons of Yischaq:
Esav and Yisra El.

35 The sons of Esav:
Eli Phaz, Reu El and Yeush and Yalam and Qorach.

36 The sons of Eli Phaz:
Teman and Omar Sephi and Gatam
Qenaz and Timna and Amaleq.

37 The sons of Reu El:
Nachath, Zerach, Shammah and Mizzah.

38 And the sons of Seir:
Lotan and Shobal and Sibon and Anah
and Dishon and Esar and Dishan.

39 And the sons of Lotan:
Hori and Homam
— and Timna is sister of Lotan.

40 The sons of Shobal
Alyan and Manachath and Ebal, Shephi and Onam.

And the sons of Sibon:
Ayah and Anah.

41 The sons of Anah:
Dishon.

And the sons of Dishon:
Hamram and Eshban and Yithran and Keran.

42 The sons of Esar:
Bilhan and Zavan and Yaaqan.

The sons of Dishan:
Us and Aran.

GENEALOGY OF THE SOVEREIGNS OF EDMO

43 And these are the sovereigns
who reigned in the land of Edom
at the face of any sovereign
who reigned over the sons of Yisra El:
Bela the son of Beor;
and the name of his city, Dinhabah.

44 And Bela dies
and Yobab the son of Zerach of Bozrah
reigns in his stead:
and Yobab dies

45 and Husham of the land of the Temaniy
reigns in his stead:
and Husham dies

46 and Hadad the son of Bedad
who smote Midyan in the field of Moab
reigns in his stead
— and the name of his city, Avith:

47 and Hadad dies
and Samlah of Masreqah reigns in his stead:

48 and Samlah dies
and Shaul of Rechovoth by the river
reigns in his stead:
and Shaul dies

49 and Baal Hanan the son of Achbor
reigns in his stead:

1 CHRONICLES 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

50 And when *Baalhanan* was dead **Baal Hanan** died,
Hadad reigned in his stead:
and the name of his city was *Pai*;
and his wife's **woman's** name was *Mehetabel* **Mehetab El**,
the daughter of *Matred*,
the daughter of *Mezahab* **Me Zahab**.
51 Hadad died also.
GENEALOGY OF THE CHILIARCHS OF EDOM
And the *dukes* **chiliarchs** of Edom were;
duke *Timnah* **chiliarch Timna**,
duke *Aliah* **chiliarch Alvah**,
duke *Jetheth* **chiliarch Yetheth**,
52 Duke *Aholibamah* **chiliarch Oholi Bamah**,
duke **chiliarch** Elah, duke **chiliarch** Pinon,
53 Duke *Kenaz* **chiliarch Qenaz**,
duke **chiliarch** Teman, duke *Mibzar* **chiliarch Mibsar**,
54 Duke *Magdiel* **chiliarch Magdi El**, duke **chiliarch** Iram.
These are the *dukes* **chiliarchs** of Edom.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

2 These are the sons of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Reuben **Reu Ben**, *Simeon* **Shimon**, *Levi*,
and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, *Issachar* **Yissachar**, and *Zebulun*,
2 *Dan*, *Joseph* **Yoseph**, and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
Naphtali, *Gad*, and *Asher*.
3 The sons of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
Er, and Onan, and Shelah:
which three were *born* **birthed** unto him
of the daughter of *Shua* **Bath Shua**
the *Canaanitess* **Kenaaniyth**.
And Er, the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
was evil in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
and he *slew* **deathified** him.
4 And Tamar his daughter in law *bare* **birthed** him
Pharez **Peres** and *Zerah* **Zerach**.
All the sons of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** were five.
5 The sons of *Pharez* **Peres**;
Hezron **Hesron**, and *Hamul*.
6 And the sons of *Zerah* **Zerach**;
Zimri, and *Ethan*, and *Heman*,
and *Calcol* **Kalkol**, and *Dara*:
five of them in all.
7 And the sons of *Carmi* **Karmi**;
Achar, the troubler of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
who *transgressed* **treasoned** in the *thing* **accursed** **devoted**.
8 And the sons of *Ethan*;
Azariah **Azar Yah**.
9 The sons also of *Hezron* **Hesron**,
that were *born* **birthed** unto him;
Jerahmeel **Yerachme El**, and *Ram*, and *Chelubai* **Kelubay**.
10 And *Ram* *begat* **Amminadab** **birthed Ammi Nadab**;
and *Amminadab* *begat* **Ammi Nadab** **birthed** *Nahshon*,
prince **hierarch** of the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
11 And *Nahshon* *begat* **birthed** *Salma*,
and *Salma* *begat* **birthed** *Boaz*,
12 And *Boaz* *begat* **birthed** *Obed*,
and *Obed* *begat* **birthed** *Jesse* **Yishay**,
13 And *Jesse* *begat* **Yishay** **birthed** his *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
Eliab **Eli Ab**,
and *Abinadab* **Abi Nadab** the second,
and *Shimma* **Shimah** the third,
14 *Nethaneel* **Nethan El** the fourth,
Raddai **Radday** the fifth,
15 *Ozem* **Osem** the sixth,
David the seventh:
16 Whose sisters were *Zeruiah* **Seruyah**,
and *Abigail* **Abi Gail**.
And the sons of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah**;
Abishai **Abi Shai**, and *Joab* **Yah Ab**,
and *Asahel* **Asa El**, three.
17 And *Abigail* *bare* **Abi Gail** **birthed** *Amasa*:
and the father of *Amasa*
was *Jether* **Yether** the *Ishmaelite* **Yishma Eliy**.
18 And *Caleb* **Kaleb** the son of *Hezron* **Hesron**
begat **children** **birthed** of *Azubah* his *wife* **woman**,
and of *Jerioth* **Yerioth**:
her sons are these;
Jesher **Yesher**, and *Shobab*, and *Ardon*.
19 And when *Azubah* was dead **died**,

1 CHRONICLES 1, 2 661

exeGeses companion BIBLE

50 and *Baal Hanan* dies
and Hadad reigns in his stead
— and the name of his city, *Pai*;
and the name of his woman,
Mehetab El
the daughter of *Matred* the daughter of *Me Zahab*.
51 Hadad also dies.
GENEALOGY OF THE CHILIARCHS OF EDOM
And the chiliarchs of Edom:
chiliarch *Timna*, chiliarch *Alvah*, chiliarch *Yetheth*,
chiliarch *Oholi Bamah*,
52 chiliarch *Elah*, chiliarch *Pinon*,
53 chiliarch *Qenaz*, chiliarch *Teman*,
chiliarch *Mibsar*,
54 chiliarch *Magdi El*, chiliarch *Iram*;
these, chiliarchs of Edom.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL

2 These, the sons of *Yisra El*:
Reu Ben, *Shimon*, *Levi*, and *Yah Hudah*,
Yissachar and *Zebulun*,
2 *Dan*, *Yoseph* and *Ben Yamin*,
Naphtali, *Gad* and *Asher*.
3 The sons of *Yah Hudah*:
Er and Onan and Shelah
— three birthed to him of *Bath Shua* the *Kenaaniyth*;
and Er, the firstbirthed of *Yah Hudah*
is evil in the eyes of *Yah Veh*;
and he deathifies him;
4 and Tamar his daughter in law births him
Peres and *Zerach*.
— all the sons of *Yah Hudah*, five.
5 The sons of *Peres*:
Hesron and *Hamul*.
6 And the sons of *Zerach*:
Zimri and *Ethan* and *Heman* and *Kalkol* and *Dara*
— five in all.
7 And the sons of *Karmi*:
Achar, the troubler of *Yisra El*
who treasoned in the devoted.
8 And the sons of *Ethan*:
Azar Yah.
9 And the sons birthed of *Hesron*:
Yerachme El and *Ram* and *Kelubay*.
10 And *Ram* births *Ammi Nadab*;
and *Ammi Nadab* births *Nahshon*
hierarch of the sons of *Yah Hudah*;
and *Nahshon* births *Salma*;
and *Salma* births *Boaz*;
11 and *Boaz* births *Obed*;
and *Obed* births *Yishay*;
12 and *Yishay* births his firstbirthed *Eli Ab*
and *Abi Nadab* the second
and *Shimah* the third
13 *Nethan El* the fourth
Radday the fifth
14 *Osem* the sixth
15 *David* the seventh
16 — their sisters, *Seruyah* and *Abi Gail*.
And the sons of *Seruyah*:
Abi Shai and *Yah Ab* and *Asa El* — three.
17 And *Abi Gail* births *Amasa*:
and the father of *Amasa*, *Yether* the *Yishma Eliy*.
18 And *Kaleb* the son of *Hesron*
births of *Azubah* his woman, *Issah* and *Yerioth*;
and these her sons:
Yesher and *Shobab* and *Ardon*.
19 And *Azubah* dies

1 CHRONICLES 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

Caleb Kaleb took unto him Ephrath Ephratha,
which bare birthed him Hur.
20 And Hur begat birthed Uri,
and Uri begat Bezaleel birthed Besal El.
21 And afterward Hezron Hesron
went in to the daughter
of Machir the father of Gilead Gilad,
whom he married and he took her
when he was threescore a son of sixty years old;
and she bare birthed him Segub.
22 And Segub begat Jair birthed Yair,
who had three and twenty cities
in the land of Gilead Gilad.
23 And he took Geshur, and Aram,
with the towns living areas of Jair Yair, from them,
with Kenath Qenath, and the towns daughters thereof,
even threescore sixty cities.
All these belonged to of the sons of Machir
the father of Gilead Gilad.
24 And after that Hezron was dead Hesron died
in Calebephatah Kaleb Ephrath,
then Abiah Hezron's wife Abi Yah Hesron's woman
bare birthed him Ashur Ashchur the father of Tekoa Teqoha.
25 And the sons of Jerahmeel Yerachme El
the firstborn firstbirthed of Hezron Hesron were,
Ram the firstborn firstbirthed, and Bunah, and Oren,
and Ozem Osem, and Ahijah Achiy Yah.
26 Jerahmeel Yerachme El had also another wife woman,
whose name was Atarah; she was the mother of Onam.
27 And the sons of Ram
the firstborn firstbirthed of Jerahmeel Yerachme El were,
Maaz Maas, and Jamin Yamin, and Eker Eger.
28 And the sons of Onam were,
Shammai Shammay, and Jada Yada.
And the sons of Shammai Shammay;
Nadab and Abishur Abi Shur.
29 And the name of the wife woman of Abishur Abi Shur
was Abihail Abi Hail,
and she bare birthed him Ahban Ach Ban, and Molid.
30 And the sons of Nadab;
Seled, and Appaim Appayim:
but Seled died without children sons.
31 And the sons of Appaim Appayim;
Ishi Yishi.
And the sons of Ishi Yishi;
Sheshan.
And the children sons of Sheshan;
Ahlai Achiy Lay.
32 And the sons of Jada Yada
the brother of Shammai Shammay;
Jether Yether, and Jonathan Yah Nathan:
and Jether Yether died without children sons.
33 And the sons of Jonathan Yah Nathan;
Peleth, and Zaza.
These were the sons of Jerahmeel Yerachme El.
34 Now Sheshan had no sons, but daughters.
And Sheshan had a servant, an Egyptian a Misrayim,
whose name was Jarha Yarcha.
35 And Sheshan gave his daughter
to Jarha Yarcha his servant to wife woman;
and she bare birthed him Attai Attay.
36 And Attai begat Attay birthed Nathan,
and Nathan begat birthed Zabad,
37 And Zabad begat birthed Ephlal,
and Ephlal begat birthed Obed,
38 And Obed begat Jehu birthed Yah Hu,
and Jehu Yah Hu begat Azariah birthed Azar Yah,
39 And Azariah Azar Yah begat Helez birthed Heles,

1 CHRONICLES 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and Kaleb takes to him Ephratha,
who births him Hur.
20 And Hur births Uri, and Uri births Besal El.
21 And afterward Hesron goes in
to the daughter of Machir the father of Gilad;
and he takes her — he, a son of sixty years;
and she births him Segub;
22 and Segub births Yair
who has twenty—three cities in the land of Gilad.
23 And he takes Geshur and Aram
with the living areas of Yair, from them;
with Qenath, and the daughters thereof
— sixty cities.
All these are the sons of Machir the father of Gilad.
24 And after Hesron dies in Kaleb Ephrath,
Abi Yah the woman of Hesron
births him Ashchur the father of Teqoha.
25 And the sons of Yerachme El
the firstbirthed of Hesron:
Ram the firstbirthed and Bunah and Oren
and Osem and Achiy Yah.
26 Yerachme El has another woman;
her name, Atarah; she is the mother of Onam.
27 And the sons of Ram
the firstbirthed of Yerachme El:
Maas and Yamin and Eger.
28 And the sons of Onam:
Shammay and Yada.
And the sons of Shammay:
Nadab and Abi Shur.
29 And the name of the woman of Abi Shur,
Abi Hail;
and she births him Ach Ban and Molid.
30 And the sons of Nadab:
Seled and Appayim;
and Seled dies without sons.
31 And the sons of Appayim:
Yishi.
And the sons of Yishi:
Sheshan.
And the sons of Sheshan:
Achiy Lay.
32 And the sons of Yada the brother of Shammay:
Yether and Yah Nathan;
and Yether dies without sons.
33 And the sons of Yah Nathan:
Peleth and Zaza.
— these are the sons of Yerachme El.
34 And Sheshan has no sons, but daughters:
and Sheshan has a servant — a Misrayim;
his name, Yarcha.
35 And Sheshan gives his daughter
to Yarcha his servant to woman;
and she births him Attay
and Attay births Nathan
and Nathan births Zabad
and Zabad births Ephlal
and Ephlal births Obed
38 and Obed births Yah Hu
and Yah Hu births Azar Yah
and Azar Yah births Heles

1 CHRONICLES 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and Helez **Heles** begat Eleasah **birthed** El Asah,
 40 And Eleasah **El Asah** begat Sisamai **birthed** Sismay,
 and Sisamai **Sismay** begat **birthed** Shallum,
 41 And Shallum begat Jekamiah **birthed** Yeقام Yah,
 and Jekamiah **Yeقام Yah** begat Elishama **birthed** Eli Shama.
 42 Now the sons of Caleb **Kaleb**
 the brother of Jerahmeel **Yerachme El** were,
 43 Mesha his *firstborn* **firstbirthed**, which was the father of Ziph;
 and the sons of Mareshah the father of Hebron.
 And the sons of Hebron;
 Korah **Qorach**, and Tappuah **Tappuach**,
 and Rekem **Reqem**, and Shema.
 44 And Shema begat Raham **birthed** Racham,
 the father of Jorkoam **Yorqe Am**:
 and Rekem **Reqem** begat Shammai **birthed** Shammay.
 45 And the son of Shammai **Shammay** was Maon:
 and Maon was the father of Bethzur **Beth Sur**.
 46 And Ephah, Caleb's **Kaleb's** concubine,
 bare **birthed** Haran, and Moza **Mosa**, and Gazez:
 and Haran begat **birthed** Gazez.
 47 And the sons of Jhdai **Yah Dai**;
 Regem, and Jotham **Yah Tham**, and Gesham **Geshan**,
 and Pelet, and Ephah, and Shaaph.
 48 Maachah, Caleb's **Kaleb's** concubine,
 bare **birthed** Sheber, and Tirhanah **Tirchanah**.
 49 She bare **birthed** also Shaaph the father of Madmannah,
 Sheva the father of Machbenah,
 and the father of Gibeá **Giba**:
 and the daughter of Caleb **Kaleb** was Achsah.
 50 These were the sons of Caleb **Kaleb** the son of Hur,
 the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of Ephrathá **Ephratha**;
 Shobal the father of Kirjathjearim **Qiryath Arim**.
 51 Salma the father of Bethlehem **Beth Lechem**,
 Hareph the father of Bethgader **Beth Gader**.
 52 And Shobal the father of Kirjathjearim **Qiryath Arim**
 had sons;
 Haroeh **Roeh**,
 and half of the Manahethites **Hatzi Ham Menuchoth**.
 53 And the families of Kirjathjearim **Qiryath Arim**;
 the Ithrites **Yetheriy**, and the Puhites **Puthiy**,
 and the Shumathites **Shumahiy**,
 and the Mishraites **Mishraiy**;
 of them came went the Zareathites **Sorahiy**,
 and the Eshtaulites **Eshtaoliy**,
 54 The sons of Salma;
 Bethlehem **Beth Lechem**,
 and the Netophathites **Netophathiy**,
 Ataroth **Atroth**, the house of Joab **Yah Ab**,
 and half of the Manahethites **Hasi Ham Menuchiy**,
 the Zorites **Sorahiy**.
 55 And the families of the scribes
 which dwelt **settled** at Jabez **Yabes**;
 the Tirathites **Tirahiy**, the Shimeathites **Shimahiy**,
 and Suchathites **Suchahiy**.
 These are the Kenites **Qayiniy**
 that came of Hemath **Hammath**,
 the father of the house of Rechab.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF DAVID

3 Now these were the sons of David,
 which were born **birthed** unto him in Hebron;
 the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** Amnon,
 of Ahinoam **Achiy Noam** the Jezreelitess **Yizre Eliyth**;
 the second, Daniel **Dani El**,
 of Abigail **Abi Gail** the Carmelitess **Karmeliyth**:
 2 The third, Absalom **Abi Shalom**
 the son of Maachah
 the daughter of Talmá **Talmay king** sovereign of Geshur;
 the fourth, Adonijah **Adoni Yah** the son of Haggith:
 3 The fifth, Shephatiah **Shaphat Yah** of Abital **Abi Tal**:
 the sixth, Ithream **Yithre Am** by Eglah his wife woman.
 4 These six were born **birthed** unto him in Hebron;
 and there he reigned seven years and six months:
 and in Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**
 he reigned thirty and three years.
 5 And these were born **birthed** unto him
 in Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**;
 Shimea **Shimah**, and Shobab, and Nathan,
 and Solomon **Shelomoh**, four,
 of Bathshua **Bath Shua** the daughter of Ammiel **Ammi El**:

1 CHRONICLES 2, 3 663

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and Heles births El Asah
 40 and El Asah births Sismay
 and Sismay births Shallum
 41 and Shallum births Yeقام Yah
 and Yeقام Yah births Eli Shama.
 42 And the sons of Kaleb the brother of Yerachme El:
 Mesha his firstbirthed, the father of Ziph;
 and the sons of Mareshah, the father of Hebron.
 43 And the sons of Hebron:
 Qorach and Tappuach and Reqem and Shema.
 44 And Shema births Racham the father of Yorqe Am
 and Reqem births Shammay.
 45 And the son of Shammay, Maon:
 and Maon is the father of Beth Sur.
 46 And Ephah the concubine of Kaleb
 births Haran and Mosa and Gazez;
 and Haran births Gazez.
 47 And the sons of Yah Dai:
 Regem and Yah Tham and Geshan
 and Pelet and Ephah and Shaaph.
 48 Maachah the concubine of Kaleb
 births Sheber and Tirchanah;
 49 she also births Shaaph the father of Madmannah
 Sheva the father of Machbenah
 and the father of Giba:
 and Achsah, the daughter of Kaleb.
 50 These are the sons of Kaleb
 the son of Hur the firstbirthed of Ephrathá:
 Shobal the father of Qiryath Arim
 Salma the father of Beth Lechem
 Hareph the father of Beth Gader.
 51 And these are the sons of Shobal
 the father of Qiryath Arim:
 Roeh and Hatzi Ham Menuchoth.
 52 And the families of Qiryath Arim:
 the Yetheriy and the Puthiy
 and the Shumahiy and the Mishraiy;
 of whom come the Sorahiy and the Eshtaoliy.
 53 The sons of Salma:
 Beth Lechem and the Netophathiy
 Atroth, the house of Yah Ab
 and Hasi Ham Menuchiy the Sorahiy.
 54 And the families of the scribes who settle at Yabes:
 Tirahiy, Shimahiy, Suchahiy.
 — these are the Qayiniy who come of Hammath
 the father of the house of Rechab.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF DAVID

3 And these are the sons of David
 — birthed to him in Hebron:
 the firstbirthed,
 Amnon of Achiy Noam the Yizre Eliyth;
 2 the second, Dani El of Abi Gail the Karmeliyth;
 the third, Abi Shalom the son of Maachah
 the daughter of Talmay sovereign of Geshur;
 the fourth, Adoni Yah the son of Haggith;
 3 the fifth, Shaphat Yah of Abi Tal;
 the sixth, Yithre Am of his woman Eglah
 4 — these six birthed to him in Hebron;
 and he reigns there seven years and six months:
 and he reigns thirty—three years in Yeru Shalem.
 5 And these are birthed to him in Yeru Shalem:
 Shimah and Shobab and Nathan and Shelomoh
 — four of Bath Shua the daughter of Ammi El:

1 CHRONICLES 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

6 *Ibhar* **Yibchar** also, and *Elishama* **Eli Shama**,
and *Eliphelet* **Eli Phelet**,
7 And *Nogah*, and *Nepheg*, and *Japhia* **Yaphia**,
8 And *Elishama* **Eli Shama**, and *Eliada* **Eli Ada**,
and *Eliphelet* **Eli Phelet**, nine.
9 These were all the sons of David,
beside the sons of the concubines, and Tamar their sister.
GENEALOGY OF THE SOVEREIGNS OF YAH HUDAH
10 And *Solomon's* **Shelomoh's** son
was *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**,
Abia **Abi Yah** his son, *Asa* his son,
Jehoshaphat **Yah Shaphat** his son,
11 *Joram* **Yah Ram** his son,
Ahaziah **Achaz Yah** his son, *Joash* **Yah Ash** his son,
12 *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah** his son,
Azariah **Azar Yah** his son, *Jotham* **Yah Tham** his son,
13 *Ahaz* **Achaz** his son,
Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah** his son,
Manasseh **Menash Sheh** his son,
14 *Amon* his son,
Josiah **Yoshi Yah** his son.
15 And the sons of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah** were,
the firstborn **firstbirthed** *Johanan* **Yah Hanan**,
the second *Jehoiakim* **Yah Aqim**,
the third *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**,
the fourth *Shallum*.
16 And the sons of *Jehoiakim* **Yah Aqim**:
Jeconiah **Yechon Yah** his son,
Zedekiah **Sidqi Yah** his son.
17 And the sons of *Jeconiah* **Yechon Yah**;
Assir, *Salathiel* **Shealti El** his son,
18 *Malchiram* **Malki Ram** also, and *Pedaiah* **Pedah Yah**,
and *Shenazar* **Shenassar**, *Jecamiah* **Yeqam Yah**,
Hoshama **Yah Shama**, and *Nedabiah* **Nedab Yah**.
19 And the sons of *Pedaiah* **Pedah Yah** were,
Zerubbabel **Zerub Babel**, and *Shimei* **Shimi**;
and the sons of *Zerubbabel* **Zerub Babel**;
Meshullam, and *Haniah* **Hanan Yah**,
and *Shelomith* their sister:
20 And *Hashubah*, and *Ohel*, and *Berechiah* **Berech Yah**,
and *Hasadiah* **Hasad Yah**, *Jushabhesed* **Yushab Hesed**, five.
21 And the sons of *Haniah* **Hanan Yah**;
Pelathiah **Pelat Yah**, and *Jesaiah* **Yesha Yah**:
the sons of *Rephaiah* **Repha Yah**,
the sons of *Arnan*,
the sons of *Obadiah* **Obad Yah**,
the sons of *Shechaniah* **Shechan Yah**.
22 And the sons of *Shechaniah* **Shechan Yah**;
Shemaiah **Shema Yah**:
and the sons of *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**;
Hattush, and *Igeal* **Yigal**, and *Bariah* **Bariach**,
and *Neariah* **Near Yah**, and *Shaphat*, six.
23 And the sons of *Neariah* **Near Yah**;
Elioenai **El Ya Enay**, and *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**,
and *Azrikam* **Ezri Qam**, three.
24 And the sons of *Elioenai* **El Ya Enay** were,
Hodaiah **Hodav Yah**, and *Eliashib* **El Yashib**,
and *Pelaiah* **Pela Yah**, and *Akkub* **Aqqub**,
and *Johanan* **Yah Hanan**, and *Dalaiah* **Dela Yah**,
and *Anani*, seven.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF YAH HUDAH

4 The sons of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
Pharez **Peres**, *Hezron* **Hesron**,
and *Carmi* **Karmi**, and *Hur*, and *Shobal*.
2 And *Reaiah* **Rea Yah** the son of *Shobal*
begat *Jahath* **birthed Yachath**;
and *Jahath* **Yachath**
begat *Ahumai* **birthed Ach Umay**, and *Lahad*.
These are the families of the *Zorathites* **Sorahiy**.
3 And these were of the father of *Etam*;
Jezreel **Yizre El**, and *Ishma* **Yishma**, and *Idbash* **Yidbash**:
and the name of their sister was *Hazelelponi* **Selel Poni**:
4 And *Penuel* **Penu El** the father of *Gedor*,
and *Ezer* the father of *Hushah*.
These are the sons of *Hur*,
the firstborn **firstbirthed** of *Ephrathah* **Ephratha**,
the father of *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**.
5 And *Ashur* **Ashchur** the father of *Tekoa* **Teqoha**

1 CHRONICLES 3, 4 664

exeGeses companion BIBLE

6 also *Yibchar* and *Eli Shama* and *Eli Phelet*
7 and *Nogah* and *Nepheg* and *Yaphia*
8 and *Eli Shama* and *Eli Ada* and *Eli Phelet* — nine.
9 These are all the sons of David
beside the sons of the concubines,
and Tamar their sister.
GENEALOGY OF THE SOVEREIGNS OF YAH HUDAH
10 And the son of *Shelomoh* is *Rechab Am*,
Abi Yah his son,
Asa his son, *Yah Shaphat* his son,
11 *Yah Ram* his son,
Achaz Yah his son, *Yah Ash* his son,
12 *Amaz Yah* his son,
Azar Yah his son, *Yah Tham* his son,
13 *Achaz* his son,
Yechizqi Yah his son, *Menash Sheh* his son,
14 *Amon* his son, *Yoshi Yah* his son.
15 And the sons of *Yoshi Yah*:
the firstbirthed, *Yah Hanan*,
the second, *Yah Aqim*,
the third, *Sidqi Yah*,
the fourth, *Shallum*.
16 And the sons of *Yah Aqim*:
Yechon Yah his son, *Sidqi Yah* his son.
17 And the sons of *Yechon Yah*:
Assir, *Shealti El* his son,
18 also *Malki Ram* and *Pedah Yah* and *Shenassar*
Yeqam Yah, *Yah Shama* and *Nedab Yah*.
19 And the sons of *Pedah Yah*:
Zerub Babel and *Shimi*.
And the sons of *Zerub Babel*:
Meshullam and *Hanan Yah* and *Shelomith* their sister:
20 and *Hashubah* and *Ohel* and *Berech Yah*
and *Hasad Yah*, *Yushab Hesed* — five.
21 And the sons of *Hanan Yah*:
Pelat Yah and *Yesha Yah*
the sons of *Repha Yah*
the sons of *Arnan*
the sons of *Obad Yah*
the sons of *Shechan Yah*.
22 And the sons of *Shechan Yah*:
Shema Yah.
And the sons of *Shema Yah*:
Hattush and *Yigal* and *Bariach*,
and *Near Yah* and *Shaphat* — six.
23 And the sons of *Near Yah*:
El Ya Enay and *Yechizqi Yah* and *Ezri Qam* — three.
24 And the sons of *El Ya Enay*:
Hodav Yah and *El Yashib* and *Pela Yah* and *Aqqub*
and *Yah Hanan* and *Dela Yah* and *Anani* — seven.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF YAH HUDAH
4 The sons of *Yah Hudah*:
Peres, *Hesron* and *Karmi* and *Hur* and *Shobal*.
2 And *Rea Yah* the son of *Shobal* births
Yachath and *Yachath* births *Ach Umay* and *Lahad*.
— these are the families of the *Sorahiy*.
3 And these are of the father of *Etam*:
Yizre El and *Yishma* and *Yidbash*
and the name of their sister is *Selel Poni*
and *Penu El* is the father of *Gedor*
and *Ezer* is the father of *Hushah*.
— these are the sons of *Hur*
the firstbirthed of *Ephrathah* the father of *Beth Lechem*.
5 And *Ashchur* the father of *Teqoha*

1 CHRONICLES 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

had two wives **women**, Helah and Naarah.
6 And Naarah *bare* **birthed** him *Ahuzam* **Achuz Zam**,
and Hephher, and Temeni, and *Haahashtari* **Achashtariy**.
7 These were the sons of Naarah.
And the sons of Helah *were*,
8 *Zereth* **Sereth**, and *Jezoar* **Sochar**, and Ethnan.
9 And *Coz* **begat** **Qos** **birthed** Anub, and *Zobebah* **Sobebah**,
and the families of *Aharhel* **Ach Archel** the son of Harum.
10 And *Jabez* **Yabes** was more honourable than his brethren:
and his mother called his name *Jabez* **Yabes**, saying,
Because I *bare* **birthed** him with *sorrow* **contortion**.
11 And *Jabez* **Yabes**
called on *the God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, saying,
Oh that **in blessing**, thou *wouldest* bless me *indeed*,
and *enlarge* **abound** my *coast* **border**,
and that thine hand might be with me,
and that thou *wouldest* **keep** **work** me from evil,
that it may not *grieve* **contort** me!
And *God* **Elohim** granted him
that which he *requested* **asked**.
12 And *Chelub* **Kelub** the brother of *Shuach* **Shuach**
begat *Mehir* **birthed** **Mechir**,
which was the father of Eshton.
13 And Eshton *begat* *Bethrapha* **birthed** **Beth Rapha**,
and *Paseah* **Paseach**,
and *Tehinnah* **Techinnah**
the father of *Irhash* **Ir Nachash**.
These are the men of Rechah.
And the sons of *Kenaz* **Qenaz**;
14 *Othniel* **Othni El**, and *Seraiah* **Sera Yah**;
and the sons of *Othniel* **Othni El**;
Hathath.
15 And *Meonothai* *begat* **Meonothay** **birthed** Ophrah:
and *Seraiah* **Sera Yah** *begat* *Joab* **birthed** **Yah Ab**,
the father of the
valley of Charashim **Gay Harashim/Valley of Engravers**;
for they were *craftsmen* **engravers**.
16 And the sons of *Caleb* **Kaleb**
the son of *Jephunneh* **Yephunneh**;
Iru, Elah, and Naam:
and the sons of Elah, even *Kenaz* **Qenaz**.
17 And the sons of *Jehaleleel* **Ye Halal El**;
Ziph, and Ziphah, *Tireya* **Tireya**, and *Asareel* **Asar El**.
18 And the sons of *Ezra* **Ezrah** *were*,
Jether **Yether**, and Mered, and Ephher, and *Yalon* **Yalon**:
and she *bare* *Miriam* **conceived** **Miryam**,
and *Shammai* **Shammay**,
and *Ishbah* **Yishbach** the father of Eshtemoa.
19 And his *wife* *Jehudijah* **woman** **Yah Hudahi Yah**
bare *Jered* **birthed** **Yered** the father of Gedor,
and Heber the father of Sochoh,
and *Jekuthiel* **Yequthi El** the father of *Zanoah* **Zanoach**.
And these are the sons of *Bithiah* **Bith Yah**
the daughter of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**, which Mered took.
20 And the sons of his *wife* *Hodiah* **woman** **Hodi Yah**
the sister of *Naham* **Nacham**,
the father of *Keilah* **Qeilah** the *Garmite* **Garmiy**,
and Eshtemoa the *Maachathite* **Maachahiy**.
21 And the sons of Shimon *were*,
Amnon, and Rinnah,
Benhanan **Ben Hanan**, and *Tilon* **Tulon**.
And the sons of *Ishi* **Yishi** *were*,
Zoheth **Zoheth**, and *Benzoheth* **Ben Zoheth**.
22 The sons of Shelah the son of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** *were*,
Er the father of *Lecah* **Lechah**,
and *Laadah* **Ladah** the father of Mareshah,
and the families of the house
of *them that wrought fine* **the service of bleached** linen,
of the house of Ashbea,
And *Jokim* **Yah Qim**, and the men of *Chozeba* **Kozeba**,

1 CHRONICLES 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

has two women, Helah and Naarah.
6 And Naarah births him Achuz Zam
and Hephher and Temeni and Achashtariy.
— these are the sons of Naarah.
7 And the sons of Helah:
Sereth and Sochar and Ethnan.
8 And Qos births Anub and Sobebah
and the families of Ach Archel the son of Harum.
9 And Yabes is more honorable than his brothers:
and his mother calls his name Yabes, saying,
Because I birthed him with contortion.
10 And Yabes calls on Elohim of Yisra El, saying,
Oh that in blessing,
you bless me and abound my border;
and that your hand be with me
and not work evil or contort me!
— and Elohim grants him what he asks.
11 And Kelub the brother of Shuach
births Mechir the father of Eshton.
12 And Eshton births Beth Rapha and Paseach
and Techinnah the father of Ir Nachash.
— these are the men of Rechah.
13 And the sons of Qenaz:
Othni El and Sera Yah.
And the sons of Othni El:
Hathath.
14 And Meonothay births Ophrah;
and Sera Yah births Yah Ab
the father of Gay Harashim/the Valley of Engravers;
for they are engravers.
15 And the sons of Kaleb the son of Yephunneh:
Iru, Elah and Naam.
And the sons of Elah:
even Qenaz.
16 And the sons of Ye Halal El:
Ziph and Ziphah, Tireya and Asar El.
17 And the sons of Ezra:
Yether and Mered and Ephher and Shammay
and she conceives Miryam and Shammay
and Yishbach the father of Eshtemoa;
and his woman Yah Hudahi Yah births
Yered the father of Gedor
and Heber the father of Sochoh
and Yequthi El the father of Zanoach.
— and these are the sons of Bith Yah
the daughter of Paroh, whom Mered takes.
18 And the sons of his woman Hodi Yah
the sister of Nacham:
the father of Qeilah the Garmiy
and Eshtemoa the Maachahiy.
19 And the sons of Shimon:
Amnon and Rinnah, Ben Hanan and Tulon.
And the sons of Yishi:
Zoheth and Ben Zoheth.
20 The sons of Shelah the son of Yah Hudah:
Er the father of Lechah
and Ladah the father of Mareshah;
and the families of the house
of the service of bleached linen
of the house of Ashbea;
and Yah Qim and the men of Kozeba;

1 CHRONICLES 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and Joash **Yah Ash**, and Saraph,
who had the dominion **mastered** in Moab,
and *Jashubilehem* **Yashubi Lechem**.
And these are *ancient things* **words of antiquity**.
23 These were the *pottery* **formers**,
and those that *dwelt* **settled**
among plants and *hedges* **walls**:
there they *dwelt* **settled** with the *king* **sovereign**
for his work.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF SHIMON
24 The sons of *Simeon* **Shimon** were,
Nemuel **Nemu El**, and *Jamin* **Yamin**,
Jarib **Yarib**, *Zerah* **Zerach**, and Shaul:
25 Shallum his son, Mibsam his son, Mishma his son.
26 And the sons of Mishma;
Hamuel **Hammu El** his son, *Zacchur* **Zakkur** his son,
Shimei **Shimi** his son.
27 And *Shimei* **Shimi** had sixteen sons and six daughters:
but his brethren had not many *children* **sons**,
neither did all their family *multiply* **abound**,
like to the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
28 And they *dwelt* **settled** at *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**,
and Moladah, and *Hazarshual* **Hasar Shual**,
29 And at Bilhah, and at *Ezem* **Esem**, and at Tolad,
30 And at *Bethuel* **Bethu El**,
31 and at Hormah, and at *Ziklag* **Siqlag**,
And at *Bethmarcaboth* **Beth Markaboth**,
and *Hazarsusim* **Hasar Susim**,
and at *Bethbirei* **Beth Biri**, and at *Shaaraim* **Shaarayim**.
These were their cities unto the reign of David.
32 And their *villages* **courts** were,
Etam, and *Ain* **Ayin**, Rimmon,
and Tochen, and Ashan, five cities:
33 And all their *villages* **courts**
that were round about the same cities, unto Baal.
These were their *habitations* **sites**, and their genealogy.
34 And Meshobab, and *Jamlech* **Yamlech**,
and *Joshah* **Yah Shah**, the son of *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah**,
35 and *Joel* **Yah El**,
and *Jehu* **Yah Hu** the son of *Josibiah* **Yoshib Yah**,
the son of *Seraiah* **Sera Yah**, the son of *Asiel* **Asi El**,
36 And *Elioenai* **El Ya Enay**, and *Jaakobah* **Yaaqovah**,
and *Jeshohaiah* **Yeshocha Yah**, and *Asaiah* **Asah Yah**,
and *Adiel* **Adi El**, and *Jesimiel* **Yesima El**,
and *Benaiah* **Bena Yah**,
37 And Ziza the son of Shiphi,
the son of Allon, the son of *Jedaiah* **Yeda Yah**,
the son of Shimri, the son of *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**;
38 These mentioned by their names
were *princes* **hierarchs** in their families:
and the house of their fathers
increased greatly **breached with greatness**.
39 And they went to the entrance of Gedor,
even unto the east side **to the rising** of the valley,
to seek pasture for their flocks.
40 And they found fat pasture and good,
and the land was *wide* **broad of hands**,
and *quiet at rest*, and *peaceable* **serene**;
for they of Ham had *dwelt* **settled** there
of old **from the first**.
41 And these *written* **inscribed** by name
came in the days of *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and smote their tents,
and the habitations that were found there,
and *destroyed them utterly* **they are devoted** unto this day,
and *dwelt* **settled** in their *rooms* **stead**:
because there was pasture there for their flocks.
42 And *some* of them, *even* of the sons of *Simeon* **Shimon**,
five hundred men, went to mount Seir,
having for their *captains* **heads**
Pelathiah **Pelat Yah**, and *Neariah* **Near Yah**,
and *Rephaiah* **Repha Yah**, and *Uzziel* **Uzzi El**,
the sons of *Ishi* **Yishi**.
43 And they smote
the *rest* **survivors** of the *Amalekites* **Amaleqiy**
that were escaped **of the escapees**,
and *dwelt* **settled** there unto this day.

1 CHRONICLES 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and Yah Ash and Saraph
who mastered in Moab
and Yashubi Lechem.
— and these are words of antiquity.
23 These are the formers and settlers
of plants and walls;
there they settle with the sovereign for his work.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF SHIMON
24 The sons of Shimon:
Nemu El and Yamin, Yarib, Zerach and Shaul;
25 Shallum his son, Mibsam his son, Mishma his son.
26 And the sons of Mishma:
Hammu El his son, Zakkur his son, Shimi his son.
27 And Shimi has sixteen sons and six daughters;
but neither have his brothers many sons,
nor their family abound as the sons of Yah Hudah.
28 And they settle at Beer Sheba
and Moladah and Hasar Shual
29 and at Bilhah and at Esem and at Tolad
30 and at Bethu El and at Hormah and at Siqlag
31 and at Beth Markaboth and Hasar Susim
and at Beth Biri and at Shaarayim:
these are their cities up to the reign of David.
32 And their courts:
Etam and Ayin, Rimmon and Tochen and Ashan
— five cities:
33 and all courts all around the same cities, to Baal
— these are their sites and their genealogy;
34 even Meshobab and Yamlech
and Yah Shah the son of Amaz Yah
and Yah El,
35 and Yah Hu the son of Yoshib Yah
the son of Sera Yah the son of Asi El,
36 and El Ya Enay and Yaaqovah and Yeshocha Yah
and Asah Yah and Adi El
and Yesima El and Bena Yah
and Ziza the son of Shiphi
the son of Allon the son of Yeda Yah
the son of Shimri the son of Shema Yah.
38 These mentioned by their names
are hierarchs in their families:
and the house of their fathers breaches with greatness.
39 And they go to the entrance of Gedor
to the rising of the valley
to seek pasture for their flocks:
40 and they find fat pasture and good
and the land is broad of hands
and at rest and serene;
for they of Ham settled there from the first.
41 And these inscribed by name
come in the days
of Yechizqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah;
and smite their tents
and the habitations they find there;
and they are devoted to this day
and settle in their stead:
because there is pasture for their flocks.
42 And *some* of the sons of Shimon
— five hundred men go to mount Seir,
having Pelat Yah and Near Yah
and Repha Yah and Uzzi El
the sons of Yishi as their heads.
43 And they smite
the survivors of the Amaleqiy — of the escapees
and settle there to this day.

1 CHRONICLES 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF REU BEN

5 Now the sons of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
(for he was the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**;
but forasmuch
as he *defiled* **profaned** his father's *bed* **chamber**,
his *birthright* was **firstrights were** given
unto the sons of *Joseph* **Yoseph**
the son of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and the genealogy is not to be *reckoned* **genealogized**
after the *birthright* **firstrights**.
2 For *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
prevailed **mightily** above his brethren,
and of him *came* the *chief ruler* **eminent**;
but the *birthright* was *Joseph's* **firstrights were Yoseph's**.)
3 The sons, *I say*, of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**
the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of *Israel* **Yisra El** were,
Hanoch **Hanoch** and *Pallu*,
Hezron **Hesron**, and *Carmi* **Karmi**.
4 The sons of *Joel* **Yah El**;
Shemaiah **Shema Yah** his son,
Gog his son, *Shimei* **Shimi** his son,
Micah **Michah Yah** his son,
Reaia **Rea Yah** his son, *Baal* his son,
Beerah his son,
6 whom *Tilgathpilneser* **Tilgath Pileser**
king **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
carried away captive **exiled**:
he was *prince* **hierarchy** of the *Reubenites* **Reu Beniy**.
7 And his brethren by their families,
when the genealogy of their generations
was *reckoned* **genealogized**,
were the *chief* **head**,
Jeiel **Yei El**, and *Zechariah* **Zechar Yah**,
8 And *Bela* the son of *Azaz*,
the son of *Shema*, the son of *Joel* **Yah El**,
who *dwelt* **settled** in *Aroer*,
even unto *Nebo* and *Baalmeon* **Baal Meon**:
9 And *eastward* **from the rising**
he *inhabited* **settled** unto the entering in of the wilderness
from the river *Euphrates*:
because their *cattle* **chattel**
10 were *multiplied* **abounded** in the land of *Gilead* **Gilad**.
And in the days of *Saul* **Shaul**
they made *worked* war with the *Hagarites* **Hagariy**,
who fell by their hand:
and they *dwelt* **settled** in their tents
throughout **upon the face of** all the east land
of *Gilead* **Gilad**.
11 **GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF GAD**
And the *children* **sons** of *Gad*
dwelt **settled** over against them,
in the land of *Bashan* unto *Salcah* **Salchah**:
12 *Joel* **Yah El** the *chief* **head**,
and *Shapham* the *next* **second**,
and *Jaanai* **Yaanay**, and *Shaphat* in *Bashan*.
13 And their brethren of the house of their fathers were,
Michael **Michah El**, and *Meshullam*, and *Sheba*,
and *Jorai* **Yoray**, and *Jachan* **Yakan**, and *Zia*, and *Heber*,
seven.
14 These are the *children* **sons** of *Abihail* **Abi Hail**
the son of *Huri*, the son of *Jaroah* **Yaroach**,
the son of *Gilead* **Gilad**, the son of *Michael*/**Michah El**,
the son of *Jeshishai* **Yeshishay**, the son of *Jahdo* **Yachdo**,
the son of *Buz*;
15 *Ahi* **Achiy** the son of *Abdiel* **Abdi El**, the son of *Guni*,
chief **head** of the house of their fathers.
16 And they *dwelt* **settled** in *Gilead* **Gilad** in *Bashan*,
and in her *towns* **daughters**,
and in all the suburbs of *Sharon*,
upon their *borders* **exits**.
17 All these were *reckoned* by *genealogies* **genealogized**
in the days of *Jotham* **Yah Tham**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and in the days of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
king **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
18 The sons of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**, and the *Gadites* **Gadiy**,
and half the *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
of *valiant men* **sons of valour**,

1 CHRONICLES 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF REU BEN

5 As to the sons of *Reu Ben* the firstbirthed of *Yisra El*:
— for he is the firstbirthed;
and because he profaned the chamber of his father
his firstrights are given
to the sons of *Yoseph* the son of *Yisra El*;
and the genealogy
is not genealogized after the firstrights;
2 for *Yah Hudah* prevails mightily above his brothers
and of him the eminence;
and the firstrights are to *Yoseph*.
3 The sons of *Reu Ben* the firstbirthed of *Yisra El*:
Hanoch and *Pallu*, *Hesron* and *Karmi*.
4 The sons of *Yah El*:
Shema *Yah* his son, *Gog* his son, *Shimi* his son,
5 *Michah* *Yah* his son, *Rea* *Yah* his son, *Baal* his son,
6 *Beerah* his son
whom *Tilgath Pileser* sovereign of *Ashshur* exiled
— he is hierarchy of the *Reu Beniy*.
7 And his brothers by their families,
when the genealogy of their generations
is genealogized — the head:
Yei El and *Zechar* *Yah*,
8 and *Bela* the son of *Azaz*
the son of *Shema* the son of *Yah El*
who settles in *Aroer* — even to *Nebo* and *Baal Meon*
— and from the rising
9 he settles to the entering in of the wilderness
from the river *Euphrates*
— because their chattel abound in the land of *Gilad*.
And in the days of *Shaul*
they work war with the *Hagariy*
who fall at their hand:
and they settle in their tents
on the face of all the east of *Gilad*.
11 **GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF GAD**
And the sons of *Gad* settle opposite them
in the land of *Bashan* to *Salchah*:
12 *Yah El* the head and *Shapham* second
and *Yaanay* and *Shaphat* in *Bashan*.
13 And their brothers of the house of their fathers:
Michah El and *Meshullam* and *Sheba*
and *Yoray* and *Yakan* and *Zia* and *Heber* — seven.
14 These are the sons of *Abi Hail*
the son of *Huri* the son of *Yaroach*
the son of *Gilad* the son of *Michah El*
the son of *Yeshishay* the son of *Yachdo*
the son of *Buz*:
15 *Achiy* the son of *Abdi El* the son of *Guni*
is head of the house of their fathers.
16 And they settle in *Gilad* in *Bashan*
and in her daughters
and in all the suburbs of *Sharon* at their exits.
17 They all are genealogized
in the days of *Yah Tham* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
and in the days of *Yarob Am* sovereign of *Yisra El*.
18 The sons of *Reu Ben* and the *Gadiy*
and half the scion of *Menash Sheh*,
sons of valour

1 CHRONICLES 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

men able to bear buckler and sword,
and to shoot **arch** with bow, and *skilful* **taught** in war,
were four and forty thousand
seven hundred and *threescore* **sixty**,
that went out to the war **host**.
19 And they *made* **worked** war with the *Hagarites* **Hagariy**,
with *Jetur* **Yetur**, and Nephish, and Nodab.
20 And they were helped against them,
and the *Hagarites* **Hagariy**
were *delivered* **given** into their hand,
and all that were with them:
for they cried to *God* **Elohim** in the *battle* **war**,
and he was intreated of them;
because they *put their trust* **confided** in him.
21 And they *took away* **captured** their *cattle* **chattel**;
of their camels fifty thousand,
and of *sheep* **flocks** two hundred and fifty thousand,
and of *asses* **he burros** two thousand,
and of *men* **souls of humanity** an hundred thousand.
22 For there fell down many *slain* **pierced**,
because the war was of *God* **Elohim**.
And they *dwelt* **settled** in their steads
until the *captivity* **exile**.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF THE HALF SCION OF MENASH SHEH

23 And the *children* **sons**
of the half *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
dwelt **settled** in the land:
they *increased* **abounded** from Bashan
unto *Baalhermon* **Baal Hermon** and Senir,
and unto mount Hermon.
24 And these were the heads of the house of their fathers,
even Ephér, and *Ishi* **Yishi**, and *Eliel* **Eli El**,
and *Azriel* **Ezri El**, and *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
and *Hodaviah* **Hodav Yah**, and *Jahdiel* **Yachdi El**,
mighty men of valour, *famous* men **of name**,
and heads of the house of their fathers.
25 And they *transgressed* **treasoned**
against the *God* **Elohim** of their fathers,
and *went a whoring* **whored** after the *gods* **elohim**
of the people of the land,
whom *God* **destroyed** **Elohim** **desolated**
before them **at their face**.
26 And the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
stirred up **wakened** the spirit of Pul
king **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
and the spirit of *Tilgathpilesér* **Tilgath Pilesér**,
king **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
and he *carried* **exiled** them away,
even the *Reubenites* **Reu Beniy**, and the *Gadites* **Gadiy**,
and the half *tribe* **scion** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
and brought them unto *Halach* **Halach**, and Habor,
and Hara, and to the river Gozan, unto this day.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF LEVI

6 The sons of Levi;
Gershon, *Kohath* **Qehath**, and Merari.
2 And the sons of *Kohath* **Qehath**;
Amram **Am Ram**, *Izhar* **Yishar**,
and Hebron, and *Uzziel* **Uzzi El**.
3 And the *children* **sons** of *Amram* **Am Ram**;
Aaron **Aharon**, and *Moses* **Mosheh**, and *Miriam* **Miryam**.
And The sons also of *Aaron* **Aharon**;
Nadab, and *Abihu* **Abi Hu**,
Eleazar **El Azar**, and *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**.
4 *Eleazar* **begat** *Phinehas* **El Azar** **birthed** *Pinechas*,
Phinehas **begat** *Abishua* **Pinechas** **birthed** *Abi Shua*,
5 And *Abishua* **begat** *Bukki* **Abi Shua** **birthed** *Buqqi*,
and *Bukki* **begat** **Buqqi** **birthed** *Uzzi*,
6 And *Uzzi* **begat** *Zerahiah* **birthed** *Zerach* **Yah**,
and *Zerahiah* **Z****begat** *Meraioth* **erach** **Yah** **birthed** *Merayoth*,
7 *Meraioth* **begat** *Amariah* **Merayoth** **birthed** *Amar* **Yah**,
and *Amariah* **begat** *Ahitub* **Amar** **Yah** **birthed** *Achiy* **Tub**,
8 And *Ahitub* **begat** *Zadok* **Achiy** **Tub** **birthed** *Sadoq*,
and *Zadok* **begat** *Ahimaaz* **Sadoq** **birthed** *Achiy* **Maas**,
9 And *Ahimaaz* **begat** *Azariah* **Achiy** **Maas** **birthed** *Azar* **Yah**,
and *Azariah* **begat** *Johanan* **Azar** **Yah** **birthed** *Yah* **Hanan**,
10 And *Johanan* **begat** *Azariah* **Yah** **Hanan** **birthed** *Azar* **Yah**,
he it is that executed the *priest's* **office** **priested**
in the *temple* **house**

1 CHRONICLES 5, 6 668

exeGesés companion BIBLE

men able to bear buckler and sword
and to arch with bow and taught in war,
forty—four thousand seven hundred and sixty
go out to the host:
19 and they work war with the Hagariy
— with Yetur and Nephish and Nodab.
20 And they are helped against them
and the Hagariy are given into their hand
with all who are with them:
for they cry to Elohim in the war and intreat him;
because they confide in him.
21 And they capture their chattel
— of their camels fifty thousand
and of flocks two hundred and fifty thousand
and of he burros two thousand
and of souls of humanity a hundred thousand.
22 For many fall pierced
because the war is of Elohim:
and they settle in their steads until the exile.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF THE HALF SCION OF MENASH SHEH

23 And the sons of the half scion of Menash Sheh
settle in the land:
they abound from Bashan to Baal Hermon and Senir
and to mount Hermon.
24 And these are the heads of the house of their fathers:
even Ephér and Yishi and Eli El and Ezri El
and Yirme Yah and Hodav Yah and Yachdi El
— mighty men of valour — men of name
and heads of the house of their fathers.
25 And they treason against Elohim of their fathers;
and whore after the elohim of the people of the land
whom Elohim desolated from their face.
26 And Elohim of Yisra El
wakens the spirit of Pul sovereign of Ashshur
and the spirit of Tilgath Pilesér sovereign of Ashshur
and he exiles them
— even the Reu Beniy and the Gadiy
and the half scion of Menash Sheh
and brings them to Halach and Habor and Hara
and to the river Gozan, to this day.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF LEVI

6 The sons of Levi:
Gershon, Qehath and Merari.
2 And the sons of Qehath:
Am Ram, Yishar and Hebron and Uzzi El.
3 And the sons of Am Ram:
Aharon and Mosheh and Miryam.
4 And the sons of Aharon:
Nadab and Abi Hu, El Azar and Iy Thamar.
5 El Azar births Pinechas
Pinechas births Abi Shua
and Abi Shua births Buqqi
and Buqqi births Uzzi
6 and Uzzi births Zerach Yah
and Zerach Yah births Merayoth
Merayoth births Amar Yah
7 and Amar Yah births Achiy Tub
and Achiy Tub births Sadoq
8 and Sadoq births Achiy Maas
and Achiy Maas births Azar Yah
9 and Azar Yah births Achiy Hanan
and Yah Hanan births Azar Yah
10 — who priested in the house

1 CHRONICLES 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that Solomon **Shelomoh** built in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:
11 And *Azariah* begat *Amariah* **Azar Yah** birthed **Amar Yah**,
and *Amariah* begat *Ahitub* **Amar Yah** birthed **Achiy Tub**,
12 And *Ahitub* begat *Zadok* **Achiy Tub** birthed **Sadoq**,
and *Zadok* begat **Sadoq** birthed **Shallum**,
13 And *Shallum* begat *Hilkiah* birthed **Hilqi Yah**,
and *Hilkiah* begat *Azariah* **Hilqi Yah** birthed **Azar Yah**,
14 And *Azariah* begat *Seraiah* **Azar Yah** birthed **Sera Yah**,
and *Seraiah* begat *Jehozadak* **Sera Yah** birthed **Yah Sadaq**,
15 And *Jehozadak* **Yah Sadaq** went into captivity,
when the **LORD** carried away **Yah Veh** exiled
Judah **Yah Hudah** and *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
by the hand of *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**.
16 The sons of **Levi**;
Gershom, *Kohath* **Qehath**, and *Merari*.
17 And these be the names of the sons of Gershom;
Libni, and *Shimei* **Shimi**.
18 And the sons of *Kohath* **Qehath** were,
Amram **Am Ram**, and *Izhar* **Yishar**,
and *Hebron*, and *Uzziel* **Uzzi El**.
19 The sons of *Merari*;
Mahli **Machli**, and *Mushi*.
And these are the families of the *Levites* **Leviym**
according to their fathers.
20 Of Gershom;
Libni his son, *Jahath* **Yachath** his son, *Zimmah* his son,
21 *Joah* **Yah Ach** his son, *Iddo* his son,
Zerah **Zerach** his son, *Jeaterai* **Jeatheray** his son.
22 The sons of *Kohath* **Qehath**;
Amminadab **Ammi Nadab** his son,
Korah **Qorach** his son, *Assir* his son,
23 *Elkanah* **El Qanah** his son,
and *Ebiasaph* **Abi Asaph** his son, and *Assir* his son,
24 *Tahath* **Tachath** his son, *Uriel* **Uri El** his son,
Uzziah **Uzzi Yah** his son, and *Shaul* his son.
25 And the sons of *Elkanah* **El Qanah**;
Amasai **Amasay**, and *Ahimoth* **Achiy Moth**.
26 As for *Elkanah* **El Qanah**: the sons of *Elkanah* **El Qanah**;
Zophai **Suph** his son, and *Nahath* **Nachath** his son,
27 *Eliab* **Eli Ab** his son,
Jerocham **Yerocham** his son, *Elkanah* **El Qanah** his son.
28 And the sons of *Samuel* **Shemu El**;
the firstborn **firstbirthed** *Vashni*, and *Abiah* **Abi Yah**.
29 The sons of *Merari*;
Mahli **Machli**, *Libni* his son,
Shimei **Shimi** his son, *Uzza* his son,
30 *Shimea* **Shimah** his son, *Haggiah* **Haggi Yah** his son,
Asaiah **Asah Yah** his son.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONG LEADERS

31 And these are they whom *David* set **stood**
over the *service* **hand** of song
in the house of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**,
after that the ark had rest **rested**.
32 And they ministered
before the dwelling place at the face of the tabernacle
of the tabernacle **tent** of the congregation
with *singing* **song**,
until *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
had built the house of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**
in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:
and then they waited **stood** on their *office* **service**
according to their *order* **judgment**.
33 And these are they
that waited **stood** with their *children* **sons**.
Of the sons of the *Kohathites* **Qehathiy**:
Heman a singer,
the son of *Joel* **Yah El**, the son of *Shemuel* **Shemu El**,
34 The son of *Elkanah* **El Qanah**,
the son of *Jerocham* **Yerocham**,
the son of *Eliel* **Eli El**, the son of *Toah* **Toach**,
35 The son of *Zuph* **Suph**, the son of *Elkanah* **El Qanah**,
the son of *Mahath* **Machath**, the son of *Amasai* **Amasay**,
36 The son of *Elkanah* **El Qanah**, the son of *Joel* **Yah El**,
the son of *Azariah* **Azar Yah**,
the son of *Zephaniah* **Sephan Yah**,
37 The son of *Tahath* **Tachath**, the son of *Assir*,
the son of *Ebiasaph* **Abi Asaph**, the son of *Korah* **Qorach**,
38 The son of *Izhar* **Yishar**, the son of *Kohath* **Qehath**,

1 CHRONICLES 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Shelomoh built in *Yeru Shalem*
and *Azar Yah* births *Amar Yah*
and *Amar Yah* births *Achiy Tub*
and *Achiy Tub* births *Sadoq*
and *Sadoq* births *Shallum*
and *Shallum* births *Hilqi Yah*
and *Hilqi Yah* births *Azar Yah*
and *Azar Yah* births *Sera Yah*
and *Sera Yah* births *Yah Sadaq*;
15 and *Yah Sadaq* goes
when *Yah Veh* exiles *Yah Hudah* and *Yeru Shalem*
by the hand of *Nebukadnets Tsar*.
16 The sons of **Levi**:
Gershom, *Qehath* and *Merari*.
17 And these the names of the sons of Gershom:
Libni and *Shimi*.
18 And the sons of *Qehath*:
Am Ram and *Yishar* and *Hebron* and *Uzzi El*.
19 The sons of *Merari*:
Machli and *Mushi*.
And these are the families of the *Leviym*
according to their fathers:
20 Of Gershom:
Libni his son, *Yachath* his son, *Zimmah* his son,
21 *Yah Ach* his son, *Iddo* his son,
Zerach his son, *Jeatheray* his son.
22 The sons of *Qehath*:
Ammi Nadab his son, *Qorach* his son, *Assir* his son,
23 *El Qanah* his son,
and *Abi Asaph* his son, and *Assir* his son,
24 *Tachath* his son, *Uri El* his son,
Uzzi Yah his son, and *Shaul* his son.
25 And the sons of *El Qanah*:
Amasay and *Achiy Moth*.
26 *El Qanah* — the sons of *El Qanah*:
Suph his son and *Nachath* his son,
27 *Eli Ab* his son, *Yerocham* his son, *El Qanah* his son.
28 And the sons of *Shemu El*:
the firstbirthed *Vashni* and *Abi Yah*.

29 The sons of *Merari*:
Machli, *Libni* his son, *Shimi* his son, *Uzza* his son,
30 *Shimah* his son,
Haggi Yah his son, *Asah Yah* his son.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONG LEADERS

31 And these are they whom *David* stands
over the hand of song in the house of *Yah Veh*
after the ark rests;
32 and they minister in song
at the face
of the tabernacle of the tent of the congregation
until *Shelomoh* builds the house of *Yah Veh*
in *Yeru Shalem*:
and then they stand on their *service*
according to their *judgment*.
33 — and these are they who stand with their sons.

Of the sons of the *Qehathiy*:
Heman a singer
the son of *Yah El* the son of *Shemu El*
the son of *El Qanah* the son of *Yerocham*
the son of *Eli El* the son of *Toach*
34 the son of *Suph* the son of *El Qanah*
the son of *Machath* the son of *Amasay*
35 the son of *El Qanah* the son of *Yah El*
the son of *Azar Yah* the son of *Sephan Yah*
36 the son of *Tachath* the son of *Assir*
37 the son of *Abi Asaph* the son of *Qorach*
38 the son of *Yishar* the son of *Qehath*

1 CHRONICLES 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

39 the son of Levi, the son of Israel **Yisra El**.
And his brother Asaph, who stood on his right *hand*,
even Asaph the son of *Berechiah* **Berech Yah**,
the son of *Shimea* **Shimah**,
40 The son of *Michael* **Michah El**,
the son of *Baaseiah* **Baase Yah**,
the son of *Malchiah* **Malki Yah**,
41 The son of *Ethni*, the son of *Zerah* **Zerach**,
the son of *Adaiah* **Ada Yah**,
42 The son of *Ethan*,
the son of *Zimmah*, the son of *Shimei* **Shimi**,
43 The son of *Jahath* **Yachath**,
the son of *Gershom*, the son of *Levi*.
44 And their brethren the sons of *Merari*
stood on the left hand:
Ethan the son of *Kishi* **Qishi**,
the son of *Abdi*, the son of *Malluch*,
45 The son of *Hashabiah* **Hashab Yah**,
the son of *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah**,
the son of *Hilkiah* **Hilqi Yah**,
46 The son of *Amzi* **Amsi**,
the son of *Bani*, the son of *Shamer* **Shemer**,
47 The son of *Mahli* **Machli**, the son of *Mushi*,
the son of *Merari*, the son of *Levi*.
GENEALOGY OF THE LEADERS OF TABERNACLE SERVICE
48 Their brethren also the *Levites* **Leviym**
were *appointed given* unto all manner of service
of the tabernacle of the house of *God* **Elohim**.
49 But *Aaron* **Aharon** and his sons *offered incensed*
upon the *sacrifice* altar of the *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
and on the *sacrifice* altar of *incense*,
and were appointed for all the work
of the *place most holy* **Holy of Holies**,
and to *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for *Israel* **Yisra El**,
according to all
that *Moses* **Mosheh** the servant of *God* **Elohim**
had *commanded* **misvahed**.
50 And these are the sons of *Aaron* **Aharon**;
Eleazar **El Azar** his son,
Phinehas **Pinechas** his son, *Abishua* **Abi Shua** his son,
51 *Bukki* **Buqqi** his son, *Uzzi* his son,
Zerahiah **Zerach Yah** his son,
52 *Meraioth* **Merayoth** his son,
Amariah **Amar Yah** his son, *Ahitub* **Achiy Tub** his son,
53 *Zadok* **Sadoq** his son, *Ahimaaz* **Achiy Maas** his son.
54 Now these are their *dwelling places* **sites**
throughout their *castles* **walls** in their *coasts* **borders**,
of the sons of *Aaron* **Aharon**,
of the families of the *Kohathites* **Qehathiy**:
for their's was the *lot* **pebble**.
55 And they gave them *Hebron*
in the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and the suburbs thereof round about it.
56 But the fields of the city, and the *villages* **courts** thereof,
they gave to *Caleb* **Kaleb**
the son of *Jephunneh* **Yephunneh**.
57 And to the sons of *Aaron* **Aharon**
they gave the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
namely, *Hebron*, the city of refuge,
and *Libnah* with her suburbs,
and *Jattir* **Yattir**, and *Eshtemoa*, with their suburbs,
58 And *Hilen* with her suburbs, *Debir* with her suburbs,
59 And *Ashan* with her suburbs,
and *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh** with her suburbs:
60 And out of the *tribe* **rod** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**;
Geba with her suburbs, and *Alemeth* with her suburbs,
and *Anathoth* with her suburbs.
All their cities throughout their families
were thirteen cities.
61 And unto the sons of *Kohath* **Qehath**,
which were *left* **remained** of the family of that *tribe* **rod**,
were cities given out of the half *tribe* **rod**, *namely*,
out of the half *tribe* of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
by *lot* **pebble**, ten cities.
62 And to the sons of *Gershom* throughout their families
out of the *tribe* **rod** of *Issachar* **Yissachar**,
and out of the *tribe* **rod** of *Asher*,

1 CHRONICLES 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the son of Levi the son of *Yisra El*.
39 And his brother Asaph, who stands at his right
— even Asaph the son of *Berech Yah*
the son of *Shimah*
40 the son of *Michah El* the son of *Baase Yah*
the son of *Malki Yah*
41 the son of *Ethni*
the son of *Zerach* the son of *Ada Yah*
42 the son of *Ethan*
the son of *Zimmah* the son of *Shimi*
43 the son of *Yachath*
the son of *Gershom* the son of *Levi*.
44 And their brothers the sons of *Merari* on the left:
Ethan the son of *Qishi*
the son of *Abdi* the son of *Malluch*
45 the son of *Hashab Yah*
the son of *Amaz Yah* the son of *Hilqi Yah*
46 the son of *Amsi*
the son of *Bani* the son of *Shemer*
47 the son of *Machli* the son of *Mushi*
the son of *Merari* the son of *Levi*.
GENEALOGY OF THE LEADERS OF TABERNACLE SERVICE
48 And their brothers the *Leviym*
are given to all manner of service
of the tabernacle of the house of *Elohim*.
49 And *Aharon* and his sons *incense*
on the *sacrifice* altar of the *holocaust*
and on the *sacrifice* altar of *incense*,
for all the work of the *Holy of Holies*
and to *kapar/atone* for *Yisra El*
according to all
Mosheh the servant of *Elohim* **misvahed**.
50 And these are the sons of *Aharon*:
El *Azar* his son,
Pinechas his son, *Abi Shua* his son,
51 *Buqqi* his son, *Uzzi* his son, *Zerach Yah* his son,
52 *Merayoth* his son,
Amar Yah his son, *Achiy Tub* his son,
53 *Sadoq* his son, *Achiy Maas* his son.
54 And these are their sites
throughout their walls in their borders
of the sons of *Aharon* of the families of the *Qehathiy*:
for the *pebble* is theirs.
55 And they give them *Hebron*
in the land of *Yah Hudah*
and the suburbs all around.
56 And they give *Kaleb* the son of *Yephunneh*
the fields of the city and the courts thereof.
57 And they give the sons of *Aharon*
the cities of refuge
— *Yah Hudah*, *Hebron* and *Libnah* with her suburbs
and *Yattir* and *Eshtemoa* with her suburbs,
58 and *Hilen* with her suburbs,
Debir with her suburbs,
59 and *Ashan* with her suburbs
and *Beth Shemesh* with her suburbs.
60 And from the *rod* of *Ben Yamin*;
Geba with her suburbs
and *Alemeth* with her suburbs
and *Anathoth* with her suburbs.
All their cities throughout their families
— thirteen cities.
61 And to the sons of *Qehath*,
who remain of the family of that *rod*,
from the half *rod* — the half of *Menash Sheh*,
by *pebble* — ten cities.
62 And to the sons of *Gershom* for their families
— from the *rod* of *Yissachar*
and from the *rod* of *Asher*

1 CHRONICLES 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and out of the *tribe* **rod** of Naphtali,
and out of the *tribe* **rod** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
in Bashan, thirteen cities.
63 Unto the sons of Merari *were given* by *lot* **pebble**,
throughout their families,
out of the *tribe* **rod** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**,
and out of the *tribe* **rod** of Gad,
and out of the *tribe* **rod** of Zebulun, twelve cities.
64 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
gave to the *Levites* **Leviym** these cities with their suburbs.
65 And they gave by *lot* **pebble**
out of the *tribe* **rod**
of the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and out of the *tribe* **rod**
of the *children* **sons** of *Simeon* **Shimon**,
and out of the *tribe* **rod**
of the *children* **sons** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
these cities, which are called by *their* names.
66 And the *residue* of the families
of the sons of *Kohath* **Qehath**
had cities of their *coasts* **borders**
out of the *tribe* **rod** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**.
67 And they gave unto them, of the cities of refuge,
Shechem in mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
with her suburbs;
they gave also Gezer with her suburbs,
68 And *Jokmeam* **Yoqme Am** with her suburbs,
and *Bethhoron* **Beth Horon** with her suburbs,
69 And *Aijalon* **Ayalon** with her suburbs,
and *Gathrimmon* **Gath Rimmon** with her suburbs:
70 And out of the half *tribe* **rod** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**;
Aner with her suburbs,
and *Bileam* **Balaam** with her suburbs,
for the family of the *remnant* **remaining**
of the sons of *Kohath* **Qehath**.
71 Unto the sons of Gershom *were given*
out of the family
of the half *tribe* **rod** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
Golan in Bashan with her suburbs,
and Ashtaroth with her suburbs:
72 And out of the *tribe* **rod** of *Issachar* **Yissachar**;
Kedesh with her suburbs, Daberath with her suburbs,
73 And Ramoth with her suburbs,
and Anem with her suburbs:
74 And out of the *tribe* **rod** of *Asher*;
Mashal with her suburbs, and Abdon with her suburbs,
75 And *Hukok* **Huqqoq** with her suburbs,
and *Rehob* **Rechob** with her suburbs:
76 And out of the *tribe* **rod** of *Naphtali*;
Kedesh in *Galilee* **Galiyl** with her suburbs,
and Hammon with her suburbs,
and *Kirjathaim* **Qiryathaim** with her suburbs.
77 Unto the *rest* of the *children* **remaining sons** of Merari
were given out of the *tribe* **rod** of Zebulun,
Rimmon with her suburbs, Tabor with her suburbs:
78 And on the other side *Jordan* **Yarden**
by *Jericho* **Yericho**,
on the east side **from the rising** of *Jordan* **Yarden**,
were given them out of the *tribe* **rod** of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**,
Bezer in the wilderness with her suburbs,
and *Jahzah* **Yahsah** with her suburbs,
79 *Kedemoth* **Qedemoth** also with her suburbs,
and Mephaath with her suburbs:
80 And out of the *tribe* **rod** of Gad;
Ramoth in *Gilead* **Gilad** with her suburbs,
and *Mahanaim* **Machanayim** with her suburbs,
81 And Heshbon with her suburbs,
and *Jazer* **Yazer** with her suburbs.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF YISSACHAR

7 Now the sons of *Issachar* **Yissachar** *were*,
Tola, and Puah, *Jashub* **Yashub**, and Shimrom, four.
2 And the sons of Tola;
Uzzi, and *Rephaiah* **Repha Yah**, and *Jeriel* **Yeri El**,
and *Jahmai* **Yachmay**, and *Jibsam* **Yibsam**,
and *Shemuel* **Shemu El**,
heads of their father's house, *to wit*, of Tola:
they were valiant men of might **mighty mighty**
in their generations;

1 CHRONICLES 6, 7 671

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and from the rod of Naphtali
and from the rod of Menash Sheh in Bashan
— thirteen cities.
63 To the sons of Merari for their families
— by pebble from the rod of Reu Ben
and from the rod of Gad
and from the rod of Zebulun
— twelve cities.
64 — and the sons of Yisra El give the Leviym
these cities with their suburbs.
65 And they give these cities by pebble
from the rod of the sons of Yah Hudah
and from the rod of the sons of Shimon
and from the rod of the sons of Ben Yamin
which they call by name.
66 And the families of the sons of Qehath
have cities of their borders
from the rod of Ephrayim;
67 and they give them the cities of refuge:
Shechem in mount Ephrayim with her suburbs
and Gezer with her suburbs
68 and Yoqme Am with her suburbs
and Beth Horon with her suburbs
69 and Ayalon with her suburbs
and Gath Rimmon with her suburbs.
70 And from the half rod of Menash Sheh:
Aner with her suburbs
and Balaam with her suburbs,
for the family of the sons of Qehath who remain.
71 To the sons of Gershom
— from the family of the half rod of Menash Sheh:
Golan in Bashan with her suburbs
and Ashtaroth with her suburbs
72 — and from the rod of Yissachar:
Kedesh with her suburbs
Daberath with her suburbs
73 and Ramoth with her suburbs
and Anem with her suburbs
74 — and from the rod of Asher:
Mashal with her suburbs
and Abdon with her suburbs
75 and Huqqoq with her suburbs
and Rechob with her suburbs.
76 — and from the rod of Naphtali:
Kedesh in Galiyl with her suburbs
and Hammon with her suburbs
and Qiryathaim with her suburbs.
77 To the sons of Merari who remain
— from the rod of Zebulun:
Rimmon with her suburbs
Tabor with her suburbs,
78 and on the other side Yarden by Yericho
from the rising of Yarden
— from the rod of Reu Ben:
Bezer in the wilderness with her suburbs
and Yahsah with her suburbs
79 and Qedemoth with her suburbs
and Mephaath with her suburbs
80 — and from the rod of Gad:
Ramoth in Gilad with her suburbs
and Machanayim with her suburbs
81 and Heshbon with her suburbs
and Yazer with her suburbs.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF YISSACHAR

7 And the sons of Yissachar:
Tola and Puah, Yashub and Shimrom — four.
2 And the sons of Tola:
Uzzi and Repha Yah and Yeri El
and Yachmay and Yibsam and Shemu El
heads of house of their fathers — of Tola:
— mighty mighty in their generations;

1 CHRONICLES 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

whose number was in the days of David
two and twenty thousand and six hundred.
3 And the sons of Uzzi;
Izrahiah **Yizrach Yah**:
and the sons of *Izrahiah* **Yizrach Yah**;
Michael **Michah El**, and *Obadiah* **Obad Yah**, and *Joel* **Yah El**,
Ishiah **Yishshi Yah**, five: all of them *chief men* **heads**.
4 And with them, by their generations,
after the house of their fathers,
were *bands* **troops** of soldiers **hosts** for war,
six and thirty thousand *men*:
5 for they had many wives **abounded with women** and sons.
And their brethren
among all the families of *Issachar* **Yissachar**
were *valiant men of might* **mighty mighty**,
reckoned in all by their genealogies **all genealogized**
fourscore eighty and seven thousand.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF BEN YAMIN
6 *The sons of Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**;
Bela, and Becher, and *Jediael* **Yedia El**, three.
7 And the sons of Bela;
Ezbon **Esbon**, and Uzzi, and *Uzziel* **Uzzi El**,
and *Jerimoth* **Yerimoth**, and Iri, five;
heads of the house of their fathers,
mighty men of valour;
and were *reckoned by their genealogies* **genealogized**
twenty and two thousand and thirty and four.
8 And the sons of Becher;
Zemira **Zemirah**, and *Joash* **Yah Ash**,
and *Eliezer* **Eli Ezer**, and *Elioenai* **El Ya Enay**,
and Omri, and *Jerimoth* **Yerimoth**,
and *Abiah* **Abi Yah**, and Anathoth, and *Alameth* **Alemeth**.
9 All these are the sons of Becher.
And the number of them,
after their genealogy **genealogized** by their generations,
heads of the house of their fathers,
mighty men of valour,
was twenty thousand and two hundred.
10 The sons also of *Jediael* **Yedia El**;
Bilhan;
and the sons of Bilhan;
Jeush **Yeush**, and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**, and Ehud,
and *Chenaanah* **Kenaanah**, and Zethan,
and *Tharshish* **Tarshish**, and *Ahishahar* **Achiy Shachar**.
11 All these the sons of *Jediael* **Yedia El**,
by the heads of their fathers, *mighty men* of valour,
were seventeen thousand and two hundred *soldiers*,
fit to go out for war **hostility** and **battle war**.
12 Shuppmim also, and Huppmim, the *children* **sons** of Ir,
and Hushim, the sons of *Aher* **Acher**.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF NAPHTALI
13 The sons of Naphtali;
Jahziel **Yachsi El**, and Guni, and *Jezer* **Yeser**, and Shallum,
the sons of Bilhah.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF MENASH SHEH
14 The sons of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**;
Ashriel **Asri El**, whom she *bare* **birthed**:
(but his concubine the *Aramitess* **Aramiy**
bare **birthed** Machir the father of *Gilead* **Gilad**:
15 And Machir took to wife **woman**
the sister of Huppmim and Shuppmim,
whose sister's name was Maachah;
and the name of the second was *Zelophehad* **Seloph Had**:
and *Zelophehad* **Seloph Had** had daughters.
16 And Maachah
the wife **woman** of Machir *bare* **birthed** a son,
and she called his name Peresh;
and the name of his brother was Sheresh;
and his sons were Ulam and *Rakem* **Reqem**.
17 And the sons of Ulam;
Bedan.
These were the sons of *Gilead* **Gilad**,
the son of Machir,
the son of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**.
18 And his sister *Hammoleketh* **Molecheth**

1 CHRONICLES 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

who in the days of David
number twenty—two thousand and six hundred.
3 And the sons of Uzzi:
Yizrach Yah.
And the sons of Yizrach Yah:
Michah El and Obad Yah and Yah El,
Yishshi Yah — five — all heads:
4 and with them, by their generations,
after the house of their fathers,
troops of hosts for war, thirty—six thousand:
for they abound with women and sons.
5 And their brothers are mighty mighty
among all the families of Yissachar
all genealogized — eighty—seven thousand.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF BEN YAMIN
6 Of Ben Yamin:
Bela and Becher and Yedia El — three.
7 And the sons of Bela:
Esbon and Uzzi and Uzzi El
and Yerimoth and Iri — five
heads of the house of their fathers
mighty of valour and genealogized
— twenty—two thousand and thirty—four.
8 And the sons of Becher:
Zemirah and Yah Ash and Eli Ezer
and El Ya Enay and Omri and Yerimoth
and Abi Yah and Anathoth and Alemeth.
9 All these are the sons of Becher:
and their number
genealogized by their generations
— heads of the house of their fathers
— mighty of valour
— twenty thousand and two hundred.
10 And the sons also of Yedia El:
Bilhan.
And the sons of Bilhan:
Yeush and Ben Yamin and Ehud and Kenaanah
and Zethan and Tarshish and Achiy Shachar.
11 — all these the sons of Yedia El
by the heads of their fathers — mighty of valour
— seventeen thousand and two hundred
fit to go out for hostility and war
— and Shuppmim and Huppmim the sons of Ir
and Hushim the sons of Acher.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF NAPHTALI
12 The sons of Naphtali:
Yachsi El and Guni and Yeser and Shallum,
the sons of Bilhah.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF MENASH SHEH
13 The sons of Menash Sheh:
Asri El, whom his Aramiy concubine birthed
with Machir the father of Gilad;
and Machir takes women
for Huppmim and Shuppmim
— the name of the sister is Maachah
and the name of the second is Seloph Had;
and Seloph Had has daughters;
14 and Maachah the woman of Machir births a son
and she calls his name Peresh;
and the name of his brother is Sheresh;
and his sons are Ulam and Reqem.
15 And the sons of Ulam:
Bedan.
— these are the sons of Gilad,
the son of Machir the son of Menash Sheh.
16 And his sister Molecheth

1 CHRONICLES 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- bare Ishod* **birthed Ish Hod**,
and *Abiezer* **Abi Ezer**, and *Mahalah* **Machlah**.
19 And the sons of *Shemidah* **Shemi Da** were,
Ahian **Achyan**, and *Shechem*,
and *Likhi* **Liqchi**, and *Aniam* **Ani Am**.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF EPHRAYIM
20 And the sons of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**;
Shuthelah **Shuthelach**, and *Bered* his son,
and *Tahath* **Tachath** his son,
and *Eladah* **El Adah** his son, and *Tahath* **Tachath** his son,
21 And *Zabad* his son, and *Shuthelah* **Shuthelach** his son,
and *Ezer*, and *Elead* **El Ad**,
whom the men of Gath that were *born* **birthed** in that land
slew **slaughtered**,
because they *came down* **descended**
to take away their *cattle* **chattel**.
22 And *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** their father
mourned many days,
and his brethren came to *comfort* **sigh over** him.
23 And when he went in to his *wife* **woman**,
she conceived, and *bare* **birthed** a son,
and he called his name *Beriah*,
because it went evil with his house.
24 (And his daughter was *Sherah* **Sheerah**,
who built *Bethoron* **Beth Horon**
the nether, and the upper,
and *Uzzensherah* **Uzzen Sheerah**.)
25 And *Rephah* **Rephach** was his son, also *Resheph*,
and *Telah* **Telach** his son, and *Tahan* **Tachan** his son.
26 *Laadan* **Ladan** his son, *Ammihud* **Ammi Hud** his son,
Elishama **Eli Shama** his son.
27 Non his son, *Jehoshuah* **Yah Shua** his son.
28 And their possessions and *habitations* **sites** were,
Bethel **Beth El** and the *towns* **daughters** thereof,
and *eastward* **from the rising** Naaran,
and *westward* **duskward** Gezer,
with the *towns* **daughters** thereof;
Shechem also and the *towns* **daughters** thereof,
unto *Gaza* **Azzah** and the *towns* **daughters** thereof:
29 And by the *borders* **hand**
of the *children* **sons** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
Bethshean **Beth Shaan** and her *towns* **daughters**,
Taanach and her *towns* **daughters**,
Megiddo and her *towns* **daughters**,
Dor and her *towns* **daughters**.
In these *dwelt* **settled** the *children* **sons** of *Joseph* **Yoseph**
the son of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF ASHER
30 The sons of *Asher*;
Imnah **Yimnah**, and *Isuah* **Yishvah**,
and *Ishuai* **Yishvi**, and *Beriah*,
and *Serach* **Serach** their sister.
31 And the sons of *Beriah*;
Heber, and *Malchiel* **Malki El**,
who is the father of *Birzavith* **Birzoth**.
32 And *Heber* *begat* *Japhlet* **birthed Yaphlet**,
and *Shomer*, and *Hotham*,
and *Shua* their sister.
33 And the sons of *Japhlet* **Yaphlet**;
Pasach, and *Bimhal*, and *Ashvath*.
These are the *children* **sons** of *Japhlet* **Yaphlet**.
34 And the sons of *Shamer* **Shemer**;
Ahi **Achiy**, and *Rohgah* **Rohagah**,
Jehubbah **Jechubbah**, and *Aram*.
35 And the sons of his brother *Helem*;
Zophah **Sophach**, and *Imna* **Yimna**,
and *Shelesh*, and *Amal*.
36 The sons of *Zophah* **Sophach**;
Suah **Suach**, and *Harnepher*,
and *Shual*, and *Beri*, and *Imrah* **Yimrah**,
37 *Bezer*, and *Hod*, and *Shamma*,
and *Shilshah*, and *Ithran* **Yithran**, and *Beera*.
38 And the sons of *Jether* **Yether**;
Jephunneh **Yephunneh**, and *Pispah*, and *Ara*.
39 And the sons of *Ulla*;
Arah **Arach**, and *Haniel* **Hani El**, and *Rezia* **Risya**.
40 All these were the *children* **sons** of *Asher*,

1 CHRONICLES 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- births* **Ish Hod** and *Abi Ezer* and *Machlah*.
19 And the sons of *Shemi Da*:
Achyan and *Shechem* and *Liqchi* and *Ani Am*.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF EPHRAYIM
20 And the sons of *Ephrayim*:
Shuthelach and *Bered* his son
and *Tachath* his son
and *El Adah* his son and *Tachath* his son
21 and *Zabad* his son and *Shuthelach* his son
and *Ezer* and *El Ad*.
— and the men of *Gath* **birthed** in the land
slaughtered them
because they *descended* to take away their *chattel*.
22 And *Ephrayim* their father *mourns* many days
and his *brothers* come to *sigh over* him:
23 and when he goes in to his *woman*
she *conceives* and *births* a son;
and he calls his name *Beriah*
because it goes evil with his house.
24 And his daughter *Sheerah*
built *Beth Horon* the nether and the upper
and *Uzzen Sheerah*.
25 And *Rephach* his son and *Resheph*,
and *Telach* his son and *Tachan* his son,
26 *Ladan* his son, *Ammi Hud* his son,
Eli Shama his son,
27 *Non* his son, *Yah Shua* his son.
28 And their possessions and *sites*
are *Beth El* and her *daughters*
— from the *rising* of *Naaran* and *duskward* to *Gezer*
with her *daughters*;
Shechem also and her *daughters*,
to *Azzah* and her *daughters*;
29 and by the hand of the sons of *Menash Sheh*,
Beth Shaan and her *daughters*
Taanach and her *daughters*
Megiddo and her *daughters*
Dor and her *daughters*;
in these *settle* the sons of *Yoseph* the son of *Yisra El*.
GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF ASHER
30 The sons of *Asher*:
Yimnah and *Yishvah* and *Yishvi* and *Beriah*
and *Serach* their sister.
31 And the sons of *Beriah*:
Heber and *Malki El* the father of *Birzoth*.
32 And *Heber* *births* *Yaphlet* and *Shomer* and *Hotham*
and *Shua* their sister.
33 And the sons of *Yaphlet*:
Pasach and *Bimhal* and *Ashvath*.
— these are the sons of *Yaphlet*.
34 And the sons of *Shemer*:
Achiy and *Rohagah*, *Jechubbah* and *Aram*.
35 And the sons of his brother *Helem*:
Sophach and *Yimna* and *Shelesh* and *Amal*.
36 The sons of *Sophach*:
Suach and *Harnepher* and *Shual*
and *Beri* and *Yimrah*,
37 *Bezer* and *Hod* and *Shamma*
and *Shilshah* and *Yithran* and *Beera*.
38 And the sons of *Yether*:
Yephunneh and *Pispah* and *Ara*.
39 And the sons of *Ulla*:
Arach and *Hani El* and *Risya*.
40 — all these are the sons of *Asher*

1 CHRONICLES 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

heads of their father's house,
choice **pure** and mighty **men** of valour,
chief **head** of the **princes** **hierarchs**.

And the number
throughout the **genealogy** of them **genealogized**
that were apt to the **war** **hostility** and to **battle** **war**
was twenty and six thousand men.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF BEN YAMIN

8

Now *Benjamin* **begat** **Ben Yamin** **birthed**

Bela his **firstborn** **firstbirthed**,
Ashbel the second, and *Aharah* **Ach Rach** the third,
Nohah **Nochah** the fourth, and *Rapha* the fifth.

2

3

And the sons of Bela **were**,

4

And *Abishua* **Abi Shua**, and *Naaman*, and *Ahoah* **Ach Oach**,

5

And *Gera*, and *Shephuphan*, and *Huram* **Hiram**.

6

And these are the sons of *Ehud* **Echud**:

these are the heads of the fathers
of the **inhabitants** **settlers** of *Geba*,

and they **removed** **exiled** them to *Manahath* **Manachath**:

7

And *Naaman*, and *Ahiah* **Achih Yah**, and *Gera*,
he **removed** **exiled** them,

and **begat** **birthed** *Uzza*, and *Ahitud* **Achih Chud**.

8

And *Shaharaim* **begat** **Shacharayim** **birthed** *children*
in the **country** **field** of *Moab*,
after he had sent them away;

Hushim and *Baara* were his **wives** **women**.

9

And he **begat** **birthed** of *Hodesh* his **wife** **woman**,
Jobab **Yobab**, and *Zibia* **Sibya**,

and *Mesha*, and *Malcham*,

10

And *Jeuz* **Yeus**,

and *Shachia* **Shobyah**, and *Mirma* **Mirmah**.

These were his sons, heads of the fathers.

11

And of *Hushim*

he **begat** **birthed** *Abitub* **Abi Tub**, and *Elpaal* **El Paal**.

12

The sons of *Elpaal* **El Paal**;

Eber **Heber**, and *Misham*, and *Shamed* **Shemer**,

who built *Ono*, and *Lod*,

with the **towns** **daughters** thereof:

13

Beriah also, and *Shema*,

who were heads of the fathers

of the **inhabitants** **settlers** of *Aijalon* **Ayalon**,

who **drove** **away** **made** **flee**

the **inhabitants** **settlers** of *Gath*:

14

And *Ahio* **Achy**, *Shashak* **Shashaq**,

and *Jeremoth* **Yeremoth**,

15

And *Zebadiah* **Zebad Yah**, and *Arad*, and *Ader* **Eder**,

16

And *Michael* **Michah El**,

and *Ispah* **Yishpah**, and *Joha* **Yah Ha**,

the sons of *Beriah*;

17

And *Zebadiah* **Zebad Yah**, and *Meshullam*,

and *Hezeki* **Hezqi**, and *Heber*,

18

Ishmerai **Yishmeray** also,

and *Jeziel* **Yizliah**, and *Jobab* **Yobab**,

the sons of *Elpaal* **El Paal**;

19

And *Jakim* **Yaqim**, and *Zichri*, and *Zabdi*,

20

And *Eliehai* **Eli Enay**,

and *Zilthai* **Sillethay**, and *Eliel* **Eli El**,

21

And *Adaiah* **Ada Yah**,

and *Beraiah* **Bera Yah**, and *Shimrath*,

the sons of *Shimhi*;

22

And *Ishpan* **Yishpan**, and *Heber*, and *Eliel* **Eli El**,

23

And *Abdon*, and *Zichri*, and *Hanan*,

24

And *Hananiah* **Hanan Yah**,

and *Elam*, and *Anthothijah* **Anthothi Yah**,

25

And *Iphedeiah* **Yiphde Yah**, and *Penuel* **Penu El**,

the sons of *Shashak* **Shashaq**;

26

And *Shamsherai* **Shamsheray**,

and *Shehariah* **Shechar Yah**, and *Athaliah* **Athal Yah**,

27

And *Jaresiah* **Yaresh Yah**,

and *Eliah* **Eli Yah**, and *Zichri*,

the sons of *Jeroham* **Yerocham**.

28

These were heads of the fathers, by their generations,

chief **heads** **men**.

These **dwelt** **settled** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

29

And at *Gibeon* **Gibon**

dwelt **settled** the father of *Gibeon* **Gibon**;

whose **wife's** **woman's** name was *Maachah*;

30

And his **firstborn** **firstbirthed** son *Abdon*,

1 CHRONICLES 7, 8 674

exeGesés companion BIBLE

heads of the house of their father,
pure and mighty of valour — head of the hierarchs.

And the number genealogized
for the hostility and to war,
twenty—six thousand men.

GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF BEN YAMIN

8

And *Ben Yamin* **births** *Bela* his **firstbirthed**,

Ashbel the second and *Ach Rach* the third,

Nochah the fourth and *Rapha* the fifth.

2

And the sons of *Bela*:

Addar and *Gera* and *Abi Hud*

and *Abi Shua* and *Naaman* and *Ach Oach*

and *Gera* and *Shephuphan* and *Hiram*.

4

5

And these are the sons of *Echud*

the heads of the fathers of the settlers of *Geba*

whom he exiles to *Manachath*;

and he exiles *Naaman* and *Achih Yah* and *Gera*;

and **births** *Uzza* and *Achih Chud*.

7

8

And *Shacharayim* **births** in the field of *Moab*,

after he sends them away;

Hushim and *Baara* are his women.

9

And of his woman *Hodesh* he **births**

Yobab and *Sibya* and *Mesha* and *Malcham*

and *Yeus* and *Shobyah* and *Mirmah*.

— these are his sons — heads of the fathers.

10

11

And of *Hushim* he **births** *Abi Tub* and *El Paal*.

12

The sons of *El Paal*:

Heber and *Misham* and *Shemer*

who built *Ono* and *Lod* and her daughters;

and *Beriah* and *Shema*

heads of the fathers of the settlers of *Ayalon*

who cause the settlers of *Gath* to flee;

and *Achy*, *Shashaq* and *Yeremoth*

and *Zebad Yah* and *Arad* and *Eder*

and *Michah El* and *Yishpah* and *Yah Ha*

the sons of *Beriah*;

and *Zebad Yah* and *Meshullam*

and *Hezqi* and *Heber*

and *Yishmeray* and *Yizliah* and *Yobab*,

the sons of *El Paal*;

19

and *Yaqim* and *Zichri* and *Zabdi*

and *Eli Enay* and *Sillethay* and *Eli El*

20

and *Ada Yah* and *Bera Yah* and *Shimrath*

the sons of *Shimhi*;

21

and *Yishpan* and *Heber* and *Eli El*

and *Abdon* and *Zichri* and *Hanan*

22

and *Hanan Yah* and *Elam* and *Anthothi Yah*

and *Yiphde Yah* and *Penu El*

the sons of *Shashaq*;

and *Shamsheray*

and *Shechar Yah* and *Athal Yah*

and *Yaresh Yah* and *Eli Yah* and *Zichri*

the sons of *Yerocham*.

— these are heads of the fathers

by their generations

— heads who settle in *Yeru Shalem*.

29

And at *Gibon*, settles the father of *Gibon*

the name of his woman, *Maachah*;

and his **firstbirthed** son *Abdon*

30

1 CHRONICLES 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and Zur **Sur**, and Kish **Qish**, and Baal, and Nadab,
31 And Gedor, and Ahio **Achyó**, and Zacher **Zecher**.
32 And Mikloth begat Shimeah **Miqloth birthed Shimah**.
And these also dwelt settled with their brethren
in Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**, over against them.
33 And Ner begat Kish **birthed Qish**,
and Kish begat Saul **Qish birthed Shaul**,
and Saul begat Jonathan **Shaul birthed Yah Nathan**,
and Malchishua **Malki Shua**, and Abinadab **Abi Nadab**,
and Eshbaal **Esh Baal**.
34 And the son of Jonathan **Yah Nathan**,
was Meribbaal **Merib Baal**;
and Meribbaal begat Micah **Merib Baal birthed Michah Yah**.
35 And the sons of Micah **Michah Yah** were,
Pithon, and Melech,
and Tarea **Taarea**, and Ahaz **Achaz**.
36 And Ahaz begat Jehoadah **Achaz birthed Yah Addah**;
and Jehoadah begat **Yah Addah birthed** Alemeth,
and Azmaveth, and Zimri;
and Zimri begat Moza **birthed Mosa**,
37 And Moza begat Binea **Mosa birthed Binah**:
Rapha was his son,
Elesah **El Asah** his son, Azel **Asel** his son:
38 And Azel **Asel** had six sons, whose names are these,
Azrikam **Ezri Qam**, Bocheru,
and Ishmael **Yishma El**, and Sheariah **Shear Yah**,
and Obadiah **Obad Yah**, and Hanan.
All these were the sons of Azel **Asel**.
39 And the sons of Eshek **Esheq** his brother were,
Ulam his firstborn **firstbirthed**,
Jehush **Yeush** the second,
40 and Eliphelet **Eli Phelet** the third.
And the sons of Ulam
were mighty men of valour, archers **bowmen**,
and had many **abounded with** sons, and sons' sons,
an hundred and fifty.
All these are of the sons of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**.

GENEALOGIES INSCRIBED IN THE SCROLLS OF THE SOVEREIGNS OF YISRA EL AND YAH HUDAH

9

So all Israel **Yisra El**
were reckoned by genealogies **genealogized**;
and, behold,
they were written **inscribed** in the book scroll
of the kings **sovereigns**
of Israel **Yisra El** and Judah **Yah Hudah**,
who were carried away **exiled** to Babylon **Babel**
for their transgression **treason**.

GENEALOGY OF THE YISRA ELIY

2 Now the first inhabitants that dwelt **settlers**
in their possessions in their cities were,
the Israelites **Yisra Eliy**, the priests, Levites **Leviym**,
and the Nethinims **Nethinim**.
3 And in Jerusalem dwelt **Yeru Shalem** settled
of the children **sons** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and of the children **sons** of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**,
and of the children **sons** of Ephraim **Ephrayim**,
and Manasseh **Menash Sheh**;
4 Uthai **Uthay** the son of Ammihud **Ammi Hud**,
the son of Omri, the son of Imri, the son of Bani,
of the children **sons** of Pharez **Peres**
the son of Judah **Yah Hudah**.
5 And of the Shilonites **Shilohiy**;
Asaiah **Asah Yah** the firstborn **firstbirthed**, and his sons.
6 And of the sons of Zerah **Zerach**;
Jeuel **Yeu El**, and their brethren,
six hundred and ninety.
7 And of the sons of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**;
Sallu the son of Meshullam,
the son of Hodaviah **Hodav Yah**,
the son of Hasenuah **Senuah**,
8 And Ibneiah **Yibne Yah** the son of Jeroham **Yerocham**,
and Elah the son of Uzzi, the son of Michri,
and Meshullam the son of Shephathiah **Shaphat Yah**,
the son of Reuel **Reu El**, the son of Ibnijah **Yibni Yah**;
9 And their brethren, according to their generations,
nine hundred and fifty and six.
All these men were chief **head** of the fathers
in the house of their fathers.

1 CHRONICLES 8, 9 675

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and Sur and Qish and Baal and Nadab
and Gedor and Achyo and Zecher.
31 And Mikloth births Shimah:
32 and these also settle with their brothers
in Yeru Shalem, opposite them.
33 And Ner births Qish;
and Qish births Shaul;
and Shaul births Yah Nathan
and Malki Shua and Abi Nadab and Esh Baal.
34 And the son of Yah Nathan:
Merib Baal;
and Merib Baal births Michah Yah.
35 And the sons of Michah Yah:
Pithon and Melech and Taarea and Achaz.
36 And Achaz births Yah Addah;
and Yah Addah births Alemeth
and Azmaveth and Zimri;
and Zimri births Mosa;
37 and Mosa births Binah:
Rapha his son, El Asah his son, Asel his son.
38 And Asel has six sons, whose names are these:
Ezri Qam, Bocheru and Yishma El and Shear Yah
and Obad Yah and Hanan.
— all these are the sons of Asel.
39 And the sons of Esheq his brother:
Ulam his firstbirthed
Yeush the second and Eli Phelet the third.
40 And the sons of Ulam are mighty of valour
— bowmen;
and they abound with sons and sons of sons
— a hundred and fifty.
— all these are of the sons of Ben Yamin.

GENEALOGIES INSCRIBED IN THE SCROLLS OF THE SOVEREIGNS OF YISRA EL AND YAH HUDAH

9

And all Yisra El is genealogized;
and behold, they are inscribed in the scroll
of the sovereigns of Yisra El and Yah Hudah,
who were exiled to Babel for their treason.

GENEALOGY OF THE YISRA ELIY

2 And the first settlers
in their possessions in their cities
are the Yisra Eliy, the priests,
the Leviym and the Nethinim.
3 And of the sons of Yah Hudah
and of the sons of Ben Yamin
and of the sons of Ephrayim and Menash Sheh
settling in Yeru Shalem:
4 Uthay the son of Ammi Hud
the son of Omri the son of Imri the son of Bani.
Of the sons of Peres:
the son of Yah Hudah.
5 And of the Shilohiy:
Asah Yah the firstbirthed and his sons.
6 And of the sons of Zerach:
Yeu El and their brothers — six hundred and ninety.
7 And of the sons of Ben Yamin:
Sallu the son of Meshullam
the son of Hodav Yah the son of Senuah;
8 and Yibne Yah the son of Yerocham;
and Elah the son of Uzzi the son of Michri;
and Meshullam the son of Shaphat Yah
the son of Reu El the son of Yibni Yah;
9 and their brothers, according to their generations
— nine hundred and fifty — six.
— all these men are heads of the fathers
in the house of their fathers.

1 CHRONICLES 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

GENEALOGY OF THE PRIESTS

10 And of the priests;
Jedaiah **Yeda Yah**,
and Jehoiarib **Yah Arib**, and Jachin **Yachin**,
11 And Azariah **Azar Yah** the son of Hilkiyah **Hilqi Yah**,
the son of Meshullam, the son of Zadok **Sadoq**,
the son of Meraioth **Merayoth**,
the son of Ahitub **Achiy Tub**,
the ruler **eminent** of the house of **God Elohim**;
12 And Adaiah **Ada Yah** the son of Jeroham **Yerocham**,
the son of Pashur **Pashchur**,
the son of Malchijah **Malki Yah**,
and Maasiai **Masay** the son of Adiel **Adi El**,
the son of Jahzerah **Yachzerah**, the son of Meshullam,
the son of Meshillemith, the son of Immer;
13 And their brethren, heads of the house of their fathers,
a thousand and seven hundred and *threescore sixty*;
very able men **mighty of valour**
for the work of the service of the house of **God Elohim**.

GENEALOGY OF THE LEVIYM

14 And of the Levites **Leviym**;
Shemaiah **Shema Yah** the son of Hasshub **Hashshub**,
the son of Azrikam **Ezri Qam**,
the son of Hashabiah **Hashab Yah**, of the sons of Merari;
15 And Bakbakkar **Baqbaqqar**, Heresh, and Galal,
and Mattaniah **Mattan Yah** the son of Micah **Michah Yah**,
the son of Zichri, the son of Asaph;
16 And Obadiah **Obad Yah**
the son of Shemaiah **Shema Yah**,
the son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun **Yeduthun**,
and Berechiah **Berech Yah** the son of Asa,
the son of Elkanah **El Qanah**,
that dwelt settled in the *villages courts*
of the *Netophathites* **Netophathiy**.
17 And the porters were,
Shallum, and Akkub **Aqqub**,
and Talmon, and Ahiman **Achiy Man**,
and their brethren: Shallum was the *chief head*;
18 *Who hitherto waited in the king's gate eastward*
At the sovereign's portal from the rising;
they were porters in the *companies camps*
of the *children sons* of Levi.
19 And Shallum the son of Kore **Qore**,
the son of Ebiasaph **Abi Asaph**,
the son of Korah **Qorach** and his brethren,
of the house of his father, the *Korahites* **Qorachiy**,
were over the work of the service,
keepers guards
of the *gates thresholds* of the *tabernacle tent*;
and their fathers,
being over the *host camp* of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
were *keepers guards* of the entry.
20 And Phinehas **Pinechas** the son of Eleazar **El Azar**
was the ruler **eminent** over them *in time past formerly*,
and the **LORD Yah Veh** was with him.
21 And Zechariah **Zechar Yah**
the son of Meshelemiah **Meshelem Yah**
was porter of the *door opening*
of the *tabernacle tent* of the congregation.
22 All these which were *chosen purified*
to be porters in the *gates thresholds*
were two hundred and twelve.
These were *reckoned by their genealogy genealogized*
in their *villages courts*,
whom David and Samuel **Shemu El** the seer
did ordain founded in their *set office trustworthiness*.
23 So they and their *children sons*
had the oversight of were over the gates portals
of the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**, *namely*,
the house of the *tabernacle tent*, by *wards guards*.
24 In four *quarters winds* were the porters,
toward the east from the rising, west seaward,
north, and south.
25 And their brethren, *which were* in their *villages courts*,
were to come
after seven days from time to time with them.
26 For these Levites **Leviym**, the four *chief mighty* porters,
were *in their set office trustworthy*,
and were over the chambers and treasuries

1 CHRONICLES 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

GENEALOGY OF THE PRIESTS

10 And of the priests:
Yeda Yah and Yah Arib and Yachin
11 and Azar Yah the son of Hilqi Yah
the son of Meshullam the son of Sadoq
the son of Merayoth the son of Achiy Tub
— eminent of the house of Elohim;
12 and Ada Yah the son of Yerocham
the son of Pashchur the son of Malki Yah;
and Masay the son of Adi El
the son of Yachzerah the son of Meshullam
the son of Meshillemith the son of Immer;
13 and their brothers;
heads of the house of their fathers
— a thousand and seven hundred and sixty
— mighty of valour
for the work of the service of the house of Elohim.

GENEALOGY OF THE LEVIYM

14 And of the Leviym:
Shema Yah the son of Hashshub
the son of Ezri Qam the son of Hashab Yah
of the sons of Merari;
15 and Baqbaqqar, Heresh and Galal
and Mattan Yah the son of Michah Yah
the son of Zichri the son of Asaph;
16 and Obad Yah the son of Shema Yah
the son of Galal the son of Yeduthun;
and Berech Yah the son of Asa
the son of El Qanah
who settles in the courts of the Netophathiy.
17 And the porters:
Shallum and Aqqub and Talmon and Achiy Man;
and their brothers: Shallum is the head.
18 And at the portal of the sovereign, from the rising,
they are porters in the camps of the sons of Levi.
19 And Shallum the son of Qore
the son of Abi Asaph the son of Qorach,
and his brothers
of the house of his father the Qorachiy
are over the work of the service
— guards of the thresholds of the tent:
and their fathers over the camp of Yah Veh
are guards of the entry;
20 and Pinechas the son of El Azar
formerly eminent over them;
Yah Veh is with him.
21 Zechar Yah the son of Meshelem Yah is porter
of the opening of the tent of the congregation.
22 All these — purified to be porters in the thresholds
are two hundred and twelve
— genealogized in their courts,
whom David and Shemu El the seer
founded in their trustworthiness.
23 And they and their sons
are over the portals of the house of Yah Veh,
and the house of the tent, by guards.
24 The porters are at the four winds
— from the rising, seaward, north and south:
25 and from time to time
their brothers come in their courts
with them for seven days.
26 For these Leviym, the four mighty porters
are trustworthy
and are over the chambers and treasuries

1 CHRONICLES 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

27 of the house of God **Elohim**.
And they *lodged* **stayed overnight**
round about the house of God **Elohim**,
because the *charge* **guard** was upon them,
and the *opening* **key** thereof
every morning **by morning pertained to them is theirs**.
28 And *certain* of them *had the charge of* **were over**
the *ministering* **vessels instruments of service**,
that they should bring them *in and out by tale* **by number**.
29 Some of them also were *appointed* **numbered**
to *oversee* **over** the *vessels* **instruments**,
and all the instruments of the *sanctuary* **holies**,
and the *fine* flour, and the wine, and the oil,
and the frankincense, and the spices.
30 And some of the sons of the priests
made **perfumed** the ointment of the spices.
31 And *Mattithiah* **Mattith Yah**, one of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
who was the *firstborn* **firstbirthed**
of Shallum the *Korahite* **Qorachiy**,
had the *set office* **trust**
over the *things that were made in the pans* **griddle work**.
32 And *other* of their brethren,
of the sons of the *Kohathites* **Qehathiy**,
were over the *shewbread* **bread of arrangement**,
to prepare it every *sabbath* **shabbath**.
33 And these are the singers,
chief head of the fathers of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
who remaining in the chambers were *free* **liberated**:
for they were employed in that work **by day and night**.
34 These *chief head* fathers of the *Levites* **Leviym**
were *chief head* throughout their generations;
these *dwelt* **settled** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

GENEALOGY OF YEI EL

35 And in *Gibeon* **Gibon**
dwelt **settled** the father of *Gibeon* **Gibon**, *Jehiel* **Yei El**,
whose *wife's* **woman's** name was Maachah:
And his *firstborn* **firstbirthed** son Abdon,
then *Zur* **Sur**, and *Kish* **Qish**, and Baal, and Ner, and Nadab.
36 And Gedor, and *Ahio* **Achyo**,
and *Zechariah* **Zechar Yah**, and *Mikloth* **Miqloth**.
37 And *Mikloth* *begat* **Shimeam** *Miqloth* **birthed** **Shimam**.
38 And they also *dwelt* **settled** with their brethren
at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, over against their brethren.
39 And Ner *begat* **Kish** **birthed** **Qish**;
and *Kish* *begat* **Saul** **birthed** **Shaul**;
and *Saul* *begat* **Jonathan** **birthed** **Yah Nathan**,
and *Malchishua* **Malki Shua**,
and *Abinadab* **Abi Nadab**, and *Eshbaal* **Esh Baal**.
40 And the son of *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**,
was *Meribbaal* **Meri Baal**:
and *Meribbaal* *begat* **Micah** **birthed** **Michah Yah**.
41 And the sons of *Micah* **Michah Yah** were,
Pithon, and *Melech*,
and *Tahrea* **Tachrea**, and *Ahaz* **Achaz**.
42 And *Ahaz* *begat* **Jarah** **birthed** **Yarah**;
and *Jarah* *begat* **Yarah** **birthed** **Alemeth**,
and *Azmaveth*, and *Zimri*;
and *Zimri* *begat* **Moza** **birthed** **Mosa**;
43 And *Moza* *begat* **Binea** **birthed** **Binea**;
and *Rephaiah* **Repha Yah** his son,
Eleasah **El Asah** his son, *Azel* **Asel** his son.
44 And *Azel* **Asel** had six sons, whose names are these,
Azrikam **Ezri Qam**, *Bocheru*,
and *Ishmael* **Yishma El**, and *Sheariah* **Shear Yah**,
and *Obadiah* **Obad Yah**, and *Hanan*:
these were the sons of *Azel* **Asel**.

THE DEATH OF SHAUL

10 Now the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
fought against *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
fled from *before* **the face of** the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and fell down *slain* **pierced** in mount Gilboa.
2 And the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
followed hard **adhered** after *Saul* **Shaul**, and after his sons;
and the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
slew **Jonathan** **smote** **Yah Nathan**,
and *Abinadab* **Abi Nadab**, and *Malchishua* **Malki Shua**,
the sons of *Saul* **Shaul**.
3 And the *battle* **went sore** **war was heavy** against *Saul* **Shaul**,

1 CHRONICLES 9, 10 677

exeGesés companion BIBLE

27 of the house of Elohim:
and they stay overnight
all around the house of Elohim,
because they are on guard with the key
morning by morning.
28 And some are over the instruments of service
to bring them by number:
29 and some are numbered over the instruments
and all the instruments of the holies
and the flour and the wine and the oil
and the frankincense and the spices:
30 and some of the sons of the priests
perfume the ointment of the spices:
31 and Mattith Yah of the Leviym
the firstbirthed of Shallum the Qorachiy
has the trust over the griddle work:
32 and some of their brothers
of the sons of the Qehathiy
are over the bread of arrangement
— to prepare it every shabbath.
33 And the singers
— head of the fathers of the Leviym,
in the chambers are liberated:
for by day and night they are employed in that work.
34 — these head fathers of the Leviym
are head throughout their generations;
they settle at Yeru Shalem.

GENEALOGY OF YEI EL

35 And Yei El the father of Gibon settles in Gibon
the name of his woman, Maachah:
36 and his firstbirthed son Abdon
and Sur and Qish and Baal and Ner and Nadab
and Gedor and Achyo
and Zechar Yah and Miqloth.
37 And Miqloth births Shimam:
and they also settle with their brothers
at Yeru Shalem opposite their brothers.
38 And Ner births Qish
and Qish births Shaul
and Shaul births Yah Nathan and Malki Shua
and Abi Nadab and Esh Baal.
39 And the son of Yah Nathan:
Meri Baal;
and *Meri Baal* births Michah Yah.
40 And the sons of Michah Yah:
Pithon and *Melech* and *Tachrea*;
41 and Achaz births Yarah;
and Yarah births Alemeth and Azmaveth and Zimri;
42 and Zimri births Mosa;
and Mosa births Bina and Repha Yah his son,
El Asah his son, Asel his son.
43 And Asel has six sons, whose names are these:
Ezri Qam, *Bocheru* and *Yishma El* and *Shear Yah*
and *Obad Yah* and *Hanan*:
these are the sons of Asel.

THE DEATH OF SHAUL

10 And the Peleshethiy fight Yisra El;
and the men of Yisra El
flee the face of the Peleshethiy
and fall down pierced in mount Gilboa:
2 and the Peleshethiy
adhere after Shaul and after his sons;
and the Peleshethiy smite Yah Nathan
and Abi Nadab and Malki Shua the sons of Shaul:
3 and the war is heavy against Shaul

1 CHRONICLES 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 and the archers hit **bowmen** found him,
and he was **wounded writhed** of the archers.
Then said **Saul Shaul**
to his **armourbearer instrument bearer**,
Draw thy sword, and **thrust me through stab me** therewith;
lest these uncircumcised come and **abuse exploit** me.
But his **armourbearer would instrument bearer willed** not;
for he was **sore afraid mighty awed**.
So **Saul Shaul** took a sword, and fell upon it.
5 And when his **armourbearer instrument bearer**
saw that **Saul was dead Shaul died**,
he fell likewise on the sword, and died.
6 So **Saul Shaul** died, and his three sons,
and all his house died together.
7 And when all the men of **Israel Yisra El**
that were in the valley saw that they fled,
and that **Saul Shaul** and his sons **were dead had died**,
then they forsook their cities, and fled:
and the **Philistines Peleshethiy** came
and **dwelt settled** in them.
8 And **so be** it came to pass, on the morrow,
when the **Philistines Peleshethiy**
came to strip the **slain pierced**,
that they found **Saul Shaul** and his sons
fallen in mount Gilboa.
9 And when they had stripped him,
they **took lifted** his head, and his **armour instruments**,
and sent into the land of the **Philistines Peleshethiy**
round about,
to **carry tidings evangelize** unto their idols,
and to the people.
10 And they **put set** his **armour instruments**
in the house of their **gods elohim**,
and **fastened staked** his **head cranium**
in the **temple house** of Dagon.
11 And when all **Jabeshgilead Yabesh Gilad**
heard all that the **Philistines Peleshethiy**
had **done worked** to **Saul Shaul**,
They arose, all the valiant men,
12 and **took away lifted** the **body carcass** of **Saul Shaul**,
and the **bodies carcasses** of his sons,
and brought them to **Jabesh Yabesh**,
and **buried entombed** their bones
under the oak in **Jabesh Yabesh**,
and fasted seven days.
13 So **Saul Shaul** died for his **transgression treason**
which he **committed treasoned**
against the **LORD Yah Veh**,
even against the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
which he **kept guarded** not, and also for asking **counsel**
of one that had a **familiar spirit a necromancer**,
to enquire of it;
14 And enquired not of the **LORD Yah Veh**:
therefore he **slew deathified** him,
and turned the **kingdom sovereignty** unto David
the son of **Jesse Yishay**.

DAVID REIGNS OVER YISRA EL

11 Then all **Israel Yisra El**
gathered **themselves** to David unto Hebron, saying,
Behold, we are thy bone and thy flesh.
2 And **moreover in time past Also three yesters ago**,
even when **Saul Shaul** was **king sovereign**,
thou wast he
that ledest out and broughtest in **Israel Yisra El**:
and the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim** said unto thee,
Thou shalt **feed tend** my people **Israel Yisra El**,
and thou shalt be **ruler eminent**
over my people **Israel Yisra El**.
3 Therefore came all the elders of **Israel Yisra El**
to the **king sovereign** to Hebron;
and David **made cut** a covenant with them in Hebron
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh;
and they anointed David
king sovereign over **Israel Yisra El**,
according to the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
by **Samuel the hand of Shemu El**.
4 And David and all **Israel Yisra El**
went to **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**, which is **Jebus Yebus**;

1 CHRONICLES 10, 11678

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the bowmen find him
and the archers writhe him.
4 And Shaul says to his instrument bearer,
Draw your sword and stab me therewith;
lest these uncircumcised come and exploit me.
And his instrument bearer wills not
for he is mighty awed:
5 and Shaul takes a sword and falls on it:
and his instrument bearer sees Shaul die
and he likewise falls on the sword and dies:
6 and Shaul dies
and his three sons and all his house die together:
7 and all the men of Yisra El in the valley
see them flee
and Shaul and his sons die;
and they forsake their cities and flee:
and the Peleshethiy come and settle in them.
8 And so be it, on the morrow,
the Peleshethiy come to strip the pierced,
and they find Shaul and his sons
fallen in mount Gilboa:
9 and they strip him
and lift his head and his instruments
and send them all around the land of the Peleshethiy
to evangelize to their idols and to the people:
10 and they set his instruments
in the house of their elohim
and stake his cranium in the house of Dagon.
11 And all Yabesh Gilad
hears all that the Peleshethiy work to Shaul;
12 and they rise — all the valiant men
and lift the carcass of Shaul
and the carcasses of his sons
and bring them to Yabesh
and entomb their bones under the oak in Yabesh
and fast seven days.
13 And Shaul dies for the treason
he treasoned against Yah Veh
— against the word of Yah Veh which he guarded not
and also for asking of a necromancer,
— to enquire
and not enquire of Yah Veh:
14 so he deathifies him
and turns the sovereignty
to David the son of Yishay.

DAVID REIGNS OVER YISRA EL

11 And all Yisra El gathers to David to Hebron,
saying, Behold, your bone and your flesh.
2 Also three yesters ago
— even when Shaul was sovereign,
you led out and brought in Yisra El:
and Yah Veh your Elohim said to you,
Tend my people Yisra El
and be eminent over my people Yisra El!
3 And all the elders of Yisra El
come to the sovereign to Hebron:
and David cuts a covenant with them in Hebron
at the face of Yah Veh:
and they anoint David sovereign over Yisra El
— according to the word of Yah Veh
by the hand of Shemu El.
4 And David and all Yisra El go to Yeru Shalem
— which is Yebus

1 CHRONICLES 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

where the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy** were,
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land.

5 And the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jebus* **Yebus** said to David,
Thou shalt not come hither.

Nevertheless

David *took* **captured** the *castle* **net** of *Zion* **Siyon**,
which is the city of David.

6 And David said,
Whosoever smiteth the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy** first
shall be *chief* **head** and *captain* **governor**.

So *Joab* **Yah Ab** the son of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah**
went **ascended** first *up*, and was *chief* **head**.

7 And David *dwelt* **settled** in the *castle* **hunthold**;
therefore they called it the city of David.

8 And he built the city round about,
even from *Millo* round about:

and *Joab* **repaired** **Yah Ab** **enlivened**
the *rest* **survivors** of the city.

9 So *In walking*, David *waxed* **walked** greater and greater:
for the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth** was with him.

THE HEADS OF THE MIGHTY OF DAVID

10 These also are the *chief* **head**
of the mighty *men* whom David had,
who strengthened themselves with him
in his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**, and with all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
to *make* **have** him *king* **reign**,
according to the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
concerning *Israel* **Yisra El**.

11 And this is the number of the mighty *men*
whom David had;
Jashobeam **Yashob Am**,
an *Hachmonite* **a son of the Hachmoniy**,
the *chief* **head** of the *captains* **tertiaries**:
he *lifted up* **wakened** his spear against three hundred
slain **pierced** by him at one time.

12 And after him was *Eleazar* **El Azar** the son of *Dodo*,
the *Ahohite* **Ach Oachiy**,
who was one of the three **mighties** **mighty**.

13 He was with David at *Pasdammin* **Pas Dammin**,
and there the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
were gathered *together* to *battle* **war**,
where was
a *parcel* **an allotment** of *ground* **field** full of barley;
and the people fled
from *before* **the face of** the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.

14 And they set themselves
in the midst of that *parcel* **allotment**,
and *delivered* **rescued** it,
and *slew* **slaughtered** the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**;
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** saved them
by a great *deliverance* **salvation**.

15 Now three of the thirty *captains* **heads**
went down **descended** to the rock to David,
into the cave of *Adullam*;
and the *host* **camp** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
encamped in the valley of *Rephaim*.

16 And David was then in the hold,
and the *Philistines'* **garrison** **Peleshethiy** **station**
was then at *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**.

17 And David *longed* **desired**, and said,
Oh that one *would* give me drink of the water
of the well of *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**,
that is at the *gate* **portal**!

18 And the three *brake* **split** through the *host* **camp**
of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and *drew* **bailed** water
out of the well of *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**,
that was by the *gate* **portal**,
and *took* **lifted** it, and brought it to David:
but David *would* **willed to** not drink of it,
but poured it out to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

19 And said, My *God* **Elohim**, *forbid* it **far be it from** me,
that I should *do* **work** this *thing*:
shall I drink the blood of these men
that have put their lives in jeopardy **with their souls**?
for with the *jeopardy of their lives* **their souls**
they brought it.

Therefore he *would* **willed to** not drink it.

These *things did* **worked** these three *mightiest* **mighty**.

1 CHRONICLES 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— of the Yebusiy the settlers of the land.

5 And the settlers of Yebus say to David,
Come not here.
— and David captures the hunthold of Siyon
— the city of David.

6 And David says,
Whoever smites the Yebusiy first
becomes head and governor.

So Yah Ab the son of Seruyah
ascends first and becomes head:
and David settles in the hunthold;
so they call it City of David:
and he builds the city all around
— from Millo and all around:
and Yah Ab enlivens the survivors of the city:
and in walking, David walks greater and greater:
for Yah Veh Sabaoth is with him.

THE HEADS OF THE MIGHTY OF DAVID

10 And these are heads of the mighty of David
— who strengthen themselves with him
in his sovereigndom
and with all Yisra El,
to have him reign according to the word of Yah Veh
concerning Yisra El.

11 And this is the number of the mighty of David:
Yashob Am a son of the Hachmoniy,
the head of the tertiaryaries:
he wakened his spear against three hundred
— pierced at one time.

12 And after him
El Azar the son of Dodo the Ach Oachiy
of the three mighty;
13 he is with David at Pas Dammin;
and there the Peleshethiy gathered to war;
and there was an allotment of field full of barley;
and the people fled the face of the Peleshethiy;
and they set themselves midst that allotment
and rescued it;
and slaughtered the Peleshethiy;
and Yah Veh saved them by a great salvation.

15 And three of the thirty heads descend the rock
to David — to the cave of Adullam:
and the camp of the Peleshethiy
encamp in the valley of Rephaim:
and David is then in the hold
and the Peleshethiy station is then at Beth Lechem.

17 And David desired and said,
Oh that one give me drink of the water
of the well of Beth Lechem at the portal!

18 And the three
split through the camp of the Peleshethiy
and bailed water
from the well of Beth Lechem by the portal;
and lifted and brought to David.

And David willed to not drink of it
but poured it out to Yah Veh
and said,
My Elohim, far be it from me to work this:
I — Drink I the blood of these men with their souls?
For by their souls they bring it.
— and he willed to not drink.
The three mighty worked these.

1 CHRONICLES 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

20 And *Abishai* **Abi Shai** the brother of *Joab* **Yah Ab**,
he was *chief* **head** of the three:
for *lifting up* **wakening** his spear against three hundred,
he *slew* **pierced** them, and had a name among the three.
21 Of the three, he was more honourable than the two;
for he was their *captain* **governor**:
howbeit he attained not to the *first* three.
22 *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**,
the son of a valiant man of *Kabzeel* **Qabse El**,
who had done many acts — **great of deeds**;
he *slew* **smote** two *lionlike men* **Ariel** of Moab:
also he *went down* **descended** and *slew* **smote** a lion
in a *pit well* in a *snowy day* **of snow**.
23 And he *slew an Egyptian* **smote a man** — a *Misrayim*,
a man of *great stature* **measure**, five cubits high;
and in the *Egyptian's* **Misrayim's** hand
was a spear like a weaver's beam;
and he *went down* **descended** to him with a *staff* **scion**,
and *plucked* **stripped** the spear
out of the *Egyptian's* **Misrayim's** hand,
and *slew* **slaughtered** him with his own spear.
24 These *things did Benaiah* **worked Bena Yah**
the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**,
and had the name among the three *mighties* **mighty**.
25 Behold, he was honourable among the thirty,
but attained not to the *first* three:
and David set him over his guard.
26 Also the *valiant men of the armies* **mighty of valour** were,
Asahel **Asa El** the brother of *Joab* **Yah Ab**,
Elhanan **El Hanan** the son of Dodo
of *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**,
27 *Shammoth* the *Harorite* **Haroriy**,
Helez **Heles** the *Pelonite* **Paloniy**,
28 *Ira* the son of *Ikkesh* **Iqqesh** the *Tekoite* **Teqohiy**,
Abiezer **Abi Ezer** the *Antothite* **Anathothiy**,
29 *Sibbecai* **Sibbechay** the *Hushathite* **Hushathiy**,
Ilay **Ilay** the *Ahohite* **Ach Oachiy**,
30 *Maharai* **Maharay** the *Netophathite* **Netophathiy**,
Heled the son of *Baanah* the *Netophathite* **Netophathiy**,
31 *Ithai* **Ittay** the son of *Ribai* **Ribay** of *Gibeah* **Gibah**,
that pertained to the children of the sons
of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
Benaiah **Bena Yah** the *Pirathonite* **Pirathoniy**,
32 *Hurai* of the *brooks* **wadies** of *Gaash*,
Abiel **Abi El** the *Arbathite* **Arabahiy**,
33 *Azmaveth* the *Baharumite* **Bachurimiy**,
Eliabba **El Yachba** the *Shaalbonite* **Shaalbimiy**,
34 The sons of *Hashem* the *Gizonite* **Gizohiy**,
Jonathan **Yah Nathan**
the son of *Shage* the *Hararite* **Harariy**,
35 *Ahiam* **Achiy Am**
the son of *Sacar* **Sachar** the *Hararite* **Harariy**,
Eliphal **Eli Phal** the son of *Ur*,
36 *Hepher* the *Mecherathite* **Mecherahiy**,
Ahijah **Achiy Yah** the *Pelonite* **Paloniy**,
37 *Hezro* **Hesro** the *Carmelite* **Karmeliy**,
Naarai **Naaray** the son of *Ezbai*,
38 *Joel* **Yah El** the brother of *Nathan*,
Mibhar **Mibchar** the son of *Haggeri* **Hagariy**,
39 *Zelek* **Seleq** the *Ammonite* **Ammoniy**,
Naharai **Nachray** the *Berothite* **Berothiy**,
the *armourbearer* **instrument bearer** of *Joab* **Yah Ab**
the son of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah**,
40 *Ira* the *Ithrite* **Yetheriy**,
Gareb the *Ithrite* **Yetheriy**,
41 *Uriah* **Uri Yah** the *Hittite* **Hethiy**,
Zabad the son of *Ahlai* **Achiy Lay**,
42 *Adina* the son of *Shiza* the *Reubenite* **Reu Beniy**,
a *captain* **head** of the *Reubenites* **Reu Beniy**,
and thirty with him,
43 *Hanan* the son of *Maachah*,
and *Joshaphat* **Yah Shaphat** the *Mithnite* **Mithniy**,
44 *Uzzia* **Uzzi Yah** the *Ashterathite* **Ashtarothiy**,
Shama and *Jehiel* **Yei El**
the sons of *Hothan* the *Aroerite* **Aroeriy**,
45 *Jediael* **Yedia El** the son of *Shimri*,
and *Joha* **Yah Ha** his brother, the *Tizite* **Tisiy**,
46 *Eliel* **Eli El** the *Mahavite* **Machaviy**,

1 CHRONICLES 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

20 And *Abi Shai* the brother of *Yah Ab*
became head of the three:
for *wakening* his spear against three hundred
— **pierced**
— and has a name among the three:
21 of the three, he is more honorable than the two;
for he is their *governor*:
but he attained not to the three.
22 *Bena Yah* the son of *Yah Yada*
the son of a valiant man of *Qabse El*
— **great of deeds**:
he *smote* two *Ariel* of *Moab*;
and he *descended* and *smote* a lion in a well
in a day of *snow*;
23 and he *smote* a man — a *Misrayim*
— a man of *measure*; five cubits high;
and in the hand of the *Misrayim*
is a spear as the beam of a weaver;
and he *descended* to him with a *scion*
and *stripped* the spear from hand of the *Misrayim*
and *slaughtered* him with his own spear:
24 *Bena Yah* the son of *Yah Yada* worked these
and has the name among the three *mighty*:
25 behold, he is honorable among the thirty
but attained not to the three:
and David sets him over his guard.
26 And the *mighty of valour*:
Asa El the brother of *Yah Ab*,
El Hanan the son of *Dodo* of *Beth Lechem*,
27 *Shammoth* the *Haroriy*,
Heles the *Paloniy*,
28 *Ira* the son of *Iqqesh* the *Teqohiy*,
Abi Ezer the *Anathothiy*,
29 *Sibbechay* the *Hushathiy*,
Ilay the *Ach Oachiy*,
30 *Maharay* the *Netophathiy*,
Heled the son of *Baanah* the *Netophathiy*,
31 *Ittay* the son of *Ribay* of *Gibah*
of the sons of *Ben Yamin*,
Bena Yah the *Pirathoniy*,
32 *Hurai* of the *wadies* of *Gaash*,
Abi El the *Arabahiy*,
33 *Azmaveth* the *Bachurimiy*,
El Yachba the *Shaalbimiy*,
34 the sons of *Hashem* the *Gizohiy*,
Yah Nathan the son of *Shage* the *Harariy*,
35 *Achiy Am* the son of *Sachar* the *Harariy*,
Eli Phal the son of *Ur*,
36 *Hepher* the *Mecherahiy*,
Achiy Yah the *Paloniy*,
37 *Hesro* the *Karmeliy*,
Naaray the son of *Ezbai*,
38 *Yah El* the brother of *Nathan*,
Mibchar the son of *Hagariy*,
39 *Seleq* the *Ammoniy*,
Nachray the *Berothiy*
the *instrument bearer* of *Yah Ab* the son of *Seruyah*,
40 *Ira* the *Yetheriy*,
Gareb the *Yetheriy*,
41 *Uri Yah* the *Hethiy*,
Zabad the son of *Achiy Lay*,
42 *Adina* the son of *Shiza* the *Reu Beniy*
— a head of the *Reu Beniy* and thirty with him,
43 *Hanan* the son of *Maachah*,
and *Yah Shaphat* the *Mithniy*,
44 *Uzzi Yah* the *Ashtarothiy*,
Shama and *Yei El* the sons of *Hothan* the *Aroeriy*,
45 *Yedia El* the son of *Shimri*,
and *Yah Ha* his brother the *Tisiy*,
46 *Eli El* the *Machaviy*,

1 CHRONICLES 11, 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and Jeribai **Yeribay**, and Joshaviah **Yah Shavah**,
the sons of *Elnaam* **El Naam**,
and *Ithmah* **Yithmah** the *Moabite* **Moabiy**,
Eliel **Eli El**, and Obed,
and *Jasiel* **Yaasi El** the *Mesobaite* **Mesoba Yah**.

THE WARRIORS OF DAVID OF SIQLAG

12

Now these are they
that came to David to *Ziklag* **Siqlag**,
while he yet *kept himself close* **restrained**
because **from the face** of *Saul* **Shaul** the son of *Kish* **Qish**:
and they were among the mighty *men*, helpers of the war.

2

They were *armed* **kissed** with bows,
and could use both the right *hand* and the left
in *hurling* stones and *shooting* arrows out of a bow,
even of *Saul's* **Shaul's** brethren of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**.

3

The *chief* **head**
was *Ahiezzer* **Achiy Ezer**, then *Joash* **Yah Ash**,
the sons of *Shemaah* the *Gibeathite* **Gibathiy**;
and *Jeziel* **Yezav El**, and Pelet, the sons of *Azmaveth*;
and *Berachah*,

4

and *Jehu* **Yah Hu** the *Antothite* **Anathothiy**.
And *Ismaiah* **Yishma Yah** the *Gibeonites* **Giboniy**,
a mighty *man* among the thirty, and over the thirty;
and *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**, and *Jahaziel* **Yachazi El**,
and *Johanan* **Yah Hanan**,

5

and *Josabad* **Yah Zabad** the *Gederathite* **Gederahiy**,
Eluzai **El Uzay**, and *Jerimoth* **Yerimoth**,
and *Bealiah* **Beal Yah**, and *Shemariah* **Shemar Yah**,
and *Shephatiah* **Shaphat Yah** the *Haruphite* **Haruphiy**,

6

Elkanah **El Qanah**, and *Jesiah* **Yishshi Yah**,
and *Azareel* **Azar El**, and *Joezer* **Yah Ezer**,
and *Jashobeam* **Yashob Am**, the *Korhites* **Qorachiy**,
And *Joelah* **Yoelah**, and *Zebadiah* **Zebad Yah**,
the sons of *Jeroham* **Yerocham** of *Gedor*.

8

And of the *Gadites* **Gadiy**
there separated themselves unto David
into the *hold* **hunthold** to the wilderness
men of might **mighty of valour**, and men of war **hostility**
fit for the battle **war**,

that could *handle* **line up** shield and *buckler* **javelin**,
whose faces were *like* the faces of lions,
and were as swift
as the *roes* **gazelles** upon the mountains;

9

Ezer the *first* **head**, *Obadiah* **Obad Yah** the second,
Eliab **Eli Ab** the third,

10

Mishmannah the fourth, *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** the fifth,

11

Attai **Attay** the sixth, *Eliel* **Eli El** the seventh,

12

Johanan **Yah Hanan** the eighth,

13

Elzabad **El Zabad** the ninth,

14

Jeremiah **Yirme Yah** the tenth,
Machbanai **Machbenaiy** the eleventh.

15

These were of the sons of *Gad*,
captains **heads** of the host:

one of the least was over an hundred,
and the greatest over a thousand.

16

These are they
that *went* **passed** over *Jordan* **Yarden** in the first month,
when it had *overflowed* **overflowed** all his banks;
and they *put* **caused** to *flight* **flee** all them of the valleys,
both toward the east **from the rising**,
and *toward the west* **from the dusk**.

17

And there came of the *children* **sons**
of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin** and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
to the *hold* **hunthold** unto David.

18

And David went out to *meet them* **at their face**,
and answered and said unto them,
If ye be come *peaceably* **in shalom** unto me to help me,
mine heart shall be *knit* **altogether** unto you:
but if ye be come to *betray* **hurl** me
to *mine enemies* **my tribulators**,
seeing there is no *wrong* **violence**
in *mine hands* **my palms**,
the *God* **Elohim** of our fathers *look see* **thereon**,
and *rebuke* **reprove** it.

19

Then the spirit *came upon* **Amasai** **enrobed Amasay**,
who was chief **head** of the *captains* **tertiaries**, and he said,
Thine are we, David, and **with thee**,
thou son of *Jesse* **Yishay**: *peace* **shalom**,

1 CHRONICLES 11, 12681

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and Yeribay and Yah Shavah the sons of *El Naam*,
and *Yithmah* the *Moabiy*,
Eli El and Obed and Yaasi El the *Mesoba* **Yah**.

47

THE WARRIORS OF DAVID OF SIQLAG

12

And these come to David to *Siqlag*
while they *are* **restrained**
because of the face of *Shaul* the son of *Qish*:
and they are among the mighty — helpers of the war:
they are *kissed* with bows
and can use both the right and the left
in stones and arrows from a bow
— of the brothers of *Shaul* — of *Ben Yamin*.

2

3

The head is *Achiy Ezer* and *Yah Ash*
the sons of *Shemaah* the *Gibathiy*,
and *Yezav El* and *Pelet* the sons of *Azmaveth*,
and *Berachah* and *Yah Hu* the *Anathothiy*,
and *Yishma Yah* the *Giboniy*
mighty among the thirty and over the thirty,
and *Yirme Yah* and *Yachazi El*,
and *Yah Hanan* and *Yah Zabad* the *Gederahiy*,
El Uzay and *Yerimoth* and *Beal Yah*
and *Shemar Yah* and *Shaphat Yah* the *Haruphiy*,
El Qanah and *Yishshi Yah* and *Azar El*
and *Yah Ezer* and *Yashob Am* the *Qorachiy*,
and *Yoelah* and *Zebad Yah*
the sons of *Yerocham* of *Gedor*.

4

5

6

7

8

And of the *Gadiy*
the mighty of valour and men of hostility
separate themselves to David
to the *hunthold* to the wilderness for the war
— who *line up* shield and *javelin*
whose faces are the faces of lions
and as swift as the gazelles on the mountains:

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

Ezer the head,
Obad Yah the second,
Eli Ab the third,
Mishmannah the fourth,
Yirme Yah the fifth,
Attay the sixth,
Eli El the seventh,
Yah Hanan the eighth,
El Zabad the ninth,
Yirme Yah the tenth,
Machbenaiy the eleventh:
these are of the sons of *Gad*, heads of the host:
one of the least is over a hundred
and the greatest over a thousand:
these are they
who pass over *Yarden* in the first month,
when it *overflows* all its banks;
and they cause all in the valley to flee
— from the rising and from the dusk.
And some of the sons
of *Ben Yamin* and *Yah Hudah*
come to the *hunthold* to David.

And David goes out at their face
and answers and says to them,
If you come to me in *shalom* to help me,
my heart becomes yours:
but if to *hurl* me to my tribulators
— seeing there is no violence in my palms,
the *Elohim* of our fathers sees and reproveth.

And the spirit *enrobes* **Amasay**
the head of the *tertiaries*,
To you, O David
and with you, son of *Yishay*, *shalom*;

1 CHRONICLES 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

peace **shalom** be unto thee,
and peace **shalom** be to thine helpers;
for thy God **Elohim** helpeth thee.
Then David received **took** them,
and made **gave** them *captains* **heads** of the *band* **troop**.
19 And there fell
some of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** to David,
when he came with the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
against *Saul Shaul* to *battle* **war**:
but they helped them not:
for the *lords* **ringleaders** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
upon *advisement* **counsel** sent him away, saying,
He *will* **shall** fall to his *master* *Saul adoni* **Shaul**
to the *jeopardy* of our heads.
20 As he went to *Ziklag* **Siqlag**,
there fell to him of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
Adnah, and *Jozabad* **Yah Zabad**, and *Jediael* **Yedia El**,
and *Michael* **Michah El**, and *Jozabad* **Yah Zabad**,
and *Elihu* **Eli Hu**, and *Zilthai* **Sillethay**,
captains **heads** of the thousands
that were of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**.
21 And they helped David
against the *band* **troop** of the *rovers*:
for they were all mighty *men* of valour,
and were *captains* **governors** in the host.
22 For at that time day by day
there came to David to help him,
until it was a great *host* **camp**,
like the *host* **camp** of God **Elohim**.
THE WARRIORS OF DAVID OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL
23 And these are the numbers of the *bands* **heads**
that were *ready armed* **equipped** to the *war* **hostility**,
and came to David to Hebron,
to turn the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *Saul Shaul* to him,
according to the *word* **mouth** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
24 The *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
that bare shield and *spear* **javelin**
were six thousand and eight hundred,
ready armed **equipped** to the *war* **hostility**.
25 Of the *children* **sons** of *Simeon* **Shimon**,
mighty *men* of valour for the *war* **hostility**,
seven thousand and one hundred.
26 Of the *children* **sons** of *Levi*,
four thousand and six hundred.
27 And *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**
was the *leader* **eminent** of the *Aaronites* **Aharoniy**,
and with him were three thousand and seven hundred;
28 And *Zadok* **Sadoq**, a *young man* **lad** mighty of valour,
and of his father's house
twenty and two *captains* **governors**.
29 And of the *children* **sons** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
the *kindred* **brothers** of *Saul Shaul*,
three thousand:
for hitherto the *greatest part* **increase** of *them*
had *kept* **guarded** the *ward* **guard**
of the house of *Saul Shaul*.
30 And of the *children* **sons** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
twenty thousand and eight hundred,
mighty *men* of valour,
famous **men of name** throughout the house of their fathers.
31 And of the half *tribe* **rod** of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
eighteen thousand,
which were *expressed* **appointed** by name,
to come and make David *king* **reign**.
32 And of the *children* **sons** of *Issachar* **Yissachar**,
which were men
that *had understanding* **knew discernment** of the times,
to know what *Israel* **Yisra El** ought to *do* **work**;
the heads of them were two hundred;
and all their brethren were at their *commandment* **mouth**.
33 Of Zebulun, such as went forth to *battle* **hostility**,
expert in war **lined up for battle**,
with all instruments of war,
fifty thousand,
which could *keep rank* **line up for battle**:
they were not of double heart.

1 CHRONICLES 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

shalom to you; and shalom to your helpers;
for your Elohim helps you.
— and David takes them
and gives them as heads of the troop.
19 And some of Menash Sheh fall to David
when he comes with the Peleshethiy
to war against Shaul;
and they help them not:
for by counsel
the ringleaders of the Peleshethiy send him away
saying, He falls, with our heads, to his adoni Shaul.
20 And he goes to Siqlag;
and they of Menash Sheh,
Adnah and Yah Zabad and Yedia El
and Michah El and Yah Zabad
and Eli Hu and Sillethay
— heads of the thousands of Menash Sheh
fall to him:
21 and they help David against the troop:
for they are all mighty of valour
— governors in the host:
22 for at that time, day by day,
they come to David to help him;
until it is a great camp like the camp of Elohim.
THE WARRIORS OF DAVID OF THE SONS OF YISRA EL
23 And these are the numbers of the heads
equipped to the hostility
who come to David to Hebron
to turn the sovereigndom of Shaul to him
according to the mouth of Yah Veh
— the sons of Yah Hudah
who bear shield and javelin:
six thousand and eight hundred
equipped to the hostility.
25 Of the sons of Shimon
— mighty of valour for the hostility:
seven thousand and one hundred.
26 Of the sons of Levi:
four thousand and six hundred;
27 and Yah Yada is eminent of the Aharoniy
and three thousand and seven hundred with him;
28 and Sadoq — a lad mighty of valour
and twenty—two governors
of the house of his father.
29 And of the sons of Ben Yamin
the brothers of Shaul:
three thousand;
for until now the increase guarded the guard
of the house of Shaul.
30 And of the sons of Ephrayim:
twenty thousand and eight hundred
— mighty of valour;
men of name throughout the house of their fathers.
31 And of the half rod of Menash Sheh:
eighteen thousand
— appointed by name to come and have David reign.
32 And of the sons of Yissachar
who know discernment of the times;
to know what Yisra El ought to work;
their heads:
two hundred;
with all their brothers at their mouth.
33 Of Zebulun
such as go to hostility;
lined up for battle with all instruments of war:
fifty thousand
who line up for battle without a double heart.

1 CHRONICLES 12, 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

34 And of Naphtali a thousand **captains governors**,
and with them with shield and spear
thirty and seven thousand.
35 And of the **Danites Daniy**
expert in war **lined up in battle**
twenty and eight thousand and six hundred.
36 And of Asher, such as went forth to **battle hostility**,
expert in war **to line up for battle**,
forty thousand.
37 And on the other side of **Jordan Yarden**,
of the **Reubenites Reu Beniy**, and the **Gadites Gadiy**,
and of the half **tribe scion** of **Manasseh Menash Sheh**,
with all manner of instruments of **war hostility**
for the **battle war**,
an hundred and twenty thousand.
38 All these men of war,
that could *keep rank* **line up for battle**,
came with a *perfect heart* **heart at shalom** to Hebron,
to make David **king reign** over all **Israel Yisra El**:
and all the rest also of **Israel Yisra El** were of one heart
to make David **king reign**.
39 And there they were with David three days,
eating and drinking:
for their brethren had prepared for them.
40 Moreover they that were nigh them,
even unto Issachar Yissachar and Zebulun and Naphtali,
brought bread on **asses he burros**,
and on camels, and on mules, and on oxen,
and **meat food**, **meal flour**, **cakes lumps** of figs,
and **bunches of raisins raisincakes**, and wine, and oil,
and oxen, and **sheep abundantly flocks in abundance**:
for there was **joy cheer** in **Israel Yisra El**.

THE RETURN OF THE ARK

13

And David *consulted* **counselled**
with the **captains governors** of thousands and hundreds,
and with every **leader eminence**.

2 And David said
unto all the congregation of **Israel Yisra El**,
If it *seem* **be** good unto you,
and that it be of **the LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**,
let us send **abroad and break forth**
unto our brethren every where,
that **are left survive** in all the land of **Israel Yisra El**,
and with them **also** to the priests and **Levites Leviym**
which are in their cities and suburbs,
that they may gather themselves unto us:
3 And let us **bring again return**
the ark of our **God Elohim** to us:
for we **enquired sought him** not at it in the days of **Saul Shaul**.
4 And all the congregation
said that they **would should do work** so:
for the **thing word** was **right straight**
in the eyes of all the people.
5 So David **gathered congregated**
all **Israel Yisra El** together,
from **Shihor Shichor** of **Egypt Misrayim**
even unto the entering of **Hemath Hamath**,
to bring the ark of **God Elohim**
from **Kirjathjearim Qiryath Arim**.
6 And David **went up ascended**, and all **Israel Yisra El**,
to **Baal Ah**, that is, to **Kirjathjearim Qiryath Arim**,
which **belonged be** to **Judah Yah Hudah**,
to **bring up ascend** thence
the ark of **God the LORD Elohim Yah Veh**,
that **dwelleth settleth** between the **cherubims cherubim**,
whose **name where the Name** is called on it.
7 And they **carried rode** the ark of **God Elohim**
in a new **cart wagon**
out of the house of **Abinadab Abi Nadab**:
and **Uzza and Achyo** drive the **cart wagon**.
8 And David and all **Israel Yisra El**
played before God entertained at the face of Elohim
with all their **might strength**, and with **singing songs**,
and with harps, and with **psalteries bagpipes**,
and with **timbrels tambourines**, and with cymbals,
and with trumpets.
9 And when they came
unto the threshingfloor of **Chidon Kidon**,
Uzza put sent forth his hand to hold the ark;

1 CHRONICLES 12, 13683

exeGeses companion BIBLE

34 And of Naphtali:
a thousand governors
and thirty—seven thousand with them
with shield and spear.
35 And of the Daniy:
twenty—eight thousand and six hundred
lined up in battle.
36 And of Asher
such as go to hostility to line up for battle:
forty thousand.
37 And on the other side of Yarden,
of the Reu Beniy and the Gadiy
and of the half scion of Menash Sheh;
a hundred and twenty thousand;
with all manner of instruments of hostility
for the war.
38 All these men of war, who line up for battle,
come to Hebron with a heart of shalom
to have David reign over all Yisra El:
and all the rest also of Yisra El
are of one heart to have David reign.
39 And there they are with David
— three days — eating and drinking:
for their brothers had prepared for them.
40 And those near them bring bread
on he burros and on camels
and on mules and on oxen;
and food, flour, lumps of figs
and raisincakes and wine and oil
and oxen and flocks in abundance
to Yissachar and Zebulun and Naphtali;
for there is cheer in Yisra El.

THE RETURN OF THE ARK

13

And David counsels
with the governors of thousands and hundreds
and with every eminence.

2 And David says
to all the congregation of Yisra El,
If it be good to you
and that it be of **Yah Veh** our **Elohim**,
let us send and break forth to our brothers every where
who survive in all the land of Yisra El;
and to the priests and Leviym with them
in their cities and suburbs,
to gather unto us:
3 and return the ark of our **Elohim** to us:
for we sought not of him in the days of **Shaul**.
4 And all the congregation says that they work thus:
for the word is straight in the eyes of all the people.
5 And David congregates all Yisra El
from **Shichor** of **Misrayim**
even to the entering of **Hamath**;
to bring the ark of **Elohim** from **Qiryath Arim**.
6 And David and all Yisra El
ascend to **Baal Ah** — to **Qiryath Arim**, **Yah Hudah**
to ascend there the ark of **Elohim Yah Veh**
that settles between the cherubim,
where the Name is called upon it.
7 And they ride the ark of **Elohim** in a new wagon
from the house of **Abi Nadab**:
and **Uzza and Achyo** drive the wagon:
8 and David and all Yisra El
entertain at the face of **Elohim** with all their strength
and with songs and with harps
and with bagpipes and with tambourines
and with cymbals and with trumpets.
9 And they come to the threshingfloor of **Kidon**
and **Uzza** sends his hand to hold the ark;

1 CHRONICLES 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 for **they had released** the oxen *stumbled*.
And the *anger* **wrath** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
was kindled against Uzza, and he smote him,
because he *put* **spread** his hand to the ark:
and there he died *before God* **at the face of Elohim**.
11 And David was *displeased* **inflamed**,
because the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
had *made* **breached** a breach upon Uzza:
wherefore that place is called *Perezuzza* **Peres Uzza**
to this day.
12 And David was *afraid* **awed** of *God* **Elohim** that day,
saying,
How shall I bring the ark of *God* **Elohim** *home* to me?
13 So David *brought* **returned** not the ark *home* to himself
to the city of David,
but *carried it aside* **spread it** into the house
of *Obededom* **Obed Edom** the *Gittite* **Gittiy**.
14 And the ark of *God* **remained** **Elohim settled**
with the *family* **house** of *Obededom* **Obed Edom**
in his house three months.
And the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
blessed the house of *Obededom* **Obed Edom**,
and all that he had.

THE GENEALOGY OF THE EXPANDED FAMILY OF DAVID

14 Now Hiram *king* **sovereign** of *Tyre* **Sor**
sent *messengers* **angels** to David, and timber of cedars,
with *masons* **artificers of walls**
and *carpenters* **artificers of timber**,
to build him an house.
2 And David perceived
that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *confirmed* **established** him
king **sovereign** over *Israel* **Yisra El**,
for his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
was *lifted up on high*,
because of his people *Israel* **Yisra El**.
3 And David took more *wives* **women**
at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
and David *begat* **birthed** more sons and daughters.
4 Now these are the names of his *children* **birthed**
which he had in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
Shammua, and Shobab,
Nathan, and *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
5 And *Ibhar* **Yibchar**, and *Elishua* **Eli Shua**,
and *Elpalet* **Eli Phelet**,
6 And Nogah, and Nepheg, and *Japhia* **Yaphia**,
7 And *Elishama* **Eli Shama**,
and *Beeliada* **Baal Yada**, and *Eliphalet* **Eli Phelet**.
DAVID DEFEATS THE PELESHETHIY
8 And when the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
heard that David was anointed
king **sovereign** over all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
all the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
went up **ascended** to seek David.
And David heard of it,
and went out *against them* **at their face**.
9 And the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy** came
and spread themselves in the valley of Rephaim.
10 And David *enquired* **asked** of *God* **Elohim**, saying,
Shall I *go up* **ascend** against the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**?
And *wilt* **shalt** thou *deliver* **give** them into mine hand?
And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto him, *Go up* **Ascend**;
for I *will deliver* **shall give** them into thine hand.
11 So they *came up* **ascended**
to *Baalperazim* **Baal Perasim**;
and David smote them there.
Then David said,
God **Elohim** hath *broken in* **breached** upon mine enemies
by mine hand like the *breaking forth* **breaching** of waters:
therefore they called the name of that place
Baalperazim **Baal Perasim**.
12 And when they had left their *gods* **elohim** there,
David gave a *commandment* **said**,
and they were *burned* **Burn them** with fire.
13 And the *Philistines* yet *again* **Peleshethiy added yet**
to spread themselves *abroad* **out** in the valley.
14 Therefore David *enquired* **asked** again of *God* **Elohim**;
and *God* **Elohim** said unto him,
Go **Ascend** not up after them;

1 CHRONICLES 13, 14684

exeGesés companion BIBLE

10 for they had released the oxen:
and Yah Veh kindles his wrath
against Uzza and he smites him,
because he spread his hand to the ark:
and there he dies at the face of Elohim:
11 and David inflames,
because Yah Veh breaches a breach on Uzza:
and calls that place *Peres Uzza*/*Breach of Uzza*
to this day.
12 And David awes Elohim that day, saying,
How bring I the ark of Elohim to me?
13 And David returns not the ark to himself
to the city of David,
but spreads it into the house of *Obed Edom* the *Gittiy*:
and the ark of Elohim
14 settles with the house of *Obed Edom*
in his house three months:
and Yah Veh blesses the house of *Obed Edom*
and all he has.

THE GENEALOGY OF THE EXPANDED FAMILY OF DAVID

14 And Hiram sovereign of Sor sends David angels
and timber of cedars
with artificers of walls and artificers of timber
to build him a house.
2 And David perceives
that Yah Veh establishes him sovereign over Yisra El;
for his sovereigndom is lifted high
because of his people Yisra El.
3 And David takes more women at Yeru Shalem:
and David births more sons and daughters.
4 And these are the names
of those he birthed in Yeru Shalem:
Shammua and Shobab
Nathan and Shelomoh
5 and Yibchar and Eli Shua and Eli Phelet
6 and Nogah and Nepheg and Yaphia
7 and Eli Shama and Baal Yada and Eli Phelet.
DAVID DEFEATS THE PELESHETHIY
8 And the Peleshethiy hear
David is anointed sovereign over all Yisra El;
and all the Peleshethiy ascend to seek David:
and David hears and goes at their face:
and the Peleshethiy come
and spread themselves in the valley of Rephaim.
9 And David asks of Elohim, saying,
Ascend I against the Peleshethiy?
Give you them into my hand?
10 And Yah Veh says to him, Ascend;
and I give them into your hand.
11 And they ascend to Baal Perasim;
and David smites them there:
and David says,
Elohim breaches my enemies by my hand
as the breaching of waters:
so they call the name of that place
Baal Perasim.
12 — and they leave their elohim there.
And David says,
Burn them with fire.
13 — and the Peleshethiy
still add to spread themselves in the valley.
14 And again David asks of Elohim;
and Elohim says to him,
Ascend not after them;

1 CHRONICLES 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

turn away from them, and come upon them
over against **opposite** the *mulberry trees* **weepers**.
15 And **so be** it shall be,
when thou shalt hear a *sound* **voice** of *going* **marching**
in the tops of the *mulberry trees* **weepers**,
that then thou shalt go out to *battle* **war**:
for *God* **Elohim** is gone forth *before thee* **at thy face**
to smite the *host* **camp** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
16 David *therefore did* **worked**
as *God* **commanded** **Elohim** **misvahed** him:
and they smote
the *host* **camp** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
from *Gibeon* **Gibon** even to *Gazer* **Gezer**.
17 And the fame of David went out into all lands;
and *the LORD* **brought** **Yah Veh** **gave** the fear of him
upon all *nations* **goyim**.

THE ARK IN YERU SHALEM

15 And *David* **made** **he** **worked** him houses
in the city of David,
and prepared a place for the ark of *God* **Elohim**,
and *pitched* **spread** for it a tent.
2 Then David said,
None ought to *carry* **lift** the ark of *God* **Elohim**
but the *Levites* **Leviym**:
for them hath *the LORD* **Yah Veh** chosen
to *carry* **lift** the ark of *God* **Elohim**,
and to minister unto him *for ever* **eternally**.
3 And David
gathered **congregated** all *Israel* **Yisra El** *together*
to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
to *bring up* **ascend** the ark of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
unto his place,
which he had prepared for it.
4 And David *assembled* **gathered** the *children* **sons**
of *Aaron* **Aharon**, and the *Levites* **Leviym**:
5 Of the sons of *Kohath* **Qehath**;
Uriel **Uri El** the *chief* **governor**,
and his brethren an hundred and twenty:
6 Of the sons of *Merari*;
Asaiah **Asah Yah** the *chief* **governor**,
and his brethren two hundred and twenty:
7 Of the sons of *Gershom*;
Joel **Yah El** the *chief* **governor**,
and his brethren an hundred and thirty:
8 Of the sons of *Elizaphan* **El Saphan**;
Shemaiah **Shema Yah** the *chief* **governor**,
and his brethren two hundred:
9 Of the sons of *Hebron*;
Eliel **Eli El** the *chief* **governor**,
and his brethren *fourscore* **eighty**:
10 Of the sons of *Uzziel* **Uzzi El**;
Aminadab **Ammi Nadab** the *chief* **governor**,
and his brethren an hundred and twelve.
11 And David called for *Zadok* **Sadoq**
and *Abiathar* **Abi Athar** the priests,
and for the *Levites* **Leviym**,
for *Uriel* **Uri El**, *Asaiah* **Asah Yah**, and *Joel* **Yah El**,
Shemaiah **Shema Yah**, and *Eliel* **Eli El**,
and *Aminadab* **Ammi Nadab**,
12 And said unto them,
Ye are the *chief* **head** of the fathers of the *Levites* **Leviym**:
sanctify **hallow** yourselves, *both ye* and your brethren,
that ye may *bring* **ascend** up the ark
of *the LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
unto the place that I have prepared for it.
13 For because ye did it not at the first,
the LORD **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
made **breached** a breach upon us,
for that we sought him not after the *due order* **judgment**.
14 So the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**
sanctified **hallowed** themselves
to *bring up* **ascend** the ark
of *the LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
15 And the *children* **sons** of the *Levites* **Leviym**
bare the ark of *God* **Elohim**
upon their shoulders with the *staves* **yoke poles** *thereon*,
as *Moses* **commanded** **Mosheh** **misvahed**
according to the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

1 CHRONICLES 14, 15685

exeGeses companion BIBLE

turn from them
and come on them opposite the weepers:
15 and so be it,
when you hear a voice of marching
in the tops of the weepers,
then go out to war:
for Elohim goes at your face
to smite the camp of the Peleshethiy.
16 And David works as Elohim misvahs him:
and they smite the camp of the Peleshethiy
from Gibon even to Gezer:
17 and the fame of David goes into all lands;
and Yah Veh gives the fear of him on all goyim.

THE ARK IN YERU SHALEM

15 And he works himself houses in the city of David;
and prepares a place for the ark of Elohim
and spreads a tent for it.
2 Then David says,
No one ought to lift the ark of Elohim but the Leviym:
for Yah Veh chose them to lift the ark of Elohim
and to minister to him eternally.
3 And David congregates all Yisra El to Yeru Shalem
to ascend the ark of Yah Veh
to the place he prepares for it:
4 and David
gathers the sons of Aharon and the Leviym.
5 Of the sons of Qehath:
Uri El the governor and his brothers
— a hundred and twenty.
6 Of the sons of Merari:
Asah Yah the governor and his brothers
— two hundred and twenty.
7 Of the sons of Gershom:
Yah El the governor and his brothers
— a hundred and thirty.
8 Of the sons of El Saphan:
Shema Yah the governor and his brothers
— two hundred.
9 Of the sons of Hebron:
Eli El the governor and his brothers
— eighty.
10 Of the sons of Uzzi El:
Ammi Nadab the governor and his brothers
— a hundred and twelve.
11 And David calls for Sadoq and Abi Athar the priests
and for the Leviym
— for Uri El, Asah Yah and Yah El,
Shema Yah and Eli El and Ammi Nadab
and says to them,
You are the heads of the fathers of the Leviym:
hallow yourselves — you and your brothers
to ascend the ark of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
to the place I prepared for it:
13 because you *did it* not at the first
Yah Veh our Elohim breached a breach on us
because we sought him not after the judgment.
14 And the priests and the Leviym hallow themselves
to ascend the ark of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
15 and the sons of the Leviym
bear the ark of Elohim on their shoulders
with yoke poles
as Mosheh misvahed
according to the word of Yah Veh.

1 CHRONICLES 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 16 And David
spake **said** to the chief **governor** of the *Levites* **Leviym**
to appoint **stand** their brethren
to be the singers with instruments of *musick* **song**,
psalteries **bagpipes** and harps and cymbals,
sounding **heard**, by lifting up the voice with *joy* **cheer**.
- 17 So the *Levites* **Leviym**
appointed **stood** Heman the son of *Joel* **Yah El**;
and of his brethren,
Asaph the son of *Berechiah* **Berech Yah**;
and of the sons of Merari their brethren,
Ethan the son of *Kushaiah* **Qusha Yah**;
- 18 And with them their brethren of the second *degree*,
Zechariah **Zechar Yah**, Ben, and *Jaaziel* **Yaazi El**,
and *Shemiramoth* **Shemi Ramoth**, and *Jehiel* **Yechi El**,
and Unni, *Eliab* **Eli Ab**, and *Benaiah* **Bena Yah**,
and *Maaseiah* **Maase Yah**, and *Mattithiah* **Mattith Yah**,
and *Elipheleh* **Eli Phelehu**, and *Mikneiah* **Miqne Yah**,
and *Obededom* **Obed Edom**, and *Jehiel* **Yei El**, the porters.
- 19 So the singers, Heman, Asaph, and Ethan,
were appointed to *sound* **heard**
with cymbals of *brass* **copper**;
- 20 And *Zechariah* **Zechar Yah**, and *Aziel* **Azi El**,
and *Shemiramoth* **Shemi Ramoth**, and *Jehiel* **Yechi El**,
and Unni, and *Eliab* **Eli Ab**,
and *Maaseiah* **Maase Yah**, and *Benaiah* **Bena Yah**,
with *psalteries* on *Alamoth* **bagpipes** besides *virgins*;
- 21 And *Mattithiah* **Mattith Yah**, and *Elipheleh* **Eli Phelehu**,
and *Mikneiah* **Miqne Yah**, and *Obededom* **Obed Edom**,
and *Jeiel* **Yei El**, and *Azaziah* **Azaz Yah**,
with harps on the *Sheminith* **octave** to excel **oversee**.
- 22 And *Chenaniah* **Kenan Yah**,
chief **governor** of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
was for *song* **burden**:
he instructed **disciplined** about the *song* **burden**,
because he was *skilful* **discerning**.
- 23 And *Berechiah* **Berech Yah** and *Elkanah* **El Qanah**
were *doorkeepers* **porters** for the ark.
- 24 And *Shebaniah* **Sheban Yah**,
and *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**,
and *Nethaneel* **Nethan El**, and *Amasai* **Amasay**,
and *Zechariah* **Zechar Yah**, and *Benaiah* **Bena Yah**,
and *Eliezer* **Eli Ezer**, the priests,
did blow with **trumpeted** the trumpets
before **at the face** of the ark of *God* **Elohim**:
and *Obededom* **Obed Edom** and *Jehiah* **Yechi Yah**
were *doorkeepers* **porters** for the ark.
- 25 So David, and the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and the *captains* **governors** over thousands,
went to *bring* **ascend** up
the ark of the covenant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
out of the house of *Obededom* **Obed Edom**
with *joy* **cheer**.
- 26 And **so be** it came to pass,
when *God* **Elohim** helped the *Levites* **Leviym**
that bare the ark of the covenant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that they offered **sacrificed**
seven bullocks and seven rams.
- 27 And David was *clothed* **cloaked**
with a *robe* **mantle** of *fine* **bleached** linen,
and all the *Levites* **Leviym** that bare the ark,
and the singers,
and *Chenaniah* **Kenan Yah**
the *master* **governor** of the *song* **burden** with the singers:
David also had upon him an ephod of linen.
- 28 Thus all *Israel* brought up **Yisra El** ascended the ark
of the covenant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** with shouting,
and with *sound* **voice** of the *cornet* **shophar**,
and with trumpets, and with cymbals,
making a noise **heard** with *psalteries* **bagpipes** and harps.
- CELEBRATION OF DAVID
- 29 And **so be** it came to pass,
as the ark of the covenant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came to the city of David,
that Michal, the daughter of *Saul* **Shaul**
looking out at a window saw *king* **sovereign** David
dancing and *playing* **entertaining**:
and she despised him in her heart.

1 CHRONICLES 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 16 And David says to the governor of the *Leviym*
to stand their brothers the singers
with instruments of song
— bagpipes and harps and cymbals to be heard
by lifting the voice with cheer.
- 17 And the *Leviym* stand Heman the son of *Yah El*:
and of his brothers,
Asaph the son of *Berech Yah*;
and of the sons of Merari their brothers,
Ethan the son of *Qusha Yah*;
- 18 and with them their brothers of the second,
Zechar Yah, Ben and *Yaazi El*
and *Shemi Ramoth* and *Yechi El* and Unni,
Eli Ab and *Bena Yah* and *Maase Yah* and *Mattith Yah*
and *Eli Phelehu* and *Miqne Yah*.
- And *Obed Edom* and *Yei El*, the porters.
- 19 And the singers, Heman, Asaph and Ethan
are heard with cymbals of copper.
- 20 And *Zechar Yah* and *Azi El* and *Shemi Ramoth*
and *Yechi El* and Unni and *Eli Ab* and *Maase Yah*
and *Bena Yah* with bagpipes besides virgins.
- 21 And *Mattith Yah* and *Eli Phelehu* and *Miqne Yah*
and *Obed Edom* and *Yei El* and *Azaz Yah*
with harps on the octave to oversee.
- 22 And *Kenan Yah* governor of the *Leviym*
is for burden:
he disciplines about the burden because he discerns.
- 23 And *Berech Yah* and *El Qanah*
are porters for the ark.
- 24 And *Sheban Yah* and *Yah Shaphat* and *Nethan El*
and *Amasay* and *Zechar Yah* and *Bena Yah*
and *Eli Ezer* the priests
trumpet the trumpets at the face of the ark of *Elohim*.
- And *Obed Edom* and *Yechi Yah*
are porters for the ark.
- 25 And David and the elders of *Yisra El*
and the governors over thousands,
go to ascend the ark of the covenant of *Yah Veh*
from the house of *Obed Edom* with cheer.
- 26 And so be it,
Elohim helps the *Leviym*
who bear the ark of the covenant of *Yah Veh*;
and they sacrifice seven bullocks and seven rams.
- 27 And David cloaks himself
and all the *Leviym* who bear the ark
and the singers
and *Kenan Yah* the governor of the burden
of the singers
with a mantle of bleached linen;
and an ephod of linen on David.
- 28 And all *Yisra El*
ascends the ark of the covenant of *Yah Veh*
with shouting and with voice of the *shophar*
— with trumpets and with cymbals,
heard with bagpipes and harps.
- CELEBRATION OF DAVID
- 29 And so be it,
the ark of the covenant of *Yah Veh*
comes to the city of David,
and *Michal*, the daughter of *Shaul*
looks through a window
and sees sovereign David dancing and entertaining:
and she despises him in her heart.

1 CHRONICLES 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

16 So they brought the ark of God Elohím,
and set it in the midst of the tent
that David had pitched spread for it:
and they offered burnt sacrifices **obliterated holocausts**
and peace offerings **shelamim**
before God at the face of Elohím.

2 And when David had made an end finished
of offering **holocausting** the burnt offerings **holocausts**
and the peace offerings **shelamim**,
he blessed the people in the name of the LORD Yah Veh.

3 And he dealt **allotted** to every one man of Israel **Yisra El**,
both man and woman,
to every one man a loaf round of bread,
and a good piece of flesh **portion**,
and a flagon **cake** of wine.

4 And he appointed gave
certain of the Levites **Leviym** to minister
before at the face of the ark of the LORD Yah Veh,
and to record **memorialize**, and to thank **spread hands**
and praise **halal**
the LORD God Yah Veh Elohím of Israel **Yisra El**:
Asaph the chief **head**,
and next to him Zechariah **second Zechar Yah**,
Jeiel **Yei El**, and Shemiramoth **Shemi Ramoth**,
and Jehiel **Yechi El**, and Mattithiah **Mattith Yah**,
and Eliab **Eli Ab**, and Benaiah **Bena Yah**,
and Obededom **Obed Edom**:
and Jeiel **Yei El**

with psalteries **instruments of bagpipes** and with harps;
but Asaph made a sound **was heard** with cymbals;

6 Benaiah **Bena Yah** also
and Jahaziel **Yachazi El** the priests
with trumpets continually
before at the face
of the ark of the covenant of God Elohím.

DAVID SPREADS HANDS TO YAH VEH

7 Then on that day
David delivered first this psalm **gave at the beginning**
to thank the LORD **spread hands to Yah Veh**
into the hand of Asaph and his brethren.

8 Give thanks **Spread hands** unto the LORD Yah Veh,
call upon his name,
make known his deeds **exploits** among the people.

9 Sing unto him, sing psalms unto him,
talk **meditate** ye of all his wondrous **marvellous** works.

10 Glory **Halal** ye in his holy name:
let the heart of them rejoice **cheer**
that seek the LORD Yah Veh.

11 Seek the LORD Yah Veh and his strength,
seek his face continually.

12 Remember his marvellous works
that he hath done **worked**,
his wonders **omens**, and the judgments of his mouth;

13 O ye seed of Israel **Yisra El** his servant,
ye children **sons** of Jacob **Yaaqov**, his chosen ones.

14 He is the LORD Yah Veh our God Elohím;
his judgments are in all the earth.

15 Be ye mindful always of **Remember eternally**
his covenant;
the word which he commanded **misvahed**
to a thousand generations;
Even of the covenant
which he made **cut** with Abraham,
and of his oath unto Isaac **Yischaq**;

17 And hath confirmed the same **stood** to Jacob **Yaaqov**
for a law **statute**,
and to Israel **Yisra El** for an everlasting **eternal** covenant,
Saying,

18 Unto thee will **shall** I give the land of Canaan **Kenaan**,
the lot **cords** of your inheritance;

19 When ye were but few **men of number**,
even a few, and strangers **sojourners** in it.

20 And when they went
from nation **goyim** to nation **goyim**,
and from one kingdom **sovereigndom** to another people;
He suffered **allowed** no man to do **oppress** them wrong;
yea, he reprovéd **kings sovereigns** for their sakes,

1 CHRONICLES 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

16 And they bring the ark of Elohím
and set it midst the tent David spread for it:
and they oblate holocausts and shelamim
at the face of Elohím:
and David finishes
holocausting the holocausts and the shelamim
and he blesses the people in the name of Yah Veh:
and he allots to every man of Yisra El
— both man and woman — to every man
a round of bread and a portion and a cake.

4 And he gives the Leviym
to minister at the face of the ark of Yah Veh
and to memorialize and to spread hands and halal
Yah Veh Elohím of Yisra El:
Asaph the head and second Zechar Yah
Yei El and Shemi Ramoth and Yechi El
and Mattith Yah and Eli Ab and Bena Yah
and Obed Edom;
and Yei El with instruments of bagpipes and harps;
and Asaph is heard with cymbals;

6 and Bena Yah and Yachazi El the priests
with trumpets continually
at the face of the ark of the covenant of Elohím.

DAVID SPREADS HANDS TO YAH VEH

7 And on that day, at the beginning,
David gives to spread hands to Yah Veh
by the hand of Asaph and his brothers.

8 O spread hands to Yah Veh;
call on his name;
— his exploits known among the people;
sing to him — sing psalms to him;
meditate of all his marvellous works;
halal in his holy name.

10 O cheer, whose heart seeks Yah Veh:
seek Yah Veh and his strength;
seek his face continually.

12 Remember the marvellous works he works
— his omens and the judgments of his mouth:
O you seed of Yisra El his servant,
you sons of Yaaqov his chosen ones.

14 He — Yah Veh our Elohím;
his judgments are in all the earth.

15 Remember eternally his covenant
— the word he misvahs to a thousand generations;
which he cut with Abraham
and his oath to Yischaq;
and stands to Yaaqov for a statute
— to Yisra El for an eternal covenant.

18 Saying, To you I give the land of Kenaan
— the cords of your inheritance;
when you were men of number — even a few
and sojourners
— and they came from goyim to goyim
and from sovereigndom to another people;
he allowed no man to oppress them:
yes, he reprovéd sovereigns for their sakes.

1 CHRONICLES 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

22 *Saying*, Touch not mine anointed,
and do **nor vilify** my prophets *no harm*.
23 Sing unto the **LORD Yah Veh**, all the earth;
shew forth **evangelize** from day to day his salvation.
24 Declare **Scribe** his *glory* **honour**
among the *heathen* **goyim**;
his marvellous works among all nations.
25 For great is the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and *greatly* **mighty** to be *praised* **halaled**:
he also is to be *feared* **awed** above all *gods* **elohim**.
26 For all the *gods* **elohim** of the people are idols:
but the **LORD made Yah Veh worked** the heavens.
27 *Glory* **Grandeur** and *honour* **majesty**
are in **at** his *presence* **face**;
strength and *gladness* **rejoicing**
are in his place.
28 Give unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
ye kindreds **families** of the people,
give unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
glory **honour** and strength.
29 Give unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
the *glory* **honour due** unto his name:
bring **lift** an offering,
and come *before* **him at his face**:
worship the **LORD prostrate to Yah Veh**
in the *beauty* **majesty** of holiness.
30 *Fear before* **Whirl at the face** of him, all the earth:
the world also shall be *stable* **established**,
that it be not *moved* **toppled**.
31 Let the heavens *be glad* **cheer**,
and let the earth *rejoice* **twirl**:
and let men say among the *nations* **goyim**,
The LORD Yah Veh reigneth.
32 Let the sea *roar* **thunder**, and the fulness thereof:
let the fields *rejoice* **jump for joy**, and all that is therein.
33 Then shall the trees of the *wood* **sing out forest shout**
at the *presence* **face** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
because he cometh to judge the earth.
34 *O give thanks* **Spread hands** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
for he is good;
for his *mercy endureth* **for ever eternal mercy**.
35 And say ye, Save us,
O God Elohim of our salvation,
and gather us *together*,
and *deliver* **rescue** us from the *heathen* **goyim**,
that we may *give thanks* **spread hands** to thy holy name,
and *glory* **laud** in thy *praise* **halal**.
36 Blessed
be the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
for ever **eternally** and *ever* **eternally**.
And all the people said, Amen,
and *praised* the **LORD haled Yah Veh**.
37 So he left there *before* **at the face**
of the ark of the covenant of the **LORD Yah Veh**
Asaph and his brethren,
to minister *before* **at the face of** the ark continually,
as every day's work required **the day by day word**:
38 And *Obededom* **Obed Edom** with their brethren,
threescore sixty and eight;
Obededom **Obed Edom** also
the son of *Jeduthun* **Yeduthun** and Hosah
to be porters:
39 And *Zadok* **Sadoq** the priest,
and his brethren the priests,
before **at the face**
of the tabernacle of the **LORD Yah Veh**
in the *high place* **bamah** that was at *Gibeon* **Gibon**,
40 To *offer burnt offerings* **holocaust holocausts**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
upon the **sacrifice** altar of the *burnt offering* **holocaust**
continually morning and evening,
and to do according to all that is *written* **inscribed**
in the *law* **torah** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
which he *commanded* *Israel* **misvahed Yisra El**;
41 And with them Heman and *Jeduthun* **Yeduthun**,
and the *rest* **survivors** that were *chosen* **purified**,
who were *expressed* **appointed** by name
to *give thanks* **spread hands** to the **LORD Yah Veh**,
because his mercy endureth for ever **for his eternal mercy**;

1 CHRONICLES 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

22 Neither touch my anointed,
nor vilify my prophets.
23 Sing to Yah Veh, all the earth;
evangelize from day to day his salvation:
24 scribe his honor among the goyim
— his marvellous works among all nations.
25 For great is Yah Veh and mighty to halal;
and to awe above all elohim:
26 for all the elohim of the people are idols;
and Yah Veh worked the heavens:
27 grandeur and majesty are at his face;
strength and rejoicing are in his place.
28 Give to Yah Veh, you families of the people;
give to Yah Veh honor and strength:
29 give to Yah Veh the honor to his name;
lift an offering and come at his face:
prostrate to Yah Veh in the majesty of holiness.
30 Whirl at his face, all the earth;
31 also, the world is established; it topples not:
the heavens cheer and the earth twirls:
say among the goyim, Yah Veh reigns!
32 The sea thunders and the fulness thereof;
the field jumps for joy and all therein:
33 then the trees of the forest
shout at the face of Yah Veh
— because he comes to judge the earth.
34 Spread hands to Yah Veh for he is good;
for his eternal mercy.
35 And say, Save us, O Elohim of our salvation
and gather us and rescue us from the goyim;
that we may spread hands to your holy name
and laud in your halal.
36 Blessed — Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
eternally and eternally.
And all the people say, Amen!
And, Halal Yah Veh!
37 And there he leaves Asaph and his brothers
at the face of the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
to minister the day by day word
at the face of the ark continually:
38 and Obed Edom with their brothers
— sixty—eight:
and Obed Edom the son of Yeduthun and Hosah
to be porters:
39 and Sadoq the priest and his brothers the priests
at the face of the tabernacle of Yah Veh
in the bamah at Gibon
40 to holocaust holocausts to Yah Veh
on the sacrifice altar of the holocaust
continually morning and evening;
and to do according to all
inscribed in the torah of Yah Veh,
which he misvahed Yisra El:
41 and with them Heman and Yeduthun
and the survivors who were purified
— who were appointed by name
to spread hands to Yah Veh for his eternal mercy:

1 CHRONICLES 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

42 And with them Heman and Jeduthun **Yeduthun**
with trumpets and cymbals
for those that should *make a sound* **be heard**,
and with *musical instruments* **instruments of song**
of **God Elohim**.
And the sons of *Jeduthun* **Yeduthun**
were *porters* **for the portal**.
43 And all the people *departed* **went** every man
to his house:
and David returned to bless his house.

THE SON OF DAVID IS TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF YAH VEh

17

Now **so be** it *came to pass*,
as David *sat* **settled** in his house,
that David said to Nathan the prophet,
Lo **Behold**, I *dwelt* **settle** in an house of cedars,
but the ark of the covenant of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
remaineth **be** under curtains.
2 Then Nathan said unto David,
Do **Work** all that is in thine heart;
for **God Elohim** is with thee.
3 And **so be** it *came to pass*, the same night,
that the word of **God Elohim** came to Nathan, saying,
4 Go and *tell* **say to** David my servant,
Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Thou shalt not build me an house to *dwelt* **settle** in:
5 For I have not *dwelt* **settled** in an house
since the day that I *brought up* **Israel ascended** **Yisra El**
unto this day;
but have *gone* **been** from tent to tent,
and from *one* tabernacle to *another*.
6 Wheresoever I have walked with all **Israel Yisra El**,
spake **worded** I a word
to any **one** of the judges of **Israel Yisra El**,
whom I *commanded* **misvahed** to *feed* **tend** my people,
saying, Why have ye not built me an house of cedars?
7 Now therefore thus shalt thou say
unto my servant David,
Thus saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
I took thee from the *sheepcote* **habitation of rest**,
even from following **after the sheep flock**,
that thou shouldst be *ruler* **eminent**
over my people **Israel Yisra El**:
8 And I have been with thee
whithersoever thou hast walked,
and have cut off all thine enemies
from *before thee* **thy face**,
and have *made* **worked** thee a name
like the name of the great men that are in the earth.
9 Also I *will ordain* **shall set** a place
for my people **Israel Yisra El**,
and *will* **shall** plant them,
and they shall *dwelt* **tabernacle** in their place,
and shall *be* **moved** **quiver** no more;
neither shall the *children* **sons** of wickedness
waste them any more **add to wear them out**,
as at the beginning,
10 And since the *time* **days**
that I *commanded* **misvahed** judges
to be over my people **Israel Yisra El**.
Moreover I *will* **shall** subdue all thine enemies.
Furthermore I tell thee
that *the LORD will* **Yah Veh shall** build thee an house.
11 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
when thy days be *expired* **fulfilled**
that thou must go to be with thy fathers,
that I *will* **shall** raise up thy seed after thee,
which shall be of thy sons;
and I *will* **shall** establish his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
12 He shall build me an house,
and I *will* **shall** establish his throne *forever* **eternally**.
13 I *will be his father* **shall be to him, father**,
and he shall be *my son* **to me, son**:
and I *will* **shall** not *take* **turn aside** my mercy away
from him,
as I *took* **turned it aside**
from him that was *before thee* **at thy face**:
14 But I *will settle* **shall stand** him in mine house
and in my *kingdom* **for ever** **sovereigndom eternally**:
and his throne shall be established *for ever* **eternally**.

1 CHRONICLES 16, 17689

exeGesés companion BIBLE

42 and with them Heman and Yeduthun
with trumpets and cymbals to hear
and with instruments of song of Elohim:
and the sons of Yeduthun are for the portal.
43 And all the people go — each man to his house:
and David returns to bless his house.

THE SON OF DAVID IS TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF YAH VEh

17

And so be it, David settles in his house,
and David says to Nathan the prophet,
Behold, I settle in a house of cedars,
but the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
is under curtains.
2 And Nathan says to David,
Work all that is in your heart; for Elohim is with you.
3 And so be it, the same night,
the word of Elohim comes to Nathan, saying,
4 Go and say to David my servant,
Thus says Yah Veh,
Build me not a house to settle in:
5 for I settled not in a house
since the day I ascended Yisra El, to this day;
and I have been from tent to tent and the tabernacle:
6 wherever I walked with all Yisra El,
I worded a word to one of the judges of Yisra El
whom I misvahed to tend my people, saying,
Why build you not me a house of cedars?
7 And now you say thus to my servant David,
Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
I take you from the habitation of rest
— from after the flock
to be eminent over my people Yisra El:
8 and I am with you wherever you walk
and cut off all your enemies from your face
and work you a name
as the name of the great men in the earth:
9 and I set a place for my people Yisra El
and plant them;
and they tabernacle in their place
and quiver no more;
and the sons of wickedness add not to wear them out
as at the beginning;
10 yes, even since the days I misvahed judges
over my people Yisra El:
and I subdue all your enemies:
and I tell you, Yah Veh builds you a house.
11 And so be it,
when your days fulfill to go to your fathers,
that I raise your seed after you, being of your sons;
and I establish his sovereigndom:
12 he builds me a house
and I establish his throne eternally.
13 I am to him, father; and he is to me, son:
and I turn not aside my mercy from him,
as I turned it aside from him who is at your face:
14 but I stand him in my house
and in my sovereigndom eternally:
and his throne becomes established eternally.

1 CHRONICLES 17, 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

15 According to all these words,
 and according to all this vision,
 so did Nathan *speak* **word** unto David.
16 And David the *king* **sovereign** came
and *sat before the LORD* **settled at the face of Yah Veh**,
 and said, Who am I, O *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim**,
 and what is mine house,
 that thou hast brought me hitherto?
17 And yet this was a *small thing* **little** in thine eyes,
 O *God* **Elohim**;
 for thou hast *also spoken* **worded** of thy servant's house
 for a great while to come **from afar off**,
and hast *regarded* **seen** me according to the *estate* **manner**
 of a *man* **human** of high degree,
 O *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim**.
18 What can David *speak* **add** more to thee
 for the honour of thy servant?
 for thou knowest thy servant.
19 O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, for thy servant's sake,
 and according to thine own heart,
 hast thou *done* **worked** all this greatness,
 in making known all these *great things* **greatnesses**.
20 O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, there is none like thee,
 neither is there any *God* **Elohim** beside thee,
 according to all that we have heard with our ears.
21 And what one *nation* **goyim** in the earth
 is like thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
whom *God* **Elohim** went to redeem to be his own people,
 to *make* **set** thee a name
 of greatness and *terribleness* **awesomeness**,
 by driving out *nations* **goyim**
 from *before* **the face of** thy people,
 whom thou hast redeemed out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**?
22 For thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**
didst thou *make* **give** thine own people *for ever* **eternally**;
 and thou, *LORD* **Yah Veh**, becamest their *God* **Elohim**.
23 Therefore now, *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
 let the *thing* **word** that thou hast *spoken* **worded**
 concerning thy servant and concerning his house
 be established for ever **amened eternally**,
 and *do* **work** as thou hast *said* **worded**.
24 Let it even be *established* **amened**,
 that thy name
 may be *magnified for ever* **greatened eternally**, saying,
 The LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
 is the God — **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 even a God — **Elohim** to *Israel* **Yisra El**:
 and let the house of David thy servant
 be established *before thee* **at thy face**.
25 For thou, O my *God* **Elohim**,
 hast *told* **exposed in the ear of** thy servant
 that thou *wilt* **shalt** build him an house:
 therefore thy servant hath found in his heart
 to pray *before thee* **at thy face**.
26 And now, *LORD* **Yah Veh**, thou art *God* **Elohim**,
and hast *promised* **worded** this goodness unto thy servant:
27 Now therefore let it *please thee* **be thy will**
 to bless the house of thy servant,
 that it may be *before thee for ever* **at thy face eternally**:
 for thou blessest, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
 and it shall be blessed *for ever* **eternally**.

DAVID EXPANDS HIS DOMINION

18 Now after this **so be** it *came to pass*,
 that David smote the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
 and subdued them,
 and took Gath and her *towns* **daughters**
 out of the hand of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**.
2 And he smote Moab;
and the *Moabites* **Moabiy** became David's servants,
 and *brought gifts* **bore offerings**.
3 And David smote *Hadarezer* **Hadar Ezer**
 king **sovereign** of *Zobah* **Sobah** unto Hamath,
 as he went to *stablish* **station** his *dominion* **hand**
 by the river Euphrates.
4 And David *took* **captured** from him a thousand chariots,
 and seven thousand *horsemen* **cavalry**,
 and twenty thousand footmen:
 David also *houghed* **uprooted/hamstrung**
 all the chariot *horses*,

1 CHRONICLES 17, 18690

exeGesés companion BIBLE

15 — according to all these words
 and according to all this vision,
 Nathan words to David.
16 And David the sovereign comes
and settles at the face of Yah Veh and says,
 Who *am* I, O Yah Veh Elohim?
 What *is* my house, that you bring me here?
17 And this is little in your eyes, O Elohim;
 for you word of the house of your servant from afar
and see me in the manner of a human of high degree,
 O Yah Veh Elohim.
18 What more *may* David add to you
 for the honor of your servant?
 For you know your servant.
19 O Yah Veh, for sake of your servant
and according to your own heart,
 you work all this greatness
— that all these greatnesses be known.
20 O Yah Veh — no one like you
 — no Elohim except you
 according to all we hear with our ears.
21 And what one goyim in the earth
 is as your people Yisra El
— for whom Elohim goes to redeem
 to be his own people
to set you a name of greatness and awesomeness
by driving out goyim from the face of your people
— whom you redeemed from Misrayim?
22 Yes, you give your people Yisra El
to become your people eternally;
and you, Yah Veh, become their Elohim.
23 And now, O Yah Veh,
 may the word you word
concerning your servant and concerning his house
be amened eternally; and work as you word:
 — amened,
 that your name be greatened eternally
 saying, Yah Veh Sabaoth
— Elohim of Yisra El — Elohim to Yisra El:
and establish the house of David your servant
at your face:
24 for you, O my Elohim,
exposed in the ear of your servant
that you build him a house:
so your servant finds in his heart
to pray at your face:
25 and now, Yah Veh, you — Elohim;
and you word this goodness to your servant:
and now *may* your will be
to bless the house of your servant,
to be at your face eternally:
for you bless, O Yah Veh — bless eternally.

DAVID EXPANDS HIS DOMINION

18 And so be it, after this,
David smites the Peleshethiy and subdues them;
and takes Gath and her daughters
from the hand of the Peleshethiy:
2 and he smites Moab;
and the Moabiy become servants of David
and bear offerings:
3 and David smites Hadar Ezer sovereign of Sobah
to Hamath,
as he goes to station his hand by the river Euphrates:
4 and from him,
David captures a thousand chariots
and seven thousand cavalry
and twenty thousand footmen;
and David uproots/hamstrings all the chariots;

1 CHRONICLES 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but *reserved* **remained** of them an hundred chariots.
5 And when the *Syrians* **Aramiy** of *Damascus* **Dammeseq**
came to help *Hadarezer* **Hadar Ezer**,
king **sovereign** of *Zobah* **Sobah**,
David *slew* **smote** of the *Syrians* **Aramiy**
two and twenty thousand men.
6 Then David *put garrisons* **set**
in *Syria* — *damascus* **Aram Dammeseq**;
and the *Syrians* **Aramiy** became David's servants,
and *brought gifts* **bore offerings**.
Thus *the LORD* **preserved** **Yah Veh** **saved** David
whithersoever he went.
7 And David took the shields of gold
that were on the servants of *Hadarezer* **Hadar Ezer**,
and brought them to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
8 Likewise from *Tibhath* **Tibchath**, and from *Chun* **Kun**,
cities of *Hadarezer* **Hadar Ezer**,
brought **took** David very **mighty** much *brass* **copper**,
wherewith *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
made **worked** the *brasen* **copper** sea, and the pillars,
and the *vessels* **instruments** of *brass* **copper**.
9 Now when Tou king **sovereign** of Hamath
heard how David had smitten all the *host* **valiant**
of *Hadarezer* king **Hadar Ezer** **sovereign** of *Zobah* **Sobah**;
10 He sent Hadoram his son to king **sovereign** David,
to *enquire* **ask** of his *welfare* **shalom**,
and to *congratulate* **bless** him,
because he had fought against *Hadarezer* **Hadar Ezer**,
and smitten him;
(for *Hadarezer* had war **Hadar Ezer** was a man of wars
with Tou;)
and with *him* all manner of *vessels* **instruments**
of gold and silver and *brass* **copper**.
11 Them also king **sovereign** David
dedicated **hallowed** unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
with the silver and the gold
that he *brought* **lifted** from all *these nations* **goyim**;
from Edom, and from Moab,
and from the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
and from the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and from *Amalek* **Amaleq**.
12 Moreover *Abishai* **Abi Shai** the son of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah**
slew **smote** of the *Edomites* **Edomiy**
in *the valley of salt* **Gay Melach/Valley of Salt**
eighteen thousand.
13 And he *put garrisons* **set stations** in Edom;
and all the *Edomites* **Edomiy** became David's servants.
Thus *the LORD* **preserved** **Yah Veh** **saved** David
whithersoever he went.
14 So David reigned over all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and *executed* **worked** judgment and *justice* **justness**
among all his people.
15 And *Joab* **Yah Ab**
the son of *Zeruiah* **Seruyah** was over the host;
and *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
the son of *Ahilud* **Achiy Lud**, *recorder* **remembrancer**.
16 And *Zadok* **Sadoq** the son of *Ahitub* **Achiy Tub**,
and *Abimelech* **Abi Melech** the son of *Abiathar* **Abi Athar**,
were the priests; and Shavsha was scribe;
17 And *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**
was over
the *Cherethites* **executioners** and the *Pelethites* **couriers**;
and the sons of David
were *chief about* **heads at the hand of** the king **sovereign**.

SONS OF AMMON REJECT THE MERCY OF DAVID

19 Now **And so be** it *came to pass* after this,
that *Nahash* **Nachash**
the king **sovereign** of the *children* **sons** of Ammon died,
and his son reigned in his stead.
2 And David said, I *will shew kindness* **shall work mercy**
unto Hanun the son of *Nahash* **Nachash**,
because his father *shewed kindness* **worked mercy** to me.
And David sent *messengers* **angels**
to *comfort* **sigh over** him concerning his father.
So the servants of David came into the land
of the *children* **sons** of Ammon to Hanun,
to *comfort* **sigh over** him.
3 But the *princes* **governors** of the *children* **sons** of Ammon

1 CHRONICLES 18, 19691

exeGesés companion BIBLE

but a hundred of their chariots remain.
5 And the Aramiy of Dammeseq
come to help Hadar Ezer sovereign of Sobah,
and David smites of the Aramiy
— twenty—two thousand men:
6 and David sets in Aram Dammeseq;
and the Aramiy become servants of David
and bear offerings.
Thus Yah Veh saves David wherever he goes.
7 And David takes the shields of gold
on the servants of Hadar Ezer
and brings them to Yeru Shalem:
8 and from Tibchath and from Kun,
cities of Hadar Ezer,
David takes mighty much copper,
with which Shelomoh
works the copper sea and the pillars
and the instruments of copper.
9 And Tou sovereign of Hamath
hears that David smites all the valiant
of Hadar Ezer sovereign of Sobah;
10 and he sends Hadoram his son to sovereign David
to ask shalom of him and to bless him
because he fought Hadar Ezer and smote him
— for Hadar Ezer was a man of wars with Tou;
and all manner of instruments
of gold and silver and copper:
11 and sovereign David hallows to Yah Veh,
with the silver and the gold
he lifts from all the goyim
— from Edom and from Moab
and from the sons of Ammon
and from the Peleshethiy and from Amaleq.
12 And Abi Shai the son of Seruyah
smites eighteen thousand of the Edomiy
in Gay Melach/Valley of Salt.
13 And he sets stations in Edom;
and all the Edomiy become the servants of David.
— thus Yah Veh saves David wherever he goes.
14 And David reigns over all Yisra El
and works judgment and justness
among all his people.
15 And Yah Ab the son of Seruyah *is* over the host;
and Yah Shaphat the son of Achiy Lud,
remembrancer;
16 and Sadoq the son of Achiy Tub
and Abi Melech the son of Abi Athar, the priests;
and Shavsha, scribe;
17 and Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada
is over the executioners and the couriers;
and the sons of David
are heads at the hand of the sovereign.
SONS OF AMMON REJECT THE MERCY OF DAVID
19 **And so be** it, after this,
Nachash the sovereign of the sons of Ammon dies
and his son reigns in his stead.

2 And David says,
I work mercy to Hanun the son of Nachash
because his father worked mercy to me.
And David sends angels to sigh over him
concerning his father:
and the servants of David come into the land
of the sons of Ammon to Hanun to sigh over him.
3 And the governors of the sons of Ammon

1 CHRONICLES 19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

said to Hanun, *Thinkest thou* **In thine eyes**
that David doth **doth David** honour thy father,
that he hath sent *comforters unto* **to sigh over** thee?
are not his servants come unto thee for to *search* **probe**,
and to *overthrow* **overturn**, and to spy out the land?
4 Wherefore Hanun took David's servants,
and shaved them,
and cut off their garments in the midst
hard by **to their buttocks crotch**,
and sent them away.
5 Then there went *certain*,
and told David *how* **concerning** the men *were served*.
And he sent to meet them:
for the men were *greatly* **mighty** ashamed.
And the *king* **sovereign** said,
Tarry **Settle** at Jericho **Yericho**
until your beards *be grown* **sprout**,
and then return.
6 And when the *children* **sons** of Ammon
saw that they had made themselves
odious **a stink** to David,
Hanun and the *children* **sons** of Ammon
sent a thousand *talents* **rounds** of silver
to hire them chariots and *horsemen* **cavalry**
out of *Mesopotamia* **Aram Naharaim**,
and out of *Syriamaachah* **Aram Maachah**,
and out of *Zobah* **Sobah**.
7 So they hired thirty and two thousand chariots,
and the *king* **sovereign** of Maachah
and his people;
who came and *pitched* **encamped**
before **at the face of** Medeba.
And the *children* **sons** of Ammon
gathered *themselves together* from their cities,
and came to *battle* **war**.

THE HOST OF DAVID LINES UP AGAINST THE SONS OF AMMON

8 And when David heard of it,
he sent *Joab* **Yah Ab**, and all the host of the mighty *men*.
9 And the *children* **sons** of Ammon *came out* **went**,
and *put the battle in array* **lined up for war**
before **in front of** the *gate* **portal** of the city:
and the *kings* **sovereigns** that were come
were by themselves in the field.
10 Now when *Joab* **Yah Ab** saw
that the *battle* **face of the war** was set against him
before **at his face** and behind,
he chose out of all the *choice* **chosen** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and *put* **lined** them *in array* **up**
against **to meet** the *Syrians* **Aramiy**.
11 And the rest of the people he *delivered* **gave**
unto the hand of *Abishai* **Abi Shai** his brother,
and they *set themselves in array* **lined up**
against **to meet** the *children* **sons** of Ammon.
12 And he said, If the *Syrians* **Aramiy** be too strong for me,
then thou shalt *help me* **become my salvation**:
but if the *children* **sons** of Ammon be too strong for thee,
then I *will help* **shall save** thee.
13 *Be of good courage* **Strengthen**,
and let us *behave ourselves* **valiantly** **toughen**
for our people,
and for the cities of our *God* **Elohim**:
and let *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
do **work** that which is good in his *sight* **eyes**.
14 So *Joab* **Yah Ab** and the people that were with him
drew nigh *before* **at the face of** the *Syrians* **Aramiy**
unto the *battle* **war**;
and they fled *before him* **from his face**.
15 And when the *children* **sons** of Ammon
saw that the *Syrians* **Aramiy** were fled,
they likewise fled
before **from the face of** *Abishai* **Abi Shai** his brother,
and entered into the city.
16 Then *Joab* **Yah Ab** came to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And when the *Syrians* **Aramiy** saw
that they were *put to the worse* **smitten**
before **Israel** **at the face of** *Yisra El*,
they sent *messengers* **angels**,

1 CHRONICLES 19

exeGeses companion BIBLE

say to Hanun,
In your eyes, honors David your father,
by sending to sigh over you?
Come not his servants to you
to probe and to overturn and to spy out the land?
4 And Hanun takes the servants of David
and shaves them
and cuts off their garments in the middle to the crotch
and sends them away:
5 and some go and tell David concerning the men:
and he sends to meet them
for the men are mighty shamed.
And the sovereign says,
Settle at Yericho until your beards sprout
and return.
6 And the sons of Ammon
see they make themselves a stink to David,
and Hanun and the sons of Ammon
send a thousand rounds of silver
to hire chariots and cavalry from Aram Naharaim
and from Aram Maachah and from Sobah:
7 and they hire thirty—two thousand chariots
and the sovereign of Maachah and his people
— who come and encamp at the face of Medeba:
and the sons of Ammon
gather from their cities and come to war.

THE HOST OF DAVID LINES UP AGAINST THE SONS OF AMMON

8 And David hears,
and he sends Yah Ab and all the host of the mighty:
9 and the sons of Ammon go and line up for war
in front of the portal of the city:
and the sovereigns come by themselves in the field.
10 And Yah Ab sees
that the face of the war is set against him
at his face and behind;
and he chooses from all the chosen of Yisra El
and lines them up to meet the Aramiy:
11 and the rest of the people he gives
to the hand of Abi Shai his brother
and they line up to meet the sons of Ammon.
12 And he says, If the Aramiy are too strong for me,
then you become my salvation:
but if the sons of Ammon are too strong for you,
then I save you.
13 Strengthen! Toughen!
— for our people and for the cities of our Elohim:
O that Yah Veh work good in his eyes.
14 And Yah Ab and the people with him
draw near the face of the Aramiy to the war;
and they flee from his face:
15 and the sons of Ammon see the Aramiy flee,
and they likewise flee the face of Abi Shai his brother
and enter the city:
and Yah Ab comes to Yeru Shalem.
16 And the Aramiy
see they are smitten at the face of Yisra El;
and they send angels

1 CHRONICLES 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and drew forth **brought** the *Syrians* **Aramiy**
that were beyond the river:
and Shophach the *captain* **governor**
of the host of *Hadarezer* **Hadar Ezer**
went *before them* **at their face**.
17 And it was told David;
and he gathered all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and passed over *Jordan* **Yarden**, and came upon them,
and set *the battle in array* **lined up** against them.
So when David had
put the battle in array **lined up for war**
against **to meet** the *Syrians* **Aramiy**,
they fought with him.
18 But the *Syrians* **Aramiy** fled
before Israel **from the face of Yisra El**;
and David *slew* **slaughtered** of the *Syrians* **Aramiy**
seven thousand *men which fought* in chariots,
and forty thousand footmen,
and *killed* **deathified** Shophach
the *captain* **governor** of the host.
19 And when the servants of *Hadarezer* **Hadar Ezer**
saw that they were *put to the worse* **smitten**
before Israel **at the face of Yisra El**,
they *made peace* **shalamed** with David,
and became his servants:
neither *would* **willed** the *Syrians* **Aramiy**
help **to save** the *children* **sons** of Ammon any more.

20

THE HOST OF DAVID RUINS THE SONS OF AMMON
And **so be** it *came to pass*,
that after the **turn** of the year was *expired*,
at the time that *kings* **sovereigns** go out *to battle*,
Joab led forth **Yah Ab drove**
the *power* **valiant** of the *army* **hosts**,
and *wasted* **ruined** the *country* **land**
of the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
and came and besieged Rabbah.
But David *tarried* **settled** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And *Joab* **Yah Ab** smote Rabbah,
and *destroyed* **demolished** it.
2 And David took the crown of their *king* **sovereign**
from off his head,
and found it
to weigh a talent **the weight of a round** of gold,
and there were precious stones in it;
and it was set upon David's head:
and he brought also
exceeding much **a mighty abounding of** spoil
out of the city.
3 And he brought out the people that were in it,
and *cut* **sawed** them with saws,
and with *harrows* **slicers** of iron, and with *axes* **saws**.
Even so *dealt* **worked** David
with all the cities of the *children* **sons** of Ammon.
And David and all the people
returned to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
DAVID WARS WITH THE PELESHETHIY AND THE RAPHAIIY
4 And **so be** it *came to pass* after this,
that there *arose* **stood** war at Gezer
with the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**;
at which time Sibbechai **when Sibbechai**
the *Hushathite* **slew Sippai** **Hushathiy** **smote Sippay**,
that was **birthed** of the *children* of the *giant* **Rapha**:
and they were subdued.
5 And there was war again with the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**;
and *Elhanan* **El Hanan** the son of *Jair* **Yaur**
slew Lahmi **smote Lachmi**
the brother of *Goliath* **Golyath** the *Gittite* **Gittiy**,
whose spear *staff* **timber** was like a weaver's beam.
6 And yet again there was war at Gath,
where was a man of *great stature* **measure**,
whose *fingers and toes* **digits** were four and twenty,
six on each hand, and *six on each foot*:
and he also was *the son* **birthed** of the *giant* **Rapha**.
7 But when he *defied Israel* **reproached Yisra El**,
Jonathan **Yah Nathan**
the son of *Shimea* **Shimah** David's brother *slew* **smote** him.
8 These were *born* **birthed** unto the *giant* **Rapha** in Gath;
and they fell by the hand of David,
and by the hand of his servants.

1 CHRONICLES 19, 20693

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and bring the Aramiy from beyond the river:
and Shophach the governor of the host of Hadar Ezer
comes at their face.
17 And they tell David;
and he gathers all Yisra El and passes over Yarden
and comes on them and lines up against them:
and David lines up for war to meet the Aramiy
and they fight with him:
18 and the Aramiy flee the face of Yisra El:
and David slaughters of the Aramiy
seven thousand in chariots
and forty thousand footmen
and deathifies Shophach the governor of the host.
19 And the servants of Hadar Ezer
see they are smitten at the face of Yisra El;
and they shalam with David
and become his servants:
and the Aramiy will no more
to save the sons of Ammon.

20

THE HOST OF DAVID RUINS THE SONS OF AMMON
And so be it, after the turn of the year,
at the time sovereigns go out,
Yah Ab drives the valiant of the hosts
and ruins the land of the sons of Ammon;
and comes and besieges Rabbah:
and David settles at Yeru Shalem:
and Yah Ab smites Rabbah and demolishes it.
2 And David takes the crown
off the head of their sovereign
and finds the weight *is* a round of gold;
and there *are* precious stones in it;
and they set it on the head of David:
and he brings a mighty abounding of spoil
from the city:
3 and he brings the people therein
and saws them with saws
and with slicers of iron and with saws:
and thus David works
with all the cities of the sons of Ammon:
and David and all the people return to Yeru Shalem.
DAVID WARS WITH THE PELESHETHIY AND THE RAPHAIIY
4 And so be it, after this,
war stands at Gezer with the Peleshethiy;
and Sibbechai the Hushathiy
smites Sippay, birthed of Rapha:
and they are subdued.
5 And again there is war with the Peleshethiy;
and El Hanan the son of Yaur
smites Lachmi the brother of Golyath the Gittiy
— whose spear timber is like the beam of a weaver.
6 And again there is war at Gath;
there being a man of measure
whose digits are six and six — twenty—four;
and he also is birthed of Rapha:
7 and he reproaches Yisra El,
and Yah Nathan
the son of Shimah the brother of David
smites him.
8 These are birthed to Rapha in Gath;
and they fall by the hand of David
and by the hand of his servants.

1 CHRONICLES 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SATAN GOADS DAVID TO NUMBER YISRA EL

21 And Satan stood up against *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and provoked **goaded** David to number *Israel* **Yisra El**.
2 And David said to *Joab* **Yah Ab**
and to the *rulers* **governors** of the people,
Go, number and scribe *Israel* **Yisra El**
from *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba** even to Dan;
and bring the number of them to me, that I may know it.
3 And *Joab* answered **Yah Ab** said,
The LORD make **Yah Veh** add to his people
an hundred times so many *more* as they be:
but, my lord **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**,
are they not all my *lord's* **adoni's** servants?
why then doth my *lord* require **adoni** seek this *thing*?
why will **shall** he be a cause of *trespass* **guilt**
to *Israel* **Yisra El**?
4 Nevertheless the *king's* **sovereign's** word
prevailed against *Joab* **Yah Ab**.
Wherefore *Joab* departed **Yah Ab** went,
and went throughout all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and came to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
5 And *Joab* **Yah Ab**
gave the *sum* **number** of the *number* **census** of the people
unto David.
And all *they* of *Israel* **Yisra El** were a thousand thousand
and an hundred thousand men that drew sword:
and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
was four hundred *threescore and ten* **seventy**
thousand men that drew sword.
6 But *Levi* and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
counted **mustered** he not among them:
for the *king's* **sovereign's** word
was *abominable* **abhorrent** to *Joab* **Yah Ab**.
7 And *God* was *displeased* with this *thing*
And this word was evil in the eyes of Elohim;
therefore he smote *Israel* **Yisra El**.
8 And David said unto *God* **Elohim**,
I have sinned *greatly* **mightily**,
because I have *done* **worked** this *thing* **word**:
but now, I beseech thee,
do away **pass over** the *iniquity* **perversity** of thy servant;
for I *have done* **very foolishly** **follied mightily**.
9 And *the LORD* spake **Yah Veh** worded unto Gad,
David's seer, saying,
10 Go and *tell* **word** to David, saying,
Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
I offer **spread** to thee three *things*:
choose thee one of these, that I may *do* **work** it unto thee.
11 So Gad came to David, and said unto him,
Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, *Choose* **Take** to thee
12 Either three years' famine;
or three months to be *destroyed* **scraped away**
before **at the face of** thy *foes* **tribulators**,
while that the sword of thine enemies overtaketh thee;
or else three days the sword of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
even the pestilence, in the land,
and the angel of *the LORD* **destroying** **Yah Veh** **ruining**
throughout all the *coasts* **borders** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
Now therefore *advise thyself* **see** what word
I shall *bring again* **return** to him that sent me.
13 And David said unto Gad,
I am *in a great strait* **mighty tribulated**:
let me fall *now* **I pray thee**,
into the hand of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
for *very great* **mighty many** are his mercies:
but let me not fall into the hand of *man* **humanity**.
14 So *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
sent **gave** pestilence upon *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and there fell of *Israel* **Yisra El** seventy thousand men.
15 And *God* **Elohim**
sent an angel unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** to *destroy* **ruin** it:
and as he was *destroying* **ruining**,
the LORD **beheld** **Yah Veh** **saw**,
and he *repented* **sighed** *him* of the evil,
and said to the angel that *destroyed* **ruined**,
It is enough, **Enough!** *stay* **Slacken** now thine hand.
And the angel of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
stood by the threshingfloor of Ornan the *Jebusite* **Yebusiy**.
16 And David lifted up his eyes,

1 CHRONICLES 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SATAN GOADS DAVID TO NUMBER YISRA EL

21 And Satan stands against Yisra El
and goads David to number Yisra El:
2 and David says to Yah Ab
and to the governors of the people,
Go, number and scribe Yisra El
from Beer Sheba even to Dan;
and bring the number of them to me, so I know.
3 And Yah Ab says,
Yah Veh adds to his people a hundred times:
but, my adoni sovereign,
are they not all servants of my adoni?
Why seeks my adoni this?
Why becomes he a guilt to Yisra El?
4 And the word of the sovereign
prevails against Yah Ab:
and Yah Ab goes — goes through all Yisra El
and comes to Yeru Shalem:
5 and Yah Ab gives the number
of the census of the people to David:
and all Yisra El
is a thousand thousand and a hundred thousand men
who draw sword:
and Yah Hudah
is four hundred seventy thousand men
who draw sword:
6 and he musters not Levi and Ben Yamin
among them:
7 for the word of the sovereign is abhorrent to Yah Ab:
and this word is evil in the eyes of Elohim;
and he smites Yisra El.
8 And David says to Elohim,
I sinned mightily in working this word:
and now, I beseech you,
pass over the perversity of your servant;
for I follied mightily.
9 And Yah Veh words to Gad the seer of David,
saying,
10 Go and word to David, saying,
Thus says Yah Veh:
I spread these three to you:
choose one of these, for me to work to you.
11 And Gad comes to David and says to him,
Thus says Yah Veh:
Take to you
12 — either three years famine;
— or three months
to be scraped away at the face of your tribulators
as the sword of your enemies overtakes you;
— or three days of the sword of Yah Veh
even the pestilence in the land
and the angel of Yah Veh ruining
throughout all the borders of Yisra El:
and now see,
What word return I to him who sends me?
13 And David says to Gad,
I am mighty tribulated:
Let me fall, I pray you, into the hand of Yah Veh;
for mighty many are his mercies:
but that I not fall into the hand of humanity.
14 So Yah Veh gives pestilence on Yisra El:
and there fall seventy thousand men of Yisra El:
15 and Elohim sends an angel to ruin Yeru Shalem:
and as he ruins,
Yah Veh sees and he sighs concerning the evil;
and says to the angel who ruins,
Enough now! Slacken your hand!
And the angel of Yah Veh
stands by the threshingfloor of Ornan the Yebusiy:
16 and David lifts his eyes

1 CHRONICLES 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and saw the angel of the LORD Yah Veh stand between the earth and **between** the *heaven* heavens, having a *drawn sword* **his sword drawn** in his hand *stretched out* **spread** over Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.
Then David and the elders of Israel, who were *clothed* **covered** in sackcloth saq, fell upon their faces.

17 And David said unto God Elohim, Is it not I that *commanded* **said** the people to be numbered? even I it is that have sinned and *done evil indeed* **in vilifying, have vilified**; but as for *these sheep* **this flock**, what have they *done* **worked**? let thine hand, I *pray* **beseech** thee, O LORD Yah Veh my God Elohim, be on me, and on my father's house; but not on thy people, that they should be plagued.

18 Then the angel of the LORD Yah Veh *commanded* **said to** Gad to say to David, that David should *go up* **ascend**, and *set up an* **raise a sacrifice** altar unto the LORD Yah Veh in the threshingfloor of Ornan the *Jebusite* Yebusiy.

19 And David *went up* **ascended** at the *saying word* of Gad, which he *spake* **worded** in the name of the LORD Yah Veh.

20 And Ornan turned back, and saw the angel; and his four sons with him hid themselves. Now Ornan was threshing wheat.

21 And as David came to Ornan, Ornan looked and saw David, and went out of the threshingfloor, and bowed himself to David with *his face* **nostrils** to the *ground* earth.

22 Then David said to Ornan, *Grant* **Give** me the place of *this* **the** threshingfloor, that I may build *an* **a sacrifice** altar therein unto the LORD Yah Veh: thou shalt *grant* **give** me for the full *price* silver: that the plague may be *stayed* **restrained** from the people.

23 And Ornan said unto David, Take it to thee, and let my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign** *do work* that which is good in his eyes: *lo see*, I give thee the oxen also for *burnt offerings* **holocausts**, and the threshing *instruments* **sledges** for wood *timber*, and the wheat for the *meat* offering; I give it all.

24 And *king* **sovereign** David said to Ornan, Nay; but *in chatteling*, I *will verily buy* **shall chattel** it for the full *price* silver: for I *will* **shall** not *take* **lift** that which is thine for the LORD Yah Veh, nor *offer burnt offerings* **holocaust holocausts** without *cost* **gratuitously**.

25 So David gave to Ornan for the place six hundred shekels of gold by weight.

26 And David built there *an* **a sacrifice** altar unto the LORD Yah Veh, and *offered burnt offerings* **holocausted holocausts** and *peace offerings* **shelamim**, and called upon the LORD Yah Veh; and he answered him from *heaven* **the heavens** by fire upon the **sacrifice** altar of *burnt offering* **holocaust**.

27 And the LORD *commanded* **Yah Veh said to** the angel; and he *put up* **turned back** his sword *again* into the sheath thereof.

28 At that time when David saw that the LORD Yah Veh had answered him in the threshingfloor of Ornan the *Jebusite* Yebusiy, then he sacrificed there.

29 For the tabernacle of the LORD Yah Veh, which *Moses made* **Mosheh worked** in the wilderness, and the **sacrifice** altar of the *burnt offering* **holocaust**, were at that *season* **time** in the *high place* **bamah** at *Gibeon* **Gibon**.

30 But David could not *go before it* **at its face** to enquire of God Elohim: for he was *afraid* **frightened** because **from the face** of the sword of the angel of the LORD Yah Veh.

1 CHRONICLES 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and sees the angel of Yah Veh stand between the earth and between the heavens, with his sword drawn in his hand spread over Yeru Shalem.
— and David and the elders cover in saq and fall on their faces.

17 And David says to Elohim, Said I not to number the people? Yes, I who sins? Who in vilifying, vilifies? And as for this flock, what worked they? Let your hand, I beseech you, O Yah Veh my Elohim, be on me and on the house of my father; but not on your people, to plague them.

18 And the angel of Yah Veh says to Gad to say to David, that David ascend and raise a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Yebusiy.

19 And David ascends at the word Gad words in the name of Yah Veh: and Ornan turns back and sees the angel; and his four sons with him hide themselves: and Ornan threshes wheat: and David comes to Ornan; and Ornan looks and sees David and goes from the threshingfloor and bows himself to David with his nostrils to the earth.

22 And David says to Ornan, Give me the place of the threshingfloor to build a sacrifice altar therein to Yah Veh — give it me for the full silver: to restrain the plague from the people.

23 And Ornan says to David, Take it to yourself and *may* my adoni the sovereign work what is good in his eyes: see, I give you the oxen for holocausts and the threshing sledges for timber and the wheat for the offering — I give all.

24 And sovereign David says to Ornan, No; but in chatteling, I chattel it for the full silver: for neither lift I what is yours for Yah Veh, nor holocaust holocausts gratuitously.

25 And David gives Ornan six hundred shekels of gold by weight for the place: and there David builds a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh and holocausted holocausts and shelamim; and calls on Yah Veh.
— and he answers him from the heavens by fire on the sacrifice altar of holocaust.

27 And Yah Veh says to the angel; and he turns his sword back into its sheath: at that time David sees that Yah Veh answers him in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Yebusiy: and he sacrifices there.

29 And the tabernacle of Yah Veh, Mosheh worked in the wilderness and the sacrifice altar of the holocaust, are at that time in the bamah at Gibon: and David cannot go at its face to enquire of Elohim because he is frightened of the face of the sword of the angel of Yah Veh.

1 CHRONICLES 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

DAVID PREPARES TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF ELOHIM

22

Then David said,

This is the house of *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*,
and this is the **sacrifice** altar
of the *burnt offering* **holocaust** for *Israel Yisra El*.

2

And David *commanded said*
to gather *together* the *strangers* **sojourners**
that were in the land of *Israel Yisra El*;
and he *set* *masons* **stood hewers**
to hew *wrought* **hewn** stones
to build the house of *God Elohim*.

3

And David prepared iron in abundance
for the nails for the doors of the *gates* **portals**,
and for the *joinings* **joints**;

4

and *brass* **copper** in abundance without weight;
Also cedar trees *in abundance* **without number**;

5

for the *Zidonians* **Sidoniy** and *they of Tyre* **the Soriy**
brought *much* **an abundance** cedar wood **timber** to David.

And David said,

Solomon Shelomoh my son is *young* **a lad** and tender,
and the house that is to be builded for *the LORD Yah Veh*
must be exceeding magnificent **is to greaten upward**,
of fame **name** and of *glory* **adornment**
throughout all *countries* **lands**;

I *will shall* *therefore* now *make preparation* **prepare** for it.

So David prepared *abundantly* **in abundance**
before **at the face of** his death.

6

Then he called for *Solomon Shelomoh* his son,
and *charged* **misvahed** him to build an house
for *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El*.

7

And David said to *Solomon Shelomoh*,

My son, as for me,

it was in *my mind* **heart** to build an house
unto the name of *the LORD Yah Veh my God Elohim*;

8

But the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came to me, saying,
Thou hast *shed* **poured** blood *abundantly* **in abundance**,
and hast *made* **worked** great wars;

9

thou shalt not build an house unto my name,
because thou hast *shed* **poured** much blood
upon the earth in my *sight* **face**.

10

Behold, a son shall be *born* **birthed** to thee,
who shall be a man of rest;

and I *will shall* *give him* rest **him**

from all his enemies round about:

for his name shall be *Solomon Shelomoh*,

and I *will shall* *give peace* **shalom** and *quietness* **rest**
unto *Israel Yisra El* in his days.

11

He shall build an house for my name;

and he shall be *my son* **to me, son**,

and I *will shall* *be his father* **to him, father**;

and I *will shall* establish

the throne of his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**

over *Israel for ever* **Yisra El eternally**.

12

Now, my son, *the LORD Yah Veh* be with thee;

and prosper thou,

and build the house

of *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*,

as he hath *said* **worded** of thee.

13

Only *the LORD Yah Veh* give thee

wisdom **comprehension** and *understanding* **discernment**,

and *give* **misvah** thee *charge* concerning *Israel Yisra El*,

that thou mayest *keep* **guard** the *law* **torah**

of *the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim*.

14

Then shalt thou prosper,

if thou *takest heed* **guardest**

to *fulfil* **work** the statutes and judgments

which *the LORD Yah Veh*

charged Moses with **misvahed Mosheh**

concerning *Israel Yisra El*;

be strong **strengthen**, and *of good courage* **encourage**;

dread **awe** not, nor *be dismayed* **terrify**.

15

Now, behold, in my *trouble* **humiliation**

I have prepared for the house of *the LORD Yah Veh*

an hundred thousand *talents* **rounds** of gold,

and a thousand thousand *talents* **rounds** of silver;

and of *brass* **copper** and iron without weight;

for it is in abundance:

timber also and stone have I prepared;

and thou mayest add thereto.

1 CHRONICLES 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

DAVID PREPARES TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF ELOHIM

22

And David says,

This is the house of Yah Veh Elohim
and this is the sacrifice altar
of the holocaust for Yisra El.

2

And David says

to gather the sojourners in the land of Yisra El:
and he stands hewers to hew hewn stones
to build the house of Elohim:

3

and David prepares iron in abundance for nails
for the doors of the portals and for the joints;
and copper in abundance without weight;

4

and cedar trees without number:
for the Sidoniy and the Soriy
bring an abundance of cedar timber to David.

5

And David says,

Shelomoh my son is a lad and tender
and the house to be built for Yah Veh
is to greaten upward

— in name and adornment throughout all lands

— I now prepare.

Thus David prepares in abundance
at the face of his death.

6

And he calls for Shelomoh his son
and misvahs him to build a house
for Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:

7

and David says to Shelomoh his son,

As for me, it is in my heart to build a house
to the name of Yah Veh my Elohim:

8

and the word of Yah Veh comes to me, saying,

You poured blood in abundance

and worked great wars:

you build not a house to my name,
because you poured much blood on the earth

9

at my face:

behold — a son is birthed to you

who is a man of rest;

and I rest him from all his enemies all around:

for his name becomes Shelomoh/Of Shalom;

and I give Yisra El shalom and rest in his days:

10

he builds a house for my name;

and he becomes to me, son

and I become to him, father;

and I establish the throne of his sovereigndom
over Yisra El eternally.

11

Now, my son,

Yah Veh be with you and prosper you;

and build the house of Yah Veh your Elohim

as he words you:

12

only, Yah Veh give you

comprehension and discernment

and misvah you concerning Yisra El;

to guard the torah of Yah Veh your Elohim:

then you prosper,

if you guard to work the statutes and judgments

Yah Veh misvahed Mosheh concerning Yisra El.

Strengthen! Encourage!

Neither awe nor terrify!

13

And behold, in my humiliation

I prepared for the house of Yah Veh

a hundred thousand rounds of gold

and a thousand thousand rounds of silver;

and of copper and iron without weight;

for it is in abundance:

and I prepared timber and stone;

and you add thereto:

1 CHRONICLES 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

15 Moreover there are *workmen* **workers of the work**
with thee in abundance,
hewers and *workers* **artificers** of stone and timber,
and all manner of *cunning men* **wise**
for every manner of work.
16 Of the gold, the silver,
and the *brass* **copper**, and the iron, there is no number.
Arise *therefore*, and *be doing* **work**,
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** be with thee.
17 David also *commanded* **misvahed**
all the *princes* **governors of Israel** **Yisra El**
to help *Solomon* **Shelomoh** his son, *saying*,
18 Is not the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim** with you?
and hath he not given you rest *on every side* **round about**?
for he hath given the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land
into mine hand;
and the land is subdued
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**,
and *before* **at the face of** his people.
19 Now *set* **give** your heart and your soul
to seek the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**;
arise *therefore*, and build ye the *sanctuary* **holies**
of the *LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim**,
to bring the ark of the *covenant of the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and the *holy vessels* **instruments of God** **Elohim**,
into the house that is to be built
to the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

DAVID HAS SHELOMOH REIGN OVER YISRA EL

23 So when David was *old and full* **aged, satisfied** of days,
he made *Solomon* **Shelomoh** his son
king **to reign** over *Israel* **Yisra El**.
2 And he gathered *together*
all the *princes* **governors of Israel** **Yisra El**,
with the *priests* and the *Levites* **Leviym**.

SCRIBING THE LEVIYM

3 Now the *Levites* **Leviym** were *numbered* **scribed**
from the *age* **sons** of thirty years and upward:
and their number *by their polls* **per cranium**,
man mighty by man mighty, was thirty and eight thousand.
4 Of *which* **these**,
twenty and four thousand were to *set forward* **oversee**
the work of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
and six thousand were officers and judges:
5 Moreover four thousand were porters;
and four thousand *praised the LORD* **halaled Yah Veh**
with the *instruments* which I *made* **worked, said David**,
to *praise* **halal** therewith.

ALLOTMENTS OF THE SONS OF LEVI

6 And David *divided* **allotted** them *into courses* **allotments**
among the sons of *Levi*,
namely, *Gershon*, *Kohath* **Qehath**, and *Merari*.

SCRIBING THE GERSHONIY

7 Of the *Gershonites* **Gershoniym** were,
Laadan **Ladan**, and *Shimei* **Shimi**.
8 The sons of *Laadan* **Ladan**;
the *chief head* was *Jehiel* **Yechi El**,
and *Zetham*, and *Joel* **Yah El**, three.
9 The sons of *Shimei* **Shimi**;
Shelomith **Shelomoth**, and *Haziel* **Hazi El**, and *Haran*, three.
These were the *chief head* of the fathers of *Laadan* **Ladan**.
10 And the sons of *Shimei* **Shimi** were,
Jahath **Yachath**, *Zina*, and *Jeush* **Yeush**, and *Beriah*.
These four were the sons of *Shimei* **Shimi**.
11 And *Jahath* **Yachath** was the *chief head*,
and *Zizah* the second:
but *Jeush* **Yeush** and *Beriah*
had not many **abounded not** sons;
therefore they were in one *reckoning* **mustering**,
according to *their father's* house.

SCRIBING THE SONS OF QEATH

12 The sons of *Kohath* **Qehath**;
Amram **Am Ram**, *Izhar* **Yishar**,
Hebron, and *Uzziel* **Uzzi El**, four.
13 The sons of *Amram* **Am Ram**;
Aaron **Aharon** and *Moses* **Mosheh**;
and *Aaron* **Aharon** was separated,
that he should *sanctify* **hallow**
the *most holy things* **Holy of Holies**,
he and his sons *for ever* **eternally**,

1 CHRONICLES 22, 23697

exeGesés companion BIBLE

15 and there are workers of the work
with you in abundance
— hewers and artificers of stone and timber
and all manner of wise for every manner of work:
of the gold, the silver
and the copper and the iron, there is no number.
Rise and work!
And Yah Veh be with you.
17 — and David misvahs all the governors of Yisra El
to help Shelomoh his son.
18 Is not Yah Veh your Elohim with you?
And has he not given you rest all around?
For he gives the settlers of the land into my hand;
and the land subdues at the face of Yah Veh
and at the face of his people.
19 Now, give your heart and your soul
to seek Yah Veh your Elohim;
and rise and build the holies of Yah Veh Elohim
— to bring the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
and the holy instruments of Elohim
into the house to be built to the name of Yah Veh.

DAVID HAS SHELOMOH REIGN OVER YISRA EL

23 And David ages, satisfied of days;
and he has Shelomoh his son reign over Yisra El:
and he gathers all the governors of Yisra El,
with the priests and the Leviym.

2

SCRIBING THE LEVIYM

3 And they scribe the Leviym
from sons of thirty years and upward:
and their number per cranium — mighty by mighty,
is thirty—eight thousand.
4 Of these,
to oversee the work of the house of Yah Veh:
twenty—four thousand:
and six thousand officers and judges:
and four thousand porters;
and four thousand to halal Yah Veh
with the instruments I worked to halal.

4

5

ALLOTMENTS OF THE SONS OF LEVI

6 And David allots them allotments
of the sons of *Levi*:
Gershon, *Qehath* and *Merari*.

SCRIBING THE GERSHONIY

7 Of the *Gershoniym*:
Ladan and *Shimi*.
8 The sons of *Ladan*:
the head is *Yechi El* and *Zetham* and *Yah El* — three.
9 The sons of *Shimi*:
Shelomoth and *Hazi El* and *Haran* — three.
— these are the head of the fathers of *Ladan*.

10

11

12

SCRIBING THE SONS OF QEATH

The sons of *Qehath*:
Am Ram, *Yishar*, *Hebron* and *Uzzi El* — four.

13

The sons of *Am Ram*:
Aharon and *Mosheh*;
and *Aharon* is separated to hallow the Holy of Holies
— he and his sons eternally

1 CHRONICLES 23

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

to burn incense before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
to minister unto him,
and to bless in his name for ever eternally.
14 Now concerning Moses Mosheh the man of God Elohim,
his sons were named called of the tribe scion of Levi.
15 The sons of Moses Mosheh were,
Gershom, and Eliezer Eli Ezer.
16 Of the sons of Gershom,
Shebuel Shebu El was the chief head.
17 And the sons of Eliezer Eli Ezer were,
Rehabiah Rechab Yah the chief head.
And Eliezer Eli Ezer had none other sons:
but the sons of Rehabiah Rechab Yah
were very many abounded above.
18 Of the sons of Izhar Yishar;
Shelomith the chief head.
19 Of the sons of Hebron;
Jeriah Yeri Yah the first head,
Amariah Amar Yah the second,
Jahaziel Yachazi El the third,
and Jekameam Yeqam Am the fourth.
20 Of the sons of Uzziel Uzzi El;
Micah Michah Yah the first head,
and Jesiah Yishshi Yah the second.
SCRIBING THE SONS OF MERARI
21 The sons of Merari;
Mahli Machli, and Mushi.
The sons of Mahli Machli;
Eleazar El Azar, and Kish Qish.
22 And Eleazar El Azar died,
and had no sons, but daughters:
and their brethren the sons of Kish took Qish lifted them.
23 The sons of Mushi;
Mahli Machli, and Eder, and Jeremoth Yeremoth, three.
THE NEW SERVICE OF THE LEVIYM
24 These were the sons of Levi
after the house of their fathers;
even the chief head of the fathers,
as they were counted mustered by number of names
by their polls per cranium, that did worked the work
for the service of the house of the LORD Yah Veh,
from the age sons of twenty years and upward.
25 For David said,
The LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El
hath given rest unto rested his people,
that they may dwell tabernacle in Jerusalem Yeru Shalem
for ever eternally:
26 And also unto the Levites Leviym;
they shall no more carry neither bear the tabernacle,
nor any vessels of it instruments thereof
for the service thereof.
27 For by the last words of David
the Levites sons of Levi were numbered
from sons of twenty years old and above:
28 Because their office function
was to wait on at the hand of the sons of Aaron Aharon
for the service of the house of the LORD Yah Veh,
in the courts, and in the chambers,
and in the purifying of all holy things the holies,
and the work of the service of the house of God Elohim;
29 Both for the shewbread bread arrangement,
and for the fine flour for meat offering,
and for the unleavened cakes matsah wafers,
and for that which is baked in the pan griddled,
and for that which is deep fried,
and for all manner of measure and size measure;
30 And to stand every morning by morning
to thank spread hands and praise the LORD halal Yah Veh,
and likewise at even:
31 And to offer holocaust all burnt sacrifices holocausts
unto the LORD Yah Veh in the sabbaths shabbaths,
in the new moons, and on the set feasts festivals,
by number,
according to the order commanded judgment unto them,
continually before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh:
32 And that they should keep guard the charge guard
of the tabernacle tent of the congregation,
and the charge guard of the holy place holies,

1 CHRONICLES 23

exeGeses companion BIBLE

to incense at the face of Yah Veh
to minister to him
and to bless in his name eternally.
14 As for Mosheh the man of Elohim,
his sons are called of the scion of Levi.
15 The sons of Mosheh:
Gershom and Eli Ezer.
16 Of the sons of Gershom:
Shebu El, the head.
17 And the sons of Eli Ezer:
Rechab Yah the head.
And Eli Ezer has no other sons:
and the sons of Rechab Yah abound above.
18 Of the sons of Yishar:
Shelomith the head.
19 Of the sons of Hebron:
Yeri Yah the head, Amar Yah the second,
Yachazi El the third and Yeqam Am the fourth.
20 Of the sons of Uzzi El:
Michah Yah the head and Yishshi Yah the second.
SCRIBING THE SONS OF MERARI
21 The sons of Merari:
Machli and Mushi.
The sons of Machli:
El Azar and Qish;
22 and El Azar dies and has no sons, but daughters;
and their brothers the sons of Qish lift them.
23 The sons of Mushi:
Machli and Eder and Yeremoth — three.
THE NEW SERVICE OF THE LEVIYM
24 These are the sons of Levi
after the house of their fathers
— the head of the fathers,
as they are mustered
by number of names per cranium;
who work the work
for the service of the house of Yah Veh,
from sons of twenty years and upward.
25 For David says,
Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El rests his people,
to tabernacle in Yeru Shalem eternally:
and also of the Leviym;
they neither bear the tabernacle,
nor any instruments thereof for the service thereof:
27 for by the last words of David
the sons of Levi are numbered
from sons of twenty years and above:
28 because of their function
at the hand of the sons of Aharon
for the service of the house of Yah Veh
— in the courts and in the chambers
and in the purifying of all the holies
and the work of the service of the house of Elohim:
29 and for the bread arrangement
and for the flour for offering
and for the matsah wafers
and for the griddled and for the deep fried
and for all manner of measure by measure:
30 and to stand morning by morning
to spread hands and halal Yah Veh
— and likewise at evening:
31 and to holocaust all holocausts to Yah Veh
in the shabbaths, in the new moons, festivals
by number, according to their judgment,
continually at the face of Yah Veh:
32 and to guard the guard
of the tent of the congregation
and the guard of the holies

1 CHRONICLES 23, 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and the charge **guard** of the sons of Aaron Aharon
their brethren,
in the service of the house of the **LORD Yah Veh.**

THE ALLOTMENTS OF THE SONS OF AHARON

24

Now these are the *divisions* **allotments**
of the sons of Aaron **Aharon.**

The sons of Aaron **Aharon**;
Nadab, and *Abihu* **Abi Hu,**

Eleazar **El Azar,** and *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar.**

2

But Nadab and *Abihu* **Abi Hu** died
before at the face of their father,
and had no *children* **sons:**

therefore *Eleazar* **El Azar** and *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**
executed the priest's office **priested.**

3

And David *distributed* **allotted** them,
both *Zadok* **Sadoq** of the sons of *Eleazar* **El Azar,**
and *Ahimelech* **Achiy Melech**
of the sons of *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar,**
according to their *offices* **overseeing** in their service.

4

And there were
more chief men **more mighty heads** found
of the sons of *Eleazar* **El Azar**
than of the sons of *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**;
and thus were they *divided* **allotted.**

Among the sons of *Eleazar* **El Azar**
there were sixteen *chief* **head** men
of the house of their fathers,

and eight among the sons of *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**
according to the house of their fathers.

5

Thus were they *divided* **allotted** by *lot* **pebble,**
one sort **those** with *another* **these;**
for the governors of the *sanctuary* **holies,**
and governors of the *house* **God Elohim,**
were of the sons of *Eleazar* **El Azar,**
and of the sons of *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar.**

6

And *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**
the son of *Nethaneel* **Nethan El** the scribe,
one of the Levites **Leviym,**
wrote **inscribed** them
before at the face of the *king* **sovereign,**
and the *princes* **governors,** and *Zadok* **Sadoq** the priest,
and *Ahimelech* **Achiy Melech**

the son of *Abiathar* **Abi Athar,**
and *before* the *chief* **head** of the fathers
of the priests and *Levites* **Leviym:**

one principal household **house of the fathers**
being taken **possessed** for *Eleazar* **El Azar,**
and *one taken* **possessed** for *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar.**

7

Now the first *lot* **pebble**
came forth **went** to *Jehoiarib* **Yah Arib,**
the second to *Jedaiah* **Yeda Yah,**

8

The third to Harim,
the fourth to Seorim,

9

The fifth to *Malchijah* **Malki Yah,**
the sixth to *Mijamin* **Mi Yamin,**

10

The seventh to *Hakkoz* **Qos,**
the eighth to *Abijah* **Abi Yah,**

11

The ninth to *Jeshuah* **Yah Shua,**
the tenth to *Shecaniah* **Shechan Yah,**

12

The eleventh to *Eliashib* **El Yashib,**
the twelfth to *Jakim* **Yaqim,**

13

The thirteenth to Huppah,
the fourteenth to *Jeshebeab* **Yesheb Ab,**

14

The fifteenth to Bilgah,
the sixteenth to Immer,

15

The seventeenth to Hezir,
the eighteenth to *Aphses* **Pisses,**

16

The nineteenth to *Pethahiah* **Pethach Yah,**
the twentieth to *Jehezkel* **Yechezq El,**

17

The one and twentieth to *Jachin* **Yachin,**
the two and twentieth to Gamul,

18

The three and twentieth to *Delaiah* **Dela Yah,**
the four and twentieth to *Maaziah* **Maaz Yah.**

19

These were the *orderings* **overseeings** of them
in their service

to come into the house of the **LORD Yah Veh,**
according to their *manner* **judgment,**
under Aaron **by the hand of Aharon** their father,

1 CHRONICLES 23, 24699

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and the guard of the sons of Aharon their brothers
in the service of the house of Yah Veh.

THE ALLOTMENTS OF THE SONS OF AHARON

24

And to the sons of Aharon, these allotments:

The sons of Aharon:

Nadab and Abi Hu, El Azar and Iy Thamar:
2 and Nadab and Abi Hu die at the face of their father
and have no sons;

2

and El Azar and Iy Thamar priest.

3

And David allots them,

both Sadoq of the sons of El Azar

and Achiy Melech of the sons of Iy Thamar,
according to their overseeing in their service.

4

And they find more mighty heads
of the sons of El Azar

than of the sons of Iy Thamar;
and they allot thus:

Among the sons of El Azar:
sixteen head men of the house of their fathers
and eight among the sons of Iy Thamar
according to the house of their fathers.

5

And they allot by pebble these with those:

for the governors of the holies
and governors of Elohim
are of the sons of El Azar

and of the sons of Iy Thamar:

6

and Shema Yah the son of Nethan El

the scribe of the Leviym,

inscribes them at the face of the sovereign

and the governors and Sadoq the priest

and Achiy Melech the son of Abi Athar

and the head of the fathers of the priests and Leviym:

one house of the fathers possessed for El Azar

and one possessed for Iy Thamar.

7

And the first pebble goes to Yah Arib,

the second to Yeda Yah,

8

the third to Harim,

the fourth to Seorim,

9

the fifth to Malki Yah,

the sixth to Mi Yamin,

10

the seventh to Qos,

the eighth to Abi Yah,

11

the ninth to Yah Shua,

the tenth to Shechan Yah,

12

the eleventh to El Yashib,

the twelfth to Yaqim,

13

the thirteenth to Huppah,

the fourteenth to Yesheb Ab,

14

the fifteenth to Bilgah,

the sixteenth to Immer,

15

the seventeenth to Hezir,

the eighteenth to Pisses,

16

the nineteenth to Pethach Yah,

the twentieth to Yechezq El,

17

the twenty—first to Yachin,

the twenty—second to Gamul,

18

the twenty—third to Dela Yah,

the twenty—fourth to Maaz Yah:

19

these are the overseeings of their service

to come into the house of Yah Veh

— according to their judgment

by the hand of Aharon their father

1 CHRONICLES 24, 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

as the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**
had *commanded* **misvahed** him.

20 And the rest **remaining** of the sons of Levi were these:

Of the sons of **Amram Am Ram**;
Shubael **Shuba El**;
of the sons of *Shubael* **Shuba El**;
Jehdeiah **Yachdi Yah**.

21 Concerning *Rehabiah* **Of Rechab Yah**;
of the sons of *Rehabiah* **Rechab Yah**,
the first **head** was *Isshiah* **Yishshi Yah**.

22 Of the *Izharites* **Yishariy**;
Shelomoth:
of the sons of Shelomoth;
Jahath **Yachath**.

23 And the sons of *Hebron*; *Jeriah* the first, **Yeri Yah**;
Amariah **Amar Yah** the second,
Jahaziel **Yachazi El** the third,
Jekameam **Yeqam Am** the fourth.

24 Of the sons of *Uzziel* **Uzzi El**;
Michah:
of the sons of Michah;
Shamir **Shamur**.

25 The brother of Michah was *Isshiah* **Yishshi Yah**;
of the sons of *Isshiah* **Yishshi Yah**;
Zechariah **Zechar Yah**.

26 The sons of Merari were;
Mahli **Machli** and Mushi:
the sons of *Jaaziah* **Yaazi Yah**;
Beno.

27 The sons of Merari by *Jaaziah* **Yaazi Yah**;
Beno, and Shoham, and *Zaccur* **Zakkur**, and Ibri.

28 Of *Mahli* **Machli** came *Eleazar* **El Azar**,
who had no sons.

29 Concerning *Kish* **Qish**:
the son of *Kish* **Qish** was *Jerahmeel* **Yerachme El**.

30 The sons also of Mushi;
Mahli **Machli**, and Eder, and *Jerimoth* **Yerimoth**.
These were the sons of the *Levites* **Leviym**
after the house of their fathers.

31 These likewise *cast lots* **felled pebbles**
over against **beside** their brethren
the sons of *Aaron* **Aharon**
in the *presence* **face** of David the *king* **sovereign**,
and *Zadok* **Sadoq**, and *Ahimelech* **Achiy Melech**,
and the *chief* **head** of the fathers
of the priests and *Levites* **Leviym**,
even the *principal* **head** fathers
over against **beside** their younger brethren.

DAVID SEPARATES THE PROPHET MUSICIANS

25

Moreover

David and the *captains* **governors** of the host
separated to the service of the sons of *Asaph*,
and of *Heman*, and of *Jeduthun* **Yeduthun**,
who should prophesy — **prophets** with harps,
with *psalteries* **bagpipes**, and with cymbals:
and the number of the workmen
according to their service was:

2 Of the sons of *Asaph*;
Zaccur **Zakkur**, and *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
and *Nethaniah* **Nethan Yah**, and *Asarelah* **Ashar Elah**,
the sons of *Asaph* under the hands of *Asaph*,
which prophesied
according to the *order* **hand** of the *king* **sovereign**.

3 Of *Jeduthun* **Yeduthun**: the sons of *Jeduthun* **Yeduthun**;

1 CHRONICLES 24, 25700

exeGesés companion BIBLE

as Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El misvahed him.

20 And of the sons of Levi who remain:
Of the sons of *Am Ram*:
Shuba El.

Of the sons of *Shuba El*:
Yachdi Yah.

21 Of *Rechab Yah*:
of the sons of *Rechab Yah*, the head is *Yishshi Yah*.

22 Of the *Yishariy*:
Shelomoth.

Of the sons of *Shelomoth*:
Yachath.

23 And the sons of *Yeri Yah*:
Amar Yah the second,
Yachazi El the third,
Yeqam Am the fourth.

24 Of the sons of *Uzzi El*:
Michah:

Of the sons of *Michah*:
Shamur.

25 The brother of *Michah*, *Yishshi Yah*.
Of the sons of *Yishshi Yah*:
Zechar Yah.

26 The sons of *Merari*:
Machli and *Mushi*.

The sons of *Yaazi Yah*:
Beno.

27 The sons of *Merari* by *Yaazi Yah*:
Beno and *Shoham* and *Zakkur* and *Ibri*.

Of *Machli*:
El Azar, who has no sons.

29 Concerning *Qish* — the sons of *Qish*:
Yerachme El.

30 And sons of *Mushi*:
Machli and *Eder* and *Yerimoth*.

31 These are the sons of the *Leviym*
after the house of their fathers:
these likewise *felled pebbles*
beside their brothers the sons of *Aharon*
in the face of *David* the *sovereign*
and *Sadoq* and *Achiy Melech*
and the *head* of the fathers
of the priests and *Leviym*
— even the *head* fathers
beside their younger brothers.

DAVID SEPARATES THE PROPHET MUSICIANS

25

And *David* and the *governors* of the host
separate to the service of the sons of *Asaph*
and of *Heman* and of *Jeduthun*
— *prophets* with harps,
with *bagpipes* and with cymbals.

And the number of the workmen
according to their service:

2 Of the sons of *Asaph*:
Zakkur and *Yoseph* and *Nethan Yah* and *Ashar Elah*
— the sons of *Asaph* under the hands of *Asaph*
who prophesy at the hand of the *sovereign*.

3 Of *Jeduthun*; the sons of *Jeduthun*:

1 CHRONICLES 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Gedaliah **Gedal Yah**, and Zeri Seri,
and Jeshaiiah **Yesha Yah**, Hashabiah **Hashab Yah**,
and Mattithiah **Mattith Yah**, six,
under the hands of their father Jeduthun **Yeduthun**,
who prophesied with a harp, to give thanks **spread hands**
and to praise the **LORD halal Yah Veh**.
4 Of Heman: the sons of Heman:
Bukkiah **Buqqi Yah**, *Mattaniah* **Mattan Yah**,
Uzziel **Uzzi El**, *Shebuel* **Shebu El**, and *Jerimoth* **Yerimoth**,
Hananiah **Hanan Yah**, *Hanani*, *Eliathah* **Eli Athah**,
Giddalti, and *Romamtiezer* **Romamti Ezer**,
Joshbekashah **Yoshbe Qashah**, Mallothi, Hothir,
and *Mahazioth* **Machazioth**:
5 All these were the sons of Heman
the king's **sovereign's** seer in the words of *God Elohim*,
to lift up the horn.
And *God Elohim* gave to Heman
fourteen sons and three daughters.
6 All these were under the hands of their father
for song in the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
with cymbals, *psalteries* **bagpipes**, and harps,
for the service of the house of *God Elohim*,
according **by the hands**
to the king's order **of the sovereign**
to Asaph, *Jeduthun* **Yeduthun**, and Heman.
7 So the number of them, with their brethren
that were *instructed* **taught**
in the songs of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
even all that were *cunning* **discerning**,
was two hundred *fourscore* **eighty** and eight.
8 And they cast lots **felled pebbles**,
ward against ward **by guards**,
as well the small as the great,
the *teacher* **discerner** as the scholar.
9 Now the first *lot* **pebble**
came forth **went** for Asaph to *Joseph* **Yoseph**:
the second to *Gedaliah* **Gedal Yah**,
who with his brethren and sons were twelve:
10 The third to *Zaccur* **Zakkur**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
11 The fourth to *Izri* **Yisri**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
12 The fifth to *Nethaniah* **Nethan Yah**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
13 The sixth to *Bukkiah* **Buqqi Yah**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
14 The seventh to *Jesharelah* **Yesar Elah**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
15 The eighth to *Jeshaiiah* **Yesha Yah**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
16 The ninth to *Mattaniah* **Mattan Yah**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
17 The tenth to *Shimei* **Shimi**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
18 The eleventh to *Azareel* **Azar El**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
19 The twelfth to *Hashabiah* **Hashab Yah**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
20 The thirteenth to *Shubael* **Shuba El**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
21 The fourteenth to *Mattithiah* **Mattith Yah**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
22 The fifteenth to *Jeremoth* **Yeremoth**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
23 The sixteenth to *Hananiah* **Hanan Yah**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
24 The seventeenth to *Joshbekashah* **Yoshbe Qashah**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
25 The eighteenth to Hanani,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
26 The nineteenth to Mallothi,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
27 The twentieth to *Eliathah* **Eli Athah**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
28 The one and twentieth to Hothir,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
29 The two and twentieth to Giddalti,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
30 The three and twentieth to Mahazioth,

1 CHRONICLES 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Gedal Yah and Seri and Yesha Yah,
Hashab Yah and Mattith Yah — six
under the hands of their father Yeduthun
who prophesy with a harp,
to spread hands and to halal Yah Veh.
4 Of Heman; the sons of Heman:
Buqqi Yah, Mattan Yah, Uzzi El,
Shebu El and Yerimoth,
Hanan Yah, Hanani, Eli Athah,
Giddalti and Romamti Ezer,
Yoshbe Qashah, Mallothi, Hothir and Machazioth.
5 — all these are the sons of Heman
the seer of the sovereign in the words of Elohim
to lift up the horn:
and Elohim gives Heman
fourteen sons and three daughters.
6 All these are under the hands of their father
for song in the house of Yah Veh
— with cymbals, bagpipes and harps,
for the service of the house of Elohim.
At the hand of the sovereign:
Asaph, Yeduthun and Heman.
7 And their number, with their brothers
— those taught in the songs of Yah Veh
all the discerning,
two hundred eighty—eight.
8 And they fell pebbles, by guards
— the small as well as the great
the discerner as the scholar.
9 And the first pebble goes for Asaph to Yoseph:
the second to Gedal Yah
— he and his brothers and his sons — twelve;
10 the third to Zakkur
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
11 the fourth to Yisri
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
12 the fifth to Nethan Yah
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
13 the sixth to Buqqi Yah
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
14 the seventh to Yesar Elah
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
15 the eighth to Yesha Yah
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
16 the ninth to Mattan Yah
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
17 the tenth to Shimi
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
18 the eleventh to Azar El
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
19 the twelfth to Hashab Yah
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
20 the thirteenth to Shuba El
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
21 the fourteenth to Mattith Yah
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
22 the fifteenth to Yeremoth
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
23 the sixteenth to Hanan Yah
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
24 the seventeenth to Yoshbe Qashah
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
25 the eighteenth to Hanani
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
26 the nineteenth to Mallothi,
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
27 the twentieth to Eli Athah,
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
28 the twenty—first to Hothir,
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
29 the twenty—second to Giddalti,
his sons and his brothers — twelve;
30 the twenty—third to Mahazioth,

1 CHRONICLES 25, 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

31 he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:
The four and twentieth to *Romamtiezer* **Romanti Ezer**,
he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve.

ALLOTMENTS OF THE PORTERS

26 Concerning the divisions **allotments** of the porters:
Of the *Korhites* **Qorachiy**,
was *Meshelemiah* **Meshelem Yah** the son of *Kore* **Qore**,
of the sons of Asaph.

2 And the sons of *Meshelemiah* **Meshelem Yah** were,
Zechariah **Zechar Yah** the firstborn firstbirthed,
Jediael **Yedia El** the second,
Zebadiah **Zebad Yah** the third,
Jathniel **Yathni El** the fourth,
3 Elam the fifth,
Jehohanan **Yah Hanan** the sixth,
Elioenai **El Ya Enay** the seventh.

4 Moreover the sons of *Obededom* **Obed Edom** were,
Shemaiah **Shema Yah** the firstborn firstbirthed,
Jehozabad **Yah Zabad** the second,
Joah **Yah Ach** the third,
and *Sachar* **Sachar** the fourth,
and *Nethaneel* **Nethan El** the fifth.

5 *Ammiel* **Ammi El** the sixth,
Issachar **Yissachar** the seventh,
Peulthai **Peullthay** the eighth:
for *God* **Elohim** blessed him.

6 Also unto *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah** his son
were sons born birthed,
that ruled **reigned** throughout the house of their father:
for they were mighty men of valour.

7 The sons of *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**;
Othni, and *Rephael* **Repha El**,
and *Obed*, *Elzabad* **El Zabad**,
whose brethren were strong men **sons of valour**,
Elihu **Eli Hu**, and *Semachiah* **Semach Yah**.

8 All these of the sons of *Obededom* **Obed Edom**:
they and their sons and their brethren,
able men for strength **of valour of force** for the service,
were threescore **sixty** and two of *Obededom* **Obed Edom**.

9 And *Meshelemiah* **Meshelem Yah** had sons and brethren,
strong men **sons of valour**, eighteen.

10 Also *Hosah*, of the children **sons** of *Merari*, had sons;
Simri **Shimri** the chief head,
(for though he was not the firstborn firstbirthed,
yet his father made set him the chief head;)
Hilkiah **Hilqi Yah** the second,
Tebaliah **Tebal Yah** the third,
Zechariah **Zechar Yah** the fourth:
all the sons and brethren of *Hosah* were thirteen.

12 Among these
were the divisions **allotments** of the porters,
even among the chief men **head mighty**,
having wards one against another **guards beside brethren**,
to minister in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

13 And they cast lots **felled pebbles**,
as well the small as the great,
according to the house of their fathers,
for every gate **portal by portal**.

14 And the lot eastward **pebble from the rising**
fell to *Shelemiah* **Shelem Yah**.
Then for *Zechariah* **Zechar Yah** his son,
a wise counsellor **of comprehension**,
they cast lots **felled pebbles**;
and his lot came out **pebble went** northward.

15 To *Obededom* **Obed Edom** southward;
and to his sons the house of *Asuppim* **Gatherings**.

16 To *Shuppim* and *Hosah*
the lot came forth westward **duskward**,
with the gate **portal** *Shallecheth*,
by the causeway **highway** of the going up **ascent**,
ward against ward **guard by guard**.

17 Eastward were **From the rising**, six *Levites* **Leviym**,
northward four a day, southward four a day,
and toward *Asuppim* **to the Gatherings**, two and two.

1 CHRONICLES 25, 26702

exeGesés companion BIBLE

31 his sons and his brothers — twelve;
the twenty—fourth to *Romanti* **Ezer**
his sons and his brothers — twelve.

ALLOTMENTS OF THE PORTERS

26 The allotments of the porters:
Of the *Qorachiy*:
Meshelem Yah the son of *Qore* of the sons of Asaph.

2 And the sons of *Meshelem Yah*:
Zechar Yah the firstbirthed
Yedia El the second
Zebad Yah the third
Yathni El the fourth
3 Elam the fifth
Yah Hanan the sixth
El Ya Enay the seventh.

4 And the sons of *Obed Edom*:
Shema Yah the firstbirthed
Yah Zabad the second
Yah Ach the third
and *Sachar* the fourth
and *Nethan El* the fifth
5 *Ammi El* the sixth
Yissachar the seventh
Peullthay the eighth:
for *Elohim* blessed him.

6 And to his son *Shema Yah*, sons are birthed
who reign throughout the house of their father;
— mighty of valour.

7 The sons of *Shema Yah*:
Othni and *Repha El* and *Obed*, *El Zabad*
— whose brothers *Eli Hu* and *Semach Yah*
are sons of valour.

8 All these of the sons of *Obed Edom*:
they and their sons and their brothers
men of valour — of force for the service
— sixty—two of *Obed Edom*.

9 And *Meshelem Yah* has sons and brothers:
sons of valour — eighteen.

10 And *Hosah* of the sons of *Merari* has sons:
Shimri the head
— not the firstbirthed, yet his father set him the head;
Hilqi Yah the second
Tebal Yah the third
Zechar Yah the fourth:
all the sons and brothers of *Hosah* — thirteen.

12 Among these are the allotments of the porters;
even among the head mighty;
guards beside brothers
to minister in the house of *Yah Veh*.

13 And they fell pebbles
the small as well as the great
according to the house of their fathers
— portal by portal.

14 And the pebble from the rising
falls to *Shelem Yah*.

And they fell pebbles for *Zechar Yah* his son
a counsellor of comprehension;
and his pebble goes northward.

15 To *Obed Edom* southward:
and to his sons, the house of *Gatherings*:

16 To *Shuppim* and *Hosah* duskward
— with the portal *Shallecheth*
by the highway of the ascent from guard to guard.

17 Toward the rising: *Leviym* — six:
northward four a day; southward four a day;
and to the *Gatherings*, two by two

1 CHRONICLES 26

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 At Parbar westward the suburb duskward,
four at the causeway highway,
and two at Parbar the suburb.

19 These are the divisions allotments of the porters
among the sons of Kore Qorachiy,
and among the sons of Merari.

**THE TREASURERS OF THE
HOUSE OF ELOHIM AND OF THE HOLIES**

20 And of the Levites Leviym,
Ahiyah Achiy Yah
was over the treasures of the house of God Elohim,
and over the treasures of the dedicated things holies.

21 As concerning the sons of Laadan Ladan;
the sons of the Gershonite Laadan Gershoniyy Ladan,
chief head fathers,
even of Laadan Ladan the Gershonite Gershoniyy,
were Jehieli Yechi Eliy.

22 The sons of Jehieli Yechi Eliy;
Zetham, and Joel Yah El his brother,
which were over the treasures
of the house of the LORD Yah Veh.

23 Of the Amramites Am Ramiy, and the Izharites Yishariyy,
the Hebronites Hebroniyy, and the Uzzielites Uzzi Eliy:

24 And Shebuel Shebu El the son of Gershom,
the son of Moses Mosheh,
was ruler eminent of the treasures.

25 And his brethren by Eliezer Eli Ezer;
Rehabiah Rechab Yah his son,
and Jeshaiyah Yesha Yah his son,
and Joram Yah Ram his son,
and Zichri his son,
and Shelomith Shelomoth his son.

26 Which Shelomith Shelomoth and his brethren
were over all the treasures of the dedicated things holies,
which David the king sovereign,
and the chief head fathers,
the captains governors over thousands and hundreds,
and the captains governors of the host,
had dedicated hallowed.

27 Out of the spoils won in battles wars
did they dedicate hallow
to maintain strengthen the house of the LORD Yah Veh.

28 And all that Samuel Shemu El the seer,
and Saul Shaul the son of Kish Qish,
and Abner Abi Ner the son of Ner,
and Joab Yah Ab the son of Zeruiah Seruyah,
had dedicated hallowed;

and whosoever had dedicated hallowed any thing,
it was under the hand of Shelomith, and of his brethren.

29 Of the Izharites Yishariyy,
Chenaniah Kenan Yah and his sons
were for the outward business outside work
over Israel Yisra El,
for officers and judges.

30 And of the Hebronites Hebroniyy,
Hashabiah Hashab Yah and his brethren,
men sons of valour,
a thousand and seven hundred,
were officers overseers among them of Israel Yisra El
on this side Jordan westward Yarden duskward
in all the business work of the LORD Yah Veh,
and in the service of the king sovereign.

31 Among the Hebronites Hebroniyy
was Jerijah Yeri Yah the chief head,
even among the Hebronites Hebroniyy,
according to the generations of his fathers.
In the fortieth year of the reign sovereigndom of David
they were sought for,
and there were found among them mighty men of valour
at Jazer Yazer of Gilead Gilad.

32 And his brethren, men sons of valour,
were two thousand and seven hundred chief head fathers,
whom king sovereign David made rulers overseers
over the Reubenites Reu Beniy, the Gadites Gadiyy,
and the half tribe scion of Manasseh Menash Shiy,
for every matter pertaining to God word of Elohim,
and affairs of the king sovereign.

1 CHRONICLES 26

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 at the suburb duskward:
four at the highway; two at the suburb.

19 — these are the allotments of the porters
among the Qorachiy
and among the sons of Merari.

**THE TREASURERS OF THE
HOUSE OF ELOHIM AND OF THE HOLIES**

20 And of the Leviym:
Achiy Yah is over the treasures of the house of Elohim
— even the treasures of the holies.

21 Sons of Ladan
— of the Gershoniyy of Ladan,
head fathers of Ladan the Gershoniyy:
Yechi Eliy.

22 The sons of Yechi Eliy
— Zetham and Yah El his brother:
over the treasures of the house of Yah Veh,
of the Am Ramiy and the Yishariyy,
the Hebroniyy, the Uzzi Eliy.

24 And Shebu El
the son of Gershom the son of Mosheh:
eminent over the treasures.

25 And his brothers, of Eli Ezer:
Rechab Yah his son
and Yesha Yah his son
and Yah Ram his son
and Zichri his son
and Shelomoth his son
— which Shelomoth and his brothers
are over all the treasures of the holies;
which David the sovereign and the head fathers
— even the governors over thousands and hundreds
and the governors of the host hallow:
they hallow of the spoils won in wars
to strengthen the house of Yah Veh;
and all that Shemu El the seer
and Shaul the son of Qish
and Abi Ner the son of Ner
and Yah Ab the son of Seruyah hallow
— whoever hallows,
it is under the hand of Shelomith and of his brothers.

29 Of the Yishariyy:
Kenan Yah and his sons;
for the outside work over Yisra El
for officers and judges.

30 Of the Hebroniyy:
Hashab Yah and his brothers
sons of valour — a thousand and seven hundred;
overseers among them of Yisra El
on this side Yarden duskward
in all the work of Yah Veh
and in the service of the sovereign.

31 Among the Hebroniyy:
Yeri Yah the head among the Hebroniyy
according to the generations of his fathers
— in the fortieth year of the sovereigndom of David
they are sought out;
and there they find mighty of valour among them
at Yazer of Gilad:

32 and his brothers, sons of valour
— two thousand and seven hundred head fathers,
whom sovereign David made overseers
over the Reu Beniy, the Gadiyy
and the half scion of Menash Shiy,
for every word of Elohim
and affairs of the sovereign.

1 CHRONICLES 27

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

THE DIVISIONS OF THE CHILIARCHS AND CENTURIANS

- 27 Now the *children sons* of Israel **Yisra El**
after their number, *to wit*,
the *chief head* fathers
and *captains governors* of thousands and hundreds,
and their officers
that *served ministered to the king sovereign*
in any *matter word* of the *courses allotments*,
which came in and went out month by month
throughout all the months of the year,
of every *course one allotment*
were twenty and four thousand.
- 2 Over the first *course allotment* for the first month
was *Jashobeam Yashob Am* the son of *Zabdiel Zabdi El*:
and in his *course allotment*
were twenty and four thousand.
- 3 Of the *children sons* of *Perez Peres*
was the *chief head*
of all the *captains governors* of the host
for the first month.
- 4 And over the *course allotment* of the second month
was *Dodai Doday* an *Ahohite Ach Oachiy*,
and of his *course allotment*
was *Mikloth Miqloth* also the *ruler eminent*:
in his *course allotment* likewise
were twenty and four thousand.
- 5 The third *captain governor* of the host for the third month
was *Benaiah Bena Yah* the son of *Jehoiada Yah Yada*,
a *chief head* priest:
and in his *course allotment*
were twenty and four thousand.
- 6 This is that *Benaiah Bena Yah*,
who was mighty among the thirty, and above the thirty:
and in his *course allotment*
was *Ammizabad Ammi Zabad* his son.
- 7 The fourth *captain* for the fourth month
was *Asahel Asa El* the brother of *Joab Yah Ab*,
and *Zebadiah Zebad Yah* his son after him:
and in his *course allotment*
were twenty and four thousand.
- 8 The fifth *captain governor* for the fifth month
was *Shamhuth the Izrahite Yizrach*:
and in his *course allotment*
were twenty and four thousand.
- 9 The sixth *captain* for the sixth month
was *Ira* the son of *Ikkesh the Tekoite Teqohiy*:
and in his *course allotment*
were twenty and four thousand.
- 10 The seventh *captain* for the seventh month
was *Helez Heles* the *Pelonite Paloniy*,
of the *children sons* of *Ephraim Ephrayim*:
and in his *course allotment*
were twenty and four thousand.
- 11 The eighth *captain* for the eighth month
was *Sibbecai Sibbechay* the *Hushathite Hushathiy*,
of the *Zarhites Zerachiy*:
and in his *course allotment*
were twenty and four thousand.
- 12 The ninth *captain* for the ninth month
was *Abiezer Abi Ezer* the *Anethothite Anathothiy*,
of the *Benjamites Ben Yaminiy*:
and in his *course allotment*
were twenty and four thousand.
- 13 The tenth *captain* for the tenth month
was *Maharai Maharay* the *Netophathite Netophathiy*,
of the *Zarhites Zerachiy*:
and in his *course allotment*
were twenty and four thousand.
- 14 The eleventh *captain* for the eleventh month
was *Benaiah Bena Yah* the *Pirathonite Pirathoniy*,
of the *children sons* of *Ephraim Ephrayim*:
and in his *course allotment*
were twenty and four thousand.
- 15 The twelfth *captain* for the twelfth month
was *Heldai Helday* the *Netophathite Netophathiy*,
of *Othniel Othni El*:
and in his *course allotment*
were twenty and four thousand.

1 CHRONICLES 27

exeGeses companion BIBLE

THE DIVISIONS OF THE CHILIARCHS AND CENTURIANS

- 27 And the sons of Yisra El by number
— the head fathers
and governors of thousands and hundreds
and their officers who minister to the sovereign
in any word of the allotments
— who come and go month by month
throughout all the months of the year:
of one allotment — twenty—four thousand.
- 2 Over the first allotment for the first month:
Yashob Am the son of Zabdi El;
and in his allotment — twenty—four thousand:
of the sons of Peres
- 3 is the head of all the governors of the host
for the first month.
- 4 And over the allotment of the second month:
Doday an Ach Oachiy;
and of his allotment, Miqloth is also the eminent;
and in his allotment — twenty—four thousand.
- 5 The third governor of the host for the third month:
Bena Yah the son of Yah Yada a head priest;
and in his allotment — twenty—four thousand:
this Bena Yah
- 6 is mighty among the thirty and above the thirty:
and in his allotment, Ammi Zabad his son.
- 7 The fourth for the fourth month:
Asa El the brother of Yah Ab
and Zebad Yah his son after him;
and in his allotment — twenty—four thousand.
- 8 The fifth governor for the fifth month:
Shamhuth the Yizrach;
and in his allotment — twenty—four thousand.
- 9 The sixth for the sixth month:
Ira the son of Iqqesh the Teqohiy;
and in his allotment — twenty—four thousand.
- 10 The seventh for the seventh month:
Heles the Paloniy of the sons of Ephrayim;
and in his allotment — twenty—four thousand.
- 11 The eighth for the eighth month:
Sibbechay the Hushathiy, of the Zerachiy;
and in his allotment — twenty—four thousand.
- 12 The ninth for the ninth month:
Abi Ezer the Anathothiy of the Ben Yaminiy;
and in his allotment — twenty—four thousand.
- 13 The tenth for the tenth month:
Maharay the Netophathiy, of the Zerachiy;
and in his allotment — twenty—four thousand.
- 14 The eleventh for the eleventh month:
Bena Yah the Pirathoniy, of the sons of Ephrayim;
and in his allotment — twenty—four thousand.
- 15 The twelfth for the twelfth month:
Helday the Netophathiy, of Othni El:
and in his allotment — twenty—four thousand.

1 CHRONICLES 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

OVERSEERS OF THE SCIONS OF YISRA EL

- 16 Furthermore over the *tribes scions* of *Israel Yisra El*:
the ruler **eminent** of the *Reubenites Reu Beniy*
was *Eliezer Eli Ezer* the son of *Zichri*:
of the *Simeonites Shimoniy*,
Shephatiah Shaphat Yah the son of *Maachah*:
Of the *Levites Leviym*,
17 *Hashabiah Hashab Yah* the son of *Kemuel Qemu El*:
of the *Aaronites Aharoniy*,
Zadok Sadoq:
Of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
18 *Elihu Eli Hu*, one of the brethren of *David*:
of *Issachar Yissachar*,
Omri the son of *Michael Michah El*:
Of *Zebulun*,
19 *Ishmaiah Yishma Yah* the son of *Obadiah Obad Yah*:
of *Naphtali*,
Jerimoth Yerimoth the son of *Azriel Ezri El*:
Of the *children sons* of *Ephraim Ephrayim*,
20 *Hoshea* the son of *Azaziah Azaz Yah*:
of the half *tribe scion* of *Manasseh Menash Sheh*,
Joel Yah El the son of *Pedaiah Pedah Yah*:
Of the half *tribe* of *Manasseh Menash Sheh*
21 in *Gilead Gilad*,
Iddo Yiddo the son of *Zechariah Zechar Yah*:
of *Benjamin Ben Yamin*,
Jaasiel Yaasi El the son of *Abner Abi Ner*:
Of *Dan*,
22 *Azareel Azar El* the son of *Jerocham Yerocham*.
These were the *princes governors*
of the *tribes scions* of *Israel Yisra El*.
23 But *David took spared* not the number of them
sons from twenty years *old* and *under downward*:
because the *LORD Yah Veh* had said
he *would increase Israel should abound Yisra El*
like to the stars of the heavens.
24 *Joab Yah Ab* the son of *Zeruiah Seruyah*
began to number, but he finished not,
because there fell *wrath rage* for it against *Israel Yisra El*;
neither was the number *put ascended* in the account
of the *chronicles words of the days*
of king **sovereign** *David*.
OVERSEERS OF THE TREASURES OF THE SOVEREIGN
25 And over the *king's sovereign's* treasures
was *Azmaveth* the son of *Adiel Adi El*:
and over the *storehouses treasures* in the fields,
in the cities, and in the villages, and in the *castles towers*,
was *Jehonathan* the son of *Uzziah Uzzi Yah*:
26 And over them that *did worked* the work of the field
for *tillage service* of the *ground soil*
was *Ezri* the son of *Chelub Kelub*:
27 And over the vineyards
was *Shimei Shimi* the *Ramathite Ramahiy*:
over the increase of the vineyards
for the wine *cellars treasures*
was *Zabdi* the *Shiphmite Shephamiy*:
28 And over the olive trees and the *sycomore trees*
that were in the *low plains lowlands*
was *Baalhanan Baal Hanan* the *Gederite Gederiy*:
and over the *cellars treasures* of oil was *Joash Yah Ash*:
29 And over the *herds oxen* that *fed grazed* in *Sharon*
was *Shitray Shitray* the *Sharonite Sharoniy*:
and over the *herds oxen* that were in the valleys
was *Shaphat* the son of *Adlai Adlay*:
30 Over the camels also
was *Obil* the *Ishmaelite Yishma Eliy*:
and over the *asses she burros*
was *Jehdeiah Yachdi Yah* the *Meronothite Meronothiy*:
31 And over the flocks
was *Jaziz Yaziz* the *Hagerite Hagariy*.

1 CHRONICLES 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

OVERSEERS OF THE SCIONS OF YISRA EL

- 16 And over the scions of *Yisra El*:

The eminent of the *Reu Beniy*:
Eli Ezer the son of *Zichri*;

of the *Shimoniy*:
Shaphat Yah the son of *Maachah*;

17 of the *Leviym*:
Hashab Yah the son of *Qemu El*;

of the *Aharoniy*:
Sadoq;

18 of *Yah Hudah*:
Eli Hu, of the brothers of *David*;

of *Yissachar*:
Omri the son of *Michah El*;

19 of *Zebulun*:
Yishma Yah the son of *Obad Yah*;

of *Naphtali*:
Yerimoth the son of *Ezri El*;

20 of the sons of *Ephrayim*:
Hoshea the son of *Azaz Yah*;

of the half scion of *Menash Sheh*:
Yah El the son of *Pedah Yah*;

21 of the half of *Menash Sheh* in *Gilad*:
Yiddo the son of *Zechar Yah*;

of *Ben Yamin*:
Yaasi El the son of *Abi Ner*;

22 of *Dan*:
Azar El the son of *Yerocham*.
— these are the *governors* of the scions of *Yisra El*.

23 And *David spares* not to number them
— *sons* of twenty years and *downward*:
because *Yah Veh* says
he *abounds Yisra El* as the stars of the heavens.
24 *Yah Ab* the son of *Seruyah*
begins to number, but finishes not,
for a *rage* falls against *Yisra El*;
and the number *ascends* not in the account
of the words of the days of *sovereign David*.

OVERSEERS OF THE TREASURES OF THE SOVEREIGN
25 And over the treasures of the sovereign:
Azmaveth the son of *Adi El*;
and over the treasures in the fields
in the cities and in the villages and in the towers:
Jehonathan the son of *Uzzi Yah*;
26 and over them who work the work of the field
to service the soil:
Ezri the son of *Kelub*;
27 and over the vineyards: *Shimi* the *Ramahiy*;
over what is in the vineyards for the wine treasures:
Zabdi the *Shephamiy*;
28 and over the olive trees and the *sycomore trees*
in the lowlands:
Baal Hanan the *Gederiy*;
and over the treasures of oil: *Yah Ash*;
29 and over the oxen that graze in *Sharon*:
Shitray the *Sharoniy*;
and over the oxen in the valleys:
Shaphat the son of *Adlai*;
30 and over the camels:
Obil the *Yishma Eliy*;
and over the she burros:
Yachdi Yah the *Meronothiy*;
31 and over the flocks:
Yaziz the *Hagariy*.

1 CHRONICLES 27, 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

All these were the **rulers governors**
of the **substance acquisition**
which was **king sovereign** David's.
32 Also **Jonathan Yah Nathan** David's uncle
was a counsellor,
a wise **discerning** man, and a scribe:
and **Jehiel Yechi El** the son of **Hachmoni Hachmoniy**
was with the **king's sovereign's** sons:
33 And **Ahithophel Achiy Thophel**
was the **king's sovereign's** counsellor:
and **Hushai Hushay** the **Archite Arkiy**
was the **king's companion sovereign's friend**:
34 And after **Ahithophel Achiy Thophel**
was **Jehoiada Yah Yada** the son of **Benaiah Bena Yah**,
and **Abiathar Abi Athar**:
and the **general governor**
of the **king's army sovereign's host** was **Joab Yah Ab**.

DAVID CHARGES SHELOMOH

28

And David **assembled congregated**
all the **princes governors** of **Israel Yisra El**,
the **princes governors** of the **tribes scions**,
and the **captains governors** of the **companies allotments**
that ministered to the **king sovereign** by course,
and the **captains governors** over the thousands,
and **captains governors** over the hundreds,
and the **stewards governors**
over all the **substance acquisition**
and **possession chattel** of the **king sovereign**,
and of his sons,
with the **officers eunuchs**, and with the mighty **men**,
and with all the **valiant men mighty of valour**,
unto **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
2 Then David the **king sovereign**
stood up arose upon his feet, and said,
Hear me, my brethren, and my people:
As for me, I had in mine heart to build an house of rest
for the ark of the covenant of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and for the **footstool stool of the feet** of our **God Elohim**,
and had **made ready prepared** for the building:
3 But **God Elohim** said unto me,
Thou shalt not build an house for my name,
because thou hast been a man of war,
and hast **shed poured** blood.
4 Howbeit
the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of **Israel Yisra El**
chose me **before from** all the house of my father
to be **king sovereign** over **Israel for ever Yisra El eternally**:
for he hath chosen **Judah Yah Hudah**
to be the **ruler eminent**;
and of the house of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
the house of my father;
and among the sons of my father he **liked me was pleased**
to **make have me king reign** over all **Israel Yisra El**:
5 And of all my sons,
(for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath given me many sons),
he hath chosen **Solomon Shelomoh** my son
to **sit settle** upon the throne of the **kingdom sovereignty**
of the **LORD Yah Veh** over **Israel Yisra El**.
6 And he said unto me, **Solomon Shelomoh** thy son,
he shall build my house and my courts:
for I have chosen him to be **my son to me, son**,
and I **will shall** be **his father to him, father**.
7 Moreover
I **will shall** establish his **kingdom sovereignty**
for ever eternally,
if he **be constant strengthen** to **do work**
my **commandments misvoth** and my judgments,
as at this day.
8 Now therefore in the **sight eyes** of all **Israel Yisra El**
the congregation of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and in the **audience ears** of our **God Elohim**,
keep guard and seek for all the **commandments misvoth**
of the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**:
that ye may possess this good land,
and leave it for an inheritance
for your **children sons** after you **for ever eternally**.
9 And thou, **Solomon Shelomoh** my son,
know thou the **God Elohim** of thy father,
and serve him with a **perfect heart heart of shalom**

1 CHRONICLES 27, 28706

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— all these are the governors of the acquisition
which are to David the sovereign.
32 And Yah Nathan the uncle of David is a counsellor
— a discerning man and a scribe:
and Yechi El the son of Hachmoniy
is with the sons of the sovereign:
33 and Achiy Thophel is counsellor of the sovereign:
and Hushay the Arkiy is friend of the sovereign:
34 and after Achiy Thophel,
Yah Yada the son of Bena Yah and Abi Athar;
and the governor of the host of the sovereign: Yah Ab.

DAVID CHARGES SHELOMOH

28

And David congregates
all the governors of Yisra El
— the governors of the scions
and the governors of the allotments
who minister to the sovereign
and the governors over the thousands
and governors over the hundreds
and the governors over all the acquisition and chattel
of the sovereign and of his sons
— with the eunuchs and with the mighty
and with all the mighty of valour
to Yeru Shalem.
2 And David the sovereign rises on his feet and says,
Hear me, my brothers and my people:
I *had* in my heart to build a house of rest
for the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
and for the stool of the feet of our Elohim;
and prepared to build.
3 And Elohim says to me,
You, build not a house for my name;
because you are a man of war who poured blood.
4 And Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
chooses me from all the house of my father
— sovereign over Yisra El eternally:
for he chose Yah Hudah for eminence;
and of the house of Yah Hudah
the house of my father;
and among the sons of my father
he is pleased that I reign over all Yisra El:
and of all my sons,
— Yah Veh gave me many sons
he chooses Shelomoh my son to settle on the throne
of the sovereignty of Yah Veh over Yisra El.
6 And he says to me, Shelomoh your son
— he builds my house and my courts:
for I choose him to become to me — son
and I become to him — father.
7 And I establish his sovereignty eternally
if he strengthens
to work my misvoth and my judgments,
as at this day.
8 And now in the eyes of all Yisra El
the congregation of Yah Veh
and in the ears of our Elohim
guard and seek for all the misvoth
of Yah Veh your Elohim:
so that you possess this good land
and leave it for an inheritance
for your sons after you eternally.
9 And you, Shelomoh my son,
know the Elohim of your father;
and serve him with a heart of shalom

1 CHRONICLES 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and with a *willing mind* **soul of desire:**
for the LORD searcheth **Yah Veh** examineth all hearts,
and understandeth **discerneth**
all the imaginations of the *thoughts* **fabrications:**
if thou seek him, he *will* **shall** be found of thee;
but if thou forsake him,
he *will* cast **shall abandon** thee off for ever **eternally.**
10 *Take heed* **See** now;
for the LORD **Yah Veh** hath chosen thee
to build an house for the *sanctuary* **holies:**
be strong **strengthen**, and do **work** it.
11 Then David gave to *Solomon* **Shelomoh** his son
the pattern of the porch, and of the houses *thereof*,
and of the treasuries *thereof*,
and of the upper *chambers thereof* **rooms**,
and of the inner *parlours thereof* **chambers**,
and of the *place* **house** of the *mercy seat* **kapporeth**,
12 And the pattern of all that he had by the spirit,
of the courts of the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and of all the chambers round about,
of the treasuries of the house of *God* **Elohim**,
and of the treasuries of the *dedicated things* **holies:**
13 Also for the *courses* **allotments**
of the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**,
and for all the work of the service
of the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and for all the *vessels* **instruments** of service
in the house of the LORD **Yah Veh.**
14 *He gave* of gold by weight for *things* **that** of gold,
for all instruments of *all manner of* service **by service;**
silver also for all instruments of silver by weight,
for all instruments of *every kind of* service **by service:**
15 Even the weight for the *candlesticks* **menorah** of gold,
and for their lamps of gold,
by weight for *every candlestick* **menorah by menorah**,
and for the lamps thereof:
and for the *candlesticks* **menorah** of silver by weight,
both for the *candlestick* **menorah**,
and *also* for the lamps thereof,
according to the *use* **service**
of every candlestick **menorah by menorah.**
16 And by weight *he gave*
gold for the tables of *shewbread* **arrangement**,
for every table **by table;**
and *likewise* silver for the tables of silver:
17 Also pure gold for the *fleshhooks* **forks**,
and the *bowls* **sprinklers**, and the *cups* **covers:**
and for the golden *basons* **tankards**
he gave gold by weight
for every *bason* **tankard by tankard;**
and *likewise* silver by weight
for every *bason* **tankard by tankard** of silver:
18 And for the **sacrifice** altar of incense refined gold
by weight;
and gold for the pattern
of the chariot of the *cherubims* **cherubim**,
that spread out *their wings*,
and covered
the ark of the covenant of the LORD **Yah Veh.**
19 *All this, said David,*
the LORD **Yah Veh** made me *understand* **comprehend**
in *writing* **inscribing** by his hand upon me,
even all the works of this pattern.
20 And David said to *Solomon* **Shelomoh** his son,
Be strong and of good courage **Strengthen, encourage,**
and do **work** it:
fear **awe** not, nor be *dismayed* **terrified:**
for the LORD *God* **Yah Veh Elohim**,
even my *God* **Elohim**, *will* **shall** be with thee;
he *will* **shall** not *fail* **let** thee **down**, nor forsake thee,
until thou hast finished all the work for the service
of the house of the LORD **Yah Veh.**
21 And, behold, the *courses* **allotments**
of the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**,
even *they shall be with thee*
for all the service of the house of *God* **Elohim:**
and there shall be with thee
for all *manner of* **workmanship work**
every *willing skilful man* **volunteer in wisdom**,

1 CHRONICLES 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and with a soul of desire:
for Yah Veh examines all hearts
and discerns all the imaginations of fabrications:
if you seek him, you find him;
and if you forsake him, he abandons you eternally.
10 See now; for Yah Veh
chooses you to build a house for the holies:
Strengthen! Work!
11 And David gives Shelomoh his son
the pattern of the porch and of the houses
and of the treasuries
and of the upper rooms
and of the inner chambers
and of the house of the kapporeth;
12 and the pattern of all he has by the spirit:
of the courts of the house of Yah Veh
and of all the chambers all around
of the treasuries of the house of Elohim
and of the treasuries of the holies:
13 and for the allotments of the priests and the Leviym
and for all the work of the service
of the house of Yah Veh
and for all the instruments of service
in the house of Yah Veh:
14 even gold by weight for that of gold
for all instruments of service by service;
for all instruments of silver by weight
for all instruments of service by service:
15 even the weight for the menorah of gold
and for their lamps of gold
— by weight menorah by menorah;
and for the lamps and for the menorah
of silver by weight
for the menorah and for the lamps;
according to the service menorah by menorah:
16 and by weight, gold for the tables of arrangement
— table by table:
and silver for the tables of silver:
and pure gold for the forks
and the sprinklers and the covers:
and for the golden tankards
by weight, tankard by tankard;
and by weight, tankard by tankard of silver:
17 and for the sacrifice altar of incense
refined gold by weight;
and gold for the pattern of the chariot
of the cherubim that spreads
and covers the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh:
18 all Yah Veh has me comprehend
in inscribing by his hand on me
all the works of this pattern.
19 And David says to Shelomoh his son,
Strengthen! Encourage! Work!
Neither awe, nor terrify:
for Yah Veh Elohim, my Elohim, is with you;
he neither lets you down nor forsakes you
until you finish all the work for the service
of the house of Yah Veh.
20 And behold,
the allotments of the priests and the Leviym
for all the service of the house of Elohim:
and with you for all the work
is every volunteer in wisdom

1 CHRONICLES 28, 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for any manner of service:
also the *princes* **governors** and all the people
will shall be wholly at thy *commandment* **word**.

DAVID CHARGES THE CONGREGATION TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH ELOHIM

29

Furthermore David the *king* **sovereign**
said unto all the congregation,
Solomon **Shelomoh** my son,
whom *alone* **as one**, *God* **Elohim** hath chosen,
is yet young **a lad** and tender,
and the work is great:

for the palace is not for *man* **humanity**,
but for *the LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim**.

2

Now I have prepared with all my *might* **force**
for the house of my *God* **Elohim**
the gold for things to be made of gold **gold for the gold**,
and the silver for things of silver **silver for the silver**,
and the brass for things of brass **copper for the copper**,
the iron for things of iron **iron for the iron**,
and wood for things of wood **timber for the timber**;
onyx stones, and *stones to be set* **fillings**,
glistening **stibium** stones,
and of *divers colours* **embroidery**,
and all manner of precious stones,
and marble stones in abundance.

3

Moreover, because I *have set my affection* **am pleased**
to **in** the house of my *God* **Elohim**,
I have of mine own *proper good* **peculiar treasure**,
of gold and silver,
which I have given to the house of my *God* **Elohim**,
over and above all that I have prepared for the holy house.

4

Even three thousand *talents* **rounds** of gold,
of the gold of Ophir,

5

and seven thousand *talents* **rounds** of refined silver,
to *overlay* **plaster** the walls of the houses *withal*:
The gold for things of gold **Gold for the gold**,
and the silver for things of silver **silver for the silver**,
and for all manner of work

6

to be made by **of** the hands of artificers.
And who *then is willing* **volunteereth**
to *consecrate* **fill** his *service* **hand** this day
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**?

7

Then the *chief* **governor** of the fathers
and *princes* **governors**
of the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and the *captains* **governors** of thousands and of hundreds,
with the *rulers* **governors** of the *king's* **sovereign's** work,
offered willingly **volunteered**,

8

And gave for the service of the house of *God* **Elohim**
of gold five thousand *talents* **rounds**
and ten thousand *drams* **darics**,
and of silver *ten thousand talents* **a myriad rounds**,
and of *brass* **copper**
eighteen thousand talents
a myriad and eight thousand rounds,
and one hundred thousand *talents* **rounds** of iron.

9

And they with whom *precious* stones were found
gave them to the treasure
of the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
by the hand of *Jehiel* **Yechi El** the *Gershonite* **Gershoniyy**.

10

Then the people *rejoiced* **cheered**,
for that they *offered willingly* **volunteered**,
because with *perfect* **a heart at shalom**
they *offered willingly* **volunteered** to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
and David the *king* **sovereign**
also *rejoiced* **cheered** with great *joy* **cheer**.

DAVID BLESSES YAH VEH ELOHIM OF YISRA EL

11

Wherefore David blessed *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
before **in the eyes** of all the congregation:
and David said, Blessed be thou,
LORD **God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El** our father,
for ever **eternally** and *ever* **eternally**.

12

Thine, O *LORD* **Yah Veh** is the greatness,
and the *power* **might**, and the *glory* **adornment**,
and the victory **in perpetuity**, and the majesty:
for all that is in the *heaven* **heavens** and in the earth
is thine;
thine is the *kingdom* **sovereignndom**, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and thou art *exalted* **lifted** as head above all.

1 CHRONICLES 28, 29708

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for any manner of service:
and the governors and all the people
are wholly at your word.

DAVID CHARGES THE CONGREGATION TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH ELOHIM

29

And David the sovereign
says to all the congregation,
Shelomoh my son, the one Elohim chooses;
a lad and tender; and the work is great:
for the palace is not for humanity,
but for Yah Veh Elohim:
and with all my force

2

I prepared for the house of my Elohim:
gold for the gold;
silver for the silver;
copper for the copper;
iron for the iron;
timber for the timber;
onyx stones and fillings;
stibium stones and of embroidery;
and all manner of precious stones
and marble stones in abundance.

3

And again, because I *am* pleased
in the house of my Elohim,
I have of my own peculiar treasure
— of gold and silver,

4

which I give to the house of my Elohim
over and above all I prepared for the holy house:
three thousand rounds of gold of the gold of Ophir
and seven thousand rounds of refined silver
to plaster the walls of the houses:

5

gold for the gold;
silver for the silver;
and for all manner of work
of the hands of artificers.

And who volunteers to fill his hand this day
to Yah Veh?

6

And the governor of the fathers
and governors of the scions of Yisra El
and the governors of thousands and of hundreds
with the governors of the work of the sovereign
volunteer:

7

and give for the service of the house of Elohim
five thousand rounds and ten thousand darics of gold
and a myriad rounds of silver
and a myriad and eight thousand rounds of copper
and one hundred thousand rounds of iron.

8

And they who find stones
give them to the treasure of the house of Yah Veh
by the hand of Yechi El the Gershoniyy.

9

And the people cheer because they volunteer,
for they volunteer to Yah Veh with a heart at shalom:
and David the sovereign also cheers a great cheer.

DAVID BLESSES YAH VEH ELOHIM OF YISRA EL

10

And David blesses Yah Veh
in the eyes of all the congregation:
and David says, Blessed — you
Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El our father
eternally and eternally.

11

Yours, O Yah Veh,
— the greatness and the might and the adornment
in perpetuity and in majesty
for all in the heavens and in the earth:
yours is the sovereignndom, O Yah Veh,
and you are lifted as head over all:

1 CHRONICLES 29

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 Both riches and honour *come of thee* **be from thy face**,
and thou reignest over all;
and in thine hand is *power* **force** and might;
and in thine hand it is to *make great* **greaten**,
and to *give strength unto* **strengthen** all.

13 Now therefore, our *God* **Elohim**,
we *thank* **spread hands to thee**,
and *praise* **halal** thy glorious name.

14 But who am I, and what is my people,
that we should
be able to offer so willingly **restrain from volunteering**
after this sort?
for all *things come* **be** of thee,
and of thine *own* **hand** have we given thee.

15 For we are *strangers before thee* **sojourners at thy face**,
and *sojourners* **settlers**, as *were* all our fathers:
our days on the earth are as a shadow,
and there is *none abiding* **no expectation**.

16 O *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
all this *store* **multitude** that we have prepared
to build thee an house for thine holy name
cometh **be** of thine hand, and is all thine own.

17 I know also, my *God* **Elohim**,
that thou *triest* **proofest** the heart
and hast pleasure in *uprightness* **straightness**.
As for me, in the *uprightness* **straightness** of mine heart
I have *willingly offered* **volunteered** all these *things*:
and now have I seen with *joy* **cheer** thy people,
which are *present* **found** here,
to *offer willingly* **volunteer** unto thee.

18 O *LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim** of Abraham,
Isaac **Yischaq**, and of *Israel* **Yisra El**, our fathers,
keep **guard** this *for ever* **eternally**
in the imagination of the *thoughts* **fabrications**
of the heart of thy people,
and prepare their heart unto thee:

19 And give unto *Solomon* **Shelomoh** my son
a *perfect* heart **of shalom**,
to *keep* **guard** thy *commandments* **misvoth**,
thy *testimonies* **witnesses**, and thy statutes,
and to *do* **work** all these *things*, and to build the palace,
for the which I have *made* **provision prepared**.

20 And David said to all the congregation,
Now bless, **I pray you**, the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**.
And all the congregation
blessed the *LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim** of their fathers,
and bowed *down* **their heads**,
and *worshipped* the *LORD* **prostrated to Yah Veh**,
and the *king* **sovereign**.

SHELOMOH ANOINTED UNTO YAH VEH

21 And they sacrificed sacrifices unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *offered burnt offerings* **holocausted holocausts**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
on the morrow after that day,
even a thousand bullocks, a thousand rams,
and a thousand lambs, with their *drink offerings* **libations**,
and sacrifices in abundance for all *Israel* **Yisra El**:

22 And did eat and drink
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**
on that day with great *gladness* **cheerfulness**.
And they *made* **Solomon had Shelomoh** the son of David
king **reign** the second time,
and anointed him unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
to be the *chief governor* **eminent**,
and *Zadok* **Sadoq** to be priest.

23 Then *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
sat **settled** on the throne of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
as *king* **sovereign**
instead of David his father, and prospered;
and all *Israel* **obeyed Yisra El** **hearkened to** him.

24 And all the *princes* **governors**, and the mighty *men*,
and all the sons likewise of *king* **sovereign** David,
submitted themselves **gave their hand**
unto *Solomon* **under Shelomoh** the *king* **sovereign**.

25 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
magnified **Solomon** **greatened Shelomoh**
exceedingly in the *sight* **eyes** of all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and *bestowed* **gave** upon him
such royal majesty **the majesty of the sovereigndom**

1 CHRONICLES 29

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 and riches and honor are at your face
and you reign over all;
and in your hand *is* force and might;
and in your hand to *greaten* and to *strengthen* all.

13 And now, our Elohim,
we spread hands to you
and *halal* your glorious name.

14 Yes, because who *am* I and who *are* my people,
to *restrain from volunteering* after this sort?
For all is from you
and from your hand we give you:
for we are sojourners at your face
and settlers, as all our fathers:
our days on the earth are as a shadow
and there is no expectation.

16 O Yah Veh our Elohim,
all this multitude we prepare
to build you a house for your holy name
is from your hand and *is* all your own:

17 and I know, my Elohim,
that you proof the heart
and have pleasure in straightness.

As for me, in the straightness of my heart,
I volunteer all these:
and now with cheer
I see your people who are found here
— who volunteer to you.

18 O Yah Veh Elohim of Abraham,
Yischaq and of Yisra El, our fathers,
guard this eternally
in the imagination of the fabrications of the heart
of your people
and prepare their heart to you:

19 and give Shelomoh my son a heart of shalom
to guard your misvoth,
your witnesses and your statutes;
and to work all these
and to build the palace I prepare.

20 And David says to all the congregation,
Bless, I pray you, Yah Veh your Elohim.

And all the congregation
blesses Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers
and bows and prostrates to Yah Veh
and the sovereign.

SHELOMOH ANOINTED TO YAH VEH

21 And on the morrow after that day
they sacrifice sacrifices to Yah Veh
and holocaust holocausts to Yah Veh
— a thousand bullocks, a thousand rams,
a thousand lambs, with their libations
and sacrifices in abundance for all Yisra El:
and on that day
they eat and drink at the face of Yah Veh
with great cheerfulness:
and they have Shelomoh the son of David
reign the second time;
and anoint him to Yah Veh as eminent
and Sadoq as priest.

23 And Shelomoh settles on the throne of Yah Veh
as sovereign
in the stead of David his father and prospers:
and all Yisra El hearkens to him;
and all the governors and the mighty
and also all the sons of sovereign David
give their hand under Shelomoh the sovereign.

25 And Yah Veh greatens Shelomoh
in the eyes of all Yisra El;
and gives on him the majesty of the sovereigndom

1 CHRONICLES 29

exeGeseg ready research BIBLE

as had not been on any *king* **sovereign**
before him **at his face** in *Israel* **Yisra El**.

THE DEATH OF DAVID

26 Thus David the son of *Jesse* **Yishay**
reigned over all *Israel* **Yisra El**.
27 And the *time* **days** that he reigned over *Israel* **Yisra El**
was forty years;
seven years reigned he in Hebron,
and thirty and three *years*
reigned he in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
28 And he died in a good *old age* **grayness**,
full **satisfied** of days, riches, and honour:
and *Solomon* **Shelomoh** his son reigned in his stead.
29 Now the *acts* **words** of David the *king* **sovereign**,
first and last, behold,
they are *written* **inscribed**
in the *book* **words** of *Samuel* **Shemu El** the seer,
and in the *book* **words** of Nathan the prophet,
and in the *book* **words** of Gad the seer.
30 With all his *reign* **sovereigndom** and his might,
and the times that *went* **passed** over him,
and over *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and over all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**
of the *countries* **lands**.

1 CHRONICLES 29

exeGeseg companion BIBLE

as has not become any sovereign
at his face in *Yisra El*.

THE DEATH OF DAVID

26 And David the son of *Yishay*
reigns over all *Yisra El*:
27 and the days he reigns over *Yisra El* *are* forty years:
he reigns seven years in Hebron
and he reigns thirty—three in *Yeru Shalem*:
28 and he dies in a good grayness;
satisfied of days, riches and honor:
and *Shelomoh* his son reigns in his stead.
29 And the words of David the sovereign,
first and last, behold,
they are inscribed in the words of *Shemu El* the seer
and in the words of Nathan the prophet
and in the words of Gad the seer;
30 with all his sovereigndom and his might
and the times that pass over him and over *Yisra El*
and over all the sovereigndoms of the lands.

2 CHRONICLES 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SHELOMOH STRENGTHENS IN HIS SOVEREIGNDOM

- 1 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh** the son of David was strengthened in his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**, and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim** was with him, and *magnified* **greatened** him exceedingly.
- 2 **SHELOMOH HOLOCAUSTS UPON THE SACRIFICE ALTAR**
Then *Solomon* **Shelomoh** *spake* **said** unto all *Israel* **Yisra El**, to the *captains* **governors** of thousands and of hundreds, and to the judges, and to every *governor* **hierarch** in all *Israel* **Yisra El**, the *chief* **head** of the fathers.
- 3 So *Solomon* **Shelomoh**, and all the congregation with him, went to the *high place* **bamah** that was at *Gibeon* **Gibon**; for there was the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation of *God* **Elohim**, which *Moses* **Mosheh** the servant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *made* **worked** in the wilderness.
- 4 But the ark of *God* **Elohim** had David *brought up* **ascended** from *Kirjathjearim* **Qiryath Arim** to the place which *when* David had prepared for it: for he had *pitched* **spread** a tent for it at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
- 5 Moreover the *brasen* **copper** sacrifice altar, that *Bezaleel* **Besal El** the son of Uri, the son of Hur, had *made* **worked**, he *put before* **set at the face** of the tabernacle of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**: and *Solomon* **Shelomoh** and the congregation sought unto it.
- 6 And *Solomon* went up **Shelomoh** *holocausted* thither to the *brasen* **copper** sacrifice altar before the *LORD* **at the face of Yah Veh**, which was at the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation, and *offered* **holocausted** a thousand *burnt offerings* **holocausts** upon it.
- 7 **SHELOMOH ASKS FOR WISDOM**
In that night *did God appear* **Elohim was seen** unto *Solomon* **by Shelomoh**, and said unto him, Ask what I shall give thee.
- 8 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh** said unto *God* **Elohim**, Thou hast *shewed* **worked** great mercy unto David my father, and hast made me to reign in his stead.
- 9 Now, O *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim**, let thy *promise* **word** unto David my father be *established* **amened**: for thou hast made me *king* **reign** over a **much** people like the dust of the earth *in multitude*.
- 10 Give me now wisdom and knowledge, that I may go out and come in before **at the face of** this people: for who can judge this thy people, that is so great?
- 11 And *God* **Elohim** said to *Solomon* **Shelomoh**, Because this was in thine heart, and thou hast not asked riches, *wealth* **holdings**, or honour, nor the *life* **soul** of *thine enemies* **thy haters**, neither yet hast asked *long life* **many days**; but hast asked wisdom and knowledge for thyself, that thou mayest judge my people, over whom I have made thee *king* **reign**:
- 12 Wisdom and knowledge is *granted* **given** unto thee; and I *will* **shall** give thee riches, and *wealth* **holdings**, and honour, such as none of the *kings* **sovereigns** have had that have *been before thee* **at thy face**, neither shall there any **become** after thee *have the like*.
- 13 Then *Solomon* **Shelomoh** came from his journey to the *high place* **bamah** that was at *Gibeon* **Gibon** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, from before **the face of** the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation, and reigned over *Israel* **Yisra El**.
- 14 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh** gathered chariots and *horsemen* **cavalry**:

2 CHRONICLES 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SHELOMOH STRENGTHENS IN HIS SOVEREIGNDOM

- 1 And Shelomoh the son of David strengthens in his sovereigndom; and Yah Veh his Elohim is with him and greatens him exceedingly.
- 2 **SHELOMOH HOLOCAUSTS ON THE SACRIFICE ALTAR**
And Shelomoh says to all Yisra El — to governors of thousands and of hundreds and to judges and to every hierarch in all Yisra El, heads of the fathers: and Shelomoh and all his congregation go to the bamah at Gibon; for the tent of the congregation of Elohim Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh worked in the wilderness is there: but David ascended the ark of Elohim from Qiryath Arim when David prepared for it: for he spreads a tent for it at Yeru Shalem: and he set the copper sacrifice altar Besal El the son of Uri the son of Hur worked at the face of the tabernacle of Yah Veh: and Shelomoh and the congregation seek unto it: and there Shelomoh holocausts to the copper sacrifice altar at the face of Yah Veh at the tent of the congregation; and holocausts a thousand holocausts thereon.
- 3 **SHELOMOH ASKS FOR WISDOM**
In that night, Elohim is seen by Shelomoh and says to him, Ask what I give you.
- 4 And Shelomoh says to Elohim, You worked great mercy to David my father and have me to reign in his stead: now, O Yah Veh Elohim, amen your word to David my father: for you have me to reign over much people as the dust of the earth: give me now wisdom and knowledge to go and come at the face of this people: for who can judge this your people so great?
- 5 And Elohim says to Shelomoh, Because this is in your heart and you ask neither riches, holdings or honor, nor the soul of your haters, nor yet ask for many days; but ask wisdom and knowledge for yourself to judge my people over whom I have you reign: wisdom and knowledge are given you; and I give you riches and holdings and honor such as neither became sovereigns at your face, nor becomes after you.
- 6 And Shelomoh comes to the bamah at Gibon to Yeru Shalem from the face of the tent of the congregation and reigns over Yisra El.
- 7 And Shelomoh gathers chariots and cavalry:

2 CHRONICLES 1, 2

exeGeses *ready research BIBLE*

and he had a thousand and four hundred chariots,
 and twelve thousand *horsemen cavalry*,
 which he *placed set* in the chariot cities,
 and with the *king sovereign* at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
 15 And the *king made sovereign gave* silver and gold
 at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem as plenteous* as stones,
 and cedar trees *made gave* he as the sycamore trees
 that are in the *vale lowland* for abundance.
 16 And *Solomon Shelomoh* had horses
brought proceed out of *Egypt Misrayim*,
 and *linen yarn troops*:
 the *king's sovereign's* merchants
 received *took* the *linen yarn troops* at a price.
 17 And they *fetchd up ascended*,
 and brought forth out of *Egypt Misrayim*
 a chariot for six hundred *shekels* of silver,
 and an horse for an hundred and fifty:
 and so brought they out *horses*
 for all the *kings sovereigns* of the *Hittites Hethiy*,
 and for the *kings sovereigns* of *Syria Aram*,
 by their *means hand*.

SHELOMOH PREPARES TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

2 And *Solomon determined Shelomoh said*
 to build an house for the name of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
 and an house for his *kingdom sovereigndom*.
 2 And *Solomon Shelomoh*
told out threescore and ten scribed seventy thousand men
 to bear *burdens — burdenbearers*,
 and *fourscore eighty* thousand *men*
 to hew in the mountain,
 and three thousand and six hundred to oversee them.
 3 And *Solomon Shelomoh* sent to *Huram Hiram*
 the *king sovereign* of *Tyre Sor*, saying,
 As thou didst *deal work* with David my father,
 and didst send him cedars
 to build him an house to *dwel settle* therein,
 even so *deal with me*.
 4 Behold, I build an house
 to the name of *the LORD Yah Veh* my *God Elohim*,
 to *dedicate hallow* it to him,
 and to *burn before him incense at his face*
 sweet incense *of aromatics*,
 and for the continual *shewbread arrangement*,
 and for the *burnt offerings holocausts*
 morning and evening,
 on the *sabbaths shabbaths*, and on the new moons,
 and on the *solemn feasts festivals*
 of *the LORD Yah Veh* our *God Elohim*.
 This is an *ordinance for ever to Israel eternally to Yisra El*.
 5 And the house which I build is great:
 for great is our *God Elohim* above all *gods elohim*.
 6 But who *is able hath obtained force*
 to build him an house,
 seeing the *heaven heavens*
 and *heaven the heavens* of *heavens the heavens*
 cannot contain him?
 who am I then, that I should build him an house,
 save *only to burn sacrifice except to incense*
before him at his face?
 7 Send me now therefore a man
cunning wise to work in gold,
 and in silver, and in *brass copper*, and in iron,
 and in purple, and crimson, and blue,
 and that *can skill percieveth to grave engrave engravings*
 with the *cunning men wise* that are with me
 in *Judah Yah Hudah* and in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
 whom David my father *did provide prepared*.
 8 Send me also cedar trees, *fir cypress* trees,
 and *algum algumim* trees, out of Lebanon:
 for I know that thy servants
can skill perceive to cut timber in Lebanon; and, behold,
 my servants shall be with thy servants,
 9 Even to prepare me timber in abundance:
 for the house which I am about to build
 shall be *wonderful marvellous and* great.
 10 And, behold, I *will shall* give to thy servants,
 the *hewers choppers* that cut timber,
 twenty thousand *measures kors* of *beaten struck* wheat,

2 CHRONICLES 1, 2 712

exeGeses *companion BIBLE*

and he has a thousand and four hundred chariots
 and twelve thousand cavalry
 which he sets in the chariot cities
 and with the sovereign at Yeru Shalem.
 15 And the sovereign gives silver and gold
 at Yeru Shalem as stones
 and gives cedar trees as sycamore trees
 that are in the lowland for abundance:
 16 and Shelomoh proceeds horses and troops
 from Misrayim:
 the merchants of the sovereign
 take the troops at a price:
 17 and they ascend from Misrayim
 and bring a chariot for six hundred silver
 and a horse for a hundred and fifty:
 and thus they bring
 for all the sovereigns of the Hethiy
 and for the sovereigns of Aram by their hand.

SHELOMOH PREPARES TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

2 And Shelomoh says
 to build a house for the name of Yah Veh
 and a house for his sovereigndom:
 2 and Shelomoh scribes seventy thousand men
 — burdenbearers
 and eighty thousand men to hew in the mountain
 and three thousand and six hundred to oversee them.
 3 And Shelomoh sends to Hiram the sovereign of Sor,
 saying, When you worked with David my father
 you sent him cedars to build a house to settle in:
 4 behold,
 I build a house to the name of Yah Veh my Elohim
 to hallow to him
 and to incense incense of aromatics at his face
 and for the continual arrangement
 and for the holocausts morning and evening
 on the sabbaths and on the new moons
 and on the festivals of Yah Veh our Elohim:
 this is eternally to Yisra El:
 5 and the house I build is great:
 for great is our Elohim above all elohim.
 6 But who obtains force to build him a house,
 seeing the heavens and the heavens of the heavens
 contain him not?
 Who am I to build him a house,
 except to incense at his face?
 7 And now, send me a wise man
 to work in gold and in silver
 and in copper and in iron
 and in purple and crimson and blue
 — who percieves to engrave engravings
 with the wise who are with me
 in Yah Hudah and in Yeru Shalem
 — whom David my father prepared:
 8 and send me cedar trees, cypress trees
 and algumim trees from Lebanon:
 for I know that your servants
 perceive to cut timber in Lebanon;
 and behold, my servants are with your servants;
 9 even to prepare me timber in abundance:
 for the house I build is marvellous and great.
 10 And behold, I give your servants
 — the choppers who cut timber
 twenty thousand kors of struck wheat

2 CHRONICLES 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and twenty thousand measures kors of barley,
and twenty thousand baths of wine,
and twenty thousand baths of oil.

11 Then Hiram Hiram, the king sovereign of Tyre Sor
answered said in writing inscribings,
which he sent to Solomon Shelomoh,
Because the LORD Yah Veh hath loved his people,
he hath made given thee king sovereign over them.

12 Hiram Hiram said moreover,
Blessed be
the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El,
that made heaven worked the heavens and earth,
who hath given to David the king sovereign a wise son,
endued with prudence knowing comprehension
and understanding discernment,
that might build an house for the LORD Yah Veh,
and an house for his kingdom sovereignty.

13 And now I have sent a cunning wise man,
endued with understanding knowing discernment,
of Hiram Hiram my father's,

14 The son of a woman of the daughters of Dan,
and his father was a man of Tyre Soriy,
skillful perceiving to work in gold, and in silver,
in brass copper, in iron, in stone, and in timber,
in purple, in blue, and in fine bleached linen,
and in crimson;
also to grave engrave any manner of graving engraving,
and to find out every device fabricate any fabrication
which shall put to be given him,
with thy cunning men wise,
and with the cunning men wise
of my lord adoni David thy father.

15 Now therefore
the wheat, and the barley, the oil, and the wine,
which my lord adoni hath spoken of said,
let him send unto his servants:

16 And we will shall cut wood timber out of Lebanon,
as much as thou shalt need:
and we will shall bring it to thee in flotes rafts by sea
to Joppa Yapho;
and thou shalt carry ascend it up
to Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.

17 And Solomon Shelomoh
numbered scribed all the strangers men sojourners
that were in the land of Israel Yisra El,
after the numbering scribing
wherewith David his father had numbered scribed them;
and they were found an hundred and fifty thousand
and three thousand and six hundred.

18 And he set worked
threescore and ten seventy thousand of them
to be bearers of burdens burdenbearers,
and fourscore eighty thousand
to be hewers in the mountain,
and three thousand and six hundred overseers
to set serve the people a work who serve.

SHELOMOH BEGINS TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

3 Then Solomon Shelomoh began to build
the house of the LORD Yah Veh
at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem in mount Moriah Mori Yah,
where the LORD appeared which was seen
unto by David his father,
in the place that David had prepared
in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite Yebusiy.

2 And he began to build
in the second day of the second month,
in the fourth year of his reign sovereignty.

THE DIMENSIONS OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

3 Now these are the things those
wherein Solomon Shelomoh was instructed founded
for the building of the house of God Elohim.
The length by cubits after the first measure
was threescore sixty cubits,
and the breadth twenty cubits.

4 And the porch
that was in the front at the face of the house,
the length at the face of it
was according to as the breadth of the house,
twenty cubits,

2 CHRONICLES 2, 3 713

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and twenty thousand kors of barley
and twenty thousand baths of wine
and twenty thousand baths of oil.

11 And Hiram the sovereign of Sor
says in inscribings he sends to Shelomoh,
Because Yah Veh loves his people
he gives you sovereign over them.

12 Hiram says, Blessed — Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
who works the heavens and earth;
who gave David the sovereign a wise son
knowing comprehension and discernment
to build a house for Yah Veh
and a house for his sovereignty.

13 And now I send a wise man of Hiram my father
who knows discernment;

14 the son of a woman of the daughters of Dan
and his father is a Soriy;
who perceives to work in gold and in silver,
in copper, in iron, in stone and in timber,
in purple, in blue and in bleached linen
and in crimson;
and to engrave any engraving
and to fabricate any fabrication given him;
with your wise
and with the wise of my adoni David your father.

15 And now, the wheat and the barley,
the oil and the wine,
of which my adoni says,
Have him send to his servants:
and we — we cut timber from Lebanon
— as much as you need:
and we bring it to you in rafts by sea to Yapho;
and you ascend it to Yeru Shalem.

17 And Shelomoh
scribes all the men sojourners in the land of Yisra El,
after the scribing David his father scribed them;
and they find a hundred and fifty thousand
and three thousand and six hundred.

18 And he works
seventy thousand burdenbearers
and eighty thousand hewers in the mountain
and three thousand and six hundred overseers
to serve the people who serve.

SHELOMOH BEGINS TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

3 And Shelomoh begins to build the house of Yah Veh
at Yeru Shalem in mount Mori Yah;
where he is seen by David his father
in the place David prepared
in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Yebusiy:
and he begins to build
in the second of the second month,
in the fourth year of his sovereignty.

THE DIMENSIONS OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

3 And Shelomoh founds
to build the house of Elohim by these:
the length by cubits after the first measure,
sixty cubits;
and the width, twenty cubits;
and the porch at the face

4 — the length at the face, as the width of the house,
twenty cubits;

2 CHRONICLES 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 and the height was an hundred and twenty:
and he overlaid it within with pure gold.
And the greater house
he *cieled* **covered** with *fir cypress* tree,
which he *overlaid* **covered** with *fine* **the best** gold,
and *set* **ascended** thereon palm trees and chains.
6 And he *garnished* **overlaid** the house
with precious stones for *beauty* **adornment**:
and the gold was gold of *Parvaim* **Parvayim**.
7 He *overlaid* **covered** also the house,
the beams, the *posts* **thresholds**, and the walls thereof,
and the doors thereof, with gold;
and *graved* **cherubims** **engraved cherubim** on the walls.
8 And he *made* **worked**
the *most holy house* **Holy of Holies**,
the length *whereof* **at the face**
was *according to* **as** the breadth of the house,
twenty cubits, and the breadth thereof twenty cubits:
and he *overlaid* **covered** it with *fine* **the best** gold,
amounting to six hundred *talents* **rounds**.
9 And the weight of the nails was fifty shekels of gold.
And he *overlaid* **covered** the upper *chambers* **rooms**
with gold.
10 And in the *most holy house* **Holy of Holies**
he *made* **worked**
two *cherubims* **cherubim** of *image* **carved** work,
and overlaid them with gold.
11 And the wings of the *cherubims* **cherubim**
were twenty cubits long:
one wing of the *one cherub* was five cubits,
reaching **touching** to the wall of the house:
and the other wing was *likewise* five cubits,
reaching **touching** to the wing of the *other one* cherub.
12 And *one* **the** wing of the *other one* cherub
was five cubits,
reaching **touching** to the wall of the house:
and the *other one* wing was five cubits *also*,
joining **adhering** to the wing of the *other one* cherub.
13 The wings of these *cherubims* **cherubim**
spread *themselves forth* twenty cubits:
and they stood on their feet,
and their faces were *inward* **toward the house**.
14 And he *made* **worked** the veil of blue, and purple,
and crimson, and *fine* **bleached** linen,
and *wrought* **cherubims** **ascended cherubim** thereon.
15 Also he *made* **before** **worked at the face of** the house
two pillars of thirty and five cubits *high* **in length**,
and the *chapter* **cap** that was on the top of each of them
was five cubits.
16 And he *made* **worked** chains, as in the *oracle* **pulpit**,
and *put* **gave** them on the heads of the pillars;
and *made* **worked** an hundred pomegranates,
and *put* **gave** them on the chains.
17 And he *reared* **raised** up the pillars
before **at the face of** the *temple* **manse**,
one on the right *hand*, and *the other one* on the left;
and called the name of that on the right *hand*
Jachin **Yachin**,
and the name of that on the left
Boaz.

THE FURNISHINGS OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

4 Moreover
he *made* **an worked a sacrifice** altar of *brass* **copper**,
twenty cubits the length *thereof*,
and twenty cubits the breadth *thereof*,
and ten cubits the height *thereof*.
2 Also he *made* **worked** a *molten* **poured** sea
of ten cubits from *brim* **lip** to *brim* **lip**,
round **about** in compass,
and five cubits the height *thereof*;
and a line of thirty cubits
did **compass** **surrounded** it round about.
3 And under it was the *similitude* **likeness** of oxen,
which *did* **compass** **surrounded** it round about:
ten in a cubit,
compassing **surrounding** the sea round about.
Two rows of oxen were *cast* **poured**,
when it was *cast* **in casting**.
4 It stood upon twelve oxen,

2 CHRONICLES 3, 4 714

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the height, a hundred and twenty:
and he overlays it inside with pure gold:
5 and he covers the greater house with cypress trees;
which he covers with the best gold;
and ascends palm trees and chains thereon;
6 and he overlays the house
with precious stones for adornment;
and the gold is gold of Parvayim:
7 and he covers the house
— the beams, the thresholds
and the walls and the doors with gold;
and engraves cherubim on the walls:
8 and he works the Holy of Holies
— the length at the face,
as the width of the house,
twenty cubits;
and the width, twenty cubits:
and he covers it with the best gold,
six hundred rounds:
9 and the weight of the nails, fifty shekels of gold:
and he covers the upper rooms with gold.
10 And in the Holy of Holies
he works two cherubim of carved work
and overlays them with gold:
11 and the wings of the cherubim, twenty cubits long;
one wing, five cubits,
touching to the wall of the house;
and the other wing, five cubits,
touching to the wing of the one cherub;
12 and the wing of the one cherub, five cubits,
touching to the wall of the house:
and the one wing is five cubits
adhering to the wing of the one cherub:
13 the wings of these cherubim spread twenty cubits:
and they stand on their feet
with their faces toward the house.
14 And he works the veil of blue and purple
and crimson and bleached linen;
and cherubim ascend thereon.
15 And at the face of the house
he works two pillars, thirty—five cubits long;
and the cap on the top of each of them, five cubits:
16 and he works chains, as in the pulpit,
and gives them on the heads of the pillars;
and works a hundred pomegranates
and gives them on the chains:
17 and he raises the pillars at the face of the manse,
one on the right and one on the left:
and calls the name of that on the right, Yachin;
and the name of that on the left, Boaz.

THE FURNISHINGS OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

4 And he works a sacrifice altar of copper,
twenty cubits long
and twenty cubits wide
and ten cubits high:
2 and he works a poured sea,
ten cubits lip to lip,
round all around;
and five cubits high;
and a line of thirty cubits surrounds it all around:
3 and below,
the likeness of oxen surrounds it all around
— ten in a cubit, surrounds the sea all around.
Two rows of oxen are poured and cast:
4 it stands on twelve oxen:

2 CHRONICLES 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

three *looking facing* toward the north,
and three *looking facing* toward the west **sea**,
and three *looking facing* toward the south,
and three *looking facing* toward the east **rising**:
and the sea was *set* above upon them,
and all their *hinder parts backs*
were *inward toward the house*.
5 And the thickness of it was *an handbreadth a palm span*,
and the *brim lip* of it like the work of the *brim lip* of a cup,
with *flowers blossoms* of lilies;
and it *received prevailed*
and *held contained* three thousand baths.
6 He *made worked* also ten lavers,
and *put gave* five on the right *hand*, and five on the left,
to *wash baptise* in them:
such *things* as they *offered worked*
for the *burnt offering holocaust*
they *washed cleansed* in them;
but the sea was for the priests to *wash baptise* in.
7 And he *made worked* ten *candlesticks menorah* of gold
according to their *form judgment*,
and *set gave* them in the *temple manse*,
five on the right *hand*, and five on the left.
8 He *made worked* also ten tables,
and *placed set* them in the *temple manse*,
five on the right *side*, and five on the left.
And he *made worked*
an hundred *basons sprinklers* of gold.
9 *Furthermore he made worked* the court of the priests,
and the great court, and doors for the court,
and overlaid the doors of them with *brass copper*.
10 And he *set gave* the sea
on the right *side of the east end shoulder toward the east*,
over against opposite the south.
11 And *Huram made Hiram worked* the *pots caldrons*,
and the shovels, and the *basons sprinklers*.
And *Huram Hiram* finished the work
that he was to *make work*
for *king Solomon sovereign Shelomoh*
for the house of *God Elohim*;
12 *To wit*, the two pillars, and the *pommels bowls*,
and the *chapters caps*
which were on the top of the two pillars,
and the two *wreaths nets* to cover the two *pommels bowls*
of the *chapters caps* which were on the top of the pillars;
13 And four hundred pomegranates
on the two *wreaths nets*;
two rows of pomegranates on *each wreath one net*,
to cover the two *pommels bowls* of the *chapters caps*
which were upon *the face of* the pillars.
14 He *made worked* also bases,
and lavers *made worked* he upon the bases;
15 One sea, and twelve oxen under it.
16 The *pots caldrons* also, and the shovels,
and the *fleshhooks forks*, and all their instruments,
did *Huram Hiram* his father *make work*
to *king Solomon sovereign Shelomoh*
for the house of *the LORD Yah Veh*
of *bright brass scoured copper*.
17 In the *plain environ* of *Jordan Yarden*
did the *king cast sovereign pour* them,
in the *clay ground thicknesses of the soil*
between *Succoth Sukkoth/Brush Arbors*
and *Zeredathah Seredah*.
18 Thus *Solomon Shelomoh*
made worked all these *vessels instruments*
in *great mighty* abundance:
for the weight of the *brass copper*
could not be *found out probed*.
19 And *Solomon Shelomoh*
made worked all the *vessels instruments*
that were for the house of *God Elohim*,
the golden *sacrifice* altar also,
and the tables whereon the *shewbread facebread* was *set*;
20 *Moreover the candlesticks menorah* with their lamps,
that they should burn after the *manner judgment*
before at the face of the *oracle pulpit*,
of *pure concentrated* gold;
21 And the *flowers blossoms*, and the lamps, and the tongs,

2 CHRONICLES 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

three facing toward the north
and three facing toward the sea
and three facing toward the south
and three facing toward the rising:
with the sea high above
with all their backs toward the house:
5 and a palm span thick
and the lip of it as the work of the lip of a cup
with blossoms of lilies;
and it prevails and contains three thousand baths.
6 He also works ten lavers;
and gives five on the right and five on the left
to baptize therein;
such as they work for the holocaust
to cleanse therein:
and the sea *is* for the priests to baptize therein.
7 And he works ten menorah of gold
according to their judgment;
and gives them in the manse
— five on the right and five on the left:
8 and he works ten tables and sets them in the manse
— five on the right and five on the left:
and he works a hundred gold sprinklers:
9 and he works the court of the priests
and the great court and doors for the court
and overlays their doors with copper:
10 and he gives the sea
on the right shoulder
toward the east opposite the south.
11 And Hiram works the caldrons
and the shovels and the sprinklers:
and Hiram finishes the work
he works for sovereign Shelomoh
for the house of Elohim
12 — the two pillars and the bowls;
and the caps on the top of the two pillars;
and the two nets to cover the two bowls of the caps
on the top of the pillars;
13 and four hundred pomegranates on the two nets;
two rows of pomegranates on one net
to cover the two bowls of the caps
on the face of the pillars:
14 and he works bases
and works lavers on the bases
— one sea and twelve oxen under it:
15 and the caldrons and the shovels
and the forks and all their instruments
Hiram his father works to sovereign Shelomoh
for the house of Yah Veh
of scoured copper:
16 the sovereign pours them in the environ of Yarden
in the thicknesses of the soil
between Sukkoth/Brush Arbors and Seredah.
17 And Shelomoh
works all these instruments in mighty abundance:
and the weight of the copper is not probed:
18 and Shelomoh
works all the instruments for the house of Elohim;
and the golden sacrifice altar;
and the tables whereon the facebread *is*;
20 the menorah with their lamps
to burn after the judgment at the face of the pulpit
of concentrated gold:
21 and the blossoms and the lamps and the tongs

2 CHRONICLES 4, 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

made he of gold, and that perfect — the perfection of gold;
22 And the *snuffers* **tweezers**, and the *basons* **sprinklers**,
and the *spoons* **bowls**, and the *censers* **trays**,
of pure **concentrated** gold:
and the *entry* **portal** of the house,
the inner doors thereof
for the *most holy place* **Holy of Holies**,
and the doors of the house of the *temple* **manse**,
were of gold.

THE ARK BROUGHT INTO THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

5 Thus all the work
that *Solomon made* **Shelomoh worked**
for the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
was *finished* **shalamed**:
and *Solomon* **Shelomoh** brought in
all the *things that* **holies of** David his father *had dedicated*;
and the silver, and the gold, and all the instruments,
put **gave** he among the treasures
of the house of *God* **Elohim**.

2 Then *Solomon assembled* **Shelomoh congregated**
the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and all the heads of the *tribes* **rods**,
the *chief* **hierarch** of the fathers
of the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,

to *bring up* **ascend**
the ark of the covenant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
out of the city of David, which is *Zion* **Siyon**.
3 Wherefore all the men of *Israel* **Yisra El**
assembled themselves
unto the *king* **sovereign**
in the *feast* **celebration** which was in the seventh month.

4 And all the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El** came;
and the *Levites* **took up** **Leviym bore** the ark.
5 And they *brought up* **ascended** the ark,
and the *tabernacle* **tent** of the congregation,
and all the holy *vessels* **instruments**
that were in the *tabernacle* **tent**,
these did the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**
bring up **ascend**.

6 Also *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**,
and all the *congregation* **witness of Israel** **Yisra El**
that were *assembled* **congregated** unto him
before at the face of the ark,
sacrificed **sheep flock** and oxen,
which could not be *told* **scribed** nor numbered
for *multitude* **abundance**.

7 And the priests brought in
the ark of the covenant of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
unto his place,
to the *oracle* **pulpit** of the house,
into the *most holy place* **Holy of Holies**,
even under the wings of the **cherubims cherubim**:

8 For the *cherubims* **cherubim**
spread forth their wings over the place of the ark,
and the *cherubims* **cherubim**
covered the ark and the staves thereof above.

9 And they *drew out* **lengthened** the staves of the ark,
that the *ends* **heads** of the staves were seen from the ark
before at the face of the **oracle pulpit**;
but they were not seen without.

10 And there it is unto this day.
There was *nothing* **naught** in the ark
save **except** the two *tables* **slabs**
which *Moses put* **Mosheh gave** therein at Horeb,
when the *LORD made* **Yah Veh cut** a covenant
with the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
when they *came* **went** out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.

THE HONOR OF YAH VEH FILLS THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

11 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
when the priests
were *come* **gone** out of the *holy place* **holies**:
(for all the priests that were *present* **found**
were *sanctified* **hallowed**,
and did not then *wait* **guard** by *course* **allotment**:
12 Also the *Levites* **Leviym** which were the singers,
all of them of Asaph, of Heman, of *Jeduthun* **Yeduthun**,
with their sons and their brethren,

2 CHRONICLES 4, 5 716

exeGeses companion BIBLE

of gold — the perfection of gold:
22 and the tweezers and the sprinklers
and the bowls and the trays
of concentrated gold:
and the portal of the house
— the inner doors to the Holy of Holies
and the doors of the house of the manse
of gold.

THE ARK BROUGHT INTO THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

5 And they shalam all the work
Shelomoh works for the house of Yah Veh:
and Shelomoh brings in all the holies
of David his father;
and he gives the silver and the gold
and all the instruments
among the treasures of the house of Elohim:
2 then Shelomoh congregates the elders of Yisra El
and all the heads of the rods
— hierarch of the fathers of the sons of Yisra El
to Yeru Shalem;
to ascend the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh
from the city of David — Siyon.

3 And all the men of Yisra El
congregate to the sovereign in the celebration
in the seventh month:
4 and all the elders of Yisra El come
and the Leviym bear the ark;
5 and they ascend the ark
and the tent of the congregation
and all the holy instruments in the tent
— the priests and the Leviym ascend these:
6 and sovereign Shelomoh
and all the witness of Yisra El
who congregate to him at the face of the ark,
sacrifice **flock and oxen**:
7 — neither scribed nor numbered for abundance:
and the priests
bring the ark of the covenant of Yah Veh to its place
— to the pulpit of the house in the Holy of Holies
under the wings of the cherubim:
8 and the cherubim
spread their wings over the place of the ark;
and the cherubim
cover over the ark and the staves:
9 and they lengthen the staves
so that the heads of the staves are seen from the ark
at the face of the pulpit;
but they are not seen outward:
and there it is to this day
10 — naught in the ark
except the two slabs Mosheh gave at Horeb,
when Yah Veh cut with the sons of Yisra El
when they came from Misrayim.

THE HONOR OF YAH VEH FILLS THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

11 And so be it,
the priests go from the holies:
— for all the priests who are found are hallowed
with none to guard by allotment:
12 and the Leviym — the singers — all of them
— of Asaph, of Heman, of Yeduthun,
with their sons and their brothers

2 CHRONICLES 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

being arrayed **enrobed** in white **bleached** linen,
having cymbals and *psalteries* **bagpipes** and harps,
stood at the *east end* **rising** of the **sacrifice** altar,
and with them an hundred and twenty priests
sounding trumpeting with trumpets:)
13 **So be** It came even to pass,
as the trumpeters and singers were as one,
to make one *sound* **voice** to be heard in *praising* **halaling**
and *thanking the LORD* **extending hands to Yah Veh**;
and when they lifted *up* their voice with the trumpets
and cymbals and instruments of *musick* **song**,
and *praised the LORD* **halaled Yah Veh**, *saying*,
For he is good; for his mercy *endureth for ever* **be eternal**:
that then the house was filled with a cloud,
even the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
14 So that the priests could not stand to minister
by reason **at the face** of the cloud:
for the *glory* **honour** of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
had filled the house of *God* **Elohim**.

SHELOMOH RECOUNTS THE PROMISES OF YAH VEH

6 Then said *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
The LORD **Yah Veh** hath said
that he *would dwell* **should tabernacle**
in the *thick* **dripping** darkness.
2 But I have built an house of habitation for thee,
and a *place* **an establishment** for thy *dwelling* **settling**
for ever **eternally**.
3 And the *king* **sovereign** turned his face,
and blessed the whole congregation of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and all the congregation of *Israel* **Yisra El** stood.
4 And he said,
Blessed be
the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
who hath with his hands
fulfilled that which he *spake* **worded** with his mouth
to my father David, *saying*,
5 Since the day that I brought forth my people
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
I chose no city among all the *tribes* **scions of Israel** **Yisra El**
to build an house in, that my name might be there;
neither chose I any man to be a *ruler* **eminent**
over my people *Israel* **Yisra El**:
6 But I have chosen *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
that my name might be there;
and have chosen David
to be over my people *Israel* **Yisra El**.
7 Now it was in the heart of David my father
to build an house for the name
of *the LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
8 But *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said to David my father,
Forasmuch as it was in thine heart
to build an house for my name,
thou didst *well* **good** in that it was in thine heart:
9 *Notwithstanding* **Only** thou shalt not build the house;
but thy son which shall *come* **go** forth out of thy loins,
he shall build the house for my name.
10 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** *therefore*
hath *performed* **raised** his word
that he hath *spoken* **worded**:
for I am risen up in the *room* **stead** of David my father,
and am *set* **settled** on the throne of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
as the LORD promised **Yah Veh worded**,
and have built the house for the name
of *the LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
11 And *in it* **therein** have I *put* **set** the ark,
wherein is the covenant of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that he *made* **cut** with the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
THE PRAYER OF HANUKKAH OF SHELOMOH
12 And he stood *before* **at the face** of the **sacrifice** altar
of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
in the presence of all the congregation of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and spread forth his *hands* **palms**:
13 For *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
had *made* **worked** a *brasen* **scaffold** **copper laver**,
of five cubits long, and five cubits broad,
and three cubits high,
and had *set* **given** it in the midst of the court:
and upon it he stood, and kneeled down upon his knees
before **in front of** all the congregation of *Israel* **Yisra El**,

2 CHRONICLES 5, 6 717

exeGesés companion BIBLE

enrobe in bleached linen
with cymbals and bagpipes and harps
and stand at the rising of the sacrifice altar;
and with them, a hundred and twenty priests
trumpeting with trumpets:
13 yes, and so be it,
— as one, the trumpeters and singers
— as one voice *are* heard in halaling
and spreading hands to Yah Veh;
and they lift their voice with the trumpets
and cymbals and instruments of song
and halal Yah Veh for good;
for his mercy eternal:
so that the house fills with a cloud
— the house of Yah Veh;
14 and the priests cannot stand to minister
at the face of the cloud:
for the honor of Yah Veh fills the house of Elohim.

SHELOMOH RECOUNTS THE PROMISES OF YAH VEH

6 Then Shelomoh says,
Yah Veh says
that he tabernacles in the dripping darkness:
2 and I — I build a house of habitation for you
and an establishment for you to settle eternally.
3 And the sovereign turns his face
and blesses the whole congregation of Yisra El:
and all the congregation of Yisra El stands;
4 and he says,
Blessed — Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
who, with his hands
fulfills what he worded with his mouth
to my father David, *saying*,
5 Since the day I brought my people
from the land of Misrayim
I neither chose a city among all the scions of Yisra El
to build a house for my name to be there;
nor chose I any man to be eminent
over my people Yisra El:
6 and I choose Yeru Shalem,
for my name to be there;
and choose David to be over my people Yisra El.
7 And it is in the heart of David my father
to build a house
for the name of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
8 and Yah Veh says to David my father,
Because it is in your heart
to build a house for my name,
you do good in that it is in your heart:
9 only, you build not the house;
but your son who comes from your loins
— he builds the house for my name.
10 And Yah Veh raises the word he worded:
and I rise in the stead of David my father
and settle on the throne of Yisra El
as Yah Veh worded;
and build the house
for the name of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
11 and therein I set the ark
wherein *is* the covenant of Yah Veh
he cut with the sons of Yisra El.

THE PRAYER OF HANUKKAH OF SHELOMOH

12 And he stands
at the face of the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh
in the presence of all the congregation of Yisra El
and spreads his palms:
13 for Shelomoh worked a copper laver,
five cubits long and five cubits wide
and three cubits high
and gives it midst the court:
and he stands thereon and kneels on his knees
in front of all the congregation of Yisra El

2 CHRONICLES 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and spread forth his **hands palms**
toward **heaven the heavens**.
14 And said,
O LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El**,
there is no **God Elohim** like thee
in the **heaven heavens**, nor in the earth;
which **keepest guardest** covenant,
and **shewest mercy unto** **merciest** thy servants,
that walk **before thee at thy face** with all their hearts:
15 Thou which hast **kept guarded**
with thy servant David my father
that which thou hast **promised worded** him;
and **spakest wordest** with thy mouth,
and hast fulfilled it with thine hand, as *it is* this day.
16 Now *therefore*,
O LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El**,
keep guard with thy servant David my father
that which thou hast **promised worded** him, saying,
There shall not **fail be cut off to thee**
a man in my **sight face**
to **sit settle** upon the throne of **Israel Yisra El**;
yet so that **only if** thy **children sons**
take heed to guard their way to walk in my **law torah**,
as thou hast walked **before me at my face**.
17 Now *then*,
O LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El**,
let thy word be **verified amended**,
which thou hast **spoken worded** unto thy servant David.
18 But *will God shall Elohim*
in very deed dwell **truly settle** with **men humanity**
on the earth?
behold, **heaven the heavens**
and the **heaven heavens of heavens the heavens**
cannot contain thee;
how much less this house which I have built!
19 *Have respect* **Face therefore** to the prayer of thy servant,
and to his supplication,
O LORD **Yah Veh** my **God Elohim**,
to hearken unto the **cry shout** and the prayer
which thy servant prayeth **before thee at thy face**:
20 That thine eyes may be open upon this house
by day and night,
upon the place whereof thou hast said
that thou **wouldest put shouldest set** thy name there;
to hearken unto the prayer
which thy servant prayeth toward this place.
21 Hearken therefore unto the supplications of thy servant,
and of thy people **Israel Yisra El**,
which they shall **make pray** toward this place:
hear thou
from thy dwelling place the place of thy settlement,
even from heaven the heavens;
and when thou hearest, forgive.
22 If a man sin against his **neighbour friend**,
and an oath be laid upon him
to **make him swear oath him**,
and the oath come
before thine at the face of thy sacrifice altar in this house;
23 Then hear thou from **heaven the heavens**, and **do work**,
and judge thy servants,
by requiting turning back the wicked,
by recompensing giving his way upon his own head;
and by justifying the **righteous just**,
by giving him according to his **righteousness justness**.
24 And if thy people **Israel Yisra El**
be put to the worse smitten
before at the face of the enemy,
because they have sinned against thee;
and shall return and **confess spread hands to** thy name,
and pray and **make supplication ask charism**
before thee at thy face in this house;
25 Then hear thou from the heavens,
and forgive the sin of thy people **Israel Yisra El**,
and **bring return** them *again* unto the **land soil**
which thou gavest to them and to their fathers.
26 When the **heaven is shut up heavens be restrained**,
and there is no rain,
because they have sinned against thee;
yet if they pray toward this place,

2 CHRONICLES 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and spreads his palms toward the heavens;
14 and says, O Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
— no Elohim like you
in the heavens or in the earth;
who guards covenant and mercies your servants
who walk at your face with all their hearts:
15 who, for your servant David my father,
guards what you worded him
— worded with your mouth
and fulfill with your hand — as this day.
16 And now, O Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
guard with your servant David my father
what you worded him, saying,
There is not cut off to you
a man at my face
to settle on the throne of Yisra El;
only, if your sons guard their way to walk in my torah
as you walk at my face:
17 and now, O Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
amen the word
you worded to your servant David.
18 Is it true, O Elohim,
that you settle with humanity on the earth?
Behold, the heavens and the heavens of the heavens
contain you not;
how much less this house I build!
19 Face the prayer of your servant
and his supplication,
O Yah Veh my Elohim;
hearken to the shout and the prayer
your servant prays at your face:
20 that your eyes be open on this house
by day and night
— on the place whereof you say
that you set your name there;
to hearken to the prayer
your servant prays toward this place:
21 hearken to the supplications
your servant and your people Yisra El,
pray toward this place:
hear from the place of your settlement
— from the heavens;
and when you hear, forgive.
22 If a man sins against his friend
and an oath is laid on him to oath,
and the oath comes
at the face of your sacrifice altar in this house;
23 then hear from the heavens
and work and judge your servants;
and turn back the wicked
and give his way on his own head;
and justify the just
and give him according to his justness.
24 And if your people Yisra El
be smitten at the face of the enemy
because they sin against you;
and return and spread hands to your name
and pray and ask charism at your face in this house;
25 then hear from the heavens
and forgive the sin of your people Yisra El;
and return them to the soil
you gave them and their fathers.
26 When the heavens restrain, and rain not,
because they sin against you;
yet when they pray toward this place

2 CHRONICLES 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and *confess* **spread hands** to thy name,
and turn from their sin,
when thou *dost afflict* **shalt humble** them;
27 Then hear thou from *heaven* **the heavens**,
and forgive the sin of thy servants,
and of thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
when thou hast *taught* **directed** them the good way,
wherein they should walk;
and *send* **give** rain upon thy land,
which thou hast given unto thy people for an inheritance.
28 If there be *dearth* **famine** in the land,
if there be pestilence,
if there be blasting, or *mildew* **pale green**,
locusts, or caterpillers;
if their enemies *besiege* **tribulate** them
in the *cities* **land** of their *land* **portals**;
whatsoever *sore* **plague**
or whatsoever *sickness* **disease** there be:
29 Then what prayer or what supplication soever
shall be made of any *man* **human**,
or of all thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
when *every one* **man** shall know
his own *sore* **plague** and his own *grief* **sorrow**,
and shall spread forth his *hands* **palms** in this house:
30 Then hear thou from *heaven* **the heavens**
thy dwelling place **the place of thy settlement**,
and forgive,
and *render* **give** unto every man
according unto all his ways,
whose heart thou knowest;
(for thou only knowest the hearts
of the *children* **sons** of *men* **humanity**.)
31 That they may *fear* **awe** thee, to walk in thy ways,
so long as **all the days** they live
in the land **upon the face of the soil**
which thou gavest unto our fathers.
32 Moreover concerning the stranger,
which is not of thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
but is come from a far *country* **land**
for thy great name's sake,
and thy *mighty* **strong** hand, and thy *stretched out* **spread** arm;
if they come and pray in this house;
33 Then hear thou from the heavens,
even from *thy dwelling place* **the place of thy settlement**,
and *do* **work** according to all
that the stranger calleth to thee for;
that all people of the earth may know thy name,
and *fear* **awe** thee,
as doth thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and may know that this house which I have built
is called by thy name.
34 If thy people go out to war against their enemies
by the way that thou shalt send them,
and they pray unto thee *toward* **by the way of** this city
which thou hast chosen,
and the house which I have built for thy name;
35 Then hear thou from the heavens
their prayer and their supplication,
and *maintain* **work** their *cause* **judgment**.
36 If they sin against thee,
(for there is no *man* **human** which sinneth not,)
and thou *be angry with* **anger over** them,
and *deliver* **give** them over
before **at the face of** their enemies,
and they *carry* **capture** them *away* **captives**
unto a land far off or near;
37 Yet if they *bethink themselves* **turn back their heart**
in the land whither they are *carried captive* **captured**,
and turn and pray *unto thee* in the land of their captivity,
saying, We have sinned,
we have *done amiss* **distorted**, and have dealt wickedly;
38 If they return to thee
with all their heart and with all their soul
in the land of their captivity,
whither they have *carried* **captured** them *captives*,
and pray *toward* **in the way of** their land,
which thou gavest unto their fathers,
and *toward* the city which thou hast chosen,
and *toward* the house which I have built for thy name:

2 CHRONICLES 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and spread hands to your name
and turn from their sin,
and you humble them;
27 then hear from the heavens,
and forgive the sin of your servants
and of your people Yisra El;
and direct them the good way to walk;
and give rain on the land
you gave to your people for an inheritance.
28 If famine becomes in the land;
if pestilence becomes;
if blasting or pale green becomes;
locusts or caterpillers;
if their enemies tribulate them
in the land of their portals;
whatever plague or whatever disease becomes:
29 then whatever prayer or whatever supplication
becomes for any human
or of all your people Yisra El;
when man knows his own plague and his own sorrow
and spreads his palms in this house:
30 then hear from the heavens
the place of your settlement
and forgive
and give to every man according to all his ways,
whose heart you know
— for you only
know the hearts of the sons of humanity:
31 so that they awe you to walk in your ways
all the days they live on the face of the soil
you gave to our fathers.
32 And also, concerning the stranger,
who is not of your people Yisra El,
who comes from a far land
for sake of your great name
and your strong hand and your spread arm
— if they come and pray in this house
33 then hear from the heavens
— even the place of your settlement;
and work according to all
for which the stranger calls to you;
that all people of the earth *may* know your name
and awe you,
as your people Yisra El;
and know that this house I built
is called by your name.
34 If your people go to war against their enemies
by the way you send them;
and they pray to you
by the way of this city you chose
and the house I built for your name;
35 then hear from the heavens
their prayer and their supplication
and work their judgment.
36 If they sin against you,
— there is no human who sins not
and you anger over them;
and give them over at the face of their enemies
and they capture them to a land far off or near;
37 and they turn back their heart
in the land they are captured;
and turn and pray in the land of their captivity,
and say, We sinned, we distorted and dealt wickedly:
38 if they return to you
with all their heart and with all their soul
in the land of their captivity
where they captured them;
and pray in the way of the land you gave their fathers
and the city you chose
and the house I built for your name:

2 CHRONICLES 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

39 Then hear thou from the heavens,
even from *thy dwelling place* **the place of thy settlement**,
their prayer and their supplications,
and *maintain work* their *cause* **judgment**,
and forgive thy people which have sinned against thee.

40 Now, my *God Elohim*,
let, I beseech thee, thine eyes be open,
and let thine ears *be attent* **hearken**
unto the prayer *that is made* in this place.

41 Now therefore arise, O *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*,
into thy *resting place* **rest**,
thou, and the ark of thy strength:
let thy priests, O *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*,
be clothed **enrobed** with salvation,
and let thy *saints rejoice* **merciéd cheer** in goodness.

42 O *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*,
turn not away the face of thine anointed:
remember the mercies of David thy servant.

THE HANUKKAH OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

7 Now when *Solomon Shelomoh*
had *made an end of* **finished** praying,
the fire *came down* **descended** from *heaven* **the heavens**,
and consumed
the *burnt offering* **holocaust** and the sacrifices;
and the *glory* **honour** of the *LORD Yah Veh* filled the house.

2 And the priests could not enter
into the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
because the *glory* **honour** of the *LORD Yah Veh*
had filled the *LORD'S house* **house of Yah Veh**.
3 And when all the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
saw how the fire *came down* **descended**,
and the *glory* **honour** of the *LORD Yah Veh* upon the house,
they bowed themselves

with their *faces* **nostrils** to the *ground* **earth**
upon the pavement, and *worshipped* **prostrated**,
and *praised the LORD* **spread hands to Yah Veh**,
saying, For he is good;

4 for his mercy *endureth for ever* **eternal**.
Then the *king* **sovereign** and all the people
offered **sacrificed** sacrifices
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**.

5 And *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**
offered **sacrificed** a sacrifice
of twenty and two thousand oxen,
and an hundred and twenty thousand *sheep* **flocks**:
so the *king* **sovereign** and all the people
dedicated **hanukkahed** the house of *God Elohim*.
6 And the priests *waited* **stood** on their *offices* **guards**:
the *Levites* **Leviym** also with instruments of *musick* **song**
of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
which David the *king* **sovereign** had *made* **worked**
to *praise the LORD* **spread hands to Yah Veh**,
because for his mercy endureth for ever **is eternal**,
when David *praised* **halaled** by their *ministry* **hand**;
and the priests *sounded* **trumpeted** trumpets before them,
and all *Israel Yisra El* stood.

7 Moreover *Solomon Shelomoh*
hallowed the middle of the court
that was before **at the face of** the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*:
for there he *offered burnt offerings* **worked holocausts**,
and the fat of the *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
because the *brasen* **copper sacrifice** altar
which *Solomon Shelomoh* had *made* **worked**
was not able to *receive* **contain**
the *burnt offerings* **holocausts**,
and the *meat offerings*, and the fat.

8 Also at the same time *Solomon Shelomoh*
kept **worked** the *feast* **celebration** seven days,
and all *Israel Yisra El* with him,
a very **mighty** great congregation,
from the entering in of Hamath
unto the *river wadi* of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.

9 And in the eighth day
they *made* **worked** a *solemn* **private** assembly:
for they *kept* **worked** the *dedication* **hanukkah**
of the *sacrifice* altar seven days,
and the *feast* **celebration** seven days.

10 And on the three and twentieth day
of the seventh month

2 CHRONICLES 6, 7 720

exeGeses companion BIBLE

39 then hear from the heavens
from the place of your settlement
their prayer and their supplications
and work their judgment
and forgive your people who sin against you.

40 Now, my Elohim, I beseech you,
that your eyes open and your ears hearken
to the prayer in this place.

41 And now rise, O Yah Veh Elohim, into your rest
— you and the ark of your strength:
your priests, O Yah Veh Elohim,
enrobe with salvation
and your merciéd cheer in goodness.

42 O Yah Veh Elohim,
turn not away the face of your anointed:
remember the mercies of David your servant.

THE HANUKKAH OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

7 And Shelomoh finishes praying,
and the fire descends from the heavens
and consumes the holocaust and the sacrifices;
and the honor of Yah Veh fills the house:
2 and the priests cannot enter the house of Yah Veh;
because the honor of Yah Veh
fills the house of Yah Veh.

3 And all the sons of Yisra El see the fire descend
and the honor of Yah Veh on the house,
and they bow
with their nostrils to the earth on the pavement
and prostrate and spread hands to Yah Veh,
saying, For good; for his mercy eternal.

4 And the sovereign and all the people
sacrifice sacrifices at the face of Yah Veh:
5 and sovereign Shelomoh sacrifices sacrifices
of twenty—two thousand oxen
and a hundred and twenty thousand flocks:
and the sovereign and all the people
hanukkah the house of Elohim.

6 And the priests stand at their guards:
and the Leviym with instruments
of the song of Yah Veh,
which David the sovereign worked
to spread hands to Yah Veh
— for his mercy eternal
in the halaling of David by their hand;
and the priests trumpet trumpets in front of them
and all Yisra El stands.

7 And Shelomoh hallows the middle of the court
at the face of the house of Yah Veh:
for there he works holocausts
and the fat of the shelamim,
because the copper sacrifice altar Shelomoh worked
is not able to contain
the holocausts and the offerings and the fat:
8 and at that time,
Shelomoh works the celebration seven days
with all Yisra El — a mighty great congregation
from the entering in of Hamath
to the wadi of Misrayim.

9 And on the eighth day,
they work a private assembly:
for they work the hanukkah of the sacrifice altar
seven days;
and the celebration
seven days:

10 and on the twenty—third day
of the seventh month

2 CHRONICLES 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

he sent the people away into their tents,
glad cheerful and *merry goodly* in heart
for the goodness
that the **LORD Yah Veh** had *shewed worked*
unto David, and to *Solomon Shelomoh*,
and to *Israel Yisra El* his people.
11 Thus *Solomon Shelomoh* finished
the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and the *king's sovereign's* house:
and all that came into *Solomon's Shelomoh's* heart
to *make work* in the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and in his own house, he *prosperously effected prospered*.
12 **YAH VEH IS SEEN BY SHELOMOH**
And the **LORD Yah Veh**
appeared to Solomon was seen by Shelomoh by night,
and said unto him, I have heard thy prayer,
and have chosen this place to myself
for an house of sacrifice.
13 If I *shut up heaven restrain the heavens*
that there be no rain,
or if I *command misvah* the locusts to devour the land,
or if I send pestilence among my people;
14 If my people,
which are called by my name
upon whom my Name is called*,
shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek my face,
and turn from their *wicked evil* ways;
then *will shall* I hear from *heaven the heavens*,
and *will shall* forgive their sin,
and *will shall* heal their land.
15 *name: see Yah Hudah in Lexicon
Now mine eyes shall be open,
and mine ears *attent hearken* unto the prayer
that is made in this place.
16 For now
have I chosen and *sanctified hallowed* this house,
that my name may be there *for ever eternally*:
and mine eyes and mine heart
shall be there *perpetually all days*.
17 And as for thee,
if thou *wilt shalt* walk *before me at my face*,
as David thy father walked,
and *do work* according to all
that I have *commanded misvahed* thee,
and shalt *observe guard* my statutes and my judgments;
18 Then *will shall* I *stablish raise*
the throne of thy *kingdom sovereignty*,
according as I have *covenanted cut* with David thy father,
saying, There shall not *fail be cut off* to thee a man,
to be *ruler reign* in *Israel Yisra El*.
19 But if ye turn away,
and forsake my statutes and my *commandments misvoth*,
which I have *set before you given at thy face*,
and shall go and serve other *gods elohim*,
and worship them;
20 Then *will shall* I
pluck them up by the roots uproot them
out of my *land soil* which I have given them;
and this house,
which I have *sanctified hallowed* for my name,
will shall I cast out of my *sight face*,
and *will make shall give* it
to be a proverb and a *byword gibe*
among all *nations the peoples*.
21 And this house, which is *high become Elyon*,
shall be *an astonishment desolated*
to every one that passeth by it;
so that he shall say,
Why hath *the LORD done Yah Veh worked* thus
unto this land, and unto this house?
22 And it shall be *answered said*,
Because they forsook *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim*
of their fathers,
which brought them forth
out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
and laid hold on other *gods elohim*,
and *worshipped prostrated to* them, and served them:
therefore hath he brought all this evil upon them.

2 CHRONICLES 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

he sends the people to their tents;
cheerful and goodly in heart
for the goodness Yah Veh worked
to David and to Shelomoh and to Yisra El his people.
11 And Shelomoh finishes the house of Yah Veh
and the house of the sovereign:
and he prospers all
who come to the heart of Shelomoh
to work in the house of Yah Veh
and in his own house.
12 **YAH VEH IS SEEN BY SHELOMOH**
And Yah Veh is seen by Shelomoh by night
and says to him, I hear your prayer
and choose this place for myself
for a house of sacrifice.
13 If I restrain the heavens to not rain;
or if I misvah the locusts to devour the land;
or if I send pestilence among my people;
14 if my people, on whom my Name* is called,
humble themselves and pray and seek my face
and turn from their evil ways;
then I hear from the heavens
and forgive their sin and heal their land.
*name: see Yah Hudah in Lexicon
15 Now my eyes open and my ears hearken
to the prayer in this place:
16 and now I choose and hallow this house,
for my name being there eternally:
and my eyes and my heart being there all days.
17 And as for you,
if you walk at my face as David your father walked
and work according to all I misvah you
and guard my statutes and my judgments;
18 then I raise the throne of your sovereignty
according as I cut with David your father, saying,
There is not cut off to you a man to reign in Yisra El.
19 And if you turn away
and forsake my statutes and my misvoth
which I give at your face
and go and serve other elohim and worship them;
20 then I uproot them from my soil which I gave them;
and this house I hallowed for my name,
I cast from my face
and give it to be a proverb and a gibe
among all the peoples.
21 And this house, being Elyon,
all who pass by, desolate and say,
Why works Yah Veh thus
to this land and to this house?
22 And they say,
Because they forsook Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers
who brought them from the land of Misrayim;
and laid hold on other elohim
and prostrated to them and served them:
so he brings all this evil on them.

2 CHRONICLES 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE FAME OF SHELOMOK

8 And **so be** it came to pass,
at the end of twenty years,
wherein *Solomon* **Shelomoh** had built
the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, and his own house,
2 That the cities which *Hiram* **Hiram**
had restored **given** to *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
Solomon **Shelomoh** built them,
and caused the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
to *dwell* **settle** there.
3 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
went to *Hamathzobah* **Hamath Sobah**,
and prevailed against it.
4 And he built *Tadmor* in the wilderness,
and all the *store* **storage** cities, which he built in *Hamath*.
5 Also he built *Bethhoron* **Beth Horon** the upper
and *Bethhoron* **Beth Horon** the nether,
6 fenced **rampart** cities, with walls, *gates* **doors**, and bars;
And *Baalath*,
and all the *store* **storage** cities that *Solomon* **Shelomoh** had,
and all the chariot cities,
and the cities of the *horsemen* **cavalry**,
and all that *Solomon* **desired** **Shelomoh** **attached** to build
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, and in *Lebanon*,
and throughout all the land of his *dominion* **reign**.
7 As for all the people *that were left* **remaining**
of the *Hittites* **Hethiy**, and the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
and the *Perizzites* **Perizziy**, and the *Hivites* **Hivviy**,
and the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**,
which were not of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
8 But of their *children* **sons**,
who were left **remained** after them in the land,
whom the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
consumed **finished** not,
them did *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
9 *make* **cause** to pay tribute **ascend a vassal** until this day.
But of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
did *Solomon* **make** **Shelomoh** **gave**
no servants for his work;
but they were men of war,
and *chief* **governor** of his *captains* **tertiaries**,
and *captains* **governors**
of his chariots and *horsemen* **cavalry**.
10 And these were the *chief* **governor**
of *king* *Solomon's* **sovereign** **Shelomoh's**
officers **station prefects**,
even two hundred and fifty,
that *bare* **rule** **subjugated** over the people.
11 And *Solomon* **brought up** **Shelomoh** **ascended**
the daughter of *Pharaoh* **Paroh** out of the city of *David*
unto the house that he had built for her:
for he said, My *wife* **woman** shall not *dwell* **settle**
in the house of *David* **king** **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
because *the places are* **holy** of the **holies**,
whereunto the ark of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath come.
12 Then *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
offered burnt offerings **holocausted holocausts**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
on the **sacrifice** altar of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which he had built *before* **at the face** of the porch,
13 Even after a *certain* **rate** every day **day by day** word,
offering **holocausting**
according to the *commandment* **misvah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
on the *sabbaths* **shabbaths**, and on the new moons,
and on the *solemn feasts* **seasons**, three times in the year,
even in the *feast* **celebration** of *unleavened bread* **matsah**,
and in the *feast* **celebration** of weeks,
and in the *feast* **celebration**
of *tabernacles* **sukkoth/brush arbors**.
14 And he *appointed* **stood**,
according to the *order* **judgment** of *David* his father,
the *courses* **allotments** of the priests to their service,
and the *Levites* **Leviym** to their *charges* **guards**,
to *praise* **halal** and minister *before* **in front** of the priests,
as the *duty of every day* **required** **day by day** word:
the porters also by their *courses* **allotments**
at every *gate* **portal by portal**:
for so had *David* **the man of God** **commanded**
was the misvah of David the man of Elohim.

2 CHRONICLES 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE FAME OF SHELOMOK

8 And so be it, at the end of twenty years,
Shelomoh builds the house of *Yah Veh*
and his own house;
2 and the cities *Hiram* gives to Shelomoh,
Shelomoh builds them,
and has the sons of *Yisra El* settle there.
3 And Shelomoh goes to *Hamath Sobah*
and prevails against it:
4 and he builds *Tadmor* in the wilderness
and builds all the storage cities in *Hamath*:
5 and he builds *Beth Horon* the upper
and *Beth Horon* the nether
— *rampart* cities with walls, doors and bars:
6 and *Baalath*
and all the storage cities Shelomoh has
and all the chariot cities
and the cities of the cavalry
and all that Shelomoh attaches
to build in *Yeru Shalem* and in *Lebanon*
and throughout all the land of his reign.
7 All the people who remain
of the *Hethiy* and the *Emoriy*
and the *Perizziy* and the *Hivviy* and the *Yebusiy*
who are not of *Yisra El*
8 — of their sons who remain after them in the land
whom the sons of *Yisra El* finished not off;
Shelomoh ascends them — a vassal until this day.
9 And of the sons of *Yisra El*
Shelomoh gives no servants for his work;
but they are men of war
and governors of his tertiaryaries
and governors of his chariots and cavalry:
10 and these are the station prefects
of the governor of sovereign Shelomoh
— two hundred and fifty
who subjugate over the people.
11 And Shelomoh ascends the daughter of *Paroh*
from the city of *David*
to the house he built for her:
for he says, My woman settles not
in the house of *David* sovereign of *Yisra El*
because of the holies
where the ark of *Yah Veh* has come.
12 Then Shelomoh holocausts holocausts to *Yah Veh*
on the sacrifice altar of *Yah Veh*
which he built at the face of the porch;
13 even after a day by day word;
holocausting according to the *misvah* of *Mosheh*;
on the *shabbaths* and on the new moons
and on the seasons, three times in the year,
even in the celebration of *matsah*
and in the celebration of weeks
and in the celebration of *sukkoth/brush arbors*.
14 And according to the judgment of *David* his father;
he stands the allotments of the priests to their service;
and the *Leviym* to their guards;
to *halal* and minister in front of the priests
as the day by day word:
and the porters by their allotments, portal by portal:
for thus *is* the *misvah* of *David* the man of *Elohim*.

2 CHRONICLES 8, 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 And they departed **turned** not **aside**
from the *commandment* **misvah** of the *king* **sovereign**
unto the priests and Levites **Leviym**
concerning any *matter* **word**, or concerning the treasures.
16 Now all the work of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
was prepared unto the day of the foundation
of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and until it was finished.
So the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
was *perfected* **at shalom**.
17 Then went *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
to *Ezionggeber* **Esyon Geber**, and to Eloth,
at the sea *side* **lip** in the land of Edom.
18 And *Huram* **Hiram** sent him
by the hands of his servants ships,
and servants that *had knowledge* of **knew** the sea;
and they went with the servants of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
to Ophir,
and took thence
four hundred and fifty *talents* **rounds** of gold,
and brought them to *king* *Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**.

THE SOVEREIGNNESS OF SHEBA

9 And when the *queen* **sovereignness** of Sheba
heard of the fame of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
she came to *prove* *Solomon* **test Shelomoh**
with *hard questions* **riddles** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
with a *very great company* **mighty heavy valuables**,
and camels that bare spices,
and gold in abundance, and precious stones:
and when she was come to *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
she *communed* **worded** with him
of all that was in her heart.
2 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh** told her all her *questions* **words**:
and there was *nothing hid* **no word concealed**
from *Solomon* **Shelomoh** which he told her not.
3 And when the *queen* **sovereignness** of Sheba
had seen the wisdom of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
and the house that he had built,
4 And the *meat* **food** of his table,
and the *sitting* **seat** of his servants,
and the *attendance* **function** of his ministers
and their *apparel* **robes**;
his *cupbearers* **butlers** also, and their *apparel* **robes**;
and his *ascent* **holocausts**
by which he *went up* **holocausted**
into the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
there was no more spirit in her.
5 And she said to the *king* **sovereign**,
It was a true *report* **word** which I heard in mine own land
of *thine acts* **thy words**, and of thy wisdom:
6 Howbeit I *believed* **trusted** not their words,
until I came, and mine eyes had seen it: and, behold,
the one half of the *greatness* **increase** of thy wisdom
was not told me:
for thou *exceedest the fame* **addest to the report**
that I heard.
7 *Happy* **Blithe** are thy men,
and *happy* **blithe** are these thy servants,
which stand continually *before thee* **at thy face**,
and hear thy wisdom.
8 Blessed be the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
which delighted in thee to *set* **give** thee on his throne,
to be *king* **sovereign**
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**:
because thy *God* **Elohim** loved *Israel* **Yisra El**,
to *establish* **stand** them *for ever* **eternally**,
therefore *made* **gave** he thee *king* **sovereign** over them,
to *do* **work** judgment and *justice* **justness**.
9 And she gave the *king* **sovereign**
an hundred and twenty *talents* **rounds** of gold,
and of spices *great* **mighty** abundance,
and precious stones:
neither was there any such spice
as the *queen* **sovereignness** of Sheba
gave *king* *Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**.
10 And the servants also of *Huram* **Hiram**,
and the servants of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
which brought gold from Ophir,
brought *algum* **algumim** trees and precious stones.

2 CHRONICLES 8, 9 723

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 And they turn not aside
from the misvah of the sovereign
regarding the priests and Leviym
concerning any word, or the treasures:
16 and they prepare all the work of Shelomoh
to the day of the foundation of the house of Yah Veh
and until it is finished:
the house of Yah Veh is at shalom.
17 Then Shelomoh
goes to Esyon Geber and to Eloth,
at the lip of the sea in the land of Edom:
18 and by the hands of his servants
Hiram sends him ships
and servants who know the sea;
and they go with the servants of Shelomoh to Ophir;
and there they take
four hundred and fifty rounds of gold
and bring them to sovereign Shelomoh.

THE SOVEREIGNNESS OF SHEBA

9 And the sovereignness of Sheba
hears of the fame of Shelomoh,
and she comes to Yeru Shalem
to test Shelomoh with riddles:
and with mighty heavy valuables
and camels bearing spices
and gold in abundance and precious stones:
and she comes to Shelomoh
and she words with him of all that is in her heart.
2 And Shelomoh tells her all her words:
and Shelomoh conceals no word
which he tells her not.
3 And the sovereignness of Sheba sees
the wisdom of Shelomoh:
and the house he built
and the food of his table;
4 and the seat of his servants
and the function of his ministers and their robes;
and his butlers and their robes;
and the holocausts he holocausts
in the house of Yah Veh;
and there is no more spirit in her.
5 And she says to the sovereign,
True *is* the word I heard in my own land
of your words and of your wisdom:
6 and I trust not their words
until I come and my eyes see: and behold,
the one half of the increase of your wisdom
is not told me:
7 for you add to the report I heard.
Blithed — your men
and blithed — these your servants
who stand continually at your face
and hear your wisdom.
8 Blessed — Yah Veh your Elohim,
who delights in you to give you on his throne
— sovereign for Yah Veh your Elohim:
because your Elohim loves Yisra El
that they stand eternally:
so he gives you sovereign over them,
to work judgment and justness.
9 And she gives the sovereign
a hundred and twenty rounds of gold
and of spices mighty abundance and precious stones:
there is no such spice as the sovereignness of Sheba
gives sovereign Shelomoh.
10 And the servants of Hiram
and the servants of Shelomoh
who bring gold from Ophir
also bring algumim trees and precious stones:

2 CHRONICLES 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 11 And the *king* **sovereign**
made **worked** of the *algum* **algumim** trees
terraces **highways** to the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and to the *king's palace* **house of the sovereign**,
and harps and *psalteries* **bagpipes** for singers:
and there were none such **seen as these**
before in **at the face of** the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
- 12 And *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**
gave to the *queen* **sovereignness** of Sheba
all her *desire* **delight**, whatsoever she asked,
beside that which she had brought
unto the *king* **sovereign**.
So she turned, and went away to her own land,
she and her servants.
- 13 Now the weight of gold
that came to *Solomon* **Shelomoh** in one year
was six hundred and *threescore* **sixty** and six
talents **rounds** of gold;
- 14 Beside that
which *chapmen* **explorer men**
and merchants brought.
And all the *kings* **sovereigns** of Arabia
and governors of the *country* **land**
brought gold and silver to *Solomon* **Shelomoh**.
- 15 And *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**
made **worked** two hundred *targets* **shields** of beaten gold:
six hundred *shekels* of beaten gold
went ascended to one *target* **shield**.
- 16 And three hundred *shields* **bucklers**
made he of beaten gold:
three hundred *shekels* of gold
went ascended to one *shield* **buckler**.
And the *king* **put sovereign** gave them
in the house of the forest of Lebanon.
- 17 Moreover
the *king* **made sovereign worked** a great throne of ivory,
and overlaid it with pure gold.
- 18 And there were six steps to the throne,
with a footstool of gold,
which were fastened to the throne,
and *stays* **handles** on each side of the *sitting* **seated** place,
and two lions standing by the *stays* **handles**:
- 19 And twelve lions stood *there on the one side* **here**
and *on the other* **there** upon the six steps.
There was not the like
made worked in any *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
- 20 And all the drinking *vessels* **instruments**
of *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh** were of gold,
and all the *vessels* **instruments**
of the house of the forest of Lebanon
were of *pure* **concentrated** gold: none were of silver;
it was *not any thing accounted of* **naught fabricated**
in the days of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**.
- 21 For the *king's* **sovereign's** ships went to Tarshish
with the servants of *Hiram* **Hiram**:
every three years once came the ships of Tarshish
bringing **bearing** gold, and silver,
ivory **tusks**, and apes, and peacocks.
- 22 And *king Solomon* **sovereign Shelomoh**
passed **greatened**
above all the *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth
in riches and wisdom.
- 23 And all the *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth
sought the *presence* **face** of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
to hear his wisdom,
that *God* **Elohim** had *put* **given** in his heart.
- 24 And they brought every man his *present* **offering**,
vessels **instruments** of silver,
and *vessels* **instruments** of gold,
and *raiment* **clothes**, *harness* **armour**,
and spices, horses, and mules,
a *rate* **word** year by year.
- 25 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
had four thousand stalls for horses and chariots,
and twelve thousand *horsemen* **cavalry**;
whom he *bestowed* **set** in the chariot cities,
and with the *king* **sovereign** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

2 CHRONICLES 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 11 and of the *algumim* trees
the sovereign works highways
to the house of Yah Veh
and to the house of the sovereign;
and harps and bagpipes for singers:
and there are none such as these
at the face of the land of Yah Hudah.
- 12 And sovereign Shelomoh
gives the sovereignness of Sheba all her delight
— whatever she asks
beside what she brings to the sovereign:
and she turns and goes to her own land
— she and her servants.
- 13 And the weight of gold
that comes to Shelomoh in one year,
six hundred and sixty—six rounds of gold;
beside what explorer men and merchants bring:
and all the sovereigns of Arabia
and governors of the land
bring gold and silver to Shelomoh.
- 15 And sovereign Shelomoh
works two hundred shields of beaten gold:
six hundred of beaten gold ascend to one shield;
and three hundred bucklers of beaten gold:
three hundred of gold ascend to one buckler;
and the sovereign gives them
in the house of the forest of Lebanon.
- 17 And the sovereign works a great throne of ivory
and overlays it with pure gold:
and there are six steps to the throne;
and a footstool of gold fastened to the throne;
and handles on each side of the seated place
and two lions stand by the handles:
and twelve lions
stand here and there on the six steps:
thus as was never worked in any sovereigndom.
- 20 And all the drinking instruments
of sovereign Shelomoh are gold;
and all the instruments
of the house of the forest of Lebanon
are of concentrated gold
— naught is fabricated of silver
in the days of Shelomoh.
- 21 For the ships of the sovereign go to Tarshish
with the servants of Hiram:
the ships of Tarshish come once every three years
bearing gold and silver, tusks and apes and peacocks.
- 22 And sovereign Shelomoh
greatens above all the sovereigns of the earth
in riches and wisdom:
- 23 and all the sovereigns of the earth
seek the face of Shelomoh,
to hear the wisdom Elohim gives in his heart:
and every man brings his offering
— instruments of silver and instruments of gold
and clothes, armor and spices, horses and mules
— a year by year word.
- 25 And Shelomoh
has four thousand stalls for horses and chariots;
and twelve thousand cavalry;
which he sets in the chariot cities
and with the sovereign at Yeru Shalem:

2 CHRONICLES 9, 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

26 And he reigned **was sovereign**
over all the *kings* **sovereigns** from the river
even unto the land of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and to the border of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
27 And the *king* **sovereign**
made **gave** silver in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** as stones,
and cedar trees *made* **gave** he as the sycamore trees
that are in the *low plains* **lowlands** in abundance.
28 And they brought unto *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
horses out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**, and out of all lands.
THE DEATH OF SHELOMOH
29 Now the *rest* **remainder**
of the *acts* **words** of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
first and last,
are they not *written* **inscribed**
in the *book* **words** of Nathan the prophet,
and in the prophecy
of *Ahijah* **Achih Yah** the *Shilonite* **Shilohiy**,
and in the visions of *Iddo* **Yedi** the seer
against *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** the son of Nebat?
30 And *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
reigned in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** over all *Israel* **Yisra El**
forty years.
31 And *Solomon* **slept Shelomoh laid** with his fathers,
and he was *buried* **entombed**
in the city of David his father:
and *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am** his son reigned in his stead.

RECHAB AM REIGNS OVER YERU SHALEM

10 And *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am** went to Shechem:
for to Shechem were all *Israel* **Yisra El** come
to *make* **have** him *king* **reign**.
2 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** the son of Nebat,
who was in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
whither he had fled from the *presence* **face**
of *Solomon* **Shelomoh** the *king* **sovereign**, heard it,
that *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** returned out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
3 And they sent and called him.
So *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** and all *Israel* **Yisra El** came
and *spake* **worded** to *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**, saying,
4 Thy father made our yoke *grievous* **hard**:
now therefore *ease* **slacken** thou *somewhat*
the *grievous servitude* **hard service** of thy father,
and his heavy yoke that he *put* **gave** upon us,
and we *will* **shall** serve thee.
5 And he said unto them,
Come again **Return** unto me after three days.
And the people *departed* **went**.
6 And *king Rehoboam* **sovereign Rechab Am** took counsel
with the *old men* **elders** that had stood
before Solomon **at the face of Shelomoh** his father
while he yet lived, saying,
What counsel give **How counsel** ye me
to return *answer* **word** to this people?
7 And they *spake* **worded** unto him, saying,
If thou be *kind* **good** to this people, and please them,
and *speak* **word** good words to them,
they *will* **shall** be thy servants *for ever* **all days**.
8 But he forsook the counsel
which the old men *gave* him **counselled**,
and *took counsel* **counselled** with the *young men* **children**
that were *brought* **grown** up with him,
that stood *before* him **at his face**.
9 And he said unto them,
What advice give **How counsel** ye
that we may return *answer* **word** to this people,
which have *spoken* **worded** to me, saying,
Ease somewhat **Slacken** the yoke
that thy father *did put* **gave** upon us?
10 And the *young men* **children**
that were *brought* **grown** up with him
spake **worded** unto him, saying,
Thus shalt thou *answer* **say** to the people
that *spake* **worded** unto thee, saying,
Thy father made our yoke heavy,
but *make* **slacken** thou it *somewhat* **lighter** for us;
thus shalt thou say unto them,
My little finger shall be **pinky is** thicker
than my father's loins.

2 CHRONICLES 9, 10 725

exeGeses companion BIBLE

26 and he is sovereign over all the sovereigns
from the river even to the land of the Peleshethiy
and to the border of Misrayim.
27 And in Yeru Shalem
the sovereign gives silver as stones
and gives cedar trees in abundance
— as the sycamore trees in the lowlands.
28 And they bring Shelomoh
horses from Misrayim and from all lands.
THE DEATH OF SHELOMOH
29 Now the remainder of the words of Shelomoh,
first and last,
are they not inscribed
in the words of Nathan the prophet
and in the prophecy of Achih Yah the Shilohiy
and in the visions of Yedi the seer
against Yarob Am the son of Nebat?
30 And Shelomoh
reigns in Yeru Shalem over all Yisra El
forty years:
31 and Shelomoh lies down with his fathers
— entombed in the city of David his father:
and Rechab Am his son reigns in his stead.

RECHAB AM REIGNS OVER YERU SHALEM

10 And Rechab Am goes to Shechem:
for all Yisra El comes to Shechem to have him reign.
2 And so be it,
Yarob Am the son of Nebat
— who is in Misrayim,
because he fled the face of Shelomoh the sovereign
hears that Yarob Am returns from Misrayim.
3 And they send and call for him:
and Yarob Am and all Yisra El come
and word to Rechab Am, saying,
4 Your father hardened our yoke:
now you slacken the hard service of your father
and heavy yoke he gave on us
and we serve you.
5 And he says to them,
Return to me after three days.
6 And the people go:
and sovereign Rechab Am counsels with the elders
who stood at the face of Shelomoh his father
being alive, saying,
How counsel you me to return word to this people?
7 And they word to him, saying,
If you are good to this people and please them
and word good words to them,
they are your servants all days.
8 And he forsakes the counsel the elders counsel;
and counsels with the children who grew up with him
— who stand at his face:
9 and he says to them,
How counsel you to return word to this people,
who word to me, saying,
Slacken the yoke your father gives on us?
10 And the children who grew up with him
word to him, saying,
Say thus to the people who word to you, saying,
Your father heavied our yoke;
and you slacken it for us;
say thus to them,
My pinky is thicker than the loins of my father.

2 CHRONICLES 10, 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

11 For *whereas* **from the time**
my father *put* **loaded** a heavy yoke upon you,
I *will put more* **shall add** to your yoke:
my father *chastised* **disciplined** you with whips,
but I *will chastise* **shall discipline** you with scorpions.
12 So *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** and all the people
came to *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am** on the third day,
as the *king bade* **sovereign worded**, saying,
Come again **Return** to me on the third day.
13 And the *king* **sovereign** answered them *roughly* **hard**;
and *king Rehoboam* **sovereign Rechab Am**
forsook the counsel of the *old men* **elders**,
14 And *answered* **worded** them
after the *advice* **counsel** of the *young men* **children**,
saying, My father made your yoke heavy,
but I *will* **shall** add thereto:
my father *chastised* **disciplined** you with whips,
but I *will chastise* **shall discipline** you with scorpions.
15 So the *king* **sovereign** hearkened not unto the people:
for the cause was of *God* **Elohim**,
that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** might *perform* **raise** his word,
which he *spake* **worded**
by the hand of *Ahijah* **Achih Yah** the *Shilonite* **Shilohiy**
to *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** the son of Nebat.
16 And when all *Israel* **Yisra El** saw
that the *king* **sovereign**
would not hearken **hearkened not** unto them,
the people
answered the king **turned back to the sovereign**, saying,
What *portion* **allotment** have we in David?
and **Yes**, we have none inheritance in the son of *Jesse* **Yishay**:
every man to your tents, O *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and now, David, see to thine own house.
So all *Israel* **Yisra El** went to their tents.
17 But as for the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
that *dwelt* **settled** in the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
Rehoboam **Rechab Am** reigned over them.
18 Then *king Rehoboam* **sovereign Rechab Am**
sent Hadoram that was over the *tribute* **vassal**;
and the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
stoned him with stones, that he died.
But *king Rehoboam* **sovereign Rechab Am**
made speed **strengthened himself**
to get **ascend** him up to his chariot,
to flee to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
19 And *Israel* **Yisra El** rebelled against the house of David
unto this day.

RECHAB AM RETURNS TO YERU SHALEM

11 And when *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**
was come to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
he *gathered* **congregated**
of the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
an hundred and *fourscore* **eighty** thousand chosen men,
which were warriors **working war**, to fight against *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that he might *bring* **return** the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
again to *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**.
2 But the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came to *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah** the man of *God* **Elohim**,
saying,
3 *Speak* **Say** unto *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**
the son of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and to all *Israel* **Yisra El** in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**, saying,
4 Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Ye shall not *go up* **ascend**, nor fight against your brethren:
return every man to his house:
for this *thing is done* **word be** of me.
And they *obeyed* **heard** the words of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and returned from going against *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**.
5 And *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**
dwelt **settled** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and built cities for *defence* **rampart** in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
6 **Yes**, He built even *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**,
and Etam, and *Tekoa* **Teqoha**,
7 And *Bethzur* **Beth Sur**, and *Shoco* **Sochoh**, and Adullam,
8 And Gath, and Mareshah, and Ziph,
9 And *Adoraim* **Adorayim**, and Lachish, and *Azekah* **Azeqah**,

2 CHRONICLES 10, 11726

exeGeses companion BIBLE

11 And now,
my father loaded a heavy yoke on you,
and I — I add to your yoke:
my father disciplined you with whips,
and I with scorpions.
12 And Yarob Am and all the people
come to Rechab Am on the third day,
as the sovereign worded, saying,
Return to me on the third day.
13 And the sovereign answers them hard;
and sovereign Rechab Am
forsakes the counsel of the elders,
14 and words them after the counsel of the children,
saying, My father heaved your yoke,
and I — I add thereto:
my father disciplined you with whips,
and I with scorpions.
15 And the sovereign hearkens not to the people:
for the cause is of Elohim,
that Yah Veh raise the word he words
by the hand of Achih Yah the Shilohiy
to Yarob Am the son of Nebat.
16 And all Yisra El sees
that the sovereign hearkens not to them,
and the people turn back to the sovereign, saying,
What allotment have we in David?
Yes, we have no inheritance in the son of Yishay:
every man to your tents, O Yisra El:
and now, David, see to your own house.
— and all Yisra El goes to their tents.
17 And the sons of Yisra El
who settle in the cities of Yah Hudah,
Rechab Am reigns over them.
18 And sovereign Rechab Am
sends Hadoram who is over the vassal:
and the sons of Yisra El stone him with stones
and he dies.
And sovereign Rechab Am strengthens himself
to ascend to his chariot to flee to Yeru Shalem:
and Yisra El rebels against the house of David
to this day.

RECHAB AM RETURNS TO YERU SHALEM

11 And Rechab Am comes to Yeru Shalem
and he congregates
a hundred and eighty thousand chosen
of the house of Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin
who work war
— to fight Yisra El
to return the sovereigndom to Rechab Am.
2 And the word of Yah Veh
comes to Shema Yah the man of Elohim, saying,
3 Say to Rechab Am
son of Shelomoh sovereign of Yah Hudah
and to all Yisra El in Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin,
saying,
4 Thus says Yah Veh,
Neither ascend nor fight against your brothers:
return, every man to his house:
for this word is from me.
— and they hear the words of Yah Veh
and return from going against Yarob Am.
5 And Rechab Am settles in Yeru Shalem
and builds cities for rampart in Yah Hudah:
6 yes, he builds Beth Lechem and Etam and Teqoha
7 and Beth Sur and Sochoh and Adullam
8 and Gath and Mareshah and Ziph
9 and Adorayim and Lachish and Azeqah

2 CHRONICLES 11, 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 And Zorah Sorah, and Aijalon Ayalon, and Hebron,
which are in
Judah Yah Hudah and in Benjamin Ben Yamin
fenced rampart cities.
11 And he fortified strengthened
the strong holds ramparts,
and put captains gave eminence in them,
and store treasure of victual food, and of oil and wine.
12 And in every several city city by city
he put shields and spears javelins,
and made strengthened them
exceeding strong aboundingly mighty,
having Judah Yah Hudah and Benjamin on his side Ben Yamin.
13 And the priests and the Levites Leviym
that were in all Israel Yisra El resorted stood to him
out of all their coasts borders.
14 For the Levites Leviym
left their suburbs and their possession,
and came to Judah Yah Hudah
and Jerusalem Yeru Shalem:
for Jeroboam Yarob Am and his sons
had cast adandoned them off
from executing the priest's office priesting
unto the LORD Yah Veh:
15 And he ordained stood him priests
for the high places bamahs,
and for the devils bucks, and for the calves
which he had made worked.
16 And after them
out of all the tribes scions of Israel Yisra El
such as set gave their hearts
to seek the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El
came to Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
to sacrifice
unto the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers.
17 So they strengthened
the kingdom sovereignty of Judah Yah Hudah,
and made Rehoboam strengthened Rechab Am
the son of Solomon Shelomoh strong, three years:
for three years
they walked in the way of David and Solomon Shelomoh.
18 And Rehoboam Rechab Am
took him Mahalath Machalath
the daughter of Jerimoth Yerimoth
the son of David to wife woman,
and Abihail Abi Hail
the daughter of Eliab Eli Ab the son of Jesse Yishay;
19 Which bare birthed him children sons;
Jeush Yeush, and Shamariah Shemar Yah, and Zaham.
20 And after her he took Maachah
the daughter of Absalom Abi Shalom;
which bare birthed him Abijah Abi Yah, and Attai Attay,
and Ziza, and Shelomith.
21 And Rehoboam Rechab Am loved Maachah
the daughter of Absalom Abi Shalom
above all his wives women and his concubines:
(for he took bore eighteen wives women,
and threescore sixty concubines;
and begat birthed twenty and eight sons,
and threescore sixty daughters.)
22 And Rehoboam Rechab Am
made Abijah stood Abi Yah
the son of Maachah the chief head,
to be ruler eminent among his brethren:
for he thought to make him king to have him reign.
23 And he dealt wisely discerned,
and dispersed of separated all his children sons
throughout all the countries lands
of Judah Yah Hudah and Benjamin Ben Yamin,
unto every fenced rampart city:
and he gave them victual food in abundance.
And he desired many wives asked a multitude of women.

RECHAB AM FORSAKES THE TORAH

12 And so be it came to pass,
when Rehoboam Rechab Am
had established the kingdom sovereignty,
and had strengthened himself,
he forsook the law torah of the LORD Yah Veh,
and all Israel Yisra El with him.

2 CHRONICLES 11, 12727

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 and Sorah and Ayalon and Hebron
in Yah Hudah and in Ben Yamin
— rampart cities:
11 and he strengthens the ramparts
and gives eminence in them
and treasure of food and of oil and wine:
12 and city by city, shields and javelins;
and strengthens them aboundingly mighty;
and he has Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin.
13 And the priests and the Leviym in all Yisra El
stand by him from every border:
14 for the Leviym
left their suburbs and their possession
and come to Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem:
because Yarob Am and his sons
abandoned them from priesting to Yah Veh.
15 And he stands priests for the bamahs
and for the bucks and for the calves he works:
16 and after them, from all the scions of Yisra El,
such as give their hearts
to seek Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
come to Yeru Shalem
to sacrifice to Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers.
17 And they strengthen
the sovereignty of Yah Hudah
and strengthen Rechab Am the son of Shelomoh:
for three years
they walk in the way of David and Shelomoh.
18 And Rechab Am takes Machalath
the daughter of Yerimoth the son of David to woman;
and Abi Hail
the daughter of Eli Ab the son of Yishay;
19 who birth him sons:
Yeush and Shemar Yah and Zaham.
20 And after her he takes Maachah
the daughter of Abi Shalom;
who births him Abi Yah and Attay
and Ziza and Shelomith.
21 And Rechab Am loves Maachah
the daughter of Abi Shalom
above all his women and his concubines:
— for he has eighteen women and sixty concubines;
and births twenty — eight sons and sixty daughters.
22 And Rechab Am
stands Abi Yah the son of Maachah
the head — eminent among his brothers:
to have him reign:
23 and he discerns and separates all his sons
throughout all the lands
of Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin
— to every rampart city:
and he gives them food in abundance:
and he asks a multitude of women.

RECHAB AM FORSAKES THE TORAH

12 And so be it,
Rechab Am establishes the sovereignty
and strengthens himself,
and he forsakes the torah of Yah Veh
and all Yisra El with him.

2 CHRONICLES 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SOVEREIGN OF MISRAYIM ASCENDS AGAINST YERU SHALEM

2 And **so be** it came to pass, that in the fifth year
of king Rehoboam **sovereign Rechab Am**
Shishak king **sovereign** of Egypt Misrayim
came up **ascended** against Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
because they had
transgressed **treasoned** against the **LORD Yah Veh**,
3 With twelve hundred chariots,
and threescore **sixty** thousand horsemen cavalry:
and the people were without number
that came with him out of Egypt **Misrayim**;
the Lubims **Lubiyim**, the Sukkiims **Sukkiym**,
and the Ethiopians **Kushiym**.
4 And he took **captured** the fenced **rampart** cities
which pertained **be** to Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and came to Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**.
5 Then came Shemaiah **Shema Yah** the prophet
to Rehoboam **Rechab Am**,
and to the princes **governors** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
that were gathered together to Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**
because **from the face** of Shishak, and said unto them,
Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**, ye have forsaken me,
and therefore have I also left you in the hand of Shishak.
6 Whereupon the princes **governors** of Israel **Yisra El**
and the king **sovereign** humbled themselves;
and they said, *The LORD is righteous Yah Veh is just.*
7 And when the **LORD Yah Veh**
saw that they humbled themselves,
the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
came to Shemaiah **Shema Yah**, saying,
They have humbled themselves;
therefore I will **shall** not destroy **ruin** them,
but I will grant **shall give** them
some deliverance **a little escape**;
and my wrath **fury** shall not be poured out
upon Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem** by the hand of Shishak.
8 Nevertheless they shall be his servants;
that they may know my service,
and the service
of the kingdoms **sovereigndoms** of the countries **lands**.
9 So Shishak king **sovereign** of Egypt **Misrayim**
came up **ascended** against Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**,
and took away the treasures
of the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and the treasures
of the king's **sovereign's** house; he took all:
he carried **took** away also the shields **bucklers** of gold
which Solomon **Shelomoh** had made **worked**.
10 Instead of which king Rehoboam **sovereign Rechab Am**
made shields **worked bucklers** of brass **copper**,
and committed **oversaw** them
to the hands of the chief **governor** of the guard **runners**,
that kept **guarded** the entrance **portal**
of the king's **sovereign's** house.
11 And when the king **sovereign**
entered into the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
the guard **runners** came and fetched **lifted** them,
and brought **returned** them again
into the guard **runners** chamber.
12 And when he humbled himself,
the wrath of the **LORD Yah Veh** turned from him,
that he would **should** not destroy **ruin** him altogether **fully**;
and also in Judah things **Yah Hudah** all went well **good**.
13 So king Rehoboam **sovereign Rechab Am**
strengthened himself in Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**,
and reigned:
for Rehoboam **Rechab Am**
was **a son of** one and forty years **old**
when he began to reign,
and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**,
the city which the **LORD Yah Veh** had chosen
out of all the tribes **scions** of Israel **Yisra El**,
to put **set** his name there.
And his mother's name was Naamah
an Ammonitess **Ammoniyth**.
14 And he *did* **worked** evil,
because he prepared not his heart
to seek the **LORD Yah Veh**.

2 CHRONICLES 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SOVEREIGN OF MISRAYIM ASCENDS AGAINST YERU SHALEM

2 And so be it,
in the fifth year of sovereign Rechab Am,
Shishak sovereign of Misrayim
ascends against Yeru Shalem
— because they treasoned against Yah Veh
with twelve hundred chariots
and sixty thousand cavalry:
and people without number
come with him from Misrayim
— the Lubiyim, the Sukkiym and the Kushiym:
4 and he captures the rampart cities of Yah Hudah
and comes to Yeru Shalem.
5 And Shema Yah the prophet comes to Rechab Am
and to the governors of Yah Hudah
who gather to Yeru Shalem from the face of Shishak;
and says to them, Thus says Yah Veh:
You forsook me;
and I also left you in the hand of Shishak.
6 And the governors of Yisra El
and the sovereign humble themselves;
and they say, Yah Veh is just.
7 And Yah Veh sees them humble themselves,
and the word of Yah Veh comes to Shema Yah,
saying, They humble themselves;
I ruin them not,
but I give them a little escape;
and not pour my fury on Yeru Shalem
by the hand of Shishak:
8 but they become his servants;
so that they know my service
and the service of the sovereigndoms of the lands.
9 And Shishak sovereign of Misrayim
ascends against Yeru Shalem
and takes away the treasures of the house of Yah Veh
and the treasures of the house of the sovereign
— he takes all:
and he takes the bucklers of gold Shelomoh worked:
and in their stead
10 sovereign Rechab Am works bucklers of copper
and gives their oversight
to the hands of the governor of the runners
who guard the portal of the house of the sovereign.
11 And the sovereign enters the house of Yah Veh,
and the runners come
and lift them and return them to the runners chamber.
12 And he humbles himself,
the wrath of Yah Veh turns from him,
to not ruin him fully:
and also in Yah Hudah all goes good.
13 And sovereign Rechab Am
strengthens himself in Yeru Shalem and reigns:
for Rechab Am is a son of forty— one years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns seventeen years in Yeru Shalem
— the city Yah Veh chose
from all the scions of Yisra El
to set his name there.
And the name of his mother,
Naamah — an Ammoniyth:
and he works evil,
14 because he prepares not his heart to seek Yah Veh.

2 CHRONICLES 12, 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 Now the acts **words** of Rehoboam **Rechab Am**,
first and last,
are they not *written* **inscribed**
in the *book* **words** of Shemaiah **Shema Yah** the prophet,
and of Iddo the seer
concerning genealogies **genealogized?**
And there were wars *between Rehoboam of Rechab Am*
and *Jeroboam continually* **Yarob Am all days**.
16 And *Rehoboam slept* **Rechab Am laid** with his fathers,
and was *buried* **entombed** in the city of David:
and *Abijah* **Abi Yah** his son reigned in his stead.

ABI YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

13 Now in the eighteenth year
of *king Jeroboam* **sovereign Yarob Am**
began *Abijah* **Abi Yah** to reign over *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
2 He reigned three years in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
His mother's name also was *Michaiah* **Michah Yah**
the daughter of *Uriel* **Uri El** of *Gibeah* **Gibah**.
And there was war
between *Abijah* **Abi Yah** and *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**.
3 And *Abijah* **Abi Yah**
set the battle in array **lined up for war**
with an army of *valiant men of war* **mighty of valour**,
even four hundred thousand chosen men:
Jeroboam **Yarob Am** also
set the battle in array **lined up in war**
against him with eight hundred thousand chosen men,
being mighty men of valour.
4 And *Abijah stood up* **Abi Yah arose**
upon mount *Zemaraim* **Semarayim**,
which is in mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**, and said,
Hear me, thou *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**, and all *Israel* **Yisra El**;
5 Ought ye not to know
that *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel* **Yisra El**
gave the *kingdom* **sovereignty** over *Israel* **Yisra El**
to David *for ever* **eternally**,
even to him and to his sons by a covenant of salt?
6 Yet *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** the son of Nebat,
the servant of *Solomon* **Shelomoh** the son of David,
is risen up, and hath rebelled against his *lord* **adoni**.
7 And there are gathered unto him vain men,
the *children* **sons** of *Belial* **Beli Yaal**,
and have strengthened themselves
against *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**
the son of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
when *Rehoboam* **Rechab Am**
was young and tenderhearted **a lad of tender heart**,
and could not
withstand them **strengthen himself at their face**.
8 And now ye *think* **say** to *withstand* **strengthen yourselves**
at the face of
the *kingdom* **sovereignty** of *the LORD Yah Veh*
in the hand of the sons of David;
and ye be a great multitude,
and there are with your golden calves,
which *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
made **worked** you for *gods* **elohim**.
9 Have ye not cast out **expelled**
the priests of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
the sons of *Aaron* **Aharon**, and the *Levites* **Leviym**,
and have *made* **worked** you priests
after the manner of the nations of *other* lands?
so that whosoever cometh
to *consecrate himself* **fill his hand**
with a *young bullock* **steer the son of an ox**
and seven rams,
the same may be a priest
of *them that are no gods* **non—elohim**.
10 But as for us, *the LORD Yah Veh* is our *God* **Elohim**,
and we have not forsaken him;
and the priests, which minister unto *the LORD Yah Veh*,
are the sons of *Aaron* **Aharon**,
and the *Levites* wait upon *their business* **Leviym in the work**:
11 And they *burn* **incense** unto *the LORD Yah Veh*
every morning **by morning** and every evening **by evening**
burnt sacrifices **holocausts**
and sweet incense **of aromatics**:
the *shewbread* **arrangement bread**
also set they in order upon the pure table;

2 CHRONICLES 12, 13729

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 And the words of Rechab Am, first and last,
are they not inscribed
in the words of Shema Yah the prophet?
And genealogized by Iddo the seer?
And the wars of Rechab Am and Yarob Am all days?
16 And Rechab Am lies down with his fathers
— entombed in the city of David:
and Abi Yah his son reigns in his stead.

ABI YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

13 In the eighteenth year of sovereign Yarob Am
Abi Yah begins to reign over Yah Hudah:
2 he reigns three years in Yeru Shalem:
and the name of his mother,
Michah Yah the daughter of Uri El of Gibah.
And so be it,
war between Abi Yah and between Yarob Am:
3 and Abi Yah lines up for war
with an army of mighty of valour
— four hundred thousand chosen men:
and Yarob Am lines up in war against him
with eight hundred thousand chosen men
mighty of valour.
4 And Abi Yah rises on mount Semarayim,
in mount Ephrayim, and says,
Hear me, you Yarob Am and all Yisra El;
5 Ought you not to know
that Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
gives the sovereignty over Yisra El
to David eternally?
— to him and to his sons by a covenant of salt?
6 And Yarob Am the son of Nebat,
the servant of Shelomoh the son of David,
rises and rebels against his adoni!
7 And vain men, the sons of Beli Yaal gather to him
and strengthen themselves
against Rechab Am the son of Shelomoh:
and Rechab Am is a lad of tender heart
and cannot strengthen himself at their face.
8 And now you say to strengthen yourselves
at the face of the sovereignty of Yah Veh
in the hand of the sons of David;
and you are a great multitude;
and golden calves with you
which Yarob Am worked you for elohim.
9 Expelled you not the priests of Yah Veh
— the sons of Aharon and the Leviym?
And worked priests
after the manner of the nations of lands?
So that whoever comes to fill his hand
with a steer the son of an ox and seven rams,
becomes a priest of a non—elohim.
10 As for us, Yah Veh is our Elohim
and we forsake him not;
and the priests, who minister to Yah Veh,
are the sons of Aharon and the Leviym in the work:
11 and they incense to Yah Veh
morning by morning and evening by evening
holocausts and incense of aromatics;
the arrangement bread on the pure table;

2 CHRONICLES 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the *andlestick* **menorah** of gold
with the lamps thereof,
to burn every evening by **evening**:
for we *keep* **guard** the *charge* **guard**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**;
but ye have forsaken him.
12 And, behold,
God **Elohim** himself is with us for *our* **captain head**,
and his priests with *sounding* **blasting** trumpets
to *cry* **alarm** **blast** against you.
O *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
fight ye not against
the LORD *God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of your fathers;
for ye shall not prosper.
13 But *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
caused an ambushment to come about **lurked around**
behind them:
so they were *before* *Judah* **at the face of Yah Hudah**,
and *the ambushment was* **they lurked** behind them.
14 And when *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
looked **turned to face** back, behold,
the battle **war** was *before* **at their face** and behind:
and they cried unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and the priests *sounded* with **trumpeted** the trumpets.
15 Then the *men of Judah* **Yah Hudiy** gave a shout:
and as the *men of Judah* **Yah Hudiy** shouted,
so be it came to pass,
that *God* **Elohim**
smote *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am** and all *Israel* **Yisra El**
before Abijah **at the face of**
Abi Yah and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
16 And the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
fled before *Judah* **from the face of Yah Hudah**:
and *God* **delivered** **Elohim** gave them into their hand.
17 And *Abijah* **Abi Yah** and his people
slew **smote** them with a great *slaughter* **stroke**:
so there fell down *slain* **pierced** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
five hundred thousand chosen men.
18 Thus the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
were *brought under* **subdued** at that time,
and the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
prevailed **strengthened**,
because they *relied* **leaned**
upon *the LORD* *God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of their fathers.
19 And *Abijah* **Abi Yah** pursued after *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**,
and *took* **captured** cities from him,
Bethel **Beth El** with the *towns* **daughters** thereof,
and *Jeshanah* **Yeshanah** with the *towns* **daughters** thereof,
and Ephraim with the *towns* **daughters** thereof.
20 Neither did *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
recover strength **again** **retain force**
in the days of *Abijah* **Abi Yah**:
and *the LORD* **struck** **Yah Veh** **smote** him, and he died.
21 But *Abijah* **waxed** **mighty** **Abi Yah** **strengthened**,
and *married* **bore him** fourteen *wives* **women**,
and *begat* **birthed** twenty and two sons,
and sixteen daughters.
22 And the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Abijah* **Abi Yah**,
and his ways, and his *sayings* **words**,
are *written* **inscribed**
in the *story* **commentary** of the prophet Iddo.

THE DEATH OF ABI YAH

14

So *Abijah* **slept** **Abi Yah** **laid** with his fathers,
and they *buried* **entombed** him in the city of David:
and Asa his son reigned in his stead.
In his days the land was *quiet* **rested** ten years.

ASA REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

2 And Asa *did* **worked**
that which was good and *right* **straight**
in the eyes of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim**:
3 For he *took away* **turned aside**
the **sacrifice** altars of the strange *gods*,
and the *high places* **bamahs**,
and brake down the *images* **monoliths**,
and cut down the *groves* **asherim**:
4 And *commanded* *Judah* **said to Yah Hudah**
to seek *the LORD* *God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of their fathers,
and to *do* **work** the *law* **torah** and the *commandment* **misvah**.

2 CHRONICLES 13, 14730

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the menorah of gold with the lamps thereof
to burn evening by evening:
for we guard the guard of Yah Veh our Elohim;
but you — you forsook him.
12 And behold, with us — Elohim for head
and his priests with blasting trumpets
to blast against you.
O sons of Yisra El,
fight not against Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers;
for you prosper not.
13 And Yarob Am lurks around behind them:
so they are at the face of Yah Hudah
and they lurk behind them:
14 and Yah Hudah turns to face back, and behold,
the war is at their face and behind:
and they cry to Yah Veh
and the priests trumpet the trumpets:
15 and the Yah Hudiy give a shout:
and the Yah Hudiy shout, and so be it,
Elohim smites Yarob Am and all Yisra El
at the face of Abi Yah and Yah Hudah:
16 and the sons of Yisra El
flee the face of Yah Hudah:
and Elohim gives them into their hand;
17 and Abi Yah and his people
smite them with a great stroke:
so there fall down, pierced of Yisra El,
five hundred thousand chosen men.
18 And at that time,
they subdue sons of Yisra El,
and the sons of Yah Hudah strengthen,
because they lean on Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers.
19 And Abi Yah pursues Yarob Am
and captures cities from him:
Beth El with the daughters thereof
and Ephraim with the daughters thereof.
20 Yarob Am retains no force in the days of Abi Yah:
and Yah Veh smites him and he dies.
21 And Abi Yah strengthens
and has fourteen women
and births twenty — two sons and sixteen daughters.
22 And the rest of the words of Abi Yah
and his ways and his words,
are inscribed in the commentary of the prophet Iddo.

THE DEATH OF ABI YAH

14

And Abi Yah lies down with his fathers
— entombed in the city of David:
and Asa his son reigns in his stead.
In his days the land rests ten years.

ASA REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

2 And Asa works good and straight
in the eyes of Yah Veh his Elohim:
3 and he turns aside the sacrifice altars of the strange
and the bamahs
and breaks down the monoliths
and cuts down the asherim:
4 and says to Yah Hudah
to seek Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers;
and to work the torah and the misvah:

2 CHRONICLES 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 Also he took away turned aside
out of all the cities of Judah **Yah Hudah**
the high places **bamahs** and the images **sun icons**:
and the kingdom **sovereigndom**
was quiet before him **rested at his face**.
6 And he built fenced **rampart** cities in Judah **Yah Hudah**:
for the land had rest **rested**,
and he had no war in those years;
because the **LORD Yah Veh**
had given him rest **rested him**.
7 Therefore **And** he said unto Judah **Yah Hudah**,
Let us build these cities,
and make about **surround** them
with walls, and towers, **gates doors**, and bars,
while the land is yet before us **at our face**;
because we have sought
the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**,
we have sought him,
and he hath
given us rest on every side **rested us all around**.
So they built and prospered.
8 And Asa had an army of men **mighty of valour**
that bare targets **shields** and spears **javelins**,
out of Judah **Yah Hudah** three hundred thousand;
and out of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**,
that bare **shields bucklers** and drew **arched** bows,
two hundred and **fourscore eighty** thousand:
all these were mighty men of valour.
9 And there came out **went** against them
Zerah **Zerach** the **Ethiopian Kushi**
with an host of a thousand thousand of **valour**,
and three hundred chariots; and came unto Mareshah.
10 Then Asa went out **against him at his face**,
and they set the battle in array **lined up for war**
in the valley of Zephathah **Sephathah** at Mareshah.
11 And Asa
cried called unto the **LORD Yah Veh** his **God Elohim**,
and said, **LORD Yah Veh**,
it is **nothing naught** with thee to help,
whether with between many,
or with them that have no **power force**:
help us, O **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**;
for we rest **lean** on thee,
and in thy name we go against this multitude.
O **LORD Yah Veh**, thou art our **God Elohim**;
let no **mortal man prevail restrain** against thee.
12 So the **LORD Yah Veh** smote the **Ethiopians Kushi**
before at the face of Asa,
and before Judah **at the face of Yah Hudah**;
and the **Ethiopians Kushi** fled.
13 And Asa and the people that were with him
pursued them unto Gerar:
and the **Ethiopians Kushi** were **overthrown felled**,
that they
could not recover themselves had no invigoration;
for they were **destroyed broken**
before the **LORD at the face of Yah Veh**,
and before **at the face of his host camp**;
and they carried **bore** away
very much spoil **a mighty abundance of plunder**.
14 And they smote all the cities round about Gerar;
for the fear of the **LORD Yah Veh** came upon them:
and they **spoiled plundered** all the cities;
for there was exceeding much spoil in them.
15 They smote also the tents of **cattle chattel**,
and carried away **captured**
sheep flocks and camels in abundance,
and returned to Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**.

AZAR YAH AT THE FACE OF ASA

15 And the Spirit of **God Elohim**
came upon Azariah **Azar Yah** the son of Oded:
2 And he went out to meet **at the face of Asa**,
and said unto him, Hear ye me, Asa,
and all Judah **Yah Hudah** and Benjamin **Ben Yamin**;
The **LORD Yah Veh** is with you, while ye be with him;
and if ye seek him, he **will shall** be found of you;
but if ye forsake him, he **will shall** forsake you.
3 Now for a long season **many days**
Israel **Yisra El** hath been without the true **God Elohim**,

2 CHRONICLES 14, 15731

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 and he turns aside the bamahs and the sun icons
from all the cities of Yah Hudah;
and the sovereigndom rests at his face:
6 and he builds rampart cities in Yah Hudah:
for the land rests and he has no war in those years;
because Yah Veh rests him.
7 And he says to Yah Hudah,
We build these cities
and surround them
with walls and towers, doors and bars
while the land is still at our face;
because we seek Yah Veh our Elohim:
we seek him and he rests us all around.
— and they build and prosper.
8 And Asa, has from Yah Hudah,
mighty of valour who bear shields and javelins
three hundred thousand;
and from Ben Yamin,
who bear bucklers and arched bows
two hundred and eighty thousand.
— all these mighty of valour.
9 And Zerach the Kushi goes against them
with a thousand thousand of valour
and three hundred chariots
and comes to Mareshah;
10 and Asa goes at his face
and they line up for war
in the valley of Sephathah at Mareshah.
11 And Asa calls to Yah Veh his Elohim and says,
Yah Veh, it is naught with you to help
— between many, or them who have no force:
help us, O Yah Veh our Elohim;
for we lean on you;
and in your name we go against this multitude.
O Yah Veh, you are our Elohim;
may mortal man not restrain against you.
12 And Yah Veh smites the Kushi
at the face of Asa and at the face of Yah Hudah;
and the Kushi flee:
13 and Asa and the people with him
pursue them to Gerar:
and the Kushi are felled,
for they have no invigoration;
for they break at the face of Yah Veh
and at the face of his camp;
and they bear away a mighty abundance of plunder:
14 and they smite all the cities all around Gerar;
for the fear of Yah Veh comes on them:
and they plunder all the cities;
for there is exceeding much spoil in them:
15 and they smite the tents of chattel
and capture flocks and camels in abundance
and return to Yeru Shalem.

AZAR YAH AT THE FACE OF ASA

15 And the Spirit of Elohim
comes on Azar Yah the son of Oded:
2 and he goes out at the face of Asa and says to him,
Hear me, Asa and all Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin;
Yah Veh is with you, in your being with him;
and if you seek him, he is found of you;
but if you forsake him, he forsakes you.
3 And many days Yisra El is without the true Elohim

2 CHRONICLES 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 and without a teaching priest, and without *law torah*.
But when they in their *trouble tribulation* did turn
unto the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El*,
and sought him, he was found of them.
5 And in those times there was no *peace shalom*
to him that went out, nor to him that came in,
but great *vexations were confusion*
upon all the *inhabitants settlers of the countries lands*.
6 And *nation was destroyed of nation*
goyim crushed goyim, and city of city:
for *God did vex Elohim agitated* them
with all *adversity tribulation*.
7 *Be ye strong therefore Strengthen*,
and let not your hands *be weak slacken*:
for your *work hire* shall be *rewarded to your deed*.
THE REFORM OF ASA
8 And when Asa heard these words,
and the prophecy of Oded the prophet,
he *took courage strengthened*,
and *put passed away the abominable idols abominations*
out of all the land
of *Judah Yah Hudah* and *Benjamin Ben Yamin*,
and out of the cities which he *had taken captured*
from mount *Ephraim Ephrayim*,
and renewed the *sacrifice* altar of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
that was *before at the face*
of the porch of the *LORD Yah Veh*.
9 And he gathered
all *Judah Yah Hudah* and *Benjamin Ben Yamin*,
and the *strangers sojourners* with them
out of *Ephraim Ephrayim* and *Manasseh Menash Sheh*,
and out of *Simeon Shimon*:
for they fell to him out of *Israel Yisra El* in abundance,
when they saw
that the *LORD Yah Veh* his *God Elohim* was with him.
10 So they gathered *themselves together*
at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem* in the third month,
in the fifteenth year of the *reign sovereignty* of Asa.
11 And they *offered sacrificed* unto the *LORD Yah Veh*
the same *time day*,
of the spoil which they had brought,
seven hundred oxen and seven thousand *sheep flocks*.
12 And they entered into a covenant
to seek the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of their fathers
with all their heart and with all their soul;
13 That whosoever *would should* not seek
the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El*
should be *put to death deatified*,
whether from small or great,
whether from man or woman.
14 And they *sware oathed* unto the *LORD Yah Veh*
with a *loud great* voice, and with shouting,
and with trumpets, and with *cornets shopphars*.
15 And all *Judah rejoiced Yah Hudah cheered* at the oath:
for they had *sworn oathed* with all their heart,
and sought him with their whole *desire pleasure*;
and he was found of them:
and the *LORD gave Yah Veh rested* them *rest*
round about.
16 And also *concerning* Maachah
the mother of Asa the *king sovereign*,
he *removed turned* her *aside* from being *queen lady*,
because she had *made worked* an idol of *awe*
in a *grove an asherah*:
and Asa cut down her idol of *awe*,
and *stamped pulverized* it,
and burnt it at the *brook Kidron wadi Qidron*.
17 But the *high places bamahs*
were not *taken away turned aside* out of *Israel Yisra El*:
nevertheless the heart of Asa
was *perfect at shalom* all his days.
18 And he brought into the house of *God Elohim*
the *things that holies of* his father *had dedicated*,
and that he *himself had dedicated holies of his own*,
silver, and gold, and *vessels instruments*.
19 And there was no *more* war
unto the five and thirtieth year
of the *reign sovereignty* of Asa.

2 CHRONICLES 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and without a teaching priest and without torah:
4 and in their tribulation
they turn to Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
and seek him, and find him:
5 and in those times
shalom is neither to him who goes out
nor to him who comes in;
but great confusion on all the settlers of the lands:
6 and crush — goyim by goyim and city by city:
for Elohim agitates them with all tribulation.
7 Strengthen! Slacken not your hands!
As your hire, thus your deed.
THE REFORM OF ASA
8 And Asa hears these words
and the prophecy of Oded the prophet;
and he strengthens
and passes the abominations
from all the land of Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin
and from the cities
he captured from mount Ephrayim;
and renews the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh
at the face of the porch of Yah Veh:
9 and he gathers all Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin
and the sojourners with them
from Ephrayim and Menash Sheh and from Shimon
— for they fall to him from Yisra El in abundance,
when they see Yah Veh his Elohim *is* with him.
10 And they gather at Yeru Shalem in the third month
in the fifteenth year of the sovereignty of Asa:
11 and the same day,
they sacrifice to Yah Veh of the spoil they bring
— seven hundred oxen and seven thousand flocks:
12 and they enter a covenant
to seek Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers
with all their heart and with all their soul;
13 and deathify
whoever seeks not Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
— from small or great — from man or woman:
14 and they oath to Yah Veh
with a great voice and with shouting
and with trumpets and with shopphars.
15 And all Yah Hudah cheers at the oath:
for they oath with all their heart
and seek him with their whole pleasure;
and they find him:
and Yah Veh rests them all around.
16 And also Maachah
turns aside the mother of Asa the sovereign
from being lady;
because she works an idol of awe in an asherah:
and Asa cuts down her idol of awe
and pulverizes and burns it at the wadi Qidron:
17 yet the bamahs
are not turned aside from Yisra El:
only, the heart of Asa is at shalom all his days:
18 and into the house of Elohim
he brings the holies of his father
and the holies of his own
— silver and gold and instruments:
19 and there is no war to the thirty—fifth year
of the sovereignty of Asa.

2 CHRONICLES 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE SOVEREIGN OF YISRA EL COMES AGAINST YAH HUDAH

16

In the six and thirtieth year
of the *reign* **sovereign**dom of Asa,
Baasha king **Basha** **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
came up **ascended** against *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and built Ramah,

to the *intent* **until** that he might *let* **give** that
none go out or come in

to Asa *king* **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.

2

Then Asa brought *out* silver and gold
out of the treasures of the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
and of the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
and sent to *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad**,
king **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram**,

3

that *dwelt* **settled** at *Damascus* **Dammeseq**, saying,
There is a *league* **covenant** between me and **between** thee,
as there was between my father and **between** thy father:
behold, I have sent thee silver and gold;
go, break thy *league* **covenant**

4

with *Baasha king* **Basha** **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that he may *depart* **ascend** from me.
And *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad**
hearkened unto *king* **sovereign** Asa,
and sent the *captains* **governors** of his *armies* **valiant**
against the cities of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and they smote *Ijon* **Iyon**,
and Dan, and *Abelmaim* **Abel Maim**,
and all the *store* **storage** cities of Naphtali.

5

And **so be** it came to pass,
when *Baasha* **Basha** heard it,
that he *left off* **ceased** building of Ramah,
and *let* **ceased** his work *cease*.

6

Then Asa the *king* **sovereign** took all *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
and they *carried* **lifted** away
the stones of Ramah, and the timber thereof,
wherewith *Baasha* **Basha** was building;
and he built therewith Geba and *Mizpah* **Mispeh**.

7

And at that time Hanani the seer came to Asa
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, and said unto him,
Because thou hast *relied* **leaned**
on the *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram**,
and not *relied* **leaned**
on *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
therefore

8

is the *host* **valiant** of the *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram**
escaped out of thine hand.
Were not the *Ethiopians* **Kushiy** and the *Lubims* **Lubiy**
a *huge* **host** **an abundance** of **valiant**,
with *very many* **a mighty abundance** of chariots
and *horsemen* **cavalry**?

9

yet, because thou didst *rely* **lean** on *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
he *delivered* **gave** them into thine hand.

10

For the eyes of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
run to and fro **flit** throughout the whole earth,
to *shew himself strong* **strengthened** in the behalf of them
whose heart is *perfect* **at shalom** toward him.
Herein thou hast *done* **foolishly** **follied**:
therefore from *henceforth* **this time** thou shalt have wars.

11

Then Asa was *wroth* **vexed** with the seer,
and *put* **gave** him in a *prison* **stock** house;
for he was in a rage with him because of this *thing*.
And Asa *oppressed* **crushed** *some* of the people
the same time.

12

And, behold, the *acts* **words** of Asa, first and last,
lo **behold**, they are *written* **inscribed**
in the *book* **scroll** of the *kings* **sovereigns**
of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Israel* **Yisra El**.

THE DEATH OF ASA

12

And Asa
in the thirty and ninth year of his *reign* **sovereign**dom
was *diseased* **sickens** in his feet,
until his *disease* **sickness** was *exceeding great* **severe**:
yet in his *disease* **sickness**

13

he sought not to *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
but to the *physicians* **healers**.
And Asa *slept* **laid** with his fathers,
and died in the one and fortieth year of his reign.

2 CHRONICLES 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE SOVEREIGN OF YISRA EL COMES AGAINST YAH HUDAH

16

In the thirty—sixth year
of the sovereigndom of Asa,
Basha sovereign of Yisra El
ascends against Yah Hudah and builds Ramah,
so as not to give anyone to go or come
to Asa sovereign of Yah Hudah.

2

And Asa brings silver and gold
from the treasures of the house of Yah Veh
and of the house of the sovereign
and sends to Ben Hadad sovereign of Aram
who settles at Dammeseq, saying,

3

There is a covenant between me and between you,
as between my father and between your father:
behold, I send you silver and gold;
go break your covenant
with Basha sovereign of Yisra El
so that he ascends from me.

4

And Ben Hadad hearkens to sovereign Asa
and sends the governors of his valiant
against the cities of Yisra El;
and they smite Lyon and Dan and Abel Maim
and all the storage cities of Naphtali.

5

And so be it, Basha hears,
and he ceases building of Ramah
and ceases his work.

6

And Asa the sovereign takes all Yah Hudah;
and they lift the stones of Ramah
and the timber that Basha builds;
and with them he builds Geba and Mispeh.

7

And at that time,
Hanani the seer
comes to Asa sovereign of Yah Hudah
and says to him,

8

Because you lean on the sovereign of Aram
and lean not on Yah Veh your Elohim,
so the valiant of the sovereign of Aram
escapes from your hand.

9

Were not the Kushiy and the Lubiy
an abundance of valiant,
with a mighty abundance of chariots and cavalry?
Yet, because you leaned on Yah Veh
he gave them into your hand.

10

As for Yah Veh,
— his eyes flit throughout the whole earth,
strengthened in behalf of them
whose heart is at shalom toward him.

11

Herein you folly:
from this time on you have wars.

12

And Asa is vexed with the seer
and gives him in a stock house;
because of his rage because of this:
and at that time,
Asa crushes *some* of the people.

13

And behold, the words of Asa,
first and last, behold,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns
of Yah Hudah and Yisra El?

THE DEATH OF ASA

12

And in the thirty—ninth year
of his sovereigndom
Asa sickens in his feet until his sickness is severe:
yet in his sickness
he seeks not Yah Veh, but the healers.

13

And Asa lies down with his fathers
and dies in the forty—first year of his reign.

2 CHRONICLES 16, 17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 And they buried **entombed** him
in his own *sepulchres* **tombs**,
which he had *made* **digged** for himself
in the city of David,
and laid him in the bed
which was filled with *sweet odours* **spices**
and *divers kinds of spices* **species by species**
prepared by the apothecaries' art of **perfumed ointment**:
and they *made a very* **burnt a mighty** great burning for him.
YAH SHAPHAT REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

17 And *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat** his son
reigned in his stead,
and strengthened himself against *Israel* **Yisra El**.
2 And he *placed forces* **gave the valiant**
in all the *fenced* **fortified** cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and *set garrisons* **gave stations**
in the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and in the cities of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
which *Asa his father* had *taken* **captured**.
3 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
was with *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**,
because he walked in the first ways of his father David,
and sought not unto Baalim;
4 But sought to *the LORD God* **Elohim** of his father,
and walked in his *commandments* **misvoth**,
and not after the *doings* **works** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
5 Therefore *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
stablished the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** in his hand;
and all *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
brought to Jehoshaphat **presents**
gave Yah Shaphat offerings;
and he had riches and honour in abundance.
6 And his heart was *lifted up* **exalted**
in the ways of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
moreover he *took away* **turned aside**
the *high places* **bamahs** and *groves* **asherim**
out of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
7 Also in the third year of his reign
he sent to his *princes* **governors**,
even to Benhail **Ben Hail**, and to *Obadiah* **Obad Yah**,
and to *Zechariah* **Zechar Yah**, and to *Nethaneeel* **Nethan El**,
and to *Michaiah* **Michah Yah**,
to teach in the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
8 And with them *he sent Levites* **Leviym**,
even Shemaiah **Shema Yah**, and *Nethaniah* **Nethan Yah**,
and *Zebadiah* **Zebad Yah**, and *Asahel* **Asa El**,
and *Shemiramoth* **Shemi Ramoth**,
and *Jehonathan* **Yah Nathan**, and *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah**,
and *Tobijah* **Tobi Yah**, and *Tobadonijah* **Tob Adoni Yah**,
Levites **Leviym**;
and with them *Elishama* **Eli Shama** and *Jehoram* **Yah Ram**,
priests.
9 And they taught in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and had the *book* **scroll**
of the *law* **torah** of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** with them,
and went about
throughout all the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and taught the people.
10 And the fear of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
fell upon all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the lands
that were round about *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
so that they *made no war* **fought not**
against *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**.
11 Also *some of the Philistines* **Peleshethiy**
brought *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
presents **offerings**, and *tribute* **burden** silver;
and the *Arabians* **Arabiy** brought him flocks,
seven thousand and seven hundred rams,
and seven thousand and seven hundred he goats.
12 And *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
waxed great exceedingly **walked and greatened upward**;
and he built in *Judah* **castles** **Yah Hudah palaces**,
and cities of *store* **storage**.
13 And he had much *business* **work**
in the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**:
and the men of war, mighty *men* of valour,
were in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
14 And these are the *numbers of them* **mustered**
according to the house of their fathers:

2 CHRONICLES 16, 17734

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 — entombed in his own tombs,
which he dug for himself in the city of David;
and lay him in a bed filled with spices
— species by species of perfumed ointment:
and they burn a mighty great burning for him.

YAH SHAPHAT REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

17 And Yah Shaphat his son reigns in his stead
and strengthens himself against Yisra El:
2 and he gives the valiant
in all the fortified cities of Yah Hudah;
and gives stations in the land of Yah Hudah
and in the cities of Ephrayim
Asa his father captured.
3 And Yah Veh is with Yah Shaphat,
because he walks in the first ways of his father David
and seeks not to Baalim;
4 for he seeks to Elohim of his father;
and walks in his misvoth
and not after the works of Yisra El:
5 and Yah Veh
establishes the sovereigndom in his hand;
and all Yah Hudah gives Yah Shaphat offerings;
and he has riches and honor in abundance:
6 and his heart exalts in the ways of Yah Veh:
and again he turns aside the bamahs and asherim
from Yah Hudah.
7 And in the third year of his reign
he sends to his governors
— to Ben Hail and to Obad Yah and to Zechar Yah
and to Nethan El and to Michah Yah
to teach in the cities of Yah Hudah:
8 and the Leviym with them
— Shema Yah and Nethan Yah
and Zebad Yah and Asa El
and Shemi Ramoth and Yah Nathan
and Adoni Yah and Tobi Yah
and Tob Adoni Yah, the Leviym;
and with them
— Eli Shama and Yah Ram
the priests:
9 and they teach in Yah Hudah
and have the scroll of the torah of Yah Veh
with them;
and go about throughout all the cities of Yah Hudah
and teach the people.
10 And the fear of Yah Veh
falls on all the sovereigndoms of the lands
all around Yah Hudah,
so that they fight not against Yah Shaphat:
11 and the Peleshethiy
bring Yah Shaphat offerings and burden silver;
and the Arabiy bring him flocks
— seven thousand and seven hundred rams
and seven thousand and seven hundred he goats.
12 And Yah Shaphat walks and greatens upward;
and in Yah Hudah
he builds palaces and cities of storage:
13 and he has much work in the cities of Yah Hudah.
And the men of war, mighty of valour,
are in Yeru Shalem:
14 and these are the mustered
according to the house of their fathers:

2 CHRONICLES 17, 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
the *captains* **governors** of thousands;
Adnah the *chief* **governor**,
and with him mighty *men* of valour
three hundred thousand.
15 And *next to him* **at his hand**
was *Jehohanan* **Yah Hanan** the *captain* **governor**,
and with him two hundred and *fourscore* **eighty** thousand.
16 And *next him* **at his hand**
was *Amasiah* **Amas Yah** the son of Zichri,
who *willingly offered himself* **volunteered**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
and with him
two hundred thousand mighty *men* of valour.
17 And of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**;
Eliada **Eli Ada** a mighty *man* of valour,
and with him
armed men **them kissed** with bow and *shield* **buckler**
two hundred thousand.
18 And *next him* **at his hand** was *Jehozabad* **Yah Zabad**,
and with him an hundred and *fourscore* **eighty** thousand
ready prepared **equipped** for the war **hostility**.
19 These *waited on* **ministered** to the *king* **sovereign**,
beside those whom the *king put* **sovereign gave**
in the *fenced* **fortified** cities
throughout all *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.

YAH SHAPHAT INTERMARRIES WITH ACH AB

18

Now *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
had riches and honour in abundance,
and *joined affinity* **intermarried** with *Ahab* **Ach Ab**.
2 And *after certain* **at the end of** years
he *went down* **descended** to *Ahab* **Ach Ab**
to *Samaria* **Shomeron**.
And *Ahab killed* **sheep** **Ach Ab sacrificed** **flocks** and oxen
for him in abundance,
and for the people *that he had* with him,
and *persuaded* **goaded** him to *go up* **ascend** with him
to *Ramothgilead* **Ramoth Gilad**.
3 And *Ahab* **Ach Ab** *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
said unto *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
Wilt **Shalt** thou go with me
to *Ramothgilead* **Ramoth Gilad**?
And he *answered* **said** to him,
I am as thou art **As I, so thou**,
and *my people as thy people* **as thy people, so my people**;
and we *will* **shall even** be with thee in the war.
4 And *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
said unto the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Enquire, I pray **beseech** thee,
at the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** to day.
5 *Therefore* the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
gathered *together* of prophets four hundred men,
and said unto them,
Shall we go to *Ramothgilead* **Ramoth Gilad** to *battle* **war**,
or shall I *forebear* **cease**?
And they said, *Go up* **Ascend**;
for *God will deliver* **Elohim shall give** it
into the *king's* **sovereign's** hand.
6 But *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat** said,
Is there not here a prophet of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** besides,
that we might enquire of him?
7 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
said unto *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**,
There is yet one man,
by whom we may enquire of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
but I hate him;
for he never prophesied good unto me,
but *always* **all his days** evil:
the same is *Micaiah* **Michah Yah** the son of *Imla* **Yimlah**.
And *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat** said,
Let not the *king* **sovereign** say so.
8 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
called for one of his *officers* **eunuch**, and said,
Fetch quickly **Micaiah Hasten Michah Yah**
the son of *Imla* **Yimlah**.
9 And the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
and *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**

2 CHRONICLES 17, 18735

exeGesés companion BIBLE

of Yah Hudah, the governors of thousands:
Adnah the governor
and with him
— three hundred thousand mighty of valour;
15 and at his hand:
Yah Hanan the governor;
and with him
— two hundred and eighty thousand;
16 and at his hand:
Amas Yah the son of Zichri
who volunteers to Yah Veh;
and with him mighty of valour
— two hundred thousand;
17 and of Ben Yamin;
Eli Ada mighty of valour
and with him, them kissed with bow and buckler
— two hundred thousand;
18 and at his hand, Yah Zabad:
and with him equipped for hostility
— a hundred and eighty thousand.
19 — these ministered to the sovereign,
beside them the sovereign gives in the fortified cities
throughout all Yah Hudah.

YAH SHAPHAT INTERMARRIES WITH ACH AB

18

And Yah Shaphat
has riches and honor in abundance;
and intermarries with Ach Ab:
and at the end of years,
he descends to Ach Ab to Shomeron;
and Ach Ab sacrifices flocks and oxen in abundance
for himself and for the people with him.
— and they goad him to ascend to Ramoth Gilad.
3 And Ach Ab sovereign of Yisra El
says to Yah Shaphat sovereign of Yah Hudah,
Come with me to Ramoth Gilad?
And he says to him,
As I, thus you!
As your people, thus my people
— even with you in the war.
4 And Yah Shaphat says to the sovereign of Yisra El,
Enquire, I beseech you, this day,
the word of Yah Veh.
5 And the sovereign of Yisra El gathers prophets
— four hundred men
and says to them,
Go we to Ramoth Gilad to war? Or cease I?
And they say, Ascend!
For Elohim gives it into the hand of the sovereign.
6 And Yah Shaphat says,
Is there not a prophet of Yah Veh here
to enquire of besides him?
7 And the sovereign of Yisra El says to Yah Shaphat,
There is yet one man
of whom to enquire of Yah Veh:
and I — I hate him;
for he never prophesies me good;
but evil, all his days:
the same is Michah Yah the son of Yimlah.
And Yah Shaphat says,
May the sovereign not say so.
O sovereign, say not thus.
8 And the sovereign of Yisra El
calls for one eunuch and says,
Hasten Michah Yah the son of Yimlah.
9 And the sovereign of Yisra El
and Yah Shaphat sovereign of Yah Hudah

2 CHRONICLES 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

sat either of them **settled each man** on his throne,
clothed **enrobed** in their robes **clothes**,
and they sat **settled** in a void place **threshingfloor**
at the entering in **opening of the gate portal**
of **Samaria Shomeron**;
and all the prophets prophesied *before them* **at their face**.
10 And **Zedekiah Sidqi Yah**
the son of **Chenaanah Kenaanah**
had made **worked** him horns of iron, and said,
Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
With these thou shalt *push Syria* **butt Aram**
until they be *consumed* **finished off**.
11 And all the prophets prophesied so, saying,
Go up **Ascend** to **Ramothgilead Ramoth Gilad**,
and prosper:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall *deliver* **give** it
into the hand of the **king sovereign**.
12 And the *messenger* **angel**
that went to call **Micaiah Michah Yah**
spake **worded** to him, saying, Behold,
the words of the prophets
declare **are** good to the **king sovereign**
with one *assent* **mouth**;
let thy word *therefore*, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
be like one of their's, and *speak* **word** thou good.
13 And **Micaiah Michah Yah** said,
As the LORD **Yah Veh** liveth,
even what my **God Elohim** saith,
that *will* **shall** I *speak* **word**.
14 And when he was come to the **king sovereign**,
the **king sovereign** said unto him, **Micaiah Michah Yah**,
shall we go to **Ramothgilead Ramoth Gilad** to *battle war*,
or shall I forbear?
And he said, *Go ye up* **Ascend**, and prosper,
and they shall be *delivered* **given** into your hand.
15 And the **king sovereign** said to him,
How many times shall I *adjure* **oath** thee
that thou *say* **nothing word naught** but the truth to me
in the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**?
16 Then he said, I did see all **Israel Yisra El**
scattered upon the mountains,
as *sheep* **flocks** that have no *shepherd* **tender**:
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said, These have no **master adoni**;
let them return *therefore*
every man to his house in *peace* **shalom**.
17 And the **king sovereign** of **Israel Yisra El**
said to **Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat**, Did I not *tell* **say** to thee
that he *would* **should** not prophesy good unto me,
but evil?
18 Again he said,
Therefore hear the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
I saw *the LORD* **sitting Yah Veh seated** upon his throne,
and all the host of *heaven* **the heavens**
standing on his right *hand* and on his left.
19 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said,
Who shall entice **Ahab Ach Ab**,
king sovereign of **Israel Yisra El**,
that he may *go up* **ascend**
and fall at **Ramothgilead Ramoth Gilad**?
And one *spake* **said**, saying *after this manner* **thus**,
and another saying *after that manner* **thus**.
20 Then there *came out* **went** a spirit,
and stood *before the LORD* **at the face of Yah Veh**,
and said, I *will* **shall** entice him.
And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto him, Wherewith?
21 And he said, I *will* **shall** go out,
and be a *lying* **false** spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.
And *the LORD* **he** said,
Thou shalt entice him, **Entice!**
and thou shalt also prevail: **Prevail!**
go out, **Go!** and do even so. **Work!**
22 Now *therefore*, behold,
the LORD **Yah Veh** hath *put* **given** a *lying* **false** spirit
in the mouth of these thy prophets,
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded** evil
against thee.
23 Then **Zedekiah Sidqi Yah**
the son of **Chenaanah Kenaanah** came near,
and smote **Micaiah Michah Yah** upon the cheek, and said,

2 CHRONICLES 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— each man settles on his throne
enrobed in their clothes:
and they settle in a threshingfloor
at the opening of the portal of Shomeron;
and all the prophets prophesy at their face.
10 And Sidqi Yah the son of Kenaanah
works him horns of iron, and says,
Thus says Yah Veh,
Butt Aram with these until they are finished off.
11 And all the prophets prophesy thus, saying,
Ascend to Ramoth Gilad and prosper:
for Yah Veh gives it into the hand of the sovereign.
12 And the angel who goes to call Michah Yah
words to him, saying,
Behold, the words of the prophets
are good to the sovereign with one mouth;
and so be your word, I beseech you,
as one of theirs and word you good.
13 And Michah Yah says,
Yah Veh lives;
even what my Elohim says, I word.
14 And he comes to the sovereign,
and the sovereign says to him, Michah Yah,
go we to Ramoth Gilad to war?
Or forbear I?
And he says, Ascend and prosper:
and they are given into your hand.
15 And the sovereign says to him,
How many times oath I you
that you word naught but the truth to me
in the name of Yah Veh?
16 Then he says,
I see all Yisra El scatter on the mountains
as flocks having no tender:
and Yah Veh says, These have no adoni;
return them — every man to his house in shalom.
17 And the sovereign of Yisra El says to Yah Shaphat,
Said I not to you
that he never prophesies to me good, but evil?
18 And he says,
So hear the word of Yah Veh;
I see Yah Veh seated on his throne
and all the host of the heavens
standing at his right and at his left:
and Yah Veh says,
Who entices Ach Ab sovereign of Yisra El
to ascend and fall at Ramoth Gilad?
— and one says, saying thus:
and another, saying thus.
20 Then a spirit goes and stands at the face of Yah Veh
and says, I entice him!
And Yah Veh says to him, With what?
21 And he says, I go out and become a false spirit
in the mouth of all his prophets.
And he says, Entice! Prevail! Go! Work!
22 And now, behold, Yah Veh gives a false spirit
in the mouth of these your prophets;
and Yah Veh words evil against you.
23 And Sidqi Yah the son of Kenaanah comes near
and smites Michah Yah on the cheek, and says,

2 CHRONICLES 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Which way went passed the Spirit of the LORD Yah Veh
from me to speak word unto thee?
24 And Micaiah Michah Yah said, Behold,
thou shalt see on that day
when thou shalt go into an inner chamber to hide thyself.
25 Then the king sovereign of Israel Yisra El said,
Take ye Micaiah Michah Yah,
and carry turn him back to Amon
the governor of the city,
and to Joash Yah Ash, the king's sovereign's son;
26 And say, Thus saith the king sovereign,
Put Set this fellow in the prison house,
and feed him with have him eat
bread of affliction oppression
and with water of affliction oppression,
until I return in peace shalom.
27 And Micaiah Michah Yah said,
If in returning,
thou certainly shalt return in peace shalom,
then hath not the LORD spoken Yah Veh worded by me.
And he said, Hearken, all ye people.

THE DEATH OF ACH AB

28 So the king sovereign of Israel Yisra El
and Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat
the king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah
went up ascended to Ramothgilead Ramoth Gilad.
29 And the king sovereign of Israel Yisra El
said unto Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat,
I will shall disguise myself,
and I will shall go to the battle war;
but put thou on enrobe thy robes clothes.
So the king sovereign of Israel Yisra El disguised himself;
and they went to the battle war.
30 Now the king sovereign of Syria Aram
had commanded misvahed
the captains governors of the chariots that were with him,
saying, Fight ye not with small or great,
save only except with the king sovereign of Israel Yisra El.
31 And so be it came to pass,
when the captains governors of the chariots
saw Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat,
that they said, It is the king sovereign of Israel Yisra El.
Therefore they compassed about surrounded him to fight:
but Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat cried out,
and the LORD Yah Veh helped him;
and God moved Elohim goaded them to depart from him.
32 For so be it came to pass, that,
when the captains governors of the chariots perceived saw
that it was not the king sovereign of Israel Yisra El,
they turned back again from pursuing after him.
33 And a certain man drew a bow
at a venture in his integrity,
and smote the king sovereign of Israel Yisra El
between the joints of the harness habergeon:
therefore he said to his chariot man charioteer,
Turn thine hand,
that thou mayest carry bring me out of the host camp;
for I am wounded sickened.
34 And the battle increased war ascended that day:
howbeit the king sovereign of Israel Yisra El
stayed himself up in his chariot
against the Syrians Aramiy until the even:
and about the time of the sun going down descending
he died.

YAH SHAPHAT APPOINTS JUDGES

19 And Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat,
the king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah
returned to his house in peace shalom
to Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.
2 And Jehu Yah Hu the son of Hanani the seer
went out to meet face him,
and said to king Jehoshaphat sovereign Yah Shaphat,
shouldest thou help the ungodly wicked,
and love them that hate the LORD Yah Veh?
therefore is wrath this rage be upon thee
from before the LORD the face of Yah Veh.
3 Nevertheless there are good things words found in thee,
in that thou hast taken burnt away
the groves asherim out of the land,

2 CHRONICLES 18, 19737

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Which way passes the Spirit of Yah Veh from me
to word to you?
24 And Michah Yah says,
Behold, you see for yourself
the day you go into an inner chamber to hide.
25 And the sovereign of Yisra El says,
Take Michah Yah
and turn him back to Amon the governor of the city
and to Yah Ash the son of the sovereign;
26 and say, Thus says the sovereign:
Set this in the prison house;
and have him eat
bread of oppression and water of oppression,
until I return in shalom.
27 And Michah Yah says,
If in returning, you return in shalom,
then Yah Veh words not by me.
— and he says, Hearken, all you people.

THE DEATH OF ACH AB

28 And the sovereign of Yisra El
and Yah Shaphat the sovereign of Yah Hudah
ascend to Ramoth Gilad:
29 and the sovereign of Yisra El says to Yah Shaphat,
I disguise myself and I go to the war;
but you enrobe your clothes.
— and the sovereign of Yisra El disguises himself;
and they go to the war.
30 And the sovereign of Aram
misvahs the governors of the chariots with him,
saying, Fight not with small or great
— except with the sovereign of Yisra El.
31 And so be it,
when the governors of the chariots see Yah Shaphat,
they say, The sovereign of Yisra El.
And they surround him to fight:
and Yah Shaphat cries out and Yah Veh helps him;
and Elohim goads them from him:
32 yes, so be it,
the governors of the chariots see
it is not the sovereign of Yisra El,
and they turn back again from after him:
33 and in his integrity, a man draws a bow
and smites the sovereign of Yisra El
between the joints of the habergeon.
And he says to his charioteer,
Turn your hand, to bring me from the camp;
for I sicken.

34 And the war ascends that day:
and the sovereign of Yisra El stays in his chariot
against the Aramiy until the evening:
and about the time of the descending of the sun,
he dies.

YAH SHAPHAT APPOINTS JUDGES

19 And Yah Shaphat the sovereign of Yah Hudah
returns to his house to Yeru Shalem in shalom;
2 and Yah Hu the son of Hanani the seer
goes out to face him;
and says to sovereign Yah Shaphat,
Help you the wicked
and love them who hate Yah Veh?
This rage be on you from the face of Yah Veh.
3 But good words are found in you
in that you burn the asherim from the land

2 CHRONICLES 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and hast prepared thine heart to seek *God Elohim*.
4 And *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*
dwelt **settled** at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:
and he *went out again returned and went out*
through the people
from *Beersheba Beer Sheba* to mount *Ephraim Ephrayim*,
and *brought returned* them back
unto the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of their fathers.
5 And he **set stood** judges in the land
throughout
all the *fenced fortified* cities of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
city by city,
6 And said to the judges, *Take heed See* what ye *do work*:
for ye judge not for *man humanity*,
but for the *LORD Yah Veh*,
who is with you in the judgment.
7 Wherefore
now let the fear of the *LORD Yah Veh* be upon you;
take heed guard and *do work* it:
for there is no *iniquity wickedness*
with the *LORD Yah Veh* our *God Elohim*,
nor *respect partiality* of *persons faces*,
nor *taking receiving* of *gifts bribes*.
8 Moreover in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
did Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat
set stood of the *Levites Leviym*, and of the priests,
and of the *chief head* of the fathers of *Israel Yisra El*,
for the judgment of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and for controversies,
when they returned to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
9 And he *charged misvahed* them, saying,
Thus shall ye *do work*
in the *fear awe* of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
faithfully trustworthily,
and with a *perfect heart heart at shalom*.
10 And what *cause strife* soever shall come to you
of your brethren that *dwelt settle* in your cities,
between blood and blood,
between *law torah* and *commandment misvah*,
statutes and judgments,
ye shall *even warn enlighten* them
so that they *trespass guilt* not against the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and *so wrath rage*
come upon you, and upon your brethren:
this do work thus, and ye shall not *trespass guilt*.
11 And, behold,
Amariah Amar Yah the *chief head* priest is over you
in all *matters words* of the *LORD Yah Veh*;
and *Zebadiah Zebad Yah* the son of *Ishmael Yishma El*,
the *ruler eminent* of the house of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
for all the *king's matters sovereign's words*:
also the *Levites Leviym* shall be officers
before you at thy face.
Deal courageously Strengthen and work,
and the *LORD Yah Veh* shall be with the good.

SONS OF MOAB AND AMMON
COME AGAINST YAH SHAPHAT

20 **And so be** It *came to pass*, after this *also*,
that the *children sons* of Moab,
and the *children sons* of Ammon,
and with them *other* beside the *Ammonites Ammoniy*,
came against *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat* to *battle war*.
2 Then there came some
that told *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*, saying,
There cometh a great multitude against thee
from beyond the sea on this side *Syria Aram*; and, behold,
they be in *Hazazontamar Haseson Tamar*,
which is *Engedi En Gedi*.
3 And *Jehoshaphat feared Yah Shaphat awed*,
and *set himself gave his face* to seek the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and *proclaimed called* a fast
throughout over all *Judah Yah Hudah*.
4 And *Judah Yah Hudah* gathered *themselves together*,
to *ask help of the LORD seek Yah Veh*:
even out of all the cities of *Judah Yah Hudah*
they came to seek the *LORD Yah Veh*.
5 And *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat* stood in the congregation
of *Judah Yah Hudah* and *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
in the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*,

2 CHRONICLES 19, 20738

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and prepare your heart to seek Elohim.
4 And Yah Shaphat settles at Yeru Shalem:
and he returns and goes among the people
from Beer Sheba to mount Ephrayim;
and returns them to Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers:
5 and he stands judges in the land
in all the fortified cities of Yah Hudah, city by city.
6 And says to the judges, See what you work:
for you judge not for humanity,
but for Yah Veh, who is with you in the judgment:
7 and now, the fear of Yah Veh be on you;
guard and work it:
for with Yah Veh our Elohim
there is neither wickedness
nor partiality of faces nor receiving of bribes.
8 And also in Yeru Shalem
Yah Shaphat stands
— of the Leviym and of the priests
and of the head of the fathers of Yisra El,
for the judgment of Yah Veh and for controversies:
and they return to Yeru Shalem.
9 And he misvahs them, saying,
Work thus:
in the awe of Yah Veh, trustworthily;
and with a heart at shalom:
10 and whatever strife comes to you
— of your brothers who settle in your cities;
between blood and blood;
between torah and misvah;
statutes and judgments;
enlighten them not to guilt against Yah Veh
and thus rage come on you and on your brothers:
work thus and guilt not.
11 And behold, Amar Yah the head priest is over you
in all words of Yah Veh;
and Zebad Yah the son of Yishma El
the eminent of the house of Yah Hudah,
for all the words of the sovereign:
and the Leviym, officers at your face.
Strengthen and work
and Yah Veh is with the good.

SONS OF MOAB AND AMMON
COME AGAINST YAH SHAPHAT

20 **And so be** it, after this,
the sons of Moab and the sons of Ammon
and of the Ammoniy with them,
come against Yah Shaphat to war.
2 And some come who tell Yah Shaphat, saying,
A great multitude comes against you
from beyond the sea on this side Aram;
and behold, they are in Haseson Tamar — En Gedi.
3 And Yah Shaphat awes
and gives his face to seek Yah Veh;
and calls a fast over all Yah Hudah:
4 and Yah Hudah gathers to seek Yah Veh
— even from all the cities of Yah Hudah
they come to seek Yah Veh.
5 And Yah Shaphat stands in the congregation
of Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem
in the house of Yah Veh

2 CHRONICLES 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 And said, O LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of our fathers,
art not thou *God Elohim* in *heaven the heavens?*
and rulest not thou **Yea, thou reignest** over all
the *kingdoms sovereigndoms* of the *heathen? goyim!*
and in thine hand is there *not power is force* and might,
so that none is able to withstand thee?!

7 Art not thou our *God Elohim*,
who *didst drive out dispossessed*
the *inhabitants settlers* of this land
before at the face of thy people *Israel Yisra El*,
and gavest it to the seed of Abraham thy *friend beloved*
for ever eternally?

8 And they *dwelt settled* therein,
and have built thee
a *sanctuary holies* therein for thy name, saying,
If, *when evil cometh upon us*,
as the sword, judgment, or pestilence, or famine,
we stand *before at the face of* this house,
and *in at thy presence face*,
(for thy name is in this house,)
and cry unto thee in our *affliction tribulation*,
then thou *wilt shalt* hear and *help save*.

10 And now, behold,
the *children sons* of Ammon and Moab and mount Seir,
whom thou *wouldest shouldest* not
let Israel give Yisra El to invade,
when they came out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
but they turned *aside* from them,
and *destroyed desolated* them not;

11 Behold, *I say*, how they *reward deal* us,
to come to *cast expel* us out of thy possession,
which thou hast given us to *inherit possess*.

12 O our *God Elohim*, *wilt shalt* thou not judge them?
for we have no might **force**
against at the face of this great *company multitude*
that cometh against us;
neither know we what to *do work*:
but our eyes are upon thee.

13 And all *Judah Yah Hudah*
stood *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh*,
with their *little ones toddlers*,
their *wives women*, and their *children sons*.

14 Then upon *Jahaziel Yachazi El*
the son of *Zechariah Zechar Yah*,
the son of *Benaiah Bena Yah*, the son of *Jeiel Yeil El*,
the son of *Mattaniah Mattan Yah*,
a *Levite Levij* of the sons of Asaph,
came the Spirit of the *LORD Yah Veh*
in the midst of the congregation;

15 And he said, Harken ye, all *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and ye *inhabitants settlers* of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and thou *king Jehoshaphat sovereign Yah Shaphat*,
Thus saith the *LORD Yah Veh* unto you,
Be not afraid Awe not, nor *dismayed terrify*
by reason at the face of this great multitude;
for the *battle war* is not yours, but *God's Elohim's*.

16 To morrow *go descend* ye *down* against them: behold,
they *come up ascend* by the *cliff ascent* of *Ziz Sis*;
and ye shall find them at the end of the *brook wadi*,
before at the face of the wilderness of *Jeruel Yeru El*.

17 Ye shall not *need to* fight in this *battle*:
set yourselves, stand ye *still*,
and see the salvation of the *LORD Yah Veh* with you,
O *Judah Yah Hudah* and *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:
fear awe not, nor *be dismayed terrify*;
to morrow *go out against them at their face*:
for the *LORD will Yah Veh shall* be with you.

18 And *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat* bowed his head
with his *face nostrils* to the *ground earth*:
and all *Judah Yah Hudah*
and the *inhabitants settlers* of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
fell *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh*,
worshipping the LORD prostrating to Yah Veh.

19 And the *Levites Levijm*,
of the *children sons* of the *Kohathites Qehathiy*,
and of the *children sons* of the *Korhites Qorachiy*,
stood up arose to praise halal
the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of *Israel Yisra El*

2 CHRONICLES 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 at the face of the new court,
and says, O Yah Veh Elohim of our fathers,
Are you not Elohim in the heavens?
Yes, you reign
over all the *sovereigndoms* of the *goyim!*
And force and might are in your hand
so that no one is able to withstand you!

7 Are not you our Elohim
who dispossessed the settlers of this land
at the face of your people Yisra El?
And gave it to the seed of Abraham your beloved
eternally?

8 And they settle therein
and build you a holies for your name, saying,
If, evil comes on us,
as the sword, judgment or pestilence or famine
we stand at the face of this house
and at your face
— for your name is in this house
and cry to you in our tribulation;
and you hear and save.

10 And now, behold,
the sons of Ammon and Moab and mount Seir,
whom you gave not Yisra El to invade
when they came from the land of Misrayim
— for they turned aside from them
and desolated them not:

11 — and behold, how they deal us,
to come to expel us from the possession
you gave us to possess.

12 O our Elohim, judge you them not?
We have no force at the face of this great multitude
who comes against us;
and we know not what to work:
but our eyes are on you.

13 And all Yah Hudah stands at the face of Yah Veh,
with their toddlers, their women and their sons:
and the Spirit of Yah Veh comes upon Yachazi El
the son of Zechar Yah the son of Bena Yah
the son of Yeil El the son of Mattan Yah
— a Levij of the sons of Asaph
midst the congregation;

15 and he says, Harken, all Yah Hudah,
and you, settlers of Yeru Shalem,
and you, sovereign Yah Shaphat:
thus says Yah Veh to you:
Neither awe nor terrify
at the face of this great multitude;
for the war is not to you, but to Elohim:
tomorrow descend against them:

16 behold, they ascend by the ascent of Sis;
and you find them at the end of the wadi
at the face of the wilderness of Yeru El.
Fight not in this: Set yourselves! Stand!
See the salvation of Yah Veh with you,
O Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem:
neither awe nor terrify:
tomorrow go out at their face
and Yah Veh is with you.

18 And Yah Shaphat bows with nostrils to the earth:
and all Yah Hudah and the settlers of Yeru Shalem
fall at the face of Yah Veh, and prostrate to Yah Veh:
and the Levijm of the sons of the Qehathiy
and of the sons of the Qorachiy
rise to halal Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El

2 CHRONICLES 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

with a **loud great** voice on high.
20 And they **rose started** early in the morning,
and went forth into the wilderness of **Teqoha Teqoha**:
and as they went forth,
Jehoshaphat **Yah Shaphat** stood and said,
Hear me, O **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and ye *inhabitants* **settlers** of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**;
Believe **Trust** in the **LORD Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**,
so shall ye be *established* **amenable**;
believe **trust** his prophets, so shall ye prosper.
21 And when he had
consulted **counselled** with the people,
he *appointed* **stood** singers unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and that should
praise **halal** the *beauty* **majesty** of holiness,
as they went out *before* **at the face of** the *army* **equipped**,
and to say, *Praise the LORD* **Spread hands to Yah Veh**;
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
22 And when **in the time that** they began
to *sing* **shout** and to *praise* **halal**
the LORD set ambushments **Yah Veh lurked**
against the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
Moab, and mount Seir,
which were come against **Judah Yah Hudah**;
and they were *smitten* **smote one another**.
23 For the *children* **sons** of Ammon and Moab
stood up against the *inhabitants* **settlers** of mount Seir,
utterly to slay **devote** and *destroy* **desolate** them:
and when they had *made an end of* **finished off**
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of Seir,
every one **each man** helped
to *destroy another* **against his friend for ruin**.
24 And when **Judah Yah Hudah**
came toward *the watch tower* **Mispeh** in the wilderness,
they *looked* **faced** unto the multitude, and, behold,
they were *dead bodies* **carcasses** fallen to the earth,
and none escaped.
25 And when *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat** and his people
came to *take away* **plunder** the spoil of them,
they found among them in abundance
both *riches* **acquisitions** with the *dead bodies* **carcasses**,
and *precious jewels* **desirable instruments**,
which they stripped off for themselves,
more than they could carry away **without burden**:
and they were three days
in *gathering* **plundering** of the spoil, it was so much.
26 And on the fourth day
they *assembled* **congregated** themselves
in the valley of *Berachah* **Berachah /Blessing**;
for there they blessed *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
therefore the name of the same place was called,
The valley of *Berachah* **Berachah/Blessing**, unto this day.
27 Then they returned, every man
of **Judah Yah Hudah** and **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
and *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
in the forefront **at the head** of them,
to go again **return** to **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**
with *joy* **cheer**;
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had *made* **caused** them
to *rejoice* **cheer** over their enemies.
28 And they came to **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**
with *psalteries* **bagpipes** and harps and trumpets
unto the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
29 And the fear of *God* **Elohim**
was on all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**
of those *countries* **lands**,
when they had heard that *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
fought against the enemies of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
30 So the *realm* **sovereigndom** of *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
was *quiet* **rested**:
for his *God* gave him *rest* **Elohim rested him** round about.

THE DEATH OF YAH SHAPHAT

31 And *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat**
reigned over **Judah Yah Hudah**:
he was a **son of** thirty and five years *old*
when he began to reign,
and he reigned
twenty and five years in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name

2 CHRONICLES 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

with a great voice on high.
20 And they start early in the morning
and go to the wilderness of Teqoha:
and as they go
Yah Shaphat stands and says, Hear me,
O Yah Hudah and you settlers of Yeru Shalem;
Trust in Yah Veh your Elohim, amenable;
trust his prophets, prosper.
21 And he counsels with the people,
and he stands singers to Yah Veh
to halal the majesty of holiness
as they go from the face of the equipped
saying, Spread hands to Yah Veh;
for his mercy eternal.
22 And at the time they begin to shout and to halal
Yah Veh lurks against the sons of Ammon,
Moab and mount Seir,
who come against Yah Hudah;
and they smite one another:
23 and the sons of Ammon and Moab
stand against the settlers of mount Seir
to devote and desolate them:
and they finish off the settlers of Seir,
and each man helps to ruin his friend.
24 And Yah Hudah
comes to Mispeh in the wilderness,
and they face the multitude, and behold,
their carcasses fallen to the earth; and none escape.
25 And Yah Shaphat and his people
come to plunder the spoil;
and among the carcasses, they find in abundance,
both acquisitions and desirable instruments
which they strip for themselves, without burden:
and for three days they plunder the spoil
— it is so much:
26 and on the fourth day
they congregate in the valley of Berachah/Blessing;
and there they bless Yah Veh:
so they call the name of the place,
The valley of Berachah/Blessing, to this day.
27 Then they return
— every man of Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem
with Yah Shaphat at their head
— return to Yeru Shalem with cheer;
for Yah Veh cheers them over their enemies:
28 and they come to Yeru Shalem
with bagpipes and harps and trumpets
to the house of Yah Veh:
29 and the fear of Elohim
is on all the sovereigndoms of those lands,
when they hear
that Yah Veh fights against the enemies of Yisra El:
30 and the sovereigndom of Yah Shaphat rests:
for his Elohim rests him all around.

THE DEATH OF YAH SHAPHAT

31 And Yah Shaphat reigns over Yah Hudah:
he is a son of thirty—five years
when he begins to reign:
and he reigns twenty—five years in Yeru Shalem:
and the name of his mother,

2 CHRONICLES 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

32 was Azubah the daughter of *Shilhi Shilchi*.
And he walked in the way of Asa his father,
and departed **not turned not aside** from it,
doing **working** that which was *right straight*
in the *sight eyes* of the *LORD Yah Veh*.
33 Howbeit the *high places bamahs*
were not *taken away* **turned aside**:
for as yet the people had not prepared their hearts
unto the *God Elohim* of their fathers.
34 Now the rest of the *acts words*
of *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*, first and last, behold,
they are *written inscribed*
in the *book words* of *Jehu Yah Hu* the son of Hanani,
who is *mentioned ascended* in the *book scroll*
of the *kings sovereigns* of *Israel Yisra El*.
35 And after this did *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*
join himself with *Ahaziah Achaz Yah*
king sovereign of *Israel Yisra El*,
who *did very worked* wickedly.
36 And he joined himself with him
to *make work* ships to go to Tarshish:
and they *made worked* the ships
in *Eziongeber Esyon Geber*.
37 Then *Eliezer Eli Ezer*
the son of *Dodavah Doda Yah* of Mareshah
prophesied against *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*, saying,
Because thou hast joined thyself with *Ahaziah Achaz Yah*,
the *LORD Yah Veh* hath *broken breached* thy works.
And the ships were broken,
that they were *not able retained not* to go to Tarshish.

YAH RAM REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

21 Now *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*
slept laid with his fathers,
and was *buried entombed* with his fathers
in the city of David.
And *Jehoram Yah Ram* his son reigned in his stead.
2 And he had brethren
the sons of *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*,
Azariah Azar Yah, and *Jehiel Yechi El*,
and *Zechariah Zechar Yah*, and *Azariah Azar Yah*,
and *Michael Michah El*, and *Shephatiah Shaphat Yah*:
all these were the sons of *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*
king sovereign of *Israel Yisra El*.
3 And their father gave them great gifts
of silver, and of gold, and of *precious things preciousnesses*,
with *fenced rampart* cities in *Judah Yah Hudah*:
but the *kingdom sovereigndom*
gave he to *Jehoram Yah Ram*;
because he was the firstborn.
4 Now when *Jehoram Yah Ram*
was risen up to the *kingdom sovereigndom* of his father,
he strengthened himself,
and *slew slaughtered* all his brethren with the sword,
and *divers* also of the *princes governors* of *Israel Yisra El*.
5 *Jehoram Yah Ram* was **a son of** thirty and two years *old*
when he began to reign,
and he reigned eight years in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
6 And he walked in the way
of the *kings sovereigns* of *Israel Yisra El*,
like as *did worked* the house of *Ahab Ach Ab*:
for he had the daughter of *Ahab Ach Ab* to *wife woman*:
and he *wrought worked* that which was evil
in the eyes of the *LORD Yah Veh*.
7 Howbeit the *LORD Yah Veh*
would willed to not *destroy ruin* the house of David,
because of the covenant that he had *made cut* with David,
and as he *promised said*
to give a *light lamp* to him and to his sons
for ever all days.
8 In his days the *Edomites revolted Edomiy rebelled*
from under the *dominion hand* of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and *made themselves a king*
had a sovereign reign over them.
9 Then *Jehoram went forth Yah Ram passed over*
with his *princes governors*, and all his chariots with him:
and he rose up by night, and smote the *Edomites Edomiy*
which *compassed surrounded* him in,
and the *captains governors* of the chariots.

2 CHRONICLES 20, 21741

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Azubah the daughter of Shilchi.
32 And he walks in the way of Asa his father
and turns not aside;
working straight in the eyes of Yah Veh.
33 Only, he turns not aside the bamahs:
for as yet the people prepared not their hearts
to the Elohim of their fathers.
34 And the rest of the words of Yah Shaphat
— first and last, behold,
they are inscribed
in the words of Yah Hu the son of Hanani,
who ascends in the scroll of the sovereigns of Yisra El.
35 And after this,
Yah Shaphat sovereign of Yah Hudah
joins himself with Achaz Yah sovereign of Yisra El
who works wickedly:
36 and he joins himself with him
to work ships to go to Tarshish:
and they work the ships in Esyon Geber.
37 And Eli Ezer the son of Doda Yah of Mareshah
prophesies against Yah Shaphat, saying,
Because you join yourself with Achaz Yah
Yah Veh breaches your works.
And the ships break up,
so that they retain not to go to Tarshish.

YAH RAM REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

21 And Yah Shaphat lies down with his fathers
— entombed with his fathers in the city of David;
and Yah Ram his son reigns in his stead.
2 And he has brothers — the sons of Yah Shaphat:
Azar Yah and Yechi El and Zechar Yah and Azar Yah
and Michah El and Shaphat Yah
— all these are the sons of Yah Shaphat
sovereign of Yisra El.
3 And their father gives them great gifts
of silver and of gold and of preciousnesses
with rampart cities in Yah Hudah:
and he gives the sovereigndom to Yah Ram
because he is the firstborn.
4 And Yah Ram rises
over the sovereigndom of his father
and strengthens himself;
and slaughters all his brothers with the sword
and also of the governors of Yisra El.
5 Yah Ram is a son of thirty—two years
when he begins to reign
and he reigns eight years in Yeru Shalem:
and he walks in the way
of the sovereigns of Yisra El,
as the house of Ach Ab worked:
for he has the daughter of Ach Ab to woman:
and he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh:
and Yah Veh wills to not ruin the house of David
because of the covenant he cut with David;
and as he says,
to give him and his sons a lamp all days.
6 In his days,
the Edomiy rebel from under the hand of Yah Hudah
and have a sovereign reign over them:
and Yah Ram passes over
with his governors and all his chariots:
and he rises by night
and smites the Edomiy who surround him
and the governors of the chariots:

2 CHRONICLES 21, 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 So the *Edomites revolted* **Edomiy rebelled**
from under the hand of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** unto this day.
The same time also
did Libnah *revolt* **rebelled** from under his hand;
because he had forsaken
the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of his fathers.
11 Moreover he *made high places* **worked bamahs**
in the mountains of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
and caused
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
to *commit fornication* **whore**,
and *compelled Judah* **drove/expelled Yah Hudah** *thereto*.
12 And there came a *writing* **inscribed** to him
from *Elijah* **Eli Yah** the prophet, saying,
Thus saith
the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of David thy father,
Because thou hast not walked in the ways
of *Jehoshaphat* **Yah Shaphat** thy father,
nor in the ways
of *Asa king* **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
13 But hast walked in the way
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and hast made *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
to go a *whoring* **whore**,
like to the *whoredoms* **whoring**
of the house of *Ahab* **Ach Ab**,
and also hast *slain* **slaughtered**
thy brethren of thy father's house,
which were better than thyself:
14 Behold, with a great plague
will the LORD **shall Yah Veh** smite thy people,
and thy *children* **sons**, and thy *wives* **women**,
and all thy *goods* **acquisitions**:
15 And thou shalt have great sickness by disease
of thy *bowels* **inwards**, until thy *bowels fall out* **inwards go**
by reason of the sickness day by day.
16 Moreover the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
stirred up **wakened** against *Jehoram* **Yah Ram**
the spirit of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
and of the *Arabians* **Arabiy**,
that were *near* **alongside**
by the hand of the *Ethiopians* **Kushiy**:
17 And they *came up* **ascended** into *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and *brake into* **split** it,
and *carried away* **captured** all the *substance* **acquisition**
that was found in the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
and his sons also, and his *wives* **women**;
so that *there was never a* **no son left survived** him,
save *Jehoahaz* **except Yah Achaz**, the youngest of his sons.
18 And after all this
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** smote him in his *bowels* **inwards**
with an *incurable disease* **a nonhealing sickness**.
19 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
that *in process of time* **day by day**,
after the end in the going of two years,
his *bowels fell out* **inwards went** by reason of his sickness:
so he died of *sore diseases* **evil sicknesses**.
And his people *made* **worked** no burning for him,
like the burning of his fathers.
20 **A son** of Thirty and two years *old* was he
when he began to reign,
and he reigned in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** eight years,
and *departed* **went** without being desired.
Howbeit they *buried* **entombed** him in the city of David,
but not in the *sepulchres* **tombs** of the *kings* **sovereigns**.

ACHAZ YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

22

And the *inhabitants* **settlers**
of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
made *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah** his youngest son
king **reign** in his stead:
for the *band of men* **troops**
that came with the *Arabians* **Arabiy** to the camp
had *slain* **slaughtered** all the *eldest* **heads**.
So *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah** the son of *Jehoram* **Yah Ram**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** reigned.
2 **A son** of Forty and two years *old*
was *Ahaziah* **Achaz Yah** when he began to reign,
and he reigned one year in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

2 CHRONICLES 21, 22742

exeGesés companion BIBLE

10 and to this day,
the Edomiy rebel from under the hand of Yah Hudah.
And at the same time,
Libnah rebels from under his hand;
because he forsook Yah Veh Elohim of his fathers:
11 also,
he works bamahs in the mountains of Yah Hudah
and has the settlers of Yeru Shalem to whore
and to drive/expel Yah Hudah.
12 And there comes, inscribed to him,
from Eli Yah the prophet, saying,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of David your father,
Because you walk
neither in the ways of Yah Shaphat your father
nor in the ways of Asa sovereign of Yah Hudah;
13 and walk in the way of the sovereigns of Yisra El
and have Yah Hudah
and the settlers of Yeru Shalem whore
as the house of Ach Ab whored;
and also slaughtered your brothers
of the house of your father
— who are better than you:
14 behold, Yah Veh smites your people
and your sons and your women
and all your acquisitions with a great plague:
15 and you have great sickness
— disease of your inwards
until your inwards go
because of the sickness, day by day.
16 And Yah Veh wakens, against Yah Ram,
the spirit of the Peleshethiy and of the Arabiy,
who are alongside by the hand of the Kushiy:
17 and they ascend to Yah Hudah and split it
and capture all the acquisitions
they find in the house of the sovereign
— and also his sons and his women;
so that no son survives him
except Yah Achaz, the youngest of his sons.
18 And after all this,
Yah Veh smites his inwards
with a nonhealing sickness.
19 And so be it, day by day,
in the going of two years,
his inwards go by reason of his sickness:
and he dies of evil sicknesses:
and his people work no burning for him,
as the burning of his fathers:
20 a son of thirty—two
— and he begins to reign;
and he reigns in Yeru Shalem eight years
and goes without desire;
— entombed in the city of David
but not in the tombs of the sovereigns.

ACHAZ YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

22

And the settlers of Yeru Shalem
have Achaz Yah his youngest son reign in his stead:
for the troops who came with the Arabiy to the camp
slaughtered all the heads:
and Achaz Yah the son of Yah Ram
sovereign of Yah Hudah reigns.
2 Achaz Yah is a son of forty—two years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns one year in Yeru Shalem.

2 CHRONICLES 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 His mother's name also was *Athaliah Athal Yah*
the daughter of Omri.
He also walked in the ways
of the house of *Ahab Ach Ab*:
4 for his mother was his counsellor to do wickedly.
Wherefore he *did worked* evil
in the *sight eyes* of the *LORD Yah Veh*
like the house of *Ahab Ach Ab*:
for they were his counsellors after the death of his father
to his *destruction ruin*.
5 He walked also after their counsel,
and went with *Jehoram Yah Ram* the son of *Ahab Ach Ab*,
king sovereign of *Israel Yisra El*
to war against *Hazael Haza El*
king sovereign of *Syria Aram*
at *Ramothgilead Ramoth Gilad*:
and the *Syrians Aramiy* smote *Joram Yah Ram*.
6 And he returned to be healed in *Jezeel Yizre El*
because of the *wounds strokes*
which were given *they smote* him at Ramah,
when he fought with *Hazael Haza El*,
king sovereign of *Syria Aram*.
And *Azariah Azar Yah* the son of *Jehoram Yah Ram*,
king sovereign of *Judah* went down *Yah Hudah* descended
to see *Jehoram Yah Ram* the son of *Ahab Ach Ab*
at *Jezeel Yizre El*, because he was sick.
7 And the *destruction trampling* of *Ahaziah Achaz Yah*
was of *God Elohim* by coming to *Joram Yah Ram*:
for when he was come,
he went out with *Jehoram Yah Ram*
against *Jehu Yah Hu* the son of *Nimshi*,
whom *the LORD Yah Veh* had anointed
to cut off the house of *Ahab Ach Ab*.
8 And *so be* it came to pass, that,
when *Jehu* was executing judgment *Yah Hu* judged
upon the house of *Ahab Ach Ab*,
and found the *princes governors* of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and the sons of the brethren of *Ahaziah Achaz Yah*,
that ministered to *Ahaziah Achaz Yah*,
he *slew slaughtered* them.
9 And he sought *Ahaziah Achaz Yah*:
and they *caught captured* him,
(for he was hid in *Samaria Shomeron*.)
and brought him to *Jehu Yah Hu*:
and when they had *slain deathified* him,
they *buried entombed* him:
Because, said they,
he is the son of *Jehoshaphat Yah Shaphat*,
who sought *the LORD Yah Veh* with all his heart.
So the house of *Ahaziah Achaz Yah* had no *power force*
to *keep still retain* the *kingdom sovereignty*.
10 But when *Athaliah Athal Yah*
the mother of *Ahaziah Achaz Yah*
saw that her son was *dead had died*,
she arose and *destroyed worded* to
all the *seed royal sovereignty seed*
of the house of *Judah Yah Hudah*.
11 But *Jehoshabeath Yah Shabath*,
the daughter of the *king sovereign*,
took *Joash Yah Ash* the son of *Ahaziah Achaz Yah*,
and stole him from among the *king's sovereign's* sons
that were *slain deathified*,
and *put gave* him and his *nurse suckler* in a bedchamber.
So *Jehoshabeath Yah Shabath*,
the daughter of *king Jehoram sovereign Yah Ram*,
the *wife woman* of *Jehoiada Yah Yada* the priest,
(for she was the sister of *Ahaziah Achaz Yah*.)
hid him from *Athaliah the face of Athal Yah*,
so that she *slew deathified* him not.
12 And he was with them
hid in the house of *God Elohim* six years:
and *Athaliah Athal Yah* reigned over the land.

YAH YADA SETS YAH ASH TO REIGN OVER YAH HUDAH

23

And in the seventh year
Jehoiada Yah Yada strengthened himself,
and took the *captains governors* of hundreds,
Azariah Azar Yah the son of *Jeroham Yerocham*,
and *Ishmael Yishma El* the son of *Jehohanan Yah Hanan*,
and *Azariah Azar Yah* the son of *Obed*,

2 CHRONICLES 22, 23743

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And the name of his mother,
Athal Yah the daughter of Omri.
3 He also walks in the ways of the house of *Ach Ab*:
for his mother is his counsellor to do wickedly:
4 and he works evil in the eyes of *Yah Veh*
as the house of *Ach Ab*:
for they are his counsellors
after the death of his father — to his ruin:
5 he also walks after their counsel
and goes with *Yah Ram*
the son of *Ach Ab* sovereign of *Yisra El*
to war against *Haza El* sovereign of *Aram*
at *Ramoth Gilad*:
and the *Aramiy* smite *Yah Ram*;
and he returns to heal in *Yizre El*
because of the strokes they smote him at Ramah
when he fought *Haza El* sovereign of *Aram*.
And *Azar Yah*
the son of *Yah Ram* sovereign of *Yah Hudah* descends
to see *Yah Ram* the son of *Ach Ab* at *Yizre El*
because he is sick:
7 and the trampling of *Achaz Yah* is of *Elohim*
for coming to *Yah Ram*:
for when he comes,
he goes with *Yah Ram*
against *Yah Hu* the son of *Nimshi*
— whom *Yah Veh* anointed
to cut off the house of *Ach Ab*.
8 And so be it,
Yah Hu judges the house of *Ach Ab*:
and he finds the governors of *Yah Hudah*
and the sons of the brothers of *Achaz Yah*
who minister to *Achaz Yah*;
and slaughters them:
9 and he seeks *Achaz Yah*: and they capture him
— he hides in *Shomeron*
and brings him to *Yah Hu*:
and they deathify him and entomb him
— because, say they,
he is the son of *Yah Shaphat*,
who sought *Yah Veh* with all his heart:
and the house of *Achaz Yah* has no force
to retain the sovereignty.
10 And *Athal Yah* the mother of *Achaz Yah*
sees her son die,
and she rises and words to all the sovereignty seed
of the house of *Yah Hudah*:
11 and *Yah Shabath* the daughter of the sovereign
takes *Yah Ash* the son of *Achaz Yah*
and steals him from among the sons of the sovereign
who are deathified
and gives him and his suckler in a bedchamber:
and *Yah Shabath* the daughter of sovereign *Yah Ram*
the woman of *Yah Yada* the priest
— for she is the sister of *Achaz Yah*
hides him from the face of *Athal Yah*
and she deathifies him not:
12 and he is with them
— hidden in the house of *Elohim* six years:
and *Athal Yah* reigns over the land.

YAH YADA SETS YAH ASH TO REIGN OVER YAH HUDAH

23

And in the seventh year
Yah Yada strengthens himself
and takes the governors of hundreds
— *Azar Yah* the son of *Yerocham*
and *Yishma El* the son of *Yah Hanan*
and *Azar Yah* the son of *Obed*

2 CHRONICLES 23

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and Maaseiah **Maase Yah** the son of *Adaiah* **Ada Yah**
and *Elishaphat* **Eli Shaphat** the son of Zichri,
into covenant with him.

2 And they went about in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and gathered the *Levites* **Leviym**
out of all the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and the *chief head* of the fathers of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and they came to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

3 And all the congregation *made cut* a covenant
with the *king sovereign* in the house of *God* **Elohim**.
And he said unto them, Behold,
the *king's sovereign's* son shall reign,
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *said worded* of the sons of David.

4 This is the *thing word* that ye shall *do work*;
A third *part* of you entering on the *sabbath* **shabbath**,
of the priests and of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
shall be porters of the *doors* **thresholds**;

5 And a third *part* shall be at the *king's sovereign's* house;
and a third *part* at the *gate* **portal** of the foundation:
and all the people shall be in the courts
of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

6 But let none come into the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
save **except** the priests,
and they that minister of the *Levites* **Leviym**;
they shall go in, for they are holy:
but all the people
shall *keep guard* the *watch guard* of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
And the *Levites* **Leviym**
shall *compass surround* the *king sovereign* round about,
every man with his *weapons* **instruments** in his hand;
and whosoever *else* cometh into the house,
he shall be *put to death* **deathified**:
but be ye with the *king sovereign*
when he cometh *in*, and when he goeth *out*.

8 So the *Levites* **Leviym** and all *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
did worked according to all *things*
that *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** the priest
had *commanded* **misvahed**,
and took every man his men
that were to come in on the *sabbath* **shabbath**,
with them that were to go out on the *sabbath* **shabbath**:
for *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** the priest
dismissed **liberated** not the *courses* **allotments**.

9 Moreover *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** the priest
delivered **gave** to the *captains* **governors** of hundreds
spears, and bucklers, and shields,
that had been *king sovereign* David's,
which were in the house of *God* **Elohim**.

10 And he *set stood* all the people,
every man having his *weapon* **spear** in his hand,
from the right *side* **shoulder** of the *temple* **house**
to the left *side* **shoulder** of the *temple* **house**,
along by the *sacrifice* altar and the *temple* **house**,
by the *king sovereign* round about.

11 Then they brought out the *king's sovereign's* son,
and *put gave* upon him the *crown* **separatism**,
and *gave him* the *testimony* **witness**,
and *made had* him *king* **reign**.
And *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** and his sons anointed him,
and said, *God save the king* **The sovereign liveth**.

12 Now when *Athaliah* **Athal Yah**
heard the *noise* **voice** of the people running
and *praising* **halaling** the *king sovereign*,
she came to the people
into the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
And she *looked saw*, and, behold,
the *king sovereign* stood at his pillar
at the *entering in* **entrance**,
and the *princes* **governors** and the trumpets
by the *king sovereign*:
and all the people of the land *rejoiced* **cheered**,
and *sounded* **blast** with trumpets,
also the singers with instruments of *musick* **song**,
and such as *taught to sing praise* **made known to halal**.
Then *Athaliah* **rent Athal Yah ripped** her clothes, and said,
Treason, Treason. Conspiracy! Conspiracy!

14 Then *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** the priest
brought out the *captains* **governors** of hundreds

2 CHRONICLES 23

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and Maase Yah the son of Ada Yah
and Eli Shaphat the son of Zichri
into covenant with him:

2 and they go all around Yah Hudah
and gather the Leviym
and the head of the fathers of Yisra El
from all the cities of Yah Hudah;
and they come to Yeru Shalem:

3 and all the congregation cuts a covenant
with the sovereign in the house of Elohim.

And he says to them, Behold,
the son of the sovereign reigns,
as Yah Veh worded concerning the sons of David.

4 This is the word you work:
A third of you, entering on the shabbath
of the priests and of the Leviym,
are porters of the thresholds;

5 and a third, at the house of the sovereign;
and a third, at the portal of the foundation;
and all the people:
are in the courts of the house of Yah Veh:
and none come into the house of Yah Veh,
except the priests and of the Leviym who minister
— they go in, for they are holy:
but all the people guard the guard of Yah Veh.

7 And the Leviym surround the sovereign all around
— every man with his instruments in his hand;
and whoever goes into the house is deathified:
and you are with the sovereign
when he comes and when he goes.

8 And the Leviym and all Yah Hudah
work according to all Yah Yada the priest misvahs;
and every man takes his men
who come in on the shabbath,
with them who go out on the shabbath:
for Yah Yada the priest
liberates not the allotments.

9 And Yah Yada the priest
gives the spears and bucklers and shields
of sovereign David of the house of Elohim
to the governors of hundreds:

10 and he stands all the people
— every man with spear in hand,
from the right shoulder of the house
to the left shoulder of the house,
along by the sacrifice altar,
and the house by the sovereign, all around:

11 and they bring out the son of the sovereign
and give on him the separatism and the witness
and have him reign.

And Yah Yada and his sons anoint him
and say, The sovereign lives!

12 And Athal Yah hears the voice of the people
running and halaling the sovereign;
and she comes to the people in the house of Yah Veh:

13 and she sees, and behold,
the sovereign stands at his pillar at the entrance;
and the governors and the trumpets by the sovereign:
and all the people of the land
cheer and blast with trumpets,
and the singers with instruments of song
and such as *make* known to halal.

And Athal Yah rips her clothes and says,
Conspiracy! Conspiracy!

14 And Yah Yada the priest
brings out the governors of hundreds

2 CHRONICLES 23, 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that were set over **oversaw** the *host* **valiant**,
and said unto them,
Have **Bring** her forth **out of the house** of the *ranges* **ranks**:
and whoso *followeth* **goeth after** her,
let him be *slain* **deathified** with the sword.
For the priest said,
Slay her **Deathify** not in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
15 So they *laid* **set** hands on her;
and when she was come to the *entering* **entrance**
of the horse *gate* **portal** by the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
they *slew* **deathified** her there.
16 And *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**
made **cut** a covenant between him,
and between all the people,
and between the *king* **sovereign**,
that they should be the *LORD'S* **Yah Veh's** people.
17 Then all the people went to the house of Baal,
and *brake* **pulled** it down,
and brake his **sacrifice** altars and his images in pieces,
and *slew* **slaughtered** Mattan the priest of Baal
before **at the face of** the **sacrifice** altars.
18 Also *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**
appointed **set** the *offices* **overseers**
of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
by the hand of the priests the *Levites* **Leviym**,
whom David had *distributed* **allotted**
in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to offer **holocaust** the *burnt offerings* **holocausts**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
as it is written **inscribed**
in the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
with *rejoicing* **cheer** and with singing,
as it was *ordained* by **the hand of** David.
19 And he *set* **stood** the porters at the *gates* **portals**
of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that none which was *unclean* **foul** in any *thing* **word**
should enter in.
20 And he took the *captains* **governors** of hundreds,
and the *nobles* **mighty**,
and the *governors* **sovereigns** of the people,
and all the people of the land,
and *brought down* **descended** the *king* **sovereign**
from the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
and they came through the *high gate* **Elyon Portal**
into the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
and *set* **settled** the *king* **sovereign**
upon the throne of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
21 And all the people of the land *rejoiced* **cheered**:
and the city was *quiet* **rested**,
after that they *had slain* *Athaliah* **deathified** *Athal* **Yah**
with the sword.

YAH ASH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

24

Joash **Yah Ash** was a son of seven years old
when he began to reign,
and he reigned forty years in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
His mother's name also was *Zibiah* **Zib Yah**
of *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**.
2 And *Joash* **Yah Ash**
did **worked** that which was *right* **straight**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
all the days of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** the priest.
3 And *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada**
took for him two *wives* **women**;
and he *begat* **birthed** sons and daughters.
4 **YAH ASH RENEWS THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH**
And **so be** it came to pass, after this,
that *Joash* was *minded* **it was in the heart of** *Yah Ash*
to *repair* **renew** the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
5 And he gathered *together*
the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**, and said to them,
Go out unto the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and gather of all *Israel* **Yisra El** *money* **silver**
to *repair* **strengthen** the house of your *God* **Elohim**
from **enough** year to year,
and see that ye hasten the *matter* **word**.
Howbeit the *Levites* **Leviym** hastened it not.
6 And the *king* **sovereign**
called for *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** the *chief* **head**,
and said unto him,

2 CHRONICLES 23, 24745

exeGesés companion BIBLE

who oversee the valiant,
and says to them,
Bring her from the house of the ranks:
and whosoever goes after her,
deathify her with the sword
— for the priest says,
Deathify her not in the house of Yah Veh.
15 So they set hands on her;
and she comes to the entrance of the horse portal
by the house of the sovereign,
and there they deathify her.
16 And Yah Yada cuts a covenant
between him and between all the people
and between the sovereign,
to be a people to Yah Veh:
17 and all the people go to the house of Baal
and pull it down
and break his sacrifice altars and his images in pieces
and slaughter Mattan the priest of Baal
at the face of the sacrifice altars:
18 and Yah Yada
sets the overseers of the house of Yah Veh
at the hand of the priests
— the Leviym David allotted in the house of Yah Veh
to holocaust the holocausts of Yah Veh,
as inscribed in the torah of Mosheh;
with cheer and with singing, by the hand of David:
19 and he stands the porters
at the portals of the house of Yah Veh,
so that no one who is foul in any word enters in.
20 And he takes the governors of hundreds
and the mighty
and the sovereigns of the people
and all the people of the land;
and descends the sovereign
from the house of Yah Veh:
and they come through Elyon Portal
into the house of the sovereign;
and settle the sovereign
on the throne of the sovereigndom.
21 And all the people of the land cheer
and the city rests;
and they deathify Athal Yah with the sword.

YAH ASH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

24

Yah Ash is a son of seven years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns forty years in Yeru Shalem.
The name of his mother, Zib Yah of Beer Sheba.
2 And Yah Ash works straight in the eyes of Yah Veh
all the days of Yah Yada the priest:
3 And Yah Yada takes two women
and births sons and daughters.

YAH ASH RENEWS THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

4 And so be it, after this,
it is in the heart of Yah Ash
to renew the house of Yah Veh:
5 and he gathers the priests and the Leviym
and says to them,
Go to the cities of Yah Hudah
and gather silver of all Yisra El
to strengthen the house of your Elohim
— enough year by year
and see that you hasten the word.
6 And the Leviym hasten not:
and the sovereign calls for Yah Yada the head
and says to him,

2 CHRONICLES 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Why hast thou not required
of the Levites **Leviym** to bring in
out of Judah **Yah Hudah** and out of Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**
the collection **burden**,
according to the commandment of Moses **Mosheh**
the servant of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and of the congregation of Israel **Yisra El**,
for the tabernacle **tent** of witness?
7 For the sons of **Athaliah Athal Yah**, that wicked woman,
had broken up **breached** the house of God **Elohim**;
and also all the dedicated things **holies**
of the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**
did they bestow **work** upon Baalim.
8 And at the king's commandment **sovereign's saying**
they made a chest **worked one ark**,
and set **gave** it without
at the gate **portal** of the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**.
9 And they made a proclamation **gave voice**
through Judah **Yah Hudah** and Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**,
to bring in to the LORD **Yah Veh** the collection **burden**
that Moses **Mosheh** the servant of God **Elohim**
laid upon Israel **Yisra El** in the wilderness.
10 And all the princes **governors** and all the people
rejoiced cheered, and brought in,
and cast into the chest **ark**,
until they had made an end **finished**.
11 Now **so be** it came to pass,
that at what time the chest **ark** was brought
unto the king's office **sovereign's oversight**
by the hand of the Levites **Leviym**,
and when they saw that there was much money **silver**,
the king's **sovereign's** scribe
and the high **head** priest's officer **overseer**
came and emptied the chest **ark**, and took **lifted** it,
and carried **returned** it to his place again.
Thus they **did worked** day by day,
and gathered money **silver** in abundance.
12 And the king **sovereign** and Jehoiada **Yah Yada**
gave it to such as **did worked** the work
of the service of the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and hired masons **hewers** and carpenters **artificers**
to repair **renew** the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and also
such as wrought **artificers** of iron and brass **copper**
to mend **strengthen** the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**.
13 So the workmen wrought **workers worked**,
and the work was perfected by them
and healing ascended upon the work of their hand,
and they set **stood** the house of God **Elohim**
in his state **quantity**, and strengthened it.
14 And when they had finished it,
they brought the rest **remainder** of the money **silver**
before at the face
of the king **sovereign** and Jehoiada **Yah Yada**,
whereof were made vessels **worked instruments**
for the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
even vessels to minister **instruments of ministry**,
and to offer **holocaust** *withal*,
and spoons **bowls**,
and vessels **instruments** of gold and silver.
And they offered burnt offerings **holocausted holocausts**
in the house of the LORD **Yah Veh** continually
all the days of Jehoiada **Yah Yada**.
15 But Jehoiada waxed old **Yah Yada aged**,
and was full **satisfied** of days when he died;
a son of an hundred and thirty years old
was he when he died.
16 And they buried **entombed** him in the city of David
among the kings **sovereigns**,
because he had done **worked** good in Israel **Yisra El**,
both toward God **Elohim**, and toward his house.
17 Now after the death of Jehoiada **Yah Yada**
came the princes **governors** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and made obeisance **prostrated** to the king **sovereign**.
Then the king **sovereign** hearkened unto them.
18 And they left **forsook**
the house of the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim**
of their fathers,
and served groves **asherim** and idols:

2 CHRONICLES 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Why have you not required of the Leviym
to bring in the burden
from Yah Hudah and from Yeru Shalem
according to Mosheh the servant of Yah Veh?
And of the congregation of Yisra El
for the tent of witness?
7 For the sons of Athal Yah the wicked
breached the house of Elohim;
and they also worked
all the holies of the house of Yah Veh to the Baalim.
8 And the sovereign says,
and they work one ark;
and give it outside the portal of the house of Yah Veh:
and they give voice
in Yah Hudah and in Yeru Shalem,
to bring in the burden
Mosheh the servant of Elohim
laid on Yisra El in the wilderness
to Yah Veh.
10 And all the governors and all the people
cheer and bring and cast in the ark
until they finish.
11 And so be it, that at the time,
they bring in the ark for the oversight of the sovereign
by the hand of the Leviym;
and they see there is much silver:
and the scribe of the sovereign
and the overseer of the head priest
come and empty the ark
and lift it and return it to his place:
thus they work day by day
and gather silver in abundance.
12 And the sovereign and Yah Yada
give it to such as work the work
of the service of the house of Yah Veh;
and hire hewers and artificers
to renew the house of Yah Veh;
and also artificers of iron and copper
to strengthen the house of Yah Veh:
and the workers work
and healing ascends on the work of their hand;
and they stand the house of Elohim in quantity
and strengthen it.
14 And they finish;
and they bring the remainder of the silver
at the face of the sovereign and Yah Yada;
and they work instruments for the house of Yah Veh
— instruments of ministry and of holocaust
and bowls — even instruments of gold and silver:
and they holocaust holocausts
in the house of Yah Veh continually
all the days of Yah Yada.
15 And Yah Yada ages,
satisfied of days and he dies;
a son of a hundred and thirty years when he dies:
and they entomb him among the sovereigns
in the city of David
because he worked good in Yisra El
— both toward Elohim and toward his house.
17 And after the death of Yah Yada
the governors of Yah Hudah
come and prostrate to the sovereign:
then the sovereign hearkens to them:
and they forsake
the house of Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers
and serve asherim and idols;

2 CHRONICLES 24, 25

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and *wrath* **rage**
came upon *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
for this their *trespass* **guilt**.
19 Yet he sent prophets to them,
to *bring* **return** them *again* unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and they *testified* **witnessed** against them:
but they *would not give ear* **hearkened not**.
20 And the Spirit of *God* **Elohim**
came upon *Zechariah* **enrobed Zechar Yah**
the son of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** the priest,
which stood above the people, and said unto them,
Thus saith *God* **Elohim**, Why *transgress* **trespass** ye
the *commandments* **misvoth** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
that ye cannot prosper?
because ye have forsaken the **LORD Yah Veh**,
he hath also forsaken you.
21 And they conspired against him,
and stoned him with stones
at the *commandment* **misvah** of the *king* **sovereign**
in the court of the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
22 Thus *Joash* **Yah Ash** the *king* **sovereign**
remembered not the *kindness* **mercy**
which *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** his father
had *done* **worked** to him,
but *slew* **slaughtered** his son.
And when he died, he said,
The **LORD** look **Yah Veh see** upon it, and require it.

ARAM ASCENDS AGAINST

YAH HUDAH AND YERU SHALEM

23 And **so be** it came to pass,
at the *end* **revolution** of the year,
that the *host* **valiant** of *Syria* **Aram**
came up **ascended** against him:
and they came
to *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and *destroyed* **ruined**
all the *princes* **governors** of the people
from among the people,
and sent all the spoil of them
unto the *king* **sovereign** of *Damascus* **Dammeseq**.
24 For the *army* **valiant** of the *Syrians* **Aram**
came with a *small company* of **little** men,
and the **LORD** delivered **Yah Veh gave**
a very **mighty** great *host* **valiant** into their hand,
because they had forsaken
the **LORD** *God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of their fathers.
So they *executed judgment* **worked judgments**
against *Joash* **Yah Ash**.

THE DEATH OF YAH ASH

25 And when they *were departed* **went** from him,
(for they left him in great diseases,)
his own servants conspired against him
for the blood of the sons of *Jehoiada* **Yah Yada** the priest,
and *slew* **slaughtered** him on his bed, and he died:
and they *buried* **entombed** him in the city of David,
but they *buried* **entombed** him not
in the *sepulchres* **tombs** of the *kings* **sovereigns**.
26 And these are they that conspired against him;
Zabad the son of *Shimeath* an *Ammonitess* **Ammoniyth**,
and *Jehozabad* **Yah Zabad** the son of *Shimrith*
a *Moabitess* **Moabiyth**.
27 Now *concerning* his sons,
and the *greatness* of the **greatened** burdens *laid* upon him,
and the *repairing* **foundation** of the house of *God* **Elohim**,
behold,
they are *written* **inscribed** in the *story* **commentary**
of the *book* **scroll** of the *kings* **sovereigns**.
And *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah** his son reigned in his stead.

AMAZ YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

25 *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah**
was a **son of** twenty and five years *old*
when he began to reign,
and he reigned twenty and nine years
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name was *Jehoaddan* **Yah Addan**
of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
2 And he *did* **worked** that which was *right* **straight**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the **LORD** *Yah Veh*,
but not with a *perfect* **heart** **shalom**.

2 CHRONICLES 24, 25747

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and rage comes upon *Yah Hudah* and *Yeru Shalem*
for this their guilt:
19 and he sends prophets among them
to return them to *Yah Veh*:
and they witness against them; but they hearken not.
20 And the Spirit of *Elohim* enrobes *Zechar* **Yah**
the son of *Yah Yada* the priest
— who stands above the people and says to them,
Thus says *Elohim*,
Why trespass you the *misvoth* of *Yah Veh*,
and prosper not?
Because you forsake *Yah Veh*, he forsakes you.
21 And at the *misvah* of the sovereign
they conspire against him;
and stone him with stones
in the court of the house of *Yah Veh*.
22 Thus *Yah Ash* the sovereign
remembers not the *mercy*
Yah Yada his father worked to him;
but slaughters his son.

And as he dies, he says,
Yah Veh sees and requires.

ARAM ASCENDS AGAINST

YAH HUDAH AND YERU SHALEM

23 And so be it, at the revolution of the year,
the valiant of *Aram* ascend against him:
and they come to *Yah Hudah* and *Yeru Shalem*
and ruin all the governors of the people
from among the people;
and send all their spoil
to the sovereign of *Dammeseq*.
24 For the valiant of *Aram* come with little men;
and *Yah Veh* gives a mighty great valiant
into their hand,
because they forsook *Yah Veh* *Elohim* of their fathers:
thus they work judgments against *Yah Ash*.

THE DEATH OF YAH ASH

25 And they go from him
— for they leave him in great diseases
and his own servants conspire against him
for the blood of the sons of *Yah Yada* the priest;
and slaughter him on his bed and he dies:
and they entomb him in the city of David;
and entomb him not
in the tombs of the sovereigns.
26 And these are they who conspire against him:
Zabad the son of *Shimeath*, an *Ammoniyth*
and *Yah Zabad* the son of *Shimrith*, a *Moabiyth*.
27 And as for his sons
and his greatened burdens
and the foundation of the house of *Elohim*,
behold, they are inscribed in the commentary
of the scroll of the sovereigns.
And *Amaz* **Yah** his son reigns in his stead.

AMAZ YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

25 *Amaz* **Yah** is a son of twenty—five years
when he begins to reign;
and he reigns twenty—nine years in *Yeru Shalem*:
and the name of his mother,
Yah Addan of *Yeru Shalem*.
2 And he works straight in the eyes of *Yah Veh*;
but not with a heart at *shalom*.

2 CHRONICLES 25

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 Now **so be** it came to pass,
when the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
was established to **strong upon** him,
that he *slew* **slaughtered** his servants
that had *killed* **smitten** the *king* **sovereign** his father.
4 But he *slew* **deathified** not their *children* **sons**,
but did as it is written **inscribed** in the *law* **torah**
in the *book* **scroll** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
where *the LORD* **commanded** **Yah Veh misvahed**, saying,
The fathers shall not die for the *children* **sons**,
neither shall the *children* **sons** die for the fathers,
but every *man* **each** shall die for his own sin.
5 *Moreover* **Amaziah Amaz Yah**
gathered *Judah* **Yah Hudah** together,
and *made* **stood** them *captains* **governors** over thousands,
and *captains* **governors** over hundreds,
according to the houses of their fathers,
throughout
all *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**:
and he *numbered* **mustered** them
from **sons of** twenty years *old* and above,
and found them three hundred thousand
choice men **chosen**,
able to go forth to *war* **hostility**,
that could *handle spear* **hold javelin** and shield.
6 He hired also an hundred thousand mighty *men* of valour
out of *Israel* **Yisra El**
for an hundred *talents* **rounds** of silver.
7 But there came a man of *God* **Elohim** to him, saying,
O king **sovereign**,
let not the *army* **host** of *Israel* **Yisra El** go with thee;
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** is not with *Israel* **Yisra El**, *to wit*,
with all the *children* **sons** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**.
8 But if thou *wilt* **shalt** go, *do* **work** it;
be strong **strengthen** for the *battle* **war**:
God **Elohim** shall *make* **stumble** thee *fall*
before **at the face of** the enemy:
for *God* **Elohim** hath *power* **force** to help,
and to *cast down* **stumble**.
9 And *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah** said to the man of *God* **Elohim**,
But what shall we *do* **work** for the hundred *talents* **rounds**
which I have given to the *army* **troop** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
And the man of *God* **answered** **Elohim** said,
The LORD **Yah Veh** is able to give thee
much **aboundingly** more than this.
10 Then *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah** separated them, *to wit*,
the *army* **troop** that was come to him
out of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
to go *home* **to their place** again:
wherefore their *anger* **wrath** was *greatly* **mightily** kindled
against *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and they returned *home* **to their place**
in *great anger* **fuming wrath**.
11 And *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah** strengthened himself,
and *led forth* **drove** his people,
and went to *the valley of salt* **Gay Melach/Valley of Salt**,
and smote of the *children* **sons** of Seir ten thousand.
12 And *other* ten thousand *left* alive
did the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
carry away **captive** **capture**,
and brought them unto the top of the rock,
and cast them *down* from the top of the rock,
that they all were *broken in pieces* **split**.
13 But the *soldiers* **sons of the band** of the *army* **troop**
which *Amaziah* **sent** **Amaz Yah** turned back,
that they should not go with him to *battle* **war**,
fell upon **stripped** the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
from *Samaria* **Shomeron**
even unto *Bethhoron* **Beth Horon**,
and smote three thousand of them,
and *took* **plundered** much spoil.
14 Now **so be** it came to pass,
after that *Amaziah* **Amaz Yah** was come
from the *slaughter* **smiting** of the *Edomites* **Edomiy**,
that he brought the *gods* **elohim**
of the *children* **sons** of Seir,
and set **stood** them up to be his *gods* **elohim**,

2 CHRONICLES 25

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 And so be it,
the sovereigndom is strong on him;
and he slaughters his servants
who smote the sovereign his father:
and he deathifies not their sons,
4 but as inscribed in the torah in the scroll of Mosheh.
Yah Veh misvahed, saying,
Neither the fathers die for the sons
nor the sons die for the fathers;
but each dies for his own sin.
5 And Amaz Yah gathers Yah Hudah
and stands governors over thousands
and governors over hundreds
according to the houses of their fathers
throughout all Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin:
and he musters them
from sons of twenty years and above
and finds three hundred thousand chosen of them
to go forth to hostility
— who hold javelin and shield:
6 and he hires a hundred thousand mighty of valor
of Yisra El
for a hundred rounds of silver.
7 And a man of Elohim comes to him, saying,
O sovereign,
the host of Yisra El goes not with you;
for Yah Veh is not with Yisra El
— with all the sons of Ephrayim;
8 but if you go, Work! Strengthen for the war!
Elohim stumbles you at the face of the enemy:
for Elohim has force to help — and to stumble.
9 And Amaz Yah says to the man of Elohim,
But what work we for the hundred rounds
I gave to the troop of Yisra El?
And the man of Elohim says,
Yah Veh is able to give you
aboundingly more than this.
10 Then Amaz Yah separates them
— the troop that came to him from Ephrayim
to go to their place:
and they kindle their wrath
mightily against Yah Hudah;
and return to their place in fuming wrath.
11 And Amaz Yah strengthens himself
and drives his people
and goes to Gay Melach/Valley of Salt
and smites ten thousand of the sons of Seir:
and the sons of Yah Hudah
capture ten thousand alive;
and bring them to the top of the rock
and cast them from the top of the rock;
and they all split.
12 And the sons of the band of the troop
whom Amaz Yah turned back
to not go with him to war
— they strip the cities of Yah Hudah
— from Shomeron even to Beth Horon
and smite three thousand of them
and plunder much spoil.
13 And so be it,
after Amaz Yah comes
from the smiting of the Edomiy,
he brings the elohim of the sons of Seir;
and stands them to be his elohim;

2 CHRONICLES 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and bowed down himself before them
prostrated at their face,
and burned incense incensed unto them.
15 Wherefore the anger wrath of the LORD Yah Veh
was kindled against Amaziah Amaz Yah,
and he sent unto him a prophet, which said unto him,
Why hast thou sought after the gods elohim of the people,
which could not deliver rescue their own people
out of thine hand?
16 And so be it came to pass,
as he talked worded with him,
that the king he said unto him,
Art thou made given
of the king's counsel to be counsellor to the sovereign?
forbear cease; why shouldst thou be smitten?
Then the prophet forbore ceased, and said,
I know that God Elohim
hath determined counselled to destroy ruin thee,
because thou hast done worked this,
and hast not hearkened unto my counsel.

THE SOVEREIGN OF YAH HUDAH CHALLENGES THE SOVEREIGN OF YISRA EL

17 Then Amaziah Amaz Yah,
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah
took advice counselled,
and sent to Joash Yah Ash,
the son of Jehoahaz Yah Achaz, the son of Jehu Yah Hu,
king sovereign of Israel Yisra El, saying,
Come, let us see one another in the face.
18 And Joash Yah Ash,
king sovereign of Israel Yisra El
sent to Amaziah Amaz Yah,
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah, saying,
The thistle thorn that was in Lebanon
sent to the cedar that was in Lebanon, saying,
Give thy daughter to my son to wife woman:
and there passed by a wild beast live being of the field
that was in Lebanon,
and trode down trampled the thistle thorn.
19 Thou sayest, Lo Behold,
thou hast smitten the Edomites Edomiy;
and thine heart lifteth thee up to boast honour:
abide settle now at home in thy house;
why shouldst thou meddle to thine hurt coax evil,
that thou shouldst fall, even thou,
and Judah Yah Hudah with thee?
20 But Amaziah would not hear Amaz Yah hearkened not;
for it came be of God Elohim,
that he might deliver give them into the hand
of their enemies,
because they sought after the gods elohim of Edom.
21 So Joash Yah Ash, the king sovereign of Israel Yisra El
went up ascended;
and they saw one another in the face,
both he and Amaziah Amaz Yah,
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah,
at Bethshemesh Beth Shemesh,
which belongeth be to Judah Yah Hudah.
22 And Judah Yah Hudah
was put to the worse smitten
before Israel at the face of Yisra El,
and they fled every man to his tent.
23 And Joash Yah Ash, the king sovereign of Israel Yisra El
took Amaziah apprehended Amaz Yah,
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah,
the son of Joash Yah Ash, the son of Jehoahaz Yah Achaz,
at Bethshemesh Beth Shemesh,
and brought him to Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
and brake down the wall of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem
from the gate portal of Ephraim Ephrayim
to the corner gate portal at the face, four hundred cubits.
24 And he took all the gold and the silver,
and all the vessels instruments that were found
in the house of God Elohim with Obededom Obed Edom,
and the treasures of the king's sovereign's house,
the hostages sons as pledges also,
and returned to Samaria Shomeron.
25 And Amaziah Amaz Yah the son of Joash Yah Ash,
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah

2 CHRONICLES 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and prostrates at their face and incenses to them.
15 And Yah Veh kindles his wrath against Amaz Yah
and he sends him a prophet, who says to him,
Why seek you after the elohim of the people,
who rescued not their own people from your hand?
16 And so be it, as he words with him, he says to him,
Who gives you to be counsellor to the sovereign?
Cease! Why be smitten?
Then the prophet ceases and says,
I know Elohim counsels to ruin,
because you work this
and hearken not to my counsel.

THE SOVEREIGN OF YAH HUDAH CHALLENGES THE SOVEREIGN OF YISRA EL

17 And Amaz Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah counsels
and sends to Yah Ash the son of Yah Achaz
the son of Yah Hu sovereign of Yisra El, saying,
Come! — see one another in face!
18 And Yah Ash sovereign of Yisra El
sends to Amaz Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah, saying,
The thorn in Lebanon
sends to the cedar in Lebanon,
saying, Give your daughter to my son to woman:
and a live being of the field in Lebanon passes by
and tramples the thorn.
19 You say, Behold, I smote the Edomiy!
— and you lift your heart to honor:
settle now in your house;
why coax evil so that you fall
— you and Yah Hudah with you?
20 And Amaz Yah hearkens not;
for it is of Elohim to give them into hand,
because they seek after the elohim of Edom.
21 And Yah Ash the sovereign of Yisra El ascends;
and they see one another in the face
— he and Amaz Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
at Beth Shemesh — Yah Hudah.
22 — and Yah Hudah is smitten at the face of Yisra El
and every man flees to his tent.
23 And Yah Ash, the sovereign of Yisra El
apprehends Amaz Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
the son of Yah Ash the son of Yah Achaz
at Beth Shemesh;
and brings him to Yeru Shalem:
and breaks the wall of Yeru Shalem
from the portal of Ephrayim
to the portal at the face — four hundred cubits:
24 and all the gold and the silver
and all instruments they find in the house of Elohim
with Obed Edom
and the treasures of the house of the sovereign
and the sons of the pledges
— he returns to Shomeron.
25 And Amaz Yah the son of Yah Ash
sovereign of Yah Hudah

2 CHRONICLES 25, 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

lived after the death of *Joash Yah Ash*,
son of *Jehoahaz Yah Achaz*,
king sovereign of *Israel Yisra El* fifteen years.
26 Now the rest of the acts words of *Amaziah Amaz Yah*,
first and last, behold,
are they not written inscribed
in the book scroll of the kings sovereigns
of *Judah Yah Hudah* and *Israel Yisra El*?
27 Now after the time
that *Amaziah Amaz Yah* did turn away aside
from following the LORD after *Yah Veh*
they made conspired a conspiracy against him
in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*;
and he fled to *Lachish*: but they sent to *Lachish* after him,
and slew deathified him there.
28 And they brought lifted him upon horses,
and buried entombed him with his fathers
in the city of *Judah Yah Hudah*.

UZZI YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

26 Then all the people of *Judah Yah Hudah*
took *Uzziah Uzzi Yah*,
who was a son of sixteen years old,
and made had him king reign
in the room stead of his father *Amaziah Amaz Yah*.
2 He built *Eloth*, and restored it to *Judah Yah Hudah*,
after that the king slept sovereign laid with his fathers.
3 A son of Sixteen years old
was *Uzziah Uzzi Yah* when he began to reign,
and he reigned fifty and two years
in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
His mother's name also was *Jecoliah Yechol Yah*
of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
4 And he did worked that which was right straight
in the sight eyes of the LORD *Yah Veh*,
according to all
that his father *Amaziah did Amaz Yah worked*.
5 And he sought God *Elohim*
in the days of *Zechariah Zechar Yah*,
who had understanding discernment
in the visions seeings of God *Elohim*:
and as long as he in the days of his
sought the LORD seeking *Yah Veh*,
God *Elohim* made him to prosper.
6 And he went forth
and warred fought against the *Philistines Peleshethiy*,
and brake down the wall of *Gath*,
and the wall of *Jabneh Yabneh*,
and the wall of *Ashdod*,
and built cities about *Ashdod*,
and among the *Philistines Peleshethiy*.
7 And God *Elohim* helped him
against the *Philistines Peleshethiy*,
and against the *Arabians Arabiy*
that dwelt settled in *Gurbaal Gur Baal*,
and the *Mehunims Maoniy*.
8 And the *Ammonites Ammoniy*
gave gifts offerings to *Uzziah Uzzi Yah*:
and his name spread abroad went out
even to the entering in of *Egypt Misrayim*;
for he strengthened himself exceedingly.
9 Moreover *Uzziah Uzzi Yah*
built towers in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
at the corner gate portal,
and at the valley gate portal,
and at the turning of the wall corners,
and fortified strengthened them.
10 Also he built towers in the desert wilderness,
and digged hewed many wells:
for he had much cattle chattel,
both in the low country lowlands, and in the plains:
husbandmen cultivators also,
and vine dressers in the mountains,
and in *Carmel orchards/Karmel*:
for he loved husbandry the soil.
11 Moreover *Uzziah Uzzi Yah*
had an host of fighting men valiant warriors working war,
that went out to war the hostility by bands troops,
according to the number of their account mustered
by the hand of *Jeiel Yei El* the scribe

2 CHRONICLES 25, 26750

exeGesés companion BIBLE

lives after the death of *Yah Ash*
son of *Yah Achaz* sovereign of *Yisra El* fifteen years.
26 And the rest of the words of *Amaz Yah*
— first and last, behold,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns
of *Yah Hudah* and *Yisra El*?
27 And after the time
Amaz Yah turns aside from after *Yah Veh*
they conspire a conspiracy against him
in *Yeru Shalem*;
and he flees to *Lachish*:
and they send after him to *Lachish*
and there they deathify him:
and lift him on horses
and entomb him with his fathers
in the city of *Yah Hudah*.

UZZI YAH REIGNS OVER YAH HUDAH

26 And all the people of *Yah Hudah* take *Uzzi Yah*
— a son of sixteen years
to reign in the stead of his father *Amaz Yah*.
2 He builds *Eloth* and restores it to *Yah Hudah*,
after the sovereign lies down with his fathers.
3 A son of sixteen years
is *Uzzi Yah* when he begins to reign;
and he reigns fifty—two years in *Yeru Shalem*.
the name of his mother,
Yechol Yah of *Yeru Shalem*.
4 And he works straight in the eyes of *Yah Veh*,
according to all his father *Amaz Yah* worked:
5 and he seeks *Elohim* in the days of *Zechar Yah*,
— who discerns in the seeings of *Elohim*:
and in the days he seeks *Yah Veh*
Elohim prospers him.
6 And he goes and fights the *Peleshethiy*
and breaks the wall of *Gath*
and the wall of *Yabneh* and the wall of *Ashdod*;
and builds cities around *Ashdod*
and among the *Peleshethiy*:
7 and *Elohim* helps him against the *Peleshethiy*
and against the *Arabiy* who settle in *Gur Baal*
and the *Maoniy*:
8 and the *Ammoniy* give offerings to *Uzzi Yah*:
and his name goes to the entering of *Misrayim*;
for he strengthens exceedingly.
9 *Uzzi Yah* builds towers in *Yeru Shalem*
at the corner portal and at the valley portal
and at the corners and strengthens them:
10 and he builds towers in the wilderness
and hews many wells:
for he has much chattel
— both in the lowlands and in the plains
— cultivators and vine dressers
in the mountains and in orchards/*Karmel*:
for he loves the soil:
11 and *Uzzi Yah* has a host of valiant warriors
who work war
— who go to the hostility by troops;
according to the number mustered
by the hand of *Yei El* the scribe

2 CHRONICLES 26, 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and Maaseiah **Maase Yah** the ruler **officer**,
under the hand of *Hananiah* **Hanan Yah**,
one of the *king's captains* **sovereign's governors**.
12 The whole number of the *chief* **head** of the fathers
of the mighty *men* of valour
were two thousand and six hundred.
13 And under their hand was *an army* **a host**,
three hundred thousand
and seven thousand and five hundred,
that *made* **worked** war with *mightypower* **valiant force**,
to help the *king* **sovereign** against the enemy.
14 And *Uzziah* **Uzzi Yah**
prepared for them throughout all the host
shields **bucklers**, and *spears* **javelins**,
and helmets, and habergeons,
and bows, and *slings* to cast stones **stones for slings**.
15 And he *made* **worked** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
engines **fabrications**,
invented by cunning men — **the fabrication of fabricators**,
to be on the towers and upon the *bulwarks* **corners**,
to shoot **flow** arrows and great stones withal.
And his name *spread far abroad* **went forth afar off**;
for he was marvellously helped,
till he was *strong* **prevailed**.
16 But when he was *strong* **strengthened**,
his heart was *lifted up* **exalted** to *his destruction* **ruin him**:
for he *transgressed* **treasoned**
against the *LORD* **Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim**,
and went into the *temple* **manse of the LORD** **Yah Veh**
to burn incense upon the **sacrifice** altar of incense.
17 And *Azariah* **Azar Yah** the priest went in after him,
and with him
fourscore **eighty** priests of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that were *valiant men* **sons of valour**:
18 And they withstood
Uzziah **Uzzi Yah** the *king* **sovereign**, and said unto him,
It *appertaineth* **becometh** not unto thee, *Uzziah* **Uzzi Yah**,
to burn incense unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
but to the priests the sons of *Aaron* **Aharon**,
that are *consecrated* **hallowed** to burn incense:
go out of the *sanctuary* **holies**;
for thou hast *trespassed* **treasoned**;
neither shall it be for thine honour
from the *LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim**.
19 Then *Uzziah* **Uzzi Yah** was *wroth* **enraged**,
and had a censer in his hand to burn incense:
and while he was *wroth* **enraged** with the priests,
the leprosy even rose up in his forehead
before **at the face of** the priests
in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
from beside the incense **sacrifice** altar.
20 And *Azariah* **Azar Yah** the *chief* **head** priest,
and all the priests, *looked upon* **faced** him, and, behold,
he was leprous in his forehead,
and they *thrust* **hasted** him out from thence;
yea, himself *hasted* also to go out,
because the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *smitten* **touch**ed him.
21 And *Uzziah* **Uzzi Yah** the *king* **sovereign**
was a leper unto the day of his death,
and *dwelt* **settled** in a *several* **liberty** house, *being* a leper;
for he was cut off from the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
and *Jotham* **Yah Tham** his son
was over the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
judging the people of the land.
22 Now the rest of the *acts* **words** of *Uzziah* **Uzzi Yah**,
first and last, did *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah** the prophet,
the son of *Amoz* **Amos**, write **inscribe**.
23 So *Uzziah* **Uzzi Yah** *slept* **laid** with his fathers,
and they *buried* **entombed** him with his fathers
in the field of the *burial* **tomb**
which *belonged to the kings* **be the sovereigns**;
for they said, He is a leper:
and *Jotham* **Yah Tham** his son reigned in his stead.
YAH THAM REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM
27 *Jotham* **Yah Tham**
was a **son of** twenty and five years *old*
when he began to reign,
and he reigned sixteen years in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

2 CHRONICLES 26, 27751

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and Maase Yah the officer
under the hand of Hanan Yah,
of the governors of the sovereign:
12 the whole number of the head of the fathers
of the mighty of valour
— two thousand and six hundred:
13 and under their hand is a host
— three hundred thousand
and seven thousand and five hundred
who work war with valiant force
to help the sovereign against the enemy.
14 And throughout all the host
Uzzi Yah prepares for them
bucklers and javelins and helmets and habergeons
and bows and stones for slings:
15 and in *Yeru Shalem* he works fabrications
— the fabrication of fabricators
to be on the towers and on the corners
from which to flow arrows and great stones:
and his name goes afar off;
for they help him marvellously until he prevails.
16 And he strengthens,
and exalts his heart to his ruin;
and he treasons against Yah Veh his Elohim:
and goes into the manse of Yah Veh
to incense on the sacrifice altar of incense.
17 And Azar Yah the priest goes in after him
and eighty priests of Yah Veh with him
— sons of valour:
18 and they withstand Uzzi Yah the sovereign
and say to him,
This becomes you not, Uzzi Yah,
to incense to Yah Veh:
but only to the priests, the sons of Aharon,
who are hallowed to incense:
go from the holies; for you treason;
it is not for your honor from Yah Veh Elohim.
19 And Uzzi Yah rages:
and has a censer in his hand to incense:
and as he rages with the priests,
the leprosy rises in his forehead
at the face of the priests in the house of Yah Veh
beside the incense sacrifice altar.
20 And Azar Yah, the head priest
and all the priests face him,
and behold, he is leprous in his forehead
and they hasten him from thence;
yes, he himself also hastens to go out
because Yah Veh touched him:
21 and Uzzi Yah the sovereign
is a leper to the day of his death
and settles in a liberty house — a leper;
for he is cut off from the house of Yah Veh:
and Yah Tham his son
is over the house of the sovereign
judging the people of the land.
22 And the rest of the words of Uzzi Yah
— first and last
Yesha Yah the prophet the son of Amos, inscribes.
23 And Uzzi Yah lies down with his fathers
— entombed with his fathers
in the field of the tomb of the sovereigns;
for they say, He is a leper:
and Yah Tham his son reigns in his stead.
YAH THAM REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM
27 Yah Tham is a son of twenty—five years
when he begins to reign:
and he reigns sixteen years in *Yeru Shalem*.

2 CHRONICLES 27, 28

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

His mother's name also was *Jerushah Yerushah*,
the daughter of *Zadok Sadoq*.
2 And he *did worked* that which was *right straight*
in the *sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh*,
according to all
that his father *Uzziah did Uzzi Yah worked*:
howbeit he entered not
into the *temple manse of the LORD Yah Veh*.
And the people *did yet corruptly ruined*.
3 He built the *high gate Elyon Portal*
of the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and on the wall of Ophel he built *much abundantly*.
4 Moreover
he built cities in the mountains of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and in the forests he built *castles palaces* and towers.
5 He fought also
with the *king sovereign* of the *Ammonites sons of Ammon*,
and prevailed against them.
And the *children sons* of Ammon gave him the same year
an hundred *talents rounds* of silver,
and ten thousand *measures kors* of wheat,
and ten thousand of barley.
So much *This* did the *children sons* of Ammon
pay return unto him,
both the second year, and the third.
6 So *Jotham became mighty Yah Tham prevailed*,
because he prepared his ways
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh his *God Elohim*.
7 Now the rest of the *acts words* of *Jotham Yah Tham*,
and all his wars, and his ways, *lo behold*,
they are *written inscribed*
in the *book scroll* of the *kings sovereigns*
of *Israel Yisra El* and *Judah Yah Hudah*.
8 He was a *son of* five and twenty years *old*
when he began to reign,
and reigned sixteen years in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
9 And *Jotham slept Yah Tham laid* with his fathers,
and they *buried entombed* him in the city of David:
and *Ahaz Achaz* his son reigned in his stead.

ACHAZ REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

28

Ahaz Achaz was a *son of* twenty years *old*
when he began to reign,
and he reigned sixteen years in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:
but he *did worked* not that which was *right straight*
in the *sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh*,
like David his father:
2 For he walked in the ways
of the *kings sovereigns* of *Israel Yisra El*,
and *made worked* also *molten images molten* for Baalim.
3 Moreover he *burnt incense incensed*
in the valley of the son of *Hinnom burning*,
and burnt his *children sons* in the fire,
after the *abominations abhorrences* of the *heathen goyim*
whom the *LORD Yah Veh* had *cast out dispossessed*
before at the face of the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*.
4 He sacrificed also and *burnt incense incensed*
in the *high places bamahs*, and on the hills,
and under every green tree.
5 Wherefore the *LORD Yah Veh* his *God Elohim*
delivered gave him into the hand
of the *king sovereign* of *Syria Aram*;
and they smote him,
and *carried away captured*
a great multitude of them *captives*,
and brought them to *Damascus Dammeseq*.
And he was also *delivered given*
into the hand of the *king sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*,
who smote him with a great *slaughter stroke*.
6 For *Pekah Peqach* the son of *Remaliah Remal Yah*
slew slaughtered in *Judah Yah Hudah*
an hundred and twenty thousand in one day,
which were all *valiant men sons of valour*;
because they had forsaken
the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of their fathers.
7 And *Zichri*, a mighty *man* of *Ephraim Ephrayim*,
slew Maaseiah slaughtered Maase Yah
the *king's sovereign's* son,
and *Azrikam Ezri Qam* the *governor eminent* of the house,

2 CHRONICLES 27, 28752

exeGeses companion BIBLE

the name of his mother,
Yerushah the daughter of Sadoq.
2 And he works straight in the eyes of Yah Veh
according to all his father Uzzi Yah worked:
only he enters not into the manse of Yah Veh:
and the people ruin.
3 He builds Elyon Portal of the house of Yah Veh
and on the wall of Ophel he builds abundantly:
4 and he builds cities in the mountains of Yah Hudah
and in the forests he builds palaces and towers:
5 and he fights the sovereign of the sons of Ammon
and prevails against them.
And the same year, the sons of Ammon give him
a hundred rounds of silver
and ten thousand kors of wheat
and ten thousand of barley:
the sons of Ammon return this to him
both the second year and the third:
6 and Yah Tham prevails
because he prepares his ways
at the face of Yah Veh his Elohim.
7 And the rest of the words of Yah Tham
and all his wars and his ways, behold,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns
of Yah Hudah and Yisra El?
8 He is a son of twenty — five years
when he begins to reign;
and reigns sixteen years in Yeru Shalem:
9 and Yah Tham lies down with his fathers
— entombed in the city of David:
and Achaz his son reigns in his stead.

ACHAZ REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

28

Achaz is a son of twenty years
when he begins to reign:
and he reigns sixteen years in Yeru Shalem:
and he works not straight in the eyes of Yah Veh
as David his father:
2 and he walks in the ways
of the sovereigns of Yisra El
and also works molten for Baalim:
3 and he incenses in the valley of the son of burning
and burns his sons in the fire
— as the abhorrences of the goyim
whom Yah Veh dispossessed
at the face of the sons of Yisra El:
4 and he sacrifices and incenses
in the bamahs and on the hills
and under every green tree:
5 and Yah Veh his Elohim
gives him into the hand of the sovereign of Aram
and they smite him;
and capture a great multitude
and bring them to Dammeseq;
and he is given
into the hand of the sovereign of Yisra El,
who smites him with a great stroke.
6 And Peqach the son of Remal Yah
slaughters in Yah Hudah
a hundred and twenty thousand in one day
— all sons of valour;
because they forsake Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers.
7 And Zichri, mighty of Ephrayim,
slaughters Maase Yah the son of the sovereign
and Ezri Qam the eminent of the house

2 CHRONICLES 28

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and Elkanah El Qanah

that was next **second** to the king **sovereign**.

8 And the children **sons** of Israel **Yisra El**
carried away **captive captured** of their brethren
two hundred thousand, women, sons, and daughters,
and took **plundered** also away much spoil from them,
and brought the spoil to **Samaria Shomeron**.

9 But a prophet of the **LORD Yah Veh** was there,
whose name was Oded:
and he went out **before at the face of** the host
that came to **Samaria Shomeron**, and said unto them,
Behold,
because the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of your fathers
was **wroth in his fury** with **Judah Yah Hudah**,
he hath **delivered given** them into your hand,
and ye have **slain slaughtered** them in a rage
that **reacheth up toucheth** unto **heaven the heavens**.

10 And now ye **purpose say** to **keep under subdue**
the children **sons** of **Judah Yah Hudah**
and **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**
for **bondmen servants** and **bondwomen maids** unto you:
but are there not with you, **even only** with you,
sins guilt against the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**?

11 Now hear me therefore,
and **deliver return** the captives **again**,
which ye have **taken captive captured** of your brethren:
for the **fierce fuming** wrath of the **LORD Yah Veh**
is upon you.

12 Then **certain men**
of the heads of the children **sons** of **Ephraim Ephrayim**,
Azariah Azar Yah the son of **Johanan Yah Hanan**,
Berechiah Berech Yah the son of **Meshillemoth**,
and **Jehizkiah Yechizqi Yah** the son of **Shallum**,
and **Amasa** the son of **Hadlai**,
stood up arose against them
that came from the **war hostility**,

13 And said unto them,
ye shall not bring **in** the captives hither:
for whereas we have **offended guilted**
against the **LORD Yah Veh** **already**,
ye **intend say** to add **more**
to our sins and to our **trespass guilt**:
for our **trespass guilt** is great,
and there is **fierce fuming** wrath against **Israel Yisra El**.

14 So the **armed men equipped**
left the captives and the **spoil plunder**
before at the face of the **princes governors**
and all the congregation.

15 And the men which were **expressed appointed** by name
rose up, and **took held** the captives,
and with the spoil

clothed enrobed all that were naked among them,
and **arrayed enrobed** them, and **shod enclosed** them,
and gave them to eat and to drink, and anointed them,
and **carried guided** all the **feeble** of them **that faltered**
upon **asses he burros**,

and brought them to **Jericho Yericho**,
the city of palm trees, to **beside** their brethren:
then they returned to **Samaria Shomeron**.

16 At that time did king **Ahaz sovereign Achaz**
send unto the **kings sovereigns** of **Assyria Ashshur**
to help him.

17 For again the **Edomites Edomiy** had come
and smitten **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and **carried away captured** captives.

18 The **Philistines Peleshethiy** also
had **invaded stripped** the cities
of the **low country lowlands**,
and of the south of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and had **taken Bethshemesh captured Beth Shemesh**,
and **Ajalon Aijalon**, and **Gederoth**,
and **Shocho Sochoh** with the **villages daughters** thereof,
and **Timnah** with the **villages daughters** thereof,
Gimzo also and the **villages daughters** thereof:
and they **dwelt settled** there.

19 For the **LORD Yah Veh**
brought **Judah low humbled Yah Hudah**
because of **Ahaz Achaz**, king **sovereign** of **Israel Yisra El**;
for he **made Judah naked exposed Yah Hudah**,

2 CHRONICLES 28

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and El Qanah the second to the sovereign:

8 and the sons of Yisra El
capture two hundred thousand of their brothers
— women, sons and daughters:
and also plunder much spoil from them
and bring the spoil to Shomeron.

9 And a prophet of Yah Veh is there;
his name, Oded:
and he goes at the face of the host
who come to Shomeron, and says to them,
Behold, Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers
in his fury with Yah Hudah
gives them into your hand:
slaughter them in a rage
it touches to the heavens.

10 And now, sons of Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem,
you say to subdue them as your servants and maids:
but have you not guilt — all yours
against Yah Veh your Elohim?

11 And now hear me;
and return the captives you captured of your brothers:
for the fuming wrath of Yah Veh is on you.

12 And the men, heads of the sons of Ephrayim,
Azar Yah the son of Yah Hanan
Berech Yah the son of Meshillemoth
and Yechizqi Yah the son of Shallum
and Amasa the son of Hadlai
rise against them who come from the hostility

13 and say to them,
Bring not the captives here
for the guilt against Yah Veh is on us;
and you say to add to our sins and to our guilt:
for our guilt is great
and there is fuming wrath against Yisra El.

14 And the equipped leave the captives
and the plunder
at the face of the governors and all the congregation:
15 and the men appointed by name
rise and hold the captives;
and enrobe all the naked with the spoil
— enrobe them and enclose them;
and give them to eat and to drink and anoint them;
and guide all who faltered on he burros:
and bring them to Yericho, the city of palm trees,
beside their brothers:
and they return to Shomeron.

16 At that time, sovereign Achaz
sends to help the sovereign of Ashshur:
17 and again the Edomiy come and smite Yah Hudah
and capture captives:
18 and the Peleshethiy strip the cities of the lowlands
and of the south of Yah Hudah
and capture Beth Shemesh and Aijalon and Gederoth
and Sochoh with the daughters thereof
and Timnah with the daughters thereof
and Gimzo and the daughters thereof:
and there they settle.

19 For Yah Veh humbles Yah Hudah
because of Achaz sovereign of Yisra El
— for he exposed Yah Hudah

2 CHRONICLES 28, 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and *transgressed* sore in **treasoning, treasoned**
against the LORD **Yah Veh**.
20 And *Tilgathpilneser* **Tilgath Pileser**
king sovereign of *Assyria* **Ashshur** came unto him,
and *distressed* **besieged** him, but strengthened him not.
21 For *Ahaz* took away a portion **Achaz allotted**
out of the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and out of the house of the *king* **sovereign**,
and of the *princes* **governors**,
and gave it unto the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**:
but he helped him not.
22 And in the time of his distress
did he *trespass yet more* **add to treason**
against the LORD **Yah Veh**:
this is that *king* *Ahaz* **sovereign Achaz**.
23 For he sacrificed
unto the *gods* **elohim** of *Damascus* **Dammeseq**,
which smote him: and he said,
Because the *gods* **elohim**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Syria* **Aram** help them,
therefore *will* **shall** I sacrifice to them,
that they may help me.
But they *were the ruin of* **stumbled** him,
and of all *Israel* **Yisra El**.
24 And *Ahaz* **Achaz** gathered together
the *vessels* **instruments** of the house of *God* **Elohim**,
and *cut in pieces* **chopped** the *vessels* **instruments**
of the house of *God* **Elohim**,
and shut up the doors of the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and he *made* **worked** him **sacrifice** altars
in every corner of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
25 And in every *several city* **city by city**
of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
he *made high places* **worked bamahs**
to *burn* incense unto other *gods* **elohim**,
and *provoked to anger* **vexed**
the LORD *God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of his fathers.

THE DEATH OF ACHAZ

26 Now the rest of his *acts* **words** and of all his ways,
first and last, behold,
they are *written* **inscribed**
in the *book* **scroll** of the *kings* **sovereigns**
of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Israel* **Yisra El**.
27 And *Ahaz* slept **Achaz laid** with his fathers,
and they *buried* **entombed** him in the city,
even in Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**:
but they brought him not into the *sepulchres* **tombs**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** his son reigned in his stead.

YECHIZQI YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

29 **Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah** began to reign
when he was a son of five and twenty years old,
and he reigned nine and twenty years
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name was *Abijah* **Abi Yah**,
the daughter of *Zechariah* **Zechar Yah**.
2 And he *did* **worked** that which was *right* **straight**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
according to all that *David* his father had *done* **worked**.
YECHIZQI YAH STRENGTHENS THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH
3 He in the first year of his reign, in the first month,
opened the doors of the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and *repaired* **strengthened** them.
4 And he brought in the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**,
and gathered them *together*
into the *east street* **broadway toward the rising**,
5 And said unto them, Hear me, ye *Levites* **Leviym**,
sanctify **hallow** now yourselves,
and *sanctify* **hallow** the house
of the LORD *God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of your fathers,
and *carry forth* **bring** the *filthiness* **exclusion**
out of the *holy place* **holies**.
6 For our fathers have *trespassed* **treasoned**,
and *done* **worked** that which was evil
in the eyes of the LORD **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
and have forsaken him,
and have turned away their faces
from the *habitation* **tabernacle** of the LORD **Yah Veh**
and *turned* **gave** their *backs* **necks**.

2 CHRONICLES 28, 29754

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and in treasoning, treasoned against Yah Veh.

20 And Tilgath Pileser sovereign of Ashshur
comes to him and besieges him;
but strengthens him not.
21 For Achaz allots of the house of Yah Veh
and of the house of the sovereign
and of the governors
and gives it to the sovereign of Ashshur:
but he helps him not:
22 and in the time of his distress
he adds to treason against Yah Veh
— this is that sovereign Achaz:
23 and he sacrifices to the elohim of Dammeseq
who smite him:
and he says, Because the elohim
of the sovereigns of Aram help them
— so I sacrifice to them — that they help me.
— and they stumble him and of all Yisra El.
24 And Achaz gathers
the instruments of the house of Elohim;
and chops the instruments of the house of Elohim
and shuts the doors of the house of Yah Veh
and works himself sacrifice altars
in every corner of Yeru Shalem:
25 and in city by city of Yah Hudah
he works bamahs to incense to other elohim
and vexes Yah Veh Elohim of his fathers.

THE DEATH OF ACHAZ

26 And the rest of his words and of all his ways
— first and last, behold,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns
of Yah Hudah and Yisra El?
27 And Achaz lies down with his fathers
— entombed in the city in Yeru Shalem:
but they bring him not
into the tombs of the sovereigns of Yisra El.
— and Yechizqi Yah his son reigns in his stead.

YECHIZQI YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

29 Yechizqi Yah begins to reign
— a son of twenty—five years:
and he reigns twenty—nine years in Yeru Shalem.

And the name of his mother,
Abi Yah the daughter of Zechar Yah.
2 And he works straight in the eyes of Yah Veh
according to all David his father worked.

YECHIZQI YAH STRENGTHENS THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

3 In the first year of his reign, in the first month,
he opens the doors of the house of Yah Veh
and strengthens them:
4 and he brings in the priests and the Leviym;
and gathers them in the broadway toward the rising,
5 and says to them, Hear me, you Leviym,
now hallow yourselves
and hallow the house
of Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers;
and bring the exclusion from the holies.
6 For our fathers treason
and work evil in the eyes of Yah Veh our Elohim;
and forsake him
and turn their faces from the tabernacle of Yah Veh
and give their necks:

2 CHRONICLES 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 Also they have shut up the doors of the porch,
and *put out* **quenched** the lamps,
and have not *burned* **incensed** incense
nor *offered burnt offerings* **holocausted holocausts**
in the *holy place* **holies**
unto the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

8 Wherefore the *wrath* **rage** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
was upon *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and he hath *delivered* **given** them to *trouble* **agitation**,
to *astonishment* **desolation**, and to hissing,
as ye see with your eyes.

9 For, *lo* **behold**, our fathers have fallen by the sword,
and our sons and our daughters and our *wives* **women**
are in captivity for this.

10 Now it is in mine heart to *make* **cut** a covenant
with the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that his *fierce* **fuming** wrath may turn away from us.

11 My sons, be not now *negligent* **misled**:
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath chosen you
to stand *before him* **at his face**,
to *serve* **minister unto** him,
and that ye should minister unto him, and *burn* incense.

12 Then the *Levites* **Leviym** arose,
Mahath **Machath** the son of *Amasai* **Amasay**,
and *Joel* **Yah El** the son of *Azariah* **Azar Yah**,
of the sons of the *Kohathites* **Qehathiy**:
and of the sons of *Merari*, *Kish* **Qish** the son of *Abdi*,
and *Azariah* **Azar Yah** the son of *Jehaleleel* **Ye Halal El**:
and of the *Gershonites* **Gershoni**:
Joah **Yah Ach** the son of *Zimmah*,
and *Eden* the son of *Joah* **Yah Ach**:

13 And of the sons of *Elizaphan* **El Saphan**:
Shimri, and *Jeiel* **Yei El**:
and of the sons of *Asaph*:
Zechariah **Zechar Yah**, and *Mattaniah* **Mattan Yah**:

14 And of the sons of *Heman*:
Jehi El **Yechi El**, and *Shimei* **Shimi**:
and of the sons of *Jeduthun* **Yeduthun**:
Shemaiah **Shema Yah**, and *Uzziel* **Uzzi El**.

15 And they gathered their brethren,
and *sanctified* **hallowed** themselves, and came,
according to
the *commandment* **misvah** of the *king* **sovereign**,
by the words of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to *cleanse* **purify** the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

16 And the priests went *into the inner part of* **inside**
the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, to *cleanse* **purify** it,
and brought out all the *uncleanness* **foulness**
that they found in the *temple* **manse** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
into the court of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
And the *Levites* **Leviym** took it,
to *carry* **bring** it out *abroad*
into the *brook* **Kidron** **wadi Qidron**.

17 Now they began on the first *day* of the first month
to *sanctify* **hallow**,
and on the eighth day of the month
came they to the porch of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
so they *sanctified* **hallowed**
the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** in eight days;
and in the sixteenth day of the first month
they *made an end* **finished**.

18 Then they went in
to *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** the *king* **sovereign**, and said,
We have *cleansed* **purified**
all the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and the *sacrifice* altar of *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
with all the *vessels thereof* **instruments**,
and the *shewbread* **arrangement** table,
with all the *vessels thereof* **instruments**.

19 Moreover all the *vessels* **instruments**,
which *king* **Ahaz** **sovereign Achaz**
in his *reign* **sovereigndom**
did cast away **abandoned** in his *transgression* **treason**,
have we prepared and *sanctified* **hallowed**, and, behold,
they are *before* **at the face of** the *sacrifice* altar
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

2 CHRONICLES 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 also, they shut the doors of the porch
and quench the lamps;
and neither incense incense
nor holocaust holocausts in the holies
to Elohim of Yisra El:

8 and the rage of Yah Veh
is on Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem
and he gives them to agitation
and to desolation and to hissing
— as you see with your eyes:

9 and behold, our fathers,
fallen by the sword;
and our sons and our daughters and our women,
in captivity for this.

10 Now it is in my heart to cut a covenant
with Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
to turn his fuming wrath from us.

11 My sons, be not now misled:
for Yah Veh chose you to stand at his face
— to minister to him
— to minister to him and to incense.

12 And the Leviym rise:
Machath the son of Amasay
and Yah El the son of Azar Yah
of the sons of the Qehathiy;

and of the sons of Merari:
Qish the son of Abdi
and Azar Yah the son of Ye Halal El;

and of the Gershoni:
Yah Ach the son of Zimmah
and Eden the son of Yah Ach;

13 and of the sons of El Saphan:
Shimri and Yei El;

and of the sons of Asaph:
Zechar Yah and Mattan Yah;

14 and of the sons of Heman:
Yechi El and Shimi;

and of the sons of Yeduthun:
Shema Yah and Uzzi El;

15 — and they gather their brothers
and hallow themselves and come,
according to the misvah of the sovereign
by the words of Yah Veh
to purify the house of Yah Veh.

16 And the priests go inside the house of Yah Veh
to purify it;
and bring out all the foulness
they find in the manse of Yah Veh
into the court of the house of Yah Veh.
— and the Leviym take it
to bring it to the wadi Qidron.

17 And on the first of the first month
they begin to hallow;
and on the eighth day of the month
they come to the porch of Yah Veh:
thus they hallow the house of Yah Veh in eight days;
and finish in the sixteenth day of the first month.

18 And they come in to Yechizqi Yah the sovereign
and say, We purified all the house of Yah Veh
and the sacrifice altar of holocaust
with all its instruments;
and the arrangement table with all its instruments:
and all the instruments
sovereign Achaz in his sovereigndom
abandoned in his treason
we prepared and hallowed; and behold,
they are at the face of the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh.

2 CHRONICLES 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YECHIZQI YAH RESTORES WORSHIP IN THE HOUSE OF YAH VEh

20 Then *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** the *king* **sovereign**
rose **started** early,
and gathered the *rulers* **governors** of the city,
and *went up* **ascended** to the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
21 And they brought seven bullocks,
and seven rams, and seven lambs,
and seven *he goats* **buck goats of the doe goats**,
for a *sin offering* **the sin**
for the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
and for the *sanctuary* **holies**, and for *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
And he *commanded* **said to** the priests
the sons of *Aaron* **Aharon**
to *offer* **holocaust** them
on the *sacrifice* altar of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
22 So they *killed* **slaughtered** the *bullocks* **oxen**,
and the priests *received* **took** the blood,
and sprinkled it on the *sacrifice* altar:
likewise, when they had *killed* **slaughtered** the rams,
they sprinkled the blood upon the *sacrifice* altar:
they *killed* **slaughtered** also the lambs,
and they sprinkled the blood upon the altar.
23 And they brought *forth* **near** the *he goats* **bucks**
for the *sin offering*
before **at the face of** the *king* **sovereign**
and the congregation;
and they *laid* **propped** their hands upon them:
24 And the priests *killed* **slaughtered** them,
and they *made reconciliation* **cleansed**
with their blood upon the *sacrifice* altar,
to *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for all *Israel* **Yisra El**:
for the *king* **commanded** **sovereign** **said**
that the *burnt offering* **holocaust**
and **that for** the *sin offering*
should be *made* for all *Israel* **Yisra El**.
25 And he *set* **stood** the *Levites* **Leviym**
in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
with cymbals, with *psalteries* **bagpipes**, and with harps,
according to the *commandment* **misvah** of David,
and of Gad the *king's* **sovereign's** seer,
and Nathan the prophet:
for so was the *commandment* **misvah**
by the hand of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
by **the hand of** his prophets.
26 And the *Levites* **Leviym** stood
with the instruments of David,
and the priests with the trumpets.
27 And *Hezekiah* **commanded** **Yechizqi Yah** **said**
to *offer* **holocaust** the *burnt offering* **holocaust**
upon the *sacrifice* altar.
And *when* **at the time** the *burnt offering* **holocaust** began,
the song of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** began *also*
with the trumpets,
and *with* **by the hand of** the instruments *ordained*
by **of** David *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
28 And all the congregation *worshipped* **prostrated**,
and the singers sang,
and the trumpeters *sounded* **trumpeted**:
and all *this* **continued**
until the *burnt offering* **holocaust** was finished.
29 And when they had
made an end of offering **finished** **holocausting**,
the *king* **sovereign**
and all that were *present* **found** with him
bowed *themselves*, and *worshipped* **prostrated**.
30 Moreover *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**, the *king* **sovereign**
and the *princes* **governors**
commanded **said to** the *Levites* **Leviym**
to *sing praise* **halal** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
with the words of David, and of Asaph the seer.
And they *sang praises* **halaled** with *gladness* **cheerfulness**,
and they bowed *their heads* and *worshipped* **prostrated**.
31 Then *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** answered and said,
Now ye have *consecrated yourselves* **filled your hand**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
come near and bring sacrifices
and *thank offerings* **spread hands**
into the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

2 CHRONICLES 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YECHIZQI YAH RESTORES WORSHIP IN THE HOUSE OF YAH VEh

20 And Yechizqi Yah the sovereign starts early
and gathers the governors of the city
and ascends to the house of Yah Veh:
21 and they bring seven bullocks
and seven rams and seven lambs
and seven buck goats of the doe goats
— for the sin for the sovereigndom
and for the holies and for Yah Hudah:
and he says to the priests the sons of Aharon
to holocaust them on the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh.
22 So they slaughter the oxen;
and the priests take the blood
and sprinkle it on the sacrifice altar:
and they slaughter the rams
and sprinkle the blood on the sacrifice altar:
and they slaughter the lambs
and sprinkle the blood on the altar:
23 and they bring near the he bucks for the sin
at the face of the sovereign and the congregation;
and they prop their hands on them:
24 and the priests slaughter them for the sin
with their blood on the sacrifice altar,
to kapar/atone for all Yisra El:
for the sovereign says
that the holocaust and that for the sin
is for all Yisra El.
25 And he stands the Leviym in the house of Yah Veh
with cymbals, with bagpipes and with harps,
according to the misvah of Yah Veh
and of Gad the seer of the sovereign
and Nathan the prophet:
for thus is the misvah by the hand of Yah Veh
by the hand of his prophets:
26 and the Leviym stand with the instruments of David
and the priests with the trumpets.
27 And Yechizqi Yah says
to holocaust the holocaust on the sacrifice altar:
and at the time the holocaust begins
the song of Yah Veh begins with the trumpets
by the hand
of the instruments of David sovereign of Yisra El:
28 and all the congregation prostrates
and the singers sing
and the trumpeters trumpet
until the holocaust is finished.
29 And they finish holocausting,
and the sovereign and all who are found with him
bow and prostrate:
30 and Yechizqi Yah the sovereign and the governors
say to the Leviym to halal to Yah Veh
with the words of David and of Asaph the seer.
And they halal with cheerfulness
and bow and prostrate.
31 And Yechizqi Yah answers and says,
Now you have filled your hand to Yah Veh,
come near and bring sacrifices
and spread hands to the house of Yah Veh.

2 CHRONICLES 29, 30

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

And the congregation brought in sacrifices
and *thank offerings* **spread hands**;
and as many as were of a *free* **voluntary** heart
burnt offerings **holocausted**.
32 And the number of the *burnt offerings* **holocausts**,
which the congregation brought,
was *threescore and ten* **bulls** **seventy oxen**,
an hundred rams, and two hundred lambs:
all these were for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**
to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
33 And the *consecrated things* **holies**
were six hundred oxen and three thousand *sheep* **flocks**.
34 But the priests were too few,
so that they could not *flay* **strip**
all the *burnt offerings* **holocausts**:
wherefore their brethren the *Levites* **Leviym**
did help **strengthened** them,
till the work was *ended* **finished**,
and until the *other* priests
had *sanctified* **hallowed** themselves:
for the *Levites* **Leviym** were more *upright* **straight** in heart
to *sanctify* **hallow** themselves than the priests.
35 And also the *burnt offerings* **holocausts**
were in abundance,
with the fat of the *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
and the *drink offerings* **libations**
for every *burnt offering* **the holocaust**.
So the service of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
was set in order **established**.
36 And *Hezekiah* rejoiced **Yechizqi Yah cheered**,
and all the people,
that *God* **Elohim** had prepared the people:
for the *thing* **word** was *done* suddenly.

YECHIZQI YAH WORKS THE PASACH

30

And *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
sent to all *Israel* **Yisra El** and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and *wrote letters* **inscribed epistles** also
to *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** and *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
that they should come to the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
to *keep* **work** the *passover* **pasach**
unto the *LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
2 For the *king* **sovereign** had taken counsel,
and his *princes* **governors**,
and all the congregation in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
to *keep* **work** the *passover* **pasach** in the second month.
3 For they could not *keep* **work** it at that time,
because the priests
had not *sanctified* **hallowed** themselves sufficiently,
neither had the people
gathered *themselves together* to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
4 And the *thing* **pleased** **word** was **straight**
in the eyes of the *king* **sovereign**
and **in the eyes** of all the congregation.
5 So they *established* **stood** a *decree* **word**
to *make proclamation* **pass the voice**
throughout all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
from *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba** even to Dan,
that they should come to *keep* **work** the *passover* **pasach**
unto the *LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
for they had not *done* **worked** it
of a *long time* **in abundance**
in such sort as it was *written* **inscribed**.
6 So the *posts* **runners** went with the *letters* **epistles**
from the *hand* of the *king* **sovereign**
and his *princes* **governors**
throughout all *Israel* **Yisra El** and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and according to
the *commandment* **misvah** of the *king* **sovereign**, saying,
Ye children **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
turn again **return** unto the *LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim**
of Abraham, *Isaac* **Yischaq**, and *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and he *will* **shall** return to the *remnant* **survivors** of you,
that are *escaped* **escapees** out of the *hand* **palm**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**.
7 And be not ye like your fathers, and like your brethren,
which *trespassed* **traisoned**
against the *LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim** of their fathers,

2 CHRONICLES 29, 30757

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And the congregation brings in sacrifices
and spread hands;
and as many as are of a voluntary heart, holocaust:
and the number of the holocausts
the congregation brings:
seventy oxen, a hundred rams
and two hundred lambs
— all these are for a holocaust to Yah Veh.
33 And the holies:
six hundred oxen and three thousand flocks.
34 Only, the priests are so few,
that they cannot strip all the holocausts:
and their brothers the Leviym strengthen them
until the work is finished
and until the priests hallow themselves:
for the Leviym are more straight in heart
to hallow themselves than the priests:
35 and also the holocausts are in abundance
— with the fat of the shelamim
and the libations for the holocaust:
and the service of the house of Yah Veh
is established;
36 and Yechizqi Yah and all the people cheer,
because Elohim prepares the people.
— for the word becomes suddenly.

YECHIZQI YAH WORKS THE PASACH

30

And Yechizqi Yah
sends to all Yisra El and Yah Hudah;
and also inscribes epistles
to Ephrayim and Menash Sheh
to come to the house of Yah Veh at Yeru Shalem
to work the pasach to Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El.
2 And the sovereign and his governors
and all the congregation in Yeru Shalem,
counsel to work the pasach in the second month:
3 for they cannot work it at that time
because the priests
had not hallowed themselves sufficiently,
and the people had not gathered to Yeru Shalem.
4 And the word is straight in the eyes of the sovereign
and in the eyes of all the congregation:
5 and they stand a word
to pass the voice throughout all Yisra El
— from Beer Sheba even to Dan
to come to work the pasach
to Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El at Yeru Shalem:
for they had not worked it in abundance
in such sort as inscribed.
6 And the runners go with the epistles
from the hand of the sovereign and his governors
throughout all Yisra El and Yah Hudah;
and according to the misvah of the sovereign, saying,
You sons of Yisra El,
return to Yah Veh Elohim
of Abraham, Yischaq and Yisra El;
and he returns your survivors — escapees
from the palm of the sovereigns of Ashshur:
7 and be not like your fathers and like your brothers,
who treasoned
against Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers,

2 CHRONICLES 30

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

8 *who therefore gave them up to desolation, as ye see.*
Now be ye *not stiffnecked* **harden not your necks**
as your fathers were,
but yield yourselves **give your hand**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and enter into his *sanctuary* **holies**,
which he hath *sanctified for ever* **hallowed eternally**:
and serve the **LORD Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**,
that the *fierceness* **fuming** of his wrath
may turn away from you.

9 For if ye *turn again* **return** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
your brethren and your *children* **sons**
shall *find compassion* **be mercied**
before them that lead them captive
at the face of their captors,
so that they shall *come again* **return** into this land:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
is *gracious* **charismatic** and merciful,
and *will shall* not turn away **aside** his face from you,
if ye return unto him.

10 So the *posts* **runners** passed from city to city
through the *country* **land** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
and *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** even unto Zebulun:
but they *laughed* **ridiculed** them *to scorn*,
and *mocked* **derided** them.

11 Nevertheless
divers **men** of *Asher* and *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
and of Zebulun humbled themselves,
and came to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

12 Also in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
the hand of *God* **Elohim** was to give them one heart
to *do* **work** the *commandment* **misvah**
of the *king* **sovereign** and of the *princes* **governors**,
by the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**.

13 And there *assembled* **gathered**
at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** much people to *keep* **work**
the *feast* **celebration** of *unleavened bread* **matsah**
in the second month, a very **mighty** great congregation.

14 And they arose
and *took away* **turned aside** the **sacrifice** altars
that were in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and all the *altars for incense* **censers**
took **turned** they away **aside**,
and cast them into the *brook* **Kidron wadi Qidron**.

15 Then they *killed* **slaughtered** the *passover* **pasach**
on the fourteenth *day* of the second month:
and the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym** were ashamed,
and *sanctified* **hallowed** themselves,
and brought in the *burnt offerings* **holocausts**
into the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.

16 And they stood in their *place* **stations**
after their *manner* **judgment**,
according to the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**
the man of *God* **Elohim**:
the priests sprinkled the blood,
which they received of the hand of the *Levites* **Leviym**.

17 For there were many in the congregation
that were not *sanctified* **hallowed**:
therefore the *Levites* **Leviym** had the charge
of the *killing* **slaughter** of the *passovers* **pasachs**
for every one that was not *clean* **pure**,
to *sanctify* **hallow** them unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.

18 For a *multitude* **an increase** of the people,
even many of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
and *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
Issachar **Yissachar**, and Zebulun,
had not *cleansed* **purified** themselves,
yet did they eat the *passover* **pasach**
otherwise than it was written **not as inscribed**.
But *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** prayed for them, saying,
The good *LORD* **pardon** **Yah Veh** *kapar/atone* every one

19 That prepareth his heart to seek *God* **Elohim**,
the *LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of his fathers,
though he be not *cleansed*
according to the purification of the *sanctuary* **holies**.

20 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
hearkened to *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**,
and healed the people.

2 CHRONICLES 30

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and he gave them to desolation — as you see.

8 Now harden not your necks as your fathers;
give your hand to Yah Veh
and enter the holies he hallowed eternally:
and serve Yah Veh your Elohim,
to turn his fuming wrath from you.

9 For if you return to Yah Veh,
he mercies your brothers and your sons
at the face of their captors,
to return to this land:
for Yah Veh your Elohim is charismatic and merciful
and turns not his face from you, if you return to him.

10 And the runners pass from city to city
through the land of Ephrayim
and Menash Sheh even to Zebulun:
and they ridicule them and deride them.

11 Only, men of Asher and Menash Sheh
and of Zebulun humble themselves
and come to Yeru Shalem.

12 Also, in Yah Hudah
the hand of Elohim gives them one heart
to work the misvah
of the sovereign and of the governors
by the word of Yah Veh.

13 And much people gather at Yeru Shalem
to work the celebration of matsah
in the second month
— a mighty great congregation.

14 And they rise
and turn aside the sacrifice altars in Yeru Shalem
and they turn aside all the censers
and cast them into the wadi Qidron:
and they slaughter the pasach
on the fourteenth of the second month:
and the priests and the Leviym shame
and hallow themselves;

15 and bring the holocausts into the house of Yah Veh:
and they stand in their stations after their judgment;
according to the torah of Mosheh the man of Elohim:
and the priests sprinkle the blood
from the hand of the Leviym:

17 for many in the congregation are not hallowed:
and the Leviym have the charge
of the slaughter of the pasachs
for every one who is not pure
— to hallow them to Yah Veh.

18 For an increase of the people
— many of Ephrayim and Menash Sheh,
Yissachar and Zebulun, had not purified;
yet eat the pasach — but not as inscribed:
but Yechizqi Yah prays for them, saying,
The good Yah Veh kapars/atones every one
who prepares his heart to seek Elohim
— Yah Veh Elohim of his fathers;
though not according to the purification of the holies.

20 And Yah Veh hearkens to Yechizqi Yah
and heals the people:

2 CHRONICLES 30, 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

21 And the children sons of Israel Yisra El
that were present found at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem
kept worked
the feast celebration of unleavened bread matsah
seven days with great gladness cheerfulness:
and the Levites Levym and the priests
praised the LORD haled Yah Veh day by day,
singing with loud instruments with instruments of strength
unto the LORD Yah Veh.

22 And Hezekiah spake comfortably Yechizqi Yah worded
unto the heart of all the Levites Levym
that taught comprehended
the good knowledge comprehension
of the LORD Yah Veh:
and they did eat throughout the feast festival seven days,
offering sacrificing the sacrifices
peace offerings of shelamim,
and making confession spread hands
to the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers.

23 And the whole assembly congregation
took counsel counselled
to keep work other seven days:
and they kept worked other seven days
with gladness cheerfulness.

24 For Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah,
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah
did give lifted up to the congregation
a thousand bullocks and seven thousand sheep flocks;
and the princes governors
gave lifted up to the congregation
a thousand bullocks and ten thousand sheep flocks:
and a great number an abundance of priests
sanctified hallowed themselves.

25 And all the congregation of Judah Yah Hudah,
with the priests and the Levites Levym,
and all the congregation that came out of Israel Yisra El,
and the strangers sojourners
that came out of the land of Israel Yisra El,
and that dwelt settled in Judah Yah Hudah,
rejoiced cheered.

26 So there was great joy cheer in Jerusalem Yeru Shalem:
for since the time day of Solomon Shelomoh
the son of David king sovereign of Israel Yisra El
there was not the like in Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.

27 Then the priests the Levites Levym arose
and blessed the people:
and their voice was heard, and their prayer came up
to his holy dwelling place the habitation of his holiness,
even unto heaven the heavens.

YISRA EL DESTROYS THE MONOLITHS,
ASHERIM, AND BAMAHS

31 Now when all this was finished,
all Israel Yisra El that were present found
went out to the cities of Judah Yah Hudah,
and brake the images monoliths in pieces,
and cut down the groves asherim,
and threw pulled down the high places bamahs
and the sacrifice altars
out of all Judah Yah Hudah and Benjamin Ben Yamin,
in Ephraim Ephrayim also and Manasseh Menash Sheh,
until they had utterly destroyed finished them all off.
Then all the children sons of Israel Yisra El returned,
every man to his possession, into their own cities.

2 And Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah
appointed stationed the courses allotments
of the priests and the Levites Levym
after their courses allotments,
every man according to the mouth of his service,
the priests and Levites Levym
for burnt offerings holocausts
and for peace offerings shelamim,
to minister,
and to give thanks spread hands, and to praise halal
in the gates portals
of the tents camps of the LORD Yah Veh.

3 He appointed also
the king's portion sovereign's allotment
of his substance acquisition
for the burnt offerings holocausts,

2 CHRONICLES 30, 31759

exeGeses companion BIBLE

21 and the sons of Yisra El they find at Yeru Shalem
work the celebration of matsah seven days
with great cheerfulness:
and day by day
the Leviym and the priests halal Yah Veh
with instruments of strength to Yah Veh.

22 And Yechizqi Yah words
to the heart of all the Leviym
who comprehend
the good comprehension of Yah Veh:
and they eat throughout the festival seven days,
sacrificing the sacrifices
of shelamim and spread hands
to Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers.

23 And the whole congregation
counsels to work another seven days:
and they work seven days with cheerfulness.

24 For Yechizqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
lifts to the congregation
a thousand bullocks and seven thousand flocks:
and the governors lift to the congregation
a thousand bullocks and ten thousand flocks.
— and an abundance of priests hallow themselves.

25 And all the congregation of Yah Hudah
with the priests and the Leviym
and all the congregation who come from Yisra El
and the sojourners
who come from the land of Yisra El
— who settle in Yah Hudah, cheer!
And there is great cheer in Yeru Shalem:
for since the day of Shelomoh
the son of David sovereign of Yisra El
there is not the like in Yeru Shalem.

27 And the priests
— the Leviym rise and bless the people:
and their voice is heard;
and their prayer
comes to the habitation of his holiness
— to the heavens.

YISRA EL DESTROYS THE MONOLITHS,
ASHERIM, AND BAMAHS

31 And all this is finished,
all the Yisra Eliy they find
go to the cities of Yah Hudah
and break the monoliths
and cut down the asherim
and pull down the bamahs and the sacrifice altars
from all Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin
and in Ephrayim and Menash Sheh
until they finish them off:
and all the sons of Yisra El return,
every man to his possession, to their own cities.

2 And Yechizqi Yah
stations the allotments of the priests and the Leviym
by their allotments
— every man according to the mouth of his service:
the priests and Leviym
for holocausts and for shelamim,
to minister and to spread hands and to halal
in the portals of the camps of Yah Veh:

3 and the allotment of the acquisition of the sovereign
is for the holocausts

2 CHRONICLES 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

to wit, for the morning and evening *burnt offerings* **holocausts**,
and the *burnt offerings* **holocausts**
for the *sabbaths* **shabbaths**,
and for the new moons, and for the *set feasts* **festivals**,
as it is *written* **inscribed**
in the *law* **torah** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
4 Moreover he *commanded* **said to** the people
that *dwelt* **settled** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
to give the *portion* **allotment**
of the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**,
that they might be *encouraged* **strengthened**
in the *law* **torah** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
5 And as soon as the
commandment **came abroad** **word broke forth**,
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
brought in **abundance** **abounded**
the *firstfruits* **firstlings** of *corn* **crop**
wine **juice**, and oil, and honey,
and of all the *increase* **produce** of the field;
and the *tithe* of all *things* **brought** they
in *abundantly* **abundance**.
6 And *concerning*
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
that *dwelt* **settled** in the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
they also *brought* in the *tithe* of oxen and *sheep* **flock**,
and the *tithe* of *holy things* **holies**
which were *consecrated* **hallowed**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**
and *laid* **gave** them by heaps.
7 In the third month
they began to lay the foundation of the heaps,
and finished them in the seventh month.
8 And when *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
and the *princes* **governors** came and saw the heaps,
they *blessed* the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and his people *Israel* **Yisra El**.
9 Then *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** questioned
with the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**
concerning the heaps.
10 And *Azariah* **Azar Yah**
the *chief* **head** priest of the house of *Zadok* **Sadoq**
answered **said to** him, and said,
Since the people began to bring **bringing** the *offerings* **exaltments**
into the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
we have had enough to eat **are satisfied**,
and have *left plenty* **an abundance remaining**:
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *blessed* his people;
and that which *is left* **remaineth**
is this great *store* **multitude**.
11 Then *Hezekiah* **commanded** **Yechizqi Yah** **said**
to prepare chambers in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
and they prepared them,
12 And brought in the *offerings* **exaltments** and the *tithes*
and the *dedicated things* **faithfully** **holies trustworthily**:
over which
Cononiah **Konan Yah** the *Levite* **Leviy** was *ruler* **eminent**,
and *Shimei* **Shimi** his brother was the *next* **second**.
13 And *Jehiel* **Yechi El**, and *Azaziah* **Azaz Yah**,
and *Nahath* **Nachath**, and *Asahel* **Asa El**,
and *Jerimoth* **Yerimoth**, and *Jozabad* **Yah Zabad**,
and *Eliel* **Eli El**, and *Ismachiah* **Yismach Yah**,
and *Mahath* **Machath**, and *Benaiah* **Bena Yah**,
were overseers under the hand
of *Cononiah* **Konan Yah** and *Shimei* **Shimi** his brother,
at the *commandment* **mandate**
of *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** the *king* **sovereign**,
and *Azariah* **Azar Yah** the *ruler* **eminent**
of the house of *God* **Elohim**.
14 And *Kore* **Qore**
the son of *Imnah* **Yimlah** the *Levite* **Leviy**,
the porter toward the *east* **rising**,
was over the *freewill offerings* **voluntaries** of *God* **Elohim**,
to *distribute* **give**
the *oblations* **exaltments** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and the *most holy things* **holies**.
15 And *next* **him** **at his hand**
were *Eden*, and *Miniamin* **Min Yamin**,
and *Jeshua* **Yah Shua**, and *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**,

2 CHRONICLES 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— for the morning and evening holocausts
and the holocausts for the shabbaths
and for the new moons and for the festivals
as inscribed in the torah of Yah Veh.
4 And he says to the people who settle in Yeru Shalem
to give the allotment of the priests and the Leviym
to strengthen them in the torah of Yah Veh.
5 And as the word breaks,
the sons of Yisra El about the firstlings of crop
— juice and oil and honey
and of all the produce of the field;
and they bring the tithe of all in abundance.
6 And the sons of Yisra El and Yah Hudah
who settle in the cities of Yah Hudah
also bring the tithe of oxen and flock
and the tithe of holies
hallowed to Yah Veh their Elohim;
and give them by heaps.
7 In the third month
they begin to lay the foundation of the heaps
and finish them in the seventh month.
8 And Yechizqi Yah and the governors
come and see the heaps;
and they bless Yah Veh and his people Yisra El.
9 And Yechizqi Yah inquires
with the priests and the Leviym concerning the heaps:
10 and Azar Yah the head priest of the house of Sadoq
says to him saying,
Since bringing the exaltments into the house of Yah Veh,
we satisfy ourselves and an abundance remains:
for Yah Veh blesses his people;
and this great multitude remains.
11 And Yechizqi Yah says
to prepare chambers in the house of Yah Veh
— and they prepare:
12 and they trustworthily
bring the exaltments and the tithes and the holies
over which Konan Yah the Leviy is eminent
and Shimi his brother is the second.
13 And Yechi El and Azaz Yah and Nachath
and Asa El and Yerimoth and Yah Zabad
and Eli El and Yismach Yah
and Machath and Bena Yah
are overseers under the hand
of Konan Yah and Shimi his brother
— at the mandate of Yechizqi Yah the sovereign
and Azar Yah the eminent of the house of Elohim.
14 And Qore the son of Yimlah the Leviy
the porter toward the rising,
is over the voluntaries of Elohim
— to give the exaltments of Yah Veh and the holies.
15 And at his hand:
Eden and Min Yamin and Yah Shua and Shema Yah,

2 CHRONICLES 31, 32

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

Amariah Amar Yah, and Shecaniah Shechan Yah,
in the cities of the priests, in their *set office* **trust**,
to give to their brethren by *courses* **allotments**,
as well to the great as to the small:
16 Beside their *genealogy of* **genealogized** males,
from **sons of** three years *old* and upward,
even unto every one
that entereth into the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
his daily *portion* **word** for their **day by day** service
in their *charges* **guards**
according to their *courses* **allotments**;
17 Both to the *genealogy* **genealogized** of the priests
by the house of their fathers, and the *Levites* **Leviym**
from **sons of** twenty years *old* and upward,
in their *charges* **guards** by their *courses* **allotments**;
18 And to the *genealogy* **genealogized**
of all their *little ones* **toddlers**, their *wives* **women**,
and their sons, and their daughters,
through all the congregation:
for in their *set office* **trust**
they *sanctified* **hallowed** themselves in holiness:
19 Also of the sons of Aaron **Aharon** the priests,
which were in the fields of the suburbs of their cities,
in every several city **city by city**,
the men that were *expressed* **appointed** by name,
to give portions to all the males among the priests,
and to all that were *reckoned by genealogies* **genealogized**
among the *Levites* **Leviym**.
20 And thus *did* Hezekiah **worked** Yechizqi Yah
throughout all *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and wrought **worked**
that which was good and *right* **straight** and truth
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim**.
21 And in every work that he began
in the service of the house of *God* **Elohim**,
and in the *law* **torah**, and in the *commandments* **misvoth**,
to seek his *God* **Elohim**,
he *did* **worked** it with all his heart, and prospered.

THE SOVEREIGN OF ASHSHUR ENCAMPS AGAINST YERU SHALEM

32 After these *things* **words**,
and the *establishment* **truth** thereof,
Sennacherib king **Sancherib** *sovereign of Assyria* **Ashshur**
came, and entered into *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and encamped against the *fenced* **cut off** cities,
and *thought to win* **said to split** them for himself.
2 And when Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah** saw
that *Sennacherib* **Sancherib** was come,
and that *he was purposed* **his face was**
to *fight war* against *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
3 He *took counsel* **counselled** with his *princes* **governors**
and his mighty *men* to stop the waters of the fountains
which were without the city: and they did help him.
4 So there was gathered much people together,
who stopped all the fountains,
and the *brook* **wadi** that *ran* **overflowed**
through the midst of the land, saying,
Why should the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
come, and find much water?
5 Also he strengthened himself,
and built up all the wall that was broken,
and *raised* **ascended** it up to the towers,
and another wall without,
and *repaired* **strengthened** Millo in the city of David,
and *made* **worked**
darts **spears** and *shields* **bucklers** in abundance.
6 And he *set captains* **gave** *governors* of war
over the people,
and gathered them *together* to him
in the *street* **broadway** of the *gate* **portal** of the city,
and *spake comfortably* **worded to them** **their heart**,
saying,
7 *Be strong and courageous* **Strengthen, encourage,**
be not afraid **neither awe** nor *dismayed* **terrify**
for the king of Assyria
at the face of the sovereign of Ashshur,
nor *for* **at the face of** all the multitude that is with him:
for there be *more* **greater** with us than with him:

2 CHRONICLES 31, 32761

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Amar Yah and Shechan Yah
in the cities of the priests, in their trust,
to give to their brothers by allotments,
as well to the great as to the small:
16 beside their genealogized males
from sons of three years and upward
— to every one who enters the house of Yah Veh
for his daily word for their day by day service
in their guards according to their allotments:
17 both to the genealogized of the priests
by the house of their fathers and the Leviym
from sons of twenty years and upward
— in their guards by their allotments:
18 and to the genealogized — of all their toddlers,
their women and their sons and their daughters,
throughout all the congregation:
for in their trust, they hallow themselves in holiness.
19 And of the sons of Aharon the priests
in the fields of the suburbs of their cities, city by city;
the men appointed by name
to give portions to all the males among the priests
— to all the genealogized among the Leviym.
20 And thus Yechizqi Yah
works throughout all Yah Hudah;
and works good and straight and truth
at the face of Yah Veh his Elohim:
21 and in every work he begins
in the service of the house of Elohim
and in the torah and in the misvoth
— to seek his Elohim
he works with all his heart and prospers.

THE SOVEREIGN OF ASHSHUR ENCAMPS AGAINST YERU SHALEM

32 After these words and this truth,
Sancherib sovereign of Ashshur
comes and enters Yah Hudah
and encamps against the cut off cities;
2 and says to split them for himself:
and Yechizqi Yah sees Sancherib come;
and his face is to war against Yeru Shalem.
3 And he counsels with his governors and his mighty
to stop the waters of the fountains outside the city:
and they help him:
4 and much people gather and stop all the fountains
and the wadi that overflows midst the land
saying, Why come the sovereigns of Ashshur
and find much water?
5 And he strengthens himself
and builds all the broken wall
so that it ascends to the towers;
and another outer wall;
and strengthens Millo the city of David:
and works spears and bucklers in abundance.
6 And he gives governors of war over the people
and gathers them to himself
in the Broadway of the portal of the city:
and words to their heart, saying,
7 Strengthen! Encourage!
Neither awe nor terrify
at the face of the sovereign of Ashshur
or at the face of all the multitude with him:
for there are greater with us than with him:

2 CHRONICLES 32

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

8 With him is an arm of flesh;
but with us
is the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim** to help us,
and to fight our **battles wars**.
And the people *rested* **propped** themselves
upon the words of **Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah**
king sovereign of **Judah Yah Hudah**.
9 After this did **Sennacherib Sancherib**
king sovereign of **Assyria Ashshur**
send his servants to **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
(but he *himself laid siege* against Lachish,
and all his **power reign** with him,)
unto **Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah**
king sovereign of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and unto all **Judah Yah Hudah**
that were at **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**, saying,
10 Thus saith **Sennacherib Sancherib**
king sovereign of **Assyria Ashshur**,
Whereon *do ye trust* **confide ye**,
that ye *abide* **settle** in the siege in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**?
11 Doth not **Hezekiah** *persuade* **Yechizqi Yah** *goad* you
to give over yourselves to die by famine and by thirst,
saying, the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**
shall *deliver* **rescue** us out of the *hand* **palm**
of the *king sovereign* of **Assyria Ashshur**?
12 Hath not the same **Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah**
taken away **turned aside**
his *high places* **bamahs** and his **sacrifice** altars,
and *commanded* **Judah said to Yah Hudah**
and **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**, saying,
Ye shall worship *before* **at the face of** one **sacrifice** altar,
and *burn* incense upon it?
13 Know ye not what I and my fathers have *done* **worked**
unto all the people of other lands?
were the *gods* **elohim** of the *nations* **goyim** of those lands
any ways **at all** able to *deliver* **rescue** their lands
out of mine hand?
14 Who was there
among all the *gods* **elohim** of those *nations* **goyim**
that my fathers *utterly destroyed* **devoted**,
that could *deliver* **rescue** his people out of mine hand,
that your **God Elohim** should be able to *deliver* **rescue** you
out of mine hand?
15 Now therefore
let not **Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah** deceive you,
nor *persuade* **goad** you on *this manner* **thus**,
neither yet *believe* **trust** him:
for no *god* **elohah**
of any *nation* **goyim** or *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
was able to *deliver* **rescue** his people out of mine hand,
and out of the hand of my fathers:
how much less **neither** shall your **God Elohim**
deliver **rescue** you out of mine hand?
16 And his servants *spake* **worded** yet *more*
against the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim**,
and against his servant **Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah**.
17 He wrote **inscribed** also *letters* **scrolls**
to *rail on* **reproach**
the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of **Israel Yisra El**,
and to *speak* **say** against him, saying,
As the *gods* **elohim** of the *nations* **goyim** of other lands
have not *delivered* **rescued** their people out of mine hand,
so shall not the **God Elohim** of **Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah**
deliver **rescue** his people out of mine hand.
18 Then they *cried* **called out**
with a *loud* **great** voice in the *Jews' speech* **Yah Hudahaic**
unto the people of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**
that were on the wall,
to *affright* **awe** them, and to *trouble* **terrify** them;
that they might *take* **capture** the city.
19 And they *spake* **worded**
against the **God Elohim** of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
as against the *gods* **elohim** of the people of the earth,
which were the work of the hands of *man* **humanity**.
20 And for *this cause*
Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah the *king sovereign*,
and the prophet **Isaiah Yesha Yah** the son of **Amoz Amos**,
prayed and cried to *heaven* **the heavens**.
21 And the **LORD Yah Veh** sent an angel,

2 CHRONICLES 32

exeGeses companion BIBLE

8 with him — an arm of flesh;
and with us — **Yah Veh** our **Elohim**
to help us and to fight our wars.
And the people prop on the words
of **Yechizqi Yah** sovereign of **Yah Hudah**.
9 After this, **Sancherib** sovereign of **Ashshur**
sends his servants to **Yeru Shalem**;
— and he is by Lachish with all his reign
against **Yechizqi Yah** sovereign of **Yah Hudah**
and against all **Yah Hudah** at **Yeru Shalem**, saying,
10 Thus says **Sancherib** sovereign of **Ashshur**,
Whereon confide you
that you settle in the siege in **Yeru Shalem**?
11 **Yechizqi Yah** — goads he not you
to give yourselves to die by famine and by thirst,
saying, **Yah Veh** our **Elohim**
rescues us from the palm of the sovereign of **Ashshur**?
12 **Yechizqi Yah** himself,
turns he not aside his **bamahs** and his sacrifice altars
and says to **Yah Hudah** and **Yeru Shalem**, saying,
Worship at the face of one sacrifice altar
and incense thereon?
13 Know you not what I and my fathers work
to all the people of other lands?
The **elohim** of the **goyim** of those lands
are they able to rescue their lands from my hand?
14 Among all the **elohim** of those **goyim**
my fathers devoted,
who is able rescue his people from my hand
— that your **Elohim**
is able to rescue you from my hand?
15 And now
neither *may* **Yechizqi Yah** deceive you,
nor goad you thus, nor yet trust him:
for no **elohah** of any **goyim** or **sovereigndom**
is able to rescue his people from my hand
and from the hand of my fathers:
neither your **Elohim** rescues you from my hand.
16 And his servants still word against **Yah Veh Elohim**
and against his servant **Yechizqi Yah**:
and he inscribes scrolls
to reproach **Yah Veh Elohim** of **Yisra El**
to say against him, saying,
As the **elohim** of the **goyim** of other lands
have not rescued their people from my hand,
thus **Elohim** of **Yechizqi Yah**
rescues not his people from my hand.
17 And they call out
with a great voice in **Yah Hudahaic**
to the people of **Yeru Shalem** on the wall
— to awe them and to terrify them;
and to capture the city:
18 and they word against the **Elohim** of **Yeru Shalem**
as against the **elohim** of the people of the earth
— the work of the hands of **hamuanity**.
19 And **Yechizqi Yah** the sovereign
and the prophet **Yesha Yah** the son of **Amos**
pray and cry to the heavens:
and **Yah Veh** sends an angel

2 CHRONICLES 32

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which cut off all the mighty men of valour,
and the *leaders* **eminent** and *captains* **governors**
in the camp of the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**.
So he returned with shame of face to his own land.
And when he was come into the house of his *god* **elohim**,
they that came forth **the offspring**
of his own *bowels* **inwards**
slew **felled** him there with the sword.

22 Thus *the LORD* **Yah Veh** saved *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
from the hand of *Sennacherib* **Sancherib**
the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
and from the hand of all other,
and guided them *on every side* **round about**.

23 And many brought *gifts* **offerings**
unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and presents **preciousnesses** to *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**:
so that he was *magnified* **lifted up**
in the *sight* **eyes** of all *nations* **goyim**
from *thenceforth* **thereafter**.

24 In those days *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
was sick to *the death* **die**,
and prayed unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
and he *spake* **said** unto him,
and he gave him *a sign* **an omen**.

25 But *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
rendered **returned** not *again*
according to *the benefit done* **dealing** unto him;
for his heart was *lifted up*:
therefore there was *wrath* **rage** upon him,
and upon *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

26 Notwithstanding
Hezekiah **Yechizqi Yah** humbled himself
for the *pride* **haughtiness** of his heart,
both he
and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
so that the *wrath* **rage** of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
came not upon them
in the days of *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**.

27 And *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
had exceeding much **abounded mightily**
in riches and honour:
and he *made* **worked** himself *treasuries*
for silver, and for gold, and for *precious* **esteemed** stones,
and for spices, and for *shields* **bucklers**,
and for all manner
of *pleasant jewels* **instruments of desire**;
28 *Storehouses* **Storage** also for the *increase* **produce**
of *corn* **crop**, and *wine* **juice**, and oil;
and stalls for *all manner of beasts* **animal by animal**,
and *cotes* **stalls** for *flocks* **droves**.

29 Moreover he *provided* **worked** him cities,
and *possessions* **chattels** of flocks and *herds* **oxen**
in abundance:
for *God* **Elohim** had given him
substance very **mighty** much **acquisition**.

30 This same *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** also stopped
the upper *watercourse* **watersprings** of *Gihon* **Gichon**,
and brought it *straight down* **downward**
to the west side **duskward** of the city of David.
And *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** prospered in all his works.

31 *Howbeit* **Thus**
in the business of the ambassadors **by the interpreters**
of the *princes* **governors** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
who sent unto him to enquire
of the *wonder* **omen** that was *done* in the land,
God **Elohim** left him, to *try* **test** him,
that he might know all that was in his heart.

THE DEATH OF YECHIZQI YAH

32 Now the rest of the *acts* **words**
of *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**,
and his *goodness* **mercy**, behold,
they are *written* **inscribed** in the vision
of *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah** the prophet, the son of *Amoz* **Amos**,
and in the *book* **scroll** of the *kings* **sovereigns**
of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Israel* **Yisra El**.

33 And *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
slept **laid** with his fathers,

2 CHRONICLES 32

exeGesés companion BIBLE

who cuts off all the mighty of valour
and the eminent and governors
in the camp of the sovereign of Ashshur:
and he returns with shamed face to his own land.
And he comes to the house of his elohim;
and the offspring of his inwards
fell him there with the sword:
and Yah Veh saves Yechizqi Yah
and the settlers of Yeru Shalem
from the hand of Sancherib the sovereign of Ashshur
and from the hand of all others;
and guides them all around.

22

23 And many bring offerings
to Yah Veh to Yeru Shalem;
and preciousnesses
to Yechizqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah:
so that he is lifted in the eyes of all goyim thereafter.

24 In those days, Yechizqi Yah is sick to die
and prays to Yah Veh:
and he says to him and he gives him an omen:
and Yechizqi Yah returns not
according as he was dealt;
for his heart lifts:
and there is rage on him
and on Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem:
and Yechizqi Yah humbles himself
for the haughtiness of his heart
— he and the settlers of Yeru Shalem;
so that the rage of Yah Veh
comes not on them in the days of Yechizqi Yah:
and Yechizqi Yah
abounds mightily in riches and honor:
and he works himself treasuries
for silver and for gold and for esteemed stones
and for all manner of instruments of desire
— storage for the produce of crop
and juice and oil;
and stalls for animal by animal and stalls for droves:
and he works cities
and chattels of flocks and oxen in abundance:
for Elohim gives him mighty much acquisition.

25

26

27

28

29

30 This is the same Yechizqi Yah
who stopped the upper watersprings of Gichon
and brought it downward
— duskward of the city of David
— and Yechizqi Yah prospers in all his works.

31 And thus,
by the interpreters of the governors of Babel,
who send to him to enquire of the omen in the land,
Elohim left him, to test him,
to know all that is in his heart.

THE DEATH OF YECHIZQI YAH

32 And the rest of the words of Yechizqi Yah
and his mercy,
behold, they are inscribed in the vision
of Yesha Yah the prophet the son of Amos
in the scroll of the sovereigns
of Yah Hudah and Yisra El.

33 And Yechizqi Yah lies down with his fathers

2 CHRONICLES 32, 33

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and they buried **entombed** him in the *chiefest ascent* of the *sepulchres* **tombs** of the sons of David:

and all *Judah* **Yah Hudah**

and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** *did worked* him honour at his death.

And *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** his son reigned in his stead.

MENASH SHEH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

33

Manasseh **Menash Sheh**

was a **son** of twelve years *old* when he began to reign, and he reigned fifty and five years in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:

2 But *did worked* that which was evil in the *sight eyes* of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,

like unto the *abominations* **abhorrences** of the *heathen* **goyim**, whom the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *cast out* **dispossessed** before **at the face** of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

3 For he **returned** and built *again* the *high places* **bamahs** which *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** his father had *broken* **pulled down**,

and he *reared up* **raised sacrifice** altars for *Baalim*, and *made groves* **worked asherim**, and *worshipped* **prostrated** to all the host of *heaven* **the heavens**, and served them.

4 Also he built **sacrifice** altars in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, whereof the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had said, In *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** shall my name be *for ever* **eternally**.

5 And he built **sacrifice** altars for all the host of *heaven* **the heavens** in the two courts of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

6 And he caused his *children* **sons** to pass through the fire in the valley of the son of *Hinnom* **burning**:

also he *observed times* **cloudglazed**, and *used enchantments* **prognosticated**, and *used witchcraft* **sorcered**,

and *dealt* **worked** with a *familiar spirit* **necromancer**, and with *wizards* **knowers**:

he *wrought much* **abounded to work** evil in the *sight eyes* of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, to *provoke* **vex** him to *anger*.

7 And he set a *carved image* **sculptile**, the *idol* **figurine** which he had *made* **worked**, in the house of *God* **Elohim**,

of which *God* **Elohim** had said to David and to *Solomon* **Shelomoh** his son,

In this house, and in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, which I have chosen

before all the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, will **shall** I *put set* my name *for ever* **eternally**:

8 Neither will **shall** I *any more* **remove** **turn aside** the foot of *Israel* **Yisra El** from out of the *land* **soil**

which I have *appointed* **stood** for your fathers; so that they will *take heed* **shall guard**

to *do work* all that I have *commanded* **misvahed** them, according to the whole *law* **torah**

and the statutes and the *ordinances* **judgments** by the hand of *Moses* **Mosheh**.

9 So *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** made *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** to *err* **stray**,

and to *do worse than* **work evil** above the *heathen* **goyim**, whom the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *destroyed* **desolated** before **at the face** of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

10 And the *LORD* **spake** *Yah Veh* **worded** to *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**, and to his people: but they *would not* **hearken** **hearkened not**.

11 Wherefore the *LORD* **Yah Veh** brought upon them the *captains* **governors** of the host of the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**, which took *Manasseh* **captured** **Menash Sheh** among the thorns,

and bound him with *fetters* **copper**, and *carried* **walked** him to *Babylon* **Babel**.

12 And when he was in *affliction* **tribulated**, he *besought* **stroked the face** the *LORD* of *Yah Veh* his *God* **Elohim**,

2 CHRONICLES 32, 33764

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— entombed

in the ascent of the tombs of the sons of David: and all *Yah Hudah* and the settlers of *Yeru Shalem* work him honor at his death.

— and *Menash Sheh* his son reigns in his stead.

MENASH SHEH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

33

Menash Sheh is a son of twelve years

when he begins to reign

and he reigns fifty—five years in *Yeru Shalem*:

2 and works evil in the eyes of *Yah Veh* — like the abhorrences of the *goyim* whom *Yah Veh* dispossessed

3 at the face of the sons of *Yisra El*: and he returns and builds the *bamahs* *Yechizqi Yah* his father pulled down; and he raises sacrifice altars for *Baalim* and works *asherim*;

and prostrates to all the host of the heavens and serves them;

4 and he builds sacrifice altars in the house of *Yah Veh* whereof *Yah Veh* says, In *Yeru Shalem* is my name eternally.

5 And he builds sacrifice altars

for all the host of the heavens

in the two courts of the house of *Yah Veh*:

6 and he passes his sons through the fire

in the valley of the son of burning: and he cloudglazes and prognosticates and sorcers:

and works with a necromancer and with knowers: he abounds to work evil in the eyes of *Yah Veh* to vex him.

7 And he sets a sculptile — a figurine he worked in the house of *Elohim*,

of which *Elohim* said to David

and to *Shelomoh* his son,

In this house and in *Yeru Shalem*

which I chose from all the scions of *Yisra El*

I set my name eternally:

8 I neither turn aside

the foot of *Yisra El* from the soil

which I stood for your fathers;

so that they guard to work all I misvahed them, according to the whole *torah* and the statutes and the judgments by the hand of *Mosheh*.

9 And *Menash Sheh* leads *Yah Hudah*

and the settlers of *Yeru Shalem* astray;

and to work evil above the *goyim*

whom *Yah Veh* desolated

10 at the face of the sons of *Yisra El*:

and *Yah Veh* words

to *Menash Sheh* and to his people

but they hearkened not:

11 and *Yah Veh* brings on them

the governors of the host of the sovereign of *Ashshur*

who capture *Menash Sheh* among the thorns

and bind him with copper and walk him to *Babel*:

and he is tribulated,

12 and he strokes the face of *Yah Veh* his *Elohim*

2 CHRONICLES 33, 34

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

13 and humbled himself *greatly* mightily
before the God at the face of Elohim of his fathers,
And prayed unto him:
and he was intreated of him, and heard his supplication,
and brought returned him again to Jerusalem Yeru Shalem
into his kingdom **sovereigndom**.
Then Manasseh Menash Sheh knew
that the LORD Yah Veh he was God Elohim.
14 Now after this he built a wall without the city of David,
on the west side **duskward** of Gichon Gichon,
in the valley wadi,
even to the entering in **entrance** at the fish gate portal,
and compassed **surrounded** about Ophel,
and raised **heightened** it up a very great height mightily,
and put captains **set governors** of war valour
in all the fenced **cut off** cities of Judah Yah Hudah.
15 And he took away **turned aside**
the strange gods **elohim**, and the idol figurine
out of the house of the LORD Yah Veh,
and all the **sacrifice** altars that he had built
in the mount of the house of the LORD Yah Veh,
and in Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
and cast them out of **outside** the city.
16 And he repaired **built**
the **sacrifice** altar of the LORD Yah Veh,
and sacrificed thereon
peace offerings **sacrifices** of shelamim
and *thank offerings* **sacrifices** of spread hands,
and commanded Judah **said to Yah Hudah**
to serve the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El.
17 Nevertheless the people did sacrifice still
in the high places **bamahs**,
yet unto the LORD Yah Veh their God Elohim only.
18 Now the rest of the acts **words**
of Manasseh Menash Sheh,
and his prayer unto his God Elohim,
and the words of the seers that *spake* **worded** to him
in the name
of the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El,
behold, they are written in the book **words**
of the kings **sovereigns** of Israel Yisra El.
19 His prayer also,
and how God was intreated of him **his entreaty**,
and all his sins, and his *trespass* **treason**,
and the places wherein he built high places **bamahs**,
and set up groves **stood asherim**
and graven images **sculptiles**,
before he was at the face of his being humbled:
behold, they are written **inscribed**
among the sayings **words** of the seers **seers/Hozay**.
20 So Manasseh Menash Sheh
slept **laid** with his fathers,
and they buried **entombed** him in his own house:
and Amon his son reigned in his stead.
AMON REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM
21 Amon was a son of two and twenty years *old*
when he began to reign,
and reigned two years in Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.
22 But he *did* **worked** that which was evil
in the sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh,
as *did* Manasseh **worked Menash Sheh** his father:
for Amon sacrificed unto all the *carved images* **sculptiles**
which Manasseh Menash Sheh his father
had made **worked**, and served them;
23 And humbled not himself
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
as Manasseh Menash Sheh his father
had humbled himself;
but Amon *trespassed more and more* **abounded his guilt**.
24 And his servants conspired against him,
and slew **deathified** him in his own house.
25 But the people of the land *slew* **smote**
all them that had conspired against king **sovereign** Amon;
and the people of the land
made Josiah **had Yoshi Yah** his son king **reign** in his stead.
YOSHI YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

34 Josiah Yoshi Yah was a son of eight years *old*
when he began to reign,

2 CHRONICLES 33, 34765

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and humbles himself mightily
at the face of Elohim of his fathers;
and prays to him:
13 and he is intreated of him and hears his supplication
and returns him to Yeru Shalem to his sovereigndom.
— and Menash Sheh knows Yah Veh — he is Elohim.
14 And after this
he builds a wall outside the city of David
duskward of Gichon, in the wadi,
to the entrance at the fish portal
and surrounds Ophel and heightens it mightily;
and sets governors of valour
in all the cut off cities of Yah Hudah:
15 and he turns aside
the strange elohim and the figurine
from the house of Yah Veh
and all the sacrifice altars he built
in the mount of the house of Yah Veh
and in Yeru Shalem;
and casts them outside the city:
16 and he builds the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh
and sacrifices sacrifices of shelamim thereon
and sacrifices of spread hands;
and says to Yah Hudah
to serve Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El.
17 — and the people still sacrifice in the bamahs,
but only to Yah Veh their Elohim.
18 And the rest of the words of Menash Sheh
and his prayer to his Elohim
and the words of the seers who worded to him
in the name of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El, behold,
they are in the words of the sovereigns of Yisra El:
19 and his prayer and his entreaty
and all his sins and his treason;
and the places he built bamahs
and stood asherim and sculptiles
at the face of his being humbled:
behold, they are inscribed
among the words of seers/Hozay.
20 And Menash Sheh lies down with his fathers
— entombed in his own house:
and Amon his son reigns in his stead.
AMON REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM
21 Amon is a son of twenty—two years
when he begins to reign;
and reigns two years in Yeru Shalem:
22 and he works evil in the eyes of Yah Veh,
as Menash Sheh his father worked:
for Amon sacrifices to all the sculptiles
Menash Sheh his father worked
and serves them:
23 and humbles not himself at the face of Yah Veh
as Menash Sheh his father humbled himself:
for Amon abounds his guilt.
24 And his servants conspire against him
and deathify him in his own house:
25 and the people of the land
smite all who conspire against sovereign Amon;
and the people of the land
have Yoshi Yah his son reign in his stead.
YOSHI YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM
34 Yoshi Yah is a son of eight years
when he begins to reign:

2 CHRONICLES 34

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and he reigned in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
one and thirty years.

2 And he *did worked* that which was *right straight*
in the *sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh*,
and walked in the ways of David his father,
and *declined turned aside*
neither to the right *hand*, nor to the left.

3 For in the eighth year of his reign,
while he was yet *young a lad*,
he began to seek after the *God Elohim* of David his father:
and in the twelfth year he began to *purge purify*
Judah Yah Hudah and *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
from the *high places bamahs*, and the *groves asherim*,
and the *carved images sculptiles*, and the molten *images*.

4 And they *brake pulled* down
the *sacrifice* altars of Baalim *in his presence from his face*;
and the *images sun icons*,
that were *on high over* above them, he cut down;
and the *groves asherim*, and the *carved images sculptiles*,
and the molten *images*, he *brake in pieces pulled*,
and *made dust pulverized* of them,
and *strowed sprinkled it*
upon the *graves face of the tombs* of them
that had sacrificed unto them.

5 And he burnt the bones of the priests
upon their *sacrifice* altars,
and *cleansed purified*
Judah Yah Hudah and *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.

6 And *so did he* in the cities of *Manasseh Menash Sheh*,
and *Ephraim Ephrayim*, and *Simeon Shimon*,
even unto Naphtali,
with their *mattocks swords* round about.

7 And when he had *broken pulled* down
the *sacrifice* altars and the *groves asherim*,
and had *beaten crushed* the *graven images sculptiles*
into powder and pulverized,
and cut down all the *idols sun icons*
throughout all the land of *Israel Yisra El*,
he returned to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.

8 Now in the eighteenth year of his reign,
when he had *purged purified* the land, and the house,
he sent Shaphan the son of *Azaliah Asal Yah*,
and *Maaseiah Maase Yah* the governor of the city,
and *Joah Yah Ach* the son of *Joahaz Yah Achaz*
the *recorder remembrancer*,
to *repair strengthen*
the house of the *LORD Yah Veh* his *God Elohim*.

9 And when they came
to *Hilkiah Hilqi Yah* the *high great* priest,
they *delivered gave* the *money silver*
that was brought into the house of *God Elohim*,
which the *Levites Leviym*
that *kept guarded* the *doors thresholds* had gathered
of the hand
of *Manasseh Menash Sheh* and *Ephraim Ephrayim*,
and of all the *remnant survivors* of *Israel Yisra El*,
and of all *Judah Yah Hudah* and *Benjamin Ben Yamin*;
and they *returned to Jerusalem settled in Yeru Shalem*.

10 And they *put gave it*
in the hand of the *workmen workers*
that *had the oversight of oversaw*
the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and they gave it to the *workmen workers*
that *wrought worked* in the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
to *repair and amend strengthen* the house:

11 Even to the artificers and builders gave they it,
to *buy chattel* hewn stone, and timber for *couplings joints*,
and to *floor beam* the houses
which the *kings sovereigns* of *Judah Yah Hudah*
had *destroyed ruined*.

12 And the men *did worked* the work *faithfully trustworthily*:
and the overseers of them
were *Jahath Yachath* and *Obadiah Obad Yah*,
the *Levites Leviym*, of the sons of Merari;
and *Zechariah Zechar Yah* and Meshullam,
of the sons of the *Kohathites Qeathiy*,
to *set it forward oversee*;
and *other* of the *Levites Leviym*,
all that could *skill discern* of instruments of *musick song*.

2 CHRONICLES 34

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and he reigns in Yeru Shalem thirty—one years:
2 and he works straight in the eyes of Yah Veh
and walks in the ways of David his father:
and turns aside neither to the right nor to the left.

3 And in the eighth year of his reign
— he is still a lad
he begins to seek after the Elohim of David his father:
and in the twelfth year
he begins to purify Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem
from the bamahs and the asherim
and the sculptiles and the molten:
4 and they pull down
the sacrifice altars of Baalim from his face;
and he cuts down
the sun icons over above them;
and he pulls down and pulverizes
the asherim and the sculptiles and the molten,
and sprinkles on the face of the tombs
of them who sacrificed to them:

5 and he burns the bones of the priests
on their sacrifice altars;
and purifies Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem
— and in the cities of Menash Sheh
and Ephrayim and Shimon — even to Naphtali,
with their swords all around:

7 and he pulls down
the sacrifice altars and the asherim;
and crushes and pulverizes the sculptiles;
and cuts down all the sun icons
throughout all the land of Yisra El:
and he returns to Yeru Shalem.

8 And in the eighteenth year of his reign
he purifies the land and the house:
and he sends Shaphan the son of Asal Yah
and Maase Yah the governor of the city
and Yah Ach the son of Yah Achaz the remembrancer
to strengthen the house of Yah Veh his Elohim.

9 and they come to Hilqi Yah the great priest;
and they give the silver
brought into the house of Elohim,
which the Leviym who guard the thresholds
gather of the hand of Menash Sheh and Ephrayim
and of all the survivors of Yisra El
and of all Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin;
and they settle in Yeru Shalem.

10 And they give it into the hand of the workers
who oversee the house of Yah Veh;
and they give it to the workers
who work in the house of Yah Veh
to repair and strengthen the house:

11 and they give it to the artificers and builders
to chattel hewn stone and timber for joints
and to beam the houses
the sovereigns of Yah Hudah ruined.

12 And the men work the work trustworthily:
and their overseers are Yachath and Obad Yah
the Leviym of the sons of Merari;
and Zechar Yah and Meshullam,
of the sons of the Qeathiy to oversee:
and of the Leviym
all who discern instruments of song:

2 CHRONICLES 34

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 13 Also
they were over the *bearers of burdens* **burdenbearers**,
and were overseers of all that *wrought* **worked** the work
in any manner of service **by service**:
and of the *Levites* **Leviym** there were scribes,
and officers, and porters.
- THE SCROLL OF THE TORAH IS FOUND**
- 14 And when they brought out the *money* **silver**
that was brought into the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Hilkiah **Hilqi Yah** the priest
found a *book* **scroll** of the *law* **torah** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
given by Moses **by the hand of Mosheh**.
- 15 And *Hilkiah* **Hilqi Yah** answered
and said to Shaphan the scribe,
I have found the *book* **scroll** of the *law* **torah**
in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
And *Hilkiah* **Hilqi Yah**
delivered **gave** the *book* **scroll** to Shaphan.
- 16 And Shaphan
carried the *book* **scroll** to the *king* **sovereign**,
and *brought the king word back again*
returned word to the sovereign, saying,
All that was *committed* **given** to the *hand* of thy servants,
they *do* **work** it.
- 17 And they have
gathered together **poured** the *money* **silver**
that was found in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and have *delivered* **given** it into the hand of the overseers,
and to the hand of the *workmen* **workers**.
- 18 Then Shaphan the scribe told the *king* **sovereign**,
saying,
Hilkiah **Hilqi Yah** the priest hath given me a *book* **scroll**.
And Shaphan *read it* **called it out**
before **at the face of** the *king* **sovereign**.
And **so be** it came to pass,
when the *king* **sovereign**
had heard the words of the *law* **torah**,
that he *rent* **ripped** his clothes.
- 20 And the *king* **sovereign**
commanded *Hilkiah* **misvahed Hilqi Yah**,
and *Ahikam* **Achiy Qam** the son of Shaphan,
and *Abdon* the son of *Micah* **Michah Yah**,
and Shaphan the scribe,
and *Asaiah* **Asah Yah** a servant of the *king's* **sovereign's**,
saying,
- 21 Go, enquire of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** for me,
and for them that *are left* **survive**
in *Israel* **Yisra El** and in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
concerning the words of the *book* **scroll** that is found:
for great is the *wrath* **fury** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
that is poured out upon us,
because our fathers
have not *kept* **guarded** the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to *do* **work**
after all that is *written* **inscribed** in this *book* **scroll**.
- 22 And *Hilkiah* **Hilqi Yah**,
and they *that the king had appointed* **of the sovereign**,
went to Huldah the prophetess,
the *wife* **woman** of Shallum the son of *Tikvath* **Tiqvah**,
the son of Hasrah, *keeper* **guard** of the *wardrobe* **clothes**;
(now she *dwelt* **settled** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
in the *college* **second part**;)
and they *spake* **worded that** to her to *that effect*.
And she *answered* **said to** them,
Thus saith
the *LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Tell ye **Say to** the man that sent you to me,
Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Behold, I *will* **shall** bring evil upon this place,
and upon the *inhabitants* **settlers** thereof,
even all the *curses* **oaths**
that are *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
which they have *read* **called out**
before **at the face of**
the *king* **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**:
Because they have forsaken me,
and have *burned* **incense** **incensed**
unto other *gods* **elohim**,
- 25

2 CHRONICLES 34

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 13 and over the burdenbearers
are overseers of all who work the work
— service by service:
and of the Leviym
scribes and officers and porters.
- THE SCROLL OF THE TORAH IS FOUND**
- 14 And they bring out the silver
brought into the house of Yah Veh:
and Hilqi Yah the priest
finds a scroll of the torah of Yah Veh
by the hand of Mosheh:
and Hilqi Yah answers
and says to Shaphan the scribe,
I found the scroll of the torah
in the house of Yah Veh.
- 16 And Hilqi Yah gives the scroll to Shaphan:
and Shaphan carries the scroll to the sovereign
and returns word to the sovereign, saying,
All that is given to the hand of your servants,
they work:
— and they pour the silver
found in the house of Yah Veh;
and give it into the hand of the overseers
and to the hand of the workers.
- 18 And Shaphan the scribe tells the sovereign,
saying, Hilqi Yah the priest gave me a scroll.
— and Shaphan calls it out
at the face of the sovereign.
- 19 And so be it,
the sovereign hears the words of the torah,
and he rips his clothes:
20 and the sovereign misvahs Hilqi Yah
and Achiy Qam the son of Shaphan
and Abdon the son of Michah Yah
and Shaphan the scribe
and Asah Yah a servant of the sovereign, saying,
21 Go, enquire of Yah Veh for me
and for them who survive
in Yisra El and in Yah Hudah,
concerning the words of the scroll that is found:
for great is the fury of Yah Veh poured out on us
because our fathers
guarded not the word of Yah Veh
— to work according to all inscribed in this scroll.
- 22 And Hilqi Yah and they of the sovereign
go to Huldah the prophetess
the woman of Shallum the son of Tiqvah
the son of Hasrah, guard of the clothes;
— she settles in Yeru Shalem in the second part
and thus they word to her.
- 23 And she says to them,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
Say to the man who sends you to me,
24 Thus says Yah Veh:
Behold, I bring evil on this place and on its settlers,
all the oaths inscribed in the scroll
which they call out
at the face of the sovereign of Yah Hudah:
because they forsook me
and incensed to other elohim,
- 25

2 CHRONICLES 34, 35

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

that they might *provoke* **vex** me to anger
with all the works of their hands;
therefore my *wrath* **fury**
shall be poured out upon this place,
and shall not be quenched.

26 And as for the *king* **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
who sent you to enquire of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
so **thus** shall ye say unto him,
Thus saith
the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
concerning the words which thou hast heard;

27 Because thine heart was *tender* **tenderized**,
and thou didst humble thyself
before God **at the face of Elohim**,
when thou heardest his words against this place,
and against the *inhabitants* **settlers** thereof,
and humbledst thyself *before me* **at my face**,
and didst *rend* **rip** thy clothes,
and weep *before* **at my face**;
I have even heard thee also,
saith *the LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

28 Behold, I *will* **shall** gather thee to thy fathers,
and thou shalt be — gathered to thy *grave* **tomb**
in *peace* **shalom**,
neither shall thine eyes see all the evil
that I *will* **shall** bring upon this place,
and upon the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the same.
So they
brought the king word again
returned word to the sovereign.

29 Then the *king* **sovereign** sent and gathered *together*
all the elders
of Judah **Yah Hudah** and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

30 And the *king* went up **sovereign ascended**
into the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and all the *men* of Judah **Yah Hudyi**,
and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and the priests, and the *Levites* **Leviym**, and all the people,
from great and **to** small:
and he *read* **called out** in their ears
all the words of the *book* **scroll** of the covenant
that was found in the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

31 And the *king* **sovereign** stood in his *place* **station**,
and *made* **cut** a covenant
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**,
to walk after *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and to *keep* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**,
and his *testimonies* **witnesses**, and his statutes,
with all his heart, and with all his soul,
to *perform* **work** the words of the covenant
which are written **inscribed** in this *book* **scroll**.

32 And he caused all that were *present* **found**
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
to stand to it.
And the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
did **worked** according to the covenant of *God* **Elohim**,
the *God* **Elohim** of their fathers.

33 And *Josiah* took away **Yoshi Yah** turned aside
all the *abominations* **abhorrences**
out of all the *countries* that *pertained* **lands**
to the *children* **of the sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and made all that were *present* **found** in *Israel* **Yisra El**
to serve,
even — to serve *the LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**.
And all his days they *departed* **not** **turned not** aside
from *following the LORD* **after Yah Veh**,
the *God* **Elohim** of their fathers.

YOSHI YAH WORKS THE PASACH

35

Moreover

Josiah kept **Yoshi Yah** worked a *passover* **pasach**
unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
and they *killed* **slaughtered** the *passover* **pasach**
on the fourteenth *day* of the first month.

2 And he *set* **stood** the priests in their *charges* **guards**,
and *encouraged* **strengthened** them to the service
of the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,

3 And said unto the *Levites* **Leviym**
that taught all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which were holy unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,

2 CHRONICLES 34, 35768

exeGeses companion BIBLE

to vex me with all the works of their hands:
and I pour out my fury on this place
and quench it not.

26 And as for the sovereign of Yah Hudah
who sends you to enquire of Yah Veh
say to him thus:
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
whose words you heard:

27 because you tenderize your heart
and humble yourself at the face of Elohim
— when you hear his words against this place
and against the settlers thereof;
and humble yourself at my face
and rip your clothes and weep at my face;
I also hear you
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

28 Behold, I gather you to your fathers,
— gather to your tomb in shalom,
that your eyes not see all the evil
I bring on this place
and on the settlers of the same.

And they return word to the sovereign:
and the sovereign sends and gathers
all the elders of Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem:

30 and the sovereign ascends to the house of Yah Veh
with all the Yah Hudyi
and the settlers of Yeru Shalem
and the priests and the Leviym and all the people
from great to small:
and he calls out in their ears
all the words of the scroll of the covenant
they found in the house of Yah Veh.

31 And the sovereign stands in his station
and cuts a covenant at the face of Yah Veh
— to walk after Yah Veh and to guard his misvoth
and his witnesses and his statutes
with all his heart and with all his soul
— to work the words of the covenant
inscribed in this scroll.

32 And he has all
who are found in Yeru Shalem and Ben Yamin
to stand to it:
and the settlers of Yeru Shalem
work according to the covenant of Elohim
the Elohim of their fathers.

33 And Yoshi Yah turns aside all the abhorrences
from all the lands of the sons of Yisra El;
and has all who are found in Yisra El to serve
— to serve Yah Veh their Elohim:
and all his days,
they turn not aside from after Yah Veh
the Elohim of their fathers.

YOSHI YAH WORKS THE PASACH

35

And Yoshi Yah works a pasach
to Yah Veh in Yeru Shalem:
and they slaughter the pasach
on the fourteenth of the first month:
and he stands the priests in their guards
and strengthens them
for the service of the house of Yah Veh:
and says to the Leviym who teach all Yisra El
— who are holy to Yah Veh,

2 CHRONICLES 35

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Put Give the holy ark in the house
which Solomon **Shelomoh** the son of David
king sovereign of Israel Yisra El did build;
it shall not be a burden upon your shoulders:
serve now *the LORD Yah Veh* your *God Elohim*,
and his people *Israel Yisra El*,
4 And prepare *yourselves* by the houses of your fathers,
after your *courses allotments*,
according to the *writing inscribing*
of David *king sovereign of Israel Yisra El*,
and according to the *writing inscribing*
of Solomon **Shelomoh** his son.
5 And stand in the *holy place holies*
according to the divisions
of the *families house* of the fathers of your brethren
the *sons of the people*,
and after the *division the allotment*
of the *families house of the fathers* of the *Levites Levium*.
6 So *kill slaughter* the *passover pasach*,
and *sanctify hallow* yourselves, and prepare your brethren,
that they may *do work*
according to the word of *the LORD Yah Veh*
by the hand of *Moses Mosheh*.
7 And *Josiah Yoshi Yah*
gave *lifted* to the *sons of the people*,
of the flock, lambs and *kids sons of doe goats*,
all for the *passover pasach offerings*,
for all that were present,
to the number of thirty thousand,
and three thousand *bullocks oxen*:
these were of the *king's substance sovereign's acquisition*.
8 And his *princes gave willingly governors volunteered*
unto the people, to the priests, and to the *Levites Levium*:
Hilkiah Hilqi Yah
and *Zechariah Zechar Yah* and *Jehiel Yechi El*,
rulers eminent of the house of *God Elohim*,
gave *lifted up* unto the priests
for the *passover pasach offerings*
two thousand and six hundred *small cattle*
and three hundred oxen.
9 *Cononiah Konan Yah* also, and *Shemaiah Shema Yah*
and *Nethaneeel Nethan El*, his brethren,
and *Hashabiah Hashab Yah* and *Jeiel Yei El*
and *Jozabad Yah Zabad*,
chief governors of the *Levites Levium*,
gave *lifted up* unto the *Levites Levium*
for *passover pasach offerings*
five thousand *small cattle*, and five hundred oxen.
10 So the service was prepared,
and the priests stood in their *place station*,
and the *Levites Levium* in their *courses allotments*,
according to the *king's commandment sovereign's misvah*.
11 And they *killed slaughtered* the *passover pasach*,
and the priests sprinkled *the blood* from their hands,
and the *Levites flayed Levium stripped* them.
12 And they *removed turned aside*
the *burnt offerings holocausts*,
that they might give according to the divisions
of the *families house of the fathers*
of the *sons of the people*,
to offer *oblate* unto *the LORD Yah Veh*,
as it is *written inscribed* in the *book scroll* of *Moses Mosheh*.
And so did they with the oxen.
13 And they *roasted stewed* the *passover pasach* with fire
according to the *ordinance judgment*:
but the *other holy offerings holies*
sod stewed they in *pots caldrons*,
and in *caldrons boilers*, and in *pans skillets*,
and *divided ran* them *speedily*
among all the *sons of the people*.
14 And afterward they *made ready prepared*
for themselves, and for the priests:
because the priests the sons of *Aaron Aharon*
were busied in offering of burnt offerings
holocausted holocausts and the fat until night;
therefore the *Levites Levium* prepared for themselves,
and for the priests the sons of *Aaron Aharon*.
15 And the singers the sons of *Asaph*
were in their *place function*,

2 CHRONICLES 35

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Give the holy ark in the house
Shelomoh the son of David sovereign of Yisra El built
— not for a burden on your shoulders:
serve now Yah Veh your Elohim
and his people Yisra El:
4 and prepare by the houses of your fathers,
after your allotments,
according to the inscribing
of David sovereign of Yisra El;
and according to the inscribing
of Shelomoh his son:
5 and stand in the holies
according to the divisions
of the house of the fathers of your brothers
the sons of the people;
and the allotment
of the house of the fathers of the Levium:
6 and slaughter the pasach
and hallow yourselves and prepare your brothers
to work according to the word of Yah Veh
by the hand of Mosheh.
7 And Yoshi Yah
lifts to the sons of the people,
of the flock, lambs and sons of doe goats
— all for the pasach for all who are present
to the number of
thirty thousand and three thousand oxen
— from the acquisition of the sovereign.
8 And his governors volunteer to the people,
to the priests and to the Levium:
and Hilqi Yah and Zechar Yah and Yechi El,
eminent of the house of Elohim,
lift up to the priests for the pasach
two thousand
9 and six hundred and three hundred oxen:
and Konan Yah and Shema Yah
and Nethan El, his brothers
and Hashab Yah and Yei El and Yah Zabad
governors of the Levium,
lift up to the Levium for the pasach
five thousand and five hundred oxen.
10 So they prepare the service:
and the priests stand in their station
and the Levium in their allotments
according to the misvah of the sovereign:
11 and they slaughter the pasach;
and the priests sprinkle from their hands
and the Levium strip them;
and they turn aside the holocausts
to give according to the divisions
12 of the house of the fathers of the sons of the people
to oblate to Yah Veh
— as inscribed in the scroll of Mosheh
— and thus with the oxen.
13 And they stew the pasach with fire
according to the judgment:
and they stew the holies
in caldrons and in boilers and in skillets
and run them to all the sons of the people.
14 And afterward they prepare
for themselves and for the priests:
because the priests the sons of Aharon
holocaust holocausts and the fat until night;
and the Levium prepare for themselves
and for the priests the sons of Aharon.
15 And the singers the sons of Asaph
are in their function,

2 CHRONICLES 35

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

according to the *commandment misvah*
of David, and Asaph, and Heman,
and Jeduthun **Yeduthun** the *king's sovereign's seer*;
and the porters *waited at every gate at portal by portal*;
they might not *depart turn aside* from their service;
for their brethren the *Levites Leviym* prepared for them.
16 So all the service of the *LORD Yah Veh*
was prepared the same day,
to *keep work* the *passover pasach*,
and to *offer burnt offerings holocaust holocausts*
upon the *sacrifice altar of the LORD Yah Veh*,
according to the *commandment misvah*
of *king Josiah sovereign Yoshi Yah*.
17 And the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*
that were *present found*
kept worked the *passover pasach* at that time,
and the *feast celebration of unleavened bread matsah*
seven days.
18 And there was no *passover like to pasach such as* that
kept worked in *Israel Yisra El*
from the days of *Samuel Shemu El* the prophet;
neither did all the *kings sovereigns of Israel Yisra El*
keep work such a *passover pasach*
as *Josiah kept Yoshi Yah worked*,
and the priests, and the *Levites Leviym*,
and all *Judah Yah Hudah* and *Israel Yisra El*
that were *present*,
and the *inhabitants settlers of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
19 In the eighteenth year
of the *reign sovereigndom of Josiah Yoshi Yah*
was this *passover kept pasach worked*.
THE DEATH OF YOSHI YAH
20 After all this,
when *Josiah Yoshi Yah* had prepared the *temple house*,
Necho king sovereign of Egypt Misrayim
came up ascended to fight
against *Charchemish Karchemish* by Euphrates:
and *Josiah Yoshi Yah* went out *against to meet* him.
21 But he sent *ambassadors angels* to him, saying,
What have I to do with thee,
thou *king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah*?
I come — not against thee this day,
but against the house wherewith I have war:
for *God commanded Elohim said* to me to make haste:
forbear cease thee from *meddling with God Elohim*,
who is with me,
that he *destroy ruin* thee not.
22 Nevertheless
Josiah would not turn Yoshi Yah turned not
his face from him,
but disguised himself, that he might fight with him,
and hearkened not unto the words of *Necho*
from the mouth of *God Elohim*,
and came to fight in the valley of Megiddo.
23 And the *archers shooters*
shot at *king Josiah sovereign Yoshi Yah*;
and the *king sovereign* said to his servants,
Have me away Pass me over;
for I am *sore wounded mighty sick*.
24 His servants therefore
took passed him out of that chariot,
and *put rode* him in the second chariot that he had;
and they *brought walked* him to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and he died,
and was *buried entombed*
in *one of the sepulchres tombs* of his fathers.
And all *Judah Yah Hudah* and *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
mourned for *Josiah Yoshi Yah*.
25 And *Jeremiah Yirme Yah* lamented for *Josiah Yoshi Yah*:
and all the *singing men songsters*
and the *singing women songstresses*
spake say of *Josiah Yoshi Yah* in their lamentations
to this day,
and *made gave* them *an ordinance a statute*
in *Israel Yisra El*: and, behold,
they are *written inscribed* in the lamentations.
26 Now the rest of the *acts words of Josiah Yoshi Yah*,
and his *goodness mercy*,

2 CHRONICLES 35

exeGesés companion BIBLE

according to the *misvah*
of David and Asaph and Heman
and Yeduthun the seer of the sovereign;
and the porters at portal by portal;
that they not turn aside from their service;
for their brothers the *Leviym* prepare for them.
16 And all the service of *Yah Veh*
is prepared the same day
— to work the *pasach* and to *holocaust holocausts*
on the *sacrifice altar of Yah Veh*,
according to the *misvah* of sovereign *Yoshi Yah*:
and the sons of *Yisra El* they find
work the *pasach* at that time
and the celebration of *matsah* seven days.
17
18 And no *pasach* such as this
was ever worked in *Yisra El*
from the days of *Shemu El* the prophet:
and none of the sovereigns of *Yisra El*
ever worked such a *pasach*
as *Yoshi Yah* works with the priests and the *Leviym*
and all *Yah Hudah* and *Yisra El* who are present
and the settlers of *Yeru Shalem*.
19 — in the eighteenth year
of the sovereigndom of *Yoshi Yah*
they work this *pasach*.
THE DEATH OF YOSHI YAH
20 After all this, *Yoshi Yah* prepares the house,
and *Necho* sovereign of *Misrayim*
ascends to fight *Karchemish* by Euphrates:
and *Yoshi Yah* goes to meet him.
21 And he sends angels to him, saying,
What have I to do with you, sovereign of *Yah Hudah*?
— not against you this day
but I war against the house:
for *Elohim* says to me to hasten!
Cease from *Elohim* who is with me
that he not ruin you.
22 And *Yoshi Yah* turns not his face from him;
but disguises himself to fight him;
and hearkens not to the words of *Necho*
from the mouth of *Elohim*;
and comes to fight in the valley of *Megiddo*.
23 And the shooters shoot sovereign *Yoshi Yah*;
and the sovereign says to his servants,
Pass me over; for I am mighty sick.
24 And his servants pass him from that chariot
and ride him in his second chariot;
and they walk him to *Yeru Shalem* and he dies
— entombed in the tombs of his fathers:
and all *Yah Hudah* and *Yeru Shalem*
mourns for *Yoshi Yah*:
25 and *Yirme Yah* laments for *Yoshi Yah*:
and all the songsters and songstresses
say of *Yoshi Yah* in their lamentations to this day
and gives them for a statute in *Yisra El*:
and behold, they are inscribed in the lamentations.
26 And the rest of the words of *Yoshi Yah*
and his mercy,

2 CHRONICLES 35, 36

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

according to that which was written inscribed
in the law **torah** of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
27 And his **deeds words**, first and last, behold,
they are written inscribed
in the book **scroll** of the **kings sovereigns**
of **Israel Yisra El** and **Judah Yah Hudah**.

YAH ACHAZ REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

36

Then the people of the land
took **Jehoahaz Yah Achaz** the son of **Josiah Yoshi Yah**,
and made king **had him reign**
in his father's stead in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
2 **Jehoahaz Yah Achaz**
was a son of twenty and three years old
when he began to reign,
and he reigned three months in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
3 And the king **sovereign** of **Egypt Misrayim**
put him down **turned him aside** at **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
and **condemned penalized** the land
in an hundred **talents rounds** of silver
and a **talent round** of gold.

YAH YAQIM REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

4 And the king **sovereign** of **Egypt Misrayim**
made **Eliakim had El Yaqim** his brother king **reign**
over **Judah Yah Hudah** and **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
and turned his name to **Jehoiakim Yah Yaqim**.
And **Necho** took **Jehoahaz Yah Achaz** his brother,
and carried him to **Egypt Misrayim**.
5 **Jehoiakim Yah Yaqim**
was a son of twenty and five years old
when he began to reign,
and he reigned eleven years in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**:
and he **did worked** that which was evil
in the **sight eyes** of the LORD **Yah Veh** his **God Elohim**.

6 Against him **came up ascended**
Nebuchadnezzar Nebukadnets Tsar
king **sovereign** of **Babylon Babel**,
and bound him in **fetters copper**,
to carry him **go** to **Babylon Babel**.
7 **Nebuchadnezzar Nebukadnets Tsar**
also carried of the **vessels instruments**
of the house of the LORD **Yah Veh** to **Babylon Babel**,
and **put gave** them in his **temple manse** at **Babylon Babel**.
8 Now the rest of the **acts words** of **Jehoiakim Yah Yaqim**,
and his **abominations abhorrences** which he **did worked**,
and that which was found in him, behold,
they are written inscribed

in the book **scroll** of the **kings sovereigns**
of **Israel Yisra El** and **Judah Yah Hudah**:
and **Jehoiachin Yah Yachin** his son reigned in his stead.

9 **Jehoiachin Yah Yachin** was a son of eight years old
when he began to reign,
and he reigned three months and ten days
in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**:
and he **did worked** that which was evil
in the **sight eyes** of the LORD **Yah Veh**.

10 And when the year was expired at the turn of the year,
king **Nebuchadnezzar sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar** sent,
and brought him to **Babylon Babel**,
with the **goodly vessels instruments of desire**
of the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and made **Zedekiah had Sidqi Yah** his brother king **reign**
over **Judah Yah Hudah** and **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.

SIDQI YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

11 **Zedekiah Sidqi Yah**
was a son of one and twenty years old
when he began to reign,
and reigned eleven years in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
12 And he **did worked** that which was evil
in the **sight eyes** of the LORD **Yah Veh** his **God Elohim**,
and humbled not himself
before **Jeremiah at the face of Yirme Yah** the prophet
speaking from the mouth of the LORD **Yah Veh**.
13 And he also rebelled against
king **Nebuchadnezzar sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar**,
who had made him **swear oath** by **God Elohim**:
but he **stiffened hardened** his neck,
and **hardened strengthened** his heart from turning
unto the LORD **God Yah Veh Elohim** of **Israel Yisra El**.

2 CHRONICLES 35, 36771

exeGesés companion BIBLE

according to that inscribed in the torah of Yah Veh;
27 and his words, first and last, behold,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns
of **Yisra El** and **Yah Hudah**?

YAH ACHAZ REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

36

And the people of the land
take **Yah Achaz** the son of **Yoshi Yah**
and have him reign in the stead of his father
in **Yeru Shalem**.
2 **Yah Achaz** is a son of twenty—three years
when he begins to reign:
and he reigns three months in **Yeru Shalem**.

3 And the sovereign of **Misrayim**
turns him aside at **Yeru Shalem**
and penalizes the land
a hundred rounds of silver and a round of gold.

YAH YAQIM REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

4 And the sovereign of **Misrayim**
has **El Yaqim** his brother reign
over **Yah Hudah** and **Yeru Shalem**:
and turns his name to **Yah Yaqim**.

And **Necho** takes **Yah Achaz** his brother
and carries him to **Misrayim**.
5 **Yah Yaqim** is a son of twenty—five years
when he begins to reign:
and he reigns eleven years in **Yeru Shalem**:
and he works evil in the eyes of **Yah Veh** his **Elohim**.

6 **Nebukadnets Tsar** sovereign of **Babel**
ascends against him and binds him in copper
to go to **Babel**:
7 and **Nebukadnets Tsar** carries the instruments
of the house of **Yah Veh** to **Babel**
and gives them in his manse at **Babel**.

8 And the rest of the words of **Yah Yaqim**
and the abhorrences he works
and what is found in him, behold,
are they not inscribed in the scroll of the words
of the days of the sovereigns
of **Yisra El** and **Yah Hudah**?

9 And **Yah Yachin** his son reigns in his stead:
Yah Yachin is a son of eight years
when he begins to reign:
and he reigns three months and ten days
in **Yeru Shalem**:
and he works evil in the eyes of **Yah Veh**.

10 And at the turn of the year,
sovereign **Nebukadnets Tsar**
sends and brings him to **Babel**,
with the instruments of desire
of the house of **Yah Veh**:
and has **Sidqi Yah** his brother reign
over **Yah Hudah** and **Yeru Shalem**.

SIDQI YAH REIGNS IN YERU SHALEM

11 **Sidqi Yah** is a son of twenty—one years
when he begins to reign:
and reigns eleven years in **Yeru Shalem**:
and he works evil
in the eyes of **Yah Veh** his **Elohim**
and humbles not at the face of **Yirme Yah** the prophet
from the mouth of **Yah Veh**:
13 and he also rebels
against sovereign **Nebukadnets Tsar**
— who has him oath by **Elohim**:
but he hardens his neck and strengthens his heart
from turning to **Yah Veh Elohim** of **Yisra El**.

2 CHRONICLES 36

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 Moreover **Also**
all the *chief* **governors** of the priests, and the people,
transgressed very much
in treasoning, abounded to treason
after all the *abominations* **abhorrences**
of the *heathen* **goyim**;
and *polluted* **fouled** the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
which he had hallowed in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem.**

THE FURY OF YAH VEH AGAINST HIS PEOPLE

15 And the *LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of their fathers
sent to them by **the hand of** his *messengers* **angels**,
rising up betimes **starting early**, and sending;
because he had compassion on his people,
and on his *dwelling place* **habitation**;

16 But they *mocked* **derided**
the *messengers* **angels** of *God* **Elohim**,
and despised his words,
and *misused* **deceived** his prophets,
until the *wrath* **fury** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
arose **ascended** against his people,
till there was no *remedy* **healing**.

17 Therefore he *brought* **ascended** upon them
the *king* **sovereign** of the *Chaldees* **Kasdiy**,
who *slew* **slaughtered** their *young men* **youths**
with the sword
in the house of their *sanctuary* **holies**,
and had no compassion
upon *young man* **youth** or *maiden* **virgin**,
old man, or *him that stooped for age* **aged**:
he gave them all into his hand.

18 And all the *vessels* **instruments**
of the house of *God* **Elohim**, great and small,
and the treasures of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and the treasures of the *king* **sovereign**,
and of his *princes* **governors**;
all these he brought to *Babylon* **Babel**.

19 And they burnt the house of *God* **Elohim**,
and *brake* **pulled** down
the wall of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and burnt all the *palaces* **citadels** thereof with fire,
and *destroyed* **ruined**
all the *goodly vessels* **instruments of desire** thereof.
And *them that had escaped* **the survivors**
from the sword
carried he away **exiled he** to *Babylon* **Babel**;
where they were servants to him and his sons
until the reign of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of Persia:

21 To fulfil the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
by the mouth of *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
until the land
had enjoyed **pleased** her *sabbaths* **shabbaths**:
for as long as **all the days** she *lay desolate* **desolated**
she *kept sabbath* **shabbathized**,
to fulfil *threescore and ten* **seventy** years.

KORESH IS MUSTERED TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

22 Now in the first year of *Cyrus* **Koresh**,
king **sovereign** of Persia,
that the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
spoken by the mouth of *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
might be *accomplished* **finished**,
the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
stirred up **wakened** the spirit of *Cyrus* **Koresh**,
king **sovereign** of Persia,
that he *made a proclamation* **passed a voice**
throughout all his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
and *put it also in writing* **also inscribed**, saying,
Thus saith *Cyrus king* **Koresh sovereign** of Persia,
All the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the earth hath
the *LORD* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of *heaven* **the heavens**
given me;
and he hath *charged* **mustered** me
to build him an house in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
which is in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
Who is there among you of all his people?
The *LORD* **Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim** be with him,
and let him *go up* **ascend**.

2 CHRONICLES 36

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 Also,
all the governors of the priests and the people,
in treasoning, abound to treason
after all the abhorrences of the goyim;
and foul the house of Yah Veh
which he hallowed in Yeru Shalem.

THE FURY OF YAH VEH AGAINST HIS PEOPLE

15 And Yah Veh Elohim of their fathers
sends to them by the hand of his angels
— starting early and sending;
because he has compassion
on his people and on his habitation:
and they deride the angels of Elohim
and despise his words and deceive his prophets
until the fury of Yah Veh ascends against his people
— until there is no healing.

17 And he ascends
the sovereign of the Kasdiy on them
who slaughters their youths with the sword
in the house of their holies:
and has no compassion
on youth or virgin; old man or aged:
he gives them all into his hand:

18 and all the instruments of the house of Elohim
— great and small
and the treasures of the house of Yah Veh
and the treasures of the sovereign
and of his governors
— all these he brings to Babel:
and they burn the house of Elohim
and pull down the wall of Yeru Shalem
and burn all the citadels thereof with fire
and ruin all the instruments of desire thereof:
and he exiles them who survive the sword
to Babel;
where they are servants to him and his sons
until the reign of the sovereigndom of Persia:
to fulfill the word of Yah Veh
by the mouth of Yirme Yah,
until the land is pleased in her shabbaths:
all the days she desolates, she shabbathizes
to fulfill seventy years.

KORESH IS MUSTERED TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

22 And in the first year of Koresh sovereign of Persia
— in order to finish
the word of Yah Veh by the mouth of Yirme Yah,
Yah Veh wakens the spirit
of Koresh sovereign of Persia:
and he passes a voice
throughout all his sovereigndom
and also inscribes, saying,
Thus says Koresh sovereign of Persia:
All the sovereigndoms of the earth
Yah Veh Elohim of the heavens gives me:
and he musters me to build him a house
in Yeru Shalem, in Yah Hudah.
Who is there among you of all his people?
Yah Veh his Elohim *is* with him
as he ascends.

EZRA 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

KORESH IS MUSTERED TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

1 Now **And** in the first year of *Cyrus* **Koresh**
king **sovereign** of Persia,
that the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
by the mouth of *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
might be fulfilled **finished**,
the *LORD* stirred up **Yah Veh** wakened the spirit
of *Cyrus* king **Koresh** **sovereign** of Persia,
that he made **passed** a proclamation **voice**
throughout all his *kingdom* **sovereignty**,
and put it also in writing **inscribing**, saying,
2 Thus saith *Cyrus* king **Koresh** **sovereign** of Persia,
The *LORD* God **Yah Veh Elohim** of heaven the heavens
hath given me
all the *kingdoms* **sovereignities** of the earth;
and he hath **charged** **mustered** me
to build him an house at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
which is in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
3 Who is there among you of all his people?
his *God* **Elohim** be with him,
and let him go up **ascend** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
which is in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and build the house of the *LORD* God **Yah Veh Elohim**
of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
(he is the *God* **Elohim**),
which is in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
4 And whosoever *remaineth* **surviveth** in any place
where he sojourneth,
let the men of his place
help **lift** him with silver, and with gold,
and with *goods* **acquisitions**, and with *beasts* **animals**,
beside the *freewill offering* **voluntary**
for the house of *God* **Elohim**
that is in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

THE RESTORATION OF THE INSTRUMENTS

5 Then rose up
the *chief* **heads** of the fathers of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
and the priests, and the *Levites* **Leviym**,
with all them
whose spirit *God* **Elohim** had raised **wakened**,
to go up **ascend** to build the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
which is in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
6 And all they that were **round** about them
strengthened their hands
with *vessels* **instruments** of silver, with gold,
with *goods* **acquisitions**, and with *beasts* **animals**,
and with *precious things* **preciousnesses**,
beside all that was *willingly offered* **volunteered**.
7 Also *Cyrus* **Koresh** the king **sovereign**
brought forth the *vessels* **instruments**
of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
had brought forth out of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and had put **given** them in the house of his *gods* **elohim**;
8 Even those did *Cyrus* king **Koresh** **sovereign** of Persia
bring forth by the hand of *Mithredath* the treasurer,
and **numbered** **scribed** them
unto *Sheshbazzar* **Sheshbats Tsar**,
the *prince* **hierarch** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
9 And this is the number of them:
thirty *chargers* **basins** of gold,
a thousand *chargers* **basins** of silver,
nine and twenty knives,
10 Thirty *basons* **tankards** of gold,
silver *basons* **tankards** of a second *sort*
four hundred and ten,
and other *vessels* **instruments** a thousand.
11 All the *vessels* **instruments** of gold and of silver
were five thousand and four hundred.
All these did *Sheshbazzar* **Sheshbats Tsar**
bring up **ascend** with them of the *captivity* **exile**
that were brought up **ascended** from *Babylon* **Babel**
unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

THE RESTORATION OF THE PEOPLE

2 Now these are
the *children* **sons** of the *province* **jurisdiction**
that went up **ascended** out of the captivity,

EZRA 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

KORESH IS MUSTERED TO BUILD THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

1 And in the first year of *Koresh* sovereign of Persia,
in order to finish
the word of *Yah Veh* by the mouth of *Yirme Yah*,
Yah Veh
wakens the spirit of *Koresh* sovereign of Persia:
and he passes a voice
throughout all his sovereignty;
and also inscribes, saying,
2 Thus says *Koresh* sovereign of Persia:
Yah Veh *Elohim* of the heavens
gives me all the sovereignties of the earth;
and he musters me to build him a house
at *Yeru Shalem*, *Yah Hudah*.
3 Who is there among you of all his people?
Elohim is with him
as he ascends to *Yeru Shalem*, *Yah Hudah*
and builds the house of *Yah Veh* *Elohim* of *Yisra El*
to him — *Elohim* in *Yeru Shalem*:
4 and whoever survives in any place he sojourns,
the men of his place
lift him with silver and with gold
and with acquisitions and with animals
— beside the voluntary
for the house of *Elohim* in *Yeru Shalem*.

THE RESTORATION OF THE INSTRUMENTS

5 And they rise
— the heads of the fathers
of *Yah Hudah* and *Ben Yamin*
and the priests and the *Leviym*,
with all whose spirit *Elohim* wakens,
to ascend to build the house of *Yah Veh*
in *Yeru Shalem*.
6 And all who are all around them
strengthen their hands
with instruments of silver, with gold,
with acquisitions and with animals
and with preciousnesses
— beside all that is volunteered.
7 And *Koresh* the sovereign
brings the instruments of the house of *Yah Veh*
— which *Nebukadnets Tsar*
brought from *Yeru Shalem*;
and gave in the house of his *elohim*:
8 yes, *Koresh* sovereign of Persia
brings them by the hand of *Mithredath* the treasurer;
and scribes them
to *Sheshbats Tsar* the hierarch of *Yah Hudah*.
9 And this is their number:
thirty basins of gold, a thousand basins of silver,
twenty—nine knives,
thirty tankards of gold,
10 silver tankards, seconds, four hundred and ten,
other instruments a thousand:
11 all the instruments of gold and of silver
are five thousand and four hundred:
Sheshbats Tsar ascends all these
with them of the exile
who ascend from *Babel* to *Yeru Shalem*.

THE RESTORATION OF THE PEOPLE

2 And these are the sons of the jurisdiction
who ascend from the captivity

EZRA 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

of those which had been carried away exiled,
whom Nebuchadnezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**,
the king **sovereign** of *Babylon Babel*
had carried away **exiled** unto *Babylon Babel*,
and came again **returned**
unto *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem* and *Judah Yah Hudah*,
every one **man** unto his city;
2 Which came with *Zerubbabel Zerub Babel*:
Jeshua Yah Shua, *Nehemiah Nechem Yah*,
Seraiah Sera Yah, *Reelaiah Reela Yah*,
Mordecai Mordechay, *Bilshan*, *Mizpar*,
Bigvai Bigvay, *Rehum Rechum*, *Baanah*.
3 The number of the men of the people of *Israel Yisra El*:
4 The *children sons* of *Parosh*,
two thousand an hundred seventy and two.
5 The *children sons* of *Shephatiah Shaphat Yah*,
three hundred seventy and two.
6 The *children sons* of *Arah Arach*,
seven hundred seventy and five.
7 The *children sons* of *Pahathmoab Pachath Moab*,
of the *children sons* of *Jeshua Yah Shua* and *Joab Yah Ab*,
two thousand eight hundred and twelve.
8 The *children sons* of *Elam*,
a thousand two hundred fifty and four.
9 The *children sons* of *Zattu*,
nine hundred forty and five.
10 The *children sons* of *Zaccai Zakkay*,
seven hundred and threescore **sixty**.
11 The *children sons* of *Bani*,
six hundred forty and two.
12 The *children sons* of *Bebai Bebay*,
six hundred twenty and three.
13 The *children sons* of *Azgad*,
a thousand two hundred twenty and two.
14 The *children sons* of *Adonikam Adoni Qam*,
six hundred sixty and six.
15 The *children sons* of *Bigvai Bigvay*,
two thousand fifty and six.
16 The *children sons* of *Adin*,
four hundred fifty and four.
17 The *children sons* of *Ater of Hezekiah Yechizqi Yah*,
ninety and eight.
18 The *children sons* of *Bezai Besay*,
three hundred twenty and three.
19 The *children sons* of *Jorah Yorah*,
an hundred and twelve.
20 The *children sons* of *Hashum*,
two hundred twenty and three.
21 The *children sons* of *Gibbar*,
ninety and five.
22 The *children sons* of *Bethlehem Beth Lechem*,
an hundred twenty and three.
23 The men of *Netophah*,
fifty and six.
24 The men of *Anathoth*,
an hundred twenty and eight.
25 The *children sons* of *Azmaveth*,
forty and two.
26 The *children sons* of *Kirjatharim*,
Chephirah Kephirah, and *Beeroth*,
seven hundred and forty and three.
27 The *children sons* of *Ramah and Gaba Geba*,
six hundred twenty and one.
28 The men of *Michmas*,
an hundred twenty and two.
29 The men of *Bethel Beth El* and *Ai Ay*,
two hundred twenty and three.
30 The *children sons* of *Nebo*,
fifty and two.
31 The *children sons* of *Magbish*,
an hundred fifty and six.
32 The *children sons* of the other *Elam*,
a thousand two hundred fifty and four.
33 The *children sons* of *Harim*,
three hundred and twenty.
34 The *children sons* of *Lod*, *Hadid*, and *Ono*,
seven hundred twenty and five.
The *children sons* of *Jericho Yericho*,
three hundred forty and five.

EZRA 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— of the exiled
whom *Nebukadnets Tsar* the sovereign of *Babel*
exiled to *Babel*
who return to *Yeru Shalem* and *Yah Hudah*,
— every man to his city
— who come with *Zerub Babel*:
2 *Yah Shua*, *Nechem Yah*, *Sera Yah*, *Reela Yah*,
Mordechay, *Bilshan*, *Mizpar*,
Bigvai, *Rechum*, *Baanah*.
3 The number of the men of the people of *Yisra El*:
4 the sons of *Parosh*:
two thousand a hundred seventy—two;
5 the sons of *Shaphat Yah*:
three hundred seventy—two;
6 the sons of *Arach*:
seven hundred seventy—five;
7 the sons of *Pachath Moab*:
of the sons of *Yah Shua* and *Yah Ab*,
two thousand eight hundred and twelve;
8 the sons of *Elam*:
a thousand two hundred fifty—four;
9 the sons of *Zattu*:
nine hundred forty—five;
10 the sons of *Zakkay*:
seven hundred and sixty;
11 the sons of *Bani*:
six hundred forty—two;
12 the sons of *Bebay*:
six hundred twenty—three;
13 the sons of *Azgad*:
a thousand two hundred twenty—two;
14 the sons of *Adoni Qam*:
six hundred sixty—six;
15 the sons of *Bigvay*:
two thousand fifty—six;
16 the sons of *Adin*:
four hundred fifty—four;
17 the sons of *Ater of Yechizqi Yah*:
ninety—eight;
18 the sons of *Besay*:
three hundred twenty—three;
19 the sons of *Yorah*:
a hundred and twelve;
20 the sons of *Hashum*:
two hundred twenty—three;
21 the sons of *Gibbar*:
ninety—five;
22 the sons of *Beth Lechem*:
a hundred twenty—three;
23 the men of *Netophah*:
fifty—six;
24 the men of *Anathoth*:
a hundred twenty—eight;
25 the sons of *Azmaveth*:
forty—two;
26 the sons of *Kirjatharim*, *Kephirah* and *Beeroth*:
seven hundred and forty—three;
27 the sons of *Ramah* and *Geba*:
six hundred twenty—one;
28 the men of *Michmas*:
a hundred twenty—two;
29 the men of *Beth El* and *Ay*:
two hundred twenty—three;
30 the sons of *Nebo*:
fifty—two;
31 the sons of *Magbish*:
a hundred fifty—six;
32 the sons of the other *Elam*:
a thousand two hundred fifty—four;
33 the sons of *Harim*:
three hundred and twenty;
34 the sons of *Lod*, *Hadid* and *Ono*:
seven hundred twenty—five;
the sons of *Yericho*:
three hundred forty—five;

EZRA 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

35 The *children sons* of Senaah,
three thousand and six hundred and thirty.
36 The priests:
the *children sons* of **Jedaiah Yeda Yah**,
of the house of **Jeshua Beth Yah Shua**,
nine hundred seventy and three.
37 The *children sons* of Immer,
a thousand fifty and two.
38 The *children sons* of **Pashur Pashchur**,
a thousand two hundred forty and seven.
39 The *children sons* of Harim,
a thousand and seventeen.
40 The Levites **Leviym**:
the *children sons* of **Jeshua Yah Shua**
and **Kadmiel Qadmi El**,
of the *children sons* of **Hodaviah Hodav Yah**,
seventy and four.
41 The singers:
the *children sons* of Asaph,
an hundred twenty and eight.
42 The *children sons* of the porters:
the *children sons* of Shallum, the *children sons* of Ater,
the *children sons* of Talmon,
the *children sons* of **Akkub Aqqub**,
the *children sons* of Hatita,
the *children sons* of **Shobai Shobay**,
in all an hundred thirty and nine.
43 The *Nethinims Dedicates*:
the *children sons* of **Ziha Sicha**,
the *children sons* of **Hasupha Hashupha**,
the *children sons* of Tabbaoth,
44 The *children sons* of **Keros Qeros**,
the *children sons* of Siahah, the *children sons* of Padon,
45 The *children sons* of Lebanah,
the *children sons* of Hagabah,
the *children sons* of **Akkub Aqqub**,
46 The *children sons* of Hagab,
the *children sons* of **Shalmay Shalmay**,
the *children sons* of Hanan,
47 The *children sons* of Giddel,
the *children sons* of **Gahar Gachar**,
the *children sons* of **Reaiah Rea Yah**,
48 The *children sons* of **Rezin Resin**,
the *children sons* of Nekoda,
the *children sons* of Gazzam,
49 The *children sons* of Uzza,
the *children sons* of **Paseah Paseach**,
the *children sons* of **Besai Besay**,
50 The *children sons* of Asnah,
the *children sons* of **Mehunim Maoniym**,
the *children sons* of **Nephusim Nephisim**,
51 The *children sons* of **Bakbuk Baqbuq**,
the *children sons* of **Hakupha Haquppha**,
the *children sons* of **Harhur Harchur**,
52 The *children sons* of **Bazluth Basluth**,
the *children sons* of **Mehida Mechida**,
the *children sons* of Harsha,
53 The *children sons* of **Barkos Barqos**,
the *children sons* of Sisera,
the *children sons* of **Thamah Temach**,
54 The *children sons* of **Neziah Nesiach**,
the *children sons* of Hatipha.
55 The *children sons* of **Solomon's Shelomoh's** servants:
the *children sons* of **Sotai Sotay**,
the *children sons* of Sophereth,
the *children sons* of Peruda,
56 The *children sons* of **Jaalah Yaalah**,
the *children sons* of **Darqon Darqon**,
the *children sons* of Giddel,
57 The *children sons* of **Shephatiah Shaphat Yah**,
the *children sons* of Hattil,
the *children sons* of
Pochereth of **Zebaim Sebayim**,
the *children sons* of Ami.

EZRA 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

35 the sons of Senaah:
three thousand and six hundred and thirty.
36 The priests:
the sons of Yeda Yah of Beth Yah Shua:
nine hundred seventy—three;
37 the sons of Immer:
a thousand fifty—two;
38 the sons of Pashchur:
a thousand two hundred forty—seven;
39 the sons of Harim:
a thousand and seventeen.
40 The Leviym:
the sons of Yah Shua and Qadmi El
of the sons of Hodav Yah:
seventy—four.
41 The singers:
the sons of Asaph:
a hundred twenty—eight.
42 The sons of the porters:
the sons of Shallum;
the sons of Ater;
the sons of Talmon;
the sons of Aqqub;
the sons of Hatita;
the sons of Shobay;
all a hundred thirty—nine.
43 The Dedicates:
the sons of Sicha;
the sons of Hashupha;
the sons of Tabbaoth;
44 the sons of Qeros;
the sons of Siahah;
the sons of Padon;
45 the sons of Lebanah;
the sons of Hagabah;
the sons of Aqqub;
46 the sons of Hagab;
the sons of Shalmay;
the sons of Hanan;
47 the sons of Giddel;
the sons of Gachar;
the sons of Rea Yah;
48 the sons of Resin;
the sons of Nekoda;
the sons of Gazzam;
49 the sons of Uzza;
the sons of Paseach;
the sons of Asnah;
50 the sons of Maoniym;
the sons of Nephisim;
the sons of Baqbuq;
51 the sons of Haquppha;
the sons of Harchur;
the sons of Basluth;
52 the sons of Mechida;
the sons of Harsha;
the sons of Barqos;
53 the sons of Sisera;
the sons of Temach;
54 the sons of Nesiach;
the sons of Hatipha.
55 The sons of the servants of Shelomoh:
the sons of Sotay;
the sons of Sophereth;
56 the sons of Peruda;
the sons of Yaalah;
the sons of Darqon;
the sons of Giddel;
57 the sons of Shaphat Yah;
the sons of Hattil;
the sons of Pochereth of Sebayim;
the sons of Ami.

EZRA 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

58 All the *Nethinims* **Dedicates**,
and the *children sons* of *Solomon's Shelomoh's* servants,
were three hundred ninety and two.
59 And these were they which *went up ascended*
from *Telmelah Tel Melach, Telharsa Tel Harsha*,
Cherub, Addan, and Immer:
but they could not *shew tell* their father's house,
and their seed,
whether they were of *Israel Yisra El*:
60 The *children sons* of *Delaiah Dela Yah*,
the *children sons* of *Tobiah Tobi Yah*,
the *children sons* of *Nekoda*,
six hundred fifty and two.
61 And of the *children sons* of the priests:
the *children sons* of *Habaiah Haba Yah*,
the *children sons* of *Koz Qos*,
the *children sons* of *Barzillai Barzillay*;
which took a *wife woman* of the daughters
of *Barzillai Barzillay* the *Gileadite Giladiy*,
and was called after their name:
62 These sought their *register inscribings* among those
that were *reckoned by genealogy genealogized*,
but they were not found:
therefore were they,
as *polluted, put profaned* from the priesthood.
63 And the *Tirshatha governor* said unto them,
that they should not eat
of the *most holy things Holy of Holies*,
till there stood up a priest with *Urim* and with *Thummim*.
64 The whole congregation *together as one*
was *forty four myriads*
and two thousand three hundred *and threescore sixty*,
65 Beside their servants and their maids,
of *whom these* there were
seven thousand three hundred thirty and seven:
and there were among them two hundred
singing men songsters and *singing women songstresses*.
66 Their horses were seven hundred thirty and six;
their mules, two hundred forty and five;
67 Their camels, four hundred thirty and five;
their asses he burros,
six thousand seven hundred and twenty.
68 And *some* of the *chief heads* of the fathers,
when they came to the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*
which is at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
offered freely volunteered for the house of *God Elohim*
to *set it up in his place establish it on its base*.
69 They gave *after their ability of their substance*
unto the treasure of the work
threescore six myriads
and one thousand *drams drachmim* of gold,
and five thousand *pound maneh* of silver,
and one hundred priests' *garments coats*.
70 So the priests, and the *Levites Leviym*,
and *some* of the people, and the singers,
and the porters, and the *Nethinims Dedicates*,
dwelt settled in their cities,
and all *Israel Yisra El* in their cities.

THE RESTORATION OF THE ALTAR

3 And when the seventh month *was come had touched*,
and the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El* were in the cities,
the people gathered themselves together as one man
to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
2 Then *stood up Jeshua arose Yah Shua*
the son of *Jozadak Yah Sadaq*,
and his brethren the priests,
and *Zerubbabel Zerub Babel*
the son of *Shealtiel Shealti El*,
and his brethren,
and builded the *sacrifice altar*
of the *God Elohim* of *Israel Yisra El*,
to *offer burnt offerings holocaust holocausts* thereon,
as it is *written inscribed*
in the *law torah* of *Moses Mosheh*
the man of *God Elohim*.
3 And they *set established* the *sacrifice altar*
upon his bases;
for *fear terror* was upon them
because of the people of those *countries lands*:

EZRA 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

58 — all the *Dedicates*
and the sons of *Shelomoh's* servants,
three hundred ninety—two.
59 And these are they who ascend
from *Tel Melach, Tel Harsha*,
Cherub, Addan and Immer
— who cannot tell
the house of their father and their seed
whether they are of *Yisra El*:
60 the sons of *Dela Yah*;
the sons of *Tobi Yah*;
the sons of *Nekoda*;
six hundred fifty—two.
61 And of the sons of the priests:
the sons of *Haba Yah*;
the sons of *Qos*;
the sons of *Barzillay*
who take a *woman*
of the daughters of *Barzillay* the *Giladiy*
and is called after their name:
62 — these sought their *inscribings*
among the *genealogized*,
but they were not found:
and they are *profaned* from the priesthood:
63 and the *governor* says to them
to not eat of the *Holy of Holies*,
until a *priest* stands with *Urim* and with *Thummim*.
64 The whole congregation as one
is *four myriads* and two thousand three hundred sixty
65 beside their servants and their maids:
of these there are
seven thousand three hundred thirty—seven:
and among them are two hundred
songsters and *songstresses*:
66 their horses, seven hundred thirty—six;
their mules, two hundred forty—five;
67 their camels, four hundred thirty—five;
he burros, six thousand seven hundred and twenty.
68 And of the *heads* of the fathers
who come to the house of *Yah Veh* at *Yeru Shalem*,
volunteer for the house of *Elohim*
to establish it on its base:
69 they give of their *substance*
to the treasure of the work:
six myriads and one thousand *drachmim* of gold
and five thousand *maneh* of silver
and one hundred *coats* for the priests.
70 And the priests and the *Leviym*
and of the people and the singers
and the porters and the *Dedicates*,
settle in their cities;
and all *Yisra El* in their cities.

THE RESTORATION OF THE ALTAR

3 And the seventh month touches
and the sons of *Yisra El* are in the cities
and the people gather as one man to *Yeru Shalem*.
2 Then *Yah Shua* the son of *Yah Sadaq*
and his brothers the priests
and *Zerub Babel* the son of *Shealti El*
and his brothers
rise and build the *sacrifice altar* of *Elohim* of *Yisra El*
to *holocaust holocausts* thereon
— as *inscribed* in the *torah* of *Mosheh*
the man of *Elohim*:
3 and they establish the *sacrifice altar* on his bases;
for *terror* is on them
because of the people of those *lands*:

EZRA 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they offered burnt offerings **holocausted holocausts**
thereon unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
even burnt offerings **holocausts** for morning and evening.

THE RESTORATION OF THE WORSHIP

4 They kept **worked** also
the feast **celebration of tabernacles sukkoth/brush arbors**,
as it is written **inscribed**,
and offered the daily burnt offerings
the day by day holocausts by number,
according to the *custom* **judgment**,
as the *duty of every day* **by day word** required;

THE RESTORATION OF THE HALLOWED FESTIVALS OF YAH VEH

5 And afterward
offered the continual burnt offering **holocaust**,
both of the new moons,
and of all the set feasts **festivals of the LORD Yah Veh**
that were consecrated **hallowed**,
and of every one that willingly offered **volunteered**
a *freewill offering* **voluntary** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.

6 From the first day of the seventh month
began they to offer burnt offerings **holocaust holocausts**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.
But the foundation
of the temple **manse of the LORD Yah Veh**
was not yet laid.

7 They gave money **silver** also unto the *masons* **hewers**,
and to the *carpenters* **artificers**;
and meat **food**, and drink, and oil,
unto them of Zidon **the Sidoniy**,
and to them of Tyre **the Soriy**,
to bring cedar trees from Lebanon
to the sea of Joppa **Yapho**,
according to the *grant* **permit** that they had
of *Cyrus king* **Koresh sovereign** of Persia.

THE FOUNDATION OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH LAID

8 Now in the second year of their coming
unto the house of *God* **Elohim** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
in the second month,
began Zerubbabel **Zerub Babel**
the son of *Shealtiel* **Shealti El**,
and *Jeshua* **Yah Shua** the son of *Jozadak* **Yah Sadaq**,
and the *remnant* **survivors** of their brethren
the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**,
and all they that were come out of the captivity
unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
and appointed **stood** the *Levites* **Leviym**,
from **sons of** twenty years *old* and upward,
to set forward **oversee** the work
of the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.

9 Then stood *Jeshua* **Yah Shua**
with his sons and his brethren,
Kadmiel **Qadmi El** and his sons,
the sons of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, *together as one*,
to set forward **oversee** the *workmen* **doers of the work**
in the house of *God* **Elohim**:
the sons of *Henadad*,
with their sons and their brethren the *Levites* **Leviym**.

10 And when the builders laid the foundation
of the temple **manse of the LORD Yah Veh**,
they set **stood** the priests
in their apparel **enrobed** with trumpets,
and the *Levites* **Leviym** the sons of *Asaph* with cymbals,
to praise the **LORD halal Yah Veh**,
after the ordinance **hand**
of *David king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

11 And they sang **answered** together by course
in praising **halaling**
and giving thanks **spreading hands**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
because he is good,
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**
toward *Israel* **Yisra El**.

And all the people shouted with a great *shout* **shouting**,
when they praised the **LORD haled Yah Veh**,
because the foundation
of the house of the **LORD Yah Veh** was laid.

12 But many of the priests and *Levites* **Leviym**
and chief **heads** of the fathers,

EZRA 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they holocaust holocausts to Yah Veh
— holocausts for morning and evening.

THE RESTORATION OF THE WORSHIP

4 And they work
the celebration of sukkoth/brush arbors as inscribed:
and the day by day holocausts by number
according to the judgment,
as the day by day word required.

THE RESTORATION OF THE HALLOWED FESTIVALS OF YAH VEH

5 And afterward the continual holocaust
and for new moons
and for all the hallowed festivals of Yah Veh:
and for every one
who volunteers a voluntary to Yah Veh.

6 From the first day of the seventh month
they begin to holocaust holocausts to Yah Veh:
and the foundation of the manse of Yah Veh
is not yet laid:

7 and they give silver
to the hewers and to the artificers;
and food and drink and oil
to the Sidoniy and to the Soriy
to bring cedar trees from Lebanon
to the sea of Yapho
according to the permit they have
from *Koresh* sovereign of Persia.

THE FOUNDATION OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH LAID

8 And in the second year of their coming
to the house of *Elohim* at *Yeru Shalem*
in the second month,
Zerub Babel the son of *Shealti El*
and *Yah Shua* the son of *Yah Sadaq*
and the survivors of their brothers
the priests and the *Leviym*
and all who come from the captivity to *Yeru Shalem*:
and they stand the *Leviym*
from sons of twenty years and upward,
to begin to oversee the work of the house of Yah Veh.

9 And *Yah Shua*, his sons and his brothers,
Qadmi El and his sons, the sons of *Yah Hudah*,
stand as one
to oversee the doers of the work
in the house of *Elohim*:
— the sons of *Henadad*,
with their sons and their brothers the *Leviym*.

10 And the builders lay the foundation
of the manse of Yah Veh
and they stand the priests enrobed with trumpets
and the *Leviym* the sons of *Asaph* with cymbals
to *halal* Yah Veh,
after the hand of *David* sovereign of *Yisra El*:
and they answer together by course
— *halaling* and spreading hands to Yah Veh
for he is good:
for his mercy eternal toward *Yisra El*.

And all the people shout a great shout
as they *halal* Yah Veh;
because the foundation
of the house of Yah Veh is laid.

12 And many of the priests and *Leviym*
and heads of the fathers

EZRA 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

13 who were ancient men **elders**,
that had seen the first house,
when the foundation of this house
was laid before their eyes,
wept with a **loud great** voice;
and many shouted
aloud for joy and cheered with lifted voice:
So that the people could not *discern* **recognize**
the *noise* **voice** of the shout of joy **cheering**
from the *noise* **voice** of the weeping of the people:
for the people shouted with a *loud shout* **great shout**,
and the *noise* **voice** was heard afar off.

YAH HUDAH AND BEN YAMIN TRIBULATE AGAINST THE MANSE OF YAH VEH

4 Now when the *adversaries* **tribulators**
of Judah **Yah Hudah** and Benjamin **Ben Yamin**
heard that the *children* **sons** of the *captivity* **exile**
built the *temple* **manse**
unto the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**;
2 Then they came **near** to Zerubbabel **Zerub Babel**,
and to the *chief* **heads** of the fathers,
and said unto them,
Let us build with you:
for we seek your *God* **Elohim**, as ye *do*;
and we *do* sacrifice unto him
since the days of *Esarhaddon* **Esar Chaddon**
king **sovereign** of *Assur* **Ashshur**,
which *brought* **ascended** us up hither.
3 But Zerubbabel **Zerub Babel**, and *Jeshua* **Yah Shua**,
and the *rest* **survivors**
of the *chief* **heads** of the fathers of Israel **Yisra El**,
said unto them, Ye have *nothing* **naught** to do with us
to build an house unto our *God* **Elohim**;
but we ourselves together
will **shall** build
unto the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**,
as *king* **Cyrus** **sovereign** **Koresh**
the *king* **sovereign** of Persia
hath *commanded* **misvahed** us.
4 Then the people of the land
weakened **slackened** the hands
of the people of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and *troubled* **terrified** them in building,
5 And hired counsellors against them,
to *frustrate* **break down** their *purpose* **counsel**,
all the days of *Cyrus* **Koresh** *king* **sovereign** of Persia,
even until the *reign* **sovereigndom** of *Darius* **Daryavesh**,
king **sovereign** of Persia.

ACHASH ROSH TRIBULATES AGAINST THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

6 And in the *reign* **sovereigndom**
of *Ahasuerus* **Achash Rosh**,
in the beginning of his *reign* **sovereigndom**,
wrote **inscribed** they unto him an *accusation* **opposition**
against the *inhabitants* **settlers**
of Judah **Yah Hudah** and Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**.
7 And in the days of *Artaxerxes* **Artach Shashta**
wrote **inscribed** Bishlam, Mithredath, *Tabee* **Tabé El**,
and the *rest* **survivors** of their *companions* **colleagues**,
unto *Artaxerxes* **king** **Artach Shashta** **sovereign** of Persia;
and the *writing* **inscribing** of the *letter* **epistle**
was *written* **inscribed** in the *Syrian* **tongue** **Aramaic**,
and *interpreted* **translated** in the *Syrian* **tongue** **Aramaic**.
8 *Rehum* **Rechum** the *chancellor* **master** of decrees
and *Shimshai* **Shimshay** the scribe
wrote a *letter* **inscribed** one *epistle*
against Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**
to *Artaxerxes* **Artach Shashta** the *king* **sovereign**
in this sort **thus**:
9 Then wrote *Rehum* **Rechum**
the *chancellor* **master** of decrees,
and *Shimshai* **Shimshay** the scribe,
and the *rest* **survivors** of their *companions* **colleagues**;
the *Dinaites* **Dinaiy**, the *Apharsathchites* **Apharesiy**,
the *Tarpelites* **Tarpeliy**, the *Apharsites* **Apharsiy**,
the *Archevites* **Archeviy**, the *Babylonians* **Babeliy**,
the *Susanchites* **Shushanchiy**, the *Dehavites* **Dehaviy**,
and the *Elamites* **Elamiy**,
10 And the *rest* **survivors** of the nations

EZRA 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— elders who had seen the first house
when the foundation of this house
was laid in front of their eyes,
weep with a great voice;
and many shout and cheer with lifted voice:
13 and the people recognize not
the voice of the shout of cheering
from the voice of the weeping of the people:
for the people shout a great shout
and the voice is heard afar off.

YAH HUDAH AND BEN YAMIN TRIBULATE AGAINST THE MANSE OF YAH VEH

4 And the tribulators of Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin
hear that the sons of the exile
build the manse to Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
2 and they come near to Zerub Babel
and the heads of the fathers, and say to them,
Let us build with you:
for we, as you, seek your Elohim;
and we sacrificed not to him
since the days of Esar Chaddon sovereign of Ashshur
who ascended us here.
3 And Zerub Babel and Yah Shua
and the survivors of the heads of the fathers of Yisra El
say to them,
You have naught to do with us
to build a house to our Elohim;
but we ourselves together
build to Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
— as sovereign Koresh the sovereign of Persia
misvahed us.
4 And so be it,
the people of the land
slacken the hands of the people of Yah Hudah
and terrify them in building:
5 and hire counsellors against them
to break down their counsel
all the days of Koresh sovereign of Persia
— even until the sovereigndom of Daryavesh
sovereign of Persia.

ACHASH ROSH TRIBULATES AGAINST THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

6 And in the sovereigndom of Achash Rosh,
in the beginning of his sovereigndom,
they inscribe an opposition
against the settlers of Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem:
7 and in the days of Artach Shashta
Bishlam, Mithredath, Tabé El
and the survivors of their colleagues
inscribe to Artach Shashta sovereign of Persia:
and the inscribing of the epistle
is inscribed in Aramaic and translated in Aramaic.
8 Rechum the master of decrees
and Shimshay the scribe
inscribe one epistle against Yeru Shalem
to Artach Shashta the sovereign thus:
9 Then Rechum the master of decrees
and Shimshay the scribe
and the survivors of their colleagues
— the Dinaiy, the Apharesiy, the Tarpeliy,
the Apharsiy, the Archeviy, the Babeliy,
the Shushanchiy, the Dehaviy and the Elamiy
and the survivors of the nations

EZRA 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

whom the great and noble **Asnapper esteemed Osnapper**
brought over **revealed**,
and set **settled** in the cities of *Samaria Shomeron*,
and the **rest survivors** that are on this side the river,
and at such a time **et cetera**.

ARTACH SHASHTA TRIBULATES AGAINST THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

- 11 This is the **copy transcript** of the **letter epistle**
that they sent unto him,
even unto *Artaxerxes Artach Shashta* the **king sovereign**;
Thy servants the men on this side the river,
and at such a time **et cetera**.
- 12 Be it known unto the **king sovereign**,
that the **Jews Yah Hudiym**
which **came up ascended** from thee to us
are come unto *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
building the rebellious and the **bad wicked** city,
and **have set up finished** the walls thereof,
and joined the foundations.
- 13 Be it known now unto the **king sovereign**, that,
if this city be builded, and the walls **set up finished** again,
then **will shall** they not **pay toll give tribute**,
tribute excise, and custom,
and so **thus** thou shalt endamage the revenue
of the **kings sovereigns**.
- 14 Now because we
have maintenance from the king's palace
are salted with the salt of the manse,
and it was not **meet convenient** for us
to see the *king's dishonour* **sovereign's nakedness**,
therefore have we sent
and **certified the king made known to the sovereign**;
That search may be made
in the **book scroll** of the records of thy fathers:
so shalt thou find in the **book scroll** of the records,
and know that this city is a rebellious city,
and **hurtful damaging**
unto **kings sovereigns** and **provinces jurisdictions**,
and that they have **moved sedition rebels**
within the same of old time
in the midst thereof **from eternal days**:
for which cause was this city **destroyed desolated**.
- 16 We **certify the king have the sovereign know** that,
if this city be builded *again*,
and the walls thereof **set up finished**,
by this means **therefore** thou shalt have no portion
on this side the river.
- 17 Then sent the **king an answer sovereign a decision**
unto *Rehum Rechum* the **chancellor master of decrees**,
and to *Shimshai Shimshay* the scribe,
and to the **rest survivors** of their **companions colleagues**
that **dwelt settle** in *Samaria Shomeron*,
and unto the **rest survivors** beyond the river,
Peace Shalom, and at such a time **et cetera**.
- 18 The **letter epistle** which ye sent unto us
hath been **plainly read distinctly called out**
before in front of me.
- 19 And I **commanded have set a decree**,
and search hath been made,
and it is found that this city *of old time* **from eternal days**
hath **made insurrection lifted itself**
against kings sovereigns,
and that rebellion and sedition have been made therein.
- 20 There have been mighty **kings sovereigns**
also over *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
which have ruled over all *countries* beyond the river;
and **toll tribute, tribute excise**, and custom,
was **paid given** unto them.
- 21 **Give Set** ye now **commandment a decree**
to cause these men to **cease stop**,
and that this city be not builded,
until another **commandment decree**
shall be **given set** from me.
- 22 **Take heed now Be enlightened**
that ye **fail not to do not err about** this:
why should damage **grow increase**
to the **hurt damage** of the **kings sovereigns**?

EZRA 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

whom the great and esteemed Osnapper reveals
and settles in the cities of Shomeron,
and the survivors on this side the river,
and et cetera.

ARTACH SHASHTA TRIBULATES AGAINST THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

- 11 This is the transcript of the epistle they send him:
To Artach Shashta the sovereign;
your servants,
the men on this side the river, and et cetera.
- 12 Now be it known to the sovereign,
that the Yah Hudiym who ascended from you to us
come to Yeru Shalem,
and are building the rebellious and wicked city:
and finishing the walls thereof
and joining the foundations.
- 13 Now be it known to the sovereign, that,
if this city is built and the walls finished,
then they give not tribute, excise and custom;
and thus damage the revenue of the sovereigns.
- 14 Now, because we are salted
with the salt of the manse;
and it is not convenient for us
to see the nakedness of the sovereign;
so we send and make known to the sovereign;
to search the scroll of the records of your fathers:
and find in the scroll of the records
and know that this city is a rebellious city
and damaging to sovereigns and jurisdictions;
and that they have rebels
in their midst from eternal days:
for which cause this city is desolated:
we have the sovereign know
that if this city is built and the walls finished,
that you have no portion on this side the river.
- 17 Then the sovereign sends a decision
to Rechum the master of decrees
and Shimshay the scribe
and to the survivors of their colleagues
who settle in Shomeron,
and to the survivors beyond the river,
Shalom and et cetera:
- 18 The epistle you send us
has been distinctly called out in front of me:
and I set a decree and search:
and find that this city, from eternal days,
lifts itself against sovereigns:
and rebellion and sedition are made therein:
and mighty sovereigns over Yeru Shalem
— rulers over all beyond the river;
and tribute, excise and custom is given them.
- 21 Now set a decree to have these men stop:
and that this city not be built,
until another decree is set from me.
- 22 Be enlightened that you not err about this:
why increase the damage
to the damage of the sovereigns?

EZRA 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE SERVICE OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEK STOPPED

23 Now **Then** when the *copy transcript* of king Artaxerxes' **sovereign Artach Shashta's** letter **epistle** was read **called out** before **Rehum** in front of **Rechum**, and **Shimshai Shimshay** the scribe, and their *companions* **colleagues**, they went up in haste to **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem** unto the **Jews Yah Hudiym**, and made them to *cease* **stop** by *force* **arm** and *power* **valour**.

24 Then *ceased* **stopped** the *work service* of the house of **God Elah** which is at **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**. So it *ceased* **stopped** unto the second year of the *reign* **sovereigndom** of **Darius Daryavesh** king **sovereign** of Persia.

THE BUILDING OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEK IS STARTED

5 Then the prophets, **Haggai Haggay** the prophet, and **Zechariah Zechar Yah** the son of **Iddo**, prophesied unto the **Jews Yah Hudiym** that were in **Judah Yah Hudah** and **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem** in the name of the **God Elah of Israel Yisra El**, even unto them.

2 Then rose up **Zerubbabel Zerub Babel** the son of **Shealtiel Shealti El**, and **Jeshua Yah Shua** the son of **Jozadak Yah Sadaq**, and *began* **released** to build the house of **God Elah** which is at **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**: and with them were the prophets of **God Elah** *helping* **upholding** them.

3 At the same *time* **appointment** came to them **Tatnai Tattenay**, governor on this side the river, and **Shetharboznai Shethar Bozenay** and their *companions* **colleagues**, and said thus unto them,

Who hath *commanded you* **set you a decree** to build this house, and to *make up* **finish** this wall?

4 Then said we unto them *after this manner* **thus**,
What are the names
of the men that *make* **build** this building?

5 But the eye of their **God Elah** was upon the elders of the **Jews Yah Hudiym**, that they could not cause them to *cease* **stop**, till the *matter* **decree** came **was brought** to **Darius Daryavesh**: and then they *returned answer* **responded** by letter **epistle** concerning this *matter*.

THE EPISTLE OF TATTENAY TO DARYAVESH

6 The *copy transcript* of the letter **epistle** that **Tatnai Tattenay**, governor on this side the river, and **Shetharboznai Shethar Bozenay** and his *companions* **colleagues** the **Apharsachites Apharsechiy**, which were on this side the river, sent unto **Darius Daryavesh** the **king sovereign**:

7 They sent a letter **decision** unto him, *wherein was written* **midst which was inscribed** thus:
Unto **Darius Daryavesh** the **king sovereign**,
all *peace* **shalom**.

8 Be it known unto the **king sovereign**, that we went into the *province* **jurisdiction** of **Judea Yah Hudah**, to the **great** house of the **great God Elah**, which is builded with **great round** stones, and timber is *laid* **set** in the walls, and this *work goeth fast on* **service keepeth on diligently**, and prospereth in their hands.

9 Then asked we those elders, and said unto them thus,
Who *commanded you* **set you a decree** to build this house, and to *make up* **finish** these walls?

10 We asked their names also,
to *certify thee* **have thee know**,
that we might *write* **inscribe** the names of the men that were the **chief heads** of them.

11 And thus they returned us *answer* **a decision**, saying,
We are the servants
of the **God Elah** of *heaven* **the heavens** and earth,

EZRA 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE SERVICE OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEK STOPPED

23 Then when the transcript of the epistle of sovereign Artach Shashta is called out in front of Rechum and Shimshay the scribe and their colleagues, they go in haste to Yeru Shalem to the Yah Hudiym and stop them by arm and valour:

24 then the service of the house of Elah at Yeru Shalem stops — stops to the second year of the sovereigndom of Daryavesh sovereign of Persia.

THE BUILDING OF THE HOUSE OF YAH VEK IS STARTED

5 Then the prophets, Haggay the prophet and Zechar Yah the son of Iddo, prophesy to the Yah Hudiym in Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem in the name of the Elah of Yisra El — to them.

2 Then Zerub Babel the son of Shealti El and Yah Shua the son of Yah Sadaq rise and release to build the house of Elah at Yeru Shalem: and the prophets of Elah with them — uphold them.

3 At the same appointment Tattenay the governor on this side the river and Shethar Bozenay and their colleagues come to them and say thus to them,
Who set you a decree to build this house and to finish this wall?

4 Then we say to them thus:
What are the names of the men who build this building?

5 But the eye of their Elah is on the elders of the Yah Hudiym, that they not stop them until the decree is brought to Daryavesh: and then they respond by epistle concerning this.

THE EPISTLE OF TATTENAY TO DARYAVESH

6 The transcript of the epistle Tattenay governor on this side the river and Shethar Bozenay and his colleagues the Apharsechiy on this side the river send to Daryavesh the sovereign: they send him a decision midst which is inscribed thus:
To Daryavesh the sovereign, all shalom.
Thus be it known to the sovereign, we go into the jurisdiction of Yah Hudah, to the great house of Elah — built with round stones and timber set in the walls: and this service keeps on diligently and prospers in their hands.

9 Then we ask those elders and say to them thus:
Who set you a decree to build this house and to finish these walls?
And also, we asked their names, so that you know we inscribed the names of the men — their heads.

11 And thus they return us a decision, saying,
We are the servants of Elah of the heavens and earth:

EZRA 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and build the house
that was builded these many years ago prior,
which a great king sovereign of Israel Yisra El
builded and set up finished.
12 But Except after that our fathers had provoked caused
the God Elah of heaven unto wrath the heavens to quiver,
he gave them into the hand
of Nebuchadnezzar Nebukadnets Tsar,
the king sovereign of Babylon Babel,
the Chaldean Kasdiy,
who destroyed demolished this house,
and carried exiled the people away into Babylon Babel.
13 But However in the first year of Cyrus Koresh
the king sovereign of Babylon Babel,
the same king Cyrus sovereign Koresh
made set a decree to build this house of God Elah.
14 And the vessels also of gold and silver
of the house of God Elah,
which Nebuchadnezzar Nebukadnets Tsar
took removed out of the temple manse
that was in Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
and brought them
into the temple manse of Babylon Babel,
those did Cyrus Koresh the king sovereign
take remove out of the temple manse of Babylon Babel,
and they were delivered given unto one,
whose name was Sheshbazzar Sheshbats Tsar,
whom he had made set governor;
15 And said unto him, Take Lift these vessels,
go, carry deposit them into the temple manse
that is in Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
and let the house of God Elah be builded in his place.
16 Then came the same Sheshbazzar this Sheshbats Tsar,
and laid the foundation of the house of God Elah
which is in Jerusalem Yeru Shalem:
and since that time from then even until now
hath it been in building,
and yet it is not finished shalamed.
17 Now therefore, if it seem be good to the king sovereign,
let there be search made
in the king's sovereign's treasure house,
which is there at Babylon Babel,
whether it though there be so,
that a decree was made set
of Cyrus Koresh the king sovereign
to build this house of God Elah at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
and let the king sovereign
send his pleasure intention to us concerning this matter.

DARYAVESH SETS A DECREE

6 Then Darius Daryavesh the king sovereign
made set a decree,
and search was made in the house of the rolls scrolls,
where the treasures were laid up deposited
in Babylon Babel.
2 And there was found at Achmetha Ach Metha,
in the palace
that is in the province jurisdiction of the Medes Maday,
a one roll,
and therein in the middle was a record
thus written inscribed:
3 In the first year of Cyrus Koresh the king sovereign
the same Cyrus Koresh the king sovereign
made set a decree concerning the house of God Elah
at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
Let the house be builded,
the place where they offered sacrificed sacrifices,
and let the foundations thereof be strongly laid erected;
the height thereof threescore sixty cubits,
and the breadth width thereof threescore sixty cubits;
4 With three rows layers of great round stones,
and a row of new timber:
and let the expenses
be given out of the king's sovereign's house:
5 And also let the golden and silver vessels
of the house of God Elah,
which Nebuchadnezzar Nebukadnets Tsar
took forth removed out of the temple manse
which is at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
and brought unto Babylon Babel, be restored,

EZRA 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and build the house built prior these many years,
which a great sovereign of Yisra El
built and finished.
12 Except after that,
our fathers quivered Elah of the heavens,
he gave them into the hand of Nebukadnets Tsar
the sovereign of Babel
— the Kasdiy who demolished this house
and exiled the people into Babel:
13 but in the first year
of Koresh the sovereign of Babel,
sovereign Koresh set a decree
to build this house of Elah:
14 and also the vessels of gold and silver
of the house of Elah,
which Nebukadnets Tsar
removed from the manse in Yeru Shalem
and brought into the manse of Babel,
which Koresh the sovereign
removed from the manse of Babel:
and they were given to one;
his name, Sheshbats Tsar, whom he set governor;
15 and says to him, Lift these vessels!
Go, deposit them in the manse in Yeru Shalem:
and build the house of Elah in his place:
16 then this Sheshbats Tsar comes
and lays the foundation of the house of Elah
in Yeru Shalem:
and from then even until now is being built
and is not shalamed.
17 And now, if it is good to the sovereign,
search in the treasure house of the sovereign at Babel,
whether there is a decree
set by Koresh the sovereign
to build this house of Elah at Yeru Shalem:
and send us the intentions of the sovereign
concerning this matter.

DARYAVESH SETS A DECREE

6 Then Daryavesh the sovereign sets a decree
and they search the house of the scrolls,
where the treasures were deposited in Babel:
2 and in the palace at Ach Metha
in the jurisdiction of the Maday they find one roll,
and in the middle, a record inscribed thus:
3 In the first year of Koresh the sovereign
Koresh the sovereign set a decree
concerning the house of Elah at Yeru Shalem,
Build the house — a place to sacrifice sacrifices
and erect the foundations thereof
— its height, sixty cubits
and its width, sixty cubits:
4 with three layers of round stones
and a row of new timber:
and give the expenses
from the house of the sovereign:
5 and also restore the gold and silver vessels
of the house of Elah
which Nebukadnets Tsar removed
from the manse at Yeru Shalem
and brought to Babel;

EZRA 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and brought again returned
unto the temple manse which is at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
every one to his place,
and place deposit them in the house of God Elah.

6 Now therefore,
Tatnai Tattenay, governor beyond the river,
Shetharboznai Shethar Bozenay,
and your companions colleagues
the Apharsachites Apharsechiy,
which are beyond the river, be ye far from thence:

7 Let the work service of this house of God Elah alone;
let the governor of the Jews Yah Hudiym
and the elders of the Jews Yah Hudiym
build this house of God Elah in his place.

8 Moreover I make set a decree
what ye shall do to the elders of these Jews Yah Hudiym
for the building of this house of God Elah:
that of the king's goods sovereign's holdings,
even of the tribute beyond the river,
forthwith diligently expenses be given unto these men,
that they be not hindered not cease.

9 And that which they have need of,
both young bullocks sons of bulls, and rams, and lambs,
for the burnt offerings holocausts
of the God Elah of heaven the heavens,
wheat, salt, wine fermentation, and anointing oil,
according to the appointment edict of the priests
which are at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
let it be given them day by day without fail with no error:

10 That they may offer oblate
sacrifices of sweet savours of rest
unto the God Elah of heaven the heavens,
and pray for the life of the king sovereign,
and of his sons.

11 Also I have made set a decree,
that whosoever any man who shall alter
this word decision,
let timber be pulled down uprooted from his house,
and being set up lifted, let him be hanged struck thereon;
and let his house be made a dunghill cesspools for this.

12 And the God Elah
that hath caused his name to dwell tabernacle there
destroy overthrow all kings sovereigns and people,
that shall put to send forth their hand
to alter and to destroy despoil this house of God Elah:
which is at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.
I Darius Daryavesh have made set a decree;
let it be done with speed serviced diligently.

13 Then Tatnai Tattenay, governor on this side the river,
Shetharboznai Shethar Bozenay,
and their companions colleagues,
according to that
which Darius Daryavesh the king sovereign had sent,
so thus they did speedily diligently.

14 And the elders of the Jews Yah Hudiym builded,
and they prospered
through the prophesying of Haggai Haggay the prophet
and Zechariah Zechar Yah the son of Iddo.
And they builded, and finished it,
according to the commandment decree
of the God Elah of Israel Yisra El,
and according to the commandment decree
of Cyrus Koresh, and Darius Daryavesh,
and Artaxerxes Artach Shashta king sovereign of Persia.

15 **THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH FINISHED**
And this house was finished
on the third day of the month Adar,
which was in the sixth year of the reign sovereigndom
of Darius Daryavesh the king sovereign.

16 **THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH HANUKKAHED**
And the children sons of Israel Yisra El,
the priests, and the Levites Leviym,
and the rest survivors
of the children sons of the captivity exile,
kept the dedication hanukkah of this house of God Elah:
with joy rejoicing.

17 And offered obliterated at the dedication hanukkah
of this house of God Elah:
an hundred bullocks bulls,

EZRA 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and return to their place
in the manse at Yeru Shalem;
and deposit them in the house of Elah.

6 Now, Tattenay governor beyond the river,
Shethar Bozenay
and your colleagues the Apharsechiy
beyond the river, be far from thence:

7 leave the service of this house of Elah:
this is for the governor of the Yah Hudiym
and the elders of the Yah Hudiym
to build this house of Elah in his place.

8 And I set a decree
of what to do to the elders of these Yah Hudiym
for the building of this house of Elah:
that of the holdings of the sovereign
— of the tribute beyond the river,
that expenses be given diligently to these men
that they not cease:
and whatever they need
— sons of bulls and rams and lambs
for the holocausts of the Elah of the heavens
— wheat, salt, fermentation and anointing oil
according to the edict of the priests at Yeru Shalem;
give them day by day with no error:
to oblate sacrifices of savours of rest
to Elah of the heavens;

10 and pray for the life of the sovereign and of his sons:
I set a decree,
that any man who alters this decision,
that timber be uprooted from his house
and being lifted, be struck thereon;
and his house be made cesspools for this.

12 And Elah, who tabernacles his name there,
overthrows all sovereigns and people,
who send their hand to alter and to despoil
this house of Elah at Yeru Shalem.
I Daryavesh set a decree! Service it diligently!

13 Then Tattenay, governor on this side the river,
Shethar Bozenay and their colleagues,
according to what Daryavesh the sovereign sent,
thus they did diligently.

14 And the elders of the Yah Hudiym
build and prosper
through the prophesying of Haggay the prophet
and Zechar Yah the son of Iddo:
and they build and finish
according to the decree of Elah of Yisra El
and according to the decree of Koresh and Daryavesh
and Artach Shashta sovereign of Persia.

15 **THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH FINISHED**
And this house is finished
on the third day of the month Adar,
in the sixth year
of the sovereigndom of Daryavesh the sovereign.

16 **THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH HANUKKAHED**
And the sons of Yisra El
the priests and the Leviym
and the survivors of the sons of the exile,
hanukkah this house of Elah with rejoicing;
and oblate at the hanukkah of this house of Elah:
a hundred bulls,

EZRA 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

two hundred rams, four hundred lambs;
and for a *sin offering* **the sin** for all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
twelve *he goats* **buck goats of the doe goats**,
according to the *number* **enumeration**
of the *tribes* **scions of Israel** **Yisra El**.
18 And they *set* **raised** the priests in their divisions,
and the *Levites* **Leviym** in their *courses* **allotments**,
for the service of *God* **Elah**,
which is at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
as it is written **according to the inscribing**
in the *book* **scroll of Moses Mosheh**.
THE PASACH WORKED
19 And the *children* **sons of the captivity exile**
kept **worked** the *passover* **pasach**
upon the fourteenth *day* of the first month.
20 For the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**
were purified *together*,
all **each one** of them were pure,
and *killed* **slaughtered** the *passover* **pasach**
for all the *children* **sons of the captivity exile**,
and for their brethren the priests, and for themselves.
21 And the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
which *were come again* **returned** out of *captivity exile*,
and all such as had separated themselves unto them
from the *filthiness* **foulness**
of the *heathen* **goyim** of the land,
to seek the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim of Israel** **Yisra El**,
did eat,
22 And *kept* **worked**
the *feast* **celebration of unleavened bread matsah**
seven days with *joy* **cheer**:
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *made* **cheered** them *joyful*,
and turned the heart
of the *king* **sovereign of Assyria** **Ashshur** unto them,
to strengthen their hands
in the work of the house of *God* **Elohim**,
the *God* **Elohim of Israel** **Yisra El**.
EZRA COMES TO YERU SHALEM
7 Now after these *things* **words**,
in the *reign* **sovereigndom of Artaxerxes** **Artach Shashta**,
king **sovereign of Persia**,
Ezra the son of *Seraiah* **Sera Yah**,
the son of *Azariah* **Azar Yah**, the son of *Hilkiah* **Hilqi Yah**,
2 The son of *Shallum*,
the son of *Zadok* **Sadoq**, the son of *Ahitub* **Achiv Tub**,
3 The son of *Amariah* **Amar Yah**,
the son of *Azariah* **Azar Yah**,
the son of *Meraioth* **Merayoth**,
4 The son of *Zerachiah* **Zerach Yah**,
the son of *Uzzi*, the son of *Bukki* **Buqqi**,
5 The son of *Abishua* **Abi Shua**,
the son of *Phinehas* **Pinechas**, the son of *Eleazar* **El Azar**,
the son of *Aaron* **Aharon** the *chief* **head** priest:
6 This Ezra *went up* **ascended** from *Babylon* **Babel**;
and he was a *ready* **skillful** scribe
in the *law* **torah of Moses** **Mosheh**,
which the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim of Israel** **Yisra El**
had given:
and the *king* **granted** **sovereign** gave him all his request,
according to the hand
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim** upon him.
7 And there *went up* **ascended**
some of the children **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**,
and of the priests, and the *Levites* **Leviym**,
and the singers, and the porters,
and the *Nethinims* **Dedicates**,
unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
in the seventh year
of *Artaxerxes* **Artach Shashta** the *king* **sovereign**.
8 And he came to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
in the fifth month,
which was in the seventh year of the *king* **sovereign**.
9 For upon the first *day* of the first month
began he to go up from Babylon
he founded the ascent to Babel,
and on the first *day* of the fifth month
came he to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
according to the good hand of his *God* **Elohim** upon him.
10 For Ezra had prepared his heart

EZRA 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

two hundred rams, four hundred lambs:
and for the sin for all *Yisra El*,
twelve buck goats of the doe goats
according to the enumeration of the scions of *Yisra El*.
18 And they raise the priests in their divisions
and the *Leviym* in their allotments,
for the service of *Elah* at *Yeru Shalem*;
according to the inscribing in the scroll of *Mosheh*.
THE PASACH WORKS
19 And the sons of the exile work the pasach
on the fourteenth of the first month:
20 for the priests and the *Leviym* are purified
— each one of them pure:
and they slaughter the pasach for all the sons of exile
and for their brothers the priests and for themselves:
21 and the sons of *Yisra El* who returned from exile
and all such as separated themselves to them
from the foulness of the goyim of the land
to seek *Yah Veh Elohim* of *Yisra El*, eat:
22 and work the celebration of matsah
seven days with cheer:
for *Yah Veh* cheers them
and turns the heart
of the sovereign of *Ashshur* unto them,
to strengthen their hands
in the work of the house of *Elohim*,
the *Elohim* of *Yisra El*.
EZRA COMES TO YERU SHALEM
7 And after these words,
in the sovereigndom of *Artach Shashta*
sovereign of *Persia*,
Ezra the son of *Sera Yah*,
the son of *Hilqi Yah*,
the son of *Shallum*
the son of *Sadoq*
the son of *Achiv Tub*
the son of *Amar Yah*
the son of *Azar Yah*
the son of *Zerach Yah*
the son of *Uzzi*
the son of *Buqqi*
the son of *Abi Shua*
the son of *Pinechas*
the son of *El Azar*
the son of *Aharon* the head priest
— this Ezra ascends from *Babel*;
and he is a skillful scribe in the torah of *Mosheh*
which *Yah Veh Elohim* of *Yisra El* gave:
and the sovereign gives him all his request,
according to the hand of *Yah Veh* his *Elohim* on him:
7 and *some* of the sons of *Yisra El*
and of the priests and the *Leviym*
and the singers and the porters and the *Dedicates*
ascend to *Yeru Shalem*;
in the seventh year of *Artach Shashta* the sovereign:
8 and he comes to *Yeru Shalem* in the fifth month
— in the seventh year of the sovereign:
9 for on the first of the first month
he founds the ascent to *Babel*:
and on the first of the fifth month
he comes to *Yeru Shalem*
according to the good hand of his *Elohim* on him.
10 For Ezra prepares his heart

EZRA 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

to seek the *law torah* of the LORD Yah Veh,
and to *do work* it,
and to teach in *Israel Yisra El* statutes and judgments.

THE EPISTLE OF ARTACH SHASHTA TO EZRA

11 Now this is the *copy transcript* of the *letter epistle*
that the *king Artaxerxes sovereign Artach Shashta*
gave unto Ezra the priest, the scribe,
even a scribe of the words
of the *commandments misvoth* of the LORD Yah Veh,
and of his statutes to *Israel Yisra El*.
12 *Artaxerxes Artach Shashta,*
king sovereign of kings sovereigns,
unto Ezra the priest,
a scribe of the *law edict*
of the *God Elah* of *heaven the heavens,*
perfect peace consummate, and *at such a time et cetera.*
13 I *make set* a decree,
that all they of the people of *Israel Yisra El,*
and of his priests and *Levites Levium,*
in my *realm sovereignty,*
which *are minded of their own freewill volunteer*
to *go up come* to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,*
go *bring* with thee.
14 *Forasmuch Because* as thou art sent
from in front of the *king sovereign,*
and of his seven counsellors,
to *enquire search*
concerning *Judah Yah Hudah* and *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,*
according to the *law edict* of thy *God Elah*
which is in thine hand;
15 And to *carry bring* the silver and gold,
which the *king sovereign* and his counsellors
have *freely offered volunteered*
unto the *God Elah* of *Israel Yisra El,*
whose *habitation tabernacle* is in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,*
16 And all the silver and gold that thou canst find
in all the *province jurisdiction* of *Babylon Babel,*
with the *freewill offering voluntary* of the people,
and of the priests,
offering willingly volunteered for the house of thy *God Elah*
which is in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem:*
17 *That Therefore*
thou mayest buy *speedily diligently* with this *money silver*
bullocks bulls, rams, lambs,
with their *meat offerings* and their *drink offerings libations,*
and *offer oblate* them upon the *sacrifice* altar
of the house of your *God Elah*
which is in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.*
18 And whatsoever shall *seem good to well—please* thee,
and to thy brethren,
to do with the *rest surviving* of the silver and the gold,
that do after the *will intention* of your *God Elah.*
19 The vessels also that are given thee
for the service of the house of thy *God Elah,*
those *deliver shalam* thou
before the God in front of the Elah of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.*
20 And *whatsoever more shall be needful*
the rest of the needs
for the house of thy *God Elah,*
which *thou shalt have occasion shall befall thee*
to *bestow give,*
bestow give it out of the *king's sovereign's* treasure house.
21 And *I from me,*
even I *Artaxerxes Artach Shashta* the *king sovereign,*
do make set a decree to all the treasurers
which are beyond the river,
that *whatsoever all that* Ezra the priest,
the scribe of the *law edict*
of the *God Elah* of *heaven the heavens,*
shall *require ask* of you, it be done *speedily diligently,*
22 Unto an hundred *talents rounds* of silver,
and to an hundred measures of wheat,
and to an hundred baths of *wine fermentation,*
and to an hundred baths of *anointing oil,*
and salt *without prescribing how much not scribed.*
23 *Whatsoever is commanded All that is of the decree*
by the *God Elah* of *heaven the heavens,*
let it be diligently done
for the house of the *God Elah* of *heaven the heavens:*

EZRA 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to seek the torah of Yah Veh
and to work it
and to teach statutes and judgments in Yisra El.

THE EPISTLE OF ARTACH SHASHTA TO EZRA

11 And this is the transcript of the epistle
the sovereign Artach Shashta
gives to Ezra the priest the scribe
— a scribe of the words of the misvoth of Yah Veh
and of his statutes to Yisra El:
12 Artach Shashta, sovereign of sovereigns,
to Ezra the priest,
a scribe of the edict of Elah of the heavens,
consummate and et cetera.
13 I set a decree,
bring with you all of the people of Yisra El
and his priests and Levium in my sovereignty
who volunteer to come to Yeru Shalem:
14 because as you are sent
from in front of the sovereign
and from his seven counsellors,
to search, concerning Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem,
according to the edict of your Elah in your hand:
and to bring the silver and gold
the sovereign and his counsellors volunteer
to Elah of Yisra El,
whose tabernacle *is* in Yeru Shalem:
and all the silver and gold you find
in all the jurisdiction of Babel
— with the voluntary of the people and of the priests
who volunteer
for the house of their Elah in Yeru Shalem:
17 so with this silver,
diligently buy bulls, rams, lambs,
with their offerings and their libations;
and oblate them on the sacrifice altar
of the house of your Elah in Yeru Shalem.
18 And whatever
well — pleases you and your brothers
to do with the silver and the gold that survives,
do after the intention of your Elah:
19 and shalam the vessels given you
for the service of the house of your Elah,
in front of the Elah of Yeru Shalem:
20 and the rest of the needs for the house of your Elah
whatever befalls you to give
— give from the treasure house of the sovereign.
21 And from me,
even I — Artach Shashta the sovereign
set a decree to all the treasurers beyond the river
— that all that Ezra the priest,
the scribe of the edict of Elah of the heavens,
asks of you, do diligently
22 — to a hundred rounds of silver
and to a hundred measures of wheat
and to a hundred baths of fermentation
and to a hundred baths of anointing oil
and salt not scribed:
23 all that is of the decree by Elah of the heavens,
do diligently for the house of Elah of the heavens:

EZRA 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for why should there be *wrath* **rage**
against the *realm* **sovereigndom**
of the *king* **sovereign** and his sons?
24 Also we *certify* **have you know**,
that touching **as for** any of the priests and *Levites* **Leviym**,
singers **pluckers**, *porters* **portal guards**,
Nethinims **Dedicates**,
or *ministers* **servers** of this house of *God* **Elah**,
it shall not be *lawful* **permissible**
to *impose toll* **assess tribute**, or custom, upon them.
25 And thou, Ezra,
after the wisdom of thy *God* **Elah**, that is in thine hand,
set magistrates **appoint judges** and *judges* **advocates**,
which may *judge* **plead**
for all the people that are beyond the river,
all such as know the *laws* **edicts** of thy *God* **Elah**;
and *teach ye* **have them know** that know them not.
26 And whosoever *will* **shall** not do
the *law* **edict** of thy *God* **Elah**,
and the *law* **edict** of the *king* **sovereign**,
let *judgment* **penalty**
be *executed* **speedily served diligently** upon him,
whether *it be* unto death,
or to *banishment* **whether to uproot**,
or **whether** to confiscation of *goods* **holdings**,
or to *imprisonment* **whether to bonds**.
27 Blessed be
the *LORD* *God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of our fathers,
which hath *put given* such a *thing* as this
in the *king's* **sovereign's** heart,
to *beautify* **adorn** the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
which is in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
28 And hath *extended* **spread** mercy unto me
before **at the face** of the *king* **sovereign**,
and his counsellors,
and *before* **at the face**
of all the *king's* **sovereign's** mighty *princes* **governors**.
And I was strengthened as the hand
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim** was upon me,
and I gathered *together* out of *Israel* **Yisra El**
chief men **heads** to go up **ascend** with me.

THE GENEALOGIZED WHO ASCEND FROM BABEL

8 These are now the *chief* **heads** of their fathers,
and *this is* **these are** the *genealogy* of them **genealogized**
that went up **ascended** with me from *Babylon* **Babel**,
in the *reign* **sovereigndom**
of *Artaxerxes* **Artach Shashta** the *king* **sovereign**.
2 Of the sons of *Phinehas* **Pinechas**;
Gershom:
of the sons of *Ithamar* **Iy Thamar**;
Daniel:
of the sons of David;
Hattush.
3 Of the sons of *Shechaniah* **Shechan Yah**,
of the sons of Pharosh;
Zechariah **Zechar Yah**:
and with him
were *reckoned* by *genealogy* **genealogized** of the males
an hundred and fifty.
4 Of the sons of *Pahathmoab* **Pachath Moab**;
Elioenai **El Ya Enay** the son of *Zerahiah* **Zerach Yah**,
and with him two hundred males.
5 Of the sons of *Shechaniah* **Shechan Yah**;
the son of *Jahaziel* **Yachazi El**,
and with him three hundred males.
6 Of the sons also of Adin;
Ebed the son of *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**,
and with him fifty males.
7 And of the sons of Elam;
Jeshaiah **Yesha Yah** the son of *Athaliah* **Athal Yah**,
and with him seventy males.
8 And of the sons of *Shephatiah* **Shaphat Yah**;
Zebadiah **Zebad Yah** the son of *Michael* **Michah El**,
and with him *fourscore* **eighty** males.
9 Of the sons of *Joab* **Yah Ab**;
Obadiah **Obad Yah** the son of *Jehiel* **Yechi El**,
and with him two hundred and eighteen males.
10 And of the sons of Shelomith;
the son of *Josiphiah* **Yosiph Yah**,

EZRA 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

For why have rage
against the sovereigndom of the sovereign
and his sons?
24 And we have you know,
as for the priests and Leviym, pluckers, portal guards,
Dedicates, or servers of this house of Elah,
it is not permissible
to assess tribute or custom on them.
25 And you, Ezra,
after the wisdom of your Elah, in your hand,
appoint judges and advocates,
to plead for all the people beyond the river
— all such as know the edicts of your Elah;
so that they who know them not know.
26 And whoever serves not
the edict of your Elah and the edict of the sovereign,
serve the penalty diligently
— whether to death, whether to uproot,
whether to confiscate holdings, whether to bonds.
27 Blessed — Yah Veh Elohim of our fathers
who gives such as this in the heart of the sovereign,
to adorn the house of Yah Veh in Yeru Shalem:
28 and spread mercy to me
at the face of the sovereign and his counsellors
and at the face of all the mighty governors
of the sovereign:
and I strengthen myself
as the hand of Yah Veh my Elohim is on me;
and I gather from Yisra El heads to ascend with me.

THE GENEALOGIZED WHO ASCEND FROM BABEL

8 These are the heads of their fathers
and these are the genealogized
who ascend with me from Babel
in the sovereigndom of Artach Shashta the sovereign:
2 of the sons of Pinechas:
Gershom;
of the sons of Iy Thamar:
Daniel;
of the sons of David:
Hattush;
3 of the sons of Shechan Yah of the sons of Pharosh:
Zechar Yah;
and genealogized with him
are a hundred and fifty males;
4 of the sons of Pachath Moab:
El Ya Enay the son of Zerach Yah
and with him two hundred males;
5 of the sons of Shechan Yah:
the son of Yachazi El
and with him three hundred males;
6 of the the sons of Adin:
Ebed the son of Yah Nathan
and with him fifty males;
7 and of the sons of Elam:
Yesha Yah the son of Athal Yah
and with him seventy males;
8 and of the sons of Shaphat Yah:
Zebad Yah the son of Michah El
and with him eighty males;
9 of the sons of Yah Ab:
Obad Yah the son of Yechi El
and with him two hundred and eighteen males;
10 and of the sons of Shelomith:
the son of Yosiph Yah

EZRA 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and with him an hundred and *threescore* **sixty** males.
 11 And of the sons of *Bebai* **Bebay**;
Zechariah **Zechar Yah** the son of *Bebai* **Bebay**,
 and with him twenty and eight males.
 12 And of the sons of *Azgd*;
Johanan **Yah An** the son of *Hakkatan* **Qatan**,
 and with him an hundred and ten males.
 13 And of the last sons of *Adonikam* **Adoni Qam**,
 whose names are these,
Eliphelet **Eli Phelet**, *Jeiel* **Yei El** and *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**,
 and with them *threescore* **sixty** males.
 14 Of the sons also of *Bigvai* **Bigvay**;
Uthai, and *Zabbud* **Zakkur**,
 and with them seventy males.
 THE RETURN TO YERU SHALEM
 15 And I gathered them *together*
 to the river that runneth to *Ahava*;
 and there *abode* **encamped** we in tents three days:
 and I *viewed* **discerned** the people, and the priests,
 and found there none of the sons of Levi.
 16 Then sent I for *Eliezer* **Eli Ezer**,
 for *Ariel* **Ari El**, for *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**,
 and for *Elnathan* **El Nathan**, and for *Jarib* **Yarib**,
 and for *Elnathan* **El Nathan**, and for *Nathan*,
 and for *Zechariah* **Zechar Yah**, and for *Meshullam*,
chief men **heads**;
 also for *Joiarib* **Yah Jarib**, and for *Elnathan* **El Nathan**,
men of understanding **discerners**.
 17 And I *sent* **misvahed** them with *commandment*
 unto *Iddo*
 the *chief head* at the place *Casiphia* **Kasiphia**,
 and I *told them* **set in their mouth**
 what **words** they should say **word** unto *Iddo*,
 and to his brethren the *Nethinims* **Dedicates**,
 at the place *Casiphia* **Kasiphia**,
 that they should bring unto us ministers
 for the house of our *God* **Elohim**.
 18 And by the good hand of our *God* **Elohim** upon us
 they brought us a man of *understanding* **comprehension**,
 of the sons of *Mahli* **Machli**,
 the son of *Levi*, the son of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
 and *Sherebiah* **Shereb Yah**, with his sons and his brethren,
 eighteen;
 19 And *Hashabiah* **Hashab Yah**,
 and with him *Jeshaiah* **Yesha Yah** of the sons of *Merari*,
 his brethren and their sons,
 twenty;
 20 Also of the *Nethinims* **Dedicates**,
 whom *David* and the *princes* **governors**
 had *appointed* **given** for the service of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
 two hundred and twenty *Nethinims* **Dedicates**:
 all of them were *expressed* **appointed** by name.
 21 Then I *proclaimed* **called** a fast there,
 at the river of *Ahava*,
 that we might *afflict* **humble** ourselves
before **at the face of** our *God* **Elohim**,
 to seek of him a *right* **straight** way for us,
 and for our *little ones* **toddlers**,
 and for all our *substance* **acquisition**.
 22 For I was *ashamed* **shamed**
 to *require* **ask** of the *king* **sovereign**
 a *band of soldiers* **men of valour** and *horsemen* **cavalry**
 to help us against the enemy in the way:
 because we had *spoken* **said** unto the *king* **sovereign**,
 saying, The hand of our *God* **Elohim**
 is upon all them for good that seek him;
 but his *power* **strength** and his wrath
 is against all them that forsake him.
 23 So we fasted and besought our *God* **Elohim** for this:
 and he was *intreated* of us.
 24 Then I separated
 twelve of the *chief* **governors** of the priests,
Sherebiah **Shereb Yah**, *Hashabiah* **Hashab Yah**,
 and ten of their brethren with them,
 25 And weighed unto them the silver, and the gold,
 and the *vessels* **instruments**,
 even the *offering* **exaltment**
 of the house of our *God* **Elohim**,
 which the *king* **sovereign**, and his counsellors,

EZRA 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and with him a hundred and sixty males;
 11 and of the sons of *Bebay*:
Zechar Yah the son of *Bebay*
 and with him twenty—eight males;
 12 and of the sons of *Azgd*:
Yah An the son of *Qatan*
 and with him a hundred and ten males;
 13 and of the last sons of *Adoni Qam*:
 whose names are these
 — *Eli Phelet*, *Yei El* and *Shema Yah*
 and with them sixty males;
 14 of the sons also of *Bigvay*:
Uthai and *Zakkur*
 and with them seventy males.
 THE RETURN TO YERU SHALEM
 15 And I gather them to the river that runs to *Ahava*;
 and we encamp there three days:
 and I discern the people and the priests
 and find none of the sons of *Levi*:
 16 and I send for *Eli Ezer*, for *Ari El*, for *Shema Yah*
 and for *El Nathan* and for *Yarib* and for *El Nathan*
 and for *Nathan* and for *Zechar Yah*
 and for *Meshullam*
 — heads;
 and for *Yah Yarib* and for *El Nathan*
 — discerners:
 17 and I misvah them to *Iddo* the head
 at the place *Casiphia*:
 and I set in their mouth
 what words to word
 to *Iddo* and to his brothers the *Dedicates*
 at the place *Casiphia*:
 to bring us ministers for the house of our *Elohim*.
 18 And by the good hand of our *Elohim* on us
 they bring us a man of *comprehension*
 of the sons of *Machli*,
 the son of *Levi*, the son of *Yisra El*;
 and *Shereb Yah*, with his sons and his brothers
 — eighteen;
 19 and *Hashab Yah*
 and with him *Yesha Yah* of the sons of *Merari*,
 his brothers and their sons
 — twenty;
 20 and of the *Dedicates*
 whom *David* and the *governors*
 gave for the service of the *Leviym*
 — two hundred and twenty *Dedicates*:
 — all appointed by name.
 21 And I call a fast there at the river of *Ahava*
 to humble ourselves at the face of our *Elohim*
 — to seek of him a straight way
 for us and for our toddlers
 and for all our acquisition:
 22 for I shame to ask the sovereign
 for men of valour and cavalry
 to help us against the enemy in the way:
 because we had said to the sovereign, saying,
 The hand of our *Elohim*
 is on all who seek him for good;
 but his strength and his wrath
 is against all who forsake him:
 23 and we fast and beseech our *Elohim* for this:
 and he is intreated of us.
 24 And I separate
 twelve of the governors of the priests
 — *Shereb Yah*, *Hashab Yah*
 and ten of their brothers with them;
 25 and weighed to them the silver and the gold
 and the instruments
 and an exaltment of the house of our *Elohim*
 which the sovereign and his counsellors

EZRA 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and his *lords* **governors**,
and all *Israel* **Yisra El** *there* present, had *offered* **lifted**:
26 I even weighed unto their hand
six hundred and fifty *talents* **rounds** of silver,
and silver *vessels* **instruments** an hundred *talents* **rounds**,
and of gold an hundred *talents* **rounds**;
27 Also twenty *basons* **tankards** of gold,
of a thousand *drams* **darics**;
and two *vessels* **instruments** of *fine* **best yellow** copper,
28 *precious* **desirable** as gold.
And I said unto them,
ye are holy unto *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh**;
the *vessels* **instruments** are holy also;
and the silver and the gold
are a *freewill offering* **voluntary**
unto *the* **LORD** **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of your fathers.
29 Watch ye, and *keep* **guard** them,
until ye weigh them
before **at the face of** the *chief* **governor**
of the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**,
and *chief* **governor** of the fathers of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
in the chambers of the house of *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh**.
30 So took the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**
the weight of the silver, and the gold,
and the *vessels* **instruments**,
to bring them to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
unto the house of our *God* **Elohim**.
31 Then we *departed* **pulled stakes** from the river of Ahava
on the twelfth *day* of the first month,
to go unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
and the hand of our *God* **Elohim** was upon us,
and he *delivered* **rescued** us
from the *hand* **palm** of the enemy,
and of such as *lay in wait* **lurked** by the way.
32 And we came to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and *abode* **settled** there three days.
33 Now on the fourth day
was the silver and the gold and the *vessels* **instruments**
weighed in the house of our *God* **Elohim**
by the hand of Meremoth
the son of *Uriah* **Uri Yah** the priest;
and with him was *Eleazar* **El Azar**
the son of *Phinehas* **Pinechas**;
and with them was *Jozabad* **Yah Zabad**
the son of *Jeshua* **Yah Shua**,
and *Noadiah* **Noad Yah** the son of *Binnui* **Binnuy**,
Levites **Leviym**;
34 By number and by weight of every one:
and all the weight was *written* **inscribed** at that time.
35 Also the *children* **sons** of those
that had been carried away **of the exile**,
which were come out of the captivity,
offered burnt offerings **oblated holocausts**
unto *the* **God** **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
twelve bullocks for all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
ninety and six rams, seventy and seven lambs,
twelve *he* **buck** goats for a *sin offering* **the sin**:
all this was a *burnt offering* **holocaust** unto *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh**.
36 And they *delivered* **gave**
the *king's commissions* **sovereign's edicts**
unto the *king's lieutenants* **sovereign's satraps**,
and to the governors on this side the river:
and they *furthered* **lifted** the people,
and the house of *God* **Elohim**.

THE PRAYER OF EZRA CONCERNING INTERMINGLING

9 Now when these *things* were *done* **finished**,
the *princes* **governors** came **near** to me, saying,
The people of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and the priests, and the *Levites* **Leviym**,
have not separated themselves
from the people of the lands,
doing according to their *abominations* **abhorrences**,
even of the Canaanites **Kenaaniy**, the *Hittites* **Hethiy**,
the *Perizzites* **Perizziy**, the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**,
the *Ammonites* **Ammoniy**, the *Moabites* **Moabiy**,
the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**, and the *Amorites* **Emoriy**.
2 For they have *taken* **spared** of their daughters

EZRA 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and his governors and all *Yisra El* present, lifted:
26 and I weigh to their hand
six hundred and fifty rounds of silver
and silver instruments a hundred rounds;
of gold a hundred rounds
27 and twenty tankards of gold of a thousand darics
and two instruments of best yellow copper
as desirable as gold.
28 And I say to them, You *are* holy to Yah Veh;
and the instruments *are* holy;
and the silver and the gold
are a voluntary to Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers:
29 Watch and guard them until you weigh them
at the face of the governor of the priests
and the Leviym;
and governor of the fathers of *Yisra El* at *Yeru Shalem*
in the chambers of the house of Yah Veh.
30 And the priests and the Leviym take the weight
of the silver and the gold and the instruments,
to bring them to *Yeru Shalem*
to the house of our Elohim.
31 And we pull stakes from the river of Ahava
on the twelfth of the first month
to go to *Yeru Shalem*:
and the hand of our Elohim is on us
and he rescues us from the palm of the enemy
and of such as lurk by the way:
32 and we come to *Yeru Shalem*
and settle there three days:
33 and on the fourth day
the silver and the gold and the instruments
are weighed in the house of our Elohim
by the hand of Meremoth
the son of *Uri Yah* the priest;
and with him *is* El Azar the son of Pinechas;
and with them *is* Yah Zabad the son of Yah Shua
and *Noad Yah* the son of *Binnuy* — Leviym;
34 by number and by weight of every one:
and all the weight is inscribed at that time.
35 They, the sons of the exile,
who came from the captivity
oblated holocausts to Elohim of *Yisra El*,
— twelve bullocks for all *Yisra El*,
ninety—six rams, seventy—seven lambs,
twelve buck goats for the sin:
all this — a holocaust to Yah Veh:
36 and they give the edicts of the sovereign
to the satraps of the sovereign
and to the governors on this side the river:
and they lift the people and the house of Elohim.

THE PRAYER OF EZRA CONCERNING INTERMINGLING

9 And they finish these
and the governors come near me, saying,
The people of *Yisra El* and the priests and the Leviym
separate not themselves from the people of the lands
according to the abhorrences
of the *Kenaaniy*, the *Hethiy*,
the *Perizziy*, the *Yebusiy*, the *Ammoniy*,
the *Moabiy*, the *Misrayim* and the *Emoriy*:
2 for they spare their daughters

EZRA 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for themselves, and for their sons:
so that the holy seed have mingled *themselves*
with the people of those lands:
yea, the hand of the *princes* **governors** and *rulers* **prefects**
hath been *chief* **heads** in this *trespass* **treason**.
3 And when I heard this *thing* **word**,
I *rent* **ripped** my *garment* **clothes** and my mantle,
and *plucked off* **baldened** the hair
of my head and of my beard,
and sat down astonished.
4 Then were *assembled* **gathered** unto me
every one that trembled at the words
of the *God* **Elohim of Israel** *Yisra El*,
because of the *transgression* **treason**
of those that had been *carried away* **exiled**;
and I sat astonished until the evening *sacrifice* **offering**.
5 And at the evening *sacrifice* **offering**
I arose up *from my heaviness* **fasting**;
and having *rent* **ripped** my *garment* **clothes** and my mantle,
I *fell* **bowed** upon my knees,
and spread out my *hands* **palms**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**,
6 And said, O my *God* **Elohim**,
I am *ashamed* **shamed** and blush to lift up my face to thee,
my *God* **Elohim**:
for our *iniquities* **perversities**
are increased **abound** over our head,
and our *trespass* **guilt** is grown up unto the heavens.
7 Since the days of our fathers
have we been in a great *trespass* **guilt** unto this day;
and for our *iniquities* **perversities** have we,
our *kings* **sovereigns**, and our priests,
been *delivered* **given** into the hand
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of the lands,
to the sword, to captivity, and to a *spoil* **plunder**,
and to *confusion of* **shamed** face, as it is this day.
8 And now for a little *space* **blink**
grace **supplication** hath been *shewed*
from the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
to leave us a *remnant* **escapees** to *escape* **survive**,
and to give us a *nailed* **stake** in his *holy* **place** *holies*,
that our *God* **Elohim** may lighten our eyes,
and give us a little *reviving* **invigoration**
in our *bondage* **servitude**.
9 For we were *bondmen* **servants**;
yet our *God* **Elohim** hath not forsaken us
in our *bondage* **servitude**,
but hath *extended* **spread** mercy unto us
in the *sight* **face** of the *kings* **sovereigns** of Persia,
to give us a *reviving* **an invigoration**,
to *set up* **lift** the house of our *God* **Elohim**,
and to *repair* **stand** the *desolations* **parched areas** thereof,
and to give us a wall
in *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
10 And now, O our *God* **Elohim**,
what shall we say after this?
for we have forsaken thy *commandments* **misvoth**,
11 Which thou hast *commanded* **misvahed**
by **the hand of** thy servants the prophets, saying,
The land, unto which ye go to possess it,
is *an unclean land with the filthiness* **a land of exclusion**
of the people of the lands,
with their *abominations* **abhorrences**,
which have filled it from *one end* **mouth** to *another* **mouth**
with their *uncleanness* **foulness**.
12 Now *therefore* give not your daughters unto their sons,
neither *take* **bear** their daughters unto your sons,
nor seek their *peace* **shalom** or their *wealth* **goodness**
for ever **eternally**:
that ye may *be strong* **strengthen**,
and eat the good of the land,
and leave it for an *inheritance* **to your children for ever**
for your sons to possess eternally.
13 And after all that is come upon us
for our evil *deeds* **works**, and for our great *trespass* **guilt**,
seeing that thou our *God* **Elohim** hast
punished us less than our iniquities deserve
spared us from our downward perversities,
and hast given us such *deliverance* **an escape** as this;

EZRA 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for themselves and for their sons:
so that the holy seed mingles
with the people of those lands:
yes, the hand of the governors and prefects
are heads in this treason.
3 And I hear this word
and I rip my clothes and my mantle
and balden the hair of my head and of my beard,
and sit down astonished.
4 and every one
who trembles at the words of Elohim of Yisra El
gathers to me;
because of the treason of those who were exiled;
and I sat astonished until the evening offering.
5 And at the evening offering
I rise and fast and rip my clothes and my mantle:
I bow on my knees and spread my palms
to Yah Veh my Elohim,
and say, O my Elohim,
6 I shame and blush to lift my face to thee, my Elohim:
for our perversities abound over our head,
and our guilt grows to the heavens:
since the days of our fathers
we are in a great guilt — unto this day:
and for our perversities,
our sovereigns and our priests,
are given into the hand of the sovereigns of the lands
— to the sword, to captivity, and to a plunder,
and to shamed face, as this day.
8 And now for a little blink,
supplication becomes from Yah Veh our Elohim
— to allow escapees to survive,
and to give us a stake in his holies,
so that our Elohim lighten our eyes,
and give us a little invigoration in our servitude.
9 For we are servants;
yet our Elohim forsakes us not in our servitude;
but spreads us mercy
at the face of the sovereigns of Persia
— to give us an invigoration
— to lift the house of our Elohim
and to stand the parched areas thereof
and to give us a wall
in Yah Hudah and in Yeru Shalem.
10 And now, O our Elohim, what say we?
For we forsook your misvoth
11 which you misvahed
by the hand of your servants the prophets, saying,
The land you go to possess,
is a land of exclusion of the people of the lands
with their abhorrences
who filled it from mouth to mouth
with their foulness.
12 And now, neither give your daughters to their sons,
nor bear their daughters to your sons,
nor seek their shalom or their goodness eternally:
that you strengthen and eat the good of the land
for your sons to possess eternally.
13 And after all that comes upon us
for our evil works and for our great guilt
— seeing that you our Elohim;
spare us from our downward perversities,
and give us such an escape as this

EZRA 9, 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 Should we again **return**
to break thy *commandments* **misvoth**,
and *join in affinity* **intermarry**
with the people of these *abominations* **abhorrences?**
wouldest **shouldest** not thou be angry with us
till thou hadst *consumed* **finished** us **off**,
so that there should be no *remnant* **survivors**
nor *escaping* **escapee?**

15 O LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
thou art *righteous* **just**:
for we *remain* **survive** yet escaped as it is this day: behold,
we are *before thee* **at thy face** in our *trespasses* **guilt**:
for we cannot stand *before thee* **at thy face**
because of this.

A MIGHTY CONGREGATION WEEPS

10 Now when Ezra had prayed,
and when he had *confessed* **spread hands**,
weeping and *casting himself* **falling** down
before **at the face of** the house of *God* **Elohim**,
there *assembled* **gathered** unto him out of *Israel* **Yisra El**
a very **mighty** great congregation
of men and women and children:
for *in weeping*, the people wept very *sore* **aboundingly**.
2 And *Shechaniah* **Shechan Yah** the son of *Jehiel* **Yechi El**,
one of the sons of Elam, answered and said unto Ezra,
We have *trespassed* **treasoned** against our *God* **Elohim**,
and have *taken* **settled** strange *wives* **women**
of the people of the land:
yet now there is *hope* **expectation** in *Israel* **Yisra El**
concerning this *thing*.
3 Now therefore
let us *make* **cut** a covenant with our *God* **Elohim**
to *put away* **bring** all the *wives* **women**,
and such as are *born* **birthed** of them,
according to the counsel of my *Lord* **Adonay**,
and of those that tremble
at the *commandment* **misvah** of our *God* **Elohim**;
and let it be *done* **worked** according to the *law* **torah**.
4 Arise; for this *matter* **belongeth** **word be** unto thee:
we also *will* **shall** be with thee:
be of good courage **strengthen**, and *do* **work** it.
5 Then arose Ezra, and made the *chief* **governor** priests,
the *Levites* **Leviym**, and all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
to *swear* **oath**
that they should *do* **work** according to this word.
6 And they *sware* **oathed**.
Then Ezra rose *up*
from *before* **the face of** the house of *God* **Elohim**,
and went into the chamber
of *Johanan* **Yah Hanan** the son of *Eliashib* **El Yashib**:
and when he came thither,
he did eat no bread, nor drink water:
for he mourned because of the *transgression* **treason**
of them that had been *carried away* **exiled**.
7 And they *made proclamation* **passed a voice**
throughout *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
unto all the *children* **sons of the captivity** **exile**,
that they should gather *themselves together*
unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
8 And that whosoever
would **should** not come within three days,
according to the counsel
of the *princes* **governors** and the elders,
all his *substance* **acquisition** should be *forfeited* **devoted**,
and himself separated from the congregation
of those that had been *carried away* **exiled**.
9 Then all the men
of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**
gathered *themselves together* unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
within three days.
It was the ninth month, on the twentieth *day* of the month;
and all the people *sat* **settled** in the *street* **broadway**
of the house of *God* **Elohim**,
trembling because of this *matter* **word**,
and for the great rain.
10 And Ezra the priest *stood up* **arose**, and said unto them,
ye have *transgressed* **treasoned**,
and have *taken* **settled** strange *wives* **women**,
to *increase* **add** to the *trespass* **guilt** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

EZRA 9, 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 — return we to break your misvoth
and intermarry with the people of these abhorrences?
Are you not angry with us — to finish us off
so that there is neither survivor nor escapee?

15 O Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El, you are just:
for we survive yet escaped as it is this day:
behold, we are at your face in our guilt:
for no one stands at your face because of this.

A MIGHTY CONGREGATION WEEPS

10 And Ezra prays and spreads hands
— weeping and falling
at the face of the house of Elohim:
a mighty great congregation from Yisra El
— men and women and children gather to him:
for in weeping, the people weep abundingly.

2 And Shechan Yah the son of Yechi El
of the sons of Elam, answers and says to Ezra,
We — we treason against our Elohim
and settle strange women of the people of the land:
and now there is expectation in Yisra El
concerning this:
3 and now have us cut a covenant with our Elohim
to bring all the women and those birthed of them
according to the counsel of my Adonay;
and those who tremble at the misvah of our Elohim;
and work according to the torah.
4 Rise; for this word is to you:
and we are with you.
Strengthen and work!

5 And Ezra rises and oaths the governors of the priests,
the Leviym and all Yisra El
to work according to this word:
and they oath.

6 And Ezra rises from the face of the house of Elohim
and goes into the chamber
of Yah Hanan the son of El Yashib:
and he goes there
and neither eats bread nor drinks water:
for he mourns because of the treason of the exiles.

7 And they pass a voice
throughout Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem
to all the sons of the exile to gather to Yeru Shalem;
8 and whoever comes not within three days
according to the counsel
of the governors and the elders,
that they devote all his acquisitions
and separate him
from the congregation of the exiles.

9 And all the men of Yah Hudah and Ben Yamin
gather to Yeru Shalem within three days
— the ninth month, on the twentieth of the month;
and all the people settle in the Broadway
of the house of Elohim
— trembling because of this word
and for the great rain.

10 And Ezra the priest rises and says to them,
You — you treason and settle strange women
to add to the guilt of Yisra El:

EZRA 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 11 Now therefore *make confession* **give spread hands**
unto *the LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of your fathers,
and *do* **work** his pleasure:
and separate yourselves from the people of the land,
and from the strange *wives* **women**.
- 12 Then all the congregation answered
and said with a *loud* **great** voice,
As thou hast said **According to thy word,**
so must we do **we work**.
- 13 *But* **Nevertheless** the people are many,
and it is a time of much rain,
and we are *not able* **have no force** to stand without,
neither is this a work of one day or two:
for we are *many* **abound**
that have *transgressed* **rebelled** in this *thing* **word**.
- 14 Let now
our *rulers* **governors** of all the congregation stand,
and let all them
which have *taken* **settled** strange *wives* **women**
in our cities come at appointed times,
and with them the elders of *every city* **city by city**,
and the judges thereof,
until the *fierce* **fuming** wrath of our *God* **Elohim**
for this *matter* **word** be turned from us.
- 15 Only *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** the son of *Asahel* **Asa El**
and *Jahaziah* **Yachazi Yah** the son of *Tikvah* **Tiqvah**
were employed **stood** about this *matter*:
and Meshullam and *Shabbethai* **Shabbethay**
the *Levite* **Leviy** helped them.
- 16 And the *children* **sons** of the *captivity* **exile**
did **worked** so.
And Ezra the priest,
with *certain* **chief** **men**, **heads** of the fathers,
after the house of their fathers,
and all of them by *their* names,
were separated and *sat down* **settled**
in the first day of the tenth month
to examine the *matter* **word**.
- 17 And they *made an end* **finished** with all the men
that had *taken* **settled** strange *wives* **women**
by the first day of the first month.
- THE INTERMINGLERS**
- 18 And among the sons of the priests there were found
that had *taken* **settled** strange *wives* **women**: *namely*,
of the sons of *Jeshua* **Yah Shua**
the son of *Jozadak* **Yah Sadaq**,
and his brethren;
Maaseiah **Maase Yah**, and *Eliezer* **Eli Ezer**,
and *Jarib* **Yarib**, and *Gedaliah* **Gedal Yah**.
- 19 And they gave their hands
that they *would* **should**
put away **bring** their *wives* **women**;
and *being guilty* **for their guilt**,
they offered a ram of the flock for their *trespass* **guilt**.
- 20 And of the sons of Immer;
Hanani, and *Zebadiah* **Zebad Yah**.
- 21 And of the sons of Harim;
Maaseiah **Maase Yah**, and *Elijah* **Eli Yah**,
and *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**, and *Jehiel* **Yechi El**,
and *Uzziah* **Uzzi Yah**.
- 22 And of the sons of *Pashur* **Pashchur**;
Elioenai **El Ya Enay**, *Maaseiah* **Maase Yah**,
Ishmael **Yishma El**, *Nethanee* **Nethan El**,
Jozabad **Yah Zabad**, and *Elasah* **El Asah**.
- 23 Also of the *Levites* **Leviym**;
Jozabad **Yah Zabad**, and *Shimei* **Shimi**,
and *Kelaiah* **Qelayah**, (the same is *Kelita* **Qelita**),
Pethahiah **Pethach Yah**, *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and *Eliezer* **Eli Ezer**.
- 24 Of the singers also;
Eliashib **El Yashib**:
and of the porters;
Shallum, and Telem, and Uri.
- 25 Moreover **Also** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
of the sons of Parosh;
Ramiah **Ram Yah**, and *Jeziah* **Yezav Yah**,
and *Malchiah* **Malki Yah**, and *Miamin* **Mi Yamin**,
and *Eleazar* **El Azar**, and *Malchijah* **Malki Yah**,
and *Benaiah* **Bena Yah**.

EZRA 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 11 and now give spread hands
to Yah Veh Elohim of your fathers;
and work his pleasure
and separate yourselves from the people of the land
and from the strange women.
- 12 And all the congregation answers
and says with a great voice,
According to your word, we work:
but the people are many
and it is a time of much rain;
and we have neither force to stand outside
nor is this a work of one day or two:
for we abound with them who rebel in this word:
O that it please
our governors of all the congregation to stand
and have all who settle strange women in our cities
come with the elders and the judges
at appointed times — city by city
until the fuming wrath of our Elohim
for this word turns from us.
- 15 Only, Yah Nathan the son of Asa El
and Yachazi Yah the son of Tiqvah
stand against this;
and Meshullam and Shabbethay
the Leviy help them;
- 16 and the sons of the exile work thus;
and Ezra the priest with men
— heads of the fathers of the house of their fathers
and all who, by name,
separate and settle in the first day of the tenth month
to examine the word.
- 17 And they finish with all the men
who settle strange women
by the first day of the first month.
- THE INTERMINGLERS**
- 18 And among the sons of the priests
they find them who settle strange women:
of the sons of Yah Shua the son of Yah Sadaq
and his brothers:
Maase Yah and Eli Ezer and Yarib and Gedal Yah;
and they give their hands to bring their women;
and having guilty, a ram of the flock for their guilt;
- 20 and of the sons of Immer:
Hanani and Zebad Yah;
- 21 and of the sons of Harim:
Maase Yah and Eli Yah
and Shema Yah and Yechi El and Uzzi Yah;
- 22 and of the sons of Pashchur:
El Ya Enay, Maase Yah, Yishma El,
Nethan El, Yah Zabad and El Asah;
- 23 and of the Leviym:
Yah Zabad and Shimi
and Qelayah — the same is Qelita,
Pethach Yah, Yah Hudah and Eli Ezer;
- 24 and of the singers:
El Yashib;
- and of the porters:
Shallum and Telem and Uri;
- 25 and of Yisra El — of the sons of Parosh:
Ram Yah and Yezav Yah and Malki Yah
and Mi Yamin and El Azar and Malki Yah
and Bena Yah;

EZRA 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 26 And of the sons of Elam;
Mattaniah Mattan Yah, Zechariah Zechar Yah,
and *Jehiel Yechi El,* and *Abdi,*
and *Jeremoth Yeremoth,* and *Eliah Eli Yah.*
- 27 And of the sons of Zattu;
Elioenai El Ya Enay Eliashib El Yashib,
Mattaniah Mattan Yah, and *Jeremoth Yeremoth,*
and *Zabad,* and *Aziza.*
- 28 Of the sons also of *Bebai Bebay;*
Jehohanan Yah Hanan, Hananiah Hanan Yah,
Zabbai Zakkay, and *Athlai Athlay.*
- 29 And of the sons of Bani;
Meshullam, Malluch, and *Adaiah Ada Yah,*
Jashub Yashub, and *Sheal,* and *Ramoth.*
- 30 And of the sons of *Pahathmoab Pachath Moab;*
Adna, and *Chelal Kelal,*
Benaiah Bena Yah, Maaseiah Maase Yah,
Mattaniah Mattan Yah, Bezaleel Besal El,
and *Binnui Binnuy,* and *Manasseh Menash Sheh.*
- 31 And of the sons of Harim;
Eliezer Eli Ezer, Ishijah Yishshi Yah,
Malchiah Malki Yah, Shemaiah Shema Yah,
Shimeon Shimon,
- 32 *Benjamin Ben Yamin,* *Malluch,*
and *Shemariah Shemar Yah.*
- 33 Of the sons of Hashum;
Mattenai Mattenay, Mattathah Mattattah,
Zabad, Eliphelet Eli Phelet, Jeremai Yeremay,
Manasseh Menash Sheh, and *Shimei Shimi.*
- 34 Of the sons of Bani;
Maadai Maaday, Amram Am Ram, and *Uel,*
Benaiah Bena Yah, Bedeiah Bede Yah,
Chelluh Keluhay,
- 36 *Vaniah Van Yah,* *Meremoth, Eliashib El Yashib,*
37 *Mattaniah Mattan Yah, Mattenai Mattenay,*
and *Jaasau Yaasu,*
- 38 And *Bani,* and *Binnui Binnuy, Shimei Shimi,*
39 And *Shelemiah Shelem Yah,* and *Nathan,*
and *Adaiah Ada Yah,*
- 40 *Machnadebai Mach Nadbay,*
Shashai Shashay, Sharai Sharay,
41 *Azareel Azar El,* and *Shelemiah Shelem Yah,*
Shemariah Shemar Yah,
- 42 *Shallum, Amariah Amar Yah,* and *Joseph Yoseph.*
- 43 Of the sons of Nebo;
Jeiel Yei El, Mattithiah Mattith Yah,
Zabad, Zebina, Jadau Yiddo,
and *Joel Yah El, Benaiah Bena Yah.*
- 44 All these had taken bore strange wives women:
and some of them had wives women
by whom they had children set sons.

EZRA 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 26 and of the sons of Elam:
Mattan Yah, Zechar Yah and Yechi El
and *Abdi* and *Yeremoth* and *Eli Yah;*
- 27 and of the sons of Zattu:
El Ya Enay, El Yashib,
Mattan Yah and *Yeremoth* and *Zabad* and *Aziza;*
- 28 and of the sons of *Bebay:*
Yah Hanan, Hanan Yah, Zakkay and *Athlay;*
- 29 and of the sons of *Bani:*
Meshullam, Malluch and *Ada Yah,*
Yashub and *Sheal* and *Ramoth;*
- 30 and of the sons of *Pachath Moab:*
Adna and *Kelal, Bena Yah, Maase Yah,*
Mattan Yah, Besal El and *Binnuy* and *Menash Sheh;*
- 31 and the sons of *Harim:*
Eli Ezer, Yishshi Yah, Malki Yah, Shema Yah, Shimon,
32 *Ben Yamin, Malluch* and *Shemar Yah;*
- 33 of the sons of *Hashum:*
Mattenay, Mattattah, Zabad,
Eli Phelet, Yeremay, Menash Sheh and *Shimi;*
- 34 of the sons of *Bani:*
Maaday, Am Ram and *Uel,*
Bena Yah, Bede Yah, Keluhay,
35 *Van Yah, Meremoth, El Yashib,*
36 *Mattan Yah, Mattenay* and *Yaasu,*
37 and *Bani* and *Binnuy, Shimi,*
38 and *Shelem Yah* and *Nathan* and *Ada Yah,*
39 *Mach Nadbay, Shashay, Sharay,*
40 *Azar El* and *Shelem Yah, Shemar Yah,*
41 *Shallum, Amar Yah* and *Yoseph;*
42
- 43 of the sons of *Nebo:*
Yei El, Mattith Yah, Zabad, Zebina,
Yiddo and *Yah El, Bena Yah.*
- 44 All these bear strange women:
and of them, women who set sons.

NEHEMIAH 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

NECHEM YAH WEEPS OVER THE SURVIVORS

1 The words of *Nehemiah* **Nechem Yah**
the son of *Hachaliah* **Hachal Yah**.
And it *came to pass* **became**, in the month *Chisleu* **Kislav**,
in the twentieth year, as I was in Shushan the palace,
2 That Hanani, one of my brethren, came,
he and *certain* men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
and I asked them
concerning the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** that had escaped,
which *were left* **survived** of the captivity,
and concerning *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
3 And they said unto me,
The *remnant* **survivors**
that *are left* **survived** of the captivity
there in the *province* **jurisdiction**
are in great *affliction* **evil** and reproach:
the wall of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** also is broken down,
and the *gates* **portals** thereof are burned with fire.
4 And **so be** it *came to pass*, when I heard these words,
that I *sat down* **settled** and wept,
and mourned *certain* days, and fasted, and prayed
before **at the face of**
the *God* **Elohim** of *heaven* **the heavens**,
5 And said, I beseech thee,
O *LORD* *God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of *heaven* **the heavens**,
the great and *terrible* *God* **awesome El**,
that *keepeth* **guardeth** covenant and mercy
for them that love him
and *observe* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**:
6 Let thine ear now *be attentive* **hearken**,
and thine eyes open,
that thou mayest hear the prayer of thy servant,
which I pray *before thee now* **at thy face this day**,
by day and **by** night,
for the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El** thy servants,
and *confess* **spread hands for** the sins
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which we have sinned against thee:
both I and my father's house have sinned.
7 **In despoiling**,
We have *dealt very corruptly* **despoiled** against thee,
and have not *kept* **guarded** the *commandments* **misvoth**,
nor the statutes, nor the judgments,
which thou
commandedst **misvahedst** thy servant *Moses* **Mosheh**.
8 Remember, I beseech thee,
the word that thou *commandedst* **misvahedst**
thy servant *Moses* **Mosheh**, saying,
If ye transgress **treason**,
I *will* **shall** scatter you abroad among the *nations* **people**:
9 But if ye turn unto me,
and *keep* **guard** my *commandments* **misvoth**,
and *do* **work** them;
though there were of you *cast out* **expelled**
unto the *utmost part* **extremity** of the *heaven* **heavens**,
yet *will* **shall** I gather them from thence,
and *will* **shall** bring them unto the place that I have chosen
to *set* **tabernacle** my name there.
10 Now these are thy servants and thy people,
whom thou hast redeemed
by thy great *power* **force**, and by thy strong hand.
11 O *Lord* **Adonay**, I beseech thee,
let now thine ear *be attentive* **hearken**
to the prayer of thy servant,
and to the prayer of thy servants,
who *desire* **delight to fear** **awe** thy name:
and prosper, I *pray* **beseech** thee, thy servant this day,
and *grant* **give** him *mercy* **mercies**
in the *sight* **face** of this man.
For I was the *king's* **cupbearer** **sovereign's butler**.
**ARTACH SHASHTA SENDS NECHEM YAH
TO YERU SHALEM**

2 And **so be** it *came to pass*, in the month Nisan,
in the twentieth year
of *Artaxerxes* **Artach Shashta** the *king* **sovereign**,
that wine was *before him* **at his face**:
and I *took up* **lifted** the wine,
and gave it unto the *king* **sovereign**.
Now I had not been *beforetime* **sad in evil** at his *presence* **face**.

NECHEM YAH 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

NECHEM YAH WEEPS OVER THE SURVIVORS

1 Words of Nechem Yah the son of Hachal Yah.
And so be it, in the month Kislav,
in the twentieth year, I am in Shushan the palace,
and Hanani, one of my brothers, comes
2 — he and men of Yah Hudah;
and I ask them
concerning the Yah Hudiym who escaped
— who survived of the captivity
and concerning Yeru Shalem.
3 And they say to me,
The survivors who survived the captivity
there in the jurisdiction
are in great evil and reproach:
and the wall of Yeru Shalem is broken down
and the portals thereof are burned with fire.
4 And so be it, I hear these words,
and I settle and weep and mourn for days
and fast and pray at the face of Elohim of the heavens;
5 and say,
I beseech you, O Yah Veh Elohim of the heavens
— the great and awesome El
who guards covenant and mercy
for them who love him and guard his misvoth:
6 hearken your ear, I pray, and open your eyes
to hear the prayer of your servant
which I pray at your face this day
— by day and by night
for the sons of Yisra El your servants;
and spread hands for the sins of the sons of Yisra El
we sinned against you
— both I and the house of my father sinned.
7 In despoiling, we despoiled against you;
and guarded neither the misvoth
nor the statutes nor the judgments
you misvahed your servant Mosheh.
8 Remember, I beseech you,
the word you misvahed your servant Mosheh, saying,
If you treason
I scatter you abroad among the people:
9 but if you turn to me
and guard my misvoth and work them
— though some of you were expelled
to the extremity of the heavens
yet I gather them from there
and bring them to the place
I chose to tabernacle my name:
10 and they are your servants and your people
whom you redeemed
by your great force and by your strong hand.
11 O Adonay, I beseech you, Hearken now your ear
to the prayer of your servant
— and to the prayer of your servants
who delight to awe your name:
and prosper, I beseech you, your servant this day;
and give him mercies in the face of this man.
For I am a butler of the sovereign.

ARTACH SHASHTA SENDS NECHEM YAH TO YERU SHALEM

2 And so be it, in the month Nisan,
in the twentieth year of Artach Shashta the sovereign,
wine *is* at his face:
and I lift the wine and give it to the sovereign
— and I had never been evil to his face.

NEHEMIAH 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 Wherefore the *king sovereign* said unto me,
Why is thy *countenance sad face evil*,
seeing thou art not sick?
this is *nothing naught else but sorrow of an evil heart*.
Then I was *very sore afraid mighty aboundingly awed*,
3 And said unto the *king sovereign*,
Let the king live for ever The sovereign liveth eternally:
why should not my *countenance face be sad evil*,
when the city,
the *place house* of my fathers' *sepulchres tombs*,
lieth waste be parched,
and the *gates portals* thereof are consumed with fire?
4 Then the *king sovereign* said unto me,
For what *dost thou make request seekest thou?*
So I prayed to the *God Elohim* of heaven *the heavens*.
5 And I said unto the *king sovereign*,
If it *please be good with the king sovereign*,
and if thy servant *have found favour be well—pleased*
in at thy sight face,
that thou *wouldest shouldest* send me
unto *Judah Yah Hudah*,
unto the city of my fathers' *sepulchres tombs*,
that I may build it.
6 And the *king sovereign* said unto me,
(the *queen mistress* also *sitting settled* by him,)
For how long shall thy *journey walk* be?
and when *wilt shalt* thou return?
So it *pleased was good at the face of the king sovereign*
to send me;
and I *set gave* him a *time an appointment*.
7 Moreover I said unto the *king sovereign*,
If it *please be good with the king sovereign*,
let *letters epistles* be given me
to the governors beyond the river,
that they may *convey pass* me over
till I come into *Judah Yah Hudah*;
8 And a *letter an epistle* unto Asaph
the *keeper guard* of the *king's forest sovereign's paradise*,
that he may give me timber
to *make fell* beams for the *gates portals* of the palace
which *appertained be* to the house,
and for the wall of the city,
and for the house that I shall enter into.
And the *king granted sovereign gave* me,
according to the good hand of my *God Elohim* upon me.
9 Then I came to the governors beyond the river,
and gave them the *king's letters sovereign's epistles*.
Now the *king sovereign* had sent *captains governors*
of the *army men of valour* and *horsemen cavalry* with me.
10 When Sanballat the *Horonite Horoniy*,
and *Tobiah Tobi Yah* the servant,
the *Ammonite Ammoniy*, heard of it,
it grieved them exceedingly
in being evil, it was evil to them
that there was come a *man human*
to seek the *welfare good*
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*.
NECHEM YAH EXAMINES THE RUINED WALLS
11 So I came to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and was there three days.
12 And I arose in the night, I and some few men with me;
neither told I any *man human*
what my *God Elohim* had *put given* in my heart
to *do work* at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:
neither was there any *beast animal* with me,
save the *beast animal* that I rode upon.
13 And I went out by night by the *gate portal* of the valley,
even before at the face of
the *dragon well monster fountain*,
and to the *dung port dunghill portal*,
and *viewed was examining*
the walls of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
which were broken *down*,
and the *gates portals* thereof were consumed with fire.
14 Then I *went passed* on to the *gate portal* of the fountain,
and to the *king's sovereign's pool*:
but there was no place
for the *beast animal* that was under me to pass.

NECHEM YAH 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 And the sovereign says to me,
Why is your face evil — seeing you are not sick?
This is naught but an evil heart.
And I abound mighty awed,
and say to the sovereign,
3 The sovereign live eternally.
Why not, my evil face,
when the city, the house of the tombs of my father,
is parched;
and the portals thereof consume with fire?
4 And the sovereign says to me,
For what seek you?
And I prayed to Elohim of the heavens;
and I say to the sovereign,
5 If it be good with the sovereign
and if your servant well—pleases at your face,
send me to Yah Hudah
— to the city of the tombs of my fathers — to build it.
6 And the sovereign says to me,
— and the mistress settles by him,
How long is your walk?
And when return you?
— and it is good at the face of the sovereign
to send me;
and I give him an appointment.
7 And I say to the sovereign,
If it is good with the sovereign,
give me epistles to the governors beyond the river
to pass me over until I come to Yah Hudah:
8 and an epistle to Asaph
the guard of the paradise of the sovereign,
to give me timber
to fell beams for the portals of the palace
— for the house and for the wall of the city
and for the house I enter.
— and the sovereign gives me,
according to the good hand of my Elohim on me.
9 And I come to the governors beyond the river
and give them the epistles of the sovereign:
and the sovereign sends governors
of the men of valour and cavalry with me.
10 And Sanballat the Horoniy
and Tobi Yah the servant
— the Ammoniy, hear of it,
and in being evil, it is evil to them
for a human to come
to seek the good of the sons of Yisra El.
NECHEM YAH EXAMINES THE RUINED WALLS
11 And I come to Yeru Shalem
and I am there three days:
12 and I rise in the night
— I and some few men with me:
and I tell no human
what my Elohim gives in my heart
to work at Yeru Shalem:
and there is no animal with me
except the animal I ride:
13 and I go by night by the portal of the valley
at the face of the monster fountain
and to the dunghill portal;
and examine the walls of Yeru Shalem
which are broken
and the portals thereof consumed with fire:
14 and I pass on to the portal of the fountain
and to the pool of the sovereign:
and there is no place for the animal under me to pass:

NEHEMIAH 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

15 Then *went I up I ascended* in the night by the *brook wadi*,
and *viewed examined* the wall, and *turned back returned*,
and entered by the *gate portal* of the valley,
and so returned.

16 And the *rulers prefects* knew not whither I went,
or what I *did worked*;
neither had I as yet *thus* told it to the *Jews Yah Hudiym*,
nor to the *priests*, nor to the *nobles*,
nor to the *rulers prefects*, nor to the rest
that *did worked* the work.

17 Then said I unto them,
Ye see the *distress evil* that we are in,
how *Jerusalem lieth waste Yeru Shalem be parched*,
and the *gates portals* thereof *are* burned with fire: come,
and let us build up the wall of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
that we be no more a reproach.

18 Then I told them of the hand of my *God Elohim*
which was good upon me;
as also the *king's sovereign's* words
that he had *spoken said* unto me.
And they said, Let us rise up and build.
So they strengthened their hands for this good *work*.

19 But when Sanballat the *Horonite Horoniy*,
and *Tobiah Tobi Yah* the servant,
the *Ammonite Ammoniy*,
and Geshem the *Arabian Arabiy*, heard it,
they *laughed derided* us to *scorn*, and despised us,
and said, What is this *thing word* that ye *do work*?
will shall ye rebel against the *king sovereign*?

20 Then *answered I them returned I word*,
and said unto them,
The *God Elohim* of *heaven the heavens*,
he *will shall* prosper us;
therefore we his servants *will shall* arise and build:
but ye have no *portion allotment*, nor *right justness*,
nor memorial, in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.

THE BUILDERS OF THE WALL

3 Then *Eliashib El Yashib* the *high great* priest
rose up with his brethren the *priests*,
and they builded the *sheep gate flock portal*;
they *sanctified hallowed* it,
and set up *stood* the doors of it;
even unto the tower of Meah they *sanctified hallowed* it,
unto the tower of *Hananeel Hanan El*.

2 And next unto him at his hand
builded the men of *Jericho Yericho*.
And next to them at their hand
builded *Zaccur Zakkur* the son of Imri.

3 But the fish gate *portal*
did the sons of *Hassenaah Senaah* build,
who also *laid felled* the beams thereof,
and set up *stood* the doors thereof,
the locks thereof, and the bars thereof.

4 And next unto them at their hand
repaired strengthened Meremoth
the son of *Urijah Uri Yah*, the son of *Koz Qos*.
And next unto them at their hand
repaired strengthened Meshullam
the son of *Berechiah Berech Yah*,
the son of *Meshezabeel Meshezab El*.
And next unto them at their hand
repaired strengthened Sadoq the son of Baana.

5 And next unto them at their hand
the *Tekoites repaired Teqoaiy strengthened*;
but their *nobles mighty* put not their necks
to the *work service* of their *Lord Adonay*.

6 Moreover the old *gate portal*
repaired Jehoiada strengthened Yah Yada
the son of *Paseah Paseach*,
and Meshullam the son of *Besodeiah Besod Yah*;
they *laid felled* the beams thereof,
and set up *stood* the doors thereof,
and the locks thereof, and the bars thereof.

7 And next unto them at their hand
repaired strengthened
Melatiah Melat Yah the *Gibeonite Giboniy*,
and *Jadon Yadon* the *Meronothite Meronothiy*,
the men of *Gibeon Gibon*, and of *Mizpah Mispah*,
unto the throne of the governor on this side the river.

NECHEM YAH 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

15 and in the night, I ascend by the wadi
and examine the wall and return;
and enter by the portal of the valley and return:
and the prefects know not
where I go or what I work;
and I tell neither the Yah Hudiym,
nor the priests, nor the nobles, nor the prefects,
nor the rest who work the work.

17 And say I to them,
You see the evil we are in,
how Yeru Shalem is parched
and the portals thereof burned with fire:
come, and we build the wall of Yeru Shalem,
that we are a reproach no more.

18 And I tell them of the hand of my Elohim
who is good on me;
and also the words the sovereign says to me.

And they say, We rise and build!
— and they strengthen their hands for this good.

19 And Sanballat the Horoniy
and Tobi Yah the servant the Ammoniy
and Geshem the Arabiy hear;
and they deride us and despise us and say,
What is this word you work?
Rebel you against the sovereign?

20 And I return word and say to them,
The Elohim of the heavens
— he prospers us;
and we his servants rise and build:
but you have neither allotment,
nor justness, nor memorial in Yeru Shalem.

THE BUILDERS OF THE WALL

3 And El Yashib the great priest
rises with his brothers the priests
and they build the flock portal;
they hallow it and stand its doors
— hallow it even to the tower of Meah
to the tower of Hanan El:
and at his hand the men of Yericho build:

and at their hand:
Zakkur the son of Imri builds;
and the fish portal, the sons of *Senaah* build
— he who felled its beams and stood its doors
its locks and its bars:

and at their hand:
Meremoth the son of *Uri Yah* the son of *Qos*
strengthens;

and at their hand:
Meshullam the son of *Berech Yah*,
the son of *Meshezab El* strengthens;

and at their hand:
Sadoq the son of *Baana* strengthens;

and at their hand:
the *Teqoaiy* strengthen;
and their mighty put not their necks
to the service of their *Adonay*;
and the old portal
Yah Yada the son of *Paseach*
and *Meshullam* the son of *Besod Yah* strengthen
— they fell its beams and stand its doors
and its locks and its bars;

and at their hand:
Melat Yah the *Giboniy* strengthens
— and *Yadon* the *Meronothiy*
the men of *Gibon* and of *Mispah*
— to the throne of the governor this side the river;

NEHEMIAH 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

8 *Next unto him* **And at his hand**
 repaired Uzziel **strengthened Uzzi El**
the son of *Harhaiah* **Harha Yah**, of the *goldsmiths* **refiners**.
 Next unto him **And at his hand**
 also *repaired Hananiah* **strengthened Hanan Yah**
 the son of *one of the apothecaries* **perfumers**,
 and they *fortified Jerusalem* **left Yeru Shalem**
 unto the broad wall.
9 *And next unto them at their hand*
 repaired Rephaiah **strengthened Repha Yah**
 the son of Hur, the *ruler* **governor**
 of the half *part* **circuit** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
10 *And next unto them at their hand*
 repaired Jedaiah **strengthened Yeda Yah**
 the son of *Harumaph* **Harum Aph**,
 even over against his house.
 And next unto him at his hand
 repaired **strengthened** *Hattush*
 the son of *Hashabniah* **Hashabne Yah**.
11 *Malchijah* **Malki Yah** the son of Harim,
 and *Hashub* **Hashshub**
 the son of *Pahathmoab* **Pachath Moab**,
 repaired **strengthened** the *other piece* **second measure**,
 and the tower of the furnaces.
12 *And next unto him at his hand*
 repaired **strengthened** *Shallum*
 the son of *Haloresh* **Lochesh**, the *ruler* **governor**
 of the half *part* **circuit** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
 he and his daughters.
13 The *valley gate* *repaired* **portal** **strengthened** *Hanun*,
 and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Zanoah* **Zanoach**;
 they built it, and *set up* **stood** the doors thereof,
 the locks thereof, and the bars thereof,
 and a thousand cubits on the wall
 unto the *dung gate* **dunghill portal**.
14 But the *dung gate* **dunghill portal**
 repaired Malchiah **strengthened Malki Yah**
 the son of *Rechab*,
 the *ruler* **governor** of *part* **the circuit**
 of *Bethhaccerem* **Beth Hak Kerem**;
 he built it, and *set up* **stood** the doors thereof,
 the locks thereof, and the bars thereof.
15 But the *gate* **portal** of the fountain
 repaired **strengthened** *Shallun*
 the son of *Colhozeh* **Kol Hozeh**,
 the *ruler* **governor** of *part* **the circuit** of *Mizpah* **Mispeh**;
 he built it, and covered it,
 and *set up* **stood** the doors thereof,
 the locks thereof, and the bars thereof,
 and the wall of the pool of *Siloah* **Shiloach**
 by the *king's sovereign's* garden,
 and unto the *stairs* **steps**
 that *go down* **descend** from the city of David.
16 After him
 repaired Nehemiah **strengthened Nechem Yah**
 the son of *Azbuk* **Az Buq**, the *ruler* **governor**
 of the half *part* **circuit** of *Bethzur* **Beth Sur**,
 unto the *place* over against the *sepulchres* **tombs** of David,
 and to the pool that was *made* **worked**,
 and unto the house of the mighty.
17 After him *repaired* **strengthened** the *Levites* **Leviym**,
 Rehum **Rechum** the son of Bani.
 Next unto him At his hand
 repaired Hashabiah **strengthened Hashab Yah**,
 the *ruler* **governor** of the half *part* **circuit** of *Keilah* **Qeilah**,
 in his *part* **circuit**.
18 After him *repaired* **strengthened** their brethren,
 Bavai **Bavay** the son of Henadad,
 the *ruler* **governor** of the half *part* **circuit** of *Keilah* **Qeilah**.
19 *And next to him at his hand*
 repaired **strengthened** *Ezer* the son of *Jeshua* **Yah Shua**,
 the *ruler* **governor** of *Mizpah* **Mispeh**,
 another piece **a second measure**
 over against the *going up* **ascent** to the armoury
 at the *turning of the wall* **corner**.
20 After him *Baruch* the son of *Zabbai* **Zakkay**
 earnestly repaired **kindled to strengthen**
 the *other piece* **second measure**,

NECHEM YAH 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

8 and at his hand:
 Uzzi El the son of Harha Yah of the refiners
 strengthens;
 and at his hand:
 Hanan Yah the son of the perfumers strengthens
 — and they leave Yeru Shalem to the wide wall;
9 and at their hand:
 Repha Yah the son of Hur
 the governor of the half circuit of Yeru Shalem
 strengthens;
10 and at their hand:
 Yeda Yah the son of Harum Aph strengthens
 — even over against his house;
 and at his hand:
 Hattush the son of Hashabne Yah strengthens;
11 Malki Yah the son of Harim
 and Hashshub the son of Pachath Moab,
 strengthen the second measure
 and the tower of the furnaces;
12 and at his hand:
 Shallum the son of Lochesh
 the governor of the half circuit of Yeru Shalem
 — he and his daughters strengthen;
13 the valley portal
 Hanun and the settlers of Zanoach strengthen
 — they build it and stand its doors
 its locks and its bars
 — and a thousand cubits on the wall
 to the dunghill portal;
14 and the dunghill portal
 Malki Yah the son of Rechab
 the governor of the circuit of Beth Hak Kerem
 strengthens;
 — he builds it and stands its doors
 its locks and its bars;
15 and the portal of the fountain
 Shallun the son of Kol Hozeh,
 the governor of the circuit of Mispeh strengthens
 — he builds it and covers it
 and stands its doors, its locks and its bars
 and the wall of the pool of Shiloach
 by the garden of the sovereign;
 and to the steps that descend from the city of David;
16 after him:
 Nechem Yah the son of Az Buq,
 the governor of the half circuit of Beth Sur,
 strengthens to over against the tombs of David
 and to the pool that is worked
 and to the house of the mighty;
17 after him:
 the Leviym — Rechum the son of Bani strengthen;
 at his hand:
 Hashab Yah the governor of the half circuit of Qeilah
 in his circuit strengthens;
18 after him:
 their brothers — Bavay the son of Henadad,
 the governor of the half circuit of Qeilah strengthen;
19 and at his hand:
 Ezer the son of Yah Shua, the governor of Mispeh,
 strengthens a second measure
 over against the ascent to the armoury at the corner;
20 after him:
 Baruch the son of Zakkay
 kindles to strengthen the second measure

NEHEMIAH 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

21 from the *turning of the wall* **corner** unto the *door* **portal**
of the house of *Eliashib* **El Yashib** the *high* **great** priest.
After him *repaired* **strengthened** Meremoth
the son of *Urijah* **Uri Yah** the son of *Koz* **Qos**
another piece **a second measure**,
from the *door* **portal** of the house of *Eliashib* **El Yashib**
even to the *end* **conclusion**
of the house of *Eliashib* **El Yashib**.
22 And after him *repaired* **strengthened** the priests,
the men of the *plain* **environs**.
23 After him *repaired* **strengthened**
Benjamin **Ben Yamin** and *Hashub* **Hashshub**
over against their house.
After him *repaired* **strengthened** *Azariah* **Azar Yah**
the son of *Maaseiah* **Maase Yah**
the son of *Ananiah* **Anan Yah** by his house.
24 After him *repaired* **strengthened**
Binnui **Binnuy** the son of *Henadad*
another piece **a second measure**,
from the house of *Azariah* **Azar Yah**
unto the *turning of the wall* **corner**, even unto the corner.
25 Palal the son of *Uzai*,
over against the *turning of the wall* **corner**,
and the tower which *lieth* **goeth** out
from the *king's* **sovereign's** high house,
that was by the court of the *prison* **guard yard**.
26 After him *Pedaiah* **Pedah Yah** the son of *Parosh*.
Moreover
the *Nethinims* *dwelt* **Dedicates** settled in *Ophel*,
unto the *place* over against the water *gate* **portal**
toward the *east* **rising**, and the tower that *lieth* **goeth** out.
27 After them the *Tekoites* **Teqoaiy**
repaired another piece **strengthened a second measure**,
over against the great tower that *lieth* **goeth** out,
even unto the wall of *Ophel*.
28 From above the horse *gate* **portal**
repaired **strengthened** the priests,
every one **each man** over against his house.
29 After them *repaired* **strengthened**
Zadok **Sadoq** the son of *Immer*
over against his house.
After him *repaired* **strengthened**
also *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**
the son of *Shechaniah* **Shechan Yah**,
the *keeper* **guard** of the *east* **gate** **portal** toward the *rising*.
30 After him *repaired* **strengthened** *Hananiah* **Hanan Yah**
the son of *Shelemiah* **Shelem Yah**,
and *Hanun* the sixth son of *Zalaph* **Salaph**
another piece **a second measure**.
After him *repaired* **strengthened** *Meshullam*
the son of *Berechiah* **Berech Yah** over against his chamber.
31 After him *repaired* **strengthened** *Malchiah* **Malki Yah**
the *goldsmith's* **refiner's** son
unto the *place* **house** of the *Nethinims* **Dedicates**,
and of the merchants,
over against the *gate* **portal** *Miphkad*,
and to the *going up* **upper room** of the corner.
32 And between the *going up* **upper room** of the corner
unto the *sheep gate* **flock portal**
repaired **strengthened**
the *goldsmiths* **refiners** and the merchants.

THE YAH HUDIYM DERIDED

4

But **And so be** it came to pass,
that when *Sanballat* heard that we builded the wall,
he was *wroth* **inflamed**,
and took great *indignation* **his vexation abounded**,
and *mocked* **derided** the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**.

NECHEM YAH 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

from the corner
to the portal of the house of *El Yashib* the great priest;
21 after him:
Meremoth the son of *Uri Yah* the son of *Qos*
strengthens a second measure,
from the portal of the house of *El Yashib*
even to the conclusion of the house of *El Yashib*;
22 and after him:
the priests — the men of the environs strengthen;
23 after him:
Ben Yamin and *Hashshub*
strengthen over against their house;
after him:
Azar Yah the son of *Maase Yah* the son of *Anan Yah*
strengthens by his house;
24 after him:
Binnuy the son of *Henadad*
strengthens a second measure
— from the house of *Azar Yah* to the corner
— and to the corner;
25 *Palal* the son of *Uzai*,
over against the corner and the tower
which goes from the high house of the sovereign,
by the court of the guard yard;
after him:
Pedah Yah the son of *Parosh*.
26 The *Dedicates* settle in *Ophel*,
against the water portal
toward the rising and the tower that goes out;
27 after them:
the *Teqoaiy* strengthen a second measure
over against the great tower that goes out
even to the wall of *Ophel*;
28 from above the horse portal
the priests strengthen
— each man over against his house;
29 after them:
Sadoq the son of *Immer*
strengthens over against his house;
after him:
also *Shema Yah* the son of *Shechan Yah*
the guard of the portal toward the rising strengthens;
30 after him:
Hanan Yah the son of *Shelem Yah*
and *Hanun* the sixth son of *Salaph*
strengthen a second measure;
after him:
Meshullam the son of *Berech Yah*
strengthens over against his chamber;
31 after him:
Malki Yah the son of the refiner
strengthens to the house of the *Dedicates*
and of the merchants
— over against the portal *Miphkad*
and to the upper room of the corner;
32 and between the upper room of the corner
to the flock portal
the refiners and the merchants strengthen.

THE YAH HUDIYM DERIDED

4

And so be it,
Sanballat hears we build the wall
and he inflames and abounds his vexation
and he derides the *Yah Hudiym*:

NEHEMIAH 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 And he spake before said at the face of his brethren
and the army men of valour of Samaria Shomeron,
and said,
What do work these feeble Jews languid Yah Hudiym?
will shall they fortify be left to themselves?
will shall they sacrifice?
will shall they make an end finish in a day?
will shall they revive enliven the stones
out of the heaps of the rubbish dust which are burned?

3 Now Tobiah Tobi Yah the Ammonite Ammoniy
was by him, and he said,
Even that which they build, if a fox go up ascend,
he shall even break down split their stone wall.

4 Hear, O our God Elohim;
for we are despised disrespected:
and turn their reproach upon their own head,
and give them for a prey plunder in the land of captivity:

5 And cover not their iniquity perversity,
and let not their sin be blotted out wiped away
from before thee thy face:
for they have provoked vexed thee to anger
before in front of the builders.

6 So built we the wall;
and all the wall was joined bound together
unto the half thereof:
for the people had a mind heart to work.

7 But And so be it came to pass,
that when Sanballat, and Tobiah Tobi Yah,
and the Arabians Arabiy, and the Ammonites Ammoniy,
and the Ashdodites Ashdodiy,
heard that the walls of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem
were made up ascended,
and that the breaches began to be stopped,
then they were very wrath mightily inflamed,
And conspired all of them together
to come and to fight against Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
and to hinder work error to it.

9 Nevertheless we made our prayer prayed
unto our God Elohim,
and set a watch stood an underguard against them
by day and by night, because of them at their face.

THE YAH HUDIYM DISCOURAGED

10 And Judah Yah Hudah said,
The strength force
of the bearers of burdens burdenbearers
is decayed faltered,
and there is much rubbish dust aboundeth;
so that we are not able to build the wall.

11 And our adversaries tribulators said,
They shall not know, neither see,
till we come in the midst among them,
and slay slaughter them, and cause the work to cease.

12 And so be it came to pass,
that when the Jews Yah Hudiym
which dwelt settled by them came,
they said unto us ten times,
From all places whence ye shall return unto us —
they will be upon you.

13 Therefore set stood I
in the lower nether parts of the places behind the wall,
and on the higher places clearing,
Yes, I even set stood the people after their families
with their swords, their spears javelins, and their bows.

14 And I looked saw, and rose up,
and said unto the nobles, and to the rulers prefects,
and to the rest of the people,
Be not ye afraid of them Awe ye not at their face:
remember the Lord Adonay,
which is great and terrible awesome,
and fight for your brethren, your sons, and your daughters,
your wives women, and your houses.

15 And so be it came to pass,
when our enemies heard that it was known unto us,
and God Elohim had brought broken their counsel
to nought,
that we returned all of us to the wall,
every one each man unto his work.

16 And so be it came to pass, from that time forth day,
that the half of my servants lads wrought worked in the work,

NECHEM YAH 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 and he says at the face of his brothers
and the men of valour of Shomeron, and says,
What work these languid Yah Hudiym?
Forsake they to themselves?
Sacrifice they?
Finish they in a day?
Enliven they the stones from the heaps of the dust
that are burnt?

3 And Tobi Yah the Ammoniy is by him,
and he says, Whatever they build,
if a fox ascends, even he splits their stone wall.

4 Hear, O our Elohim;
for we are disrespected:
turn their reproach on their own head
and give them for plunder in the land of captivity:
and neither cover their perversity
nor wipe away their sin from your face:
for they vex you in front of the builders.

6 And we build the wall;
and all the wall is bound to the half thereof:
for the people have a heart to work.

7 And so be it,
Sanballat and Tobi Yah and the Arabiy
and the Ammoniy and the Ashdodiy
hear the walls of Yeru Shalem are ascended
and the breaches begin to stop;
and they inflame mightily;
and all together

8 they conspire to come and fight Yeru Shalem
and work error to it:
and we pray to our Elohim
and stand an underguard against them
by day and by night, at their face.

THE YAH HUDIYM DISCOURAGED

10 And Yah Hudah says,
The force of the burdenbearers falters
and dust abounds
so that we are not able to build the wall:
and our tribulators say
they neither know nor see,
until we come among them
and slaughter them and cease the work.

12 And so be it,
the Yah Hudiym who settle by them come,
and say to us ten times,
From all places wherever you return to us — .

13 And I stand
in the nether parts of the places behind the wall
and on the clearing
— yes, I stand the people by their families
with their swords, their javelins and their bows:
and I see and rise
and say to the nobles and to the prefects
and to the rest of the people,
Awe not at their face!
Remember Adonay — great and awesome!
And fight for your brothers,
your sons and your daughters,
your women and your houses!

15 And so be it, our enemies hear
that we know that Elohim breaks their counsel,
we all return to the wall — each man to his work:
and so be it, from that day,
that half of my lads work in the work

NEHEMIAH 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the other half of them held both the spears **javelins**,
the *shields* **bucklers**, and the bows, and the habergeons;
and the *rulers* **governors** were behind
all the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
17 They which builded on the wall,
and they that bare burdens, with those that laded,
every one with one of his hands **hand**
wrought **worked** in the work,
and with the other **one hand** held a *weapon* **spear**.
18 For the builders, every one **each man** had his sword
girded by **bound on** his *side* **loins**, and so builded.
And he that *sounded* **blast** the *trumpet* **shophar** was by me.
19 And I said unto the nobles, and to the rulers,
and to the rest of the people,
The work is *great* **abundant** and large,
and we are separated upon the wall,
one **man** far from *another* **brother**.
20 In what place *therefore*
ye hear the *sound* **voice** of the *trumpet* **shophar**,
resort **gather** ye thither unto us:
our *God* **Elohim** shall fight for us.
21 So we *laboured* **worked** in the work:
and half of them held the *spears* **javelins**
from the *rising* **ascending** of the *morning* **dawn**
till the stars *appeared* **went**.
22 Likewise at the same time said I unto the people,
Let every one **each man** with his *servant* **lad**
lodge **stay overnight** within *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
that in the night they may be a *guard* **an underguard** to us,
and *labour* **work** on the day.
23 So neither I, nor my brethren, nor my *servants* **lads**,
nor the men of the *guard* **underguard**
which followed **after** me,
none of us *put off* **stripped** our clothes,
saving that every one put them off for washing
each man went with his spear for water.

THE YAH HUDIYM ARE REGRETFUL

5 And there was **became** a great cry
of the people and of their *wives* **women**
against their brethren the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**.
2 **Yes**, For there were that said,
We, our sons, and our daughters, are many:
therefore we take up *corn* **crop** for them,
that we may eat, and live.
3 *Some* also there were that said,
We have *mortgaged* **pledged** our *lands* **fields**,
vineyards, and houses,
that we might *buy corn* **take crop**,
because of the *dearth* **famine**.
4 There were also that said,
We have borrowed *money* **silver**
for the *king's tribute* **sovereign's measure**,
and that upon our *lands* **fields** and vineyards.
5 Yet now our flesh is as the flesh of our brethren,
our *children* **sons** as their *children* **sons**:
and, *lo* **behold**, we *bring into bondage* **subdue**
our sons and our daughters to be servants,
and *some* of our daughters
are *brought unto bondage* **subdued** *already*:
neither is it in *our power* **the El of our hands**
to redeem them;
for other men have our *lands* **fields** and vineyards.
6 And I was *very angry* **mighty inflamed**
when I heard their cry and these words.
7 Then I *consulted* **my heart reigned** with myself,
and I *rebuked* **contended**
with the nobles, and the *rulers* **prefects**,
and said unto them,
Ye *exact usury* **bear interest**,
every one **each man** of his brother.
And I *set* **gave** a great *assembly* **congregation** against them.
8 And I said unto them,
We after our *ability* **sufficiency**
have *redeemed* **chatted** our brethren the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
which were sold unto the *heathen* **goyim**;
and *will* **shall** ye *even* sell your brethren?
or shall they be sold unto us?
Then *held they their peace* **they hushed**,
and found *nothing to answer* **no word**.

NECHEM YAH 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the other half of them hold both the javelins,
the bucklers and the bows and the habergeons;
and the governors are behind
all the house of Yah Hudah.
17 They who build on the wall
and they who bear burdens, and they who load,
with one hand work in the work
and with one hold a spear:
18 — each man has his sword bound on his loins
and thus builds;
and he who blasts the shophar is by me.
19 And I say to the nobles and to the rulers
and to the rest of the people,
The work is abundant and large
and we are separated on the wall
— man far from brother:
20 in the place you hear the voice of the shophar,
gather there to us:
our Elohim fights for us.
21 And we work in the work:
and half of them hold the javelins
from the ascending of the dawn
until the stars come.
22 Likewise at the same time I say to the people,
Each man with his lad
— stay overnight inside Yeru Shalem
— to be our underguard in the night
and work by day.
23 So neither I, nor my brothers, nor my lads,
nor the men of the underguard after me
— none of us strips our clothes;
each man goes for water with his spear.

THE YAH HUDIYM ARE REGRETFUL

5 And so be it,
a great cry of the people and of their women
against their brothers the Yah Hudiym.
2 **Yes**, they who say,
We, our sons and our daughters, are many;
and we take crop to eat and live.
3 And they who say,
We pledge our fields, vineyards and houses,
to take crop for the famine.
4 And they who say,
We borrowed silver on our fields and vineyards
for the measure of the sovereign:
5 and now, our flesh is as the flesh of our brothers
— our sons as their sons:
and, behold,
we subdue our sons and our daughters to be servants
and *some* of our daughters are subdued:
and El is not in our hands:
for other men have our fields and vineyards.
6 And I inflame mightily
when I hear their cry and these words:
7 and my heart reigns over me
and I contend with the nobles and the prefects,
and say to them,
You bear interest — each man of his brother:
and I give a great congregation against them.
8 And I say to them,
With our ability
we chatted our brothers the Yah Hudiym
who were sold to the goyim;
And you, sell your brothers? — sell to us?
— and they hush and find no word.

NEHEMIAH 5, 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

9 Also I said,
The word that ye work It is not good *that ye do*:
ought ye not to walk in the *fear* **awe** of our *God* **Elohim**
because of the reproach
of the *heathen* **goyim** our enemies?
10 I likewise, and my brethren, and my *servants* **lads**,
might exact of them *money* **silver** and *corn* **crop**:
I *pray* **beseech** you, let us leave off this *usury* **interest**.
11 Restore, I *pray* **beseech** you, to them, even this day,
their *lands* **fields**, their vineyards,
their oliveyards, and their houses,
also the hundredth *part* of the *money* **silver**,
and of the *corn* **crop**, the *wine* **juice**, and the oil,
that ye exact of them.
12 Then said they, We *will* **shall** restore them,
and *will require nothing* **shall seek naught** of them;
so *will* **shall** we *do* **work** as thou sayest.
Then I called the priests, and *took an oath of* **oathed** them,
that they should *do* **work** according to this *promise* **word**.
13 Also I shook my *lap* **bosom**, and said,
So *God* **Elohim** shake out every man from his house,
and from his labour,
that *performeth* **raiseth** not this *promise* **word**,
even thus be he shaken out, and emptied.
And all the congregation said, Amen,
and *praised the LORD* **halaled Yah Veh**.
And the people *did* **worked**
according to this *promise* **word**.
14 Moreover from the *time* **day**
that I was *appointed* **misvahed** to be their governor
in the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
from the twentieth year
even unto the two and thirtieth year
of *Artaxerxes* **Artach Shashta** the *king* **sovereign**,
that is, twelve years,
I and my brethren
have not eaten the bread of the governor.
15 But the former governors
that had been before me **at my face**
were *chargeable* **heavy** unto the people,
and had taken of them bread and wine,
beside forty shekels of silver; *yea* **however**,
even their *servants* **lads**
bare rule **dominated** over the people:
but so *did* **worked** not I,
because **at the face** of the *fear* **awe** of *God* **Elohim**.
16 Yea, also I *continued* **held fast** in the work of this wall,
neither *bought* **chatted** we any *land* **field**:
and all my *servants* **lads**
were gathered thither unto the work.
17 *Moreover*
there were at my table an hundred and fifty **men**
of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** and *rulers* **prefects**,
beside those that came unto us
from among the *heathen* **goyim** that are **round** about us.
18 Now that which was *prepared* **worked**
for me *daily* **one day**
was one ox and six *choice* **sheep pure flock**;
also *fowls* **birds** were *prepared* **worked** for me,
and once in ten days
store **abundance** of all sorts of wine:
yet for all this
required **sought** not I the bread of the governor,
because the *bondage* **service** was heavy upon this people.
19 *Think* **Remember** upon me, my *God* **Elohim**, for good,
according to all that I have *done* **worked** for this people.

THE YAH HUDIYM ACCUSED

6 Now **And so be** it *came to pass*,
when Sanballat, and *Tobiah* **Tobi Yah**,
and Geshem the *Arabian* **Arabiy**,
and the rest of our enemies,
heard that I had builded the wall,
and that there was no breach **left remaining** therein;
(though at **however until** that time
I had not *set up* **stood** the doors upon the *gates* **portals**;))
2 That Sanballat and Geshem sent unto me, saying, Come,
let us *meet* **congregate** together
in *some one of* the villages in the *plain* **valley** of Ono.
But they *thought* **fabricated** to *do* **work** me *mischief* **evil**.

NECHEM YAH 5, 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 And I say,
The word you work is not good:
ought you not to walk in the awe of our Elohim
because of the reproach of the goyim our enemies?
10 And also I — and my brothers and my lads,
exact silver and crop of them:
I beseech you, leave off this interest:
11 restore to them, I beseech you, even this day,
their fields, their vineyards,
their oliveyards and their houses,
silver to the hundredth,
and of the crop, the juice and the oil,
you exacted of them.
12 And they say,
We restore them and seek naught of them;
thus we work as you say.
And I call the priests and oath them
to work according to this word:
13 and I shake my bosom and say,
Thus *may* Elohim shake
every man from his house and from his labor
who raises not this word
— even thus be he shaken out and emptied.
And all the congregation says, Amen!
— and halals Yah Veh;
and the people work according to this word.
14 Also from the day he misvahed me
to be their governor in the land of Yah Hudah
— from the twentieth year
even to the thirty—second year
of Artach Shashta the sovereign
— twelve years,
I and my brothers eat not the bread of the governor:
15 the former governors at my face
are heavy to the people
and take bread and wine of them,
besides forty shekels of silver;
also their lads dominate over the people:
but I work not thus at the face of the awe of Elohim:
16 and I also hold fast in the work of this wall:
we chattel no field:
and all my lads gather there to the work.
17 And of the Yah Hudiym and prefects,
there are a hundred and fifty men at my table
beside those who come to us
from among the goyim all around us.
18 And here is what is worked for one day:
one ox and six pure flock;
and birds are worked for me;
and once in ten days
an abundance of all sorts of wine:
yet for all this I seek not the bread of the governor;
because the service is heavy on this people.
19 Remember on me, my Elohim, for good,
according to all I work for this people.

THE YAH HUDIYM ACCUSED

6 And so be it,
Sanballat and Tobi Yah and Geshem the Arabiy
and the rest of our enemies
hear I built the wall
with no breach remaining therein
— also until that time
I had not stood the doors on the portals;
2 and Sanballat and Geshem send to me, saying,
Come, congregate with us
in the villages in the valley of Ono.
— and they fabricate to work me evil.

NEHEMIAH 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 And I sent messengers **angels** unto them, saying,
I am *doing* **working** a great work,
so that I cannot *come down* **descend**:
why should the work cease,
whilst I *leave* **slacken** it, and *come down* **descend** to you?
4 Yet they sent unto me four times
after this *sort* **word**;
and I *answered* **returned** them
after the same *manner* **word**.
5 Then sent Sanballat his *servant* **lad** unto me
in like *manner* **word** the fifth time
with an open *letter* **epistle** in his hand;
6 Wherein was *written* **inscribed**,
It is *reported* **heard** among the *heathen* **goyim**,
and Gashmu saith it,
that thou and the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
think **fabricate** to rebel:
for *which cause* **thus** thou buildest the wall,
that thou mayest be their *king* **sovereign**,
according to these words.
7 And thou hast also *appointed* **stood** prophets
to *preach* **call out** of thee at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
saying, There is a *king* **sovereign** in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**:
and now shall it be *reported* **heard**
to *by* the *king* **sovereign** according to these words.
Come now therefore, and let us *take* counsel together.
8 Then I sent unto him, saying,
There are no such *things done* **words** as thou sayest,
but thou *feignest* **contrivest** them out of thine own heart.
9 For they all *made* **awe** us *afraid*, saying,
Their hands shall be *weakened* **slacken** from the work,
that it be not *done* **worked**.
Now therefore, *O God*,
strengthen my hands.
10 Afterward
I came unto the house of *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**
the son of *Delaiah* **Dela Yah**
the son of *Mehetabeel* **Mehetab El**,
who was *shut up* **restrained**;
and he said, Let us *meet* **congregate** *together*
in the house of *God* **Elohim**, within the *temple* **manse**,
and let us shut the doors of the *temple* **manse**:
for they *will* **shall** come to *slay* **slaughter** thee; yea,
in the night *will* **shall** they come to *slay* **slaughter** thee.
11 And I said, should such a man as I flee?
and who is there, that, *being* as I am,
would **should** go into the *temple* **manse**
to *save his life* **live**?
I *will* **shall** not go in.
12 And, *lo* **behold**,
I *perceived* **recognized**
that *God* **Elohim** had not sent him;
but that he *pronounced* **worded** this prophecy against me:
for *Tobiah* **Tobi Yah** and Sanballat had hired him.
13 Therefore was he hired, that I should be *afraid* **awed**,
and *do* **work** so, and sin,
and that they might *have matter* **become**
for an evil *report* **name**,
that they might reproach me.
14 My *God* **Elohim**,
think **remember** thou upon *Tobiah* **Tobi Yah** and Sanballat
according to these their works,
and on the prophetess *Noadiah* **Noad Yah**,
and the rest of the prophets,
that *would have put me in fear* **should have me awe**.
15 So the wall was *finished* **shalamed**
in the twenty and fifth *day of the month* **Elul**,
in fifty and two days.
16 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
that when all our enemies heard *thereof*,
and all the *heathen* **goyim** that were *round* about us
saw these *things*,
they were *much cast down* **mightily fallen** in their own eyes:
for they perceived that this work
was *wrought* **worked** of our *God* **Elohim**.
17 Moreover in those days the nobles of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
sent many letters **abounded passing their epistles**
unto *Tobiah* **Tobi Yah**,
and the *letters* **those** of *Tobiah* **Tobi Yah** came unto them.

NECHEM YAH 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 And I send angels to them, saying,
I work a great work, that I cannot descend:
why cease the work — slacken it to descend to you?
4 — and they send me this word four times;
and I return the same word.
5 And Sanballat sends his lad to me
in like word a fifth time
with an open epistle in his hand;
6 wherein is inscribed,
It is heard among the goyim; and Gashmu says it,
that you and the Yah Hudiym fabricate to rebel:
so you build the wall
— to be their sovereign — according to these words:
7 and you also stand prophets
to call for you at Yeru Shalem,
saying, There is a sovereign in Yah Hudah:
and now the sovereign hears these words:
come now, and we counsel together.
8 And I send to him, saying,
There are no such words as you say
but you contrive them from your own heart:
9 for they all awe us, saying,
Their hands slacken from the work,
that it is not worked:
and now, my hands strengthen.
10 And I come to the house of Shema Yah
the son of Dela Yah the son of Mehetab El
who is restrained;
and he says,
Congregate us in the house of Elohim
inside the manse
and shut the doors of the manse:
for they come to slaughter you;
yes, in the night they come to slaughter you.
11 And I say, Such a man as I — flee?
And who — who am I to go into the manse to live?
I go not in.
12 And, behold,
I recognize that Elohim sent him not;
but that he words this prophecy against me:
for Tobi Yah and Sanballat hired him
13 — a hireling to awe me — to work thus and sin
and that they are for an evil name — to reproach me.
14 My Elohim,
remember on Tobi Yah and Sanballat
according to these their works;
and on the prophetess Noad Yah
and the rest of the prophets
that they awe me.
15 And they shalam the wall
in the twenty—fifth of Elul
— in fifty—two days.
16 And so be it,
all our enemies hear
and all the goyim all around us see
and they fall mightily in their own eyes:
for they perceive
that this work is worked of our Elohim.
17 Also in those days the nobles of Yah Hudah
abound passing their epistles to Tobi Yah;
and they of Tobi Yah come to them.

NEHEMIAH 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 For there were many **masters** in Judah **Yah Hudah**
sworn **oathed** unto him,
because he was the son in law of *Shechaniah* **Shechan Yah**
the son of *Arah* **Arach**;
and his son *Johanah* **Yah Hanan**
had taken the daughter of Meshullam
the son of *Berechiah* **Berech Yah**.
19 Also they *reported* **said** his good deeds
before me **at my face**,
and *uttered* **brought** my words to him.
And *Tobiah* **Tobi Yah** sent *letters* **epistles**
to put me in fear **have me awe**.

NECHEM YAH MISVAHS HANANI AND HANAN YAH CONCERNING YERU SHALEM

7 Now **And so be** it came to pass,
when the wall was built,
and I had set up **stood** the doors,
and the porters and the singers and the *Levites* **Leviym**
were appointed **mustered**,
2 That I gave **misvahed** my brother Hanani,
and *Hananiah* **Hanan Yah**
the ruler **governor** of the palace,
charge over Jerusalem **concerning Yeru Shalem**:
for he was a *faithful man* **man of truth**,
and *feared God* **awed Elohim** above many.
3 And I said unto them,
Let not
the gates **portals** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** be opened
until the sun be hot;
and while they stand by,
let them shut the doors, and **bar hold** them:
and appoint *watches* **stand guards**
of the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
every one **each man** in his watch **underguard**,
and *every one* **each man** to be over against his house.
4 Now the city was *large* **broad in space** and great:
but the people were few therein,
and the houses were not builded.

THE GENEALOGY OF THE EXILED

5 And my *God* put **Elohim gave** into mine heart
to gather *together* the nobles,
and the *rulers* **prefects**, and the people,
that they might be *reckoned by genealogy* **genealogized**.
And I found a *register* **scroll** of the genealogy of them
which *came up* **ascended** at the first,
and found *written* **inscribed** therein,
6 These are the *children* **sons** of the *province* **jurisdiction**,
that *went up* **ascended** out of the captivity,
of those that had been *carried away* **the exiles**,
whom *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**,
the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
had *carried away* **exiled**,
and *came again* **returned**
to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** and to *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
every one **each man** unto his city;
7 Who came with *Zerubbabel* **Zerub Babel**,
Jeshua **Yah Shua**, *Nehemiah* **Nechem Yah**,
Azariah **Azar Yah**, *Raamiah* **Raam Yah**,
Nahamani **Nachamani**, *Mordecai* **Mordechay**, *Bilshan*,
Mispereth, *Bigvai* **Bigvay**, *Nehum* **Nechum**, *Baanah*.
The number, *I say*,
of the men of the people of *Israel* **Yisra El** was this;
8 The *children* **sons** of *Parosh*,
two thousand an hundred seventy and two.
9 The *children* **sons** of *Shephatiah* **Shaphat Yah**,
three hundred seventy and two.
10 The *children* **sons** of *Arah* **Arach**,
six hundred fifty and two.
11 The *children* **sons** of *Pahathmoab* **Pachath Moab**
of the *children* **sons** of *Jeshua* **Yah Shua** and *Joab* **Yah Ab**,
two thousand and eight hundred and eighteen.
12 The *children* **sons** of *Elam*
a thousand two hundred fifty and four.
13 The *children* **sons** of *Zattu*,
eight hundred forty and five.
14 The *children* **sons** of *Zaccai* **Zakkay**,
seven hundred and *threescore* **sixty**.
15 The *children* **sons** of *Binnui* **Binnuy**,
six hundred forty and eight.

NECHEM YAH 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 For many masters in Yah Hudah oath to him
because he is the son in law
of Shechan Yah the son of Arach;
and his son Yah Hanan
took the daughter
of Meshullam the son of Berech Yah.
19 Also they say his good deeds at my face
and bring my words to him.
And Tobi Yah sends epistles so that I awe.

NECHEM YAH MISVAHS HANANI AND HANAN YAH CONCERNING YERU SHALEM

7 And so be it, the wall is built;
and I stand the doors;
and muster the porters
and the singers and the *Leviym*;
and I misvah my brother Hanani
and Hanan Yah the governor of the palace
concerning Yeru Shalem:
for he is a man of truth
and awes Elohim above many.
2
3 And I say to them,
Open not the portals of Yeru Shalem
until the heat of the sun.
And they stand by,
and shut the doors and hold them;
and stand guards of the settlers of Yeru Shalem,
— each man in his underguard
— each man over against his house.
4 and the city is broad in space and great:
and the people midst are few
and the houses are not built.

THE GENEALOGY OF THE EXILED

5 And my Elohim gives my heart
to gather the nobles and the prefects and the people
to genealogize them;
and I find a scroll of their genealogy
which ascends to the first;
and find inscribed therein:
6 These are the sons of the jurisdiction
who ascend from the captivity of the exiles;
whom Nebukadnets Tsar the sovereign of Babel
exiled and returned
to Yeru Shalem and to Yah Hudah
— each man to his city;
7 who came with Zerub Babel, Yah Shua,
Nechem Yah, Azar Yah, Raam Yah,
Nachamani, Mordechay, Bilshan,
Mispereth, Bigvay, Nechum, Baanah.
The number of the men of the people of Yisra El:
8 the sons of Parosh:
two thousand a hundred seventy—two;
9 the sons of Shaphat Yah:
three hundred seventy—two;
10 the sons of Arach:
six hundred fifty—two;
11 the sons of Pachath Moab
of the sons of Yah Shua and Yah Ab:
two thousand and eight hundred and eighteen;
12 the sons of Elam:
a thousand two hundred fifty—four;
13 the sons of Zattu:
eight hundred forty—five;
14 the sons of Zakkay:
seven hundred and sixty;
15 the sons of Binnuy:
six hundred forty—eight;

NEHEMIAH 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 16 The children **sons** of **Bebai** **Bebay**,
six hundred twenty and eight.
- 17 The children **sons** of **Azgad**,
two thousand three hundred twenty and two.
- 18 The children **sons** of **Adonikam** **Adoni Qam**,
six hundred *threescore* **sixty** and seven.
- 19 The children **sons** of **Bigvai** **Bigvay**,
two thousand *threescore* **sixty** and seven.
- 20 The children **sons** of **Adin**,
six hundred fifty and five.
- 21 The children **sons** of **Ater**
of **Hezekiah** **Yechizqi Yah**,
ninety and eight.
- 22 The children **sons** of **Hashum**,
three hundred twenty and eight.
- 23 The children **sons** of **Bezai** **Besay**,
three hundred twenty and four.
- 24 The children **sons** of **Hariph**,
an hundred and twelve.
- 25 The children **sons** of **Gibeon** **Gibon**,
ninety and five.
- 26 The men of **Bethlehem** **Beth Lechem** and **Netophah**,
an hundred *fourscore* **eighty** and eight.
- 27 The men of **Anathoth**,
an hundred twenty and eight.
- 28 The men of **Bethazmaveth** **Beth Azmaveth**,
forty and two.
- 29 The men of **Kirjathjearim** **Qiryath Arim**,
Chephirah **Kephirah**, and **Beeroth**,
seven hundred forty and three.
- 30 The men of **Ramah** and **Gaba** **Geba**,
six hundred twenty and one.
- 31 The men of **Michmas**,
an hundred and twenty and two.
- 32 The men of **Bethel** **Beth El** and **Ai** **Ay**,
an hundred twenty and three.
- 33 The men of the other **Nebo**,
fifty and two.
- 34 The children **sons** of the other **Elam**,
a thousand two hundred fifty and four.
- 35 The children **sons** of **Harim**,
three hundred and twenty.
- 36 The children **sons** of **Jericho** **Yericho**,
three hundred forty and five.
- 37 The children **sons** of **Lod**, **Hadid**, and **Ono**,
seven hundred twenty and one.
- 38 The children **sons** of **Senaah**,
three thousand nine hundred and thirty.
- 39 The priests:
the children **sons** of **Jedaiah** **Yeda Yah**,
of the house of **Jeshua** **Beth Yah Shua**,
nine hundred seventy and three.
- 40 The children **sons** of **Immer**,
a thousand fifty and two.
- 41 The children **sons** of **Pashur** **Pashchur**,
a thousand two hundred forty and seven.

NECHEM YAH 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 16 the sons of **Bebay**:
six hundred twenty—eight;
- 17 the sons of **Azgad**:
two thousand three hundred twenty—two;
- 18 the sons of **Adoni Qam**:
six hundred sixty—seven;
- 19 the sons of **Bigvay**:
two thousand sixty—seven;
- 20 the sons of **Adin**:
six hundred fifty—five;
- 21 the sons of **Ater** of **Yechizqi Yah**:
ninety—eight;
- 22 the sons of **Hashum**:
three hundred twenty—eight;
- 23 the sons of **Besay**:
three hundred twenty—four;
- 24 the sons of **Hariph**:
a hundred and twelve;
- 25 the sons of **Gibon**:
ninety—five;
- 26 the men of **Beth Lechem** and **Netophah**:
a hundred eighty—eight;
- 27 the men of **Anathoth**:
a hundred twenty—eight;
- 28 the men of **Beth Azmaveth**:
forty—two;
- 29 the men of **Qiryath Arim** **Kephirah** and **Beeroth**:
seven hundred forty—three;
- 30 the men of **Ramah** and **Geba**:
six hundred twenty—one;
- 31 the men of **Michmas**:
a hundred and twenty—two;
- 32 the men of **Beth El** and **Ay**:
a hundred twenty—three;
- 33 the men of the other **Nebo**:
fifty—two;
- 34 the sons of the other **Elam**:
a thousand two hundred fifty—four;
- 35 the sons of **Harim**:
three hundred and twenty;
- 36 the sons of **Yericho**:
three hundred forty—five;
- 37 the sons of **Lod**, **Hadid** and **Ono**:
seven hundred twenty—one;
- 38 the sons of **Senaah**:
three thousand nine hundred and thirty.
- 39 The priests:
the sons of **Yeda Yah** of **Beth Yah Shua**:
nine hundred seventy—three;
- 40 the sons of **Immer**:
a thousand fifty—two;
- 41 the sons of **Pashchur**:
a thousand two hundred forty—seven;

NEHEMIAH 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

42 The children **sons** of Harim,
a thousand and seventeen.

43 The Levites **Leviym**:
the children **sons** of *Jeshua* **Yah Shua**,
of *Kadmiel* **Qadmi El**,
and of the children **sons** of *Hodevah* **Hode Yah**,
seventy and four.

44 The singers:
the children **sons** of *Asaph*,
an hundred forty and eight.

45 The porters:
the children **sons** of *Shallum*,
the children **sons** of *Ater*,
the children **sons** of *Talmon*,
the children **sons** of *Akkub* **Aqqub**,
the children **sons** of *Hatita*,
the children **sons** of *Shobai* **Shobay**,
an hundred thirty and eight.

46 The *Nethinims* **Dedicates**:
the children **sons** of *Ziha* **Sicha**,
the children **sons** of *Hashupha*,
the children **sons** of *Tabbaoth*,
47 The children **sons** of *Keros* **Qeros**,
the children **sons** of *Sia*,
the children **sons** of *Padon*,
48 The children **sons** of *Lebana*,
the children **sons** of *Hagaba* **Hagabah**,
the children **sons** of *Shalmi* **Salmay**,
49 The children **sons** of *Hanan*,
the children **sons** of *Giddel*,
the children **sons** of *Gahar* **Gachar**,
50 The children **sons** of *Reaiah* **Rea Yah**,
the children **sons** of *Rezin* **Resin**,
the children **sons** of *Nekoda*,
51 The children **sons** of *Gazzam*,
the children **sons** of *Uzza*,
the children **sons** of *Phaseah* **Paseach**,
52 The children **sons** of *Besai* **Besay**,
the children **sons** of *Meunim* **Maoniyim**,
the children **sons** of *Nephishesim* **Nephisim**,
53 The children **sons** of *Bakbuk* **Baqbuq**,
the children **sons** of *Hakupha* **Haquppha**,
the children **sons** of *Harhur* **Harchur**,
54 The children **sons** of *Bazlith* **Baslith**,
the children **sons** of *Mehida* **Mechida**,
the children **sons** of *Harsha*,
55 The children **sons** of *Barkos* **Barqos**,
the children **sons** of *Sisera*,
the children **sons** of *Tamah* **Temach**,
56 The children **sons** of *Neziah* **Nesiach**,
the children **sons** of *Hatipha*.

57 The children **sons** of *Solomon's* **Shelomoh's** servants:
the children **sons** of *Sotai* **Sotay**,
the children **sons** of *Sophereth*,
the children **sons** of *Perida*,
58 The children **sons** of *Jaala* **Yaalah**,
the children **sons** of *Darkon* **Darqon**,
the children **sons** of *Giddel*,

59 The children **sons** of *Shephatiah* **Shaphat Yah**,
the children **sons** of *Hattil*,
the children **sons** of
Pochereth of Zebaim **Sebayim**,
the children **sons** of *Amon*.

60 All the *Nethinims* **Dedicates**,
and the children **sons** of *Solomon's* **Shelomoh's** servants,
were three hundred ninety and two.

61 And these were they which went up ascended also
from *Telmelah* **Tel Melach**, *Telharesha* **Tel Harsha**,
Cherub, Addon, and Immer:
but they could not shew tell their father's house,
nor their seed,
whether they were of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

62 The children **sons** of *Delaiah* **Dela Yah**,
the children **sons** of *Tobiah* **Tobi Yah**,
the children **sons** of *Nekoda*,
six hundred forty and two.

63 And of the priests:
the children **sons** of *Habaiah* **Haba Yah**,
the children **sons** of *Koz* **Qos**,

NECHEM YAH 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

42 the sons of Harim:
a thousand and seventeen.

43 The *Leviym*:
the sons of *Yah Shua* of *Qadmi El*
of the sons of *Hode Yah*:
seventy—four;

44 The singers:
the sons of *Asaph*:
a hundred forty—eight;

45 The porters:
the sons of *Shallum*, the sons of *Ater*,
the sons of *Talmon*, the sons of *Aqqub*,
the sons of *Hatita*, the sons of *Shobay*:
a hundred thirty—eight.

46 The *Dedicates*:
the sons of *Sicha*,
the sons of *Hashupha*, the sons of *Tabbaoth*,
47 the sons of *Qeros*,
the sons of *Sia*, the sons of *Padon*,
48 the sons of *Lebana*,
the sons of *Hagabah*, the sons of *Salmay*,
49 the sons of *Hanan*,
the sons of *Giddel*, the sons of *Gachar*,
the sons of *Rea Yah*,
50 the sons of *Resin*, the sons of *Nekoda*,
the sons of *Gazzam*,
51 the sons of *Uzza*, the sons of *Paseach*,
the sons of *Besay*,
52 the sons of *Maoniyim*, the sons of *Nephisim*,
the sons of *Baqbuq*,
53 the sons of *Haquppha*, the sons of *Harchur*,
the sons of *Baslith*,
54 the sons of *Mechida*, the sons of *Harsha*,
the sons of *Barqos*,
55 the sons of *Sisera*, the sons of *Temach*,
the sons of *Nesiach*, the sons of *Hatipha*.

56 The sons of the servants of *Shelomoh*:
the sons of *Sotay*,
57 the sons of *Sophereth*, the sons of *Perida*,
the sons of *Yaalah*,
58 the sons of *Darqon*, the sons of *Giddel*,
the sons of *Shaphat Yah*, the sons of *Hattil*,
the sons of *Pochereth of Sebayim*, the sons of *Amon*.

60 All the *Dedicates*
and the sons of servants of *Shelomoh*
— three hundred ninety—two.

61 And these are they who ascend
from *Tel Melach*, *Tel Harsha*,
Cherub, *Addon* and *Immer*:
and they are not able to tell
the house of their father or their seed
whether they are of *Yisra El* —
the sons of *Dela Yah*,
62 the sons of *Tobi Yah*, the sons of *Nekoda*
— six hundred forty—two;

63 And of the priests:
the sons of *Haba Yah*, the sons of *Qos*,

NEHEMIAH 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the children sons of Barzillai **Barzillai**,
which took one of the daughters
of Barzillai **Barzillai** the Gileadite **Giladiy** to wife **woman**,
and was called after their name.
64 These sought their **register inscribings** among those
that were *reckoned by genealogy genealogized*,
but it was not found:
therefore were they, *as polluted*,
put profaned from the priesthood.
65 And the **Tirshatha governor** said unto them,
that they should not eat
of the *most holy things* **Holy of Holies**,
till there stood up a priest with Urim and Thummim.
66 The whole congregation *together as one*
was **forty four myriads**
and two thousand three hundred and *threescore* **sixty**,
67 Beside
their *manservants* **servants** and their *maidservants* **maids**,
of whom there were
seven thousand three hundred thirty and seven:
and they had two hundred forty and five
singing men **songsters** and *singing women* **songstresses**.
68 Their horses, seven hundred thirty and six:
their mules, two hundred forty and five:
69 Their camels, four hundred thirty and five:
six thousand seven hundred and twenty **asses he burros**.
70 And *some part* of the **chief heads** of the fathers
gave unto the work.
The **Tirshatha governor** gave to the treasure
a thousand **drams drachmim** of gold,
fifty **basons sprinklers**,
five hundred and thirty priests' **garments coats**.
71 And *some of the chief heads* of the fathers
gave to the treasure of the work
twenty thousand drams **two myriads drachmim** of gold,
and two thousand and two hundred **pound maneh**
of silver.
72 And that which the **rest survivors** of the people gave
was *twenty thousand drams* **two myriads drachmim**
of gold,
and two thousand **pound maneh** of silver,
and *threescore* **sixty** and seven priests' **garments coats**.
73 So the priests, and the **Levites Leviym**, and the porters,
and the singers, and *some of the people*,
and the **Nethinims Dedicates**, and all **Israel Yisra El**,
dwelt settled in their cities;
and when the seventh month **came touched**,
the children **sons of Israel Yisra El** were in their cities.

EZRA CALLS OUT THE TORAH

8 And all the people
gathered *themselves together* as one man
into the **street Broadway**
that was *before at the face of the water gate* **portal**;
and they **spake said** unto Ezra the scribe
to bring the **book scroll**
of the **law torah** of **Moses Moshéh**,
which the **LORD Yah Veh** had *commanded* **misvahed**
to **Israel Yisra El**.
2 And Ezra the priest brought the **law torah**
before at the face of the congregation
both of men and women,
and all that *could hear* **discerned**
with understanding **hearkened**,
upon the first day of the seventh month.
3 And he *read* **called out** therein
before at the face of the street Broadway
that was *before at the face of the water gate* **portal**
from the *morning light* until midday,
before in front of the men and the women,
and those that *could understand* **discerned**;
and the ears of all the people
were *attentive* unto the **book scroll** of the **law torah**.
4 And Ezra the scribe
stood upon a **pulpit tower of wood timber**,
which they had *made* **worked** for the *purpose* **word**;
and beside him stood **Mattithiah Mattith Yah**,
and **Shema**, and **Anaiah Ana Yah**,
and **Urijah Uri Yah**, and **Hilkiah Hilqi Yah**,
and **Maaseiah Maase Yah**, on his right hand;

NECHEM YAH 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the sons of Barzillai,
who take of the daughters
of Barzillai the Giladiy to woman
— and are called after their name;
64 these sought their inscribings
among the genealogized
but found them not:
and they are profaned from the priesthood.
65 And the governor says to them,
to not eat of the Holy of Holies,
until a priest stands with Urim and Thummim.
66 The whole congregation as one
is four myriads
and two thousand three hundred and sixty:
67 beside their servants and their maids
of whom there are
seven thousand three hundred thirty—seven:
and they have two hundred forty—five
songsters and songstresses:
68 their horses, seven hundred thirty—six:
their mules, two hundred forty—five:
69 their camels, four hundred thirty—five:
six thousand seven hundred and twenty he burros.
70 And a part of the heads of the fathers
give to the work:
the governor gives the treasure
a thousand drachmim of gold,
fifty sprinklers,
five hundred and thirty coats for the priests;
71 and of the heads of the fathers
give to the treasure of the work:
two myriads drachmim of gold
and two thousand and two hundred
maneh of silver;
72 and the survivors of the people give
two myriads drachmim of gold
and two thousand maneh of silver
and sixty—seven coats for the priests.
73 And the priests and the Leviym and the porters
and the singers and of the people
and the Dedicates and all Yisra El,
settle in their cities;
and the seventh month touches,
and the sons of Yisra El are in their cities.

EZRA CALLS OUT THE TORAH

8 And all the people gather as one man
into the Broadway at the face of the water portal;
and they say to Ezra the scribe
to bring the scroll of the torah of Moshéh
which Yah Veh misvahed to Yisra El:
2 and Ezra the priest brings the torah
at the face of the congregation
— both of men and women;
and all who discern to hearken;
on the first day of the seventh month.
3 And he calls out therein
at the face of the Broadway
at the face of the water portal
from the light until midday;
in front of the men and the women
and all who discern;
and the ears of all the people
to the scroll of the torah.
4 And Ezra the scribe stands on a tower of timber
they worked for the word;
and Mattith Yah stands beside him;
and Shema and Ana Yah
and Uri Yah and Hilqi Yah
and Maase Yah, on his right;

NEHEMIAH 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and on his left hand, **Pedaiah Pedah Yah**,
and **Mishael Misha El**, and **Malchiah Malki Yah**,
and Hashum, and **Hashbadana Hashbad Danah**,
Zechariah **Zechar Yah**, and Meshullam.
5 And Ezra opened the **book scroll**
in the **sight eyes** of all the people;
(for he was above all the people;)
and when he opened it, all the people stood up:
6 And Ezra blessed the **LORD Yah Veh**,
the great **God Elohim**.
And all the people answered, Amen, Amen,
with **lifting up raising** their hands:
and they bowed their heads,
and **worshipped the LORD prostrated to Yah Veh**
with their **faces nostrils** to the **ground earth**.
7 Also **Jeshua Yah Shua**, and Bani,
and **Sherebiah Shereb Yah**, **Jamin Yamin**, **Akkub Akqub**,
Shabbethai Shabbethay, **Hodijah Hodi Yah**,
Maaseiah Maase Yah, **Kelita Qelita**, **Azariah Azar Yah**,
Jozabad Yah Zabad, Hanan, **Pelaiah Pela Yah**,
and the **Levites Leviym**,
caused the people to **understand discern** the **law torah**:
and the people **stood** in their **place station**.
8 So they **read called out** in the **book scroll**
in the **law torah** of **God distinctly Elohim expressly**,
and **gave set** the **sense comprehension**,
and caused them
to **understand discern** the **reading convocation**.
9 And **Nehemiah Nechem Yah**,
which is the **Tirshatha governor**,
and Ezra the priest the scribe,
and the **Levites Leviym** that **taught had** the people **discern**,
said unto all the people,
This day is holy
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**;
mourn not, nor weep.
For all the people wept,
when they heard the words of the **law torah**.
10 Then he said unto them, Go your way,
eat the fat, and drink the sweet,
and send portions unto them
for whom **nothing naught** is prepared:
for this day is holy unto our **Lord Adonay**:
neither **be ye sorry contort**;
for the **joy rejoicing** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
is your **strength stronghold**.
11 So the **Levites stilled Leviym hushed** all the people,
saying, **Hold your peace Hush**, for the day is holy;
neither **be ye grieved contort**.
12 And all the people went their way to eat, and to drink,
and to send portions, and to **make work** great **mirth cheer**,
because they had **understood discerned** the words
that were **declared made known** unto them.
13 And on the second day were gathered **together**
the **chief heads** of the fathers of all the people,
the priests, and the **Levites Leviym**, unto Ezra the scribe,
even to **understand comprehend**
the words of the **law torah**.
THE CELEBRATION OF SUKKOTH/BRUSH ARBORS
14 And they found **written inscribed** in the **law torah**
which the **LORD Yah Veh** had **commanded misvahed**
by **Moses the hand of Mosheh**,
that the **children sons** of **Israel Yisra El**
should **dwelt settle** in **booths sukkoth/brush arbors**
in the **feast celebration** of the seventh month:
15 And that they should **publish hear**
and **proclaim pass a voice** in all their cities,
and in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**, saying,
Go forth unto the mount, and fetch olive **branches leaves**,
and **pine branches leaves of oil trees**,
and myrtle **branches leaves**,
and palm **branches tree leaves**,
and **branches leaves** of thick trees,
to **make booths work sukkoth/brush arbors**,
as it is **written inscribed**.
16 So the people went forth, and brought **them**,
and **made worked** themselves
booths sukkoth/brush arbors,
every one **each man** upon the roof of his house,

NECHEM YAH 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and on his left, Pedah Yah and Misha El
and Malki Yah and Hashum and Hashbad Danah,
Zechar Yah and Meshullam.
5 And Ezra opens the scroll
in the eyes of all the people
— he being above all the people
and he opens it and all the people stand:
6 and Ezra blesses Yah Veh the great Elohim.
And all the people answer, Amen! Amen!
— they raise their hands and they bow their heads
and prostrate to Yah Veh
with their nostrils to the earth.
7 And Yah Shua and Bani and Shereb Yah,
Yamin, Akqub, Shabbethay,
Hodi Yah, Maase Yah, Qelita, Azar Yah,
Yah Zabad, Hanan, Pela Yah and the Leviym,
have the people discern the torah:
and the people **are** in their station:
8 and they call out in the scroll
in the torah of Elohim expressly
and set the comprehension
and have them discern the convocation.
9 And Nechem Yah the governor
and Ezra the priest the scribe
and the Leviym have the people discern;
and say to all the people,
This day is holy to Yah Veh your Elohim;
neither mourn, nor weep.
— for all the people weep
when they hear the words of the torah.
10 And he says to them, Go your way,
eat the fat and drink the sweet
and send portions to them
for whom naught is prepared:
for this day is holy to our Adonay.
Contort not;
for the rejoicing of Yah Veh is your stronghold.
11 And the Leviym hush all the people,
saying, Hush, for the day is holy!
Contort not.
12 And all the people go their way to eat and to drink
and to send portions and to work great cheer
— because they discern the words
made known to them.
13 And on the second day
the heads of the fathers of all the people,
the priests and the Leviym, gather to Ezra the scribe,
even to comprehend the words of the torah.
THE CELEBRATION OF SUKKOTH/BRUSH ARBORS
14 And they find inscribed in the torah
what Yah Veh misvahed by the hand of Mosheh;
that the sons of Yisra El
settle in sukkoth/brush arbors
in the celebration of the seventh month:
15 and they are heard passing a voice
in all their cities and in Yeru Shalem, saying,
Go forth to the mount and fetch olive leaves
and leaves of oil trees
and myrtle leaves
and palm tree leaves
and leaves of thick trees,
to work sukkoth/brush arbors, as inscribed.
16 And the people go and bring
and work themselves sukkoth/brush arbors,
— each man on the roof of his house

NEHEMIAH 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and in their courts,
and in the courts of the house of God **Elohim**,
and in the *street* **broadway**
of the water *gate* **portal**,
and in the *street* **broadway**
of the *gate* **portal** of Ephraim **Ephrayim**.
17 And all the congregation of them
that were come again **returned** out of the captivity
made *booths* **worked sukkoth/brush arbors**,
and sat **settled** under the *booths* **sukkoth/brush arbors**:
for since the days of *Jeshua* **Yah Shua** the son of Nun
unto that day
had not the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
done **worked** so.
And there was very **mighty** great *gladness* **cheerfulness**.
18 Also day by day, from the first day unto the last day,
he read **called out**
in the *book* **scroll** of the *law* **torah** of God **Elohim**.
And they kept **worked** the *feast* **celebration** seven days;
and on the eighth day was a *solemn* **private** assembly,
according unto the *manner* **judgment**.

THE SONS OF YISRA EL FAST

9 Now in the twenty and fourth day of this month
the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
were assembled **gathered** with fasting,
and with *sackclothes* **saqs**, and *earth* **soil** upon them.
2 And the seed of *Israel* **Yisra El** separated *themselves*
from all **sons** of strangers,
and stood and *confessed* **spread hands** for their sins,
and the *iniquities* **perversities** of their fathers.
3 And they stood up **arose** in their *place* **station**,
and read **called out** in the *book* **scroll** of the *law* **torah**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**
one a fourth part of the day;
and *another* a fourth part they *confessed* **spread hands**,
and *worshipped* **prostrated**
to the *LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**.
4 Then stood up **arose** upon the *stairs* **ascent**,
of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
Jeshua **Yah Shua**, and *Bani*,
Kadmiel **Qadmi El**, *Shebaniah* **Sheban Yah**, *Bunni*,
Sherebiah **Shereb Yah**, *Bani*, and *Chenani* **Kenani**,
and cried with a *loud* **great** voice
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**.
5 Then the *Levites* **Leviym**,
Jeshua **Yah Shua**, and *Kadmiel* **Qadmi El**, *Bani*,
Hashabniah **Hashabne Yah**, *Sherebiah* **Shereb Yah**,
Hodijah **Hodi Yah**, *Shebaniah* **Sheban Yah**,
and *Pethahiah* **Pethach Yah**, said,
Stand up **Arise** and bless the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
for ever **eternally** and ever **eternally**:
and blessed be *thy glorious name* **the name of thy honour**,
which is exalted above all blessing and *praise* **halal**.
6 Thou, even thou, art *LORD* **Yah Veh** alone;
thou hast made *heaven* **worked the heavens**,
the *heaven* **heavens** of *heavens* **the heavens**,
with all their host,
the earth, and all *things* that are therein,
the seas, and all that is therein,
and thou *preservest* **enlivenest** them all;
and the host of *heaven* **the heavens**
worshippeth **prostrateth** to thee.
7 Thou art the *LORD* the *God* **Yah Veh Elohim**,
who didst choose *Abram*,
and broughtest him forth out of Ur of the *Chaldees* **Kasdiy**,
and gavest **settest** him the name of *Abraham*;
8 And foundest his heart
faithful before thee **amenable at thy face**,
and *madest* **cuttest** a covenant with him
to give the land of the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
the *Hittites* **Hethiy**, the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
and the *Perizzites* **Perizziy**, and the *Jebusites* **Yebusiy**,
and the *Girgashites* **Girgashiy**,
to give it, *I say*, to his seed,
and hast *performed* **raised** thy words;
for thou art *righteous* **just**:
9 And didst see the *affliction* **humiliation** of our fathers
in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and heardest their cry by the *Red* **Reed** sea;

NECHEM YAH 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and in their courts
and in the courts of the house of Elohim
and in the *broadway* of the water *portal*
and in the *broadway* of the *portal* of Ephrayim.
17 And all the congregation
who returned from the captivity
work *sukkoth/brush arbors*
and settle under the *sukkoth/brush arbors*:
for since the days of *Yah Shua* the son of Nun
to that day
the sons of *Yisra El* had not worked thus:
and there is mighty great *cheerfulness*:
18 and day by day, from the first day to the last day,
he calls out the scroll of the *torah* of Elohim.
— and they work the *celebration* seven days;
and on the eighth day is a *private assembly*
according to the *judgment*.

THE SONS OF YISRA EL FAST

9 Now in the twenty—fourth day of this month
the sons of *Yisra El* gather with fasting
and with *saqs* and *soil* on them:
2 and the seed of *Yisra El*
separate from all sons of strangers;
and stand and spread hands
for their sins and the *perversities* of their fathers:
3 and they rise in their *station*
and call out
in the scroll of the *torah* of *Yah Veh* their *Elohim*
a fourth of the day;
and a fourth they spread hands
and prostrate to *Yah Veh* their *Elohim*.
4 And on the ascent of the *Leviym*,
Yah Shua and *Bani*, *Qadmi El*, *Sheban Yah*,
Bunni, *Shereb Yah*, *Bani* and *Kenani*
rise and cry with a great voice
to *Yah Veh* their *Elohim*:
5 and of the *Leviym*,
Yah Shua and *Qadmi El*, *Bani*,
Hashabne Yah, *Shereb Yah*, *Hodi Yah*,
Sheban Yah and *Pethach Yah*
say, Rise and bless *Yah Veh* your *Elohim*
eternally and eternally:
and blessed — the name of your honor
— exalted above all blessing and *halal*.
6 You are he, *Yah Veh* alone;
you worked the heavens
— the heavens of the heavens and all their host;
the earth and all thereon;
the seas and all therein;
and you enliven them all;
and the host of the heavens prostrates to you.
7 You — *Yah Veh* *Elohim*,
who chose *Abram*
and brought him from Ur of the *Kasdiy*
and set on him the name, *Abraham*;
8 and found his heart *amenable* at your face
and cut a covenant with him
to give the land of the *Kenaaniy*,
the *Hethiy*, the *Emoriy*
and the *Perizziy* and the *Yebusiy* and the *Girgashiy*
— to give to his seed;
and to raise your words; for you are just:
9 and see the *humiliation* of our fathers in *Misrayim*
and hear their cry by the *Reed* sea;

NEHEMIAH 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 And *shewedst* gavest signs and wonders omens
upon Pharaoh Paroh, and on all his servants,
and on all the people of his land:
for thou knewest
that they dealt proudly seethed against them.
So didst thou get work thee a name, as it is this day.
11 And thou didst divide split the sea
before them at their face,
so that they went passed through the midst of the sea
on the dry land;
and their persecutors pursuers
thou threwest into the deeps,
as a stone into the mighty strong waters.
12 Moreover thou leddest them
in the by day by a cloudy pillar of cloud;
and in the by night by a pillar of fire,
to give them light in the way wherein they should go.
13 Thou camest down descendest also
upon mount Sinai Sinay,
and spakest wordest with them from heaven the heavens,
and gavest them right straight judgments,
and true laws torahs,
good statutes and commandments misvoth:
14 And madest known unto them
thy holy sabbath shabbath,
and commandedst misvahedst them
precepts misvoth, statutes, and laws torah,
by the hand of Moses Mosheh thy servant:
15 And gavest them bread from heaven the heavens
for their hunger famine,
and broughtest forth water for them out of the rock
for their thirst,
and promisedst saidst to them
that they should go in to possess the land
which thou hadst sworn lifted thy hand to give them.
16 But they and our fathers dealt proudly seethed,
and hardened their necks,
and hearkened not to thy commandments misvoth,
17 And refused to obey hearken,
neither were mindful of remembered thy wonders marvels
that thou didst workedst among them;
but hardened their necks,
and in their rebellion
appointed a captain gave a head
to return to their bondage servitude:
but thou art
a God ready to pardon an Elohad of forgivenesses,
gracious charismatic and merciful, slow to anger wrath,
and of great kindness mercy, and forsookest them not.
18 Yea, when they had made worked them a molten calf,
and said, This is thy God Elohim
that brought ascended thee up out of Egypt Misrayim,
and had wrought worked great provocations scornings;
19 Yet thou in thy manifold abundant mercies
forsookest them not in the wilderness:
the pillar of the cloud
departed turned not from them by day,
to lead them in the way;
neither the pillar of fire by night,
to shew them light,
and the way wherein they should go.
20 Thou gavest also thy good spirit Spirit
to instruct have them comprehend,
and withheldest not thy manna from their mouth,
and gavest them water for their thirst.
21 Yea, forty years
didst thou sustain them in the wilderness,
so that they lacked nothing naught;
their clothes waxed not old wore not out,
and their feet swelled not.
22 Moreover thou gavest them
kingdoms sovereigndoms and nations people,
and didst divide allottedst them into corners to the edges:
so they possessed the land of Sihon Sichon,
and the land of the king sovereign of Heshbon,
and the land of Og king sovereign of Bashan.
23 Their children sons also multipliedst aboundedst thou
as the stars of heaven the heavens,
and broughtest them into the land,

NECHEM YAH 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 and give signs and omens on Paroh
and on all his servants
and on all the people of his land:
for you knew they seethed against them:
and you worked yourself a name, as this day:
11 and you split the sea at their face
so that they passed through midst the sea on the dry;
and threw their pursuers into the deeps
as a stone into the strong waters:
12 and you led them
by day by a pillar of cloud;
and by night by a pillar of fire,
to give them light in the way wherein to go:
13 and you descended on mount Sinai
and worded with them from the heavens
and gave them straight judgments and true torahs,
good statutes and misvoth:
14 and had them know your holy shabbath;
and misvahed them
your misvoth, statutes and torah,
by the hand of Mosheh your servant:
15 and gave them bread from the heavens
for their famine;
and brought them water from the rock
for their thirst;
and said to them to go in to possess the land
which you lifted your hand to give them.
16 And they and our fathers seethed
and hardened their necks
and hearkened not to your misvoth
and refused to hearken;
17 and remembered not the marvels
you worked among them
and hardened their necks;
and in their rebellion
gave a head to return them to their servitude.
But you are an Elohad of forgivenesses,
charismatic and merciful, slow to wrath
and of great mercy and forsook them not.
18 Also, they worked themselves a molten calf
and said,
This is your Elohim who ascends you from Misrayim;
and works great scornings;
19 yet you in your abundant mercies
forsook them not in the wilderness:
neither turned the pillar of the cloud
from them by day — to lead them in the way;
nor the pillar of fire by night — to show them light
and the way to go.
20 You gave also your good Spirit
to have them comprehend
and withheld not your manna from their mouth
and gave them water for their thirst:
21 yes, forty years
you sustained them in the wilderness
so that they neither lacked;
nor wore out their clothes
nor swelled their feet.
22 And you gave them sovereigndoms and people
and allotted them to the edges:
and they possessed the land of Sichon
and the land of the sovereign of Heshbon
and the land of Og sovereign of Bashan:
23 and you abounded their sons
as the stars of the heavens;
and brought them to the land,

NEHEMIAH 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

concerning which
 thou hadst *promised* **said** to their fathers,
 that they should go in to possess it.
 24 So the *children* **sons** went in and possessed the land,
 and thou subduedst *before them* **at their face**
 the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land,
 the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniy**,
 and gavest them into their hands,
 with their *kings* **sovereigns**, and the people of the land,
 that they might *do* **work** with them as they *would* **pleased**.
 25 And they *took strong* **captured cut off** cities,
 and a fat *land* **soil**, and possessed houses full of all goods,
 wells *digged* **hewed**, vineyards, and oliveyards,
 and *fruit* **food** trees in abundance:
 so they did eat, and were *filled* **satisfied**,
 and *became fat* **fattened**,
 and *delighted* **pleased** themselves in thy great goodness.
 26 Nevertheless they were *disobedient* **rebellious**,
 and rebelled against thee,
 and cast thy *law* **torah** behind their backs,
 and *slew* **slaughtered** thy prophets
 which *testified* **witnessed** against them
 to turn them to thee,
 and they *wrought* **worked** great *provocations* **scornings**.
 27 Therefore thou *deliveredst* **gavest** them
 into the hand of their *enemies* **tribulators**,
 who *vexed* **tribulated** them:
 and in the time of their *trouble* **tribulation**,
 when they cried unto thee,
 thou heardest *them* from *heaven* **the heavens**;
 and according to thy *manifold* **abundant** mercies
 thou gavest them saviours, who saved them
 out of the hand of their *enemies* **tribulators**.
 28 But after they had *rest* **rested**,
 they *did* **returned to work** evil *again*
before thee **at thy face**:
 therefore leftest thou them in the hand of their enemies,
 so that they had *the dominion over* **subjugated** them:
 yet when they returned, and cried unto thee,
 thou heardest *them* from *heaven* **the heavens**;
 and many times didst thou *deliver* **rescue** them
 according to thy mercies;
 29 And *testifiedst* **witnessedst** against them,
 that thou mightest *bring* **return** them *again*
 unto thy *law* **torah**:
 yet they *dealt proudly* **seethed**,
 and hearkened not unto thy *commandments* **misvoth**,
 but sinned against thy judgments,
 (which if a *man do* **human work**, he shall live in them);
 and *withdrew the* **they gave a revolting** shoulder,
 and hardened their neck,
 and *would not hear* **hearkened not**.
 30 Yet many years didst thou *forbear* **draw** them,
 and *testifiedst* **witnessedst** against them by thy *spirit* **Spirit**
 in **the hand of** thy prophets:
 yet *would they not give ear* **they hearkened not**:
 therefore gavest thou them
 into the hand of the people of the lands.
 31 Nevertheless for thy great mercies' sake
 thou didst not *utterly consume* **fully work** them **over**,
 nor forsake them;
 for thou art a *gracious* **charismatic** and merciful *God* **El**.
 32 Now therefore, our *God* **Elohim**,
 the great, the mighty, and the *terrible* **God awesome** **El**,
 who *keepst* **guardest** covenant and mercy,
 let not all the *trouble seem little* **travail diminish**
before thee **at thy face**,
 that hath *come* **been found** upon us,
 on our *kings* **sovereigns**, on our *princes* **governors**,
 and on our priests, and on our prophets,
 and on our fathers, and on all thy people,
 since the *time* **day**
 of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
 unto this day.
 33 Howbeit thou art just in all that is brought upon us;
 for thou hast *done right* **worked true**,
 but we have done wickedly:

NECHEM YAH 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

concerning which you said to their fathers,
 to go in to possess it:
 24 and the sons came in and possessed the land
 and you subdued at their face
 the settlers of the land — the Kenaaniy
 and gave them into their hands
 — with their sovereigns and the people of the land
 — to work with them as they pleased:
 25 and they captured cut off cities and a fat soil
 and possessed houses full of all goods,
 wells hewed, vineyards and oliveyards
 and food trees in abundance:
 so they ate and satisfied and fattened
 and pleased themselves in your great goodness:
 26 and they *were* rebellious and rebelled against you
 and cast your torah behind their backs
 and slaughtered your prophets
 who witnessed against them to turn them to you:
 and they worked great scornings:
 27 and you gave them
 into the hand of their tribulators who tribulated them:
 and in the time of their tribulation
 they cried to you; and you heard from the heavens;
 and according to your abundant mercies
 you gave them saviours
 to save them from the hand of their tribulators:
 28 and they rested;
 and returned to work evil at your face:
 and you left them in the hand of their enemies
 to subjugate them:
 and they returned and cried to you
 and you heard from the heavens;
 and many times
 you rescued them according to your mercies:
 29 and witnessed against them
 to return them to your torah:
 and they seethe and hearken not to your misvoth;
 but sin against your judgments
 — which if a human work, he lives in them;
 and they gave a revolting shoulder
 and hardened their neck and hearkened not:
 30 and for many years you draw them
 and witness against them by your Spirit
 in the hand of your prophets;
 and they hearkened not:
 so you gave them
 into the hand of the people of the lands.
 31 and for sake of your great mercies
 you neither fully worked them over,
 nor forsook them;
 for you are a charismatic and merciful El.
 32 And now, our Elohim
 El — the great, the mighty and the awesome
 — who guards covenant and mercy,
 diminish not from your face
 all the travail that found us
 — on our sovereigns, on our governors
 and on our priests and on our prophets
 and on our fathers and on all your people
 since the day of the sovereigns of Ashshur
 to this day.
 33 And you are just in all you bring on us;
 for you work true
 but we have done wickedly:

NEHEMIAH 9, 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

34 Neither have our *kings* **sovereigns**,
 our *princes* **governors**, our priests,
 nor our fathers, *kept* **worked** thy *law* **torah**,
 nor hearkened unto thy *commandments* **misvoth**
 and thy *testimonies* **witnesses**,
 wherewith thou *didst testify* **witnessed** against them.
 35 For they have not served thee
 in their *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
 and in thy great goodness that thou gavest them,
 and in the large and fat land
 which thou gavest *before them* **at their face**,
 neither turned they from their *wicked works* **evil exploits**.
 36 Behold, we are servants this day,
 and *for* the land that thou gavest unto our fathers
 to eat the fruit thereof and the good thereof,
 behold, we are servants in it:
 37 And it *yieldeth much increase* **aboundeth produce**
 unto the *kings* **sovereigns**
 whom thou hast *set* **given** over us because of our sins:
 also they *have dominion* **reign** over our bodies,
 and over our *cattle* **animals**, at their pleasure,
 and we are in great *distress* **tribulation**.

AN AMANAH CUT, INSCRIBED, AND SEALED

38 And because of all this
 we *make a sure covenant* **cut an amanah**,
 and *write* **inscribe** it;
 and our *princes* **governors**,
Levites **Leviym**, and priests, seal unto it.
 10 Now those that sealed *were*,
Nehemiah **Nechem Yah**, the *Tirshatha* **governor**,
 the son of *Hachaliah* **Hachal Yah**, and *Zidkijah* **Sidqi Yah**,
 2 *Seraiah* **Sera Yah**,
 3 *Azariah* **Azar Yah**, *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
Pashur **Pashchur**,
 4 *Amariah* **Amar Yah**, *Malchijah* **Malki Yah**,
 Hattush, *Shebaniah* **Sheban Yah**, Malluch,
 5 Harim, Meremoth, *Obadiah* **Obad Yah**,
 6 *Daniel* **Dani El**, Ginnethon, Baruch,
 7 Meshullam, *Abijah* **Abi Yah**, *Mijamin* **Mi Yamin**,
 8 *Maaziah* **Maaz Yah**, *Bilgai* **Bilgay**, *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**:
 these were the priests.
 9 And the *Levites* **Leviym**:
 both *Jeshua* **Yah Shua** the son of *Azaniah* **Azan Yah**,
Binnui **Binnuy** of the sons of Henadad, *Kadmiel* **Qadmi El**;
 10 And their brethren,
Shebaniah **Sheban Yah**, *Hodijah* **Hodi Yah**,
Kelita **Qelita**, *Pelaiah* **Pela Yah**, Hanan,
 11 *Micha* **Michah Yah**, *Rechob* **Rechob**,
Hashabiah **Hashab Yah**,
 12 *Zaccur* **Zakkur**,
Sherebiah **Shereb Yah**, *Shebaniah* **Sheban Yah**,
 13 *Hodijah* **Hodi Yah**, Bani, *Beninu* **Ben Inu**.
 14 The *chief* **heads** of the people;
Parosh, *Pahathmoab* **Pachath Moab**, Elam, Zattu, Bani,
 15 Bunni, Azgad, *Bebai* **Bebay**,
 16 *Adonijah* **Adoni Yah**, *Bigvai* **Bigvay**, Adin,
 17 *Ater*, *Hizkijah* **Yechizqi Yah**, Azzur,
 18 *Hodijah* **Hodi Yah**, Hashum, *Bezai* **Besay**,
 19 Hariph, Anathoth, *Nebai* **Nobay**,
 20 *Magpiash* **Magpi Ash**, Meshullam, Hezir,
 21 *Meshezabeel* **Meshezab El**,
Zadok **Sadoq**, *Jaddua* **Yaddua**,
 22 *Pelatah* **Pelat Yah**, Hanan, *Anaiah* **Ana Yah**,
 23 Hoshea, *Haniah* **Hanan Yah**, *Hashub* **Hashshub**,
 24 *Haloresh* **Lochesh**, *Pileha* **Pilcha**, *Shobek* **Shobeq**,
 25 *Rehum* **Rechum**, Hashabnah, *Maaseiah* **Maase Yah**,
 26 And *Ahijah* **Achiy Yah**, Hanan, Anan,
 27 Malluch, Harim, Baanah.
 28 And the *rest* **survivors** of the people,
 the priests, the *Levites* **Leviym**,
 the porters, the singers, the *Nethinims* **Dedicates**,
 and all they that had separated themselves
 from the people of the lands
 unto the *law* **torah** of God **Elohim**,
 their *wives* **women**, their sons, and their daughters,
 every one *having knowledge* **who knoweth**,
 and *having understanding* **discerneth**;
 29 They *clave* **held** to their brethren, their *nobles* **mighty**,

NECHEM YAH 9, 10 809

exeGeses companion BIBLE

34 and our sovereigns, our governors,
 our priests, or our fathers,
 neither work your torah,
 nor hearken to your misvoth and your witnesses
 which you witness against them:
 35 for they neither serve you in their sovereigndom
 and in your great goodness that you give them;
 and in the large and fat land you give at their face,
 nor turn they from their evil exploits.
 36 Behold, we are servants this day
 and the land you gave to our fathers
 to eat the fruit thereof and the good thereof,
 behold, we are servants therein:
 37 and it abounds produce to the sovereigns
 whom you give over us because of our sins:
 and they reign over our bodies and over our animals
 at their pleasure;
 and we are in great tribulation.

AN AMANAH CUT, INSCRIBED, AND SEALED

38 And because of all this,
 we cut an amanah and inscribe it;
 and our governors, Leviym and priests
 seal it.

10

And over those sealed:
 Nechem Yah the governor
 the son of Hachal Yah and Sidqi Yah,
 Sera Yah, Azar Yah, Yirme Yah,
 Pashchur, Amar Yah, Malki Yah,
 4 Hattush, Sheban Yah, Malluch,
 5 Harim, Meremoth, Obad Yah,
 6 Dani El, Ginnethon, Baruch,
 7 Meshullam, Abi Yah, Mi Yamin,
 8 Maaz Yah, Bilgay, Shema Yah
 — these are the priests;

9 and the Leviym:
 both Yah Shua the son of Azan Yah
 Binnuy of the sons of Henadad, Qadmi El;

10 and their brothers:
 Sheban Yah, Hodi Yah, Qelita, Pela Yah, Hanan,
 11 Michah Yah, Rechob, Hashab Yah,
 12 Zakkur, Shereb Yah, Sheban Yah,
 13 Hodi Yah, Bani, Ben Inu;

14 the heads of the people:
 Parosh, Pachath Moab, Elam, Zattu, Bani,
 15 Bunni, Azgad, Bebay,
 16 Adoni Yah, Bigvay, Adin,
 17 Ater, Yechizqi Yah, Azzur,
 18 Hodi Yah, Hashum, Besay,
 19 Hariph, Anathoth, Nobay,
 20 Magpi Ash, Meshullam, Hezir,
 21 Meshezab El, Sadoq, Yaddua,
 22 Pelat Yah, Hanan, Ana Yah,
 23 Hoshea, Hanan Yah, Hashshub,
 24 Lochesh, Pilcha, Shobeq,
 25 Rechum, Hashabnah, Maase Yah,
 26 and Achiy Yah, Hanan, Anan,
 27 Malluch, Harim, Baanah;

28 and the survivors of the people,
 the priests, the Leviym,
 the porters, the singers, the Dedicates
 and all who separate themselves
 from the people of the lands
 to the torah of Elohim
 — their women, their sons and their daughters,
 every one who knows and discerns;
 29 hold on to their brothers — their mighty

NEHEMIAH 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and entered into a curse, and into an oath **oathed an oath**,
to walk in *God's law* **the torah of Elohim**,
which was given by *Moses* **the hand of Mosheh**
the servant of *God* **Elohim**,
and to observe **guard** and *do work*
all the *commandments* **misvoth**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *Lord* **Adonay**,
and his judgments and his statutes;
30 And that we *would* **should** not give our daughters
unto the people of the land,
nor take their daughters for our sons:
31 And if the people of the land bring *ware* **merchandises**
or any *victuals* **kernels** on the *sabbath* **shabbath** day to sell,
that we *would* **should** not *buy* **take** it of them
on the *sabbath* **shabbath**, or on the holy day:
and that we *would* **should** leave the seventh year,
and the *exaction* **burden** of every *debt* **hand**.
32 Also we *made ordinances* **stood misvoth** for us,
to *charge* **give** ourselves yearly
with the third *part* of a shekel
for the service of the house of our *God* **Elohim**;
33 For the *shewbread* **bread of arrangement**,
and for the continual *meat* offering,
and for the continual *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
of the *sabbaths* **shabbaths**, of the new moons,
for the *set feasts* **festivals**, and for the *holy things* **holies**,
and for the sin *offerings*
to *make an atonement* **kapar/atone** for *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and for all the work of the house of our *God* **Elohim**.
34 And we *cast* **felled** the *lots* **pebbles** among the priests,
the *Levites* **Leviym**, and the people,
for the *wood offering* **qorban of timber**,
to bring it into the house of our *God* **Elohim**,
after the houses of our fathers,
at times appointed year by year,
to burn upon the *sacrifice* altar
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
as it is *written* **inscribed** in the *law* **torah**:
35 And to bring the firstfruits of our *ground* **soil**,
and the firstfruits of all fruit of all trees, year by year,
unto the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
36 Also the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of our sons,
and of our *cattle* **animals**,
as it is *written* **inscribed** in the *law* **torah**,
and the firstlings of our *herds* **oxen** and of our flocks,
to bring to the house of our *God* **Elohim**,
unto the priests that minister
in the house of our *God* **Beth Elohim**:
37 And that we should bring
the *firstfruits* **firstlings** of our dough,
and our *offerings* **exaltments**,
and the fruit of all manner of trees,
of *wine* **juice** and of oil, unto the priests,
to the chambers of the house of our *God* **Elohim**;
and the tithes of our *ground* **soil** unto the *Levites* **Leviym**,
that the *same* *Levites* **Leviym** might have the tithes
in all the cities of our *tillage* **service**.
38 And the priest the son of *Aaron* **Aharon**
shall be with the *Levites* **Leviym**,
when the *Levites* **Leviym** take tithes:
and the *Levites* **Leviym**
shall *bring up* **ascend** the *tithe* of the tithes
unto the house of our *God* **Elohim**,
to the chambers, into the treasure house.
39 For the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
and the *children* **sons** of *Levi*
shall bring the *offering* **exaltment** of the *corn* **crop**,
of the *new wine* **juice**, and the oil, unto the chambers,
where are the *vessels* **instruments** of the *sanctuary* **holies**,
and the priests that minister,
and the porters, and the singers:
and we *will* **shall** not forsake the house of our *God* **Elohim**.

THE SETTLERS OF YERU SHALEM

11 And the *rulers* **governors** of the people
dwelt **settled** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
the *rest* **survivors** of the people
also *cast* *lots* **felled pebbles**,
to bring one of ten
to *dwell* **settle** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** the holy city,

NECHEM YAH 10, 11 810

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and oath an oath to walk in the torah of Elohim
given by the hand of Mosheh the servant of Elohim;
and to guard and work
all the misvoth of Yah Veh our Adonay
and his judgments and his statutes;
30 and neither give our daughters
to the people of the land,
nor take their daughters for our sons:
31 and if the people of the land bring merchandises
or any kernels on the shabbath day to sell,
that we not take it of them
on the shabbath or on the holy day:
and that we leave the seventh year
and the burden of every hand.
32 And we stand misvoth for us,
to give the third of a shekel yearly
for the service of the house of our Elohim
— for the bread of arrangement
and for the continual offering
and for the continual holocaust
of the shabbaths, of the new moons,
for the festivals and for the holies and for the sin
to kapar/atone for Yisra El
and all the work of the house of our Elohim.
34 And we fell the pebbles among the priests,
the Leviym and the people
for the qorban of timber;
to bring to the house of our Elohim,
after the houses of our fathers,
at times appointed year by year,
to burn on the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh our Elohim
as inscribed in the torah:
35 and to bring the firstfruits of our soil
and the firstfruits of all fruit of all trees
year by year, to the house of Yah Veh:
36 and the firstbirthed of our sons and of our animals
as inscribed in the torah;
and to bring
the firstlings of our oxen and of our flocks
to the house of our Elohim
— to the priests who minister
in the house of our Beth Elohim:
37 and bring the firstlings of our dough
and our exaltments
and the fruit of all manner of trees
— of juice and of oil
to the priests
— to the chambers of the house of our Elohim;
and the tithes of our soil to the Leviym,
that the Leviym have the tithes
in all the cities of our service:
38 that the priest the son of Aharon
be with the Leviym
when the Leviym take tithes:
and the Leviym ascend the tithe of the tithes
to the house of our Elohim
— to the chambers — to the treasure house;
39 for the sons of Yisra El and the sons of Levi
bring the exaltment of the crop
of the juice and the oil to the chambers
to the instruments of the holies
— to the priests who minister
and the porters and the singers:
and not forsake the house of our Elohim.

THE SETTLERS OF YERU SHALEM

11 And the governors of the people
settle at Yeru Shalem:
and the survivors of the people fell pebbles,
to bring one of ten
to settle in Yeru Shalem the holy city;

NEHEMIAH 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

2 and nine parts to dwell in hands to other cities.
And the people blessed all the men,
that willingly offered themselves volunteered
to dwell settle at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.

3 Now these are the chief heads of the province jurisdiction
that dwelt settled in Jerusalem Yeru Shalem:
but in the cities of Judah Yah Hudah
dwelt every one settled each man
in his possession in their cities, to wit,
Israel Yisra El, the priests, and the Levites Leviym,
and the Nethinims Dedicates,
and the children sons of Solomon's Shelomoh's servants.

4 And at Jerusalem dwelt Yeru Shalem settled
certain of the children sons of Judah Yah Hudah,
and of the children sons of Benjamin Ben Yamin.
Of the children sons of Judah Yah Hudah;
Athaiah Atha Yah the son of Uzziyah Uzzi Yah,
the son of Zechariah Zechar Yah,
the son of Amariah Amar Yah,
the son of Shephatiah Shaphat Yah,
the son of Mahalaleel Ma Halal El,
of the children sons of Perez Peres;

5 And Maaseiah Maase Yah the son of Baruch,
the son of Colhozeh Kol Hozeh,
the son of Hazaiah Haza Yah,
the son of Adaiah Ada Yah,
the son of Joiarib Yah Yarib,
the son of Zechariah Zechar Yah,
the son of Shilohi Shilohiy.

6 All the sons of Perez Peres
that dwelt settled at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem
were four hundred threescore sixty and eight
valiant men of valour.

7 And these are the sons of Benjamin Ben Yamin;
Sallu the son of Meshullam, the son of Joed Yoed,
the son of Pedaiyah Pedah Yah,
the son of Kolaiah Qola Yah,
the son of Maaseiah Maase Yah,
the son of Ithiel Ithi El,
the son of Jesaiah Yesha Yah.

8 And after him Gabbai Gabbay, Sallai Sallay,
nine hundred twenty and eight.

9 And Joel Yah El the son of Zichri was their overseer:
and Judah Yah Hudah the son of Senuah
was second over the city.

10 Of the priests:
Jedaiah Yeda Yah the son of Joiarib Yah Yarib, Jachin Yachin.

11 Seraiah Sera Yah the son of Hilkiyah Hilqi Yah,
the son of Meshullam,
the son of Zadok Sadoq,
the son of Meraioth Merayoth,
the son of Ahitub Achiy Tub,
was the ruler eminent of the house of God Elohim.

12 And their brethren
that did worked the work of the house
were eight hundred twenty and two:
and Adaiah Ada Yah the son of Jeroham Yerocham,
the son of Pelaliah Pelal Yah,
the son of Amzi Amsi,
the son of Zechariah Zechar Yah,
the son of Pashur Pashchur,
the son of Malchiah Malki Yah.

13 And his brethren, chief heads of the fathers,
two hundred forty and two:
and Amashai Amashsay the son of Azareel Azar El,
the son of Ahasai Ach Zay,
the son of Meshillemoth,
the son of Immer,

14 And their brethren, mighty men of valour,
an hundred twenty and eight:
and their overseer was Zabdiel Zabdi El,
the son of one of the great men.

15 Also of the Levites Leviym:

NECHEM YAH 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

2 and nine hands to other cities:
and the people bless all the men,
who volunteer to settle at Yeru Shalem.

3 And these are the heads of the jurisdiction
who settle in Yeru Shalem:
and in the cities of Yah Hudah
each man settles in his possession in their cities
— Yisra El, the priests and the Leviym
and the Dedicates
and the sons of the servants of Shelomoh.

4 And at Yeru Shalem
some of the sons of Yah Hudah
and of the sons of Ben Yamin settle.

Of the sons of Yah Hudah:
Atha Yah the son of Uzzi Yah
the son of Zechar Yah
the son of Amar Yah
the son of Shaphat Yah
the son of Ma Halal El
of the sons of Peres,
and Maase Yah the son of Baruch
the son of Kol Hozeh
the son of Haza Yah
the son of Ada Yah
the son of Yah Yarib
the son of Zechar Yah
the son of Shilohiy.

6 — all the sons of Peres who settle at Yeru Shalem
— four hundred sixty—eight men of valor.

7 And these are the sons of Ben Yamin:
Sallu the son of Meshullam
the son of Yoed
the son of Pedah Yah
the son of Qola Yah
the son of Maase Yah
the son of Ithi El
the son of Yesha Yah;

8 and after him:
Gabbay, Sallay
— nine hundred twenty—eight;
and Yah El the son of Zichri is their overseer;
and Yah Hudah the son of Senuah
is second over the city.

10 Of the priests:
Yeda Yah the son of Yah Yarib,
Yachin,
Sera Yah the son of Hilqi Yah
the son of Meshullam
the son of Sadoq
the son of Merayoth
the son of Achiy Tub
is the eminent of the house of Elohim;
and their brothers
who work the work of the house
— eight hundred twenty—two;
and Ada Yah the son of Yerocham
the son of Pelal Yah
the son of Amsi
the son of Zechar Yah
the son of Pashchur
the son of Malki Yah;

13 and his brothers, heads of the fathers
— two hundred forty—two:
and Amashsay the son of Azar El
the son of Ach Zay
the son of Meshillemoth
the son of Immer;
and their brothers, mighty of valor
— a hundred twenty—eight:
and their overseer is Zabdi El
the son of the great men;

15 and of the Leviym:

NEHEMIAH 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- Shemaiah **Shema Yah** the son of Hashub **Hashshub**,
the son of Azrikam **Ezri Qam**,
the son of Hashabiah **Hashab Yah**,
the son of Bunni;
16 And **Shabbethai Shabbethay** and **Jozabad Yah Zabad**,
of the chief heads of the Levites **Leviym**,
had the oversight of the outward business **outside work**
of the house of God **Elohim**.
17 And **Mattaniah Mattan Yah** the son of **Micha Michah Yah**,
the son of Zabdi,
the son of Asaph,
was the principal to begin head at the beginning
the thanksgiving in giving spread hands in prayer:
and **Bakbukiah Baqbuk Yah** the second
among his brethren,
and **Abda** the son of **Shammua**,
the son of **Galal**,
the son of **Jeduthun Yeduthun**.
18 All the Levites **Leviym** in the holy city
were two hundred fourscore eighty and four.
19 Moreover the porters, **Akkub Aqqub**, **Talmon**,
and their brethren that kept guarded the gates portals,
were an hundred seventy and two.

THE SETTLERS OF THE CITIES OF YAH HUDAH

- 20 And the residue survivors of Israel **Yisra El**,
of the priests, and the Levites **Leviym**,
were in all the cities of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
every one each man in his inheritance.
21 But the **Nethinims dwelt Dedicates settled** in Ophel:
and **Ziha Sicha** and **Gispa Gishpa**
were over the **Nethinims Dedicates**.
22 The overseer also of the Levites **Leviym**
at Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**
was **Uzzi** the son of **Bani**,
the son of **Hashabiah Hashab Yah**,
the son of **Mattaniah Mattan Yah**,
the son of **Micha Michah Yah**.
Of the sons of **Asaph**,
the singers were over in front of the business work
of the house of God **Elohim**.
23 For it was the king's commandment sovereign's misvah
concerning them,
that a certain portion an amanah should be for the singers,
due for every day a day by day word.
24 And **Pethahiah Pethach Yah**
the son of **Meshezabeel Meshezab El**,
of the children sons of **Zerah Zerach**
the son of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
was at the king's sovereign's hand
in all matters words concerning the people.
25 And for the villages courts, with their fields,
some of the children sons of **Judah Yah Hudah**
dwelt settled at **Kiryatharba Qiryath Arba**,
and in the villages courts thereof,
and at **Dibon**, and in the villages courts thereof,
and at **Jekabzeel Yeqabse El**,
and in the villages courts thereof,
26 And at **Jeshua Yah Shua**,
and at **Moladah**, and at **Bethphelet Beth Palet**,
27 And at **Hazarshual Hasar Shual**,
and at **Beersheba Beer Sheba**,
and in the villages daughters thereof,
28 And at **Ziklag Siqlag**, and at **Mekonah**,
and in the villages daughters thereof,
29 And at **Enrimmon En Rimmon**,
and at **Zareah Sorah**, and at **Jarmuth Yarmuth**,
30 **Zanoah Zanoach**, **Adullam**, and in their villages courts,
at **Lachish**, and the fields thereof,
at **Azekah Azeqah**, and in the villages daughters thereof.
And they dwelt encamped from **Beersheba Beer Sheba**
unto the
valley of **Hinnom Gay Hinnom/Valley of Burning**.
31 And The children also sons of **Benjamin Ben Yamin**
from **Geba**
dwelt at **Michmash**, and **Aija Aya**, and **Bethel Beth El**,
and in their villages daughters.
32 And at **Anathoth**, **Nob**, **Ananiah Anan Yah**,
33 **Hazor Hasor**, **Ramah**, **Gittaim Gittayim**,
34 **Hadid**, **Zeboim Seboim**, **Neballat**,

NECHEM YAH 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- Shema Yah the son of Hashshub
the son of Ezri Qam
the son of Hashab Yah
the son of Bunni;
16 and Shabbethay and Yah Zabad
of the heads of the Leviym
have the oversight of the outside work
of the house of Elohim;
17 and Mattan Yah the son of Michah Yah
the son of Zabdi
the son of Asaph
is the head at the beginning
in giving spread hands in prayer;
and Baqbuk Yah the second among his brothers
and Abda the son of Shammua
the son of Galal
the son of Yeduthun;
18 all the Leviym in the holy city
— two hundred eighty—four;
19 and the porters, Aqqub, Talmon
and their brothers who guard the portals,
— a hundred seventy—two.

THE SETTLERS OF THE CITIES OF YAH HUDAH

- 20 And the survivors of Yisra El
of the priests and the Leviym,
are in all the cities of Yah Hudah
— each man in his inheritance;
21 and the Dedicates settle in Ophel:
and Sicha and Gishpa
are over the Dedicates;
22 and the overseer of the Leviym at Yeru Shalem:
Uzzi the son of **Bani**
the son of **Hashab Yah**
the son of **Mattan Yah**
the son of **Michah Yah**;
of the sons of **Asaph**:
the singers are in front of the work
of the house of Elohim;
23 for the misvah of the sovereign concerning them
is that there be an amanah for the singers
— a day by day word;
24 and **Pethach Yah** the son of **Meshezab El**,
of the sons of **Zerach**
the son of **Yah Hudah**
is at the hand of the sovereign
in all words concerning the people;
25 and for the courts with their fields:
some of the sons of Yah Hudah
settle at **Qiryath Arba** and in its courts;
and at **Dibon** and in its courts;
and at **Yeqabse El** and in its courts;
26 and at **Yah Shua**
and at **Moladah** and at **Beth Palet**
and at **Hasar Shual** and at **Beer Sheba**
and in its daughters;
27 and at **Siqlag** and at **Mekonah**
and in its daughters;
28 and at **En Rimmon**
and at **Sorah** and at **Yarmuth**,
30 **Zanoach**, **Adullam** and its courts;
at **Lachish** and its fields;
at **Azeqah** and in its daughters;
— and they encamp from **Beer Sheba**
to **Gay Hinnom/Valley of Burning**;
31 and the sons of **Ben Yamin**:
from **Geba** at **Michmash** and **Aya** and **Beth El**
and in its daughters;
and at **Anathoth**, **Nob**, **Anan Yah**,
32 **Hasor**, **Ramah**, **Gittayim**,
33 **Hadid**, **Seboim**, **Neballat**,

NEHEMIAH 11, 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

35 Lod, and Ono,
the valley of craftsmen **Gay Harashim/The Valley of Engravers.**
36 And of the Levites **Leviym**
were divisions **allotments** in Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and in Benjamin **Ben Yamin**.

THE PRIESTS AND LEVIYM WHO SETTLE YERU SHALEM

12 Now these are the priests and the Levites **Leviym**
that went up **ascended** with Zerubbabel **Zerub Babel**
the son of Shealtiel **Shealti El**, and Jeshua **Yah Shua**:
Seraiah **Sera Yah**, Jeremiah **Yirme Yah**, Ezra,
2 Amariah **Amar Yah**, Malluch, Hattush,
3 Shechaniah **Shechan Yah**, Rehum **Rechum**, Meremoth,
4 Iddo, Ginnetho, Abijah **Abi Yah**,
5 Miamin **Mi Yamin**, Maadiah **Maad Yah**, Bilgah,
6 Shemaiah **Shema Yah**,
and Joiarib **Yah Yarib**, Jedaiah **Yeda Yah**,
7 Sallu, Amok **Amoq**, Hilkiyah **Hilqi Yah**, Jedaiah **Yeda Yah**.
These were the chief **heads** of the priests
and of their brethren in the days of Jeshua **Yah Shua**.

8 Moreover the Levites **Leviym**:
Jeshua **Yah Shua**, Binnui **Binnuy**, Kadmiel **Qadmi El**,
Sherebiah **Shereb Yah**, Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and Mattaniah **Mattan Yah**,
which was over the *thanksgiving* **choir**,
he and his brethren.
9 Also Bakbukiah **Baqbuk Yah** and Unni, their brethren,
were over against them in the *watches* **guards**.
10 And Jeshua *begat* Joiakim **Yah Shua birthed Yah Yaqim**,
Joiakim **Yah Yaqim** also *begat* Eliashib **birthed El Yashib**,
and Eliashib *begat* Joiada **El Yashib begat birthed Yah Yada**,
11 And Joiada *begat* Jonathan **Yah Yada birthed Yah Nathan**,
and Jonathan *begat* Jaddua **birthed Yah Nathan Yaddua**.

12 And in the days of Joiakim **Yah Yaqim** were priests,
the chief **heads** of the fathers:
of Seraiah **Sera Yah**, Meraiah **Merayah**;
of Jeremiah **Yirme Yah**, Hananiah **Hanan Yah**;
13 Of Ezra, Meshullam;
of Amariah **Amar Yah**, Jehohanan **Yah Hanan**;
14 Of Melicu **Meloochi**, Jonathan **Yah Nathan**;
of Shebaniah **Sheban Yah**, Joseph **Yoseph**;
15 Of Harim, Adna;
of Meraioth **Merayoth**, Helkai **Helqai**;
16 Of Iddo, Zechariah **Zechar Yah**;
of Ginnethon, Meshullam;
17 Of Abijah **Abi Yah**, Zichri;
of Miniamin **Min Yamin**, of Moadiah **Moad Yah**,
Piltai **Piltay**:
18 Of Bilgah, Shammua;
of Shemaiah **Shema Yah**, Jehonathan **Yah Nathan**;
19 And of Joiarib **Yah Yarib**, Mattenai **Mattenay**;
of Jedaiah **Yeda Yah**, Uzzi;
20 Of Sallai **Sallay**, Kallai **Qallay**;
of Amok **Amoq**, Eber **Heber**;

21 Of Hilkiyah **Hilqi Yah**, Hashabiah **Hashab Yah**;
of Jedaiah **Yeda Yah**, Nethaneel **Nethan El**.
22 The Levites **Leviym** in the days of Eliashib **El Yashib**,
Joiada **Yah Yada**,
and Johanan **Yah An**, and Jaddua **Yaddua**,
were recorded chief **inscribed heads** of the fathers:
also the priests,
to the reign **sovereigndom** of Darius **Daryavesh**
the Persian.

23 The sons of Levi, the chief **heads** of the fathers,
were written **inscribed** in the book **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**,
even until the days of Johanan **Yah Hanan**
the son of Eliashib **El Yashib**.

24 And the chief **heads** of the Levites **Leviym**:
Hashabiah **Hashab Yah**, Sherebiah **Shereb Yah**,
and Jeshua **Yah Shua** the son of Kadmiel **Qadmi El**,
with their brethren over against them,
to praise **halal** and to give *thanks* **spread hands**,
according to the *commandment* **misvah** of David
the man of God **Elohim**,
ward over against ward **underguard by underguard**.
25 Mattaniah **Mattan Yah**, and Bakbukiah **Baqbuk Yah**,
Obadiah **Obad Yah**, Meshullam, Talmon, Akkub **Aqqub**,
were porters *keeping* **guarding** the ward **underguard**
at the *thresholds* **gatherings** of the gates **portals**.

NECHEM YAH 11, 12 813

exeGeses companion BIBLE

35 Lod and Ono,
Gay Harashim/The Valley of Engravers;
36 and of the Leviym:
allotments in Yah Hudah and in Ben Yamin.

THE PRIESTS AND LEVIYM WHO SETTLE YERU SHALEM

12 And these are the priests and the Leviym
who ascend with Zerub Babel
the son of Shealti El and Yah Shua:
Sera Yah, Yirme Yah, Ezra,
2 Amar Yah, Malluch, Hattush,
3 Shechan Yah, Rechum, Meremoth,
4 Iddo, Ginnetho, Abi Yah,
5 Mi Yamin, Maad Yah, Bilgah,
6 Shema Yah and Yah Yarib, Yeda Yah,
7 Sallu, Amoq, Hilqi Yah, Yeda Yah
— these are the heads of the priests
and of their brothers in the days of Yah Shua.

8 And the Leviym:
Yah Shua, Binnuy, Qadmi El, Shereb Yah, Yah Hudah
and Mattan Yah who are over the choir
— he and his brothers;
9 and Baqbuk Yah and Unni, their brothers,
are opposite them in the guards.

10 And Yah Shua births Yah Yaqim
and Yah Yaqim births El Yashib
and El Yashib births Yah Yada
and Yah Yada births Yah Nathan
and Yah Nathan births Yaddua.

12 And in the days of Yah Yaqim are priests
the heads of the fathers:
of Sera Yah, Merayah;
of Yirme Yah, Hanan Yah;
13 of Ezra, Meshullam;
of Amar Yah, Yah Hanan;
14 of Meloochi, Yah Nathan;
of Sheban Yah, Yoseph;
15 of Harim, Adna;
of Merayoth, Helqai;
16 of Iddo, Zechar Yah;
of Ginnethon, Meshullam;
17 of Abi Yah, Zichri;
of Min Yamin of Moad Yah, Piltay;
18 of Bilgah, Shammua;
of Shema Yah, Yah Nathan;
19 and of Yah Yarib, Mattenay;
of Yeda Yah, Uzzi;
20 of Sallay, Qallay;
of Amoq, Heber;
21 of Hilqi Yah, Hashab Yah;
of Yeda Yah, Nethan El.

22 The Leviym in the days of El Yashib:
Yah Yada and Yah An and Yaddua
are inscribed heads of the fathers and of the priests
to the sovereigndom of Daryavesh the Persian.

23 The sons of Levi, the heads of the fathers,
are inscribed in the scroll of the words of the days,
even until the days
of Yah Hanan the son of El Yashib.

24 And the head of the Leviym:
Hashab Yah, Shereb Yah
and Yah Shua the son of Qadmi El
with their brothers opposite them
— to halal and to spread hands
according to the misvah of David the man of Elohim
— underguard by underguard.

25 Mattan Yah and Baqbuk Yah,
Obad Yah, Meshullam, Talmon, Aqqub
are porters guarding the underguard
at the gatherings of the portals.

NEHEMIAH 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

26 These were in the days of **Joiakim Yah Yaqim**
the son of **Jeshua Yah Shua**, the son of **Jozadak Yah Sadaq**,
and in the days of **Nehemiah Nechem Yah** the governor,
and of **Ezra** the priest, the scribe.
HANUKKAH OF THE WALL OF YERU SHALEM

27 And at the *dedication* **hanukkah**
of the wall of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
they sought the *Levites* **Leviym** out of all their places,
to bring them to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
to keep **work** the *dedication* **hanukkah**
with *gladness* **cheer**,
both with *thanksgivings* **spread hands**, and with singing,
with cymbals, *psalteries* **bagpipes**, and with harps.

28 And the sons of the singers
gathered *themselves together*,
both out of the *plain country* **environs of the land**
round about *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and from the *villages* **courts** of Netophathi;
29 Also from the house of *Gilgal* **Hag Gilgal**,
and out of the fields of Geba and Azmaveth:
for the singers had builded them *villages* **courts**
round about *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

30 And the priests and the *Levites* **Leviym**
purified themselves,
and purified the people,
and the *gates* **portals**, and the wall.

31 Then I *brought up* **ascended**
the *princes* **governors** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** upon the wall,
and *appointed* **stood** two great
companies of them that gave thanks **spreaders of hands**,
whereof one went
— **processions** on the right *hand* upon the wall
toward the *dung gate* **dunghill portal**:

32 And after them went *Hoshaiah* **Hosha Yah**,
and half of the *princes* **governors** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
33 And *Azariah* **Azar Yah**, *Ezra*, and *Meshullam*,
34 *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
and *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**, and *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
35 And *certain* of the priests' sons with trumpets; *namely*,
Zechariah **Zechar Yah** the son of *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**,
the son of *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**,
the son of *Mattaniah* **Mattan Yah**,
the son of *Michaiah* **Michah Yah**,
the son of *Zaccur* **Zakkur**,
the son of *Asaph*:
36 And his brethren,
Shemaiah **Shema Yah**, and *Azrael* **Azar El**,
Milalai **Milalay**, *Gilalai* **Gilalay**,
Maaï, *Nethaneel* **Nethan El**,
and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, *Hanani*,
with the *musical instruments* **instruments of song**
of *David* the man of *God* **Elohim**,
and *Ezra* the scribe *before them* **at their face**.

37 And at the fountain *gate* **portal**,
which was over against them,
they *went up* **ascended**
by the *stairs* **steps** of the city of *David*,
at the *going up* **ascent** of the wall,
above the house of *David*,
even unto the water *gate* **portal**
eastward **toward the rising**.

38 And the *other* **second**
company of them that gave thanks **spreaders of hands**
went *over against* **opposite** them, and I after them,
and the half of the people upon the wall,
from beyond the tower of the furnaces
even unto the broad wall;

39 And from above the *gate* **portal** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
and above the old *gate* **portal**,
and above the fish *gate* **portal**,
and the tower of *Hananeel* **Hanan El**,
and the tower of *Meah*,
even unto the *sheep gate* **flock portal**:
and they stood still in the *prison gate* **guard yard portal**.

40 So stood the two
companies of them that gave thanks **spreaders of hands**
in the house of *God* **Elohim**,
and I, and the half of the *rulers* **prefects** with me:
41 And the priests;

NECHEM YAH 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

26 These are in the days of **Yah Yaqim**
the son of **Yah Shua** the son of **Yah Sadaq**
and in the days of **Nechem Yah** the governor
and of **Ezra** the priest the scribe.
HANUKKAH OF THE WALL OF YERU SHALEM

27 And at the hanukkah of the wall of *Yeru Shalem*
they seek the *Leviym* from all their places
to bring them to *Yeru Shalem*,
to work the hanukkah with cheer
— both with spread hands and with singing,
with cymbals, bagpipes and with harps:
28 and the sons of the singers gather
— both from the environs of the land
all around *Yeru Shalem*
and from the courts of *Netophathi*;
29 and from the house of *Hag Gilgal*
and from the fields of *Geba* and *Azmaveth*:
for the singers build courts all around *Yeru Shalem*:
30 and the priests and the *Leviym* purify themselves
and purify the people and the portals and the wall.

31 And I ascend the governors of *Yah Hudah*
on the wall;
and stand two great spreaders of hands
— processions on the right on the wall
toward the dunghill portal:
and after them goes *Hosha Yah*
and half of the governors of *Yah Hudah*
32 and *Azar Yah*, *Ezra* and *Meshullam*,
33 *Yah Hudah* and *Ben Yamin*
34 and *Shema Yah* and *Yirme Yah*;
35 and of the sons of the priests with trumpets:
Zechar Yah the son of *Yah Nathan*
the son of *Shema Yah*
the son of *Mattan Yah*
the son of *Michah Yah*
the son of *Zakkur*
the son of *Asaph*;
36 and his brothers:
Shema Yah and *Azar El*, *Milalay*, *Gilalay*,
Maaï, *Nethan El* and *Yah Hudah*, *Hanani*,
with instruments of song of *David* the man of *Elohim*
and *Ezra* the scribe at their face;
37 and at the fountain portal opposite them,
they ascend by the steps of the city of *David*
at the ascent of the wall above the house of *David*
— even to the water portal toward the rising.

38 And the second spreaders of hands
go opposite them — and I after them;
and the half of the people on the wall
from beyond the tower of the furnaces
even to the broad wall;

39 and from above the portal of *Ephrayim*
and above the old portal and above the fish portal
and the tower of *Hanan El* and the tower of *Meah*
— even to the flock portal;
and they stand still in the guard yard portal.

40 And the two spreaders of hands
stand in the house of *Elohim*
and I and the half of the prefects with me;
41 and the priests:

NEHEMIAH 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

*Eliakim El Yaqim, Maaseiah Maase Yah,
Miniamin Min Yamin, Michaiah Michah Yah,
Elioenai El Ya Enay, Zechariah Zechar Yah,
and Hananiah Hanan Yah, with trumpets;*
42 And *Maaseiah Maase Yah, and Shemaiah Shema Yah,
and Eleazar El Azar, and Uzzi,
and Jehohanan Yah Hanan, and Malchijah Malki Yah,
and Elam, and Ezer.*

And the singers sang loud **voiced to be heard,**
with *Jezrahiah Yizrach Yah* their overseer.
43 Also that day they offered **sacrificed** great sacrifices,
and rejoiced **cheered:**
for *God Elohim*
had made them rejoice **cheer** with great joy **cheer:**
the wives **women** also and the children rejoiced **cheered:**
so that the joy **cheer** of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
was heard even afar off.

44 And at that time **day**
were some appointed over **men to oversee** the chambers
for the treasures, for the offerings **exaltments,**
for the *firstfruits firstlings,* and for the tithes,
to gather into them out of the fields of the cities
the portions **allotments** of the law **torah**
for the priests and *Levites Leviym:*
for *Judah rejoiced the cheer of Yah Hudah* for the priests
and for the *Levites Leviym* that waited **stood.**

45 And both the singers and the porters
kept **guarded** the ward **guard** of their *God Elohim,*
and the ward **guard** of the purification,
according to the commandment of David,
and of *Solomon Shelomoh* his son.

46 For in the days of David and Asaph of *old antiquity*
there were *chief heads* of the singers,
and songs of praise **halal** and *thanksgiving spread hands*
unto *God Elohim.*

47 And all *Israel Yisra El*
in the days of *Zerubbabel Zerub Babel*
and in the days of *Nehemiah Nechem Yah,*
gave the portions **allotments** of the singers and the porters,
every day day by day his portion **word:**
and they sanctified *holy things hallowed*
unto the *Levites Leviym;*
and the *Levites sanctified Leviym hallowed* them
unto the children **sons** of *Aaron Aharon.*

MONGRELS SEPARATED FROM YISRA EL

13 On that day they read **called out**
in the book **scroll** of *Moses Mosheh*
in the audience **ears** of the people;
and therein was found written **inscribed**
that the *Ammonite Ammoniy* and the *Moabite Moabiy*
should not come into the congregation of *God Elohim*
for ever **eternally;**

2 Because they met **anticipated** not
the children **sons** of *Israel Yisra El*
with bread and with water,
but hired *Balaam Bilam* against them,
that he should **curse abase** them:
howbeit our God Elohim
turned the **curse abasement** into a blessing.

3 Now **And so be** it came to pass,
when they had heard the law **torah,**
that they separated from *Israel Yisra El*
all the *mixed multitude mongrels.*

4 And before **at the face** of this,
Eliashib El Yashib the priest,
having given the oversight of the chamber
of the house of our *God Elohim,*
was allied **near** unto *Tobiah Tobi Yah:*

5 And he had prepared **worked** for him a great chamber,
where *afortime formerly*
they laid **gave** the meat offerings,
the frankincense, and the vessels **instruments,**
and the tithes of the corn **crop,**
the new wine **juice,** and the oil,
which was commanded to be given **the misvah**
to of the *Levites Leviym,* and the singers, and the porters;
and the offerings **exaltments** of the priests.

6 But in all this time was not I at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem:*
for in the two and thirtieth year

NECHEM YAH 12, 13 815

exeGesés companion BIBLE

*El Yaqim, Maase Yah, Min Yamin, Michah Yah,
El Ya Enay, Zechar Yah and Hanan Yah*
with trumpets;
42 and *Maase Yah and Shema Yah and El Azar
and Uzzi and Yah Hanan and Malki Yah
and Elam and Ezer;*
and the singers voice to be heard,
with *Yizrach Yah* their overseer.

43 And that day
they sacrifice great sacrifices and cheer:
for *Elohim* cheers them with great cheer:
and also the women and the children cheer:
so that the cheer of *Yeru Shalem* is heard afar off.

44 And at that day,
men oversee the chambers for the treasures,
for the exaltments, for the firstlings and for the tithes
— to gather into them from the fields of the cities
the allotments of the torah for the priests and *Leviym:*
for the cheer of *Yah Hudah* for the priests
and for the *Leviym* who stand.

45 And both the singers and the porters
guard the guard of their *Elohim*
and the guard of the purification
according to the commandment of David
and of *Shelomoh* his son;
46 for in the days of David and *Asaph* of antiquity
there are heads of the singers
and songs of *halal* and spread hands to *Elohim.*

47 And all *Yisra El*
in the days of *Zerub Babel*
and in the days of *Nechem Yah*
give the allotments of the singers and the porters
— his day by day **word:**
and they hallow to the *Leviym;*
and the *Leviym* hallow to the sons of *Aharon.*

MONGRELS SEPARATED FROM YISRA EL

13 On that day,
they call out in the scroll of *Mosheh*
in the ears of the people;
and they find inscribed therein
that the *Ammoniy* and the *Moabiy*
are not to come into the congregation of *Elohim*
eternally;
2 because they anticipated not the sons of *Yisra El*
with bread and with water;
but hired *Bilam* against them to abase them:
and our *Elohim* turns the abasement into a blessing.

3 And so be it, when they hear the torah,
they separate all the mongrels from *Yisra El:*
4 and at the face of this,
El Yashib the priest gives the oversight
of the chamber of the house of our *Elohim*
to one near to *Tobi Yah:*
5 and he works himself a great chamber
where they formerly gave the offerings
— the frankincense and the instruments
and the tithes of the crop
— the juice and the oil
the *misvah* of the *Leviym*
and the singers and the porters;
and the exaltments of the priests.

6 And in all this, I am not at *Yeru Shalem:*
for in the thirty—second year

NEHEMIAH 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

of Artaxerxes Artach Shashta
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
came I unto the **king sovereign**,
and after certain **at the end of** days
obtained I leave I **asked** of the **king sovereign**:
7 And I came to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and understood **discerned** of the evil
that *Eliashib* did **El Yashib worked**
for *Tobiah* **unto Tobi Yah**,
in preparing **working** him a chamber
in the courts of the house of *God* **Elohim**.
8 And it *grieved me sore* **was mighty evil to me**:
therefore I cast forth all the household **stuff instruments**
to *Tobiah* **Tobi Yah** out of the chamber.
9 Then I *commanded* **said**,
and they *cleansed* **purified** the chambers:
and thither brought I again
the *vessels* **instruments** of the house of *God* **Elohim**,
with the *meat* offering and the frankincense.
10 And I perceived
that the *portions* **allotments** of the *Levites* **Leviym**
had not been given them:
for the *Levites* **Leviym** and the singers,
that *did* **worked** the work,
were fled *every one* **each man** to his field.
11 Then contended I with the *rulers* **prefects**, and said,
Why is the house of *God* **Elohim** forsaken?
And I gathered them *together*,
and set **stood** them in their *place* **station**.
12 Then brought all *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
the tithe of the *corn* **crop**
and the *new wine* **juice** and the oil unto the treasuries.
13 And I made treasurers over the treasuries,
Shelemiah **Shelem Yah** the priest,
and *Zadok* **Sadoq** the scribe,
and of the *Levites* **Leviym**, *Pedaiah* **Pedah Yah**:
and next to them **at their hand** was Hanan
the son of *Zaccur* **Zakkur**,
the son of *Mattaniah* **Mattan Yah**:
for they were *counted faithful* **fabricated amenable**,
and their office was to *distribute* **allot** unto their brethren.
14 Remember me, O my *God* **Elohim**, concerning this,
and wipe not out my *good deeds* **mercies**
that I have *done* **worked** for the house of my *God* **Elohim**,
and for the *offices* **underguard** thereof.
15 In those days saw I in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
some treading wine presses on the *sabbath* **shabbath**,
and bringing in *sheaves* **heaps**, and lading asses **he burros**;
as also wine, grapes, and figs, and all *manner of* burdens,
which they brought into *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
on the *sabbath* **shabbath** day:
and I *testified against them* **witnessed**
in the day wherein they sold *victuals* **hunt**.
16 There *dwelt men of Tyre* **settled the Soriy** also therein,
which brought fish, and all manner of *ware* **price**,
and sold on the *sabbath* **shabbath**
unto the *children* **sons of Judah** **Yah Hudah**,
and in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
17 Then I contended with the nobles of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and said unto them,
What evil *thing* **word** is this that ye *do* **work**,
and profane the *sabbath* **shabbath** day?
18 *Did* **Worked** not your fathers thus,
and did not our *God* **Elohim** bring all this evil upon us,
and upon this city?
yet ye *bring more wrath* **add fuming** upon *Israel* **Yisra El**
by profaning the *sabbath* **shabbath**.
19 And **so be** it came to pass,
that when the *gates* **portals of Jerusalem** **Yeru Shalem**
began to be *dark* **overshadow**
before **at the face of** the *sabbath* **shabbath**,
I *commanded* **said** that the gates should be shut,
and *charged* **said** that they should not be opened
till after the *sabbath* **shabbath**:
and some of my *servants* **lads**
set **stood** I at the *gates* **portals**,
that there should no burden be brought in
on the *sabbath* **shabbath** day.
20 So the merchants and sellers of all *kind of* **ware** **sold**

NECHEM YAH 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

of Artach Shashta sovereign of Babel
I come to the sovereign;
and at the end of days I ask of the sovereign:
7 and I come to Yeru Shalem
and discern the evil El Yashib works to Tobi Yah
— in working him a chamber
in the courts of the house of Elohim:
and it is mighty evil to me:
8 and I cast out all the household instruments
to Tobi Yah from the chamber.
9 Then I say
— and they purify the chambers:
and I bring again
the instruments of the house of Elohim
with the offering and the frankincense:
10 and I perceive that the allotments of the Leviym
have not been given them:
for the Leviym and the singers who work the work
flee — each man to his field.
11 Then I contend with the prefects and say,
Why is the house of Elohim forsaken?
— and I gather them and stand them in their station.
12 And all Yah Hudah brings the tithe of the crop
and the juice and the oil to the treasuries.
13 And treasurers over the treasuries:
Shelem Yah the priest and Sadoq the scribe
and Pedah Yah of the Leviym;
and at their hand:
Hanan the son of Zakkur the son of Mattan Yah;
for they are fabricated as amenable
and their office is to allot to their brothers.
14 Remember me, O my Elohim, concerning this;
and wipe not out
the mercies I worked for the house of my Elohim
and for its underguard.
15 In those days in Yah Hudah
I see them treading wine presses on the shabbath
— and bringing in heaps and lading he burros
and also wine, grapes and figs and all the burdens
they bring into Yeru Shalem on the shabbath day:
and I witness the day they sell hunt:
and the Soriy settle therein
bringing fish and all manner of price
and sell on the shabbath to the sons of Yah Hudah
and in Yeru Shalem.
16 And I contend with the nobles of Yah Hudah
and say to them,
What evil word is this
that you work and profane the shabbath day?
17 Worked not your fathers thus
and brought not our Elohim all this evil on us
and on this city?
And you add fuming on Yisra El
by profaning the shabbath.
18 And so be it,
the portals of Yeru Shalem
begin to overshadow at the face of the shabbath,
and I say to shut the gates
and say to not open until after the shabbath:
and I stand my lads at the portals,
that no burden is brought in on the shabbath day.
20 And the merchants and sellers of all sales

NEHEMIAH 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

lodge **stayed overnight** without Jerusalem Yeru Shalem
once **one time** or twice.

21 Then I testified **witnessed** against them,
and said unto them,
Why lodge **stay ye overnight** about **over** against the wall?
if ye do so again **repeat**,
I will lay **shall spread** hands on you.
From that time forth
came they *no more* **not** on the sabbath **shabbath**.

22 And I commanded **said to** the Levites **Leviym**
that they should *cleanse* **purify themselves**,
and that they should come
and *keep* **guard** the gates **portals**,
to sanctify **hallow** the sabbath **shabbath** day.
Remember me, O my God **Elohim**, concerning this also,
and spare me according to the greatness of thy mercy.

23 In those days also saw I Jews **Yah Hudiym** that had
married wives **settled with women** of Ashdod **Ashdodiy**,
of Ammon **Ammoniy**, and of Moab **Moabiy**:

24 And their *children* **sons**
spake **worded** half in the speech of Ashdod,
and *could* **recognized** not
speak to word in the Jews' language **Yah Hudaic**,
but according to the language of *each* people **by people**.

25 And I contended with them, and *cursed* **abased** them,
and smote *certain* **men** of them,
and *plucked off their hair* **baldened them**,
and made them *swear* **oath** by God **Elohim**, saying,
ye shall not give your daughters unto their sons,
nor *take* **bear** their daughters unto your sons,
or for yourselves.

26 Did not Solomon **Shelomoh**,
king sovereign of Israel **Yisra El** sin by these things?
yet among many *nations* **goyim**
was there no *king* **sovereign** like him,
who was beloved of his God **Elohim**,
and God made **Elohim** gave him
king sovereign over all Israel **Yisra El**:
nevertheless even him
did *outlandish* **strange** women cause to sin.

27 Shall we then hearken unto you
to do **work** all this great evil,
to *transgress* **treason** against our God **Elohim**
in *marrying* **settling with** strange wives **women**?

28 And *one* of the sons of Joiada **Yah Yada**,
the son of *Eliashib* **El Yashib** the *high* **great** priest,
was son in law to Sanballat the *Horonite* **Horoniy**:
therefore I *chased* **fled** him from me.

29 Remember them, O my God **Elohim**,
because they have *defiled* **profaned** the priesthood,
and the covenant of the priesthood,
and of the Levites **Leviym**.

30 Thus *cleansed* **purified** I them from all strangers,
and *appointed* **stationed** the wards **guards**
of the priests and the Levites **Leviym**,
every one **each man** in his *business* **work**;

31 And for the *wood offering* **qorban of timber**,
at times appointed, and for the *firstfruits* **firstlings**.
Remember me, O my God **Elohim**, for good.

NECHEM YAH 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

stay overnight outside Yeru Shalem
one time or twice.

21 And I witness against them and say to them,
Why stay you overnight opposite the wall?
If you repeat, I spread hands on you.
— from that time they come not on the shabbath.

22 And I say to the Leviym to purify
and to come and guard the portals
to hallow the shabbath day.

Remember me, O my Elohim, this also;
and spare me
according to the greatness of your mercy.

23 Also in those days
I see that the Yah Hudiym settle with women
of Ashdodiy, of Ammoniy and of Moabiy:
and their sons word half in the speech of Ashdod
and recognize not to word in Yah Hudaic,
but according to the language of people by people.

25 And I contend with them and abase them
and smite men of them and balden them
and have them oath by Elohim, saying,
Neither give your daughters to their sons
nor bear their daughters to your sons
or for yourselves.

26 Shelomoh sovereign of Yisra El
— sinned he not by these?
Yet among many goyim
there is no sovereign like him
— beloved of his Elohim;
and Elohim gave him sovereign over all Yisra El:
and strange women caused even him to sin.

27 And hearken we to you to work all this great evil
— to treason against our Elohim
in settling with strange women?

28 And of the sons of Yah Yada,
the son of El Yashib the great priest
is son in law to Sanballat the Horoniy:
and I flee him from me.

29 Remember them, O my Elohim,
because they profane the priesthood
and the covenant of the priesthood and of the Leviym.

30 Thus I purify them from all strangers
and station the guards of the priests and the Leviym
— each man in his work;
and for the qorban of timber,
at times appointed, and for the firstlings.

Remember me, O my Elohim, for good.

RUTH 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

RUTH AND NOOMIY

1 Now it came to pass **And so be it**,
in the days when the judges **ruled judged**,
that there was a famine in the land.
And a *certain* man
of *Bethlehemjudah* **Beth Lechem Yah Hudah**
went to sojourn in the *country* **fields** of Moab,
he, and his *wife* **woman**, and his two sons.
2 And the name of the man was *Elimelech* **Eli Melech**,
and the name of his *wife* **Naomi woman Noomiy**,
and the name of his two sons
Mahlon **Machlon** and *Chilion* **Kilyon**,
Ephrathites **Ephrathiyim**
of *Bethlehemjudah* **Beth Lechem Yah Hudah**.
And they came into the *country* **fields** of Moab,
and continued there.
3 And *Elimelech* **Eli Melech**
Naomi's husband **Noomiy's man** died;
and she was **left survived**, and her two sons.
4 And they **took them wives of the bore** women of Moab:
the name of the one was Orpah,
and the name of the *other* **second** Ruth:
and they **dwelled settled** there about ten years.
5 And *Mahlon* **Machlon** and *Chilion* **Kilyon**
died also both of them;
and the woman was **left survived**
of her two *sons* **children** and her *husband* **man**.
6 Then she arose with her daughters in law,
that she might return from the *country* **fields** of Moab:
for she had heard in the *country* **fields** of Moab
how that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had visited his people
in giving them bread.
7 Wherefore she went forth
out of the place where she was,
and her two daughters in law with her;
and they went on the way
to return unto the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
8 And *Naomi* **Noomiy**
said unto her two daughters in law,
Go, return each **woman** to her mother's house:
the LORD **deal kindly Yah Veh work mercy** with you,
as ye have **dealt worked** with the dead, and with me.
9 *The LORD* **grant Yah Veh give** you
that ye may find rest,
each of you **woman** in the house of her *husband* **man**.
Then she kissed them;
and they lifted up their voice, and wept.
10 And they said unto her,
Surely we **will shall** return with thee unto thy people.
11 And *Naomi* **Noomiy** said,
Turn **again back**, my daughters:
why **will shall** ye go with me?
are there yet *any more* sons in my *womb* **inwards**,
that they may be your *husbands* **men**?
12 Turn **again back**, my daughters, go *your way*;
for I am too old to have *an husband* **a man**.
If I should say, I have hope,
if I should have *an husband* **a man** also to night,
and should also **bear birth** sons;
13 **Would Should** ye **tarry for** **await** them
till they were grown?
would should ye **stay for** **ban** them
from having *husbands* **men**?
nay, my daughters;
for it **grieveth embittereth** me **much mightily**
for your sakes
that the hand of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
is gone **out** against me.
14 And they lifted up their voice, and wept again:
and Orpah kissed her mother in law;
but Ruth **clave adhered** unto her.
15 And she said, Behold,
thy sister in law is **gone back returned** unto her people,
and unto her *gods* **elohim**:
return thou after thy sister in law.
16 And Ruth said, *Intreat* **Intercede** me not to leave thee,
or to return from following after thee:
for whither thou goest, I **will shall** go;

RUTH 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

RUTH AND NOOMIY

1 And so be it,
in the days the judges judge,
a famine is in the land.
And a man of Beth Lechem Yah Hudah
goes to sojourn in the fields of Moab;
he and his woman and his two sons.
2 And the name of the man, Eli Melech
and the name of his woman, Noomiy
— Ephrathiyim of Beth Lechem Yah Hudah.
And they come into the fields of Moab
and continue there.
3 And Eli Melech, the man of Noomiy dies;
and she and her two sons survive.
4 And they birth women of Moab;
the name of the one, Orpah
and the name of the second, Ruth;
and they settle there about ten years.
5 And both Machlon and Kilyon also die;
and the woman survives
her two children and her man.
6 And she rises with her daughters in law,
to return from the fields of Moab:
for she heard
that Yah Veh visits his people in the fields of Moab
in giving them bread.
7 So she goes with her two daughters in law
from the place she was;
and they go on the way
to return to the land of Yah Hudah.
8 And Noomiy says to her two daughters in law,
Go, each woman,
return to the house of your mother;
Yah Veh work mercy with you,
as you worked with the dead and with me.
9 Yah Veh give you to find rest,
each woman in the house of her man.
— and she kisses them.
And they lift their voice and weep
and say to her,
10 Surely we return with you to your people.
11 And Noomiy says,
Turn back, my daughters! Why go with me?
Are there yet sons in my inwards to be your men?
12 Turn back, my daughters! Go!
For I am too old to have a man.
If I say, I have hope,
and even have a man tonight and even birth sons
— await you them until they be grown?
— ban yourselves from having men?
13 No, my daughters;
for it embitters me mightily for your sakes
that the hand of Yah Veh goes against me.
14 And they lift their voice and weep again;
and Orpah kisses her mother in law;
and Ruth adheres to her;
15 and says, Behold,
your sister in law returns to her people
and to her elohim;
you return after your sister in law.
16 And Ruth says, Intercede not that I leave you,
or return from following after you;
for where you go, I go;

RUTH 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and where thou *lodgest* **stayest overnight**,
I will lodge **shall stay overnight**:
thy people shall be my people,
and thy *God* **Elohim** my *God* **Elohim**:
17 Where thou diest, *will* **shall** I die,
and there *will* **shall** I be *buried* **entombed**:
the LORD do so **Yah Veh work** to me, and *more add* also,
if ought but death *part* **separate** thee and me.
18 When she saw that she
was stedfastly minded **strengthened herself**
to go with her,
then she *left speaking* **ceased wording** unto her.
19 So they two went
until they came to *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**.
And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when they were come to *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**,
that all the city *was moved* **quaked** about them,
and they said, Is this *Naomi* **Noomiy**?
20 And she said unto them, Call me not *Naomi* **Noomiy**,
call me *Mara* **Bitter**:
for the Almighty **Shadday**
hath *dealt very bitterly with* **mightily embittered** me.
21 I went out full
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *brought me home again empty* **turned me back**:
why then call ye me *Naomi* **Noomiy**,
seeing *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *testified* **answered** against me,
and *the Almighty* **Shadday** hath *afflicted* **vilified** me?
22 So *Naomi* **Noomiy** returned,
and Ruth the *Moabitess* **Moabiyth**, her daughter in law,
with her,
which returned out of the *country* **fields** of Moab:
and they came to *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**
in the beginning of barley harvest.

RUTH AND BOAZ

2 And *Naomi* **Noomiy** had a *kinsman* **kin**
of her *husband's* **man**,
a mighty man of *wealth* **valuables**,
of the family of *Elimelech* **Eli Melech**;
and his name was Boaz.
2 And Ruth the *Moabitess* **Moabiyth**
said unto *Naomi* **Noomiy**,
Let me now go to the field,
and glean ears of *corn* after him
in whose *sight* **eyes** I shall find *grace* **charism**.
And she said unto her, Go, my daughter.
3 And she went, and came,
and gleaned in the field after the *reapers* **harvesters**:
and her *hap* was **happening happened** to light
on a *part* **an allotment** of the field *belonging* unto Boaz,
who was of the *kindred* **family** of *Elimelech* **Eli Melech**.
4 And, behold, Boaz came from *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**,
and said unto the *reapers* **harvesters**,
The LORD **Yah Veh** be with you.
And they *answered* **said** to him,
The LORD **Yah Veh** bless thee.
5 Then said Boaz unto his *servant* **lad**
that was *set* **stationed** over the *reapers* **harvesters**,
Whose *damsel* **lass** is this?
6 And the *servant* **lad**
that was *set* **stationed** over the *reapers* **harvesters**
answered and said,
It is the Moabitish *damsel* **lass**
that *came back* **returned** with *Naomi* **Noomiy**
out of the *country* **fields** of Moab:
7 And she said, I *pray* **beseech** you,
let me glean and gather after the *reapers* **harvesters**
among the *sheaves* **omers**:
so she came, and hath *continued* **stayed**
even from the morning until now,
that she *tarried* **settled** a little in the house.
8 Then said Boaz unto Ruth,
Hearest thou not, my daughter?
Go not to glean in another field,
neither *go* **pass** from hence,
but *abide* **adhere** here *fast* by my *maidens* **lasses**:
9 Let thine eyes be on the field that they do *reap* **harvest**,

RUTH 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and where you stay overnight, I stay overnight;
your people *are* my people
and your Elohim, my Elohim;
17 where you die, I die and there I entomb;
Yah Veh work to me and add also,
if aught but death separate you and me.

18 And she sees
that she strengthens herself to go with her;
and she ceases wording to her.
19 And the two go until they come to Beth Lechem.

And so be it,
they come to Beth Lechem,
and the whole city quakes about them
and they say, Is this Noomiy?

20 And she says to them,
Call me not Noomiy/Pleasant; call me Bitter;
for Shadday has mightily embittered me.

21 I go out full
and Yah Veh turns me back.
Why call me Noomiy,
seeing Yah Veh answers against me
and Shadday vilifies me?

22 And Noomiy returns
with her daughter in law, Ruth the Moabiyth
who return from the fields of Moab;
and they come to Beth Lechem
in the beginning of barley harvest.

RUTH AND BOAZ

2 And Noomiy has a kin of her man;
a mighty man of valuables
of the family of Eli Melech;
and his name, Boaz.

2 And Ruth the Moabiyth says to Noomiy,
Let me go, I beseech, to the field
and glean ears after him
in whose eyes I find charism.

And she says to her, Go, my daughter.

3 And she goes
and comes and gleans in the field
after the harvesters;
and her happening
happens to light on an allotment of the field to Boaz
of the family of Eli Melech.

4 And, behold, Boaz comes from Beth Lechem
and says to the harvesters,
Yah Veh be with you.

And they say to him, Yah Veh bless you.

5 Then Boaz says to his lad
who is stationed over the harvesters,
Whose lass is this?

6 And the lad stationed over the harvesters
answers and says,
The Moabitish lass who returned with Noomiy
from the fields of Moab;
7 and she says, I beseech you,
let me glean and gather after the harvesters
among the omers;
so she comes and stays
from the morning until now,
and settles a little in the house.

8 And Boaz says to Ruth,
Hear you not, my daughter?
Neither go to glean in another field,
nor pass from here;
9 but adhere here by my lasses;
may your eyes be on the field they harvest,

RUTH 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and go thou after them:
have I not *charged* **misvahed** the *young men lads*
that they shall not touch thee?
and when thou *art athirst* **thirstest**,
go unto the *vessels* **instruments**, and drink of that
which the *young men lads* have *drawn* **bailed**.
10 Then she fell on her face,
and *bowed* **prostrated** herself to the *ground* **earth**,
and said unto him,
Why have I found *grace* **charism** in thine eyes,
that thou shouldst *take knowledge of* **recognize** me,
seeing I am a stranger?
11 And Boaz answered and said unto her,
In being told, It hath *fully* been *shewed* **told** me,
all that thou hast *done* **worked** unto thy mother in law
since the death of *thine husband* **thy man**:
and how thou hast left thy father and thy mother,
and the land of thy nativity,
and art come unto a people which thou knewest not
heretofore **three yesters ago**.
12 *The LORD Yah Veh*
recompense **shalam** thy *work* **deed**,
and a *full reward* **complete hire** be given thee
of *the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El*,
under whose wings thou art come to *trust* **seek refuge**.
13 Then she said,
Let me find *favour* **charism** in thy *sight eyes*,
my lord **adoni**;
for that thou hast *comforted* **sighed over** me,
and for that
thou hast *spoken friendly* **worded to the heart**
unto *thine handmaid* **thy maid**,
though I be not
like unto one of *thine handmaidens* **thy maids**.
14 And Boaz said unto her,
At *mealtime* **come thou hither** **foodtime approach**,
and eat of the bread,
and dip thy morsel in the *vinegar* **fermentation**.
And she *sat* **settled** beside the *reapers* **harvesters**:
and he *reached* **snatched** her parched *corn*,
and she did eat, and was *sufficed* **satisfied**,
and *left* **remained**.
15 And when she was risen up to glean,
Boaz *commanded* **misvahed** his *young men lads*, saying,
Let her glean even among the *sheaves* **omers**,
and *reproach* **shame** her not:
16 And *let fall also some of the handfuls of purpose*
of the spoilings, let fistfuls be spoiled for her,
and leave them, that she may glean them,
and rebuke her not.
17 So she gleaned in the field until even,
and *beat out* **threshed** that she had gleaned:
and it was about an ephah of barley.
18 And she *took* **lifted** it up, and went into the city:
and her mother in law saw what she had gleaned:
and she brought forth,
and gave to her that *she had reserved* **which remained**
after she was *sufficed* **satisfied**.
19 And her mother in law said unto her,
Where hast thou gleaned to day?
and where *wroughtest* **workedst** thou?
blessed be he that *did take knowledge of* **recognized** thee.
And she *shewed* **told** her mother in law
with whom she had *wrought* **worked**, and said,
The man's name with whom I *wrought* **worked** to day
is Boaz.
20 And *Naomi* **Noomiy** said unto her daughter in law,
Blessed be he of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
who hath not *left off* **forsaken** his *kindness* **mercy**
to the living and to the dead.
And *Naomi* **Noomiy** said unto her,
The man is near of *kin* unto us,
one of our next kinsmen **redeemers**.
21 And Ruth the *Moabitess* **Moabiyth** said,
He said unto me also,
Thou shalt *keep fast* **stick** by my *young men lads*,
until they have *ended* **finished** all my harvest.
22 And *Naomi* **Noomiy** said unto Ruth her daughter in law,

RUTH 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and you go after them.
Misvahed I not the lads to not touch you?
And when you thirst, go to the instruments
and drink from what the lads bail.
10 And she falls on her face
and prostrates herself to the earth and says to him,
Why find I charism in your eyes,
that you recognize me — and I, a stranger?
11 And Boaz answers and says to her,
In being told, I am told,
of all you worked to your mother in law
after the death of your man;
and how you left your father and your mother
and the land of your nativity
and come to a people you knew not
three yesters ago.
12 May Yah Veh shalam your deed
and a complete hire be given you
of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
under whose wings you come to seek refuge.
13 And she says,
May I find charism in your eyes, my adoni;
for sighing over me
and for wording to the heart of your maid
though I — I am not as one of your maids.
14 And Boaz says to her,
Approach at food time and eat of the bread
and dip your morsel in the fermentation.
And she settles beside the harvesters;
and he snatches her parched
and she eats and is satisfied and remains.
15 And she rises to glean,
and Boaz misvahs his lads, saying,
Let her glean even among the omers
and shame her not;
16 and of the spoilings, let fistfuls be spoiled for her
and leave them so that she gleans them
— and rebuke her not.
17 And she gleans in the field until evening
and threshes what she gleaned
— about an ephah of barley.
18 And she lifts it and goes into the city;
and her mother in law sees what she gleaned;
and she brings and gives her what remained
after she was satisfied.
19 And her mother in law says to her,
Where have you gleaned today?
And where have you worked?
Blessed — he who recognizes you.
And she tells her mother in law
whom she worked with, and says,
The name of the man I worked with today, Boaz.
20 And Noomiy says to her daughter in law,
Blessed — he of Yah Veh
who forsakes not his mercy
to the living and to the dead.
And Noomiy says to her,
The man is near to us — of our redeemers.
21 And Ruth the Moabiyth says,
He says to me also,
Stick by my lads until they finish all my harvest.
22 And Noomiy says to Ruth her daughter in law,

RUTH 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

It is good, my daughter,
that thou go *out* with his *maidens lasses*,
that they meet thee not in any other field.
23 So she *kept fast stuck* by the *maidens lasses* of Boaz
to glean unto the *end finish*
of barley harvest and of wheat harvest;
and *dwelt settled* with her mother in law.

BOAZ REDEEMS RUTH

3 Then *Naomi Noomiy* her mother in law
said unto her,
My daughter, shall I not seek rest for thee,
that it may *be well with well—please* thee?
2 And now is not Boaz of our *kindred kin*,
with whose *maidens lasses* thou wast?
Behold,
he winnoweth barley to night in the threshingfloor.
3 *Wash Baptise* thyself therefore, and anoint thee,
and *put set* thy *raiment clothes* upon thee,
and *get descend* thee *down* to the *floor threshingfloor*:
but make not thyself known unto the man,
until he shall have *done finished* eating and drinking.
4 And *so be* it *shall be*, when he lieth down,
that thou shalt *mark know* the place where he shall lie,
and thou shalt go in, and *uncover expose* his feet,
and lay thee down;
and he *will shall* tell thee what thou shalt *do work*.
5 And she said unto her,
All that thou sayest unto me I *will do shall work*.
6 And she *went down descended*
unto the *floor threshingfloor*,
and *did worked* according to all
that her mother in law *bade misvahed* her.
7 And when Boaz had eaten and drunk,
and his heart was *merry well—pleased*,
he went to lie down at the end of the *heap of corn heaps*:
and she came *softly undercover*,
and *uncovered exposed* his feet, and laid her down.
8 And *so be* it *came to pass*, at midnight,
that the man was *afraid trembled*,
and *turned himself clasped*:
and, behold, a woman lay at his feet.
9 And he said, Who art thou?
And she *answered said*,
I am Ruth *thine handmaid thy maid*:
spread therefore thy *skirt wing*
over *thine handmaid thy maid*;
for thou art a *near kinsman redeemer*.
10 And he said,
Blessed be thou of the *LORD Yah Veh*, my daughter:
for thou hast *shewed well—pleased* more *kindness mercy*
in the latter end than at the beginning,
inasmuch as
thou *followedst goest* not *young men after youths*,
whether poor or rich.
11 And now, my daughter, *fear awe* not;
I *will do shall work* to thee all that thou *requirest sayest*:
for all the *city portal* of my people
doth know that thou art a virtuous woman.
12 And now *it is true that truly*
I am thy *near kinsman redeemer*:
howbeit there is a *kinsman redeemer* nearer than I.
13 *Tarry this night Stay overnight*,
and *so be* it *shall be* in the morning,
that if he
will perform unto thee the part of a kinsman, well
shall redeem thee, good;
let him *do the kinsman's part redeem thee*:
but if he *will shall* not *delight*
do the part of a kinsman to redeem thee,
then *will I do the part of a kinsman to shall I redeem thee*,
as the *LORD Yah Veh* liveth:
lie down until the morning.
14 And she lay at his feet until the morning:
and she rose up
before one could know another ere man recognized friend.
And he said, Let it not be known
that a woman came into the *floor threshingfloor*.
15 Also he said,

RUTH 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

It is good, my daughter, to go with his lasses,
so that they not meet you in any other field.
23 — and she sticks by the lasses of Boaz
to glean the finish
of barley harvest and of wheat harvest;
and settles with her mother in law.

BOAZ REDEEMS RUTH

3 And Noomiy her mother in law says to her,
My daughter,
seek I not rest for you, to well—please you?
2 And now, is not Boaz of our kin,
with whose lasses you were?
Behold,
he winnows barley in the threshingfloor tonight.
3 And you, baptise and anoint yourself
and set your clothes upon you
and descend to the threshingfloor;
and that the man not know you
until he finishes eating and drinking:
and so be it, when he lies down,
that you know the place where he lies;
and you go in and expose his feet and lie down;
and he tells you what to work.
4
5 And she says to her,
I work all you say to me.
6 — and she descends to the threshingfloor
and works according to all
her mother in law misvahs her.
7 And Boaz eats and drinks
and well—pleases his heart,
and he goes and lies down at the end of the heaps;
and she comes undercover
and exposes his feet and lies down.
8 And so be it, at midnight,
the man trembles and clasps;
and behold, a woman lies at his feet:
and he says, Who are you?
9 And she says, I am Ruth your maid;
you have spread your wing over your maid;
for you are a redeemer.
10 And he says,
Blessed — you of Yah Veh, my daughter;
for you well—please more mercy
in the latter end than at the beginning
by not going after youths
whether poor or rich.
11 And now, my daughter, awe not;
I work to you all that you say;
for all the portal of my people
know you are a virtuous woman.
12 And now truly I am a redeemer;
however there is a redeemer nearer than I.
13 Stay overnight;
and so be it, in the morning,
if he redeems you, good;
he redeems you;
but if he delights not to redeem you,
then as Yah Veh lives, I redeem you;
lie down until the morning.
14 — and she lies at his feet until the morning;
and she rises ere man recognizes friend.
15 And he says, Let it not be known
that a woman came into the threshingfloor.
And he says,

RUTH 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Bring the vail that thou hast Give the cloak upon thee,
and hold it.
And when she held it,
he measured six measures of barley,
and laid placed it on her:
and she went into the city.
16 And when she came to her mother in law, she said,
Who art thou, my daughter?
And she told her
all that the man had done worked to her.
17 And she said,
These six measures of barley gave he me;
for he said to me, Go not empty unto thy mother in law.
18 Then said she, Sit still Settle, my daughter,
until thou know how the matter will word shall fall:
for the man will shall not be in rest,
until he have finished the thing word this day.

BOAZ MARRIES RUTH

4 Then went Boaz ascended up to the gate portal,
and sat him down settled there: and, behold,
the kinsman redeemer of whom Boaz spake worded
came passed by;
unto whom he said, Ho, such a one!
turn aside, sit down settle here.
And he turned aside, and sat down settled.
2 And he took ten men of the elders of the city,
and said, Sit Settle ye down here.
And they sat down settled.
3 And he said unto the kinsman redeemer,
Naomi Noomiy,
that is come again returned
out of the country fields of Moab,
sellethe a parcel an allotment of land field,
which was our brother Elimelech's Eli Melech's:
4 And I thought said to advertise thee expose in thine ear,
saying,
Buy it before Chattel in front of the inhabitants settlers,
and before in front of the elders of my people.
If thou wilt shalt redeem it, redeem it:
but if thou wilt shalt not redeem it,
then tell me, that I may know:
for there is none to redeem it beside except thee;
and I am after thee.
And he said, I will shall redeem it.
5 Then said Boaz,
What day thou buyest chattlest the field
of the hand of Naomi Noomiy,
thou must buy it chattlest also
of Ruth the Moabitess Moabiyth,
the wife woman of the dead,
to raise up the name of the dead upon his inheritance.
6 And the kinsman redeemer said,
I cannot redeem it for myself,
lest I mar ruin mine own inheritance:
redeem thou my right redemption to thyself;
for I cannot redeem it.
7 Now this was
the manner in former time in Israel at the face of Yisra El
concerning redeeming
and concerning changing exchanging,
for to confirm all things words;
a man plucked drew off his shoe,
and gave it to his neighbour friend:
and this was a testimony witness in Israel Yisra El.
8 Therefore the kinsman redeemer said unto Boaz,
Buy it Chattel for thee. So he drew off his shoe.
9 And Boaz said unto the elders, and unto all the people,
ye are witnesses this day,
that I have bought chatted all
that was Elimelech's Eli Melech's,
and all that was Chilion's Kilyon's
and Mahlon's Machlon's,
of the hand of Naomi Noomiy.
10 Moreover Ruth the Moabitess Moabiyth,
the wife woman of Mahlon Machlon,
have I purchased chatted to be my wife woman,

RUTH 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Give the cloak upon you, and hold it.
— and she holds it,
and he measures six barley and places it on her;
and she goes to the city.
16 And she comes to her mother in law,
and she says, Who are you, my daughter?
— and she tells her all the man worked to her.
17 And she says,
He gave me these six barley;
for he says to me,
Go not empty to your mother in law.
18 Then she says, Settle, my daughter,
until you know how the word falls;
for the man rests not
until he finishes the word this day.

BOAZ MARRIES RUTH

4 And Boaz ascends to the portal and settles there;
and behold,
the redeemer of whom Boaz worded passes by;
to whom he says, Ho, such a one!
Turn aside! Settle here!
— and he turns aside and settles.
2 And he takes ten men of the elders of the city
and says, You settle here.
— and they settle.
3 And he says to the redeemer,
Noomiy,
who returned from the fields of Moab,
sold an allotment of field,
of our brother Eli Melech;
4 and I say to expose in your ear, saying,
Chattel in front of the settlers
and in front of the elders of my people
— if you redeem, redeem;
but if you redeem not,
then tell me, so that I know;
for there is no one to redeem except you;
and I after you.
And he says, I redeem.
5 And Boaz says,
The day you chattel the field
of the hand of Noomiy,
you also chattel of Ruth the Moabiyth,
the woman of the dead,
to raise up the name of the dead
upon his inheritance.
6 And the redeemer says,
I cannot redeem it for myself,
lest I ruin my own inheritance;
redeem my redemption to yourself;
for I cannot redeem it.
7 Now at the face of Yisra El
concerning redeeming and concerning exchanging
to confirm all words was this;
a man draws his shoe and gives it to his friend;
and this is the witness in Yisra El.
8 And the redeemer says to Boaz,
Chattel for yourself.
— and he draws off his shoe.
9 And Boaz says to the elders and to all the people,
you are witnesses this day,
that I chatted all that of Eli Melech
and all that of Kilyon and Machlon,
of the hand of Noomiy;
and I also chatted
Ruth the Moabiyth the woman of Machlon,
to be my woman,

RUTH 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- to raise up the name of the dead upon his inheritance,
that the name of the dead be not cut off
from among his brethren,
and from the *gate portal* of his place:
ye are witnesses this day.
- 11 And all the people that were in the *gate portal*,
and the elders, said, We are witnesses.
The LORD Yah Veh
make **give** the woman that is come into thine house
like Rachel and like Leah,
which two did build the house of *Israel Yisra El*:
and **do work** thou
worthily to get valuables in *Ephrath Ephrath*,
and *be famous call out thy name*
in *Bethlehem Beth Lechem*:
- 12 And let thy house be like the house of *Pharez Peres*,
whom Tamar *bare birthed* unto *Judah Yah Hudah*,
of the seed which *the LORD Yah Veh* shall give thee
of this *young woman lass*.
- 13 So Boaz took Ruth, and she was his **wife woman**:
and when he went in unto her,
the LORD Yah Veh gave her conception,
and she *bare birthed* a son.
- 14 And the women said unto *Naomi Noomiy*,
Blessed be *the LORD Yah Veh*,
which hath not *left ceased* thee this day
without a *kinsman redeemer*,
- 15 that his name may be *famous called out* in *Israel Yisra El*.
And he shall be unto thee a restorer of thy *life soul*,
and a *nourisher sustainer* of *thine old age thy grayness*:
for thy daughter in law, which loveth thee,
which is better to thee than seven sons,
hath *born birthed* him.
- 16 And *Naomi Noomiy* took the child,
and *laid placed* it in her bosom,
and *became nurse unto nursed* it.
- 17 And the women her *neighbours fellow tabernaclers*
gave it a name called out, saying,
There is a son *born birthed* to *Naomi Noomiy*;
and they called his name Obed:
he is the father of *Jesse Yishay*, the father of David.
- THE GENERATIONS OF PERES**
- 18 Now these are the generations of *Pharez Peres*:
Pharez begat Hezron Peres birthed Hesron,
19 And *Hezron begat Hesron birthed Ram*,
and *Ram begat Amminadab birthed Ammi Nadab*,
20 And *Amminadab begat Ammi Nadab birthed Nahshon*,
and *Nahshon begat Salmon birthed Salmah*,
21 And *Salmon begat Salmah birthed Boaz*,
and *Boaz begat birthed Obed*,
22 And *Obed begat Jesse birthed Yishay*,
and *Jesse begat Yishay birthed David*.

RUTH 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- to raise up the name of the dead
upon his inheritance,
that the name of the dead not be cut off
from among his brothers
and from the portal of his place;
you are witnesses this day.
- 11 And all the people in the portal, and the elders,
say, We are witnesses.
Yah Veh give the woman
who comes into your house
as Rachel and as Leah;
which two built the house of Yisra El;
and work you to get valuables in Ephrath
and call out your name in Beth Lechem;
and that your house be as the house of Peres,
whom Tamar *bare birthed* to Yah Hudah,
of the seed which Yah Veh gives you of this lass.
- 13 And Boaz takes Ruth
and she becomes his woman;
and he goes in to her
and Yah Veh gives her conception
and she births a son.
- 14 And the women say to Noomiy,
Blessed — Yah Veh,
who has not ceased you this day
without a redeemer,
to call out his name in Yisra El.
- 15 And he becomes a restorer of your soul
and a sustainer of your grayness;
for your daughter in law, who loves you,
who is better to you than seven sons,
births him.
- 16 And Noomiy takes the child
and places it in her bosom and nurses it.
- 17 And the women, her fellow tabernaclers,
call out, saying,
There a son *is birthed* to Noomiy;
and they call his name Obed
— he is the father of Yishay, the father of David.
- THE GENERATIONS OF PERES**
- 18 And these are the generations of Peres;
Peres births Hesron
and Hesron births Ram
and Ram births Ammi Nadab
and Ammi Nadab births Nahshon
and Nahshon births Salmah
and Salmah births Boaz
and Boaz births Obed
and Obed births Yishay
and Yishay births David.

ESTHER 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

VASHTI THE SOVEREIGNNESS

1 Now it came to pass **And so be it,**
in the days of *Ahasuerus* **Achash Rosh,**
(this is *Ahasuerus* **Achash Rosh** which reigned,
from *India* **Hodu** even unto *Ethiopia* **Kush,**
over an hundred and seven and twenty
provinces **jurisdictions**.)

2 That in those days,
when the *king* *Ahasuerus* **sovereign Achash Rosh**
sat **settled** on the throne of his *kingdom* **sovereigndom,**
which was in Shushan the palace,

3 In the third year of his reign,
he *made* **worked** a *feast* **banquet**
unto all his *princes* **governors** and his servants;
the *power* **virtuous** of Persia and *Media* **Maday,**
the nobles and *princes* **governors**
of the *provinces* **jurisdictions,**
being before him **at his face**:

4 When he *shewed* **had them see** the riches
of the honour of his *glorious kingdom* **sovereigndom**
and the *honour* **esteem**
of the adornment of his *excellent majesty* **greatness**
many days,
even an hundred and *fourscore* **eighty** days.
And when these days were *expired* **fulfilled,**
the *king* **made** **sovereign worked** a *feast* **banquet**
unto all the people
that were *present* **found** in Shushan the palace,
both unto great and small, seven days,
in the court of the garden
of the *king's* **sovereign's** palace;

6 Where were white, *green* **byssus,** and blue, *hangings,*
fastened **held** with cords
of *fine linen* **bleached cotton** and purple
to silver rings and pillars of **white** marble:
the beds were of gold and silver,
upon a pavement of *red* **bright,**
and blue **white marble,** and *white* **pearl,**
and *black,* **marble black tile.**

7 And they gave them drink
in *vessels* **instruments** of gold,
(the *vessels* **instruments**
being diverse one **differing** from *another* **instruments**),
and royal wine **of the sovereigndom** in abundance,
according to the *state* **hand** of the *king* **sovereign.**

8 And the drinking was according to the *law* **edict;**
none did compel **insisted:**
for so the *king* **sovereign** had *appointed* **founded**
to all the *officers* **great** of his house,
that they should *do* **work** according to
every man's **the** pleasure **of man to man.**

9 Also Vashti the *queen* **sovereignness**
made **worked** a *feast* **banquet** for the women
in the royal house **of the sovereigndom**
which belonged to king *Ahasuerus*
of sovereign Achash Rosh.

10 On the seventh day,
when the heart of the *king* **sovereign**
was *merry* **good** with wine,
he *commanded* **said** to Mehuman,
Biztha, Harbona, Bigtha, and Abagtha,
Zethar, and *Carcas* **Karcas,**
the seven *chamberlains* **eunuchs** that *served* **ministered**
in the presence **at the face**
of *Ahasuerus* **Achash Rosh** the *king* **sovereign,**

11 To bring Vashti the *queen* **sovereignness**
before **at the face** of the *king* **sovereign**
with the *crown royal* **diadem** of the *sovereigndom,*
to *shew* **have** the people and the *princes* **governors**
see her beauty:
for she was *fair* to look on **good of visage.**

12 But the *queen* **sovereignness** Vashti refused
to come at the *king's* **commandment** **sovereign's word**
by **the hand** of his *chamberlains* **eunuchs:**
therefore
was the *king* **very** *wroth* **sovereign mighty** *enraged,*
and his *anger* **fury** burned in him.

13 Then the *king* **sovereign** said to the wise men,
which knew the times,

ESTER 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

VASHTI THE SOVEREIGNNESS

1 And so be it,
in the days of Achash Rosh
— Achash Rosh who reigns
from Hodu even to Kush
— a hundred and twenty—seven jurisdictions;
2 in those days,
the sovereign Achash Rosh
settles on the throne of his sovereigndom
in Shushan palace;

3 in the third year of his reign,
he works a banquet
to all his governors and his servants;
the virtuous of Persia and Maday,
the nobles and governors of the jurisdictions
at his face;

4 and he shows them the riches
of the honor of his sovereigndom
and the esteem of the adornment of his greatness
many days — even a hundred and eighty days.

5 And in the fulfilling of these days
the sovereign works a banquet
to all the people found in Shushan palace
both to great and small
seven days
in the court of the garden
of the palace of the sovereign;
— white, byssus and blue
6 held with cords of bleached cotton and purple
to silver rings and pillars of white marble;
the beds of gold and silver
on a pavement of bright and white marble
and pearl and black tile;

7 and they give them drink in instruments of gold
— instruments differing from instruments
and wine of the sovereigndom in abundance
according to the hand of the sovereign.

8 And the drinking is according to the edict;
no one insisting;
for thus the sovereign founded
to all the great of his house;
to work according to the pleasure of man to man.

9 Also Vashti the sovereignness
works a banquet for the women
in the house of the sovereigndom
of sovereign Achash Rosh.

10 On the seventh day,
when the heart of the sovereign is good with wine,
he says to Mehuman, Biztha, Harbona,
Bigtha and Abagtha, Zethar and Karcas,
the seven eunuchs who minister
at the face of Achash Rosh the sovereign,
11 to bring Vashti the sovereignness
at the face of the sovereign
with the diadem of the sovereigndom
— for the people and the governors
to see her beauty
— for she is of good visage.

12 And the sovereignness Vashti refuses
to come at the word of the sovereign
by the hand of his eunuchs;
and the sovereign enrages mightily,
and his fury burns within him.

13 And the sovereign says
to the wise men who know the times

ESTHER 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

(for so was the *king's manner* **sovereign's word**
toward **at the face of** all
that knew *law* **edict** and *judgment* **pleading**;
14 And the next **near** unto him was *Carshena* **Karshena**,
Shethar, Admatha, Tarshish,
Meres, Marsena, and *Memucan* **Memuchan**,
the seven *princes* **governors** of Persia and *Media* **Maday**,
which saw the *king's* **sovereign's** face,
and which sat **settled** the first
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**);
15 What shall we *do* **work**
unto the *queen* **sovereignness** Vashti
according to *law* **edict**,
because
she hath not *performed* **worked** the *commandment* **edict**
of the *king* *Ahasuerus* **sovereign** Achash Rosh
by **the hand of the chamberlains** **eunuchs**?
16 And *Memucan* answered **Memuchan** said
before at the face
of the king **sovereign** and the *princes* **governors**,
Vashti the *queen* **sovereignness**
hath not *done wrong* **bent** to the *king* **sovereign** only,
but also to all the princes,
and to all the people
that are in all the *provinces* **jurisdictions**
of the *king* *Ahasuerus* **sovereign** Achash Rosh.
17 For this *deed* **word** of the *queen* **sovereignness**
shall *come abroad* **go** unto all women,
so that they shall despise their *husbands* **masters**
in their eyes,
when it shall be reported **saying**,
The *king* *Ahasuerus* **Sovereign** Achash Rosh
commanded **said to** Vashti the *queen* **sovereignness**
to be brought in *before him* **at his face**,
but she came not.
18 Likewise shall the *ladies* **governesses** of Persia
and *Media* **Maday** say this day
unto all the *king's* *princes* **sovereign's** **governors**,
which have heard
of the *deed* **word** of the *queen* **sovereignness**.
Thus shall there arise
too much contempt **enough despite** and *wrath* **rage**.
19 If it please **be good with** the *king* **sovereign**,
let there go
a *royal commandment* **word of the sovereigndom**
from *him* **his face**,
and let it be *written* **inscribed** among the *laws* **edicts**
of the Persians and the *Medes* **Maday**,
that it *be not altered* **pass not away**,
That Vashti come no more
before at the face of
king *Ahasuerus* **sovereign** Achash Rosh;
and let the *king* **sovereign**
give her *royal estate* **sovereigndom**
unto *another* **her friend** that is better than she.
20 And when the *king's* *decree* **sovereign's** **sentence**
which he shall *make* **work**
shall be *published* **heard**
throughout all his *empire* **sovereigndom**,
(for it is great),
all the *wives* **women**
shall give to their *husbands* **honour** **masters** **esteem**,
both to great and small.
21 And the *saying* **word**
well—pleased the eyes of the *king* **sovereign**
and the *princes* **governors**;
and the *king* **did** **sovereign** **worked**
according to the word of *Memucan* **Memuchan**:
22 For he sent *letters* **scrolls**
into all the *king's* *provinces* **sovereign's** **jurisdictions**,
into every province — **jurisdiction by jurisdiction**
according to the *writing* **inscribing** thereof,
and to *every people* **people by people**
after their *language* **tongue**,
that every man should bear rule in his own house,
and that it should be *published* **worded**
according to the *language* **tongue** of every people.

ESTER 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— for thus is the word of the sovereign
at the face of all who know edict and pleading;
and near to him, Karshena, Shethar, Admatha,
14 Tarshish, Meres, Marsena and Memuchan
— the seven governors of Persia and Maday,
who see the face of the sovereign
— who settle first in the sovereigndom;
15 What work we according to the edict
to the sovereignness Vashti
— because she works not the edict
of the sovereign Achash Rosh
by the hand of the eunuchs?
16 And Memuchan
at the face of the sovereign and the governors says,
Vashti the sovereignness
bends not to the sovereign only,
but also to all the princes and to all the people
in all the jurisdictions of the sovereign Achash Rosh.
17 For this word of the sovereignness
goes to all women,
so that they despise their masters in their eyes,
saying,
Sovereign Achash Rosh said
to bring Vashti the sovereignness at his face;
but she comes not.
18 Yes, this day
the governesses of Persia and Maday
say to all the governors of the sovereign
who hear of the word of the sovereignness.
Thus there rises enough despite and rage.
19 If it be good with the sovereign,
let a word of the sovereigndom
go from his face
— inscribed among the edicts
of the Persians and the Maday
that it not pass away,
that Vashti come no more
at the face of sovereign Achash Rosh;
and that the sovereign
give her sovereigndom to her friend
who is better than she.
20 And when the sentence the sovereign works
is heard throughout all his sovereigndom,
— for it is great
all the women give their masters esteem;
both to great and small.
21 And the word well—pleases
the eyes of the sovereign and the governors:
and the sovereign works
according to the word of Memuchan:
and he sends scrolls
22 to all the jurisdictions of the sovereign
— jurisdiction by jurisdiction
according to the inscribing thereof
and to people by people after their tongue,
that every man bears rule in his own house;
and that it be worded
according to the tongue of every people.

ESTHER 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

A SOVEREIGNNESS IS SOUGHT

2 After these *things* **words**,
when the *wrath* **fury**
of king *Ahasuerus* **sovereign Achash Rosh**
was *appeased* **assuaged**,
he remembered Vashti, and what she had *done* **worked**,
and what was *decreed* **cut** against her.

2 Then said the *king's servants* **sovereign's lads**
that ministered unto him,
Let there be *fair young* **lasses of good visage**
— virgins sought for the *king* **sovereign**:

3 And let the *king* **sovereign**
appoint officers **oversee overseers**
in all the *provinces* **jurisdictions**
of his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
that they may gather together
all the *fair young* **lasses of good visage**
— virgins unto Shushan the palace,
to the house of the women,
unto the *custody* **hand** of Hege
the *king's chamberlain* **sovereign's eunuch**,
keeper **guard** of the women;
and let their *things* for purification be given them:

4 And let the *maiden* **lass**
which **well**—pleaseth **the eyes** of the *king* **sovereign**
be queen **reign** instead of Vashti.
And the *thing* **word**
well—pleased **the eyes** of the *king* **sovereign**;
and he *did* **worked** so.

5 Now in Shushan the palace
there was a *certain Jew* **man** — a *Yah Hudiyy*,
whose name was *Mordecai* **Mordekay**,
the son of *Jair* **Yair**, the son of *Shimei* **Shimi**,
the son of *Kish* **Qish**, a *Benjamite* **man of Ben Yamin**;
6 Who had been *carried away* **exiled**
from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** with the *captivity* **exile**
which had been *carried away* **exiled**
with *Jeconiah* **Yekon Yah**
king **sovereign** of Judah *Yah Hudah*,
whom *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
had *carried away* **exiled**.

7 And he *brought up* **fostered** Hadassah,
that is, *Esther* **Ester**, his uncle's daughter:
for she had neither father nor mother,
and the *maid* **lass** was *fair* **beautiful of form**
and *beautiful* **good of visage**;
whom *Mordecai* **Mordekay**,
when her father and mother *were* **dead died**,
took for his own daughter.

8 **ESTER WELL — PLEASES THE EYES OF THE SOVEREIGN**
So it came to pass **And so be it**,
when the *king's commandment* **sovereign's word**
and his *decree* **edict** was heard,
and when many *maidens* **lasses** were gathered *together*
unto Shushan the palace, to the *custody* **hand** of Hegai,
that *Esther* **Ester** was *brought* **taken** *also*
unto the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
to the *custody* **hand** of Hegai,
keeper **guard** of the women.

9 And the *maiden* **lass** **well**—pleased *him* **his eyes**,
and she *obtained kindness* of *him* **bore mercy at his face**;
and he *speedily* **gave her** **hastened**
her things for purification **purifications**,
with *such things* as *belonged* to *her* **her portions**,
and seven *maidens* **lasses**,
which were *meet* **seen** to be given her,
out of the *king's* **sovereign's** house:
and he *preferred* **changed** her and her *maids* **lasses**
unto the best *place* of the house of the women.

10 *Esther* **Ester** had not *shewed* **told** her people
nor her kindred:
for *Mordecai* **Mordekay** had *charged* **misvahed** her
that she should not *shew* **tell** it.

11 And *Mordecai* **Mordekay** walked *every* day **by day**
before **at the face** of the court of the women's house,
to know *how* *Esther* **did** **the shalom** of *Esther*,
and what should *become* **be worked** of her.

ESTER 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

A SOVEREIGNNESS IS SOUGHT

2 After these words,
the fury of sovereign Achash Rosh assuages,
and he remembers Vashti and what she worked
and what was cut against her.

2 And the lads of the sovereign
who minister to him say,
Seek out virgin lasses of good visage
for the sovereign;

3 and have the sovereign oversee overseers
in all the jurisdictions of his sovereigndom,
to gather all the virgin lasses of good visage
to Shushan palace to the house of the women,
to the hand of Hegai the eunuch of the sovereign,
guard of the women;
and give them their purification;
and have the lass
who well—pleases the eyes of the sovereign
reign instead of Vashti.
— and the word
well—pleases the eyes of the sovereign;
and thus he works.

5 And there is a man in Shushan palace
— a Yah Hudiyy — his name,
Mordekay the son of Yair the son of Shimi
the son of Qish,
a man of Ben Yamin
who was exiled from Yeru Shalem
with the exile which was exiled
with Yekon Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah,
whom Nebukadnets Tsar the sovereign of Babel
exiled.

7 And he fosters Hadassah,
that is, Ester, the daughter of his uncle;
for she has neither father nor mother
and the lass is beautiful of form and good of visage;
whom, when her father and mother died,
Mordekay took for his own daughter.

ESTER WELL — PLEASES THE EYES OF THE SOVEREIGN

8 And so be it,
the word and the edict of the sovereign is heard;
and many lasses gather to Shushan palace
to the hand of Hegai:
and Ester is taken to the house of the sovereign
to the hand of Hegai the guard of the women.

9 And the lass well—pleases his eyes
and he mercies her at his face;
and he hastens her purifications with her portions
and seven lasses from the house of the sovereign,
are seen to be given her;
and he changes her and her lasses
to the best of the house of the women.

10 Ester told neither her people nor her kindred;
for Mordekay misvahed her to not tell:
and Mordekay walks day by day
at the face of the court of the house of the women,
to know the shalom of Ester
and what is worked of her.

ESTHER 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 Now when every *maid's lasses'* turn
was *come reached*
to go in to *king Ahasuerus sovereign Achash Rosh*,
after that she had been at the end of twelve months,
according to the *manner edict* of the women,
(for so were the days of their purifications
accomplished fulfilled, to wit,
six months with oil of myrrh,
and six months with *sweet odours spices*,
and with other *things for the purifying purifications*
of the women;)
13 Then thus came every *maiden the lasses*
unto the *king sovereign*;
whatsoever she *desired said* was given her
to go with her out of the house of the women
unto the *king's sovereign's* house.
14 In the evening she went,
and on the *morrow morning* she returned
into the second house of the women,
to the *custody hand* of Shaashgaz,
the *king's chamberlain sovereign's eunuch*,
which *kept guarded* the concubines:
she came in unto the *king sovereign* no more,
except the *king sovereign* delighted in her,
and that she were called by name.
15 Now when the turn of *Esther Ester*,
the daughter of *Abihail Abi Hail*
the uncle of *Mordecai Mordekay*,
who had taken her for his daughter,
was *come reached* to go in unto the *king sovereign*,
she *required nothing sought no word*
but what *Hegai*
the *king's chamberlain sovereign's eunuch*,
the *keeper guard* of the women, *appointed said*.
And *Esther obtained favour Ester received charism*
in the *sight eyes* of all them that *looked upon saw* her.
16 So *Esther Ester* was taken
unto *king Ahasuerus sovereign Achash Rosh*
into *his house royal the house of his sovereigndom*
in the tenth month, which is the month Tebeth,
in the seventh year of his *reign sovereigndom*.
SOVEREIGNNESS ESTER
17 And the *king sovereign*
loved *Esther Ester* above all the women,
and she *obtained grace received charism* and *favour mercy*
in *his sight at his face* more than all the virgins;
so that he set
the *royal crown diadem of the sovereigndom*
upon her head,
and made her *queen reign* instead of Vashti.
18 Then the *king sovereign*
made worked a great *feast banquet*
unto all his *princes governors* and his servants,
even *Esther's feast Ester's banquet*;
and he *made worked* a *release rest*
to the *provinces jurisdictions*,
and gave *gifts loads*,
according to the *state hand* of the *king sovereign*.
MORDEKAY SAVES THE SOVEREIGN
19 And when the virgins
were gathered *together* the second time,
then *Mordecai Mordekay*
sat settled in the *king's gate sovereign's portal*.
Esther Ester had not yet *shewed told* her kindred
nor her people;
as *Mordecai Mordekay* had *charged misvahed* her:
for *Esther did Ester worked*
the *commandment edict* of *Mordecai Mordekay*,
like as when she was *brought up with tutored* by him.
21 In those days,
while *Mordecai Mordekay*
sat settled in the *king's gate sovereign's portal*,
two of the *king's chamberlains sovereign's eunuchs*,
Bigthan and Teresh,
of those which *kept guards of the door threshold*,
were *wroth enraged*,
and sought to *lay send their* hand
on the *king Ahasuerus sovereign Achash Rosh*.
22 And the *thing word* was known to *Mordecai Mordekay*,

ESTER 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 And at the end of twelve months
every lass reaches her turn
to go in to sovereign Achash Rosh
— according to the edict of the women,
— for thus are the days of their purifications fulfilled;
six months with oil of myrrh
and six months with spices
and with other purifications of the women
13 — and thus the lasses come to the sovereign;
and whatever she says is given her
to go with her from the house of the women
to the house of the sovereign.
14 In the evening she goes;
and in the morning she returns
into the second house of the women
to the hand of Shaashgaz
the eunuch of the sovereign
who guards the concubines;
she comes in to the sovereign no more,
unless the sovereign delights in her
and calls her name.
15 And the turn of Ester,
the daughter of Abi Hail the uncle of Mordekay
who took her for his daughter,
is reached to go in to the sovereign;
and she seeks no word
but what Hegai the eunuch of the sovereign
the guard of the women says.
And Ester receives charism
in the eyes of all who see her:
16 and they take Ester to sovereign Achash Rosh
to the house of his sovereigndom
in the tenth month, the month Tebeth,
in the seventh year of his sovereigndom.
SOVEREIGNNESS ESTER
17 And the sovereign
loves Ester above all the women
and she receives charism and mercy
at his face more than all the virgins;
so that he sets the diadem of the sovereigndom
on her head
and has her reign instead of Vashti.
18 And the sovereign works a great banquet
to all his governors and his servants,
— the banquet of Ester;
and he works a rest to the jurisdictions
and gives loads
according to the hand of the sovereign.
MORDEKAY SAVES THE SOVEREIGN
19 And the virgins gather the second time,
and Mordekay settles in the portal of the sovereign.
20 Ester tells neither her kindred nor her people
as Mordekay misvahed her;
for Ester worked the edict of Mordekay,
as when he tutored her.
21 In those days,
Mordekay settles in the portal of the sovereign,
and two of the eunuchs of the sovereign,
Bigthan and Teresh, guards of the threshold,
enrage;
and seek to send their hand
on sovereign Achash Rosh.
22 And the word is known to Mordekay,

ESTHER 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

who told it unto *Esther* **Ester** the *queen* **sovereignness**;
and *Esther* certified **Ester said it to** the *king* thereof **sovereign**
in *Mordecai's* **Mordekay's** name.
23 And when *inquisition* **the word**
was made of the *matter* **researched**,
it was found out;
therefore they were both hanged on a tree:
and it was *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
before **at the face of** the *king* **sovereign**.

HAMAN PLOTS AGAINST THE YAH HUDIY

3 After these *things* **words**
did king *Ahasuerus* **sovereign Achash Rosh**
promote **greatened** Haman
the son of *Hammedatha* **Medatha** the *Agagite* **Agagiy**,
and *advanced* **lifted** him,
and set his seat
above all the *princes* **governors** that were with him.
2 And all the *king's* **sovereign's** servants,
that were in the *king's* **gate** **sovereign's portal**,
bowed, and *reverenced* **prostrated to** Haman:
for the *king* **sovereign** had so *commanded* **misvahed**
concerning him.
But *Mordecai* **Mordekay** bowed not,
nor *did him* **reverence** **prostrated**.
3 Then the *king's* **sovereign's** servants,
which were in the *king's* **gate** **sovereign's portal**,
said unto *Mordecai* **Mordekay**,
Why *transgresses* **trespasses** thou
the *king's* **commandment** **sovereign's misvah**?
4 Now *it came to pass* **And so be it**,
when they *spake daily* **said day by day** unto him,
and he hearkened not unto them, that they told Haman,
to see whether *Mordecai's* **matters** **Mordekay's words**
would **should** stand:
for he had told them that he was a *Jew* **Yah Hudiy**.
5 And when Haman saw
that *Mordecai* **Mordekay** bowed not,
nor *did him* **reverence** **prostrated to him**,
then was Haman *full of wrath* **filled with fury**.
6 And *he thought* **scorn** **despicable in his eyes**
to *lay* **send forth** hands on *Mordecai* **Mordekay** alone;
for they had *shewed* **told** him of the people
of *Mordecai* **Mordekay**:
wherefore Haman
sought to *destroy* **desolate** all the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
that were throughout the whole *kingdom* **sovereignndom**
of *Ahasuerus* **Achash Rosh**,
even the people of *Mordecai* **Mordekay**.
7 In the first month, that is, the month Nisan,
in the twelfth year
of *king* *Ahasuerus* **sovereign Achash Rosh**,
they *cast* **felled** Pur, that is, the *lot* **pebble**,
before **at the face of** Haman from day to day,
and from month to month,
to the twelfth *month*, that is, the month Adar.
8 And Haman said
unto *king* *Ahasuerus* **sovereign Achash Rosh**,
There is a *certain* **one** people scattered *abroad*
and *dispersed* **spread** among the people
in all the *provinces* **jurisdictions**
of thy *kingdom* **sovereignndom**;
and their *laws* **edicts** are diverse from all people;
neither *keep* **work** they the *king's* **laws** **sovereign's edicts**:
therefore it is not **equated**
for the *king's* **profit** **sovereign** to *suffer* **allow** them.
9 If it *please* **be good with** the *king* **sovereign**,
let it be *written* **inscribed** that they may be destroyed:
and I *will pay* **shall weigh**
ten thousand *talents* **rounds** of silver
to the hands of *those that have the charge* **the workers**
of the *business* **work**,
to bring it into the *king's* **sovereign's** treasuries.
10 And the *king* **sovereign**
took **twisted off** his *ring* **signet** from his hand,
and gave it unto Haman
the son of *Hammedatha* **Medatha** the *Agagite* **Agagiy**,
the *Jews'* **enemy** **Yah Hudiym's tribulator**.
11 And the *king* **sovereign** said unto Haman,

ESTER 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

who tells it to Ester the sovereignness;
and Ester says it to the sovereign
in the name of Mordekay.
23 And they research the word,
and find out;
and hang them both on a tree;
and inscribe it
in the scroll of the words of the days
at the face of the sovereign.

HAMAN PLOTS AGAINST THE YAH HUDIY

3 After these words
sovereign Achash Rosh greatens Haman
the son of Medatha the Agagiy
and lifts him
and sets his seat above all the governors with him.
2 And all the servants of the sovereign
in the portal of the sovereign
bow and prostrate to Haman;
for thus the sovereign misvahs concerning him.
— and Mordekay neither bows nor prostrates.
3 And the servants of the sovereign
in the portal of the sovereign
say to Mordekay,
Why trespass you the misvah of the sovereign?
4 And so be it,
day by day they say to him;
and he hearkens not to them,
and they tell Haman
to see whether the words of Mordekay stand;
for he had told them that he is a Yah Hudiy.
5 And Haman sees
that Mordekay neither bows nor prostrates to him;
and Haman fills with fury:
6 and it is despicable in his eyes
to send forth hands on Mordekay by himself;
for they tell him of the people of Mordekay;
and Haman seeks to desolate all the Yah Hudiym
throughout the whole sovereignndom
of Achash Rosh
— the people of Mordekay.
7 In the first month — the month Nisan
in the twelfth year of sovereign Achash Rosh,
they fell Pur, that is, the pebble,
at the face of Haman from day to day
and from month to month
to the twelfth — that is, the month Adar.
8 And Haman says to sovereign Achash Rosh,
There is one people scattered
and spread among the people
in all the jurisdictions of your sovereignndom;
and their edicts are diverse from all people;
they work not the edicts of the sovereign;
and it equates not that the sovereign allow them.
9 If it be good with the sovereign,
inscribe to destroy them;
and I weigh ten thousand rounds of silver
to the hands of the workers of the work
to bring it into the treasuries of the sovereign.
10 And the sovereign twists his signet from his hand
and gives it to Haman
the son of Medatha the Agagiy
the tribulator of the Yah Hudiym.
11 And the sovereign says to Haman,

ESTHER 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

The silver is given to thee, the people also,
to *do* **work** with them
as it seemeth good to thee **in thine eyes**.
12 Then were the *king's* **sovereign's** scribes called
on the thirteenth *day* of the first month,
and there was *written* **inscribed**
according to all that Haman had *commanded* **misvahed**
unto the *king's* **lieutenants** **sovereign's** **satraps**,
and to the governors that were over
every province **jurisdiction by jurisdiction**,
and to the *rulers* **governors**
of *every people* **people by people**
of *every province* **jurisdiction by jurisdiction**
according to the *writing* **inscribings** thereof,
and to *every people* **people by people**
after their *language* **tongue**;
in the name of *king* **Ahasuerus** **sovereign** **Achash** **Rosh**
was it *written* **inscribed**,
and sealed with the *king's* **ring** **sovereign's** **signet**.
13 And the *letters* **scrolls** were sent
by *posts* **the hand of runners**
into all the *king's* **provinces** **sovereign's** **jurisdictions**,
to *destroy* **desolate**, to *kill* **slaughter**,
and to *cause to perish* **destroy**, all *Jews* **Yah** **Hudiyim**,
both young and old **from lad to old man**,
little children **toddlers** and women, in one day,
even upon the thirteenth *day* of the twelfth month,
which is the month **Adar**,
and to *take the spoil of them for a prey* **spoil their plunder**.
14 The *copy* **transcript** of the *writing* **inscribings**
for a *commandment* **an edict** to be given
in *every province* **jurisdiction by jurisdiction**
was *published* **exposed** unto all people,
that they should be ready against that day.
15 The *posts* **runners** went out,
being hastened
by the *king's* **commandment** **sovereign's** **word**,
and the *decree* **edict** was given in Shushan the palace.
And the *king* **sovereign** and Haman sat *down* to drink;
but the city Shushan was perplexed.

ESTER TOLD OF THE PLOT OF HAMAN

4 When *Mordecai* **Mordekay**
perceived all that was *done* **worked**,
Mordecai **rent** **Mordekay** **ripped** his clothes,
and *put on sackcloth* **enrobed** **saq** with ashes,
and went out into the midst of the city,
and cried with a *loud* **great** and a bitter cry;
2 And came even
before **at the face of** the *king's* **gate** **sovereign's** **portal**:
for none might enter
into the *king's* **gate** **sovereign's** **portal**
clothed **enrobed** with *sackcloth* **saq**.
3 And in *every province* **jurisdiction by jurisdiction**,
whithersoever **whatever place**
the *king's* **commandment** **sovereign's** **word**
and his *decree* **came** **edict** **touched**,
there was great mourning among the *Jews* **Yah** **Hudiyim**,
and fasting, and weeping, and *wailing* **chopping**;
and many *lay* **spread** in *sackcloth* **saq** and ashes.
4 So *Esther's* **maids** **Ester's** **lasses**
and her *chamberlains* **eunuchs** came and told *it* her.
Then was the *queen* **sovereignness**
exceedingly grieved **mightily** **writhed**;
and she sent *raiment* **clothes**
to *clothe* **Mordecai** **enrobe** **Mordekay**,
and to *take away* **turn aside** his *sackcloth* **saq** from him:
but he *received* **took** it not.
5 Then called *Esther* **Ester** for *Hatach* **Hathach**,
one of the *king's* **chamberlains** **sovereign's** **eunuchs**,
whom he had *appointed* **stood** to *attend upon* **face** her,
and *gave him a commandment* **misvahed**
to *Mordecai* **for** **Mordekay**,
to know what it was, and why it was.
6 So *Hatach* **Hathach** went forth to *Mordecai* **Mordekay**
unto the *street* **broadway** of the city,
which was *before* **at the face**
of the *king's* **gate** **sovereign's** **portal**.
7 And *Mordecai* **Mordekay** told him
of all that had happened unto him,

ESTER 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

The silver is given to you — the people also
to work with them as *is* good in your eyes.
12 Then they call the scribes of the sovereign
on the thirteenth of the first month;
and they inscribe
according to all that Haman misvahed
to the satraps of the sovereign
and to the governors
over jurisdiction by jurisdiction;
and to the governors of people by people
of jurisdiction by jurisdiction;
according to the inscribings thereof;
and to people by people after their tongue;
inscribed in the name of sovereign Achash Rosh
and sealed with the signet of the sovereign.
13 And they send scrolls by the hand of runners
into all the jurisdictions of the sovereign
— to desolate, to slaughter and to destroy
all Yah Hudiyim — from lad to old man,
toddlers and women, in one day,
upon the thirteenth of the twelfth month
— the month Adar
and spoil their plunder;
14 the transcript of the inscribings for an edict
to be given jurisdiction by jurisdiction
is exposed to all people
to be ready against that day.
15 The runners go,
hastened by the word of the sovereign
and the edict is given in Shushan palace.
And the sovereign and Haman sit to drink;
and the city Shushan is perplexed.

ESTER TOLD OF THE PLOT OF HAMAN

4 And Mordekay perceives all that was worked,
and Mordekay rips his clothes
and enrobes saq with ashes;
and goes midst the city
and cries a great and a bitter cry;
2 and he even comes
at the face of the portal of the sovereign
— for no one enters the portal of the sovereign
enrobed with saq.
3 And in jurisdiction by jurisdiction
whatever place
the word of the sovereign and his edict touches,
there is great mourning among the Yah Hudiyim
and fasting and weeping and chopping;
and many spread in saq and ashes.
4 And the lasses of Ester
and her eunuchs come and tell her.
And the sovereignness writhes mightily;
and she sends clothes to enrobe Mordekay
and to turn aside his saq from him;
but he takes it not.
5 And Ester calls for Hathach,
one of the eunuchs of the sovereign
whom he stands at her face;
to misvah for Mordekay to know what and why.
6 And Hathach goes forth to Mordekay
to the Broadway of the city
at the face of the portal of the sovereign.
7 And Mordekay tells him all that happened to him

ESTHER 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and of the sum of the *money silver*
that Haman had *promised said*
to pay **weigh** to the *king's sovereign's* treasuries
for the *Jews Yah Hudiym*, to destroy them.
8 Also he gave him
the *copy transcript* of the *writing inscribing*
of the *decree edict* that was given at Shushan
to *destroy desolate* them,
to *shew it unto Esther have Ester see*,
and to declare it unto her,
and to *charge misvah* her
that she should go in unto the *king sovereign*,
to *make supplication unto beseech charism of him*,
and to *make request before him beseech at his face*
for her people.
9 And *Hatach Hathach* came and told *Esther Ester*
the words of *Mordecai Mordekay*.
10 Again *Esther spake And Ester said* unto *Hatach Hathach*,
and gave him *commandment misvahed*
unto *Mordecai for Mordekay*;
11 All the *king's sovereign's* servants, and the people
of the *king's provinces sovereign's jurisdictions*,
do know, that whosoever, whether man or woman,
shall come unto the *king sovereign* into the inner court,
who is not called,
there is one *law edict* of his to *put deathify him to death*,
except **apart from** such to whom the *king sovereign*
shall *hold out spread* the golden *sceptre scion*,
that he may live:
but I have not been called
to come in unto the *king sovereign* these thirty days.
12 And they told to *Mordecai Mordekay Esther's Ester's* words.
13 Then *Mordecai Mordekay*
commanded to answer Esther said to respond to Ester,
Think Consider not with *thyself thy soul*
that thou shalt escape in the *king's sovereign's* house,
more than all the *Jews Yah Hudiym*.
THE MISSION OF SOVEREIGNNESS ESTER
14 For if **in hushing**,
thou *altogether holdest thy peace hushes* at this time,
then shall *there enlargement respite*
and *deliverance arise rescue stand*
to the *Jews Yah Hudiym* from another place;
but thou and thy father's house shall be destroyed:
and who knoweth whether
thou *art come to touchest* the *kingdom sovereigndom*
for *such a time as this?*
15 Then *Esther bade them Ester said to*
return *Mordecai Mordekay* this *answer*,
16 Go, gather *together* all the *Jews Yah Hudiym*
that are *present found* in Shushan, and fast ye for me,
and neither eat nor drink three days, night or day:
I also and my *maidens will lasses shall* fast likewise;
and *so will thus shall* I go in unto the *king sovereign*,
which is not according to the *law edict*:
and if I *perish destruct*, I *perish destruct*.
17 So *Mordecai went his way Mordekay passed*,
and *did worked* according to all
that *Esther Ester* had *commanded misvahed* him.
THE PETITION OF SOVEREIGNNESS ESTER
5 Now it came to pass **And so be it**, on the third day,
that *Esther Ester*
put on enrobed her *royal sovereigndom apparel*,
and stood in the inner court
of the *king's sovereign's* house,
over against **opposite** the *king's sovereign's* house:
and the *king sat sovereign settled*
upon *his royal throne the throne of his sovereigndom*
in the *royal house house of the sovereigndom*,
over against **opposite** the *gate portal* of the house.
2 And it was so,
when the *king sovereign*
saw *Esther Ester* the *queen sovereignness*
standing in the court,
that she *obtained received charism* in his *sight eyes*:
and the *king held out sovereign extended* to *Esther Ester*
the golden *sceptre scion* that was in his hand.
So *Esther drew near Ester approached*,
and touched the top of the *sceptre scion*.

ESTER 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and of the sum of the silver that Haman said
to weigh to the treasuries of the sovereign
to destroy the *Yah Hudiym*:
8 and he gives him the transcript of the inscribing
of the edict given at Shushan to desolate them;
to have Ester see and to declare it to her;
and to misvah to her to go in to the sovereign,
to beseech charism of him
and to beseech at his face for her people.
9 And Hathach comes and tells Ester
the words of Mordekay:
10 and Ester says to Hathach
and misvahs for Mordekay;
11 All the servants and the people of the sovereign
of the jurisdictions of the sovereign know,
that whoever — whether man or woman,
come to the sovereign into the inner court,
who is not called,
there is one edict of his — to deathify him
— apart from such to whom the sovereign
spreads the golden scion — then they live;
but I am not called
to come in to the sovereign these thirty days.
12 — and they tell Mordekay the words of Ester.
13 And Mordekay says to respond to Ester,
Consider not in your soul
that being in the house of the sovereign
you escape any more than all the *Yah Hudiym*.
THE MISSION OF SOVEREIGNNESS ESTER
14 But if in hushing, you hush at this time,
then respite and rescue to the *Yah Hudiym*
stands from another place;
but you and the house of your father is destroyed;
and who knows
whether you reach the *sovereigndom*
for a time as this?
15 Then Ester says to return this to Mordekay,
16 Go, gather all the *Yah Hudiym* found in Shushan
and fast you for me;
and neither eat nor drink three days, night or day;
I and also my lasses fast likewise;
and thus I go in to the sovereign,
which is not according to the edict;
and if I destruct, I destruct.
17 So Mordekay passes
and works according to all Ester misvahs him.
THE PETITION OF SOVEREIGNNESS ESTER
5 And so be it, on the third day,
Ester enrobes her *sovereigndom*;
and stands in the inner court
of the house of the sovereign,
opposite the house of the sovereign;
and the sovereign
settles on the throne of his *sovereigndom*
in the house of the *sovereigndom*,
opposite the portal of the house.
2 And so be it,
the sovereign sees Ester the *sovereignness*
stand in the court,
and she receives charism in his eyes;
and the sovereign extends
the golden scion in his hand to Ester:
and Ester approaches
and touches the top of the scion.

ESTHER 5, 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 Then said the *king sovereign* unto her,
What *wilt thou to thee, queen Esther sovereignty Ester?*
and what is thy request?
so be it shall be even given thee
to the half of the *kingdom sovereignty*.
4 And *Esther answered Ester said,*
If it seem **be** good unto the *king sovereign,*
let the *king sovereign* and Haman come this day
unto the banquet that I have *prepared worked* for him.
5 Then the *king sovereign* said,
Cause Haman to make haste,
that he may *do work* as *Esther Ester* hath *said worded*.
So the *king sovereign* and Haman came
to the banquet that *Esther Ester* had *prepared worked*.
6 And the *king sovereign* said unto *Esther Ester*
at the banquet of wine,
What is thy petition?
and **so be** it shall be *granted given* thee:
and what is thy request?
even to the half of the *kingdom sovereignty*
so be it shall be *performed worked*.
7 Then answered *Esther Ester,* and said,
My petition and my request is;
8 If I have found *favour charism*
in the *sight eyes* of the *king sovereign,*
and if it *please be good with* the *king sovereign*
to *grant give* my petition,
and to *perform work* my request,
let the *king sovereign* and Haman come to the banquet
that I shall *prepare work* for them,
and I *will do shall work* to morrow
as the *king hath said*
according to the word of the sovereign.

HAMAN FILLED WITH FURY

9 Then went Haman forth that day
joyful cheerful and with a *glad good* heart:
but when Haman saw *Mordecai Mordekay*
in the *king's gate sovereign's portal,*
that he *stood arose* not up, nor *moved agitated* for him,
he was *full of indignation filled with fury*
against *Mordecai Mordekay*.
10 Nevertheless Haman *refrained restrained* himself:
and when he came *home to his house,*
he sent and called for his *friends loved ones,*
and Zeresh his *wife woman*.
11 And Haman *told scribed* them
of the *glory honour* of his riches,
and the *multitude abundance* of his *children sons,*
and all *the things those*
wherein the *king sovereign* had *promoted greated* him,
and how he had *advanced lifted* him
above the *princes governors* and servants
of the *king sovereign*.
12 Haman said moreover,
Yea, *Esther Ester* the *queen sovereignty*
did let no man come in with the *king sovereign*
unto the banquet that she had *prepared worked*
but myself;
and to morrow am I *invited called* unto her also
with the *king sovereign*.
13 Yet all this *avaieth equateth* me *nothing naught,*
so long as **all the time**
that I see *Mordecai Mordekay* the *Jew Yah Hudiy*
sitting settled at the *king's gate sovereign's portal*.
14 Then said Zeresh his *wife woman*
and all his *friends loved ones* unto him,
Let a *gallows tree* be *made worked* of fifty cubits high,
and to *morrow in the morning*
speak say thou unto the *king sovereign*
that *Mordecai Mordekay* may be hanged thereon:
then go thou in *merrily cheerfully* with the *king sovereign*
unto the banquet.
And the *thing word well*—pleased **the face of** Haman;
and he caused the *gallows tree* to be *made worked*.

MORDEKAY HONOURED

6 On that night
could not the king sleep the sovereign's sleep fled away,
and he *commanded said* to bring the *book scroll*
of *records memorial* of the *chronicles words of the days;*

ESTER 5, 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 And the sovereign says to her,
What to you, sovereignty Ester?
And what *is* your request?
so be it even given you to the half of the sovereignty.
4 And Ester says,
If it be good to the sovereign,
may the sovereign and Haman come this day
to the banquet I worked for him.
5 And the sovereign says,
Have Haman hasten to work as Ester words.
— and the sovereign and Haman come
to the banquet Ester worked.
6 And the sovereign says to Ester
at the banquet of wine,
What is your petition?
and so be it given you?
And what is your request?
— even to the half of the sovereignty
so be it worked.
7 And Ester answers and says,
My petition and my request is;
8 If I find charism in the eyes of the sovereign
and if it is good with the sovereign
to give my petition and to work my request,
may the sovereign and Haman
come to the banquet I work for them;
and tomorrow
I work according to the word of the sovereign.

HAMAN FILLED WITH FURY

9 And that day Haman goes
— cheerful and with a good heart;
and Haman sees Mordekay
in the portal of the sovereign;
that he neither rises nor agitates for him,
he is filled with fury against Mordekay.
10 And Haman restrains himself;
and comes to his house:
and he sends and calls for his loved ones
and Zeresh his woman:
and Haman scribes them
of the honor of his riches
and the abundance of his sons
and all those wherein the sovereign greates him;
and how he lifts him
above the governors and servants of the sovereign.
12 And Haman says,
Yes, Ester the sovereignty
has no man come in with the sovereign
to the banquet she works, except me;
and tomorrow also
I am called to her with the sovereign.
13 And all this equates me naught,
all the time I see Mordekay the Yah Hudiy
settling at the portal of the sovereign.
14 And Zeresh his woman
and all his loved ones say to him,
Work a tree fifty cubits high;
and in the morning
say to the sovereign to hang Mordekay thereon;
then go in cheerfully with the sovereign
to the banquet.
— and the word well—pleases the face of Haman;
and he works the tree.

MORDEKAY HONORED

6 On that night, the sleep of the sovereign flees;
and he says to bring
the scroll of memorial of the words of the days;

ESTHER 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they were read **called out**
before **at the face of** the king **sovereign**.
2 And it was found *written* **inscribed**,
that *Mordecai* **Mordekay**
had told of Bighthana and Teresh,
two of the *king's chamberlains* **sovereign's eunuchs**,
the *keepers* **guards** of the *door* **threshold**,
who sought to *lay* **send their** hand
on the *king Ahasuerus* **sovereign Achash Rosh**.
3 And the *king* **sovereign** said,
What *honour* **esteem** and *dignity* **greatness**
hath been *done* **worked** to *Mordecai* **Mordekay** for this?
Then said the *king's servants* **sovereign's lads**
that ministered unto him,
There is nothing done **No word hath been worked**
for him.
4 And the *king* **sovereign** said, Who is in the court?
Now Haman was come
into the outward court of the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
to *speak* **say** unto the *king* **sovereign**
to hang *Mordecai* **Mordekay** on the *gallows* **tree**
that he had prepared for him.
5 And the *king's servants* **sovereign's lads** said unto him,
Behold, Haman standeth in the court.
And the *king* **sovereign** said, Let him come in.
6 So Haman came in.
And the *king* **sovereign** said unto him,
What shall be *done* **worked** unto the man
whom the *king* **sovereign** delighteth to *honour* **esteem**?
Now Haman *thought* **said** in his heart,
To whom *would* **should** the *king* **sovereign** delight
to *do honour* **work esteem** more than to myself?
7 And Haman *answered* **said** to the *king* **sovereign**,
For the man
whom the *king* **sovereign** delighteth to *honour* **esteem**,
8 Let the *royal apparel* **robe of the sovereigndom**
be brought
which the *king useth* to *wear* **sovereign enroboth**,
and the horse that the *king* **sovereign** rideth upon,
and the *crown royal* **diadem of the sovereigndom**
which is set *given* upon his head:
9 And let this *apparel* **robe** and horse
be *delivered* **given** to the hand of *one* **the man**
of the *king's* **sovereign's** most noble *princes* **governors**,
that they may *array* **enrobe** the man *withal*
whom the *king* **sovereign** delighteth to *honour* **esteem**,
and *bring him* **have him ride** on horseback
through the *street* **broadway** of the city,
and *proclaim before him* **call out at his face**,
Thus shall it be *done* **worked** to the man
whom the *king* **sovereign** delighteth to *honour* **esteem**.
10 Then the *king* **sovereign** said to Haman,
Make haste, and take the *apparel* **robe** and the horse,
as thou hast *said* **worded**,
and *do* **work** even so
to *Mordecai* **Mordekay** the *Jew* **Yah Huidiy**,
that *sitteth* **settleth** at the *king's gate* **sovereign's portal**:
let *nothing fail* **no word fall**
of all that thou hast *spoken* **worded**.
11 Then took Haman the *apparel* **robe** and the horse,
and *arrayed* **enrobed** *Mordecai* **Mordekay**,
and *brought him on horseback* **had him ride**
through the *street* **broadway** of the city,
and *proclaimed before him* **called out at his face**,
Thus shall it be *done* **worked** unto the man
whom the *king* **sovereign** delighteth to *honour* **esteem**.
12 And *Mordecai* **Mordekay**
came again **returned** to the *king's gate* **sovereign's portal**.
But Haman hasted to his house mourning,
and having his head covered.
13 And Haman *told* **scribed to** Zeresh his *wife* **woman**
and all his *friends* **loved ones**
every thing **all** that had befallen him.
Then said his wise men and Zeresh his *wife* **woman**
unto him,
If *Mordecai* **Mordekay** be of the seed of the *Jews* **Yah Huidiyim**,

ESTER 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they call them out at the face of the sovereign.
2 And they find inscribed,
that Mordekay had told of Bighthana and Teresh,
two of the eunuchs of the sovereign
— guards of the threshold
who seek to send their hand
on the sovereign Achash Rosh.
3 And the sovereign says,
What esteem and greatness
was worked to Mordekay for this?
And the lads of the sovereign
who minister to him say,
No word was worked for him.
4 And the sovereign says, Who is in the court?
— and Haman comes into the outward court
of the house of the sovereign,
to say to the sovereign
to hang Mordekay on the tree
he prepared for him.
5 And the lads of the sovereign say to him,
Behold, Haman stands in the court.
6 And the sovereign says, Have him come in.
— and Haman comes in.
And the sovereign says to him,
What work we to the man
whom the sovereign delights to esteem?
And in his heart, Haman says,
Who delights the sovereign to work esteem
more than myself?
7 And Haman says to the sovereign,
For the man
whom the sovereign delights to esteem,
8 bring the robe of the sovereigndom
which the sovereign enrobes
and the horse the sovereign rides
and give the diadem of the sovereigndom
upon his head;
9 and give this robe and horse
to the hand of the man
of the most noble governors of the sovereign
— to enrobe the man
whom the sovereign delights to esteem;
and ride him horseback
through the *broadway* of the city
and call out at his face;
thus work to the man
whom the sovereign delights to esteem.
10 And the sovereign says to Haman,
Hasten, take the robe and the horse as you word,
and work even thus to Mordekay the Yah Huidiy
who settles at the portal of the sovereign;
fell no word of all you word.
11 And Haman takes the robe and the horse
and enrobes Mordekay
and rides him through the *broadway* of the city
and calls out at his face,
Thus be it worked to the man
whom the sovereign delights to esteem.
12 And Mordekay
returns to the portal of the sovereign;
and Haman hastens to his house mourning
and covers his head:
13 and Haman scribes to Zeresh his woman
and all his loved ones of all that befalls him.
And his wise men and Zeresh his woman
say to him,
If Mordekay is of the seed of the Yah Huidiyim,

ESTHER 6—8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

before **at the face of** whom thou hast begun to fall,
 thou shalt not prevail against him,
 but **in falling**, shalt *surely* fall **before him at his face**.
 14 And while they were yet *talking* **wording** with him,
came the king's chamberlains
the sovereign's eunuchs touched,
 and hastened to bring Haman unto the banquet
 that *Esther Ester* had *prepared* **worked**.

HAMAN HANGED

7 So **And** the *king* **sovereign** and Haman
 came to *banquet* **drink**
 with *Esther Ester* the *queen* **sovereigness**.
 2 And the *king* **sovereign** said again unto *Esther Ester*
 on the second day at the banquet of wine,
 What is thy petition, *queen* **Esther sovereigness Ester?**
 and **so be** it *shall be granted* **given** thee:
 and what is thy request?
 and **so be** it *shall be performed* **worked**,
 even to the half of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
 3 Then *Esther Ester* the *queen* **sovereigness**
 answered and said,
 If I have found *favour* **charism** in thy *sight* **eyes**,
 O *king* **sovereign**,
 and if it *please* **be good with** the *king* **sovereign**,
 let my *life* **soul** be given me at my petition,
 and my people at my request:
 4 For we are sold, I and my people,
 to be *destroyed* **desolated**,
 to be *slain* **slaughtered**, and to *perish* **destruct**.
 But if **Even though** we had been sold
 for *bondmen* **servants** and *bondwomen* **maids**,
 I had *held my tongue* **hushed**,
 although the *enemy* **tribulator**
could not countervail **equated not**
 the *king's* **sovereign's** damage.
 5 Then the *king* **Ahasuerus sovereign Achash Rosh**
 answered
 and said unto *Esther Ester* the *queen* **sovereigness**,
 Who is he, and where is he,
that durst presume in his heart **whose heart hath filled him**
 to do so **thus to work?**
 And *Esther Ester* said,
 The *adversary* **tribulator** and enemy
 is this *wicked* **evil** Haman.
 Then Haman was *afraid before* **frightened at the face**
of the king sovereign and the *queen* **sovereigness**.
 7 And the *king* **sovereign** arising from the banquet of wine
 in his *wrath* **fury** went into the palace garden:
 and Haman stood up
 to *make request* **beseech** for his *life* **soul**
 to *Esther Ester* the *queen* **sovereigness**;
 for he saw that there was evil
determined **finished** against him by the *king* **sovereign**.
 8 Then the *king* **sovereign**
 returned out of the palace garden
 into the *place* **house** of the banquet of wine;
 and Haman was fallen upon the bed
 whereon *Esther Ester* was.
 Then said the *king* **sovereign**,
Will Shall he *force* **subdue** the *queen* **sovereigness**
 also **before in front of** me in the house?
 As the word went out of *king's* **sovereign's** mouth,
 they covered Haman's face.
 9 And Harbonah, one of the *chamberlains* **eunuchs**,
 said **before at the face of** the *king* **sovereign**,
 Behold also, the *gallows* **tree** fifty cubits high,
 which Haman had *made* **worked** for *Mordecai* **Mordekay**,
 who had *spoken* **worded** good for the *king* **sovereign**,
 standeth in the house of Haman.
 Then the *king* **sovereign** said, Hang him thereon.
 10 So they hanged Haman on the *gallows* **tree**
 that he had prepared for *Mordecai* **Mordekay**.
 Then was the *king's* **wrath** **sovereign's** *fury*
pacified **assuaged**.

MORDEKAY PROMOTED

8 On that day
 did the *king* **Ahasuerus sovereign Achash Rosh**
 give the house of Haman
 the *Jews'* **enemy** **Yah Hudiym's** **tribulator**

ESTER 6—8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

at the face of whom you begin to fall,
 you prevail not against him:
 but in falling, fall at his face.
 14 And as they still word with him,
 the eunuchs of the sovereign touch
 and hasten to bring Haman to the banquet
 Ester worked.

HAMAN HANGED

7 And the sovereign and Haman
 come to drink with Ester the sovereigness.
 2 And the sovereign also says to Ester
 on the second day at the banquet of wine,
 What is your petition, sovereigness Ester?
 and so be it given you;
 And what is your request?
 and so be it worked to the half of the sovereigndom.
 3 And Ester the sovereigness answers and says,
 If I find charism in your eyes, O sovereign
 and if it be good with the sovereign,
 may my soul be given me at my petition
 and my people at my request;
 4 for we have been sold, I and my people,
 to desolate, to slaughter and to destruct.
 Even though we have been sold
 for servants and maids,
 I hushed;
 although the tribulator
 equated not the damage of the sovereign.
 5 And sovereign Achash Rosh answers
 and says to Ester the sovereigness,
 Who is he and where is he,
 whose heart has filled him thus to work?
 6 And Ester says,
 The tribulator and enemy is this evil Haman.
 — and Haman is frightened at the face
 of the sovereign and the sovereigness.
 7 And the sovereign rises from the banquet of wine,
 and in his fury goes into the palace garden;
 and Haman stands
 to beseech for his soul to Ester the sovereigness;
 for he sees that there is evil finished against him
 by the sovereign.
 8 And the sovereign returns from the palace garden
 to the house of the banquet of wine;
 and Haman falls upon the bed whereon Ester is.
 And the sovereign says,
 Subdues he also the sovereigness
 in front of me in the house?
 As the word goes from the mouth of the sovereign,
 they cover the face of Haman.
 9 And Harbonah, one of the eunuchs,
 says at the face of the sovereign,
 Behold also, the tree fifty cubits high,
 which Haman worked for Mordekay
 who worded good for the sovereign,
 stands in the house of Haman.
 And the sovereign says, Hang him thereon.
 10 — and they hang Haman on the tree
 he prepared for Mordekay
 — and the fury of the sovereign is assuaged.

MORDEKAY PROMOTED

8 On that day
 sovereign Achash Rosh gives the house of Haman
 the tribulator of the Yah Hudiym

ESTHER 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

unto *Esther Ester* the queen **sovereignness**.
And *Mordecai Mordekay*
came before **at the face of the king sovereign**;
for *Esther Ester* had told what he was unto her.
2 And the king took **sovereign twisted** off his ring signet,
which he had taken **passed** from Haman,
and gave it unto *Mordecai Mordekay*.
And *Esther Ester* set *Mordecai Mordekay*
over the house of Haman.
3 And *Esther spake yet again Ester* added to word
before **at the face of the king sovereign**,
and fell down at **the face of** his feet,
and besought **charism of** him with **tears weeping**
to **put away pass over** the **mischief evil**
of Haman the *Agagite Agagiy*,
and his device **fabrication** that he had **devised fabricated**
against the *Jews Yah Hudiym*.
4 Then the *king sovereign*
held out spread the golden **sceptre scion**
toward *Esther Ester*.
So *Esther Ester* arose,
and stood before **at the face of the king sovereign**,
5 And said, If it please **be good with** the *king sovereign*,
and if I have found **favour charism** in his **sight face**,
and the **thing seem right word prosper**
before **at the face of the king sovereign**,
and I be **pleasing goodly** in his eyes
let it be **written inscribed**
to reverse **return the letters scrolls**
devised by the fabrication of Haman
the son of *Hammedatha Medatha* the *Agagite Agagiy*,
which he wrote **inscribed**
to destroy the *Jews Yah Hudiym*
which are in all
the *king's provinces sovereign's jurisdictions*:
6 For how can I **endure to**
see the evil that shall **come unto find** my people?
or how can I **endure to**
see the destruction of my kindred?
7 Then the *king Ahasuerus sovereign Achash Rosh*
said unto *Esther Ester* the queen **sovereignness**
and to *Mordecai Mordekay* the *Jew Yah Hudiym*, Behold,
I have given *Esther Ester* the house of Haman,
and him they have hanged upon the **gallows tree**,
because he **laid spread** his hand
upon the *Jews Yah Hudiym*.
8 Write **Inscribe** ye also for the *Jews Yah Hudiym*,
as it **liketh you be good in your eyes**,
in the *king's sovereign's name*,
and seal it with the *king's ring sovereign's signet*:
for the **writing inscribing**
which is **written inscribed** in the *king's sovereign's name*,
and sealed with the *king's ring sovereign's signet*,
may that no man **reverse overturneth**.
9 Then were the *king's sovereign's scribes*
called at that time in the third month,
that is, the month Sivan,
on the three and twentieth **day** thereof;
and it was **written inscribed** according to all
that *Mordecai commanded Mordekay misvahed*
unto the *Jews Yah Hudiym*,
and to the *lieutenants satraps*, and the *deputies governors*
and *rulers governors* of the *provinces jurisdictions*
which are from *India Hodu* unto *Ethiopia Kush*,
an hundred twenty and seven *provinces jurisdictions*,
unto every *province jurisdiction by jurisdiction*
according to the **writing inscribing** thereof,
and unto every people **by people**
after their language,
and to the *Jews Yah Hudiym*
according to their **writing inscribings**,
and according to their **language tongue**.
10 And he wrote **inscribed**
in the *king Ahasuerus' sovereign Achash Rosh's name*,
and sealed it with the *king's ring sovereign's signet*,
and sent **letters scrolls**
by **posts the hand of runners** on horseback,
and riders on *mules stallions, camels mules,*
and *young dromedaries sons of mares*:

ESTER 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to *Esther* the sovereignness:
and *Mordekay* comes at the face of the sovereign;
for *Esther* had told what he was to her.
2 And the sovereign twists the signet
he passed from Haman,
and gives it to *Mordekay*;
and *Esther* sets *Mordekay* over the house of Haman:
3 and *Esther* adds to word at the face of the sovereign
and falls at the face of his feet;
and with weeping beseeches his charism
to pass over the evil of Haman the *Agagiy*
and the fabrication he fabricated
against the *Yah Hudiym*.
4 — and the sovereign
spreads the golden scion toward *Esther*.
And *Esther* rises
and stands at the face of the sovereign,
5 and says, If it be good with the sovereign
and if I find charism in his face
and the word prospers at the face of the sovereign
and I be goodly in his eyes,
inscribe to return the scrolls
— the fabrication of Haman
the son of *Medatha the Agagiy*,
wherein he inscribed to destroy the *Yah Hudiym*
in all the jurisdictions of the sovereign.
6 For how can I see the evil which finds my people?
Or how can I see the destruction of my kindred?
7 And sovereign *Achash Rosh*
says to *Esther* the sovereignness
and to *Mordekay* the *Yah Hudiym*,
Behold, I give *Esther* the house of Haman;
and they hanged him upon the tree
because he spread his hand on the *Yah Hudiym*.
8 And you, you inscribe also for the *Yah Hudiym*
as *is* good in your eyes,
in the name of the sovereign;
and seal it with the signet of the sovereign;
for the inscribing
inscribed in the name of the sovereign
and sealed with the signet of the sovereign
so that no man overturns.
9 And at that time,
in the third month — the month Sivan,
on the twenty—third thereof,
they call the scribes of the sovereign
and inscribe according to all
Mordekay misvahed to the *Yah Hudiym*
— and to the satraps and the governors
and governors of the jurisdictions
from *Hodu* to *Kush*
— a hundred and twenty—seven jurisdictions
— jurisdiction by jurisdiction
according to the inscribing thereof;
and to people by people after their language;
and to the *Yah Hudiym* according to their inscribings
and according to their tongue.
10 And in the name of sovereign *Achash Rosh*
he inscribes and seals it
with the signet of the sovereign;
and sends scrolls
by the hand of runners on horseback
and riders on stallions, mules and sons of mares;

ESTHER 8, 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

11 Wherein the king **sovereign**
granted **gave** the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
which were in every city **by city**
to gather themselves together **congregate**,
and to stand for their **life soul**,
to destroy **desolate**, to slay **slaughter**,
and to cause to perish **destroy**,
all the power **virtuous** of the people and province
that would assault **should besiege** them,
both little ones **toddlers** and women,
and to take the spoil of them for a prey **spoil their plunder**,
12 Upon one day in all the provinces **jurisdictions**
of king Ahasuerus **sovereign Achash Rosh**, namely,
upon the thirteenth day of the twelfth month,
which is the month Adar.
13 The copy **transcript** of the writing **inscribing**
for a commandment **an edict** to be given
in every province **jurisdiction by jurisdiction**
was published **exposed** unto all people,
and that the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
should be ready against that day
to avenge themselves on their enemies.
14 So the posts **runners**
that rode upon mules **stallions** and camels went out,
being hastened and pressed on **hastened**
by the king's commandment **sovereign's word**.
And the decree **edict** was given at Shushan the palace.
15 And Mordecai **Mordekay** went out
from the presence **face** of the king **sovereign**
in royal apparel **a robe of the sovereignty**
of blue and white,
and with a great crown of gold,
and with a garment **robe**
of fine linen **bleached cotton** and purple:
and the city of Shushan
rejoiced **resounded** and was glad **cheered**.
16 The Jews **Yah Hudiym** had light,
and gladness **cheerfulness**,
and joy **rejoicing**, and honour **esteem**.
17 And in every province **jurisdiction by jurisdiction**,
and in every city **by city**,
whithersoever **whatever place**
the king's commandment **sovereign's word**
and his decree came **edict touched**,
the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
had joy **cheer** and gladness **rejoicing**,
a feast **banquet** and a good day.
And many of the people of the land
became Jews **Yah Hudahized**;
for the fear of the Jews **Yah Hudiym** fell upon them.

THE DOMINATION OF THE YAH HUDIYM

9 Now in the twelfth month, that is, the month Adar,
on the thirteenth day of the same,
when the king's commandment **sovereign's word**
and his decree drew near **edict touched**
to be put in execution **worked**,
in the day that the enemies of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
hoped **expected** to have power **dominate** over them,
(though it was turned to the contrary **turned out**
that the Jews had rule **Yah Hudiym dominated** over them
that hated them;)
2 The Jews **Yah Hudiym**
gathered themselves together **congregated** in their cities
throughout all the provinces **jurisdictions**
of the king Ahasuerus **sovereign Achash Rosh**,
to lay send his hand on such as sought their **hurt evil**:
and no man could withstand them **stand at their face**;
for the fear of them fell upon all people.
3 And all the rulers **governors**
of the provinces **jurisdictions**,
and the lieutenants **satraps**, and the deputies **governors**,
and officers **those that did the work**
of the king **sovereign**,
helped **lifted** the Jews **Yah Hudiym**;
because the fear of Mordecai **Mordekay** fell upon them.
4 For Mordecai **Mordekay** was great
in the king's **sovereign's** house,
and his fame
went out throughout all the provinces **jurisdictions**:

ESTER 8, 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

11 wherein the sovereign gives the Yah Hudiym
in city by city
to congregate and to stand for their soul,
to desolate, to slaughter, and to destroy,
all the virtuous of the people and province
and of the toddlers and women who besiege them
and spoil their plunder.
12 On one day
in all the jurisdictions of sovereign Achash Rosh,
on the thirteenth of the twelfth month
— the month Adar
13 — a transcript of the inscribing for an edict
given jurisdiction by jurisdiction
is exposed to all the people;
and that the Yah Hudiym be ready against that day
to avenge themselves on their enemies.
14 So the runners
ride upon stallions and camels go hastening
— hastened by the word of the sovereign:
— and the edict is given at Shushan palace.
15 And Mordekay
goes from the face of the sovereign
in a robe of the sovereignty of blue and white
and with a great crown of gold
and with a robe of bleached cotton and purple;
and the city of Shushan resounds and cheers.
16 The Yah Hudiym have light and cheerfulness
and rejoicing and esteem.
17 And jurisdiction by jurisdiction and city by city,
and whatever place
the word and edict of the sovereign touches,
the Yah Hudiym cheer and rejoice
— a banquet and a good day.
And many of the people of the land Yah Hudahize;
for the fear of the Yah Hudiym falls upon them.

THE DOMINATION OF THE YAH HUDIYM

9 And in the twelfth month — the month Adar,
on the thirteenth day of the same,
when they touch to work
the word and edict of the sovereign
— in the day the enemies of the Yah Hudiym
expect to dominate over them,
it turns out that the Yah Hudiym
dominate over them who hate them
— the Yah Hudiym congregate in their cities
throughout all the jurisdictions
of sovereign Achash Rosh,
to send his hand on such as seek their evil;
and no man stands at their face;
for the fear of them falls on all people:
3 and all the governors of the jurisdictions
and the satraps and the governors
and those working the work of the sovereign,
lift the Yah Hudiym:
because the fear of Mordekay falls upon them:
4 for Mordekay is great
in the house of the sovereign
and his fame goes throughout all the jurisdictions;

ESTHER 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for this man *Mordecai Mordekay*
waxed greater **walked** and greater **greatened**.

5 Thus the Jews **Yah Hudiym** smote all their enemies
with the stroke of the sword,
and slaughter, and destruction,
and *did* **worked** *what they would* **according to their pleasure**
unto those that hated them.

6 And in Shushan the palace the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
slew **slaughtered** and destroyed five hundred men.

7 And Parshandatha, and Dalphon, and Aspatha,
8 And Poratha, and *Adalia* **Adalya**, and Aridatha,
9 And Parmashta, and Arisai, and *Aridai* **Ariday**,
and *Vajezatha* **Vayezatha**,

10 The ten sons of Haman
the son of *Hammedatha* **Medatha**,
the *enemy* **tribulator** of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**,
slew **slaughtered** they;
but on the *spoil* **laid** **plunder** they **spread** not their hand.

11 On that day
the number of those that were *slain* **slaughtered**
in Shushan the palace
was brought *before* **at the face of the king** **sovereign**.

12 And the *king* **sovereign**
said unto *Esther* **Ester** the *queen* **sovereigness**,
The Jews **Yah Hudiym** have *slain* **slaughtered**
and destroyed five hundred men in Shushan the palace,
and the ten sons of Haman;
what have they *done* **worked** in the *rest* **survivors**
of the *king's* *provinces* **sovereign's** **jurisdictions**?
now what is thy petition?
and **so be** it *shall be granted* **given** thee:
or what is thy request *further* **again**?
and **so be** it *shall be done* **worked**.

13 Then said *Esther* **Ester**,
If it *please* **be good with** the *king* **sovereign**,
let it be *granted* **given**
to the Jews **Yah Hudiym** which are in Shushan
to *do* **work** to morrow also
according unto this day's *decree* **edict**,
and let Haman's ten sons
be hanged upon the *gallows* **tree**.

14 And the *king* **sovereign**
commanded **said** it so to be *done* **worked**:
and the *decree* **edict** was given at Shushan;
and they hanged Haman's ten sons.

15 For the Jews **Yah Hudiym** that were in Shushan
gathered themselves together **congregated**
on the fourteenth day also of the month Adar,
and *slew* **slaughtered** three hundred men at Shushan;
but on the *prey* **plunder**
they *laid* **spread** not their hand.

16 But the *other* Jews **Yah Hudiym** **survivors**
that were in the *king's* *provinces* **sovereign's** **jurisdictions**
gathered themselves together **congregated**,
and stood for their *lives* **souls**,
and *had rest* **rested** from their enemies,
and *slew* **slaughtered** of their *foes* **haters**
seventy and five thousand,
but they *laid* **spread** not their hands
on the *prey* **plunder**,

17 On the thirteenth day of the month Adar;
and on the fourteenth day of the same rested they,
and *made* **worked** it
a day of *feasting* **banqueting** and *gladness* **cheerfulness**.

18 But the Jews **Yah Hudiym** that were at Shushan
assembled together **congregated**
on the thirteenth day thereof,
and on the fourteenth thereof;
and on the fifteenth day of the same they rested,
and *made* **worked** it
a day of *feasting* **banqueting** and *gladness* **cheerfulness**.

19 Therefore the Jews **Yah Hudiym** of the *villages* **courts**,
that *dwelt* **settled**
in the *unwalled towns* **cities of the suburbs**,
made **worked** the fourteenth day of the month Adar
a day of *gladness* **cheerfulness** and *feasting* **banqueting**,
and a good day,
and of sending portions *one* **man** to *another* **friend**.

ESTER 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for this man Mordekay walks and greatens.

5 Thus the Yah Hudiym smite all their enemies
with the stroke of the sword
and slaughter and destruction;
and work according to their pleasure
to them who hate them:

6 and in Shushan palace the Yah Hudiym
slaughter and destroy five hundred men:
and Parshandatha and Dalphon and Aspatha,
7 and Poratha and Adalya and Aridatha,
8 and Parmashta and Arisai
9 and Ariday and Vayezatha
10 — the ten sons of Haman the son of Medatha,
the tribulator of the Yah Hudiym,
they slaughter;
but they spread not their hand on the plunder.

11 On that day,
they bring the number
of those slaughtered in Shushan palace
at the face of the sovereign:

12 and the sovereign says to Ester the sovereigness,
The Yah Hudiym slaughtered
and destroyed five hundred men in Shushan palace
and the ten sons of Haman;
What work they in the survivors
of the jurisdictions of the sovereign?
And what is your petition?
— and so be it given you;
And what is your request again?
— and so be it worked.

13 And Ester says,
If it is good with the sovereign,
give work to the Yah Hudiym in Shushan tomorrow
also according to the edict of this day;
and hang the ten sons of Haman upon the tree.

14 And the sovereign says to work thus;
and gives the edict at Shushan;
and they hang the ten sons of Haman.

15 And the Yah Hudiym in Shushan also congregate
on the fourteenth day of the month Adar
and slaughter three hundred men at Shushan;
and they spread not their hand on the plunder.

16 And the survivors of the Yah Hudiym
in the jurisdictions of the sovereign
congregate and stand for their souls;
and rest from their enemies;
and slaughter seventy—five thousand of their haters;
and they spread not their hands on the plunder.

17 On the thirteenth day of the month Adar;
and on the fourteenth day of the same
they rest
and work a day of banqueting and cheerfulness.

18 And the Yah Hudiym at Shushan
congregate on the thirteenth thereof
and on the fourteenth thereof;
and on the fifteenth of the same they rest
and work a day of banqueting and cheerfulness.

19 So the Yah Hudiym of the courts,
settling in the cities of the suburbs,
work the fourteenth day of the month Adar
cheerfulness and banqueting
— a good day of sending portions man to friend.

ESTHER 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE DAYS OF PURIM

20 And *Mordecai Mordekay*
wrote **inscribed** these *things words*,
and sent *letters scrolls* unto all the *Jews Yah Hudiym*
that were in all the *provinces jurisdictions*
of the *king Ahasuerus sovereign Achash Rosh*,
both nigh and far,
21 To *stablish raise this* among them,
that they should *keep work*
the fourteenth day of the month Adar,
and the fifteenth day of the same, *yearly year by year*,
22 As the days
wherein the *Jews Yah Hudiym*
rested from their enemies,
and the month which was turned unto them
from *sorrow grief to joy cheer*,
and from mourning into a good day:
that they should *make work* them
days of *feasting banqueting and joy cheer*,
and of sending portions *one man to another friend*,
and gifts to the *poor needy*.
23 And the *Jews Yah Hudiym*
undertook to *do work* as they had begun,
and as *Mordecai Mordekay* had *written inscribed*
unto them;
24 Because Haman
the son of *Hammedatha Medatha*, the *Agagite Agagiy*,
the *enemy tribulator* of all the *Jews Yah Hudiym*,
had *devised fabricated* against the *Jews Yah Hudiym*
to destroy them,
and had *cast felled Pur*, that is, the *lot pebble*,
to *consume agitate* them, and to destroy them;
25 But when *Esther Ester* came
before at the face of the king sovereign,
he *commanded said* by *letters scrolls*
that his *wicked device evil fabrication*,
which he *devised fabricated*
against the *Jews Yah Hudiym*,
should return upon his own head,
and that he and his sons should be hanged
on the *gallows tree*.
26 Wherefore they called these days Purim
after the name of Pur.
Therefore for all the words of this *letter epistle*,
and of that which they had seen
concerning *this matter thus*,
and which *had come touched* unto them,
27 The *Jews ordained Yah Hudiym arose*,
and took upon them, and upon their seed,
and upon all such as joined themselves unto them,
so as it should not *fail pass away*,
that they *would keep should work* these two days
according to their *writing inscribing*,
and according to their *appointed time appointment*
every year by year;
28 And that these days
should be remembered and *kept worked*
throughout every generation by generation,
every family by family,
every province jurisdiction by jurisdiction,
and every city by city;
and that these days of Purim should not *fail pass away*
from among the *Jews Yah Hudiym*,
nor the memorial of them
perish be consumed from their seed.
29 Then *Esther Ester* the *queen sovereigness*,
the daughter of *Abihail Abi Hail*,
and *Mordecai Mordekay* the *Jew Yah Hudiym*,
wrote **inscribed** with all *authority power*,
to *confirm raise* this second *letter epistle* of Purim.
30 And he sent the *letters scrolls*
unto all the *Jews Yah Hudiym*,
to the hundred twenty and seven *provinces jurisdictions*
of the *kingdom sovereigndom* of *Ahasuerus Achash Rosh*,
with words of *peace shalom* and truth,
31 To *confirm raise* these days of Purim
in their *times appointed appointment*,
according as *Mordecai Mordekay* the *Jew Yah Hudiym*

ESTER 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE DAYS OF PURIM

20 And Mordekay inscribes these words
— and sends scrolls to all the Yah Hudiym
in all the jurisdictions of sovereign Achash Rosh
— near and far
21 to raise among them,
to work the fourteenth day of the month Adar,
and the fifteenth day of the same, year by year,
as the days
22 wherein the Yah Hudiym rested from their enemies;
and the month which turned them
from grief to cheer
and from mourning to a good day;
to work them days of banqueting and cheer
and of sending portions man to friend
and gifts to the needy.
23 And the Yah Hudiym
undertake to work as they began
and as Mordekay inscribed to them;
24 because Haman the son of Medatha the Agagiy,
the tribulator of all the Yah Hudiym,
had fabricated against the Yah Hudiym
to destroy them;
and felled Pur — the pebble,
to agitate them and to destroy them;
25 and when it comes at the face of the sovereign,
he says by scrolls,
Return the evil fabrication
he fabricated against the Yah Hudiym
upon his own head;
and hang him and his sons on the tree.
26 So they call these days Purim
after the name of Pur.
So for all the words of this epistle
and for what they saw concerning thus
— and which touched to them,
27 the Yah Hudiym rise
and take upon them and upon their seed
and upon all such as join themselves to them,
so that it not pass away
— that they work these two days
according to their inscribing
and according to their appointment year by year;
28 and that these days be remembered and worked
generation by generation
family by family
jurisdiction by jurisdiction
city by city;
and that neither these days of Purim pass away
from among the Yah Hudiym,
nor the memorial of them
consume from their seed.
29 And Ester the sovereigness
the daughter of Abi Hail
and Mordekay the Yah Hudiym
inscribe with all power
to raise this second epistle of Purim.
30 And he sends the scrolls to all the Yah Hudiym,
— to the hundred and twenty—seven jurisdictions
of the sovereigndom of Achash Rosh,
words of shalom and truth,
31 to raise these days of Purim in their appointment,
according as Mordekay the Yah Hudiym

ESTHER 9, 10

exeGeseg ready research BIBLE

and *Esther* **Esther** the *queen* **sovereignness**
had *enjoined* **raised** them,
and as they had *decreed* **raised**
for *themselves* **their souls** and for their seed,
the *matters* **words** of the fastings and their cry.

32

And the *decree* **edict** of *Esther* **Esther**
confirmed **raised** these *matters* **words** of Purim;
and it was *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**.

THE GREATNESS OF MORDEKAY

10

And the *king* *Ahasuerus* **sovereign** **Achash Rosh**
laid a tribute **set a vassal** upon the land,
and upon the isles of the sea.

2

And all the *acts* **works** of his power and of his might,
and the *declaration* **sum**
of the greatness of *Mordecai* **Mordekay**,
whereunto the *king* *advanced* **sovereign** **greatened** him,
are they not *written* **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**

2

of the *chronicles* **words of the days**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Media* **Maday** and Persia?

3

For *Mordecai* **Mordekay** the *Jew* **Yah Hudy**
was *next* **second**
unto *king* *Ahasuerus* **sovereign** **Achash Rosh**,
and great among the *Jews* **Yah Hudyim**,
and *accepted* **pleased**
of the *multitude* **abundance** of his brethren,
seeking the *wealth* of **goodness** for his people,
and *speaking* *peace* **wording** **shalom** to all his seed.

ESTER 9, 10

exeGeseg companion BIBLE

and *Ester* the *sovereignness* raised them;
and as they raised for their souls and for their seed,
the words of the fastings and their cry.
32 And the edict of *Ester* raises these words of Purim;
and it is inscribed in the scroll.

10

THE GREATNESS OF MORDEKAY

And *sovereign* *Achash Rosh*
sets a vassal on the land and on the isles of the sea.

2

And all the works of his power and of his might
and the sum of the greatness of *Mordekay*,
whereunto the *sovereign* *greatened* him,
are they not inscribed in the scroll
of the words of the days
of the *sovereigns* of *Maday* and *Persia*?

3

For *Mordekay* the *Yah Hudy*
is *second* to *sovereign* *Achash Rosh*
and great among the *Yah Hudyim*
and pleased by the abundance of his brothers,
seeking the goodness for his people
and wording *shalom* to all his seed.

JOB 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

1 There was a man in the land of *Uz Us*,
whose name was *Job Iyob*;
and that man was *perfect* **integrious** and *upright* **straight**,
and one that *feared* *God* **awed Elohim**,
and *eschewed* **turned aside from evil**.
2 And there were *born* **birthed** unto him
seven sons and three daughters.
3 His *substance* **chattel** also
was seven thousand *sheep* **flocks**,
and three thousand camels,
and five hundred yoke of oxen,
and five hundred she *asses* **burros**,
and a very **mighty** great *household* **servantry**;
so that this man
was the greatest of all the men of the east.
4 And his sons went
and *feasted* **worked a banquet** in their houses,
every one **each man** his day;
and sent and called for their three sisters
to eat and to drink with them.
5 And **so be** it was so,
when the days of *their feasting* **banqueting**
were gone about **revolved**,
that *Job Iyob* sent and *sanctified* **hallowed** them,
and *rose up* **started** early in the morning,
and *offered burnt offerings* **holocausted holocausts**
according to the number of them all:
for *Job Iyob* said,
It may be that **Perhaps** my sons have sinned,
and *cursed* *God* **yet blessed Elohim** in their hearts.
Thus *did Job* **worked Iyob** continually.

THE FIRST CHALLENGE OF SATAN

6 *Now there was* **And so be it**,
a day when the sons of *God* **Elohim**
came to *present* **station** themselves
before the LORD **by Yah Veh**,
and Satan came also *among* **midst** them.
7 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto Satan,
Whence comest thou?
Then Satan answered *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, and said,
From *going* **flitting** to and fro in the earth,
and from walking *up* **forth** and *down* **back** in it.
8 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto Satan,
Hast thou *considered* **set thy heart**
on my servant *Job Iyob*,
that there is none like him in the earth,
a perfect **an integrious** and *an upright* **straight** man,
one that *feareth* *God* **aweth Elohim**,
and *escheweth* **turneth aside from evil**?
9 Then Satan answered *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, and said,
Doth Job Iyob fear *God* **for naught** **Elohim gratuitously**?
10 Hast not thou made an hedge about him,
and *about* **throughout** his house,
and *about* **throughout** all that he hath
on every side **all around**?
thou hast blessed the work of his hands,
and his *substance* **chattel**
is increased **breaketh forth** in the land.
11 But *put forth* **spread** thine hand *now* **I beseech**,
and touch all that he hath,
and he will *curse* **whether he shall bless** thee to thy face.
12 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto Satan, Behold,
all that he hath is in thy *power* **hand**;
only upon himself *put* **spread** not *forth* thine hand.
So **And** Satan went forth
from the *presence* **face of the LORD** **Yah Veh**.

THE FIRST TEST OF IYOB

13 And **so be it**, *there was* a day
when his sons and his daughters
were eating and drinking wine
in their *eldest* **firstbirthed** brother's house:
14 And there came a *messenger* **an angel** unto *Job Iyob*,
and said, The oxen were plowing,
and the *asses* **feeding she burros tending**
beside them **at their hands**:
15 And the Sabeans *fell upon* **felled** them,
and took them away;

IYOB 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

1 There was a man in the land of Us,
his name, Iyob;
and that man being integrious and straight;
and one awing Elohim and turning aside from evil.
2 And seven sons and three daughters
are birthed to him;
3 and his chattel:
seven thousand flocks
and three thousand camels
and five hundred yoke of oxen
and five hundred she burros
and a mighty great servantry;
so that this man is the greatest
of all the men of the east.
4 And his sons go
and work a banquet in their houses
— each man *on* his day;
and they send and call for their three sisters
to eat and to drink with them.
5 And so be it, as the days of banqueting revolve,
Iyob sends and hallows them;
and starts early in the morning
and holocausts holocausts
according to their number;
for Iyob says,
Perhaps my sons have sinned,
yet blessed Elohim in their hearts.
— thus worked Iyob continually.

THE FIRST CHALLENGE OF SATAN

6 And so be it,
a day arrives when the sons of Elohim
come to station themselves by Yah Veh;
and Satan also comes in their midst.
7 And Yah Veh says to Satan,
Whence come you?
And Satan answers Yah Veh and says,
From flitting to and fro in the earth
and from walking forth and back in it.
8 And Yah Veh says to Satan,
Have you set your heart on my servant Iyob,
that there is none like him in the earth?
— an integrious and straight man,
one who awes Elohim
and turns aside from evil?
9 And Satan answers Yah Veh and says,
Iyob, fears he Elohim gratuitously?
10 Make you not a hedge about him
and throughout his house
and throughout all he has all around?
You bless the work of his hands
and his chattel break forth in the land.
11 And yet, spread your hand, I beseech,
and touch all that he has,
whether he blesses you to your face.
12 And Yah Veh says to Satan,
Behold, all he has is in your hand;
only spread not your hand on his self.
— and Satan goes from the face of Yah Veh.

THE FIRST TEST OF IYOB

13 And so be it,
a day his sons and his daughters
are eating and drinking wine
in the house of their firstbirthed brother;
14 and an angel comes to Iyob and says,
The oxen were plowing
and the she burros tending at their hands;
15 and the Sabeans felled them
and took them away;

JOB 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

yea, they have *slain smitten* the *servants lads*
with the *edge mouth* of the sword;
and I only am escaped alone to tell thee.
16 While he was yet *speaking wording*,
there came also another, and said,
The fire of *God Elohim* is fallen from *heaven the heavens*,
and hath burned up the *sheep flocks*,
and the *servants lads*, and consumed them;
and I only am escaped alone to tell thee.
17 While he was yet *speaking wording*,
there came also another, and said,
The *Chaldeans made Kesediym set* out three *bands heads*,
and *fell upon stripped* the camels,
and have *carried taken* them away, yea,
and *slain smitten* the servants
with the *edge mouth* of the sword;
and I only am escaped alone to tell thee.
18 While he was yet *speaking wording*,
there came also another, and said,
Thy sons and thy daughters
were eating and drinking wine
in their *eldest firstbirthed* brother's house:
19 And, behold,
there came a great wind from *across* the wilderness,
and *smote touched* the four corners of the house,
and it fell upon the *young men lads*, and they are dead;
and I only am escaped alone to tell thee.
20 Then *Job Iyob* arose, and *rent ripped* his mantle,
and *shaved sheared* his head,
and fell down upon the *ground earth*,
and *worshipped prostrated*.
21 And said,
Naked came I out of my mother's *womb belly*,
and naked shall I return thither:
the LORD Yah Veh gave,
and *the LORD Yah Veh* hath taken away;
blessed be the name of *the LORD Yah Veh*.
22 In all this *Job Iyob* sinned not,
nor *charged God attributed Elohim*
foolishly with frivolity.

THE SECOND CHALLENGE OF SATAN

2 *Again there was And so be it*,
a day when the sons of *God Elohim*
came to *present station* themselves
before the LORD by Yah Veh,
and Satan came also among them
to *present station* himself *before the LORD by Yah Veh*.
2 And *the LORD Yah Veh* said unto Satan,
From whence comest thou?
And Satan answered *the LORD Yah Veh*, and said,
From *going flitting* to and fro in the earth,
and from walking *up forth* and *down back* in it.
3 And *the LORD Yah Veh* said unto Satan,
Hast thou *considered set thy heart*
on my servant Job Iyob,
that there is none like him in the earth,
a perfect an integrious and an upright straight man,
one that *feareth God aweth Elohim*,
and *escheweth turneth aside from* evil?
and still he *holdeth fast upholdeth* his integrity,
although thou *movedst goadest* me *against him*,
to *destroy swallow* him *without cause gratuitously*.
4 And Satan answered *the LORD Yah Veh*, and said,
Skin for skin, yea,
all that a man hath *will shall* he give for his *life soul*.
5 But *put forth spread* thine hand *now I beseech*,
and touch his bone and his flesh,
and he will *curse whether he shall bless* thee to thy face.
6 And *the LORD Yah Veh* said unto Satan, Behold,
he is in thine hand; but save *guard* his *life soul*.

THE SECOND TEST OF IYOB

7 So went Satan forth
from the *presence face* of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
and smote *Job Iyob* with *sore boils evil ulcers*
from the sole of his foot unto his *crown scalp*.

IYOB 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

yes, they smote the lads
with the mouth of the sword;
and I — I only escaped alone to tell you.
16 While he is yet wording,
another also comes and says,
The fire of Elohim fell from the heavens
and burned up the flocks and the lads
and consumed them;
and I — I only escaped alone to tell you.
17 While he is yet wording,
another also comes and says,
The Kesediym set out three heads
and stripped the camels and took them away;
yes, and smote the servants
with the mouth of the sword;
and I — I only escaped alone to tell you.
18 While he is yet wording,
another also comes and says,
Your sons and your daughters
were eating and drinking wine
in the house of their firstbirthed brother;
and behold,
a great wind came from across the wilderness
and touched the four corners of the house
and it fell upon the lads and they are dead;
and I — I only escaped alone to tell you.
20 Then Iyob rises and rips his mantle
and shears his head
and falls down on the earth and prostrates
and says,
Naked came I from the belly of my mother
and naked I return;
Yah Veh gives and Yah Veh takes;
blessed — the name of Yah Veh.
22 In all this Iyob neither sinned
nor attributed Elohim with frivolity.

THE SECOND CHALLENGE OF SATAN

2 And so be it,
the day the sons of Elohim
come to station themselves by Yah Veh;
and Satan also comes among them
to station himself by Yah Veh.
2 And Yah Veh says to Satan,
Whence come you?
And Satan answers Yah Veh and says,
From flitting to and fro in the earth
and from walking forth and back in it.
3 And Yah Veh says to Satan,
Have you set your heart on my servant Iyob
— that there is no one like him in the earth;
an integrious and straight man;
one who awes Elohim and turns aside from evil?
And still he upholds his integrity
although you goad me to swallow him gratuitously.
4 And Satan answers Yah Veh and says,
Skin for skin;
yes, all a man has he gives for his soul;
but spread your hand, I beseech
and touch his bone and his flesh,
whether he blesses you to your face.
5 And Yah Veh says to Satan,
Behold, he is in your hand; but guard his soul.
7 And Satan goes from the face of Yah Veh
and smites Iyob with evil ulcers
from the sole of his foot to his scalp.

THE SECOND TEST OF IYOB

JOB 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

8 And he took him a potsherd to scrape himself *withal*;
and he *sat down* **settled** among the ashes.
9 Then said his *wife* **woman** unto him,
Dost **Shalt** thou still *retain* **uphold** thine integrity?
curse God **bless Elohim**, and die.
10 But he said unto her, Thou *speakest* **wordest**
as one of the foolish *women* **speakest** **wordeth**.
What? **Yea**,
shall we *receive* **take** good at the hand of *God* **Elohim**,
and shall we not *receive* **take** evil?
In all this *did not Job sin* **lyob sinned not** with his lips.

THE THREE FRIENDS OF IYOB

11 Now when *Job's* **lyob's** three friends
heard of all this evil that was come upon him,
they came *every one* **each man** from his own place;
Eliphaz **Eli Phaz** the *Temanite* **Temaniy**,
and *Bildad* the *Shuhite* **Shuachiy**,
and *Zophar* **Sophar** the *Naamathite* **Naamahiy**:
for they had *made an appointment* **congregated** together
to come to *mourn* **wag** with him
and to *comfort* **sigh** with him.
12 And when they lifted up their eyes afar off,
and *knew* **recognized** him not,
they lifted up their voice, and wept;
and they *rent every one* **ripped each man** his mantle,
and sprinkled dust upon their heads
toward *heaven* **the heavens**.
13 So they *sat down* **settled** with him upon the ground
seven days and seven nights,
and none *spake* **worded** a word unto him:
for they saw that *his grief* **the pain**
was very **mighty** great.

IYOB SPEAKS

3 After this opened *Job* **lyob** his mouth,
and *cursed* **abased** his day.
2 And *Job* *spake* **lyob answered**, and said,
3 Let the day *perish* **destruct** wherein I was *born* **birthed**,
and the night in which it was said,
There is a *man* **mighty** child conceived.
4 Let that day be darkness;
let not *God* **regard** **Elohah** **require** it from above,
neither let the light shine upon it.
5 Let darkness and the shadow of death *stain* **redeem** it;
let a *cloud* **dwelt** **cloudiness** **tabernacle** upon it;
let the *blackness* **eclipses** of the day *terrify* **frighten** it.
6 As for that night, let darkness *seize upon* **take** it;
let it not *be joined* **rejoice** unto the days of the year,
let it not come into the number of the *months* **moons**.
7 Lo **Behold**, let that night be *solitary* **sterile**,
let no *joyful voice* **shout** come therein.
8 Let them curse it that curse the day,
who are ready to
raise up their mourning **waken a leviathan**.
9 Let the stars of the *twilight thereof* **evening breeze**
be dark **darken**;
let it *look for* **await** light, but have none;
neither let it see the *dawning* **eyelids** of the *day* **dawn**:
10 Because it shut not up
the doors of my *mother's womb* **belly**,
nor hid *sorrow* **toil** from mine eyes.
11 Why died I not from the womb?
why did I not give up the ghost
— **expire** when I came out of the belly?
12 Why did the knees *prevent* **anticipate** me?
or why the breasts that I should suck?
13 For now should I have lain *still* **down**
and *been quiet* **rested**,
I should have slept: then had I been at rest,
14 With *kings* **sovereigns** and counsellors of the earth,
which built *desolate places* **parched areas** for themselves;
15 Or with *princes* **governors** that had gold,
who filled their houses with silver:
16 Or as an hidden *untimely birth* **miscarriage**
I had not been;
as infants which never saw light.
17 There the wicked cease from *troubling* **commotion**;
and there the *weary* **be at** **wearied of force** rest.
18 There the *prisoners* **rest** **bound relax** together;
they hear not the voice of the *oppressor* **exactor**.

IYOB 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

8 And he takes a potsherd to scrape himself;
and he settles among the ashes.
9 And his woman says to him,
You still uphold your integrity!
Bless Elohim and die.
10 And he says to her,
You word as one of the foolish word.
yes, take we good at the hand of Elohim
— and not take evil?
— in all this lyob sinned not with his lips.

THE THREE FRIENDS OF IYOB

11 And the three friends of lyob
hear of all this evil coming upon him,
and each man comes from his own place;
Eli Phaz the Temaniy
and Bildad the Shuachiy
and Sophar the Naamahiy;
for they come to congregate together
to wag with him and to sigh with him.
12 And they lift their eyes afar off
and recognize him not,
and they lift their voice and weep;
and each man rips his mantle
and sprinkles dust on his head toward the heavens:
and they settle with him on the ground
seven days and seven nights
— and no one words a word to him;
for they see the pain is mighty great.

IYOB SPEAKS

3 After this lyob opens his mouth
and abases his day;
and lyob answers and says,
2 Destroy the day I was birthed;
3 and the night that says,
A mighty child is conceived;
4 O that that day be darkness:
that Elohah neither require it from above,
nor the light shine on it;
5 that darkness and the shadow of death redeem it;
that a cloudiness tabernacle on it;
that the eclipses of the day frighten it;
6 as for that night, O that darkness take it;
that it not rejoice to the days of the year;
that it not come into the number of the moons.
7 Behold, O that that night be sterile,
that no shout come therein;
8 that they curse, who curse the day
who are ready to waken a leviathan;
9 O that the stars of the evening breeze darken;
that it await light, but have none;
that it not see the eyelids of the dawn;
10 because it neither shut the doors of my belly,
nor hide toil from my eyes.
11 Why died I not from the womb?
— expire when I came from the belly?
12 Why *did* the knees anticipate me?
Or why the breasts I suck?
13 For now I lie down and rest;
had I slept, then had I been at rest,
14 with sovereigns and counsellors of the earth,
who build parched areas for themselves;
15 or with governors who have gold
— who fill their houses with silver;
16 or I had not been as a hidden miscarriage
— as infants who never see light.
17 There the wicked cease from commotion;
and there the wearied of force rest;
18 there the bound relax together;
they hear not the voice of the exactor;

JOB 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19 The small and great are there;
and the servant is *free* **liberated** from his *master* **adoni**.
20 Wherefore is light given to him that is in misery,
 and life unto the bitter *in* soul;
21 Which *long for* **await** death, but it *cometh* **be** not;
 and dig for it more than for hid treasures;
22 Which *rejoice exceedingly* **cheer and twirl**,
 and *are glad* **rejoice**,
 when they can find the *grave* **tomb**?
23 *Why is light given to a man*
 — **To the mighty** whose way is hid,
 and whom *God* **Elohah** hath hedged in?
24 For my sighing *cometh*
 before I eat **at the face of my bread**,
 and my roarings are poured out like the waters.
25 For the *thing which I greatly feared* **dread I dreaded**
 is come upon me,
 and that which I *was afraid of* **feared** is come unto me.
26 I was not *in safety* **serenified**, neither had I rest,
 neither was I *quiet* **rested I**; yet *trouble* **commotion** came.

ELI PHAZ ANSWERS

4 Then *Eliphaz* **Eli Phaz** the *Temanite* **Temaniy**
 answered and said,
2 If we *assay to commune* **test a word** with thee,
 wilt **shalt thou be grieved weary**?
 but who can *withhold* **refrain** himself
 from *speaking* **utterances**?
3 Behold, thou hast instructed many,
 and thou hast strengthened the weak hands.
4 Thy *words* **utterances** have *upholden* **raised** him
 that *was falling* **faltered**,
 and thou hast strengthened the *feeble* **kneeling** knees.
5 But now it is come upon thee,
 and thou *faintest* **weariest**;
 it toucheth thee, and thou art *troubled* **terrified**.
6 Is not this thy *fear* **awe**, thy confidence, thy hope,
 and the *uprightness* **integrity** of thy ways?
7 Remember, I pray thee,
 who ever *perished* **destructed**, being innocent?
 or where were the *righteous* **straight** cut off?
8 Even as I have seen,
 they that plow *iniquity* **mischief**,
 and sow *wickedness* **seed toil**,
 reap the same **thus harvest**.
9 By the *blast* **breath of God Elohah**
 they *perish* **destruct**,
 and by the *breath* **spirit/wind** of his nostrils
 are they *consumed* **finished off**.
10 The roaring of the lion,
 and the voice of the *fierce* **roaring** lion,
 and the teeth of the *young lions* **whelps**,
 are *broken* **pulled**.
11 The old lion *perisheth* **destructeth**
 for *lack of* **without** prey,
 and the *stout* **roaring** lion's whelps
 are *scattered abroad* **separated**.
12 Now a *thing* **word** was *secretly* **by stealth**
 brought to me,
 and mine ear *received a little* **took an inkling thereof**.
13 In *thoughts* **sentiments** from the visions of the night,
 when deep sleep falleth on men,
14 *Fear came upon* **Dread confronted** me, and trembling,
 which *made all my* **abundant** bones to *shake* **dreaded**.
15 Then a spirit passed *before* **in front of** my face;
 the hair of my flesh stood *up* **on end**:
16 It stood *still*,
 but I could not *discern* **recognize** the *form* **visage** thereof:
 an image a manifestation was *before* **in front of** mine eyes,
 there was silence, **Stillness!** and I heard a voice, *saying*,
17 Shall mortal man be more just than *God* **Elohah**?
 shall a *man* **the mighty** be more pure
 than his *maker* **Worker**?
18 Behold, he put no trust in his servants;
 and his angels he *charged* **set** with *folly* **braggadocio**:
19 *How much less in them* **Yea, they**
 that *dwell* **tabernacle** in houses of clay,
 whose foundation is in the dust,
 which are crushed *before* **at the face of** the moth?
20 They are *destroyed* **crushed** from morning to evening:

IYOB 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

19 the small and great are there;
 and the servant is liberated from his adoni.
20 Why gives he light to him in misery
 and life to the bitter soul;
21 who await death, and so be it not;
 and dig for it more than for hid treasures;
22 who cheer and twirl and rejoice,
 when they can find the tomb?
23 — to the mighty whose way is hid
 whom Elohah hedges in?
24 For my sighing comes at the face of my bread
 and my roarings pour as the waters.
25 For the dread I dreaded comes on me
 and what I feared comes to me.
26 I neither serenified, nor had I rest,
 nor rested I; yet commotion came.

ELI PHAZ ANSWERS

4 And Eli Phaz the Temaniy answers and says,
2 If one tests a word with you, you weary;
 but who can refrain himself from utterances?
3 Behold, you instructed many
 and you strengthened the weak hands;
4 your utterances raised him who falters
 and you strengthened the kneeling knees.
5 But now it comes on you, and you weary;
 it touches you, and you terrify.
6 Is not this your awe, your confidence,
 your hope and the integrity of your ways?
7 Remember, I pray you,
 whoever destructs, being innocent?
 or, Where are the straight cut off?
8 Even as I see,
 they who plow mischief and seed toil,
 harvest thus.
9 By the breath of Elohah, they destruct
 and by the spirit/wind of his nostrils, they finish off.
10 The roaring of the lion
 and the voice of the roaring lion
 and the teeth of the whelps
 — all are pulled.
11 Without prey, the old lion destructs,
 and the whelps of the roaring lion separate.
12 And by stealth, a word is brought to me
 and my ear takes an inkling.
13 In sentiments from the visions of the night,
 when deep sleep falls on men,
14 dread and trembling confront me
 — which my abundant bones dread.
15 And a spirit passes in front of my face;
 the hair of my flesh stands on end;
16 it stands:
 but I recognize not the visage;
 a manifestation in front of my eyes:
 stillness — and I hear a voice,
17 Is mortal man more just than Elohah?
 The mighty more pure than his Worker?
18 Behold, he puts no trust in his servants;
 and he sets his angels with braggadocio;
19 yes, they who tabernacle in houses of clay,
 whose foundation is in the dust
 crush at the face of the moth
20 — crushed from morning to evening;

JOB 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

they *perish for ever* **destruct in perpetuity**
without *any regarding* **setting** it.
21 Doth not their *excellency* **remainder** which is in them
go away **pull stakes**?
they die, even without wisdom.

5 Call *now* **I beseech**,
if there be any that *will* **shall** answer thee;
and to which of the *saints wilt* **holy shalt** thou *turn* **face**?
2 For *wrath killeth* **vexation slaughtereth** the foolish *man*,
and envy *slayeth* **deathifieth** the *silly one* **enticed**.
3 I have seen the foolish taking root:
but suddenly I cursed his habitation **of rest**.
4 His children are far from *safety* **salvation**,
and they are crushed in the gate **portal**,
neither is there any to *deliver* **rescue** them.
5 Whose harvest the *hungry* **famished** eateth up,
and taketh it even *out of* **through** the thorns,
and the robber
swalloweth up **gulpeth** their *substance* **valuables**.
6 Although *affliction* **mischief**
cometh not forth of the dust,
neither *doth* **trouble** **toil**
spring **sprout** out of the *ground* **soil**;
7 Yet *man* **humanity** is *born* **birthed** unto *trouble* **toil**,
as the *sparks* **sons of the burning coal lift and fly upward**.
8 **But I would should** seek unto *God* **El**,
and unto *God* **Elohim**
would should **I commit** **set** my *cause* **word**:
9 Which *doeth* **worketh** great *things*
and unsearchable **not to be probed**;
marvellous things **marvels** without number:
10 Who giveth rain upon the **face of the** earth,
and sendeth waters upon the *fields* **face of the outways**:
11 To *set up on high* **in the heights**
those that be low **the lowly**;
that *those which mourn* **the darkened**
may be *exalted to safety* **lifted unto salvation**.
12 He *disappointeth* **breaketh down**
the *devices* **fabrications** of the *crafty* **subtle**,
so that their hands
cannot perform **work not** their *enterprise* **substance**.
13 He *taketh* **captureth** the wise in their own craftiness:
and the counsel of the *froward* **twisters**
is carried headlong **hastened**.
14 They meet with darkness in the *daytime* **day**,
and grope in the noonday as in the night.
15 But he saveth the *poor* **needy** from the sword,
from their mouth,
and from the hand of the *mighty* **strong**.
16 So the *poor* *hath* **becometh** hope,
and *iniquity stoppeth* **wickedness shutteth** her mouth.
17 Behold, *happy* **blithe** is the man
whom *God* **correcteth** **Elohah reproveth**:
therefore *despise* **spurn** not thou
the *chastening* **discipline** of the *Almighty* **Shadday**:
18 For he *maketh sore* **paineth**, and bindeth up:
he *woundeth* **striket**, and his hands *make* **whole** **heal**.
19 He shall *deliver* **rescue** thee in six *troubles* **tribulations**:
yea, in seven there shall no evil touch thee.
20 In famine he shall redeem thee from death:
and in war from the *power* **hand** of the sword.
21 Thou shalt be hid from the *scourge* **lash** of the tongue:
neither shalt thou *be afraid of* **destruction** **awe devastation**
when it cometh.
22 At *destruction* **devastation** and *famine* **hunger**
thou shalt laugh:
neither shalt thou *be afraid of* **awe**
the *beasts* **live beings** of the earth.
23 For *thou shalt be in league* **thy covenant shall be**
with the stones of the field:
and the beasts of the field
shall be at *peace* **shalom** with thee.
24 And thou shalt know that thy *tabernacle* **tent**
shall be in *peace* **shalom**;
and thou shalt visit thy habitation **of rest**,
and shalt not sin.
25 Thou shalt know also that thy seed shall be great,
and thine offspring as the *grass* **herbage** of the earth.
26 Thou shalt come to thy *grave* **tomb** in a *full age* **maturity**,

IYOB 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

they destruct in perpetuity without setting:
21 those remaining pull stakes
— they die, even without wisdom.

5 Call, I beseech,
if there be any who answer you;
and to which of the holy *do* you face?
2 For vexation slaughters the foolish
and envy deathifies the enticed.
3 I see the foolish taking root;
but suddenly I curse his habitation of rest.
4 His children are far from salvation
— crushed in the portal,
none to rescue them;
5 whose harvest the famished eat
and even take it through the thorns
and the robber gulps their valuables.
6 For neither comes mischief from the dust,
nor sprouts toil from the soil;
7 yet humanity is birthed to toil,
as the sons of the burning coal lift and fly.

8 Yet I — I seek to El
and to Elohim I set my word;
9 who works great — not to be probed;
marvels without number;
10 who gives rain on the face of the earth
and sends waters on the face of the outways;
11 to set the lowly in the heights;
to lift the darkened to salvation.

12 He breaks down the fabrications of the subtle
so that their hands not work their substance:
13 he captures the wise in their own craftiness;
and hastens the counsel of the twisters.
14 They meet with darkness in the day
and grope in the noonday as in the night.
15 And he saves the needy from the sword,
from their mouth and from the hand of the strong.
16 And so be it, hope to the poor
and wickedness shuts her mouth.

17 Behold, blithe — the man whom Elohad reproves;
so spurn not the discipline of Shadday;
18 for he pains and binds;
he strikes and his hands heal.
19 He rescues you in six tribulations;
yes, in seven no evil touches you.
20 In famine he redeems you from death;
and in war from the hand of the sword.
21 You are hid from the lash of the tongue;
awe not devastation when it comes.
22 You laugh at devastation and hunger;
and awe not the live beings of the earth.

23 For your covenant *is* with the stones of the field;
and the beasts of the field are at shalom with you.
24 And you know that your tent *is* in shalom;
and you visit your habitation of rest and sin not.
25 You know also that your seed *is* great
and your offspring as the herbage of the earth.
26 You come to your tomb in maturity,

JOB 5, 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

27 like as a *shock of corn cometh* **heap ascendeth**
in his *season* **time**.
Lo **Behold** this,
we have *searched* **probed** it, so **be** it is;
hear it, and know thou it for thy good.

6 But *Job* **Iyob** answered and said,
2 Oh that my *grief* **in weighing**,
my vexation were *thoroughly* weighed,
and my calamity *laid* **lifted** in the balances together!
3 For now it *would* **should** be heavier
than the sand of the sea:
therefore my words are *swallowed up* **gulp**.
4 For the arrows of the *Almighty* **Shadday** are within me,
the poison whereof drinketh up my spirit:
the terrors of *God* **Elohad**
do set themselves in array **line up** against me.
5 Doth **Shall** the wild ass **runner** bray
when he hath grass **sprouts**?
or loweth **belloweth** the ox over his fodder?
6 Can that which is *unsavoury* **Shall slime** be eaten
without salt?
or is there *any* taste in the *white* **slime** of an egg?
7 The things **Those** that my soul refused to touch
are as my *sorrowful* **meat bloody bread**.
8 Oh **Who giveth** that I might have my *request* **petition**;
and that *God* **Elohad**
would grant me the thing that I long for
should give me hope!
9 Even that it would please *God* **Though Elohad** willeth
to *destroy* **crush** me;
that he *would* **should** let loose his hand, and cut me off!
10 Then should I yet have *comfort* **yet my sighing be**; yea,
I would harden myself in sorrow **should jump with pangs**:
let him not spare;
for I have not concealed
the words **sayings** of the Holy One.
11 What is my *strength* **force**, that I should *hope* **await**?
and what is mine end,
that I should prolong my *life* **soul**?
12 Is my *strength* **force** the *strength* **force** of stones?
or is my flesh of *brass* **copper**?
13 Is not my help in me?
and is *wisdom* **substance** driven quite from me?
14 To him that is *afflicted* **melteth**,
pity **mercy** should be *shewed* from his friend;
but he forsaketh the *fear* **awe** of the *Almighty* **Shadday**.
15 My brethren have *dealt deceitfully* **covered over**
as a *brook* **wadi**,
and as the *stream* **reservoir of brooks wadies**
they pass away;
16 Which are *blackish* **darkened** by reason of the ice,
and wherein the snow is *hid* **concealed**:
17 What time they wax *warm* **dissipate**,
they *vanish* **are exterminated**:
when it is hot,
they are *consumed* **extinguished** out of their place.
18 The paths of their way are turned aside;
they go **ascend to nothing waste**, and *perish* **destruct**.
19 The *troops* **paths** of Tema looked,
the *companies* **caravans** of Sheba
waited for **awaited** them.
20 They were *confounded* **shamed**
because they had hoped;
they came thither, and were *ashamed* **blushed**.
21 For now ye are *nothing* **nought**;
ye see my casting down, and are *afraid* **awe**.
22 Did I say, Bring unto me?
or, Give a reward for **Bribe** me of your substance?
23 Or, Deliver **Rescue** me
from the *enemy's* hand **of the tribulator**?
or, Redeem me from the hand of the *mighty* **tyrant**?
24 Teach me, and I will hold my tongue **shall hush**:
and cause me to understand **discern**
wherein I have **inadvertently** erred.
25 How *forcible* **reinforcing**
are *right words* **sayings of straightness!**
but what doth your *arguing* **reproving** reprove?
26 Do ye imagine **fabricate** to reprove words **utterances**,

IYOB ANSWERS

IYOB 5, 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

27 as a heap ascends in his time.
Behold this, we probe, and so be it;
hear and know for your own good.

IYOB ANSWERS

6 And Iyob answers and says,
2 Oh that in weighing, my vexation were weighed
and my calamity lifted in the balances together!
3 For now it is heavier than the sand of the sea;
so I gulp my words;
4 for the arrows of Shadday are within me,
whereof the poison drinks up my spirit;
the terrors of Elohad line up against me.
5 Brays the wild runner when he has sprouts?
Bellows the ox over his fodder?
6 Is slime eaten without salt?
Is there taste in the slime of an egg?
7 What my soul refuses to touch
is as my bloody bread.
8 O that I be given my petition;
and that Elohad give me hope!
9 O that Elohad wills to crush me
— to loose his hand and cut me off!
And yet it is my sighing;
I jump with pangs; he spares not:
for I conceal not the sayings of the Holy One.
11 What is my force, that I await?
What is my end, that I prolong my soul?
12 Is my force the force of stones?
Is my flesh of copper?
13 Is not my help within me?
Is substance quite driven from me?
14 He who melts, has mercy from his friend;
but he forsakes the awe of Shadday.
15 My brothers cover up as a wadi
and as the reservoir of wadies,
they pass away;
— darkened by the ice
wherein the snow conceals;
17 by the time they dissipate
they are exterminated;
when it is hot
they are extinguished from their place.
18 The paths of their way are turned aside;
they ascend to waste and destruct.
19 The paths of Tema look;
the caravans of Sheba await them;
20 they shame because they had hoped;
there they come and blush.
21 Surely now you are naught;
you see my casting down and awe.
22 Said I, Bring me?
or, Bribe me of your substance?
23 or, Rescue me from the hand of the tribulator?
or, Redeem me from the hand of the tyrant?
24 Teach me, and I hush;
and I discern wherein I have inadvertently erred.
25 How reinforcing the sayings of straightness!
And what does your reproving reprove?
26 Fabricate you to reprove utterances

JOB 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and the speeches **sayings** of one that is desperate a **quitter**,
which are — as wind?

27 Yea, ye **overwhelm** **fell** the **fatherless orphan**,
and ye dig a **pit** for your friend.

28 Now therefore **be content**, **look upon will to face** me;
for it is evident unto **you your face** if I lie.

29 Return, I **pray beseech** you,
let it not be **iniquity wickedness**;
yea, return again, my **righteousness justness** is in it.

30 Is there **iniquity wickedness** in my tongue?
cannot my **taste palate**
discern **perverse things calamity**?

7 Is there not an **appointed time a hostility**
to man upon earth?
are **not** his days also like the days of an hireling?
As a servant **earnestly desireth gulpeth** the shadow,
and as an hireling
looketh awaiteth for the reward of his work **deeds**:
So am I made to possess **Thus have I inherited**
months moons of vanity,
and **wearisome nights nights of toil**
are **appointed numbered** to me.

4 When I lie down, I say, When shall I arise
and the **night evening** be **gone flown**?
and I am **full satiated** of tossings to and fro
unto the **dawning of the day evening breeze**.
My flesh is **clothed enrobed**
with **worms maggots** and clods of dust;
my skin is **broken split**,
and **become loathsome dissipateth**.

6 My days are swifter than a **weaver's shuttle weaver**,
and are **spent finished off** without hope.

7 O remember that my life is **wind wind/spirit**:
mine eye shall **no more not return** to see good.

8 The eye of him that hath seen me
shall **see me no more not lurk**:
thine eyes are upon me, and I am not.

9 As the cloud is **consumed finisheth off**
and **vanisheth away goeth**:
so he that **goeth down descendeth** to the grave **sheol**
shall **come up no more ascend not again**.

10 He shall return **no more not again** to his house,
neither shall his place
know recognize him **any more again**.

11 Therefore I **will shall** not **refrain spare** my mouth;
I **will speak shall word**
in the **anguish tribulation** of my spirit;
I **will complain shall meditate**
in the bitterness of my soul.

12 Am I a sea, or a **whale monster**,
that thou settest a **watch guard** over me?

13 When I say,
My **bed bedstead** shall **comfort sigh for** me,
my **couch bed** shall **ease lift** my **complaint meditation**;
Then thou **scarest terrifiest** me with dreams,
and **terrifiest frightenest** me through visions:

15 So that my soul chooseth strangling,
and death rather than my **life bones**.

16 I **loathe spurn** it;
I **would shall** not live **always eternally**:
let me **alone de cease**; for my days are vanity.

17 What is man,
that thou shouldest **magnify greaten** him?
and that thou shouldest set thine heart upon him?
And that thou shouldest visit him every morning,
and **try proof** him every **moment blink**?

19 How long
wilt shalt thou not **depart look away** from me,
nor let me **alone loose** till I swallow down my **spittle spit**?
I have sinned; what shall I do unto thee,
O thou **preserver guardian** of men **humanity**?
why hast thou set me as a **mark target** against thee,
so that I am a burden to myself?

21 And why dost thou not
pardon lift my **transgression rebellion**,
and **take pass** away my **iniquity perversity**?
for now shall I **sleep lie** in the dust;
and thou shalt seek me **in the morning early**,
but I shall not be.

IYOB 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and the sayings of a quitter as wind?

27 Yes, you fell the orphan
and you dig for your friend.

28 And now, will to face me;
for it is evident to your face if I lie.

29 Return, I beseech you,
that it not be wickedness;
yes, return, my justness is in it.

30 Is there wickedness in my tongue?
Cannot my palate discern calamity?

7 Is there not a hostility to man on earth?
Are his days also as the days of an hireling?
As a servant gulps the shadow
— as a hireling awaits his deeds;
thus I inherit moons of vanity
and nights of toil are numbered to me.
I lie down and I say, When do I arise?
and the evening flies away
and I am satiated by tossings to and fro
until the evening breeze.

5 My flesh enrobes with maggots and clods of dust;
my skin splits and dissipates:

6 my days are swifter than a weaver
— finished off without hope.

7 O remember that my life is wind/spirit;
my eye returns not to see good.

8 The eye of him who sees me lurks not;
your eyes are on me, and I am not.

9 the cloud finishes off and goes;
thus he who descends to sheol ascends not again;
he neither returns to his house,
nor his place recognizes him again.

11 Also I — I spare not my mouth;
I word in the tribulation of my spirit;
I meditate in the bitterness of my soul.

12 Am I a sea or a monster
that you set a guard over me?

13 When I say, My bedstead sighs for me,
my bed lifts my meditation;
and you terrify me with dreams
and frighten me through visions;
so that my soul chooses strangling and death
rather than my bones.

16 I spurn; I live not eternally;
let me de cease; for my days are vanity.

17 What is man, that you greaten him?
— that you set your heart on him?
— that you visit him every morning?
— and proof him every blink?

19 Until when look you not from me?
— nor loose me until I swallow my spit?
I sinned; what do I to you,
O you guardian of humanity?
Why set me as a target against you,
so that I am a burden to myself?
And why lift you not my rebellion
and pass away my perversity?
for now I lie in the dust;
and you seek me early — but I am not.

JOB 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

BILDAD ANSWERS

8 Then answered Bildad the *Shuhite* **Shuachiy**,
and said,
2 *How long* **Until when**
wilt shalt thou speak utter these things?
and how long shall the words — the sayings of thy mouth
be like a strong much wind?
3 Doth *God* **pervert El twist** judgment?
or doth *the Almighty* **Shadday**
pervert justice twist justness?
4 If thy children have sinned against him,
and he have *cast sent* them away
for by the hand of their transgression **rebellion**;
5 If thou *wouldst shouldst* seek unto *God El*
betimes **early**
and *make thy supplication* **seekest charism**
to the Almighty of Shadday;
6 If thou wert pure and *upright* **straight**;
surely now he *would should* awake for thee,
and *make shalam* the habitation **of rest**
of thy *righteousness prosperous* **justness**.
7 Though thy beginning was *small* **little**,
yet thy *latter end* **finality** should *greatly* **mightily** increase.
8 For enquire, I *pray* **beseech** thee, of the *former* **first** age,
and prepare thyself
to the *search* **probing** of their fathers:
9 (For we are *but* of yesterday, and know *nothing* **naught**,
because our days upon earth are a shadow:)
10 Shall not they teach thee, and *tell say to* thee,
and utter *words* **utterances** out of their heart?
11 Can the rush *grow up* **rise** without mire?
can the *flag grow* **bulrush increase** without water?
12 Whilst it is yet in his *greenness* **unripeness**,
and not *cut down* **plucked**,
it withereth *before* **at the face of** any *other* herb.
13 So are the paths of all that forget *God El*;
and the *hypocrite's* **profaner's** hope shall *perish* **destruct**:
14 Whose hope shall be cut off,
and whose *trust* **confidence**
shall be a spider's *web* **house**.
15 He shall lean upon his house,
but it shall not stand:
he shall *hold* **strengthen** it *fast*,
but it shall not *endure* **arise**.
16 He is *green before* **moist at the face of** the sun,
and his *branch* **sprout** shooteth forth in his garden.
17 His roots are *wrapped* **entwined** about the heap,
and seeth the *place* **house** of stones.
18 If he *destroy him* **be swallowed** from his place,
then it shall deny him, *saying*, I have not seen thee.
19 Behold, this is the joy of his way,
and out of the *earth* **dust** shall others *grow* **sprout**.
20 Behold,
God will El shall not *cast away* **spurn**
a perfect man **the integrious**,
neither *will* shall he *help* **strengthen the hand**
of the evil doers vilifiers:
21 Till he fill thy mouth with laughing,
and thy lips with *rejoicing* **shouting**.
22 They that hate thee
shall be *clothed* **enrobed** with shame;
and the *dwelling place* **tent** of the wicked
shall come to nought.

IYOB ANSWERS

9 Then *Job Iyob* answered and said,
2 **Truly** I know it is so *of a truth*:
but how should man be *just* **justified** with *God El*?
3 If he *will* **desireth to** contend with him,
he cannot answer him one of a thousand.
4 He is wise in heart, and *mighty* **strong** in *strength* **force**:
who hath hardened *himself* against him,
and hath *prospered* **shalamed**?
5 Which removeth the mountains, and they know not:
which overturneth them in his *anger* **wrath**.
6 Which shaketh the earth out of her place,
and the pillars thereof tremble.
7 Which *commandeth* **saith to** the sun, and it riseth not;
and sealeth up the stars.
8 Which alone spreadeth out the heavens,

IYOB 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

BILDAD ANSWERS

8 And Bildad the Shuachiy answers and says,
2 Until when utter you these?
— the sayings of your mouth so much wind?
3 El — twists he judgment?
Or Shadday — twists he justness?
4 If your children sin against him
and he sends them away
by the hand of their rebellion;
5 if you seek El early and seek charism of Shadday;
6 if you are pure and straight;
surely now he wakes for you
and shalams the habitation of rest of your justness.
7 Though your beginning be little,
yet your finality mightily increases.
8 I beseech you, enquire of the first age;
prepare yourself to the probing of their fathers;
9 — for we are of yesterday and know naught,
because our days on earth are a shadow.
10 Teach they not and say to you?
— and utter utterances from their heart?
11 Rises the rush without mire?
Increases the bulrush without water?
12 While it is yet in unripeness and not plucked,
it withers at the face of any herb.
13 Thus are the paths of all who forget El;
and the hope of the profaner destructs
14 — whose hope is cut off
and whose confidence is the house of a spider.
15 He leans on his house, and it stands not;
he strengthens, and it rises not:
16 he is moist at the face of the sun
and his sprout shoots forth in his garden:
17 his roots entwine around the heap
and see the house of stones.
18 If he is swallowed from his place,
then they deny *saying*, I see you not.
19 Behold the joy of his way,
and others sprout from the dust.
20 Behold, El neither spurns the integrious,
nor strengthens the hand of the vilifiers;
21 until he fills your mouth with laughing
and your lips with shouting;
22 and they who hate you enrobe with shame;
and the tent of the wicked comes to nought.

IYOB ANSWERS

9 And Iyob answers and says,
2 Truly I know, and so be it;
and how is man justified with El?
3 If he desires to contend with him,
he cannot answer him one of a thousand.
4 He is wise in heart and strong in force.
5 Who hardens against him and shalams?
Who removes mountains and they know not?
6 Who overturns them in his wrath?
Who shakes the earth from her place
and the pillars thereof tremble?
7 Who says to the sun and it rises not?
And seals the stars?
8 Who alone spreads out the heavens

JOB 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 and treadeth upon the waves **bamahs** of the sea.
Which *maketh* **Arcturus worketh Ash, Orion Kesil,**
and **Pleiades Kimah,** and the chambers of the south.
10 Which *doeth* **worketh** great things
past finding out — **unable to be probed;**
yea, and wonders **marvels** without number.
11 *Lo* **Behold,** he *goeth* **passeth** by me, and I see him not:
he *passeth* on also, but I *perceive* **discern** him not.
12 Behold, he *taketh away* **seizeth,**
who *can hinder* **turneth** him back?
who *will* **shall** say unto him, What *doest* **workest** thou?
13 If *God* **Elohad**
will **shall** not *withdraw* **turn back** his *anger* **wrath,**
the proud helpers *do* **stoop** **prostrate** under him.
14 How much less shall I answer him,
and choose out my words *to reason* with him?
15 Whom, though I were *righteous* **justified,**
yet would **should** I not answer,
but I *would* **make supplication** **should seek** **charism**
to **from** my judge.
16 If I had called, and he had answered me;
yet would **should** I not *believe* **trust**
that he had hearkened unto my voice.
17 For he *breaketh* **crusheth** me with a *tempest* **whirling,**
and *multiplith* **aboundeth** my wounds
without cause **gratuitously.**
18 He *will* **shall** not *suffer* **give** me
to take **return** my *breath* **spirit,**
but *filleth* **satiateth** me with *bitterness* **bitternesses.**
19 If I *speak of strength* **of force,**
lo **behold,** he is strong:
and if of judgment,
who shall *set me a time to plead* **congregate to me?**
20 If I justify myself,
mine own mouth shall *condemn me* **judge me wicked:**
if I say, I am *perfect* **integrity,**
it shall also *prove me* **perverse** **pervert me.**
21 *Though I were perfect* **I am integrity,**
yet would **should** I not know my soul:
I *would* **despise** **should spurn** my life.
22 This is one *thing,* therefore I said it,
He *destroyeth* **finisheth off**
the *perfect* **integrity** and the wicked.
23 If the *scourge* **slay** **whip deathify** suddenly,
he *will* **laugh** **shall deride**
at the *trial* **testing** of the innocent.
24 The earth is given into the hand of the wicked:
he covereth the faces of the judges *thereof;*
if not, where, and who is he?
25 Now my days are swifter than a *post* **runner:**
they flee away, they see no good.
26 They are passed away as the *swift* ships **of yearning:**
as the eagle that *hasteth to the prey* **pounceth for food.**
27 If I say, I *will* **shall** forget my *complaint* **meditation,**
I *will* **leave off** **shall forsake** my *heaviness* **face,**
and *comfort* **relax** myself:
28 I *am afraid of* **fear** all my *sorrows* **contortions,**
I know that thou
wilt **shalt** not *hold* **exonerate** me *innocent.*
29 If I be wicked, why then labour I in vain?
30 If I *wash* **bathe** myself with snow water,
and *make my hands never so clean*
cleanse my palms in purity;
31 Yet shalt thou *plunge* **dip** me in the *ditch* **pit of ruin,**
and mine own clothes shall abhor me.
32 For he is not a man, as I *am,*
that I should answer him,
and we should come together in judgment.
33 Neither is there any *daysman* **reprover** betwixt us,
that might *lay* **place** his hand upon us both.
34 Let him *take his rod away* **turn aside his scion** from me,
and let not his *fear* **terrify** **terror frighten** me:
35 Then *would* **should** I *speak* **word,**
and not *fear* **awe** him;
but it is not so with me.

10

My soul *is weary of* my **loatheth** life;
I *will* **leave** **shall forsake** my *complaint* **meditation**
upon myself;
I *will* **speak** **shall word** in the bitterness of my soul.

IYOB 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 and treads on the bamahs of the sea?
Who works Ash, Kesil and Kimah
and the chambers of the south?
10 Who works great — unable to be probed?
Yes, and marvels without number?
11 Behold, he passes by me and I see him not;
and he passes on, and I discern him not.
12 Behold, he seizes! Who turns him back?
Who says to him, What work you?
13 Elohad turns not back his wrath;
the proud helpers prostrate under him.
14 How much less answer I him?
— choose out my words with him?
15 Whom, though I am justified, yet I answer not;
but seek charism from my judge.
16 Though I call and he answers me not
yet I trust that he hearkens to my voice;
17 *though* he crushes me with a whirling
and abounds my wounds gratuitously;
18 *though* he gives to not return my spirit
but satiates me with bitternesses —
19 If of force, behold, he is strong!
If of judgment, who congregates to me?
20 If I justify myself,
my own mouth judges me wicked;
I — integrity, it also perverts me;
21 I — integrity, yet I know not my soul;
I spurn my life.
22 This is one, so I say,
He finishes off the integrity and the wicked.
23 If the whip suddenly deathifies,
he derides at the testing of the innocent.
24 He gives the earth into the hand of the wicked;
he covers the faces of the judges;
If not, where and who is he?
25 My days are swifter than a runner;
they flee away; they see no good;
26 they pass away as the ships of yearning
— as the eagle pounces for food.
27 If I say,
I forget my meditation
I forsake my face and relax
I fear all my contortions
— I know you exonerate me not.
28 I — I am wicked! Why this?
Why labor I in vain?
29 If I bathe myself with snow water
and cleanse my palms in purity;
yet you dip me in the pit of ruin
and my own clothes abhor me.
30 For he is not a man as I,
that I answer him
and we come together in judgment.
31 There is no reprover between us
to place his hand on us both.
32 He turns aside his scion from me;
his terror frightens me not;
33 I word, and awe him not;
but not so with me.
10 My soul loathes life;
I forsake my self — meditation;
I word in the bitterness of my soul.

JOB 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 I will **shall** say unto God **Elohad**,
Do not condemn me **Judge me not wicked**;
shew me **let me know**
wherefore thou contendest with me.
3 Is it good unto thee that thou shouldst oppress,
that thou shouldst **despise spurn**
the work **labour** of *thine hands* **thy palms**,
and shine upon the counsel of the wicked?
4 Hast thou eyes of flesh? or seest thou as man seeth?
5 Are thy days as the days of man?
6 are thy years as *man's* days **of the mighty**,
That thou *enquirest* **seekest**
after *mine iniquity* **my perversity**,
and searchest after my sin?
7 Thou knowest that I am not wicked;
and there is none
that can *deliver* **escape** out of *thine* hand.
8 Thine hands have *made* **formed** me
and *fashioned* **worked** me together round about;
yet thou *dost destroy* **swallowest** me.
9 Remember, I beseech thee,
that thou hast *made* **worked** me as the clay;
and *wilt* **shalt** thou *bring* **return** me into dust *again*?
10 Hast thou not poured me out as milk,
and curdled me like cheese?
11 Thou hast *clothed* **enrobed** me with skin and flesh,
and hast *fenced* **hedged** me with bones and sinews.
12 Thou hast *granted* **worked** me life and *favour* **mercy**,
and thy visitation hath *preserved* **guarded** my spirit.
13 And these *things* hast thou hid in *thine* heart:
I know that this is with thee.
14 If I sin, then thou *markest* **guardest** me,
and thou *wilt* **shalt** not *acquitt* **exonerate** me
from mine iniquity.
15 If I be wicked, woe unto me;
and if I be *righteous* **justified**,
yet *will* **shall** I not lift up my head.
I am *full of confusion* **satiated with abasement**;
therefore see thou *mine affliction* **my humiliation**;
16 For it *increaseth* **riseth**.
Thou huntest me as a *fiere* **roaring** lion:
and *again* **turnest back**;
thou shewest thyself marvellous upon me.
17 Thou renewest thy witnesses against me,
and *increasest* *thine indignation* **aboundest thy vexation**
upon **with** me;
changes and *war* **hostility** are against me.
18 Wherefore then hast thou brought me forth
out of the womb?
Oh that I had *given up the ghost* **expired**,
and no eye had seen me!
19 I *should have been* **As not being**
as though I had not been **I have become**;
I *should have been carried* — **brought** from the *womb* **belly**
to the *grave* **tomb**.
20 Are not my days few?
cease *then*, and *let me alone* **set away from me**,
that I may *take comfort* **relax** a little,
21 Before I go *whence I shall* **and** not return,
even to the land of darkness and the shadow of death;
22 A land of darkness, as *darkness itself*;
and of the shadow of death, without any order,
and where the *light* **shining** is as darkness.

SOPHAR ANSWERS

11 Then answered
Zophar **Sophar** the *Naamathite* **Naamahiy**, and said,
2 Should not the *multitude* **abundance** of words
be answered?
3 and should a man full of *talk* **lips** be justified?
Should thy lies make men *hold their peace* **hush**?
and when thou *mockest* **deridest**,
shall no *man* make thee *ashamed* **one shame thee**?
4 For thou hast said, My doctrine is pure,
and I am *clean* **pure** in *thine* eyes.
5 But *oh that God would speak*
who giveth that Elohad should word,
and open his lips against thee;

IYOB 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 I say to Elohad, Judge me not wicked;
let me know why you contend with me.
3 Is it good to you that you oppress?
That you spurn the labor of your palms?
And shine on the counsel of the wicked?
4 Have you eyes of flesh?
See you as man sees?
5 Are your days as the days of man?
— your years as days of the mighty
that you seek after my perversity
and search after my sin?
6
7 You know I am not wicked;
and there is no escape from your hand.
8 Your hands formed me
and worked me together all around;
yet you swallow me.
9 Remember, I beseech you,
that you worked me as the clay;
and return me to dust.
10 Pour you not me out as milk?
— curdle me as cheese?
11 You enrobe me with skin and flesh
and hedge me with bones and sinews:
12 you work me life and mercy
and your visitation guards my spirit;
13 and you hide these in your heart;
I know this is with you.
14 If I sin, you guard me
— you exonerate me not from my iniquity.
15 If I be wicked, woe to me;
and if I be justified, yet I lift not my head.
I satiate with abasement; you see my humiliation;
16 for it rises;
you hunt me as a roaring lion; you turn back;
you show yourself marvellous in me;
17 you renew your witnesses against me
and abound your vexation with me;
changes and hostility are against me.
18 Why then brought you me forth from the womb?
Oh that I had expired and no eye had seen me!
19 As not being I became;
— brought from the belly to the tomb.
20 Are my days not few?
Cease, set away from me that I relax a little
21 — ere I go and not return
to the land of darkness and the shadow of death;
22 — a land of darkness as darkness;
of the shadow of death without any order
where the shining is as darkness.

SOPHAR ANSWERS

11 And Sophar the Naamahiy answers and says,
2 Answer we not this abundance of words?
— justify a man full of lips?
3 — that your lies hush men?
— and when you deride, that no one shames you?
4 And you say, My doctrine is pure!
and, I am pure in your eyes!
5 But who gives that Elohad words
and opens his lips against you;

JOB 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 And that he would *shew* **should tell** thee
the *secrets* **concealments** of wisdom,
that they are *double to that which is* a **double substance!**
Know that *God* **Elohah** exacteth of thee
less than thine iniquity deserveth **thy perversity.**
7 Canst thou by *searching* **probing** find out *God* **Elohah?**
canst thou find out
the *Almighty unto perfection* **conclusion of Shadday?**
8 It is as high as *heaven* **the heavens;**
what *canst* **doest** thou *do?*
deeper than *hell* **sheol;**
what *canst* **knowest** thou *know?*
9 The measure thereof is longer than the earth,
and broader than the sea.
10 If he *cut off* **pass by,** and shut up,
or *gather together* **congregate,**
then who *can hinder* **shall turn** him **back?**
11 For he knoweth vain men:
he seeth *wickedness* **mischief** *also;*
will he not then consider **shall no one discern** it?
12 For *vain* **empty** man *would be wise* **dishearteneth,**
though *man* **humanity** be *born* **birthed**
like a wild ass's **runner's** colt.
13 If thou prepare thine heart,
and *stretch out thine hands* **spread thy palms** toward him;
14 If *iniquity* **mischief** be in thine hand,
put **remove** it far away,
and let not wickedness
 dwell **tabernacle** in thy *tabernacles* **tents.**
15 For then shalt thou lift up thy face
without spot **apart from blemish;**
yea, thou shalt be *stedfast* **firmed,** and shalt not *fear* **awe:**
16 Because thou shalt forget thy *misery* **toil,**
and remember it as waters that pass away:
17 And *thine age* **transcience**
shall be clearer than **arise above** the noonday:
thou shalt *shine forth* **fly,** thou shalt be as the morning.
18 And thou shalt *be secure* **confide,**
because there is hope;
yea, thou shalt dig *about thee,*
and thou shalt *take thy rest in safety* **lie down confidently.**
19 Also thou shalt *lie down* **repose,**
and none shall *make* **tremble** thee *afraid;*
yea many shall *make suit unto thee* **stroke thy face.**
20 But the eyes of the wicked shall *fail* **be finished off,**
and *they shall not escape* **flight destructeth from them,**
and their hope shall be
as the *giving up* **expiration** of the *ghost* **soul.**

IYOB ANSWERS

12

2 And *Job* **Iyob** answered and said,
No doubt **Truly** but ye are the people,
and wisdom shall die with you.
3 *But* **Yea,**
I have *understanding as well* **such a heart** as you;
I am not *inferior to* **fallen lower than** you:
yea, who knoweth not such *things* as these?
4 I am as one *mocked* **ridiculed** of his *neighbour* **friend,**
who calleth upon *God* **Elohah,** and he answereth him:
the just *upright man,* **the integrious**
is laughed to scorn **ridiculed.**
5 He that *is ready to slip* **prepareth to waver** with his feet
is as a *lamp despised* **flambeau disrespected**
in the *thought* **thoughts** of him that *is at ease* **relaxeth.**
6 The *tabernacles* **tents** of *robbers* **ravagers**
prosper **serenify,**
and they that provoke *God* **El** are *secure* **confident;**
into whose hand *God* **Elohah** bringeth *abundantly.*
7 But ask *now* **I beseech** the *beasts* **animals,**
and they shall teach thee;
and the *fowls* **flyers** of the air,
and they shall tell thee:
8 Or *speak* **meditate** to the earth,
and it shall teach thee:
and the fishes of the sea
shall *declare* **scribe** unto thee.
9 Who knoweth not in all these
that the hand of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *wrought* **worked** this?
10 In whose hand is the soul of every **all** living *thing,*

IYOB 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 and tells you the concealments of wisdom,
that they are a double substance!
Know that Elohah exacts your perversity of you.
7 By probing, find you Elohah?
— find the conclusion of Shadday?
8 As high as the heavens; what do you?
Deeper than sheol; what know you?
9 The measure thereof
is longer than the earth and broader than the sea.
10 If he passes by, and shuts up or congregate,
who then turns him back?
11 For he knows vain men;
he sees mischief; no one discerns!
12 For empty man disheartens,
and humanity births as the colt of a wild runner.
13 If you prepare your heart
and spread your palms toward him;
14 if mischief be in your hand, remove it far away;
tabernacle no wickedness in your tents.
15 Then lift your face apart from blemish;
yes, be firmed and awe not;
16 because you forget your toil
and remember it as passing waters;
17 and transcience rises above the noonday;
you fly — you are as the morning;
18 and you confide because there is hope;
yes, you dig and lie down confidently;
19 and you repose and no one trembles you;
yes, many stroke your face.
20 And the eyes of the wicked finish off
and flight destructs from them
and their hope is as the expiration of the soul.

IYOB ANSWERS

12

2 And Iyob answers and says,
Truly you are the people;
and with you, wisdom dies.
3 Yes, I have a heart as you;
I fall not lower than you;
yes, who knows not such as these?
4 I am as one ridiculed by his friend,
who calls on Elohah and he answers him;
he ridicules the just, the integrious.
5 He who prepares to waver with his feet
is as a flambeau disrespected
in the thoughts of him who relaxes.
6 The tents of ravagers serenify
and they who provoke El are confident;
into whose hand Elohah brings.
7 And yet, I beseech,
ask the animals to teach you;
and the flyers of the air to tell you;
or meditate to the earth to teach you;
and the fishes of the sea to scribe to you.
8 Who knows not that in all these
the hand of Yah Veh worked this?
9 In whose hand is the soul of all living

JOB 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the *breath* **spirit** of all *mankind* **flesh of man**.
11 Doth not the ear *try words* **proof utterances?**
and the *mouth* **palate** taste his *meat* **food?**
12 With the *ancient* **aged** is wisdom;
and in length of days understanding.
13 With him is wisdom and *strength* **might**,
he hath counsel and understanding.
14 Behold, he breaketh down,
and it cannot be built *again*:
he shutteth up a man,
and there *can* be no opening.
15 Behold, he *withholdeth* **restraineth** the waters,
and they *dry up*:
also he sendeth them out,
and they overturn the earth.
16 With him is strength and *wisdom* **substance**:
the deceived **they that err inadvertently**
and *the deceiver* **they that cause to err inadvertently**
are his.
17 He *leadeth* **walketh** counsellors away *spoiled* **stripped**,
and maketh the judges *fools* **to halal**.
18 He looseth the bond of *kings* **sovereigns**,
and *girdeth* **bindeth** their loins with a girdle.
19 He *leadeth* **princes** **walketh** **priests**
away *spoiled* **stripped**,
and *overthroweth* **perverteth** the *mighty* **perennial**.
20 He *removeth* away **turneth aside**
the *speech* **lip** of the *trusty* **trustworthy**,
and taketh away the *understanding* **taste** of the aged.
21 He poureth *contempt* **disrespect**
upon *princes* **volunteers**,
and *weakeneth* **looseth** the *strength* **girdle**
of the *mighty* **gatherers**.
22 He *discovereth* **deep things** **exposeth** **depths**
out of darkness,
and bringeth out to light the shadow of death.
23 He increaseth the *nations* **goyim**,
and destroyeth them:
he *enlargeth* **spreadeth** the *nations* **goyim**,
and *straiteneth* **leadeth** them *again*.
24 He *taketh* away **turneth aside** the heart
of the *chief* **head** of the people of the earth,
and causeth them to *wander* **stagger** in a *wilderness* **void**
where there is no way.
25 They grope in the dark without light,
and he maketh them to stagger
like a drunken man **as intoxicated**.

13

Lo **Behold**, mine eye hath seen all this,
mine ear hath heard and *understood* it **discerned**.
2 *What ye know* **As to your knowledge**,
the same do I know also:
I am *not inferior* to **no more fallen than** you.
3 *Surely I would speak* **But I word**
to the Almighty **Shadday**,
and I desire to *reason* with *God* **reprove** **El**.
4 But ye are *forgers* **patchers** of *lies* **falsehoods**,
ye are all *physicians* of *no value* **worthless healers**.
5 *O that* **Who giveth, that in hushing**,
ye would altogether hold your peace **should hush!**
and it should be your wisdom.
6 Hear *now* **I beseech**, my *reasoning* **reproof**,
and hearken to the *pleadings* **defence** of my lips.
7 *Will* **Shall** ye *speak wickedly* **word wickedness**
for *God* **El?**
and *talk* **word** deceitfully for him?
8 *Will* **Shall** ye *accept his person* **lift his face?**
will **shall** ye contend for *God* **El?**
9 Is it good that he should *search* **probe** you out?
or as one *man* mocketh *another* **a man**,
do ye so mock **ye** him?
10 **In reproving**, He *will surely* **shall** reprove you,
if ye *do secretly* accept persons **covertly lift faces**.
11 Shall not his *excellency* **exalting**
make **frighten** you *afraid?*
and his dread fall upon you?
12 Your *remembrances* **memorials** are like unto ashes,
your *bodies* **backs** to *bodies* **backs** of clay.
13 *Hold your peace* **Hush**, let me alone,
that I may *speak* **word**,

IYOB 12, 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the spirit of all flesh of man.
11 *Does* not the ear proof utterances?
— the palate taste food?
12 With the aged *is* wisdom;
and in length of days understanding;
13 with him, wisdom and might,
to him, counsel and understanding.
14 Behold, he breaks down and no one builds;
he shuts a man and no one opens.
15 Behold, he restrains the waters, and they dry;
he sends them out and they overturn the earth.
16 With him is strength and substance;
they who err inadvertently
and they who cause to err inadvertently
are his.
17 He walks counsellors away stripped
and has the judges halal;
18 he loosens the bond of sovereigns
and binds their loins with a girdle;
19 he walks priests away stripped
and perverts the perennial;
20 he turns aside the lip of the trustworthy
and takes away the taste of the aged;
21 he pours disrespect on volunteers
and loosens the girdle of the gatherers;
22 he exposes depths from darkness
and brings the shadow of death to light.
23 He increases the goyim and destroys them;
he spreads the goyim and leads them;
24 he turns aside the heart
of the head of the people of the earth;
and staggers them in a void
where there is no way;
25 they grope in the dark without light
and he staggers them as intoxicated.

13

Behold, my eye sees all,
my ear hears and discerns.
2 As to your knowledge, I also know;
I am no more fallen than you.
3 Yet I word to Shadday
and I desire to reprove El:
4 and yet, you are patchers of falsehoods,
you all — worthless healers.
5 Who gives, that in hushing, you hush;
that it be your wisdom.
6 I beseech, hear my reproof
and hearken to the defence of my lips.
7 Word you wickedness for El?
— word deceitfully for him?
8 — lift his face? — contend for El?
9 Is it good that he probe you?
10 As one mocks a man, mock you him?
11 In reproving, he reproves you,
if you covertly lift faces.
His exaltings, frighten they you not?
— his dread falling on you?
12 Your memorials *are* to ashes,
as your backs to backs of clay.
13 Hush, leave me alone to word;

JOB 13, 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and let come on me what will **whatever pass over me.**
14 Wherefore do I take **lift** my flesh in my teeth,
and put **set** my life **soul** in mine hand **my palm**?
15 *Though he slay* **Behold, he severeth me,**
yet will I trust in him **I shall not await:**
but I will maintain **shall reprove** mine own ways
before him **at his face.**
16 He also shall be my salvation:
for an hypocrite **a profaner**
shall not come before him **at this face.**
17 *Hear diligently my speech*
Hearken! Hear my utterances,
and my declaration **utterance** with your ears.
18 Behold now **I beseech,**
I have ordered **lined up** my cause **judgment;**
I know that I shall be justified.
19 Who is he that will **plead shall contend** with me?
for now, if I hold my tongue **hush,**
I shall give up the ghost **expire.**
20 Only do **work** not these two things unto me:
then will **shall I** not hide myself from thee **thy face.**
21 *Withdraw thine hand* **Remove thy palm** far from me:
and let not thy dread make **terror frighten** me afraid.
22 Then call thou, and I will answer **shall respond:**
or let me speak **word,** and answer thou me.
23 How many
are mine iniquities **my perversities** and sins?
make **have** me to know
my transgression **rebellion** and my sin.
24 Wherefore hidest thou thy face,
and holdest **fabricatest** me for thine enemy?
25 *Wilt Shalt* thou
break a leaf driven to and fro **terrify a dispersed leaf?**
and wilt **shalt** thou pursue the dry stubble?
26 For thou writest bitter things **inscribest bitternesses**
against me,
and makest me
to possess the iniquities **perversities** of my youth.
27 Thou puttest **settest** my feet also in the stocks,
and lookest narrowly **guardest** unto all my paths;
thou settest a print **engravest**
upon the heels **roots** of my feet.
28 And he, as a rotten thing **rotteness,**
consumeth **weareth out,**
as a garment **clothing** that is moth eaten.

14 *Man that is born* **Humanity birthed** of a woman
is of few **be short of** days
and full of trouble **satiated with commotion.**
2 He cometh forth like a flower **blossom,**
and is cut down **clipped:**
he fleeth also as a shadow,
and continueth **standeth** not.
3 And dost thou open thine eyes upon such an one,
and bringest me into judgment with thee?
4 *Who can bring a clean thing* **shall give purity**
out of an unclean **foul?**
not one.
5 Seeing his days are **determined appointed,**
the number of his months are with thee,
thou hast appointed **worked** his bounds **statutes**
that he cannot pass;
6 *Turn* **Look away** from him, that he may rest **cease,**
till he shall accomplish **please,** as an hireling, his day.
7 For there is hope of a tree, if it be cut down,
that it will sprout **shall change** again,
and that the tender branch **sprout thereof**
will **shall** not cease.
8 Though the root thereof wax **old age** in the earth,
and the stock **stump thereof** die in the ground **dust;**
9 Yet through the scent of water it will bud **shall blossom,**
and bring forth boughs **work harvest** like a plant.
10 *But man* **The mighty** dieth, and wasteth away **decayeth:**
yea, man giveth up the ghost **humanity expireth,**
and where is he?
11 As the waters fail **gad about** from the sea,
and the flood **decayeth parcheth** and drieth up:
12 So man lieth down, and riseth not:
till the heavens be no more, they shall not awake,
nor be raised **waken** out of their sleep.

IYOB 13, 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and whatever passes over me.
14 Why lift I my flesh in my teeth?
— set my soul in my palm?
15 Behold, he severs me, yet I await not;
surely I reprove my own ways at his face.
16 Also he is my salvation;
for no profaner comes at this face.
17 Hearken! Hear my utterances!
— my utterance with your ears.
18 Behold, I beseech,
I line up my judgment;
I know I am justified.
19 Who contends with me?
for now, if I hush, I expire.
20 Only work not these two to me:
that I not hide from your face;
remove your palm far from me
and let not your terror frighten me.
21 And you call and I — I respond;
or, I word and you answer me.
22 How many are my perversities and sins?
— have me know my rebellion and my sin?
23 Why hide your face
and fabricate me for your enemy?
24 Terrify you a dispersed leaf?
— pursue the dry stubble?
25 For you inscribe bitternesses against me
that I possess the perversities of my youth.
26 You also set my feet in the stocks
and guard all my paths;
you engrave on the roots of my feet;
and as rottenness
he wears out as moth eaten clothing.

14 Humanity, birthed of a woman,
is short of days and satiated with commotion.
2 He comes forth as a blossom, and is clipped;
and he flees as a shadow, and stands not.
3 And open you your eyes on such a one
and bring me into judgment with you?
4 Who gives purity from foul? No one!
5 Seeing his days are appointed,
the number of his months are with you,
you work his statutes and he passes not;
6 look away from him, so that he ceases,
until as a hireling, he is pleased in his day.
7 For there is hope of a tree, if it is cut down,
that it change again, that its sprout not cease.
8 Though the root age in the earth
and the stump die in the dust;
9 and blossoms through the scent of water
and works harvest as a plant;
10 the mighty dies and decays;
yes, humanity expires — and where is he?
11 The waters gad about from the sea
and the flood parches and dries:
12 thus man lies down and rises not;
until the heavens be no more
they waken not
— waken not from their sleep.

JOB 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

13 O Who giveth
that thou *wouldest* **shouldest** hide me in *the grave* **sheol**,
that thou *wouldest* **shouldest** keep me secret,
until thy wrath be *past* **turned**,
that thou *wouldest* **shouldest**
appoint **set** me a *set time* **statute**,
and remember me!
14 If a *man* **the mighty** die, shall he *live again* **enliven**?
all the days of my *appointed time* **hostility**
will **shall** I wait **await**,
till my change come.
15 Thou shalt call, and I *will* **shall** answer thee:
thou *wilt have a desire* **shalt yearn**
to **for** the work of thine hands.
16 For now thou *numberest* **scribest** my *steps* **paces**:
dost thou not *watch* **guard** over my sin?
17 My *transgression* **rebellion**
is sealed up in a *bag* **bundle**,
and thou *sewest up mine iniquity* **patchest my perversity**.
18 *And surely* **But** the mountain falling
cometh to nought **withereth**,
and the rock is removed out of his place.
19 The waters *wear* **pulverize** the stones:
thou *washest away* **overflowest**
the things which grow out **spontaneous growth**
of the dust of the earth;
and thou destroyest the hope of man.
20 Thou *prevaildest for ever* **in perpetuity** against him,
and he passeth:
thou *changest* **alterest** his *countenance* **face**,
and sendest him away.
21 His sons *come to honour* **be honoured**,
and he knoweth it not;
and they are *brought low* **belittled**,
but he *perceiveth* **discerneth** it not of them.
22 But his flesh upon him shall *have* pain,
and his soul within him shall mourn.

ELI PHAZ ANSWERS

15

Then answered
Eliphaz Eli Phaz the *Temanite* **Temaniy**,
and said, Should a **the wise man**
utter vain answer spirit/wind knowledge,
and fill his belly with the *east wind* **easterly**?
3 Should he *reason* **reprove**
with *unprofitable talk* **useless words**?
or with *speeches* **utterances**
wherewith he *can do no good* **benefiteth not**?
4 Yea, thou *castest off fear* **violatest awe**,
and *restrainest prayer* **diminishest meditation**
before God **at the face of El**.
5 For thy mouth
uttereth thine iniquity **teacheth thy perversity**,
and thou chooseth the tongue of the *crafty* **subtle**.
6 Thine own mouth *condemneth* **judgeth thee wicked**,
and not I:
yea, thine own lips *testify* **answer** against thee.
7 Art thou the first *man* **human** that was *born* **birthed**?
or wast thou *made before* **whirled at the face of** the hills?
8 Hast thou heard
the *secret private counsel* of *God* **Elohah**?
and dost thou *restrain* **diminish** wisdom to thyself?
9 What knowest thou, that we know not?
what *understandest* **discernest** thou, which is not in us?
10 With us are both the *grayheaded* **grayed**
and very **the aged men**,
much elder **more advanced in days** than thy father.
11 Are the consolations of *God small* **El petty** with thee?
is there any *secret thing* **gentle word** with thee?
12 Why doth thine heart *carry* **take** thee away?
and what do thy eyes *wink* **twinkle** at,
13 That thou turnest thy spirit against *God* **El**,
and lettest *such words* **utterances** go out of thy mouth?
14 What is man, that he should be *clean* **purified**?
and he *which is born* **birthed** of a woman,
that he should be *righteous* **justified**?
15 Behold,
he *putteth no trust* **trusteth not** in his *saints* **holy**;
yea, the heavens are not clean in his *sight* **eyes**.

IYOB 14, 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

13 Who gives, that you hide me in sheol?
— that you secret me, until your wrath turns?
— that you set me a statute and remember me?
14 If the mighty die, enlivens he?
All the days of my hostility, I wait
— until my change comes.
15 You call and I answer you;
you yearn for the work of your hands.
16 But now you scribe my paces;
You guard not over my sin:
17 you seal my rebellion in a bundle
and you patch my perversity.
18 And yet, the falling mountain withers
and the rock removes from its place;
19 the waters pulverize the stones;
you overflow the spontaneous growth
of the dust of the earth;
and you destroy the hope of man.
20 You prevail in perpetuity against him
and he passes;
you alter his face and send him away.
21 His sons are honored, and he knows it not;
and they are belittled, but he discerns it not of them.
22 Surely his flesh on him pains
and his soul within him mourns.

ELI PHAZ ANSWERS

15

And Eli Phaz the Temaniy answers,
and says,
Answers the wise knowledge of spirit/wind?
— fills his belly with the easterly?
Reproves he with useless words?
— utterances of no benefit?
4 Yes, you violate awe and diminish meditation
at the face of El.
5 Your mouth teaches your perversity
and you choose the tongue of the subtle;
6 your own mouth judges you wicked — not I;
yes, your own lips answer against you.
7 Are you the first birthed human?
Were you whirled at the face of the hills?
8 Hear you the private counsel of Elohah?
Diminish you wisdom to yourself?
9 What know you, that we know not?
— what discern you, that is not in us?
10 With us are both the grayed and the aged,
more advanced in days than your father.
11 Are the consolations of El petty with you?
Is there any gentle word with you?
12 Why does your heart take you away?
At what do your eyes twinkle?
13 — that you turn your spirit against El
— that utterances go from your mouth?
14 What is man — birthed of a woman
that he be purified? that he be justified?
15 Behold, he trusts not in his holy;
yes, the heavens are not clean in his eyes.

JOB 15, 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

16 How much more *abominable* **abhorrent**
and *filthy* **muddled** is man,
which drinketh *iniquity* **wickedness** like water?
17 I *will* **shall** shew thee, hear me;
and that which I have seen I *will* **declare** **shall scribe**;
18 Which **the** wise *men* have told from their fathers,
and have not *hid* **concealed** it:
19 Unto whom alone the earth was given,
and no stranger passed among them.
20 The wicked *man*
travaileth with pain **writheth** all his days,
and the number of years
is hidden to the *oppressor* **tyrant**.
21 A *dreadful sound* **voice of dread** is in his ears:
in *prosperity* **shalom**
the *destroyer* **ravager** shall come upon him.
22 He *believeth* **trusteth** not
that he shall return out of darkness,
and he is *waited* **watched** for of the sword.
23 He wandereth abroad for bread, *saying*, Where is it?
he knoweth that the day of darkness
is *ready* **prepared** at his hand.
24 *Trouble* **Tribulation** and *anguish* **distress**
shall *make* **frighten** him *afraid*;
they shall prevail against him,
as a *king* **sovereign** ready to the *battle* **tumult**.
25 For he *stretcheth out* **spreadeth** his hand against *God* **El**,
and *strengtheneth himself* **prevaileth mightily**
against the *Almighty* **Shadday**.
26 He runneth upon him, *even on* **upon** his neck,
upon the thick bosses of his *bucklers* **shields**:
27 Because he covereth his face with his *fatness* **fat**,
and *maketh collops of fat on* **worketh plump** his flanks.
28 And he *dwelleth* **tabernacleth** in *desolate* **cut off** cities,
and in houses which no man *inhabitheth* **settleteth**,
which are ready to *become* **heaps** **heap**.
29 He shall not *be rich* **enrich**,
neither shall his *substance continue* **valuables arise**,
neither shall he
prolong **spread** the *perfection* **acquisitions** thereof
upon the earth.
30 He shall not *depart* **turn aside** out of darkness;
the flame shall *dry up* **wither** his *branches* **sprouts**,
and by the *breath* **wind/spirit** of his mouth
shall he *go away* **turn aside**.
31 Let not him that *is deceived* **strayeth** trust in vanity:
for vanity shall be his *recompence* **exchange**.
32 **so be it shall be accomplished not be fulfilled**
before in his time day,
and his *branch* **palm leaf** shall not *be green*.
33 He shall *shake off* **violate** his *unripe* **sour** grape
as the vine,
and shall *cast off* his *flower* **blossom**
as the olive.
34 For the *congregation* **witness** of *hypocrites* **profaners**
shall be *desolate* **sterile**,
and fire shall consume the *tabernacles* **tents** of bribery.
35 They conceive *mischiefs* **toil**,
and *bring forth* **vanity** **birth mischief**,
and their belly prepareth deceit.

IYOB ANSWERS

16 Then *Job* **Iyob** answered and said,
2 I have heard many *such things* **of these**:
miserable comforters **sighers of toil** are ye all.
3 Shall *vain* words **of wind/spirit** have an end?
or what *emboldeneth* **reinforceth** thee
that thou answerest?
4 I also *could speak* **had worded** as ye *do*:
if **O that** your soul were in my soul's stead,
I could *heap up words* **charm utterances** against you,
and shake mine head at you.
5 But I *would* **should** strengthen you with my mouth,
and the moving of my lips
should *asswage your grief* **spare you**.
6 Though I *speak* **word**,
my *grief* **pain** is not *asswaged* **spared**:
and though I *forbear* **cease**, what *am I eased* **goes**?
7 But now he hath *made* **wearied** me *weary*:
thou hast *made desolate* **desolated** all my *company* **witnesses**.

IYOB 15, 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

16 How much more *abhorrent* and *muddled* is man,
who drinks *wickedness* as water?
17 I show you, you hear me; what I see I scribe;
18 what, from their fathers,
the wise have told, and not concealed;
19 to whom alone the earth was given
and no stranger passed in their midst.
20 The wicked writhes all his days
and the number of years is hidden to the tyrant.
21 A voice of dread is in his ears;
in shalom, the ravager comes upon him.
22 He trusts not that he returns from darkness
and he is watched by the sword.
23 He wanders abroad for bread! Where is it?
He knows that the day of darkness
is prepared at his hand.
24 Tribulation and distress frighten him;
— prevail against him
as a sovereign ready to the tumult;
25 he spreads his hand against El
and prevails mightily against Shadday.
26 He runs on him — on his neck
— on the thick bosses of his shields;
27 because he covers his face with fat
and works his flanks plump;
28 and he tabernacles in cut off cities
and in houses which no man settles
— ready to be heaped.
29 He neither enriches,
neither his valuables arise,
nor his acquisitions spread on the earth;
30 nor turns aside from darkness.
The flame withers his sprouts
and by the wind/spirit of his mouth he turns aside.
31 He who strays, trusts not in vanity;
for vanity is his exchange;
32 — so be it neither fulfilled in his day
nor his palm leaf green;
33 he violates his sour grape as the vine
and casts his blossom as the olive.
34 For the witness of profaners sterilizes;
and fire consumes the tents of bribery;
35 they conceive toil and birth mischief
and their belly prepares deceit.

IYOB ANSWERS

16 And Iyob answers and says,
2 I hear many such as these;
sighers of toil — all of you.
3 Is there an end to words of wind/spirit?
What reinforces you to answer?
4 I also word as you;
O that your soul were in the stead of my soul
to charm utterances against you
and shake my head at you.
5 I strengthen you by my mouth
that the moving of my lips spare you.
6 Though I word, my pain is not spared;
and though I cease, what goes?
7 But now I weary;
you desolate all my witnesses;

JOB 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 And thou hast *filled* **plucked** me with wrinkles,
which is **for** a witness against me:
and my *leanness* **emaciation** rising up in me
beareth witness **answereth** to my face.

9 He teareth me in his wrath, who *hateth* **opposeth** me:
he gnasheth upon me with his teeth;
mine enemy **my tribulator** sharpeneth his eyes
upon me.

10 They have gaped upon me with their mouth;
they have smitten me upon the cheek reproachfully;
they have *gathered themselves together* **fulfilled**
against me.

11 *God* **El** hath *delivered* **shut** me to the *ungodly* **pervert**,
and *turned* **hurled** me over into the hands of the wicked.

12 I was at ease **serene**, but he hath broken me *asunder*:
he hath also taken me by my neck,
and *shaken* **shattered** me to pieces,
and *set me up* **raised me** for his *mark* **target**.

13 His archers *compass* **surround** me round about,
he cleaveth my reins *asunder*,
and *doth* **spareth** not spare;
he poureth out my *gall* **bitters** upon the *ground* **earth**.

14 He *breaketh* **breacheth** me
with **at the face of** breach upon breach,
he runneth upon me like a *giant* **the mighty**.

15 I have sewed *sackcloth* **saq** upon my skin,
and *defiled* **exploited** my horn in the dust.

16 My face is *foul* **foameth** with weeping,
and on my eyelids is the shadow of death;

17 Not for *any injustice* **violence** in *mine hands* **my palms**:
also my prayer is pure.

18 O earth, cover not thou my blood,
and let my cry have no place.

19 Also now, behold,
my witness is in *heaven* **the heavens**,
and my *record is on high* **witness in the heights**.

20 My friends scorn me:
but mine eye *poureth out tears* **drippeth** unto *God* **Elohah**.

21 O that one might *plead* **reprove** for a *man* **the mighty**
with *God* **Elohah**
as a *man* **son of humanity** *pleadeth*
for his *neighbour* **friend**!

22 When a *few years* **of number** are come,
then I shall go the way whence I shall not return.

17 My *breath* **spirit** is *corrupt* **despoiled**,
my days are extinct,
the *graves* **tombs** are ready for me.

2 Are there not *mockers* **mockeries** with me?
and doth not mine eye
continue **stay** in their *provocation* **rebell**ing?

3 *Lay down now* **Set, I beseech**,
put me in a surety **my pledge** with thee;
who is he that *will strike* **shall clap** hands with me?

4 For thou hast hid their heart
from *understanding* **comprehension**:
therefore shalt thou not exalt them.

5 He that *speaketh* **telleth**
flattery **smoothing it over** to his friends,
even the eyes of his children shall *fail* **finish off**.

6 He hath *made* **set** me also
a *byword* **proverb** of the people;
and *aforetime* **at the face of when** I was as a *tabret* **spit**.

7 Mine eye also is dim *by reason of sorrow* **of vexation**,
and all my *members* are **forms** as a shadow.

8 *Upright men* **The straight** shall be astonished at this,
and the innocent shall *stir up himself* **waken**
against the *hypocrite* **profaner**.

9 The *righteous* **just** also shall hold on his way,
and he that hath *clean* **pure** hands
in strengthening,
shall be *stronger and stronger* **strengthen**.

10 But as for you all,
do ye return **ye**, and come *now* **I beseech**:
for I *cannot find one* **find none** wise man among you.

11 My days are past,
my *purposes* **intrigues** are *broken off* **torn**,
even the *thoughts* **possessions** of my heart.

12 They *change* **set** the night into day:

IYOB 16, 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 you pluck me for a witness;
my emaciation rises within me
and answers to my face:

9 in his wrath, my opponent tears me;
he gnashes on me with his teeth;
my tribulator sharpens his eyes on me;

10 they gape on me with their mouth;
they smite me on the cheek reproachfully;
they fulfill against me.

11 El shuts me to the pervert
and hurls me to the hands of the wicked.

12 I am serene, and he breaks me;
and he takes me by my neck and shatters me;
he raises me for his target;
his archers surround me;

13 he cleaves my reins and spares not;
he pours out my bitters on the earth;
he breaches me at the face of breach on breach;
he runs on me as the mighty.

14 I sew saq on my skin
and exploit my horn in the dust;
my face foams with weeping
and on my eyelids is the shadow of death;
no violence is in my palms;
and my prayer is pure.

15 O earth, cover not my blood
that there be no place for my cry.

16 Also now, behold,
my witness in the heavens;
my witness in the heights.

17 My friends scorn me;
but my eye drips to Elohah.

18 O that one reprove for the mighty with Elohah
as a son of humanity for his friend!

19 When years of number come,
I go the way of no return.

17 My spirit is despoiled;
my days extinct;
the tombs are for me.

2 If not, mockeries are with me
and my eye is stayed in their rebelling?
I beseech, Set my pledge with you.

3 Who is he who claps hands with me?
For you hide their heart from comprehension;
so you exalt them not.

4 He who tells his friends — smoothing it over,
even the eyes of his children are finished off.
and he sets me — a proverb of the people;
at whose face I am as spit;
and my eye is dim of vexation
and all my forms as a shadow;
the straight astonish at this
and the innocent waken against the profaner;
and the just holds his way;
and in strengthening,
he who has pure hands, strengthens.

5 But as for you all,
return and come, I beseech;
for I find none wise among you.

6 My days pass
my intrigues are torn
— the possessions of my heart.
They set the night into day;

JOB 17—19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the light is *short near*
because of **at the face of** the darkness.
13 If I wait **await**, the grave **sheol** is mine house:
I have *made spread* my bed in the darkness.
14 I have *said called* to **corruption the pit of ruin**,
Thou art my father:
to the *worm* **maggot**,
Thou art my mother, and my sister.
15 And where is now my hope?
as for my hope, who shall see **observe** it?
16 They shall *go down* **descend**
to the *bars* **veins of the pit sheol**,
when our rest together is in the dust.

18

Then answered Bildad the *Shuhite* **Shuachiy**,
and said,
2 *How long will it be* **Until when**
ere set ye *make* an end of *words* **utterances**?
mark discern, and afterwards we *will speak* **shall word**.
3 Wherefore are we
counted **machinated** as *beasts* **animals**,
and *reputed vile* **foul** in your *sight* **eyes**?
4 He teareth *himself* **his soul** in his *anger* **wrath**:
shall the earth be forsaken for thee?
and shall the rock be removed out of his place?
5 Yea, the light of the wicked
shall *be put out* **extinguish**,
and the *spark* **flame** of his fire
shall not *shine* **illuminate**.
6 The light shall *be dark* **darken** in his *tabernacle* **tent**,
and his *candle* **lamp**
shall *be put out* **extinguish** with him.
7 The *steps* **paces** of his strength
shall *be straitened* **constrict**,
and his own counsel shall cast him down.
8 For he is *cast* **sent** into a net by his own feet,
and he walketh upon a *snare* **netting**.
9 The *gin* **snare** shall *take* **hold** him by the heel,
and the robber shall prevail against him.
10 The *snare* **cord** is *laid* **hid** for him in the *ground* **earth**,
and a trap for him in the *way* **path**.
11 Terrors shall *make* **frighten** him *afraid*
on every side **round about**,
and shall *drive* **scatter** him to his feet.
12 His strength shall *be hungerbitten* **famish**,
and *destruction* **calamity** shall *be ready* **prepared**
at his side.
13 It shall devour the strength of his *skin* **veins**:
even the firstborn **firstbirthed** of death
shall devour his *strength* **veins**.
14 His confidence
shall *be rooted* **torn** out of his *tabernacle* **tent**,
and it shall *bring* **pace** him to the *king* **sovereign** of terrors.
15 It shall *dwell* **tabernacle** in his *tabernacle* **tent**,
because it is none of his **without him**:
brimstone **sulphur** shall *be scattered* **winnowed**
upon his habitation of **rest**.
16 His roots shall *be dried up* **wither** beneath,
and above shall his *branch* **harvest** be *cut off* **clipped**.
17 His *remembrance* **memorial**
shall *perish* **destruct** from the earth,
and he shall have no name
in the street **at the face of the outways**.
18 He shall *be driven* **exiled** from light into darkness,
and chased out of the world.
19 He shall neither have son nor *nephew* **posterity**
among his people,
nor *any remaining* **survivors** in his *dwellings* **sojournings**.
20 They that come after him shall be astonished at his day,
as they that went before **the ancients**
were affrighted **whirled away**.
21 Surely such
are the *dwellings* **tabernacles** of the wicked,
and this is the place of him that knoweth not *God* **El**.

BILDAD ANSWERS

19

Then *Job* **Iyob** answered and said,
2 How long *will* **shall** ye *vex* **grieve** my soul,
and *break* **crush** me *in pieces* with *words* **utterances**?
3 These ten times have ye *reproached* **shamed** me:

IYOB 17—19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the light is near the face of the darkness.
13 If I await, sheol is my house;
I spread my bed in the darkness.
14 I call out to the pit of ruin, My father;
to the maggot, My mother! My sister!
15 And where is my hope now?
As for my hope, who observes?
16 They descend to the veins of sheol,
we rest together in the dust.

18

And Bildad the Shuachiy answers and says,
2 Until when set you an end of utterances?
Discern — and afterwards we word.
3 Why are we machinated as animals?
— and foul in your eyes?
4 He tears his soul in his wrath.

Is the earth forsaken for your sake?
Is the rock removed from its place?

5 Yes, the light of the wicked extinguishes
and the flame of his fire illuminates not;
6 the light darkens in his tent
and his lamp extinguishes with him;
7 the paces of his strength constrict
and his own counsel casts him down.

8 For he is sent into a net by his own feet
and he walks on a netting;
9 the snare holds him by the heel
and the robber prevails against him;
10 his cord is hidden in the earth
— his trap in the path.

11 Terrors frighten him all around
and scatter him to his feet;
12 his strength famishes
and calamity prepares at his side.
13 It devours the strength of his veins
— the firstbirthed of death devours his veins.
14 His confidence is torn from his tent
and paces him to the sovereign of terrors.
15 It tabernacles in his tent without him;
sulphur is winnowed on his habitation of rest.
16 His roots wither below
and above his harvest is clipped:
17 his memorial destructs from the earth
and he has no name at the face of the outways:
18 he is exiled from light into darkness
and chased from the world.
19 He has neither son nor posterity
among his people,
nor survivors in his sojournings.
20 They who come after him astonish at his day
as the ancients whirl away.
21 Surely such are the tabernacles of the wicked
and this is the place of him who knows not El.

BILDAD ANSWERS

19

And Iyob answers and says,
2 Until when grieve you my soul
and crush me with utterances?
3 These ten times you shame me

IYOB ANSWERS

IYOB ANSWERS

JOB 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

ye are not ashamed **yet ye shame not**
that ye *make yourselves strange to* **injure** me.
4 And be it *indeed* **truly** that I have erred **inadvertently**,
mine error *remaineth* **stayeth** with myself.
5 If *indeed* **truly**
ye will *magnify yourselves* **shall** **greaten** against me,
and *plead* **reprove** against me my reproach:
6 Know now
that *God* **Eloah** hath *overthrown* **twisted** me,
and hath *compassed* **surrounded** me with his *net* **lair**.
7 Behold, I cry out of *wrong* **violence**,
but I am not *heard* **answered**:
I cry *aloud*, but there is no judgment.
8 He hath *fenced up* **walled in** my way that I cannot pass,
and he hath set darkness in my paths.
9 He hath *stripped* me of my *glory* **honour**,
and *taken* **turned aside** the crown from my head.
10 He hath *destroyed me* **pulled me down**
on every side **all around**,
and I am gone:
and mine hope hath he *removed* **plucked** like a tree.
11 He hath also kindled his wrath against me,
and he *counteth* **fabricated** me unto him
as one of his *enemies* **tribulators**.
12 His troops come together,
and raise *up* their way against me,
and encamp round about my *tabernacle* **tent**.
13 He hath *put* **removed** my brethren *far* from me,
and *mine acquaintance* **they whom I know**
are verily estranged from me.
14 My *kinsfolk* **neighbours**
have *failed* **deceased**,
and my *familiar friends* **they whom I know**
have forgotten me.
15 They that *dwell* **sojourn** in mine house, and my maids,
count **fabricate** me for a stranger:
I am an alien in their *sight* **eyes**.
16 I called my servant,
and he *gave me no answer* **answered me not**;
I *intreated him* **sought his charism** with my mouth.
17 My *breath* **spirit** is strange to my *wife* **woman**,
though I intreated **and my charism**
for the children's sake of mine own body **to the sons of my belly**.
18 Yea, *young children despised* **sucklings spurned** me;
I arose, and they *spake* **worded** against me.
19 All my *inward friends* **private councilmen** abhorred me:
and they whom I loved are turned against me.
20 My bone
cleaveth **adhereth** to my skin and to my flesh,
and I am escaped with the skin of my teeth.
21 *Have pity upon me* **Grant me charism**,
have pity upon me **grant me charism**, O ye my friends;
for the hand of *God* **Eloah** hath touched me.
22 Why do ye *persecute* **pursue** me as *God* **El**,
and are not satisfied with my flesh?
23 *Oh Who giveth*
that my *words* **utterances** were now *written!* **inscribed?**
oh Who giveth that they were *printed* **inscribed**
in a *book!* **scroll?**
24 That they were *graven* **hewn** with an *iron pen* **stylus**
and lead in the rock *for ever* **eternally!**
25 For I know that my redeemer liveth,
and that he shall *stand* **arise** at the latter *day*
upon the *earth* **dust**:
26 *And though*
after my skin *worms destroy this body* **be stricken**,
yet in my flesh shall I see *God* **Eloah**:
27 Whom I shall see for myself,
and mine eyes shall *behold* **see**,
and not *another* **a stranger**;
though my reins be *consumed* **finished off**
within me **my bosom**.
28 But ye should say, Why *persecute* **pursue** we him,
seeing the root of the *matter* **word** is found in me?
29 Be **Dodge** ye *afraid* **at the face** of the sword:
for wrath bringeth the punishments
furious are the perversities of the sword,
that ye may know there is a *judgment* **the plea**.

IYOB 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

yet you shame not that you injure me.
4 And also, I truly erred inadvertently;
my error stays with me.
5 If you truly greaten against me
and reprove against my reproach;
6 know now that Eloah twisted me
and surrounded me with his lair.
7 Behold, I cry from violence, but no answer;
I cry, but no judgment:
8 he walls in my way so I cannot pass;
and sets darkness in my paths:
9 he strips me of my honor
and turns aside the crown from my head:
10 he pulls me *down* all around, and I go;
and he plucks my hope as a tree:
11 He kindles his wrath against me
and fabricates me as one of his tribulators.
12 His troops come together
and raise their way against me
and encamp around my tent:
13 he removes my brothers from me;
and they whom I know
are verily estranged from me:
14 my neighbours de cease
and they whom I know forget me:
15 they who sojourn in my house and my maids
fabricate me for a stranger
— an alien in their eyes.
16 I call my servant and he answers not;
I seek his charism with my mouth:
17 my spirit is strange to my woman
and my charism to the sons of my belly:
18 yes, sucklings spurn me;
19 I rise and they word against me:
all my private councilmen abhor me
and they whom I love turn against me:
20 my bone adheres to my skin and to my flesh
and I escape with the skin of my t'eeth.
21 Grant me charism
— grant me charism, O my friends;
for the hand of Eloah touches me.
22 Why pursue you me as El?
— and not satisfied with my flesh?
23 Who gives that my utterances be inscribed?
Who gives that they be inscribed in a scroll
— hewn eternally
with an iron stylus and lead in the rock!
24 I know that my redeemer lives
and rises at the latter on the dust;
25 and after my skin becomes stricken,
yet in my flesh I see Eloah
— see for myself
26 — my eyes see and not a stranger;
though my reins finish off within my bosom.
27 But you say, Why pursue we him
seeing the root of the word is found in me?
28 Dodge you at the face of the sword?
Furious are the perversities of the sword,
so that you know there is the plea.

JOB 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SOPHAR ANSWERS

20

Then answered
 Zophar **Sophar** the *Naamathite Naamahiy*, and said,
 2 Therefore do my *thoughts sentiments*
 cause me to *answer respond*,
 and for this I *make haste hasten*.
 3 I have heard the *check discipline* of my reproach,
 and the spirit of my *understanding discernment*
 causeth me to answer.
 4 Knowest thou *not this of old eternally*,
 since *man humanity* was placed upon earth,
 5 That the *triumphing shout* of the wicked is short,
 and the *joy cheer* of the *hypocrite profaner*
 but for a *moment blink?*
 6 Though his *excellency exaltation*
mount up ascend to the heavens,
 and his head reach unto the *thick* clouds;
 7 Yet he shall *perish for ever destruct in perpetuity*
 like his own dung:
 they which have seen him shall say, Where is he?
 8 He shall fly away as a dream, and shall not be found:
 yea, he shall be chased away as a vision of the night.
 9 The eye also which *saw scanned* him
 shall **not add to** see him *no more*;
 neither shall his place any more *behold observe* him.
 10 His *children sons* shall seek to please the poor,
 and his hands shall restore their *goods strength*.
 11 His bones are full of *the sin* of his youth,
 which shall lie down with him in the dust.
 12 Though *wickedness evil*
be sweet sweeteneth in his mouth,
 though he *hid concealeth* it under his tongue;
 13 Though he spare it, and forsake it not;
 but *keep withhold* it still within his *mouth palate*:
 14 Yet his *meat bread* in his *bowels inwards* is turned,
 it is the *gall venom* of asps within him.
 15 He hath swallowed *down riches valuables*,
 and he shall vomit them up *again*:
 God **El** shall *cast dispossess* them out of his belly.
 16 He shall suck the *poison rosh* of asps:
 the *viper's hisser's* tongue shall *slay slaughter* him.
 17 He shall not see the *rivers rivulets*, the floods,
 the *brooks wadies* of honey and butter.
 18 That which he laboured for shall he restore,
 and shall not swallow *down*:
 according to his *substance valuables*
thus shall the *restitution exchange* be,
 and he shall not *rejoice therein leap for joy*.
 19 Because he hath *oppressed crushed*
 and hath forsaken the poor;
 because he hath *violently taken away stripped* an house
 which he builded not;
 20 Surely he shall not *feel quietness know serenity*
 in his belly,
 he shall not *save rescue* of that which he desired.
 21 There shall none of his *meat be left food survive*;
 therefore **none** shall *no man look for writhe* his goods.
 22 In the fulness of his *sufficiency gluttony*
 he shall be *in straits constricted*:
 every hand of the wicked shall come upon him.
 23 When he is about to fill his belly,
 God **He** shall *cast send the fury fuming* of his wrath
 upon him,
 and shall rain it upon him while he is eating.
 24 He shall flee from the iron *weapon armour*,
 and the bow of *steel copper*
 shall *strike pass* him through.
 25 It is drawn, and cometh out of the body;
 yea, the *glittering lightning* sword cometh out of his gall:
 terrors are upon him.
 26 All darkness shall be hid in his *secret places hideouts*:
 a fire not *blown puffed* shall consume him;
 it shall go *ill evilly* with him
 that *is left surviveth* in his *tabernacle tent*.
 27 The *heaven heavens*
 shall *reveal expose* his *iniquity perversity*;
 and the earth shall *rise up* against him.
 28 The *increase produce* of his house
 shall *depart be exposed*,

IYOB 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SOPHAR ANSWERS

20

And Sophar the Naamahiy answers and says,
 2 So my sentiments have me respond
 and for this I hasten.
 3 I hear the discipline of my reproach
 and my spirit of discernment answers.
 4 Know you this eternally
 — since placing humanity on earth,
 that the shouting of the wicked *is* near?
 5 and the cheer of the profaner *is* for a blink?
 6 Though his exaltation ascend to the heavens
 and his head touch the thick clouds;
 7 as his own dung, he destructs in perpetuity;
 they who see him say, Where is he?
 8 He flies as a dream and is not found;
 yes, — chased away as a vision of the night.
 9 Neither the eye scans to add to see him;
 nor his place observes him any more.
 10 His sons seek to please the poor
 and his hands restore their strength.
 11 His bones lie down with him in the dust;
 — full of his youth.
 12 Though evil sweetens in his mouth,
 though he conceals it under his tongue;
 13 though he spares it and forsakes it not;
 and withholds it still within his palate;
 14 yet his bread in his inwards turns
 — the venom of asps within him.
 15 He swallows valuables and vomits them;
 El dispossess them from his belly;
 he sucks the rosh of asps
 the tongue of the hisser slaughters him;
 16 he sees not the rivulets, the floods,
 the wadies of honey and butter.
 17 He restores that for which he labors
 but swallows not;
 as his valuables, thus the exchange
 — and he leaps not for joy.
 18 He crushes — he forsakes the poor;
 he strips a house he built not;
 19 surely he knows no serenity in his belly;
 he rescues none of his desires:
 20 none of his food survives;
 so no one writhes his goods.
 21 In the fulness of his gluttony, he constricts;
 every hand of the wicked comes on him.
 22 In the fulness of his belly,
 he sends his fuming wrath on him
 — rains on him while he eats.
 23 He flees from the iron armour
 and the bow of copper passes through him;
 24 — drawn and comes from his body;
 yes, the lightning sword comes from his gall;
 with terrors on him.
 25 All darkness hides in his hideouts;
 a fire not puffed consumes him;
 it goes evilly with him who survives in his tent.
 26 The heavens expose his perversity;
 and the earth rises against him:
 27 the produce of his house exposes

JOB 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and *his goods* shall flow away in the day of his wrath.
29 This is the *portion allotment*
of a wicked *man* **humanity** from *God Elohim*,
and the *heritage inheritance*
appointed unto him by *God* of his sayings of El.

IYOB ANSWERS

21

2 But *Job Iyob* answered and said,
Hear *diligently* my *speech*
In hearing, hear my utterances,
and let this be your consolations.
3 Suffer **Allow** me that I may *speake word*;
and after that I have *spoken worded*, *mock on deride*.
4 As for me,
is my *complaint meditation* to *man* **humanity**?
and if it were *so*,
why should not my spirit be *troubled curtailed*?
5 Mark **Face** me, and be astonished,
and lay **set** your hand upon your mouth.
6 Even when I remember I *am afraid terrify*,
and trembling taketh hold on my flesh.
7 Wherefore do the wicked live, *become old antiqueate*,
yea, are *mighty prevail mightily* in *power valour*?
8 Their seed is established
in their sight with them **at their face**,
and their offspring *before* **at** their eyes.
9 Their houses are *safe* **at shalom** from *fear dread*,
neither is the *rod scion* of *God Elohah* upon them.
10 Their *bull gendereth ox passeth*,
and *faileth loatheth* not;
their *cow calveth heifer slippeth away*,
and *casteth aborteth* not her calf.
11 They send forth their *little ones sucklings* like a flock,
and their children dance.
12 They take **lift** the *timbrel tambourine* and harp,
and *rejoice cheer*
at the *sound voice* of the *organ woodwind*.
13 They *spend wear away*,
finishing off their days in *wealth good*,
and in a *moment blink*,
go down descend to the *grave sheol*.
14 Therefore they say unto *God El*, *Depart Turn* from us;
for we desire not the knowledge of thy ways.
15 What is the *Almighty Shadday*,
that we should serve him?
and what *profit benefit* should we have,
if we *pray intercede* unto him?
16 Lo **Behold**, their good is not in their hand:
the counsel of the wicked is far from me.
17 How oft is the *candle lamp* of the wicked
put out extinguished!
and *how oft* cometh their *destruction calamity* upon them!
God distributeth sorrows **He apportioneth pangs**
in his *anger wrath*.
18 They are as *stubble straw*
before **at the face of** the wind,
and as chaff
that the *storm carrieth away hurricane stealeth*.
19 *God Elohah*
layeth up his *iniquity punishment of mischief*
for his *children sons*:
he *rewardeth doth shalam* him, and he shall know it.
20 His eyes shall see his destruction,
and he shall drink
of the *wrath fury* of the *Almighty Shadday*.
21 For what *pleasure delight* hath he
in his house after him,
when the number of his months
is *cut off severed* in the *midst half*?
22 Shall any teach *God El* knowledge?
seeing he judgeth those that are *high lofted*.
23 One dieth in *his full strength* **the integrity of his bones**,
being wholly *at ease serene* and *quiet secure*.
24 His *breasts pails* are full of milk,
and his bones are moistened with marrow.
25 And another dieth in the bitterness of his soul,
and never eateth *with pleasure good*.
26 They shall lie *down alike together* in the dust,
and the *worms maggots* shall cover them.
27 Behold,

IYOB 20, 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and flows away in the day of his wrath.
29 This is the allotment of wicked humanity
by Elohim
and the inheritance of his sayings
by El.

IYOB ANSWERS

21

2 And Iyob answers and says,
In hearing, hear my utterances
— this your consolation.
3 Allow me to word;
and after I word, deride.
4 As for me,
Is my meditation to humanity?
Why then is my spirit not curtailed?
5 Face me and astonish
and set your hand on your mouth.
6 Yes, when I remember I terrify
and trembling takes hold on my flesh.
7 Why *do* the wicked live? antiqueate?
— yes, prevail mightily in valour?
8 Their seed establishes at their face
and their offspring at their eyes;
9 their houses are at shalom from dread,
the scion of Elohah is not on them.
10 Their ox passes and loathes not;
their heifer slips away and aborts not her calf.
11 They send forth their sucklings as a flock
and their children dance;
12 they lift the tambourine and harp
and cheer at the voice of the woodwind;
13 they wear away — finish off their days in good;
and in a blink, descend to sheol.
14 They say to El, Turn from us;
for we desire not the knowledge of your ways.
15 Who is Shadday, that we serve him?
and what benefit have we if we intercede to him?
16 Behold, their good is not in their hand;
the counsel of the wicked is far from me.
17 How often the lamp of the wicked extinguishes!
And their calamity comes on them!
He apportions pangs in his wrath;
— as straw at the face of the wind
and as chaff stolen by the hurricane.
19 Elohah lays up his punishment of mischief
for his sons;
— shalam him so that he knows.
20 His eyes see his destruction
and he drinks of the fury of Shadday.
21 For how delights he in his house after him,
when the number of his months is severed in half?
22 Whoever teaches El knowledge
— seeing he judges the lofty?
23 One dies in the integrity of his bones,
wholly serene and secure:
his pails are full of milk
and his bones moistened with marrow.
25 Another dies with bitter soul
and never eats good.
26 Together they lie in the dust;
the maggots cover them.

27

Behold,

JOB 21, 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

I know your *thoughts fabrications*
and the *devices intrigues*
which ye *wrongfully imagine violate* against me.
28 For ye say,
Where is the house of the *prince volunteer?*
and where are the *dwelling places tents*
— the *tabernacles* of the wicked?
29 Have ye not asked them that *go pass* by the way?
and do ye not *know recognize* their *tokens signs*,
30 That the *wicked evil* is *reserved spared*
to the day of *destruction calamity?*
they shall be brought forth to the day of *wrath fury*.
31 Who shall *declare tell* his way to his face?
and who shall *repay shalam* him
for what he hath *done worked?*
32 Yet shall he be brought to the *grave tomb*,
and shall *remain watch* in the *tomb heap*.
33 The clods of the *valley wadi*
shall be *sweet sweeten* unto him,
and every *man all humanity* shall draw after him,
as there are innumerable *before him at his face*.
34 How then *comfort sigh* ye *over* me in vain,
seeing in your *answers responses*
there *remaineth falsehood surviveth treason?*

ELI PHAZ ANSWERS

22

Then *Eliphaz Eli Phaz* the *Temanite Temaniy*
answered and said,
2 *Can a man be profitable Be the mighty useful* unto God,
as he that is *wise comprehendeth*
may be *profitable useful* unto himself?
3 Is it any *pleasure delight* to the *Almighty Shadday*,
that thou art *righteous justified?*
or is it gain to him,
4 that thou makest thy ways *perfect integrious?*
Will Shall he reprove thee for *fear awe* of thee?
will shall he enter with thee into judgment?
5 Is not thy *wickedness evil* great?
and *thine iniquities infinite thy perversities endless?*
6 For thou hast taken a pledge from thy brother
for nought gratuitously,
and stripped the naked of their clothing.
7 Thou hast not given water
to the *weary languid* to drink,
and thou hast withholden bread
from the *hungry famished*.
8 But as for the *mighty man of arm*,
he had the earth;
and the *honourable man face of the exalted*
dwelt settled in it.
9 Thou hast sent widows away empty,
and the arms of the *fatherless orphan*
have been *broken crushed*.
10 Therefore snares are round about thee,
and sudden *fear troubleth dread terrifieth* thee;
11 Or darkness, that thou canst not see;
and abundance of waters cover thee.
12 Is not *God Elohah*
in the height of *heaven the heavens?*
and *behold see* the *height head* of the stars,
how high they are!
13 And thou sayest, How *doth God shall El* know?
can he judge through the *dark cloud dripping darkness?*
14 Thick clouds are a covering to him, that he seeth not;
and he walketh
in the *circuit circle* of *heaven the heavens*.
15 Hast thou *marked regarded* the *old eternal* way
which *wicked mischievous* men have trodden?
16 Which were *cut down plucked* out of time,
whose foundation was *overflown poured* with a flood:
17 Which said unto *God El*, *Depart Turn away* from us:
and what can the *Almighty Shadday* do for them?
18 Yet he filled their houses with good things:
but the counsel of the wicked is far from me.
19 The *righteous just* see it, and *are glad cheer*:
and the innocent *laugh deride* them *to scorn*.
20 Whereas our *substance opponent* is not cut down off,
but the *remnant remainder* of them the fire consumeth.
21 *Acquaint now thyself Be accustomed, I beseech*,
with him,

IYOB 21, 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

I know the fabrications and intrigues
you violate against me:
28 for you say,
Where is the house of the volunteer?
and where are the tents
— the tabernacles of the wicked?
29 Ask you not of them who pass by the way?
Recognize you not their signs
30 — that the evil are spared to the day of calamity?
— to be brought forth to the day of fury?
31 Who tells his way to his face?
Who shalams him for what he works?
32 Yet he — he is brought to the tomb
and watches in the heap:
33 the clods of the wadi sweeten to him
and he draws all humanity after him
— innumerable at his face.
34 How then sigh you over me in vain,
seeing that treason survives in your responses?

ELI PHAZ ANSWERS

22

And Eli Phaz the Temaniy answers and says,
2 Is the mighty as useful to God
as he who comprehends is useful to himself?
3 Is it any delight to Shadday that you are justified?
Or gain to him that your ways be integrious?
4 Reproves he because of your awe?
5 Enters he into judgment with you?
Is not your evil great? — your perversity endless?
6 Gratuitously you take a pledge from your brother
and strip the naked of their clothing:
7 you give the languid no water to drink;
you withhold bread from the famished.
8 The man of arm has the earth
and the exalted face settles therein:
9 you send widows away empty
and crush the arms of the orphan.
10 So snares surround you
and sudden dread terrifies you:
11 or darkness, you see not;
and abundance of waters cover you.
12 Is not Elohah in the height of the heavens?
See the head of the stars — how high!
13 And you say, El knows what?
14 Judges he through the dripping darkness?
Thick clouds are his covering that he not be seen;
and he walks in the circle of the heavens.
15 Regard you the eternal way
which mischievous men have trodden?
16 — who were plucked from time?
— whose foundation was poured with a flood?
17 Who says to El, Turn from us?
What does Shadday for them?
18 Yet he fills their houses with good;
but the counsel of the wicked is far from me:
19 the just see and cheer;
and the innocent deride.
20 Surely our opponent is not cut off,
and fire consumes them who remain.
21 I beseech, be accustomed with him

JOB 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and be at peace **shalam**:
thereby good shall come unto thee.
22 Receive, I pray **beseech** thee,
the law **torah** from his mouth,
and lay up **set** his words **sayings** in thine heart.
23 If thou return to the Almighty **Shadday**,
thou shalt be built up,
thou shalt *put away iniquity* **remove wickedness**
far from thy **tabernacles tents**.
24 Then shalt thou lay up gold **set diggings** as dust,
and the gold of Ophir
as the stones **rocks** of the brooks **wadies**.
25 Yea, the Almighty **Shadday**
shall be thy defence **diggings**,
and thou shalt have plenty **strengths** of silver.
26 For then shalt thou have thy delight
in the Almighty **Shadday**,
and shalt lift up thy face unto God **Elohah**.
27 Thou shalt *make thy prayer* **intreat** unto him,
and he shall hear thee,
and thou shalt pay **shalam** thy vows.
28 Thou shalt also decree a thing **cut a saying**,
and it shall be established **arise** unto thee:
and the light shall shine upon **illuminate** thy ways.
29 When men are cast down **abased**,
then thou shalt say, There is *lifting up* **arrogance**;
and he shall save the *humble person* **downcast eye**.
30 He shall *deliver* **rescue** the island of the innocent:
and it is *delivered* **escapeth**
by the *pureness* **purity** of thine hands **thy palms**.

IYOB ANSWERS

23

Then Job **Iyob** answered and said,
2 Even to day
is my complaint bitter **meditation rebellious**:
my stroke **hand** is heavier than my *groaning* **sighing**.
3 Oh **Who giveth** that I knew where I might find him!
that I might come even to his seat **place**!
4 I would order my cause **O that I line up my judgment**
before him **at his face**,
and fill my mouth with *arguments* **reproofs**.
5 I would **O that I** know the words **utterances**
which he would **should** answer me,
and *understand* **discern**
what he would **should** say unto me.
6 Will **Shall** he *plead* **contend** against me
with his *great power* **abundant force**?
No; but he would *put strength* **should set it** in me.
7 There the *righteous* **straight**
might *dispute with* **reprove** him;
so should I be *delivered* **slipped away**
for ever **in perpetuity** from my judge.
8 Behold, I go forward **eastward**, but he is not there;
and backward, but I cannot *perceive* **discern** him:
9 On the left *hand*, where he *doth work* **worketh**,
but I cannot *behold him* **see**:
he *hideth* **shroudeeth** himself on the right *hand*,
that I cannot see *him*:
10 But he knoweth the way *that I take* **of mine**:
when he hath tried **proofed** me,
I shall come forth as gold.
11 My foot hath held his steps,
his way have I *kept* **guarded**, and not *declined* **perverted**.
12 Neither have I gone back
from the *commandment* **misvah** of his lips;
I have *esteemed* **treasured**
the words **sayings** of his mouth
more than my *necessary food* **statutes**.
13 But he is in one mind, and who can turn him?
and what his soul desireth, even that he *doeth* **worketh**.
14 For he *performeth* **shall shalam**
the thing that is appointed for me **my statute**:
and many such *things* are with him.
15 Therefore am I *troubled* **terrified** at his *presence* **face**:
when I *consider* **discern**, I am *afraid of* **dread** him.
16 For God *maketh* **El tenderizeth** my heart *soft*,
and the Almighty *troubleth* **Shadday terrifieth** me:
17 Because I was not *cut off* **exterminated**
before **at the face** of the darkness,
neither hath he covered the darkness from my face.

IYOB 22, 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and shalam;
thereby good comes to you.
22 I beseech you,
receive the torah from his mouth
and set his sayings in your heart.
23 If you return to Shadday, you are built up;
remove wickedness far from your tents:
24 so as to set your diggings as dust
— as the rocks of the wadies of Ophir.
25 Yes, Shadday becomes your diggings
and silver your strengths.
26 For then you have your delight in Shadday
— lift your face to Eloah.
27 Intreat to him
and he hears you shalam your vows:
28 and cut a saying and it rises to you;
and the light illuminates your ways.
29 When abased, say, This is arrogance!
— and he saves the downcast eye;
30 he rescues the island of the innocent;
it escapes by the purity of your palms.

23

And Iyob answers and says,
2 Even today my meditation is rebellious
— my hand heavier than my sighing.
3 Who gives that I know
— that I find him — that I come to his place!
4 O that I line up my judgment at his face
and fill my mouth with reproofs.
5 O that I know the utterances he answers me
and discern what he says to me.
6 Contends he against me with his abundant force?
No; but he sets it in me.
7 There the straight reprove him;
and in perpetuity, I slip away from my judge.
8 Behold, I go eastward, and he is not;
and backward, and I discern him not;
9 on the left where he works,
and I see not;
he shrouds himself on the right,
and I see not.
10 For he knows my way;
he proofs me; I come forth as gold.
11 My foot holds to his steps; I guard his way;
and neither pervert
12 nor go back from the misvah of his lips:
I treasure the sayings of his mouth
more than my statutes.
13 And he is in one — and who can turn him?
and what his soul desires, he works.
14 For he shalams my statute;
and many such others with him.
15 So I terrify at his face;
I discern; I dread him;
16 for El tenderizes my heart
and Shadday terrifies me;
17 for I neither exterminate at the face of the darkness;
nor covers he the darkness from my face.

IYOB ANSWERS

JOB 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

24

Why,
 seeing times are not hidden from *the Almighty Shadday*,
 do they that know him not see his days?
 2 Some remove **They overtake** the landmarks borders;
 they violently take away flocks strip droves, and feed thereof.
 3 They drive away the ass she burro
 of the fatherless orphan,
 they take the widow's ox for a pledge.
 4 They turn pervert the needy out of the way:
 the poor humble of the earth hide themselves together.
 5 Behold, as wild asses runners in the desert wilderness,
 go they forth to their work deeds;
 rising betimes early for a prey:
 the wilderness yieldeth food plains for bread
 for them and for their children lads.
 6 They reap every one his corn harvest their fodder
 in the field:
 and they gather glean the vintage vineyard of the wicked.
 7 They cause the naked
 to lodge stay overnight without clothing robe,
 that they have no covering in the cold.
 8 They are wet moist
 with the showers floods of the mountains,
 and embrace the rock for want of a shelter refuge.
 9 They pluck strip the fatherless orphan from the breast,
 and take a pledge of the poor humble.
 10 They cause him to go naked without clothing robe,
 and they take away the sheaf omer
 from the hungry famished;
 11 Which make press oil within between their walls,
 and tread their winepresses troughs, and suffer thirst.
 12 Men groan from out of the city,
 and the soul of the wounded pierced crieth out:
 yet God layeth Eloah setteth not folly frivolity to them.
 13 They are of those that rebel against the light;
 they know recognize not the ways thereof,
 nor abide settle in the paths thereof.
 14 The murderer rising with the light
 killeth severeth the poor humble and needy,
 and in the night is as a thief.
 15 The eye also of the adulterer
 waiteth guardeth for the twilight evening breeze,
 saying, No eye shall see observe me:
 and disguiseth setteth his face covertly.
 16 In the dark they dig through houses,
 which they had marked sealed for themselves
 in the daytime day:
 they know not the light.
 17 For together, the morning is to them
 even as the shadow of death:
 if one know recognize them,
 they are in the terrors of the shadow of death.
 18 He is swift as at the face of the waters;
 their portion allotment is cursed abased in the earth:
 he beholdeth faceth not the way of the vineyards.
 19 Drought Parch and heat
 consume strip the snow waters:
 so doth the grave shall Sheol those which have sinned.
 20 The womb shall forget him;
 the worm maggot shall feed sweetly on suck him;
 he shall be no more remembered;
 and wickedness shall be broken as a tree.
 21 He evil entreateth tendeth the barren sterile
 that beareth birtheth not:
 and doeth not good to well—pleaseth not the widow.
 22 He draweth also the mighty with his power force:
 he riseth up, and no man is sure of one trusteth his life.
 23 Though it be given him to be in safety
He giveth him confidence,
 whereon he resteth leaneth;
 yet his eyes are upon their ways.
 24 They are exalted for a little while,
 but are gone and brought low subdued;
 they are taken out of the way shut up as all other,
 and cut off clipped as the tops of the ears of corn.
 25 And if it be not so now, who will shall make me a liar,
 and make set my speech nothing worth utterances as nought?

IYOB 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

24

Why are not times from Shadday treasured?
 Why do they who know him not see his days?
 2 They overtake the borders;
 they strip droves and feed;
 3 they drive away the she burro of the orphan;
 they take the ox of the widow for a pledge;
 4 they pervert the needy from the way;
 the humble of the earth hide.
 5 Behold, as wild runners in the wilderness,
 they go to their deeds;
 rising early for a prey;
 to the plains for bread — for them and their lads;
 6 they harvest their fodder in the field;
 they glean the vineyard of the wicked;
 7 they stay the naked overnight without robe
 that they have no covering in the cold;
 8 they are moist with the floods of the mountains
 and embrace the rock for want of a refuge;
 9 they strip the orphan from the breast
 and take a pledge of the humble;
 10 they have him go naked without robe;
 they take away the omer from the famished;
 11 they press oil between their walls
 and tread their troughs — and thirst.
 12 Men of the city groan
 and the soul of the pierced cries out;
 yet Eloah sets not frivolity to them.
 13 They are of those who rebel against the light;
 they neither recognize the ways
 nor settle in the paths.
 14 The murderer rising with the light
 severs the humble and needy as a thief in the night:
 15 the eye of the adulterer
 guards for the evening breeze,
 saying, No eye observes me!
 — and covertly sets his face.
 16 In the dark they dig through houses
 which they sealed for themselves in the day;
 17 they know not the light;
 when they are together
 morning is as the shadow of death;
 if one recognizes them
 they are in the terrors of the shadow of death.
 18 He is swift at the face of the waters;
 their allotment abases in the earth;
 he faces not the way of the vineyards.
 19 Parch and heat strip the snow waters
 as Sheol to them who sin:
 20 the womb forgets him;
 the maggot sucks him;
 — remembered no more:
 and wickedness breaks as a tree.
 21 He neither tends the sterile who birth
 nor well — pleases the widow:
 22 he draws the mighty with his force;
 he rises, and no one trusts his life:
 23 he gives him confidence whereon to lean
 yet his eyes are on their ways.
 24 They exalt for a little,
 then go and subdue
 — shut up as all the others
 — clipped as the tops of the ears.
 25 And if not, who proves me a liar?
 Who sets my utterances as naught?

25 Then answered Bildad the *Shuhite* **Shuachiy**,
and said,
2 Dominion and *fear* **dread** are with him,
he *maketh peace* **worketh shalom**
in his *high places* **heights**.
3 Is there any number of his *armies* **troops**?
and upon whom doth not his light arise?
4 How then can man be justified with *God* **El**?
or how can he be *clean* **purified**,
that is *born* **birthed** of a woman?
5 Behold even to the moon, and it shineth not;
yea, the stars are not pure in his *sight* **eyes**.
6 How much less man,
that is a worm — **a maggot**?
and the son of *men* **humanity**,
which is a worm — **a maggot**?

BILDAD ANSWERS

26 But *Job* **Iyob** answered and said,
2 How hast thou helped him
that is without power **hath no force**?
how savest thou the arm
that hath no strength?
3 How hast thou counselled him that hath no wisdom?
and how hast thou
plentifully declared the thing as it is
abundantly made known his substance?
4 To whom hast thou *uttered words* **told utterances**?
and whose *spirit* **breath** came from thee?
5 *Dead things are formed from* **Ghosts writhe**
under the waters,
and the *inhabitants thereof dwell*
they who tabernacle there.
6 *Hell* **Sheol** is naked *before* **in front of** him,
and *destruction* **Abaddon** hath no covering.
7 He *stretcheth out* **spreadeth** the north
over the *empty place* **void**,
and hangeth the earth upon *nothing* **naught whatever**.
8 He *bindeth up* **tribulateth** the waters in his thick clouds;
and the cloud is not *rent* **split** under them.
9 He holdeth back the face of his throne,
and spreadeth his cloud upon it.
10 He hath *compassed* **circled the face of** the waters
with *bounds* **statutes**,
until the *day* **light** and *night* **come to an end** **dark conclude**.
11 The pillars of *heaven* **tremble** **the heavens quake**
and are *astonished* **marvel** at his *reproof* **rebuke**.
12 He *divideth* **splitteth** the sea with his *power* **force**,
and by his *understanding* **discernment**
he *smiteth through* **strikethe** the proud.
13 By his spirit he hath *garnished* **glorified** the heavens;
his hand hath *formed* **writhed**
the *crooked* **fugitive** serpent.
14 *Lo* **Behold**, these are *parts* **the end** of his ways:
but how *little a portion* **an inkling of a word**
is heard of him?
but the thunder of his *power* **might**
who can *understand* **discerneth**?

IYOB ANSWERS

27 *Moreover* **Job** **Iyob**
continued **added to lift** his *parable* **proverb**, and said,
2 *As* **God** **El** liveth,
who hath *taken away* **turned aside** my judgment;
and the *Almighty* **Shadday**,
who hath *vexed* **embittered** my soul;
3 All the while my breath is in me,
and the spirit of *God* **Eloah** is in my nostrils;
4 My lips shall not *speak* **word** wickedness,
nor my tongue *utter* **mutter** deceit.
5 *God forbid* **Far be it** that I should justify you:
till I *die* **expire**
I *will* **shall** not *remove* **turn aside**
from mine integrity *from me*.
6 My *righteousness* **justness** I *hold fast* **uphold**,
and *will* **shall** not *let it go* **slacken**:
my heart shall not reproach me
so long as I live **all my days**.
7 Let mine enemy be as the wicked,
and he that riseth up against me
as the *unrighteous* **wicked**.

25 And Bildad the Shuachiy answers and says,
2 Dominion and dread *are* with him;
he works shalom in his heights.
3 Is there any number of his troops?
On whom rises not his light?
4 How then is man justified with El?
How is he, birthed of a woman, purified?
5 Behold even to the moon and it shines not;
yes, in his eyes, the stars are not pure;
6 How much less man — a maggot?
and the son of humanity — a maggot?

BILDAD ANSWERS

26 And Iyob answers and says,
2 How help you him who has no force?
— save the arm that has no strength?
3 — counsel him who has no wisdom?
4 — abundantly make known his substance?
To whom tell you utterances?
Whose breath came from you?
5 Ghosts writhe under the waters
with them who tabernacle there.
6 Sheol is naked in front of him
and Abaddon has no covering.
7 He spreads the north over the void
and hangs the earth on naught whatever;
8 he tribulates the waters in his thick clouds
and the cloud splits not under them;
9 he holds back the face of his throne
and spreads his cloud thereon;
10 he circles the face of the waters with statutes
until the light and dark conclude.
11 The pillars of the heavens quake
and marvel at his rebuke;
12 he splits the sea with his force;
by his discernment he strikes the proud:
13 by his spirit he glorifies the heavens;
his hand writhes the fugitive serpent.
14 Behold, these — the end of his ways;
And how an inkling of a word is heard of him?
And who discerns the thunder of his might?

IYOB ANSWERS

27 And Iyob adds to lift his proverb, and says,
2 El lives — who turns aside my judgment;
and Shadday — who embitters my soul:
3 for all the while my breath *is* in me
and the spirit of Eloah in my nostrils:
4 neither my lips word wickedness
nor my tongue mutters deceit.
5 Far be it that I justify you;
until I expire I turn not aside from my integrity.
6 I uphold my justness and slacken not;
my heart reproaches me not all my days:
7 My enemy is as the wicked
and he who rises against me as the wicked.

JOB 27, 28

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

8 For what is the hope of the *hypocrite* **profaner**,
though he hath gained,
when *God taketh away* **Eloah extracteth** his soul?
9 Will *God* **Shall El** hear his cry
when *trouble* **tribulation** cometh upon him?
10 Will **Shall** he delight himself in *the Almighty* **Shadday**?
will shall he **always at all times** call upon *God* **Eloah**?
11 I *will shall* teach you by the hand of *God El*:
that which is with *the Almighty* **Shadday**
will shall I not conceal.
12 Behold, all ye yourselves have seen it;
why then are ye thus *altogether* **in being vain**, vain?
13 This is the *portion* **allotment**
of a *man* **wicked humanity**
with *God El*,
and the *heritage* **inheritance** of *oppressors* **tyrants**,
which they shall *receive* **take** of *the Almighty* **Shadday**.
14 If his *children* be **multiplied sons abound**,
it is for the sword:
and his offspring shall not be satisfied with bread.
15 *Those that remain of him* **His survivors**
shall be *buried* **entombed** in death:
and his widows shall not weep.
16 Though he heap *up* silver as the dust,
and prepare *raiment* **robes** as the clay;
17 He may prepare it, but the just shall *put it on* **enrobe**,
and the innocent shall *divide* **allot** the silver.
18 He buildeth his house as a moth,
and as a *booth* **sukkoth/brush arbor**
that the *keeper* **maketh guardian worketh**.
19 The rich *man* shall lie down,
but he shall not be gathered:
he openeth his eyes, and he is not.
20 Terrors *take hold on* **overtake** him as waters,
a *tempest* **hurricane** stealeth him away in the night.
21 The *east wind* **carrieth easterly lifteth** him away,
and he *departeth* **goeth**:
and as a *storm* **hurleth whirleth** him out of his place.
22 For *God And* shall cast upon him, and not spare:
in fleeing, he *would fain flee* **fleeth** out of his hand.
23 *Men* **They** shall clap their *hands* **palms** at him,
and shall hiss him out of his place.

28

2 Surely there is a *vein* **source** for the silver,
and a place for gold where they *fine* **refine** it.
Iron is taken out of the *earth* **dust**,
and *brass* **copper** is *molten* **poured** out of the stone.
3 He setteth an end to darkness,
and *searcheth out* **probeth** all *perfection* **conclusion**:
the stones of darkness, and the shadow of death.
4 The *flood* **wadi** breaketh out
from the *inhabitant* **sojourner**;
even the waters — forgotten of the foot:
they *are dried up* **languish**,
they *are gone* **drift** away from men.
5 As for the earth, out of it cometh bread:
and under it is turned up as it were fire.
6 The stones of it are the place of sapphires:
and it hath dust of gold.
7 There is a path which no *fowl* **swooper** knoweth,
and which the *vulture's* **hawk's** eye
hath not *seen* **scanned**:
8 The *lion's* **whelps** **sons of pride** have not trodden it,
nor the *fierce* **roaring** lion *passed by it* **attacked**.
9 He *putteth forth* **spreadeth** his hand upon the *rock* **flint**;
he overturneth the mountains by the roots.
10 He *cutteth out* **splitteth** rivers among the rocks;
and his eye seeth *every precious thing* **all the esteemed**.
11 He bindeth the floods from *overflowing* **weeping**;
and the *thing that is hid* **concealed**
bringeth he forth to light.
12 But where shall wisdom be found?
and where is the place of *understanding* **discernment**?
13 Man knoweth not the *price thereof* **appraisal**;
neither is it found in the land of the living.
14 The *depth* **abyss** saith, *It is* not in me:
and the sea saith, *It is* not with me.
15 *It cannot be gotten for gold*
Gold shall not be given for it,
neither shall silver be weighed for the price *thereof*.

IYOB 27, 28

exeGeses companion BIBLE

8 For what *is* the hope of the profaner,
though he gains,
when Eloah extracts his soul?
9 Hears El his cry when tribulation overcomes him?
10 Delights he in Shadday?
Calls he on Eloah at all times?
11 I teach you by the hand of El;
what *is* with Shadday I conceal not.
12 Behold, all you yourselves see;
why then, in being vain, are you so vain?
13 This is the allotment of wicked humanity with El;
and the inheritance of tyrants
which they take of Shadday.
14 If his sons abound, it is for the sword;
and his offspring satisfy not with bread:
his survivors entomb in death
and his widows weep not:
16 though he heaps silver as the dust
and prepares robes as the clay:
17 he prepares, and the just enrobe;
and the innocent allot the silver:
18 he builds his house as a moth
and as a sukkoth/brush arbor
which the guardian works.
19 The rich lies down, and he is not gathered;
he opens his eyes, and he is not:
20 terrors overtake him as waters;
a hurricane steals him away in the night:
21 the easterly lifts him and he goes
— whirls him from his place:
22 and casts on him and spares not;
in fleeing, he flees from his hand.
23 They clap their palms at him
and hiss him from his place.

28

2 Surely there is a source for the silver
and a place to refine gold;
iron is taken from the dust
and copper poured from the stone.
3 He sets an end to darkness
and probes all conclusion
— the stones of darkness
and the shadow of death.
4 The wadi breaks out from the sojourner;
— forgotten by the foot;
they languish;
they drift away from men.
5 The earth, from which comes bread;
and underneath, turns as fire.
6 The stones thereof are the place of sapphires;
and it has dust of gold.
7 There *is* a path
which neither the swooper knows
nor the eye of the hawk scans;
8 nor the sons of pride tread,
nor the roaring lion attacks.
9 He spreads his hand on the flint
he overturns the mountains by the roots:
10 he splits rivers among the rocks
and his eye sees all the esteemed:
11 he binds the floods from weeping
and brings the concealed to light.
12 And wisdom, where is it found?
Where is the place of discernment?
13 Man neither knows the appraisal;
nor finds it in the land of the living.
14 The abyss says, Not in me!
And the sea says, Not with me!
15 Neither *is* gold given for it
nor silver weighed for the price:

JOB 28, 29

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 *It cannot be valued* **Nor** balanced
with the *gold ore* of Ophir,
with the *precious esteemed* onyx, or the sapphire.
17 The gold and the crystal
cannot equal **be not ranked with it:**
and the exchange of it **nor exchanged**
shall not be for jewels **instruments of fine pure** gold.
18 *No mention* **Nor remembered**
shall be *made of coral corals*, or of pearls:
for the *price sowing* of wisdom is above *rubies* **pearls**.
19 The topaz of *Ethiopia* **Kush**
shall not *equal* **be ranked with it**,
neither shall it be *valued* **balanced** with *pure gold ore*.
20 Whence then cometh wisdom?
and where is the place of *understanding* **discernment**?
21 Seeing it is *hid* **concealed** from the eyes of all living,
and *kept close* **hidden**
from the *fowls* **flyers** of the *air* **heavens**.
22 *Destruction* **Abaddon** and death say,
We have heard the fame *thereof* with our ears.
23 *God understandeth* **Elohim discerneth** the way *thereof*,
and he knoweth the place *thereof*.
24 For he looketh to the ends of the earth,
and seeth under the whole *heaven* **heavens**;
25 To *make* **work** the weight for the winds;
and he *weigheth* **gaugeth** the waters by measure.
26 When he *made* **worketh** a *decree* **statute** for the rain,
and a way for the lightning of the *thunder* **voice**:
27 Then did he see it, and *declare* **scribe** it;
he prepared it, yea, and *searched* **probed** it out.
28 And unto *man* **humanity** he said, Behold,
the *fear awe* of the *Lord* **Adonay**,
that is wisdom;
and to *depart* **turn aside** from evil
is *understanding* **discernment**.
29 *Moreover* **Job Iyob**
continued **lifted to add** his *parable* **proverb**, and said,
2 *Oh* **Who giveth** that I were
as in *months past* **ancient moons**,
as in the days when *God preserved* **Elohad guarded** me;
3 When his *candle shined* **lamp halaled** upon my head,
and when by his light I walked through darkness;
4 As I was in the days of *my youth* **winter**,
when the *secret private counsel* of *God* **Elohad**
was upon my *tabernacle* **tent**;
5 When *the Almighty* **Shadday** was yet with me,
when my *children* **lads** were **round** about me;
6 When I *washed* **bathed** my steps with butter,
and the rock poured me out *rivers* **rivulets** of oil;
7 When I went out to the *gate* **portal** through the city,
when I prepared my *seat* **settlement**
in the *street* **broadway**!
8 The *young men* **lads** saw me, and hid themselves:
and the aged arose, and stood up.
9 The *princes* **governors** refrained *talking* **uttering**,
and *laid* **set** their *hand* **palm** on their mouth.
10 The *nobles* **held eminent hid** their *peace* **voice**,
and their tongue *cleaved* **adhered**
to the *roof* of their *mouth* **palate**.
11 When the ear heard *me*,
then it *blessed* **called** me **blithesome**;
and when the eye saw me,
it gave witness to me:
12 Because I *delivered* **rescued** the *poor* **humble** that cried,
and the *fatherless* **orphan**,
and him that had *none to help him* **no helper**.
13 The blessing of him that was ready to *perish* **destruct**
came upon me:
and I caused the widow's heart to *sing for joy* **shout**.
14 I *put on righteousness* **enrobed justness**,
and it *clothed* **enrobed** me:
my judgment was as a *robe* **mantle** and a *diadem* **turban**.
15 I was eyes to the blind, and feet was I to the lame.
16 I was a father to the *poor* **needy**:
and the *cause* **contention** which I knew not
I *searched out* **probed**.
17 And I brake the *jaws* **molars** of the wicked,
and *plucked* **cast** the *spoil* **prey** out of his teeth.
18 Then I said, I shall *die* **expire** in my nest,

IYOB 28, 29

exeGeses companion BIBLE

16 nor balanced with the ore of Ophir
— with the esteemed onyx, or the sapphire.
17 Neither are the gold and the crystal ranked with it
nor exchanged for instruments of pure gold:
nor corals or pearls remembered;
for the sowing of wisdom is above pearls.
19 Neither is the topaz of Kush ranked with it;
nor balanced with ore.
20 Whence then comes wisdom?
Where is the place of discernment?
21 — seeing it is concealed from the eyes
of all living
— hidden from the flyers of the heavens.
22 Abaddon and death say,
We hear the fame with our ears:
23 Elohim discerns the way and he knows the place:
24 for he looks to the ends of the earth
and sees under the whole heavens
— to work the weight for the winds
— to gauge the waters by measure.
26 He works a statute for the rain,
and a way for the lightning of the voice;
then he sees and scribes;
he prepares, yes, and probes.
28 And to humanity he says, Behold,
to Adonay is wisdom;
and to turn aside from evil, discernment.
29 And Iyob lifts to add his proverb and says,
2 O that I were as in ancient moons
— as in the days Elohad guarded me;
when his lamp halaled on my head;
when by his light I walked the darkness;
as I was in the days of winter
with the private counsel of Elohad on my tent:
when Shadday was yet with me;
when my lads surrounded me;
when I bathed my steps with butter
and the rock poured me rivulets of oil;
when I went out to the portal through the city;
when I prepared my settlement in the Broadway!
8 The lads saw me and hid themselves
and the aged rose and stood;
governors refrained uttering
and set their palm on their mouth;
the eminent hid their voice
and their tongue adhered to their palate.
11 When the ear heard, it called me blithesome;
and when the eye saw, it gave me witness;
because I rescued them who cried
— the humble and the orphan
and whoever had no helper.
13 The blessing of him who was ready to destruct
came on me;
and I caused the heart of the widow to shout.
14 I enrobed justness and it enrobed me;
my judgment was as a mantle and a turban;
I was eyes to the blind and feet to the lame;
— a father to the needy.
16 I probed contentions that I knew not;
I broke the molars of the wicked
and cast the prey from his teeth.
18 And I said, I expire in my nest

JOB 29, 30

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

19 and I shall multiply **my days shall abound** as the sand.
My root was spread out by the waters,
and the dew
lay all night **stayed overnight** upon my **branch clippings**.
20 My glory **honour** was *fresh in new* **within** me,
and my bow was *renewed* **changed** in my hand.
21 Unto me *men gave ear* **they hearkened**, and waited,
and *kept silence* **hushed** at my counsel.
22 After my words they *spake* **reiterated** not again;
and my *speech* **utterances** dropped upon them.
23 And they waited for me as for the rain;
and they *opened* **gaped** their mouth *wide*
as for the *latter* **after** rain.
24 If I laughed on them, they *believed it* **trusted** not;
and the light of my *countenance* **face**
they *cast* **felled** not down.
25 I chose out their way, and *sat chief* **settled as head**,
and *dwelt* **tabernacled** as a *king* **sovereign**
in the *army* **troops**,
as one that *comforteth* **sigheth over** the mourners.
30 But now they that are *younger* **of fewer days** than I
have me in derision **ridicule me**,
whose fathers I *would* **should** have *disdained* **spurned**
to have set with the dogs of my flock.
2 Yea, *whereto might the strength* **what is the force**
of their hands *profit* **to** me,
in whom *old age was perished* **maturity destructed?**
3 For *want* **lack** and *famine* **hunger**
they were *solitary* **sterile**;
fleeing **gnawing** into the *wilderness* **parch**
in former time **of yesternight**
desolate **of devastation** and *waste* **ruin**.
4 Who *cut up* **plucked** mallows by the *bushes* **shrubs**,
and juniper roots for their *meat* **bread**.
5 They were *driven forth* **exiled** from *among men* **the back**,
(they *cried* **shouted** after them as after a thief;)
6 To *dwelt* **tabernacle**
in the *cliffs* **chasms** of the *valleys* **wadies**,
in caves **holes** of the *earth* **dust**, and *in* the rocks.
7 Among the *bushes* **shrubs** they brayed;
under the nettles they were *gathered together* **scraped**.
8 They were *children* **Sons** of fools,
yea, *children* **sons** of base **nameless** men:
they were *viler than* **ejected from** the earth.
9 And now am I their *song* **strummer**,
yea, I am their *byword* **utterance**.
10 They abhor me, they flee far from me,
and spare not to spit in my face.
11 Because he hath loosed my cord,
and *afflicted* **humbled** me,
they have also *let loose* **sent away**
the bridle *before me* **from my face**.
12 Upon my right *hand* rise the *youth* **offspring**;
they *push* **send** away my feet,
and they raise up against me
the ways of their destruction.
13 They *mar* **tear up** my path,
they *set forward* **benefit** my calamity,
they have no helper.
14 They came *upon me*
as a *wide breaking in of waters* **broad breach**:
in **under** the *desolation* **devastation**
they rolled themselves *upon me*.
15 Terrors are turned upon me:
they pursue my *soul* **reputation** as the wind:
and my *welfare* **salvation** passeth away as a **thick** cloud.
16 And now my soul is poured out upon me;
the days of *affliction* **humiliation**
have taken hold upon me.
17 My bones are *pierced* **penetrate** in me
in the *night season*:
and my *sinews* **take no rest** **gnawing lieth not down**.
18 By the great force of *my disease*
is my *garment* **changed** **robe disguised**:
it bindeth me about as the *collar* **mouth** of my coat.
19 He hath cast me into the *mire* **clay**,
and I am become like dust and ashes.
20 I cry unto thee,
and thou *dost not hear* **answerest me not**:

IYOB 29, 30

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and my days abound as the sand.
19 My root spreads to the waters
and the dew stays overnight on my clippings.
20 My honor is new within me
and my bow changes in my hand.
21 To me they hearken and wait
and hush at my counsel.
22 After my words they reiterated not;
and my utterances dropped on them;
23 they awaited me as for the rain;
they gaped their mouth as for the after rain.
24 I laughed on them, they trusted not;
and the light of my face they felled not.
25 I chose their way, and settled as head;
and tabernacled as a sovereign in the troops,
as one who sighs over the mourners.
30 And now they of fewer days than I
ridicule me;
whose fathers I spurned
to set with the dogs of my flock.
2 Yes, what is the force of their hands to me,
in whom maturity destructs?
3 For lack and hunger, they are sterile;
gnawing into the parch of yesternight
of devastation and ruin:
4 who pluck mallows by the shrubs
and juniper roots for their bread.
5 They are exiled from the back,
they shout at them as after a thief;
6 to tabernacle in the chasms of the wadies,
holes of the dust and the rocks;
7 among the shrubs they bray;
under the nettles they scrape:
8 sons of fools;
yes, sons of nameless men ejected from the earth;
9 and now I am their strummer;
yes, I am their utterance.
10 They abhor me; they flee far from me;
they spare not to spit in my face.
11 Because he loosed my cord
and humbled me,
they also sent away the bridle from my face.
12 At my right rise the offspring;
they send away my feet;
they raise their ways of destruction against me;
13 they tear up my path;
they benefit my calamity;
they have no helper:
14 they come as a broad breach;
they roll themselves under the devastation.
15 Terrors turn on me;
they pursue my reputation as the wind;
and my salvation passes as a thick cloud.
16 And now my soul pours out on me;
the days of humiliation take hold on me;
17 my bones penetrate within me in the night;
and my gnawing lies not down.
18 By the great force is my robe disguised;
it binds around me as the mouth of my coat.
19 He casts me into the clay
and I become as dust and ashes.
20 I cry to you, and you answer me not;

JOB 30, 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

21 I stand up, and thou *regardest* **discernest** me not.
Thou *art become* **turnest** cruel to me:
with thy *strong* **mighty** hand
thou opposest *thyself* **against** me.

22 Thou liftest me up to the wind;
thou *causest me to ride upon it* **drivest me**,
and *dissolvest* **razest** my substance.

23 For I know
that thou *wilt bring* **shalt return** me to death,
and to the house *appointed* **of the congregation**
for all **of all the** living.

24 Howbeit he *will* **shall** not
stretch out **spread** his hand to the *grave* **prey**,
though they cry in his *destruction* **calamity**.

25 Did not I weep for him
that *was in trouble* **had a hard day**?
was not my soul grieved for the *poor* **needy**?
When I *looked for* **awaited** good,
then evil came *unto me*:
and when I waited for light,
there came darkness.

27 My *bowels* **inwards** boiled, and *rested* **hushed** not:
the days of *affliction* **humiliation**
prevented **anticipated** me.

28 I went *mourning* **darkened** without the *sun* **heat**:
I *stood up* **arose**, and I cried in the congregation.

29 I am a brother to *dragons* **monsters**,
and a *companion* **friend** to *owls* **daughters of the owl**.

30 My skin is black upon me,
and my bones are *burned* **scorched** with *heat* **parch**.

31 My harp also
is turned to **be into** mourning,
and my *organ* **woodwind**
into the voice of them that weep.

31 I *made* **cut** a covenant with mine eyes;
why then should I *think* **discern** upon a *maid* **virgin**?
2 For what *portion* **allotment** of *God* **Eloah**
is there from above?
and what inheritance of *the Almighty* **Shadday**
from on high **the heights**?

3 Is not *destruction* **calamity** to the wicked?
and a *strange punishment* **strangeness**
to the *workers* **doers** of *iniquity* **mischief**?

4 Doth not he see my ways,
and *count* **scribe** all my *steps* **paces**?
5 If I have walked with vanity,
or if my foot hath hastened to deceit;
6 Let me be weighed
in an even **a balance of justness**
that *God* **Eloah** may know mine integrity.

7 If my step hath *turned* **spread** out of the way,
and mine heart walked after mine eyes,
and if any *blot* **blemish**
hath *cleaved* **adhered** to *mine hands* **my palms**;
8 Then let me sow **seed**, and let another eat;
yea, let my offspring be rooted out.

9 If mine heart have been *deceived* **enticed** by a woman,
or if I have laid wait **lurked**
at my *neighbour's door* **friend's portal**;
10 Then let my *wife* **woman** grind unto another,
and let others *bow down upon* **kneel** to her.

11 For this is an *heinous crime* **intrigue**; yea,
it is an iniquity to be punished by the judges
a judicial perversity.

12 For it is a fire that consumeth to *destruction* **Abaddon**,
and *would* **should** root out all *mine* **increase** **my produce**.

13 If I *did despise* **spurned** the *cause* **judgment**
of my *manservant* **servant** or of my *maidservant* **maid**,
when they contended with me;
14 What then shall I *do* **work** when *God* **El** riseth up?
and when he visiteth, what shall I *answer* **respond** him?

15 Did not he that *made* **worked** me in the *womb* **belly**
make **work** him?
and did not one *fashion* **prepare** us in the womb?

16 If I have withheld the poor from their desire,
or have *caused* **finished off** the eyes of the widow *to fail*;
17 Or have eaten my morsel myself alone,
and the *fatherless* **orphan** hath not eaten *thereof*;

IYOB 30, 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

I stand, and you discern me not:
you turn cruel to me;
with your mighty hand you oppose me:
you lift me to the wind;
you drive me and raze my substance.
For I know that you return me to death
and to the house of the congregation
of all the living.

24 Surely he spreads not his hand to the prey,
though they cry in his calamity.

25 Wept I not for him who had a hard day?
Grieved not my soul for the needy?
26 When I awaited good, evil came;
when I waited for light, darkness came:
27 my inwards boiled and hushed not;
the days of humiliation anticipated me.

28 I go darkened without heat;
I rise and I cry in the congregation.
29 I am a brother to monsters
and a friend to daughters of the owl.
30 My skin blackens on me;
my bones scorch with parch.
31 My harp becomes mourning
and my woodwind the voice of weeping.

31 I cut a covenant with my eyes;
and what — discern I a virgin?
What is the allotment of Eloah from above?
What is the inheritance of Shadday from the heights?
Is not calamity to the wicked?
— a strangeness to the doers of mischief?
Sees he not my ways?
— scribes all my paces?

5 If I walk with vanity
or my foot hastens to deceit
6 weigh me in a balance of justness;
Eloah knows my integrity.
7 If my step spreads from the way
and my heart walks after my eyes;
if any blemish adheres to my palms;
8 then have me seed and another eat:
yes, uproot my offspring.

9 If a woman enticed my heart
or I lurked at the portal of my friend;
10 then have my woman grind to another
and others kneel to her.
11 For this is intrigue;
yes, a judicial perversity:
12 a fire that consumes to Abaddon
and roots out all my produce.

13 If I spurn the judgment
of my servant or of my maid
when they contend with me
14 What then work I when El rises?
When he visits, what respond I?
He who worked me in the belly
worked he not also him?
— that one who prepared us in the womb?

16 If I withhold the poor from their desire,
or finish off the eyes of the widow;
17 or eat my morsel myself alone
and the orphan eats not;

JOB 31, 32

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

18 (For from my youth he was brought grew up with me,
as with a father,
and I have guided led her from my mother's womb belly;)
19 If I have seen any perish destruct
for want of clothing robe,
or any poor without covering to the needy;
20 If his loins have not blessed me,
and if he were not warmed heated
with the fleece of my sheep lambs;
21 If I have lifted up shaken my hand
against the fatherless orphan,
when I saw my help in the gate portal:
22 Then let mine arm my shoulder
fall from my shoulder blade,
and mine arm
be broken from the bone stem.
23 For destruction calamity from God El
was a terror dread to me,
and by reason of his highness exalting
I could not endure am not able.
24 If I have made set gold my hope,
or have said to the fine gold ore, Thou art my confidence;
25 If I rejoiced cheered
because my wealth was valuables were great,
and because mine hand had gotten found much;
26 If I beheld saw the sun light when it shined haled,
or the moon walking in brightness esteem;
27 And my heart
hath been secretly enticed covertly duped,
or my mouth hath kissed my hand:
28 This also were
an iniquity to be punished by the judge
a judicial perversity:
for I should have denied the God that is El above.
29 If I rejoiced cheered
at the destruction calamity of him that hated me,
or lifted up myself wakened when evil found him:
30 Neither have I suffered given my mouth palate to sin
by wishing a curse asking an oath to his soul.
31 If the men of my tabernacle tent said not,
Oh Who giveth that we had of his flesh!
we cannot be satisfied.
32 The stranger sojourner
did not lodge stayed not overnight
in the street outways:
but I opened my doors to the traveller wayward.
33 If I covered my transgressions rebellions
as Adam humanity,
by hiding mine iniquity perversity in my bosom:
34 Did I fear Then I dreaded a great multitude,
or did the contempt disrespect of families terrify me,
that I kept silence hushed,
and went not out of the door? portal.
35 Oh Who giveth that one would should hear me!
behold, my desire mark is,
that the Almighty would Shadday should answer me,
and that mine adversary my man of contention
had written scribed a book scroll.
36 Surely I would take should lift it upon my shoulder,
and bind fasten it as a crown to me.
37 I would declare unto should tell him
the number of my steps paces;
as a prince would an eminent should I go near unto him.
38 If my land soil cry against me,
or that the furrows likewise thereof
complain weep together;
39 If I have eaten the fruits thereof produce
without money silver,
or have caused the owners thereof masters
to lose expire their life soul:
40 Let thistles thorns grow instead of wheat,
and cockle stinkweed instead of barley.
The words of Job Iyob
are ended be consummated.

32

So these three men
ceased to answer Job shabbathized from answering Iyob,
because he was righteous just in his own eyes.

IYOB 31, 32

exeGesés companion BIBLE

18 — for as a father
he grew up with me from my youth
— led her from the belly of my mother.
19 If I have seen any destruct for want of robe
or the needy without covering;
20 if neither his loins blessed me
nor heated with the fleece of my lambs;
21 if I shook my hand against the orphan
when I saw my help in the portal;
22 then may my shoulder fall from the blade
and my arm break at the stem:
23 for calamity from El is a dread to me
and by reason of his exalting I am not able.
24 If I set gold my hope
or said to the ore, My confidence!
25 if I cheer because my valuables are great
and because my hand found much;
26 if I see the light when it halals
or the moon walking in esteem;
27 and my heart covertly duped
or my mouth kiss my hand;
28 this also is a judicial perversity:
for I denied El above.
29 If I cheer at the calamity of my hater,
or waken when evil finds him;
30 I give not my palate to sin
by asking him to oath his soul.
31 If not, men of my tent, say you,
Who gives that we have of his flesh
— we are not satisfied.
32 The sojourner
stayed not overnight in the outways;
I opened my doors to the wayward.
33 If I covered my rebellions as humanity
by hiding my perversity in my bosom;
34 then I dread a great multitude
— and the disrespect of families terrify me
— and I hush and go not from the portal.
35 Who gives that someone hear me!
Behold, my mark!
Shadday, answer me!
36 Man of contention, scribe a scroll!
If not, I lift it on my shoulder
and fasten it to me as a crown.
37 I tell him my paces;
as an eminent I go near him.
38 If my soil cries against me,
and the furrows weep together;
39 if I have eaten the produce without silver
or caused the masters to expire their soul;
40 may thorns grow instead of wheat
and stinkweed instead of barley.
The words of Iyob are consummated.
32 And these three men
shabbathized from answering Iyob,
because he was just in his own eyes.

JOB 32, 33

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

ELI HU KINDLES HIS WRATH

2 Then was kindled the wrath of *Elihu Eli Hu*
the son of *Barachel Barach El* the *Buzite Buziy*,
of the *kindred family* of Ram:
against *Job Iyob* was his wrath kindled,
because he justified *himself his soul*
rather than *God Elohim*.

3 Also against his three friends was his wrath kindled,
because they had found no answer,
and yet had *condemned Job judged Iyob wicked*.
Now *Elihu Eli Hu*

4 had waited till *Job Iyob* had *spoken worded*,
because they were elder than he *by days*.

5 When *Elihu Eli Hu* saw that there was no answer
in the mouth of *these three men*,
then his wrath was kindled.

6 And *Elihu Eli Hu*,
the son of *Barachel Barach El* the *Buzite Buziy*
answered and said,
I am *young of few days*, and ye are *very old aged*;
wherefore I was *afraid feared*,
and *durst not awed*
to shew you *mine opinion my knowledge*.

7 I said, Days should *speak word*,
and *multitude abundance* of years
should *teach make known* wisdom.

8 But *Surely* there is a spirit in man:
and the *inspiration breath of the Almighty Shadday*
giveth them *understanding discernment*.

9 The *Great men* are not *always wise enwisened*:
neither do the aged *understand discern* judgment.

10 Therefore I said, Hearken to me;
I also will *shall* shew *mine opinion my knowledge*.

11 Behold, I *waited for awaited* your words;
I gave ear to your reasons,
whilst ye *searched out what to say probed utterances*.

12 Yea, I *attended discerned* unto you, and, behold,
there was none of you that *convinced Job reproved Iyob*,
or that answered his *words sayings*:

13 Lest ye should say, We have found out wisdom:
God thrusteth El disperseth him down, not man.

14 Now he hath not *directed arranged*
his *words utterances* against me:
neither will I *answer him shall I respond*
with to your speeches sayings.

15 They were *amazed dismayed*,
they answered no more:
they *left off speaking removed from uttering*.

16 When I *had waited awaited*,
(for they *spake worded* not,
but stood still, and answered no more;)
I said, I will *shall* answer also my *part allotment*,
I also will *shall* shew *mine opinion my knowledge*.

18 For I am full of *matter utterances*,
the spirit *within me of my belly*
constraineth distresseth me.

19 Behold,
my belly is as wine which hath no *vent opening*;
it is ready to burst to split like new *bottles skins*.

20 I will *speak shall word*, that I may be *refreshed respire*:
I will *shall* open my lips and answer.

21 Let me not, I *pray beseech* you,
accept any man's person lift the face of humanity,
neither let me give *flattering titles honorary degrees*
unto man *humanity*.

22 For I know not
to give *flattering titles honorary degrees*;
in so doing my *maker Worker*
would soon take should shortly lift me away.

33 Wherefore *But, Job Iyob*, I *pray beseech* thee,
hear my *speeches utterances*,
and hearken to all my words.

2 Behold, *now I beseech*, I have opened my mouth,
my tongue hath *spoken worded* in my *mouth palate*.

3 My *words sayings*
shall be of the *uprightness straightness* of my heart:
and my lips shall utter knowledge *clearly purely*.

4 The spirit of *God El* hath *made worked* me,

IYOB 32, 33

exeGesés companion BIBLE

ELI HU KINDLES HIS WRATH

2 And Eli Hu the son of Barach El the Buziy
of the family of Ram kindles his wrath
— kindles his wrath against Iyob,
because he justifies his soul — rather than Elohim.

3 He also kindles his wrath against his three friends
because they find no answer
and judge Iyob wicked.

4 And Eli Hu waits until Iyob words,
because they are elder than he by days.

5 And Eli Hu sees there is no answer
in the mouth of the three men,
and kindles his wrath.

6 And Eli Hu the son of Barach El the Buziy
answers and says,
I am of few days and you are aged;
so I fear
and awe to show you my knowledge.

7 I say, Days word;
and abundance of years make wisdom known.

8 Surely there is a spirit in man;
and the breath of Shadday gives discernment.

9 Neither the great enwisened
nor the aged discern judgment.

10 So I say, Hearken to me;
I also show my knowledge.

11 Behold, I awaited your words;
I gave ear to your reasons
as you probed utterances:
yes, I discerned you;
and behold, none of you reproved Iyob
or answered his sayings:
lest you say, We have found out wisdom;
El disperses him — not man.

14 Neither arranged he his utterances against me;
nor respond I to your sayings.

15 They are dismayed;
they answer no more;
they remove from uttering:
I await, they word not;
but stand still and answer no more.

17 I also answer my allotment;
I also show my knowledge:
for I am full of utterances,
the spirit of my belly distresses me.

19 Behold, my belly
— as unopened wine — to split as new skins.
I word, and I respire;
I open my lips, and answer.

21 I beseech you,
that I neither lift the face of humanity,
nor give honorary degrees to humanity:
for I know not to give honorary degrees;
in so doing my Worker shortly lifts me away.

33 And yet, I beseech you, Iyob,
hear my utterances and hearken to all my words:
2 behold, I beseech, I open my mouth;
my tongue words in my palate;
3 my sayings are of the straightness of my heart;
and my lips utter knowledge purely.

4 The Spirit of El works me

JOB 33

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and the breath of the Almighty Shadday
hath given **enlivened** me life.
5 If thou canst answer me **respond**,
set thy words in order before me **line up at my face**,
stand up **get set**.
6 Behold,
I am according to thy wish **mouth** in God's El's stead:
I also am formed out of the clay.
7 Behold, my terror shall not make **frighten** thee afraid,
neither shall my hand **burden** be heavy upon thee.
8 Surely thou hast spoken **said** in mine hearing **my ears**,
and I have heard the voice of thy words **utterances**,
saying,
9 I am clean **pure** without transgression **rebellion**,
I am innocent **covered**;
neither is there **iniquity** **perversity** in me.
10 Behold, he findeth occasions **alienations** against me,
he counteth **fabricateth** me for his enemy,
11 He putteth **setteth** my feet in the stocks,
he marketh **guardeth** all my paths.
12 Behold, in this thou art not just **justified**:
I will **shall** answer thee,
that God **Eloah** is greater than man.
13 Why dost thou strive against him?
for he giveth **answereth** not account of
any of his matters **words**.
14 For God speaketh **El** **wordeth** once, yea twice,
yet man perceiveth he **observeth** it not.
15 In a dream, in a vision of the night,
when deep sleep falleth upon men,
in slumberings **drowsiness** upon the bed;
16 Then he openeth **exposeth** the ears of men,
and sealeth their instruction **discipline**,
17 That he may withdraw man **turn humanity aside**
from his purpose **work**,
and hide **pride** **cover over arrogance**
from man **the mighty**.
18 He keepeth back **spareth** his soul from the pit of ruin,
and his life from perishing **passing** by the sword **spear**.
19 He is chastened **reproved** also
with pain **sorrow** upon his bed,
and the multitude **strife** of his bones
with strong pain **is perennial**:
20 So that his life abhorreth **loatheth** bread,
and his soul dainty meat **food of desire**.
21 His flesh is consumed away **finished off**,
that it cannot be seen;
and his bones that were not seen
stick out **are exposed**.
22 Yea, his soul draweth near unto the grave **pit of ruin**,
and his life to the destroyers **deathifiers**.
23 If there be a messenger **an angel** with him,
an interpreter, one among a thousand,
to shew unto man **tell humanity**
his uprightness **straightness**:
24 Then he is gracious **granteth he charism** unto him,
and saith, Deliver **Rescue** him
from going down **descending** to the pit of ruin:
I have found a ransom **a koper/an atonement**.
25 His flesh shall be fresher **rejuvenated**
than a child's as **ladhood**:
he shall return to the days of his youth:
26 He shall pray unto God **intreat Eloah**,
and he will be favourable unto **shall please** him:
and he shall see his face with joy **shouting**:
for he will render **shall restore** unto man
his righteousness **justness**.
27 He looketh upon **observeth** men,
and if any say, I have sinned,
and perverted that which was right **straight**,
and it profited me not;
28 He will deliver **shall redeem** his soul
from going **passing** into the pit of ruin,
and his life shall see the light.
29 Lo **Behold**,
all these things worketh God **doeth El**
oftentimes **twice and thrice** with man **the mighty**,
30 To bring back **return** his soul from the pit of ruin,
to be enlightened with the light of the living.

IYOB 33

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and the breath of Shadday enlivens me;
5 respond if you are able;
line up at my face; get set!
6 Behold, I — your mouth in the stead of El;
I also am formed from the clay.
7 Behold, may neither my terror frighten you
nor my burden be heavy on you;
8 surely you said to my ears;
and I heard the voice of your utterances;
9 I am pure without rebellion
— covered — no perversity within me.
10 Behold, he finds alienations against me;
he fabricates me for his enemy;
11 he sets my feet in the stocks;
he guards all my paths.
12 Behold, in this you are not justified;
I answer you, Eloah is greater than man.
13 Why strive against him?
Of all his words, he answers none.
14 For El words once; yes, twice;
he observes not.
15 In a dream — in a vision of the night
when deep sleep falls on men
in drowsiness on the bed;
16 then he exposes the ears of men
and seals their discipline;
17 he turns humanity aside from his work
and covers over the arrogance of the mighty:
18 he spares his soul from the pit of ruin
and his life from the passing of the spear;
19 he is also reprov'd with sorrow on his bed
and the strife of his bones is perennial;
20 his life loathes bread
and his soul food of desire;
21 his flesh finishes off that it not be seen;
and his bones that have not been seen
be exposed.
22 Yes, his soul draws near to the pit of ruin
and his life to the deathifiers.
23 If there is an angel with him
an interpreter — one among a thousand
to tell humanity his straightness,
24 then he grants him charism and says,
Rescue him from descending to the pit of ruin;
I have found a koper/an atonement.
25 His flesh rejuvenates as ladhood;
he returns to the days of his youth;
26 he intreats Eloah and pleases him;
he sees his face with shouting;
for he restores his justness to man.
27 He observes men, and if any say,
I sinned and perverted the straight
and it profits me not;
28 he redeems my soul
from passing into the pit of ruin
and my life sees the light.
29 Behold, El does all these
— twice and thrice with the mighty;
30 to return his soul from the pit of ruin;
to enlighten with the light of the living.

JOB 33, 34

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

31 Mark well, O Job **lyob**, hearken unto me:
hold thy peace hush, and I will speak **shall word**.

32 If thou hast *any thing to say utterances*,
answer me respond:
speak word, for I desire to justify thee.

33 If not, hearken unto me:
hold thy peace hush,
and I shall teach thee wisdom.

34 Furthermore Elihu **Eli Hu** answered and said,
2 Hear my words **utterances**, O ye wise men;
and *give ear hearken* unto me,
ye that have knowledge **know**.

3 For the ear *trieth words proofeth utterances*,
as the mouth **palate** tasteth *meat to eat*.

4 Let us choose to us judgment:
let us know among ourselves what is good.

5 For Job **lyob** hath said, I am *righteous justified*:
and God **El** hath taken away **turned aside** my judgment.

6 should I lie against my *right judgment*?
my wound **arrow** is incurable
without *transgression rebellion*.

7 What man **mighty** is like Job **lyob**,
who drinketh up *scorning derision* like water?

8 Which goeth **caravaneth** in company **companionship**
with the workers **doers** of *iniquity mischief*,
and walketh with *wicked men men of wickedness*.

9 For he hath said,
It profiteth a man nothing Useless for the mighty
that he should *delight himself be pleased*
with God **Elohim**.

10 Therefore hearken unto me
ye men of *understanding heart*:
far be it from God **El**, that he should do wickedness;
and from the Almighty **Shadday**,
that he should *commit iniquity do wickedness*.

11 For the work **deeds** of a man **humanity**
shall he *render unto shalam* him,
and *cause every man to find present to every man*
according to his ways.

12 Yea, *surely truly*, God will **El shall** not do wickedly,
neither will the Almighty **shall Shadday**
pervert twist judgment.

13 Who hath given him a charge over the earth?
or who hath *disposed set* the whole world?

14 If he set his heart upon man,
if he gather unto himself his spirit and his breath;
15 All flesh shall *perish expire* together,
and man **humanity** shall *turn again return* unto dust.

16 If now thou hast *understanding discernment*, hear this:
hearken to the voice of my words **utterances**.

17 Shall even he that hateth *right govern judgment bind*?
and wilt **shalt** thou *condemn judge* him **wicked**
that is most just?

18 *Is it fit to say Sayest thou to a king sovereign*,
Thou art wicked Beli Yaal?
and to princes **volunteers**, *Ye are ungodly Wicked?*

19 *How much less to him* — that accepteth not
the persons **faces** of princes **governors**,
nor regardeth **recognizeth** the rich **opulent**
more than **the face** of the poor?
for they all are the work of his hands.

20 In a *moment blink* shall they die,
and the people shall *be troubled shake* at midnight,
and pass away:
and the mighty shall *be taken away turn aside*
without hand.

21 For his eyes are upon the ways of man,
and he seeth all his *goings paces*.

22 There is no darkness, nor shadow of death,
where the workers **doers** of *iniquity mischief*
may hide *themselves*.

23 For he will **shall** not *lay set* upon man more *than right*;
that he should *enter go* into judgment with God **El**.

24 He shall *break in pieces shatter* the mighty men
without number unable to probe,
and *set stand* others in their stead.

25 Therefore he *knoweth recognizeth* their works **acts**,
and he overturneth them in the night,
so that they are *destroyed crushed*.

IYOB 33, 34

exeGesés companion BIBLE

31 Mark well, O Iyob, hearken to me;
hush and I word.

32 If you have utterances, respond;
word, for I desire to justify you.

33 If not, hearken to me;
hush — and I teach you wisdom.

34 And Eli Hu answers and says,
2 Hear my utterances, O you wise;
and hearken to me, you who know:
3 for the ear proofs utterances,
as the palate tastes to eat.

4 We choose judgment;
we know among ourselves what is good.

5 For Iyob said, I am justified
and El turned aside my judgment!

6 Lie I against my judgment?
my arrow is incurable — without rebellion.

7 Who is mighty as Iyob?
Who drinks derision as water?

8 Who caravans in companionship
with the doers of mischief?
Who walks with men of wickedness?

9 For he said,
Useless for the mighty to be pleased with Elohim.

10 So you men of heart, hearken to me;
far be it from El to do wickedness;
and from Shadday to do wickedness.

11 He shalams humanity for his deeds,
and presents every man according to his ways.

12 Yes truly, neither El does wickedly,
nor Shadday twists judgment.

13 Who gave him charge over the earth?
Who set the whole world?

14 If he sets his heart on man,
he gathers his spirit and his breath to himself.

15 All flesh expires together
and humanity returns to dust.

16 If there is discernment, hear this
— hearken to the voice of my utterances.

17 Binds he, he who hates judgment?
Judge you wicked, he who is most just?

18 Say you to a sovereign, Beli Yaal?
— or to volunteers, Wicked?

19 — of him who neither accepts faces of governors
nor recognize the opulent
more than the face of the poor?
— they all are the work of his hands.

20 In a blink they die;
the people shake at midnight and pass away;
and the mighty turn aside without hand.

21 For his eyes are on the ways of man
and he sees all his paces.

22 There is neither darkness
nor shadow of death
where the doers of mischief hide.

23 For he sets no more on man
than to go into judgment with El:
24 he shatters the mighty, unable to probe;
and stands others in their stead.

25 So he recognizes their acts
and overturns them in the night
and they are crushed.

JOB 34, 35

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

26 He *strike*th **slappeth** them as wicked men
in the *open sight* **place** of others **seeing**;
27 Because they turned back from **after** him,
and *would* **comprehended** not *consider*
any of his ways:
28 So that they cause the cry of the poor
to come unto him,
and he heareth the cry of the *afflicted* **humble**.
29 When he *giveth* *quietness* **resteth**,
who then *can make trouble* **judgeth** wicked?
and when he hideth his face,
who then *can behold* **observeth** him?
whether *it be done* against a *nation* **goyim**,
or against a *man only* **humanity** **altogether**:
30 *That the hypocrite reign not*
From the reign of the profaner of humanity,
lest the people be ensnared.
31 *Surely it is meet to be said* **Sayeth one** unto God **El**,
I have borne *chastisement* **spared**,
I will **have** not *offend any more* **despoiled**:
32 **Except** That which I see not teach thou me:
if I have done *iniquity* **wickedness**,
I will do no more **never** again.
33 Should it be according to thy mind?
he will *recompense* **shall shalam** it,
whether thou refuse, or whether thou choose;
and not I:
therefore *speak* **word** what thou knowest.
34 Let men of understanding *tell me* **say**,
and let a wise *man* **mighty** hearken unto me.
35 *Job* **lyob** hath *spoken* **worded**
without *knowledge* **comprehending**,
and his words were without wisdom.
36 My *desire* **yearning** is that *Job* **lyob**
may be *tried unto the end* **proofed in perpetuity**
because of his *answers* **responses**
for *wicked men* **men of mischief**.
37 For he addeth rebellion unto his sin,
he clappeth *his hands* among us,
and *multiplieth* **aboundeth** his *words* **sayings**
against God **El**.

35 *Elihu spake moreover* **Eli Hu answered**, and said,
2 *Thinkest* **Fabricatest** thou this to be *right* **judgment**,
that thou saidst,
My *righteousness* **justness** is more than *God's* **El's**?
3 For thou saidst,
What *advantage will* **use shall** it be unto thee?
and, What *profit* **benefit** shall I have,
if I be *cleansed* from my sin?
4 I will *answer* **shall respond** thee **utterances**,
and thy *companions* **friends** with thee.
5 Look unto the heavens, and see;
and *behold* **observe** the *clouds* **vapours**
which are *higher than thou* **high above thee**.
6 If thou sinnest, what *doest* **workest** thou against him?
or if thy *transgressions* **rebellions** be multiplied,
what *doest thou* unto him?
7 If thou be *righteous* **justified**, what givest thou him?
or what *receiveth* **taketh** he of thine hand?
8 Thy wickedness may *hurt* **be for** a man as thou art;
and thy *righteousness* **justness**
may *profit* **for** the son of *man* **humanity**.
9 By reason of the *multitude* **abundance** of oppressions
they *make the oppressed* **cause** to cry:
they cry out by reason of the arm of the *mighty* **great**.
10 But none saith,
Where is *God* **Eloah** my *maker* **Worker**,
who giveth *songs* **psalms** in the night;
11 Who teacheth us
more than the *beasts* **animals** of the earth,
and *maketh us wiser* **enviseneth us more**
than the *fowls* **flyers** of *heaven* **the heavens**?
12 There they cry, but none *giveth answer* **answereth**,
because **at the face** of the *pride* **pomp** of evil men.
13 Surely *God will* **El shall** not hear vanity,
neither will the *Almighty* regard **shall Shadday observe** it.
14 Although thou sayest thou shalt not see **observe** him,
yet *judgment is before him* **the plea is at his face**;
therefore *trust* **writhe** thou in him.

IYOB 34, 35

exeGesés companion BIBLE

26 He slaps them as wicked in the place of seeing;
27 because they turn back from after him
and comprehend none of his ways;
28 so that they cause the cry of the poor
to come to him;
and he hears the cry of the humble.
29 And when he rests,
who judges wicked?
and when he hides his face,
who observes him?
— whether against a goyim,
or against humanity altogether;
30 from the reign of the profaner of humanity,
lest the people be ensnared.
31 Says any one to El,
I have spared; I have not despoiled.
32 Except, what I see not, you teach me;
if I have done wickedness, never again.
33 According to your mind,
he shalams what you refuse — what you choose;
and not I;
so word *only* what you know.
34 May men of understanding say,
and the wise mighty hearken to me.
35 Iyob words without comprehending
— words without wisdom.
36 I yearn that Iyob be proofed in perpetuity
because of his responses for men of mischief:
37 for he adds rebellion to his sin,
he claps among us
and abounds his sayings against El.

35 And Eli Hu answers and says,
2 Fabricate you this to be judgment,
that you said, My justness is more than of El?
3 that you said, What use is it to you?
and, What benefit I from my sin?
— I respond utterances
to you and your friends with you.
5 Look to the heavens and see;
observe the vapours high above you.
6 If you sin, what work you against him?
Or if your rebellions be multiplied,
what do you to him?
7 If you be justified, what give you him?
Or what takes he from your hand?
8 Your wickedness is for a man as you;
and your justness for the son of humanity.
9 By reason of the abundance of oppressions
they cause to cry out
— to cry out by reason of the arm of the great.
10 And no one says, Where is Eloah my Worker
— who gives psalms in the night?
11 — who teaches us
more than the animals of the earth?
— who envisens us
more than the flyers of the heavens?
12 There they cry,
and he answers not at the face of the pomp of evil.
13 Surely El neither hears vanity
nor Shadday observes.
14 Yes, although you say you observe him not,
the plea is at his face; writhe in him.

JOB 35, 36

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

15 But now, because it is not so,
he hath visited in his *anger* **wrath**;
yet he knoweth it not in *great extremity* **mighty stupidity**:
16 Therefore doth *Job open* **lyob gasp** his mouth in vain;
he *multiplieth words* **weaveth utterances**
without knowledge.

36

Elihu **Eli Hu** also *proceeded* **added**, and said,
2 *Suffer me a little* **Stay around**,
and I *will* **shall** shew thee
that I have yet to *speak* **utterances**
on *God's* **Elohah's** behalf.
3 I *will fetch* **shall lift** my knowledge from afar,
and *will ascribe righteousness* **shall give justness**
to my *Maker* **Worker**.
4 For truly my *words* **utterances** shall not be false:
he that is *perfect* **integrious** in knowledge is with thee.
5 Behold,
God **El** is mighty, and *despiset* **spurneth** not any:
he is — mighty in *strength* **force** and *wisdom* **heart**.
6 He *preserveth* **enliveneth** not the *life* of the wicked:
but giveth *right* **judgment** to the *poor* **humble**.
7 He *withdraweth* **diminisheth** not his eyes
from the *righteous* **just**:
but with *kings* are they **sovereigns** on the throne;
yea, he *doth establish* **settlet** them for *ever* **in perpetuity**,
and they are *exalted* **lifted**.
8 And if they be bound in *fetters* **bonds**,
and be *holden* **captured** in cords of *affliction* **humiliation**;
9 Then he *sheweth* **tellet** them their *work* **deeds**,
and their *transgressions* **rebellions**
that they have *exceeded* **prevailed mightily**.
10 He *openeth* **exposeth** also their ear to discipline,
and *commandeth* **sayeth**
that they return from *iniquity* **mischie**.
11 If they *obey* **hearken** and serve him,
they shall *spend* **conclude** their days in *prosperity* **good**,
and their years in pleasures.
12 But if they *obey* **hearken** not,
they shall *perish* **pass away expired** by the *sword* **spear**,
and they shall die without knowledge.
13 But the *hypocrites* **profaners** in heart *heap up* **set** wrath:
they cry not when he bindeth them.
14 *They die* **Their soul dieth** in *youth* **ladhood**,
and their life
is among the *unclean* **hallowed whoremongers**.
15 He delivereth the poor in his *affliction* **humiliation**,
and *openeth* **exposeth** their ears in oppression.
16 Even so *would* **should** he have removed thee
out of the *strait* **mouth of the narrow**
into a *broad place* **broadness**,
where there is no *straitness* **narrowness under**;
and that which should be *set* **rest** on thy table
should be full of fatness.
17 But thou hast fulfilled the *judgment* **plea** of the wicked:
judgment **the plea** and *justice* **judgment**
take hold on thee **are upheld**.
18 Because there is *wrath* **fury**,
beware lest he *take* **goad** thee away
with his *stroke* **gluttony**:
then a great *ransom* **koper/atonement**
cannot deliver **shall not spread to** thee.
19 *Will* **Shall** he *esteem* **appraise** thy *riches* **opulence**?
no, not *gold* **mines**, nor all the forces of *strength* **force**.
20 *Desire* **Gulp** not the night,
when people are *cut off* **ascend** in their *place* **stead**.
21 *Take heed*, **On guard!** regard *face* not *iniquity* **mischie**:
for this hast thou chosen
rather than *affliction* **humiliation**.
22 Behold, *God* **exalteth** **El** *lofteth* by his *power* **force**:
who teacheth like him?
23 Who hath enjoined him his way?
or who can say,
Thou hast *wrought iniquity* **done wickedness**?
24 Remember that thou *magnify* **increase** his *work* **deeds**,
which men behold.
25 *Every man* **All humanity** may see it;
man may *behold it* **ascan** far off.
26 Behold, *God* **El** is great **exceedingly excellent**,
and we know him not,

IYOB 35, 36

exeGesés companion BIBLE

15 And now, because there is none,
he visits his wrath;
yet in mighty stupidity, he knows not:
and lyob gasps his mouth in vain;
16 he weaves utterances without knowledge.

36

And Eli Hu also adds and says, Stay around;
and I show you
that I have yet utterances on behalf of Elohah.
3 I lift my knowledge from afar
and give justness to my Worker.
4 For truly my utterances are not false;
the integrious in knowledge is with you.
5 Behold, El is mighty and spurns not
— mighty in force and heart.
6 He enlivens not the wicked
and gives judgment to the humble;
7 he diminishes not his eyes from the just
and with sovereigns on the throne:
yes, he settles them in perpetuity
and they are lifted:
8 and if bound in bonds
and captured in cords of humiliation;
9 then he tells them their deeds and their rebellions
because they prevail mightily:
10 and he exposes their ear to discipline
and says to them to return from mischief.
11 If they hearken and serve him,
they conclude their days in good
and their years in pleasures:
12 and if they hearken not,
they pass away expired by the spear,
and die without knowledge.
13 And the profaners in heart set wrath;
they cry not when he binds them:
14 their soul dies in ladhood
and their life is among the hallowed whoremongers.
15 He delivers the poor in their humiliation
and exposes their ears in oppression:
16 And he also removes you
from the mouth of the narrow into a broadness,
where there is no narrowness under;
and what rests on your table is full of fatness.
17 And you fulfill the plea of the wicked;
the plea and judgment are upheld:
18 because of fury,
lest he goad you with gluttony;
then a great koper/atonement spreads not to you.
19 Appraises he your opulence?
— your mines, your forces of force?
20 Gulp not the night,
when people ascend in their stead.
21 On guard! Face not mischief;
for you choose this, rather than humiliation.
22 Behold, El lofts by his force;
Who teaches as he?
23 Who visits him on his way?
or who says, You have done wickedness?
24 Remember to increase his deeds
for men to behold;
25 for all humanity to see;
for man to scan far off.
26 Behold, El is exceedingly excellent
and we know neither him,

JOB 36, 37

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

neither can the number of his years
be searched out **probed**.
27 For he *maketh small* **diminisheth** the drops of water:
they *pour down* **refine** rain
according to **into** the *vapour thereof* **mist**:
28 Which the *clouds do drop* **vapours flow** and *distil* **drip**
upon *man* **humanity** abundantly.
29 Also can any *understand* **discern**
the spreadings of the **thick** clouds,
or the *noise* **clamorings**
of his *tabernacle* **sukkoth/brush arbor**?
30 Behold, he spreadeth his light upon it,
and covereth the *bottom* **roots** of the sea.
31 For by them *judgeth* **pleadeth** he
the cause of the people;
he giveth *meat* **food** in abundance.
32 With *clouds* **his two palms** he covereth the light;
and *commandeth* **misvaheth** it
not to shine by the cloud that cometh betwixt
and **intercedeth**.
33 The *noise thereof* **shouting**
sheweth **telleth** concerning it **him**,
the *cattle* **chattel** also concerning
and the *vapour* **holocaust**.
37
At this also my heart trembleth,
and is *moved* **loosed** out of his place.
2 **In hearing**,
Hear *attentively* the *noise* **commotion** of his voice,
and the *sound* **meditation** that goeth out of his mouth.
3 He *directeth* **releaseth** under the whole *heaven* **heavens**,
and his lightning unto the *ends* **wings** of the earth.
4 After it a voice roareth:
he thundereth with the voice of *his excellency* **pomp**;
and he *will* **shall** not *stay* **restrain** them
when his voice is heard.
5 *God El* thundereth marvellously with his voice;
great things doeth **worketh** he,
which we *cannot comprehend* **perceive not**.
6 For he saith to the snow, Be thou on the earth;
likewise to the *small* **downpour of** rain,
and to the *great* **downpour of** rain of his strength.
7 He sealeth up the hand of *every man* **all humanity**;
that all men may know his work.
8 Then the *beasts go into dens* **live beings lurk**,
and *remain* **tabernacle** in their *places* **habitations**.
9 Out of the *south* **chamber**
cometh the *whirlwind* **hurricane**:
and cold out of the *north* **scattering**.
10 By the breath of *God El* frost is given:
and the breadth of the waters is *straitened* **narrowed**.
11 Also by *watering* **showering**
he *wearieth* **overloadeth** the thick cloud:
he scattereth his *bright* **lightning** cloud:
12 And it is turned round about by his counsels:
that they may do
whatsoever he *commandeth* **misvaheth** them
upon the face of the world in the earth.
13 He causeth it to come,
whether for *correction* **a scion**,
or for his land, or for mercy.
14 Hearken unto this, O *Job* **Iyob**: stand *still*,
and *consider* **discern**
the *wondrous works* **marvels** of *God El*.
15 Dost thou know when *God disposed* **Elohah set** them,
and caused the light of his cloud to shine?
16 Dost thou know the balancings of the **thick** clouds,
the *wondrous works* **marvels** of him
which is *perfect* **integrious** in knowledge?
17 How thy *garments* **clothes** are *warm* **hot**,
when he *quieteth* **resteth** the earth
by the *south wind* **southerly**?
18 Hast thou with him
spread out **expanded** the *sky* **vapours**,
which is strong,
and as a *molten looking glass* **poured reflector**?
19 *Teach us* **Let us know** what we shall say unto him;
for we cannot *order our speech* **line up**
by reason of **at the face of the** darkness.
20 Shall it be *told* **scribed** him that I *speak* **word**?

IYOB 36, 37

exeGesés companion BIBLE

nor probe the number of his years:
27 for he diminishes the drops of water;
they refine rain into the mist;
28 which the vapours flow and drip abundantly
on humanity.
29 And discern you
the spreadings of the thick clouds?
or the clamorings of his sukkoth/brush arbor?
30 Behold, he spreads his light thereon
and covers the roots of the sea.
31 For by them he pleads the cause of the people;
he gives food in abundance;
32 with his two palms he covers the light
and misvahs and intercedes.
33 The shouting tells concerning him;
also the chattel and the holocaust.
37
Also, my heart trembles at this
— loosed from its place.
2 In hearing, hear the commotion of his voice
and the meditation coming from his mouth;
3 he releases under the whole heavens
and his lightning to the wings of the earth.
4 After, a voice roars;
he thunders his voice of pomp;
and he restrains not when his voice is heard.
5 El thunders marvellously with his voice;
he works great — and we perceive not.
6 For to the snow he says, Be on the earth;
likewise to the downpour of rain
and to the downpour of rain of his strength:
7 he seals the hand of all humanity
that all men know his work.
8 And the live beings lurk
and tabernacle in their habitations.
9 From the chamber comes the hurricane;
and cold from the scattering:
10 by the breath of El frost is given;
and the breadth of the waters narrows:
11 by showering, he overloads the thick cloud;
he scatters his lightning cloud:
12 and by his counsels, it turns around
to do whatever he misvahs them
on the face of the world in the earth:
13 he causes it to come
whether for a scion, or for his land, or for mercy.
14 Hearken to this, O Iyob;
Stand and discern the marvels of El.
15 Know you when Elohah set them?
— and shined the light of his cloud?
16 Know you the balancings of the thick clouds?
The marvels of him who is integrious in knowledge?
17 How your clothes heat
when he rests the earth by the southerly?
18 Expand you the vapours with him
— strong as a poured reflector?
19 Know we what to say to him?
for we line not up at the face of the darkness.
20 Is it scribed to him that I word?

JOB 37, 38

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

21 if a man *speaks* say, surely he shall be swallowed up.
And now *men* **they** see not the bright light
which is in the *clouds* **vapours**:
but the wind passeth, and *cleanseth* **purifieth** them.
22 *Fair weather* **Clear sky** cometh out of the north:
with *God* **Elohah** is *terrible* **awesome** majesty.
23 *Touching the Almighty* **Shadday**,
we cannot find him out:
he is **exceedingly** excellent
in *power* **force**, and in judgment,
and in *plenty of justice* **abundant in justness**:
he will **shall** not *afflict* **humble**.
24 Men do therefore fear him;
he *respecteth* **seeth** not any that are wise of heart.

YAH VEH ANSWERS IYOB

38

Then *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
answered *Job* **Iyob** out of the *whirlwind* **storm**, and said,
2 Who is this that darkeneth counsel
by *words* **utterances** without knowledge?
3 Gird up *now* I **beseech**, thy loins like a *man* **mighty**;
for I *will demand* **shall ask** of thee,
and *answer thou me* **let me know**.
4 Where wast thou
when I *laid the foundations of* **founded** the earth?
declare **tell**,
if thou *hast understanding* **knowest discernment**.
5 Who *hath laid* **set** the *measures* **measurements** thereof,
if thou knowest?
or who hath stretched the line upon it?
6 Whereupon are the foundations *thereof* **fastened sunk**?
or who *laid* **poured** the corner stone *thereof*;
7 When the morning stars *sang* **shouted** together,
and all the sons of *God* **Elohim** shouted *for joy*?
8 Or who *shut up* **hedged in** the sea with doors,
when it *brake forth* **gushed**,
as if it had **when it** issued out of the womb?
9 When I *made* **set** the cloud
the garment thereof **for a robe**,
and *thick* **dripping** darkness
a swaddling band for it **for a swathe**,
10 And *brake up for it* **decreed place** **statute**,
and set bars and doors,
11 And said, Hitherto shalt thou come,
but *no further* **add not**:
and here shall *thy proud* **the pomp of thy** waves
be stayed **set**?
12 Hast thou *commanded* **misvahed** the morning
since thy days;
and caused the *dayspring* **dawn** to know his place;
13 That it might take hold of the *ends* **wings** of the earth,
that the wicked might be shaken out of it?
14 It is turned as **a seal of clay to the sea**;
and they *stand* **set** as a *garment* **robe**.
15 And from the wicked their light is withholden,
and the *high* **lofted** arm shall be broken.
16 Hast thou entered
into the *springs* **fountains** of the sea?
or hast thou walked
in the search of **probing** the *depth* **abyss**?
17 Have the *gates* **portals** of death
been *opened* **exposed** unto thee?
or hast thou seen
the *doors* **portals** of the shadow of death?
18 Hast thou *perceived* **discerned**
the *breadth* **broadness** of the earth?
declare **tell** if thou knowest it all.
19 Where is the way where light *dwelleth* **tabernacleth**?
and *as for* darkness, where is the place *thereof*,
20 That thou shouldst take it
to the *bound thereof* **border**,
and that thou shouldst *know* **discern** the paths
to the house *thereof*?
21 Knowest thou it, because thou wast then *born* **birthed**?
or *because* the number of thy days is great?
22 Hast thou entered into the treasures of the snow?
or hast thou seen the treasures of the hail,
23 Which I have *reserved* **spared**
against the time of *trouble* **tribulation**,
against the day of battle and war?

IYOB 37, 38

exeGeses companion BIBLE

If a man says, surely he is swallowed.
21 And now they see not the bright light
in the vapours;
but the wind passes and purifies them:
22 clear sky comes from the north;
with Eloah is awesome majesty.
23 Shadday — we find him not out;
exceedingly excellent in force and in judgment
and abundant in justness:
he abases not.
24 So men fear him;
he sees not any wise of heart.

YAH VEH ANSWERS IYOB

38

And Yah Veh answers Iyob from the storm
and says,
2 Who is this who darkens counsel
by utterances without knowledge?
3 Gird up I beseech, your loins as a mighty;
for I ask of you — and you have me know.
4 Where were you when I founded the earth?
Tell, if you know discernment,
5 who set the measurements, if you know?
6 Who stretched the line thereon?
7 Whereon are the foundations sunk?
Who poured the corner stone
when the morning stars shouted together
and all the sons of Elohim shouted?
8 Who hedged in the sea with doors
when it gushed?
9 When it issued from the womb?
10 When I set the cloud for a robe
and dripping darkness for a swathe;
and broke it up for my statute
and set bars and doors;
11 and said, Come to here, but add not:
And set there the pomp of your waves?
12 Misvahed you the morning since your days?
And had the dawn to know his place?
13 And took hold of the wings of the earth
to shake the wicked therefrom?
14 It turns as a seal of clay;
and they set themselves as a robe;
15 and their light is withheld from the wicked
and the lofted arm broken.
16 Enter you the fountains of the sea?
Walk you probing the abyss?
17 Expose you the portals of death?
See you the portals of the shadow of death?
18 Discern you the broadness of the earth?
Tell, if you know it all.
19 Where is this, the way that light tabernacles?
And darkness, where is its place?
20 — to take it to the border
— to discern the paths to the house?
21 Know you, because you were then birthed?
— or that the number of your days greaten?
22 Enter you into the treasures of the snow?
See you the treasures of the hail
23 that I spare against the time of tribulation?
— against the day of battle and war?

JOB 38, 39

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

24 By what way **Whence** is the light *parted* **allotted**,
which scattereth the *east wind* **easterly** upon the earth?
25 Who hath divided a *watercourse* **channel**
for the overflowing of waters,
or a way for the lightning of *thunder* **voices**;
26 To cause it to rain on the earth, where no man is;
on the wilderness, wherein there is no *man* **human**;
27 To satisfy the *desolate* **devastation**
and waste *ground* **ruin**;
and to cause the *bud* **source** of the *tender herb* **sprout**
to *spring forth* **sprout**?
28 Hath the rain a father?
or who hath *begotten* **birthed** the drops of dew?
29 Out of whose *womb* **belly** came the ice?
and the *hoary frost* **hoarfrost** of *heaven* **the heavens**,
who hath *gendered* **birthed** it?
30 The waters are hid as *with* a stone,
and the face of the *deep* **abyss** is *frozen* **captured**.
31 Canst thou bind
the *sweet influences* **bonds** of *Pleiades* **Kimah**,
or loose the *bands* **cords** of *Orion* **Kesil**?
32 Canst thou bring forth *Mazzaroth* **the constellations**
in *his season* **their time**?
or canst thou *guide* *Arcturus* **lead Ash** with his sons?
33 Knowest thou
the *ordinances* **statutes** of *heaven* **the heavens**?
canst thou set the dominion *thereof* in the earth?
34 Canst thou lift up thy voice to the **thick** clouds,
that abundance of waters may cover thee?
35 Canst thou send lightnings,
that they may go and say unto thee, Here we are?
36 Who hath put wisdom in the *inward parts* **reins**?
or who hath given *understanding* **discernment**
to the *heart* **observant**?
37 Who can *number* **scribe** the *clouds* **vapours** in wisdom?
or who can *stay* **lay down**
the bottles of *heaven* **the heavens**,
38 When the dust *groweth* **firmeth** into *hardness* **mire**,
and the clods *cleave fast together* **adhere**?
39 *Wilt Shalt* thou hunt the prey for the **roaring** lion?
or fill the *appetite* **life** of the *young lions* **whelps**,
40 When they *couch* **prostrate** in their *dens* **habitations**,
and *abide* **settle** in the *covert* **sukkoth/brush arbor**
to *lie in wait* **lurk**?
41 Who *provideth* **prepareth** for the raven his *food* **hunt**?
when his *young ones* **children** cry unto *God* **El**,
they *wander for lack of meat* **stray without food**.
39 Knowest thou the time
when the wild goats of the rock *bring forth* **birth**?
or canst thou *mark* **guard**
when the hinds *do calve* **writhe**?
2 Canst thou *number* **scribe** the *months* **moons**
that they fulfil?
or knowest thou the time when they *bring forth* **birth**?
3 They *bow themselves* **kneel**,
they *bring forth* **adhere** to their *young ones* **children**,
they *cast out* **send** their sorrows **pangs**.
4 Their *young ones* **sons** are in *good liking* **plump**,
they *grow up* **abound** with *corn* **grain**;
they go forth, and return not unto them.
5 Who hath *sent out* **released** the *wild ass* **runner**
free **liberated**?
or who hath loosed the bands of the *wild ass* **onager**?
6 Whose house I have *made* **set** the *wilderness* **plains**,
and the *barren* **salt** land his *dwellings* **tabernacles**.
7 He *scorneth* **ridiculeth** the multitude of the city,
neither *regardeth* **heareth** he
the *crying* **clamorings** of the *driver* **exactor**.
8 The *range* **gleanings** of the mountains is his pasture,
and he searcheth after every **all** the green thing.
9 *Will Willeth* the *unicorn* be *willing* **reem**
to serve thee,
or *abide* **stay overnight** by thy *crib* **manger**?
10 Canst thou bind the *unicorn* **reem**
with his band in the furrow?
or *will* **shall** he harrow the valleys after thee?
11 *Wilt Shalt* thou *trust* **confide in** him,
because his *strength* **force** is great?
or *wilt shalt* thou leave thy labour to him?

IYOB 38, 39

exeGeses companion BIBLE

24 Where is this — where light is allotted?
— which scatters the easterly on the earth?
25 Who divided
a channel for the overflowing of waters?
— a way for the lightning of voices?
26 — to rain on the earth, where no man is?
— on the wilderness, wherein no humanity is?
27 — to satisfy the devastation and ruin?
— to cause the source of the sprout to sprout?
28 Has the rain a father?
Who births the drops of dew?
29 From whose belly comes ice?
Who births the hoarfrost of the heavens?
30 The waters are hid as a stone
and the face of the abyss is captured.
31 Bind you the bonds of Kimah?
Loose you the cords of Kesil?
32 Bring you forth the constellations in their time?
— lead Ash with his sons?
33 Know you the statutes of the heavens?
Set you the dominion in the earth?
34 — lift your voice to the thick clouds
so that abundance of waters cover you?
35 — send lightnings to go to you,
and say, Here we are?
36 Who put wisdom in the reins?
Who gives discernment to the observant?
37 Who scribes the vapours in wisdom?
Who causes the bottles of the heavens to lie down
when the dust firms to mire and the clods adhere?
38 — hunts the prey for the roaring lion?
39 — fills the life of the whelps
when they prostrate in their habitations,
and settle in the sukkoth/brush arbor to lurk?
40 Who prepares the hunt for the raven
— when his children cry to El?
— when they stray without food?
39 Know you the time of birthing
of the wild goats of the rock?
— observe the writhing of the hinds?
— scribe the moons that they fulfill?
— know the time they birth?
3 They kneel;
they adhere to their children;
they send their pangs;
4 their sons are plump;
they abound with grain;
they go forth never to return.
5 Who releases the runner liberated?
Who looses the bands of the onager?
6 — whose house I have set the plains
and the saltland his tabernacles.
7 He ridicules the multitude of the city;
he hears not the clamorings of the exactor;
8 the gleanings of the mountains is his pasture
and he searches after all the green.
9 The reem — wills he to serve you?
— to stay overnight by your manger?
10 — to bind the reem with his band in the furrow?
— to harrow the valleys after you?
11 — to confide in him because his force is great?
— to leave your labor to him?

JOB 39, 40

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 Wilt **Shalt** thou believe **trust** him,
that he will bring home **shall return** thy seed,
and gather it into thy **barn threshingfloor**?
13 Gavest thou the goodly wings **Or pinions**
unto the peacocks **to leap for joy**?
or wings and feathers **plumage** unto the **ostrich stork**?
14 Which leaveth her eggs in the earth,
and warmeth **heateth** them in dust,
15 And forgetteth that the foot may **crush squeeze** them,
or that the **wild beast field life** may **break trample** them.
16 She is hardened against her **young ones sons**,
as though they were not her's:
her labour is in vain without **fear dread**;
17 Because **God Elohah**
hath **deprived her of wisdom exacted wisdom of her**,
neither hath he **imparted allotted** to her
understanding discernment.
18 What time she **lifteth up herself flappeth**
on high in the heights,
she **scorneth ridiculeth** the horse and his rider.
19 Hast thou given the horse **strength** might?
hast thou **clothed enrobed** his neck with thunder?
20 Canst thou **make cause** him **afraid to quiver**
as a **grasshopper locust**?
the **glory majesty** of his nostrils is **terrible terror**.
21 He **paweth diggeth** in the valley,
and rejoiceth in his **strength force**:
he goeth on to **meet confront** the **armed men armour**.
22 He **mocketh at fear ridiculeth dread**,
and is not **affrighted dismayed**;
neither turneth he back from **the face of** the sword.
23 The quiver **rattlenth whizzeth** against him,
the **glittering flaming** spear and the **shield dart**.
24 He swalloweth the **ground earth**
with **fierceness quaking** and **rage commotion**:
neither **believeth trusteth** he
that it is the **sound voice** of the **trumpet shophar**.
25 He saith among the **trumpets shophars**, *Ha, ha Aha*;
and he **smelleth scenteth** the **battle war** afar off,
the thunder of the **captains governors**, and the shouting.
26 *Doth Soareth* the hawk fly
by thy **wisdom discernment**,
and **stretch spread** her wings toward the south?
27 *Doth Goeth* the eagle
mount up at thy **command mouth**,
and make her nest on high?
28 She **dwellenth tabernacleth**
and **abideth stayeth overnight** on the rock,
upon the crag of the rock,
and the **strong place hunthold**.
29 From thence she **seeketh the prey exploreth for food**,
and her eyes **behold scan** afar off.
30 Her **young ones also chicks** suck up blood:
and where the **slain pierced** are, there is she.

40

Moreover

the **LORD Yah Veh** answered **Job Iyob**, and said,
2 Shall he that contendeth with the **Almighty Shadday**
instruct reprove him?
he that reproveth **God Elohah**, let him answer it.

IYOB ANSWERS YAH VEH

3 Then **Job Iyob** answered the **LORD Yah Veh**, and said,
4 Behold, I am **vile abased**;
what shall I **answer respond** to thee?
I will lay mine **shall set my** hand upon **unto** my mouth.
5 Once have I **spoken worded**;
but I will **shall** not answer:
yea, twice; but I will **proceed no further not again**.

YAH VEH ANSWERS IYOB

6 Then answered the **LORD Yah Veh** unto **Job Iyob**
out of the **whirlwind storm**, and said,
7 Gird up thy loins **now I beseech**, like a **man mighty**:
I will **demand shall ask** of thee,
and **declare thou unto me let me know**.
8 Wilt **Shalt** thou also **disannul break** my judgment?
wilt **shalt** thou **condemn judge** me **wicked**,
that thou mayest be **righteous justified**?
9 Hast thou an arm like **God El**?
or canst shalt thou thunder with a voice like him?

IYOB 39, 40

exeGesés companion BIBLE

12 — to trust him to return your seed?
— to gather it into your threshingfloor?
13 Or pinions to leap for joy?
Or plumage to the stork?
14 — who leaves her eggs in the earth
and heats them in dust;
15 and forgets that the foot may squeeze them;
or that the field life may trample them.
16 She hardens her sons
as though they are not hers;
her labor is in vain without dread:
17 for Elohah exacts wisdom from her;
he allots her no discernment;
18 at the time she flaps in the heights
she ridicules the horse and his rider.
19 Give you the horse might?
— enrobe his neck with thunder?
20 — quiver him as a locust?
21 The majesty of his nostrils is terror.
He digs in the valley and rejoices in his force;
22 he goes on to confront the armour.
He ridicules dread and is not dismayed;
23 he turns not back from the face of the sword;
the quiver whizzes against him
24 — the flaming spear and the dart:
he swallows the earth
with quaking and commotion;
25 he trusts not the voice of the shophar.
He says among the shophars, Aha!
And he scents the war afar off
— the thunder of the governors and the shouting.
26 Soars the hawk by your discernment?
— spreads her wings toward the south?
27 Comes the eagle at your mouth
and makes her nest on high?
28 She tabernacles and stays overnight on the rock
— on the crag of the rock and the hunthold;
29 from thence she explores for food;
her eyes scan afar off;
30 her chicks suck blood;
and where the pierced are, there she is.

40

Yah Veh answers Iyob and says,
2 Contends the reprovor with Shadday?
Whoever reproves Elohah, answer!

IYOB ANSWERS YAH VEH

3 And Iyob answers Yah Veh and says,
4 Behold, I am abased;
What respond I to you?
I set my hand to my mouth.
5 I worded once; but I answer not:
yes, twice; but not again.

YAH VEH ANSWERS IYOB

6 And Yah Veh answers Iyob from the storm
and says,
7 Gird your loins, I beseech, as a mighty;
I ask of you; and have me know.
8 Break you my judgment?
Judge you me wicked to justify yourself?
9 Have you an arm like El?
Thunder with a voice like him?

JOB 40, 41

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 Deck **Adorn** thyself now **I beseech**,
with majesty **pomp** and excellency **loftiness**;
and array **enrobe** thyself
with glory **majesty** and beauty **honour**.
11 Cast abroad **Scatter** the rage **fury** of thy wrath:
and behold **see** every one that is **proud pompous**,
and abase him.
12 Look on **See** every one that is **proud pompous**,
and bring him low **subdue him**;
and tread down **trample** the wicked in their place.
13 Hide them in the dust together;
and bind their faces in **secret hiding**.
14 Then will **shall** I also confess unto thee
that thine own right **hand can shall** save thee.
15 Behold now **I beseech**,
behemoth, which I **made worked** with thee;
he eateth grass as an ox.
16 Lo now **Behold I beseech**,
his **strength force** is in his loins,
and his **force strength** is in the navel of his belly.
17 He moveth **bendeth** his tail like a cedar:
the sinews of his **stones testis**
are **wrapped together entwined**.
18 His bones
are as **strong pieces gatherings of brass copper**;
his bones
are like **bars as forgings** of iron.
19 He is the **chief beginning** of the ways of **God El**:
he that **made him can make his sword to approach unto him**
his Worker approacheth with his sword.
20 Surely the mountains
bring **bear him forth food produce**,
where all the **beasts live beings** of the field **play laugh**.
21 He lieth under the **shady trees lotuses**,
in the covert of the **reed stalk**, and **fens mire**.
22 The **shady trees lotuses** cover him with their shadow;
the willows of the **brook wadi**
compass surround him about.
23 Behold, he drinketh up a river, and hasteth not:
he **trusteth is confident**
that he can **draw up Jordan gush Yarden** into his mouth.
24 He taketh it with his eyes:
his **nose pierceth nostrils pierce** through snares.
41 Canst thou draw out leviathan with a hook?
or **drown** his tongue with a cord **which thou lettest down**?
2 Canst thou **put an hook set a rush** into his **nose nostrils**?
or bore his jaw through with a thorn?
3 Will **Shall** he **make many abound**
with supplications unto thee?
will **shall** he **speak soft words word tenderly** unto thee?
4 Will **Shall** he **make cut** a covenant with thee?
wilt **shalt** thou take him for a servant **for ever eternally**?
5 Wilt **Shalt** thou **play laugh** with him as with a bird?
or wilt **shalt** thou bind him for thy **maidens lasses**?
6 Shall the **his** companions
make a **banquet of market** him?
shall they **part halve** him among the merchants?
7 Canst thou **fill Fillest thou** his skin
with **barbed irons barbs**?
or his head with fish **spears harpoons**?
8 Lay thine hand **Set thy palm** upon him,
remember the **battle war**, **do no more add not**.
9 Behold, the hope of him is **in vain lieth**:
shall not one be cast down
even at the **sight visage** of him?
10 None is so fierce that **dare stir they waken** him up:
who then is **able to stand before me setteth at my face**?
11 Who **hath prevented anticipateth** me,
that I should **repay shalam** him?
whatsoever is under the whole **heaven heavens** is mine.
12 I will **shall** not **conceal hush as to** his **parts veins**,
nor **the word of** his power might,
nor **the beauty of** his comely proportion.
13 Who can **discover exposeth** the face of his **garment robe**?
or who can **come cometh** to him with his double bridle?
14 Who can **open openeth** the doors of his face?
his teeth are **terrible a terror** round about.
15 His **scales strong shields** are his **pride pomp**,
shut up **together as with a close as a constricted** seal.

IYOB 40, 41

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 I beseech,
adorn yourself with pomp and loftiness;
enrobe yourself with majesty and honor;
scatter the fury of your wrath;
11 see everyone who is pompous and abase him;
12 see everyone who is pompous and subdue him;
and trample the wicked in their place:
hide them in the dust together
and bind their faces in hiding.
14 And I — I also confess to you
that your own right saves thee.
15 Behold, I beseech,
behemoth, whom I worked with you
— who eats grass as an ox.
16 Behold, I beseech,
his force in his loins
and his strength in the navel of his belly.
17 He bends his tail as a cedar;
the sinews of his testis entwine:
18 his bones — as gatherings of copper;
his bones — as forgings of iron:
19 he is the beginning of the ways of El;
his Worker approaches with his sword:
20 surely the mountains bear him produce
where all the live beings of the field laugh.
21 He lies under the lotuses,
in the covert of the stalk and mire;
22 the lotuses cover him with their shadow;
the willows of the wadi surround him:
23 behold, he drinks a river; he hastens not;
— confident that he can gush Yarden in his mouth:
24 he takes it with his eyes;
his nostrils pierce through snares.
41 You — draw you leviathan with a hook?
Drown his tongue with a cord?
2 Set a rush into his nostrils?
Bore his jaw through with a thorn?
3 Abounds he with supplications to you?
Words he tenderly to you?
4 Cuts he a covenant with you?
You — take you him for a servant eternally?
5 Laugh with him as with a bird?
Bind him for your lasses?
6 Do his companions market him?
— halve him among the merchants?
7 — fill his skin with barbs?
or his head with fish harpoons?
8 Set your palm on him;
remember the war; add not.
9 Behold, his hope lies.
Is no one cast down at his visage?
10 None is so fierce that he wakens him.
11 Who then sets at my face?
Who anticipates me, that I shalam him?
12 whatever is under the whole heavens is mine.
I neither hush as to his veins,
nor to the word of his might,
nor to the beauty of his proportion.
13 Who exposes the face of his robe?
Who comes to him with his double bridle?
14 Who opens the doors of his face?
15 His teeth are a terror all around;
his strong shields are his pomp
— shut up as a constricted seal.

JOB 41, 42

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 One is so near to another **approacheth one**,
that no *air can come* **wind/spirit cometh** between them.
17 They are *joined one* **adhere man to another brother**,
they stick together,
that they *cannot be sundered* **be not separated**.
18 By his *neesings* **sneezings** a light *doth shine* **halaleth**,
and his eyes are like the eyelids of the *morning* **dawn**.
19 Out of his mouth go *burning lamps* **flambeaus**,
and sparks of fire *leap out* **escape**.
20 Out of his nostrils goeth smoke,
as out of a *seething pot* **pressure cooker** or *caldron* **rush**.
21 His *breath* **kindleth** **soul inflameth** coals,
and a flame goeth out of his mouth.
22 In his neck *remaineth* **stayeth** strength,
and *sorrow is turned into joy* **before him**
languish leapeth at his face.
23 The flakes of his flesh *are joined together* **adhere**:
they are firm **firmed** in themselves;
they cannot be moved **totter not**.
24 His heart is as *firm* **firmed** as a stone; yea,
as *hard* **firmed** as a *piece* **slice** of the *nether* **millstone**.
25 When he *raiseth up himself* **He swells**,
the *mighty are afraid* **dodge him**:
by reason of breakings they purify themselves.
26 The sword of him that *layeth at* **overtaketh** him
cannot hold **riseth not**:
the spear, the *dart* **arrow**, nor the habergeon.
27 He *esteemeth* **fabricateth** iron as straw,
and *brass* **copper** as rotten wood **timber**.
28 The *arrow* **son of the bow** cannot make him flee:
slingstones are turned with him into stubble.
29 *Darts* **Clubs** are *counted* **fabricated** as stubble:
he laugheth at the *shaking* **quaking** of a *spear* **dart**.
30 *Sharp stones* **Pieces of potsherd** are under him:
he spreadeth *sharp pointed things* **ore** upon the mire.
31 He *maketh* **setteth** the deep to boil like a *pot* **caldron**:
he maketh the sea like a *pot of ointment* **spicy broth**.
32 He maketh a path to *shine* **enlighten** after him;
one would think **he fabricateth** the *deep* **abyss**
to be *hoary* **greyed**.
33 Upon *earth* **dust** there is not his like,
who is *made* **worked** without *fear* **terror**.
34 He *beholdeth* **seeth** all *high things* **the heights**:
he is a *king* **sovereign**
over all the *children* **sons** of pride.

IYOB ANSWERS YAH VEH

42

Then *Job* **Iyob** answered the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and said,
2 I know that thou *canst do every thing* **art able in all**,
and that no *thought* **intrigue**
can be withholden **shall be cut off** from thee.
3 Who is he that *hideth* **concealeth** counsel
without knowledge?
therefore have I *uttered* **told**
that I *understood* **discerned** not;
things too wonderful **marvellous** for me,
which I knew not.
4 Hear, I beseech thee, and I *will speak* **shall word**:
I *will demand* **shall ask** of thee,
and *declare thou unto me* **let me know**.
5 I have heard of thee by the hearing of the ear:
but now mine eye *seeth* **hath seen** thee.
6 Wherefore I *abhor myself* **spurn**,
and *repent* **sigh** in dust and ashes.

YAH VEH ANSWERS ELI PHAZ

7 And **so be** it was *so*,
that after the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
had *spoken* **worded** these words unto *Job* **Iyob**,
the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
said to *Eliphaz* **Eli Phaz** the *Temanite* **Temaniy**,
My wrath is kindled against thee,
and against thy two friends:
for ye have not *spoken* **worded** of me
the *thing that is right* **which be established**,
as my servant *Job* **hath Iyob**.
8 Therefore take unto you now
seven bullocks and seven rams,
and go to my servant *Job* **Iyob**,

IYOB 41, 42

exeGeses companion BIBLE

16 One approaches one
so that no wind/spirit comes between them;
17 they adhere man to brother;
they stick together — not to be separated.
18 By his sneezings a light halals
and his eyes are as the eyelids of the dawn;
19 from his mouth go flambeaus
and sparks of fire escape;
20 from his nostrils comes smoke
as from a pressure cooker or rush;
21 his soul inflames coals
and a flame comes from his mouth;
22 strength stays in his neck
and languish leaps at his face;
23 the flakes of his flesh adhere
— firmed in themselves not to totter;
24 his heart is firmed as a stone;
yes, firmed as a slice of the nether.
25 He swells; the mighty dodge him;
they purify themselves from breakings;
26 the sword of him who overtakes
raises neither the spear, the arrow,
nor the habergeon.
27 He fabricates iron as straw
and copper as rotten timber;
28 he flees not the son of the bow;
he turns slingstones into stubble;
29 he fabricates clubs as stubble;
he laughs at the quaking of a dart;
30 pieces of potsherd are under him;
he spreads ore on the mire;
31 he sets the deep to boil as a caldron;
he makes the sea as a spicy broth;
he makes a path to enlighten after him;
he fabricates the abyss to be greyed.

33 On the dust there is none like him
who is worked without terror;
34 he sees all the heights;
he is sovereign over all the sons of pride.

IYOB ANSWERS YAH VEH

42

Iyob answers Yah Veh and says,
2 I know that you are able in all;
and that no intrigue is cut off from you.
3 Who is he
who conceals counsel without knowledge?
so I tell, and I discern not
— too marvellous for me, and I know not.
4 Hear, I beseech you, and I word;
I ask you; you have me know.
5 I hear you by the hearing of the ear;
and now my eye sees you:
6 so I spurn and sigh in dust and ashes.

YAH VEH ANSWERS ELI PHAZ

7 And so be it,
after Yah Veh words these words to Iyob,
Yah Veh says to Eli Phaz the Temaniy,
I kindle my wrath against you
and against your two friends;
for you word not of me what is established
— as my servant Iyob.
8 And now,
take seven bullocks and seven rams
and go to my servant Iyob

JOB 42

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and offer up **holocaust** for yourselves
a *burnt offering* **holocaust**;
and my servant *Job* **lyob** shall pray for you:
for him *will I accept* **shall I lift from his face**:
lest I deal **so as not to work** with you *after your* folly,
in that ye have not *spoken* **worded** of me
the thing **that** which is *right* **established**,
like my servant *Job* **lyob**.
9 So *Eliphaz* **Eli Phaz** the *Temanite* **Temaniy**
and *Bildad* the *Shuhite* **Shuachiy**
and *Zophar* **Sophar** the *Naamathite* **Naamahiy** went,
and *did* **worked** according
as the *LORD* **commanded** **Yah Veh** **worded** them:
the LORD **Yah Veh**
also accepted *Job* **lifted the face of lyob**.
10 **YAH VEH DOUBLES THE SUBSTANCE OF IYOB**
And the LORD **Yah Veh**
turned the captivity of *Job* **lyob**,
when he prayed for his friends:
also the LORD **gave Job Yah Veh added to lyob**
twice as much as he had *before* **faced**.
11 Then came there unto him all his brethren,
and all his sisters,
and all they
that had *been of his acquaintance* **known his face**,
and did eat bread with him in his house:
and they *bemoaned* **wagged with** him,
and *comforted* **sighed over** him
over all the evil
that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had brought upon him:
every man also gave him *a piece of money* **one ingot**,
and every *one* **an earring** **man one nosering** of gold.
12 So *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
blessed the *latter end* **finality** of *Job* **lyob**
more than his beginning:
for he had fourteen thousand *sheep* **flocks**,
and six thousand camels,
and a thousand yoke of oxen,
and a thousand she asses **burros**.
13 He had also seven sons and three daughters.
14 And he called the name of the first, *Jemima* **Yemima**;
and the name of the second, *Kezia*;
and the name of the third, *Kerenhappuch* **Qeren Hap Puch**.
15 And in all the land
were no women found so *fair* **beautiful**
as the daughters of *Job* **lyob**:
and their father gave them inheritance
among their brethren.
16 After this lived *Job* **lyob** an hundred and forty years,
and saw his sons, and his sons' sons,
even four generations.
17 So *Job* **lyob** died,
being *old* **aged** and *full* **satisfied** of days.

IYOB 42

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and holocaust yourselves a holocaust;
and my servant *lyob* prays for you;
as for him, I lift from his face;
so as not to work folly with you
— in that you word not of me what is established,
as my servant *lyob*.
9 And *Eli Phaz* the *Temaniy* and *Bildad* the *Shuachiy*
and *Sophar* the *Naamahiy*
go and work according as *Yah Veh* words them;
and *Yah Veh* lifts the face of *lyob*.
YAH VEH DOUBLES THE SUBSTANCE OF IYOB
10 And *Yah Veh* turns the captivity of *lyob*,
in praying for his friends;
and *Yah Veh* adds to *lyob*
twice as much as he had faced.
11 Then all his brothers and all his sisters
and all who knew his face
come to him
and eat bread with him in his house;
and they wag with him and sigh over him
— over all the evil *Yah Veh* brought on him;
and every man gives him one ingot
and every man one nosering of gold.
12 And *Yah Veh* blesses the finality of *lyob*
more than his beginning;
for he has fourteen thousand flocks
and six thousand camels
and a thousand yoke of oxen
and a thousand she burros:
13 and he has seven sons and three daughters.
14 And he called the name of the first, *Yemima*;
and the name of the second, *Kezia*;
and the name of the third, *Qeren Hap Puch*.
15 And in all the land
they find no women
as beautiful as the daughters of *lyob*;
and their father gives them inheritance
among their brothers.
16 After this *lyob* lives a hundred and forty years
and sees his sons and the sons of his sons
— four generations.
17 And *lyob* dies — aged and satisfied of days.

PSALMS 1—3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

BOOK I

1 Blessed **Blithe** is the man
that walketh not in the counsel of the *ungodly* **wicked**,
nor standeth in the way of sinners,
nor *sitteth* **settleth** in the *seat* **settlement** of the scornful.
2 But his delight is in the *law* **torah** of the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and in his *law* **torah** doth he meditate day and night.
3 And he shall be like a tree
planted **transplanted** by the *rivers* **rivulets** of water,
that *bringeth forth* **giveth** his fruit in his *season* **time**;
his leaf also shall not wither;
and whatsoever he *doeth* **worketh** shall prosper.
4 The *ungodly* **wicked** are not so:
but are like the chaff
which the wind *driveth away* **disperseth**.
5 Therefore the *ungodly* **wicked**
shall not *stand* **rise** in the judgment,
nor sinners
in the *congregation* **witness** of the *righteous* **just**.
6 For the **LORD Yah Veh**
knoweth the way of the *righteous* **just**:
but the way of the *ungodly* **wicked** shall *perish* **destruct**.

2 Why do the *heathen* **rage** **goyim** **conspire**,
and the *people* **nations**
imagine a vain thing **meditate** **vanity**?
2 The *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth
set **station** themselves,
and the *rulers* **take** **potentates** **set** counsel together,
against the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and against his anointed, *saying*,
3 Let us *break* **tear** their bands *asunder*,
and cast *away* their *corde* **ropes** from us.
4 He that *sitteth* **settleth** in the heavens shall laugh:
the *Lord* **Adonay** shall *have* **deride** them *in derision*.
5 Then shall he *speak* **word** unto them in his wrath,
and vex **terrify** them in his *sore displeasure* **fuming**.
6 Yet have I *set* **anointed** my *king* **sovereign**
upon my holy *hill of Zion* **mount Siyon**.
7 I will *declare* **shall scribe** the *decree* **statute**:
the **LORD Yah Veh** hath said unto me,
Thou art my *Son* **Ben***; this day have I *begotten* **birthed** thee.
*Ben: cp 2:12
8 Ask of me,
and I shall give thee the *heathen* **goyim**
for thine inheritance,
and the *utmost parts* **finalities** of the earth
for thy possession.
9 Thou shalt *break* **shatter** them with a *rod* **scion** of iron;
thou shalt *dash* **splatter** them *in pieces*
like a potter's vessel **as a formed instrument**.
10 Be wise **Comprehend** now therefore,
O ye *kings* **sovereigns**:
be *instructed* **disciplined**, ye judges of the earth.
11 Serve the **LORD Yah Veh** with *fear* **awe**,
and *rejoice* **twirl** with trembling.
12 Kiss the *Son* **Bar***, lest he be angry,
and ye *perish* **destruct** from the way,
when his wrath is *kindled* **burneth** but a little.
Blessed **Blithe** are all they
that *put their trust* **seek** **refuge** in him.
*Bar: cp 2:7

3 A Psalm of David,
when he fled from *Absalom* **the face of** **Abi Shalom** his son.
1 **LORD Yah Veh**,
how are they increased that trouble me
how my tribulators abound by the myriads!
many are they that rise *up* against me.
2 Many there be which say of my soul,
There is no *help* **salvation** for him in *God* **Elohim**.
Selah.
3 But thou, O **LORD Yah Veh**, art a *shield* **buckler** for me;
my *glory* **honour**, and the lifter *up* of mine head.
4 I *cried* **called** unto the **LORD Yah Veh** with my voice,
and he *heard* **answered** me out of his holy *hill* **mountain**.
Selah.
5 I laid me down and slept; I awaked;
for the **LORD Yah Veh** sustained me.

PSALMS 1—3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

BOOK I

1 Blithe — the man
who neither walks in the counsel of the wicked,
nor stands in the way of sinners,
nor settles in the settlement of the scornful.
2 But his delight *is* in the torah of Yah Veh;
and in his torah he meditates day and night;
and being as a tree
3 transplanted by the rivulets of water,
giving his fruit in his time:
his leaf withers not;
and whatever he works, prospers.

4 Not so the wicked;
but *are* as chaff which the wind disperses.
5 So, neither the wicked rise in the judgment,
nor sinners in the witness of the just.
6 For Yah Veh knows the way of the just;
and the way of the wicked destructs.

2 Why *do* the goyim conspire
and the nations meditate vanity?
2 The sovereigns of the earth station themselves
and the potentates set counsel together
against Yah Veh and against his anointed.
3 Tear their bands
and cast their ropes from us.

4 He who settles in the heavens laughs;
Adonay derides them;
5 then he words to them in his wrath
and terrifies them in his fuming.
6 And I — I anointed my sovereign
on my holy mount Siyon;
7 I scribe the statute!

Yah Veh says to me,
You are my Son/Ben*; this day I birthed you.
*Ben; cp 2:12
8 Ask of me;
and I give you the goyim for your inheritance
and the finalities of the earth for your possession.
9 You, shatter them with a scion of iron;
splatter them as a formed instrument.
10 And now, O you sovereigns, comprehend;
be disciplined, you judges of the earth.

11 Serve Yah Veh with awe
and twirl with trembling;
12 kiss the Son/Bar*, lest he be angry
and you destruct from the way
— when his wrath burns but a little.
Blithe — all who seek refuge in him.
*Bar: cp 2:7

3 A Psalm by David;
as he flees from the face of Abi Shalom his son.

1 Yah Veh,
how my tribulators abound by the myriads!
Many rise against me;
2 many say of my soul,
There is no salvation for him in Elohim.
Selah.

3 And you, O Yah Veh, my buckler,
my honor and the lifter of my head.
4 I call to Yah Veh with my voice,
and he answers me from his holy mountain.
Selah.

5 I lie down and sleep; I waken;
for Yah Veh sustains me.

PSALMS 3—5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

6 I will **shall** not be afraid **awe**
of ten thousands **myriads** of people,
that have set *themselves* against me round about.
7 Arise, O **LORD Yah Veh**; save me, O my **God Elohim**:
for thou hast smitten all mine enemies
upon the cheek bone;
thou hast broken the teeth of the *ungodly* **wicked**.
8 Salvation *belongeth* unto the **LORD Yah Veh**:
thy blessing is upon thy people.
Selah.

4 To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
on *Neginoth* **Strummer**,
A Psalm of David.
1 Hear **Answer** me when I call,
O **God Elohim** of my *righteousness* **justness**:
thou hast enlarged me
when I was in *distress* **tribulation**;
have *mercy upon me* **grant me charism**,
and hear my prayer.
2 O ye sons of men,
how long *will ye turn my glory* **shall my honour**
into **be for** shame?
how long will — **shall** ye love vanity,
and seek after *leasing* **lies**?
Selah.
3 But know that the **LORD Yah Veh** hath set apart
him that is *godly* **mercied** for himself:
the **LORD will Yah Veh shall** hear when I call unto him.
4 *Stand in awe* **Quiver** and sin not:
commune say with your own heart upon your bed,
and be still.
Selah.

5 Offer **Sacrifice** the sacrifices of *righteousness* **justness**,
and *put your trust* **confide** in the **LORD Yah Veh**.
6 There be many that say,
Who *will shew us any* **shall let us see** good?
LORD O Yah Veh,
lift thou up the light of thy *countenance* **face** upon us.
7 Thou hast *put gladness* **given cheerfulness** in my heart,
more than in the time
that their *corn* **crop** and their *wine* **juice**
increased **abounded by the myriads**.
8 I *will both* **shall altogether**
lay me down in *peace* **shalom**, and sleep:
for thou, **LORD O Yah Veh**, only
makest me dwell in safety **settlest me confidently**.

5 To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
upon *Nehiloth* **Flute**,
A Psalm of David.
1 Give ear **Hearken** to my *words* **sayings**,
O **LORD Yah Veh**,
consider **discern** my meditation.
2 Hearken unto the voice of my cry,
my **King Sovereign**, and my **God Elohim**:
for unto thee *will* **shall** I pray.
3 My voice shalt thou hear in the morning,
O **LORD Yah Veh**;
in the morning
will I direct my prayer **shall I arrange** unto thee,
and *will look up* **shall watch**.
4 For thou art not a **God an El**
that *hath pleasure* **delighteth** in wickedness:
neither shall evil *dwell* **sojourn** with thee.
5 The *foolish* **They that halal**
shall not *stand* **settle** in thy *sight* **thine eyes**:
thou hatest all *workers of iniquity* **working mischief**.
6 Thou shalt destroy them that *speak leasing* **word lies**:
the **LORD will Yah Veh shall** abhor
the *bloody* **man of bloods** and *deceitful man* **deceit**.
7 But as for me, I *will* **shall** come into thy house
in the *multitude* **abundance** of thy mercy:
and in thy *fear* **will awe shall** I *worship* **prostrate**
toward thy holy *temple* **manse**.
8 Lead me, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
in thy *righteousness* **justness**
because of mine *enemies* **opponents**;
make **straighten** thy way *straight before* **at** my face.

PSALMS 3—5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

6 I awe not myriads of people,
who set against me all around.
7 Rise, O Yah Veh! Save me, O my Elohim!
For you have smitten all my enemies
on the cheek bone;
you broke the teeth of the wicked.
8 Salvation to Yah Veh;
your blessing *is* on your people.
Selah.

4 To His Eminence; On Strummer;
A Psalm by David.
1 Answer me when I call, O Elohim of my justness;
in my tribulation you enlarged me;
grant me charism and hear my prayer.
2 O you sons of men,
until when *is* my honor for shame
— you who love vanity and seek after lies?
Selah.
3 And know that Yah Veh set apart
the mercied for himself;
Yah Veh hears when I call to him.
4 Quiver and sin not;
say with your own heart on your bed
and be still.
Selah.
5 Sacrifice the sacrifices of justness;
confide in Yah Veh.

6 Many say, Who has us see good?
O Yah Veh, lift the light of your face on us.
7 You gave cheerfulness in my heart,
from the time their crop and their juice
abounded by the myriads.
8 I altogether lie down in shalom and sleep;
for you only, O Yah Veh, settle me confidently.

5 To His Eminence; On Flute;
A Psalm by David.
1 Hear my sayings, O Yah Veh;
discern my meditation:
2 hearken to the voice of my cry,
my Sovereign and my Elohim;
for I pray to you.
3 Hear my voice in the morning, O Yah Veh;
in the morning I arrange to you and watch.
4 For you *are* an El
who neither delights in wickedness;
nor sojourns with evil.
5 They who halal settle not at your eyes;
you hate all who work mischief:
6 you destroy them who word lies;
Yah Veh abhors the man of bloods and deceit.
7 And as for me,
I come into your house
in the abundance of your mercy;
and in your awe
I prostrate toward your holy manse.
8 O Yah Veh, Lead me in your justness
because of my opponents;
straighten your way at my face:

PSALMS 5—7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 For there is *no faithfulness* **naught established**
in their mouth;
their *inward part is very wickedness* **inwards are calamities**;
their throat is an open *sepulchre* **tomb**;
they *flatter* **smooth over** with their tongue.
10 *Destroy thou them* **They have guilted**, O God **Elohim**;
let them fall by their own counsels;
cast **drive** them out in the *multitude* **abundance**
of their *transgressions* **rebellions**;
for they have rebelled against thee.
11 But let all those that *put their trust* **seek refuge** in thee
rejoice **cheer**:
let them ever **eternally** shout *for joy*,
because thou *defendest* **coverest** them **over**:
let them also that love thy name
be joyful **jump for joy** in thee.
12 For thou, *LORD* **O Yah Veh**,
wilt **shalt** bless the *righteous* **just**;
with *favour* **pleasure**
wilt **shalt** thou *compass* **surround** him as *with* a shield.

6

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
on Neginoth **Strummer** upon Sheminith **Octave**,
A Psalm of David.
1 O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
rebuke **reprove** me not in *thine anger* **thy wrath**,
neither *chasten* **discipline** me in thy *hot displeasure* **fury**.
2 *Have mercy upon me* **Grant me charism**,
O *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
for I am *weak* **languish**:
O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, heal me;
for my bones are *vexed* **terrified**.
3 My soul is also *sore vexed* **mighty terrified**:
but thou, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, how long?
4 Return, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, *deliver* **rescue** my soul:
oh save me for thy mercies' sake.
5 For in death
there is no *remembrance* **memorial** of thee:
in the *grave* **sheol**
who shall *give* **spread** thee *thanks* **hands**?
6 I am *weary* **belaboured** with my *groaning* **sighing**;
all the night make I my bed to swim;
I *water* **flow** my *couch* **bedstead** with my tears.
7 Mine eye is *consumed* **motheaten**
because of grief **in vexation**;
it *waxeth old* **antiquateth**
because of all *mine enemies* **my tribulators**.
8 *Depart* **Turn** from me,
all ye *workers of iniquity* **working mischief**;
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath heard the voice of my weeping.
9 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** hath heard my supplication;
the LORD will receive **Yah Veh shall take** my prayer.
10 Let all mine enemies *be ashamed* **shame**
and *sore vexed* **terrify mightily**:
let them return
and *be ashamed suddenly* **shame in a blink**.

7

Shiggaion **Lyric Poem** of David,
which he sang unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
concerning the words of *Cush* **Kush**
the *Benjamite* **Ben Yaminij**.
1 O *LORD* **Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**,
in thee *do I put my trust* **seek I refuge**:
save me from all them that *persecute* **pursue** me,
and *deliver* **rescue** me:
2 Lest he tear my soul like a lion,
rending **craunching** it *in pieces*,
while there is none to *deliver* **rescue**.
3 O *LORD* **Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**,
If I have *done* **worked** this;
if there be *iniquity* **wickedness** in my *hands* **palms**;
4 If I have *rewarded* **dealt** evil unto him
that was *at peace* **shalamed** with me;
(*yea*, I have *delivered* **rescued** him
that *without cause* **vainly** is *mine enemy* **my tribulator**:)

PSALMS 5—7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 for naught is established in their mouth;
their inwards are calamities;
their throat is an open tomb;
they smooth over with their tongue.
10 They guilt, O Elohim;
fell them by their own counsels:
in the abundance of their rebellions
drive them away:
for they rebel against you.
11 And all who seek refuge in you cheer;
they eternally shout
because you cover them over;
may they who love your name jump for joy in you:
for you bless the just, O Yah Veh;
with pleasure you surround him as a shield.
6 To His Eminence; On Strummer; On Octave;
A Psalm by David.

1

O Yah Veh,
neither reprove me in your wrath,
nor discipline me in your fury.
2 Grant me charism, O Yah Veh, for I languish;
Heal me, O Yah Veh,
for my bones are terrified;
my soul is mighty terrified.
3 And you, O Yah Veh, until when?
4 Return, O Yah Veh, rescue my soul;
save me for sake of your your mercies:
for your memorial is not in death;
who spreads hands to you in sheol?
5 I belabor with my sighing;
all night my bed swims:
6 I flow my bedstead with my tears;
my eye is motheaten in vexation
— antiquates because of all my tribulators.
7 Turn from me,
all you working mischief;
for Yah Veh hears the voice of my weeping:
Yah Veh hears my supplication;
Yah Veh takes my prayer.
8 All my enemies shame and terrify mightily;
they return and shame in a blink.
7 Lyric Poem, by David,
which he sang to Yah Veh,
concerning the words of Kush the Ben Yaminij.
1 O Yah Veh my Elohim, in you seek I refuge;
save me from all my pursuers and rescue me:
lest he tear my soul like a lion — craunching,
while there is none to rescue.
2 O Yah Veh my Elohim,
If I worked this;
3 if there is wickedness in my palms;
4 if I dealt evil to him who shalamed with me;
or rescued my tribulator in vain:

PSALMS 7, 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 Let the enemy *persecute* **pursue** my soul,
and *take it* **overtake**;
yea, let him *tread down* **trample** my life upon the earth,
and *lay* **tabernacle** mine honour in the dust.
Selah.

6 Arise, O **LORD Yah Veh**, in *thine anger* **thy wrath**,
lift up thyself
because of the *rage* **fury** of *mine enemies* **my tribulators**:
and awake for me to the judgment
that thou hast *commanded* **misvahed**.

7 So **Thus**
shall the *congregation* **witnesses** of the *people* **nations**
compass **surround** thee *about*:
for their sakes therefore
return thou *on high* **in the heights**.

8 The **LORD Yah Veh**
shall *judge* **plead the cause** of the people:
judge me, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
according to my *righteousness* **justness**,
and according to mine integrity that is in me.

9 Oh **I beseech**,
let the *wickedness* **evil** of the wicked
come to an end **cease**;
but establish the just:
for the *righteous God* **just Elohim**
trieth **proofeth** the hearts and reins.

10 My *defence* **buckler** is of *God* **upon Elohim**,
which saveth the *upright* **straight** in heart.

11 *God judgeth the righteous* **Elohim is a just judge**,
and *God is angry with the wicked* **El is enraged** every day.

12 If he turn not, he *will whet* **shall sharpen** his sword;
he hath bent his bow, and *made it ready* **prepared**.

13 He hath also prepared for him
the instruments of death;
he *ordaineth* **heats** his arrows
against the *persecutors* **them who pursue**.

14 Behold, he *travaileth* **despoileth** with *iniquity* **mischief**,
and hath conceived *mischief* **toil**,
and *brought forth* **hath birthed** falsehood.

15 He *made* **digged a pit well**, and digged it,
and is fallen into the *ditch which* **pit of ruin** he made.

16 His *mischiefto* **il** shall return upon his own head,
and his *violent dealing* **violence**
shall *come down* **descend** upon his own *pate* **scalp**.

17 I *will praise the LORD* **shall spread hands to Yah Veh**
according to his righteousness:
and *will sing praise* **shall psalm**
to the name of the *LORD* **most high Yah Veh Elyon**.

8 To the chief Musician **His Eminence**, upon Gittith,
A Psalm of David.

1 O **LORD Yah Veh**, our *Lord* **Adonay**,
how *excellent* **mighty** is thy name in all the earth!
who hast *set* **given** thy *glory* **majesty** above the heavens.

2 Out of the mouth of *babes* **infants** and sucklings
hast thou *ordained* **founded** strength
because of *thine enemies* **thy tribulators**,
that thou mightest
still **shabbathize** the enemy and the avenger.

3 When I *consider* **see** thy heavens,
the work of thy fingers,
the moon and the stars,
which thou hast *ordained* **established**;

4 What is man,
that thou *art mindful of* **rememberest** him?
and the son of *man* **humanity**,
that thou visitest him?

5 For thou hast made him
a little *lower* **less** than the *angels* **Elohim**,
and hast crowned him
with *glory* **honour** and *honour* **majesty**.

6 Thou *madest* **hast** him to *have dominion* **reign**
over the works of thy hands;
thou hast put all *things* under his feet:
All *sheep* **Flocks** and oxen,
yea, and the *beasts* **animals** of the field;

7 The *fowl* **birds** of the *air* **heavens**,
and the fish of the sea,
and whatsoever passeth through the paths of the seas.

PSALMS 7, 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 *may* the enemy pursue and overtake my soul;
yes, trample my life on the earth
and tabernacle my honor in the dust.
Selah.

6 Rise, O Yah Veh, in your wrath,
lift yourself;
because of the fury of my tribulators:
and waken for me the judgment you misvahed.

7 Thus the witnesses of the nations surround you;
so for their sakes, return in the heights.

8 Yah Veh pleads the cause of the people;
O Yah Veh, judge me according to my justness
and according to my integrity within me:
I beseech, cease the evil of the wicked;
and establish the just:
for the just Elohim proofs the hearts and reins.

10 My buckler is on Elohim,
who saves the straight in heart:

11 Elohim is a just judge
and El enrages every day.

12 If he turns not, he sharpens his sword;
he bends his bow and prepares
— prepares the instruments of death for him;
he heats his arrows for them who pursue.

14 Behold, he despoils with mischief
and conceives toil and births falsehood:
he digs a well
— digs and falls in the pit of ruin he made:
his toil returns on his own head
and his violence descends on his own scalp.

17 I spread hands to Yah Veh
according to his righteousness;
and psalm to the name of Yah Veh Elyon.

8 To His Eminence; On Gittith;
A Psalm by David.

1 O Yah Veh, our Adonay,
how mighty your name in all the earth;
who gives your majesty above the heavens.

2 From the mouth of infants and sucklings
you founded strength;
because of your tribulators
— to shabbathize the enemy and the avenger.

3 For I see your heavens,
the work of your fingers;
the moon and the stars,
you established!

4 What is man, that you remember him?
— and the son of humanity, that you visit him?

5 For you lessen him than Elohim
and crown him with honor and majesty;
to reign over the works of your hands
and put all under his feet:
flocks and oxen,
yes, and the animals of the field;
the birds of the heavens,
and the fish of the sea
and whatever passes through the paths of the seas.

PSALMS 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 O LORD Yah Veh our Lord Adonay,
how excellent is thy name in all the earth!

9 To the chief Musician His Eminence,
upon Muthlabben Muth Labben/Death of the Son,
A Psalm of David.
1 I will praise thee shall spread hands, O LORD Yah Veh,
with my whole heart;
2 I will shew forth shall scribe all thy marvellous works.
I will be glad shall cheer
and rejoice jump for joy in thee:
I will sing praise shall psalm to thy name,
O thou most High Elyon.
3 When mine enemies are turned back,
they shall fall falter
and perish destruct at thy presence face.
4 For thou hast maintained worked
my right judgment and my cause plea;
thou satest settlest in the throne judging right justness.
5 Thou hast rebuked the heathen goyim,
thou hast destroyed the wicked,
thou hast put out erased their name
for ever eternally and ever eternally.
6 O thou enemy,
destructions parched areas
are come to a perpetual end consummated in perpetuity:
and thou hast destroyed uprooted cities;
their memorial is perished destructeth with them.
7 But the LORD Yah Veh
shall endure for ever settle eternally:
he hath prepared his throne for judgment.
8 And he shall judge the world in righteousness justness,
he shall minister judgment plead the cause
to of the people nations in uprightness straightnesses.
9 The LORD Yah Veh
also will shall be a refuge secure loft for the oppressed,
a refuge secure loft in times of trouble tribulation.
10 And they that know thy name
will put their trust shall confide in thee:
for thou, LORD O Yah Veh,
hast not forsaken them that seek thee.
11 Sing praises Psalm to the LORD Yah Veh,
which dwelleth settleth in Zion Siyon:
declare tell among the people his doings exploits.
12 When he maketh inquisition searcheth for blood,
he remembereth them:
he forgetteth not the cry of the humble.
13 Have mercy upon me Grant me charism,
O LORD Yah Veh;
consider see my trouble humiliation
which I suffer of them that hate me,
thou that liftest me up from the gates portals of death:
14 That I may shew forth scribe all thy praise halal
in the gates portals of the daughter of Zion Siyon:
I will rejoice shall twirl in thy salvation.
15 The heathen goyim are sunk down
in the pit of ruin that they made worked:
in the net which they hid
is their own foot taken captured.
16 The LORD Yah Veh is known
by the judgment which he executeth worketh:
the wicked is snared
in the work deeds of his own hands palms.
Higgaion Meditation.
Selah.
17 The wicked shall be turned into hell sheol,
and all the nations goyim that forget God Elohim.
18 For the needy
shall not always be forgotten in perpetuity:
the expectation hope of the poor humble
shall not perish for ever destruct eternally.
19 Arise, O LORD Yah Veh;
let not man prevail strengthen:
let the heathen goyim be judged in thy sight at thy face.
20 Put them in fear awe, O LORD Yah Veh:
that the nations goyim
may know themselves to be but men.
Selah.

PSALMS 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 O Yah Veh our Adonay,
how excellent your name in all the earth!

9 To His Eminence;
On Muth Labben/Death of the Son;
A Psalm by David.
1 I spread hands, O Yah Veh,
with my whole heart;
2 I scribe all your marvellous works;
I cheer and jump for joy in you;
I psalm to your name, O you Elyon.
3 When my enemies return
they falter and destruct at your face.
4 For you work my judgment and my plea;
you settle in the throne judging justness;
5 you rebuke the goyim;
you destroy the wicked;
you erase their name eternally and eternally.
6 O you enemy,
your parched areas consummate in perpetuity;
and the cities you uprooted
— their memorial destructs with them.
7 And Yah Veh settles eternal;
he prepares his throne for judgment:
8 he judges the world in justness;
he pleads the cause of the nations in straightnesses.
9 Yah Veh is a secure loft for the oppressed
— a secure loft in times of tribulation:
10 and they who know your name confide in you;
for you forsake not them who seek you,
O Yah Veh.
11 Psalm to Yah Veh who settles in Siyon;
tell his exploits among the people:
12 he remembers them who search for blood;
he forgets not the cry of the humble.
13 Grant me charism, O Yah Veh;
see my humiliation of them who hate me
— you who lift me from the portals of death;
14 so that I scribe all your halal
in the portals of the daughter of Siyon:
I twirl in your salvation.
15 The goyim sink in the pit of ruin they worked;
— capture their foot in the net they hid.
16 Yah Veh is known by the judgment he works;
the wicked is snared in the deeds of his palms.
Meditation.
Selah.
17 The wicked turn to sheol
with all the goyim who forget Elohim.
18 Neither are the needy forgotten in perpetuity;
nor the hope of the humble destructs eternally.
19 Rise, O Yah Veh; strengthen not man:
judge the goyim at your face.
20 Put them in awe, O Yah Veh,
that the goyim know they are but men.
Selah.

PSALMS 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 Why standest thou afar off, O LORD Yah Veh?
 why *hidest* **concealest** thou thyself
 in times of *trouble* **tribulation**?
 2 The wicked in his *pride* **pomp**
doth persecute **hotly pursueth** the *poor* **humble**:
 let them be *taken* **grabbed** in the *devices* **intrigue**
 that they have *imagined* **machinated**.
 3 For the wicked
boasteth **halaleth** of his *heart's* **soul's** desire,
 and blesseth the *covetous* **greedy**,
 whom *the LORD* **abhorreth** **Yah Veh scorneth**.
 4 The wicked,
 through *the pride of his countenance* **lifted nostrils**,
 will **shall** not seek *after* **God**:
 God **Elohim** is not in all his *thoughts* **intrigues**.
 5 His ways are *always* **grievous** **writh** at all times;
 thy judgments are *far above* **in the heights**
 out of his sight:
 as for all his *enemies* **tribulators**, he puffeth at them.
 6 He hath said in his heart, I shall not *be moved* **totter**:
generation to generation
 for I shall never be in *adversity* **evil**.
 7 His mouth is full of *cursing* **oaths**
 and *deceit* **deceits** and fraud:
 under his tongue is *mischief* **toil** and *vanity* **mischief**.
 8 He *sitteth* **settlet**
 in the *lurking places* **lurks** of the *villages* **courts**:
 in the *secret places* **coverts**
doth he murder **slaughtereth** the innocent:
 his eyes are *privily set* **hath he hid**
against **from** the *poor* **unfortunate**.
 9 He *lieth in wait* **secretly lurketh** in the **coverts**
 as a lion in his *den* **sukkoth/brush arbor**:
 he *lieth in wait* **lurketh** to catch the *poor* **humble**:
 he *doth catch* **catcheth** the *poor* **humble**,
 when he draweth him into his net.
 10 He *croucheth* **crusheth**,
 and *humbleth* **prostrateth** *himself*,
 that the *poor* **army of the unfortunates**
 may fall by his *strong ones* **mighty**.
 11 He hath said in his heart, *God* **El** hath forgotten:
 he hideth his face;
 he *will never* **shall not** see it **in perpetuity**.
 12 Arise, O LORD **Yah Veh**;
 O *God* **El**, lift up thine hand: forget not the humble.
 13 Wherefore doth the wicked
contemn **God** **scorn Elohim**?
 he hath said in his heart,
 Thou *wilt* **shalt** not require it.
 14 Thou hast seen it;
 for thou *beholdest* **scannest**
mischief **toil** and *spite* **vexation**,
 to *requite it with* **give into** thy hand:
 the *poor* **unfortunate**
committeth **himself is left** unto thee;
 thou art the helper of the *fatherless* **orphan**.
 15 Break thou the arm of the wicked and the *evil man*:
 seek out his wickedness till thou find none.
 16 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** is *King* **Sovereign**
for ever **eternally** and *ever* **eternally**:
 the *heathen* are *perished* **goyim destruct** out of his land.
 17 *LORD* **O Yah Veh**,
 thou hast heard the desire of the humble:
 thou *wilt* **shalt** prepare their heart,
 thou *wilt cause* **shalt hearken** thine ear to *hear*:
 18 To judge the *fatherless* **orphan** and the oppressed,
 that the man of the earth
 may *no more oppress* **not terrify** again.

11 To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
 A Psalm of David.

1 In the LORD put I my trust **Yah Veh I seek refuge**:
 how say ye to my soul,
Flee **Wander** as a bird to your mountain?
 2 For, *lo* **behold**, the wicked bend their bow,
 they *make ready* **prepare** their arrow upon the *string* **cord**,
 that they may *privily* **in darkness**
 shoot at the *upright* **straight** in heart.

PSALMS 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

10 Why stand you afar off, O Yah Veh?
 Why conceal yourself in times of tribulation?
 2 The pompous wicked hotly pursue the humble;
 — grab them in the intrigue they machinate:
 3 because the wicked halal the desire of his soul
 and bless the greedy whom Yah Veh scorns.
 4 The wicked, through lifted nostrils, seek not:
 Elohim is not! are all his intrigues:
 5 his ways writh at all times.
 Your judgments in the heights are from his sight;
 as for all his tribulators, he puffs at them.
 6 He says in his heart,
 I totter not from generation to generation
 — never in evil.
 7 His mouth is full of oaths and deceits and fraud;
 under his tongue is toil and mischief;
 8 he settles in the lurks of the courts;
 he slaughters the innocent in the coverts;
 he hides his eyes from the unfortunate:
 9 he lurks in the coverts
 as a lion in his sukkoth/brush arbor;
 he lurks to catch the humble;
 he catches the humble
 drawing him into his net.
 10 He crushes; he prostrates;
 his mighty fells the army of the unfortunates.
 11 He says in his heart, El forgets!
 he hides his face; he sees it not in perpetuity.
 12 Rise, O Yah Veh; O El, lift your hand:
 forget not the humble.
 13 The wicked — why scorn they Elohim?
 He says in his heart, Not required!
 14 You see; for you scan toil and vexation,
 they give into your hand;
 they leave the unfortunate to you
 you — the helper of the orphan.
 15 Break the arm of the wicked and the evil;
 seek out his wickedness until you find none.
 16 Yah Veh is Sovereign eternally and eternally;
 the goyim destruct from his land.
 17 O Yah Veh,
 you hear the desire of the humble;
 you prepare their heart;
 you hearken your ear;
 18 to judge the orphan and the oppressed
 that the man of the earth not terrify again.

11 To His Eminence; By David.

1 In Yah Veh I seek refuge;
 how say you to my soul,
 Wander as a bird to your mountain?
 2 For, behold, the wicked bend their bow;
 they prepare their arrow on the cord;
 and in the darkness
 shoot at the straight in heart.

PSALMS 11—14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 If the foundations be destroyed **demolish**,
what can the *righteous* **just** do?
4 The **LORD Yah Veh** is in his holy **temple manse**,
the **LORD'S Yah Veh's** throne is in **heaven the heavens**:
his eyes *behold* **see**, his eyelids *try* **proof**,
the *children* **sons** of *men* **humanity**.
5 The **LORD trieth Yah Veh proofeth** the *righteous* **just**:
but the wicked and him that loveth violence
his soul hateth.
6 Upon the wicked he shall rain snares,
fire and *brimstone* **sulphur**,
and an *horrible tempest* a **raging wind/spirit**:
this shall be the portion — **the allotment** of their cup.
7 For the *righteous* **LORD just Yah Veh**
loveth *righteousness* **justness**;
his *countenance* **face**
doth behold **seeth** the *upright* **straight**.

12

To the *chief Musician* **His Eminence**,
upon *Sheminith* **the Octave**,
A Psalm of David.
1 Help **Save**, **LORD O Yah Veh**;
for the *godly man* **ceaseth** **merciéd** **have** **deceased**;
for the *faithful* **fail** **trustworthy** **have** **disappeared**
from among the *children* **sons** of *men* **humanity**.
2 They *speak* **word** every *one* **man**
vanity with his *neighbour* **friend**:
with *flattering* lips **that smooth it over**
and with a *double heart* **heart to heart**
do they speak **word**.
3 The **LORD Yah Veh** shall cut off
all *flattering* lips **that smooth it over**,
and the tongue
that *speakech* **proud things** **wordeth** **greatnesses**:
Who have said,
With our tongue *will* **shall** we prevail **mightily**;
our lips are our own: who is *lord* **adoni** over us?
5 For the *oppression* **devastation** of the *poor* **humble**,
for the *sighing* **shrieking** of the needy,
now *will* **shall** I arise, saith the **LORD Yah Veh**;
I *will* **shall** set him in safety from him that puffeth at him.
6 The *words* **sayings** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
are pure *words* **sayings**:
as silver *tried* **refined** in a furnace of earth,
purified **seven times** **refined** **sevenfold**.
7 Thou shalt *keep* **guard** them, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
thou shalt *preserve* **them** **guard us** from this generation
for ever **eternally**.
8 The wicked walk *on every side* **round about**,
when the *vilest men* **violent sons** of **humanity**
are exalted.

13

To the *chief Musician* **His Eminence**,
A Psalm of David.
1 How long *wilt* **shalt** thou forget me, O **LORD Yah Veh**?
for ever **in perpetuity**?
how long *wilt* **shalt** thou hide thy face from me?
2 How long shall I *take* **set** counsel in my soul,
having *sorrow* **grief** in my heart daily?
how long shall mine enemy *be* **exalted** **loft** over me?
3 Consider **Look** and *hear* **answer** me,
O **LORD Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**:
lighten mine eyes, lest I sleep *the sleep of* **in** death;
Lest mine enemy say, I have prevailed against him;
and *those that trouble me* **rejoice** **my tribulators** **twirl**
when I *am* **moved** **totter**.
5 But I have *trusted* **confided** in thy mercy;
my heart shall *rejoice* **twirl** in thy salvation.
6 I *will* **shall** sing unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
because he hath dealt *bountifully* with me.

14

To the *chief Musician* **His Eminence**,
A Psalm of David.
1 The fool hath said in his heart,
There is no God **Elohim is not**.
They are *corrupt* **have** **ruined**,
they have done **abominable works** — **abhorrent exploits**,
there is none that *doeth* **worketh** good.

PSALMS 11—14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 If the foundations demolish,
what *are* the just to do?
4 Yah Veh is in his holy manse,
the throne of Yah Veh is in the heavens;
his eyes see;
his eyelids proof the sons of humanity.
5 Yah Veh proofs the just;
and the wicked who love violence
his soul hates.
6 On the wicked he rains snares
— fire and sulphur and a raging wind/spirit;
— the allotment of their cup.
7 For just Yah Veh loves justness;
his face sees the straight.

12

To His Eminence; On the Octave;
A Psalm by David.
1 Save, O Yah Veh;
for the merciéd de cease;
for the trustworthy disappear
from among the sons of humanity.
2 Every man words vanity with his friend;
with lips that smooth it over
they word heart to heart.
3 Yah Veh cuts off all lips that smooth it over
and the tongue that words greatnesses:
who say,
With our tongue we prevail mightily;
our lips are our own; who is adoni over us?
5 For the devastation of the humble,
for the shrieking of the needy,
I now rise, says Yah Veh;
I set him in safety from him who puffs at him.
6 The sayings of Yah Veh are pure sayings;
as silver refined in a furnace of earth
— refined sevenfold.
7 Guard them, O Yah Veh,
guard us from this generation eternally.
8 The wicked walk all around,
when the violent sons of humanity are exalted.

13

To His Eminence; A Psalm by David.
1 Until when forget you me, O Yah Veh?
In perpetuity?
Until when hide you your face from me?
Until when set I counsel in my soul
— having grief in my heart daily?
Until when lofts my enemy over me?
3 Look and answer me, O Yah Veh my Elohim!
Light my eyes, lest I sleep in death;
lest my enemy say, I prevailed against him;
and my tribulators twirl when I totter.
5 And I — I confide in your mercy;
my heart twirls in your salvation.
6 I sing to Yah Veh,
because he deals with me.

14

To His Eminence; By David.
1 The fool, in his heart, says, No Elohim!
They ruin; — abhorrent exploits;
none works good.

PSALMS 14—16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 The LORD **Yah Veh** looked down from *heaven* **the heavens**
upon the *children* **sons of men** **humanity**,
to see if there were any
that *did understand* **comprehend**,
and seek *God* **Elohim**.
3 They are all *gone* **turned** aside,
they are *all together* **become filthy** **muddled**:
there is none that *doeth* **worketh** good, no, not one.
4 Have all the *workers* **doers of iniquity** **mischief**
no knowledge **not known**?
who eat up my people as they eat bread,
and call not upon the LORD **Yah Veh**.
5 *There were they in great fear* **In dreading, they dreaded**:
for *God* **Elohim** is in the generation of the *righteous* **just**.
6 Ye have shamed the counsel of the *poor* **humble**,
because the LORD **Yah Veh** is his refuge.
7 *Oh* **Who giveth** that the salvation of *Israel* **Yisra El**
were *come out of Zion* **Siyon**!
when the LORD **Yah Veh**
bringeth back **returneth** the captivity of his people,
Jacob **Yaaqov** shall *rejoice* **twirl**,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** shall be *glad* **cheer**.

15

A Psalm of David.

1 LORD **Yah Veh**,
who shall *abide* **sojourn** in thy *tabernacle* **tent**?
who shall *dwell* **tabernacle** in thy holy *hill* **mountain**?
2 He that walketh *uprightly* **integriously**,
and *worketh righteousness* **doeth justness**,
and *speaketh* **wordeth** the truth in his heart.
3 He that *backbiteth* **steppeth** not with his tongue,
nor *doeth* **worketh** evil to his *neighbour* **friend**,
nor *taketh up* **lifteth** a reproach against his neighbour.
4 In whose eyes
a *vile person* **spurner** is *contemned* **despised**;
but he honoureth them that *fear the LORD* **awe Yah Veh**.
He that *sweareth* **oatheth** to *his own hurt* **vilify**,
and changeth not.
5 He that *putteth* **giveth** not *out his money* **silver** to usury,
nor *taketh reward* **bribe** against the innocent.
He that *doeth* **worketh** these *things*
shall *never be moved* **not totter** **eternally**.

16

Michtam **Poem** of David.

1 Preserve **Guard** me, O *God* **El**:
for in thee *do I put my trust* **I seek refuge**.
2 O my soul, thou hast said unto the LORD **Yah Veh**,
Thou art my *Lord* **Adonay**:
my goodness *extendeth* not to thee;
3 But to the *saints* **holy** that are in the earth,
and to the *excellent* **mighty**, in whom is all my delight.
4 Their *sorrows* **contortions** shall be *multiplied* **abound**
that hasten after another *god*:
their *drink offerings* **libations** of blood
will shall I not *offer* **libate**,
nor *take up* **lift** their names into my lips.
5 The LORD **Yah Veh** is the portion
of mine *inheritance* **allotment** and of my cup:
thou *maintainest* **upholdest** my *lot* **pebble**.
6 The lines are fallen unto me in *pleasant places* **pleasure**;
yea, I have a *goodly heritage* **glorious inheritance**.
7 I *will shall* **bless** the LORD **Yah Veh**
who hath *given* **counselled** me *counsel*:
my reins also *instruct* **discipline** me in the night *seasons*.
8 I have set the LORD **Yah Veh**
always before **continually in front of** me:
because he is at my right *hand*,
I shall not be *moved* **totter**.
9 Therefore my heart *is glad* **cheereth**,
and my *glory* **rejoiceth** **honour twirleth**:
my flesh also shall *rest in hope* **tabernacle confidently**.
10 For thou *wilt* **shalt** not *leave* **forsake** my soul in *hell* **sheol**;
neither *wilt* **shalt** thou *suffer* **give**
thine Holy **thy Mercied** One to see *corruption* **the pit of ruin**.
11 Thou *wilt shew me* **shalt have me know** the path of life:
in at thy presence **face**
is fulness of joy **satisfying cheerfulness**;
at thy right hand
there are pleasures *for evermore* **in perpetuity**.

PSALMS 14—16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 Yah Veh, from the heavens,
looks down on the sons of humanity,
to see if there is one who comprehends
and seeks Elohim.
3 They all turn aside,
together they muddle;
no one works good — no, not one.
4 Have all doing mischief not known?
— who eat my people as they eat bread
— who call not on Yah Veh.
5 In dreading, they dread;
for Elohim is in the generation of the just.
6 You shame the counsel of the humble,
because Yah Veh is his refuge.
7 Who gives the salvation of Yisra El from Siyon?
When Yah Veh returns the captivity of his people.
Twirl, O Yaaqov! Cheer, O Yisra El!

15

A Psalm by David.

1 Yah Veh, Who sojourns in your tent?
Who tabernacles in your holy mountain?
2 He who walks integriously and does justness
and words the truth in his heart.
3 He neither steps with his tongue
nor works evil to his friend
nor lifts a reproach against his neighbour.
4 His eyes despise a spurner
but honor them who awe Yah Veh.
5 He who oaths to villify, and changes not;
he neither gives his silver to usury
nor takes bribe against the innocent;
he who works these totters not eternally.

16

Poem by David.

1 Guard me, O El; for in you I seek refuge.
2 You say to Yah Veh — you, my Adonay
my goodness is not to you;
3 but to the holy in the earth;
and to the mighty in whom is all my delight.
4 Their contortions abound who hasten after another;
I neither libate their libations of blood;
nor lift their names to my lips.
5 Yah Veh is the portion
of my allotment and of my cup;
you uphold my pebble:
6 the lines fall to me in pleasure;
yes, I have a glorious inheritance.
7 I bless Yah Veh who counsels me;
also in the night my reins discipline me:
8 I set Yah Veh continually in front of me;
because he is at my right, I totter not:
9 so my heart cheers and my honor twirls;
and my flesh tabernacles confidently.
10 For you neither forsake my soul in sheol;
nor give your Mercied One to see the pit of ruin:
11 you have me know the path of life;
at your face is satisfying cheerfulness;
at your right are pleasures in perpetuity.

PSALMS 17, 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

17

A Prayer of David.

1 Hear *the right* **justness**, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
attend **hearken** unto my *cry* **shouting**,
give ear **hearken** unto my prayer,
that goeth not out of feigned lips **of lips without deceit**.

2 Let my *sentence* **judgment**
 come forth from thy *presence* **face**;
 let thine eyes *behold* **see**
the things **those** that are *equal* **in straightnesses**.

3 Thou hast *proved* **proofed** mine heart;
 thou hast visited me in the night;
 thou hast *tried* **refined** me,
 and shalt find *nothing* **naught**;
 I am *purposed* **have plotted**
 that my mouth shall not transgress.

4 Concerning the *works* **deeds** of *men* **humanity**,
 by the word of thy lips
 I have *kept* **guarded** me from the paths of the destroyer.

5 *Hold up* **Uphold** my *goings* **steps** in thy paths,
 that my *footsteps* **slip** **steps totter** not.

6 I have called upon thee,
 for thou *wilt hear* **shalt answer** me, O **God El**:
incline **spread** thine ear unto me,
 and *hear* my *speech* **sayings**.

7 *Shew* **Distinguish** thy marvellous *lovingkindness* **mercy**,
 O thou that savest by thy *right hand*
 them which *put their trust in thee* **seek refuge**
 from those that *rise up against them*.

8 *Keep* **Guard** me as the *apple* **pupil**
 — **the daughter** of the eye,
 hide me under the shadow of thy wings,

9 From **the face of** the wicked that *oppress* **ravage** me,
 from my *deadly* **soul** enemies,
 who *compass* **surround** me *about*.

10 They are *inclosed* **shut** in their own fat:
 with their mouth they *speak proudly* **word pompously**.

11 They have now *compassed* **surrounded** us
 in our steps:
 they have set their eyes
bowing down **spreading** to the earth;

12 Like as a lion that *is greedy of* **yearning for** his prey,
 and as *it were* a *young lion* **a whelp**
lurking **settling** in *secret places* **coverts**.

13 Arise, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
disappoint him **anticipate his face**,
cast him down **knuckle him under**:
deliver **slip away** my soul from the wicked,
 which is thy sword:

14 From men which are thy hand, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
 from **transcient** men *of the world*,
 which have their *portion* **allotment** in this life,
 and whose belly
 thou fillest with thy *hid* **treasured** treasure:
they are full of children **their sons satiate**,
 and leave the *rest of their substance* **remainder**
 to their *babes* **infants**.

15 As for me,
 I *will behold* **shall see** thy face in *righteousness* **justness**:
 I shall be satisfied, when I awake,
 with thy *likeness* **manifestation**.

18

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,

A Psalm of David, the servant of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
 who *spake* **worded** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
 the words of this song

in the day that the **LORD** *delivered* **Yah Veh** rescued him
 from the *hand* **palm** of all his enemies,
 and from the hand of *Saul* **Shaul**:

And he said,

1 I *will love* **shall mercy** thee,
 O **LORD Yah Veh**, my strength.

2 *The* **LORD Yah Veh** is my rock,
 and my *fortress* **stronghold**, and my *deliverer* **escape**;
 my *God* **El**, my *strength* **rock**,
 in whom I *will trust* **seek refuge**;
 my buckler, and the horn of my salvation,
 and my *high tower* **secure loft**.

PSALMS 17, 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

17

A Prayer by David.

1 Hear justness, O Yah Veh;
 hearken to my shouting:
 hearken to my prayer from lips without deceit.

2 My judgment comes from your face;
 your eyes see them who are in straightnesses;
 you proof my heart;
 you visit me in the night;
 you refine me; you find naught;
 I plot that my mouth not transgress.

4 Concerning the deeds of humanity,
 by the word of your lips
 I guard me from the paths of the destroyer.

5 Uphold my steps in your paths
 that my steps totter not.

6 I — I call you, for you answer me, O El;
 spread your ear to me and my sayings:
 distinguish your marvellous mercy,
 O you,
 who by your right saves them who seek refuge
 from those who rise.

8 Guard me as the pupil — the daughter of the eye,
 hide me under the shadow of your wings
 from the face of the wicked who ravage me
 — from my soul enemies who surround me.

10 They shut their fat;
 their mouth words pompously:
 they surround our steps;
 they set their eyes spreading to the earth:
 as as a lion yearning for his prey
 — as a whelp settling in the coverts.

13 Rise, O Yah Veh,
 anticipate his face; knuckle him under:
 slip my soul from the wicked by your sword
 — from men by your hand, O Yah Veh
 — from transient men whose allotment is this life
 — in whose belly you treasured treasure:
 their sons satiate
 and leave the remainder to their infants.

15 As for me, I see your face in justness;
 I satisfy when I waken with your manifestation.

18

To His Eminence;

By David the servant of Yah Veh:
 who worded to Yah Veh the words of this song
 in the day Yah Veh rescued him
 from the palm of his enemies,
 and from the hand of Shaul:
 and he says,

1 I mercy you, O Yah Veh, my strength!
 2 Yah Veh is my rock
 and my stronghold and my escape;
 my El, my rock in whom I seek refuge;
 my buckler and the horn of my salvation;
 my secure loft.

PSALM 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 I will **shall** call upon the **LORD Yah Veh**,
who is worthy to be praised — **The Halaed One**:
so shall I be saved from mine enemies.

4 The sorrows **cords** of death
compassed **surrounded** me,
and the floods **wadies** of *ungodly men* **Beli Yaal**
made me afraid **frightened** me.

5 The sorrows **cords** of hell **sheol**
compassed **surrounded** me about:
the snares of death *prevented* **anticipated** me.

6 In my *distress* **tribulation**
I called upon the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and cried unto my **God Elohim**:
he heard my voice out of his *temple* **manse**,
and my cry came *before him* **at his face**,
even into his ears.

7 Then the earth shook and *trembled* **quaked**;
the foundations also of the *hills* **mountains**
moved **quaked** and were shaken,
because he was *wroth* **inflamed**.

8 There *went up* **ascended** a smoke out of his nostrils,
and fire out of his mouth *devoured* **consumed**:
coals were *kindled* **burnt** by it.

9 He *bowed* **spread** the heavens also,
and *came down* **descended**:
and **dripping** darkness was under his feet.

10 And he rode upon a cherub, and *did fly* **flew**:
yea, he *did fly* **flew** upon the wings of the wind.
He *made set* darkness his *secret place* **covert**;
his *pavilion* **sukkoth/brush arbor** round about him
were dark waters
and thick clouds of the *skies* **vapours**.

12 At the *brightness* **brilliance** that was *before in front of* him
his thick clouds passed, hail *stones* and coals of fire.

13 The **LORD Yah Veh** also thundered in the heavens,
and the *Highest* **Elyon** gave his voice;
hail *stones* and coals of fire.

14 Yea, he sent out his arrows, and scattered them;
and he shot out lightnings,
and *discomfited* **scattered** them.

15 Then the *channels* **reservoirs** of waters were seen,
and the foundations of the world
were *discovered* **exposed** at thy rebuke,
O **LORD Yah Veh**,
at the *blast* **breath**
of the *breath* **wind/spirit** of thy nostrils.

16 He sent from *above* **the heights**,
he took me, he drew me out of many waters.

17 He *delivered* **rescued** me from my strong enemy,
and from them which hated me:
for they were *too strong for me* **stronger than I**.
They *prevented* **anticipated** me
in the day of my calamity:
but the **LORD Yah Veh** was my *stay* **support**.

19 He brought me forth also into a *large place* **an expanse**;
he *delivered* **rescued** me, because he delighted in me.

20 The **LORD** rewarded **Yah Veh dealt** me
according to my *righteousness* **justness**;
according to the *cleanness* **purity** of my hands
hath he *recompensed* **returned to** me.

21 For I have *kept* **guarded**
the ways of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and have not **done** wickedly
departed from **against** my **God Elohim**.

22 For all his judgments were *before in front of* me,
and I did not *put away* **turn aside** his statutes from me.

23 I was also *upright before* **integrity in front of** him,
and I *kept* **guarded** myself
from *mine iniquity* **my perversity**.

24 Therefore
hath the **LORD** *recompensed* **Yah Veh returned to** me
according to my *righteousness* **justness**,
according to the *cleanness* **purity** of my hands
in his *eyesight* **eyes**.

25 With the *merciful* **mercied**,
thou wilt *shew thyself* **merciful**;
with an *upright man* **integrity mighty**,
thou wilt *shew thyself* **upright integrity**;

PSALM 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 I call Yah Veh, The Halaed One:
— saved from my enemies.

4 The cords of death surround me;
the wadies of Beli Yaal frighten me;
the cords of sheol surround me;
the snares of death anticipate me.

6 In my tribulation
I call on Yah Veh and cry to my Elohim;
he hears my voice from his manse,
and my cry comes at his face — to his ears.

7 And the earth shakes and quakes;
the foundations of the mountains quake and shake
because he *is* inflamed.

8 A smoke ascends from his nostrils
and fire from his mouth consumes
— it burns coals.

9 And he spreads the heavens, and descends;
dripping darkness *is* under his feet:
he rides on a cherub and flies;
yes, he flies on the wings of the wind:
he sets darkness for his covert;
his sukkoth/brush arbor surrounds him
— dark waters and thick clouds of vapours:
at the brilliance in front of him
his thick clouds pass — hail and coals of fire.

13 Yah Veh thunders in the heavens;
Elyon gives his voice — hail and coals of fire:
yes, he sends his arrows and scatters them;
he shoots lightnings and agitates them.

15 And the reservoirs of waters were seen,
and exposed are the foundations of the world
at your rebuke, O Yah Veh
— at the breath of the wind/spirit of your nostrils.

16 He sends from the heights;
he takes me; he draws me from many waters:
he rescues me from my strong enemy
— from them who hate me;
for they are stronger than I.

18 They anticipate me in the day of my calamity;
and Yah Veh is my support.

19 He brings me to an expanse;
he rescues me, because he delights in me:
Yah Veh deals according to my justness;
— returns according to the purity of my hands:
for I guard the ways of Yah Veh
— not done wickedly against my Elohim.

22 For all his judgments *are* in front of me
and I turn not aside his statutes from me:
and I am integrity in front of him
and I guard myself from my perversity:
and Yah Veh returns to me
according to my justness
— according to the purity of my hands in his eyes.

25 With the mercied, merciful;
with the mighty integrity, integrity;

PSALMS 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

26 With the pure,
 thou wilt shew thyself pure purified;
 and with the froward **pervert**,
 thou wilt shew thyself froward a wrestler.

27 For thou wilt **shalt** save the *afflicted* **humble** people;
but wilt *bring down high looks* **shalt abase lofted eyes.**

28 For thou wilt **shalt** light my **lamp**:
 the LORD Yah Veh my God Elohim
 will enlighten shall illuminate my darkness.

29 For by thee I have run through a troop;
and by my *God Elohim* have I leaped over a wall.

30 As for *God EL*, his way is **perfect integrious**:
the word **saying** of the *LORD Yah Veh* is **tried refined**:
he is a buckler to all those that *trust* **seek refuge** in him.

31 For who is *God Elohah*
 save the LORD except Yah Veh?
 or who is a rock
 save except our God Elohim?

32 *It is God that EL* girdeth me with *strength* **valour**,
and *maketh giveth* my way **perfect integrious**.

33 He *maketh placeth* my feet *like as hinds' feet*,
and *setteth standeth* me upon my *high places* **bamahs**.

34 He teacheth my hands to war,
so that a bow of steel is *broken bent* by mine arms.

35 Thou hast also given me
 the *shield* **buckler** of thy salvation:
 and thy right *hand* hath holden me *up*,
 and thy *gentleness* **humbleness**
 hath made me *great* **abound**.

36 Thou hast enlarged my *steps* **paces** under me,
that my *feet did not slip* **ankles wavered not**.

37 I have pursued mine enemies, and overtaken them:
 neither did I turn again returned I
 till they were consumed finished off.

38 I have *wounded struck* them
 that they were not able to rise:
 they are fallen under my feet.

39 For thou hast girded me
 with *strength* **valour** unto the *battle* **war**:
 thou hast *subdued knuckled* under me
 those that *rose up against* me.

40 Thou hast also given me the necks of mine enemies;
that I might *destroy exterminate* them that hate me.

41 They cried, but there was *none to save them no savior*:
even unto the *LORD Yah Veh*, but he answered them not.

42 Then *did I beat I pulverized* them *small* as the dust
 before at the face of the wind:
 I *did cast poured* them out
 as the *dirt mire* in the *streets* **outways**.

43 Thou hast *delivered slipped* me **away**
 from the strivings of the people;
 and thou hast *made set* me
 the head of the *heathen goyim*:
 a people *whom* I have not known shall serve me.

44 As soon as they hear of me **At the hearing of the ear**,
 they shall *obey hearken unto* me:
 the *sons of* strangers
 shall *submit themselves unto* **disavow** me.

45 The *sons of* strangers shall *fade away wither*,
and *be afraid tremble* out of their *close places* **borders**.

46 *The LORD Yah Veh* liveth; and blessed be my rock;
and let the *God Elohim* of my salvation be *exalted lofted*.

47 *It is God that avengeth me EL* **giveth me vengeance**,
and subdueth the people under me.

48 He *delivereth me slippeth me away* from mine enemies:
yea, thou liftest me up above those that *rise up against* me:
 thou hast *delivered rescued* me
 from the *violent man* **man of violence**.

49 Therefore
 will I give thanks shall I spread hands unto thee,
 O *LORD Yah Veh*, among the *heathen goyim*,
 and *sing praises psalm* unto thy name.

50 *Great deliverance giveth he He* **greateneth salvation**
 to his *king* **sovereign**;
 and *sheweth worketh* mercy to his anointed,
 to David, and to his seed *for evermore* **eternally**.

PSALMS 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

26 with the pure, purified;
with the pervert, a wrestler.

27 For you save the humble people
and abase the lofted eye.

28 For you — you light my lamp;
Yah Veh my Elohim illuminates my darkness.

29 For by you, I run a troop;
and by Elohim I leap a wall.

30 El, his way *is* integrious;
the saying of Yah Veh *is* refined:
he is a buckler to all who seek refuge in him.

31 For who *is* Elohah, except Yah Veh?
Who is a rock, except our Elohim?

32 El girts me with valour
and gives my way integrious;
He places my feet as the hinds
and stands me on my bamahs;
he teaches my hands to war
so my arms bend a bow of steel.

35 You give me the buckler of your salvation;
your right upholds me;
and your humbleness abounds me:
you enlarge my paces under me;
my ankles waver not.

37 I pursue my enemies, and overtake them;
I return not until they are finished off:
I strike them who are not able to rise;
they fall under my feet.

39 For you girt me with valour to the war;
you knuckle them under who rise:
you give me the necks of my enemies;
to exterminate them who hate me.

41 They cry, and there is no savior;
— to Yah Veh, but he answers them not.
And I purlverize them as the dust
at the face of the wind;
I pour them out as mire in the outways.

43 You slip me away
from the strivings of the people;
and you set me at the head of the goyim:
a people I know not serve me.

44 At the hearing of the ear, they hearken to me;
the sons of strangers disavow me:
the sons of strangers wither,
and tremble from their borders.

46 Yah Veh lives; blessed be my rock;
and lofted be the Elohim of my salvation.
El gives me vengeance
— subdues all the people under me.
He slips me away from my enemies;
yes, you lift me above them who rise;
you rescue me from the man of violence.

49 So I spread hands to you,
O Yah Veh, among the goyim,
and psalm to your name.

50 He greatens salvation to his sovereign;
and works mercy to his anointed
— to David, and to his seed eternally.

PSALMS 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
A Psalm of David.

1 The heavens
declare **scribe** the glory **honour** of God **El**;
and the *firmament* **expanse**
sheweth **telleth** his handywork.
2 Day unto day *uttereth speech* **gusheth sayings**,
and night unto night sheweth knowledge.
3 There is no *speech* **saying** nor *language* **word**,
where their voice is not heard.
4 Their line is gone out through all the earth,
and their *words* **utterances** to the end of the world.
In them hath he set a *tabernacle* **tent** for the sun,
5 Which is as a *bridegroom* **groom**
coming out of his *chamber* **canopy**,
and rejoiceth as a *strong man* **the mighty**
to run a *race* **the path**.
6 His *going forth* **source**
is from the end of the *heaven* **heavens**.
and his circuit
unto the ends of it:
and there is *nothing* **naught** hid from the heat *thereof*.
7 The *law* **torah** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
is perfect,
converting **restoring** the soul:
the *testimony* **witness** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
is *sure* **trustworthy**,
making wise **enwisening** the *simple* **gullible**.
8 The *statutes* **precepts** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
are *right* **straight**,
rejoicing **cheering** the heart:
the *commandment* **misvah** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
is pure,
enlightening the eyes.
9 The *fear* **awe** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
is *clean* **pure**,
enduring for ever **standing eternally**:
the judgments of the **LORD Yah Veh**
are *true* **truth**;
and *righteous* **justified** altogether.
10 More to be desired *are they* than gold,
yea, than much *fine* **pure** gold:
sweeter also than honey
and **the droppings** of the honeycomb.
11 Moreover by them is thy servant *warned* **enlightened**:
and in *keeping of* **guarding** them
there is great *reward* **final result**.
12 Who *can understand* **discerneth**
is **inadvertent** errors?
cleanse **exonerate** thou me from *secret faults* **the hidden**.
13 *Keep back* **Spare** thy servant also
from *presumptuous sins* **arrogance**;
let them not *have dominion* **reign** over me:
then shall I be *upright* **integrious**,
and I shall be *innocent* **exonerated**
from the great *transgression* **rebellion**.
14 Let the *words* **sayings** of my mouth,
and the meditation of my heart,
be *acceptable in thy sight* **pleasing at thy face**,
O **LORD Yah Veh**, my *strength* **rock**, and my redeemer.

20

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
A Psalm of David.

1 The **LORD** hear **Yah Veh** answereth thee
in the day of *trouble* **tribulation**;
the name of the *God* **Elohim** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
defend **lofteth** thee;
2 *Send* **He sendeth** thee help from the *sanctuary* **holies**,
and *strengthen* **supporteth** thee out of *Zion* **Siyon**;
3 *Remember* **He remembereth** all thy offerings,
and accept **fatteneth** thy *burnt sacrifice* **holocausts**;
Selah.
4 *Grant* **He giveth** thee according to thine own heart,
and *fulfil* **fulfilleth** all thy counsel.
5 We will rejoice **shall shout** in thy salvation,
and in the name of our *God* **Elohim**
we will set up **shall raise** our banners:
the **LORD Yah Veh** *fulfil* **fulfilleth** all thy *petitions* **requests**.

PSALMS 19, 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

19

To His Eminence; A Psalm by David.

1 The heavens scribe the honor of El;
and the expanse tells his handiwork.
2 Day to day gushes sayings
and night to night shows knowledge.
3 There is neither saying nor word
where their voice is not heard.
4 Their line goes throughout all the earth
and their utterances to the end of the world.
In them he sets a tent for the sun;
5 and he, as a groom coming from his canopy;
rejoices as the mighty to run the path.
6 His source is from the end of the heavens
and his circuit to the ends thereof;
and naught is hid from the heat.
7 The torah of Yah Veh is perfect,
restoring the soul;
the witness of Yah Veh is trustworthy,
enwisening the gullible;
8 the precepts of Yah Veh are straight,
cheering the heart;
the misvah of Yah Veh is pure,
enlightening the eyes;
9 the awe of Yah Veh is pure,
standing eternally;
the judgments of Yah Veh are truth,
justified altogether.
10 More to be desired than gold,
yes, than much pure gold;
and sweeter than honey
and the droppings of the honeycomb.
11 Also by them your servant enlightens;
and in guarding them is a great final result.
12 Inadvertent errors — who discerns?
Exonerate me from the hidden;
13 also spare your servant from the arrogant
that they not reign over me:
and I *am* integrious
and exonerated from the great rebellion.
14 *May* the sayings of my mouth
and the meditation of my heart,
be pleasing at your face,
O Yah Veh, my rock and my redeemer.

20

To His Eminence; A Psalm by David.

1 Yah Veh answers you in the day of tribulation;
the name of Elohim of Yaaqov lofts you;
2 he sends you help from the holies
and supports you from Siyon;
3 he remembers all your offerings
and fattens your holocausts.
Selah.
4 He gives you according to your own heart
and fulfills all your counsel.
5 We shout in your salvation
and in the name of our Elohim we raise our banners;
Yah Veh fulfills all your requests.

PSALMS 20—22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

6 Now know I
that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** saveth his anointed;
he will hear **shall answer** him
from his holy *heaven* **heavens**
with the *saving strength* might **of salvation**
of his right *hand*.

7 Some *trust* in chariots, and some in horses:
but we will **shall** remember
the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**.

8 They are *brought down* **have knuckled under** and fallen:
but we are risen, and *stand upright* **restored**.

9 Save, *LORD* **O Yah Veh**:
let the *king* hear **sovereign answer** us
when **the day** we call.

21

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
A Psalm of David.

1 The *king* **sovereign** shall *joy* **cheer** in thy strength,
O LORD **Yah Veh**;
and in thy salvation
how *greatly* **mightily** shall he *rejoice* **twirl!**

2 Thou hast given him his heart's desire,
and hast not withholden the *request* **yearning** of his lips.
Selah.

3 For thou *preventest* **anticipatest** him
with the blessings of goodness:
thou settest a crown of pure gold on his head.

4 He asked life of thee, and thou gavest it him,
even length of days for *ever* **eternally** and *ever* **eternally**.

5 His *glory* **honour** is great in thy salvation:
honour and majesty hast thou *laid* **placed** upon him.

6 For thou hast *made* **set** him
most blessed for ever **for blessings eternally**:
thou hast *made* **cheered** him
exceeding glad **with cheerfulness**
with thy *countenance* **face**.

7 For the *king* **sovereign**
trusteth **confideth** in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and through the mercy of the *most High* **Elyon**
he shall not *be moved* **totter**.

8 Thine hand shall find out all thine enemies:
thy right *hand* shall find out those that hate thee.

9 Thou shalt *make* **set** them as a fiery oven
in the time of *thine anger* **at thy face**:
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall swallow them *up* in his wrath,
and the fire shall *devour* **consume** them.

10 Their fruit shalt thou destroy from the earth,
and their seed
from *among the children* **sons of men** **humanity**.

11 For they *intended* **spread** evil against thee:
they *imagined a mischievous device* **machinated intrigue**,
which they are not able *to perform*.

12 Therefore *shalt thou make them turn their back*
Thou shalt set their shoulder,
when thou shalt make ready thine arrows upon thy strings
thou shalt prepare thy cords
against the face of them.

13 Be thou *exalted* **lofted**, *LORD* **O Yah Veh**,
in thine own strength:
so *will* **shall** we sing and *praise* **psalm** thy *power* **might**.

22

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
upon Aijeleth Shahar **on the Hind of the Dawn**,
A Psalm of David.

1 My *God* **El**, my *God* **El**, why hast thou forsaken me?
why art thou — so far from *helping me* **my salvation**,
and from the words of my roaring?

2 O my *God* **Elohim**, I *cry* **call** in the *daytime* **day**,
but thou *hearest* **answerest** not;
and in the night *season*, and am not silent.

3 But thou art holy,
O thou that *inhabitest* **settlest**
in the praises **halals** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

4 Our fathers *trusted* **confided** in thee:
they *trusted* **confided**,
and thou *didst deliver them* **slipped them away**.

5 They cried unto thee, and *were delivered* **escaped**:
they *trusted* **confided** in thee,
and *were not confounded* **shamed not**.

PSALMS 20—22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

6 Now I know that Yah Veh saves his anointed;
he answers him from his holy heavens
with the might of salvation of his right
— some in chariots — some in horses;
and we remember the name
of Yah Veh our Elohim.

7 They — they knuckle under and fall;
and we rise restored.

8 Save, O Yah Veh;
the sovereign answers us the day we call.

21

To His Eminence; A Psalm by David.

1 The sovereign cheers in your strength,
O Yah Veh;
how mightily he twirls in your salvation:
you give him the desire of his heart
and withhold not the yearning of his lips.
Selah.

2 For you anticipate him
with the blessings of goodness;
you set a crown of pure gold on his head;
he asks life of you
and you give him length of days
eternally and eternally:
great is his honor in your salvation;
you place honor and majesty on him:
for you set him for blessings eternally;
you cheer him with cheerfulness by your face.

3 For the sovereign confides in Yah Veh
and through the mercy of Elyon he totters not:
your hand finds all your enemies;
your right finds them who hate you:
you set them as a fiery oven
at the time of your face:
Yah Veh swallows them in his wrath
and the fire consumes them:
you destroy their fruit from the earth
and their seed from the sons of humanity.

4 For they spread evil against you;
they machinate intrigue;
they are not able:
for you set their shoulder;
you prepare your cords against their face.
Be lofted, O Yah Veh, in your own strength;
we sing and psalm your might.

22

To His Eminence; On the Hind of the Dawn:
A Psalm by David.

1 My El, my El, why forsake you me?
— so far from my salvation
and from the words of my roaring?

2 O my Elohim,
I call by day, and you answer not;
and by night, and am not silent.

3 And you are holy
— you who settles in the halals of Yisra El.

4 Our fathers confided in you
— they confided and you slipped them away:
they cried to you and escaped;
they confided in you and shamed not.

PSALMS 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 But I am a *worm* **maggot**, and no man;
a reproach of *men* **humanity**,
and despised of the people.

7 All they that see me *laugh* **deride** me to scorn:
they *shoot* **bust** out the lip, they shake the head, *saying*,

8 He *trusted* **rolled** on the **LORD Yah Veh**
that he *would deliver* **should rescue** him:
let him *deliver* **slip** him **away**, seeing he delighted in him.

9 But thou art he that *took* **gushed** me out of the **womb belly**:
thou didst make me *hope* **confident**
when I was upon my mother's breasts.

10 I was cast upon thee from the womb:
thou art my **God El** from my mother's belly.

11 Be not far from me; for *trouble* **tribulation** is near;
for there is *none to help* **no helper**.

12 Many *bulls* **bullocks** have *compassed* **surrounded** me:
strong bulls **the mighty** of Bashan
have *beset* **surrounded** me *round*.

13 They gaped upon me with their mouths,
as a *ravening* **tearing** and a roaring lion.

14 I am poured out like water,
and all my bones are *out of joint* **separated**:
my heart is like wax;
it is melted in the midst of my *bowels* **inwards**.

15 My *strength* **force** is dried up like a potsherd;
and my tongue *cleaveth* **adhereth** to my *jaws* **prey**;
and thou hast *brought* **set** me into the dust of death.

16 For dogs have *compassed* **surrounded** me:
the *assembly* **witness** of the *wicked* **vilifiers**
have *inclosed* **surrounded** me:
they pierced **as a lion** my hands and my feet.

17 I may *tell* **scribe** all my bones:
they look and *stare* **see** upon me.

18 They *part* **allot** my *garments* **clothes** among them,
and *cast lots upon* **toss pebbles for** my *vesture* **robe**.

19 But be not thou far from me, O **LORD Yah Veh**:
O my *strength* **might**, haste thee to help me.
Deliver **Rescue** my soul from the sword;
my *darling* **only** from the *power* **hand** of the dog.

21 Save me from the lion's mouth:
for thou hast *heard* **answered** me
from the horns of the *unicorns* **reems**.

22 I will *declare* **shall scribe** thy name unto my brethren:
in the midst of the congregation
will I praise **shall I halal** thee.

23 Ye that *fear the LORD* **awe Yah Veh**, *praise* **halal** him;
all ye the seed of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**, *glorify* **honour** him;
and *fear* **dodge** him, all ye the seed of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

24 For he hath not despised nor *abhorred* **abominated**
the *affliction* **humbling** of the *afflicted* **humble**;
neither hath he hid his face from him;
but when he cried unto him, he heard.

25 My *praise* **halal** shall be of thee
in the great congregation:
I will *pay* **shall shalam** my vows
before **in front of** them that *fear* **awe** him.

26 The *meek* **humble** shall eat and be satisfied:
they shall *praise the LORD* **halal Yah Veh** that seek him:
your heart shall *live for ever* **eternally**.

27 All the *ends* **finalities** of the world shall remember
and turn unto the **LORD Yah Veh**:
and all the *kindreds* **families** of the *nations* **goyim**
shall *worship before thee* **prostrate at thy face**.

28 For the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
is the **LORD'S Yah Veh's**:
and he is the *governor* **sovereign**
among the *nations* **goyim**.

29 All *they that be* **the fat** upon earth
shall eat and *worship* **prostrate**:
all they that *go down* **descend** to the dust
shall *bow before him* **kneel at his face**:
and none *can keep alive* **shall enliven** his own soul.

30 A seed shall serve him;
it shall be *accounted* **ascribed** to the *Lord* **Adonay**
for a generation.

31 They shall come,
and shall *declare* **tell** his *righteousness* **justness**
unto a people that shall be *born* **birthed**,
that he hath *done* **worked** *this*.

PSALMS 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 I am but a maggot — not a man;
a reproach of humanity despised of the people.

7 All who see me deride me;
they bust out the lip, they shake the head,
saying,

8 Roll on Yah Veh! He rescues him!
He slips him away, seeing he delights in him!

9 For you are he who gushed me from the belly;
to confide in you at the breasts of my mother.
I was cast on you from the womb;
you are my El from the belly of my mother.

11 Be not far from me; for tribulation is near:
for there is no helper.

12 Many bullocks surround me;
the mighty of Bashan surround me:
they gape on me with their mouths
as a tearing and a roaring lion.

14 I am poured as water
and all my bones separate;
my heart is as wax melted midst my inwards;
my force is dried as a potsherd;
my tongue adheres to my prey;
you set me into the dust of death.

16 For dogs surround me;
the witness of vilifiers surround me:
my hands and my feet as a lion.
I scribe all my bones;
they look and see me;
they allot my clothes among them
and toss pebbles for my robe.

19 And you, O Yah Veh, be not far from me;
O my might, hasten to help me:
rescue my soul from the sword;
my only from the hand of the dog;
save me from the mouth of the lion;
from the horns of the reems, answer me.

22 I scribe your name to my brothers;
midst the congregation I halal you.

23 You who awe Yah Veh, halal him;
all you seed of Yaaqov, honor him;
and dodge him, all you seed of Yisra El.

24 For he neither despises nor abominates
the humbling of the humble;
nor hides his face from him;
and in crying to him, he hears.

25 My halal is of you in the great congregation;
I shalam my vows in front of them who awe him.
The humble eat — satisfied;
they who seek Yah Veh halal him;
your heart lives eternally.

27 All the finalities of the world remember
and turn to Yah Veh;
and all the families of the goyim
prostrate at your face.

28 For the sovereigndom is to Yah Veh;
he is the sovereign among the goyim.

29 All the fat on earth eat and prostrate;
all they who descend to the dust kneel at his face;
and none enlivens his own soul.

30 A seed serves him;
— ascribed to Adonay for a generation.

31 They come and tell his justness
to a people yet to be birthed
— whom he has worked.

PSALMS 23—25
exeGes ready research BIBLE

23 A Psalm of David.
1 The LORD is my shepherd **Yah Veh Raah**;
I shall not want **lack**.
2 He maketh me to lie down **reposest me**
in green pastures **sprouting folds**:
he leadeth **guideth** me
beside the *still waters* **waters of rest**.
3 He restoreth my soul:
he leadeth me in the paths of *righteousness* **justness**
for his name's sake.
4 Yea, though I walk through the valley
of the shadow of death,
I will fear **shall awe** no evil:
for thou art with me;
thy *rod* **scion** and thy *staff* **crutch**
they *comfort* **sigh over** me.
5 Thou *preparest* **arrangest** a table *before me* **at my face**
in the presence of *mine enemies* **my tribulators**:
thou anointest my head with *oil* **ointment**;
my cup *runneth over* **satiateth**.
6 Surely goodness and mercy shall *follow* **pursue** me
all the days of my life:
and I will *dwell* **shall settle**
in the house of the LORD **Yah Veh**
for ever **a length of days**.

24 A Psalm of David.
1 The earth is the LORD'S **Yah Veh's**,
and the fulness *thereof*;
the world, and they that *dwell* **settle** therein.
2 For he hath founded it upon the seas,
and established it upon the *floods* **rivers**.
3 Who shall ascend
into the *hill* **mountain of the LORD Yah Veh?**
or who shall *stand* **rise** in his holy place?
4 He that hath *clean hands* **innocent palms**,
and a pure heart;
who hath not lifted up his soul unto vanity,
nor *sworn* **oathed** deceitfully.
5 He shall *receive* **lift** the blessing
from the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and *righteousness* **justness**
from the God **Elohim** of his salvation.
6 This is the generation of them that seek him,
that seek thy face, O *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.
Selah.
7 Lift up your heads, O ye *gates* **portals**;
and be ye lift up, ye *everlasting doors* **eternal portals**;
and the King **Sovereign** of glory **honour** shall *come in* **enter**.
8 Who is this King **Sovereign** of glory **honour**?
The LORD **Yah Veh** strong and mighty,
the LORD **Yah Veh** mighty in *battle* **war**.
9 Lift up your heads, O ye *gates* **portals**;
even lift them up, ye *everlasting doors* **eternal portals**;
and the King **Sovereign** of glory **honour** shall *come in* **enter**.
10 Who is this King **Sovereign** of glory **honour**?
The LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
he is the King **Sovereign** of glory **honour**.
Selah.

25 A Psalm of David.
1 Unto thee, O LORD **Yah Veh**, do I lift up my soul.
2 O my God **Elohim**, I trust **confide** in thee:
let me not be *ashamed* **shame**,
let not mine enemies *triumph* **jump for joy** over me.
3 Yea, let none that *wait on* **await** thee be *ashamed* **shame**:
let them be *ashamed* **shame**
which *transgress without cause* **deal vanity covertly**.
4 Shew **Have** me **know** thy ways, O LORD **Yah Veh**;
teach me thy paths.
5 Lead **Aim** me in thy truth, and teach me:
for thou art the God **Elohim** of my salvation;
on thee do I wait **I await thee** all the day.
6 Remember, O LORD **Yah Veh**,
thy tender mercies
and thy *loving kindnesses* **kind mercies**;
for they *have been ever of old* **be eternal**.

PSALMS 23—25
exeGes companion BIBLE

23 A Psalm by David.
1 Yah Veh Raah;
I lack not.
2 He reposes me in sprouting folds;
he guides me beside the waters of rest:
3 He restores my soul;
he leads me in the paths of justness
for sake of his name.
4 Yes, though I walk through the valley
of the shadow of death,
I awe no evil;
for you are with me;
your scion and your crutch sigh over me:
5 you arrange a table at my face
in the presence of my tribulators;
you anoint my head with ointment;
my cup satiates.
6 Surely goodness and mercy pursue me
all the days of my life;
and I settle in the house of Yah Veh
for a length of days.

24 A Psalm by David.
1 Unto Yah Veh is the earth and the fulness;
the world and they who settle therein:
2 for he founded it on the seas
and established it on the rivers.
3 Who ascends into the mountain of Yah Veh?
Who rises in his holy place?
4 He who has innocent palms and a pure heart;
— who neither lifts his soul to vanity
nor oaths deceitfully:
5 he lifts a blessing from Yah Veh
and justness from Elohim of his salvation.
6 This is the generation of seekers
who seek your face, O Yaaqov.
Selah.
7 Lift your heads, O you portals;
be lifted, you eternal portals;
and the Sovereign of honor enters.
8 Who is this Sovereign of honor?
Yah Veh strong and mighty!
Yah Veh mighty in war!
9 Lift your heads, O you portals;
be lifted, you eternal portals;
and the Sovereign of honor enters.
10 Who is this Sovereign of honor?
Yah Veh Sabaoth,
he is the Sovereign of honor.
Selah.

25 By David.
1 To you, O Yah Veh, I lift my soul;
2 O my Elohim, I confide in you;
may I neither shame
nor my enemies jump for joy over me:
3 yes, *may* none who await you shame;
shame them who deal vanity covertly.
4 Have me know your ways, O Yah Veh;
teach me your paths:
5 aim me in your truth and teach me;
for you are Elohim of my salvation:
I await you all the day.
6 Remember, O Yah Veh,
your tender mercies and your kind mercies;
for they are eternal:

PSALMS 25, 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 Remember not the sins of my youth,
nor my *transgressions* **rebellions**:
according to thy mercy
remember thou me for thy goodness' sake,
O **LORD Yah Veh**.
8 Good and *upright* **straight** is the **LORD Yah Veh**:
therefore *will* **shall** he teach sinners in the way.
9 The *meek* *will* **humble shall** he *guide* **aim** in judgment:
and the *meek* *will* **humble shall** he teach his way.
10 All the paths of the **LORD Yah Veh**
are mercy and truth
unto such as *keep* **guard** his covenant
and his *testimonies* **witnesses**.
11 For thy name's sake, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
pardon mine iniquity **forgive my perversity**; for it is great.
12 What man is he that *feareth the* **LORD aweth Yah Veh**?
him shall he teach in the way that he shall choose.
13 His soul shall *dwell at ease* **stay in goodness**;
and his seed shall *inherit* **possess** the earth.
14 The *secret* **private counsel** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
is with them that *fear* **awe** him;
and he *will* **shew shall have** them **know** his covenant.
15 Mine eyes
are *ever* **continually** toward the **LORD Yah Veh**;
for he shall pluck my feet out of the net.
16 *Turn thee unto* **Face** me,
and *have mercy upon me* **grant me charism**;
for I am *desolate* **alone** and *afflicted* **humble**.
17 The *troubles* **tribulations** of my heart are enlarged:
O bring thou me out of my distresses.
18 *Look upon mine affliction* **See my humiliation**
and my *pain* **toil**;
and *forgive* **lift** all my sins.
19 *Consider* **See** mine enemies;
for they are *many* **abound by the myriads**;
and they hate me with *cruel* hatred **of violence**.
20 O *keep* **guard** my soul, and *deliver* **rescue** me:
let me not *be ashamed* **shame**;
for I *put* **seek** my *trust* **refuge** in thee.
21 Let integrity and *uprightness* **straightness**
preserve **guard** me;
for I *wait on* **await** thee.
22 Redeem *Israel* **Yisra El**, O *God* **Elohim**,
out of all his *troubles* **tribulations**.

26

A Psalm of David.

1 Judge me, O **LORD Yah Veh**;
for I have walked in mine integrity:
I have *trusted also* **confided** in the **LORD Yah Veh**;
therefore I shall not *slide* **waver**.
2 *Examine* **Proof** me, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
and *prove* **proof** me; *try* **refine** my reins and my heart.
3 For thy *lovingkindness* **mercy** is *before* **in front of** mine eyes:
and I have walked in thy truth.
4 I have not *sat* **settled** with vain *persons* **men**,
neither *will* **shall** I go in with *dissemblers* **imposters**.
5 I have hated the congregation of *evildoers* **vilifiers**;
and *will* **shall** not *sit* **settle** with the wicked.
6 I *will* **shall** wash *mine hands* **my palms** in innocence:
so will I compass **thus shall I surround**
thine **thy sacrifice** altar,
O **LORD Yah Veh**:
7 That I may *publish with* **have them hear**
the voice of *thanksgiving* **spread hands**,
and *tell* **scribe** of all thy wondrous works.
8 **LORD O Yah Veh**,
I have loved the habitation of thy house,
and the place
where thine honour dwelleth
of the tabernacle of thy honour.
9 Gather not my soul with sinners,
nor my life with *bloody men* **of blood**:
10 In whose hands is *mischief* **intrigue**,
and their right *hand* is full of bribes.
11 But as for me, I *will* **shall** walk in mine integrity:
redeem me, and *be merciful unto me* **grant me charism**.
12 My foot standeth *in an even place* **straight**:
in the congregations *will* **shall** I bless the **LORD Yah Veh**.

PSALMS 25, 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 remember neither the sins of my youth
nor my rebellions:
according to your mercy
remember me for sake of your goodness,
O Yah Veh.
8 Good and straight *is* Yah Veh;
so he teaches sinners in the way:
he aims the humble in judgment;
and he teaches the humble his way.
9 All the paths of Yah Veh are mercy and truth
to such as guard his covenant and his witnesses.
11 For sake of your name, O Yah Veh,
forgive my perversity; for it *is* great.
12 What man is he who awes Yah Veh?
He teaches him in the way he chooses.
13 His soul stays in goodness;
and his seed possesses the earth:
the private counsel of Yah Veh
is with them who awe him;
and he has them know his covenant.
15 My eyes are continually toward Yah Veh;
for he plucks my feet from the net.
16 Face me and grant me charism;
for I *am* alone and humble:
the tribulations of my heart enlarge;
bring me from my distresses.
18 See my humiliation and my toil;
and lift all my sins:
see my enemies;
for they abound by the myriads:
and they hate me with hatred of violence.
20 O guard my soul and rescue me
that I shame not;
for I seek my refuge in you:
Integrity and straightness guard me;
for I await you:
redeem Yisra El, O Elohim,
from all his tribulations.

26

By David.

1 Judge me, O Yah Veh; for I walk in my integrity:
I confide in Yah Veh; I waver not.
2 Proof me, O Yah Veh,
proof me — refine my reins and my heart.
3 For your mercy is in front of my eyes
and I walk in your truth:
4 I neither settle with vain men
nor go with imposters:
5 I hate the congregation of vilifiers
and settle not with the wicked:
6 I wash my palms in innocence;
I surround your sacrifice altar, O Yah Veh:
7 that they hear the voice of spread hands
and scribe of all your wondrous works.
8 O Yah Veh,
I love the habitation of your house
and the place of the tabernacle of your honor.
9 Neither gather my soul with sinners
nor my life with men of blood
— in whose hands is intrigue
and their right full of bribes.
11 But as for me, I walk in my integrity;
redeem me and grant me charism:
12 my foot stands straight;
I bless Yah Veh in the congregations.

PSALMS 27, 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

27

A Psalm of David.

1 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** is my light and my salvation;
whom shall I fear **dread?**
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** is the *strength* **stronghold** of my life;
of whom shall I be *afraid* **dread?**

2 When the *wicked* **vilifiers**,
even *mine enemies* **my tribulators**
and *my foes* **mine enemies**,
came upon me to eat up my flesh,
they stumbled and fell.

3 Though *an host* **a camp** should encamp against me,
my heart shall not fear **awe**:
though war should rise against me,
in this *will* **shall** I be *confident* **confide**.

4 One *thing* **This one**
have I *desired* **asked** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that *will* **shall** I seek after;
that I may *dwell* **settle** in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
all the days of my life,
to *behold* **see** the *beauty* **pleasantness**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and to *enquire* **search** in his *temple* **manse**.

5 For in the *time* **day** of *trouble* **evil**
he shall hide me in his *pavilion* **sukkoth/brush arbor**:
in the *secret* **covert** of his *tabernacle* **tent**
shall he hide me;
he shall *set* **lift** me *up* upon a rock.
And now shall mine head be lifted *up*
above mine enemies round about me:
therefore *will* I *offer* **shall I sacrifice** in his *tabernacle* **tent**
sacrifices of *joy* **shouting**;
I *will* **shall** sing, yea,
I *will* sing *praises* **shall psalm** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

7 Hear, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, when I *cry* **call** with my voice:
 have mercy also upon me **grant me charism**,
and answer me.

8 When *thou saidst*, Seek ye my face;
my heart said unto thee,
Thy face, *LORD* **O Yah Veh**, *will* **shall** I seek.
Hide not thy face *far* from me;
put **pervert** not thy servant away in *anger* **wrath**:
thou hast been my help;
leave me not, neither forsake me,
O *God* **Elohim** of my salvation.

10 When my father and my mother forsake me,
then the *LORD* **will take** **Yah Veh shall gather** me *up*.

11 Teach me thy way, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and lead me in a *plain* **straight** path,
because of mine enemies.

12 Deliver **Give** me not *over*
unto the *will* **soul** of *mine enemies* **my tribulators**:
for false witnesses are risen up against me,
and such as *breathe out* **cruelty** **exhale violence**.
I *had fainted*, unless I had *believed* **trusted**
to see the goodness of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
in the land of the living.

14 Wait on the *LORD* **Await Yah Veh**:
 be of good courage **prevail**,
and he shall strengthen thine heart:
 wait, I say, on the *LORD* **yea, await Yah Veh**.

28

A Psalm of David.

1 Unto thee *will* I *cry* **shall I call**,
O *LORD* **Yah Veh** my rock;
 be not silent **hush not** to me:
 lest, if thou be silent **hush** to me,
I become like them
that *go down* **descend** into the *pit* **well**.

2 Hear the voice of my supplications,
when I cry unto thee,
when I lift *up* my hands
toward *thy holy oracle* **the pulpit of thy holies**.

3 Draw me not away with the wicked,
and with the *workers* **doers** of *iniquity* **mischief**,
which *speak peace* **word shalom**
to their *neighbours* **friends**,
but *mischief* **evil** is in their hearts.

PSALMS 27, 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

27

By David.

1 Yah Veh is my light and my salvation;
whom dread I?
Yah Veh is the stronghold of my life;
whom dread I?

2 When the vilifiers
— my tribulators and my enemies
come on me to eat my flesh,
they stumble and fall.

3 Though a camp encamp against me
my heart awes not;
though war rises against me
in this I confide.

4 This one I ask of Yah Veh — I seek after:
to settle in the house of Yah Veh
all the days of my life;
to see the pleasantness of Yah Veh
and to search in his manse.

5 For in the day of evil
he hides me in his sukkoth/brush arbor
— in the covert of his tent he hides me
— lifts me on a rock.
And now
my head lifts above my enemies all around;
and in his tent
I sacrifice sacrifices of shouting;
I sing, yes, I psalm to Yah Veh.

7 Hear, O Yah Veh, my voice — I call!
Grant me charism and answer me.
My heart says to you, Seek my face;
Your face, O Yah Veh, I seek.

9 Neither hide your face from me
nor pervert your servant away in wrath;
you are my help:
neither leave me nor forsake me,
O Elohim of my salvation.

10 When my father and my mother forsake me
then Yah Veh gathers me.

11 Teach me your way, O Yah Veh
and lead me in a straight path
because of my enemies.

12 Give me not to the soul of my tribulators;
for false witnesses rise against me
— such as exhale violence.

13 I trusted not to see the goodness of Yah Veh
in the land of the living.
Await Yah Veh!
Prevail; and he strengthens your heart;
yes, await Yah Veh.

28

By David.

1 To you I call, O Yah Veh my rock;
hush not to me:
if you hush to me
I become as they who descend into the well.

2 Hear the voice of my supplications
when I cry to you
— when I lift my hands
toward the pulpit of your holies.

3 Draw me not away with the wicked
— with the doers of mischief;
who word shalom to their friends
but evil *is* in their hearts.

PSALMS 28—30

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 Give them according to their deeds,
and according to the *wickedness* **evil**
of their *endeavours* **exploits**:
give them after the work of their hands;
render **return** to them *their desert* **as they dealt**.
5 Because they *regard* **discern** not
the *works* **deeds** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
nor the *operation* **work** of his hands,
he shall *destroy* **demolish** them, and not build them up.
6 Blessed be *the* **LORD Yah Veh**,
because he hath heard the voice of my supplications.
7 *The* **LORD Yah Veh**
is my strength and my *shield* **buckler**;
my heart *trusted* **confided** in him, and I am helped:
therefore my heart *greatly rejoiceth* **jumpeth for joy**;
and with my song
will I praise **shall I spread hands** unto him.
8 *The* **LORD Yah Veh** is their strength,
and he is the *saving* **strength** **stronghold of salvations**
of his anointed.
9 Save thy people, and bless thine inheritance:
feed **befriend** them also,
and lift them up *for ever* **eternally**.

29

A Psalm of David.
1 Give unto *the* **LORD Yah Veh**,
O ye *mighty* **sons of El**,
give unto *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
glory **honour** and strength.
2 Give unto *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
the *glory due* unto **honour** of his name;
worship *the* **LORD** **prostrate to Yah Veh**
in the *beauty* **majesty** of *holiness* **his holies**.
3 The voice of *the* **LORD Yah Veh** is upon the waters:
the *God* **El** of *glory* **honour** thundereth:
the **LORD Yah Veh** is upon many waters.
4 The voice of *the* **LORD** is *powerful* **Yah Veh hath force**;
the voice of *the* **LORD** is *full of* **Yah Veh in** *majesty*.
5 The voice of *the* **LORD Yah Veh** breaketh the cedars;
yea, *the* **LORD Yah Veh** breaketh the cedars of Lebanon.
6 He maketh them also to *skip* **dance** like a calf;
Lebanon and *Sirion* **Shirion**
like a *young unicorn* **son of reems**.
7 The voice of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
divideth **heweth** the flames of fire.
8 The voice of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
shaketh **twirleth** the wilderness;
the **LORD Yah Veh**
shaketh **twirleth** the wilderness of *Kadesh* **Qadesh**.
9 The voice of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
maketh **causeth** the hinds to *calve* **writhe**,
and *discovereth* **strippeth** the forests:
and in his *temple* **manse**
doth every one speak **all say** of his *glory* **honour**.
10 *The* **LORD** *sitteth* **Yah Veh settleth** upon the flood;
yea, *the* **LORD** *sitteth* **King Yah Veh settleth** **Sovereign**
for ever **eternally**.
11 *The* **LORD Yah Veh**
will **shall** give strength unto his people;
the **LORD Yah Veh**
will **shall** bless his people with *peace* **shalom**.

30

A Psalm and Song
at the *dedication* **hanukkah** of the house of David.
1 *I will extol* **shall exalt** thee, O **LORD Yah Veh**;
for thou hast *lifted* **bailed** me up,
and hast not made my *foes* **enemies**
to *rejoice* **cheer** over me.
2 O **LORD Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**,
I cried unto thee, and thou hast healed me.
3 O **LORD Yah Veh**,
thou hast *brought up* **ascended** my soul
from *the* **grave sheol**:
thou hast *kept me alive* **enlivened me**,
that I should not *go down* **descend** to the *pit* **well**.
4 *Sing* **Psalm** unto *the* **LORD Yah Veh**,
O ye *saints* **mercied** of his,
and *give thanks* **spread hands**
at the *remembrance* **memorial** of his holiness.

PSALMS 28—30

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 Give them according to their deeds
and according to the evil of their exploits;
give them according to the work of their hands;
return to them as they deal.
5 For they neither discern the deeds of Yah Veh
nor the work of his hands;
he demolishes them and builds them not.
6 Blessed be Yah Veh;
for he hears the voice of my supplications.
7 Yah Veh is my strength and my buckler;
my heart confides in him and I am helped:
and my heart jumps for joy;
and with my song I spread hands to him.
8 Yah Veh is their strength
and he is the stronghold of salvations
of his anointed.
9 Save your people and bless your inheritance;
befriend them also and lift them eternally.

29

A Psalm by David.

1 Give to Yah Veh, O you sons of El;
give to Yah Veh honor and strength;
2 give to Yah Veh the honor of his name:
prostrate to Yah Veh in the majesty of his holies.
3 The voice of Yah Veh *is* on the waters:
the El of honor thunders;
Yah Veh *is* on many waters:
4 — the voice of Yah Veh in force
the voice of Yah Veh in majesty:
5 the voice of Yah Veh breaks the cedars;
yes, Yah Veh breaks the cedars of Lebanon.
6 He has them dance as a calf
— Lebanon and Shirion as a son of reems;
7 the voice of Yah Veh hews the flames of fire:
8 the voice of Yah Veh twirls the wilderness;
Yah Veh twirls the wilderness of Qadesh:
9 the voice of Yah Veh causes the hinds to writhe
and strips the forests:
and in his manse all say of his honor.
10 Yah Veh settles on the flood;
yes, Yah Veh settles, Sovereign eternal!
11 Yah Veh gives strength to his people;
Yah Veh blesses his people with shalom.

30

A Psalm; A Song:
at the hanukkah of the house of David.

1 I exalt you, O Yah Veh;
for you bail me up
so that my enemies not cheer over me.
2 O Yah Veh my Elohim
I cry to you and you heal me.
3 O Yah Veh,
you ascend my soul from sheol;
you enliven me that I not descend to the well.
4 Psalm to Yah Veh, all you his mercied;
spread hands at the memorial of his holiness:

PSALMS 30, 31

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 For his anger endureth **wrath** is but a *moment* **blink**;
in his *favour* **pleasure** is life:
weeping may endure **stay** for a *night* **an evening**,
but *joy cometh* **shouting** in the morning.
6 And in my *prosperity* **serenity** I said,
I shall *never be moved* **not totter eternally**.
7 **LORD O Yah Veh**, by thy *favour* **pleasure**
thou hast made my mountain
to stand *strong* **in strength**:
thou *didst hide* **hid** thy face, and I was *troubled* **terrified**.
8 I *cried* **called** to thee, O **LORD Yah Veh**;
and unto *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
I *made supplication* **sought** **charism**.
9 What *profit* **gain** is there in my blood,
when I *go down* **descend** to the pit of **ruin**?
Shall the dust *praise* **spread hands** unto thee?
shall it *declare* **tell** thy truth?
10 Hear, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
and *have mercy upon me* **grant me** **charism**:
LORD O Yah Veh, be thou my helper.
11 Thou hast turned for me
my *mourning* **chopping** into **round** dancing:
thou hast *put off* **loosed** my *sackcloth* **saq**,
and girded me with *gladness* **cheerfulness**;
12 *To the end*
that my *glory* **honour** may *sing* **praise** **psalm** to thee
and not be *silent* **hush**.
O **LORD Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**,
I *will give thanks* **shall spread hands** unto thee
for ever **eternally**.

31

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
A Psalm of David.
1 In thee, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
do I put my trust **I seek** **refuge**;
let me *never be ashamed* **not eternally** **shame**:
deliver **slip** me **away** in thy *righteousness* **justness**.
2 *Bow down* **Spread** thine ear to me;
deliver **rescue** me *speedily* **quickly**:
be thou my *strong* **rock** of **stronghold**,
for an house of *defence* **stronghold** to save me.
3 For thou art my rock and my *fortress* **stronghold**;
therefore for thy name's sake lead me, and guide me.
4 Pull me out of the net
that they have *laid privily* **hid** for me:
for thou art my *strength* **stronghold**.
5 Into thine hand I *commit* **oversee** my spirit:
thou hast redeemed me,
O **LORD God Yah Veh El** of truth.
6 I have hated them that regard *lying* **vain** vanities:
but I *trust* **confide** in *the* **LORD Yah Veh**.
7 I *will be glad* **shall cheer** and *rejoice* **twirl** in thy mercy:
for thou hast *considered* **seen** my *trouble* **humiliation**;
thou hast known my soul in *adversities* **tribulations**;
8 And hast not shut me up into the hand of the enemy:
thou hast *set* **stood** my feet in a *large room* **an expanse**.
9 *Have mercy upon me* **Grant me** **charism**,
O **LORD Yah Veh**,
for I am *in trouble* **tribulated**:
mine eye is *consumed* **motheaten** with *grief* **vexation**,
yea, my soul and my belly.
10 For my life is *spent* **finished off** with grief,
and my years with sighing:
my *strength* **faileth** **force** **faltereth**
because of *mine iniquity* **my perversity**,
and my bones are *consumed* **motheaten**.
11 I was a reproach
among all *mine enemies* **my tribulators**,
but *especially* **mightily**
among my *neighbours* **fellow tabernacles**,
and a *fear* **dread** to *mine acquaintance* **those I know**:
they that did see me without fled from me.
12 I am forgotten
as a *dead man out of mind* **one dead of heart**:
I am like a *broken vessel* **an instrument that destructeth**.
13 For I have heard the slander of many:
fear was on *every side* **terror** **surrounded**:
while they took **set** counsel *together* against me,
they *devised* **intrigued** to take away my **life** **soul**.

PSALMS 30, 31

exeGesés companion BIBLE

5 his wrath is for but a blink;
in his pleasure is life:
weeping stays at evening
but shouting at morning:
6 and in my serenity I say, I totter not eternally.
7 O Yah Veh, at your pleasure
my mountain stands in strength;
you hide your face and I terrify.
8 I call to you, O Yah Veh;
and to Yah Veh I seek charism.
9 What gain is there in my blood
when I descend to the pit of ruin?
Does dust spread hands to you?
— tell your truth?
10 Hear, O Yah Veh, and grant me charism;
O Yah Veh, be my helper.
11 Turn my chopping into round dancing;
loose my saq and girt me with cheerfulness:
12 so that my honor *may* psalm to you
and not hush.
O Yah Veh my Elohim,
I spread hands to you eternally.

31

To His Eminence; A Psalm by David.
1 In you, O Yah Veh, I seek refuge;
shame me not eternally;
2 slip me away in your justness:
spread your ear to me;
rescue me quickly;
be my rock of stronghold
— a house of stronghold to save me:
3 for you are my rock and my stronghold;
for sake of your name lead me and guide me.
4 Pull me from the net they hide for me;
for you are my stronghold:
5 into your hand I oversee my spirit;
you redeemed me, O Yah Veh El of truth.
6 I hate them who regard vain vanities
and I confide in Yah Veh;
7 I cheer and twirl in your mercy
for you see my humiliation;
you know my soul in tribulations.
8 And you shut me not in the hand of the enemy;
you stand my feet in an expanse:
9 grant me charism, O Yah Veh, for I tribulate;
my eye, my soul and my belly
are motheaten with vexation.
10 For my life is finished off with grief
and my years with sighing;
my force falters because of my perversity
and my bones are motheaten.
11 I am a reproach among all my tribulators
and mighty among my fellow tabernacles
and a dread to those I know;
they who see me outside flee from me.
12 I am forgotten as one dead of heart
— as an instrument that destructs:
13 for I hear the slander of many;
terror surrounds as they set counsel against me:
they intrigue to take my soul.

PSALMS 31, 32

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

14 But I *trusted* **confided** in thee, O LORD Yah Veh:
I said, Thou art my *God* **Elohim**.
15 My times are in thy hand:
deliver **rescue** me from the hand of mine enemies,
and from them that *persecute* **pursue** me.
16 Make **Light** thy face to *shine* upon thy servant:
save me for thy mercies' sake.
17 Let me not be *ashamed* **shame**, O LORD Yah Veh;
for I have called upon thee:
let the wicked be *ashamed* **shame**,
and let them be *silent* **hush** in the grave **sheol**.
18 Let the *lying* **false** lips be *put to silence* **muted**;
which *speak grievous things* **word impudence**
proudly **with pomp** and *contemptuously* **disrespect**
against the *righteous* **just**.
19 Oh how great is thy goodness,
which thou hast *laid up* **treasured**
for them that *fear* **awe** thee;
which thou hast *wrought* **done**
for them that *trust* **seek refuge** in thee
before **in front of** the sons of *men* **humanity!**
20 Thou shalt hide them
in the *secret* **covert** of thy *presence* **face**
from the pride of man:
thou shalt *keep* **hide** them *secretly*
in a *pavilion* **sukkoth/brush arbor**
from the strife of tongues.
21 Blessed be *the* LORD Yah Veh:
for he hath shewed me his marvellous *kindness* **mercy**
in a *strong* city **with rampart**.
22 For I said in my haste,
I am cut off *from before* **in front of** thine eyes:
nevertheless **surely** thou hearest
the voice of my supplications
when I cried unto thee.
23 O love *the* LORD Yah Veh, all ye his *saints* **mercied**:
for the LORD Yah Veh
preserveth **guardeth** the *faithful* **trustworthy**,
and *plentifully* **rewardeth** **shalameth**
the *proud* **doer** **pompous worker**.
24 Be of good *courage* **Prevail**,
and he shall strengthen your heart,
all ye that *hope in the* LORD **await Yah Veh**.

32 A Psalm of David, *Maschil* **On Comprehension**.

1 Blessed **Blithe** is he
whose *transgression* **rebellion** is *forgiven* **lifted**,
whose sin is covered.
2 Blessed **Blithe** is the man **humanity**
unto whom *the* LORD Yah Veh
imputeth **fabricateth** not *iniquity* **perversity**,
and in whose spirit there is no *guile* **deceit**.
3 When I *kept silence* **hushed**,
my bones *waxed old* **wore out**
through my roaring all the day long.
4 For day and night thy hand was heavy upon me:
my moisture is turned into the *drought* **parch** of summer.
Selah.
5 I *acknowledged* **made known**
my sin unto thee,
and *mine iniquity* **my perversity**
have I not *hid* **covered over**.
I said, I *will confess* **shall spread hands**
for my transgressions **rebellions** unto *the* LORD Yah Veh;
and thou *forgavest* **liftest** the *iniquity* **perversity** of my sin.
Selah.
6 For this shall every one that is *godly* **mercied**
pray unto thee in a time when thou mayest be found:
surely in the *floods* **overflowing** of great waters
they shall not *come nigh* unto **touch** him.
7 Thou art my *hiding place* **covert**;
thou shalt *preserve* **guard** me from *trouble* **tribulation**;
thou shalt *compass* **surround** me *about*
with *songs* **shouts** of *deliverance* **escape**.
Selah.
8 I *will instruct* **shall have** thee **discern**
and teach thee in the way which thou shalt go:
I *will guide* **shall counsel** thee with mine eye.

PSALMS 31, 32

exeGesés companion BIBLE

14 And I — I confide in you, O Yah Veh;
I say, You are my Elohim.
15 My times *are* in your hand;
rescue me from the hand of my enemies
— from them who pursue me:
16 light your face on your servant;
save me for sake of your mercies:
17 shame me not, O Yah Veh;
for I call on you:
shame the wicked to hush in sheol;
18 mute the false lips
who with pomp and disrespect
word impudence against the just.
19 How great is your goodness
which you treasure for them who awe you;
which you work
for them who seek refuge in you
in front of the sons of humanity.
20 Hide them in the covert of your face
from the pride of man;
hide them in a sukkoth/brush arbor
from the strife of tongues.
21 Blessed — Yah Veh;
for he shows me his marvellous mercy
in a city with rampart.
22 And I — I say in my haste,
I am cut off in front of your eyes!
— surely you hear the voice of my supplications
when I cry to you.
23 O love Yah Veh, all you his mercied;
Yah Veh guards the trustworthy
and shalams the pompous worker.
24 Prevail! and he strengthens your heart,
all you who await Yah Veh.

32 By David; On Comprehension.

1 Blithe
— he whose rebellion is lifted;
whose sin is covered:
2 Blithe
— humanity
to whom Yah Veh fabricates not perversity
and in whose spirit is no deceit.
3 When I hush, my bones become worn
through my roaring all day long;
4 when by day and night your hand is heavy on me;
my moisture turns into the parch of summer.
Selah.
5 My sin, you know;
and my perversity, I covered not:
I say, I spread hands for my rebellions to Yah Veh;
and you lift the perversity of my sin.
Selah.
6 For this all the mercied pray to you
in a time of finding you;
surely in the overflowing of great waters
they touch him not.
7 You are my covert;
you guard me from tribulation:
you surround me with shouts of escape.
Selah.
8 I have you discern
and teach you the way to go;
I counsel you with my eye.

PSALMS 32, 33

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 Be ye not as the horse, or as the mule,
which *have no understanding* **discern not**:
whose mouth must be *held in* **muzzled**
with bit and bridle,
lest they come near unto thee.
10 Many sorrows shall be to the wicked:
but he that *trusteth* **confideth** in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
mercy shall *compass* **surround** him about.
11 Be glad **Cheer** in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and rejoice **twirl**, ye *righteous* **just**:
and shout *for joy*,
all ye that are *upright* **straight** in heart.

33 Rejoice **Shout** in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
O ye *righteous* **just**:
for *praise is comely* for **halal** *befitteth* the *upright* **straight**.
2 Praise the *LORD* **Spread hands to Yah Veh** with harp:
sing psalm unto him with the *psaltery* **bagpipe**
and an *instrument of ten strings* **decachord**.
3 Sing unto him a new song;
play skillfully **strum well**—**pleasingly**
with a *loud noise* **blast**.
4 For the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** is *right* **straight**;
and all his works *are done in truth* **trustworthy**.
5 He loveth *righteousness* **justness** and judgment:
the earth is full
of the *goodness* **mercy** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
6 By the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
were the heavens *made* **worked**;
and all the host of them
by the *breath* **spirit/wind** of his mouth.
7 He gathereth the waters of the sea
together as an heap:
he *layeth up the deep in storehouses*
giveth treasures in the abyss.
8 Let all the earth *fear the* *LORD* **awe Yah Veh**:
let all the *inhabitants of* **that settle in** the world
stand in awe of **dodge** him.
9 For he *spake* **said**, and **so be** it *was done*;
he *commanded* **misvahed**, and it stood *fast*.
10 The *LORD* *bringeth* **Yah Veh voideth**
the counsel of the *heathen* **goyim** *to nought*:
he *maketh* **annulleth**
the *devices* **fabrications** of the people of *none effect*.
11 The counsel of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
standeth for ever **eternally**,
the *thoughts* **fabrications** of his heart
to all generations **generation to generation**.
12 Blessed **Blithe** is the *nation* **goyim**
whose *God* **Elohim** is the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
and the people whom he hath chosen
for his own inheritance.
13 The *LORD* *looketh* **Yah Veh seeth** from *heaven* **the heavens**;
he beholdeth all the sons of *men* **humanity**.
14 From the *place* **establishment**
of his *habitation* **settlement**
he *looketh* **peereth** upon all
the *inhabitants of* **that settled on** the earth.
15 He *fashioneth* **formeth** their hearts *alike* **together**;
he *considereth* **discerneth** all their works.
16 There is no *king* **sovereign** saved
by the *multitude* **abundance** of an *host* **valour**:
a **the mighty** *man* is not *delivered* **rescued**
by *much strength* **abundant force**.
17 An horse is a *vain thing* **falsehood** for *safety* **salvation**:
neither shall he *deliver* **rescue any**
by his great *strength* **valour**.
18 Behold, the eye of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
is upon them that *fear* **awe** him,
upon them that *hope in* **await** his mercy;
19 To *deliver* **rescue** their soul from death,
and to *keep* **enliven** them *alive* in famine.
20 Our soul *waiteth for the* *LORD* **awaiteth Yah Veh**:
he is our help and our *shield* **buckler**.
21 For our heart shall *rejoice* **cheer** in him,
because we have *trusted* **confided** in his holy name.
22 Let thy mercy, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, be upon us,
according as we *hope in* **await** thee.

PSALMS 32, 33

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 Be not as the horse or as the mule
who discern not;
whose mouth is muzzled with bit and bridle
lest they come near to you.
10 Many *are* the sorrows of the wicked;
as for him who confides in Yah Veh,
mercy surrounds him.

11 Cheer in Yah Veh and twirl, you just;
and shout, all you straight in heart.

33 Shout in Yah Veh, O you just;
for *halal* befits the straight:
2 spread hands to Yah Veh with harp;
psalm to him with bagpipe and decachord:
3 sing to him a new song;
strum well—pleasingly with a blast.

4 For the word of Yah Veh *is* straight;
and all his works trustworthy:
5 he loves justness and judgment;
the earth is full of the mercy of Yah Veh.

6 By the word of Yah Veh
were the heavens worked;
and all their host
by the spirit/wind of his mouth:
7 he gathers the waters of the sea as a heap;
he gives treasures in the abyss.

8 All in the earth, awe Yah Veh;
all settled in the world, dodge him.
9 For he says, and so be it;
he misvahs, and it stands.

10 Yah Veh voids the counsel of the goyim;
he annuls the fabrications of the people:
11 the counsel of Yah Veh stands eternal;
the fabrications of his heart
generation to generation.

12 Blithe — the goyim
whose Elohim is Yah Veh;
and the people
whom he chose for his own inheritance.

13 Yah Veh sees from the heavens;
he beholds all the sons of humanity:
14 from the establishment of his settlement
he peers on all who settle on the earth:
15 he forms their hearts together;
he discerns all their works.

16 Neither is the sovereign saved
by the abundance of valour;
nor the mighty rescued
by the abundance of force.
17 A horse is a falsehood for salvation;
he rescues not by his great valour.

18 Behold, the eye of Yah Veh
is on them who awe him
— on them who await his mercy;
19 to rescue their soul from death
and to enliven them in famine.

20 Our soul awaits Yah Veh;
he is our help and our buckler.
21 For our heart cheers in him
because we confide in his holy name.
22 May your mercy, O Yah Veh, be on us,
according as we await you.

PSALMS 34, 35

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

34

A Psalm of David,

when he *changed* **altered** his *behaviour* **taste**
before *Abimelech* **at the face of Abi Melech**;
who *drove him away* **exiled him**, and he *departed* **went**.

1 I *will* **shall** *bless the LORD* **Yah Veh** at all times:
his *praise* **halal** shall continually be in my mouth.
2 My soul shall *make her boast* **halal**
in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
the humble shall hear *thereof*, and be *glad* **cheer**.
3 O *magnify the LORD* **greaten Yah Veh** with me,
and let us exalt his name together.
4 I *sought the LORD* **Yah Veh**, and he heard me,
and *delivered* **rescued** me from all my *fears* **terrors**.
5 They looked unto him, and *were lightened* **sparkled**:
and their faces *were* **blushed** not *ashamed*.
6 This *poor man* *cried* **humble one called**,
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** heard *him*,
and saved him out of all his *troubles* **tribulations**.
7 The angel of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
encampeth round about them that *fear* **awe** him,
and *delivereth* **rescueth** them.
8 O taste and see that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** is good:
blessed **blithe** is the man **mighty**
that *trusteth* **seeketh refuge** in him.
9 O *fear the LORD* **awe Yah Veh**, ye his *saints* **holy**:
for there is no *want* **lack** to them that *fear* **awe** him.
10 The *young lions* *do* **whelps** *lack*,
and *suffer* *hunger* **famish**:
but they that *seek the LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall not *want* **lack** any good *thing*.
11 Come, ye *children* **sons**, hearken unto me:
I *will* **shall** teach you the *fear* **awe** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
12 What man is he that *desireth* life,
and loveth *many* *days*, that he may see good?
13 Keep **Guard** thy tongue from evil,
and thy *lips* from *speaking* **guile** **wording deceit**.
14 Depart **Turn away** from evil, and *do* **work** good;
seek *peace* **shalom**, and pursue it.
15 The eyes of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
are upon the *righteous* **just**,
and his ears *are open* unto their cry.
16 The face of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
is against them that *do* **work** evil,
to cut off the *remembrance* of them **their memorial**
from the earth.
17 The *righteous* **They** cry,
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** heareth,
and *delivereth* **rescueth** them
out of all their *troubles* **tribulations**.
18 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** is nigh unto them
that are of a *broken* **crushed** heart;
and saveth such as be of a *contrite* spirit.
19 Many are the *afflictions* **evils** of the *righteous* **just**:
but the *LORD* **Yah Veh** *delivereth* **rescueth** him
out of them all.
20 He *keepeth* **guardeth** all his bones:
not one of them is broken.
21 Evil shall *slay* **deathify** the wicked:
and they that hate the *righteous* **just**
shall be *desolate* **have** **guilted**.
22 The *LORD* **Yah Veh**
redeemeth the soul of his servants:
and none of them that *trust* **seek refuge** in him
shall be *desolate* **hath** **guilted**.

35

A Psalm of David.

1 Plead my *cause* **Defend**, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
with them that *strive* **contend** with me:
fight *against* them that fight *against* me.
2 Take hold of *shield* **buckler** and *buckler* **shield**,
and *stand up* **arise** for mine help.
3 Draw out also the spear,
and *stop the way* **against** **shut up and confront** them
that *persecute* **pursue** me:
say unto my soul, I am thy salvation.

PSALMS 34, 35

exeGesés companion BIBLE

34

By David;

when he alters his taste at the face of Abi Melech;
who exiles him and he goes.

1 I bless Yah Veh at all times;
his halal is continually in my mouth:
2 my soul halals in Yah Veh;
the humble hear and cheer:
3 O greaten Yah Veh with me
and exalt his name together.
4 I seek Yah Veh and he hears me
— rescues me from all my terrors.
5 They look to him and sparkle;
and their faces blushed not.
6 This humble one calls
and Yah Veh hears
and saves him from all his tribulations.
7 The angel of Yah Veh
encamps around all who awe him;
and rescues them.
8 O taste and see that Yah Veh is good;
Blithe — the mighty who seek refuge in him.
9 Awe Yah Veh, you his holy;
for there is no lack to them who awe him.
10 The whelps lack and famish;
but they who seek Yah Veh lack not any good.
11 Come, you sons, hearken to me;
I teach you the awe of Yah Veh.
12 What man desires life and loves days
to see good?
13 Guard your tongue from evil
and your lips from wording deceit:
14 turn from evil and work good;
seek shalom and pursue it.
15 The eyes of Yah Veh *are* on the just
and his ears to their cry.
16 The face of Yah Veh *is* against all who work evil,
to cut off their memorial from the earth.
17 They cry and Yah Veh hears
and rescues them from all their tribulations:
18 Yah Veh is near the crushed heart;
and the contrite spirit he saves:
19 many are the evils of the just;
Yah Veh rescues him from them all.
20 He guards all his bones;
not one of them is broken.
21 Evil deathifies the wicked;
and they who hate the just guilt.
22 Yah Veh redeems the soul of his servants
and none who seek refuge in him guilts.

35

By David.

1 Defend, O Yah Veh,
from them who contend with me;
2 fight them who fight me:
uphold with buckler and shield
and rise for my help:
3 and draw the spear;
shut up and confront them who pursue me;
say to my soul, I am your salvation.

PSALMS 35

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 Let them be confounded **shame**
and put to shame **them** that seek *after* my soul:
let them be turned back **apostatize**
and brought to confusion **blush**
that devise my hurt **fabricate me evil**.

5 Let them be as chaff *before* **at the face of** the wind:
and in **overthrowing**,

6 let the angel of the *LORD* chase **Yah Veh** overthrow them.
Let their way be dark and slippery:
and let the angel of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
persecute **pursue** them.

7 For *without cause* **gratuitously** have they hid for me
their net in a pit **of ruin**,
which *without cause* **gratuitously** they have digged
for my soul.

8 Let *destruction* **devastation** come upon him
at unawares **as he hath not known**;
and let his net that he hath hid *catch himself* **capture him**:
into that very *destruction* **devastation** let him fall.

9 And my soul
shall be joyful **twirl** in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
it shall rejoice in his salvation.

10 All my bones shall say, *LORD* **O Yah Veh**,
who is like unto thee,
which *deliverest* **rescuest** the *poor* **humble**
from him that is *too strong for him* **stronger than he**,
yea, the *poor* **humble** and the needy
from him that *spoileth* **strippeth** him?

11 *False witnesses* **Witnesses of violence** did rise up;
they *laid to my charge things* **asked me** that I knew not.

12 They *rewarded* **shalamed** me evil for good
to the *spoiling* **bereaving** of my soul.

13 But as for me,
when they were sick, my *clothing* **robe** was *sackcloth* **saq**:
I humbled my soul with fasting;
and my prayer returned into mine own bosom.

14 I *behaved myself* **walked**
as though he *had been* **be** my friend or brother:
I *bowed down heavily* **prostrated darkened**,
as one that mourneth for *his* **a** mother.

15 But in *mine adversity* **my limping**
they *rejoiced* **cheered**,
and gathered *themselves* together:
yea, the *abject* **smiters**
gathered *themselves together* against me,
and I knew it not;
they *did tear me* **ripped**, and *ceased* **hushed** not:

16 With *hypocritical* **profaners**,
mockers in feasts **jeerers at bakings**,
they gnashed upon me with their teeth.

17 *Lord* **Adonay**,
how long wilt **shalt** thou *look on* **see** me?
rescue **restore** my soul
from their *destructions* **devastations**,
my *darling* **only** from the *lions* **whelps**.

18 I *will give thee thanks* **shall spread hands to thee**
in the great congregation:
I *will praise* **shall halal** thee among *much* **mighty** people.

19 Let not them that are mine enemies
wrongfully rejoice **falsely cheer** over me:
neither let them wink — **blink** with the eye
that hate me *without a cause* **gratuitously**.

20 For they *speak* **word** not *peace* **shalom**:
but they *devise deceitful matters* **fabricate words of deceit**
against them that are *quiet* **rest** in the land.

21 Yea,
they *opened* **enlarged** their mouth *wide* against me,
and said, Aha, aha, our eye hath seen it.
This thou hast seen, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
keep **hush** not *silence*:

22 O *Lord* **Adonay**, be not far from me.
Stir up thyself **Waken**, and awake to my judgment,
even unto my cause **defence**,
my *God* **Elohim** and my *Lord* **Adonay**.

24 Judge me, O *LORD* **Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**,
according to thy *righteousness* **justness**;
and let them not *rejoice* **cheer** over me.

PSALMS 35

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 Shame them — shame them who seek my soul;
they who fabricate me evil
apostatize and blush:

5 they are as chaff at the face of the wind;
and in overthrowing,
the angel of Yah Veh overthrows them;

6 their way is dark and slippery;
and the angel of Yah Veh pursues them.

7 For gratuitously they hide their net for me
in a pit of ruin,
which they gratuitously dig for my soul:
devastation comes on him

8 such as he never knew;
and the net he hid captures him;
into that very devastation he falls.

9 My soul twirls in Yah Veh
— rejoices in his salvation.

10 All my bones say, O Yah Veh,
who is likened to you,
who rescues the humble
from him who is stronger than he?
— yes, the humble and the needy
from him who strips him?

11 Witnesses of violence rise;
they ask me what I know not:
they shalam me evil for good
to the bereaving of my soul.

12 And I, in their sickness, enrobe with saq;
I humble my soul with fasting:
and my prayer returns into my own bosom.

14 I walk as a friend or brother;
I prostrate darkened, as one mourns for a mother.

15 And in my limping
they cheer and gather together;
the smiters gather against me
and I know it not;
they rip and hush not.

16 With profaners, jeerers at bakings,
they gnash on me with their teeth.

17 Adonay, until when see you me?
Restore my soul from their devastations
— my only from the whelps.

18 I spread hands to you in the great congregation;
I halal you among mighty people.

19 May not my enemies cheer over me falsely;
— blink with the eye, who hate me gratuitously.

20 For they word not shalom;
but fabricate words of deceit
against them who rest in the land.

21 yes, they enlarge their mouth against me
and say, Aha, aha, our eye sees!

22 You see, O Yah Veh; hush not.
O Adonay, be not far from me.

23 Waken — waken to my judgment
— to my defence, my Elohim and my Adonay.

24 Judge me, O Yah Veh my Elohim,
according to your justness;
that they not cheer over me:

PSALMS 35—37

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

25 Let them not say in their hearts,
Ah, so would we have it: **Aha, aha, O soul!**
let them not say, We have swallowed him up.
26 Let them be ashamed **shame**
and brought to confusion **blush** together
that rejoice **cheer** at mine *hurt* **evil**:
let them be *clothed* **enrobed** with shame and dishonour
that magnify themselves **greaten** against me.
27 Let them shout for joy, and be glad **cheer**,
that favour **delight in** my *righteous cause* **justness**:
yea, let them say continually,
Let the LORD **Yah Veh** be magnified **greatened**,
which hath pleasure **delighteth**
in the *prosperity* **shalom** of his servant.
28 And my tongue shall *speak* **meditate**
of thy *righteousness* **justness**
and of thy *praise* **halal** all the day long.

36

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
A Psalm of David the servant of the LORD **Yah Veh**.
1 The *transgression* **rebellion** of the wicked
saith **doth oracle** within my heart,
that there is no fear **dread** of God **Elohim**
before **in front of** his eyes.
2 For he flattereth **smootheth over** himself
in his own eyes,
until his *iniquity* **perversity** be found to be *hateful* **hated**.
3 The words of his mouth
are *iniquity* **mischief** and deceit:
he hath *left off to be wise* **ceased comprehending**,
and to *do good* **well—please**.
4 He deviseth **fabricateth** mischief upon his bed;
he setteth himself in a way that is not good;
he abhorreth **spurneth** not evil.
5 Thy mercy, O LORD **Yah Veh**, is in the heavens;
and thy *faithfulness* **trustworthiness**
reacheth unto the *clouds* **vapours**.
6 Thy *righteousness* **justness**
is like the *great mountains* **mountains of El**;
thy judgments are a great *deep* **abyss**:
O LORD **Yah Veh**,
thou preservest man **savest human** and beast **animal**.
7 How excellent **esteemed** is thy *lovingkindness* **mercy**,
O God **Elohim**!
therefore the *children* **sons of men** **humanity**
put their trust **seek refuge** under the shadow of thy wings.
8 They shall be *abundantly satisfied* **satiate**
with the fatness of thy house;
and thou shalt *make them drink* **water them**
of the *river* **wadi** of thy pleasures.
9 For with thee is the fountain of life:
in thy light shall we see light.
10 O continue **draw out** thy *lovingkindness* **mercy**
unto them that know thee;
and thy *righteousness* **justness**
to the *upright* **straight** in heart.
11 Let not the foot of *pride* **pomp** come against me,
and let not the hand of the wicked *remove* **waver** me.
12 There are the *workers* **doers of iniquity** **mischief** fallen:
they are *cast down* **overthrown**,
and shall not be able to rise.

37

A Psalm of David.
1 Fret **Inflame** not thyself
because of *evildoers* **vilifiers**,
neither be thou envious
against the workers of *iniquity* **wickedness**.
2 For they shall soon **quickly** be *cut down* **clipped**
like the grass,
and wither as the green *herb* **sprout**.
3 Trust **Confide** in the LORD **Yah Veh**, and *do work* **good**;
so **thus** shalt thou *dwell* **tabernacle** in the land,
and *verily thou shalt be fed* **tend to trustworthiness**.
4 Delight thyself also in the LORD **Yah Veh**:
and he shall give thee the *desires* **requests** of thine heart.
5 Commit **Roll** thy way unto the LORD **Yah Veh**;
trust **confide** also in him;
and he shall *bring it to pass* **work it**.

PSALMS 35—37

exeGeses companion BIBLE

25 that they not say in their hearts,
Aha, aha, O soul!
that they not say, We swallowed him!
26 Shame and blush them together
who cheer at my evil;
enrobe them with shame and dishonor
who greaten against me:
27 that they who delight in my justness
shout and cheer;
yes, that they say continually,
Yah Veh is greatened,
who delights in the shalom of his servant.
28 And my tongue meditates of your justness
and of your halal all the day long.

36

To His Eminence;
by David the servant of Yah Veh.
1 The rebellion of the wicked
oracles within my heart;
the dread of Elohim is not in front of his eyes:
2 for he smooths it over in his own eyes
only to find out his perversity is hated.
3 The words of his mouth are mischief and deceit;
he ceases comprehending, and to well—please:
4 he fabricates mischief on his bed;
he neither sets himself in a good way
nor spurns evil.
5 Your mercy, O Yah Veh, is in the heavens;
your trustworthiness to the vapours;
6 your justness is as the mountains of El;
your judgments as a great abyss.
O Yah Veh, you save human and animal.
7 How esteemed is your mercy, O Elohim!
and the sons of humanity
seek refuge under the shadow of your wings:
8 they satiate with the fatness of your house;
you water them from the wadi of your pleasures:
9 for the fountain of life is with you;
in your light we see light.
10 Draw out your mercy to them who know you;
and your justness to the straight in heart:
11 that neither the foot of pomp come against me
nor the hand of the wicked waver me.
12 There the doers of mischief fall;
— overthrown — not able to rise.

37

By David.
1 Neither inflame because of vilifiers
nor envious against workers of wickedness.
2 For they are quickly clipped as the grass
and wither as the green sprout.
3 Confide in Yah Veh and work good;
thus you tabernacle in the land
and tend to trustworthiness.
4 And delight yourself in Yah Veh
and he gives you the requests of your heart.
5 Roll your way to Yah Veh; confide in him;
and he works

PSALMS 37

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

6 And he shall bring forth
thy *righteousness* **justness** as the light,
and thy judgment as the noonday.

7 Rest **Be still** in the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and wait *patiently* **writhe** for him:
fret **inflare** not *thyself*
because of him who prospereth in his way,
because of the man
who *bringeth wicked devices to pass* **worketh intrigue**.

8 Cease from *anger* **Slacken wrath**,
and forsake *wrath* **fury**:
fret **inflare** not *thyself in any wise to do evil to vilify*.

9 For *evildoers* **vilifiers** shall be cut off:
but those that *wait upon the LORD* **await Yah Veh**,
they shall *inherit* **possess** the earth.

10 For yet a little *while*,
and the wicked shall not be:
yea, thou shalt *diligently consider* **discern** his place,
and it shall not be.

11 But the *meek* **humble** shall *inherit* **possess** the earth;
and shall delight themselves
in the abundance of *peace* **shalom**.

12 The wicked *plotteth* **intrigueth** against the just,
and gnasheth upon him with his teeth.

13 The *Lord Adonay* shall laugh at him:
for he seeth that his day is coming.

14 The wicked have drawn out the sword,
and have bent their bow,
to *cast down* **fell** the *poor* **humble** and needy,
and to *slay* **slaughter**
such as be of upright conversation **the straight of way**.

15 Their sword shall enter into their own heart,
and their bows shall be broken.

16 A little that a *righteous man* **the just** hath
is better than the *riches* **abundance** of many wicked.

17 For the arms of the wicked shall be broken:
but the *LORD Yah Veh* upholdeth the *righteous* **just**.

18 The *LORD Yah Veh*
knoweth the days of the *upright* **integrious**:
and their inheritance shall be *for ever* **eternal**.

19 They shall not be *ashamed* **shame** in the evil time:
and in the days of famine
they shall be *satisfied* **satiated**.

20 But the wicked shall *perish* **destruct**,
and the enemies of the *LORD Yah Veh*
shall be as the *fat* **esteem** of *lambs* **rams**:
they shall *consume* — **finished off**;
into smoke shall they *consume away* **be finished off**.

21 The wicked borroweth,
and *payeth* **doth** not *shalam* **again**:
but the *righteous* **just**
sheweth mercy **granteth charism**, and giveth.

22 For such as be blessed of him
shall *inherit* **possess** the earth;
and they that be *cursed* **abased** of him
shall be cut off.

23 The *steps* **paces** of a *good man* **the mighty**
are *ordered* **established** by the *LORD Yah Veh*:
and he delighteth in his way.

24 Though he fall, he shall not be *utterly* cast down:
for the *LORD Yah Veh* upholdeth him with his hand.

25 I have been *young a lad*, and *now am old* **have aged**;
yet have I not seen the *righteous* **just** forsaken,
nor his seed *begging* **seeking** bread.

26 He is *ever merciful* **ever granteth charism all days**,
and lendeth;
and his seed is *blessed* **shall be for blessings**.

27 Depart **Turn away** from evil, and *do work* **good**;
and *dwell* for evermore **tabernacle eternally**.

28 For the *LORD Yah Veh* loveth judgment,
and forsaketh not his *saints* **mercied**;
they are *preserved for ever* **guarded eternally**:
but the seed of the wicked shall be cut off.

29 The *righteous* **just** shall *inherit* **possess** the land,
and *dwell* **tabernacle** therein *for ever* **eternally**.

30 The mouth of the *righteous* **just**
speaketh **meditateth** wisdom,
and his tongue *talketh* **wordeth** of judgment.

PSALMS 37

exeGeses companion BIBLE

6 and brings forth your justness as the light
and your judgment as the noonday.

7 Be still in Yah Veh and writhe for him;
inflare not
because of him who prospers in his way
— because of the man who works intrigue.

8 Slacken wrath and forsake fury;
inflare not to vilify.

9 For vilifiers are cut off;
and they who await Yah Veh possess the earth.

10 For yet a little, and the wicked are not;
yes, discern his place and it is not:

11 and the humble possess the earth;
and delight themselves in the abundance of shalom.

12 The wicked intrigues against the just
and gnashes on him with his teeth.

13 Adonay laughs at him;
for he sees his day coming.

14 The wicked draw the sword and bend their bow
to fell the humble and needy
and to slaughter the straight of way.

15 Their sword enters their own heart
— their bows break.

16 Better is the little of the just
than the abundance of many wicked.

17 For the arms of the wicked break
and Yah Veh upholds the just.

18 Yah Veh knows the days of the integrious
— that their inheritance is eternal.

19 They shame not in the evil time;
they satiate in the days of famine.

20 But the wicked destruct
and the enemies of Yah Veh,
as the esteem of rams, are finished off
— into smoke are finished off.

21 The wicked borrows and shalams not
and the just grants charism and gives:
for his blessed possess the earth;
and his abased are cut off.

22 The paces of the mighty
are established by Yah Veh;
and he delights in his way:
though he falls, he is not cast down
for Yah Veh upholds him with his hand.

23 I was a lad and am aged;
yet I neither saw the just forsaken
nor his seed seeking bread:
all days he grants charism and lends;
and his seed is for a blessing.

24 Turn from evil and work good;
and tabernacle eternally.

25 For Yah Veh loves judgment
and forsakes not his mercied
— guarded eternally;
and the seed of the wicked is cut off.

26 The just possess the land
and tabernacle therein eternally.

27 The mouth of the just meditates wisdom
and his tongue words judgment.

PSALMS 37, 38

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

31 The law **torah** of his *God Elohim* is in his heart;
none of his steps shall *slide waver*.
32 The wicked watcheth the *righteous just*,
and seeketh to *slay deathify* him.
33 The *LORD Yah Veh*
will shall not *leave forsake* him in his hand,
nor *condemn judge* him *wicked* when he is judged.
34 Wait on the *LORD Await Yah Veh*,
and keep **guard** his way,
and he shall exalt thee to *inherit possess* the land:
when the wicked are cut off, thou shalt see it.
35 I have seen the wicked in *great power tyrant*,
and *spreading himself stripped naked*
like a green *bay tree native*.
36 Yet he passed away, and, *lo behold*, he was not:
yea, I sought him, but he could not be found.
37 Mark **Regard** the *perfect man integrious*,
and *behold see* the *upright straight*:
for the *end finality* of that man is *peace shalom*.
38 But the *transgressors rebels*
shall be *destroyed desolated* together:
the *end finality* of the wicked shall be cut off.
39 But the salvation of the *righteous just*
is of the *LORD Yah Veh*:
he is their strength — **their stronghold**
in the time of *trouble tribulation*.
40 And the *LORD Yah Veh* shall help them,
and *deliver slip* them **away**:
he shall *deliver slip* them **away** from the wicked,
and save them, because they *trust seek refuge* in him.

38

A Psalm of David,
to bring to remembrance **remember**.
1 O *LORD Yah Veh*,
rebuke reprove me not in thy *wrath rage*:
neither *chasten discipline* me in thy *hot displeasure fury*.
2 For thine arrows *stick fast in penetrate* me,
and thy hand *presseth penetrateth* me *sore*.
3 There is no *soundness integrity* in my flesh
because at the face of thine anger thy rage;
neither is there any *rest shalom* in my bones
because at the face of my sin.
4 For *mine iniquities my perversities*
are *gone passed* over mine head:
as an heavy burden they are too heavy for me.
5 My wounds stink and are *corrupt dissolve*
because at the face of my foolishness folly.
6 I am *troubled bent*;
I am *bowed down greatly prostrated mightily*;
I go *mourning darkened* all the day long.
7 For my *loins flanks*
are filled with *loathsome disease scorching*:
and there is no soundness in my flesh.
8 I am *feeble exhausted* and *sore broken mighty crushed*:
I have roared
by reason of the *disquietness growling* of my heart.
9 *Lord Adonay*, all my desire is *before in front of* thee;
and my *groaning sighing* is not hid from thee.
10 My heart *panteth palpitateth*,
my *strength faileth force forsaketh* me:
as for the light of mine eyes,
it also is *gone from not in* me.
11 My lovers and my friends
stand *aloof from against* my *sore plague*;
and my *kinsmen neighbours* stand afar off.
12 They also that seek after my *life soul*
lay snares for snare me:
and they that seek my *hurt evil*
speak mischievous things word calamities,
and *imagine meditate* deceits all the day long.
13 But I, as a deaf *man*, heard not;
and I was as a *dumb man mute*
that openeth not his mouth.
14 Thus I was as a man that heareth not,
and in whose mouth are no reproofs.
15 For in thee, O *LORD Yah Veh*, do I hope I **await**:
thou *wilt hear shalt answer*,
O *Lord Adonay my God Elohim*.

PSALMS 37, 38

exeGeses companion BIBLE

31 The torah of his Elohim is in his heart;
none of his steps waver.
32 The wicked watches for the just
and seeks to deathify him.
33 Yah Veh neither forsakes him in his hand,
nor judges him wicked when he is judged.
34 Await Yah Veh and guard his way
and he exalts you to possess the land;
when the wicked are cut off, you see.
35 I saw the wicked tyrant
stripped naked as a green native;
yet he passes away; and behold, he is not;
yes, I seek him, but find him not.
36 Regard the integrious and see the straight;
for the finality of that man is shalom.
37 The rebels desolate together
— the finality of the wicked is cut off;
the salvation of the just is of Yah Veh
— their stronghold in the time of tribulation.
38 Yah Veh helps them and slips them away
— slips them away from the wicked
and saves them,
because they seek refuge in him.

38

By David; To remember.
1 O Yah Veh,
neither reprove me in your rage
nor discipline me in your fury:
for your arrows penetrate me
and your hand penetrates me.
2
3 There is neither integrity in my flesh
at the face of your rage;
nor any shalom in my bones
at the face of my sin.
4 For my perversities pass over my head;
as a heavy burden, too heavy for me:
my wounds stink and dissolve
at the face of my folly:
I bend; I prostrate mightily;
I go darkened all the day long:
for my flanks are filled with scorching
— no soundness in my flesh.
5
6
7
8 I am exhausted and mighty crushed;
I roar from the growling of my heart:
9 Adonay, all my desire is in front of you;
and my sighing is not hid from you.
10 My heart palpitates; my force forsakes me;
as for the light of my eyes, they are not with me:
11 my lovers and my friends
stand against my plague;
my neighbours stand afar off:
12 they who seek my soul, snare me;
and they who seek my evil, word calamities
and meditate deceits all the day long.
13 And I, as deaf, hear not
— as a mute who opens not his mouth
— as a man who hears not
whose mouth reproofs not.
14 For in you, O Yah Veh, I await;
answer, O Adonay my Elohim.

PSALMS 38—40

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 For I said, *Hear me,*
lest *otherwise* they should *rejoice* **cheer** over me:
when my foot *slippeth* **tottereth**,
they *magnify* **greaten** themselves against me.
17 For I am ready **prepared to halt limp**,
and my sorrow is continually *before* **in front of** me.
18 For I *will declare mine iniquity* **shall tell my perversity**;
I will **shall** be sorry **concerned** for my sin.
19 But mine enemies *are lively* **enliven**,
and they are *strong* **mighty**:
and they that hate me *wrongfully* **falsely**
are multiplied **abound by the myriads**.
20 They also that *render* **shalam** evil for good
are mine adversaries **my satans**;
because I *follow the thing that is* **pursue** good.
21 Forsake me not, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
O my *God* **Elohim**, be not far from me.
22 *Make haste* **Hasten** to help me,
O *Lord* **Adonay** my salvation.

39

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
even to *Juduthun* **Yeduthun/A Laudatory**,
A Psalm of David.
1 I said, I *will take heed to* **shall guard** my ways,
that I sin not with my tongue:
I *will keep* **shall guard** my mouth with a *bridle* **muzzle**,
while the wicked is *before* **in front of** me.
2 I was *dumb* **mute** with silence,
I *held my peace*, even **hushed** from good;
and my *sorrow* **pain** was *stirred* **troubled**.
3 My heart was *hot* **heated** within me,
while I was *musings* **meditated** the fire burned:
then *spake* **worded** I with my tongue,
4 *LORD* **O Yah Veh**, *make me to* **let me** know mine end,
and the measure of my days, what it is:
that I may know how *frail* **forsaken** I am.
5 Behold, thou hast *made* **given** my days
as an handbreadth **a palm span**;
and *mine age* **my transcience**
is as *nothing before* **naught in front of** thee:
verily *every man at his best state* **all humanity**
is *altogether* **stationed in** vanity.
Selah.
6 Surely every man walketh in a *vain shew* **an image**:
surely they *are disquieted* **roar** in vain:
he heapeth *up riches*,
and knoweth not who shall gather *them*.
7 And now, *Lord* **O Adonay**, what *wait I for* **await I?**
my hope is in thee.
8 *Deliver* **Rescue** me from all my *transgressions* **rebellions**:
make **set** me not the reproach of the foolish.
9 I was *dumb* **mute**, I opened not my mouth;
because thou *didst* **worked** it.
10 *Remove* **Turn aside** thy *stroke away* **plague** from me:
I am *consumed* **finished off**
by the *blow* **choking** of thine hand.
11 When thou with *rebukes* **reproofs**
dost correct **disciplinest** man for *iniquity* **perversity**,
thou *makest* **dissolvest** his *beauty to consume away* **desire**
like a moth:
surely *every man* **all humanity** is vanity.
Selah.
12 Hear my prayer, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *give ear* **hearken** unto my cry;
hold not thy peace **hush not** at my tears:
for I am a *stranger* **sojourner** with thee,
and a *sojourner* **settler**, as all my fathers were.
13 O *spare* **look on** me, that I may *recover strength* **relax**,
before I go hence, and be no more.

40

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
A Psalm of David.
1 *I waited patiently for the LORD*
In awaiting, I awaited Yah Veh;
and he *inclined* **spread** unto me, and heard my cry.
2 He *brought* **ascended** me *up also*
out of an *horrible pit* **a roaring well**, out of the *miry clay* **mire**,
and *set* **raised** my feet upon a rock,
and established my *goings* **steps**.

PSALMS 38—40

exeGeses companion BIBLE

16 For I say, lest they cheer over me;
when my foot totters they greaten against me.
17 For I am prepared to limp
and my sorrow is continually in front of me.
18 For I tell my perversity
— concerned for my sin:
and my enemies enliven
and they are mighty:
they who hate me falsely
abound by the myriads;
20 they who shalam evil for good
are my satans
— because I pursue good.
21 Forsake me not, O Yah Veh;
O my Elohim, be not far from me.
22 Hasten to help me,
O Adonay my salvation.

39

To His Eminence; Yeduthun/A Laudatory;
A Psalm by David.
1 I say,
I guard my ways from sinning with my tongue;
I guard my mouth with a muzzle
while the wicked is ere in front of me.
2 I am mute with silence;
I hush from good;
and my pain troubles me:
my heart heats within me;
as I meditate, the fire burns.
4 I word with my tongue,
O Yah Veh, have me know my end
and the measure of my days, what they are;
so that I know how forsaken I am.
5 Behold, you give my days as a palm span;
my transcience is as naught in front of you;
verily all humanity is stationed in vanity.
Selah.
6 Surely every man walks in an image;
surely they roar in vain:
he heaps and knows not who gathers.
7 And now, O Adonay, what await I?
My hope is in you.
8 Rescue me from all my rebellions;
set me not a reproach of fools.
9 I am mute, I open not my mouth;
because you — you worked it.
10 Turn aside your plague from me;
I am finished off by the choking of your hand.
11 With reproofs
you discipline man for his perversity;
you dissolve his desire as a moth;
surely all humanity is vanity.
Selah.
12 Hear my prayer, O Yah Veh;
hearken to my cry;
hush not at my tears;
for I am a sojourner with you
— a settler, as all my fathers.
13 O look on me, that I may relax,
ere I go hence and am no more.

40

To His Eminence; A Psalm by David.
1 In awaiting, I await Yah Veh;
he spreads to me and hears my cry:
and he ascends me from a roaring well
— from the miry mire;
and raises my feet on a rock
and establishes my steps.

PSALMS 40, 41

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 And he hath *put given* a new song in my mouth,
even praise **Halal** unto our *God Elohim*:
many shall see it, and fear **awe**,
and shall *trust confide* in the **LORD Yah Veh**.
4 *Blessed Blithe* is that *man mighty*
that *maketh the LORD setteth* **Yah Veh**
his *trust confidant*,
and *respecteth* **faceth** not the proud,
nor *such as turn aside swerveth* to lies.
5 Many, O **LORD Yah Veh** my *God Elohim*,
are thy *wonderful works marvels*
which thou hast *done worked*,
and thy *thoughts fabrications*
which are to us—ward toward us:
they cannot be reckoned up in order
none can line them up unto thee:
if I *would declare should tell* and *speak word* of them,
they are *more mightier* than can be *numbered scribed*.
6 Sacrifice and offering thou didst not desire;
mine ears hast thou *opened pierced*:
burnt offering holocaust and *sin offering for sin*
hast thou not *required asked*.
7 Then said I, *Lo Behold*, I come:
in the *volume roll* of the *book scroll*
it is *written inscribed* of me,
8 I delight to *do work* thy *will pleasure*,
O my *God Elohim*:
yea, thy *law torah* is within my *heart inwards*.
9 I have *preached righteousness evangelized justness*
in the great congregation:
lo behold, I have not *refrained restrained* my lips,
O **LORD Yah Veh**, thou knowest.
10 I have not *hid covered* thy *righteousness justness*
within my heart;
I have *declared said*
thy *faithfulness trustworthiness* and thy salvation:
I have not concealed
thy *lovingkindness mercy* and thy truth
from the great congregation.
11 *Withhold Restrain* not thou
thy tender mercies from me,
O **LORD Yah Veh**:
let thy *lovingkindness mercy* and thy truth
continually *preserve guard* me.
12 For innumerable evils
have *compassed surrounded* me *about*:
mine iniquities my perversities
have *taken hold upon overtaken* me,
so that I am not able to *look up see*;
they are *more mightier* than the hairs of mine head:
therefore my heart *faileth forsaketh* me.
13 Be pleased, O **LORD Yah Veh**, to *deliver rescue* me:
O **LORD Yah Veh**, *make haste hasten* to help me.
14 Let them *be ashamed shame*
and *confounded blush* together
that seek after my soul to *destroy scrape it away*;
let them *be driven backward apostatize*
and *put to shame*
that *wish desire* me evil.
15 *Let them be desolate Desolate them*
for a reward in the finality of their shame
that say unto me, Aha, aha.
16 Let all those that seek thee
rejoice and *be glad cheer* in thee:
let such as love thy salvation say continually,
The LORD Yah Veh be *magnified greatened*.
17 But I am *poor humble* and needy;
yet the *Lord thinketh Adonay fabricateth* upon me:
thou art my help and my *deliverer who slippeth me away*;
make no tarrying tarry not, O my *God Elohim*.

41 To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,

A Psalm of David.

1 Blessed **Blithe** is he
that *considereth comprehendeth* the poor:
the LORD will deliver Yah Veh shall rescue him
in *time the day* of *trouble evil*.

PSALMS 40, 41

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 He gives a new song in my mouth,
Halal to our Elohim!
Many see and awe and confide in Yah Veh.

4 Blithe — the mighty
who set Yah Veh as his confidant;
who neither face the proud
nor swerve to lies.

5 Many, O Yah Veh my Elohim,
are the marvels
and the fabrications you worked toward us;
no one lines them up to you;
if I tell and word
they are mightier than are scribed.

6 Sacrifice and offering you desire not;
you pierce my ears;
holocaust and for sin you ask not.

7 Then I say, Behold, I come;
in the roll of the scroll it is inscribed of me,
8 I delight to work your pleasure,
O my Elohim;
yes, your torah is within my inwards.

9 I evangelize justness in the great congregation;
behold, I restrain not my lips;
O Yah Veh, you know.

10 I neither cover your justness within my heart
— I say — your trustworthiness and your salvation;
nor conceal your mercy and your truth
from the great congregation.

11 Restrain not your tender mercies from me,
O Yah Veh;
may your mercy and your truth
guard me continually.

12 For innumerable evils surround me;
my perversities overtake me
so that I am not able to see;
— mightier than the hairs of my head;
and my heart forsakes me.

13 Be pleased, O Yah Veh, to rescue me;
O Yah Veh, hasten to help me:
they shame and blush together
who seek after my soul to scrape it away;
they apostatize and shame
who desire me evil.

15 Desolate them in the finality of their shame
who say to me, Aha! Aha!

16 All who seek you, rejoice and cheer in you;
such as love your salvation continually say,
Yah Veh greatens!
17 And I am humble and needy;
yet Adonay fabricates on me;
you are my help who slips me away;
tarry not, O my Elohim.

41 To His Eminence; A Psalm by David.

1 Blithe — he who comprehends the poor:
Yah Veh rescues him in the day of evil;

PSALMS 41, 42

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 *The LORD will preserve* **Yah Veh shall guard** him,
 and keep **enliven** him *alive*;
and he shall be *blessed* **blithesome** upon the earth:
 and thou *wilt* **shalt** not *deliver* **give** him
 unto the *will* **soul** of his enemies.

3 *The LORD will strengthen* **Yah Veh shall support** him
 upon the *bed* **bedstead** of *languishing* **bleeding**:
 thou *wilt* **make all** **shalt turn** his bed in his sickness.

4 I said, *LORD* **O Yah Veh,**
 be merciful unto me **grant me charism**:
 heal my soul; for I have sinned against thee.

5 Mine enemies *speak* **say** evil of me,
 When shall he die, and his name *perish* **destruct**?
6 And if he come to see me, he *speake*th **wordeth** vanity:
 his heart gathereth *iniquity* **mischief** to itself;
 when he goeth *abroad* **without**, he *telleth* **wordeth** it.

7 All that hate me *whisper* **enchant** together against me:
 against me do they *devise* **fabricate** my *hurt* **evil**.

8 *An evil disease* **A word of Beli Yaal**, *say they,*
 cleaveth fast **is poured** unto him:
 and now that he lieth
 he shall rise up *no more* **never again**.

9 Yea, *mine own familiar friend* **my man of shalom**,
 in whom I *trusted* **confided**,
 which did eat of my bread,
 hath *lifted up* **greatened** his heel against me.

10 But thou, O *LORD* **Yah Veh,**
 be merciful unto me **grant me charism**, and raise me up,
 that I may *requite* **shalam** them.

11 By this I know that thou *favourest* **delightest** in me,
 because mine enemy
 doth **shall** not *triumph* **blast** over me.

12 And as for me, thou upholdest me in mine integrity,
 and *settest* **stationest** me *before* **in front of** thy face
 for ever **eternally**.

13 Blessed
 be the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
 from *everlasting* **eternity**, and to *everlasting* **eternity**.
 Amen, and Amen.

BOOK II

42

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
Maschil **On Comprehension**,
for the sons of *Korah* **Qorach**.

1 As the hart
 panteth **yearneth** after the water *brooks* **reservoirs**,
 so *panteth* **yearneth** my soul after thee, O *God* **Elohim**.
2 My soul thirsteth for *God* **Elohim**, for the living *God* **El**:
 when shall I come
 and *appear before* *God* **be seen at the face of Elohim**?
3 My tears have been my *meat* **bread** day and night,
 while they *continually* **all day** say unto me,
 Where is thy *God* **Elohim**?
4 When I remember these *things*,
 I pour out my soul in me:
 for I had *gone* **passed on** with the multitude,
I *went* **walked gently** with them to the house of *God* **Elohim**,
 with the voice of *joy* **shouting**
 and *praise* **spread hands**,
 with a multitude that *kept holyday* **celebrated**.

5 Why *art thou* **cast down** **propratest thou**, O my soul?
 and *why art thou* **disquieted** **roarest thou** in me?
 hope thou in *God* **await Elohim**:
 for I shall yet *praise* **spread hands unto** him
 for the *help* **salvation** of his *countenance* **face**.

6 O my *God* **Elohim**,
 my soul *is cast down* **proprate**th within me:
 therefore *will* **shall** I remember thee
 from the land of *Jordan* **Yarden**,
 and of the *Hermonites* **Hermoniym**,
 from the *hill Mizar* **little mountain**.

7 *Deep* **Abyss** calleth unto *deep* **abyss**
 at the *noise* **waterspouts** **voice culverts**:
 all thy *waves* **breakers** and thy *billows* **waves**
 are gone **have passed** over me.

8 Yet the *LORD* will *command* **Yah Veh shall misvah**
 his *lovingkindness* **mercy** in the *daytime* **day**,
 and in the night his song shall be with me,
 and my prayer unto the *God* **El** of my life.

PSALMS 41, 42

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 Yah Veh guards him and enlivens him;
 — blithesome on the earth;
 gives him not to the soul of his enemies.

3 Yah Veh supports him on a bedstead of bleeding;
 and in his sickness, turns his bed.

4 I — I say, O Yah Veh, grant me charism;
 heal my soul; for I sinned against you.

5 My enemies say evil of me,
 When he dies, his name destructs:
6 and when he comes to see, he words vanity;
 his heart gathers mischief to itself;
 he goes outside; he words.

7 All who hate me enchant against me
 — against me they fabricate evil to me:
8 a word of Beli Yaal pours on him;
 he lies down — never to rise again:
9 — yes, my man of shalom, in whom I confided,
 who ate of my bread,
 greatened his heel against me.

10 And you, O Yah Veh,
 grant me charism and raise me,
 and I shalam them.

11 By this I know that you delight in me,
 because my enemy blasts not over me:
12 and as for me, uphold me in my integrity
 and station me in front of your face eternally.
13 Blessed — Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
 from eternity to eternity.
 Amen and Amen.

BOOK II

42

To His Eminence; On Comprehension:
For the sons of Qorach.

1 As the hart yearns after the reservoirs of water,
 thus yearns my soul after you, O Elohim.

2 My soul thirsts for Elohim, for the living El.
 When come I to see the face of Elohim?

3 My tears are my bread day and night,
 while all day they say to me, Where is your Elohim?

4 When I remember these,
 I pour my soul within me;
 I pass with the multitude
 — walk gently with them to the house of Elohim
 with the voice of shouting and spread hands
 — with a multitude who celebrate.

5 Why prostrate, O my soul?
 Why roar within me?
 Await Elohim;
 for I still spread hands to him
 for the salvation of his face.

6 O my Elohim, my soul prostrates within me;
 so I remember you
 from the land of Yarden and of the Hermoniym,
 from the little mountain.

7 Abyss calls to abyss at the voice culverts;
 all your breakers and your waves pass over me.

8 Yet Yah Veh misvahs his mercy in the day;
 and in the night his song *is* with me:
 and my prayer to the El of my life.

PSALMS 42—44

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 I *will shall* say unto *God El* my rock,
Why hast thou forgotten me?
why go I *mourning darkened*
because of the oppression of the enemy?
10 As with a *sword murder* in my bones,
mine enemies my tribulators reproach me;
while *all day* they say *daily* unto me,
Where is thy *God Elohim*?
11 Why *art prostratest* thou *cast down*, O my soul?
and why *art roarest* thou *disquieted* within me?
hope thou in *God Elohim*:
for I shall yet *praise spread hands* to him,
who is the *health salvation* of my *countenance face*,
and my *God Elohim*.

43

Judge me, O *God Elohim*,
and *plead defend* my *cause defence*
against an *ungodly nation unmercied goyim*:
O *deliver me slip me away* from the
deceitful man of deceits and *unjust man wickedness*.
2 For thou art the *God Elohim* of my *strength stronghold*:
why dost thou cast me off?
why go I *mourning darkened*
because of the oppression of the enemy?
3 O send out thy light and thy truth: let them lead me;
let them bring me unto thy holy *hill mountain*,
and to thy tabernacles.
4 Then *will shall* I go
unto the *sacrifice* altar of *God Elohim*,
unto *God El*, my *exceeding joy the cheer of my twirling*:
yea, upon the harp
will I praise shall I spread hands unto thee,
O *God Elohim my God Elohim*.
5 Why *art prostratest* thou *cast down*, O my soul?
and why *art roarest* thou *disquieted* within me?
hope in God await Elohim:
for I shall yet *praise spread hands* unto him,
who is the *health salvation* of my *countenance face*,
and my *God Elohim*.

44

To the chief Musician *His Eminence*,
for the sons of *Korah Qorach*,
Maschil On Comprehension.
1 We have heard with our ears, O *God Elohim*,
our fathers have *told scribed* us,
what work the deeds thou didst in their days,
in the *times of old former days*.
2 How thou *drive out dispossessed* the *heathen goyim*
with thy hand,
and plantedst them;
how thou *didst afflict vilified* the *people nations*,
and *cast sent* them out.
3 For they *got possessed* not the land *in possession*
by their own sword,
neither did their own arm save them:
but thy right *hand*, and thine arm,
and the light of thy *countenance face*,
because thou hadst a *favour pleasure* unto them.
4 Thou art my *King Sovereign*, O *God Elohim*:
command deliverances misvah salvations
for *Jacob Yaaqov*.
5 Through thee
will shall we push down our *enemies tribulators*:
through thy name
will shall we *tread trample* them *under*
that rise up against us.
6 For I *will shall* not *trust confide* in my bow,
neither shall my sword save me.
7 But thou hast saved us from our *enemies tribulators*,
and hast *put shamed* them *to shame* that hated us.
8 In *God Elohim* we *boast halal* all the day long,
and *praise halal* thy name *for ever eternally*.
Selah.
9 But *Yea* thou hast cast off, and *put shamed* us *to shame*;
and goest not forth with our *armies hosts*.
10 Thou makest us to turn back
from the *enemy tribulator*:
and they which hate us *spoil despoil* for themselves.

PSALMS 42—44

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 I say to El my rock,
Why forget you me?
Why go I darkened
because of the oppression of the enemy?
10 With murder in my bones,
my tribulators reproach me;
all day they say to me, Where is your Elohim?
11 Why prostrate, O my soul?
Why roar within me?
Hope in Elohim;
for I spread hands to him
— the salvation of my face and my Elohim.

43

Judge me, O Elohim;
defend my defence against an unmercied goyim:
O slip me away
from the man of deceits and wickedness.
2 For you are the Elohim of my stronghold;
why cast you me off?
Why go I darkened by the oppression of an enemy?
3 O send out your light and your truth to lead me;
to bring me to your holy mountain
and to your tabernacles.
4 And I enter to the sacrifice altar of Elohim
— to El, the cheer of my twirling:
on the harp, I spread hands to you,
O Elohim my Elohim.
5 Why prostrate, O my soul?
and why roar within me?
Await Elohim;
for I still spread hands to him,
— the salvation of my face, and my Elohim.

44

To His Eminence; For the sons of Qorach:
On Comprehension.
1 We heard with our ears, O Elohim,
our fathers scribed to us,
the deeds you did in their days
— in the former days:
2 how you dispossessed the goyim with your hand
and planted them;
how you vilified the nations
and sent them out.
3 For they neither possessed the land
by their own sword,
nor by their own arm were they saved;
but by your right and your arm
and the light of your face:
because you had pleasure in them.
4 You are my Sovereign, O Elohim.
Misvah salvations for Yaaqov.
5 Through you
we push down our tribulators;
through your name
we trample them who rise against us.
6 For I confide neither in my bow,
nor my sword to save me.
7 For you saved us from our tribulators
and shamed them who hate us.
8 In Elohim we halal all the day long
— halal your name eternally.
Selah.
9 Yes, you cast us off and shame us;
you come not forth with our hosts:
10 You turn us back from the tribulator;
and they who hate us despoil for themselves:

PSALMS 44, 45

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

11 Thou hast given us
like sheep appointed as a **flock** for meat **food**;
and hast scattered **winnowed** us
among the *heathen* **goyim**.

12 Thou sellest thy people for nought,
and *dost not increase* **aboundest not**
thy *wealth* by their price.

13 Thou *makest* **settest** us a reproach
to our *neighbours* **fellow tabernacles**,
a *scorn* **derision** and a *derision* **ridicule**
to them that are round about us.

14 Thou *makest* **settest** us a *byword* **proverb**
among the *heathen* **goyim**,
a shaking of the head among the *people* **nations**.
My *confusion* **shame** is *continually* **all day**
before **in front of** me,
and the shame of my face hath covered me,

16 For the voice of him
that reproacheth and blasphemeth;
by reason **at the face** of the enemy and avenger.
All this is come upon us;
yet have we not forgotten thee,
neither have we *dealt falsely* **falsified** in thy covenant.

18 Our heart is not *turned back* **apostatized**,
neither have our steps *declined* **stretched** from thy way;
19 Though thou hast *sore broken* **crushed** us
in the place of *dragons* **monsters**,
and covered us with the shadow of death.

20 If we have forgotten the name of our *God* **Elohim**,
or *stretched out* **spread** our *hands* **palms**
to a strange *god* **el**;
21 Shall not *God* search **Elohim** *probe* this *out*?
for he knoweth the *secrets* **concealments** of the heart.

22 Yea, for thy sake
are we *killed* **slaughtered** all the day long;
we are *counted* **machinated**
as *sheep* **flock** for the slaughter.

23 Awake, why sleepest thou, O *Lord* **Adonay**?
arise **awake**, cast us not off *for ever* **in perpetuity**.

24 Wherefore hidest thou thy face,
and forgettest
our *affliction* **humiliation** and our oppression?
25 For our soul *is bowed down* **sinketh** to the dust:
our belly *cleaveth* **adhereth** unto the earth.

26 Arise for our help,
and redeem us for thy mercies' sake.

45

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
upon Shoshannim/**Trumpets**,
for the sons of *Korah* **Qorach**,
Maschil **On Comprehension**,
A Song of *loves* **the Beloved**.

1 My heart *is inditing* **bubbleth** a good *matter* **word**:
I *speak of the things* **which I have made** *say* **of my works**
touching **to the king** **sovereign**:
my tongue
is the *pen* **stylus** of a *ready* **writer** **skillful scribe**.

2 Thou art *fairer* **beautified**
than **above** the *children* **sons of men** **humanity**:
grace **charism** is poured into thy lips:
therefore *God* **Elohim** hath blessed thee
for ever **eternally**.

3 Gird thy sword upon thy *thigh* **flank**, O *most* **mighty**,
with thy glory and thy majesty.

4 And in thy majesty ride **thou**;
prosperously **prosper** **thou** because **of thy word** of truth
and *meeekness* **humbleness** and *righteousness* **justness**;
and thy right *hand*
shall teach thee *terrible things* **awesomenesses**.

5 Thine arrows are *sharp* **pointened**
in the heart of the *king's* **sovereign's** enemies;
whereby the people fall under thee.

6 Thy throne, O *God* **Elohim**,
is *for ever* **eternally** and *ever* **eternally**:
the *sceptre* **scion** of thy *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
is a *right* **sceptre** **straight scion**.

PSALMS 44, 45

exeGeses companion BIBLE

11 as a flock, you give us for food;
and winnow us among the goyim:
12 you sell your people for naught
and abound not by their price:
13 you set us a reproach to our fellow tabernacles;
a derision and a ridicule to them all around us:
14 you set us a proverb among the goyim
— a shaking of the head among the nations:
15 all day my shame is in front of me;
the shame of my face covers me:
16 because of his voice
who reproaches and blasphemes
at the face of the enemy and avenger.

17 All this comes to us:
yet we neither forgot you
nor falsified in your covenant
nor apostatized our heart
nor stretched our steps from your way:
19 though you crushed us in the place of monsters
and covered us with the shadow of death.

20 If we forget the name of our Elohim
or spread our palms to a strange el;
21 is this not probed by Elohim?
— for he knows the concealments of the heart.

22 Yes, for your sake we are slaughtered all day;
— machinated as flocks for the slaughter.

23 Waken! Why sleep, O Adonay?
Waken! Cast us not off in perpetuity.
24 Why hide your face
and forget our humiliation and our oppression?

25 For our soul sinks to the dust;
our belly adheres to the earth:
26 rise for our help
and redeem us for sake of your mercies.

45 To His Eminence; On Shoshannim/Trumpets;
For the sons of Qorach; On Comprehension:
Song of the Beloved.

1 My heart bubbles a good word;
I say of my works to the sovereign;
my tongue is the stylus of a skillful scribe.

2 You — beautified above the sons of humanity;
charism pours into your lips;
so Elohim blesses you eternally.

3 Gird your sword on your flank, O mighty,
with your glory and your majesty:
4 and in your majesty, ride;
prosper because of your word of truth
and humbleness and justness;
that your right teach you awesomenesses.

5 Your arrows pointen
in the heart of the enemies of the sovereign;
the people fall under you.

6 Your throne, O Elohim, is eternal and eternal;
the scion of your sovereigndom is a straight scion:

PSALMS 45, 46

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

7 Thou lovest righteousness **justness**,
and hatest wickedness:
therefore *God Elohim*,
thy *God Elohim*, hath anointed thee
with the *oil ointment of gladness rejoicing*
above thy *fellows companions*.
8 All thy *garments clothes*
smell of myrrh, and aloes, and cassia,
out of the ivory *palaces manses*,
whereby they **whose strummings**
have made **cheered** thee *glad*.
9 *Kings' Sovereigns'* daughters
were among thy *honourable women esteemed*:
upon thy right *hand*
did stand the *queen mistress* in *gold ore* of Ophir.
10 Hearken, O daughter, and *consider see*,
and *incline spread* thine ear;
forget *also* thine own people, and thy father's house;
11 So shall the *king greatly sovereign* desire thy beauty:
for he is thy *Lord adoni*;
and *worship prostrate* thou **to** him.
12 And the daughter of Tyre **Sor**
shall be there with a *gift an offering*;
even the rich among the people
shall *intreat stroke* thy *favour face*.
13 The *king's sovereign's* daughter
is all *glorious honourable* within:
her *clothing robe* is of *wrought gold gold brocade*.
14 She shall be brought unto the *king sovereign*
in *raiment of needlework embroidery*:
the virgins her *companions that follow friends behind* her
shall be brought unto thee.
15 With *gladness cheerfulness* and rejoicing
shall *they* be brought:
they shall enter into the *king's palace sovereign's manse*.
16 Instead of thy fathers, shall be thy *children sons*,
whom thou mayest
make princes set governors in all the earth.
17 I *will shall* make thy name to be remembered
in *all generations generation to generation*:
therefore shall the people *praise spread hands unto* thee
for ever eternally and *ever eternally*.

46

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
for the sons of Korah **Qorach**,
A Song upon *Alamoth* for **Virgins**.
1 *God Elohim* is our refuge and strength,
a very present **mighty found** help in *trouble tribulation*.
2 Therefore *will shall* not we **fear awe**,
though the earth *be removed changeth*,
and *though* the mountains *be carried totter*
into the *midst heart* of the sea **seas**;
3 *Though* the waters *thereof* roar and *be troubled foam*,
though the mountains *shake quake*
with the *swelling pomp thereof*.
Selah.
4 There is a river,
the streams whereof whose rivulets
shall *make glad cheer* the city of *God Elohim*,
the *holy place holies* of the tabernacles
of the most High **Elyon**.
5 *God Elohim* is in the midst of her;
she shall not *be moved totter*:
God Elohim shall help her,
and *that right early at the face of the morning*.
6 The *heathen raged goyim roared*,
the *kingdoms were moved sovereigndoms tottered*:
he *uttered gave* his voice, the earth melted.
7 The *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth* is with us;
the *God Elohim of Jacob Yaaqov* is our *refuge secure loft*.
Selah.
8 Come,
behold see the *works deeds* of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
what desolations he hath *made set* in the earth.
9 He *maketh shabbathizeth* wars *to cease*
unto the end of the earth;
he *breaketh* the bow,
and *cutteth choppeth* the spear *in sunder*;
he *burneth* the *chariot wagon* in the fire.

PSALMS 45, 46

exeGeses companion BIBLE

7 you love justness and hate wickedness;
so Elohim — your Elohim
anoints you with the ointment of rejoicing
above your companions:
8 all your clothes of myrrh and aloes and cassia
— from the manses of ivory
— whose strummings cheer you.
9 Daughters of Sovereigns
are among your esteemed;
on your right
stands a mistress in the ore of Ophir.
10 Hearken, O daughter,
and see and spread your ear;
forget your own people
and the house of your father;
11 the sovereign desires your beauty;
for he is your adoni;
prostrate to him.
12 The daughter of Sor with an offering,
even the rich among the people stroke your face.
13 Inwardly, the daughter of the sovereign
is all honorable;
her robe is of gold brocade
14 — brought to the sovereign in embroidery;
the virgins her friends behind her
— brought to you
15 — brought with cheerfulness and rejoicing;
they enter the manse of the sovereign.
16 Your sons, in the stead of your fathers,
whom you set as governors in all the earth.
17 I memorialize your name
generation to generation;
so the people spread hands to you
eternally and eternally.

46

To His Eminence; For the sons of Qorach;
A song for Virgins.
1 Elohim is our refuge and strength;
a mighty help to find in tribulation;
2 so we awe not:
the earth changes;
the mountains totter into the heart of the seas;
3 the waters roar and foam;
the pompous mountains quake.
Selah.
4 There is a river,
whose rivulets cheer the city of Elohim
— the holies of the tabernacles of Elyon.
5 Elohim is in her midst; she totters not:
Elohim helps her at the face of the morning.
6 The goyim roar;
the sovereigndoms totter:
he gives his voice: the earth melts.
7 Yah Veh Sabaoth is with us;
the Elohim of Yaaqov is our secure loft.
Selah.
8 Come see the deeds of Yah Veh,
who set desolations in the earth;
9 — shabbathizes wars to the end of the earth;
— breaks the bow and chops the spear;
— burns the wagon in the fire.

PSALMS 46—48

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 *Be still* Let go, and know that I am God — Elohim:
I will **shall** be exalted **lofted** among the *heathen* **goyim**,
I will **shall** be exalted **lofted** in the earth.
11 The LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth** is with us;
the God **Elohim** of Jacob **Yaaqov** is our *refuge* **secure loft**.
Selah.

47

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
A Psalm for the sons of *Korah* **Qorach**.
1 O clap your *hands* **palms**, all ye people;
shout unto God **Elohim** with the voice of *triumph* **shouting**.
2 For the LORD most high **Yah Veh Elyon**
is *terrible* **awesome**;
he is a great *King* **Sovereign** over all the earth.
3 He shall subdue the people under us,
and the nations under our feet.
4 He shall choose our inheritance for us,
the excellency **pomp** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov** whom he loved.
Selah.
5 *God is gone up* **Elohim hath ascended** with a *shout* **blast**,
the LORD **Yah Veh** with the *sound* **voice** of a *trumpet* **shophar**.
6 *Sing praises* **Psalm** to God **Elohim**,
sing praises **psalm**:
sing praises **psalm** unto our *King* **Sovereign**,
sing praises **psalm**.
7 For God **Elohim** is the *King* **Sovereign** of all the earth:
sing ye praises **psalm**
with *understanding* **comprehendingly**.
8 God **Elohim** reigneth over the *heathen* **goyim**:
God sitteth **Elohim settleth**
upon the throne of his holiness.
9 The *princes* **volunteers** of the people
are gathered *together*,
even the people of the God **Elohim** of Abraham:
for the *shields* **bucklers** of the earth
belong be unto God **Elohim**:
he is *greatly exalted* **mightily ascended**.

48

A Song and Psalm for the sons of *Korah* **Qorach**.
1 Great is the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and *greatly to be praised* **mightily haled**
in the city of our God **Elohim**,
in the mountain of his holiness.
2 Beautiful for *situation* **elevation**,
the joy of the whole earth,
is mount *Zion* **Siyon**, on the *sides* **flanks** of the north,
the city of the great *King* **Sovereign**.
3 God **Elohim** is known in her *palaces* **citadels**
for a *refuge* **secure loft**.
4 For, *lo* **behold**,
the *kings* were *assembled* **sovereigns congregated**,
they passed by together.
5 They saw *it*, and so they marvelled;
they were *troubled* **terrified**, and hasted away.
6 Fear **Trembling** took hold upon them there,
and *pain* **pangs**, as of a *woman in travail* **birthing**.
7 Thou breakest the ships of Tarshish with an east wind.
8 As we have heard, so have we seen
in the city of the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
in the city of our God **Elohim**:
God will **Elohim shall** establish it *for ever* **eternally**.
Selah.
9 We have *thought of* **compared** thy *lovingkindness* **mercy**,
O God **Elohim**, in the midst of thy *temple* **manse**.
10 According to thy name, O God **Elohim**,
so is thy *praise* **halal** unto the ends of the earth:
thy right *hand* is full of *righteousness* **justness**.
11 Let mount *Zion* **rejoice** **Siyon cheer**,
let the daughters of *Judah* be glad **Yah Hudah twirl**,
because of thy judgments.
12 Walk about *Zion* **Surround Siyon**,
and go round about **surround** her:
tell **scribe to** the towers *thereof*.
13 Mark ye well **Set your heart on** her *bulwarks* **trenches**,
consider **contemplate** her *palaces* **citadels**;
that ye may *tell* **scribe** it to the generation *following* **after**.
14 For this God **Elohim** is our God **Elohim**
for ever **eternally** and *ever* **eternally**:
he will be our *guide* even unto **shall drive us over** death.

PSALMS 46—48

exeGesés companion BIBLE

10 Slacken and know that I — Elohim
loft among the goyim — loft in the earth.
11 Yah Veh Sabaoth is with us;
Elohim of Yaaqov is our secure loft.
Selah.

47

To His Eminence;
A Psalm for the sons of Qorach.
1 O clap your palms, all you people;
shout to Elohim with the voice of shouting;
2 for Yah Veh Elyon is awesome
— a great Sovereign over all the earth:
3 he subdues the people under us
and the nations under our feet:
4 he chooses our inheritance for us
— the pomp of Yaaqov whom he loves.
Selah.
5 Elohim ascends with a blast
— Yah Veh with the voice of a shophar.
6 Psalm to Elohim! Psalm!
7 Psalm to our Sovereign! Psalm!
8 For Elohim is the Sovereign of all the earth;
9 Psalm comprehendingly!
10 Elohim reigns over the goyim;
11 Elohim settles on the throne of his holiness.
12 The volunteers of the people gather
— the people of the Elohim of Abraham;
13 for to Elohim be the bucklers of the earth;
14 — mightily ascended.

48

A Song, a Psalm, for the sons of Qorach.
1 Great is Yah Veh!
2 Mightily haled in the city of our Elohim
the mountain of his holiness.
3 Beautiful for elevation
4 the joy of the whole earth
— mount Siyon on the flanks of the north;
the city of the great Sovereign.
5 Elohim is in her citadels — known for a secure loft.
6 For behold,
7 the sovereigns congregate; they pass by together:
8 they see; thus they marvel:
9 they terrify; and haste away:
10 trembling holds them there
— pangs, as of birthing.
11 You break the ships of Tarshish with an east wind.
12 As we hear, thus we see;
13 in the city of Yah Veh Sabaoth
— in the city of our Elohim;
14 Elohim establishes it eternally.
Selah.
15 We compare your mercy, O Elohim,
16 midst your manse:
17 as your name, O Elohim,
18 thus is your halal to the ends of the earth:
19 your right is full of justness.
20 Mount Siyon cheers;
21 the daughters of Yah Hudah twirl
because of your judgments.
22 Surround Siyon! Surround her!
23 Scribe to the towers!
24 Set your heart on her trenches;
25 contemplate her citadels:
26 scribe it to the generation after.
27 For this Elohim is our Elohim
eternally and eternally;
28 he — he drives us over death.

PSALMS 49, 50

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

49

To the chief Musician **His Eminence,**
A Psalm for the sons of *Korah* **Qorach.**

1 Hear this, all ye people;
give ear **hearken,**
all ye *inhabitants of* **transcients settled in** the world:
2 Both *low* **sons of humanity** and *high* **sons of man,**
rich and *poor* **needy,** together.
3 My mouth shall *speak* **word** of wisdom;
and the meditation of my heart
shall be of *understanding* **discernment.**
4 I *will* **shall** incline mine ear to a *parable* **proverb:**
I *will* **shall** open my *dark saying* **riddle** upon the harp.
5 Wherefore should I *fear* **awe** in the days of evil,
when the *iniquity* **perversity** of my heels
shall *compass* **surround** me *about?*
6 They that *trust* **confide** in their *wealth* **valuables,**
and *boast* **halal** themselves
in the *multitude* **abundance** of their riches;
7 *None of them can by any means*
In redeeming, no man shall redeem his brother,
nor give to *God* **Elohim**
a *ransom* **koper/an atonement** for him:
8 (For the redemption of their soul is *precious* **esteemed,**
and it ceaseth *for ever* **eternally:**)
9 That he should still live *for ever* **in perpetuity,**
and not see *corruption* **the pit of ruin.**
10 For he seeth that wise men die,
likewise **together**
the fool and the *brutish person* **perish** **stupid destruct,**
and leave their *wealth* **valuables** to others.
11 Their inward thought is,
that their houses shall *continue for ever* **be eternal,**
and their *dwelling places* **tabernacles**
to all generations **generation to generation;**
they call their *lands* **soil** after their own names.
12 *Nevertheless man being in honour* **abideth not**
Humanity stayeth not in esteem:
he is like the *beasts* **animals** that *perish* **decease.**
13 This their way is their folly:
yet their posterity
approve **is pleased with** their *sayings* **mouth.**
Selah.
14 *Like sheep* **As a flock**
they are *laid* **set** in the *grave* **sheol;**
death shall *feed on* **tend** them;
and the *upright* **straight**
shall *have dominion over* **subjugate** them in the morning;
and their *beauty* **form**
shall *consume* **wear out** in the *grave* **sheol**
from their *dwelling* **residence.**
15 But *God will* **Elohim shall** redeem my soul
from the *power* **hand** of the *grave* **sheol:**
for he shall *receive* **take** me.
Selah.
16 *Be not thou afraid* **Awe not**
when *one is made rich* **man enricheth,**
when the *glory* **honour** of his house
is increased **aboundeth;**
17 For when he dieth
he shall *carry nothing away* **take naught:**
his *glory* **honour** shall not descend after him.
18 Though while he lived he blessed his soul:
and *men will praise* **they shall spread hands unto** thee,
when thou *doest well to* **well—pleasest** thyself.
19 He shall go to the generation of his fathers;
they shall never see light **in perpetuity.**
20 *Man* **Humanity** that is in *honour* **esteem,**
and *understandeth* **discerneth** not,
is like the beasts that perish.

50

A Psalm of Asaph.

1 *The mighty God, even the* **LORD El — Elohim**
Yah Veh hath *spoken* **worded,**
and called the earth from the rising of the sun
unto the *going down* **entry** thereof.
2 Out of *Zion* **Siyon,** the perfection of beauty,
God **Elohim** hath shined.

PSALMS 49, 50

exeGesés companion BIBLE

49

To His Eminence;
A Psalm for the sons of Qorach.

1 Hear this, all you people!
Hearken, all you transcients settled in the world!
2 Both sons of humanity and sons of man!
Rich and needy, together!
3 My mouth words of wisdom;
and the meditation of my heart of discernment:
4 I incline my ear to a proverb;
I open my riddle on the harp.
5 Why awe I in the days of evil,
when the perversity of my heels surround me?
6 They who confide in their valuables
— in the abundance of their riches
halal themselves.
7 In redeeming,
man neither redeems his brother,
nor gives Elohim a koper/an atonement for him;
8 and esteemed *is* the redemption of their soul:
and ceases eternally;
9 and still he lives in perpetuity
and sees not the pit of ruin.
10 For he sees wise men die;
the fool and the stupid destruct together
and leave their valuables to others.
11 Inwardly they think their houses *are* eternal
and their tabernacles generation to generation;
they call their soil after their own names.
12 Humanity stays not in esteem;
he is as the animals who de cease.
13 This their way *is* their folly;
yet their posterity *is* pleased with their mouth.
Selah.
14 As a flock they set themselves in sheol;
death tends them:
and the straight subjugate them in the morning;
and their form wears out:
sheol is their residence.
15 Surely Elohim redeems my soul
from the hand of sheol;
for he takes me.
Selah.
16 Awe not when man enriches
— when the honor of his house abounds:
17 for when he dies he takes naught;
his honor descends not after him.
18 For while he lives he blesses his soul;
and they spread hands to you
when you well—please yourself.
19 He goes to the generation of his fathers;
never to see light in perpetuity.
20 Humanity in esteem who discerns not,
is as the beasts that perish.

50

A Psalm; by Asaph.

1 El of Elohim — Yah Veh words;
and he calls to the earth:
from the rising of the sun to the entry;
2 from Siyon, the perfection of beauty,
Elohim shines.

PSALMS 50

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 Our God **Elohim** shall come,
and shall not *keep silence* **hush**:
a fire shall *devour before him* **consume at his face**,
and it shall *be very tempestuous* **whirl mightily**
round about him.

4 He shall call to the heavens from above,
and to the earth,
that he may *judge* **plead the cause of** his people.

5 Gather my *saints* **mercied** together unto me;
those that have *made cut* a covenant with me
by sacrifice.

6 And the heavens
shall *declare* **tell his righteousness justness**:
for God **Elohim** is judge himself.
Selah.

7 Hear, O my people, and I *will speak* **shall word**;
O Israel **Yisra El**,
and I *will testify* **shall witness** against thee:
I *am God* — **Elohim**, even thy God **Elohim**.

8 I *will* **shall** not reprove thee
for thy sacrifices or thy *burnt offerings* **holocausts**,
to have been continually **in front of** me.

9 I *will* **shall** take no bullock out of thy house,
nor he goats out of thy folds.

10 For every beast of the forest is mine,
and the *cattle* **animals** upon a thousand *hills* **mountains**.

11 I know all the *fowls* **flyers** of the mountains:
and the *wild beasts* **creatures** of the field
are mine **with me**.

12 If I *were hungry* **famished**,
I *would* **should** not *tell* **say to** thee:
for the world is mine, and the fulness *thereof*.

13 *Will* **Shall** I eat the flesh of *bulls* **the mighty**,
or drink the blood of **he** goats?

14 *Offer* **Sacrifice** unto God **Elohim**
thanksgiving **spread hands**;
and *pay* **shalam** thy vows unto the *most High* **Elyon**:
And call upon me in the day of *trouble* **tribulation**:
I *will deliver* **shall rescue** thee,
and thou shalt *glorify* **honour** me.

16 But unto the wicked God **Elohim** saith,
What hast thou to do to *declare* **scribe** my statutes,
or that thou shouldst *take* **lift** my covenant
in thy mouth?

17 Seeing thou hatest *instruction* **discipline**,
and castest my words behind thee.

18 When thou sawest a thief,
then thou *consentedst* **wast pleased** with him,
and hast *been partaker* **allotted** with adulterers.

19 Thou *givest* **spreadest** thy mouth to evil,
and thy tongue *frameth* **contriveth** deceit.

20 Thou *sittest* **settlest**
and *speakest* **wordest** against thy brother;
thou *slanderest* **givest to trip**
thine own mother's son.

21 These *things* hast thou *done* **worked**,
and I *kept* **silence** **hushed**;
thou *thoughtest* **equatest**
that I *was altogether such an one* **had become** as thyself:
but I *will* **shall** reprove thee,
and *set them in order before* **line them up at** thine eyes.

22 Now I *beseech*, **consider** **discern** this,
ye that forget God **Elohah**,
lest I *tear you* in pieces,
and there be none to *deliver* **rescue**.

23 Whoso *offereth* **praise** **sacrificeth** **spread hands**
glorifieth **honoureth** me:
and to him
that *ordereth his conversation aright* **setteth his way**
will I shew **shall I have see** the salvation of God **Elohim**.

PSALMS 50

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 Our Elohim comes and hushes not;
a consuming fire at his face
whirls mightily all around him.

4 He calls to the heavens above
and to the earth
to plead the cause of his people.
Gather my mercied to me
— to cut a covenant with me by sacrifice.

6 The heavens tell his justness;
for Elohim himself is judge.
Selah.

7 Hear, O my people, and I word;
O Yisra El, and I witness against you;
I — Elohim, your Elohim.

8 I reprove you not
yes, your sacrifices or your holocausts
are continually in front of me.

9 I take neither bullock from your house
nor he goats from your folds:
for every beast of the forest is mine
and the animals on a thousand mountains:
I know all the flyers of the mountains
and the creatures of the field with me.

12 If I famish, I say naught to you;
for the world is mine and the fulness.
Eat I the flesh of the mighty?
Drink I the blood of he goats?

14 Sacrifice spread hands to Elohim;
shalam your vows to Elyon;
call on me in the day of tribulation:
I rescue you and you honor me.

16 And to the wicked Elohim says,
What *is it* to you to scribe my statutes?
— to lift my covenant in your mouth?
Seeing you hate discipline
and cast my words behind you.

18 When you see a thief,
he pleases you;
and you allot with adulterers:
you spread your mouth to evil
and contrive your tongue to deceit:
you settle and word against your brother;
you give to trip the son of your own mother.

21 These you work, and I hush;
you equate that I become as your;
but I reprove you
and line them up at your eyes.

22 I beseech, discern this,
you who forget Elohad,
lest I tear in pieces and there be no one to rescue.
Whoever sacrifices spread hands honors me;
and he who sets his way
I have see the salvation of Elohim.

PSALMS 51, 52

exeGes ready research BIBLE

51 To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
 A Psalm of David,
 when Nathan the prophet came unto him,
 after he had gone in to Bath—sheba **Bath Sheba**.
 1 Have mercy upon me **Grant me charism**,
 O God **Elohim**,
 according to thy *lovingkindness* **mercy**:
 according unto the *multitude* **abundance**
 of thy tender mercies
 blot **wipe** out my *transgressions* **rebellions**.
 2 Wash **Launder** me *thoroughly* **aboundingly**
 from *mine iniquity* **my perversity**,
 and *cleanse* **purify** me from my sin.
 3 For I *acknowledge* **know** my *transgressions* **rebellions**:
 and my sin is *ever before* **continually in front of** me.
 4 Against thee, thee only, have I sinned,
 and *done* **worked** this evil in *thy sight* **thine eyes**:
 that thou mightest be justified
 when thou *speakest* **wordest**,
 and be *clear* **pure** when thou judgest.
 5 Behold, I was *shapen* **writhed** in *iniquity* **perversity**;
 and in sin did my mother conceive me.
 6 Behold, thou desirest truth in the *inward parts* **reins**:
 and in the hidden *part*
 thou shalt *make* **have** me to know wisdom.
 7 Purge **Purify** me with hyssop,
 and I shall be *clean* **purified**:
 wash **launder** me, and I shall be whiter than snow.
 8 Make me to hear
 joy **rejoicing** and *gladness* **cheerfulness**;
 that the bones which thou hast *broken* **crushed**
 may *rejoice* **twirl**.
 9 Hide thy face from my sins,
 and blot **wipe** out all *mine iniquities* **my perversities**.
 10 Create in me a *clean* **pure** heart, O God **Elohim**;
 and renew a *right* **steadfast** spirit within me.
 11 Cast me not away from thy *presence* **face**;
 and take not thy holy spirit from me.
 12 Restore unto me the *joy* **rejoicing** of thy salvation;
 and uphold me with thy free **voluntary** spirit.
 13 Then *will* **shall I** teach *transgressors* **rebels** thy ways;
 and sinners shall *be converted* **return** unto thee.
 14 Deliver **Rescue** me from *bloodguiltiness* **bloods**,
 O God **Elohim**, thou God **Elohim** of my salvation:
 and my tongue
 shall *sing aloud* **shout** of thy *righteousness* **justness**.
 15 O Lord **Adonay**, open thou my lips;
 and my mouth shall *shew forth* **tell** thy *praise* **halal**.
 16 For thou desirest not sacrifice;
 else *would* **should** I give it:
 thou delightest not in *burnt offering* **holocaust**.
 17 The sacrifices of God **Elohim** are a broken spirit:
 a broken and a *contrite* **crushed** heart, O God **Elohim**,
 thou *wilt* **shalt** not despise.
 18 Do good **Well—please** in thy good pleasure
 unto Zion **Siyon**:
 build thou the walls of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
 19 Then shalt thou *be pleased* **delight**
 with *in* the sacrifices of *righteousness* **justness**,
 with *burnt offering* **holocaust**,
 and *whole burnt offering* **total holocaust**:
 then shall they *offer* **holocaust** bullocks
 upon *thine* **thy sacrifice** altar.

52 To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
 Maschil **On Comprehension**,
 A Psalm of David,
 when Doeg the Edomite **Edomiy** came and told Saul **Shaul**,
 and said unto him,
 David is come to the house of Ahimelech **Achi Melech**.
 1 Why *boatest* **halalest** thou thyself in *mischief* **evil**,
 O mighty *man*?
 the *goodness* **mercy** of God **El**
endureth continually **is all day**.
 2 The tongue *deviseth* **mischiefs** **fabricateth calamities**;
 like a *sharp* **sharpened** razor, working deceitfully.

PSALMS 51, 52

exeGes companion BIBLE

51 To His Eminence; Psalm by David:
 when Nathan the prophet comes to him,
 after he went in to Bath Sheba.
 1 Grant me charism, O Elohim,
 according to your mercy;
 according to the abundance of your tender mercies
 wipe out my rebellions:
 2 launder me abundantly from my perversity
 and purify me from my sin:
 3 for I know my rebellions;
 and my sin is continually in front of me.
 4 Against you — you only, I sinned
 and worked this evil in your eyes;
 so that you are just when you word
 and pure when you judge.
 5 Behold, I writhed in perversity;
 and in sin my mother conceived me.
 6 Behold, you desire truth in the reins;
 and in the hidden you have me know wisdom.
 7 Purify me with hyssop, and I am purified;
 launder me, and I am whiter than snow;
 8 have me hear rejoicing and cheerfulness;
 so that the bones you crush twirl.
 9 Hide your face from my sins
 and wipe out all my perversities;
 10 create a pure heart within me, O Elohim;
 and renew a steadfast spirit within me.
 11 Neither cast me from your face;
 nor take your holy spirit from me:
 12 restore to me the rejoicing of your salvation;
 and uphold me with your free voluntary spirit.
 13 I teach rebels your ways;
 and sinners return to you.
 14 Rescue me from bloods, O Elohim
 — Elohim of my salvation;
 and my tongue shouts of your justness:
 15 O Adonay, open my lips;
 and my mouth tells your halal.
 16 For you desire not sacrifice; else I give it:
 you delight not in holocaust.
 17 The sacrifices of Elohim are a broken spirit;
 a broken and a crushed heart, O Elohim,
 you despise not.
 18 Well—please in your good pleasure to Siyon;
 build the walls of Yeru Shalem:
 19 then delight in the sacrifices of justness
 with holocaust and total holocaust;
 then they holocaust bullocks on your sacrifice altar.

52 To His Eminence; On Comprehension:
 By David,
 when Doeg the Edomiy comes and tells Shaul,
 and says to him,
 David came to the house of Achi Melech.
 1 Why halal yourself in evil, O mighty?
 The mercy of El is all day.
 2 The tongue fabricates calamities
 — as a sharpened razor, working deceitfully.

PSALMS 52—54

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 Thou lovest evil more than good;
and *lying* **falsehood**
rather than to *speak* **righteousness word justness**.
Selah.

4 Thou lovest all *devouring* **swallowing** words,
O thou deceitful tongue.

5 God El shall *likewise* **destroy pull thee down**
for ever **in perpetuity**,
he shall take thee away,
and *pluck* **uproot** thee out of thy *dwelling place* **tent**,
and *root* **uproot** thee out of the land of the living.
Selah.

6 The *righteous* **just** also shall see, and *fear* **awe**,
and shall laugh at him:

7 Lo **Behold**, *this is* the *man* **mighty**
that *made set* not God **Elohim** his *strength* **stronghold**;
but *trusted* **confided** in the abundance of his riches,
and strengthened himself in his *wickedness* **calamity**.

8 But I am like a green olive tree
in the house of God **Elohim**:
I *trust* **confide** in the mercy of God **Elohim**
for ever **eternally** and *ever* **eternally**.

9 I *will praise* **shall spread hands unto** thee
for ever **eternally**,
because thou hast *done* **worked** it:
and I *will wait on* **shall await** thy name;
for it is good *before* **in front of** thy *saints* **mercied**.

53

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
upon Mahalath **Stroking**,
Maschil **On Comprehension**, A Psalm of David.

1 The fool hath said in his heart,
There is no God **Elohim**.
Corrupt are they **They have ruined**,
and have done
abominable iniquity **abhorrent wickedness**:
there is none that *doeth* **worketh** good.

2 God **Elohim** looked down from *heaven* **the heavens**
upon the *children* **sons of men** **humanity**,
to see if there were any that *did understand* **discerned**,
that *did* seek God **Elohim**.

3 Every one of them *is gone back* **hath apostatized**:
they are altogether *become* **filthy muddled**;
there is none that *doeth* **worketh** good, no, not one.

4 Have the *workers* **doers of iniquity** **mischief**
no knowledge **not known?**
who eat up my people as they eat bread:
they have not called upon God **Elohim**.

5 *There were they in great fear* **In dreading, they dreaded**,
where no *fear* **dread** was:
for God **Elohim** hath scattered the bones
of him that encampeth against thee:
thou hast *put* **shamed** them *to shame*,
because God **Elohim** hath *despised* **spurned** them.

6 Oh **Who giveth** that the salvation of *Israel* **Yisra El**
were come out of *Zion* **Siyon**!
When God *bringeth* **Elohim turneth** back
the captivity of his people,
Jacob **Yaaqov** shall *rejoice* **twirl**,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** shall *be glad* **cheer**.

54

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
on Neginoth **Strummer**,
Maschil **On Comprehension**, A Psalm of David,
when the *Ziphims* **Ziphiym** came and said to *Saul* **Shaul**,
Doth not David hide himself with us?

1 Save me, O God **Elohim**, by thy name,
and *judge me* **plead my cause** by thy *strength* **might**.

2 Hear my prayer, O God **Elohim**;
give ear **hearken** to the *words* **sayings** of my mouth.

3 For strangers are risen up against me,
and *oppressors* **tyrants** seek after my soul:
they have not set God *before* **Elohim in front of** them.
Selah.

4 Behold, God **Elohim** is mine helper:
the Lord **Adonay** is with them that uphold my soul.

5 He shall *reward* **return** evil
unto mine *enemies* **opponents**:
cut **exterminate** them *off* in thy truth.

PSALMS 52—54

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 You love evil more than good;
and falsehood rather than to word justness.
Selah.

4 You love all swallowing words,
O you deceitful tongue.

5 Also, El pulls you down in perpetuity
— takes you and uproots you from your tent
— uproots you from the land of the living.
Selah.

6 And the just see and awe; and laugh at him:
7 behold the mighty
who sets not Elohim as his stronghold
— who confides in the abundance of his riches
— who strengthens himself in his calamity.

8 And I, as a green olive tree in the house of Elohim,
confide in the mercy of Elohim
eternally and eternally:

9 I spread hands to you eternally, because you work;
and I await your name;
for it is good in front of your mercied.

53

To His Eminence;
On Stroking; On Comprehension: By David.

1 The fool says in his heart, No Elohim!
They ruin and *do* abhorrent wickedness;
no one works good.

2 Elohim, from the heavens,
looks down on the sons of humanity
to see if there are any discerners who seek Elohim.

3 Everyone apostatizes;
they are altogether muddled;
no one works good — no, not one.

4 Know not the doers of mischief
— who eat my people as they eat bread?
— who call not on Elohim?

5 In dreading, they dread where no dread is;
for Elohim scatters the bones
of him who encamps against you;
you shame them; for Elohim spurns them.

6 Who gives the salvation of Yisra El from Siyon?
When Elohim turns back the captivity of his people,
Yaaqov twirls and Yisra El cheers.

54

To His Eminence; On Strummer;
On Comprehension: By David:
when the Ziphim come and say to Shaul,
Hides not David himself with us?

1 Save me, O Elohim, by your name;
plead my cause by your might;

2 hear my prayer, O Elohim;
hearken to the sayings of my mouth:
for strangers rise against me
and tyrants seek after my soul:
they set not Elohim in front of them.
Selah.

4 Behold, Elohim my helper;
Adonay is with them who uphold my soul.

5 Return evil to my opponents;
exterminate them in your truth.

PSALMS 54, 55

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

6 I will freely **shall voluntarily** sacrifice unto thee;
I will praise **shall spread hands unto** thy name,
O LORD **Yah Veh**;
for it is good.
7 For he hath *delivered* **rescued** me
out of all *trouble* **tribulation**:
and mine eye hath seen *his desire* upon mine enemies.

55

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
on Neginoth **Strummer**,
Maschil **A Discerning**, A Psalm of David.
1 Give ear to my prayer, O God **Elohim**;
and *hide* **conceal** not thyself from my supplication.
2 Attend **Hearken** unto me, and *hear me* **answer**:
I mourn **ramble on** in my *complaint* **meditation**,
and *make a noise* **quake**;
3 Because of the voice of the enemy,
because **at the face** of the oppression of the wicked:
for they *cast iniquity* **topple mischief** upon me,
and in wrath they *hate* **oppose** me.
4 My heart is *sore pained* **writheth** within me:
and the terrors of death are fallen upon me.
5 *Fearfulness* **Awe** and trembling are come upon me,
and horror hath *overwhelmed* **covered over** me.
6 And I said, Oh **who giveth**
that I had *wings* **pinions** like a dove!
for then *would* **should** I fly away,
and *be at rest* **tabernacle**.
7 Lo **Behold**, then *would* **should** I wander far off,
and *remain* **stay overnight** in the wilderness.
Selah.
8 I *would* **should** hasten my escape
from the *windy storm* **rushing wind** and *tempest* **storm**.
9 *Destroy* **Swallow**, O Lord **Adonay**,
and divide their tongues:
for I have seen violence and strife in the city.
10 Day and night
they go about it upon **surround** the walls *thereof*:
mischief also and *sorrow* **toil** are in the midst of it.
11 *Wickedness* **Calamity** is in the midst *thereof*:
deceit **fraud** and *guile* **deceit**
depart not from her *streets* **broadways**.
12 For it was not an enemy that reproached me;
then I could have borne it:
neither was it he that hated me
that *did magnify himself* **greatened** against me;
then I *would* **should** have hid myself from him:
13 But *it was* thou, a man mine equal, my *guide* **chiliarch**,
and *mine acquaintance* **whom I know**.
14 We took *sweet* **sweetened private** counsel together,
and walked unto the house of God **Elohim**
in *company* **conspiracy**.
15 Let *death* seize upon **desolations** **deceive** them,
and let them *go down quick* **descend alive**
into *hell* **sheol**:
for wickedness **evil** is in their *dwellings* **sojournings**,
and among them.
16 As for me, I *will* **shall** call upon God **Elohim**;
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall save me.
17 Evening, and morning, and at noon,
will **shall** I pray **meditate**, and *cry aloud* **roar**:
and he shall hear my voice.
18 He hath *delivered* **redeemed** my soul in *peace* **shalom**
from the battle that was against me:
for there *were* **be** many with me.
19 God **El** shall hear, and *afflict* **answer** them,
even he that *abideth* **settletth** of *old* **antiquity**.
Selah.
Because they have no changes,
therefore they *fear* **awe** not God **Elohim**.
20 He hath *put forth* **spread** his hands
against such as be at *peace* **shalom** with him:
he hath *broken* **profaned** his covenant.
21 *The words of his mouth*
were smoother **was more tender** than butter,
but war was in his heart:
his words were softer than *oil* **ointment**,
yet were they *drawn* **swords** **openings**.

PSALMS 54, 55

exeGeses companion BIBLE

6 I voluntarily sacrifice to you;
I spread hands to your name, O Yah Veh;
for it is good.
7 For he rescues me from all tribulation;
and my eye sees my enemies.

55

To His Eminence; On Strummer;
A Discerning: By David.
1 Give ear to my prayer, O Elohim;
conceal not yourself from my supplication:
2 hearken to me and answer;
I ramble on in my meditation and quake
— because of the voice of the enemy
at the face of the oppression of the wicked:
for they topple mischief on me;
in wrath they oppose me.
4 My heart writhes within me
and the terrors of death fall on me:
awe and trembling come on me
and horror covers over me.
6 And I say,
Oh that they give me pinions as a dove!
for then I fly and tabernacle!
7 Behold, then I wander afar
and stay overnight in the wilderness!
Selah.
8 I hasten my escape
from the rushing wind and storm.
9 Swallow them, O Adonay;
divide their tongues:
for I see violence and strife in the city.
10 Day and night they surround the walls;
mischief also and toil are in their midst;
11 calamity is in the midst:
fraud and deceit depart not from her broadways.
12 For neither an enemy reproaches me
— or I had borne it;
nor he who hates me greatens against me;
— or I had hid myself from him:
13 but you — a man my equal,
my chiliarch whom I know.
14 We sweetened private counsel together
— walked to the house of Elohim in conspiracy.
15 Desolations deceive them;
they descend alive into sheol;
evil is in their sojournings among them.
16 As for me, I call on Elohim;
and Yah Veh saves me:
17 evening and morning and noon
I meditate and roar;
and he hears my voice.
18 He redeems my soul in shalom
from the battle against me;
for many are with me:
19 El hears and answers them
— he who settled from antiquity.
Selah.
He neither changes, nor awes Elohim;
20 he spreads his hands
against such as are at shalom with him;
he profanes his covenant;
21 his mouth is more tender than butter
but in his heart, war;
his words are softer than ointment,
yet, openings.

PSALMS 55—57

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

22 Cast thy burden **that which he giveth thee**
upon the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and he shall sustain thee:
he shall **never suffer not give** the **righteous just**
to be moved **totter eternally**.
23 But thou, O **God Elohim**,
shalt bring **descend** them down
into the **pit well of destruction the pit of ruin**:
bloody and deceitful men men of bloods and deceit
shall **not live out half halve** their days;
but I **will trust shall confide** in thee.

56

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
on Jonath—elem—rechokim **The Mute Distant Dove**,
Michtam Poem of David,
when the **Philistines Peleshethiym**
took hold of him in Gath.
1 Be merciful unto me **Grant me charism**, O **God Elohim**:
for man **would swallow should gulp** me up;
he fighting daily oppresseth me.
2 Mine **enemies opponents**
would should daily **swallow gulp** me up:
for they be many that fight against me,
O thou **most High Elyon**.
3 **What time I am afraid The day I awe**,
I **will trust shall confide** in thee.
4 In **God Elohim** I **will praise shall halal** his word,
in **God Elohim** I **have put my trust shall confide**;
I **will shall** not **fear awe**
what flesh **can do shall work** unto me.
5 Every day they **wrest contort** my words:
all their **thoughts fabrications** are against me for evil.
6 They **gather themselves together dodge**,
they **hide themselves**,
they **mark guard** my **steps heelprints**,
when they **wait for await** my soul.
7 Shall they escape by **iniquity mischief**?
in **thine anger cast down thy wrath descend** the people,
O **God Elohim**.
8 Thou **tellest scribest** my wanderings:
put set thou my tears into thy **bottle skin**:
are they not in thy **book scroll**?
9 **When I cry unto thee The day I call**,
then shall mine enemies turn back:
this I know; for **God Elohim** is for me.
10 In **God Elohim**
will I praise his shall I halal the word:
in the **LORD Yah Veh**
will I praise his shall I halal the word.
11 In **God have I put my trust Elohim I confide**:
I **will shall** not be **afraid awe**
what **man can do humanity shall work** unto me.
12 Thy vows are upon me, O **God Elohim**:
I **will render shall shalam**
praises spread hands unto thee.
13 For thou hast **delivered rescued** my soul from death:
wilt shalt not thou **deliver** my feet from falling,
that I may walk **before God at the face of Elohim**
in the light of the living?

57

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
Al—taschith Al Tashcheth/Ruin Not,
Michtam Poem of David,
when he fled from **the face of Saul Shaul** in the cave.
1 Be merciful unto me **Grant me charism**, O **God Elohim**,
be merciful unto me grant me charism:
for my soul **trusteth seeketh refuge** in thee:
yea, in the shadow of thy wings
will I make my shall I seek refuge,
until these calamities be overpast.
2 I **will cry shall call** unto **God most high Elohim Elyon**:
unto **God El**
that **performeth consummateth** all **things** for me.
3 He shall send from **heaven the heavens**,
and save me from the reproach of him
that **would should** swallow **me up after me**.
Selah.

PSALMS 55—57

exeGeses companion BIBLE

22 Cast what he gives you on Yah Veh
and he sustains you;
he gives not the just to totter eternally.
23 And you, O Elohim,
descend them into the well of the pit of ruin;
men of bloods and deceit halve their days;
but I confide in you.

56

To His Eminence; On the Mute Distant Dove;
A Poem by David,
when the Peleshethiym hold him in Gath.
1 Grant me charism, O Elohim, for man gulps me;
fighting daily, he oppresses me:
2 my opponents gulp me daily;
for they are many who fight against me, O Elyon.
3 The day I awe, I confide in you:
4 In Elohim I halal his word; in Elohim I confide:
I awe not what flesh works to me.
5 Every day they contort my words;
all their fabrications are against me for evil.
6 They dodge; they hide;
they guard my heelprints; they await my soul;
7 they escape by mischief:
in wrath the people descend, O Elohim.
8 You scribe my wanderings
— set my tears into your scroll;
are they not in your scroll?
9 The day I call, my enemies turn back:
this I know; for Elohim is for me.
10 In Elohim, I halal the word;
in Yah Veh, I halal the word;
11 in Elohim, I confide:
I awe not what humanity works to me.
12 Your vows are on me, O Elohim;
I shalam spread hands to you:
13 for you rescue my soul from death.
Do you not also my feet from falling
— so that I walk at the face of Elohim
in the light of the living?

57

To His Eminence; Al Tashcheth/Ruin Not:
A Poem by David,
as he flees the face of Shaul in the cave.
1 Grant me charism, O Elohim; grant me charism;
for my soul seeks refuge in you:
yes, in the shadow of your wings I seek refuge
until these calamities overpass.
2 I call to Elohim Elyon
— to El who consummates all for me.
3 He sends from the heavens and saves me
from the reproach of him who swallows after me.
Selah.

PSALMS 57—59

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 God **Elohim** shall send forth his mercy and his truth.
 My soul is among **roaring** lions:
 and I lie even among them that are *set on fire* **inflamed**,
 even the sons of *men* **humanity**,
 whose teeth are spears and arrows,
 and their tongue a sharp sword.

5 Be thou *exalted* **lofted**, O God **Elohim**,
 above the heavens;
let thy glory be **thy honour**
 above all the earth.

6 They have prepared a net for my steps;
 my soul is bowed down:
 they have digged a pit *before me* **at my face**,
 into the midst whereof they are fallen *themselves*.
 Selah.

7 My heart is *fixed* **prepared**, O God **Elohim**,
 my heart is *fixed* **prepared**:
 I *will* **shall** sing and *give* **praise psalm**.
 Awake up, my *glory* **honour**;
 awake, *psaltery* **bagpipe** and harp:
 I *myself* *will* **shall** awake early.

9 I *will* **praise shall** spread hands unto thee,
 O Lord **Adonay**, among the people:
 I *will* **sing shall** psalm unto thee among the nations.
 For thy mercy is great unto the heavens,
 and thy truth unto the *clouds* **vapours**.

11 Be thou *exalted* **lofted**, O God **Elohim**,
 above the heavens:
let thy glory be **thy honour**
 above all the earth.

58

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
Al—taschith **Al Tashcheth/Ruin Not**,
Michtam **Poem** of David.

1 Do **Truly, word** ye indeed *speak* **righteousness justness**,
 O congregation **mute**?
do ye judge uprightly **judge ye in straightnesses**,
 O ye sons of *men* **humanity**?

2 Yea, in heart ye *work* **do** wickedness;
 ye weigh the violence of your hands in the earth.

3 The wicked are estranged from the womb:
 they *go astray* **stray**
 as soon as they *be born* **from the belly**,
 speaking **wording** lies.

4 Their poison is like the poison of a serpent:
 they are like the deaf *adder* **asp**
 that *stoppeth* **shutteth** her ear;

5 Which *will* **shall** not hearken to the voice of charmers,
 charming *never* **charms** so wisely.

6 Break their teeth, O God **Elohim**, in their mouth:
 break **pull** out the *great* **grinder** teeth
 of the *young* **lions** **whelps**, O LORD **Yah Veh**.

7 Let them *melt away* **dissipate** as waters
 which *run* **pass** continually:
 when he *bendeth his bow* to shoot **aimeth** his arrows,
 let them be as cut *in pieces* **off**.

8 As a snail *which melteth* **dissolveth**,
 let every *one* of them pass away:
 like the *untimely* **birth** **miscarriage** of a woman,
 that they may not see the sun.

9 Before your *pots* can *feel* **caldrons** discern the thorns,
 he shall *take* **whirl** them away as with a *whirlwind*,
 both *living* **alive**, and in his *wrath* **fuming**.

10 The *righteous* **just** shall rejoice **cheer**
 when he seeth the *vengeance* **avengement**:
 he shall wash his *feet* **steps** in the blood of the wicked.

11 So that a *man* **humanity** shall say,
 Verily there is a *reward* **fruit** for the *righteous* **just**:
 verily he is a God **Elohim** that judgeth in the earth.

59

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
Al—taschith **Al Tashcheth/Ruin Not**,
Michtam **Poem** of David;
 when *Saul* **Shaul** sent,
 and they *watched* **guarded** the house to *kill* **deathify** him.

1 Deliver **Rescue** me from mine enemies,
 O my God **Elohim**:
 defend **loft** me from them that rise up against me.

PSALMS 57—59

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Elohim sends his mercy and his truth.
 4 My soul is among roaring lions;
 and I lie among the inflamed
 — the sons of humanity
 whose teeth are spears and arrows
 and their tongue a sharp sword.

5 Be lofted, O Elohim, above the heavens;
 your honor above all the earth.

6 They prepare a net for my steps;
 I bow my soul:
 they dug a pit at my face;
 they fall into its midst.
 Selah.

7 My heart is prepared, O Elohim;
 my heart is prepared:
 I sing and psalm.
 Waken, my honor!
 Waken, bagpipe and harp!
 I waken early.

9 I spread hands to you, O Adonay,
 among the people;
 I psalm to you among the nations.
 For your mercy is great to the heavens
 and your truth to the vapours.

11 Be lofted, O Elohim, above the heavens;
 your honor above all the earth.

58

To His Eminence; Al Tashcheth/Ruin Not:
 A Poem by David.

1 Is it true that you word justness, O mute?
 — judge in straightnesses, O you sons of humanity?

2 Yes, in heart you do wickedness;
 you weigh the violence of your hands in the earth.

3 The wicked estrange from the womb;
 they stray from the belly, wording lies:
 their poison is as the poison of a serpent;
 as the deaf asp who shuts her ear

4 — who hearkens not to the voice of charmers,
 charming charms so wisely.

5 O Elohim, break their teeth in their mouth;
 pull out the grinder teeth of the whelps, O Yah Veh;
 dissipate them as waters which pass continually;
 he aims his arrows as though they are cut off:
 as a snail dissolving,
 they pass away;
 as the miscarriage of a woman,
 they see not the sun.

9 Ere your caldrons discern the thorns,
 he whirls them away, alive and fuming.

10 The just cheers when he sees the avengement;
 he washes his steps in the blood of the wicked.

11 So that humanity says,
 Surely there is a fruit for the just;
 surely Elohim judges in the earth.

59

To His Eminence; Al Tashcheth/Ruin Not:
 A Poem by David;
 when Shaul sends
 and they guard the house to deathify him.

1 Rescue me from my enemies, O my Elohim;
 loft me from them who rise:

PSALMS 59, 60

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 Deliver **Rescue** me
from the *workers doers of iniquity mischief*,
and save me from *bloody men men of blood*.
3 For, *lo behold*, they *lie in wait lurk* for my soul:
the *mighty are gathered strong dodge* against me;
not for my *transgression rebellion*,
nor for my sin, O *LORD Yah Veh*.
4 They run and prepare themselves
without my *fault perversity*:
awake to *help meet* me, and *behold see*.
5 Thou therefore,
O *LORD God of hosts Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth*,
the *God Elohim of Israel Yisra El*,
awake to visit all the *heathen goyim*:
be *grant not merciful charism*
to any *wicked transgressors who deal covertly*.
Selah.
6 They return at evening:
they *make a noise roar* like a dog,
and go round about the city.
7 Behold, they *belch gush out* with their mouth:
swords are in their lips: for who, *say they*, doth hear?
8 But thou, O *LORD Yah Veh*, shalt laugh at them;
thou shalt *have deride* all the *heathen in derision goyim*.
9 *Because of his strength O my Strength*,
will I wait upon shall I regard thee:
for *God Elohim* is my *defence secure loft*.
10 The *God Elohim* of my mercy
shall *prevent anticipate* me:
God Elohim shall *let have* me see *my desire upon*
mine *enemies opponents*.
11 *Slay Slaughter* them not, lest my people forget:
scatter stagger them by thy *power valour*;
and *bring topple* them down,
O *Lord Adonay* our *shield buckler*.
12 For the sin of their mouth and the words of their lips
let them even be *taken captured* in their *pride pomp*:
and for *cursing oathing* and *lying deception*
which they *speak scribe*.
13 *Consume Finish* them off in *wrath fury*,
consume finish them off, that they may not be:
and let them know
that *God ruleth Elohim reigneth* in *Jacob Yaaqov*
unto the *ends finality* of the earth.
Selah.
14 And at evening *let them they* return;
and *let them make a noise they roar* like a dog,
and go round about the city.
15 *Let them They* wander up and down *for meat to eat*,
and *grudge murmer* if they be not satisfied.
16 But I *will shall* sing of thy power;
yea, I *will sing aloud shall shout* of thy mercy
in the morning:
for thou hast been my *defence secure loft*
and *refuge retreat*
in the day of my *trouble tribulation*.
17 Unto thee, O my strength, *will shall* I sing:
for *God Elohim* is my *defence secure loft*,
and the *God Elohim* of my mercy.

60

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
upon *Shushan—eduth Trumpet of Witness*,
Michtam Poem of David,
when he strove with *Aram—naharaim Aram Naharaim*
and with *Aram—zobah Aram Sobah*,
when *Joab Yah Ab* returned,
and smote of Edom
in the *valley of salt Valley of Salt/Gay Melach*
twelve thousand.
1 O *God Elohim*, thou hast cast us off,
thou hast *scattered breached* us,
thou hast been *displeased angry*;
O *turn thyself return* to us again.
2 Thou hast *made quaked* the earth to tremble;
thou hast broken it:
heal the breaches *thereof*; for it *shaketh tottereth*.

PSALMS 59, 60

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 rescue me from the doers of mischief
and save me from men of blood.
3 For, behold, they lurk for my soul;
the strong dodge against me:
neither for my rebellion,
nor for my sin, O Yah Veh.
4 Without perversity
they run and prepare themselves;
they waken to meet me and see.
5 And You, O Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth,
Elohim of Yisra El,
Waken to visit all the goyim;
grant not charism to any who deal covertly.
Selah.
6 They return at evening:
they roar as a dog and go all around the city:
behold, they gush with their mouth;
swords are in their lips: Who hears?
7 And you, O Yah Veh, laugh at them;
you deride all the goyim.
8 O my Strength, I regard you;
for Elohim is my secure loft.
9 The Elohim of my mercy anticipates me;
Elohim shows my opponents.
10 Slaughter them not, lest my people forget;
stagger them by your valour:
and topple them, O Adonay our buckler.
11 The sin of their mouth is the words of their lips
— captured in their own pomp;
and for oathing and deception which they scribe.
12 Finish them off in fury,
finish them off, that they are not;
and so they know that Elohim reigns in Yaaqov
to the finality of the earth.
Selah.
13 And at evening they return;
they roar like a dog and go all around the city:
they wander to eat
and murmer if they are not satisfied.
14 And I — I sing of your power;
yes, I shout of your mercy in the morning:
for being my secure loft and retreat
in the day of my tribulation.
15 To you, O my strength, I sing;
for Elohim is my secure loft
— Elohim of my mercy.

60

To His Eminence; On Trumpet of Witness:
A Poem by David,
when he strives
with Aram Naharaim and with Aram Sobah,
when Yah Ab returns
and smites twelve thousand of Edom
in the Valley of Salt/Gay Melach.
1 O Elohim, you cast us off;
you breached us; you angered:
O return to us!
2 You quaked the earth; you broke it:
heal the breaches; for it totters:

PSALMS 60—62

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 Thou hast *shewed* **had** thy people
hard things **see hardship**:
thou hast made us to drink
the wine of *astonishment* **staggering**.
4 Thou hast given a *banner* **an ensign**
to them that *fear* **awe** thee,
that it may *be displayed* **flutter**
because **at the face of the truth** *trueness*.
Selah.
5 That thy beloved may be *delivered* **rescued**;
save with thy right *hand*, and *hear me* **answer**.
6 God **Elohim** hath spoken in his holiness;
I will *rejoice* **shall jump for joy**,
I will *divide* **shall allot** Shechem,
and *mete* **measure** out
the valley of *Succoth* **Sukkoth/Brush Arbors**.
7 *Gilead* **Gilad** is mine,
and *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** is mine;
Ephraim **Ephrayim** also
is the *strength* **stronghold** of mine head;
Judah **Yah Hudah** is my *lawgiver* **statute setter**;
8 *Moab* is my *wash pot* **bath caldron**;
over Edom *will* **shall** I cast out my shoe:
Philistia **Pelesheth**, *triumph* **shout** thou because of me.
9 Who *will* **shall** bring me
into the *strong* city **with rampart**?
who *will* **shall** lead me into Edom?
10 *Wilt* **Shalt** not thou, O *God* **Elohim**,
which hadst cast us off?
and thou, O *God* **Elohim**,
which didst not go out with our *armies* **hosts**?
11 Give us help from *trouble* **tribulation**:
for vain is the *help* **salvation** of *man* **humanity**.
12 Through *God* **Elohim** we shall *do* **work** valiantly:
for he it is
that shall *tread down* **trample** our *enemies* **tribulators**.

61

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
upon *Neginah* **Strings**,
A Psalm of David.
1 Hear my *cry* **shouting**, O *God* **Elohim**;
attend **hearken** unto my prayer.
2 From the end of the earth
will I cry **shall I call** unto thee,
when my heart *is overwhelmed* **languisheth**:
lead me to the rock that is *higher* **loftier** than I.
3 For thou hast been a *shelter* **refuge** for me,
and a *strong tower* **a tower of strength**
from **the face of** the enemy.
4 I *will abide* **shall sojourn** in thy *tabernacle* **tent**
for ever **eternally**:
I *will trust* **shall seek** *refuge* in the covert of thy wings.
Selah.
5 For thou, O *God* **Elohim**, hast heard my vows:
thou hast given me the *heritage* **possession**
of those that *fear* **awe** thy name.
6 Thou *wilt prolong* **shalt add**
to the king's life *sovereign's* **days**:
and **to his years**
as *many generations* **generation to generation**.
7 He shall *abide before* *God* **settle at the face of Elohim**
for ever **eternally**:
O *prepare* **number** mercy and truth,
which may *preserve* **guard** him.
8 So *will I sing praise* **shall I psalm** unto thy name
for ever **eternally**,
that I may *daily perform* **day by day shalam** my vows.

62

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
to *Jeduthun* **Yeduthun/A Laudatory**, A Psalm of David.
1 Truly my soul *waiteth upon* *God* **is silent unto Elohim**:
from him *cometh* **be** my salvation.
2 He only is my rock and my salvation;
he is my defence **my secure loft**;
I shall not *be* **totter** greatly *moved*.

PSALMS 60—62

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 You had your people see hardship;
you had us drink the wine of staggering;
4 you gave an ensign to them who awe you,
to flutter at the face of trueness.
Selah.
5 So as to rescue your beloved
save *with* your right and answer:
6 Elohim speaks in his holiness;
I jump for joy; I allot Shechem
— measure out the valley of Sukkoth/Brush Arbors.
7 Gilad *is* mine and Menash Sheh *is* mine;
and Ephrayim *is* the stronghold of my head:
Yah Hudah *is* my statute setter;
8 Moab *is* my bath caldron;
over Edom I cast my shoe;
Pelesheth, shout because of me.
9 Who brings me to the city with rampart?
Who leads me into Edom?
10 Is it not you, O Elohim?
Cast you us, O Elohim?
Go you not with our hosts?
11 Give us help from tribulation;
for vain is the salvation of humanity:
12 through Elohim we work valiantly;
for he tramples our tribulators.
61 To His Eminence; On Strings: By David.
1 Hear my shouting, O Elohim;
hearken to my prayer.
2 From the end of the earth I call to you;
my heart languishes:
3 lead me to the rock that is loftier than I.
4 For you are a refuge for me
— a tower of strength from the face of the enemy:
I sojourn in your tent eternally;
I seek refuge in the covert of your wings.
Selah.
5 For you, O Elohim, hear my vows;
you give me the possession
of them who awe your name.
6 You add days to the sovereign;
and years generation to generation.
7 He settles eternally at the face of Elohim;
O number mercy and truth to guard him.
8 Thus I psalm to your name eternally;
day by day I shalam my vows.

62

To His Eminence; Yeduthun/A Laudatory:
A Psalm by David.
1 Truly my soul is silent to Elohim;
— from him *is* my salvation:
2 he only is my rock and my salvation;
my secure loft; I totter not greatly.

PSALMS 62—64

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 How long *will shall* ye
imagine mischief **assail** against a man?
ye shall be *slain murdered* all of you:
as a *bowing spread* wall *shall ye be*,
and as a *tottering fence* — **an overthrown wall**.
4 They only *consult counsel*
to cast **drive** him down from his *excellency exaltation*:
they *delight in lies lie to please*:
they bless with their mouth,
but they **curse abase** inwardly.
Selah.
5 My soul, *wait hush* thou only upon *God Elohim*;
for my *expectation hope* is from him.
6 He only is my rock and my salvation:
he is my defence my secure loft;
I shall not be *moved totter*.
7 In *God Elohim* is my salvation and my *glory honour*:
the rock of my strength, *and my refuge*,
is in *God Elohim*.
8 *Trust Confide* in him at all times;
ye people, pour out your heart *before him at his face*:
God Elohim is a refuge for us.
Selah.
9 Surely *men of low degree sons of humanity* are vanity,
and *men of high degree sons of men* are a lie:
to be *laid ascended* in the balance,
they are altogether *lighter than vanity vain*.
10 *Trust Confide* not in oppression,
and become not vain in robbery:
if *riches increase thy valuables flourish*,
set not your heart *upon them*.
11 *God Elohim* hath *spoken worded* once;
twice have I heard this;
that *power belongeth unto God strength be with Elohim*.
12 Also unto thee, O *Lord Adonay*, *belongeth mercy*:
for thou *renderest shalt shalam*
to every man **each** according to his work.

63

A Psalm of David,
when he was in the wilderness of *Judah Yah Hudah*.
1 O *God Elohim*, thou art my *God El*;
early *will shall* I seek thee:
my soul thirsteth for thee,
my flesh *longeth yearneth* for thee
in a *dry parched and thirsty languid* land,
where no without water is;
2 To see thy *power strength* and thy *glory honour*,
so as **thus** I have seen thee in the *sanctuary holies*.
3 Because thy *lovingkindness mercy* is better than life,
my lips shall *praise laud* thee.
4 Thus *will shall* I bless thee while I live:
I *will shall* lift up my *hands palms* in thy name.
5 My soul shall be satisfied
as with *marrow and fatness fat*;
and my mouth shall *praise halal* thee
with *joyful shouting* lips:
6 When I remember thee upon my bed,
and meditate on thee in the *night watches*.
7 Because thou hast been my help,
therefore in the shadow of thy wings
will I rejoice shall I shout.
8 My soul *followeth hard adhereth* after thee:
thy right *hand* upholdeth me.
9 But those that seek my soul, to *destroy it devastation*,
shall go into the *lower parts of the nethermost* earth.
10 They shall *fall flow* by the *hands of the sword*:
they shall be a *portion become an allotment* for foxes.
11 But the *king sovereign*
shall *rejoice cheer* in *God Elohim*;
every one that *swareth oatheth* by him shall *glory halal*:
but the mouth of them that *speak lies word falsehoods*
shall be *stopped shut*.

64

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
A Psalm of David.
1 Hear my voice, O *God Elohim*,
in my *prayer meditation*:
preserve guard my life
from *fear dread* of the enemy.

PSALMS 62—64

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 Until when assail you against a man?
you are murdered — all of you
— as a wall spread — a wall overthrown.
4 Surely
they counsel to drive him from his exaltation;
they lie to please:
with their mouth, they bless;
but inwardly, abase.
Selah.
5 My soul, hush only on Elohim;
for my hope is from him:
6 Surely he is my rock and my salvation;
my secure loft; I totter not:
7 in Elohim is my salvation and my honor;
the rock of my strength:
my refuge is in Elohim.
8 Confide in him at all times, you people;
pour out your heart at his face:
Elohim is our refuge.
Selah.
9 Surely sons of humanity are vanity
and sons of men a lie;
they ascend in the balance — altogether vain.
10 Neither confide in oppression nor rob in vain;
if your valuables flourish, set not your heart.
11 Elohim worded once;
twice I heard this;
that strength is with Elohim;
and with you, O Adonay, mercy:
for you shalam each according to his work.

63

A Psalm by David:
when he is in the wilderness of Yah Hudah.
1 O Elohim, you are my El;
I seek you early;
my soul thirsts for you — my flesh yearns for you
in a parched and languid land without water;
2 I see you in the holies
— see your strength and your honor.
3 Because your mercy is better than life,
my lips laud you.
4 Thus I bless you while I live;
I lift my palms in your name:
5 my soul is satisfied as marrow and fat
and my mouth halals with shouting lips:
6 when I remember you on my bed
I meditate on you in the watches:
7 for you are my help;
in the shadow of your wings, I shout:
8 my soul adheres after you;
your right upholds me.
9 And they who seek to devastate my soul
go into the nethermost earth:
10 they flow by the hands of the sword
— an allotment for foxes:
11 and the sovereign cheers in Elohim;
every one who oaths by him halals:
but the mouth of them who word falsehoods, shuts.

64

To His Eminence: A Psalm by David.
1 Hear my voice, O Elohim, in my meditation;
guard my life from dread of the enemy:

PSALMS 64, 65

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

2 Hide me
from the *secret private* counsel of the *wicked vilifiers*;
from the *insurrection conspiracy*
of the *workers doers of iniquity mischief*;
3 Who *whet pointen* their tongue like a sword,
and *bend their bows to shoot aim* their arrows,
even bitter words:
4 That they may shoot *in secret from the coverts*
at the *perfect integrious*:
suddenly *do* they shoot at him, and *fear awe* not.
5 They *encourage strengthen* themselves
in an *evil matter word*:
they *commune scribe* of *laying hiding* snares *privily*;
they say, Who shall see *them*?
6 They search out *iniquities wickednesses*;
in searching,
they *accomplish consummate* a *diligent search*:
both the inward *thought of every one of them man*
and the heart, is deep.
7 But *God Elohim* shall shoot at them with an arrow;
suddenly shall they be *wounded struck*.
8 So they shall *make trip upon* their own tongue
to fall upon themselves:
all that see them shall flee away.
9 And all *man humanity* shall *fear awe*,
and shall *declare tell* the *work deeds of God Elohim*;
for they shall
wisely consider of comprehend his *doing work*.
10 The *righteous just* shall be *glad cheer*
in the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and shall *trust seek refuge* in him;
and all the *upright straight* in heart shall *glory halal*.

65

To the *chief Musician His Eminence*,
A Psalm, and Song of David.
1 Praise *waiteth Halal is silent* for thee,
O *God Elohim*, in *Sion Siyon*:
and unto thee shall *they shalam* the *vow be performed*.
2 O thou that hearest prayer,
unto thee shall all flesh come.
3 *Iniquities Words of perversities*
prevail *mightily* against me:
as for our *transgressions rebellions*,
thou shalt *purge kapar/atone* them away.
4 *Blessed is the man Blithe* — *they* whom thou choosest,
and *causeth to approach drawest nigh* unto thee,
that he may *dwell tabernacle* in thy courts:
we shall be satisfied with the goodness of thy house,
even of thy holy *temple manse*.
5 *By terrible things in righteousness In awesome justness*
wilt shalt thou answer us,
O *God Elohim* of our salvation;
who art the confidence of all the ends of the earth,
and of them that are afar off upon the sea:
6 Which by his *strength force*
setteth fast establisheth the mountains;
being girded with power might:
7 Which *stilleth laudeth* the *noise roaring* of the seas,
the *noise roaring* of their waves,
and the *tumult roar* of the *people nations*.
8 They also
that *dwell settle* in the *uttermost parts extremities*
are afraid awe at thy *tokens signs*:
thou makest the *outgoings risings*
of the morning and evening to *rejoice shout*.
9 Thou visitest the earth, and *waterest overflowest* it:
thou greatly enrichest it
with the *river rivulet* of *God Elohim*,
which is — full of water:
thou preparest them *corn crop*,
when thou hast so *provided prepared* for it.
10 Thou *waterest saturatest* the *ridges furrows*
thereof abundantly:
thou *settlest descendest in* the furrows *thereof*:
thou *makest dissolvest* it *soft* with showers:
thou blessest the *springing sprouting* thereof.
11 Thou crownest the year with thy goodness;
and thy *paths drop routes drip* fatness.

PSALMS 64, 65

exeGeses companion BIBLE

2 hide me from the private counsel of vilifiers
— from the conspiracy of doers of mischief
3 who pointen their tongue as a sword
and aim their arrows, bitter words:
4 to shoot the integrious from the coverts;
shoot suddenly, and not awe.
5 They strengthen themselves in an evil word;
they scribe of hiding snares:
they say, Who sees?
6 They search for wickednesses;
in searching, they consummate a search:
both the inward man and the heart is deep.
7 And Elohim shoots them an arrow;
suddenly they are struck:
8 they trip on their own tongue;
all who see them flee.
9 All humanity awes and tells the deeds of Elohim;
for they comprehend his work:
10 the just cheer in Yah Veh
and seek refuge in him;
and all the straight in heart halal.
65 To His Eminence; A Psalm: A Song by David.
1 Silence to you! Halal O Elohim, in Siyon!
And to you, shalam the vow!
2 O you who hears prayer, to whom all flesh comes.
3 Words of perversities prevail mightily against me;
as for our rebellions, you kapar/atone them.
4 Blithe — they whom you choose and draw near
to tabernacle in your courts:
we satisfy with the goodness of your house
— your holy manse.
5 In awesome justness you answer us,
O Elohim of our salvation;
the confidence of all the ends of the earth
and of them afar off on the sea:
6 who by his force establishes the mountains;
girt with might:
7 who lauds the roaring of the seas
the roaring of their waves
and the roar of the nations.
8 And they who settle in the extremities
awe at your signs;
the risings of the morning and evening
you cause to shout.
9 You visit the earth and overflow it;
you greatly enrich it with the rivulet of Elohim
— full of water:
you prepare them crop
when you thus prepare for it:
10 you saturate the furrows;
you descend in the furrows;
you dissolve it with showers;
you bless the sprouting:
11 you crown the year with your goodness;
and your routes drip fatness.

PSALMS 65—67

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 They drop **drip**
upon the *pastures* **folds** of the wilderness;
and the *little hills* **mountains**
rejoice on every *side* **are girt with twirling round about.**
13 The *pastures* **rams**
are *clothed* **enrobed** with flocks;
the valleys also
are *covered over* **shrouded** with *corn* **grain**;
they shout for joy, they also sing.

66

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
A Song or Psalm.
1 Make a joyful noise **Shout ye** unto God **Elohim**,
all ye *lands* **earth**:
2 Sing **Psalm** forth the honour of his name:
make **set** his *praise* **glorious** **halal** **honoured**.
3 Say unto God **Elohim**,
How *terrible art thou in* **awesome** thy works!
through the greatness of thy *power* **strength**
shall thine enemies *submit themselves* **emaciate** unto thee.
4 All the earth shall *worship* **prostrate unto** thee,
and shall *sing* **psalm** unto thee;
they shall *sing to* **psalm** thy name.
Selah.
5 Come and see the *works* **deeds** of God **Elohim**:
he is terrible in his doing **his awesome exploits**
toward the *children* **sons of men** **humanity**.
6 He turned the sea into dry *land*:
they *went* **passed** through the *flood* **river** on foot:
there did we *rejoice* **cheer** in him.
7 He *ruleth* **reigneth** by his *power* **might**
for ever **eternally**;
his eyes *behold* **watch** the *nations* **goyim**:
let not the *rebellious* **exalt** **revolters** **loft** themselves.
Selah.
8 O bless our God **Elohim**, ye people,
and *make* **have them hear**
the voice of his *praise* **halal** *to be heard*:
9 Which *holdeth* **setteth** our soul in life,
and *suffereth* **giveth** not our feet to *be moved* **topple**.
10 For thou, O God **Elohim**, hast *proved* **proofed** us:
thou hast *tried* **refined** us, as silver is *tried* **refined**.
11 Thou broughtest us into the *net* **stronghold**;
thou *laidst affliction* **settest oppression** upon our loins.
12 Thou hast caused men to ride over our heads;
we went through fire and *through* **water**:
but thou broughtest us out *into a wealthy place* **satiated**.
13 I *will* **shall** go into thy house
with *burnt offerings* **holocausts**:
I *will pay* **shall shalam** thee my vows,
14 Which my lips have *uttered* **gasp**,
and my mouth hath *spoken* **worded**,
when I was in *trouble* **tribulation**.
15 I *will offer* **shall holocaust** unto thee
burnt sacrifices **holocausts** of fatlings,
with the incense of rams;
I *will offer* **shall work** bullocks with **he** goats.
Selah.
16 Come and hear, all ye that *fear* God **awe Elohim**,
and I *will declare* **shall scribe**
what he hath *done* **worked** for my soul.
17 I *cried* **called** unto him with my mouth,
and he was *extolled with* **exalted under** my tongue.
18 If I *regard iniquity* **see mischief** in my heart,
the Lord will **Adonay shall** not hear me:
19 *But verily God* **Surely Elohim** hath heard me;
he hath *attended* **hearkened** to the voice of my prayer.
20 Blessed be God **Elohim**,
which hath not turned away my prayer,
nor his mercy from me.

67

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
on Neginoth **Strummer**,
A Psalm or Song.
1 God be merciful **Elohim grant charism** unto us,
and bless us;
and cause his face to *shine* **lighten** upon us;
Selah.

PSALMS 65—67

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 They drip on the folds of the wilderness;
and the mountains gird with twirling all around:
13 the rams enrobe with flocks;
and the valleys shroud with grain.
They shout! They sing!

66

To His Eminence: A Song: A Psalm.
1 Shout to Elohim, all you earth;
2 psalm forth the honor of his name;
set his halal honored.
3 Say to Elohim, How awesome your works!
Through the greatness of your strength
your enemies emaciate to you:
4 all the earth prostrates to you and psalms to you;
they psalm your name.
Selah.
5 Come and see the deeds of Elohim;
his awesome exploits toward the sons of humanity.
6 He turned the sea into dry;
they passed through the river on foot:
there we cheered in him.
7 He reigns by his might eternally;
his eyes watch the goyim:
the revolters loft not themselves.
Selah.
8 O bless our Elohim, you people;
hear the voice of his halal
9 — who sets our soul in life
and gives that our feet topple not.
10 For you, O Elohim, proof us;
you refine us as refined silver;
11 you bring us to the stronghold;
you set oppression on our loins;
12 you ride men over our heads:
we go through fire and water;
but you bring us out satiated.
13 I enter your house with holocausts;
I shalam you my vows:
14 my lips gasp
and my mouth words in my tribulation:
15 I holocaust to you
holocausts of fatlings with the incense of rams;
I work bullocks with he goats.
Selah.
16 Come and hear, all you who awe Elohim;
and I scribe what he works for my soul.
17 I call to him with my mouth
and exalt him under my tongue.
18 If I see mischief in my heart
Adonay hears me not:
19 surely Elohim hears;
he hearkens to the voice of my prayer.
20 Blessed — Elohim,
who neither turns away my prayer,
nor his mercy from me.
67 To His Eminence; On Strummer:
A Psalm; a Song.
1 Elohim grants us charism and blesses us;
and lightens his face on us;
Selah.

PSALMS 67, 68

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

2 That thy way may be known upon earth,
thy *saving health* **salvation** among all *nations* **goyim**.
3 Let the people *praise* **spread hands unto** thee,
O *God* **Elohim**;
let all the people *praise* **spread hands unto** thee.
4 O let the nations *be glad* **cheer** and *sing for joy* **shout**:
for thou shalt judge the people *righteously* **straightly**,
and *govern* **lead** the nations upon earth.
Selah.
5 Let the people *praise* **spread hands unto** thee,
O *God* **Elohim**;
let all the people *praise* **spread hands unto** thee.
6 Then shall the earth *yield* **give** her *increase* **produce**;
and *God* **Elohim**,
even our own God **our Elohim**, shall bless us.
7 *God* **Elohim** shall bless us;
and all the *ends* **finality** of the earth shall *fear* **awe** him.

68

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
on *Neginoth* **Strummer**,
A Psalm or Song of David.
1 Let *God* **Elohim** arise, let his enemies be scattered:
let them also that hate him flee *before him* **from his face**.
2 As smoke is *driven away* **dispersed**, so drive them away:
as wax melteth *before* **at the face of** the fire,
so let the wicked *perish* **destruct**
at the *presence* **face** of *God* **Elohim**.
3 *But let the righteous be glad* **The just cheer**;
let them rejoice **they jump for joy**
before God **at the face of Elohim**:
yea, let them exceedingly **they cheerfully** rejoice.
4 Sing unto *God* **Elohim**, *sing praises* **psalm** to his name:
extol him that rideth upon the *heavens* **plains**
by his name *JAH* **Yah**,
and *rejoice before him* **jump for joy at his face**.
5 A father of the *fatherless* **orphan**,
and a *judge of* **pleader for** the widows,
is *God* **Elohim** in his holy habitation.
6 *God* **Elohim** setteth the *solitary* **lonely**
in *families* **households**:
he bringeth out those which are bound
with chains **into prosperity**:
but the *rebellious* **revolting**
dwell in a *dry land* **parch**.
7 O *God* **Elohim**,
when thou wentest forth
before **at the face of** thy people,
when thou *didst march* **pacest**
through the *wilderness* **desolation**;
Selah:
8 The earth *shook* **quaked**,
the heavens also dropped
at the *presence* **face** of *God* **Elohim**:
even Sinai itself was moved **thus also Sinai**
at the *presence* **face** of *God* **Elohim**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Ysra El**.
9 Thou, O *God* **Elohim**,
didst send a plentiful rain
hast shaken an abundant downpour,
whereby thou *didst confirm* **establishest** thine inheritance,
when it was *weary* **wearied**.
10 Thy *congregation hath dwelt therein* **lives have settled**:
thou, O *God* **Elohim**,
hast prepared of thy goodness for the *poor* **humble**.
11 *The Lord* **Adonay** gave the *word* **saying**:
great was the *company of those* **host**
that *published* **evangelized** it.
12 *Kings of armies did flee apace*
In fleeing, sovereigns of hosts fled:
and she that *tarried* **whose habitation of rest is** at home
divided **allotted** the spoil.
13 Though ye have *lien lain* among the *pots* **stalls**,
yet shall ye be as the
as wings of a dove covered with silver,
and her *feathers* **as pinions** with *yellow gold* **green ore**.
14 When the *Almighty* **Shadday**
scattered kings **spread sovereigns** in it,
it was *white as snow* **snowwhite** in Salmon.

PSALMS 67, 68

exeGeses companion BIBLE

2 That your way be known on earth
and your salvation among all goyim.
3 The people spread hands to you, O Elohim;
all the people spread hands to you:
the nations cheer and shout;
for you judge the people straightly
and lead the nations on earth.
Selah.
5 The people spread hands to you, O Elohim;
all the people spread hands to you:
the earth gives her produce;
and Elohim — our Elohim, blesses us
— Elohim blesses us:
and all the finality of the earth awes him.

68

To His Eminence; On Strummer:
A Psalm; a Song by David.
1 Elohim rises; his enemies scatter:
they who hate him flee from his face.
2 As smoke disperses, driven away;
as wax melts at the face of the fire;
the wicked destruct at the face of Elohim:
the just cheer;
they jump for joy at the face of Elohim;
they cheerfully rejoice.
4 Sing to Elohim! Psalm to his name!
Extol him who rides on the plains,
by his name Yah;
and jump for joy at his face.
5 Father of the orphan; pleader for the widows:
Elohim in his holy habitation.
6 Elohim sets the lonely in households;
he brings the bound into prosperity:
but they who revolt dwell in a parch.
7 O Elohim;
as you come at the face of your people,
as you pace them through the desolation;
Selah.
8 The earth quakes;
yes, the heavens drop at the face of Elohim;
thus also Sinai at the face of Elohim,
O Elohim of Ysra El.
9 You, O Elohim,
shake an abundant downpour,
whereby you established your inheritance
when it wearies.
10 Your living settle therein;
you, O Elohim, in your goodness,
prepare for the humble.
11 Adonay gives the saying;
great is the host that evangelizes.
12 In fleeing, sovereigns of hosts flee;
and she whose habitation of rest is at home
allots the spoil
— though you lie among the stalls
— as wings of a dove covered with silver,
— as pinions with green ore.
14 When Shadday spreads sovereigns therein,
it is snowwhite in Salmon.

PSALMS 68

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 15 The *hill* **mountain** of God **Elohim**
is as the *hill* **mountain** of Bashan;
an *high hill* **peaks of the mountain**
as the *hill* **mountain** of Bashan.
- 16 Why leap **stand ye guard,**
ye high hills? **peaks of the mountains**
this is the hill — the mountain
which God **Elohim** desireth to dwell in; **settle?**
yea, the **LORD** will dwell **Yah Veh shall tabernacle** in it
for ever **in perpetuity**.
- 17 The chariots of God **Elohim**
are *twenty thousand* **two myriads,**
even thousands of *angels* **reinforcements:**
the Lord **Adonay** is among them,
as in *Sinai* **Sinay**, in the *holy place* **holies**.
- 18 Thou hast ascended on *high* **the heights,**
thou hast *led captivity captive* **captured the captives:**
thou hast *received* **taken** gifts for *men* **humanity;**
yea, for the rebellious **revolters** also,
that the **LORD** God **Yah Elohim**
might dwell among them **tabernacle**.
- 19 Blessed be the *Lord* **Adonay,**
who *daily* **day by day** loadeth us with *benefits,*
even the *God* — **El** of our salvation.
Selah.
- 20 *He that is our God is the God of salvation*
El — our El of salvations;
and unto *GOD* the **Lord Yah Veh Adonay**
belong **be** the issues from death.
- 21 But *God* **Elohim**
shall wound **strike** the head of his enemies,
and the hairy scalp of such an one
as goeth on still in his **trespasses guilt**.
- 22 *The Lord* **Adonay** said,
I will bring again **shall return**
from Bashan,
I will bring my people again **shall return**
from the depths of the sea:
- 23 That thy foot may be *dipped* **stricken**
in the blood of thine enemies,
and the tongue of thy dogs in the same.
- 24 They have seen thy *goings* **ways,** O *God* **Elohim;**
even the *goings* **ways** of my *God* **El,** my *King* **Sovereign,**
in the *sanctuary* **holies**.
- 25 The singers went before **preceded,**
the *players on instruments* followed **strummers** after;
among them were the *damsels* **virgins**
playing with timbrels **tambourining**.
- 26 Bless ye *God* **Elohim** in the congregations,
even the *Lord* **Adonay,**
from the fountain of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
- 27 There is little *Benjamin* **insignificant Ben Yamin**
with their ruler **subjugator,**
the *princes* **governors** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
and their *council* **company,**
the *princes* **governors** of *Zebulun,*
and the *princes* **governors** of *Naphtali*.
- 28 Thy *God* **Elohim** hath *commanded* **misvahed** thy strength:
strengthen, O *God* **Elohim,**
that which thou hast wrought **done** for us.
- 29 Because of thy *temple* **manse** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
shall *kings* **sovereigns** bring presents unto thee.
- 30 Rebuke the *company of spearmen* **live stalkers,**
the *multitude* **witnesses** of the *bulls* **mighty,**
with the calves of the people,
till every one submit himself **each prostrating**
with *pieces* **fragments** of silver:
scatter thou the people that delight in war.
- 31 *Princes* **Wealth** shall come out of *Egypt* **Misrayim;**
Ethiopia **Kush** shall soon stretch out **run** her hands
unto *God* **Elohim**.
- 32 Sing unto *God* **Elohim,**
ye kingdoms **sovereigndoms** of the earth;
O *sing praises* **psalm** unto the *Lord* **Adonay;**
Selah:
- 33 To him that rideth upon the heavens of **the** heavens,
which were of old **antiquity;**
lo behold, he doth send out **giveth** his voice,
and that a *mighty* voice — **a voice of strength**.

PSALMS 68

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 15 The mountain of Elohim
is as the mountain of Bashan;
peaks of the mountain as the mountain of Bashan.
- 16 Why stand guard, you mountain peaks
— the mountain Elohim desires to settle?
— yes, Yah Veh tabernacles therein in perpetuity.
- 17 The chariots of Elohim are two myriads
— thousands of reinforcements;
Adonay is among them in the holies, as in Sinay.
- 18 You ascended the heights;
you captured the captives;
you took gifts for humanity;
yes, the revolters also,
that Yah Elohim may tabernacle.
- 19 Blessed
— Adonay, who day by day loads us
— El of our salvation.
Selah.
- 20 To El — our El of salvations
and to Yah Veh Adonay
are the issues of death.
- 21 Surely Elohim strikes the head of his enemies
and the hairy scalp of such who still go on in guilt.
- 22 Adonay says, I return from Bashan,
I return from the depths of the sea;
so that you strike your foot
in the blood of your enemies,
and the tongue of your dogs in the same.
- 24 They see your ways, O Elohim;
the ways of my El, my Sovereign, in the holies.
The singers precede; the strummers after:
the virgins tambourining among them.
Bless Elohim in the congregations
and Adonay from the fountain of Yisra El.
- 27 There is insignificant Ben Yamin their subjugator,
the governors of Yah Hudah and their company,
the governors of Zebulun,
and the governors of Naphtali.
- 28 Your Elohim misvahs your strength.
Strengthen, O Elohim, what you do for us.
Because of your manse at Yeru Shalem
sovereigns bring presents to you.
- 30 Rebuke the live stalkers
the witnesses of the mighty
with the calves of the people
— each prostrating with fragments of silver:
scatter the people who delight in war.
Wealth comes from Misrayim;
Kush runs her hands to Elohim.
Sing to Elohim,
you sovereigndoms of the earth;
O psalm to Adonay;
Selah.
- 33 To him who rides
on the heavens of the heavens from antiquity;
behold, he gives his voice — a voice of strength.

PSALMS 68, 69

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

34 Ascribe **Give** ye strength unto *God Elohim*:
his excellency **pomp** is over *Israel Yisra El*,
and his strength is in the clouds.

35 *O God, thou art terrible* **Awesome, O Elohim**
out of thy *holy places hallowed refuge*:
the God of Israel El of Yisra El is he
that giveth strength and *power might*s
unto *his the* people.
Blessed be *God Elohim*.

69 To the *chief Musician* **His Eminence**,
upon Shoshannim/**Trumpets**,
A *Psalm* of David.

1 Save me, *O God Elohim*;
for the waters are come in unto *my the* soul.

2 I sink in deep mire,
where there is no *standing foothold*:
I am come into *deep depths* of waters,
where the *floods streams* overflow me.

3 I am *weary belaboured* of my *crying calling*:
my throat is *dried scorched*:
mine eyes *fail are finished off*
while I *wait for await* my *God Elohim*.

4 They that hate me *without a cause gratuitously*
are more than the hairs of mine head
abound by the myriads:
they that *would destroy should exterminate* me,
being mine enemies *wrongfully of falseness*, are mighty:
then I restored that which I *took stripped* not away.

5 *O God Elohim*, thou knowest my *foolishness folly*;
and my *sins guiltinesses* are not *hid concealed* from thee.

6 Let not them that *wait on await* thee,
O Lord GOD of hosts Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth,
be *ashamed shamed* for my sake:
let not those that seek thee
be confounded shame for my sake,
O God Elohim of Israel Yisra El.

7 Because for thy sake I have borne reproach;
shame hath covered my face.

8 I am become a stranger unto my brethren,
and an *alien a stranger* unto my mother's *children sons*.

9 For the zeal of thine house hath eaten me *up*;
and the reproaches of them that reproached thee
are fallen upon me.

10 When I wept,
and *chastened my soul with fasting in the fasting of my soul*,
that was to my reproach.

11 I *made sackcloth gave saq* also my *garment robe*;
and I became a proverb to them.

12 They that *sit settle* in the *gate portal*
speak meditate against me;
and I was the song
of the *drunkards them drinking intoxicants*.

13 But as for me,
my prayer is unto thee, *O LORD Yah Veh*,
in an *acceptable a pleasant* time:
O God Elohim,
in the *multitude abundance* of thy mercy *hear me answer*,
in the truth of thy salvation.

14 *Deliver Rescue* me out of the mire, and let me not sink:
let me be *delivered rescued* from them that hate me,
and out of the *deep depths* of waters.

15 Let not the *waterflood water streams* overflow me,
neither let the deep swallow me *up*,
and let not the *pit well* shut her mouth upon me.

16 *Hear me Answer*, *O LORD Yah Veh*;
for thy *lovingkindness mercy* is good:
turn unto face me
according to the *multitude abundance*
of thy tender mercies.

17 And hide not thy face from thy servant;
for I am *in trouble tribulated*:
hear answer me *speedily hastily*.

18 Draw nigh unto my soul, and redeem it:
deliver redeem me because of mine enemies.

19 Thou hast known my reproach,
and my shame, and my dishonour:
mine adversaries my tribulators are all *before in front* of thee.

PSALMS 68, 69

exeGeses companion BIBLE

34 Give strength to Elohim;
his pomp is over Yisra El
and his strength in the clouds.

35 Awesome, O Elohim, from your hallowed refuge;
El of Yisra El is he
who gives strength and might to the people.
Blessed — Elohim.

69 To His Eminence; On Shoshannim/Trumpets:
By David.

1 Save me, O Elohim;
for the waters come to the soul.

2 I sink in deep mire, where there is no foothold;
I come into depths of waters;
the streams overflow me:

3 I labored of my calling;
my throat scorches;
my eyes finish off as I await my Elohim.

4 They who hate me gratuitously
— my exterminators abound by the myriads;
my enemies of falseness, are mighty;
I restored what I stripped not.

5 O Elohim, you know my folly;
and my guiltinesses are not concealed from you.

6 O Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth,
may they who await you, not shame for my sake;
may they who seek you, not shame for my sake,
O Elohim of Yisra El.

7 Because of you, I bear reproach;
shame covers my face:

8 I become a stranger to my brothers
and a stranger to the sons of my mother:
for the zeal of your house eats me;
and the reproaches of them who reproach you
fall on me.

10 I weep in the fasting of my soul — my reproach;
11 I give saq for my robe;
and I become a proverb to them.

12 They who settle in the portal meditate against me;
— I the song of them drinking intoxicants.

13 And as for me, my prayer *is* to you, O Yah Veh:
in a pleasant time, O Elohim,
in the abundance of your mercy
answer in the truth of your salvation.

14 Rescue me from the mire so that I not sink;
— rescue from them who hate me
and from the depths of waters:
15 may neither the water streams overflow me,
nor the deep swallow me
nor the well shut her mouth upon me.

16 Answer, O Yah Veh; for your mercy is good;
face me according to the abundance
of your tender mercies:

17 hide not your face from your servant;
for I tribulate:
answer me hastily.

18 Draw near my soul; redeem
— because of my enemies, redeem me.

19 You know my reproach
and my shame and my dishonor;
my tribulators are all in front of you.

PSALMS 69—71

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

20 Reproach hath broken my heart;
and I am full of heaviness:
and I looked for some **awaited one** to take pity **wag**,
but there was none;
and for *comforters* **sighers**, but I found none.
21 They gave me also *gall for my meat* **rosh to chew**;
and in my thirst
they gave me *vinegar* **fermentation** to drink.
22 Let their table become a snare
before them **at their face**:
and that which should have been for their welfare **shalom**,
let it become a *trap* **snare**.
23 Let their eyes be darkened, that they see not;
and make their loins continually to *shake* **waver**.
24 Pour out *thine indignation* **thy rage** upon them,
and let thy *wrathful anger* **fuming wrath**
take hold of **overtake** them.
25 Let their *habitation* be **walls** desolate;
and let none *dwell* **settle** in their tents.
26 For they *persecute him* **pursue**
whom thou hast smitten;
and they *talk* **scribe** to the *grief* **sorrow**
of those whom thou hast wounded **thy pierced**.
27 Add iniquity **Give perversity**
unto for their iniquity **perversity**:
and let them not come into thy *righteousness* **justness**.
28 Let them be *blotted* **wiped** out
of the *book* **scroll** of the living,
and not be *written* **scribed** with the *righteous* **just**.
29 But I am *poor* **humble** and *sorrowful* **pained**:
let thy salvation, O *God* **Elohim**,
set me up on high **loft me**.
30 I will praise **shall halal** the name of *God* **Elohim**
with a song,
and will *magnify* **shall greaten** him
with *thanksgiving* **spread hands**.
31 This also shall **well**—please the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
better than an ox or bullock
that hath horns **horned** and *hoofs* **hoofed**.
32 The humble shall see *this*, and be *glad* **cheer**:
and your heart shall live that seek *God* **Elohim**.
33 For the *LORD* **Yah Veh** heareth the *poor* **needy**,
and despiseth not his *prisoners* **bound**.
34 Let the *heaven* **heavens** and earth *praise* **halal** him,
the seas, and *every thing* **all** that *moveth* **creepeth** therein.
35 For *God* will **Elohim shall** save *Zion* **Siyon**,
and will **shall** build the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**:
that they may *dwell* **settle** there,
and have **possess** it *in possession*.
36 The seed also of his servants shall inherit it:
and they that love his name
shall *dwell* **tabernacle** therein.

70

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
A Psalm of David,
to bring to remembrance **remember**.
1 Make haste, O *God* **Elohim**, to deliver **rescue** me;
make haste **hasten** to help me, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
2 Let them be *ashamed* **shame** and *confounded* **blush**
that seek after my soul:
let them be *turned backward* **apostatize**,
and *put to confusion* **shame**, that desire my *hurt* **evil**.
3 Let them be *turned back* **Return them**
for a reward **finality** of their shame that say, Aha, aha.
4 Let all those that seek thee
rejoice and be *glad* **cheer** in thee:
and let such as love thy salvation say continually,
Let *God* **Elohim** be *magnified* **greatened**.
5 But I am *poor* **humble** and needy:
make haste **hasten** unto me, O *God* **Elohim**:
thou art my help and my *deliverer* **who slippeth me away**;
O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, make no *tarrying* **tarry not**.

71

In thee, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
do I put my trust **I seek refuge**:
let me never be *put to confusion* **eternally shamed**.
2 Deliver **Rescue** me in thy *righteousness* **justness**,
and *cause me to escape* **slip me away**:
incline **spread** thine ear unto me, and save me.

PSALMS 69—71

exeGeses companion BIBLE

20 Reproach breaks my heart;
I am full of heaviness;
I await someone to wag, and there is no one;
and for sighers, and I find none.
21 They give me rosh to chew;
and in my thirst, fermentation to drink.
22 Their table becomes a snare at their face
— a snare for their shalom:
23 their eyes darken that they see not;
and they continually waver their loins.
24 Pour your rage on them
so that your fuming wrath overtakes them.
25 Desolate their walls
so that no one settles in their tents.
26 For they pursue whom you smite;
and they scribe to the sorrow of your pierced.
27 Give perversity for their perversity;
that they come not into your justness:
28 — wiped out of the scroll of the living
— not scribed with the just.
29 And I humble *myself* and pain;
your salvation, O Elohim, lofts me:
30 I halal the name of Elohim with a song
and greaten him with spread hands:
31 And this well—pleases Yah Veh
better than an ox or bullock — horned and hoofed.
32 The humble see, and cheer;
your heart lives — you who seek Elohim.
33 For Yah Veh hears the needy
and despises not his bound.
34 The heavens and earth halal him
— the seas and every creeper.
35 For Elohim saves Siyon
and builds the cities of Yah Hudah;
for them to settle there and possess.
36 The seed also of his servants inherit;
and they who love his name tabernacle therein.

70

To His Eminence, by David: A Reminder.
1 O Elohim, rescue me;
hasten to help me, O Yah Veh:
may they who seek my soul
shame and blush;
— apostatize and shame them who desire my evil.

3 Return final shame to them who say, Aha! Aha!
4 May all who seek you rejoice and cheer in you;
and such as love your salvation continually say,
Elohim be greatened.
5 And I am humble and needy;
hasten to me, O Elohim:
you are my help who slips me away;
O Yah Veh, tarry not.

71

In you, O Yah Veh, I seek refuge;
may I never shame eternally:
2 rescue me in your justness and slip me away;
spread your ear to me and save me:

PSALMS 71

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 Be thou my *strong rock* — my habitation,
whereunto I may continually resort:
thou hast *given commandment misvahed* to save me;
for thou art my rock and my *fortress stronghold*.
4 *Deliver me Slip me away*, O my God **Elohim**,
out of the *hand palm* of the wicked,
out of the hand
of the *unrighteous wicked* and *cruel embittered man*.
5 For thou art my hope, O Lord **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**:
thou art my *trust confidant* from my youth.
6 By thee have I been holden up from the *womb belly*:
thou art he
that *took cut* me out of my mother's *bowels inwards*:
my *praise halal* shall be continually of thee.
7 I am as a *wonder an omen* unto many;
but thou art my *strong refuge of strength*.
8 Let my mouth be filled with thy *praise halal*
and with thy *honour beauty* all the day.
9 Cast me not off in the time of old age;
forsake me not
when my *strength faileth force be finished off*.
10 For mine enemies *speak say* against me;
and they that *lay wait guard* for my soul
take counsel together,
11 Saying, **God Elohim** hath forsaken him:
persecute pursue and *take grab* him;
for there is none to *deliver him rescue*.
12 O **God Elohim**, be not far from me:
O my **God Elohim**, *make haste hasten* for my help.
13 Let them be *confounded shamed*
and *consumed finished off*
that are *adversaries satans* to my soul;
let them be covered with reproach and dishonour
that seek my *hurt evil*.
14 But I *will hope shall await* continually,
and *will yet praise shall halal* thee
more and more increasingly.
15 My mouth shall *shew forth scribe*
thy *righteousness justness* and thy salvation all the day;
for I know not the *numbers thereof scribing*.
16 I *will shall* go in the *strength might*
of the Lord **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**:
I *will make mention of shall remember*
thy *righteousness justness*, even of thine only.
17 O **God Elohim**, thou hast taught me from my youth:
and hitherto
have I *declared told* thy *wondrous works marvels*.
18 Now also when I am *old aged* and *greyheaded greyed*,
O **God Elohim**, forsake me not;
until I have *shewed thy strength told of thine arm*
unto *this a generation*,
and thy *power might* to every one that is to come.
19 Thy *righteousness justness* also, O **God Elohim**,
is *very high in the heights*,
who hast *done worked* great things:
O **God Elohim**, who is like unto thee!
20 Thou, which hast *shewed me see*
great and *sore troubles evil tribulations*,
shalt *quicken me again enliven me*,
and shalt *bring me up again ascend me*
from the *depths abysses* of the earth.
21 Thou shalt *increase abound* my greatness,
and *comfort surround* me *on every side and sigh*.
22 I *will shall also praise spread hands* unto thee
with the *psaltery instrument of bagpipe*,
even thy truth, O my **God Elohim**:
unto thee *will I sing shall I psalm* with the harp,
O thou Holy One of *Israel Yisra El*.
23 My lips shall *greatly rejoice shout*
when I *sing psalm* unto thee;
and my soul,
which thou hast redeemed.
24 My tongue also
shall *talk meditate* of thy *righteousness justness*
all the day long;
for they are *confounded shame*,
for they are *brought unto shame blush*,
that seek my *hurt evil*.

PSALMS 71

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 be my rock — my habitation;
to resort continually therein:
you misvahed to save me;
for you are my rock and my stronghold.
4 Slip me away, O my Elohim
from the palm of the wicked
— from the hand of the wicked and embittered:
5 for you are my hope, O Adonay Yah Veh
— my confidant from my youth
— from the belly
— who cut me from the inwards of my mother;
my halal *is* continually of you.
7 I am as an omen to many;
but you are my refuge of strength:
8 my mouth is filled *with* your halal
and *with* your beauty all the day.
9 Cast me not off in the time of old age;
forsake me not when my force finishes off.
10 For my enemies say against me;
and they who guard for my soul counsel together,
11 saying, Elohim forsook him;
pursue and grab him:
for there is no one to rescue.
12 O Elohim, be not far from me;
O my Elohim, hasten for my help:
13 shame them and finish them off
— these satans to my soul;
cover them with reproach and dishonor
who seek my evil.
14 I await you continually
and halal you increasingly.
15 My mouth scribes your justness
and your salvation all the day;
for I know not the scribings.
16 I go in the might of Adonay Yah Veh;
I remember your justness — yours only:
17 O Elohim, you taught me from my youth;
and until now I tell your marvels:
18 and now that I age and grey;
O Elohim, forsake me not
until I tell of your arm to a generation
and of your might to every one to come.
19 Your justness, O Elohim, *is* in the heights,
who works great;
O Elohim, who liken we to you
— you,
20 who shows me great and evil tribulations;
enliven me and ascend me
from the abysses of the earth:
21 abound my greatness
and surround me and sigh.
22 I spread hands to you
with the instrument of bagpipe,
to your truth, O my Elohim;
to you I psalm with the harp
O Holy One of Yisra El:
23 my lips shout when I psalm to you;
and my soul which you redeemed:
24 my tongue meditates of your justness
all the day long;
for they shame;
for they blush who seek my evil.

PSALMS 72, 73

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

72

A Psalm for Solomon For Shelomoh.

1 Give the *king* **sovereign** thy judgments, O God **Elohim**,
and thy *righteousness* **justness**
unto the *king's* **sovereign's** son.

2 He shall *judge* **plead the cause** of thy people
with *righteousness* **justness**,
and thy *poor* **humble** with judgment.

3 The mountains shall *bring peace* **lift shalom**
to the people,
and the little hills, by *righteousness* **justness**.

4 He shall judge the *poor* **humble** of the people,
he shall save the *children* **sons** of the needy,
and shall *break in pieces* **crush** the oppressor.

5 They shall *fear* **awe** thee
as long as **at the face of** the sun and moon *endure*,
throughout all generations **generation to generation**.

6 He shall *come down* **descend** like rain
upon the mown *grass* **fleece**:
as showers that water the earth.

7 In his days shall the *righteous* **flourish just blossom**;
and abundance of *peace* **shalom**
so long as the moon *endureth* **until there be no moon**.

8 He shall *have dominion* also **subjugate** from sea to sea,
and from the river unto the *ends* **finalities** of the earth.

9 They that *dwell in the wilderness* **Desertdwellers**
shall *bow before him* **kneel at his face**;
and his enemies shall lick the dust.

10 The *kings* **sovereigns**
of Tarshish and of the *isles* **islands**
shall *bring presents* **return offerings**:
the *kings* **sovereigns** of Sheba and Seba
shall *offer gifts* **obliterate their hire**.

11 Yea, all *kings* **sovereigns**
shall *fall down before* **prostrate in front of** him:
all *nations* **goyim** shall serve him.

12 For he shall *deliver* **rescue** the needy when he crieth;
the *poor* **humble** also, and him that hath no helper.

13 He shall spare the poor and needy,
and shall save the souls of the needy.

14 He shall redeem their soul
from *deceit* **fraud** and violence:
and *precious* **esteemed** shall their blood be
in his *sight* **eyes**.

15 And he shall live,
and to him shall be given of the gold of Sheba:
prayer also shall be made for him **he shall be prayed for**
continually;
and *daily* **all day** shall he be *praised* **blessed**.

16 There shall be an *handful* **increase of corn grain**
in the earth upon the top of the mountains;
the fruit thereof shall *shake* **quake** like Lebanon:
and they of the city shall flourish
like *grass* **herbage** of the earth.

17 His name shall *endure for ever* **be eternal**:
his name shall be *continued as long as* **perpetuated**
at the face of the sun:
and *men* **they themselves** shall be blessed in him:
all *nations* **goyim** shall call him *blessed* **blithesome**.

18 Blessed be the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim**,
the *God* **Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**,
who *only doeth wondrous things* **alone worketh marvels**.

19 And blessed be his *glorious* **honoured** name
for ever **eternally**:
and let the whole earth be filled with his *glory* **honour**;
Amen, and Amen.

20 The prayers of David the son of *Jesse* **Yishay**
are *ended* **concluded**.

BOOK III

73

A Psalm of Asaph.

1 Truly *God* **Elohim** is good to *Israel* **Yisra El**,
even to such as are of a clean **to the pure** of heart.

2 But as for me, my feet were *almost gone* **spread**;
my steps had *well nigh slipped* **not poured**.

3 For I was envious at the *foolish* **them that halal**,
when I saw the *prosperity* **shalom** of the wicked.

4 For there are no bands in their death:
but their *strength* **might** is *firm* **fat**.

PSALMS 72, 73

exeGesés companion BIBLE

72

By Shelomoh.

1 Give the sovereign your judgments, O Elohim
and your justness to the son of the sovereign:
He pleads for your people with justness
and your humble with judgment.

3 The mountains lift shalom to the people
and the little hills, by justness.

4 He judges the humble of the people;
he saves the sons of the needy
and crushes the oppressor.

5 They awe you at the face of the sun and moon
— generation to generation.

6 He descends as rain on the mown fleece
— as showers that water the earth.

7 The just blossom in their day;
and abundance of shalom until there is no moon.

8 He subjugates from sea to sea
— from the river to the finalities of the earth:
desertdwellers kneel at his face
and his enemies lick the dust.

9 The sovereigns of Tarshish and of the islands
return offerings;
the sovereigns of Sheba and Seba
obliterate their hire;

11 yes, all sovereigns prostrate ere in front of him;
all goyim serve him.

12 For he rescues the needy who cries
— the humble and he who has no helper;
he spares the poor and needy
and saves the souls of the needy:

14 he redeems their soul from fraud and violence;
and esteems their blood in his eyes:
and he lives
and gives him of the gold of Sheba;
and prays for him continually;
— blesses him all day.

16 There is an increase of grain in the earth;
the top of the mountains
quake their fruit as Lebanon;
and they of the city flourish
as herbage of the earth.

17 His name, Eternal;
his name perpetuates at the face of the sun;
and they bless themselves in him:
all goyim call him blithesome.

18 Blessed — Yah Veh Elohim,
Elohim of Yisra El, who alone works marvels.

19 And blessed — his honored name eternally;
and may the whole earth fill with his honor;
Amen and Amen.

20 The prayers by David the son of Yishay
are concluded.

BOOK III

73

A Psalm: By Asaph.

1 Surely Elohim is good to Yisra El
— to the pure of heart.

2 But as for me, my feet spread;
my steps unpour.

3 For I envy them who halal
when I see the shalom of the wicked:
for there are no bands in their death:
their might fattens;

PSALMS 73, 74

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 They are not in *trouble* as other **toil** of men;
neither are they *plagued* **touched** like other **men** humans.

6 Therefore *pride* *compasseth* **pomp** **choketh** them
about as a *chain*;
violence *covereth* **shroudeth** them
as a **masculine** garment.

7 Their eyes stand out with *fatness* **fat**:
they *have more than the heart could wish*
surpass the imagination of the heart.

8 They are *corrupt* **blaspheme**,
and *speak wickedly* **word evil** concerning oppression:
they *speak* **word** loftily.

9 They set their mouth against the heavens,
and their tongue walketh through the earth.

10 Therefore his people return hither:
and waters of a *full cup* **fulness** are wrung out to them.

11 And they say, How doth *God* **El** know?
and is there knowledge in *the most High* **Elyon**?

12 Behold, these are the *ungodly* **wicked**,
who *prosper in the world* **be eternally serene**;
they increase in *riches* **valuables**.

13 Verily I have *cleansed* **purified** my heart in vain,
and washed my *hands* **palms** in innocency.

14 For all the day long have I been *plagued* **touched**,
and *chastened every morning* **reproofed mornings**.

15 If I say, I *will speak* **shall scribe** thus;
behold, I should *offend* **deal covertly**
against **with** the generation of thy *children* **sons**.

16 When I *thought* **fabricated** to know this,
it was *too painful for me* **toilsome in mine eyes**;
Until I went
into the *sanctuary* **hallowed refuge** of *God* **El**;
then *understood* **discerned** I their *end* **finality**.

18 Surely thou didst set them in *slippery* **smooth** places:
thou castedst them down into *destruction* **ruins**.

19 How are they *brought* into desolation,
as in a *moment* **blink!**
in consuming, they are *utterly* consumed with terrors.

20 As a dream *when one awaketh* **upon awakening**:
so, O *Lord* **Adonay**, when thou awakest,
thou shalt despise their image.

21 Thus my heart *was grieved* **embittered**
and I was pricked in my reins.

22 So *foolish* **stupid** was I, and *ignorant* **knew not**:
I was as a *beast before* **an animal in front** of thee.

23 Nevertheless I am continually with thee:
thou hast holden me by my right hand.

24 Thou shalt *guide* **lead** me with thy counsel,
and afterward *receive* **take** me to *glory* **honour**.

25 Whom have I in *heaven* **but thee** **the heavens**?
and there is none upon earth that I desire beside thee.

26 My flesh and my heart *faileth* **finisheth off**:
but *God* **Elohim** is the *strength* **rock** of my heart,
and my *portion* **for ever** **allotment eternally**.

27 For, *lo* **behold**,
they that are far from thee shall *perish* **destruct**:
thou hast *destroyed* **exterminated** all them
that *go a whoring* **whore** from thee.

28 But it is good for me to draw near to *God* **Elohim**:
I have put my *trust* **refuge**
in the *Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**,
that I may *declare* **scribe** all thy works.

74

Maschil **On Comprehension** of Asaph.

1 O *God* **Elohim**,
why hast thou cast us off *for ever* **in perpetuity**?
why doth *thine anger* **thy wrath** smoke
against the *sheep* **flock** of thy pasture?

2 Remember thy *congregation* **witness**,
which thou hast *purchased* **chattelized** of *old* **antiquity**;
the *rod* **scion** of thine inheritance,
which thou hast redeemed;
this mount *Zion* **Siyon**,
wherein thou hast *dwelt* **tabernacled**.

3 Lift up thy *feet* **steps**
unto the perpetual *desolations* **ruins**;
even all that the enemy hath *done wickedly* **vilified**
in the *sanctuary* **holies**.

PSALMS 73, 74

exeGesés companion BIBLE

5 they are neither in toil of man
nor touched as humans.

6 So pomp chokes them;
violence shrouds them as a masculine garment:
their eyes stand out with fat;
they surpass the imagination of the heart:
they blaspheme
and word evil concerning oppression;
they word loftily:

9 they set their mouth against the heavens
and their tongue walks through the earth.
So his people return here;
and waters of fulness wring out to them.

11 And they say, How knows El?
Is there knowledge in Elyon?

12 Behold, these are the wicked,
— eternally serene who increase in valuables.
Surely I purify my heart in vain
and wash my palms in innocency.

14 For all the day long I am touched
and reproofed in the morning.
If I say, I scribe thus;
behold,
I deal covertly with the generation of your sons:
when I fabricated to know this,
it is toilsome in my eyes
— until I go into the hallowed refuge of El
— then I discern their finality.

18 Surely you set them in smooth places;
you cast them down into ruins:
how they become a desolation — as in a blink!
in consuming, they *are* consumed with terrors.

20 As a dream on waking, O Adonay,
when you waken, you despise their image.
Thus my heart embitters
and I am pricked in my reins:
I am stupid and know not
— as an animal in front of you.

23 And I am continually with you;
you hold me by my right hand;
you lead me with your counsel
and afterward take me to honor.

25 Whom have I in the heavens?
I desire no one on earth beside you.
My flesh and my heart finish off;
but Elohim is the rock of my heart
and my allotment eternally.

27 For behold,
they who are far from you destruct;
you exterminate all who whore away from you.
and *it is* good for me to draw near to Elohim;
I put my refuge in Adonay Yah Veh,
so that I scribe all your works.

74

On Comprehension: By Asaph.

1 O Elohim,
why cast us off in perpetuity?
why smoke your wrath
against the flock of your pasture?

2 Remember the witness you chattelized of antiquity
— the scion of your inheritance you redeemed
— this mount Siyon wherein you tabernacle.

3 Lift your steps to the perpetual ruins;
to all that the enemy vilified in the holies.

PSALMS 74, 75

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 *Thine enemies* **Thy** tribulators roar
in the midst of thy congregations;
they set up their ensigns for signs.
5 *A man was famous* **He was known**
according as he had lifted up axes upon the thick trees.
6 But now they *break down* **hammer**
the *carved work* **engravings** thereof
at once **together** with axes and **sledge** hammers.
7 They have cast **sent** fire
into thy *sanctuary* **hallowed refuge**
they have *defiled by casting down* **profaned**
the *dwelling place* **tabernacle** of thy name
to the *ground* **earth**.
8 They said in their hearts,
Let us *destroy* **oppress** them together:
they have burned up
all the *synagogues* **congregations** of **God El** in the land.
9 We see not our signs: there is no more any prophet:
neither is there among us
any that knoweth *how long* **until when**.
10 *O God Elohim, how long* **until when**
shall the *adversary* **tribulator** reproach?
shall the enemy *blaspheme* **scorn** thy name
for ever **in perpetuity**?
11 Why *withdrewest* **turnest** thou thy hand,
even thy *right hand*?
pluck **finish** it out of thy bosom.
12 For *God Elohim* is my *King Sovereign* of *old antiquity*,
working **doing** salvation in the midst of the earth.
13 Thou *didst divide* **brakest** the sea
by thy strength:
thou *brakest* the heads of the *dragons* **monsters**
in the waters.
14 Thou *brakest* **crushest** the heads of leviathan *in pieces*,
and gavest him *to be meat* **for food** to the people
inhabiting the wilderness — **the desertdwellers**.
15 Thou *didst cleave* **splittest**
the fountain and the *flood* **wadi**:
thou driedst up *mighty* **perennial** rivers.
16 The day is thine, the night also is thine:
thou hast prepared the light and the sun.
17 Thou hast *set* **stationed** all the borders of the earth:
thou hast *made* **formed** summer and winter.
18 Remember this,
that the enemy hath reproached, *O LORD Yah Veh*,
and that the foolish people
have *blasphemed* **scorned** thy name.
19 *O deliver* **give** not the soul of thy turtledove
unto the *multitude of the wicked* **live beings**:
forget not the *congregation* **lives** of thy *poor* **humble**
for ever **in perpetuity**.
20 *Have respect* **Look** unto the covenant:
for the *dark places* **darknesses** of the earth
are full of the *habitations* **fold**s of *cruelty* **violence**.
21 *O let not the oppressed return* **ashamed** **shamed**:
let the *poor* **humble** and needy *praise* **halal** thy name.
22 Arise, *O God Elohim*,
plead **defend** thine own *cause* **defence**:
remember *how the foolish man reproacheth thee daily*
your reproach of the fool all the day.
23 Forget not the voice of *thine enemies* **thy tribulators**:
the *tumult* **roaring** of those that rise up *against thee*
increaseth **ascendeth** continually.

75

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
Al—taschith **Al Tashcheth/Ruin Not**,
A Psalm or Song of Asaph.
1 Unto thee, *O God Elohim*,
do we give thanks **we spread hands**,
unto thee do we give thanks **we spread hands**:
for that thy name is near
thy *wondrous works* **declare** **marvels** scribe.
2 When I shall *receive* **take** the congregation
I will **shall** judge *uprightly* **in straightnesses**.
3 The earth
and all the *inhabitants thereof* **that settle therein**
are dissolved:
I bear up **gauge** the pillars of it.
Selah.

PSALMS 74, 75

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 Your tribulators roar midst your congregations;
they set up their ensigns for signs;
5 he is known for lifting axes on the thick trees:
6 and now they hammer the engravings
with axes and sledge hammers;
7 they sent fire to your hallowed refuge;
they profaned the tabernacle of your name
to the earth.
8 They say in their hearts, Oppress them together!
They burn all the congregations of El in the land.
9 We neither see our signs;
nor is there any prophet;
nor is there among us any who knows until when.
10 O Elohim,
until when reproaches the tribulator?
— the enemy scorn your name in perpetuity?
11 Why turn your hand back — even your right?
Finish it from your bosom.
12 And Elohim *is* my Sovereign from antiquity
— working salvation midst the earth.
13 You broke the sea by your strength;
you broke the heads of the monsters in the waters:
14 you crushed the heads of leviathan
and gave him for food to the people
— the desertdwellers:
15 you split the fountain and the wadi;
you dried up perennial rivers.
16 The day *is* yours, the night *is* yours;
you prepared the light and the sun;
17 you stationed all the borders of the earth;
you formed summer and winter.
18 Remember this:
an enemy reproaches Yah Veh;
and the foolish people scorn your name.
19 O give not the soul of your turtledove
to the live beings;
forget not the lives of your humble
in perpetuity:
20 look to the covenant;
for the darknesses of the earth
are full of the folds of violence.
21 O that the oppressed not return shamed;
that the humble and needy *halal* your name.
22 Rise, O Elohim, defend your own defence;
remember your reproach of a fool all the day:
23 forget not the voice of your tribulators;
the roaring of those who rise ascends continually.

75

To His Eminence; Al Tashcheth/Ruin Not;
A Psalm by Asaph: A Song.

1 To you, O Elohim, we spread hands;
we spread hands, for your name, near:
they scribe your marvels.
2 When I take the congregation
I judge in straightnesses.
3 The earth and all who settle therein dissolve;
I gauge the pillars thereof.
Selah.

PSALMS 75—77

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 I said unto the fools **them that halal**,
Deal not foolishly **Halal not**:
and to the wicked, Lift not up the horn:
5 Lift not up your horn *on high to the heights*:
speak not with a stiff or word with an impudent neck.
6 For promotion cometh **the mount of exaltation**
is neither from the *east source*,
nor from the *west duskward*,
nor from the *south wilderness*.
7 But God **Elohim** is the judge:
he putteth down **abaseth** one,
and setteth up **exalteth** another.
8 For in the hand of the **LORD Yah Veh** there is a cup,
and the wine is red **foameth**; it is full of mixture;
and he poureth out of the same **thus**:
but the dregs thereof,
all the wicked of the earth
shall wring them out, and drink them.
9 But I will declare for ever **shall tell eternally**;
I will sing praises **I shall psalm**
to the God **Elohim** of Jacob **Yaaqov**.
10 All the horns of the wicked also will **shall** I cut off;
but the horns of the **righteous just** shall be exalted.

76

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
on Neginoth **Strummer**,
A Psalm or Song of Asaph.
1 In Judah **Yah Hudah** is God **Elohim** known:
his name is great in *Israel Yisra El*.
2 In Salem also is **are his tabernacle sukkoth/brush arbors**,
and his dwelling place **habitation** in *Zion Siyon*.
3 There brake he the *arrows burning flash* of the bow,
the **shield buckler**, and the sword, and the **battle war**.
Selah.
4 Thou art more **glorious lightened** and **excellent mighty**
than the mountains of prey.
5 The **stouthearted mighty of heart** are spoiled,
they have **slept slumbered** their sleep:
and none of the men of **might valour**
have found their hands.
6 At thy rebuke, O God **Elohim** of Jacob **Yaaqov**,
both the chariot and horse
are cast into a dead sleep sleep soundly.
7 Thou, even thou, art to be feared **awesome**:
and who may stand in thy sight **at the face of thine eyes**
when once thou art angry since thy wrath?
8 Thou didst cause judgment **their plea**
to be heard from heaven **the heavens**;
the earth **feared awed**, and was **still rested**.
9 When God **Elohim** arose to judgment,
to save all the **meek humble** of the earth.
Selah.
10 Surely the **wrath fury** of man **humanity**
shall **praise spread hands** unto thee:
the **remainder survivors** of **wrath fury**
shalt thou **restrain gird**.
11 Vow, and pay **shalam**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** your God **Elohim**:
let all that be round about him bring presents
unto him that ought to be feared **the awesome one**.
12 He shall cut off the spirit of **princes the eminent**:
he is **terrible awesome**
to the **kings sovereigns** of the earth.

77

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
to Jeduthun **Yeduthun/A Laudatory**, A Psalm of Asaph.
1 I cried unto God **Elohim** with my voice,
even unto God **Elohim** with my voice;
and he gave ear **hearkened** unto me.
2 In the day of my **trouble tribulation**
I sought the **Lord Adonay**:
my **sore hand** ran in the night, and **ceased exhaled** not:
my soul refused to be comforted **sigh**.
3 I remembered God **Elohim**, and was **troubled roared**:
I **complained meditated**,
and my spirit was **overwhelmed languished**.
Selah.
4 Thou holdest mine eyes **waking eye guards**:
I am so **troubled agitated** that I cannot **speak word**.

PSALMS 75—77

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 I say to them who halal, Halal not!
And to the wicked, Lift not the horn!
5 Lift not your horn to the heights
or word with an impudent neck:
6 for the mount of exaltation
is neither from the source
nor from duskward
nor from the wilderness.
7 But Elohim is judge;
he abases one and exalts another.
8 For there is a cup in the hand of Yah Veh:
the wine foams; it is full of mixture:
and he pours thus;
surely, all the wicked of the earth
wring out and drink the dregs.
9 And I — I tell eternally;
I psalm to Elohim of Yaaqov:
10 All the horns of the wicked I cut off;
and exalt the horns of the just.
76 To His Eminence; On Strummer;
A Psalm by Asaph: A Song.
1 In Yah Hudah, Elohim is known;
in Yisra El, his name is great;
2 and in Salem, his sukkoth/brush arbors;
and his habitation in Siyon.
3 There he broke the burning flash of the bow
— the buckler and the sword and the war.
Selah.
4 You are more enlightened and mighty
than the mountains of prey.
5 The mighty of heart spoil;
they slumber away their sleep;
and none of the men of valour find their hands.
6 At your rebuke, O Elohim of Yaaqov,
both the chariot and horse sleep soundly.
7 You — you are awesome;
and who stands at the face of your eyes
since your wrath?
8 You hear their plea from the heavens;
the earth awes and rests;
9 as Elohim rises to judgment
— to save all the humble of the earth.
Selah.
10 Surely the fury of humanity spreads hands to you;
you gird the survivors of fury;
11 vow and shalam to Yah Veh your Elohim
all you who surround him:
bring presents to the awesome one.
12 He cuts off the spirit of the eminent;
— awesome to the sovereigns of the earth.

77

To His Eminence; Yeduthun/A Laudatory:
A Psalm by Asaph.
1 My voice is to Elohim; I cry:
— my voice is to Elohim; and he hearkens to me:
2 in the day of my tribulation I seek Adonay;
my hand runs in the night, and exhale not;
my soul refuses to sigh.
3 I remember Elohim, and roar;
I meditate, and my spirit languishes.
Selah.
4 You hold my eye guards:
I am agitated; I cannot word:

PSALMS 77, 78

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 I have *considered* **fabricated** the days of *old antiquity*,
the years of *ancient times* **eternity**.

6 I *call to remembrance* **remember** my *song* **strumming**
in the night:
I *commune* **meditate** with mine own heart:
and my spirit *made diligent search* **searched**.

7 Will the Lord **Shall Adonay** cast off for ever **eternally?**
and will he be *favourable no more*
shall he never again be pleased?

8 Is his mercy *clean gone for ever* **ceased in perpetuity?**
doth his *promise fail* **saying cease**
for evermore **generation to generation?**

9 Hath *God El* forgotten to be *gracious* **grant charism?**
hath he in *anger* **wrath** shut up his tender mercies?
Selah.

10 And I said, This is my *infirmity* **stroke**:
but I will remember
— the years of the right *hand of the most High* **Elyon**.
I *will* **shall** remember
the *works* **exploits** of the *LORD Yah*:
surely I *will* **shall** remember thy *wonders* **marvels**
of *old antiquity*.

12 I *will* **shall** meditate also of all thy *work* **deeds**,
and *talk* **meditate** of thy *doings* **exploits**.

13 Thy way, O *God Elohim*, is in the *sanctuary* **holies**:
who is so great a *God an El* as our *God Elohim*?
14 Thou art the *God El*
that *doest wonders* **workest marvels**:
thou hast *declared* **made known** thy strength
among the people.

15 Thou hast with thine arm redeemed thy people,
the sons of *Jacob Yaaqov* and *Joseph Yoseph*.
Selah.

16 The waters saw thee, O *God Elohim*,
the waters saw thee; they *were afraid* **writhed**:
the depths also *were troubled* **quaked**.

17 The *thick* clouds *poured out* **flooded** water:
the *skies sent out a sound* **vapours gave voice**:
thine arrows also went abroad.

18 The voice of thy thunder
was in the *heaven* **whirlwind**:
the lightnings lightened the world:
the earth *trembled* **quivered** and *shook* **quaked**.

19 Thy way is in the sea,
and thy path in the great waters,
and thy *footsteps* **heelprints** are not known.

20 Thou leddest thy people like a flock
by the hand of *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Aaron* **Aharon**.

78

Maschil A Discerning of Asaph.

1 Give ear **Hearken**, O my people, to my *law* **torah**:
incline **spread** your ears
to the *words* **sayings** of my mouth.

2 I *will* **shall** open my mouth in a *parable* **proverb**:
I *will utter dark sayings* **shall gush riddles** of *old antiquity*:
3 Which we have heard and known,
and our fathers have *told* **scribed unto** us.

4 We *will* **shall** not *hide* **conceal them**
from their *children* **sons**,
shewing **scribing** to the generation *to come* **after**
the *praises* **halals** of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and his strength, and his *wonderful works* **marvels**
that he hath *done* **worked**.

5 For he *established* **raised** a *testimony* **witness**
in *Jacob Yaaqov*,
and *appointed* **set** a *law* **torah** in *Israel Yisra El*,
which he *commanded* **misvahed** our fathers,
that they should make them known to their *children* **sons**:
6 That the generation *to come* **after** might know them,
even the children which should — **the sons to be born birthed**:
who should arise
and *declare* **scribe** them to their *children* **sons**:
7 That they might set their hope in *God Elohim*,
and not forget the works of *God El*,
but *keep* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**:
8 And might not be as their fathers,
a *stubborn* **revolting** and rebellious generation;
a generation that *set* **prepared** not their heart *aright*,
and whose spirit was not *steadfast* **trustworthy** with *God El*.

PSALMS 77, 78

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 I fabricate the days of antiquity
— the years of eternity:

6 I remember my strumming in the night;
I meditate with my heart;
my spirit searches.

7 Adonay — casts he off eternally?
— never again to please?

8 — cease his mercy in perpetuity?
— cease his sayings generation to generation?

9 — forgets El to grant charism?
— in wrath shuts his tender mercies?
Selah.

10 I say, This is my stroke;
— the years of the right of Elyon.
11 I remember the exploits of Yah;
surely I remember your marvels from antiquity.

12 I meditate on all your deeds
and meditate of your exploits;
13 your way, O Elohim, *is* in the holies.
Who is so great an El as Elohim?
14 You El, work marvels;
15 you have your strength known among the people;
and with your arm redeemed your people
the sons of Yaaqov and Yoseph.
Selah.

16 The waters see you, O Elohim;
the waters see you; they writhe:
the depths quake;
17 the thick clouds flood water;
the vapours give voice;
your arrows go abroad.

18 The voice of your thunder *is* in the whirlwind;
the lightnings light the world;
the earth quivers and quakes:
19 your way is in the sea
and your path in the great waters
and your heelprints are not known:
20 you led your people as a flock
by the hand of Mosheh and Aharon.

78

A Discerning by Asaph.

1 Hearken, O my people, to my torah;
spread your ears to the sayings of my mouth.

2 I open my mouth in a proverb;
I gush riddles of antiquity
3 which we hear and know;
which our fathers scribed unto us;
4 we conceal them not from their sons
— scribing to the generation after
the halals of Yah Veh:
and his strength and his marvels he worked.

5 And he raises a witness in Yaaqov
and sets a torah in Yisra El
— which he misvahed our fathers
to make known to their sons;
6 that the generation after
— that the sons yet to be birthed know them;
— who then rise and scribe to their sons
to set their hope in Elohim
and not forget the works of El
— but guard his misvoth:
and not be as their fathers
8 — a revolting and rebellious generation
— a generation that prepared not their heart
— whose spirit was not trustworthy with El.

PSALMS 78

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 The children sons of Ephraim Ephrayim,
being armed, and carrying hurling bows,
turned back in the day of battle.

10 They kept guarded not the covenant of God Elohim,
and refused to walk in his law torah;

11 And forgat his works exploits,
and his wonders marvels that he had shewed them see.

12 Marvellous things did Marvels worked he
in the sight front of their fathers,
in the land of Egypt Misrayim, in the field of Zoan Soan.

13 He divided split the sea,
and caused passed them to pass through;
and he made stationed the waters to stand as an heap.

14 In the daytime day also he led them with a cloud,
and all the night with a light of fire.

15 He clave split the rocks in the wilderness,
and gave them drink as out of the great depths abysses.

16 He brought streams flows also out of the rock,
and caused waters to run down descend like rivers.

17 And they sinned yet more again against him
by provoking the most High rebelling against Elyon
in the wilderness parch.

18 And they tempted God tested El in their heart
by asking meat food for their lust soul.

19 Yea, they spake worded against God Elohim;
they said,
Can God furnish Arrangeth El a table in the wilderness?

20 Behold, he smote the rock,
that the waters gushed out flowed,
and the streams wadies overflowed;
can he give giveth he bread also?
can he provide prepareth he flesh for his people?

21 Therefore the LORD Yah Veh heard this,
and was wroth:
so a fire was kindled against Jacob Yaaqov,
and anger wrath
also came up ascended against Israel Yisra El;

22 Because they believed trusted not in God Elohim,
and trusted confided not in his salvation:

23 Though he had
commanded misvahed the clouds vapours from above,
and opened the doors of heaven the heavens,
And had rained down manna upon them to eat,
and had given them
of the corn crop of heaven the heavens.

25 Man did eat angels' food ate the bread of the mighty:
he sent them meat hunt to the full satiate.

26 He caused an east wind to blow plucked an easterly
in the heaven heavens:
and by his power strength
he brought in drove the south wind southerly.

27 He rained flesh also upon them as dust,
and feathered fowls winged flyers
like as the sand of the sea:

28 And he let it fall felled them in the midst of their camp,
round about their habitations tabernacles.

29 So they did eat, and were well filled mightily satiated:
for he gave them their own desire;

30 They were not estranged from their lust desire.
But while their meat food was yet in their mouths,
The wrath of God came Elohim ascended upon them,
and slew slaughtered the fattest of them,
and smote the chosen men caused the youths
of Israel Yisra El to kneel.

32 For all this they sinned still,
and believed trusted not for his wondrous works marvels.

33 Therefore their days
did he consume he finished off in vanity,
and their years in trouble terror.

34 When he slew slaughtered them,
then they sought him:
and they returned
and enquired sought early after God El.

35 And they remembered
that God Elohim was their rock,
and the high God El Elyon their redeemer.

36 Nevertheless But
they did flatter duped him with their mouth,
and they lied unto him with their tongues.

PSALMS 78

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 The sons of Ephrayim, armed, hurling bows,
turn back in the day of battle;

10 they guard not the covenant of Elohim
and refuse to walk in his torah;

11 they forget his exploits and his marvels
he shows them;

12 — marvels he worked in front of their fathers,
in the land of Misrayim, in the field of Soan.

13 He splits the sea and passes them through;
he stations the waters as a heap:

14 in the day he leads them with a cloud
and all the night with a light of fire:

15 he splits the rocks in the wilderness
and gives them drink from great abysses:

16 he brings flows from the rock
so the waters descend as rivers:

17 and they add to sin against him
by rebelling against Elyon in the parch.

18 They test El in their heart
by asking food for their soul;

19 yes, they word against Elohim;
they say, El — arranges he a table in the wilderness?

20 Behold, he smites the rock, and waters flow;
yes, wadies overflow.
Gives he bread?
Prepares he flesh for his people?
Yah Veh hears this and wroths;

21 and he kindles a fire against Yaaqov
and ascends wrath against Yisra El:
because they neither trusted in Elohim
nor confided in his salvation.

22

23 He misvahs the vapours from above
and opens the doors of the heavens;

24 — he rains manna on them to eat
and gives them the crop of the heavens:
man eats the bread of the mighty
he sends them hunt to satiate.

25

26 He plucks an easterly in the heavens
and by his strength he drives the southerly;

27 he rains flesh on them as dust
and winged flyers as the sand of the sea;

28 he fells them midst their camp
all around their tabernacles:

29 and they eat and satiate mightily;
for he gives them their own desire;

30 they are not estranged from their desire.

31 and their food still being in their mouths,
the wrath of Elohim ascends on them
and slaughters their fattest
and has the youths of Yisra El to kneel.

32 For all this they still sin and trust not his marvels:
33 and he finishes off their days in vanity
and their years in terror.

34 When he slaughters them,
then they seek him
— return and seek early after El;
and they remember
Elohim is their rock and El Elyon their redeemer.

35

36 And they dupe him with their mouth
and lie to him with their tongue:

PSALMS 78

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

37 For their heart was not *right* **established** with him,
neither were they *stedfast* **trustworthy** in his covenant.

38 But he, *being full of compassion* **the merciful**,
forgave **did kapar/atone** their *iniquity* **perversity**,
and *destroyed* **ruined** them not:
yea, many a time **and he abounded**
turned he his anger away **to turn his wrath**,
and *did not stir up all* **wakened not** his *wrath* **fury**.

39 For he remembered that they were *but* **flesh**;
a wind that *passeth away*,
and *cometh not again* **returneth not**.

40 How oft did they *provoke* **rebel** **against** him
in the wilderness,
and *grieve* **contort** him in the *desert* **desolation**!

41 Yea, they turned back and *tempted God* **tested El**,
and *limited* **branded** the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

42 They remembered not his hand,
nor the day when he *delivered* **redeemed** them
from the *enemy* **tribulator**.

43 How he had *wrought* **set** his signs in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and his *wonders* **omens** in the field of *Zoan* **Soan**;

44 And had turned their rivers into blood;
and their *floods* **flows**, that they could not drink.

45 He sent *divers sorts of flies* **swarms** among them,
which devoured them;
and frogs, which *destroyed* **ruined** them.

46 He gave also
their *increase* **produce** unto the caterpillar,
and their labour unto the locust.

47 He *destroyed* **slaughtered** their vines with hail,
and their sycomore trees with *frost* **aphis**.

48 He gave **shut** up their *cattle* **also** **beasts** to the hail,
and their *flocks* **chattel**
to *hot thunderbolts* **burning flashes**.

49 He cast **sent** upon them
the *fierceness of his anger* **fuming wrath**,
wrath **fury**, and *indignation* **rage**, and *trouble* **tribulation**,
by sending evil angels *among them*.

50 He *made a way* **weighed a path** to his *anger* **wrath**;
he spared not their soul from death,
but gave **shut up** their life *over* to the pestilence;

51 And smote all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
the *chief* **firstfruits** of their strength
in the *tabernacles* **tents** of Ham:

52 But made his own *people*
to *go forth* **pull stakes** like *sheep* **a flock**,
and *guided* **drove** them in the wilderness
like a *flock* **drove**.

53 And he led them on *safely* **confidently**,
so that they *feared* **dreaded** not:
but the sea *overwhelmed* **covered over** their enemies.

54 And he brought them
to the border of his *sanctuary* **holies**,
even to — this mountain,
which his right *hand* had *purchased* **chattelized**.

55 He cast out **exiled** the *heathen* **also** **goyim**
before them **from their face**,
and *divided* **felled** them an inheritance by line,
and made the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
to *dwell* **tabernacle** in their tents.

56 Yet they *tempted* **tested** and *provoked* **rebelled**
the *most high God* **against Elohim Elyon**,
and *kept* **guarded** not his *testimonies* **witnesses**:

57 But *turned back* **apostatized**,
and dealt *unfaithfully* **covertly** like their fathers:
they were turned aside like a deceitful bow.

58 For they *provoked* **vexed** him to *anger*
with their *high places* **bamahs**,
and moved him to jealousy
with their *graven images* **sculptiles**.

59 When *God* **Elohim** heard this, he was wroth,
and *greatly* **abhorred** *Israel* **mightily** **spurned** *Yisra El*:

60 So that he forsook the tabernacle of Shiloh,
the tent
which he *placed* **tabernacled** among *men* **humanity**;

61 And *delivered* **gave** his strength into captivity,
and his *glory* **beauty** into the *enemy's* **tribulator's** hand.

62 He gave **shut up** his people *over* also unto the sword;
and was *wroth with* **passed over** his inheritance.

PSALMS 78

exeGeses companion BIBLE

37 for neither is their heart established with him,
nor are they trustworthy in his covenant.

38 And he, the merciful,
kapsar/atones their perversity and ruins them not;
he abounds to turn his wrath
and wakens not his fury:
and he remembers they are flesh
— a passing wind that never returns.

40 How often
they rebelled against him in the wilderness
and contorted him in the desolation!

41 Yes, they turned back and tested El
and branded the Holy One of Yisra El:
they remembered neither his hand,
nor the day he redeemed them from the tribulator
— how he set his signs in Misrayim
and his omens in the field of Soan;
and turned their rivers to blood
and they drank not their flows:
he sent swarms among them to devour them;
and frogs to ruin them:
he gave their produce to the caterpillar
and their labor to the locust:
he slaughtered their vines with hail
and their sycomore trees with aphis:
he shut their beasts to the hail
and their chattel to burning flashes:
he sent on them his fuming wrath
— fury and rage and tribulation
by sending evil angels.

50 He weighed a path to his wrath;
he spared not their soul from death:
yes, shut their life to the pestilence;
and smote all the firstbirthed in Misrayim
— the firstfruits of their strength in the tents of Ham:
and has his own pull stakes as a flock
and drove them as a drove in the wilderness:
and he led them on confidently; they dreaded not;
and the sea covered their enemies:
he brought them to the border of his holies
— this mountain which his right chattelized:
he exiled the goyim from their face
and felled them an inheritance by line:
and had the scions of Yisra El
tabernacle in their tents.

56 Yet they tested and rebelled against Elohim Elyon
and guarded not his witnesses;
and apostatized and dealt covertly as their fathers
— turned aside as a deceitful bow:
and they vex him with their bamahs
and move him to jealousy with their sculptiles.

59 Elohim heard; he was wroth;
and spurned Yisra El mightily;
so that he forsook the tabernacle of Shiloh
— the tent he tabernacled among humanity;
and gave his strength to captivity
and his beauty into the hand of the tribulator;
he shut up his people to the sword
and passed over his inheritance.

PSALMS 78, 79

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

63 The fire consumed their *young men youths*;
and their *maidens virgins*
were not given to marriage **halaled**.
64 Their priests fell by the sword;
and their widows *made no lamentation* **wept not**.
65 Then *the Lord Adonay* awaked as *one* out of sleep,
and like a **the mighty man**
that shouteth *by reason* of wine.
66 And he smote his *enemies tribulators*
in the hinder parts **behind**:
he *put* **gave** them to a *perpetual* **an eternal** reproach.
67 Moreover
he *refused* **spurned** the *tabernacle* **tent** of *Joseph Yoseph*,
and chose not the *tribe* **scion** of *Ephraim Ephrayim*:
68 But chose the *tribe* **scion** of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
the mount *Zion* **Siyon** which he loved.
69 And he built his *sanctuary* **hallowed refuge**
like high palaces **lofty**,
like the earth
which he hath *established for ever* **founded eternally**.
70 He chose David also his servant,
and took him from the *sheepfolds* **flock folds**:
71 *From following the ewes* **After the sucklings**
great with young
he brought him to *feed Jacob* **tend Yaaqov** his people,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** his inheritance.
72 So he *fed* **tended** them
according to the integrity of his heart;
and *guided* **led** them
by the *skilfulness* **discernment** of his *hands* **palms**.

79

A Psalm of Asaph.

1 O *God Elohim*,
the *heathen goyim* are come into thine inheritance;
thy holy *temple* **manse** have they *defiled* **fouled**;
they have *laid Jerusalem* **set Yeru Shalem** on heaps.
2 The *dead bodies* **carcasses** of thy servants
have they given to be *meat* **for food**
unto the *fowls* **flyers** of the *heaven* **heavens**,
the flesh of thy *saints* **merciéd**
unto the *beasts* **live beings** of the earth.
3 Their blood have they *shed* **poured** like water
round about *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
and there was none to *bury them* **entomb**.
4 We are become a reproach
to our *neighbours* **fellow tabernaclers**,
a *scorn* **derision** and *derision* **ridicule**
to them that are round about us.
5 How long, *LORD* **O Yah Veh**?
wilt **shalt** thou be angry *for ever* **in perpetuity**?
shall thy jealousy burn like fire?
6 Pour out thy *wrath* **fury**
upon the *heathen* **goyim**
that have not known thee,
and upon the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**
that have not called upon thy name.
7 For they have devoured *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and *laid waste* **desolated**
his *dwelling place* **habitation of rest**.
8 O remember not against us
former iniquities **first perversities**:
let thy tender mercies
speedily prevent **hastily anticipate** us:
for we are *brought very low* **mightily languished**.
9 Help us, O *God Elohim* of our salvation,
for the *glory* **word of the honour** of thy name:
and *deliver* **rescue** us,
and *purge away* **kapar/atone** our sins,
for thy name's sake.
10 Wherefore should the *heathen* **goyim** say,
Where is their *God* **Elohim**?
let him be known among the *heathen* **goyim** in our sight
by the *revenging* **vengeance** of the blood of thy servants
which is *shed* **poured**.
11 Let the *sighing* **shrieking** of the *prisoner* **bound**
come before thee **be at thy face**;
according to the greatness of thy *power* **thine arm**
preserve thou those that are appointed to die
let the sons of death remain;

PSALMS 78, 79

exeGesés companion BIBLE

63 Fire consumed their youths
and their virgins *were* not *halaled*;
64 their priests fell by the sword
and their widows *wept* not.
65 And Adonay wakened as from sleep
as the mighty shouting from wine:
and he smote his tribulators behind;
66 he gave on them an eternal reproach:
67 he spurned the tent of Yoseph
and chose not the scion of Ephrayim;
68 but chose the scion of Yah Hudah
— the mount Siyon he loved:
69 and he built his hallowed refuge lofty
— eternal as the earth he founded.
70 He chose David his servant
and took him from the flock folds;
71 after the sucklings, great with young,
he brought him to tend Yaaqov his people
and Yisra El his inheritance;
72 thus he tended them
according to the integrity of his heart;
and led them
by the discernment of his palms.

79

Psalm: By Asaph.

1 O Elohim,
the goyim come into your inheritance
— foul your holy manse
— set Yeru Shalem on heaps;
2 — give carcasses of your servants
for food to the flyers of the heavens;
— the flesh of your merciéd
to the live beings of the earth;
3 they pour their blood as water
all around Yeru Shalem;
and no one entombs.
4 We are a reproach to our fellow tabernaclers;
a derision and ridicule to all around us.
5 Until when, O Yah Veh?
Anger you in perpetuity?
Burns your jealousy as fire?
6 Pour out your fury on the goyim
who know you not;
and on the sovereigndoms
who call not on your name:
7 for they devour Yaaqov
and desolate his habitation of rest.
8 O remember not our first perversities against us;
may your tender mercies *hastily* anticipate us;
for we languish mightily:
9 help us, O Elohim of our salvation
for the word of the honor of your name;
and rescue us and *kapar/atone* our sins
for sake of your name.
10 Why say the goyim, Where is their Elohim?
may it be known among the goyim in our sight
by the vengeance of the blood of your servants
which is poured.
11 *May* the shrieking of the bound be at your face;
according to the greatness of your arm
may the sons of death remain;

PSALMS 79, 80

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 And render **return**
unto our *neighbours* **fellow tabernacles** sevenfold
into their bosom their reproach,
wherewith they have reproached thee, O **Lord Adonay**.
13 So we thy people and *sheep flock* of thy pasture
will give thee thanks shall spread hands unto thee
for ever eternally:
we will shew forth shall scribe thy praise halal
to all generations generation to generation.

80

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
upon Sho—shannim—Eduth/**Trumpets of Witness**,
A Psalm of Asaph.
1 Give ear **Hearken**, O *Shepherd Raah of Israel Yisra El*,
thou that *leadest Joseph drivest Yoseph* like a flock;
thou that *dwellest settlest*
between among the cherubims cherubim,
shine forth.
2 Before Ephraim **At the face of Ephrayim**
and Benjamin **Ben Yamin** and Manasseh **Menash Sheh**
stir up waken thy strength might,
and come and save us **be our salvation**.
3 Turn us again **Return to us**, O **God Elohim**,
and cause thy face to *shine lighten*;
and we shall be saved.
4 O **LORD God of hosts Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**,
how long *wilt shalt thou be angry fume*
against the prayer of thy people?
5 Thou feedest them with the bread of tears;
and givest them **triple** tears to drink *in great measure*.
6 Thou *makest settest* us a strife unto our neighbours:
and our enemies *laugh deride* among themselves.
7 Turn us again **Return us**,
O **LORD God of hosts Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**,
and cause **lighten** thy face to *shine*;
and we shall be saved.
8 Thou hast *brought plucked* a vine
out of *Egypt Misrayim*:
thou hast *cast out exiled* the *heathen goyim*,
and planted it.
9 Thou *preparedst room before it*
In facing, thou hast faced,
and **in rooting**, didst cause it to *take deep root*,
and it filled the land.
10 The *hills mountains* were covered
with the shadow of it,
and the *boughs thereof branches*
were like the *goodly cedars of El*.
11 She sent out her *boughs harvest* unto the sea,
and her branches unto the river.
12 Why hast thou then
broken down breached her *hedges walls*,
so that all they which pass by the way *do pluck her?*
13 The *boar hog* out of the *wood forest*
doth waste wasteth it,
and the *wild beast creature* of the field
doth devour tendeth it.
14 Return, we beseech thee,
O **God of hosts Elohim Sabaoth**:
look down from *heaven the heavens*,
and *behold see*, and visit this vine;
15 And the *vineyard plant*
which thy right *hand* hath planted,
and the *branch son*
that thou *madest strong strengthened* for thyself.
16 *It is — burned with fire, it is — cut down:*
they perish destruct
at the rebuke of thy *countenance face*.
17 Let thy hand be upon the man of thy right *hand*,
upon the son of *men humanity*
whom thou *madest strong strengthened* for thyself.
18 So *will shall* not we go *back apostatize* from thee:
quicken enliven us, and we *will shall* call upon thy name.
19 Turn us again **Return us**,
O **LORD God of hosts Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**,
cause thy face to *shine lighten*; and we shall be saved.

PSALMS 79, 80

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 and return sevenfold to the bosom
of our fellow tabernacles
— for the reproach
wherewith they reproach you, O Adonay.
13 and we your people and flock of your pasture
— we spread hands to you eternally;
we scribe your halal generation to generation.

80

To His Eminence;
On Sho—shannim—Eduth/Trumpets of Witness:
A Psalm by Asaph.
1 Hearken, O Raah of Yisra El,
who drives Yoseph as a flock;
who settles among the cherubim;
shine forth
2 at the face of Ephrayim
and Ben Yamin and Menash Sheh;
waken your might and come for our salvation.
3 Return us, O Elohim;
light your face that we be saved.
4 O Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth,
until when
fume you against the prayer of your people?
5 You feed them bread of tears
and give them triple tears to drink;
6 you set us a strife to our neighbours
and our enemies deride among themselves.
7 Return us, O Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth;
light your face that we be saved.
8 You pluck a vine from Misrayim;
you exile the goyim and plant it.
9 In facing, you face it;
and in rooting, you root it;
and it fills the land:
10 the mountains cover with the shadow thereof;
and the branches as the cedars of El:
11 she sends her harvest to the sea
and her branches to the river.
12 Why breach you her walls,
so that all who pass by the way pluck her?
13 The hog from the forest wastes it
and the creature of the field tends it.
14 Return, we beseech you, O Elohim Sabaoth;
look down from the heavens
and see and visit this vine
and the plant you right planted;
15 and the son you strengthened for yourself
— burnt with fire — cut down;
16 they destruct at the rebuke of your face.
17 May your hand be on the man by your right
— the son of humanity
whom you strengthen for yourself:
18 and we apostatize not from you;
enliven us and we call on your name.
19 Return us, O Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth;
light your face that we be saved.

PSALMS 81, 82

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

81 To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
upon Gittith, A Psalm of Asaph.

1 Sing aloud **Shout** unto God **Elohim**
our strength:
make a joyful noise **shout** unto the God **Elohim**
of Jacob **Yaaqov**.

2 Take **Lift** a psalm,
and bring hither **give** the *timbrel* **tambourine**,
the pleasant harp with the *psaltery* **bagpipe**.

3 Blow up **Blast** the trumpet **shophar** in the new moon,
in the time appointed **full moon**,
on our solemn feast **celebration** day.

4 For this was a statute for **Israel Yisra El**,
and a law **judgment** of the God **Elohim** of Jacob **Yaaqov**.

5 This he *ordained* **set** in Joseph **Yoseph**
for a testimony **witness**,
when he went out through the land of **Egypt Misrayim**:
where I heard a language **lip** that I *understood* **knew** not.

6 I removed **turned aside** his shoulder
from the burden:
his hands were delivered **palms passed away**
from the pots **boilers**.

7 Thou calledst in trouble **tribulation**,
and I *delivered* **rescued** thee;
I answered thee in the secret place **covert** of thunder:
I *proved* **proofed** thee at the waters of **Meribah Strife**.
Selah.

8 Hear, O my people,
and I *will testify* **shall witness** unto thee:
O **Israel Yisra El**, if thou *wilt* **shalt** hearken unto me;
There shall no strange god **el** be in thee;
neither shalt thou *worship* **prostrate**
to any strange god **el**.

10 I am the **LORD** — **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**,
which *brought* **ascended** thee
out of the land of **Egypt Misrayim**:
open **enlarge** thy mouth *wide*, and I *will* **shall** fill it.

11 But my people *would* **willed**
to not hearken to my voice;
and *Israel would* **Yisra El had** none of me.

12 So I gave **sent** them up
unto their own hearts' *lust* **the warp of their heart**:
and they walked in their own counsels.

13 Oh that my people had hearkened unto me,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** had walked in my ways!

14 I should *soon* **shortly** have subdued their enemies,
and turned my hand against their *adversaries* **tribulators**.

15 The haters of the **LORD Yah Veh**
should have submitted themselves unto
emaciated in front of him:
but their time
should have endured for ever **become eternal**.

16 He should have fed them also
with the *finest* **fat** of the wheat:
and with honey out of the rock
should I have satisfied thee.

82 A Psalm of Asaph.

1 God standeth **Elohim stationeth**
in the congregation **witness** of the mighty **El**;
he judgeth among the gods **elohim**.

2 How long *will* **shall** ye judge *unjustly* **wickedly**,
and accept **lift** the persons **faces** of the wicked?
Selah.

3 Defend **Judge** the poor and *fatherless* **orphan**:
do justice to **justify**
the afflicted **humble** and *needy* **impoverished**.

4 Deliver **Slip away** the poor and needy:
rid **rescue** them out of the hand of the wicked.

5 They know not, neither *will* **shall** they *understand* **discern**:
they walk on in darkness:
all the foundations of the earth *are out of course* **totter**.

6 I have said, Ye are gods **elohim**;
and all of you are *children* **sons of the most High Elyon**.

7 But ye shall **surely** die like *men* **humanity**,
and fall like one of the *princes* **governors**.

8 Arise, O God **Elohim**, judge the earth:
for thou shalt inherit all *nations* **goyim**.

PSALMS 81, 82

exeGesés companion BIBLE

81 To His Eminence; On Gittith: By Asaph.

1 Shout to Elohim our strength;
shout to Elohim of Yaaqov:

2 lift a psalm and give the tambourine
— the pleasant harp with the bagpipe:
3 blast the shophar in the new moon
— in the full moon on our celebration day.

4 For this *is* a statute to Yisra El
— a judgment of Elohim of Yaaqov;
5 which he set in Yoseph for a witness
when he went through the land of Misrayim.

6 I hear a lip I know not;
I turn aside his shoulder from the burden;
pass his palms from the boilers.

7 You call in tribulation and I rescue you;
I answer you in the covert of thunder;
I proof you at the waters of Meribah/Strife.
Selah.

8 Hear, O my people, and I witness to you;
9 O Yisra El, if you hearken to me;
neither have a strange el in you;
nor prostrate to any strange el.
10 I — Yah Veh your Elohim,
who ascended you from the land of Misrayim;
enlarges your mouth; and I fill it.

11 But my people will to not hearken to my voice;
and Yisra El has none of me:
12 and I send them in the warp of their own heart;
and they walk in their own counsels.
13 Oh that my people hearken to me
and Yisra El walk in my ways:
14 then had I shortly subdued their enemies
and turned my hand against their tribulators.

15 The haters of Yah Veh emaciate in front of him;
but their time is eternal:
16 he feeds them with the fat of the wheat;
and satisfies you with honey from the rock.

82 A Psalm by Asaph.

1 Elohim stations in the witness of El;
he judges among the elohim:
2 until when judge you wickedly
and lift the faces of the wicked?
Selah.

3 Judge the poor and orphan;
justify the humble and impoverished;
4 slip away the poor and needy;
rescue them from the hand of the wicked.

5 They neither know nor discern;
they walk on in darkness;
all the foundations of the earth totter.

6 I — I have said, You *are* elohim;
— and sons of Elyon, all of you;
7 you die as humanity
and fall as one of the governors.
8 Rise, O Elohim, judge the earth;
inherit among all the goyim.

PSALMS 83, 84

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

83

A Song or Psalm of Asaph.

1 Keep not thou silence **Quiet not**, O God **Elohim**;
hold not thy peace **hush not**,
and be not still **rest not**, O God **El**.

2 For, lo **behold**, thine enemies make a tumult **roar**;
and they that hate thee have lifted up the head.

3 They have *taken crafty* **strategized private** counsel
against thy people,
and *consulted* **counseled**
against thy *hidden* **treasured** ones.

4 They have said, Come,
and let us cut them off from *being a nation* **the goyim**;
that the name of *Israel* **Yisra El**
may be no more *in remembrance* **remembered**.

5 For they have *consulted* **counseled** together
with one *consent* **heart**;
they are *confederate* **have cut a covenant** against thee:

6 The *tabernacles* **tents** of Edom,
and the *Ishmaelites* **Yishma Eliym**;
of Moab, and the *Hagarenes* **Hagariym**;
Gebal, and Ammon, and *Amalek* **Amaleq**;
the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**
with the *inhabitants* **settlers** of Tyre **Sor**;
Assur **Ashshur** also is joined with them:
they have *holpen* **been an arm to** the *children* **sons** of Lot.
Selah.

9 Do **Work** unto them as unto the *Midianites* **Midyan**;
as to Sisera, as to *Jabin* **Yabiyn**,
at the *brook* **wadi** of *Kison* **Qishon**;
Which *perished* **desolated** at *Endor* **En Dor**;
they became as dung for the *earth* **soil**.

11 Make **Place** their *nobles* **volunteers** like Oreb,
and like *Zeeb* **Zebach**;
yea, all their *princes* **libations** as *Zebah* **Zebach**,
and as *Zalmunna* **Sal Munna**;
Who said,
Let us *take to ourselves* **possess**
the *houses* **folde**s of *God in possession* **Elohim**.

13 O my *God* **Elohim**, make **place** them like a wheel;
as the *stubble* **before at the face of** the wind.

14 As the fire burneth a *wood* **forest**,
and as the flame *setteth* **inflameth** the mountains *on fire*;
So *persecute* **pursue** them with thy *tempest* **storm**,
and *make* **terrify** them *afraid* with thy *storm* **hurricane**.

16 Fill their faces with *shame* **abasement**;
that they may seek thy name, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

17 Let them *be confounded* **shame**
and *troubled for ever* **terrify eternally**;
yea, let them *be put to shame* **blush**, and *perish* **destruct**;

18 That *men* **they** may know that thou,
whose name alone is *JEHOVAH* **Yah Veh**,
art the *most high* **Elyon** over all the earth.

84

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
upon Gittith,

A Psalm for the sons of *Korah* **Qorach**.

1 How *amiable* **beloved** are thy tabernacles,
O *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**!

2 My soul *longeth* **yearneth**,
yea, even *fainteth* **finisheth off**
for the courts of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
my heart and my flesh
crieth out **shouteth** for the living *God* **El**.

3 Yea, the *sparrow* **bird** hath found an house,
and the swallow a nest for herself,
where she may *lay* **set** her *young* **chicks**,
even *thine* **thy sacrifice** altars,
O *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
my *King* **Sovereign**, and my *God* **Elohim**.

4 Blessed **Blithe** are they that *dwel* **settle** in thy house:
they will be **shall** still *praising* **halal** thee.
Selah.

5 Blessed **Blithe** is the man **humanity**
whose strength is in thee;
in whose heart are the *ways* **highways** of them.

6 Who passing through the valley of *Baca* **Weeping**
make **place** it a *well* **fountain**;
the **early** rain also *filleth the pools* **covereth with blessings**.

PSALMS 83, 84

exeGesés companion BIBLE

83

A Song: A Psalm by Asaph.

1 Quiet not, O Elohim;
hush not, rest not, O El.

2 For, behold, your enemies roar;
they who hate you lift their head;

3 they strategize private counsel
against your people;
and counsel against your treasured ones.

4 They say, Come;
and we cut them off from the goyim;
that the name of Yisra El be no more remembered.

5 For they counseled together with one heart;
they cut a covenant against you
— the tents of Edom and the Yishma Eliym,
of Moab and the Hagariym,
Gebal and Ammon and Amaleq,
the Peleshethiym with the settlers of Sor
and Ashshur joins with them
— an arm to the sons of Lot.
Selah.

9 Work them as to Midyan;
as Sisera, as Yabiyn, at the wadi of Qishon;
desolated at En Dor,
to become as dung for the soil.

11 Place their volunteers as Oreb, as Zebach;
yes, all their libations as Zebach, as Sal Munna;
Who say, Possess the folds of Elohim!

13 O my Elohim, place them as a wheel;
as the stubble at the face of the wind;
as the fire burning a forest;
and as the flame enflaming the mountains:
thus pursue them with your storm
and terrify them with your hurricane:
fill their faces with abasement;
so that they seek your name, O Yah Veh.

17 Shame and terrify them eternally;
yes, that they blush and destruct;
so that they know that you,
whose name alone is Yah Veh,
are Elyon over all the earth.

84

To His Eminence; On Gittith:
A Psalm for the sons of Qorach.

1 How beloved your tabernacles,
O Yah Veh Sabaoth!

2 My soul yearns,
yes, finishes off for the courts of Yah Veh;
my heart and my flesh shout for the living El:
yes, the bird finds a house,
and the swallow a nest for herself
to set her chicks;
your sacrifice altars,
O Yah Veh Sabaoth, my Sovereign, my Elohim.

4 Blithe — they who settle in your house;
they still halal you.
Selah.

5 Blithe — humanity whose strength is in you;
whose highways are in their heart;
who, passing through the valley of weeping,
place it a fountain:
the early rain covers with blessings.

PSALMS 84—86

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 7 They go from *strength* **valour** to *strength* **valour**,
every one of them in Zion appeareth before God
to be seen of Elohim in Siyon.
- 8 O LORD God of hosts **Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**,
hear my prayer:
give ear **hearken**, O God **Elohim** of Jacob **Yaaqov**.
Selah.
- 9 Behold **See**, O God **Elohim** our *shield* **buckler**,
and look upon the face of thine anointed.
- 10 For a day in thy courts is better than a thousand.
I had rather **choose to** be a *doorkeeper* **threshold waiter**
in the house of my God **Elohim**,
than to *dwell* **twirl** in the tents of wickedness.
- 11 For the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim**
is a sun and shield:
the LORD **Yah Veh**
will give *grace* **shall grant charism** and *glory* **honour**:
no good *thing will* **shall** he withhold
from them that walk *uprightly* **integriously**.
- 12 O LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
blessed **blithe** is the man **human**
that *trusteth* **confideth** in thee.

85

- To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
A Psalm for the sons of Korah **Qorach**.
LORD **Yah Veh**,
thou hast been *favourable* **art pleased** unto thy land:
thou hast brought back the captivity of Jacob **Yaaqov**.
- 2 Thou hast *forgiven* **lifted** the *iniquity* **perversity**
of thy people,
thou hast covered all their sin.
Selah.
- 3 Thou hast taken away all thy *wrath* **fury**:
thou hast turned *thyslf*
from the *fierceness* **fuming** of *thine anger* **thy wrath**.
- 4 Turn **Return** to us, O God **Elohim** of our salvation,
and *cause thine anger to cease* **break thy vexation**
toward us.
- 5 Wilt **Shalt** thou be angry with us *for ever* **eternally**?
wilt **shalt** thou draw out thine anger
to all generations **generation to generation**?
- 6 Wilt **Shalt** thou not *revive us again* **return to enliven us**:
that thy people may *rejoice* **cheer** in thee?
- 7 Shew us **Let us see** thy mercy, O LORD **Yah Veh**,
and *grant* **give** us thy salvation.
- 8 I will **shall** hear
what God the LORD will *speak* **El Yah Veh shall word**:
for he will *speak peace* **shall word shalom**
unto his people, and to his *saints* **mercied**:
but let them not turn again to folly.
- 9 Surely his salvation is nigh them that *fear* **awe** him;
that *glory* **honour** may *dwell* **tabernacle** in our land.
- 10 Mercy and truth are met together;
righteousness **justness** and *peace* **shalom**
have kissed *each other*.
- 11 Truth shall *spring* **sprout** out of the earth;
and *righteousness* **justness** shall look down
from heaven **the heavens**.
- 12 Yea, the LORD **Yah Veh** shall give *that which is* **good**;
and our land shall yield her *increase* **produce**.
- 13 *Righteousness* **Justness** shall go *before him* **at his face**;
and shall set us in the way of his steps.

86

- A Prayer of David.
- 1 Bow down **Spread** thine ear, O LORD **Yah Veh**,
hear **answer** me: for I am *poor* **humble** and needy.
- 2 Preserve **Guard** my soul; for I am *holy* **mercied**:
O thou my God **Elohim**,
save thy servant that *trusteth* **confideth** in thee.
- 3 Be *merciful unto me* **Grant me charism**, O Lord **Adonay**:
for I cry **call** unto thee *daily* **all day**.
- 4 Rejoice **Cheer** the soul of thy servant:
for unto thee, O Lord **Adonay**, do I lift up my soul.
- 5 For thou, Lord **O Adonay**,
art good, and *ready to forgive* **forgiving**;
and *plenteous* **abundant** in mercy
unto all them that call upon thee.
- 6 Give ear **Hearken**, O LORD **Yah Veh**, unto my prayer;
and *attend* **hearken** to the voice of my supplications.

PSALMS 84—86

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 7 They go from valour to valour
— seen by Elohim in Siyon.
- 8 O Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth, hear my prayer;
hearken, O Elohim of Yaaqov.
Selah.
- 9 See, O Elohim, our buckler;
and look on the face of your anointed.
- 10 For a day in your courts is better than a thousand.
I choose to be a threshold waiter
in the house of my Elohim,
rather than to twirl in the tents of wickedness.
- 11 For Yah Veh Elohim is a sun and shield;
Yah Veh grants charism and honor;
he withholds no good
from them who walk integriously.
O Yah Veh Sabaoth,
blithe — the human who confides in you.

85

- To His Eminence:
A Psalm for the sons of Qorach.
- 1 You are pleased, O Yah Veh, of your land;
you brought back the captivity of Yaaqov;
you lifted the perversity of your people;
you covered all their sin.
Selah.
- 3 You took away all your fury;
you turned from the fuming of your wrath.
Return to us, O Elohim of our salvation,
and break your vexation toward us.
Anger you with us eternally?
— draw out your anger generation to generation?
— not to return to enliven us
so that your people cheer in you?
- 7 Have us see your mercy, O Yah Veh,
and give us your salvation.
I hear what El Yah Veh words;
for he words shalom
to his people and to his mercied;
and they return not to folly.
- 9 Surely his salvation is near them who awe him;
whose honor tabernacles in our land.
Mercy and truth meet together;
justness and shalom kiss;
truth sprouts from the earth;
and justness looks from the heavens:
yes, Yah Veh gives good
and our land yields her produce;
justness goes at his face
and sets us in the way of his steps.

86

- A Prayer by David.
- 1 Spread your ear, O Yah Veh;
answer me; for I am humble and needy:
- 2 guard my soul; for I am mercied:
O you, my Elohim,
save your servant who confides in you;
grant me charism, O Adonay,
for I call to you all day:
cheer the soul of your servant
for to you, O Adonay, I lift my soul:
for you, O Adonay, are good and forgiving
— abundant in mercy to all who call on you.
- 6 Hearken, O Yah Veh, to my prayer;
hearken to the voice of my supplications:

PSALMS 86—88

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 In the day of my trouble **tribulation**
I will **shall** call upon thee:
for thou wilt **shalt** answer me.
8 Among the **gods Elohim** there is none like unto thee,
O Lord **Adonay**;
neither are there any works like unto thy works
no works like thine.
9 All **nations goyim** whom thou hast **made worked**
shall come and **worship before thee prostrate at thy face**,
O Lord **Adonay**;
and shall *glorify* **honour** thy name.
10 For thou art great,
and *doest wondrous things* **workest marvels**:
thou art *God* **Elohim** alone.
11 Teach me thy way, O **LORD Yah Veh**;
I will **shall** walk in thy truth:
unite my heart to *fear* **awe** thy name.
12 I will *praise* **shall spread hands unto** thee,
O Lord **Adonay** my *God* **Elohim**, with all my heart:
and I will *glorify* **shall honour** thy name
for evermore **eternally**.
13 For great is thy mercy toward me:
and thou hast *delivered* **rescued** my soul
from the **lowest hell nethermost sheol**.
14 O *God* **Elohim**,
the *proud* **arrogant** are risen against me,
and the *assemblies* **witnesses** of *violent men* **tyrants**
have sought after my soul;
and have not set thee **before in front of** them.
15 But thou, O Lord **Adonay**,
art a *God* **an El** full of *compassion* **mercy**,
and *gracious* **charismatic**, *longsuffering* **slow to wrath**,
and *plenteous* **abundant** in mercy and truth.
16 O *turn unto* **face** me,
and *have mercy upon me* **grant me charism**;
give thy strength unto thy servant,
and save the son of *thine handmaid* **thy maid**.
17 *Shew* **Work** me a *token* **sign** for good;
that they which hate me may see it,
and *be ashamed* **shame**:
because thou, **LORD O Yah Veh**,
hast *holpen* **helped** me, and *comforted* **sighed over** me.

87 A Psalm or Song for the sons of *Korah* **Qorach**.

1 His foundation is in the holy mountains.
2 *The* **LORD Yah Veh**
loveth the *gates* **portals** of *Zion* **Siyon**
more than all the *dwelling* **tabernacles** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.
3 *Glorious things* **Honours** are *spoken* **worded** of thee,
O city of *God* **Elohim**.
Selah.
4 I will *make mention of* **shall remember**
Rahab and Babylon **Babel**
to them that know me:
behold *Philistia* **Pelesheth**,
and *Tyre* **Sor**, with *Ethiopia* **Kush**;
this *man* was *born* **birthed** there.
5 And of *Zion* **Siyon** it shall be said,
This **man** and that man was *born* **birthed** in her:
and the *highest* **Elyon** himself shall establish her.
6 *The* **LORD Yah Veh** shall *count* **scribe**,
when he *writeth up* **charteth** the people,
that this *man* was *born* **birthed** there.
Selah.
7 As well the singers
as the *players on instruments* **pluckers** shall be there:
all my *springs* **fountains** are in thee.

88 A Song or Psalm for the sons of *Korah* **Qorach**,
to the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
upon *Mahalath Leannoth* **on Stroking the Humbled**,
Maschil **On Comprehension** of Heman
the *Ezrahite* **Zerachiy**.

1 O **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of my salvation,
I have cried day and night **before in front of** thee:
2 Let my prayer come **before thee at thy face**:
incline **spread** thine ear unto my *cry* **shouting**;
3 For my soul *is full of troubles* **satiateth with evil**:
and my life *draweth nigh* **toucheth** unto the *grave* **sheol**.

PSALMS 86—88

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 in the day of my tribulation I call on you
for you answer me:
8 Among the *elohim*,
no one is likened to you, O Adonay;
no works like yours.
9 All the *goyim* you worked
come and prostrate at your face, O Adonay,
and honor your name:
10 for you are great and work marvels;
you alone are Elohim.
11 Teach me your way, O Yah Veh;
I walk in your truth:
unify my heart to awe your name.
12 I spread hands to you, O Adonay my Elohim,
with all my heart;
and honor your name eternally.
13 For great *is* your mercy toward me;
you rescue my soul from the nethermost sheol.
14 O Elohim, the arrogant rise against me
and the witnesses of tyrants seek my soul;
they set you not in front of them.
15 But you, O Adonay, are El
— full of mercy and charismatic;
slow to wrath and abundant in mercy and truth.
16 O face me, and grant me charism;
give your servant strength
and save the son of your maid:
work me a sign for good;
17 that they who hate me see it and shame:
because you, O Yah Veh,
help me and sigh over me.

87 A Psalm: A Song for the sons of Qorach.

1 His foundation *is* in the holy mountains;
2 Yah Veh loves the portals of Siyon
more than all the tabernacles of Yaaqov:
3 honors are worded of you, O city of Elohim.
Selah.

4 I remember Rahab and Babel
to them who know me;
behold Pelesheth and Sor with Kush;
this *one* was birthed there.
5 And of Siyon it says,
This man and that man *were* birthed in her;
and Elyon himself establishes her.
6 When he charts the people,
Yah Veh scribes, this *one* was birthed there.
Selah.

7 The singers as well as the pluckers
— all my fountains *are* in you.

88 A Song, a Psalm for the sons of Qorach;
To His Eminence; On Stroking the Humbled;
On Comprehension: By Heman the Zerachiy.

1 O Yah Veh Elohim of my salvation,
in the day I cry; and at night in front of you;
2 my prayer comes at your face:
spread your ear to my shouting;
3 for my soul satiates with evil
and my life touches to sheol:

PSALMS 88, 89

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 I am *counted* **fabricated** with them
that *go down* **descend** into the *pit well*:
I am as a man — a **mighty** that hath no *strength* **might**:
5 Free **Liberated** among the dead,
like the *slain* **pierced** that lie in the *grave* **tomb**,
whom thou rememberest no more:
and they are cut off from thy hand.
6 Thou hast *laid* **placed** me
in the *lowest pit* **nethermost well**,
in darkness, in the deeps.
7 Thy *wrath* **lieth hard** **fury** **proppeth** upon me,
and thou hast *afflicted* **humbled** me with all thy waves.
Selah.
8 Thou hast *put away* **far removed**
mine acquaintance far from me **them whom I know**;
thou hast *made* **placed** me
an *abomination* **abhorrence** unto them:
I am *shut up* — **restrained**, and I cannot come forth.
9 Mine eye *mourneth* **languisheth**
by reason of affliction **from humiliation**:
LORD O Yah Veh, I have called daily upon thee,
I have *stretched out* **spread** my *hands* **palms** unto thee.
10 Wilt **Shalt** thou *shew wonders* **work marvels**
to the dead?
shall the *dead* **ghosts** arise
and *praise* **spread hands unto** thee?
Selah.
11 Shall thy *lovingkindness* **mercy**
be *declared* **scribed** in the *grave* **tomb**?
or thy *faithfulness* **trustworthiness**
in *destruction* **Abaddon**?
12 Shall thy *wonders* **marvels** be known in the dark?
and thy *righteousness* **justness**
in the land of *forgetfulness* **oblivion**?
13 But unto thee have I cried, O LORD Yah Veh;
and in the morning
shall my prayer *prevent* **anticipate** thee.
14 LORD O Yah Veh, why castest thou off my soul?
why hidest thou thy face from me?
15 I am *afflicted* **humbled**
and *ready to die* — **expiring**
from my youth up **since ladhood**:
while I *suffer* **bear** thy terrors I am *distracted* **perplexed**.
16 Thy *fierce wrath* **goeth** **fuming** **passeth** over me;
thy terrors *have cut me off* **exterminate me**.
17 They *came round about* **surround** me *daily* **all day**
like water;
they *compassed me about* **surround me** together.
18 Lover and friend
hast thou *put far* **far removed** from me,
and *mine acquaintance* **they whom I know** into darkness.

89

Maschil On Comprehension

of Ethan the Ezrahite Zerachiy.

1 I *will* **shall** sing of the mercies of the LORD Yah Veh
for ever **eternally**:
with my mouth
will **shall** I make known thy *faithfulness* **trustworthiness**
to all generations **generation to generation**.
2 For I have said,
Mercy shall be built up *for ever* **eternally**:
thy *faithfulness* **trustworthiness**
shalt thou establish in the very heavens.
3 I have *made* **cut** a covenant with my chosen,
I have *sworn* **oathed** unto David my servant,
4 Thy seed *will* **shall** I establish *for ever* **eternally**,
and build up thy throne
to all generations **generation to generation**.
Selah.
5 And the heavens
shall *praise* **spread hands unto** thy *wonders* **marvels**,
O LORD Yah Veh:
thy *faithfulness* **trustworthiness** also
in the congregation of the *saints* **holy**.
6 For who in the *heaven* **vapours**
can **shall** be *compared* **ranked**
unto the LORD **with Yah Veh**?
who among the sons of the *mighty* **El**
can **shall** be likened unto the LORD Yah Veh?

PSALMS 88, 89

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 I am *fabricated* with them descending the well;
I — a mighty having no might;
5 liberated among the dead
as pierced lying in the tomb
whom you remember no more:
and they are cut off from your hand.
6 You place me in the nethermost well
— in darkness — in the deeps:
7 your fury props on me
and you humble me with all your waves.
Selah.
8 You far removed them whom I know;
you place me an abhorrence to them
— restrained — I come not forth:
9 my eye languishes from humiliation;
O Yah Veh, I call on you daily;
I spread my palms to you.
10 Work you marvels to the dead?
Rise the ghosts? Spread they hands to you?
Selah.
11 Is your mercy scribed in the tomb?
— your trustworthiness in Abaddon?
12 — your marvels known in the dark?
— your justness in the land of oblivion?
13 And I — to you I cried, O Yah Veh;
and in the morning my prayer anticipates you.
14 O Yah Veh, why cast you my soul?
Why hide your face from me?
15 I am humbled — expiring since ladhood;
I bear your terrors — perplexed;
16 your fuming passes over me;
your terrors exterminate me;
17 surrounding me all day as water:
they altogether surround me.
18 You far removed lover and friend from me
and they whom I know into darkness.

89

On Comprehension: By Ethan the Zerachiy.

1 I sing of the mercies of Yah Veh eternally;
with my mouth I make known your trustworthiness
generation to generation.
2 For I say, your mercy builds eternally;
your trustworthiness
establishes in the very heavens:
3 I cut a covenant with my chosen;
I oathed to David my servant:
4 your seed establishes eternally
and builds your throne generation to generation.
Selah.
5 And the heavens spread hands to your marvels,
O Yah Veh;
to your trustworthiness
in the congregation of the holy:
6 Who in the vapours ranks with Yah Veh?
Who among the sons of El likens to Yah Veh?

PSALMS 89

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

7 God El is greatly to be feared **awed**
in the *assembly* **private counsel** of the *saints* **holy**,
and to be had in reverence **awed**
of **over** all them that are about him.

8 O LORD God of hosts **Yah Elohim Sabaoth**,
who is a *strong* LORD **powerful Yah** like unto thee?
or to thy *faithfulness* **trustworthiness** round about thee?

9 Thou *rulest* **reignest** the *raging* **rising** of the sea:
when the waves *thereof* arise, thou *stillest* **laudest** them.

10 Thou hast *broken* **crushed** Rahab *in pieces*,
as one that is *slain* **pierced**;
thou hast scattered thine enemies
with thy *strong* arm of **strength**.

11 The heavens are thine, the earth also is thine:
as for the world and the fulness *thereof*,
thou hast founded them.

12 The north and the *south* **right** thou hast created them:
Tabor and Hermon shall *rejoice* **shout** in thy name.

13 Thou hast a *mighty* arm **an arm of might**:
strong **strengthened** is thy hand,
and *high* **lofted** is thy right hand.

14 *Justice* **Justness** and judgment
are the *habitation* **establishment** of thy throne:
mercy and truth shall *go before* **anticipate** thy face.

15 *Blessed* **Blithe** is the people
that know the *joyful sound* **shout**:
they shall walk, O LORD **Yah Veh**,
in the light of thy *countenance* **face**.

16 In thy name shall they *rejoice* **twirl** all the day:
and in thy *righteousness* **justness**
shall they be *exalted* **lofted**.

17 For thou art the *glory* **beauty** of their strength:
and in *at* thy *favour* **pleasure**
our horn shall be *exalted* **lofted**.

18 For the LORD **Yah Veh** is our *defence* **buckler**;
and the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El** is our *king* **sovereign**.

19 Then thou *spakest* **wordest** in vision
to thy *holy* **mercied** one, and saidst,
I have *laid* **placed** help upon one that is mighty;
I have exalted one chosen out of the people.

20 I have found David my servant;
with my *holy* **oil ointment** have I anointed him:
with whom my hand shall be established:
mine arm also shall strengthen him.

22 The enemy shall not exact upon him;
nor the son of wickedness *afflict* **abase** him.

23 And I *will beat down* **shall crush** his *foes* **tribulators**
before **at** his face,
and *plague* **smite** them that hate him.

24 But my *faithfulness* **trustworthiness** and my mercy
shall be with him:
and in my name shall his horn be *exalted* **lofted**.

25 I *will* **shall** set his hand *also* in the sea,
and his right *hand* in the rivers.

26 He shall *cry* **call** unto me, Thou art — my father,
my *God* **El**, and the rock of my salvation.

27 Also I *will make* **shall give** him
to be my *firstborn* **firstbirthed**,
higher than the kings **Elyon of the sovereigns** of the earth.

28 My mercy *will I keep* **shall I guard** for him
for evermore **eternally**,
and my covenant shall *stand fast* **be trustworthy** with him.

29 His seed *also will I make* **shall I set**
to endure for ever **eternal**,
and his throne as the days of *heaven* **the heavens**.

30 If his *children* **sons** forsake my *law* **torah**,
and walk not in my judgments;
31 If they *break* **profane** my statutes,
and *keep* **guard** not my *commandments* **misvoth**;
32 Then *will* **shall** I visit their *transgression* **rebellion**
with the *rod* **scion**,
and their *iniquity* **perversity** with *stripes* **plagues**.

33 Nevertheless my *lovingkindness* **mercy**
will **shall** I not *utterly take from him* **void**,
nor *suffer* **falsify** my *faithfulness* to *fail* **trustworthiness**.

34 My covenant *will* **shall** I not *break* **profane**,
nor alter the *thing that is gone out* **proceedings** of my lips.

35 Once have I *sworn* **oathed** by my holiness
that I *will* **shall** not lie unto David.

PSALMS 89

exeGeses companion BIBLE

7 El is greatly to be **awed**
in the private counsel of the holy;
and **awed** over them who *are* all around him.

8 O Yah Elohim Sabaoth,
Who is a powerful Yah likened to you?
Or to your trustworthiness all around you?

9 You reign over the rising of the sea;
the waves rise, you laud them:
10 you crush Rahab as one pierced;
you scattered your enemies
with your arm of strength;

11 the heavens are yours — the earth is yours
— the world and the fulness you founded;
the north and the right you created.
Tabor and Hermon shout in your name.

13 You have an arm of might;
strengthened is your hand;
lofted is your right;
14 justness and judgment
are the establishment of your throne:
mercy and truth
anticipate your face.

15 Blithe — the people who know the shout;
they walk, O Yah Veh,
in the light of your face:
16 in your name they twirl all the day;
and in your justness they are lofted.

17 For you are the beauty of their strength;
and at your pleasure our horn is lofted.
18 For Yah Veh is our buckler
and the Holy One of Yisra El our sovereign.

19 Then you worded in vision
to your mercied one and said,
I placed help on one who is mighty;
I exalted one chosen from the people:
20 I found David my servant;
with my holy ointment I anoint him;
21 with whom I establish my hand;
my arm strengthens him:
22 neither the enemy exacts from him;
nor the son of wickedness abase him:
23 I crush his tribulators at his face
and smite them who hate him.

24 And my trustworthiness and my mercy
are with him;
and in my name his horn is lofted.

25 I set his hand on the sea
and his right on the rivers.
26 He calls to me, You — my father,
my El and the rock of my salvation.
27 I also give him to be my firstbirthed,
Elyon of the sovereigns of the earth.
28 I guard my mercy for him eternally
and my trustworthy covenant with him;
29 I set his seed eternal
and his throne as the days of the heavens.

30 If his sons forsake my torah
and walk not in my judgments;
31 if they profane my statutes
and guard not my misvoth;
32 then I visit their rebellion with the scion
and their perversity with plagues:
33 I neither void my mercy
nor falsify my trustworthiness;
34 neither profane my covenant
nor alter the proceedings of my lips.

35 Once I oath by my holiness; I lie not to David:

PSALMS 89, 90

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 36 His seed shall *endure for ever* **be eternal**,
and his throne as the sun before me.
- 37 It shall be established *for ever* **eternally** as the moon,
and as a *faithful* **trustworthy** witness
in heaven **the vapours**.
Selah.
- 38 But thou hast cast off and *abhorred* **spurned**,
thou hast *been wroth with* **passed over** thine anointed.
- 39 Thou hast *made void* **rejected**
the covenant of thy servant:
thou hast profaned his *crown* **separatism**
by casting it to the ground **earth**.
- 40 Thou hast *broken down* **breached** all his *hedges* **walls**;
thou hast *brought set* his *strong holds* **fortresses** to ruin.
- 41 All that pass by the way spoil him:
he is a reproach to his *neighbours* **fellow tabernaclers**.
- 42 Thou hast *set up* **exalted**
the right *hand* of his *adversaries* **tribulators**;
thou hast made all his enemies to *rejoice* **cheer**.
- 43 Thou hast also turned the *edge* **form** of his sword,
and hast not *made* **raised** him to *stand in the battle* **war**.
- 44 Thou hast *made* **shabbathized** his *glory to cease* **purity**,
and cast **precipitated** his throne
down to the ground **earth**.
- 45 The days of his youth hast thou *shortened* **curtailed**:
thou hast covered him with shame.
Selah.
- 46 How long, *LORD* **O Yah Veh?**
wilt shalt thou hide thyself *for ever in* **perpetuity?**
shall thy *wrath* **fury** burn like fire?
- 47 Remember how *short my time is* **transcient**:
wherefore hast thou
made **created** all *men* **sons of humanity** in vain?
- 48 What *man is he that* **mighty** liveth,
and shall not see death?
shall he *deliver* **rescue** his soul
from the hand of *the grave* **sheol**?
Selah.
- 49 *Lord Adonay*,
where are thy *former lovingkindnesses* **first mercies**,
which thou *swarest* **oathest** unto David
in thy *truth* **trustworthiness**?
- 50 Remember, *Lord Adonay*,
the reproach of thy servants;
how I *do* bear in my bosom *the reproach of*
all the *mighty* **great** people;
- 51 Wherewith thine enemies have reproached,
O LORD **Yah Veh**;
wherewith they have reproached
the *footsteps* **heelprints** of thine anointed.
- 52 Blessed be *the LORD* **for evermore** **Yah Veh eternally**.
Amen, and Amen.

BOOK IV

90

- A Prayer of *Moses* **Mosheh**
the man of *God* **Elohim**.
- 1 *Lord Adonay*,
thou hast been our *dwelling place* **habitation**
in all generations **generation to generation**.
- 2 Before the mountains were *brought forth* **birthed**,
or ever thou *hadst formed* **writhed**
the earth and the world,
even from *everlasting* **eternity** to *everlasting* **eternity**,
thou art *God* — **El**.
- 3 Thou turnest man to *destruction* **be crushed**;
and sayest, Return, ye *children* **sons of men** **humanity**.
- 4 For a thousand years in thy *sight* **eyes**
are *but* as yesterday when it is past,
and as — a watch in the night.
- 5 Thou *carriest* **causest** them
away as with a flood **to be floodborne**;
they are as a sleep:
in the morning they are like grass
which *groweth up* **changeth**.
- 6 In the morning it flourisheth, and *groweth up* **changeth**;
in the evening it is cut *down*, and withereth.
- 7 For we are *consumed* **finished off**
by thine anger **thy wrath**,
and by thy *wrath* **fury** are we *troubled* **terrified**.

PSALMS 89, 90

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 36 his seed is eternal
and his throne as the sun in front of me;
— established eternally as the moon
and as a trustworthy witness in the vapours.
Selah.
- 38 And you — you cast off and spurn;
you pass over your anointed.
- 39 you reject the covenant of your servant;
you profane his separatism to the earth;
you breach all his walls;
you set his fortresses to ruin.
- 40
- 41 All who pass by the way spoil him;
— a reproach to his fellow tabernaclers.
- 42 You exalt the right of his tribulators;
you have all his enemies cheer;
- 43 you turn the form of his sword
and raise him to not war;
- 44 you shabbathized his purity
and precipitate his throne to the earth:
- 45 you curtailed the days of his youth;
you covered him with shame.
Selah.
- 46 Until when, O Yah Veh, hide you yourself?
In perpetuity? — Burn your fury as fire?
Remember how transcient!
Created you all sons of humanity in vain?
- 48 What mighty lives and sees not death?
— rescues his soul from the hand of sheol?
Selah.
- 49 Where are your first mercies, O Adonay,
which you oathed to David in your trustworthiness?
- 50 Remember, O Adonay,
the reproach of your servants;
how in my bosom I bear all the great people;
whom your enemies reproached, O Yah Veh
— reproached the heelprints of your anointed.
Blessed — Yah Veh eternally.
Amen and Amen.

BOOK IV

90

- A Prayer of Mosheh, the man of Elohim.
- 1 Adonay, you have been our habitation
generation to generation.
- 2 ere the mountains were birthed;
or ever you writhed the earth and the world;
even from eternity to eternity — you are El.
You return man to crush;
and say, Return, you sons of humanity.
- 3
- 4 For a thousand years in your eyes
are as yesterday when it is past
— a watch in the night.
- 5 Floodborne, as asleep;
in the morning, as grass that changes.
- 6 In the morning, flourishes and changes;
in the evening, cut and withered:
for we are finished off by your wrath
and terrified by your fury.
- 7

PSALMS 90, 91

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 Thou hast set our *iniquities* **perversities**
before **in front of** thee,
our *secret sins* **concealed**
in the light of thy *countenance* **face**.

9 For all our days *are passed away* **have turned face**
in thy *wrath* **fury**;
we *spend* **finish off** our years as a *tale that is told* **meditation**.

10 The days of our years
are *threescore years and ten* **seventy years**;
and if by *reason of strength* **might**
they be *fourscore* **eighty** years,
yet is their *strength* **pride, labour** **toil** and *sorrow* **mischieff**;
for it is *soon cut off* **quickly passed over**,
and we fly away.

11 Who knoweth the *power* **strength**
of *thine anger* **thy wrath**?
even according to thy fear **as thy awe**, so is thy *wrath* **fury**.

12 So *teach us* **have us know** to number our days,
that we may apply our hearts unto wisdom.

13 Return, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, how long?
and *let it repent thee* **sigh thou** concerning thy servants.

14 O satisfy us *early* **mornings** with thy mercy;
that we may *rejoice* **shout** and *be glad* **cheer** all our days.

15 *Make us glad* **Cheer us** according to the days
wherein thou hast afflicted **humbled us**,
and the years *wherein* we have seen evil.

16 Let thy *work appear* **deeds be seen** unto thy servants,
and thy *glory* **majesty** unto their *children* **sons**.

17 And let the *beauty* **pleasantness**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim** be upon us:
and establish thou the work of our hands upon us;
yea, the work of our hands establish thou it.

91

He that *dwelleth* **settleth**
in the *secret place of the most High* **covert of Elyon**
shall *abide* **stay**
under the shadow of the *Almighty* **Shadday**.

2 I *will shall* say of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
He is my refuge and my *fortress* **stronghold**:
my *God* **Elohim**; in him *will I trust* **shall I confide**.

3 *Surely* he shall *deliver* **rescue** thee
from the snare of the *fowler* **snarer**,
and from the *noisome* **calamitous** pestilence.

4 He shall cover thee with his *feathers* **pinions**,
and under his wings shalt thou *trust* **seek refuge**:
his truth shall be thy shield and buckler.

5 Thou shalt not *be afraid* **awe**
for the *terror* **dread** by night;
nor for the arrow that *flieth* by day;
Nor for the pestilence that *walketh* in darkness;
nor for the *destruction* **ruin**
that *wasteth* **devastateth** at noonday.

7 A thousand shall fall at thy side,
and *ten thousand* **myriads** at thy right *hand*;
but it shall not *come* **nigh** **approach** thee.

8 Only with *thine eyes* shalt thou *behold* **look**
and see the *reward* **retribution** of the wicked.

9 Because thou hast *made the* *LORD* **set Yah Veh**,
which is my refuge, *even the most High* **Elyon**,
thy habitation;

10 There shall no evil *befall* **happen** thee,
neither shall any plague come *nigh* thy *dwelling* **tent**.

11 For he shall *give* **misvah** his angels *charge* over thee,
to *keep* **guard** thee in all thy ways.

12 They shall *bear* **lift** thee up in their *hands* **palms**,
lest thou *dash* **stub** thy foot against a stone.

13 Thou shalt tread upon the **roaring** lion and *adder* **asp**:
the *young lion* **whelp** and the *dragon* **monster**
shalt thou trample under feet.

14 Because he hath
set his love upon **attached himself to** me,
therefore *will I deliver* **shall I slip** him away:
I *will set* **shall loft** him *on high*,
because he hath known my name.

15 He shall call upon me, and I *will* **shall** answer him:
I *will* **shall** be with him in *trouble* **tribulation**;
I *will deliver* **shall rescue** him, and honour him.

16 With *long life* **will length of days** shall I satisfy him,
and *shew him* **let him see** my salvation.

PSALMS 90, 91

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 You set our perversities in front of you,
our concealments in the light of your face.

9 For all our days turn face in your fury;
we finish off our years as a meditation:
10 the days of our years, seventy years;
and if by might, eighty years;
yet their pride is toil and mischief
— quickly passed over and we fly away.

11 Who knows the strength of your wrath?
As your awe, thus your fury.

12 So have us know to number our days,
so that we apply our hearts to wisdom.

13 Return, O Yah Veh! Until when?
Sigh concerning your servants!

14 O satisfy us mornings with your mercy;
so that we shout and cheer all our days:
15 cheer us according to the days you humbled us
and the years we saw evil;
16 show your deeds to your servants
and your majesty to their sons;
17 that the pleasantness of Yah Veh our Elohim
be on us:
establish the work of our hands on us;
yes, the work of our hands, establish it.

91 He who settles in the covert of Elyon
stays under the shadow of Shadday.

2 I say of Yah Veh, My refuge and my stronghold;
my Elohim; in him I confide:

3 he rescues you from the snare of the snarer
— from the calamitous pestilence:

4 he covers you with his pinions
and under his wings you seek refuge:
his truth are your shield and buckler.

5 Neither awe for the dread of night
nor the arrow that flies by day;
6 neither for the pestilence that walks in darkness
nor for the ruin that devastates at noonday.

7 A thousand fall at your side
and myriads at your right;
but they approach you not.

8 But look with your eyes
and see the retribution of the wicked.

9 Because you, O Yah Veh, my refuge
set Elyon your habitation.

10 Neither evil happens you,
nor any plague approach your tent;
11 for he misvahs his angels over you,
to guard you in all your ways:
12 hey lift you in their palms
lest you stub your foot against a stone:
13 you tread on the roaring lion and asp;
and trample the whelp and the monster under foot.

14 Because he attaches himself to me,
I slip him away;
15 loft him, because he knows my name.
He calls on me and I answer him;
I am with him in tribulation;
I rescue him and honor him:
16 with length of days I satisfy him
and have him see my salvation.

PSALMS 92, 93

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

92

A Psalm or Song
for the *sabbath shabbath* day.

1 It is a good *thing*
to give thanks **spread hands** unto the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and to sing praises **psalm** unto thy name,
O most High **Elyon**:
2 To shew forth **tell** thy *lovingkindness mercy*
in the morning,
and thy *faithfulness trustworthiness*
every night **in the nights**,
3 Upon an *instrument of ten strings* the **decachord**,
and upon the *psaltery* **bagpipe**;
upon the harp with a *solemn sound* **meditation**.
4 For thou, *LORD O Yah Veh*,
hast made **cheered** me *glad* through thy *work deeds*:
I will **triumph shall shout** in the works of thy hands.
5 O *LORD Yah Veh*, how *great* **greatened** are thy works!
and thy *thoughts fabrications*
are very *deep* **mightily deepened**.
6 A *brutish* **stupid** man knoweth not;
neither doth a fool *understand this discern*.
7 When the wicked *spring blossom* as the *grass herbage*,
and when all the *workers doers* of *iniquity mischief*
do flourish;
it is that they shall be *destroyed* **desolated**
for ever **eternally**:
8 But thou, *LORD O Yah Veh*,
art *most high for evermore* **in the heights eternally**.
9 For, *lo behold*, thine enemies, O *LORD Yah Veh*,
for, *lo behold*, thine enemies shall *perish* **destruct**;
all the *workers doers* of *iniquity mischief*
shall be *scattered* **separated**.
10 But my horn shalt thou exalt
like *the horn of an unicorn* **a reem**:
I shall be anointed with *fresh oil* **green ointment**.
11 Mine eye also shall *see* **look**
my desire on mine enemies **on my observers**,
and mine ears shall hear
my desire of the wicked **the vilifiers**
that rise up against me.
12 The *righteous just* shall *flourish blossom*
like the palm tree:
he shall *grow* **increase** like a cedar in Lebanon.
13 Those that be *planted transplanted*
in the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*
shall *flourish blossom* in the courts of our *God Elohim*.
14 They shall still *bring forth fruit* **germinate**
in *old age* **greyness**;
they shall be fat and *flourishing* **green**;
15 To shew **tell** that the *LORD Yah Veh* is *upright* **straight**:
he is — my rock,
and there is no *unrighteousness wickedness* in him.

93

The LORD Yah Veh reigneth,
he is clothed **hath enrobed** with *majesty pomp*;
the LORD is clothed Yah Veh **hath enrobed** with strength,
wherewith he hath girded himself:
the world also is established,
that it *cannot be moved* **totter not**.
2 Thy throne is established *of old* **since then**:
thou art from *everlasting* **eternity**.
3 The *floods rivers* have lifted up, O *LORD Yah Veh*,
the *floods rivers* have lifted up their voice;
the *floods rivers* lift up their waves.
4 *The LORD on high Yah Veh* **in the heights**
is mightier than the *noise voice* of many waters,
yea, than the mighty waves of the sea.
5 Thy *testimonies witnesses*
are very *sure* **mighty trustworthy**:
holiness *becometh* **befitteth** thine house,
O *LORD Yah Veh*, for ever **to length of days**.

PSALMS 92, 93

exeGesés companion BIBLE

92

A Psalm; A Song: For the shabbath day.

1 It is good to spread hands to Yah Veh
and to psalm to your name, O Elyon:
2 to tell your mercy in the morning
and your trustworthiness in the nights:
3 on the decachord and on the bagpipe;
on the harp with a meditation.
4 For you, O Yah Veh,
cheer me through your deeds;
I shout in the works of your hands.
5 O Yah Veh, how your works greaten!
How mightily your fabrications deepen!
6 Neither the stupid man knows;
nor the fool discerns this:
7 when the wicked blossom as the herbage
and when all the doers of mischief flourish
to be desolated eternally.
8 But you, O Yah Veh,
are in the heights eternally.
9 For behold, your enemies, O Yah Veh,
for behold, your enemies destruct;
all the doers of mischief separate.
10 But you exalt my horn as a reem
— anoint with green ointment.
11 My eye also sees my observers
and my ears hear the vilifiers who rise against me.
12 The just blossom as the palm tree;
he increases as a cedar in Lebanon:
13 they who are transplanted
in the house of Yah Veh
blossom in the courts of our Elohim:
14 they still germinate in greyness — fat and green;
15 to tell that Yah Veh is straight
— my rock
and there is no wickedness in him.

93

Yah Veh reigns — enrobed with pomp;
Yah Veh enrobes with strength; he girts himself:
the world is established that it totter not:
2 your throne is established since then;
yours — from eternity.
3 The rivers lift, O Yah Veh;
the rivers lift their voice; the rivers lift their waves:
4 Yah Veh in the heights
is mightier than the voice of many waters
— than the mighty waves of the sea.
5 Your witnesses are mighty trustworthy;
holiness befits your house, O Yah Veh,
to length of days.

PSALMS 94, 95

exeGes ready research BIBLE

94

O LORD God, to whom vengeance belongeth

O El of vengeance;

O God, to whom vengeance belongeth

O Yah Veh El of vengeance,

shew thyself shine.

2 Lift up thyself, thou judge of the earth:
render a reward **return a dealing** to the *proud* **pompous**.

3 *LORD O Yah Veh*, how long shall the wicked,
how long shall the wicked *triumph* **jump for joy?**

4 How long shall they *utter* **gush**
and *speak hard things* **word impudence?**
and all the *workers* **doers of iniquity mischief**
boast themselves say?

5 They *break in pieces* **crush** thy people,
O LORD Yah Veh,
and *afflict* **humble** thine *heritage* **inheritance**.
They *slay* **slaughter**
the widow and the *stranger* **sojourner**,
and murder the *fatherless* **orphan**.

7 Yet they say, *The LORD Yah Veh* shall not see,
neither shall *the God* **Elohim of Jacob Yaaqov**
regard **discern** it.

8 *Understand* **Discern**, ye *brutish* **stupid** among the people:
and ye fools, when *will* **shall** ye *be wise* **discern?**
He that planted the ear, shall he not hear?
he that formed the eye, shall he not see **scan?**

10 He that *chastiseth* **disciplineth** the *heathen* **goyim**,
shall not he *correct* **reprove?**
he that teacheth *man* **humanity** knowledge,
shall not he know?
The LORD Yah Veh
knoweth the *thoughts* **fabrications** of *man* **humanity**,
that they are vanity.

12 *Blessed* **Blithe** is the *man* — **the mighty**
whom thou *chastenest* **disciplinest**, *O LORD Yah*,
and teachest him out of thy *law* **torah**;
That thou mayest *give him* rest **him**
from the days of *adversity* **evil**,
until the pit **of ruin** be digged for the wicked.

14 *For the LORD Yah Veh*
will shall not *cast off* **abandon** his people,
neither *will shall* he forsake his inheritance.

15 But judgment shall return unto *righteousness* **justness**:
and all the *upright* **straight** in heart shall *follow* **be after** it.

16 *Who will shall* rise up for me
against the *evildoers* **vilifiers?**
or who will stand up shall set for me
against the *workers* **doers of iniquity mischief?**
Unless *the LORD Yah Veh* had been my help,
my soul had almost *dwelt* **tabernacled** in silence.

18 When I said, My foot *slippeth* **tottereth**;
thy mercy, *O LORD Yah Veh*, *held supported* me up.
In the *multitude* **abundance** of my thoughts within me
thy *comforts* **consolations** delight my soul.

20 Shall the throne of *iniquity* **calamity**
have fellowship **join** with thee,
which *frameth mischief* **formeth toil** by a *law* **statute?**

21 They *gather themselves together* **troop**
against the soul of the *righteous* **just**
and *condemn* **judge wicked** the innocent blood.
But *the LORD Yah Veh* is my *defence* **secure loft**;
and my *God* **Elohim** is the rock of my refuge.

23 And he shall *bring turn* upon them
their own *iniquity* **mischief**,
and shall *cut* **exterminate** them off
in their own *wickedness* **evil**:
yea, the LORD Yah Veh our *God* **Elohim**
shall *cut* **exterminate** them off.

95

O come, let us *sing* **shout**

unto *the LORD Yah Veh*:

let us *make a joyful noise* **shout**

to the rock of our salvation.

2 Let us *come before* **anticipate** his *presence* **face**
with *thanksgiving* **spread hands**,
and *make a joyful noise* **shout** unto him with psalms.

PSALMS 94, 95

exeGes companion BIBLE

94

O El of vengeance;

O Yah Veh El of vengeance, shine!

Lift yourself, O judge of the earth;

return a dealing to the pompous.

O Yah Veh, until when the wicked

— until when jump the wicked for joy?

They gush; they word impudence

and all the doers of mischief say.

5

They crush your people, O Yah Veh,

and humble your inheritance;

6

they slaughter the widow and the sojourner

and murder the orphan:

7

and they say, neither Yah Veh sees,

nor Elohim of Yaaqov discerns.

8

Discern, you stupid among the people;

and fools, when discern you?

9

He who plants the ear, hears he not?

He who forms the eye, scans he not?

10

He who disciplines the goyim, reproves he not?

— he who teaches humanity knowledge?

11

Yah Veh knows

that the fabrications of humanity are vanity.

12

Blithe — the mighty whom you discipline, O Yah;

— whom you teach from your torah;

13

so that you rest him from the days of evil,

until they dig the pit of ruin for the wicked.

14

For Yah Veh neither abandons his people

nor forsakes his inheritance;

15

for judgment returns to justness;

and all the straight in heart after it.

16

Who rises for me against the vilifiers?

17

Who sets for me against the workers of mischief?

Unless Yah Veh had been my help,

my soul had almost tabernacled in silence.

18

When I say, My foot totters;

your mercy, O Yah Veh, supports me.

19

In the abundance of my thoughts inside me

your consolations delight my soul.

20

Is the throne of calamity joined with you

— which forms toil by a statute?

21

They troop against the soul of the just

and innocent blood, that judge wicked:

22

and Yah Veh is my secure loft;

23

and my Elohim is the rock of my refuge:

and he returns their own mischief on them

and exterminates them in their own evil:

Yah Veh our Elohim exterminates them.

95

O come; we shout to Yah Veh

— shout to the rock of our salvation;

2

— anticipate his face with spread hands

and shout to him with psalms.

PSALMS 95—97

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 For the **LORD Yah Veh** is a great *God El*,
and a great *King Sovereign* above all *gods elohim*.
4 In his hand
are the *deep places innermost depths* of the earth:
the *strength strengths* of the *hills mountains*
is are his also.
5 The sea is his, and he *made worked* it:
and his hands formed the *dry land*.
6 O come, let us *worship prostrate* and *bow down kneel*:
let us kneel *before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh*
our *maker Worker*.
7 For he is our *God Elohim*;
and we are the people of his pasture,
and the *sheep flock* of his hand.
8 To day if ye *will shall* hear his voice,
Harden not your heart, as in the *provocation strife*,
and as in the day of *temptation testing* in the wilderness:
9 When your fathers *tempted tested* me,
proved proofed me, and saw my *work deeds*.
10 Forty years long
was I *grieved with loathed I* this generation, and said,
It is a people that *do err stray* in their heart,
and they have not known my ways:
11 Unto whom I *sware oathed* in my wrath
that they should not enter into my rest.

96

O sing unto the **LORD Yah Veh** a new song:
sing unto the **LORD Yah Veh**, all the earth.
2 Sing unto the **LORD Yah Veh**, bless his name;
shew forth evangelize his salvation from day to day.
3 Declare **Scribe** his *glory honour*
among the *heathen goyim*,
his *wonders marvels* among all people.
4 For the **LORD Yah Veh** is great,
and *greatly mightily* to be praised:
he is to be *feared awesome* above all *gods elohim*.
5 For all the *gods elohim* of the *nations people* are idols:
but the **LORD made Yah Veh worked** the heavens:
6 Honour and majesty are *before him at his face* :
strength and beauty are in his *sanctuary hallowed refuge*.
7 Give unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
O ye *kindreds families* of the people,
give unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
glory honour and strength.
8 Give unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
the *glory due unto honour* of his name:
bring lift an offering, and come into his courts.
9 O *worship the LORD prostrate to Yah Veh*
in the *beauty majesty of holiness his holies*:
fear before him writhe at his face, all the earth.
10 Say among the *heathen goyim*,
that the **LORD Yah Veh** reigneth:
the world also shall be established
that it shall not be *moved totter*:
he shall *judge plead the cause of* the people
righteously in straightnesses.
11 Let the heavens *rejoice cheer*,
and let the earth be *glad twirl*;
let the sea *roar thunder*, and the fulness *thereof*.
12 Let the field be *joyful jump for joy*,
and all that is therein:
then shall all the trees of the *wood rejoice forest shout*.
13 *Before the LORD At the face of Yah Veh*:
for he cometh, for he cometh to judge the earth:
he shall judge the world with *righteousness justness*,
and the people with his *truth trustworthiness*.

97

The **LORD Yah Veh** reigneth;
let the earth *rejoice twirl*;
let the *multitude of isles great islands*
be *glad thereof cheer*.
2 Clouds and *dripping darkness* are round about him:
righteousness justness and judgment
are the *habitation establishment* of his throne.
3 A fire goeth *before at the face of him*,
and *burneth up inflameth* his *enemies tribulators*
round about.
4 His lightnings enlightened the world:
the earth saw, and *trembled writhed*.

PSALMS 95—97

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 For Yah Veh is a great El
and a great Sovereign above all elohim.
4 In his hand are the innermost depths of the earth;
the strengths of the mountains are his;
5 the sea is his — he worked it;
and his hands formed the dry.
6 O come, we prostrate and kneel
— kneel at the face of Yah Veh our Worker;
7 for he is our Elohim
and we are the people of his pasture
— the flock of his hand.
8 Today if you hear his voice,
harden not your heart as in the strife
and as in the day of testing in the wilderness:
9 when your fathers tested me
— proofed me and saw my deeds.
10 Forty long years
I loathed this generation and said,
A people who stray in their heart;
11 who know not my ways:
whom I oathed in my wrath
that they not enter to my rest.

96

O sing to Yah Veh a new song;
sing to Yah Veh, all the earth;
2 sing to Yah Veh, bless his name;
evangelize his salvation from day today:
3 scribe his honor among the goyim
— his marvels among all people:
4 for Yah Veh is great and mightily praised
— awesome above all elohim.
5 For all the elohim of the people are idols;
and Yah Veh worked the heavens:
6 Honor and majesty are at his face;
strength and beauty are in his hallowed refuge.
7 Give to Yah Veh, O you families of the people;
give to Yah Veh honor and strength;
8 give to Yah Veh the honor of his name;
lift an offering and come into his courts.
9 O prostrate to Yah Veh in the majesty of his holies;
writhe at his face, all the earth.
10 Say among the goyim, Yah Veh reigns!
The world is established; it totters not:
he pleads the cause of the people in straightnesses.
11 Cheer, O heavens;
twirl, O earth;
thunder, O sea and its fulness;
12 jump for joy, O field and all therein;
shout, all trees of the forest
at the face of Yah Veh:
13 for he comes — for he comes to judge the earth
— to judge the world in justness
and the people in his trustworthiness.

97

Yah Veh reigns;
twirl, O earth;
cheer, O great islands.
2 Clouds and dripping darkness surround him;
justness and judgment establish his throne.
3 A fire comes from his face
and inflames all around his tribulators:
4 his lightnings light the world;
the earth sees and writhes:

PSALMS 97—99

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 The *hills mountains* melted like wax
at the *presence face* of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
at the *presence face*
of the **Lord Adonay** of the whole earth.
6 The heavens *declare* **tell** his *righteousness* **justness**,
and all the people see his *glory* **honour**.
7 *Confounded* **Shamed** be all they
that serve *graven images* **sculptiles**,
that *boast* **halal** themselves of idols:
worship **prostrate to** him, all ye *gods* **elohim**.
8 *Zion* **Siyon** heard, and was *glad* **cheered**;
and the daughters of *Judah* **rejoiced** **Yah Hudah** **twirled**
because of thy judgments, O **LORD Yah Veh**.
9 For thou, **LORD O Yah Veh**,
art *high* **Elyon** above all the earth:
thou art *exalted far* **ascended mightily**
above all *gods* **elohim**.
10 Ye that love the **LORD Yah Veh**, hate evil:
he *preserveth* **guardeth** the souls of his *saints* **mercied**;
he *delivereth* **rescueth** them
out of the hand of the wicked.
11 Light is *sown* **seeded** for the *righteous* **just**,
and *gladness* **cheerfulness** for the *upright* **straight** in heart.
12 *Rejoice in the LORD* **Cheer in Yah Veh**,
ye *righteous* **just**;
and *give thanks* **spread hands**
at the remembrance of his holiness.

98

A Psalm.

1 O sing unto the **LORD Yah Veh** a new song;
for he hath *done* **marvellous things** **worked marvels**:
his *right hand*, and his holy arm,
hath gotten him the victory **saveth**.
2 The **LORD Yah Veh** hath made known his salvation:
his *righteousness* **justness** hath he *openly* **shewed exposed**
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *heathen* **goyim**.
3 He hath remembered his mercy
and his *truth* **trustworthiness**
toward the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
all the *ends* **finalities** of the earth
have seen the salvation of our *God* **Elohim**.
4 *Make a joyful noise* **Shout** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
all the earth:
make a loud noise **break forth**,
and *rejoice* **shout**, and *sing praise* **psalm**.
5 *Sing* **Psalm** unto the **LORD Yah Veh** with the harp;
with the harp, and the voice of a psalm.
6 With trumpets and *sound* **voice** of *cornet* **shophar**
make a joyful noise **shout**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**,
the *King* **Sovereign**.
7 Let the sea *roar* **thunder**, and the fulness *thereof*;
the world, and they that *dwell* **settle** *therein*.
8 Let the *floods* **rivers** clap their *hands* **palms**:
let the *hills* be *joyful* **mountains shout** together
9 *Before the LORD* **At the face of Yah Veh**;
for he cometh to judge the earth:
with *righteousness* **justness** shall he judge the world,
and the people *with equity* **in straightnesses**.

99

The **LORD Yah Veh** reigneth;
let the people *tremble* **quiver**:
he *sitteth* **setteth**
between the cherubims **on the cherubim**;
let the earth be *moved* **quake**.
2 The **LORD Yah Veh** is great in *Zion* **Siyon**;
and he is high above all the people.
3 Let them *praise* **spread hands**
unto thy great and *terrible* **awesome** name; *for* it is holy.
4 The *king's* **sovereign's** strength also loveth judgment;
thou *dost* **establish equity** **establishest** **straightnesses**,
thou *executest* **workest** judgment
and *righteousness* **justness** in *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.
5 Exalt ye the **LORD Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
and *worship* **prostrate** at his *footstool* **the stool of his feet**;
for he is holy.

PSALMS 97—99

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 the mountains melt as wax at the face of Yah Veh
— at the face of Adonay of the whole earth:
6 the heavens tell his justness
and all the people see his honor.
7 Shamed are all they who serve sculptiles
— who *halal* themselves with idols:
prostrate to him, all you *elohim*.
8 Siyon hears and cheers
and the daughters of Yah Hudah twirl
because of your judgments, O Yah Veh.
9 For you, O Yah Veh,
are Elyon over all the earth:
you ascend mightily over all *elohim*.
10 You who love Yah Veh, hate evil;
he guards the souls of his mercied;
he rescues them from the hand of the wicked.
11 Light *is* seeded for the just
and cheerfulness for the straight in heart:
12 Cheer in Yah Veh, you just;
and spread hands
at the remembrance of his holiness.

98

A Psalm.

1 O sing to Yah Veh a new song;
for he works marvels:
his right and his holy arm saves.
2 Yah Veh makes known his salvation
— exposes his justness in the eyes of the goyim:
3 he remembers his mercy
and his trustworthiness toward the house of Yisra El;
all the finalities of the earth
see the salvation of our Elohim.
4 Shout to Yah Veh, all the earth;
break forth, and shout and psalm:
5 psalm to Yah Veh with the harp
— with the harp and the voice of a psalm:
6 with trumpets and voice of shophar
shout at the face of Yah Veh the Sovereign.
7 The sea thunders and its fulness;
the world and they who settle therein:
8 the rivers clap their palms;
the mountains shout together
9 at the face of Yah Veh:
for he comes to judge the earth;
with justness he judges the world
and the people in straightnesses.

99

Yah Veh reigns; the people quiver:
he settles on the cherubim; the earth quakes.
2 Yah Veh is great in Siyon
— high above all the people.
3 They spread hands
to your great and awesome name
— it is holy.
4 And the strength of the sovereign loves judgment;
you establish straightnesses,
you work judgment and justness in Yaaqov.
5 Exalt Yah Veh our Elohim;
prostrate at the stool of his feet;
— he is holy.

PSALMS 99—101

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 Moses **Mosheh** and Aaron **Aharon**
among his priests,
and Samuel **Shemu El**
among them that call upon his name;
they called upon the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and he answered them.

7 He *spake* **worded** unto them
in the *cloudy* pillar of **cloud**:
they *kept* **guarded** his *testimonies* **witnesses**,
and the *ordinance* **statute** that he gave them.

8 Thou answeredst them,
O **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**:
thou wast a **God an El** that *forgavest* **bore** them,
though thou
tookest vengeance of **avenged** their *inventions* **exploits**.

9 Exalt the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**,
and *worship* **prostrate** at his holy *hill* **mountain**;
for the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim** is holy.

100

A Psalm of *praise* **spread hands**.

1 Make a *joyful noise* **Shout** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
all ye *lands* **earth**.

2 Serve the **LORD Yah Veh** with *gladness* **cheerfulness**:
come *before* **at** his *presence* **face** with *singing* **shouting**.

3 Know ye that the **LORD Yah Veh** he is **God Elohim**:
it is he that hath made **he hath worked** us,
and not we ourselves;
we are his people, and the *sheep* **flock** of his pasture.

4 Enter into his *gates* **portals**
with *thanksgiving* **spread hands**,
and into his courts with *praise* **halal**:
be thankful **spread hands** unto him, and bless his name.

5 For the **LORD Yah Veh** is good;
his mercy is *everlasting* **eternal**;
and his *truth* **trustworthiness**
endureth to all generations **generation to generation**.

101

A Psalm of David.

1 I will **shall** sing of mercy and judgment:
unto thee, O **LORD Yah Veh**, will I sing **shall I psalm**.

2 I will *behave myself wisely* **shall discern**
in a *perfect* **an integrious** way.
O when *wilt* **shalt** thou come unto me?
I will **shall** walk within my house
with a *perfect* **in integrity of** heart.

3 I will **shall** set no *wicked thing* **word of Beli Yaal**
before **in front of** mine eyes:
I hate the work of *them that turn aside* **swervers**;
it shall not *cleave* **adhere** to me.

4 A *froward* **perverted** heart
shall *depart* **turn aside** from me:
I will **shall** not know a *wicked person* **evil**.

5 Whoso *privily slandereth* **covertly tongue—lasheth**
his *neighbour* **friend**,
him will I *cut off* **shall I exterminate**:
him that hath an high look **a lofty eye**
and a *proud* **an enlarged** heart,
will not I *suffer* **I am not able**.

6 Mine eyes
shall be upon the *faithful* **trustworthy** of the land,
that they may *dwell* **settle** with me:
he that walketh in a *perfect* **an integrious** way,
he shall *serve* **minister to** me.

7 He that worketh deceit
shall not *dwell* **settle** within my house:
he that *telleth lies* **wordeth falsehoods**
shall not *tarry in my sight* **be established in my eyes**.

8 I will *early destroy* **Mornings I shall exterminate**
all the wicked of the land;
that I may cut off all *wicked doers* **the mischievous**
from the city of the **LORD Yah Veh**.

PSALMS 99—101

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 Mosheh and Aharon among his priests
and Shemu El among them who call on his name;
they called on Yah Veh and he answered them:

7 he worded to them in the pillar of cloud;
they guarded his witnesses
and the statute he gave them.

8 You answered them, O Yah Veh our Elohim
— you are an El who spared them,
though you avenged their exploits.

9 Exalt Yah Veh our Elohim
and prostrate at his holy mountain;
for Yah Veh our Elohim *is* holy.

100

A Psalm of Spread Hands.

1 Shout to Yah Veh, all the earth;
2 serve Yah Veh with cheerfulness;
3 come at his face with shouting:
know that Yah Veh — he *is* Elohim;
he worked us, and not we ourselves;
— his people and the flock of his pasture.

4 Enter his portals with spread hands
and into his courts with halal:
spread hands to him; bless his name.

5 For Yah Veh is good; his mercy eternal:
and his trustworthiness generation to generation.

101

A Psalm by David.

1 I sing of mercy and judgment;
to you, O Yah Veh, I psalm:
2 I discern in an integrious way.
O when come you to me?
3 I walk within my house in integrity of heart;
I set no word of Beli Yaal in front of my eyes;
I hate the work of swervers;
it adheres not to me.

4 The perverted heart turns aside from me;
5 I know not evil:
whoever covertly tongue—lashes his friend,
I exterminate:
a lofty eye and an enlarged heart, I am not able.

6 My eyes are on the trustworthy of the land
to settle with me;
he who walks in an integrious way
ministers to me;
7 he who works deceit
settles not within my house;
he who words falsehoods
is not established in my eyes.

8 Mornings I exterminate all the wicked of the land;
to cut off all mischievous from the city of Yah Veh.

PSALMS 102

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

102

A Prayer of the *afflicted* **humble**,
 when he is *overwhelmed* **languisheth**,
 and poureth out his *complaint* **meditation**
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
 1 Hear my prayer, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
 and let my cry come unto thee.
 2 Hide not thy face from me
 in the day *when I am in trouble* **tribulation**;
incline **spread** thine ear unto me:
 in the day *when I call answer me* **speedily** **hastily**.
 3 For my days are *consumed* **finished off** like smoke,
 and my bones are *burned* **scorched**
as an hearth a burning.
 4 My heart is smitten, and withered like *grass* **herbage**;
 so that I forget to eat my bread.
 5 By reason of the voice of my *groaning* **sighing**
 my bones *cleave* **adhere** to my *skin* **flesh**.
 6 I am like a pelican of the wilderness:
 I am *like* **likened to** an owl of the *desert* **parched areas**.
 7 I watch,
 and am as a *sparrow* **bird** alone upon the *house top* **roof**.
 8 Mine enemies reproach me all the day;
 and they that are *mad against* **halaled** me
 are *sworn* **have oathed** against me.
 9 For I have eaten ashes like bread,
 and *mingled* **mixed** my drink with weeping.
 10 *Because* **At the face** of thine indignation
 and thy *wrath* **rage**:
 for thou hast lifted me up, and cast me down.
 11 My days are like a shadow that *declineth* **spreadeth**;
 and I am withered like *grass* **herbage**.
 12 But thou, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
 shall *endure for ever* **settle eternal**;
 and thy *remembrance* **memorial**
unto all generations **generation to generation**.
 13 Thou shalt arise,
 and *have* **shall** mercy upon *Zion* **Siyon**:
 for the time to *favour* **grant** her **charism**,
 yea, the *set time* **season**, is come.
 14 For thy servants
take pleasure **are pleased** in her stones,
 and *favour* **grant** **charism** unto the dust *thereof*.
 15 So the *heathen* **goyim**
 shall *fear* **awe** the name of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
 and all the *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth thy *glory* **honour**.
 16 When the **LORD Yah Veh** shall build up *Zion* **Siyon**,
 he shall *appear* **be seen** in his *glory* **honour**.
 17 He will *regard* **shall face** the prayer
 of the *destitute* **naked**,
 and not despise their prayer.
 18 This shall be *written* **inscribed**
 for the generation to *come* **after**:
 and the people which shall be created
 shall *praise the LORD* **halal Yah**.
 19 For he hath *looked down* **seen**
 from the height of his *sanctuary* **holies**;
 from *heaven* **the heavens**
did the LORD behold **Yah Veh scanned** the earth;
 20 To hear the *groaning* **shrieking** of the *prisoner* **bound**;
 to loose *those that are appointed to* **the sons of** death;
 21 To *declare* **scribe**
 the name of the **LORD Yah Veh** in *Zion* **Siyon**,
 and his *praise* **halal** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
 22 When the people are gathered *together*,
 and the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**,
 to serve the **LORD Yah Veh**.
 23 He *weakened* **humbled** my *strength* **force** in the way;
 he *shortened* **curtailed** my days.
 24 I said, O my **God El**,
take **ascend** me not away in the midst of my days:
 thy years are
throughout all generations **generation to generation**.
 25 *Of old* **At thy face**
 hast thou *laid the foundation of* **founded** the earth:
 and the heavens are the work of thy hands.

PSALMS 102

exeGeses companion BIBLE

102

A Prayer of the humble when he languishes
 and pours out his meditation at the face of Yah Veh.

1 Hear my prayer, O Yah Veh
 so that my cry comes to you.
 2 Hide not your face from me
 in the day of my tribulation;
 spread your ear to me;
 in the day I call, hasten — answer me.
 3 For my days finish off as smoke
 and my bones scorch as a burning;
 4 my heart is smitten and withers as herbage;
 so that I forget to eat my bread:
 5 by reason of the voice of my sighing
 my bones adhere to my flesh:
 6 I am likened to a pelican of the wilderness
 — as an owl of the parched areas.
 7 I watch; and I am as a bird alone on the roof:
 8 my enemies reproach me all the day
 and they who halal me oath against me.
 9 For I eat ashes as bread
 and mix my drink with weeping
 10 at the face of your indignation and your rage:
 for you lift me up and cast me down:
 11 my days spread as a shadow;
 and I wither as herbage.
 12 And you, O Yah Veh, settle eternal;
 and your memorial generation to generation:
 13 You — you rise; you mercy Siyon;
 for the time to grant her charism
 — yes, the season has come.
 14 For your servants are pleased in her stones
 and grant charism to the dust.
 15 And the goyim awe the name of Yah Veh
 and all the sovereigns of the earth your honor.
 16 Yah Veh built Siyon; he appears in his honor:
 17 he faces the prayer of the naked
 and despises not their prayer:
 18 inscribe this for the generation after;
 and the people to be created, to halal Yah.
 19 For he sees from the height of his holies:
 20 from the heavens Yah Veh scans the earth
 — to hear the shrieking of the bound;
 21 to loose the sons of death;
 22 to scribe the name of Yah Veh in Siyon
 and his halal in Yeru Shalem;
 in the gathering of the people
 and the sovereigndoms to serve Yah Veh.
 23 He humbles my force in the way;
 he curtails my days.
 24 I say, O my El,
 ascend me not midst my days;
 your years are generation to generation.
 25 At your face you founded the earth;
 and the heavens are the work of your hands:

PSALMS 102, 103

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

26 They shall *perish* **destruct**,
but thou shalt *endure* **stand**:
yea, all of them shall *wax old* **wear out**
like a *garment* **clothes**;
as a *vesture* **robe** shalt thou change them,
and they shall be changed:
27 But thou art the same,
and thy years shall *have no end* **not consummate**.
28 The *children* **sons** of thy servants
shall *continue* **tabernacle**,
and their seed shall be established
before thee **at thy face**.

103

A Psalm of David.

1 Bless *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, O my soul:
and all that is within me, *bless* his holy name.
2 Bless *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, O my soul,
and forget not all his *benefits* **dealings**:
3 Who forgiveth all *thine iniquities* **thy perversities**;
who healeth all thy *diseases* **sicknesses**;
4 Who redeemeth thy life from *destruction* **the pit of ruin**;
who crowneth thee with *lovingkindness* **mercy**
and tender mercies;
5 Who satisfieth thy mouth with good *things*;
so that thy youth is renewed like the eagle's.
6 *The LORD executeth* **Yah Veh worketh**
righteousness **justness** and judgment
for all that are oppressed.
7 He made known his ways unto *Moses* **Mosheh**,
his *acts* **exploits** unto the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**.
8 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** is merciful and *gracious* **charismatic**,
slow to *anger* **wrath**, and *plenteous* **abundant** in mercy.
9 He *will* **shall** not *always* **chide** **contend in perpetuity**:
neither *will* **shall** he *keep* his *anger* **guard**
for ever **eternally**.
10 He hath not *dealt* **worked** with us
after our sins;
nor *rewarded* **dealt with** us
according to our *iniquities* **perversities**.
11 For as the *heaven* **heavens**
is high **be lofted** above the earth,
so great is **thus prevaileth mightily** his mercy
toward them that *fear* **awe** him.
12 As far as the *east* **rising** is from the *west* **dusk**,
so far hath he removed
our *transgressions* **rebellions** from us.
13 Like as a father *pitieth* **mercieth** his *children* **sons**,
so the LORD **thus Yah Veh**
pitieth **mercieth** them that *fear* **awe** him.
14 For he knoweth our *frame* **form**;
he remembereth that we are dust.
15 *As for* — man, his days are as grass:
as a *flower* **blossom** of the field,
so he flourisheth **blossometh**.
16 For the wind passeth over it, and it is gone;
and the place *thereof* shall *know* **recognize** it no more.
17 But the mercy of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
is from *everlasting* **eternity** to *everlasting* **eternity**
upon them that *fear* **awe** him,
and his *righteousness* **justness**
unto *children's children* **sons' sons**;
18 To such as *keep* **guard** his covenant,
and to those that remember his *commandments* **precepts**
to *do* **work** them.
19 *The LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath prepared his throne in the heavens;
and his *kingdom* **ruleth** **sovereigndom reigneth** over all.
20 Bless *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, ye his angels,
that excel **mighty** in *strength* **force**,
that *do work* his *commandments* **words**,
hearkening unto the voice of his word.
21 Bless ye *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, all ye his hosts;
ye ministers of his, that *do work* his pleasure.
22 Bless *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
all his works in all places of his *dominion* **reign**:
bless *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, O my soul.

PSALMS 102, 103

exeGeses companion BIBLE

26 they — they destruct, and you stand;
yes, they all wear out as clothes;
as a robe you change them
and changed they are;
and you are the same
27 and your years consummate not.
28 The sons of your servants tabernacle
and their seed establishes at your face.

103

By David.

1 Bless Yah Veh, O my soul,
and all that is within me — his holy name:
2 bless Yah Veh, O my soul
and forget not all his dealings
3 — who forgives all your perversities;
who heals all your sicknesses;
4 who redeems your life from the pit of ruin;
who crowns you with mercy and tender mercies;
5 who satisfies your mouth with good;
— renews your youth as the eagle.
6 Yah Veh works justness and judgment
for all the oppressed;
7 he made his ways known to Mosheh;
his exploits to the sons of Yisra El:
8 Yah Veh is merciful and charismatic;
slow to wrath and abundant in mercy.
9 He neither contends in perpetuity
nor guards eternally:
10 he neither works with us after our sins
nor deals with us according to our perversities.
11 For as the heavens loft above the earth,
thus his mercy prevails mightily
toward them who awe him:
12 as far as the rising from the dusk,
thus far he removes our rebellions from us:
13 as a father mercies his sons
thus Yah Veh mercies them who awe him.
14 For he knows our form;
he remembers that we are dust.
15 Man — his days are as grass
— as a blossom of the field, thus he blossoms.
16 For the wind overpasses and is not;
and recognizes the place no more:
17 and the mercy of Yah Veh
from eternity to eternity on them who awe him:
and his justness to sons of sons
18 — to them who guard his covenant
and to them who remember his precepts
to work them.
19 Yah Veh prepared his throne in the heavens;
and his sovereigndom reigns over all.
20 Bless Yah Veh, you his angels,
mighty in force, who work his words,
to hearken to the voice of his word:
21 bless Yah Veh, all you his hosts;
you ministers of his, who work his pleasure:
22 bless Yah Veh,
all his works in all places of his reign;
bless Yah Veh, O my soul.

PSALMS 104

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

104

Bless the LORD Yah Veh, O my soul.

O LORD Yah Veh my God Elohim,

thou art very great **greatened mightily**;

thou art *clothed* **enrobed** with honour and majesty.

2 Who coverest *thysel* with light as with a *garment cloth*:
who *stretchest out* **spreadest** the heavens like a curtain:

3 Who *layeth* **felleth** the beams

of his *chambers* **upper room** in the waters:

who *maketh* **setteth thick** clouds his chariot:

who walketh upon the wings of the wind:

4 Who *maketh* **worketh** his angels spirits;

his ministers a flaming fire:

5 Who *laid* **founded**

the *foundations* **establishments** of the earth,

that *it* **they** should not *be removed* **totter**

for ever **eternally and eternally**.

*see Hebrews 1:7—14

6 Thou coveredst it with the *deep* **abyss**

as with a *garment* **a robe**:

the waters stood above the mountains.

At **From** thy rebuke they fled;

at **from** the voice of thy thunder they hastened away.

8 They *go up* **ascend** by the mountains;

they *go down* **descend** by the valleys

unto the place which thou hast founded for them.

9 Thou hast set a *bound* **border**

that they may not pass over;

that they turn not again to cover the earth.

He sendeth the springs into the *valleys* **wadies**,

which *run* **pass** among the *hills* **mountains**.

11 They give drink to every *beast* **live being** of the field:

the wild *asses* **quench** **runners** **break** their thirst.

12 By them shall the *fowls* **flyers** of the *heaven* **heavens**

have their habitation **tabernacle**,

which *sing among* **give voice between** the branches.

13 He *watereth* **moisteneth** the *hills* **mountains**

from his *chambers* **upper room**:

the earth is satisfied with the fruit of thy works.

14 He causeth the grass to *grow* **sprout**

for the *cattle* **animals**,

and herb for the service of *man* **humanity**:

that he may bring forth *food* **bread** out of the earth;

And wine that *maketh glad* **cheereth** the heart of man,

and *oil* **ointment** to make his face to shine,

and bread which *strengtheneth* **supporteth** man's heart.

16 The trees of the LORD Yah Veh are full of *sap* **satiated**;

the cedars of Lebanon, which he hath planted;

17 Where the birds *make their nests* **nest**:

as for the stork, the *fir trees* **firs** are her house.

18 The high *hills* **mountains**

are a refuge for the wild goats;

and the rocks for the conies.

19 He *appointed* **worked** the moon for seasons:

the sun knoweth his *going down* **entry**.

20 Thou *makest* **settest** darkness, and it is night:

wherein

all the *beasts* **live beings** of the forest *do* creep forth.

21 The *young lions* **whelps** roar after their prey,

and seek their *meat* **food** from God El.

22 The sun ariseth, they gather themselves *together*,

and *lay them down* **crouch** in their *dens* **habitations**.

23 Man **Humanity** goeth forth unto his *work* **deeds**

and to his *labour* **service** until the evening.

24 O LORD Yah Veh,

how *manifold* are thy works **abound by the myriads!**

in wisdom hast thou *made* **worked** them all:

the earth is full of thy *riches* **chattel**.

25 So is this great and *wide* **broad hand of the** sea,

wherein are *things creeping* **creepers** innumerable,

both small and great *beasts* **live beings**.

26 There go the ships:

there is that leviathan,

whom thou hast *made* **formed** to *play* **laugh therein**.

27 These *wait* **expect** all upon thee;

that thou mayest give them their *meat* **food**

in due season **on time**.

28 That thou givest them, they *gather* **gleen**:
thou openest thine hand, they are *filled* **satiated** with good.

PSALMS 104

exeGesés companion BIBLE

104

Bless Yah Veh, O my soul!

O Yah Veh, my Elohim,

you are mightily greatened;

— enrobed with honor and majesty:

2 who covers himself with light as a cloth;

who spreads the heavens as a curtain;

3 who fells the beams

of his upper room in the waters;

who sets thick clouds his chariot;

4 who walks on the wings of the wind;

who works his angels spirits

— his ministers a flaming fire*;

5 who founded the establishments of the earth

that they not totter eternally and eternally.

*see Hebrews 1:7—14

6 You covered the abyss as a robe;

the waters stand above the mountains;

from your rebuke they flee;

from the voice of your thunder they hasten away:

8 they ascend by the mountains;

they descend by the valleys

to the place you founded for them.

9 You set a border

that they neither pass over

nor turn again to cover the earth:

10 — who sends the springs into the wadies

passing among the mountains:

11 they moisten every live being of the field;

the wild runners break their thirst:

12 by them the flyers of the heavens tabernacle,

who give voice between the branches:

13 he moistens the mountains from his upper room;

the earth satiates with the fruit of your works

14 so that the grass sprouts for the animals

and herbs for the service of humanity;

to bring forth bread from the earth:

15 and wine to cheer the heart of man

and ointment to shine his face

and bread to support the heart of man.

16 The trees of Yah Veh satiate

— the cedars of Lebanon he planted

17 — where the birds nest:

as for the stork, the firs are her house;

18 the high mountains, a refuge for the wild goats

and the rocks for the conies.

19 He worked the moon for seasons;

the sun knows his entry.

20 You set darkness and it is night;

wherein all the live beings of the forest creep:

21 the whelps roar after their prey

and seek their food from El:

22 the sun rises; they gather themselves;

they crouch in their habitations:

23 humanity goes on to his deeds and to his service

until the evening.

24 O Yah Veh,

how your works abound by the myriads!

In wisdom you worked them all;

the earth is full of your chattel:

25 thus this great and wide hand of the sea

wherein are creepers innumerable

— both small and great live beings:

26 there go the ships;

leviathan, whom you have formed to laugh.

27 These all expect you

to give them their food on time:

28 You give them, they gleen:

you open your hand, they satiate with good:

PSALMS 104, 105

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

29 Thou hidest thy face, they are *troubled terrified*:
thou *takest away gatherest* their *breath spirit*,
they *die expire*, and return to their dust.
30 Thou sendest forth thy spirit, they are created:
and thou renewest the face of the *earth soil*.
31 The *glory honour* of the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall *endure for ever* **be eternal**:
the **LORD Yah Veh** shall *rejoice cheer* in his works.
32 He looketh on the earth, and it trembleth:
he toucheth the *hills mountains*, and they smoke.
33 I *will shall* sing unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
as long as I live **during my life**:
I *will sing praise shall psalm* to my **God Elohim**
while I *have my being* **still be**.
34 My meditation of him shall *be sweet please*:
I *will be glad shall cheer* in the **LORD Yah Veh**.
35 Let the sinners be consumed out of the earth,
and let the wicked be no more.
Bless thou the **LORD Yah Veh**, O my soul.
Praise ye the LORD **Halalu Yah**.

105 O *give thanks spread hands* unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
call upon his name:

make known his *deeds exploits* among the people.
2 Sing unto him, *sing psalms psalm* unto him:
talk meditate ye of all his *wondrous works marvels*.
3 *Glory Halal* ye in his holy name:
let the heart of them *rejoice cheer*
that seek the **LORD Yah Veh**.
4 Seek the **LORD Yah Veh**, and his strength:
seek his face *evermore continually*.
5 Remember his *marvellous works marvels*
that he hath *done worked*;
his *wonders omens*, and the judgments of his mouth;
6 O ye seed of Abraham his servant,
ye children sons of **Jacob Yaaqov** his chosen.
7 He is the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**:
his judgments are in all the earth.
8 He hath remembered his covenant *for ever eternally*,
the word which he *commanded misvahed*
to a thousand generations.
9 Which *covenant he made he cut* with Abraham,
and his oath unto **Isaac Yischaq**;
10 And *confirmed stood* the same
unto **Jacob Yaaqov** for a **law statute**,
and to **Israel Yisra El** for an *everlasting eternal* covenant:
11 Saying,
Unto thee *will shall* I give the land of **Canaan Kenaan**,
the *lot cord* of your inheritance:
12 When they were *but a few men* in number;
yea, very few, and strangers sojourned in it.
13 When they went from one *nation goyim* to another,
from one *kingdom sovereignty* to another people;
14 He *suffered allowed* no **man human**
to *do them wrong them*:
yea, he reproveth *kings sovereigns* for their sakes;
15 *Saying*, Touch not mine anointed,
and *do vilify not* my prophets *no harm*.
16 *Moreover* he called for a famine upon the land:
he brake the whole *staff rod* of bread.
17 He sent a man *before them at their face*,
even Joseph Yoseph, who was sold for a servant:
18 Whose feet they *hurt humbled* with fetters:
he *his soul* was laid in iron:
19 Until the time that his word came:
the word *saying* of the **LORD tried Yah Veh refined** him.
20 The *king sovereign* sent and loosed him;
even the ruler sovereign of the people,
and *let him go free loosed him*.
21 He *made set* him *lord adoni* of his house,
and *ruler sovereign* of all his *substance chattel*:
22 To bind his *princes governors* at his *pleasure soul*;
and *teach enwise* his *senators wisdom elders*.
23 **Israel Yisra El** also came into **Egypt Misrayim**;
and **Jacob Yaaqov** sojourned in the land of Ham.
24 And he *increased* his people
greatly became mighty fruitbearing;
and *made them stronger mightier* than their *enemies tribulators*.

PSALMS 104, 105

exeGeses companion BIBLE

29 you hide your face, they terrify:
you gather their spirit, they expire
— return to their dust:
30 you send your spirit, they are created:
and you renew the face of the soil.
31 The honor of Yah Veh is eternal.
Yah Veh cheers in his works.
32 He looks on the earth and it trembles;
he touches the mountains and they smoke.
33 I sing to Yah Veh during my life;
I psalm to my Elohim while I still am:
34 pleasing is my meditation of him;
I cheer in Yah Veh.
35 The sinners are consumed from the earth
and the wicked are no more.
Bless you Yah Veh, O my soul.
Halalu Yah.

105 O spread hands to Yah Veh;
call on his name;

make known his exploits among the people:
2 sing to him; psalm to him;
meditate of all his *marvels*:
3 *halal* in his holy name;
the heart of them who seek Yah Veh cheers.
4 Seek Yah Veh and his strength;
seek his face continually:
5 remember the marvels he worked
— his omens and the judgments of his mouth
6 O you seed of Abraham his servant,
you sons of Yaaqov his chosen.
7 He — Yah Veh our Elohim;
his judgments are in all the earth:
8 he remembers his covenant eternally
— the word he misvahed to a thousand generations
9 — which he cut with Abraham
and his oath to Yischaq;
10 and stood the same to Yaaqov for a statute
and to Yisra El for an eternal covenant:
11 saying,
I give you the land of Kenaan
the cord of your inheritance
— when they were few in number
— yes, very few and sojourned therein:
12 and they went from one goyim to another
from sovereignty to another people:
13 he allowed no human to wrong them;
14 yes, he reproveth sovereigns for their sakes;
15 *saying*,
Neither touch not my anointed
nor vilify my prophets!
16 He called for a famine on the land;
he broke the whole rod of bread;
17 he sent a man at their face
— Yoseph, who was sold for a servant
whose feet they humbled with fetters
— laid his soul in iron.
18 Until the time his word arrived
the saying of Yah Veh refined him;
the sovereign sent and loosed him
— the sovereign of the people, and loosed him;
20 he set him adoni of his house
and sovereign of all his chattel;
21 to bind his governors at his soul;
and enwise his elders.
22 Yisra El also came to Misrayim;
and Yaaqov sojourned in the land of Ham;
23 and his people became mighty fruitbearing
— mightier than their tribulators:

PSALMS 105, 106

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

25 He turned their heart to hate his people,
to deal *subtily* with **deceive** his servants.
26 He sent Moses **Mosheh** his servant;
and Aaron **Aharon** whom he had chosen.
27 They *shewed* **set words** of his signs among them,
and *wonders* **omens** in the land of Ham.
28 He sent darkness, and *made it dark* it **darkened**;
and they rebelled not against his word.
29 He turned their waters into blood,
and *slew* **deathified** their fish.
30 Their land
brought forth **teemed with** frogs in abundance,
in the chambers of their **kings** **sovereigns**.
31 He *spake* **said**,
and there came *divers sorts of* flies **swarms**,
and lice **stingers** in all their *coasts* **borders**.
32 He gave them hail for *rain* **downpour**,
and flaming fire in their land.
33 He smote their vines also and their fig trees;
and brake the trees of their *coasts* **borders**.
34 He *spake* **said**,
and the locusts came, and *caterpillars* **cankeworms**,
and that without number — **innumerable**,
35 And did eat up all the herbs in their land,
and devoured the fruit of their *ground* **soil**.
36 He smote also all the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** in their land,
the *chief* **firstfruits** of all their strength.
37 He brought them forth also with silver and gold:
and there was not one *feeble person* **faltered**
among their *tribes* **scions**.
38 *Egypt was glad* **Misrayim cheered** when they departed:
for the *fear* **dread** of them fell upon them.
39 He spread a cloud for a covering;
and fire to *give light* **lighten** in the night.
40 *The people* **They** asked, and he brought quails,
and satisfied them with the bread of *heaven* **the heavens**.
41 He opened the rock,
and the waters *gushed out* **flowed**;
they *ran* **walked** in the *dry places* **parch** like a river.
42 For he remembered his holy *promise* **word**,
and Abraham his servant.
43 And he brought forth his people with *joy* **rejoicing**,
and his chosen with *gladness* **shouting**;
44 And gave them the lands of the *heathen* **goyim**:
and they *inherited* **possessed**
the *labour* **toil** of the *people* **nations**;
45 That they might *observe* **guard** his statutes,
and *keep* **guard** his *laws* **torah**.
Praise ye the LORD **Halalu Yah**.

106

Praise ye the LORD **Halalu Yah**.
O *give thanks* **spread hands** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
for he is good:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
2 Who can utter the *mighty acts* **might**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**?
who can *shew forth* **hear** all his *praise* **halal**?
3 *Blessed* **Blithe** are they that *keep* **guard** judgment,
and he that *doeth righteousness* **worketh justness**
at all times.
4 Remember me, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
with the *favour* that thou *bearst* **pleasure**
unto **of** thy people:
O visit me with thy salvation;
5 That I may see the good of thy chosen,
that I may *rejoice* **cheer**
in the *gladness* **cheerfulness** of thy *nation* **goyim**,
that I may *glory* **halal** with thine inheritance.
6 We have sinned with our fathers,
we have *committed iniquity* **perverted**,
we have done wickedly.
7 Our fathers *understood* **comprehended** not
thy *wonders* **marvels** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
they remembered not
the *multitude* **abundance** of thy mercies;
but *provoked him* **rebelled** at the sea,
even at the *Red* **Reed** sea.
8 *Nevertheless* he saved them for his name's sake,
that he might make his *mighty power* to be **might** known.

PSALMS 105, 106

exeGesés companion BIBLE

25 he turned their heart to hate his people
— to deceive his servants;
26 he sent Mosheh his servant
and Aharon whom he chose:
27 they set words of his signs among them
and omens in the land of Ham:
28 he sent darkness and it darkened;
they rebelled not against his word;
29 he turned their waters into blood
and deathified their fish;
30 their land teemed with frogs
in the chambers of their sovereigns.
31 He said,
and swarms and stingers
arrived in all their borders:
32 he gave them hail for downpour
and flaming fire in their land:
33 he smote their vines and their fig trees
and broke the trees of their borders.
34 He said,
and the locusts and cankerworms arrived
— innumerable;
35 and ate all the herbs in their land
and devoured the fruit of their soil:
36 he smote all the firstbirthed in their land
— the firstfruits of all their strength:
37 he brought them forth with silver and gold;
and not one among their scions faltered.
38 Misrayim cheered when they departed
for the dread of them fell upon them:
39 he spread a cloud for a covering
and fire to light in the night:
40 they asked, and he brought quails
and satiated them with the bread of the heavens:
41 he opened the rock and the waters flowed:
they walked in the parch as a river:
— for he remembered
42 his holy word and Abraham his servant;
43 and he brought forth his people rejoicing
and his chosen shouting;
44 and gave them the lands of the goyim;
and they possessed the toil of the nations
— to guard his statutes and guard his torah.
Halalu Yah.

106

Halalu Yah.
O spread hands to Yah Veh;
for good; for his mercy eternal.
2 Who utters the might of Yah Veh?
Who hears all his halal?
3 Blithe — they who guard judgment
who work justness at all times.
4 Remember me, O Yah Veh,
with the pleasure of your people;
O visit me with your salvation:
to see the good of your chosen,
to cheer in the cheerfulness of your goyim,
to halal with your inheritance.
5 We sinned with our fathers;
we perverted;
we did wickedly.
6 Our fathers
neither comprehended your marvels in Misrayim;
nor remembered the abundance of your mercies;
but rebelled at the sea — the Reed sea:
7 he saved them for sake of his name
to make his might known:
8

PSALMS 106

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 He rebuked the Red **Reed** sea also,
and it was *dried up* **parched**:
so he *led* **walked** them through the *depths* **abysses**,
as through the wilderness.
10 And he saved them
from the hand of him that hated them,
and redeemed them from the hand of the enemy.
11 And the waters covered their *enemies* **tribulators**:
there was not one **none** of them *left* **remained**.
12 Then *believed* **trusted** they his words;
they sang his *praise* **halal**.
13 They *soon forgot* **hasted to forget** his works;
they waited not for his counsel:
14 But *lusted exceedingly* **in desiring**,
desired in the wilderness,
and *tempted* **God tested** **El** in the *desert* **desolation**.
15 And he gave them their *request* **petition**;
but sent *leanness* **emaciation** into their soul.
16 They envied *Moses* **Mosheh** also in the camp,
and *Aaron* **Aharon** the *saint* **holy** of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**.
17 The earth opened and swallowed up Dathan
and covered the *company* **witness** of *Abiram* **Abi Ram**.
18 And a fire was *kindled* **burnt** in their *company* **witness**;
the flame burned up the wicked.
19 They *made* **worked** a calf in Horeb,
and *worshipped* **prostrated to** the molten *image*.
20 Thus they changed their *glory* **honour**
into the *similitude* **pattern** of an ox
that eateth grass **herbage**.
21 They forgot *God* **El** their saviour,
which had *done* **worked** great *things* in *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
22 *Wondrous works* **Marvels** in the land of Ham,
and *terrible things* **awesomenesses** by the Red **Reed** sea.
23 *Therefore* he said
that he *would* **destroy should** **desolate** them,
had not **Moses unless** **Mosheh** his chosen
stood *before him* **at his face** in the breach,
to turn away his *wrath* **fury**,
lest he should *destroy* **ruin** them.
24 Yea, they *despised* **spurned** the *pleasant* land **of desire**,
they *believed* **trusted** not his word:
25 But *murmured* **rebelled** in their tents,
and hearkened not unto the voice of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**.
26 *Therefore* he lifted up his hand against them,
to *overthrow* **fell** them in the wilderness:
27 To *overthrow* **fell** their seed also
among the *nations* **goyim**,
and to *scatter* **winnow** them in the lands.
28 They *joined themselves also unto* **Baalpeor** **Baal Peor**,
and ate the sacrifices of the dead.
29 Thus they *provoked* **vexed** him to *anger*
with their *inventions* **exploits**:
and the plague brake in upon them.
30 Then stood up *Phinehas* **Pinechas**,
and *executed judgment* **prayed**:
and so the plague was *stayed* **restrained**.
31 And that was *counted* **fabricated** unto him
for *righteousness* **justness**
unto all generations **generation to generation**
for evermore **eternally**.
32 They *angered* **enraged** him also at the waters of strife,
so that it went *ill* **evilly** with *Moses* **Mosheh**
for their sakes:
33 Because they *provoked* **rebelled** against his spirit,
so that he *spoke unadvisedly* **babbled** with his lips.
34 They *did not* **destroy** **desolated not** the *nations* **people**,
concerning whom
the LORD **commanded** **Yah Veh** **said** to them:
35 But were mingled among the *heathen* **goyim**,
and learned their works.
36 And they served their idols:
which were a snare unto them.
37 Yea, they sacrificed their sons and their daughters
unto *devils* **demons**,
38 And *shed* **poured** innocent blood,
even the blood of their sons and of their daughters,
whom they sacrificed unto the idols of *Canaan* **Kenaan**:
and the land was *polluted* **profaned** with blood.

PSALMS 106

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 he rebuked the Reed sea and it parched;
thus he walked them through the abysses
as through the wilderness:
and he saved them
from the hand of him who hated them
and redeemed them from the hand of the enemy:
11 and the waters covered their tribulators;
not one of them remained.
12 Then they trusted his words; they sang his halal:
13 they hastened to forget his works;
they awaited not his counsel:
14 and in desiring, they desired in the wilderness
and tested El in the desolation:
15 He gave them their petition
and sent emaciation to their soul:
16 they envied Mosheh in the camp
and Aharon the holy of Yah Veh:
17 the earth opened and swallowed Dathan
and covered the witness of Abi Ram:
18 a fire burnt in their witness
— the flame burnt the wicked:
19 they worked a calf in Horeb
and prostrated to the molten:
20 they changed their honor
into the pattern of an ox that eats herbage:
21 they forgot El their saviour
who worked great in Misrayim
— marvels in the land of Ham;
22 awesomenesses by the Reed sea.
23 He said to desolate them,
except Mosheh his chosen
stood at his face in the breach,
to turn away his fury, lest he ruin.
24 Yes, they spurned the land of desire;
they trusted not his word;
25 they rebelled in their tents
and hearkened not to the voice of Yah Veh.
26 He lifted his hand against them
to fell them in the wilderness;
27 to also fell their seed among the goyim
and to winnow them in the lands.
28 They joined Baal Peor
and ate the sacrifices of the dead:
29 thus they vex him with their exploits;
and the plague breaks on them:
30 and Pinechas stands and prays;
and the plague restrains:
31 and it was fabricated to him for justness
generation to generation eternally.
32 They enraged him at the waters of Meribah/strife,
so that it went evilly with Mosheh for their sakes:
33 for they rebelled against his spirit
so that he babbled with his lips:
34 they desolated not the people,
concerning whom Yah Veh had said to them;
35 but mingled among the goyim
and learned their works;
36 and served their idols — a snare to them:
37 yes, they sacrificed their sons and their daughters
to demons,
38 and poured innocent blood
— the blood of their sons and of their daughters,
whom they sacrificed to the idols of Kenaan:
and profaned the land with blood.

PSALMS 106, 107

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

39 Thus were they *defiled* **fouled** with their own works,
and went a *whoring* **whored**
with **in** their own inventions **exploits**.
40 Therefore was the wrath of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
kindled against his people,
insomuch that he abhorred his own inheritance.
41 And he gave them into the hand of the *heathen* **goyim**;
and they that hated them *ruled* **reigned** over them.
42 Their enemies also oppressed them,
and they were *brought into subjection* **subdued**
under their hand.
43 Many times did he *deliver* **rescue** them;
but they *provoked him* **rebelled** with their counsel,
and were *brought low* **subdued** for their *iniquity* **perversity**.
44 Nevertheless
he *regarded* **saw** their *affliction* **tribulation**,
when he heard their *cry* **shouting**;
45 And he remembered for them his covenant,
and *repented* **sighed**
according to the *multitude* **abundance** of his mercies.
46 He *made* **gave** them also to be *pitied* **mercied**
at the face of all those
that *carried* **captured** them *captives*.
47 Save us, O *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
and gather us from among the *heathen* **goyim**,
to *give thanks* **spread hands** unto thy holy name,
and to *triumph* **laud** in thy *praise* **halal**.
48 Blessed
be *the LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
from *everlasting* **eternity** to *everlasting* **eternity**:
and let all the people say, Amen.
Praise ye the LORD **Halalu Yah**.

BOOK V 107

O *give thanks* **spread hands**
unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
for he is good:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
2 Let the redeemed of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** say *so*,
whom he hath redeemed
from the hand of the *enemy* **tribulator**;
3 And gathered them out of the lands,
from the *east* **rising**, and from *the west* **duskward**,
from the north, and from *the south* **seaward**.
4 They *wandered* **strayed** in the wilderness
in a *solitary way* **of desolation**;
they found no city *to dwell in* **of settlement**.
5 *Hungry* **Famished** and thirsty,
their soul *fainted* **languished** in them.
6 Then they cried unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
in their *trouble* **tribulation**,
and he *delivered* **rescued** them out of their distresses.
7 And he *led* **aimed** them *forth* by the *right* **straight** way,
that they might go to a city of *habitation* **settlement**.
8 *Oh that men would praise the LORD*
Spread hands unto Yah Veh
for his *goodness* **mercy**,
and for his *wonderful works* **marvels**
to the *children* **sons of men** **humanity**!
9 For he satisfieth the *longing* **yearning** soul,
and filleth the *hungry* **famished** soul with goodness.
10 Such as *sit* **settle** in darkness
and in the shadow of death,
being bound in affliction **humiliation** and iron;
11 Because they rebelled
against the *words* **sayings** of *God* **El**,
and *contemned* **scorned** the counsel
of *the most High* **Elyon**:
12 *Therefore*
he *brought down* **subdued** their heart with *labour* **toil**;
they *fell down* **stumbled**,
and there was *none to help* **no helper**.
13 Then they cried unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
in their *trouble* **tribulation**,
and he saved them out of their distresses.
14 He brought them out of darkness
and the shadow of death,
and *brake* **tore** their bands *in sunder*.

PSALMS 106, 107

exeGeses companion BIBLE

39 Thus they fouled with their own works
and whored in their exploits.
40 Yah Veh kindled his wrath against his people
so that he abhorred his own inheritance;
41 and he gave them into the hand of the goyim:
and they who hated them reigned over them:
42 their enemies oppressed them
and subdued them under their hand.
43 Many times he rescued them;
but they rebelled with their counsel
and they are subdued in their perversity.
44 He saw their tribulation
when he heard their shouting;
45 and he remembers his covenant and sighs
according to the abundance of his mercies:
46 he gave them to be mercied
at the face of all who captured them.
47 Save us, O Yah Veh our Elohim
and gather us from among the goyim,
to spread hands to your holy name
and to laud in your halal.
48 Blessed — Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
from eternity to eternity!
And all the people say, Amen.
Halalu Yah.

BOOK V 107

O spread hands to Yah Veh,
for good; for his mercy eternal.
2 Say it, you redeemed of Yah Veh
— whom he redeemed
from the hand of the tribulator;
3 — and gathered from the lands
— from the rising and from duskward,
from the north and from seaward.
4 They strayed in the wilderness
in a way of desolation;
they found no city of settlement;
5 famished; yes, thirsty;
their soul languished therein.
6 They cried to Yah Veh in their tribulation
and he rescued them from their distresses;
7 he aimed them by the straight way
to go to a city of settlement.
8 Spread hands to Yah Veh for his mercy
and for his marvels to the sons of humanity!
9 For he satisfies the yearning soul
and the famished soul he fills with goodness
— such as settle in darkness
and in the shadow of death
— bound in humiliation and iron:
10 because they rebel against the sayings of El
and scorn the counsel of Elyon:
11 he subdues their heart with toil;
they stumble and there is no helper.
12 And they cry to Yah Veh in their tribulation
and he saves them from their distresses:
13 he brings them from darkness
and the shadow of death;
and tears their bands.

PSALMS 107

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 *Oh that men would praise the LORD*
Spread hands unto Yah Veh
for his *goodness* **mercy**,
and for his *wonderful works* **marvels**
to the *children* **sons of men** **humanity!**

16 For he hath broken the *gates* **doors of brass** **copper**,
and cut the bars of iron *in sunder*.

17 Fools *because by way* of their *transgression* **rebellion**,
and *because by way* of their *iniquities* **perversities**,
are *afflicted* **humbled**.

18 Their soul abhorreth all manner of *meat* **food**;
and they *draw near* **touch**
unto the *gates* **portals** of death.

19 Then they cry unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
in their *trouble* **tribulation**,
and he saveth them out of their distresses.

20 He sent his word, and healed them,
and *delivered* **rescued** them
from their *destructions* **pitfalls**.

21 *Oh that men would praise the LORD*
Spread hands unto Yah Veh
for his *goodness* **mercy**,
and for his *wonderful works* **marvels**
to the *children* **sons of men** **humanity!**

22 And let them sacrifice the sacrifices
of *thanksgiving* **spread hands**,
and *declare* **scribe** his works with *rejoicing* **shouting**.

23 They that go *down* **descend** to the sea in ships,
that *do business* **work** in great waters;

24 These see the works of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and his *wonders* **marvels** in the deep.

25 For he *commandeth* **sayeth**,
and *raiseth* **stayeth** the stormy wind,
which *lifteth up* the waves *thereof*.

26 They *mount up* **ascend** to the *heaven* **heavens**,
they *go down again* **descend** to the *depths* **abysses**:
their soul is melted because of *trouble* **evil**.

27 They *reel to and fro* **celebrate**,
and stagger like a *drunken man* **one intoxicated**,
and *are at their wit's end* **all their wisdom is swallowed**.

28 Then they cry unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
in their *trouble* **tribulation**,
and he bringeth them out of their distresses.

29 He *maketh* **raiseth** the storm a *calm* **to hush**,
so that the waves *thereof* **are still** **hush**.

30 Then *are they glad* **cheer**
because they *be quiet* **hush**;
so he *bringeth* **leadeth** them
unto *their desired* **the** *haven* **of their desire**.

31 *Oh that men would praise the LORD*
Spread hands unto Yah Veh
for his *goodness* **mercy**,
and for his *wonderful works* **marvels**
to the *children* **sons of men** **humanity!**

32 Let them exalt him *also*
in the congregation of the people,
and *praise* **halal** him
in the *assembly* **settlement** of the elders.

33 He *turneth* **setteth** rivers
into a wilderness,
and the *watersprings* **springs of waters**
into *dry ground* **thirst**;

34 A fruitful land into *barrenness* **salt**,
for the *wickedness* **evil** of them that *dwell* **settle** therein.

35 He *turneth* **setteth** the wilderness
into a *standing* **marsh of** water,
and *dry ground* **parched earth**
into *watersprings* **springs of waters**.

36 And there
he *maketh the hungry to dwell* **setteth the famished**,
that they may prepare a city for *habitation* **settlement**;

37 And *sow* **seed** the fields, and plant vineyards,
which may *yield* **work** fruits of *increase* **produce**.

38 He *blesseth* them also,
so that they *are multiplied greatly* **abound mightily**;
and *suffereth* **diminisheth** not
their *cattle* **animals** to decrease.

PSALMS 107

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 Spread hands to Yah Veh for his mercy
and for his marvels to the sons of humanity!

16 For he broke the doors of copper
and cut the bars of iron.

17 Fools by way of their rebellion
and by way of their perversities
are humbled:

18 their soul abhors all their food;
and they touch to the portals of death.

19 And they cry to Yah Veh in their tribulation;
he saves them from their distresses:
he sends his word and heals them
and rescues them from their pitfalls.

20

21 Spread hands to Yah Veh for his mercy
and for his marvels to the sons of humanity!

22 Sacrifice the sacrifices of spread hands
and scribe his works with shouting.

23 They who descend to the sea in ships
— who work in great waters;

24 these see the works of Yah Veh
and his marvels in the deep.

25 He says,
and the stormy wind which lifts the waves stay:
they ascend to the heavens;
they descend to the abysses;
their soul melts because of evil.

26

27 They celebrate and stagger as intoxicated
— swallow all their wisdom:

28 and they cry to Yah Veh in their tribulation
and he brings them from their distresses:
he raises the storm to hush
and the waves hush:

29 and they cheer because they hush;
and he leads them to their haven of desire.

30

31 Spread hands to Yah Veh for his mercy
and for his marvels to the sons of humanity!

32 Exalt him in the congregation of the people
and halal him in the settlement of the elders.

33 He sets rivers to a wilderness
and the springs of waters to thirst;
a fruitful land to salt
for the evil of them who settle therein.

34

35 He sets the wilderness to a marsh of water
and parched earth to springs of waters:
and there he settles the famished
to prepare a city for settlement
— to seed the fields and plant vineyards;
to work fruits of produce:

36 he blesses them to abound mightily;
and diminishes not their animals.

PSALMS 107 — 109

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

39 Again, they are *minished* **diminish**
and brought low **prostrate**
through *oppression* **restraint**,
affliction **evil**, and *sorrow* **grief**.
40 He poureth *contempt* **disrespect**
upon *princes* **volunteers**,
and causeth them to *wander* **stray** in the *wilderness* **waste**,
where there is no way.
41 Yet setteth he the *poor on high* **he lofteth the needy**
from *affliction* **after humiliation**,
and maketh him **setteth** families like a flock.
42 The *righteous* **straight** shall see it, and *rejoice* **cheer**:
and all *iniquity* **wickedness** shall *stop* **shut** her mouth.
43 Whoso is wise,
and will observe **shall guard** these *things*,
even they shall *understand* **discern**
the *lovingkindness* **mercy** of the **LORD Yah Veh**.

108

A Song or Psalm of David.

1 O *God* **Elohim**, my heart is *fixed* **prepared**;
I will **shall** sing and *give* **praise psalm**,
even with my *glory* **honour**.
2 Awake, *psaltery* **bagpipe** and harp:
I myself will **shall** awake early.
3 I will *praise* **shall spread hands unto** thee,
O **LORD Yah Veh**,
among the people:
and I will *sing praises* **shall psalm** unto thee
among the *nations* **people**.
4 For thy mercy is great above the heavens:
and thy truth *reacheth* unto the *clouds* **vapours**.
5 Be thou *exalted* **lofted**, O *God* **Elohim**,
above the heavens:
and thy *glory* **honour** above all the earth;
6 That thy beloved may be *delivered* **rescued**:
save with thy right *hand*, and answer me.
7 *God* **Elohim** hath *spoken* **worded** in his holiness;
I will *rejoice* **shall jump for joy**,
I will *divide* **shall allot** Shechem,
and mete out the valley of *Succoth* **Sukkoth/Brush Arbors**.
8 *Gilead* **Galad** is mine; *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh** is mine;
Ephraim **Ephrayim** also
is the *strength* **stronghold** of mine head;
Judah **Yah Hudah** is my *lawgiver* **statute setter**;
9 *Moab* is my *wash pot* **bath caldron**;
over *Edom* will **shall** I cast out my shoe;
over *Philistia* will **Pelesheth shall** I triumph.
10 Who will **shall** bring me into the *strong* **fortressed** city?
who will **shall** lead me into *Edom*?
11 *Wilt* **Shalt** not thou, O *God* **Elohim**,
who hast cast us off?
and *wilt* **shalt** not thou, O *God* **Elohim**,
go *forth* with our hosts?
12 Give us help from *trouble* **tribulation**:
for vain is the *help* **salvation** of *man* **humanity**.
13 Through *God* **Elohim** we shall *do* **work** valiantly:
for he *it is that* shall tread down our *enemies* **tribulators**.

109

To the chief Musician **His Eminence**,
A Psalm of David.

1 *Hold not thy peace* **Hush not**,
O *God* **Elohim** of my *praise* **halal**;
2 For the mouth of the *wicked* **wickedness**
and the mouth of the *deceitful* **deceit**
are opened against me:
they have *spoken* **worded** against me
with a *lying* **false** tongue.
3 They *compassed about* **surrounded me**
also with words of hatred;
and fought against me *without a cause* **gratuitously**.
4 For my love they are my *adversaries* **satans**:
but I *give myself unto* — prayer.
5 And they have *rewarded* **set upon** me evil for good,
and hatred for my love.
6 Set thou a wicked *man* over him:
and let Satan stand at his right *hand*.
7 When he shall be judged,
let him be *condemned* **judged wicked**:
and let his prayer become sin.

PSALMS 107 — 109

exeGeses companion BIBLE

39 They diminish and prostrate
through restraint, evil, and grief:
40 he pours disrespect on volunteers
to stray in the way where there is no way:
41 and he lofts the needy from humiliation
and sets families as a flock.
42 The straight see and cheer;
and all wickedness shuts her mouth.
43 Who is wise and guards these,
discerns the mercy of Yah Veh.

108

A Song: A Psalm by David.

1 O Elohim, my heart is prepared;
I sing and psalm, even with my honor:
2 waken, bagpipe and harp; I waken early.
3 I spread hands to you, O Yah Veh,
among the people;
and I psalm to you among the people:
4 for your mercy — great above the heavens;
and your truth to the vapours.
5 Be lofted, O Elohim, above the heavens;
and your honor above all the earth:
6 that your beloved may be rescued;
save with your right and answer me.
7 Elohim words in his holiness;
I jump for joy:
I allot Shechem;
I mete out the valley of Sukkoth/Brush Arbors:
8 Galad is mine; Menash Sheh is mine;
Ephrayim is the stronghold of my head;
Yah Hudah is my statute setter;
9 Moab is my bath caldron;
over Edom I cast out my shoe;
over Pelesheth I triumph.
10 Who brings me to the fortified city?
Who leads me into Edom?
11 Have you not, O Elohim cast us off?
Have you not, O Elohim, gone with our hosts?
12 Give us help from tribulation;
for vain is the salvation of humanity:
13 through Elohim we work valiantly
for he treads down our tribulators.

109

To His Eminence: A Psalm by David.

1 Hush not, O Elohim of my halal;
2 for the mouth of wickedness
and the mouth of deceit open against me:
3 they word against me with a false tongue;
they surround me with words of hatred;
and fight against me gratuitously:
4 instead of my love, they *are* my satans;
but I — prayer:
5 and against me, they set evil for good
and hatred for my love.
6 Set the wicked over him;
and stand Satan at his right:
7 in judging, judge him with the wicked;
and that his prayer become sin

PSALMS 109

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 Let his days be few;
and let another take his office **oversight**.
9 Let his children **sons** be *fatherless* **orphans**,
and his wife **woman** a widow.
10 Let his children be continually *vagabonds*
In wandering, let his sons wander,
and beg **ask**:
let them seek their *bread* also
out of their *desolate places* **parched areas**.
11 Let the *extortioner* catch **exact** **snare** all that he hath;
and let the strangers *spoil* **plunder** his labour.
12 Let there be none to *extend* **draw out** mercy unto him:
neither let there be any to *favour* **grant** **charism**
to his fatherless children orphans.
13 Let his posterity be cut off;
and in the **another** generation *following*
let their name be *blotted* **wiped** out.
14 Let the *iniquity* **perversity** of his fathers
be remembered with the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and let not the sin of his mother be *blotted* **wiped** out.
15 Let them be
before the LORD **in front of Yah Veh** continually,
that he may cut off the *memory* **memorial** of them
from the earth.
16 Because
that he remembered not to *shew* **work** mercy,
but *persecuted* **pursued** the *poor* **humble** and needy man,
that he might *even* **slay** **deathify**
the *broken* **dejected** in heart.
17 As he loved *cursing* **to abase**, so let it come unto him:
as he delighted not in blessing, so let it be far from him.
18 As he *clothed* **enrob**ed himself with *cursing* **abasing**
like as with his *garment* **tailoring**,
so let it come into his *bowels* **inwards** like water,
and like *oil* **ointment** into his bones.
19 Let it be unto him
as the *garment* **clothes** which covereth him,
and for a girdle wherewith he is girded continually.
20 Let this be
the *reward* **for the deeds** of *mine* **adversaries** **my satans**
from the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and of them that *speak* **word** evil against my soul.
21 But *do* **work** thou for me,
O **GOD the Lord Yah Veh Adonay**, for thy name's sake:
because thy mercy is good, *deliver* **rescue** thou me.
22 For I am *poor* **humble** and needy,
and my heart is *wounded* **pierced** within me.
23 I am gone like the shadow when it *declineth* **spreadeth**:
I am *tossed up and down* **shaken** as the locust.
24 My knees are *weak* **falter** through fasting;
and my flesh *faileth* **emaciates** of *fatness* **ointment**.
25 I became also a reproach unto them:
when they looked upon **they see** me,
they *shaked* **shake** their heads.
26 Help me, O **LORD Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**:
O save me according to thy mercy:
27 That they may know that this is thy hand;
that thou, **LORD O Yah Veh**, hast *done* **worked** it.
28 Let them *curse* **abase**, but bless thou:
when they arise, let them be *ashamed* **shame**;
but let thy servant *rejoice* **cheer**.
29 Let *mine* **adversaries** **my satans**
be *clothed* **enrobe** with shame,
and let them cover themselves
with their own *confusion* **shame**, as with a mantle.
30 I will greatly praise the **LORD**
I shall mightily halal Yah Veh with my mouth;
yea, I will praise **shall spread hands** unto him
among the *multitude* **great**.
31 For he shall stand at the right *hand* of the *poor* **needy**,
to save him from those that *condemn* **judge** his soul.

PSALMS 109

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 and his days become few
and another take his oversight:
9 and his sons become orphans
and his woman a widow:
10 in wandering, that his sons wander;
yes, ask; and seek from their parched areas.
11 The exactor snares all he has
and the strangers plunder his labor;
12 neither is there any to draw out mercy to him
nor any to grant charism to his orphans:
13 his posterity becomes cut off;
and in another generation
their name is wiped out:
14 the perversity of his fathers
is remembered to Yah Veh;
and the sin of his mother is not wiped out;
15 they become in front of Yah Veh continually
to cut off their memorial from the earth:
16 because he remembered not to work mercy
and pursued the humble and needy man
to deathify the dejected in heart.
17 As he loves to abase,
thus it approaches him;
as he delights not in blessing,
so be it far from him:
18 he enrobes abasing as tailoring,
thus it enters his inwards as water
— as ointment into his bones:
19 so be it as the clothes that cover him
and for a girdle to continually gird:
20 this is for the deeds of my satans from Yah Veh
and for them who word evil against my soul.
21 But work for me, O Yah Veh Adonay,
for sake of your name;
because your mercy is good, rescue me.
22 For I am humble and needy
and my heart pierces within me
— gone — spread as the shadow
— shaken as the locust:
24 my knees falter through fasting;
my flesh emaciates of ointment;
25 I — I am a reproach to them;
they see me; they shake their heads.
26 Help me, O Yah Veh my Elohim;
O save me according to your mercy;
27 so that they know this is your hand;
that you, O Yah Veh, worked it.
28 They abase and you bless;
they rise and shame:
and your servant cheers.
29 My satans enrobe with shame
— cover themselves with their own shame
as with a mantle.
30 I mightily halal Yah Veh with my mouth;
yes, I spread hands to him among the great:
31 for he stands at the right of the needy
to save him from those who judge his soul.

PSALMS 110—112

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

110

A Psalm of David.

1 The *LORD* said **An oracle of Yah Veh**
 unto my *Lord Adonay*,
 Sit Settle thou at my right *hand*,
 until I make **set** thine enemies
 thy footstool the stool of thy feet.
 2 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall send the rod of thy strength
 out of *Zion Siyon*:
 rule subjugate thou in the midst of thine enemies.
 3 Thy people shall *be willing volunteer*
 in the day of thy *power valour*,
 in the *beauties majesties* of holiness
 from the womb of the *morning dawn*:
 thou hast the dew of thy *youth childhood*.
 4 The *LORD* hath sworn **Yah Veh oathed**,
 and will **shall** not *repent sigh*,
 Thou art a priest *for ever eternally*
 after the *order word* of *Melchizedek Malki Sedeq*.
 5 The *Lord Adonay* at thy right *hand*
 shall strike *through kings sovereigns*
 in the day of his wrath.
 6 He shall *judge among plead the cause*
 of the *heathen goyim*,
 he shall fill the places with the *dead* bodies;
 he shall *wound strike* the heads
 over *many countries the great land*.
 7 He shall drink of the *brook wadi* in the way:
 therefore shall he *lift up* the head.

111

Praise ye the LORD Halalu Yah.

I will praise the *LORD* **shall spread hands unto Yah Veh**
 with my whole heart,
 in the *assembly private counsel* of the *upright straight*,
 and in the *congregation witness*.
 2 The works of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** are great,
 sought out of all them that *have pleasure delight* therein.
 3 His work **deed** is honourable and *glorious majestic*:
 and his *righteousness justness*
 endureth for ever standeth eternal.
 4 He hath *made worked* his *wonderful works marvels*
 to be remembered — **a memorial**:
 the *LORD* **Yah Veh** is *gracious charismatic*
 and *full of compassion merciful*.
 5 He hath given *meat prey*
 unto them that *fear awe* him:
 he will *ever shall eternally*
 be mindful of remember his covenant.
 6 He hath *shewed told* his people
 the *power force* of his works,
 that he may give them
 the *heritage inheritance* of the *heathen goyim*.
 7 The works of his hands are *verity truth* and judgment;
 all his commandments are *sure trustworthy*.
 8 They *stand fast sustain*
 for ever eternally and *ever eternally*,
 and are *done worked*
 in truth and *uprightness straightness*.
 9 He sent redemption unto his people:
 he hath *commanded misvahed* his covenant
 for ever eternally:
 holy and *reverend awesome* is his name.
 10 The *fear awe* of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
 is the beginning of wisdom:
 a good *understanding comprehension*
 have all they that *do his commandments work them*:
 his *praise endureth for ever halal standeth eternal*.

112

Praise ye the LORD Halalu Yah.

Blessed Blithe is the man
 that *feareth the LORD aweth Yah Veh*,
 that delighteth *greatly mightily*
 in his *commandments misvoth*.
 2 His seed shall be mighty upon earth:
 the generation of the *upright straight* shall be blessed.
 3 Wealth and riches shall be in his house:
 and his *righteousness justness*
 endureth for ever standeth eternal.

PSALMS 110—112

exeGeses companion BIBLE

110

A Psalm: By David.

1 An oracle of Yah Veh to my Adonay;
 Settle at my right
 until I set your enemies the stool of your feet.
 2 Yah Veh sends the rod of your strength
 from Siyon.
 Subjugate midst your enemies.
 3 Your people volunteer in the day of your valour
 — in the majesties of holiness
 from the womb of the dawn;
 you have the dew of your childhood.
 4 Yah Veh oaths and sighs not!
 You are a priest eternally
 after the word of Malki Sedeq.
 5 Adonay at your right
 struck sovereigns in the day of his wrath:
 he pleads among the goyim;
 he fills with bodies;
 6 he strikes him — the head over the great land:
 he drinks of the wadi in the way;
 so he lifts the head.

111

Halalu Yah!

I spread hands to Yah Veh with my whole heart
 in the private counsel of the straight
 and in the witness.
 2 The works of Yah Veh are great
 — sought by all who delight therein:
 his deed is honorable and majestic
 and his justness stands eternal:
 3 he worked his marvels — a memorial;
 Yah Veh *is* charismatic and merciful.
 4 he gives the prey to them who awe him;
 he eternally remembers his covenant:
 he told his people the force of his works
 to give them the inheritance of the goyim.
 5 The works of his hands are truth and judgment;
 all his commandments are trustworthy:
 6 they sustain eternally and eternally
 — worked in truth and straightness:
 7 he sends redemption to his people;
 he misvahs his covenant eternally:
 holy and awesome *is* his name.
 8 The awe of Yah Veh is the beginning of wisdom;
 all who work them have good comprehension;
 his halal stands eternal.

112

Halalu Yah!

Blithe — the man who awes Yah Veh
 — who delights mightily in his misvoth.
 2 His seed is mighty on earth;
 the generation of the straight is blessed;
 wealth and riches *are* in his house;
 and his justness stands eternal.

PSALMS 112—115

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 Unto the upright **straight**
there ariseth light in the darkness:
he is *gracious* **charismatic**,
and full of compassion **merciful**, and *righteous* **just**.
5 A good man *sheweth favour* **granteth charism**,
and lendeth:
he will guide **shall sustain** his *affairs* **words**
with *discretion* **judgment**.
6 Surely he shall not be moved for ever **totter eternally**:
the *righteous* **just**
shall be in *everlasting remembrance* **an eternal memorial**.
7 He shall not be afraid of **awe** evil tidings **reports**:
his heart is *fixed* **established**,
trusting **confiding** in the **LORD Yah Veh**.
8 His heart is *established* **sustained**,
he shall not be afraid **awe**,
until he see his *desire upon his enemies* **tribulators**.
9 He hath *dispersed* **scattered**,
he hath given to the *poor* **needy**;
his *righteousness* **justness**
endureth for ever **standeth eternal**;
his horn shall be *exalted* **lofted** with honour.
10 The wicked shall see it, and be *grieved* **vexed**;
he shall gnash with his teeth, and melt away:
the desire of the wicked shall *perish* **destruct**.

113

Praise ye the LORD **Halalu Yah**.
Praise **Halal**, O ye servants of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
praise **halal** the name of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
2 Blessed be the name of the **LORD Yah Veh**
from this time forth and for evermore **eternally**.
3 From the rising of the sun
unto the *going down* **entry** of the same
the **LORD'S Yah Veh's** name is to be *praised* **halaled**.
4 The **LORD** is high **Yah Veh be lofted**
above all *nations* **goyim**,
and his *glory* **honour**
above the heavens.
5 Who is like unto the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**,
who *dwelleth on high* **lofteth in his settlement**,
6 Who *humbleth* **abaseth himself**
to *behold the things that are in heaven* **see in the heavens**,
and in the earth!
7 He raiseth *up* the poor out of the dust,
and lifteth the needy out of the dunghill;
8 That he may set him with *princes* **volunteers**,
even with the princes **volunteers** of his people.
9 He *maketh* **causeth** the *barren woman* **sterile**
to *keep* **settle** house,
and to be a *joyful* **cheerful** mother of *children* **sons**.
Praise ye the LORD **Halalu Yah**.

114

When Israel **Yisra El** went out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
the house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
from a people of *strange language* **unintelligible**;
2 *Judah* **Yah Hudah** was his *sanctuary* **holies**,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** his *dominion* **reign**.
3 The sea saw it, and fled:
Jordan was driven **Yarden turned** back.
4 The mountains *skipped* **danced** like rams,
and the *little hills* like *lambs* **sons of flocks**.
5 What *ailed thee*, O thou sea, that thou fleddest?
thou *Jordan* **Yarden**, that thou *wast driven* **turnest** back?
6 Ye mountains, that ye *skipped* **danced** like rams;
and ye *little hills*, like *lambs* **sons of flocks**?
7 Tremble **Writhe**, thou earth,
at the *presence* **face** of the *Lord* **Adonay**,
at the *presence* **face** of the *God* **Elohah** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**;
8 Which turned the rock into a *standing* **marsh** water,
the flint into a fountain of waters.

115

Not unto us, O **LORD Yah Veh**, not unto us,
but unto thy name give *glory* **honour**,
for thy mercy, and for thy truth's sake.
2 Wherefore should the *heathen* **goyim** say,
Where is now **I beseech**, their *God* **Elohim**?
3 But our *God* **Elohim** is in the heavens:
he hath *done* **worked** whatsoever he hath *pleased* **desired**.

PSALMS 112—115

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 To the straight, light rises in the darkness;
he is charismatic and merciful and just:
5 a good man grants charism and lends;
he sustains his words with judgment:
6 surely he totters not eternally;
the just are an eternal memorial:
7 he awes not evil reports;
his heart is established, confiding in Yah Veh:
8 his heart sustains; he awes not
— until he sees his tribulators:
9 he scatters; he gives to the needy;
his justness stands eternal;
his horn is lofted with honor.
10 The wicked sees and vexes
— gnashes his teeth and melts away;
the desire of the wicked destructs.

113

Halalu Yah!
Halal, O you servants of Yah Veh;
2 halal the name of Yah Veh:
blessed — the name of Yah Veh
from this time forth and eternally
3 — from the rising of the sun to the entry:
halal the name of Yah Veh;
4 loft Yah Veh above all goyim
and his honor above the heavens.
5 Who is as Yah Veh our Elohim?
Who lofts in his settlement?
6 Who abases to see
on the heavens and on the earth?
7 He raises the poor from the dust
and lifts the needy from the dunghill
8 to set them with volunteers
— the volunteers of his people.
9 He settles the sterile in the house
— a cheerful mother of sons.
Halalu Yah!

114

Yisra El came from Misrayim;
the house of Yaaqov from a people unintelligible;
2 Yah Hudah became his holies; Yisra El his reign.
3 The sea sees and flees; Yarden returns;
4 the mountains dance as rams;
the hills as sons of flocks.
5 What, O sea, that you flee?
O Yarden, that you return?
6 O mountains, that you dance as rams?
O hills, as sons of flocks?
7 Writhe, O earth, at the face of Adonay
— at the face of Elohah of Yaaqov;
8 who turned the rock into a marsh water;
the flint into a fountain of waters.

115

Not to us, O Yah Veh,
not to us, but unto your name give honor;
for your mercy; for your truth.
2 Why say the goyim,
Where I beseech, is their Elohim?
3 Our Elohim is in the heavens;
he works whatever he desires.

PSALMS 115, 116

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 Their idols are silver and gold,
the work of *men's* **human** hands.
5 They have mouths, but they *speak* **word** not:
eyes have they, but they see not:
6 They have ears, but they hear not:
noses **nostrils** have they, but they *smell* **scent** not:
7 They have hands, but they *handle* **touch** not:
feet have they, but they walk not:
neither *speak* **mutter** they through their throat.
8 They that *make* **work** them are like unto them;
so is every one that *trusteth* **confideth** in them.
9 O *Israel* **Yisra El**,
trust **confide** thou in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
he is their help and their *shield* **buckler**.
10 O house of *Aaron* **Aharon**,
trust **confide** in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
he is their help and their *shield* **buckler**.
11 Ye that *fear* the *LORD* **awe Yah Veh**,
trust **confide** in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
he is their help and their *shield* **buckler**.
12 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath been mindful of us:
he *will* **shall** bless us;
he *will* **shall** bless the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
he *will* **shall** bless the house of *Aaron* **Aharon**.
13 He *will* **shall** bless them
that *fear* the *LORD* **awe Yah Veh**, both small and great.
14 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall increase you *more and more*,
you and your *children* **sons**.
15 Ye are blessed of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
which *made* *heaven* **worked the heavens** and earth.
16 The *heaven* **heavens**,
even the heavens, are the *LORD'S* **Yah Veh's**:
but the earth
hath he given to the *children* **sons of men** **humanity**.
17 The dead *praise* **halal** not the *LORD* **Yah**,
neither any that *go* **down** **descend** into silence.
18 But we *will* **shall** bless the *LORD* **Yah**
from this time *forth* and for *evermore* **eternally**.
Praise the *LORD* **Halalu Yah**.

116

I love the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
because he hath heard my voice and my supplications.
2 Because he hath *inclined* **spread** his ear unto me,
therefore
will **shall** I call upon *him* as long as I live **all my days**.
3 The *sorrows* **corde**s of death
compassed **surrounded** me,
and the *pains of hell* **straits of sheol**
gat **hold** upon **found** me:
I found *trouble* **tribulation** and *sorrow* **grief**.
4 Then called I upon the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, I beseech thee,
deliver **rescue** my soul.
5 *Gracious* **Charismatic** is the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *righteous* **just**;
yea, our *God* is *merciful* **Elohim mercieth**.
6 The *LORD* **Yah Veh**
preserveth **guardeth** the *simple* **gullible**:
I was *brought low* **languished**, and he *helped* **saved** me.
7 Return unto thy rest, O my soul;
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath dealt *bountifully* with thee.
8 For thou hast *delivered* **rescued** my soul from death,
mine eyes from tears,
and my feet from falling.
9 I *will* **shall** walk *before* the *LORD* **at the face of Yah Veh**
in the land of the living.
10 I *believed* **trusted**, therefore have I *spoken* **worded**:
I was *greatly afflicted* **mightily humbled**:
11 I said in my haste, *All men* **humans** are liars.
12 What shall I *render* **return** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
for all his benefits toward me?
13 I *will* **take** **shall lift** the cup of salvation,
and call upon the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
14 I *will* **pay** **shall shalam** my vows
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
now in the presence of all his people.
15 *Precious* **Esteemed**
in the *sight* **eyes of the LORD** **Yah Veh**
is the death of his *saints* **mercied**.

PSALMS 115, 116

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 Their idols are silver and gold
the work of human hands:
5 mouths have they, but they word not;
eyes have they, but they see not;
6 ears have they, but they hear not;
nostrils have they, but they scent not;
7 hands have they, but they touch not;
feet have they, but they walk not;
they mutter not through their throat.
8 They who work them are like them;
thus is every one who confides in them.
9 O Yisra El, confide in Yah Veh;
he is their help and their buckler:
10 O house of Aharon, confide in Yah Veh;
he is their help and their buckler:
11 you who awe Yah Veh, confide in Yah Veh;
he is their help and their buckler.
12 Yah Veh has been mindful of us; he blesses:
he blesses the house of Yisra El;
he blesses the house of Aharon;
13 he blesses them who awe Yah Veh
— small and great.
14 Yah Veh increases you — you and your sons
15 — you, blessed of Yah Veh
who worked the heavens and earth.
16 The heavens — the heavens, are to Yah Veh;
but he gives the earth to the sons of humanity.
17 Neither the dead *halal* **Yah**
nor any who descend into silence;
18 and we — we bless **Yah**
from this time and eternally.
Halalu Yah!

116

I love,
because Yah Veh hears
my voice, my supplications;
2 because he spreads his ear to me;
all my days I call:
3 the cords of death surround me
and the straits of sheol find me:
I find tribulation and grief:
4 I call on the name of Yah Veh;
O Yah Veh, I beseech you, rescue my soul.
5 Yah Veh is charismatic and just;
yes, our Elohim mercies:
6 Yah Veh guards the gullible;
I languish; he saves me:
7 return to your rest, O my soul;
for Yah Veh deals with you.
8 For you rescued my soul from death;
my eyes from tears;
my feet from falling:
9 I walk at the face of Yah Veh
in the land of the living:
10 I trust; I word:
I — I am mightily humbled.
11 I said in my haste, All humans are liars.
12 What return I to Yah Veh
for all his benefits toward me?
13 I lift the cup of salvation
and call on the name of Yah Veh;
14 I shalam my vows to Yah Veh
in the presence of all his people.
15 Esteemed in the eyes of Yah Veh
is the death of his mercied.

PSALMS 116—118

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 I beseech, O LORD O Yah Veh,
truly I am thy servant;
I am thy servant,
and the son of *thine handmaid thy maid*:
thou hast loosed my bonds.
17 I will offer **shall sacrifice** to thee
the sacrifice of *thanksgiving spread hands*,
and will **shall** call upon the name of the LORD Yah Veh.
18 I will pay **shall shalam** my vows
unto the LORD Yah Veh
now in the presence of all his people,
19 In the courts of the LORD'S Yah Veh's house,
in the midst of thee, O Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.
Praise ye the LORD Halalu Yah.

117

O praise the LORD halal Yah Veh,
all ye nations **goyim**:
praise **laud** him,
all ye people **nations**.
2 For his merciful kindness **mercy**
is great **prevaileth mightily** toward us:
and the truth of the LORD Yah Veh
endureth for ever **is eternal**.
Praise ye the LORD Halalu Yah.

118

O give thanks **spread hands** unto the LORD Yah Veh;
for he is good:
because his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
2 Let Israel now **Yisra El, I beseech**, say,
that his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
3 Let the house of Aaron now **Aharon I beseech**, say,
that his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
4 Let them, *now* **I beseech**,
that *fear the LORD* **awe Yah Veh** say,
that his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
5 I called upon the LORD **Yah** in *distress* **the straits**:
the LORD Yah answered me,
and set me in a large place **from an expanse**.
6 The LORD **Yah Veh** is on my side;
I will **shall** not fear **awe**:
what *can man do* **shall humanity work** unto me?
7 The LORD **Yah Veh** taketh my part
with them that *help me* **my helpers**:
therefore shall I see *my desire upon* them that hate me.
8 *It is better to trust* **seek refuge** in the LORD **Yah Veh**
than to *put confidence* **confide** in man **humanity**.
9 *It is better to trust* **seek refuge** in the LORD **Yah Veh**
than to *put confidence* **confide** in *princes* **volunteers**.
10 All nations compassed **goyim surrounded** me *about*:
but in the name of the LORD **Yah Veh**
will I destroy **I shall cut** them off.
11 They compassed **surrounded** me *about*;
yea, they compassed **surrounded** me *about*:
but in the name of the LORD **Yah Veh**
I will *destroy* **shall cut** them off.
12 They compassed **surrounded** me *about* like bees:
they are *quenched* **extinguished** as the fire of thorns:
for in the name of the LORD **Yah Veh**
I will *destroy* **shall cut** them off.
13 **In overthrowing**,
Thou hast *thrust sore at me* **overthrown me**
that I might fall:
but the LORD **Yah Veh** helped me.
14 The LORD **Yah** is my strength and *song* **psalm**,
and is become my salvation.
15 The voice of *rejoicing* **shouting** and salvation
is in the *tabernacles* **tents** of the *righteous* **just**:
the right *hand of the LORD* **Yah Veh**
doeth **worketh** valiantly.
16 The right *hand of the LORD* **Yah Veh** is exalted:
the right *hand of the LORD* **Yah Veh**
doeth **worketh** valiantly.
17 I shall not die, but live,
and declare **scribe** the works of the LORD **Yah**.
18 **In disciplining**,
The LORD **Yah** hath *chastened* **disciplined** me *sore*:
but he hath not given me over unto death.

PSALMS 116—118

exeGeses companion BIBLE

16 I beseech, O Yah Veh, I your servant
— I your servant, the son of your maid;
you loosed my bonds.
17 I sacrifice to you
the sacrifice of spread hands
and call on the name of Yah Veh:
18 I shalam my vows to Yah Veh
in the presence of all his people
19 — in the courts of the house of Yah Veh;
in your midst, O Yeru Shalem.
Halalu Yah!

117

O halal Yah Veh, all you goyim;
laud him, all you nations:
2 for his mercy prevails mightily toward us;
and the truth of Yah Veh *is* eternal.
Halalu Yah!

118

O spread hands to Yah Veh;
for good; his mercy eternal.
2 I beseech, Yisra El say,
his mercy eternal.
3 I beseech, house of Aharon say,
his mercy eternal.
4 I beseech, you who awe Yah Veh say,
his mercy eternal.
5 I calle on Yah in the straits;
Yah answers me from an expanse:
6 Yah Veh is on my side;
I awe not what humanity works to me:
7 Yah Veh takes my part among my helpers;
I — I see them who hate me.
8 Better to seek refuge in Yah Veh
than to confide in humanity;
9 better to seek refuge in Yah Veh
than to confide in volunteers.
10 all goyim surround me;
in the name of Yah Veh, I cut them off:
11 they surround me; yes, they surround me;
in the name of Yah Veh, I cut them off:
12 they surround me as bees;
they are extinguished as a fire of thorns;
for in the name of Yah Veh I cut them off.
13 In overthrowing,
you overthrew me that I fell;
and Yah Veh helped me.
14 Yah *is* my strength and psalm
— become my salvation
15 The voice of shouting and salvation
is in the tents of the just;
the right of Yah Veh works valiantly:
16 the right of Yah Veh exalts;
the right of Yah Veh works valiantly.
17 I die not, but live;
and scribe the works of Yah.
18 In disciplining, Yah disciplines me;
but gives me not over to death.

PSALMS 118, 119

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

19 Open to me the **gates portals** of **righteousness justness**:
I **will shall** go into them,
and I **will praise the LORD shall spread hands unto Yah**:
20 This **gate portal** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
into which the **righteous just** shall enter.
21 I **will praise shall spread hands unto** thee:
for thou hast **heard answered** me,
and art become my salvation.
22 The stone **which** the builders refused
is become the head **stone** of the corner.
23 This is the **LORD'S Yah Veh's** doing;
it is marvellous in our eyes.
24 This is the day
which the LORD Yah Veh hath made worked;
we **will rejoice shall twirl and be glad cheer** in it.
25 Save now* I **beseech**,
I **beseech** thee, O **LORD Yah Veh**:
O **LORD Yah Veh**, I **beseech** thee,
send now prosperity prosper, I beseech.
*Hoshia Nah
26 Blessed be he
that cometh in the name of the **LORD Yah Veh**:
we have blessed you
out of the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
27 **God El** is the **LORD Yah Veh**,
which hath **shewed us light enlightened us**:
bind the **sacrifice celebration** with **cords ropes**,
even unto the horns of the **sacrifice** altar.
28 Thou art my **God El**,
and I **will praise shall spread hands unto** thee:
thou art my **God Elohim**, I **will shall** exalt thee.
29 O **give thanks spread hands** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
for he is good:
for his mercy **endureth for ever is eternal**.

119

ALEPH.

1 **Blessed Blithed** are the **undefiled integrious** in the way,
who walk in the **law torah** of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
2 **Blessed Blithed** are they
that **keep guard** his **testimonies witnesses**,
and that seek him with the whole heart.
3 They also do no **iniquity wickedness**:
they walk in his ways.
4 Thou hast **commanded misvahed us**
to **keep guard** thy precepts **diligently mightily**.
5 O that my ways
were **directed prepared** to **keep guard** thy statutes!
6 Then shall I not be **ashamed shame**,
when I **have respect look**
unto all thy **commandments misvoth**.
7 I **will praise shall spread hands unto** thee
with **uprightness straightness** of heart,
when I shall have learned
thy **righteous judgments judgments of justness**.
8 I **will keep shall guard** thy statutes:
O forsake me not **utterly mightily**.

BETH.

9 Wherewithal shall a young man **cleanse purify** his way?
by **taking heed thereto guarding** according to thy word.
10 With my whole heart have I sought thee:
O let me not **wander err inadvertently**
from thy **commandments misvoth**.
11 Thy **word sayings** have I **hid treasured** in mine heart,
that I might not sin against thee.
12 **Blessed art thou, O LORD Yah Veh**:
teach me thy statutes.
13 With my lips
have I **declared scribed** all the judgments of thy mouth.
14 I have rejoiced
in the way of thy **testimonies witnesses**,
as **much as in all riches over all wealth**.
15 I **will shall** meditate in thy precepts,
and **have respect scan** unto thy ways.
16 I **will shall** delight myself in thy statutes:
I **will shall** not forget thy word.

PSALMS 118, 119

exeGeses companion BIBLE

19 Open to me the portals of justness;
I go in and I spread hands to Yah;
20 this portal of Yah Veh, wherein the just enter:
21 I spread hands to you;
for you answered me and become my salvation.
22 The stone the builders refused
becomes the head of the corner.
23 This becomes from Yah Veh
— marvellous in our eyes.
24 This *is* the day Yah Veh worked;
we twirl and cheer therein.
25 Save now* I beseech,
I beseech you, O Yah Veh;
O Yah Veh, I beseech you,
prosper, I beseech.
*Hoshia Nah
26 Blessed
— he who comes in the name of Yah Veh;
we bless you from the house of Yah Veh.
27 *El is* Yah Veh; he enlightens us:
bind the celebration with ropes
to the horns of the sacrifice altar.
28 You *are* my El, and I spread hands to you;
you *are* my Elohim, I exalt you.
29 O spread hands to Yah Veh;
for good; for his mercy eternal.

119

ALEPH.

1 Blithed — the integrious in the way,
who walk in the torah of Yah Veh:
2 blithed — they who guard his witnesses
— who seek him with the whole heart:
3 they do no wickedness;
they walk in his ways.
4 You misvahed us
to guard your precepts mightily.
5 O that I prepared my ways
to guard your statutes!
6 Then I shame not
when I look to all your misvoth:
7 I spread hands to you with straightness of heart
when I learn your judgments of justness:
8 I guard your statutes:
O forsake me not mightily.

BETH.

9 How purifies a young man his way?
By guarding according to your word.
10 With my whole heart I sought you;
that I not err inadvertently from your misvoth:
11 I treasure your sayings in my heart
that I not sin against you.
12 Blessed you, O Yah Veh;
teach me your statutes.
13 With my lips
I scribe all the judgments of your mouth;
14 I rejoice in the way of your witnesses
as over all wealth;
15 I meditate in your precepts
and scan to your ways;
16 I delight myself in your statutes
— I forget not your word.

PSALMS 119

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

GIMEL.
 17 Deal *bountifully* with thy servant,
 that I may live, and *keep guard* thy word.
 18 *Open Expose* thou mine eyes,
 that I may behold *wondrous things marvels*
 out of thy *law torah*.
 19 I am a *stranger sojourner* in the earth:
 hide not thy *commandments misvoth* from me.
 20 My soul *breaketh crusheth* for the *longing desire*
that it hath unto thy judgments at all times.
 21 Thou hast rebuked the *proud arrogant*
 that are cursed,
 which *do err inadvertently*
 from thy *commandments misvoth*.
 22 *Remove Roll away* from me
 reproach and *contempt disrespect*;
 for I have *kept guarded* thy *testimonies witnesses*.
 23 *Princes Governors* also
did sit settled and *speak worded* against me:
 but thy servant *did meditate meditated* in thy statutes.
 24 Thy *testimonies witnesses* also are my delight
 and my *counsellors councilmen*.
 DALETH.
 25 My soul *cleaveth adhereth* unto the dust:
quicken enliven thou me according to thy word.
 26 I have *declared scribed* my ways,
 and thou *heardest answerest* me:
 teach me thy statutes.
 27 *Make Have* me to *understand discern*
 the way of thy precepts:
 so shall I *talk meditate* of thy *wondrous works marvels*.
 28 My soul *melteeth drippeth* for *heaviness grief*:
strengthen raise thou me according unto thy word.
 29 *Remove Turn aside* from me
 the way of *lying falsehoods*:
 and *grant me thy law graciously*
with thy torah grant me charism.
 30 I have chosen the way of *truth trustworthiness*:
 thy judgments have I *laid placed* before me.
 31 I have *stuck adhered* unto thy *testimonies witnesses*:
 O LORD **Yah Veh**, *put me not to shame me not*.
 32 I *will shall* run the way of thy *commandments misvoth*,
 when thou shalt enlarge my heart.
 HE.
 33 Teach me, O LORD **Yah Veh**, the way of thy statutes;
 and I shall *keep guard* it unto the end.
 34 *Give me understanding Have me discern*,
 and I shall *keep guard* thy *law torah*;
 yea, I shall *observe guard* it with my whole heart.
 35 *Make Aim* me to *go*
 in the path of thy *commandments misvoth*;
 for therein do I delight.
 36 *Incline Spread* my heart unto thy *testimonies witnesses*,
 and not to *covetousness greed*.
 37 *Turn away Pass* mine eyes
 from *beholding seeing* vanity;
 and *quicken enliven* thou me in thy way.
 38 *Stablish Raise up* thy *word sayings* unto thy servant,
 who is *devoted to thy fear aweth thee*.
 39 *Turn away Pass* my reproach which I fear:
 for thy judgments are good.
 40 Behold, I have *longed desired* after thy precepts:
quicken enliven me in thy *righteousness justness*.
 VAU.
 41 Let thy mercies come also unto me,
 O LORD **Yah Veh**,
 even thy salvation, according to thy *word sayings*.
 42 So shall I have *wherewith a word*
 to answer him that reproacheth me:
 for I *trust confide* in thy word.
 43 And *take strip* not the word of truth
utterly mightily out of my mouth;
 for I have *hoped in awaited* thy judgments.
 44 So shall I *keep guard* thy *law torah* continually
 for ever **eternally** and ever **eternally**.

PSALMS 119

exeGesés companion BIBLE

GIMEL.
 17 Deal with your servant
 — I live and guard your word;
 18 expose my eyes
 to behold the marvels of your torah:
 19 I am a sojourner in the earth;
 hide not your misvoth from me:
 my soul crushes for the desire
 unto your judgments at all times.
 20
 21 You rebuke the cursed arrogant
 who err inadvertently from your misvoth;
 22 roll reproach and disrespect away from me
 for I guard your witnesses:
 23 governors settle and word against me
 but your servant meditates in your statutes;
 24 your witnesses
 are my delight and my councilmen.
 DALETH.
 25 My soul adheres to the dust;
 enliven me according to your word.
 26
 27 I scribe my ways and you answer me;
 teach me your statutes:
 28 have me discern the way of your precepts;
 I meditate of your marvels:
 29 my soul drips of grief;
 raise me according to your word:
 30 turn aside the way of falsehoods from me;
 and with your torah grant me charism:
 I choose the way of trustworthiness;
 31 I placed your judgments:
 I adhere to your witnesses;
 O Yah Veh, shame me not:
 32 I run the way of your misvoth;
 you enlarge my heart.
 HE.
 33 Teach me, O Yah Veh, the way of your statutes;
 and I guard it to the end:
 34 have me discern, and I guard your torah;
 yes, I guard it with my whole heart:
 35 aim me in the path of your misvoth;
 for therein I delight:
 36 spread my heart to your witnesses
 and not to greed:
 37 pass my eyes from seeing vanity;
 and enliven me in your way:
 38 raise up your sayings to your servant
 who awes you:
 39 pass away my reproach which I fear;
 for your judgments are good.
 40 Behold, I desire after your precepts;
 enliven me in your justness.
 VAU.
 41 Your mercies come to me, O Yah Veh,
 your salvation, according to your sayings:
 and I word to answer him who reproaches me;
 for I confide in your word:
 42 and strip not the word of truth
 mightily from my mouth;
 for I await your judgments:
 43 I guard your torah continually
 — eternally and eternally:

PSALMS 119

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

45 And I will **shall** walk at *liberty* **large**:
for I seek thy precepts.

46 I will speak **shall word** of thy *testimonies* **witnesses**
also *before kings* **in front of sovereigns**,
and will **shall** not be *ashamed* **shame**.

47 And I will **shall** delight myself
in thy *commandments* **misvoth**,
which I have loved.

48 My hands **palms** also
will **shall** I lift up unto thy *commandments* **misvoth**,
which I have loved;
and I will **shall** meditate in thy statutes.

ZAIN.

49 Remember the word unto thy servant,
upon which thou hast caused me to *hope* **await**.

50 This is my *comfort* **sighing** in my *affliction* **humiliation**:
for thy word hath quickened **sayings have enlivened** me.

51 The *proud* **arrogant**
have had me greatly in *derision* **mightily scorned me**:
yet have I not *declined* **stretched** from thy *law* **torah**.

52 I remembered thy judgments of *old* **eternity**,
O LORD **Yah Veh**;
and have *comforted* **sighed over** myself.

53 *Horror* **Raging** hath taken hold upon me
because of the wicked that forsake thy *law* **torah**.

54 Thy statutes have been my *songs* **psalms**
in the house of my *pilgrimage* **sojournings**.

55 I have remembered thy name, O LORD **Yah Veh**,
in the night,
and have *kept* **guarded** thy *law* **torah**.

56 This I had, because I *kept* **guarded** thy precepts.

CHETH.

57 Thou art my *portion*, O LORD **Yah Veh is my allotment**:
I have said that I would *keep* **should guard** thy words.

58 I *intreated* **stroked** thy *favour* **face** with my whole heart:
be merciful unto **grant me charism**
according to thy word **sayings**.

59 I *thought on* **fabricated** my ways,
and turned my feet unto thy *testimonies* **witnesses**.

60 I *made haste* **hastened**, and *delayed* **lingered** not
to *keep* **guard** thy *commandments* **misvoth**.

61 The *bands* **cords** of the wicked
have *robbed* **surrounded** me:
but I have not forgotten thy *law* **torah**.

62 At midnight I will **shall** rise
to *give thanks* **spread hands** unto thee
because of thy *righteous* judgments **of justness**.

63 I am a companion of all them that *fear* **awe** thee,
and of them that *keep* **guard** thy precepts.

64 The earth, O LORD **Yah Veh**, is full of thy mercy:
teach me thy statutes.

TETH.

65 Thou hast *dealt well* **worked good** with thy servant,
O LORD **Yah Veh**, according unto thy word.

66 Teach me good *judgment* **taste** and knowledge:
for I have *believed* **trusted** thy *commandments* **misvoth**.

67 Before I was *afflicted* **humbled**
I *went astray* **erred inadvertently**:
but now have I *kept* **guarded** thy word **sayings**.

68 Thou art good, and doest good;
teach me thy statutes.

69 The *proud* **arrogant**
have *forged a lie* **patched falsehood** against me:
but I will *keep* **shall guard** thy precepts
with my whole heart.

70 Their heart is as *fat as grease* **fattened**;
but I delight in thy *law* **torah**.

71 It is good for me that I have been *afflicted* **humbled**;
that I might learn thy statutes.

72 The *law* **torah** of thy mouth
is better unto me than thousands of gold and silver.

PSALMS 119

exeGeses companion BIBLE

45 And I walk at large
for I seek your precepts:

46 I word of your witnesses in front of sovereigns
and shame not:

47 I delight myself in your misvoth which I love;
48 I lift my palms to your misvoth which I love;
and I meditate in your statutes.

ZAIN.

49 Remember the word to your servant,
on which you have me await:
50 this is my sighing in my humiliation;
for your sayings enliven me.

51 The arrogant scorn me mightily;
yet I spread not from your torah:

52 I remember your judgments of eternity,
O Yah Veh;
and sigh over myself:
53 raging seizes me
because of the wicked who forsake your torah.

54 Your statutes became my psalms
in the house of my sojournings:

55 I remembered your name, O Yah Veh,
in the night;
and guarded your torah:
56 this became me
because I guarded your precepts.

CHETH.

57 Yah Veh is my allotment;
I say to guard your words:
58 I stroke your face with my whole heart;
grant me charism according to your sayings:
59 I fabricate my ways
and turned my feet to your witnesses:
60 I hasten, and linger not to guard your misvoth.

61 The cords of the wicked surround me;
I forget not your torah:
62 at midnight I rise to spread hands to you
because of your judgments of justness:
63 I am a companion to all who awe you
and to them who guard your precepts.

64 The earth, O Yah Veh, is full of your mercy;
teach me your statutes.

TETH.

65 You work good with your servant,
O Yah Veh, according to your word:
66 teach me good taste and knowledge;
for I trust your misvoth.

67 Ere I humbled, I erred inadvertently;
and now I guard your sayings:
68 you are good and do good;
teach me your statutes:
69 the arrogant patch falsehood against me;
I guard your precepts with my whole heart:
their heart fattens;
70 I — I delight in your torah:
it is good for me to be humbled
71 — to learn your statutes:
72 the torah of your mouth is better to me
than thousands of gold and silver.

PSALMS 119

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

JOD.
 73 Thy hands
 have *made* **worked** me and *fashioned* **established** me:
give me understanding **have me discern**,
 that I may learn thy *commandments* **misvoth**.
 74 They that *fear* **awe** thee
will be glad **shall cheer** when they see me;
 because I have *hoped in* **awaited** thy word.
 75 I know, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
 that thy judgments are *right* **justness**,
 and that thou in *faithfulness* **trustworthiness**
 hast *afflicted* **humbled** me.
 76 Let, I pray thee,
 thy *merciful kindness* **mercy** be for my *comfort* **sighing**,
 according to thy *word* **sayings** unto thy servant.
 77 Let thy tender mercies come unto me, that I may live:
 for thy *law* **torah** is my delight.
 78 Let the *proud* be *ashamed* **arrogant shame**;
 for they
dealt perversely with me without a cause
twisted me falsely;
 but I *will* **shall** meditate in thy precepts.
 79 Let those that *fear* **awe** thee turn unto me,
 and those that have known thy *testimonies* **witnesses**.
 80 Let my heart be *sound* **integrity** in thy statutes;
 that I be **shame** not *ashamed*.

CAPH.
 81 My soul *fainteth* **is finished off** for thy salvation:
 but I *hope in* **await** thy word.
 82 Mine eyes *fail* **are finished off** for thy *word* **sayings**,
 saying, When *wilt* **shalt** thou *comfort* **sigh over** me?
 83 For I am become like a *bottle* **skin** in the smoke;
 yet do I not forget thy statutes.
 84 How many are the days of thy servant?
 when *wilt* **shalt** thou *execute* **work** judgment
 on them that *persecute* **pursue** me?
 85 The *proud* **arrogant** have digged pits for me,
 which are not after thy *law* **torah**.
 86 All thy *commandments* **misvoth**
 are *faithful* **trustworthy**;
 they *persecute* **pursue** me *wrongfully* **falsely**;
 help thou me.
 87 They had almost *consumed* **finished** me **off**
 upon earth;
 but I forsook not thy precepts.
 88 *Quicken* **enliven** me after thy *lovingkindness* **mercy**;
 so shall I *keep* **guard** the *testimony* **witness** of thy mouth.

LAMED.
 89 *For ever* **Eternally**, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
 thy word is *settled* **stationed** in *heaven* **the heavens**.
 90 Thy *faithfulness* **trustworthiness**
is unto all generations **generation to generation**:
 thou hast established the earth, and it *abideth* **standeth**.
 91 They *continue* **stand** this day
 according to *thine ordinances* **thy judgments**:
 for all are thy servants.
 92 Unless thy *law* **torah** had been my delights,
 I should then have *perished* **destroyed**
 in *mine affliction* **my humiliation**.
 93 I *will never* **shall eternally not** forget thy precepts:
 for with them thou hast *quickened* **enlivened** me.
 94 I am thine, save me: for I have sought thy precepts.
 95 The wicked have *waited for* **awaited** me to destroy me:
 but I *will consider* **shall discern** thy *testimonies* **witnesses**.
 96 I have seen an end of all *perfection* **conclusion**:
 but thy *commandment* **misvah** is *exceeding* **mighty** broad.

MEM.
 97 O how love I thy *law* **torah**!
 it is my meditation all the day.
 98 *Thou through thy commandments* **Thy misvoth**
hast made me wiser **have enwisened me**
than **above** mine enemies:
 for they are *ever* **eternally** with me.
 99 I *have* **comprehend** more *understanding*
 than all my teachers:
 for thy *testimonies* **witnesses** are my meditation.

PSALMS 119

exeGesés companion BIBLE

JOD.
 73 Your hands worked me and established me:
 have me to discern; to learn your misvoth.
 74 They who awe you cheer when they see me;
 because I await your word:
 75 I know, O Yah Veh,
 your judgments are justness
 and in trustworthiness you humble me.
 76 I pray you,
 that your mercy be for my sighing,
 according to your sayings to your servant.
 77 Your tender mercies come to me; I live:
 your torah is my delight.
 78 Shame the arrogant
 — for they twist me falsely Shame
 I meditate in your precepts.
 79 May they who awe you turn to me;
 with them who know your witnesses.
 80 May my heart be integrity in your statutes;
 that I not shame.

CAPH.
 81 My soul finishes off for your salvation;
 for I await your word:
 82 my eyes finish off for your sayings,
 saying, When sigh you over me?
 83 For I become as a skin in smoke;
 yet I forget not your statutes.
 84 How many are the days of your servant?
 When work you judgment on my pursuers?
 85 The arrogant dig pits for me
 which are not according your torah.
 86 All your misvoth are trustworthy;
 they pursue me falsely; help me!
 87 They almost finish me off on earth;
 and I — I forsake not your precepts.
 88 Enliven me after your mercy;
 and I guard the witness of your mouth.

LAMED.
 89 Eternally, O Yah Veh,
 your word is stationed in the heavens;
 90 your trustworthiness generation to generation:
 you established the earth and it stands.
 91 They stand this day according to your judgments;
 for all are your servants.
 92 Unless your torah were my delights
 I had destructed in my humiliation:
 93 I forget not your precepts eternally;
 for with them you enliven me.
 94 I am yours; save me:
 for I seek your precepts:
 95 the wicked await me to destroy me;
 I discern your witnesses:
 96 I see the end of all conclusion;
 your misvah is mighty broad.

MEM.
 97 O how I love your torah
 — my meditation all the day:
 98 your misvoth enwisen me above my enemies;
 for they are eternally with me:
 99 I comprehend more than all my teachers;
 for your witnesses are my meditation:

PSALMS 119

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

100 I *understand* **discern** more than the *ancients* **elders**,
because I *keep* **guard** thy precepts.

101 I have *refrained* **restrained** my feet
from every evil way,
that I might *keep* **guard** thy word.

102 I have not *departed* **turned aside**
from thy judgments:
for thou hast taught me.

103 How sweet **smooth** are thy *words* **sayings**
unto my *taste* **palate!**
yea, *sweeter* — than honey to my mouth!

104 Through thy precepts I *get understanding* **discern**:
therefore I hate every false way.

NUN.

105 Thy word is a lamp unto my feet,
and a light unto my path.

106 I have *sworn* **oathed**,
and I *will perform* **shall raise** it,
that I *will keep* **shall guard**
thy *righteous* judgments of **justness**.

107 I am *afflicted very much* **humbled mightily**:
quicken **enliven** me, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
according unto thy word.

108 Accept **Be pleased**, I beseech thee,
the *freewill offerings* **voluntaries** of my mouth,
O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, and teach me thy judgments.

109 My soul is continually in my *hand* **palm**:
yet do I not forget thy *law* **torah**.

110 The wicked have *laid* **given** a snare for me:
yet I *erred* **strayed** not from thy precepts.

111 Thy *testimonies* **witnesses**
have I *taken as an heritage for ever* **inherited eternally**:
for they are the rejoicing of my heart.

112 I have *inclined* **spread** mine heart
to *perform* **work** thy statutes *always* **eternally**,
even unto the end.

SAMECH.

113 I hate *vain thought* **skeptics**:
but thy *law* **do torah** I love.

114 Thou art my *hiding place* **covert**
and my *shield* **buckler**:
I *hope in* **await** thy word.

115 Depart **Turn away** from me, ye *evildoers* **vilifiers**:
for I *will keep* **shall guard**
the *commandments* **misvoth** of my *God* **Elohim**.

116 Uphold me according unto thy *word* **sayings**,
that I may live:
and let me not *be ashamed* **shame**
of my *hope* **expectation**.

117 Hold thou me up, and I shall be *safe* **saved**:
and I *will have respect* **shall look**
unto thy statutes continually.

118 Thou hast *trodde* **down trampled** all them
that err **inadvertently** from thy statutes:
for their deceit is falsehood.

119 Thou *puttest away* **shabbathizest**
all the wicked of the earth like dross:
therefore I love thy *testimonies* **witnesses**.

120 My flesh *trembleth* **standeth on end**
for *fear* **dread** of thee;
and I *am afraid of* **awe** thy judgments.

AIN.

121 I have *done* **worked** judgment and *justice* **justness**:
leave me not to mine oppressors.

122 Be *surety* **Pledge** for thy servant for good:
let not the *proud* **arrogant** oppress me.

123 Mine eyes *fail* **are finished off** for thy salvation,
and for the *word* **sayings** of thy *righteousness* **justness**.

124 Deal **Work** with thy servant
according unto thy mercy,
and teach me thy statutes.

125 I am thy servant;
give **have** me *understanding* **discern**,
that I may know thy *testimonies* **witnesses**.

126 It is time *for thee*, *LORD* **O Yah Veh**, to work:
for they have *made void* **broken** thy *law* **torah**.

PSALMS 119

exeGesés companion BIBLE

100 I discern more than the elders;
because I guard your precepts:

101 I restrain my feet from every evil way
to guard your word:

102 I turn not aside from your judgments;
for you taught me.

103 How smooth your sayings to my palate!
— than honey to my mouth!

104 Through your precepts I discern;
so I hate every false way.

NUN.

105 Your word is a lamp to my feet
— a light to my path:
I oath and I raise
to guard your judgments of justness:

106 I am humbled mightily;
enliven me, O Yah Veh,
according to your word.

107

108 Be pleased, I beseech you,
by the voluntaries of my mouth,
O Yah Veh, and teach me your judgments.

109 My soul is continually in my palm;
yet I forget not your torah:
the wicked give a snare for me;
yet I stray not from your precepts:

110 I inherited your witnesses eternally
— the rejoicing of my heart:

111 I spread my heart to work your statutes
— eternally — to the end.

SAMECH.

112 I hate skeptics; and your torah I love.

113 You are my covert and my buckler;
I await your word.

114 Turn away from me, you vilifiers;
for I guard the misvoth of my Elohim.

115

116 Uphold me according to your sayings,
that I live;
that I not shame because of my expectation:
uphold me and I am saved;
and I look to your statutes continually.

117

118 You trample them all
who err inadvertently from your statutes;
for their deceit is falsehood:

119 you shabbathize all the wicked of the earth
as dross:
so I love your witnesses.

120 My flesh stands on end for dread of you;
and I awe your judgments.

AIN.

121 I worked judgment and justness;
leave me not to my oppressors:

122 pledge for your servant for good;
that the arrogant not oppress me:
my eyes finish off for your salvation
and for the sayings of your justness.

123 Work with your servant
according to your mercy;
and teach me your statutes.

124

125 I am your servant;
have me discern to know your witnesses.

126 It is time, O Yah Veh, to work;
for they break your torah.

PSALMS 119

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

127 Therefore
I love thy *commandments* **misvoth** above gold;
yea, above *fine* **pure** gold.

128 Therefore I esteem **straighten** all thy precepts
concerning all things to be **all** right;
and I hate every false way.

PE.

129 Thy *testimonies* **witnesses** are wonderful **marvels**;
therefore *doth* my soul *keep* **guardeth** them.

130 The entrance of thy words giveth light;
it giveth understanding unto the simple
so that the gullible may discern.

131 I *opened* **gaped** my mouth, and *panted* **gulped**;
for I longed for thy *commandments* **misvoth**.

132 *Look thou upon* **Face** me,
and *be merciful unto me* **grant me charism**,
as *thou usest to do* **and judgment**
unto those that love thy name.

133 *Order* **Establish** my steps in thy *word* **sayings**;
and let not any *iniquity* **mischief**
have dominion over **dominate** me.

134 Deliver me from the oppression of *man* **humanity**;
so *will I keep* **shall I guard** thy precepts.

135 *Make* **Lighten** thy face to *shine* upon thy servant;
and teach me thy statutes.

136 *Rivers* **Rivulets** of waters
run down **descend** mine eyes,
because they *keep* **guard** not thy *law* **torah**.

TZADDI.

137 *Righteous* **Just** art thou, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *upright* **straight** are thy judgments.

138 Thy *testimonies* **witnesses**
that thou hast *commanded* **misvahed**
are *righteous* **justness**
and *very faithful* **mighty trustworthy**.

139 My zeal hath *consumed* **exterminated** me,
because
mine enemies **my tribulators** have forgotten thy words.

140 Thy *word* **saying** is *very pure* **mighty refined**;
therefore thy servant loveth it.

141 I am *small* **insignificant** and despised:
yet do not I forget thy precepts.

142 Thy *righteousness* **justness**
is an *everlasting* **righteousness eternal justness**,
and thy *law* **torah** is the truth.

143 *Trouble* **Tribulation** and *anguish* **distress**
have *taken hold on* **found** me:
yet thy *commandments* **misvoth** are my delights.

144 The *righteousness* **justness**
of thy *testimonies* **witnesses**
is *everlasting* **eternal**;
give me understanding **have me discern**, and I shall live.

KOPH.

145 I *cried called* with my whole heart;
hear me **answer**, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
I *will keep* **shall guard** thy statutes.

146 I *cried called* unto thee; save me,
and I shall *keep* **guard** thy *testimonies* **witnesses**.

147 I *prevented* **anticipated**
the *dawning of the morning* **evening breeze**, and cried:
I *hoped in* **awaited** thy word.

148 Mine eyes *prevent* **anticipate** the *night* watches,
that I might meditate in thy *word* **sayings**.

149 Hear my voice
according unto thy *lovingkindness* **mercy**;
O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
quicken **enliven** me according to thy judgment.

150 They draw nigh
that *follow after* **mischief pursue intrigue**;
they are far from thy *law* **torah**.

151 Thou art near, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
and all thy *commandments* **misvoth** are truth.

152 *Concerning thy testimonies* **Thy witnesses**,
I have known of *old* **antiquity**
that thou hast founded them *for ever* **eternally**.

PSALMS 119

exeGeses companion BIBLE

127 So I love your misvoth above gold
— yes, above pure gold:

128 so I straighten all your precepts
to be all right:
I hate every false way.

PE.

129 Your witnesses are marvels;
so my soul guards them:

130 the entrance of your words enlighten;
so that the gullible discern:

131 I gape my mouth and gulp;
for I yearn for your misvoth.

132 Face me;
and grant me charism and judgment
to them who love your name:

133 establish my steps in your sayings;
that no mischief dominate me:

134 deliver me from the oppression of humanity;
I guard your precepts.

135 Light your face on your servant;
and teach me your statutes.

136 Rivulets of waters descend my eyes,
because they guard not your torah.

TZADDI.

137 You are just, O Yah Veh,
and straight are your judgments:

138 your witnesses you misvahed are justness
— mighty trustworthy:
my zeal exterminates me
because my tribulators forget your words:

139 your saying is mighty refined;
your servant loves it.

141 I — insignificant and despised;
yet I forget not your precepts:
your justness — an eternal justness
and your torah — truth.

142 Tribulation and distress find me;
yet your misvoth are my delights.

143 The justness of your witnesses is eternal;
have me discern, and I live.

KOPH.

145 I call with my whole heart;
answer, O Yah Veh:
I guard your statutes.

146 I call to you;
save me,
and I guard your witnesses.

147 I anticipate the evening breeze and cry;
I await your word:
my eyes anticipate the watches
to meditate in your sayings:

148 hear my voice, according to your mercy,
O Yah Veh,
enliven me according to your judgment.

150 They who pursue intrigue draw nigh
— far from your torah:
you are near, O Yah Veh,
and all your misvoth are truth.

151 I have known your witnesses from antiquity
— that you founded them eternally.

PSALMS 119, 120

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

RESH.

153 Consider mine affliction **See my humiliation,**
and deliver **rescue** me:
for I do not forget thy **law torah.**

154 Plead **Defend** my cause **defence,** and deliver me:
quicken **enliven** me according to thy **word sayings.**

155 Salvation is far from the wicked:
for they seek not thy statutes.

156 Great are thy tender mercies, O **LORD Yah Veh:**
quicken **enliven** me according to thy judgments.

157 Many are my persecutors **pursuers**
and mine enemies **my tribulators;**
yet do I not decline **I spread not** from thy testimonies **witnesses.**

158 I beheld **saw them**
the transgressors **that deal covertly,**
and was grieved **loathed;**
because they kept **guarded** not thy **word sayings.**

159 Consider **See** how I love thy precepts:
quicken **enliven** me, O **LORD Yah Veh,**
according to thy *lovingkindness* **mercy.**

160 Thy word is true from the beginning
The sum of thy word is truth:
and every one of thy *righteous* judgments of **justness**
endureth for ever **is eternal.**

SCHIN.

161 Princes **Governors** have persecuted **pursued** me
without a cause **gratuitously:**
but my heart standeth in awe of **dreadeth** thy word.

162 I rejoice at thy **word sayings,**
as one that findeth great spoil.

163 I hate and abhor *lying* **falsehood**
but thy *law do* **torah** I love.

164 Seven times a day do I praise **I halal** thee
because of thy *righteous* judgments of **justness.**

165 Great peace **shalom**
have they which love thy *law* **torah:**
and *nothing shall offend them*
they have no stumblingblock.

166 *LORD* **O Yah Veh,**
I have *hoped for* **expected** thy salvation,
and *done* **worked** thy *commandments* **misvoth.**

167 My soul hath kept **guarded** thy *testimonies* **witnesses;**
and I love them *exceedingly* **mightily.**

168 I have kept **guarded**
thy precepts and thy *testimonies* **witnesses:**
for all my ways are *before* **in front of** thee.

TAU.

169 Let my cry **shouting**
come near *before thee* **at thy face,**
O **LORD Yah Veh:**
give **have** me *understanding* **discern**
according to thy word.

170 Let my supplication come *before thee* **at thy face:**
deliver **rescue** me according to thy **word sayings.**

171 My lips shall *utter* **praise gush halal,**
when thou hast taught me thy statutes.

172 My tongue shall *speak* **answer** of thy **word sayings:**
for all thy *commandments* **misvoth**
are *righteousness* **justness.**

173 Let thine hand help me;
for I have chosen thy precepts.

174 I have *longed* **desired** for thy salvation,
O **LORD Yah Veh;**
and thy *law* **torah** is my delight.

175 Let my soul live, and it shall *praise* **halal** thee;
and let thy judgments help me.

176 I have *gone astray* **strayed** like a lost *sheep* **lamb;**
seek thy servant;
for I do not forget **not** thy *commandments* **misvoth.**

120

1 A Song of degrees.
In my *distress* **tribulation**
I *cried* **called** unto the **LORD Yah Veh,**
and he *heard* **answered** me.

2 Deliver **Rescue** my soul, O **LORD Yah Veh,**
from *lying* **false** lips, and from a deceitful tongue.

PSALMS 119, 120

exeGesés companion BIBLE

RESH.

153 See my humiliation and rescue me;
for I forget not your torah:

154 defend my defence and deliver me;
enliven me according to your sayings

155 Salvation is far from the wicked
for they seek not your statutes:

156 Great are your tender mercies, O Yah Veh;
enliven me according to your judgments:

157 many are my pursuers and my tribulators;
yet I spread not from your witnesses:

158 I see them who deal covertly, and I loathe;
because they guard not your sayings.

159 See how I love your precepts;
enliven me, O Yah Veh, according to your mercy.

160 The sum of your word is truth;
and every one of your judgments of justness
is eternal.

SCHIN.

161 Governors pursue me gratuitously;
because of your words, my heart dreads.

162 I rejoice at your sayings,
as one who finds great spoil:

163 I hate and abhor falsehood
but love your torah:

164 seven times a day I halal you
because of your judgments of justness.

165 Great shalom have they who love your torah;
they have no stumblingblock.

O Yah Veh,
I await your salvation and work your misvoth:
my soul guards your witnesses;
and I love them mightily:

167 I guard your precepts and your witnesses;
all my ways are in front of you.

TAU.

169 My shouting comes near at your face,
O Yah Veh;

170 have me discern according to your word:
my supplication comes at your face;
rescue me according to your sayings:
my lips gush halal
for you teach me your statutes;
my tongue answers of your sayings;
for all your misvoth are justness:
your hand helps me;
for I chose your precepts.

174 I desire your salvation, O Yah Veh,
and your torah is my delight:
my soul lives and halals you;
your judgments help me:
I strayed as a lost lamb;
seek your servant; for I forget not your misvoth.

120

A Song of Degrees.

1 In my tribulation
I call to Yah Veh and he answers.

2 Rescue my soul, O Yah Veh,
from false lips — from a deceitful tongue.

PSALMS 120—123

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 What shall be given unto thee?
or what shall be *done* **added** unto thee,
thou *false* **deceitful** tongue?
4 *Sharp* **Pointened** arrows of the mighty,
with coals of juniper.
5 Woe is me, that I sojourn in *Mesech* **Meshech**,
that I dwell in the tents of *Kedar* **Qedar!**
6 My soul hath *long dwelt* **greatly tabernacled**
with him that hateth *peace* **shalom**.
7 I am for *peace* **shalom**:
but when I *speak* **word**, they are for war.

121

A Song of degrees.

1 I *will* **shall** lift up mine eyes unto the *hills* **mountains**,
from whence cometh my help.
2 My help *cometh* from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which *made* **heaven worked the heavens** and earth.
3 He *will* **shall** not *suffer* **give** thy foot to be *moved* **topple**:
he that *keepeth* **guardeth** thee *will* **shall** not slumber.
4 Behold, he that *keepeth* *Israel* **guardeth Yisra El**
shall neither slumber nor sleep.
5 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** is thy *keeper* **guard**:
the LORD **Yah Veh** is thy shade upon thy right hand.
6 The sun shall not smite thee by day,
nor the moon by night.
7 *The LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall *preserve* **guard** thee from all evil:
he shall *preserve* **guard** thy soul.
8 *The LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall *preserve* **guard** thy going out and thy coming in
from this time *forth*, and *even* for *evermore* **eternally**.

122

A Song of degrees of David.

1 I was *glad* **cheered** when they said unto me,
Let us go into the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
2 Our feet shall stand within thy *gates* **portals**,
O *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
3 *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** is builded
as a city that *is compact* **joined** together:
4 *Whither* **And there** the *tribes* **go up scions ascend**,
the *tribes* **scions** of the *LORD* **Yah**,
unto the *testimony* **witness** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
to *give thanks* **spread hands**
unto the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
5 For there are *set* **settled** thrones of judgment,
the thrones of the house of David.
6 *Pray* **Ask** for the *peace* **shalom** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
they shall *prosper* **be content** that love thee.
7 *Peace* **Shalom** be within thy *walls* **trenches**,
and *prosperity* **serenity** within thy *palaces* **citadels**.
8 For my brethren and *companions'* **friend's** sakes,
I *will* **now say** **shall beseech a word**,
Peace **Shalom** be within thee.
9 Because of the house
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
I *will* **shall** seek thy good.

123

A Song of degrees.

1 Unto thee lift I up mine eyes,
O thou that *dweldest* **settlest** in the heavens.
2 Behold, as the eyes of servants *look*
unto the hand of their *masters* **adonim**,
and as the eyes of a *maiden* **maid**
unto the hand of her *mistress* **lady**;
so our eyes
wait upon the LORD **unto Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
until that he *have mercy upon* **grant** us **charism**.
3 *Have mercy upon* **Grant** us **charism**,
O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
have mercy upon **grant** us **charism**:
for we are *exceedingly filled* **abundantly satiated**
with *contempt* **disrespect**.
4 Our soul is *exceedingly filled* **abundantly satiated**
with the *scorning* **derision** of those that *are at ease* **relax**,
and with the *contempt* **disrespect** of the *proud* **pompous**.

PSALMS 120—123

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 What gives he to you?
What adds he to you,
you deceitful tongue?
4 Pointened arrows of the mighty
with coals of juniper.
5 Woe is me; I sojourn in Meshech;
I dwell in the tents of Qedar!
6 How greatly my soul tabernacles
with him who hates shalom.
7 I am for shalom;
and when I word, they are for war.

121

A Song of Degrees.

1 I lift my eyes to the mountains.
Whence comes my help?
My help *is* from Yah Veh
who worked the heavens and earth.
3 He gives not your foot to topple;
your guards slumbers not:
4 behold, he who guards Yisra El
neither slumbers nor sleeps:
5 Yah Veh — your guard;
6 Yah Veh — your shade at your right;
neither the sun smites you by day
nor the moon by night.
7 Yah Veh guards you from all evil
— guards your soul:
8 Yah Veh guards
your going and your coming
from this time and even eternally.

122

A Song of Degrees: By David.

1 I cheer when they say to me,
To the house of Yah Veh we go.
2 Our feet stand within your portals, O Yeru Shalem.
3 Yeru Shalem *is* built; as a city joined together:
4 and there the scions ascend
— the scions of Yah to the witness of Yisra El;
5 to spread hands to the name of Yah Veh:
for there the thrones of judgment settle
— the thrones of the house of David.
6 Ask *for* the shalom of Yeru Shalem;
they who love you are content:
7 shalom be within your trenches
and serenity within your citadels:
8 for sake of my brothers and friends
I beseech a word,
9 Shalom — within you.
Because of the house of Yah Veh our Elohim
I seek your good.

123

A Song of Degrees.

1 To you I lift my eyes, O settler in the heavens!
2 Behold,
as the eyes of servants to the hand of their adonim;
as the eyes of a maid to the hand of her lady;
thus our eyes to Yah Veh our Elohim,
until he grants us charism.
3 Grant us charism, O Yah Veh, grant us charism;
4 for we abundantly satiate with disrespectsake
our soul abundantly satiates
with the derision of them who relax
— with the disrespect of the pompous.

PSALMS 124—127

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

124

A Song of degrees of David.

1 If it had not been *the LORD* for **Yah Veh**
 who was on our side,
now I beseech, may *Israel* **Yisra El** say;
 2 If it had not been *the LORD* for **Yah Veh**
 who was on our side,
 when *men* **humanity** rose up against us:
 3 Then they had swallowed us up *quick* **alive**,
 when their wrath was kindled against us:
 4 Then the waters had *overwhelmed* **overflowed** us,
 the *stream* **wadi** had *gone* **passed** over our soul:
 5 Then the *proud* **overflowing** waters
 had *gone* **passed** over our soul.
 6 Blessed be *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
 who hath not given us as a prey to their teeth.
 7 Our soul *is* escaped
 as a bird out of the snare of the *fowlers* **ensnarers**:
 the snare is broken, and we *are* escaped.
 8 Our help is in the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
 who *made* **heaven** **worked the heavens** and earth.

125

A Song of degrees.

1 They that *trust* **confide** in *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
 shall be as mount *Zion* **Siyon**,
 which *cannot be removed* **shall not totter**,
 but *abideth* for ever **settled** eternally.
 2 As the mountains
are round about **Jerusalem** **surround** **Yeru Shalem**,
 so *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
is round about **surroundeth** his people
 from *henceforth* **this time** even for ever **eternally**.
 3 For the *rod* **scion** of the *wicked* **wickedness**
 shall not rest upon the *lot* **pebble** of the *righteous* **just**;
 lest the *righteous* **just**
 4 *put forth* **spread** their hands unto *iniquity* **wickedness**.
 Do good, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
 unto *those that be* **the** good,
 and to *them that are upright* **the straight** in their hearts.
 5 As for such as *turn aside* **pervert**
 unto their *crooked ways* **crookednesses**,
the LORD **Yah Veh** shall *lead* **walk** them *forth*
 with the *workers* **doers** of *iniquity* **mischief**:
 but *peace* **shalom** shall be upon *Israel* **Yisra El**.

126

A Song of degrees.

1 When *the LORD* turned *again* **Yah Veh** returned
 the *captivity* **returning** of *Zion* **Siyon**,
 we were like them that dream.
 2 Then was our mouth filled with laughter,
 and our tongue with *singing* **shouting**:
 then said they among the *heathen* **goyim**,
The LORD **Yah Veh**
 hath *done great things* **worked greatly** for them.
 3 *The LORD* **Yah Veh**
 hath *done great things* **worked greatly** for us;
 whereof we *are glad* **cheer**.
 4 Turn *again* **Return** our captivity, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
 as the *streams* **reservoirs** in the south.
 5 They that *sow* **seed** in tears
 shall *reap* **harvest** in *joy* **shouting**.
 6 **In going**, He that goeth *forth* and weepeth,
 bearing *precious* **sowing** seed,
 shall doubtless come again with *rejoicing* **shouting**,
 bringing **bearing** his sheaves *with him*.

127

A Song of degrees for *Solomon* **Shelomoh**.

1 Except *the LORD* **Yah Veh** build the house,
 they *labour* **toil** in vain that build it:
 except *the LORD* keep **Yah Veh** guard the city,
 the *watchman* waketh but **guard** **guardeth** in vain.
 2 It is vain for you to *rise up* **start** early,
 to *sit up* **settle down** late,
 to eat the bread of *sorrows* **contorting**:
 for so **thus** he giveth his beloved sleep.
 3 Lo **Behold**, *children* **sons** are an *heritage* **inheritance**
 of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
 and the fruit of the *womb* **belly** is his *reward* **hire**.

PSALMS 124—127

exeGesés companion BIBLE

124

A Song of Degrees by David.

1 Unless Yah Veh had been for us
 I beseech, O Yisra El, say,
 2 Unless Yah Veh had been for us,
 when humanity rose against us;
 3 then they had swallowed us alive
 when they kindled their wrath against us:
 4 the waters had overflowed us;
 5 the wadi had passed over our soul;
 the overflowing waters had passed over our soul.
 6 Blessed — Yah Veh,
 who gave us not as a prey to their teeth:
 7 our soul escaped as a bird
 from the snare of the ensnarers;
 the snare broke and we escaped.
 8 Our help is in the name of Yah Veh,
 who worked the heavens and earth.

125

A Song of Degrees.

1 They who confide in Yah Veh *are* as mount Siyon;
 it totters not; it settles eternally.
 2 As the mountains surround Yeru Shalem,
 thus Yah Veh surrounds his people
 — from this time — even eternally.
 3 For the scion of wickedness
 rests not on the pebble of the just;
 lest the just spread their hands to wickedness.
 4 Do good, O Yah Veh,
 to the good and to the straight in heart:
 5 as for such as pervert to their crookednesses,
 Yah Veh walks them with the doers of mischief.
 Shalom on Yisra El.

126

A Song of Degrees.

1 When Yah Veh returned the returning of Siyon,
 we were as dreamers:
 2 our mouth filled with laughter
 and our tongue with shouting.
 3 Then they among the goyim say,
 Yah Veh worked greatly for them;
 4 Yah Veh worked greatly for us
 — whereof we cheer.
 5 Return our captivity, O Yah Veh,
 as the reservoirs in the south.
 6 They who seed in tears
 shout in harvesting:
 7 in going, he who comes weeping,
 bearing his seed, and seeding,
 doubtless comes again with shouting,
 bearing his sheaves.

127

A Song of Degrees: By Shelomoh.

1 Except Yah Veh build the house
 the builders toil in vain;
 except Yah Veh guard the city
 the guards guard in vain:
 2 how vain for you to start early,
 to settle down late,
 to eat the bread of contorting;
 thus he gives his beloved sleep.
 3 Behold, sons are an inheritance of Yah Veh;
 the fruit of the belly is his hire:

PSALMS 127 — 130

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 As arrows are in the hand of a mighty man;
so are *children* **sons** of the youth.
5 *Happy Blithe* is the *man mighty*
that hath his quiver full of them:
they shall not *be ashamed* **shame**,
but they shall *speak* **word**
with the enemies in the *gate* **portal**.

128

A Song of degrees.

1 *Blessed Blithed* is every one
that *feareth the LORD* **aweth Yah Veh**;
that walketh in his ways.
2 For thou shalt eat the labour of *thine hands* **thy palms**:
happy blithe shalt thou be,
and it shall be *well* **good** with thee.
3 Thy *wife* **woman** shall be as a *fruitful* **fruitbearing** vine
by the *sides* **flanks** of thine house:
thy *children* **sons** like olive *plants* **transplants**
round about **surrounding** thy table.
4 Behold, that thus shall the *man mighty* be blessed
that *feareth the LORD* **aweth Yah Veh**.
5 *The LORD Yah Veh* shall bless thee out of *Zion* **Siyon**:
and thou shalt see the good of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
all the days of thy life.
6 Yea, thou shalt see thy *children's children* **sons' sons**,
and *peace* **shalom** upon *Israel* **Yisra El**.

129

A Song of degrees.

1 *Many a time* **Greatly** have they *afflicted* **tribulated** me
from my youth,
may *Israel* now **Yisra El, I beseech**, say:
2 *Many a time* **Greatly** have they *afflicted* **tribulated** me
from my youth:
yet they have not prevailed against me.
3 The plowers plowed upon my back:
they *made long* **lengthened** their furrows.
4 *The LORD Yah Veh* is *righteous* **just**:
he hath *cut asunder* **chopped**
the *cords* **ropes** of the wicked.
5 Let them *all be confounded* **shame**
and *turned back* **apostatize**
that hate *Zion* **Siyon**.
6 Let them be as the grass upon the *house tops* **roofs**,
which withereth *afore it groweth up* **ere it is drawn**:
7 Wherewith the mower filleth not his *hand* **palm**;
nor he that bindeth *sheaves* his bosom.
8 Neither do they which *go* **pass** by say,
The blessing of *the LORD Yah Veh* be upon you:
we bless you in the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

130

A Song of degrees.

1 Out of the depths
have I *cried* **called** unto thee, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
2 *Lord Adonay*, hear my voice:
let thine ears *be attentive* **hearken**
to the voice of my supplications.
3 If thou, *LORD* **O Yah**,
shouldest *mark iniquities* **regard perversities**,
O *Lord Adonay*, who shall stand?
4 But there is forgiveness with thee,
that thou mayest be *feared* **awed**.
5 I *wait for the LORD* **await Yah Veh**,
my soul *doth wait* **awaiteth**,
and in his word *do I hope* **I await**.
6 My soul *waiteth for the Lord* **be for Adonay**
more than they that *watch* **guard** for the morning:
7 *I say, more than* — they that *watch* **guard** for the morning.
Let *Israel hope in the LORD* **Yisra El await Yah Veh**:
for with *the LORD Yah Veh* there is mercy,
and with him *is plenteous* **aboundeth** redemption.
8 And he shall redeem *Israel* **Yisra El**
from all his *iniquities* **perversities**.

PSALMS 127 — 130

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 as arrows in the hand of a mighty man
thus are sons of the youth.

5 Blithe — the mighty
who fills his quiver with them;
they shame not,
for they word with the enemies in the portal.

128

A Song of Degrees.

1 Blithed — every one who awes Yah Veh;
who walks in his ways:
2 for you eat the labor of your palms;
blithed — and good with you
3 — your woman as a fruitbearing vine
by the flanks of your house:
your sons as olive transplants
surrounding your table.
4 Behold, thus are the mighty;
blessed — who awe Yah Veh.
5 Yah Veh blesses you from Siyon;
and you see the good of Yeru Shalem
all the days of your life.
6 Yes, you see the sons of your sons.
Shalom on Yisra El!

129

A Song of Degrees.

1 Greatly they tribulated me from my youth;
O Yisra El, I beseech, say;
2 Greatly they tribulated me from my youth;
yet they prevailed not against me:
3 the plowers plow on my back;
they lengthen their furrows.
4 Yah Veh is just:
he chops the ropes of the wicked.
5 Shame and apostatize, you who hate Siyon;
6 as the grass on the roofs,
withering ere they are drawn:
7 which fill neither the palm of the mower
nor the bosom of the binder:
8 neither say they who pass by,
The blessing of Yah Veh is upon you;
we bless you in the name of Yah Veh.

130

A Song of Degrees.

1 From the depths I call you, O Yah Veh:
2 Adonay, hear my voice;
hearken your ears to the voice of my supplications.
3 If, O Yah, you regard perversities,
O Adonay, who stands?
4 But with you is forgiveness,
that you be awed.
5 I await Yah Veh; my soul awaits:
in his word I await.
6 My soul is for Adonay
more than they who guard for morning
— who guard for morning.
7 Yisra El, await Yah Veh;
for with Yah Veh there is mercy
and with him redemption abounds;
8 and he redeems Yisra El from all his perversities.

PSALMS 131 — 133

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

131

A Song of degrees of David.

1 *LORD O Yah Veh,*
my heart is not *haughty* **lifted**, nor mine eyes *lofty* **lofted**:
neither do I *exercise myself* **walk I**
in *great matters* **greatness**,
or in *things too high for me* **marvels**.
2 Surely I have *behaved* **placed myself**
and *quieted myself* **hushed my soul**,
as a child that is weaned of his mother:
my soul is even as a weaned *child*.
3 Let *Israel hope in the LORD* **Yisra El await Yah Veh**
from *henceforth* **this time** and *for ever* **eternally**.

132

A Song of degrees.

1 *LORD O Yah Veh,*
remember David, and all his *afflictions* **humblings**:
2 How he *sware* **oathed** unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and vowed unto *the mighty God* **Almighty of Jacob Yaaqov**;
3 Surely I *will* **shall** not come
into *the tabernacle* **tent** of my house,
nor *go up* **ascend** into *my bed* **the bedstead of my beds**;
4 I *will* **shall** not give sleep to mine eyes,
or *slumber* **drowsiness** to mine eyelids,
5 Until I find out a place for *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
an *habitation* **tabernacles**
for *the mighty God* **Almighty of Jacob Yaaqov**.
6 Lo **Behold**, we heard of it at *Ephratah* **Ephrath**:
we found it in the fields of the *wood* **forest**.
7 We *will* **shall** go into his tabernacles:
we *will worship* **shall prostrate**
at *his footstool* **the stool of his feet**.
8 Arise, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, into thy rest;
thou, and the ark of thy strength.
9 Let thy priests
be clothed **enrobe** with *righteousness* **justness**;
and let thy *saints* **merciéd** shout *for joy*.
10 For thy servant David's sake
turn not away the face of thine anointed.
11 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *sworn* **oathed** in truth
unto David;
he *will* **shall** not turn from it;
Of the fruit of thy *body* **belly**
will **shall** I set upon thy throne.
12 If thy *children* **will keep** **sons shall guard** my covenant
and my *testimony* **witness** that I shall teach them,
their *children* **sons** shall also *sit* **settle** upon thy throne
for evermore **eternally**.
13 For *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath chosen *Zion* **Siyon**;
he hath desired it for his *habitation* **settlement**.
14 This is my rest *for ever* **eternally**:
here *will I dwell* **shall I settle**; for I have desired it.
15 **In blessing,**
I *will abundantly* **shall** bless her *provision* **hunt**:
I *will* **shall** satisfy her *poor* **needy** with bread.
16 I *will* **shall** also
clothe **enrobe** her priests with salvation:
and *in shouting*, her *saints* **merciéd** shall shout
aloud for joy.
17 There *will I make* **shall I sprout** the horn of David
to bud:
I have *ordained* **arranged** a lamp for mine anointed.
18 His enemies *will I clothe* **shall I enrobe** with shame:
but upon himself shall his *crown* **separatism** flourish.

133

A Song of degrees of David.

1 Behold, how good and how pleasant *it is*
for brethren to *dwell* **settle** together in unity!
2 It is like the *precious good* ointment upon the head,
that ran down **descending** upon the beard,
even Aaron's **Aharon's** beard:
that *went down* **descended**
to the skirts of his *garments* **tailoring**;
3 As the dew of Hermon,
and as the dew
that descended upon the mountains of *Zion* **Siyon**:
for there *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
commanded **misvahed** the blessing,
even life for evermore **life eternal**.

PSALMS 131 — 133

exeGeses companion BIBLE

131

A Song of Degrees: By David.

1 O Yah Veh,
neither my heart lifts, nor my eyes loft;
nor walk I in greatness or in marvels:
2 surely I place myself and hush my soul,
as a child weaned from his mother;
— my soul as weaned.
3 Yisra El, await Yah Veh
from this time and eternally.

132

A Song of Degrees.

1 O Yah Veh,
remember David and all his humblings;
2 who oathed to Yah Veh
and vowed to the Almighty of Yaaqov.
3 I neither come into the tent of my house;
nor ascend into the bedstead of my beds;
4 nor give sleep to my eyes
or drowsiness to my eyelids
5 until I find a place for Yah Veh
— tabernacles for the Almighty of Yaaqov.
6 Behold, we heard thereof at Ephrath;
we found thereof in the fields of the forest:
7 we enter his tabernacles;
we prostrate at the stool of his feet.
8 Rise, O Yah Veh, into your rest
— you and the ark of your strength.
9 Your priests enrobe with justness;
and your merciéd shout.
10 For sake of your servant David
turn not away the face of your anointed.
11 Yah Veh oathed truth to David;
he turns not from it:
I set the fruit of your belly on your throne.
12 If your sons guard my covenant
and the witness I teach them,
their sons also settle on your throne eternally.
13 For Yah Veh chose Siyon;
he desires it for his settlement:
14 this is my rest eternally;
here I settle; for I desire it.
15 In blessing, I bless her hunt;
I satisfy her needy with bread;
16 and I enrobe her priests with salvation;
and in shouting, her merciéd shout:
17 there I sprout the horn of David;
I arrange a lamp for my anointed;
18 I enrobe his enemies with shame;
and on him, his separatism flourishes.

133

A Song of Degrees: By David.

1 Behold, how good and how pleasant
for brothers to settle together in unity
— as the good ointment on the head
2 descending on the beard — the beard of Aharon;
descending to the skirts of his tailoring;
3 as the dew of Hermon
descending on the mountains of Siyon Aharon's
for there Yah Veh misvahed the blessing,
life eternal.

PSALMS 134—136

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

134

A Song of degrees.

1 Behold, bless ye *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
all ye servants of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which by night stand in the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
2 Lift up your hands in the *sanctuary* **holies**,
and bless *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
3 *The LORD* **Yah Veh**
that *made* **heaven** **worked the heavens** and earth
bless thee out of *Zion* **Siyon**.

135

Praise ye the LORD **Halalu Yah**.

Praise **Halal** ye the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
praise him **halal**, O ye servants of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
2 Ye that stand in the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
in the courts of the house of our *God* **Elohim**.
3 *Praise the LORD* **Halalu Yah**;
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** is good:
sing praises **psalm** unto his name; for it is pleasant.
4 For *the LORD* **Yah**
hath chosen *Jacob* **Yaaqov** unto himself,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** for his peculiar treasure.
5 For I know that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** is great,
and that our *Lord* **Adonay** is above all *gods* **elohim**.
6 Whatsoever *the LORD* **pleased** **Yah Veh desired**,
that *did* **worked** he in *heaven* **the heavens**,
and in earth, in the seas, and all *deep* **places** **abysses**.
7 He causeth the vapours
to ascend from the ends of the earth;
he *maketh* **worketh** lightnings for the rain;
he bringeth the wind out of his treasures.
8 Who smote the *firstborn* **firstbirthed** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
both of *man and beast* **human unto animal**.
9 Who sent *tokens* **signs** and *wonders* **omens**
into the midst of thee, O *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
upon *Pharaoh* **Paroh**, and upon all his servants.
10 Who smote great *nations* **goyim**,
and *slew* **slaughtered** mighty *kings* **sovereigns**;
11 *Sihon* **king** **Sichon** **sovereign** of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**,
and *Og* **king** **sovereign** of Bashan,
and all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of *Canaan* **Kenaan**:
12 And gave their land for an *heritage* **inheritance**,
an *heritage* **inheritance** unto *Israel* **Yisra El** his people.
13 Thy name, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
endureth for ever **is eternal**;
and thy memorial, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
throughout all generations **generation to generation**.
14 For *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
will judge **shall plead the cause of** his people,
and he *will repent himself* **shall sigh**
concerning his servants.
15 The idols of the *heathen* **goyim** are silver and gold,
the work of *men's* **human** hands.
16 They have mouths, but they *speak* **word** not;
eyes have they, but they see not;
17 They have ears, but they *hear* **hearken** not;
neither is there *any* **breath** **spirit/wind** in their mouths.
18 They that *make* **work** them are like unto them:
so is every one that *trusteth* **confideth** in them.
19 Bless *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, O house of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
bless *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, O house of *Aaron* **Aharon**:
20 Bless *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, O house of *Levi*:
ye that *fear the LORD* **awe** **Yah Veh**,
bless *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
21 Blessed be *the LORD* **Yah Veh** out of *Zion* **Siyon**,
which *dwelleth* **tabernacleth** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
Praise ye the LORD **Halalu Yah**.

136

O *give thanks* **spread hands** unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
for he is good:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
2 O *give thanks* **spread hands**
unto the *God* **Elohim** of *gods* **elohim**:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
3 O *give thanks* **spread hands**
to the *Lord* **Adonay** of *lords* **adonim**:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.

PSALMS 134—136

exeGesés companion BIBLE

134

A Song of Degrees.

1 Behold, bless Yah Veh
all you servants of Yah Veh
— who stand by night in the house of Yah Veh:
2 lift your hands in the holies and bless Yah Veh:
3 Yah Veh who worked the heavens and earth
blesses you from Siyon.

135

Halalu Yah!

Halal the name of Yah Veh;
halal, O you servants of Yah Veh;
you who stand in the house of Yah Veh
— in the courts of the house of our Elohim.

3

Halalu Yah!

Yah Veh is good.
Psalm to his name; for it is pleasant:
for Yah chose Yaaqov for himself;
Yisra El for his peculiar treasure.

5 For I know that Yah Veh is great
and that our Adonay is above all elohim.

6 Yah Veh works whatever he desires
in the heavens and in earth
in the seas and all abysses:

7 he ascends the vapours
from the ends of the earth;
works lightnings for the rain;

8 brings the wind from his treasures:
who smote the firstbirthed of Misrayim
— both of human to animal:

9 who sent signs and omens
into your midst, O Misrayim
— on Paroh and on all his servants:

10 who smote great goyim
and slaughtered mighty sovereigns
— Sichon sovereign of the Emoriy
and Og sovereign of Bashan

11 and all the sovereigndoms of Kenaan;
and gave their land for an inheritance
— an inheritance to Yisra El his people.

13 O Yah Veh,
your name, eternal;

14 O Yah Veh,
your memorial, generation to generation:
for Yah Veh pleads the cause of his people
and he sighs concerning his servants.

15 The idols of the goyim are silver and gold
— the work of human hands:
16 mouths, and they word not;
eyes, and they see not;

17 ears, and they hearken not;
nose, and their is no spirit/wind in their mouth.

18 They who work them are likened to them;
thus every one who confides in them.

19 O house of Yisra El, bless Yah Veh;
O house of Aharon, bless Yah Veh;

20 O house of Levi, bless Yah Veh;
you who awe Yah Veh, bless Yah Veh.

21 Blessed — Yah Veh from Siyon
who tabernacles at Yeru Shalem.
Halalu Yah!

136

O Spread hands to Yah Veh;
for good;

2 for his mercy eternal:
O spread hands to the Elohim of elohim;
for his mercy eternal:

3 O spread hands to Adonay of adonim;
for his mercy eternal:

PSALMS 136, 137

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 To him who alone
doeth **worketh** great wonders **marvels**:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
5 To him that by *wisdom* **discernment**
made **worked** the heavens:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
6 To him
that *stretched out* **expandeth** the earth above the waters:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
7 To him that made **worked** great lights:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**:
8 The sun to *rule* **reign** by day:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**:
9 The moon and stars to *rule* **reign** by night:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
10 To him that smote *Egypt* **Misrayim**
in their *firstborn* **firstbirthed**:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**:
11 And brought out *Israel* **Yisra El** from among them:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**:
12 With a strong hand, and with a *stretched out* **spread** arm:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
13 To him
which *divided* **cut** the *Red* **Reed** sea into *parts* **pieces**:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**:
14 And made *Israel* **Yisra El**
to pass through the midst of it:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**:
15 But *overthrew* *Pharaoh* **shook off Paroh**
and his *host* **valiant** in the *Red* **Reed** sea:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
16 To him
which *led* **walked** his people through the wilderness:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
17 To him which smote great *kings* **sovereigns**:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**:
18 And *slew famous kings* **slaughtered mighty sovereigns**:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**:
19 *Sihon king* **Sichon sovereign** of the *Amorites* **Emoriy**:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**:
20 And Og the *king* **sovereign** of Bashan:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**:
21 And gave their land for an *heritage* **inheritance**:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**:
22 Even an *heritage* **inheritance**
unto *Israel* **Yisra El** his servant:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
23 Who remembered us in our *low estate* **lowliness**:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**:
24 And hath *redeemed* **separated** us
from our *enemies* **tribulators**:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
25 Who giveth *food* **bread** to all flesh:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.
26 O *give thanks* **spread hands**
unto *the God* **El** of *heaven* **the heavens**:
for his mercy *endureth for ever* **is eternal**.

137

By the rivers of *Babylon* **Babel**,
there we *sat down* **settled**,
yea, we wept, when we remembered *Zion* **Siyon**.
2 We hanged our harps upon the willows
in the midst *thereof*.
3 For there they that *carried* **captured** us away *captive*
required **asked** of us **the words** of a song;
and they that *wasted* **caused us to howl**,
required of us **mirth cheerfulness**, *saying*,
Sing us *one* of the songs of *Zion* **Siyon**.
4 How shall we sing *the LORD's* **Yah Veh's** song
in a strange *land* **soil**?
5 If I forget thee, O *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
let my right hand forget *her cunning*.
6 If I do not remember thee,
let my tongue
cleave to the roof of my mouth **adhere to my palate**;
if I prefer **ascend** not *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
above my *chief joy* **head cheer**.

PSALMS 136, 137

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 to him who alone works great marvels;
for his mercy eternal:
5 to him who by discernment worked the heavens;
for his mercy eternal:
6 to him who expanded the earth above the waters;
for his mercy eternal:
7 to him who worked great lights;
for his mercy eternal:
8 the sun to reign by day;
for his mercy eternal:
9 the moon and stars to reign by night;
for his mercy eternal:
10 to him who smote Misrayim — their firstbirthed;
for his mercy eternal:
11 and brought Yisra El from among them;
for his mercy eternal:
12 with a strong hand and spread arm;
for his mercy eternal:
13 to him who cut the Reed sea into pieces;
for his mercy eternal:
14 and passed Yisra El through the midst;
for his mercy eternal:
15 and shook Paroh and his valiant in the Reed sea;
for his mercy eternal:
16 to him who walked his people in the wilderness;
for his mercy eternal:
17 to him who smote great sovereigns;
for his mercy eternal:
18 and slaughtered mighty sovereigns;
for his mercy eternal:
19 Sichon sovereign of the Emoriy;
for his mercy eternal:
20 and Og the sovereign of Bashan;
for his mercy eternal:
21 and gave their land for an inheritance;
for his mercy eternal:
22 even an inheritance to Yisra El his servant;
for his mercy eternal:
23 who remembered us in our lowliness;
for his mercy eternal:
24 and has separated us from our tribulators;
for his mercy eternal:
25 who gives bread to all flesh;
for his mercy eternal:
26 O spread hands to El of the heavens;
for his mercy eternal.

137

By the rivers of Babel, there we settled;
yes, we wept, when we remembered Siyon;
we hung our harps midst the willows:
3 for there our captors asked us the words of a song
— our howlers, of cheer,
Sing us a song of Siyon!
4 How sing we a song of Yah Veh in a strange soil?
5 If I forget you, O Yeru Shalem,
my right forgets:
6 if I remember you not,
my tongue adheres to my palate
— if I ascend not Yeru Shalem,
above the head of my cheer.

PSALMS 137 — 139

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 Remember, O LORD Yah Veh,
the children sons of Edom
in the day of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem;
who said, **Rise it Strip naked, rise it strip naked,**
even to the foundation thereof.
8 O daughter of Babylon Babel,
who art to be destroyed ravaged;
happy blithed shall he be,
that rewardeth shall shalam thee
as the deeds thou hast served dealt us.
9 Happy Blithed shall he be,
that taketh and dasheth splattereth thy little ones infants
against the stones rocks.

138

A Psalm of David.

1 I will praise shall spread hands unto thee
with my whole heart:
before the gods before in front of Elohim/elohim,
will I sing praise shall I psalm unto thee.
2 I will worship shall prostrate
toward thy holy temple manse,
and praise spread hands unto thy name
for thy lovingkindness mercy and for thy truth:
for thou hast magnified greated thy word saying
above all thy name.
3 In the day when I cried called thou answeredst me,
and strengthenedst encouragedst me
with strength in my soul.
4 All the kings sovereigns of the earth
shall praise spread hands unto thee, O LORD Yah Veh,
when they hear the words sayings of thy mouth.
5 Yea, they shall sing in the ways of the LORD Yah Veh:
for great is the glory honour of the LORD Yah Veh.
6 Though the LORD Yah Veh be high,
yet hath he respect seeth unto the lowly:
but the proud lofty he knoweth afar off.
7 Though I walk in the midst of trouble tribulation,
thou wilt revive shalt enliven me:
thou shalt stretch forth spread thine hand
against the wrath of mine enemies,
and thy right hand shall save me.
8 The LORD Yah Veh
will perfect shall consummate that which concerneth me:
thy mercy, O LORD Yah Veh, endureth for ever is eternal:
forsake slacken not the works of thine own hands.

139

To the chief Musician His Eminence,
A Psalm of David.

1 O LORD Yah Veh,
thou hast searched probed me, and known me.
2 Thou knowest my downsitting settling
and mine uprising,
thou understandest discernest
my thought intention afar off.
3 Thou compassest winnowest my path
and my lying down reposing,
and art acquainted with accustomed to all my ways.
4 For there is not a word an utterance in my tongue,
but, lo behold, O LORD Yah Veh,
thou knowest it altogether.
5 Thou hast beset besieged me behind and before,
and laid thine hand placed thy palm upon me.
6 Such knowledge is too wonderful marvellous for me;
it is high lofty, I cannot attain unto I am not able for it.
7 Whither shall I go from thy spirit?
or whither shall I flee from thy presence face?
8 If I ascend up into heaven the heavens,
thou art there:
if I make my bed in hell bed down in sheol,
behold, thou art there.
9 If I take lift the wings of the morning dawn,
and dwell tabernacle
in the uttermost parts finality of the sea;
10 Even there shall thy hand lead me,
and thy right hand shall hold me.
11 If I say, Surely the darkness shall cover crush me;
even the night shall be light about to me.

PSALMS 137 — 139

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 Remember, O Yah Veh,
the sons of Edom in the day of Yeru Shalem
who say,
Strip naked — strip naked to the foundation!
8 O daughter of Babel, O ravaged;
blithed — he who shalams your deed to you
as you dealt us.
9 Blithed — he who takes and splatters your infants
against the rocks.

138

By David.

1 I spread hands to you with my whole heart;
in front of Elohim/the elohim, I psalm to you:
2 I prostrate toward your holy manse
and spread hands to your name
— for your mercy and for your truth:
for you greated your saying
above all your name.
3 In the day I called
you answered me and encouraged me
with strength in my soul.
4 All the sovereigns of the earth
spread hands to you, O Yah Veh,
when they hear the sayings of your mouth.
5 Yes, they sing in the ways of Yah Veh;
for great is the honor of Yah Veh.
6 For Yah Veh is high,
and he sees the lowly;
and he knows the lofty afar off.
7 If I walk midst tribulation, you enliven me;
you spread your hand
against the wrath of my enemies
and your right saves me.
8 Yah Veh consummates what concerns me.
Your mercy, O Yah Veh, is eternal;
slacken not the works of your own hands.

139

To His Eminence: A Psalm by David.

1 O Yah Veh, you probed me and know;
2 you know my settling and my uprising;
you discern my intention afar off;
3 you winnow my path and my reposing
and are accustomed to all my ways;
4 for there is not an utterance in my tongue.
Behold, O Yah Veh, you know altogether;
5 you besiege me behind and in front
and placed your palm on me.
6 Such knowledge is too marvellous for me;
too lofty; I am not able for it.
7 Where go I from your spirit?
Where flee I from your face?
8 If I ascend into the heavens, you are there;
9 if I bed down in sheol, behold — you;
10 if I lift the wings of the dawn
and tabernacle in the finality of the sea;
even there your hand leads me
and your right holds me:
11 if I say, Surely the darkness crushes me;
even the night is light to me.

PSALMS 139, 140

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 Yea, the darkness *hideth* **darkeneth** not from thee;
but the night *shineth* **enlighteneth** as the day:
the darkness and the light are both alike to thee
as the darkness, so the light.

13 For thou hast possessed **chattelized** my reins:
thou hast covered me in my mother's *womb* **belly.**

14 I will praise **shall spread hands unto** thee;
for I am
fearfully and wonderfully made **awesomely distinguished:**
marvellous are thy works;
and that my soul knoweth right well.

15 My *substance* **might** was not *hid* **concealed** from thee,
when I was *made in secret* **covertly worked,**
and *curiously wrought* **embroidered**
in the *lowest parts* **nethermost** of the earth.

16 Thine eyes did see my *substance* **embryo,**
yet being unperfect;
and in thy *book* **scroll**
all my members were written **were they inscribed,**
which in continuance were fashioned
in the days they were formed,
when *as yet there was none of* **among** them.

17 How *precious* **esteemed** also
are thy *thoughts* **intentions** unto me,
O **God El!**
how *great* **mighty** is the *sum* **head** of them!

18 If I should *count* **scribe** them,
they *are* **abound** more *in number* than the sand:
when I awake, I am still with thee.

19 Surely thou *wilt slay* **shalt severe** the wicked,
O **God Elohah:**
depart **turn aside** from me therefore,
ye bloody men **of blood.**

20 For they *speak* **say** against thee *wickedly* **intrigue,**
and thine enemies take thy name **be lifted** in *vain* **vanity.**

21 Do not I hate them, O **LORD Yah Veh,** that hate thee?
and *am not I grieved with those* **do I not loathe them**
that *rise up against* **resist** thee?

22 I hate them with *perfect* **conclusive** hatred:
I count them mine enemies.

23 Search **Probe** me, O **God El,** and know my heart:
try **proof** me, and know my thoughts:

24 And see
if there be *any wicked* **a contorting** way in me,
and lead me in the way **everlasting eternal.**

140

To the chief Musician **His Eminence,**
A Psalm of David.

1 Deliver **Rescue** me, O **LORD Yah Veh,**
from the evil *man* **humanity:**
preserve **guard** me from the *violent* man **of violence;**

2 Which *imagine mischiefs* **machinate evils** in their heart;
continually are **all day**
they *gathered* **sojourn** together *for war.*

3 They have *sharpened* **pointened** their tongues
like a serpent;
adders! **asp's** poison is under their lips.
Selah.

4 Keep **Guard** me, O **LORD Yah Veh,**
from the hands of the wicked;
preserve me from the *violent* man **of violence;**
who have *purposed* **machinated**
to overthrow my *goings* **steps.**

5 The *proud* **pompous**
have hid a *snare* **line** for me, and cords;
they have spread a net
by the *wayside* **hand of the route;**
they have set *gins* **snares** for me.
Selah.

6 I said unto the **LORD Yah Veh,** Thou art my **God El:**
hear **hearken unto** the voice of my supplications,
O **LORD Yah Veh.**

7 O **GOD the Lord Yah Veh Adonay,**
the strength of my salvation,
thou hast covered my head
in the day of *battle* **armament.**

PSALMS 139, 140

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 Yes, the darkness darkens not from you;
and night lights as the day;
as the darkness, thus the light.

13 For you — you chattelized my reins;
you covered me in the belly of my mother:
I spread hands to you;
for I am awesomely distinguished;
marvellous are your works
— and my soul knows that right well.

15 My might was not concealed from you,
when I was covertly worked and embroidered
in the nethermost of the earth:

16 your eyes saw my embryo;
and in your scroll they were inscribed
in the days they were formed
— and no one among them.

17 How esteemed — your intentions to me, O El!
How mighty their head!

18 If I scribe them, they abound more than the sand;
when I waken, I am still with you.

19 Surely you sever the wicked, O Elohah;
so turn aside from me, you men of blood:
for they say intrigue against you;
lift your enemies in vanity.

20 Hate I not them, O Yah Veh, who hate you?
and loathe I not them who resist you?

21 I hate them with conclusive hatred;
I count them my enemies.

22 Probe me, O El, and know my heart;
proof me and know my thoughts:
and see if there be a contorting way in me
and lead me in the way eternal.

140

To His Eminence: A Psalm by David.

1 Rescue me, O Yah Veh, from evil humanity;
guard me from the man of violence
who machinates evils in the heart:
all day they sojourn for war;
they pointen their tongues as a serpent;
the poison of asps is under their lips.
Selah.

2 Guard me, O Yah Veh,
from the hands of the wicked;
preserve me from the man of violence;
who machinates to overthrow my steps.

3 The pompous hide a line for me — and cords;
they spread a net by the hand of the route;
they set snares for me.
Selah.

4 I say to Yah Veh, You are my El;
hearken, O Yah Veh,
to the voice of my supplications:

5 O Yah Veh Adonay,
the strength of my salvation,
you covered my head in the day of armament:

PSALMS 140—142

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

8 Grant Give not, O LORD Yah Veh,
the desires of the wicked:
further promote not his wicked device intrigue;
lest they exalt themselves be lofted.
Selah.

9 As for the head of those
that compass surround me about,
let the mischief toil of their own lips cover them.

10 Let burning coals fall coals topple upon them:
let them be cast — fell them into the fire;
into deep pits, that they rise not up again.

11 Let not an evil speaker no man of tongue
be established in the earth:
evil shall hunt the violent man of violence
to overthrow him.

12 I know that the LORD Yah Veh
will maintain shall work
the cause plea of the afflicted humble,
and the right judgment of the poor needy.

13 Surely the righteous just
shall give thanks spread hands unto thy name:
the upright straight shall dwell settle
in thy presence at thy face.

141

A Psalm of David.

1 LORD O Yah Veh, I cry call unto thee:
make haste hasten unto me;
give ear hearken unto my voice,
when I cry call unto thee.

2 Let my prayer
be set forth before thee prepared at thy face as incense;
and the lifting up burden of my hands palms
as the evening sacrifice offering.

3 Set a watch guard, O LORD Yah Veh,
before my mouth;
keep guard the door of my lips.

4 Incline Spread not my heart to any evil thing word,
to practise exploit wicked works exploits
with men that work iniquity do mischief:
and let me not eat of their dainties delicacies.

5 Let the righteous smite me; it shall be a kindness
The just hammer me in mercy:
and let him reprove me;
it shall be an excellent oil ointment,
which shall not break my head shall not disallow:
for yet my prayer also
shall be in against their calamities evil.

6 When their judges are overthrown released
in stony places by the hands of the rocks,
they shall hear my words sayings;
for they are sweet pleasing.

7 Our bones are scattered at the grave's sheol's mouth,
as when one cutteth cleaveth and cleaveth wood splitteth
upon the earth.

8 But mine eyes are unto thee,
O GOD the Lord Yah Veh Adonay:
in thee is my trust I seek refuge;
leave strip not my soul destitute naked.

9 Keep Guard me from the hands of the snares
which they have laid ensnared for me,
and the gins snares
of the workers doers of iniquity mischief.

10 Let the wicked fall into their own nets,
whilst that I withal escape altogether pass on.

142

Maschil On Comprehension of David:

A Prayer when he was in the cave.

1 I cried unto the LORD Yah Veh with my voice;
with my voice unto the LORD Yah Veh
did I make my supplication sought I charism.

2 I poured out my complaint meditation
before him at his face;
I shewed before him my trouble
I told my tribulation to his face.

3 When my spirit was overwhelmed languished within me,
then thou knewest my path.
In the way wherein I walked
have they privily laid hid a snare for me.

PSALMS 140—142

exeGeses companion BIBLE

8 give not, O Yah Veh, the wicked their desires;
promote not his intrigue; lest they be lofted.
Selah.

9 As for the heads of them who surround me,
cover them with the toil of their own lips;
10 topple coals on them;
fell them in the fire
— in deep pits that they rise not.

11 Establish no man of tongue in the earth;
evil hunts the man of violence — to overthrow him.

12 I know Yah Veh works the plea of the humble
— the judgment of the needy.

13 Surely the just spread hands to your name;
the straight settle at your face.

141

A Psalm by David.

1 O Yah Veh, I call to you; hasten to me;
hearken to my voice when I call to you:

2 I prepare my prayer at your face as incense;
and the burden of my palms as the evening offering.

3 Set a guard, O Yah Veh, in front of my mouth;
guard the door of my lips;

4 spread not my heart to any evil word
— to exploit wicked exploits
with men who work mischief
— that I not eat of their delicacies.

5 The just hammer me in mercy, and reprove me;
an ointment of the head
— which my head disallows not;
for my prayer is yet against their evil.

6 Their judges are released
by the hands of the rocks;
they hear my sayings; they are pleased.

7 Our bones are scattered at the mouth of sheol
as one cleaving and splitting the earth.

8 But to you, O Yah Veh Adonay, are my eyes;
in you I seek refuge; strip not my soul naked:
9 guard me from the hands of the snares
they ensnare for me
— and the snares of the doers of mischief.

10 Fell the wicked into their own nets,
until I pass over.

142

On Comprehension: By David:

A Prayer when he is in the cave.

1 My voice to Yah Veh, I cry;
my voice to Yah Veh, I seek charism:
2 I pour my meditation at his face;
I tell my tribulation to his face:
3 when my spirit languishes within me,
then you know my path:
in the way I walk, they hide a snare for me.

PSALMS 142—144

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 I looked on my **to the right hand**, and *beheld saw*,
but there was no **man one**
that *would know* **should recognize** me;
refuge failed **retreat destructed** from me;
no *man cared for* **one sought** my soul.
5 I cried unto thee, O **LORD Yah Veh**: I said,
Thou art my refuge and my **portion allotment**
in the land of the living.
6 *Attend* **Hearken** unto my *cry* **shouting**;
for I am *brought very low* **mightily languished**;
deliver **rescue** me from my *persecutors* **pursuers**;
for they are *stronger* **more strengthened** than I.
7 Bring my soul out of *prison* **the lockup**,
that I may *praise* **spread hands to** thy name:
the *righteous* **just** shall *compass* **surround** me *about*;
for thou shalt deal *bountifully* with me.

143

A Psalm of David.

1 Hear my prayer, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
give ear **hearken** to my supplications:
in thy *faithfulness* **trustworthiness** answer me,
and in thy *righteousness* **justness**.
2 And enter not into judgment with thy servant:
for *in at thy sight* **face** shall no **man one** living be justified.
3 For the enemy hath *persecuted* **pursued** my soul;
he hath *smitten* **crushed** my life *down to the ground* **earth**;
he hath *made me to dwell* **settled me** in darkness,
as those that have been *long* **eternally** dead.
4 *Therefore is*
my spirit *overwhelmed* **languisheth** within me;
my heart within me *is* **desolate desolateth**.
5 I remember the days of *old* **antiquity**;
I meditate on all thy *work* **deeds**;
I *muse* **meditate** on the work of thy hands.
6 I *stretch forth* **spread** my hands unto thee:
my soul
thirsteth after thee, as a thirsty land
is as a languid land for thee.
Selah.
7 Hear **Answer** me *speedily* **hastily**, O **LORD Yah Veh**:
my spirit *faileth* **finisheth off**:
hide not thy face from me,
lest I be like unto them
that *go down* **descend** into the *pit* **well**.
8 Cause me to hear thy *lovingkindness* **mercy**
in the morning;
for in thee do I *trust* **confide**:
cause me to know the way wherein I should walk;
for I lift up my soul unto thee.
9 *Deliver* **Rescue** me, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
from mine enemies:
I flee unto thee to hide me **Cover me with thyself**.
10 Teach me to *do* **work** thy *will* **pleasure**;
for thou art my *God* **Elohim**:
thy spirit is good;
lead me into the land of *uprightness* **straightness**.
11 *Quicken* **Enliven** me, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
for thy name's sake:
for thy *righteousness*' **justness**' sake
bring my soul out of *trouble* **tribulation**.
12 And of thy mercy cut off mine enemies,
and *destroy* **exterminate** all them
that *afflict* **tribulate** my soul:
for I am thy servant.

144

A Psalm of David.

1 Blessed be *the* **LORD Yah Veh** my *strength* **rock**
which teacheth my hands to war,
and my fingers to *fight* **war**:
2 My *goodness* **mercy**, and my *fortress* **stronghold**;
my *high tower* **secure loft**,
and my *deliverer* **who slippeth me away**;
my *shield* **buckler**, and he in whom I *trust* **seek refuge**;
who subdueth my people under me.
3 **LORD O Yah Veh**, what is *man* **humanity**,
that thou *takest knowledge of* **knowest** him!
or the son of man,
that thou *makest account of* **fabricatest** him!

PSALMS 142—144

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 I look to the right and see;
no one recognizes me:
retreat destructs from me;
no one seeks of my soul.
5 I cry to you, O Yah Veh; I say,
You are my refuge and my allotment
in the land of the living;
hearken to my shouting
for I am mightily languished:
rescue me from my pursuers
for they are stronger than I:
bring my soul from the lockup
to spread hands to your name;
the just surround me; when you deal with me.

143

A Psalm: By David.

1 Hear my prayer, O Yah Veh;
hearken to my supplications:
in your trustworthiness answer me
— in your justness.
2 And enter not into judgment with your servant;
for at your face no one living is justified;
for an enemy pursues my soul;
he crushes my life to the earth;
he settles me in darkness as the eternal dead:
my spirit within me languishes;
my heart within me desolates:
I remember the days of antiquity;
I meditate on all your deeds;
I meditate on the work of your hands:
I spread my hands to you;
my soul is as a languid land for you.
Selah.
7 Answer me hastily, O Yah Veh;
my spirit finishes off:
hide not your face from me;
lest I be as they who descend in the well:
that I hear your mercy in the morning;
for in you I confide:
that I know the way wherein I walk;
for I lift up my soul to you.
9 Rescue me, O Yah Veh, from my enemies
— cover me with yourself;
10 teach me to work your pleasure
for you are my Elohim;
your spirit is good;
lead me into the land of straightness.
11 Enliven me, O Yah Veh, for sake of your name;
for sake of your justness
bring my soul from tribulation:
12 and by your mercy cut off my enemies
and exterminate all who tribulate my soul;
for I am your servant.

144

By David.

1 Blessed — Yah Veh my rock
who teaches my hands to war
and my fingers to war:
2 my mercy and my stronghold;
my secure loft, who slips me away;
my buckler, in whom I seek refuge;
who subdues my people under me.
3 O Yah Veh,
what is humanity, that you know him?
— the son of man, that you fabricate him?

PSALMS 144, 145

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 *Man* **Humanity** is like **likened** to vanity;
his days are as a shadow that passeth away.
5 *Bow* **Spread** thy heavens, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
and *come down* **descend**:
touch the mountains, and they shall smoke.
6 *Cast forth* **Lightning the** lightning, and scatter them:
shoot out **send** thine arrows, and *destroy* **agitate** them.
7 Send thine hand from *above* **the heights**;
rid **tear** me **loose**,
and *deliver* **rescue** me out of great waters,
from the hand of strange *children* **sons**;
8 Whose mouth *speaketh* **wordeth** vanity,
and their right *hand* is a right *hand* of falsehood.
9 I *will* **shall** sing a new song unto thee, O *God* **Elohim**:
upon a *psaltery* **bagpipe**
and an *instrument of ten strings* **a decachord**
10 *will I sing praises* **shall I psalm** unto thee.
It is he that
— **Who** giveth salvation unto *kings* **sovereigns**:
who *delivereth* **releaseth** David his servant
from the *hurtful* **evil** sword.
11 *Rid* **Tear** me **loose**, and *deliver* **rescue** me
from the hand of strange *children* **sons**,
whose mouth *speaketh* **wordeth** vanity,
and their right *hand* is a right *hand* of falsehood:
12 That our sons
may be as plants grown up in their youth;
that our daughters
may be as **prominent** corner *stones* **pillars**,
polished after **carved in** the *similitude* **pattern**
of a *palace* **manse**:
13 That our *graners* **granaries** may be full,
affording all manner of store **producing species by species**:
that our *sheep* **flock**
may bring forth *thousands* **a thousandfold**
and *ten thousands* **abound by the** *myriads*
in our *streets* **outways**:
14 That our *oxen* **chiliarchs** may *be strong to labour* **bear**;
that there be no *breaking in* **breaching**, nor going out;
that there be no *complaining* **outcry**
in our *streets* **broadways**.
15 *Happy* **Blithe** is that people, that is *in such a case* **thus**:
yea, *happy* **blithe** is that people,
whose *God* **Elohim** is the **LORD Yah Veh**.

145

David's *Psalm of Praise* **Halal**.
1 I *will extol* **shall exalt** thee, my *God* **Elohim**,
O *king* **sovereign**;
and I *will* **shall** bless thy name
for ever **eternally** and *ever* **eternally**.
2 Every day *will* **shall** I bless thee;
and I *will praise* **shall halal** thy name
for ever **eternally** and *ever* **eternally**
3 Great is the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and *greatly* **mightily** to be *praised* **halaled**;
and his greatness is *unsearchable* **not to be probed**.
4 *One generation* **Generation to generation**
shall *praise* **laud** thy works to *another*,
and shall *declare* **tell** thy *mighty acts* **might**.
5 I *will speak* **shall meditate**
of the glorious honour of thy majesty,
and of thy *wondrous works* **marvellous words**.
6 And *men* shall *speak* **say**
of the *might* **strength** of thy *terrible* **awesome** acts:
and I *will declare* **shall scribe** thy greatness.
7 They shall *abundantly utter* **gush**
the *memory* **memorial** of thy great goodness,
and shall *sing* **shout** of thy *righteousness* **justness**.
8 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** is *gracious* **charismatic**,
and *full of compassion* **merciful**;
slow to *anger* **wrath**, and of great mercy.
9 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** is good to all:
and his tender mercies are over all his works.
10 All thy works shall *praise* **spread hands unto** thee,
O **LORD Yah Veh**;
and thy *saints* **mercied** shall bless thee.
11 They shall *speak* **say**
of the *glory* **honour** of thy *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
and *talk* **word** of thy *power* **might**;

PSALMS 144, 145

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 Humanity is likened to vanity;
his days are as a passing shadow.
5 Spread your heavens, O Yah Veh, and descend;
touch the mountains, and they smoke;
6 lightning the lightning and scatter them;
send your arrows and agitate them;
7 send your hand from the heights;
tear me loose and rescue me from great waters
— from the hand of strange sons
8 whose mouth words vanity
whose right is a right of falsehood.
9 O Elohim, I sing you a new song;
on a bagpipe and a decachord, I psalm to you
10 — who gives salvation to sovereigns;
who release David his servant from the evil sword.
11 Tear me loose and rescue me
from the hand of strange sons
— whose mouth words vanity
whose right is a right of falsehood.
12 Because our sons as plants
become grown in their youth;
and our daughters as prominent corner pillars
carved in the pattern of a manse;
13 our granaries fill up
— producing species by species;
our flocks bring forth a thousandfold
and abound by the myriads in our outways;
14 our chiliarchs bear
— neither breaching nor going out;
nor cry out in our broadways.
15 Blithe — that people, who is thus;
yes, blithe — that people, whose Elohim is Yah Veh.

145

Halal: By David.

1 I exalt you, my Elohim, O sovereign;
and I bless your name eternally and eternally:
2 every day I bless you;
and I halal your name eternally and eternally:
3 great is Yah Veh and mightily to be halaled;
and his greatness is not to be probed:
4 generation to generation
5 lauds your works and tells your might:
I meditate on the glorious honor of your majesty
and on your marvellous words:
6 and say of the strength of your awesome acts;
I scribe your greatness:
7 they gush the memorial of your great goodness
and shout of your justness.
8 Yah Veh is charismatic and merciful;
9 slow to wrath and of great mercy:
Yah Veh is good to all;
and his tender mercies are over all his works.
10 All your works spread hands to you, O Yah Veh;
and your mercied bless you:
11 they say of the honor of your sovereigndom
and word of your might;

PSALMS 145 — 147

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 To make known to the sons of *men* **humanity**
his *mighty acts* **might**,
and the *glorious* **honour of** majesty of his kingdom.
13 Thy *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
is an *everlasting kingdom* **eternal sovereigndom**,
and thy *dominion* **reign**
endureth throughout all generations
generation to generation.
14 The *LORD Yah Veh* upholdeth all that fall,
and raiseth up all *those* that be bowed down.
15 The eyes of all *wait upon* **expect** thee;
and thou givest them
their *meat in due season* **food on time**.
16 Thou openest thine hand,
and satisfiest the *desire* **pleasure** of every **all** living *thing*.
17 The *LORD Yah Veh* is *righteous* **just** in all his ways,
and *holy* **mercied** in all his works.
18 The *LORD Yah Veh* is nigh
unto all them that call upon him,
to all that call upon him in truth.
19 He *will fulfil* **shall work** the *desire* **pleasure** of them
that *fear* **awe** him:
he also *will* **shall** hear their cry, and *will* **shall** save them.
20 The *LORD Yah Veh*
preserveth **guardeth** all them that love him:
but all the wicked *will* **shall** he *destroy* **desolate**.
21 My mouth shall *speak* **word**
the *praise* **halal** of the *LORD Yah Veh*:
and let all flesh bless his holy name
for ever **eternally** and ever **eternally**.

146

Praise ye the LORD **Halalu Yah**.
Praise the LORD **Halal Yah Veh**, O my soul.
2 *While I live* **In my life**
will I praise the LORD **I shall halal Yah Veh**:
I *will sing praises* **shall psalm** unto my *God* **Elohim**
while I *have any being* **be**.
3 *Put not your trust* **Confide not** in *princes* **volunteers**,
nor in the son of man **humanity**,
in whom there is no *help* **salvation**.
4 His *breath* **spirit** goeth forth,
he returneth to his *earth* **soil**;
in that very day his thoughts *perish* **destruct**.
5 *Happy* **Blithed** is he
that hath the *God* **El** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov** for his help,
whose *hope* **expectation**
is in the *LORD Yah Veh* his *God* **Elohim**:
6 Which *made heaven* **worked the heavens**, and earth,
the sea, and all that therein is:
which *keepeth* **guardeth** truth for ever **eternally**:
7 Which *executeth* **worketh** judgment for the oppressed:
which giveth *food* **bread** to the *hungry* **famished**.
8 The *LORD Yah Veh* looseth the *prisoners* **bound**:
The *LORD Yah Veh* openeth the *eyes* of the blind:
the *LORD Yah Veh* raiseth them that are bowed down:
the *LORD Yah Veh* loveth the *righteous* **just**:
9 The *LORD Yah Veh*
preserveth **guardeth** the *strangers* **sojourners**;
he *relieveth* **restoreth** the *fatherless* **orphan** and widow:
but the way of the wicked
he *turneth upside down* **twisteth**.
10 The *LORD Yah Veh* shall reign for ever **eternally**,
even thy *God* **Elohim**, O *Zion* **Siyon**,
unto all generations **generation to generation**.
Praise ye the LORD **Halalu Yah**.

147

Praise ye the LORD **Halalu Yah**:
for it is good to *sing praises* **psalm** unto our *God* **Elohim**;
for it is pleasant;
and *praise is comely* **halal befitfeth**.
2 The *LORD Yah Veh*
doth build up Jerusalem **buildeth Yeru Shalem**:
he gathereth *together*
the *outcasts* **overthrown** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
3 He healeth the broken in heart,
and bindeth up their *wounds* **contortions**.
4 He *telleth* **numbereth** the number of the stars;
he calleth them all by their names.

PSALMS 145 — 147

exeGesés companion BIBLE

12 to make his might known
to the sons of humanity
— and the honor of majesty of his kingdom.
13 Your sovereigndom is an eternal sovereigndom
and your reign generation to generation.
14 Yah Veh upholds all who fall
and raises all who are bowed down:
the eyes of all expect you;
and you give them their food on time:
you open your hand
and satisfy the pleasure of all living.
15 Yah Veh is just in all his ways
and mercied in all his works:
Yah Veh is near all who call on him
— to all who call on him in truth:
he works their pleasure, who awe him;
he hears their cry and saves them:
Yah Veh guards all who love him;
and desolates all the wicked.
16 My mouth words the halal of Yah Veh;
all flesh blesses his holy name
eternally and eternally.

146

Halalu Yah!
2 Halal Yah Veh, O my soul.
I halal Yah Veh in my life *time*;
I psalm to my Elohim while I *still* am.
3 Confide not in volunteers — in a son of humanity
— in whom there is no salvation:
his spirit goes; he returns to his soil;
that very day his thoughts destruct.
4 Blithe — he who has El of Yaaqov for his help;
whose expectation is in Yah Veh his Elohim
— who worked the heavens and earth,
the sea and all therein:
who guards truth eternally;
who works judgment for the oppressed;
who gives bread to the famished.
5 Yah Veh looses the bound;
Yah Veh opens the blind;
Yah Veh raises the bowed;
Yah Veh loves the just;
Yah Veh guards the sojourners;
he restores the orphan and widow;
and twists the way of the wicked.
6 Yah Veh reigns eternal;
your Elohim, O Siyon, generation to generation.
Halalu Yah!

147

Halalu Yah!
For it is good to psalm to our Elohim;
for it is pleasant; and befits halal:
Yah Veh builds Yeru Shalem;
he gathers the overthrown of Yisra El;
he heals the broken in heart
and binds their contortions;
he numbers the number of the stars;
he calls them all by names.

PSALMS 147, 148

*exeGes*es ready research BIBLE

5 Great is our *Lord Adonay*, and of great *power force*:
his *understanding is infinite discernments innumerable*.
6 The *LORD Yah Veh*
lifteth up *restoreth* the *meek humble*:
he *casteth abaseth* the wicked *down to the ground earth*.
7 Sing unto the *LORD Answer Yah Veh*
with *thanksgiving spread hands*;
sing *praise psalm* upon the harp unto our *God Elohim*:
8 Who covereth the *heaven heavens* with *thick clouds*,
who prepareth rain for the earth,
who *maketh sprouteth* grass to *grow*
upon the mountains.
9 He giveth to the *beast animal* his *food bread*,
and to the *young sons of* ravens which *cry call*.
10 He delighteth not in the *strength might* of the horse:
he taketh not pleasure in the legs of a man.
11 The *LORD Yah Veh* taketh pleasure
in them that *fear awe* him,
in those that *hope await* in his mercy.
12 Praise the *LORD Laud Yah Veh*,
O *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*;
praise *halal* thy *God Elohim*, O *Zion Siyon*.
13 For he hath strengthened the bars
of thy *gates portals*;
he hath blessed thy *children sons* within thee.
14 He *maketh peace setteth shalom* in thy borders,
and *filleteth satisfieth* thee with the *finest fat* of the wheat.
15 He sendeth forth his *commandment sayings*
upon earth:
his word runneth very *swiftly quickly*.
16 He giveth snow like wool:
he scattereth the hoarfrost like ashes.
17 He casteth forth his ice like morsels:
who can stand *before at the face of* his cold?
18 He sendeth out his word, and melteth them:
he causeth his wind to blow, and the waters flow.
19 He *sheweth telleth* his word unto *Jacob Yaaqov*,
his *statutes words* and his judgments unto *Israel Yisra El*.
20 He hath not *dealt worked* so with any *nation goyim*:
and as for his judgments, they have not known them.
Praise ye the *LORD Halalu Yah*.

148

Praise ye the *LORD Halalu Yah*.
Praise ye the *LORD Halal Yah Veh* from the heavens:
Praise *Halal* him in the heights.
2 Praise *Halal* ye him, all his angels:
praise *halal* ye him, all his hosts.
3 Praise *Halal* ye him, sun and moon:
praise *halal* him, all ye stars of light.
4 Praise *Halal* him, ye heavens of the heavens,
and ye waters that be above the heavens.
5 Let them *praise halal* the name of the *LORD Yah Veh*:
for he *commanded misvahed*, and they were created.
6 He hath also *established stood* them
for *ever eternally* and *ever eternally*:
he hath *made given* a *decree statute*
which shall not pass.
7 Praise the *LORD Halal Yah Veh* from the earth,
ye *dragons monsters*, and all *deeps abysses*:
8 Fire, and hail; snow, and *vapours smoke*;
stormy wind *fulfilling working* his word:
9 Mountains, and all hills; fruitful trees, and all cedars:
10 *Beasts Live beings*, and all *cattle animals*;
creeping things creepers, and *flying fowl birds of wing*:
11 *Kings Sovereigns* of the earth, and all *people nations*;
princes governors, and all judges of the earth:
12 Both *young men youths*, and maidens;
old men aged, and *children lads*:
13 Let them *praise halal* the name of the *LORD Yah Veh*:
for his name alone is *excellent lofted*;
his *glory majesty*
is above the earth and *heaven the heavens*.
14 He also exalteth the horn of his people,
the *praise halal* of all his *saints mercied*;
even of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*,
a people near unto him.
Praise ye the *LORD Halalu Yah*.

PSALMS 147, 148

*exeGes*es companion BIBLE

5 Great *is* our Adonay and great of force;
his discernments innumerable:
6 Yah Veh restores the humble;
he abases the wicked to the earth.
7 Answer Yah Veh with spread hands;
psalm on the harp to our Elohim
— who covers the heavens with thick clouds;
who prepares rain for the earth;
who sprouts grass on the mountains;
who gives his bread to the animal
and to the sons of ravens who call.
8 He neither delights in the might of the horse;
nor takes pleasure in the legs of a man.
9 Yah Veh takes pleasure
in them who awe him; who await his mercy.
10 Laud Yah Veh, O Yeru Shalem;
halal your Elohim, O Siyon.
11 For he strengthens the bars of your portals;
he blesses your sons within you;
12 who sets shalom in your borders
and satisfies you with the fat of the wheat;
13 who sends his sayings on earth;
whose word runs very quickly;
14 who gives snow as wool:
15 he scatters the hoarfrost as ashes;
16 he casts his ice as morsels.
17 Who stands at the face of his cold?
18 He sends his word and they melt;
19 he blows his wind; the waters flow;
20 he tells his word to Yaaqov
— his words and his judgments to Yisra El.
He worked not thus with any goyim;
and as to judgments, they know them not.
Halalu Yah!

148

Halalu Yah!
Halal Yah Veh from the heavens;
halal him in the heights;
2 halal him, all his angels;
3 halal him, all his hosts;
4 halal him, sun and moon;
5 halal him, all you stars of light;
6 halal him, you heavens of the heavens
and you waters above the heavens:
7 Halal the name of Yah Veh;
8 for he misvahed and they were created.
9 He stands them eternally and eternally;
10 he gave a statute; they pass not over.
11 Halal Yah Veh from the earth
12 you monsters and all abysses;
13 fire and hail; snow and smoke;
14 stormy wind working his word;
15 mountains and all hills;
16 fruitful trees and all cedars;
17 live beings and all animals;
18 creepers and birds of wing;
19 sovereigns of the earth and all nations;
20 governors and all judges of the earth;
both youths and maidens;
aged and lads!
Halal the name of Yah Veh;
for his name alone is lofted;
his majesty *is* above the earth and the heavens:
he exalts the horn of his people
— the halal of all his mercied;
of the sons of Yisra El — a people near him.
Halalu Yah!

PSALMS 149, 150

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

149

Praise ye the LORD Halalu Yah.

Sing unto the LORD **Yah Veh** a new song,
and his *praise* **halal** in the congregation of *saints* **merciéd**.

2

Let *Israel* rejoice **Yisra El cheer**

in him that *made* **worked** him:

let the *children* **sons** of *Zion* **Siyon**

be joyful **twirl** in their *King* **Sovereign**.

3

Let them *praise* **halal** his name in the **round** dance:

let them *sing praises* **psalm** unto him

with the *timbrel* **tambourine** and harp.

4

For the LORD **Yah Veh** taketh pleasure in his people:

he *will beautify* **shall adorn** the *meek* **humble**

with salvation.

5

Let the *saints* **merciéd**

be joyful **jump for joy** in *glory* **honour**:

let them *sing aloud* **shout** upon their beds.

6

Let the *high praises of God* **exaltations of El**

be in their mouth **throat**,

and a *twoedged sword* **of teeth** in their hand;

7

To *execute* **work** vengeance upon the *heathen* **goyim**,

and *punishments* **reproofs** upon the *people* **nations**;

8

To bind their *kings* **sovereigns** with *chains* **bonds**,

and their *nobles* **honoured** with fetters of iron;

9

To *execute* **work** upon them

the judgment *written* **inscribed**:

this *honour* **majesty** have all his *saints* **merciéd**.

Praise ye the LORD Halalu Yah.

150

Praise ye the LORD Halalu Yah.

Praise God Halal El in his *sanctuary* **holies**:

praise **halal** him

in the *firmament* **expanse** of his *power* **strength**.

2

Praise **Halal** him

for his *mighty acts* **might**:

praise **Halal** him

according to his *excellent* **abundant** greatness.

3

Praise **Halal** him

with the *sound* **blast** of the *trumpet* **shophars**:

praise **halal** him

with the *psaltery* **bagpipe** and harp.

4

Praise **Halal** him

with the *timbrel* **tambourine** and **round** dance:

praise **halal** him

with *stringed instruments* **strummers**

and *organs* **woodwinds**.

5

Praise **Halal** him

upon the *loud* **hearkening** cymbals:

praise **halal** him

upon the *high sounding* **clanging** cymbals.

6

Let every *thing that hath breath* **all that breatheth**

praise the LORD **halal Yah.**

Praise ye the LORD Halalu Yah.

PSALMS 149, 150

exeGesés companion BIBLE

149

Halalu Yah!

Sing Yah Veh a new song

and his *halal* in the congregation of the *merciéd*.

2

Yisra El cheers in his Worker;

the sons of Siyon twirl in their Sovereign:

3

they *halal* his name in the round dance;

they *psalm* to him with tambourine and harp;

4

for Yah Veh takes pleasure in his people;

he adorns the humble with salvation.

5

The *merciéd* jump for joy in honor;

they shout on their beds;

6

the exaltation of El *is* in their throat

and a sword of teeth in their hand

7

— to work vengeance on the goyim

and reproofs on the nations:

8

to bind their sovereigns with bonds

and their honored with fetters of iron:

9

to work on them the inscribed judgment

— a majesty for all his *merciéd*.

Halalu Yah!

150

Halalu Yah!

Halal El in his holies;

halal him in the expanse of his strength;

2

halal him for his might;

halal him according to his abundant greatness;

3

halal him with the blast of the shophar;

halal him with the bagpipe and harp;

4

halal him with the tambourine and round dance;

halal him with strummers and woodwinds;

5

halal him on the hearkening cymbals;

halal him on the clanging cymbals.

6

All you who breathe, *halal* Yah.

Halalu Yah!

PROVERBS 1

exeGes ready research BIBLE

1 The proverbs of Solomon **Shelomoh**
the son of David,
king sovereign of Israel Yisra El;
2 To know wisdom and *instruction discipline;*
to perceive the words discern sayings
of understanding discernment;
3 To receive the *instruction take discipline*
of wisdom comprehension, justice justness,
and judgment, and *equity straightnesses;*
4 To give *subtily strategy* to the *simple gullible,*
to the *young man lad* knowledge and *discretion intrigue.*
5 A **The wise man will shall** hear,
and *will shall* increase *learning doctrine;*
and a *man of understanding the discerning*
shall *attain chattelize* unto wise counsels:
6 To *understand discern* a proverb,
and the *interpretation satire;*
the words of the wise, and their *dark sayings riddles.*
7 The *fear awe of the LORD Yah Veh*
is the beginning of knowledge:
but fools
despise disrespect wisdom and *instruction discipline.*
8 My son, hear the *instruction discipline* of thy father,
and *forsake abandon* not the *law torah* of thy mother:
9 For they shall be
an ornament a wreath of grace charism unto thy head,
and *chains about chokers around* thy neck **throat.**
10 My son, if sinners entice thee,
consent thou shalt not will.
11 If they say, Come with us,
let us *lay wait lurk* for blood,
let us *lurk privily hide out* for the innocent
without cause gratuitously:
12 Let us swallow them up alive as *the grave sheol;*
and *whole integrious,*
as those that *go down descend* into the *pit well:*
13 We shall find all *precious substance esteemed wealth,*
we shall fill our houses with spoil:
14 *Cast in Fell* thy *lot pebble* among us;
let us all have one *purse pouch:*
15 My son, walk not thou in the way with them;
refrain withhold thy foot from their path:
16 For their feet run to evil,
and *make haste hasten* to *shed pour* blood.
17 Surely *in vain gratuitously* the net is *spread winnowed*
in the *sight eye* of any *bird master of wing.*
18 And they *lay wait lurk* for their own blood;
they *lurk privily hide out* for their own *lives souls.*
19 So are the ways
of every one that is greedy of *gain greed;*
which taketh away
the *life soul of the owners thereof their masters.*
20 Wisdom *crieth without shouteth out;*
she *uttereth giveth* her voice in the *streets broadways:*
21 She *crieth calleth out*
in the *chief place top of concourse the roaring,*
in the *openings portals* of the *gates portals:*
in the city she *uttereth sayeth* her words *sayings, saying,*
22 How long, ye *simple ones gullible,*
will shall ye love *simplicity gullibility?*
and the scorners delight in their scorning,
and fools hate knowledge?
23 Turn you at my reproof:
behold, I *will pour out shall gush* my spirit unto you,
I *will shall* make known my words unto you.
24 Because I have called, and ye refused;
I have *stretched out spread* my hand,
and no *man regarded one hearkened;*
25 But ye have *set at nought loosed* all my counsel,
and *would willed* none of my reproof:
26 I also *will shall* laugh at your calamity;
I *will mock shall deride* when your *fear dread* cometh;
27 When your *fear dread*
cometh as *desolation devastation,*
and your *destruction calamity*
cometh as a *whirlwind hurricane;*
when *distress tribulation and anguish distress*
cometh upon you.

PROVERBS 1

exeGes companion BIBLE

1 The proverbs of Shelomoh
the son of David sovereign of Yisra El:
2 to know wisdom and discipline;
to discern sayings of discernment;
3 to take discipline of comprehension, justness,
judgment and straightnesses;
4 to give strategy to the gullible;
to the lad knowledge and intrigue.
5 The wise hear and increase doctrine;
and the discerning chattelize to wise counsels:
6 to discern a proverb and the satire;
the words of the wise and their riddles.
7 to awe of Yah Veh is the beginning of knowledge;
fools disrespect wisdom and discipline.
8 My son, hear the discipline of your father
and abandon not the torah of your mother:
9 — a wreath of charism to your head
and chokers around your throat.
10 My son, if sinners entice you, be not willing;
11 if they say, Come with us, we lurk for blood,
we hide out gratuitously for the innocent;
12 we swallow them alive as sheol;
the integrious,
as those who descend into the well;
13 we find all esteemed wealth;
we fill our houses with spoil;
14 fell your pebble among us;
we all have one pouch!
15 — my son, walk not in the way with them;
withhold your foot from their path:
16 for their feet run to evil and hasten to pour blood.
17 Surely the net is winnowed gratuitously
in the eye of any master of wit:
18 they lurk for their own blood;
they hide out for their own souls:
19 thus are the ways of all the greedy of greed;
who take away the soul of their masters.
20 Wisdom shouts;
she gives her voice in the broadways;
21 she calls out in the top of the roaring
— in the portals of the portals;
in the city she says her sayings,
22 Until when, O gullible, love you gullibility?
and scorners delight in their scorning?
and fools hate knowledge?
23 Turn at my reproof;
behold, I gush my spirit to you;
I make known my words to you.
24 Because I called and you refuse;
I spread my hand and no one hearkens;
25 you loose all my counsel
and will none of my reproof.
26 I laugh at your calamity;
I deride when your dread comes
— when your dread comes as devastation
and your calamity comes as a hurricane;
when tribulation and distress come on you.

PROVERBS 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

28 Then shall they call upon me,
but I *will shall* not answer;
they shall seek me early, but they shall not find me:
29 For that they hated knowledge,
and did not choose the *fear awe* of the **LORD Yah Veh**:
30 They *would willed* none of my counsel:
they *despised scorned* all my reproof.
31 Therefore shall they eat of the fruit of their own way,
and be *filled satiated* with their own *devices counsels*.
32 For the *turning away apostasy* of the *simple gullible*
shall *slay slaughter* them,
and the *prosperity serenity* of fools shall destroy them.
33 But whoso hearkeneth unto me
shall *dwell safely tabernacle confidently*,
and shall *be quiet relax* from *fear dread* of evil.

2

My son,
if thou *wilt receive shalt take* my *words sayings*,
and hide my *commandments misvoth* with thee;
2 So that thou *incline hearken* thine ear unto wisdom,
and *apply spread* thine heart to *understanding discernment*;
3 Yea, if thou *criest callest* after *knowledge discernment*,
and *liftest up givest* thy voice for *understanding discerning*;
4 If thou seekest her as silver,
and searchest for her as for hid treasures;
5 Then shalt thou *understand discern*
the *fear awe* of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and find the knowledge of *God Elohim*.
6 For the **LORD Yah Veh** giveth wisdom:
out of his mouth
 cometh knowledge and understanding discernment.
7 He *layeth up sound wisdom treasureth substance*
for the *righteous straight*:
8 he is a buckler to them that walk *uprightly integriously*.
He *keepeth guardeth* the paths of judgment,
and *preserveth guardeth* the way of his *saints mercied*.
9 Then shalt thou
 understand righteousness discern justness,
and judgment, and *equity straightnesses*;
yea, every good *path route*.
10 When wisdom entereth into thine heart,
and knowledge *is pleasant unto please*th thy soul;
11 *Discretion Intrigue* shall *preserve guard* thee,
 understanding discernment shall *keep guard* thee:
12 To *deliver rescue* thee
from the way of the *evil man*,
from the man
that *speaketh froward things wordeth perversions*;
13 Who *leave forsake*
the paths of *uprightness straightness*,
to walk in the ways of darkness;
14 Who *rejoice cheer* to *do work* evil,
and *delight twirl*
in the *frowardness perversions* of the *wicked evil*;
15 Whose ways *are crooked pervert*,
and they *froward — pervert* in their *paths routes*:
16 To *deliver rescue* thee from the strange woman,
even from the stranger
which *flattereth smootheth over* with her *words sayings*;
17 Which forsaketh the *guide chiliarch* of her youth,
and forgetteth the covenant of her *God Elohim*.
18 For her house *inclineth sinketh* unto death,
and her *paths routes* unto the *dead ghosts*.
19 None that go unto her return *again*,
neither *take overtake* they *hold* of the paths of life.
20 That thou mayest walk in the way of good *men*,
and *keep guard* the paths of the *righteous just*.
21 For the *upright straight*
shall *dwell tabernacle* in the land,
and the *perfect integrious* shall remain in it.
22 But the *wicked they that deal covertly*
shall be cut off from the earth,
and the transgressors shall be *rooted out of it uprooted*.

PROVERBS 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

28 Then they call me, and I answer not;
they seek me early, and they find me not;
29 because they hate knowledge
and choose not the awe of Yah Veh;
30 they will not my counsel;
they scorn all my reproof;
31 they eat of the fruit of their own way
and satiate with their own counsels:
32 for the apostasy of the gullible slaughters them
and the serenity of fools destroys them.
33 And whoever hearkens to me
tabernacles confidently;
and relaxes from dread of evil.

2

My son, if you take my sayings
and hide my misvoth with you
— to hearken your ear to wisdom
and spread your heart to discernment;
yes, if you call after discernment
and give your voice for discerning;
if you seek her as silver
and search for her as hid treasures
— then you discern the awe of Yah Veh
and find the knowledge of Elohim.
6 For Yah Veh gives wisdom
— from his mouth knowledge and discernment:
he treasures substance for the straight;
a buckler to them who walk integriously:
he guards the paths of judgment
and guards the way of his mercied.
9 Then you discern justness
and judgment and straightnesses
— every good route:
then wisdom enters your heart
and knowledge pleases your soul;
intrigue guards you;
discernment guards you;
to rescue you from the way of evil
— from the man who words perversions:
who forsakes the paths of straightness
to walk in the ways of darkness;
who cheers to work evil
and twirls in the perversions of evil;
whose ways pervert — pervert in their routes:
to rescue you from the strange woman
— from the stranger
who smoothes it over with her sayings;
who forsakes the chiliarch of her youth
and forgets the covenant of her Elohim.
18 For her house sinks to death
and her routes to ghosts.
Neither return they who go to her
nor overtake they of the paths of life.
20 So walk in the way of good
and guard the paths of the just:
for the straight tabernacle in the land
and the integrious remain therein:
and they who deal covertly
are cut off from the earth;
and the transgressors uprooted.

PROVERBS 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 My son, forget not my *law torah*;
but let thine heart
keep **guard** my *commandments misvoth*:
2 For length of days, and *long years of life*,
and *peace shalom*, shall they add to thee.
3 Let not mercy and truth forsake thee:
bind them about thy *neck throat*;
write **inscribe** them upon the *table slab* of thine heart:
4 So shalt thou find *favour charism*
and good *understanding comprehension*
in the *sight eye* of *God Elohim* and *man humanity*.
5 Trust **Confide** in the *LORD Yah Veh* with all thine heart;
and lean not unto thine own *understanding discernment*.
6 In all thy ways *acknowledge know* him,
and he shall *direct straighten* thy paths.
7 Be not wise in thine own eyes:
fear the LORD awe Yah Veh,
and *depart turn aside* from evil.
8 *It healing* shall be *health* to thy navel,
and *marrow moisture* to thy bones.
9 Honour *the LORD Yah Veh* with thy *substance wealth*,
and with the firstfruits of all *thine increase thy produce*:
10 So **Thus** shall thy *barns ingatherings*
be filled with *plenty sufficiency*,
and thy *presses* shall *burst out break forth*
with *new wine juice*.
11 My son, *despise spurn* not
the *chastening discipline* of the *LORD Yah Veh*;
neither *be weary of abhor* his *correction reproof*:
12 For whom *the LORD Yah Veh* loveth
he *correcteth reproveth*;
even as a father the son
in whom he *delighteth be pleased*.
13 *Happy is Blithe be* the *man human*
that findeth wisdom,
and the *man human*
that *getteth understanding produceth discernment*.
14 For the merchandise of it
is better than the merchandise of silver,
and the *gain produce* thereof than *fine gold ore*.
15 She is more *precious esteemed* than *rubies pearls*:
and all *the things thou canst desire thy desires*
are not to be compared unto her.
16 Length of days is in her right *hand*;
and in her left *hand* riches and honour.
17 Her ways are ways of pleasantness,
and all her paths are *peace shalom*.
18 She is a tree of life
to them that *lay hold upon uphold* her:
and *happy is every one blithesome be they*
that *retaineth uphold* her.
19 *The LORD Yah Veh* by wisdom
hath founded the earth;
by *understanding discernment*
hath he established the heavens.
20 By his knowledge
the *depths abysses* are *broken up split*,
and the *clouds drop down vapours drip* the dew.
21 My son, let not them *depart pervert* from thine eyes:
keep *sound wisdom guard substance*
and *discretion intrigue*:
22 So shall they be life unto thy soul,
and *grace charism* to thy *neck throat*.
23 Then shalt thou walk in thy way *safely confidently*,
and thy foot shall not *stumble stub*.
24 When thou liest down,
thou shalt not *be afraid dread*:
yea, thou shalt lie down,
and thy sleep shall *be sweet please*.
25 *Be Awe* not *afraid of* sudden fear,
neither of the *desolation devastation* of the wicked,
when it cometh.
26 For *the LORD Yah Veh* shall be thy *confidence hope*,
and shall *keep guard* thy foot from *being taken capture*.
27 Withhold not good
from *them to whom it is due thy masters*,
when it is in the *power El* of thine hand to *do work* it.
28 Say not unto thy *neighbour friend*,

PROVERBS 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 My son, forget not my torah;
and your heart guard my misvoth;
2 for they add to you
length of days and years of life and shalom:
3 forsake not mercy and truth;
bind them about your throat;
inscribe them on the slab of your heart:
4 thus you find charism and good comprehension
in the eye of Elohim and humanity.
5 Confide in Yah Veh with all your heart
and lean not to your own discernment:
6 in all your ways know him
and he straightens your paths:
7 be not wise in your own eyes;
awe Yah Veh and turn aside from evil
8 — healing to your navel
and moisture to your bones.
9 Honor Yah Veh with your wealth
and with the firstfruits of all your produce:
10 thus are your ingatherings filled with sufficiency
and your troughs break forth with juice.
11 My son,
neither spurn the discipline of Yah Veh
nor abhor his reproof:
12 for whom Yah Veh loves, he reproves
— even as a father the son who pleases him.
13 Blithe — the human who finds wisdom
and the human who produces discernment:
14 better, the merchandise thereof
than the merchandise of silver;
and the produce thereof than ore:
15 she is more esteemed than pearls
and all your desires are not comparable to her:
16 length of days is in her right;
and in her left, riches and honor:
17 her ways are ways of pleasantness
and all her paths are shalom:
18 she is a tree of life to them who uphold her;
and blithesome to them who uphold her.
19 Yah Veh, by wisdom, founded the earth;
by discernment, he established the heavens;
20 by knowledge, he split the abysses
and the vapours drip the dew.
21 My son, pervert them not from your eyes;
guard substance and intrigue
22 — life to your soul and charism to your throat.
23 Then you walk your way confidently
and stub not your foot:
24 you lie down; you dread not:
yes, you lie down and your sleep pleases.
25 Neither awe sudden fear;
nor the devastation of the wicked when it comes:
26 for Yah Veh is your hope
and he guards your foot from capture.
27 Withhold not good from your masters
when it is in the El of your hand to work it:
28 say not to your friend,

PROVERBS 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

Go, and come again return,
and to morrow I will shall give;
when thou hast it by thee.
29 Devise **Inscribe** not evil against thy neighbour **friend**,
seeing he dwelleth securely **settleth confidently** by thee.
30 Strive not with a man **humanity**
without cause **gratuitously**,
if he have done **dealt** thee no harm **evil**.
31 Envy thou not the **oppressor man of violence**,
and choose none of his ways.
32 For the **froward he that perverteth**
is abomination **abhorrence** to the **LORD Yah Veh**:
but his **secret private counsel**
is with the **righteous straight**.
33 The curse of the **LORD Yah Veh**
is in the house of the wicked:
but he blesseth the habitation **of rest** of the just.
34 Surely he scorneth the scornors:
but he giveth **grace charism** unto the **lowly humble**.
35 The wise shall inherit **glory honour**:
but **shame abasement**
shall be the **promotion exaltation** of fools.

4 Hear, ye **children sons**,
the **instruction discipline** of a father,
and attend **hearken** to know **understanding discernment**.
2 For I give you good doctrine,
forsake ye not my **law torah**.
3 For I was my father's son,
tender and only **beloved**
in the **sight at the face** of my mother.
4 He taught me also, and said unto me,
Let thine heart **retain uphold** my words:
keep **guard** my **commandments misvoth**, and live.
5 Get **Chattelize** wisdom,
get **understanding chattelize discernment**:
forget it not;
neither **decline spread**
from the **words sayings** of my mouth.
6 Forsake her not, and she shall **preserve guard** thee:
love her, and she shall **keep guard** thee.
7 Wisdom is the **principal thing firstfruits**;
therefore get **chattelize** wisdom:
and with all thy **getting chattelizing**
get **understanding chattelize discernment**.
8 Exalt her, and she shall **promote exalt** thee:
she shall bring thee to honour,
when thou dost embrace her.
9 She shall give to thine head
an **ornament a wreath** of **grace charism**:
with a crown of glory beauty
shall she **deliver to shield** thee.
10 Hear, O my son, and **receive take** my sayings;
and the years of thy life shall **be many abundant**.
11 I have taught thee in the way of wisdom;
I have **led aimed** thee in **right paths routes of straightness**.
12 When thou goest,
thy **steps paces** shall not be straitened;
and when thou runnest, thou shalt not stumble.
13 Take **fast hold of instruction Uphold discipline**;
let her not go:
keep **guard** her; for she is thy life.
14 Enter not into the path of the wicked,
and go not **nor be blithesome** in the way of evil men.
15 Avoid it, pass not by it,
turn **deviate** from it, and pass away.
16 For they sleep not,
except they have **done mischief vilified**;
and their sleep is **taken away stripped**,
unless they cause some to **fall trip**.
17 For they eat the bread of wickedness,
and drink the wine of violence.
18 But the path of the just is as the **shining brilliant** light,
that **shineth goeth on and lighteneth** more and more
unto the **perfect establishing** the day.
19 The way of the wicked is as darkness:
they know not at what they stumble.
20 My son, **attend hearken** to my words;
incline spread thine ear unto my sayings.

PROVERBS 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Go and return, and tomorrow I give
— when you have it by you:
29 inscribe not evil against your friend
seeing he settles confidently by you:
30 strive not with humanity gratuitously
if he deals you no evil:
31 neither envy the man of violence
nor choose his ways:
32 for he who perverts is abhorrence to Yah Veh;
and his private counsel is with the straight.

The curse of Yah Veh
is in the house of the wicked;
and he blesses the habitation of rest of the just.
34 Surely he scorns the scornors;
yet he gives charism to the humble:
35 the wise inherit honor;
and abasement is the exaltation of fools.

4 Hear, you sons, the discipline of a father;
and hearken to know discernment;
2 for I give you good doctrine:
forsake not my torah.
3 For I was a son of my father — tender;
4 an only at the face of my mother:
and teaches me and says to me,
O that your heart uphold my words;
guard my misvoth and live.

5 Chattelize wisdom; chattelize discernment:
neither forget nor spread
from the sayings of my mouth.

6 Forsake her not, and she guards you;
love her, and she guards you:
7 the firstfruits, wisdom; chattelize wisdom:
and with all your chattelizing chattelize discernment.

8 Exalt her and she exalts you;
she honors you when you embrace her:
9 she gives your head a wreath of charism;
with a crown of beauty she shields you.

10 Hear, O my son, and take my sayings;
and abound the years of your life:
11 I teach you in the way of wisdom;
I aim you in routes of straightness:
12 so that as you walk, your paces constrain not;
and as you run, you stumble not.

13 Uphold discipline; let not go:
guard her; for she is your life:
14 neither enter the path of the wicked
nor blithe in the way of evil.
15 Avoid, pass not in;
deviate therefrom, and pass on:
16 for they sleep not unless they vilify;
and they strip their sleep until they trip some:
17 for they eat the bread of wickedness
and drink the wine of violence.
18 And the path of the just is as the brilliant light
that goes and lights more and more
to establish the day.
19 The way of the wicked is as darkness;
they know not at what they stumble.

20 My son, hearken to my words;
spread your ear to my sayings:

PROVERBS 4, 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

21 Let them not *depart* **pervert** from thine eyes;
keep **guard** them in the midst of thine heart.

22 For they are life unto those that find them,
and *health* **healing** to all their flesh.

23 Keep **Guard** thy heart with *all diligence* **under guard**;
for out of it are the issues of life.

24 Put away **Turn aside** from thee
a froward **perverted** mouth,
and perverse lips *put* **remove** far from thee.

25 Let thine eyes look *right on* **straightforward**,
and let thine eyelids
look straight before **straighten in front of** thee.

26 Ponder **Weigh** the *path* **route** of thy feet,
and let all thy ways be established.

27 Turn **Spread** not to the right *hand* nor to the left:
remove **turn** thy foot from evil.

5 My son, *attend* **hearken** unto my wisdom,
and bow **spread** thine ear to my *understanding* **discernment**:

2 That thou mayest regard *discretion* **intrigue**,
and that thy lips may *keep* **guard** knowledge.

3 For the lips of a *strange woman* **stranger**
drop as an honeycomb,
and her *mouth* **palate** is smoother than *oil* **ointment**:

4 But her *end* **finality** is bitter as wormwood,
sharp as a *twoedged sword* **of mouths**.

5 Her feet *go down* **descend** to death;
her *steps* **paces** take hold on *hell* **sheol**.

6 Lest thou shouldest *ponder* **weigh** the path of life,
her *ways are* **moveable routes drift**,
that thou *canst* not know them.

7 Hear me now therefore, O ye *children* **sons**,
and *depart* **turn not aside**
from the *words* **sayings** of my mouth.

8 Remove thy way far from her,
and come not nigh the *door* **portal** of her house:

9 Lest thou give thine honour unto others,
and thy years unto the cruel:

10 Lest strangers be *filled* **satiated**
with thy *wealth* **produce**;

and thy *labours* **contorting** be in the house of a stranger;

11 And thou *mourn* **growl** at the *last* **finality**,
when thy *flesh* and thy *body* **meat**
are *consumed* **finished off**,

12 And say, How have I hated *instruction* **discipline**,
and my heart *despised* **scorned** reproof;

13 And have not obeyed the voice of my teachers,
nor *inclined* **spread** mine ear
to them that *instructed* **taught** me!

14 I was almost in all evil
in the midst of the congregation and *assembly* **witness**.

15 Drink waters out of thine own *cistern* **well**,
and *running waters* **flowings** out of thine own well.

16 Let thy fountains
be dispersed abroad **shattered in the outways**,
and *rivers* **rivulets** of waters
in the *streets* **broadways**.

17 Let them be only thine own,
and not strangers' with thee.

18 Let thy fountain be blessed:
and *rejoice* **cheer** with the *wife* **woman** of thy youth.

19 Let her be as the *loving hind* **of loves**
and *pleasant roe* **of charism**;
let her *breasts* **nipples** satisfy thee at all times;
and *be thou ravished* **err inadvertently**
always **continually** with her love.

20 And why *wilt* **shalt** thou, my son,
be ravished **err inadvertently**
with a *strange woman* **stranger**,
and embrace the bosom of a stranger?

21 For the ways of man
are *before* **in front of** the eyes of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and he *pondereth* **weigheth** all his *goings* **routes**.

22 His own *iniquities* **perversities**
shall *take* **capture** the wicked himself,
and he shall be *holden* **upheld** with the cords of his sins.

23 He shall die without *instruction* **discipline**;
and in the greatness of his folly
he shall *go astray* **err inadvertently**.

PROVERBS 4, 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

21 pervert them not from your eyes;
guard them midst your heart:

22 for they are life to them who find them
and healing to all their flesh:
guard your heart under guard;
for from it are the issues of life:

24 turn aside from a perverted mouth
and perverse lips remove far from you
— your eyes looking straightforward
and straightening your eyelids in front of you:

26 weigh the route of your feet
and establish all your ways:

27 spread neither to the right nor to the left;
turn aside your foot from evil.

5 My son, hearken to my wisdom;
spread your ear to my discernment:
to regard intrigue
and your lips guard knowledge:

3 for the lips of a stranger drip as a honeycomb
and her palate is smoother than ointment:
but her finality is bitter as wormwood
sharp as a sword of mouths:

5 her feet descend to death;
her paces hold on to sheol:
lest you weigh the path of life
her routes drift so that you know them not.

7 Hear me now, O you sons,
and turn not aside from the sayings of my mouth:
remove your way far from her
and come not near the portal of her house;
lest you give your honor to others
and your years to the cruel:

10 lest strangers satiate with your produce;
and your contorting be in the house of a stranger:
and you growl at the finality
when your flesh and your meat finish off,
and say, How I hated discipline
and my heart scorned reproof:

13 and I neither obeyed the voice of my teachers
nor spread my ear to them who taught me:
I was almost in all evil
midst the congregation and witness.

15 Drink waters from your own well
and flowings from your own well:
why shatter the fountains in the outways
and rivulets of waters in the broadways?
They are only your own
and not strangers with you.
Blessed — your fountain.

19 Cheer with the woman of your youth;
she is as the hind of loves and the roe of charism:
her nipples satisfy you at all times;
and continually err inadvertently with her love.
And why, my son,
err inadvertently with a stranger?
— embrace the bosom of a stranger?

21 For the ways of man
are in front of the eyes of Yah Veh
and he weighs all his routes.

22 His own perversities capture the wicked
— upheld by the cords of his own sins:
he dies without discipline;
and in the greatness of his folly
he errs inadvertently.

PROVERBS 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 My son, if thou *be surety* **pledgest**
for thy friend,
if thou hast *stricken* **clapped** thy *hand* **palm**
with a stranger,
2 Thou art snared
with the *words* **sayings** of thy mouth,
thou art *taken* **captured**
with the *words* **sayings** of thy mouth.
3 *Do Work* this now, my son, and deliver thyself,
when thou art come into the *hand* **palm** of thy friend;
go, *humble thyself* **prostrate**,
and *make sure* **encourage** thy friend.
4 Give not sleep to thine eyes,
nor *slumber* **drowsiness** to thine eyelids.
5 Deliver thyself
as a *roe* **gazelle** from the hand of the *hunter*,
and as a bird from the hand of the *fowler* **snarer**.
6 Go to the ant, thou *sluggard* **sloth**;
consider **see** her ways, and *be wise* **enwisen**:
7 Which having no *guide* **commander**,
overseer **officer**, or *ruler* **sovereign**,
8 *Provideth* **Prepareth** her *meat* **bread** in the summer,
and *gathereth* **harvesteth** her food in the harvest.
9 How long *wilt* **shalt** thou *sleep* **lie down**,
O *sluggard* **sloth**?
when *wilt* **shalt** thou arise out of thy sleep?
10 Yet a little sleep, a little *slumber* **drowsiness**,
a little *folding* **clasp**ing of the hands to *sleep* **lie down**:
11 So shall thy poverty come
as one that *travelleth* **walketh**,
and thy *want* **lack** as an *armed* **a man with buckler**.
12 A *naughty person* **human** *Beli Yaal*,
a *wicked man* **man of mischief**,
walketh with a *froward* **perverted** mouth.
13 He *winketh* **blinketh** with his eyes,
he *speaketh* **uttereth** with his feet,
he *teacheth* **pointeth** with his fingers;
14 *Frowardness* **Perversion** is in his heart,
he *deviseth* **mischief** *inscribeth* **evil**
continually **at all times**;
he *soweth* **discord** *sendeth* **contention**.
15 Therefore shall his calamity come suddenly;
suddenly **in a blink** shall he be broken
without *remedy* **healing**.
16 These *six things*
doth the LORD **hate** *Yah Veh* **hateth**:
yea, seven
are an *abomination* **abhorrence** unto *him* **his soul**:
17 A *proud look* **lofty eye**, a *lying* **false** tongue,
and hands that *shed* **pour** innocent blood,
18 An heart that *deviseth* **inscribeth**
wicked imaginations **mischievous fabrications**,
feet that *be swift* **hasten** in running to *mischief* **evil**,
19 A false witness that *speaketh* **breatheth** lies,
and he that *soweth* **discord** *spreadeth* **contention**
among brethren.
20 My son,
keep **guard** thy father's *commandment* **misvah**,
and *forsake* **abandon** not the *law* **torah** of thy mother:
21 Bind them continually upon thine heart,
and *tie* **fasten** them about thy *neck* **throat**.
22 When thou goest, it shall lead thee;
when thou sleepest **liest down**, it shall *keep* **guard** thee;
and when thou awakest, it shall *talk* **meditate** with thee.
23 For the *commandment* **misvah** is a lamp;
and the *law* **torah** is light;
and reproofs of *instruction* **discipline** are the way of life:
24 To *keep* **guard** thee from the evil woman,
from the *flattery* of the tongue
of a *strange woman* **stranger that smoothes it over**.
25 *Lust* **Desire** not after her beauty in thine heart;
neither let her take thee with her eyelids.
26 For by means of a *whorish woman*
a man is brought to a piece of bread:
For as a woman whoreth for a round of bread,
and the *adulteress* **so a man's woman**
will **shall** hunt for the *precious life* **esteemed soul**.
27 Can a man take fire in his bosom,

PROVERBS 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 My son,
if you pledge for your friend,
clap your palm with a stranger,
2 snare yourself by the sayings of your mouth;
capture yourself by the sayings of your mouth;
3 work this now, my son, and deliver yourself:
when you come to the palm of your friend
go, prostrate and encourage your friend;
4 neither give sleep to your eyes
nor drowsiness to your eyelids;
5 deliver yourself as a gazelle from the hand
— as a bird from the hand of the snarer.
6 Go to the ant, you sloth;
see her ways and enwisen:
7 who, having no commander, officer, or sovereign,
8 prepares her bread in the summer
and harvests her food in the harvest.
9 Until when lie you down, O sloth?
When rise you from your sleep?
10 A little sleep; a little drowsiness;
a little clasping of the hands to lie down:
11 thus comes your poverty — as one who walks
and your lack — as a man with buckler.
12 A human *Beli Yaal* — a man of mischief
walks with a perverted mouth;
13 he blinks with his eyes;
he utters with his feet;
he points with his fingers:
14 perversion is in his heart;
he inscribes evil at all times;
he sends contention:
15 so his calamity comes suddenly;
in a blink — broken without healing.
16 These six *Yah Veh* hates;
yes, seven are an abhorrence to his soul;
17 a lofty eye; a false tongue;
and hands pouring innocent blood;
18 a heart inscribing mischievous fabrications;
feet hastening to run to evil;
19 a false witness breathing lies;
— spreading contention among brothers.
20 My son, guard the *misvah* of your father
and abandon not the *torah* of your mother:
21 bind them continually on your heart
and fasten them about your throat.
22 in going, it leads you;
in lying down, it guards you;
and in waking, it meditates with you.
23 For the *misvah* is a lamp;
and the *torah* a light;
24 and reproofs of discipline, the way of life
to guard you from the evil woman:
from the tongue of a stranger
who smoothes it over.
25 Neither desire her beauty in your heart;
nor *be* overtaken by her eyelids:
26 for a woman whores for a round of bread;
and a woman of a man hunts for the esteemed soul.
27 Takes a man fire in his bosom

PROVERBS 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

28 and his clothes not be burned?
Can *one a man* go upon *hot* coals,
and his feet not be *burned blister*?
29 So **Thus** he
that goeth in to his *neighbour's wife* **friend's woman**;
whosoever toucheth her
shall not be *innocent* **exonerated**.
30 *Men do not* despise **not** a thief,
if he steal to *satisfy* **fill** his soul
when he *is hungry* **famisheth**;
31 But if he be found,
he shall *restore* **shalam** sevenfold;
he shall give all the *substance* **wealth** of his house.
32 But whoso *committeth adultery* **adulterizeth**
with a woman
lacketh *understanding* **heart**:
he that *doeth* **worketh** it *destroyeth* **ruineth** his own soul.
33 A *wound* **plague** and *dishonour* **abasement**
shall he *get* **find** him;
and his reproach shall not be wiped away.
34 For jealousy is the *rage* **fury** of a *man* **the mighty**;
therefore he *will* **shall** not spare
in the day of *vengeance* **avengement**.
35 He *will* **shall** not *regard* **lift** the *face*
of any ransom **koper/atonement**;
neither *will he rest content* **shall he will**
though thou *givest many gifts* **aboundest bribes**.

7 My son, *keep* **guard** my *words* **sayings**,
and *lay up* **treasure** my *commandment* **misvoth** with thee.
2 *Keep* **Guard** my *commandments* **misvoth**, and live;
and my *law* **torah** as the *apple* **pupil** of thine eye.
3 Bind them upon thy fingers,
4 *write* **inscribe** them upon the table of thine heart.
5 Say unto wisdom, Thou art my sister;
and call *understanding* **discernment** thy *kinswoman* **kin**:
6 That they may *keep* **guard** thee from the strange woman,
7 from the stranger
which *flattereth* **smootheth over** with her *words* **sayings**.
8 For at the window of my house
I looked through my *casement* **lattice**,
9 And *beheld* **saw** among the *simple ones* **gullible**,
10 I discerned among the *youths* **sons**,
11 a *young man void of understanding* **lad lacking heart**,
12 Passing through the street *near* **beside** her corner;
13 and he *went* **paced** the way to her house,
14 In the *twilight* **evening breeze**,
15 in the evening **of the day**,
16 in the *black and dark night* **darkness of midnight**:
17 And, behold, there met him a woman
with the *attire* **masculine garment** of an *harlot* **a whore**,
18 and *subtil* **of with guarded** heart.
19 (She *is loud* **roareth** and *is stubborn* **revolteth**;
20 her feet *abide* **tabernacle** not in her house:
21 *Now is she without* **At this time in the outways**,
22 *now in the streets* **at that time in the broadways**,
23 and *lieth in wait* **at lurketh beside** every corner.)
24 So she *caught* **held** him, and kissed him,
25 and with an *impudent* **strengthened** face said unto him,
26 I have *peace offerings* **shelamim** with me;
27 this day have I *payed* **shalamed** my vows.
28 Therefore came I forth to meet thee,
29 *diligently to seek* **seeking early** thy face,
30 and I have found thee.
31 I have *decked* **spread** my *bed* **bedstead**
with *coverings of tapestry* **spreads**,
32 with *carved works* **carvings**,
33 with *fine linen* **tapestry** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
34 I have *perfumed* **rubbed** my bed with myrrh,
35 aloes, and cinnamon.
36 Come, let us *take our fill of love* **satiate with loves**
37 until the morning:
38 let us *solace ourselves* **leap for joy** with loves.
39 For the *goodman* **man** is not at home,
40 he is gone a *long* **far** journey:
41 He hath taken a *bag* **bundle** of *money* **silver**
42 with *him* **in his hand**,
43 and *will* **shall** come home
44 at the day *appointed* **of the full moon**.

PROVERBS 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

28 and not burn his clothes?
— a man go on coals
and not blister his feet?
29 Thus he who goes in to the woman of his friend;
whoever touches her is not exonerated.
30 Despise not a thief
if he steals to fill his soul when he famishes;
31 and being found out, he shalams sevenfold;
he gives all the wealth of his house.
32 He who adulterizes with a woman, lacks heart;
he who thus works ruins his own soul:
33 he finds plague and abasement;
and his reproach wipes not away.
34 For jealousy is the fury of the mighty;
and he spares not in the day of avengement;
35 he neither lifts the face of any koper/atonement;
nor wills he though you abound bribes.

7 My son, guard my sayings
and treasure my misvoth with you:
2 guard my misvoth and live;
and my torah as the pupil of your eye:
3 bind them on your fingers;
4 inscribe them on the table of your heart:
5 say to wisdom, You are my sister;
and call discernment your kin
to guard you from the strange woman
— from the stranger
who smoothes it over with her sayings.
6 For at a window of my house
I look through my lattice;
7 and see among the gullible:
I discern among the sons
8 a lad lacking heart
9 passing through the street beside her corner:
and he paces the way to her house
10 in the evening breeze
— in the evening of the day
in the darkness of midnight:
11 and behold, a woman meets him
with the masculine garment of a whore:
with guarded heart
12 she roars and revolts;
her feet tabernacle not in her house
— at this time in the outways
at that time in the broadways
and lurks beside every corner.
13 She holds him and kisses him
and with strengthened face says to him,
14 I have shelamim with me;
15 this day I shalamed my vows:
so I come to meet you
early seeking your face, and I find you:
16 I spread my bedstead with spreads,
with carvings, with tapestry of Misrayim:
17 I rubbed my bed
with myrrh, aloes and cinnamon:
18 come, we satiate with loves until the morning
— leap for joy with loves:
19 for the man is not in his house;
— gone on a far journey:
20 he took a bundle of silver in his hand;
and comes home at the day of the full moon.

PROVERBS 7, 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

21 With her *much fair speech* **abundant doctrine**
she caused him to *yield* **spread**,
with the *flattering* **smoothing over** of her lips
she *forced* **drove** him.

22 He goeth after her *straightway* **suddenly**,
as an ox goeth to the slaughter,
or as a fool
to the *correction* **discipline** of the *stocks* **tinklers**;

23 Till a *dart* **an arrow** strike through his liver;
as a bird hasteth to the snare,
and knoweth not that it is for his *life* **soul**.

24 Hearken unto me now therefore, *O ye children* **sons**,
and *attend* **hearken** to the *words* **sayings** of my mouth.

25 Let not thine heart *decline* **deviate** to her ways,
go **stray** not *astray* in her paths.

26 For she hath cast down many *wounded* **pierced**:
yea, many strong men **mighty**
have been *slain* **slaughtered** by her.

27 Her house is the way to *hell* **sheol**,
going down **descending** to the chambers of death.

8

Doth not wisdom *cry* **call**?
and *understanding* put forth **discernment** give her voice?

2 She standeth in the top of *high places* **the heights**,
by the way *in between* the *places* **houses** of the paths.

3 She *crieth* **shouteth** at the *gates* **handle of the portals**,
at the *entry* **mouth** of the city,
at the *coming in* **entry** at the *doors* **portals**.

4 Unto you, O men, I call;
and my voice is to the sons of *man* **humanity**.

5 *O ye simple* **gullible**,
understand wisdom **discern strategy**:
and, ye fools,
be ye of an *understanding* **a discerning** heart.

6 Hear;
for I *will* **shall** speak of *excellent things* **eminence**;
and the opening of my lips
shall be *right things* **straightnesses**.

7 For my *mouth* **palate** shall *speak* **meditate** truth;
and wickedness is an *abomination* **abhorrence** to my lips.

8 All the *words* **sayings** of my mouth
are in *righteousness* **justness**;
there is *nothing froward* **naught twisted**
or *perverse* **perverted** in them.

9 They are all *plain* **straightforward**
to him that *understandeth* **discerneth**,
and *right* **straight** to them that find knowledge.

10 Receive **Take** my *instruction* **discipline**, and not silver;
and knowledge rather than choice *gold* **ore**.

11 For wisdom is better than *rubies* **pearls**;
and all *the things that may be desired* **those desires**
are not to be compared to it.

12 I wisdom dwell with *prudence* **strategy**,
and find out knowledge of *witty inventions* **intrigue**.

13 The *fear* **awe** of the **LORD Yah Veh** is to hate evil:
pride **pomp**, and *arrogancy* **pompousness**,
and the *froward* mouth **of perversions**, do I hate.

14 Counsel is mine, and *sound wisdom* **substance**:
I am *understanding* **discernment**; I have *strength* **might**.

15 By me *kings* **sovereigns** reign,
and *princes* **potentates**
decree justice **set statutes of justness**.

16 By me *princes* **rule** *governors* **govern**,
and *nobles* **volunteers**, even all the judges of the earth.

17 I love them that love me;
and those that seek me early shall find me.

18 Riches and honour are with me;
yea, durable riches **expensive antiques**
and *righteousness* **justness**.

19 My fruit is better than *gold* **ore**,
yea, than fine **pure** gold;
and my *revenue* **produce** than choice silver.

20 I *lead* **walk** in the way of *righteousness* **justness**,
in the midst of the paths of judgment:

21 That I may cause *those that love me* **my lovers**
to inherit substance; and I *will* **shall** fill their treasures.

22 *The LORD* **possessed Yah Veh** *chattelized* me
in the beginning of his way,

PROVERBS 7, 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

21 With her abundant doctrine, she spreads him out;
with the smoothing over of her lips she drives him:
22 suddenly he goes after her
— as an ox going to the slaughter
— as a fool to the discipline of tinklers:
23 until an arrow strikes through his liver;
as a bird hastens to the snare
and knows not it is for his soul.

24 Now, you sons, hearken to me;
25 hearken to the sayings of my mouth:
neither deviate your heart to her ways;
nor stray in her paths:
26 for she casts down many pierced;
slaughters many mighty:
27 her house is the way to sheol
descending to the chambers of death.

8

Wisdom, calls she not?
And discernment, give her voice?
2 She stands in the top of the heights by the way
between the houses of the paths;
3 she shouts at the handle of the portals
— at the mouth of the city
at the entry at the portals.

4 To you, O men, I call;
and my voice to the sons of humanity:
5 to you, O gullible, discern strategy;
and you, O fools, discern heart:
6 hear; for I speak of eminence;
and the opening of my lips of straightnesses:
7 for my palate meditates truth;
and wickedness is an abhorrence to my lips:
8 all the sayings of my mouth are in justness;
9 naught of them *is* twisted or perverted:
they are all straightforward to him who discerns
and straight to them who find knowledge.

10 Take my discipline and not silver;
and knowledge rather than choice ore:
11 better, wisdom than pearls;
and all those desires not comparable.
12 I — wisdom dwell with strategy
and find out knowledge of intrigue.

13 The awe of Yah Veh is to hate evil;
pomp and pompousness and the evil way
and the mouth of perversions, I hate:
14 counsel and substance are mine;
I — discernment; I have might:
15 by me sovereigns reign
and potentates set statutes of justness:
16 by me governors govern;
and volunteers; all the judges of the earth.

17 I love them who love me;
and they who seek me early find me:
18 riches and honor are with me;
expensive antiques and justness:
19 better, my fruit than ore; yes, than pure gold;
and my produce than choice silver.

20 I walk in the way of justness
midst the paths of judgment;
21 that my lovers inherit substance;
and I fill their treasures.
22 Yah Veh chattelized me
in the beginning of his way

PROVERBS 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 before **in** his works of old **ancient deeds**.
I was set up **libated** from everlasting **eternity**,
from the **beginning top**,
or ever the earth was **from the antiquity of the earth**.
24 When there were no **depths abysses**,
I was **brought forth writhed**;
when there were no fountains
abounding heavy with water.
25 Before the mountains were **settled sunk**,
before **at the face of** the hills was I **brought forth writhed**:
26 While as yet he had not **made worked** the earth,
nor the **fields outways**,
nor the **highest part top** of the dust of the world.
27 When he prepared the heavens, I was there:
when he **set a compass engraved a circle**
upon the face of the **depth abyss**:
28 When he **established strengthened**
the **clouds vapours** above:
when he strengthened
the **fountains eyes** of the **deep abyss**:
29 When he gave **set** to the sea his **decree statute**,
that the waters
should not pass his **commandment mouth**:
when he **appointed prescribed**
the foundations of the earth:
30 Then I was **by beside** him, as one brought up **with him**:
and I was **daily day by day** his delight,
rejoicing always laughing at all times
before him **by his face**;
31 **Rejoicing Laughing**
in the **habitable part world** of his earth;
and my delights were with the sons of **men humanity**.
32 Now therefore hearken unto me, O ye **children sons**:
for **blessed blithe** are they that **keep guard** my ways.
33 Hear **instruction discipline**, and **be wise enwise**,
and refuse it not.
34 **Blessed Blithe** is the **man human** that heareth me,
watching daily guarding day by day at my gates,
waiting at the posts of my **doors portals**.
35 For whoso findeth me findeth life,
and shall **obtain favour promote pleasure**
of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
36 But he that sinneth against me
wrongeth violateth his own soul:
all they that hate me love death.

9 Wisdom hath builded her house,
she hath hewn out her seven pillars:
2 She hath **killed slaughtered** her **beasts slaughter**;
she hath **mingled mixed** her wine;
she hath also **furnished arranged** her table.
3 She hath sent forth her **maidens lasses**:
she **crieth calleth**
upon the **highest places high arches** of the city,
4 Whoso is **simple gullible**, let him turn in hither:
as for him that wanteth understanding
whoever lacketh heart, she saith to him,
5 Come, eat of my bread,
and drink of the wine which I have **mingled mixed**.
6 Forsake the **foolish gullible**, and live;
and go **blithesome**
in the way of **understanding discernment**.
7 He that **reproveth disciplineth** a scorners
getteth taketh to himself **shame abasement**:
and he that **rebuketh a reproveth the** wicked **man**
getteth himself a blot shall be blemished.
8 Reprove not a scorners, lest he hate thee:
rebuke reprove a wise **man**, and he **will shall** love thee.
9 Give **instruction to a wise man to the wise**,
and he **will be yet wiser shall enwise**:
teach a just man let the just know,
and he **will shall** increase in **learning doctrine**.
10 The **fear awe** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
is the beginning of wisdom:
and the knowledge of the holy
is **understanding discernment**.
11 For by me thy days shall **be multiplied abound**,
and the years of thy life shall **be increased increase**.

PROVERBS 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— in his ancient deeds.
23 I was libated from eternity
— from the top — from the antiquity of the earth.

24 When there were no abysses, I was writhed;
when there were no fountains heavy with water:
25 ere the mountains were sunk
at the face of the hills, I was writhed:
26 while as yet he had neither worked the earth
nor the outways
nor the top of the dust of the world:
27 when he prepared the heavens, I was there;
when he engraved a circle on the face of the abyss;
28 when he strengthened the vapours above;
when he strengthened the eyes of the abyss;
29 when he set his statue to the sea,
that the waters not pass his mouth;
when he prescribed the foundations of the earth;
30 then I am beside him, as one brought up;
and day by day I am his delight,
at all times laughing by his face;
31 laughing in the world of his earth;
and my delights are with the sons of humanity.

32 Now, O sons, hearken to me,
for blithe — they who guard my ways;
33 hear discipline and enwise and refuse it not:
34 Blithe — the human who hears me;
guarding day by day at my gates;
waiting at the posts of my portals.
35 For whoever finds me finds life
and promotes the pleasure of Yah Veh:
36 and whoever sins against me
violates his own soul;
all who hate me love death.

9 Wisdom built her house;
she hewed her pillars — seven;
2 she slaughtered her slaughter;
she mixed her wine;
she arranged her table;
3 she sent forth her lasses;
she calls on the high arches of the city,
4 Whoever is gullible, turn in here!

5 Whoever lacks heart, she says to him,
Come, eat of my bread
and drink of the wine I mixed!
6 Forsake the gullible and live;
blithesome in the way of discernment.

7 He who disciplines a scorners
takes abasement to himself:
and he who reproves the wicked
blemishes.
8 Reprove not a scorners, lest he hate you;
reprove a wise, and he loves you:
9 give to the wise and he enwise;
the just know, and increase in doctrine.

10 To awe Yah Veh is the beginning of wisdom;
and the knowledge of the holy is discernment:
11 for by me your days abound
and the years of your life increase:

PROVERBS 9, 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 *If thou be wise* **In enwisening,**
thou shalt be *wise for thyself* **enwisened:**
but if thou scornest, thou alone shalt bear it.
13 A foolish woman *is clamorous* **roareth:**
she is simple — **gullible**, and knoweth *nothing* **not what.**
14 For she *sitteth* **settleteth** at the *door* **portal** of her house,
on a *seat* **throne** in the *high places* **heights** of the city,
15 To call *passengers* **them who pass by the way**
who go right on **to straighten** their ways:
16 Whoso is *simple* **gullible**, let him turn in hither:
and as for him that *wanteth understanding*
whoever lacketh heart, she saith to him,
17 *Stolen waters are sweet* **sweeten,**
and *bread eaten in secret* **covert bread**
is pleasant **pleaseth.**
18 But he knoweth not that *the dead* **ghosts** are there;
and that her *guests* **called ones**
are in the depths of *hell* **sheol.**

10

The proverbs of *Solomon* **Shelomoh.**
A wise son *maketh a glad* **cheereth** a father:
but a foolish son is the *heaviness* **grief** of his mother.
2 Treasures of wickedness *profit nothing* **benefit naught:**
but *righteousness delivereth* **justness rescueth** from death.
3 *The LORD will* **Yah Veh shall** not suffer **allow**
the soul of the *righteous* **just** to famish:
but he *casteth away* **expelleth**
the *substance* **calamity** of the wicked.
4 He *becometh poor* **impoverisheth**
that *dealeth with a slack hand* **worketh a deceitful palm:**
but the hand of the *diligent* **decisive**
maketh rich **enricheth.**
5 He that *gathereth* **harvesteth** in summer
is a *wise* **comprehending** son:
but he that *sleepeth* **soundly** in harvest
is a son that *causeth shame* **shameth.**
6 Blessings are upon the head of the just:
but violence covereth the mouth of the wicked.
7 The *memory* **memorial** of the just
is *blessed* **for blessings:**
but the name of the wicked shall rot.
8 The wise in heart
will receive commandments **shall take misvoth:**
but a *prating fool* **of lips** shall fall.
9 He that *walketh uprightly* **integringly**
walketh surely **confidently:**
but he that *perverteth his ways* shall be known.
10 He that *winketh* **blinketh** with the eye
causeth sorrow **giveth contortion:**
but a *prating fool* **of lips** shall fall.
11 The mouth of a *righteous man* **the just**
is a *well* **fountain** of life:
but violence covereth the mouth of the wicked.
12 Hatred *stirreth up strifes* **waketh contentions:**
but love covereth all *sins* **rebellions.**
13 In the lips of him that *hath understanding* **discerneth**
wisdom is found:
but a *rod* **scion** is for the back of him
that *is void of understanding* **lacketh heart.**
14 **The Wise men lay up** **treasure** knowledge:
but the mouth of the *foolish* **fool** is near *destruction* **ruin.**
15 The *rich man's* wealth **of the rich**
is his *strong city* **of strength:**
the *destruction* **ruin** of the poor is their poverty.
16 The *labour* **deed** of the *righteous* **tendeth just be** to life:
the *fruit* **produce** of the wicked to sin.
17 He is in the way of life
that *keepeth instruction* **guardeth discipline:**
but he that *refuseth* **forsaketh** reproof *erreteth* **strayeth.**
18 He that *hideth hatred* with *lying* **false** lips,
and he that *uttereth a slander*, is a fool.
19 In the *multitude* **abundance** of words
there wanteth not sin **rebellion ceaseth not:**
but he that *refraineth* **spareth** his lips
is wise **comprehendeth.**
20 The tongue of the just is as choice silver:
the heart of the wicked is little worth.
21 The lips of the *righteous* **feed just befriend** many:
but fools die for *want* **lack** of *wisdom* **heart.**

PROVERBS 9, 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 in enwisening, enwisen;
but if you scorn, you bear it alone.
13 A foolish woman roars;
— gullible and knows not what:
14 and she settles at the portal of her house,
on a throne in the heights of the city,
15 to call them who pass by the way
to straighten their ways,
16 Whoever is gullible, turn in here!
— and to whoever lacks heart, she says,
17 Stolen waters sweeten
and covert bread pleases!
18 — and he knows not that ghosts are there;
and that her called ones are in the depths of sheol.

10

The Proverbs of Shelomoh.
A wise son cheers a father;
and a foolish son is the grief of his mother.
2 Treasures of wickedness benefit naught;
and justness rescues from death.
3 Yah Veh allows not the soul of the just to famish;
and he expels the calamity of the wicked.
4 He who works a deceitful palm impoverishes;
and the hand of the decisive enriches.
5 He who harvests in summer
is a comprehending son;
he who sleeps soundly in harvest
is a son who shames.
6 Blessings *are* on the head of the just;
and violence covers the mouth of the wicked.
7 The memorial of the just *is* for blessings;
and the name of the wicked rots.
8 The wise in heart take misvoth;
and a fool of lips falls.
9 He who walks integringly walks confidently;
and he who perverts his ways is known.
10 He who blinks with the eye gives contortion;
and a fool of lips falls.
11 The mouth of the just *is* a fountain of life;
and violence covers the mouth of the wicked.
12 Hatred wakens contentions;
and love covers all rebellions.
13 In the lips of him who discerns
wisdom *is* found;
and a scion is for the back of him
who lacks heart.
14 The wise treasure knowledge;
and the mouth of the fool *is* near ruin.
15 The wealth of the rich *is* his city of strength;
the ruin of the poor *is* their poverty.
16 The deed of the just *is* to life;
the produce of the wicked to sin.
17 He *is* in the way of life who guards discipline;
and he who forsakes reproof strays.
18 He who hides hatred with false lips
and he who utters a slander, *is* a fool.
19 In the abundance of words, rebellion ceases not;
and he who spares his lips, comprehends.
20 The tongue of the just *is* as choice silver;
the heart of the wicked *is* of little worth.
21 The lips of the just befriend many;
and fools die for lack of heart.

PROVERBS 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

22 The blessing of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
it maketh rich **enricheth**,
and he addeth no *sorrow* **contorting** with it.
23 It is as *sport* **ridicule** to a fool
to do mischief **work intrigue**:
but a man of *understanding* **discernment** hath wisdom.
24 The *fear* **terror** of the wicked,
it shall come upon him:
but the desire of the *righteous* **just**
shall be *granted* **given**.
25 As the *whirlwind* **hurricane** passeth,
so is the wicked *no more* **be not**:
but the *righteous* **just** is an *everlasting* **eternal** foundation.
26 As vinegar to the teeth, and as smoke to the eyes,
so is the *sluggard* **sloth** to them that send him.
27 The *fear* **awe** of the *LORD Yah Veh*
shall be *prolonged* **addeth** days:
but the years of the wicked
shall be *shortened* **curtailed**.
28 The hope of the *righteous* **just**
shall be *gladness* **cheerfulness**:
but the *expectation* **hope** of the wicked
shall *perish* **destruct**.
29 The way of the *LORD Yah Veh*
is *strength* **be a stronghold** to the *upright* **integrity**:
but *destruction* **ruin**
shall be to the *workers* **doers** of *iniquity* **mischief**.
30 The *righteous* **just**
shall never be *removed* **totter eternally**:
but the wicked shall not *inhabit* **tabernacle on** the earth.
31 The mouth of the just
bringeth forth **germinateth** wisdom:
but the *froward* tongue of **perversions** shall be cut out.
32 The lips of the *righteous* **just**
know what is *acceptable* **pleaseth**:
but the mouth of the wicked
speaketh frowardness **perverteth**.

11

A false balance **Balances of deceit**
is *abomination* **are an abhorrence** to the *LORD Yah Veh*:
but a *just weight* **stone of shalom** is his *delight* **pleasure**.
2 *When pride* **Arrogance** cometh,
then cometh *shame* **abasement**:
but with the *lowly* **humble** is wisdom.
3 The integrity of the *upright* **straight**
shall *guide* **lead** them:
but the *perverseness*
of *transgressors* **them who deal covertly**
shall *destroy* **rage** them.
4 *Riches profit* **Wealth benefiteth** not
in the day of *wrath* **fury**:
but *righteousness* **delivereth** **justness** **rescueth** from death.
5 The *righteousness* **justness** of the *perfect* **integrity**
shall *direct* **straighten** his way:
but the wicked shall fall by his own wickedness.
6 The *righteousness* **justness** of the *upright* **straight**
shall *deliver* **rescue** them:
but *transgressors* **they who deal covertly**
shall be *taken* **captured**
in their own *naughtiness* **calamity**.
7 When a wicked *man* **human** dieth,
his *expectation* **hope** shall *perish* **destruct**:
and the hope of *unjust men* **the mischievous**
perisheth **shall destruct**.
8 The *righteous* **just**
is *delivered* **rescued** out of *trouble* **tribulation**,
and the wicked cometh in his stead.
9 An *hypocrite* **A profaner** with his mouth
destroyeth **ruineth** his *neighbour* **friend**:
but through knowledge
shall the just be *delivered* **rescued**.
10 When it *goeth well* **be good** with the *righteous* **just**,
the city *rejoiceth* **jumpeth for joy**:
and when the wicked *perish* **destruct**, there is shouting.
11 By the blessing of the *upright* **straight**
the city is *exalted* **lofted**:
but it is *overthrown* **demolished**
by the mouth of the wicked.

PROVERBS 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

22 The blessing of Yah Veh enriches
and he adds no contorting with it.
23 It is as ridicule to a fool to work intrigue;
and to a man of discernment, wisdom.
24 The terror of the wicked comes on him;
and the desire of the just is given.
25 As the passing of the hurricane,
the wicked are not;
and the just are an eternal foundation.
26 As vinegar to the teeth,
and as smoke to the eyes,
thus is the sloth to them who send him.
27 To awe Yah Veh adds days;
and the years of the wicked curtail.
28 The hope of the just is cheerfulness;
and the hope of the wicked destructs.
29 The way of Yah Veh
is a stronghold to the integrious;
and ruin to the doers of mischief.
30 The just totter not eternally;
and the wicked tabernacle not on the earth.
31 The mouth of the just germinates wisdom;
and the tongue of perversions is cut out.
32 The lips of the just know what pleases;
and the mouth of the wicked perverts.

11

Balances of deceit
are an abhorrence to Yah Veh;
and a stone of shalom is his pleasure.
Arrogance comes; abasement comes:
and with the humble is wisdom.
3 The integrity of the straight leads them;
and the perverseness of them who deal covertly
ravages them.
4 Wealth benefits not in the day of fury;
and justness rescues from death.
5 The justness of the integrious straightens his way;
and the wicked falls by his own wickedness.
6 The justness of the straight rescues them;
and they who deal covertly
are captured in their own calamity.
7 In the death of a wicked human,
his hope destructs;
and the hope of the mischievous destructs.
8 The just are rescued from tribulation;
and the wicked come in his stead.
9 A profaner, with his mouth, ruins his friend;
and through knowledge the just are rescued.
10 In the good of the just,
the city jumps for joy;
and in destruction of the wicked,
they shout.
11 By the blessing of the straight the city is lofted;
and by the mouth of the wicked, demolished.

PROVERBS 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 12 *He that is void of wisdom* **Whoever lacketh heart despiseth disrespecteth his neighbour friend:** but a man of *understanding* **discernment holdeth his peace husheth.**
- 13 A **walking** talebearer *revealeth secrets* **exposeth private counsel:** but he that is of a *faithful* **trustworthy** spirit *concealeth the matter* **word.**
- 14 *Where no counsel is* **Without counsels,** the people fall: but in the *multitude* **abundance** of counsellors there is *safety* **salvation.**
- 15 He that *is surety* **pledgeth** for a stranger shall *smart for it* **shout evil:** and he that hateth *suretiship* **to clap** is *sure* **confident.**
- 16 A *gracious* woman **of charisma** *retaineth* **upholdeth** honour: and *strong men* **retain** **tyrants uphold** riches.
- 17 The merciful man *doeth good* **dealeth** to his own soul: but he that is cruel troubleth his own flesh.
- 18 The wicked worketh a *deceitful work* **false deed:** but to him that *soweth righteousness* **seedeth justness** shall be a *sure reward* **hire of truth.**
- 19 *As righteousness tendeth* **justness** to life: so he that *pursueth evil* *pursueth it* to his own death.
- 20 They that are of a *froward* **perverted** heart are *abomination* **an abhorrence** to the **LORD Yah Veh:** but *such as are upright* **the integrious** in their way are his *delight* **pleasure.**
- 21 *Though hand join* in hand, the *wicked* **evil** shall not be *unpunished* **exonerated:** but the seed of the *righteous* **just** shall be *delivered* **escape.**
- 22 As a *jewel* **nosering** of gold in a *swine's* **hog's** snout, so is a *fair* **beautiful** woman which *is without discretion* **turneth aside from taste.**
- 23 The desire of the *righteous* **just** is only good: but the *expectation* **hope** of the wicked is *wrath* **fury.**
- 24 There is that scattereth, and yet increaseth; and there is **one** that *withholdeth more than is meet* **spareth straightness,** but *it tendeth to poverty* **lacketh.**
- 25 The *liberal soul* **soul for blessings** shall be *made fat* **fattened:** and he that *watereth* **saturateth** shall be *watered* **flow** also himself.
- 26 He that withholdeth *corn* **grain,** the *people* **nations** shall *curse* **pierce** him: but blessing shall be upon the head of him that *selleth it* **marketeth kernels.**
- 27 He that *diligently* **early** seeketh good *procureth favour* **seeketh pleasure:** but he that seeketh *mischief* **evil,** it shall *come unto* **approach** him.
- 28 He that *trusteth* **confideth** in his riches shall fall; but the *righteous* **just** shall *flourish* **blossom** as a *branch* **leaf.**
- 29 He that troubleth his own house shall inherit the wind: and the fool shall be servant to the wise of heart.
- 30 The fruit of the *righteous* **just** is a tree of life; and he that *winneth* **taketh** souls is wise.
- 31 Behold, the *righteous* **just** shall be *recompensed* **shalamed** in the earth: much more the wicked and the sinner.
- 12 Whoso loveth *instruction* **discipline** loveth knowledge: but he that hateth reproof is *brutish* **stupid.**
- 2 A **The** good man *obtaineth favour* **produceth pleasure** of the **LORD Yah Veh:** but a man of *wicked devices* **intrigue** will **shall** he *condemn* **judge** wicked.
- 3 A *man* **human** shall not be established by wickedness: but the root of the *righteous* **just** shall not be *moved* **totter.**
- 4 A virtuous woman is a crown to her *husband* **master:**

PROVERBS 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 12 Whoever lacks heart disrespects his friend; and a man of discernment hushes.
- 13 A walking talebearer exposes private counsel; and he of a trustworthy spirit conceals the word.
- 14 Without counsels, the people fall; and in the abundance of counsellors, there is salvation.
- 15 He who pledges for a stranger, shouts evil; and he who hates to clap is confident. A woman of charisma upholds honor; and tyrants uphold riches.
- 17 The merciful man deals to his own soul; and he who is cruel troubles his own flesh. The wicked work false deeds; and he who seeds justness, a hire of truth. As justness to life; thus he who pursues evil to his own death. They of a perverted heart are an abhorrence to Yah Veh; and the integrious in their way are his pleasure.
- 21 Hand in hand, the evil are not exonerated; and the seed of the just escapes.
- 22 As a nosering of gold in the snout of a hog, thus a beautiful woman who turns aside from taste. The desire of the just is only good; and the hope of the wicked is fury.
- 24 One scatters and yet increases; one sparingly in straightness, but lacks. The soul for blessings fattens; and he who saturates, also flows.
- 26 He who withholds grain, the nations pierce; and blessing is on the head of him who markets kernels.
- 27 He who early seeks good, seeks pleasure; and he who seeks evil, it approaches him. He who confides in his riches, falls; and the just blossom as a leaf.
- 29 He who troubles his own house, inherits the wind; and the fool is servant to the wise of heart. The fruit of the just is a tree of life; and he who takes souls is wise.
- 31 Behold, the just are shalamed in the earth; much more the wicked and the sinner.
- 12 Whoever loves discipline loves knowledge; and whoever hates reproof is stupid. The good produce the pleasure of Yah Veh; and the man of intrigue he judges wicked. A human is not established by wickedness; and the root of the just totters not.
- 4 A virtuous woman is a crown to her master;

PROVERBS 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but she that maketh ashamed **shameth**
is as rottenness in his bones.
5 The *thoughts fabrications* of the *righteous just*
are *right justness*:
but the counsels of the wicked are deceit.
6 The words of the wicked
are to *lie in wait lurk* for blood:
but the mouth of the *upright straight*
shall *deliver rescue* them.
7 The wicked are *overthrown overturned*, and are not:
but the house of the *righteous just* shall stand.
8 A man shall be *commended halaled*
according to
his wisdom the comprehension of his mouth:
but he that is of a *perverse perverted* heart
shall be *despised disrespected*.
9 He that is *despised abased*, and hath a servant,
is better than he that honoureth himself,
and lacketh bread.
10 A *righteous man regardeth The just knoweth*
the *life soul* of his *beast animal*:
but the tender mercies of the wicked are cruel.
11 He that *tilleth serveth* his *land soil*
shall be satisfied with bread:
but he that *followeth vain persons pursueth vanities*
is void of understanding lacketh heart.
12 The wicked desireth the *net lair* of evil *men*:
but the root of the *righteous yieldeth fruit just giveth*.
13 The *wicked is snared snare of evil*
is by the *transgression rebellion* of his lips:
but the just shall come out of *trouble tribulation*.
14 A man shall be satisfied with good
by the fruit of his mouth:
and the *recompence dealing* of a *man's human* hands
shall be *rendered return* unto him.
15 The way of a fool is *right straight* in his own eyes:
but he that hearkeneth unto counsel is wise.
16 A fool's *wrath vexation* is *presently known in a day*:
but a *prudent man the subtle* covereth *shame abasement*.
17 He that *speaketh truth breatheth trustworthily*
sheweth forth righteousness telleth justness:
but a false witness deceit.
18 There is that *speaketh babbleth*
like the *piercings stabs* of a sword:
but the tongue of the wise is *health healing*.
19 The lip of truth shall be established *for ever eternally*:
but a *lying false* tongue is but for a *moment blink*.
20 Deceit is in the heart of them that *imagine inscribe* evil:
but to the counsellors of *peace shalom*
is *joy cheerfulness*.
21 There shall no *evil mischief* happen to the just:
but the wicked shall be filled with *mischief evil*.
22 *Lying False* lips
are *abomination abhorrence* to the *LORD Yah Veh*:
but they that *deal truly work trustworthily*
are his *delight pleasure*.
23 A *prudent man subtle human*
concealeth covereth knowledge:
but the heart of fools *proclaimeth foolishness calleth folly*.
24 The hand of the *diligent decisive* shall *bear rule reign*:
but the *slothful deceitful* shall be *under tribute a vassal*.
25 *Heaviness Concern* in the heart of man
maketh it stoop prostrateth him:
but a good word *maketh it glad cheereth*.
26 The *righteous just*
is more excellent than exploreth his *neighbour friend*:
but the way of the wicked seduceth them.
27 The *slothful man roasteth deceitful singeth* not
that which he took in hunting his hunt:
but the *substance wealth*
of a *diligent man decisive human*
is *precious esteemed*.
28 In the way of *righteousness justness* is life:
and in the pathway *thereof* there is no death.

13

A wise son
heareth his father's *instruction discipline*:
but a scorners heareth not rebuke.
2 A man shall eat good by the fruit of his mouth:

PROVERBS 12, 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and she who shames as rottenness in his bones.
5 The fabrications of the just *are* justness;
the counsels of the wicked *are* deceit.
6 The words of the wicked are to lurk for blood;
and the mouth of the straight rescues them.
7 The wicked overturn, and are not;
and the house of the just stands.
8 A man is halaled
according to the comprehension of his mouth;
and he of a perverted heart *is* disrespected.
9 Better, the abased who has a servant,
than he who honors himself and lacks bread.
10 The just knows the soul of his animal;
and the tender mercies of the wicked *are* cruel.
11 He who serves his soil is satisfied with bread;
and he who pursues vanities lacks heart.
12 The wicked desire the lair of evil;
and the root of the just gives.
13 The snare of evil *is* by the rebellion of lips;
and the just come from tribulation.
14 A man *is* satisfied with good
by the fruit of his mouth;
and the dealing of human hands
returns to him.
15 The way of a fool *is* straight in his own eyes;
and he who hearkens to counsel is wise.
16 The vexation of a fool is known in a day;
and the subtle cover abasement.
17 He who breathes trustworthily, tells justness;
and a false witness, deceit.
18 The babbler is like the stabs of a sword;
and the tongue of the wise is healing.
19 The lip of truth establishes eternally;
and a false tongue *is* for a blink.
20 Deceit *is* in the heart of them who inscribe evil;
but to the counsellors of shalom *is* cheerfulness.
21 No mischief happens to the just;
and the wicked are filled with evil.
22 False lips are an abhorrence to Yah Veh;
and they who work trustworthily are his pleasure.
23 A subtle human covers knowledge;
and the heart of fools calls, Folly!
24 The hand of the decisive reigns;
and the deceitful are a vassal.
25 Concern prostrates the heart of man;
and a good word cheers.
26 The just explores his friend;
and the way of the wicked seduces them.
27 The deceitful sings not his hunt;
and the wealth of a decisive human esteems.
28 In the way of justness *is* life;
and in that pathway there *is* no death.
13 A wise son — the discipline of a father;
and a scorners hears not rebuke.
2 A man eats good by the fruit of his mouth;

PROVERBS 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but the soul of the transgressors covert
shall eat **hath** violence.

3 He that *keepeth* **guardeth** his mouth
keepeth **guardeth** his **life soul**:
but he that *openeth* **wide** **spreadeth** his lips
shall have *destruction* **ruin**.

4 The soul of the *sluggard* **sloth** desireth,
and hath *nothing* **naught**:
but the soul of the *diligent* **decisive**
shall be made fat **fatten**.

5 A *righteous man* hateth *lying* **The just hate false** words:
but a *man* is loathsome **the wicked stink**,
and cometh to *shame* **blush**.

6 *Righteousness* **Justness**
keepeth him that is upright **guardeth the integrious**
in the way:
but wickedness *overthroweth* **perverteth** the sinner.

7 There is that *maketh* **enricheth** himself *rich*,
yet hath *nothing* **naught**:
there is that *maketh* **impoverisheth** himself *poor*,
yet hath great *riches* **wealth**.

8 The *ransom* **koper/atonement** of a man's *life soul*
are his riches:
but the *poor* **impoverished** heareth not rebuke.

9 The light of the *righteous* **rejoiceth just cheereth**:
but the lamp of the wicked shall be *put out* **extinguished**.

10 Only by *pride* **arrogance**
cometh **contention** **giveth strife**:
but with the *well advised* **counseled** is wisdom.

11 Wealth *gotten* by vanity shall be *diminished* **diminish**:
but he that gathereth by *labour* **hand**
shall *increase* **abound**.

12 Hope *deferred* **drawn out**
maketh **wearieth** the heart *sick*:
but when the desire cometh, it is a tree of life.

13 Whoso *despiseth* **disrespecteth** the word
shall be *destroyed* **despoiled**:
but he that *feareth* **aweth** the *commandment* **misvah**
shall be *rewarded* **shalam**.

14 The *law* **torah** of the wise is a fountain of life,
to *depart* **turn aside** from the snares of death.

15 Good *understanding* **comprehension**
giveth *favour* **charism**:
but the way of *transgressors* **the covert**
is *hard* **perennial**.

16 Every *prudent man* **All the subtle**
dealeth **work** with knowledge:
but a fool *layeth* **open his** **spreadeth** folly.

17 A wicked *messenger* **angel** falleth into *mischiev* **evil**:
but a *faithful* **trustworthy** ambassador is *health* **healing**.

18 Poverty and *shame* **abasement**
shall be to him
that *refuseth* **instruction** **avoideth discipline**:
but he that regardeth reproof shall be honoured.

19 The desire *accomplished* **that becometh**
is sweet **pleasant** to the soul:
but it is *abomination* **abhorrence** to fools
to *depart* **turn aside** from evil.

20 He that walketh with **the wise men**
shall be *wise* **enwisened**:
but a *companion of* **he that befriendeth** fools
shall be *destroyed* **shouteth**.

21 Evil pursueth sinners:
but to the *righteous* **good shall be repayed**
good is the shalam of the just.

22 A *The good man*
leaveth an inheritance to his children's children
hath his sons' sons to inherit:
and the *wealth* **valuables** of the sinner
is *laid up* **treasured** for the just.

23 *Much* **Abundant** food
is in the tillage of the *poor* **impoverished**:
but there is that is *destroyed* **scraped away**
for want of judgment.

24 He that spareth his *rod* **scion** hateth his son:
but he that loveth him
chasteneth **rising early disciplineth** him *betimes*.

25 The *righteous* **just** eateth to the satisfying of his soul:
but the belly of the wicked shall *want* **lack**.

PROVERBS 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the soul of the covert has violence.

3 He who guards his mouth guards his soul;
he who spreads his lips has ruin.

4 The soul of the sloth desires and has naught;
and the soul of the decisive fattens.

5 The just hate false words;
and the wicked stink and blush.

6 Justness guards the integrious in the way;
and wickedness perverts the sinner.

7 One enriches himself, yet has naught;
one impoverishes himself, yet has great wealth.

8 The koper/atonement of the soul of a man
are his riches;
and the impoverished hear not rebuke.

9 The light of the just cheers;
and the lamp of the wicked extinguishes.
Arrogance gives strife;
and with the counseled is wisdom.

11 Wealth by vanity diminishes;
and he who gathers by hand abounds.

12 Hope drawn out wears the heart;
and when desire comes, it is a tree of life.
Whoever disrespects the word is despoiled;
and he who awes the misvah, is shalamed.

14 The torah of the wise is a fountain of life
to turn aside from the snares of death.
Good comprehension gives charism;
and the way of the covert is perennial.

16 All the subtle work with knowledge;
and a fool spreads folly.
A wicked angel falls into evil;
and a trustworthy ambassador is healing.

18 Poverty and abasement
are to him who avoids discipline;
and he who regards reproof is honored.

19 The desire that becomes
is pleasant to the soul;
and abhorrence to fools
is to turn aside from evil.

20 He who walks with the wise, enwisens;
and he who befriends fools, shouts.
Evil pursues sinners;
and good is the shalam of the just.

22 The good have the sons of their sons to inherit;
and the valuables of the sinner
are treasured for the just.
Abundant food
is the tillage of the impoverished;
and is scraped away for want of judgment.

24 He who spares his scion hates his son;
and he who loves him
rises early and disciplines him.
The just eats to satisfy his soul;
and the belly of the wicked lacks.

PROVERBS 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

14 Every wise woman buildeth her house:
but the foolish
plucketh it down **demolisheth** with her hands.
2 He that walketh in his *uprightness* **straightness**
feareth the LORD **aweth Yah Veh:**
but *he that is perverse* **the perverted** in his ways
despiseth him.
3 In the mouth of the *foolish* **fool** is a rod of *pride* **pomp:**
but the lips of the wise shall *preserve* **guard** them.
4 Where no oxen are, the *crib* **manger** is *clean* **empty:**
but *much increase* **abundant produce**
is by the *strength* **force** of the ox.
5 A *faithful* **trustworthy** witness *will* **shall** not lie:
but a false witness *will* **shall** *utter* **shall breathe** lies.
6 A scorner seeketh wisdom, and *findeth it* **is** not:
but knowledge is *easy* **swift**
unto him that *understandeth* **discerneth.**
7 Go from the *presence* **front** of a foolish man,
when thou perceivest not *in him* the lips of knowledge.
8 The wisdom of the *prudent* **subtle**
is to *understand* **discern** his way:
but the folly of fools is deceit.
9 Fools *make a mock* **scorn** at *sin* **guilt:**
but among the *righteous* **straight** there is *favour* **pleasure.**
10 The heart knoweth *his own* bitterness **of soul;**
and a stranger *doth* **minglenth** not *intermeddle*
with his *joy* **cheerfulness.**
11 The house of the wicked
shall be *overthrown* **desolated:**
but the *tabernacle* **tent** of the *upright* **straight**
shall *flourish* **blossom.**
12 There is a way which seemeth *right* **straight**
unto **at the face** of a man,
but the *end* **finality** thereof are the ways of death.
13 Even in laughter the heart *is* **sorrowful** **paineth;**
and the *end* **finality** of that *mirth* **cheerfulness**
is *heaviness* **grief.**
14 The *backslider* **Whoso** *apostatizeth* in heart
shall be *filled* **satiated** with his own ways:
and a good man *shall be* **satisfied** from **of** himself.
15 The *simple* **believeth** **gullible** **trusteth** every word:
but the *prudent* **man** **subtle**
looketh well to **discerneth** his *going* **step.**
16 A **The** *wise man* **feareth** **aweth,**
and *departeth* **turneth** **aside** from evil:
but the fool *rageth* **passeth** **on,** and is confident.
17 He that *is soon* **angry** **hath** **quick** **wrath**
dealeth **foolishly** **worketh** **folly:**
and a man of *wicked* **devices** **intrigue** is hated.
18 The *simple* **gullible** inherit folly:
but the *prudent* **subtle**
are *crowned* **surrounded** with knowledge.
19 The evil *bow* **before** **prostrate** **at the face** of the good;
and the wicked at the *gates* **portals** of the *righteous* **just.**
20 The *poor* **impoverished** is hated
even of his own *neighbour* **friend:**
but the *rich* **hath** **many** **friends**
many are they who love the rich.
21 He that *despiseth* **disrespecteth** his *neighbour* **friend**
sinneth:
but he that
hath **mercy** **granteth** **charism** on the *poor* **humble,**
happy **blithe** is he.
22 Do they not *err* **stray** that *devise* **inscribe** evil?
but mercy and truth shall be to them
that *devise* **inscribe** good.
23 In all *labour* **contorting** there is *profit* **advantage:**
but the *talk* **word** of the lips
tendeth **be** only to *penury* **lack.**
24 The crown of the wise is their riches:
but the *foolishness* **folly** of fools is folly.
25 A true witness *delivereth* **rescueth** souls:
but a **the** *deceitful* **witness** *speaketh* **breatheth** lies.
26 In the *fear* **awe** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
is strong confidence:
and his *children* **sons** shall have a *place* **of** refuge.
27 The *fear* **awe** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** is a fountain of life,
to *depart* **turn** from the snares of death.

PROVERBS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

14 Every wise woman builds her house;
and the foolish demolishes with her hands.
2 He who walks in his straightness awes Yah Veh;
and the perverted in his ways despises him.
3 In the mouth of the fool is a rod of pomp;
and the lips of the wise guard them.
4 Where no oxen are, the manger is empty;
and abundant is the produce by the force of the ox.
5 A trustworthy witness lies not;
and a false witness breathes lies.
6 A scorner seeks wisdom and it is not;
and knowledge is swift to him who discerns.
7 Go from the front of a foolish man,
when you perceive not the lips of knowledge.
8 The wisdom of the subtle is to discern his way;
and the folly of fools is deceit.
9 Fools scorn at guilt;
and among the straight there is pleasure.
10 The heart knows bitterness of soul;
and a stranger mingles not with his cheerfulness.
11 The house of the wicked desolates;
and the tent of the straight blossoms.
12 There is a way — straight at the face of a man,
and the finality, the ways of death.
13 Even in laughter the heart pains;
and the finality of that cheerfulness is grief.
14 Whoever apostatizes in heart
satiates of his own ways;
but a good man of himself.
15 The gullible trusts every word;
but the subtle discerns his step.
16 The wise awes and turns aside from evil;
and the fool passes on, confident.
17 He of quick wrath works folly;
and a man of intrigue is hated.
18 The gullible inherit folly;
and the subtle are surrounded with knowledge.
19 The evil prostrate at the face of the good;
and the wicked at the portals of the just.
20 The impoverished is hated
even by his own friend;
and many are they who love the rich.
21 He who disrespects his friend, sins;
and he who grants charism on the humble, blithes.
22 Stray they not, who inscribe evil?
And mercy and truth to them who inscribe good?
23 In all contorting there is advantage;
and the word of the lips is only to lack.
24 The crown of the wise is their riches;
and the folly of fools is folly.
25 A true witness rescues souls;
and the deceitful breathe lies.
26 In the awe of Yah Veh is strong confidence;
and his sons have refuge.
27 The awe of Yah Veh is a fountain of life,
to turn from the snares of death.

PROVERBS 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

28 In the *multitude* **abundance** of people
is the *king's honour* **sovereign's majesty**;
but in the *want* **finality** of *people nations*
is the *destruction* **ruin** of the *prince* **potentate**.

29 He that is slow to wrath
is of great *understanding* **discernment**;
but he that is *hasty* **quick** of spirit exalteth folly.

30 A *sound heart* **of healing** is the life of the flesh;
but envy the rottenness of the bones.

31 He that oppresseth the poor
reproacheth his *Maker* **Worker**;
but he that honoureth him
hath mercy **granteth charism** on the *poor* **needy**.

32 The wicked
is *driven away* **overthrown** in his *wickedness* **evil**;
but the *righteous* *hath hope* **just seeketh refuge**
in his death.

33 Wisdom resteth in the heart of him
that *hath understanding* **discerneth**;
but that which is in the midst of fools is made known.

34 *Righteousness* **justness** exalteth a *nation* **goyim**;
but sin is a *reproach* **shame** to any *people* **all nations**.

35 The *king's favour* **sovereign's pleasure**
is toward a *wise* **comprehending** servant;
but his *wrath* **outburst of passion**
is *against him* **one** that *causeth shame* **shameth**.

15 A *soft tender* answer turneth away *wrath* **fury**;
but *grievous* **contorting** words *stir up anger* **ascend wrath**.

2 The tongue of the wise
useth well—pleaseth knowledge *aright*;
but the mouth of fools
poureth out foolishness **gusheth folly**.

3 The eyes of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** are in every place,
beholding **watching** the evil and the good.

4 A *wholesome* **healing** tongue is a tree of life;
but perverseness therein is a breach in the spirit.

5 A fool
despiseth **scorneth** his father's *instruction* **discipline**;
but he that regardeth reproof *is prudent* **strategizeth**.

6 In the house of the *righteous* **just**
is much *treasure* **wealth**;
but in the revenues of the wicked is trouble.

7 The lips of the wise *disperse* **winnow** knowledge;
but the heart of the foolish *doeth* — not so.

8 The sacrifice of the wicked
is an *abomination* **abhorrence** to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
but the prayer of the *upright* **straight**
is his *delight* **pleasure**.

9 The way of the wicked
is an *abomination* **abhorrence** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
but he loveth him
that *followeth after righteousness* **pursueth justness**.

10 *Correction* **Discipline** is *grievous* **evil**
unto him that forsaketh the way;
and he that hateth reproof shall die.

11 *Hell* **Sheol** and *destruction* **abaddon**
are *before the LORD* **in front of Yah Veh**;
how much more then
the hearts of the *children* **sons** of *men* **humanity**?

12 A scorner loveth not one that reproveth him:
neither *will* **shall** he go unto the wise.

13 A *merry* **cheerful** heart
maketh a cheerful countenance **well—pleaseth the face**;
but by *sorrow* **contortion** of the heart
the spirit is *broken* **stricken**.

14 The heart of him that *hath understanding* **discerneth**
seeketh knowledge;
but the *mouth* **face** of fools
feedeth on foolishness **befriendeth folly**.

15 All the days of the afflicted are evil:
but he that is of a merry heart
hath a continual **feast banquet**.

16 Better is little with the *fear* **awe** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
than great treasure *and trouble therewith* **with confusion**.

17 Better is a *dinner* **ration** of *herbs* **greens** where love is,
than a *stalled* **foddered** ox and hatred *therewith*.

18 A *wrathful* man of *fury* **stirreth up** *throttleteth* **strife**;
but he that is slow to *anger* **wrath** *appeaseth* **resteth** *strife*.

PROVERBS 14, 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

28 In the abundance of people
is the majesty of the sovereign;
and in the finality of nations
is the ruin of the potentate.

29 He who is slow to wrath *is* of great discernment;
and he who is quick of spirit exalts folly.

30 A heart of healing is the life of the flesh;
and envy *is* the rottenness of the bones.

31 He who oppresses the poor
reproaches his Worker;
and he who honors him
grants charism on the needy.

32 The wicked is overthrown in his evil;
and the just seek refuge in his death.

33 Wisdom rests in the heart of him who discerns;
but that midst fools is made known.

34 Justness exalts a goyim;
and sin is a shame to all nations.

35 The pleasure of the sovereign
is toward a comprehending servant;
and his outburst of passion is on one who shames.

15 A tender answer turns away fury;
and contorting words ascend wrath.

2 The tongue of the wise well—pleases knowledge;
and the mouth of fools gushes folly.

3 The eyes of Yah Veh are in every place,
watching the evil and the good.

4 A healing tongue *is* a tree of life;
and perverseness therein *is* a breach in the spirit.

5 A fool scorns the discipline of his father;
and he who regards reproof strategizes.

6 In the house of the just *is* much wealth;
and in the revenues of the wicked *is* trouble.

7 The lips of the wise winnow knowledge;
and the heart of the foolish — not so.

8 The sacrifice of the wicked
is an abhorrence to Yah Veh;
and the prayer of the straight
is his pleasure.

9 The way of the wicked
is an abhorrence to Yah Veh;
and he loves him
who pursues justness.

10 Discipline is evil to him who forsakes the way;
and he who hates reproof dies.

11 Sheol and abaddon *are* in front of Yah Veh;
how much more then
the hearts of the sons of humanity?

12 A scorner neither loves his reprover;
nor goes to the wise.

13 A cheerful heart well—pleases the face;
but contortion of the heart strikes the spirit.

14 The heart of the discerner seeks knowledge;
and the face of fools befriends folly.

15 All the days of the afflicted are evil;
and he of a merry heart has a continual banquet.

16 Better, little with the awe of Yah Veh
than great treasure with confusion:
better, a ration of greens and love
than a foddered ox and hatred.

17 A man of fury throttles strife;
and he who is slow to wrath rests strife.

PROVERBS 15, 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

19 The way of the *slothful man* **sloth**
is as an hedge of thorns;
but the way of the *righteous* **straight**
is *made plain* **raised**.

20 A wise son *maketh a glad* **cheereth** a father;
but a foolish *man* **human** despiseth his mother.

21 Folly is *joy* **cheerfulness**
to him that *is destitute of wisdom* **lackerth heart**;
but a man of *understanding* **discernment**
walketh *uprightly* **straightly**.

22 Without **private** counsel
purposes **fabrications** are *disappointed* **broken**;
but in the *multitude* **abundance** of counsellors
they are *established* **rise**.

23 A man hath *joy* **cheerfulness**
by the answer of his mouth;
and a word *spoken in due season* **in time**, how good is it!

24 The way of life is above to the *wise* **comprehending**,
that he may *depart* **turn aside**
from *hell beneath* **sheol below**.

25 The *LORD* will *destroy* **Yah Veh shall uproot**
the house of the *proud* **pompous**;
but he will *establish* **shall station**
the border of the widow.

26 The *thoughts* **fabrications** of the *wicked* **evil**
are an *abomination* **abhorrence** to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
but the *words* **sayings** of the pure are *pleasant* **words**.

27 He that is greedy of *gain* **greed**
troubleth his own house;
but he that hateth gifts shall live.

28 The heart of the *righteous* **just**
studieth **meditateth** to answer:
but the mouth of the wicked
poureth out **gusheth** evil things.

29 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** is far from the wicked;
but he heareth the prayer of the *righteous* **just**.

30 The light of the eyes *rejoiceth* **cheereth** the heart;
and a good report *maketh* **fatteneth** the bones *fat*.

31 The ear that heareth the reproof of life
abideth **stayeth** among the wise.

32 He that *refuseth instruction* **avoideth discipline**
despiseth **spurneth** his own soul:
but he that heareth reproof getteth *understanding* **heart**.

33 The *fear* **awe** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
is the *instruction* **discipline** of wisdom;
and *before* **at the face of** honour is humility.

16

The *preparations* **arrangements** of the heart
in *man* **humanity**,
and the answer of the tongue,
is from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

2 All the ways of a man are *clean* **pure** in his own eyes;
but the *LORD* **weigheth** **Yah Veh gaugeth** the spirits.

3 Commit **Roll** thy works unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and thy *thoughts* **fabrications** shall be established.

4 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath made all things
for himself **to answer to him**;
yea, even the wicked for the day of evil.

5 Every one that is *proud* **lofty** in heart
is an *abomination* **abhorrence** to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
though hand join hand **hand by hand**,
he shall not be *unpunished* **exonerated**.

6 By mercy and truth
iniquity is purged **doth kapar/atone**;
and by the *fear* **awe** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
men depart **turn aside** from evil.

7 When a man's ways please the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
he maketh even his enemies
to be at peace with **shalam** him.

8 Better is a little with *righteousness* **justness**
than great *revenues* **produce** without *right* **judgment**.

9 A man's **The human** heart
deviseth **fabricateth** his way:
but the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
directeth **establisheth** his *steps* **pace**.

10 A *divine sentence* **Divination**
is in the lips of the *king* **sovereign**;
his mouth *transgresseth* **treasoneth** not in judgment.

11 A just weight and balance are the *LORD's* **Yah Veh's**:

PROVERBS 15, 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

19 The way of the sloth *is* as a hedge of thorns;
and the way of the straight *is* raised.

20 A wise son cheers a father;
and a foolish human despises his mother.

21 Folly is cheerfulness to one lacking heart;
and a man of discernment walks straightly.

22 Without private counsel fabrications are broken;
and in the abundance of counsellors, they rise.

23 A man has cheerfulness
by the answer of his mouth;
and a word in time, how good!

24 The way of life to the comprehending is above,
to turn aside from sheol below.

25 Yah Veh uproots the house of the pompous;
and he stations the border of the widow.

26 The fabrications of evil
are an abhorrence to Yah Veh;
and the sayings of the pure *are* pleasant.
He who *is* greedy of greed
troubles his own house;
and he who hates gifts lives.

28 The heart of the just meditates to answer;
and the mouth of the wicked gushes evil.

29 Yah Veh *is* far from the wicked;
and he hears the prayer of the just.

30 The light of the eyes cheers the heart;
and a good report fattens the bones.

31 The ear that hears the reproof of life
stays among the wise:
he who avoids discipline
spurns his own soul:
and he who hears reproof gets heart.

33 The awe of Yah Veh is the discipline of wisdom;
and at the face of honor *is* humility.

16

The arrangements of the heart
are from humanity;
and the answer of the tongue
is from Yah Veh.

2 All the ways of a man are pure in his own eyes;
and Yah Veh gauges the spirits.

3 Roll your works unto Yah Veh
and your fabrications are established.

4 Yah Veh made all to answer to him;
yes, even the wicked for the day of evil.

5 The lofty heart *is* an abhorrence to Yah Veh;
hand by hand he is not exonerated.

6 By mercy and truth iniquity kapars/atones;
and by the awe of Yah Veh evil turns aside.

7 When the ways of man please Yah Veh,
even his enemies shalam him.

8 Better, a little with justness
than great produce without judgment.

9 The human heart fabricates his way;
and Yah Veh establishes his pace.

10 Divination *is* in the lips of the sovereign;
his mouth treasons not in judgment.

11 A just weight and balance *are* of Yah Veh;

PROVERBS 16, 17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 all the *weights* **stones** of the *bag* **pouch** are his work.
It is an *abomination* **abhorrence**
to *kings* **for sovereigns** to *commit* **work** wickedness:
for the throne is established by *righteousness* **justness**.

13 *Righteous lips* **Lips of justness**
are the *delight* **pleasure** of *kings* **sovereigns**;
and they love him that *speaketh* **right wordeth** straight.

14 The *wrath* **fury** of a *king* **sovereign**
is as *messengers* **angels** of death:
but a wise man *will pacify* it **shall kapar/atone**.

15 In the light of the *king's countenance* **sovereign's face**
is life;
and his *favour* **pleasure**
is as a **thick** cloud of the *latter* **after** rain.

16 How much better *is it to get* to **chattelize** wisdom
than gold **above ore!**
and to *get understanding* **chattelize discernment**
rather to be chosen *than* **above** silver!

17 The highway of the *upright* **straight**
is to *depart* **turn aside** from evil:
he that *keepeth* **guardeth** his way
preserveth **guardeth** his soul.

18 *Pride* **Pomp**
goeth before **destruction** **faceth the breech**,
and an *haughty* **a lifted** spirit
before a fall **faceth the stumble**.

19 Better it is
to be *of an humble* **a lowly** spirit with the *lowly* **humble**,
than to *divide* **allot** the spoil with the *proud* **pompous**.

20 He that handleth
a matter wisely **word comprehendingly**
shall find good:
and whoso *trusteth* **confideth** in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
happy is he **O how blithe**.

21 The wise in heart shall be called *prudent* **discerning**;
and the sweetness of the lips
increaseth *learning* **doctrine**.

22 *Understanding* **Comprehension**
is a *wellspring* **fountain** of life
unto *him that hath it* **its master**;
but the *instruction* **discipline** of fools is folly.

23 The heart of the wise
teacheth **comprehendeth** his mouth,
and addeth *learning* **doctrine** to his lips.

24 Pleasant *words* **sayings** are as an honeycomb,
sweet to the soul, and *health* **healing** to the bones.

25 There is a way that seemeth *right* **straight**
unto **at the face of** a man,
but the *end thereof* **finality** are the ways of death.

26 *He that laboureth* **The soul of the toiler**
laboureth **toileth** for himself;
for his mouth craveth it of him.

27 *An ungodly man* **A man of Beli Yaal** diggeth up evil:
and in his lips there is as a *burning* **an inflamed** fire.

28 A *froward* man **of perversions** soweth *sendeth* **strife**:
and a whisperer separateth *chief friends* **chiliarchs**.

29 A *violent* man **of violence** enticeth his *neighbour* **friend**,
and *leadeth* **walketh** him into the way that is not good.

30 He shutteth his eyes
to *devise* **froward things** **fabricate perversions**:
moving **biting** his lips he *bringeth* **concludeth** evil to pass.

31 *The hoary head* **Greyness** is a crown of *glory* **beauty**,
if it be found in the way of *righteousness* **justness**.

32 He that is slow to *anger* **wrath**
is better than the mighty;
and he that *ruleth* **reigneth** his spirit
than he that *taketh* **captureth** a city.

33 *The lot* **pebble** is cast into the *lap* **bosom**;
but the *whole disposing* **all judgment** thereof
is of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

17

Better is a *dry* **parched** morsel,
and *quietness* **serenity** therewith,
than an house full of sacrifices with strife.

2

A *wise* **comprehending** servant
shall *have* **rule** **reign** over a son
that *causeth* **shame** **shameth**,
and shall *have* **part of** **be allotted** the inheritance
among the brethren.

PROVERBS 16, 17

exeGeses companion BIBLE

all the stones of the pouch are his work.
It is an abhorrence
for sovereigns to work wickedness;
for the throne is established by justness.

13 Lips of justness are the pleasure of sovereigns;
and they love him who words straight.

14 The fury of a sovereign is as angels of death;
and a wise man kapars/atones.

15 In the light of the face of the sovereign is life;
and his pleasure is as a thick cloud of the after rain.

16 To chattelize wisdom;
how much better than ore!
and to chattelize discernment
to be chosen above silver!
The highway of the straight
is to turn aside from evil;
he who guards his way guards his soul.

18 Pomp is at the face of the breech
and a lifted spirit is at the face of the stumble.

19 Better, a lowly spirit with the humble,
than to allot the spoil with the pompous.
He who handles a word comprehendingly
finds good;
and whoever confides in Yah Veh,
O how blithe.

21 The wise in heart is called, Discerning;
and the sweetness of the lips increases doctrine.

22 Comprehension is a fountain of life to its master;
and the discipline of fools is folly.

23 The heart of the wise comprehends his mouth
and adds doctrine to his lips.

24 Pleasant sayings are as a honeycomb
— sweet to the soul and healing to the bones.

25 There is a straight way, at the face of man;
and its finality, the ways of death.

26 The soul of the toiler toils for himself
for the craving of his mouth:
a man of Beli Yaal digs evil;
and in his lips, as an inflamed fire:
a man of perversions sends strife;
and a whisperer separates chiliarchs:

29 a man of violence entices his friend
and walks him into the way — not good:
He shuts his eyes to fabricate perversions;
bites his lips to conclude evil.

31 Greyness is a crown of beauty
found in the way of justness.

32 Better, slow to wrath, than mighty;
— to reign over the spirit, than to capture a city.

33 The pebble is cast into the bosom;
and all judgment is of Yah Veh.

17

Better, a parched morsel with serenity
than a house full of sacrifices with strife.

2 A comprehending servant
reigns over a son who shames;
and allots the inheritance among the brothers.

PROVERBS 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 3 The *fining pot* **crucible** is for silver,
and the furnace for gold:
but the *LORD trieth* **Yah Veh proofeth** the hearts.
- 4 A *wicked doer* **vilifier**
giveth heed **hearkeneth** to *false lips of mischief*;
and a *liar* **falsifier**
giveth ear **hearkeneth** to a *naughty tongue of calamity*.
- 5 Whoso *mocketh* **derideth** the *poor* **impoverished**
reproacheth his *Maker* **Worker**;
and he that *is glad* **cheereth** at calamities
shall not be *unpunished* **exonerated**.
- 6 *Children's children* **Sons' sons**
are the crown of *old men* **the aged**;
and the *glory* **beauty** of *children* **sons** are their fathers.
- 7 *Excellent speech* **A lip of rest**
becometh **befitteth** not a fool:
much less *do lying* **false** lips a *prince* **volunteer**.
- 8 A *gift* **bribe** is as a *precious stone* **of charisma**
in the eyes of *him that hath it* **his master**:
whithersoever it *turneth* **faceth**,
it *prospereth* **comprehendeth**.
- 9 He that covereth a *transgression* **rebellion**
seeketh love;
but he that *repeateth* **reiterateth** a *matter* **word**
separateth very friends.
- 10 A *reproof* **entereth** more **Rebuke penetrateth**
into a *wise man* **discerner**
more than an hundred *stripes* **smittings**
into a fool.
- 11 An *evil man* **A rebel** seeketh *only* **rebellion** **evil**:
therefore a *cruel messenger* **angel**
shall be sent against him.
- 12 Let a bear *robbed* **bereaved** of her whelps meet a man,
rather than **but not** a fool in his folly.
- 13 Whoso *rewardeth* **returneth** evil for good,
evil shall not depart from his house.
- 14 The beginning of strife
is as *when one letteth out* **a bursting of** water:
therefore leave off contention,
before it be meddled with **ere it faceth a quarrel**.
- 15 He that justifieth the wicked,
and he that *condemneth* **judgeth** **wicked** the just,
even they both are *abomination* **abhorrence**
to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
- 16 Wherefore is there a price in the hand of a fool
to get **chattelize** wisdom,
seeing he hath no heart to it?
A friend loveth at all times,
and a brother is *born* **birthed** for *adversity* **tribulation**.
- 18 A *man void of understanding* **human that lacketh heart**
strieth hands **clappeth palms**,
and becometh *surety* **a pledge**
in the presence **at the face** of his friend.
- 19 He loveth *transgression* **rebellion** that loveth strife:
and he that *exalteth* **lifteth** his *gate* **portal**
seeketh *destruction* **a breach**.
- 20 He that hath a *froward* **perversed** heart
findeth no good:
and he that hath a *perverse* **turned** tongue
falleth into *mischief* **evil**.
- 21 He that *begetteth* **birtheth** a fool
doeth it to his sorrow **hath grief**:
and the father of a fool hath no *joy* **cheer**.
A *merry* **cheerful** heart
doeth good **well—pleaseth** like a *medicine* **cure**:
but a *broken* **stricken** spirit drieth the bones.
- 23 A **The** *wicked man* taketh a *gift* **bribe** out of the bosom
to pervert the ways of judgment.
- 24 *Wisdom is before* **faceth** him
that *hath understanding* **discerneth**;
but the eyes of a fool are in the ends of the earth.
- 25 A foolish son is a *grief* **vexation** to his father,
and bitterness to her that *bare* **birthed** him.
- 26 Also to *punish* **penalize** the just is not good,
nor to *strike* **princes** **smite** **volunteers**
for *equity* **straightness**.
- 27 He that *hath* **knoweth** knowledge
spareth his *words* **sayings**:

PROVERBS 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 3 The crucible for silver; the furnace for gold;
and Yah Veh proofs the hearts.
- 4 A vilifier hearkens to lips of mischief;
and a falsifier hearkens to a tongue of calamity.
- 5 Whoever derides the impoverished
reproaches his Worker;
whoever cheers at calamities
is not exonerated.
- 6 Sons of sons *are* the crown of the aged;
and the beauty of sons *are* their fathers.
- 7 A lip of rest befits not a fool;
much less false lips a volunteer.
- 8 A bribe is as a stone of charisma
in the eyes of his master;
wherever it faces, it comprehends.
- 9 He who covers a rebellion seeks love;
and he who reiterates a word separates friends.
- 10 Rebuke penetrates a discernor
more than a hundred smittings to a fool.
- 11 A rebel seeks evil;
a cruel angel is sent against him.
May a bereaved bear meet a man
but not a fool in his folly.
- 12 Whoever returns evil for good
evil departs not from his house.
- 14 The beginning of strife *is* as a bursting of water
leave off contention ere it faces a quarrel.
- 15 He who justifies the wicked
and he who judges wicked the just
— even they both *are* abhorrence to Yah Veh.
- 16 Why is there a price in the hand of a fool
to chattelize wisdom,
when he has no heart for it?
A friend loves at all times
and a brother is birthed for tribulation.
- 18 A human who lacks heart claps palms;
and becomes a pledge at the face of his friend.
- 19 He who loves rebellion, loves strife;
and he who lifts his portal, seeks a breach.
- 20 A perverted heart finds no good;
and a turned tongue falls into evil.
- 21 He who births a fool has grief;
and the father of a fool cheers not.
- 22 A cheerful heart well—pleases as a cure;
and a stricken spirit dries the bones.
- 23 The wicked take a bribe from the bosom
to pervert the ways of judgment.
- 24 Wisdom faces him who discerns;
and the eyes of a fool are in the ends of the earth.
- 25 A foolish son is a vexation to his father
and bitterness to her who birthed him.
- 26 Also, neither penalize the just for good,
nor smite volunteers for straightness.
- 27 He who knows knowledge spares his sayings;

PROVERBS 17, 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- and a man of *understanding* **discernment**
is of an *excellent* **cool** spirit.
- 28 Even a fool, when he *holdeth his peace* **husheth**,
is *counted* **fabricated** wise:
and he that shutteth his lips
is esteemed a man of understanding a **discerner**.
- 18** Through desire a man,
having separated himself,
seeketh and *intermeddleth* **quarrelth**
with all *wisdom* **evidence**.
- 2 A fool hath no delight in *understanding* **discernment**,
but that his heart may *discover* **expose** itself.
- 3 When the wicked cometh,
then cometh also *contempt* **disrespect**,
and with *ignominy* **abasement** reproach.
- 4 The words of a man's mouth are as deep waters,
and the *wellspring* **fountain** of wisdom
as a *flowing brook* **gushing wadi**.
- 5 It is not good to *accept* **lift** the *person* **face** of the wicked,
to *overthrow* **pervert** the *righteous* **just** in judgment.
- 6 A fool's lips enter into contention,
and his mouth calleth for *strokes* **poundings**.
- 7 A fool's mouth is his *destruction* **ruin**,
and his lips are the snare of his soul.
- 8 The words of a *talebearer* **whisperer**
are as wounds **inflame**,
and they *go down* **descend**
into the *innermost parts* **chambers** of the belly.
- 9 He also that *is slothful* **slacketh** in his work
is brother to him that is a *great waster* **master of ruin**.
- 10 The name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
is a *strong tower* **of strength**:
the *righteous* **just** runneth into it, and *is safe* **lofted**.
- 11 The *rich man's* **wealth of the rich**
is his *strong city* **of strength**,
and as *an high* a **lofted** wall
in his own *conceit* **imagination**.
- 12 *Before destruction* **At the face of the breach**
the heart of man is *haughty* **lifted**,
and *before* **at the face of** honour is humility.
- 13 He that *answereth* **respondeth** a *matter word*
before he heareth it,
it is folly and shame unto him.
- 14 The spirit of a man
will shall sustain his *infirmity* **disease**;
but a *wounded* **stricken** spirit who can bear?
- 15 The heart of the *prudent* **discerning**
getteth **chattelizeth** knowledge;
and the ear of the wise seeketh knowledge.
- 16 *A man's gift* **The gift of a human**
maketh room for **enlargeth** him,
and *bringeth* **leadeth** him
before great men **at the face of the great**.
- 17 He that is first in **presenting** his own *cause* **defence**
seemeth **be** just;
but his *neighbour* **friend** cometh
and *searcheth* **probeth** him.
- 18 The *lot* **pebble**
causeth contentions to *cease* **shabbathize**,
and *parteth* **separateth** between the mighty.
- 19 A brother *offended* **rebelled against**
is harder to be won than a strong city **is as a city of strength**:
and their contentions are like the bars of a *castle* **citadel**.
- 20 A man's belly shall be satisfied
with the fruit of his mouth;
and with the *increase* **produce** of his lips
shall he be *filled* **satisfied**.
- 21 Death and life are in the *power* **hand** of the tongue:
and they that love it shall eat the fruit thereof.
- 22 Whoso findeth a *wife* **woman** findeth a *good thing*,
and *obtaineth favour* **produceth pleasure**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
- 23 The *poor* **impoverished**
useth intreaties **wordeth supplications**;
but the rich answereth *roughly* **strongly**.
- 24 A man that hath friends must shew himself friendly:
and there is a *friend* **lover**
that *sticketh* **adhereth** closer than a brother.

PROVERBS 17, 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- and a man of discernment *is* of cool spirit.
- 28 Even a fool, when he hushes, *is* fabricated wise;
he who shuts his lips is a discerner.
- 18** He who seeks his own desire
separates himself and quarrels with all evidence.
- 2 A fool has no delight in discernment;
but to expose his heart.
- 3 When the wicked come,
then also comes disrespect;
and with abasement, reproach.
- 4 The words of the mouth of a man
are as deep waters,
and the fountain of wisdom
as a gushing wadi.
It is not good
— to lift the face of the wicked
— to pervert the just in judgment.
- 6 The lips of a fool enter contention
and his mouth calls for poundings.
- 7 The mouth of a fool *is* his ruin
and his lips the snare of his soul.
- 8 The words of a whisperer inflame
— descending to the chambers of the belly.
He also who slacks his work
is brother to a master of ruin.
- 10 The name of Yah Veh *is* a tower of strength;
the just run to it and are lofted.
- 11 The wealth of the rich *is* his city of strength
— as a lofted wall in his own imagination.
At the face of the breach
the heart of man *is* lifted;
at the face of honor *is* humility.
- 13 He who responds to a word ere he hears
— folly and shame to him.
- 14 The spirit of a man sustains his disease;
and a stricken spirit who can bear?
- 15 The heart of the discerning
chattelizes knowledge;
and the ear of the wise seeks knowledge.
- 16 The gift of a human enlarges him
— leads him at the face of the great.
- 17 He who presents his own defence first, is just;
and his friend comes and probes him.
- 18 The pebble causes contentions to shabbathize
and separates between the mighty.
- 19 A brother rebelled against, *is* as a city of strength;
and their contentions, as the bars of a citadel.
- 20 The belly of man
satiates with the fruit of his mouth
— satiates with the produce of his lips.
- 21 Death and life *are* in the hand of the tongue;
and they who love it eat the fruit thereof.
- 22 Whoever finds a woman finds good
and produces pleasure from Yah Veh.
The impoverished word supplications;
and the rich answer strongly.
- 24 A man with friends shows himself friendly;
and there is a lover
who adheres closer than a brother.

PROVERBS 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19 Better is the poor the impoverished
that walketh in his integrity,
than he that is perverse the perverted
in his lips, and is a fool.

2 Also,
that the soul be without knowledge, it is not good;
and he that hasteth with his feet sinneth.

3 The foolishness folly of man humanity
perverteth his way:
and his heart fretteth rageth against the LORD Yah Veh.

4 Wealth maketh addeth many friends;
but the poor is separated from his neighbour friend.

5 A false witness shall not be unpunished exonerated,
and he that speaketh breatheth lies shall not escape.

6 Many will intreat shall stroke the favour face
of the prince volunteer:
and every man is a friend to him that giveth a man of gifts.

7 All the brethren of the poor impoverished do hate him:
how much more
do his friends companions go far from him?
he persuueth them with words sayings,
yet they are wanting to him not.

8 He that getteth wisdom chattelizeth heart
loveth his own soul:
he that keepeth understanding guardeth discernment
shall find good.

9 A false witness shall not be unpunished exonerated,
and he that speaketh breatheth lies shall perish destruct.

10 Delight is not seemly befitting for a fool;
much less for a servant
to have rule reign over princes governors.

11 The discretion comprehension of a man human
deferreth prolongeth his anger wrath;
and it is his glory beauty
to pass over a transgression rebellion.

12 The king's wrath sovereign's rage
is as the roaring growling of a lion whelp;
but his favour pleasure is as dew upon the grass herbage.

13 A foolish son is the calamity of his father:
and the contentions of a wife woman
are a continual dropping dripping.

14 House and riches wealth
are the inheritance of fathers:
and a prudent wife comprehending woman
is from the LORD Yah Veh.

15 Slothfulness casteth Sloth falleth into a deep sleep;
and an idle a deceitful soul shall suffer hunger famish.

16 He that keepeth guardeth the commandment misvah
keepeth guardeth his own soul;
but he that despiseth his ways shall die.

17 He that hath pity granteth charism upon the poor
lendeth unto the LORD Yah Veh;
and that which he hath given dealt
will he pay him again shall he shalam.

18 Chasten Discipline thy son while there is hope,
and let lift not thy soul spare for his crying death.

19 A man One of great harsh wrath
shall suffer punishment bear the penalty:
for if thou deliver rescue him, yet thou must do it again.

20 Hear counsel, and receive instruction take discipline,
that thou mayest be wise enwise
in thy latter end finality.

21 There are many devices fabrications in a man's heart;
nevertheless the counsel of the LORD Yah Veh,
that shall stand rise.

22 The desire of a man human is his kindness mercy:
and a poor man the impoverished
is better than a liar man of lies.

23 The fear awe of the LORD tendeth Yah Veh be to life:
and he that hath it shall abide stay satisfied;
he shall not be visited with evil.

24 A slothful man The sloth hideth his hand in his bosom,
and will shall not
so much as bring return it to his mouth again.

25 Smite a scorner,
and the simple will beware gullible shall strategize:
and reprove one that hath understanding discerneth,
and he will understand shall discern knowledge.

PROVERBS 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

19 Better, the impoverished walking in integrity,
than the perverted in lips who is a fool.

2 Also, without knowledge, the soul is not good;
and he who hastens with his feet, sins.

3 The folly of humanity perverts his way;
whose heart rages against Yah Veh.

4 Wealth adds many friends;
and the poor is separated from his friend.

5 Neither is a false witness exonerated
nor escapes he who breathes lies.

6 Many stroke the face of the volunteer;
and all are a friend of a man of gifts.

7 All the brothers hate the impoverished;
how much more, his companions far from him.
he pursues them with sayings; yet they are not.

8 He who chattelizes heart loves his own soul;
he who guards discernment finds good.

9 A false witness is not exonerated
and he who breathes lies destructs.

10 Delight befits not a fool;
much less a servant to reign over governors.

11 The comprehension of a human
prolongs his wrath;
and his beauty is to pass over a rebellion.

12 The rage of the sovereign
is as the growling of a whelp;
and his pleasure
is as dew on the herbage.

13 A foolish son
is the calamity of his father;
and the contentions of a woman
are a continual dripping.

14 House and wealth are the inheritance of fathers;
and a comprehending woman is from Yah Veh.

15 Sloth falls into a deep sleep;
and a deceitful soul famishes.

16 Whoever guards the misvah,
guards his own soul;
and whoever despises his ways, dies.

17 Whoever grants charism to the poor
lends to Yah Veh;
and shalams what he deals.

18 Discipline your son while there is hope
and lift not your soul for his death.

19 One of harsh wrath must bear the penalty;
for if you rescue him, you must do it again.

20 Hear counsel and take discipline,
that you finally enwise.

21 Many are the fabrications in the heart of man;
nevertheless the counsel of Yah Veh rises.

22 The desire of a human is his mercy;
better, impoverishment than a man of lies.

23 To awe Yah Veh is unto life;
he stays satisfied; he is not visited with evil.

24 The sloth hides his hand in his bosom
and returns it not to his mouth.

25 Smite a scorner, and the gullible strategize;
reprove the discernor, and he discerns knowledge.

PROVERBS 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

26 He that *wasteth* **ravageth** his father,
and *chaseth* **fleeth** away his mother,
is a son that *causeth* **shame shameth**,
and *bringeth* **reproach blusheth**.
27 Cease, my son,
to hear the *instruction* **discipline**
that *causeth* to err **inadvertently**
from the *words* **sayings** of knowledge.
28 An *ungodly* **A** witness **of Beli Yaal** scorneth judgment:
and the mouth of the wicked
devoureth **iniquity swalloweth mischief**.
29 Judgments are prepared for scorners,
and *stripes* **poundings** for the back of fools.

20

Wine *is a mocker* **scorneth**,
strong drink is raging **intoxicant roareth**:
and whosoever *is deceived* **ereth inadvertently** thereby
is not wise **enwisened**.
2 The *fear* **terror** of a *king* **sovereign**
is as the roaring **growling** of a *lion* **whelp**:
whoso *provoketh* **enrageth** him to *anger*
sinneth against his own soul.
3 It is an honour for a man
to cease **shabbathize** from strife:
but every fool *will be meddling* **shall quarrel**.
4 The *sluggard* **sloth**
will shall not plow *by reason of the cold* **in winter**;
therefore shall he *beg* **ask** in harvest,
and have *nothing* **naught**.
5 Counsel in the heart of man is like deep water;
but a man of *understanding* **discernment**
will draw it out **shall bail**.
6 *Most men* **An abundance of humanity**
will proclaim every one **shall each call out**
his own *goodness* **mercy**:
but a *faithful* **trustworthy** man who can find?
7 The just *man* walketh in his integrity:
his *children* **sons** are *blessed* **blithe** after him.
8 A *king* **sovereign**
that *sitteth* **setteth** in the throne of *judgment* **pleading**
scattereth **winnoweth** away all evil with his eyes.
9 Who can say, I have *made* **purified** my heart *clean*,
I am *pure* **purified** from my sin?
10 *Divers weights* **A stone and a stone**,
and *divers measures* **an ephah and an ephah**,
yea, both of them
are alike **abomination** **abhorrence** to the **LORD Yah Veh**.
11 Even a *child* **lad**
is known **recognized** by his *doings* **exploits**,
whether his *work* **deeds** be pure,
and whether it be *right* **straight**.
12 The hearing ear, and the seeing eye,
the LORD **Yah Veh**
hath *made* **worked** even both of them.
13 Love not sleep,
lest thou *come to* **poverty be dispossessed**;
open thine eyes, and thou shalt be satisfied with bread.
14 *It is naught* **Evil, it is naught evil!**
saith the *buyer* **chattelizer**:
but when he *is gone his way* **hath gad about**,
then he *boasteth* **halaaleth**.
15 There is gold,
and a *multitude* **an abundance** of *rubies* **pearls**:
but the lips of knowledge
are a precious jewel **an esteemed instrument**.
16 Take his *garment* **clothes**
that is *surety* **pledge** for a stranger:
and take a pledge of him
for a *strange woman* **stranger**.
17 Bread of *deceit* **falsehood** is sweet **pleasant** to a man;
but afterwards his mouth shall be filled with gravel.
18 Every *purpose* **fabrication** is established by counsel:
and with *good advice* **make counsels work** war.
19 He that goeth about as a talebearer
revealeth secrets **exposeth private counsel**:
therefore meddle not with him
that *flattereth* **enticeth** with his lips.
20 Whoso *curseth* **abaseth** his father or his mother,

PROVERBS 19, 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

26 Whoever ravages his father
and has his mother to flee,
is a son that shames and blushes.
27 Cease, my son, to hear the discipline
to err inadvertently from the sayings of knowledge.
28 A witness of Beli Yaal scorns judgment;
and the mouth of the wicked swallows mischief.
29 Judgments are prepared for scorners;
and poundings for the back of fools.

20

Wine scorns; intoxicants roar;
and whoever errs inadvertently enwiseneth not.
2 The terror of a sovereign is as a growling whelp;
whoever enrages him sins against his own soul.
3 Honor to the man who shabbathizes from strife;
and every fool quarrels.
4 The sloth plows not in winter;
he asks in harvest and has naught.
5 Counsel in the heart of man is as deep water;
and the man of discernment bails.
6 An abundance of humanity
each calls out his own mercy;
and a man of trust, who finds?
7 The just walks in his integrity;
his sons are blithe after him.
8 A sovereign who settles in the throne of pleading
winnows all evil with his eyes.
9 Who says,
I purified my heart; I am purified from my sin?
10 A stone and a stone; an ephah and an ephah:
yes, both are abhorrence to Yah Veh.
11 Even a lad is recognized by his exploits,
whether his deeds are pure; whether straight.
12 The hearing ear and the seeing eye,
Yah Veh worked even both.
13 Love not sleep, lest you become dispossessed;
open your eyes and become satisfied with bread.
14 Evil, evil! says the chattelizer;
and when he gads about, he halals.
15 There is gold and an abundance of pearls;
and the lips of knowledge
are an esteemed instrument.
16 Take his clothes, who pledges for a stranger;
and pledge him for a stranger.
17 Bread of falsehood is pleasant to a man;
and afterward his mouth is filled with gravel.
18 Every fabrication is established by counsel;
and with counsels, work war.
19 A talebearer exposes private counsel;
meddle not with him who entices with his lips.
20 Whoever abases his father or his mother,

PROVERBS 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 21 his lamp shall be *put out extinguished*
in *obscure mid* darkness.
An inheritance
may be *gotten hastily obtained by avarice*
at the *beginning first*;
but the *end thereof finality* shall not be blessed.
- 22 Say not thou, I *will recompense shall shalam* for evil;
but wait on the LORD await Yah Veh,
and he shall save thee.
- 23 *Divers weights A stone and a stone*
are an *abomination abhorrence* unto the *LORD Yah Veh*;
and a *false balance is balances of deceit* are not good.
- 24 *Man's goings The paces of the mighty*
are of the *LORD Yah Veh*;
how can a *man then human*
understand discern his own way?
It is a snare to the *man human*
who *devoureth hastily cheweth* that which is holy,
and after vows to *make enquiry search*.
- 25 A *wise king sovereign*
scattereth winnoweth the wicked,
and *bringeth turneth* the wheel over them.
- 27 The *spirit breath* of *man humanity*
is the *Candle lamp* of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
searching all the *inward parts chambers* of the belly.
- 28 Mercy and truth *preserve guard* the *king sovereign*;
and his throne is upholden by mercy.
- 29 The *glory beauty* of *young men youths*
is their *strength force*;
and the *beauty majesty* of *old men elders*
is the *grey head greyness*.
- 30 The *blueness lashes* of a wound
cleanseth away purify evil:
so *do stripes strokes* the inward parts of the belly.
- 21 The *king's sovereign's* heart
is in the hand of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
as the *rivers rivulets* of water:
he *turneth spreadeth* it whithersoever he *will desire*.
Every way of a man is *right straight* in his own eyes:
but the *LORD pondereth Yah Veh gaugeth* the hearts.
- 2 *To do Choose to work* justice and judgment
is more acceptable to the LORD unto Yah Veh
rather than sacrifice.
- 3 An high look, and a *proud broad* heart,
and the plowing of the wicked, is sin.
- 4 The *thoughts fabrications* of the *diligent decisive*
tend be only to *plenteousness advantage*;
but of every one that is hasty only to want.
- 5 The *getting deeds* of treasures by a *lying false* tongue
is a vanity
tossed to and fro dispersed of them that seek death.
- 6 The *robbery devastation* of the wicked
shall *destroy cut* them;
because they refuse to *do work* judgment.
- 7 The way of a *guilty* man is *froward and strange perverse*;
but as for the pure, his *work deed* is *right straight*.
- 8 It is better to *dwell settle*
in a corner of the *housetop roof*,
than with a *brawling contentious* woman
in a *wide community* house.
- 9 The soul of the wicked desireth evil:
his *neighbour friend*
findeth granteth no *favour charism* in his eyes.
- 10 When the scornee is *punished penalized*,
the *simple is made wise gullible enwiseneth*;
and when the wise is *instructed comprehendeth*,
he *receiveth taketh* knowledge.
- 11 The *righteous man Just One*
wisely considereth comprehendeth
the house of the wicked:
but *God overthroweth perverteth* the wicked
for their *wickedness evil*.
- 12 Whoso *stoppeth shutteth* his ears
at the cry of the poor,
he also shall *cry call out* himself,
but shall not be *heard answered*.
- 13 A *covert gift in secret pacifieth anger tameth wrath*;
and a *reward bribe* in the bosom strong *wrath fury*.

PROVERBS 20, 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- extinguishes his lamp in mid darkness.
- 21 An inheritance first obtained by avarice;
is not blessed at its finality.
- 22 Say not, I shalam for evil;
await Yah Veh and he saves you.
- 23 A stone and a stone
are an abhorrence to Yah Veh;
and balances of deceit are not good.
- 24 The paces of the mighty are of Yah Veh;
how discerns a human his own way?
- 25 It is a snare to the human
who hastily chews what is holy
and vows to search afterward.
- 26 A wise sovereign winnows the wicked
and turns the wheel over them.
- 27 The breath of humanity is the lamp of Yah Veh,
searching all the chambers of the belly.
- 28 Mercy and truth guard the sovereign;
and upholds his throne by mercy.
- 29 The beauty of youths is their force;
and the majesty of elders is the greyness.
- 30 The lashes of a wound purify evil;
thus strokes the inward parts of the belly.
- 21 The heart of the sovereign
is in the hand of Yah Veh;
as the rivulets of water
he spreads it wherever he desires.
- 2 Every way of a man is straight in his own eyes;
and Yah Veh gauges the heart.
- 3 To work justice and judgment
is chosen of Yah Veh, rather than sacrifice.
- 4 A high look and a broad heart
and the plowing of the wicked, is sin.
- 5 The fabrications of the decisive
are only to advantage;
and of all the hasty
only to want.
- 6 The deeds of treasures by a false tongue
is a vanity dispersed by them who seek death.
- 7 The devastation of the wicked cuts them;
because they refuse to work judgment.
- 8 Perverse is the way of a man of guilt;
and the deed of the pure is straight.
- 9 Better, to settle in a corner of the roof,
than with a contentious woman
in a community house.
- 10 The soul of the wicked desires evil;
his friend grants no charism in his eyes.
- 11 When the scornee is penalized,
the gullible enwiseneth;
and when the wise comprehend,
he takes knowledge.
- 12 The Just One comprehends the house of the wicked;
perverting the wicked for their evil.
- 13 Whoever shuts his ears at the cry of the poor,
calls, but is not answered.
- 14 A covert gift tames wrath;
and a bribe in the bosom, strong fury.

PROVERBS 21, 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

15 It is joy **cheerfulness** to the just to *do work* judgment:
but *destruction* **ruin** shall be
to the workers of *iniquity* **mischief**.

16 The *man* **human** that *wandereth* **strayeth**
out of the way of *understanding* **comprehension**
shall *remain* **rest** in the congregation of *the dead* **ghosts**.

17 He that loveth *pleasure* **cheerfulness**
shall be a *poor* man **of lack**:
he that loveth wine and *oil* **ointment**
shall not be *rich* **enrich**.

18 The wicked
shall be a *ransom* **a koper/an atonement**
for the *righteous* **just**,
and the *transgressor* **they who deal covertly**
for the *upright* **straight**.

19 It is better to *dwell* **settle** in the *land of* the wilderness,
than with a *contentious* **woman of contentions**
and an *angry woman* **vexations**.

20 There is treasure to be desired and *oil* **ointment**
in the *dwelling* **habitation of rest** of the wise;
but a foolish man *spendeth* **human swalloweth** it up.

21 He that *followeth* **pursueth**
after righteousness **justness** and mercy
findeth *life, righteousness* **justness**, and honour.

22 A **The wise man scaleth ascendeth**
the city of the mighty,
and *casteth down* **toppleth**
the strength of the confidence *thereof*.

23 Whoso *keepeth* **guardeth** his mouth and his tongue
keepeth **guardeth** his soul from *troubles* **tribulations**.

24 Proud, and *haughty* **arrogant**: scorners is his name,
who *dealeth* **worketh**
in proud wrath **the fury of arrogance**.

25 The desire of the *slothful* **killeth sloth deathifieth** him;
for his hands refuse to *labour* **work**.

26 He *coveteth greedily* **In desiring**,
he desireth all the day long;
but the *righteous* **just** giveth and spareth not.

27 The sacrifice of the wicked is *abomination* **abhorrence**:
how much more,
when he bringeth it with a *wicked mind* **intrigue?**
A *false witness* **of lies** shall *perish* **destruct**:
but the man that heareth
speakech constantly **wordeth in perpetuity**.

29 A wicked man *hardeneth* **strengtheneth** his face:
but as for the *upright* **the straight**,
he *directeth* **establisheth** his way.

30 There is no wisdom nor *understanding* **discernment**
nor counsel against *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

31 The horse is prepared against the day of *battle* **war**:
but *safety* **salvation** is of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

22

A *good name*
is rather to be chosen than great riches,
and *loving favour* **good charism**
rather than silver and gold.

2 The rich and *poor* **impoverished** meet together:
the LORD **Yah Veh** is the *maker* **Worker** of them all.

3 A *prudent man* **foreseeth** **The subtle seeth** the evil,
and hideth himself:
but the *simple* **gullible** pass on,
and are *punished* **penalized**.

4 By **The finality of** humility
and the *fear* **awe** of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
are riches, and honour, and life.

5 Thorns and snares
are in the way of the *froward* **pervert**:
he that *doth keep* **guardeth** his soul
shall be far from them.

6 *Train up a child* **Hanukkah a lad by mouth**
in the way he should go **about his way**:
and when he is *old* **ageth**,
he *will* **shall** not *depart* **turn aside** from it.

7 The rich *ruleth* **reigneth** over the *poor* **impoverished**,
and the borrower is servant
to the *lender* **man that lendeth**.

8 He that *soweth iniquity* **seedeth wickedness**
shall reap *vanity* **harvest mischief**:
and the *rod* **scion** of his *anger* **fury** shall *fail* **be finished off**.

PROVERBS 21, 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

15 For the just to work judgment is cheerfulness;
and ruin to the workers of mischief.

16 The human
who strays from the way of comprehension
rests in the congregation of ghosts.

17 Whoever loves cheerfulness is a man of lack;
whoever loves wine and ointment enriches not.

18 The wicked
are a koper/an atonement for the just;
and they who deal covertly
for the straight.

19 Better, to settle in the land of the wilderness,
than with a woman of contentions and vexations.

20 A treasure to be desired, and ointment
is in the habitation of rest of the wise;
and a foolish human swallows it.

21 He who pursues justness and mercy
finds life, justness and honor.

22 The wise ascend the city of the mighty
and topple the strength of the confidence.

23 Whoever guards his mouth and his tongue
guards his soul from tribulations.

24 Proud, arrogant: scorners is his name,
who works the fury of arrogance.

25 The desire of the sloth deathifies him;
for his hands refuse to work.

26 In desiring, he desires all the day long;
and the just gives and spares not.

27 The sacrifice of the wicked *is* abhorrence;
how much more, when he brings it with intrigue?
A witness of lies destructs;
and the man who hears, words in perpetuity.

29 A wicked man strengthens his face;
and the straight establishes his way.

30 There is neither wisdom nor discernment
nor counsel against Yah Veh.

31 The horse is prepared against the day of war;
and salvation is of Yah Veh.

22 Choose a name rather than great riches;
and good charism rather than silver and gold.

2 The rich and impoverished meet together;
Yah Veh is the Worker of them all.

3 The subtle sees the evil and hides himself;
and the gullible pass on and are penalized.

4 The finality of humility and to awe Yah Veh
are riches and honor and life.

5 Thorns and snares are in the way of the pervert;
he who guards his soul is far from them.

6 Hanukkah a lad by mouth about his way;
and when he ages, he turns not aside from it.

7 The rich reign over the impoverished
and the borrower is servant to the man who lends.

8 Whoever seeds wickedness, harvests mischief;
and the scion of his fury *is* finished off.

PROVERBS 22, 23

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

9 He that hath a **bountiful good** eye shall be blessed;
for he giveth of his bread to the poor.

10 Cast out **Exile** the scorner, and contention shall go out;
yea, **strife pleading** and **reproach abasement**
shall cease **shabbathize**.

11 He that loveth pureness of heart,
for the **grace charism** of his lips
the **king sovereign** shall be his friend.

12 The eyes of the **LORD Yah Veh** preserve knowledge,
and he **overthroweth perverteth** the words
of the **transgressor them who deal covertly**.

13 The **slothful man sloth** saith,
There is a lion without, A lion in the outways!
I shall be **slain in murdered within** the **streets** **broadways**.

14 The mouth of **strange women strangers**
is a **deep pit chasm**:
he that *is abhorred of the LORD enrageth Yah Veh*
shall fall therein.

15 Foolishness **Folly** is bound in the heart of a **child lad**;
but the **rod scion** of **correction discipline**
shall **drive remove** it far from him.

16 He that oppresseth the poor
to **increase his riches abound**,
and he that giveth to the rich,
shall surely come to want only to lack.

17 Bow down **Spread** thine ear,
and hear the words of the wise,
and **apply set** thine heart unto my knowledge.

18 For it is a **pleasant thing pleasure**
if thou **keep guard** them within **thee thy belly**;
they shall *withal be fitted be established* in thy lips.

19 That thy **trust confidence**
may be in the **LORD Yah Veh**,
I have made known to thee this day, even to thee.

20 Have not I **written scribed** to thee
excellent things thrice in counsels and knowledge,

21 That I might **make have** thee know
the **certainty truth** of the **words sayings** of truth;
that thou mightest **answer respond**
to the **words sayings** of truth
to them that send unto thee?

22 **Rob Strip** not the poor, because he is poor:
neither **oppress crush** the **afflicted humble**
in the **gate portal**:

23 For the **LORD Yah Veh**
will plead shall defend their **cause defence**,
and **spoil defraud** the soul
of those that **spoiled defrauded** them.

24 *Make no friendship Befriend not*
with an angry man a master of fury;
and with a furious man thou shalt not go:
Lest thou **learn be taught** his ways,
and **get take** a snare to thy soul.

26 Be not thou *one* of them that **strike hands clap palms**,
or of them that *are sureties pledge* for **debts loans**.

27 If thou hast **nothing naught** to **pay shalam**,
why should he take away thy bed from under thee?

28 Remove not the **ancient landmark eternal border**,
which thy fathers have **set worked**.

29 Seest thou a man **diligent skillful** in his **business work**?
he shall **stand before kings set at the face of sovereigns**;
he shall not **stand set**
before mean men at the face of darkness.

23

When thou **sittest settlest**
to eat with a **ruler sovereign**,
consider diligently in discerning,
discern what is **before thee at thy face**:
And **put set** a knife to thy throat,
if thou be a man given to **appetite thy soul be thy master**.
Be not **desirous Desire not** of his **dainties delicacies**:
for they are **deceitful meat a bread of lies**.
Labour not to **be rich enrich**:
cease from thine own **wisdom discernment**.
Wilt **Shalt** thou **set flit** thine eyes
upon that which is not?
for **riches certainly make themselves**
in working, they work wings;
they fly away as an eagle toward **heaven the heavens**.

PROVERBS 22, 23

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 He who has a good eye is blessed;
for he gives of his bread to the poor.

10 Exile the scorner and contention goes out;
yes, pleading and abasement shabbathize.

11 Whoever loves pureness of heart,
his lips are charism; the sovereign his friend.

12 The eyes of Yah Veh preserve knowledge
and he perverts the words
of them who deal covertly.

13 The sloth says, A lion in the outways!
I am murdered within the broadways.

14 The mouth of strangers is a chasm;
he who enrages Yah Veh falls therein.

15 Folly is bound in the heart of a lad;
and the scion of discipline removes it far from him.

16 He oppresses the poor to abound
and he gives to the rich only to lack.

17 Spread your ear and hear the words of the wise
and set your heart to my knowledge:
for they are a pleasure
if you guard them within your belly:
they are established for your lips:

19 that your confidence be in Yah Veh,
I make known to you this day — even to you.

20 Scribed I not thrice to you
in counsels and knowledge,
21 so that you know the truth of the sayings of truth
— to respond to the sayings of truth
to them who send to you?

22 Neither strip the poor, because he is poor;
nor crush the humble in the portal;
for Yah Veh defends their defence
and defrauds the soul of their defrauders.

24 Neither befriend a master of fury;
nor go with a man of fury;
lest you be taught his ways
and take a snare to your soul.

26 Be not of them who clap palms,
or of them who pledge for loans.
27 If you have naught to shalam,
why take your bed from under you?

28 Remove not the eternal border,
your fathers worked.
29 See a man skillful in his work?
He sets at the face of sovereigns;
he sets not at the face of darkness.

23 When you settle to eat with a sovereign,
in discerning, discern what is at your face;
and set a knife to your throat,
if your soul is your master.
Neither desire his delicacies
for they are a bread of lies:
nor labor to enrich;
cease from your own discernment.
Flit your eyes thereon; and it is not:
for in working, they work wings;
they fly away as an eagle toward the heavens.

PROVERBS 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 Eat thou not the bread of him that hath an evil eye,
neither desire thou his *dainty meats* **delicacies**;
7 For as he *thinketh* **guardeth** in his *heart* **soul**, so is he:
Eat and drink, saith he to thee;
but his heart is not with thee.
8 The morsel which thou hast eaten
shalt thou dost vomit up,
and *lose* **ruin** thy *sweet* **pleasant** words.
9 *Speak* **Word** not in the ears of a fool:
for he *will* **despise** **shall disrespect**
the *wisdom* **comprehension** of thy *words* **utterances**.
10 Remove not the *old landmark* **eternal border**;
and enter not into the fields of the *fatherless* **orphan**:
11 For their redeemer is *mighty* **strong**;
he shall *plead* **defend** their *cause* **defence** with thee.
12 Apply thine heart unto *instruction* **discipline**,
and thine ears to the words of knowledge.
13 Withhold not *correction* **discipline** from the *child* **lad**:
for if thou beatest **when thou smittest** him with the *rod* **scion**,
he shall not die.
14 Thou shalt *beat* **smite** him with the *rod* **scion**,
and shalt *deliver* **rescue** his soul from *hell* **sheol**.
15 My son, if thine heart *be* **wise** **envisen**,
my heart shall *rejoice* **cheer**, even mine.
16 Yea, my reins shall rejoice,
when thy lips *speak* **right things** **word straightnesses**.
17 Let not thine heart envy sinners:
but *be thou in the fear of the LORD* **awe thou Yah Veh**
all the day long.
18 For surely there is *an end* **a finality**;
and thine *expectation* **hope** shall not be cut off.
19 Hear thou, my son, and *be* **wise** **envisen**,
and *guide* **blithe** thine heart in the way.
20 Be not among *winebibbers* **wine carousers**;
among *riotous eaters* **gluttons** of flesh:
21 For the *drunkard* **carouser** and the glutton
shall *come to poverty* **be dispossessed**:
and drowsiness shall *clothe a man* **enrobe** with *rags* **shreds**.
22 Harken unto thy father that *begat* **birthed** thee,
and *despise* **disrespect** not thy mother
when she *is old* **ageth**.
23 *Buy* **Chattelize** the truth, and sell it not;
also wisdom, and *instruction* **discipline**,
and *understanding* **discernment**.
24 The father of the *righteous* **just**
in twirling, shall *greatly rejoice* **twirl**:
and he that *begetteth* **a birtheth** the *wise* **child**
shall *have joy of* **cheer** in him.
25 Thy father and thy mother shall *be glad* **cheer**,
and she that *bare* **birthed** thee shall *rejoice* **twirl**.
26 My son, give me thine heart,
and let thine eyes *observe* **guard** my ways.
27 For a whore is a deep *ditch* **chasm**;
and a *strange woman* **stranger** is a narrow *pit* **well**.
28 She also *lieth in wait* **lurketh** as for a *prey* **a robber**,
and increaseth *the transgressors* **them who deal covertly**
among *men* **humanity**.
29 Who hath woe? who hath *sorrow* **the will**?
who hath contentions? who hath *babbling* **meditation**?
who hath wounds *without cause* **gratuitously**?
who hath *redness* **flushness** of eyes?
30 They that *tarry long* **linger** at the wine;
they that go to *seek mixed wine* **probe cocktails**.
31 *Look* **See** not thou upon the wine
when it *is red* **hath reddened**,
when it giveth his *colour* **eye** in the *cup* **pouch**,
when it *moveth itself aright* **passeth in straightnesses**.
32 *At the last* **Finally** it biteth like a serpent,
and *stingeth* **woundeth** like an *adder* **a hisser**.
33 Thine eyes shall *behold* **see** strange women,
and thine heart shall *utter perverse things* **word perversions**.
34 Yea, thou shalt be
as he that lieth down in the *midst* **heart** of the sea,
or as he that lieth upon the top of a mast.
35 They have *stricken* **smitten** me, *shalt thou say*,
and I was not sick;
they have *beaten* **hammered** me, and I *felt* **knew** it not:
when shall I awake?
I *will* **shall** seek it yet again **and again**.

PROVERBS 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 Neither eat the bread of an evil eye
nor desire his delicacies;
7 for as he guards in his soul, thus is he:
Eat and drink, he says to you;
but his heart is not with you.
8 Vomit the morsel you ate
and ruin your pleasant words.
9 Word not in the ears of a fool;
for he disrespects
the comprehension of your utterances.
10 Neither remove the eternal border;
nor enter the fields of the orphan;
for their redeemer is strong:
he defends their defence with you.
12 Apply your heart to discipline
and your ears to the words of knowledge.
13 Withhold not discipline from the lad;
when you smite him with the scion, he dies not:
smite him with the scion
and rescue his soul from sheol.
15 My son, if your heart envisions,
my heart cheers — even mine.
16 yes, my reins rejoice
when your lips word straightnesses.
17 O that your heart not envy sinners;
and awe Yah Veh all the day long.
18 For surely there is a finality;
then your hope is not cut off.
19 Hear you, my son and envision
and blithe your heart in the way.
20 Be not among carousers of wine
— among gluttons of flesh;
21 for the carouser and the glutton
become dispossessed;
and drowsiness enrobes with shreds.
22 Harken to your father who birthed you
and disrespect not your mother when she ages.
23 Chattelize the truth; sell it not
— wisdom and discipline and discernment.
24 In twirling, the father of the just twirls;
and he who births the wise cheers in him.
25 Your father and your mother cheer
and she who birthed you twirls.
26 My son, give me your heart
so that your eyes guard my ways.
27 For a whore is a deep chasm;
and a stranger is a narrow well.
28 She also lurks as a robber
and increases them
who deal covertly among humanity.
29 Who has woe?
Who has will?
Who has contentions?
Who has meditation?
Who has wounds gratuitously?
Who has flushness of eyes?
30 They who linger at the wine;
they who go to probe cocktails.
31 See not on the wine when it reddens
— when it gives its eye in the pouch
— when it passes in straightnesses:
and finally bites as a serpent
and wounds as a hisser.
32 Your eyes see strange women
and your heart words perversions:
34 yes, you — as he who lies in the heart of the sea
— as he who lies on the top of a mast.
35 They smote me, and I was not sick;
they hammered me, and I knew it not.
When waken I?
I seek it again and again.

PROVERBS 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

24 Be not thou envious against evil men,
neither desire to be with them.
2 For their heart
studieth destruction **meditateth devastation**,
and their lips *talk* **word of mischief toil**.
3 Through wisdom is an house builded;
and by *understanding* **discernment** it is established:
4 And by knowledge shall the chambers be filled
with all *precious* **esteemed** and pleasant *riches* **wealth**.
5 A **The wise man is strong is mighty in strength**;
yea, a man of knowledge
increaseth strength **strengtheneth force**.
6 For by *wise counsel* **counsels**
thou shalt *make* **work** thy war:
and in *multitude* **abundance** of counsellors
there is *safety* **salvation**.
7 Wisdom is too high for a fool:
he openeth not his mouth in the *gate* **portal**.
8 He that *deviseth* **fabricateth to do evil vilify**
shall be called a *mischievous person* **master of intrigue**.
9 The *thought* **intrigue** of *foolishness* **folly** is sin:
and the scorner
is an *abomination* **abhorrence** to men **humanity**.
10 If thou *faint* **slacken** in the day of *adversity* **tribulation**,
thy *strength* **force** is *small* **tribulated**.
11 If thou *forbear* **spare** to *deliver* **rescue**
them that are *drawn* **taken** unto death,
and those that
are ready to be slain **totter from the slaughter**;
12 If thou sayest, Behold, we knew it not;
doth not he that *pondereth* **gaudgeth** the heart
consider **discern** it?
and he that *keepeth* **guardeth** thy soul,
doth not he know it?
and shall not he *render* **return**
to *every man* **all humanity**
according to his *works* **deeds**?
13 My son, eat thou honey, because it is good;
and the honeycomb, which is sweet to thy *taste* **palate**:
14 So shall the knowledge of wisdom be unto thy soul:
when thou hast found it,
then there shall be a *reward* **finality**,
and thy *expectation* **hope** shall not be cut off.
15 Lay not wait **Lurk not**, O wicked man,
against the *dwelling* **habitation of rest**
of the *righteous* **just**;
spoil **ravage** not his *resting place* **repose**:
16 For a **the** just man falleth seven times,
and riseth up again:
but the wicked shall fall into *mischief* **evil**.
17 Rejoice **Cheer** not when thine enemy falleth,
and let not thine heart be *glad* **twirl** when he stumbleth:
18 Lest the **LORD Yah Veh** see it,
and it *displease him* **vilify in his eye**,
and he turn away his wrath from him.
19 Fret **Inflame** not thyself
because of evil men **at vilifiers**,
neither be thou envious at the wicked:
20 For there shall be no *reward* **finality** to the evil man;
the *candle* **lamp** of the wicked
shall be *put out* **extinguished**.
21 My son,
fear **awe** thou the **LORD Yah Veh** and the *king* **sovereign**:
and meddle not with them
that are *given to change* **reiterate**:
22 For their calamity shall rise suddenly;
and who knoweth the *ruin* **calamity** of them both?
23 These *things* also *belong* **be** to the wise.
It is not good
to have respect of persons **recognize faces** in judgment.
24 He that saith unto the wicked, Thou art *righteous* **just**;
him shall the people *curse* **pierce**,
nations shall *abhor* **enrage at** him:
25 But to them that *rebuke* **reprove** him
shall be *delight* **pleased**,
and a good blessing shall come upon them.
26 Every man **He** shall kiss his **the** lips that
giveth a right answer **respond straightforward words**.

PROVERBS 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

24 Neither be envious against evil men
nor desire to be with them:
2 for their heart meditates devastation
and their lips word of toil.
3 By wisdom, the house is built;
and by discernment, established;
4 and by knowledge, the chambers filled
with all esteemed and pleasant wealth.
5 The wise are mighty in strength;
yes, a man of knowledge strengthens force.
6 For by counsels, you work war;
and in abundance of counsellors, there is salvation.
7 Wisdom is too high for a fool;
he opens not his mouth in the portal.
8 Whoever fabricates to vilify
they call a master of intrigue.
9 The intrigue of folly is sin;
and the scorner is an abhorrence to humanity.
10 If you slacken in the day of tribulation,
your force is tribulated.
11 If you spare to rescue them
who are taken to death
and them who totter from the slaughter;
if you say, Behold, we knew it not;
Discerns he not, who gauges the heart?
Knows he not, who guards your soul?
— who returns to humanity according to his deeds?
13 My son, eat honey, because it is good;
and the honeycomb — sweet to your palate;
thus is the knowledge of wisdom to your soul;
when you find, then there is a finality
and your hope is not cut off.
15 Lurk not, O wicked,
against the habitation of rest of the just;
ravage not his repose:
16 for the just fall and rise by sevens;
and the wicked fall into evil.
17 Neither cheer when your enemy falls
nor twirl your heart when he stumbles;
lest Yah Veh sees it and it vilifies in his eye
and he turns away his wrath from him.
19 Neither inflame at vilifiers,
nor be envious of the wicked;
20 for there is no finality to the evil;
the lamp of the wicked extinguishes.
21 My son, awe Yah Veh and the sovereign;
meddle not with them who reiterate;
22 for their calamity rises suddenly;
and who knows the calamity of them both?
23 These also to the wise:
It is not good
to recognize faces in judgment.
24 He who says to the wicked, You are just
— the people pierce, nations enrage at him;
25 and they who reprove him are pleased;
and a good blessing comes on them.
26 He kisses the lips
that respond straightforward words.

PROVERBS 24, 25

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

27 Prepare thy work *without in the outways*,
and *make it fit for thyself* **ready it** in the field;
and afterwards build thine house.

28 Be not a witness against thy *neighbour* **friend**
without cause **gratuitously**;
and *deceive* **entice** not with thy lips.

29 Say not, I *will do so* **shall work** to him
as he hath *done* **worked** to me:
I *will render* **shall return** to the man
according to his *work* **deeds**.

30 I *went* **passed** by the field of the *slothful* **man of sloth**,
and by the vineyard of the *man* **human**
void of understanding **that lacketh heart**;
31 And, *lo* **behold**,
it was all *grown over* **ascended** with *thorns* **thistles**,
and nettles had covered the face *thereof*,
and the stone wall *thereof* was broken down.

32 Then I saw, and *considered it* **set my heart** well:
I *looked upon it* **saw**,
and *received instruction* **took discipline**.

33 Yet a little sleep, a little *slumber* **drowsiness**,
a little *folding* **clasp**ing of the hands to *sleep* **lie down**:
34 So shall thy poverty come as one that travelleth;
and thy *want* **lack** as an *armed man* **a man with buckler**.

25

These are also proverbs of *Solomon* **Shelomoh**,
which the men of *Hezekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
copied out **transcribed**.

2 It is the *glory* **honour** of *God* **Elohim**
to *conceal* **hide** a *thing* **word**:
but the honour of *kings* **sovereigns**
is to *search out* **probe** a *matter* **word**.

3 The *heaven* **heavens** for height,
and the earth for depth,
and the heart of *kings* **sovereigns**
is unsearchable **are not to be probed**.

4 *Take away* **Remove** the dross of the silver,
and there shall come forth
a *vessel* **an instrument** for the *finer* **refining**.

5 *Take away* **Remove** the wicked
from *before* **the face** of the *king* **sovereign**,
and his throne
shall be established in *righteousness* **justness**.

6 *Put* **Esteem** not forth thyself
in the *presence* **at the face** of the *king* **sovereign**,
and stand not in the place of *great men*:

7 For better it is that it be said unto thee,
Come up **Ascend** hither;
than that thou shouldest be *put lower* **abased**
in the *presence* **at the face** of the *prince* **volunteer**
whom thine eyes have seen.

8 Go not forth hastily to strive,
lest *thou know not what to do* **what thou workest**
in the *end thereof* **finality**,
when thy *neighbour* **friend**
hath *put thee to shame* **shamed thee**?

9 *Debate* **Defend** thy *cause* **defence**
with thy *neighbour* **himself** **friend**;
and *discover* **expose** not a *secret* **private counsel**
to another:

10 Lest he that heareth *it put thee to shame* **thee**,
and thine *infamy* **slander** turn not away.

11 A word *fitly spoken* **roundly worded**
is *like* apples of gold in *pictures* **imageries** of silver.

12 As an *earring* **a nosering** of gold,
and an ornament of *fine gold* **ore**,
so is a wise reprove upon an *obedient* **hearkening** ear.

13 As the cold of snow in the *time* **day** of harvest,
so is a *faithful messenger* **trustworthy ambassador**
to them that send him:
for he *refresheth* **restoreth** the soul
of his *masters* **adonim**.

14 *Whoso boasteth* **The man who hala**leth himself
of a false gift
is *like clouds* **vapour** and wind without *rain* **downpour**.

15 By long *forbearing* **wrath**
is a *prince* **persuaded** **commander enticed**,
and a *soft* **tender** tongue breaketh the bone.

PROVERBS 24, 25

exeGeses companion BIBLE

27 Prepare your work in the outways
and ready it in the field;
and afterward build your house.

28 Neither witness against your friend gratuitously;
nor entice with your lips.

29 Say not, I work to him as he worked to me;
— return to the man according to his deeds.

30 I passed by the field of the man of sloth
and by the vineyard of the human lacking heart;
31 and behold, it all ascends with thistles
and nettles cover the face
and the stone wall is broken down.

32 Then I see and set my heart well
— I see and take discipline.

33 A little sleep; a little drowsiness;
a little clasp^{ing} of the hands to lie down:
34 and so be your poverty as one who travels;
and your lack as a man with buckler.

25 These are also proverbs of Shelomoh;
which the men of Yechizqi Yah,
sovereign of Yah Hudah, transcribed.

2 The honor of Elohim *is* to hide a word;
and the honor of sovereigns to probe a word.

3 The heavens for height, and the earth for depth,
and the heart of sovereigns, probe not.

4 Remove the dross from the silver
and an instrument for refining comes forth.

5 Remove the wicked from the face of the sovereign
and his throne is established in justness.

6 Neither esteem yourself
at the face of the sovereign;
nor stand in the place of greatness.

7 Better to say to you, Ascend hither;
than abased at the face of the volunteer
whom your eyes have seen.

8 Go not forth hastily to strive,
What work you
when your friend finally shames you?
9 Defend your defence with your friend;
and expose not a private counsel to another;
lest he who hears shames you
and your slander turns not away.

11 A word roundly worded
is apples of gold in imageries of silver:
12 as a nosering of gold and an ornament of ore,
thus *is* a wise reprove to a hearkening ear.

13 As the cold of snow in the day of harvest,
thus is a trustworthy ambassador
to them who send him;
for he restores the soul of his adonim.

14 The man who halals himself of a false gift
is as vapour and wind without downpour.

15 By long wrath is a commander enticed
and a tender tongue breaks the bone.

PROVERBS 25, 26

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 16 Hast thou found honey?
eat so much as is sufficient for thee,
lest thou be *filled therewith* **satiated**, and vomit it.
- 17 *Withdraw* **Esteem** thy foot
from thy *neighbour's* **friend's** house;
lest he be *wearied* **satiated** of thee, and so hate thee.
- 18 A man that *beareth* **answereth** false witness
against his *neighbour* **friend** is a *maul* **mallet**,
and a sword, and a *sharp* **pointened** arrow.
- 19 Confidence
in an *unfaithful man* **one who dealeth covertly**
in time a **day of trouble tribulation**
is like a broken tooth, and a **dislocated** foot out of joint.
- 20 As he that *taketh away a garment* **removeth clothes**
in **on a** cold weather **day**,
and as vinegar upon nitre,
so is he that singeth songs to an *heavy* **evil** heart.
- 21 If *thine enemy be hungry* **he that hateth thee famish**,
give him bread to eat;
and if he *be thirsty* **thirst**, give him water to drink:
For thou shalt *heap* **take** coals of fire upon his head,
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall *reward* **shalam** thee.
- 23 The north wind
driveth away rain **whirleth the downpour**:
so doth an *angry countenance* **enraged face**
a *backbiting* **covert** tongue.
- 24 It is better to *dwell* **settle**
in the corner of the *housetop* **roof**,
than with a *brawling* **contentious** woman
and in a *wide* **community** house.
- 25 As cold waters to a *thirsty* **languid** soul,
so is *good news* a **report** from a far *country* **land**.
- 26 A *righteous man falling down* **The just tottering**
before at the face of the wicked
is as a *troubled* **an agitated** fountain,
and a *corrupt spring* **ruined fountain**.
- 27 It is not good to eat *much* **abundant** honey:
so for men to search their own glory is not glory.
nor honour to probe their own honour.
- 28 *He that hath no rule* **The man without control**
over his own spirit
is like a city that is *broken down* **breached**,
and without walls.
- 26 As snow in summer, and as rain in harvest,
so honour is not *seemly* **befitting** for a fool.
- 2 As the bird by wandering, as the swallow by flying,
so the *curse* **causeless** **abasing**
shall not come **gratuitously**.
- 3 A whip for the horse,
a *bridle* **bit** for the ass **he burro**,
and a *rod* **scion** for the fool's back.
- 4 Answer not a fool according to his folly,
lest thou also be *like* **likened** unto him.
- 5 Answer a fool according to his folly,
lest he be wise in his own *conceit* **eyes**.
- 6 He that sendeth a *message* **word** by the hand of a fool
cutteth off the feet, and drinketh *damage* **violence**.
- 7 The legs of the lame *are not equal* **languish**:
so is a *parable* **proverb** in the mouth of fools.
- 8 As he that *bindeth* **bundleth** a stone
in a *sling* **stoneheap**,
so is he that giveth honour to a fool.
- 9 As a thorn *goeth up* **ascendeth**
into the hand of a *drunkard* **one intoxicated**,
so is a *parable* **proverb** in the mouths of fools.
- 10 *The great God that formed*
Great is the whirler of all things;
both rewardeth **he hireth** the fool,
and *rewardeth* **hireth** transgressors.
- 11 As a dog returneth to his vomit,
so a fool *returneth to* **repeateth** his folly.
- 12 Seest thou a man wise in his own *conceit* **eyes**?
there is more hope of a fool than of him.
- 13 *The slothful man* **sloth** saith,
There is a **A roaring** lion in the way;
a lion is in the *streets* **broadways**.
- 14 As the door turneth upon his hinges,

PROVERBS 25, 26

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 16 Find you honey?
eat as much as suffices you,
lest you satiate and vomit.
- 17 Esteem your foot from the house of your friend;
lest he be satiated of you and hate you.
- 18 A man
who answers false witness against his friend
is a mallet and a sword and a pointed arrow.
- 19 Confidence in one who deals covertly
in a day of tribulation
is as a broken tooth and a dislocated foot.
- 20 Whoever removes clothes on a cold day
is as vinegar on nitre
— as he who sings songs to an evil heart.
- 21 If he who hates you famishes,
give him bread to eat;
and if he thirsts,
give him water to drink:
for you take coals on his head,
and Yah Veh shalams you.
- 23 The north wind whirls the downpour;
and an enraged face, a covert tongue.
- 24 Better, to settle in the corner of the roof
than with a contentious woman
in a community house.
- 25 As cold waters to a languid soul,
thus is a report from a far land.
- 26 The just tottering at the face of the wicked
is as an agitated fountain and a ruined fountain.
- 27 It is neither good to eat abundant honey;
nor honor to probe their own honor.
- 28 The man without control over his own spirit
is as a city breached and without walls.
- 26 As snow in summer;
as rain in harvest;
thus honor befits not a fool:
As the bird by wandering;
as the swallow by flying;
thus abasing comes not gratuitously.
- 3 A whip for the horse; a bit for the he burro;
and a scion for the back of a fool.
- 4 Answer not a fool according to his folly
lest you also be likened to him — even you;
answer a fool according to his folly
lest he be wise in his own eyes.
- 6 He who sends word by the hand of a fool
cuts off the feet and drinks violence.
- 7 The legs of the lame languish;
as a proverb in the mouth of fools.
- 8 As he who bundles a stone in a stoneheap
thus he who gives honor to a fool.
- 9 As a thorn ascends into the hand of the intoxicated
thus a proverb in the mouths of fools.
- 10 Great is the whirler of all;
he hires the fool and hires transgressors.
- 11 As a dog returns to his vomit,
thus a fool repeats his folly.
- 12 See a man wise in his own eyes?
More hope of a fool than of him.
- 13 The sloth says,
A roaring lion in the way
— a lion in the broadways.
- 14 As the door turns on its hinge,

PROVERBS 26, 27

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 so doth the **slothful sloth** upon his bed.
The **slothful sloth** hideth his hand in his bosom;
 it **grieveth wearieth** him
 to **bring return** it again to his mouth.
16 The **sluggard sloth** is wiser in his own **conceit eyes**
than seven men that can **render a reason return taste**.
17 He that passeth by,
and meddleth with strife **belonging not to him not his**,
is like one that **taketh upholdeth** a dog by the ears.
18 As a **mad man the rabid**
who **casteth firebrands shooteth fiery darts**,
 arrows, and death,
19 So is the man that deceiveth his **neighbour friend**,
and saith, Am not I **in sport laughing?**
20 Where **no wood the final timber** is,
 there the fire goeth out:
 so where there is no **talebearer whisperer**,
 the strife **ceaseth subsideth**.
21 As coals are to **burning to** coals,
 and **wood timber** to fire;
 so is a contentious man to **kindle scorch** strife.
22 The words of a **talebearer whisperer**
 are as **wounds inflame**,
 and they **go down descend**
 into the **innermost parts chambers** of the belly.
23 Burning **Inflamed** lips and a **wicked an evil** heart
are like a potsherd **covered overlaid** with silver dross.
24 He that hateth
 dissembleth with is recognized by his lips,
 and **layeth up placeth** deceit within him;
25 When **he speaketh fair his voice granteth** charism,
 believe trust him not:
 for there are seven **abominations abhorrences**
 in his heart.
26 Whose hatred is covered by deceit,
 his **wickedness evil** shall be **shewed exposed**
 before in front of the **whole** congregation.
27 Whoso diggeth a pit **of ruin** shall fall therein:
and he that rolleth a stone, it **will shall** return upon him.
28 A **lying false** tongue
 hateth those that are **afflicted oppressed** by it;
 and a **flattering smooth** mouth
 worketh **ruin overthrow**.

27

Boast Halal not thyself
 in the day of to morrow;
for thou knowest not what a day may **bring forth birth**.
2 Let another **man praise halal** thee,
 and not thine own mouth;
 a stranger, and not thine own lips.
3 A stone is heavy, and the sand weighty;
but a fool's **wrath vexation** is heavier than **them** both.
4 **Wrath Fury** is cruel,
 and **anger is outrageous wrath overfloweth**;
 but who is able to stand **before at the face of** envy?
5 **Open rebuke Exposed reproof**
 is better than **secret hidden** love.
6 **Faithful Trustworthy** are the wounds of a **friend lover**;
but the kisses of an **enemy are deceitful haters abound**.
7 The **full satiated** soul
 loatheth trampleth an honeycomb;
 but to the **hungry famished** soul
 every all bitter **thing** is sweet.
8 As a bird that wandereth from her nest,
so is a man that wandereth from his place.
9 **Ointment Oil** and **perfume incense**
 rejoice cheer the heart:
 so **doth** the sweetness of a man's friend
 by **heartly soul** counsel.
10 Thine own friend, and thy father's friend, forsake not;
 neither go into thy brother's house
 in the day of thy calamity:
for better is a **neighbour fellow tabernacler** that is near
 than a brother far off.
11 My son, **be wise enwise**,
 and **make cheer** my heart **glad**,
 that I may **answer return a word**
 to him that reproacheth me.

PROVERBS 26, 27

exeGeses companion BIBLE

 thus the sloth on his bed.
15 The sloth hides his hand in his bosom;
 it wearies him to return it to his mouth.
16 The sloth is wiser in his own eyes
 than seven men who return taste.
17 He who passes by
 and meddles with strife not his,
 is as one upholding a dog by the ears:
 as the rabid
18 who shoot fiery darts, arrows and death,
 thus the man who deceives his friend
 and says, Am I not laughing?
19 Where the final timber **is**, the fire goes out;
 thus where no whisperer **is**, the strife subsides.
20 As coals to coals, and timber to fire;
 thus a contentious man to scorch strife.
21 The words of a whisperer inflame;
 and they descend into the chambers of the belly.
22 Inflamed lips and an evil heart
 are as a potsherd overlaid with silver dross.
23 He who hates **is** recognized by his lips
 and places deceit within him;
24 when his voice grants charism, trust him not;
 for there are seven abhorrences in his heart;
25 whose hatred is covered by deceit,
 exposes his evil in front of the congregation.
26 Whoever digs a pit of ruin, falls therein;
 and whoever rolls a stone, it returns on him.
27 A false tongue hates whom it oppresses;
 and a smooth mouth works overthrow.

27

 Halal not yourself in the day of tomorrow;
 for you know not what a day births.
2 Have another halal you, and not your own mouth;
 a stranger, and not your own lips.
3 A stone is heavy and the sand weighty;
 and the vexation of a fool is heavier than both.
4 Fury **is** cruel and wrath overflows;
 and who is able to stand at the face of envy?
5 Exposed reproof is better than hidden love.
6 Trustworthy are the wounds of a lover;
 and the kisses of haters abound.
7 The satiated soul tramples a honeycomb;
 and to the famished soul all bitter is sweet.
8 As a bird wandering from her nest,
 thus a man wandering from his place.
9 Oil and incense cheer the heart;
 thus the sweetness of the friend of a man
 by counsel of the soul.
10 Neither forsake your own friend
 or the friend of your father;
 nor go to the house of your brother
 in the day of your calamity.
 Better, a fellow tabernacler nearby
 than a brother afar.
11 My son, enwise and cheer my heart,
 and I return word to him who reproaches me.

PROVERBS 27, 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 A prudent man foreseeth **The subtle seeth** the evil,
and hideth *himself*;
but the *simple* **gullible** pass on,
and are *punished* **penalized**.
13 Take his *garment* **clothes**
that is *surety* **pledgeth** for a stranger,
and take a *pledge of him* **pledge it**
for a *strange woman* **stranger**.
14 He that blesseth his friend with a *loud* **great** voice,
rising early in the morning,
it shall be *counted a curse* **fabricated an abasement** to him.
15 A continual *dropping* **dripping**
in a very *rainy* **torrential** day
and a contentious woman are alike.
16 Whosoever *hideth* **treasureth** her
hideth **treasureth** the wind,
and the ointment of his right *hand*,
which *bewrayeth itself* **calleth out**.
17 Iron sharpeneth iron;
so a man sharpeneth the *countenance* **face** of his friend.
18 Whoso *keepeth* **guardeth** the fig tree
shall eat the fruit *thereof*:
so he that *waiteth on* **guardeth his master adoni**
shall be honoured.
19 As in water face *answereth* to face,
so the heart of *man* **humanity** to *man* **humanity**.
20 Hell **As sheol** and *destruction* **abaddon**
are never *full* **satisfied**;
so the eyes of *man* **humanity** are never satisfied.
21 As the *fining pot* **crucible** for silver,
and the furnace for gold;
so is a man to *his praise* **by the halal of his mouth**.
22 Though thou shouldst *bray* **pestle** a fool
in a *mortar* **pestle**
among *wheat* **grits** with a pestle,
yet *will* **shall** not his *foolishness* **folly**
depart **turn aside** from him.
23 Be thou *diligent to know the state*
In knowing, know the face of thy flocks,
and *look well* **set thy heart** to thy *herds* **droves**.
24 For *riches are* **wealth be** not for ever **eternal**:
and *doth the crown endure* **nor the separatism**
to every *generation?* **generation to generation**.
25 The *hay appeareth* **grass exposeth**,
and the *tender grass sheweth itself* **sprout is seen**,
and herbs of the mountains are gathered.
26 The lambs are for thy *clothing* **robe**,
and the **he** goats are the price of the field.
27 And thou shalt have **doe** goats' milk enough
for thy *food* **bread**,
for the *food* **bread** of thy household,
and for the *maintenance for* **life of** thy *maidens* **lasses**.

28

The wicked flee when no *man* **one** pursueth:
but the *righteous* **just** are *bold* **confident** as a *lion* **whelp**.
2 For the *transgression* **rebellion** of a land
many are the *princes thereof* **governors**:
but by a *man of understanding* **human that discerneth**
and *knowledge* **knoweth such**
the state thereof shall be prolonged.
3 A *poor man* **An impoverished mighty**
that oppreseth the poor
is *like* a sweeping rain which leaveth no *food* **bread**.
4 They that forsake the *law* **torah**
praise **halal** the wicked:
but such as *keep* **guard** the *law* **torah**
contend with **throttle** them.
5 Evil men *understand* **discern** not judgment:
but they that seek *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
understand **discern** all *things*.
6 Better is the *poor* **impoverished**
that walketh in his *uprightness* **integrity**,
than he that *is perverse in* **perverteth** his ways,
though he be rich.
7 Whoso *keepeth* **guardeth** the *law* **torah**
is a *wise* **discerning** son:
but he that
is a companion of riotous men **befriendeth gluttons**
shameth his father.

PROVERBS 27, 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

12 The subtle see the evil and hide;
and the gullible pass on and are penalized.
13 Take his clothes, who pledges for a stranger,
and pledge it for a stranger.
14 He who blesses his friend with a great voice,
rising early in the morning,
is fabricated as an abasement to him.
15 A continual dripping in a torrential day
and a contentious woman are alike.
16 Whoever treasures her, treasures the wind;
and the ointment at his right calls out.
17 Iron sharpens iron;
thus a man sharpens the face of his friend.
18 Whoever guards the fig tree, eats the fruit;
thus he who guards his adoni, is honored.
19 As the water, face to face,
thus the heart, humanity to humanity.
20 As sheol and abaddon are never satisfied;
thus the eyes of humanity are never satisfied.
21 As the crucible for silver
and the furnace for gold;
thus a man by the halal of his mouth.
22 Though you pestle a fool in a pestle
among grits with a pestle,
yet his folly turns not aside from him.
23 In knowing, know the face of your flocks;
set your heart to your droves.
24 For neither is wealth eternal;
nor the separatism generation to generation.
25 The grass exposes and the sprout is seen;
and herbs of the mountains are gathered.
26 The lambs are for your robe
and the he goats are the price of the field.
27 And you have milk enough of the doe goats
for your bread
— for the bread of your household,
and for the life of your lasses.

28

The wicked flee when no one pursues;
and the just are confident as a whelp.
2 For the rebellion of a land
many are the governors;
and by a human who discerns and knows,
such is prolonged.
3 An impoverished mighty who oppresses the poor
is a sweeping rain which leaves no bread.
4 They who forsake the torah, halal the wicked;
such as guard the torah, throttle them.
5 Evil men discern not judgment;
but they who seek Yah Veh discern all.
6 Better the impoverished, who walk in integrity,
than he who perverts his ways, though he be rich.
7 Whoever guards the torah is a discerning son;
and he who befriends gluttons shames his father.

PROVERBS 28

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 8 He that by *usury* **interest** and *unjust gain* **bounty**
increaseth **aboundeth** his *substance* **wealth**,
he shall gather it for him
that *will pity* **shall grant charism** unto the poor.
- 9 He that turneth away his ear
from hearing the *law* **torah**,
even his prayer shall be *abomination* **abhorrence**.
- 10 Whoso causeth the *righteous* **straight**
to go *astray* **err inadvertently** in an evil way,
he shall fall *himself* into his own pit:
but the *upright* **integrions**
shall *have* **inherit the good things** in possession.
- 11 The rich man is wise in his own *conceit* **eyes**;
but the poor that *hath understanding* **discerneth**
searcheth him out.
- 12 When *righteous men do rejoice* **the just jump for joy**,
there is great *glory* **beauty**:
but when the wicked rise,
a man is hidden **humanity is searched**.
- 13 He that covereth his *sins* **rebellions**
shall not prosper:
but whoso *confesseth* **spreadeth hands**
and forsaketh *them*
shall *have mercy* **be mercied**.
- 14 *Happy* **Blithe** is the *man* **human**
that *feareth* **continually dreadeth**:
but he that hardeneth his heart
shall fall into *mischief* **evil**.
- 15 As a *roaring* **growling** lion, and a ranging bear;
so is a wicked *ruler* **sovereign** over the poor people.
- 16 The *prince* **eminent**
that *wanteth understanding* **lacketh discernment**
is also a great oppressor:
but he that hateth *covetousness* **greed**
shall prolong his days.
- 17 A *man* **human** that *doeth violence* **violateth**
to the blood of *any person* **a soul**
shall flee to the *pit* **well**;
let no man *stay* **uphold** him.
- 18 Whoso walketh *uprightly* **integrionsly** shall be saved:
but he that is *perverse* in **perverteth** his ways
shall fall at once.
- 19 He that *tilleth* **serveth** his *land* **soil**
shall *have plenty* of **satiat** with bread:
but he that *followeth after vain persons* **pursueth vanity**
shall *have* **satiat** with poverty *enough*.
- 20 A *faithful* **trustworthy** man
shall abound with blessings:
but he that *maketh haste* **hasteth** to *be rich* **enrich**
shall not be *innocent* **exonerated**.
- 21 To *have respect of persons* **respect faces** is not good:
for for a *piece* **morsel** of bread
that *man will transgress* **mighty shall rebel**.
- 22 He **The man** that hasteth to *be rich* **have wealth**
hath an evil eye,
and *considereth* **perceiveth** not
that *poverty* **lack** shall come upon him.
- 23 He that *rebuketh a man* **reproveth humanity**
afterwards shall find more favour
than he that *flattereth* **smootheth over** with the tongue.
- 24 Whoso *robbeth* **strippeth** his father or his mother,
and saith, It is no *transgression* **rebellion**;
the same is the companion of a *destroyer* **man ruiner**.
- 25 He that is of a *proud* **an enlarged** heart
stirreth up **throttlet** strife:
but he that *putteth his trust* **confideth**
in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall be *made fat* **fattened**.
- 26 He that *trusteth* **confideth** in his own heart is a fool:
but whoso walketh *wisely* in **wisdom**,
he shall *be delivered* **escape**.
- 27 He that giveth unto the *poor* **impoverished**
shall not lack:
but he that *hideth* **concealeth** his eye
shall have many a curse.
- 28 When the wicked rise,
men **humans** hide *themselves*:
but when they *perish* **destruct**,
the *righteous* increase **just abound**.

PROVERBS 28

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 8 He who by interest and bounty
abounds his wealth,
gathers for him who grants charism to the poor.
- 9 He who turns his ear from hearing the torah,
even his prayer is an abhorrence.
- 10 Whoever causes the straight
to err inadvertently in an evil way,
falls into his own pit;
and the integrions inherit the good.
- 11 The rich man is wise in his own eyes;
and the poor who discern, search him out.
- 12 When the just jump for joy, there is great beauty;
and when the wicked rise, humanity is searched.
- 13 He who covers his rebellions
prosper not;
and whoever spreads hands and forsakes
is mercied.
- 14 Blithe — the human who continually dreads;
and he who hardens his heart, falls into evil.
- 15 As a growling lion and a ranging bear;
thus a wicked sovereign over the poor people.
- 16 The eminent who lacks discernment,
is also a great oppressor;
and he who hates greed,
prolongs his days.
- 17 A human who violates the blood of a soul
flees to the well;
no man upholds him.
- 18 Whoever walks integrionsly is saved;
and he who perverts his ways, falls at once.
- 19 He who serves his soil, satiates with bread;
and he who pursues vanity, satiates with poverty.
- 20 A trustworthy man abounds with blessings;
and he who hastens to enrich, is not exonerated.
- 21 To respect faces is not good;
for, for a morsel of bread, the mighty rebel.
- 22 The man who hastens to have wealth
has an evil eye
and perceives not that lack comes on him.
- 23 He who reproves humanity afterwards
finds more favour
than he who
smooths it over with the tongue.
- 24 Whoever strips his father or his mother
and says, It is no rebellion!
— is the companion of a man ruiner.
- 25 He of an enlarged heart, throttles strife;
and he who confides in Yah Veh, fattens.
- 26 Whoever confides in his own heart is a fool;
and whoever walks in wisdom, escapes.
- 27 Whoever gives to the impoverished, lacks not;
and he who conceals his eye has many a curse.
- 28 When the wicked rise, humans hide;
and when they destruct, the just abound.

PROVERBS 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

29 *He, that being often reprov'd* **A man of reproofs**
hardeneth his **with hardened** neck,
 shall *suddenly be destroyed* **break in a blink**,
 and that without *remedy* **healing**.

2 When the *righteous are in authority* **just abound**,
 the people *rejoice* **cheer**:
 but when the wicked *beareth rule* **reign**,
 the people *mourn* **sigh**.

3 Whoso **The man that** loveth wisdom
rejoiceth **cheereth** his father:
 but he that
keepeth company with harlot **befriendeth whores**
spendeth **destroyeth** his *substance* **wealth**.

4 The *king* **sovereign** by judgment
establisheth **standeth** the land:
 but he **the man** that receiveth *gifts* **exaltments**
overthroweth **demolisheth** it.

5 *A man* **mighty**
 that *flattereth* **smootheth over** his *neighbour* **friend**
 spreadeth a net for his *feet* **steps**.

6 In the *transgression* **rebellion** of an evil man
 there is a snare:
 but the *righteous* **just**
doth sing **shall shout** and *rejoice* **cheer**.

7 The *righteous* **just**
considereth **knoweth** the *cause* **plea** of the poor:
 but the wicked *regardeth* **discerneth** not to know it.

8 Scornful men *bring* **puff on** a city *into a snare*:
 but **the wise men** turn away wrath.

9 *If a* **A** wise man *contendeth* **judgeth** with a foolish man,
 whether he *rage* **quiver** or *laugh* **ridicule**,
 there is no rest.

10 The *bloodthirsty* **men of blood**
 hate the *upright* **integrity**:
 but the *just* **straight** seek his soul.
 A fool uttereth all his *mind* **spirit**:

11 but a **the wise man** *keepeth it in till* **laudeth** afterwards.
 If a *ruler* **sovereign** hearken to *lies* **false words**,
 all his *servants* **ministers** are wicked.

12 The *poor* **impoverished** and the *deceitful* man **of frauds**
 meet together:
the LORD Yah Veh lighteneth both their eyes.

13 The *king* **sovereign**
 that *faithfully* judgeth the poor **in truth**,
 his throne shall be established *for ever* **eternally**.

14 The *rod* **scion** and reproof give wisdom:
 but a *child left to himself* **lad sent away**
bringeth **shameth** his mother *to shame*.

15 When the wicked are *multiplied* **abound**,
transgression **increaseth** **rebellion** **aboundeth**:
 but the *righteous* **just** shall see their *fall* **ruin**.

16 *Correct* **Discipline** thy son, and he shall give thee rest;
 yea, he shall give *delight* **delicately** unto thy soul.

17 Where there is no vision,
 the people *perish* **be exposed**:
 but he that *keepeth* **guardeth** the *law* **torah**,
happy **blithe** is he.

18 *A servant*
will **shall** not be *corrected* **disciplined** by words:
 for though he *understand* **discern**
 he *will* **shall** not answer.

19 Seest thou a man that is hasty in his words?
 there is more hope of a fool than of him.

20 He that *delicately* **bringeth up** **pampereth** his servant
from a child **since** **ladhood**
 shall have him become *his son* **successor**
 at the *length* **finality**.

21 *An angry* **A man of wrath**
stirreth up **throttleteth** strife,
 and a *furious man* **master of fury**
 aboundeth in *transgression* **rebellion**.

22 *A man's* **pride** **The pomp of humanity**
 shall *bring* **abase** him low:
 but honour shall uphold the *humble* **abased** in spirit.

23 Whoso *is* **partner** **allotteth** with a thief
 hateth his own soul:
 he heareth *cursing* **oaths**, and *bewrayeth* **telleth** it not.

PROVERBS 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

29 A man of reproofs, with hardened neck,
 breaks in a blink — and there is no healing.

2 When the just abound, the people cheer;
 and when the wicked reign, the people sigh.

3 The man who loves wisdom cheers his father;
 and he who befriends whores, destroys his wealth.

4 The sovereign by judgment stands the land;
 and the man who receives exaltments demolishes it.

5 A mighty who smoothes over his friend
 spreads a net for his steps.

6 In the rebellion of an evil man, there is a snare;
 and the just shout and cheer.

7 The just know the plea of the poor;
 and the wicked discern to not know it.

8 Scornful men puff on a city;
 and the wise turn away wrath.

9 A wise man judges a foolish man;
 he quivers; he ridicules; there is no rest.

10 The men of blood hate the integrious;
 and the straight seek his soul.

11 A fool utters all his spirit;
 and the wise lauds afterward.

12 A sovereign who hearkens to false words
 — all his ministers are wicked.

13 The impoverished and the man of frauds
 meet together;
 Yah Veh lights both their eyes.

14 The sovereign who judges the poor in truth,
 establishes his throne eternally.

15 The scion and reproof give wisdom;
 and a lad sent away shames his mother.

16 When the wicked abound, rebellions abound;
 and the just see their ruin.

17 Discipline your son and he gives you rest;
 yes, he gives delicately to your soul.

18 Where there is no vision,
 the people are exposed;
 and he who guards the torah, blithe is he.

19 Discipline not a servant by words;
 for though he discerns, he answers not.
 See a man hasty in words?
 There is more hope of a fool than of him.

20 Whoever pampers his servant since ladhood
 has him become successor at the finality.

21 A man of wrath throttles strife
 and a master of fury abounds in rebellion.
 The pomp of humanity abases;
 and honor upholds the abased in spirit.

22 Whoever allots with a thief, hates his own soul;
 he hears oaths and tells it not.

PROVERBS 29, 30

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 25 The fear **trebling** of man **humanity**
bringeth **giveth** a snare:
but whoso putteth his trust **confideth** in the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall be **safe lofted**.
- 26 Many seek the ruler's favour **sovereign's face**;
but every man's judgment
cometh **be** from the **LORD Yah Veh**.
- 27 An unjust man **A man of wickedness**
is an **abomination abhorrence** to the just:
and he that is upright **the straight** in the way
is **abomination abhorrence** to the wicked.

THE ORACLE OF AGUR

- 30 The words of Agur the son of **Jakeh Yaqeh**,
even the **prophecy burden**:
the man spake **oracle of a mighty** unto **Ithiel Ithi El**,
even unto **Ithiel Ithi El** and **Ucal Ukal**,
- 2 Surely I am more **brutish stupid** than any man,
and have not the **understanding discernment**
of a man **humanity**.
- 3 I neither learned wisdom,
nor have **know** the knowledge of the holy.
- PROPHECY OF THE SON OF HUMANITY**
- 4 Who hath ascended up into **heaven the heavens**,
or descended?
who hath gathered the wind in his fists?
who hath **bound narrowed** the waters in a **garment cloth**?
who hath **established raised**
all the **ends finalities** of the earth?
what is his name, and what is his son's name,
if thou **canst tell knowest**?
- 5 Every word **saying** of **God Elohad** is **pure refined**:
he is a **shield buckler**
unto them that **put their trust seek refuge** in him.
Add thou not unto his words,
lest he reprove thee, and thou be found a liar.
Two things have I required **These two ask I** of thee;
deny me withhold them not before I die:
- 8 Remove far from me vanity and **words of lies**:
give me neither poverty nor riches;
feed me with food convenient tear my statute bread for me:
- 9 Lest I be **full satiate**, and deny thee, and say,
Who is the **LORD Yah Veh**?
or lest I be **poor dispossessed**, and steal,
and take the name of my **God in vain Elohim**.
- 10 Accuse **Tongue—lash** not a servant
unto his **master adoni**,
lest he **curse abase** thee,
and thou be found **guilty hast guilty**.
- 11 There is a generation that **curseth abaseth** their father,
and **doth not bless blesseth not** their mother.
- 12 There is a generation that are pure in their own eyes,
and yet is **but** not washed from their **filthiness dung**.
- 13 There is a generation, O how lofty are their eyes!
and their eyelids are lifted up.
- 14 There is a generation, whose teeth are as swords,
and their **jaw teeth molars** as knives,
to devour the **poor humble** from off the earth,
and the needy from **among men humanity**.
- 15 The horseleach hath two daughters, **crying**, Give, give.
There are **These three things** that are never satisfied,
yea, four things say not, **It is enough**:
- 16 The grave **sheol**; and the **barren restrained** womb;
the earth that is not **filled satiated** with water;
and the fire that saith not, **It is enough**.
- 17 The eye that **mocketh at his derideth** father,
and **despiseth disrespecteth** to obey his mother,
the ravens of the valley **wadi** shall **pick bore** it out,
and the young **sons of** eagles shall eat it.
- 18 There be **These three things**
which are too wonderful **marvellous** for me,
yea, four which I know not:
- 19 The way of an eagle in the **air heavens**;
the way of a serpent upon a rock;
the way of a ship in the **midst heart** of the sea;
and the way of a man **mighty** with a **maid virgin**.
- 20 Such is the way of an adulterous woman;
she eateth, and wipeth her mouth,
and saith, I have done no **wickedness mischief**.

PROVERBS 29, 30

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 25 The trembling of humanity gives a snare;
and whoever confides in Yah Veh is lofted.
- 26 Many seek the face of the sovereign;
and the judgment of man is from Yah Veh.
- 27 A man of wickedness
is an abhorrence to the just;
and the straight in the way
is an abhorrence to the wicked.

THE ORACLE OF AGUR

- 30 The words of Agur the son of Yaqeh:
the burden:
the oracle of the mighty to Ithi El
— even to Ithi El and Ukal:
- 2 For I am more stupid than man
and have not the discernment of humanity:
neither learned I wisdom,
nor know the knowledge of the holy.
- PROPHECY OF THE SON OF HUMANITY**
- 4 Who ascended to the heavens? Or descended?
Who gathered the wind in his fists?
Who narrowed the waters in a cloth?
Who raised all the finalities of the earth?
What is his name?
What is the name of his son — if you know?
- 5 Every saying of Elohad is refined;
he is a buckler to them who seek refuge in him.
Add not to his words;
lest he reprove you and you be found a liar.
- 7 These two I ask of you;
withhold them not ere I die;
vanity and words of lies, remove far from me;
give me neither poverty nor riches;
tear my statute bread for me;
— lest I satiate and deny you and say,
Who is Yah Veh?
Or lest I become dispossessed and steal
and take the name of my Elohim.
- 10 Tongue—lash not a servant to his adoni,
lest he abase you and you have guilted.
- 11 There is a generation who abases their father
and blesses not their mother:
there is a generation — pure in their own eyes
but not washed from their own dung:
there is a generation — how lofty their eyes!
and their eyelids lifted:
there is a generation whose teeth are swords
and their molars knives,
to devour the humble from off the earth
and the needy from humanity.
- 15 The horseleach has two daughters, Give! Give!
These three are never satisfied;
yes, four say not, Enough!
— sheol; the restrained womb;
the earth not satiated with water;
and the fire that says not, Enough!
- 17 The eye that derides father
and disrespects to obey mother;
the ravens of the wadi bore through
and the sons of eagles eat.
- 18 These three are too marvellous for me;
yes, four which I know not:
the way of an eagle in the heavens;
the way of a serpent on a rock;
the way of a ship in the heart of the sea;
and the way of the mighty with a virgin.
- 20 Such is the way of an adulterous woman;
she eats and wipes her mouth
and says, I do no mischief.

PROVERBS 30, 31

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

21 For **These** three things **quake** the earth *is* disquieted
and for four *which* it cannot bear:
22 For a servant when he reigneth;
and a fool when he is *filled* **satiated** with **meat bread**;
23 For an *odious* woman **she who hateth**
when she is married;
and an *handmaid* **a maid**
that *is* *heir* to **possesseth** her *mistress* **lady**.
24 There be **These** four things
which are little upon the earth,
but **in enwisening**,
they *are* *exceeding* **wise enwisen**:
25 The ants are a people not strong,
yet they prepare their *meat* **bread** in the summer;
26 The conies are *but* a *feeble* folk **not a mighty people**,
yet *make* **set** they their houses in the rocks;
27 The locusts have no *king* **sovereign**,
yet go they forth all of them by *bands* **ranks**;
28 The *spider* *taketh* *hold* **lizard grabbeth** with her hands,
and is in *kings'* *palaces* **sovereign's manses**.
29 There be **These** three things *which* go *well* **pace good**,
yea, four are *comely* **well—please** in going:
30 A lion *which* is *strongest* **mighty** among *beasts* **animals**,
and turneth not *away* for *any* **from the face**;
31 A *greyhound* **One** *girt* in the loins; an he goat also;
and a *king* **sovereign**, against whom there is no rising *up*.
32 If thou hast *done* *foolishly* **follied** in lifting *up* thyself,
or if thou hast *thought* *evil* **intrigued**,
lay thine hand upon thy mouth.
33 Surely the churning of milk
bringeth forth butter,
and the *wringing* **churning** of the *nose* **nostrils**
bringeth forth blood:
so the *forcing* **churning** of wrath
bringeth forth strife.

THE WORDS OF SOVEREIGN LEMU EL

31 The words of *king* *Lemuel* **sovereign Lemu El**,
the *prophecy* **burden**
that his mother *taught* **disciplined** him.
2 What, my *son* **bar**?
and what, the *son* **bar** of my *womb* **belly**?
and what, the *son* **bar** of my vows?
3 Give not thy *strength* **valour** unto women,
nor thy ways
to that which *destroyeth* *kings* **wipeth out sovereigns**.
4 It is not for *kings* **sovereigns**, O *Lemuel* **Lemu El**,
it is not for *kings* **sovereigns** to drink wine;
nor for *princes* *strong* *drink* **potentates intoxicants**:
5 Lest they drink, and forget the *law* **statute**,
and *pervert* **alter** the *judgment* **plea**
of any of the *afflicted* **sons of humiliation**.
6 Give *strong* *drink* **intoxicants**
unto him that is *ready* to *perish* **destruct**,
and wine
unto those that be of *heavy* *hearts* **bitter of soul**.
7 Let him drink, and forget his poverty,
and remember his *misery* **toil** no more.
8 Open thy mouth for the *dumb* **mute**
in the *cause* **plea** of all
such as *are* *appointed* to *destruction* — **sons of survivors**.
9 Open thy mouth, judge *righteously* **justness**,
and plead the cause of the *poor* **humble** and needy.
10 Who can find a virtuous woman?
for her price is far above *rubies* **pearls**.
11 The heart of her *husband* **master**
doth *safely* *trust* **confideth** in her,
so that he shall have no *need* **lack** of spoil.
12 She *will* *do* **shall deal** him good and not evil
all the days of her life.
13 She seeketh wool, and flax,
and worketh *willingly* **with delight** with her *hands* **palms**.
14 She is like the merchants' ships;
she bringeth her *food* **bread** from afar.
15 She riseth also while it is yet night,
and giveth *meat* **the prey** to her household,
and a *portion* **statute** to her *maidens* **lasses**.
16 She *considereth* **intrigueth** a field, and *buyeth* **taketh** it:
with the fruit of her *hands* **palms** she planteth a vineyard.

PROVERBS 30, 31

exeGesés companion BIBLE

21 These three quake the earth;
and for four it cannot bear:
22 for a servant when he reigns;
and a fool when he satiates with bread;
23 for she who hates when she is married;
and a maid who possesses her lady.
24 These four are little on the earth;
and in enwisening, they enwisen:
25 the ants *are* a people, not strong,
yet they prepare their bread in the summer;
26 the conies *are* a people, not mighty,
yet set they their houses in the rocks;
27 the locusts have no sovereign,
yet they all go by ranks;
28 the lizard grabs with her hands
and is in the manses of sovereigns.
29 These three pace good;
yes, four well—please in going:
30 a lion mighty among animals
who turns not from the face;
31 one girt in the loins; also a he goat;
and a sovereign, against whom no one rises.
32 If you folly by lofting yourself,
or if you intrigue,
lay your hand on your mouth.
33 Surely the churning of milk brings forth butter
and the churning of the nostrils brings forth blood;
thus the churning of wrath brings forth strife.

THE WORDS OF SOVEREIGN LEMU EL

31 The words of sovereign Lemu El;
the burden his mother disciplined him:
2 What, my bar?
and what, the bar of my belly?
and what, the bar of my vows?
3 Neither give your valour to women
nor your ways to wiping out sovereigns.
4 Not for sovereigns, O Lemu El,
neither for sovereigns, to drink wine;
nor for potentates, intoxicants:
5 lest they drink and forget the statute
and alter the plea of any of the sons of humiliation.
6 Give intoxicants to those destructing
and wine to the bitter of soul
to drink and forget his poverty
to remember his toil no more.
7 Open your mouth for the mute
for the plea of all sons of survivors:
8 open your mouth, judge justness
and plead the cause of the humble and needy.
9 Who finds a virtuous woman?
yes, her price *is* far above pearls;
the heart of her master confides in her;
he lacks no spoil;
10 she deals him good and not evil
all the days of her life:
11 she seeks wool and flax
and works her palms with delight;
12 she is as the ships of merchants;
she brings her bread from afar;
13 she rises while it *is* yet night
and gives the prey to her household
and a statute to her lasses:
14 she *is* intrigued by a field and takes it;
with the fruit of her palms she plants a vineyard;

PROVERBS 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 17 She girdeth her loins with strength,
and strengtheneth her arms.
- 18 She *perceiveth* **tasteth** that her merchandise is good:
her *candle* **lamp** goeth not out by night.
- 19 She *layeth* **spreadeth** her hands to the spindle,
and her *hands hold* **palms uphold** the *distaff* **spindle**.
- 20 She *stretcheth out* **spreadeth** her *hand* **palm**
to the *poor* **humble**;
yea, she *reacheth forth* **spreadeth** her hands
to the needy.
- 21 She *is* **aweth** not *afraid of* the snow
for her household:
for all her household are *clothed* **enrobed** with scarlet.
- 22 She *maketh* **worketh** herself
coverings of tapestry **spreads**;
her *clothing* **robe** is *silk* **fine linen** and purple.
- 23 Her *husband* **master** is known in the *gates* **portals**,
when he *sitteth* **setteth** among the elders of the land.
- 24 She *maketh fine linen* **worketh wraps**, and selleth *it*;
and *delivereth* **giveth** girdles unto the *merchant* **Kenaaniy**.
- 25 Strength and *honour* **majesty** are her *clothing* **robe**;
and she shall *rejoice in time to come* **laugh the day after**.
- 26 She openeth her mouth with wisdom;
and in her tongue is the *law* **torah** of *kindness* **mercy**.
- 27 She *looketh well to* **watcheth**
the ways of her household,
and eateth not the bread of *idleness* **sloth**.
- 28 Her *children* **sons** arise *up*,
and call her *blessed* **blithesome**;
her *husband* **master** *also*, and he *praiseth* **halaeth** her.
- 29 Many daughters have *done* **worked** virtuously,
but thou *excellest* **ascendest** them all.
- 30 *Favour is deceitful* **Charism is false**, and beauty is vain:
but a woman that *feareth the LORD* **aweth Yah Veh**,
she shall be praised **halaed**.
- 31 Give her of the fruit of her hands;
and let her own works
praise **halal** her in the *gates* **portals**.

PROVERBS 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 17 she girds her loins with strength
and strengthens her arms;
- 18 she tastes that her merchandise is good:
her lamp goes not out by night;
- 19 she spreads her hands to the spindle
and her palms uphold the spindle;
- 20 she spreads her palm to the humble;
yes, she spreads her hands to the needy;
- 21 she awes not the snow for her household;
for all her household are enrobed *with* scarlet:
she works herself spreads;
her robe *is* fine linen and purple:
- 22 her master is known in the portals,
when he settles among the elders of the land:
- 23 she works wraps and sells;
and gives girdles to the Kenaaniy:
strength and majesty are her robe;
and she laughs the day after:
- 24 she opens her mouth with wisdom;
and in her tongue is the torah of mercy:
- 25 she watches the ways of her household
and eats not the bread of sloth:
- 26 her sons rise and call her blithesome;
her master halals her:
- 27 many daughters work virtuously,
you ascend them all.
- 30 Charism is false and beauty is vain;
Halal the woman who awes Yah Veh!
Give her of the fruit of her hands.
Her own works halal her in the portals!

ECCLESIASTES 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE WORDS OF THE CONGREGATIONER

1 The words of the *Preacher Congregationer*,
the son of David,
king sovereign in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
2 Vanity of vanities, saith the *Preacher Congregationer*,
vanity of vanities; all is vanity.
3 What *profit advantage* hath a man *humanity*
of all his *labour toil*
which he *taketh toileth* under the sun?
4 *One* generation passeth away,
and *another* generation cometh:
5 but the earth *abideth for ever standeth eternal*.
The sun also ariseth, and the sun goeth *down*,
6 and *hasteth swalloweth* to his place where he arose.
The wind goeth toward the south,
and turneth about unto the north;
it *whirleth goeth* about continually,
and the wind returneth again according to his circuits.
7 All the *rivers run wadies go* into the sea;
yet the sea is not full;
unto the place from whence the *rivers wadies* come,
thither they return *again to go*.
8 All *things are full of labour words belabour*;
man cannot *utter word* it:
the eye is not satisfied with seeing,
nor the ear filled with hearing.
9 *The thing hath been What hath become*,
it is that which shall be become;
and *that which is done What was worked*
is that which shall be done worked:
and there is *no naught* new *thing* under the sun.
10 Is there any *thing word* whereof it may be said,
See, this is new?
it hath been already *of old time eternally*,
which was *before us at our face*.
11 There is no *remembrance memorial*
of former things firsts;
neither shall there be any *remembrance memorial*
of things that are to come lasts
with those that shall *come become* after.
12 I the *Preacher Congregationer*
was *king sovereign* over *Israel Yisra El*
in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
13 And I gave my heart to seek
and *search out explore* by wisdom
concerning all *things that are done those worked*
under *heaven the heavens*:
this *sore travail evil drudgery* hath *God Elohim* given
to the sons of *man humanity*
to be *exercised humbled* therewith.
14 I have seen all the works
that are *done worked* under the sun;
and, behold, all is vanity and *vexation gnawing* of spirit.
15 That which is *crooked twisted*
cannot be *made straight straightened*:
and that which is *wanting lacking*
cannot be numbered.
16 I *communed worded* with mine own heart, saying,
Lo Behold, I am *come to great estate have greatened*,
and have *gotten increased* more wisdom
than all they *that have been before me at my face*
in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:
yea, my heart *had hath seen*
great *experience of* wisdom and knowledge.
17 And I gave my heart to know wisdom,
and to know madness and folly:
I perceived that this also is *vexation gnawing* of spirit.
18 For in *much abundant* wisdom
is *much grief abundant vexation*:
and he that increaseth knowledge increaseth sorrow.

2 I said in mine heart, Go to, *now I beseech*,
I *will prove shall test* thee with *mirth cheerfulness*,
therefore enjoy pleasure see good:
and, behold, this also is vanity.
2 I said of laughter, *It is mad Halal*:
and of *mirth cheerfulness*, What *doeth worketh* it?
3 I *sought explored* in mine heart
to *give myself draw my flesh* unto wine,

THE CONGREGATIONER 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE WORDS OF THE CONGREGATIONER

1 Words of the Congregationer:
Son of David; Sovereign in Yeru Shalem.
2 Vanity of vanities, says the Congregationer:
Vanity of vanities; all is vanity.
3 What advantage has humanity
of all the toil he toils under the sun?
4 Generation passes and generation comes;
and the earth stands eternal:
5 also the sun rises and the sun goes
and swallows to the place it rose:
6 the wind goes toward the south
and turns around to the north
— turning around and turning around:
and the wind returns again according to its circuits:
7 all the wadies go into the sea;
yet the sea is not full:
from the place the wadies come,
they return to go.
8 All words belabor; man cannot word it:
neither the eye satisfies with seeing
nor the ear fills with hearing.
9 What became, becomes;
what was worked, is worked:
and naught is new under the sun.
10 Is there any word whereof is said,
See, this is new?
It already became — eternally at our face.
11 There is neither memorial of firsts;
nor memorial of lasts
with those to become afterward.
12 I the Congregationer
became sovereign over Yisra El in Yeru Shalem:
13 and I gave my heart
to seek and explore by wisdom
concerning all those worked under the heavens
— this evil drudgery
Elohim gave to the sons of humanity
to be humbled therewith.
14 I saw all the works worked under the sun;
and behold, all is vanity and gnawing of spirit.
15 The twisted cannot be straightened;
and the lacking cannot be numbered.
16 I worded with my own heart, saying,
I — behold,
I greatened and increased more in wisdom
than all at my face in Yeru Shalem;
yes, my heart saw great wisdom and knowledge:
17 I gave my heart to know wisdom
and to know madness and folly;
I perceived that this also is gnawing of spirit.
18 For in abundant wisdom
is abundant vexation;
and he who increases knowledge
increases sorrow.
2 I said in my heart, Go to, I beseech,
I test you with cheerfulness; see the good:
and behold, this also is vanity.
2 Of laughter, I say, Halal!
Of cheerfulness, What works?
3 I explored in my heart to draw my flesh to wine;

ECCLESIASTES 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

yet *acquainting driving* mine heart with wisdom;
and to lay hold on folly,
till I might see what was that good
for the sons of *men* **humanity**,
which they should *do work* under the *heaven* **heavens**
all **the number of** the days of their life.
4 I *made me great* **greatened my** works;
I builded me houses; I planted me vineyards:
5 I *made worked* me gardens and orchards,
and I planted trees in them of all *kind of* fruits:
6 I *made worked* me pools of water,
to *water wet* therewith the *wood forest*
that *bringeth forth* **sprouteth** trees:
7 I *got me chattelized* servants and *maidens* **maids**,
and had *servants born in* **sons of** my house;
also I had *great possessions* **abundant chattel**
of *great and small* **cattle oxen and flocks**
above all that were in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
before me at my face:
8 I gathered me also silver and gold,
and the peculiar treasure of *kings* **sovereigns**
and of the *provinces* **jurisdictions**:
I *gat worked* me
men singers **songsters** and *women singers* **songstresses**,
and the delights of the sons of *men* **humanity**,
as musical instruments, and that of all sorts
and mistresses of mistresses.
9 So I was *great* **greatened**,
and increased more than all
that were *before me at my face* in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
also my wisdom *remained* **stayed** with me.
10 And whatsoever mine eyes *desired* **asked**
I *kept set* not **aside** from them,
I withheld not my heart from any *joy* **cheerfulness**;
for my heart *rejoiced* **cheered** in all my *labour* **toil**:
and this was my *portion* **allotment** of all my *labour* **toil**.
11 Then I *looked on* **faced** all the works
that my hands had *wrought* **worked**,
and on the *labour* **toil**
that I had *laboured* **toiled to do work**: and, behold,
all was vanity and *vexation* **gnawing** of spirit,
and there was no *profit* **advantage** under the sun.
12 And I turned *myself my face* to *behold* **see** wisdom,
and madness, and folly:
for what *can the man do* **of the human**
that cometh after the *king* **sovereign**?
even that which hath been **is** already *done* **worked**.
13 Then I saw that wisdom *excelleth* **advantageth over** folly,
as far as light *excelleth* **advantageth over** darkness.
14 The *wise man's* eyes **of the wise** are in his head;
but the fool walketh in darkness:
and I myself perceived also
that one *event* **happening** happeneth to them all.
15 Then said I in my heart,
As it happeneth to the fool, so it happeneth even to me;
and why was I then more *wise* **enwisened**?
Then I *said worded* in my heart, that this also is vanity.
16 For there is no *remembrance* **memorial** of the wise
more than of the fool *for ever* **eternally**;
seeing that which now is in **that already**
the days to come shall all be forgotten.
And how dieth the wise *man?* as the fool.
17 Therefore I hated life;
because the work that is *wrought* **worked** under the sun
is *grievous* **evil** unto me:
for all is vanity and *vexation* **gnawing** of spirit.
18 Yea, I hated all my *labour* **toil**
which I had *taken* **toiled** under the sun:
because I should leave it unto *the man* **humanity**
that shall be after me.
19 And who knoweth
whether he shall be a wise *man* or a fool?
yet shall he *have rule* **dominate** over all my *labour* **toil**
wherein I have *laboured* **toiled**,
and wherein I have *shewed* **enwisened** myself *wise*
under the sun.
This is also vanity.
20 Therefore I went about to cause
I turned my heart **around**

THE CONGREGATIONER 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

yet driving my heart with wisdom:
and to lay hold on folly
until I see the good for the sons of humanity;
which they work under the heavens
the number of the days of their life.
4 I greatened my works;
I built houses; I planted vineyards;
5 I worked gardens and orchards;
and in them I planted trees of all fruits:
6 I worked pools of water
to wet the forest to sprout trees;
7 I chattelized servants and maids
and had sons of my house;
I also had abundant chattel of oxen and flocks
above all that were in Yeru Shalem at my face:
8 I also gathered silver and gold
and the peculiar treasure of sovereigns
and of the jurisdictions:
I worked songsters and songstresses
and the delights of the sons of humanity
and mistresses of mistresses.
9 Thus I greatened and increased more than all
ere my face in Yeru Shalem;
also my wisdom stayed with me:
10 and whatever my eyes asked
I set not aside from them,
nor withheld my heart from any cheerfulness;
for my heart cheered in all my toil:
and this was my allotment of all my toil.
11 Then I faced all the works my hands worked
and on the toil I toiled to work;
and behold, all *is* vanity and gnawing of spirit
and there is no advantage under the sun.
12 And I turned my face
to see wisdom and madness and folly:
but what of the human
who comes after the sovereign
— when that which is, was already worked?
13 And I saw that wisdom advantages over folly,
as far as light advantages over darkness.
14 The eyes of the wise *are* in his head;
and the fool walks in darkness;
and I also perceived
that what happens to one, happens to all.
15 And I said in my heart,
As happens to the fool, happens even to me.
Why then am I more enwisened?
And I worded in my heart, that this also is vanity.
16 For there is no memorial of the wise
more than of the fool eternally;
that in the days to come, all is forgotten.
17 And how die the wise? As the fool!
And I hated life;
because the work worked under the sun
is evil to me;
for all is vanity and gnawing of spirit.
18 Yes, I hated all the toil I toiled under the sun;
because I leave it to humanity after me.
19 And who knows
whether he be wise or fool?
— and yet dominates over all the toil I toiled
wherein I enwisened myself under the sun.
This is also vanity.
20 I turned my heart around

ECCLESIASTES 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

21 to despair of **quit** all the **labour toil**
which I *took* **toiled** under the sun.
For there is a **man human**
whose **labour toil** is in wisdom,
and in knowledge, and in **equity prosperity**;
yet to a **man human** that hath not **laboured toiled** therein
shall he *leave* **give** it for his **portion allotment**.
This also is vanity and a great evil.
22 For what hath **man humanity** of all his **labour toil**,
and of the **vexation gnawing** of his heart,
wherein he hath **laboured toiled** under the sun?
23 For all his days are sorrows,
and his **travail grief drudgery vexation**;
yea, his heart *taketh* **lieth** not **rest down** in the night.
This is also vanity.
24 There is **nothing naught** better for a **man human**,
than that he should eat and drink,
and that he should *make* **delight** his soul
enjoy **to see** good in his **labour toil**.
This also I saw,
that it was from the hand of **God Elohim**.
25 For who can eat,
or who else can hasten *hereunto*, more than I?
26 For *God giveth* to a **man Giving humanity**
that is good in his **sight at his face**
wisdom, and knowledge, and **joy cheerfulness**:
but to the sinner he giveth **travail drudgery**,
to gather and to heap *up*,
that he may give to him
that is good *before God* **at the face of Elohim**.
This also is vanity and **vexation gnawing** of spirit.

3 To every **thing all** there is a season,
and a time to every **purpose desire**
under the **heaven heavens**:
2 A time to *be born* **birth**,
and a time to die;
a time to plant,
and a time to *pluck up that which is* **uproot the** planted;
3 A time to *kill* **slaughter**,
and a time to heal;
a time to *break down* **breach**,
and a time to build *up*;
4 A time to weep,
and a time to laugh;
a time to *mourn* **chop**,
and a time to dance;
5 A time to cast away stones,
and a time to gather stones *together*;
a time to embrace,
and a time to *refrain* **be far** from embracing;
6 A time to *get* **seek**,
and a time to *lose* **destroy**;
a time to *keep* **guard**,
and a time to cast away;
7 A time to *rend* **rip**,
and a time to sew;
a time to *keep silence* **hush**,
and a time to *speak* **word**;
8 A time to love,
and a time to hate;
a time of war,
and a time of *peace* **shalom**.
9 What *profit advantage* hath he that worketh
in that wherein he *laboureth* **toileth**?
10 I have seen the **travail drudgery**,
which **God Elohim**
hath given to the sons of **men humanity**
to be *exercised in it* **humbled therein**.
11 He hath *made every thing* **worked all**
beautiful in his time:
also he hath *set the world* **given eternally** in their heart,
so that no **man human** can find out the work
that **God maketh Elohim worketh**
from the *beginning* **top** to the end.
12 I know that there is no good *in* **for** them,
but *for a man* to **rejoice to cheer**,
and to *do* **work** good in his life.

THE CONGREGATIONER 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

to quit all the toil I toiled under the sun.
21 For there is a human whose toil *is* in wisdom
and in knowledge and in prosperity;
yet he gives his allotment
to a human who never toiled therein.
This also is vanity and a great evil.
22 For what has humanity of all his toil
and of the gnawing of his heart
wherein he toiled under the sun?
23 For all his days are sorrows
and his drudgery, vexation;
yes, his heart lies not down in the night.
This is also vanity.
24 Naught is better for a human,
than to eat and drink and to delight his soul
— to see good in his toil.
This also I saw,
that this is from the hand of Elohim.
25 For who eats, or who else hastens more than I?
26 — giving humanity what is good at his face
— wisdom and knowledge and cheerfulness;
and to the sinner he gives drudgery,
to gather and to heap,
to give him the good at the face of Elohim.
This also is vanity and gnawing of spirit.

3 To all there is a season
and a time to every desire under the heavens;
2 a time to birth
and a time to die;
a time to plant
and a time to uproot the planted;
3 a time to slaughter
and a time to heal;
a time to breach
and a time to build;
4 a time to weep
and a time to laugh;
a time to chop
and a time to dance;
5 a time to cast away stones
and a time to gather stones;
a time to embrace
and a time to be far from embracing;
6 a time to seek
and a time to destroy;
a time to guard
and a time to cast;
7 a time to rip
and a time to sew;
a time to hush
and a time to word;
8 a time to love
and a time to hate;
a time of war
and a time of shalom.
9 What advantage has he who works
in that wherein he toils?
10 I saw the drudgery
Elohim gave to the sons of humanity
to be humbled therein.
11 He worked all beautiful in his time;
also he gave eternally in their heart,
so that no human can find out
the work Elohim works
from the top to the end.
12 I know that there is no good for them,
but to cheer and to work good in their life.

TIME

TIME

ECCLESIASTES 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

13 And also
that every *man* **all humanity** should eat and drink,
and enjoy **see** the good of all his *labour* **toil**,
it is the gift of God **Elohim**.

14 I know that, whatsoever *God doeth* **Elohim worketh**,
it shall be *for ever* **eternal**:
nothing **naught** can be *put to it* **augmented**,
nor *any thing taken from it* **aught diminished**:
and *God doeth it*, **Elohim worketh**
that *men* **one** should *fear before him* **awe at his face**.

15 That which *hath been* **became**,
is now **already is**;
and that which *is to be* **becomes**,
hath already been **already was**;
and *God requireth* **Elohim seeketh**
that which is *past* **pursued**.

16 And moreover
I saw under the sun the place of judgment,
that wickedness was there;
and the place of *righteousness* **justness**,
that *iniquity* **wickedness** was there.

17 I said in mine heart,
God **Elohim** shall judge the *righteous* **just** and the wicked:
for there is a time there
for every *purpose* **desire** and for every work.

18 I said in mine heart
concerning the *estate* **word** of the sons of *men* **humanity**,
that *God* **Elohim** might *manifest* **purify** them,
and that they might see
that they themselves are *beasts* **animals**.

19 For that which
befalleth **happeneth** to the sons of *men* **humanity**
befalleth *beasts* **happeneth to animals**;
even *one thing befalleth* **this happeneth to** them:
as *the one* **this** dieth, so dieth *the other* **that**;
yea, they have all one *breath* **spirit**;
so that a *man* **humanity** hath no *preeminence* **advantage**
above a *beast* **an animal**:
for all is vanity.

20 All go unto one place;
all are of the dust, and all *turn* **return** to dust *again*.

21 Who knoweth the spirit of *man* **the son of humanity**
that *goeth upward* **ascendeth**,
and the spirit of the *beast* **animal**
that *goeth downward* **descendeth** to the earth?

22 Wherefore I *perceive* **see** that there is *nothing* **naught** better,
than that a *man* **human**
should *rejoice* **cheer** in his own works;
for that is his *portion* **allotment**:
for who shall bring him to see what shall be after him?

4 So I returned,
and *considered* **saw** all the oppressions
that are *done* **worked** under the sun:
and behold the tears of *such as were* **the** oppressed,
and they had no *comforter* **one to sigh**;
and *on the side* **in the hand** of their oppressors
there was *power* **force**;
but they had no *comforter* **one to sigh**.

2 Wherefore I *praised* **I lauded** the dead which are already dead
more than the living which *are yet* **alive** **live**.

3 Yea, better is he than both they,
which hath not yet been,
who hath not seen the evil work
that is *done* **worked** under the sun.

4 Again, I *considered* **saw** all *travail* **the toil**,
and *every right* **all the prosperity of** work,
that for this a man is envied of his *neighbour* **friend**.
This is also vanity and *vexation* **gnawing** of spirit.

5 The fool *foldeth* **embraceth** his hands *together*,
and eateth his own flesh.

6 Better is *an handful* **a palm full** with *quietness* **rest**,
than *both the hands* **fists** full with *travail* **toil**
and *vexation* **gnawing** of spirit.

7 Then I returned, and I saw vanity under the sun.

8 There is one *alone*, and there is *not a* **no** second;
yea, he hath neither *child* **son** nor brother:

THE CONGREGATIONER 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

13 And also that all humanity eat and drink
and see the good of all his toil,
— the gift of Elohim.

14 I know that whatever Elohim works, is eternal;
neither augmented; nor diminished:
and Elohim works so that they awe at his face.

15 What became, already is;
and what becomes, already became:
and Elohim seeks what is pursued.

16 And again, I saw under the sun
the place of judgment
— that wickedness was there;
and the place of justness
— that wickedness was there.

17 I said in my heart,
Elohim judges the just and the wicked;
for there is a time
for every desire and for every work.

18 I said in my heart
concerning the word of the sons of humanity,
that Elohim purify them
— that they see that they themselves are animals.

19 For what happens to the sons of humanity
happens to animals
— even this happens to them;
as this dies, thus that dies;
yes, they all have one spirit;
so that humanity has no advantage over an animal;
for all is vanity.

20 All go to one place;
all became of dust; all return to dust.

21 Who knows the spirit of the son of humanity
that ascends;
and the spirit of the animal
that descends to the earth?
I see there is naught better,
than for a human to cheer in his own works;
for that is his allotment;
for who brings him to see what becomes after him?

4 And I return
and see all the oppressions worked under the sun;
and behold, the tears of the oppressed
who have no one to sigh;
and the force of the hand of their oppressors
who have no one to sigh.

2 I laud the dead who already died
more than the living who yet live.

3 Yes, better is he than they both
— who became not yet
— who saw not
the evil work worked under the sun.

4 And I see all the toil
and all the prosperity of work;
that for this man envies friend;
this is also vanity and gnawing of spirit.

5 The fool embraces his hands
and eats his own flesh;

6 better, a palm full with rest,
than fists full with toil and gnawing of spirit.

7 And I return; and I see vanity under the sun:
there is one; and there is no second:
yes, he has neither son nor brother;

ECCLESIASTES 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

yet is there no end of all his *labour* **toil**;
neither is his eye satisfied with riches;
neither saith he, For whom do I labour **toil I**,
and *bereave* **lack** my soul of good?
This is also vanity,
yea, it is a *sore travail* **an evil drudgery**.
9 Two are better than one;
because they have a good *reward* **hire** for their *labour* **toil**.
10 For if they fall,
the one *will lift up* **shall raise** his *fellow* **companion**:
but woe to him that is *alone* **one** when he falleth;
for he hath *not another* **no second** to *help* **raise** him up.
11 *Again* **Yea**, if two lie together, then they *have* heat:
but how can one be warm *alone*?
12 And if one prevail against him,
two shall withstand him;
and a *threefold cord* **triple thread** is not quickly *broken* **torn**.
13 Better is a poor and a wise child
than an *old* **aged** and foolish *king* **sovereign**,
who *will* **shall perceive** no more
be admonished **to be enlightened**.
14 For out of *prison* **the house of binding**
he cometh to reign;
whereas also
he that is *born* **birthed** in his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
becometh *poor* **impoverished**.
15 I *considered* **saw** all the living which walk under the sun,
with the second child that shall stand up in his stead.
16 There is no end of all the people,
even of all that have been before them **at their face**:
they also that come after **the final**
shall not *rejoice* **cheer** in him.
Surely this also is vanity and *vexation* **gnawing** of spirit.

5 *Keep* **Guard** thy foot
when thou goest to the house of *God* **Elohim**,
and *be more ready* **approach** to hear,
than to give the sacrifice of fools:
for they *consider* **know** not that they *do* **work** evil.
2 *Be* **Terrify** not *rash* with thy mouth,
and let not thine heart *be hasty* **hasten**
to utter *any thing before God* **a word at the face of Elohim**:
for *God* **Elohim** is in *heaven* **the heavens**,
and thou upon earth:
therefore let thy words be few.
3 For a dream cometh
through by the multitude **abundance** of *business* **drudgery**;
and a fool's voice
is known by multitude **by the abundance** of words.
4 When thou vowest a vow unto *God* **Elohim**,
defer not to *pay* **shalam** it;
for he hath no *pleasure* **delight** in fools:
pay **shalam** that which thou hast vowed.
5 Better is it that thou shouldst not vow,
than that thou shouldst vow and not *pay* **shalam**.
6 *Suffer* **Give** not thy mouth to cause thy flesh to sin;
neither say thou *before* **at the face of** the angel,
that it was an *inadvertent* error:
wherefore should God be angry
why enrage Elohim at thy voice,
and *destroy* **despoil** the work of thine hands?
7 For in the *multitude* **abundance** of dreams
and many words there are also divers vanities
words and vanities abound:
but *fear* **awe** thou *God* **Elohim**.
8 If thou seest the oppression of the *poor* **impoverished**,
and *violent perverting* **stripping** of judgment
and *justice* **justness** in a *province* **jurisdiction**,
marvel not at the *matter* **desire**:
for he that is
higher than the highest **high above the high** regardeth;
and there *be higher than they* **the high above them**.
9 Moreover the *profit* **advantage** of the earth is for all:
the *king* **sovereign** *himself* is served by the field.
10 He that loveth silver shall not be satisfied with silver;
nor he that loveth abundance with *increase* **produce**:
this is also vanity.
11 When *goods* **increase** **good aboundeth**,
they *are increased* **abound by the myriads** that eat them:

THE CONGREGATIONER 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

yet he neither ends his toil
nor satisfies his eye with riches:
For whom toil I, that my soul lacks good?
This is also vanity; yes, an evil drudgery.
9 Two are better than one
because they have a good hire for their toil;
for if they fall, the one raises his companion:
but woe to the one when he falls,
who has no second to raise him.
11 Yes, if two lie together, they heat;
but how warms the one?
12 And if one prevails against him,
two withstand him:
a triple thread is not quickly torn.
13 Better a child, poor and a wise,
than a sovereign, aged and foolish
who no more perceives to be enlightened?
14 for from the house of binding
he comes to reign;
and he, in his sovereigndom
was birthed impoverished.
15 I see all the living walk under the sun,
with the second child who stands in his stead.
16 There is no end of all the people
— of all who became ere their face;
and the final cheer not in him:
surely this also is vanity and gnawing of spirit.
5 Guard your foot
when you go to the house of Elohim;
and approach to hear,
rather than to give the sacrifice of fools:
for they know not that they work evil.
2 Neither terrify with your mouth
nor hasten with your heart
to utter a word at the face of Elohim;
for Elohim is in the heavens
— and you on earth;
so be of few words.
3 The dream comes
by the abundance of drudgery;
and the voice of a fool
by the abundance of words.
4 When you vow a vow to Elohim,
defer not to shalam;
for he delights not in fools:
shalam your vow.
5 Better not to vow,
than to vow and not shalam.
6 Neither give your mouth that your flesh sin;
nor say at the face of the angel,
An inadvertent error!
Why enrage Elohim at your voice
and despoil the work of your hands?
7 For in the abundance of dreams
words and vanities abound;
but awe Elohim.
8 If you see the oppression of the impoverished
and stripping of judgment and justness
in a jurisdiction,
marvel not at the desire;
for he who is high above the high regards
— and then the high above them.
9 Moreover the advantage of the earth is for all;
the sovereign is served by the field.
10 Neither is he who loves silver,
satisfied with silver;
nor he who loves abundance, with produce:
this is also vanity.
11 When good abounds,
they who eat abound by the myriads;

ECCLESIASTES 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and what good **prosperity** is there
to the owners **masters** thereof,
saving the beholding of them **except seeing** with their eyes?
12 The sleep of a *labouring man* **server** is sweet,
whether he eat little or *much* **abound**:
but the *abundance* **sufficiency** of the rich
will **shall** not *suffer* **allow** him to sleep.
13 There is a *sore* **an evil stroke**
which I have seen under the sun,
namely,
riches *kept* **guarded** for the owners **masters** thereof
to *for* their **hurt evil**.
14 But those riches *perish* **destruct** by *evil travail* **drudgery**:
and he *begetteth* **birtheth** a son,
and there is *nothing* **naught** in his hand.
15 As he came forth of his mother's *womb* **belly**,
naked shall he return to go as he came,
and shall *take nothing* **lift naught** of his *labour* **toil**,
which he may carry away in his hand.
16 And this also is a *sore* **an evil stroke**,
that *in all points* as he came, so **thus** shall he go:
and what *profit* **advantage** hath he
that hath *laboured* **toiled** for the *wind* **spirit/wind**?
17 All his days also he eateth in darkness,
and he *hath much sorrow* **aboundeth vexation**
and *wrath* **rage** with his sickness.
18 Behold that which I have seen:
it is good and *comely* **beautiful** for *one* to eat and to drink,
and to *enjoy* **see** the good of all his *labour* **toil**
that he *taketh* **toileth** under the sun
all **the number of** the days of his life,
which *God Elohim* giveth him:
for it is his *portion* **allotment**.
19 *Every man* **All humanity** also
to whom *God Elohim*
hath given riches and *wealth* **holdings**,
and *hath given him power* **dominance** to eat thereof,
and to *take* **bear** his *portion* **allotment**,
and to *rejoice* **cheer** in his *labour* **toil**;
this is the gift of *God Elohim*.
20 For he shall not *much* **abound**
to remember the days of his life;
because *God answereth* **Elohim humbleth** him
in the *joy* **cheerfulness** of his heart.

6 There is an evil which I have seen under the sun,
and it is *common* **abundant** among *men* **humanity**:
2 A man to whom *God Elohim* hath given riches,
wealth **holdings**, and honour,
so that he wanteth *nothing* **naught** for his soul
of all that he desireth,
yet *God Elohim* giveth him not
power **dominance** to eat thereof,
but a *stranger man* eateth it:
this is vanity, and it is an *evil disease* **sickness**.
3 If a man *beget* **birth** an hundred *children*,
and live many years,
so that the days of his years be many,
and his soul be not *filled* **satisfied** with good,
and also that he have no *burial* **tomb**;
I say,
that an *untimely birth* **a miscarriage** is better than he.
4 For he cometh in with vanity,
and *departeth* **goeth** in darkness,
and his name shall be covered with darkness.
5 Moreover he hath not seen the sun,
nor known *any thing* **ought**:
this hath more rest than the other.
6 Yea, **Even** though he live a thousand years
twice told **two times**,
yet hath he seen no good: do not all go to one place?
7 All the *labour* **toil** of *man* **humanity** is for his mouth,
and yet the *appetite* **soul** is not filled.
8 For what hath the wise more than the fool?
what hath the *poor* **humble**,
that knoweth to walk *before* **in front of** the living?
9 Better is the *sight* **visage** of the eyes
than the *wandering* **walking** of the *desire* **soul**:
this is also vanity and *vexation* **gnawing** of spirit.

THE CONGREGATIONER 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and what prosperity *is* there to the masters
— except seeing with their eyes?
12 How sweet the sleep of the server
whether he eats little or abounds;
and the sufficiency of the rich
allows him not to sleep.

13 There is an evil stroke I saw under the sun
— riches guarded for the master, for his evil:
14 and those riches destruct by evil drudgery;
and he births a son — and naught is in his hand.
15 As he came from the belly of his mother,
naked he returns to go as he came
— and lifts naught of his toil to carry in his hand.
16 And this also is an evil stroke:
as he came, thus he goes;
and what advantage has he
who toiled for the spirit/wind?
17 All his days he eats in darkness
and vexation and rage and sickness abound.

18 Behold, what I saw!
Good and beautiful to eat and to drink
and to see the good
of all the toil toiled under the sun
the number of the days of life Elohim gives;
for it is his allotment.
19 All humanity also
to whom Elohim gave riches and holdings
and dominance to eat
and to bear his allotment and to cheer in his toil
— this is the gift of Elohim.
20 For he abounds,
not to remember the days of his life;
for Elohim humbles him
in the cheerfulness of his heart.

6 There is an evil I saw under the sun
— abundant among humanity:
2 a man to whom Elohim gives riches,
holdings and honor,
so that, of all he desires, his soul wants naught;
and Elohim gives him not dominance to eat;
but a man — a stranger eats;
this is vanity — an evil sickness.

3 If a man births a hundred and lives many years
so that the days of his years be many
and his soul satisfies not with good
and also he has no tomb:
I say, a miscarriage is better than he:
4 for he comes in vanity and goes in darkness
— his name covered with darkness:
5 he neither sees the sun; nor knows aught:
this rests more than that;
6 even though he lives a thousand years two times,
yet sees no good!
Go they not all to one place?

7 All the toil of humanity is for the mouth
and yet the soul fills not.
8 For what more has the wise than the fool?
what has the humble,
who knows to walk in front of the living?
9 Better the visage of the eyes
than the walking of the soul;
this is also vanity and gnawing of spirit.

ECCLESIASTES 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 That which hath *been* become
is named **its name** is already called,
and it is known that it is *man* **humanity**:
neither may he *contend* **be able to plead his cause**
with him that is mightier than he.

11 Seeing there be many things **Abounding words**
that increase **abound** vanity,
what is *man* **humanity** the *better* **more**?

12 For who knoweth
what is good for *man* **humanity** in *this* life,
all **the number of** the days of his *vain* life of **vanity**
which he *spendeth* **worketh** as a shadow?
for who can tell a *man* **humanity**
what shall be after him under the sun?

7 A good name is better than *precious* ointment;
and the day of death than the day of *one's* birth.

2 It is better to go to the house of mourning,
than to go to the house of *feasting* **banqueting**:
for that is the end of all *men* **humanity**;
and the living *will lay* **shall give** it to his heart.

3 Sorrow **Vexation** is better than laughter:
for by the *sadness* **evil** of the *countenance* **face**
the heart is *made* **better well—pleased**.

4 The heart of the wise
is in the house of mourning;
but the heart of fools
is in the house of *mirth* **cheerfulness**.

5 It is better to hear the rebuke of the wise,
than for a man to hear the song of fools.

6 For as the *crackling* **voice** of thorns under a *pot* **caldron**,
so is the laughter of the fool:
this also is vanity.

7 Surely oppression
maketh a wise man mad **causeth the wise to halal**;
and a gift destroyeth the heart.

8 Better is the *end of a thing* **final word**
than the beginning *thereof*:
and the *patient in* **long** spirit
is better than the *proud in* **lofty** spirit.

9 Be not hasty in thy spirit to be *angry* **vexed**:
for *anger* **vexation** resteth in the bosom of fools.

10 Say not thou, What *is the cause* **hath become**
that the *former* **first** days were better than these?
for thou dost not
enquire wisely **ask out of wisdom** concerning this.

11 Wisdom is good with an inheritance:
and *by it there is* **profit more** to them that see the sun.

12 For wisdom is a *defence* **shadow**,
and *money* **silver** is a *defence* **shadow**:
but the *excellency* **advantage** of knowledge is,
that wisdom
giveth life to them that have it **enliveneth its masters**.

13 Consider **See** the work of *God* **Elohim**:
for who can *make that straight* **straighten**,
which he hath *made crooked* **twisted**?

14 In the day of *prosperity* **good** be joyful,
but in the day of *adversity* **consider evil see**:
God **Elohim** also
hath set **worked** the one over against the other,
to the *end* **word**

that *man* **humanity** should find *nothing* **naught** after him.

15 All *things* have I seen in the days of my vanity:
there is a **the** just *man*
that *perisheth* **destructeth** in his *righteousness* **justness**,
and there is a **the** wicked *man*
that prolongeth *his life* in his *wickedness* **evil**.

16 Be not *righteous over much* **aboundingly just**;
neither *make thyself over wise* **more enwisened**:
why shouldst thou *destroy* **desolate** thyself?

17 Be not *over much* **aboundingly** wicked,
neither be thou foolish:
why shouldst thou die before thy time?

18 It is good that thou shouldst take hold of this;
yea, also from this *withdraw* **leave** not thine hand:
for he that *feareth God* **aweth Elohim**
shall come forth of them all.

19 Wisdom strengtheneth the wise
more than ten *mighty men* **potentates** which are in the city.

THE CONGREGATIONER 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 What became?
its name is already called;
and know that it *is* humanity:
he is not able to plead his cause
with him who is mightier than he.

11 Abounding words abound vanity!
What more *is* to humanity?
For who knows
what *is* good for humanity in life
— the number of the days of his life of vanity
which he works as a shadow?
Who tells humanity what is after him under the sun?

7 Better a name, than ointment;
and the day of death, than the day of birth:

2 better to go to the house of mourning;
than to go to the house of banqueting;
for that is the end of all humanity;
and the living gives to his heart:
better vexation than laughter;
for by the evil of the face
the heart becomes well—pleased.

4 The heart of the wise *is* in the house of mourning;
and the heart of fools in the house of cheerfulness.

5 Better to hear the rebuke of the wise,
than for a man to hear the song of fools.

6 For as the voice of thorns under a caldron,
thus the laughter of the fool;
this also is vanity.

7 Through oppression, the wise halal;
and a gift destroys the heart.

8 Better the final word than the beginning:
better the yearning spirit than the lofty spirit.

9 Be not hasty in your spirit to be vexed;
for vexation rests in the bosom of fools.

10 Say not, How be it so,
that the first days were better than these?
for you asked not by wisdom concerning this.

11 Wisdom is good with an inheritance;
and more to them who see the sun:
for wisdom *is* a shadow; silver *is* a shadow;
and the advantage of knowledge,
wisdom enlivens its masters!

13 See the work of Elohim;
for who can straighten what he twists?

14 In the day of good, be joyful;
and in the day of evil, see:
Elohim also worked this against that,
to the word,
so that humanity find naught after him.

15 I saw it all in the days of my vanity:
the just who destructs in his justness;
and the wicked who prolongs in his evil
— neither be abundantly just;
nor more enwisened.
Why desolate yourself?

17 Neither be abundantly wicked;
nor foolish:
Why die ere your time?

18 It *is* good to take hold of this;
yes, also leave not your hand from this;
for he who awes Elohim, goes out with them all.
Wisdom strengthens the wise
more than ten potentates in the city:

ECCLESIASTES 7, 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

20 For there is not a just *man* **human** upon earth,
that *doeth* **worketh** good, and sinneth not.
21 Also *take no heed* **give not thine heart**
unto all words that are *spoken* **worded**;
lest thou hear thy servant *curse* **abuse** thee:
22 For oftentimes also thine own heart knoweth
that thou thyself likewise hast *cursed* **abased** others.
23 All this have I *proved* **tested** by wisdom:
I said, I *will be wise* **shall enwise**;
but it was far from me.
24 That which is far off, and *exceeding* **deep** deep,
who can find it out?
25 I *applied* **turned** mine heart **around** to know,
and to *search* **explore**, and to seek out wisdom,
and the *reason of things* **machinations**,
and to know the wickedness of folly,
even of *foolishness* **folly** and madness:
26 And I find more bitter than death the woman,
whose heart is *snares* **lair**s and *nets* **devoted**,
and her hands as bands:
whoso *pleaseth God* **be good at the face of Elohim**
shall escape from her;
but the sinner shall be *taken* **captured** by her.
27 Behold **See**, this have I found,
saith the *preacher* **Congregationer**, *counting* one by one,
to find out the *account* **machinations**:
28 Which yet my soul seeketh, but I find not:
one *man* **human** among a thousand have I found;
but a woman among all those have I not found.
29 Lo **See**, this only have I found,
that *God* **Elohim**
hath *made man upright* **worked humanity straight**;
but they have sought out many *inventions* **machinations**.

8

Who is as the wise *man*?
and who knoweth the interpretation of a *thing* **word**?
a *man's* **human** wisdom
maketh **lighteneth** his face to *shine*,
and the *boldness* **strength** of his face shall be changed.
2 I *counsel thee to keep the king's commandment*
Guard the sovereign's mouth,
and that *in regard* **word** of the oath of *God* **Elohim**.
3 Be not hasty to go *out of his sight* **from his face**:
stand not in an evil *thing* **word**;
for he *doeth* **worketh** whatsoever *pleaseth him* **he desireth**.
4 Where the word of a *king* **sovereign** is,
there is *power* **dominion**:
and who may say unto him, What *doest* **workest** thou?
5 Whoso *keepeth* **guardeth** the *commandment* **misvah**
shall *feel* **know** no evil *thing* **word**:
and a *wise man's heart* **the heart of the wise**
discerneth **knoweth** both time and judgment.
6 Because to every *purpose* **desire**
there is time and judgment,
therefore the *misery* **evil** of *man* **humanity**
is great upon him.
7 For he knoweth not that which shall be:
for who can tell him when it shall be?
8 There is no *man* **human**
that *hath power* **is potentate** over the spirit
to *retain* **restrain** the spirit;
neither hath he power in the day of death:
and there is no *discharge* **shooting** in that war;
neither shall wickedness
deliver those that are given to it **rescue its masters**.
9 All this have I seen,
and *applied* **gave** my heart unto every work
that is *done* **worked** under the sun:
there is a time wherein
one man ruleth over another **human dominateth human**
to his own *hurt* **evil**.
10 And so **thus** I saw the wicked *buried* **entombed**,
who had come and gone from the place of the holy,
and they were forgotten in the city
where they had so *done* **worked**:
this is also vanity.
11 Because sentence against an evil work
is not *executed* **speedily** **quickly worked**,
therefore the heart of the sons of *men* **humanity**

THE CONGREGATIONER 7, 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

20 for there is not a just human on earth,
who works good and sins not.
21 Also, give not your heart
to all words that are worded;
lest you hear your servant abuse you;
22 for often times also your own heart knows
that you yourself also abased others.
23 I tested all this by wisdom;
I said, I enwise; and it *is* far from me.
24 That which is far off and deep deep,
who can find out?
25 I turned my heart around to know
and to explore and to seek out wisdom
and the machinations
and to know the wickedness of folly
— even of folly and madness;
26 and I find more bitter than death
the woman whose heart is lairs and devoted
and her hands as bands;
whoever is good at the face of Elohim
escapes from her;
and the sinner is captured by her.
27 See, I found this,
says the Congregationer, one by one,
to find out the machinations;
28 my soul still seeks, and I find not;
one human among a thousand I found;
but a woman among all those I found not.
29 See, this only I found,
that Elohim worked humanity straight;
and they — they sought out many machinations.

8

Who is as the wise?
Who knows the interpretation of a word?
Human wisdom lights his face
and the strength of his face changes.
2 Guard the mouth of the sovereign
and the word of the oath of Elohim.
3 Neither hasten to go from his face;
nor stand in an evil word:
for he works whatever he desires.
4 Where the word of a sovereign *is*,
there *is* dominion.
Who says to him, What work you?
5 Whoever guards the misvah
knows no evil word;
and the heart of the wise
knows both time and judgment.
6 Because to every desire
there is time and judgment,
so the evil of humanity upon him is great:
for he knows not what becomes;
for who can tell him when it became?
7 Neither is a human potentate over the spirit
to restrain the spirit;
nor has he power in the day of death:
neither shooting in that war;
nor wickedness to rescue its masters.
8 I saw all this;
and give my heart
to every work worked under the sun;
there is a time
wherein human dominates human to his own evil.
9 And thus I saw the wicked entombed
who came and went from the place of the holy
— forgotten in the city where they worked;
this is also vanity.
10 Because sentencing an evil work
works not quickly,
the heart of the sons of humanity

ECCLESIASTES 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 is fully set in them to *do* **work** evil.
Though a sinner *do* **work** evil an hundred times,
and *his days* be prolonged,
yet surely I know that it shall be *well* **good** with them
that *fear God* **awe Elohim**,
which *fear before him* **awe at his face**:
13 But it shall not be *well* **good** with the wicked,
neither shall he prolong his days,
which are as a shadow;
because he *feareth* **aweth** not
before God **at the face of Elohim**.
14 There is a vanity
which is *done* **worked** upon the earth;
that there be **the just men**,
unto whom it *happeneth* **toucheth**
according to the work of the wicked;
again, there be **the wicked men**,
to whom it *happeneth* **toucheth**
according to the work of the *righteous* **just**:
I said that this also is vanity.
15 Then I *commended* **mirth lauded cheerfulness**,
because a *man* **humanity**
hath no better *thing* under the sun,
than to eat, and to drink, and to be *merry* **cheer**:
for that shall *abide* **join** with him of his *labour* **toil**
the days of his life,
which *God Elohim* giveth him under the sun.
16 When I *applied* **gave** mine heart to know wisdom,
and to see the *business* **drudgery**
that is *done* **worked** upon the earth:
(for also there is that neither day nor night
seeth sleep with his eyes:)
17 Then I *beheld* **saw** all the work of *God Elohim*,
that a *man* **humanity** cannot find out the work
that is *done* **worked** under the sun:
because though a *man labour* **humanity toil** to seek it out,
yet he shall not find it; yea farther;
though a **the wise man think to know it sayeth he knoweth**,
yet shall he not be able to find it.

9

For all this
I *considered* **gave** in my heart even to declare all this,
that the *righteous* **just**, and the wise,
and their *works* **service**,
are in the hand of *God Elohim*:
no *man* **human** knoweth either love or hatred
by all that *is before them* **at their face**.
2 All *things come alike to in* all:
there is one *event* **happening** to the *righteous* **just**,
and to the wicked;
to the good and to the *clean* **pure**,
and to the *unclean* **foul**;
to him that sacrificeth, and to him that sacrificeth not:
as *is* the good, so *is* the sinner;
and he that *sweareth* **oatheth**,
as he that *feareth* **aweth** an oath.
3 This is an evil among all *things*
that are *done* **worked** under the sun,
that *there is one event* **one happening** unto all:
yea, also
the heart of the sons of *men* **humanity** is full of evil,
and *madness* **folly** is in their heart while they live,
and after that *they go to* — **unto** the dead.
4 For to him that is joined to all the living
there is *hope* **confidence**:
for a living dog is better than a dead lion.
5 For the living know that they shall die:
but the dead know *not any thing* **naught**,
neither have they any more a *reward* **hire**;
for *the memory of them* **their memorial** is forgotten.
6 Also their love, and their hatred, and their envy,
is *now perished* **already destructed**;
neither have they any more
a *portion for ever* **an allotment eternally**
in *any thing* **ought** that is *done* **worked** under the sun.
7 Go thy way, eat thy bread with *joy* **cheerfulness**,
and drink thy wine with a *merry* **good** heart;
for *God Elohim*
now accepteth **is already pleased in** thy works.

THE CONGREGATIONER 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

fully sets to work evil.
12 Though a sinner works evil a hundred times
and prolongs,
yet surely I know that it is good with them
who awe Elohim
— who awe at his face:
13 but not good with the wicked:
he prolongs not his days as a shadow;
because he awes not at the face of Elohim.
14 A vanity works on the earth:
the just who are touched
according to the work of the wicked:
again, the wicked who are touched
according to the work of the just.
I say this also *is* vanity.
15 And I lauded cheerfulness,
because humanity has naught better under the sun
than to eat and to drink and to cheer;
to join with him of his toil
the days of his life Elohim gives him under the sun.
16 When I gave my heart to know wisdom
and to see the drudgery worked on the earth
— for there are also those who,
neither day nor night see sleep with their eyes.
17 Then I saw all the work of Elohim,
that humanity cannot find out
— the work worked under the sun;
because though humanity toils to seek it out,
yet he finds it not:
yes, farther,
though the wise says he knows,
yet he is not able to find it.
9 But all this
— I gave in my heart to declare all this:
that the just and the wise and their service
are in the hand of Elohim;
no human knows either love or hatred
by all that *is* at their face.
2 All in all; one happening:
to the just and to the wicked;
to the good and to the pure and to the foul;
to him who sacrifices and to him who sacrifices not;
as the good, thus the sinner;
he who oaths, as he who awes an oath.
3 This is an evil among all worked under the sun,
one happening to all;
and also,
the heart of the sons of humanity is full of evil;
and folly in their heart while they live:
and after that — unto the dead.
4 For to whomever joins all the living
there is confidence:
for a living dog is better than a dead lion.
5 For the living know that they die;
but the dead know naught:
they have no more a hire;
for their memorial is forgotten.
6 Also their love, also their hatred, also their envy
already destructed;
they have no more an allotment eternal
in aught worked under the sun.
7 Go your way; eat your bread with cheerfulness;
and drink your wine with a good heart:
for Elohim is already pleased in your works.

ECCLESIASTES 9, 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

8 Let thy *garments* **clothes** be always at all times white;
and let thy head lack no ointment.
9 *Live joyfully* **See life**
with the *wife* **woman** whom thou lovest
all the days of the life of thy vanity,
which he hath given thee under the sun,
all the days of thy vanity:
for that is thy *portion* **allotment** in *this* life,
and in thy *labour* **toil**
which thou *takest* **toilest** under the sun.
10 Whatsoever thy hand findeth to *do* **work**,
do **work** it with thy might **force**;
for there is no work, nor *device* **machination**,
nor knowledge, nor wisdom,
in *the grave* **sheol**, whither thou goest.
11 I returned, and saw under the sun,
that the race is not to the swift,
nor the *battle* **war** to the *strong* **mighty**,
neither yet bread to the wise,
nor yet riches to *men of understanding* **the discerning**,
nor yet *favour* to *men of skill* **charism to the knowing**;
but time and *chance* **coincidence** happeneth to them all.
12 For *man* **humanity** also knoweth not his time:
as the fishes that are *taken* **held** in an evil *net* **lure**,
and as the birds that are *caught* **held** in the snare;
so are the sons of *men* **humanity** snared in an evil time,
when it falleth suddenly upon them.
13 This wisdom have I seen also under the sun,
and it *seemed* **be** great unto me:
14 There was a little city, and few men within it;
and there came a great *king* **sovereign** against it,
and *besieged* **surrounded** it,
and built great *bulwarks* **lair**s against it:
15 Now there was found in it a poor wise man,
and he by his wisdom *delivered* **rescued** the city;
yet no *man* **human** remembered that same poor man.
16 Then said I, Wisdom is better than *strength* **might**:
nevertheless the poor man's wisdom
the wisdom of the poor is despised,
and his words are not heard.
17 The words of *the wise men* are heard in *quiet* **rest**
more than the cry of him
that *ruleth* **reigneth** among fools.
18 Wisdom is better than *weapons* **instruments** of war:
but one sinner destroyeth *much* **abounding** good.

10

Dead flies
cause the ointment of the *apothecary* **perfumer**
to *send forth* a *stinking savour* **gush and stink**:
so doth a little folly
him that is in *reputation* **esteem** for wisdom and honour.
2 *A wise man's heart* **The heart of the wise**
is at his right *hand*;
but a *fool's heart* **the heart of a fool**
at his left.
3 Yea also, when he that is a fool walketh by the way,
his *wisdom* **heart** faileth *him*,
and he saith to every one that he is a fool.
4 If the spirit of the *ruler* **sovereign**
rise up **ascend** against thee,
leave not thy place;
for *yielding pacieth* **healing alloweth** great *offences* **sins**.
5 There is an evil which I have seen under the sun,
as an *inadvertent* error
which proceedeth from *the face of* the *ruler* **potentate**:
Folly is *set* **given** in great *dignity* **heights**,
and the rich *sit* **settle** in *low place* **lowliness**.
7 I have seen servants upon horses,
and *princes* **governors**
walking as servants upon the earth.
8 He that diggeth a pit shall fall *into it* **therein**;
and whoso *breaketh an hedge* **breacheth a wall**,
a serpent shall bite him.
9 Whoso *removeth* **plucketh** stones
shall be *hurt* **contorted** therewith;
and he that *cleaveth wood* **splitteth timber**
shall be *endangered* **cut** thereby.
10 If the iron be *blunt* **dull**,
and he do not *whet* **sharpen** the *edge* **face**,

THE CONGREGATIONER 9, 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

8 Your clothes at all times become white;
and your head lacks no ointment.
9 See life with the woman you love
all the days of the life of your vanity
which he gives you under the sun
— all the days of your vanity;
for that *is* your allotment in life
and in the toil you toiled under the sun.
10 Whatever your hand finds to work,
work with your force;
for there is no work, or machination,
or knowledge, or wisdom in sheol,
where you go.
11 I returned and saw under the sun,
neither is the race to the swift
nor the war to the mighty
nor yet bread to the wise
nor yet riches to the discerning
nor yet charism to the knowing;
for time and coincidence happens to all.
12 For even humanity knows not his time
— as the fishes held in an evil lure
as the birds held in the snare
thus the sons of humanity,
snared in an evil time,
when it falls suddenly on them.
13 This wisdom I also saw under the sun
— great to me:
14 a little city and few men within;
and a great sovereign came against it
and surrounded it and built great lairs against it:
15 and within they found a poor wise man;
and by his wisdom he rescued the city;
yet no human remembered that same poor man.
16 Then I said, Better wisdom than might;
the wisdom of the poor is despised
and his words not heard.
17 The words of the wise are heard in rest
more than the cry of him who reigns among fools.
18 Better wisdom than instruments of war;
one sinner destroys abounding good.

10

Dead flies gush and stink
the ointment of the perfumer;
more esteemed than wisdom and honor
— a little folly.
2 The heart of the wise *is* at his right;
and the heart of a fool at his left:
3 yes also, when a fool walks by the way,
his heart fails,
and he says to every one that he is a fool.
4 If the spirit of the sovereign ascends against you,
leave not your place;
for healing allows great sins.
5 There is an evil I saw under the sun
— an inadvertent error
proceeding from the face of the potentate;
6 folly *is* given in great heights
and the rich settle in lowliness.
7 I saw servants on horses
and governors walking as servants on the earth.
8 Whoever digs a pit, falls therein;
and whoever breaches a wall, a serpent bites:
9 whoever plucks stones *is* contorted thereby;
and whoever splits timber *is* cut thereby.
10 If the iron be dull and he sharpens not the face,

ECCLESIASTES 10, 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

then must he put to more strength prevail mightily with valour;
but wisdom is profitable **advantageth** to direct prosper.
11 Surely the serpent will **shall** bite without enchantment;
and a **babblers master of tongue**
is no better **advantageth not**.
12 The words of a wise man's mouth **the mouth of the wise**
are gracious **have charism**;
but the lips of a fool will **shall** swallow up himself.
13 The beginning of the words of his mouth
is **foolishness folly**;
and the end **finality** of his talk
is **mischievous evil** madness.
14 A fool also is full of **aboundeth** words:
a man **humanity** cannot tell what shall be;
and what shall be after him, who can tell him?
15 The labour **toil** of the foolish
wearieth every one of **belaboureth** them,
because he knoweth not how to go to the city.
16 Woe to thee, O land,
when thy king **sovereign** is a **child lad**,
and thy princes **governors** eat in the morning!
17 Blessed **Blithe** art thou, O land,
when thy king **sovereign** is the son of nobles,
and thy princes **governors** eat in due season **on time**,
for strength **might**, and not for drunkenness **drinking!**
18 By much slothfulness **sloth**
the building decayeth **framing subdueth**;
and through idleness of the hands
the house droppeth through.
19 A feast **Bread** is made **worked** for laughter,
and wine maketh merry **cheereth the life**;
but money **silver** answereth all things.
20 Curse **Abase** not the king **sovereign**,
no not in thy thought **knowingly**;
and curse **abase** not the rich in thy bedchamber:
for a bird **flyer** of the air **heavens**
shall carry the voice,
and that which hath **the master of** wings
shall tell the matter **word**.

11

Cast **Send** thy bread
upon the **face of the** waters:
for thou shalt find it after many **abundant** days.
2 Give a **portion an allotment** to seven, and also to eight;
for thou knowest not what evil shall be upon the earth.
3 If the **thick** clouds be full of **rain downpour**,
they empty **pour themselves** upon the earth:
and if the tree fall toward the south, or toward the north,
in the place where the tree falleth, **there so be** it shall be.
4 He that **observeth regardeth** the wind
shall not sow **seed**;
and he that **regardeth seeth** the **thick** clouds
shall not reap **harvest**.
5 As thou knowest not
what is the way of the **spirit wind/spirit**,
nor how the bones do grow in the **womb belly**
of her that is with **child full**;
even so thou knowest not the works of **God Elohim**
who maketh **worketh** all.
6 In the morning sow thy seed,
and in the evening **withhold leave** not thine hand:
for thou knowest not **whether which** shall prosper,
either this or that,
or whether they both shall be **alike one** good.
7 Truly the light is sweet,
and a **pleasant thing good** it is
for the eyes to **behold see** the sun:
8 But if a man **human** live many **and abound in** years,
and rejoice **cheer** in them all;
yet let him remember the days of darkness;
for they shall be many **abound**.
All that cometh is vanity.
9 Rejoice **Cheer**, O young man **youth**, in thy youth;
and let thy heart **cheer better** thee
in the days of thy youth,
and walk in the ways of thine heart,
and in the **sight visage** of thine eyes:
but know thou, that for all these **things**
God will **Elohim shall** bring thee into judgment.

THE CONGREGATIONER 10, 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

then he must prevail mightily with valour;
and wisdom advantages to prosper.
11 If the serpent bites without enchantment;
a master of tongue advantages not.
12 The words of the mouth of the wise
have charism;
and the lips of a fool swallow.
13 The beginning of the words of his mouth, folly;
and the finality of his talk, evil madness.
14 A fool abounds words;
humanity knows not what;
and what is after him? Who can tell?
15 Toil belabors the foolish,
because they know not how to go to the city.
16 Woe to you, O land,
when your sovereign is a lad
and your governors eat in the morning!
17 Blithe — you, O land,
when your sovereign is the son of nobles
and your governors eat on time
— for might and not for drinking!
18 By much sloth
the framing subdues;
and through idleness of hands
the house drops through.
19 Work the bread for laughter
and wine to cheer the life;
and silver answers for all.
20 Neither abase the sovereign;
nor abase the rich in your bedchamber;
for a flyer of the heavens carries the voice
and the master of wings tells the word.
11 Send your bread on the face of the waters;
for after abundant days, you find.
2 Give an allotment to seven and also to eight;
for you know not what evil is on the earth.
3 If the thick clouds are full of downpour,
they pour on the earth;
and if the tree falls
toward the south or toward the north,
in the place the tree falls, so be it.
4 He who regards the wind, seeds not;
and he who sees the thick clouds, harvests not.
5 As you know not the way of the wind/spirit,
as bones in the belly of her that is full,
even thus you know not the works of Elohim
who works all.
6 In the morning, sow your seed;
and in the evening, leave not your hand:
for you know not which prospers
— this or that;
or whether they both be one good.
7 Truly the light is sweet
and good for the eyes to see the sun;
8 but if a human lives and abounds in years
and cheers in them all;
yet he remembers the days of darkness
— and so be it.
All that comes is vanity.
9 Cheer, O youth, in your youth;
that your heart better you in the days of your youth;
walk in the ways of your heart
and in the visage of your eyes;
and know this:
that for all these Elohim brings you into judgment.

ECCLESIASTES 11, 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 Therefore remove sorrow Turn vexation aside
from thy heart,
and put away **pass** evil from thy flesh:
for childhood and youth **dawn** are vanity.

12 Remember now thy Creator
in the days of thy youth,
while the evil days come not,
nor the years draw nigh **touch**,
when thou shalt say, I have no *pleasure* **delight** in them;
2 While the sun, or the light, or the moon, or the stars,
be not darkened,
nor the **thick** clouds return after the *rain* **downpour**:
3 In the day when the *keepers* **guards** of the house
shall *tremble* **agitate**,
and the *strong* **valiant** men shall *bow themselves* **twist**,
and the grinders cease
because they are *few* **diminished**,
and those that look out of the windows be darkened,
4 And the doors shall be shut in the streets,
when the *sound* **voice** of the grinding is low,
and he shall rise *up* at the voice of the bird,
and all the daughters of *musick* **song**
shall be brought low **prostrate**;
5 Also when they shall be *afraid of* **awe** that which is high,
and *fears* **terrors** shall be in the way,
and the almond tree shall flourish,
and the *grasshopper* **locust** shall be a burden,
and desire shall *fail* **break down**:
because *man* **humanity**
goeth to his *long home* **eternal house**,
and the *mourners* **choppers**
go about **turn around** the streets:
6 Or ever the silver cord be *loosed* **removed**,
or the golden bowl be broken,
or the pitcher be broken at the fountain,
or the wheel *broken* **cracked** at the *cistern* **well**.
7 Then shall the dust return to the earth as it was:
and the spirit shall return unto *God* **Elohim** who gave it.
8 Vanity of vanities,
saith the *preacher* **Congregationer**;
all is vanity.
9 And moreover,
because the *preacher* **Congregationer** was *wise* **wiser**,
he still taught the people knowledge;
yea, he gave *good heed* **hearkened**, and *sought out* **probed**,
and set in order *many* **abounding** proverbs.
10 The *preacher* **Congregationer**
sought to find out *acceptable* words of **delight**:
and that which was *written* **inscribed**
was *upright* **straightness**, *even* — words of truth.
11 The words of the wise are as goads,
and as nails *fastened* **implanted**
by the masters of *assemblies* **gatherings**,
which are given from one *shepherd* **attendant**.
12 And *further* **moreover**, by these, my son,
be *admonished* **enlightened**:
of *making many books* **working abundant scrolls**
there is no end;
and *much* **abundant** study
is a weariness of **belaboureth** the flesh.
13 Let us hear the conclusion of the whole *matter* **word**:
Fear God **Awe Elohim**,
and *keep* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**:
for this is the whole *duty of man* **of humanity**.
14 For *God* **Elohim** shall bring every work into judgment,
with every *secret thing* **concealment**,
whether *it be* good, or whether *it be* evil.

THE CONGREGATIONER 11, 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 Turn vexation from your heart
and pass evil from your flesh;
for childhood and dawn are vanity.

12 Remember your Creator
in the days of your youth,
where neither the evil days come
nor the years touch;
when you say, I delight not in them.

2 While neither the sun, or the light,
or the moon, or the stars, darken;
and the thick clouds return after the downpour;
3 in the day the guards of the house agitate
and the valiant men twist
and the grinders cease
because they diminished;
and they who look from the windows darken;
4 and the doors in the streets shut:
when the voice of the grinding is low
and he rises at the voice of the bird
and all the daughters of song prostrate;
5 and they awe the heights with terrors in the way;
and the almond tree flourishes;
and the locust becomes a burden;
and desire breaks down
because humanity goes to his eternal house
and the choppers turn around the streets:
6 ere the silver cord is not removed;
or the golden bowl broken;
or the pitcher broken at the fountain;
or the wheel cracked at the well:
7 and the dust returns to the earth as it was;
and the spirit returns to Elohim who gave.

8 Vanity of vanities!
says the Congregationer:
All is vanity.
9 And moreover,
because the Congregationer was wiser,
he still taught the people knowledge;
yes, he hearkened and probed
and set in order abounding proverbs.

10 The Congregationer
sought to find out words of delight;
inscribed by the straight
— words of truth.
11 The words of the wise are as goads
— as nails implanted by the masters of gatherings
— given by one attendant.

12 And moreover, by these, my son, be enlightened:
of working abundant scrolls there is no end;
and abundant study belabors the flesh.

13 Hear the conclusion of the whole word;
Awe Elohim! Guard his misvoth!
For this is the whole of humanity.
14 For Elohim brings every work into judgment,
with every concealment,
whether good; whether evil.

THE SONG OF SOLOMON 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

THE SONG OF SONGS

1 The song of songs, which is *Solomon's Shelomoh's*.
THE WOMAN SPEAKS

2 Let him kiss me with the kisses of his mouth:
for thy *love is loves are* better than wine.
3 Because of the *savour scent* of thy good ointments
thy name is as ointment poured forth,
therefore *do* the virgins love thee.
4 Draw me, we *will shall* run after thee:
the *king sovereign* hath brought me into his chambers:
we *will be glad shall cheer* and *rejoice twirl* in thee,
we *will shall* remember thy *love loves* more than wine:
the *upright they* love thee *in straightnesses*.

5 I am black, but comely,
O ye daughters of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
as the tents of *Kedar Qedar*,
as the curtains of *Solomon Shelomoh*.
6 Look not upon *See me not*, because I am black,
because the sun hath *looked upon tanned* me:
my mother's *children were angry with sons scorched* me;
they *made set* me the *keeper guard* of the vineyards;
but mine own vineyard have I not *kept guarded*.
7 Tell me, O thou whom my soul loveth,
where thou *feedest tendest*,
where thou *makest thy flock to rest reposest* at noon:
for why should I be as one that *turneth aside is veiled*
by the *flocks droves* of thy companions?

THE MAN RESPONDS

8 If thou know not,
O thou *fairest beautiful* among women,
go thy way forth by the *footsteps heelprints* of the flock,
and *feed tend* thy kids
beside the *shepherds' tents tabernacles of the tenders*.
9 I have compared thee, O my *love friend*,
to a *company of horses mare* in *Pharaoh's Paroh's* chariots.
10 Thy cheeks are comely with rows of *jewels*,
thy neck with *chains of gold beads*.
11 We *will make shall work* thee *borders rows* of gold
with *studs sequins* of silver.

THE WOMAN

12 While the *king sitteth at sovereign be in* his *table circle*,
my *spikenard nard*
sendeth forth giveth the *smell scent* thereof.
13 A bundle of myrrh is my well—beloved unto me;
he shall *lie all night stay overnight* betwixt my breasts.
14 My beloved is unto me as a cluster of camphire
in the vineyards of *Engedi En Gedi*.

THE MAN

15 Behold, thou art *fair beautiful*, my *love friend*;
behold, thou art *fair beautiful*; thou hast doves' eyes.

THE WOMAN

16 Behold, thou art *fair beautiful*, my beloved,
yea, pleasant:
also our *bed bedstead* is green.
17 The beams of our house are cedar,
and our *rafters troughs* of *fir firs*.

THE MAN

2 I am the rose of Sharon, *and* the lily of the valleys.
2 As the lily among thorns,
so is my *love friend* among the daughters.

THE WOMAN

3 As the apple tree among the trees of the *wood forest*,
so is my beloved among the sons.
I sat down under his shadow
with great delight and delighted,
and his fruit was sweet to my *taste palate*.
4 He brought me to the *banqueting house of wine*,
and his banner over me was love.
5 Stay *Sustain* me with *flavons cakes*,
comfort spread me with apples:
for I am *sick worn out* of love.

THE SONG OF SHELOMOH 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

THE SONG OF SONGS

1 The song of songs; by Shelomoh.

THE WOMAN SPEAKS

2 He kisses me with the kisses of his mouth;
your loves are better than wine:
3 the scent of your ointments is good;
your name, as poured ointment;
so the virgins love you.

4 Draw me, we run after you;
the sovereign brings me into his chambers;
we cheer and twirl in you;
we remember your loves more than wine;
they love you in straightnesses.

5 I am black and comely
O you daughters of Yeru Shalem;
— as the tents of Qedar
— as the curtains of Shelomoh.
6 See me not, because I am black;
because the sun tanned me;
the sons of my mother scorched me;
they set me to guard the vineyards;
my vineyard — my own I guarded not.

7 Tell me, you whom my soul loves,
where you tend; where you repose at noon;
why am I as a veiled one
by the droves of your companions?

THE MAN RESPONDS

8 If you know not,
O you beautiful among women,
go the way of the heelprints of the flock;
and tend your kids
beside the tabernacles of the tenders.
9 I compare you, O my friend,
to a mare of the chariots of Paroh:
your cheeks are comely with rows;
your neck with beads;
10 we work you rows of gold with sequins of silver.

THE WOMAN

12 While the sovereign *is* in his circle,
my nard gives its scent;
13 a bundle of myrrh is my well—beloved to me;
between my breasts, he stays overnight;
14 my beloved to me
is a cluster of camphire in the vineyards of En Gedi.

THE MAN

15 Behold, you are beautiful, my friend;
behold, you are beautiful;
your eyes, of doves.

THE WOMAN

16 Behold, you are beautiful, my beloved,
yes, pleasant; yes, our bedstead is green:
17 the beams of our house are of cedar
and our troughs of firs.

THE MAN

2 I — a rose of Sharon.
A lily of the valleys
— as a lily among thorns
is my friend among the daughters.

THE WOMAN

3 As an apple tree among the trees of the forest,
thus *is* my beloved among the sons:
in his shadow I delight and sit;
his fruit is sweet to my palate;
4 he brings me to the house of wine;
his banner over me is love.
5 Sustain me with cakes; spread me with apples;
for I am worn from love.

THE SONG OF SOLOMON 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

6 His left *hand* is under my head,
and his right *hand* doth embrace **embraceth** me.
7 I charge **oath** you,
O ye daughters of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
by the *roes* **gazelles**, and by the hinds of the field,
that ye *stir not up* **not waken**,
nor awake my **the** love, till he *please* **desireth**.
8 The voice of my beloved!
behold, he cometh leaping upon the mountains,
skipping upon the hills.
9 My beloved is *like a roe* **likened to a gazelle**
or a *young fawn* hart:
behold, he standeth behind our wall,
he *looketh* **peereth** forth at the windows,
shewing himself **flourishing** through the lattice.
10 My beloved *spake* **answered**, and said unto me,
Rise up **Arise**, my love **friend**, my *fair one* **beautiful**,
and come away.
11 For, *lo* **behold**, the winter *is past* **hath passed**,
the *rain is over* **downpour hath passed** and gone;
12 The *flowers appear* **blossoms be seen** on the earth;
the time of the *singing of birds* **psalming**
is come **hath touched**,
and the voice of the *turtle* **turtledove**
is heard in our land;
13 The fig tree *putteth forth* **ripeneth** her *green* **unripe** figs,
and the vines with the *tender grape* **blossom**
give a good smell **their scent**.
Arise, my love **friend**, my *fair one* **beautiful**,
and come away.
14 O my dove, that art in the clefts of the rock,
in the *secret places* **coverts** of the *stairs* **steep steps**,
let me see thy *countenance* **visage**,
let me hear thy voice;
for *sweet* **pleasant** is thy voice,
and thy *countenance* **is visage** comely.
15 Take us the foxes,
the little foxes, that *spoil* **despoil** the *vines* **vineyards**:
for our *vines* **vineyards** have *tender grapes* **blossoms**.
16 My beloved is mine, and I am his:
he *feedeth* **tendeth** among the lilies.
17 Until the day *break* **breathe**,
and the shadows flee away,
turn *around*, my beloved,
and be thou *like* **likened to a roe gazelle**
or a *young fawn* hart
upon the mountains of Bether.
3 By night on my bed
I sought him whom my soul loveth:
I sought him, but I found him not.
2 I *will* **shall** rise *now* **I beseech**,
and go about the city in the streets,
and in the broadways
I *will* **shall** seek him whom my soul loveth:
I sought him, but I found him not.
3 The *watchmen* **guards** that *go about* **surround** the city
found me: *to whom I said*,
Saw ye him whom my soul loveth?
4 It was but a little that I passed from them,
but I found him whom my soul loveth:
I held him, and *would* **did** not let him go,
until I had brought him into my mother's house,
and into the chamber of her that conceived me.
5 I charge **oath** you,
O ye daughters of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
by the *roes* **gazelles**, and by the hinds of the field,
that ye *stir not up*, nor awake my **the** love,
till he *please* **desireth**.
6 Who is this
that *cometh* **ascendeth** out of the wilderness
like *pillars* **columns** of smoke,
perfumed **incensed** with myrrh and frankincense,
with all powders of the merchant?
7 Behold his bed, which is *Solomon's* **Shelomoh's**;
threescore valiant men are about **sixty mighty surround** it,
of the *valiant* **mighty** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
8 They all hold swords, *being expert* **taught** in war:
every man hath his sword upon his *thigh* **flank**
because of *fear* **dread** in the night.

THE SONG OF SHELOMOH 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

6 His left is under my head
and his right embraces me.
7 I oath you, O you daughters of Yeru Shalem,
by the gazelles and by the hinds of the field,
that neither you waken,
nor waken the love, until he desires.
8 The voice of my beloved!
Behold, he comes
— leaping on the mountains — skipping on the hills.
9 My beloved *is* likened to a gazelle or a fawn hart;
behold, he stands behind our wall;
he peers at the windows
flourishing through the lattice.
10 My beloved answers and says to me,
Rise, my friend, my beautiful, and come away!
11 For, behold, the winter has passed;
the downpour has passed and gone;
12 the blossoms are seen on the earth;
the time of psalming touches
and the voice of the turtledove is heard in our land:
the fig tree ripens her unripe figs
and the vines with the blossom give their scent.
13 Rise, my friend, my beautiful, and come away.
14 O my dove, in the clefts of the rock
— in the coverts of the steep steps,
have me see your visage;
have me hear your voice;
for your voice is pleasant and your visage comely.
15 Take the foxes for us
— the little foxes that despoil the vineyards;
for our vineyards have blossoms.
16 My beloved *is* mine and I *am* his;
he tends among the lilies,
17 until the day breathes, and the shadows flee away,
turn, my beloved, as a gazelle or a fawn hart
on the mountains of Bether.
3 By night on my bed
I seek him whom my soul loves;
I seek him, but I find him not.
2 I rise; I beseech:
I go about the city
— in the streets and in the broadways:
I seek him whom my soul loves;
I seek him, but I find him not.
3 The guards surrounding the city find me;
See you him whom my soul loves?
4 In a little I pass from them,
until I find him whom my soul loves;
I hold him and not let him go
until I bring him into the house of my mother
— into the chamber of her who conceived me.
5 I oath you, O you daughters of Yeru Shalem,
by the gazelles and by the hinds of the field,
that you neither stir nor waken the love
until he desires.
6 Who is this ascending from the wilderness
as columns of smoke?
— incensed with myrrh and frankincense
with all powders of the merchant?
7 Behold his bed, of Shelomoh;
sixty mighty surround it — of the mighty of Yisra El.
8 They all hold swords; taught in war;
every man with his sword on his flank
because of dread in the night.

THE SONG OF SOLOMON 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 King Solomon Sovereign Shelomoh
made **worked** himself a *chariot* **palanquin**
of the wood **timber** of Lebanon.
10 He made **worked** the pillars *thereof* of silver,
the *bottom* **railings** *thereof* of gold,
the *covering of it* **saddle** of purple,
the midst *thereof* being paved with love,
for the daughters of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
11 Go forth, O ye daughters of *Zion* **Siyon**,
and behold king Solomon see **sovereign Shelomoh**
with the crown wherewith his mother crowned him
in the day of his *espousals* **wedding**,
and in the day of the *gladness* **cheerfulness** of his heart.

4 Behold, thou art *fair* **beautiful**, my *love* **friend**;
behold, thou art *fair* **beautiful**;
thou hast doves' eyes *within* **through** thy *locks* **vail**:
thy hair is as a *flock* **drove** of *doe* goats,
that appear **eat** from mount *Gilead* **Gilad**.
2 Thy teeth are like a
flock of sheep that are even shorn **clipped drove**,
which came up **ascended** from the *washing* **bathing**:
whereof every one *bear* **twins** **twinned**,
and none is *barren* **bereft** among them.
3 Thy lips are like a thread of scarlet,
and thy speech is comely:
thy temples are like a *piece* **slice** of a pomegranate
within **through** thy *locks* **vail**.
4 Thy neck is like the tower of David
built for an *armoury* **arsenals**,
whereon there hang a thousand bucklers,
all shields of mighty men.
5 Thy two breasts
are like two *young roes that are* **fawn gazelle** twins,
which *feed* **tend** among the lilies.
6 Until the day *break* **breathe**,
and the shadows flee away,
I will get **shall walk** me to the mountain of myrrh,
and to the hill of frankincense.
7 Thou art all *fair* **beautiful**, my *love* **friend**;
there is no *spot* **blemish** in thee.
8 Come with me from Lebanon, my *spouse* **bride**,
with me from Lebanon:
look **observe** from the top of *Amana* **Amanah**,
from the top of Shenir and Hermon,
from the *lions' dens* **habitations of lions**,
from the mountains of the leopards.
9 Thou hast *ravished my heart* **heartened me**,
my *sister*, my *spouse* **sister bride**;
thou hast *ravished my heart* **heartened me**
with one of thine eyes,
with one *chain* **choker** of thy neck.
10 How *fair* is **beautified** thy *love* **loves**,
my *sister*, my *spouse* **sister bride**!
how much better is thy love than wine!
and the *smell* **scent** of thine ointments than all spices!
11 Thy lips, O my *spouse* **bride**,
drop as the honeycomb:
honey and milk are under thy tongue;
and the *smell* **scent** of thy *garments* **clothes**
is like the *smell* **scent** of Lebanon.
12 A garden inclosed is my *sister*,
my *spouse* **sister bride**;
a *spring shut up* **wave inclosed**,
a fountain sealed.
13 Thy *plants* **branches**
are an *orchard* **a paradise** of pomegranates,
with *pleasant* **precious** fruits;
camphire, with *spikenard* **nard**,
Spikenard **Nard** and saffron;
calamus **stalk** and cinnamon,
with all trees of frankincense;
myrrh and aloes, with all the *chief* **head** spices:
15 A fountain of gardens, a well of living waters,
and *streams* **flowings** from Lebanon.

THE MAN

THE SONG OF SHELOMOH 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 Sovereign Shelomoh works himself a palanquin
of the timber of Lebanon:
10 he works the pillars of silver
the railings of gold
the saddle of purple
the middle paved with love
for the daughters of Yeru Shalem.
11 Come, you daughters of Siyon
and see sovereign Shelomoh
with the crown his mother crowned him
in the day of his wedding
and in the day of the cheerfulness of his heart.

THE MAN

4 Behold, you are beautiful, my friend!
Behold, you are beautiful!
Your eyes,
as doves through your veil;
your hair,
as a drove of doe goats eating on mount Gilad:
2 your teeth,
as a clipped drove ascending from the bathing
— whereof every one twins
and none bereft among them.
3 Your lips, as a thread of scarlet;
and your speech comely;
your temples,
as a slice of a pomegranate through your veil;
4 your neck,
as the tower of David built for arsenals
whereon hang a thousand bucklers
— all shields of mighty men;
5 your two breasts,
as two fawn gazelle twins, tending among the lilies.
6 Until the day breathes and the shadows flee away,
I walk me to the mountain of myrrh
and to the hill of frankincense.
7 You are all beautiful, my friend;
— no blemish in you.
8 Come with me from Lebanon, bride,
with me from Lebanon;
observe from the top of Amanah,
from the top of Shenir and Hermon,
from the habitations of lions,
from the mountains of the leopards.
9 You hearten me, my sister bride,
you hearten me with one of your eyes;
with one choker of your neck.
10 How beautified your loves, my, sister bride!
Better your love than wine
and the scent of your ointments than all spices.
11 Your lips, O bride, drip as the honeycomb;
honey and milk are under your tongue;
and the scent of your clothes
is as the scent of Lebanon.
12 A garden inclosed — my sister bride;
a wave inclosed; a fountain sealed:
13 your branches, a paradise of pomegranates,
with precious fruits;
camphire, with nard;
nard and saffron;
stalk and cinnamon;
with all trees of frankincense;
myrrh and aloes;
with all the head spices;
15 a fountain of gardens;
a well of living waters and flowings from Lebanon.

THE SONG OF SOLOMON 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

16 Awake, O north wind **northerly**;
and come, thou south **southerly**;
blow **puff** upon my garden,
that the spices *thereof* may flow out.
Let my beloved come into his garden
and eat his *pleasant* **precious** fruits.

5 I am come into my garden,
my *sister*, my *spouse* **sister bride**;
I have *gathered* **plucked** my myrrh with my spice;
I have eaten my *honeycomb* **honey of the forest**
with my honey;
I have drunk my wine with my milk; eat, O friends;
drink, *yea*, *drink abundantly* **and intoxicate**, O beloved.

2 I sleep, but my heart waketh:
it is the voice of my beloved that knocketh,
saying, Open to me, my sister, my *love* **friend**,
my dove, my *undefiled* **integrious**:
for my head is filled with *dew* **dewdrops**,
and my locks with the *drops* **dewdrops** of the night.

3 I have *put off* **stripped** my coat;
how shall I *put it on* **enrobe**?
I have washed my feet; how shall I *defile* **foul** them?

4 My beloved *put in* **spread** his hand by the hole
of the door,
and my *bowels were moved* **inwards roared** for him.

5 I rose up to open to my beloved;
and my hands *dropped with* **dripped** myrrh,
and my fingers with *sweet smelling* myrrh,
that passeth upon the *handles* **palms** of the lock.

6 I opened to my beloved;
but my beloved had withdrawn himself,
and was *gone* **had passed**:
my soul failed when he *spake* **worded**:
I sought him, but I *could not find* **found him not**;
I called him, but he *gave me no answer* **answered not**.

7 The *watchmen* **guards**
that *went about* **surrounded** the city found me,
they smote me, they wounded me;
the *keepers* **guards** of the walls
took away **lifted** my veil from me.

8 I *charge* **oath** you,
O daughters of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
if ye find my beloved,
that ye tell him, that I am *sick* **worn out** of love.

9 What is thy beloved more than *another* beloved,
O thou *fairest* **beautiful** among women?
what is thy beloved more than *another* beloved,
that thou *dost so charge* **thus oatest** us?

10 My beloved is *white* **clear** and *ruddy* **red**,
the *chiefest* **bannerbearer** among *ten thousand* **myriads**.
His head is as *the most fine* **ore of pure** gold,
his locks are *bushy* **pendulous**, and black as a raven.

11 His eyes are as *the eyes of* doves
by the *rivers* **reservoirs** of waters,
washed **bathed** with milk, and *fitly in* **fulness** set.

12 His cheeks are as a *bed* **furrow** of spices,
as *sweet flowers* **towers of spices**:
his lips like lilies,
dropping sweet smelling **dripping passing** myrrh.

13 His hands are as gold rings *set* **filled** with the beryl:
his *belly is as bright* **inwards as fabricated** ivory
overlaid **covered** with sapphires.

14 His legs are as pillars of *white* **marble**,
set **founded** upon sockets of *fine* **pure** gold:
his *countenance is* **visage** as Lebanon,
excellent as the **as select** cedars.

16 His *mouth is most* **palate** sweet:
yea, he is altogether *lovely* **desirable**.
This is my beloved, and this is my friend,
O daughters of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

THE WOMAN

THE MAN

THE WOMAN QUOTES THE MAN

THE WOMAN SPEAKS FOR HERSELF

THE DAUGHTERS

THE WOMAN

THE SONG OF SHELOMOH 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

16 Waken, O northerly! Come, you southerly!
Puff on my garden so the spices flow.
My beloved comes into his garden
and eats his precious fruits.

5 I come into my garden, my sister bride;
I pluck my myrrh with my spice;
I eat my honey of the forest with my honey;
I drink my wine with my milk;
eat, O friends;
drink and intoxicate, O beloved.

2 I sleep, but my heart wakens;
the voice of my beloved knocks,
Open to me, my sister, my friend,
my dove, my integrious;
for my head fills with dewdrops
— my locks with the dewdrops of the night.
I strip my coat; how enrobe I?
I wash my feet; how foul I?

7 The guards surrounding the city find me,
they smite me; they wound me:
the guards of the walls lift my veil from me.

8 I oath you, O daughters of Yeru Shalem,
if you find my beloved,
that you tell him, I am worn from love.

9 What *is* your beloved more than beloved,
O you beautiful among women?
What *is* your beloved more than beloved,
that you thus oath us?

10 My beloved is clear and red;
the bannerbearer among myriads:
his head, as ore of pure gold;
his locks,
as pendulous and black as a raven;
his eyes,
as doves by the reservoirs of waters
bathed with milk and set in fulness;
his cheeks,
as furrows of spices; as towers of spices;
his lips,
as lilies dripping, passing myrrh;
his hands,
as gold rings filled with beryl;
his inwards,
as fabricated ivory covered with sapphires;
his legs,
as pillars of white marble
founded on sockets of pure gold;
his visage,
as Lebanon; as select cedars;
his palate,
sweet:
yes, he is altogether desirable.
This *is* my beloved and this *is* my friend,
O daughters of Yeru Shalem.

THE WOMAN

THE MAN

THE WOMAN QUOTES THE MAN

THE WOMAN SPEAKS FOR HERSELF

THE DAUGHTERS

THE WOMAN

THE SONG OF SOLOMON 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE DAUGHTERS

6 Whither is thy beloved gone,
O thou *fairest beautiful* among women?
whither is thy beloved turned *aside his face?*
that we may seek him with thee.

THE WOMAN

2 My beloved *is gone down descended* into his garden,
to the *beds furrows* of spices,
to *feed in tend* the gardens, and to *gather glean* lilies.
3 I am my beloved's, and my beloved is mine:
he *feedeth tendeth* among the lilies.

THE MAN

4 Thou art beautiful, O my *love friend*, as Tirzah,
comely as *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
terrible awesome as an army with banners *bannerbearers*.

5 Turn away thine eyes from me,
for they have *overcome encouraged* me:
thy hair is as a *flock drove* of *doe* goats
that *appear eat* from *Gilead Gilad*.

6 Thy teeth are as a *flock drove* of *sheep ewes*
which *go up ascend* from the *washing bathing*,
whereof every one *beareth twins twinneth*,
and there is not one *barren bereft* among them.

7 As a *piece slice* of a pomegranate are thy temples
within throughout thy *locks veil*.

8 *There are threescore queens Sixty sovereignesses*,
and *fourscore eighty* concubines,
and virgins without number.

9 My dove, my *undefiled integrious* is *but one*;
she is the *only one* of her mother,
she is the *choice one pure* of her that *bare birthed* her.

CONCERNING HER ADMIRERS

The daughters saw her,
and *blessed pronounced* her *blithesome*;
yea, the *queens sovereignesses* and the concubines,
and they *praised haled* her.

10 Who is she that looketh forth as the *morning dawn*,
fair beautiful as the moon,
clear as the sun pure as heat,
and *terrible awesome*
as an army with banners *bannerbearers*.

THE WOMAN SPEAKS FOR HERSELF

11 I *went down descended* into the garden of nuts
to see the *fruits unripeness* of the *valley wadi*,
and to see whether the vine *flourished blossomed*
and the pomegranates budded.

12 Or ever I was *aware knew*,
my soul *made set* me
like the chariots of *Amminadib Ammi Nadib*.

13 Return, return, O *Shulamite Shulamith*;
return, return, that we may *look see* upon thee.
What *will shall* ye see in the *Shulamite Shulamith*?

As it were
the *company round dance* of *two armies Machanah*.

THE MAN

7 How *beautiful beautified*
are thy *feet steps* with shoes,
O *prince's volunteer's* daughter!
the *joints roundness* of thy *thighs flanks*
are *like jewels as ornaments*,
the work of the hands of a *cunning workman an expert*.

2 Thy navel *is like as* a round *goblet bowl*,
which *wanteth not liquor lacketh no cocktail*:
thy belly *is like as* an heap of *wheat*
set about hedged with lilies.

3 Thy two breasts *are like as* two *young roes fawn gazelles*
that are — twins.

4 Thy neck *is as* a tower of ivory;
thine eyes *like as* the fishpools in Heshbon,
by the *gate portal* of *Bath—rabbim Daughter of Rabbim*:
thy *nose nostrils* *is as* the tower of Lebanon
which *looketh watcheth*
toward Damascus at the face of Dammeseq.

THE SONG OF SHELOMOH 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE DAUGHTERS

6 Where has your beloved gone,
O you beautiful among women?
Where has your beloved turned his face?
— that we seek him with you.

THE WOMAN

2 My beloved descends to his garden
to the furrows of spices;
to tend the gardens and to glean lilies.
3 I, to my beloved; and my beloved, to me;
he tends among the lilies.

THE MAN

4 You are beautiful, O my friend, as Tirzah,
comely as Yeru Shalem,
awesome as bannerbearers.

5 Turn your eyes from me,
for they encourage me;
your hair,

6 as a drove of doe goats eating of Gilad;
your teeth,

7 as a drove of ewes ascending from the bathing
whereof every one twins

8 — not one bereft among them;
as a slice of a pomegranate,
your temples through your veil.

9 Sixty sovereignesses
and eighty concubines
and virgins without number.

10 One *is* my dove, my integrious;
she, the one of her mother;
she, the pure of her who birthed her.

CONCERNING HER ADMIRERS

The daughters see her
and pronounce her blithesome;
the sovereignesses and the concubines halal her.

10 Who is this?
looks, as the dawn,
beautiful, as the moon,
pure, as heat,
awesome, as bannerbearers.

THE WOMAN SPEAKS FOR HERSELF

11 I descend to the garden of nuts
to see the unripeness of the wadi;
to see whether the vine blossoms
and the pomegranates bud.

12 Or ere I know,
my soul sets me as the chariots of Ammi Nadib.

13 Return! Return, O *Shulamith*!
Return! Return, so that we see you.

What see you in the *Shulamith*?
As it were, the round dance of Machanah.

THE MAN

7 How beautified are your steps with shoes,
O daughter of a volunteer;
the roundness of your flanks,
as ornaments

2 — the work of the hands of an expert;
your navel,

3 as a round bowl which lacks no cocktail;
your belly,

4 as a heap hedged with lilies;
your two breasts,

5 as two fawn gazelles — twins;
your neck,

6 as a tower of ivory;
your eyes,

7 as the fishpools in Heshbon
by the portal of the Daughter of Rabbim;
your nostrils,

8 as the tower of Lebanon
watching at the face of Dammeseq;

THE SONG OF SOLOMON 7, 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 Thine head upon thee *is like Carmel as an orchard,*
and the *hair thrum* of thine head *like as purple;*
the *king sovereign* is held **bound** in the *galleries curls.*
6 How *fair beautified* and how *pleasant pleasing* art thou,
O love, for delights!
7 This thy *stature height* is *like likened* to a palm tree,
and thy breasts to clusters of *grapes.*
8 I said, I will go up **shall ascend** to the palm tree,
I will **shall** take hold of the *boughs twigs* thereof:
now also thy breasts shall be as clusters of the vine,
and the *smell scent* of thy nose *like nostrils* as apples;
9 And the *roof of thy mouth thy palate*
like the best as good wine for my beloved,
that goeth *down sweetly in straightnesses,*
causing the lips of those that are asleep
to speak **tranquilly flow.**

THE WOMAN

10 I am my beloved's, and his desire is toward me.
11 Come, my beloved, let us go forth into the field;
let us *lodge stay overnight* in the villages.
12 Let us *get up start* early to the vineyards;
let us see if the vine *flourish blossom,*
whether the tender grape appear — the blossom open,
and the pomegranates bud forth:
there *will shall* I give thee my beloved;
13 The mandrakes give a *smell scent,*
and at our *gates portals*
are all manner of *pleasant fruits preciousnesses,*
new and old, *which I have laid up treasured* for thee,
O my beloved.

8 O who **giveth** that thou wert as my brother,
that sucked the breasts of my mother!
when I should find thee *without in the outways,*
I *would should* kiss thee;
yea, I should not be *despised disrespected.*
2 I *would lead should drive* thee,
and bring thee into my mother's house,
who *would instruct should teach* me:
I *would cause should have* thee
to drink of *spiced perfumed* wine
of the **squeezed** juice of my pomegranate.
3 His left *hand* should be under my head,
and his right *hand* should embrace me.
4 I *charge oath* you,
O daughters of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,*
that ye *stir not waken up,*
nor awake my **the** love, until he *please desireth.*

THE DAUGHTERS

5 Who is this
that *cometh up ascendeth* from the wilderness,
leaning upon her beloved?

THE WOMAN

I *raised wakened* thee up under the apple tree:
there thy mother *brought pledged* thee forth:
there she *brought pledged* thee forth that *bare birthed* thee.
6 Set me as a seal upon thine heart,
as a seal upon thine arm:
for love is strong as death;
jealousy is *cruel hard* as the *grave sheol:*
the *coals burning flashes* thereof
are *coals burning flashes* of fire,
which hath — a most vehement flame.
7 Many waters cannot quench love,
neither can the *floods drown rivers overflow* it:
if a man *would should* give
all the *substance wealth* of his house for love,
it would utterly be contemned
in disrespecting, he should be disrespected.

THE SONG OF SHELOMOH 7, 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 your head on you,
as an orchard;
and the thrum of your head,
as purple
— the sovereign bound in the curls.
6 How beautified and how pleasing are you,
O love, for delights!
7 This your height, likened to a palm tree
and your breasts to clusters.
8 I say, I ascend to the palm tree,
I hold the twigs;
yes, your breasts,
as clusters of the vine;
the scent of your nostrils,
as apples;
your palate,
as good wine for my beloved
— who goes in straightnesses
so that the lips of those who sleep tranquilly flow.

THE WOMAN

10 I am to my beloved and his desire is to me.
11 Come, my beloved, we go to the field
— stay overnight in the villages
— start early to the vineyards
— see if the vine blossoms — the blossoms open
and the pomegranates bud forth;
there I give you my loves.

13 The mandrakes give scent
and at our portals are all manner preciousnesses,
new and old, which I treasure for you,
O my beloved.

8 O who gives that you be as my brother
sucking the breasts of my mother!
I find you in the outways:
I kiss you;
yes, they disrespect me not:
I drive you;
I bring you to the house of my mother:
she teaches me;
I have you drink of perfumed wine
— of the squeezed juice of my pomegranate.

3 His left is under my head
and his right embraces me.
4 I oath you, O daughters of Yeru Shalem,
that neither you waken,
nor waken the love until he desires.

THE DAUGHTERS

5 Who is this ascending from the wilderness,
leaning on her beloved?

THE WOMAN

I wakened you under the apple tree;
there your mother pledged you
— there she who birthed you pledged you.

6 Set me as a seal on your heart,
as a seal on your arm;
for love is as strong as death;
jealousy as hard as sheol;
its burning flashes as burning flashes of fire,
— a most vehement flame.

7 Neither are many waters able to quench love,
nor the rivers overflow it;
if a man give all the wealth of his house for love,
in disrespecting, they disrespect him.

THE SONG OF SOLOMON 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE DAUGHTERS

8 We have a little sister, and she hath no breasts:
what shall we *do* **work** for our sister
in the day when she shall be *spoken* **worded** for?

9 If she be a wall,
we *will* **shall** build upon her a *palace* **wall** of silver;
and if she be a door,
we *will* *inclose* **shall besiege** her
with *boards* **a slab** of cedar.

THE WOMAN

10 I am a wall, and my breasts like towers:
then was I in his eyes as one that found *favour* **shalom**.

11 *Solomon* **Shelomoh**
had a vineyard at *Baalhamon* **Baal Hamon**;
he *let out* **gave** the vineyard unto *keepers* **guards**;
every one **each man** for the fruit *thereof*
was to bring a thousand *pieces of* silver.

12 My vineyard, which is mine, is *before me* **at my face**:
thou, O *Solomon* **Shelomoh**, *must have* **hast** a thousand,
and those that *keep* **guard** the fruit *thereof* two hundred.

THE MAN

13 Thou that *dweldest* **settlest** in the gardens,
the companions hearken to thy voice:
cause me to hear it.

14 *Make haste* **Flee**, my beloved,
and be thou *like* **likened** to a *roe* **gazelle**
or to a *young* **fawn** hart upon the mountains of spices.

THE SONG OF SHELOMOH 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE DAUGHTERS

8 We have a little sister; she has no breasts:
what work we for our sister
in the day they word for her?

9 If she is a wall,
we build on her a wall of silver;
and if she is a door,
we besiege her with a slab of cedar.

THE WOMAN

10 I *am* a wall; and my breasts as towers;
then am I in his eyes as one finding shalom.

11 Shelomoh has a vineyard at Baal Hamon;
he gives the vineyard to guards;
and for the fruit, each man brings a thousand silver.

12 My vineyard — mine, is at my face;
you, O Shelomoh, have a thousand
and they who guard the fruit two hundred.

THE MAN

13 You who settle in the gardens,
the companions hearken to your voice;
hear me.

14 Flee, my beloved
— likened to a gazelle or to a fawn hart
on the mountains of spices.

LAMENTATIONS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE FIRST LAMENTATION

1 How doth the city sit **hath she settled** solitary,
that was full of the city abounding with people!
 how is **hath** she become as a widow!
 she that was great among the *nations* **goyim**,
 and *princess* **governess** among the *provinces* **jurisdictions**,
 how is **hath** she become *tributary* **a vassal!**

2 **In weeping**, She weepeth *sore* in the night,
 and her tears are on her cheeks:
 among all her lovers
 she hath none to *comfort* **sigh over** her:
 all her friends have dealt treacherously with her,
they are — become her enemies.

3 *Judah* **Yah Hudah** is *gone into captivity* **exiled**
 because of *affliction* **humiliation**,
 and because of *great* **abundant** servitude:
 she *dwelleth* **settlesh** among the *heathen* **goyim**,
 she findeth no rest:
 all her *persecutors* **pursuers** overtook her
 between the straits.

4 The ways of *Zion* **do Siyon** mourn,
 because none come
 to the *solemn feasts* **congregation festivals**:
 all her *gates* **portals** are desolate:
 her priests sigh, her virgins *are afflicted* **grieve**,
 and she is *in bitterness* **embittered**.

5 Her *adversaries* **tribulators**
are the chief **have become her heads**,
 her enemies *prosper* **serenify**;
 for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *afflicted* **grieved** her
 for the *multitude* **abundance**
 of her *transgressions* **rebellions**:
 her *children* **infants** *are gone into captivity* **captured**
before **at the face of the enemy** **tribulator**.

6 And from the daughter of *Zion* **Siyon**
 all her *beauty* **majesty** is departed:
 her *prince* **governors** *are become like harts*
 that find no pasture,
 and they are gone without *strength* **force**
before **at the face of** the pursuer.

7 *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** remembered
 in the days of her *affliction* **humiliation**
 and of her *miseries* **persecutions**
 all her *pleasant things* **desires**
 that she had in the days of *old* **antiquity**,
 when her people
 fell into the hand of the *enemy* **tribulator**,
 and *none did help her* **she had no helper**:
 the *adversaries* **tribulators** saw her,
 and *did mock at* **ridiculed** her *sabbaths* **shabbathisms**.

8 **In sinning**,
Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem** hath *grievously* sinned;
 therefore she is removed:
 all that honoured her *despise* **disesteem** her,
 because they have seen her nakedness:
 yea, she sighth, and turneth backward.

9 Her *filthiness* **foulness** is in her *skirts* **hems**;
 she remembereth not her *last end* **finality**;
 therefore
 she *came down wonderfully* **descended marvellously**:
 she had *no comforter* **none to sigh**.

O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, *behold* **see** my *affliction* **humiliation**:
 for the enemy hath *magnified* **greatened** himself.

10 The *adversary* **tribulator** hath spread out his hand
 upon all her *pleasant things* **desires**:
 for she hath seen
 that the *heathen* **goyim** entered into her *sanctuary* **holies**,
 whom thou didst command
 that they should not enter into thy congregation.

11 All her people sigh, they seek bread;
 they have given their *pleasant things* **desires** for *meat* **food**
 to relieve the soul:
 see, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, and *consider* **look**;
 for I am become *vile* **a glutton**.

12 Is it *nothing* **naught** to you,
 all ye that pass by **the way**?

LAMENTATIONS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE FIRST LAMENTATION

1 How she settles solitary
 — the city abounding with people
 — become as a widow!
 This great among the goyim
 and governess among the jurisdictions
 — becomes a vassal!

2 In weeping, she weeps in the night
 — her tears on her cheeks;
 of all her lovers, none sigh over her;
 all her friends deal treacherously with her
 — become her enemies.

3 Yah Hudah is exiled because of humiliation
 and because of abundant servitude;
 she settles among the goyim,
 she finds no rest;
 all her pursuers overtake her between the straits.

4 The ways of Siyon mourn;
 no one comes to the congregation festivals;
 all her portals are desolate;
 her priests sigh; her virgins grieve;
 she is embittered.

5 Her tribulators become her heads;
 her enemies serenify;
 for Yah Veh grieves her
 for the abundance of her rebellions;
 her infants are captured at the face of the tribulator:
 all majesty departs from the daughter of Siyon;
 her governors become as harts finding no pasture
 — gone without force from the face of the pursuer.

7 Yeru Shalem remembers
 the days of her humiliation and of her persecutions;
 all her desires from the days of antiquity
 — when her people
 fell into the hand of the tribulator
 and she had no helper:
 the tribulators saw her
 and ridiculed her shabbathisms.

8 In sinning, Yeru Shalem sinned;
 so she is removed;
 all who honored her, disesteem her;
 because they see her nakedness:
 yes, she sighs and turns backward.

9 Her foulness is in her hems;
 she remembers not her finality:
 she descends marvellously;
 she has no one to sigh.

O Yah Veh, see my humiliation;
 for the enemy greatens.

10 The tribulator spreads his hand on all her desires;
 for she sees the goyim enter her holies,
 whom you commanded
 to not enter your congregation.

11 All her people sigh; they seek bread;
 they gave their desires for food to relieve the soul:
 see, O Yah Veh, and look;
 for I am a glutton.

12 Is it naught to you, all you who pass by the way?

LAMENTATIONS 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

behold look,

and see if there be any sorrow like unto my sorrow,
which *is done* **be exploited** unto me,
wherewith *the LORD Yah Veh* hath afflicted me
in the day of his *fierce anger* **fuming wrath**.

- 13 From above **the heights**
hath he sent fire into my bones,
and it *prevaileth against* **subjugateth** them:
he hath spread a net for my feet,
he hath turned me back:
he hath *made* **given** me
desolate **desolation** and *faint* **bleeding** all the day.
- 14 The yoke of my *transgressions* **rebellions**
is bound by his hand:
they are *wreathed* **entwined**,
and *come up* **ascend** upon my neck:
he hath made my *strength* **force** to *fall* **falter**,
the Lord Adonay
hath *delivered* **given** me into their hands,
from whom — I am not able to rise up.
- 15 *The Lord Adonay*
hath *trodden under foot* **trampled** all my mighty men
in the midst of me:
he hath called *an assembly* **a congregation** against me
to *crush* **break** my young men:
the Lord Adonay hath trodden the virgin,
the daughter of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
as in a winepress **of virgins**.
- 16 For these *things* I weep;
mine eye, mine eye *runneth down* **cascadeth** with water,
because the *comforter* **sigher**
that should *relieve* **restore** my soul is far from me:
my *children* **sons** are desolate,
because the enemy prevailed **mightily**.
- 17 *Zion* **Siyon** spreadeth forth her hands,
and there is none to *comfort* **sigh over** her:
the LORD Yah Veh hath commanded
concerning *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
that his *adversaries* **tribulators**
should be round about him:
Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**
is as a *menstruous woman* **excluded among them**.
- 18 *The LORD Yah Veh* is *righteous* **just**;
for I have rebelled against his *commandment* **mouth**:
hear, I pray you, all people, and *behold* **see** my sorrow:
my virgins and my young men are gone into captivity.
- 19 I called for my *lovers* **beloveds**,
but they deceived me:
my priests and mine elders
gave up the ghost **expired** in the city,
while they sought *their meat* **food** to *relieve* **restore** their souls.
- 20 *Behold* **See**, O *LORD Yah Veh*;
for I am *in distress* **tribulated**:
my *bowels are troubled* **inwards foam**;
mine heart is turned within me;
in rebelling, for I have *grievously* rebelled:
abroad **outwardly** the sword bereaveth,
at home there is as death.
- 21 They have heard that I sigh:
there is none to *comfort* **sigh over** me:
all mine enemies have heard of my *trouble* **evil**;
they are *glad* **rejoice** that thou hast *done* **worked** it:
thou *wilt* **shalt** bring the day that thou hast called,
and **so** they shall be like unto me.
- 22 Let all their *wickedness* **evil**
come *before thee* **at thy face**;
and *do* **exploit** unto them,
as thou hast *done* **exploited** unto me
for all my *transgressions* **rebellions**:
for my sighs are many, and my heart *is faint* **bleedeth**.

THE SECOND LAMENTATION

- 2 How hath *the Lord Adonay*
covered **overclouded** the daughter of *Zion* **Siyon** with a cloud
in his *anger* **wrath**,
and cast down from *heaven* **the heavens** unto the earth
the beauty of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and remembered not *his footstool* **the stool of his feet**
in the day of his *anger* **wrath**!

LAMENTATIONS 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Look and see if there be any sorrow
like to the sorrow exploited to me
— wherewith Yah Veh afflicted me
in the day of his fuming wrath.

- 13 From above the heights
he sends fire into my bones to subjugate;
he spreads a net for my feet;
he turns me back;
he gives me desolation and bleeding all the day:
the yoke of my rebellions is bound by his hand
— entwined and ascend on my neck;
he falters my force;
Adonay gives me into their hands;
I am not able to rise.
- 14 Adonay tramples all my mighty in my midst;
he calls a congregation against me
to break my young men;
as in a winepress
Adonay treads the virgin daughter of Yah Hudah.
- 15 I weep for these;
my eye — my eye cascades with water,
because the sigher to restore my soul
is far from me;
my sons desolate, for the enemy prevails mightily.
- 16 Siyon spreads her hands
and there is no one to sigh over her;
Yah Veh commands concerning Yaaqov,
that his tribulators surround him;
Yeru Shalem is excluded among them.
- 17 Yah Veh is just;
for I rebelled against his mouth;
hear, I pray you, all people and see my sorrow;
my virgins and my young men
— gone into captivity.
- 18 I call for my beloveds;
they — they deceive me;
my priests and my elders expire in the city
while they seek food to restore their souls.
- 20 See, O Yah Veh, for I tribute;
my inwards foam; my heart turns within me;
in rebelling, I rebelled:
outwardly the sword bereaves;
as death in the house:
they hear that I sigh; no one sighs over me:
all my enemies hear of my evil;
they rejoice that you worked it;
you brought in the day that you called;
they are like me.

- 21 All their evil comes at your face;
exploit them as you exploit me for all my rebellions;
for my sighs are many and my heart bleeds.

THE SECOND LAMENTATION

- 2 How Adonay
overclouds the daughter of Siyon in his wrath;
— casts the beauty of Yisra El
from the heavens to the earth;
and remembers not the stool of his feet
in the day of his wrath!

LAMENTATIONS 2

exeGes *ready research BIBLE*

2 *The Lord Adonay* hath swallowed up
all the *habitations* **folds** of *Jacob Yaaqov*,
and hath not *pitied* **spared**:
he hath *thrown down* **demolished** in his *wrath* **fury**
the *strong holds* **fortresses**
of the daughter of *Judah Yah Hudah*;
he hath *brought* **touched** them down to the *ground* **earth**:
he hath *polluted* **profaned** the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
and the *princes* **governors** thereof.

3 He hath cut off in his *fierce anger* **fuming wrath**
all the horn of *Israel Yisra El*:
he hath *drawn* **turned** back his right *hand*
from *before* **the face** of the enemy,
and he burned against *Jacob Yaaqov* like a flaming fire,
which *devoureth* **consumeth** round about.

4 He hath bent his bow like an enemy:
he *stood* **stationed** with his right *hand*
as an *adversary* **tribulator**,
and *slew* **slaughtered** all
that were *pleasant* **a desire** to the eye
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of the daughter of *Zion Siyon*:
he poured out his fury like fire.

5 *The Lord Adonay* was as an enemy:
he hath swallowed up *Israel Yisra El*,
he hath swallowed up all her *palaces* **citadels**:
he hath *destroyed* **ruined** his *strong holds* **fortresses**,
and hath *increased* **abounded**
in the daughter of *Judah Yah Hudah*
mourning and *lamentation* **sighing**.

6 And he hath *violently taken away* **violated**
his *tabernacle* **sukkoth/brush arbor**
as if it were of a garden:
he hath *destroyed* **ruined**
his *places of the assembly* **seasons**:
the *LORD Yah Veh* hath caused
the *solemn feasts* **seasons** and *sabbaths* **shabbaths**
to be forgotten in *Zion Siyon*,
and hath *despised* **scorned**
in the *indignation* **rage** of his *anger* **wrath**
the *king* **sovereign** and the priest.

7 *The Lord Adonay* hath cast off his *sacrifice* altar,
he hath *abhorred* **rejected** his *sanctuary* **holies**,
he hath *given* **shut** up into the hand of the enemy
the walls of her *palaces* **citadels**;
they have *made a noise* **given voice**
in the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
as in the day of a *solemn feast* **season**.

8 *The LORD Yah Veh* hath *purposed* **machinated**
to *destroy* **ruin** the wall of the daughter of *Zion Siyon*:
he hath *stretched out* **spread** a line,
he hath not *withdrawn* **turned back** his hand
from *destroying* **swallowing**:
therefore he made the *rampart* **trench** and the wall to lament;
they languished together.

9 Her *gates* **portals** are sunk into the *ground* **earth**;
he hath destroyed and broken her bars:
her *king* **sovereign** and her *princes* **governors**
are among the *Gentiles* **goyim**:
the *law* **torah** is *no more* **not**;
her prophets also
find no vision from the *LORD Yah Veh*.

10 The elders of the daughter of *Zion Siyon*
sit **settle** upon the *ground* **earth**, and *keep silence* **hush**:
they have *cast up* **ascended** dust upon their heads;
they have girded themselves with *sackcloth* **saq**:
the virgins of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
hang down **lower** their heads to the *ground* **earth**.

11 Mine eyes *do fail* **are finished off** with tears,
my *bowels* are *troubled* **inwards foam**,
my liver is poured upon the earth,
for the *destruction* **breech** of the daughter of my people;
because the *children* **infants** and the sucklings
swoon **languish** in the *streets* **broadways** of the city.

12 They say to their mothers,
Where is *corn* **crop** and wine?
when they *swooned* **languished** as the *wounded* **pierced**
in the *streets* **broadways** of the city,
when their soul was poured out
into their mothers' bosom.

LAMENTATIONS 2

exeGes *companion BIBLE*

2 Adonay swallows all the folds of Yaaqov
and spares not;
in his fury he demolishes the fortresses
of the daughter of Yah Hudah;
he touches them to the earth;
he profanes the sovereignty and the governors;
in his fuming wrath

3 he cuts off all the horn of Yisra El;
he turns back his right from the face of the enemy;
and he burns against Yaaqov as a flaming fire
— consuming all around:

4 he bends his bow as an enemy;
he stations with his right as a tribulator
and slaughters all who are a desire to the eye
in the tent of the daughter of Siyon;
he pours out his fury as fire.

5 Adonay, as an enemy, swallows Yisra El,
he swallows all her citadels;
he ruins his fortresses;
and abounds mourning and sighing
in the daughter of Yah Hudah:

6 he violates his sukkoth/brush arbor as a garden;
he ruins his seasons;
Yah Veh has the seasons and shabbaths
to be forgotten in Siyon;
and in the rage of his wrath
scorns the sovereign and the priest:
Adonay casts off his sacrifice altar;

7 he rejects his holies;
he shuts the walls of her citadels
to the hand of the enemy;
they give voice in the house of Yah Veh
as in the day of seasons.

8 Yah Veh machinates
to ruin the wall of the daughter of Siyon:
he spreads a line;
he turns not back his hand from swallowing;
and he has the trench and the wall lament;
they languish together:

9 her portals sink into the earth;
he destroys and breaks her bars;
her sovereign and her governors
are among the goyim;
the torah is not;
her prophets also find no vision from Yah Veh:
the elders of the daughter of Siyon
settle on the earth and hush;
they ascend dust on their heads;
they girt themselves with saq;
the virgins of Yeru Shalem
lower their heads to the earth.

10 My eyes finish off with tears; my inwards foam;
my liver pours on the earth
for the breech of the daughter of my people;
because the infants and the sucklings
languish in the broadways of the city.

11 They say to their mothers,
Where are crop and wine?
— as they languish as the pierced
in the broadways of the city;
as their soul pours into the bosom of their mothers.

LAMENTATIONS 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

13 What *thing* shall I take to witness for thee?
what *thing* shall I liken to thee,
O daughter of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*?
what shall I *equal equate* to thee,
that I may *comfort sigh over* thee,
O virgin daughter of *Zion Siyon*?
for thy breach is great like the sea:
who *can shall* heal thee?

14 Thy prophets have seen *vain thy vanity*
and *foolish things for thee thy slime*:
and they have not
discovered thine iniquity exposed thy perversity,
to turn away thy captivity;
but have seen for thee *false vain* burdens
and *causes of banishment seductions*.

15 All that pass by *the way*
clap their *hands palms* at thee;
they hiss and wag their head
at the daughter of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
saying, Is this the city that *men call is said*
The perfection of Total beauty,
The joy of the whole earth?

16 All thine enemies
have *opened gasped* their mouth against thee:
they hiss and gnash the teeth:
they say, We have swallowed her up:
certainly surely this is the day that we *looked for awaited*;
we have found, we have seen it.

17 *The LORD Yah Veh*
hath *done worked* that which he had *devised intrigued*;
he hath *fulfilled cut* his *word saying*
that he had commanded in the days of *old antiquity*:
he hath *thrown down demolished*,
and hath not *pitied spared*:
and he hath caused thine enemy
to *rejoice cheer* over thee,
he hath *set lifted up* the horn
of *thine adversaries thy tribulators*.

18 Their heart cried unto *the Lord Adonay*,
O wall of the daughter of *Zion Siyon*,
let tears *run down cascade* like a *river wadi* day and night:
give thyself no *rest breather*;
let not the *apple daughter* of thine eye *cease be stilled*.

19 Arise, cry out in the night:
in the *beginning head* of the watches
pour out thine heart like water
before the face of *the Lord Adonay*:
lift up thy *hands palms* toward him
for the *life soul* of thy *young children infants*,
that *faint languish* for *hunger famine*
in the top of *every street all the outways*.

20 Behold *See*, O *LORD Yah Veh*, and *consider look*
to whom thou hast *done this exploited thus*.
Shall the women eat their fruit,
and *children — infants* of a *palm span long*?
shall the priest and the prophet be *slain slaughtered*
in the *sanctuary holies* of the *Lord Adonay*?

21 The *young lad* and the *old aged*
lie on the *ground earth* in the *streets outways*:
my virgins and my young men are fallen by the sword;
thou hast *slain slaughtered* them
in the day of *thine anger thy wrath*;
thou hast *killed slaughtered*, and not *pitied spared*.

22 Thou hast called as in a *solemn day of season*
my terrors round about,
so that in the day of *the LORD'S anger Yah Veh's wrath*
none escaped there be no escapee nor remained survivor:
those that I have
swaddled palm spanned and *brought up abounded*
hath mine enemy consumed.

THE THIRD LAMENTATION

3 I am the *man mighty*
that hath seen *affliction humiliation*
by the *rod scion* of his *wrath fury*.
2 He hath *led driven* me,
and *brought walked* me into darkness,
but not into without light.

LAMENTATIONS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

13 What take I to witness for you?
What liken I to you, O daughter of *Yeru Shalem*?
What equate I to you, so that I sigh over you,
O virgin daughter of *Siyon*?
For your breach *is* great as the sea;
who heals you?

14 Your prophets see your vanity and your slime;
and they expose not your perversity
to turn your captivity;
but see for you vain burdens and seductions.

15 All who pass by the way
clap their palms at you;
they hiss and wag their head
at the daughter of *Yeru Shalem*,
Is this the city of whom is said, Total beauty?
— the joy of the whole earth?

16 All your enemies gasp their mouth against you;
they hiss and gnash the teeth;
they say, We swallowed her!
Surely this is the day we awaited!
We found! We saw!

17 Yah Veh works what he intrigued;
he cut the saying
he commanded in the days of antiquity;
he demolished and spared not;
and he has your enemy to cheer over you:
he lifts the horn of your tribulators.

18 Their heart cries to *Adonay*,
O wall of the daughter of *Siyon*,
they cascade tears as a wadi day and night;
give yourself no breather;
may the daughter of your eye not be stilled.

19 Rise! Cry out in the night,
in the head of the watches;
pour your heart as water at the face of *Adonay*;
lift your palms toward him
for the soul of your infants who languish for famine
in the top of all the outways.

20 See, O Yah Veh,
and look to whom you thus exploit.
Are the women to eat their fruit
— infants of a palm span?
— priest and the prophet slaughtered
in the holies of *Adonay*?

21 The lad and the aged
lie on the earth in the outways;
my virgins and my young men fall by the sword;
you slaughter them in the day of your wrath
— slaughter and spare not.

22 You call as in a day of season
my terrors all around,
so that in the day of the wrath of Yah Veh
there *is* neither escapee nor survivor;
they whom I palm spanned and abounded
my enemy consumed.

THE THIRD LAMENTATION

3 I, the mighty,
saw humiliation by the scion of his fury:
2 he drove me and walked me
into darkness without light:

LAMENTATIONS 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 Surely against me is he turned;
he turneth his hand *against me* all the day.
4 My flesh and my skin hath he *made old worn out*;
he hath broken my bones.
5 He hath builded against me,
and *compassed surrounded* me with *gall rosh* and travail.
6 He hath set me in dark places,
as *they that be the* dead of old.
7 He hath *hedged walled* me *about in*,
that I cannot get out:
he hath *made weighted* my *chain heavy copper*.
8 Also when I cry and shout, he shutteth out my prayer.
9 He hath *inclosed walled in* my ways with hewn stone,
he hath *made bent* my paths *crooked*.
10 He was unto me as a bear *lying in wait lurking*,
and as a lion in *secret places coverts*.
11 He hath turned aside my ways,
and *pulled me in pieces torn me*:
he hath *made set* me desolate.
12 He hath bent his bow,
and set *stationed* me as a *mark target* for the arrow.
13 He hath caused the *arrows sons* of his quiver
to enter into my reins.
14 I was a *derision ridicule* to all my people;
and their *song strumming* all the day.
15 He hath *filled satiated* me with *bitterness bitteresses*,
he hath *made me drunken satiated me* with wormwood.
16 He hath also *broken crushed* my teeth
with gravel *stones*,
he hath covered me with ashes.
17 And thou hast removed my soul
far off from *peace shalom*:
I forgot *prosperity good*.
18 And I said,
My *strength perpetuity* and my hope is perished
from the *LORD Yah Veh*:
19 Remembering mine *affliction humiliation*
and my *misery persecution*,
the wormwood and the *gall rosh*.
20 In remembering,
My soul *hath them still in remembrance remembereth*,
and is *humbled sinketh* in me.
21 This I *recall return* to my *mind heart*,
therefore *have I hope I await*.
22 It is of the *LORD'S Yah Veh's* mercies
that we are not consumed,
because his *compassions tender mercies*
fail not never finish.
23 *They are new every morning New by mornings*:
great is thy *faithfulness trustworthiness*.
24 The *LORD Yah Veh* is my *portion allotment*,
saith my soul;
therefore *will I hope in shall I await* him.
25 The *LORD Yah Veh* is good
unto them that *wait for await* him,
to the soul that seeketh him.
26 It is good that a man *should both hope to await*
and *quietly wait for — to silently await* the salvation
of the *LORD Yah Veh*.
27 It is good for a man *mighty*
that he bear the yoke of his youth.
28 He *sitteth settleth* alone and *keepeth silence husheth*,
because he hath borne it upon him.
29 He *putteth giveth* his mouth in the dust;
if so be there may be hope.
30 He giveth his cheek to him that smiteth him:
he is *filled full satiated* with reproach.
31 For the *Lord Adonay*
will shall not cast off *for ever eternally*:
32 But though he *cause grief grieve thee*,
yet *will shall* he *have compassion mercy*
according to the *multitude abundance* of his mercies.
33 For he *doth not afflict neither humbleth*
willingly from his heart
nor *grieve grieveth* the *children sons* of men.
34 To crush under his feet
all the *prisoners bound* of the earth.
35 To *turn aside pervert* the *right judgment* of a man *mighty*
before in front of the face of the *most High Elyon*,

LAMENTATIONS 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 surely he turns against me
— turns his hand all the day:
4 he wears out my flesh and my skin;
he breaks my bones;
5 he builds against me
and surrounds me with rosh and travail;
6 he sets me in dark places as the dead of old;
7 he walls me in so I cannot get out;
he weights my copper:
8 also when I cry and shout,
he shuts out my prayer;
9 he walls in my ways with hewn;
he bends my paths:
10 he *is* to me as a bear lurking
— a lion in coverts:
11 he turns aside my ways and tears me;
he sets me desolate;
12 he bends his bow
and stations me as a target for the arrow;
he has the sons of his quiver enter my reins.
14 I am a ridicule to all my people;
and their strumming all the day:
he satiates me with bitteresses;
he satiates me with wormwood:
16 and he crushes my teeth with gravel;
he covers me with ashes.
17 And you remove my soul far from shalom;
I forget the good.
18 And I say,
My perpetuity and my hope from Yah Veh
destructs;
19 remember my humiliation and my persecution
— the wormwood and the rosh.
20 In remembering, my soul remembers
and sinks within me.
21 I turn this to my heart; so I await.
22 The mercies of Yah Veh!
We are not consumed,
because his tender mercies never finish:
23 new by mornings;
how great your trustworthiness.
24 Yah Veh *is* my allotment, says my soul;
so I await him.
25 Yah Veh *is* good to them who await him
— to the soul who seeks him:
26 — good to await
— to silently await the salvation of Yah Veh.
27 — good for the mighty
to bear the yoke of his youth.
28 He settles alone and hushes
because he bears it on himself:
29 he gives his mouth in the dust;
if so be there is hope:
30 he gives his cheek to his smiter;
he satiates with reproach.
31 For Adonay casts not off eternally;
32 for though he grieves you,
yet he mercies
according to the abundance of his mercies:
33 for he neither humbles from his heart
nor grieves the sons of men.
34 To crush all the bound of the earth under his feet,
35 to pervert the judgment of the mighty
in front of the face of Elyon,

LAMENTATIONS 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

36 To *subvert* **twist** a man in his *cause* **defence**,
the *Lord* **approveth** **Adonay** **seeth** not.
37 Who is he that saith, and it *cometh to pass* **becometh**,
when the *Lord* **Adonay** *commandeth* it not?
38 Out of the mouth of the *most High* **Elyon**
proceedeth not evil and good?
39 Wherefore doth a living *man* **human** complain,
a *man* **mighty** for the *punishment* of his sins?
40 Let us search and *try* **probe** our ways,
and *turn again* **return** to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
41 Let us lift up our heart with *our hands* **palms**
unto *God* **El** in the heavens.
42 We have transgressed and have rebelled:
thou hast not *pardoned* **forgiven**.
43 Thou hast covered with *anger* **wrath**,
and *persecuted* **pursued** us:
thou hast slain, thou hast not *pitied* **spared**.
44 Thou hast covered thyself with a cloud,
that our prayer should not pass through.
45 Thou hast *made set* us as the offscouring and refuse
in the midst of the people.
46 All our enemies
have *opened* **gaped** their mouths against us.
47 *Fear* **Dread** and a *snare* **pit** is come upon us,
desolation and *destruction* **breach**.
48 Mine eye *runneth down* **cascadeth**
with *rivers* **rivulets** of water
for the *destruction* **breach** of the daughter of my people.
49 Mine eye *tricketh down* **floweth**, and ceaseth not,
without any *intermission* **relaxation**.
50 Till the *LORD* **Yah Veh** look down,
and *behold* **see** from *heaven* **the heavens**.
51 Mine eye *affecteth mine heart* **exploiteth my soul**
because of all the daughters of my city.
52 **In hunting**, Mine enemies *chased* **hunted** me *sore*,
like a bird, *without cause* **gratuitously**.
53 They have *cut off* **exterminated** my life
in the *dungeon* **well**,
and *cast* **hand tossed** a stone upon me.
54 Waters *flowed over* **overflowed** mine head;
then I said, I am cut off.
55 I called upon thy name, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
out of the *low dungeon* **nether well**.
56 Thou hast heard my voice:
hide **conceal** not thine ear
at my *breathing* **respiration**, at my cry.
57 Thou drewest near in the day that I called upon thee:
thou saidst, *Fear* **Awe** not.
58 O *Lord* **Adonay**,
thou hast *pleaded* **defended**
the *causes* **defences** of my soul;
thou hast redeemed my life.
59 O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
thou hast seen my *wrong* **writhing**:
judge thou my *cause* **judgment**.
60 Thou hast seen all their vengeance
and all their *imaginings* **machinations** against me.
61 Thou hast heard their reproach, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and all their *imaginings* **machinations** against me;
62 The lips of those that rose *up* against me,
and their *device* **meditation** against me all the day.
63 *Behold* **Look at** their sitting *down*, and their rising *up*;
I am their *musick* **satire**.
64 *Render* **Return** unto them
a *recompence* **their dealings**,
O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, according to the work of their hands.
65 Give them *sorrow* **covering** of heart,
thy curse unto them.
66 Persecute and *destroy* **desolate** them in *anger* **wrath**
from under the heavens of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

THE FOURTH LAMENTATION

4 How is the gold *become* **dim faded**!
how is the most fine gold — **the good ore** changed!
the stones of the *sanctuary* **holies**
are poured out in the top of every *street* **all the outways**.
2 The *precious* **esteemed** sons of *Zion* **Siyon**,
comparable **balanced** to *fine* **pure** gold,

LAMENTATIONS 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

36 to twist a man in his defence,
Adonay sees not.
37 Who *is* this — who says, and it becomes
and Adonay commands not?
38 From the mouth of Elyon
proceeds not evil and good?
39 Why sighs any living human
— the mighty for his sins?
40 We search our ways and probe
and return to Yah Veh;
41 we lift our heart with palms
to El in the heavens;
42 we — we transgress and rebel:
you — you forgive not;
43 you cover with wrath and pursue us;
you slaughter; you spare not:
44 you cover with a cloud
so our prayer passes not through:
45 you set us the offscouring and refuse
midst the people:
46 all our enemies gasp their mouths against us;
47 dread and a pit comes on us
— desolation and breach.
48 My eye cascades with rivulets of water
for the breach of the daughter of my people:
49 my eye flows and ceases not
— without any relaxation.
50 Until Yah Veh looks down
and sees from the heavens,
51 my eye exploits my soul
because of all the daughters of my city.
52 In hunting, my enemies hunt me as a bird
— gratuitously;
53 they exterminate my life in the well
and hand toss a stone on me:
54 waters overflow my head;
I say, I am cut off.
55 I call on your name, O Yah Veh,
from the nether well.
56 You hear my voice;
57 conceal not your ear at my respiration; at my cry:
you drew near in the day I called on you;
you said, Awe not.
58 O Adonay,
you defended the defences of my soul;
you redeemed my life:
59 O Yah Veh, you saw my writhing;
judge my judgment.
60 You see all their vengeance
and all their machinations against me.
61 You hear their reproach, O Yah Veh,
and all their machinations against me;
62 the lips of those who rise against me
and their meditation against me all the day.
63 Look at their sitting and their rising;
I am their satire.
64 Return their dealings to them,
O Yah Veh, according to the work of their hands:
65 give them a covered heart
— your curse to them:
66 persecute and desolate them in wrath
from under the heavens of Yah Veh.

THE FOURTH LAMENTATION

4 How the gold fades
— the good ore changes;
— the stones of the holies
poured out in the top of all the outways!
2 The esteemed sons of Siyon,
balanced to pure gold,

LAMENTATIONS 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

how are they *esteemed* **reckoned**
as *earthen pitchers* **pottery bottles**,
the work of the hands of the *potter* **former!**
3 Even the *sea monsters* **draw out strip** the breast,
they *give suck to* **suckle** their *young ones* **whelps**:
the daughter of my people is *become* cruel,
like the ostriches in the wilderness.
4 The tongue of the *sucking child* **suckling**
cleaveth to the roof of his mouth **adhereth to his palate**
for thirst:
the *young children* **infants** ask bread,
and no *man* **breaketh one spreadeth** it unto them.
5 They that did *feed* **eat** delicately
are *desolate* **desolated** in the *streets* **outways**:
they that were *brought up in* **entrusted with** scarlet
embrace dunghills.
6 For the *punishment of the iniquity* **perversity**
of the daughter of my people
is *greater than the punishment of* **greatened above**
the sin of Sodom,
that was *overthrown* **overturned** as in a *moment* **blink**,
and no hands *stayed on* **writhed over** her.
7 Her *Nazarites* **Separatists**
were *purer than* **purified as** snow,
they were **dazzling** whiter than milk,
they were more ruddy in body **their bones more reddened**
than *rubies* **pearls**,
their *polishing* **separatism** was of sapphire:
8 Their *visage form* is **blacker darker** than a *coal* **darkness**;
they are not *known* **recognized** in the *streets* **outways**:
their skin *cleaveth* **adhereth** to their bones;
it is withered, it is become like a *stick* **wood**.
9 They that be *slain* **pierced** with the sword
are better than they
that be *slain* **pierced** with *hunger* **famine**:
for these *pine* **flow** away,
stricken through **stabbed**
for want of the *fruits* **the produce** of the field.
10 The hands of the *pitiful* **mercied** women
have *sodden* **stewed** their own children:
they were their *meat* **chewing**
in the *destruction* **breach** of the daughter of my people.
11 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath accomplished his fury;
he hath poured out his fierce *anger* **wrath**,
and hath kindled a fire in *Zion* **Siyon**,
and it hath *devoured* **consumed** the foundations *thereof*.
12 The *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth,
and all the *inhabitants of* **that settled** the world,
would should not have *believed* **trusted**
that the *adversary* **tribulator** and the enemy
should have entered
into the *gates* **portals** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
13 For the sins of her prophets,
and the *iniquities* **perversities** of her priests,
that have *shed* **poured** the blood of the just
in the midst of her,
14 They have wandered
as blind *men* in the *streets* **outways**,
they have polluted themselves with blood,
so that *men could not* **they are not able**
to touch their *garments* **robes**.
15 They *cried* **called** unto them,
Depart ye; Turn aside! it is unclean; Foul!
depart, depart **Turn aside! Turn aside!**
touch not: Touch not!
when they fled away and wandered,
they said among the *heathen* **goyim**,
They shall *no more* **not add to** sojourn there.
16 The anger of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *divided* **allotted** them;
he *will no more regard* **shall never again scan** them:
they *respected* **bore** not the persons of the priests,
they *favoured* **granted** not **charism to** the elders.
17 As for us,
our eyes as yet *failed* **are finished off** for our vain help:
in our watching we have watched for a *nation* **goyim**
that could not save *us*.
18 They hunt our *steps* **paces**,
that we cannot go in our *streets* **broadways**:

LAMENTATIONS 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

how they are reckoned as pottery bottles,
the work of the hands of the former!
3 Even the monsters strip the breast;
they suckle their whelps:
the daughter of my people is cruel,
as ostriches in the wilderness.
4 The tongue of the suckling
adheres to his palate for thirst;
the infants ask bread
and no one spreads to them;
5 they who ate delicately
desolate in the outways;
those entrusted with scarlet
embrace dunghills.
6 And the perversity of the daughter of my people
greatens above the sin of Sodom
— overturned as in a blink
and no hands writhed over her.
7 Her Separatists were purified as snow
— dazzling whiter than milk;
their bones more reddened than pearls;
their separatism of sapphire:
8 their form becomes darker than darkness
— not recognized in the outways;
their skin adheres to their bones
— withers; becomes as wood.
9 Those pierced with the sword
are better than those pierced with famine;
for they flow away stabbed
because of the produce of the field.
10 The hands of the mercied women
stew their own children;
they chew them
in the breach of the daughter of my people.
11 Yah Veh accomplishes his fury
— pours out his fierce wrath
and kindled a fire in Siyon;
and it consumes the foundations.
12 The sovereigns of the earth
and all who settle the world,
had never trusted
for the tribulator and the enemy
to enter into the portals of Yeru Shalem.
13 Because of the sins of her prophets
and the perversities of her priests,
who pour the blood of the just in her midst,
14 they wander as blind in the outways:
they pollute themselves with blood,
— not able to touch their robes.
15 They call to them, Turn aside! Foul!
Turn aside! Turn aside! Touch not!
As they flee and wander,
they say among the goyim,
Add not to sojourn there.
16 The anger of Yah Veh allots them;
never again to scan them;
they neither lifted the face of the priests,
nor granted charism to the elders.
17 As for us,
our eyes as yet are finished off for our vain help:
in our watching,
we watched for a goyim that saves not:
18 they hunt our paces,
from going in our broadways;

LAMENTATIONS 4, 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

our end is near, our days are fulfilled;
for our end is come.

19 Our persecutors **pursuers**
are swifter than the eagles of the *heaven* **heavens**:
they *hotly* pursued us upon the mountains,
they *laid wait* **lurked** for us in the wilderness.

20 The *breath* **spirit/wind** of our nostrils,
the anointed of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
was *taken* **captured** in their pits,
of whom we said,
Under his shadow
we shall live among the *heathen* **goyim**.

21 Rejoice and *be glad* **cheer**, O daughter of Edom,
that *dweldest* **settlest** in the land of *Uz* **Us**;
the cup also shall pass through unto thee:
thou shalt *be drunken* **intoxicate**,
and shalt *make* **strip** thyself naked.

22 The *punishment of thine iniquity* **Thy perversity**
is *accomplished* **consummated**, O daughter of *Zion* **Siyon**;
he *will* **shall** no more *carry* **exile** thee *away into captivity*:
he *will* **shall** visit *thine iniquity* **thy perversity**,
O daughter of Edom;
he *will* **discover** **shall expose** thy sins.

THE FIFTH LAMENTATION

5 Remember, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
what is come upon us:
consider **look**, and *behold* **see** our reproach.

2 Our inheritance is turned to strangers,
our houses to *aliens* **strangers**.

3 We are orphans and fatherless,
our mothers are as widows.

4 We have drunken our water for money;
our *wood* **timber** is *sold* **priced** unto us.

5 Our *necks are under persecution* **They pursue our necks**:
we labour, and *have no rest* **not**.

6 We have given the hand to the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
and to the *Assyrians* **to Ashshuriym**,
to be satisfied with bread.

7 Our fathers have sinned, and are not;
and we have borne their *iniquities* **perversities**.

8 Servants have *ruled* **reigned** over us:
there is none that *doth deliver* **separateth** us
out of their hand.

9 We gat our bread *with the peril of our lives* **by our souls**
because of the sword of the wilderness.

10 Our skin was *black* **shriveled** like an oven
because of the *terrible* **raging** famine.

11 They *ravished* **humbled** the women
in *Zion* **Siyon**,
and the *maids* **virgins**
in the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.

12 *Princes* **Governors** are hanged up by their hand:
the faces of elders were not *honoured* **esteemed**.

13 They *took* **lifted** the young men to grind,
and the *children* **lads**
fell **stumbled** under the *wood* **timber**.

14 The elders
have *ceased* **shabbathized** from the *gate* **portal**,
the young men from their *musick* **strumming**.

15 The joy of our heart *is ceased* **shabbathized**;
our **round** dance is turned into mourning.

16 The crown is fallen from our head:
woe unto us, that we have sinned!

17 For this our heart *is faint* **bleedeth**;
for these *things* our eyes are *dim* **darken**.

18 Because of the mountain of *Zion* **Siyon**,
which is desolate, the foxes walk upon it.

19 Thou, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
remainest for ever **settlest eternally**;
thy throne from generation to generation.

20 Wherefore dost thou forget us *for ever* **in perpetuity**,
and forsake us *so long* **for length of days** of time?

21 *Turn thou* **Return** us unto thee, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and we shall *be turned* **return**;
renew our days as of *old* **antiquity**.

22 But *in spurning*,
thou hast *utterly rejected* **spurned** us;
thou art *very wroth* **mighty enraged** against us.

LAMENTATIONS 4, 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

our end is near; our days fulfilled;
our end is come.

19 Our pursuers
are swifter than the eagles of the heavens:
they pursue us on the mountains;
they lurk for us in the wilderness:
the spirit/wind of our nostrils,
the anointed of Yah Veh, is captured in their pits
— of whom we say,
Under his shadow we live among the goyim.

21 Rejoice and cheer, O daughter of Edom,
who settles in the land of Us;
the cup also passes through to you;
intoxicate and strip yourself naked:
your perversity *is* consummated,
O daughter of Siyon;
he exiles you no more:
he visits your perversity, O daughter of Edom:
he exposes your sins.

THE FIFTH LAMENTATION

5 Remember, O Yah Veh, what becomes us;
look and see our reproach:
our inheritance is turned to strangers;
our houses to strangers:
we are orphans and fatherless;
our mothers as widows:
we drank our water for money;
our timber comes at a price;
they pursue our necks;
we labor and rest not:
we gave a hand to the Misrayim — to Ashshuriym,
to satisfy with bread;
our fathers sinned and are not;
and we bear their perversities:
servants reign over us;
no one separates us from their hand:
we get our bread by our souls
because of the sword of the wilderness:
our skin shrivels as an oven
because of the raging famine.

11 They humble the women in Siyon
and the virgins in the cities of Yah Hudah;
governors are hanged by their hand;
the faces of elders are not esteemed:
they lift the young men to grind
and the lads stumble under the timber:
the elders shabbathize from the portal
— the young men from their strumming:
the joy of our heart shabbathizes;
our round dance turns into mourning;
the crown is fallen from our head;
woe to us, for we sinned!
For this our heart bleeds;
for these our eyes darken.

18 For the mountain of Siyon is desolate;
the foxes walk on it.

19 You, O Yah Veh, settle eternally;
your throne from generation to generation.
Why forget us in perpetuity?
— forsake us for length of days of time?
Return us to you, O Yah Veh
and we return;
renew our days as of antiquity.
For in spurning, you spurn us;
you enrage mightily against us.

ISAIAH 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE VISION OF YESHA YAH

1 The vision of *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah** the son of *Amoz* **Amos**,
which he saw concerning
Judah **Yah Hudah** and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
in the days of *Uzziah* **Uzzi Yah**, *Jotham* **Yah Tham**,
Ahaz **Ach Az**, and *Hezekiah* **Yechizq Yah**,
kings **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.

2 Hear, O heavens, and *give ear* **hearken**, O earth:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded**,
I have nourished and *brought up* **children** **raised sons**,
and they have rebelled against me.

3 The ox knoweth his *owner* **chatteler**,
and the *ass* **burro** his master's *crib* **manger**:
but *Israel* **Yisra El** doth not know,
my people doth not *consider* **discern**.

4 *Ah* **Ho** sinful *nation* **goyim**,
a people *laden* **heavy** with *iniquity* **perversity**,
a seed of *evildoers* **vilifiers**,
children **sons** that are *corrupters* **ruiners**:
they have forsaken *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
they have *provoked* **scorned**
the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El** *unto anger*,
they are *gone away* **estranged** backward.

5 Why should ye be *stricken* **smitten** any more?
ye *will* **shall** **increase** revolt *more and more*:
the whole head is sick,
and the whole heart *faint* **bleedeth**.

6 From the sole of the foot even unto the head
there is no *soundness* **integrity** in it;
but wounds, and *bruises* **lashes**,
and *putrifying sores* **dripping wounds**:
they have not been *closed* **squeezed**, neither bound up,
neither *mollified* **tenderized** with ointment.

7 Your *country* **land** is desolate,
your cities are burned with fire:
your *land* **soil**, strangers devour it in your presence,
and it is desolate, as overthrown by strangers.
And the daughter of *Zion* is left **Siyon remaineth**
as a *cottage* **sukkoth/brush arbor** in a vineyard,
as a *lodge* **hammock**
in a *garden of cucumbers* **cucumber field**,
as a *besieged* **guarded** city.

9 *Except the LORD* of *hosts* **Unless Yah Veh Sabaoth**
had left **let remain** unto us
a very *small remnant* **few survivors**,
we should have been as *Sodom* **Sedom**,
and we should have been like unto *Gomorrah* **Amorah**.

10 Hear the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
ye *rulers* **commanders** of *Sodom* **Sedom**;
give ear **hearken** unto the *law* **torah** of our *God* **Elohim**,
ye people of *Gomorrah* **Amorah**.

11 *To what purpose* **Wherefore**
is the *multitude* **abundance** of your sacrifices unto me?
saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
I am *full* **satiated**
of the *burnt—offerings* **holocausts** of rams,
and the fat of *fed beasts* **fatlings**;
and I delight not in the blood of bullocks,
or of lambs, or of he goats.

12 When ye come
to *appear before me* **be seen at my face**,
who hath *required* **besought** this at your hand,
to *tread* **trample** my courts?

13 *Bring* **Add** no more vain *oblations* **offerings**;
incense is an *abomination* **abhorrence** unto me;
the new moons and *sabbaths* **shabbaths**,
the calling of *assemblies* **convocations**,
I cannot *away with*;
it is *iniquity* **mischief**,
even the *solemn meeting* **private assembly**.

14 Your new moons and your *appointed feasts* **seasons**
my soul hateth:
they are a *trouble* **burden** unto me;
I am weary to bear them.

15 And when ye spread *forth* your *hands* **palms**,
I *will* **hide** **shall** **conceal** mine eyes from you:
yea, when ye *make many* **abound** prayers,
I *will* **shall** not hear:
your hands are *full of* **filled with** blood.

YESHA YAH 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE VISION OF YESHA YAH

1 The vision Yesha Yah the son of Amos saw
concerning Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem
in the days
of Uzzi Yah, Yah Tham, Ach Az, and Yechizq Yah
— sovereigns of Yah Hudah.

2 Hear, O heavens; and hearken, O earth:
for Yah Veh words,
I nourished and raised sons,
and they — they rebelled against me.

3 The ox knows his chatteler
and the burro the manger of his master:
Yisra El knows not;
my people discern not.

4 Ho sinful goyim;
a people heavy with perversity;
a seed of vilifiers; sons — ruiners:
they forsake Yah Veh;
they scorn the Holy One of Yisra El;
they estrange backward.

5 Why be smitten any more?
You increase revolt;
the whole head is sick;
and the whole heart bleeds:
from the sole of the foot to the head
there is no integrity therein:
— wounds and lashes and dripping wounds
— neither squeezed nor bound;
nor tenderized with ointment.

7 Your land, a desolation;
your cities, burned with fire:
your soil, strangers devour in your presence
— a desolation overthrown by strangers.

8 And the daughter of Siyon remains
as a sukkoth/brush arbor in a vineyard
— as a hammock in a cucumber field
— as a guarded city.

9 Unless Yah Veh Sabaoth
had a very few survivors remain,
we had become as Sedom; likened to Amorah.

10 Hear the word of Yah Veh
you commanders of Sedom;
hearken to the torah of our Elohim
you people of Amorah:

11 Why your abundant sacrifices to me?
says Yah Veh:
I am satiated by the holocausts of rams
and the fat of fatlings;
and I delight not in the blood of bullocks
or of lambs or of he goats.

12 When you come to be seen at my face,
who beseeches this at your hand
— to trample my courts?

13 Add no more vain offerings;
incense is an abhorrence to me;
the new moons and shabbaths,
the calling of convocations,
I cannot; it is mischief:
and the private assembly.

14 Your new moons and your seasons my soul hates:
they are a burden to me;
I weary to bear them.

15 And in spreading your palms,
I conceal my eyes from you:
yes, your abounding prayers I hear not:
your hands are filled with blood.

ISAIAH 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 Wash you **Baptize yourselves,**
make you clean **purify yourselves;**
put away **turn aside** the evil of your *doings* **exploitations**
from *before* **in front of** mine eyes;
cease to *do evil* **vilify;**
17 Learn to *do well* **well—please;**
seek judgment, *relieve* **blithe** the oppressed,
judge the *fatherless* **orphan**, plead for the widow.
18 Come *now* **I beseech**, and let us reason *together*,
saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh:**
though your sins be as scarlet,
they shall be as *white* **whiten** as snow;
though they be *red* **reddened** like crimson,
they shall be as wool.
19 If ye be *willing* **so** will and *obedient* **hearken**,
ye shall eat the good of the land:
20 But if ye refuse and rebel,
ye shall be devoured with the sword:
for the mouth of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *spoken it* **worded**.
21 How is the *faithful* **trustworthy** city
become an *harlot* **whore!**
it was full of judgment;
righteousness lodged **justness stayed overnight** in it;
but now murderers.
22 Thy silver is become dross,
thy *wine mixed* **potion diluted** with water:
23 Thy *princes are rebellious* **governors revolt**,
and — companions of thieves:
every one loveth *gifts* **bribes**,
and *followeth after rewards* **pursueth bribes:**
they judge not the *fatherless* **orphan**,
neither doth the *cause* **plea** of the widow
come unto them.
24 *Therefore saith the Lord, the LORD of hosts*
An oracle of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth,
the *mighty One Almighty* of *Israel* **Yisra El,**
Ah **Ho**, I will ease me **shall sigh**
of mine *adversaries* **over my tribulators**,
and avenge me of mine enemies:
25 And I *will* **shall** turn my hand upon thee,
and *purely purge* **in purity refine** away thy dross,
and *take away* **turn aside** all thy tin:
26 And I *will* **shall** restore thy judges as at the first,
and thy counsellors as at the beginning:
afterward thou shalt be called,
The city of *righteousness* **justness**,
the *faithful* **trustworthy** city.
27 *Zion* **Siyon** shall be redeemed with judgment,
and *her converts* **those of her that return**
with *righteousness* **justness**.
28 And the *destruction* **breaking**
of the *transgressors* **rebels**
and of the sinners shall be together,
and they that forsake the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall be *consumed* **finished off**.
29 For they shall be *ashamed* **shame**
of the *mighty* oaks which ye have desired,
and ye shall be *confounded* **blush**
for the gardens that ye have chosen.
30 For ye shall be as an oak whose leaf *fadeth* **withereth**,
and as a garden that hath no water.
31 And the *strong* **powerful** shall be as *tow* **tuft**,
and the *maker of it* **his deeds** as a spark,
and they shall both burn together,
and none shall quench *them*.

THE LAST DAYS

2 The word that *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah** the son of *Amoz* **Amos**
saw concerning
Judah **Yah Hudah** and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
2 And **so be** it shall come to pass in the last days,
that the mountain of the *LORD'S* house **of Yah Veh**
shall be established in the top of the mountains,
and shall be *exalted* **lifted** above the hills;
and all *nations* **goyim** shall flow unto it.
3 And many people shall go and say,
Come ye, and let us *go up* **ascend**
to the mountain of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to the house of the *God* **Elohim** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**;

YESHA YAH 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

16 Baptize yourself; purify yourself;
turn aside the evil of your exploitations
from in front of my eyes:
cease to vilify;
17 learn to well—please;
seek judgment; blithe the oppressed;
judge the orphan; plead for the widow.
18 Come, I beseech, and we reason,
says Yah Veh:
though your sins be as scarlet,
they whiten as snow;
though they be reddened like crimson,
they be as wool.
19 If you so will and hearken,
you eat the good of the land:
20 and if you refuse and rebel,
you are consumed with the sword:
for the mouth of Yah Veh words.
21 How the trustworthy city becomes a whore!
Filled with judgment!
Justness stayed overnight therein
— now murderers:
22 your silver becomes dross,
your potion dilutes with water:
23 your governors revolt — companions of thieves:
every one loves bribes and pursues bribes:
they neither judge the orphan,
nor comes the plea of the widow to them
24 — an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth
the Almighty of Yisra El.
Ho, I sigh over my tribulators
and avenge me of my enemies:
25 and I turn my hand upon you;
and in purity, refine away your dross,
and turn aside all your tin:
26 and I restore your judges as at the first
and your counsellors as at the beginning:
and afterward call you,
The City of Justness; The City Trustworthy.
27 *Siyon* is redeemed in judgment
and her returnees in justness:
28 and the breaking of the rebels
and of the sinners is together,
and they who forsake Yah Veh are finished off.
29 For they shame
because of the mighty oaks you desire,
and you blush
for the gardens you chose.
30 For you become as an oak whose leaf withers,
and as a garden without water:
31 and the powerful become as tuft
and his deeds as a spark;
and they both burn together,
and no one quenches.

THE LAST DAYS

2 The word Yesha Yah the son of Amos saw
concerning Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem:
and so be it, in the last days,
the mountain of the house of Yah Veh
is established in the top of the mountains,
and lifted above the hills;
and all goyim flow to it.
And many people go and say,
Come, and we ascend to the mountain of Yah Veh
— to the house of Elohim of Yaaqov:

ISAIAH 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and he *will shall* teach us of his ways,
and we *will shall* walk in his paths:
for out of *Zion Siyon* shall go forth the *law torah*,
and the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*
from *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.

4 And he shall judge among the *nations goyim*,
and shall *rebuke reprove* many people:
and they shall *beat forge* their swords into plowshares,
and their spears into *pruninghooks psalmpicks*:
nation goyim shall not lift *up* sword against *nation goyim*,
neither shall they learn war any more.

5 O house of *Jacob Yaaqov*, come ye,
and let us walk in the light of the *LORD Yah Veh*.

6 Therefore thou hast *forsaken abandoned* thy people
the house of *Jacob Yaaqov*,
because they *be replenished fill full* from the east,
and are *soothsayers cloudegazers*
like the *Philistines Peleshethiym*,
and they *please themselves clap*
in with the children of strangers.

7 Their land also is *full filled* of silver and gold,
neither is there any end of their treasures;
their land is also *full filled* of horses,
neither is there any end of their chariots:

8 Their land also is *full filled* of idols;
they *worship prostrate to* the work of their own hands,
that which their own fingers have *made worked*:

9 And the *mean man boweth down humanity prostrateth*,
and the *great man humbleth himself man abaseth*:
therefore *forgive lift* them not.

10 Enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust,
for at the face of fear of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and for the *glory majesty* of his *majesty pomp*.

11 The lofty *looks eyes* of *man humanity*
shall be *humbled abase*,
and the haughtiness of men shall be *bowed down prostrate*,
and the *LORD Yah Veh* alone
shall be exalted in that day.

12 For the day of the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*
shall be upon
every one that is proud all the pompous and lofty,
and upon *every one all* that is lifted up;
and he shall be *brought low abased*:

13 And upon all the cedars of Lebanon,
that are high and lifted up,
and upon all the oaks of Bashan,
and upon all the high mountains,
and upon all the hills that are lifted up,

14 And upon every high tower,
and upon every *fenced fortified* wall,
and upon all the ships of Tarshish,
and upon all *pleasant pictures observations of desire*.

15 And the loftiness of *man humanity*
shall be *bowed down prostrate*,
and the haughtiness of men shall be *made low abase*:
and the *LORD Yah Veh* alone
shall be exalted in that day.

16 And the idols
he shall *utterly abolish totally pass away*.

17 And they shall go into the *holes caves* of the rocks,
and into the caves of the *earth dust*,
for at the face of fear of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and for the *glory majesty* of his *majesty pomp*,
when he ariseth to *shake terribly terrify* the earth.

18 In that day a *man humanity*
shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold,
which they *made each one worked* for himself
to *worship prostrate to*,

19 to the *moles burrowers* and to the bats;
To go into the *clefts crevices* of the rocks,
and into the *tops clefts* of the *ragged rocks*,
for at the face of fear of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and for the *glory majesty* of his *majesty pomp*,
when he ariseth to *shake terribly terrify* the earth.

20 Cease ye from *man humanity*,
whose breath is in his nostrils:
for wherein is he to be *accounted of fabricated*?

YESHA YAH 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and he teaches us of his ways,
and we walk in his paths:
for from *Siyon the torah* goes forth,
and the word of *Yah Veh* from *Yeru Shalem*.

4 And he judges among the *goyim*
and reproveth many people:
and they forge their swords into plowshares
and their spears into *psalmpicks*:
goyim neither lift sword against *goyim*,
nor learn war any more.

5 O house of *Yaaqov*, come,
and we walk in the light of *Yah Veh*.

6 For you forsake your people,
the house of *Yaaqov*,
because they fill full from the east
— *cloudegazers* like the *Peleshethiym*;
and they clap with the children of strangers:
and the land is filled with silver and gold
— no end of their treasures;
and the land is filled with horses,
— no end of their chariots:
and the land is filled with idols;
they prostrate to the work of their own hands
which their own fingers worked:
and *humanity* prostrates; and man abases:
and you, lift them not.

7 Enter the rock and hide in the dust
at the face of fear of *Yah Veh*,
and for the majesty of his pomp.

8 The lofty eyes of *humanity* abase,
and the haughtiness of men prostrates,
and *Yah Veh* alone is exalted in that day.

9 For the day of *Yah Veh Sabaoth*
is upon all the pompous and lofty;
and upon all the lifted and abased;
and upon all the cedars of Lebanon
— high and lifted up;
and upon all the oaks of Bashan;
and upon all the high mountains;
and upon all the lifted hills;
and upon every high tower
and upon every fortified wall;
and upon all the ships of Tarshish
and upon all observations of desire:
and the loftiness of *humanity* prostrates
and the haughtiness of men abases:
and *Yah Veh* alone is exalted in that day.

10 And the idols, he totally passes away:
and they go into the caves of the rocks
and into the caves of the dust
— at the face of fear of *Yah Veh*
and for the majesty of his pomp
when he rises to terrify the earth.

11 In that day,
humanity casts his idols of silver and his idols of gold
that they work for him to prostrate to
— to the burrowers and to the bats;
to go into the crevices of the rocks
and into the clefts of the rocks
— at the face of fear of *Yah Veh*;
and for the majesty of his pomp
when he rises to terrify the earth.

12 Cease you from *humanity*,
whose breath is in his nostrils:
for — wherein is he fabricated?

ISAIAH 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

JUDGMENT ON YERU SHALEM AND YAH HUDAH

3 For, behold,
the Lord, the LORD of hosts Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth,
doth take away **turn aside**
from Jerusalem Yeru Shalem and from Judah Yah Hudah
the stay **support** and the staff **support**,
the whole stay **support** of bread,
and the whole stay **support** of water,
2 The mighty *man*, and the man of war,
the judge, and the prophet,
3 and the *prudent* **diviner**, and the *ancient* **aged**,
The *captain* **governor** of fifty,
and the *honourable man* **lifted face**,
and the *counsellor*,
and the *cunning artificer* **wise engraver**,
and the *eloquent* **discerning** orator.
4 And I will **shall** give
children **lads** to be their *princes* **governors**,
and *babes* **freaks** shall *rule* **reign** over them.
5 And the people shall be *oppressed* **exacted**,
every one by another **man upon man**,
and *every one by his neighbour*
even man upon his friend:
the *child* **lad** shall *behave himself proudly* **abuse**
against the *ancient* **aged**,
and the base against the honourable.
6 When a man shall *take hold of* **apprehend** his brother
of the house of his father, *saying*,
Thou hast clothing, be thou our *ruler* **commander**,
and let this *ruin* **stumblingblock** be under thy hand:
7 In that day shall he *swear* **lift his hand**,
saying, I will **shall** not be an *healer* **a binder**;
for in my house is neither bread nor clothing:
make **set** me not a *ruler* **commander** of the people.
8 For Jerusalem is *ruined* **Yeru Shalem hath faltered**,
and Judah is **Yah Hudah hath** fallen:
because their tongue and their *doings* **exploitations**
are against the LORD **Yah Veh**,
9 to *provoke* **rebel** against the eyes of his *glory* **honour**.
The *shew* **partiality** of their *countenance* **face**
doth *witness* **answer** against them;
and they *declare* **tell** their sin as *Sodom* **Sedom**,
they *hide* **conceal** it not.
Woe unto their soul!
for they have *rewarded* **dealt** evil unto themselves.
10 Say ye to the *righteous* **just**,
that it shall be *well with him* **for good**:
for they shall eat the fruit of their *doings* **exploitations**.
11 Woe unto the wicked! *it shall be ill with him* — **evil**:
for the *reward* **dealing** of his hands
shall be *given* **worked** him.
12 As for my people,
children **exploiters** are their *oppressors* **extractors**,
and women *rule* **reign** over them.
O my people, they which *lead* **blithe** thee
cause thee to *err* **stray**,
and *destroy* **swallow** the way of thy paths.
13 The LORD standeth up **Yah Veh stationeth** to plead,
and standeth to *judge* **plead the cause of** the people.
14 The LORD will **Yah Veh shall** enter into judgment
with the *ancients* **elders** of his people,
and the *princes* **governors** thereof:
for ye have *eaten up* **burnt** the vineyard;
the *spoil* **stripping** of the *poor* **humble** is in your houses.
15 What mean ye that ye *beat* **crush** my people to *pieces*,
and grind the faces of the *poor* **humble**?
saith the Lord GOD of hosts
an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth.
16 Moreover the LORD **Yah Veh** saith,
Because the daughters of Zion **Siyon** are *haughty* **lifted**,
and walk with *stretched forth* **necks** **spread throats**
and *wanton eyes* **ogling**,
walking and *mincing* **waddling** as they go,
and *making* a tinkling with their feet:
17 Therefore the Lord **Adonay**
will *smite with a scab* **shall scrape** the *crown of the head* **scalp**
of the daughters of Zion **Siyon**,
and the LORD **Yah Veh**
will *discover* **shall strip** *naked* their *secret parts* **pudenda**.

YESHA YAH 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

JUDGMENT ON YERU SHALEM AND YAH HUDAH

3 For, behold,
Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth
turns aside from Yeru Shalem and from Yah Hudah
the support and the support
— the whole support of bread
and the whole support of water:
2 the mighty and the man of war,
the judge and the prophet,
and the *diviner* and the *aged*,
3 the *governor* of fifty,
and the *lifted face* and the *counsellor*,
and the *wise engraver* and the *discerning orator*:
4 and I give lads for governors
and freaks reign over them.
5 And the people exact, man upon man;
even man upon his friend:
the lads abuse against the aged
and the base against the honorable.
6 When man apprehends his brother
of the house of his father by the clothing,
and *says*, Be our commander;
and this *stumblingblock* is under your hand:
7 in that day he lifts his hand, *saying*,
I am not a binder;
and in my house is neither bread nor clothing:
set me not a commander of the people.
8 For Yeru Shalem falters and Yah Hudah falls:
because of their tongue and their exploitations
against Yah Veh
— to rebel against the eyes of his honor:
9 their partiality of face answers against them;
and they tell their sin as Sedom — they conceal not.
Woe to their soul!
for they deal themselves evil.
10 You, say to the just, It is for good:
for they eat the fruit of their exploitations.
11 Woe to the wicked — evil:
for the dealing of his hands works to himself.
12 As for my people,
exploiters exact from them
and women reign over them.
O my people, they who blithe you
cause you to stray,
and swallow the way of your paths.
13 Yah Veh stations himself to plead
and stands to plead the cause of the people.
14 Yah Veh enters into judgment
with the elders of his people and the governors:
for you burnt the vineyard;
the stripping of the humble is in your houses.
15 What mean you, to crush my people?
And grind the faces of the humble?
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth.
16 Yah Veh says,
Because the daughters of Siyon lift themselves
and walk with spread throats and ogling
— walking and waddling they go,
and tinkling with their feet:
17 Adonay also scrapes the scalp of the daughters of Siyon;
and their pudenda, Yah Veh strips naked.

ISAIAH 3—5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 In that day
the Lord will take away **Adonay shall turn aside**
the bravery of their tinkling ornaments about their feet
their adornments of tinklers,
 and their *cauls* **nets,**
 and their *round tires like the moon* **ornaments,**
 19 The *chains* **pendants,** and the bracelets,
 and the *mufflers* **veils,**
 20 The *bonnets* **tiaras,**
 and the *ornaments of the legs* **anklets,**
 and the *headbands* **bands,**
 and the *tablets* **housings of the soul,**
 and the *earrings* **amulets,**
 21 The *rings* **signets,** and *nose jewels* **nostrilrings,**
 22 The *changeable suits of apparel* **mantles,**
 and the *mantles,*
 and the *wimples* **cloaks,** and the *crisping pins* **pockets,**
 23 The *glasses* **rolls,** and the *fine linen* **wraps,**
 and the *hoods* **turbans,** and the vails.
 24 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
 that instead of sweet *smell* **spice**
 there shall be *stink* **putridity;**
 and instead of a girdle
 a *rent* **noose;**
 and instead of *well set hair* **the work of the curler**
 baldness;
 and instead of a *stomacher* **festive mantle**
 a *girding* **girdle** of sackcloth **saq;**
 and *burning* **scarring** instead of beauty.
 25 Thy men shall fall by the sword,
 and thy *mighty* **might** in the war.
 26 And her *gates lament* **portals shall mourn** and mourn;
 and she being *desolate* **exonerated**
 shall *sit* **settle** upon the *ground* **land.**

THE SPROUT OF YAH VEH

4 And in that day
 seven women shall take hold of one man, saying,
 We *will* **shall** eat our own bread,
 and wear **enrobe** our own apparel:
 only let us be called by thy name,
 to *take away* **gather** our reproach.
 2 In that day
 shall the *branch* **sprout** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
 be *beautiful* **splendid** and *glorious* **honourable,**
 and the fruit of the earth
 shall be *excellent* **for pomp** and *comely* **adornment**
 for them that are *escaped* **the escapees** of *Israel* **Yisra El.**
 3 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
 that he that is *left* **surviveth** in *Zion* **Siyon,**
 and he that remaineth in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem,**
 shall be *called* **said** holy,
 even every one
 that is *written among the living* **inscribed for life**
 in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem:**
 4 When the *Lord* **Adonay**
 shall have *washed away* **baptized** the *filth* **dung**
 of the daughters of *Zion* **Siyon,**
 and shall have *purged* **cleansed**
 the blood of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
 from the midst *thereof*
 by the spirit of judgment, and by the spirit of burning.
 5 And the *LORD* **will Yah Veh** shall create
 upon every dwelling place of mount *Zion* **Siyon,**
 and upon her *assemblies* **convocations,**
 a cloud and smoke by day,
 and the *shining* **brilliance** of a flaming fire by night:
 for upon all the *glory* **honour** shall be a *defence* **canopy.**
 6 And there shall be a *tabernacle* **sukkoth/brush arbors**
 for a shadow in the *daytime* **day** from the heat,
 and for a place of refuge,
 and for a covert from *storm* **flood** and from rain.

SONG OF THE VINEYARD

5 Now **I beseech,**
will **shall** I sing to my *wellbeloved* **beloved**
 a song of my beloved touching his vineyard.
 My *wellbeloved* **beloved** hath a vineyard
 in a *very fruitful hill* **the horn of the son of oil:**
 2 And he *fenced* **walled** it,
 and *gathered out* **stoned** the stones *thereof,*

YESHA YAH 3—5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 In that day,
 Adonay turns aside their adornments of tinklers,
 and their nets and their ornaments;
 19 the pendants and the bracelets and the veils;
 20 the tiaras and the anklets and the bands
 and the housings of the soul and the amulets;
 21 the signets and nostrilrings;
 22 the mantles and the mantles
 and the cloaks and the pockets;
 23 the rolls and the wraps
 and the turbans and the veils:
 24 and so be it,
 that instead of sweet spice, putridity;
 and instead of a girdle, a noose;
 and instead of the work of the curler, baldness;
 and instead of a festive mantle, a girdle of saq
 — scarring instead of beauty.
 25 Your men fall by the sword
 and your might in the war.
 26 And her portals mourn and mourn;
 and being exonerated, she settles upon the land.

THE SPROUT OF YAH VEH

4 In that day,
 seven women take hold of one man, saying,
 We eat our own bread and enrobe our own apparel:
 only call us by your name, to gather our reproach.
 2 In that day,
 the sprout of Yah Veh is splendid and honorable
 and the fruit of the earth for pomp and adornment
 for the escapees of Yisra El.
 3 And so be it,
 he who survives in Siyon,
 and he who remains in Yeru Shalem
 — holy is said of him
 — of every one inscribed for life in Yeru Shalem:
 4 when Adonay
 baptizes the dung of the daughters of Siyon,
 and cleanses the blood of Yeru Shalem
 from their midst
 by the spirit of judgment and by the spirit of burning:
 5 and upon every dwelling place of mount Siyon
 and upon her convocations,
 Yah Veh creates a cloud and smoke by day
 and the brilliance of a flaming fire by night
 — a canopy upon all the honor:
 6 and sukkoth/brush arbors
 for a shadow in the day from the heat
 and for a place of refuge;
 and for a covert from flood and from rain.

SONG OF THE VINEYARD

5 I beseech, that I sing to my beloved
 — a song of my beloved touching his vineyard
 — my beloved has a vineyard
 in the horn of the son of oil:
 2 and he walls it and stones the stones;

ISAIAH 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and planted it with the *choicest vine* **choice**,
and built a tower in the midst of it,
and also made a *winepress* **trough** therein:
and he *looked* **awaited**
that it should *bring forth* **work** grapes,
and it *brought forth* **wild grapes** **worked** **stinkweeds**.
3 And now,
O *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
judge, I *pray* **beseech** you,
betwixt me and my vineyard.
4 What could have been
done **worked** more to my vineyard,
that I have not *done* **worked** in it?
wherefore **why**, when I *looked* **awaited**
that it should *bring forth* **work** grapes,
brought it forth *wild grapes* **it worked** **stinkweeds**?
5 And now go to;
I *will tell* **shall make** you **know**
what I *will do* **shall work** to my vineyard:
I *will take away* **shall turn aside** the hedge *thereof*,
and it shall be *eaten up* **burnt**;
and *break down* **breach** the wall *thereof*,
and it shall be *trodden down* **trampled**:
6 And I *will lay it waste* **shall place it** **desolate**:
it shall not be *pruned* **plucked**, nor *digged* **hoed**;
but there shall *come up* **ascend** briers and thorns:
I *will* **shall** also *command* **misvah** the **thick** clouds
that they rain no rain upon it.
7 For the vineyard of the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
is the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and the men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
his *pleasant* plant of **delights**:
and he *looked for* **awaited** judgment,
but behold oppression;
for *righteousness* **justness**,
but behold a cry.
HO AND JUDGMENT
8 Woe **Ho** unto them that *join* **touch** house to house,
that *lay* **approach** field to field,
till *there be no* **the** **final** place,
that they may be *placed* **settled** alone
in the midst of the earth!
9 In mine ears, *said the LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
Of a truth **If not** many houses shall *be* **become** desolate,
even great and *fair* **good**, without *inhabitant* **settler**.
10 Yea **Assuredly**, ten acres of vineyard
shall *yield* **work** one bath,
and the seed of an *homer* **chomer**
shall *yield* **work** an ephah.
11 Woe **Ho** unto them
that *rise up* **start** early in the morning,
that they may *follow strong drink* **pursue** **intoxicants**;
that *continue until night* **linger in the evening** **breeze**,
till wine inflame them!
12 And the harp, and the *viol* **bagpipe**,
the *tabret* **tambourine**, and pipe, and wine,
are in their *feasts* **banquets**:
but they *regard* **scan** not
the *work* **deeds** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
neither *consider* **see** the *operation* **work** of his hands.
13 Therefore my people are *gone into captivity* **exiled**,
because they have no knowledge:
and their honourable men are famished,
and their multitude *dried up* **parched** with thirst.
14 Therefore *hell* **sheol** hath enlarged *herself* **her** **soul**,
and *opened* **gaped** her mouth without *measure* **statute**:
and their glory, and their multitude,
and their *pomp* **uproar**,
and he that *rejoiceth* **jumpeth for joy**,
shall descend into it.
15 And the *mean* man **humanity**
shall *be brought down* **prostrate**,
and the *mighty* man shall *be humbled* **abase**,
and the eyes of the lofty shall *be humbled* **abase**:
16 But the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
shall *be exalted* **lifted** in judgment,
and *God* **El** that is holy
shall *be sanctified* **hallowed** in *righteousness* **justness**.

YESHA YAH 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and plants with the choice,
and builds a tower in the midst;
and also makes a trough therein:
and he awaits it to work grapes
and it works stinkweeds.
3 And now,
O settlers of Yeru Shalem and men of Yah Hudah,
judge, I beseech you, between me and my vineyard.
4 What more work I to my vineyard
that I worked not therein?
Why, when I awaited it to work grapes,
worked it stinkweeds?
5 And now go to;
I have you know what I work to my vineyard:
I turn aside the hedge and burn it;
and breach the wall to trample on:
and I place it desolate
— neither plucked nor hoed;
and briers and thorns ascend:
and I misvah the thick clouds to rain no rain thereon.
6
7 For the vineyard of Yah Veh Sabaoth
is the house of Yisra El,
and the men of Yah Hudah
his plant of delights:
and he awaits judgment; and behold, oppression:
for justness; and behold, a cry.
HO AND JUDGMENT
8 Ho to them who touch house to house,
who approach field to field,
until the final place,
to settle alone midst the earth!
9 In my ears, Yah Veh Sabaoth,
surely many houses become desolate
— great and good, without settler.
10 For ten acres of vineyard work one bath,
and the seed of an chomer works an ephah.
11 Ho to them who start early in the morning
to pursue intoxicants;
who linger in the evening breeze
until wine inflames them:
and the harp and the bagpipe,
the tambourine and pipe
and wine are in their banquets:
yes, they neither scan the deeds of Yah Veh
nor see the work of his hands.
12 So my people *are* **exiled**,
because they have no knowledge:
and their honourable men are famished,
and their multitude parched with thirst.
13
14 So sheol enlarges her soul
and gapes her mouth without statute;
and their glory and their multitude and their uproar:
and he who jumps for joy, descends therein:
and humanity prostrates and man abases;
and the eyes of the lofty abase.
15
16 And Yah Veh Sabaoth is lifted in judgment
and holy El, hallowed in justness.

ISAIAH 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

17 Then shall the lambs feed **graze**
after their *manner* **word**,
and the *waste places* **parched areas** of the *fat ones* **fatlings**
shall *strangers* **sojourners** eat.

18 Woe **Ho** unto them that draw *iniquity* **perversity**
with cords of vanity,
and sin as it were with a *cart* **wagon** rope:
19 That say, Let him *make speed* **hasten**,
and hasten his work, that we may see it:
and let the counsel of the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**
draw nigh **approach** and come, that we may know it!

20 Woe **Ho** unto them that *call say*
concerning evil good, and good evil;
that *put set* darkness for light, and light for darkness;
that *put set* bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

21 Woe **Ho** unto them that are wise in their own eyes,
and *prudent* **discerning** in their *own sight* **face!**

22 Woe **Ho** unto them that are mighty to drink wine,
and men of *strength* **valour**
to *mingle strong drink* **mix intoxicants**:
23 Which justify the wicked for *reward* **a bribe**,
and *take away* **turn aside**
the *righteousness* **justness** of the *righteous* **just** from him!

24 Therefore as the **tongue** of fire devoureth the stubble,
and the flame *consumeth* **slacketh** the *chaff* **hay**,
so their root shall be as *rotteness* **putridity**,
and their blossom shall *go up* **ascend** as dust:
because they have *cast away* **spurned** the *law* **torah**
of the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
and *despised* **scorned** the *word* **saying**
of the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

25 Therefore is the *anger* **wrath** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
kindled against his people,
and he hath *stretched forth* **spread** his hand against them,
and hath smitten them:
and the hills *did tremble* **quaked**,
and their carcasses were *orn* **sweepings**
in the midst of the *streets* **outways**.

For all this his *anger* **wrath** is not turned away,
but his hand is *stretched out* **spread** still.

26 And he *will* **shall** lift up an ensign
to the *nations* **goyim** from far,
and *will* **shall** hiss unto them from the end of the earth:
and behold, they shall come *with speed* **quickly**, swiftly:

27 None shall *be weary* **languish** nor *stumble* **falter**
among them;
none shall slumber nor sleep;
neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed,
nor the latchet of their shoes be *broken* **orn**:

28 Whose arrows are *sharp* **pointened**,
and all their bows bent,
their horses' hoofs shall be *counted* **fabricated** like flint,
and their *wheels* **whirlers** like a *whirlwind* **hurricane**:

29 Their roaring shall be like a **roaring** lion,
they shall roar like *young lions* **whelps**:
yea, they shall *roar* **growl**, and *lay* **take** hold of the prey,
and shall *carry* **slip** it away *safe*
and none shall *deliver it* **rescue**.

30 And in that day they shall *roar* **growl** against them
like the *roaring* **growling** of the sea:
and if one look unto the land,
behold darkness and *sorrow* **tribulation**,
and the light is darkened in the *heavens* **setting thereof**.

THE VISION OF YESHA YAH

6 In the year that *king* **Uzziah** sovereign **Uzzi Yah** died
I saw also the *Lord* **Adonay** sitting upon a throne,
high and lifted up,
and his *train* **drape** filled the *temple* **manse**.
2 Above it stood the *seraphims* **seraphim**:
each one had six wings — **six wings to one**;
with *twain* **two** he covered his face,
and with *twain* **two** he covered his feet,
and with *twain* **two** he *did fly* **flew**.

3 And one *cried* **called** unto another, and said,
Holy, holy, holy, *is the LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**:
the whole earth is full of his glory.

4 And the *posts* **hinges** of the *door* **threshold**
moved **shook** at the voice of him that cried,
and the house was filled with smoke.

YESHA YAH 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

17 And the lambs graze after their word;
and sojourners eat the parched areas of the fatlings.

18 Ho to them who draw perversity
with cords of vanity,
and sin as a wagon rope:
19 who say, Hasten him:
hasten his work for us to see:
and that the counsel of the Holy One of Yisra El
approach and come, for us to know.

20 Ho to them who say to evil, good;
and to good, evil;
who set darkness for light; and light for darkness:
who set bitter for sweet; and sweet for bitter.

21 Ho to them, the wise in their own eyes,
and discerning in their own face!

22 Ho to them, the mighty to drink wine,
and men of valour to mix intoxicants:
23 who justify the wicked for a bribe,
and turn aside the justness of the just from him!

24 So as the tongue of fire devours the stubble
and the flame slacks the hay,
thus their root is as putridity
and their blossom ascends as dust:
because they spurn the torah of Yah Veh Sabaoth,
and scorn the saying of the Holy One of Yisra El.

25 So Yah Veh kindles his wrath against his people;
and spreads his hand against them and smites them:
and the hills quake;
and their carcass is as sweepings midst the outways.
For all this, his wrath turns not away,
and he still spreads his hand:
26 and he lifts an ensign to the goyim from afar,
and hisses to them from the end of the earth:
and, behold, they come quickly — swiftly:
27 no one languishes nor falters among them;
no one slumbers nor sleeps;
neither loosens the girdle of their loins,
nor tears the latchet of their shoes:
28 whose arrows are pointed
and all their bows bent;
the hoofs of their horses fabricate as flint
and their whirlers as a hurricane:
29 they roar like a roaring lion; they roar like whelps:
yes, they growl,
and take hold of the prey and slip it away
and no one rescues.

30 And in that day,
they growl against them as the growling of the sea:
and if one looks to the land,
behold, darkness and tribulation;
and the light darkens in the setting.

THE VISION OF YESHA YAH

6 In the year sovereign Uzzi Yah dies
I see Adonay sitting upon a throne
— high and lifted up,
and his drape fills the manse:
seraphim stand over it
2 — six wings — six wings to one;
with two he covers his face
and with two he covers his feet
and with two he flies.

3 And one calls to another, and says,
Holy, holy, holy, Yah Veh Sabaoth:
the fulness of the whole earth is his glory.
4 — and the hinges of the threshold
shake at the voice of him who cries;
and the house fills with smoke.

ISAIAH 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 Then said I, Woe is me! for I am *undone* **mute**;
because I am a man of *unclean* **foul** lips,
and I *dwelt* **settle** in the midst of a people
of *unclean* **fouled** lips:
for mine eyes have seen the *King* **Sovereign**,
the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
6 Then flew one of the *seraphims* **seraphim** unto me,
having a *live coal* **hot stone** in his hand,
which he had taken with the tongs
from off the **sacrifice** altar:
7 And he *laid* **touched** it upon my mouth,
and said, *Lo* **Behold**, this hath touched thy lips;
and thine *iniquity* **perversity** is *taken away* **turned aside**,
and thy sin *purged* **kaped/atoned**.

THE COMMISSION OF YESHA YAH

8 Also I heard the voice of the *Lord* **Adonay**, saying,
Whom shall I send, and who *will* **shall** go for us?
Then said I, Here am I; send me.
9 And he said, Go, and *tell* **say to** this people,
In hearing, Hear ye *indeed*, but *understand* **discern** not;
and **in seeing**, see ye *indeed*, but *perceive* **know** not.
10 Make **Fatten** the heart of this people *fat*,
and make **burden** their ears *heavy*,
and *shut* **stroke** their eyes;
lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears,
and *understand* **discern** with their heart,
and convert, and be healed.
11 Then said I, *Lord* **Adonay**, how long?
And he *answered* **said**,
Until the cities be wasted without *inhabitant* **settler**,
and the houses without *man* **humanity**,
and the *land* **soil** be **wasted**
utterly desolate — **a desolation**,
12 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
have **far** removed *men far away* **humanity**,
and there be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.
13 But yet in it shall be a tenth, and it shall return,
and shall be *eaten* **burnt**:
as a *teil* **an oak** tree, and as an oak,
whose *substance* **stump** is in them,
when they cast *their leaves*:
so the holy seed shall be the *substance* **stumps** thereof.

WAR AGAINST YERU SHALEM

7 And **so be** it *came to pass*
in the days of *Ahaz* **Ach Az**
the son of *Jotham* **Yah Tham**,
the son of *Uzziah* **Uzzi Yah**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
that *Rezin* **Resin** the *king* **sovereign** of *Syria* **Aram**,
and *Pekah* **Peqach** the son of *Remaliah* **Remal Yah**,
king **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
went up toward Jerusalem **ascended to Yeru Shalem**
to war against it, but could not *prevail* **fight** against it.
2 And it was told the house of David, saying,
Syria is confederate **Aram resteth**
with *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**.
And his heart was *moved* **shook**,
and the heart of his people,
as the trees of the *wood are moved* **forest shake**
with at the face of the wind.
3 Then said the *LORD* **Yah Veh** unto *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah**,
Go forth *now* **I beseech**, to meet *Ahaz* **Ach Az**,
thou, and *Shearjashub* **Shear Yashub** thy son,
at the end of the *conduit* **channel**
of the *upper* **most high** pool
in the highway of the fuller's field;
4 And say unto him, *Take heed* **On guard**,
and be *quiet* **rest**; *fear* **awe** not,
neither be *fainthearted* **tenderize thy heart**
for the two tails of these smoking *firebrands* **brands**,
for the *fierce anger* **fuming wrath**
of *Rezin* **Resin** with *Syria* **Aram**,
and of the son of *Remaliah* **Remal Yah**.
5 Because *Syria* **Aram**, *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
and the son of *Remaliah* **Remal Yah**,
have *taken* **counselled** evil *counsel* against thee, saying,
6 Let us *go up* **ascend** against *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and vex **loathe** it,
and let us *make a breach therein* **split it** for us,

YESHA YAH 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

5 Then I say, Woe is me! for I am mute;
because I am a man of foul lips
and I settle midst a people of fouled lips:
for my eyes see the Sovereign, Yah Veh Sabaoth.
6 Then one of the seraphim flies to me
with a hot stone in his hand
— which he took with the tongs
from off the sacrifice altar:
7 and he touches it on my mouth, and says,
Behold, this touches your lips;
and your perversity is turned aside,
and your sin is kaped/atoned.

THE COMMISSION OF YESHA YAH

8 And I hear the voice of Adonay, saying,
Whom send I? and, Who goes for us?
And I say, Here — I! Send me!
9 And he says, Go, and say to this people,
In hearing, you hear, and discern not;
and in seeing, you see, and know not.
10 Fatten the heart of this people
and burden their ears and stroke their eyes;
lest they see with their eyes and hear with their ears
and discern with their heart
— and convert and heal.
11 Then I say, Adonay, until when?
And he says,
Until the cities waste away without settler,
and the houses without humanity,
and the soil wastes — a desolation;
and Yah Veh removes humanity far off,
with a great forsaking midst the land.
12 And yet there is a tenth therein that returns
to burn as an oak tree
and as an oak with its stump,
when they cast:
the holy seed is the stump.

WAR AGAINST YERU SHALEM

7 And so be it,
in the days of Ach Az the son of Yah Tham,
the son of Uzzi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah,
that Resin the sovereign of Aram,
and Peqach the son of Remal Yah sovereign of Yisra El
ascend to Yeru Shalem to war against it
but cannot fight against it.
2 And they tell the house of David, saying,
Aram rests with Ephrayim.
And his heart shakes — and the heart of his people
as the trees of the forest shake at the face of the wind.
3 Then Yah Veh says to Yesha Yah,
Go, I beseech, to meet Ach Az
— you and Shear Yashub your son,
at the end of the channel of the most high pool
in the highway of the field of the fuller;
4 and say to him, On guard! and, Rest!
Neither awe nor tenderize your heart
for the two tails of these smoking brands
— for the fuming wrath of Resin and Aram
and the son of Remal Yah:
5 because Aram, Ephrayim, and the son of Remal Yah
counsel evil against you, saying,
6 We ascend against Yah Hudah
and loathe it and split it for us,

ISAIAH 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and set a king **reign a sovereign** in the midst of it,
even the son of *Tabéal* **Tabé El**:
7 Thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**,
It shall not *stand* **rise**,
neither shall it *come to pass* **be**.
8 For the head of *Syria* **Aram** is *Damascus* **Dammeseq**,
and the head of *Damascus* **Dammeseq** is *Rezin* **Resin**;
and within *threescore* **sixty** and five years
shall *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** be broken,
that it be not **from** a people.
9 And the head of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
is *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
and the head of *Samaria* **Shomeron**
is *Remaliah's* **Remal Yah's** son.
If ye *will* **shall** not *believe* **trust**,
surely ye shall not be *established* **trustworthy**.

THE SIGN OF IMMANU EL

10 Moreover *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
spake again **added to word** unto *Ahaz* **Ach Az**, saying,
11 Ask thee a sign of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**;
ask it either in *the depth* **deep**,
or in *the height* **high** above.
12 But *Ahaz* **Ach Az** said, I *will* **shall** not ask,
neither *will I tempt the LORD* **shall I test Yah Veh**.
13 And he said, Hear ye now, O house of David;
Is it a *small thing* **petty** for you to weary men,
but *will* **shall** ye weary my *God* **Elohim** also?
14 Therefore *the Lord* **Adonay** himself
shall give you a sign;
Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and *bear* **birth** a son,
and shall call his name *Immanuel* **Immanu El**.
15 Butter and honey shall he eat,
that he may know to refuse the evil,
and choose the good.
16 For *before* **ere** the *child* **lad** shall know to refuse the evil,
and choose the good,
the *land* **soil** that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken
at the face of both her *kings* **sovereigns**.
17 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** shall bring upon thee,
and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house,
days that have not come,
from the day that *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
departed **turned aside** from *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
even the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**.
18 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*, in that day,
that *the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall hiss for the fly
that is in the *uttermost part* **end**
of the rivers of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and for the bee that is in the land of *Assyria* **Ashshur**.
19 And they shall come, and shall rest all of them
in the *desolate valleys* **wadies of desolations**,
and in the holes of the rocks,
and upon all thorns, and upon all *bushes* **pastures**.
20 In the same day shall *the Lord* **Adonay**
shave with a razor *that is hired* **the hireling**,
namely, by them beyond the river,
by the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
the head, and the hair of the feet:
and it shall also *consume* **scrape away** the beard.
21 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*, in that day,
that a man shall *nourish* **keep alive**
a young *cow* **heifer of the herd**, and two *sheep* **flock**;
22 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
for the abundance of milk that they shall *give* **work**
he shall eat butter:
for butter and honey shall every one eat
that *is left* **remaineth** in the land.
23 And **so be** it *shall come to pass* in that day,
so be it, that every place *shall be*,
where there were
a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings,
it shall *even* be for briers and thorns.
24 With arrows and with bows shall *men* come thither;
because all the land shall become briers and thorns.
25 And on all hills
that shall be *digged* **hoed** with the *mattock* **hoe**,
there shall not come thither the fear of briers and thorns:
but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen,
and for the *treading* **trampling** of *lesser cattle* **lambs**.

YESHA YAH 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and reign a sovereign in their midst
— the son of *Tabé El*.
7 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh,
It neither rises, nor becomes:
8 for the head of Aram is Dammeseq
and the head of Dammeseq is Resin:
and within sixty—five years
Ephrayim, as a people, breaks.
9 And the head of Ephrayim is Shomeron
and the head of Shomeron is the son of Remal Yah:
If you trust not,
surely you are not trustworthy.

THE SIGN OF IMMANU EL

10 And Yah Veh adds to word to Ach Az, saying,
11 You, ask a sign of Yah Veh your Elohim;
ask, either deep, or high above.
12 And Ach Az says, I neither ask nor test Yah Veh.
13 And he says, Hear now, O house of David;
Is it petty for you to weary men?
And also weary my Elohim?
14 So Adonay himself gives you a sign:
Behold, a virgin conceives and births a son
and calls his name Immanu El:
15 he eats butter and honey
to know to refuse the evil and choose the good:
16 for ere the lad knows to refuse the evil
and choose the good,
the soil you abhor is forsaken
at the face of both her sovereigns:
17 Yah Veh brings upon you
and upon your people
and upon the house of your father,
days *such as* came not
— even from the day Ephrayim
turned aside from Yah Hudah
by the sovereign of Ashshur.
18 And so be it, in that day,
Yah Veh hisses for the fly
in the end of the rivers of Misrayim
and for the bee in the land of Ashshur:
19 and they all come and rest
in the wadies of desolations
and in the holes of the rocks
and upon all thorns and upon all pastures.
20 In the same day,
Adonay, by the sovereign of Ashshur,
with a razor, shaves the hireling beyond the river
— the head, and the hair of the feet:
yes, also scrapes away the beard.
21 And so be it, in that day,
that a man keeps alive
a young heifer of the herd, and two flock;
22 and so be it,
for the abundance of milk that they work
he eats butter:
for every one who remains in the land
eats butter and honey.
23 And so be it, in that day,
so be it, that every place where there are
a thousand vines *worth* a thousand silverlings,
it becomes for briers and thorns:
24 he comes there with arrows and with bows;
because all the land becomes briers and thorns:
25 and on all hills hoed with the hoe,
there comes not the fear of briers and thorns:
but it becomes for the sending forth of oxen,
and for the trampling of lambs.

ISAIAH 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE FALL OF DAMMESEQ AND SHOMERON

8 Moreover the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto me,
 Take thee a great roll,
 and write **inscribe** in it with a man's pen **stylus**
 concerning **Mahershalalhashbaz Mahers Halal Hash Baz**.
 2 And I took **witnessed** unto me
faithful **trustworthy** witnesses to record,
Uriah **Uri Yah** the priest,
 and **Zechariah Zechar Yah**
 the son of **Jeberechiah Yeberech Yah**.
 3 And I went unto **approached** the prophetess;
 and she conceived, and **bare birthed** a son.
 Then said the LORD **Yah Veh** to me,
 Call his name
Mahershalalhashbaz **Mahers Halal Hash Baz**.
 4 For before the **child lad** shall have knowledge
 to cry **call out**, My father, and my mother,
 the **riches valuables** of **Damascus Dammeseq**
 and the spoil of **Samaria Shomeron**
 shall be **taken away before lifted from the face**
of the king sovereign of **Assyria Ashshur**.
 5 The LORD **Yah Veh**
spake also **added to word** unto me *again*, saying,
 6 Forasmuch as this people
 refuseth the waters of **Shiloah Shiloach**
 that go *softly* **gently**, and **rejoice in joy**
 in **Rezin Resin** and **Remaliah's Remal Yah's** son;
 7 Now therefore, behold,
the Lord bringeth up **Adonay ascendeth** upon them
 the waters of the river, **strong mighty** and many,
even the king sovereign of **Assyria Ashshur**,
 and all his **glory honour**:
 and he shall **come up ascend**
 over all his **channels reservoirs**,
 and go over all his banks:
 8 And he shall pass through **Judah Yah Hudah**;
 he shall overflow and **go pass** over;
 he shall **reach even touch** to the neck;
 and the **stretching out spreading** of his wings
 shall fill the breadth of thy land, O **Immanuel Immanu El**.
 9 Associate yourselves **Be broken**, O ye people,
 and ye shall be broken *in pieces*;
 and give ear **hearken**, all ye of far **countries lands**:
 gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken *in pieces*;
 gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken *in pieces*.
 10 **In counselling**, Take counsel together,
 and it shall **come to nought break**;
speak word the word, and it shall not **stand rise**:
 for **God El** is with us.
 11 For the LORD **Yah Veh**
spake said thus to me with a strong hand,
 and **instructed disciplined** me
 that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying,
 12 Say ye not, A **confederacy Conspiracy**,
 to all them to whom this people shall say,
 A **confederacy Conspiracy**;
 neither **fear awe** ye their **fear awesomeness**,
 nor be *afraid awed*.
 13 Sanctify **Hallow**
the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth** himself;
 and let him be your **fear awe**,
 and let him be your dread.
 14 And he shall be for a **sanctuary holies**;
 but for a stone of **stumbling stubbing**
 and for a rock of offence
 to both the houses of **Israel Yisra El**,
 for a **gin snare** and for a snare
 to the **inhabitants settlers** of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
 15 And many among them shall **stumble falter**, and fall,
 and be broken, and be snared, and **be taken captured**.
 16 Bind up the **testimony witness**,
 seal the **law torah** among my disciples.
 17 And I **will wait upon the LORD shall await Yah Veh**,
 that hideth his face from the house of **Jacob Yaaqov**,
 and I **will look for shall await** him.
 18 Behold, I and the children
 whom the LORD **Yah Veh** hath given me
 are for signs and for **wonders omens** in **Israel Yisra El**
 from the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,

YESHA YAH 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE FALL OF DAMMESEQ AND SHOMERON

8 Yah Veh says to me,
 You, take a great roll;
 and inscribe therein with the stylus of a man
 concerning Mahers Halal Hash Baz.
 2 And I witness trustworthy witnesses to record for me
 — Uri Yah the priest
 and Zechar Yah the son of Yeberech Yah:
 3 and I approach the prophetess;
 and she conceives and births a son.
 Then Yah Veh says to me,
 4 Call his name Mahers Halal Hash Baz:
 for ere the lad knows to call out,
 My father! and, My mother!,
 they lift the valuables of Dammeseq
 and the spoil of Shomeron
 from the face of the sovereign of Ashshur.
 5 And Yah Veh adds to word to me, saying,
 6 Because this people refuses the waters of Shiloach
 that come gently and in joy
 with Resin and the son of Remal Yah;
 7 so, behold,
 Adonay ascends upon them
 the waters of the river, mighty and many,
 the sovereign of Ashshur and all his honor:
 and he ascends over all his reservoirs
 and goes over all his banks:
 8 and he passes through Yah Hudah;
 he overflows and passes over;
 he touches to the neck:
 and the spreading of his wings
 fills the breadth of your land, O Immanu El.
 9 Be broken, O you people — be broken;
 and hearken, all you of lands afar:
 10 gird, and be broken; gird, and be broken:
 in counselling, counsel; and it breaks;
 word the word, and it rises not:
 for El is with us.
 11 For thus Yah Veh says to me with a strong hand;
 and disciplines me
 to not walk in the way of this people, saying,
 12 You, say not, Conspiracy,
 to all them to whom this people say, Conspiracy;
 neither awe their awesomeness,
 nor be awed.
 13 Hallow Yah Veh Sabaoth himself
 to be your awe and to be your dread.
 14 And he becomes for a holies;
 and for a stone of stubbing and for a rock of offence
 to both the houses of Yisra El for a snare;
 and for a snare to the settlers of Yeru Shalem:
 15 and among them, many falter and fall
 — broken and snared and captured.
 16 Bind up the witness,
 seal the torah among my disciples.
 17 And I await Yah Veh
 who hides his face from the house of Yaaqov,
 and I await him.
 18 Behold, I and the children Yah Veh gives me
 are for signs and for omens in Yisra El
 — from Yah Veh Sabaoth

ISAIAH 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19 which *dwell*eth **tabernacleth** in mount *Zion* **Siyon**.
And when they shall say unto you,
Seek unto *them that have familiar spirits* **spiritists**,
and unto *wizards* **knowers**
that *peep* **chirp**, and that mutter:
should not a people seek unto their *God* **Elohim**?
for the living to the dead?
20 To the *law* **torah** and to the *testimony* **witness**:
if they *speak* **say** not according to this word,
it is because there is no *light* **dawn** in them.
21 And they shall pass through it,
hardly bestead **hardened** and *hungry* **famished**:
and **so be** it shall come to pass,
that when they shall be *hungry* **famish**,
they shall *fret themselves* **enrage** and *curse* **abase**
their *king* **sovereign** and their *God* **Elohim**,
and *look* **face** upward.
22 And they shall look unto the earth;
and behold *trouble* **tribulation** and darkness,
dimness **darkness** of *anguish* **distress**;
and they shall be *driven* **expelled** to darkness.

9 Nevertheless the *dimness* **obscurity** shall not be such
as was in her *vexation* **narrowness**,
when at the first *time* he lightly afflicted
the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali,
and afterward *did more grievously afflict* **honoured** her
by the way of the sea, beyond *Jordan* **Yarden**,
in *Galilee* **Galiyl** of the *nations* **goyim**.

A PROMISE OF LIGHT

2 The people that walked in darkness
have seen a great light:
they that *dwell* **settle** in the land of the shadow of death,
upon them hath the light *shined* **illuminated**.
3 Thou hast *multiplied* **greatened** the *nation* **goyim**,
and not *increased* **greatened** the *joy* **cheerfulness**:
they *joy before thee* **cheer at thy face**
according to the *joy* **cheerfulness** in harvest,
and as *men rejoice* **twirl** when they *divide* **allot** the spoil.
4 For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden,
and the *staff* **rod** of his shoulder,
the *rod* **scion** of his *oppressor* **exactor**,
as in the day of *Midian* **Midyan**.
5 For every *battle* **boot** of the *warrior* **booted**
is with confused noise **quaketh**,
and garments rolled in blood;
but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.

A CHILD IS BORN, A SON IS GIVEN

6 For unto us a child is *born* **birthed**, unto us a son is given:
and the *government* **dominion**
shall be upon his shoulder:
and his name* shall be called
Wonderful **Marvelous**, Counsellor,
The mighty God **Mighty El**,
The everlasting **Eternal** Father,
The Prince **Governor** of *Peace* **Shalom**.

*singular

7 Of the increase
of his *government* **dominion** and *peace* **shalom**
there shall be no end,
upon the throne of David,
and upon his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
to *order* **establish** it, and to *establish* **support** it
with judgment and with *justice* **justness**
from henceforth even *for ever* **eternally**.
The zeal of the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
will perform **shall work** this.

THE WRATH OF YAH VEH

8 *The Lord* **Adonay** sent a word into *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and it hath *lighted* **fallen** upon *Israel* **Yisra El**.
9 And all the people shall know,
even Ephraim **Ephrayim**
and the *inhabitant* **settler** of *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
that say **saying**
in the *pride* **pomp** and *stoutness* **greatness** of heart,
10 The bricks are fallen *down*,
but we *will* **shall** build with hewn stones:
the sycomores are cut down,
but we *will* **shall** change them into cedars.
11 Therefore *the LORD* **Yah Veh**

YESHA YAH 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

who tabernacles in mount Siyon.
19 And when they say to you,
Seek to spiritists and to knowers
who chirp and mutter:
Seek a people not to their Elohim?
— for the living to the dead?

20 To the torah and to the witness!
If they say not according to this word
it is because there is no dawn to them:
21 and they pass through, hardened and famished:
and so be it, they famish;
they enrage and abase
their sovereign and their Elohim,
and face upward:
22 and they look to the earth;
and behold tribulation and darkness
— darkness of distress;
— expelled to darkness.

9 Nevertheless the obscurity is not such
as in her narrowness,
as at the first time when he lightly afflicted
the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali;
and afterward honored her
by the way of the sea beyond Yarden
in Galiyl of the goyim.

A PROMISE OF LIGHT

2 The people, walking in darkness, see a great light:
settlers in the land of the shadow of death,
upon them the light illuminates.
3 You greaten the goyim;
you greaten their cheerfulness:
they cheer at your face
as the cheerfulness in harvest;
and twirl when they allot the spoil.
4 For you broke the yoke of his burden
and the rod of his shoulder
— the scion of his exactor as in the day of Midyan.
5 For every boot of the booted quakes,
and garments roll in blood;
but this becomes a burning — a fuel of fire.

A CHILD IS BORN, A SON IS GIVEN

6 For a child is birthed to us; a son is given to us
— and the dominion is on his shoulder:
and he calls his name*
Marvelous, Counsellor, Mighty El,
Eternal Father, Governor of Shalom.

*singular

7 Of the increase of his dominion and shalom
there is no end,
on the throne of David and on his sovereigndom;
to establish and to support
with judgment and with justness
from henceforth — even eternally.
The zeal of Yah Veh Sabaoth works this.

THE WRATH OF YAH VEH

8 Adonay sent a word to Yaaqov
and it fell upon Yisra El:
9 and all the people knew
— Ephrayim and the settler of Shomeron,
saying, in the pomp and greatness of heart,
10 The bricks fall,
and we build with hewn stones:
the sycomores are cut down,
and we change them into cedars:
11 and Yah Veh

ISAIAH 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

shall set up **loft** the adversaries **tribulators** of Rezin **Resin**
against him,
and **join cover** his enemies **together**;
12 The *Syrians* before **Aramiym in front**,
and the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym** behind;
and they shall devour *Israel* **Yisra El** with open mouth.
For all this his **anger wrath** is not turned away,
but his hand is *stretched out* **spread** still.
13 For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them,
neither do they seek
the *LORD* of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
14 Therefore the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
will **shall** cut off from *Israel* **Yisra El**
head and tail, *branch* **palm leaf** and rush, in one day.
15 The *ancient elder* and *honourable* **lifted face**,
he is the head;
and the prophet that teacheth *lies* **falsehood**,
he is the tail.
16 For the *leaders* of this people **that blithe them**
cause them to **err stray**;
and they that are *led* **blithed** of them
are *destroyed* **swallowed**.
17 Therefore the *Lord* **Adonay**
shall *have no joy* **not cheer** in their *young men* **youths**,
neither shall *have* **he** mercy on
their *fatherless* **orphans** and widows:
for every one
is an *hypocrite* **a profaner** and an *evildoer* **a vilifier**,
and every mouth *speaketh* **wordeth** folly.
For all this his **anger wrath** is not turned away,
but his hand is *stretched out* **spread** still.
18 For wickedness burneth as the fire:
it shall devour the briers and thorns,
and shall kindle in the thickets of the forest,
and they shall *mount up* **spiral upward**,
like the *lifting up* **rising** of smoke.
19 Through the wrath
of the *LORD* of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
is the land *darkened* **burnt**,
and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire:
no man shall spare his brother.
20 And he shall *snatch* **cut** on the right *hand*,
and be *hungry* **famish**;
and he shall eat on the left *hand*,
and they shall not be *satisfied* **satiated**:
they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm:
21 *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**, *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**;
and *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**, *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**:
and they together shall be against *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
For all this his **anger wrath** is not turned away,
but his hand is *stretched out* **spread** still.

HO TO THE SCRIBES

10

Woe **Ho** unto them that
decree unrighteous decrees **engrave statutes of mischief**,
and that *write grievousness* **inscribe toil**
which they have *prescribed* **incubed**;
2 To *turn aside* **pervert** the *needy* **poor**
from *judgment* **pleading their cause**,
and to *take away* **strip** the *right* **judgment**
from the *poor* **humble** of my people,
that widows may be their *prey* **spoil**,
and that they may *rob* **plunder** the *fatherless* **orphan**!
3 And what *will shall* ye *do* **work** in the day of visitation,
and in the *desolation* **devastation**
which shall come from far?
to whom *will shall* ye flee for help?
and where *will shall* ye leave your *glory* **honour**?
4 Without me
they shall *bow down* **kneel** under the *prisoners* **bound**,
and they shall fall under the *slain* **slaughtered**.
For all this his **anger wrath** is not turned away,
but his hand is *stretched out* **spread** still.
5 O *Assyrian* **Ho Ashshuri**,
the *rod* **scion** of *mine* **anger my wrath**,
and the *staff* **rod** in their hand
is *mine indignation* **my rage**.
6 I *will shall* send him
against an *hypocritical nation* **a goyim of profaners**,
and against the people of my wrath

YESHA YAH 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

lofts the tribulators of Resin against him
and covers his enemies
12 — the Aramiym in front
and the Peleshethiym behind;
and they devour Yisra El with open mouth.
For all this, he turns not his wrath
and still spreads his hand:
13 and the people
neither turn to him who smites them,
nor seek they Yah Veh Sabaoth:
14 and Yah Veh cuts off from Yisra El
head and tail, palm leaf and rush, in one day.
15 The elder and lifted face, he *is* the head;
and the prophet teaching falsehood, he *is* the tail.
16 For this people who blithe them
cause them to stray;
and the blithed are swallowed.
17 So Adonay
neither cheers in their youths,
nor mercies their orphans and widows:
for every one is a profaner and a vilifier
and every mouth words folly.
For all this he turns not away his wrath
and still spreads his hand.
18 For wickedness burns as the fire
consuming the briers and thorns;
kindling in the thickets of the forest;
spiraling upward as the rising of smoke.
19 Through the wrath of Yah Veh Sabaoth
the land burns,
and the people are as the fuel of the fire:
no man spares his brother.
20 And on the right, he cuts and famishes;
and on the left, he eats and satiates not:
every man eats the flesh of his own arm
21 — Menash Sheh, Ephrayim;
and Ephrayim, Menash Sheh:
and together they *are* against Yah Hudah.
For all this he turns not away his wrath,
and still spreads his hand.

HO TO THE SCRIBES

10

Ho to them engraving statutes of mischief,
and inscribers incribing toil;
to pervert the poor
from pleading their cause;
and strip the judgment
from the humble of my people
— that widows be their spoil
and to plunder the orphan!
3 And what work you in the day of visitation
and in the devastation coming from afar?
To whom flee you for help?
And where leave you your honor?
4 Without me, they kneel under the bound,
and they fall under the slaughtered.
For all this he turns not away his wrath,
and still spreads his hand.
5 Ho, Ashshuri, the scion of my wrath;
and the rod in their hand, my rage:
6 I send him against a goyim of profaners
and against the people of my wrath;

ISAIAH 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

will I give him a charge shall I misvah him,
to take the spoil, and to take **plunder** the prey **plunder**,
and to **tread them down** **set them for trampling**
like the **mire** **heap** of the **streets** **outways**.
7 Howbeit he **meaneth** **considereth** not so,
neither doth his heart **think** **fabricate** so;
but it is in his heart
to **destroy** **desolate** and cut off **nations** **goyim** not a few.
8 For he saith,
Are not my **princes** **governors**
altogether **kings** **sovereigns**?
9 Is not **Calno** **Kalneh** as **Carchemish** **Karchemish**?
is not **Hamath** as **Arpad**?
is not **Samaria** **Shomeron** as **Damascus** **Dammeseq**?
10 As my hand
hath found the **kingdoms** **sovereigndoms** of the idol,
and **whose graven images** **did excel them** **sculptiles**
of **Jerusalem** **Yeru Shalem** and of **Samaria** **Shomeron**;
11 Shall I not **work**, as I have **done** **worked**
unto **Samaria** **Shomeron** and her idols,
so do **work** to **Jerusalem** **Yeru Shalem** and her idols?
12 Wherefore **so be** it shall come to pass,
that when **the Lord** **Adonay**
hath **performed** **clipped** his whole work
upon mount **Zion** **Siyon** and on **Jerusalem** **Yeru Shalem**,
I will **punish** **shall visit**
upon the fruit of the **stout** **greatness** of heart
of the **king** **sovereign** of **Assyria** **Ashshur**,
and the **glory** **adornment** of his **high** **looks** **haughty eyes**.
13 For he saith,
By the **strength** **force** of my hand I have **done** **worked** it,
and by my wisdom; for I **am** **prudent** **discern**:
and I have **removed** **turned aside**
the **bounds** **borders** of the people,
and have **robbed** **plundered** their treasures,
and I have **put** **brought** down the **inhabitants** **settlers**
like a **valiant man** **the mighty**:
14 And my hand hath found as a nest
the **riches** **valuables** of the people:
and as one gathereth eggs that are **left** **abandoned**,
have I gathered all the earth;
and there was none that **moved** **flapped** the wing,
or **opened** **gaped** the mouth, or **peeped** **chirped**.
15 Shall the ax boast itself
against him that heweth therewith?
or shall the **saw** **magnify** **rasp** **greaten** itself
against him that shaketh it?
as if the **rod** **scion** should shake itself
against them that lift it up,
or as if the **staff** **rod** should lift up itself,
as if it were no **wood** **timber**.
16 Therefore shall **the Lord** **Adonay**,
the Lord of hosts **Adonay** **Sabaoth**,
send among his **fat ones** **leanness** **fatness** **emaciation**;
and under his **glory** **honour**
he shall **kindle** **burn** a burning like the burning of a fire.
17 And the light of **Israel** **Yisra El** shall be for a fire,
and his Holy One for a flame:
and it shall burn and **devour** **consume**
his thorns and his briers in one day;
18 And shall **consume** **finish off**
the **glory** **honour** of his forest,
and of his **fruitful field** **orchard/Karmel**,
both soul and **body** **flesh**:
and they shall be as when
a **standardbearer** **fainteth** **an ensignbearer** **melteth**.
19 And the **rest** **survivors** of the trees of his forest
shall be **few** **numerable**,
that a **child** may **write** **lad** **inscribe** them.
THE SURVIVING ESCAPEES
20 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,
that the **remnant** **survivors** of **Israel** **Yisra El**,
and **such as are escaped** **the escapees**
of the house of **Jacob** **Yaaqov**,
shall **no more** **again** **not add**
stay **to lean** upon him that smote them;
but shall **stay** **lean** upon **the LORD** **Yah Veh**,
the Holy One of **Israel** **Yisra El**, in truth.
21 The **remnant** **survivors** shall return,

YESHA YAH 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

I misvah him to take the spoil
and to plunder the plunder;
and to set them for trampling
as the heap of the outways:
7 and he — he neither considers thus,
nor fabricates his heart thus;
but in his heart
is to desolate and cut off goyim not a few.
8 — for he says,
Are not my governors altogether sovereigns?
9 Is not Kalneh as Karchemish?
Is not Hamath as Arpad?
Is not Shomeron as Dammeseq?
10 As my hand found the sovereigndoms of the idol,
and their sculptiles of Yeru Shalem and Shomeron;
11 Work I not
as I worked to Shomeron and her idols?
Work thus to Yeru Shalem and her idols?
12 And so be it,
when Adonay clips his whole work
on mount Siyon and on Yeru Shalem,
I visit upon the fruit of the greatness of heart
of the sovereign of Ashshur
and the adornment of his haughty eyes.
13 For he said,
By the force of my hand, I worked;
and by my wisdom, I discerned:
and I turned aside the borders of the people
and plundered their treasures;
and I brought down the settlers as the mighty:
14 and my hand found, as a nest,
the valuables of the people:
and as one gathers abandoned eggs,
I gathered all the earth;
and no one flapped the wing
or gaped the mouth or chirped.
15 Boasts the ax over him who hews therewith?
Or greatens the rasp over him who shakes it?
— as a scion shakes them who lift it?
Or as a rod lifts itself with no timber?
16 So Adonay — Adonay Sabaoth
sends emaciation among his fatness;
and under his honor
he burns a burning as the burning of a fire:
17 and the light of Yisra El is for a fire,
and his Holy One for a flame:
and in one day
it burns and consumes his thorns and his briers;
18 and finishes off the honor of his forest
and of his orchard/Karmel
— both soul and flesh:
to become as when an ensignbearer melts:
19 and the survivors of the trees of his forest
become a number,
that even a lad *can* inscribe them.
THE SURVIVING ESCAPEES
20 And so be it, in that day,
the survivors of Yisra El
and the escapees of the house of Yaaqov
add not to lean upon him who smote them;
and lean upon Yah Veh,
the Holy One of Yisra El, in truth:
21 the survivors return

ISAIAH 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

22 even the *remnant survivors* of Jacob **Yaaqov**,
unto the mighty **God El**.
For though thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**
be as the sand of the sea,
yet a *remnant the survivors* of them shall return:
the consumption *decreed* **appointed**
shall overflow with *righteousness* **justness**.
23 For the Lord **GOD** of hosts **Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth**
shall make **work** a *consumption* **final finish**,
even *determined* **appointed**, in the midst of all the land.
24 Therefore thus saith
the Lord **GOD** of hosts **Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
O my people that *dwellst* **settlest** in *Zion* **Siyon**,
be not afraid of **awe not** the *Assyrian* **Ashshuri**:
he shall smite thee with a *rod* **scion**,
and shall lift up his *staff* **rod** against thee,
after the *manner* **way** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
25 For yet a very little while,
and the *indignation* **rage** shall *cease* **conclude**,
and *mine* **anger** **my wrath**
in their *destruction* **consumption**.
26 And the **LORD** of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
shall *stir up* **waken** a *scourge* **whip** for him
according to the *slaughter* **striking** of *Midian* **Midyan**
at the rock of *Oreb*:
and as his rod was upon the sea,
so shall he lift it up
after the *manner* **way** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
THE OINTMENT DESPOILS THE YOKE
27 And **so be** it shall come to pass, in that day,
that his burden shall *be taken away* **turn aside**
from off thy shoulder,
and his yoke from off thy neck,
and the yoke shall *be destroyed* **despoil**
because at the face of the *anointing* **ointment**.
28 He is come to *Aiath* **Ayath**, he is passed to Migron;
at Michmash
he hath laid up **mustereth** his *carriages* **instruments**:
29 They are *gone* **passed** over the passage:
they have taken up their lodging at Geba;
Ramah is afraid **trembleth**;
Gibeah **Gibah** of *Saul is fled* **Shaul fleeth**.
30 Lift up **Resound** thy voice,
O daughter of *Gallim* **heaps**:
cause it to be heard unto **hearken** O Laish,
O *poor* **humble** Anathoth.
31 *Madmenah is removed* **fleeth**;
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Gebim* **the way of the dugouts**
gather **withdraw** themselves to flee.
32 As yet shall he *remain* **stand** at Nob that day:
he shall shake his hand
against the mount of the daughter of Zion **Bath Siyon**,
the hill of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
33 Behold,
the Lord, the **LORD** of hosts **Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
shall lop the *bough* **foliage** with *terror* **violence**:
and the high ones of *stature* **height**
shall be *hewn* **cut down**,
and the *haughty* **lofty** shall be *humbled* **abased**.
34 And he shall *cut down* **strike** the thickets of the forest
with iron,
and Lebanon shall **have a mighty** fall by a *mighty one*.

THE BRANCH

11 And there shall come forth a rod
out of the *stem* **stump** of *Jesse* **Yishay**,
and a Branch shall *grow* **bear fruit** out of his roots:
cp Yesha Yah 11:10
2 And the spirit of the **LORD** **Yah Veh** shall rest upon him,
the spirit of wisdom and understanding,
the spirit of counsel and might,
the spirit of knowledge
and of the *fear* **awe** of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**;
3 And shall *make* **scint** him of *quick* **understanding**
in the *fear* **awe** of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**:
and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes,
neither reprove after the hearing of his ears:
4 But with *righteousness* **justness** shall he judge the poor,
and reprove with *equity* **straightness**
for the *meek* **humble** of the earth:

YESHA YAH 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— the survivors of Yaaqov to the mighty El.
22 For though your people Yisra El
become as the sand of the sea,
their survivors return:
the appointed consumption overflows with justness:
23 for Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth works a final finish,
appointed midst all the land.
24 So Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth says thus:
O my people settling in Siyon, awe not the Ashshuri:
he smites you with a scion
and lifts his rod against you after the way of Misrayim:
25 for yet a very little while,
and I conclude the rage,
and my wrath in their consumption.
26 And Yah Veh Sabaoth wakens a whip for him
according to the striking of Midyan
at the rock of Oreb:
and as his rod is over the sea,
and he lifts it as in the way of Misrayim.
THE OINTMENT DESPOILS THE YOKE
27 And so be it, in that day,
he turns aside his burden from off your shoulder
and his yoke from off your neck;
and the yoke despoils at the face of the ointment.
28 He comes to Ayath; he passes to Migron;
he musters his instruments at Michmash:
29 they pass over the passage:
they take up their lodging at Geba;
Ramah trembles; Gibah of Shaul flees.
30 Resound your voice, O daughter of heaps!
Hearken, O Laish! Humble, O Anathoth!
31 Madmenah flees;
the settlers of the way of the dugouts withdraw.
32 As yet he stands that day at Nob:
the mount of Bath Siyon, the hill of Yeru Shalem
shakes his hand.
33 Behold,
Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth
lops the foliage with violence:
and cuts the high ones of height
and abases the lofty:
34 and he strikes the thickets of the forest with iron,
and Lebanon falls by the mighty.
THE BRANCH
11 And a Rod comes from the stump of Yishay
and a Branch from his roots bears fruit:
cp Yesha Yah 11:10
2 and the spirit of Yah Veh rests upon him
— the spirit of wisdom and understanding,
the spirit of counsel and might,
the spirit of knowledge,
and of the awe of Yah Veh;
3 and scents him in the awe of Yah Veh:
and he neither judges after the sight of his eyes,
nor reproveth after the hearing of his ears:
4 and with justness he judges the poor,
and reproveth with straightness
for the humble of the earth:

ISAIAH 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and he shall smite the earth
with the **rod scion** of his mouth,
and with the **breath spirit** of his lips
shall he **slay execute** the wicked.
5 And **righteousness justness**
shall be the girdle of his loins,
and **faithfulness trustworthiness**
the girdle of his **reins loins**.
6 The wolf also shall **dwelt sojourn** with the lamb,
and the leopard shall **lie down crouch** with the kid;
and the calf and the **young lion whelp**
and the fatling together;
and a little **child lad** shall **lead drive** them.
7 And the **cow heifer** and the bear shall **feed graze**;
their **young ones children** shall **lie down crouch** together:
and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.
8 And the **sucking child suckling**
shall **play stroke** on the hole of the asp,
and the weaned **child** shall **put spread** his hand
on the **cockatrice' den hisser's hole**.
9 They shall not **hurt vilify** nor **destroy ruin**
in all my holy mountain:
for the earth shall **be full fill**
of the knowledge of **the LORD Yah Veh**,
as the waters cover the sea.
10 And in that day there shall be a root of **Jesse Yishay**,
which shall stand for an ensign of the people;
to it shall the **Gentiles goyim** seek:
and his rest shall be **glorious honourable**.

cp Yesha Yah 11:1

THE SURVIVORS RESTORED

11 And **so be** it shall come to pass, in that day,
that the **Lord Adonay**
shall set his hand again **the second time secondly**
to recover **chattel** the **remnant survivors** of his people,
which shall **be left survive**,
from **Assyria Ashshur**, and from **Egypt Misrayim**,
and from **Pathros**, and from **Cush Kush**, and from **Elam**,
and from **Shinar**, and from **Hamath**,
and from the islands of the sea.
12 And he shall **set up lift** an ensign
for the **nations goyim**,
and shall **assemble gather**
the **outcasts overthrown** of **Israel Yisra El**,
and gather **together**
the **dispersed scattered** of **Judah Yah Hudah**
from the four **corners wings** of the earth.
13 The envy also of **Ephraim Ephrayim**
shall **depart turn aside**,
and the **adversaries tribulators** of **Judah Yah Hudah**
shall be cut off:
Ephraim Ephrayim
shall not envy **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and **Judah Yah Hudah**
shall not vex **Ephraim tribulate Ephrayim**.
14 But they shall fly
upon the shoulders of the **Philistines Peleshethiym**
toward the west seaward;
they shall **spoil plunder**
them the sons of the east together:
they shall **lay spread** their hand upon **Edom** and **Moab**;
and the **children sons** of **Ammon**
shall **obey hearken unto** them.
15 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall **utterly destroy devote**
the tongue of the **Egyptian Misrayim** sea;
and with **his mighty wind the strength of his wind/spirit**
shall he shake his hand over the river,
and shall smite it in the seven **streams wadies**,
and **make hath** men **go over dryshod tread in shoes**.
16 And there shall be an highway
for the **remnant survivors** of his people,
which shall **be left survive**, from **Assyria Ashshur**;
like as it was to **Israel Yisra El**
in the day that he **came up ascended**
out of the land of **Egypt Misrayim**.

A PSALM OF SPREAD HANDS

12 And in that day thou shalt say, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
I will praise **shall spread hands unto** thee:

YESHA YAH 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and he smites the earth with the scion of his mouth
and with the spirit of his lips he executes the wicked:
5 and justness is the girdle of his loins,
and trustworthiness the girdle of his loins.
6 And the wolf sojourns with the lamb
and the leopard crouches with the kid
— the calf and the whelp and the fatling together;
and a little lad drives them:
7 and the heifer and the bear graze
— their children crouch together:
and the lion eats straw as the ox
8 and the suckling strokes on the hole of the asp,
and the weaned spreads his hand
on the hole of hisser.
9 They neither vilify nor ruin in all my holy mountain:
for the earth fills with the knowledge of Yah Veh,
as waters cover the sea.
10 And in that day,
a Root of Yishay stands for an ensign of the people;
to him the goyim seek:
and his rest becomes honorable.
cp Yesha Yah 11:1

THE SURVIVORS RESTORED

11 And so be it, in that day,
Adonay adds to set his hand secondly
to chattel the survivors of his people who survive
— from **Ashshur** and from **Misrayim**
and from **Pathros** and from **Kush** and from **Elam**
and from **Shinar** and from **Hamath**
and from the islands of the sea:
12 and he lifts an ensign for the goyim
and gathers the overthrown of **Yisra El**
and gathers the scattered of **Yah Hudah**
from the four wings of the earth:
13 and turns aside the envy of **Ephrayim**;
and cuts off the tribulators of **Yah Hudah**:
neither **Ephrayim** envies **Yah Hudah**,
nor **Yah Hudah** tribulates **Ephrayim**:
and they fly seaward
on the shoulders of the **Peleshethiym**;
together they plunder the sons of the east:
Edom and **Moab** spread their hand
and the sons of **Ammon** hearken to them.
15 And **Yah Veh**
devotes the tongue of the **Misrayim** sea;
and with the strength of his wind/spirit
he shakes his hand over the river
and smites it in the seven wadies;
and has men tread it in shoes.
16 And so be it, a highway
for the survivors of his people of **Ashshur** who survive
— as it became to **Yisra El**
in the day he ascended from the land of **Misrayim**.

A PSALM OF SPREAD HANDS

12 And in that day you say, O **Yah Veh**,
I spread hands to you:

ISAIAH 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

though thou wast angry with me,
thine anger **thy wrath** is turned away,
and thou comfortedst **sighedst over** me.
2 Behold, **God El** is my salvation;
I will trust **shall confide**, and not be afraid fear:
for the **LORD JEHOVAH Yah Yah Veh**
is my strength and my song **psalm**;
he also is become my salvation.
3 Therefore with joy **rejoicing** shall ye draw **bail** water
out of the wells **fountains** of salvation.
4 And in that day shall ye say,
Praise the **LORD Spread hands unto Yah Veh**,
call upon his name,
declare his doings **make known his exploits**
among the people,
make mention **remember** that his name is exalted.
5 Sing **Psalm** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**;
for he hath done excellent things **worked pomp**:
this is known in all the earth.
6 Cry out **Resound** and shout,
thou inhabitant **settlers of Zion Siyon**:
for great is the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**
in the midst of thee.

THE BURDEN OF BABEL

13 The burden of *Babylon* **Babel**,
which *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah** the son of *Amoz* **Amos** did see.
2 Lift ye up a banner **an ensign**
upon the high **barren** mountain,
exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand,
that they may go
into the gates **portals** of the nobles **volunteers**.
3 I have commanded **misvahed** my sanctified ones **hallowed**,
I have also called my mighty ones
for mine anger **my wrath**,
even them
that rejoice **jump for joy** in my highness **pomp**.
4 The noise **voice** of a multitude in the mountains,
like as **in the likeness** of a great people;
a tumultuous **an uproar of** noise
of the kingdoms **sovereigndoms** of nations **goyim**
gathered together:
the **LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth**
mustereth the host of the battle **war**.
5 They come from a far country **land**,
from the end of heaven **the heavens**,
even the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and the weapons **instruments** of his indignation **rage**,
to destroy **despoil** the whole land.
6 Howl ye;
for the day of the **LORD is at hand Yah Veh approacheth**;
it shall come as a destruction **ravage**
from the **Almighty Shadday**.
7 Therefore shall all hands be faint **slacken**,
and every man's heart shall melt:
8 And they shall be afraid **terrify**:
pangs pains and sorrows **pangs** shall take hold of them;
they shall be in pain **writhe**
as a woman that travaileth **birthing**:
they shall be amazed **marvel**
one at another **every man at friend**;
their faces shall be as flames.
9 Behold, the day of the **LORD Yah Veh** cometh,
cruel both with wrath and fierce anger **fuming wrath**,
to lay **set** the land desolate:
and he shall destroy **desolate** the sinners thereof out of it.
10 For the stars of heaven **the heavens**
and the constellations thereof **kesil**
shall not give **halal** their light:
the sun shall be darkened in his going forth,
and the moon
shall not cause **illuminate** her light to shine.
11 And I will punish **shall visit** the world for their evil,
and the wicked for their iniquity **perversity**;
and I will **shall** cause
the arrogancy **pomp** of the proud **arrogant**
to cease **shabbathize**,
and will lay low **shall abase**
the haughtiness **pomp** of the terrible **tyrant**.

YESHA YAH 12, 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

though you were angry with me,
you turn away your wrath and you sigh over me.
2 Behold, **El is** my salvation;
I confide, and fear not:
for **Yah Yah Veh is** my strength and psalm;
and he is my salvation.
3 and with rejoicing you bail water
from the fountains of salvation.
4 And in that day, you say,
Spread hands to **Yah Veh!** Call on his name!
Make known his exploits among the people!
Remember — his name is exalted!
5 Psalm to **Yah Veh** for he worked pomp!
— this is known in all the earth.
6 Resound and shout, you settlers of **Siyon**:
for great is the Holy One of *Yisra El* in your midst.

THE BURDEN OF BABEL

13 The burden of Babel
Yesha Yah the son of *Amos* saw:
2 You, lift an ensign upon the barren mountain;
exalt the voice to them;
shake the hand,
so that they go into the portals of the volunteers.
3 I misvah my hallowed;
I also call my mighty for my wrath
— those jumping for joy in my pomp.
4 The voice of a multitude in the mountains,
in the likeness of a great people;
an uproar of noise of the sovereigndoms of *goyim*
who gather:
Yah Veh Sabaoth musters the host of the war:
they come from a land afar
— from the end of the heavens
— **Yah Veh** and the instruments of his rage
to despoil the whole land.
6 You, howl!
for the day of **Yah Veh** approaches;
it comes as a ravage from **Shadday**.
7 So all hands slacken
and every heart of man melts;
and they terrify:
pains and pangs take hold of them;
they writhe as a woman birthing:
every man marvels at friend
— their faces as flames.
9 Behold, the day of **Yah Veh** comes — cruel
— with both wrath and fuming wrath
to set the land desolate:
and he desolates the sinners from it.
10 For the stars of the heavens and **kesil**
halal not their light:
the sun darkens in its going,
and the moon illuminates not its light.
11 And I visit the world for their evil
and the wicked for their perversity;
and I cause the pomp of the arrogant to shabbathize;
and abase the pomp of the tyrant.

ISAIAH 13, 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 I will make **shall esteem** a man
more precious than *fine* **pure** gold;
even a man — **humanity**
than the *golden wedge* **ore** of Ophir.

13 Therefore I will *shake* **shall quake** the heavens,
and the earth shall *remove* **quake** out of her place,
in the wrath of the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
and in the day of his *fierce anger* **fuming wrath**.

14 And it shall be as the *chased roe* **driven gazelle**,
and as a *sheep* **flock**
that *no man taketh up* **none shall gather**:
they shall every man *turn to* **face** his own people,
and flee every *one* **man** into his own land.

15 Every one that is found shall be thrust through;
and every one that is *joined unto them* **scraped away**
shall fall by the sword.

16 Their *children* **sucklings** also
shall be *dashed to pieces* **splattered**
before in front of their eyes;
their houses shall be *spoiled* **plundered**,
and their *wives ravished* **women lain with and raped**.

17 Behold,
I will *stir up the Medes* **shall waken the Maday**
against them,
which shall not *regard* **fabricate** silver;
and as for gold, they shall not delight in it.

18 Their bows also
shall *dash* **splatter** the *young men* **lads to pieces**;
and they shall *have no pity on* **not mercy**
the fruit of the *womb* **belly**;
their eye shall not spare *children* **sons**.

19 And *Babylon* **Babel**,
the *glory* **splendour of kingdoms** **sovereigndoms**,
the *beauty* **adornment**
of the *Chaldees' excellency* **Kesediym's pomp**,
shall be as when *God* **Elohim**
overthrew *Sodom* **Sedom** and *Gomorrah* **Amorah**.

20 It shall never be *inhabited* **settled in perpetuity**,
neither shall it be *dwelt* **tabernacled** in
from generation to generation:
neither shall the *Arabian pitch* **Arabiy** tent there;
neither shall the *shepherds* **tenders**
make their fold **crouch** there.

21 But *wild beasts of the desert* **dwellers**
shall *lie* **crouch** there;
and their houses
shall be *full filled* of *doleful creatures* **howlers**;
and *daughters of the owls* shall *dwell* **tabernacle** there,
and *satyrs* **bucks** shall dance there.

22 And the *wild beasts of the islands* **island howlers**
shall *cry* **answer** in their *desolate houses* **abandonments**,
and *dragons* **monsters**
in their *pleasant palaces* **manses of luxury**:
and her time is near to come,
and her days shall not be *prolonged* **drawn out**.

YAH VEH MERCIES YAAQOV

14

For the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
will **shall** have mercy on *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and will **shall** yet choose *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and set them in their own *land* **soil**:
and the *strangers* **sojourners** shall be joined with them,
and they shall *cleave* **be scraped**
to the house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.

2 And the people shall take them,
and bring them to their place:
and the house of *Israel* **Yisra El** shall *possess* **inherit** them
in the *land* **soil** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
for servants and *handmaids* **maids**:
and they shall *take them captives*, **be captured**
whose captives they were **by their captors**;
and they shall *rule over* **subjugate**
their *oppressors* **extractors**.

3 And **so be** it shall *come to pass*,
in the day that the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall *give thee rest* **thee** from thy *sorrow* **contortion**,
and from thy *fear* **quivering**,
and from the hard *bondage* **service**
wherein thou wast made to serve
which was served on thee,

YESHA YAH 13, 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 I esteem a man more precious than pure gold;
and humanity *more* than the ore of Ophir.

13 So I quake the heavens
and quake the earth from her place
in the wrath of Yah Veh Sabaoth
and in the day of his fuming wrath.

14 And so be it,
as the driven gazelle and as a flock,
no one gathers:
every man faces his own people
and every man flees to his own land:
every one found *is* thrust through;
and every one scraped away, falls by the sword:
and they splatter their sucklings
in front of their eyes:
plunder their houses
and lie down with their women and rape.

17 Behold,
I waken the Maday against them,
who fabricate not silver;
and as for gold, they delight not therein.

18 And their bows splatter the lads;
and they neither mercy the fruit of the belly
nor their eye spares sons.

19 And Babel, the splendour of sovereigndoms,
the adornment of the pomp of the Kesediym,
becomes as
when Elohim overthrew Sedom and Amorah
— neither to settle therein in perpetuity
nor to tabernacle therein
from generation to generation:
neither the Arabiy tent there;
nor the tenders crouch there:
and desert dwellers crouch there;
and their houses are filled by howlers;
and daughters of the owls tabernacle there,
and bucks dance there:
and the island howlers
answer in their abandonments,
and monsters in their manses of luxury:
and her time comes near,
and her days are not drawn out.

YAH VEH MERCIES YAAQOV

14

Because Yah Veh mercies Yaaqov,
and yet chooses Yisra El,
and sets them in their own soil:
and the sojourners join with them
and scrape them to the house of Yaaqov:
and the people take them
and bring them to their place:
and the house of Yisra El
inherits them in the soil of Yah Veh
for servants and maids:
captives of their captors;
and they subjugate to their extractors.

2

And so be it,
in the day Yah Veh rests you from your contortion,
and from your quivering,
and from the hard service served on you

3

ISAIAH 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 That thou shalt *take up lift* this proverb
against the *king sovereign* of *Babylon Babel*, and say,
How hath the *oppressor ceased exactor shabbathized!*
the *golden city extortioners of gold*
ceased *shabbathized!*
5 The *LORD Yah Veh*
hath broken the *staff rod* of the wicked,
and the *sceptre scion* of the *rulers sovereigns*.
6 He who smote the people in wrath
with a *continual stroke stroke without revolt*,
he that *ruled subjugated* the *nations goyim*
in *anger wrath*
is persecuted, and none *hindereth spareth*.
7 The whole earth is at rest, and is *quiet resteth*:
they break forth into *singing shouting*.
8 Yea, the fir trees *rejoice cheer* at thee,
and the cedars of Lebanon, *saying*,
Since thou art laid down,
no *feller is come up cutter ascendeth* against us.
9 Hell *Sheol* from beneath is *moved quaketh* for thee
to meet thee at thy coming:
it *stirreth up wakeneth* the *dead ghost* for thee,
even all the *chief ones he goats* of the earth;
it hath raised up from their thrones
all the *kings sovereigns* of the *nations goyim*.
10 All they shall *speak answer* and say unto thee,
Art thou also *become weak worn* as we?
art thou become like unto us?
11 Thy pomp is brought down to *the grave sheol*,
and the *noise sound* of thy *viols bagpipes*:
the *worm maggot* is spread under thee,
and the *worms maggots* cover thee.

THE HALALED ONE

12 How art thou fallen from *heaven the heavens*,
O *Lucifer Halaled one*, son of the *morning dawn!*
how art thou cut down to the *ground earth*,
which didst *weaken vanquish* the *nations goyim!*
13 For thou hast said in thine heart,
I *will shall* ascend into *heaven the heavens*,
I *will shall* exalt my throne above the stars of *God El*:
I *will shall* sit also upon the mount of the congregation,
in the *sides flanks* of the north:
14 I *will shall* ascend
above the *heights bamahs* of the *thick clouds*;
I *will be* — like *the most High Elyon*.
15 Yet thou shalt be brought down to *hell sheol*,
to the *sides flanks* of the *pit well*.
16 They that see thee shall *narrowly look peer* upon thee,
and *consider discern* thee, *saying*,
Is this the man that *made quaked* the earth *to tremble*,
that *did shake kingdoms quaked sovereigndoms*;
17 That *made set* the world as a wilderness,
and *destroyed demolished* the cities *thereof*;
that opened not the house of his *prisoners bound*?
18 All the *kings sovereigns* of the *nations goyim*,
even all of them, lie in *glory honour*,
every *one man* in his own house.
cp Yahn 12:31, Loukas 10:18, Apocalypse 12:7—12
19 But thou art cast out of thy *grave tomb*
like an *abominable abhorrent* branch,
and as the *raiment robe*
of those that are *slain the slaughtered*,
thrust through stabbed with a sword,
that go down *descend* to the stones of the *pit well*;
as a carcass *trodden under feet trampled*.
20 Thou shalt not be *joined united* with them
in *burial the tomb*,
because thou hast *destroyed ruined* thy land,
and *slain slaughtered* thy people:
the seed of *evildoers vilifiers*
shall never *eternally* be *renowned called out*.
21 Prepare slaughter for his *children sons*
for the *iniquity perversity* of their fathers;
that they do not rise, nor possess the land,
nor fill the face of the world with cities.
22 For I *will shall* rise up against them,
saith the LORD of hosts an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth,
and cut off from *Babylon Babel* the name,

YESHA YAH 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 — to lift this proverb against the sovereign of Babel,
and say,
How the exactor shabbathizes!
The extortioners of gold shabbathize!
5 Yah Veh breaks the rod of the wicked
— the scion of the sovereigns:
6 he who smote the people in wrath
with a stroke without revolt,
who subjugates the goyim in wrath
persecutes; spares no one.
7 At rest — the whole earth rests;
they break forth into shouting:
8 Yes, the fir trees cheer at you
— the cedars of Lebanon.
Since you lay down,
no cutter ascends against us:
9 sheol from beneath quakes for you
to meet you at your coming:
it wakens the ghost for you
all the he goats of the earth;
it raises from their thrones
all the sovereigns of the goyim.
10 They all answer and say to you,
Become you also worn as we?
Become you like us?
11 Your pomp is brought down to sheol
with the sound of your bagpipes:
the maggot spreads under you
and the maggots cover you.

THE HALALED ONE

12 How you fell from the heavens,
O Halaled one, son of the dawn
— cut down to the earth:
who vanquished the goyim!
13 For you said in your heart,
I ascend into the heavens:
I exalt my throne above the stars of El:
and I sit upon the mount of the congregation
in the flanks of the north:
14 I ascend above the bamahs of the thick clouds
— like Elyon.
15 Surely you are brought down to sheol
— to the flanks of the well.
16 They who see you peer at you, discerning,
Is this the man who quakes the earth?
Who quakes sovereigndoms?
Who sets the world as a wilderness?
And demolishes the cities?
Who opens not the house of his bound?
17 All the sovereigns of the goyim
— all of them lie in honor,
every man in his own house.
cp Yahn 12:31, Loukas 10:18, Apocalypse 12:7—12
19 And you are cast from your tomb
as an abhorrent branch;
and as the robe of the slaughtered
stabbed with a sword;
descending to the stones of the well;
as a carcass trampled.
20 You unite not with them in the tomb
— because you ruined your land
and slaughtered your people:
the seed of vilifiers is never called out — eternally.
21 Prepare slaughter for his sons
for the perversity of their fathers;
that they neither rise nor possess the land
nor fill the face of the world with cities.
22 For I rise against them
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
and from Babel I cut off the name

ISAIAH 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and remnant survivors, and son offspring,
and nephew posterity,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
23 I will also make shall set it a possession for the bittern,
and pools marshes of water:
and I will shall sweep it
with the besom broom of destruction desolation,
saith the LORD of hosts an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth.

THE BURDEN OF ASHSHUR

24 The LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth
hath sworn oathed, saying,
Surely as I have thought considered,
so shall it come to pass be;
and as I have purposed counselled,
so shall it stand rise:
25 That I will shall break the Assyrian Ashshuri
in my land,
and upon my mountains tread trample him under foot:
then shall his yoke depart turn aside from off them,
and his burden depart turn aside from off their shoulders.
26 This is the purpose counsel
that is purposed counselled upon the whole earth:
and this is the hand
that is stretched out spread upon all the nations goyim.
27 For the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth
hath purposed counselled,
and who shall disannul break it?
and his hand is stretched out spread,
and who shall turn it back?

THE BURDEN OF PELESHETH

28 In the year that king Ahaz sovereign Ach Az died
was this burden.
29 Rejoice Cheer not thou, whole Palestina Pelesheth,
because the rod scion of him that smote thee is broken:
for out of the serpent's root
shall come forth a cockatrice hisser,
and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent seraph.
30 And the firstborn firstbirthed of the poor shall feed graze,
and the needy shall lie down in safety crouch confidently:
and I will shall kill thy root with famine,
and he shall slay slaughter thy remnant survivors.
31 Howl, O gate portal; cry, O city;
thou, whole Palestina Pelesheth, art dissolved:
for there shall come from the north a smoke,
and none shall be alone in his appointed times seasons.
32 What shall one then
answer the messengers angels of the nation goyim?
That the LORD Yah Veh hath founded Zion Siyon,
and the poor humble of his people
shall trust seek refuge in it.

THE BURDEN OF MOAB

15 The burden of Moab.
Because in the night
Ar of Moab is laid waste ravaged,
and brought to silence rendered mute;
because in the night
Kir Qir of Moab is laid waste ravaged,
and brought to silence rendered mute;
2 He is gone up ascendeth to Bajith Bayith, and to Dibon,
the high places bamahs, to weep weeping:
Moab shall howl over Nebo, and over Medeba:
on all their heads shall be baldness,
and every beard cut off.
3 In their streets outways
they shall gird themselves with sackcloth:
on the tops of their houses roofs,
and in their streets broadways,
every one shall howl,
descending into weeping abundantly.
4 And Heshbon shall cry, and Elealeh El Aleh:
their voice shall be heard even unto Jahaz Ychsah:
therefore the armed soldiers equipped of Moab
shall cry out shout;
his life soul shall be grievous tremble unto him.
5 My heart shall cry out for Moab;
his fugitives shall flee unto Zoar Soar,
an heifer of three years old:
for by the mounting up ascent of Luhith Luchith
with weeping shall they go it up ascend;

YESHA YAH 14, 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and survivors and offspring and posterity
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
23 I set it a possession for the bittern,
and marshes of water:
and I sweep it with the broom of desolation
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth.

THE BURDEN OF ASHSHUR

24 Yah Veh Sabaoth oaths, saying,
Surely as I consider, so be it;
and as I counsel, so it rises:
25 that I break the Ashshuri in my land,
and trample him upon my mountains:
and turn aside his yoke from off them
and turn aside his burden from off their shoulders.
26 This is the counsel
counselled upon the whole earth:
and this is the hand
spread upon all the goyim.
27 For Yah Veh Sabaoth counsels,
and who breaks it?
and his hand spreads,
and who turns it back?

THE BURDEN OF PELESHETH

28 In the year sovereign Ach Az dies,
— this burden:
29 You, cheer not Pelesheth — all of you
because the scion of him who smote you is broken:
for from the root of the serpent comes forth a hisser;
and his fruit is a flying seraph.
30 And the firstbirthed of the poor graze
and the needy crouch confidently:
and I kill your root with famine
and he slaughters your survivors.
31 Howl, O portal! Cry, O city!
You are dissolved, Pelesheth, all of you:
for from the north comes smoke,
and no one is alone in his seasons.
32 What then, answers one,
of the angels of the goyim?
That Yah Veh founded Siyon,
and the humble of his people seek refuge therein.

THE BURDEN OF MOAB

15

The burden of Moab:

Because in a night
Ar of Moab is ravaged and rendered mute;
because in a night
Qir of Moab is ravaged and rendered mute:
2 he ascends to Bayith and to Dibon
— to the bamahs, weeping:
Moab howls over Nebo and over Medeba
— baldness on all their heads
— every beard cut off.
3 In their outways they gird with sackcloth:
on their roofs and in their broadways
every one howls
— descending into weeping abundantly.
4 And Heshbon cries, and El Aleh:
their voice is heard to Ychsah:
so the equipped of Moab shout;
his soul trembles.
5 My heart is toward Moab;
his fugitives cry out to Soar, an heifer of three:
for by the ascent of Luchith
they ascend with weeping;

ISAIAH 15, 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for in the way of Horonaim **Horonayim**

6 they shall *raise up* **waken** a cry of *destruction* **breaking**.
For the waters of Nimrim shall be *desolate* **desolations**:
for the hay is withered away,
7 the *grass* **faileth sprout finisheth**, there is no green *thing*.
Therefore the abundance they have *gotten* **worked**,
and that which they have *laid up* **mustered**,
shall they *carry* **bear** away
to the *brook* **wadi** of the willows.
8 For the cry is gone round about the borders of Moab;
the howling *thereof* unto *Eglaim* **Eglayim**,
and the howling *thereof* unto Beerelim.
9 For the waters of Dimon shall be *full* **filled** of blood:
for I *will bring more* **shall place additions** upon Dimon,
lions upon *him that escapeth* **the escapees** of Moab,
and upon the *remnant* **survivors** of the *land* **soil**.

JUSTICE UPON MOAB

16

Send ye the *lamb* **ram**
to the *ruler* **sovereign** of the land
from *Sela* **the rock** to the wilderness,
unto the mount of the daughter of *Zion* **Siyon**.
2 For it shall be, *that*,
as a *wandering bird* **flapping flyer**
cast **sent** out of the nest,
so the daughters of Moab
shall be at the *fords* **passages** of Arnon.
3 Take counsel, *execute judgment* **work justice**;
make **place** thy shadow
as the night in the midst of the *noonday* **noon**;
hide the *outcasts* **expelled**;
bewray **expose** not him that *wandereth* **flappeth**.
4 Let mine *outcasts* **dwelling expelled sojourn** with thee,
Moab; be thou a covert to them
from the face of the *spoiler* **ravager**:
for the *extortioner* **is at an end** **oppressor ceaseth**,
the *spoiler* **ceaseth** **ravage finisheth**,
the *oppressors* **trampplers** are consumed out of the land.
5 And in mercy shall the throne be established:
and he shall sit upon it in truth
in the *tabernacle* **tent** of David,
judging, and seeking judgment,
and hasting *righteousness* **justness**.
6 We have heard of the *pride* **pomp** of Moab;
he is *very proud* **mighty pompous**:
even of his *haughtiness* **pomp**,
and his *pride* **pomp**, and his wrath:
but his lies shall not be so.
7 Therefore shall Moab howl for Moab,
every one shall howl:
for the foundations of *Kirhareth* **Qir Hareseth**
shall ye *mourn* **meditate**; surely they *are* **be** stricken.
8 For the fields of Heshbon languish,
and the vine of Sibmah:
the *lords* **masters** of the *heathen* **goyim**
have *broken down* **hammered**
the *principal plants* **grapevines** *thereof*,
they are *come* **touched** *even* unto *Jazer* **Yazer**,
they wandered through the wilderness:
her branches are *stretched out* **abandoned**,
they are *gone* **passed** over the sea.
9 Therefore I *will bewail* **shall weep**
with the weeping of *Jazer* **Yazer** the vine of Sibmah:
I *will water* **shall saturate** thee with my tears,
O Heshbon, and *Elealeh* **El Aleh**:
for the shouting for thy summer fruits
and for thy harvest is fallen.
10 And *gladness* **cheerfulness** is *taken away* **gathered**,
and *joy* **twirling** out of the *plentiful field* **orchard/Karmel**;
and in the vineyards there shall be no *singing* **shouting**,
neither shall there be shouting:
the treaders shall tread out no wine
in *their presses* **troughs**;
I have made their *vintage* shouting to *cease* **shabbathize**.
11 Wherefore my *bowels* **inwards** shall *sound* **roar**
like an harp for Moab,
and mine *inward parts* **inwards**
for *Kirhareth* **Qir Hareseth**.
12 And **so be** it shall *come to pass*,
when it is seen that Moab is weary on the *high place* **bamah**,

YESHA YAH 15, 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for in the way of Horonaim

6 they waken a cry of breaking.
For the waters of Nimrim are desolations:
for the hay withers away,
7 the sprout finishes off; there is no green.
So the abundance they worked
and what they mustered
they bear away to the wadi of the willows.
8 For the cry goes around the borders of Moab
— the howling to Eglayim
and the howling to Beerelim:
9 for the waters of Dimon fill with blood:
for I place additions upon Dimon
— lions upon the escapees of Moab
and upon the survivors of the soil.

JUSTICE ON MOAB

16

You, send the ram to the sovereign of the land
— from the rock to the wilderness
to the mount of the daughter of Siyon.
2 And so be it,
as a flapping flyer sent from the nest,
thus be the daughters of Moab
at the passages of Arnon.
3 Take counsel; work justice;
place your shadow as the night midst the noon;
hide the expelled;
expose not him who flaps.
4 My expelled sojourn with you, O Moab;
a covert from the face of the ravager:
for the oppressor ceases; the ravage finishes;
the trampplers are consumed from the land.
5 And established in mercy is the throne:
and he sits thereon in truth in the tent of David
— judging and seeking judgment
and hasting justness.
6 We hear of the pomp of Moab;
— mighty pompous:
even of his pomp — his pomp and his wrath:
not so his lies.
7 So Moab howls for Moab; every one howls:
for the foundations of Qir Hareseth you meditate;
surely they are stricken.
8 Because the fields of Heshbon languish
— the vine of Sibmah:
the masters of the goyim hammer the grapevines
— they touch to Yazer;
they wander through the wilderness:
abandon her branches;
they pass over the sea.
9 So I weep
with the weeping of Yazer the vine of Sibmah:
I saturate you with my tears,
O Heshbon and El Aleh:
for the shouting for your summer fruits
and for your harvest is fallen:
and cheerfulness is gathered
with twirling from the orchard/Karmel;
and in the vineyards they shout not,
they shout not:
the treaders tread no wine in troughs;
I shabbathize their shouting.
10 So my inwards, as a harp, roar for Moab;
and my inwards for Qir Hareseth.
11 And so be it,
we see Moab, weary on the bamah,

ISAIAH 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

13 that he shall come to his **sanctuary holies** to pray;
but he shall not prevail.
This is the word
that the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *spoken worded*
concerning Moab **ever** since *that time*.
14 But now the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *spoken worded*,
saying, Within three years, as the years of an hireling,
and the **glory honour** of Moab
shall be *condemned abased*,
with all that great multitude;
and the **remnant survivors**
shall be *very small and feeble little* — **few** — **not many**.

THE BURDEN OF DAMMESEQ

17 The burden of *Damascus Dammeseq*.
Behold,
Damascus Dammeseq is *taken away turned aside*
from being a city,
and it shall be a ruinous **heap ruin**.
2 The cities of Aroer are forsaken:
they shall be for **flocks droves**,
which shall *lie down crouch*,
and none shall *make cause* them **afraid to tremble**.
3 The fortress also
shall *cease shabbathize* from **Ephraim Ephrayim**,
and the **kingdom sovereignty**
from **Damascus Dammeseq**,
and the **remnant survivors** of **Syria Aram**:
they shall be as the **glory honour**
of the **children sons** of **Israel Yisra El**,
saith the **LORD of hosts an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
4 And in that day **so be** it shall *come to pass*,
that the **glory honour** of **Jacob Yaaqov**
shall be *made thin languish*,
and the fatness of his flesh shall *wax lean emaciate*.
5 And it shall be
as when the **harvestman harvester**
gathereth the **corn stalks**,
and *reapeth harvesteth* the ears with his arm;
and it shall be
as he that gathereth ears in the valley of Rephaim.
6 Yet *gleaning grapes gleanings* shall be *left survive* in it,
as the shaking of an olive tree,
two or three berries
in the top of the uppermost **bough branch**,
four or five
in the *outmost fruitful branches fruitbearing twigs*
thereof,
saith the **LORD God of Israel**
an oracle of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El.
7 At that day
shall a **man humanity** look to his **Maker Worker**,
and his eyes
shall *have respect see* to the Holy One of **Israel Yisra El**.
8 And he shall not look to the **sacrifice altars**,
the work of his hands,
neither shall *respect see*
that which his fingers have *made worked*,
either the **groves asherah**, or the **images sun icons**.
9 In that day shall his **strong stronghold** cities
be as a forsaken **bough forest**, and an uppermost branch,
which they *left forsook*
because at the face of the **children sons** of **Israel Yisra El**:
and there shall be desolation.
10 Because thou hast forgotten
the **God Elohim** of thy salvation,
and hast not *been mindful of remembered*
the rock of thy **strength stronghold**,
therefore shalt thou plant pleasant plants,
and shalt *set seed* it with strange **slips twigs**:
11 In the day shalt thou *make hedge* thy plant to grow,
and in the morning shalt thou *make blossom* thy seed
to *flourish*:
but the harvest shall be a heap
in the day of grief and of desperate **sorrow pain**.
12 Woe **Ho** to the multitude of many people,
which *make a noise roar* like the **noise roar** of the seas;
and to the **rushing uproar** of nations,
that *make a rushing shall be wasted*
like the **rushing mighty wasting of many** waters!

YESHA YAH 16, 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

come to his holies to pray;
and he prevails not.
This is the word
Yah Veh words ever since concerning Moab.
14 And now Yah Veh words, saying,
Within three years, as the years of an hireling,
the honor of Moab is abased,
with all that great multitude;
and the survivors little — few — not many.

THE BURDEN OF DAMMESEQ

17 The burden of Dammeseq:
Behold, Dammeseq turns aside as a city
and becomes a ruinous ruin:
2 the cities of Aroer are abandoned:
they become for droves that crouch,
and no one trembles them:
3 and the fortress from Ephrayim shabbathizes
with the sovereignty from Dammeseq;
and the survivors of Aram
become as the honor of the sons of Yisra El
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth.
4 And so be it, in that day,
the honor of Yaaqov languishes
and the fatness of his flesh emaciates:
5 and so be it,
as the harvester gathering the stalks
and harvests the ears with his arm;
and so be it,
as gathering ears in the valley of Rephaim:
6 yet gleanings survive therein,
as the shaking of an olive,
two or three berries
in the top of the uppermost branch,
and four or five in the fruitbearing twigs
— an oracle of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El.
7 In that day, humanity looks to his Worker,
and his eyes see to the Holy One of Yisra El:
8 and he neither looks to the sacrifice altars
— the work of his hands,
nor sees what his fingers worked,
either the asherah or the sun icons.
9 In that day his stronghold cities
become as a forsaken forest
and as an uppermost branch
they forsook at the face of the sons of Yisra El:
and becomes desolation.
10 Because you forgot Elohim of your salvation,
and remembered not the rock of your stronghold,
so you plant pleasant plants
and seed with strange twigs:
11 in the day, you hedge your plant;
and in the morning, you blossom your seed:
the harvest is as a heap
in the day of grief and of desperate pain.
12 Ho to the multitude of many people
who roar as the roar of the seas;
and to the uproar of nations who waste
as the wasting of many waters!

ISAIAH 17—19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

13 The nations shall *rush* **roar**
like the *rushing* **roaring** of many waters:
but God shall rebuke them and shall be rebuked,
and they shall flee far off,
and shall be *chased* **pursued**
as the chaff of the mountains
before at the face of the wind,
and like a *rolling thing* **whirler**
before at the face of the whirlwind **hurricane**.
14 And behold at *eveningtime* **evening time,**
trouble **terror;**
and *before ere* the morning he is not.
This is the *portion* **allotment** of them that spoil us,
and the *lot* **pebble** of them that *rob* **plunder** us.

THE BURDEN OF KUSH

18 Woe **Ho** to the land *shadowing* **whirring** with wings,
which is beyond the rivers of *Ethiopia* **Kush**:
2 That sendeth ambassadors by the sea,
even in *vessels* **instruments** of bulrushes
upon the **face of the** waters, *saying,*
Go, ye swift messengers **angels,**
to a *nation* **scattered** **goyim drawn** and *peeled* **polished,**
to a people *terrible* **awesome**
from their beginning *hitherto* **and onward;**
a *nation* **meted out** **goyim lined up**
and *trodden down* **trampled,**
whose land the rivers have *spoiled* **split!**
3 All ye *inhabitants* **settlers** of the world,
and *dwellers* **tabernaclers** on the earth,
see ye, when he lifeth up an ensign on the mountains;
and when he *bloweth* **blasteth** a trumpet **shophar,** hear ye.
4 For *so the LORD* **thus Yah Veh** said unto me,
I will **shall** take my rest,
and I *will consider* **shall scan** in my dwelling place
like a clear heat upon *herbs* **the light,**
and like a **thick** cloud of dew in the heat of harvest.
5 For, *afore* **ere the face of** the harvest,
when the *bud* **blossom** is *perfect* **consummated,**
and the sour grape is ripening in the *flower* **blossom,**
he shall both
cut off the sprigs with *pruning hooks* **psalmpicks,**
and *take away* **turn aside**
and *cut down* **lop off** the branches **tendrils**.
6 They shall be left together
unto the *fowls* **swoopers** of the mountains,
and to the *beasts* **animals** of the earth:
and the *fowls* **swoopers** shall summer upon them,
and all the *beasts* **animals** of the earth
shall winter upon them.
7 In that time shall the present be brought
unto the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
of a people *scattered* **drawn** and *peeled* **polished,**
and from a people *terrible* **awesome**
from their beginning *hitherto* **and onward;**
a *nation* **goyim**
meted out **lined up** and *trodden under foot* **trampled,**
whose land the rivers have *spoiled* **split,**
to the place of the name
of the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth,**
the mount *Zion* **Siyon**.

THE BURDEN OF MISRAYIM

19 The burden of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
Behold,
the LORD **Yah Veh** rideth upon a swift **thick** cloud,
and shall come into *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
and the idols of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
shall be *moved* **totter** at his *presence* **face,**
and the heart of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
shall melt in the midst of it.
2 And I *will set* **shall hedge** the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
against the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**:
and they shall fight every *one* **man** against his brother,
and every one against his *neighbour* **friend**;
city against city,
and
kingdom **sovereigndom** against *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
3 And the spirit of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
shall *fail* **evacuate** in the midst thereof;
and I *will destroy* **shall swallow up** the counsel thereof:

YESHA YAH 17—19

exeGeses companion BIBLE

13 The nations roar as the roaring of many waters:
and he rebukes and they flee far off
— pursued as the chaff of the mountains
at the face of the wind
— as a whirler at the face of the hurricane.
14 And behold, at evening time, terror;
and ere the morning, is not.
This is the allotment of them who spoil us,
and the pebble of them who plunder us.

THE BURDEN OF KUSH

18 Ho to the land whirring with wings
beyond the rivers of Kush:
that sends ambassadors by the sea
even in instruments of bulrushes
on the face of the waters.
Go, you swift angels,
to a goyim drawn and polished;
to a people
awesome from their beginning and onward;
a goyim lined up and trampled
whose land the rivers split.
3 All you settlers of the world,
and tabernaclers on the earth,
as an ensign lifting on the mountains, you see;
and as a shophar blasting, you hear.
4 For thus Yah Veh says to me, I rest,
and in my dwelling place
I scan as a clear heat upon the light
— as a thick cloud of dew in the heat of harvest.
5 For, ere the face of the harvest,
when the blossom consummates,
and the sour grape ripens in the blossom,
he both cuts off the sprigs with psalmpicks,
and turns aside and lops off the tendrils
— to abandon together
to the swoopers of the mountains
and to the animals of the earth:
and the swoopers summer on them,
and all the animals of the earth winter on them.
7 In that time, they bring a present to Yah Veh Sabaoth
from a people drawn and polished
— an awesome people
from their beginning and onward
— a goyim lined up and trampled
— whose land the rivers split
to the place of the name of Yah Veh Sabaoth,
the mount Siyon.

THE BURDEN OF MISRAYIM

19 The burden of Misrayim:
Behold, Yah Veh rides upon a swift thick cloud
and comes to Misrayim:
and the idols of Misrayim totter at his face,
and the heart of Misrayim melts in its midst:
2 and I hedge the Misrayim against the Misrayim:
and every man fights against his brother
and every one against his friend;
— city against city
and sovereigndom against sovereigndom:
3 and evacuate the spirit of Misrayim in its midst;
and I swallow up the counsel:

ISAIAH 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they shall seek to the idols,
and to the *charmers* **spiritists**,
and to *them that have familiar spirits* **necromancers**,
and to the *wizards* **knowers**.
4 And the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
will I give over **shall I shut**
into the hand of a *cruel lord* **hard adonim**;
and a *fierce king* **strong sovereign**
shall *rule* **reign** over them,
saith the Lord **an oracle of Adonay**,
the LORD of host **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
5 And the waters shall *fail* **dry** from the sea,
and the river shall *be wasted* **parch**
and *dried up* **wither**.
6 And they shall turn the rivers far away;
and the *brooks* **rivers of defence** **rampart**
shall *be emptied* **languish** and *dried up* **parch**:
the *reeds* **stalks** and *flags* **reeds** shall wither.
7 The *paper reeds* **nakednesses** by the *brooks* **rivers**,
by the mouth of the *brooks* **rivers**,
and every *thing sown* **plant** by the *brooks* **rivers**,
shall wither, *be driven away* **disperse**, and be no more.
8 The fishers also shall mourn,
and all they that cast *angle* **hooks** into the *brooks* **rivers**
shall *lament* **mourn**,
and they that spread nets upon the **face of the** waters
shall languish.
9 *Moreover* they that *work* **serve** in *fine* **drawn** flax,
and they that weave *networks* **white linen**,
shall *be confounded* **shame**.
10 And they shall be *broken* **crushed**
in the purposes *thereof*,
all that *make sluices and ponds* **hire to work marshes**
for *fish* **souls**.
11 Surely the *princes* **governors** of *Zoan* **Soan** are fools,
the counsel of the wise counsellors of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
is become brutish:
how say ye unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
I am the son of the wise,
the son of ancient *kings* **sovereigns**?
12 Where are they? where are thy wise *men*?
and let them tell thee, *now* **I beseech**,
and let them know what
the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
hath *purposed* **counselled** upon *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
13 The *princes* **governors** of *Zoan* **Soan**
are become *fools* **folly**,
the *princes* **governors** of *Noph* are deceived;
they have also *seduced* *Egypt* **strayed Misrayim**,
even they that are the stay **the chiefs**
of the *tribes thereof* **scions**.
14 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *mingled* **mixed**
a *perverse spirit* **spirit of perversities** in the midst *thereof*:
and they have caused *Egypt* **Misrayim** to *err* **stray**
in every work *thereof*,
as a *drunken man* **an intoxicated** staggereth in his vomit.
15 Neither shall there be *any work* for *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
which the head or tail, *branch* **palm leaf** or rush,
may *do work*.
16 In that day shall *Egypt* **Misrayim** be like unto women:
and it shall *be afraid* **tremble** and *fear* **fear**
because at the face of the *shaking* **waving** of the hand
of *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
which he shaketh over it.
17 And the *land* **soil** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
shall be a terror unto *Egypt thereof* **Misrayim**,
every one that *maketh mention* **remembereth**
shall *be afraid* **fear** in himself,
because at the face of the counsel
of *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
which he hath *determined* **counselled** against it.
18 In that day
shall five cities in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
speak the *language* **lip** of *Canaan* **Kanaan**,
and *swear* **oath** to *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
of one shall be *called* **said**,
The city of *destruction* **demolition**.
19 In that day shall there be
an **a sacrifice** altar to *the LORD* **Yah Veh**

YESHA YAH 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they seek to the idols and to the spiritists
and to necromancers and to the knowers:
4 and I shut the Misrayim
into the hand of hard adonim;
and a strong sovereign reigns over them
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth.
5 And the waters from the sea dry
and the river parches and withers:
6 and they turn away the rivers afar
and the rivers of rampart languish and parch:
7 the stalks and reeds wither:
the nakednesses by the rivers
— by the mouth of the rivers,
and every plant by the rivers,
wither, disperses, and is not:
8 and the fishers mourn,
and all who cast hooks into the rivers mourn,
and who spread nets upon the face of the waters
languish:
9 they who serve in drawn flax,
and they who weave white linen, shame:
10 and all who hire to work marshes for souls
become crushed in the purposes.
11 Surely the governors of Soan are fools,
the counsel of the wise counsellors of Paroh
become brutish:
how say you to Paroh,
I am the son of the wise
— the son of ancient sovereigns?
12 Where are they? Where are your wise?
Yes, have them tell you, I beseech,
and have them know
what Yah Veh Sabaoth counselled upon Misrayim.
13 The governors of Soan become folly;
the governors of Noph become deceived;
they also stray the Misrayim
— the chiefs of her scions.
14 Yah Veh mixes a spirit of perversities in their midst:
and they stray Misrayim in every work
as an intoxicate staggering in his vomit;
15 there is no work for Misrayim,
for the head or tail, palm leaf or rush, to work.
16 In that day, Misrayim becomes as women:
and trembles and fears
at the face of the waving of the hand
which Yah Veh Sabaoth shakes over it.
17 And the soil of Yah Hudah
becomes a terror to Misrayim;
every one who remembers
fears for himself at the face of the counsel
Yah Veh Sabaoth counselled against it.
18 In that day,
five cities in the land of Misrayim
speak the lip of Kanaan,
and oath to Yah Veh Sabaoth;
of one is said, The city of demolition.
19 In that day, there is a sacrifice altar to Yah Veh

ISAIAH 19—21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

in the midst of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and a *pillar* at **monolith** beside the border thereof
to the **LORD Yah Veh**.
20 And it shall be for a sign and for a witness
unto the **LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
for they shall cry unto the **LORD Yah Veh**
because at the **face** of the oppressors,
and he shall send them a saviour, and a great one,
and he shall *deliver* **rescue** them.
21 And the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall be known to *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
shall know the **LORD Yah Veh** in that day,
and shall *do* **serve** sacrifice and *oblation* **offerings**;
yea, they shall vow a vow unto the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and *perform* it **shalam**.
22 And the **LORD Yah Veh** shall smite *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
he shall smite and heal it:
and they shall return *even* to the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and he shall be intreated of them, and shall heal them.
23 In that day shall there be a highway
out of *Egypt* **Misrayim** to *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
and the *Assyrian* **Ashshuri**
shall come into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and the *Egyptian* **Misrayim** into *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
and the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
shall serve with the *Assyrians* **Ashshuri**.
24 In that day shall *Israel* **Yisra El** be the third
with *Egypt* **Misrayim** and with *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
even a blessing in the midst of the land:
25 Whom the **LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth**
shall bless, saying,
Blessed be *Egypt* **Misrayim** my people,
and *Assyria* **Ashshur** the work of my hands,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** mine inheritance.

THE BURDEN OF MISRAYIM AND KUSH

20 In the year that Tartan came unto Ashdod,
(when Sargon the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
sent him,)
and fought against Ashdod, and *took* **captured** it;
2 At the same time *spake* the **LORD worded Yah Veh**
by *Isaiah* the **hand** of **Yesha Yah** the son of *Amoz* **Amos**,
saying, Go and loose the sackcloth from off thy loins,
and *put* **pull** off thy shoe from thy foot.
And he *did* **worked** so,
walking naked and *barefoot* **unshod**.
3 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said,
Like as my servant *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah**
hath walked naked and *barefoot* **unshod** three years
for a sign and *wonder* **omen**
upon *Egypt* **Misrayim** and upon *Ethiopia* **Kush**;
4 So shall the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
lead **drive** away the *Egyptians* **Misrayim** prisoners,
and the *Ethiopians* **Kushi** exiles,
young **lads** and *old* **aged**, naked and *barefoot* **unshod**,
even with their buttocks *uncovered* **stripped**,
to the *shame* **nakedness** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
5 And they shall *be* **afraid** **terrify** and *ashamed* **shame**
of *Ethiopia* **Kush** their expectation,
and of *Egypt* **Misrayim** their *glory* **adornment**.
6 And the *inhabitant* **settler** of this *isle* **island**
shall say in that day,
Behold, *such* **thus** is our expectation,
whither we flee for help to be *delivered* **rescued**
from the *king* at the **face** of the *sovereign*
of *Assyria* **Ashshur**:
and how shall we escape?

THE BURDEN OF BABEL

21 The burden of the *desert* **wilderness** of the sea.
As *whirlwinds* **hurricanes** in the south pass through;
so it cometh from the *desert* **wilderness**,
from a *terrible* **an awesome** land.
2 A *grievous* **hard** vision is *declared* **told** unto me;
the *treacherous* **dealer** **coverter**
dealeth **treacherously** **coverteth**,
and the *spoiler* **spoileth** **ravager** **ravageth**.
Go up **Ascend**, O *Elam*: besiege, O *Media* **Maday**!
all the *sighing* thereof have I made to *cease* **shabbathize**.

YESHA YAH 19—21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

midst the land of *Misrayim*;
and a *monolith* beside the border to *Yah Veh*:
20 and it is for a sign and for a witness
to *Yah Veh Sabaoth* in the land of *Misrayim*:
for they cry to *Yah Veh*
at the face of the oppressors
and he sends them a saviour — great;
and he rescues them.
21 And *Yah Veh* is known to *Misrayim*;
and the *Misrayim* know *Yah Veh* in that day,
and serve sacrifice and offerings;
yes, they vow a vow and *shalam* to *Yah Veh*:
22 and *Yah Veh* smites *Misrayim*
— he smites and heals it:
and they return to *Yah Veh*,
and they intreat him; and he heals them.
23 In that day,
there is a highway from *Misrayim* to *Ashshur*:
and the *Ashshuri* come to *Misrayim*
and the *Misrayim* to *Ashshur*,
and the *Misrayim* serve with the *Ashshuri*.
24 In that day, *Yisra El* becomes the third
with *Misrayim* and with *Ashshur*
— a blessing midst the land:
25 whom *Yah Veh Sabaoth* blesses, saying,
Blessed — *Misrayim* my people;
and *Ashshur* the work of my hands;
and *Yisra El* my inheritance.

THE BURDEN OF MISRAYIM AND KUSH

20 In the year Tartan comes to Ashdod,
when Sargon the sovereign of Ashshur sends him,
he fights Ashdod and captures it;
2 at the same time, *Yah Veh* words
by the hand of *Yesha Yah* the son of *Amos*, saying,
Go and loosen the sackcloth from your loins,
and pull your shoe from your foot.
— and thus he works, walking naked and unshod.

3 And *Yah Veh* says,
As my servant *Yesha Yah*
walks naked and unshod three years
for a sign and omen upon *Misrayim* and upon *Kush*;
4 thus the sovereign of *Ashshur* drives away
the *Misrayim* prisoners and the *Kushi* exiles
— lads and aged, naked and unshod,
even with their buttocks stripped
to the nakedness of *Misrayim*.
5 — and they terrify and shame
of *Kush* their expectation
and of *Misrayim* their adornment.

6 And the settler of this island
says in that day,
Behold, is our expectation thus?
Where flee we for help to be rescued
at the face of the sovereign of *Ashshur*?
And how escape we?

THE BURDEN OF BABEL

21 The burden of the wilderness of the sea:
As hurricanes in the south pass through;
thus it comes from the wilderness
— from an awesome land.
2 I am told a hard vision:
the coverter coverters and the ravager ravages.
Ascend, O *Elam*! Besiege, O *Maday*!
I shabbathize all its sighing.

ISAIAH 21, 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 Therefore are my loins filled with pain:
pangs have taken hold upon me,
as the pangs of a woman *that travaileth birthing*:
I was bowed down **twisted** at the hearing of it;
I was dismayed **terrified** at the seeing of it.
4 My heart *panted* **staggered**,
fearfulness **trembling** affrighted me:
the *night evening breeze* of my pleasure
hath he **turned set** into *fear* **trembling** unto me.
5 Prepare **Line up** the table, watch in the watchtower,
eat, drink:
arise, ye *princes* **governors**,
and anoint the *shield* **buckler**.
6 For thus hath *the Lord* **Adonay** said unto me,
Go, **set stand** a *watchman* **watcher**,
let him **declare tell** what he seeth.
7 And he saw a chariot
with a *couple* **pair** of *horsemen* **cavalry**,
a chariot of *asses* **burros**, and a chariot of camels;
and **in hearkening**, he hearkened
diligently with much heed:
8 And he **cried called out**, A lion:
My Lord **Adonay**,
I stand continually upon the watchtower
in the *daytime* **day**,
and I am **set stationed** in my *ward* **guard** whole nights:
9 And, behold, here cometh a chariot of men,
with a *couple* **pair** of *horsemen* **cavalry**.
And he answered and said,
Babylon **Babel** is fallen, is fallen;
and all the *graven images* **sculptiles** of her *gods* **elohim**
he hath broken unto the *ground* **earth**.
10 O my threshing,
and the *corn* **sons** of my *floor* **threshingfloor**:
that which I have heard
of the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
have I **declared told** unto you.
THE BURDEN OF DUMAH

11 The burden of Dumah.
He calleth to me out of Seir,
Watchman **Guard**, what of the night?
Watchman **Guard**, what of the night?
12 The *watchman* **guard** said,
The morning cometh, and also the night:
if ye **will shall** enquire, enquire ye: return, come.
THE BURDEN OF ARABIA

13 The burden upon Arabia.
In the forest in Arabia shall ye **lodge stay overnight**,
O ye *travelling companies* **caravans** of Dedanim.
14 The *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land of Tema
brought water to **confront** him that was thirsty,
they **prevented anticipated** with their bread him that fled.
15 For they fled from **the face of** the swords,
from **the face of** the drawn sword,
and from **the face of** the bent bow,
and from **the face of** the *grievousness* **heaviness** of war.
16 For thus hath *the Lord* **Adonay** said unto me,
Within a year, according to the years of an hireling,
and all the *glory* **honour** of *Kedar* **Qedar** shall **fail finish**:
17 And the *residue* **survivors**
of the number of *archers* **bows**,
the mighty *men* of the *children* **sons** of *Kedar* **Qedar**,
shall be diminished:
for the *LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
hath **spoken it worded**.
THE BURDEN OF GAY HIZZAYON

22 The burden of
the *valley of vision* **Gay Hizzayon/Valley of Vision**
What aileth thee now,
that thou art wholly *gone up* **ascended**
to the *housetops* **roofs**?
2 Thou that art full of *stirs* **clamors**,
a *tumultuous* **roaring** city,
a *joyous city* **city jumping for joy**:
thy *slain* **pierced men** are not slain with the sword,
nor dead in *battle* **war**.
3 All thy *rulers* **commanders** are fled together,
they are bound by the *archers* **bows**:

YESHA YAH 21, 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 So my loins fill with pain:
pangs hold me
as pangs of a woman birthing:
I twist at hearing; I terrify at seeing:
4 my heart staggers; trembling frightens me:
he sets the evening breeze of my pleasure
to tremble me.
5 Arrange the table! Watch in the watchtower!
Eat! Drink!
Arise, you governors! Anoint the buckler!
6 For Adonay says thus to me,
Go, stand a watcher; to tell what he sees.
7 And he sees a chariot with a pair of cavalry,
a chariot of burros, a chariot of camels;
and in hearkening, he hearkens:
8 and he calls out, A lion!
Adonay,
I stand continually on the watchtower in the day
and I station in my guard whole nights:
9 and, behold, a chariot of men
comes with a pair of cavalry:
and he answers and says,
Fallen! Babel — fallen!
and he breaks all the sculptiles of her elohim
to the earth.
10 O my threshing,
and the sons of my threshingfloor:
whatever I heard
from Yah Veh Sabaoth, Elohim of Yisra El,
I tell you.
THE BURDEN OF DUMAH

11 The burden of Dumah:
A call to me from Seir,
Guard, what of the night? Guard, what of the night?
12 The guard says,
The morning comes and also the night:
if you enquire — enquire: return, come.
THE BURDEN OF ARABIA

13 The burden upon Arabia:
You, stay overnight in the forest in Arabia,
you caravans of Dedanim:
14 the settlers of the land of Tema
bring water to confront the thirsty,
with their bread they anticipate him who flees:
15 for they flee from the face of the swords
— from the face of the drawn sword
and from the face of the bent bow
and from the face of the heaviness of war.
16 For Adonay says thus to me,
Within a year, according to the years of a hireling,
all the honor of Qedar finishes off:
17 and the survivors of the number of bows
— the mighty of the sons of Qedar diminish:
for Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El has worded.

THE BURDEN OF GAY HIZZAYON

22 The burden of Gay Hizzayon/Valley of Vision:
What ails you now — all of you
that you ascend to the roofs?
2 You, full of clamors,
a roaring city, a city jumping for joy:
your pierced are neither slain with the sword
nor dead in war:
3 all your commanders flee together
— bound by the bows:

ISAIAH 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

all that are found in thee are bound together,
which have fled from far.
4 Therefore said I, Look away from me;
I will weep bitterly **am embittered in weeping,**
labour hasten not to *comfort* sigh over me,
because of the *spoiling* **ravage**
of the daughter of my people.
5 For it is a day of **trouble confusion,**
and of *treading down* **trampling,** and of perplexity
by the Lord GOD of hosts **Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth**
in the valley of vision **Gay Hizzayon/Valley of Vision,**
breaking down **digging** the walls,
and of crying to the mountains.
6 And Elam bare the quiver
with chariots of *men* **humanity** and *horsemen* **cavalry,**
and *Kir uncovered* **Qir stripped naked** the **shield buckler.**
7 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
that thy choicest valleys shall be *full* **filled** of chariots,
and the *horsemen* shall set themselves in array
in placing, the cavalry shall place themselves
at the gate **portal.**
8 And he *discovered* **exposed**
the covering of *Judah* **Yah Hudah,**
and thou didst look in that day
to the armour of the house of the forest.
9 Ye have seen also
the *breaches* **fissures** of the city of David,
that they are *many* **abound by the myriads:**
and ye gathered together
the waters of the *lower* **nether** pool.
10 And ye have *numbered* **scribed**
the houses of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem,**
and the houses have ye *broken* **pulled** down
to fortify the wall.
11 Ye *made* **worked** also a *ditch* **reservoir**
between the two walls for the water of the old pool:
but ye have not looked unto the *maker* **worker** thereof,
neither *had respect* **saw** unto him
that *fashioned* **formed** it *long ago* **in the distant past.**
12 And in that day
did the Lord GOD of hosts **Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth**
call **called** to weeping, and to *mourning* **chopping,**
and to baldness, and to girding with sackcloth:
13 And behold *joy* **rejoicing** and *gladness* **cheerfulness,**
slaying **slaughtering** oxen,
and *killing sheep* **slaughtering** flock,
eating flesh, and drinking wine:
let us eat and drink; for to morrow we shall die.
14 And it was *revealed* **exposed** in mine ears
by the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth,**
Surely this *iniquity* **perversity**
shall not be *purged* **kapared/atoned** from you till ye die,
saith the Lord GOD of hosts **Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth.**
15 Thus saith
the Lord GOD of hosts **Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth,**
Go, get thee unto this *treasurer* **useful one,**
even unto Shebna, which is over the house, and say,
16 What hast thou here and whom hast thou here,
that thou hast hewed thee out a *sepulchre* **tomb** here,
as he that heweth him out a *sepulchre* **tomb** on high,
and that *graveth an habitation* **engraveth a tabernacle**
for himself in a rock?
17 Behold, the LORD **Yah Veh**
will carry thee away with a mighty captivity
in casting, shall cast thee, O mighty,
and will surely **in covering, shall** cover thee.
18 He will surely violently turn and toss thee like a ball
In whirling, he whirleth
— **he shall whirl thee as a whirler**
into a *large country* **land large of hand:**
there shalt thou die,
and there the chariots of thy *glory* **honour**
shall be the *shame* **abasement**
of thy lord's **adoni's** house.
19 And I will *drive* **shall exile** thee from thy station,
and from thy *state* **function**
shall he *pull* **break** thee down.
20 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,

YESHA YAH 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

all those found in you, who flee from far,
are bound together.
4 So I say, Look away from me:
I am embittered in weeping;
hasten not to sigh over me
because of the ravage of the daughter of my people.
5 For it is a day of confusion
and of trampling and of perplexity
by Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth
in Gay Hizzayon/Valley of Vision
— digging the walls and crying to the mountains.
6 And Elam bears the quiver
with chariots of humanity and cavalry;
and Qir strips naked the buckler:
and so be it,
your choicest valleys fill with chariots;
and in placing,
the cavalry place themselves at the portal;
and he exposes the covering of Yah Hudah:
and in that day,
you look to the armour of the house of the forest:
you also see the fissures of the city of David
abounding by the myriads:
and you gather together the waters of the nether pool:
10 and you scribe the houses of Yeru Shalem
and you pull down the houses to fortify the wall:
11 and you work a reservoir
between the two walls for the water of the old pool:
and you neither look to the worker,
nor see to him who formed it in the distant past.
12 And in that day,
Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth
calls to weeping and to chopping
and to baldness and to girding with sackcloth:
13 and behold, rejoicing and cheerfulness,
slaughtering oxen and slaughtering flock,
eating flesh and drinking wine.
Eat and drink — for tomorrow we die.
14 And Yah Veh Sabaoth exposes in my ears,
Surely this perversity
kapars/atones not to you until you die,
says Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth.
15 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth,
Go, get you to this useful one — to Shebna
who is over the house,
16 What — to you here, and who — to you here,
that you hew a tomb here,
as one who hews a tomb on high
and engraves a tabernacle for himself in a rock?
17 Behold, in casting, Yah Veh casts you, O mighty,
and in covering, covers you:
18 in whirling, he whirls
— whirls you as a whirler into a land large of hand:
there you die,
and there the chariots of your honor
are the abasement of the house of adoni:
19 and I exile you from your station,
and he breaks you from your function.
20 And so be it, in that day,

ISAIAH 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that I will **shall** call my servant *Eliakim El Yaqim*
the son of *Hilkiah Hilqi Yah*:
21 And I will **clothe shall enrobe** him with thy **robe coat**,
and strengthen him with thy girdle,
and I will **commit shall give** thy **government reign**
into his hand:
and he shall be a father
to the *inhabitants settlers* of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and to the house of *Judah Yah Hudah*.
22 And the key of the house of David
will I **lay shall I give** upon his shoulder;
so he shall open, and none shall shut;
and he shall shut, and none shall open.
23 And I will **fasten shall stake** him
as a **nail stake** in a **sure trustworthy** place;
and he shall be for a **glorious an honourable** throne
to his father's house.
24 And they shall hang upon him
all the **glory honour** of his father's house,
the offspring and the **issue outcasts**,
all *vessels of small quantity lesser instruments*,
from the *vessels instruments* of *cups bowls*,
even to all the *vessels instruments* of *flagons bagpipes*.
25 In that day,
saith the LORD of hosts an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth,
shall the **nail stake**
that is **fastened staked** in the **sure trustworthy** place
be removed, and be cut down, and fall;
and the burden that was upon it shall be cut off:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *spoken it worded*.

THE BURDEN OF SOR

23

The burden of *Tyre Sor*.
Howl, ye ships of *Tarshish*; for it is **laid waste ravaged**,
so that there is no house, no entering in:
from the land of *Chittim Kittim*
it is **revealed exposed** to them.
2 Be still, ye *inhabitants settlers* of the **isle island**;
thou whom the merchants of *Zidon Sidon*,
that pass over the sea, have **replenished fulfilled**.
3 And by great waters the seed of *Sihor Shichor*,
the harvest of the river, is her **revenue produce**;
and she is a **mart merchant** of *nations goyim*.
4 Be thou **ashamed shamed**, O *Zidon Sidon*:
for the sea hath **spoken said**,
even the **strength stronghold** of the sea, saying,
I **travail writhe** not, nor **bring forth children birth**,
neither do I nourish **up young men youths**,
nor **bring up raise** virgins.
5 As at the report concerning *Egypt Misrayim*,
so shall they be **sorely pained writhe**
at the report of *Tyre Sor*.
6 Pass ye over to *Tarshish*;
howl, ye *inhabitants settlers* of the **isle island**.
7 Is this your **joyous city city jumping for joy**,
whose antiquity is of ancient days?
her own feet shall **carry bear** her afar off to sojourn.
8 Who hath taken this counsel against *Tyre Sor*,
the **crowning city crown**,
whose merchants are **princes governors**,
whose **traffickers merchants**
are the honourable of the earth?
9 *The LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*
hath **purposed counselled** it,
to **stain profane** the **pride pomp** of all **glory splendour**,
and to **bring into contempt abase**
all the honourable of the earth.
10 Pass through thy land as a river,
O daughter of *Tarshish*:
there is no more **strength girdle**.
11 He **stretched out spread** his hand over the sea,
he **shook quaked** the **kingdoms sovereigndoms**:
the LORD Yah Veh hath **given a commandment misvahed**
against the **merchant city Kanaan**,
to **destroy desolate** the strong holds thereof.
12 And he said,
Thou shalt **no more rejoice not add to jump for joy**,
O thou oppressed virgin, daughter of *Zidon Sidon*:
arise, pass over to *Chittim Kittim*;
there also shalt thou **have no not** rest.

YESHA YAH 22, 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I call my servant El Yaqim the son of Hilqi Yah:
21 and I enrobe him with your coat
and strengthen him with your girdle
and I give your reign into his hand:
and he becomes a father
to the settlers of Yeru Shalem
and to the house of Yah Hudah:
22 and I give the key of the house of David
on his shoulder;
thus he opens and no one shuts;
and he shuts and no one opens:
23 and I stake him a stake in a trustworthy place;
and he becomes for an honorable throne
to the house of his father:
24 and they hang on him
all the honor the house of his father
— the offspring and the outcasts,
all lesser instruments
— from the instruments of bowls
even to all the instruments of bagpipes.
25 In that day,
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
the stake that is staked in the trustworthy place
is removed and cut down and felled;
and the burden thereon, cut off:
for Yah Veh has worded.

THE BURDEN OF SOR

23

The burden of Sor:

Howl, you ships of *Tarshish*; for it is ravaged,
so that there is neither house nor entering in:
from the land of *Kittim* it was exposed to them.

2

Be still, you settlers of the island;
you whom the merchants of *Sidon*,
who, passing over the sea, fulfilled.

3

And by great waters is the seed of *Shichor*;
the harvest of the river is her produce;
and she is a merchant of *goyim*.

4

Shame, O *Sidon*:
for the sea says — even the stronghold of the sea says,
I neither writhe, nor birth;
neither nourish youths, nor raise virgins.
5 As at the report concerning *Misrayim*,
they writhe at the report of *Sor*.
6 You, pass over to *Tarshish*;
howl, you settlers of the island.

7

Is this your city jumping for joy
— whose antiquity is of ancient days?
— her own feet bear her afar off to sojourn.

8

Who takes this counsel against *Sor*, the crown
— whose merchants are governors?
— Whose merchants are the honorable of the earth?
9 *Yah Veh Sabaoth* counsels it
to profane the pomp of all splendour
and to abase all the honorable of the earth.

10

Pass through your land as a river,
O daughter of *Tarshish*:
there is no more girdle.

11

He spreads his hand over the sea,
he quakes the sovereigndoms:
Yah Veh misvahs against *Kanaan*
to desolate the strong holds.

12

And he says, You, add not to jump for joy,
O you oppressed virgin, daughter of *Sidon*:
rise, pass over to *Kittim*;
even there you rest not.

ISAIAH 23, 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

13 Behold the land of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**;
this people was not, *till the Assyrian* **Ashshuri** founded it
for them that dwell in the wilderness **the desert dwellers**:
they set up **raised** the towers *thereof*,
they raised up **stripped bare** the *palaces* **citadels** thereof;
and he brought **set** it to ruin.
14 Howl, ye ships of Tarshish:
for your **strength stronghold** is *laid waste* **ravaged**.
15 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,
that Tyre **Sor** shall be forgotten seventy years,
according to the days of one *king* **sovereign**:
after the end of seventy years
shall Tyre **it be to Sor**
sing as an harlot as the song of a whore.
16 Take an harp, go about the city,
thou *harlot* **whore** that has been forgotten;
make sweet melody **strum well**—*pleasingly*,
sing many songs **abound the song**,
that thou mayest be remembered.
17 And **so be** it shall come to pass
after the end of seventy years,
that the *LORD* will **Yah Veh** shall visit Tyre **Sor**,
and she shall turn to her *hire* **payoff**,
and shall *commit fornication* **whore**
with all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the *world* **earth**
upon the face of the *earth* **soil**.
18 And her merchandise and her *hire* **payoff**
shall be *holiness to the LORD* **holy to Yah Veh**:
it shall not be treasured nor *laid up* **hoarded**;
for her merchandise shall be for them
that dwell before the *LORD* **settle at the face of Yah Veh**,
to eat *sufficiently* **to satiation**,
and for *durable clothing* **antique covering**.

24

Behold,
the *LORD* maketh **Yah Veh** *evacuateth* the earth *empty*,
and maketh it waste **wasteth it**,
and turneth it *upside* **twisteth it** face down,
and scattereth abroad the *inhabitants* **settlers** thereof.
2 And it shall be,
as with the people, so with the priest;
as with the servant, so with his *master* **adoni**;
as with the maid, so with her *mistress* **lady**;
as with the *buyer* **chatteler**, so with the seller;
as with the lender, so with the borrower;
as with the *taker of usury* **exactor**,
so with the *giver of usury* **to him exacted**.
3 **In evacuating**,
The land shall be *utterly emptied* **evacuated**,
and *utterly spoiled* **in plundering**, shall be **plundered**:
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded** this word.
4 The earth mourneth and *fadeth away* **withereth**,
the world languisheth and *fadeth away* **withereth**,
the *haughty* **high** people of the earth *do* languish.
5 The earth also is *defiled* **profaned**
under the *inhabitants* **settlers** thereof;
because
they have *transgressed* **trespassed** the *laws* **torah**,
changed **passed over** the *ordinance* **statute**,
broken the *everlasting* **eternal** covenant.
6 Therefore hath the *curse* **oath** devoured the earth,
and they that dwell **the settlers** therein
are *desolate* **have guilted**:
therefore the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the earth
are *burned* **scorched**, and few men *left* **survive**.
7 The *new wine* **juice** mourneth, the vine languisheth,
all the *merryhearted* *do* **cheerful** sigh.
8 The *mirth* **joy** of *tabrets* **tambourines**
ceaseth **shabbathizeth**,
the *noise* **uproar** of them that *rejoice* **jump for joy**
endeth **ceaseth**,
the joy of the harp *ceaseth* **shabbathizeth**.
9 They shall not drink wine with a song;
strong drink shall be *bitter to* **embitter** them that drink it.
10 The city of *confusion* **waste** is broken down:
every house is shut up, that no man may come in.
11 There is a *crying* **an outcry** for wine
in the *streets* **outways**;
all *joy* **cheerfulness** is *darkened* **obscured**,

YESHA YAH 23, 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

13 Behold the land of the Kesediym:
this people was not;
the Ashshuri founded it for the desert dwellers:
they raise the towers;
they strip bare the citadels;
and he sets it to ruin.
14 Howl, you ships of Tarshish:
for your stronghold is ravaged.
15 And so be it, in that day,
that Sor is forgotten seventy years,
according to the days of one sovereign:
after the end of seventy years it becomes to Sor
as the song of the whore.
16 Take a harp;
go about the city, you forgotten whore:
strum well—pleasingly; abound the song;
so that they remember you.
17 And so be it, after the end of seventy years,
Yah Veh visits Sor;
and she turns to her payoff
and whores with all the sovereigndoms of the earth
upon the face of the soil:
and her merchandise and her payoff
are holy to Yah Veh
— neither treasured nor hoarded;
for her merchandise is for them
settling at the face of Yah Veh
— to eat to satiation; and for antique covering.

YAH VEH EVACUATES THE EARTH

24

Behold, Yah Veh evacuates the earth
and wastes it and twists it face down
and scatters the settlers abroad.
2 And so be it,
as with the people, thus with the priest;
as with the servant, thus with his adoni;
as with the maid, thus with her lady;
as with the chatteler, thus with the seller;
as with the lender, thus with the borrower;
as with the exactor, thus with the exacted.
3 In evacuating, the land is evacuated,
and in plundering, plundered;
for Yah Veh words this word:
4 The earth mourns and withers;
the world languishes and withers;
the high people of the earth languish:
5 and the earth *is* profaned under the settlers;
because they trespassed the torah,
passed over the statute,
broke the eternal covenant.
6 So the oath devours the earth,
and the settlers therein guilt:
so the settlers of the earth scorch
and few men survive:
7 the juice mourns; the vine languishes;
all the cheerful sigh:
8 the joy of tambourines shabbathizes;
the uproar of them who jump for joy ceases;
9 the joy of the harp shabbathizes:
they drink no wine with a song;
strong drink embitters them who drink:
10 the city of waste breaks down:
every house is shut so that no man comes in.
11 There is an outcry for wine in the outways:
all cheerfulness is obscured;

ISAIAH 24, 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 the *mirth* joy of the land is gone **exiled**.
In the city *is left* **survive**th desolation,
and the *gate* **portal**
13 is *smitten* **crushed** with *destruction* **waste**.
When thus it shall be
in the midst of the land among the people,
there shall be as the shaking of an olive tree,
and as the *gleaning grapes* **gleanings**
14 when the *vintage* **crop** is *done* **finished**.
They shall lift up their voice,
they shall *sing* **shout**
for the *majesty* **pomp** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
they shall *cry aloud* **resound** from the sea.
15 Wherefore *glorify* **honour** ye the **LORD Yah Veh**
in the *fires* **flames**,
even the name
of the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El**
in the *isles* **islands** of the sea.
16 From the uttermost *part* **wing** of the earth
have we heard songs,
even *glory* **splendour** to the *righteous* **just**.
But I said, My *leanness*, **emaciation!**
my *leanness*, **emaciation!** woe unto me!
the *treacherous dealers* **coverters**
have *dealt treacherously* **coverted**;
yea, the *treacherous dealers* **coverters**
have *dealt very treacherously* **coverted**.
17 Fear, and the pit, and the snare, are upon thee,
O *inhabitant* **settler** of the earth.
18 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
that he who fleeth from the *noise* **voice** of the fear
shall fall into the pit;
and he that *cometh up* **ascendeth**
out of the midst of the pit
shall be *taken* **captured** in the snare:
for the windows from on high are open,
and the foundations of the earth *do shake* **quake**.
19 **In shattering,**
The earth is *utterly broken down* **shattered**,
In breaking,
the earth is *clean dissolved* **broken**,
In toppling,
the earth is *moved exceedingly* **toppled**.
20 **In staggering,**
The earth shall *reel to and fro* **stagger**
like a drunkard **as intoxicated**,
and shall be *removed* **sway** like a *cottage* **hammock**;
and the *transgression* **rebellion** thereof
shall be heavy upon it;
and it shall fall, and not rise again.
21 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,
that the **LORD Yah Veh** shall *punish* **visit**
upon the host of the high ones *that are* on high,
and the *kings* **sovereigns** of the *earth* **soil**
upon the *earth* **soil**.
22 And they shall
be gathered together **gather a gathering**,
as *prisoners* **bound** are gathered in the *pit* **well**,
and shall be shut up in the *prison* **lockup**,
and after many days shall they be visited.
23 Then the moon shall *be confounded* **blush**,
and the sun *ashamed* **shame**,
when the **LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth**
shall reign in mount *Zion* **Siyon**,
and in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and before **in front of** his *ancients* **gloriously elders** honourably.

THE EXALTMENT OF SPREAD HANDS

25 O **LORD Yah Veh**, thou art my *God* **Elohim**;
I will **shall** exalt thee,
I will *praise* **shall spread hands** unto thy name;
for thou hast *done wonderful things* **worked marvels**;
thy counsels of *old* **the distant past**
are *faithfulness* **trustworthiness** and *truth* **amen**.
2 For thou hast *made* **set** of a city an heap;
of a *defenced* **fortified** city a ruin:
a *palace* **citadel** of strangers to be no city;
it shall *never* **eternally not** be built.
3 Therefore shall the strong people *glorify* **honour** thee,
the city of the *terrible nations* **tyrant goyim** shall fear thee.

YESHA YAH 24, 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the joy of the land is exiled:
desolation survives in the city;
and the portal is crushed *with* waste.
13 And so be it, midst the land among the people,
as the shaking of an olive
— as the gleanings when the crop finishes.
14 They lift their voice!
They shout for the pomp of Yah Veh!
They resound from the sea!
15 So honor Yah Veh in the flames,
the name of Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
in the islands of the sea.
16 From the uttermost wing of the earth we hear songs
— the splendor of the just:
and I say, My emaciation! My emaciation!
Woe to me!
the coverters covert; yes, the coverters covert:
fear and the pit and the snare are upon you,
O settler of the earth.
18 And so be it,
he who flees from the voice of the fear
falls into the pit;
and he who ascends from midst the pit
is captured in the snare:
for the windows from on high open,
and the foundations of the earth quake:
19 in shattering, the earth shatters;
in breaking, the earth breaks;
in toppling, the earth topples;
20 in staggering, the earth staggers as intoxicated
and sways as a hammock;
and the rebellion thereon is heavy:
and it falls, and rises not.
21 And so be it, in that day,
Yah Veh visits upon the host of the high ones on high
and the sovereigns of the soil upon the soil:
22 and they gather a gathering
as they gather the bound in a well,
and shut them up in the lockup;
and after many days they are visited.
23 And the moon blushes and the sun shames
when Yah Veh Sabaoth
reigns in mount Siyon and in Yeru Shalem
— honorably in front of his elders.
THE EXALTMENT OF SPREAD HANDS
25 O Yah Veh, you my Elohim;
I exalt you: I spread hands to your name:
for you worked marvels;
your counsels of the distant past
are trustworthiness and amen.
2 For of a city, you set a heap;
of a fortified city, a ruin;
a citadel of strangers, no city
— not built eternally.
3 So a strong people honors you
the city of the tyrant goyim fears you:

ISAIAH 25, 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 For thou hast been a *strength* **stronghold** to the poor,
a strength to the needy in his *distress* **tribulation**,
a refuge from the *storm* **flood**,
a shadow from the *heat* **parchedness**,
when the *blast* **wind** of the *terrible ones* **tyrants**
is as a *storm* **flood** against the wall.
5 Thou shalt *bring down* **subdue**
the *noise* **uproar** of strangers,
as the *heat* **parchedness** in a *dry place* **parch**;
even the heat with the shadow of a **thick** cloud:
the branch of the *terrible ones* **tyrants**
shall *be brought low* **answer**.
6 And in this mountain
shall *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
make work unto all people
a *feast* **banquet** of *fat things* **oil**,
a *feast* **banquet** of *wines on the lees* **dregs**,
of *fat things full of marrow* **marrowed oil**,
of *wines on the lees well refined* **filtered dregs**.
7 And he will *destroy* **shall swallow** in this mountain
the face of the *covering* **veil**
cast **veiled** over all people,
and the veil that is spread over all *nations* **goyim**.
8 He will **shall** *swallow up* death in *victory* **perpetuity**;
and *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**
will **shall** wipe away tears from off all faces;
and the rebuke of his people
shall he *take away* **turn aside** from off all the earth:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *spoken it* **worded**.
9 And it shall be said in that day,
Lo **Behold**, this is our *God* **Elohim**;
we have *waited for* **awaited** him,
and he will **shall** save us:
this is *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
we have *waited for* **awaited** him,
we will *be glad* **shall twirl** and *rejoice* **cheer**
in his salvation.
10 For in this mountain
shall the hand of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** rest,
and Moab shall be *trodden down* **threshed** under him,
even as straw is *trodden down* **threshed**
for in the water of the dunghill.
11 And he shall spread *forth* his hands
in the midst of them,
as he that swimmeth spreadeth *forth his hands* to swim:
and he shall *bring down* **abase** their *pride* **pomp**
together with the *spoils* **lurkings** of their hands.
12 And the fortress of the *high fort* **secure loft** of thy walls
shall he *bring down* **prostrate**, *lay low* **lower**,
and *bring touch* to the *ground* **earth**, even to the dust.

SONG OF THE LAND OF YAH HUDAH

26 In that day
shall this song be sung in the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
We have a strong city;
salvation will *God appoint* **shall he place**
for walls and *bulwarks* **trenches**.
2 Open ye the *gates* **portals**,
that the *righteous nation* **just goyim**
which *keepeth* **guardeth** the *truth* **trust** may enter in.
3 Thou wilt *keep* **shalt guard** him
in *perfect peace* **shalom shalom**,
whose *mind* **imagination** is *stayed* **propped** on thee:
because he *trusteth* **confideth** in thee.
4 *Trust* **Confide** ye
in *the LORD for ever* **Yah Veh eternally**:
for in *the LORD* **Jehovah Yah Yah Veh**
is *everlasting strength* **an eternal rock**:
5 For he *bringeth down* **prostrateth** them
that *dwell* **settle** on high;
the *lofty* **exalted** city, he *layeth it low* **lowereth**;
he *layeth it low* **lowereth**, even to the *ground* **earth**;
he *bringeth* **toucheth** it even to the dust.
6 The foot shall *tread* **trample** it down,
even the feet of the *poor* **humble**,
and the steps of the *needy* **poor**.
7 The way of the just is *uprightness* **straightness**:
thou, *most upright* **O straight**,
dost weigh the *path* **route** of the just.
8 Yea, in the way of thy judgments, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,

YESHA YAH 25, 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 for you are a stronghold to the poor;
a strength to the needy in his tribulation;
a refuge from the flood;
a shadow from the parchedness
when the wind of the tyrants
is as a flood against the wall.
5 You subdue the uproar of strangers
as the parchedness in a parch;
the heat with the shadow of a thick cloud:
the branch of the tyrants answer.
6 And in this mountain
Yah Veh Sabaoth works to all people
a banquet of oil, a banquet of dregs,
of marrowed oil, of filtered dregs.
7 And in this mountain
he swallows the face of the veil
veiled over all people,
and the veil spread over all goyim.
8 He swallows death in perpetuity;
and Adonay Yah Veh
wipes away tears from off all faces;
and turns aside the rebuke of his people
from off all the earth
— for Yah Veh has worded.
9 And in that day, it is said,
Behold, this our Elohim;
we awaited him and he saves us:
this *is* Yah Veh;
we awaited him; we twirl and cheer in his salvation.
10 For in this mountain the hand of Yah Veh rests;
and Moab is threshed under him
even as straw is threshed in the water of the dunghill:
and he spreads his hands in their midst
as the swimmer spreading to swim:
and he abases their pomp
together with the lurkings of their hands.
11 And he prostrates
the fortress of the secure loft of your walls lower
— touches to the earth — to the dust.

SONG OF THE LAND OF YAH HUDAH

26 In that day,
this song is sung in the land of Yah Hudah:
A strong city, we;
he places salvation for walls and trenches.
2 You, open the portals
for the just goyim who guard the trust to enter in.
3 You, guard him; shalom shalom:
whose imagination is propped on you:
because he confides in you.
4 You, confide in Yah Veh eternally:
for in Yah Yah Veh *is* an eternal rock:
for he prostrates them who settle on high;
the exalted city, he lowers
— he lowers to the earth;
he touches to the dust:
the foot tramples
— the feet of the humble; the steps of the poor.
7 The way of the just *is* straightness:
you, O straight, weigh the route of the just.
8 Yes, in the way of your judgments, O Yah Veh,

ISAIAH 26, 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 have we waited for awaited thee;
the desire of our soul is to thy name,
and to the remembrance memorial of thee.
With my soul have I desired thee in the night;
yea, with my spirit within me will shall I seek thee early:
for when thy judgments are in the earth,
the inhabitants settlers of the world
will shall learn righteousness justness.
10 Let favour be shewed Grant charisma to the wicked,
yet will shall he not learn righteousness justness:
in the land of uprightness straightforwardness
will shall he deal unjustly wickedly,
and will shall not behold see
the majesty pomp of the LORD Yah Veh.
11 LORD Yah Veh, when thy hand is lifted up,
they will shall not see:
but they shall see, and be ashamed shame
for their envy at the people;
yea, the fire of thine enemies thy tribulators
shall devour consume them.
12 LORD Yah Veh,
thou wilt ordain peace shalt set shalom for us:
for thou also hast wrought made all our works in us.
13 O LORD Yah Veh our God Elohim,
other lords adonim beside thee
have had dominion over mastered us:
but by thee only
will shall we make mention of memorialize thy name.
14 They are dead, they shall not live;
they are deceased ghosts, they shall not rise:
therefore hast thou visited and destroyed desolated them,
and made destroyed
all their memory to perish memorial.
15 Thou hast increased the nation goyim,
O LORD Yah Veh,
thou hast increased the nation goyim:
thou art glorified honoured:
thou hadst removed it far unto all the ends of the earth.
16 LORD Yah Veh,
in trouble tribulation have they visited thee,
they poured out a prayer an enchantment
when thy chastening was upon them.
17 Like Such as a woman with child having conceived,
that draweth near the time of approacheth
her delivery birthing,
is in pain writheth, and crieth out in her pangs;
so have we been in thy sight at thy face,
O LORD Yah Veh.
18 We have been with child conceived,
we have been in pain writhed,
we have as it were brought forth birthed wind;
we have not wrought worked any deliverance salvation
in the earth;
neither have the inhabitants settlers of the world fallen.
19 Thy dead men shall live,
together with my dead body carcass shall they arise.
Awake and sing shout, ye that dwell tabernacle in dust:
for thy dew is as the dew of herbs,
and the
earth shall cast out the dead land of ghosts shall fall.
20 Come, my people,
enter thou into thy chambers,
and shut thy doors about thee:
hide thyself as it were for a little moment blink,
until the indignation be overpast rage passeth over.
21 For, behold,
the LORD Yah Veh cometh out of his place
to punish visit upon the inhabitants settlers of the earth
for their iniquity perversity:
the earth also shall disclose expose her blood,
and shall no more cover her slain slaughtered.

THE DELIVERANCE OF YISRA EL

27

In that day the LORD Yah Veh
with his sore hard and great and strong sword
shall punish visit
upon leviathan the piercing fugitive serpent,
even leviathan that crooked serpent;
and he shall slay the dragon monster that is in the sea.
2 In that day sing answer ye unto her,

YESHA YAH 26, 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

we await you;
the desire of our soul
is to your name and to your memorial.
9 With my soul I desire you in the night;
yes, with my spirit within me I seek you early:
for when your judgments are in the earth,
the settlers of the world learn justness.
10 To the wicked, you grant charisma;
yet he learns not justness:
in the land of straightforwardness
he deals wickedly,
and sees not the pomp of Yah Veh.
11 Yah Veh, your hand is lifted; they see not:
they see and shame for their envy at the people;
yes, the fire of your tribulators consumes them.
12 Yah Veh, you set shalom for us:
for you also made all our works in us.
13 O Yah Veh our Elohim,
adonim beside you mastered us:
but only by you, we memorialize your name.
14 Dead — they live not; ghosts — they rise not:
so you, visit and desolate them
and destroy all their memorial.
15 You increased the goyim, O Yah Veh,
you increased the goyim: you are honored:
you removed it afar to all the ends of the earth.
16 Yah Veh, in tribulation they visit you;
they pour an enchantment;
your chastening is on them.
17 Such as a woman having conceived,
who, approaching her birthing,
writhes, cries out in her pangs;
so are we at your face, O Yah Veh.
18 We conceive; we writhe;
we birth the wind;
we work no salvation in the earth;
and the settlers of the world fall not.
19 Your dead live; their carcass rises.
Waken and shout, you who tabernacle in the dust:
for your dew is as the dew of herbs,
and the land of ghosts falls.
20 Come, my people,
enter your chambers
and shut your doors around you:
hide yourself for a little blink
until the rage passes over.
21 For, behold,
Yah Veh comes from his place
to visit on the settlers of the earth for their perversity:
and the earth exposes her blood,
and no more covers her slaughtered.

THE DELIVERANCE OF YISRA EL

27

In that day,
Yah Veh, with his hard and great and strong sword,
visits upon leviathan the fugitive serpent
— even leviathan that crooked serpent
and slays the monster in the sea.
2 In that day, you answer her,

ISAIAH 27, 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 A vineyard of red wine desire.
I the LORD do keep **Yah Veh guard** it;
I will water **shall moisten** it every moment **blink**:
lest any hurt **visit upon** it,
I will keep **shall guard** it night and day.
4 Fury is not in me:
who would set the briers and thorns against me in battle
who shall give me briers — thorns in war?
I would go **should stride** through them,
I would **should** burn them together.
5 Or let him take hold of my **strength stronghold**,
that he may make peace **work shalom** with me;
and he shall make peace **work shalom** with me.
6 He shall cause them that come of **Jacob Yaaqov**
to take root:
Israel Yisra El shall blossom and bud,
and fill the face of the world with **fruit produce**.
7 Hath he smitten him, as he smote those that smote him?
or is he **slain slaughtered**
according to the slaughter of them
that are **slain slaughtered** by him?
8 In **measure seah**, when it **shooteth forth spreadeth**,
thou wilt **debate shalt strive** with it:
he **stayeth removeth** his rough **hard wind**
in the day of the **east wind easterly**.
9 By this therefore
shall the **iniquity perversity** of **Jacob Yaaqov**
be **purged kapared/atoned**;
and this is all the fruit to **take away turn aside** his sin;
when he **maketh setteth** all the stones
of the **sacrifice altar**
as **chalkstones lime** that are **beaten in sunder shattered**,
the **groves asherah** and **images sun icons**
shall not **stand up rise**.
10 Yet the **defenced fortified** city shall be **desolate alone**,
and the habitation **of rest forsaken sent away**,
and left — **forsaken** like a wilderness:
there shall the calf **feed graze**,
and there shall he **lie down crouch**,
and **consume finish** the **branches twigs** thereof.
11 When the **boughs harvests** thereof are withered,
they shall be broken off:
the women come, and set **light** them **on fire up**:
for it is a people of no understanding:
therefore he that **made worked** them
will **shall** not have mercy on them,
and he that formed them
will **shew them no favour shall grant them no charism**.
12 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,
that the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall beat off from the **channel stream** of the river
unto the **stream wadi** of **Egypt Misrayim**,
and ye shall be gathered one by one,
O ye children **sons** of **Israel Yisra El**.
13 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,
that the great **trumpet shophar** shall be **blown blast**,
and they shall come
which were ready to **perish to those destructing**
in the land of **Assyria Ashshur**,
and the **outcasts expelled** in the land of **Egypt Misrayim**,
and shall **worship the LORD prostrate to Yah Veh**
in the holy mount at **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.

HO TO EPHRAYIM

28

Woe **Ho** to the crown of **pride pomp**,
to the **drunkards intoxicated** of **Ephraim Ephrayim**,
whose **glorious beauty adornment of splendour**
is a **fading flower withering blossom**,
which are on the head
of the **fat valleys of ointment**
of them that are **overcome hammered** with wine!
2 Behold, the **Lord Adonay** hath a mighty and strong one,
which as a tempest of hail
and a **destroying storm ruinous whirling**,
as a flood of **mighty many** waters overflowing,
shall cast down **set** to the earth with the hand.
3 The crown of **pride pomp**,
the **drunkards intoxicated** of **Ephraim Ephrayim**,
shall be trodden **trampled** under feet:
4 And the **glorious beauty adornment of splendour**,

YESHA YAH 27, 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

A vineyard of desire.
3 I Yah Veh guard it; I moisten it every blink:
lest any visit thereon, I guard it night and day:
4 Fury is not in me.
Who gives me briers — thorns in war?
I stride through them; I burn them at once.
5 Or that he uphold my stronghold
to work shalom with me:
he works shalom with me.
6 He roots them who come of Yaaqov:
Yisra El blossoms and buds
and fills the face of the world with produce.
7 Smites he him as his smiters smote him?
Or slaughters he as his slaughters slaughtered?
8 In a seah, when it spreads,
you strive therewith:
he removes his hard wind in the day of the easterly.
9 So by this
is the perversity of Yaaqov kapared/atoned;
and this is all the fruit to turn aside his sin;
in setting all the stones of the sacrifice altar
as shattered lime;
the asherah and sun icons rise not.
10 For the fortified city is alone;
the habitation of rest is sent away
— forsaken as a wilderness:
there the calf grazes; and there he crouches;
and finishes the twigs:
11 when the harvests wither, they break them off:
the women come, and light them:
for it is a people of no understanding:
so he who worked them, mercies them not,
and he who formed them, grants them no charism.
12 And so be it, in that day,
Yah Veh beats off from the stream of the river
to the wadi of Misrayim;
and gathers you, one by one, O you sons of Yisra El.

13 And so be it, in that day,
the great shophar blasts;
and they come to them
who destruct in the land of Ashshur,
and the expelled in the land of Misrayim;
and they prostrate to Yah Veh
in the holy mount at Yeru Shalem.

HO TO EPHRAYIM

28

Ho, to the crown of pomp
— to the intoxicated of Ephrayim
whose adornment of splendor is a withering blossom
on the head of the valleys of ointment
of them who are hammered with wine!
2 Behold, might and strength to Adonay
— as a tempest of hail and a ruinous whirling;
as a flood of many waters overflowing
set to the earth with the hand.
3 The crown of pomp
— the intoxicated of Ephrayim
are trampled under foot:
4 and the adornment of splendor

ISAIAH 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which is on the head of the *fat* valley of ointment,
shall be a *fading flower* **withering blossom**,
and as the *hasty fruit* before **firstfruits ere** the summer;
which when he that *looketh* **seeth** upon it seeth,
while it is yet in his *hand* **palm**
he *eateth it up* **swalloweth**.

5 In that day shall the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
be for a crown of *glory* **splendour**,
and for a *diadem* **corona of beauty adornment**,
unto the *residue* **survivors** of his people,
6 And for a spirit of judgment
to him that sitteth in judgment,
and for *strength* **might** to them
that turn the *battle* **war** to the *gate* **portal**.

7 But they also have erred **inadvertently** through wine,
and through *strong drink* **intoxicants**
are out of the way **stagger**;
the priest and the prophet have erred **inadvertently**
through *strong drink* **intoxicants**,
they are swallowed up of wine,
they *are out of the way* **stagger**
through *strong drink* **intoxicants**;
they err **inadvertently** in *vision* **sight**,
they *stumble* **waver** in judgment.

8 For all tables are *full* **filled** of vomit and *filthiness* **dung**,
so that there is no place clean.

9 Whom shall he teach knowledge?
and whom shall he *make* **have**
to *understand doctrine* **discern the report**?
them that are weaned from the milk,
and *drawn* **weaned** from the breasts.

10 For *precept must be* **misvah** upon *precept* **misvah**,
precept **misvah** upon *precept* **misvah**;
line upon line, line upon line;
here a little, *and* there a little:

11 For with *stammering* **jeering** lips and another tongue
will **shall** he *speak* **word** to this people.

12 To whom he said, This is the rest *wherewith*
ye may *cause the weary to rest* **the languid**;
and this is the *refreshing* **rest**:
yet they *would* **willed to** not hear.

13 But the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** was unto them
precept **misvah** upon *precept* **misvah**,
precept **misvah** upon *precept* **misvah**;
line upon line, line upon line;
here a little, *and* there a little;
that they might go, and *fall* **falter** backward,
and be broken, and snared, and *taken* **captured**.

14 Wherefore hear the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
ye scornful men, that *rule* **reign over** this people
which is in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

15 Because ye have said,
We have *made* **cut** a covenant with death,
and with *hell* **sheol**
are we at agreement **worked we seers**;
when the overflowing *scourge* **whip** shall pass through,
it shall not come unto us:
for we have *made* **set** lies our refuge,
and under falsehood have we hid ourselves:

16 Therefore thus saith the *Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**,
Behold, I lay in *Zion* **Siyon** for a foundation a stone,
a *tried* **proofed** stone, a *precious* **esteemed** corner stone,
a *sure* **founded** foundation:
he that *believeth* **trusteth** shall not *make haste* **hasten**.

17 Judgment also *will I lay* **shall I set** to the line,
and *righteousness* **justness** to the *plummet* **plumb line**:
and the hail shall *sweep* **snatch** away the refuge of lies,
and the waters shall overflow the *hiding place* **covert**.

18 And your covenant with death
shall be *disannulled* **kapared/atoned**,
and your *agreement* **vision** with *hell* **sheol**
shall not *stand* **rise**;
when the overflowing *scourge* **whip** shall pass through,
then ye shall be *trodden down* **trampled** by it.

19 *From the time that it goeth forth*
As often as it passeth over
it shall take you:
for morning by morning shall it pass over,
by day and by night:

YESHA YAH 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

on the head of the valley of ointment
is a withering blossom,
— as the firstfruits ere the summer;
which when he who sees, sees;
and while it is yet in his palm, swallows.

5 In that day,
Yah Veh Sabaoth becomes for a crown of splendor;
and for a corona of adornment
to the survivors of his people;
6 and for a spirit of judgment
to him sitting in judgment;
and for might
to them turning the war to the portal.

7 And even they, through wine, err inadvertently;
and through intoxicants, stagger;
the priest and the prophet, through intoxicants,
err inadvertently — swallowed by wine:
they stagger through intoxicants;
they err inadvertently in sight;
they waver in judgment.

8 For all tables are filled with vomit and dung,
without a *clean* place.

9 By whom teaches he knowledge?
And by whom discerns he the report?
By those weaned from the milk
— weaned from the breasts.

10 For misvah upon misvah, misvah upon misvah;
line upon line, line upon line;
here a little, there a little:
11 for with jeering lips and another tongue
he words to this people
12 — to whom he says,
This is the rest! Rest the languid;
and, This is the rest!
— yet they will to not hear.

13 And the word of Yah Veh is to them
— misvah upon misvah, misvah upon misvah;
line upon line, line upon line;
here a little, there a little;
so that they go and falter backward,
— broken and snared and captured.

14 So hear the word of Yah Veh,
you scornful men
15 who reign over this people in Yeru Shalem:
because you say,
We cut a covenant with death
and with sheol we work seers:
when the overflowing whip passes through,
it comes not to us:
for we set lies our refuge,
and under falsehood we hide ourselves.

16 So Adonay Yah Veh says thus,
Behold, I lay a stone in Siyon for a foundation
— a proofed stone; an esteemed corner;
a founded foundation:
he who trusts, hastens not.

17 And I set judgment to the line
and justness to the plumb line:
and the hail snatches away the refuge of lies,
and the waters overflow the covert:

18 and your covenant with death is kapared/atoned
and your vision with sheol rises not;
when the overflowing whip passes through,
then you become trampled thereby.

19 As often as it passes over, it takes you:
for morning by morning it passes over
— by day and by night:

ISAIAH 28, 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and it shall be a vexation an agitation
only to *understand* **discern** the report.
20 For the bed is shorter than
that a man can stretch himself on it to **spread thereon**:
and the covering narrower than
that he can wrap himself in it to **enfold therein**.
21 For the **LORD Yah Veh** shall rise up
as in mount **Perazim** the **mount of breaches**,
he shall be wroth **quiver**
as in the valley of **Gibeon** **Gay Gibon**,
that he may *do* **work** his work, his strange work;
and *bring to pass* **serve** his act **service**,
his strange act **service**.
22 Now therefore be ye not *mockers* **translators**,
lest your *bands* **bonds** be *made strong* **strengthened**:
for I have heard from
the Lord GOD of hosts **Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth**
a *consumption* **final finish**,
even determined **appointed** upon the whole earth.
23 Give ye ear **Hearken ye**, and hear my voice;
hearken, and hear my *speech* **saying**.
24 Doth the *plowman* **plower** plow all day to sow?
doth he open
and *break the clods of his ground* **harrow his soil**?
25 When he hath *made plain* **equalized** the face *thereof*,
doth he not *cast abroad* **scatter** the *fitches* **fennelflowers**,
and scatter the cummin,
and *cast in the principal* **set the wheat in rows**
and the *appointed* **designated** barley
and the *rie* **spelt** in their *place* **border**?
26 For his *God* **Elohim**
doth *instruct* **discipline** him to *discretion* **judgment**,
and doth teach him.
27 For the *fitches* **fennelflowers**
are not threshed with a *threshing instrument* **sickle**,
neither is a *cart* **wagon** wheel
turned about upon the cummin;
but the *fitches* **fennelflowers**
are *beaten out* **threshed** with a *staff* **rod**,
and the cummin with a *rod* **scion**.
28 Bread *corn* is *bruised* **pulverized**;
because **in threshing**,
he *will shall* not ever be *threshing it* **thresh in perpetuity**,
nor *break* **crusheth** it with the wheel of his *cart* **wagon**,
nor *bruise* **pulverize** it with his *horsemen* **cavalry**.
29 This also cometh forth
from the **LORD of hosts** **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
which is wonderful — **marvellous** in counsel,
and *excellent in working* **greatened in support**.

29

Woe **Ho** to *Ariel* **Ari El**,
to *Ariel* **Ari El** the city where David dwelt **encamped!**
add ye **scrape ye up** year to year;
let them *kill sacrifices* **strike celebrations**.
2 Yet I *will shall* distress *Ariel* **Ari El**,
and there shall be
heaviness **mourning** and *sorrow* **sighing**;
and it shall be unto me as *Ariel* **Ari El**.
3 And I *will camp* **shall encamp** against thee
round about **as a whirler**,
and *will lay siege* **shall besiege** against thee
with a *mount* **station**,
and I *will shall* raise *forts* **ramparts** against thee.
4 And thou shalt be *brought down* **abased**,
and shalt *speak* **word** out of the *ground* **earth**,
and thy *speech* **saying**
shall be *low* **prostrate** out of the dust,
and thy voice shall be,
as of one *that hath a familiar spirit* **a spiritist**,
out of the *ground* **earth**,
and thy *speech* **saying** shall *whisper* **chirp** out of the dust.
5 Moreover the multitude of thy strangers
shall be *like small dust* **as pulverized**,
and the multitude of the *terrible ones* **tyrants**
shall be as chaff that passeth away:
yea, it shall be *at an instant* **in a blink** suddenly.
6 Thou shalt be visited
of the **LORD of hosts** **Yah Veh Sabaoth**

YESHA YAH 28, 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and it becomes an agitation
even to discern the report:
20 for the bed is shorter than to spread thereon:
and the covering narrower than to enfold therein.
21 For Yah Veh rises as the mount of breaches,
he quivers as Gay Gibon,
to work his work — his strange work;
and serve his service — his strange service.
22 So now be not translators,
lest your bonds be strengthened:
for from Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth
I heard the final finish
appointed on the whole earth.
23 You, hearken, and hear my voice;
hearken, and hear my saying.
24 Plows the plower all day to seed?
Opens and harrows he his soil?
25 When he equalizes the face,
scatters he not the fennelflowers?
And scatters the cummin
and sets the wheat in rows?
And the designated barley
and the spelt in their border?
26 For his Elohim disciplines him to judgment,
and teaches him:
27 for neither are the fennelflowers
threshed with a sickle,
nor a wagon wheel
turned around on the cummin;
for the fennelflowers are threshed with a rod
and the cummin with a scion.
28 Bread is pulverized;
because in threshing,
he neither threshes in perpetuity
nor crushes with the wheel of his wagon
nor pulverizes with his cavalry.
29 This also comes from Yah Veh Sabaoth,
— marvellous in counsel and greatened in support.

29

HO TO ARI EL
Ho to Ari El! Ari El — the city David encamped!
You, scrape up year to year;
strike up the celebrations:
2 and I distress Ari El,
and there is mourning and sighing:
and it is to me as Ari El:
3 and I encamp against you as a whirler
and besiege against you with a station
and I raise ramparts against you
and abase you:
4 you word from the earth
and prostrate your saying from the dust;
and your voice is as of a spiritist from the earth
and your saying as a chirper from the dust.
5 And the multitude of your strangers pulverize,
and the multitude of the tyrants pass away as chaff:
yes, it becomes in a blink — suddenly:
6 Yah Veh Sabaoth visits you

ISAIAH 29

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

with thunder, and with earthquake **quake**,
and great **noise voice**,
with **storm hurricane** and **tempest storm**,
and the flame of devouring fire.
7 And the multitude of all the **nations goyim**
that **fight host** against **Ariel Ari El**,
even all that **fight host** against her
and her **munition hunthold**,
and that distress her,
shall be as a dream of a night vision.
8 It shall even be
as when *an hungry man* **the famished** dreameth,
and, behold, he eateth;
but he awaketh, and his soul is empty:
or as when a thirsty man dreameth,
and, behold, he drinketh;
but he awaketh, and, behold, he is *faint* **languid**,
and his soul *hath appetite* **yearneth**:
so shall the multitude of all the **nations goyim** be,
that **fight host** against mount **Zion Siyon**.
9 *Stay yourselves* **Linger**, and *wonder* **marvel**;
cry ye out **stare**, and *cry yes*, **stare**:
they *are drunken* **intoxicate**, but not with wine;
they stagger, but not with *strong drink* **intoxicants**.
10 For the **LORD Yah Veh**
hath *poured out* **libated** upon you
the spirit of *deep* **sound** sleep,
and hath *closed* **bound** your eyes:
the prophets and your *rulers* **heads**,
the seers hath he covered.
11 And the vision of all is become unto you
as the words of a *book* **scroll** that is sealed,
which *men deliver* **be given**
to one that *is learned* **knoweth the scroll**, saying,
Read **Call out** this, *I pray* **beseech** thee:
and he saith, I cannot; for it is sealed:
12 And the *book* **scroll** is *delivered* **given** to him
that *is not learned* **knoweth not the scroll**, saying,
Read **Call out** this, *I pray* **thee**:
and he saith, *I am not learned* **know not the scroll**.
13 Wherefore the Lord **Adonay** said,
Forasmuch
as this people draw near *me* with their mouth,
and with their lips *do* honour me,
but have removed their heart far from me,
and their fear toward me
is taught by the *precept* **misvah** of men:
14 Therefore, behold,
I will proceed **shall add**
to do a *marvellous work* **marvel** among this people,
even a work and a wonder **a marvellous marvel**:
for the wisdom of their wise *men*
shall *perish* **destruct**,
and the understanding of their *prudent men* **discerning**
shall be hid.
15 *Woe* **Ho** unto them that *seek deep* **deepen**
to hide their counsel from the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and their works *are* **become** in the dark,
and they say, Who seeth us? and who knoweth us?
16 Surely your turning of *things* upside down
shall be *esteemed* **fabricated**
as the *potter's clay* **former's mortar**:
for shall the work say of him that *made* **worked** it,
He *made* **worked** me not?
or shall the *thing framed* **former**
say of him that *framed* it **the former**,
He *had no understanding* **discerned not**?
17 Is it not yet a very little while,
and Lebanon shall be turned
into a *fruitful field* **an orchard/Karmel**,
and the *fruitful field* **orchard/Karmel**
shall be *esteemed* **fabricated** as a forest?
18 And in that day
shall the deaf hear the words of the *book* **scroll**,
and the eyes of the blind
shall see out of *obscurity* **thick darkness**,
and out of darkness.
19 The *meek* **humble** also
shall increase *their joy* **cheerfulness** in the **LORD Yah Veh**,

YESHA YAH 29

exeGeses companion BIBLE

with thunder and with quake and great voice;
with hurricane and storm
and the flame of devouring fire:
7 and the multitude of all the goyim
hosting against Ari El,
even all her host and her hunthold,
even those distressing her,
become as a dream of a night vision.
8 And so be it, as when the famished dream:
and behold, he eats;
and he wakens and his soul is empty:
or as when a thirsty man dreams,
and behold, he drinks;
and he wakens, and behold, he languishes,
and his soul yearns:
thus is the multitude of all the goyim
who host against mount Siyon.
9 Linger, and marvel; stare; yes, stare:
they intoxicate, and not with wine;
they stagger, and not with intoxicants.
10 For Yah Veh
libates the spirit of sound sleep upon you:
and binds your eyes — the prophets
and your heads — the seers, he covers.
11 And all the vision becomes to you
as the words of a sealed scroll
— which they give to one knowing the scroll,
saying, Call this out, I beseech you!
And he says, I cannot; for it *is* sealed!
12 And the scroll is given to him
who knows not the scroll, saying,
Call this out!
And he says, I know not the scroll!
13 Adonay says,
Because
as this people draws near with their mouth
and with their lips honor me
— and remove their heart far from me,
and their fear toward me
is taught by the misvah of men
— so behold,
I add to do a marvel among this people
— a marvellous marvel:
for the wisdom of their wise destructs
and the understanding of their discerning hides.
15 Ho to them
who deepen to hide their counsel from Yah Veh
and their works are in the dark;
and they say, Who sees us? and, Who knows us?
16 O your turning upside down!
Is the former fabricated as the mortar?
Says the work of its worker,
He worked me not?
Or says the formed of the former,
He discerned me not?
17 Is it not yet a very little while,
and Lebanon turns into an orchard/Karmel
and the orchard/Karmel *is* fabricated as a forest?
18 And in that day,
the deaf hear the words of the scroll,
and the eyes of the blind
see from thick darkness — and from darkness:
and the humble
increase cheerfulness in Yah Veh

ISAIAH 29, 30

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the poor among men **needy humanity**
shall rejoice **twirl** in the Holy One of Israel **Yisra El**.
20 For the terrible one **tyrant**
is brought to nought **ceaseth**,
and the scorner is **consumed finished off**,
and all that watch for **iniquity mischief** are cut off:
21 That **make a man cause humanity**
an offender for a **to sin in** word,
and lay a **snares** for **ensnare** him
that reproveth in the **gate portal**,
and **turn aside** **pervert** the just
for a **thing of nought waste**.
22 Therefore thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**,
who redeemed Abraham
concerning the house of **Jacob Yaaqov**,
Jacob Yaaqov shall not now **be ashamed shame**,
neither shall his face now **wax pale**.
23 But when he seeth his children,
the work of mine hands, in the midst of him,
they shall **sanctify hallow** my name,
and **sanctify hallow** the Holy One of **Jacob Yaaqov**,
and shall **fear the God awe Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**.
24 They also that **erred strayed** in spirit
shall **come to know** understanding,
and they that **murmured rebelled** shall learn doctrine.

HO TO THE REVOLTING SONS

30 Woe **Ho** to the **rebellious children revolting sons**,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that **take work** counsel, but not of me;
and that **cover with a covering pour a pouring**,
but not of my spirit,
that they may **add scrape up** sin to sin:
2 That walk to **go down descend** into **Egypt Misrayim**,
and have not asked at my mouth;
to strengthen themselves
in the **strength stronghold** of **Pharaoh Paroh**,
and to **trust seek refuge** in the shadow of **Egypt Misrayim!**
3 Therefore
shall the **strength stronghold** of **Pharaoh Paroh**
be your shame,
and the trust in the shadow of **Egypt Misrayim**
your **confusion shame**.
4 For his **princes governors** were at **Zoan Soan**,
and his **ambassadors came to angels touched** Hanes.
5 They were all ashamed
of a people that **could not profit benefiteth** them **not**,
nor be an help nor **profit benefit**,
but a shame, and also a reproach.

THE BURDEN OF THE ANIMALS OF THE SOUTH

6 The burden of the **beasts animals** of the south:
into the land of **trouble tribulation** and **anguish distress**,
from whence **come** the **young roaring lion** and old lion,
the **viper hisser** and **fiery flying serpent seraph**,
they will carry **shall bear** their **riches valuables**
upon the shoulders of **young asses colts**,
and their treasures upon the **bunches humps** of camels,
to a people that shall not **profit benefit** them.
7 For the **Egyptians shall help in vain Misrayim be vanity**,
and to **no purpose shall help in vain**:
therefore have I **cried called** concerning this,
Their **strength pride** is to **sit still shabbathize**.
8 Now go,
write **inscribe** it **before in front of** them in a **table slab**,
and **note engrave** it in a **book scroll**,
that it may be for the **time to come latter day**
for ever **eternally** and ever **eternally**:
9 That this is a rebellious people,
lying children deceptive sons,
children sons that will **to not** hear
the **law torah** of the **LORD Yah Veh**:
10 Which say to the seers, See not;
and to the **prophets seers**,
Prophesy See not unto us
right things straightforwardnesses,
speak word unto us **smooth things**,
prophesy deceits see delusions:
11 **Get you Turn ye aside** out of the way,
turn aside pervert out of the path,

YESHA YAH 29, 30

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and needy humanity
twirls in the Holy One of Yisra El.
20 For the tyrant ceases
and the scorner is finished off;
and all who watch for mischief are cut off
21 — who cause humanity to sin in word
and ensnare him who reproves in the portal
and pervert the just for a waste.
22 So Yah Veh who redeemed Abraham
says thus concerning the house of Yaaqov,
Yaaqov neither now shames
nor his face now pale.
23 For when he sees his children,
the work of my hands, in his midst,
they hallow my name
and hallow the Holy One of Yaaqov;
and awe Elohim of Yisra El.
24 And strayers in spirit know understanding,
and the rebellors learn doctrine.

HO TO THE REVOLTING SONS

30 Ho to the revolting sons
— an oracle of Yah Veh
who work counsel, but not mine;
and who pour a pouring, but not of my spirit,
who scrape up sin to sin:
2 who walk to descend into Misrayim,
and ask not at my mouth;
to strengthen themselves in the stronghold of Paroh,
and to seek refuge in the shadow of Misrayim!
3 So the stronghold of Paroh
becomes your shame;
and the trust in the shadow of Misrayim your shame.
4 For his governors were at Soan
and his angels touched Hanes:
5 they all shame by a people who benefit them not
— neither a help nor benefit
— but for shame and also for reproach.

THE BURDEN OF THE ANIMALS OF THE SOUTH

6 The burden of the animals of the south:
Into the land of tribulation and distress
from whence the roaring lion and the old lion,
the hisser and flying seraph
— who bear their valuables on the shoulders of colts
and their treasures on the humps of camels
to a people who benefit them not.
7 Yes, the Misrayim are vanity and help in vain:
so concerning this, I call out,
Their pride is to shabbathize!
8 Now go, inscribe it in front of them in a slab
and engrave it in a scroll
so that it become for the latter day
eternally and eternally:
9 that this is a rebellious people — deceptive sons
— sons who will to not hear the torah of Yah Veh:
10 who say to the seers, See not;
and to the seers,
See not straightforwardnesses to us;
word smoothly to us; see delusions:
11 you, turn aside from the way;
pervert from the path;

ISAIAH 30

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- cause the Holy One of Israel **Yisra El**
to cease **shabbathize** from *before us* **our face**.
- 12 Wherefore thus saith the Holy One of Israel **Yisra El**,
Because ye *despise* **spurn** this word,
and *trust* **confide** in oppression and perverseness,
and *stay* **lean** thereon:
- 13 Therefore this *iniquity* **perversity** shall be to you
as a **falling** breach *ready to fall*,
swelling **bulging** out in a *high* **lofted** wall,
whose breaking cometh suddenly *at an instant* **in a blink**.
- 14 And he shall break it
as the breaking of the *potters' vessel* **former's bag**
that is *broken in pieces* **crushed**;
he shall not spare:
so that there shall not be found
in the *bursting* **fracture** of it
a *sherd* **potsherd** to take fire from the *hearth* **burning**,
or to *take* **strip** water *withal* out of the *pit* **dugout**.
- 15 For thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**,
the Holy One of Israel **Yisra El**;
In returning and rest shall ye be saved;
in *quietness* **resting** and in confidence
shall be your *strength* **might**:
and ye *would* **willed** not.
- 16 But ye said, No; for we *will* **shall** flee upon horses;
therefore shall ye flee:
and, We *will* **shall** ride upon the swift;
therefore shall they that pursue you be swift.
- 17 One thousand *shall* **flee**
at the face of the rebuke of one;
at the face of the rebuke of five shall ye flee:
till ye *be left* **remain** as a *beacon* **mast**
upon the top of a mountain,
and as an ensign on an hill.
- 18 And therefore *will the LORD* **shall Yah Veh** wait,
that he may *be gracious* **grant charism** unto you,
and therefore *will* **shall** he be exalted,
that he may *have* **mercy upon** you:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** is a *God* **an Elohim** of judgment:
blessed **blithesome** are all they that wait for him.
- 19 For the people shall *dwell* **settle** in *Zion* **Siyon**
at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
in weeping, thou shalt **not** weep *no more*:
in granting charism,
he *will be very gracious* **shall grant charism**
unto thee at the voice of thy cry;
when he shall hear it, he *will* **shall** answer thee.
- 20 And *though the Lord* **Adonay**
give **giveth** you the bread of *adversity* **tribulation**,
and the water of *affliction* **oppression**,
yet shall not thy teachers
be removed into a corner **withdraw** any more,
but thine eyes shall see thy teachers:
- 21 And thine ears shall hear a word behind thee,
saying, This is the way, walk ye in it,
when ye turn to the right *hand*, and *when ye turn to* the left.
- 22 Ye shall *defile* **foul** also the *covering* **overlay**
of thy *graven images* **sculptiles** of silver,
and the *ornament* **ephod**
of thy *molten images* **moltings** of gold:
thou shalt cast them away as a menstruous cloth;
thou shalt say unto it, Get thee hence.
- 23 Then shall he give the rain of thy seed,
that thou shalt *sow* **seed** the *ground* **soil** *withal*;
and bread of the *increase* **produce** of the *earth* **soil**,
and it shall be fat and *plenteous* **fattened**:
in that day shall thy *cattle* **feed chattel** **graze**
in *large pastures* **enlarged meadows**.
- 24 The oxen *likewise* and the *young asses* **colts**
that *ear* **serve** the *ground* **soil**
shall eat *clean provender* **seasoned fodder**,
which hath been winnowed
with the *shovel* **winnowing fork**
and with the *fan* **winnowing basket**.
- 25 And there shall be upon every *high* **lifted** mountain,
and upon every high hill,
rivers **rivulets** and streams of waters
in the day of the great slaughter, when the towers fall.

YESHA YAH 30

exeGesés companion BIBLE

shabbathize the Holy One of Yisra El from our face.

- 12 So the Holy One of Yisra El says thus,
Because you spurn this word
and confide in oppression and perverseness
and lean thereon:
- 13 so this perversity is to you
as a falling breach bulging out in a lofted wall
— whose breaking comes suddenly in a blink.
- 14 And he breaks it
as breaking the bag of the former
— crushed; he spares not:
so that no potsherd is found in the fracture thereof
to take fire from the burning,
or to strip water from the dugout.
- 15 For thus says Adonay Yah Veh
the Holy One of Yisra El,
In returning and rest you are saved;
in resting and in confidence is your might:
and you will not.
- 16 But you say, No; for we flee upon horses!
— so you, flee:
and, We ride upon the swift!
— so your pursuers are swift.
- 17 One thousand
at the face of the rebuke of one;
at the face of the rebuke of five you flee:
until you remain as a mast on the top of a mountain
and as an ensign on a hill.
- 18 and so Yah Veh waits to grant you charism
— he is exalted to mercy you:
for Yah Veh is an Elohim of judgment:
blithesome — all who await him.
- 19 For the people settle in Siyon at Yeru Shalem:
in weeping, weep not:
in granting charism,
he grants you charism at the voice of your cry;
when he hears, he answers you.
- 20 And Adonay gives you the bread of tribulation
and the water of oppression;
and your teachers withdraw no more
and your eyes see your teachers:
and your ears hear a word behind you,
saying, This is the way, walk therein,
when you turn to the right and the left.
- 21 And you foul the overlay of your sculptiles of silver
and the ephod of your moltings of gold:
you cast them away as a menstruous cloth;
you say to it, Get you hence.
- 22 And he gives the rain of your seed to seed the soil;
and bread of the produce of the soil;
and it is fat and fattened:
in that day, your chattel graze in enlarged meadows:
the oxen and the colts who serve the soil
eat seasoned fodder
winnowed with the winnowing fork
and with the winnowing basket.
- 23 And so be it,
on every lifted mountain and on every high hill,
rivulets and streams of waters
in the day of the great slaughter
when the towers fall:

ISAIAH 30, 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

26 Moreover the light of the moon
shall be as the light of the sun,
and the light of the sun shall be sevenfold,
as the light of seven days,
in the day that *the LORD Yah Veh*
bindeth up the breach of his people,
and healeth the stroke of their wound.

27 Behold,
the name of *the LORD Yah Veh* cometh from far,
burning with his *anger wrath*,
and the burden *thereof* is heavy:
his lips are *full of indignation filled with rage*,
and his tongue as a *devouring consuming* fire:
28 And his *breath spirit*, as an overflowing *stream wadi*,
shall *reach to the midst of halve* the neck,
to sift the *nations goyim* with the sieve of vanity:
and there shall be a bridle in the jaws of the people,
causing them to *err stray*.

29 Ye shall have a song, as in the night
when a holy *solemnity celebration* is *kept hallowed*;
and *gladness cheerfulness* of heart,
as when one goeth with a pipe
to come into the mountain of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
to the *mighty One Rock of Israel Yisra El*.

30 And *the LORD Yah Veh* shall cause
his *glorious voice voice of majesty* to be heard,
and *shall shew the lighting down of his arm*
the resting of his arm shall be seen,
with the *indignation rage* of his *anger wrath*,
and with the flame of a *devouring consuming* fire,
with scattering, and *tempest flood*, and hailstones.

31 For through the voice of *the LORD Yah Veh*
shall the *Assyrian Ashshuri* be beaten down,
which smote with a *rod scion*.

32 And in every *place passage*
where the *grounded staff founded rod* shall pass,
which *the LORD Yah Veh* shall *lay rest* upon him,
it shall be with *tabrets tambourines* and harps:
and in *battles wars* of *shaking waving*
will shall he fight with it.

33 For *Tophet Topheth*
is *ordained of old lined up from yesterday*;
yea, for the *king sovereign* it is prepared;
he hath *made it deep deepened* and *large enlarged*:
the *pile fuel pile thereof*
is fire and *much wood abounding timber*;
the breath of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
like a *stream wadi* of *brimstone sulphur*,
doth *kindle burn* it.

HO TO THEM THAT LOOK NOT UPON THE HOLY ONE

31 Woe **Ho** to them
that *go down to Egypt descend to Misrayim* for help;
and *stay lean* on horses, and *trust confide* in chariots,
because they are many;
and in *horsemen cavalry*,
because they are *very strong mightily mighty*;
but they look not unto the Holy One of *Israel Yisra El*,
neither seek *the LORD Yah Veh!*

2 Yet he also is wise, and *will shall* bring evil,
and *will shall* not *call back turn aside* his words:
but *will shall* arise
against the house of the *evildoers vilifiers*,
and against the help of them that work *iniquity mischief*.

3 Now the *Egyptians Misrayim*
are *men human* and not *God El*;
and their horses flesh, and not spirit.
When *the LORD Yah Veh* shall *stretched out spread* his hand,
both he that helpeth shall *fall falter*,
and he that is *holpen helped* shall fall *down*,
and they all shall *fail finish* together.

4 For thus hath *the LORD spoken Yah Veh said* unto me,
Like as the lion and the *young lion whelp*
roaring meditating on his prey,
when a *multitude fulness of shepherds tenders*
is called forth against him,
he *will shall* not be *afraid terrify* of their voice,
nor *abase humble* himself
for the *noise of them multitude*:

YESHA YAH 30, 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

26 and the light of the moon
becomes as the light of the sun,
and the light of the sun becomes sevenfold,
as the light of seven days,
in the day Yah Veh binds the breach of his people,
and heals the stroke of their wound.

27 Behold, the name of Yah Veh comes from far
burning with his wrath;
and the burden is heavy:
his lips fill with rage:
and his tongue, as a consuming fire
and his spirit, as an overflowing wadi
halve the neck,
to sift the goyim with the sieve of vanity:
and a bridle in the jaws of the people
to stray them.

29 You are as a song in the night
when a holy celebration is hallowed;
and cheerfulness of heart
as when one goes with a pipe
to come into the mountain of Yah Veh,
to the Rock of Yisra El.

30 And Yah Veh has
his voice of majesty to be heard;
and the resting of his arm to be seen
with the rage of his wrath
and the flame of a consuming fire
— scattering and flood and hailstones.

31 For through the voice of Yah Veh
the Ashshuri are beaten down
— he smites with a scion.

32 And in every passage the founded rod passes,
which Yah Veh rests upon him
— with tambourines and harps:
and in wars of waving, he fights with it.
For Topheth lined up since yesterday;
yes, prepared for the sovereign;
he deepens and enlarges:
the fuel pile is fire and abounding timber;
the breath of Yah Veh, as a wadi of sulphur, burns it.

HO TO THEM WHO LOOK NOT UPON THE HOLY ONE

31 Ho to them who descend to Misrayim for help;
and lean on horses and confide in chariots
because they are many;
and in cavalry because they are mighty mighty;
and neither look to the Holy One of Yisra El
nor seek Yah Veh.

2 Yet he also is wise and brings evil
and turns not aside his words:
but rises against the house of the vilifiers,
and against the help of them who work mischief.

3 And the Misrayim are human, and not El;
and their horses flesh, and not spirit.
When Yah Veh spreads his hand
the helper falters and the helped falls
and they all finish together.

4 For Yah Veh says thus to me,
As the lion and the whelp meditate on his prey
when a fulness of tenders call against him,
he neither terrifies by their voice
nor humbles himself for the multitude:

ISAIAH 31, 32

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

so shall the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
come down **descend** to fight for mount **Zion Siyon**,
and for the hill *thereof*.

5 As birds flying,
so will the LORD of hosts **shall Yah Veh Sabaoth**
defend **Jerusalem garrison Yeru Shalem**;
defending **garrisoning** also he will **shall** deliver it;
and passing over he will *preserve* **shall rescue** it.
6 Turn ye unto him
from whom the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
have *deeply revolted* **deepened revolt**.
7 For in that day every man shall *cast away* **spurn**
his idols of silver, and his idols of gold,
which your own hands
have *made* **worked** unto you for a sin.
8 Then shall the *Assyrian* **Ashshuri** fall with the sword,
not of a *mighty man*;
and the sword, not of a *mean man* **humanity**,
shall *devour* **consume** him:
but he shall flee from **the face of** the sword,
and his *young men* **youths** shall be *discomfited* **vassals**.
9 And he shall pass over to his *strong hold* **rock**
for fear **terror**,
and his *princes* **governors**
shall be *afraid* **dismay** of the ensign,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
whose *fire* **flame** is in **Zion Siyon**,
and his furnace in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.

THE REIGN OF JUSTNESS

32 Behold, a king shall reign in *righteousness* **justness**,
and *princes* **governors** shall *rule* **govern** in judgment.
2 And a man shall be
as *an hiding place* **a refuge** from the wind,
and a covert from the *tempest* **flood**;
as *rivers* **rivulets** of water in a *dry place* **parch**,
as the shadow of a *great* **heavy** rock
in a *wearry* **languid** land.
3 And the eyes of them that see
shall not be *dim* **look away**,
and the ears of them that hear shall *hearken*.
4 The heart also of the *rash* **hasty**
shall *understand* **discern** knowledge,
and the tongue of the *stammerers*
shall be *ready* **hasten** to *speak plainly* **word clearly**.
5 The *vile person* **fool**
shall be no more called *liberal* **volunteer**,
nor the *churl* **crafty** said to be *bountiful* **opulent**.
6 For the *vile person* **fool**
will *speak villany* **shall word folly**,
and his heart will **shall work** *iniquity* **mischief**,
to *practise* **hypocrisy** **work profanity**,
and to *utter* **word** error against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to *make empty* **pour** the soul of the *hungry* **famished**,
and he will **shall** cause the drink of the thirsty to *fail* **lack**.
7 The instruments also of the *churl* **crafty** are evil:
he *deviseth* **wicked devices** **counsellleth intrigue**
to *destroy* **despoil** the *poor* **humble**
with *lying words* **false sayings**,
even when the *needy* **speakeeth** *right* **wordeth judgment**.
8 But the *liberal* **volunteer**
deviseth liberal things **counsellleth voluntarily**;
and by *liberal things* **volunteering** shall he *stand* **rise**.

RELAXED WOMEN AND CONFIDENT DAUGHTERS

9 Rise up, ye women that are *at ease* **relaxed**;
hear my voice, ye *careless* **confident** daughters;
give ear **hearken** unto my *speech* **saying**.
10 Many days and years shall ye be *troubled* **quiver**,
ye *careless women* **confiding**;
for the *vintage* **crop** shall *fail* **finish off**,
the *gathering* **ingathering** shall not come.
11 Tremble, ye women that are *at ease* **relaxed**;
be *troubled* **quiver**, ye *careless ones* **confiding**;
strip you, and *make you* **strip** bare,
and *gird sackcloth* — **a girdle** upon your loins.
12 They shall *lament* **chop** for the *teats* **breasts**,
for the *pleasant fields* **fields of desire**,
for the *fruitful* **fruitbearing** vine.
13 Upon the *land* **soil** of my people
shall *come up* **ascend** thorns and briers;

YESHA YAH 31, 32

exeGesés companion BIBLE

thus Yah Veh Sabaoth descends to fight
for mount Siyon and for the hill.

5 As birds flying,
thus Yah Veh Sabaoth garrisons Yeru Shalem:
and in garrisoning, he delivers;
and passing over he rescues.
6 You, turn to him
from whom the sons of Yisra El deepen revolt:
7 for in that day,
every man spurns his idols of silver
and his idols of gold
— which your own hands worked to you, a sin:
8 and the Ashshuri fall with the sword, not of man;
and the sword, not of humanity, consumes him:
and he flees the face of the sword
and his youths become vassals:
9 and he passes over to his rock from terror,
and his governors dismay of the ensign
— an oracle of Yah Veh
whose flame is in Siyon
and his furnace in Yeru Shalem.

THE REIGN OF JUSTNESS

32 Behold, a sovereign reigns in justness
and governors govern in judgment:
2 and man is as a refuge from the wind
and a covert from the flood;
as rivulets of water in a parch
as the shadow of a heavy rock in a languid land:
3 and the eyes of them who see, look not away;
and the ears of them who hear, hearken:
4 and the heart of the hasty
discerns knowledge,
and the tongue of the stammerers
hastens to word clearly:
5 neither is the fool called to volunteer any more
nor the crafty said to be opulent:
6 for the fool words folly
and his heart works mischief
— to work profanity
and to word error against Yah Veh
— to pour the soul of the famished;
and causes the drink of the thirsty to lack:
7 and the instruments of the crafty are evil:
he counsels intrigue
to despoil the humble with false sayings
— even when the needy word judgment.
8 and the volunteer counsels voluntarily;
and by volunteering he rises.

RELAXED WOMEN AND CONFIDENT DAUGHTERS

9 Rise up, you relaxed women;
hear my voice, you confident daughters;
hearken to my saying,
10 Many days and years you quiver — you confide:
for the crop is finished off;
the ingathering comes not.
11 Tremble, you relaxed women;
quiver, you who confide:
strip, and strip bare with a girdle on the loins.
12 They chop for the breasts
for the fields of desire
— for the fruitbearing vine:
on the soil of my people
thorns and briers ascend;

ISAIAH 32, 33

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

14 yea, upon all the houses of joy
in the *joyous* city **of jumping for joy**:
Because the *palaces* **citadels**
shall be *forsaken* **abandoned**;
the multitude of the city shall be *left* **forsaken**;
the *forts* **mounds** and **lookout** towers
shall be for *dens* for ever **caves eternally**,
a joy of wild asses **runners**, a pasture of *flocks* **droves**;
15 Until the spirit be poured **out** upon us from on high,
and the wilderness be a *fruitful field* **an orchard/Karmel**,
and the *fruitful field* **orchard/Karmel**
be *counted* **fabricated** for a forest.
16 Then judgment
shall *dwell* **tabernacle** in the wilderness,
and *righteousness* **justness**
remain **settle** in the *fruitful field* **orchard/Karmel**.
17 And the work of *righteousness* **justness**
shall be *peace* **shalom**;
and the *effect* **service** of *righteousness* **justness**
quietness **resting** and *assurance* **confidence**
for ever **eternally**.
18 And my people shall *dwell* **settle**
in a *peaceable habitation* **habitation of shalom of rest**,
and in *sure dwellings* **confident tabernacles**,
and in *quiet* resting places **of relaxation**;
19 When it shall hail,
coming down **descending** on the forest;
and the city shall be *low* **lowered**
in a *low place* **lowland**.
20 *Blessed* **Blithesome** are ye
that sow **seed** beside all waters,
that send forth *thither* the feet of the ox and the ass **burro**.

HO TO THE RAVAGER

33 *Woe* **Ho** to thee that *spoilest* **ravagest**,
and thou wast not *spoiled* **ravaged**;
and dealest *treacherously* **covertly**,
and *they dealt not treacherously with thee* **are not dealt covertly!**
when thou shalt cease **consummate** to *spoil* **ravage**,
thou shalt be *spoiled* **ravaged**;
and when thou shalt *make an end*
to deal *treacherously* **covertly**,
they shall deal *treacherously* **covertly** with thee.
2 O **LORD Yah Veh**, be *gracious* **grant charism** unto us;
we have *waited for* **awaited** thee:
be thou their arm *every morning* **mornings**,
our salvation also in the time of *trouble* **tribulation**.
3 At the *noise* **voice** of the *tumult* **multitude**
the people fled;
at the *lifting up of thyself* **thy exaltation**
the *nations* **goyim** were scattered.
4 And your spoil shall be gathered
like the *gathering* **ingathering** of the caterpillar:
as the running *to and fro* **about** of locusts
shall he *run* **yearn** upon them.
5 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** is exalted;
for he *dwelleth* **tabernacleth** on high:
he hath filled *Zion* **Siyon**
with judgment and *righteousness* **justness**.
6 And wisdom and knowledge
shall be the *stability* **trustworthiness** of thy times,
and *strength* **wealth** of salvation:
the *fear* **awe** of the **LORD Yah Veh** is his treasure.
7 Behold,
their *valiant ones* **heros** shall cry *without* **outwardly**:
the *ambassadors* **angels** of *peace* **shalom**
shall weep bitterly.
8 The highways lie *waste* **desolated**,
the *wayfaring man* **passer of the way**
ceaseth **shabbathizeth**:
he hath broken the covenant,
he hath *despised* **spurned** the cities,
he *regardeth* **fabricateth** no man.
9 The earth mourneth and languisheth:
Lebanon is ashamed **blusheth**
and *hewn down* **withereth**:
Sharon is like a *wilderness* **plain**;
and Bashan and *Carmel* **Karmel/orchard**
shake *off their fruits*.
10 Now *will* **shall** I rise, saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;

YESHA YAH 32, 33

exeGesés companion BIBLE

14 yes, on all the houses of joy
in the city of jumping for joy:
surely the citadels are abandoned
and the multitude of the city forsaken;
the mounds and lookout towers
become caves eternally
— a joy of wild runners — a pasture of droves;
15 until the spirit pours out on us from on high,
and the wilderness becomes an orchard/Karmel,
and the orchard/Karmel is fabricated for a forest.
16 Then judgment tabernacles in the wilderness,
and justness settles in the orchard/Karmel:
17 And the work of justness becomes shalom;
and the service of justness rest and confidence
eternally:
18 and my people settle
in a habitation of shalom of rest
and in confident tabernacles
and in resting places of relaxation;
19 though it hails, descending on the forest
and the city lowers into a lowland.
20 Blithesome — you who seed beside all waters,
who send forth the feet of the ox and the burro.

HO TO THE RAVAGER

33 **Ho** to you who ravage, and are not ravaged;
who deal covertly, and are not dealt covertly:
when you consummate ravaging,
they ravage you;
and when you end dealing covertly,
they deal covertly with you.
2 O Yah Veh, grant us charism; we await you:
become their arm mornings,
and our salvation in the time of tribulation.
3 At the voice of the multitude the people flee;
at your exaltation the goyim scatter:
4 and gather your spoil
as the ingathering of the caterpillar:
as the running about of locusts
he yearns on them.
5 Yah Veh is exalted; for he tabernacles on high:
he fills Siyon with judgment and justness:
6 and wisdom and knowledge
become the trustworthiness of your times
and wealth of salvation:
the awe of Yah Veh *is* his treasure.
7 Behold, their heros cry outwardly;
the angels of shalom weep bitterly;
8 the highways lie desolate;
the passers of the way shabbathize:
he breaks the covenant;
he spurns the cities;
he fabricates no man.
9 The earth mourns and languishes;
Lebanon blushes and withers;
Sharon is as a plain;
and Bashan and Karmel/orchard shake.
10 Now I rise, says Yah Veh;

ISAIAH 33, 34

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

now will **shall** I be exalted; now will **shall** I lift up myself.
 11 Ye shall conceive *chaff* **hay**,
 ye shall *bring forth* **birth** stubble:
 your *breath* **spirit**, as fire, shall *devour* **consume** you.
 12 And the people
 shall be as the *burnings* **calcinations** of lime:
 as thorns cut up shall they be burned in the fire.
 13 Hear, ye that are far off, what I have *done* **worked**;
 and, ye that are near, acknowledge my might.
 14 The sinners in *Zion* are *afraid* **Siyon** **fear**;
fearfulness **trembling**
 hath *surprised* **holden** the *hypocrites* **profaners**.
 Who among us shall *dwell* **sojourn**
 with the *devouring* **consuming** fire?
 who among us shall *dwell* **sojourn**
 with *everlasting* **eternal** burnings?
 15 He that walketh *righteously* **in justness**,
 and *speaketh uprightly* **wordeth straightly**;
 he that *despiseth* **spurneth** the gain of oppressions,
 that shaketh his *hands* **palms**
 from *holding of* **upholding** bribes,
 that *stoppeth* **shutteth** his ears from hearing of blood,
 and *shutteth* **bindeth** his eyes from seeing evil;
 16 He shall *dwell* **tabernacle** on high:
 his *place of defence* **secure loft**
 shall be the *munitions* **huntholds** of rocks:
 bread shall be given him;
 his waters shall be *sure* **trustworthy**.
 17 Thine eyes shall see the *king* **sovereign** in his beauty:
 they shall *behold* **see** the land that is very far off.
 18 Thine heart shall meditate terror.
 Where is the scribe? where is the *receiver* **weigher**?
 where is he that *counted* **scribed** the towers?
 19 Thou shalt not see a *fierce* **an obstinate** people,
 a people of a deeper *speech* **lip**
 than thou *canst perceive* **hearest**;
 of a *stammering* **deriding** tongue,
 that thou *canst* not understand.
 20 Look **See** upon *Zion* **Siyon**,
 the city of our *solemnities* **seasons**:
 thine eyes shall see *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
 a *quiet habitation* **habitation of rest and relaxation**,
 a *tabernacle* **tent** that shall not be *taken down* **migrate**;
 not one of the stakes *thereof*
 shall ever be *removed* **pulled in perpetuity**,
 neither shall any of the cords *thereof* be *broken* **orn**.
 21 But there *the glorious* **LORD** **mighty Yah Veh**
 will **shall** be unto us a place of
broad rivers and streams **rivers** — **rivers broad of hand**;
 wherein shall go no *galley* **ships** with oars,
 neither shall *gallant* **mighty** ship pass thereby.
 22 For the **LORD** **Yah Veh** is our judge,
 the **LORD** **Yah Veh** is our *lawgiver* **statute setter**,
 the **LORD** **Yah Veh** is our *king* **sovereign**;
 he will **shall** save us.
 23 Thy *tacklings* **cords** are *loosed* **abandoned**;
 they *could not well strengthen*
held not the base of their mast,
 they *could not spread* **not** the sail:
 then is the prey of a great spoil *divided* **allotted**;
 the lame *take* **plunder** the prey **plunder**.
 24 And the *inhabitant* **fellow tabernacler** shall not say,
 I am sick:
 the people that *dwell* **settle** therein
 shall be *forgiven* **bear** their *iniquity* **perversity**.

YAH VEH JUDGES THE GOYIM

34 *Come near* **Approach**, ye *nations* **goyim**, to hear;
 and hearken, ye *people* **nations**:
 let the earth hear, and all *that is therein* **its fulness**;
 the world,
 and all *things that come forth of it* **its offspring**.
 2 For the *indignation* **rage** of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**
 is upon all *nations* **goyim**,
 and his fury upon all their *armies* **hosts**:
 he hath *utterly destroyed* **devoted** them,
 he hath *delivered* **given** them to the slaughter.
 3 Their *slain* **pierced** also shall be cast out,
 and their stink shall *come up* **ascend** out of their carcasses,
 and the mountains shall be melted with their blood.

YESHA YAH 33, 34

exeGesés companion BIBLE

now I am exalted; now I am lifted.
 11 You conceive hay, you birth stubble:
 your spirit, as fire, consumes you:
 12 and the people become as the calcinations of lime
 — as thorns cut up — burned in the fire.
 13 Hear, you who are far off, what I worked;
 and, you who are near, acknowledge my might.
 14 The sinners in Siyon fear;
 trembling holds the profaners.
 Who among us sojourns with the consuming fire?
 Who among us sojourns with eternal burnings?
 15 He who walks in justness and words straightly;
 he who spurns the gain of oppressions;
 who shakes his palms from upholding bribes;
 who shuts his ears from hearing of blood
 and binds his eyes from seeing evil:
 16 he tabernacles on high;
 his secure loft, the huntholds of rocks:
 he is given bread;
 his waters are trustworthy.
 17 Your eyes see the sovereign in his beauty;
 they see a land afar off:
 your heart meditates terror.
 Where is the scribe? Where is the weigher?
 Where is he who scribed the towers?
 19 You see not an obstinate people
 — a people of a lip too deep to hear;
 of a deriding tongue that you understand not.
 20 See on Siyon, the city of our seasons:
 your eyes see Yeru Shalem
 — a habitation of rest and relaxation
 — a tent that neither migrates
 nor one of the stakes pulled in perpetuity
 nor any of the cords torn.
 21 But there mighty Yah Veh
 is to us a place of rivers — rivers broad of hand;
 wherein neither ships with oars go
 nor mighty ships pass thereby.
 22 For Yah Veh our judge;
 Yah Veh our statute setter;
 Yah Veh our sovereign; he saves us.
 23 Your cords are abandoned;
 they neither hold the base of their mast
 nor spread the sail:
 then they allot the prey of a great spoil:
 and the lame plunder the plunder:
 24 and the fellow tabernacler says not, I am sick:
 the people who settle therein bear their perversity.

YAH VEH JUDGES THE GOYIM

34 Approach, you goyim, to hear;
 and hearken, you nations:
 hear, O earth, and all its fulness;
 the world, and all its offspring:
 2 for the rage of Yah Veh is on all goyim,
 and his fury on all their hosts:
 he devotes them; he gives them to the slaughter:
 3 and their pierced are cast out
 and their stink ascends from their carcasses
 and the mountains melt with their blood:

ISAIAH 34, 35

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 And all the host of heaven **the heavens**
shall be dissolved,
and the heavens shall be rolled together as a scroll:
and all their host shall *fall down* **wither**,
as the leaf *falleth off* **withereth** from the vine,
and as a *fading fig* **withering** from the fig tree.
5 For my sword
shall be *bathed* **saturated** in *heaven* **the heavens**:
behold,
it shall *come down* **descend** upon *Idumea* **Edom**,
and upon the people of my *curse* **devotement**,
to judgment.
6 The sword of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** is filled with blood,
it is *made fat* **fattened** with *fatness* **fat**,
and with the blood of *lambs* **rams** and **he** goats,
with the fat of the *kidneys* **reins** of rams:
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath a sacrifice in *Bozrah* **Bosrah**,
and a great slaughter in the land of *Idumea* **Edom**.
7 And the *unicorns* **reems**
shall *come down* **descend** with them,
and the bullocks with the *bulls* **mighty**;
and their land shall be *soaked* **saturated** with blood,
and their dust *made fat with fatness* **fatteneth with fat**.
8 For it is the day
of the *LORD'S* **vengeance** **Yah Veh's** **avengement**,
and the year of *recompences* **satisfactions**
for the *controversy* **strife** of *Zion* **Siyon**.
9 And the *streams* **wadies** thereof
shall be turned into *pitch* **asphalt**,
and the dust thereof into *brimstone* **sulphur**,
and the land thereof shall become burning *pitch* **asphalt**.
10 It shall not be quenched night nor day;
the smoke thereof shall *go up for ever* **ascend eternally**:
from generation to generation it shall lie *waste* **parched**;
none shall pass through *it for ever and ever* **in perpetuity**.
11 But the *cormorant* **pelican** and the bittern
shall possess it;
the owl also and the raven shall *dwell* **tabernacle** in it:
and he shall *stretch out* **spread** upon it
the line of *confusion* **waste**, and the stones of emptiness.
12 They shall call the nobles thereof to the kingdom,
but none shall be there,
and all her *princes* **governors** shall be *nothing* **decease**.
13 And thorns
shall *come up* **ascend** in her *palaces* **citadels**,
nettles **thistles** and *brambles* **thorns**
in the fortresses thereof:
and it shall be an habitation of *rest* of *dragons* **monsters**,
and a court for *daughters* of the owls.
14 The *wild beasts of the desert* **desert dwellers**
shall also meet
with the *wild beasts of the island* **island howlers**,
and the *satyr* **buck** shall *cry* **call** to his *fellow* **friend**;
the *screech owl* **night spectre** also shall rest there,
and find for herself a place of rest.
15 There shall the *great owl* **make her** **arrowsnake** nest,
and *lay* **escape**, and *hatch* **split**,
and *gather* **brood** under her shadow:
there shall the *vultures* **falcons** also be gathered,
every *one* **woman** with her *mate* **friend**.
16 Seek ye out of the *book* **scroll** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *read* **call out**:
no one of these shall *fail* **lack**,
none **no woman** shall *want* **oversee** her mate:
for my mouth it hath *commanded* **misvahed**,
and his spirit it hath gathered them.
17 And he hath *cast* **felled** the *lot* **pebble** for them,
and his hand hath *divided* **allotted** it unto them by line:
they shall possess it *for ever* **eternally**,
from generation to generation
shall they *dwell* **tabernacle** therein.

THE WAY OF HOLINESS

35 The wilderness and the *solitary place* **parch**
shall be *glad* **rejoice** for them;
and the *desert* **plain** shall *rejoice* **twirl**,
and blossom as the rose.
2 **In blossoming**, It shall blossom *abundantly*,
and *rejoice* **twirl**
even with *joy* **twirling** and *singing* **shouting**:

YESHA YAH 34, 35

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 and all the host of the heavens dissolves
and the heavens roll together as a scroll:
and all their host withers
as the leaf withers from the vine
— as a withering from the fig tree.
5 For my sword saturates in the heavens:
behold, it descends on Edom
and on the people of my devotement
to judgment.
6 The sword of Yah Veh fills with blood,
— fattens with fat
with the blood of rams and he goats;
with the fat of the reins of rams:
for Yah Veh — a sacrifice in Bosrah
and a great slaughter in the land of Edom.
7 And the reems descend with them
and the bullocks with the mighty;
and their land saturates with blood
and their dust fattens with fat:
8 for it is the day of avengement of Yah Veh
and the year of satisfactions for the strife of Siyon.
9 And the wadies turn into asphalt
and the dust into sulphur
and the land becomes burning asphalt
— not quenched night or day;
the smoke ascends eternally:
from generation to generation it lies parched;
no one passes through in perpetuity.
11 And the pelican and the bittern possess it;
and the owl and the raven tabernacle therein:
and thereon, he spreads the line of waste,
and the stones of emptiness.
12 They call the nobles to the kingdom
but no one is there;
and all her governors decease:
13 and thorns ascend in her citadels
— thistles and thorns in the fortresses:
and it becomes a habitation of rest of monsters
— a court for daughters of the owls:
14 and the desert dwellers
meet with the island howlers;
and the buck calls to his friend;
and the night spectre rests there,
and finds a place of rest for herself:
15 there the arrowsnake nests
and escapes and splits and broods under her shadow:
and there the falcons gather
— every woman with her friend.
16 Seek the scroll of Yah Veh, and call out!
Not one of these lack!
No woman oversees her mate:
for my mouth misvahs,
and his spirit gathers them:
17 and he fells the pebble for them,
and his hand allots to them by line:
they possess it eternally,
from generation to generation they tabernacle therein.

THE WAY OF HOLINESS

35 The wilderness and the parch rejoice for them;
and the plain twirls and blossoms as the rose.
2 In blossoming, it blossoms;
in twirling, it twirls and shouts:

ISAIAH 35, 36

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the *glory* **honour** of Lebanon shall be given unto it,
the *excellency* **majesty**
of *Carmel* **Karmel/orchard** and Sharon,
they shall see the *glory* **honour** of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and the *excellency* **majesty** of our *God Elohim*.
3 Strengthen ye the weak hands,
and *confirm* **strengthen** the *feeble* **faltering** knees.
4 Say to them that are of a *fearful* **hasty** heart,
Be strong, *fear* **awe** not:
behold, your *God* **Elohim!**
will come with vengeance **avengement shall come**,
even God with a recompence — **the dealing of Elohim**;
he *will* **shall** come and save you.
5 Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened,
and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.
6 Then shall the lame *man* leap as an hart,
and the tongue of the *dumb* **sing** **mute shout**:
for in the wilderness shall waters *break out* **split**,
and *streams* **wadies** in the *desert* **plain**.
7 And the *parched ground* **mirage**
shall become a *pool* **marsh**,
and the thirsty *land springs* **fountains** of water:
in the habitation **of rest** of *dragons* **monsters**,
where each lay **in its repose**,
shall be grass with *reeds* **stalks** and *rushes* **bulrushes**.
8 And an highway shall be there, and a way,
and it shall be called The way of holiness;
the *unclean* **foul** shall not pass over it;
but it shall be for those:
the wayfaring men **waywalkers**, though fools,
shall not err *therein*.
9 No lion shall be there,
nor any ravenous *beast* **live being**
shall *go up* **ascend** thereon,
it shall not be found there;
but the redeemed shall walk there:
10 And the *ransomed* **redeemed** of the *LORD Yah Veh*
shall return,
and come to *Zion* **Siyon** with *songs* **shouting**
and *everlasting joy* **eternal cheerfulness**
upon their heads:
they shall *obtain* **attain**
joy **rejoicing** and *gladness* **cheerfulness**,
and *sorrow* **grief** and sighing shall flee away.

SANCHERIB APPREHENDS YAH HUDAH

36 Now **And so be** it *came to pass*
in the fourteenth year
of king *Hesekiah* **sovereign Yechizqi Yah**,
that Sennacherib **Sancherib**,
king sovereign of Assyria **Ashshur**
came up **ascended** against all the *defenced* **fortified** cities
of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, and *took* **apprehended** them.
2 And the *king sovereign of Assyria* **Ashshur**
sent *Rabshakeh* **Rab Shaqeh**
from *Lachish* to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
unto king *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
heavy with a *great army* **valiant**.
And he stood
by the *conduit* **channel** of the *upper* **most high** pool
in the highway of the fuller's field.
3 Then came forth unto him *Eliakim* **El Yaqim**,
Hilkiah's **Hilqi Yah's** son, which was over the house,
and Shebna the scribe,
and *Joah* **Yah Ach**, *Asaph's* son,
the *recorder* **memorializer**.
4 And *Rabshakeh* **Rab Shaqeh** said unto them,
Say ye *now* **I beseech**, to *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**,
Thus saith the great *king sovereign*,
the *king sovereign* of *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
What confidence is this wherein thou *trustest* **confidest**?
5 I say, *sayest thou*,
(but *they are but vain* **only lip** words)
I have counsel and *strength* **might** for war:
now on whom *dost thou trust* **confidest thou**,
that thou rebellest against me?
6 Lo **Behold**, thou *trustest* **confidest**
in the *staff* **crutch** of this *broken reed* **crushed stalk**,
on *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
whereon if a man *lean* **prop**,

YESHA YAH 35, 36

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the honor of Lebanon is given to it
— the majesty of Karmel/orchard and Sharon:
they see the honor of Yah Veh
and the majesty of our Elohim:
strengthen the weak hands
and strengthen the faltering knees.
3
4 Say to the hasty heart,
Be strong! Awe not! Behold, your Elohim!
Avengement comes — the dealing of Elohim;
he comes and saves you.
5 Then the eyes of the blind open
and the ears of the deaf unstop;
6 then the lame leap as a hart
and the tongue of the mute shouts:
for the waters split in the wilderness
and wadies in the plain:
7 and the mirage becomes a marsh;
and the thirsty, fountains of water:
in the habitation of rest wherein monsters repose,
grass with stalks and bulrushes.
8 And there becomes a highway, and a way;
and it is called The way of holiness;
the foul pass not over;
and it *is* for them — waywalkers;
even fools err not.
9 No lion is there;
a ravenous live being ascends not thereon;
it is not found therein;
and the redeemed walk therein:
10 and the redeemed of Yah Veh return
and come to Siyon with shouting
and eternal cheerfulness on their heads:
they attain rejoicing and cheerfulness,
and grief and sighing flee away.

SANCHERIB APPREHENDS YAH HUDAH

36 And so be it,
in the fourteenth year of sovereign Yechizqi Yah,
Sancherib sovereign of Ashshur
ascends against all the fortified cities of Yah Hudah
and apprehends them:
2 and the sovereign of Ashshur
sends Rab Shaqeh from Lachish to Yeru Shalem
to king Yechizqi Yah — heavy with valiant:
and he stands by the channel of the most high pool
in the highway of the field of the fuller.
3 Then El Yaqim the son of Hilqi Yah
who is over the house
comes to him, with Shebna the scribe,
and Yah Ach the son of Asaph the memorializer.
4 And Rab Shaqeh says to them,
You, say, I beseech, to Yechizqi Yah,
Thus says the great sovereign
— the sovereign of Ashshur,
What is this confidence wherein you confide?
5 I say, surely, words of lips!
Counsel and might *are* for war!
Now on whom confide you, to rebel against me?
6 Behold,
you confide in the crutch of this crushed stalk
— on Misrayim;
whereon, if a man props,

ISAIAH 36

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

it will **shall** go into his *hand* **palm**, and pierce it:
so is Pharaoh **Paroh king sovereign** of Egypt **Misrayim**
to all that *trust* **confide** in him.
7 But if thou say to me,
We *trust* **confide** in the **LORD Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**:
is it not he,
whose *high places* **bamahs** and whose *sacrifice* altars
Hesekiah **Yechizqi Yah** hath *taken away* **turned aside**,
and said
to *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
Ye shall *worship* **prostrate**
before **at the face of this sacrifice** altar?
8 Now therefore *give pledges* **pledge**, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
to my *master* **adoni**
the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
and I will **shall** give thee two thousand horses,
if thou be able on thy part to *set* **give** riders upon them.
9 How then wilt **shalt** thou turn away the face
of one *captain* **governor**
of the *least* **lesser** of my *master's* **adoni's** servants,
and *put thy trust* **confide** on *Egypt* **Misrayim**
for chariots and for *horsemen* **cavalry**?
10 And am I now *come up* **ascended**
without the **LORD Yah Veh**
against this land to *destroy* **ruin** it?
the LORD **Yah Veh** said unto me,
Go up **Ascend** against this land, and *destroy* **ruin** it.
11 Then said
Eliakim **El Yaqim** and *Shebna* and *Joah* **Yah Ach**
unto *Rabshakeh* **Rab Shaqeh**,
Speak **Word**, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
unto thy servants in the *Syrian language* **Aramaic**;
for we *understand it* **hear**:
and *speak* **word** not to us
in the *Jews' language* **Yah Hudaic**,
in the ears of the people that are on the wall.
12 But *Rabshakeh* **Rab Shaqeh** said,
Hath my *master* **adoni** sent me to thy *master* **adoni**
and to thee to *speak* **word** these words?
hath he not *sent me* to the men that sit upon the wall,
that they may eat their own *dung* **excrements**,
and drink *their own piss* **the urine at their feet** with you?
13 Then *Rabshakeh* **Rab Shaqeh** stood,
and *cried* **called out** with a *loud* **great** voice
in the *Jews' language* **Yah Hudaic**, and said,
Hear ye the words of the great *king* **sovereign**,
the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**.
14 Thus saith the *king* **sovereign**,
Let not *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** deceive you:
for he shall not be able to *deliver* **rescue** you.
15 Neither let *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
make **have** you *trust* **confide** in the **LORD Yah Veh**,
saying,
The LORD will surely deliver
In rescuing, Yah Veh shall rescue us:
this city shall not be *delivered* **given**
into the hand of the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**.
16 Harken not to *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**:
for thus saith the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
Make an agreement **Work** with me
by a present **a blessing**,
and come out to me:
and eat ye every *one* **man** of his vine,
and every *one* **man** of his fig tree,
and drink ye every *one* **man**
the waters of his own *cistern* **well**;
17 Until I come
and take you away to a land like your own land,
a land of *corn* **crop** and *wine* **juice**,
a land of bread and vineyards.
18 *Beware*
lest *Hesekiah* *persuade* **Yechizqi Yah** *goad* you,
saying, *the LORD will deliver* **Yah Veh shall rescue** us.
Hath any *man* of the *gods* **elohim** of the *nations* **goyim**
delivered **rescued** his land
out of the hand of the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**?
19 Where are the *gods* **elohim** of Hamath and Arphad?
where are the *gods* **elohim** of *Sepharvaim* **Sepharvayim**?

YESHA YAH 36

exeGesés companion BIBLE

it goes into his palm, and pierces:
thus *is* Paroh sovereign of Misrayim
to all who *confide* in him.
7 And if you say to me,
We *confide* in Yah Veh our Elohim!
— is it not he,
whose bamahs and whose sacrifice altars
Yechizqi Yah turned aside,
and said to Yah Hudah and to Yeru Shalem,
Prostrate you at the face of this sacrifice altar?
8 And now pledge, I beseech you,
to my adoni the sovereign of Ashshur,
and I give you two thousand horses,
if you are able on your part to give riders on them.
9 And how turn you away the face of one governor
of the lesser of the servants of my adoni,
and *confide* on Misrayim for chariots and for cavalry?
10 And now ascend I without Yah Veh
against this land to ruin it?
Yah Veh said to me,
Ascend against this land, and ruin it.
11 And El Yaqim and Shebna and Yah Ach
say to Rab Shaqeh,
Word, I beseech you, to your servants in Aramaic;
for we hear:
and word not to us in Yah Hudaic,
in the ears of the people on the wall.
12 And Rab Shaqeh says,
Has my adoni sent me to your adoni
to word these words to you?
Is it not to the men who sit on the wall
to eat their own excrements
and drink the urine at their feet with you?
13 And Rab Shaqeh stands
and calls out with a great voice in Yah Hudaic,
and says,
You, hear the words of the great sovereign
the sovereign of Ashshur!
14 Thus says the sovereign,
Neither let Yechizqi Yah deceive you:
for he is not able to rescue you:
15 nor let Yechizqi Yah have you *confide* in Yah Veh,
saying, In rescuing, Yah Veh rescues us.
This city is not given
into the hand of the sovereign of Ashshur.
16 Harken not to Yechizqi Yah:
for thus says the sovereign of Ashshur,
Work a blessing with me and come out to me
and every man eat of his vine
and every man of his fig tree;
and every man drink the waters of his own well;
17 — until I come and take you away
to a land like your own land
— a land of bread and vineyards;
18 lest Yechizqi Yah goads you, saying,
Yah Veh rescues us.
Has any man of the *elohim* of the *goyim*
rescued his land
from the hand of the sovereign of Ashshur?
19 Where are the *elohim* of Hamath and Arphad?
Where are the *elohim* of Sepharvayim?

ISAIAH 36, 37

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and have they delivered Samaria rescued Shomeron
out of my hand?
Who are they
among all the gods **elohim** of these lands,
that have delivered **rescued** their land out of my hand,
that the **LORD Yah Veh**
should deliver Jerusalem **rescue Yeru Shalem**
out of my hand?
But they held their peace **hushed**,
and answered him not a word:
for the king's commandment **sovereign's misvah** was,
saying, Answer him not.
Then came **Eliakim El Yaqim**,
the son of **Hilkiah Hilqi Yah**,
that was over the household,
and Shebna the scribe,
and **Joah Yah Ach**, the son of Asaph,
the recorder **memorializer**,
to **Hesekiah Yechizqi Yah** with their clothes rent **ripped**,
and told him the words of **Rabshakeh Rab Shaqeh**.

37 And so be it came to pass,
when king **Hesekiah sovereign Yechizqi Yah** heard it,
that he rent **ripped** his clothes,
and covered himself with sackcloth **saq**,
and went into the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.

2 And he sent **Eliakim El Yaqim**,
who was over the household,
and Shebna the scribe,
and the elders of the priests covered with sackcloth **saq**,
unto **Isaiah Yesha Yah** the prophet
the son of **Amoz Amos**.

3 And they said unto him,
Thus saith **Hesekiah Yechizqi Yah**,
This day is a day of **trouble tribulation**,
and of rebuke, and of **blasphemy scorning**:
for the **children sons** are come to the **birth matrix**,
and there is not strength to bring forth **birth**.

4 It may be the **LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim**
will **shall** hear the words of **Rabshakeh Rab Shaqeh**,
whom the king **sovereign** of **Assyria Ashshur**
his **master adoni**
hath sent to reproach the living **God Elohim**,
and will **shall** reprove the words
which the **LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim** hath heard:
wherefore lift up thy prayer
for the **remnant survivors** that is left **survive**.

5 So the servants
of king **Hesekiah sovereign Yechizqi Yah**
came to **Isaiah Yesha Yah**.

6 And **Isaiah Yesha Yah** said unto them,
Thus shall ye say unto your **master adoni**,
Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**,
Be not afraid Awe not at the face
of the words that thou hast heard,
wherewith the **servants lads**
of the king **sovereign** of **Assyria Ashshur**
have blasphemed me.

7 Behold, I will send a **blast shall give a spirit** upon him,
and he shall hear a **rumour report**,
and return to his own land;
and I will cause him to fall **shall fell him**
by the sword in his own land.

8 So **Rabshakeh Rab Shaqeh** returned,
and found the king **sovereign** of **Assyria Ashshur**
warring **fighting** against **Libnah**:
for he had heard that he was departed from **Lachish**.

9 And he heard say concerning **Tirhakah Tirhaqah**,
king **sovereign** of **Ethiopia Kush**,
He is come forth to **make war fight** with thee.
And when he heard it,
he sent **messengers angels** to **Hesekiah Yechizqi Yah**,
saying,

10 Thus shall ye speak **say** to **Hesekiah Yechizqi Yah**,
king **sovereign** of **Judah Yah Hudah**, saying,
Let not thy **God Elohim**, in whom thou **trustest confidest**,
deceive thee, saying,
Jerusalem Yeru Shalem shall not be given
into the hand of the king **sovereign** of **Assyria Ashshur**.

YESHA YAH 36, 37

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Rescued they Shomeron from my hand?
20 Who are they, among all the **elohim** of these lands,
who rescued their land from my hand,
that **Yah Veh** rescue **Yeru Shalem** from my hand?
21 And they hush and answer him not a word:
for the **misvah** of the **sovereign is**, saying,
Answer him not.
22 And **El Yaqim** the son of **Hilqi Yah**
who is over the household,
comes with **Shebna** the scribe,
and **Yah Ach** the son of **Asaph**, the **memorializer**,
to **Yechizqi Yah** with their clothes **ripped**,
and tell him the words of **Rab Shaqeh**.

37 And so be it,
when **sovereign Yechizqi Yah** hears,
he rips his clothes and covers himself with **saq**,
and goes into the house of **Yah Veh**.

2 And he sends **El Yaqim** who is over the household,
and **Shebna** the scribe and the elders of the priests
covered with **saq**,
to **Yesha Yah** the prophet the son of **Amos**:
and they say to him,
3 Thus says **Yechizqi Yah**,
This day is a day of **tribulation**
and of **rebuke** and of **scorning**:
for the **sons** come to the **matrix**
and there is no strength to **birth**.

4 Perhaps **Yah Veh thy Elohim**
hears the words of **Rab Shaqeh**,
whom the **sovereign** of **Ashshur** his **adoni**
sent to reproach the living **Elohim**,
and to reprove the words
Yah Veh thy Elohim heard:
and to lift your prayer for the **survivors** who **survive**.

5 And the servants of **sovereign Yechizqi Yah**
come to **Yesha Yah**:
6 and **Yesha Yah** says to them,
You, say thus to your **adoni**,
Thus says **Yah Veh**,
Awe not at the face of the words you heard,
wherewith the **lads** of the **sovereign** of **Ashshur**
blasphemed me.

7 Behold, I give a **spirit** on him,
and he hears a **report**,
and returns to his own land;
and I fell him by the sword in his own land.

8 And **Rab Shaqeh** returns,
and finds the **sovereign** of **Ashshur**
fighting **Libnah**:
for he heard that he departed from **Lachish**:
9 and he heard say
concerning **Tirhaqah** **sovereign** of **Kush**,
He comes to fight you.

And he hears,
and sends **angels** to **Yechizqi Yah**, saying,
You, say thus to **Yechizqi Yah**
sovereign of **Yah Hudah**, saying,
Let not your **Elohim**, in whom you confide,
deceive you, saying,
Yeru Shalem is not given
into the hand of the **sovereign** of **Ashshur**.

ISAIAH 37

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

11 Behold, thou hast heard
what the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
have *done* **worked** to all lands
by *destroying* **devoting** them *utterly*;
and shalt thou be *delivered* **rescued**?

12 Have the *gods* **elohim** of the *nations* **goyim**
delivered **rescued** them
which my fathers have *destroyed* **ruined**,
as Gozan, and Haran, and *Rezeeph* **Reseph**,
and the *children* **sons** of Eden which were in Telassar?

13 Where is the *king* **sovereign** of Hamath,
and the *king* **sovereign** of Arphad,
and the *king* **sovereign**
of the city of *Sepharvaim* **Sepharvayim**,
Hena, and *Ivah* **Avvah**?

14 And *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
received **took** the *letter* **scroll**
from the hand of the *messengers* **angels**,
and *read it* **called it out**:
and *Hesekiah* went up **Yechizqi Yah ascended**
unto the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and spread it *before the LORD* **at the face of Yah Veh**.

15 And *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
prayed unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, saying,
16 O *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
God **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that *dweldest* **settlest**
between **upon** the *cherubims* **cherubim**,
thou *art the God* **Elohim**, *even* thou alone,
of all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the earth:
thou hast *made heaven* **worked the heavens** and earth.

17 *Incline* **Spread** thine ear, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, and hear;
open thine eyes, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**, and see:
and hear all the words of *Sennacherib* **Sancherib**,
which hath sent to reproach the living *God* **Elohim**.

18 *Of a truth* **Truly**, *LORD* **O Yah Veh**,
the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
have *laid waste* **parched** all the *nations* **lands**,
and their *countries* **lands**,

19 And have *cast* **given** their *gods* **elohim** into the fire:
for they were no *gods* **elohim**,
but the work of *men's* **human** hands,
wood **timber** and stone:
therefore they have destroyed them.

20 Now therefore, O *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
save us from his hand,
that all the kingdoms of the earth may know
that thou *art the LORD* **Yah Veh**, *even* thou only.

21 Then *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah** the son of *Amoz* **Amos**
sent unto *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**, saying,
Thus saith
the *LORD* **God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Whereas thou hast prayed to me against
Sennacherib **Sancherib**,
king **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**:

22 This is the word which the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *spoken* **worded** concerning him;
The virgin, the daughter of *Zion* **Siyon**,
hath despised thee, and *laughed* **ridiculed** thee to *scorn*;
the daughter of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
hath shaken her head at **behind** thee.

23 Whom hast thou reproached and blasphemed?
and against whom hast thou exalted thy voice,
and lifted up thine eyes on high?
even against the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

24 By the *hand* of thy servants
hast thou reproached the *Lord* **Adonay**,
and hast said, By the *multitude* **abundance** of my chariots
am I *come up* **ascended** to the height of the mountains,
to the *sides* **flanks** of Lebanon;
and I *will* **shall** cut down
the *tall* **height of the** cedars *thereof*,
and the choice fir trees *thereof*:
and I *will* **shall** enter into the height of his *border* **edge**,
and the forest of his *Carmel* **Karmel/orchard**.

25 I have digged, and drunk water;
and with the sole of my *feet* **steps**
have I *dried up* **parched**
all the rivers of the *besieged places* **rampart**.

YESHA YAH 37

exeGeses companion BIBLE

11 Behold, you heard what the sovereigns of Ashshur
worked to all lands by devoting them
— and rescue you?

12 The elohim of the goyim
whom my fathers ruined
— Gozan and Haran and Reseph
and the sons of Eden which were in Telassar
— rescued they them?

13 Where is the sovereign of Hamath?
And the sovereign of Arphad?
And the sovereign of the city of Sepharvayim,
Hena, and Avvah?

14 And Yechizqi Yah
takes the scroll from the hand of the angels,
and calls it out:
and Yechizqi Yah ascends to the house of Yah Veh
and spreads it at the face of Yah Veh:
and Yechizqi Yah prays to Yah Veh, saying,
15 O Yah Veh Sabaoth, Elohim of Yisra El,
16 who settles on the cherubim
— you Elohim — you only
of all the sovereigndoms of the earth;
who worked the heavens and earth:
spread your ear, O Yah Veh, and hear;
open your eyes, O Yah Veh, and see:
and hear all the words of Sancherib,
who sent to reproach the living Elohim.

17 Truly, O Yah Veh,
18 the sovereigns of Ashshur parched all the lands,
and their lands;
and gave their elohim into the fire:
for they are no elohim
— only the work of human hands, timber and stone:
they destroyed them.

20 And now, O Yah Veh our Elohim,
save us from his hand,
so that all the kingdoms of the earth know
that you are Yah Veh — you only.

21 And Yesha Yah the son of Amos
sends to Yechizqi Yah, saying,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
That which you prayed to me
against Sancherib sovereign of Ashshur,
22 this is the word Yah Veh words concerning him:
The virgin, the daughter of Siyon,
despises you, ridicules you;
the daughter of Yeru Shalem
shakes her head behind you.

23 Whom reproach you? And blaspheme?
And against whom exalt you your voice?
And lift your eyes on high?
Against the Holy One of Yisra El!

24 By the hand of your servants you reproach Adonay,
and say,
By the abundance of my chariots
I ascend to the height of the mountains
— to the flanks of Lebanon;
and I cut down the height of the cedars
and the choice fir trees:
and I enter the height of his edge
and the forest of his Karmel/orchard:
I dig and drink water;
25 and with the sole of my steps
I parch all the rivers of the rampart.

ISAIAH 37, 38

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

26 Hast thou not heard *long ago* in the distant past,
how I have *done* **worked** it;
and of ancient *times* **days**, that I have formed it?
now have I brought it to *pass* **become**,
that thou shouldst
be to lay waste defenced **fortified** cities
into *ruinous* **desolated** heaps.

27 Therefore their *inhabitants* **settlers**
were of *small power* **short handed**,
they were dismayed and *confounded* **shamed**:
they were as the *grass* **herbage** of the field,
and as the green *herb* **sprouts**,
as the grass on the *housetops* **roofs**,
and as *corn blasted* **the field**
before it be grown up **at the face of the stalks**.

28 But I know thy *abode* **sitting**,
and thy going out, and thy coming in,
and thy *rage* **quaking** against me.

29 Because thy *rage* **quaking** against me,
and thy *tumult* **uproar**,
is come up **ascendeth** into mine ears,
therefore
will I put **I shall set** my hook in thy *nose* **nostrils**,
and my *bridle* **bit** in thy lips,
and I *will* **shall** turn thee back
by the way by which thou camest.

30 And this shall be a sign unto thee,
Ye shall eat this year
such as growth of itself **the spontaneous growth**;
and the second year
that which springeth of the same
the spontaneous growth:
and in the third year sow ye, and *reap* **harvest**,
and plant vineyards, and eat the fruit *thereof*.

31 And the *remnant* **escapees** that *is escaped* **survived**
of the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
shall again take root downward,
and *bear* **work** fruit upward:

32 For out of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
shall go forth a *remnant* **survivors**,
and *they that escape* **the escapees**
out of mount *Zion* **Siyon**:
the zeal of the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
shall *do* **work** this.

33 Therefore thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
concerning the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
He shall not come into this city,
nor shoot an arrow there,
nor *come before it* **anticipate** with *shields* **buckler**,
nor *cast* **pour** a bank against it.

34 By the way that he came, by the same shall he return,
and shall not come into this city,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

35 For I *will defend* **shall garrison** this city to save it
for mine own sake, and for my servant David's sake.

36 Then the angel of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** went forth,
and smote in the camp of the *Assyrians* **Ashshur**
a hundred and *fourscore* **eighty** and five thousand:
and when they *arose* **started** early in the morning,
behold, they were all dead *corpses* **carcases**.

37 So *Sennacherib* **Sancherib**, *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
departed **pulled stakes**,
and went and returned, and *dwelt* **settled** at Nineveh.

38 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
as he was *worshipping* **prostrating**
in the house of Nisroch his *god* **elohim**,
that *Adrammelech* **Adram Melech** and *Sharezer* **Shareser**
his sons smote him with the sword;
and they escaped into the land of *Armenia* **Ararat**:
and *Esarhaddon* **Esar Chaddon** his son
reigned in his stead.

THE HEALING OF YECHIZQI YAH

38

In those days
was *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** sick unto death.
And *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah** the prophet the son of *Amoz* **Amos**
came unto him, and said unto him,
Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Set **Misvah** concerning thine house *in order*:
for thou shalt die, and not live.

YESHA YAH 37, 38

exeGeses companion BIBLE

26 Heard you not in the distant past, that I worked it?
Of ancient days, that I formed it?
now I bring it to become,
for you to waste fortified cities into desolate heaps.

27 And their settlers are short handed
— dismayed and shamed
— as the herbage of the field
and as the green sprouts;
as the grass on the roofs
and as the field at the face of the stalks.

28 And I know your sitting
and your coming and your going;
and your quaking against me:
because of your quaking against me
your uproar ascends into my ears:
I set my hook in your nostrils and my bit in your lips;
and I turn you back by the way you came.

29

30 And this is a sign to you,
This year you eat the spontaneous growth;
and the second year the spontaneous growth:
and in the third year you seed and harvest
and plant vineyards and eat the fruit.

31 And the escapees of the house of Yah Hudah
who survive
again take root downward and work fruit upward:
for survivors come from Yeru Shalem
and the escapees from mount Siyon:
the zeal of Yah Veh Sabaoth works this.

32

33 So Yah Veh says thus
concerning the sovereign of Ashshur,
He neither comes into this city,
nor shoots an arrow there;
neither anticipates with buckler,
nor pours a bank against it.

34 By the way he came, by the same he returns,
and comes not into this city
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

35 For I garrison this city to save it for my own sake
and for sake of my servant David.

36 And the angel of Yah Veh goes
and smites a hundred and eighty—five thousand
in the camp of Ashshur:
and they start early in the morning,
and behold, they are all dead carcases.

37 And Sancherib sovereign of Ashshur pulls stakes,
and goes and returns and settles at Nineveh.

38 And so be it,
as he prostrates in the house of Nisroch his elohim,
that his sons Adram Melech and Shareser
smite him with the sword;
and they escape into the land of Ararat:
and Esar Chaddon his son reigns in his stead.

THE HEALING OF YECHIZQI YAH

38

In those days
Yechizqi Yah is sick unto death:
and Yesha Yah the prophet the son of Amos
comes to him and says to him,
Thus says Yah Veh,
You, misvah concerning your house:
for you die and live not.

ISAIAH 38

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 Then *Hesekiah Yechizqi Yah*
turned his face toward the wall,
and prayed unto *the LORD Yah Veh*,
3 And said, Remember *now I beseech*,
O *LORD Yah Veh*, I beseech thee,
how I have walked *before thee at thy face* in truth
and with a *perfect heart of shalom*,
and have *done worked* that which is good
in thy *sight eyes*.
And *Hesekiah Yechizqi Yah*
wept *sore with great weeping*.
4 Then came the word of *the LORD Yah Veh*
to *Isaiah Yesha Yah*, saying,
5 Go, and say to *Hesekiah Yechizqi Yah*,
Thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*,
the God Elohim of David thy father,
I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears:
behold, I *will shall* add unto thy days fifteen years.
6 And I *will deliver shall rescue* thee and this city
out of the *hand palm*
of the *king sovereign of Assyria Ashshur*:
and I *will defend shall garrison* this city.
7 And this shall be a sign unto thee
from *the LORD Yah Veh*,
that *the LORD Yah Veh*
will do shall work this *thing word*
that he hath *spoken worded*;
8 Behold, I *will bring again shall turn back*
the shadow of the degrees,
which is *gone down descended*
in the sun dial of *Ahaz Ach Az*,
ten degrees backward.
So the sun *returned turned back* ten degrees,
by which degrees it was *gone down descended*.
9 The *writing inscribing* of *Hesekiah Yechizqi Yah*,
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah,
when he had been sick,
and was *recovered lived* of his sickness:
10 I said in the *cutting off severing* of my days,
I shall go to the *gates portals of the grave sheol*:
I am *deprived overlooked*
of the *residue remnant* of my years.
11 I said, I shall not see *the LORD Yah*,
even the LORD — Yah, in the land of the living:
I shall *behold man scan* *humanity* no more
with the *inhabitants settlers* of the *world deceased*.
12 *Mine age is departed*
My generation hath pulled stakes,
and is *removed exiled* from me
as a *shepherd's tender's* tent:
I have *cut off severed* like a weaver my life:
he *will cut me off shall clip me*
with pining sickness from the thrum:
from day even to night
wilt shalt thou *make an end of shalam* me.
13 I *reckoned equated* till morning, *that*,
as a lion, so *will shall* he break all my bones:
from day even to night
wilt shalt thou *make an end of shalam* me.
14 Like a *crane horse* or a swallow,
so *did I chatter thus I chirped*:
I *did mourn cooed* as a dove:
mine eyes *fail with looking upward languish on high*:
O *LORD Yah Veh*, I am oppressed;
undertake for me be my pledge.
15 What shall I say **word**?
he hath *both spoken said* unto me,
and himself hath *done worked it*:
I shall *go softly walk gently* all my years
in the bitterness of my soul.
16 O *Lord Adonay*, by these *things men live is life*,
and in all these *things* is the life of my spirit:
so *wilt shalt* thou *recover fatten* me,
and *make me to live enliven me*.
17 Behold,
for *peace shalom*
I had *great bitterness was bitterly embittered*:
but thou hast in *love being attached* to my soul
delivered it from the pit of *corruption ruin*:

YESHA YAH 38

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 And Yechizqi Yah turns his face toward the wall,
and prays to Yah Veh,
3 and says, Remember, I beseech;
O Yah Veh, I beseech you,
how I walked at your face in truth
and with a heart of shalom,
and worked what *is* good in your eyes.
— and Yechizqi Yah weeps with great weeping.
4 And the word of Yah Veh comes to Yesha Yah,
saying,
5 Go, and say to Yechizqi Yah,
Thus says Yah Veh, Elohim of David your father,
I hear your prayer; I see your tears:
behold, I add to your days fifteen years:
6 and I rescue you and this city
from the palm of the sovereign of Ashshur;
and I garrison this city:
7 and this *is* a sign to you from Yah Veh,
that Yah Veh works this word he worded:
8 Behold, I turn back the shadow of the degrees
which descends in the sun dial of Ach Az
ten degrees backward.
— thus the sun turns back ten degrees,
by which degrees it had descended.
9 The inscribing
of Yechizqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah,
concerning his sickness,
when he enlivened from his sickness:
10 I — I say, in the severing of my days,
I go to the portals of sheol:
I overlooked the remnant of my years.
11 I say, I see not Yah — Yah in the land of the living:
I scan humanity no more
with the settlers of the deceased.
12 My generation pulls stakes
and exiles from me as the tent of a tender:
my life — severed as a weaver:
he clips me from the thrum:
from day to night you shalam me:
13 I equate until morning;
as a lion, thus he breaks all my bones:
from day to night you shalam me.
14 As a horse or a swallow, thus I chirp:
I coo as a dove: my eyes languish on high:
O Yah Veh, I am oppressed; be my pledge.
What word I?
15 He says to me and he works:
I walk gently all my years in the bitterness of my soul.
16 Adonay, by these is life,
and in all these is the life of my spirit:
thus you fatten me and enliven me.
17 Behold,
for shalom I was bitterly embittered:
and you attached to my soul from the pit of ruin:

ISAIAH 38—40

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

18 for thou hast cast all my sins behind thy back.
For the grave **sheol**
cannot praise **spreadeth not hands** unto thee,
death can not celebrate **halaleth** thee **not**:
they that go down **descend** into the **pit well**
cannot hope for **shall not expect** thy truth.
19 The living, the living,
he shall praise **spread hands** unto thee,
as I do this day:
the father to the *children* **sons**
shall make known thy truth.
20 The **LORD Yah Veh** was ready to save me:
therefore we will sing **shall strum**
my songs to the stringed instruments **strummings**
all the days of our life
in the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
21 For *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah** had said,
Let them take **bear** a lump of figs,
and lay it for a *plaster* **massage** it upon the *boil* **ulcer**,
and he shall recover **live**.
22 *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** also had said,
What is the sign that I shall go up **ascend**
to the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**?

THE VISITORS FROM BABEL

39 At that time *Merodachbaladan* **Merodach Bel Adoni**,
the son of *Baladan* **Bel Adoni**,
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
sent letters **scrolls** and a present **an offering**
to *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**:
for he had heard that he had been sick,
and was recovered **strengthened**.
2 And *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
was glad of **cheered** over them,
and shewed **had** them see
the house of his *precious things* **spicery**,
the silver, and the gold, and the spices,
and the *precious* **good** ointment,
and all the house of his *armour* **instruments**,
and all that was found in his treasures:
there was *nothing* **no word** in his house,
nor in all his *dominion* **reign**,
that *Hesekiah* shewed **Yechizqi Yah** had them not see.
3 Then came *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah** the prophet
unto king *Hesekiah* **sovereign Yechizqi Yah**,
and said unto him, What said these men?
and from whence came they unto thee?
And *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** said,
They are come from a far *country* **land** unto me,
even from *Babylon* **Babel**.
4 Then said he, What have they seen in thine house?
And *Hesekiah* answered **Yechizqi Yah** said,
All that is in mine house have they seen:
there is *nothing* **no word** among my treasures
that I have not shewed them **had them not see**.
5 Then said *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah** to *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**,
Hear the word of the **LORD** of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**:
6 Behold, the days come, that all that is in thine house,
and that which thy fathers have laid up in store **treasured**
until this day,
shall be carried **lifted** to *Babylon* **Babel**:
nothing **no word** shall be left **remain**,
saith the **LORD Yah Veh**.
7 And of thy sons that shall issue from thee,
which thou shalt beget **birth**, shall they take away;
and they shall be eunuchs in the *palace* **manse**
of the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**.
8 Then said *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah** to *Isaiah* **Yesha Yah**,
Good is the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
which thou hast spoken.
He said *moreover*,
For there shall be *peace* **shalom** and truth in my days.

THE SIGH OF ELOHIM

40 Comfort **Sigh** ye, comfort ye **sigh ye** over my people,
saith your *God* **Elohim**.
2 Speak ye comfortably to *Jerusalem*
Word ye to the heart of Yeru Shalem,
and cry **call out** unto her,
that her *warfare* **hostility** is accomplished **fulfilled**,
that her *iniquity* **perversity** is pardoned **satisfied**:

YESHA YAH 38—40

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for you cast all my sins behind your back.
18 For neither sheol spreads hands to you,
nor death halals you:
they who descend into the well expect not your truth.
19 The living — the living,
he spreads hands to you, as I this day:
the father makes known your truth to the sons.
20 Yah Veh — ready to save me:
so we strum my strummings
all the days of our life in the house of Yah Veh.
21 For Yesha Yah says,
Let them bear a lump of figs
and massage it on the ulcer, and live.
22 And Yechizqi Yah says,
What is the sign
that I ascend to the house of Yah Veh?

THE VISITORS FROM BABEL

39 At that time Merodach Bel Adoni
the son of Bel Adoni sovereign of Babel,
sends scrolls and an offering to Yechizqi Yah:
for he hears he is sick — and strengthens.
2 And Yechizqi Yah cheers over them,
and they see the house of his spicery
— the silver and the gold and the spices
and the good ointment
and all the house of his instruments
and all they find in his treasures:
there is no word in his house and in all his reign
that Yechizqi Yah has them not see.
3 Then Yesha Yah the prophet
comes to sovereign Yechizqi Yah,
and says to him,
What say these men?
and, Whence come they to you?
And Yechizqi Yah says,
They come to me from a land afar — from Babel.
4 And he says, What saw they in your house?
And Yechizqi Yah says,
All that is in my house they saw:
there is no word among my treasures
that I had them not see.
5 And Yesha Yah says to Yechizqi Yah,
Hear the word of Yah Veh Sabaoth:
6 Behold, days come, that all that is in your house,
and what your fathers treasured until this day,
is lifted to Babel:
no word remains, says Yah Veh.
7 And of your sons who issue from you,
whom you birthed, they take away
to become eunuchs
in the manse of the sovereign of Babel.
8 And Yechizqi Yah says to Yesha Yah,
Good is the word of Yah Veh which you speak.
and he says,
For shalom and truth become in my days.

THE SIGH OF ELOHIM

40 You, sigh — sigh over my people,
says your Elohim.
2 Word to the heart of Yeru Shalem
and call out to her
that her hostility is fulfilled
— that her perversity is satisfied:

ISAIAH 40

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for she hath *received* **taken**
of the LORD'S **Yah Veh's** hand double for all her sins.
3 The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness,
Prepare **Face** ye the way of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
make straight **straighten** in the desert **plain**
a highway for our God **Elohim**.
4 Every valley shall be *exalted* **lifted**,
and every mountain and hill shall be *made low* **lowered**:
and the crooked shall be *made straight* **straightened**,
and the *rough places plain* **ridges a plain valley**:
5 And the *glory* **honour** of the LORD **Yah Veh**
shall be *revealed* **exposed**,
and all flesh shall see it together:
for the mouth of the LORD **Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded** it.
6 The voice said, *Cry* **Call**.
And he said, What shall I *cry* **call**?
All flesh is grass, and all the *goodliness* **mercy** thereof
is as the *flower* **blossom** of the field:
7 The grass withereth,
the *flower* **fadeth blossom** withereth:
because the spirit of the LORD **Yah Veh** bloweth upon it:
surely the people is grass.
8 The grass withereth,
the *flower* **fadeth blossom** withereth:
but the word of our God **Elohim**
shall *stand for ever* **rise eternally**.
9 O Zion **Siyon**, that *bringest good tidings* **evangelizest**,
get *ascend* thee up into the high mountain;
O Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**,
that *bringest good tidings* **evangelizest**,
lift up thy voice with *strength* **force**;
lift it up, be **awe** not afraid;
say unto the cities of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
Behold your God **Elohim**!
10 Behold, the Lord **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**
will **shall** come with *strong hand* **strength**,
and his arm shall *rule* **reign** for him:
behold, his *reward* **hire** is with him,
and his *work before him* **deeds at his face**.
11 He shall *feed* **tend** his *flock* **drove**
like a *shepherd* **tender**:
he shall gather the lambs with his arm,
and *carry* **bear** them in his bosom,
and shall gently *lead* **guide**
those that *are with young* **suckle**.
12 Who hath measured the waters
in the *hollow of his hand* **his palm**,
and *meted out heaven* **gauged the heavens**
with the span,
and *comprehended* **contained** the dust of the earth
in a *measure* **tierce**,
and weighed the mountains in *scales* **weights**,
and the hills in a balance?
13 Who hath *directed* **gauged**
the Spirit of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
or being his *counsellor* **councilman**
hath *taught* **made known** to him?
14 With whom *took he counsel* **counselled he**,
and *who instructed* **had** him **discern**,
and taught him in the path of judgment,
and taught him knowledge,
and *shewed* **made known** to him
the way of *understanding* **discernment**?
15 Behold,
the *nations* **goyim** are as a drop of a *bucket* **pail**,
and are *counted* **fabricated**
as the *small dust* **powder** of the balance:
behold, he *taketh up* **lifteth** the *isles* **islands**
as a *very little thing* **pulverized**.
16 And Lebanon is not sufficient to burn,
nor the *beasts* **live beings** thereof
sufficient for a *burnt offering* **holocaust**.
17 All *nations* **goyim**
before him are as *nothing* **are as naught in front of** him;
and they are *counted* **fabricated** to him
less than nothing **as deceased**, and *vanity* **waste**.
18 To whom then *will* **shall** ye liken God **El**?
or what likeness *will* **shall** ye *compare* **line up** unto him?

YESHA YAH 40

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for she takes double
of the hand of Yah Veh for all her sins.
3 The voice of him crying out in the wilderness,
You, face the way of Yah Veh,
straighten in the plain a highway for our Elohim
— every valley becomes lifted
and every mountain and hill lowered:
and the crooked straightened
and the ridges become a plain valley:
and the honor of Yah Veh *is* exposed
and all flesh sees it together:
for the mouth of Yah Veh words it.
6 A voice says, Call.
And he says, What call I?
All flesh *is* grass
and all the mercy as the blossom of the field:
the grass withers; the blossom withers:
because the spirit of Yah Veh blows thereon:
surely the people *is* grass.
8 the grass withers; the blossom withers:
but the word of our Elohim rises eternally.
9 O Siyon, who evangelizes,
ascend into the high mountain;
O Yeru Shalem, who evangelizes,
lift your voice with force;
lift; awe not:
say to the cities of Yah Hudah,
Behold your Elohim!
10 Behold, Adonay Yah Veh comes with strength
and his arm reigns for him:
behold, his hire is with him,
and his deeds are at his face.
11 He tends his drove as a tender:
he gathers the lambs with his arm,
and bears them in his bosom,
and gently guides the suckling.
12 Who measures the waters in his palm?
And gauges the heavens with the span?
And contains the dust of the earth in a tierce?
And weighs the mountains in weights
and the hills in a balance?
13 Who gauges the Spirit of Yah Veh?
Or as his councilman makes known to him?
14 With whom counsels he and discerns him?
And teaches him in the path of judgment?
And teaches him knowledge?
And makes known to him the way of discernment?
15 Behold, the goyim — as a drop of a pail;
fabricated as the powder of the balance:
behold, he lifts the islands as pulverized.
16 And neither is Lebanon sufficient to burn,
nor the live beings sufficient for a holocaust.
All goyim are as naught in front of him;
— fabricated to him as deceased and waste.
18 To whom then liken you El?
Or what likeness line you up to him?

ISAIAH 40, 41

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

19 The workman **engraver**
melteth **poureth** a graven image **sculptile**,
and the goldsmith **refiner**
spreadeth it over **overlayeth** with gold,
and casteth **refineth** silver chains.
20 He that is so *impoverished* **cut off**
that he hath no *oblation* **exaltment**
chooseth a tree that *will* **shall** not rot;
he seeketh unto him a *cunning workman* **wise engraver**
to prepare a *graven image* **sculptile**,
that shall not *be moved* **topple**.
21 Have ye not known? have ye not heard?
hath it not been told you from the beginning?
have ye not *understood* **discerned**
from the foundations of the earth?
22 It is he that *sitteth* **settleteth** upon the circle of the earth,
and the *inhabitants* **settlers** thereof
are as *grasshoppers* **locusts**;
that *stretcheth out* **spreadeth** the heavens as a *curtain* **veil**,
and spreadeth them out as a tent to *dwell* **settle** in:
23 That *bringeth* **giveth** the *princes* **potentates**
to *nothing* **naught**;
he *maketh* **worketh** the judges of the earth
as *vanity* **waste**.
24 Yea, they shall not be planted;
yea, they shall not be *sown* **seeded**:
yea, their *stock* **stump** shall not *take* root in the earth:
and he shall also *blow* **puff** upon them,
and they shall wither,
and the *whirlwind* **storm**
shall *take* **bear** them away as stubble.
25 To whom then *will* **shall** ye liken me,
or *shall I be equal* **equate**? saith the Holy One.
26 Lift up your eyes on high,
and *behold* **see** who hath created these *things*,
that bringeth out their host by number:
he calleth them all by names
by the greatness of his *might* **strength**,
for that he is strong in *power* **force**;
not one **faileth** **no man lacketh**.
27 Why sayest thou, O *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and *speakest* **wordest**, O *Israel* **Yisra El**,
My way is hid from *the* **LORD** **Yah Veh**,
and my judgment is passed over from my *God* **Elohim**?
28 Hast thou not known? hast thou not heard,
that the *everlasting* **God** **eternal Elohim**,
the **LORD** **Yah Veh**, the Creator of the ends of the earth,
fainteth **wearieth** not, neither *is* **weary** **belaboureth**?
there is no *searching* **probing**
of his *understanding* **discernment**.
29 He giveth *power* **strength** to the *faint* **weary**;
and to them that have no *might* **strength**
he *increaseth* **strength** **aboundeth** **might**.
30 Even the *youths* **lads**
shall *faint* **weary** and *be* **weary** **belabour**,
and *in* **faltering**,
the *young men* **youths** shall *utterly* **fall** **falter**:
31 But they that *wait upon the* **LORD** **await** **Yah Veh**
shall *renew* **change** their *strength* **force**;
they shall *mount up* **ascend** with *wings* **pinions** as eagles;
they shall run, and not *be* **weary** **belabour**;
and they shall walk, and not *faint* **weary**.

THE FIRST AND THE FINAL

41 *Keep silence before* **Hush in front of** me, O islands;
and let the *people* **nations**
renew **change** their *strength* **force**:
let them come near; then let them *speak* **word**:
let us *come near* **approach** together to judgment.
2 Who *raised up* **wakened** the *righteous man* **just**
from the *east* **rising**,
called him to his foot,
gave the *nations before him* **goyim at his face**,
and *made* **had** him *rule over kings* **subjugate** **sovereigns**?
he gave them as the dust to his sword,
and as *driven* **disbursed** stubble to his bow.
3 He pursued them, and passed *safely* **in shalom**;
even by the way that he had not gone with his feet.
4 Who hath *wrought* **made** and *done* **worked** it,
calling the generations from the beginning?

YESHA YAH 40, 41

exeGeses companion BIBLE

19 The engraver pours a sculptile;
and the refiner overlays with gold
and refines silver chains.
20 He who is so cut off that he has no exaltment
chooses a tree that rots not;
he seeks a wise engraver
to prepare a sculptile that topples not.
21 Know you not? Hear you not?
Were you not told from the beginning?
Discerned you not from the foundations of the earth?
22 It is he who settles on the circle of the earth,
and the settlers are as locusts
who spread the heavens as a veil,
— spreads them as a tent to settle in:
23 who gives the potentates to naught;
who works the judges of the earth as waste.
24 Yes, they are not planted;
yes, they are not seeded:
yes, their stump roots not in the earth:
and he also puffs on them, and they wither,
and the storm bears them away as stubble.
25 To whom then liken you me, or equate?
says the Holy One.
26 Lift your eyes on high, and see who created these;
who brings out their host by number:
— calls them all by names
by the greatness of his strength
— for he is strong in force;
no man lacks.
27 Why, O Yaaqov, say you,
and, O Yisra El, word you,
My way is hid from Yah Veh;
and from my Elohim my judgment passes over?
28 Know you not? Hear you not?
that the eternal Elohim,
Yah Veh, the Creator of the ends of the earth
neither wearies nor belabors?
29 There is no probing of his discernment.
He gives strength to the weary;
and to them of no strength, he abounds might.
30 Even the lads weary and belabor,
and in faltering, the youths falter:
31 but they who await Yah Veh, change their force;
they ascend with pinions as eagles;
they run, and belabor not;
and they walk, and weary not.

THE FIRST AND THE FINAL

41 Hush in front of me, O islands.
The nations change their force:
they come near; then they word:
we approach judgment together.
2 Who wakens the just from the rising?
He calls him at his foot
gives the goyim at his face
and subjugates sovereigns:
he gives *them* as the dust to his sword
and as disbursed stubble to his bow:
3 he pursues them; he passes in shalom;
he goes not by the way with his feet.
4 Who made it and worked it
— calling the generations from the beginning?

ISAIAH 41

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

I the LORD **Yah Veh**, the first, and with the last final;
I am he.
5 The *isles* **islands** saw it, and *feared* **awed**;
the ends of the earth *were afraid* **trembled**,
drew near **approached**, and came.
6 They helped every *one* **man** his *neighbour* **friend**;
and every *one* said to his brother, *Be of good courage*.
7 So the *carpenter* **engraver**
encouraged **strengthened** the *goldsmith* **refiner**,
and he that smootheth with the hammer
him that *smote* **hammered** the anvil, saying,
It is *ready for the soldering* **good to be joined**;
and he *fastened* **strengthened** it with nails,
that it should not *be moved* **topple**.
8 But thou, *Israel* **Yisra El**, art my servant,
Jacob **Yaaqov** whom I have chosen,
the seed of Abraham my *friend* **beloved**.
9 Thou whom I have *taken* **strengthened**
from the ends of the earth,
and called thee from the *chief men* **nobles** thereof,
and said unto thee, Thou art my servant;
I have chosen thee, and not *cast* **spurned** thee away.
10 *Fear* **Awe** thou not; for I am with thee:
be not dismayed **look not around**;
for I am thy *God* **Elohim**:
I *will* **shall** strengthen thee; yea, I *will* **shall** help thee;
yea, I *will* **shall** uphold thee
with the right *hand* of my *righteousness* **justness**.
11 Behold,
all they that were *incensed* **inflamed** against thee
shall be *ashamed* **shamed** and confounded:
they shall be as *nothing* **naught**;
and they that *strive with thee* **the men of thy strife**
shall *perish* **destruct**.
12 Thou shalt seek them, and shalt not find them,
even them that contended **the men of contention**
with thee:
they **the men** that war against thee
shall be as *nothing* **deceased**, and as *a thing of nought* **naught**.
13 For I the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
will **shall** hold thy right *hand*, saying unto thee,
Fear **Awe** not; I *will* **shall** help thee.
14 *Fear* **Awe** not, thou *worm* **Jacob** **maggot Yaaqov**,
and ye men of *Israel* **Yisra El**; I *will* **shall** help thee,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
and thy redeemer, the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
15 Behold, I *will* **make** **shall set** thee
a new *sharp* **sickle** threshing *instrument* **sledge**
having a **master of teeth**:
thou shalt thresh the mountains,
and *beat* **pulverize** them *small*,
and shalt *make* **set** the hills as chaff.
16 Thou shalt *fan* **winnow** them,
and the wind shall *carry* **bear** them away,
and the *whirlwind* **storm** shall scatter them:
and thou shalt *rejoice* **twirl** in the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and shalt *glory* **shall halal** in the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
17 When the *poor* **humble** and needy seek water,
and there is none,
and their tongue *faileth* **drieth** for thirst,
I the LORD *will* **hear** **Yah Veh shall answer** them,
I the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
will **shall** not forsake them.
18 I *will* **shall** open rivers in *high places* **the barrens**,
and fountains in the midst of the valleys:
I *will* **make** **shall set** the wilderness a *pool* **marsh** of water,
and the *dry land* **land of parch** springs of water.
19 I *will* **plant** **shall give** in the wilderness the cedar,
the *shittah tree*, and the *myrtle*, and the *oil tree*;
I *will* **shall** set in the *desert* **plain** the fir tree,
and the *pine* **oak**, and the *box tree* **cedar** together:
20 That they may see, and know,
and *consider* **set**, and *understand* **comprehend** together,
that the hand of the LORD **Yah Veh** hath *done* **worked** this,
and the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El** hath created it.
21 *Produce* **Approach with your cause** **plea**,
saith the LORD **Yah Veh**;
bring forth your *strong reasons* **mights**,
saith the King **Sovereign** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.

YESHA YAH 41

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I Yah Veh, the first, and the final;
I am he.
5 The islands see and awe;
the ends of the earth tremble,
they approach; yes, they come.
6 Every man helps his friend;
and says to his brother, Courage!
7 And the engraver strengthens the refiner,
and him who smooths with the hammer
and him who hammers the anvil, saying,
Good to join/unite:
and he strengthens it with nails, that it topple not.
8 And you, Yisra El — my servant,
Yaaqov whom I chose,
the seed of Abraham my beloved,
9 whom I strengthened from the ends of the earth
and called you from the nobles,
and I said to you, You are my servant;
I chose you and spurned you not:
awe not; for I am with you:
look not around; for I am your Elohim:
I strengthen you; yes, I help you;
yes, I uphold you with the right of my justness.
11 Behold,
all who inflame against you shame and confound:
they become as naught;
and the men who strive with you destruct.
12 You seek them, and find them not
— these men who contend with you:
these men who war against you
are as deceased and as of naught.
13 For I, Yah Veh your Elohim, hold your right,
saying to you, Awe not; I help you.
14 Awe not, you maggot Yaaqov,
and you men of Yisra El; I help you
— an oracle of Yah Veh
your redeemer, the Holy One of Yisra El.
15 Behold, I set you for a new sickle threshing sledge
having a master of teeth:
you thresh the mountains and pulverize them
and set the hills as chaff:
16 you winnow them
and the wind bears them away
and the storm scatters them:
and you twirl in Yah Veh,
and halal in the Holy One of Yisra El.
17 The humble and needy seek water
and there is none;
and their tongue dries for thirst
and I Yah Veh answer them;
I Elohim of Yisra El forsake them not.
18 I open rivers in the barrens
and fountains midst the valleys:
I set the wilderness a marsh of water
and the land of parch springs of water.
19 In the wilderness I give the cedar
— the shittah tree and the myrtle and the oil tree;
in the plain I set the fir tree
and the oak and the cedar together:
20 that they see and know and set
and comprehend together
that the hand of Yah Veh worked this
and the Holy One of Yisra El created it.
21 Approach with your plea, says Yah Veh;
bring forth your mights, says the Sovereign of Yaaqov.

ISAIAH 41, 42

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

22 Let them bring *them* forth,
and *shew* **tell** us what shall happen:
let them *shew* **tell** the former *things*, what they be,
that we may *consider* **set our heart on** them,
and know the latter end of them;
or
23 declare us *things* for to come **let us hear of the coming**.
Shew the things **Tell those**
that are to come *hereafter* **afterward**,
that we may know that ye are *gods* **elohim**:
yea, *do good* **well—please**, or *do evil* **vilify**,
that we may *be dismayed* **look around**,
and *behold* **see** it together.
24 Behold, ye are of *nothing* **naught**,
and your *work of nought* **deeds a hissing**:
an *abomination* **abhorrence** is he that chooseth you.
25 I have *raised up* **wakened** one from the north,
and he shall come:
from the rising of the sun shall he call upon my name:
and he shall come upon *princes* **prefects** as *upon* mortar,
and as the *potter treadeth clay* **former trampleth mire**.
26 Who hath *declared* **told** from the beginning,
that we may know?
and *beforetime* **from the face**,
that we may say, *He is righteous* **Just?**
yea, there is none that *sheweth* **telleth**,
yea, there is none that *declareth* **hearkeneth**,
yea, there is none that *heareth* your *words* **sayings**.
27 *The first shall say to Zion* **First to Siyon**,
Behold, behold them:
and I *will* **shall** give to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
one that *bringeth good tidings* **evangelizeth**.
28 For I *beheld* **saw**, and there was no man;
even among them, and there was no counsellor,
that, when I asked of them, could *answer* a **return** word.
29 Behold, they are all *vanity* **mischief**;
their works are *nothing* **ceased**:
their *molten images* **libations**
are wind and *confusion* **waste**.

THE SERVANT OF YAH VEH

42 Behold my servant, whom I uphold;
mine elect **my chosen**,
in whom my soul *delighteth* **is pleased**;
I have *put* **given** my spirit upon him:
he shall bring forth judgment to the *Gentiles* **goyim**.
2 He shall not cry, nor lift up,
nor cause his voice to be heard in the *street* **outway**.
3 A *bruised reed* **crushed stalk** shall he not break,
and the smoking flax shall he not quench:
he shall bring forth judgment unto truth.
4 He shall not *fail* **dim** nor *be discouraged* **crush**,
till he have set judgment in the earth:
and the *isles* **islands** shall *wait for* **await** his *law* **torah**.
5 Thus saith *God the LORD* **El Yah Veh**,
he that created the heavens, and *stretched* **spread** them out;
he that *spread forth* **expanded** the earth,
and *that which cometh out of it* **its offspring**;
he that giveth breath unto the people upon it,
and spirit to them that walk therein:
6 I the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
have called thee in *righteousness* **justness**,
and *will* **shall** hold thine hand,
and *will keep* **shall guard** thee,
and give thee for a covenant of the people,
for a light of the *Gentiles* **goyim**;
7 To open the blind eyes,
to bring out the *prisoners* **bound** from the *prison* **lock up**,
and them that sit in darkness out of the prison house.
8 I am the *LORD* **Yah Veh**: that is my name:
and my *glory will* **honour shall** I not give to another,
neither my *praise* **halal** to *graven images* **sculptiles**.
9 Behold,
the former *things* are *come to pass* **have become**,
and the *new things* do I *declare* **I tell**:
before **ere** they *spring forth* **sprout**
I *tell you* **let you hear** of them.

SING AND HALAL TO YAH VEH

10 Sing unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** a new song,
and his *praise* **halal** from the end of the earth,

YESHA YAH 41, 42

exeGeses companion BIBLE

22 They bring forth, and tell us what happened:
— the former, what they *are*,
to set our heart on them,
and know the latter end of them;
or have us hear of the coming.
23 Tell us what comes afterward,
so that we know you are elohim:
yes, well—please, or vilify,
so that we look around and see it together.
24 Behold, you *are* of naught,
and your deeds a hissing:
an abhorrence to him who chooses you.
25 I waken from the north, and he comes;
from the rising of the sun, he calls on my name:
and he comes on prefects as mortar,
and as the former tramples mire.
26 Who told from the beginning, so that we know?
and from the face, so that we say, Just?
Yes, there is no one who tells;
yes, there is no one who hearkens;
yes, there is no one who hears your sayings.
27 First to Siyon,
Behold! Behold them:
and I give to Yeru Shalem one who evangelizes.
28 For I see, and there is no man;
yes, there is no counsellor among them,
who, when I ask them, return word.
29 Behold, they are all mischief;
their works cease:
their libations *are* wind and waste.

THE SERVANT OF YAH VEH

42 Behold my servant, whom I uphold;
my chosen, in whom my soul *is* pleased:
I give my spirit on him;
he brings judgment to the goyim:
he neither cries, nor lifts,
nor has his voice heard in the outway:
he neither breaks a crushed stalk
nor quenches he the smoking flax;
he brings forth judgment to truth:
he neither dims nor crushes
until he sets judgment in the earth:
and the islands await his torah.
5 Thus says El Yah Veh,
who created the heavens and spread them;
who expanded the earth and its offspring;
who gave breath to the people thereon,
and spirit to them who walk therein:
6 I Yah Veh call you in justness
and hold your hand and guard you;
and give you for a covenant of the people
and a light of the goyim:
7 to open the eyes of the blind;
to bring the bound from the lock up;
those sitting in darkness from the prison house.
8 I — Yah Veh: that is my name:
and I neither give my honor to another,
nor my halal to sculptiles.
9 Behold, the former becomes, and the new I tell:
ere they sprout, I have you hear of them.

SING AND HALAL TO YAH VEH

10 Sing to Yah Veh a new song
and his halal from the end of the earth;

ISAIAH 42, 43

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

ye that go down **descend** to the sea,
and all that is therein **its fulness**;
the *isles* **islands**, and the *inhabitants* **settlers** thereof.
11 Let the wilderness and the cities thereof
lift up their voice,
the *villages* **courts** that *Kedar* **Qedar** doth *inhabit* **settle**;
let the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the rock *sing* **shout**,
let them shout from the top of the mountains.
12 Let them give glory **set honour**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and declare **tell** his praise **halal** in the islands.
13 The *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall go forth as a mighty man,
he shall stir up **waken** jealousy like a man of war:
he shall cry **shout**, yea, roar **whoop**;
he shall prevail **mightily** against his enemies.
14 I have long time holden my peace **eternally hushed**;
I have been still **hushed**, and refrained myself:
now will **shall** I cry **scream**
like a *travailing* **birthing** woman;
I will destroy **shall puff**
and devour at once **gulp altogether**.
15 I will make waste **shall parch** the mountains and hills,
and dry up **wither** all their herbs;
and I will make **shall set** the rivers islands,
and I will dry up **shall wither** the *pools* **marshes**.
16 And I will bring **shall carry** the blind
by a way that they knew not;
I will lead **shall tread** them
in paths that they have not known:
I will make **shall set** darkness light
before them **at their face**,
and crooked things straight.
These things will **words shall** I do **work** unto them,
and not forsake them.
17 They shall be turned back **apostatize backward**,
they shall be greatly ashamed **shamingly shame**,
that trust **confide** in *graven images* **sculptiles**,
that say to the *molten images* **molten**,
Ye are our gods **elohim**.
18 Hear, ye deaf; and look, ye blind, that ye may see.
19 Who is blind, but my servant?
or deaf, as my messenger **angel** that I sent?
who is blind as he that is *perfect* **shalams**
and blind as the *LORD'S* **Yah Veh's** servant?
20 Seeing many things **much**,
but thou *observest* **guardest** not;
opening the ears, but he heareth not.
21 The *LORD* is well pleased **Yah Veh delighteth**
for his *righteousness'* **justness'** sake;
he will magnify **shall greaten** the law **torah**,
and make it honourable **mightily**.
22 But this is a people
robbed **plundered** and spoiled **plundered**;
they are all of them **all their youths** are snared in holes,
and they are hid in prison houses:
they are for a prey **plunder**,
and none delivereth **rescueth**;
for a spoil **plunder**, and none saith, Restore.
23 Who among you
will give ear to **shall hearken unto** this?
who will **shall** hearken
and hear for the time to come **afterward**?
24 Who gave Jacob **Yaaqov** for a spoil **plunder**,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** to the robbers **plunderers**?
did not the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
he against whom we have sinned?
for they would **willed to** not walk in his ways,
neither were **hearkened** they
obedient unto his law **torah**.
25 Therefore he hath poured upon him
the fury of his *anger* **wrath**,
and the strength of *battle* **war**:
and it hath set **inflamed** him on fire round about,
yet he knew not;
and it burned him, yet he laid **set** it not to heart.

YAH VEh, THE REDEEMER

43

But now thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
that created thee, O *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and he that formed thee, O *Israel* **Yisra El**,

YESHA YAH 42, 43

exeGesés companion BIBLE

you who descend to the sea, and its fulness;
the islands, and the settlers.
11 The wilderness and the cities lift,
Qedar settles the courts:
the settlers of the rock shout;
they shout from the top of the mountains:
12 they set honor to Yah Veh
and tell his *halal* in the islands:
13 Yah Veh goes forth as mighty;
he wakens jealousy as a man of war:
he shouts! Yes, whoops!
He prevails mightily against his enemies.
14 I hush eternally;
I hush and refrain myself:
I scream as a birthing woman;
I puff and gulp together:
15 I parch the mountains and hills
and I wither all their herbs;
and I set the rivers islands
and I wither the marshes:
16 and I carry the blind by a way they know not;
I tread them in paths they know not:
I set darkness light at their face
and crooked straight:
I work these words to them and forsake them not.
17 They apostatize backward
shamingly they shame
— who confide in sculptiles,
— who say to the molten,
You are our elohim.
18 Hear, you deaf!
And look, you blind, and see!
19 Who is blind, but my servant?
Or deaf, as my angel whom I send?
Who is blind as he who shalams
yes, blind as the servant of Yah Veh?
20 Seeing much, you guard not;
opening ears, but he hears not.
21 Yah Veh delights for sake of his justness;
he greatens the torah mightily.
22 And this is a people plundered and plundered;
all their youths are snared — hidden in prison houses;
they are for a plunder, and no one rescues;
for a plunder, and no one says, Restore.
23 Who among you hearkens to this?
Who hearkens and hears afterward?
Who gave Yaaqov for a plunder?
And Yisra El to the plunderers?
Is it not Yah Veh, against whom we sinned?
Yes, they will neither to walk in his ways,
nor hearken to his torah.
25 So he pours on him
the fury of his wrath and the strength of war:
and it inflames him on fire round about,
yet he knows it not;
and it burns him,
yet he sets it not to heart.
43 YAH VEh, THE REDEEMER
And now thus says Yah Veh
who created you, O Yaaqov,
and he who formed you, O Yisra El,

ISAIAH 43

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

1 Fear **Awe** not: for I have redeemed thee,
I have called *thee* by thy name; thou art mine.
2 When thou passest through the waters,
I will **shall** be with thee;
and through the rivers, they shall not overflow thee:
when thou walkest through the fire,
thou shalt not *be burned* **blister**;
neither shall the flame *kindle* **burn** upon thee.
3 For I am *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**, thy Saviour:
I gave *Egypt* **Misrayim** for thy *ransom* **koper/atonement**,
Ethiopia **Kush** and Seba for thee.
4 Since thou wast precious in my *sight* **eyes**,
thou hast been honourable, and I have loved thee:
therefore *will shall* I give *men* **humanity** for thee,
and *people* **nations** for thy *life* **soul**.
5 Fear **Awe** not: for I am with thee:
I will **shall** bring thy seed from the *east* **rising**,
and gather thee from the *west* **dusk**;
6 I will **shall** say to the north, Give up;
and to the south, *Keep* **Refrain** not back:
bring my sons from far,
and my daughters from the ends of the earth;
7 *Even* every one that is called by my name:
for I have created him for my *glory* **honour**,
I have formed him;
yea, I have *made* **worked** him.
8 Bring forth the blind people that have eyes,
and the deaf that have ears.
9 Let all the *nations* **goyim** be gathered *together*,
and let the *people* **be assembled** **nations gather**:
who among them can *declare* **tell** this,
and *shew us* **let us hear** the former *things*?
let them *bring* **give** forth their witnesses,
that they may be justified:
or let them hear, and say, *It is* truth.
10 Ye are my witnesses,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
and my servant whom I have chosen:
that ye may know and *believe* **trust** me,
and *understand* **discern** that I am he:
before me **at my face** there was no *God* **El** formed,
neither shall there be after me.
11 I, *even I*, *am the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
and *beside* **except** me there is no saviour.
12 I have *declared* **told**, and have saved,
and I have *shewed* **had thee hear**,
when there was *no* **naught** strange *god* among you:
therefore ye are my witnesses,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that *I am* **God I — El**.
13 Yea, before the day *was* I am he;
and *there is* none that can *deliver* **rescue** out of my hand:
I will *work* **shall do**, and who shall *let it* **turn it back**?
14 Thus *saith the LORD* **Yah Veh**, your redeemer,
the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
For your sake I have sent to *Babylon* **Babel**,
and have brought down all their *nobles* **fugitives**,
and the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**,
whose *cry* **shouting** is in the ships.
15 I am *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, your Holy One,
the creator of *Israel* **Yisra El**, your *King* **Sovereign**.
16 Thus *saith the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which *maketh* **giveth** a way in the sea,
and a path in the *mighty* **strong** waters;
17 Which bringeth forth the chariot and horse,
the *army* **valiant** and the *power* **strong**;
they shall lie down together, they shall not rise:
they are *extinct* **extinguished**,
they are quenched as *tow* **flax**.
18 Remember ye not the former *things*,
neither *consider* **discern** the *things of old* **ancient**.
19 Behold, I will *do* **shall work** a new *thing*;
now it shall *spring forth* **sprout**; shall ye not know it?
I will **shall** even *make* **set** a way in the wilderness,
and rivers in the *desert* **desolation**.

YESHA YAH 43

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Awe not, for I redeemed you;
I called your name; you are mine.
2 When you pass through the waters,
I *am* with you;
and through the rivers,
they overflow you not:
when you walk through the fire,
you neither blister, nor the flame burn on you.
3 For I — Yah Veh your Elohim,
the Holy One of Yisra El, your Saviour:
I gave Misrayim for your koper/atonement,
Kush and Seba for you.
4 Since you are precious in my eyes,
honorable, and I love you:
so I give humanity for you
and nations for your soul.
5 Awe not: for I *am* with you:
I bring your seed from the rising,
and gather you from the dusk;
6 I say to the north, Give up!
and to the south, Refrain not!
Bring my sons from far
and my daughters from the ends of the earth
— every one called by my name:
for I created him for my honor,
I formed him; yes, I worked him.
8 Bring forth the blind people with eyes,
and the deaf with ears.
9 All the goyim gather; and the nations gather:
who among them tells this
and has us hear the former?
They give their witnesses,
to justify themselves:
and they hear, and say, Truth.
10 You are my witnesses
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and my servant whom I chose:
so that you know and trust me,
and discern I am he:
ere my face, no El was formed,
and none after me.
11 I — I — Yah Veh;
and except me, there is no saviour.
12 I — I told; and saved;
and I hearkened
when there is no stranger among you:
and you *are* my witnesses
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and I — El.
13 Yes, ere the day, I *am* he;
and no one rescues from my hand:
I work, and who turns it back?
14 Thus says Yah Veh, your redeemer,
the Holy One of Yisra El;
for your sake I sent to Babel,
and brought down all their fugitives,
and the Kesediym, whose shouting *is* in the ships.
I — Yah Veh, your Holy One,
the creator of Yisra El, your Sovereign.
16 Thus says Yah Veh,
who gives a way in the sea and a path in the strong waters:
17 who brings forth the chariot and horse,
the valiant and the strong;
they lie down together, they rise not:
they are extinguished; they are quenched as flax.
18 Neither remember the former,
nor discern the ancient:
19 behold, I work a new *work*!
Now it sprouts; Know you not?
I even set a way in the wilderness
and rivers in the desolation:

ISAIAH 43, 44

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

20 The *beast* **live being** of the field shall honour me,
the *dragons* **monsters** and the **daughters of the** owls:
because I give waters in the wilderness,
and rivers in the *desert* **desolation**,
to give drink to my people, my chosen.
21 This people have I formed for myself;
they shall *shew forth* **scribe** my *praise* **halal**.
22 But thou hast not called upon me,
O *Jacob* **Yaaqov**;
but thou hast been *weary* **belaboured** of me,
O *Israel* **Yisra El**.
23 Thou hast not brought me
the *small cattle* **lambs** of thy *burnt offering* **holocausts**;
neither hast thou honoured me with thy sacrifices.
I have not caused thee to serve with an offering,
nor *wearied* **belaboured** thee with incense.
24 Thou hast *bought* **chatted** me
no sweet *cane* **stalk** with *money* **silver**,
neither hast thou *filled* **satiated** me
with the fat of thy sacrifices:
but thou hast *made* **caused** me
to serve with thy sins,
thou hast *wearied* **belaboured** me
with *thine iniquities* **thy perversities**.
25 I, even I, *am* he
that *blotteth* **wipeth** out thy *transgressions* **rebellions**
for mine own sake,
and *will* **shall** not remember thy sins.
26 Put me in *remembrance* **Remind me**:
let us plead together:
27 declare **scribe** thou, that thou mayest be justified.
Thy first father hath sinned,
and thy *teachers* **translators**
have *transgressed* **rebelled** against me.
28 Therefore I have profaned
the *princes* **governors** of the *sanctuary* **holies**,
and have given *Jacob* **Yaaqov** to the *curse* **devotement**,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** to *reproaches* **revilings**.

YISRA EL, THE CHOSEN OF YAH VEH

44 Yet now hear, O *Jacob* **Yaaqov** my servant;
and *Israel* **Yisra El**, whom I have chosen:
2 Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh** that *made* **worked** thee,
and formed thee from the *womb* **belly**,
which *will* **shall** help thee;
Fear **Awe** not, O *Jacob* **Yaaqov**, my servant;
and thou, *Jesurun* **Yeshurun**, whom I have chosen.
3 For I *will* **shall** pour water upon him that is thirsty,
and *floods* **flows** upon the dry *ground*:
I *will* **shall** pour my spirit upon thy seed,
and my blessing upon thine offspring:
4 And they shall *spring up* **sprout**
as among **between** the grass,
as willows by the water *courses* **streams**.
5 One shall say, I am the *LORD'S* **Yah Veh's**;
and another shall call *himself*
by the name of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**;
and another shall *subscribe* **inscribe** with his hand
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *surname* **himself** **an honorary degree**
by the name of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
6 Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
the *King* **Sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and his redeemer the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
I am the first, and I am the *last* **final**;
and *beside* **except** me there is no *God* **Elohim**.
7 And who, as I, shall call, and shall *declare* **tell** it,
and *set it in order* **line it up** for me,
since I appointed **set** the *ancient* **original** people?
and the *things* **those** that are coming, and shall come,
let them *shew* **tell** unto them.
8 Fear ye not, neither *be* **afraid** **fear**:
have not I
told thee from that time **had thee hear ever since**,
and have *declared* **told** it? ye are even my witnesses.
Is there a *God* **beside** **an Elohah** **except** me?
yea, there is no *God* **rock**; I know not any.
9 They that *make* **form** a *graven image* **sculptile**
are all of them *vanity* **waste**;
and their *delectable things* **desires** shall not *profit* **benefit**;

YESHA YAH 43, 44

exeGeses companion BIBLE

20 the live beings of the field honor me
— the monsters and the daughters of the owls:
because I give waters in the wilderness
and rivers in the desolation,
to give my people drink — my chosen.
21 I formed this people for myself;
they scribe my halal.
22 And you called not on me, O Yaaqov;
and you belabored of me, O Yisra El:
23 you neither brought me
the lambs of your holocausts;
nor honored me
with your sacrifices.
I neither had you serve with an offering;
nor belabored you with incense.
24 You neither chatted me sweet stalk with silver,
nor satiated me with the fat of your sacrifices:
only you had me to serve with your sins;
you belabored me with your perversities.
25 I, I *am* he who wipes out your rebellions
for my own sake,
and remembers not your sins.
26 Remind me, so that we plead together:
scribe you, that you be justified.
27 Your first father sinned,
and your translators rebelled against me:
28 and I profaned the governors of the holies;
and gave Yaaqov to the devotement
and Yisra El to revilings.

YISRA EL, THE CHOSEN OF YAH VEH

44 And now hear, O Yaaqov my servant;
and Yisra El, whom I chose:
2 thus says Yah Veh who worked you
and formed you from the belly;
who helps you:
Awe not, O Yaaqov, my servant;
and you, Yeshurun, whom I chose.
3 For I pour water on him who is thirsty,
and flowings on the dry:
I pour my spirit on your seed
and my blessing on your offspring:
and they sprout between the grass
as willows by the water streams.
4
5 One says, I — Yah Veh:
and another calls by the name of Yaaqov:
and another inscribes with his hand to Yah Veh
and by an honorary degree, the name of Yisra El.
6 Thus says Yah Veh the Sovereign of Yisra El,
and his redeemer Yah Veh Sabaoth;
I — the first, and I — the final;
and except me, there is no Elohim.
7 And who as I, calls and tells it and lines it up
for me who set the original people?
And those coming, and those to come,
tell they them?
8 Neither fear, nor frighten:
Heard you not ever since, what I told you?
You are my witnesses.
9 Is there an Elohah except me?
Yes, there is no rock; I know none.
They who form a sculptile
all of them are a waste;
and their desires benefit not:

ISAIAH 44

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and they are their own witnesses;
they see not, nor know;
that they may *be ashamed* **shame**.
10 Who hath formed a *god* **an el**,
or molten **poured** a *graven image* **sculptile**
that is *profitable* **beneficial** for *nothing* **naught**?
11 Behold,
all his *fellows* **companions** shall *be ashamed* **shame**:
and the *workmen* **engravers**, they are of *men* **humanity**:
let them all be gathered together, let them stand up;
yet they shall fear,
and they shall *be ashamed* **shame** together.
12 The *smith* **engraver of iron** with the *tongs* **axe**
both worketh in the coals,
and *fashioneth* **formeth** it with hammers,
and *worketh* **maketh** it
with the *strength* **force** of his arms:
yea, he is *hungry* **famished**,
and his *strength* **faileth** **force is not**:
he drinketh no water, and is *faint* **wearieth**.
13 The *carpenter* **engraver of timber**
stretcheth out **spreadeth** his *rule* **line**;
he *marketh it out* **surveyeth** with a *line* **stylus**;
he *fitteth* **worketh** it with planes,
and he *marketh it out* **surveyeth** with the compass,
and *maketh* **worketh** it after the *figure* **pattern** of a man,
according to the *beauty* **adorment** of a *man* **humanity**;
that it may *remain* **settle** in the house.
14 He *heweth* **cuteth** him down cedars,
and taketh the cypress and the oak,
which he strengtheneth for himself
among the trees of the forest:
he planteth an ash,
and the *rain* **downpour** doth nourish it.
15 Then shall it be for a *man* **humanity** to burn:
for he *will* **shall** take *thereof*, and *warm* **heat** himself;
yea, he kindleth it, and baketh bread;
yea, he *maketh* a *god* **worketh an el**,
and *worshippeth it* **prostrateth**;
he maketh it a *graven image* **sculptile**,
and *falleth down* **prostrateth** thereto.
16 He burneth *part* **half** *thereof* in the fire;
with *part* **half** *thereof* he eateth flesh;
he roasteth roast, and is *satisfied* **satiates**:
yea, he *warmeth* **heateth** *himself*,
and saith, Aha, I am *warm* **heated**,
I have seen the *fire* **flame**:
17 And the *residue* **survivors** *thereof*
he *maketh* a *god* **worketh an el**,
even his *graven image* **sculptile**:
he *falleth down* **prostrateth** unto it,
and *worshippeth it* **prostrateth**, and prayeth unto it,
and saith, *Deliver* **Rescue** me; for thou art my *god* **el**.
18 They have not known nor *understood* **discerned**:
for he hath *shut* **daubed** their eyes,
that they cannot see **from seeing**,
and their hearts,
that they cannot understand **from comprehending**.
19 And none *considereth in* **turneth to** his heart,
neither is there knowledge
nor *understanding* **discernment** to say,
I have burned *part of it* **half** in the fire;
yea, also I have baked bread upon the coals *thereof*;
I have roasted flesh, and eaten it:
and shall I *make* **work** the *residue* **remnant** *thereof*
an *abomination* **abhorrence**?
shall I *fall down* **prostrate** to the *stock* **product** of a tree?
20 He *feedeth* **grazeth** on ashes:
a *deceived* **mocked** heart hath *turned* **perverted** him *aside*,
that he cannot *deliver* **rescue** his soul,
nor say, Is there not a *lie* **falsehood** in my right *hand*?
21 Remember these, O *Jacob* **Yaaqov** and *Israel* **Yisra El**;
for thou art my servant:
I have formed thee; thou art my servant:
O *Israel* **Yisra El**, thou shalt not be forgotten of me.
22 I have blotted out, as a thick cloud,
thy *transgressions* **rebellions**,
and, as a **thick** cloud, thy sins:
return unto me; for I have redeemed thee.

YESHA YAH 44

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and they are their own witnesses;
they neither see, nor know to shame.
10 Who ever formed an el or poured a sculptile
that is not beneficial?
11 Behold, all his companions shame:
and the engravers are of humanity:
they all gather; together they stand:
they fear; together they shame.
12 The engraver of iron
works with the ax in the coals
and forms with hammers
and makes with the force of his arms:
yes, he famishes and his force is not:
he drinks no water and wearsies.
13 The engraver of timber spreads his line;
he surveys with a stylus; he works with planes:
and he surveys with the compass
and works after the pattern of a man
according to the adornment of humanity;
that it settle in the house:
14 he cuts down cedars;
and takes the cypress and the oak
which he strengthens for himself
among the trees of the forest:
he plants an ash, and the downpour nourishes:
and it becomes for humanity to burn:
for he takes and heats;
yes, he kindles and bakes bread:
yes, he works an el and prostrates;
he makes a sculptile, and prostrates thereto:
16 he burns half in the fire;
with half he eats flesh;
he roasts a roast, and satiates:
yes, he heats,
and says, Aha, I heat up; I see the flame:
and of what survives, he works an el
— his sculptile:
he prostrates thereto
— prostrates and prays thereto,
and says, Rescue me; for you are my el.
18 They neither know nor discern:
for he daubs their eyes from seeing,
and their hearts from comprehending:
and no one turns to his heart;
there is neither knowledge nor discernment to say,
I burn half in the fire;
yes, also I bake bread on the coals;
I roast flesh and eat:
and I work the remnant an abhorrence:
I prostrate to the product of a tree.
20 He grazes on ashes:
a mocked heart perverts him
that he neither rescues his soul,
nor says, Is there not a falsehood in my right?
21 Remember these, O Yaaqov and Yisra El;
for you are my servant:
I formed you; you are my servant:
O Yisra El, I forget you not.
22 As a thick cloud, I wipe out your rebellions;
and, as a thick cloud, your sins:
return to me; for I redeem you.

ISAIAH 44, 45

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

23 Sing **Shout**, O ye heavens;
for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *done* **worked** it:
shout, ye *lower parts of the* **nethermost** earth:
break forth into *singing* **shouting**, ye mountains,
O forest, and every tree therein:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath redeemed *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and *glorified* **adorned** himself in *Israel* **Yisra El**.
24 Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**, thy redeemer,
and he that formed thee from the *womb* **belly**,
I am the **LORD Yah Veh** that *maketh* **worketh** all *things*;
that *stretcheth forth* **spreadeth** the heavens alone;
that *spreadeth abroad* **expandeth** the earth by myself;
25 That *frustrateth* **breaketh** the *tokens* **signs** of the *liars* **lies**,
and *maketh* **exposeth** diviners mad;
that *turneth wise* **men** backward,
and *maketh* **follie** their knowledge *foolish*;
26 That *confirmeth* **raiseth** the word of his servant,
and *performeth* **shalameth**
the counsel of his *messengers* **angels**;
that saith to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
Thou shalt be *inhabited* **settled**;
and to the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
Ye shall be built,
and I *will* **shall** raise up
the *decayed places* **parched areas** thereof:
27 That saith to the *deep* **abyss**, *Be dry* **Parch**,
and I *will* **dry up** **shall** *wither* thy rivers:
28 That saith of *Cyrus* **Koresh**, *He is my shepherd* **tender**,
and shall *perform* **shalam** all my *pleasure* **delight**:
even saying to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
Thou shalt be built;
and to the *temple* **manse**,
Thy *foundation* shall be *laid* **Thou shalt be founded**.
*found: as in founding a foundation.

KORESH, THE ANOINTED OF YAH VEH

45 Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh** to his anointed,
to *Cyrus* **Koresh**,
whose right *hand* I have *holden* **strengthened**,
to subdue *nations* **before him** **goyim** at his face;
and I *will* **shall** loose the loins of *kings* **sovereigns**,
in *opening*, to open
before him at his face the *two leaved gates* **doors**;
and the *gates* **portals** shall not be shut;
2 I *will* **shall** go *before thee* at thy face,
and *make the crooked places* **straight**
straighten the esteemed:
I *will* **shall** break in pieces the gates of *brass* **copper**,
and cut *in asunder* **apart** the bars of iron:
3 And I *will* **shall** give thee the treasures of darkness,
and hidden *riches* **treasures** of *secret places* **coverts**,
that thou mayest know that I, the **LORD Yah Veh**,
which call thee by thy name,
am the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
4 For *Jacob* **Yaaqov** my servant's sake,
and *Israel* mine *elect* **Yisra El** my **chosen**,
I have even called thee by thy name:
I have *surnamed thee* **given thee an honorary degree**,
though thou hast not known me.
5 I am the **LORD I** — **Yah Veh**, and there is none else,
there is no *God* **Elohim** beside me:
I girded thee, though thou hast not known me:
6 That they may know from the rising of the sun,
and from the *west* **dusk**,
that there is none *beside* **final** **except** me.
I am the **LORD I** — **Yah Veh**, and there is none else.
7 I form the light, and create darkness:
I *make peace* **work shalom**, and create evil:
I the **LORD** do **Yah Veh** **work** all these *things*.
8 *Drop down* **Drip**, ye heavens, from above,
and let the *skies* **vapours**
pour down **righteousness** **flow justness**:
let the earth open,
and let them *bring forth* **bear fruit** of salvation,
and let *righteousness* **spring up** **justness sprout** together;
I the **LORD Yah Veh** have created it.
9 Woe **Ho** unto him that striveth with his *Maker* **Former!**
Let the potsherd strive
with the potsherds of the *earth* **soil**.
Shall the *clay* **morter** say to him that *fashioneth* **formeth** it,

YESHA YAH 44, 45

exeGeses companion BIBLE

23 Shout, O you heavens; for Yah Veh worked it:
shout, you nethermost earth:
break forth into shouting, you mountains;
O forest, and every tree therein:
for Yah Veh redeems Yaaqov,
and adorns himself in Yisra El.
24 Thus says Yah Veh your redeemer
— he who formed you from the belly,
I — Yah Veh who worked all;
who alone spread the heavens;
who expanded the earth by myself:
25 who breaks the signs of lies
and exposes diviners as mad;
who turns the wise backward
and follies their knowledge;
26 who raises the word of his servant
and shalams the counsel of his angels;
who says to Yeru Shalem, You, settle!
and to the cities of Yah Hudah, You, build!
— and I raise the parched areas:
27 who says to the abyss, Parch!
— and I wither your rivers:
28 who says of Koresh my tender,
who shalams all my delight:
even saying to Yeru Shalem, You, Build!
and to the manse, You, Found!*

*found: as in founding a foundation.

KORESH, THE ANOINTED OF YAH VEH

45 Thus says Yah Veh to his anointed,
to Koresh, whose right I strengthened,
to subdue goyim at his face;
yes, to loose the loins of sovereigns,
in opening, to open the doors at his face;
and not shut the portals:
2 I go at your face and straighten the esteemed:
I break in pieces the gates of copper
and cut apart the bars of iron:
3 and I give you the treasures of darkness
and hidden treasures of coverts
so that you know, I — Yah Veh,
who calls you by your name, Elohim of Yisra El.
4 For sake of my servant Yaaqov
and Yisra El my chosen,
I even call you by your name:
I give you an honorary degree,
though you know me not.
5 I — Yah Veh, and there is no one else,
there is no Elohim except me:
I girded you, though you know me not:
6 so that they know
from the rising of the sun and from the dusk
that there is no one final except me:
I — Yah Veh, and there is no one else:
7 I form the light and create darkness:
I work shalom and create evil:
I Yah Veh work all these.
8 Drip, you heavens, from above;
and the vapours, flow justness:
earth opens and bears fruit of salvation;
and justness sprouts together:
I Yah Veh created it.
9 Ho to him who strives with his Former!
— a potsherd among the potsherds of the soil.
Says the mortar to the Former,

ISAIAH 45

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 What *makest* **workest** thou?
or thy *work* **deeds**, He hath no hands?
Woe **Ho** unto him that saith unto his father,
What *begettest* **birthest** thou?
or to the woman,
What hast thou *brought forth* **whirled**?
11 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**, and his *Maker* **Former**,
Ask me of *things* **those which are** to come
concerning my sons,
and concerning the *work* **deeds** of my hands
command **misvah** ye me.
12 I have *made* **worked** the earth,
and created *man* **humanity** upon it:
I, *even* my hands, have *stretched out* **spread** the heavens,
and all their host have I *commanded* **misvahed**.
13 I have *raised* **wakened** him up
in *righteousness* **justness**,
and I *will direct* **shall straighten** all his ways:
he shall build my city,
and he shall *let go* **send away** my *captives* **exiles**,
not for price nor *reward* **bribe**,
saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
14 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
The labour of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and merchandise
of *Ethiopia* **Kush** and of the *Sabeans* **Sebaiym**,
men of *stature* **measure**,
shall *come pass* over unto thee, and they shall be thine:
they shall come after thee;
in *chains* **bonds** they shall *come pass* over,
and they shall *fall down* **prostrate** unto thee,
they shall *make supplication* **pray** unto thee,
saying, Surely *God* **El** is in thee;
and *there is none else*, *there is no God beside me*
— **final** — **Elohim**.
15 *Verily* **Surely** thou art a *God* **an El** that hidest thyself,
O *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, the Saviour.
16 They shall be *ashamed* **shamed**, and also confounded,
all of them:
they shall go to *confusion* **shame** together
that are *makers* **engravers** of *idols* **molds**.
17 *But Israel* **Yisra El** shall be saved in *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
with an *everlasting* **eternal** salvation:
ye shall not be *ashamed* **shamed** nor confounded
world without end **unto the eternal ages**.
18 For thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
that created the heavens;
God **Elohim** himself
that formed the earth and *made* **worked** it;
he hath established it,
he created it not *in vain* **a waste**,
he formed it to be *inhabited* **settled**:
I am the LORD **I** — **Yah Veh**; and there is none else.
19 I have not *spoken in secret* **worded covertly**,
in a dark place of the earth:
I said not unto the seed of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
Seek ye me in *vain* **waste**:
I *the LORD* **speak righteousness** **Yah Veh word justness**,
I *declare things that are right* **tell it straight**.
20 *Assemble yourselves* **Gather** and come;
draw near together,
ye that are escaped **escapees** of the *nations* **goyim**:
they have no knowledge
that *set up* **bear**
the *wood* **timber** of their *graven image* **sculptile**,
and pray unto a *god* **an el** that cannot save.
21 Tell ye, and bring them near;
yea, let them *take counsel* together:
who hath *declared* **caused this to be heard**
from *ancient time* **antiquity**?
who hath told it from that time?
have not I *the LORD* **Yah Veh**?
and *there is no God else beside* **no Elohim except** me;
a just *God* **El** and a Saviour;
there is none *beside* **final except** me.
22 *Look unto* **Face** me, and be ye saved,
all the *ends* **finalities** of the earth:
for *I am God* **I** — **El**, and there is none else.

YESHA YAH 45

exeGesés companion BIBLE

What work you?
Or of your deeds, No hands?
10 Ho to him who says to his father, What birth you?
Or to the woman, What whirl you?
11 Thus says Yah Veh,
the Holy One of Yisra El his Former,
Ask me of those to come concerning my sons
and concerning the deeds of my hands;
you, misvah me.
12 I worked the earth,
and created humanity thereon:
I, my hands, spread the heavens,
and all their host I misvahed.
13 I waken him in justness
and straighten all his ways:
he builds my city and he sends away my exiles
— neither for price nor bribe,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth.
14 Thus says Yah Veh,
The labor of Misrayim,
and merchandise of Kush and of the Sebaiym
— men of measure
pass over to you, and they are yours:
they become after you;
they pass over in bonds
and they prostrate to you;
they pray to you,
Surely El is in you, Elohim the final.
15 Surely you are an El who hides yourself,
O Elohim of Yisra El, the Saviour.
16 They shame; they even confound — all of them:
the engravers of molds go to shame together.
17 Yisra El is saved in Yah Veh
with an eternal salvation:
you neither shame nor confound to the eternal ages.
18 For thus says Yah Veh who created the heavens;
Elohim himself who formed the earth and worked it;
he established it; he created it not a waste;
he formed it to settle therein:
I — Yah Veh; and there is no one else.
19 I neither word covertly in a dark place of the earth:
nor say I to the seed of Yaaqov,
You seek me in waste.
20 I Yah Veh word justness; I tell it straight.
Gather and come;
draw near together, you escapees of the goyim:
they who bear the timber of their sculptile, know not,
and pray to an el who saves not.
21 You, tell; bring near;
yes, they counsel together.
Who had this to be heard from antiquity?
Who told it from that time?
Was it not I — Yah Veh?
— and no Elohim except me; a just El and a Saviour;
there is no one final except me.
22 Face me, and be saved,
all you finalities of the earth:
for I — El; and there is no one else.

ISAIAH 45—47

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

23 I have *sworn* **oathed** by myself,
the word is gone out of my mouth
in *righteousness* **justness**,
and shall not return,
That unto me every knee shall *bow* **kneel**,
every tongue shall *swear* **oath**.

Philippians 2:9—11

24 Surely, shall *one* **he** say,
in *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
have I *righteousness* **justness** and strength:
even to him shall *men* come;
and all that are *incensed* **inflamed** against him
shall *be* **ashamed shame**.
25 In *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
shall all the seed of *Israel* **Yisra El** be justified,
and shall *glory* **halal**.

THE IDOLS OF BABEL

46 Bel *boweth down* **kneeleth**, Nebo stoopeth,
their idols were upon the *beasts* **live beings**,
and upon the *cattle* **animals**:
your *carriages* **loads** were heavy loaden;
they are — a burden to the *weary* **beast languid**.
2 They stoop, they *bow down* **kneel** together;
they could not *deliver* **rescue** the burden,
but *themselves* **their souls** are gone into captivity.
3 Harken unto me, O house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and all the *remnant* **survivors**
of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which are *borne by me* **laden** from the belly,
which are *carried* **borne** from the womb:
4 And even to your *old age* **agedness** I *am* **he**;
and *even* to *hoar hairs* **greyness**
will **shall** I *carry* **bear** you:
I have *made* **worked**, and I *will* **shall** bear;
even I *will* **carry** **shall** bear,
and *will* **deliver** **shall** **rescue** you.
5 To whom *will* **shall** ye liken me,
and *make me equal* **equate me**,
and *compare* **liken** me, that we may be like?
6 They *lavish* **scatter** gold out of the *bag* **pouch**,
and weigh silver in the *balance* **beam**,
and hire a *goldsmith* **refiner**;
and he *maketh* **worketh** it a *god* **an el**:
they *fall down* **prostrate**, yea, they *worship* **prostrate**.
7 They bear him upon the shoulder, they *carry* **bear** him,
and set him in his place, and he standeth;
from his place shall he not *remove* **depart**:
yea, one shall cry unto him, yet can he not answer,
nor save him out of his *trouble* **tribulation**.
8 Remember this, *and shew yourselves men* **be manly**:
bring it again to mind **restore heart**,
O ye *transgressors* **rebels**.
9 Remember the former *things of old* **from eternity**:
for I *am* **God I — El**, and there is none else;
I *am* **God I — Elohim**, and there is none like me — **final**,
10 Declaring **Telling** the end from the beginning,
and from *ancient times* **antiquity**
the things **former** that are not yet *done* **worked**,
saying, My counsel shall *stand* **rise**,
and I *will* **do** **shall** **work** all my *pleasure* **delight**:
11 Calling a *ravenous bird* **swooper** from the *east* **rising**,
the man that executeth my counsel
from a far *country* **land**:
yea, I have *spoken it* **worded**,
I *will* **shall** also bring it *to pass*;
I have *purposed* **formed** it, I *will* **shall** also *do* **work** it.
12 Harken unto me, ye *stouthearted* **mighty hearted**,
that are far from *righteousness* **justness**:
13 I bring near my *righteousness* **justness**;
it shall not be far *off* **removed**,
and my salvation shall not *tarry* **delay**:
and I *will* **shall** place salvation in *Zion* **Siyon**
for *Israel* **my glory Yisra El mine adornment**.

THE FALL OF BABEL

47 Come down **Descend**, and sit in the dust,
O virgin daughter of *Babylon* **Babel**, sit on the *ground* **earth**:
there is no throne, O daughter of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**:
for thou shalt *no more* **not add**
to be called tender and delicate.

YESHA YAH 45—47

exeGeses companion BIBLE

23 I oath by myself;
the word goes from my mouth in justness,
and returns not,
That to me every knee kneels,
every tongue oaths.

Philippians 2:9—11

24 Surely in Yah Veh, he says,
I have justness and strength:
to him he comes;
and all who inflame against him, shame.
25 In Yah Veh all the seed of Yisra El is justified,
and halals.

THE IDOLS OF BABEL

46 Bel kneels; Nebo stoops;
their idols are for the live beings
and for the animals:
your loads are heavily loaded
— a burden to the languid.
2 They stoop; they kneel together;
they cannot rescue the burden;
and their souls go into captivity.
3 Harken to me, O house of Yaaqov,
and all survivors of the house of Yisra El
— who are loaded from the belly;
who are raised from the womb:
and even to your agedness, I *am* **he**;
and to greyness I bear:
4 I work and I bear; yes, I bear and rescue you.
5 To whom liken you me and equate me
— liken me, to be alike?
6 They scatter gold from the pouch
and weigh silver in the beam
and hire a refiner;
and he works an el thereof:
they prostrate; yes, they prostrate:
they bear him on the shoulder;
they bear him and set him in his place
and he stands;
he departs not from his place:
yes, one cries to him; yet he answers not
— saves him not from his tribulation.
7
8 Remember this, be manly:
restore heart, O you rebels.
9 Remember the former from eternity:
for I — El, and there is no one else;
I — Elohim the final:
10 telling the end from the beginning,
and what formerly was not worked from antiquity,
saying, My counsel rises and I work all my delight:
calling a swooper from the rising
and the man who executes my counsel
from a land afar:
yes, I word; yes, I bring it;
I formed; yes, I also work it.
11 Harken to me, you mighty hearted
who are far from justness:
12 I bring my justness near; it *is* not far removed;
and delay not my salvation:
and I place salvation in *Siyon*
for Yisra El my adornment.

THE FALL OF BABEL

47 Descend, and sit in the dust;
O virgin daughter of Babel, sit on the earth;
there is no throne, O daughter of the Kesediym:
for you add not to be called tender and delicate.

ISAIAH 47

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 Take the millstones, and grind *meal flour*:
uncover **expose** thy *locks veil*,
make bare the *leg strip the train*,
uncover **expose** the *thigh leg*, pass over the rivers.
3 Thy nakedness shall be *uncovered exposed*,
yea, thy *shame reproach* shall be seen:
I *will shall* take *vengeance avengement*,
and I *will shall* not meet thee as a *man human*.
4 As for our redeemer,
the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth* is his name,
the Holy One of *Israel Yisra El*.
5 Sit thou silent, and get thee into darkness,
O daughter of the *Chaldeans Kesediyim*:
for thou shalt no more be called,
The lady of *kingdoms sovereigndoms*.
6 I was *wroth enraged* with my people,
I have *polluted profaned* mine inheritance,
and given them into thine hand:
thou didst *shew set* them no *mercy mercies*;
upon the *ancient aged*
hast thou *very heavily laid made mighty heavy* thy yoke.
7 And thou saidst,
I shall be a lady *for ever eternally*:
so that thou didst not *lay set* these *things* to thy heart,
neither didst remember the latter end of it.
8 Therefore hear now this,
thou *that art given to pleasures voluptuous*,
that *dweldest carelessly settlest confidently*,
that sayest in thine heart,
I am, and none else beside me I — final;
I shall not sit as a widow,
neither shall I know *the loss of children bereavement*:
9 But these two *things* shall come to thee
in a *moment blink* in one day,
the loss of children bereavement, and widowhood:
they shall come upon thee in their *perfection integrity*
for the *multitude abundance* of thy sorceries,
and for the *great abundance mighty might*
of *thine enchantments thy charms*.
10 For thou hast *trusted confided* in thy *wickedness evil*:
thou hast said, None seeth me.
Thy wisdom and thy knowledge,
it hath *perverted turned* thee *away*;
and thou hast said in thine heart,
I am, and none else beside me I — final.
11 Therefore shall evil come upon thee;
thou shalt not know
from whence it riseth the dawn thereof:
and *mischievous calamity* shall fall upon thee;
thou shalt not be able to *put it off kapar/atone it*:
and *desolation devastation*
shall come upon thee suddenly,
which thou shalt not know.
12 Stand *now I beseech*,
with *thine enchantments thy charms*,
and with the *multitude abundance* of thy sorceries,
wherein thou hast laboured from thy youth;
if so be thou shalt be able to *profit benefit*,
if so be thou mayest *prevail terrify*.
13 Thou art wearied
in the *multitude abundance* of thy counsels.
Let *now I beseech*,
the *astrologers horoscopists of the heavens*,
the *stargazers seers of stars*,
the *monthly prognosticators knowers of months*,
stand up, and save thee
from these *things* that shall come upon thee.
14 Behold, they shall be as stubble;
the fire shall burn them;
they shall not *deliver themselves rescue their souls*
from the *power hand* of the flame:
there shall not be a coal to *warm at heat*,
nor *fire flame* to sit before it.
15 Thus shall they be unto thee
with whom thou hast laboured,
even thy merchants, from thy youth:
they shall wander every *one to his quarter man beyond*;
none shall save thee thou shalt have no saviour.

YESHA YAH 47

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 Take the millstones and grind flour;
expose your veil; strip the train;
expose the leg; pass over the rivers.
3 Your nakedness *is* exposed,
yes, your reproach *is* seen:
I take avengement, and I meet you not as a human.
4 Our redeemer — Yah Veh Sabaoth *is* his name
— the Holy One of Yisra El.
5 Sit silent, and get into darkness,
O daughter of the Kesediyim:
for they no more call you, The lady of sovereigndoms.
6 I enrage over my people; I profane my inheritance;
and give them into your hand:
you set them no mercies;
you make your yoke on the aged mighty heavy.
7 And you say, I am a lady eternally:
so that you neither set these to your heart
nor remember the latter end thereof.
8 And now hear this, you voluptuous *one*,
who settles confidently; who says in your heart,
I — final;
I neither sit a widow, nor know bereavement.
9 And these two come to you in a blink in one day
— bereavement and widowhood:
they come on you in their integrity
for the abundance of your sorceries,
and for the mighty might of your charms:
10 for you confide in your evil:
you say, No one sees me.
Your wisdom and your knowledge turn you away;
and you say in your heart, I — *the final*.
11 And evil comes on you;
you know not the dawn thereof:
and calamity falls on you;
you *are* not able to kapar/atone:
and devastation comes on you suddenly
which you know not.
12 Stand, I beseech, with your charms
and with the abundance of your sorceries
wherein you labored from your youth;
if perhaps you benefit; if perhaps you terrify.
13 You weary in the abundance of your counsels.
I beseech you,
have the horoscopists of the heavens,
the seers of stars, the knowers of months stand up
and save you from these that come on you.
14 Behold, they *are* as stubble;
the fire burns them;
they rescue not their souls from the hand of the flame:
there is neither coal to heat,
nor flame to sit in front of.
15 Thus *are* they with whom you labored to you
— your merchants, from your youth:
they wander every man beyond;
your saviour is not.

ISAIAH 48

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE HARDNESS OF YISRA EL

48 Hear ye this, O house of **Yaaqov**,
 which are called by the name of **Israel Yisra El**,
 and are come forth
 out of the waters of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
 which swear **oath** by the name of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
 and make mention of **memorialize**
 the **God Elohim** of **Israel Yisra El**,
 but not in truth, nor in **righteousness justness**.
 2 For they call themselves of the holy city,
 and stay **prop** themselves
 upon the **God Elohim** of **Israel Yisra El**;
 The **LORD** of **hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth** is his name.
 3 I have declared **told** the former things
 from the beginning **ever since**;
 and they went forth out of my mouth,
 and I **shewed had** them **hear**;
 I **did worked** them suddenly,
 and they **came to pass became**.
 4 Because I knew that thou art **obstinate hard**,
 and thy neck is an iron sinew,
 and thy **brow brass forehead copper**;
 5 I have even from the beginning **ever since**
 declared **told** it to thee;
 before **ere** it **came to pass became**,
 I **shewed it I had** thee **hear**:
 lest thou shouldst say,
 Mine idol hath **done worked** them,
 and my **graven image sculptile**,
 and my **molten image libation**,
 hath **commanded misvahed** them.
 6 Thou hast heard, see all this;
 and **will shall** not ye **declare tell** it?
 I have **shewed had** thee **hear** new things from this time,
 even **hidden things — the guarded**,
 and thou didst not know them.
 7 They are created now, and not from the beginning;
 even **before at the face** of the day
 when thou heardest them not;
 lest thou shouldst say, Behold, I knew them.
 8 Yea, thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not;
 yea, from that time that thine ear was not opened:
 for I knew that **in dealing covertly**,
 thou **wouldest shouldst** deal
 very **treacherously covertly**,
 and wast called a **transgressor rebel**
 from the **womb belly**.
 9 For my name's sake
will shall I **defer mine anger prolong my wrath**,
 and for my **praise halal**
will shall I **refrain restrain** for thee,
 that I cut thee not off.
 10 Behold, I have refined thee, but not with silver;
 I have chosen thee
 in the furnace of **affliction humiliation**.
 11 For mine own sake,
 even for mine own sake, **will shall** I **do work** it:
 for how should my **name be polluted it be profaned**?
 and I **will shall** not give my **glory honour** unto another.
 12 Harken unto me,
 O **Jacob Yaaqov** and **Israel Yisra El**, my called;
 I **am** he; I **am** the **I — first, I also am the last yes, I — final**.
 13 Mine hand also hath
 laid the foundation of **founded** the earth,
 and my right **hand palm** hath spanned the heavens:
 when I call unto them, they stand up together.
 14 All ye, assemble yourselves **gather**, and hear;
 which among them hath **declared told** these things?
 The **LORD Yah Veh** hath loved him:
 he **will do shall work** his **pleasure delight**
 on **Babylon Babel**,
 and his arm shall be on the **Chaldeans Kesediyim**.
 15 I, even I, have **spoken worded**; yea, I have called him:
 I have brought him,
 and he shall **make prosper** his way **prosperous**.
 16 Come ye near **Approach** unto me, hear ye this;
 I have not **spoken in secret worded covertly**
 from the beginning;
 from the time that it was, there am I:

YESHA YAH 48

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE HARDNESS OF YISRA EL

48 Hear this, O house of **Yaaqov**
 — called by the name of **Yisra El**
 coming from the waters of **Yah Hudah**;
 who oaths by the name of **Yah Veh**
 and memorializes **Elohim** of **Yisra El**
 — neither in truth, nor in justness.
 2 For they call themselves of the holy city,
 and prop themselves on **Elohim** of **Yisra El**;
Yah Veh Sabaoth is his name.
 3 I told of the former ever since;
 and they come from my mouth,
 and I hear them;
 I work them suddenly; and they become.
 4 Because I know you are hard,
 and your neck an iron sinew
 and your forehead copper;
 5 I even tell you ever since;
 so that you hear ere it becomes:
 lest you say, My idol worked them!
 And my sculptile and my libation misvahed them!
 6 Hear you? See you all this?
 — and tell it not?
 I have you hear the new from this time,
 — the guarded, and you know them not.
 7 They are now created — not from the beginning
 from the face of the day when you heard not;
 lest you say, Behold, I knew them.
 8 Yes, you heard not; yes, you knew not;
 yes, from the time your ear was not opened:
 for I knew that in dealing covertly,
 that you deal covertly — a rebel from the belly.
 9 For sake of my name, I prolong my wrath;
 and for my halal, I restrain for you,
 that I not cut you off.
 10 Behold, I refined you, but not with silver;
 I chose you in the furnace of humiliation.
 11 For my own sake — for my own sake, I work it.
 For how is it profaned?
 And I give not my honor to another.
 12 Harken to me,
 O **Yaaqov** and **Yisra El**, my called;
 I **am** he; I — first; yes, I — final.
 13 Also, my hand founded the earth
 and my right palm spanned the heavens:
 I call to them; they stand together.
 14 All of you, gather and hear;
 who among them tells these?
Yah Veh loved him:
 he works his delight on **Babel**,
 and his arm on the **Kesediyim**.
 15 I — I worded; yes, I called him:
 I brought him; and prospered his way.
 16 Approach me; hear this;
 I worded not covertly from the beginning;
 from the time of its being, there I **am**:

ISAIAH 48, 49

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and now the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh, and his Spirit,
hath sent me.

- 17 Thus saith the LORD **Yah Veh**, thy Redeemer,
the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh thy God **Elohim**
which teacheth thee to *profit* **benefit**,
which *leadeth* **aimeth** thee
by the way that thou shouldest go.
18 O that thou hadst hearkened
to my *commandments* **misvoth**!
then had thy *peace* **shalom** been as a river,
and thy *righteousness* **justness** as the waves of the sea:
19 Thy seed also had been as the sand,
and the offspring of thy *bowels* **inwards**
like the *gravel* **belly thereof**;
his name should not have been cut off
nor destroyed from *before me* **my face**.
20 Go ye forth of *Babylon* **Babel**,
flee ye from the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**,
with a voice of *singing declare* **shouting tell** ye,
tell have us hear this, utter it *even* to the end of the earth;
say ye, *The LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath redeemed his servant *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.
21 And they thirsted not
when he led **carried** them
through the *deserts* **parched areas**:
he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them:
he *clave* **split** the rock *also*,
and the waters *gushed out* **flowed**.
22 There is no *peace* **shalom**, saith the LORD **Yah Veh**,
unto the wicked.

THE SERVANT OF YAH VEH

- 49 *Listen* **Hearken**, O *isles* **islands**, unto me;
and hearken, ye *people* **nations**, from far;
The LORD **Yah Veh** hath called me from the *womb* **belly**;
from the *bowels* **inwards** of my mother
hath he *made mention of* **mentioned** my name.
2 And he hath *made* **set** my mouth like a sharp sword;
in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me,
and *made* **set** me a polished *shaft* **arrow**;
in his quiver hath he hid me;
3 And said unto me,
Thou art my servant, O *Israel* **Yisra El**,
in whom I *will* **shall** be *glorified* **adorned**.
4 Then I said, I have laboured in vain,
I have *spent* **finished off** my *strength* **force**
for nought **a waste**, and in vain:
yet surely my judgment is with the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and my *work* **deeds** with my God **Elohim**.
5 And now, saith the LORD **Yah Veh**
that formed me from the *womb* **belly** to be his servant,
to *bring Jacob* **again** **return** **Yaaqov** to him,
Though *Israel* **Yisra El** be not gathered,
yet shall I be *glorious* **honoured**
in the eyes of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and my God **Elohim** shall be my strength.
6 And he said, It is a *light thing* **trifling**
that thou shouldest be my servant
to raise up the *tribes* **scions** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and to restore the *preserved* **guarded** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
I *will* **shall** also give thee for a light to the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
that thou mayest be my salvation
unto the end of the earth.
7 Thus saith the LORD **Yah Veh**,
the Redeemer of *Israel* **Yisra El**, and his Holy One,
to *him whom man despiseth*
the despised in soul,
to *him whom the nation abhorreth*
the abhorrent of the goyim,
to a servant of *rulers* **sovereigns**,
Kings **Sovereigns** shall see and arise,
princes **governors** also shall *worship* **prostrate**,
because of the LORD **Yah Veh**
that is *faithful* **trustworthy**,
and the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and he shall choose thee.

THE RESTORATION OF YISRA EL

- 8 Thus saith the LORD **Yah Veh**,

YESHA YAH 48, 49

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and now Adonay Yah Veh and his Spirit send me.

- 17 Thus says Yah Veh,
your Redeemer, the Holy One of Yisra El;
I — Yah Veh your Elohim
teaching you to benefit,
aiming you in the way to go.
18 O had you hearkened to my misvoth
then your shalom had become as a river,
and your justness as the waves of the sea:
and your seed as the sand;
19 and the offspring of your inwards as the belly;
and his name,
neither cut off nor destroyed from my face.
20 Come from Babel!
Flee from the Kesediym!
Tell with a voice of shouting what we hear!
Utter it to the end of the earth!
Say, Yah Veh redeems his servant Yaaqov.
21 And they thirst not;
he carried them through the parched areas:
he flowed the waters from the rock for them:
he split the rock and the waters flowed.
22 There is no shalom, says Yah Veh,
to the wicked.

THE SERVANT OF YAH VEH

- 49 Hearken, O islands, to me;
and hearken, you nations, from afar;
Yah Veh called me from the belly;
from the inwards of my mother
he mentioned my name:
2 and he set my mouth as a sharp sword;
in the shadow of his hand he hid me,
and set me as a polished arrow;
in his quiver he hid me.
3 And he says to me,
You are my servant, O Yisra El,
in whom I am adorned.
4 Then I say, I labored in vain;
I finished off my force for a waste, and in vain:
surely my judgment is with Yah Veh,
and my deeds with my Elohim.
5 And now, says Yah Veh
who formed me from the belly to be his servant,
to return Yaaqov to him,
Though Yisra El is not gathered,
yet I am honored in the eyes of Yah Veh,
and my Elohim is my strength.
6 And he says, It is trifling that you become my servant
to raise up the scions of Yaaqov;
and to restore the guarded of Yisra El:
I also give you for a light to the goyim,
to become my salvation to the end of the earth.
7 Thus says Yah Veh,
the Redeemer of Yisra El, his Holy One,
to the despised in soul
to the abhorrent of the goyim
to a servant of sovereigns,
Sovereigns see and rise; and governors prostrate;
because of Yah Veh who is trustworthy
— the Holy One of Yisra El, and he chooses you.

THE RESTORATION OF YISRA EL

- 8 Thus says Yah Veh,

ISAIAH 49

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

In an acceptable a time of pleasure
have I *heard* **answered** thee,
and in a day of salvation have I helped thee:
and I *will preserve* **shall guard** thee,
and give thee for a covenant of the people,
to *establish* **raise** the earth,
to cause to inherit
the *desolate heritages* **desolated inheritances**;
9 That thou mayest say to the *prisoners* **bound**, Go forth;
to them that are in darkness, *Shew* **Expose** yourselves.
They shall *feed* **graze** in the ways,
and their pastures shall be in all *high places* **the barrens**.
10 They shall not *hunger* **famish** nor thirst;
neither shall *the heat* **glare** nor sun smite them:
for he that *hath mercy on* **mercieth** them
shall *lead* **drive** them,
even by the springs of water shall he guide them.
11 And I *will make* **shall set** all my mountains a way,
and my highways shall be exalted.
12 Behold, these shall come from far:
and, *lo* **behold**, these from the north
and from the west **seaward**;
and these from the land of Sinim.
13 *Sing* **Shout**, O heavens; and *be joyful* **twirl**, O earth;
and break forth into *singing* **shouting**, O mountains:
for the LORD **Yah Veh**
hath *comforted* **sighed over** his people,
and *will have* **shall** mercy
upon his *afflicted* **his humbled**.
14 But Zion **Siyon** said,
The LORD Yah Veh hath forsaken me,
and *my Lord Adonay* hath forgotten me.
15 Can a woman forget her *sucking child* **suckling**,
that she should not *have compassion on* **mercy**
the son of her *womb* **belly**?
yea, they may forget, yet *will* **shall** I not forget thee.
16 Behold,
I have *graven* **engraved** thee
upon the palms of my hands;
thy walls are continually *before* **in front of** me.
17 Thy *children* **sons** shall *make haste* **hasten**;
thy *destroyers* **demolishers**
and they that *made* **parched** thee *waste*
shall go forth of thee.
18 Lift up thine eyes round about, and *behold* **see**:
all these gather *themselves together*, and come to thee.
As I live, saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
thou shalt surely *clothe* **enrobe** thee with them all,
as with an ornament,
and bind them *on thee*, as a bride *doeth*.
19 For thy *waste* **parched areas**
and thy *desolate places* **desolated**,
and the land of thy destruction,
shall even now be too *narrow* **restricted**
by reason of the *inhabitants* **settlers**,
and they that *swallowed* thee *up*
shall be far away **removed**.
20 *The children which thou shalt have,*
after thou hast lost the other,
The sons of thy bereavements
shall say again in thine ears,
The place is too *strait* **tribulated** for me:
give place to **approach** me that I may *dwell* **settle**.
21 Then shalt thou say in thine heart,
Who hath *begotten* **birthed** me these,
seeing I have *lost my children* **aborted**,
and am *desolate* **sterile**,
a captive **an exile**, and *removing to and fro* **turned aside**?
and who hath *brought up* **nourished** these?
Behold, I was *left* alone **survived**;
these, where had they been?
22 Thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**,
Behold,
I *will* **shall** lift up mine hand to the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
and *set up* **lift** my *standard* **ensign** to the people:
and they shall bring thy sons in *their arms* **bosom**,
and thy daughters
shall be *carried* **borne** upon their shoulders.

YESHA YAH 49

exeGesés companion BIBLE

In a time of pleasure I answered you;
and in a day of salvation I helped you:
and I guard you
and give you for a covenant of the people
to raise the earth;
to have them inherit the desolated inheritances;
9 to say to the bound, Come!
To them in darkness, Expose!
They graze in the ways
with their pastures in all the barrens:
10 they neither famish nor thirst;
neither glare nor sun smites them:
for he who mercies them, drives them;
and by the springs of water he guides them.
11 And I set all my mountains, a way,
and my highways, exalted.
12 Behold, these come from afar;
and behold, these from the north
and from the seaward;
and these from the land of Sinim.
13 Shout, O heavens! And twirl, O earth!
And break forth into shouting, O mountains!
For Yah Veh sighs over his people
and mercies his humbled.
14 And Siyon says, Yah Veh forsook me!
and, Adonay forgot me!
15 Forgets a woman her suckling?
Mercies she not the son of her belly?
Yes, they forget; but I — I forget you not.
16 Behold,
I engraved you on the palms of my hands;
your walls are continually in front of me.
17 Your sons hasten;
your demolishers and they who parched you
go from you.
18 Lift up your eyes all round, and see:
all these gather and come to you.
I live — an oracle of Yah Veh
surely you, as an ornament, enrobe them all,
and bind them as a bride.
19 For your parched areas and your desolated
and the land of your destruction
are even now too restricted by reason of the settlers;
and they who swallow you *are* far removed.
20 Again the sons of your bereavements
say in your ears,
The place is too tribulated for me:
approach me, and I settle *down*.
21 Then you say in your heart,
Who birthed me these,
seeing I aborted and *am* sterile
— an exile, turned aside?
And who nourished these?
Behold, I alone survive;
These — whence *are* they?
22 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh,
Behold, I lift my hand to the goyim
and lift my ensign to the people:
and they bring your sons in the bosom
and bear your daughters on their shoulders:

ISAIAH 49, 50

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

23 And *kings* **sovereigns**
shall be thy *nursing fathers* **nurturers**,
and their *queens* **governesses**
thy *nursing mothers* **sucklers**:
they shall *bow down* **prostrate** to thee
with their *face* **nostrils** toward the earth,
and lick up the dust of thy feet;
and thou shalt know that *I am the LORD I* — **Yah Veh**:
for they shall not *be ashamed* **shame**
that *wait for* **await** me.

24 Shall the prey be taken from the mighty,
or the *lawful* **just** captive *delivered* **rescued**?

25 But thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away,
and the prey of the *terrible* **tyrant**
shall be *delivered* **rescued**:
for I *will* **shall** contend with him
that contendeth with thee,
and I *will* **shall** save thy *children* **sons**.

26 And I *will* **shall** feed them that oppress thee
with their own flesh;
and they shall *be drunken* **intoxicate**
with their own blood,
as with *sweet wine* **squeezed juice**:
and all flesh shall know that *I the LORD* **Yah Veh**
am thy Saviour and thy Redeemer,
the *mighty* **Almighty** One of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.

THE SIN OF YISRA EL

50 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Where is the *bill* **scroll** of your mother's divorcement,
whom I have *put* **sent** away?
or *to* which of my *creditors* **extractors**
is it to whom I have sold you?
Behold,
for your *iniquities* **perversities** have ye sold yourselves,
and for your *transgressions* **rebellions**
is your mother *put* **sent** away.

2 Wherefore, when I came, was there no man?
when I called, was there none to answer?
In shortening, Is my hand shortened at *all*,
that it cannot redeem?
or have I no *power* **force** to *deliver* **rescue**?
behold, at my rebuke I *dry up* **parch** the sea,
I *make* **set** the rivers a wilderness:
their fish stinketh, because there is no water,
and dieth for thirst.

3 I *clothe* **enrobe** the heavens with *blackness* **darkness**,
and I *make* **sackcloth** **set saq** their covering.

THE TONGUE OF THE DISCIPLED

4 *The Lord* **GOD** **Adonay Yah Veh**
hath given me the tongue of the *learned* **discipled**,
that I should know
how to *speak* **reinforce** a word *in season*
to *him that is* **the** weary:
he wakeneth morning by morning,
he wakeneth mine ear to hear as the *learned* **discipled**.

5 *The Lord* **GOD** **Adonay Yah Veh** hath opened mine ear,
and I was not rebellious,
neither *turned away back* **apostatized backward**.

A MESSIANIC PROPHECY

6 I gave my back to the smiters,
and my cheeks to them that *plucked off the hair* **balden**:
I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

7 For *the Lord* **GOD** **will** **Adonay Yah Veh** shall help me;
therefore shall I not be confounded:
therefore have I set my face like a flint,
and I know that I shall not *be ashamed* **shame**.

8 He is near that justifieth me;
who *will* **shall** contend with me?
let us stand together:
who is *mine adversary* **the master of my judgment**?
let him come near to me.

9 Behold,
the Lord **GOD** **will** **Adonay Yah Veh** shall help me;
who is he that shall *condemn* **declare** me **wicked**?
lo **behold**,

they all shall *wax old* **wear out** as a *garment* **clothes**;
the moth shall eat them *up*.

10 Who is among you that feareth *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,

YESHA YAH 49, 50

exeGeses companion BIBLE

23 and sovereigns become your nurturers
and their governesses your sucklers:
they prostrate to you
with their nostrils toward the earth
and lick up the dust of your feet;
and you know I — Yah Veh:
for they who await me shame not.
Take they the prey from the mighty?
Or rescue the captive of the just?

24

25 For thus says Yah Veh,
Even the captives of the mighty *are* taken
and the prey of the tyrant *is* rescued:
for I contend with him who contends with you
and I save your sons:
and they who oppress you,
I feed with their own flesh;
and intoxicate with their own blood
as with squeezed juice:
that all flesh know I — Yah Veh
your Saviour and your Redeemer,
the Almighty One of Yaaqov.

THE SIN OF YISRA EL

50 Thus says Yah Veh,
Where is the scroll of divorcement of your mother
whom I sent away?
Or to which of my exactors have I sold you?
Behold, for your perversities you sold yourselves,
and for your rebellions *is* your mother sent away.

2 Why, when I came, was there no man?
I called, and no one answered?
In shortening, is my hand shortened,
that it cannot redeem?
Or have I no force to rescue?

Behold, at my rebuke I parch the sea;
I set the rivers a wilderness:
their fish stink because there is no water
and they die for thirst:

3 I enrobe the heavens with darkness
and I set saq their covering.

THE TONGUE OF THE DISCIPLED

4 Adonay Yah Veh
gives me the tongue of the discipled,
to know *how* to reinforce a word to the weary:
he wakens morning by morning;
he wakens my ear to hear as the discipled:
Adonay Yah Veh opens my ear,
and I neither rebel nor apostatize backward.

A MESSIANIC PROPHECY

6 I give my back to the smiters
and my cheeks to them who balden;
I hide not my face from shame and spitting;
and Adonay Yah Veh helps me:
so I confound not;
so I set my face as a flint;
and I know that I shame not.

8 He who justifies me is near;
Who contends with me?
We stand together:
Who is the master of my judgment?
Have him come near me.

9 Behold, Adonay Yah Veh helps me!
Who declares me wicked?
Behold, they all wear out as clothes;
the moth eats them.
Who among you fears Yah Veh?

10

ISAIAH 50, 51

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that *obeyeth* **hearkeneth** unto the voice of his servant,
that walketh in darkness, and hath no *light* **brilliance**?
let him *trust* **confide** in the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and stay **lean** upon his *God* **Elohim**.

11 Behold, all ye that kindle a fire,
that *compass yourselves about* **girt** with sparks:
walk in the *light* **flame** of your fire,
and in the sparks that ye have *kindled* **burnt**.
This shall ye have of mine hand;
ye shall lie down in *sorrow* **agony**.

THE ETERNAL SALVATION OF SIYON

51

Hearken to me,
ye that *follow after righteousness* **pursue justness**,
ye that seek the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
look unto the rock whence ye are hewn,
and to the *hole* **quarry** of the *pit* **well**
whence ye are *digged* **bored**.

2 Look unto Abraham your father,
and unto Sarah that *bare* **writhed** you:
for **one**, I have called him *alone*,
and blessed him, and *increased* **abounded** him.

3 For the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall *comfort Zion* **sigh over Siyon**:
he will *comfort* **shall sigh over**
all her *waste places* **parched areas**;
and he will *make* **shall set** her wilderness like Eden,
and her *desert* **plain**

like the garden of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
joy **rejoicing** and *gladness* **cheerfulness**
shall be found therein,
thanksgiving **spread hands**,
and the voice of *melody* **psalm**.

4 Hearken unto me, my people;
and *give ear* **hearken** unto me, O my nation:
for a *law* **torah** shall proceed from me,
and I will *make* **shall rest** my judgment to rest
for a light of the people.

5 My *righteousness* **justness** is near;
my salvation is gone forth,
and mine arms shall judge the people;
the *isles* **islands** shall *wait upon* **await** me,
and on mine arm shall they *trust* **wait**.

6 Lift up your eyes to the heavens,
and look upon the earth beneath:
for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke,
and the earth shall *wax old* **wear out**
like a *garment* **clothes**,

and they that *dwell* **settle** therein
shall die *in like manner* **as stingers**:
but my salvation shall be *for ever* **eternal**,
and my *righteousness* **justness**
shall not be *abolished* **broken down**.

7 Hearken unto me, ye that know *righteousness* **justness**,
the people in whose heart is my *law* **torah**;
fear **awe** ye not the reproach of men,
neither *be ye afraid* **terrify** of their revilings.

8 For the moth shall eat them *up* like a *garment* **clothes**,
and the *worm* **moth** shall eat them like wool:
but my *righteousness* **justness** shall be *for ever* **eternal**,
and my salvation from generation to generation.

9 Awake, awake, *put on* **enrobe** strength,
O arm of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
awake, as in the ancient days,
in the generations of *old* **eternal**.

Art thou not it that hath *cut Rahab* **hewn Rahab/pride**,
and *wounded* **pierced** the *dragon* **monster**?

10 Art thou not it which hath *dried* **parched** the sea,
the waters of the great *deep* **abyss**;
that hath *made* **set** the depths of the sea
a way for the *ransomed* **redeemed** to pass over?

11 Therefore
the *redeemed of the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall return,
and come with *singing* **shouting** unto *Zion* **Siyon**;
and *everlasting joy* **eternal cheerfulness**
shall be upon their head:
they shall *obtain* **attain**
gladness **rejoicing** and *joy* **cheerfulness**;
and *sorrow* **grief** and *mourning* **sighing** shall flee away.
12 I, even I, *am* he that *comforteth* **sigheth over** you:

YESHA YAH 50, 51

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Who hearkens to the voice of his servant?
Who walks in darkness with no brilliance?
Have him confide in the name of Yah Veh
and lean on his Elohim.

11 Behold, all you who kindle a fire,
who girt with sparks:
walk in the flame of your fire
and in the sparks you burn.
This becomes you from my hand;
you lie down in agony.

THE ETERNAL SALVATION OF SIYON

51

Hearken to me, you who pursue justness,
you who seek Yah Veh:
look to the rock whence you were hewn
and to the quarry of the well whence you were bored:

2 look to Abraham your father,
and to Sarah who writhed you:
I, for one,
called him and blessed him and abounded him.

3 For Yah Veh sighs over Siyon:
he sighs over all her parched areas;
and he sets her wilderness as Eden
and her plain as the garden of Yah Veh;
rejoicing, yes, and cheerfulness are found therein
— spread hands and the voice of psalm.

4 Hearken to me, O my people;
and hearken to me, O my nation:
for a torah proceeds from me
and I rest my judgment for a light of the people.

5 My justness is near;
my salvation and my arms go forth;
they judge the people;
the islands await me and on my arm they await.

6 Lift your eyes to the heavens
and look to the earth beneath:
for the heavens vanish as smoke
and the earth wears out as clothes;
and they who settle therein die as stingers:
and my salvation is eternal,
and my justness breaks not down.

7 Hearken to me, you who know justness,
the people in whose heart my torah is;
neither awe the reproach of men
nor terrify of their revilings:

8 For the moth eats them as cloth
and the moth eats them as wool:
and my justness is eternal
and my salvation from generation to generation.

9 Waken! Waken!
Enrobe strength, O arm of Yah Veh!
Waken as in the ancient days
— in the generations eternal.
Is it not you who hews Rahab/pride?
— piercing the monster?
10 Is it not you who parches the sea
— the waters of the great abyss?
Who sets the depths of the sea
— a way for the redeemed to pass over?

11 And the redeemed of Yah Veh return
and come with shouting to Siyon;
with eternal cheerfulness on their head:
they attain rejoicing and cheerfulness;
grief and sighing flee away.
12 I — I — he who sighs over you.

ISAIAH 51, 52

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

who art thou,
that thou shouldest *be afraid of* **awe** a man that shall die,
and of the son of *man* **humanity**
which shall be *made* **given** as grass;
13 And forgettest *the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *maker* **worker**,
that hath *stretched forth* **spread** the heavens,
and laid the foundations of the earth;
and hast feared continually every day
because at the face of the fury of the oppressor,
as if he were *ready* **prepared** to *destroy* **ruin**?
and where is the fury of the oppressor?
14 The *captive exile* **stroller** hasteneth
that he may be loosed,
and that he should not die in the pit **of ruin**,
nor that his bread should *fail* **lack**.
15 But *I am the LORD* **I** — **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
that *divided* **split** the sea, whose waves roared:
The LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth** is his name.
16 And I have *put* **set** my words in thy mouth,
and I have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand,
that I may plant the heavens,
and lay the foundations of the earth,
and say unto *Zion* **Siyon**, Thou *art* my people.
17 **THE CUP OF THE FURY OF YAH VEH**
Awake, awake,
stand up **arise**, O *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
which hast drunk at the hand of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
the cup of his fury;
thou hast drunken
the *dregs* **chalice** of the cup of *trembling* **staggering**,
and wrung *them* out.
18 There is none to guide her
among all the sons whom she hath *brought forth* **birthed**;
neither is there any that *taketh* **holdeth** her by the hand
of all the sons that she hath *brought up* **nourished**.
19 These two *things are come unto* **confront** thee;
who shall *be sorry for* **wag over** thee?
desolation **ravage**, and *destruction* **breaking**,
and the famine, and the sword:
by whom shall I *comfort* **sigh over** thee?
20 Thy sons have *fainted* **languished**,
they lie at the head of all the *streets* **outways**,
as a *wild bull* **an antelope** in a net:
they are full of the fury of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the rebuke of thy *God* **Elohim**.
21 Therefore hear *now* **I beseech** this,
thou *afflicted* **humbled**,
and *drunken* **intoxicated**, but not with wine:
22 Thus saith thy *Lord* **the LORD Adonay Yah Veh**,
and thy *God* **Elohim**
that pleadeth the cause of his people,
Behold, I have taken out of thine hand
the cup of *trembling* **staggering**,
even the dregs **chalice** of the cup of my fury;
thou shalt *no more* **not add to** drink it again:
23 But I *will put* **shall set** it
into the hand of them that *afflict* **grieve** thee;
which have said to thy soul,
Bow down **Prostrate**, that we may *go* **pass** over:
and thou hast *laid* **set** thy *body* **back** as the *ground* **earth**,
and as the *street* **outway**, to them that *went* **passed** over.

SIYON REDEEMED

52

Awake, awake;
put on **enrobe** thy strength, O *Zion* **Siyon**;
put on **enrobe**
thy *beautiful garment* **clothes of adornment**,
O *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, the holy city:
for henceforth
there shall *no more* **not add to** come into thee
the uncircumcised and the *unclean* **foul**.
2 Shake thyself from the dust;
arise, and sit down, O *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
loose thyself from the *bands* **bonds** of thy neck,
O *captive daughter of Zion* **Siyon**.
3 For thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Ye have sold yourselves *for nought* **gratuitously**;
and ye shall be redeemed without *money* **silver**.
4 For thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**,

YESHA YAH 51, 52

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Who are you to awe a man who dies?
and, of the son of humanity, given as grass?
13 And forgets Yah Veh your worker
who spread the heavens
and laid the foundations of the earth?
— who feared continually every day
at the face of the fury of the oppressor
as if he were prepared to ruin?
And where is the fury of the oppressor?
14 The stroller hastens to be loosed
that he neither dies in the pit of ruin
nor that he lacks bread.
15 And I — Yah Veh your Elohim,
who split the sea; who roared the waves:
Yah Veh Sabaoth *is* his name.
16 And I set my words in your mouth;
and I covered you in the shadow of my hand
to plant the heavens
and to lay the foundations of the earth,
and to say to Siyon, You *are* my people.
17 **THE CUP OF THE FURY OF YAH VEH**
Waken! Waken! Rise, O *Yeru Shalem*
who, at the hand of Yah Veh,
drank the cup of his fury;
the chalice of the cup of staggering
you drank and wrung out.
18 There is neither one to guide her
among all the sons whom she birthed;
nor is there any, of all the sons she nourished,
who holds her by the hand.
19 These two confront you.
Who wags over you?
Ravage and breaking and the famine and the sword!
Who *except* me sighs over you?
20 Your sons languish;
they lie at the head of all the outways
as an antelope in a net:
they are full of the fury of Yah Veh
— the rebuke of your Elohim.
21 So I beseech, hear this,
O humbled and intoxicated — but not with wine.
22 Thus says your Adonay Yah Veh,
and your Elohim who pleads the cause of his people,
Behold, I take the cup of staggering from your hand
— the chalice of the cup of my fury;
add not to drink it again:
23 and I set it in the hand of them who grieve you;
who say to your soul,
Prostrate, and we pass over:
and you set your back as the earth,
and as the outway, to them who pass over.

SIYON REDEEMED

52

Waken! Waken!
Enrobe your strength, O Siyon;
enrobe your clothes of adornment, O *Yeru Shalem*,
the holy city:
for henceforth the uncircumcised and the foul
add not to enter you.
2 Shake yourself from the dust;
Rise! Sit, O *Yeru Shalem*!
Loose yourself from the bonds of your neck,
O captive daughter of Siyon!
3 For thus says Yah Veh,
You, sold gratuitously;
and you, redeemed without silver.
4 For thus says Adonay Yah Veh,

ISAIAH 52, 53

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

My people went down *afortime* descended formerly
into Egypt **Misrayim** to sojourn there;
and the Assyrian **Ashshuri** oppressed them
without cause **unceasingly**.
5 Now therefore, what have I here,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that my people is taken away for nought **gratuitously**?
they that **rule** reign over them **make** cause them to howl,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**;
and my name
continually every day is *blasphemed* **scorned**.
6 Therefore my people shall know my name:
therefore they shall know in that day
that I am — he that doth speak: behold, *it is* I.

A MESSIANIC PROPHECY

7 How beautiful **befitting** upon the mountains
are the feet of him
that *bringeth good tidings* **evangelizeth**,
that *publisheth peace* **hearkeneth shalom**;
that *bringeth good tidings* **evangelizeth** of good,
that *publisheth* **hearkeneth** salvation;
8 that saith unto Zion **Siyon**, Thy God **Elohim** reigneth!
Thy *watchmen* **watchers** shall lift up the voice;
with the voice together shall they *sing* **shout**:
for they shall see eye to eye,
when the LORD **Yah Veh**
shall *bring again* Zion **return** **Siyon**.
9 Break forth into joy, *sing* **shout** together,
ye waste places **parched areas** of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem:
for the LORD **Yah Veh**
hath *comforted* **sighed** over his people,
he hath redeemed Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.
10 The LORD **Yah Veh**
hath *made bare* **stripped** his holy arm
in the eyes of all the *nations* **goyim**;
and all the *ends* **finalities** of the earth
shall see the salvation of our God **Elohim**.
11 Depart **Turn** ye **aside**, depart **turn** ye **aside**,
go ye out from thence,
touch *no unclean thing* **not the foul**;
go ye out of the midst of her;
be ye *clean* **purified**,
that bear the *vessels* **instruments** of the LORD **Yah Veh**.
12 For ye shall not go out with haste, nor go by *flight* **retreat**:
for the LORD **Yah Veh**
will **shall** go before you **at thy face**;
and the God **Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**
will be your *rereward* **shall gather** you.

A MESSIANIC PROPHECY

13 Behold, my servant shall *deal prudently* **comprehend**,
he shall be exalted and *extolled* **lifted**,
and be *very high* **mightily lifted**.
14 As many were astonished at thee;
his visage was so *marred more than any* **ruined by** man,
and his form *more than* **by** the sons of *men* **humanity**:
15 So shall he sprinkle many *nations* **goyim**;
the *kings* **sovereigns** shall shut their mouths at him:
for that which had not been *told* **scribed** them
shall they see;
and that which they had not heard
shall they *consider* **discern**.

53

Who hath *believed* **trusted** our report?
and to whom
is the arm of the LORD *revealed* **Yah Veh exposed**?
2 For he shall *grow up before him* **ascend at his face**
as a *tender plant* **sprout**,
and as a root out of a *dry ground* **parched earth**:
he hath no form nor *comeliness* **majesty**;
and when we shall see him,
there is no *beauty* **visage** that we should desire him.
3 He is despised and *rejected* **abandoned** of men;
a man of sorrows,
and *acquainted with grief* **knowing sickness**:
and we hid as it were our faces from him;
he was despised, and we *esteemed* **machinated** him not.
4 Surely he hath borne our *griefs* **sicknesses**,
and *carried* **borne** our sorrows:
yet we *did esteem* **machinated** him *stricken* **plagued**,
smitten of God **Elohim**, and *afflicted* **abased**.

YESHA YAH 52, 53

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Formerly my people descended into Misrayim
to sojourn there;
and the Ashshuri oppressed them unceasingly:
5 and now, what *is* to me here
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that my people *are* taken away gratuitously?
They who reign over them have them to howl
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and continually every day my name is scorned.
6 So my people know my name:
so in that day
surely I *am* he who speaks: Behold — I.

A MESSIANIC PROPHECY

7 How **befitting** on the mountains
are the feet of him who evangelizes:
who hearkens shalom;
who evangelizes of good;
who hearkens salvation;
8 who says to Siyon, Your Elohim reigns!
Your watchers lift the voice;
with the voice they shout together:
for they see eye to eye
when Yah Veh returns to Siyon.
9 Break forth in joy!
Shout together, you parched areas of Yeru Shalem!
For Yah Veh sighs over his people;
he redeems Yeru Shalem:
10 Yah Veh strips his holy arm
in the eyes of all the goyim;
and all the finalities of the earth
see the salvation of our Elohim.
11 You, turn aside! Turn aside!
Come out from thence! Touch not the foul!
You, come from her midst!
You, be purified,
who bear the instruments of Yah Veh.
12 For you neither go in haste
nor come in retreat:
for Yah Veh goes at your face;
and Elohim of Yisra El gathers you.

A MESSIANIC PROPHECY

13 Behold, my servant comprehends;
he is exalted and lifted — mightily lifted.
14 As many astonish at you;
his visage so ruined by man;
and his form by the sons of humanity:
15 thus he sprinkles many goyim;
the sovereigns shut their mouths at him:
for what was not scribed to them, they see;
and what they heard not, they discern.

53

Who trusts our report?
and to whom is the arm of Yah Veh exposed?
2 For he ascends at his face as a sprout
— as a root from parched earth:
he has neither form nor majesty when we see him;
nor visage when we desire him.
3 He is despised and abandoned of men;
a man of sorrows, and knowing sickness:
as one from whom we hide our face;
he was despised, and we machinated him not.
4 Surely he bore our sicknesses and bore our sorrows:
yet we machinated him plagued
— smitten of Elohim and abased.

ISAIAH 53, 54

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 But he was wounded **pierced**
for our *transgressions* **rebellions**,
he was bruised **crushed** for our *iniquities* **perversities**:
the chastisement of our *peace* **shalom** was upon him;
and with his *stripes* **lashes** we are healed.

6 All we like *sheep* a **flock** have *gone astray* **strayed**;
we have *turned* **faced** every *one* **man** to his own way;
and the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *laid* **met** on him
the *iniquity* **perversity** of us all.

7 He was *oppressed* **Of him they exacted**,
and he was *afflicted* **abased**,
yet he opened not his mouth:
he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter,
and as a *sheep* **an ewe**
before **at the face of** her shearers is *dumb* **muted**,
so he openeth not his mouth.

8 He was taken
from *prison* **by restraint** and from **by** judgment:
and who shall *declare* **meditate** his generation?
for he was cut off out of the land of the living:
for the *transgression* **rebellion** of my people
was he *stricken* **the plague upon him**.

9 And he *made* **gave** his *grave* **tomb** with the wicked,
and with the *rich* in his death;
because he had *done* **worked** no violence,
neither was *any* deceit in his mouth.

10 Yet it *pleased the* **LORD delighted** **Yah Veh**
to *bruise* **crush** him;
he hath *put* **stroked** him to *grief*:
when thou shalt *make* **set** his soul
an *offering for sin* **for the guilt**,
he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days,
and the *pleasure* **delight** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall prosper in his hand.

11 He shall see of the *travail* **toil** of his soul,
and shall be satisfied:
by his knowledge
shall my *righteous* **just** servant justify many;
for he shall bear their *iniquities* **perversities**.

12 Therefore *will* **shall** I *divide* **allot** him a *portion*
with the great,
and he shall *divide* **allot** the spoil with the *strong* **mighty**;
because he hath poured out his soul unto death:
and he was numbered with the *transgressors* **rebels**;
and he bare the sin of many,
and *made intercession* **interceded**
for the *transgressors* **rebels**.

THE GLORY OF SIYON

54 *Sing* **Shout**, O barren **sterile**,
thou that *didst* **birthed** not bear;
break forth into *singing* **shouting**, and *cry aloud* **resound**,
thou that *didst* **writhed** not *travail with child*:
for more are the *children* **sons** of the *desolate* **desolated**
than the *children* **sons** of the *married wife*,
saith the **LORD Yah Veh**.

2 Enlarge the place of thy tent,
and let them *stretch forth* **spread** the curtains
of *thine habitations* **thy tabernacles**:
spare not, lengthen thy cords, and strengthen thy stakes;

3 For thou shalt *break forth* **separate**
on the right *hand* and on the left;
and thy seed shall *inherit* **succeed** the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
and *make* **settle** the *desolate* **desolated** cities
to be *inhabited*.

4 Fear **Awe** not; for thou shalt not be *ashamed* **shame**:
neither be thou *confounded* **ashamed**;
for thou shalt not be *put to shame* **blush**:
for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth,
and shalt not remember
the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

5 For thy *Maker* **Worker** is *thine husband* **thy master**;
the **LORD of hosts** **Yah Veh Sabaoth** is his name;
and thy Redeemer the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
The *God* **Elohim** of the whole earth shall he be called.

6 For the **LORD Yah Veh** hath called thee
as a woman forsaken and *grieved* **contorted** in spirit,
and a *wife* **woman** of youth, when thou wast refused,
saith thy *God* **Elohim**.

7 For a small *moment* **blink** have I forsaken thee;

YESHA YAH 53, 54

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 And he is pierced for our rebellions;
crushed for our perversities:
the chastisement of our *shalom* is on him;
and with his lashes we are healed.

6 We all strayed as a flock;
— every man faced to his own way;
and on him, Yah Veh met all our perversity.

7 Of him they exact, and him they abase;
yet he opens not his mouth:
brought as a lamb to the slaughter
and as an ewe at the face of her shearers:
he is mute, and opens not his mouth:
taken by restraint and by judgment:
and who meditates his generation?
For he is cut off from the land of the living:
— plagued for the rebellion of my people.

9 And he gives his tomb with the wicked
and with the rich in his death;
because he neither worked violence
nor is deceit in his mouth.

10 Yet Yah Veh delights to crush him;
he strokes him:
when you set his soul for the guilt,
he sees his seed; he prolongs his days:
and the delight of Yah Veh prospers in his hand.

11 He sees the toil of his soul, and satisfies:
by his knowledge my just servant justifies many;
for he bears their perversities.

12 So I allot him with the great,
and he allots the spoil with the mighty;
because he pours his soul to death:
numbered with the rebels;
and he bears the sin of many,
and intercedes for the rebels.

THE GLORY OF SIYON

54 Shout, O sterile;
you who birth not!
Break forth into shouting and resound,
you who writhe not!
for more are the sons of the desolated
than the sons of the married, says Yah Veh.

2 Enlarge the place of your tent,
and spread the curtains of your tabernacles:
Spare not! Lengthen your cords!
Strengthen your stakes!

3 For you separate on the right and on the left;
and your seed succeeds the goyim
and settle in the desolated cities.

4 Awe not;
neither shame nor be ashamed nor blush:
for you forget the shame of your youth
and remember no more
the reproach of your widowhood.

5 For your Worker is your master;
Yah Veh Sabaoth is his name;
and your Redeemer, the Holy One of Yisra El;
the Elohim of the whole earth he is called.

6 For Yah Veh called you
as a woman forsaken and contorted in spirit,
and a woman of youth when she is refused,
says your Elohim.

7 For a small blink I forsook you;

ISAIAH 54, 55

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 but with great mercies *will shall* I gather thee.
In a *little wrath* **an outburst of rage**
I hid my face from thee for a *moment* **blink**;
but with *everlasting kindness* **eternal mercy**
will I have mercy on shall I **mercy** thee,
saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy Redeemer.

9 For this is as the waters of *Noah* **Noach** unto me:
for as I have *sworn* **oathed**
that the waters of *Noah* **Noach**
should no more *go* **pass** over the earth;
so have I *sworn* **oathed**
that I *would* **should** not be *wroth* **enraged** with thee,
nor rebuke thee.

10 For the mountains shall depart,
and the hills *be removed* **topple**;
but my *kindness* **mercy** shall not depart from thee,
neither shall the covenant of my *peace* **shalom**
be removed **topple**,
saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
that *hath mercy on* **mercieth** thee.

11 O thou *afflicted* **humbled**,
tossed with tempest **stormtossed**,
and not *comforted* **sighed over**,
behold, I *will lay* **shall crouch** thy stones
with *fair colours* **stribium**,
and lay thy foundations with sapphires.

12 And I *will make thy windows* **shall set thy sun**
of *agates* **rubies**,
and thy *gates* **portals** of *carbuncles* **carbuncle stones**,
and all thy borders of *pleasant* stones **of delight**.

13 And all thy *children* **sons**
shall be *taught* **discipled** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
and great shall be the *peace* **shalom** of thy *children* **sons**.

14 In *righteousness* **justness**
shalt thou *be established* **establish thyself**:
thou shalt be far **removed** from oppression;
for thou shalt not *fear* **awe**:
and from *terror* **ruin**;
for it shall not *come near* **approach** thee.

15 Behold,
in sojourning, they shall *surely* **gather together sojourn**,
but not by me:
whosoever shall *gather together* **sojourn** against thee
shall fall for thy sake.

16 Behold, I have created the *smith* **engraver**
that *bloweth* **puffeth** the coals in the fire,
and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work;
and I have created the *waster* **ruiner** to *destroy* **ruin**.

17 No *weapon* **instrument** that is formed against thee
shall prosper;
and every tongue that shall rise against thee in judgment
thou shalt *condemn* **declare wicked**.
This is the *heritage* **inheritance**
of the servants of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and their *righteousness* **justness** is of me,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

THE OPEN INVITATION OF YAH VEH

55 Ho, every one that thirsteth,
come ye to the waters,
and he that hath no *money* **silver**;
come ye, *buy* **market for kernels**, and eat;
yea, come, *buy* **market for kernels** wine and milk
without *money* **silver** and without price.

2 Wherefore do ye *spend money* **weigh silver**
for that which is not bread?
and your labour for that which satisfieth not?
in hearkening, hearken *diligently* unto me,
and eat ye that which is good,
and let your soul delight itself in fatness.

3 *Incline* **Spread** your ear, and come unto me:
hear, and your soul shall live;
and I *will make* **shall cut**
an *everlasting* **eternal** covenant with you,
even the sure **trustworthy** mercies of David.

4 Behold, I have given him *for* a witness
to the *people* **nations**,
a *leader* **eminent** and *commander* **misvaher**
to the *people* **nations**.

YESHA YAH 54, 55

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 but with great mercies I gather you:
in an outburst of rage
I hid my face from you for a blink;
and in eternal mercy I mercy you,
says Yah Veh your Redeemer.

9 For this is as the waters of Noach to me:
in that I oathed
that the waters of Noach pass no more over the earth;
thus I oathed that I neither enrage over you
nor rebuke you.

10 For the mountains depart and the hills topple;
but neither my mercy departs from you,
nor the covenant of my shalom topple,
says Yah Veh who mercies you.

11 O you humbled; stormtossed; not sighed over:
behold, I crouch your stones with stribium,
and lay your foundations with sapphires:
and I set your sun of rubies,
and your portals of carbuncle stones,
and all your borders of stones of delight:
and disciple all your sons by Yah Veh;
and great is the shalom of your sons.

12 Establish yourself in justness
— far removed from oppression
for you awe not:
and from ruin;
for it approaches you not.

13 Behold, in sojourning, they sojourn,
but not by me:
whosoever sojourns against you
falls for your sake.

14 Behold, I created the engraver
who puffs the coals in the fire
and who brings forth an instrument for his work;
and I created the ruiner to ruin.

15 No instrument formed against you prospers;
and every tongue rising against you in judgment,
you declare wicked.
This is the inheritance of the servants of Yah Veh
and their justness is of me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

THE OPEN INVITATION OF YAH VEH

55 Ho, every one who thirsts!
Come to the waters!
And he who has no silver,
come, market for kernels, and eat;
yes, come, market for kernels, wine and milk
— without silver and without price.

2 Why weigh silver for what is not bread?
And labor for what satisfies not?
In hearkening, hearken to me,
and eat what is good,
that your soul delight itself in fatness.

3 Spread your ear, and come to me;
hear, and your soul lives;
and I cut an eternal covenant with you
— the trustworthy mercies of David.

4 Behold, I give him — a witness to the nations
— eminent and misvaher to the nations.

ISAIAH 55, 56

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 Behold,
thou shalt call a *nation* **goyim** that thou knowest not,
and *nations* **goyim** that knew not thee shall run unto thee
because of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
and for the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
for he hath *glorified* **adorned** thee.
6 Seek ye the *LORD* **Yah Veh** while he may be found,
call ye upon him while he is near:
7 Let the wicked forsake his way,
and the *unrighteous* man **of mischief**
his *thoughts* **fabrications**:
and let him return unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and he *will* **shall** have mercy upon him;
and to our *God* **Elohim**,
for he *will* **abundantly pardon shall abound to forgive**.
8 For my *thoughts* **fabrications**
are not your *thoughts* **fabrications**,
neither are your ways my ways,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
9 For as the heavens are higher than the earth,
so are my ways higher than your ways,
and my *thoughts* **fabrications** than your *thoughts* **fabrications**.
10 For as the *rain cometh down* **downpour descendeth**,
and the snow from *heaven* **the heavens**,
and returneth not thither,
but *watereth* **saturateth** the earth,
and *maketh it bring forth* **birtheth and bud sprouteth**,
that it may give seed to the *sower* **seeder**,
and bread to the eater:
11 So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth:
it shall not return unto me void,
but it shall *accomplish* **work** that which I *please* **desire**,
and it shall prosper *in the thing* whereto I sent it.
12 For ye shall go out with *joy* **cheerfulness**,
and be led forth with *peace* **shalom**:
the mountains and the hills shall break forth
before you at thy face into *singing* **shouting**,
and all the trees of the field shall clap their *hands* **palms**.
13 Instead of the thorn
shall *come up* **ascend** the fir tree,
and instead of the brier
shall *come up* **ascend** the myrtle tree:
and it shall be to the *LORD* **Yah Veh** for a name,
for an *everlasting* **eternal** sign that shall not be cut off.

SALVATION FOR ALL

56

Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Keep Guard ye judgment, and *do justice* **work justness**:
for my salvation is near to come,
and my *righteousness* **justness** to be *revealed* **exposed**.
2 *Blessed* **Blithesome** is the man that *doeth* **worketh** this,
and the son of *man* **humanity** that layeth hold on it;
that *keepeth* **guardeth** the *sabbath* **shabbath**
from *polluting* **profaning** it,
and *keepeth* **guardeth** his hand
from *doing* **working** any evil.
3 Neither let the son of the stranger,
that hath joined himself to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
speak say, saying,
In separating,
The *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *utterly* separated me from his people:
neither let the eunuch say, Behold, I am a dry tree.
4 For thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh** unto the eunuchs
that *keep* **guard** my *sabbaths* **shabbaths**,
and choose the *things* **those** that *please* **delight** me,
and *take hold of* my covenant;
5 Even unto them
will shall I give in mine house and within my walls
a *place* **hand** and a name
better than of sons and of daughters:
I *will shall* give them an *everlasting* **eternal** name,
that shall not be cut off.
6 Also the sons of the stranger,
that join themselves to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to *serve* **minister** to him,
and to love the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to be his servants,
every one that *keepeth* **guardeth** the *sabbath* **shabbath**
from *polluting* **profaning** it,
and *taketh hold of* **holdeth** my covenant;

YESHA YAH 55, 56

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 Behold, you call a goyim whom you know not,
and goyim whom know you not run to you
because of Yah Veh your Elohim,
and for the Holy One of Yisra El;
for he adorns you.
6 Seek Yah Veh while he is to be found;
call on him while he is near:
7 the wicked forsake his way;
and the man of mischief, his fabrications:
and he returns to Yah Veh, and he mercies him;
and to our Elohim, for he abounds to forgive.
8 For neither are my fabrications your fabrications
nor your ways my ways
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
9 For as the heavens are higher than the earth
thus are my ways higher than your ways
— and my fabrications than your fabrications.
10 For as the downpour and the snow
descend from the heavens, and returns not
— but saturates the earth and births and sprouts
— to give seed to the seeder and bread to the eater:
11 thus becomes my word that comes from my mouth:
it returns not to me void
but works what I desire;
and it prospers whereto I send it.
12 For you go forth with cheerfulness
and lead forth with shalom:
the mountains and the hills
break forth into shouting at your face;
and all the trees of the field clap their palms.
13 Instead of the thorn, the fir tree ascends,
and instead of the brier, the myrtle tree ascends:
and it becomes to Yah Veh for a name,
for an eternal sign, not cut off.

SALVATION FOR ALL

56

Thus says Yah Veh,
You, guard judgment and work justness;
for my salvation comes near
and to expose my justness.
2 Blithesome — the man who works this
and the son of humanity who lays hold thereon;
who guards from profaning the shabbath
and guards his hand from working any evil.
3 Neither let the son of the stranger,
who joins himself to Yah Veh, say, saying,
In separating, Yah Veh separated me from his people:
nor let the eunuch say, Behold, I am a dry tree.
4 For thus says Yah Veh to the eunuchs
who guard my shabbaths
and choose what delights me and hold my covenant;
5 I give them in my house and within my walls
a hand and a name
better than of sons and of daughters:
I give them an eternal name that is not cut off.
6 And sons of the stranger
who join themselves to Yah Veh
to minister to him and to love the name of Yah Veh
— to be his servants,
every one who guards from profaning the shabbath
and holds my covenant;

ISAIAH 56, 57

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

7 Even them *will shall* I bring to my holy mountain,
and *make cheer* them *joyful* in my house of prayer:
their *burnt offerings holocausts* and their sacrifices
shall be *accepted a pleasure*
upon *mine my sacrifice* altar;
for mine house shall be called
an house of *my* prayer for all people.
8 *The Lord GOD An oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,*
which gathereth
the *outcasts overthrown of Israel Yisra El saith,*
Yet *will shall* I gather *others* to him,
beside those that are gathered unto him.
9 All ye *beasts live beings* of the field, come to devour,
yea, all ye *beasts live beings* in the forest.
10 His *watchmen watchers* are blind:
they are all *ignorant know not,*
they are all *dumb mute* dogs, they cannot bark;
sleeping dreaming, lying down, loving to slumber.
11 Yea, they are *greedy dogs strong of soul*
which *can never have enough know not satisfaction,*
and they are *shepherds tenders*
that *cannot understand know not to discern:*
they all *look to face* their own way,
every *one man* for his gain, from his *quarter end.*
12 Come ye, *say they, I will fetch shall take* wine,
and we *will fill ourselves shall carouse*
with *strong drink intoxicants;*
and to morrow shall be as this day,
and *much more abundant a mighty great remainder.*

THE JUST DESTRUCT

57

The *righteous perisheth just destructeth,*
and no man *layeth setteth* it to heart:
and merciful men are *taken away gathered,*
none *considering discerning*
that the *righteous just* is *taken away gathered*
from *the face of* the evil *to come.*
2 He shall enter into *peace shalom:*
they shall rest in their beds,
each one walking in his *uprightness straightforwardness.*
3 But *draw near approach* hither,
ye sons of the *sorceress cloudgazer,*
the seed of the adulterer and the whore.
4 Against whom do ye *sport delight* yourselves?
against whom *make ye a wide enlarge ye the* mouth,
and *draw out lengthen* the tongue?
are ye not children of *transgression rebellion,*
a seed of falsehood,
5 *Enflaming yourselves Heating up* with *idols elohim*
under every green tree,
slaying slaughtering the children in the *valleys wadies*
under the *clifts clefts* of the rocks?
6 Among the *smooth stones smooth stones/allotment*
of the *stream wadi* is thy *portion allotment;*
they, they are thy *lot pebble:*
even to them hast thou poured a *drink offering libation,*
thou hast *offered a meat holocausted an* offering.
should I *receive comfort sigh* in these?
7 Upon a lofty and *high lifted* mountain
hast thou set thy bed:
even thither *wentest ascendest* thou *up*
to *offer sacrifice* sacrifice.
8 Behind the doors also and the posts
hast thou set up thy remembrance:
for thou hast *discovered exposed* thyself
to *another than from* me,
and art *gone up ascended;*
thou hast enlarged thy bed,
and *made cut* thee a *covenant* with them;
thou lovedst their bed where thou sawest it.
9 And thou *wentest strollest* to the *king sovereign*
with ointment,
and *didst increase abounded* thy perfumes,
and *didst send sent* thy *messengers ambassadors* far off,
and *didst debase debased* thyself *even unto hell sheol.*
10 Thou art *wearied belaboured*
in the greatness of thy way;
yet saidst thou not, *There is no hope I quit!*
thou hast found the life of thine hand;
therefore thou wast not *grieved worn.*

YESHA YAH 56, 57

exeGeses companion BIBLE

7 I bring them to my holy mountain,
and cheer them in my house of prayer:
their holocausts and their sacrifices
are a pleasure on my sacrifice altar;
for my house is called
a house of my prayer for all people
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
who gather the overthrown of Yisra El:
again I gather to him — to his gathered ones.
8
9 All you live beings of the field, come to devour
— all you live beings in the forest.
10 His watchers are blind; they know not:
they are all mute dogs; they cannot bark:
dreaming, lying down, loving to slumber.
11 Yes, they are dogs, strong of soul,
who know not satisfaction;
and they are tenders who know not to discern:
they all face their own way,
every man for his gain, from his end.
12 You, come; I take wine,
and we carouse with intoxicants;
and tomorrow is as this day
— a mighty great remainder.

THE JUST DESTRUCT

57

The just destruct and no man sets it to heart:
and merciful men gather and no one discerns
that the just are gathered from the face of the evil.
2 He enters into shalom; they rest in their beds
— each walking in straightforwardness.
3 And approach here, you sons of the cloudgazer
— the seed of the adulterer and the whore.
4 Against whom delight you yourselves?
Against whom enlarge you the mouth
and lengthen the tongue?
Are you not children of rebellion?
A seed of falsehood
5 heating up with elohim under every green tree?
Slaughtering the children in the wadies
under the clefts of the rocks?
6 Among the smooth stones/allotments
of the wadi is your allotment;
they — they are your pebble:
also to them you pour a libation,
you holocaust an offering.
Sigh I in these?
7 On a lofty and lifted mountain
you set your bed:
also there you ascend to sacrifice sacrifice:
and behind the doors and the posts
you set up your remembrance:
for you expose yourself from me, and ascend;
you enlarge your bed and you cut with them;
you love their bed where you see it:
and you stroll to the sovereign with ointment
and abound your perfumes;
and send your ambassadors afar off
and debase yourself to sheol:
8 you belabor in the greatness of your way;
yet you say not, I quit!
You find the life of your hand;
so you are not worn.

ISAIAH 57, 58

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

11 And of whom
hast thou been *afraid* **concerned** or *feared* **awed**,
that thou hast lied, and hast not remembered me,
nor *laid* **set** it to thy heart?
have not I *held* my *peace* even of *old* **hushed** **eternally**,
and thou *fearest* **awest** me not?
12 I *will* **declare** **shall** **tell** thy *righteousness* **justness**,
and thy works;
for they shall not *profit* **benefit** thee.
13 When thou criest,
let thy *companies* **deliver** **throngs** **rescue** thee;
but the wind shall *carry* **bear** them all away;
vanity shall take them:
but he that *putteth* his *trust* **seeketh** **refuge** in me
shall *possess* **inherit** the land,
and shall inherit my holy mountain;
14 And shall say, *Cast* ye **Raise** up, *cast* ye **raise** up,
prepare **face** the way,
take up **lift** the stumblingblock
out of the way of my people.
15 For thus saith the high and *lofty* **lifted** One
that *inhabiteth* **tabernacleth** eternity,
whose name is Holy;
I *dwell* **tabernacle** in the high and holy *place*,
with him also
that is of a *contrite* **crushed** and *humble* **lowly** spirit,
to *revive* **enliven** the spirit of the *humble* **lowly**,
and to *revive* **enliven** the heart
of the *contrite* **crushed** ones.
16 For I *will* **shall** not contend *for ever* **eternally**,
neither *will* **shall** I be *always* **wroth** **perpetually** **enraged**:
for the spirit should *fail* **before** me **languish** **at** my **face**,
and the *souls* **breaths** which I have *made* **worked**.
17 For the *iniquity* **perversity**
of his *covetousness* **greedy** **gain**
was I *wroth* **enraged**, and smote him:
I hid me, and was *wroth* **enraged**,
and he went on *frowardly* **apostate**
in the way of his heart.
18 I have seen his ways, and *will* **shall** heal him:
I *will* **lead** **shall** **guide** him also,
and *restore* **comforts** **shalom** **solaces** unto him
and to his mourners.
19 I create the fruit of the lips;
Peace **Shalom**, *peace* **shalom** to him that is far off,
and to him that is near, saith *the* **LORD** **Yah** **Veh**;
and I *will* **shall** heal him.
20 But the wicked are like the *troubled* **driven** sea,
when it cannot rest,
whose waters *cast* up *mire* **expel** **filth** and *dirt* **mire**.
21 There is no *peace* **shalom**, saith my *God* **Elohim**,
to the wicked.

58

Cry **aloud** **Call** **out** **with** the **throat**, spare not,
lift up thy voice like a *trumpet* **shophar**,
and *shew* **tell** my people their *transgression* **rebellion**,
and the house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov** their sins.
2 Yet they seek me *daily* **day** **by** **day**,
and delight to know my ways,
as a *nation* **goyim** that *did* *righteousness* **worked** **justness**,
and forsook not the *ordinance* **judgment** of their *God* **Elohim**:
they ask of me the *ordinances* **judgments** of *justice* **justness**;
they take delight in approaching to *God* **Elohim**.
3 Wherefore have we fasted, *say* *they*, and thou seest not?
wherefore have we *afflicted* **humbled** our soul,
and thou takest no knowledge?
Behold, in the day of your fast ye find *pleasure* **delight**,
and exact all your *labours* **contortions**.
4 Behold, ye fast for strife and *debate* **strive**,
and to smite with the fist of wickedness:
ye shall not fast as ye do this day,
to *make* **have** your voice to be heard on high.
5 Is it such a fast that I have chosen?
a day for a *man* **humanity** to *afflict* **humble** his soul?
is it to bow down his head as a bulrush,
and to spread *sackcloth* **saq** and ashes *under* *him*?
Wilt **Shalt** thou call this a fast,
and an *acceptable* **a** **day** **of** **pleasure**
to the **LORD** **Yah** **Veh**?

FASTING

YESHA YAH 57, 58

exeGeses companion BIBLE

11 And of whom are you concerned or awed,
that you lie
and neither remember me nor set it to your heart?
Hushed I not eternally, and you awed me not?
12 I tell your justness and your works;
and they benefit you not.
13 You cry; your throngs rescue you;
and the wind bears them all away;
vanity takes them:
and he who seeks refuge in me inherits the land,
and inherits my holy mountain:
and says, Raise! Raise! Face the way!
Lift the stumblingblock from the way of my people.
14
15 For thus says the high and lifted One
who tabernacles eternally — whose name is Holy;
I tabernacle in the high and holy
and with the crushed and lowly spirit
— to enliven the spirit of the lowly,
and to enliven the heart of the crushed.
16 For I neither contend eternally
nor perpetually rage:
for the spirit languishes at my face,
and the breaths I work.
17 For the perversity of his greedy gain
I rage and smite him:
I hide myself and rage,
and he goes on apostate in the way of his heart.
18 I see his ways and heal him; yes, I guide him;
and shalom solaces to him and to his mourners.
19 I create the fruit of the lips;
shalom, shalom to him who is far off
and to him who is near, says Yah Veh; and I heal him.
20 And the wicked are as the driven sea,
when it cannot rest,
whose waters expel filth and mire.
21 There is no shalom, says my Elohim, to the wicked.

58

FASTING
Call out with the throat! Spare not!
Lift your voice as a shophar
and tell my people their rebellion;
and the house of Yaaqov their sins.
2 Yet they seek me day by day
and delight to know my ways
— as a goyim who works justness
and forsakes not the judgment of their Elohim:
they ask me of the judgments of justness;
they take delight in approaching Elohim.
3 Why fast we
and you see not?
Why humble we our soul
and you take no knowledge?
Behold, in the day of your fast you find delight,
and exact all your contortions.
4 Behold, you fast for strife and strive
and to smite with the fist of wickedness:
you fast not as *this* day,
so that your voice is heard on high.
5 Is this such a fast as I chose?
A day for humanity to humble his soul?
To bow the head as a bulrush
and to spread saq and ashes?
Call you this a fast — a day of pleasure to Yah Veh?

FASTING

ISAIAH 58, 59

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

6 Is not this the fast that I have chosen?
to loose the bands of wickedness,
to undo the *heavy burdens* **bundles of the yoke pole**,
and to *let* **send away** the *oppressed* **crushed**
go free **liberated**,
and that ye *break* **tear** every yoke **pole**?
7 Is it not to *deal* **separate** thy bread
to the *hungry* **famished**,
and that thou bring
the *poor that are cast out* **humble outcasts** to thy house?
when thou seest the naked, that thou cover him;
and that thou *hide* **conceal** not thyself
from thine own flesh?
8 Then shall thy light
break forth **split** as the *morning* **dawn**,
and thine health
shall *spring forth* **speedily** **sprout quickly**:
and thy *righteousness* **justness**
shall *go before thee* **at thy face**;
the *glory* **honour** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall *be thy rereward* **gather thee up**.
9 Then shalt thou call,
and the **LORD Yah Veh** shall answer;
thou shalt cry, and he shall say, *Here I am* **Behold, I**.
If thou *take away* **turn aside** from the midst of thee
the yoke **pole**,
the *putting forth* **spreading** of the finger,
and *speaking vanity* **wording mischief**;
10 And if thou *draw out* **produce** thy soul
to the *hungry* **famished**,
and satisfy the *afflicted* **humbled** soul;
then shall thy light rise in obscurity,
and thy darkness be as the noon day:
11 And the **LORD Yah Veh** shall guide thee continually,
and satisfy thy soul in *drought* **parch**,
and *make fat* **fatten** thy bones:
and thou shalt be like a *watered* **saturated** garden,
and like a spring of water, whose waters fail not.
12 And they that shall be of thee
shall build the *old waste places* **original parched areas**:
thou shalt raise up the foundations
of *many generations* **generation and generation**;
and thou shalt be called,
The *repairer* **waller** of the breach,
The restorer of paths to *dwel* **settle in**.
13 If thou turn away thy foot from the *sabbath* **shabbath**,
from *doing* **working** thy *pleasure* **delight** on my holy day;
and call the *sabbath* **shabbath** a *delight* **luxury**,
the holy of the **LORD Yah Veh**, honourable;
and shalt honour him,
not *doing* **working** thine own ways,
nor finding thine own *pleasure* **delight**,
nor *speaking* **wording** thine own words:
14 Then shalt thou delight thyself in the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and I *will* **shall** cause thee to ride
upon the *high places* **bamahs** of the earth,
and feed thee
with the *heritage* **inheritance** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov** thy father:
for the mouth of the **LORD Yah Veh**
hath *spoken it* **worded**.

SEPARATION FROM YAH VEH

59

Behold,
the **LORD'S Yah Veh's** hand is not shortened,
that it cannot save **from saving**;
neither his ear heavy, *that it cannot hear* **from hearing**:
2 But your *iniquities* **perversities** have separated
between you and **between** your *God* **Elohim**,
and your sins have hid his face from you,
that he *will* **shall** not hear.
3 For your *hands* **palms** are *defiled* **profaned** with blood,
and your fingers with *iniquity* **perversity**;
your lips have *spoken* **lies** **worded falsehoods**,
your tongue hath muttered *perverseness* **wickedness**.
4 None calleth for *justice* **justness**,
nor any pleadeth for *truth* **trustworthiness**:
they *trust* **confide** in *vanity* **waste**,
and *speak* **lies** **word vanity**;
they conceive *mischief* **toil**,
and *bring forth* **iniquity** **birth mischief**.

YESHA YAH 58, 59

exeGeses companion BIBLE

6 Is not the fast I chose thus:
To loose the bands of wickedness?
To undo the bundles of the yoke pole?
And to send the crushed away liberated?
And to tear every yoke pole?
7 Is it not to separate your bread to the famished?
To bring the humble outcasts to your house?
To cover the naked when you see him?
To not conceal yourself from your own flesh?
8 Then your light splits as the dawn
and your health sprouts quickly
and your justness comes at your face:
the honor of Yah Veh gathers you.
9 Then you call and Yah Veh answers;
you cry and he says, Behold — I.
10 If you turn aside the yoke pole from your midst
— the spreading of the finger and wording mischief;
and if you produce your soul to the famished
and satisfy the humbled soul;
then your light rises in obscurity
and your darkness as the noon;
and Yah Veh guides you continually
and satisfies your soul in parch
and fattens your bones:
and you become as a saturated garden
and as a spring of water whose waters fail not.
11 And from you
they build the original parched areas:
and you raise the foundations
of generation and generation;
and they call you,
The waller of the breach!
The restorer of paths to settle!
12 If you turn away your foot from the shabbath
from working your delight on my holy day;
and call the shabbath, a luxury
and the holy of Yah Veh, honorable
and honor him;
neither working your own ways
nor finding your own delight
nor wording your own words,
then you delight yourself in Yah Veh;
and I ride you on the bamahs of the earth
and feed you the inheritance of Yaaqov your father:
for the mouth of Yah Veh has worded.

SEPARATION FROM YAH VEH

59

Behold,
neither is the hand of Yah Veh shortened from saving
nor his ear heavy from hearing:
2 but your perversities separate
between you and between your Elohim;
and your sins hide his face from hearing you.
3 For you profane your palms with blood
and your fingers with perversity;
your lips word falsehoods
your tongue mutters wickedness:
no one calls for justness
and no one pleads for trustworthiness:
they confide in waste and word vanity;
they conceive toil and birth mischief:

ISAIAH 59

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 They hatch cockatrice' **split hisser's** eggs,
and weave the spider's web:
he that eateth of their eggs dieth,
and that which is crushed
breaketh out **splitteth** into a viper **hisser**.

6 Their webs shall not become garments **clothes**,
neither shall they cover themselves with their works:
their works are works of *iniquity* **mischief**,
and the act **deed** of violence is in their *hands* **palms**.

7 Their feet run to evil,
and they make haste **hasten** to shed **pour** innocent blood:
their *thoughts* **fabrications**
are *thoughts* **fabrications** of *iniquity* **mischief**;
wasting **ravage** and destruction **breaking**
are in their *paths* **highways**.

8 The way of *peace* **shalom** they know not;
and there is no judgment in their *goings* **route**:
they have made them *crooked* **perverted** paths:
whosoever *goeth* **treadeth** therein
shall not know *peace* **shalom**.

9 Therefore is judgment far **removed** from us,
neither doth *justice* **justness** overtake us:
we wait for **await** light, but behold obscurity;
for *brightness* **brillancies**, but we walk in darkness.

10 We grope for the wall like the blind,
and we grope as if we had no eyes:
we stumble **falter** at noon *day*
as in the *night* **evening breeze**;
we are in *desolate places* **fertile fields** as dead *men*.

11 We roar all like bears,
and mourn sore in **cooing**, **coo** like doves:
we look for **await** judgment, but there is none;
for salvation, but it is far off **removed** from us.

12 For our *transgressions* **rebellions**
are multiplied before **abound by the myriads in front of** thee,
and our sins testify **answer** against us:
for our *transgressions* **rebellions** are with us;
and as for our *iniquities* **perversities**, we know them;

13 In *transgressing* **rebell**ing and lying
against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and departing away from our *God* **Elohim**,
speaking **wording** oppression and revolt,
conceiving and *uttering* **muttering** from the heart
words of falsehood.

14 And judgment is *turned away* **removed** backward,
and *justice* **justness** standeth afar off:
for truth is *fallen* **faltereth** in the *street* **broadway**,
and *equity* **straightforwardness** cannot enter.

15 Yea, truth *faileth* **lacketh**;
and he that *departeth* **turneth aside** from evil
maketh himself a prey **is spoiled**:
and the *LORD* saw it **Yah Veh seeth**,
and it *displeased him* **be evil in his eyes**
that there was **be** no judgment.

THE REDEEMER

16 And he saw that there was no man,
and *wondered* **astonisheth** that there was no intercessor:
therefore his arm *brought salvation unto* **saved** him;
and his *righteousness* **justness**, it sustained him.

17 For he *put on righteousness* **enrobed justness**
as a *breastplate* **habergeon**,
and an helmet of salvation upon his head;
and he *put on* **enrobed**
the *garment* **clothes of vengeance** **avengement**
for *clothing* **robes**,
and was *clad* **covered** with zeal as a *cloak* **mantle**.

18 According to their *deeds* **dealings**,
accordingly he will *repay* **shall shalam**,
fury to his *adversaries* **tribulators**,
recompence **dealing** to his enemies;
to the islands
he will *repay recompence* **shall shalam**.

19 So shall they fear **awe** the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
from the *west* **dusk**,
and his *glory* **honour** from the rising of the sun.
When the *enemy* **tribulator**
shall come in like a *flood* **river**,
the Spirit of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall *lift up a standard against him* **cause him to flee**.

YESHA YAH 59

exeGesés companion BIBLE

5 they split the eggs of the hisser,
and weave the web of the spider:
he who eats their eggs dies,
and the crushed egg splits into a hisser.

6 Neither their webs become clothes,
nor cover they themselves with their works:
their works are works of mischief
and the deed of violence is in their palms.

7 Their feet run to evil
and they hasten to pour innocent blood:
their fabrications are fabrications of mischief;
ravage and breaking are in their highways:

8 the way of shalom they know not
and there is no judgment in their route:
they make them perverted paths;
whoever treads therein knows not shalom.

9 So judgment removes far from us
and justness overtakes us not:
we await light; and behold, obscurity:
for brillancies; and we walk in darkness:

10 we grope for the wall as the blind;
and we grope as if we have no eyes:
we falter at noon as in the evening breeze;
in fertile fields as the dead:

11 we roar as bears — we all;
and in cooing, coo as doves:
we await judgment, and there is none;
for salvation, and it removes far from us.

12 For our rebellions
abound by the myriads in front of you;
and our sins answer against us:
for our rebellions are with us;
and as for our perversities, we know them.

13 In rebelling and lying against Yah Veh;
and departing from our Elohim:
wording oppression and revolt;
conceiving and muttering from the heart
words of falsehood:

14 and judgment removes backward
and justness stands afar off:
for truth falters in the roadway
and straightforwardness cannot enter.

15 Yes, truth lacks;
and he who turns aside from evil, spoils:
and Yah Veh sees,
and it is evil in his eyes that there is no judgment.

THE REDEEMER

16 And he sees that there is no man
and astonishes that there is no intercessor:
and his own arm saves him;
and his justness sustains him:
and he enrobes justness as a habergeon
and an helmet of salvation on his head;
and for robes, he enrobes the clothes of avengement
and covers with zeal as a mantle.

18 According to their dealings,
thus he shalams fury to his tribulators,
dealing to his enemies;
he shalams to the islands.

19 Thus they awe the name of Yah Veh from the dusk
and his honor from the rising of the sun.
When the tribulator comes in as a river
the Spirit of Yah Veh has him to flee.

ISAIAH 59, 60

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

20 And the Redeemer shall come to Zion **Siyon**,
and unto them that turn
from *transgression* **rebellion** in Jacob **Yaaqov**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
21 As for me,
this is my covenant with them, saith the LORD **Yah Veh**;
My spirit that is upon thee,
and my words which I have *put set* in thy mouth,
shall not depart out of thy mouth,
nor out of the mouth of thy seed,
nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed,
saith the LORD **Yah Veh**,
from henceforth and for ever **eternally**.

THE HONOUR OF SIYON

60

Arise, *shine* **enlighten**; for thy light is come,
and the *glory* **honour** of the LORD **Yah Veh**
is risen upon thee.
2 For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth,
and *gross* **dripping** darkness the *people* **nation**:
but the LORD **Yah Veh** shall arise upon thee,
and his *glory* **honour** shall be seen upon thee.
3 And the *Gentiles* **goyim** shall come to thy light,
and *kings* **sovereigns**
to the *brightness* **brilliance** of thy rising.
4 Lift up thine eyes round about, and see:
all they gather *themselves together*, they come to thee:
thy sons shall come from far,
and thy daughters shall *be nursed* **nurture** at thy side.
5 Then thou shalt see **awe**, and flow together,
and thine heart shall fear, and *be enlarged* **enlarge**;
because the abundance of the sea
shall *be converted* **turn** unto thee,
the *forces* **valued** of the *Gentiles* **goyim**
shall come unto thee.
6 The *multitude* **throng**s of camels shall cover thee,
the dromedaries of *Midian* **Midyan** and Ephah;
all they from Sheba shall come:
they shall *bring* **bear** gold and incense;
and they shall *shew forth* **evangelize**
the *praises* **halals** of the LORD **Yah Veh**.
7 All the flocks of *Kedar* **Qedar**
shall *be gathered* **gather** together unto thee,
the rams of *Nebaioth* **Nebayoth** shall minister unto thee:
they shall *come up* **ascend** with *acceptance* **pleasure**
on *mine* **my** *sacrifice* altar,
and I *will glorify* **shall adorn** the house
of my *glory* **adornment**.
8 Who are these that fly as a cloud,
and as the doves to their windows?
9 Surely the *isles* **islands** shall wait for **await** me,
and the ships of Tarshish first, to bring thy sons from far,
their silver and their gold with them,
unto the name of the LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
and to the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
because he hath *glorified* **adorned** thee.
10 And the sons of strangers shall build up thy walls,
and their *kings* **sovereigns** shall minister unto thee:
for in my *wrath* **rage** I smote thee,
but in my *favour* **pleasure** have I had *mercy on* **I mercied** thee.
11 Therefore thy *gates* **portals** shall be open continually;
they shall not be shut day nor night;
that men may bring unto thee
the *forces* of the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
and that their *kings* **sovereigns** may be *brought* **driven**.
12 For the *nation* **goyim** and *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
that *will* **shall** not serve thee shall *perish* **destruct**;
yea, those *nations* **goyim** shall be utterly *wasted* **parched**.
13 The *glory* **honour** of Lebanon shall come unto thee,
the fir tree, the *pine* **oak** tree, and the *box* **cedar** together,
to *beautify* **adorn** the place of my *sanctuary* **holies**;
and I *will make* **shall honour**
the place of my feet *glorious*.
14 The sons also of them that *afflicted* **humbled** thee
shall come *bending* **prostrating** unto thee;
and all they that *despised* **scorned** thee
shall *bow themselves down* **prostrate**
at the soles of thy feet;
and they shall call thee, The city of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
The *Zion* **Siyon** of the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

YESHA YAH 59, 60

exeGeses companion BIBLE

20 And the Redeemer comes to Siyon,
and to them who turn from rebellion in Yaaqov
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
21 As for me,
this is my covenant with them, says Yah Veh;
My spirit which *is* on you,
and my words which I set in your mouth,
depart, neither from your mouth
nor from the mouth of your seed,
nor from the mouth of the seed of your seed,
says Yah Veh,
from henceforth and eternally.

THE HONOR OF SIYON

60

Rise! Enlighten! For your light comes
and the honor of Yah Veh rises on you:
for behold, the darkness covers the earth
and dripping darkness the nation:
and Yah Veh rises on you
and his honor is seen on you.
3 And the goyim come to your light
and sovereigns to the brilliance of your rising.
4 Lift your eyes all round, and see:
they all gather; they come to you:
your sons come from afar
and your daughters nurture at your side.
5 Then you awe and flow together;
and your heart fears and enlarges:
because the abundance of the sea turns to you;
the valued of the goyim come to you:
the throngs of camels cover you
— the dromedaries of Midyan and Ephah;
all they of Sheba come:
they bear gold and incense
and they evangelize the halals of Yah Veh:
all the flocks of Qedar gather to you;
the rams of Nebayoth minister to you:
they ascend with pleasure on my sacrifice altar
and I adorn the house of my adornment.
8 Who are these, flying as a cloud
and as the doves to their windows?
9 Surely the islands await me;
and the ships of Tarshish first
to bring your sons from afar
— their silver and their gold with them
to the name of Yah Veh your Elohim,
and to the Holy One of Yisra El,
because he adorns you.
10 And the sons of strangers build your walls
and their sovereigns minister to you:
for in my rage I smote you
and in my pleasure I mercied you:
and your portals open continually
— shut neither day nor night;
to bring you the forces of the goyim,
even their sovereigns are driven.
12 For the goyim and sovereigndom
who serve you not, destruct;
yes, those goyim are utterly parched.
13 The honor of Lebanon comes to you
— the fir tree, the oak tree, and the cedar together
to adorn the place of my holies;
and I honor the place of my feet.
14 And the sons of them who humbled you
come prostrating to you;
and all they who scorn you
prostrate at the soles of your feet;
and they call you, The city of Yah Veh
— The Siyon of the Holy One of Yisra El.

ISAIAH 60, 61

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 Whereas **Instead** thou hast been forsaken and hated,
so that no man *went* **passed** through *thee*,
I will make **shall set** thee an eternal excellency **pomp**,
a joy of *many generations* **generation and generation**.
16 Thou shalt also suck the milk of the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
and shalt suck the breast of *kings* **sovereigns**:
and thou shalt know that I *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
am thy Saviour and thy Redeemer,
the *mighty* **Almighty** One of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.
17 For *brass* **copper** I will **shall** bring gold,
and for *iron* I will **shall** bring silver,
and for *wood* **brass timber copper**, and for *stones* **iron**:
I will **shall** also make **set** thy *officers* **overseers**
peace **shalom**,
and thine exactors
righteousness **justness**.
18 Violence shall no more be heard
in thy land,
wasting **ravage** nor *destruction* **breaking**
within thy borders;
but thou shalt call thy walls *Salvation*,
and thy *gates* **Praise portals Halal**.
19 The sun shall be no more thy light by day;
neither for *brightness* **brilliance**
shall the moon *give light unto* **lighten** thee:
but *the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall be unto thee
an *everlasting* **eternal** light,
and thy *God* **Elohim** thy *glory* **adornment**.
20 Thy sun shall no more go down;
neither shall thy moon *withdraw itself* **be gathered**:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall be thine *everlasting* **eternal** light,
and the days of thy mourning
shall *be ended* **shalam**.
21 Thy people also shall be all *righteous* **just**:
they shall *inherit* **be successor** of the land
for *ever* **eternally**,
the branch of my planting, the work of my hands,
that I may be *glorified* **adorned**.
22 A little *one* shall become a thousand,
and a *small one* a *strong nation* **little a mighty goyim**:
I *the LORD* will **Yah Veh** shall hasten it in his time.

A MESSIANIC PROPHECY

61 The Spirit of the *Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**
is upon me;
because *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath anointed me
to *preach good tidings* **evangelize** unto the *meek* **humble**;
he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted,
to *proclaim* **call out** liberty to the captives,
and *the opening of the prison to them that are bound*
in opening, an opening to the bound;
2 To *proclaim* **call out**
the *acceptable* year of **pleasure** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and the day of *vengeance* **avengement**
of our *God* **Elohim**;
to *comfort* **sigh over** all that mourn;
3 To *appoint* **set** unto them that mourn in *Zion* **Siyon**,
to give unto them *beauty* **adornment** for ashes,
the oil of *joy* **rejoicing** for mourning,
the garment **mantle** of *praise* **halal**
for the spirit of heaviness;
that they might be called
trees **mighty oaks** of *righteousness* **justness**,
the planting of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that he might *be glorified* **to be adorned**.
4 And they shall build
the *old wastes* **original parched areas**,
they shall raise up
the former *desolations* **desolated areas**,
and they shall *repair* **renovate** the waste **parched** cities,
the *desolations* **desolated areas**
of *many generations* **generation and generation**.
5 And strangers shall stand and *feed* **tend** your flocks,
and the sons of the *alien* **stranger**
shall be your *plowmen* **cultivators** and your vinedressers.
6 But ye shall be *named* **called**
the Priests of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
men shall call it **shall be said** of you,
the Ministers of our *God* **Elohim**:

YESHA YAH 60, 61

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 Instead of being forsaken and hated
so that no man passes through,
I set you an eternal pomp
— a joy of generation and generation:
and you suck the milk of the goyim
and suck the breast of sovereigns:
and you know I — Yah Veh
— your Saviour and your Redeemer
— the Almighty One of Yaaqov.
17 For copper, I bring gold; and for iron, I bring silver;
and for timber, copper; and for stones, iron:
and I set your overseers, shalom;
and your exactors, justness.
18 Violence is heard no more in your land
or ravage or breaking within your borders;
and you call your walls, Salvation,
and your portals, Halal.
19 Neither becomes the sun any more
your light by day;
nor for brilliance, the moon lighten you:
and Yah Veh becomes your eternal light
and your Elohim your adornment.
20 Neither your sun goes down any more;
nor is your moon gathered:
for Yah Veh becomes your eternal light;
and the days of your mourning shalom;
and all your people just
— successors of the land eternally
— the branch of my planting; the work of my hands;
to be adorned.
22 A little becomes a thousand
and a little a mighty goyim:
I Yah Veh hasten it in his time.

A MESSIANIC PROPHECY

61 The Spirit of Adonay Yah Veh is on me;
because Yah Veh anointed me
to evangelize to the humble:
he sent me to bind the brokenhearted;
to call out liberty to the captives;
and in opening, an opening to the bound:
to call out the year of pleasure of Yah Veh
and the day of avengement of our Elohim:
to sigh over all who mourn;
3 to set to them who mourn in Siyon;
to give to them adornment for ashes;
the oil of rejoicing for mourning;
the mantle of halal for the spirit of heaviness;
and he calls them, Mighty Oaks of Justness
— the planting of Yah Veh to adorn.
4 And they build the original parched areas;
they raise the former desolated areas;
and they renovate the parched cities
— the desolated areas of generation and generation.
5 And strangers stand and tend your flocks,
and the sons of the stranger
are your cultivators and your vinedressers:
and you are called, Priests of Yah Veh:
of you is said, The Ministers of Our Elohim:

ISAIAH 61, 62

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

ye shall eat **consume**
the *riches* **valuables** of the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
and in **exchange** their *glory* shall ye *boast yourselves* **honour**.
7 For your shame ye shall have double;
and for *confusion* **shame**
they shall *rejoice* **shout** in their *portion* **allotment**:
therefore in their land they shall possess the double:
8 *everlasting joy* **eternal cheerfulness** shall be unto them.
For I the **LORD Yah Veh** love judgment,
I hate *robbery* **stripping** for *burnt offering* **holocaust**;
and I will *direct* shall **give** their *work* **deeds** in truth,
and I will *make* shall **cut** an *everlasting* **eternal** covenant
9 with them.
And their seed
shall be known among the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
and their offspring among the people:
all that see them shall acknowledge them,
that they *are* the seed which the **LORD Yah Veh** hath blessed.
10 **In rejoicing**,
I will shall *greatly* rejoice in the **LORD Yah Veh**,
my soul shall be *joyful* **twirl** in my **God Elohim**;
for he hath *clothed* **enrobed** me
with the *garment* **clothes** of salvation,
he hath *covered* **clothed** me
with the *robe* **mantle** of *righteousness* **justness**,
as a bridegroom decketh *himself*
as a priest with ornaments,
and as a bride adorneth *herself*
with *her jewels* **instruments**.
11 For as the earth bringeth forth her *bud* **sprout**,
and as the garden
causeth the things that are sown in it to spring forth
sprouteth the seedling;
so the *Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**
will cause *righteousness* and *praise* to spring forth
shall **sprout justness and halal**
before **in front of** all the *nations* **goyim**.

THE NEW HOME OF SIYON

62

For *Zion's* **Siyon's** sake
will shall I not *hold my peace* **hush**,
and for *Jerusalem's* **Yeru Shalem's** sake
I will shall not rest,
until the *righteousness* **justness** thereof
go forth as *brightness* **brilliance**,
and the salvation thereof
as a *lamp* **flambeau** that burneth.
2 And the *Gentiles* **goyim**
shall see thy *righteousness* **justness**,
and all *kings* **sovereigns** thy *glory* **honour**:
and thou shalt be called by a new name,
which the mouth of the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall *name* **appoint**.
3 Thou shalt also be a crown of *glory* **adornment**
in the *hand* **palm** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and a royal *diadem* **turban**
in the hand of thy **God Elohim**.
4 *Thou shalt no more be termed*
Neither shall it be said of you,
Forsaken;
neither shall **it be said of** thy land *any more be termed*,
Desolate:
but thou shalt be called *Hephzibah* **Hepshi Bah**,
and thy land *Beulah* **Beulah/Married**:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** delighteth in thee,
and thy land shall be *married* **Beulah/Married**.
5 For as a *young man* **youth** marrieth a virgin,
so shall thy sons marry thee:
and as the bridegroom *rejoiceth* **joyeth** over the bride,
so shall thy **God Elohim** rejoice over thee.
6 I have set *watchmen* **guards to oversee** upon thy walls,
O *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
which shall *never hold their peace* **not hush continually**
day nor night:
ye that *make mention of the* **LORD remember Yah Veh**,
keep not *silence* **quiet**,
7 And give him no *rest* **quiet**, till he establish,
and till he *make* **Jerusalem set Yeru Shalem**
a *praise* **halal** in the earth.

YESHA YAH 61, 62

exeGesés companion BIBLE

you consume the valuables of the goyim
and exchange their honor:
7 Instead of your shame, double;
and shame they shout in their allotment:
so in their land they possess the double
— eternal cheerfulness *is* theirs.
8 For I Yah Veh love judgment;
I hate stripping for holocaust:
and I give their deeds in truth
and I cut an eternal covenant with them:
9 and their seed is known among the goyim
and their offspring among the people:
all who see them acknowledge them,
that they *are* the seed Yah Veh blesses.
10 In rejoicing, I rejoice in Yah Veh;
my soul twirls in my Elohim:
for he enrobes me with the clothes of salvation,
he clothes me with the mantle of justness
— as a bridegroom decks
— as a priest with ornaments
— as a bride adorns with instruments.
11 For as the earth brings forth her sprout
and as the garden sprouts the seedling:
thus Adonay Yah Veh sprouts justness
and halals in front of all the goyim.

THE NEW HOME OF SIYON

62

For sake of Siyon, I hush not;
and for sake of Yeru Shalem, I rest not;
until the justness goes forth as brilliance
and the salvation thereof as a flambeau that burns:
2 and the goyim see your justness
and all sovereigns your honor;
and call you by a new name
which the mouth of Yah Veh appoints:
and you become a crown of adornment
in the palm of Yah Veh,
and a royal turban
in the hand of your Elohim.
3 Neither is it said of you, Forsaken;
nor is it said of your land, Desolate:
4 but you are called Hepshi Bah/My Delight,
and your land Beulah/Married:
for Yah Veh delights in you,
and your land is married.
5 For as a youth marries a virgin,
thus your sons marry you:
and as the bridegroom joys over the bride,
thus your Elohim rejoices over you.
6 I guard to oversee on your walls, O Yeru Shalem,
which hush not continually day and night:
you who remember Yah Veh, quiet not;
7 and give him no quiet until he establishes
and until he sets Yeru Shalem a halal in the earth.

ISAIAH 62, 63

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

8 The **LORD Yah Veh** hath *sworn oathed*
by his right *hand*, and by the arm of his strength,
Surely I will shall no more give thy **corn crop**
to be *meat food* for thine enemies;
and the sons of the stranger
shall not drink thy *wine juice*,
for the which thou hast laboured:
9 But they that have gathered it shall eat it,
and *praise the LORD halal Yah Veh*;
and they that have *brought it together gathered*
shall drink it in the courts of my *holiness holies*.
10 Go **Pass** through, go **pass** through the **gates portals**;
prepare face ye the way of the people;
cast raise up, *cast raise* up the highway;
gather out stone the stones;
lift up a *standard an ensign* for the people.
11 Behold, the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *proclaimed they hear*
unto the end of the world,
Say ye to the daughter of *Zion Siyon*,
Behold, thy salvation cometh;
behold, his *reward hire* is with him,
and his *work before him deeds at his face*.
12 And they shall call them,
The holy people, The redeemed of the **LORD Yah Veh**:
and thou shalt be called,
Sought out, A city not forsaken.

THE DAY OF YAH VEH

63

Who is this that cometh from Edom,
with *dyed garment dazzling clothes* from Bozrah?
this that is *glorious esteemed* in his *apparel robe*,
travelling strolling in the greatness of his *strength force*?
I that speak in *righteousness justness*,
mighty great to save.
2 Wherefore art thou red in *thine apparel thy robe*,
and thy *garment clothes*
like him that treadeth in the winefat?
3 I have trodden the *winepress press* alone;
and of the people there was *none no man* with me:
for I *will shall* tread them in *mine anger my wrath*,
and trample them in my fury;
and their *blood squeezings*
shall be sprinkled upon my *garment clothes*,
and I *will stain shall profane* all my *raiment robe*.
4 For the day of *vengeance avengement* is in mine heart,
and the year of my redeemed is come.
5 And I looked, and there was none to help;
and I *wondered astonished* that there was none to uphold:
therefore mine own arm
brought salvation unto hath saved me;
and my fury, it upheld me.
6 And I *will tread down shall trample* the people
in mine anger,
and *make intoxicate* them *drunk*
in my fury,
and I *will shall* bring down their *strength squeezings*
to the earth.
7 I *will mention shall remember*
the *lovingkindnesses mercies* of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and the *praises halals* of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
according to all
that the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *bestowed on dealt* us,
and the great goodness
toward the house of *Israel Yisra El*,
which he hath *bestowed dealt* on them
according to his mercies,
and according to the *multitude abundance*
of his *lovingkindnesses mercies*.
8 For he said, Surely they are my people,
children sons that *will shall* not *lie falsify*:
so he was their Saviour.
9 In all their *affliction tribulation*
he was *afflicted tribulated*,
and the angel of his *presence face* saved them:
in his love and in his *pity compassion*
he redeemed them; and he bare them,
and *carried bore* them all the days of *old antiquity*.
10 But they rebelled, and *vexed contorted* his holy Spirit:
therefore he was turned to be their enemy,
and he fought against them.

YESHA YAH 62, 63

exeGeses companion BIBLE

8 Yah Veh oaths by his right
and by the arm of his strength,
I neither give your crop any more
to be food for your enemies;
nor the sons of the stranger
to drink your juice for which you labored:
9 for they who gather, eat and halal Yah Veh;
and they who gather, drink in the courts of my holies.
10 Pass through! Pass through the portals!
Face the way of the people!
Raise! Raise the highway! Stone the stones!
Lift an ensign for the people!
11 Behold, Yah Veh hearkens to the end of the world,
You, say to the daughter of Siyon,
Behold, your salvation comes!
Behold, his hire is with him
and his deeds at his face!
12 And they call them,
Holy People, Redeemed of Yah Veh:
and call you,
Sought Out, A City Not Forsaken.

THE DAY OF YAH VEH

63

Who is this coming from Edom
— with dazzling clothes from Bozrah?
This who is esteemed in his robe
strolling in the greatness of his force?
I speaking in justness, great to save.
2 Why are you red in your robe
and your clothes as treading in the winefat?
3 I tread the press by myself;
and of the people, no man is with me:
and I tread them in my wrath
and trample them in my fury:
and I sprinkle their squeezings on my clothes
and profane all my robe.
4 For the day of avengement *is* in my heart,
and the year of my redeemed is come.
5 And I look, and there is no one to help;
and I astonish that there is no one to uphold:
and my own arm saves me;
and my fury upholds me:
6 and I trample the people in my anger
and intoxicate them in my fury
and I bring down their squeezings to the earth.
7 I remember the mercies of Yah Veh,
the halals of Yah Veh,
according to all Yah Veh dealt us,
and the great goodness toward the house of Yisra El
which he dealt on them according to his mercies
and according to the abundance of his mercies.
8 And he says,
Surely they *are* my people; sons who falsify not:
he is their Saviour.
9 In all their tribulation, *he* tribulates not;
and the angel of his face saves them:
in his love and in his compassion
he redeemed them and he bore them
— bore them all the days of antiquity.
10 And they rebelled and contorted his holy Spirit:
and he turned to be their enemy
— he fought against them:

ISAIAH 63, 64

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

11 Then he remembered the days of *old antiquity*,
Moses **Mosheh**, and his people, *saying*,
Where is he that *brought ascended* them up out of the sea
with the *shepherd tender* of his flock?
where is he that *put set* his holy Spirit within him?
12 That *led carried* them
by the right *hand* of Moses **Mosheh**
with his *glorious* arm of **adorment**,
dividing splitting the water *before them* at **their face**,
to *make work* himself an *everlasting eternal* name?
13 That *led carried* them through the *deep abyss*,
as an horse in the wilderness,
that they should not *stumble falter*?
14 As a *beast an animal*
goeth down descendeth into the valley,
the Spirit of the **LORD Yah Veh**
caused him to rest rested him:
so didst thou *lead drive* thy people,
to *make work* thyself
a *glorious name name of adornment*.
15 Look down from *heaven the heavens*,
and *behold see*
from the *habitation residence* of thy holiness
and of thy *glory adornment*:
where is thy *zeal* and thy *strength might*,
the *sounding roar*
of thy *bowels inwards* and of thy mercies toward me?
are they restrained?
16 *Doubtless Assuredly* thou art our father,
though Abraham *be ignorant of knew us not*,
and *Israel acknowledge Yisra El acknowledged* us not:
thou, O **LORD Yah Veh**, art our father, our redeemer;
thy name is from *everlasting eternity*.
17 O **LORD Yah Veh**,
why hast thou made us to *err stray* from thy ways,
and *hardened* our heart from thy *fear awe*?
Return for thy servants' sake,
the *tribes scions* of thine inheritance.
18 The people of thy holiness
have possessed it but a little while:
our *adversaries tribulators*
have *trod den down trampled* thy *sanctuary holies*.
19 We are thine:
thou *never barest rule hast not eternally reigned* over them;
they were not called by thy name.

A PRAYER FOR MERCY

64

Oh that thou
wouldest rend shouldst rip the heavens,
that thou *wouldest come down shouldst descend*,
that the mountains might *flow down quake*
at thy *presence face*,
2 As *when the melting brush* fire *burneth kindleth*,
the fire causeth the waters to boil,
to make thy name known to thine *adversaries tribulators*,
that the nations goyim may *tremble quiver*
at thy *presence face*!
3 When thou *didst terrible things worked awesomenesses*
which we *looked awaited* not for,
thou *camest down descendest*,
the mountains *flowed down quaked* at thy *presence face*.
4 For since *the beginning of the world eternity*
men have not neither was it heard,
nor perceived by the ear,
neither hath the eye seen, O **God Elohim**, beside thee,
what he hath *prepared worked* for him
that waiteth for him.

1 Corinthians 2:9, 10

5 Thou meetest him
that rejoiceth and worketh *righteousness justness*,
those that remember thee in thy ways:
behold, thou art *wroth enraged*; for we have sinned:
in those is *continuance eternity*, and we shall be saved.
6 But we are all as *an unclean thing foul*,
and all our *righteousnesses justnesses*
are as *filthy rags menstrual clothes*;
and we all *do fade wither* as a leaf;
and our *iniquities perversities*, like the wind,
have *taken borne* us away.
7 And there is none that calleth upon thy name,

YESHA YAH 63, 64

exeGesés companion BIBLE

11 and he remembered the days of antiquity
— Mosheh — his people.
Where *is* he who ascended them from the sea
with the tender of his flock?
Where is he who set his holy Spirit within him?
12 Who carried them by the right of Mosheh
with his arm of adornment
— splitting the water at their face
to work himself an eternal name?
13 Who carried them through the abyss
as a horse in the wilderness
that they not falter?
14 As an animal descends into the valley,
the Spirit of Yah Veh rests him:
thus you drive your people,
to work yourself a name of adornment.
15 Look down from the heavens,
and see from the residence of your holiness
and of your adornment.
Where is your zeal and your might?
— the roar of your inwards
and of your mercies toward me?
Are they restrained?
16 Assuredly you are our father;
though Abraham knew us not
and Yisra El acknowledged us not:
you, O Yah Veh, are our father, our redeemer;
your name *is* from eternity.
17 O Yah Veh,
why stray us from your ways?
Harden our heart from your awe?
For sake of your servant,
return the scions of your inheritance.
18 The people of your holiness
possessed but a little while:
our tribulators trampled your holies.
19 We are yours:
you neither reigned over them eternally;
nor were they called by your name.

A PRAYER FOR MERCY

64

Oh that you rip the heavens;
that you descend;
that the mountains quake at your face
— as the brush fire kindles
— as the fire boils the waters;
to make your name known to your tribulators
to quiver the goyim at your face!
3 When you worked awesomenesses
which we awaited not,
you descended:
the mountains quaked at your face.
4 Even since eternity
it was neither heard, nor perceived by the ear,
nor seen by the eye, O Elohim, beside you,
what he worked for him who awaits him.
1 Corinthians 2:9,10
5 You meet him who rejoices and works justness
— who remembers you in your ways:
behold, you enrage when we sin:
in them is eternity and we are saved.

6 And we are all as foul — all of us
and all our justnesses as menstrual clothes:
and we wither as a leaf — all of us
and our perversities, as the wind, bear us away:
and no one calls on your name

ISAIAH 64, 65

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

that *stirreth up waketh* himself to take hold of thee:
for thou hast hid thy face from us,
and hast *consumed melted* us,
because **by the hand** of our *iniquities perversities*.
8 But now, O **LORD Yah Veh**, thou art our father;
we are the *clay mortar*, and thou our *potter Former*;
and we all are the work of thy hand.
9 Be not *wroth very sore mightily enraged*,
O **LORD Yah Veh**,
neither remember *iniquity for ever perversity eternally*:
behold, see **look**, we beseech thee, we are all thy people.
10 Thy holy cities are a wilderness,
Zion Siyon is a wilderness,
Jerusalem Yeru Shalem a desolation.
11 Our *holy and our beautiful house*
holies of adornment,
where our fathers *praised haled* thee,
is burned up with fire:
and all our *pleasant things desirables*
are *laid waste parched*.
12 **Wilt Shalt** thou refrain thyself for these things,
O **LORD Yah Veh**?
wilt **shalt** thou *hold thy peace hush*,
and **afflict humble** us *very sore mightily*?

65

I am sought of them that asked not *for me*;
I am found of them that sought me not:
I said, Behold me, behold me,
2 unto a *nation goyim* that was not called by my name.
I have spread out my hands all the day
into a *rebellious revolting* people,
which walketh in a way that was not good,
after their own *thoughts fabrications*;
3 A people that *provoke vex* me to *anger*
continually to my face;
that sacrificeth in gardens,
and *burneth* incense upon altars of brick;
4 Which *remain settle* among the *graves tombs*,
and *lodge stay overnight* in the *monuments guards*,
which eat swine's flesh,
and *broth soup* of *abominable things stench*
is in their *vessels instruments*;
5 Which say, *Stand by thyself Approach*,
come not near to me;
for I am holier than thou lest I hallow thee.
These are a smoke in my *nose nostrils*,
a fire that burneth all the day.
6 Behold, it is *written before me inscribed at my face*:
I *will shall* not *keep silence hush*,
but *will recompense shall shalam*,
even *recompense shalam* into their bosom,
7 Your *iniquities perversities*,
and the *iniquities perversities* of your fathers together,
saith *the LORD Yah Veh*,
which have *burned incense incensed*
upon the mountains,
and *blasphemed reproached* me upon the hills:
therefore *will shall* I measure their former *work deeds*
into their bosom.

PRESERVATION

8 Thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*,
As the *new wine juice* is found in the cluster,
and one saith, *Destroy Ruin* it not; for a blessing is in it:
so *will shall* I *do work* for my servants' sakes,
that I may not *destroy ruin* them all.
9 And I *will shall* bring forth a seed out of *Jacob Yaaqov*,
and out of *Judah Yah Hudah*
an *inheritor a possessor* of my mountains:
and *mine elect my chosen* shall *inherit it be successor*,
and my servants shall *dwell tabernacle* there.
10 And Sharon shall be a *fold habitation of rest* of flocks,
and *the valley of Achor Gaymek Achor*
a place for the herds to *lie down in repose*,
for my people that have sought me.
11 But ye are they that forsake *the LORD Yah Veh*,
that forget my holy mountain,
that *prepare line up* a table for *that troop Gad*,
and that *furnish the drink offering fulfill the cocktails*
unto *that number Fate*.

YESHA YAH 64, 65

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— wakens himself to take hold of you:
for you hide your face from us,
and melt us by the hand of our perversities.
8 And now, O Yah Veh, you are our father;
we are the mortar, and you our Former;
and we all are the work of your hand.
9 Neither enrage not mightily, O Yah Veh,
nor remember our perversity eternally:
behold, look, we beseech you,
— your people — all of us.
10 Your holy cities are a wilderness:
Siyon is a wilderness; Yeru Shalem a desolation:
11 our holies of adornment
where our fathers haled you,
are burned with fire:
and all our desirables are parched.
12 Refrain you yourself for these, O Yah Veh?
You hush, and humble us mightily.

65

I am sought by them who ask not;
I am found of them who seek me not:
I say, Behold me! Behold me!
to a goyim not called by my name.
2 I spread my hands all the day
to a revolting people
who walk in a way not good
— after their own fabrications;
3 a people who vex me continually to my face;
who sacrifice in gardens
and incense on altars of brick;
4 who settle among the tombs
and stay overnight in the guards
— who eat flesh of swine;
and soup of stench is in their instruments;
5 who say, Approach!
— but come not near me; lest I hallow you.
These are a smoke in my nostrils,
a fire that burns all the day.
6 Behold, it is inscribed at my face:
I hush not, but shalam;
and into their bosom,
7 I shalam your perversities,
and the perversities of your fathers together,
says Yah Veh,
who incensed on the mountains
and reproached me on the hills:
and I measure their former deeds
into their bosom.

JUDGMENT

PRESERVATION

8 Thus says Yah Veh,
As the juice is found in the cluster,
and one says, Ruin not; for a blessing is therein:
thus I work for sake of my servants,
that I not ruin them all:
9 and I bring forth a seed from Yaaqov
and from Yah Hudah a possessor of my mountains:
and my chosen are the successors
and my servants tabernacle there:
10 and Sharon becomes a habitation of rest of flocks,
and Gaymek Achor, a place for the herds to repose,
for my people who seek me.
11 And you are they who forsake Yah Veh
who forget my holy mountain;
who line up a table for Gad;
and who fulfill the cocktails to Fate:

ISAIAH 65, 66

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 Therefore will **shall** I number you to the sword,
and ye shall all *bow down* **kneel** to the slaughter:
because when I called, ye *did not answer* **answered not**;
when I *spake* **worded**, ye *did not hear* **heard not**;
but *did* **worked** evil *before* **in front of** mine eyes,
and *did choose* **chose** that wherein I delighted not.

13 Therefore thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**,
Behold, my servants shall eat,
but ye shall *be hungry* **famish**:
behold, my servants shall drink,
but ye shall *be thirsty* **thirst**:
behold, my servants shall *rejoice* **cheer**,
but ye shall *be ashamed* **shame**:

14 Behold,
my servants shall *sing* **shout** for *joy* **goodness** of heart,
but ye shall cry for *sorrow* **pain** of heart,
and shall howl for *vexation* **breaking** of spirit.

15 And ye shall leave your name
for a *curse* **an oath** unto my chosen:
for *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**
shall *slay* **deathify** thee,
and call his servants by another name:

16 That he who blesseth himself in the earth
shall bless himself in the *God* **Elohim** of *truth* **amen**;
and he that *sweareth* **oatheth** in the earth
shall *swear* **oath** by the *God* **Elohim** of *truth* **amen**;
because the former *troubles* **tribulations** are forgotten,
and because they are hid from mine eyes.

NEW HEAVENS, NEW EARTH

17 For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth:
and the former shall not be remembered,
nor *come* **ascend** into *mind* **heart**.

18 But *be ye glad* **rejoice** and *rejoice* **twirl**
for ever **eternally**
in that which I create:
for, behold,
I create *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** a *rejoicing* **twirling**,
and her people a joy.

19 And I *will rejoice* **shall twirl** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and *joy* **rejoice** in my people:
and the voice of weeping shall be no more heard in her,
nor the voice of crying.

20 There shall be no more thence
an *infant* **a suckling** of days,
nor an *old man* **elder** that hath not filled his days:
for the *child* **lad** shall die **a son of** an hundred years *old*;
but the sinner *being* **a son of** an hundred years *old*
shall be *accursed* **abased**.

21 And they shall build houses, and *inhabit* **settle** them;
and they shall plant vineyards, and eat the fruit of them.

22 They shall not build, and another *inhabit* **settle**;
they shall not plant, and another eat:
for as the days of a tree are the days of my people,
and *mine elect* **my chosen**
shall *long enjoy* **waste away** the work of their hands.

23 They shall not labour in vain,
nor *bring forth* **birth** for *trouble* **terror**;
for they are the seed
of the blessed of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and their offspring with them.

24 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
that before they call, I *will* **shall** answer;
and while they are yet speaking, I *will* **shall** hear.

25 The wolf and the lamb
shall *feed together* **graze as one**,
and the lion shall eat straw like the bullock:
and dust shall be the serpent's *meat* **bread**.
They shall not *hurt* **vilify** nor *destroy* **ruin**
in all my holy mountain, saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

THE THRONE OF YAH VEH

66

Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
The *heaven is* **heavens are** my throne,
and the earth is *my footstool* **the stool of my feet**:
where is the house that ye build unto me?
and where is the place of my rest?

2 For all those *things* hath mine hand *made* **worked**,
and all those *things* have been,
saith *the LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**:
but to this man *will* **shall** I look,

YESHA YAH 65, 66

exeGesés companion BIBLE

12 and I number you to the sword
and you all kneel to the slaughter:
because when I called, you answered not;
when I worded, you heard not;
but worked evil in front of my eyes
and chose that wherein I delighted not.

13 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh,
Behold, my servants eat, and you famish:
behold, my servants drink, and you thirst:
behold, my servants cheer, and you shame:

14 behold, my servants shout for goodness of heart,
and you cry for pain of heart
and howl for breaking of spirit:
and you leave your name
for an oath to my chosen:
for Adonay Yah Veh deathifies you
and calls his servants by another name:

16 that he who blesses himself in the earth
blesses himself in the Elohim of amen;
and he who oaths in the earth
oaths by the Elohim of amen;
because the former tribulations are forgotten
and because they are hid from my eyes.

NEW HEAVENS, NEW EARTH

17 For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth:
and the former are neither remembered
nor ascend into the heart.

18 But rejoice and twirl eternally in what I create:
for behold, I create Yeru Shalem a twirling,
and her people a joy:
and I twirl in Yeru Shalem
and rejoice in my people:
and neither is the voice of weeping
heard in her any more,
nor the voice of crying:

20 nor any more a suckling of days,
nor an elder who fulfilled not his days:
for the lad dies a son of a hundred years;
but the sinner a son of a hundred years abases.

21 And they build houses, and settle them;
and they plant vineyards, and eat the fruit of them:
they build not for another to settle;
they plant not for another to eat:
for as the days of a tree are the days of my people,
and my chosen waste away the work of their hands.

23 They neither labor in vain nor birth for terror;
for they are the seed of the blessed of Yah Veh,
and their offspring with them.

24 And so be it,
ere they call, I answer;
and while they yet speak, I hear:
the wolf and the lamb graze as one
and the lion eats straw as the bullock:
and dust is the bread of serpents.
They neither vilify nor ruin
in all my holy mountain, says Yah Veh.

THE THRONE OF YAH VEH

66

Thus says Yah Veh,
The heavens are my throne
and the earth, the stool of my feet:
where is the house you build to me?
and where the place of my rest?

2 For all those my hand worked,
and they all became
— an oracle of Yah Veh:
and to this man I look

ISAIAH 66

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

even to him that is poor — the humbled
and of a contrite smitten of spirit,
and trembleth at my word.

3 He that killeth **Whoever slaughtereth** an ox
is as if he slew **smiteth** a man;
he that **whoever** sacrificeth a lamb,
as if he cut off **breaketh** a dog's neck;
he that offereth **whoever holocausteth**
an oblation offering,
as if he offered — swine's blood;
he that burneth **whoever memorializeth with** incense,
as if he blessed an idol **blesseth mischief**.
Yea, they have chosen their own ways,
and their soul delighteth in their abominations.

4 I also will **shall** choose their *delusions* **exploits**,
and will **shall** bring their *fears* **terrors** upon them;
because when I called, none *did answer* **answered**;
when I spake **worded**, they *did not hear* **heard not**:
but they *did worked* evil before in front of mine eyes,
and chose that in which I delighted not.

5 Hear the word of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
ye that tremble at his word;
Your brethren that hated you,
that cast you out for my name's sake, said,
Let the LORD **Yah Veh** be glorified **honoured**:
but he shall appear **be seen** to your joy **cheerfulness**,
and they shall be *ashamed* **shame**.

6 A voice of noise **uproar** from the city,
a voice from the temple **manse**,
a voice of the LORD **Yah Veh**
that rendereth recompence **shalameth**
to his enemies.

7 Before she travailed **writhed**, she brought forth **birthed**;
before her pain **pangs** came,
she was delivered **rescued** of a man **male** child.

8 Who hath heard such a thing?
who hath seen such things?
shall the earth be made to bring forth **writhe** in one day?
or shall a nation be born **goyim birth** at once **one time**?
for as soon **even** as Zion travailed **Siyon writhed**,
she brought forth **birthed** her children **sons**.

9 Shall I bring **break** to the birth,
and not cause to bring forth **birth**?
saith the LORD **Yah Veh**:
Shall I cause to bring forth **birth**,
and shut the womb **restrain**?
saith thy God **Elohim**.

10 Rejoice ye with Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**,
and be glad **twirl** with her, all ye that love her:
rejoice for joy with her, all ye that mourn for her:

11 That ye may suck,
and be satisfied with the breasts of her consolations;
that ye may milk **suck** out,
and be delighted **delight**
with the abundance **full breast** of her glory **honour**.

12 For thus saith the LORD **Yah Veh**, Behold,
I will extend peace **shall spread shalom** to her
like a river,
and the glory **honour** of the Gentiles **goyim**
like a flowing stream **wadi**:
then shall ye suck, ye shall be borne upon her sides,
and be dandled **stroked** upon her knees.

13 As one man
whom his mother comforteth **sigheth over**,
so will **shall** I comfort **sigh over** you;
and ye shall be comforted **sighed over**
in Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**.

14 And when ye see *this*, your heart shall rejoice,
and your bones shall flourish **blossom**
like an herb **a sprout**:
and the hand of the LORD **Yah Veh**
shall be known toward his servants,
and his indignation **rage** toward his enemies.

15 For, behold,
the LORD will **Yah Veh shall** come with fire,
and with his chariots like a whirlwind **hurricane**,
to render **turn** his anger **wrath** with fury,
and his rebuke with flames of fire.

16 For by fire and by his sword

YESHA YAH 66

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— the humbled and smitten of spirit
who tremble at my word.

3 Whoever slaughters an ox, smites a man;
whoever sacrifices a lamb, breaks the neck of a dog;
whoever holocausts an offering, the blood of swine;
whoever memorializes with incense, blesses mischief:
yes, they choose their own ways
and their soul delights in their abominations.

4 I also — I choose their exploits,
and bring their terrors on them;
because when I call, no one answers;
when I word, they hear not:
but they work evil in front of my eyes
and choose that in which I delight not.

5 Hear the word of Yah Veh,
you who tremble at his word;
your brothers who hate you,
who cast you out for sake of my name,
say, Yah Veh is honored:
and we see your cheerfulness, and they shame:

6 a voice of uproar from the city;
a voice from the manse;
a voice of Yah Veh shalaming his enemies.

7 Ere she writhes, she births;
ere her pangs come, she is rescued of a male child.

8 Who ever heard such? Who ever saw such?
Writhed the earth in one day?
Or birthed a goyim at one time?

9 For even as Siyon writhes, she births her sons.
Break I to the birth, and not birth?
says Yah Veh:
I also restrain, says your Elohim.

10 You, rejoice with Yeru Shalem,
and twirl with her, all you who love her:
rejoice for joy with her, all you who mourn for her:
that you suck
and be satisfied with the breasts of her consolations;
that you suck out,
and delight with the full breast of her honor.

12 For thus says Yah Veh, Behold,
I spread her shalom as a river,
and the honor of the goyim as a flowing wadi:
and you suck,
borne on her sides, and stroked on her knees.

13 As man over whom his mother sighs,
thus sigh I over you;
yes, sigh over you in Yeru Shalem.

14 And when you see, your heart rejoices,
and your bones blossom as a sprout:
and the hand of Yah Veh
is known toward his servants
and his rage toward his enemies.

15 For, behold, Yah Veh comes with fire
and with his chariots as a hurricane
— to turn his wrath with fury
and his rebuke with flames of fire.

16 For by fire and by his sword

ISAIAH 66

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

will the LORD plead with **shall Yah Veh judge** all flesh:
and the slain **pierced** of the LORD **Yah Veh**
shall be many **abound by the myriads**.
17 They that *sanctify* **hallow themselves**,
and purify *themselves*
in the gardens behind *one tree* in the midst,
eating swine's flesh,
and the abomination, and the mouse,
shall be consumed together,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
18 For I know their works and their *thoughts* **fabrications**:
it shall come,
that I will **shall** gather all *nations* **goyim** and tongues;
and they shall come, and see my *glory* **honour**.
19 And I will **shall** set a sign among them,
and I will **shall** send
those that escape of them **the escapees**
unto the *nations* **goyim**,
to Tarshish, Pul, and Lud, that draw the bow,
to Tubal, and *Javan* **Yavan**, to the *isles* **islands** afar off,
that have not heard my fame,
neither have seen my *glory* **honour**;
and they shall *declare* **tell** my *glory* **honour**
among the *Gentiles* **goyim**.
20 And they shall bring all your brethren
for an offering unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
out of all *nations* **goyim**
upon horses, and in chariots, and in *litters* **palanquins**,
and upon mules, and upon *swift beasts* **prancers**,
to my holy mountain *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
saith the LORD **Yah Veh**,
as the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
bring an offering in a *clean vessel* **pure instrument**
into the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
21 And I will **shall** also take of them
for priests *and for Levites* **Leviym**,
saith the LORD **Yah Veh**.
22 For as the new heavens and the new earth,
which I will *make* **shall work**,
shall *remain before me* **stand at my face**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
so shall your seed and your name *remain* **stand**.
23 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
that from *one* new moon to *another* **new moon**,
and **enough**
from *one sabbath* **shabbath** to *another* **shabbath**,
shall all flesh come to *worship before* **prostrate in front of** me,
saith the LORD **Yah Veh**.
24 And they shall go forth,
and look upon **see** the carcasses of the men
that have *transgressed* **rebelled** against me:
for their *worm* **maggot** shall not die,
neither shall their fire be quenched;
and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh.

YESHA YAH 66

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Yah Veh judges all flesh:
and the pierced of Yah Veh
abound by the myriads.
17 They who hallow and purify *themselves*
behind, midst the gardens,
eating flesh of swine;
and the abomination and the mouse
are consumed together
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
18 And I — their works and their fabrications
I come to gather all goyim and tongues;
and they come, and see my honor:
and I set a sign among them;
and I send the escapees to the goyim
— to Tarshish, Pul, and Lud — who draw the bow,
— to Tubal, and Yavan — to the islands afar,
who neither heard my fame nor saw my honor;
and they tell my honor among the goyim:
and they bring all your brothers
for an offering to Yah Veh
— from all goyim
on horses and in chariots and in palanquins
and on mules and on prancers
to my holy mountain Yeru Shalem, says Yah Veh;
as the sons of Yisra El
bring an offering in a pure instrument
into the house of Yah Veh.
21 And I also take of them for priests for Leviym,
says Yah Veh.
22 For as the new heavens and the new earth,
which I work, stand at my face
— an oracle of Yah Veh;
thus your seed and your name stand.
23 And so be it,
that from new moon to new moon
and enough from shabbath to shabbath
all flesh comes to prostrate in front of me,
says Yah Veh;
and they come and see the carcasses
of the men who rebel against me:
for neither their maggot dies,
nor their fire quenches;
and they become an abhorrance to all flesh.

JEREMIAH 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE GENEALOGY OF YIRME YAH

- 1 The words of *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
the son of *Hilkiah* **Hilqi Yah**,
of the priests that were in Anathoth
in the land of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**:
- 2 To whom the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** came
in the days of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**
the son of *Amon* **king sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
in the thirteenth year of his reign.
- 3 It came also in the days of *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**
the son of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**,
king sovereign of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
unto the **end consummation**
of the eleventh year of *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**
the son of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**,
king sovereign of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
unto the **carrying away exile**
of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** in the fifth month.

THE CALLING OF YIRME YAH

- 4 Then the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
5 Before I formed thee in the belly
I knew thee;
and before thou camest forth out of the womb
I **sanctified** **hallowed** thee,
and I **ordained** **gave** thee
a prophet unto the *nations* **goyim**.
- 6 Then said I, *Ah* **Aha**, *Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh!**
behold, I **cannot speak** **know not how to word:**
for I am a **child lad**.
- 7 But the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto me,
Say not, I am a **child lad**:
for thou shalt go to all that I shall send thee,
and whatsoever I **command** **misvah** thee
thou shalt **speak word**.
- 8 *Be not afraid of* **Awe not** their faces:
for I am with thee to **deliver** **rescue** thee,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
- 9 Then the *LORD* **put forth** **Yah Veh** **spread** his hand,
and touched my mouth.
And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto me,
Behold, I have **put given** my words in thy mouth.
10 See, I have this day set thee **overseer**
over the *nations* **goyim**
and over the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**,
to **root out** **uproot**, and to pull down, and to destroy,
and to **throw down** **demolish**, to build, and to plant.

THE ALMOND SPROUT

- 11 Moreover the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying, *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**, what seest thou?
And I said, I see a **rod sprout** of an almond tree.
- 12 Then said the *LORD* **Yah Veh** unto me,
Thou hast **well seen** **well—pleased in seeing**:
for I **will hasten** **shall watch** my word to **perform** **work** it.

THE PRESSURE CALDRON

- 13 And the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came unto me the **second time** **secondly**, saying,
What seest thou?
And I said, I see a **seething pot** **pressure caldrion**;
and the face thereof is **toward** **at the face of** the north.
- 14 Then the *LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto me,
Out of the north an evil shall **break forth** **loosen**
upon all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land.
- 15 For, *lo* **behold**, I **will shall** call all the families
of the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the north,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**;
and they shall come,
and they shall **set give** every **one man** his throne
at the **entering** **opening** of the **gates** **portals**
of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and against all the walls *thereof* **round about**,
and against all the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
- 16 And I **will utter** **shall word** my judgments against them
touching all their **wickedness** **evil**,
who have forsaken me,
and have **burned incense** **incensed**
unto other **gods** **elohim**,
and **worshipped** **prostrated**
unto the works of their own hands.

YIRME YAH 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE GENEALOGY OF YIRME YAH

- 1 The words of Yirme Yah the son of Hilqi Yah,
of the priests in Anathoth in the land of Ben Yamin:
- 2 and so be the word of Yah Veh to him
in the days of Yoshi Yah
the son of Amon sovereign of Yah Hudah
in the thirteenth year of his reign:
- 3 and so be it in the days of Yah Yaqim
the son of Yoshi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
to the consummation
of the eleventh year of Sidqi Yah
the son of Yoshi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah:
to the exile of Yeru Shalem in the fifth month.

THE CALLING OF YIRME YAH

- 4 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
5 Before I formed you in the belly, I knew you;
and ere you came from the womb, I hallowed you,
I gave you, a prophet to the goyim.
- 6 Then I say, Aha, Adonay Yah Veh!
Behold, I know not how to word: for I *am* a lad.
- 7 And Yah Veh says to me,
Say not, I *am* a lad:
go to all to whom I send you,
and word whatever I misvah you:
awe not their faces:
for I *am* with you to rescue you
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
- 9 And Yah Veh spreads his hand,
and touches my mouth:
and Yah Veh says to me,
Behold, I give my words in your mouth.
- 10 See, this day I set you overseer over the goyim
and over the sovereigndoms;
to uproot and to pull down
and to destroy and to demolish;
to build and to plant.

THE ALMOND SPROUT

- 11 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
Yirme Yah, what see you?
- And I say, I see a sprout from an almond tree.
- 12 And Yah Veh says to me,
You well—please in seeing:
for I watch my word to work it.

THE PRESSURE CALDRON

- 13 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me secondly,
saying, What see you?
- And I say, I see a pressure caldrion;
and the face thereof is at the face of the north.
- 14 Yah Veh says to me,
From the north an evil loosens
on all the settlers of the land:
for behold, I call all the families
of the sovereigndoms of the north
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and they come and they give every man his throne
at the opening of the portals of Yeru Shalem
and against all the walls all round
and against all the cities of Yah Hudah:
and I word my judgments against them
touching all their evil
— in that they forsake me
and incense to other elohim,
and prostrate to the works of their own hands.

JEREMIAH 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

17 Thou therefore gird up thy loins, and arise,
and speak **word** unto them
all that I *command* **misvah** thee:
be not dismayed at their faces,
lest I *confound* **break** thee *before them* **at their face**.
18 For, behold,
I have *made* **given** thee this day a *defenced* **fortified** city,
and an iron pillar, and *brasen* **copper** walls
against the whole land,
against the *kings* **sovereigns** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
against the *princes* **governors** thereof,
against the *priests* thereof,
and against the people of the land.
19 And they shall fight against thee;
but they shall not prevail against thee;
for I *am* with thee,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
to *deliver* **rescue** thee.

YISRA EL ABANDONS YAH VEH

2 Moreover
the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** came to me, saying,
2 Go and cry **call** in the ears of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
saying, Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
I remember thee, the *kindness* **mercy** of thy youth,
the love of *thine espousals* **thy betrothals**,
when thou wentest after me in the wilderness,
in a land that was not *sown* **seeded**.
3 *Israel* **Yisra El** was holiness unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and the *firstfruits* **firstlings** of his *increase* **produce**:
all that devour him shall *offend* **guilt**;
evil shall come upon them, saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
4 Hear ye the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
O house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and all the families of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
5 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
What *iniquity* **wickedness** have your fathers found in me,
that they are *gone far* **removed** from me,
and have walked after vanity, and are become vain?
6 Neither said they, Where is *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
that *brought* **ascended** us
up out of the land of Egypt **Misrayim**,
that *led* **carried** us through the wilderness,
through a land of *deserts* **plains** and of *pits* **chasms**
through a land of *drought* **parch**,
and of the shadow of death,
through a land that no man passed through,
and where no *man dwelt* **human settled**?
7 And I brought you
into a *plentiful country* **land of orchards/Karmel**,
to eat the fruit thereof and the goodness thereof;
but when ye entered, ye *defiled* **fouled** my land,
and *made set* mine *heritage* **inheritance**
an *abomination* **abhorrence**.
8 The priests said not, Where is *the LORD* **Yah Veh**?
and they that *handle* **manipulate** the *law* **torah**
knew me not:
the *pastors* **tenders** also *transgressed* **rebelled** against me,
and the prophets prophesied by Baal,
and walked after *things* **those** that do not *profit* **benefit**.
9 Wherefore I *will shall* yet plead with you,
saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and with your *children's children* **sons' sons**
will shall I plead.
10 For pass over the *isles* **islands** of *Chittim* **Kittim**, and see;
and send unto *Kedar* **Qedar**,
and *consider diligently* **discern mightily**,
and see if there be such a *thing*.
11 Hath a *nation* **goyim** changed their *gods* **elohim**,
which are yet no *gods* **elohim**?
but my people have changed their *glory* **honour**
for that which doth not *profit* **benefit**.
12 Be astonished, O ye heavens, at this,
and be *horribly afraid* **shutter**,
be ye very *desolate* **mightily parched**,
saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
13 For my people have *committed* **worked** two evils;
they have forsaken me the fountain of living waters,
and hewed them out *cisterns* **wells**,
broken *cisterns* **wells**, that can hold no water.

YIRME YAH 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

17 So you, gird your loins and rise;
word to them all that I misvah you:
dismay not at their faces,
lest I break you at their face.
18 For, behold, I give you this day,
a fortified city and an iron pillar and copper walls
against the whole land
— against the sovereigns of Yah Hudah,
against the governors, against the priests,
and against the people of the land:
19 and they fight against you;
but they prevail not against you; for I *am* with you
— an oracle of Yah Veh
to rescue you.

YISRA EL ABANDONS YAH VEH

2 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Go and call out in the ears of *Yeru Shalem*,
saying, Thus says Yah Veh,
I remember you;
the mercy of your youth,
the love of your betrothals
— your going after me in the wilderness
in a land not seeded.
3 Yisra El is holiness to Yah Veh
and the firstlings of his produce:
all who devour him guilt;
evil comes on them, says Yah Veh.
4 You, hear the word of Yah Veh,
O house of *Yaaqov*,
and all the families of the house of *Yisra El*:
5 thus says Yah Veh,
What wickedness found your fathers in me,
that they removed afar from me
and walked after vanity and became vain?
6 And said not, Where is Yah Veh
who ascended us from the land of *Misrayim*?
Who carried us through the wilderness
— a land of plains and of chasms
— a land of parch and of the shadow of death
— a land where no man passed through
and where no human settled?
7 And I bring you into a land of orchards/Karmel
to eat the fruit and the goodness;
and you enter and foul my land
and set my inheritance an abhorrence.
8 The priests say not, Where is Yah Veh?
and they who manipulate the torah know me not
and the tenders rebel against me;
and the prophets prophesy by Baal
and walk after those who benefit not.
9 So I still plead with you, says Yah Veh
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and with the sons of your sons, I plead.
10 For pass over the islands of *Kittim*, and see;
and send to *Qedar*, and discern mightily;
and see if there be such.
11 Changes a goyim their elohim
to a non—elohim?
and my people change their honor
for that which benefits not.
12 Astonish, O ye heavens, at this, and shutter;
parch mightily, says Yah Veh.
13 For my people work two evils:
they forsake me, the fountain of living waters;
and hew wells — broken wells that hold no water.

JEREMIAH 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 Is Israel **Yisra El** a servant?
is he a *homeborn slave* **housebirthed**?
why is he *spoiled* a **plunder**?

15 The *young lions* **whelps** roared upon him,
and *yelled* **gave their voice**,
and they *made* **placed** his land *waste* **desolate**:
his cities are burned without *inhabitant* **settler**.

16 Also the *children* **sons**
of Noph and *Tahapanes* **Tachpanches**
have *broken the crown* of **grazed** thy *head* **scalp**.
17 Hast thou not *procured* **worked** this unto thyself,
in that thou hast forsaken
the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
when he *led* **the time he carried** thee by the way?
18 And now what hast thou to do
in the way of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
to drink the waters of *Sihor* **Shichor**?
or what hast thou to do in the way of *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
to drink the waters of the river?
19 Thine own *wickedness* **evil**
shall *correct* **discipline** thee,
and thy *backslidings* **apostasies** shall reprove thee:
know therefore and see that it is an *evil thing* and bitter,
that thou hast forsaken
the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
and that my fear is not in thee,
saith the *Lord* **GOD of hosts**
an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth.

20 For of *old* **eternal** time I have broken thy yoke,
and *burst* **torn** thy *bands* **bonds**;
and thou saidst, I *will* **shall** not *transgress* **serve**;
when upon every high hill and under every green tree
thou *wanderest* **strollest**, *playing the harlot* **whoring**.

21 Yet I had planted thee a *noble vine* — **choice**,
wholly a *right seed* **seed of truth**:
how then
art thou turned into the *degenerate* **twisted** plant
of a strange vine unto me?

22 For though thou *wash* **launder** thee with nitre,
and *take thee much* **abound** thy soap,
yet *thine iniquity* **thy perversity** is *marked* **inscribed**
before me **at my face**,
saith the *Lord* **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.

23 How canst thou say, I am not *polluted* **fouled**,
I have not gone after Baalim?
see thy way in the valley,
know what thou hast *done* **worked**:
thou art a swift dromedary
traversing **entangling** her ways;

24 A wild ass *used* **runner disciplined** to the wilderness,
that *snuffeth up* **gulpeth** the wind
at her *pleasure* **the yearning of her soul**;
in her occasion who can turn her *away* **back**?
all they that seek her *will* **shall** not weary themselves;
in her month they shall find her.

25 Withhold thy foot from being unshod,
and thy throat from thirst:
but thou saidst, *There is no hope* **I quit!**: no;
for I have loved strangers, and after them *will* **shall** I go.

26 As the thief is *ashamed* **shamed** when he is found,
so is the house of *Israel* **ashamed Yisra El** **shamed**
they, their *kings* **sovereigns**, their *princes* **governors**,
and their priests, and their prophets.

27 Saying to a *stock* **tree**, Thou art my father;
and to a stone, Thou hast *brought me forth* **birthed me**:
for they have
turned **faced the nape of** their *back* **neck** unto me,
and not their face:
but in the time of their *trouble* **evil** they *will* **shall** say,
Arise, and save us.

28 But where are thy *gods* **elohim**
that thou hast *made* **worked** thee?
let them arise,
if they can save thee in the time of thy *trouble* **evil**:
for *according to* the number of thy cities
are thy *gods* **elohim**, O *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.

29 Wherefore *will* **shall** ye plead with me?
ye all have *transgressed* **rebelled** against me,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**.

YIRME YAH 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 Is Yisra El a servant? Is he house birthed?
Why is he for a plunder?

15 The whelps roar on him; they give their voice;
and they place his land desolate:
his cities burn without settler.

16 Also the sons of Noph and Tachpanches
graze your scalp.

17 Worked you not this to yourself
— in that you forsook Yah Veh your Elohim
the time he carried you by the way?

18 And now what *is it* to you in the way of Misrayim
to drink the waters of Shichor?
Or what *is it* to you in the way of Ashshur
to drink the waters of the river?

19 Your own evil disciplines you
and your own apostasies reprove you:
so know and see that it is evil and bitter
to forsake Yah Veh your Elohim,
and that my fear is not in you
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth.

20 For from eternal time I broke your yoke
and tore your bonds;
and you say, I serve not!
when on every high hill and under every green tree
you stroll, whoring.

21 Yet I planted you, choice, wholly a seed of truth:
how then turn you on me
— into the twisted plant of a strange vine?

22 But though you launder yourself with nitre,
and abound with soap,
yet your perversity is inscribed at my face
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

23 How say you,
I am not fouled: I go not after Baalim?
See your way in the valley;
know what you worked
— a swift dromedary entangling her ways;
a wild runner disciplined to the wilderness
who gulps the wind at the yearning of her soul;
who, in her occasion, turns her back?
No one seeking her wearies themselves;
in her month they find her.

25 Withhold your foot from being unshod
and your throat from thirst.

And you say, I quit!
No; I love strangers and after them I go.

26 As the thief shames when he is found out,
thus the house of Yisra El shames
— they, their sovereigns, their governors,
and their priests, and their prophets:
saying to a tree, You are my father;
and to a stone, You birthed me:
for they face the nape of their neck to me
and not their face:
and in the time of their evil they say,
Rise! and, Save us!

28 And where *are* the elohim you worked for yourself?
Have them rise,
if they can save you in the time of your evil:
for the number of your cities are your elohim,
O Yah Hudah.

29 Why plead you with me?
You all rebel against me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

JEREMIAH 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

30 In vain have I smitten your *children sons*;
they *received took* no *correction discipline*:
your own sword hath devoured your prophets,
like a *destroying ruining* lion.

31 O generation, see ye the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
Have I been a wilderness unto *Israel Yisra El*?
a land of darkness?
wherefore say my people, We are *lords ramble on*;
we *will shall* come no more unto thee?

32 Can a *maid virgin* forget her ornaments,
or a bride her *attire bands*?
yet my people have forgotten me days without number.

33 Why *trimmest well—pleasest* thou thy way
to seek love?
therefore hast thou also
taught the *wicked evil* ones thy ways.

34 Also in thy *skirts wings*
is found the blood of the souls
of the *poor needy* innocents:
I have not found it by *secret search digging*,
but upon all these.

35 Yet thou sayest, Because I am *innocent exonerated*,
surely his *anger wrath* shall turn from me.
Behold, I *will plead with shall judge* thee,
because thou sayest, I have not sinned.

36 Why gaddest thou about so *much mightily*
to change thy way?
thou also shalt be *ashamed shamed* of *Egypt Misrayim*,
as thou wast *ashamed shamed* of *Assyria Ashshur*.

37 Yea, thou shalt go forth from him,
and thine hands upon thine head:
for the **LORD Yah Veh**
hath *rejected spurned* thy confidences,
and thou shalt not prosper in them.

THE WHOREDOM OF YISRA EL

3 They say **Saying**,
If a man *put send* away his *wife woman*,
and she go from him, and become another man's,
shall he return unto her again?
in profaning,
shall not that land be *greatly polluted profaned*?
but thou hast *played the harlot whored*
with many *lovers friends*;
yet return *again* to me,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.

2 Lift up thine eyes unto the *high places barrens*,
and see where thou hast not been *lien with raped*.
In the ways hast thou sat for them,
as the *Arabian Arabiy* in the wilderness;
and thou hast *polluted profaned* the land
with thy whoredoms
and with thy *wickedness evil*.

3 Therefore the showers have been withholden,
and there hath been no *latter after* rain;
and thou hadst a **woman's** — a whore's forehead,
thou refusedst to be *ashamed shame*.

4 *Wilt Shalt* thou not from this time *cry call* unto me,
My father,
thou art the *guide chiliarch* of my youth?
5 *Will Shall* he *reserve his anger for ever guard* eternally?
will shall he *keep it to the end guard in* perpetuity?
Behold, thou hast *spoken worded*
and *done worked* evil *things* as thou couldest.

THE UNTRUSTWORTHINESS OF YISRA EL

6 *The LORD Yah Veh* said also unto me
in the days of *Josiah Yoshi Yah*, the *king sovereign*,
Hast thou seen that which
backsliding Israel apostate Yisra El hath *done worked*?
she is gone up upon every high mountain
and under every green tree,
and there *hath played the harlot whored*.

7 And I said after she had *done worked* all these *things*,
Turn thou unto me. But she returned not.

8 And her *treacherous covert* sister *Judah Yah Hudah* saw it.
And I saw, when for all the causes
whereby *backsliding Israel apostate Yisra El*
committed adultery adulterized

YIRME YAH 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

30 In vain I smote your sons;
they took no discipline:
your own sword devoured your prophets
as a ruining lion.

31 O generation, see the word of Yah Veh.
Am I a wilderness to Yisra El?
A land of darkness?
Why say my people,
We ramble on — we come no more to you?

32 Forgets a virgin her ornaments?
Or a bride her bands?
Yet my people forget me days without number.

33 Why well—please you your way to seek love?
So you also teach the evil ones your ways.

34 Also found in your wings
is the blood of the souls of the needy innocents:
I found it not by digging, but on all these.

35 Yet you say, Because I am exonerated,
surely his wrath turns from me.

Behold, I judge you, because you say, I sin not.

36 Why gad you about so mightily
to change your way?
Even of Misrayim, you shame
as you shamed of Ashshur.

37 Yes, you go forth from him,
with your hands on your head:
for Yah Veh spurns your confidences,
and you prosper not therein.

THE WHOREDOM OF YISRA EL

3 Saying,
If a man sends away his woman,
and she goes from him, and becomes to another man,
returns he to her again?
In profaning, is not that land profaned?
And you whore with many friends and return to me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

2 Lift your eyes to the barrens and see!
Where have you not raped?
You sit for them in the ways
as the Arabiy in the wilderness;
and you profane the land
with your whoredoms and with your evil.

3 And the showers are withhold
and no after rain becomes;
you have the forehead of a woman — a whore;
you refuse to shame.

4 Call you not to me at this time,
My father, you are the chiliarch of my youth?

5 Guards he eternally?
Guards he in perpetuity?
Behold, you word and work *all* the evil you can.

THE UNTRUSTWORTHINESS OF YISRA EL

6 And Yah Veh says to me
in the days of Yoshi Yah the sovereign,
See you what apostate Yisra El works?
She goes on every high mountain
and under every green tree,
and whores there.

7 And I say, after she works all these,
You, return to me.
— and she returns not.

8 And her covert sister Yah Hudah sees:
and I see, when for all the causes
whereby apostate Yisra El adulterized

JEREMIAH 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

I had *put sent* her away,
and given her a *bill scroll* of divorce;
yet her *treacherous* sister Judah **Yah Hudah**
who dealeth covertly *feared awed* not,
but went and *played the harlot whored* also.
9 And it *came to pass* **became**
through the *lightness* **voice** of her whoredom,
that she *defiled* **profaned** the land,
and *committed adultery* **adulterized** with stones
and with *stocks* **timber**.
10 And yet for all this
her *treacherous* sister Judah **Yah Hudah**
who dealeth covertly
hath not turned unto me with her whole heart,
but *feignedly* **in falsehood**,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**.
11 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto me,
The *backsliding* Israel **apostate Yisra El**
hath justified *herself* **her soul**
more than *treacherous* Judah
Yah Hudah that dealeth covertly.
12 Go and *proclaim* **call out** these words
toward the north **northward**, and say,
Return, thou *backsliding* Israel **apostate Yisra El**,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**;
and I *will shall* not cause *mine anger* **my face**
to fall upon you: for I *am* merciful,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**,
and I *will shall* not keep *anger for ever* **guard eternally**.
13 Only acknowledge *thine iniquity* **thy perversity**,
that thou hast *transgressed* **rebelled**
against the **LORD Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**,
and hast scattered thy ways to the strangers
under every green tree,
and ye have not *obeyed* **hearkened unto** my voice,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**.
14 Turn, O *backsliding children* **apostate sons**,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**;
for I am married unto you:
and I *will shall* take you one of a city,
and two of a family,
and I *will shall* bring you to *Zion* **Siyon**:
15 And I *will shall* give you *pastors* **tenders**
according to mine heart,
which shall *feed* **tend** you
with knowledge and *understanding* **comprehending**.
16 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
when ye *be multiplied* **abound** and *increased* **bear fruit**
in the land, in those days,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**,
they shall say no more,
The ark of the covenant of the **LORD Yah Veh**:
neither shall it *come* **ascend to mind** **heart**:
neither shall they remember it;
neither shall they visit it;
neither shall that be *done* **worked** any more.
17 At that time they shall call *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
the throne of the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and all the *nations* **goyim**
shall *be gathered* **congregate** unto it,
to the name of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
neither shall they walk any more
after the *imagination* **warp** of their evil heart.
18 In those days the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
shall walk with the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and they shall come together out of the land of the north
to the land that
I have given for an inheritance unto your fathers
your fathers shall inherit.
19 But I said,
How shall I *put* **place** thee among the *children* **sons**,
and give thee a *pleasant land* **land of desire**,
a *goodly heritage* **splendid inheritance**
of the hosts of *nations* **goyim**?
and I said, Thou shalt call me, My father;
and shalt not turn away from **after** me.

YIRME YAH 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

I sent her away and gave her a scroll of divorce;
yet her sister Yah Hudah who deals covertly
awes not,
and goes and whores also.
9 And so be it,
through the voice of her whoredom
she profanes the land,
and adulterizes with stones and with timber.
10 And yet for all this
her sister Yah Hudah who deals covertly
returns not to me with her whole heart,
but in falsehood
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
11 And Yah Veh says to me,
The apostate Yisra El justifies her soul
more than Yah Hudah who deals covertly.
12 Go and call out these words northward, and say,
Return, you apostate Yisra El
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
I fell not my face on you: for I *am* merciful
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
13 I guard not eternally:
only, acknowledge your perversity,
that you rebel against Yah Veh your Elohim
and scatter your ways to the strangers
under every green tree,
and hearken not to my voice
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
14 Turn, O apostate sons
— an oracle of Yah Veh
for I *am* married to you:
and I take you,
one of a city and two of a family
and I bring you to Siyon:
15 and according to my heart,
I give you tenders to tend you
with knowledge and comprehension:
16 and so be it,
when you abound and bear fruit in the land,
in those days
— an oracle of Yah Veh
they neither say any more,
The ark of the covenant of Yah Veh:
nor ascend it to heart
nor remember they it
nor visit they it;
nor work they it any more.
17 At that time
they call Yeru Shalem the throne of Yah Veh;
and all the goyim congregate to it,
to the name of Yah Veh to Yeru Shalem:
and they walk no more
after the warp of their evil heart.
18 In those days
the house of Yah Hudah
walks with the house of Yisra El;
and they come together from the land of the north
to the land your fathers inherited.
19 And I say,
How place I you among the sons
and give you a land of desire
— a splendid inheritance of the hosts of goyim?
And I say, Call me, My father;
and turn not away from after me.

JEREMIAH 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

20 Surely as a *wife woman*
treacherously departeth **dealeth covertly**
from her *husband friend*,
so have ye dealt *treacherously* **covertly** with me,
O house of *Israel Yisra El*,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
21 A voice was heard upon the *high places* **barrens**,
weeping *and supplications*
of the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**:
for they have perverted their way,
and they have forgotten
the LORD Yah Veh their *God Elohim*.
22 Return, ye *backsliding children* **apostate sons**,
and I *will shall* heal your *backslidings* **apostasies**.
Behold, we come unto thee;
for thou art *the LORD Yah Veh* our *God Elohim*.
23 Truly **Surely** in *vain falsehood*
is salvation hoped for from the hills,
and from the multitude of mountains:
truly surely in *the LORD Yah Veh* our *God Elohim*
is the salvation of *Israel Yisra El*.
24 For shame hath devoured
the labour of our fathers from our youth;
their flocks and their herds,
their sons and their daughters.
25 We lie down in our shame,
and our confusion covereth us:
for we have sinned
against *the LORD Yah Veh* our *God Elohim*,
we and our fathers, from our youth even unto this day,
and have not *obeyed* **hearkened unto** the voice
of *the LORD Yah Veh* our *God Elohim*.

YAH VEH PLEADS WITH YISRA EL

4 If thou *wilt shalt* return, O *Israel Yisra El*,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
return unto me:
and if thou *wilt put away* **shalt turn aside**
thine abominations *out of my sight from my face*,
then shalt thou not *remove* **wander**.
2 And thou shalt *swear oath*, *The LORD Yah Veh* liveth,
in truth, in judgment, and in *righteousness* **justness**;
and the *nations* **goyim** shall bless themselves in him,
and in him shall they *glory* **halal**.
3 For thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*
to the men
of *Judah Yah Hudah* and *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
Break up **Till** your *fallow ground* **tillage**,
and sow **seed** not among thorns.
4 Circumcise yourselves to *the LORD Yah Veh*,
and take away **turn aside** the foreskins of your heart,
ye men of *Judah Yah Hudah*
and *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:
lest my fury come forth like fire,
and burn that none can quench it,
because at the face of the evil
of your *doings* **exploitations**.

YAH VEH WARNS YISRA EL

5 *Declare* **Tell** ye in *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and *publish* **let it be heard** in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*;
and say, *Blow* **Blast** ye the *trumpet* **shophar** in the land:
cry **call out**, *gather together* **fulfill**, and say,
Assemble yourselves **Gather**,
and let us go into the *defenced* **fortified** cities.
6 *Set up* **Lift** the *standard* **ensign** toward *Zion Siyon*:
retire **withdraw**, stay not:
for I *will shall* bring evil from the north,
and a great *destruction* **breaking**.
7 The lion is *come up* **ascended** from his thicket,
and the *destroyer* **ruiner** of the *Gentiles* **goyim**
is on his way;
he is gone forth from his place
to *make* **set** thy land desolate;
and thy cities shall *be laid waste* **set desolate**,
without an *inhabitant* **a settler**.
8 For this gird you with *sackcloth* **saq**,
lament **chop** and howl:
for the *fierce anger* **fuming wrath** of *the LORD Yah Veh*
is not turned back from us.
9 And **so be** it *shall come to pass* at that day,

YIRME YAH 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

20 Surely as a woman deals covertly with her friend,
thus you deal covertly with me, O house of Yisra El
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
21 A voice on the barrens — hear!
Weeping supplications of the sons of Yisra El:
for they pervert their way
and they forget Yah Veh their Elohim.
22 Return, you apostate sons,
and I heal your apostasies.
Behold, we come to you;
for you are Yah Veh our Elohim.
23 Surely in falsehood from the hills
and from the multitude of mountains:
surely in Yah Veh our Elohim
is the salvation of Yisra El.
24 For shame devours the labor of our fathers
from our youth
— their flocks and their herds
their sons and their daughters:
we lie down in our shame,
and our confusion covers us:
for we sin against Yah Veh our Elohim
— we and our fathers
from our youth even to this day,
and hearken not to the voice of Yah Veh our Elohim.

YAH VEH PLEADS WITH YISRA EL

4 If you return, O Yisra El,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
return to me;
and if you turn aside your abominations
from my face,
then you wander not:
and you oath, Yah Veh lives!
— in truth, in judgment and in justness:
and the goyim bless themselves in him
and in him they halal.
3 For thus says Yah Veh
to the men of Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem,
Till your tillage; seed not among thorns:
circumcise yourselves to Yah Veh
and turn aside the foreskins of your heart,
you men of Yah Hudah and settlers of Yeru Shalem:
lest my fury comes forth as fire
and burns so that no one can quench it
at the face of the evil of your exploitations.

YAH VEH WARNS YISRA EL

5 Tell it in Yah Hudah
and have it heard in Yeru Shalem;
and say, Blast the shophar in the land!
Call out, fulfill, and say,
Gather, and we go into the fortified cities.
6 Lift the ensign toward Siyon:
withdraw, stay not:
for I bring evil from the north and a great breaking.
7 The lion ascends from his thicket
and the ruiner of the goyim is on his way;
he comes from his place to set your land desolate;
and set your cities desolate; without a settler.
8 For this gird with saq; chop and howl:
for the fuming wrath of Yah Veh
turns not back from us.
9 And so be it, at that day,

JEREMIAH 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
that the heart of the king sovereign shall perish destruct,
and the heart of the princes governors;
and the priests shall be astonished astonish,
and the prophets shall wonder marvel.
10 Then said I, Ah Aha, Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh!
in deceiving, surely thou hast greatly deceived
this people and Jerusalem Yeru Shalem, saying,
Ye shall have peace shalom;
whereas the sword reacheth toucheth unto the soul.
11 At that time shall it be said to this people
and to Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
A dry clear wind of the high places barrens
in the wilderness
toward the daughter of my people,
not to fan winnow, nor to cleanse purify,
12 Even a full wind from those places
shall come unto me:
now also
will shall I give sentence word judgment against them.
13 Behold, he shall come up ascend as clouds,
and his chariots shall be as a whirlwind hurricane:
his horses are swifter than eagles.
Woe unto us! for we are spoiled ravaged.
14 O Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
wash launder thine heart from wickedness evil,
that thou mayest be saved.
How long Until when
shall thy vain thoughts fabrications of mischief
lodge stay overnight within thee?
15 For a voice declareth telleth from Dan,
and publisheth affliction hearkeneth mischief
from mount Ephraim Ephrayim.
16 Make ye mention to Remind the nations goyim;
behold,
publish let it be heard against Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
that watchers guards come from a far country land,
and give out their voice
against the cities of Judah Yah Hudah.
17 As keepers guards of a field,
are they against her round about;
because she hath been rebellious against me,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
18 Thy way and thy doings exploitations
have procured worked these things unto thee;
this is thy wickedness evil,
because it is bitter, because it reacheth unto thine heart.
19 My bowels inwards, my bowels inwards!
I am pained at my very writhe at the walls of my heart;
my heart maketh a noise roareth in me;
I cannot hold my peace hush,
because thou hast heard, O my soul,
the sound voice of the trumpet shophar, the alarm blast of war.
20 Destruction Breech upon destruction breech
is cried called out;
for the whole land is spoiled ravaged:
suddenly are my tents spoiled ravaged,
and my curtains in a moment blink.
21 How long shall I see the standard ensign,
and hear the sound voice of the trumpet shophar?
22 For my people is foolish, they have not known me;
they are sottish children foolish sons,
and they have none understanding discern not:
they are wise to do evil vilify,
but to do good well—please they have no knowledge.
23 I beheld saw the earth, and, lo behold,
it was without form a waste, and void empty;
and the heavens, and they had no light.
24 I beheld saw the mountains,
and, lo behold, they trembled quaked,
and all the hills moved lightly abate.
25 I beheld saw, and, lo behold,
there was no man human,
and all the birds flyers of the heavens were fled.
26 I beheld saw, and, lo behold,
the fruitful place orchard/Karmel was a wilderness,
and all the cities thereof were broken pulled down
at the presence face of the LORD Yah Veh,
and by his fierce anger fuming wrath.

YIRME YAH 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— an oracle of Yah Veh
the heart of the sovereign destructs,
and the heart of the governors;
and the priests astonish and the prophets marvel.
10 And I say, Aha, Adonay Yah Veh!
In deceiving,
you deceive this people and Yeru Shalem, saying,
Shalom is yours!
— whereas the sword touches to the soul.
11 At that time
it is said to this people and to Yeru Shalem,
A clear wind of the barrens in the wilderness
toward the daughter of my people
— neither to winnow nor to purify:
12 a full wind comes to me:
now also, I word judgment against them.
13 Behold, he ascends as clouds,
and his chariots as a hurricane:
swifter than eagles are his horses.
Woe to us! For we are ravaged!
14 O Yeru Shalem, launder your heart from evil,
to be saved.
Until when stay your fabrications of mischief
overnight within you?
15 For a voice tells from Dan,
and hearkens mischief from mount Ephrayim.
16 Remind the goyim;
behold, that it be heard against Yeru Shalem;
that guards are coming from a land afar,
and give their voice against the cities of Yah Hudah.
17 As guards of a field,
they are against her all around;
because she rebels against me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
18 Your way and your exploitations
work these to you;
this is your evil; because it is bitter;
because it reaches to your heart.
19 My inwards! My inwards!
I writhe at the walls of my heart;
my heart roars within me;
I cannot hush, because you hear, O my soul,
the voice of the shophar — the blast of war.
20 Breech upon breech is called out;
for the whole land is ravaged:
suddenly my tents are ravaged
— and my curtains in a blink.
21 Until when see I the ensign
and hear the voice of the shophar?
22 For my people are foolish, they know me not;
foolish sons and they discern not:
wise to vilify
and to well—please they know not.
23 I see the earth; and behold, waste and empty;
and the heavens, and no light:
24 I see the mountains, and behold, they quake;
and all the hills abate:
25 I see, and behold, no human;
and all the flyers of the heavens flee:
26 I see, and behold,
the orchard/Karmel is a wilderness;
and all the cities are pulled down
at the face of Yah Veh by his fuming wrath.

JEREMIAH 4, 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

27 For thus hath the LORD Yah Veh said,
The whole land shall be desolate;
yet will **shall** I not make **work** a full end **final finish**.

28 For this shall the earth mourn,
and the heavens above be *black* **darken**;
because I have *spoken* **worded** it,
I have *purposed* **intrigued** it,
and will **shall** not *repent* **sigh**,
neither will **shall** I turn back from it.

29 The whole city shall flee
for the *noise* **voice** of the *horsemen* **cavalry**
and *bowmen* **they that hurl the bow**;
they shall go into *thickets* **thick clouds**,
and *climb up* **ascend** upon the rocks:
every city shall be forsaken,
and not a man *dwell* **settle** therein.

30 And *when thou art spoiled* **thou, O ravaged**,
what *wilt* **shalt** thou *do* **work**?
Though thou *clothest* **enrobest** thyself
with *crimson* **scarlet**,
though thou *deckest* **adornest** thee
with ornaments of gold,
though thou *rentest* **rippest** thy *face* **eyes**
with *painting* **stibium**,
in vain shalt thou *make* **beautify** thyself *fair*;
thy lovers will despise
they who pant after thee shall spurn thee,
they will **shall** seek thy *life* **soul**.

31 For I have heard a voice
as of a *woman in travail* **stroking**,
and the *anguish* **tribulation** as of her
that *bringeth forth her first child* **bursteth the matrix**,
the voice of the daughter of *Zion* **Siyon**,
that *bewailleth herself* **sigheth**,
that *spreadeth her hands* **palms**, *saying*,
Woe is me *now* **I beseech!**
for my soul *is wearied* **languisheth** because of murderers.

THE SEARCH FOR THE MAN WHO WORKS JUDGMENT

5 *Run ye to and fro* **Flit**
through the *streets* **outways** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and see *now* **I beseech**, and know,
and seek in the *broad places* **broadways** thereof,
if ye can find a man,
if there be any that *executeth* **worketh** judgment,
that seeketh *the truth* **trustworthiness**;
and I *will pardon it* **shall forgive**.

2 And though they say, *The LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth;
surely they *swear* **oath** falsely.

3 O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
are not thine eyes upon *the truth* **trustworthiness**?
thou hast *stricken* **smitten** them,
but they have not *grieved* **writhed**;
thou hast *consumed* **finished** them **off**,
but they have refused to *receive* **take** correction:
they have *made* **toughened** their faces
harder than **as** a rock;
they have refused to return.

4 Therefore I said,
Surely these are poor; they are *foolish* **follied**:
for they know not the way of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
nor the judgment of their *God* **Elohim**.

5 I *will* **shall** get me unto the great *men*,
and *will speak* **shall word** unto them;
for they have known the way of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and the judgment of their *God* **Elohim**:
but these have altogether broken the yoke,
and *burst* **orn** the bonds.

6 Wherefore a lion out of the forest shall *slay* **smite** them,
and a wolf of the *evenings* **plains** shall *spoil* **ravage** them,
a leopard shall watch over their cities:
every one that goeth out thence shall be *torn in pieces*:
because their *transgressions* **rebellions**
are many **abound by the myriads**,
and their *backslidings* **apostasies** are *increased* **mighty**.

7 How shall I *pardon* **forgive** thee for this?
thy *children* **sons** have forsaken me,
and *sworn* **oathed** by them that are no *gods* **elohim**:

YIRME YAH 4, 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

27 For thus says Yah Veh,
The whole land becomes desolate;
yet I work not a final finish:
for this the earth mourns
and the heavens above darken
— because I worded it; I intrigued:
and I neither sigh nor turn back therefrom.

28 The whole city flees at the voice of the cavalry
and them who hurl the bow;
they go into thick clouds and ascend on the rocks:
every city is forsaken and not a man settles therein.

29 And you, O ravaged, what work you?
Though you enrobe yourself with scarlet,
though you adorn with ornaments of gold,
though you rip your eyes with stibium,
you beautify yourself in vain:
they who pant after you, spurn you;
they seek your soul.

30 For I hear a voice as of stroking
and the tribulation as of bursting the matrix
— the voice of the daughter of Siyon sighing
— who spreads her palms,
Woe is me I beseech!
for my soul languishes because of murderers.

THE SEARCH FOR THE MAN WHO WORKS JUDGMENT

5 Flit through the outways of Yeru Shalem;
and see, I beseech, and know;
and seek in the broadways
— if you find a man
— if there be any who work judgment
— who seek trustworthiness;
and I forgive.

2 And if they say, Yah Veh lives!
— surely they oath falsely.

3 O Yah Veh,
are not your eyes on trustworthiness?
you smite them, and they writhe not;
you finish them off, and they refuse to take correction:
they toughen their faces as a rock;
they refuse to return.

4 And I — I say,
Surely these are poor; they folly:
for they know neither the way of Yah Veh
nor the judgment of their Elohim.
I go to the great and word to them
— for they know the way of Yah Veh
and the judgment of their Elohim:
surely these altogether broke the yoke;
they tore the bonds.

6 So a lion from the forest smites them;
a wolf from the plains ravages them;
a leopard watches over their cities;
every one who comes out thence is torn
— because their rebellions abound by the myriads
and their apostasies are mighty.

7 How forgive I you for this?
Your sons forsake me,
and oath by them who are non—elohim:

JEREMIAH 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

when I had fed **oathed** them to the full,
they then committed adultery **adulterized**,
and assembled themselves by troops **trooped**
8 They were **wandered** as fed **nourished** horses
in the harlots' **whore** houses.
in the morning:
every one neighed **man sounded**
9 after his neighbour's wife **friend's woman**.
Shall I not visit for these things?
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**:
and shall not my soul be avenged
on such a nation **goyim** as this?
10 Go ye up **Ascend ye** upon her walls **fortifications**
and **destroy ruin**;
but make **work** not a full end **final finish**:
take away **turn aside** her battlements **tendrils**;
for they are not the LORD'S **Yah Veh's**.
11 For the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
and the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
in dealing covertly,
have dealt very *treacherously* **covertly** against me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
12 They have *belied* the LORD **disowned Yah Veh**,
and said, *It is* not he;
neither shall evil come upon us;
neither shall we see sword nor famine:
13 And the prophets shall become wind/**spirit**,
and the word is not in them:
thus shall it be *done* **worked** unto them.
14 Wherefore thus saith
the LORD God of hosts **Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**,
Because ye speak **word** this word, behold,
I will make **shall give** my words in thy mouth fire,
and this people **wood timber**,
and it shall *devour* **consume** them.
15 Lo **Behold**,
I will **shall** bring a nation **goyim** upon you from far,
O house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**:
it is a mighty nation **perennial goyim**,
it is an ancient nation **eternal goyim**,
a nation **goyim** whose language thou knowest not,
neither *understandest* **hearest** what they say **word**.
16 Their quiver is as an open *sepulchre* **tomb**,
they are all mighty *men*.
17 And they shall eat up thine harvest, and thy bread,
which thy sons and thy daughters should eat:
they shall eat up thy flocks and thine herds:
they shall eat up thy vines and thy fig trees:
they shall impoverish thy *fenced* **fortified** cities,
wherein thou *trustedst* **confidedst**, with the sword.
18 Nevertheless in those days,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
I will **shall** not make **work** a full end **final finish** with you.
19 And **so be** it shall come to pass, when ye shall say,
Wherefore doeth **worketh** the LORD **Yah Veh** our God **Elohim**
all these things unto us?
then shalt thou *answer* **say to** them,
Like as ye have forsaken me,
and served strange gods **elohim** in your land,
so shall ye serve strangers in a land that is not yours.
20 Declare **Tell** this in the house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and *publish* **let it be heard** in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, saying,
21 Hear now I beseech, this, O foolish people,
and without *understanding* **heart**;
which have eyes, and see not;
which have ears, and hear not:
22 Fear **Awe** ye not me?
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**:
will **shall** ye not **writhe** at my presence **face**,
which have placed **set** the sand
for the bound **border** of the sea
by a perpetual decree **an eternal statute**,
that it cannot pass it:
and though the waves thereof *toss themselves* **agitate**,
yet can they not prevail;
though they roar,
yet can they not pass over it?
23 But this people hath a revolting and a rebellious heart;

YIRME YAH 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

when I oath them,
they adulterize and troop in the whore houses:
8 they wander as nourished horses;
every man sounds after the woman of his friend.
9 Visit I not for these?
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and avenge I not my soul on such a goyim as this?
10 You, ascend on her fortifications, and ruin;
and work not a final finish:
turn aside her tendrils;
for they are not of Yah Veh.
11 For the house of *Yisra El*
and the house of *Yah Hudah*
in dealing covertly, deal covertly against me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
12 They disown Yah Veh, and say, Not him!
Neither comes evil on us
nor see we sword or famine:
13 and the prophets become wind/spirit,
and the word is not in them:
thus is it worked to them.
14 So thus says Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth,
Because you word this word, behold,
I give my words in your mouth, fire,
and this people, timber,
and it consumes them.
15 Behold, I bring a goyim on you from afar,
O house of *Yisra El*,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
— a perennial goyim — an eternal goyim — a goyim
— you neither know their tongue
nor hear their word:
16 their quiver *is* as an open tomb;
they all *are* mighty:
17 and they eat your harvest and your bread
which your sons and your daughters eat:
they eat your flocks and your herds;
they eat your vines and your fig trees;
they impoverish your fortified cities,
wherein you confide, with the sword.
18 And even in those days,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
I work not a final finish with you.
19 And so be it, when you say,
Why works Yah Veh our Elohim all these to us?
then you say to them,
As you forsook me
and served strange elohim in your land,
thus you serve strangers in a land that *is* not yours.
20 Tell this in the house of *Yaaqov*,
and have it heard in *Yah Hudah*, saying,
21 Hear this, I beseech,
O foolish people, and without heart;
having eyes, and seeing not;
having ears, and hearing not:
22 Awe you not me?
— an oracle of Yah Veh:
Writhe you not at my face
— who set the sand for the border of the sea
by an eternal statute, that it not pass?
And though the waves agitate, yet they prevail not?
And though they roar, yet they pass not over it?
23 And this people
has a revolting and a rebellious heart;

JEREMIAH 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

24 they are *revolted* **turned aside** and gone.
Neither say they in their heart,
Let us *now* **I beseech**,
fear the LORD **awe Yah Veh** our *God Elohim*,
that giveth *rain* **downpour**,
both the *former* **early** and the *latter* **after**,
in his *season* **time**:
he *reserveth* **guardeth** unto us
the *appointed* **statute** weeks of the harvest.
25 Your *iniquities* **perversities**
have *turned away these things* **perverted**,
and your sins have withholden good *things* from you.
26 For among my people are found *wicked men*:
they *lay wait* **observe**, as he that *setteth* **weaveth** snares;
they *set* **station** a *trap* **ruin**, they *catch* **captivate** men.
27 As a cage is full of *birds* **flyers**,
so are their houses full of deceit:
therefore they are *become great* **greatened**,
and *waxen rich* **enriched**.
28 They are *waxen fat* **fattened**, they shine:
yea, they overpass the *deeds* **words** of the *wicked* **evil**:
they *judge* **plead** not the cause,
the cause of the *fatherless* **orphan**, yet they prosper;
and the *right* **judgment** of the needy do they not judge.
29 Shall I not visit for these *things*?
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**:
shall **I** not **avenge** my soul *be avenged*
on such a *nation* **goyim** as this?
30 A *wonderful* **desolation** and horrible *thing*
is *committed* **become** in the land;
31 The prophets prophesy falsely,
and the priests *bear rule* **subjugate** by their *means* **hands**;
and my people love *to have it so*:
and what *will* **shall** ye *do work* in the end *thereof*?

YERU SHALEM IS VISITED

6 O ye *children* **sons** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
gather **withdraw** yourselves
to flee out of the midst of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and *blow* **blast** the *trumpet* **shophar** in *Tekoa* **Teqoa**,
and *set up* **lift** a *sign of fire* **burden**
in *Bethhaccerem* **Beth Hak Kerem**:
for evil *appeareth* **looketh** out of the north,
and great *destruction* **breaking**.
2 I have *likened* **severed** the daughter of *Zion* **Siyon**
to a *comely and delicate woman*
delicate habitation of rest.
3 The *shepherds* **tenders** with their *flocks* **droves**
shall come unto her;
they shall *pitch* **stake** their tents against her round about;
they shall *feed* **tend** every *one in* **man at** his *place* **hand**.
4 *Prepare* **Hallow** ye war against her;
arise, and let us *go up* **ascend** at noon.
Woe unto us! for the day *goeth* **faceth** away,
for the shadows of the evening are *stretched out* **spread**.
5 Arise, and let us *go* **ascend** by night,
and let us *destroy* **ruin** her *palaces* **citadels**.
6 For thus hath *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth** said,
Hew **Cut** ye down trees,
and *cast* **pour** a mount against *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
this is the city to be visited;
she is wholly oppression in the midst of her.
7 As a *fountain* **casteth out her** **digging a well for** waters,
so she *casteth out* **diggeth** her *wickedness* **evil**:
violence and *spoil* **ravage** is heard in her;
before me **at my face** continually
is *grief* **sickness** and wounds.
8 Be thou instructed, O *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
lest my soul depart from thee;
lest I *make* **set** thee desolate, a land not *inhabited* **settled**.
9 Thus *saith the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
They shall *thoroughly* **glean**
the *remnant* **survivors** of *Israel* **Yisra El** as a vine:
turn back *thine hand*
as a *grapegatherer* **clipper** into the baskets.
10 To whom shall I *speak* **word**,
and *give warning* **witness**, that they may hear?
behold,
their ear is uncircumcised, and they cannot hearken:

YIRME YAH 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

24 they turn aside and go on;
they say not in their heart,
We now awe Yah Veh our Elohim
— who gives downpour
— both the early and the after in his time:
he guards to us the statute weeks of the harvest.
25 Your perversities pervert
and your sins withhold good from you:
26 for wicked are found among my people:
they observe, as he who weaves snares;
they station a ruin, they captivate men:
27 as a cage full of flyers,
thus are their houses full of deceit:
so they greaten and enrich;
28 they fatten; they shine:
yes, they overpass the words of the evil:
they plead not the cause
— the cause of the orphan, yet they prosper;
and the judgment of the needy they judge not.
29 Visit I not for these?
— an oracle of Yah Veh:
Avenge I not my soul on such a goyim as this?
30 Desolation and horror is in the land:
31 the prophets prophesy falsely
and the priests subjugate by their hands;
and thus my people love it.
And what work you in the end?

YERU SHALEM IS VISITED

6 O you sons of Ben Yamin,
withdraw yourselves to flee from midst Yeru Shalem:
and blast the shophar in Teqoa
and lift a burden in Beth Hak Kerem:
for evil looks from the north,
and great breaking.
2 I severed the delicate daughter of Siyon
to a habitation of rest:
3 the tenders with their droves come to her;
they stake their tents against her all round;
every man tends at his hand.
4 You, hallow war against her!
Rise! We ascend at noon! Woe to us!
For the day faces away;
for the shadows of the evening spread.
5 Rise! We ascend by night and ruin her citadels.
6 For thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
Cut down trees;
and pour a mound against Yeru Shalem
— the city to visit;
total oppression is in her midst.
7 As digging a well for waters, thus she digs her evil:
violence and ravage is heard in her;
at my face continually *is* sickness and wounds.
8 Be instructed, O Yeru Shalem,
lest my soul depart from you;
lest I set you desolate — a land not settled.
9 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
They thoroughly glean, as a vine,
the survivors of Yisra El:
turn back your hand, as a clipper, into the baskets.
10 To whom word I, and witness to them to hear?
Behold, their ear is uncircumcised
and they cannot hearken:

JEREMIAH 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for the sword of the enemy and fear **terror**
is on every side **round about**.
26 O daughter of my people,
gird thee with *sackcloth* **saq**, and wallow thyself in ashes:
make **work** thee mourning, as for an only son,
a **chopping** most bitter *lamentation*:
for the *spoiler* **ravager** shall suddenly come upon us.
27 I have set **given** thee for a tower
and a fortress among my people,
that thou mayest know and *try* **proof** their way.
28 They are all
grievous **revolters** **turned aside by revolters**,
walking with *slanders* **talebearers**:
they are *brass* **copper** and iron;
they are all *corrupters* **ruiners**.
29 The bellows are *burned* **scorched**,
the lead is consumed of the fire;
the *founder* **melteth** **refiner** **refineth** in vain:
for the *wicked* **evil** are not *plucked* **torn** away.
30 *Reprobate* **Refuse** silver
shall *men* call them **they be called**,
because the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *rejected* **refused** them.

MESSAGE AT THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

7 The word that came to *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
from the **LORD Yah Veh**, saying,
2 Stand in the gate **portal**
of the **LORD'S** house of **Yah Veh**,
and *proclaim* **call out** there this word, and say,
Hear the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
all ye of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
that enter in at these **gates** **portals**
to *worship* the **LORD** **prostrate in front of Yah Veh**.
3 Thus saith the **LORD** of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the **God Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Amend **Well**—**prepare** your ways
and your *doings* **exploits**,
and I *will* **shall** cause you
to *dwell* **tabernacle** in this place.
4 *Trust* **Confide** ye not in *lying* **false** words, saying,
The *temple* **manse** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
The *temple* **manse** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
The *temple* **manse** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
are these.
5 For if **in well**—**preparing**,
ye *thoroughly* **amend** **well**—**prepare**
your ways and your *doings* **exploitations**;
if **in working**, ye *thoroughly* **execute** **work** judgment
between a man and his *neighbour* **friend**;
6 If ye oppress not the *stranger* **sojourner**,
the *fatherless* **orphan**, and the widow,
and *shed* **pour** not innocent blood in this place,
neither walk after other *gods* **elohim** to your *hurt* **evil**:
7 Then *will* **shall** I cause you
to *dwell* **tabernacle** in this place,
in the land that I gave to your fathers,
for ever **eternally** and ever **eternally**.
8 Behold, ye *trust* **confide** in *lying* **false** words,
that cannot *profit* **benefit**.
9 *Will* **Shall** ye steal, murder,
and *commit* **adultery** **adulterize**, and *swear* **oath** falsely,
and *burn* incense unto Baal,
and walk after other *gods* **elohim** whom ye know not;
10 And come and stand *before* me **at my face**
in this house, which is called by my name,
and say, We are *delivered* **rescued!**
to *do* **in order to work**
all these *abominations* **abhorrences**?
11 Is this house, which is called by my name,
become a *den* **cave** of *robbers* **tyrants** in your eyes?
Behold, even I have seen it,
saith the **LORD** **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
12 But go ye *now* **I beseech**,
unto my place which was in Shiloh,
where I set **tabernacle** my name at the first,
and see what I *did* **worked** to it
for the wickedness **at the face of the evil**
of my people *Israel* **Yisra El**.
13 And *now* **I beseech**,
because ye have *done* **worked** all these works,

YIRME YAH 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for the sword of the enemy and terror is all around.
26 O daughter of my people,
gird with *saq*, and wallow yourself in ashes:
work your mourning, as for an only son
— a chopping most bitter:
for the ravager comes on us suddenly.
27 I give you for a tower and a fortress
among my people,
so that you know and proof their way.
28 They all are turned aside by revolters;
walking with talebearers:
they are copper and iron;
they all are ruiners:
29 the bellows are scorched,
the lead is consumed by the fire;
the refiner refines in vain;
for the evil are not torn away:
30 Refuse silver, they are called,
because Yah Veh refused them.

MESSAGE AT THE HOUSE OF YAH VEH

7 And so be the word to Yirme Yah from Yah Veh,
saying,
2 Stand in the portal of the house of Yah Veh
and call out this word, and say,
Hear the word of Yah Veh, all Yah Hudah,
who enter in at these portals
to prostrate in front of Yah Veh:
3 thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth the Elohim of Yisra El,
Well—prepare your ways and your exploits,
and I tabernacle you in this place.
4 Confide not in false words, saying,
The manse of Yah Veh!
The manse of Yah Veh!
The manse of Yah Veh are they!
5 For if, in well—preparing,
you well—prepare your ways and your exploitations;
if in working, you work judgment
between a man and his friend;
6 if you oppress not the sojourner,
the orphan, and the widow,
and pour not innocent blood in this place,
and walk not after other elohim to your evil:
7 then I tabernacle you in this place
in the land I gave to your fathers
eternally and eternally.
8 Behold,
you confide in false words that benefit not;
9 you steal, murder, and adulterize,
and oath falsely and incense to Baal;
and walk after other elohim whom you know not:
10 and then you come and stand at my face
in this house on which my name is called,
and say, We are rescued!
in order to work all these abhorrences.
11 Becomes this house, on which my name is called,
a cave of tyrants in your eyes?
Behold, even I see
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
12 But come, I beseech, to my place in Shiloh,
where I tabernacled my name at the first;
and see what I worked to it
at the face of the evil of my people Yisra El:
13 and I beseech, because you work all these works

JEREMIAH 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
and I spake **worded** unto you,
rising up **starting** early and speaking **wording**,
but ye heard not;
and I called you, but ye answered not;
14 Therefore **will shall** I do **work** unto this house,
which is called by my name, wherein ye **trust confide**,
and unto the place
which I gave to you and to your fathers,
as I have **done worked** to Shiloh.
15 And I **will shall** cast you out of **from** my sight **face**,
as I have cast out all your brethren,
even the whole seed of **Ephraim Ephrayim**.
16 Therefore pray not thou for this people,
neither lift up **cry shout** nor prayer for them,
neither **make intercession intercede** to me:
for I **will shall** not hear thee.
17 Seest thou not what they do **work**
in the cities of **Judah Yah Hudah**
and in the **streets outways** of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**?
18 The **children sons** gather wood **timber**,
and the fathers **kindle burn** the fire,
and the women knead their dough,
to **make cakes work wafers**
to the **queen sovereignty** of heaven **the heavens**,
and to **pour out drink offerings libate libations**
unto other **gods elohim**,
that they may **provoke vex** me to anger.
19 Do they **provoke vex** me to anger?
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh:
do they not **provoke and not** themselves
to the **confusion shame** of their own faces?
20 Therefore thus saith the Lord **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Behold, **mine anger my wrath** and my fury
shall be poured out upon this place,
upon **man humanity**, and upon **beast animal**,
and upon the trees of the field,
and upon the fruit of the **ground soil**;
and it shall burn, and shall not be quenched.
21 Thus saith the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the God **Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**;
Put **Scrape up** your **burnt offerings holocausts**
unto your sacrifices, and eat flesh.
22 For I spake **worded** not unto your fathers,
nor **commanded misvahed** them in the day
that I brought them out of the land of **Egypt Misrayim**,
concerning **burnt offerings holocausts** or sacrifices:
23 But this **thing commanded misvahed** I them,
saying, **Obey Harken** to my voice,
and I **will shall** be your **God Elohim**,
and ye shall be my people:
and walk ye
in all the ways that I have **commanded misvahed** you,
that it may **be well unto well—please** you.
24 But they hearkened not, nor **inclined spread** their ear,
but walked in the counsels
and in the **imagination warp** of their evil heart,
and went backward, and not **forward toward the face**.
25 Since the day that your fathers came forth
out of the land of **Egypt Misrayim** unto this day
I have even sent unto you all my servants the prophets,
daily **rising up starting** early and sending them:
26 Yet they hearkened not unto me,
nor **inclined spread** their ear, but hardened their neck:
they **did worse than vilified above** their fathers.
27 Therefore
thou shalt **speak word** all these words unto them;
but they **will shall** not hearken to thee:
thou shalt also call unto them;
but they **will shall** not answer thee.
28 But thou shalt say unto them,
This is a **nation goyim** that **obeyeth hearkeneth** not
unto the voice of the LORD **Yah Veh** their **God Elohim**,
nor **receiveth correction taketh discipline**:
truth is perished trustworthiness destructeth,
and is cut off from their mouth.
29 Cut off thine hair **Shear thy separatism**, O **Jerusalem**,
and cast it away,
and take up **lift** a lamentation on **high places the barrens**;

YIRME YAH 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— an oracle of Yah Veh;
and I word to you, starting early and wording,
and you hear not;
and I call you, and you answer not.
14 I also work to this house,
on which my name is called, wherein you confide,
and to the place I gave to you and to your fathers,
as I worked to Shiloh:
15 and I cast you from my face
as I cast out all your brothers
— the whole seed of Ephrayim:
16 and neither pray for this people
nor lift shouts nor prayers for them;
nor intercede to me:
for I hear you not.
17 See you not what they work
in the cities of Yah Hudah
and in the outways of Yeru Shalem?
18 The sons gather timber
and the fathers burn the fire;
and the women knead their dough
to work wafers to the sovereignty of the heavens
and to libate libations to other elohim to vex me.
19 Vex they me?
— an oracle of Yah Veh:
And not themselves to the shame of their own faces?
20 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh;
Behold, my wrath and my fury
poured on this place
— on humanity and on animal
and on the trees of the field
and on the fruit of the soil:
and it burns and quenches not.
21 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth, Elohim of Yisra El;
Scrape up your holocausts to your sacrifices
and eat flesh:
22 for I neither worded to your fathers,
nor misvahed them
in the day I brought them from the land of Misrayim
concerning holocausts or sacrifices:
23 But this I misvahed them, saying,
Hearken to my voice,
and I am your Elohim
and you are my people:
and walk in all the ways I misvah you,
that it well—please you.
24 And they neither hearken nor spread their ear;
but walk in the counsels
and in the warp of their evil heart;
and go backward; and not toward the face.
25 Since the day your fathers came forth
from the land of Misrayim,
to this day,
I even sent to you all my servants the prophets,
daily starting early and sending them:
26 yet they neither hearkened to me,
nor spread their ear;
and hardened their neck:
they vilified above their fathers.
27 And you, word all these words to them;
and they hearken not to you:
and also call to them;
and they answer you not:
and say to them,
This goyim neither hearkens
to the voice of Yah Veh their Elohim,
nor takes discipline:
trustworthiness destructs;
yes, it is cut off from their mouth.
29 Shear your separatism and cast it away;
and lift a lamentation on the barrens;

JEREMIAH 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for the LORD **Yah Veh**
hath *rejected* **spurned** and *forsaken* **abandoned**
the generation of his wrath.
30 For the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
have *done* **worked** evil in my *sight* **eyes**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**:
they have set their abominations
in the house which is called by my name,
to *pollute* **foul** it.

THE BAMAHS OF TOPHETH

31 And they have built
the *high places* **bamahs** of *Tophet* **Topheth**,
which is in
the valley of the son of Hinnom
Gay Ben Hinnom/Valley of the Son of Burning,
to burn their sons and their daughters in the fire;
which I *commanded* **misvahed** them not,
neither *came* **ascended** it into my heart.
32 Therefore, behold, the days come,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that it shall no more be *called* **said**, *Tophet* **Topheth**
nor *the valley of the son of Hinnom*
Gay Ben Hinnom/Valley of the Son of Burning,
but
the valley of slaughter **Gay Haregah/Valley of Slaughter**:
for they shall *bury* **entomb** in *Tophet* **Topheth**,
till there be no place.
33 And the carcasses of this people shall be meat
for the *fowls* **flyers** of the *heaven* **heavens**,
and for the *beasts* **animals** of the earth;
and none shall *fray* **tremble** them away.
34 Then *will* **shall** I cause to *cease* **shabbathize**
from the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and from the *streets* **outways** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
the voice of *mirth* **rejoicing**,
and the voice of *gladness* **cheerfulness**,
the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride:
for the land shall be *desolate* **parched**.

THE SIN OF YAH HUDAH

8 At that time,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
they shall bring out
the bones of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and the bones of his *princes* **governors**,
and the bones of the priests,
and the bones of the prophets,
and the bones
of the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
out of their *graves* **tombs**:
2 And they shall spread them *before* **to** the sun,
and the moon, and all the host of *heaven* **the heavens**,
whom they have loved, and whom they have served,
and after whom they have walked,
and whom they have sought,
and **to** whom they have *worshipped* **prostrated**:
they shall not be gathered, nor be *buried* **entombed**;
they shall be for dung upon the face of the *earth* **soil**.
3 And death shall be chosen rather than life
by all the *residue of them* **survivors**
that *remain* **survive** of this evil family,
which *remain* **survive**
in all the places whither I have driven them,
saith the LORD of hosts **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
4 Moreover thou shalt say unto them,
Thus *saith the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
shall they fall, and not arise?
shall he turn away, and not return?
5 Why then is this people of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
slidden **turned** back by a perpetual *backsliding* **apostasy**?
they *hold fast* **uphold** deceit, they refuse to return.
6 I hearkened and heard,
but they *spake* **worded** not aright:
no man *repented* **sighed** for him of his *wickedness* **evil**,
saying, What have I *done* **worked**?
every one turned to his *course* **race**,
as the horse *rusheth* **overfloweth** into the *battle* **war**.
7 Yea, the stork in the *heaven* **heavens**
knoweth her *appointed times* **seasons**;

YIRME YAH 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for Yah Veh spurns and abandons
the generation of his wrath:
30 for the sons of Yah Hudah work evil in my eyes
— an oracle of Yah Veh:
they set their abominations
in the house on which my name is called
to foul it.

THE BAMAHS OF TOPHETH

31 And they build the bamahs of Topheth
in Gay Ben Hinnom/Valley of the Son of Burning
to burn their sons and their daughters in the fire;
which I neither misvahed nor ascended into my heart.
32 So behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that they neither say any more, Topheth
nor Gay Ben Hinnom/Valley of the Son of Burning,
but Gay Haregah/Valley of Slaughter:
for they entomb in Topheth until there is no place:
33 and the carcasses of this people
are meat for the flyers of the heavens
and for the animals of the earth;
and no one trembles them away.
34 Then I shabbathize from the cities of Yah Hudah,
and from the outways of Yeru Shalem,
the voice of rejoicing and the voice of cheerfulness;
the voice of the bridegroom and the voice of the bride
— for the land becomes parched.

THE SIN OF YAH HUDAH

8 At that time,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
they bring the bones of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah
and the bones of his governors
and the bones of the priests
and the bones of the prophets
and the bones of the settlers of Yeru Shalem
from their tombs:
2 and they spread them to the sun and the moon
and all the host of the heavens
— whom they loved and whom they served
and after whom they walked and whom they sought
and to whom they prostrated:
they are neither gathered nor entombed;
they are for dung on the face of the soil:
3 and death is chosen rather than life
by all the survivors who survive of this evil family
who survive in all the places I drive them
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth.
4 And you say to them, Thus says Yah Veh;
Fall they, and rise not?
Turns he away, and returns not?
5 Why then turns this people of Yeru Shalem away
by a perpetual apostasy?
They uphold deceit; they refuse to return.
6 I hearken and hear; they word not right:
no man sighs of his evil,
saying, What worked I?
Every one turns to his race
as a horse overflowing into the war.
7 Yes, the stork in the heavens knows her seasons;

JEREMIAH 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and the turtle **turtledove**
and the crane **swallow** and the swallow **thrush**
observe **regard** the time of their coming;
but my people
know not the judgment of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
8 How do ye say, We are wise,
and the law **torah** of the **LORD Yah Veh** is with us?
Lo **Behold**,
certainly **surely** in vain made **falsehood worked** he it;
the pen **false stylus** of the scribes
is in vain **worketh falsehood**.
9 The wise men are ashamed,
they are dismayed and taken **captured**:
lo **behold**, they have **rejected spurned**
the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and what wisdom is in them?
10 Therefore **will shall** I give their **wives women**
unto others,
and their fields
to them that shall **inherit them be their successors**:
for every one from the least even unto the greatest
is given to **covetousness greedily gaineth to greedy gain**,
from the prophet even unto the priest
every one **dealeth worketh** falsely.
11 For they have healed
the **hurt breach** of the daughter of my people slightly,
saying, **Peace Shalom, peace shalom**;
when there is no **peace shalom**.
12 Were they ashamed when they had
committed abomination worked abhorrence?
nay **in shaming**,
they were not at all **ashamed shamed not**,
neither **could knew** they **to blush**:
therefore shall they fall among them that fall:
in the time of their visitation
they shall **be cast down falter**,
saith the **LORD Yah Veh**.
13 **In consuming**, I **will shall** surely consume them,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**:
there shall be no grapes on the vine,
nor figs on the fig tree,
and the leaf shall **fade wither**;
and the things **those** that I have given them
shall pass away from them.
14 Why do we sit **still? assemble yourselves gather**,
and let us enter into the **defenced fortified** cities,
and let us **be silent hush** there:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**
hath **put hushed** us to **silence**,
and given us water of **gall rosh** to drink,
because we have sinned against the **LORD Yah Veh**.
15 We **looked for peace awaited shalom**,
but no good **came**;
and for a time of **health healing**,
and behold **trouble fright!**
16 The snorting of his horses was heard from Dan:
the whole land **trembled quaked** at the **sound voice**
of the neighing of his **strong ones mighty**;
for they are come, and have devoured the land,
and **all that is in it the fulness thereof**;
the city, and those that **dwell settle** therein.
17 For, behold,
I **will shall** send serpents, **cockatrices hissers**, among you,
which **will not be charmed shall have no charmer**,
and they shall bite you,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**.
18 When I would **comfort I should cheer** myself
against **sorrow grief**,
my heart is **faint bleedeth** in me.
19 Behold!
the voice of the **cry shout** of the daughter of my people
because of them
that **dwell in a far country in a land afar off**:
Is not the **LORD Yah Veh** in **Zion Siyon?**
is not her **king sovereign** in her?
Why have they **provoked vexed** me to **anger**
with their **graven images sculptiles**,
and with strange vanities?
20 The harvest is past, the summer is **ended concluded**,

YIRME YAH 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and the turtledove and the swallow and the thrush
regard the time of their coming;
and my people know not the judgment of Yah Veh.
How say you,
We are wise and the torah of Yah Veh is with us?
Behold, surely it works falsehood;
the false stylus of the scribes works falsehood.
9 The wise shame:
they are dismayed and captured:
behold, they spurn the word of Yah Veh;
and what wisdom is in them?
10 So I give their women to others
and their fields to their successors:
for every one from the least even to the greatest
greedily gains to greedy gain
— from the prophet even to the priest
— every one works falsely.
11 And they heal
the breach of the daughter of my people slightly,
saying, Shalom! Shalom!
when there is no shalom.
12 Shame they when they work abhorrence?
No, in shaming, they neither shame,
nor know they to blush:
so they fall among the fallen:
— falter in the time of their visitation,
says Yah Veh.
13 In consuming, I consume them,
— an oracle of Yah Veh:
— neither grapes on the vine nor figs on the fig tree;
and the leaf withers;
and I give these to pass away from them.
14 Why sit we?
Gather together; and enter the fortified cities:
and hush there:
for Yah Veh our Elohim hushes us
and gives us water of rosh to drink
— because we sin against Yah Veh.
15 We await shalom, and there is no good;
for a time of healing, and behold, fright!
16 The snorting of his horses is heard from Dan:
the whole land quakes at the voice
of the neighing of his mighty;
and they come and devour the land
and the fulness thereof
— the city, and they who settle therein.
17 For, behold, I send serpents — hissers among you,
who have no charmer; and they bite you
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
18 I cheer myself against grief,
my heart bleeds within me.
19 Behold!
the voice of the shout from the daughter of my people
in a land afar:
Is not Yah Veh in Siyon?
Is not her sovereign in her?
Why vex they me with their sculptiles?
And with strange vanities?
20 The harvest passes; the summer concludes;

JEREMIAH 8, 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and we are not saved.
21 For the *hurt* **breech** of the daughter of my people
am I *hurt* **breeched**; I am *black* **darkened**;
astonishment hath taken hold on **desolation holdeth** me.
22 Is there no balm in *Cilead* **Gilad**;
is there no *physician* **healer** there?
why *then is* **ascends** not the health
of the daughter of my people *recovered*?

A LAMENTATION OVER SIYON

9 Oh **that it be** that my head were waters,
and mine eyes a fountain of tears,
that I might weep day and night
for the *slain* **pierced** of the daughter of my people!
2 Oh **that it be** that I had in the wilderness
a lodging place of *wayfaring men* **caravans**;
that I might *leave* **forsake** my people, and go from them!
for they be all adulterers,
an **a private** assembly
of *treacherous men* **who deal covertly**.
3 And they bend their tongues like their bow
for *lies* **falsehood**:
but they are **prevail** not *valiant* **mightily**
for the *truth* **trustworthiness** upon the earth;
for they proceed from evil to evil, and they know not me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
4 *Take ye heed* **On guard** every *one* **man**
of his *neighbour* **friend**,
and *trust* **confide** ye not in any brother:
for **in tripping the heel**,
every brother *will utterly supplant* **shall trip the heel**,
and every *neighbour* **friend**
will **shall** walk with *slanders* **talebearers**.
5 And they *will deceive* **shall mock** every *one* **man**
his *neighbour* **friend**,
and *will* **shall** not *speak* **word** the truth:
they have taught their tongue
to *speak* **lies** **word falsehoods**,
and weary themselves to *commit iniquity* **pervert**.
6 *Thine habitation is* **Thou settlest** in the midst of deceit;
through deceit they refuse to know me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
7 Therefore thus saith
the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
Behold, I *will melt* **shall refine** them, and *try* **proof** them;
for how shall I *do* **work**
for **at the face** of the daughter of my people?
8 Their tongue is as *an* **a slaughtering** arrow *shot out*;
it *speaketh* **wordeth** deceit:
one speaketh peaceably **wording shalom**
to his *neighbour* **friend** with his mouth,
but *in heart he layeth his wait* **setteth his inwards to lurk**.
9 Shall I not visit them for these *things*?
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**:
shall not my soul be avenged
on such a *nation* **goyim** as this?
10 For the mountains
will I take up **shall I lift**
a weeping and *wailing* **lamentation**,
and for the *habitations* **folds** of the wilderness
a lamentation,
because they are burned *up*,
so that *none* **no man** can pass through *them*;
neither can men **nor** hear the voice of the *cattle* **chattel**;
both the *fowl* **flyer** of the heavens and the *beast* **animal**
are fled; they are gone.
11 And I *will make* **Jerusalem shall give Yeru Shalem**
to become heaps,
and a *den* **habitation** of *dragons* **monsters**;
and I *will make* **shall work** the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
desolate, without an *inhabitant* **settler**.
12 Who is the wise man,
that may *understand this* **discern**?
and who is he to whom
the mouth of *the LORD hath spoken* **Yah Veh worded**,
that he may *declare* **tell** it,
for what the land *perisheth* **destructeth**
and is burned *up* like a wilderness,
that none passeth through?
13 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** saith,

YIRME YAH 8, 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and we — we are not saved.
21 For the breech of the daughter of my people,
I breech;
I darken; Desolation holds me.
22 Is there no balm in Gilad?
Is there no healer there?
Why ascends not the health
of the daughter of my people?

A LAMENTATION OVER SIYON

9 Oh that it be, that my head be as waters;
and my eyes as a fountain of tears;
and I weep day and night
for the pierced of the daughter of my people!
2 Oh that it be, that I be in the wilderness
as a lodging place of caravans;
and I forsake my people and go from them;
for they all adulterize
— a private assembly who deals covertly:
and they bend their tongues as their bow
for falsehood:
and as for trustworthiness,
they prevail not mightily on the earth;
for they proceed from evil to evil
and they know me not
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
4 On guard, every man, of his friend
and confide not in any brother:
for in tripping the heel
every brother trips the heel;
and every friend walks with talebearers:
and every man mocks his friend
and words not the truth:
they teach their tongue to word falsehoods
and weary themselves to pervert.
6 You settle midst deceit;
through deceit they refuse to know me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
7 So thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
Behold, I refine them, and proof them;
for how work I
at the face of the daughter of my people?
8 Their tongue is a slaughtering arrow;
wording deceit:
wording shalom to his friend with his mouth,
but setting his inwards to lurk.
9 Visit I them not for these?
— an oracle of Yah Veh
Avenge I not my soul on such a goyim as this?
10 For the mountains
I lift a weeping and lamentation;
and for the folds of the wilderness
a lamentation:
because they burned
so that man neither passes through;
nor hears the voice of the chattel;
both the flyer of the heavens and the animal flee
— gone.
11 and I give Yeru Shalem to heaps
and a habitation of monsters;
and I work the cities of Yah Hudah desolate
without settler.
12 Who is the wise man, who discerns?
And he to whom the mouth of Yah Veh words?
And who tells?
Why destructs the land and burns as a wilderness
so that no one passes through?
13 And Yah Veh says,

JEREMIAH 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Because they have forsaken my *law torah*
which I *set before them* **gave at their face**,
and have not *obeyed* **hearkened unto** my voice,
neither walked therein;
14 But have walked
after the *imagination* **warp** of their own heart,
and after Baalim,
15 which their fathers taught them:
Therefore
thus saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the God **Elohim of Israel Yisra El**;
Behold, I *will* **shall** feed them, *even* this people,
with wormwood,
16 and give them water of gall to drink.
I *will* **shall** scatter them also
among the *heathen* **goyim**,
whom neither they nor their fathers have known:
and I *will* **shall** send a sword after them,
till I have *consumed* **finished** them off.
17 Thus saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
Consider **Discern** ye,
and call for the *mourning women* **lamenters**,
that they may come;
and send for *cunning women* **the wise**,
that they may come:
18 And let them *make haste* **hasten**,
and *take up* **lift** a *wailing* **lamentation** for us,
that our eyes may *run down* **drip** with tears,
and our eyelids *gush out* **flow** with waters.
19 For a voice of *wailing* **lamentation**
is heard out of *Zion* **Siyon**,
How are we *spoiled* **ravaged!**
we are *greatly confounded* **mightily shamed**,
because we have forsaken the land,
because our *dwelling* **tabernacles** have cast us out.
20 Yet hear the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
O ye women,
and let your ear *receive* **take** the word of his mouth,
and teach your daughters *wailing* **lamentation**,
and every *one* **woman** her *neighbour* **friend** lamentation.
21 For death is *come up* **ascended** into our windows,
and is entered into our palaces,
to cut off the *children* **sucklings**
from *without* **the outways**,
and the *young men* **youths** from the *streets* **broadways**.
22 *Speak, Thus* **Word thus**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
Even the carcasses of *men* **humanity**
shall fall as dung upon the *open* **face of the field**,
and as the *handful* **omer** after the *harvestman* **harvester**,
and none shall gather *them*.
23 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Let not the wise *man glory* **halal** in his wisdom,
neither let the mighty *man glory* **halal** in his might,
let not the rich *man glory* **halal** in his riches:
24 But let him that *glorieth* **glory** **halaeth halal** in this,
that he *understandeth* **comprehendeth** and knoweth me,
that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**
which *exercise lovingkindness* **work mercy**,
judgment, and *righteousness* **justness**, in the earth:
for in these *things* I delight,
25 *saith the LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
Behold, the days come,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that I *will punish all* **shall visit upon** them
which are circumcised
with the *uncircumcised* **in the foreskin**;
26 *Egypt* **Misrayim**, and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, and Edom,
and the *children* **sons** of Ammon, and Moab,
and all that *are in the utmost corners* **chop the edges**,
that *dwell* **settle** in the wilderness:
for all these *nations* **goyim** are uncircumcised,
and all the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
are uncircumcised in the heart.

THE HANDIWORK OF ENGRAVERS

10

Hear ye the word
which *the LORD speaketh* **Yah Veh wordeth** unto you,
O house of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
2 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,

YIRME YAH 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Because they forsake my *torah*
which I gave at their face,
and neither hearken to my voice nor walk therein;
14 and walk after the warp of their own heart
and after Baalim which their fathers taught them.
15 So thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
Elohim of Yisra El;
Behold, I feed them, this people, with wormwood;
and give them water of gall to drink:
16 and I scatter them among the *goyim*
whom neither they nor their fathers knew:
and I send a sword after them until I finish them off.
17 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
You, discern; and call for the lamenters to come;
and send for the wise to come:
18 Hasten them to lift a lamentation for us
so that our eyes drip with tears
and our eyelids flow with waters.
19 For a voice of lamentation is heard from Siyon,
How ravaged!
We shame mightily because we forsook the land;
because they cast out our tabernacles.
20 Yet hear the word of Yah Veh, O you women,
and your ear take the word of his mouth;
and teach your daughters lamentation
and every woman her friend lamentation.
21 For death ascends into our windows;
it enters into our palaces
to cut off the sucklings from the outways,
and the youths from the broadways.
22 Word thus,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
The carcasses of humanity
falls as dung on the face of the field;
and as the omer after the harvester:
and no one gathers.
23 Thus says Yah Veh,
O that the wise not halal in his wisdom
— the mighty not halal in his might;
the rich not halal in his riches:
24 But he who halals, halal in this,
that he comprehends and knows me;
that I — Yah Veh
work mercy, judgment, and justness in the earth
for in these I delight
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
25 Behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that I visit on them
who are circumcised in the foreskin
26 — Misrayim and Yah Hudah and Edom
and the sons of Ammon and Moab
and all who chop the edges
— who settle in the wilderness:
for all these *goyim* are uncircumcised,
and all the house of Yisra El
are uncircumcised in the heart.

THE HANDIWORK OF ENGRAVERS

10

Hear the word, O house of Yisra El,
which Yah Veh words to you:
2 thus says Yah Veh,

JEREMIAH 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Learn not the way of the **heathen goyim**,
and be not dismayed at the signs of **heaven the heavens**;
for the **heathen goyim** are dismayed at them.
3 For the **customs statutes** of the people are vain:
for one cutteth a tree out of the forest,
the work of the hands of the **workman engraver**,
with the ax.
4 They **deck beautify** it with silver and with gold;
they **fasten strengthen** it with nails and with hammers,
that it **move wiggle** not.
5 They are **upright round** as the palm tree,
but **speak word** not:
in bearing, they must **needs** be borne,
because they cannot **go pace**.
Be not **afraid awed** of them;
for they **cannot do evil vilify not**,
neither also is it in them to **do good well—please**.
6 Forasmuch as there is none like unto thee,
O **LORD Yah Veh**;
thou art great, and thy name is great in might.
7 Who **would should** not fear **awe** thee,
O **King Sovereign** of **nations goyim**?
for to thee **doth it appertain it becometh thee**:
forasmuch as among all the wise **men**
of the **nations goyim**,
and in all their **kingdoms sovereigndoms**,
there is none like unto thee.
8 But they are **altogether brutish** and foolish:
the **stock tree** is a **doctrine discipline** of vanities.
9 **Silver spread into plates Expanded silver**
is brought from Tarshish,
and gold from Uphaz,
the work of the **workman engraver**,
and of the hands of the **founder refiner**:
blue and purple is their **clothing robe**:
they are all the work of **cunning men wise**.
10 But the **LORD Yah Veh**
is the **true God Elohim of truth**,
he is the living **God Elohim**,
and an **everlasting king eternal sovereign**:
at his **wrath rage** the earth shall **tremble quake**,
and the **nations goyim**
shall not be able to **abide contain** his **indignation rage**.
11 Thus shall ye say unto them,
The **gods elah**
that have not made the heavens and the earth,
even they shall **perish destruct** from the earth,
and from under these heavens.
12 He hath **made worked** the earth by his **power force**,
he hath established the world by his wisdom,
and hath **stretched out spread** the heavens
by his **discretion discernment**.
13 When he **uttereth giveth** his voice,
there is a multitude of waters in the heavens,
and he causeth the vapours
to ascend from the ends of the earth;
he **maketh worketh** lightnings with rain,
and bringeth forth the wind out of his treasures.
14 **Every man All humanity** is brutish in **his knowledge**:
every **founder refiner**
is **confounded shamed** by the **graven image sculptile**:
for his **molten image libation** is falsehood,
and there is no **breath spirit** in them.
15 They are vanity, and the work of **errors frauds**:
in the time of their visitation they shall **perish destruct**.
16 The **portion allotment** of **Jacob Yaaqov**
is not like them:
for he is the former of all **things**;
and **Israel Yisra El** is the **rod scion** of his inheritance:
The **LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth** is his name.
17 Gather up thy **wares bundles** out of the land,
O **inhabitant settler** of the **fortress siege**.
18 For thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**, Behold,
I **will shall** sling out the **inhabitants settlers** of the land
at **this once one time**,
and **will distress shall tribulate** them,
that they may **find it so be found out**.
19 Woe is me for my **hurt breech**!
my wound is **grievous stricken**;

YIRME YAH 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Neither learn the way of the goyim
nor dismay at the signs of the heavens;
for the goyim dismay at them:
3 for the statutes of the people are vain:
for one cuts a tree from the forest
— the work of the hands of the engraver with the ax:
4 they beautify with silver and with gold;
they strengthen with nails and with hammers
so that it wiggles not:
5 round as the palm tree, but word not:
in bearing, they bear, because they pace not.
Awe them not, for they vilify not;
yes, it is not in them to well—please.
6 Because there is no one like you, O Yah Veh;
you are great, and your name is great in might.
7 Who awes you not, O Sovereign of goyim?
For it becomes you:
for among all the wise of the goyim,
and in all their sovereigndoms,
there is no one like you.
8 And as one, they are brutish and foolish:
the tree is a discipline of vanities.
9 They bring expanded silver from Tarshish
and gold from Uphaz
— the work of the engraver
and of the hands of the refiner:
blue and purple is their robe:
they are all the work of wise.
10 And Yah Veh is the Elohim of truth;
he is the living Elohim and eternal sovereign:
the earth quakes at his rage
and the goyim contain not his rage.
11 Thus you say to them,
The elah who made not the heavens and the earth
destructs from the earth
and from under these heavens.
12 He worked the earth by his force;
he established the world by his wisdom;
and spread the heavens by his discernment.
13 He gives his voice;
there is a multitude of waters in the heavens:
and he ascends the vapours
from the ends of the earth:
he works lightnings with rain
and brings forth the wind from his treasures.
14 All humanity is brutish in knowledge:
every refiner is shamed by the sculptile:
for his libation is falsehood
and there is no spirit in them:
15 they are vanity, the work of frauds:
in the time of their visitation they destruct.
16 The allotment of Yaaqov is not like them:
for he is the former of all;
and Yisra El is the scion of his inheritance:
Yah Veh Sabaoth is his name.
17 Gather up your bundles from the land,
O settler of the siege:
18 for thus says Yah Veh, Behold,
I sling out the settlers of the land at one time
and tribulate them that they are found out.
19 Woe to me for my breech;
my wound is stricken;

JEREMIAH 10, 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

but I said,
20 Truly **Surely** this is a *grief stroke*, and I must bear it.
My *tabernacle tent* is *spoiled ravaged*,
and all my cords are *broken torn*:
my *children sons* are gone forth of me, and they are not:
there is none to *stretch forth spread* my tent any more,
and to *set up raise* my curtains.
21 For the *pastors tenders* are become *brutish stupid*,
and have not sought the *LORD Yah Veh*:
therefore they shall not *prosper comprehend*,
and all their *flocks pastures* shall be scattered.
22 Behold, the *noise voice* of the *bruit report* is come,
and a great *commotion quake*
out of the north *country land*,
to make *set* the cities of *Judah Yah Hudah* desolate,
and a *den habitation of dragons monsters*.
23 O *LORD Yah Veh*,
I know that the way of *man humanity*
is not in *himself humanity*:
it is not in man
that walketh to *direct establish* his *steps paces*.
24 O *LORD Yah Veh*, correct me, but with judgment;
not in *thine anger thy wrath*,
lest thou *bring diminish* me to *nothing*.
25 Pour out thy fury
upon the *heathen goyim* that know thee not,
and upon the families that call not on thy name:
for they have *eaten up Jacob consumed Yaaqov*,
and *devoured consumed* him, and *consumed finished* him off,
and have *made desolated* his habitation *desolate of rest*.

THE BROKEN COVENANT

11 The word that came to *Jeremiah Yirme Yah*
from the *LORD Yah Veh*, saying,
2 Hear ye the words of this covenant,
and *speak word* unto the men of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and to the *inhabitants settlers* of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*;
3 And say thou unto them,
Thus saith
the *LORD God Yah Veh Elohim* of *Israel Yisra El*;
Cursed be the man
that *obeyeth hearkeneth* not
unto the words of this covenant,
4 Which I *commanded misvahed* your fathers
in the day that I brought them forth
out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
from the iron furnace, saying,
Obey Hearken unto my voice, and *do work* them,
according to all which I *command misvah* you:
so shall ye be my people,
and I will be *I am* your *God Elohim*:
5 That I may *perform raise* the oath
which I have *sworn oathed* unto your fathers,
to give them a land flowing with milk and honey,
as it is this day.
Then answered I, and said,
So be it Amen, O *LORD Yah Veh*.
6 Then the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto me,
Proclaim Call out all these words
in the cities of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and in the *streets outways* of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
saying,
Hear ye the words of this covenant, and *do work* them.
7 For *in witnessing*,
I *earnestly protested witnessed* unto your fathers
in the day that I *brought ascended* them up
out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
even unto this day,
rising starting early and *protesting witnessing*,
saying, *Obey Hearken* unto my voice.
8 Yet they *obeyed hearkened* not,
nor *inclined spread* their ear,
but walked every *one man*
in the *imagination warp* of their evil heart:
therefore I *will shall* bring upon them
all the words of this covenant,
which I *commanded misvahed* them to *do work*:
but they *did worked* them not.
9 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto me,
A conspiracy is found among the men of *Judah Yah Hudah*,

YIRME YAH 10, 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and I say, Surely this is a stroke for me to bear.
20 My tent is ravaged
and all my cords are torn:
my sons *are* gone from me, and they are not:
there is no one to spread my tent any more
and to raise my curtains:
21 for the tenders are stupid and seek not Yah Veh:
so they comprehend not
and all their pastures are scattered.
22 The voice of the report! Behold, it comes!
Even a great quake from the north land
to set the cities of Yah Hudah desolate
— a habitation of monsters.
23 O Yah Veh,
I know that the way of humanity
is not within humanity:
it is not within man
who walks to establish his paces.
24 O Yah Veh, correct me; only with judgment;
not in your wrath; lest you diminish me.
25 Pour your fury on the goyim who know you not,
and on the families who call not on your name:
for they consume Yaaqov
— consume him and finish him off
and desolate his habitation of rest.

THE BROKEN COVENANT

11 So be the word to Yirme Yah from Yah Veh,
saying,
2 Hear the words of this covenant;
and word to the men of Yah Hudah
and to the settlers of Yeru Shalem;
3 and say to them,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
Cursed *is* the man
4 who hearkens not to the words of this covenant,
which I misvahed your fathers
in the day I brought them from the land of Misrayim
— from the iron furnace,
saying, Hearken to my voice, and work them,
according to all I misvah you:
and you are my people,
and I am your Elohim:
5 to raise the oath I oathed to your fathers
— to give them a land flowing with milk and honey
as this day.
And I answer, and say, Amen, O Yah Veh.
6 And Yah Veh says to me,
Call all these words in the cities of Yah Hudah
and in the outways of Yeru Shalem, saying,
Hear the words of this covenant, and work them.
7 For in witnessing, I witnessed to your fathers
in the day I ascended them from the land of Misrayim
to this day
— starting early and witnessing,
saying, Hearken to my voice!
8 And they neither hearkened nor spread their ear;
and every man walked in the warp of his evil heart:
and I brought on them all the words of this covenant
which I misvahed them to work:
and they worked them not.
9 And Yah Veh says to me,
A conspiracy is found among the men of Yah Hudah

JEREMIAH 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and among the *inhabitants settlers* of Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**.
10 They are turned back
to the *iniquities perversities* of their forefathers,
which refused to hear my words;
and they went after other *gods elohim* to serve them:
the house of *Israel Yisra El*
and the house of *Judah Yah Hudah*
have broken my covenant
which I *made cut* with their fathers.
11 Therefore thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*,
Behold, I *will shall* bring evil upon them,
which they shall not be able to escape;
and though they shall cry unto me,
I *will shall* not hearken unto them.
12 Then shall the cities of *Judah Yah Hudah*
and *inhabitants settlers* of Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem** go
and cry unto the *gods elohim*
unto whom they *offer* incense:
but *in saving*, they shall not save them *at all*
in the time of their *trouble evil*.
13 For *according to* the number of thy cities
were thy *gods elohim*, O *Judah Yah Hudah*;
and *according to* the number
of the *streets outways* of Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**
have ye set up *sacrifice* altars to *that the* shameful *thing*,
even sacrifice altars to *burn* incense unto Baal.
14 Therefore pray not thou for this people,
neither lift up a *cry shout* or prayer for them:
for I *will shall* not hear *them hearken*
in the time that they *cry call out* unto me
for their *trouble evil*.
15 What hath my beloved to do in mine house,
seeing
she hath *wrought lewdness worked intrigue* with many,
and the holy flesh is passed from thee?
when thou doest evil, then thou *rejoicest jumpest for joy*.
16 *The LORD Yah Veh* called thy name,
A green olive tree, *fair beautiful*,
and of goodly *formed* fruit:
with the *noise voice* of a great *tumult rush*
he hath kindled fire upon it,
and the branches of it are *broken shattered*.
17 For *the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*,
that planted thee,
hath *pronounced worded* evil against thee,
for *because of* the evil of the house of *Israel Yisra El*
and of the house of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
which they have *done worked* against themselves
to *provoke vex* me to *anger*
in *offering incense incensing* unto Baal.
18 And *the LORD Yah Veh*
hath given me knowledge of it, and I know it:
then thou
shewedst me hadst me see their *doings exploitations*.
19 But I was like a lamb or an *ox a bullock*
that is brought to the slaughter;
and I knew not
that they had *devised devices fabricated fabrications*
against me, *saying*,
Let us *destroy ruin* the tree with the *fruit bread* thereof,
and let us cut him off from the land of the living,
that his name may be no more remembered.
20 But, O *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*,
that judgest *righteously justly*,
that *triest proofest* the reins and the heart,
let me see thy *vengeance avengement* on them:
for unto thee have I *revealed exposed* my *cause plea*.
21 Therefore thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*
of the men of Anathoth, that seek thy *life soul*, saying,
Prophesy not in the name of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
that thou die not by our hand:
22 Therefore
thus saith *the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*,
Behold, I *will punish shall visit upon* them:
the *young men youths* shall die by the sword;
their sons and their daughters shall die by famine:
And there shall be no *remnant survivors* of them:
23 for I *will shall* bring evil upon the men of Anathoth,
even the year of their visitation.

YIRME YAH 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and among the settlers of Yeru Shalem:
10 they return to the perversities of their forefathers
who refused to hear my words;
and go after other elohim to serve them:
the house of Yisra El and the house of Yah Hudah
break my covenant which I cut with their fathers.
11 So thus says Yah Veh,
Behold, I bring evil on them,
which they are not able to escape;
and though they cry to me
I hearken not to them:
12 and the cities of Yah Hudah
and settlers of Yeru Shalem
go and cry to the elohim to whom they incense:
and in saving,
they save them not in the time of their evil:
13 for as the number of your cities are your elohim,
O Yah Hudah;
and as the number of the outways of Yeru Shalem,
you set up sacrifice altars to the shameful
— sacrifice altars to incense to Baal.
14 And you — you neither pray for this people,
nor lift a shout or prayer for them:
for I hearken not
in the time they call to me for their evil.
15 What — to my beloved in my house,
her working intrigue with many
and pass the holy flesh from you?
when you work evil, you jump for joy.
16 Yah Veh calls your name,
Green Olive! Beautiful! Formed Fruit!
With the voice of a great rush
he kindles fire thereon,
and shatters the branches thereof.
17 And Yah Veh Sabaoth who plants you,
words evil against you,
because of the evil of the house of Yisra El
and of the house of Yah Hudah,
which they work against themselves
to vex me by incensing to Baal.
18 And Yah Veh gives me knowledge thereof
and I know it:
then you show me their exploitations:
19 and I *am* as a lamb or a bullock
brought to the slaughter;
and I know not
that they fabricate fabrications against me:
— we ruin the tree with the bread
and we cut him off from the land of the living
so that we remember his name no more.
20 And, O Yah Veh Sabaoth, who judges justly,
who proofs the reins and the heart,
I see your avengement on them:
for to you I expose my plea.
21 So thus says Yah Veh
of the men of Anathoth who seek your soul, saying,
Prophesy not in the name of Yah Veh,
that you die not by our hand.
22 So thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
Behold, I visit on them:
their youths die by the sword
their sons and their daughters die by famine:
and they have no survivors:
23 for I bring evil on the men of Anathoth,
the year of their visitation.

JEREMIAH 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE PRAYER OF YIRME YAH

12 Righteous Just art thou, O LORD Yah Veh,
 when I plead with thee:
 yet let me talk word with thee of thy judgments:
 Wherefore doth the way of the wicked prosper?
 wherefore are all they happy serene
 that in dealing covertly, deal very treacherously covertly?
 2 Thou hast planted them, yea,
 they have taken root rooted:
 they grow, yea, they bring forth work fruit:
 thou art near in their mouth, and far from their reins.
 3 But thou, O LORD Yah Veh, knowest me:
 thou hast seen me,
 and tried proofed mine heart toward thee:
 pull tear them out like sheep flock for the slaughter,
 and prepare hallow them for the day of slaughter.
 4 How long shall the land mourn,
 and the herbs of every field wither,
 for the wickedness evil of them that dwell settle therein?
 the beasts animals are consumed scraped away,
 and the birds flyers;
 because they said, He shall not see our last end.
 5 If thou hast run with the footmen them on foot,
 and they have wearied thee,
 then how canst thou contend be inflamed with horses?
 and if in the land of peace shalom,
 wherein thou trustedst confidest, they wearied thee,
 then how wilt shalt thou do work
 in the swelling pomp of Jordan Yarden?
 6 For even thy brethren, and the house of thy father,
 even they have dealt treacherously covertly with thee;
 yea, they have called a multitude after thee:
 believe trust them not,
 though they speak fair word good words unto thee.
 7 I have forsaken mine house,
 I have left abandoned mine heritage inheritance;
 I have given the dearly beloved love of my soul
 into the hand palm of her enemies.
 8 Mine heritage inheritance is unto me
 as a lion in the forest;
 it crieth out giveth her voice against me:
 therefore have I hated it.
 9 Mine heritage inheritance is unto me
 as a speckled bird swooper,
 the birds swoopers round about are against her;
 come ye,
 assemble gather all the beasts live beings of the field,
 come to devour for food.
 10 Many pastors tenders
 have destroyed ruined my vineyard,
 they have trodden trampled my portion allotment
 under foot,
 they have made given the allotment
 of my pleasant portion desire
 a desolate wilderness.
 11 They have made set it desolate,
 and being desolate it mourneth unto me;
 the whole land is made desolate desolated,
 because no man layeth setteth it to heart.
 12 The spoilers ravagers are come
 upon all high places the barrens through the wilderness:
 for the sword of the LORD Yah Veh shall devour
 from the one end of the land
 even to the other end of the land:
 no flesh shall have peace shalom.
 13 They have sown wheat, but shall reap harvest thorns:
 they have put themselves to pain worn out,
 but shall not profit benefit:
 and they shall be ashamed shame
 of your revenues produce
 because of the fierce anger fuming wrath of the LORD Yah Veh.
 14 Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh
 against all mine evil neighbours fellow tabernaclers,
 that touch the inheritance
 which I have caused my people Israel Yisra El to inherit;
 Behold,
 I will pluck shall uproot them out of their land soil,
 and pluck out uproot the house of Judah Yah Hudah
 from among them.

YIRME YAH 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE PRAYER OF YIRME YAH

12 You are just, O Yah Veh,
 O that I plead with you
 — word to you of judgments!
 Why prospers the way of the wicked?
 Why are all they serene
 — who in dealing covertly, deal covertly?
 2 You planted them; yes, they root:
 they grow; yes, they work fruit:
 you are near in their mouth and far from their reins.
 3 And you, O Yah Veh, know me:
 you see me and proof my heart toward you:
 tear them as flock for the slaughter
 and hallow them for the day of slaughter.
 4 How long mourns the land?
 And the herbs of every field wither
 for their evil who settle therein?
 The animals are scraped away, and the flyers;
 because, they say, He sees not our final end.
 5 If you run with them on foot, and they weary you,
 and how inflame you yourself with horses?
 And if in the land of shalom, wherein you confide,
 then how work you in the pomp of Yarden?
 6 For even your brothers, and the house of your father
 — even they dealt covertly with you;
 yes, they called a multitude after you:
 trust them not,
 though they word good words to you.
 7 I forsook my house;
 I abandoned my inheritance;
 I gave the beloved of my soul
 into the palm of her enemies:
 8 To me, my inheritance is as a lion in the forest;
 she gives her voice against me:
 so I hate her.
 9 To me, my inheritance is as a speckled swooper.
 Are the swoopers all around against her?
 Come, gather all the live beings of the field;
 come for food.
 10 Many tenders ruin my vineyard;
 they trample my allotment;
 they give the allotment of my desire
 a desolate wilderness:
 they set it desolate;
 and desolate, it mourns to me;
 the whole land is desolated
 because no man sets it to heart.
 The ravagers come
 on all the barrens in the wilderness:
 for the sword of Yah Veh devours
 from the end of the land even to the end of the land
 — no shalom to any flesh.
 11 They seed wheat; and harvest thorns:
 they wear out; they benefit not:
 and they shame of your produce
 because of the fuming wrath of Yah Veh.
 12 Thus says Yah Veh
 against all my evil fellow tabernaclers,
 who touch the inheritance
 that I have my people Yisra El to inherit:
 behold, I uproot them from their soil;
 and uproot the house of Yah Hudah
 from among them.

JEREMIAH 12, 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
after that I have *plucked* **uprooted** them out
I *will* **shall** return, and have compassion on them,
and *will bring* **shall return** them again,
every man to his *heritage* **inheritance**,
and every man to his land.
16 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
if they *will* **shall** diligently learn the ways of my people,
to *swear* **oath** by my name, *The LORD Yah Veh* liveth;
as they taught my people to *swear* **oath** by Baal;
then shall they be built in the midst of my people.
17 But if they *will* **shall** not *obey* **hearken**,
I *will* **utterly pluck up** **In uprooting, I shall uproot**
and destroy that *nation* **goyim**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh.**

13

Thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh* unto me,
Go and *get* **chattel** thee a *linen* **flax** girdle,
and *put* **set** it upon thy loins, and put it not in water.
2 So I *got* **chatted** a girdle
according to the word of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
and *put* **set** it on my loins.
3 And the word of *the LORD Yah Veh*
came unto me *the second time* **secondly**, saying,
4 Take the girdle that thou hast *got* **chatted**,
which is upon thy loins,
and arise, go to Euphrates,
and hide it there in a hole of the rock.
5 So I went, and hid it by Euphrates,
as *the LORD commanded* **Yah Veh misvahed** me.
6 And **so be** it came to pass
after **at the end of** many days,
that *the LORD Yah Veh* said unto me,
Arise, go to Euphrates, and take the girdle from thence,
which I *commanded* **misvahed** thee to hide there.
7 Then I went to Euphrates, and digged,
and took the girdle from the place where I had hid it:
and, behold, the girdle was *marred* **ruined**,
it was *profitable* **prospered** for *nothing* **nought**.
8 Then the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came unto me,
saying,
9 Thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*,
After this manner *will I mar* **shall I ruin**
the *pride* **pomp** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and the great *pride* **pomp** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
10 This evil people, which refuse to hear my words,
which walk in the *imagination* **warp** of their heart,
and walk after other *gods* **elohim**,
to serve them, and to *worship* **prostrate to** them,
shall *even* be as this girdle,
which *is good* **prospereth** for *nothing* **nought**.
11 For as the girdle
cleaveth **adhereth** to the loins of a man,
so have I caused to *cleave* **adhere** unto me
the whole house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
and the whole house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**;
that they might be unto me for a people, and for a name,
and for a *praise* **halal**, and for a *glory* **an adornment**:
but they *would not* hear **hearkened not**.
12 *Therefore* thou shalt *speak* **say** unto them this word;
Thus saith
the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Every *bottle* **bag** shall be filled with wine:
and they shall say unto thee,
In knowing, *Do we not certainly* know **we not**
that every *bottle* **bag** shall be filled with wine?
13 Then shalt thou say unto them,
Thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*, Behold,
I *will* **shall** fill all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of this land,
even the *kings* **sovereigns** that sit upon David's throne,
and the priests, and the prophets,
and all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
with *drunkenness* **intoxication**.
14 And I *will* **dash** **shall shatter** them
one **man** against *another* **brother**,
even the fathers and the sons together,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**:

THE FLAX GIRDLE

WINEBAGS

YIRME YAH 12, 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 And so be it,
after I uproot them, I return and compassion them,
return them — every man to his inheritance
and every man to his land.
16 And so be it,
if they diligently learn the ways of my people,
to oath by my name — Yah Veh lives!
As they taught my people to oath by Baal;
thus are they built midst my people.
17 And if they hearken not,
In uprooting, I uproot and destroy that goyim
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

13

Thus says Yah Veh to me,
Go and chattel yourself a flax girdle;
and set it on your loins and put it not in water.
2 And I chatted a girdle
according to the word of Yah Veh,
and set it on my loins.
3 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me secondly,
saying,
4 Take the girdle you chatted, on your loins,
and rise, go to Euphrates,
and hide it there in a hole of the rock.
5 — and I go and hide it by Euphrates
as Yah Veh misvahed me.
6 And so be it, at the end of many days,
Yah Veh says to me,
Rise, go to Euphrates, and take the girdle from thence,
which I misvahed you to hide there.
7 And I go to Euphrates, and dig,
and take the girdle from the place I hid it:
and behold, the girdle is ruined
— prospering for naught.
8 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
9 Thus says Yah Veh,
Thus I ruin the pomp of Yah Hudah
and the great pomp of Yeru Shalem.
10 This evil people, who refuses to hear my words,
who walk in the warp of their heart
and walk after other elohim
— to serve them and to prostrate to them,
becomes as this girdle, prospering for naught.
11 For as the girdle adheres to the loins of a man,
thus I have the whole house of Yisra El
and the whole house of Yah Hudah adhere to me
— an oracle of Yah Veh
to be to me for a people and for a name
and for a halal and for an adornment:
and they hearken not.
12 Say this word to them;
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
Every bag is filled with wine.
And they say to you,
In knowing, know we not
that every bag is filled with wine?
13 Then you say to them,
Thus says Yah Veh, Behold,
I fill all the settlers of this land,
even the sovereigns who sit on the throne of David
and the priests and the prophets
and all the settlers of Yeru Shalem
with intoxication:
14 and I shatter them, man against brother
— even the fathers and the sons together
— an oracle of Yah Veh:

THE FLAX GIRDLE

WINEBAGS

JEREMIAH 13, 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

I will **shall** not *pity* **compassion**,
nor spare, nor *have* **mercy**,
but *destroy* **ruin** them.

15 Hear ye, and *give ear* **hearken**; be not *proud* **lifted**:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded**

THE THREAT OF EXILE

16 Give *glory* **honour**
to the **LORD Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**,
before he cause darkness,
and before your feet *stumble* **stub**
upon the *dark* **evening breeze of the** mountains,
and, while ye look for light,
he *turn* **set** it into the shadow of death,
and *make it gross* **place dripping** darkness.

17 But if ye *will shall* not hear it,
my soul shall weep in *secret places* **coverts**
for at the face of your *pride* **arrogance**;
and mine eye shall weep sore,
and *run down* **drip** with tears,
because the LORD'S flock **Yah Veh's drove**
is *carried away* **captive captured**.

18 Say unto the *king* **sovereign** and to the *queen* **lady**,
Humble yourselves **Abase**, sit down:
for your *principalities* **headships**
shall *come down* **descend**,
even the crown of your *glory* **adornment**.

19 The cities of the south shall be shut up,
and none shall open *them*:
Judah **Yah Hudah** shall be *carried away* **captive exiled** all of it,
it shall be *wholly carried away* **captive exiled in shalom**.

20 Lift up your eyes,
and *behold* **see** them that come from the north:
where is the *flock* **drove** that was given thee,
thy *beautiful* **flock of adornment**?

21 What *wilt shalt* thou say
when he shall *punish* **visit upon** thee?
for thou hast taught them to be *captains* **chiliarchs**,
and as chief over thee:
shall not *sorrows* **pangs** take thee,
as a *woman in travail* **in birthing**?

22 And if thou say in thine heart,
Wherefore *come* **confront** these *things* upon me?
For the greatness of *thine iniquity* **thy perversity**
are thy *skirts discovered* **drappings exposed**,
and thy heels *made bare* **violated**.

23 Can the *Ethiopian change* **Kushiy overturn** his skin,
or the leopard his *spots* **streaks**?
then may ye also *do good* **be able to well—please**,
that are *accustomed* **discipled to do evil vilify**.

24 Therefore *will shall* I scatter them as the stubble
that passeth away by the wind of the wilderness.
25 This is thy *lot* **pebble**,

the portion of thy measures from me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**;
because thou hast forgotten me,
and *trusted* **confided** in falsehood.

26 Therefore *will shall* I *discover* **strip** thy *skirts* **drappings**
upon thy face,
that thy *shame* **abasement** may *appear* **be seen**.
27 I have seen thine adulteries, and thy neighings,
the *lewdness* **intrigue** of thy whoredom,
and thine abominations on the hills in the fields.
Woe unto thee, O *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem!**
wilt shalt thou not be *made clean* **purified**?
when shall it once be **until when**?

DROUGHT, FAMINE, SWORD, AND PESTILENCE

14 The word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
that came to *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** concerning the dearth.
2 *Judah* **Yah Hudah** mourneth,
and the *gates* **portals** thereof languish;
they are *black* **darkened** unto the *ground* **earth**;
and the *cry* **outcry** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
is *gone up* **ascendeth**.

3 And their *nobles* **mighty**
have sent their little *ones* to the waters:
they came to the *pits* **dugouts**, and found no water;
they returned with their *vessels* **instruments** empty;
they were *ashamed* **shamed** and *confounded* **ashamed**,
and covered their heads.

YIRME YAH 13, 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

I neither *compassion* nor spare nor mercy
— for their ruin.

15 Hear! And hearken! Not lofted!
— for Yah Veh has worded.

THE THREAT OF EXILE

16 Give honor to Yah Veh your Elohim
ere he causes darkness;
and ere your feet stub
on the evening breeze of the mountains:
and while you look for light,
he sets it into the shadow of death
and places dripping darkness:
17 and if you hear it not,
my soul weeps in coverts
at the face of your arrogance;
and my eye weeps sore and drips with tears,
for the drove of Yah Veh is captured.

18 Say to the sovereign and to the lady,
Abase! Sit!
— for your headships descend
— even the crown of your adornment.

19 The cities of the south are shut
and no one opens:
Yah Hudah is exiled — all of her — exiled in shalom.

20 Lift your eyes,
and see them coming from the north!
Where is the drove that was given you
— your flock of adornment?
21 What say you when he visits on you?
— for you taught them to be chiliarchs,
and as chief over you:
pangs, overtake they you not, as in birthing?

22 And if you say in your heart,
Why confront these on me?
For the greatness of your perversity
your drappings are exposed and your heels violated.

23 Can the Kushiy turn his skin?
Or the leopard his streaks?
You also are able to well—please
— you who are discipled to vilify.
24 And I scatter them as the stubble
that passes away by the wind of the wilderness.

25 This is your pebble
— the portion of your measures from me
— an oracle of Yah Veh;
because you forget me and confide in falsehood.

26 I also strip your drappings in front of your face
so that your abasement is seen:
27 I see your adulteries and your neighings
— the intrigue of your whoredom
and your abominations on the hills in the fields!
Woe to you, O Yeru Shalem!
Purify you not yourselves? Until when?

DROUGHT, FAMINE, SWORD, AND PESTILENCE

14 And so be the word of Yah Veh to Yirme Yah
concerning the dearth:
2 Yah Hudah mourns and the portals languish
— darkened to the earth;
and the outcry of Yeru Shalem ascends:
3 and the mighty send their little *ones* to the waters:
they come to the dugouts and find no water;
they return with their instruments empty:
they shame and are ashamed and cover their heads:

JEREMIAH 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 Because the ground soil is *chapt* broken,
for there was no rain **downpour** in the earth,
the *plowmen cultivators* were *ashamed shamed*,
they covered their heads.

5 Yea, the hind also *calved* **birthed** in the field,
and forsook it, because there was no grass **sprout**.

6 And the wild asses **runners**
did stand in the *high places* **barrens**,
they *snuffed up* **gulped** the wind like *dragons* **monsters**;
their eyes *did fail* **finished off**,
because there was no grass **herbage**.

7 O LORD **Yah Veh**,
though our *iniquities* **perversities** *testify* answer against us,
do **workest** thou it for thy name's sake:
for our *backslidings* **apostasies**
are many **abound by the myriads**;
we have sinned against thee.

8 O the *hope* **expectation** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
the saviour *thereof* in time of *trouble* **tribulation**,
why shouldst thou be
as a *stranger* **sojourner** in the land,
and as a *wayfaring man* **caravan**
that *turneth aside* **spreadeth**
to *tarry for a night* **stay overnight**?

9 Why shouldst thou be
as a man *astonied* **dumbfounded**,
as a mighty *man* that cannot save?
yet thou, O LORD **Yah Veh**, art in the midst of us,
and we are called by thy name; leave us not.

10 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh** unto this people,
Thus have they loved to wander,
they have not *refrained* **spared** their feet,
therefore *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
doth not accept **is not pleased in** them;
he *will now* **shall, I beseech**,
remember their *iniquity* **perversity**, and visit their sins.

11 Then said *the LORD* **Yah Veh** unto me,
Pray not for this people for their good.

12 When they fast, I *will* **shall** not hear their *cry* **shout**;
and when they *offer burnt offering* **holocaust a holocaust**
and an *oblation* **offering**,
I *will not accept them* **they shall not please me**:
but I *will consume* **shall finish** them **off** by the sword,
and by the famine, and by the pestilence.

13 Then said I, *Ah* **Aha, Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh!**
behold, the prophets say unto them,
Ye shall not see the sword, neither shall ye have famine;
but I *will* **shall** give you
assured peace **shalom of truth** in this place.

14 Then *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto me,
The prophets prophesy *lies* **falsehoods** in my name:
I sent them not, neither have I *commanded* **misvahed** them,
neither *spake* **worded** unto them:
they prophesy unto you a false vision and divination,
and a *thing of nought* **worthlessness**,
and the deceit of their heart.

15 Therefore thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
concerning the prophets that prophesy in my name,
and I sent them not,
yet they say, Sword and famine shall not be in this land;
By sword and famine shall those prophets be consumed.

16 And the people to whom they prophesy
shall be cast out
in the *streets* **outways** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
because at the face of the famine and the sword;
and they shall have none to *bury* **entomb** them,
them, their *wives* **women**,
nor their sons, nor their daughters:
for I *will* **shall** pour their *wickedness* **evil** upon them.

17 Therefore thou shalt say this word unto them;
Let mine eyes *run* **drip** with tears night and day,
and let them not cease:
for the virgin daughter of my people
is broken with a great *breach* **breaking**,
with a *very grievous blow* **mighty stroking stroke**.

18 If I go forth into the field,
then behold! the *slain* **pierced** with the sword!
and if I enter into the city,
then behold! *them that are sick with* **the sickness of** famine!

YIRME YAH 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 because the soil is broken
for there is no downpour in the earth:
the cultivators shame; they cover their heads.

5 And even the hind births in the field, and forsakes;
because there is no sprout:

6 and the wild runners stand in the barrens;
they gulp the wind as monsters;
their eyes finish off because there is no herbage.

7 O Yah Veh,
though our perversities answer against us,
work this for sake of your name:
for our apostasies abound by the myriads;
we sin against you.

8 O the expectation of Yisra El,
the saviour in time of tribulation!
Why are you as a sojourner in the land?
And as a caravan that spreads to stay overnight?
Why are you as a man dumbfounded
— as a mighty who cannot save?
Yet you, O Yah Veh, *are* among us;
and we are called by your name;
leave us not.

10 Thus says Yah Veh to this people,
Thus they love to wander; they spare not their feet:
so Yah Veh is not pleased in them;
now he remembers their perversity
and visits their sins.

11 And Yah Veh says to me,
Pray not for this people for their good.

12 When they fast,
I hear not their shout;
and when they holocaust a holocaust and an offering,
they please me not:
and I finish them off by the sword
and by the famine and by the pestilence.

13 And I say, Aha! Adonay Yah Veh!
Behold, the prophets say to them,
You neither see the sword, nor famine;
for I give you the shalom of truth in this place.

14 And Yah Veh says to me,
The prophets prophesy falsehoods in my name:
I neither sent them nor misvahed them
nor worded to them:
they prophesy to you a false vision and divination
and worthlessness and the deceit of their heart.

15 So thus says Yah Veh
concerning the prophets who prophesy in my name,
whom I sent not,
yet they say,
Sword and famine become not in this land;
the sword and famine consumes those prophets:

16 and the people to whom they prophesy
are cast out in the outways of Yeru Shalem
at the face of the famine and the sword:
and there is no one to entomb them
— them, their women, their sons and their daughters:
for I pour their evil on them.
You, say this word to them;
My eyes drip with tears night and day
and they cease not:
for the virgin daughter of my people
is broken with a great breaking
— with a mighty stroking stroke.

18 If I go forth into the field,
then behold, the pierced with the sword!
And if I enter the city,
then behold, the sickness of famine!

JEREMIAH 14, 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

yea, both the prophet and the priest
go about **merchandise** into a land that they know not.
19 In **spurning**,
Hast thou *utterly rejected Judah* **spurned Yah Hudah?**
hath thy soul loathed **Zion Siyon?**
why hast thou smitten us, and there is no healing for us?
we *looked for peace* **awaited shalom**,
and there is no good;
and for the time of healing, and behold *trouble* **fright!**
20 We acknowledge, O **LORD Yah Veh**, our wickedness,
and the *iniquity* **perversity** of our fathers:
for we have sinned against thee.
21 Do not *abhor* **scorn** us, for thy name's sake,
do not disgrace the throne of thy *glory* **honour**:
remember, break not thy covenant with us.
22 Are there any among the vanities of the *Gentiles* **goyim**
that can cause *rain* **downpour?**
or can the heavens give showers?
art not thou he, O **LORD Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim?**
therefore we *will wait upon* **shall await** thee:
for thou hast *made* **worked** all these *things*.

15

Then said *the LORD* **Yah Veh** unto me,
Though *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Samuel* **Shemu El**
stood *before me* **at my face**,
yet my *mind* **soul** could not be toward this people:
cast **send** them *out of my sight* **from my face**,
and let them go forth.
2 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
if they say unto thee, Whither shall we go forth?
then thou shalt *tell* **say** to them,
Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
Such as are for death, to death;
and such as are for the sword, to the sword;
and such as are for the famine, to the famine;
and such as are for the captivity, to the captivity.
3 And I *will appoint over* **shall visit upon** them
four kinds **families**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**:
the sword to *slay* **slaughter**, and the dogs to *tear* **drag**,
and the *fowls* **flyers** of the *heaven* **heavens**,
and the *beasts* **animals** of the earth,
to devour and *destroy* **ruin**.
4 And I *will cause* **shall give** them
to be removed **for an agitation**
into all *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the earth,
because of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**
the son of *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
for that which he *did* **worked** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
5 For who shall *have pity upon* **compassion** thee,
O *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem?**
or who shall *bemoan* **wag over** thee?
or who shall *go* **turn** aside
to ask *how thou doest* **of thy shalom?**
6 Thou hast *forsaken* **abandoned** me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
thou art gone backward:
therefore *will* **shall** I *stretch out* **spread** my hand against thee,
and *destroy* **ruin** thee; I am weary with *repenting* **sighing**.
7 And I *will* **shall** fan them with a *fan* **winnowing basket**
in the *gates* **portals** of the land;
I *will* **shall** bereave them *of children*,
I *will* **shall** destroy my people
since they return not from their ways.
8 Their widows are *increased* **mighty** to me
above the sand of the seas:
I have brought upon them
against the mother of the *young men* **youths**
a *spoiler* **ravager** at *noonday* **noon**:
I have caused *him* to fall upon it suddenly,
and terrors upon the city.
9 She that hath *borne* **birthed** seven languisheth:
she hath *given up* **expired** the *ghost* **soul**;
her sun is gone down while it was yet day:
she hath been *ashamed* **shamed** and *confounded* **blushed**:
and the *residue* **survivors** of them
will I *deliver* **shall I give** to the sword
before **at the face** of their enemies,

JUDGMENT

YIRME YAH 14, 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Yes, both the prophet and the priest
merchandise into a land they know not.
19 In spurning, spurn you Yah Hudah?
Loathes your soul Siyon?
Why smite you us? And is there no healing for us?
We await shalom, and there is no good;
and for the time of healing, and behold, fright.
20 We acknowledge, O Yah Veh, our wickedness,
and the perversity of our fathers:
for we sinned against you.
21 Scorn us not, for sake of your name
— the throne of your honor:
remember, break not your covenant with us.
22 Are there any among the vanities of the goyim
who can cause downpour?
Or can the heavens give showers?
Are you not he, O Yah Veh our Elohim?
So we await you: for you worked all these.

JUDGMENT

And Yah Veh says to me,
Though Mosheh and Shemu El stand at my face,
yet my soul is not toward this people:
send them from my face, and go.
2 And so be it,
if they say to you, Where go we?
you say to them, Thus says Yah Veh:
Such as are for death, to death;
and such as are for the sword, to the sword;
and such as are for the famine, to the famine;
and such as are for the captivity, to the captivity:
3 and upon them I visit four families
— an oracle of Yah Veh
the sword to slaughter
and the dogs to drag
and the flyers of the heavens
and the animals of the earth
to devour and ruin:
4 and I give them for an agitation
into all sovereigndoms of the earth,
because of Menash Sheh
the son of Yechizqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah,
for what he worked in Yeru Shalem.
5 For who compassions you, O Yeru Shalem?
And who wags over you?
And who turns aside to ask of your shalom?
6 You abandoned me
— an oracle of Yah Veh;
you go backward:
and I spread my hand against you, and ruin you;
I weary with sighing:
7 and I fan them with a winnowing basket
in the portals of the land;
I bereave them;
I destroy my people
since they return not from their ways.
8 Their widows are mighty to me
above the sand of the seas:
I bring on them
— against the mother of the youths
a ravager at noon:
9 I fell her suddenly with terrors and anguish:
she who birthed seven, languishes;
her soul expires:
her sun goes down while it is yet day;
she shames and blushes:
and I give their survivors to the sword
at the face of their enemies

JEREMIAH 15, 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.

10 Woe is me, my mother,
that thou hast *borne birthed* me a man of strife
and a man of contention to the whole earth!
I have neither lent on usury,
nor men have lent to me on usury;
yet every one of them doth *curse abase* me.
11 *The LORD Yah Veh said,*
Verily it shall be well with thy remnant
In releasing, I release you for good;
verily I will cause the enemy to entreat thee well
did I not intercede for thee with the enemy
in the time of evil
and in the time of *affliction. tribulation?*
12 *Shall iron break the northern iron*
Breaketh one iron — iron from the north
and the *steel copper?*
13 Thy *substance valuables* and thy treasures
will shall I give to the *spoil plunder* without price,
and that for all thy sins, even in all thy borders.
14 And I *will make shall cause* thee to pass
with thine enemies into a land which thou knowest not:
for a fire is kindled in *mine anger my wrath*,
which shall burn upon you.
15 O **LORD Yah Veh**, thou knowest:
remember me, and visit me,
and *revenge avenge* me of my *persecutors pursuers*;
take me not away
in thy *longsuffering the length of thy wrath*:
know that for thy sake
I have *suffered rebuke borne reproach*.
16 Thy words were found, and I did eat them;
and thy word was unto me
the *joy rejoicing* and *rejoicing cheerfulness* of mine heart:
for I am called by thy name,
O **LORD God of hosts Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**.
17 I sat not in the *assembly private counsel*
of the *mockers them that ridicule*,
nor *rejoiced jumped for joy*;
I sat alone because of thy hand:
for thou hast filled me with *indignation rage*.
18 Why is my pain perpetual, and my wound incurable,
which refuseth to be healed?
Wilt Shalt thou be altogether unto me as a liar,
and as waters that *fail are not trustworthy*?
19 Therefore thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*,
If thou return, then *will shall* I bring thee again,
and thou shalt stand *before me at my face*:
and if thou take forth the *precious esteemed*
from the *vile glutton*,
thou shalt be as my mouth:
let them return unto thee; but return not thou unto them.
20 And I *will make shall give* thee unto this people
a fenced *brasen copper* wall:
and they shall fight against thee,
but they shall not prevail against thee:
for I am with thee to save thee and to *deliver rescue* thee,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
21 And I *will deliver shall rescue* thee
out of the *hand palm* of the *wicked evil*,
and I *will shall* redeem thee
out of the hand of the *terrible tyrant*.

SWORD AND FAMINE

16 The word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came also unto me,
saying,
2 Thou shalt not take thee a *wife woman*,
neither shalt thou have sons or daughters in this place.
3 For thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*
concerning the sons and concerning the daughters
that are *born birthed* in this place,
and concerning their mothers that *bare birthed* them,
and concerning their fathers
that *begat birthed* them in this land;
4 They shall die of *grievous deaths of sicknesses*;
they shall not be *lamented chopped after*;
neither shall they be *buried entombed*;
but they shall be as dung upon the face of the *earth soil*:
and they shall be *consumed finished off*
by the sword, and by famine;

YIRME YAH 15, 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— an oracle of Yah Veh.

10 Woe is me, my mother,
that you birthed me — a man of strife
and a man of contention to the whole earth!
I neither lent on usury
nor men lent to me on usury;
every one of them abases me.
11 Yah Veh says,
In releasing, I release you for good;
Interceded I not for you with the enemy
in the time of evil and in the time of tribulation?
12 Breaks one iron — iron from the north?
And copper?
13 I give your valuables and your treasures
to the plunder without price;
and that for all your sins, even in all your borders:
and I pass you and your enemies
into a land you know not:
for a fire kindles in my wrath
which burns on you.
15 O Yah Veh, you know:
remember me and visit me
and avenge me of my pursuers;
take me not away in the length of your wrath:
know that for your sake, I bear reproach.
16 I found your words and I consume them;
and your word to me
is the rejoicing and cheerfulness of my heart:
for your name is called on me,
O Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth.
17 I neither sat in the private counsel of ridiculers
nor jumped for joy:
I sat alone because of your hand:
for you filled me with rage.
18 Why becomes my pain perpetual
and my wound incurable
— refusing to be healed?
— altogether to me as a liar,
and as waters not trustworthy?
19 So thus says Yah Veh,
If you return,
then I return you and stand you at my face:
and if you take the esteemed from the glutton,
you become as my mouth:
have them return to you;
and you return not to them:
and I give this people to you
as a fenced copper wall:
and they fight against you,
and they prevail not against you:
for I am with you to save you and to rescue you
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and I rescue you from the palm of the evil
and I redeem you from the hand of the tyrant.

SWORD AND FAMINE

16 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 You, neither take a woman
nor have sons or daughters in this place:
3 for thus says Yah Veh
concerning the sons and concerning the daughters
birthed in this place,
and concerning their mothers who birth them,
and concerning their fathers who birth them
in this land:
4 they die deaths of sicknesses;
— neither chopped after nor entombed;
— as dung on the face of the soil:
— finished off by the sword and by famine;

JEREMIAH 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and their carcasses shall be meat
for the *fowls* **flyers** of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and for the *beasts* **animals** of the earth.
5 For thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Enter not into the house of a **feast of mourning**,
neither go to *lament* **chop** nor *bemoan* **wag over** them:
for I have *taken away* **gathered** my *peace* **shalom**
from this people,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
even *lovingkindness* **mercy** and mercies.
6 Both the great and the *small* **lesser** shall die in this land:
they shall not be *buried* **entombed**,
neither shall *men* **lament for them** **chopped over**,
nor *cut* **incise** themselves,
nor *make* **balden** themselves *bald* for them:
7 Neither shall *men* **tear** **they separate** *themselves*
for them in mourning,
to *comfort* **sigh over** them for the dead;
neither shall *men* **give** **they cause** them
the cup of consolation to drink
for their father or for their mother.
8 Thou shalt not *also* go
into the house of *feasting* **banquets**,
to sit with them to eat and to drink.
9 For thus saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the God **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Behold,
I *will* **shall** cause to *cease* **shabbathize** out of this place
in your eyes, and in your days,
the voice of *mirth* **rejoicing**,
and the voice of *gladness* **cheerfulness**,
the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride.
10 And **so be** it shall *come to pass*,
when thou shalt *shew* **tell** this people all these words,
and they shall say unto thee,
Wherefore hath *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
pronounced **worded** all this great evil against us?
or what is our *iniquity* **perversity**?
or what is our sin that we have *committed* **sinned** against
the LORD **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**?
11 Then shalt thou say unto them,
Because your fathers have forsaken me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
and have walked after other *gods* **elohim**,
and have served them,
and have *worshipped* **prostrated to** them,
and have forsaken me,
and have not *kept* **guarded** my *law* **torah**;
12 And **in working**,
ye have *done worse* **worked vilifying** *than* **above** your fathers;
for, behold, ye walk every *one* **man**
after the *imagination* **warp** of his evil heart,
that they may not hearken unto me:
13 Therefore *will* **shall** I cast you out of this land
into a land that ye know not, neither ye nor your fathers;
and there shall ye serve other *gods* **elohim** day and night;
where I *will* **shall** not *shew* **give** you *favour* **charism**.
14 Therefore, behold, the days come,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that it shall no more be said, *The LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth,
that *brought up* **ascended**
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
15 But, *The LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth,
that *brought up* **ascended** the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
from the land of the north,
and from all the lands whither he had driven them:
and I *will* **bring** **shall return** them *again*
into their *land* **soil** that I gave unto their fathers.
16 Behold, I *will* **shall** send for many fishers,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
and they shall fish them;
and after *will* **shall** I send for many hunters,
and they shall hunt them from every mountain,
and from every hill, and out of the holes of the rocks.
17 For mine eyes are upon all their ways:
they are not hid from my face,
neither is their *iniquity* **perversity**
hid from **in front of** mine eyes.

YIRME YAH 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and their carcasses are meat
for the flyers of the heavens
and for the animals of the earth.
5 For thus says Yah Veh,
Neither enter the house of a feast of mourning,
nor go to chop nor wag over them:
for I gather my shalom from this people
— an oracle of Yah Veh
even mercy and mercies.
6 Both the great and the lesser die in this land:
neither entombed nor chopped over;
neither incise nor balden yourselves for them:
7 neither separate yourselves for them in mourning
to sigh over them for the dead;
nor drink the cup of consolation
for their father or for their mother:
8 nor go into the house of banquets
to sit with them to eat and to drink.
9 For thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth, Elohim of Yisra El;
Behold, from this place
— in your eyes and in your days
I shabbathize the voice of rejoicing
and the voice of cheerfulness:
the voice of the bridegroom
and the voice of the bride.
10 And so be it,
when you tell this people all these words,
and they say to you,
Why words Yah Veh all this great evil against us?
Yes, what is our perversity?
And what sin
sinned we against Yah Veh our Elohim?
11 Then you say to them,
Because your fathers forsook me
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and walked after other elohim
and served them and prostrated to them
— forsook me and not guarded my torah:
12 and in working,
you worked vilification above your fathers;
for behold, every man of you
walks after the warp of his evil heart
that they not hearken to me:
and I cast you from this land
into a land that you know not
— you or your fathers;
and there you serve other elohim day and night;
where I give you no charism.
13 So behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that it is no more said, Yah Veh lives!
— who ascended the sons of Yisra El
from the land of Misrayim:
14 but, Yah Veh lives!
— who ascended the sons of Yisra El
from the land of the north,
and from all the lands where he drove them:
and I return them to the soil I gave to their fathers.
15 Behold, I send for many fishers;
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and they fish them:
and afterward, I send for many hunters;
and they hunt them from every mountain
and from every hill and from the holes of the rocks.
16 For my eyes are on all their ways:
they neither hide from my face,
nor hide their perversity in front of my eyes.

JEREMIAH 16, 17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 And first I will recompense shall shalam
for their *iniquity* **perversity** and their sin double;
because they have *defiled* **profaned** my land,
they have filled mine inheritance
with the carcasses of their *detestable* **abominations**
and *abominable things* **abhorrences**.
19 O LORD **Yah Veh**,
my strength, and my *fortress* **stronghold**,
and my *refuge* **retreat** in the day of *affliction* **tribulation**,
the *Gentiles* **goyim** shall come unto thee
from the *ends* **finalities** of the earth,
and shall say,
Surely our fathers have inherited *lies* **falsehoods**,
vanity, and *things* wherein there is no *profit* **benefit**.
20 Shall a man make gods **humanity work** **elohim**
unto himself,
and they are *no gods* **be no elohim**?
21 Therefore, behold,
I will *this once* **shall at this time** cause them to know,
I will **shall** cause them to know mine hand and my might;
and they shall know
that my name is *The LORD* **Yah Veh**.

THE SIN OF YAH HUDAH

17 The sin of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
is *written* **engraved** with a *pen* **stylus** of iron,
and with the *point* **nail** of a *diamond* **brier**:
it is *graven* **engraved** upon the table of their heart,
and upon the horns of your **sacrifice** altars;
2 Whilst their *children* **sons**
remember their **sacrifice** altars and their *groves* **asherah**
by the green trees upon the high hills.
3 O my mountain in the field,
I will **shall** give
thy *substance* **valuables** and all thy treasures
to the *spoil* **plunder**,
and thy *high places* **bamahs** for sin,
throughout all thy borders.
4 And thou, even thyself,
shalt *discontinue* **release** from thine *heritage* **inheritance**
that I gave thee;
and I will **shall** cause thee to serve thine enemies
in the land which thou knowest not:
for ye have kindled a fire in *mine anger* **my wrath**,
which shall burn *for ever* **eternally**.
5 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
Cursed be the *man* **mighty**
that *trusteth* **confideth** in *man* **humanity**,
and *maketh* **setteth** flesh his arm,
and whose heart
departeth **turneth aside** from *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
6 For he shall be like the *heath* **naked** in the *desert* **plain**,
and shall not see when good cometh;
but shall *inhabit* **tabernacle**
in the *parched places* **scorches** in the wilderness,
in a salt land and not *inhabited* **settled**.
7 Blessed is the *man* **mighty**
that *trusteth* **confideth** in *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and whose *hope* **the LORD** **confidence** **Yah Veh** is.
8 For he shall be as a tree
planted **transplanted** by the waters,
and that spreadeth *out* her roots
by the *river* **stream**,
and shall not see when heat cometh,
but her leaf shall be green;
and shall not be *careful* **concerned** in the year of drought,
neither shall *cease* **depart** from *yielding* **working** fruit.
9 The heart is *deceitful* **crooked** above all *things*,
and *desperately wicked* **incurable**:
who *can know* **knoweth** it?
10 I *the LORD* **search** **Yah Veh** **probe** the heart,
I try **proof** the reins,
even to give every man according to his ways,
and according to the fruit of his *doings* **exploitations**.
11 As the partridge *sitteth on eggs* **broodeth**,
and *hatcheth them* **birtheth** not;
so he that *getteth* **worketh** riches,
and not by *right* **judgment**,
shall *leave* **forsake** them in the *midst* **half** of his days,
and at his end shall be a fool.

YIRME YAH 16, 17

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 And first I shalam double
for their perversity and their sin;
because they profaned my land
— they filled my inheritance
with the carcasses of their abominations
and abhorrences.
19 O Yah Veh, my strength, and my stronghold;
and my retreat in the day of tribulation,
the goyim come to you
from the finalities of the earth, and say,
our fathers inherited falsehoods;
vanity, wherein no one benefits.
20 Works humanity elohim for himself?
They are non—elohim!
21 So behold,
at this time I have them know
— I have them know my hand and my might;
and they know my name *is* Yah Veh.

THE SIN OF YAH HUDAH

17 The sin of Yah Hudah
is engraved with a stylus of iron
and with the nail of a brier
— engraved on the table of their heart
and on the horns of your sacrifice altars;
as their sons remember
their sacrifice altars and their asherah
by the green trees; by the high hills.
3 O my mountain in the field,
I give your valuables and all your treasures
for plunder,
and your bamahs for sin throughout all your borders:
and you released yourself
from the inheritance I gave you;
and I had you to serve your enemies
in the land you knew not:
for you kindled a fire in my wrath
which burns eternally.
5 Thus says Yah Veh;
Cursed be the mighty who confide in humanity;
who set flesh as his arm;
who turns his heart from Yah Veh.
6 And he becomes as the naked in the plain,
and sees not when good comes;
and tabernacles in the scorches in the wilderness
— in a salt land, not settled.
7 Blessed — the mighty who confide in Yah Veh,
and whose confidence is in Yah Veh:
who is as a tree transplanted by the waters
who spreads her roots by the stream;
and sees not when heat comes,
her leaf is green
— neither concerned in the year of drought
nor departs from working fruit.
9 The heart is crooked above all and incurable:
who knows it?
10 I Yah Veh probe the heart; proof the reins;
even to give every man according to his ways
and according to the fruit of his exploitations.
The partridge broods, and births not:
thus is he who works riches, but not by justness
— who forsakes them in the half of his days
and at his end, is a fool.

JEREMIAH 17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 A glorious **honorable** high throne from the beginning
is the place of our **sanctuary holies**.

13 O **LORD Yah Veh**,
the **hope expectation** of **Israel Yisra El**,
all that forsake thee shall *be ashamed* **shame**,
and they that *depart* **turn aside** from me
shall be *written* **inscribed** in the earth,
because they have forsaken *the* **LORD Yah Veh**,
the fountain of living waters.

14 Heal me, O **LORD Yah Veh**, and I shall be healed;
save me, and I shall be saved:
for thou art my **praise halal**.

15 Behold, they say unto me,
Where is the word of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**?
let it come *now* **I beseech**.

16 As for me, I have not hastened
from *being a pastor to follow* **tending after** thee:
neither have I desired the *woeful* **incurable** day;
thou knowest:
that which *came* **proceeded** out of my lips
was *right before thee* **straightforward at thy face**.

17 Be not a *terror* **ruin** unto me:
thou art my **hope refuge** in the day of evil.

18 Let them *be confounded* **shame**
that *persecute* **pursue** me,
but let not me *be confounded* **shame**:
let them *be dismayed* **dismay**,
but let not me *be dismayed* **dismay**:
bring upon them the day of evil,
and *destroy* **break** them
with double *destruction* **breaking**.

HALLOWING THE SHABBATH

19 Thus said *the* **LORD Yah Veh** unto me;
Go and stand in the **gate portal**
of the *children* **sons** of the people,
whereby the *kings* **sovereigns** of **Judah Yah Hudah**
come in, and by the which they go out,
and in all the **gates portals** of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**;
And say unto them,
Hear ye the word of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**,
ye *kings* **sovereigns** of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and all **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
that enter in by these **gates portals**:
Thus saith *the* **LORD Yah Veh**;
Take heed to yourselves **Guard your souls**,
and bear no burden on the *sabbath* **shabbath** day,
nor bring it in
by the **gates portals** of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**;
Neither carry forth a burden out of your houses
on the *sabbath* **shabbath** day,
neither *do* **work** ye any work,
but hallow ye the *sabbath* **shabbath** day,
as I *commanded* **misvahed** your fathers.

23 But they *obeyed* **hearkened** not,
neither *inclined* **spread** their ear,
but *made* **hardened** their neck *stiff*,
that they might not hear,
nor *receive instruction* **take discipline**.

24 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
in hearkening, if ye *diligently* **hearken hearken** unto me,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**,
to bring in no burden
through the **gates portals** of this city
on the *sabbath* **shabbath** day,
but hallow the *sabbath* **shabbath** day,
to *do* **work** no work therein;

25 Then shall there enter into the **gates portals** of this city
kings **sovereigns** and *princes* **governors**
sitting upon the throne of David,
riding in chariots and on horses, they,
and their *princes* **governors**,
the men of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**:
and this city shall *remain for ever* **settle eternally**.

26 And they shall come
from the cities of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and from *the places* **round** about **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
and from the land of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,

YIRME YAH 17

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 An honorable high throne from the beginning
is the place of our holies.

13 O Yah Veh, the expectation of Yisra El,
all who forsake you, shame;
and they who turn aside from me
are inscribed in the earth,
because they forsook Yah Veh
the fountain of living waters.

14 Heal me, O Yah Veh, and I am healed;
save me, and I am saved:
for you are my halal.

15 Behold, they say to me,
Where is the word of Yah Veh?
Come, I beseech!

16 I neither hasten from tending after you
nor desire I the incurable day:
you, you know that what proceeds from my lips
is straightforward at your face.
Be not my ruin:
you *are* my refuge in the day of evil.

18 Have them shame who pursue me;
and me, not shame:
have them dismay;
and me, not dismay:
bring on them the day of evil,
and break them with double breaking.

HALLOWING THE SHABBATH

19 Thus says Yah Veh to me;
Go and stand in the portal of the sons of the people
whereby the sovereigns of Yah Hudah come
and whereby they go;
and in all the portals of Yeru Shalem:
and say to them,
Hear the word of Yah Veh
— you sovereigns of Yah Hudah and all Yah Hudah
and all the settlers of Yeru Shalem
entering in by these portals.

21 Thus says Yah Veh, Guard your souls;
and neither bear a burden on the shabbath day
nor bring it in by the portals of Yeru Shalem:
neither carry forth a burden from your houses
on the shabbath day
nor work any work;
but hallow the shabbath day
as I misvahed your fathers:

23 and they neither hearken nor spread their ear;
and harden their neck
so that they neither hear nor take discipline.

24 And so be it,
in hearkening, if ye hearken to me
— an oracle of Yah Veh
to bring in no burden
through the portals of this city on the shabbath day
— and hallow the shabbath day
to work no work therein;

25 then there enter the portals of this city
sovereigns and governors on the throne of David
riding in chariots and on horses
— they and their governors
— the men of Yah Hudah
and the settlers of Yeru Shalem:
and they settle this city eternally:

26 and they come from the cities of Yah Hudah
and all around Yeru Shalem
and from the land of Ben Yamin

JEREMIAH 17, 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and from the *plain lowland*, and from the mountains,
and from the south,
bringing *burnt offerings holocausts*, and sacrifices,
and *meat offerings*, and incense,
and bringing *sacrifices of praise spread hands*,
unto the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
27 But if ye *will shall* not hearken unto me
to hallow the *sabbath shabbath* day,
and not to bear a burden,
even entering in
at the *gates portals* of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
on the *sabbath shabbath* day;
then *will shall* I kindle a fire in the *gates portals thereof*,
and it shall devour
the *palaces citadels* of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and it shall not be quenched.

18

The word which came to *Jeremiah Yirme Yah*
from the **LORD Yah Veh**, saying,
2 Arise,
and go down **descend** to the *potter's former's* house,
and there I *will shall* cause thee to hear my words.
3 Then I *went down descended*
to the *potter's former's* house, and, behold,
he *wrought worked* a work on the *wheels stones*.
4 And the *vessel instrument*
that he *made worked* of *clay mortar*
was *marred ruined*
as mortar in the hand of the *potter former*:
so he *made it again turned and worked*
another *vessel instrument*,
as seemed *good straight*
to the *potter former* to *make work* it.
5 Then the word of the **LORD Yah Veh** came to me,
saying,
6 O house of *Israel Yisra El*,
cannot I *do work* with you as this *potter former*?
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
Behold,
as the *clay is mortar* in the *potter's former's* hand,
so are ye in mine hand, O house of *Israel Yisra El*.
7 At what *instant blink* I shall *speak word*
concerning a *nation goyim*,
and concerning a *kingdom sovereignty*,
to *pluck up uproot*, and to pull down, and to destroy it;
8 If that *nation goyim*,
against whom I have *pronounced worded*,
turn from their evil,
I *will repent shall sigh* of the evil
that I *thought fabricated* to *do work* unto them.
9 And at what *instant blink* I shall *speak word*
concerning a *nation goyim*, and concerning a kingdom,
to build and to plant it;
10 If it *do work* evil in my *sight eyes*,
that it *obey hearken* not *unto* my voice,
then I *will repent shall sigh* of the good,
wherewith I said
I *would benefit them should well—please*.
11 Now therefore go to **I beseech**,
speak to the men of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and to the *inhabitants settlers* of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
saying, Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**;
Behold, I *frame form* evil against you,
and *devise fabricate* a *device fabrication* against you:
return ye *now I beseech*,
every *one man* from his evil way,
and *make well—please in* your ways
and your *doings good exploitations*.
12 And they said, *There is no hope I quit!*
but we *will shall* walk after our own *devices fabrications*,
and we *will every one shall each man*
do work the *imagination warp* of his evil heart.
13 Therefore thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**;
Ask ye *now I beseech*, among the *heathen goyim*,
who hath heard such *things*:
the virgin of *Israel Yisra El*
hath *done a very horrible thing worked mighty horribly*.
14 *Will a man leave Shall* the snow of Lebanon **cease**
which cometh from the rock of the field?

THE FORMER

YIRME YAH 17, 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and from the lowland and from the mountains
and from the south
— bringing holocausts and sacrifices
and offerings and incense;
and bringing spread hands to the house of Yah Veh.
27 And if you hearken not to me
to hallow the shabbath day,
and to not bear a burden,
even entering at the portals of Yeru Shalem
on the shabbath day;
then I kindle a fire in the portals;
and it consumes the citadels of Yeru Shalem,
and quenches not.

18

So be the word to Yirme Yah from Yah Veh,
saying,
2 Rise and descend to the house of the former;
and there you hear my words.
3 And I descend to the house of the former;
and, behold, he works a work on the stones:
4 and the instrument he works of mortar ruins
— as mortar in the hand of the former:
so he turns and works another instrument,
as seems straight in the eyes of the former to work.
5 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
6 O house of Yisra El,
cannot I work with you as this former *works*?
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
Behold,
as the mortar in the hand of the former,
so are you in my hand, O house of Yisra El.
7 At that blink, when I word concerning a goyim,
and concerning a sovereignty,
to uproot — and to pull down — and to destroy
8 — if that goyim, against whom I word,
turns from their evil,
then I sigh of the evil I fabricate to work to them.
9 And at that blink, when I word concerning a goyim
and concerning a kingdom — to build and to plant;
10 If it works evil in my eyes,
that it hearkens not to my voice,
then I sigh of the good wherewith I said
I *am well—pleased*.
11 And now I beseech,
speak to the men of Yah Hudah
and to the settlers of Yeru Shalem,
saying, Thus says Yah Veh;
Behold, I form evil against you,
and fabricate a fabrication against you:
you, return I beseech
— every man from his evil way,
and well—please in your ways
and your exploitations.
12 And they say, I quit!
For we walk after our own fabrications,
and each man works the warp of his evil heart.
13 So thus says Yah Veh;
Ask I beseech you, among the goyim,
Who ever heard such?
The virgin of Yisra El works mighty horribly.
14 Ceases the snow of Lebanon
from the rock of the field?

THE FORMER

JEREMIAH 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

or shall the **cold strange cool** flowing waters
that come from another place be forsaken **be uprooted?**
15 Because my people hath forgotten me,
they have **burned incense incensed** to vanity,
and they have caused them
to **stumble falter** in their ways
from the **ancient eternal** paths,
to walk in paths, in a way not cast **raised up**;
16 To make **set** their land desolate,
and a **perpetual an eternal** hissing;
every one that passeth thereby
shall be **astonished astonish**, and wag his head.
17 I will **shall** scatter them as with an east wind
before at the face of the enemy;
I will **shall shew have** them **see** the **back neck**,
and not the face,
in the day of their calamity.
18 Then said they,
Come and let us **devise devices fabricate fabrications**
against **Jeremiah Yirme Yah**;
for the **law torah** shall not **perish destruct** from the priest,
nor counsel from the wise,
nor the word from the prophet.
Come, and let us smite him with the tongue,
and let us not **give heed hearken**
to **unto** any of his words.
19 **Give heed Harken** to me, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
and hearken to the voice of them that contend with me.
20 Shall evil be **recompensed shalam** for good?
for they have digged a **pit chasm** for my soul.
Remember that I stood **before thee at thy face**
to **speak word** good for them,
and to turn away thy **wrath fury** from them.
21 Therefore **deliver up give** their **children sons**
to the famine,
and pour **them** out **their blood**
by the **force hand** of the sword;
and let their **wives women** be bereaved of **their children**,
and be widows;
and let their men be **put to death slaughtered**;
let their **young men youths**
be **slain smitten** by the sword in **battle war**.
22 Let a cry be heard from their houses,
when thou shalt bring a troop suddenly upon them:
for they have digged a **pit chasm** to **take capture** me,
and hid snares for my feet.
23 Yet, **LORD Yah Veh**,
thou knowest all their counsel against me
to **slay execute** me:
forgive kapar/atone not their **iniquity perversity**,
neither **blot wipe** out their sin from thy **sight face**,
but let **fell** them be **overthrown before thee at thy face**;
deal work thus with them
in the time of **thine anger thy wrath**.

THE BROKEN INSTRUMENT

19 Thus saith **the LORD Yah Veh**,
Go and **get chattel** a **potter's earthen former's potsherd** bottle,
and **take of the ancients elders** of the people,
and of the **ancients elders** of the priests;
2 And go forth unto
the valley of the son of Hinnom
Gay Ben Hinnom/Valley of the Son of Burning,
which is by the **entry opening**
of the **east gate pottery portal**,
and **proclaim call out** there
the words that I shall **tell word** thee,
3 And say, Hear ye the word of **the LORD Yah Veh**,
O **kings sovereigns** of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and **inhabitants settlers** of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**;
Thus saith **the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the God Elohim of **Israel Yisra El**;
Behold, I will **shall** bring evil upon this place,
the which whosoever heareth, his ears shall tingle.
4 Because they have forsaken me,
and have **estranged recognized** this place,
and have **burned incense incensed** in it
unto other **gods elohim**,
whom neither they nor their fathers have known,
nor the **kings sovereigns** of **Judah Yah Hudah**,

YIRME YAH 18, 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Or are the strange cool flowing waters uprooted?
15 But my people forget me,
they incense to vanity;
and they have them falter in their ways
from the eternal paths
— to walk in paths — in a way not raised;
16 to set their land desolate — an eternal hissing;
every one who passes by astonishes
and wags his head.
17 I scatter them as with an east wind
at the face of the enemy;
I have them see the neck and not the face
in the day of their calamity.
18 And they say, Come!
We fabricate fabrications against Yirme Yah;
for neither the torah destructs from the priest
nor counsel from the wise
nor the word from the prophet:
Come, and smite him with the tongue,
and hearken not to any of his words.
19 Hearken to me, O Yah Veh,
and hearken to the voice
of them that contend with me.
20 Shalam we evil for good?
For they dig a chasm for my soul.
Remember that I stood at your face
to word good for them
and to turn away your fury from them.
21 So give their sons to the famine
and pour them by the hand of the sword;
so that their women bereave and become widows;
and their men become slaughtered;
— their youths smitten by the sword in war.
22 Hear their cry from the houses
when you bring a troop suddenly on them:
for they dig a chasm to capture me
and hide snares for my feet.
23 Yet, O Yah Veh,
you know all their counsel against me
— to execute me:
neither kapar/atone their perversity
nor wipe out their sin from your face;
fell them at your face;
work thus with them in the time of your wrath.

THE BROKEN INSTRUMENT

19 Thus says Yah Veh,
Go and chattel a potsherd bottle of the former,
of the elders of the people
and of the elders of the priests;
and go forth to
Gay Ben Hinnom/Valley of the Son of Burning
by the opening of the pottery portal;
and there call out the words I word you,
and say,
Hear the word of Yah Veh,
O sovereigns of Yah Hudah
and settlers of Yeru Shalem;
thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth, Elohim of Yisra El:
Behold, I bring evil on this place,
by which whoever hears, his ears tingle:
4 because they forsake me and recognize this place;
and incense therein to other elohim
— whom neither they nor their fathers
nor the sovereigns of Yah Hudah knew;

JEREMIAH 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 and have filled this place with the blood of innocents;
They have built also the *high places* **bamahs** of Baal,
to burn their sons with fire
for *burnt offerings* **holocausts** unto Baal,
which I *commanded* **misvahed** not, nor *spake* **worded** it,
neither *came* **ascended** it into my *mind* **heart**:
6 Therefore, behold, the days come,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that this place shall no more be called *Tophet* **Topheth**,
nor *The valley of the son of Hinnom*
Gay Ben Hinnom/Valley of the Son of Burning,
but
the valley of slaughter **Gay Haregah/Valley of Slaughter**.
7 And I *will make void* **shall vacate**
the counsel of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** in this place;
and I *will* **shall** cause them to fall by the sword
before **at the face of** their enemies,
and by the hands of them that seek their *lives* **souls**:
and their carcases *will* **shall** I give to be *meat* **food**
for the *fowls* **flyers** of the *heaven* **heavens**,
and for the *beasts* **animals** of the earth.
8 And I *will make* **shall set** this city desolate,
and an hissing;
every one that passeth thereby
shall be astonished and hiss
because of all the *plagues* **wounds** thereof.
9 And I *will* **shall** cause them to *eat* **feed**
the flesh of their sons and the flesh of their daughters,
and they shall eat every *one* **man**
the flesh of his friend in the siege and *straitness* **distress**,
wherewith their enemies,
and they that seek their *lives* **souls**,
shall *straiten* **distress** them.
10 Then shalt thou break the bottle
in the *sight* **eyes** of the men that go with thee,
11 And shalt say unto them,
Thus saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
Even so will **Thus shall** I break this people and this city,
as one breaketh a *potter's vessel* **former's instrument**,
that cannot be *made whole* **healed** again:
and they shall *bury* **entomb** them in *Tophet* **Topheth**,
till there be no place to *bury* **entomb**.
12 Thus *will I do* **shall I work** unto this place,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
and to the *inhabitants* **settlers** thereof,
and *even make* **give** this city as *Tophet* **Topheth**:
13 And the houses of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and the houses
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
shall be *defiled* **fouled** as the place of *Tophet* **Topheth**,
because of all the houses upon whose roofs
they have *burned incense* **incensed**
unto all the host of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and have *poured out drink offerings* **libated libations**
unto other *gods* **elohim**.
14 Then came *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** from *Tophet* **Topheth**,
whither *the LORD* **Yah Veh** had sent him to prophesy;
and he stood in the court
of the *LORD's house* **house of Yah Veh**;
and said to all the people,
15 Thus saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the God **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**; Behold,
I *will* **shall** bring upon this city and upon all her towns
all the evil that I have *pronounced* **worded** against it,
because they have hardened their necks,
that they might not hear my words.

YIRME YAH IS PERSECUTED

20 Now *Pashur* **Pashchur** the son of Immer the priest,
who was also *chief governor* **eminent overseer**
in the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
heard that *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
prophesied these *things* **words**.
2 Then *Pashur* **Pashchur**
smote *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** the prophet,
and *put* **gave** him in the *stocks* **stockades** that were
in the *most high gate* **portal** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
which was by the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
3 And **so be** it came to pass on the morrow,

YIRME YAH 19, 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and fill this place with the blood of innocents;
5 and build the bamahs of Baal
to burn their sons with fire for holocausts to Baal
— which I neither misvahed nor worded
— nor ascended into my heart.
6 So behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that this place is no more called Topheth,
or Gay Ben Hinnom/Valley of the Son of Burning,
but Gay Haregah/Valley of Slaughter:
7 and I vacate the counsel of Yah Hudah
and Yeru Shalem in this place;
and I fell them by the sword
at the face of their enemies,
and by the hands of them seeking their souls:
and I give their carcases for food
for the flyers of the heavens
and for the animals of the earth:
8 and I set this city desolate and a hissing:
every one who passes by astonished and hisses
because of all the wounds.
9 And I feed them the flesh of their sons
and the flesh of their daughters;
and every man eats the flesh of his friend
in the siege and distress,
whereby their enemies and they seeking their souls,
distress them.
10 And you break the bottle
in the eyes of the men going with you,
and say to them,
11 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
Thus I break this people and this city,
as one breaks an instrument of the former
that it cannot be healed again:
and they entomb them in Topheth
until there is no place to entomb.
12 Thus I work to this place
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and to the settlers thereof;
and give this city as Topheth:
13 and so be the houses of Yeru Shalem
and the houses of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah
— fouled as the place of Topheth
because of all the houses on whose roofs
they incensed to all the host of the heavens
and libated libations to other elohim.
14 And Yirme Yah comes from Topheth
where Yah Veh sent him to prophesy;
and he stands in the court of the house of Yah Veh;
and says to all the people,
15 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth, Elohim of Yisra El:
Behold, I bring on this city and on all her towns
all the evil I worded against it;
because they harden their necks
to not hear my words.

YIRME YAH IS PERSECUTED

20 And Pashchur the son of Immer the priest
who is also eminent overseer in the house of Yah Veh
hears Yirme Yah prophesying these words:
2 and Pashchur smites Yirme Yah the prophet
and gives him in the stockades
in the most high portal of Ben Yamin
by the house of Yah Veh.
3 And so be it, on the morrow,

JEREMIAH 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that Pashur Pashchur brought forth Jeremiah Yirme Yah
out of the stocks stockades.

Then said Jeremiah Yirme Yah unto him,
The LORD Yah Veh

hath not called thy name Pashur Pashchur,
but Magormissabib

Magor Mis Sabib/Terror Round About.

4 For thus saith the LORD Yah Veh,
Behold, I will make shall give thee a terror to thyself,
and to all thy friends loved ones:
and they shall fall by the sword of their enemies,
and thine eyes shall behold see it:
and I will shall give all Judah Yah Hudah
into the hand of the king sovereign of Babylon Babel,
and he shall carry exile them captive into Babylon Babel,
and shall slay smite them with the sword.

5 Moreover I will deliver I shall give
all the strength wealth of this city,
and all the labours thereof,
and all the precious esteemed things thereof,
and all the treasures

of the kings sovereigns of Judah Yah Hudah
will shall I give into the hand of their enemies,
which shall spoil plunder them, and take them,
and carry them to Babylon Babel.

6 And thou, Pashur Pashchur,
and all that dwell settle in thine house
shall go into captivity:
and thou shalt come to Babylon Babel,
and there thou shalt die,
and shalt be buried entombed there,
thou, and all thy friends loved ones,
to whom thou hast prophesied lies falsehoods.

THE COMPLAINT OF YIRME YAH

7 O LORD Yah Veh,
thou hast deceived deluded me,
and I was deceived deluded;
thou art stronger than I, and hast prevailed:
I am in derision ridiculed daily,
every one mocketh derideth me.

8 For since I spake I have worded enough,
I cried called out, I cried violence and spoil ravage;
because the word of the LORD Yah Veh
was made a reproach unto me,
and a derision ridicule, daily.

9 Then I said, I will shall not make mention of him,
nor speak word any more in his name.

But his word it was in mine heart
as a burning fire shut up restrained in my bones,
and I was weary with forbearing containing,
and I could not stay was not able.

10 For I heard the defaming slandering of many,
fear on every side terror round about.
Report Tell, say they, and we will report it shall tell.

All my familiars men of shalom
watched for guarded at my halting limping side, saying,
Peradventure he will shall be enticed deluded,
and we shall prevail against him,
and we shall take our revenge avengement on him.

11 But the LORD Yah Veh is with me
as a mighty terrible one tyrant:
therefore my persecutors pursuers shall stumble falter,
and they shall not prevail:
they shall be greatly ashamed mightily shamed;
for they shall not prosper comprehend:
their everlasting eternal confusion
shall never be forgotten.

12 But, O LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth,
that triest righteous proofest the just,
and seest the reins and the heart,
let me see thy vengeance avengement on them:
for unto thee have I opened exposed my cause plea.

13 Sing unto the LORD Yah Veh,
praise halal ye the LORD Yah Veh:
for he hath delivered rescued the soul of the poor needy
from the hand of evildoers vilifiers.

14 Cursed be the day wherein I was born birthed:
let not the day wherein my mother bare birthed me
be blessed.

YIRME YAH 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Pashchur brings Yirme Yah from the stockades;
and Yirme Yah says to him,

4 Yah Veh calls not your name Pashchur,
but Magor Mis Sabib/Terror All Around:
for thus says Yah Veh,

Behold, I give you a terror to yourself
and to all your loved ones:
and they fall by the sword of their enemies
and your eyes see it:
and I give all Yah Hudah

5 into the hand of the sovereign of Babel;
and he exiles them into Babel
and smites them with the sword:
and I give all the wealth of this city

— all the labors and all the esteemed
and all the treasures of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah
I give into the hand of their enemies
to plunder them and take them
and carry them to Babel:

6 and you, Pashchur,
and all who settle in your house go into captivity:
and you come to Babel,
and there you die and there you are entombed
— you, and all your loved ones
to whom you prophesied falsehoods.

THE COMPLAINT OF YIRME YAH

7 O Yah Veh,
you delude me and I am deluded:
you are stronger than I and you prevail:
I am ridiculed daily; every one derides me:
8 for I word enough;
I call out; I cry violence and ravage;
because of the word of Yah Veh
is a reproach to me; and a ridicule, daily.

9 Then I say, I neither mention him,
nor word any more in his name:
and it is in my heart as a burning fire
restrained in my bones:
and I am weary with containing
and I am not able:
10 for I hear the slandering of many:
terror is all around.

Tell, and we tell!
— all my men of shalom guard at my limping side,
Perhaps he is deluded; and we prevail against him;
and we take our avengement on him.

11 And Yah Veh is with me as a mighty tyrant:
so my pursuers falter and they prevail not:
they shame mightily; for they comprehend not:
their eternal confusion is not forgotten.

12 And O Yah Veh Sabaoth,
who proofs the just and sees the reins and the heart,
I see your avengement on them:
for to you I expose my plea.

13 Sing to Yah Veh; halal Yah Veh:
for he rescues the soul of the needy
from the hand of vilifiers.

14 Curse the day I was birthed;
bless not the day my mother birthed me.

JEREMIAH 20, 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 Cursed be the man
who brought tidings **evangelized** to my father,
saying, A man child **male son** is born **birthed** unto thee;
making **in cheering, cheering** him very glad.
16 And let that man be as the cities
which the **LORD** overthrew **Yah Veh** turned against,
and repented **sighed** not:
and let him hear the cry in the morning,
and the shouting at *noontide* **noon time**;
17 Because he **slew executed** me not from the womb;
or that my mother might have been my *grave* **tomb**,
and her womb to be always **eternally** great with me.
18 Wherefore came I forth out of the womb
to see *labour* **toil** and *sorrow* **grief**,
that my days
should be *consumed* **finished off** with shame?

THE MESSAGE OF YIRME YAH TO SIDQI YAH

21 The word which came unto *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
from the **LORD** **Yah Veh**,
when king *Zedekiah* **sovereign Sidqi Yah** sent unto him
Pashur **Pashchur** the son of *Melchiah* **Malki Yah**,
and *Zephaniah* **Sephan Yah**
the son of *Maaseiah* **Maase Yah** the priest, saying,
2 Enquire, I pray **beseech** thee,
of the **LORD** **Yah Veh** for us;
for *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
maketh war **fighteth** against us;
if so be that
the LORD will deal **Yah Veh shall work** with us
according to all his *wondrous* **marvellous** works,
that he may go up **ascend** from us.
3 Then said *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** unto them,
Thus shall ye say to *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**:
4 Thus saith
the LORD **God** **Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Behold, I will **shall** turn back the *weapons* **vessels** of war
that are in your hands,
wherewith ye fight
against the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and *against* the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**,
which besiege you without the walls,
and I will *assemble* **shall gather** them
into the midst of this city.
5 And I myself will **shall** fight *against* you
with an *outstretched* **spread** hand and with a strong arm,
even in *anger* **wrath**, and in fury, and in great *wrath* **rage**.
6 And I will **shall** smite the *inhabitants* **settlers** of this city,
both *man* **human** and *beast* **animal**:
they shall die of a great pestilence.
7 And afterward,
saith the **LORD** **an oracle** of **Yah Veh**,
I will *deliver* *Zedekiah* **shall give** *Sidqi Yah*,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and his servants, and the people,
and such as are left **survive** in this city
from the pestilence,
from the sword, and from the famine,
into the hand of *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and into the hand of their enemies,
and into the hand of those that seek their *life* **soul**:
and he shall smite them
with the *edge* **mouth** of the sword;
he shall not spare them,
neither have *pity* **spare**, nor have mercy.
8 And unto this people thou shalt say,
Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
Behold, I set before you **give at thy face**
the way of life, and the way of death.
9 He that *abideth* **settleth** in this city
shall die by the sword,
and by the famine, and by the pestilence:
but he that goeth out,
and falleth to the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym** that besiege you,
he shall live,
and his *life* **soul** shall be unto him for a *prey* **spoil**.
10 For I have set my face against this city for evil,
and not for good,

YIRME YAH 20, 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 Curse the man who evangelized to my father,
saying, A male son is birthed to you;
in cheering, cheer him:
so be that man,
16 as the cities **Yah Veh** turned against and sighed not
— to hear the cry in the morning,
and the shout at noon time:
17 because he executed me not from the womb
that my mother become my tomb
and her womb eternally great.
18 Why came I forth from the womb
— to see toil and grief?
To finish off my days with shame?

THE MESSAGE OF YIRME YAH TO SIDQI YAH

21 So be the word to *Yirme Yah* from *Yah Veh*
when sovereign *Sidqi Yah*
sends *Pashchur* the son of *Malki Yah*
and *Sephan Yah* the son of *Maase Yah* the priest
to him, saying,
2 Enquire, I beseech you, of *Yah Veh* for us;
for *Nebukadnets Tsar* sovereign of *Babel* fights us:
perhaps *Yah Veh* works with us
according to all his marvellous works,
and ascends him from us.
3 Then says *Yirme Yah* to them,
Say thus to *Sidqi Yah*:
4 Thus says *Yah Veh* *Elohim* of *Yisra El*:
Behold, I turn back the vessels of war in your hands
with which you fight the sovereign of *Babel*
and the *Kesediym*
who besiege you outside the walls;
and I gather them midst this city:
and I — I fight you
with a spread hand and with a strong arm
— in wrath and in fury and in great rage:
and I smite the settlers of this city
— both human and animal
that they die of a great pestilence.
5
6
7 And afterward
— an oracle of *Yah Veh*
I give *Sidqi Yah* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
and his servants and the people
and such as survive in this city from the pestilence
and from the sword and from the famine
into the hand of *Nebukadnets Tsar* sovereign of *Babel*
— and into the hand of their enemies
and into the hand of them who seek their soul:
and he smites them with the mouth of the sword;
he neither spares them
— neither spares nor mercies.
8 And to this people you say,
Thus says *Yah Veh*;
Behold, I give at your face
the way of life and the way of death.
9 He who settles in this city dies by the sword
and by the famine and by the pestilence:
and he who goes out
and falls to the *Kesediym* who besiege you,
he lives:
and his soul becomes to him for a spoil.
10 For I set my face against this city for evil
and not for good;

JEREMIAH 21, 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh:
it shall be given into the hand
of the king sovereign of Babylon Babel,
and he shall burn it with fire.
11 And touching as to the house
of the king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah, say,
Hear ye the word of the LORD Yah Veh;
12 O house of David, thus saith the LORD Yah Veh;
Execute judgment Plead the cause in the morning,
and deliver him that is spoiled rescue the stripped
out of the hand of the oppressor,
lest my fury go out like fire,
and burn that none can quench it,
because at the face of the evil of your doings exploits.
13 Behold, I am against thee,
O inhabitant settler of the valley, and rock of the plain,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh;
which say, Who shall come down descend against us?
or who shall enter into our habitations?
14 But I will punish shall visit upon you
according to the fruit of your doings exploits,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh:
and I will shall kindle a fire in the forest thereof,
and it shall devour consume all things round about it.

THE JUDGMENT OF THE HOUSE OF YAH HUDAH

22 Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh;
Go down Descend to the house
of the king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah,
and speak word there this word,
2 And say, Hear the word of the LORD Yah Veh,
O king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah,
that sittest upon the throne of David,
thou, and thy servants,
and thy people that enter in by these gates portals:
3 Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh;
Execute Work ye judgment and righteousness justness,
and deliver rescue the spoiled stripped
out of the hand of the oppressor:
and do no wrong,
do no violence to violate not the stranger sojourner,
the fatherless orphan, nor the widow,
neither shed pour innocent blood in this place.
4 For if in working, ye do work this thing indeed word,
then shall there enter in by the gates portals of this house
kings sovereigns sitting upon the throne of David,
riding in chariots and on horses,
he, and his servants, and his people.
5 But if ye will shall not hear these words,
I swear oath by myself,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
that this house shall become a desolation parched area.
6 For thus saith the LORD Yah Veh unto
the king's house of the sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah;
Thou art Gilead Gilad unto me,
and the head of Lebanon:
yet surely I will make shall place thee a wilderness,
and cities which are not inhabited settled.
7 And I will prepare destroyers shall hallow ruiners
against thee,
every one man with his weapons instruments:
and they shall cut down thy choice cedars,
and cast fell them into the fire.
8 And many nations goyim shall pass by this city,
and they shall say every man to his neighbour friend,
Wherefore hath the LORD done Yah Veh worked thus
unto this great city?
9 Then they shall answer say,
Because they have forsaken the covenant
of the LORD Yah Veh their God Elohim,
and worshipped prostrated to other gods elohim,
and served them.
10 Weep ye not for the dead,
neither bemoan wag over him:
but in weeping, weep sore for him that goeth away:
for he shall return no more,
nor see his native country land.
11 For thus saith the LORD Yah Veh
touching as to Shallum the son of Josiah Yoshi Yah,
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah,

YIRME YAH 21, 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— an oracle of Yah Veh:
— given into the hand of the sovereign of Babel
and he burns it with fire.
11 And as to the house of the sovereign of Yah Hudah:
Hear the word of Yah Veh:
12 O house of David, thus says Yah Veh:
Plead the cause in the morning
and rescue the stripped
from the hand of the oppressor
lest my fury go out as fire
and burns so no one can quench
at the face of the evil of your exploits.
13 Behold, I am against you,
O settler of the valley and rock of the plain
— an oracle of Yah Veh
who say, Who descends against us?
or, Who enters into our habitations?
And I visit on you
according to the fruit of your exploits
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and I kindle a fire in the forest
and it consumes all around it.

THE JUDGMENT OF THE HOUSE OF YAH HUDAH

22 Thus says Yah Veh:
Descend to the house of the sovereign of Yah Hudah
and word there this word,
2 and say, Hear the word of Yah Veh,
O sovereign of Yah Hudah,
who sits on the throne of David
— you and your servants
and your people entering by these portals.
3 Thus says Yah Veh:
Work judgment and justness
and rescue the stripped
from the hand of the oppressor:
and neither wrong nor violate the sojourner,
the orphan and the widow;
nor pour innocent blood in this place.
4 For if in working, ye work this word,
then there enters in by the portals of this house
sovereigns sitting on the throne of David
riding in chariots and on horses
— he and his servants and his people:
and if you hear not these words,
I oath by myself
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that this house becomes a parched area.
6 For thus says Yah Veh
to the house of the sovereign of Yah Hudah:
You are my Gilad — the head of Lebanon:
surely I place you a wilderness, and cities not settled:
7 and I hallow ruiners against you,
— every man with his instruments:
and they cut down your choice cedars
and fell them in the fire.
8 And many goyim pass by this city
and they say every man to his friend,
Why works Yah Veh thus to this great city?
9 And they say,
Because they forsook the covenant
of Yah Veh their Elohim;
and prostrated to other elohim and served them.
10 Neither weep you for the dead
nor wag over him:
but in weeping, weep for him who goes away:
for he neither returns any more
nor sees his native land.
11 For thus says Yah Veh concerning Shallum
the son of Yoshi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah

JEREMIAH 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which reigned
instead **in the stead** of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah** his father,
which went forth out of this place;
He shall not return thither any more:
But he shall die in the place
whither they have *led* **exiled** him *captive*,
and shall see this land no more.
Woe **Ho** unto him
that buildeth his house
by *unrighteousness* **without justness**,
and his *chambers* **upper rooms**
by *wrong* **without judgment**;
that useth his *neighbour's* **friend's** service
without wages **gratuitously**,
and giveth him not for his *work* **deeds**;
That saith,
I *will* **shall** build me a *wide* house **of measure**
and *large chambers* **breathtaking upper rooms**,
and *cutteth* **rippeth** him out windows;
and *it is* cieled with cedar,
and *painted* **anointed** with vermilion.
Shalt thou reign,
because thou *closest thyself* **art inflamed** in cedar?
did not thy father eat and drink,
and *do* **work** judgment and *justice* **justness**,
and then it was *well with him* **for his good**?
He *judged* **pleaded** the cause
of the *poor* **humble** and needy;
then it was *well with him* **for his good**:
was not this to know me?
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
But thine eyes and thine heart
are not but for thy *covetousness* **greedy gain**,
and for to *shed* **pour** innocent blood, and for oppression,
and for **to work** violence, *to do it*.
Therefore thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh** concerning
Jehoiakim **Yah Yaqim** the son of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
They shall not *lament* **chop** for him,
saying, *Ah* **Ho** my brother! or, *Ah* **Ho** sister!
they shall not *lament* **chop** for him, *saying*,
Ah lord **Ho adoni!** or, *Ah* **Ho** his *glory* **majesty!**
He shall be *buried* **entombed**
with the *burial* **tomb** of an *ass* **a burro**,
drawn **dragged** and cast forth
beyond the *gates* **portals** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
Go up **Ascend** to Lebanon, and cry;
and *lift up* **give** thy voice in Bashan,
and cry from *the passages* **Abirim**:
for all thy lovers are *destroyed* **broken**.
I *spake* **worded** unto thee in thy *prosperity* **serenity**;
but thou saidst, I *will* **shall** not hear.
This hath been thy *manner* **way** from thy youth,
that thou *obeyedst* **hearkenedst** not **unto** my voice.
The wind shall *eat up* **tend** all thy *pastors* **tenders**,
and thy lovers shall go into captivity:
surely then shalt thou be *ashamed* **shamed** and confounded
for all thy *wickedness* **evil**.
O *inhabitant* **settler** of Lebanon,
that *makest thy nest* **nestest** in the cedars,
how *gracious* **charismatic** shalt thou be
when pangs come upon thee,
the *pain* **pang** as of a woman *in travail* **in birthing!**
As I live, *saith the LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
though *Coniah* **Kon Yah** the son of *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
were the *signet* **seal** upon my right hand,
yet *would* **should** I *pluck* **tear** thee thence;
And I *will* **shall** give thee
into the hand of them that seek thy *life* **soul**,
and into the hand of them whose face thou fearest,
even into the hand of *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and into the hand of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**.
And I *will* **shall** cast thee out,
and thy mother that *bare* **birthed** thee,
into another *country* **land**, where ye were not *born* **birthed**;
and there shall ye die.
But to the land

YIRME YAH 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— who reigned in the stead of Yoshi Yah his father
— who went from this place,
He returns here no more;
he dies in the place they exiled him
and sees this land no more.
Ho to him who builds his house without justness
and his upper rooms without judgment;
who uses the service of his friend gratuitously,
and gives him not for his deeds;
who says, I build me a house of measure
and breathtaking upper rooms;
and rip out windows and ciel with cedar
and anoint with vermilion.
Reign you, because you are inflamed in cedar?
Your father — ate and drank he not?
Yes, he worked judgment and justness
— and for his own good:
he pleaded the cause of the humble and needy;
— and for his good:
Was this not to know me?
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
But your eyes and your heart
are for naught but your greedy gain
and for pouring innocent blood
and for oppression and to work violence.
So thus says Yah Veh
concerning Yah Yaqim
the son of Yoshi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah:
They chop not for him, saying,
Ho my brother! or, Ho sister!
they chop not for him,
Ho adoni! or, Ho his majesty!
He is entombed with the tomb of a burro
— dragged and cast forth
beyond the portals of Yeru Shalem.
Ascend to Lebanon and cry;
and give your voice in Bashan and cry from Abirim:
for all your lovers are broken.
I worded to you in your serenity;
you said, I hear not.
This is your way from your youth,
that you hearkened not to my voice.
The wind tends all your tenders
and your lovers go into captivity:
surely then you shame and confound for all your evil.
O settler of Lebanon, who nests in the cedars,
how charismatic are you
when pangs come on you
— the pang as in birthing!
I live, — an oracle of Yah Veh;
though Kon Yah
the son of Yah Yaqim sovereign of Yah Hudah
were seal on my right hand,
yet I tear you thence;
and I give you
into the hand of them who seek your soul
and into the hand of them whose face you fear
— even into the hand
of Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
and into the hand of the Kesediym:
and I cast you and your mother who birthed you
into another land where you were not birthed;
and there you die.
And to the land

JEREMIAH 22, 23

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

28 whereunto they *desire* **lift their soul** to return,
thither shall they not return.
Is this man *Coniah* **Kon Yah**
a despised *broken* **splattered** idol?
is he a vessel **an instrument**
wherein is no *pleasure* **delight**?
wherefore are they cast out, he and his seed,
and are cast into a land which they know not?
29 O earth, earth, earth,
hear the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
30 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Write **Inscribe** ye this man *childless* **barren**,
a *man* **mighty** that shall not prosper in his days:
for no man of his seed shall prosper,
sitting upon the throne of David,
and *ruling* **reigning** any more in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.

THE JUST SPROUT

23

Woe be **Ho** unto the *pastors* **tenders**
that destroy and scatter the *sheep* **flock** of my pasture!
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
2 Therefore thus
saith the LORD God **Yah Veh Elohim of Israel** **Yisra El**
against the *pastors* **tenders** that *feed* **tend** my people;
Ye have scattered my flock, and driven them away,
and have not visited them:
behold,
I *will* **shall** visit upon you the evil of your *doings* **exploits**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
3 And I *will* **shall** gather the *remnant* **survivors** of my flock
out of all *countries* **lands** whither I have driven them,
and *will bring* **shall return** them *again*
to their *folds* **habitations of rest**;
and they shall be *fruitful* **fruitbearing**
and *increase* **abound**.
4 And I *will set up* **shepherds** **shall raise tenders**
over them which shall *feed* **tend** them:
and they shall *fear* **awe** no more, nor be dismayed,
neither shall they be *lacking* **oversighted**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
5 Behold, the days come,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that I *will* **shall** raise unto David
a *righteous* **Branch** **just Sprout**,
and a *King* **Sovereign**
shall reign and *prosper* **comprehend**,
and shall *execute* **work** judgment and *justice* **justness**
in the earth.
6 In his days *Judah* **Yah Hudah** shall be saved,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** shall dwell *safely* **confidently**;
and this is his name whereby he shall be called,
THE LORD OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS
7 Therefore, behold, the days come,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that they shall no more say, *The LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth,
which *brought up* **ascended**
the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
8 But, *The LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth,
which *brought up* **ascended** and which led
the seed of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
out of the north *country* **land**,
and from all *countries* **lands** whither I had driven them;
and they shall *dwell* **settle** in their own *land* **soil**.
9 Mine heart within me
is broken because of the prophets;
all my bones *shake* **flutter**;
I am like a *drunken* **intoxicated** man,
and like a *man* **mighty**
whom wine hath *overcome* **overpassed**,
because at the face of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and *because at the face of the words of his holiness*.
10 For the land is *full* **filled** of adulterers;
for *because at the face of swearing* **oathing**
the land mourneth;
the *pleasant places* **folds** of the wilderness
are *dried up* **withered**,
and their *course* **race** is evil,
and their *force* **might** is not right.

YIRME YAH 22, 23

exeGeses companion BIBLE

to which they lift their soul to return
they return not.
28 Is this man Kon Yah a despised splattered idol?
An instrument wherein is no delight?
Why are they cast out, he and his seed,
— cast into a land they know not?
29 O earth! Earth! Earth!
Hear the word of Yah Veh!
30 Thus says Yah Veh:
Inscribe this man barren,
a mighty who prospers not in his days:
for no man of his seed prospers
— sitting on the throne of David
and reigning any more in Yah Hudah.

THE JUST SPROUT

23

Ho to the tenders
who destroy and scatter the flock of my pasture
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
2 So thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
against the tenders who tend my people:
You scatter my flock and drive them away
and visit them not:
behold, I visit the evil of your exploits on you
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and I gather the survivors of my flock
from all lands I drove them;
and return them to their habitations of rest;
and they bear fruit and abound:
4 and I raise tenders over them to tend them:
and they neither awe any more nor dismay
nor oversight
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
5 Behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that I raise to David a just Sprout,
and a Sovereign reigns and comprehends
and works judgment and justness in the earth.
6 In his days Yah Hudah is saved,
and Yisra El dwells confidently:
and this is his name whereby he is called,
Yah Veh Sidqenuw.
7 So behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that they no more say, Yah Veh lives,
who ascended the sons of Yisra El
YAH VEH SIDQENUW. from the land of Misrayim;
8 but, Yah Veh lives,
who ascended and who led
the seed of the house of Yisra El
from the north land,
and from all lands I drove them:
and they settle in their own soil.
9 Concerning the prophets:
My heart within me is broken;
all my bones flutter;
I am as an intoxicated man
and as the mighty overpassed by wine
at the face of Yah Veh,
and at the face of the words of his holiness.
10 For the land is filled with adulterers;
for at the face of oathing, the land mourns;
the folds of the wilderness wither
and their race is evil;
and their might, not right.

JEREMIAH 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

11 For both prophet and priest are profane;
yea, in my house have I found their *wickedness evil*,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.

12 Wherefore their way shall be unto them
as slippery ways in the darkness:
they shall be *driven on overthrown*, and fall therein:
for I will **shall** bring evil upon them,
even the year of their visitation,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.

13 And I have seen *folly frivolity*
in the prophets of Samaria Shomeron;
they prophesied in Baal,
and caused my people Israel Yisra El to *err stray*.

14 I have seen also
in the prophets of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem
an *horrible thing a horror*:
they *commit adultery adulterize*,
and walk in *lies falsehoods*:
they strengthen also the hands of *evildoers vilifiers*,
that *none no man* doth return from his *wickedness evil*;
they are all of them unto me as *Sodom Sedom*,
and the *inhabitants settlers thereof*
as Gomorrah Amarah.

15 Therefore
thus saith the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth
concerning the prophets;
Behold, I will **shall** feed them with wormwood,
and make them drink the water of gall:
for from the prophets of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem
is profaneness gone forth into all the land.

16 Thus saith the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth,
Hearken not
unto the words of the prophets that prophesy unto you:
they make you vain:
they *speak word* a vision of their own heart,
and not out of the mouth of the LORD Yah Veh.

17 They say *still saying* unto them that *despise scorn* me,
The LORD Yah Veh hath *said worded*,
Ye shall have *peace shalom*;
and they say unto every one
that walketh after the *imagination warp* of his own heart,
No evil shall come upon you.

18 For who hath stood
in the *private* counsel of the LORD Yah Veh,
and hath *perceived seen* and heard his word?
who hath *marked hearkened unto* his word, and heard it?

19 Behold,
a *whirlwind storm* of the LORD Yah Veh
is gone forth in fury,
even a *grievous whirlwind whirling storm*:
it shall *fall grievously whirl* upon the head of the wicked.

20 The *anger wrath* of the LORD Yah Veh
shall not return,
until he have *executed worked*,
and till he have *performed raised*
the *thoughts intrigue* of his heart:
in the latter days
ye shall *consider it perfectly discern with discernment*.

21 I have not sent these prophets, yet they ran:
I have not *spoken worded* to them, yet they prophesied.

22 But if they had stood in my *private* counsel,
and had caused my people to hear my words,
then they should have turned them from their evil way,
and from the evil of their *doings exploits*.

23 Am I a God at hand an Elohim nearby,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
and not a God an Elohim afar off?

24 Can any man hide himself in *secret places coverts*
that I shall not see him?
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.

25 Do not I fill *heaven the heavens* and earth?
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.

26 I have heard what the prophets said,
that prophesy *lies falsehoods* in my name, saying,
I have dreamed, I have dreamed.

26 How long shall this be in the heart of the prophets
that prophesy *lies falsehoods*?
yea, they are prophets of the deceit of their own heart;

YIRME YAH 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

11 For both prophet and priest profane;
yes, in my house I found their evil
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

12 So their way is to them
as slippery in the darkness:
they are overthrown and fall therein:
for I bring evil on them
— the year of their visitation
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

13 And I see frivolity in the prophets of Shomeron;
they prophesy in Baal,
and stray my people Yisra El:
and I see a horror
in the prophets of Yeru Shalem;
they adulterize and walk in falsehoods:
yes, they strengthen the hands of vilifiers
so that no man returns from his evil:
they all are to me as Sedom
and the settlers as Amarah.

15 So thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth
concerning the prophets:
Behold, I feed them with wormwood
and have them drink the water of gall:
for from the prophets of Yeru Shalem
profaneness goes into all the land.

16 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
Hearken not to the words of the prophets
who prophesy to you:
they make you vain:
they word a vision of their own heart
— not from the mouth of Yah Veh.

17 In saying, they say to them who scorn me,
Yah Veh words, Shalom to you!
— and they say to every one
who walks after the warp of his own heart,
Evil comes not on you!

18 — for who stands in the private counsel of Yah Veh
and sees and hears his word?
Who hearkens to his word, and hears?

19 Behold, a storm of Yah Veh comes in fury
— even a whirling storm:
whirling on the head of the wicked.

20 The wrath of Yah Veh turns not back until he works
and until he raises the intrigue of his heart:
in the latter days you discern with discernment.

21 I sent not these prophets, yet they run:
I worded not to them, yet they prophesy.

22 But had they stood in my private counsel
and had my people heard my words,
then they had turned them from their evil way
and from the evil of their exploits.

23 I am an Elohim nearby
— an oracle of Yah Veh;
and not an Elohim afar off!

24 Hides man himself in coverts that I not see him?
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

25 Fill I not the heavens and earth?
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

25 I hear what the prophets say
— who prophesy falsehoods in my name, saying,
I dreamed! I dreamed!

26 Until when is this in the heart of the prophets
who prophesy falsehoods?
— yes, prophets of the deceit of their own heart;

JEREMIAH 23, 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

27 Which *think fabricate*
to cause my people to forget my name
by their dreams which they *tell scribe*
every man to his *neighbour friend*,
as their fathers have forgotten my name for Baal.
28 The prophet that hath a dream,
let him *tell scribe* a dream;
and he that hath my word,
let him *speak word* my word *faithfully in truth*.
What is the *chaff straw* to the *wheat grain*?
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
29 Is not my word *like thus* as a fire?
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh;
and like a hammer
that breaketh shattereth the rock *in pieces*?
30 Therefore, behold, I am against the prophets,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
that steal my words
every *one man* from his *neighbour friend*.
31 Behold, I am against the prophets,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
that use *take* their tongues, and say, *He saith. An oracle!*
32 Behold, I am against them that prophesy false dreams,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
and *do tell scribe* them,
and cause my people to *err stray* by their *lies falsehoods*,
and by their *lightness frothiness*;
yet I sent them not, nor *commanded misvahed* them:
therefore in benefitting, they shall not *profit benefit*
this people *at all*,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
33 And when this people, or the prophet, or a priest,
shall ask thee, saying,
What is the burden of *the LORD Yah Veh*?
thou shalt *then* say unto them, What burden?
I *will shall* even *forsake abandon* you,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
34 And as for the prophet, and the priest, and the people,
that shall say, The burden of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
I *will shall* even *punish visit*
upon that man and his house.
35 Thus shall ye say
every *one man* to his *neighbour friend*,
and every *one man* to his brother,
What hath *the LORD Yah Veh* answered?
and, What hath *the LORD spoken Yah Veh worded*?
36 And the burden of *the LORD Yah Veh*
shall ye *mention remember* no more:
for every man's word shall be his burden;
for ye have perverted the words of the living *God Elohim*,
of *the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth* our *God Elohim*.
37 Thus shalt thou say to the prophet,
What hath *the LORD Yah Veh* answered thee?
and, What hath *the LORD spoken Yah Veh worded*?
38 But since ye say, The burden of *the LORD Yah Veh*;
therefore thus *saith the LORD Yah Veh*;
Because ye say this word,
The burden of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
and I have sent unto you, saying,
Ye shall not say, The burden of *the LORD Yah Veh*;
39 Therefore, behold, I, *even I*,
will utterly in forgetting, shall forget you,
and I *will forsake shall abandon* you,
and the city that I gave you and your fathers,
and cast you out of my presence from my face:
40 And I *will bring shall give*
an *everlasting eternal* reproach upon you,
and a *perpetual an eternal* shame,
which shall not be forgotten.

THE FIG BASKETS

24 *The LORD shewed me Yah Veh had me see*,
and, behold, two baskets of figs
were set before congregated at the face of
the temple *manse of the LORD Yah Veh*,
after that *Nebuchadrezzar Nebukadnets Tsar*
king sovereign of *Babylon Babel*
had *carried away captive Jeconiah exiled Yechon Yah*
the son of *Jehoiakim Yah Yaqim*,
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*,

YIRME YAH 23, 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

27 who fabricate to have my people forget my name
by the dreams they scribe every man to his friend
— as their fathers forgot my name for Baal.
28 The prophet, having a dream,
have him scribe a dream;
and he, having my word,
have him word my word in truth.
What is the straw to the grain?
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
29 Is not my word thus as a fire?
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and as a hammer shattering the rock?
30 So behold, I *am* against the prophets
— an oracle of Yah Veh
who steal my words, every man from his friend.
31 Behold, I *am* against the prophets
— an oracle of Yah Veh
who take their tongues and say, — an oracle!
32 Behold,
I *am* against them who prophesy false dreams
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and scribe them;
and stray my people by their falsehoods
and by their frothiness;
and I — I neither sent them nor misvahed them:
in benefitting, they benefit this people not
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
33 And when this people or the prophet or a priest
ask you, saying,
What is the burden of Yah Veh?
Say to them, What burden?
I abandoned you
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
34 And the prophet and the priest and the people
who say, The burden of Yah Veh!
I visit upon that man and upon his house.
35 You, say thus, every man to his friend,
and every man to his brother,
What answers Yah Veh?
And what words Yah Veh?
36 And you
— remember the burden of Yah Veh no more
for the word of every man is his burden;
for you perverted the words of the living Elohim
— of Yah Veh Sabaoth our Elohim.
37 Thus say to the prophet,
What answers Yah Veh?
And what words Yah Veh?
38 And since you say, The burden of Yah Veh!
— so thus says Yah Veh:
Because you say this word, The burden of Yah Veh!
— and I sent to you, saying,
Say not, The burden of Yah Veh!
39 — so, behold, in forgetting, I forget you;
and I abandon you
and the city I gave you and your fathers
from my face:
40 and I give on you
an eternal reproach and an eternal shame
which is not forgotten.

THE FIG BASKETS

24 Yah Veh has me see;
and behold, two baskets of figs
congregate at the face of the manse of Yah Veh,
after Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
exiles Yechon Yah
the son of Yah Yaqim sovereign of Yah Hudah

JEREMIAH 24, 25

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and the *princes* **governors** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
with the *carpenters* **engravers** and *smiths* **locksmiths**,
from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and had brought them to *Babylon* **Babel**.
2 One basket had very **mighty** good figs,
even like the figs that are first ripe:
and the *other* **one** basket
had very *naughty* **mighty evil** figs,
which could not be eaten, they were so *bad* **evil**.
3 Then said *the LORD* **Yah Veh** unto me,
What seest thou, *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**?
And I said, Figs;
the good figs, very **mighty** good;
and the evil, very **mighty** evil,
that cannot be eaten, they are so evil.
4 Again the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
5 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the God **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Like these good figs,
so *will* **shall** I acknowledge
them that are carried away captive of Judah
the exiles of Yah Hudah,
whom I have sent out of this place
into the land of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym** for their good.
6 For I *will* **shall** set mine eyes upon them for good,
and I *will* **bring shall** return them *again* to this land:
and I *will* **shall** build them,
and not *pull them down* **break**;
and I *will* **shall** plant them,
and not *pluck them up* **uproot**.
7 And I *will* **shall** give them an heart to know me,
that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**:
and they shall be my people,
and I *will* shall be their *God* **Elohim**:
for they shall return unto me with their whole heart.
8 And as the evil figs, which cannot be eaten,
they are so evil;
surely thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
So *will* **shall** I give *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**
the king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and his *princes* **governors**,
and the *residue* **survivors** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
that *remain* **survive** in this land,
and them that *dwell* **settle** in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
9 And I *will* **deliver shall** give them
to be removed **for an agitation**
into all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the earth
for their hurt **evil**,
to be — a reproach and a proverb,
a *taunt* **gibe** and a *curse* **an abasement**,
in all places whither I shall drive them.
10 And I *will* **shall** send the sword, the famine,
and the pestilence, among them,
till they be consumed from off the *land* **soil**
that I gave unto them and to their fathers.

THE SEVENTY YEAR CAPTIVITY

25 The word that came to *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
concerning all the people of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
in the fourth year of *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**
the son of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
that was the first year of
Nebuchadrezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**;
2 The which *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** the prophet
spake **worded** unto all the people of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and to all the *inhabitants* **settlers**
of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, saying,
3 From the thirteenth year of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**
the son of *Amon* **king** **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
even unto this day, that is the three and twentieth year,
the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath come unto me,
and I have *spoken* **worded** unto you,
rising **starting** early and *speaking* **wording**;
but ye have not hearkened.
4 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath sent unto you
all his servants the prophets,
rising **starting** early and sending them;

YIRME YAH 24, 25

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and the governors of Yah Hudah
with the engravers and locksmiths from Yeru Shalem;
and brings them to Babel.
2 One basket of mighty good figs,
as the first ripe figs:
and the one basket of mighty evil figs,
which are not eaten, for evil.
3 Then says Yah Veh to me,
What see you, Yirme Yah?
And I say, Figs!
The good figs, mighty good;
and the evil, mighty evil,
not eaten, for evil.
4 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
5 Thus says Yah Veh, Elohim of Yisra El;
As these good figs,
thus I acknowledge the exiles of Yah Hudah
— whom I sent from this place
into the land of the Kesediym for good:
6 and I set my eyes on them for good,
and I return them to this land:
and I build them, and not break;
and I plant them, and not uproot:
7 and I give them a heart to know me,
I — Yah Veh:
and they are my people,
and I am their Elohim:
for they return to me with their whole heart.
8 And as the evil figs, not eaten for their evil,
thus says Yah Veh:
Thus I give Sidqi Yah the sovereign of Yah Hudah
and his governors and the survivors of Yeru Shalem
who survive in this land
— who settle in the land of Misrayim:
9 and I give them for an agitation
into all the sovereigndoms of the earth for evil
— a reproach and a proverb
— a gibe and an abasement
in all places I drive them:
10 and I send the sword
the famine and the pestilence among them
— until they *are* consumed from off the soil
— I give to them and to their fathers.

THE SEVENTY YEAR CAPTIVITY

25 And so be the word to Yirme Yah
concerning all the people of Yah Hudah
in the fourth year of Yah Yaqim
the son of Yoshi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah,
— the first year of
Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel;
which Yirme Yah the prophet
words to all the people of Yah Hudah
and to all the settlers of Yeru Shalem, saying,
3 From the thirteenth year of Yoshi Yah
the son of Amon sovereign of Yah Hudah,
even to this day — the twenty—third year,
so be the word of Yah Veh to me,
and I worded to you, starting early and wording;
and you hearkened not:
4 and Yah Veh sent to you
all his servants the prophets
— starting early and sending them;

JEREMIAH 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but ye have not hearkened,
nor *inclined* **spread** your ear to hear.
5 *They said* **Saying**, Turn ye again now **I beseech**,
every *one* **man** from his evil way,
and from the evil of your *doings* **exploits**,
and *dwell* **settle** in the *land* **soil**
that *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
hath given unto you and to your fathers
for ever **eternally** and *ever* **eternally**:
6 And go not after other *gods* **elohim** to serve them,
and to *worship* **prostrate to** them,
and *provoke* **vex** me not to *anger*
with the works of your hands;
and I *will do you no hurt* **shall not vilify you**.
7 Yet ye have not hearkened unto me,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**;
that ye might *provoke* **vex** me to *anger*
with the works of your hands to your own *hurt* **evil**.
8 Therefore
thus *saith the* **LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
Because ye have not heard my words,
9 Behold,
I *will* **shall** send and take all the families of the north,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**,
and *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**, my servant,
and *will* **shall** bring them against this land,
and against the *inhabitants* **settlers thereof**,
and against all these *nations* **goyim** round about,
and *will utterly destroy* **shall devote** them,
and *make* **set** them
an astonishment **a desolation**, and an hissing,
and *perpetual desolations* **eternal parched areas**.
10 *Moreover I will take* **I shall destroy** from them
the voice of *mirth* **rejoicing**,
and the voice of *gladness* **cheerfulness**,
the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride,
the *sound* **voice** of the millstones,
and the light of the *candle* **lamp**.
11 And this whole land
shall be a *desolation* **parched area**,
and *an astonishment* **a desolation**;
and these *nations* **goyim**
shall serve the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
seventy years.
12 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
when seventy years are *accomplished* **fulfilled**,
that I *will punish* **shall visit**
upon the king sovereign of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and that *nation* **goyim**,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**,
for their *iniquity* **perversity**,
and the land of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**,
and *will make* **shall set** it *perpetual* **eternal** desolations.
13 And I *will* **shall** bring upon that land
all my words
which I have *pronounced* **against it worded**,
even all that is *written* **inscribed** in this *book* **scroll**,
which *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** hath prophesied
against all the *nations* **goyim**.
14 For many *nations* **goyim** and great *kings* **sovereigns**
shall serve themselves of them also:
and I *will recompense* **shall shalam** them
according to their deeds,
and according to the works of their own hands.
15 For thus *saith*
the **LORD God Yah Veh Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
unto me;
Take the wine cup of this fury at my hand,
and cause all the *nations* **goyim**, to whom I send thee,
to drink it.
16 And they shall drink,
and *be moved* **agitate**, and *be mad* **halal**,
because **at the face** of the sword
that I *will* **shall** send among them.
17 Then took I the cup at *the* **LORD'S Yah Veh's** hand,
and made all the *nations* **goyim** to drink,
unto whom *the* **LORD Yah Veh** had sent me:

YIRME YAH 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

but you neither hearkened
nor spread your ear to hear:
5 saying, Turn back, I beseech,
every man from his evil way,
and from the evil of your exploits,
and settle in the soil Yah Veh
I gave to you and to your fathers
eternally and eternally:
6 and go not after other elohim
to serve them and to prostrate to them;
and vex me not with the works of your hands;
and I vilify you not.
7 And you hearkened not to me
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and vexed me with the works of your hands
to your own evil.
8 So thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
Because you heard not my words,
9 Behold,
I send and take all the families of the north
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel my servant
— and bring them against this land
and against the settlers
and against all these goyim all around;
and devote them
and set them a desolation and a hissing;
and eternal parched areas:
10 I destroy from them the voice of rejoicing
and the voice of cheerfulness;
the voice of the bridegroom
and the voice of the bride;
the voice of the millstones
and the light of the lamp:
11 and this whole land
becomes a parched area and a desolation;
and these goyim
serve the sovereign of Babel seventy years:
and so be it,
when seventy years fulfill,
I visit on the sovereign of Babel and that goyim
— an oracle of Yah Veh
for their perversity
— and the land of the Kesediym
and set it eternal desolations:
13 and I bring on that land
all the words I worded
— all inscribed in this scroll
which Yirme Yah prophesied against all the goyim.
14 For many goyim and great sovereigns
are also served by them:
and I shalam them according to their deeds,
and according to the works of their own hands.
15 For thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El to me:
Take the wine cup of this fury at my hand,
and have all the goyim, to whom I send you, drink:
and they drink and agitate and halal
at the face of the sword I send among them.
17 And I take the cup from the hand of Yah Veh
and have all the goyim drink
— to whom Yah Veh sent me:

JEREMIAH 25

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 To wit, Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**,
and the cities of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and the *kings* **sovereigns** thereof,
and the *princes* **governors** thereof,
to make **give** them a *desolation* **parched area**,
an *astonishment* a **desolation**,
an hissing, and a *curse* an **abasement**; as it is this day;
19 Pharaoh king **Paroh sovereign** of Egypt **Misrayim**,
and his servants, and his *princes* **governors**,
and all his people;
20 And all the *mingled people* **comingled**,
and all the *kings* **sovereigns** of the land of Uz **Us**,
and all the *kings* **sovereigns**
of the land of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**,
and *Ashkelon* **Ashqelon**, and *Azzah*, and *Ekron* **Eqron**,
and the *remnant* **survivors** of Ashdod,
21 Edom, and Moab, and the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
22 And all the *kings* **sovereigns** of Tyrus **Sor**,
and all the *kings* **sovereigns** of Zidon **Sidon**,
and the *kings* **sovereigns** of the *isles* **islands**
which are beyond the sea,
23 Dedan, and Tema, and Buz,
and all that are in the *utmost corners* **chop the edges**,
24 And all the *kings* **sovereigns** of Arabia,
and all the *kings* **sovereigns**
of the *mingled people* **comingled**
that *dwel* **tabernacle** in the *desert* **wilderness**,
25 And all the *kings* **sovereigns** of Zimri,
and all the *kings* **sovereigns** of Elam,
and all the *kings* **sovereigns** of the *Medes* **Maday**,
26 And all the *kings* **sovereigns** of the north,
far and near, *one man* with *another* **brother**,
and all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the *world* **earth**,
which are upon the face of the *earth* **soil**:
and the *kings* **sovereigns** of Sheshach
shall drink after them.
27 Therefore thou shalt say unto them,
Thus saith the *LORD* of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the *God* **Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**;
Drink ye, and be *drunken* **intoxicate**,
and *spue* **vomit**, and fall, and rise no more,
because **at the face** of the sword
which I *will* **shall** send among you.
28 And it shall be **so be it**,
if they refuse to take the cup at thine hand to drink,
then shalt thou say unto them,
Thus saith the *LORD* of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
29 **In drinking**, Ye shall *certainly* drink.
For, *lo* **behold**,
I begin to *bring evil on* **vilify** the city
which is called by my name,
and **in exonerating**,
should ye be *utterly unpunished* **exonerated**?
Ye shall not be unpunished:
for I *will* **shall** call for a sword
upon all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the earth,
saith the *LORD* of hosts **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
30 Therefore prophesy thou against them all these words,
and say unto them,
The *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall roar from on high,
and *utter* **give** his voice from his holy habitation of **rest**;
in roaring,
he shall *mightily* roar upon his habitation of **rest**;
he shall *give a shout* **answer**,
as they that tread *the grapes*,
against all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the earth.
31 A *noise* **An uproar**
shall come *even to* the ends of the earth;
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath a controversy with the *nations* **goyim**,
he *will plead with* **shall judge** all flesh;
he *will* **shall** give them that are wicked to the sword,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
32 Thus saith the *LORD* of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
Behold, evil shall go forth
from *nation* **goyim** to *nation* **goyim**,
and a great *whirlwind* **storm** shall be *raised up* **wakened**
from the *coasts* **flanks** of the earth.

YIRME YAH 25

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 Yeru Shalem and the cities of Yah Hudah;
and the sovereigns and the governors
— to give them a parched area, a desolation;
a hissing and an abasement; as this day:
19 Paroh sovereign of Misrayim
and his servants and his governors and all his people;
20 and all the comingled
and all the sovereigns of the land of Us;
and all the sovereigns of the land of the Peleshethiym;
and Ashqelon and Azzah and Eqron
and the survivors of Ashdod;
21 Edom and Moab and the sons of Ammon;
22 and all the sovereigns of Sor;
and all the sovereigns of Sidon;
and the sovereigns of the islands beyond the sea;
23 Dedan and Tema and Buz
and all who chop the edges;
24 and all the sovereigns of Arabia;
and all the sovereigns of the comingled
who tabernacle in the wilderness;
25 and all the sovereigns of Zimri;
and all the sovereigns of Elam;
and all the sovereigns of the Maday;
26 and all the sovereigns of the north,
far and near, man with brother;
and all the sovereigndoms of the earth
on the face of the soil:
and the sovereigns of Sheshach drink after them.
27 And say to them,
Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El:
You, drink and intoxicate and vomit and fall
and rise no more
at the face of the sword I send among you.
28 And so be it,
if they refuse to take the cup at your hand to drink
then you say to them,
Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth;
In drinking, drink!
29 For, behold,
I begin to vilify the city on which my name is called.
And in exonerating, are you exonerated?
You are not unpunished:
for I call for a sword on all the settlers of the earth
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth.
30 So prophesy all these words against them
and say to them,
Yah Veh roars from on high
and gives his voice from his holy habitation of rest;
in roaring, he roars on his habitation of rest;
he answers
as they who tread against all the settlers of the earth.
31 An uproar approaches the ends of the earth;
for Yah Veh has a controversy with the goyim:
he judges all flesh;
he gives the wicked to the sword
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
32 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
Behold, evil goes from goyim to goyim
and a great storm wakens from the flanks of the earth:

JEREMIAH 25, 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

33 And the *slain* **pierced** of the LORD Yah Veh shall be at that day from *one* end of the earth even unto *the other* end of the earth: they shall not be *lamented* **chopped over**, neither gathered, nor *buried* **entombed**; they shall be dung upon the *ground* **face of the soil**.
34 Howl, ye *shepherds* **tenders**, and cry; and wallow yourselves *in the ashes*, ye *principal* **mighty** of the flock: for the days of your slaughter and of your *dispersions* **scatterings** are *accomplished* **fulfilled**; and ye shall fall like a *pleasant vessel* **an instrument of desire**.
35 And the *shepherds* shall have no way to flee **flight from the tenders shall destruct**, nor the *principal* of the flock to escape **and escape from the mighty of the flock**.
36 A voice of the cry of the *shepherds* **tenders**, and an howling of the *principal* **mighty** of the flock, shall be heard: for the LORD Yah Veh hath *spoiled* **ravaged** their pasture.
37 And the *peaceable habitations* **fold**s of shalom are cut down **severed** because **at the face** of the *fierce anger* **fuming wrath** of the LORD Yah Veh.
38 He hath forsaken his *covert* **sukkoth/brush arbor**, as the *lion* **whelp**: for their land is desolate because **at the face** of the *fierceness* **fuming** of the oppressor, and because **at the face** of his *fierce anger* **fuming wrath**.

26

In the beginning of the *reign* **sovereigndom** of Jehoiakim Yah Yaqim the son of Josiah Yoshi Yah, king **sovereign** of Judah Yah Hudah came this word from the LORD Yah Veh, saying,
2 Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh; Stand in the court of the LORD'S house of Yah Veh, and *speak* **word** unto all the cities of Judah Yah Hudah, which come to *worship* **prostrate** in the LORD'S house of Yah Veh, all the words that I *command* **misvah** thee to *speak* **word** unto them; diminish not a word:
3 If so be they *will* **shall** hearken, and turn every man from his evil way, that I may *repent* **sigh** me of the evil, which I *purpose* **fabricate** to *do* **work** unto them because **at the face** of the evil of their *doings* **exploits**.
4 And thou shalt say unto them, Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh; If ye *will* **shall** not hearken to me, to walk in my *law* **torah**, which I have set *before you* **at thy face**,
5 To hearken to the words of my servants the prophets, whom I sent unto you, *both rising up* **starting** early, and sending *them*, but ye have not hearkened;
6 Then *will I make* **shall I give** this house like Shiloh, and *will make* **shall give** this city a **curse an abasement** to all the *nations* **goyim** of the earth.
7 So the priests and the prophets and all the people heard Jeremiah **Yirme Yah** speaking these words in the house of the LORD Yah Veh.
8 Now **And so be it** *came to pass*, when Jeremiah **Yirme Yah** had *made an end of speaking* **finished wording** all that the LORD Yah Veh had *commanded* **misvahed** him to *speak* **word** unto all the people, that the priests and the prophets and all the people *took* **apprehended** him, saying,
9 **In dying**, Thou shalt *surely* die. Why hast thou prophesied in the name of the LORD Yah Veh, saying, This house shall be like Shiloh,

YIRME YAH 25, 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

33 And so be the pierced of Yah Veh at that day from end of the earth even to end of the earth: neither chopped over nor gathered nor entombed; they become as dung on the face of the soil.
34 Howl, you tenders, and cry; and wallow yourselves, you mighty of the flock: for the days of your slaughter and of your scatterings are fulfilled; and you fall as an instrument of desire: and flight destructs from the tenders and escape from the mighty of the flock — a voice of the cry of the tenders and a howling of the mighty of the flock: for Yah Veh ravages their pasture: and severs the folds of shalom at the face of the fuming wrath of Yah Veh.
38 He forsakes his sukkoth/brush arbor as the whelp: surely their land is desolate at the face of the fuming of the oppressor and at the face of his fuming wrath.

WARNING TO THE CITIES OF YAH HUDAH

26

In the beginning of the sovereigndom of Yah Yaqim the son of Yoshi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah so be this word from Yah Veh, saying,
2 Thus says Yah Veh: Stand in the court of the house of Yah Veh; and word to all the cities of Yah Hudah who come to prostrate in the house of Yah Veh all the words I misvah you to word to them; diminish not a word: perhaps they hearken and every man turns from his evil way, so that I sigh of the evil I fabricate to work to them at the face of the evil of their exploits.
4 And you say to them, Thus says Yah Veh: If you hearken not to me, to walk in my torah which I set at your face, to hearken to the words of my servants the prophets whom I send to you, starting early and sending, and you hearken not: then I give this house as Shiloh and give this city for an abasement to all the goyim of the earth.
7 And the priests and the prophets and all the people hear Yirme Yah speaking these words in the house of Yah Veh.
8 And so be it, Yirme Yah finishes wording all Yah Veh misvahs him to word to all the people; and the priests and the prophets and all the people apprehend him, saying, In dying, you die!
9 Why prophesy you in the name of Yah Veh, saying, This house becomes as Shiloh,

JEREMIAH 26

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and this city shall be *desolate* **parched**
without an *inhabitant* **a settler**?
And all the people
were gathered **congregated** against *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
10 When the *princes* **governors** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
heard these *things* **words**,
then they *came up* **ascended**
from the *king's* **sovereign's** house
unto the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and sat down in the *entry* **opening** of the new *gate* **portal**
of the *LORD's* house of **Yah Veh**.
11 Then *spake* **said** the priests and the prophets
unto the *princes* **governors** and to all the people, saying,
This man *is worthy to die* **hath judgment of death**;
for he hath prophesied against this city,
as ye have heard with your ears.
12 Then *spake* *Jeremiah* **said** **Yirme Yah**
unto all the *princes* **governors** and to all the people,
saying, *The LORD* **Yah Veh** sent me to prophesy
against this house and against this city
all the words that ye have heard.
13 Therefore now
amend **well**—**prepare** your ways and your *doings* **exploits**,
and obey
the voice of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**;
and the *LORD* will *repent him* **Yah Veh shall sigh**
of the evil that he hath *pronounced* **worded** against you.
14 As for me, behold, I am in your hand:
do **work** with me as seemeth good
and *meet unto you* **straight in your eyes**.
15 But **in knowing**, know ye *for certain* **this**,
that if ye *put me to death* **deathify me**,
ye shall surely *bring* **give** innocent blood
upon yourselves, and upon this city,
and upon the *inhabitants* **settlers** thereof:
for of a truth the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath sent me unto you
to *speak* **word** all these words in your ears.
16 Then said the *princes* **governors** and all the people
unto the priests and to the prophets;
This man
is not worthy to die **hath not judgment of death**:
for he hath *spoken* **worded** to us
in the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**.
17 Then rose up *certain* **men** of the elders of the land,
and *spake* **said**
to all the *assembly* **congregation** of the people, saying,
18 *Micah* **Michah Yah** the *Morasthite* **Moresethiy**
prophesied in the days of *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and *spake* **said** to all the people of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
saying, Thus saith the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
Zion **Siyon** shall be plowed like a field,
and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** shall become heaps,
and the mountain of the house
as the *high places* **bamahs** of a forest.
19 Did *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
and all *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
put him at all to death **in deathifying, deathify him**?
did he not fear the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *besought the LORD* **stroked the face of Yah Veh**,
and the *LORD* **repented him** **Yah Veh sighed** of the evil
which he had *pronounced* **worded** against them?
20 Thus might we *procure* **work** great evil against our souls.
And there was also a man
that prophesied in the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Urijah **Uri Yah** the son of *Shemaiah* **Shema Yah**
of *Kirjathjearim* **Qiryath Arim**,
who prophesied against this city and against this land
according to all the words of *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**.
21 And when *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim** the *king* **sovereign**,
with all his mighty *men*, and all the *princes* **governors**,
heard his words,
the *king* **sovereign** sought to *put* **deathify** him *to death*:
but when *Urijah* **Uri Yah** heard it,
he was *afraid* **awed**,
and fled, and went into *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
22 And *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim** the *king* **sovereign**

YIRME YAH 26

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and this city parched without a settler?
— and all the people congregate against Yirme Yah
in the house of Yah Veh.
10 And the governors of Yah Hudah hear these words,
and they ascend from the house of the sovereign
to the house of Yah Veh;
and sit in the opening of the new portal
of the house of Yah Veh.
11 And the priests and the prophets
say to the governors and to all the people, saying,
A judgment of death for this man;
for he prophesies against this city,
as you hear with your ears.
12 And Yirme Yah
says to all the governors and to all the people,
saying, Yah Veh sent me to prophesy
against this house and against this city
all the words you heard:
13 and now
well—prepare your ways and your exploits
and obey the voice of Yah Veh your Elohim;
so that Yah Veh sighs
concerning the evil he worded against you.
14 As for me, behold, I am in your hand:
work with me
as seems good and straight in your eyes.
15 Only in knowing, know this:
that if you deathify me
you surely give innocent blood on yourselves
and on this city and on the settlers:
for of a truth Yah Veh sent me to you
to word all these words in your ears.
16 Then the governors and all the people
say to the priests and to the prophets;
No judgment of death for this man:
for he words to us
in the name of Yah Veh our Elohim.
17 And men of the elders of the land rise
and say to all the congregation of the people, saying,
18 Michah Yah the Moresethiy
was prophesying
in the days of Yechizqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah;
and said to all the people of Yah Hudah,
saying, Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth;
Siyon becomes a plowed field;
and Yeru Shalem becomes heaps;
and the mountain of the house
as the bamahs of a forest.
19 Yechizqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
— and all Yah Hudah
in deathifying, deathified he him?
Feared he not Yah Veh
and stroked the face of Yah Veh
— and Yah Veh sighed of the evil
he worded against them?
And we work great evil against our souls.
20 And also, so be a man
who prophesied in the name of Yah Veh
— Uri Yah the son of Shema Yah of Qiryath Arim
who prophesied against this city and against this land
according to all the words of Yirme Yah:
21 and when Yah Yaqim the sovereign
with all his mighty and all the governors,
heard his words,
the sovereign sought to deathify him:
but when Uri Yah heard
he awed and fled and went into Misrayim:
22 and Yah Yaqim the sovereign

JEREMIAH 26, 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 sent men into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
namely, *Elnathan* **El Nathan** the son of Achbor,
and certain men with him into *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
And they fetched forth *Urijah* **Uri Yah**
out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and brought him
unto *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim** the king **sovereign**;
who slew **smote** him with the sword,
and cast his *dead body* **carcase**
into the *graves* **tombs** of the *common* **sons of the** people.
24 Nevertheless the hand of Ahikam the son of Shaphan
was with *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
that they should not give him into the hand of the people
to put **deathify** him to death.

YAH HUDAH UNDER NEBUKADNETS TSAR

27 In the beginning
of the *reign* **sovereigndom** of *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**
the son of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
came this word unto *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, saying,
2 Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh** to me;
Make **Work** three bonds and *yokes* **yoke poles**,
and put **give** them upon thy neck,
3 And send them to the king **sovereign** of Edom,
and to the king **sovereign** of Moab,
and to the king **sovereign** of the *Ammonites* **sons of Ammon**,
and to the king **sovereign** of *Tyrus* **Sor**,
and to the king **sovereign** of *Zidon* **Sidon**,
by the hand of the *messengers* **angels**
which come to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
unto *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
4 And command **misvah** them
to say **saying** unto their *masters* **adonim**,
Thus saith the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
5 Thus shall ye say unto your *masters* **adonim**;
I have made **worked** the earth,
the *man* **with humanity** and the *beast* **animal**
that are upon the *ground* **face of the earth**,
by my great *power* **strength**
and by my *outstretched* **spread** arm,
and have given it unto whom
it *seemed* **meet unto me** **hath been straight in my eyes**.
6 And now have I given all these lands
into the hand of
Nebuchadnezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**, my servant;
and the *beasts* **live beings** of the field
have I given him also to serve him.
7 And all *nations* **goyim** shall serve him,
and his son, and his son's son,
until the very time of his land come:
and then many *nations* **goyim** and great *kings* **sovereigns**
shall **cause him to** serve *themselves* of him.
8 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
that the *nation* **goyim** and *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
which *will* **shall** not serve the same
Nebuchadnezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and that *will* **shall** not put **give** their neck
under the yoke of the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
that *nation* **will I punish** **goyim shall I visit upon**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
with the sword,
and with the famine, and with the pestilence,
until I have consumed them by his hand.
9 Therefore hearken not ye to your prophets,
nor to your diviners, nor to your dreamers,
nor to your *enchanters* **cloudgazers**,
nor to your sorcerers,
which speak unto you, saying,
Ye shall not serve the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**:
10 For they prophesy a **lie falsehood** unto you,
to remove you far from your *land* **soil**;
and that I should drive you out,
and ye should *perish* **destruct**.
11 But the *nations* **goyim** that bring their neck

YIRME YAH 26, 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

sent men into Misrayim
— El Nathan the son of Achbor
and men with him into Misrayim:
23 and they fetched Uri Yah from Misrayim
and brought him to Yah Yaqim the sovereign;
who smote him with the sword
and cast his carcase
into the tombs of the sons of the people:
24 only the hand of Ahikam the son of Shaphan
was with Yirme Yah,
to not give him into the hand of the people
to deathify him.

YAH HUDAH UNDER NEBUKADNETS TSAR

27 In the beginning
of the sovereigndom of Yah Yaqim
the son of Yoshi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah,
so be the word to Yirme Yah from Yah Veh, saying,
2 Thus says Yah Veh to me;
Work yourself bonds and yoke poles
and give them on your neck;
3 and send them to the sovereign of Edom
and to the sovereign of Moab
and to the sovereign of the sons of Ammon
and to the sovereign of Sor
and to the sovereign of Sidon
by the hand of the angels who come to Yeru Shalem
— to Sidqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah:
4 and misvah them, saying to their adonim,
Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El:
5 Thus say to your adonim:
I — I worked the earth with humanity
and the animal on the face of the earth
by my great strength and by my spread arm;
and gave it to whom were straight in my eyes.
6 And now I give all these lands into the hand of
Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel, my servant;
and I also give him the live beings of the field
to serve him:
7 and all goyim serve him
and his son and sons of his son
until the very time of his land comes:
and then many goyim and great sovereigns
have him to serve.
8 And so be it,
the goyim and sovereigndom
who serve not the same
Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
— who give not their neck
under the yoke of the sovereign of Babel,
I visit on that goyim
— an oracle of Yah Veh,
with the sword
and with the famine and with the pestilence
until I consume them by his hand.
9 And you, hearken neither to your prophets
nor to your diviners nor to your dreamers
nor to your cloudgazers nor to your sorcerers
who speak to you, saying,
You, serve not the sovereign of Babel:
10 for they prophesy a falsehood to you
to remove you far from your soil:
and that I drive you out and you destruct.
11 And the goyim who bring their neck

JEREMIAH 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

under the yoke of the *king sovereign* of *Babylon Babel*,
and serve him,
those *will shall* I *let remain still leave*
in their own *land soil*,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh;
and they shall *till serve* it, and *dwelt settle* therein.
12 I *spake worded* also
to *Zedekiah Sidqi Yah*
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*
according to all these words, saying,
Bring your necks
under the yoke of the *king sovereign* of *Babylon Babel*,
and serve him and his people, and live.
13 Why *will shall* ye die, thou and thy people,
by the sword, by the famine, and by the pestilence,
as *the LORD Yah Veh*
hath *spoken worded* against the *nation goyim*
that *will shall* not serve
the *king sovereign* of *Babylon Babel*?
14 Therefore hearken not unto the words of the prophets
that *speak say* unto you, saying,
Ye shall not serve the *king sovereign* of *Babylon Babel*:
for they prophesy a *lie falsehood* unto you.
15 For I have not sent them,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
yet they prophesy a *lie falsehood* in my name;
that I might drive you out,
and that ye might *perish destruct*,
ye, and the prophets that prophesy unto you.
16 Also I *spake worded*
to the priests and to all this people, saying,
Thus *saith the LORD Yah Veh*;
Hearken not to the words of your prophets
that prophesy unto you, saying, Behold,
the *vessels instruments*
of the *LORD'S house of Yah Veh*
shall now *shortly be brought again be quickly returned*
from *Babylon Babel*:
for they prophesy a *lie falsehood* unto you.
17 Hearken not unto them;
serve the *king sovereign* of *Babylon Babel*, and live:
wherefore should this city be *laid waste parched*?
18 But if they be prophets,
and if the word of the *LORD Yah Veh* be with them,
let them *now I beseech, make intercession intercede*
to the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*,
that the *vessels instruments* which *are left remain*
in the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and in the house
of the *king sovereign* of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
and at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
go not to *Babylon Babel*.
19 For thus *saith the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*
concerning the pillars,
and concerning the sea, and concerning the bases,
and concerning
the *residue rest* of the *vessels instruments*
that remain in this city,
20 Which *Nebuchadnezzar Nebukadnets Tsar*
king sovereign of *Babylon Babel* took not,
when he *carried away captive Jeconiah exiled Yechon Yah*
the son of *Jehoiakim Yah Yaqim*,
king sovereign of *Judah Yah Hudah*
from *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem* to *Babylon Babel*,
and all the nobles
of *Judah Yah Hudah* and *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*;
21 Yea, thus *saith the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*,
the God Elohim of *Israel Yisra El*,
concerning the *vessels instruments*
that remain in the house of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and in the house
of the *king sovereign* of *Judah Yah Hudah*
and of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*;
22 They shall be carried to *Babylon Babel*,
and there shall they be until the day that I visit them,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh;
then *will I bring them up shall I ascend them*,
and *restore return* them to this place.

YIRME YAH 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

under the yoke of the sovereign of Babel
and serve him,
I leave in their own soil
— an oracle of Yah Veh
to serve it and settle therein.
12 And I worded to Sidqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
according to all these words, saying,
Bring your necks
under the yoke of the sovereign of Babel;
and serve him and his people, and live.
13 Why die — you and your people,
by the sword, by the famine, and by the pestilence,
as Yah Veh worded against the goyim
who serve not the sovereign of Babel?
14 And hearken not to the words of the prophets
who say to you, saying,
You, serve not the sovereign of Babel:
for they prophesy a falsehood to you:
15 for I sent them not
— an oracle of Yah Veh:
yet they prophesy a falsehood in my name;
so that I drive you out and that you destruct
— you and the prophets who prophesy to you.
16 And I worded to the priests and to all this people,
saying, Thus says Yah Veh:
Hearken not to the words of your prophets
who prophesy to you, saying,
Behold, the instruments of the house of Yah Veh
now return quickly from Babel!
— for they prophesy a falsehood to you.
17 Hearken not to them;
serve the sovereign of Babel, and live:
why have this city become parched?
18 And if they *are* prophets,
and if the word of Yah Veh *is* with them,
have them, I beseech, intercede to Yah Veh Sabaoth,
so that the instruments remaining
in the house of Yah Veh
and in the house of the sovereign of Yah Hudah
and at Yeru Shalem go not to Babel.
19 For thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth
concerning the pillars and concerning the sea
and concerning the bases,
and concerning the rest of the instruments
remaining in this city,
20 which Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
took not,
when he exiled Yechon Yah
the son of Yah Yaqim sovereign of Yah Hudah
from Yeru Shalem to Babel,
and all the nobles of Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem;
21 Yes, thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
Elohim of Yisra El,
concerning the instruments
that remain in the house of Yah Veh,
and in the house
of the sovereign of Yah Hudah
and of Yeru Shalem:
22 They are carried to Babel
— to be there until the day I visit them
— an oracle of Yah Veh:
then I ascend them and return them to this place.

JEREMIAH 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

HANAN YAH, THE PSEUDO PROPHET

28

And so be it came to pass the same year,
in the beginning of the **reign sovereignty**
of Zedekiah **Sidqi Yah**
king **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
in the fourth year, and in the fifth month,
that **Hananiah Hanan Yah**
the son of **Azur Azzur** the prophet,
which was of **Gibeon Gibon**,
spake said unto me in the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
in the **presence eyes** of the priests and of all the people,
saying,

2

Thus *saith*
the **LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the **God Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**, saying,
I have broken the yoke
of the king **sovereign** of **Babylon Babel**.

3

Within two **full years of days**
will I bring again shall I restore into this place
all the **vessels instruments**
of the **LORD'S house of Yah Veh**,
that **Nebuchadnezzar Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of **Babylon Babel**
took away from this place,
and carried them to **Babylon Babel**:

4

And I *will bring again shall restore* to this place
Jechoniah Yechon Yah
the son of **Jehoiakim Yah Yaqim**
king **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
with all the **captives exiles** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
that went into **Babylon Babel**,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh:
for I *will shall* break the yoke

5

of the king **sovereign** of **Babylon Babel**.
Then the prophet **Jeremiah Yirme Yah**
said unto the prophet **Hananiah Hanan Yah**
in the **presence eyes** of the priests,
and in the **presence eyes** of all the people
that stood in the house of the **LORD Yah Veh**,

6

Even the prophet **Jeremiah Yirme Yah** said, Amen:
the LORD do Yah Veh work so:
the LORD perform Yah Veh raise thy words
which thou hast prophesied,
to *bring again return* the **vessels instruments**
of the **LORD'S house of Yah Veh**,
and all *that is carried away captive the exiles*,
from **Babylon Babel** into this place.

7

Nevertheless hear thou *now I beseech*,
this word that I *speak word* in thine ears,
and in the ears of all the people;

8

The prophets that have been *before me at my face*
and *before thee of old at thy face originally*
prophesied both against many **countries lands**,
and against great **kingdoms sovereigndoms**,
of war, and of evil, and of pestilence.

9

The prophet which prophesieth of **peace shalom**,
when the word of the prophet
shall *come to pass become*,
then shall the prophet be known,
that *the LORD Yah Veh* hath *truly in truth* sent him.

10

Then **Hananiah Hanan Yah** the prophet
took the yoke **pole**
from off the prophet **Jeremiah's Yirme Yah's** neck,
and brake it.

11

And **Hananiah Hanan Yah**
spake said in the **presence eyes** of all the people,
saying, Thus *saith the LORD Yah Veh*;
Even so *will shall* I break the yoke
of **Nebuchadnezzar Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of **Babylon Babel**
from the neck of all **nations goyim**
within the space of two **full years of days**.

And the prophet **Jeremiah Yirme Yah** went his way.

12

Then the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
came unto **Jeremiah Yirme Yah** the prophet,
after that **Hananiah Hanan Yah** the prophet
had broken the yoke **pole** from off the neck
of the prophet **Jeremiah Yirme Yah**, saying,

13

Go and *tell Hananiah say to Hanan Yah*, saying,

YIRME YAH 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

HANAN YAH, THE PSEUDO PROPHET

28

And so be it, the same year,
in the beginning of the **sovereigndom**
of **Sidqi Yah** sovereign of **Yah Hudah**
— in the fourth year, in the fifth month,
Hanan Yah the son of **Azzur** the prophet, of **Gibon**,
says to me in the house of **Yah Veh**
in the eyes of the priests and of all the people
saying,

2

Thus says **Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim** of **Yisra El**,
saying,

3

I broke the yoke of the sovereign of **Babel**.
Within two years of days
I return to this place

4

all the instruments of the house of **Yah Veh**,
that **Nebukadnets Tsar** sovereign of **Babel**
took from this place and carried to **Babel**:
and I restore to this place
Yechon Yah the son of **Yah Yaqim**
sovereign of **Yah Hudah**
with all the exiles of **Yah Hudah** who went into **Babel**
— an oracle of **Yah Veh**
for I break the yoke of the sovereign of **Babel**.

5

And the prophet **Yirme Yah**
says to the prophet **Hanan Yah**
in the eyes of the priests

6

and in the eyes of all the people
standing in the house of **Yah Veh**,
yes, the prophet **Yirme Yah** says,
Amen! Thus **Yah Veh** works!

7

Yah Veh raises the words you prophesied
— to return the instruments of the house of **Yah Veh**
and all the exiles from **Babel** to this place:

8

Only hear, I beseech you,
this word I word in your ears
and in the ears of all the people;
the prophets who were at my face
and at your face originally
prophesied both against many lands
and against great **sovereigndoms**
— of war and of evil and of pestilence.

9

The prophet who prophesies of **shalom**,
when that word of the prophet becomes,
then it is known
that **Yah Veh** in truth sent that prophet.

10

And **Hanan Yah** the prophet takes the yoke pole
from off the neck of the prophet **Yirme Yah**
and breaks it:

11

and in the eyes of all the people,
Hanan Yah says, saying, Thus says **Yah Veh**:
Even thus I break the yoke
of **Nebukadnets Tsar** sovereign of **Babel**
from the neck of all **goyim**
within the space of two years of days.
— and the prophet **Yirme Yah** goes his way.

12

And so be the word of **Yah Veh** to **Yirme Yah**,
after **Hanan Yah** the prophet
breaks the yoke pole from off the neck
of the prophet **Yirme Yah**, saying,
Go and say to **Hanan Yah**, saying,

13

JEREMIAH 28, 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Thus saith the LORD **Yah Veh**;
Thou hast broken the *yokes* **yoke poles** of wood **timber**;
but thou shalt *make for them* **work in their stead**,
yokes **yoke poles** of iron.
14 For thus saith the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the God **Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**;
I have *put given* a yoke of iron
upon the neck of all these *nations* **goyim**,
that they may serve
Nebuchadnezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**;
and they shall serve him:
and I have given him
the *beasts* **live beings** of the field also.
15 Then said the prophet *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
unto *Hananiah* **Hanan Yah** the prophet,
Hear now *Hananiah* **I beseech Hanan Yah**;
The LORD **Yah Veh** hath not sent thee;
but thou *makest* **causest** this people
to *trust* **confide** in a *lie* **falsehood**.
16 Therefore thus saith the LORD **Yah Veh**;
Behold, I *will cast* **shall send** thee
from off the face of the *earth* **soil**:
this year thou shalt die,
because thou hast *taught* **rebellion** **worded revolt**
against the LORD **Yah Veh**.
17 So *Hananiah* **Hanan Yah** the prophet
died the same year in the seventh month.

THE SCROLL OF YIRME YAH TO THE EXILES

29

Now these are the words of the *letter* **scroll**
that *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** the prophet
sent from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
unto the *residue* **remnant** of the elders
which were *carried away* **captives exiled**,
and to the priests, and to the prophets,
and to all the people whom
Nebuchadnezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
had *carried away* **captive exiled**
from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** to *Babylon* **Babel**;
2 (After that *Jeconiah* **Yechon Yah** the king **sovereign**,
and the *queen* **lady**, and the eunuchs,
the *princes* **governors** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and the *carpenters* **engravers**, and the *smiths* **locksmiths**,
were departed from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;) **Yeru Shalem**;
3 By the hand of *Elasah* **El Asah** the son of Shaphan,
and *Gemariah* **Gemar Yah** the son of *Hilkiah* **Hilqi Yah**,
(whom *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
sent unto *Babylon* **Babel**
to *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**) saying,
4 Thus saith the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the God **Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**,
unto all that are *carried away* **captives exiled**,
whom I have caused to be *carried away* **exiled**
from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** unto *Babylon* **Babel**;
5 Build ye houses, and *dwelt* **settle** in them;
and plant gardens, and eat the fruit of them;
6 Take ye *wives* **women**, and *beget* **birth** sons and daughters;
and take *wives* **women** for your sons,
and give your daughters to *husbands* **men**,
that they may *bear* **birth** sons and daughters;
that ye may *be increased* **abound** there,
and not *diminished* **diminish**.
7 And seek the *peace* **shalom** of the city
whither I have caused you
to be *carried away* **captives exiled**,
and pray unto the LORD **Yah Veh** for it:
for in the *peace* **shalom** thereof
shall ye have *peace* **shalom**.
8 For thus saith the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the God **Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**;
Let not your prophets and your diviners,
that be in the midst of you, deceive you,
neither hearken to your dreams
which ye cause to be dreamed.
9 For they prophesy *falsely* **falsehood** unto you in my name:

YIRME YAH 28, 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Thus says Yah Veh:
You broke yoke poles of timber;
and in their stead, I work yoke poles of iron.
14 For thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El:
I give a yoke pole of iron
on the neck of all these goyim,
to serve Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel;
and they serve him:
and I also give him the live beings of the field.
15 And the prophet Yirme Yah
says to Hanan Yah the prophet,
Hear, I beseech, Hanan Yah;
Yah Veh sent you not;
and you have this people confide in a falsehood:
so thus says Yah Veh:
16 Behold, I send you from off the face of the soil:
this year you die,
because you word revolt against Yah Veh.
— and Hanan Yah the prophet
dies that same year in the seventh month.

THE SCROLL OF YIRME YAH TO THE EXILES

29

And these are the words of the scroll
Yirme Yah the prophet sent from Yeru Shalem
to the remnant of the elders of the exile
and to the priests and to the prophets
and to all the people
whom Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
exiled from Yeru Shalem to Babel
— after Yechon Yah the sovereign
and the lady and the eunuchs
and the governors of Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem
and the engravers and the locksmiths
departed from Yeru Shalem:
3 by the hand of El Asah the son of Shaphan
and Gemar Yah the son of Hilqi Yah,
— whom Sidqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
sent to Babel
to Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel, saying,
Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El
— to all the exiles
whom I exiled from Yeru Shalem to Babel,
5 Build houses and settle
and plant gardens and eat their fruit;
6 take women and birth sons and daughters;
and take women for your sons
and give your daughters to men
to birth sons and daughters;
so that you abound there and not diminish:
7 and seek the shalom of the city
where I exile you;
and pray to Yah Veh for it:
for in shalom, shalom becomes.
8 For thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El:
See that your prophets and your diviners among you
deceive you not,
and hearken not to the dreams they have you dream:
9 for they prophesy falsehood to you in my name:

JEREMIAH 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

I have not sent them,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
10 For thus saith the LORD Yah Veh,
That after according to my mouth,
seventy years be accomplished fulfilled
at Babylon Babel,
I will shall visit you,
and perform raise my good word toward you,
in causing you to return to this place.
11 For I know the thoughts fabrications
that I think fabricate toward you,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
thoughts fabrications of peace shalom, and not of evil,
to give you an expected end posterity and hope.
12 Then shall ye call upon me,
and ye shall go and pray unto me,
and I will shall hearken unto you.
13 And ye shall seek me, and find me,
when ye shall search for me with all your heart.
14 And I will shall be found of you,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh:
and I will turn away shall restore your captivity,
and I will shall gather you from all the nations goyim,
and from all the places whither I have driven you,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh;
and I will bring shall return you again into the place
whence I caused you to be carried away captive exiled.
15 Because ye have said, The LORD Yah Veh
hath raised us up prophets in Babylon Babel;
16 Know that
thus saith the LORD Yah Veh of the king sovereign
that sitteth settleth upon the throne of David,
and of all the people that dwelleth settleth in this city,
and of your brethren that are not gone forth with you
into captivity exile;
17 Thus saith the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth;
Behold, I will shall send upon them the sword,
the famine, and the pestilence,
and will make shall give them like vile putrified figs,
that cannot be eaten, they are so evil.
18 And I will persecute shall pursue after them
with the sword, with the famine, and with the pestilence,
and will deliver shall give them
to be removed for an agitation
to all the kingdoms sovereigndoms of the earth,
to be a curse for an oath,
and an astonishment a desolation,
and an hissing, and a reproach,
among all the nations goyim whither I have driven them:
19 Because they have not hearkened to my words,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
which I sent unto them by my servants the prophets,
rising up starting early and sending them;
but ye would not hear hearkened not,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
20 Hear ye therefore the word of the LORD Yah Veh,
all ye of the captivity exiles,
whom I have sent
from Jerusalem Yeru Shalem to Babylon Babel:
21 Thus saith the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth,
the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El,
of Ahab Ach Ab the son of Kolaiah Kola Yah,
and of Zedekiah Sidqi Yah
the son of Maaseiah Maase Yah,
which prophesy a lie falsehood unto you in my name;
Behold, I will deliver shall give them
into the hand of Nebuchadrezzar Nebukadnets Tsar
king sovereign of Babylon Babel,
and he shall slay smite them before in front of your eyes;
22 And of them shall be taken up a curse an abasement
by all the captivity exiles of Judah Yah Hudah
which are in Babylon Babel, saying,
The LORD make Yah Veh set thee
like Zedekiah Sidqi Yah and like Ahab Ach Ab,
whom the king sovereign of Babylon Babel
roasted scorched in the fire;
23 Because they have committed villany worked folly
in Israel Yisra El,

YIRME YAH 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I sent them not
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
10 For thus says Yah Veh:
According to my mouth,
when seventy years are fulfilled at Babel,
I visit you and raise my good word toward you
and return you to this place.
11 For I know the fabrications
I fabricate toward you
— an oracle of Yah Veh:
fabrications of shalom and not of evil,
to give you a posterity and hope.
12 And you, call on me; and come and pray to me;
and I hearken to you:
13 and you, seek me and find me
when you search for me with all your heart:
14 and you find me
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and I return your captivity
and I gather you from all the goyim
and from all the places I drove you
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and I return you to the place
whence I exiled you;
because you said,
Yah Veh raised us prophets in Babel;
15 thus says Yah Veh of the sovereign
who settles on the throne of David,
and of all the people who settle in this city,
and of your brothers who were not exiled with you;
17 thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
Behold, I send on them the sword
the famine and the pestilence;
and give them as putrified figs,
not eaten for their evil:
18 and I pursue after them with the sword
with the famine and with the pestilence;
and give them for an agitation
to all the sovereigndoms of the earth
— for an oath and a desolation
and a hissing and a reproach
among all the goyim where I drove them:
19 because they hearken not to my words
— an oracle of Yah Veh
which I sent to them by my servants the prophets
— starting early and sending them;
but you hearken not
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
20 And you, hear the word of Yah Veh, all you exiles,
whom I sent from Yeru Shalem to Babel:
21 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El,
of Ach Ab the son of Kola Yah
and of Sidqi Yah the son of Maase Yah
who prophesy a falsehood to you in my name;
Behold, I give them into the hand
of Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
to smite them in front of your eyes;
and take an abasement from them
for all the exiles of Yah Hudah in Babel, saying,
Yah Veh sets you as Sidqi Yah and as Ach Ab,
whom the sovereign of Babel scorched in the fire;
23 because they worked folly in Yisra El

JEREMIAH 29, 30

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and have committed adultery adulterized
with their neighbour's wives friend's women,
and have spoken lying worded false words in my name,
which I have not commanded misvahed them;
even I know, and am a witness,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
24 Thus shalt thou also speak say
to Shemaiah Shema Yah, the Nehelamite Nechlamiy,
25 saying,
Thus speaketh saith
the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth,
the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El, saying,
Because thou hast sent letters scrolls in thy name
unto all the people that are at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
and to Zephaniah Sephan Yah
the son of Maaseiah Maase Yah the priest,
and to all the priests, saying,
26 The LORD Yah Veh hath made given thee priest
in the stead of Jehoiada Yah Yada the priest,
that ye should be officers overseers
in the house of the LORD Yah Veh,
for every man that is mad insane,
and maketh himself a prophet prophesieth,
that thou shouldst put give him
in prison to the stockade, and in the stocks.
27 Now therefore why hast thou not reproved rebuked
Jeremiah Yirme Yah of Anathoth Anathothiy,
which maketh himself a prophet prophesieth to you?
28 For therefore he sent unto us in Babylon Babel,
saying, This captivity is long:
build ye houses, and dwell settle in them;
and plant gardens, and eat the fruit of them.
29 And Zephaniah Sephan Yah the priest
read called out this letter scroll
in the ears of Jeremiah Yirme Yah the prophet.
30 Then came the word of the LORD Yah Veh
unto Jeremiah Yirme Yah, saying,
31 Send to all them of the captivity the exiles, saying,
Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh
concerning Shemaiah Shema Yah
the Nehelamite Nechlamiy;
Because that Shemaiah Shema Yah
hath prophesied unto you, and I sent him not,
and he caused you to trust confide in a lie falsehood:
32 Therefore thus saith the LORD Yah Veh;
Behold, I will punish shall visit upon
Shemaiah Shema Yah the Nehelamite Nechlamiy,
and his seed:
he shall not have a man
to dwell settle among this people;
neither shall he behold see the good
that I will do shall work for my people,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh;
because he hath taught rebellion worded revolt
against the LORD Yah Veh.

YISRA EL RESTORED

30 The word that came to Jeremiah Yirme Yah
from the LORD Yah Veh, saying,
2 Thus speaketh saith
the LORD God Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El, saying,
Write Inscribe thee all the words
that I have spoken worded unto thee in a book scroll.
3 For, lo behold, the days come,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
that I will bring again shall restore
the captivity of my people
Israel Yisra El and Judah Yah Hudah,
saith the LORD Yah Veh:
and I will shall cause them to return to the land
that I gave to their fathers, and they shall possess it.
4 And these are the words
that the LORD spake Yah Veh worded
concerning Israel Yisra El
and concerning Judah Yah Hudah.
5 For thus saith the LORD Yah Veh;
We have heard a voice of trembling,
of fear, and not of peace shalom.
6 Ask ye now I beseech, and see
whether a man doth travail with child male shall birth?

YIRME YAH 29, 30

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and adulterized with the women of their friends;
and worded false words in my name
which I misvahed them not;
— I know and witness
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
24 And say thus to Shema Yah the Nechlamiy,
saying,
25 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El,
saying,
Because you sent scrolls in your name
to all the people at Yeru Shalem
and to Sephan Yah the son of Maase Yah the priest
and to all the priests, saying,
26 Yah Veh gives you as priest
in the stead of Yah Yada the priest;
being overseers in the house of Yah Veh,
for every insane man who prophesies,
to give him to the stockade and in the stocks.
27 And now why rebuke you not
Yirme Yah of Anathothiy who prophesies to you?
28 For he sent to us in Babel, saying,
This is long: build houses and settle
and plant gardens and eat their fruit.
29 — and Sephan Yah the priest calls out this scroll
in the ears of Yirme Yah the prophet.
30 And so be the word of Yah Veh to Yirme Yah,
saying,
31 Send to all the exiles, saying,
Thus says Yah Veh
concerning Shema Yah the Nechlamiy:
Because Shema Yah prophesied to you
and I sent him not;
and he had you confide in a falsehood:
so thus says Yah Veh:
32 Behold, I visit on Shema Yah the Nechlamiy
and his seed:
he neither has a man to settle among this people
nor sees the good I work for my people
— an oracle of Yah Veh
because he words revolt against Yah Veh.

YISRA EL RESTORED

30 So be the word to Yirme Yah from Yah Veh,
saying,
2 Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El: saying,
Inscribe in a scroll all the words I word to you.
3 For, behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that I restore the captivity
of my people Yisra El and Yah Hudah,
says Yah Veh:
and I restore them to the land I gave to their fathers;
and they possess it.
4 And these are the words Yah Veh worded
concerning Yisra El and concerning Yah Hudah:
5 for thus says Yah Veh:
We hear a voice of trembling;
of fear, and not of shalom:
6 ask, I beseech, and see,
Is a male birthing?

JEREMIAH 30

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

wherefore do I see every *man* **mighty**
with his hands on his loins,
as a *woman in travail* **in birthing**,
and all faces are turned into *pale*ness **pale green?**
7 *Alas Ho!* for that day is great, so that none is like it:
it is even the time of *Jacob's trouble* **Yaaqov's tribulation**,
but he shall be saved out of it.
8 For **And so be** it shall come to pass, in that day,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
that I *will* **shall** break his yoke from off thy neck,
and *will burst* **shall tear** thy bonds,
and strangers shall no more
cause him to serve *themselves of him*:
9 But they shall serve
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**,
and David their *king* **sovereign**,
whom I *will* **shall** raise up unto them.
10 Therefore *fear* **awe** thou not,
O my servant *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**;
neither be dismayed, O *Israel* **Yisra El**: for, *lo* **behold**,
I *will save thee* **am thy saviour** from afar,
and thy seed from the land of their captivity;
and *Jacob* **Yaaqov** shall return,
and shall *be in rest*, and *be quiet* **relax**,
and none shall make him *afraid* **tremble**.
11 For I am with thee,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
to save thee:
though I *make a full end* **work a final finish**
of all *nations* **goyim** whither I have scattered thee,
yet I *will* **shall** not *make a full end* **work a final finish**
of thee:
but I *will correct* **shall discipline** thee
in *measure* **judgment**,
and *will not leave thee altogether* **unpunished**.
12 **in exonerating, shall not exonerate thee**
For thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Thy *bruise* **breech** is incurable,
and thy wound is *grievous* **worn**.
13 There is none to plead thy cause,
that thou mayest be *bound up* **bandaged**:
thou hast no *healing medicines* **bandage healers**.
14 All thy lovers have forgotten thee; they seek thee not;
for I have *wounded* **smitten** thee
with the wound of an enemy,
with the chastisement of a cruel one,
for the *multitude* **abundance**
of *thine iniquity* **thy perversity**;
because thy sins were increased **mighty**.
15 Why criest thou for *thine affliction* **thy breech?**
thy sorrow is incurable
for the *multitude* **abundance**
of *thine iniquity* **thy perversity**:
because thy sins were increased **mighty**,
I have *done* **worked** these *things* unto thee.
16 Therefore all they that *devour* **consume** thee
shall be *devoured* **consumed**;
and all *thine adversaries* **thy tribulators**,
every one of them, shall go into captivity;
and they that *spoil* **plunder** thee
shall be a *spoil* **plundered**,
and all that *prey upon* **plunder** thee
will **shall** I give for a *prey* **plunder**.
17 For I *will restore* **shall ascend** health unto thee,
and I *will* **shall** heal thee of thy wounds,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**;
because they called thee an *Outcast* **Expelled**, saying,
This is *Zion* **Siyon**, whom no man seeketh after.
18 Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**; Behold,
I *will bring again* **shall restore**
the captivity of *Jacob's* **Yaaqov's** tents,
and *have* **shall** mercy on his *dwellingplaces* **tabernacles**;
and the city shall be builded upon her own heap,
and the *palace* **citadel** shall *remain* **be settled**
after the *manner* **judgment thereof**.
19 And out of them
shall proceed *thanksgiving* **spread hands**
and the voice of them that *make merry* **ridicule**:

YIRME YAH 30

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Why see I all the mighty with his hands on his loins
as in birthing?
— and all faces turn into pale green?
Ho! for that day is great; none like it:
it is even the time of the tribulation of Yaaqov,
but he is saved from it.
8 For so be it, in that day,
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
that I break his yoke from off your neck,
and tear your bonds,
and he no more serves strangers:
9 and they serve Yah Veh their Elohim;
and David their sovereign whom I raise to them.
10 And you, neither awe, O my servant Yaaqov
— an oracle of Yah Veh;
nor dismay, O Yisra El:
for behold, I am your saviour from afar
and your seed from the land of their captivity;
and Yaaqov returns and rests and relaxes
and no one trembles him.
11 For I am with you
— an oracle of Yah Veh
to save you:
though I work a final finish
of all goyim where I scattered you,
yet I not work a final finish of you:
and I discipline you in judgment,
and in exonerating, I exonerate you not.
For thus says Yah Veh:
Your breech is incurable and your wound is worn:
13 — no one pleads your cause
— bandages you, no bandage healers.
14 All your lovers forget you; they seek you not:
for I smite you with the wound of an enemy;
with the chastisement of a cruel one;
for the abundance of your perversity;
your sins are mighty.
15 Why cry for your breech?
your sorrow is incurable
for the abundance of your perversity:
your sins are mighty, I worked these to you.
16 So all who consume you are consumed;
and all your tribulators — every one of them
go into captivity;
and they who plunder you, are plundered;
and all who plunder you, I give for a plunder:
for I ascend health to you
and I heal you of your wounds
— an oracle of Yah Veh
because they called you, Expelled
— Siyon, whom no man seeks after.
18 Thus says Yah Veh:
Behold, I restore the captivity of the tents of Yaaqov
and mercy his tabernacles;
and build the city on her own heap,
and settle the citadel according to the judgment.
19 And spread hands proceed from them
and the voice of them who ridicule:

JEREMIAH 30, 31

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and I will multiply shall abound them,
and they shall not be few diminished;
I will also glorify shall honour them,
and they shall not be small belittled.
20 Their children sons also shall be as aforetime formerly,
and their congregation witness
shall be established before me at my face,
and I will punish shall visit upon all that oppress them.
21 And their nobles mighty shall be of themselves,
and their governor sovereign
shall proceed from the midst of them;
and I will shall cause him to draw near approach,
and he shall approach unto me:
for who is this
that engaged pleased his heart to approach unto me?
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
22 And ye shall be my people,
and I will shall be your God Elohim.
23 Behold, the whirlwind storm of the LORD Yah Veh
goeth forth with fury,
a continuing whirlwind storm:
it shall fall with pain whirl upon the head of the wicked.
24 The fierce anger fuming wrath of the LORD Yah Veh
shall not return,
until he hath done worked it,
and until he have performed raised
the intents intrigue of his heart:
in the latter days ye shall consider discern it.

THE ETERNAL LOVE OF YAH VEH

31 At the same time,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
will I shall be the God Elohim
of all the families of Israel Yisra El,
and they shall be my people.
2 Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh,
The people, which were left the survivors of the sword
found grace charism in the wilderness;
even Israel Yisra El, when I went to cause him to rest.
3 The LORD Yah Veh
hath appeared been seen
of old unto me by me in the distance, saying,
Yea, I have loved thee with an everlasting eternal love:
therefore with lovingkindness have I drawn thee.
4 Again I will shall build thee, and thou shalt be built,
O virgin of Israel Yisra El:
thou shalt again be adorned
with thy tabrets tambourines,
and shalt go forth in the dances round dancing
of them that make merry entertain.
5 Thou shalt yet plant vines
upon the mountains of Samaria Shomeron:
the planters shall plant,
and shall eat profane them as common things.
6 For there shall be a day,
that the watchmen guards
upon the mount Ephraim Ephrayim shall cry call,
Arise ye, and let us go up ascend to Zion Siyon
unto the LORD Yah Veh our God Elohim.
7 For thus saith the LORD Yah Veh;
Sing Shout with gladness cheerfulness for Jacob Yaaqov,
and shout resound among the chief of the nations goyim:
publish ye hearken, praise ye, and say,
O LORD Yah Veh, save thy people,
the remnant survivors of Israel Yisra El.
8 Behold,
I will shall bring them from the north country land,
and gather them from the coasts flanks of the earth land,
and with them the blind and the lame,
the woman with child
and her that travaileth with child birtheth together:
a great company congregation shall return thither.
9 They shall come with weeping,
and with supplications will shall I lead them:
I will shall cause them
to walk by the rivers wadies of waters in a straight way,
wherein they shall not stumble falter:
for I am a father to Israel Yisra El,
and Ephraim Ephrayim is my firstborn firstbirthed.
10 Hear the word of the LORD Yah Veh, O ye nations goyim,

YIRME YAH 30, 31

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and I abound them and they diminish not;
I honor them, and they are not belittled:
20 and his sons become as formerly
and their witness establish at my face:
and I visit on all who oppress them.
21 And their mighty become from themselves,
and their sovereign proceeds from their midst:
and I have him approach; and he approaches to me:
for who is this
who pleases his heart to approach to me?
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
22 And you are my people,
and I am your Elohim.
23 Behold, the storm of Yah Veh goes forth with fury
— a continuing storm:
it whirls on the head of the wicked.
24 The fuming wrath of Yah Veh returns not
until he so works,
and until he raises the intrigue of his heart:
in the latter days we discern.

THE ETERNAL LOVE OF YAH VEH

31 At the same time,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
I become Elohim of all the families of Yisra El,
and they become my people.
2 Thus says Yah Veh,
The people, the survivors of the sword
find charism in the wilderness;
Yisra El, when I go to rest him.
3 Yah Veh is seen by me in the distance,
Yes, I love you with an eternal love:
so with lovingkindness I draw you:
in building, I build you again,
O virgin of Yisra El:
adorn you again with your tambourines
and you come forth
in the round dancing of entertainers:
again, you plant vines
on the mountains of Shomeron:
the planters plant and profane.
4 For there is a day,
that the guards call out on the mount Ephrayim,
Rise, and we ascend to Siyon
to Yah Veh our Elohim.
5 For thus says Yah Veh:
Shout with cheerfulness for Yaaqov
and resound among the chief of the goyim:
hearken, praise, and say,
O Yah Veh, save your people,
the survivors of Yisra El.
6 Behold, I bring them from the north land,
and gather them from the flanks of the land;
the blind and the lame
the woman with child and she who births
together among them:
a great congregation returns there:
they come with weeping;
and with supplications I lead them:
I walk them by the wadies of waters in a straight way
wherein they falter not:
for I am a father to Yisra El
and Ephrayim is my firstbirthed.
7 Hear the word of Yah Veh, O you goyim!

JEREMIAH 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and declare tell it in the *isles* **islands** afar off, and say,
He that scattered *Israel* **winnowed Yisra El**
will **shall** gather him, and keep **guard** him,
as a *shepherd doth* **tender** his *flock* **drove**.
11 For the **LORD Yah Veh** hath redeemed *Jacob Yaaqov*,
and **ransomed** **redeemed** him
from the hand of *him* that was stronger than he.
12 Therefore they shall come
and *sing* **shout** in the height of *Zion* **Siyon**,
and shall flow together
to the goodness of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
for *wheat* **crop**, and for *wine* **juice**, and for oil,
and for the *young* **sons** of the flock and of the herd:
and their soul shall be as a *watered* **saturated** garden;
and they shall not
sorrow any more at all **add to languish**.
13 Then shall the virgin
rejoice **cheer** in the *dance* **round dancing**,
both *young men* **youths** and *old* **elders** together:
for I will **shall** turn their mourning into *joy* **rejoicing**,
and will *comfort* **shall sigh over** them,
and *make* **cheer** them *rejoice* from their *sorrow* **grief**.
14 And I will **shall** satiate the soul of the priests with fatness,
and my people shall be satisfied with my goodness,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
15 Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**;
A voice was heard in Ramah,
lamentation, and bitter weeping of **bitterness**;
Rahel Rachel weeping for her *children* **sons**
refused to *be comforted* **sigh** for her *children* **sons**,
because they were not.
16 Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**;
Refrain **Withhold** thy voice from weeping,
and thine eyes from tears:
for *thy work shall be rewarded*
thou shalt have a hire for thy deeds,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**;
and they shall *come again* **return**
from the land of the enemy.
17 And there is hope in thine end,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that thy *children* **sons**
shall *come again* **return** to their own border.
18 **In hearing**, I have *surely* heard *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
bemoaning **wagging over** himself *thus*;
Thou hast *chastised* **disciplined** me,
and I was *chastised* **disciplined**,
as a *bullock unaccustomed to the yoke* **calf not trained**:
turn thou me, and I shall be turned;
for thou art the **LORD Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**.
19 *Surely* after that I was *turned* **returned**, I *repented* **sighed**;
and after that I was instructed,
I *smote* **slapped** upon my *thigh* **flank**:
I was *ashamed* **shamed**, yea, even confounded,
because I did bear the reproach of my youth.
20 Is *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** my *dear* **esteemed** son?
is he a pleasant child — a **child of delights**?
for since I *spake* **worded sufficient** against him,
I *do earnestly* **In remembering**, I remember him still:
therefore my *bowels* **inwards** are troubled for him;
I will surely have mercy upon
In mercying, I shall *mercy* him,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
21 *Set thee up* **waymarks** **Station monuments**,
make **set** thee *high* **heaps** **pillars**:
set thine heart toward the highway,
even the way which thou wentest:
turn again, O virgin of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
turn again to these thy cities.
22 How long *wilt* **shalt** thou go about,
O thou *backsliding* **apostate** daughter?
for the **LORD Yah Veh**
hath created a *new thing* **newness** in the earth,
A *woman* **female** shall *compass* **surround** a *man* **mighty**.
23 Thus saith the **LORD** of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
As yet they shall *use* **say** this *speech* **word**
in the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and in the cities *thereof*,
when I shall *bring again* **restore** their captivity;

YIRME YAH 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

And tell it in the islands afar off, and say,
He who winnows Yisra El
gathers him and guards him
as a tender to his drove.
11 For Yah Veh redeems Yaaqov
— redeems him
from the hand stronger than his:
12 and they come and shout in the height of Siyon;
and flow together to the goodness of Yah Veh
for crop and for juice and for oil
and for the sons of the flock and of the herd:
and their soul becomes as a saturated garden;
and they add not to languish.
13 Then the virgin cheers in the round dancing
— both youths and elders together
for I turn their mourning into rejoicing,
and sigh over them and cheer them from their grief:
14 and I satiate the soul of the priests with fatness
and satisfy my people with my goodness
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
15 Thus says Yah Veh:
A voice is heard in Ramah
— lamentation; weeping of bitterness:
Rachel weeping for her sons
refuses to sigh for her sons, because they are not.
16 Thus says Yah Veh:
Withhold your voice from weeping
and your eyes from tears:
there is a hire for your deeds
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and they return from the land of the enemy.
17 And there is hope in your end
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that your sons return to their own border.
18 In hearing, I hear Ephrayim wagging over himself;
You disciplined me
— disciplined me as a calf not trained:
return me, and I return;
for you *are* Yah Veh my Elohim.
19 Surely after I returned, I sighed;
and after I was instructed, I slapped my flank:
I shamed, yes, even confounded,
because I bore the reproach of my youth.
20 Is Ephrayim my esteemed son?
A child of delights?
For since I worded sufficient against him,
in remembering, I remember him still:
so my inwards trouble for him;
In mercying, I mercy him
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
21 Station monuments! Set pillars!
Set your heart toward the highway in the way you go!
Return, O virgin of Yisra El!
Return to these your cities!
22 How long go you about, O you apostate daughter?
for Yah Veh creates newness in the earth;
a female surrounds the mighty.
23 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El:
They still say this word
in the land of Yah Hudah and in the cities,
when I restore their captivity;

JEREMIAH 31

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

The LORD **Yah Veh** bless thee,
O habitation **of rest of justice justness,**
and mountain of holiness.
24 And there shall *dwell* **settle** in *Judah* **Yah Hudah** itself,
and in all the cities *thereof* together,
 husbandmen **cultivators,**
and they that go forth with *flocks* **droves.**
25 For I have satiated the *weary* **languid** soul,
and I have *replenished* **fulfilled**
every *sorrowful* **languishing** soul.
26 Upon this I awaked, and *beheld* **saw;**
and my sleep *was sweet unto* **pleased** me.
27 Behold, the days come,
 saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh,**
that I *will sow* **shall seed** the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
and the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
with the seed of *man* **humanity,**
and with the seed of *beast* **animal.**
28 And **so be** it *shall come to pass,*
that like as I have watched over them,
to *pluck up* **uproot,** and to break down,
and to *throw down* **demolish,** and to destroy,
and to *afflict* **vilify;**
so *will* **shall** I watch over them, to build, and to plant,
 saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh.**
29 In those days they shall say no more,
The fathers have eaten a sour grape,
and the *children's* **sons's** teeth are *set on edge* **dull.**
30 But every *one* **man** shall die
for his own *iniquity* **perversity:**
every *man* **all humanity** that eateth the sour grape,
his teeth shall be *set on edge* **dulled.**
YAH VEH CUTS A NEW COVENANT
31 Behold, the days come,
 saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh,**
that I *will make* **shall cut** a new covenant
with the house of *Israel* **Yisra El,**
and with the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah:**
32 Not according to the covenant
that I *made* **cut** with their fathers
in the day that I *took* **held** them by the hand
to bring them out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim;**
which my covenant they brake,
although I was *an husband* **a master** unto them,
 saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh:**
33 But this shall be the covenant
that I *will make* **shall cut** with the house of *Israel* **Yisra El;**
After those days,
 saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh,**
I *will put* **shall give** my law **torah**
in their *inward parts* **inwards,**
and *write* **inscribe** it in their hearts;
and *will* **shall** be their *God* **Elohim,**
and they shall be my people.
34 And they shall teach no more
every man his *neighbour* **friend,**
and every man his brother, saying,
Know *the LORD* **Yah Veh:**
for they shall all know me,
from the least of them unto the greatest of them,
 saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh:**
for I *will* **shall** forgive their *iniquity* **perversity,**
and I *will* **shall** remember their sin no more.
35 Thus *saith the LORD* **Yah Veh,**
which giveth the sun for a light by day,
and the *ordinances* **statutes** of the moon and of the stars
for a light by night,
which *divideth* **spliteth** the sea
when the waves *thereof* roar;
 The LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth** is his name:
36 If those *ordinances* **statutes**
depart from *before me* **my face,**
 saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh,**
then the seed of *Israel* **Yisra El** also
shall cease **shabbathizeth**
from being a *nation before me* **goyim at my face**
for ever **all the days.**
37 Thus *saith the LORD* **Yah Veh;**
If *heaven* **the heavens** above can be measured,

YIRME YAH 31

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Yah Veh bless you,
O habitation of rest of justness, mountain of holiness.
24 And settling in Yah Hudah
and in all the cities together
are cultivators and they who go forth with droves.
25 For I satiate the languid soul,
and I fill full every languishing soul.
26 On this I waken, and see;
and my sleep pleases me.
27 Behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that I seed the house of Yisra El
and the house of Yah Hudah
with the seed of humanity
and with the seed of animal.
28 And so be it, as I watched over them
to uproot and to break down
and to demolish and to destroy and to vilify,
thus I watch over them
to build and to plant
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
29 In those days, they say no more,
The fathers eat sour grapes,
and the teeth of the sons are dull.
30 But every man dies for his own perversity:
all humanity who eat the sour grape, dulls his teeth.
YAH VEH CUTS A NEW COVENANT
31 Behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that I cut a new covenant with the house of Yisra El
and with the house of Yah Hudah:
32 not according to the covenant
I cut with their fathers
in the day I held them by the hand
to bring them from the land of Misrayim
— my covenant which they broke,
although I was their master
— an oracle of Yah Veh:
33 For this *is* the covenant
I cut with the house of Yisra El:
After those days,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
I give my torah in their inwards
and inscribe it in their hearts;
and I become their Elohim
and they become my people:
34 and no more teaches every man his friend,
and every man his brother, saying,
Know Yah Veh!
For they all know me
— from the least of them to the greatest of them
— an oracle of Yah Veh
for I forgive their perversity
and I remember their sin no more.
35 Thus says Yah Veh
who gives the sun for a light by day
and the statutes of the moon and of the stars
for a light by night:
who splits the sea when the waves roar;
Yah Veh Sabaoth *is* his name:
36 If those statutes depart from my face
— an oracle of Yah Veh
then the seed of Yisra El
also shabbathizes from being a goyim at my face
all days.
37 Thus says Yah Veh:
If you measure the heavens above,

JEREMIAH 31, 32

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the foundations of the earth
searched out beneath **probed below**,
I will **shall** also

cast off **spurn** all the seed of *Israel* **Yisra El**
for all that they have *done* **worked**,
saith the **LORD** **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

38 THE NEW CITY Behold, the days come,
saith the **LORD** **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that the city shall be built to the **LORD** **Yah Veh**
from the tower of *Hananeel* **Hanan El**
unto the **gate portal** of the corner.
39 And the measuring line shall yet go forth
over against **in front of** it upon the hill **Gareb**,
and shall *compass about* to *Goath* **surround Goah**.
40 And the whole valley of the *dead bodies* **carcasses**,
and of the *ashes* **fat**,
and all the fields unto the *brook* **wadi** of *Kidron* **Qidron**,
unto the corner of the horse **gate portal**
toward the **east rising**,
shall be holy unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**;
it shall not be *plucked up* **uprooted**,
nor thrown down any more for ever **eternally**.

YIRME YAH SHUT UP

32 The word that came to *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
from the **LORD** **Yah Veh**
in the tenth year of *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**
king sovereign of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
which **year** was the eighteenth year
of *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**.
2 For then the **king sovereign**
of *Babylon's army* **Babel's valiant**
besieged *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
and *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** the prophet
was shut up in the court of the *prison* **target area**,
which was in
the **king sovereign** of *Judah's* **Yah Hudah's** house.
3 For *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**
king sovereign of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
had shut him up, saying,
Wherefore dost thou prophesy, and say **saying**,
Thus saith the **LORD** **Yah Veh**,
Behold, I will **shall** give this city
into the hand of the **king sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and he shall *take* **capture** it;
4 And *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**
king sovereign of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
shall not escape
out of the hand of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**,
but **in giving**, shall *surely* be *delivered* **given**
into the hand of the **king sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and shall *speak* **word** with him mouth to mouth,
and his eyes shall *behold* **see** his eyes;
5 And he shall *lead* *Zedekiah* **carry Sidqi Yah**
to *Babylon* **Babel**,
and there shall he be until I visit him,
saith the **LORD** **an oracle of Yah Veh**:
though ye fight with the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**,
ye shall not prosper.

YIRME YAH CHATELS A FIELD

6 And *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** said,
The word of the **LORD** **Yah Veh** came unto me, saying,
7 Behold,
Hanameel **Hanam El** the son of Shallum thine uncle
shall come unto thee, saying,
Buy **Chattel** thee my field that is in Anathoth:
for the **right judgment** of redemption
is thine to *buy* **chattel** it.
8 So *Hanameel* **Hanam El** mine uncle's son
came to me in the court of the *prison* **target area**
according to the word of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**,
and said unto me,
Buy **Chattel** my field, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
that is in Anathoth,
which is in the *country* **land** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**:
for the **right judgment** of *inheritance* **possession** is thine,
and the redemption is thine; *buy* **chattel** it for thyself.
Then I knew
that this was the word of the **LORD** **Yah Veh**.

YIRME YAH 31, 32

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and probe the foundations of the earth below,
I also spurn all the seed of *Yisra El* for all they worked
— an oracle of *Yah Veh*.

THE NEW CITY

38 Behold, days come,
— an oracle of *Yah Veh*
that the city to *Yah Veh* is built
from the tower of *Hanan El*
to the portal of the corner:
39 and the measuring line goes forth
in front of it to the hill *Gareb*;
and surrounds *Goah*.
40 And the whole valley of the carcasses and of the fat
and all the fields to the wadi of *Qidron*
to the corner of the horse portal toward the rising
are holy to *Yah Veh*
— neither uprooted
nor thrown down any more eternally.

YIRME YAH SHUT UP

32 So be the word to *Yirme Yah* from *Yah Veh*
in the tenth year of *Sidqi Yah* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
— the year, the eighteenth year of *Nebukadnets Tsar*:
and then the valiant of the sovereign of *Babel*
besiege *Yeru Shalem*:
and shut *Yirme Yah* the prophet
in the court of the target area,
in the house of the sovereign of *Yah Hudah*:
3 where *Sidqi Yah* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
shut him, saying,
Why prophesy you, saying,
Thus says *Yah Veh*: Behold,
I give this city into the hand of the sovereign of *Babel*,
to capture it?
4 And *Sidqi Yah* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
escapes not from the hand of the *Kesediym*
but in giving,
is given into the hand of the sovereign of *Babel*;
and words with him mouth to mouth
and his eyes see his eyes;
5 and he carries *Sidqi Yah* to *Babel*
and is there until I visit him
— an oracle of *Yah Veh*
though you fight with the *Kesediym*,
you prosper not?

YIRME YAH CHATELS A FIELD

6 And *Yirme Yah* says,
So be the word of *Yah Veh* to me, saying,
7 Behold, *Hanam El* the son of *Shallum* your uncle
comes to you, saying,
Chattel my field in *Anathoth*:
for the judgment of redemption is yours to *chattel*.
8 And *Hanam El* the son of my uncle
comes to me in the court of the target area
according to the word of *Yah Veh*;
and says to me,
Chattel, I beseech you,
my field in *Anathoth* in the land of *Ben Yamin*:
for the judgment of possession is yours;
and the redemption is yours:
chattel it for yourself:
and I know this *is* the word of *Yah Veh*.

JEREMIAH 32

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

9 And I bought **chatted** the field of Hanameel **Hanam El**
my uncle's son, that was in Anathoth,
and weighed him the money **silver**,
even seventeen shekels of silver.

10 And I *subscribed* **inscribed** the evidence **scroll**,
and sealed it, and took witnesses **witnessed**,
and weighed him the money **silver** in the balances.

11 So I took the evidence **scroll** of the purchase **chattel**,
both that which was sealed
according to the law **misvah** and custom **statute**,
and that which was open **exposed**:

12 And I gave the evidence **scroll** of the purchase **chattel**
unto Baruch the son of **Neriah Neri Yah**,
the son of **Maaseiah Machse Yah**,
in the sight **eyes** of Hanameel **Hanam El**
mine uncle's son,
and in the presence **eyes** of the witnesses
that *subscribed* **inscribed** the book **scroll**
of the purchase **chattel**,
before **in the eyes** of all the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
that sat in the court of the prison **target area**.

13 And I *charged* **misvahed** Baruch
before them **in their eyes**, saying,

14 Thus saith the **LORD** of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the God **Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**;
Take these evidences **scrolls**,
this evidence **scroll** of the purchase **chattel**,
both which is sealed,
and this evidence **scroll** which is open **exposed**;
and put **give** them
in an earthen vessel a **potsherd instrument**,
that they may continue **stand** many days.

15 For thus saith the **LORD** of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the God **Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**;
Houses and fields and vineyards
shall be possessed **chatted** again in this land.

16 Now when **After** I had delivered **given**
the evidence **scroll** of the purchase **chattel**
unto Baruch the son of **Neriah Neri Yah**,
I prayed unto the **LORD** **Yah Veh**, saying,
17 *Ah Lord GOD Aha Adonay Yah Veh!* behold,
thou hast made **worked**
the heaven **heavens** and the earth
by thy great power and stretched out **spread** arm,
and there is **nothing no word**
too hard **marvellous** for thee:

18 Thou shewest **lovingkindness** **workest** mercy
unto thousands,
and recompensest **shalam**
iniquity for the perversity of the fathers
into the bosom of their children **sons** after them:
the Great, the Mighty **God El**,
the **LORD** of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**, is his name,
19 Great in counsel, and **mighty great** in work **exploits**:
for thine eyes are open
upon all the ways of the sons of men **humanity**:
to give every one **man** according to his ways,
and according to the fruit of his **doings exploits**:

20 Which hast set signs and **wonders omens**
in the land of Egypt **Misrayim**, even unto this day,
and in Israel **Yisra El**, and among other men **humanity**;
and hast made **worked** thee a name, as at this day;

21 And hast brought forth thy people Israel **Yisra El**
out of the land of Egypt **Misrayim** with signs,
and with **wonders omens**,
and with a strong hand, and with a stretched out **spread** arm,
and with great **terror awesomeness**;

22 And hast given them this land,
which thou didst swear **oath** to their fathers to give them,
a land flowing with milk and honey;

23 And they came in, and possessed it;
but they obeyed **hearkened** not unto thy voice,
neither walked in thy law **torah**;
they have done **nothing not worked**
of all that thou commandedst **misvahedst** them
to do **work**:
therefore thou hast caused **confronted** all this evil
to come upon them:

24 Behold the **mounds mounds**,

YIRME YAH 32

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 And I chattel the field
of Hanam El the son of my uncle
in Anathoth;
and weigh him the silver
— seventeen shekels of silver:

10 and I inscribe the scroll and seal;
and witnesses witness
and weigh him the silver in the balances:

11 and I take the sealed scroll of the chattel
to the misvah and statute,
with the exposed **one**:

12 and I give the scroll of the chattel to Baruch
the son of Neri Yah the son of Machse Yah
in the eyes of Hanam El *the son* of my uncle,
and in the eyes of the witnesses
who inscribe the scroll of the chattel
in the eyes of all the Yah Hudiym
who sit in the court of the target area.

13 And I misvah Baruch in their eyes, saying,
14 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El:
Take these scrolls,
both this sealed scroll of the chattel,
and this exposed scroll;
and give them in a potsherd instrument
to stand many days.

15 For thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El:
Again houses and fields and vineyards
are chatted in this land.

16 After I give the scroll of the chattel
to Baruch the son of Neri Yah,
I pray to Yah Veh, saying,
17 Aha, Adonay Yah Veh! Behold,
you worked the heavens and the earth
by your great power and spread arm;
and there is no word too marvellous for you:
18 you work mercy to thousands
and shalam for the perversity of the fathers
into the bosom of their sons after them.
The Great! The Mighty El!
Yah Veh Sabaoth *is* his name:
19 great in counsel and great in exploits:
in that your eyes open on all the ways
of the sons of humanity:
to give every man according to his ways,
and according to the fruit of his exploits:

20 who set signs and omens in the land of Misrayim
to this day;
and in Yisra El and among humanity;
and worked a name, as this day;

21 and brought forth your people Yisra El
from the land of Misrayim
with signs and with omens;
and with a strong hand and with a spread arm
and with great awesomeness;
and give them this land
which you oathed to their fathers to give them
— a land flowing with milk and honey;
23 and they came in and possessed;
and they neither hearkened to your voice,
nor walked in your torah;
nor worked all you misvahed them to work:
so you confronted all this evil on them.

24 Behold the mounds,

JEREMIAH 32

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

they are come unto the city to take capture it;
and the city
is given into the hand of the *Chaldeans* Kesediym,
that fight against it, because at the face of the sword,
and of the famine, and of the pestilence:
and what thou hast spoken worded
is come to pass become;
and, behold, thou seest it.
25 And thou hast said unto me,
O Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh,
Buy Chattel thee the field for money silver,
and take have witnesses witness;
for the city
is given into the hand of the *Chaldeans* Kesediym.
26 THE RESPONSE OF YAH VEH
Then came the word of the LORD Yah Veh
unto Jeremiah Yirme Yah, saying,
27 Behold,
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh, the God Elohim of all flesh:
is there any thing word too hard marvellous for me?
28 Therefore thus saith the LORD Yah Veh;
Behold,
I will shall give this city
into the hand of the *Chaldeans* Kesediym,
and into the hand of
Nebuchadrezzar Nebukadnets Tsar
king sovereign of Babylon Babel,
and he shall take it:
29 And the *Chaldeans* Kesediym,
that fight against this city,
shall come and set kindle fire on this city,
and burn it with the houses,
upon whose roofs
they have offered incense incensed unto Baal,
and poured out drink offerings libated libations
unto other gods elohim, to provoke vex me to anger.
30 For the children sons of Israel Yisra El
and the children sons of Judah Yah Hudah
have only done worked evil before me in my eyes
from their youth:
for the children sons of Israel Yisra El
have only provoked vexed me to anger
with the work of their hands,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
31 For this city hath been to me
as a provocation of mine anger my wrath and of my fury
from the day that they built it even unto this day;
that I should remove it turn it aside
from before in front of my face,
32 Because of all the evil
of the children sons of Israel Yisra El
and of the children sons of Judah Yah Hudah,
which they have done worked to provoke vex me to anger,
they, their kings sovereigns,
their princes governors, their priests, and their prophets,
and the men of Judah Yah Hudah,
and the inhabitants settlers of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.
33 And they have turned faced unto me the back neck,
and not the face:
though I taught them,
rising up starting early and teaching them,
yet they have not hearkened
to receive instruction take discipline.
34 But they set their abominations in the house,
which is called by my name, to defile foul it.
35 And they built the high places bamahs of Baal,
which are in
the valley of the son of Hinnom
Gay Ben Hinnom/Valley of the Son of Burning,
to cause their sons and their daughters
to pass through the fire unto Molech;
which I commanded misvahed them not,
neither came ascended it into my mind heart,
that they should do work this abomination abhorrence,
to cause Judah Yah Hudah to sin.
36 And now therefore thus saith the LORD Yah Veh,
the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El,
concerning this city, whereof ye say,

YIRME YAH 32

exeGesés companion BIBLE

they come to the city to capture it
— to give the city into the hand of the Kesediym
who fight against it at the face of the sword
and of the famine and of the pestilence:
and what you worded, becomes;
and behold, you see.
25 And Adonay Yah Veh, you said to me,
Chattel you the field for silver,
and have witnesses witness;
for the city is given into the hand of the Kesediym.

THE RESPONSE OF YAH VEH

26 And so be the word of Yah Veh to Yirme Yah,
saying,
27 Behold, I — Yah Veh, Elohim of all flesh!
Is any word too marvellous for me?
28 So thus says Yah Veh:
Behold,
I give this city into the hand of the Kesediym,
and into the hand
of Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel;
and he takes it:
29 and the Kesediym who fight against this city
come and kindle fire on this city
— and burn it with the houses
on whose roofs they incensed to Baal
and libated libations to other elohim, to vex me:
30 for the sons of Yisra El and the sons of Yah Hudah
surely work evil in my eyes from their youth:
for the sons of Yisra El
surely vex me with the work of their hands
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
31 And so be this city to me
— a provocation of my wrath and of my fury
from the day they built it even to this day;
that I turn it aside from in front of my face,
32 because of all the evil
the sons of Yisra El and the sons of Yah Hudah
work to vex me
— they, their sovereigns,
their governors, their priests, and their prophets,
and the men of Yah Hudah,
and the settlers of Yeru Shalem:
33 and they face their neck to me and not their face:
though I taught them
— starting early and teaching them,
yet they hearken not to take discipline:
34 and they set their abominations in the house
on which my name is called
to foul it:
35 and they build the bamahs of Baal
in Gay Ben Hinnom/Valley of the Son of Burning,
to pass their sons and their daughters
through to Molech
— which I neither misvahed them
nor ascended it into my heart
that they work this abhorrence
to have Yah Hudah sin.
36 And so now,
thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
concerning this city of which you say,

JEREMIAH 32, 33

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

37 It shall be *delivered* given into the hand
of the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
by the sword, and by the famine, and by the pestilence;
Behold,
I *will shall* gather them out of all *countries* **lands**,
whither I have driven them in *mine anger* **my wrath**,
and in my fury, and in great *wrath* **rage**;
and I *will bring shall return* them *again* unto this place,
and I *will shall* cause them
to *dwell safely* **settle confidently**:
38 And they shall be my people,
and I *will shall* be their *God* **Elohim**:
39 And I *will shall* give them one heart, and one way,
that they may *fear awe* me *for ever* **all days**,
for the good of them,
and of their *children* **sons** after them:
40 And I *will make shall cut*
an *everlasting* **eternal** covenant with them,
that I *will shall* not turn away from *after* them,
to *do well*—**please** them *good*;
but I *will put shall give* my fear in their hearts,
that they shall not *depart* **turn aside** from me.
41 Yea, I *will shall* rejoice over them to do them good,
and I *will shall* plant them in this land
assuredly **in truth**
with my whole heart and with my whole soul.
42 For thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
Like as I have brought all this great evil upon this people,
so *will shall* I bring upon them all the good
that I have *promised* **worded** them.
43 And fields shall be *bought* **chattel**ed in this land,
whereof ye say,
It is desolate without *man* **humanity** or *beast* **animal**;
it is given into the hand of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**.
44 Men shall *buy* **chattel** fields for *money* **silver**,
and *subscribe evidences* **inscribe scrolls**, and seal them,
and *take witness* witnesses
in the land of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
and *in the places* **round** about *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and in the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and in the cities of the mountains,
and in the cities of the *valley* **lowland**,
and in the cities of the south:
for I *will cause shall restore* their captivity to *return*,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

THE RESTORATION BY YAH VEH

33 Moreover the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
came unto *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
the second time **secondly**,
while he was yet *shut up* **restrained**
in the court of the *prison* **target area**, saying,
2 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
the maker **worker** thereof,
the LORD **Yah Veh** that formed it, to establish it;
the LORD **Yah Veh** is his name;
3 Call unto me, and I *will shall* answer thee,
and *shew* **tell** thee great and *mighty things* **fortified**,
which thou knowest not.
4 For thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the God **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
concerning the houses of this city,
and concerning the houses
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
which are *thrown* **pulled** down by the *mounds* **mounds**,
and by the sword;
5 They come to fight with the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**,
but it is to fill them
with the *dead bodies* **carcasses** of *men* **humanity**,
whom I have *slain* **smitten**
in *mine anger* **my wrath** and in my fury,
and for all whose *wickedness* **evil**
I have hid my face from this city.
6 Behold,
I *will bring shall ascend* it health and *cure* **healing**,
and I *will cure shall heal* them,
and *will reveal shall expose* unto them
the abundance of *peace* **shalom** and truth.
7 And I *will cause shall restore*
the captivity of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**

YIRME YAH 32, 33

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to give into the hand of the sovereign of Babel
by the sword and by the famine
and by the pestilence,
37 Behold, I gather them from all lands,
where I drove them in my wrath
and in my fury and in great rage;
and I return them to this place:
and have them settle confidently:
38 and they are my people,
and I am their Elohim:
39 and I give them one heart and one way,
so that they awe me all days,
for the good of them
and of their sons after them:
40 and I cut an eternal covenant with them
to not turn away from after them
to well—please them;
and I give my fear in their hearts
that they not turn aside from me.
41 Yes, I rejoice over them to do them good,
and I plant them in this land in truth
with my whole heart and with my whole soul.
42 For thus says Yah Veh:
As I brought all this great evil on this people,
thus I bring all the good I worded on them.
43 And chattel the fields in this land,
whereof you said,
Desolate! Without humanity or animal!
— it is given into the hand of the Kesediym.
44 Men chattel fields for silver
and inscribe scrolls and seal them;
and witnesses witness in the land of Ben Yamin
and all around Yeru Shalem
and in the cities of Yah Hudah
and in the cities of the mountains
and in the cities of the lowland
and in the cities of the south:
and I restore their captivity
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

THE RESTORATION BY YAH VEH

33 And so be the word of Yah Veh
to Yirme Yah secondly,
while he is still restrained
in the court of the target area, saying,
2 Thus says Yah Veh the worker
— Yah Veh former — who established;
Yah Veh is his name:
3 Call to me, and I answer you
and tell you great and fortified
which you know not.
4 For thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
concerning the houses of this city
and concerning the houses
of the sovereigns of Yah Hudah
— which are pulled down by the mounds
and by the sword;
5 they come to fight the Kesediym,
and to fill them with the carcasses of humanity
whom I smote in my wrath and in my fury
— and for all whose evil I hid my face from this city.
6 Behold, I ascend health and healing
and I heal them;
and expose to them
the abundance of shalom and truth:
7 and I restore the captivity of Yah Hudah

JEREMIAH 33

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the captivity of *Israel* **Yisra El** to return,
and *will shall* build them, as at the first.
8 And I *will cleanse shall purify* them
from all their *iniquity perversity*,
whereby they have sinned against me;
and I *will pardon shall forgive*
all their *iniquities perversities*,
whereby they have sinned,
and whereby they have *transgressed rebelled* against me.
9 And it shall be to me a name of *joy rejoicing*,
a *praise halal* and an *honour adornment*
before in front of all the *nations goyim* of the earth,
which shall hear all the good that I *do work* unto them:
and they shall fear and *tremble quiver*
for all the goodness and for all the *prosperity shalom*
that I *procure work* unto it.
10 Thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*;
Again there shall be heard in this place,
which ye say shall be *desolate parched dry*
without *man humanity* and without *beast animal*,
even in the cities of Judah Yah Hudah,
and in the *streets outways* of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
that are *desolate desolated*, without *man humanity*,
and without *inhabitant settler*, and without *beast animal*,
11 The voice of *joy rejoicing*,
and the voice of *gladness cheerfulness*,
the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride,
the voice of them that shall say,
Praise Spread hands
the LORD of hosts unto Yah Veh Sabaoth:
for *the LORD Yah Veh* is good;
for his mercy *endureth for ever be eternal*:
and of them
that shall bring *the sacrifice of praise spread hands*
into the house of *the LORD Yah Veh*.
For I *will shall* cause to *return restore*
the captivity of the land, as at the first,
saith *the LORD Yah Veh*.
12 Thus saith *the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*;
Again in this place, which is *desolate parched dry*
without *man humanity* and without *beast animal*,
and in all the cities *thereof*,
shall be an habitation *of rest* of *shepherds tenders*
causing their flocks to *lie down crouch*.
13 In the cities of the mountains,
in the cities of the *vale lowland*,
and in the cities of the south,
and in the land of *Benjamin Ben Yamin*,
and in the places *round* about *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and in the cities of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
shall the flocks pass again
under the hands of him that telleth them,
saith *the LORD Yah Veh*.
14 Behold, the days come,
saith *the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh*,
that I *will perform shall raise* that good *thing word*
which I have *promised worded*
unto the house of *Israel Yisra El*
and to the house of *Judah Yah Hudah*.
15 In those days, and at that time,
will shall I cause
the *Branch Sprout* of *righteousness justness*
to *grow up sprout* unto David;
and he shall *execute work*
judgment and *righteousness justness* in the land.
16 In those days shall *Judah Yah Hudah* be saved,
and *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
shall *dwell safely tabernacle confidently*:
and this is the name wherewith she shall be called,
The LORD our righteousness Yah Veh Sidqenuw.
17 For thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*;
David shall never *want cut* a man to sit upon the throne
of the house of *Israel Yisra El*;
18 Neither shall the priests the *Levites Leviym*
want cut a man *before me at my face*
to *offer burnt offerings holocaust holocausts*,
and to *kindle meat incense* offerings,
and to *do work* sacrifice continually.

YIRME YAH 33

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the captivity of Yisra El;
and build them as at the first:
8 and I purify them from all their perversity
whereby they sinned against me;
and I forgive all their perversities whereby they sinned
and whereby they rebelled against me.
9 And so be it to me, a name of rejoicing
— a halal and an adornment
in front of all the goyim of the earth
who hear of all the good I work to them:
and they fear and quiver
for all the goodness and for all the shalom
I work to it.
10 Thus says Yah Veh:
Again it is heard in this place,
which you say is parched dry
without humanity and without animal
— in the cities of Yah Hudah
and in the outways of Yeru Shalem that are desolated
— without humanity
and without settler and without animal,
11 The voice of rejoicing
and the voice of cheerfulness;
the voice of the bridegroom
and the voice of the bride;
the voice of them who say,
Spread hands to Yah Veh Sabaoth:
for Yah Veh is good; for his mercy is eternal:
— who bring spread hands to the house of Yah Veh.
For I restore the captivity of the land as at the first,
says Yah Veh.
12 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth;
Again in this place, which is parched dry
without humanity and without animal,
and in all the cities,
a habitation of rest of tenders
whose flocks crouch.
13 In the cities of the mountains
in the cities of the lowland
and in the cities of the south
and in the land of Ben Yamin
and in the places all around Yeru Shalem
and in the cities of Yah Hudah,
the flocks pass again
under the hands of him who tells them,
says Yah Veh.
14 Behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh,
that I raise that good word I worded
to the house of Yisra El
and to the house of Yah Hudah.
15 In those days, and at that time,
I sprout the Sprout of justness unto David;
to work judgment and justness in the land.
16 In those days Yah Hudah is saved,
and Yeru Shalem tabernacles confidently:
and this is what to call her:
Yah Veh Sidqenuw.
17 For thus says Yah Veh:
Neither David cut a man
to sit on the throne of the house of Yisra El;
18 nor the priests the Leviym cut a man at my face
to holocaust holocausts and to incense offerings
and to work sacrifice continually.

JEREMIAH 33, 34

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19 And so be the word of the LORD Yah Veh
came unto Jeremiah Yirme Yah, saying,
20 Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh;
If ye can break my covenant of the day,
and my covenant of the night,
and that there should not be day and night
in their season time;
21 Then may also my covenant be broken
with David my servant,
that he should not have a son to reign upon his throne;
and with the Levites Leviym the priests, my ministers.
22 As the host of heaven the heavens
cannot be numbered scribed,
neither the sand of the sea measured:
so will shall I multiply abound
the seed of David my servant,
and the Levites Leviym that minister unto me.
23 Moreover the word of the LORD Yah Veh
came to Jeremiah Yirme Yah, saying,
24 Considerest Seest thou not
what this people have spoken worded, saying,
The two families which the LORD Yah Veh hath chosen,
he hath even cast them off spurned?
thus they have despised scorned my people,
that they should be no more a nation goyim
before them at their face.
25 Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh;
If my covenant be not with day and night,
and if I have not appointed set the ordinances statutes
of heaven the heavens and earth;
26 Then will shall I cast away spurn
the seed of Jacob Yaaqov and David my servant,
so that I will shall not take any of his seed
to be rulers sovereigns over the seed of Abraham,
Isaac Yischaq, and Jacob Yaaqov:
for I will cause shall restore their captivity to return,
and have shall mercy on them.

THE WORD AGAINST SIDQI YAH

34 The word which came unto Jeremiah Yirme Yah
from the LORD Yah Veh,
when Nebuchadnezzar Nebukadnets Tsar
king sovereign of Babylon Babel,
and all his army valiant,
and all the kingdoms of the earth
of his dominion the reign of his hand,
and all the people,
fought against Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
and against all the cities thereof, saying,
2 Thus saith
the LORD Yah Veh, the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El;
Go and speak say to Zedekiah Sidqi Yah
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah,
and tell say to him, Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh;
Behold, I will shall give this city
into the hand of the king sovereign of Babylon Babel,
and he shall burn it with fire:
3 And thou shalt not escape out of his hand,
but in apprehending,
shalt surely be taken be apprehended,
and delivered given into his hand;
and thine eyes shall behold see
the eyes of the king sovereign of Babylon Babel,
and he shall speak word with thee mouth to mouth,
and thou shalt go to Babylon Babel.
4 Yet hear the word of the LORD Yah Veh,
O Zedekiah Sidqi Yah
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah;
Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh of thee,
Thou shalt not die by the sword:
5 But thou shalt die in peace shalom:
and with the burnings cremations of thy fathers,
the former kings sovereigns
which were before thee at thy face,
so shall they burn odours for thee;
and they will lament shall chop for thee, saying,
Ah lord Ho adoni!
for I have pronounced worded the word,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.

YIRME YAH 33, 34

exeGesés companion BIBLE

19 And so be the word of Yah Veh to Yirme Yah,
saying,
20 Thus says Yah Veh:
If you break my covenant of the day
and my covenant of the night
so that there is no day and night in time;
21 then I also break my covenant
with David my servant,
that he has no son reigning on his throne;
and with the Leviym the priests, my ministers.
22 As neither the host of the heavens is scribed,
nor the sand of the sea measured:
thus I abound the seed of David my servant,
and the Leviym who minister to me.
23 And so be the word of Yah Veh to Yirme Yah,
saying,
24 See you not what this people word, saying,
The two families Yah Veh chose, he spurns?
Thus they scorn my people,
that they are no more a goyim at their face.
25 Thus says Yah Veh:
If my covenant is not day and night;
if I set not the statutes of the heavens and earth;
26 then I also spurn
the seed of Yaaqov and David my servant,
that I not take of his seed to be sovereigns
over the seed of Abraham, Yischaq, and Yaaqov:
for I restore their captivity,
and mercy them.

THE WORD AGAINST SIDQI YAH

34 So be the word to Yirme Yah from Yah Veh
— when Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
and all his valiant
and all the kingdoms of the earth
of the reign of his hand
and all the people fight against Yeru Shalem,
and against all the cities, saying,
2 Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
Go and say to Sidqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah,
and say to him, Thus says Yah Veh:
Behold,
I give this city into the hand of the sovereign of Babel
to burn with fire;
3 and you escape not from his hand:
for in apprehending, you are apprehended
and given into his hand:
and your eyes see the eyes of the sovereign of Babel
and he words with you mouth to mouth;
and you go to Babel.
4 Yet hear the word of Yah Veh,
O Sidqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah;
Thus says Yah Veh of you:
You die not by the sword:
5 you die in shalom:
and with the cremations of your fathers
the former sovereigns at your face;
thus they burn for you: and they chop for you:
Ho adoni!
for the word I worded
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

JEREMIAH 34

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 Then *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** the prophet
spoke **worded** all these words
unto *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
7 When the king **sovereign**
of *Babylon's army* **Babel's valiant**
fought against *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and against all the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
that were left **remained**,
against *Lachish*, and against *Azekah* **Azeqah**:
for these *defenced* **fortified** cities
remained of the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
8 *This is* the word that came unto *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
after that the king *Zedekiah* **sovereign Sidqi Yah**
had made **cut** a covenant with all the people
which were at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
to *proclaim* **call out** liberty unto them;
9 That every man should let his *manservant* **servant**,
and every man his *maidservant* **maid**,
being an Hebrew or an Hebrewess,
go free **be sent away liberated**;
that none should serve himself of them,
to wit, of a *Jew* **Yah Hudahiy** his brother.
10 Now when all the *princes* **governors**,
and all the people,
which had entered into the covenant,
heard that every *one* **man**
should let his *manservant* **servant**,
and every *one* **man** his *maidservant* **maid**,
go free **liberated**,
that none should serve themselves of them any more,
then they *obeyed* **hearkened**, and *let* **sent** them *go* **away**.
11 But afterward they turned,
and caused the servants and the *handmaids* **maids**,
whom they had *let go free* **sent away liberated**, to return,
and brought them into subjection
for servants and for *handmaids* **maids**.
12 Therefore the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came to *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
saying,
13 Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
I made **cut** a covenant with your fathers
in the day that I brought them forth
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
out of the house of *bondmen* **servants**, saying,
14 At the end of seven years
let ye go **send ye away** every man his brother an Hebrew,
which hath been sold unto thee;
and when he hath served thee six years,
thou shalt *let him go free* **send him away liberated**
from thee:
but your fathers hearkened not unto me,
neither *inclined* **spread** their ear.
15 And ye were *now* **to day** turned,
and had *done right* **worked straight** in my *sight* **eyes**,
in *proclaiming* **calling out** liberty
every man to his *neighbour* **friend**;
and ye had made **cut** a covenant *before me* **at my face**
in the house which is called by my name:
16 But ye turned and *polluted* **profaned** my name,
and caused every man his servant,
and every man his *handmaid* **maid**,
whom he had *set at* **spread** liberty
at their *pleasure* **soul**,
to return, and brought them into subjection,
to be unto you for servants and for *handmaids* **maids**.
17 Therefore thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
Ye have not hearkened unto me,
in *proclaiming* **calling out** liberty,
every *one* **man** to his brother,
and every man to his *neighbour* **friend**:
behold, I proclaim a liberty for you,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
to the sword, to the pestilence, and to the famine;
and I *will make* **shall give** you *to be removed* **for an agitation**
into all the kingdoms of the earth.

YIRME YAH 34

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 And Yirme Yah the prophet words all these words
to Sidqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
in Yeru Shalem,
7 when the valiant of the sovereign of Babel
fight against Yeru Shalem
and against all the cities of Yah Hudah that remain
— against Lachish and against Azeqah:
for of the fortified cities
these cities of Yah Hudah remained.
8 So be the word to Yirme Yah from Yah Veh,
after the sovereign Sidqi Yah
cuts a covenant with all the people at Yeru Shalem
— to call out liberty to them;
9 that every man send away his servant
and every man his maid
— Hebrew or Hebrewess:
— liberated, that they serve no one
— a Yah Hudahiy by his brother.
10 And all the governors
and all the people who entered into the covenant
hear that every man liberated his servant
and every man his maid
so that no one be served by them any more;
and they hearken and send them away:
11 and afterward they turn,
and return the servants and the maids,
whom they sent away liberated;
and bring them into subjection
for servants and for maids.
12 And so be the word of Yah Veh to Yirme Yah
from Yah Veh, saying,
13 Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
I cut a covenant with your fathers
in the day I brought them from the land of Misrayim
— from the house of servants, saying,
14 At the end of seven years
every man sends away his brother
— a Hebrew sold to you
— who serves you six years:
send him away liberated from you:
and your fathers neither hearkened to me,
nor spread their ear.
15 And today you turn and work straight in my eyes
in calling out liberty — every man to his friend;
and you cut a covenant at my face
in the house on which my name is called:
16 and you turn and profane my name:
and every man has his servant
and every man his maid
to whom he spread liberty at their soul, to return,
and bring them into subjection
being for servants and for maids.
17 So thus says Yah Veh:
You hearken not to me, in calling out liberty
— every man to his brother
and every man to his friend:
behold, I proclaim a liberty for you
— an oracle of Yah Veh
to the sword, to the pestilence and to the famine;
and I give you for an agitation
into all the kingdoms of the earth:

JEREMIAH 34, 35

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 And I will **shall** give the men
that have *transgressed* **tresspassed** my covenant,
which have not
performed **raised** the words of the covenant
which they had *made before me* **cut at my face**,
when they cut the calf in *twain* **two**,
and passed between the *parts* **sections** thereof,
19 The *princes* **governors** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and the *princes* **governors** of Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**,
the eunuchs, and the priests,
and all the people of the land,
which passed between the *parts* **sections** of the calf;
20 I will **shall** even give them
into the hand of their enemies,
and into the hand of them that seek their *life* **soul**:
and their *dead* **bodies** **carcasses** shall be for *meat* **food**
unto the *fowls* **flyers** of the *heaven* **heavens**,
and to the *beasts* **animals** of the earth.
21 And Zedekiah **Sidqi Yah**
king **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**
and his *princes* **governors**
will **shall** I give into the hand of their enemies,
and into the hand of them that seek their *life* **soul**,
and into the hand
of the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon's* **army** **Babel's valiant**,
which are *gone up* **ascended** from you.
22 Behold, I will *command* **shall** **misvah**,
saith the LORD **an oracle** of **Yah Veh**,
and cause them to return to this city;
and they shall fight against it,
and *take* **capture** it, and burn it with fire:
and I will *make* **shall** **give** the cities of Judah **Yah Hudah**
a desolation without an *inhabitant* **a settler**.

THE OBEDIENCE OF THE HOUSE OF THE RECHABIYM

35 The word which came unto *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
in the days of *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**
the son of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**
king **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**, saying,
2 Go unto the house of the *Rechabites* **Rechabiym**,
and *speak* **word** unto them,
and bring them into the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
into one of the chambers, and give them wine to drink.
3 Then I took *Jaazaniah* **Yaazan Yah**
the son of *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
the son of *Habaziniyah* **Chabatz Tzan Yah**,
and his brethren, and all his sons,
and the whole house of the *Rechabites* **Rechabiym**;
4 And I brought them
into the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
into the chamber of the sons of Hanan,
the son of *Igdaliah* **Yigdal Yah**, a man of *God* **Elohim**,
which was *by* **beside** the chamber
of the *princes* **governors**,
which was above the chamber of *Maaseiah* **Maase Yah**
the son of Shallum,
the *keeper* **guard** of the *door* **threshold**:
5 And I *set before* **gave at the face** of the sons
of the house of the *Rechabites* **Rechabiym**
pots **bowls** full of wine, and cups,
and I said unto them, Drink ye wine.
6 But they said, We will **shall** drink no wine:
for *Jonadab* **Yah Nadab**
the son of Rechab our father
commanded **misvahed** us, saying, Ye shall drink no wine,
neither ye, nor your sons *for ever* **eternally**:
7 Neither shall ye build house,
nor sow **seed** seed, nor plant vineyard, nor have any:
but all your days ye shall *dwell* **settle** in tents;
that ye may live many days in the *land* **face of the soil**
where ye be *strangers* **sojourners**.
8 Thus have we *obeyed* **hearkened**
unto the voice of *Jonadab* **Yah Nadab**
the son of Rechab our father
in all that he hath *charged* **misvahed** us,
to drink no wine all our days,
we, our *wives* **women**, our sons, nor our daughters;
9 Nor to build houses for us to *dwell* **settle** in:
neither have we vineyard, nor field, nor seed:

YIRME YAH 34, 35

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 and I give the men
who tresspass my covenant,
who raise not the words of the covenant
to cut at my face
— when they cut the calf in two
and passed between the sections
19 — the governors of Yah Hudah
and the governors of Yeru Shalem,
the eunuchs, and the priests
and all the people of the land
who passed between the sections of the calf;
20 yes, I give them into the hand of their enemies
and into the hand of them who seek their soul:
and their carcasses become food
to the flyers of the heavens
and to the animals of the earth:
21 and I give Sidqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
and his governors
into the hand of their enemies
and into the hand of them who seek their soul
and into the hand
of the valiant of the sovereign of Babel,
who ascend from you.
22 Behold, I misvah
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and return them to this city;
and they fight against it and capture it
and burn it with fire:
and I give the cities of Yah Hudah
a desolation without a settler.

THE OBEDIENCE OF THE HOUSE OF THE RECHABIYM

35 So be the word to Yirme Yah from Yah Veh
in the days of Yah Yaqim
the son of Yoshi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah, saying,
2 Go to the house of the Rechabiym
and word to them,
and bring them into the house of Yah Veh
— into one of the chambers
and give them wine to drink.
3 And I take Yaazan Yah
the son of Yirme Yah the son of Chabatz Tzan Yah
and his brothers and all his sons
and the whole house of the Rechabiym;
4 and I bring them into the house of Yah Veh
— into the chamber of the sons of Hanan
the son of Yigdal Yah — a man of Elohim,
— beside the chamber of the governors
above the chamber of Maase Yah the son of Shallum
the guard of the threshold:
5 and at the face of the sons
of the house of the Rechabiym
I give bowls full of wine and cups,
and I say to them, Drink wine.
6 And they say, We drink no wine:
for Yah Nadab the son of Rechab our father
misvahed us, saying, Drink no wine
— neither you nor your sons eternally:
neither build house
nor seed seed nor plant vineyard: have none:
and settle all your days in tents;
so that you live many days in the face of the soil
where you sojourn.
7 Thus we hearkened to the voice of Yah Nadab
the son of Rechab our father
in all he misvahed us
— to drink no wine all our days
we, our women, our sons, and our daughters:
8 neither build houses for us to settle in:
nor vineyard, nor field, nor seed:

JEREMIAH 35, 36

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 But we have *dwelt* **settled** in tents,
and have *obeyed* **hearkened**,
and *done* **worked** according to all
that *Jonadab Yah Nadab* our father
commanded **misvahed** us.

11 But **And so be** it *came to pass*,
when *Nebuchadrezzar Nebukadnets Tsar*
king **sovereign** of *Babylon Babel*
came up **ascended** into the land, that we said,
Come, and let us go to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
for fear **from the face** of the *army valiant*
of the Chaldeans Kesediym,
and *for fear* **from the face** of the *army valiant*
of the Syrians Aramiym:
so we *dwell* **settle** at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.

12 Then *came* **And so be** the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*
unto *Jeremiah Yirme Yah*, saying,

13 Thus saith the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*,
the *God Elohim of Israel Yisra El*;
Go and *tell say* to the men of *Judah Yah Hudah*
and the *inhabitants settlers of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
will shall ye not *receive instruction* **take discipline**
to hearken to my words?
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

14 The words of *Jonadab Yah Nadab*
the son of *Rechab*,
that he *commanded* **misvahed** his sons not to drink wine,
are *performed* **raised**;
for unto this day they drink none,
but *obey* **hearken**
unto their father's *commandment* **misvah**:
notwithstanding I have *spoken* **worded** unto you
rising **starting** early and *speaking* **wording**;
but ye hearkened not unto me.

15 I have sent also unto you all my servants the prophets,
rising up **starting** early and sending them, saying,
Return ye now I **beseech**, every man from his evil way,
and *amend* **well—prepare** your *doings* **exploits**,
and go not after other *gods* **elohim** to serve them,
and ye shall *dwell* **settle** in the *land soil*
which I have given to you and to your fathers:
but ye have not *inclined* **spread** your ear,
nor hearkened unto me.

16 Because the sons of *Jonadab Yah Nadab*
the son of *Rechab*
have *performed* **raised** the *commandment* **misvah**
of their father,
which he *commanded* **misvahed** them;
but this people hath not hearkened unto me:

17 Therefore thus saith
the *LORD God of hosts Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth*,
the *God Elohim of Israel Yisra El*;
Behold, I *will shall* bring upon *Judah Yah Hudah*
and upon all
the *inhabitants settlers of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
all the evil that I have *pronounced* **worded** against them:
because I have *spoken* **worded** unto them,
but they have not heard;
and I have called unto them,
but they have not answered.

18 And *Jeremiah Yirme Yah* said
unto the house of the *Rechabites Rechabiym*,
Thus saith the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*,
the *God Elohim of Israel Yisra El*;
Because ye have *obeyed* **hearkened**
unto the *commandment* **misvah**
of *Jonadab Yah Nadab* your father,
and *kept* **guarded** all his *precepts* **misvoth**,
and *done* **worked** according unto all
that he hath *commanded* **misvahed** you:

19 Therefore thus saith
the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*,
the *God Elohim of Israel Yisra El*;
Jonadab Yah Nadab the son of *Rechab*
shall not *want* **cut** a man to stand *before me* **at my face**
for ever **all days**.

YIRME YAH INSCRIBES A SCROLL

36

And **so be** it *came to pass*
in the fourth year of *Jehoiakim Yah Yaqim*

YIRME YAH 35, 36

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 and we settle in tents,
and hearken and work according to all
Yah Nadab our father misvahed us.

11 And so be it,
Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
ascends into the land, and we say,
Come, we go to Yeru Shalem
from the face of the valiant of the Kesediym,
and from the face of the valiant of the Aramiym:
thus we settle at Yeru Shalem.

12 And so be the word of Yah Veh to Yirme Yah,
saying,

13 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El:
Go and say to the men of Yah Hudah
and the settlers of Yeru Shalem,
Take you no discipline to hearken to my words?
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

14 The words that Yah Nadab the son of Rechab
misvahed his sons to not drink wine are raised:
for to this day they drink no one,
but hearken to the misvah of their father:
and I — I worded to you
starting early and wording;
and you hearkened not to me.

15 I also sent all my servants the prophets to you
— starting early, and sending them, saying,
Return, I beseech, every man from his evil way
and well—prepare your exploits;
and go not after other elohim to serve them;
and settle in the soil I gave to you and to your fathers:
and you neither spread your ear
nor hearkened to me.

16 Because the sons of Yah Nadab the son of Rechab
raised the misvah their father misvahed them;
and this people hearken not to me:
so thus says Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth,
Elohim of Yisra El,
Behold, I bring on Yah Hudah
and on all the settlers of Yeru Shalem
all the evil I worded against them:
because I worded to them, and they heard not;
and I called to them, and they answered not.

18 And Yirme Yah says
to the house of the Rechabiym,
Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El:
Because you hearkened
to the misvah of Yah Nadab your father
and guarded all his misvoth;
and worked according to all he misvahed you:

19 so thus says
Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El:
Yah Nadab the son of Rechab
cuts not off a man from standing at my face all days.

YIRME YAH INSCRIBES A SCROLL

36

And so be it,
in the fourth year of Yah Yaqim

JEREMIAH 36

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the son of Josiah Yoshi Yah
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah,
that this word came unto Jeremiah Yirme Yah
from the LORD Yah Veh, saying,
2 Take thee a roll of a book scroll,
and write inscribe therein
all the words that I have spoken worded unto thee
against Israel Yisra El, and against Judah Yah Hudah,
and against all the nations goyim,
from the day I spake worded unto thee,
3 from the days of Josiah Yoshi Yah, even unto this day.
It may be that Perhaps the house of Judah Yah Hudah
will shall hear all the evil
which I purpose fabricate to do work unto them;
that they may return every man from his evil way;
that I may forgive their iniquity perversity and their sin.
4 Then Jeremiah Yirme Yah
called Baruch the son of Neriah Neri Yah:
and Baruch wrote inscribed
from the mouth of Jeremiah Yirme Yah
all the words of the LORD Yah Veh,
which he had spoken worded him,
upon a roll of a book scroll.
5 And Jeremiah Yirme Yah
commanded misvahed Baruch, saying,
I am shut up restrained;
I cannot go into the house of the LORD Yah Veh:
6 Therefore go thou, and read call out in the roll,
which thou hast written inscribed from my mouth,
the words of the LORD Yah Veh in the ears of the people
in the LORD'S house of Yah Veh
upon the fasting day:
and also thou shalt read call them out
in the ears of all Judah Yah Hudah
that come out of their cities.
7 It may be Perhaps they will present shall fell
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh
their supplication
and will shall return every one man from his evil way:
for great is the anger wrath and the fury
that the LORD Yah Veh hath pronounced worded
against this people.
8 And Baruch the son of Neriah Neri Yah
did worked according to all
that Jeremiah Yirme Yah the prophet
commanded misvahed him,
reading calling out in the book scroll
the words of the LORD Yah Veh
in the LORD'S house of Yah Veh.
9 And so be it came to pass
in the fifth year of Jehoiakim Yah Yaqim
the son of Josiah Yoshi Yah
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah,
in the ninth month,
that they proclaimed called a fast
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh
to all the people in Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
and to all the people
that came from the cities of Judah Yah Hudah
unto Jerusalem Yeru Shalem.
10 Then read Baruch called out in the book scroll
the words of Jeremiah Yirme Yah
in the house of the LORD Yah Veh,
in the chamber of Gemariah Gemar Yah
the son of Shaphan the scribe,
in the higher most high court,
at the entry opening of the new gate portal
of the LORD'S house of Yah Veh,
in the ears of all the people.
11 When Michaiah Michah Yah
the son of Gemariah Gemar Yah, the son of Shaphan,
had heard out of the book scroll
all the words of the LORD Yah Veh,
12 Then he went down descended
into the king's sovereign's house,
into the scribe's chamber: and, lo behold,
all the princes governors sat there,
even Elishama Eli Shama the scribe,
and Delaiah Dela Yah the son of Shemaiah Shema Yah,

YIRME YAH 36

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the son of Yoshi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah,
so be the word to Yirme Yah from Yah Veh, saying,
2 Take a roll of a scroll,
and inscribe therein
all the words I worded to you
against Yisra El and against Yah Hudah
and against all the goyim
from the day I worded to you
— from the days of Yoshi Yah even to this day.
3 Perhaps the house of Yah Hudah
hears all the evil I fabricate to work to them;
so that every man returns from his evil way
and I forgive their perversity and their sin.
4 And Yirme Yah calls Baruch the son of Neri Yah:
and from the mouth of Yirme Yah
Baruch inscribes all the words of Yah Veh,
that he words him on a roll of a scroll:
5 and Yirme Yah misvahs Baruch, saying,
I am restrained;
I cannot enter the house of Yah Veh:
6 but you enter, and call out in the roll,
what you inscribe from my mouth
— the words of Yah Veh in the ears of the people
in the house of Yah Veh on the day of fasting:
and also call them out in the ears of all Yah Hudah
who come from their cities:
7 perhaps they fell their supplications
at the face of Yah Veh
so that every man returns from his evil way:
for great is the wrath and the fury
Yah Veh words against this people.
8 And Baruch the son of Neri Yah works
according to all
Yirme Yah the prophet misvahs him
— calling out in the scroll the words of Yah Veh
in the house of Yah Veh.
9 And so be it
in the fifth year of Yah Yaqim
the son of Yoshi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah,
in the ninth month,
they call a fast at the face of Yah Veh
to all the people in Yeru Shalem,
and to all the people
coming from the cities of Yah Hudah to Yeru Shalem.
10 And Baruch calls out in the scroll
the words of Yirme Yah in the house of Yah Veh
in the chamber of Gemar Yah
the son of Shaphan the scribe
— in the most high court
at the opening of the new portal
of the house of Yah Veh
— in the ears of all the people.
11 And Michah Yah
the son of Gemar Yah the son of Shaphan
hears all the words of Yah Veh from the scroll:
12 and he descends to the house of the sovereign
to the chamber of the scribe:
and behold, all the governors sit there
— Eli Shama the scribe
and Dela Yah the son of Shema Yah

JEREMIAH 36

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and *Elnathan* **El Nathan** the son of Achbor,
and *Gemariah* **Gemar Yah** the son of Shaphan,
and *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah** the son of *Hananiah* **Hanan Yah**,
and all the *princes* **governors**.
13 Then *Michaiah* declared **Michah Yah** told unto them
all the words that he had heard,
when Baruch read **called out** the *book* **scroll**
in the ears of the people.
14 Therefore all the *princes* **governors** sent
Jehudi **Yah Hudiy** the son of *Nethaniah* **Nethan Yah**,
the son of *Shelemiah* **Shelem Yah**,
the son of *Cushi* **Kushiy**, unto Baruch, saying,
Take in thine hand the roll
wherein thou hast read **called out**
in the ears of the people,
and come.
So Baruch the son of *Neria* **Neri Yah**
took the roll in his hand, and came unto them.
15 And they said unto him,
Sit down *now* **I beseech**,
and read it **call it out** in our ears.
So Baruch read it **called it out** in their ears.
16 Now **And so be** it came to pass,
when they had heard all the words,
they were afraid *both one* **feared man** and *other* **friend**,
and said unto Baruch,
In telling, We will **shall** surely tell the *king* **sovereign**
of all these words.
17 And they asked Baruch, saying,
Tell us *now* **I beseech**,
How didst thou *write* **inscribe** all these words
at his mouth?
18 Then Baruch answered **said** to them,
He pronounced **called out** all these words unto me
with his mouth,
and I wrote them **inscribed** with ink in the *book* **scroll**.
19 Then said the *princes* **governors** unto Baruch,
Go, hide thee, thou and *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**;
and let no man know where ye be.
YAH YAQIM BURNS THE SCROLL OF YIRME YAH
20 And they went in to the *king* **sovereign** into the court,
but they *laid up* **oversaw** the roll
in the chamber of *Elishama* **Eli Shama** the scribe,
and told all the words in the ears of the *king* **sovereign**.
21 So the *king* **sovereign** sent *Jehudi* **Yah Hudiy**
to *fetch* **take** the roll:
and he took it
out of *Elishama* **Eli Shama** the scribe's chamber.
And *Jehudi* read it **Yah Hudiy** **called it out**
in the ears of the *king* **sovereign**,
and in the ears of all the *princes* **governors**
which stood beside the *king* **sovereign**.
22 Now the *king* **sovereign** sat in the winterhouse
in the ninth month:
and there was a fire on the hearth
a burning before him at his face.
23 And **so be** it came to pass,
that when *Jehudi* **Yah Hudiy**
had read **called out** three or four leaves,
he cut **ripped** it with the *penknife* **scribe's knife**,
and cast it into the fire that was on the hearth,
until all the roll was consumed in the fire
that was on the hearth.
24 Yet they were **feared** not afraid,
nor rent **ripped** their garments **clothes**,
neither the *king* **sovereign**,
nor any of his servants that heard all these words.
25 Nevertheless *Elnathan* **El Nathan**
and *Delaiah* **Dela Yah** and *Gemariah* **Gemar Yah**
had made *intercession* **interceded** to the *king* **sovereign**
that he would **should** not burn the roll:
but he would **should** not hear them.
26 But the *king* **commanded** **sovereign** *misvahed*
Jerahmeel **Yerachme El** the son of *Hammelech* **Melech**,
and *Seraiah* **Sera Yah** the son of *Azriel* **Ezri El**,
and *Shelemiah* **Shelem Yah** the son of *Abdeel* **Abde El**,
to take Baruch the scribe
and *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** the prophet:
but the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hid them.

YIRME YAH 36

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and El Nathan the son of Achbor
and Gemar Yah the son of Shaphan
and Sidqi Yah the son of Hanan Yah
with all the governors.
13 And Michah Yah tells them all the words he heard
when Baruch called out the scroll
in the ears of the people.
14 And all the governors
send Yah Hudiy the son of Nethan Yah
the son of Shelem Yah the son of Kushiy
to Baruch, saying,
Take in your hand the roll
wherein you called out in the ears of the people
and come.
And Baruch the son of Neri Yah
takes the roll in his hand, and comes to them:
and they say to him,
15 Sit down, I beseech, and call it out in our ears.
— and Baruch calls it out in their ears.
16 And so be it, they hear all the words,
and man and friend fear;
and say to Baruch,
In telling, we tell all these words to the sovereign.
17 And they ask Baruch, saying,
Tell us, I beseech,
How inscribed you all these words at his mouth?
18 Then Baruch says to them,
He called out all these words to me with his mouth
and I inscribed with ink in the scroll.
19 Then the governors say to Baruch,
Go, hide — you and Yirme Yah;
so that no man knows where.
YAH YAQIM BURNS THE SCROLL OF YIRME YAH
20 And they go in to the sovereign into the court,
and they oversee the roll
in the chamber of Eli Shama the scribe;
and tell all the words in the ears of the sovereign.
21 And the sovereign sends Yah Hudiy to take the roll:
and he takes it
from the chamber of Eli Shama the scribe:
and Yah Hudiy calls it out
in the ears of the sovereign
and in the ears of all the governors
standing beside the sovereign:
22 and the sovereign is sitting in the winterhouse
in the ninth month:
and the hearth burns at his face.
23 And so be it,
when Yah Hudiy calls out three or four leaves,
he rips it with the knife of the scribe
and casts it into the fire on the hearth
— until all the roll consumes in the fire on the hearth:
24 and they neither fear nor rip their clothes
— neither the sovereign nor any of his servants
who hear all these words.
25 And El Nathan and Dela Yah and Gemar Yah
intercede to the sovereign to not burn the roll:
but he hears them not.
26 And the sovereign misvahs
Yerachme El the son of Melech
and Sera Yah the son of Ezri El
and Shelem Yah the son of Abde El
to take Baruch the scribe and Yirme Yah the prophet:
and Yah Veh hides them.

JEREMIAH 36, 37

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YIRME YAH INSCRIBES A SECOND SCROLL

27 Then the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came to *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
after that the *king* **sovereign** had burned the roll,
and the words which *Baruch* wrote **inscribed**
at the mouth of *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**, saying,
28 **Return**, Take thee *again* another roll,
and write **inscribe** in it
all the former words that were in the first roll,
which *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**
the *king* **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** hath burned.
29 And thou shalt say to *Jehoiakim* *king* **Yah Yaqim**
sovereign of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
Thou hast burned this roll, saying,
Why hast thou *written* **inscribed** therein, saying,
In coming, The *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
shall *certainly* come and *destroy* **ruin** this land,
and shall cause to *cease* **shabbathize** from thence
man **humanity** and *beast* **animal**?
30 Therefore thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
of *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
He shall have none to sit upon the throne of David:
and his *dead* **body** **carcase** shall be cast out
in the day to the *heat* **parchedness**,
and in the night to the frost.
31 And I *will* **punish** **shall visit** upon him
and his seed and his servants for their *iniquity* **perversity**;
and I *will* **shall** bring upon them,
and upon
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and upon the men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
all the evil that I have *pronounced* **worded** against them;
but they hearkened not.
32 Then took *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** another roll,
and gave it to *Baruch* the scribe,
the son of *Neriah* **Neri Yah**;
who wrote **inscribed** therein
from the mouth of *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
all the words of the *book* **scroll**
which *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
had burned in the fire:
and there were added besides unto them
many like words.

YIRME YAH IMPRISONED

37 And *king* **Zedekiah** **sovereign** **Sidqi Yah**
the son of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah** reigned
instead of *Coniah* **Kon Yah**
the son of *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**,
whom *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
made *king* **sovereign** in the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
2 But neither he,
nor his servants, nor the people of the land,
did hearken unto the words of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which he *spake* **worded**
by **the hand** of the prophet *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**.
3 And *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah** the *king* **sovereign**
sent *Jehucal* **Yehuchal** the son of *Shelemiah* **Shelem Yah**
and *Zephaniah* **Sephan Yah**
the son of *Maaseiah* **Maase Yah** the priest
to the prophet *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**, saying,
Pray now **I beseech**,
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim** for us.
4 Now *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
came in and went out among the people:
for they had not *put* **given** him
into **the** prison **house**.
5 Then *Pharaoh's* **army** **Paroh's** **valiant**
was come forth out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
and when the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**
that besieged *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
heard *tidings* **the report** of them,
they *departed* **ascended** from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
6 Then came the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
unto the prophet *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**, saying,

YIRME YAH 36, 37

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YIRME YAH INSCRIBES A SECOND SCROLL

27 And so be the word of *Yah Veh* to *Yirme Yah*
after the sovereign burns the roll
with the words *Baruch* inscribed
at the mouth of *Yirme Yah*, saying,
28 Return, take another roll,
and inscribe therein
all the former words in the first roll
that *Yah Yaqim* the sovereign of *Yah Hudah* burned:
29 and say to *Yah Yaqim* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*,
Thus says *Yah Veh*:
You burned this roll, saying,
Why inscribed you therein, saying,
In coming,
the sovereign of *Babel* comes and ruins this land,
and shabbathizes humanity and animal from it?
30 So thus says *Yah Veh*
of *Yah Yaqim* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*;
No one of his is to sit on the throne of *David*
and his carcase is cast out
— to the parchnness in the day
and to the frost in the night:
31 and I visit on him and his seed and his servants
for their perversity;
and I bring on them
and on the settlers of *Yeru Shalem*
and on the men of *Yah Hudah*
all the evil I worded against them:
and they hearken not.
32 And *Yirme Yah* takes another roll
and gives it to *Baruch* the scribe the son of *Neri Yah*;
who inscribes therein from the mouth of *Yirme Yah*
all the words of the scroll
Yah Yaqim sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
burned in the fire:
and added besides many like words to them.

YIRME YAH IMPRISONED

37 And sovereign *Sidqi Yah* the son of *Yoshi Yah*
reigns in the stead of *Kon Yah* the son of *Yah Yaqim*
whom *Nebukadnets Tsar* sovereign of *Babel*
made sovereign in the land of *Yah Hudah*:
2 and neither he
nor his servants nor the people of the land
hearken to the words of *Yah Veh*
worded by the hand of the prophet *Yirme Yah*.
3 And *Sidqi Yah* the sovereign
sends *Yehuchal* the son of *Shelem Yah*
and *Sephan Yah* the son of *Maase Yah* the priest
to the prophet *Yirme Yah*, saying,
Pray, I beseech, to *Yah Veh* our *Elohim* for us.
4 — and *Yirme Yah* comes and goes
among the people
for they give him not into the prison house.
5 And the valiant of *Paroh* come from *Misrayim*:
and the *Kesediym* besieging *Yeru Shalem*
hear their report;
and they ascend from *Yeru Shalem*.
6 And so be the word of *Yah Veh*
to the prophet *Yirme Yah*, saying,

JEREMIAH 37

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**,
the God **Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**;
Thus shall ye say
to the **king sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
that sent you unto me to enquire of me;
Behold, *Pharaoh's army* **Paroh's valiant**,
which is come forth to help you,
shall return to *Egypt* **Misrayim** into their own land.
8 And the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**
shall *come again* **return**, and fight against this city,
and *take* **capture** it, and burn it with fire.
9 Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**;
Deceive not *yourselves* **your souls**, saying,
The *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**
shall *surely depart* **walk and go** from us:
for they shall not *depart* **go**.
10 For though ye had smitten
the whole *army* **valiant** of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**
that fight against you,
and there *remained* **survived**
but wounded men among them,
yet should they rise up every man in his tent,
and burn this city with fire.
11 And **so be** it came to pass,
that when the *army valiant* of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**
was broken up **ascended** from Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**
for fear **from the face** of *Pharaoh's army* **Paroh's valiant**,
12 Then *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
went forth out of Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**
to go into the land of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**,
to separate himself thence **receive an allotment**
in the midst of the people.
13 And
when he was in the *gate* **portal** of Benjamin **Ben Yamin**,
a *captain* **master** of the *ward* **visitation** was there,
whose name was *Irijah* **Yiri Yah**,
the son of *Shelemiah* **Shelem Yah**,
the son of *Hananiah* **Hanan Yah**;
and he *took* *Jeremiah* **apprehended Yirme Yah**
the prophet, saying,
Thou fallest away to the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**.
14 Then said *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**, *It is false* **Falsehood**;
I fall not away to the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**.
But he hearkened not to him:
so *Irijah* *took* *Jeremiah* **Yiri Yah apprehended Yirme Yah**,
and brought him to the *princes* **governors**.
15 Wherefore the *princes* **governors**
were *wroth* **enraged** with *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
and smote him, and *put* **gave** him in *prison* **the bond house**
in the house of *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** the scribe:
for they had *made* **worked** that the prison **house**.
16 When *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** was entered
into the *dungeon* **well house**, and into the *cabins* **prisons**,
and *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
had *remained* **settled** there many days;
17 Then *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**, the *king* **sovereign**
sent, and took him out:
and the *king* **sovereign** asked him *secretly* **covertly**
in his house, and said,
Is there *any* word from the **LORD Yah Veh**?
And *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** said, There is:
for, said he, thou shalt be *delivered* **given**
into the hand of the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**.
18 Moreover *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
said unto *king* *Zedekiah* **sovereign Sidqi Yah**,
What have I *offended* **sinned** against thee,
or against thy servants, or against this people,
that ye have *put* **given** me in **unto the** prison **house**?
19 Where are *now* your prophets
which prophesied unto you, saying,
The *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
shall not come against you, nor against this land?
20 Therefore hear now, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
O my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**:
let my supplication, I *pray* **beseech** thee,
be accepted before thee **fall at thy face**;
that thou cause me not to return
to the house of *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan** the scribe,
lest I die there.

YIRME YAH 37

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 Thus says Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
Say thus to the sovereign of Yah Hudah,
who sent you to me to enquire of me:
Behold, the valiant of Paroh who come to help you
return to Misrayim into their own land:
8 and the Kesediym return
and fight against this city and capture it
and burn it with fire.
9 Thus says Yah Veh:
Deceive not your souls, saying,
The Kesediym walk and go from us!
— for they go not.
10 For though you smite
all the valiant of the Kesediym
who fight against you,
and there survives but wounded men among them,
every man rises from his tent
to burn this city with fire.
11 And so be it,
the valiant of the Kesediym
ascend from Yeru Shalem
from the face of the valiant of Paroh,
12 and Yirme Yah comes from Yeru Shalem
and goes to the land of Ben Yamin
— to receive an allotment among the people.
13 And so be it,
he is in the portal of Ben Yamin,
a master of the visitation is there
whose name is Yiri Yah
the son of Shelem Yah the son of Hanan Yah;
and he apprehends Yirme Yah the prophet, saying,
You fall to the Kesediym.
14 And Yirme Yah says, Falsehood!
I fall not to the Kesediym.
— and he hearkens not to him.
And Yiri Yah apprehends Yirme Yah,
and brings him to the governors:
15 and the governors enraged over Yirme Yah
and smite him and give him into the bond house
in the house of Yah Nathan the scribe:
which they worked for a prison house.
16 And Yirme Yah enters into the well house
and into the prisons;
and Yirme Yah settles there many days.
17 And Sidqi Yah the sovereign sends
and takes him out:
and in his house the sovereign asks him covertly,
and says, Is there a word from Yah Veh?
And Yirme Yah says, There is.
And he says,
You are given into the hand of the sovereign of Babel.
18 And Yirme Yah says to sovereign Sidqi Yah,
What sinned I against you
— or against your servants — or against this people
that you give me to the prison house?
19 Where are your prophets
who prophesied to you, saying,
The sovereign of Babel
comes not against you or against this land?
20 And now hearken, I beseech you,
O my adoni the sovereign:
that my supplication, I beseech you, fall at your face;
to the house of Yah Nathan the scribe,
lest I die there.

JEREMIAH 37, 38

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

21 Then Zedekiah **Sidqi Yah**, the king sovereign
commanded **misvahed**
that they should *commit Jeremiah* **muster Yirme Yah**
into the court of the *prison* **target area**,
and that they should give him daily
a *piece* **round** of bread
out of the bakers' *street* **outway**,
until all the bread in the city were *spent* **consumed**.
Thus *Jeremiah remained* **Yirme Yah settled**
in the court of the *prison* **target area**.

YIRME YAH IN A PIT

38

Then *Shephatiah* **Shaphat Yah** the son of Mattan,
and *Gedaliah* **Gedal Yah** the son of *Pashur* **Pashchur**,
and *Jucal* **Yuchal** the son of *Shelemiah* **Shelem Yah**,
and *Pashur* **Pashchur** the son of *Malchiah* **Malki Yah**,
heard the words that *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
had spoken unto all the people, saying,
2 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
He that *remaineth* **settleth** in this city
shall die by the sword,
by the famine, and by the pestilence:
but he that goeth forth to the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**
shall live;
for he shall have his *life* **soul** for a *prey* **spoil**,
and shall live.
3 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
In giving, This city shall *surely* be given into the hand
of the king **sovereign** of *Babylon's army* **Babel's valiant**,
which shall *take* **capture** it.
4 Therefore
the *princes* **governors** said unto the king **sovereign**,
We beseech thee, let this man be *put to death* **deathified**:
for thus he *weakeneth* **slackeneth** the hands
of the men of war that *remain* **survive** in this city,
and the hands of all the people,
in *speaking* **wording** such words unto them:
for this man seeketh not
the *welfare* **shalom** of this people,
but the *hurt* **evil**.
5 Then Zedekiah **Sidqi Yah**, the king **sovereign** said,
Behold, he is in your hand:
for the king **sovereign** is not he
that can *do any thing* **word** against you.
6 Then took they *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
and cast him into the *dungeon* **well**
of *Malchiah* **Malki Yah** the son of *Hammelech* **Melech**,
that was in the court of the *prison* **target area**:
and they *let sent* down *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** with cords.
And in the *dungeon* **well** there was no water, but mire:
so *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** sunk in the mire.
7 Now when *Ebedmelech* **Ebed Melech**
the *Ethiopian* **Kushiy**, *one a man* of the eunuchs
which was in the king's **sovereign's** house,
heard that they had *put Jeremiah* **given Yirme Yah**
in the *dungeon* **well**;
the king **sovereign** then sitting
in the *gate* **portal** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**;
8 *Ebedmelech* **Ebed Melech** went forth
out of the king's **sovereign's** house,
and *spake* **worded** to the king **sovereign**, saying,
9 **O My lord** the king **adoni** **sovereign**,
these men have *done evil* **vilified**
in all that they have *done* **worked**
to *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** the prophet,
whom they have cast into the *dungeon* **well**;
and he is like to die *for hunger* **at the face of famine**
in the place where he is:
for there is no more bread in the city.
10 Then the king **sovereign**
commanded Ebedmelech **misvahed Ebed Melech**
the *Ethiopian* **Kushiy**, saying,
Take from hence thirty men *with thee* **under thy hand**,
and *take up Jeremiah* **ascend Yirme Yah** the prophet
out of the *dungeon* **well**, *before ere* he die.
11 So *Ebedmelech* **Ebed Melech**
took the men *with him* **under his hand**,
and went into the house of the king **sovereign**
under the treasury,

YIRME YAH 37, 38

exeGesés companion BIBLE

21 And Sidqi Yah the sovereign
misvahs them to muster Yirme Yah
into the court of the target area,
and that they give him daily
a round of bread from the outway of the bakers,
until all the bread in the city is consumed.
Thus Yirme Yah settles in the court of the target area.

YIRME YAH IN A PIT

38

And Shaphat Yah the son of Mattan
and Gedal Yah the son of Pashchur
and Yuchal the son of Shelem Yah
and Pashchur the son of Malki Yah
hear the words Yirme Yah spoke to all the people,
saying,
2 Thus says Yah Veh:
He who settles in this city dies by the sword
by the famine and by the pestilence:
and he who goes to the Kesediym lives;
for his soul becomes for a spoil, and lives.
3 Thus says Yah Veh,
In giving, this city is given into the hand
of the valiant of the sovereign of Babel
who capture it.
4 And the governors say to the sovereign,
We beseech you, deathify this man:
for thus he slackens the hands
of the men of war who survive in this city
and the hands of all the people,
in wording such words to them:
for this man seeks not the shalom of this people,
but their evil.
5 Then Sidqi Yah the sovereign says,
Behold, he is in your hand:
for the sovereign cannot word against you.
6 And they take Yirme Yah and cast him
into the well of Malki Yah the son of Melech
in the court of the target area:
and they send Yirme Yah down with cords:
and there is no water in the well; only mire:
and Yirme Yah sinks in the mire.
7 And Ebed Melech the Kushiy
a man of the eunuchs in the house of the sovereign
hears that they give Yirme Yah in the well;
and the sovereign sits in the portal of Ben Yamin:
8 Ebed Melech comes from the house of the sovereign
and words to the sovereign, saying,
9 O my adoni sovereign, these men vilify
in all that they work to Yirme Yah the prophet
— whom they cast into the well to die
at the face of famine in the place where he is:
for there is no more bread in the city.
10 And the sovereign
misvahs Ebed Melech the Kushiy, saying,
Take from here thirty men under your hand,
and ascend Yirme Yah the prophet from the well
ere he die.
11 So Ebed Melech takes the men under his hand
and goes into the house of the sovereign
under the treasury,

JEREMIAH 38

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and took thence *old cast clouts* **decayed rags**
and *old* **decayed** rotten rags,
and *let* **sent** them down by cords
into the *dungeon* **well** to *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**.
12 And *Ebedmelech* **Ebed Melech**, the *Ethiopian* **Kushiyy**
said unto *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
Put now **Set I** beseech,
these *old cast clouts* **decayed rags** and rotten rags
under *thine armholes* **the elbow holes** for *thy hands*
under the cords.
And *Jeremiah* **did** **Yirme Yah** worked so.
13 So they drew up *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** with cords,
and took **ascended** him up out of the *dungeon* **well**:
and *Jeremiah* **remained** **Yirme Yah** settled
in the court of the *prison* **target area**.
14 Then *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah** the *king* **sovereign** sent,
and took *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** the prophet unto him
into the third entry
that is in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
and the *king* **sovereign** said unto *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
I will **shall** ask thee a *thing* **word**;
hide nothing **conceal naught** from me.
15 Then *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
said unto *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**,
If I **declare it** tell unto thee,
in deathifying,
wilt **shalt** thou not *surely* **put me to death** deathify me?
and if I *give thee* counsel **thee**,
wilt **shalt** thou not hearken unto me?
16 So *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah** the *king* **sovereign**
sware secretly **oathed covertly** unto *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
saying, *As the* *LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth,
that *made* **worked** us this soul,
I will **shall** not *put* **deathify** thee to death,
neither *will* **shall** I give thee into the hand of these men
that seek thy *life* **soul**.
17 Then said *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
unto *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**,
Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the *God of hosts* **Elohim Sabaoth**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
If in going, thou *wilt* **assuredly** **shalt** go forth
unto the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon's* **Babel's**
princes **governors**,
then thy soul shall live,
and this city shall not be burned with fire;
and thou shalt live, and thine house:
18 But if thou *wilt* **shalt** not go forth
to the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon's* **Babel's**
princes **governors**,
then shall this city be given
into the hand of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**,
and they shall burn it with fire,
and thou shalt not escape out of their hand.
19 And *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah** the *king* **sovereign**
said unto *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
I am *afraid* **concerned** of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
that are fallen to the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**,
lest they *deliver* **give** me into their hand,
and they *mock* **exploit** me.
20 But *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** said,
They shall not *deliver* **give** thee.
Obey **Hear**, I beseech thee,
the voice of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which I *speak* **word** unto thee:
so it shall *be well* unto **well**—**please** thee,
and thy soul shall live.
21 But if thou refuse to go forth,
this is the word
that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *shewed* me **see**:
22 And, behold, all the women that *are left* **survive**
in the *king* **sovereign** of *Judah's* **Yah Hudah's** house
shall be brought forth
to the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon's* **Babel's** *princes* **governors**,
and those *women* shall say,
Thy *friends* **men of shalom** have *set* **goaded** thee *on*,
and have prevailed against thee:
thy feet are sunk in the mire,
and they are *turned away* **back** **apostatized backward**.

YIRME YAH 38

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and takes decayed rags and decayed rotten rags
and sends them down by cords
into the well to Yirme Yah.
12 And Ebed Melech the Kushiyy says to Yirme Yah,
Set, I beseech, these decayed rags and rotten rags
under the elbow holes for your hands
under the cords.
— and Yirme Yah works thus.
13 And they draw up Yirme Yah with cords
and ascend him from the well:
and Yirme Yah settles in the court of the target area.
14 And Sidqi Yah the sovereign sends,
and takes Yirme Yah the prophet to himself
into the third entry in the house of Yah Veh:
and the sovereign says to Yirme Yah,
I ask a word of you; conceal naught from me.
15 And Yirme Yah says to Sidqi Yah,
If I tell you,
in deathifying, deathify you me not?
And if I counsel you, you hearken not to me!
16 And Sidqi Yah the sovereign
oaths covertly to Yirme Yah,
saying, Yah Veh lives, who worked this soul of mine;
I neither deathify you
nor give you into the hand of these men
who seek your soul.
17 And Yirme Yah says to Sidqi Yah,
Thus says Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El:
If in going,
you go to the governors of the sovereign of Babel,
your soul lives,
and this city is not burned with fire;
and you live — and your house:
18 and if you go not
to the governors of the sovereign of Babel,
then this city is given into the hand of the Kesediym
and they burn it with fire;
and you escape not from their hand.
19 And Sidqi Yah the sovereign says to Yirme Yah,
I am concerned for the Yah Hudiym
who fell to the Kesediym;
lest they give me into their hand and they exploit me.
20 And Yirme Yah says, They give you not.
Hear, I beseech you,
the voice of Yah Veh that I word to you:
so it well—pleases you, and your soul lives.
21 And if you refuse to go,
this is the word Yah Veh shows me:
22 and behold, they bring all the women who survive
in the house of the sovereign of Yah Hudah
to the governors of the sovereign of Babel;
and they say,
Your men of shalom goaded you
and prevailed against you:
your feet have sunk in the mire,
and they apostatized backward.

JEREMIAH 38, 39

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 So they shall bring out all thy wives women
and thy children sons to the Chaldeans Kesediym:
and thou shalt not escape out of their hand,
but shalt be taken apprehended
by the hand of the king sovereign of Babylon Babel:
and thou shalt cause this city to be burned with fire.
24 Then said Zedekiah Sidqi Yah
unto Jeremiah Yirme Yah,
Let no man know of these words, and thou shalt not die.
25 But if the princes governors hear
that I have talked worded with thee,
and they come unto thee, and say unto thee,
Declare Tell unto us now I beseech,
what thou hast said worded unto the king sovereign,
hide it conceal not from us,
and we will shall not put deathify thee to death;
also what the king said sovereign worded unto thee:
26 Then thou shalt say unto them,
I presented my supplication
before at the face of the king sovereign,
that he would should not cause me
to return to Jonathan's house the house of Yah Nathan,
to die there.
27 Then came all the princes governors
unto Jeremiah Yirme Yah,
and asked him:
and he told them according to all these words
that the king sovereign had commanded misvahed.
So they left off speaking with him hushed;
for the matter word was not perceived heard.
28 So Jeremiah Yirme Yah
abode settled in the court of the prison target area
until the day
that Jerusalem Yeru Shalem was taken captured:
and he was there
when Jerusalem Yeru Shalem was taken captured.

YERU SHALEM CAPTURED

39 In the ninth year of Zedekiah Sidqi Yah
king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah,
in the tenth month,
came Nebuchadrezzar Nebukadnets Tsar
king sovereign of Babylon Babel
and all his army valiant against Jerusalem Yeru Shalem,
and they besieged it.
2 And in the eleventh year of Zedekiah Sidqi Yah,
in the fourth month, the ninth day of the month,
the city was broken up split.
3 And all the princes governors
of the king sovereign of Babylon Babel came in,
and sat in the middle gate portal,
even Nergalsharezer Nergal Shareser,
Samgarnebo Samgar Nebo, Sarsechim,
Rabsaris the rabbi eunuch,
Nergalsharezer Nergal Shareser,
Rabmag the rabbi magi,
with all the residue survivors of the princes governors
of the king sovereign of Babylon Babel.
4 And so be it came to pass,
that when Zedekiah Sidqi Yah
the king sovereign of Judah Yah Hudah saw them,
and all the men of war,
then they fled, and went forth out of the city by night,
by the way of the king's sovereign's garden,
by the gate portal betwixt the two walls:
and he went out the way of the plain.
5 But the Chaldean's army Kesediym's valiant
pursued after them,
and overtook Zedekiah Sidqi Yah
in the plains of Jericho Yericho:
and when they had taken him,
they brought him up ascended him
to Nebuchadrezzar Nebukadnets Tsar
king sovereign of Babylon Babel
to Riblah in the land of Hamath,
where he gave worded judgment upon him.
6 Then the king sovereign of Babylon Babel
slew slaughtered the sons of Zedekiah Sidqi Yah
in Riblah before in front of his eyes:
also the king sovereign of Babylon Babel

YIRME YAH 38, 39

exeGesés companion BIBLE

23 And they bring all your women and your sons
to the Kesediym:
and you escape not from their hand,
for you are apprehended
by the hand of the sovereign of Babel:
and this city is burned with fire.
24 Then Sidqi Yah says to Yirme Yah,
No man is to know of these words; and you die not:
25 and if the governors hear that I worded with you,
and they come to you, and say to you,
Tell us, I beseech,
what you worded to the sovereign;
conceal not from us; and we deathify you not;
and what the sovereign worded to you:
26 then you say to them,
I presented my supplication
at the face of the sovereign,
that he not return me to the house of Yah Nathan
to die there.
27 And all the governors come to Yirme Yah,
and ask him:
and he tells them according to all these words
the sovereign misvahed:
and they hush; for they hear not the word:
28 and Yirme Yah settles in the court of the target area
until the day Yeru Shalem is captured:
and he is there when Yeru Shalem is captured.

YERU SHALEM CAPTURED

39 In the ninth year
of Sidqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah
in the tenth month,
Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
and all his valiant
come against Yeru Shalem and besiege it:
and in the eleventh year of Sidqi Yah,
in the fourth month, the ninth of the month,
the city is split:
2 and all the governors of the sovereign of Babel
come in and sit in the middle portal
— Nergal Shareser, Samgar Nebo,
Sarsechim the rabbi eunuch,
Nergal Shareser the rabbi magi,
and all the survivors of the governors
of the sovereign of Babel.
3 And so be it,
4 Sidqi Yah the sovereign of Yah Hudah
and all the men of war see them,
and they flee, and go from the city by night
by the way of the garden of the sovereign
by the portal between the two walls:
and he goes the way of the plain.
5 And the valiant of the Kesediym pursue them
and overtake Sidqi Yah in the plains of Yericho:
and they take him and ascend him
to Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
to Riblah in the land of Hamath
— where he words judgment on him.
6 And the sovereign of Babel
slaughters the sons of Sidqi Yah
in Riblah in front of his eyes:
yes, the sovereign of Babel

JEREMIAH 39, 40

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 *slew slaughtered* all the nobles of Judah **Yah Hudah**.
Moreover
he *put out* Zedekiah's **blinded Sidqi Yah's** eyes,
and bound him with *chains* **coppers**,
to carry him to *Babylon* **Babel**.
8 And the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**
burned the *king's* **sovereign's** house,
and the houses of the people, with fire,
and brake down the walls of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
9 Then *Nebuzaradan* **Nebu Zaran**
the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer**
carried away captive **exiled** into *Babylon* **Babel**
the remnant of the people
that *remained* **survived** in the city,
and those that fell away, that fell to him,
with the *rest* **remnant** of the people that *remained* **survived**.
10 But *Nebuzaradan* **Nebu Zaran**
the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer**
left **let survive** of the poor of the people,
which had *nothing* **naught**,
in the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and gave them vineyards and **plowed** fields
at the same time **that same day**.

YIRME YAH SPARED

11 Now *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
gave charge **misvahed** concerning *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
to Nebuzaradan **by the hand of Nebu Zaran**
the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer**, saying,
12 Take him, and *look well to* **set thine eyes unto** him,
and *do* **work** him no *harm* **evil**;
but *do* **work** unto him
even as he shall *say* **word** unto thee.
13 So *Nebuzaradan* **Nebu Zaran**
the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer** sent,
and *Nebushasban* **Nebu Shazban**,
Rabsaris **the rabbi eunuch**,
and *Nergalsharezer* **Nergal Shareser**,
Rabmag **the rabbi magi**,
and all the *king* **sovereign**
of *Babylon's* *princes* **Babel's rabbis**;
14 Even they sent, and took *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
out of the court of the *prison* **target area**,
and *committed* **gave** him unto *Gedaliah* **Gedal Yah**
the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan,
that he should carry him home:
so he *dwelt* **settled** among the people.
15 Now the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came unto *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**,
while he was *shut up* **restrained**
in the court of the *prison* **guard area**, saying,
16 Go and *speak* **say**
to *Ebedmelech* **Ebed Melech** the *Ethiopian* **Kushiy**, saying,
Thus saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**: Behold,
I *will* **shall** bring my words upon this city for evil,
and not for good;
and they shall be *accomplished*
in that day *before thee* **at thy face**.
17 But I *will* **deliver** **shall rescue** thee in that day,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**:
and thou shalt not be given into the hand of the men
of whom thou *art afraid* **fearest to face**.
18 For **In rescuing**, I *will* **surely deliver** **shall rescue** thee,
and thou shalt not fall by the sword,
but thy *life* **soul** shall be for a *prey* **spoil** unto thee:
because thou hast *put thy trust* **confided** in me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

YIRME YAH RESCUED

40 The word that came to *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
after that *Nebuzaradan* **Nebu Zaran**
the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer**
had *let him go* **sent him away** from Ramah,
when he had taken him being bound in *chains* **manacles**
among all *that were carried away captive* **the exiles**
of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
which were *carried away captive* **exiled** unto *Babylon* **Babel**.

YIRME YAH 39, 40

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 slaughters all the nobles of Yah Hudah:
and he blinds the eyes of Sidqi Yah
and binds him with coppers to carry him to Babel.
8 And the Kesediym
burn the house of the sovereign
and the houses of the people with fire,
and break down the walls of Yeru Shalem:
9 and Nebu Zaran the rabbi slaughterer
exiles the remnant of the people
who survive in the city,
and those who fell — who fell to him,
with the remnant of the people who survive
to Babel:
10 and of the poor of the people who have naught
Nebu Zaran the rabbi slaughterer
has them survive in the land of Yah Hudah;
and gives them vineyards and plowed fields
that same day.

YIRME YAH SPARED

11 And Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
misvahs concerning Yirme Yah
by the hand of Nebu Zaran the rabbi slaughterer,
saying,
12 Take him, and set your eyes to him;
and work him no evil:
and work to him as he words to you.
13 And Nebu Zaran the rabbi slaughterer sends;
and Nebu Shazban the rabbi eunuch,
and Nergal Shareser the rabbi magi,
and all the rabbis of the sovereign of Babel;
14 and they send,
and take Yirme Yah from the court of the target area
and give him to Gedal Yah
the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan
to carry him home:
and he settles among the people.
15 And so be the word of Yah Veh to Yirme Yah,
who is restrained in the court of the guard area,
saying,
16 Go and say to Ebed Melech the Kushiy, saying,
Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El:
Behold, I bring my words on this city for evil
and not for good;
to be at your face in that day:
and I rescue you in that day
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and give you not into the hand
of the men you fear to face.
17 In rescuing, I rescue you;
and you fall not by the sword,
and your soul becomes for a spoil to you:
because you confided in me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

YIRME YAH RESCUED

40 And so be the word to Yirme Yah from Yah Veh
after Nebu Zaran the rabbi slaughterer
sent him away from Ramah;
when he took him bound in manacles
among all the exiles of Yeru Shalem and Yah Hudah,
who were exiled to Babel.

JEREMIAH 40

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 And the captain of the guard **rabbi slaughterer**
took *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**, and said unto him,
The LORD **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
hath pronounced **worded** this evil upon this place.
3 Now the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath brought it,
and *done* **worked** according as he hath said **worded**:
because ye have sinned against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and have not *obeyed* **hearkened unto** his voice,
therefore this *thing* is come upon you.
4 And now, behold, I loose thee this day
from the *chains* **manacles** which were upon thine hand.
If it seem good *unto thee* **in thine eyes**
to come with me into *Babylon* **Babel**, come;
and I *will look well* **shall set mine eyes** unto thee:
but if it seem *ill unto thee* **evil in thine eyes**
to come with me into *Babylon* **Babel**, *forbear* **cease**:
behold see, all the land is *before thee* **at thy face**:
whither it seemeth good
and *convenient for thee* **straight in thine eyes** to go,
thither go.
5 Now while he was not yet gone back, *he said*,
Go **Turn** back also to *Gedaliah* **Gedal Yah**
the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan,
whom the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
hath made *governor* **overseer**
over the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and *dwelt* **settle** with him among the people:
or go wheresoever it seemeth
convenient unto thee **straight in thine eyes** to go.
So the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer**
gave him *victuals* **rations** and a *reward* **load/burden**,
and *let* **sent** him *go away*.
6 Then went *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
unto *Gedaliah* **Gedal Yah**
the son of Ahikam to *Mizpah* **Mispeh**;
and *dwelt* **settled** with him among the people
that were *left* **survived** in the land.
7 Now when all
the *captains* **governors** of the *forces* **valiant**
which were in the fields, *even* they and their men,
heard that the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
had made *Gedaliah* **Gedal Yah** the son of Ahikam
governor **overseer** in the land,
and had committed unto him men, and women,
and *children* **toddlers**, and of the poor of the land,
of them that were not
carried away captive **exiled to Babylon Babel**;
8 Then they came to *Gedaliah* **Gedal Yah**
to *Mizpah* **Mispeh**,
even *Ishmael* **Yishma El**
the son of *Nethaniah* **Nethan Yah**,
and *Johanan* **Yah Hanan** and *Jonathan* **Yah Nathan**
the sons of *Kareah* **Qareach**,
and *Seraiah* **Sera Yah** the son of *Tanhumeth* **Tachumeth**,
and the sons of *Ephai* **Ophay**
the *Netophathite* **Netophathiy**,
and *Jezeniah* **Yezan Yah**
the son of a *Maachathite* **Maachahiy**,
they and their men.
9 And *Gedaliah* **Gedal Yah**
the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan
sware **oathed** unto them and to their men, saying,
Fear **Awe** not to serve the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**:
 dwell **settle** in the land,
and serve the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and it shall *be well with* **well—please** you.
10 As for me, behold,
I *will dwell* **shall settle** at *Mizpah* **Mispeh**,
to *serve the Chaldeans* **stand at the face of the Kesediym**,
which *will* **shall** come unto us:
but ye, gather ye wine, and summer fruits, and oil,
and *put* **set** them in your *vessels* **instruments**,
and *dwell* **settle** in your cities
that ye have *taken* **apprehended**.
11 Likewise
when all the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** that were in Moab,
and among the *Ammonites* **sons of Ammon**,
and in Edom, and that were in all the *countries* **lands**,
heard that the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**

YIRME YAH 40

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 And the *rabbi slaughterer* takes *Yirme Yah*,
and says to him,
Yah Veh your *Elohim* words this evil on this place:
3 *Yah Veh* brought and worked it as he *worded*:
because you sinned against *Yah Veh*,
and hearkened not to his voice,
even this is to you:
4 and now, behold, I loose you this day
from the manacles on your hand:
if it seems good in your eyes
to come with me to *Babel*,
come;
and I set my eyes to you:
and if it seem evil in your eyes
to come with me into *Babel*,
cease:
see, all the land is at your face:
where it seems good and straight in your eyes to go,
go:
5 — and he still *replies* not —
or turn back to *Gedal Yah*
the son of *Ahikam* the son of *Shaphan*,
whom the *sovereign* of *Babel*
made *overseer* over the cities of *Yah Hudah*;
and settle with him among the people:
or go wherever it seems straight in your eyes to go.
— and the *rabbi slaughterer*
gives him rations and a *load/burden*
and sends him away.
6 And *Yirme Yah*
goes to *Gedal Yah* the son of *Ahikam* to *Mispeh*;
and settles with him
among the people who survived in the land.
7 And all the *governors* of the *valiant* in the fields
— they and their men
hear that the *sovereign* of *Babel*
made *Gedal Yah* the son of *Ahikam*
overseer in the land,
and committed to him
men and women and toddlers
and of the poor of the land
— of them who were not exiled to *Babel*;
and they go to *Gedal Yah* to *Mispeh*
— even *Yishma El* the son of *Nethan Yah*,
and *Yah Hanan* and *Yah Nathan* the sons of *Qareach*
and *Sera Yah* the son of *Tachumeth*;
and the sons of *Ophay* the *Netophathiy*
and *Yezan Yah* the son of a *Maachahiy*
— they and their men.
8 And *Gedal Yah*
the son of *Ahikam* the son of *Shaphan*
oaths to them and to their men, saying,
Awe not to serve the *Kesediym*:
settle in the land and serve the *sovereign* of *Babel*,
and it well—pleases you.
9 As for me, behold, I settle at *Mispeh*,
to stand at the face of the *Kesediym*
who come to us:
and you, gather wine and summer fruits and oil;
and set them in your instruments:
and settle in the cities you apprehend.
10 And also, all the *Yah Hudiym* in *Moab*
and among the sons of *Ammon* and in *Edom*
and in all the lands,
hear that the *sovereign* of *Babel*

JEREMIAH 40, 41

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

had left a remnant given survivors of Judah Yah Hudah,
and that he had set over oversee them
Gedaliah Gedal Yah
the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan;
12 Even all the Jews Yah Hudiym
returned out of all places whither they were driven,
and came to the land of Judah Yah Hudah,
to Gedaliah Gedal Yah, unto Mizpah Mispheh,
and gathered wine and summer fruits
very much mighty abounding.
13 Moreover
Johanan Yah Hanan the son of Kareah Qareach,
and all the captains governors of the forces valiant
that were in the fields,
came to Gedaliah Gedal Yah to Mizpah Mispheh,
14 And said unto him,
In knowing, Dost thou certainly know that Baalis
the king sovereign of the Ammonites sons of Ammon
hath sent Ishmael Yishma El
the son of Nethaniah Nethan Yah
to slay thee smite thy soul?
But Gedaliah Gedal Yah the son of Ahikam
believed trusted them not.
15 Then Johanan Yah Hanan the son of Kareah Qareach
spake said to Gedaliah Gedal Yah in Mizpah Mispheh
secretly covertly saying, Let me go, I pray thee,
and I will slay Ishmael shall smite Yishma El
the son of Nethaniah Nethan Yah,
and no man shall know it:
wherefore should he slay thee smite thy soul,
that all the Jews Yah Hudiym
which are gathered unto thee should be scattered,
and the remnant survivors in Judah Yah Hudah
perish destruct?
16 But Gedaliah Gedal Yah the son of Ahikam
said unto Johanan Yah Hanan
the son of Kareah Qareach,
Thou shalt not do work this thing word:
for thou speakest wordest falsely of Ishmael Yishma El.

GEDAL YAH EXECUTED

41 Now And so be it came to pass in the seventh month,
that Ishmael Yishma El the son of Nethaniah Nethan Yah
the son of Elishama Eli Shama,
of the seed royal of the sovereignty,
and the princes rabbis of the king sovereign,
even ten men with him,
came unto Gedaliah Gedal Yah the son of Ahikam
to Mizpah Mispheh;
and there they did eat bread together in Mizpah Mispheh.
2 Then arose Ishmael Yishma El
the son of Nethaniah Nethan Yah,
and the ten men that were with him,
and smote Gedaliah Gedal Yah
the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan with the sword,
and slew executed him,
whom the king sovereign of Babylon Babel
had made governor overseer over the land.
3 Ishmael Yishma El also slew smote
all the Jews Yah Hudiym that were with him,
even with Gedaliah Gedal Yah, at Mizpah Mispheh,
and the Chaldeans Kesediym that were found there,
and the men of war.
4 And so be it came to pass the second day
after he had slain Gedaliah executed Gedal Yah,
and no man knew it,
5 That there came certain men from Shechem,
from Shiloh, and from Samaria Shomeron,
even fourscore eighty men, having their beards shaven,
and their clothes rent ripped,
and having cut themselves incised,
with offerings and incense in their hand,
to bring them to the house of the LORD Yah Veh.
6 And Ishmael Yishma El
the son of Nethaniah Nethan Yah
went forth from Mizpah Mispheh to meet them,
weeping all along and walking as he went:
and so be it came to pass,
as he met them, he said unto them,
Come to Gedaliah Gedal Yah the son of Ahikam.

YIRME YAH 40, 41

exeGesés companion BIBLE

gives survivors of Yah Hudah,
and that he has
Gedal Yah the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan
oversee them;
12 and all the Yah Hudiym
return from all the places they were driven
and come to the land of Yah Hudah
— to Gedal Yah, to Mispheh,
and gather wine and summer fruits
mighty abounding.
13 And Yah Hanan the son of Qareach
and all the governors of the valiant in the fields
go to Gedal Yah to Mispheh;
14 and say to him,
In knowing, know you that Baalis
the sovereign of the sons of Ammon
sends Yishma El the son of Nethan Yah
to smite your soul?
— and Gedal Yah the son of Ahikam trusts them not.
15 And Yah Hanan the son of Qareach
says covertly to Gedal Yah in Mispheh, saying,
Have me go, I beseech you,
and I smite Yishma El the son of Nethan Yah,
so that no man knows.
Why have him smite your soul,
that all the Yah Hudiym gathered to you scatter,
and the survivors in Yah Hudah destruct?
16 And Gedal Yah the son of Ahikam
says to Yah Hanan the son of Qareach,
Work not this word:
for you word falsely of Yishma El.

GEDAL YAH EXECUTED

41 And so be it, in the seventh month,
Yishma El the son of Nethan Yah the son of Eli Shama
of the seed of the sovereignty,
and the rabbis of the sovereign
with ten men,
go to Gedal Yah the son of Ahikam to Mispheh;
and there they eat bread together in Mispheh.
2 And Yishma El the son of Nethan Yah
with the ten men
rise and smite Gedal Yah
the son of Ahikam the son of Shaphan
with the sword;
and execute him whom the sovereign of Babel
made overseer over the land.
3 And Yishma El smites all the Yah Hudiym with him
— with Gedal Yah at Mispheh
— with the Kesediym they found there
and the men of war.
4 And so be it,
the second day after he executes Gedal Yah
— and no man knows,
5 men come from Shechem
from Shiloh and from Shomeron
— eighty men
with beards shaven and clothes ripped,
and having incised
— with offerings and incense in their hand
to bring to the house of Yah Veh.
6 And Yishma El the son of Nethan Yah
goes from Mispheh to meet them
— weeping and walking as he goes:
and so be it, as he meets them, he says to them,
Come to Gedal Yah the son of Ahikam.

JEREMIAH 41

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 And it was so,
when they came into the midst of the city,
that *Ishmael Yishma El* the son of *Nethaniah Nethan Yah*
slew **slaughtered** them,
and cast them into the midst of the *pit well*,
he, and the men that were with him.
8 But ten men were found among them
that said unto *Ishmael Yishma El*, **Slay Execute** us not:
for we have **hidden** treasures in the field,
of wheat, and of barley, and of oil, and of honey.
So he *forbare* **ceased**,
and slew them not among their brethren.
9 Now the *pit well* wherein *Ishmael Yishma El*
had cast all the *dead bodies* **carcasses** of the men,
whom he had *slain* **smitten**
because **under the hand** of *Gedaliah Gedal Yah*,
was it which *Asa* the *king* **sovereign** had *made* **worked**
for fear **at the face** of *Baasha Basha*
king **sovereign** of *Israel Yisra El*:
and *Ishmael Yishma El* the son of *Nethaniah Nethan Yah*
filled it with them that were *slain* **pierced**.
10 Then *Ishmael* **carried away captive** *Yishma El* **captured**
all the *residue* **survivors** of the people
that were in *Mizpah Mispheh*,
even the *king's* **sovereign's** daughters, and all the people
that *remained* **survived** in *Mizpah Mispheh*,
whom *Nebuzaradan Nebu Zaradan*
the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer**
had *committed* **mustered**
to *Gedaliah Gedal Yah* the son of *Ahikam*:
and *Ishmael Yishma El* the son of *Nethaniah Nethan Yah*
carried **captured** them *away captive*,
and *departed* **to go** *went to pass over*
to the *Ammonites* **sons of Ammon**.

YAH HANAN RESCUES THE PEOPLE

11 But when
Johanan Yah Hanan the son of *Kareah Qareach*,
and all the *captains* **governors** of the *forces* **valiant**
that were with him,
heard of all the evil
that *Ishmael Yishma El* the son of *Nethaniah Nethan Yah*
had *done* **worked**,
12 Then they took all the men,
and went to fight with *Ishmael Yishma El*
the son of *Nethaniah Nethan Yah*,
and found him
by the great waters that are in *Gibeon Gibon*.
13 Now **And so be** it *came to pass*, that when all the people
which were with *Ishmael Yishma El*
saw *Johanan Yah Hanan* the son of *Kareah Qareach*,
and all the *captains* **governors** of the *forces* **valiant**
that were with him, *then they were glad* **cheered**.
14 So all the people that *Ishmael Yishma El*
had *carried away captive* **captured** from *Mizpah Mispheh*
cast about **turned around** and returned, and went
unto *Johanan Yah Hanan* the son of *Kareah Qareach*.
15 But *Ishmael Yishma El*
the son of *Nethaniah Nethan Yah*
escaped from *Johanan* **the face of Yah Hanan**
with eight men,
and went to the *Ammonites* **sons of Ammon**.
16 Then took *Johanan Yah Hanan*
the son of *Kareah Qareach*,
and all the *captains* **governors** of the *forces* **valiant**
that were with him,
all the *remnant* **survivors** of the people
whom he had *recovered* **returned**
from *Ishmael Yishma El*
the son of *Nethaniah Nethan Yah*,
from *Mizpah Mispheh*,
after that he had *slain* **smitten**
Gedaliah Gedal Yah the son of *Ahikam*,
even mighty men of war,
and the women, and the children, and the eunuchs,
whom he had
brought again **returned** from *Gibeon Gibon*:
17 And they departed, and *dwelt* **settled**
in the *habitation* **inn** of *Chimham Kimham*,
which is by *Bethlehem* **beside Beth Lechem**,

YIRME YAH 41

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 And so be it, they come midst the city,
and *Yishma El* the son of *Nethan Yah*
slaughters them midst the well
— he and the men with him.
8 And they find ten men among them
who say to *Yishma El*, **Execute** us not:
for we hid treasures in the field
— of wheat and of barley and of oil and of honey.
— and he ceases
and slaughters them not among their brothers.
9 And the well wherein *Yishma El*
cast all the carcasses of the men,
whom he smote under the hand of *Gedal Yah*,
was the one *Asa* the sovereign worked
at the face of *Basha* sovereign of *Yisra El*:
Yishma El the son of *Nethan Yah*
fills it with the pierced:
10 and *Yishma El* captures
all the survivors of the people in *Mispheh*
— the daughters of the sovereign
and all the people who survived in *Mispheh*;
whom *Nebu Zaradan* the *rabbi* **slaughterer** *mustered*
to *Gedal Yah* the son of *Ahikam*:
and *Yishma El* the son of *Nethan Yah* captures them,
and goes to pass over to the sons of *Ammon*.

YAH HANAN RESCUES THE PEOPLE

11 And *Yah Hanan* the son of *Qareach*
and all the governors of the valiant with him
hear of all the evil
Yishma El the son of *Nethan Yah* works:
12 and they take all the men,
and go to fight with *Yishma El* the son of *Nethan Yah*:
and they find him by the great waters in *Gibon*.
13 And so be it,
all the people with *Yishma El*
see *Yah Hanan* the son of *Qareach*
and all the governors of the valiant with him,
and they cheer:
14 and all the people *Yishma El* captured from *Mispheh*
turn around and return
and go to *Yah Hanan* the son of *Qareach*:
15 and *Yishma El* the son of *Nethan Yah*
escapes from the face of *Yah Hanan* with eight men
and goes to the sons of *Ammon*.
16 And *Yah Hanan* the son of *Qareach*
and all the governors of the valiant with him
take all the survivors of the people
whom he returned
from *Yishma El* the son of *Nethan Yah*
— from *Mispheh*,
after he smote *Gedal Yah* the son of *Ahikam*
— mighty men of war;
and the women and the children and the eunuchs
whom he returned from *Gibon*:
17 and they depart
and settle in the inn of *Kimham* beside *Beth Lechem*

JEREMIAH 41, 42

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

18 to go to enter into Egypt **Misrayim**,
Because **At the face** of the **Chaldeans Kesediym**:
for they were afraid of them **awed at their face**,
because
Ishmael Yishma El the son of **Nethaniah Nethan Yah**
had slain **Gedaliah smitten Gedal Yah**
the son of **Ahikam**,
whom the king **sovereign** of **Babylon Babel**
made **governor overseer** in the land.

WARNING AGAINST APPROACHING MISRAYIM

42 Then all the **captains governors** of the **forces valiant**,
and **Johanan Yah Hanan** the son of **Kareah Qareach**,
and **Jezeaniah Yezan Yah** the son of **Hoshaiah Hosha Yah**,
and all the people from the least even unto the greatest,
came near,
2 And said unto **Jeremiah Yirme Yah** the prophet,
Let, we beseech thee,
our supplication be accepted **before thee at thy face**,
and pray for us unto the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**,
even for all **this remnant these survivors**;
(for we are left **survived**
but a few of **many an abundance**,
as thine eyes **do behold see** us:)
3 That the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**
may **shew tell** us the way wherein we may walk,
and the **thing word** that we may **do work**.
4 Then **Jeremiah Yirme Yah** the prophet said unto them,
I have heard you; behold,
I **will shall** pray
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**
according to your words;
and **so be** it **shall come to pass**,
that whatsoever **thing word**
the **LORD Yah Veh** shall answer you,
I **will declare shall tell** it unto you;
I **will keep nothing back shall withhold no word**
from you.
5 Then they said to **Jeremiah Yirme Yah**,
The **LORD Yah Veh** be a **true in truth**
and a faithful witness between us,
if we **do work** not even according to all **things the word**
for the which the **LORD Yah Veh** thy **God Elohim**
shall send thee to us.
6 Whether **it be good**, or whether **it be evil**,
we **will obey shall hearken unto** the voice
of the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**,
to whom we send thee;
that it may **be well with well—please** us,
when we **obey hearken unto** the voice
of the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**.
7 And it **came to pass after became at the end of** ten days,
that the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
came unto **Jeremiah Yirme Yah**.
8 Then called he
Johanan Yah Hanan the son of **Kareah Qareach**,
and all the **captains governors** of the **forces valiant**
which were with him,
and all the people from the least even to the greatest,
9 And said unto them, Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**,
the **God Elohim** of **Israel Yisra El**,
unto whom ye sent me
to present **fell** your supplication **before him at his face**;
If ye **will still abide shall return and settle** in this land,
then **will shall** I build you, and not **pull break** you down,
and I **will shall** plant you, and not **pluck uproot** you up:
for I **repent me sigh** of the evil
that I have **done worked** unto you.
11 Be **Awe** not afraid of
the king **sovereign** of **Babylon Babel**,
of whom ye are afraid **fear at his face**;
be not afraid **awed** of him,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh:
for I am with you to save you,
and to **deliver rescue** you from his hand.
12 And I **will shew shall give** mercies unto you,
that he may **have mercy upon** you,
and **cause restore** you to **return** to your own **land soil**.
13 But if ye say,
We **will shall** not **dwell settle** in this land,

YIRME YAH 41, 42

exeGesés companion BIBLE

18 — to go to enter Misrayim
from the face of the Kesediym:
for they **awed** at their face,
because **Yishma El** the son of **Nethan Yah**
smote Gedal Yah the son of **Ahikam**
whom the sovereign of **Babel**
made **overseer** in the land.

WARNING AGAINST APPROACHING MISRAYIM

42 And all the governors of the valiant
and **Yah Hanan** the son of **Qareach**
and **Yezan Yah** the son of **Hosha Yah**
and all the people
from the least even to the greatest come near,
2 and say to **Yirme Yah** the prophet,
Accept, we beseech you,
our supplication at your face;
and pray for us to **Yah Veh** your **Elohim**
for all these survivors
— for only a few from an abundance survive
as your eyes see:
3 that **Yah Veh** your **Elohim** tell us the way to walk
and the word to work.
4 And **Yirme Yah** the prophet says to them,
I hear!
Behold, I pray to **Yah Veh** your **Elohim**
according to your words:
and so be it,
whatever word **Yah Veh** answers you, I tell you;
I withhold no word from you.
5 And they say to **Yirme Yah**,
Yah Veh is, in truth,
a faithful witness between us,
if we work not according to all the word
for which **Yah Veh** your **Elohim** sends you to us:
whether good; whether evil;
6 we hearken to the voice of **Yah Veh** our **Elohim**,
to whom we send you
— that it well—please us
when we hearken
to the voice of **Yah Veh** our **Elohim**.
7 And so be it, at the end of ten days,
the word of **Yah Veh** comes to **Yirme Yah**:
8 and he calls **Yah Hanan** the son of **Qareach**
and all the governors of the valiant with him
and all the people from the least even to the greatest;
9 and says to them,
Thus says **Yah Veh** **Elohim** of **Yisra El**
to whom you sent me
to tell your supplication at his face:
10 If you return and settle in this land,
then I build you, and break you not;
and I plant you, and uproot you not:
for I sigh of the evil I worked to you.
11 Awe not the sovereign of **Babel**
whose face you fear;
awe him not
— an oracle of **Yah Veh**
for I am with you to save you
and to rescue you from his hand:
12 and I give you mercies,
that he mercy you and restore you to your own soil.
13 And if you say,
We neither settle in this land

JEREMIAH 42, 43

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

neither obey **hearken unto** the voice
of the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**,
14 Saying, No;
but we **will shall** go into the land of **Egypt Misrayim**,
where we shall see no war,
nor hear the **sound voice** of the **trumpet shophar**,
nor have hunger of bread;
and there **will shall** we **dwelt settle**:
15 And now therefore
hear the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
ye **remnant survivors** of **Judah Yah Hudah**;
Thus saith the **LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the **God Elohim of Israel Yisra El**;
If **in setting**, ye **wholly** set your faces
to enter into **Egypt Misrayim**, and go to sojourn there;
16 Then **And so be** it shall come to pass,
that the sword, which ye feared,
shall overtake you there in the land of **Egypt Misrayim**,
and the famine, whereof ye were **afraid concerned**,
shall **follow close after adhereth** to you
there in **Egypt Misrayim**; and there ye shall die.
17 So shall it be with all the men that set their faces
to go into **Egypt Misrayim** to sojourn there;
they shall die by the sword,
by the famine, and by the pestilence:
and **none of them there** shall **remain be no survivors**
escape or escapees
from **the face of** the evil that I **will shall** bring upon them.
18 For thus saith the **LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the **God Elohim of Israel Yisra El**;
As **mine anger my wrath** and my fury
hath been poured forth
upon the **inhabitants settlers** of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**;
so shall my fury be poured forth upon you,
when ye shall enter into **Egypt Misrayim**:
and ye shall be an **execration oath**,
and an **astonishment a desolation**,
and a **curse an abasement**, and a reproach;
and ye shall see this place no more.
19 The **LORD Yah Veh** hath **said worded** concerning you,
O ye **remnant survivors** of **Judah Yah Hudah**;
Go ye **Enter** not into **Egypt Misrayim**:
in knowing, know **certainly**
that I have **admonished witnessed** to you this day.
20 For ye **dissembled in your hearts souls have strayed**,
when ye sent me
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**, saying,
Pray for us unto the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim**;
and according unto all
that the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim** shall say,
so **declare tell** unto us, and we **will do shall work** it.
21 And **now** I have this day **declared told** it to you;
but ye have not **obeyed hearkened unto** the voice
of the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**,
nor **any thing aught**
for the which he hath sent me unto you.
22 Now therefore **in knowing**,
know **certainly** that ye shall die by the sword,
by the famine, and by the pestilence,
in the place whither ye desire to go **and** to sojourn.

THE WARNING OF YIRME YAH

43 And **so be** it came to pass,
that when **Jeremiah Yirme Yah**
had **made an end of speaking concluded wording**
unto all the people
all the words of the **LORD Yah Veh** their **God Elohim**,
for which the **LORD Yah Veh** their **God Elohim**
had sent him to them, **even** all these words,
2 Then **spake said**
Azariah Azar Yah the son of **Hoshaiah Hosha Yah**,
and **Johanan Yah Hanan** the son of **Kareah Qareach**,
and all the **proud arrogant** men,
saying unto **Jeremiah Yirme Yah**, Thou speakest falsely:
the **LORD Yah Veh** our **God Elohim** hath not sent thee,
to say **saying**,
Go not into **Egypt Misrayim** to sojourn there:
3 But **Baruch** the son of **Neriah Neri Yah**
setteth goadeth thee **on** against us,
for to **deliver give** us into the hand of the **Chaldeans Kesediym**,

YIRME YAH 42, 43

exeGesés companion BIBLE

nor hearken to the voice of **Yah Veh** your **Elohim**,
14 saying, No!
— but we enter the land of **Misrayim**
where we neither see war
nor hear the voice of the **shophar**
nor hunger for bread — and there we settle:
15 and now so, hear the word of **Yah Veh**
— you survivors of **Yah Hudah**;
Thus says **Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El**:
If in setting, you set your faces to enter **Misrayim**
and go to sojourn there;
16 then so be it,
the sword you fear
overtakes you there in the land of **Misrayim**;
and the famine whereof you are concerned
adheres to you there in **Misrayim**
— and there you die:
17 and so be it with all the men who set their faces
to go into **Misrayim** to sojourn there:
they die by the sword
by the famine and by the pestilence:
and there are no survivors or escapees
from the face of the evil I bring on them.
18 For thus says **Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El**:
As my wrath and my fury
pours on the settlers of **Yeru Shalem**;
thus my fury pours on you
when you enter **Misrayim**:
and you become an oath and a desolation
and an abasement and a reproach;
and you see this place no more.
19 **Yah Veh** words concerning you,
O you survivors of **Yah Hudah**;
Enter not **Misrayim**:
in knowing, know that I witness to you this day:
20 for your souls strayed,
when you sent me to **Yah Veh** your **Elohim**, saying,
Pray for us to **Yah Veh** our **Elohim**;
and according to all **Yah Veh** our **Elohim** says,
tell us, and we work.
21 And this day I tell you;
but you neither hearken
to the voice of **Yah Veh** your **Elohim**
nor for aught for which he sent me to you.
22 And now,
in knowing, know that you die by the sword
by the famine and by the pestilence
in the place where you desire to go to sojourn.

THE WARNING OF YIRME YAH

43 And so be it,
Yirme Yah concludes wording all the words
of **Yah Veh** their **Elohim** to all the people,
for which **Yah Veh** their **Elohim** sent him to them
— all these words,
2 that **Azar Yah** the son of **Hosha Yah**
and **Yah Hanan** the son of **Qareach**
and all the arrogant men say to **Yirme Yah**,
saying, You speak falsely:
Yah Veh our **Elohim** sent you not,
saying, Go not into **Misrayim** to sojourn there.
3 — for **Baruch** the son of **Neri Yah**
goads you against us,
to give us into the hand of the **Kesediym**

JEREMIAH 43, 44

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that they might put us to death,
and carry us away captives **exile us** into *Babylon* **Babel**.
4 So *Johanan* **Yah Hanan** the son of *Kareah* **Qareach**,
and all the *captains* **governors** of the *forces* **valiant**,
and all the people,
obeyed **hearkened** not unto the voice of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
to dwell **settle** in the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
5 But *Johanan* **Yah Hanan** the son of *Kareah* **Qareach**,
and all the *captains* **governors** of the *forces* **valiant**,
took all the *remnant* **survivors** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
that were returned from all *nations* **goyim**,
whither they had been driven,
to dwell **sojourn** in the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
6 Even men **Mighty**, and women, and *children* **toddlers**,
and the *king's* **sovereign's** daughters,
and every *person* **soul** that *Nebuzaradan* **Nebu Zaradan**
the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer**
had left with *Gedaliah* **Gedal Yah**
the son of *Ahikam* the son of *Shaphan*,
and *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** the prophet,
and *Baruch* the son of *Neria* **Neri Yah**.
7 So they came into the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
for they obeyed **hearkened** not
unto the voice of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
thus came they even to *Tahpanhes* **Tachpanches**.
8 Then came the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
unto *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** in *Tahpanhes* **Tachpanches**,
saying,
9 Take great stones in thine hand,
and hide them in the *clay* **cement** in the brickkiln,
which is at the *entry* **portal** of *Pharaoh's* **Paroh's** house
in *Tahpanhes* **Tachpanches**,
in the *sight* **eyes** of the men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
10 And say unto them,
Thus saith the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Behold, I will **shall** send and take
Nebuchadrezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**, my servant,
and will **shall** set his throne
upon these stones that I have hid;
and he shall spread his *royal* **glory** pavilion over them.
11 And when he cometh,
he shall smite the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and deliver such as are for death to death;
and such as are for captivity to captivity;
and such as are for the sword to the sword.
12 And I will **shall** kindle a fire
in the houses of the *gods* **elohim** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
and he shall burn them,
and carry **capture** them away captives:
and he shall *array* **cover** himself
with the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
as a *shepherd* **tender**
putteth on **covereth with** his *garment* **clothes**;
and he shall go forth from thence in *peace* **shalom**.
13 He shall break also
the *images* **monoliths** of *Bethshemesh* **Beth Shemesh**,
that is in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
and the houses
of the *gods* **elohim** of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
shall he burn with fire.

WARNING CONCERNING IDOLATRY

44 The word that came to *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**
concerning all the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
which dwell **settle** in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
which dwell **settle** at *Migdol*,
and at *Tahpanhes* **Tachpanches**, and at *Noph*,
and in the *country* **land** of *Pathros*, saying,
2 Thus saith the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Ye have seen all the evil that I have brought
upon *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and upon all the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
and, behold, this day they are a *desolation* **parch**,
and no man dwelleth **settleteth** therein,
3 Because **At the face** of their *wickedness* **evil**
which they have *committed* **worked**
to *provoke* **vex** me to *anger*,

YIRME YAH 43, 44

exeGesés companion BIBLE

so that they put us to death and exile us to Babel.
4 And *Yah Hanan* the son of *Qareach*
and all the *governors* of the *valiant* and all the people
hearken not to the voice of *Yah Veh*
to settle in the land of *Yah Hudah*:
5 and *Yah Hanan* the son of *Qareach*
and all the *governors* of the *valiant*
take all the *survivors* of *Yah Hudah*,
who returned from all *goyim* where they were driven,
to sojourn in the land of *Yah Hudah*;
6 — *mighty* and women and *toddlers*
and daughters of the *sovereign*
and every *soul* *Nebu Zaradan* the *rabbi slaughterer*
left with *Gedal Yah*
the son of *Ahikam* the son of *Shaphan*
and *Yirme Yah* the prophet
and *Baruch* the son of *Neri Yah*.
7 And they come to the land of *Misrayim*:
for they hearken not to the voice of *Yah Veh*:
thus they come to *Tachpanches*.
8 And so be the word of *Yah Veh*
to *Yirme Yah* in *Tachpanches*, saying,
9 Take great stones in your hand,
and hide them in the *cement* in the brickkiln
at the *portal* of the house of *Paroh* in *Tachpanches*
in the *eyes* of the men of *Yah Hudah*;
10 and say to them,
Thus says *Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim* of *Yisra El*:
Behold, I send and take
Nebukadnets Tsar the *sovereign* of *Babel*, my servant,
and set his throne on these stones I hid:
and he spreads his *glory* pavilion over them:
11 and he comes and smites the land of *Misrayim*
— such as are for death, to death;
and such as are for captivity, to captivity;
and such as are for the sword, to the sword:
12 and I kindle a fire
in the houses of the *elohim* of *Misrayim*;
and he burns them and captures them:
and he covers himself with the land of *Misrayim*
as a *tender* covers with his *clothes*;
and he comes from there in *shalom*:
13 and he breaks the *monoliths* of *Beth Shemesh*
in the land of *Misrayim*;
and burns the houses of the *elohim* of the *Misrayim*
with fire.

WARNING CONCERNING IDOLATRY

44 And so be the word to *Yirme Yah*
concerning all the *Yah Hudiym*
who settle in the land of *Misrayim*
— who settle at *Migdol*
and at *Tachpanches* and at *Noph*
and in the land of *Pathros*, saying,
2 Thus says *Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim* of *Yisra El*:
You see all the evil I bring on *Yeru Shalem*
and on all the cities of *Yah Hudah*;
and behold, this day they are a *parch*,
and no man settles therein
3 at the face of the evil they worked to vex me

JEREMIAH 44

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

in that they went to *burn* incense,
and to serve other *gods* **elohim**, whom they knew not,
neither they, ye, nor your fathers.
4 Howbeit I sent unto you all my servants the prophets,
rising **starting** early and sending them, saying,
Oh I beseech, do work not
this *abominable thing* **word of abhorrence** that I hate.
5 But they hearkened not,
nor *inclined* **spread** their ear
to turn from their *wickedness* **evil**,
to *burn* no **not** incense unto other *gods* **elohim**.
6 Wherefore my fury and *mine anger* **my wrath**
was poured forth,
and was *kindled* **burnt** in the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
and in the *streets* **outways** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
and they are *wasted* **parched** and desolate, as at this day.
7 Therefore now thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
the God of hosts **Elohim Sabaoth**,
the God **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Wherefore *commit* **work** ye this great evil
against your souls,
to cut off from you man and woman,
child **infant** and suckling,
out of *Judah* **the midst of Yah Hudah**,
to *leave you* **that in surviving**, none to *remain* **survive**;
8 In that ye *provoke* **vex** me unto *wrath*
with the works of your hands,
burning incense **incensing** unto other *gods* **elohim**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
whither ye be gone to *dwell* **sojourn**,
that ye might cut yourselves off,
and that ye might be
a *curse* **an abasement** and a reproach
among all the *nations* **goyim** of the earth?
9 Have ye forgotten the *wickedness* **evil** of your fathers,
and the *wickedness* **evil**
of the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and the *wickedness* **evil** of their *wives* **women**,
and your own *wickedness* **evil**,
and the *wickedness* **evil** of your *wives* **women**,
which they have *committed* **worked**
in the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and in the *streets* **outways** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**?
10 They are not *humbled* **crushed** even unto this day,
neither have they *feared* **awed**,
nor walked in my *law* **torah**, nor in my statutes,
that I *set before you* **gave at your face**
and *before* **at the face** of your fathers.
11 Therefore
thus saith *the LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the God **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Behold, I *will* **shall** set my face against you for evil,
and to cut off all *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
12 And I *will* **shall** take
the *remnant* **survivors** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
that have set their faces
to go into the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim** to sojourn there,
and they shall all be consumed,
and fall in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
they shall *even* be consumed
by the sword and by the famine:
they shall die, from the least even unto the greatest,
by the sword and by the famine:
and they shall be an *execration* **oath**,
and an *astonishment* **a desolation**,
and a *curse* **an abasement**, and a reproach.
13 For I *will* **punish shall** visit upon them
that *dwell* **settle** in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
as I have *punished Jerusalem* **visited upon Yeru Shalem**,
by the sword, by the famine, and by the pestilence:
14 So that none
of the *remnant* **survivors** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
which are gone into the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
to sojourn there,
shall escape or remain — **escapees or survivors**
that they should return into the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
to the which they have a *desire* **lift their soul**
to return to *dwell* **settle** there:
for none shall return but such as shall escape.

YIRME YAH 44

exeGesés companion BIBLE

by going in to incense
and to serve other *elohim* whom they know not
— neither they, you, nor your fathers:
4 and I sent to you all my servants the prophets,
starting early and sending them,
saying, I beseech,
work not this word of abhorrence that I hate!
5 And they neither hearken
nor spread their ear to turn from their evil
to not incense to other *elohim*.
6 and I poured my fury and my wrath
and it burns in the cities of *Yah Hudah*
and in the outways of *Yeru Shalem*;
and they are parched and desolate, as this day.
7 And now thus says *Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth*
Elohim of *Yisra El*;
Why work this great evil against your souls,
to cut off from you
man and woman, infant and suckling
from midst *Yah Hudah*,
that in surviving, none survive;
8 in that you vex me with the works of your hands,
incensing to other *elohim* in the land of *Misrayim*
where you go to sojourn,
to cut yourselves off,
and that you become an abasement and a reproach
among all the *goyim* of the earth?
9 Forget you the evil of your fathers?
And the evil of the sovereigns of *Yah Hudah*?
And the evil of their women?
And your own evil?
And the evil your women worked
in the land of *Yah Hudah*
and in the outways of *Yeru Shalem*?
10 They are neither crushed to this day, nor awed;
nor walk in my *torah*
nor in my statutes I gave at your face
and at the face of your fathers.
11 So thus says *Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim* of *Yisra El*:
Behold, I set my face against you for evil,
and cut off all *Yah Hudah*:
12 and I take the survivors of *Yah Hudah*,
who set their faces
to enter the land of *Misrayim* to sojourn there:
and they all *are* consumed,
and fall in the land of *Misrayim*;
— consumed by the sword and by the famine:
they die, from the least even to the greatest,
by the sword and by the famine:
and they become an oath and a desolation
and an abasement and a reproach:
13 and I visit on them
who settle in the land of *Misrayim*,
as I visited on *Yeru Shalem*
— by the sword, by the famine, and by the pestilence:
14 so that not one of the survivors of *Yah Hudah*,
who go into the land of *Misrayim* to sojourn there
— escapees or survivors
return to the land of *Yah Hudah*,
to which they lifted their soul to return to settle there:
for no one returns except such as escape.

JEREMIAH 44

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 Then all the men which knew that their *wives* **women** had *burned incense* **incensed** unto other *gods* **elohim**, and all the women that stood by, a great *multitude* **congregation**, even all the people that *dwelt* **settled** in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**, in Pathros, answered *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah**, saying,
16 As for the word that thou hast *spoken* **worded** unto us in the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, we will **shall** not hearken unto thee.
17 But **in working**, we will *certainly do* **shall work** whatsoever *thing* goeth forth out of our own mouth, to *burn* incense unto the *queen* **sovereignty** of *heaven* **the heavens**, and to *pour out drink offerings* **libate libations** unto her, as we have *done* **worked**, we, and our fathers, our *kings* **sovereigns**, and our *princes* **governors**, in the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, and in the *streets* **outways** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**: for then *had we plenty of victuals* **were we satiated with bread**, and were *well* **good**, and saw no evil.
18 But since we *left off to burn* **ceased to** incense to the *queen* **sovereignty** of *heaven* **the heavens**, and to *pour out drink offerings* **libate libations** unto her, we have wanted all *things*, and have been consumed by the sword and by the famine.
19 And when we *burned incense* **incensed** to the *queen* **sovereignty** of *heaven* **the heavens**, and *poured out drink offerings* **libated libations** unto her, did we *make* **work** her cakes to *worship* **idolize** her, and *pour out drink offerings* **libate libations** unto her, without our men?
20 Then *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** said unto all the people, to the *men* mighty, and to the women, and to all the people which had *given* **answered** him that *answer* **word**, saying,
21 The incense that ye *burned* **incensed** in the cities of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, and in the *streets* **outways** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, ye, and your fathers, your *kings* **sovereigns**, and your *princes* **governors**, and the people of the land, did not the *LORD* **Yah Veh** remember them, and *came* **ascended** it not into his *mind* **heart**?
22 So that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** could no longer bear, *because at the face* of the evil of your *doings* **exploits**, and *because at the face* of the *abominations* **abhorrences** which ye have *committed* **worked**; therefore is your land a *desolation* **parched area**, and an *astonishment* **a desolation**, and a *curse* **an abasement**, without an *inhabitant* **a settler**, as at this day.
23 Because **at the face of that** ye have *burned incense* **incensed**, and because ye have sinned against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, and have not *obeyed* **hearkened unto** the voice of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, nor walked in his *law* **torah**, nor in his statutes, nor in his *testimonies* **witnesses**; therefore this evil *is happened unto* **confronteth** you, as at this day.
24 Moreover *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** said unto all the people, and to all the women, Hear the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, all *Judah* **Yah Hudah** that are in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
25 Thus saith the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**, the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, saying; Ye and your *wives* **women** have both *spoken* **worded** with your mouths, and fulfilled with your hand, saying, **In working**, We will *surely perform* **shall work** our vows that we have vowed, to *burn* incense to the *queen* **sovereignty** of *heaven* **the heavens**, and to *pour out drink offerings* **libate libations** unto her:

YIRME YAH 44

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 Then all the men who know that their women incense to other elohim, and all the women who stand by — a great congregation — even all the people who settle in the land of Misrayim, in Pathros, answer Yirme Yah, saying,
16 The word you worded to us in the name of Yah Veh, we hearkened not to you: for in working,
17 we work whatever comes from our own mouth, to incense to the sovereignty of the heavens and to libate libations to her as we worked — we and our fathers our sovereigns and our governors in the cities of Yah Hudah and in the outways of Yeru Shalem: for then we were satiated with bread and were good and saw no evil: and since we ceased to incense to the sovereignty of the heavens and to libate libations to her, we are all in want, — consumed by the sword and by the famine: and when we incensed
19 to the sovereignty of the heavens, and libated libations to her, worked we cakes to idolize her, and libated libations to her without our men?
20 Then Yirme Yah says to all the people, — to the mighty and to the women and to all the people who answer him words, saying,
21 The incense you incensed in the cities of Yah Hudah and in the outways of Yeru Shalem — you and your fathers, your sovereigns and your governors and the people of the land remembered not Yah Veh them? and ascended it not into his heart? And Yah Veh can no longer bear at the face of the evil of your exploits — and at the face of the abhorrences you worked; so your land is a parched area and a desolation and an abasement without a settler, as this day.
23 Because at the face of your incensing and because you sinned against Yah Veh, and neither hearkened to the voice of Yah Veh nor walked in his torah nor in his statutes nor in his witnesses; so this evil confronts you, as at this day.
24 Yirme Yah says to all the people, and to all the women, Hear the word of Yah Veh, all Yah Hudah in the land of Misrayim:
25 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El, saying; You and your women both worded with your mouths, and fulfilled with your hand, saying, In working, we work the vows we vowed, to incense to the sovereignty of the heavens and to libate libations to her:

JEREMIAH 44—46

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

in raising, ye will surely accomplish shall raise your vows,
and in working, surely perform ye shall work your vows.

26 Therefore hear ye the word of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
all Judah **Yah Hudah**
that dwell settle in the land of Egypt **Misrayim**;
Behold, I have sworn oathed by my great name,
saith the LORD **Yah Veh**,
that my name shall no more be named called out
in the mouth of any man of Judah **Yah Hudah**
in all the land of Egypt **Misrayim**, saying,
The Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh** liveth.
27 Behold,
I will shall watch over them for evil, and not for good:
and all the men of Judah **Yah Hudah**
that are in the land of Egypt **Misrayim**
shall be consumed by the sword and by the famine,
until there be an end of them the consummation.

28 Yet a small number number of men,
that escape — escapees of the sword
shall return out of the land of Egypt **Misrayim**
into the land of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and all the remnant survivors of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
that are gone into the land of Egypt **Misrayim**
to sojourn there,
shall know whose words shall stand rise, mine, or theirs.
29 And this shall be a sign unto you,
saith the LORD an oracle of **Yah Veh**,
that I will punish shall visit upon you in this place,
that ye may know that my words
in rising, shall surely stand rise against you for evil:
30 Thus saith the LORD **Yah Veh**;
Behold, I will shall give
Pharaohhophra **Paroh Hophra**
king sovereign of Egypt **Misrayim**
into the hand of his enemies,
and into the hand of them that seek his life soul;
as I gave Zedekiah **Sidqi Yah**
king sovereign of Judah **Yah Hudah**
into the hand of
Nebuchadrezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king sovereign of Babylon **Babel**,
his enemy, and that sought his life soul.

MESSAGE TO BARUCH

45 The word that Jeremiah **Yirme Yah** the prophet
spake worded
unto Baruch the son of **Neriah Neri Yah**,
when he had written inscribed these words
in a book scroll
at the mouth of Jeremiah **Yirme Yah**,
in the fourth year of Jehoiakim **Yah Yaqim**
the son of Josiah **Yoshi Yah**
king sovereign of Judah **Yah Hudah**, saying,
2 Thus saith the LORD **Yah Veh**,
the God **Elohim** of Israel **Yisra El**,
unto thee, O Baruch:
3 Thou didst say saidst,
Woe is me now I beseech!
for the LORD **Yah Veh** hath added grief to my sorrow;
I fainted belaboured in my sighing, and I find no rest.
4 Thus shalt thou say unto him,
The LORD **Yah Veh** saith thus; Behold,
that which I have built
will shall I break down,
and that which I have planted
I will pluck up shall uproot,
even this whole land.
5 And seekest thou great things for thyself? seek them not:
for, behold, I will shall bring evil upon all flesh,
saith the LORD an oracle of **Yah Veh**:
but thy life will soul shall I give unto thee for a prey spoil
in all places whither thou goest.

MESSAGE AGAINST THE GOYIM

46 The word of the LORD **Yah Veh**
which came to Jeremiah **Yirme Yah** the prophet
against the Gentiles goyim;
MESSAGE AGAINST MISRAYIM
2 Against Egypt **Misrayim**,
against the army valiant of Pharaohnecho **Paroh Nechoh**
king sovereign of Egypt **Misrayim**,

YIRME YAH 44—46

exeGeses companion BIBLE

in raising, we raise our vows,
and in working, we work our vows.

26 So hear the word of **Yah Veh**,
all **Yah Hudah** who settles in the land of **Misrayim**;
Behold, I oath by my great name, says **Yah Veh**,
that my name no more becomes called out
in the mouth of any man of **Yah Hudah**
in all the land of **Misrayim**, saying,
Adonay Yah Veh lives.
27 Behold, I watch over them for evil,
and not for good:
and all the men of **Yah Hudah** in the land of **Misrayim**
are consumed by the sword and by the famine
until the consummation.
28 Yet a number of men — escapees from the sword
return from the land of **Misrayim**
to the land of **Yah Hudah**;
and all the survivors of **Yah Hudah**
who enter the land of **Misrayim** to sojourn there,
know whose words rise — mine or theirs.
29 And this is your sign
— an oracle of **Yah Veh**
that I visit on you in this place,
so that you know, that in rising,
my words rise against you for evil.

30 Thus says **Yah Veh**:
Behold, I give **Paroh Hophra** sovereign of **Misrayim**
into the hand of his enemies
and into the hand of them who seek his soul:
as I gave **Sidqi Yah** sovereign of **Yah Hudah**
into the hand of **Nebukadnets Tsar** sovereign of **Babel**
— his enemy who sought his soul.

MESSAGE TO BARUCH

45 The word **Yirme Yah** the prophet
worded to **Baruch** the son of **Neri Yah**
when he inscribed these words in a scroll
at the mouth of **Yirme Yah**,
in the fourth year of **Yah Yaqim**
the son of **Yoshi Yah** sovereign of **Yah Hudah**, saying,
2 Thus says **Yah Veh Elohim** of **Yisra El**
concerning you, O **Baruch**:
3 You had said,
Woe is me, I beseech!
for **Yah Veh** adds grief to my sorrow;
I labor in my sighing and I find no rest.
4 Say thus to him:
Yah Veh says thus:
Behold, what I built, I break down;
and what I planted, I uproot
— even this whole land.
5 And seek you greatness for yourself?
Seek not!
For behold, I bring evil on all flesh
— an oracle of **Yah Veh**:
and I give your soul to you for a spoil
in all the places you go.

MESSAGE AGAINST THE GOYIM

46 So be the word of **Yah Veh**
to **Yirme Yah** the prophet
against the goyim:

MESSAGE AGAINST MISRAYIM

2 against **Misrayim**,
against the valiant of **Paroh Nechoh**
sovereign of **Misrayim**;

JEREMIAH 46

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which was by the river Euphrates
in *Carchemish* **Karchemish**,
which *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
smote in the fourth year of *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**
the son of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**.
3 Order **Line up** ye the buckler and shield,
and draw near to **battle war**.
4 *Harness* **Hitch** the horses;
and *get up* **ascend**, ye *horsemen* **cavalry**,
and stand forth with *your* helmets;
urbish **polish** the *spears* **javelins**,
and *put on* **enrobe** the brigandines.
5 Wherefore have I seen them *dismayed* **terrorized**
and *turned away back* **apostatized backward?**
and their mighty *ones* are *beaten down* **crushed**,
and are fled *apace* **to a retreat**, and *look face* not back:
for fear **terror** was round about,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
6 Let not the swift flee away,
nor the mighty *man* escape;
they shall stumble,
and *fall toward the north* **falter northward**
by **the hand of** the river Euphrates.
7 Who is this that *cometh up* **ascendeth** as a *flood* **river**,
whose waters are *moved* **agitated** as the rivers?
8 *Egypt riseth up* **Misrayim ascendeth** like a *flood* **river**,
and his waters are *moved* **agitated** like the rivers;
and he saith,
I will go up **shall ascend**, and *will* **shall** cover the earth;
I will **shall** destroy the city
and the *inhabitants* **settlers thereof**.
9 Come up **Ascend**, ye horses; and *rage* **halal**, ye chariots;
and let the mighty *men* come forth;
the *Ethiopians* **Kushies** and the *Libyans* **Puties**,
that *handle* **manipulate** the *shield* **buckler**;
and the *Lydians* **Ludiyim**,
that *handle* **manipulate** and bend the bow.
10 For this is the day
of the Lord *GOD of hosts* **Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
a day of *vengeance* **avengement**,
that he may *avenge him of his adversaries* **tribulators**:
and the sword shall devour,
and it shall be satiate
and *made drunk* **satiated** with their blood:
for the Lord GOD of hosts **Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth**
hath a sacrifice in the north *country* **land**
by the river Euphrates.
11 Go up **Ascend** into *Gilead* **Gilad**, and take balm,
O virgin, the daughter of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
in vain shalt thou *use many medicines* **abound healers**;
for thou shalt not be *cured* **bandaged**.
12 The *nations* **goyim**
have heard of thy *shame* **abasement**,
and thy *cry* **outcry** hath filled the land:
for the mighty man
hath *stumbled* **faltered** against the mighty,
and they are fallen both *together*.
13 The word that *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
spake worded to Jeremiah **Yirme Yah** the prophet,
how *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
should come and smite the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
14 Declare **Tell** ye in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and *publish* **be it heard** in Migdol,
and *publish* **be it heard** in Noph
and in *Tahpanhes* **Tachpanches**:
say ye, Stand fast, and prepare thee;
for the sword shall *devour* **consume** round about thee.
15 Why are thy *valiant men* **mighty** swept away?
they stood not,
because *the LORD did drive* **Yah Veh exiled** them.
16 He *made many to fall* **hath abounded the falterer**,
yea, *one man* fell upon *another* **friend**:
and they said,
Arise, and let us go *again* **return** to our own people,
and to the land of our *nativity* **kindred**,
from **the face of** the oppressing sword.

YIRME YAH 46

exeGesés companion BIBLE

being by the river Euphrates in Karchemish,
whom Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel smote
in the fourth year of Yah Yaqim
the son of Yoshi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah.
3 Line up your buckler and shield
and draw near to war:
4 hitch the horses and ascend, you cavalry
and stand with helmets:
5 polish the javelins; enrobe the brigandines.
Why see I them terrorized?
— apostatizing backward and their mighty crushed?
— fleeing to a retreat, and not facing back?
with terror all around?
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
6 Neither the swift flee nor the mighty escape;
they stumble and falter northward
by the hand of the river Euphrates.
7 Who is this — ascending as a river?
— whose waters agitate as the rivers?
8 Misrayim ascends as a river
and his waters agitate as the rivers:
and he says, I ascend and cover the earth;
I destroy the city and the settlers.
9 Ascend, you horses! Halal, you chariots!
Go forth, you mighty!
— Kushies and Puties, manipulating the buckler;
and Ludiyim, manipulating and bending the bow:
10 for this is the day of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth
— a day of avengement,
to avenge him of his tribulators:
and the sword devours and satiates
— satiates with their blood
for a sacrifice to Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth
in the north land by the river Euphrates.
11 Ascend into Gilad, and take balm,
O virgin, the daughter of Misrayim:
you abound your healers in vain
for they bandage you not.
12 The goyim hear of your abasement
and your outcry fills the land:
for the mighty falter against the mighty,
together they fall — both.
13 The word Yah Veh worded
to Yirme Yah the prophet
— concerning the coming
of Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
and smiting the land of Misrayim:
14 Tell it in Misrayim
and have them hear in Migdol;
and have them hear in Noph and in Tachpanches!
Say, Stand fast and prepare!
For the sword consumes all around you!
15 Why are your mighty swept away?
They stand not because Yah Veh exiles them.
16 He abounds the falterer; yes, man fells friend:
and they say,
We rise and return to our own people
and to the land of our kindred
from the face of the oppressing sword.

JEREMIAH 46, 47

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

17 They *did cry* **called out** there,
Pharaoh king **Paroh sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
is but a *noise* **an uproar**;
he hath passed the *time* **appointed season**.
18 As I live, *saith* **an oracle of the King Sovereign**,
whose name is the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
Surely as Tabor is among the mountains,
and as *Carmel* **Karmel/orchard** by the sea,
so shall he come.
19 O thou daughter *dwelling* **settling** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
furnish **work vessels for** thyself to go into *captivity* **exile**:
for Noph shall be *waste* **desolate** and *desolate* **burned**
without an *inhabitant* **a settler**.
20 *Egypt* **Misrayim** is like a very *fair* **beautiful** heifer,
but *destruction* **extermination** cometh;
it cometh out of the north.
21 Also her *hired men* **hirelings**
are in the midst of her like fatted *bullocks* **calves**;
for they also *are* turned **face back**,
and *are* fled away together:
they did not stand,
because the day of their calamity was come upon them,
and the time of their visitation.
22 The voice *thereof* shall go like a serpent;
for they shall march with an *army* **the valiant**,
and come against her with axes,
as *hewers* **choppers** of wood **timber**.
23 They shall cut down her forest,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
though it cannot be *searched* **probed**;
because they *are* more **abound by the myriads**
than **above** the grasshoppers, and are innumerable.
24 The daughter of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
shall be *confounded* **shame**;
she shall be *delivered* **given**
into the hand of the people of the north.
25 The *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, *saith*;
Behold, I *will punish* **shall visit upon** the multitude of No,
and *Pharaoh* **Paroh**, and *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
with their *gods* **elohim**, and their *kings* **sovereigns**;
even *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
and all them that *trust* **confide** in him:
26 And I *will deliver* **shall give** them
into the hand of those that seek their *lives* **souls**,
and into the hand of *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and into the hand of his servants:
and afterward it shall be *inhabited* **tabernacled therein**,
as in the **ancient** days of *old*,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
27 But *fear* **awe** not thou, O my servant *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and be not dismayed, O *Israel* **Yisra El**: for, behold,
I *will save thee* **shall be thy saviour** from afar off,
and thy seed from the land of their captivity;
and *Jacob* **Yaaqov** shall return,
and *be in* rest and *at ease* **relax**,
and none shall *make* **frighten** him *afraid*.
28 *Fear* **Awe** thou not, O *Jacob* **Yaaqov** my servant,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**:
for I *am* with thee;
for I *will make a full end* **shall work a final finish**
of all the *nations* **goyim** whither I have driven thee:
but I *will* **shall not make a full end** **work a final finish** of thee,
but *correct* **discipline** thee in *measure* **judgment**;
yet *will I not leave thee wholly unpunished*
in exonerating, I shall not exonerate thee.

WORD AGAINST THE PELESHETHIYM

47 The word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
that came to *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** the prophet
against the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**,
before that *Pharaoh* **Paroh** smote *Gaza* **Azzah**.
2 Thus *saith* the *LORD* **Yah Veh**; Behold,
waters *rise up* **ascend** out of the north,
and shall be an overflowing *flood* **wadi**,
and shall overflow the land, and *all that is therein* **its fulness**;
the city, and them that *dwelt* **settle** therein:
then *the men* **humanity** shall cry **out**,
and all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land shall howl.

YIRME YAH 46, 47

exeGesés companion BIBLE

17 And there they call out,
Paroh sovereign of Misrayim is but an uproar;
his season *has* passed.
18 I live — an oracle of the Sovereign
whose name is Yah Veh Sabaoth,
Surely as Tabor is among the mountains
and as Karmel/orchard by the sea,
thus he comes.
19 O you daughter settling in Misrayim,
work vessels for yourself to go into exile:
for Noph becomes desolate
and burns without a settler:
20 Misrayim is as a very beautiful heifer:
extermination comes — comes from the north:
21 even her hirelings are among her as fatted calves;
for they also turn face:
they flee together; they stand not:
because the day of their calamity comes on them
— the time of their visitation.
22 Its voice comes as a serpent;
for they march with the valiant
and come against her with axes
— as choppers of timber:
23 they cut down her forest
— an oracle of Yah Veh
though it cannot be probed;
because they abound by the myriads
above the grasshoppers — innumerable.
24 The daughter of Misrayim shames;
she is given into the hand of the people of the north.
25 Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El, says;
Behold, I visit on the multitude of No
and Paroh and Misrayim
with their elohim, and their sovereigns;
even Paroh, and they who confide in him:
26 and I give them into the hand
of them who seek their souls,
and into the hand
of Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel,
and into the hand of his servants:
and afterward they tabernacled therein
as in the ancient days
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
27 And you, awe not, O my servant Yaaqov;
and be not dismayed, O Yisra El:
for behold, I save you from afar
and your seed from the land of their captivity:
and Yaaqov returns; and rests and relaxes:
and no one frightens him.
28 Awe not, O Yaaqov my servant
— an oracle of Yah Veh
for I *am* with you;
for I work a final finish of all the goyim
wherever I drove you:
and I work not a final finish of you
and discipline you in judgment:
and in exonerating, I exonerate you not.

WORD AGAINST THE PELESHETHIYM

47 And so be the word of Yah Veh
to Yirme Yah the prophet
against the Peleshethiym ere Paroh smote Azzah.
2 Thus says Yah Veh:
Behold, waters ascending from the north
become an overflowing wadi;
and overflow the land and its fulness
— the city and they who settle therein:
and humanity cries out
and all the settlers of the land howl.

JEREMIAH 47, 48

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 At the *noise* **voice** of the stamping of the hoofs
of his *strong* horses **mighty**,
at the *rushing* **quake** of his chariots,
and at the *rumbling* **roar** of his wheels,
the fathers shall not *look* **face** back to *their children* **sons**
for *feebleness* **slackness** of hands;
4 Because of the day that cometh
to *spoil* **ravage** all the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**,
and to cut off from *Tyrus* **Sor** and *Zidon* **Sidon**
every *helper* **survivor** that *remaineth* **helpeth**:
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
will *spoil* **shall ravage** the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**,
the *remnant* **survivors**
of the *country* **island** of *Caphtor* **Kaphtor**.
5 Baldness is come upon *Gaza* **Azzah**;
Ashkelon is *cut off* **severed**
with the *remnant* **survivors** of their valley:
how long *wilt* **shalt** thou *cut* **incise** thyself?
6 O **Ho** thou sword of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
how long *will* **shall** it be ere thou *be* **quiet rest**?
put up thyself into **gather** thy *scabbard* **sheath**,
rest, and be still.
7 How can it *be* **quiet rest**,
seeing the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *given it a* **charge** **misvahed** against *Ashkelon*,
and against the sea *shore* **haven**?
there hath he *appointed it* **congregated**.

MESSAGE AGAINST MOAB

48

Against Moab
thus saith the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Woe **Ho** unto *Nebo!* for it is *spoiled* **ravaged**:
Kiriathaim **Qiryathaim**
is *confounded* **shamed** and *taken* **captured**:
Misgab **The secure loft**
is *confounded* **shamed** and *dismayed*.
2 There shall be no more *praise* **halal** of Moab:
in *Heshbon* they have *devised* **fabricated** evil against it;
come, and let us cut it off from *being a nation* **goyim**.
Also thou shalt be *cut down* **severed**, O *Madmen*;
the sword shall *pursue* **go after** thee.
3 A voice of crying shall be from *Horonaim*,
spoiling **ravage** and great *destruction* **breaking**.
4 Moab is *destroyed* **broken**;
her little *ones* have caused a cry to be heard.
5 For in the *going up* **ascent** of *Luhith* **Luchith**
in weeping, *continual* weeping shall *go up* **ascend**;
for in the *going down* **descent** of *Horonaim*
the *enemies* **tribulators**
have heard a cry of *destruction* **breaking**.
6 Flee, *save* **rescue** your *lives* **souls**,
and be like the *heath* **naked tree** in the wilderness.
7 For because thou hast *trusted* **confided**
in thy works and in thy treasures,
thou shalt also be *taken* **captured**:
and *Chemosh* **Kemosh** shall go forth into *captivity* **exile**
with his priests and his *princes* **governors** together.
8 And the *spoiler* **ravager** shall come upon every city,
and no city shall escape:
the valley also shall *perish* **destruct**,
and the plain shall *be* **destroyed** **desolate**,
as the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **said**.
9 Give wings unto Moab, that it may flee and get away:
for the cities thereof shall be desolate,
without any to *dwelt* **settle** therein.
10 Cursed be he
that *doeth* **worketh** the work of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
deceitfully,
and cursed be he
that *keepeth back* **withholdeth** his sword from blood.
11 Moab hath *been at ease* **relaxed** from his youth,
and he hath *settled* **rested** on his *lees* **dregs**,
and hath not been *emptied* **poured out**
from *vessel* **instrument** to *vessel* **instrument**,
neither hath he gone into *captivity* **exile**:
therefore his taste *remained* **stood** in him,
and his scent is not changed.
12 Therefore, behold, the days come,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,

YIRME YAH 47, 48

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 At the voice of the stamping of the hoofs
of his mighty,
at the quake of his chariots,
and at the roar of his wheels,
the fathers face not the sons for slackness of hands;
4 because of the day that comes
to ravage all the Peleshethiym;
and to cut off from Sor and Sidon
every survivor who helps:
for Yah Veh ravages the Peleshethiym,
the survivors of the island of Kaphtor.
5 Baldness comes on Azzah;
Ashkelon is severed with the survivors of their valley:
How long incise you yourself?
6 Ho, you sword of Yah Veh,
how long ere you rest?
Gather your sheath; rest and hush.
7 How rests it,
seeing Yah Veh misvahs against Ashkelon?
— and against the sea haven?
There he congregates.

MESSAGE AGAINST MOAB

48

Against Moab:

Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El;
Ho, *Nebo!* for it *is* ravaged:
Qiryathaim *is* shamed and captured:
the secure loft *is* shamed and dismayed.
2 The *halal* of Moab *is* no more:
in *Heshbon* they fabricated evil against it.
Come, and we cut it off from a goyim.
Also you, O *Madmen*, *are* severed;
the sword goes after you.
3 A voice of crying from *Horonaim*
— *ravage* and great *breaking*.
4 Moab is broken;
her little *ones* *cry* a cry to be heard.
5 For in the ascent of *Luchith*,
in weeping, weeping ascends;
for in the descent of *Horonaim*
the tribulators hear a cry of breaking.
6 Flee! *Rescue* your souls!
Become as the naked tree in the wilderness.
7 For, because you confide
in your works and in your treasures,
you also are captured:
and *Kemosh* goes into exile
together with his priests and his governors.
8 And the ravager comes on every city
and no city escapes:
and the valley destructs and the plain desolates,
as Yah Veh said.
9 Give wings to Moab
to flee and get away:
for the cities thereof desolate
without any to settle therein.
10 Cursed
— he who works the work of Yah Veh deceitfully:
and cursed
— he who withholds his sword from blood.
11 Moab relaxes from his youth and rests on his dregs
— neither poured out from instrument to instrument
nor gone into exile:
so his taste stands within him
and his scent changes not.
12 So behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh

JEREMIAH 48

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that I *will shall* send unto him *wanderers strollers*,
that shall cause him to *wander stroll*,
and shall *empty pour out* his *vessels instruments*,
and *break shatter* their *bottles bags*.
13 And Moab
shall be *ashamed shamed* of *Chemosh Kemosh*,
as the house of *Israel* was *ashamed Yisra El* *shamed*
of *Bethel Beth El* their confidence.
14 How say ye,
We are mighty and *strong valiant* men for the war?
15 Moab is *spoiled ravaged*,
and *gone up out of ascended* her cities,
and his chosen *young men youths*
are *gone down descended* to the slaughter,
saith the King an oracle of the Sovereign,
whose name is the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*.
16 The calamity of Moab is near to come,
and his *affliction evil* hasteth *fast mightily*.
17 All ye that are *round* about him,
bemoan wag over him;
and all ye that know his name, say,
How is the *strong staff rod of strength* broken,
and the *beautiful rod staff of adornment*!
18 Thou daughter that *dost inhabit settlest* Dibon,
come down descend from thy *glory honour*,
and *sit settle* in thirst;
for the *spoiler ravager* of Moab
shall *come ascend* upon thee,
and he shall *destroy ruin* thy *strong holds fortresses*.
19 O *inhabitant settler* of Aroer,
stand by the way, and *espy watch*;
ask him that fleeth, and her that escapeth,
and say, What is done?
20 Moab is *confounded shamed*; for it is broken down:
howl and cry;
tell ye it in Arnon, that Moab is *spoiled ravaged*,
21 And judgment is come upon the plain *country land*;
upon Holon,
and upon *Jahazah Yabsah*, and upon Mephaath,
22 And upon Dibon, and upon Nebo,
and upon *Bethdiblathaim Beth Diblathayim*,
23 And upon *Kiriathaim Qiryathaim*,
and upon *Bethgamul Beth Gamul*,
and upon *Bethmeon Beth Meon*,
24 And upon *Kerioth Qerioth*, and upon Bozrah,
and upon all the cities of the land of Moab, far or near.
25 The horn of Moab is cut off, and his arm is broken,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
26 Make ye *Intoxicate* him *drunken*:
for he *magnified greatedened himself*
against the *LORD Yah Veh*:
Moab also shall *wallow slurp* in his vomit,
and he also shall be *in derision ridiculed*.
27 For was not *Israel Yisra El*
a *derision ridicule* unto thee?
was he found among thieves?
for since *thou speakest of him from thy sufficient words*,
thou *skippedst swayedst* for joy.
28 O ye that *dwell settle* in Moab,
leave the cities, and *dwell tabernacle* in the rock,
and be like the dove that *maketh her nest nesteth*
in the sides of the *hole's pit's* mouth.
29 We have heard the *pride pomp* of Moab,
(he is *exceeding proud mightily pompous*)
his *loftiness haughtiness*, and his *arrogancy pomp*,
and his *pride pomp*, and the haughtiness of his heart.
30 I know his wrath,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh;
but it shall not be so; his lies shall not so *effect work* it.
31 Therefore *will shall* I howl for Moab,
and I *will shall* cry out for all Moab;
mine heart shall mourn — meditate
for the men of *Kirheres Qir Hareseth*.
32 O vine of Sibmah, I *will shall* weep for thee
with the weeping of *Jazer Yazer*:
thy *plants tendrils* are *gone passed* over the sea,
they *reach even touch* to the sea of *Jazer Yazer*:
the *spoiler ravager* is fallen upon thy summer fruits
and upon thy *vintage crop*.

YIRME YAH 48

exeGesés companion BIBLE

that I send him strollers who have him stroll,
and pour his instruments and shatter his bags.
13 And Moab shames because of Kemosh,
as the house of Yisra El shamed
of Beth El their confidence.
14 How say you,
We are mighty and valiant men for the war?
15 Moab is ravaged and ascends her cities;
and his chosen youths descend to the slaughter
— an oracle of the Sovereign
whose name is Yah Veh Sabaoth.
16 The calamity of Moab is near to come
and his evil hastens mightily.
17 All you who are all around him, wag over him;
and all you who know his name, say,
How the rod of strength is broken
— the staff of adornment!
18 You, daughter who settles in Dibon,
descend from your honor,
and settle in thirst;
for the ravager of Moab ascends on you;
he ruins your fortresses.
19 O settler of Aroer, stand by the way, and watch;
ask him who flees; and she who escapes;
and say, What becomes?
20 Moab shames; for it is broken down.
Howl and cry!
Tell it in Arnon, that Moab is ravaged:
and judgment comes on the plain land
— on Holon and on Yabsah
and on Mephaath,
21 and on Dibon and on Nebo
and on Beth Diblathayim
22 and on Qiryathaim and on Beth Gamul
and on Beth Meon
23 and on Qerioth and on Bozrah
and on all the cities of the land of Moab
far or near.
24 The horn of Moab is cut off and his arm broken
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
25 Intoxicate him:
for he greatens against Yah Veh:
Moab also slurps in his own vomit
and he also is ridiculed.
26 For was not Yisra El a ridicule to you?
Was he found among thieves?
For since your sufficient words, you sway for joy.
27 O you who settle in Moab,
leave the cities; and tabernacle in the rock:
and be as the dove
who nests in the sides of the mouth of the pit.
28 We hear the pomp of Moab
— mighty pompous
— his haughtiness and his pomp
— his pomp and the haughtiness of his heart.
29 I know his wrath
— an oracle of Yah Veh
but it is not thus; his lies work not thus.
30 So I howl for Moab,
and I cry for all Moab
— meditate for the men of Qir Hareseth.
31 O vine of Sibmah, I weep for you
with the weeping of Yazer:
your tendrils pass over the sea;
they touch to the sea of Yazer:
the ravager falls on your summer fruits
and on your crop:

JEREMIAH 48

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

33 And joy **cheerfulness** and gladness **twirling**
is taken **gathered** from the *plentiful field* **orchard/Karmel**,
and from the land of Moab,
and I have caused wine to *fail* **shabbathize**
from the *winepresses* **troughs**:
none shall tread with shouting;
their shouting shall be no shouting.

34 From the cry of Heshbon *even unto Elealeh* **El Aleh**,
and *even unto Jahaz* **Yahsah**,
have they *uttered* **given** their voice,
from *Zoar* **Soar** *even unto* Horonaim,
as an heifer of three *years old*:
for the waters also of Nimrim
shall be *desolate* **desolations**.

35 *Moreover*
I *will* **shall** cause to *cease* **shabbathize** in Moab,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
him that *offereth* **holocausteth** in the *high places* **bamahs**,
and him that *burneth* **incense** **incenseth**
to his *gods* **elohim**.

36 *Therefore*
mine heart shall *sound* **roar** for Moab like pipes,
and mine heart shall *sound* **roar** like pipes
for the men of *Kirheres* **Qir Hareseth**:
because the riches that he hath *gotten* **worked**
are perished **destroyed**.

37 For every head shall *be bald* **balden**,
and every beard *clipped* **diminished**:
upon all the hands shall be *cuttings* **incisions**,
and upon the loins *sackcloth* **saq**.

38 There shall be *lamentation generally* **chopping for all**
upon all the *housetops* **roofs** of Moab,
and in the *streets* **broadways** *thereof*:
for I have broken Moab like a *vessel* **an instrument**
wherein is no pleasure,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

39 They shall howl, *saying*, How is it broken down!
how hath Moab *turned* **faced** the *back* **neck**
with shame **shamed**!
so shall Moab be a *derision* **ridicule** and a *dismaying* **ruin**
to all them **round** about him.

40 For thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
Behold, he shall fly as an eagle,
and shall spread his wings over Moab.

41 *Kerioth* **Qerioth** is taken **captured**,
and the *strong holds* **huntholds**
are surprised **apprehended**,
and the mighty *men's* hearts in Moab at that day
shall be as the heart of a woman in her *pangs* **tribulating**.

42 And Moab shall *be destroyed* **desolate**
from *being* a people,
because he hath *magnified* **greatened** *himself*
against *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

43 Fear, and the pit, and the snare,
shall be upon thee, O *inhabitant* **settler** of Moab,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

44 He that fleeth from the **face** of fear
shall fall into the pit;
and he that *getteth up* **ascendeth** out of the pit
shall be *taken* **captured** in the snare:
for I *will* **shall** bring upon it, *even upon* Moab,
the year of their visitation,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

45 They that fled stood under the shadow of Heshbon
because of the force:
but a fire shall come forth out of Heshbon,
and a flame from *the midst of Sihon* **within Sichon**,
and shall *devour* **consume** the *corner* **edge** of Moab,
and the *crown* **scalp**
of the *head* **sons** of the *tumultuous ones* **uproar**.

46 Woe be unto thee, O Moab!
the people of *Chemosh* **perisheth** **Kemosh destruct**:
for thy sons are taken **with the** captives,
and thy daughters *captives* **with the captivity**.

47 Yet *will* **shall** I *bring again* **return** the captivity of Moab
in the latter days,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
Thus far **This** is the judgment of Moab.

YIRME YAH 48

exeGeses companion BIBLE

33 and cheerfulness and twirling
are gathered from the orchard/Karmel
and from the land of Moab;
and I shabbathize the wine from the troughs:
no one treads with shouting;
in shouting, they shout not.

34 From the cry of Heshbon to El Aleh;
and to Yahsah they give their voice:
from Soar to Horonaim, a heifer of three:
for even the waters of Nimrim become desolations:
and I shabbathize in Moab
— an oracle of Yah Veh
he who holocausts in the bamahs,
and he who incenses to his elohim.

36 So my heart roars for Moab as pipes;
and my heart roars as pipes
for the men of Qir Hareseth:
because the riches he worked are destroyed.

37 For every head baldens,
and every beard diminishes:
on all the hands, incisions,
and on the loins, saq;
and chopping for all
on all the roofs of Moab and in the broadways:
for I break Moab
as an instrument wherein is no pleasure
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

39 They howl, How it is broken!
How Moab faces the neck shamed!
And Moab becomes a ridicule and a ruin to all
all around him.

40 For thus says Yah Veh;
Behold, he flies as an eagle
and spreads his wings over Moab.

41 Qerioth is captured,
and the huntholds apprehended;
and at that day,
the hearts of the mighty in Moab
become as the heart of a woman in her tribulating:
and Moab, as a people, desolates
because he greatens *himself* against Yah Veh.

43 Fear and the pit and the snare
snare on you, O settler of Moab
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

44 He who flees from the face of fear
falls into the pit;
and he who ascends from the pit
is captured in the snare:
for I bring thereon — on Moab,
the year of their visitation
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

45 They who flee stand under the shadow of Heshbon
because of the force:
for a fire comes from Heshbon
and a flame from within Sichon
and consumes the edge of Moab,
and the scalp of the sons of uproar.

46 Woe to you, O Moab!
the people of Kemosh destruct:
for your sons are taken with the captives
and your daughters with the captivity.
And I restore the captivity of Moab
in the latter days
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
This is the judgment of Moab.

JEREMIAH 49

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

MESSAGE AGAINST THE SONS OF AMMON

49 Concerning the *Ammonites* **sons of Ammon**,
 thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
 Hath *Israel* **Yisra El** no sons? hath he no *heir* **successor**?
 why *then* doth their *king* **inherit** **sovereign** **succeed** Gad,
 and his people *dwell* **settle** in his cities?
 2 Therefore, behold, the days come,
 saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
 that I *will* **shall** cause *an* **alarm** **a blast** of war
 to be heard in Rabbah of the *Ammonites* **sons of Ammon**;
 and it shall be a desolate heap,
 and her daughters shall be burned with fire:
 then shall *Israel* **Yisra El** be *heir* **successor** unto them
 that were his *heirs* **successors**,
 saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
 3 Howl, O Heshbon, for *Ai* **Ay** is *spoiled* **ravaged**:
 cry, ye daughters of Rabbah, gird you with *sackcloth* **saq**;
 lament **chop**, and *run to and fro* **flit** by the *hedges* **walls**;
 for their *king* **sovereign** shall go into *captivity* **exile**,
 and his priests and his *princes* **governors** together.
 4 Wherefore *gloriest* **halalest** thou in the valleys,
 thy flowing valley, O *backsliding* **apostate** daughter?
 that *trusted* **confided** in her treasures, *saying*,
 Who shall come unto me?
 5 Behold, I *will* **shall** bring a fear upon thee,
 saith the *Lord* **GOD** of hosts
an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth,
 from all those that be **round** about thee;
 and ye shall be driven out every man
 right forth **from his face**;
 and none shall gather *up* him that wandereth.
 6 And afterward
 I *will bring again* **shall return** the captivity
 of the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
 saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
 MESSAGE AGAINST EDMON
 7 Concerning Edom,
 thus saith the *LORD* of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
 Is wisdom no more in Teman?
 is counsel *perished* **destroyed**
 from the *prudent* **discerning**?
 is their wisdom *vanished* **spread thin**?
 8 Flee ye, *turn* **face** back, *dwell* **settle** deep,
 O *inhabitants* **settlers** of Dedan;
 for I *will* **shall** bring the calamity of *Esau* **Esav** upon him,
 the time that I *will* **shall** visit him.
 9 If *grapegatherers* **clippers** come to thee,
 would **should** they not
 leave some **gleaning grapes** **let gleanings remain**?
 if thieves by night,
 they *will destroy* **shall ruin** till they *have enough* **satiate**.
 10 But I have *made* **Esau** **stripped** **Esav**,
 I have *uncovered* **exposed** his *secret places* **coverts**,
 and he shall not be able to hide himself:
 his seed is *spoiled* **ravaged**,
 and his brethren, and his *neighbours* **fellow tabernaclers**,
 and he is not.
 11 Leave thy *fatherless* **children** **orphans**,
 I *will preserve* **shall enliven** them *alive*;
 and let thy widows *trust* **confide** in me.
 12 For thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**; Behold,
 they whose judgment was not to drink of the cup
in drinking, have *assuredly* drunken;
 and art thou he that **in exonerating**,
 shall *altogether go* **unpunished** **be exonerated**?
 thou shalt not *go* **unpunished** **be exonerated**,
 but **in drinking**, thou shalt *surely* drink of it.
 13 For I have *sworn* **oathed** by myself,
 saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
 that Bozrah shall become a desolation,
 a reproach, a *waste* **parch**, and a *curse* **an abasement**;
 and all the cities *thereof*
 shall be *perpetual* **wastes** **eternal parched areas**.
 14 I have heard a *rumour* **report** from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
 and an ambassador is sent unto the *heathen* **goyim**,
 saying, Gather ye together, and come against her,
 and rise up to the *battle* **war**.
 15 For, *lo* **behold**,
 I *will make* **shall give** thee small among the *heathen* **goyim**,

YIRME YAH 49

exeGesés companion BIBLE

MESSAGE AGAINST THE SONS OF AMMON

49 Concerning the sons of Ammon,
 thus says Yah Veh:
 Has Yisra El no sons? — No successor?
 Why has their sovereign succeeded Gad?
 — and his people settle in his cities?
 2 So behold, days come,
 — an oracle of Yah Veh
 that I have a blast of war
 to be heard in Rabbah of the sons of Ammon;
 and it becomes a desolate heap:
 and her daughters burn with fire:
 and Yisra El possesses them who possessed him,
 says Yah Veh.
 3 Howl, O Heshbon, for Ay is ravaged!
 Cry, you daughters of Rabbah; gird with saq;
 chop, and flit by the walls;
 for their sovereign goes into exile
 together with his priests and his governors.
 4 Why halal in the valleys
 — your flowing valley, O apostate daughter?
 Who confides in her treasures?
 Who comes to me?
 5 Behold, I bring a fear on you
 — an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth
 from all them all around you;
 and they drive you out — every man from his face;
 and no one gathers him who wanders:
 6 And afterward
 I restore the captivity of the sons of Ammon
 — an oracle of Yah Veh.
 MESSAGE AGAINST EDMON
 7 Concerning Edom,
 thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
 Is wisdom no more in Teman?
 Is counsel destroyed from the discerning?
 Is their wisdom spread thin?
 8 Flee you, face back, settle deep, O settlers of Dedan;
 for I bring the calamity of Esav on him
 at the time I visit him.
 9 If clippers come to you,
 leave they not the gleanings?
 If thieves by night,
 they ruin until they satiate.
 10 For I — I strip Esav; I expose his coverts;
 and he cannot hide himself:
 his seed is ravaged
 — with his brothers and his fellow tabernaclers
 — and he is not.
 11 Leave your orphans, I enliven them;
 — and your widows. Trust me!
 12 For thus says Yah Veh:
 Behold,
 they whose judgment is to not drink of the cup
 in drinking, they drink;
 and are you he, who in exonerating, is exonerated?
 You are not exonerated,
 but in drinking, you drink thereof.
 13 For I oath by myself
 — an oracle of Yah Veh
 that Bozrah becomes a desolation,
 a reproach, a parch, and an abasement
 — and all the cities eternal parched areas.
 14 I hear a report from Yah Veh,
 and an ambassador is sent to the goyim,
 Gather yourselves
 and come against her and rise to the war.
 15 For, behold,
 I give you, small among the goyim

JEREMIAH 49

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and despised among *men* **humanity**.
16 Thy *terribleness* **trembling** hath deceived thee,
and the *pride* **arrogance** of thine heart,
O thou that *dwellest* **tabernaclest** in the clefts of the rock,
that *holdest* **apprehendest** the height of the hill:
though thou shouldest *make* **heighten** thy nest
as high as the eagle,
I *will* **shall** bring thee down from thence,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
17 Also Edom shall be a desolation:
every one that *goeth* **passeth** by it shall be astonished,
and shall hiss at all the *plagues* **wounds** thereof.
18 As in the overthrow
of *Sodom* **Sedom** and *Gomorra* **Amorah**
and the *neighbour* **cities** **nearby** **tabernacles** thereof,
saith the LORD **Yah Veh**,
no man shall *abide* **settle** there,
neither shall a son of *man* **dwelling** **humanity** **sojourn** in it.
19 Behold, he shall *come up* **ascend** like a lion
from the *swelling* **pomp** of *Jordan* **Yarden**
against the habitation **of rest** of the *strong* **perennial**:
but I *will* **suddenly** **shall in a blink**
make him run away from her:
and who is a chosen *man*,
that I may *appoint over* **oversee** her?
for who is like me?
and who *will* **appoint me the time** **shall** **congregate with me?**
and who is that *shepherd* **tender**
that *will* **shall** stand *before me* **at my face?**
20 Therefore hear the counsel of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
that he hath *taken* **counselled** against Edom;
and his *purposes* **fabrications**,
that he hath *purposed* **fabricated**
against the *inhabitants* **settlers** of Teman:
Surely the *least* **lesser** of the flock
shall *draw* **drag** them out:
surely he shall *make* **desolate**
their habitations *desolate* **of rest** with them.
21 The earth *is moved* **quaketh**
at the *noise* **voice** of their fall,
at the cry the *noise* **voice** thereof
was heard in the *Red* **Reed** sea.
22 Behold, he shall *come up* **ascend** and fly as the eagle,
and spread his wings over Bozrah:
and at that day shall the heart of the mighty *men* of Edom
be as the heart of a woman in her *pangs* **tribulating**.
MESSAGE AGAINST DAMMESEQ
23 Concerning *Damascus* **Dammeseq**.
Hamath is *confounded* **shamed**, and Arpad:
for they have heard evil *tidings* **reports**:
they are *fainthearted* **melted**;
there is *sorrow* **concern** on the sea;
it cannot *be* **quiet rest**.
24 *Damascus* **is waxed feeble** **Dammeseq** **slacketh**,
and *turneth* **faceth** herself to flee,
and *fear* **terror** hath *seized on* **holden** her:
anguish **tribulation** and *sorrows* **pangs** have taken her,
as a *woman* **in travail** **in birthing**.
25 How is the city of *praise* **halal** not *left* **forsaken**,
the city of my joy!
26 Therefore her *young men* **youths**
shall fall in her *streets* **broadways**,
and all the men of war
shall be *cut off* **severed** in that day,
saith the LORD of *hosts* **an oracle of Yah Veh** **Sabaoth**.
27 And I *will* **shall** kindle a fire
in the wall of *Damascus* **Dammeseq**,
and it shall consume
the *palaces* **citadels** of *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad**.
MESSAGE AGAINST QEDAR AND HAZOR
28 Concerning *Kedar* **Qedar**,
and concerning the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of Hazor,
which *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets** **Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel** shall smite,
thus *saith the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
Arise ye, *go up* **ascend** to *Kedar* **Qedar**,
and *spoil* **ravage** the *men* **sons** of the east.
29 Their tents and their flocks shall they take away:
they shall *take* **bear** to themselves their curtains,

YIRME YAH 49

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and despised among humanity:
16 your trembling deceives you
— and the arrogance of your heart,
O you who tabernacle in the clefts of the rock
— who apprehend the height of the hill:
though you heighten your nest as high as the eagle,
I bring you down from there
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
17 Also Edom becomes a desolation:
every one who passes by astonishes
and hisses at all the wounds.
18 As the overthrow of Sedom and Amorah
and the nearby tabernacles,
says Yah Veh,
neither man settles there
nor a son of humanity sojourns therein.
19 Behold,
he ascends as a lion from the pomp of Yarden
against the habitation of rest of the perennial:
and in a blink, I run him away from her:
and who is chosen, that I oversee her?
For who is like me?
And who congregates with me?
And who is that tender standing at my face?
20 So hear the counsel of Yah Veh,
that he counsels against Edom;
and the fabrications
he fabricates against the settlers of Teman:
surely the lesser of the flock drag them out:
surely he desolates their habitations of rest with them.
21 The earth quakes at the voice of their fall;
— the cry — the voice is heard in the Reed sea.
22 Behold, he ascends and flies as the eagle
and spreads his wings over Bozrah:
and at that day,
the heart of the mighty of Edom
become as the heart of a woman in her tribulating.
MESSAGE AGAINST DAMMESEQ
23 Concerning Dammeseq:
Hamath and Arpad shame:
for they hear evil reports; they melt:
there is concern on the sea; it cannot rest.
Dammeseq slackens and faces to flee;
and terror holds her:
tribulation and pangs take her as in birthing.
25 How the city of halal is not forsaken
— the city of my joy!
26 So her youths fall in her broadways,
and all the men of war are severed in that day
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
and I kindle a fire in the wall of Dammeseq
and it consumes the citadels of Ben Hadad.
MESSAGE AGAINST QEDAR AND HAZOR
28 Concerning Qedar
and concerning the sovereigndoms of Hazor,
which Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel smote:
Thus says Yah Veh:
Rise; ascend to Qedar:
and ravage the sons of the east.
29 They take their tents and their flocks:
they bear their curtains to themselves

JEREMIAH 49, 50

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and all their vessels **instruments**, and their camels;
and they shall **cry call out** unto them,
Fear **Terror** is on every side **round about**.
30 Flee, get you far off **bemoan mightily**,
dwell **settle** deep, O ye inhabitants **settlers** of Hazor,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**;
for Nebuchadrezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of **Babylon Babel**
hath taken counsel **counselled** against you,
and hath **conceived fabricated** a purpose **fabrication**
against you.
31 Arise,
get **ascend** you up unto the **wealthy nation serene goyim**,
that **dwelleth without care settleth confidently**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
which have neither **gates doors** nor bars,
which **dwell tabernacle** alone.
32 And their camels shall be a **booty plunder**,
and the multitude of their **cattle chattel** a spoil:
and I will **scatter shall winnow** into all winds
them that are in the **utmost corners chop the edges**;
and I will **shall** bring their calamity from all sides **thereof**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
33 And Hazor shall be
a **dwelling for dragons habitation of monsters**,
and a desolation **for ever eternally**:
there shall no man **abide settle** there,
nor any a son of man **dwell humanity sojourn** in it.

MESSAGE AGAINST ELAM

34 The word of the LORD **Yah Veh**
that came to **Jeremiah Yirme Yah** the prophet
against Elam in the beginning of the **reign sovereignty**
of **Zedekiah Sidqi Yah**
king **sovereign** of **Judah Yah Hudah**, saying,
35 Thus saith the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
Behold, I will **shall** break the bow of Elam,
the **chief beginning** of their might.
36 And upon Elam will **shall** I bring the four winds
from the four **quarters ends of heaven the heavens**,
and will **scatter shall winnow** them
toward all those winds;
and there shall be no **nation goyim**
whither the **outcasts expelled** of Elam shall not come.
37 For I will **shall** cause Elam to be dismayed
before at the face of their enemies,
and **before at the face** of them that seek their **life soul**:
and I will **shall** bring evil upon them,
even my **fierce anger fuming wrath**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**;
and I will **shall** send the sword after them,
till I have **consumed finished** them off:
38 And I will **shall** set my throne in Elam,
and will **shall** destroy from thence
the **king sovereign** and the **princes governors**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
39 But **And so be** it shall come to pass in the latter days,
that I will **bring again shall return** the captivity of Elam,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

MESSAGE AGAINST BABEL

50 The word that the LORD **spake Yah Veh worded**
against **Babylon Babel**
and against the land of the **Chaldeans Kesediym**
by **Jeremiah the hand of Yirme Yah** the prophet.
2 Declare **Tell** ye among the **nations goyim**,
and **publish let it be heard**,
and set up a **standard lift an ensign**;
publish let it be heard, and conceal not:
say, **Babylon Babel** is taken **captured**,
Bel is **confounded shamed**,
Merodach is broken **in pieces**;
her idols are **confounded shamed**,
her **images idols** are broken **in pieces**.
3 For out of the north
there **cometh up ascendeth** a **nation goyim** against her,
which shall **make place** her land desolate,
and none shall **dwell settle** therein:
they shall **remove wander**, they shall depart,
both **man humanity** and **beast animal**.
4 In those days, and in that time,

YIRME YAH 49, 50

exeGeses companion BIBLE

with all their instruments and their camels:
and they call out to them,
Terror is all around!
30 Flee, bemoan mightily, settle deep,
O you settlers of Hazor
— an oracle of Yah Veh:
for Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
counsels against you,
and fabricates a fabrication against you.
31 Rise;
ascend to the serene goyim who settle confidently
— an oracle of Yah Veh
with neither doors nor bars
who tabernacle alone.
32 And their camels become a plunder
and the multitude of their chattel a spoil:
and I winnow them who chop the edges
to all the winds;
and I bring their calamity from all sides
— an oracle of Yah Veh
33 and Hazor becomes a habitation of monsters
and a desolation eternally:
neither man settles there,
nor a son of humanity sojourns therein.

MESSAGE AGAINST ELAM

34 So be the word of Yah Veh
to Yirme Yah the prophet against Elam
in the beginning of the sovereignty
of Sidqi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah, saying,
35 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
Behold, I break the bow of Elam,
the beginning of their might:
36 and on Elam I bring the four winds
from the four ends of the heavens;
and winnow them toward all those winds;
so that no goyim becomes
where the expelled of Elam enter not.
37 For I dismay Elam at the face of their enemies
and at the face of them who seek their soul:
and I bring evil on them — my fuming wrath
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and I send the sword after them until I finish them off:
38 and I set my throne in Elam,
and destroy there the sovereign and the governors
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
39 And so be it, in the latter days,
I restore the captivity of Elam
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

MESSAGE AGAINST BABEL

50 The word Yah Veh words against Babel
and against the land of the Kesediym
by the hand of Yirme Yah the prophet.
2 Tell you among the goyim and have them hear;
and lift an ensign:
have them hear; and conceal not:
say, Babel is captured, Bel is shamed,
Merodach is broken:
her idols are shamed; her idols are broken.
3 For from the north
a goyim ascends against her
who places her land desolate;
and no one settles therein:
they wander; they depart;
— both humanity and animal.
4 In those days, and in that time,

JEREMIAH 50

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
the children sons of Israel Yisra El shall come,
they and the children sons of Judah Yah Hudah together,
going and weeping; they shall go,
and seek the LORD Yah Veh their God Elohim.
5 They shall ask the way to Zion Siyon
with their faces thitherward, saying,
Come, and let us join ourselves to the LORD Yah Veh
in a perpetual an eternal covenant
that shall not be forgotten.
6 My people hath been lost sheep flocks
their shepherds tenders
have caused them to go astray stray,
they have turned apostatized them away
on the mountains:
they have gone from mountain to hill,
they have forgotten their restingplace repose.
7 All that found them have devoured them:
and their adversaries tribulators said,
We offend have not guiltd,
because they have sinned against the LORD Yah Veh,
the habitation of rest of justice justness,
even the LORD Yah Veh,
the hope expectation of their fathers.
8 Remove Wander out of the midst of Babylon Babel,
and go forth out of the land of the Chaldeans Kesediym,
and be as the he goats before at the face of the flocks.
9 For, lo behold, I will raise shall waken
and cause to come up ascend against Babylon Babel
an assembly a congregation of great nations goyim
from the north country land:
and they shall set themselves in array line up against her;
from thence she shall be taken captured:
their arrows shall be as of a mighty expert man discerner;
none shall return in vain.
10 And Chaldea Kesediym shall be a spoil:
all that spoil her shall be satisfied satiate,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
11 Because ye were glad cheered,
because ye rejoiced jumped for joy,
O ye destroyers plunderers of mine heritage inheritance,
because ye are grown fat as the heifer at grass,
and bellow resound as bulls mighty;
12 Your mother shall be sore confounded mightily shame;
she that bare birthed you shall be ashamed blush:
behold, the hindermost of the nations goyim
shall be a wilderness,
a dry land parch, and a desert plain.
13 Because of the wrath rage of the LORD Yah Veh
it shall not be inhabited settled,
but it shall be wholly desolate:
every one that goeth passeth by Babylon Babel
shall be astonished, and hiss at all her plagues wounds.
14 Put yourselves in array Line up against Babylon Babel
round about:
all ye that bend the bow,
shoot hand toss at her, spare no arrows:
for she hath sinned against the LORD Yah Veh.
15 Shout against her round about:
she hath given her hand:
her foundations are fallen, her walls are thrown down:
for it is the vengeance avengement
of the LORD Yah Veh:
take vengeance avenge upon her;
as she hath done worked, do work unto her.
16 Cut off the sower seeder from Babylon Babel,
and him that handleth manipulath the sickle
in the time of harvest:
for fear at the face of the oppressing sword
they shall turn face every one man to his people,
and they shall flee every one man to his own land.
17 Israel Yisra El is a scattered sheep lamb;
the lions have driven him away:
first
the king sovereign of Assyria Ashshur
hath devoured him;
and last
this Nebuchadrezzar Nebukadnets Tsar
king sovereign of Babylon Babel

YIRME YAH 50

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— an oracle of Yah Veh
the sons of Yisra El come
— they and the sons of Yah Hudah together
coming and weeping:
they come and seek Yah Veh their Elohim:
5 they ask the way to Siyon
with their faces toward,
Come; we join ourselves to Yah Veh
in an eternal covenant, not forgotten.
6 My people became lost flocks
their tenders strayed them,
they apostatized them on the mountains:
going from mountain to hill
they forgot their repose.
7 All who find them devour them:
and their tribulators say,
We guiltd not!
— because they sinned against Yah Veh
the habitation of rest of justness;
— Yah Veh, the expectation of their fathers.
8 Wander from the midst of Babel
and come from the land of the Kesediym;
and be as the he goats at the face of the flocks.
9 For, behold, I waken
and against Babel
I ascend a congregation of great goyim
from the north land:
and they line up against her;
from thence they capture her:
their arrows as of a mighty discerner;
no one returns in vain.
10 And Kesediym becomes a spoil:
all who spoil her satiate
— an oracle of Yah Veh
because you cheer
— because you jump for joy
O you plunderers of my inheritance,
because you grow fat as the heifer at grass
and resound as the mighty;
11 your mother shames mightily;
she who birthed you blushes:
behold, the backward of the goyim
are a wilderness, a parch, and a plain:
12 because of the rage of Yah Veh
it is not settled
and becomes wholly desolate:
every one who passes by Babel
astonishes and hisses at all her wounds.
13
14 Line up against Babel, all around
— all you who bend the bow:
hand toss at her; spare no arrows:
for she sinned against Yah Veh.
15 Shout against her all around:
she gives her hand:
her foundations fallen; her walls overthrown:
for it is the avengement of Yah Veh:
avenge on her;
as she worked, work to her:
16 cut off the seeder from Babel;
and he who manipulates the sickle
in the time of harvest:
at the face of the oppressing sword;
every man faces to his people,
and every man flees to his own land.
17 Yisra El is a scattered lamb;
the lions drive him away:
first the sovereign of Ashshur devours him;
and last this Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel

JEREMIAH 50

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 hath *broken* **crunched** his bones.
Therefore thus saith
the *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Behold, I will *punish* **shall visit**
upon the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel** and his land,
as I have *punished* **visited**
upon the *king* **sovereign** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**.
19 And I will *bring* *Israel* **again** **shall turn** *Yisra El* **back**
to his habitation of **rest**,
and he shall *feed* **tend**
on *Carmel* **Karmel/orchard** and *Bashan*,
and his soul shall *be satisfied* **satiate**
upon mount *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** and *Gilead* **Gilad**.
20 In those days, and in that time,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
the *iniquity* **perversity** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
shall be sought for,
and there shall be none;
and the sins of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and they shall not be found:
for I will *pardon* **shall forgive** them
whom I *reserve* **let remain**.
21 *Go up* **Ascend**
against the land of *Merathaim* **Merathayim**,
even against it,
and against the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Pekod* **Peqod**:
waste **parch** and *utterly* **destroy** **devote** after them,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
and *do* **work** according to all
that I have *commanded* **misvahed** thee.
22 A *sound* **voice** of *battle* **war** is in the land,
and of great *destruction* **breaking**.
23 How is the hammer of the whole earth
cut *asunder* **apart** and broken!
how is *Babylon* **Babel**
become a desolation among the *nations* **goyim**!
24 I have laid a snare for thee,
and thou art also *taken* **captured**, O *Babylon* **Babel**,
and thou *wast not aware* **knewest not**:
thou art found, and also *caught* **apprehended**,
because thou hast *striven* **throttled**
against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
25 The *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath opened his *armoury* **treasury**,
and hath brought forth
the *weapons* **instruments** of his *indignation* **rage**:
for this is the work
of the *Lord* *GOD* of *hosts* **Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth**
in the land of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**.
26 Come against her from the *utmost* **border** **end**,
open her *storehouses* **granaries**:
cast **raise** her up as heaps, and *destroy* **devote** her *utterly*:
let *nothing of her be left* **there be no survivors**.
27 Slay **Parch** all her bullocks;
let them *go down* **descend** to the slaughter:
woe **ho** unto them!
for their day is come, the time of their visitation.
28 The voice of them that flee and escape
out of the land of *Babylon* **Babel**,
to *declare* **tell** in *Zion* **Siyon** the *vengeance* **avengement**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
the *vengeance* **avengement** of his *temple* **manse**.
29 Call together **Hearken** the archers
against *Babylon* **Babel**:
all ye that bend the bow,
camp **encamp** against it round about;
let *none thereof* **escape** **there be no escapees**:
recompense **shalam** to her according to her *work* **deeds**;
according to all that she hath *done* **worked**,
do **work** unto her:
for she hath been proud against the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
against the Holy One of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
30 Therefore shall her *young men* **youths**
fall in the *streets* **broadways**,
and all her men of war
shall be *cut off* **severed** in that day,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
31 Behold, I am against thee, O *thou most proud* **arrogance**,

YIRME YAH 50

exeGeses companion BIBLE

crunches his bones.
So thus says
Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of *Yisra El*;
Behold,
I visit on the sovereign of Babel and his land,
as I visited on the sovereign of Ashshur:
19 and I return *Yisra El* to his habitation of rest,
and he tends on Karmel/orchard and Bashan,
and his soul satiates on mount Ephrayim and Gilad.
20 In those days, and in that time,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
they seek the perversity of *Yisra El*,
and there is none;
and the sins of Yah Hudah,
and they find them not:
for I forgive them whom I leave remaining.
21 Ascend against the land of Merathayim,
— against it, and against the settlers of Peqod:
parch and devote after them
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and work according to all I misvahed you.
22 A voice of war *is* in the land,
and of great breaking.
23 How the hammer of the whole earth
is cut apart and broken!
How Babel becomes a desolation among the goyim!
24 I lay a snare for you,
and also capture you, O Babel,
and you know not:
you are found out and also apprehended
because you throttled against Yah Veh.
25 Yah Veh opens his treasury
and brings forth the instruments of his rage:
for this is the work of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth
in the land of the Kesediym.
26 Come against her from the end;
open her granaries:
raise her as heaps and devote her
that there be no survivors:
parch all her bullocks;
descend them to the slaughter.
Ho to them!
for their day *is* come — the time of their visitation.
28 The voice of them who flee and escape
from the land of Babel,
to tell in Siyon
the avengement of Yah Veh our Elohim
— the avengement of his manse.
29 Hearken the archers against Babel
all you who bend the bow:
encamp against it all around;
that there be no escapees:
shalam her according to her deeds;
work to her according to all she worked:
for she *is* proud against Yah Veh
— against the Holy One of *Yisra El*.
30 So fell her youths in the broadways
and sever all her men of war in that day
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
31 Behold, I *am* against you, O Arrogance!

JEREMIAH 50

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

saith the Lord GOD of hosts

an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth:

for thy day is come, the time that I *will shall* visit thee.

32 And the *most proud* **arrogant**
shall *stumble* **falter** and fall,
and none shall raise him up:
and I *will shall* kindle a fire in his cities,
and it shall *devour* **consume** all round about him.
33 Thus saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
The *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
and the *children* **sons of Judah** **Yah Hudah**
were oppressed together:
and all that *took* **captured** them *captives*
held them *fast*;
they refused to *let* **send** them *go away*.
34 Their Redeemer is strong;
the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth** is his name:
in pleading, he shall *thoroughly* plead their *cause* **plea**,
that he may *give* rest to the land,
and *disquiet* **quake**
the *inhabitants* **settlers of Babylon** **Babel**.
35 A sword is upon the *Chaldeans* **Kesediyim**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
and upon the *inhabitants* **settlers of Babylon** **Babel**,
and upon her *princes* **governors**, and upon her wise *men*.
36 A sword is upon *the liars* **their lies**;
and they shall *dote* **folly**:
a sword is upon her mighty *men*;
and they shall be dismayed.
37 A sword is upon their horses, and upon their chariots,
and upon all the *mingled people* **comingled**
that are in the midst of her;
and they shall become as women:
a sword is upon her treasures;
and they shall be *robbed* **plundered**.
38 A *drought* **parch** is upon her waters;
and they shall be dried up:
for it is the land of *graven images* **sculptiles**,
and they *are mad upon their idols* **halal bugaboos**.
39 Therefore the *wild beasts of the desert* **desert dwellers**
with the *wild beasts of the islands* **island howlers**
shall *dwel* **settle** there,
and the **daughters of the owls** shall *dwel* **settle** therein:
and it shall be no more *inhabited* **settled**
for ever **in perpetuity**;
neither shall it be *dwelt* **tabernacled** in
from generation to generation.
40 As *God Elohim*
overthrew *Sodom* **Sedom** and *Gomorra* **Amorah**
and the *neighbour cities* **nearby tabernacles thereof**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**;
so shall no man *abide* **settle** there,
neither shall any son of *man* **humanity**
dwel **sojourn** therein.
41 Behold, a people shall come from the north,
and a great *nation* **goyim**,
and many *kings* **sovereigns** shall be *raised up* **wakened**
from the *coasts* **flanks** of the earth.
42 They shall hold the bow and the *lance* **dart**:
they are cruel, and *will shall* not *shew* mercy:
their voice shall roar like the sea,
and they shall ride upon horses,
every one put in array — **lined up**,
like a man to the *battle* **war**,
against thee, O daughter of *Babylon* **Babel**.
43 The *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
hath heard the report of them,
and his hands *waxed feeble* **slackened**:
anguish **tribulation** took hold of him,
and pangs as *of a woman in travail* **in birthing**.
44 Behold, he shall *come up* **ascend** like a lion
from the *swelling* **pomp** of *Jordan* **Yarden**
unto the habitation **of rest** of the *strong* **perennial**:
but I *will make* **shall cause** them *suddenly* **in a blink**
run away from her:
and who is a chosen *man*, that I may appoint over her?
for who is like me?
and who *will appoint* **shall congregate with** me *the time*?

YIRME YAH 50

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth
for your day is come — to visit you:
and the arrogant to falter and fall
with no one to raise him:
and I kindle a fire in his cities,
and it consumes all all around him.
32
33 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth;
The sons of Yisra El and the sons of Yah Hudah
are oppressed:
and all who capture them hold them;
they refuse to send them away.
34 Their Redeemer is strong;
Yah Veh Sabaoth *is* his name:
in pleading, he pleads their plea
— to rest the land
and quake the settlers of Babel.
35 A sword *is* on the Kesediyim
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and on the settlers of Babel
and on her governors and on her wise:
36 a sword *is* on their lies
and they folly;
a sword *is* on her mighty
and they dismay;
37 a sword *is* on their horses and on their chariots
and on all the comingled among her;
and they become as women:
a sword *is* on her treasures
and they are plundered;
38 a parch is on her waters
and they dry up;
for it is the land of sculptiles
and they halal bugaboos:
39 so the desert dwellers settle there
with the island howlers;
and the daughters of the owls settle therein:
and it *is* neither settled any more in perpetuity;
nor tabernacled in from generation to generation.
40 As Elohim overthrew Sedom and Amorah
and the nearby tabernacles
— an oracle of Yah Veh
thus neither man settles there,
nor any son of humanity sojourns therein.
41 Behold, a people come from the north
even a great goyim,
and many sovereigns waken
from the flanks of the earth:
42 they hold the bow and the dart;
they are cruel, and mercy not:
their voice roars as the sea
and they ride on horses
— lined up against you, O daughter of Babel,
as a man to the war.
43 The sovereign of Babel hears their report
and he slackens his hands:
tribulation takes hold of him
and pangs as in birthing.
44 Behold,
he ascends as a lion from the pomp of Yarden
to the habitation of rest of the perennial:
but I, in a blink, run them away from her.
And who is chosen? I appoint over her!
For who *is* like me?
And who congregates with me?

JEREMIAH 50, 51

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and who is that *shepherd tender*
that will **shall** stand *before me at my face?*
45 Therefore hear ye the counsel of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
that he hath *taken counselled* against *Babylon Babel*;
and his *purposes fabrications*,
that he hath *purposed fabricated*
against the land of the *Chaldeans Kesediym*:
Surely the *least lesser* of the flock
shall *draw drag* them out:
surely he shall *make desolate*
their *habitation desolate habitation of rest* with them.
46 At the *noise voice*
of the *taking apprehending* of *Babylon Babel*
the earth is *moved quaked*,
and the cry is heard among the *nations goyim*.

THE JUDGMENT OF BABEL

51 Thus saith the *LORD Yah Veh*; Behold,
I will *raise up shall waken* against *Babylon Babel*,
and against them
that *dwell settle* in the *midst heart*
of them that *rise up against me rouse*,
a *destroying ruinous* wind/spirit;
2 And will **shall** send unto *Babylon Babel*
fanners strangers,
that shall *fan winnow* her,
and shall *empty evacuate* her land:
for in the day of *trouble evil*
they shall be against her round about.
3 Against him that bendeth
let the *archer bender* bend his bow,
and against him
that *lifteth himself up ascendeth* in his brigandine:
and spare ye not her *young men youths*;
destroy *devote* ye utterly all her host.
4 Thus the *slain pierced* shall fall
in the land of the *Chaldeans Kesediym*,
and they that are thrust through in her *streets outways*.
5 For *Israel Yisra El* hath not been *forsaken abandoned*,
nor *Judah Yah Hudah* of his *God Elohim*,
of the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*;
though their land was filled with *sin guilt*
against the Holy One of *Israel Yisra El*.
6 Flee out of the midst of *Babylon Babel*,
and *deliver rescue* every man his soul:
be not *cut off severed* in her *iniquity perversity*;
for this is the time
of the *LORD'S vengeance Yah Veh's avengement*;
he will *render in dealing shalom*,
he shall *deal shalom* unto her a *recompence*.
7 *Babylon Babel* hath been a golden cup
in the *LORD'S Yah Veh's* hand,
that made *intoxicated* all the earth *drunken*:
the *nations goyim* have drunken of her wine;
therefore the *nations are mad goyim halal*.
8 *Babylon Babel* is suddenly fallen and *destroyed broken*:
howl for her;
take balm for her *pain sorrow*,
if so be she may be healed.
9 We would **should** have healed *Babylon Babel*,
but she is not healed:
forsake her,
and let us go every *one man* into his own *country land*:
for her judgment
reacheth toucheth unto *heaven the heavens*,
and is lifted up *even* to the *skies vapours*.
10 The *LORD Yah Veh*
hath brought forth our *righteousness justness*:
come, and let us *declare scribe* in *Zion Siyon*
the work of the *LORD Yah Veh* our *God Elohim*.
11 Make bright **Polish** the arrows; *gather fill* the shields:
the *LORD Yah Veh* hath *raised up wakened*
the spirit of the *kings sovereigns* of the *Medes Maday*:
for his *device intrigue* is against *Babylon Babel*,
to *destroy ruin* it;
because it is the *vengeance avengement* of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
the *vengeance avengement* of his *temple manse*.
12 Set up **Lift** the *standard ensign*
upon the walls of *Babylon Babel*,
make **strengthen** the *watch strong guard*,

YIRME YAH 50, 51

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And who *is* that tender who stands at my face?
45 So hear the counsel
Yah Veh counsels against *Babel*;
and the *fabrications*
he fabricates against the land of the *Kesediym*:
surely the lesser of the flock drag them out:
surely he desolates their habitation of rest with them.
46 At the voice of the apprehending of *Babel*
the earth quakes;
and the cry is heard among the *goyim*.

THE JUDGMENT OF BABEL

51 Thus says *Yah Veh*; Behold,
I waken a ruinous wind/spirit against *Babel*
and against them who settle in the heart of them
— who rouse:
2 and I send strangers to *Babel*
to winnow her and evacuate her land:
for in the day of evil
they are against her all around.
3 In bending,
the bender neither bends his bow,
nor ascends in his brigandine:
spare not her youths; devote all her host.
4 Thus the pierced fall in the land of the *Kesediym*
and the thrust through in her outways.
5 For neither is *Yisra El* abandoned
nor *Yah Hudah* by his *Elohim Yah Veh Sabaoth*;
though their land is filled with guilt
against the Holy One of *Yisra El*.
6 Flee from midst *Babel*,
and rescue every man his soul:
be not severed in her perversity;
for this is the time
of the avengement of *Yah Veh*;
in dealing shalom, he deals shalom to her.
7 In the hand of *Yah Veh*, *Babel* is a golden cup
that intoxicates all the earth:
the *goyim* drink of her wine
and so the *goyim halal*.
8 Suddenly *Babel* falls and breaks:
howl for her; take balm for her sorrow,
if so be, she heals.
9 We heal *Babel*, and she heals not:
forsake her; and go every man into his own land:
for her judgment touches to the heavens,
— lifts to the vapours.
10 *Yah Veh* brings forth our justness:
come, and scribe in *Siyon*
the work of *Yah Veh* our *Elohim*:
11 polish the arrows; fill the shields:
Yah Veh wakens the spirit
of the sovereigns of the *Maday*:
for his intrigue *is* against *Babel*, to ruin therein;
because it *is* the avengement of *Yah Veh*
— the avengement of his manse.
12 Lift the ensign on the walls of *Babel*,
strengthen the guard;

JEREMIAH 51

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

set up **raise** the watchmen **guards**,
prepare the *ambushes* **lurks**:

for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath both *devised* **intrigued**
and *done* **worked** that which he spake
against the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Babylon* **Babel**.

Apocalypse 18:1—17

13 O thou that *dwellest* **tabernaclest** upon many waters,
abundant in treasures; thine end is come,
and the measure of thy *covetousness* **greedy gain**.

14 *The LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
hath *sworn* **oathed** by *himself* **his soul**, *saying*,
Surely I *will* **shall** fill thee with *men* **humanity**,
as with *caterpillars* **cankerworms**;
and they shall *lift up* **answer** a shout against thee.

THE FORCE OF YAH VEH

15 He hath *made* **worked** the earth by his *power* **force**,
he hath established the world by his wisdom,
and hath *stretched out* **spread** the *heaven* **heavens**
by his *understanding* **discernment**.

16 When he *uttereth* **giveth** his voice,
there is a multitude of waters in the heavens;
and he causeth the vapours
to ascend from the ends of the earth:
he *maketh* **worketh** lightnings with rain,
and bringeth forth the wind out of his treasures.

17 *Every man* **All humanity** is brutish by his knowledge;
every founder **refiner** is *confounded* **shamed**
by the *graven image* **sculptile**:
for his *molten image* **libation** is falsehood,
and there is no *breath* **spirit** in them.

18 They are vanity, the work of *errors* **frauds**:
in the time of their visitation they shall *perish* **destruct**.

19 The *portion* **allotment** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
is not like them;
for he is the former of all *things*:
and *Israel* is the rod of his inheritance:
the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth** is his name.

20 Thou art my *battle ax* **disintegrator**
and *weapons* **instruments** of war:
for with thee *will* I *break in pieces* **shall I shatter**
the *nations* **goyim**,
and with thee *will* I *destroy* **shall I ruin**
kingdoms **sovereigndoms**;

21 And with thee *will* I *break in pieces* **shall I shatter**
the horse and his rider;
and with thee *will* I *break in pieces* **shall I shatter**
the chariot and his rider;

22 With thee also *will* I *break in pieces* **shall I shatter**
man and woman;
and with thee *will* I *break in pieces* **shall I shatter**
old aged and *young lad*;
and with thee *will* I *break in pieces* **shall I shatter**
the *young man* **youth** and the *maid* **virgin**;

23 I *will* **shall** also *break in pieces with thee* **shatter**
the *shepherd* **tender** and his *flock* **tender drove**;
and with thee *will* I *break in pieces* **shall I shatter**
the *husbandman* **cultivator** and his *yoke of oxen*;
and with thee *will* I *break in pieces* **shall I shatter**
captains **governors** and *rulers* **prefects**.

24 And I *will* *render* **shall shalam** unto *Babylon* **Babel**
and to all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Chaldea* **Kesediym**
all their evil that they have *done* **worked** in *Zion* **Siyon**
in your *sight eyes*,

25 *saith the LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
Behold, I am against thee,
O *destroying mountain* **mountain of ruin**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
which *destroyest* **ruinest** all the earth:

and I *will stretch out* **shall spread** mine hand upon thee,
and roll thee down from the rocks,
and *will make* **shall give** thee a *burnt* **burning** mountain.

26 And they shall not take of thee a stone for a corner,
nor a stone for foundations;
but thou shalt be desolate *for ever* **eternally**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

Apocalypse 8:8,9

27 Set **Lift** ye up a *standard* **an ensign** in the land,
blow **blast** the *trumpet* **shophar** among the *nations* **goyim**,
prepare **hallow** the *nations* **goyim** against her,

YIRME YAH 51

exeGesés companion BIBLE

raise the guards; prepare the lurks:
for Yah Veh both intrigues and works
what he speaks against the settlers of Babel.

Apocalypse 18:1—17

13 O you who tabernacles on many waters;
abundant in treasures; your end is come
— the measure of your greedy gain.

14 Yah Veh Sabaoth oaths by his soul,
Surely I fill you with humanity as with cankerworms;
and they answer a shout against you.

THE FORCE OF YAH VEH

15 He works the earth by his force;
he establishes the world by his wisdom
and spreads the heavens by his discernment:
16 he gives his voice,
and there is a multitude of waters in the heavens;
and he ascends the vapours
from the ends of the earth:
he works lightnings with rain
and brings forth the wind from his treasures.

17 All humanity is brutish by his knowledge;
every refiner shames by the sculptile:
for his libation is falsehood
and there is no spirit in them.

18 They are vanity — the work of frauds:
in the time of their visitation they destruct.

19 The allotment of Yaaqov *is* not like them;
for he is the former of all
and the rod of his inheritance:
Yah Veh Sabaoth *is* his name.

20 You are my disintegrator and instruments of war:
and with you, I shatter the goyim;
and with you, I ruin sovereigndoms;

21 and with you, I shatter the horse and his rider;
and with you, I shatter the chariot and his rider;
and with you, I shatter man and woman;
and with you, I shatter aged and lad;

22 and with you, I shatter the youth and the virgin;
and I shatter the tender and his drove;
and with you, I shatter the cultivator and his yoke;
and with you, I shatter governors and prefects:

23 and I shalam to Babel
and to all the settlers of Kesediym
all the evil they worked in Siyon in your eyes
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

24 Behold, I *am* against you, O mountain of ruin
— an oracle of Yah Veh,
who ruins all the earth:
and I spread my hand on you
and roll you down from the rocks;
and give you as a burning mountain:

25 and they neither take of you a stone for a corner
nor a stone for foundations;
for you are desolated eternally
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

Apocalypse 8:8,9

26 Lift an ensign in the land!
Blast the shophar among the goyim!
Hallow the goyim against her,

JEREMIAH 51

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

call together **hearken** against her
the **kingdoms sovereigndoms** of Ararat,
Minni, and *Ashchenaz Ashkenaz*;
appoint a **captain muster an officer** against her;
cause the horses to **come up ascend**
as the *rough caterpillars shaggy cankerworms*.
28 Prepare **Hallow** against her the *nations goyim*
with the **kings sovereigns** of the *Medes Maday*,
the *captains governors thereof*,
and all the **rulers prefects thereof**,
29 and all the land of his *dominion reign*.
And the land shall tremble and **sorrow writhe**:
for every *purpose fabrication of the LORD Yah Veh*
shall be **performed rise** against *Babylon Babel*,
to **make set** the land of *Babylon Babel*
a desolation without an **inhabitant a settler**.
30 The **mighty men of Babylon Babel**
have *forborn ceased* to fight,
they have *remained settled* in their **holds huntholds**:
their might hath **failed withered**; they became as women:
they have burned her *dwellingplaces tabernacles*;
her bars are broken.
31 One **post Runner** shall run to meet *another runner*,
and one **messenger teller** to meet *another teller*,
to **shew tell** the **king sovereign** of *Babylon Babel*
that his city is **taken captured** at one **the end**,
32 And that the passages are **stopped apprehended**,
and the **reeds marshes** they have burned with fire,
and the men of war are **affrighted terrified**.
33 For thus saith *the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*,
the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El;
The daughter of *Babylon Babel* is like a threshingfloor,
it is time to **thresh tread** her:
yet a little while, and the time of her harvest shall come.
34 *Nebuchadrezzar Nebukadnets Tsar*
the **king sovereign** of *Babylon Babel*
hath devoured me, he hath crushed me,
he hath **made set** me an empty **vessel instrument**,
he hath swallowed me up like a **dragon monster**,
he hath filled his belly with my **delicates pleasures**,
he hath **cast thrust** me out away.
35 *The violence done to me and to*
My violence, and that of my flesh
be upon *Babylon Babel*,
shall the **inhabitant settler** of *Zion Siyon* say;
and my blood
upon the **inhabitants settlers** of *Chaldea Kesediym*,
shall *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem* say.
36 Therefore thus saith *the LORD Yah Veh*;
Behold, I **will shall** plead thy **cause plea**,
and **take vengeance avenge avengement** for thee;
and I **will dry up shall parch** her sea,
and **make her springs dry her fountains**.
37 And *Babylon* shall **Babel** become heaps,
a *dwellingplace habitation* for **dragons monsters**,
an **astonishment a desolation**, and an hissing,
without an **inhabitant a settler**.
38 They shall roar together like **lions whelps**:
they shall **yell growl** as lions' whelps.
39 In their heat
I **will make shall place** their **feasts banquets**,
and I **will make shall intoxicate** them **drunken**,
that they may **rejoice jump for joy**,
and sleep a **perpetual an eternal** sleep, and not wake,
saith *the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh*.
40 I **will shall** bring them down
like **lambs rams** to the slaughter,
like rams with he goats.
41 How is *Sheshach* **taken captured**!
and how is the **praise halal** of the whole earth
surprised apprehended!
how is *Babylon Babel*
become an **astonishment a desolation**
among the **nations goyim**!
42 The sea is **come up ascended** upon *Babylon Babel*:
she is covered with the multitude of the waves *thereof*.
43 Her cities are a desolation,
a **dry parched** land, and a **wilderness plain**,
a land wherein no man **dwellleth settleth**,

YIRME YAH 51

exeGesés companion BIBLE

hearken against her
the **sovereigndoms** of Ararat, Minni, and Ashkenaz;
muster an officer against her;
ascend the horses as the shaggy cankerworms:
28 hallow the goyim against her
with the **sovereigns** of the *Maday*,
the **governors** and all the **prefects**
and all the land of his **reign**.
29 And the land trembles and writhes:
for every fabrication of *Yah Veh* rises against *Babel*
to set the land of *Babel* a desolation without a settler.
30 The **mighty** of *Babel* cease to fight;
they settle in their **huntholds**;
their **might** withers; they became as women:
they burn her **tabernacles**; they break her **bars**:
31 runner runs to meet runner and teller to meet teller
to tell the **sovereign** of *Babel*
that his city is captured at the end:
32 and that the passages are **apprehended**
and the **marshes** burned with fire
and the men of war are **terrified**.
33 For thus says *Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El*:
The daughter of *Babel* is as a threshingfloor;
it is time to tread her:
yet a little while, and the time of her harvest comes.
34 *Nebukadnets Tsar* the **sovereign** of *Babel*
devours us; crushes us:
he sets me an empty instrument;
he swallows me up as a monster;
he fills his belly with my pleasures;
he thrusts me away.
35 My violence, and that of my flesh is on *Babel*,
say the **settlers** of *Siyon*;
and my blood on the **settlers** of *Kesediym*,
says *Yeru Shalem*.
36 So thus says *Yah Veh*:
Behold, I plead your plea,
and avenge your avengement:
and I parch her sea and dry her fountains:
37 and *Babel* becomes heaps
— a habitation for monsters
— a desolation and a hissing without a settler:
they roar together as whelps:
they growl as whelps of lions.
38 In their heat, I place their banquets;
and I intoxicate them so that they jump for joy
and sleep an eternal sleep and waken not
— an oracle of *Yah Veh*.
40 I bring them down as rams to the slaughter
— as rams with he goats.
41 How *Sheshach* is captured!
And how the **halal** of the whole earth is **apprehended**!
How *Babel* becomes a desolation among the goyim!
42 The sea ascends on *Babel*
— covered with the multitude of the waves:
43 her cities a desolation; a parched land; and a plain:
a land wherein neither man settles

JEREMIAH 51

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

neither doth any a son of man **humanity**
pass *thereby* **therein**.
44 And I *will punish* **shall visit upon** Bel
in *Babylon* **Babel**,
and I *will* **shall** bring forth out of his mouth
that which he hath swallowed *up*:
and the *nations* **goyim**
shall not flow together *any* more unto him:
yea, the wall of *Babylon* **Babel** shall fall.
45 My people, go ye out of the midst of her,
and *deliver* **rescue** ye every man his soul
from the *fierce anger* **fuming wrath**
of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
46 And lest your heart *faint* **be tenderized**,
and ye *fear* **awe** for the *rumour* **report**
that shall be heard in the land;
a *rumour* **report** shall both come *one* **in a** year,
and after that in *another* **a** year
shall come a *rumour* **the report**,
and violence in the land,
ruler **sovereign** against *ruler* **sovereign**.
47 Therefore, behold, the days come,
that I *will do judgment* **shall visit**
upon the *graven images* **sculptiles** of *Babylon* **Babel**:
and her whole land shall *be confounded* **shame**,
and all her *slain* **pierced** shall fall in the midst of her.
48 Then the *heaven* **heavens** and the earth,
and all that is therein,
shall *sing* **shout** for *Babylon* **Babel**:
for the *spoilers* **ravagers** shall come unto her
from the north,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
49 As *Babylon* **Babel**
hath caused the *slain* **pierced** of *Israel* **Yisra El** to fall,
so at *Babylon* **Babel**
shall fall the *slain* **pierced** of all the earth.
50 Ye that have escaped the sword,
go away, stand not still:
remember *the LORD* **Yah Veh** afar off,
and let *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
come **ascend** into your *mind* **heart**.
51 We are *confounded* **shamed**,
because we have heard reproach:
shame hath covered our faces:
for strangers are come into the *sanctuaries* **holies**
of the *LORD'S* house **of Yah Veh**.
52 Wherefore, behold, the days come,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that I *will do judgment* **shall visit**
upon her *graven images* **sculptiles**:
and through all her land
the *wounded* **pierced** shall *groan* **shriek**.
53 Though *Babylon* **Babel**
should *mount up to heaven* **ascend to the heavens**,
and though she should fortify the height of her strength,
yet from me shall *spoilers* **ravagers** come unto her,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
54 A *sound* **voice** of a cry cometh from *Babylon* **Babel**,
and great *destruction* **breaking**
from the land of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**:
Because *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath *spoiled* *Babylon* **ravaged Babel**,
and destroyed out of her the great voice;
when her waves *do* roar like great waters,
a *noise* **an uproar** of their voice is *uttered* **given**:
56 Because the *spoiler* **ravager** is come upon her,
even upon *Babylon* **Babel**,
and her mighty *men* are *taken* **captured**,
every one of their bows is broken:
for *the LORD God* **Yah Veh El** of *recompences* **dealings**
in shalaming, shall *surely* *requite* **shalam**.
57 And I *will make drunk* **shall intoxicate**
her *princes* **governors**,
and her wise *men*, her *captains* **governors**,
and her *rulers* **prefects**, and her mighty *men*:
and they shall sleep a *perpetual* **an eternal** sleep,
and not wake,
saith the King **an oracle of the Sovereign**,
whose name is *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.

YIRME YAH 51

exeGeses companion BIBLE

nor a son of humanity passes therein.
44 And I visit on Bel in Babel,
and from his mouth
I bring forth what he swallowed:
and the goyim
flow together to him no more:
yes, the wall of Babel falls.
45 My people, come from among her
and rescue every man his soul
from the fuming wrath of Yah Veh.
46 And lest your heart be tenderized,
and you awe for the report heard in the land;
a report comes in a year:
and a year after the report, violence in the land
— sovereign against sovereign.
47 So behold, days come,
that I visit shame on the sculptiles of Babel
and her whole land;
and all her pierced fall in her midst.
48 And the heavens and the earth and all therein
shout against Babel:
for the ravagers come to her from the north
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
49 As Babel pierced Yisra El to fall,
thus at Babel
all the pierced of the earth fall.
50 You who escaped the sword, go away;
stand not still:
remember Yah Veh from afar
and ascend Yeru Shalem into your heart.
51 We shame, because we hear reproach:
shame covers our faces:
for strangers
come into the holies of the house of Yah Veh.
52 So behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that I visit on her sculptiles:
and through all her land the pierced shriek:
53 though Babel ascends to the heavens,
and though she fortify the height of her strength,
my ravagers come to her
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
54 A voice of a cry from Babel,
and great breaking from the land of the Kesediym:
because Yah Veh ravages Babel,
and destroys from her the great voice;
when her waves roar as great waters,
an uproar of their voice is given:
56 because the ravager comes on her — on Babel
and her mighty are captured;
every one of their bows break:
for Yah Veh El of dealings
in shalaming, shalams:
57 and I intoxicate her governors and her wise
— her governors and her prefects and her mighty:
and they sleep an eternal sleep and waken not
— an oracle of the Sovereign
whose name is Yah Veh Sabaoth.

JEREMIAH 51, 52

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

58 Thus saith the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
The broad walls of **Babylon Babel**
in stripping bare, shall be *utterly broken* **stripped bare**,
and her high **gates portals** shall be burned with fire;
and the people shall labour *in vain* **vainly enough**,
and the **folk nations** in the fire **enough**,
and they shall be weary.
59 The word which **Jeremiah Yirme Yah** the prophet
commanded **misvahed**
Seraiah Sera Yah the son of **Neria Neri Yah**,
the son of **Maaseiah Machse Yah**,
when he went with **Zedekiah Sidqi Yah**
the **king sovereign** of **Judah Yah Hudah**
into **Babylon Babel** in the fourth year of his reign.
And *this* **Seraiah Sera Yah**
was a *quiet prince* **restive governor**.
60 So **Jeremiah Yirme Yah**
wrote **inscribed** in a **book one scroll**
all the evil that should come upon **Babylon Babel**,
even all these words
that are *written* **inscribed** against **Babylon Babel**.
61 And **Jeremiah Yirme Yah** said to **Seraiah Sera Yah**,
When thou comest to **Babylon Babel**, and shalt see,
and shalt **read call out** all these words;
62 Then shalt thou say, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
thou hast *spoken* **worded** against this place, to cut it off,
that none shall *remain* **settle** in it,
neither *man* **humanity** nor *beast* **animal**,
but that it shall be desolate *for ever* **eternally**.
63 And **so be it shall be**,
when thou hast *made an end of* **finished**
reading **calling out** this **book scroll**,
that thou shalt bind a stone to it,
and cast it into the midst of Euphrates:
64 And thou shalt say,
Thus shall **Babylon sink Babel drown**,
and shall not rise
from **the face of** the evil that I *will* **shall** bring upon her:
and they shall be weary.
Thus far are the words of **Jeremiah Yirme Yah**.

THE FALL OF YERU SHALEM

52

Zedekiah Sidqi Yah
was **a son of** one and twenty years *old*
when he began to reign,
and he reigned eleven years in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
And his mother's name was **Hamutal**
the daughter of **Jeremiah Yirme Yah** of **Libnah**.
2 And he *did* **worked** that which was evil
in the eyes of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
according to all that **Jehoiakim Yah Yaqim** had *done* **worked**.
3 For through the *anger* **wrath** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
so be it came to pass
in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem** and **Judah Yah Hudah**,
till he had cast them out from his *presence* **face**,
that **Zedekiah Sidqi Yah** rebelled
against the **king sovereign** of **Babylon Babel**.
4 And **so be it came to pass**
in the ninth year of his reign,
in the tenth month, in the tenth *day* of the month,
that **Nebuchadrezzar Nebukadnets Tsar**
king sovereign of **Babylon Babel** came,
he and all his **army valiant**,
against **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
and *pitched* **encamped** against it,
and built **forts battering towers** against it round about.
5 So the city was **besieged under siege**
unto the eleventh year
of **king Zedekiah sovereign Sidqi Yah**.
6 And in the fourth month, in the ninth *day* of the month,
the *famine* was **sore prevailed** in the city,
so that there was no bread for the people of the land.
7 Then the city was *broken up* **split**,
and all the men of war fled,
and went forth out of the city by night
by the way of the **gate portal** between the two walls,
which was by the **king's sovereign's** garden;
(*now* the **Chaldeans Kesediym**
were by the city round about:)
and they went by the way of the plain.

YIRME YAH 51, 52

exeGeses companion BIBLE

58 Thus says **Yah Veh Sabaoth**:
In stripping bare,
the broad walls of **Babel** are stripped bare
and her high **portals** burned with fire:
and the people labor *vainly* **enough**;
and the **nations** are in the fire **enough**;
and they weary.
59 The word **Yirme Yah** the prophet *misvahs* to
Sera Yah the son of **Neri Yah** the son of **Machse Yah**
when he goes
with **Sidqi Yah** the sovereign of **Yah Hudah**
into **Babel** in the fourth year of his reign.
— and **Sera Yah** is a *restive* **governor**.
60 Thus in one scroll
Yirme Yah *inscribes* all the evil coming on **Babel**
— all these words *inscribed* against **Babel**.
61 And **Yirme Yah** says to **Sera Yah**,
When you come to **Babel**,
and see, and call out all these words;
62 then you say, O **Yah Veh**,
you worded against this place, to cut it off,
so that no one becomes a settler therein
— neither *humanity* nor *animal*,
and that it becomes desolate *eternally*.
63 And so be it,
when you finish calling out this scroll,
bind a stone to it and cast it midst the **Euphrates**:
64 and say, Thus **Babel** drowns,
and rises not
from the face of the evil that I bring on her:
and they weary.
Thus far are the words of **Yirme Yah**.

THE FALL OF YERU SHALEM

52

Sidqi Yah is a son of twenty—one years
in beginning to reign;
and he reigns eleven years in **Yeru Shalem**:
and the name of his mother, **Hamutal**
the daughter of **Yirme Yah** of **Libnah**.
2 And he works evil in the eyes of **Yah Veh**
according to all **Yah Yaqim** worked.
3 For because of the wrath of **Yah Veh**
it is in **Yeru Shalem** and **Yah Hudah**,
until he casts them from his face;
and **Sidqi Yah** rebels against the sovereign of **Babel**.
4 And so be it, in the ninth year of his reign,
in the tenth month, in the tenth of the month,
Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of **Babel** comes
— he and all his valiant against **Yeru Shalem**
and encamp against it;
and builds *battering* towers against it all around:
5 thus the city comes under siege
to the eleventh year of sovereign **Sidqi Yah**.
6 And in the fourth month, in the ninth of the month,
the *famine* prevails in the city,
and there is no bread for the people of the land.
7 Then the city splits and all the men of war flee;
and go from the city by night
by the way of the portal between the two walls
by the garden of the sovereign
— the **Kesediym** are all around the city;
and they go by the way of the plain:

JEREMIAH 52

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 But the army **valiant** of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym** pursued after the king **sovereign**, and overtook *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah** in the plains of *Jericho* **Yericho**; and all his army **valiant** was scattered from him.

9 Then they **took** **apprehended** the king **sovereign**, and **carried** **ascended** him up unto the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel** to Riblah in the land of Hamath; where he **gave** **worded** judgment upon him.

10 And the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel** **slew** **slaughtered** the sons of *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah** before in front of his eyes: he **slew** **slaughtered** also all the *princes* **governors** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** in Riblah.

11 Then he **put out** **blinded** the eyes of *Zedekiah* **Sidqi Yah**; and the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel** bound him in *chains* **coppers**, and carried him to *Babylon* **Babel**, and **put** **gave** him in *prison* **the house of visitation** till the day of his death.

12 Now in the fifth month, in the tenth day of the month, which year was the nineteenth year of *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar** king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**, came *Nebuzaradan* **Nebu Zaradan**, *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer**, which **served** **stood at the face** of the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**, into *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,

13 And burned the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, and the king's **sovereign's** house; and all the houses of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, and all the houses of the great men, burned he with fire:

14 And all the army **valiant** of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**, that were with the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer**, brake down all the walls of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** round about.

15 Then *Nebuzaradan* **Nebu Zaradan** the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer** carried away captive **exiled** certain of the poor of the people, and the *residue* **remnant** of the people that **remained** **survived** in the city, and those that fell away, that fell to the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**, and the *rest* **remnant** of the multitude.

16 But *Nebuzaradan* **Nebu Zaradan** the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer** left certain **let survive** of the poor of the land for vinedressers and for *husbandmen* **plowers**.

17 Also the pillars of *brass* **copper** that were in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, and the bases, and the *brases* **copper** sea that was in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**, the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym** brake, and **carried** **bore** all the *brass* **copper** of them to *Babylon* **Babel**.

18 The caldrons also, and the shovels, and the *snuffers* **tweezers**, and the *bowls* **sprinklers**, and the *spoons* **hollow bowls**, and all the *vessels* **instruments** of *brass* **copper** wherewith they ministered, took they away.

19 And the basons, and the *firepans* **trays**, and the *bowls* **sprinklers**, and the caldrons, and the *andlesticks* **menorah**, and the spoons, and the *cups* **exoneration basins**; that which was of gold *in* gold, and that which was of silver *in* silver, took the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer** away.

20 The two pillars, one sea, and twelve *brases* **copper** bulls that were under the bases, which king *Solomon* **sovereign Shelomah** had **made** **worked** in the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**: the *brass* **copper** of all these *vessels* **instruments** was without weight.

21 And concerning the pillars,

YIRME YAH 52

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 and the valiant of the Kesediym pursue the sovereign and overtake Sidqi Yah in the plains of Yericho; and all his valiant scatter from him: and they apprehend the sovereign, and ascend him to the sovereign of Babel — to Riblah in the land of Hamath; where he words judgment on him.

9

10 And the sovereign of Babel slaughters the sons of Sidqi Yah in front of his eyes: he also slaughters all the governors of Yah Hudah in Riblah: and he blinds the eyes of Sidqi Yah; and the sovereign of Babel binds him in coppers and carries him to Babel; and gives him in the house of visitation until the day of his death.

11

12 And in the fifth month, in the tenth of the month, which year is the nineteenth year of Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel, Nebu Zaradan the rabbi slaughterer who stands at the face of the sovereign of Babel, comes to Yeru Shalem;

13 and burns the house of Yah Veh and the house of the sovereign and all the houses of Yeru Shalem: and all the houses of the great he burns with fire: and all the valiant of the Kesediym with the rabbi slaughterer break down all the walls of Yeru Shalem all around: and Nebu Zaradan the rabbi slaughterer exiles certain of the poor people and the remnant of the people who survive in the city and those who fell away — who fell to the sovereign of Babel with the remnant of the multitude: and Nebu Zaradan the rabbi slaughterer lets some of the poor of the land survive for vinedressers and for plowers.

14

15

16

17 And the Kesediym break the pillars of copper in the house of Yah Veh and the bases and the copper sea in the house of Yah Veh, and bear all their copper to Babel — with the caldrons and the shovels and the tweezers and the sprinklers and the hollow bowls: and they take away all the instruments of copper with which they ministered:

18 and the rabbi slaughterer takes away the basons and the trays and the sprinklers and the caldrons and the menorah and the spoons and the exoneration basins of gold gold and of silver silver — the two pillars, one sea, and twelve copper bulls under the bases, which sovereign Shelomah worked in the house of Yah Veh: the copper of all these instruments without weight: and the pillars

JEREMIAH 52

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

the height of one pillar was eighteen cubits
and a *fillet* **thread** of twelve cubits
did *compass* **surround** it;
and the thickness *thereof* was four fingers: *it was hollow*.
22 And a *chapter* **cap** of brass **copper** was upon it;
and the height of one *chapter* **cap** was five cubits,
with *network* **netting** and pomegranates
upon the *chapters* **caps** round about, all of brass **copper**.
The second pillar also and the pomegranates
were like unto these.
23 And there were ninety and six pomegranates
on a *side* **wind**;
and all the pomegranates upon the *network* **netting**
were an hundred round about.
24 And the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer**
took Seraiah **Sera Yah** the chief priest,
and Zephaniah **Sephan Yah** the second priest,
and the three *keepers* **guards** of the *door* **threshold**:
25 He took also out of the city *an* **one** eunuch,
which had the charge **an overseer** of the men of war;
and seven men of them
that were near **saw** the *king's person* **sovereign's face**,
which were found in the city;
and the *principal scribe* **of the governor** of the host,
who *mustered* **hosted** the people of the land;
and *threescore* **sixty** men of the people of the land,
that were found in the midst of the city.
26 So Nebuzaradan **Nebu Zaradan**
the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer** took them,
and *brought* **carried** them
to the *king* **sovereign** of Babylon **Babel** to Riblah.
27 And the *king* **sovereign** of Babylon **Babel** smote them,
and *put* **deathified** them *to death* in Riblah
in the land of Hamath.
Thus Judah **Yah Hudah** was *carried away captive* **exiled**
out of his own *land* **soil**.
28 This is the people whom
Nebuchadrezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
carried away captive **exiled**:
in the seventh year
three thousand Jews and three and twenty **Yah Hudiym**:
29 In the eighteenth year
of Nebuchadrezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
he *carried away captive* **exiled**
from Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**
eight hundred thirty and two *persons* **souls**:
30 In the three and twentieth year
of Nebuchadrezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
Nebuzaradan **Nebu Zaradan**
the *captain of the guard* **rabbi slaughterer**
carried away captive **exiled** of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
seven hundred forty and five *persons* **souls**:
all the *persons* **souls** were four thousand and six hundred.
31 And **so be** it *came to pass*
in the seven and thirtieth year
of the *captivity* **exile** of Jehoiachin **Yah Yachin**
king **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
in the twelfth month,
in the five and twentieth *day* of the month,
that *Evilmerodach* **Evil Merodach**
king **sovereign** of Babylon **Babel**
in the *first* year of his *reign* **sovereigndom**
lifted up the head of *Jehoiachin* **Yah Yachin**
king **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and brought him forth out of *the* prison **house**.
32 And *spake kindly* **worded good** unto him,
and *set* **gave** his throne
above the throne of the *kings* **sovereigns**
that were with him in *Babylon* **Babel**,
33 And changed his prison *garment* **clothes**:
and he did continually eat bread *before him* **at his face**
all the days of his life.
34 And for his *diet* **ration**,
there was a continual *diet* **ration** given him
of the *king* **sovereign** of Babylon **Babel**,
every day a *portion* **word** until the day of his death,
all the days of his life.

YIRME YAH 52

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— the height of one pillar eighteen cubits
and a thread of twelve cubits surrounds it;
and the thickness, four fingers — hollow:
with a cap of copper thereon;
and the height of one cap, five cubits;
with netting and pomegranates
on the caps all around — all of copper:
and the second pillar and the pomegranates
are like to these:
23 and there are ninety—six pomegranates
on a wind;
and all the pomegranates on the netting
are a hundred all around.
24 And the *rabbi slaughterer*
takes Sera Yah the chief priest
and Sephan Yah the second priest
and the three guards of the threshold:
25 and he also takes one eunuch of the city
— an overseer of the men of war;
and seven of their men
who see the face of the sovereign
whom they find in the city;
and the scribe of the governor of the host
who hosts the people of the land;
and sixty men of the people of the land
whom they find midst the city.
26 And Nebu Zaradan the *rabbi slaughterer*
takes them
and carries them to the sovereign of Babel to Riblah:
27 and the sovereign of Babel smites them
and deathifies them in Riblah in the land of Hamath.
Thus they exile Yah Hudah from his own soil.
28 This is the people Nebukadnets Tsar exiles:
in the seventh year
three thousand and twenty—three Yah Hudiym:
29 in the eighteenth year of Nebukadnets Tsar
he exiles eight hundred and thirty—two souls
from Yeru Shalem:
30 In the twenty—third year
of Nebukadnets Tsar,
Nebu Zaradan the *rabbi slaughterer*
exiles seven hundred and forty—five souls
of the Yah Hudiym:
all the souls *are* four thousand and six hundred.
31 And so be it,
in the thirty—seventh year
of the exile of Yah Yachin sovereign of Yah Hudah,
in the twelfth month,
in the twenty—fifth of the month,
Evil Merodach sovereign of Babel
in the year of his sovereigndom
lifts the head of Yah Yachin sovereign of Yah Hudah;
and brings him from the prison house;
32 and words good to him:
and gives his throne
above the throne of the sovereigns with him in Babel:
33 and changes his prison clothes:
and he continually eats bread at his face
all the days of his life.
34 And for his ration,
he is a given continual ration
of the sovereign of Babel
— a word day by day until the day of his death
all the days of his life.

EZEKIEL 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE VISIONS OF YECHEZQ EL

1 Now **And so be** it came to pass in the thirtieth year,
in the fourth *month*, in the fifth *day* of the month,
as I was among the *captives exiles*
by the river of *Chebar Kebar*,
that the heavens were opened,
and I saw visions of *God Elohim*.
2 In the fifth *day* of the month,
which was the fifth year
of king *Jehoiachin's captivity sovereign Yah Yachin's exile*,
3 The word of the *LORD Yah Veh* came expressly
unto *Ezekiel Yechezq El* the priest, the son of Buzi,
in the land of the *Chaldeans Kesediym*
by the river *Chebar Kebar*;
and the hand of the *LORD Yah Veh* was there upon him.

OMENS

4 And I *looked saw*, and, behold,
a *whirlwind windstorm* came out of the north,
a great cloud, and a fire *infolding overtaking* itself,
and a *brightness brilliance* was **round** about it,
and out of the midst *thereof*
as the colour **eyes** of *amber brilliant copper*,
out of the midst of the fire.

FOUR LIVE BEINGS

5 Also out of the midst *thereof*
came the likeness of four *living creatures live beings*.
And this was their *appearance visage*;
they **these** had the likeness of a *man human*.
6 And every one had four faces,
and every one had four wings.
7 And their feet were straight feet;
and the sole of their feet was like the sole of a calf's foot:
and they sparkled

like the colour **eye** of burnished *brass copper*.
8 And they had the hands of a *man human*
under their wings on their four *sides quarters*;
and they four had their faces and their wings.
9 Their wings were joined *one woman to another sister*;
they turned not when they went;
they went every *one straight man face* forward.
10 As for the likeness of their faces,
they four had the face of a *man human*,
and the face of a lion, on the right *side*;
and they four had the face of an ox on the left *side*;
they four also had the face of an eagle.

11 Thus were their faces:
and their wings *were stretched spread* upward;
two *wings of every one of each man*
were joined one man to another man,
and two covered their bodies.

12 And they went *every one each man*
straight face forward:
whither the spirit was to go, they went;
and they turned not when they went.
13 As for the likeness of the *living creatures live beings*,
their *appearance visage* was like burning coals of fire,
and like the *appearance visage* of *lamps flambeaus*:
it went up and down
among the *living creatures live beings*;
and the fire was *bright brilliant*,
and out of the fire went forth lightning.
14 And the *living creatures live beings* ran and returned
as the *appearance visage* of a flash of lightning.

THE WHEEL MIDST A WHEEL

15 Now as I *beheld saw* the *living creatures live beings*,
behold one wheel upon the earth
by the *living creatures beside the live beings*,
with his four faces.
16 The *appearance visage* of the wheels and their work
was like unto the colour **eye** of a beryl:
and they four had one likeness:
and their *appearance visage* and their work
was as it were a wheel in the *middle midst* of a wheel.
17 When they went,
they went upon their four *sides quarters*;
and they turned not when they went.
18 As for their *rings rims*,
they were so high that they were *dreadful awesome*;

YECHEZQ EL 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE VISIONS OF YECHEZQ EL

1 And so be it, in the thirtieth year,
in the fourth, in the fifth of the month,
I *am* among the exiles by the river of Kebar;
the heavens open and I see visions of Elohim.
2 In the fifth of the month
of the fifth year of the exile of sovereign Yah Yachin:
3 and so be the word of Yah Veh expressly
to Yechezq El the priest the son of Buzi
in the land of the Kesediym by the river Kebar:
and the hand of Yah Veh *is* on him.

OMENS

4 And I see, and behold,
a windstorm coming from the north
— a great cloud and a fire overtaking itself
and a brilliance all around;
and from the midst
eyes as of brilliant copper from midst the fire.

FOUR LIVE BEINGS

5 And from the midst, the likeness of four live beings:
and this *is* their visage; the likeness of a human:
6 and to *each* one four faces
and to *each* one four wings:
7 and their feet, straight feet;
and the sole of their feet,
as the sole of the foot of a calf:
and they sparkle as the eye of burnished copper:
8 and their hands as of a human
under their wings on their four quarters:
and they *have* four faces and wings.
9 Their wings join woman to sister;
they turn not as they go;
each man goes face forward:
10 as for the likeness of their faces,
the four *have* the face of a human
and the face of a lion on the right;
and the four *have* the face of an ox on the left;
the four also *have* the face of an eagle;
11 thus *are* their faces:
and their wings spread upward
— two of each man join man to man
and two cover their bodies.

12 And each man goes face forward:
wherever the spirit goes, they go;
and they turn not as they go.

13 As for the likeness of the live beings:
their visage *is* as burning coals of fire
and as the visage of flambeaus:
going up and down among the live beings:
and the fire *is* brilliant;
and from the fire comes lightning:
14 and the live beings run and return
as the visage of a flash.

THE WHEEL MIDST A WHEEL

15 And I see the live beings, and behold,
one wheel on the earth
beside the live beings at their four faces.
16 The visage of the wheels and their work
is as the eye of a beryl:
and the four *have* one likeness:
and their visage and their work
is as a wheel midst a wheel.

17 In going, they go on their four quarters:
and they turn not as they go.
18 As for their rims,
they *are* so high that they *are* awesome;

EZEKIEL 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and their **rings rims**
were full of eyes round about them four.
19 And when the *living creatures* **live beings** went,
the wheels went *by them* **along side**:
and when the *living creatures* **live beings**
were lifted *up* from the earth,
the wheels were lifted *up*.
20 Whithersoever the spirit was to go, they went,
thither was their spirit to go;
and the wheels were lifted *up*
over against **alongside** them:
for the spirit of the *living creature* **live being**
was in the wheels.
21 *When those went* **In their going**,
these went **they go**;
and when those stood **in their standing**,
these stood **they stand**;
and when those were **in their being** lifted *up*
from the earth,
the wheels were lifted *up over against* **alongside** them:
for the spirit of the *living creature* **live being**
was in the wheels.
22 And the likeness of the *firmament* **expanse**
upon the heads of the *living creature* **live being**
was as the colour **eye** of the terrible **awesome** crystal,
stretched forth **spread** over their heads above.
23 And under the *firmament* **expanse**
were their wings straight,
the one **woman** toward *the other* **sister**:
every one **each man** had two,
which covered *on this side* **here**,
and *every one* **each man** had two,
which covered *on that side* **there**,
their bodies.
24 And when they went,
I heard the *noise* **voice** of their wings,
like the *noise* **voice** of great waters,
as the voice of *the Almighty* **Shadday**,
the voice of *speech* **rushing**,
as the *noise* **voice** of an *host* **a camp**:
when they stood, they *let down* **lowered** their wings.
25 And there was a voice from the *firmament* **expanse**
that was over their heads,
when they stood, and had *let down* **lowered** their wings.
THE THRONE OF HONOUR
26 And above the *firmament* **expanse**
that was over their heads
was the likeness of a throne,
as the *appearance* **visage** of a sapphire stone:
and upon the likeness of the throne
was the likeness
as the *appearance* **visage** of a *man* **human**
above upon it.
27 And I saw as the colour **eye** of *amber* **brilliant copper**,
as the *appearance* **visage** of fire
round about *within it* **the housing**,
from the *appearance* **visage** of his loins
even upward,
and from the *appearance* **visage** of his loins
even downward,
I saw as it were the *appearance* **visage** of fire,
and it had *brightness* **brilliance** round about.
28 As the *appearance* **visage** of the bow
that is in the cloud in the day of *rain* **downpour**,
so was the *appearance* **visage** of the *brightness* **brilliance**
round about.
This was the *appearance* **visage** of the likeness
of the *glory* **honour** of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
THE CALL OF YECHEZQ EL
And when I saw *it*, I fell upon my face,
and I heard a voice of one that spake.
2 And he said unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
stand upon thy feet,
and I *will speak* **shall word** unto thee.
2 And the spirit entered into me
when he *spake* **worded** unto me,
and *set* **stood** me upon my feet,
that I heard him that spake unto me.

YECHEZQ EL 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and their rims
are full of eyes all around all four.
19 And when the live beings go,
the wheels go beside:
and when the live beings lift off the earth,
the wheels lift:
20 wherever the spirit goes, they go:
there the spirit goes, and the wheels lift alongside them:
for a spirit of the live being *is* in the wheels.
21 In their going, they go;
in their standing, they stand;
in their lifting from the earth,
the wheels lift alongside them:
for the spirit of the live being *is* in the wheels.
22 And the likeness of the expanse
on the heads of the live being
is as the eye of awesome crystal,
spread over their heads above.
23 And under the expanse
their wings *are* straight, woman toward sister:
each man two, covering *their bodies* here;
and each man two, covering their bodies there.
24 And as they go,
I hear the voice of their wings
as the voice of great waters;
as the voice of Shadday:
the voice of rushing
as the voice of a camp:
when they stand, they lower their wings.
25 And there *is* a voice
from the expanse over their heads
when they stand and lower their wings.
THE THRONE OF HONOR
26 And above the expanse over their heads,
the likeness of a throne
as the visage of a sapphire stone:
and on the likeness of the throne,
the likeness as the visage of a human from above.
27 And I see as the eye of brilliant copper
as the visage of fire all around the housing
— from the visage of his loins upward
and from the visage of his loins downward;
I see as the visage of fire and its brilliance all around:
28 as the visage of the bow in the cloud
in the day of downpour,
thus *is* the visage of the brilliance all around.
This *is* the visage of the likeness
of the honor of Yah Veh.
THE CALL OF YECHEZQ EL
And I see; and I fall on my face;
and I hear a voice of one speaking:
2 and he says to me, Son of humanity,
stand on your feet, and I word to you.
2 And he words to me,
and the spirit enters into me
and stands me on my feet:
and I hear him who speaks to me:

EZEKIEL 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 And he said unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
I send thee to the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
to a *rebellious nation* **rebelling goyim**
that hath rebelled against me:
they and their fathers
have *transgressed* **rebelled** against me,
even unto this very **same** day.
4 For they are *impudent children* **hard faced sons**
and *stiffhearted* **strong hearted**.
I do send thee unto them;
and thou shalt say unto them,
Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**.
5 And they, whether they *will* **shall** hear,
or whether they *will forbear* **shall desist**,
(for they are a rebellious house,)
yet shall know
that there hath been a prophet among them.
6 And thou, son of *man* **humanity**,
be not *afraid* **awed** of them,
neither be *afraid* **awed** of their words,
though *briers* **thistles** and *thorns* **prickles** be with thee,
and thou dost *dwelt* **settle** among scorpions:
be not *afraid* **awed** of their words,
nor be dismayed at their *looks* **faces**,
though they be a rebellious house.
7 And thou shalt *speak* **word** my words unto them,
whether they *will* **shall** hear,
or whether they *will forbear* **shall desist**:
for they are most rebellious.
8 But thou, son of *man* **humanity**,
hear what I say unto thee;
Be not thou rebellious like that rebellious house:
open **gape** thy mouth, and eat that I give thee.
9 And when I *looked* **saw**, behold,
an hand was sent unto me;
and, *lo* **behold**, a roll of a *book* **scroll** was therein;
10 And he spread it *before me* **at my face**;
and it was *written within* **inscribed on the face**
and *without* **on the back**:
and there was *written* **inscribed** therein lamentations,
and *mourning* **meditations**, and woe.

THE COMMISSION OF YECHEZQ EL

3 Moreover he said unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
eat that thou findest; eat this roll,
and go *speak* **word** unto the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

*roll: a small scroll

2 So I opened my mouth,
and he *caused me to eat* **fed me** that roll.
3 And he said unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
cause **feed** thy belly *to eat*,
and fill thy *bowels* **inwards** with this roll that I give thee.
Then did I eat it;
and it was in my mouth as honey for sweetness.
4 And he said unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
go, get thee unto the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and *speak* **word** with my words unto them.
Apocalypse 10:1—11
5 For thou art not sent to a people
of a *strange speech* **deep lip**
and of an *hard language* **heavy tongue**,
but to the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
6 Not to many people of a *strange speech* **deep lip**
and of an *hard language* **heavy tongue**,
whose words thou canst not *understand* **hear**.
Surely, had I sent thee to them,
they *would* **should** have hearkened unto thee.
7 But the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
will **willeth to** not hearken unto thee;
for they *will* **willed to** not hearken unto me:
for all the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
are *impudent* **strong foreheaded** and hardhearted.
8 Behold, I have *made* **given** thy face strong
against **alongside** their faces,
and thy forehead strong
against **alongside** their foreheads.
9 As an *adamant harder* **a brier stronger** than flint
have I *made* **given** thy forehead:
fear **awe** them not, neither be dismayed at their *looks* **faces**,
though they be a rebellious house.

YECHEZQ EL 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 and he says to me, Son of humanity,
I send you to the sons of Yisra El
— to a rebellious goyim who rebel against me:
they and their fathers rebel against me
to this same day:
4 for they, to whom I send you,
are hard faced sons, and strong hearted:
and say to them,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
5 And they,
whether they hear, or whether they desist,
— for they are a rebellious house,
yet know a prophet becomes among them.
6 And you, son of humanity,
neither awe them nor awe their words
— though thistles and prickles *are* with you,
and you, settle among scorpions:
neither awe their words nor dismay at their faces
for they *are* a rebellious house:
7 and you, word my words to them,
whether they hear or whether they desist:
for they *are* most rebellious.
8 And you, son of humanity,
hear what I say to you;
Become not rebellious as that rebellious house:
gape your mouth and eat what I give you.
9 And I see, and behold, a hand sent to me;
and behold, a roll of a scroll therein;
10 and he spreads it at my face;
and it *is* inscribed on the face and on the back:
and inscribed therein
are lamentations and meditations and woe.

THE COMMISSION OF YECHEZQ EL

3 He says to me, Son of humanity,
eat what you find; eat this roll*;
and go word to the house of Yisra El.
*roll: a small scroll
2 So I open my mouth and he feeds me that roll;
3 and he says to me,
Son of humanity, feed your belly;
and fill your inwards with this roll I give you.
— and I eat it;
and in my mouth, it *is* as honey for sweetness.

4 And he says to me, Son of humanity,
Go, get to the house of Yisra El,
and word with my words to them.
Apocalypse 10:1—11
5 For you are not sent to a people
of deep lip and of a heavy tongue
— but to the house of Yisra El:
6 not to many people
of a deep lip and of a heavy tongue
whose words you hear not.
Had I sent you to them,
they had hearkened to you.
7 But the house of Yisra El
wills to not hearken to you;
for they will to not hearken to me:
for all the house of Yisra El
is strong foreheaded and hardhearted.
8 Behold, I give your face strong alongside their faces
and your forehead strong alongside their foreheads:
9 as a brier stronger than flint I give your forehead:
neither awe them nor dismay at their faces,
though they be a rebellious house.

EZEKIEL 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 Moreover he said unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
all my words that I shall *speak* **word** unto thee
receive **take** in thine heart, and hear with thine ears.

11 And go, get thee to them of the *captivity* **exile**,
unto the *children* **sons** of thy people,
and *speak* **word** unto them, and *tell* **say to** them,
Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
whether they *will* **shall** hear,
or whether they *will* **forbear** **shall desist**.

12 Then the spirit *took* **bore** me *up*,
and I heard behind me a voice of a great *rushing* **quake**,
saying,
Blessed be the *glory* **honour** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
from his place.

13 I heard also the *noise* **voice** of the wings
of the *living creatures* **live beings**
that *touched one another* **kissed woman to sister**,
and the *noise* **voice** of the wheels
over against **alongside** them,
and a *noise* **voice** of a great *rushing* **quake**.

14 So the spirit lifted me *up*, and took me away,
and I went in bitterness, in the *heat* **fury** of my spirit;
but the hand of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
was strong upon **strengthened** me.

15 Then I came to them of the *captivity* **exile**
at *Telabib* **Tel Aviv**,
that *dwelt* **settled** by the river of *Chebar* **Kebar**,
and I *sat* **settled** where they *sat* **settled**,
and *remained* **settled** there
astonished among them seven days.

THE WARNING OF YAH VEH CONCERNING NOT WARNING

16 And **so be** it *came to pass* at the end of seven days,
that the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,

17 Son of *man* **humanity**,
I have *made* **given** thee a *watchman* **watcher**
unto the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
therefore hear the word at my mouth,
and *give* **enlighten** them *warning* from me.

18 *When I say* **In my saying** unto the wicked,
In dying, Thou shalt *surely* die;
and thou *givest* **enlightenest** him not *warning*,
nor *speakest* **wordest** to *warn* **enlighten** the wicked
from his wicked way,
to save his life **that he may live**;
the same wicked *man* shall die in his *iniquity* **perversity**;
but his blood *will* **shall I** *require* **seek** at thine hand.

19 Yet if thou *warn* **enlighten** the wicked,
and he turn not from his wickedness,
nor from his wicked way,
he shall die in his *iniquity* **perversity**;
but thou hast *delivered* **rescued** thy soul.

20 *Again*, *When a righteous man* **the just**
doth turn from his *righteousness* **justness**,
and *commit iniquity* **work wickedness**,
and I *lay* **give** a stumblingblock *before him* **at his face**,
he shall die:
because thou hast not *given* **enlightened** him *warning*,
he shall die in his sin,
and his *righteousness* **justness**
which he hath *done* **worked**
shall not be remembered;
but his blood *will* **shall I** *require* **seek** at thine hand.

21 Nevertheless
if thou *warn* **enlighten** the *righteous man* **just**,
that the *righteous* **just** sin not, and he doth not sin,
in living, he shall *surely* live,
because he is *warned* **enlightened**;
also thou hast *delivered* **rescued** thy soul.

YAH VEH REVEALS HIS HONOUR

22 And the hand of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
was there upon me;
and he said unto me, Arise, go forth into the *plain* **valley**,
and *I will* **shall** there *talk* **word** with thee.

23 Then I arose, and went forth into the *plain* **valley**:
and, behold,
the *glory* **honour** of the **LORD Yah Veh** stood there,
as the *glory* **honour** which I saw by the river of *Chebar* **Kebar**:
and I fell on my face.

YECHEZQ EL 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

10 He says to me, Son of humanity,
all my words I word to you
take in your heart and hear with your ears:
and go, get to them of the exile
— to the sons of your people
and word to them, and say to them,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh!
— whether they hear, or whether they desist.

12 And the spirit bears me,
and behind me, I hear a voice of a great quake,
Blessed — the honor of Yah Veh from his place!

13 And the voice of the wings of the live beings
kiss woman to sister;
and the voice of the wheels alongside them
and a voice of a great quake.

14 And the spirit lifts me, and takes me away;
and I go in bitterness, in the fury of my spirit;
and the hand of Yah Veh strengthens me.

15 And I come to them of the exile at Tel Aviv,
who settle by the river of Kebar,
and where they settle, I settle;
and settle there astonished among them seven days.

THE WARNING OF YAH VEH CONCERNING NOT WARNING

16 And so be it, at the end of seven days,
so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
Son of humanity,
I give you, a watcher to the house of Yisra El:
so hear the word at my mouth,
and enlighten them from me.

18 In my saying to the wicked,
In dying, you die;
and you neither enlighten him,
nor word to enlighten the wicked
from the wicked way he lives;
the same wicked dies in his perversity;
and I seek his blood at your hand:

19 and *if* you enlighten the wicked
and he neither turns from his wickedness
nor from his wicked way,
he dies in his perversity;
and you rescue your soul.

20 And when the just turns from his justness
and works wickedness,
and I give a stumblingblock at his face, he dies:
because you enlighten him not, he dies in his sin;
and the justness he worked *is* not remembered;
and I seek his blood at your hand.

21 And if you enlighten the just,
that the just sin not, and he sins not,
in living, he lives — because he enlightened;
and you rescue your soul.

YAH VEH REVEALS HIS HONOR

22 And so be the hand of Yah Veh on me,
and he says to me, Rise, go into the valley,
and there I word with you.

23 And I rise, and go into the valley:
and behold, the honor of Yah Veh stands there,
as the honor I saw by the river of Kebar:
and I fall on my face:

EZEKIEL 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

24 Then the spirit entered into me,
and set **stood** me upon my feet,
and spake **worded** with me, and said unto me,
Go, shut thyself within thine house.
25 But thou, O son of man **humanity**, behold,
they shall *put bands* **give ropes** upon thee,
and shall bind thee with them,
and thou shalt not go out among them:
26 And I *will shall* make thy tongue
cleave **stick to the roof of thy mouth** **palate**,
that thou shalt be *dumb* **muted**,
and shalt not be to them a **man** reprover:
for they are a rebellious house.
27 But when I *speak* **word** with thee,
I *will shall* open thy mouth,
and thou shalt say unto them,
Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
He that heareth, let him hear;
and he that *forbareth* **desisteth**, let him *forbear* **desist**:
for they are a rebellious house.

THE SIEGE OF YERU SHALEM

4 Thou also, son of man **humanity**,
take thee a **tile brick**,
and *lay it before thee* **give it at thy face**,
and *pourtray* **engrave** upon it the city,
even *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
2 And *lay* **give** siege against it,
and build a **fort** **battering tower** against it,
and *cast* **pour** a **mount** **mound** against it;
set **give** the camp also against it,
and set *battering* rams against it round about.
3 Moreover take thou unto thee an iron *pan* **griddle**,
and set **give** it for a wall of iron
between thee and **between** the city:
and set **establish** thy face against it,
and it shall be *besieged* **under siege**,
and thou shalt *lay* siege against it.
4 This shall be a sign to the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
Lie thou also upon thy left side,
and *lay* **set** the *iniquity* **perversity**
of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El** upon it:
according to the number of the days
that thou shalt lie upon it
thou shalt bear their *iniquity* **perversity**.
5 For I have *laid* **given** upon thee
the years of their *iniquity* **perversity**,
according to the number of the days,
three hundred and ninety days:
so shalt thou bear the *iniquity* **perversity**
of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
6 And when thou hast *accomplished* **concluded** them,
lie *again* **secondly** on thy right side,
and thou shalt bear the *iniquity* **perversity**
of the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** forty days:
I have *appointed* **given** thee
each **a day for a year**, a day for a year.
7 Therefore thou shalt *set* **establish** thy face
toward the siege of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and thine arm shall be *uncovered* **stripped**,
and thou shalt prophesy against it.
8 And, behold,
I *will lay* **bands shall give ropes** upon thee,
and thou shalt not turn thee
from *one side* to *another side*,
till thou hast *ended* **finished** the days of thy siege.
9 Take thou also unto thee wheat, and barley,
and beans, and lentiles, and millet, and *fitches* **spelt**,
and *put* **give** them in one *vessel* **instrument**,
and *make* **work** thee bread *thereof*,
according to the number of the days
that thou shalt lie upon thy side,
three hundred and ninety days shalt thou eat *thereof*.
10 And thy *meat* **food** which thou shalt eat
shall be by weight, twenty shekels a day:
from time to time shalt thou eat it.
11 Thou shalt drink water by measure,
the sixth *part* of an hin:
from time to time shalt thou drink.
12 And thou shalt eat it as barley *cakes* **ashcakes**,

YECHEZQ EL 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

24 and the spirit enters me
and stands me on my feet;
and words with me, and says to me,
Go, shut yourself within your house.
25 And you, O son of humanity,
behold, they give ropes on you
and bind you with them
that you go not among them:
26 and I stick your tongue to your palate
and mute you,
that you not become their man reprover:
for they are a rebellious house.
27 And I word with you, and I open your mouth,
and you say to them,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
He who hears, hear;
and he who desists, desist
— for they are a rebellious house.

THE SIEGE OF YERU SHALEM

4 And you, son of humanity,
take a brick and give it at your face;
and engrave thereon the city, Yeru Shalem:
2 and give siege against it
and build a battering tower against it
and pour a mound against it;
and give the camp against it,
and set rams against it all around:
3 and take an iron griddle to yourself;
and give it for a wall of iron
between you and between the city:
and establish your face against it;
and it becomes under siege
and you siege against it
— a sign to the house of Yisra El.
4 And lie on your left side
and set the perversity of the house of Yisra El thereon:
according to the number of the days you lie thereon
you bear their perversity:
5 and I — I give on you the years of their perversity
according to the number of the days
— three hundred and ninety days:
thus you bear the perversity of the house of Yisra El.
6 And when you conclude them,
lie secondly on your right side;
and bear the perversity of the house of Yah Hudah
forty days:
I give you a day for a year, a day for a year.
7 And establish your face
toward the siege of Yeru Shalem,
and strip your arm and prophesy against it.
8 And behold, I give ropes on you,
that you not turn from side to side,
until you finish the days of your siege.
9 And take to yourself wheat
and barley and beans and lentiles and millet and spelt
and give them in one instrument;
and work bread
according to the number of the days
you lie on your side
— three hundred and ninety days you eat.
10 And the food you eat
— twenty shekels a day by weight:
from time to time you eat.
11 And drink water by measure, the sixth of an hin:
from time to time you drink.
12 And eat it as barley ashcakes,

EZEKIEL 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and thou shalt bake it with dung **balls**
that cometh out of man **of human excrement**,
in their *sight* **eyes**.
13 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said,
Even thus shall the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
eat their *defiled* **fouled** bread among the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
whither I *will* **shall** drive them.
14 Then said I, *Ah Lord GOD Aha Adonay Yah Veh!*
behold, my soul hath not been *polluted* **fouled**:
for from my youth up even till now
have I not eaten of *that which dieth of itself* **a carcase**,
or is torn in pieces;
neither came there
abominable **stench of** flesh into my mouth.
15 Then he said unto me, *Lo See*,
I have given thee *cow's* **cow** dung
for *man's dung* **human dung balls**,
and thou shalt *prepare* **work** thy bread therewith.
16 Moreover he said unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
behold, I *will* **shall** break the *staff* **rod** of bread
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
and they shall eat bread by weight,
and with *care* **concern**;
and they shall drink water by measure,
and with astonishment:
17 That they may want bread and water,
and be astonished *one man* with *another* **brother**,
and *consume away* **dissolve** for their *iniquity* **perversity**.

THE DESOLATION OF YERU SHALEM

5 And thou, son of *man* **humanity**,
take thee a sharp *knife* **sword**, take thee a barber's razor,
and cause it to pass upon thine head and upon thy beard:
then take thee balances *to weigh* **for weights**,
and *divide the hair* **allot them**.
2 Thou shalt burn with *fire* **flame**
a third *part* in the midst of the city,
when the days of the siege are fulfilled:
and thou shalt take a third *part*,
and smite **round** about it with a *knife* **sword**:
and a third *part* thou shalt scatter in the wind;
and I *will* **shall** draw out a sword after them.
3 Thou shalt also take *thereof* a few in number,
and bind them in thy *skirts* **wings**.
4 Then take of them again,
and cast them into the midst of the fire,
and burn them in the fire;
for thereof shall a fire come forth
into all the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
5 Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
This is *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
I have set it
in the midst of the *nations* **goyim** and *countries* **lands**
that are round about her.
6 And she hath *changed* **rebelled against** my judgments
into wickedness more than the *nations* **goyim**,
and my statutes more than the *countries* **lands**
that are round about her:
for they have refused my judgments and my statutes,
they have not walked in them.
7 Therefore thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Because ye multiplied more than the *nations* **goyim**
that are round about you,
and have not walked in my statutes,
neither have *kept* **worked** my judgments,
neither have *done* **worked** according to the judgments
of the *nations* **goyim** *that are round about you*;
8 Therefore thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Behold, I, even I, am against thee,
and *will execute* **shall work** judgments
in the midst of thee
in the *sight* **eyes** of the *nations* **goyim**.
9 And I *will do* **shall work** in thee
that which I have not *done* **worked**,
and whereunto
I *will* **shall** not *do* **work** any more the like,
because of all thine *abominations* **abhorrences**.
10 Therefore the fathers shall eat the sons
in the midst of thee,
and the sons shall eat their fathers;

YECHEZQ EL 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and bake it with dung balls of human excrement
in their eyes.
13 And Yah Veh says,
Even thus the sons of Yisra El
eat their fouled bread among the goyim,
where I drive them.
14 And I say, Aha Adonay Yah Veh!
behold, my soul is not fouled:
for from my youth up even until now
I neither ate of a carcase or torn;
nor came stench of flesh into my mouth.
15 And he says to me, See,
I give you cow dung for human dung balls
and work your bread therewith.
16 And he says to me, Son of humanity,
behold, I break the rod of bread in Yeru Shalem:
and they eat bread by weight,
and with concern;
and they drink water by measure,
and with astonishment:
17 so that they lack bread and water
and astonish man with brother;
and dissolve for their perversity.

THE DESOLATION OF YERU SHALEM

5 And you, son of humanity,
take a sharp sword, take a razor of a barber,
and pass it over your head and over your beard:
and take balances of weights and allot them.
2 A third, burn with flame midst the city
when the days of the siege are fulfilled:
and take a third, and smite all around with a sword:
and a third, scatter in the wind;
and I draw a sword after them:
3 and take a few in number
and bind them in your wings:
4 and take of them again,
and cast them midst the fire and burn them in the fire;
and a fire comes forth into all the house of Yisra El.
5 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
This is Yeru Shalem:
I set it midst the goyim and lands all around her:
6 and she rebels against my judgments
in wickedness more than the goyim,
and my statutes more than the lands around her:
for they refuse my judgments and my statutes
and walk not in them.
7 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because you multiply
more than the goyim around you,
and neither walk in my statutes
nor work my judgments,
nor work according to the judgments
of the goyim around you;
8 so thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I — even I am against you,
and work judgments midst you
in the eyes of the goyim:
9 and I work in you what I neither worked
nor work any more the like
because of all your abhorrences.
10 So the fathers eat the sons midst you;
and the sons eat their fathers:

EZEKIEL 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and I will execute **shall work** judgments in thee,
and the whole *remnant* **survivors** of thee
will I scatter **shall I winnow** into all the winds.
11 Wherefore, as I live,
saith the Lord **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh;**
Surely,
because thou hast *defiled* **fouled** my *sanctuary* **holies**
with all thy *detestable things* **abominations**,
and with all thine *abominations* **abhorrences**,
therefore will **shall** I also diminish thee;
neither shall mine eye spare,
neither will I have any *pity* **shall I compassion**.
12 A third *part* of thee shall die with the pestilence,
and with famine shall they be *consumed* **finished off**
in the midst of thee:
and a third *part* shall fall by the sword round about thee;
and I will scatter **shall winnow** a third *part*
into all the winds,
and I will **shall** draw out a sword after them.
13 Thus shall *mine anger* **my wrath**
be *accomplished* **finished off**,
and I will **shall** cause my fury to rest upon them,
and I will be *comforted* **shall sigh**:
and they shall know that I *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
have *spoken it* **worded** in my zeal,
when I have *accomplished* **finished off** my fury in them.
14 Moreover I will make **shall give** thee
waste **for a parched area**,
and a reproach among the *nations* **goyim**
that are round about thee,
in the *sight eyes* of all that pass by.
15 So **be** it *shall be* a reproach and a *taunt* **revilement**,
an *instruction* **a discipline**
and an *astonishment* **a desolation**
unto the *nations* **goyim** *that are round about thee*,
when I shall execute **work** judgments in thee
in *anger* **wrath** and in *fury*
and in *furios rebukes* **reproofs of fury**.
I *the LORD* **Yah Veh** have *spoken it* **worded**.
16 When I shall send upon them
the evil arrows of famine,
which shall be for their *destruction* **ruin**,
and which I will **shall** send to *destroy* **ruin** you:
and I will **shall** increase the famine upon you,
and will **shall** break your *staff* **rod** of bread:
17 So will **shall** I send upon you
famine and evil *beasts* **live beings**,
and they shall bereave thee:
and pestilence and blood shall pass through thee;
and I will **shall** bring the sword upon thee.
I *the LORD* **Yah Veh** have *spoken it* **worded**.

A PROPHECY AGAINST THE MOUNTAINS OF YISRA EL

6 And the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
2 Son of *man* **humanity**,
set thy face toward the mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and prophesy against them,
3 And say, Ye mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
hear the word of *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**
to the mountains, and to the hills,
to the *rivers* **reservoirs**, and to the valleys;
Behold, I, *even I*, will **shall** bring a sword upon you,
and I will **shall** destroy your *high places* **bamahs**.
4 And your **sacrifice** altars shall be desolate,
and your *images* **sun icons** shall be broken:
and I will *cast down* **shall fell** your *slain men* **pierced**
before at the face of your idols.
5 And I will *lay* **shall give** the *dead* carcasses
of the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
before at the face of their idols;
and I will scatter **shall winnow** your bones
round about your **sacrifice** altars.
6 In all your *dwellingplaces* **sites**
the cities shall be *laid waste* **parched**,
and the *high places* **bamahs** shall be desolate;
that your **sacrifice** altars may be *laid waste* **parched**
and *made desolate* **have guilted**,
and your idols may be broken and cease **shabbathize**,

YECHEZQ EL 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and I work judgments in you,
and I winnow all your survivors into all the winds.
11 So — I live
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
because you foul my holies
with all your abominations
and with all your abhorrences,
I also diminish you;
neither my eye spares nor I compassion.
12 A third of you die with the pestilence
— finished off with famine in your midst;
and a third fall by the sword all around you;
and a third I winnow into all the winds:
and I draw out a sword after them.
13 Thus I finish off my wrath
and I rest my fury on them, and sigh:
and they know that I Yah Veh word in my zeal
when I finish off my fury in them.
14 I give you for a parched area;
and for a reproach among the goyim around you
in the eyes of all who pass by:
15 and so be it, a reproach and a revilement,
a discipline and a desolation
to the goyim around you,
when I work judgments in you
in wrath and in fury and in reproofs of fury.
I Yah Veh have worded.
16 I send on them the evil arrows of famine
being for their ruin
— which I send to ruin you:
and I increase the famine on you
and break your rod of bread:
17 thus I send famine on you;
and evil live beings bereave you;
and pestilence and blood passes through you;
and I bring the sword on you.
I Yah Veh have worded.

A PROPHECY AGAINST THE MOUNTAINS OF YISRA EL

6 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
set your face toward the mountains of Yisra El
and prophesy against them,
3 and say, Mountains of Yisra El,
hear the word of Adonay Yah Veh;
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh
to the mountains and to the hills
to the reservoirs and to the valleys:
Behold, I — I bring a sword on you
and I destroy your bamahs:
4 and desolate your sacrifice altars
and break your sun icons
and I fell your pierced at the face of your idols:
5 and I give the carcasses of the sons of Yisra El
at the face of their idols;
and I winnow your bones
all around your sacrifice altars.
6 In all your sites the cities parch
and the bamahs desolate;
and your sacrifice altars parch and guilt
and your idols break and shabbathize

EZEKIEL 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and your *images* **sun icons** may be cut down,
and your works may be *abolished* **erased**.
7 And the *slain* **pierced** shall fall in the midst of you,
and ye shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.
8 Yet *will I leave a remnant* **shall I let some remain**,
that ye may have
some that shall escape **escapees** of the sword
among the *nations* **goyim**,
when ye shall be *scattered* **winnowed**
through the *countries* **lands**.
9 And *they that escape of you* **the escapees**
shall remember me among the *nations* **goyim**
whither they shall be *carried captives* **captured**,
because I am broken with their whorish heart,
which hath *departed* **turned aside** from me,
and with their eyes,
which *go a whoring* **whore** after their idols:
and they shall lothe *themselves*
for at the face of the evils
which they have *committed* **worked**
in all their *abominations* **abhorrences**.
10 And they shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*,
and that I have not *said in vain* **worded gratuitously**
that I *would do* **should work** this evil unto them.
11 Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Smite with thine *hand* **palm**, and stamp with thy foot,
and say, *Alas* **Ach!**
for all the evil *abominations* **abhorrences**
of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El!**
for they shall fall by the sword,
by the famine, and by the pestilence.
12 He that is far off shall die of the pestilence;
and he that is near shall fall by the sword;
and he that *remaineth* **surviveth**
and is *besieged* **under guard**
shall die by the famine:
thus *will I accomplish* **shall I finish off** my fury upon them.
13 Then shall ye know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*,
when their *slain men* **pierced** shall be among their idols
round about their *sacrifice* altars,
upon every high hill, in all the tops of the mountains,
and under every green tree, and under every thick oak,
the place where they
did offer sweet savour **gave a scent of rest**
to all their idols.
14 So *will* **shall I stretch out** **spread** my hand upon them,
and *make* **give** the land desolate,
yea, more *desolate* **desolation**
than the wilderness toward *Diblath* **Riblah**,
in all their *habitations* **sites**:
and they shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.

THE APPROACH OF THE END

7 Moreover
the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came unto me, saying,
2 Also, thou son of *man* **humanity**,
thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*
unto the *land soil of Israel* **Yisra El**;
An end,
the end is come upon the *four corners* **wings** of the land.
3 Now is the end *come* upon thee,
and I *will* **shall** send *mine anger* **my wrath** upon thee,
and *will* **shall** judge thee according to thy ways,
and *will recompense* **shall give** upon thee
all thine *abominations* **abhorrences**.
4 And mine eye shall not spare thee,
neither *will I have pity* **shall I compassion**:
but I *will recompense* **shall give** thy ways upon thee,
and thine *abominations* **abhorrences**
shall be in the midst of thee:
and ye shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.
5 Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*
An evil, *an only* **one** evil, behold, is come.
6 An end is come, the end is come:
it *watcheth* **waketh** for thee; behold, it is come.
7 The *morning* **corona** is come unto thee,
O thou that *dwellest* **settlest** in the land:
the time is come, the day of *trouble* **confusion** is near,
and not the *sounding again* **shouting** of the mountains.
8 Now *will* **shall I shortly** **soon** pour out my fury upon thee,

YECHEZQ EL 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and your sun icons cut down
and your works erase:
7 and the pierced fall in your midst
and you know I — Yah Veh.
8 Yet some remain
— escapees of the sword among the goyim
as you are winnowed through the lands:
9 and the escapees among the goyim
remember me where they are captured,
because I am broken with their whorish heart
who turn aside from me;
and with their eyes
which whore after their idols:
and they loathe at the face of the evils they worked
in all their abhorrences;
10 and they know I — Yah Veh:
and that I word not gratuitously
to work this evil to them.
11 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Smite with your palm and stamp with your foot,
and say, Ach!
for all the evil abhorrences of the house of Yisra El!
for they fall by the sword
by the famine and by the pestilence:
12 he who is afar dies of the pestilence;
and he who is near falls by the sword;
and he who survives and is under guard
dies by the famine:
thus I finish off my fury on them:
13 and you know I — Yah Veh,
when their pierced become among their idols
all around their sacrifice altars
on every high hill
in all the tops of the mountains
and under every green tree and under every thick oak
— in all the places
they give a scent of rest to all their idols.
14 Thus I spread my hand on them
and give the land a desolation
— yes, more desolation
than the wilderness toward Riblah in all their sites:
and they know I — Yah Veh.

THE APPROACH OF THE END

7 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 And you son of humanity,
thus says Adonay Yah Veh to the soil of Yisra El;
An end —
the end arrives on the four wings of the land:
3 now the end *is* on you;
and I send my wrath on you
and judge you according to your ways,
and give all your abhorrences on you.
4 And neither my eye spares you nor I compassion:
and I give your ways on you,
for your abhorrences are midst you:
and you know I — Yah Veh.
5 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
An evil, one evil, behold, has arrived;
6 an end has arrived, the end arrives;
it wakens for you; behold, it arrives:
the corona arrives to you,
7 O you who settle in the land:
the time arrives; the day of confusion is near,
and not the shouting of the mountains.
8 Now, soon I pour my fury on you,

EZEKIEL 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and accomplish mine anger **finish off my wrath**
upon thee:
and I *will shall* judge thee according to thy ways,
and *will recompense shall give* thee
for all thine *abominations* **abhorrences**.
9 And mine eye shall not spare,
neither *will I have pity shall I compassion*:
I *will recompense shall give* thee according to thy ways
and thine *abominations* **abhorrences**
that are in the midst of thee;
and ye shall know
that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh* that smiteth.
10 Behold the day, behold, it is come:
the *morning* **corona** is gone forth;
the rod hath blossomed, *pride* **arrogance** hath budded.
11 Violence is risen up into a rod of wickedness:
none of them shall *remain*, nor of their multitude,
nor of any of *theirs* **abundance**:
neither shall there be *wailing* **lamentation** for them.
12 The time is come, the day *draweth near* **toucheth**:
let not the *buyer rejoice* **chatteler cheer**,
nor the seller mourn:
for *wrath* **fuming** is upon all the multitude *thereof*.
13 For the seller shall not return to that which is sold,
although
they were yet alive **their life was among the living**:
for the vision is touching the whole multitude *thereof*,
which shall not return;
neither shall *any* **man** strengthen himself
in the *iniquity* **perversity** of his life.
14 They have *blown* **blast** the *trumpet* **blast**,
even to *make all ready* **prepare**;
but none goeth to the *battle* **war**:
for my *wrath* **fuming** is upon all the multitude *thereof*.
15 The sword is without,
and the pestilence and the famine within **the house**:
he that is in the field shall die with the sword;
and he that is in the city,
famine and pestilence shall devour him.
16 But *they that escape of them* **the escapees**
shall escape,
and shall be on the mountains like doves of the valleys,
all of them *mourning* **roaring**,
every *one* **man** for his *iniquity* **perversity**.
17 All hands shall *be feeble* **slacken**,
and all knees shall *be weak as water* **go watery**.
18 They shall *also gird themselves* with *sackcloth* **saq**,
and *horror* **trembling** shall cover them;
and shame shall be upon all faces,
and baldness upon all their heads.
19 They shall cast their silver in the *streets* **outways**,
and their gold shall be *removed* **excluded**:
their silver and their gold
shall not be able to *deliver* **rescue** them
in the day of the wrath of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
they shall not satisfy their souls,
neither fill their *bowels* **inwards**:
because it is the stumblingblock
of their *iniquity* **perversity**.
20 As for the *beauty* **splendour** of his ornament,
he set it in *majesty* **pomp**:
but they *made* **worked** the images
of their *abominations* **abhorrences**
and of their *detestable things* **abominations** therein:
therefore have I *set it far* **given to exclude it** from them.
21 And I *will shall* give it
into the hands of the strangers for a *prey* **plunder**,
and to the wicked of the earth for a spoil;
and they shall *pollute* **profane** it.
22 My face *will shall* I turn also from them,
and they shall *pollute* **profane** my *secret place* **hideout**:
for the *robbers* **tyrants** shall enter into it,
and *defile* **profane** it.
23 Make **Work** a chain:
for the land is *full* **filled**
of *bloody crimes* **judgments of blood**,
and the city is *full* **filled** of violence.
24 Wherefore
I *will shall* bring the *worst* **evil** of the *heathen* **goyim**,

YECHEZQ EL 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and finish off my wrath on you:
and I judge you according to your ways,
and give you for all your abhorrences.
9 And neither my eye spares, nor I compassion:
I give you according to your ways
and your abhorrences midst you;
and you know I — Yah Veh who smites.
10 Behold the day; behold, arrives:
the corona goes forth;
the rod blossoms; arrogance buds:
violence rises into a rod of wickedness:
neither one of them nor of their multitude
nor of any of abundance;
nor any lamentation for them.
11 The time arrives; the day touches;
neither the chatteler cheers
nor the seller mourn:
for fuming is on all the multitude.
12 For the seller returns not to what is sold
although their life is among the living:
for the vision touches the whole multitude;
not to return;
and man strengthens not himself
by the perversity of his life.
13
14 They blast the blast to prepare
and no one goes to the war;
for my fuming is on all the multitude:
the sword is outside
15 and the pestilence and the famine inside the house:
he who is in the field
dies with the sword;
and he who is in the city
famine and pestilence devour him:
16 and the escapees escape,
and are on the mountains as doves of the valleys
— all of them roaring
— every man for his perversity:
17 all hands slacken and all knees go watery:
18 they gird with saq and trembling covers them;
and shame is on all faces
and baldness on all their heads.
19 They cast their silver in the outways
and their gold becomes excluded:
their silver and their gold cannot rescue them
in the day of the wrath of Yah Veh:
they neither satisfy their souls
nor fill their inwards:
because it becomes
the stumblingblock of their perversity.
20 As for the splendor of his ornament,
he sets it in pomp:
and they work the images of their abhorrences
and of their abominations therein:
so I give to exclude it from them:
21 and I give it into the hands of the strangers
for a plunder;
and to the wicked of the earth
for a spoil;
and they profane it:
22 and I turn my face from them
and they profane my hideout;
for the tyrants enter it and profane it.
23 Work a chain:
for the land fills with judgments of blood,
and the city fills with violence.
24 And I bring the evil of the goyim

EZEKIEL 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they shall possess their houses:
I will **shall** also make the pomp of the strong
to cease **shabbathize**;
and their *holy places* **hallowed**
shall be *defiled* **profaned**.
25 *Destruction Severence* cometh;
and they shall seek *peace* **shalom**,
and there shall be none.
26 *Mischief Calamity* shall come upon *mischief* **calamity**,
and *rumour* **report** shall be upon *rumour* **report**;
then shall they seek a vision of the prophet;
but the *law* **torah** shall *perish* **destruct** from the priest,
and counsel from the *ancients* **elders**.
27 The *king* **sovereign** shall mourn,
and the *prince* **hierarch**
shall be *clothed* **enrobed** with desolation,
and the hands of the people of the land
shall be *troubled* **terrify**:
I will *do* **shall work** unto them after their way,
and *according to* **after** their *deserts* **judgments**
will **shall** I judge them;
and they shall know that *I am the* **LORD I** — Yah Veh.

THE FIGURINE OF JEALOUSY

8 And **so be** it came to pass in the sixth year,
in the sixth *month*, in the fifth *day* of the month,
as I sat in mine house,
and the elders of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
sat *before me* **at my face**,
that the hand of *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**
fell there upon me.
2 Then I *beheld* **saw**,
and *lo* **behold** a likeness as the *appearance* **visage** of fire:
from the *appearance* **visage** of his loins even downward,
fire;
and from his loins even upward,
as the *appearance* **visage** of *brightness* **brilliance**,
as the *colour* **eye** of *amber* **brilliant copper**.
Apocalypse 1:12—16
3 And he *put forth* **spread** the *form* **pattern** of an hand,
and took me by a *lock* **tassel** of mine head;
and the spirit lifted me up
between the earth and **between** the *heaven* **heavens**,
and brought me in the visions of *God* **Elohim**
to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
to the *door* **opening** of the inner *gate* **portal**
that *looketh toward the north* **faceth northward**;
where was the seat of the *image* **figurine** of jealousy,
which provoketh to jealousy.
4 And, behold,
the *glory* **honour** of *the God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
was there,
according to the *vision* **visage**
that I saw in the *plain* **valley**.
5 Then said he unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
lift up thine eyes *now* **I beseech**,
the way *toward the north* **northward**.
So I lifted up mine eyes
the way *toward the north* **northward**,
and behold northward
at the *gate* **portal** of the *sacrifice* **altar**
this *image* **figurine** of jealousy in the entry.
6 He said *furthermore* unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
seest thou what they *do* **work**?
even the great abominations **abhorrences**
that the house of *Israel* **committeth** **Yisra El worketh** here,
that I should go far *off* **remove** from my *sanctuary* **holies**?
but turn thee yet again,
and thou shalt see greater abominations.
7 And he brought me to the *door* **portal** of the court;
and when I *looked* **saw**, behold a **one** hole in the wall.
8 Then said he unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
dig *now* **I beseech**, in the wall:
and when I had digged in the wall,
behold a *door* **one opening**.
9 And he said unto me, *Go in* **Enter**,
and *behold* **see**
the *wicked abominations* **evil abhorrences**
that they *do* **work** here.
10 So I *went in* **entered** and saw; and behold

YECHEZQ EL 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to possess their houses:
I also shabbathize the pomp of the strong;
to profane their hallowed.
25 Severence arrives; and they seek shalom,
and there *is* none.
26 Calamity on calamity arrives;
and report on report:
and they seek a vision of the prophet;
and the torah destructs from the priest
and counsel from the elders.
27 The sovereign mourns
and the hierarch enrobes with desolation
and the hands of the people of the land terrify:
I work to them after their way,
and judge them after their judgments;
and they know I — Yah Veh.

THE FIGURINE OF JEALOUSY

8 And so be it, in the sixth year,
in the sixth, in the fifth of the month,
I sit in my house
and the elders of Yah Hudah sit at my face
and the hand of Adonay Yah Veh falls on me there.
2 Then I see, and behold,
a likeness as the visage of fire:
from the visage of his loins even downward — fire;
and from his loins and upward
as the visage of brilliance
— as the eye of brilliant copper.
Apocalypse 1:12 — 16
3 And he spreads the pattern of a hand
and takes me by a tassel of my head;
and the spirit lifts me
between the earth and between the heavens,
and in visions of Elohim,
brings me to Yeru Shalem
to the opening of the inner portal facing northward;
to the seat of the figurine of jealousy
which provokes to jealousy.
4 And behold,
the honor of Elohim of Yisra El
is according to the visage I saw in the valley.
5 And he says to me, Son of humanity,
lift your eyes, I beseech, the way northward.
And I lift my eyes the way northward, and behold,
northward at the portal of the sacrifice altar
this figurine of jealousy in the entry.
6 He says to me,
Son of humanity, see you what they work?
— the great abhorrences
the house of Yisra El works here
to remove afar from my holies?
And turn yet again,
and see greater abominations.
7 — and he brings me to the portal of the court;
and I see, behold one hole in the wall.
8 And he says to me, Son of humanity,
dig, I beseech, in the wall!
— and I dig in the wall, and behold, one opening.
9 And he says to me, Enter,
and see the evil abhorrences they work here.
10 — and I enter and see; and behold,

EZEKIEL 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

every form **pattern** of creeping things **creepers**,
and abominable **beasts animals**,
and all the idols of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
pourtrayed **engraved** upon the wall
round about, **round about**.

11 And there stood *before* **at the face of** them
seventy men
of the *ancients* **elders** of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and in the midst of them
stood *Jaazaniah* **Yaazan Yah** the son of Shaphan,
with every man his censer in his hand;
and a *thick* **voluminous** cloud of incense
went up **ascended**.

12 Then said he unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
hast thou seen what the *ancients* **elders**
of the house of *Israel* **do Yisra El work** in the dark,
every man in the chambers of his imagery?
for they say, *The LORD* **Yah Veh** seeth us not;
the LORD **Yah Veh** hath forsaken the earth.

13 He said also unto me, Turn thee yet again,
and thou shalt see greater *abominations* **abhorrences**
that they *do* **work**.
14 Then he brought me
to the *door* **opening of the gate portal**
of the *LORD'S* house **of Yah Veh**
which was *toward the north* **northward**; and, behold,
there sat women weeping for Tammuz.

15 Then said he unto me,
Hast thou seen *this*, O son of *man* **humanity**?
turn thee yet again, and thou shalt see
greater *abominations* **abhorrences** than these.

16 And he brought me into the inner court
of the *LORD'S* house **of Yah Veh**, and, behold,
at the *door* **portal**
of the *temple* **manse of the LORD Yah Veh**,
between the porch and the **sacrifice** altar,
were about five and twenty men,
with their backs
toward the *temple* **manse of the LORD Yah Veh**,
and their faces *toward the east* **eastward**;
and they *worshipped* **prostrated to** the sun
toward the east **eastward**.

17 Then he said unto me,
Hast thou seen *this*, O son of *man* **humanity**?
Is it a *light thing* **trifling** to the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
that they *commit* **work** the *abominations* **abhorrences**
which they *commit* **work** here?
for they have filled the land with violence,
and have returned to *provoke* **vex** me to anger:
and, *lo* **behold**,

they *put* **spread** the *branch* **twig** to their *nose* **nostrils**.
18 Therefore *will* **shall** I also *deal* **work** in fury:
mine eye shall not spare,
neither *will* I have *pity* **shall I compassion**:
and though they *cry* **call out** in mine ears
with a *loud* **great** voice, yet *will* **shall** I not hear them.

SLAUGHTER OF IDOLATERS

9 He *cried* **called out** also in mine ears
with a *loud* **great** voice, saying,
Cause them that have charge over the city
to *draw near* **approach**,
even every man
with his *destroying weapon* **instrument of ruin**
in his hand.
2 And, behold, six men came
from the way of the *higher gate* **most high portal**,
which *lieth toward the north* **faceth northward**,
and every man
a *slaughter weapon* **disintegrator instrument** in his hand;
and one man among them
was *clothed* **enrobed** with linen,
with a *writer's inkhorn* **scribe's inkwell**
by *upon* his *side* **loins**:
and they *went in* **entered**,
and stood beside the *brasen* **copper sacrifice** altar.

3 And the *glory* **honour**
of the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
was *gone up* **ascended** from the cherub,
whereupon he was, to the threshold of the house.

YECHEZQ EL 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

every pattern of creepers and abominable animals
and all the idols of the house of Yisra El
engraved on the wall all around — all around.

11 And standing there at their face
seventy men of the elders of the house of Yisra El,
and Yaazan Yah the son of Shaphan
stands midst them;
every man with his censer in his hand;
and a voluminous cloud of incense ascends.

12 And says he to me, Son of humanity,
you see what the elders of the house of Yisra El
work in the dark
— every man in the chambers of his imagery?
for they say, Yah Veh sees us not;
Yah Veh forsook the earth.

13 And he says to me, Turn yet again,
and see greater abhorrences they work.
14 — and he brings me to the opening
of the portal of the house of Yah Veh northward;
and behold,
women sitting and weeping for Tammuz.

15 And he says to me,
See you, O son of humanity?
turn yet again
and see greater abhorrences than these.

16 And he brings me into the inner court
of the house of Yah Veh, and behold,
at the portal of the manse of Yah Veh
between the porch and the sacrifice altar
— about twenty—five men
with their backs toward the manse of Yah Veh
and their faces eastward;
and they prostrate eastward toward the sun.

17 And he says to me,
See you, O son of humanity?
Is it trifling to the house of Yah Hudah
to work the abhorrences they work here?
For they fill the land with violence
and return to vex me:
and behold, they spread the twig to their nostrils.
18 So I also work in fury:
neither my eye spares, nor I compassion:
and though they call out in my ears
with a great voice, yet I hear them not.

SLAUGHTER OF IDOLATERS

9 And he calls out in my ears with a great voice,
saying,
Have them in charge over the city to approach,
even every man
with his instrument of ruin in his hand.

2 And behold,
six men come from the way of the most high portal
facing northward;
and every man
has a disintegrator instrument in his hand;
and one man among them is enrobed with linen
with an inkwell of a scribe on his loins:
and they enter
and stand beside the copper sacrifice altar:
3 and the honor of Elohim of Yisra El
ascends from the cherub on whom it is
to the threshold of the house.

EZEKIEL 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

And he called to the man *clothed enrobed* with linen,
which had the *writer's inkhorn scribe's inkwell*
by **upon** his *side loins*;
4 And the **LORD Yah Veh** said unto him,
Go **Pass** through the midst of the city,
through the midst of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and set **tattoo** a *mark tattoo*
upon the foreheads of the men
that sigh and that cry **shriek**
for all the *abominations* **abhorrences**
that be *done* **worked** in the midst *thereof*.
5 And to the others he said in mine *hearing* **ears**,
Go **Pass** ye after him through the city, and smite:
let not your eye spare,
neither have ye *pity* **compassion**:
6 *Slay utterly* **Slaughter to ruin**
old aged and *young youth*,
both maids and virgins, and *little children* **toddlers**,
and women:
but come not near any man
upon whom is the *mark* **tattoo**;
and begin at my *sanctuary* **holies**.
Then they began at the *ancient* **aged** men
which were *before* **at the face** of the house.
7 And he said unto them, *Defile* **Foul** the house,
and fill the courts with the *slain* **pierced**: go ye *forth*.
And they went *forth*, and *slew* **smote** in the city.
8 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
while they were *slaying* **smiting** them,
and I was *left* **survived**,
that I fell upon my face, and cried, and said,
Ah Lord GOD **Aha Adonay Yah Veh!**
wilt shalt thou *destroy* **ruin**
all the *residue* **survivors** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
in thy pouring out of thy fury
upon *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**?
9 Then said he unto me,
The *iniquity* **perversity**
of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El** and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
is *exceeding* **mighty** great,
and the land is *full* **filled** of blood,
and the city *full* **filled** of *perverseness* **distortion**:
for they say, *The LORD Yah Veh* hath forsaken the earth,
and *the LORD Yah Veh* seeth not.
10 And as for me also, mine eye shall not spare,
neither *will I have pity* **shall I compassion**,
but I will recompense **I shall give** their way
upon their head.
11 And, behold, the man *clothed enrobed* with linen,
which had the *inkhorn by* **inkwell upon** his *side* **loins**,
reported the matter **returned word**, saying,
I have *done* **worked**
as thou hast *commanded* **misvahed** me.
THE HONOUR OF YAH VEH FILLS THE HOUSE
10 Then I *looked* **saw**, and, behold,
in the *firmament* **expanse**
that was above the head of the *cherubims* **cherubim**
there appeared over them as it were a sapphire stone,
as the *appearance* **visage** of the likeness of a throne.
2 And he *spake* **said** unto the man clothed with linen,
and said,
Go *in* **Enter** between the wheels, *even* under the cherub,
and fill thine *hand* **fist** with coals of fire
from between the *cherubims* **cherubim**,
and scatter them over the city.
And he *went in* **entered** in my *sight* **eyes**.
3 Now the *cherubims* **cherubim**
stood on the right side of the house,
when the man *went in* **entered**;
and the cloud filled the inner court.
4 Then the *glory* **honour** of the **LORD Yah Veh**
went up **lifted** from the cherub,
and *stood* over the threshold of the house;
and the house was filled with the cloud,
and the court was *full* **filled** of the *brightness* **brilliance**
of the *LORD'S* *glory* **honour** of **Yah Veh**.
5 And the *sound* **voice**
of the *cherubims'* **cherubim's** wings
was heard *even* to the outer court,

YECHEZQ EL 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And he calls to the man enrobed with linen
with the inkwell of the scribe on his loins;
4 and Yah Veh says to him,
Pass through midst the city
— through midst Yeru Shalem;
and tattoo a tattoo on the foreheads
of the men who sigh and shriek
for all the abhorrences worked in our midst.
5 And to the others he says in my ears,
Pass after him through the city, and smite:
neither your eye spare nor compassion:
6 slaughter to ruin aged and youth
and virgin and toddler and women:
but come not near any man
on whom is the tattoo;
and begin at my holies.
— and they begin at the aged men
at the face of the house.
7 And he says to them, Foul the house,
and fill the courts with the pierced: Go!
— and they go and smite in the city.
8 And so be it, as they smite them,
and I — I survive,
I fall on my face, and cry, and say,
Aha! Adonay Yah Veh!
Ruin you all the survivors of Yisra El
in your pouring from your fury
on Yeru Shalem?
9 And he says to me,
The perversity of the house of Yisra El and Yah Hudah
is mighty mighty great,
and the land fills with blood:
and the city fills with distortion:
for they say, Yah Veh forsakes the earth,
and Yah Veh sees not.
10 And I also,
neither my eye spares, nor I compassion:
I give their way on their head.
11 And behold, the man enrobed with linen
with the inkwell on his loins
returns word, saying,
I worked as you misvahed me.
THE HONOR OF YAH VEH FILLS THE HOUSE
10 And I see, and behold,
in the expanse above the head of the cherubim
there appears over them as a sapphire stone
— as the visage of the likeness of a throne:
2 and he says to the man clothed with linen,
saying, Enter between the wheels under the cherub
and fill your fist with coals of fire
from between the cherubim
and scatter them over the city.
— and he enters at my eyes.
3 And the cherubim stand
at the right side of the house
as the man enters;
and the cloud fills the inner court:
4 and the honor of Yah Veh lifts from the cherub
over the threshold of the house:
and the house fills with the cloud;
and the court fills
5 from the brilliance of the honor of Yah Veh:
and the voice of the wings of the cherubim
is heard to the outer court

EZEKIEL 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

as the voice of the Almighty God El Shadday
when he *speaketh* **wordeth**.
6 And **so be** it came to pass,
that when he had *commanded* **misvahed**
the man *clothed* **enrobed** with linen, saying,
Take fire from between the wheels,
from between the *cherubims* **cherubim**;
then he *went in* **entered**, and stood beside the wheels.
7 And *one* cherub *stretched forth* **spread** his hand
from between the *cherubims* **cherubim**
unto the fire that was between the *cherubims* **cherubim**,
and *took* **lifted** thereof,
and *put* **gave** it into the hands **fists**
of *him* **the one** that was *clothed* **enrobed** with linen:
who took it, and went out.
8 And there *appeared* **was seen**
in the *cherubims* **cherubim**
the *form* **pattern** of a *man's* **human** hand
under their wings.
THE WHEEL MIDST A WHEEL
9 And when I *looked* **saw**, behold
the four wheels *by* **beside** the *cherubims* **cherubim**,
one wheel *by* **beside** one cherub,
and *another* **one** wheel *by* **another** **beside one** cherub:
and the *appearance* **visage** of the wheels
was as the *colour* **eye** of a beryl stone.
10 And as for their *appearances* **visages**,
they four had one likeness,
as if a wheel had been in the midst of a wheel.
11 When they went,
they went upon their four *sides* **quarters**;
they turned not as they went,
but to the place whither the head *looked* **faced**
they *followed* **went after** it;
they turned not as they went.
12 And their whole *body* **flesh**, and their backs,
and their hands, and their wings, and the wheels,
were full of eyes round about,
even the wheels that they four had.
13 As for the wheels,
it was *cried* **called out** unto them in *my* **hearing** **ears**,
O wheel.
14 And *every* **each** one had four faces:
the first face was the face of a cherub,
and the second face was the face of a *man* **human**,
and the third the face of a lion,
and the fourth the face of an eagle.
15 And the *cherubims* **cherubim** were lifted up.
This is the *living creature* **live being**
that I saw by the river of *Chebar* **Kebar**.
16 And when the *cherubims* **cherubim** went,
the wheels went *by* **beside** them:
and when the *cherubims* **cherubim** lifted up their wings
to *mount up* **lift** from the earth,
the *same* wheels also turned not from beside them.
17 When they stood, these stood;
and when they were lifted up,
these lifted up *themselves* **also**:
for the spirit of the *living creature* **live being** was in them.
18 Then the *glory* **honour** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
departed from off the threshold of the house,
and stood over the *cherubims* **cherubim**.
19 And the *cherubims* **cherubim** lifted up their wings,
and *mounted* **lifted up** from the earth in *my* **sight** **eyes**:
when they went out, the wheels also were beside them,
and *every one* **each** stood
at the *door* **opening** of the east *gate* **portal**
of the *LORD'S* house of **Yah Veh**;
and the *glory* **honour** of the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
was over them above.
20 This is the *living creature* **live being** that I saw
under the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
by the river of *Chebar* **Kebar**;
and I knew that they were the *cherubims* **cherubim**.
21 *Every* **Four**, *one* **each** had four faces *apiece*,
and *every one* **each** four wings;
and the likeness of the hands of a *man* **human**
was under their wings.
22 And the likeness of their faces

YECHEZQ EL 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— as the voice of El Shadday when he words.

6 And so be it,
he misvahs the man enrobed with linen, saying,
Take fire from between the wheels
— from between the cherubim;
and he enters, and stands beside the wheels:
7 and a cherub spreads his hand
from between the cherubim
to the fire between the cherubim,
and lifts,
and gives it into the fists
of the one enrobed with linen:
who takes it and goes.
8 And there in the cherubim
the pattern of a human hand is seen under their wings.
THE WHEEL MIDST A WHEEL
9 And I see, and behold,
the four wheels beside the cherubim
— one wheel beside one cherub
and one wheel beside one cherub:
and the visage of the wheels
10 *is* as the eye of a beryl stone:
and as for their visages,
they four *each* **have** one likeness,
as if a wheel being midst a wheel:
11 in going, they go on their four quarters;
they turn not as they go,
but to the place where the head faces, they go after;
they turn not as they go.
12 And their whole flesh and their backs,
and their hands and their wings and the wheels
are full of eyes all around.
13 Their wheels *are* **four**:
and in my ears, one calls to the wheels,
O wheel!
14 And each one *has* **four** faces:
the first face, the face of a cherub;
and the second face, the face of a human;
and the third, the face of a lion;
and the fourth, the face of an eagle:
15 and the cherubim lift.
This is the live being I saw by the river of Kebar.
16 And when the cherubim go
the wheels go beside them:
and when the cherubim lift their wings
to lift from the earth,
the wheels, also turn not from beside them.
17 When they stand, these stand;
and when they lift, these lift:
because of the spirit of the live being within.
18 And the honor of Yah Veh
departs from off the threshold of the house,
and stands over the cherubim:
19 and the cherubim lift their wings,
and lift off from the earth in my eyes:
when they go, the wheels *are* also beside them;
and each stands at the opening of the east portal
of the house of Yah Veh:
and the honor of Elohim of Yisra El
is over above them.
20 This is the live being I saw under Elohim of Yisra El
by the river of Kebar;
and I know they *are* the cherubim:
21 four — each four faces and each four wings;
and the likeness of the hands of a human
under their wings;
22 and the likeness of their faces

EZEKIEL 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

was the same faces
which I saw by the river of *Chebar* **Kebar**,
their *appearances* **visages** and themselves:
they went *every one straight* **each man face** forward.

JUDGMENT OF MEN WHO FABRICATE MISCHIEF

11 Moreover the spirit lifted me up,
and brought me unto the east **gate portal**
of the *LORD'S* house of **Yah Veh**,
which *looketh* **faceth** eastward:
and behold at the *door* **opening** of the **gate portal**
five and twenty men;
among whom I saw
Jaazaniah **Yaazan Yah** the son of *Azur* **Azzur**,
and *Pelatia* **Yah** the son of *Benaiah* **Bena Yah**,
princes **governors** of the people.

2 Then said he unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
these are the men that *devise* **fabricate** mischief,
and *give wicked* **counsellors evil** counsel in this city:
3 Which say, It is not near; let us build houses:
this *city* is the caldron, and we be the flesh.
4 Therefore prophesy against them,
prophesy, O son of *man* **humanity**.
5 And the Spirit of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** fell upon me,
and said unto me, Speak;
Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
Thus have ye said, O house of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
for I know the
things that come into your mind **degrees of your spirit**,
every one **each** of them.

6 Ye have *multiplied* **abounded** your *slain* **pierced**
in this city,
and ye have filled the *streets* **outways** thereof
with the *slain* **pierced**.

7 Therefore thus saith the *Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Your *slain* **pierced**
whom ye have *laid set* in the midst of it,
they are the flesh, and this *city* is the caldron:
but I *will shall* bring you forth out of the midst of it.
8 Ye have *feared* **awed** the sword;
and I *will shall* bring a sword upon you,
saith the Lord **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
9 And I *will shall* bring you out of the midst thereof,
and *deliver* **give** you into the hands of strangers,
and *will execute* **shall work** judgments among you.
10 Ye shall fall by the sword;
I *will shall* judge you in the border of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and ye shall know that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**.
11 This *city* shall not be your caldron,
neither shall ye be *the for* flesh in the midst thereof;
but I *will shall* judge you in the border of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
12 And ye shall know that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**:
for ye have not walked in my statutes,
neither *executed* **worked** my judgments,
but have *done* **worked** after the *manners* **judgments**
of the *heathen* **goyim** that are round about you.
13 And **so be** it came to pass, when I prophesied,
that *Pelatia* **Pelat Yah**
the son of *Benaiah* **Bena Yah** died.
Then fell I down upon my face,
and cried with a loud voice, and said,
Ah Lord **GOD Aha Adonay Yah Veh!**
wilt shalt thou make a *full end* **work a final finish**
of the *remnant* **survivors** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
14 Again the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
15 Son of *man* **humanity**, thy brethren,
even thy brethren, the men of thy *kindred* **redemption**,
and all the house of *Israel* **Yisra El** wholly,
are they unto whom
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
have said,
Get you **Remove ye** far from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
unto us is this land given in possession.

WORD CONCERNING THE RESTORATION OF YISRA EL

16 Therefore say,
Thus saith the *Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Although I have *cast* **removed** them far off
among the *heathen* **goyim**,

YECHEZQ EL 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

is the same faces I saw by the river of Kebar
— their visages and themselves:
each man going face forward.

JUDGMENT OF MEN WHO FABRICATE MISCHIEF

11 And the spirit lifts me
and brings me to the east portal
of the house of Yah Veh facing eastward:
and behold, at the opening of the portal,
twenty—five men;
among whom I see Yaazan Yah the son of Azzur
and Pelat Yah the son of Bena Yah
— governors of the people:
and he says to me, Son of humanity,
these are the men fabricating mischief
counseling evil counsel in this city:
3 saying, It is not near; build houses:
this *is* the caldron, and we the flesh.
4 — so prophesy against them;
prophesy, O son of humanity.

5 And the Spirit of Yah Veh falls on me,
and says to me, Speak;
Thus says Yah Veh:
Thus you said, O house of Yisra El.
6 For I know the degrees of your spirit — each of you:
you abound your pierced in this city,
and you fill the outways with the pierced.

7 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Your pierced whom you set in the midst,
they are the flesh and this is the caldron:
and I bring you forth from the midst thereof:
you awe the sword
and I bring a sword on you
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
and I bring you from the midst
and give you into the hands of strangers,
and work judgments among you:
you fall by the sword;
10 I judge you in the border of Yisra El;
and you know I — Yah Veh.
11 This neither becomes your caldron
nor become you for flesh in the midst;
I judge you in the border of Yisra El:
and you know I — Yah Veh:
for you neither walk in my statutes
nor work my judgments;
but work after the judgments of the goyim
all around you.

13 And so be it, in prophesying,
Pelat Yah the son of Bena Yah dies
and I fall on my face and cry with a loud voice,
and say, Aha, Adonay Yah Veh;
work you a final finish of the survivors of Yisra El?

14 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
15 Son of humanity, your brothers,
your brothers, the men of your redemption,
and all the house of Yisra El wholly
are those to whom the settlers of Yeru Shalem say,
Remove afar from Yah Veh:
this land is given to us in possession.

WORD CONCERNING THE RESTORATION OF YISRA EL

16 So say, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Although I remove them afar from among the goyim,

EZEKIEL 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and although I have scattered them
among the *countries* **lands**,
yet *will shall* I be to them as a little *sanctuary* **holies**
in the *countries* **lands** where they shall come.
17 Therefore say,
Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
I *will shall* even gather you from the people,
and assemble you out of the countries
where ye have been scattered,
18 and I *will shall* give you the *land* **soil** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
And they shall come thither,
and they shall *take away* **turn aside**
all the *detestable things* **abominations thereof**
and all the *abominations* **abhorrences thereof**
from thence.
19 And I *will shall* give them one heart,
and I *will put shall give* a new spirit within you;
and I *will take shall turn aside* the *stony* heart of **stone**
out of their flesh,
20 and *will shall* give them an heart of flesh:
That they may walk in my statutes,
and *keep mine ordinances* **guard my judgments**,
and *do work* them:
and they shall be my people,
and I *will shall* be their *God* **Elohim**.
21 But as for them whose heart walketh after the heart
of their *detestable things* **abominations**
and their *abominations* **abhorrences**,
I *will recompense shall give* their way
upon their own heads,
saith the Lord **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
22 Then did the *cherubims* **cherubim** lift up their wings,
and the wheels beside them;
and the *glory* **honour** of the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
was over them above.
23 And the *glory* **honour** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
went up ascended from the midst of the city,
and stood upon the mountain
which is *on the east side* **eastward** of the city.
24 Afterwards the spirit *took bore* me up,
and brought me in a vision by the Spirit of *God* **Elohim**
into *Chaldea* **Kesediym**, to them of the *captivity* **exile**.
So the vision that I had seen *went up ascended* from me.
25 Then I *spake worded* unto them of the *captivity* **exile**
all the *things* **words**
that the *LORD* **Yah Veh** had *shewed* me **see**.

THE WORD OF YAH VEh CONCERNING THE EXILES

12 So be The word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** also *came* unto me,
saying,
2 Son of *man* **humanity**,
thou *dwellst settlest* in the midst of a rebellious house,
which have eyes to see, and see not;
they have ears to hear, and hear not:
for they are a rebellious house.
3 Therefore, thou son of *man* **humanity**,
prepare work thee stuff instruments for *removing* **exiling**,
and *remove exile* by day in their *sight* **eyes**;
and thou shalt *remove exile* from thy place
to another place in their *sight* **eyes**:
it may be perhaps they *will consider shall see*,
though they be a rebellious house.
4 Then shalt thou bring forth thy *stuff instruments*
by day in their *sight* **eyes**,
as *stuff instruments* for *removing* **exiling**:
and thou shalt go forth at even in their *sight* **eyes**,
as they that *go forth proceed* into *captivity* **exile**.
5 Dig thou through the wall in their *sight* **eyes**,
and carry out thereby.
6 In their *sight* **eyes** shalt thou bear it upon thy shoulders,
and carry it forth in the *twilight* **dusk**:
thou shalt cover thy face,
that thou see not the *ground* **earth**:
for I have *set given* thee for a *sign* **an omen**
unto the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
7 And I *did worked* so as I was *commanded* **misvahed**:
I brought forth my *stuff instruments* by day,
as *stuff instruments* for *captivity* **exile**,
and in the even
I digged through the wall with mine hand;

YECHEZQ EL 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and although I scatter them among the lands,
yet I *am* to them as a little holies
in the lands where they go.
17 So say, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
And I gather you from the people,
and assemble you from the countries
where you scattered;
and I give you the soil of Yisra El
18 to go there,
and turn aside all the abominations
and all the abhorrences from there:
and I give them one heart
19 and I give a new spirit within you;
and I turn aside the heart of stone from their flesh
and give them an heart of flesh:
20 so that they walk in my statutes
and guard my judgments and work them:
and they are my people,
and I am their Elohim.
21 As for them
whose heart walks after the heart
of their abominations and their abhorrences,
I give their way on their own heads
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
22 And the cherubim lift their wings
and the wheels *are* beside them;
and the honor of Elohim of Yisra El over them above:
23 and the honor of Yah Veh
ascends from midst the city
and stands on the mountain eastward of the city.
24 Afterward the spirit bears me
and brings me in a vision by the Spirit of Elohim
into Kesediym to the exiles:
and the vision I see ascends from me:
25 and I word to the exiles
all the words Yah Veh has me see.

THE WORD OF YAH VEh CONCERNING THE EXILES

12 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
you settle midst a rebellious house,
with eyes to see, and see not;
ears to hear, and hear not;
for they *are* a rebellious house:
and you, son of humanity,
work instruments of exile:
and exile by day in their eyes;
and exile from your place to another place
in their eyes:
3 perhaps they see, for they *are* a rebellious house:
and bring forth your instruments by day in their eyes
as instruments of exile:
and go forth at evening in their eyes
as proceeding into exile.
4 Dig through the wall in their eyes
and carry out thereby:
in their eyes, bear it on your shoulders,
and carry it forth in the dusk:
and cover your face that you not see the earth:
for I give you for an omen to the house of Yisra El.
5 And thus I work as I *am* misvahed:
I bring my instruments by day, as instruments of exile,
and in the evening
I dig through the wall with my hand:

EZEKIEL 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

I brought it forth in the *twilight dusk*,
and I bare it upon my shoulder in their *sight eyes*.
8 And in the morning
came the word of the **LORD Yah Veh** unto me, saying,
9 Son of *man* **humanity**,
hath not the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**, the rebellious house,
said unto thee, What *doest* **workest** thou?
10 Say thou unto them,
Thus saith the *Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
This burden concerneth
the *prince* **hierarch** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and all the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**, that are among them.
11 Say, I am your *sign omen*:
like as I have *done* **worked**,
so shall it be *done* **worked** unto them:
in exiling, they shall *remove and go into captivity* **exile**.
12 And the *prince* **hierarch** that is among them
shall bear upon his shoulder in the *twilight dusk*,
and shall go forth:
they shall dig through the wall to carry out thereby:
he shall cover his face,
so that he see not the *ground* **earth** with his eyes.
13 My net also *will* **shall** I spread upon him,
and he shall be *taken* **apprehended** in my *snare lure*:
and I *will* **shall** bring him to *Babylon* **Babel**
to the land of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**;
yet shall he not see it, though he shall die there.
14 And I *will* **scatter shall winnow** toward every wind
all that are **round** about him to help him,
and all his bands;
and I *will* **shall** draw out the sword after them.
15 And they shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*,
when I shall **scatter winnow** them
among the *nations* **goyim**,
and disperse them in the *countries* **lands**.
16 But I *will* **leave a few men shall let remain** of them
from the sword,
from the famine, and from the pestilence;
that they may *declare* **scribe**
all their *abominations* **abhorrences**
among the *heathen* **goyim** whither they come;
and they shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.
17 Moreover the word of the **LORD Yah Veh** came to me,
saying,
18 Son of *man* **humanity**, eat thy bread with quaking,
and drink thy water with *trembling* **quivering**
and with *carefulness* **concern**;
19 And say unto the people of the land,
Thus saith the *Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*
of the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and of the *land* **soil** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
They shall eat their bread with *carefulness* **concern**,
and drink their water with astonishment,
that her land may be desolate
from *all that is therein* **the fulness thereof**,
because of the violence
of all them that *dwell* **settle** therein.
20 And the cities that are *inhabited* **settled**
shall be *laid waste* **parched**,
and the land shall be desolate;
and ye shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.
21 And the word of the **LORD Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
22 Son of *man* **humanity**,
what is that proverb that ye have
in the *land* **soil** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, saying,
The days are prolonged,
and every vision *faileth* **destructs**?
23 Tell them therefore,
Thus saith the *Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
I *will* **make shall cause** this proverb to *cease* **shabbathize**,
and they shall no more *use* **proverbialize** it
as a proverb in *Israel* **Yisra El**;
but say **word** unto them,
The days are *at hand* **approach**,
and the *effect* **word** of every vision.
24 For there shall be no more any vain vision
nor *flattering* **smoothing** divination
within the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

YECHEZQ EL 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I bring it forth in the dusk
and I bear it on my shoulder in their eyes.
8 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me
in the morning, saying,
9 Son of humanity, say they not to you,
the house of Yisra El — this rebellious house,
What work you?
10 You, say to them, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
This burden concerns the hierarch in Yeru Shalem
and all the house of Yisra El among them.
11 Say, I *am* your omen;
as I work, so be it worked to them:
in exiling, they exile:
12 and the hierarch among them
bears on his shoulder in the dusk,
and goes forth:
they dig through the wall to carry out thereby:
he covers his face
so that he sees not the earth with his eyes.
13 and I spread my net on him,
and apprehend him in my lure:
and I bring him to Babel
to the land of the Kesediym;
yet he sees it not, though he dies there:
14 and toward every wind
I winnow all who are all around him to help him
— and all his bands;
and I draw out the sword after them:
15 and they know I — Yah Veh
when I winnow them among the goyim
and disperse them in the lands.
16 And I leave of them remaining from the sword
from the famine and from the pestilence
so that they scribe all their abhorrences
among the goyim where they go;
and they know I — Yah Veh.
17 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
18 Son of humanity, eat your bread with quaking
and drink your water with quivering
and with concern
19 and say to the people of the land,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh
of the settlers of Yeru Shalem,
and of the soil of Yisra El:
They eat their bread with concern
and drink their water with astonishment
that her land be desolate from the fulness thereof,
because of the violence of all who settle therein.
20 And the settled cities parches
and the land desolates;
and you know I — Yah Veh.
21 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
22 Son of humanity,
what is that proverb of you in the soil of Yisra El,
saying,
The days prolong; and every vision destructs?
23 So tell them,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
I shabbathize this proverb
that they no more proverbialize it
as a proverb in Yisra El:
but word to them,
Days approach; and the word of every vision:
24 for there is neither any more a vain vision
nor smoothing divination within the house of Yisra El.

EZEKIEL 12, 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

25 For I am the LORD I — Yah Veh:
I will speak **shall word**,
and the word that I shall speak **word**
shall come to pass **work**;
it shall be no more *prolonged* **drawn out**:
for in your days, O rebellious house,
will I say **shall I word** the word,
and will perform **shall work** it,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
26 Again the word of the LORD **Yah Veh** came to me,
saying,
27 Son of man **humanity**, behold,
they of the house of Israel **Yisra El** say,
The vision that he seeth is for many days to come,
and he prophesieth of the times that are far off.
28 Therefore say unto them,
Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
There shall none of my words
be *prolonged* **drawn out** any more,
but the word which I have spoken **worded**
shall be *done* **worked**,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING PROPHETS

13 And the word of the LORD **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
2 Son of man **humanity**,
prophesy against the prophets of Israel **Yisra El**
that prophesy,
and say thou unto them
that prophesy out of their own hearts,
Hear ye the word of the LORD **Yah Veh**;
3 Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Woe **Ho** unto the foolish prophets,
that follow **walk after** their own spirit,
and have seen *nothing* **naught!**
4 O Israel **Yisra El**,
thy prophets
are like the foxes in the **deserts parched areas**.
5 Ye have not *gone up* **ascended** into the *gaps* **breaches**,
neither *made up* **walled** the **hedge wall**
for the house of Israel **Yisra El** to stand in the **battle war**
in the day of the LORD **Yah Veh**.
6 They have seen vanity and lying divination, saying,
The LORD saith **An oracle of Yah Veh**:
and the LORD **Yah Veh** hath not sent them:
and they have *made others* to **hope hoped**
that they *would* **should** confirm the word.
7 Have ye not seen a vain vision,
and have ye not spoken **said** a lying divination,
whereas ye say **saying**,
The LORD saith it **An oracle of Yah Veh**;
albeit I have not spoken **worded**?
8 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Because ye have spoken **worded** vanity, and seen lies,
therefore, behold, I am against you,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
9 And mine hand shall be upon the prophets
that see **seers of** vanity and that **divine** **diviners of** lies:
they shall not be
in the *assembly* **private counsel** of my people,
neither shall they be *written* **inscribed**
in the *writing* **inscribing** of the house of Israel **Yisra El**,
neither shall they enter into the *land* **soil** of Israel **Yisra El**;
and ye shall know
that I am the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**.
10 Because, even because they have seduced my people,
saying, **Peace Shalom**; and there was no *peace* **shalom**;
and one built up a wall, and, *lo* **behold**,
others daubed it with *untempered* **morter slime**:
11 Say unto them
which daub it with *untempered* **morter slime**,
that it shall fall:
there shall be an overflowing **shower downpour**;
and ye, O great hailstones, shall fall;
and a stormy wind shall *rend* **split** it.
12 *Lo* **Behold**, when the wall is fallen,
shall it not be said unto you,
Where is the daubing wherewith ye have daubed it?
13 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;

YECHEZQ EL 12, 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

25 For I — Yah Veh:
I word; and the word I word works;
it *is* no more drawn out:
for in your days, O rebellious house,
I word the word, and work it
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
26 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
27 Son of humanity,
behold, the house of Yisra El says,
The vision he sees is for many days,
and he prophesies of the times afar off.
28 So say to them,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Not one of my words *is* drawn out any more:
and the word I word works
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING PROPHETS

13 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
prophesy against the prophets of Yisra El
who prophesy:
and to them who prophesy from their own hearts,
say, Hear the word of Yah Veh;
3 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Ho to the foolish prophets
who walk after their own spirit, and see naught!
4 O Yisra El,
your prophets are as the foxes in the parched areas.
5 You neither ascend into the breaches
nor wall the wall
for the house of Yisra El to stand in the war
in the day of Yah Veh.
6 They see vanity and lying divination, saying,
— An oracle of Yah Veh!
and Yah Veh sent them not:
and they hope to confirm the word.
7 You saw neither a vain vision,
nor a lying divination say, saying,
— An oracle of Yah Veh!
Have I not worded?
8 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because you word vanity and see lies
— so behold, I am against you
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
and my hand becomes on the prophets,
seers of vanity and diviners of lies:
they are neither in the private counsel of my people,
nor inscribed in the inscribing of the house of Yisra El,
nor enter they the soil of Yisra El;
and you know I — Adonay Yah Veh.
9 Because, even because they seduce my people,
saying, Shalom; and there *is* no shalom;
and one builds a wall;
and behold, others daub it with slime.
10 Say to them who daub it with slime, It falls!
There becomes an overflowing downpour;
and you, O great hailstones, fall:
and a stormy wind splits:
11 behold, when the wall falls,
say they not to you,
Where is the daubing with which you daubed?
12 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:

EZEKIEL 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

I will **shall** even rend **split** it with a stormy wind
in my fury;
and there shall be an overflowing *shower* **downpour**
in *mine anger* **my wrath**,
and great hailstones in my fury to *consume* **fully finish** it.
14 So will I break down **shall I demolish** the wall
that ye have daubed with *untempered mortar* **slime**,
and bring it down **that it touch** to the *ground* **earth**,
so that the foundation *thereof*
shall be *discovered* **exposed**, and it shall fall,
and ye shall be *consumed* **finished off**
in the midst *thereof*:
and ye shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.
15 Thus will I accomplish **shall I finish off** my *wrath* **fury**
upon the wall,
and upon them
that have daubed it with *untempered mortar* **slime**,
and will **shall** say unto you,
The wall is *no more* **not**, neither they that daubed it;
16 To wit, the prophets of *Israel* **Yisra El**
which prophesy concerning *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and which see **seers of** visions of *peace* **shalom** for her,
and there is no *peace* **shalom**,
saith the *Lord* **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
17 Likewise, thou son of *man* **humanity**,
set thy face against the daughters of thy people,
which prophesy out of their own heart;
and prophesy thou against them,
18 And say, Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Woe to the women **Ho to them** that sew pillows
to all *armholes* **for all the elbow holes of my hands**,
and make *kerchiefs* **work veils**
upon the head of every *stature* **height** to hunt souls!
will **shall** ye hunt the souls of my people,
and will **shall** ye save **let** the souls *alive* **live**
that come unto you?
19 And will **shall** ye **pollute** **profane** me
among my people
for *handfuls* **palmfuls** of barley
and for *pieces* **bits** of bread,
to *slay* **execute** the souls that should not die,
and to *save the souls alive* **enliven**
that should not live,
by your lying to my people that hear *your* lies?
20 Wherefore thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Behold, I am against your pillows,
wherewith ye there hunt the souls
to *make them fly* **blossom**,
and I will *tear* **shall rip** them from your arms,
and will *let* **shall send away** the souls *go*,
even the souls that ye hunt to *make them fly* **blossom**.
21 Your *kerchiefs* **vails** also will I *tear* **shall I rip**,
and *deliver* **rescue** my people out of your hand,
and they shall be no more in your hand
to be *hunted* **lured**;
and ye shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.
22 Because with *lies* **falsehoods** ye have
made **pained** the heart of the *righteous* **sad just**,
whom I have not *made* **sad pained**;
and strengthened the hands of the *wicked* **evil**,
that he should not return from his wicked way,
by *promising* **enlivening** him *life*:
23 Therefore ye shall see no more vanity,
nor divine divinations:
for I will *deliver* **shall rescue** my people out of your hand:
and ye shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING IDOLATROUS ELDERS

14 Then came *certain* **men** of the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**
unto me,
and sat *before me* **at my face**.
2 And the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
3 Son of *man* **humanity**,
these men have *set up* **ascended** their idols in their heart,
and *put* **gave** the stumblingblock of their *iniquity* **perversity**
before **at** their face:
should I be enquired of at all by them?
4 Therefore *speak* **word** unto them, and say unto them,

YECHEZQ EL 13, 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I split it with a stormy wind in my fury;
and so be it,
an overflowing downpour in my wrath
and great hailstones in my fury to fully finish it off:
14 thus I demolish the wall you daubed with slime
so that it touches to the earth,
so that the foundation exposes and falls
and finishes you off in the midst:
and you know I — Yah Veh.
15 Thus I finish off my fury on the wall
and on them who daubed it with slime
and say to you,
The wall *is* not: they who daubed it *are* not;
16 — the prophets of Yisra El
who prophesy concerning Yeru Shalem
— seers of visions of shalom for her
and there is no shalom
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
17 And you, son of humanity,
set your face against the daughters of your people
who prophesy from their own heart:
and prophesy against them,
18 and say, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Ho to them
who sew pillows for all the elbow holes of my hands;
and work veils on the head of every height
to hunt souls;
Hunt you the souls of my people?
Leave you the souls to live with you?
19 Yes, you profane me among my people
for palmfuls of barley and for bits of bread
— to execute the souls that ought not die
and to enliven them that ought not live
— by your lying to my people — hearkening to lies.
20 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh;
Behold, I am against your pillows,
with which you hunt the souls to blossom;
and I rip them from your arms
and send away the souls
— the souls you hunt to blossom.
21 And I rip your veils
and rescue my people from your hand,
that they become no more in your hand to be lured;
and you know I — Yah Veh.
22 Because with falsehoods
you pain the heart of the just,
whom I pain not;
and strengthen the hands of the evil
that he not return from his wicked way,
by enlivening him:
23 so you neither see more vanity,
nor divine divinations:
for I rescue my people from your hand:
and you know I — Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING IDOLATROUS ELDERS

14 And men of the elders of Yisra El come to me
and sit at my face:
2 and so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
3 Son of humanity,
these men ascend their idols
in their heart,
and give the stumblingblock of their perversity
at their face:
Inquire they at all of me?
4 So word to them, and say to them,

EZEKIEL 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
Every Man by man of the house of Israel Yisra El
that setteth up ascendeth his idols in his heart,
and putteth setteth
the stumblingblock of his iniquity perversity
before at his face,
and cometh to the prophet;
I the LORD will Yah Veh shall answer him that cometh
according to the multitude abundance of his idols;
5 That I may take apprehend the house of Israel Yisra El
in their own heart,
because they are all estranged from me through their idols.
6 Therefore say unto the house of Israel Yisra El,
Thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
Repent Turn, and turn yourselves from your idols;
and turn away from your faces
from all your abominations abhorrences.
7 For every one each man of the house of Israel Yisra El,
or of the stranger sojourner
that sojourneth in Israel Yisra El,
which separateth himself from after me,
and setteth up ascendeth his idols in his heart,
and putteth setteth
the stumblingblock of his iniquity perversity
before at his face,
and cometh to a prophet
to enquire of him concerning me;
I the LORD will Yah Veh shall answer him by myself:
8 And I will set shall give my face against that man,
and will make shall desolate him a sign and a proverb,
and I will shall cut him off from the midst of my people;
and ye shall know that I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.
9 And if the prophet be deceived deluded
when he hath spoken worded a thing word,
I the LORD Yah Veh
have deceived deluded that prophet,
and I will stretch out shall spread my hand upon him,
and will destroy shall desolate him
from the midst of my people Israel Yisra El.
10 And they shall bear
the punishment of their iniquity their perversity:
the punishment perversity of the prophet
shall be even as the punishment perversity
of him that seeketh unto him enquires;
11 That the house of Israel Yisra El
may go stray no more astray from me,
neither be polluted fouled any more
with all their transgressions rebellions;
but that they may be my people,
and I may be their God Elohim,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
12 The word of the LORD Yah Veh came again to me,
saying,
13 Son of man humanity,
when the land sinneth against me
by trespassing grievously treasoning a treason,
then will shall I stretch out spread mine hand upon it,
and will shall break the staff rod of the bread thereof,
and will shall send famine upon it,
and will shall cut off
man humanity and beast animal from it:
14 Though these three men,
Noah Noah, Daniel Dani El, and Job Iyob,
were in it the midst,
they should deliver but rescue their own souls
by their righteousness justness,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
15 If I cause noisome beasts evil live beings
to pass through the land,
and they spoil bereave it, so that it be desolate,
that no man may pass through
because at the face of the beasts live beings:
16 Though these three men were in the midst of it,
as I live,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
they shall deliver rescue neither sons nor daughters;
they only shall be delivered rescued,
but the land shall be desolate.
17 Or if I bring a sword upon that land,

YECHEZQ EL 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Man by man of the house of Yisra El
who ascends his idols in his heart,
and sets the stumblingblock of his perversity
at his face,
and goes to the prophet;
I Yah Veh give him who goes
an answer according to the abundance of his idols:
5 so that I apprehend the house of Yisra El
in their own heart;
because, through their idols,
they all estrange from me.
6 So say to the house of Yisra El,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Turn — turn from your idols;
and turn from your faces
— from all your abhorrences:
7 for each man of the house of Yisra El
or of the sojourner who sojourns in Yisra El,
who separates himself from after me,
and ascends his idols in his heart,
and sets the stumblingblock of his perversity
at his face,
and goes to a prophet
to inquire of him concerning me;
I Yah Veh answer him by myself:
8 and I give my face against that man
and desolate him — a sign and a proverb
and I cut him off from midst my people;
and you know I — Yah Veh.
9 And if the prophet, when he is deluded,
and words a word,
I Yah Veh delude that prophet,
and I spread my hand on him,
and desolate him from midst my people Yisra El.
10 And they bear their perversity:
the perversity of the prophet
even as the perversity of him who inquires;
11 that the house of Yisra El
neither stray from me any more
nor foul with all their rebellions any more;
and that they become my people
and I become their Elohim
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
12 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
13 Son of humanity,
when the land sins against me
in treasoning a treason,
then I spread my hand thereon
and break the rod of the bread
and send famine thereon;
and cut off humanity and animal from it:
14 and there are three men in the midst,
— Noah, Dani El, and Iyob
who rescued their own souls by their justness
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
15 If I pass evil live beings through the land,
and they bereave, and it becomes desolate,
so that no man passes through
at the face of the live beings
16 — these three men in the midst thereof,
I live
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
they rescue neither sons nor daughters;
they only are rescued,
and the land becomes desolate.
17 Or, I bring a sword on that land,

EZEKIEL 14—16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and say, Sword, go **pass** through the land;
so that I cut off *man* **humanity** and *beast* **animal** from it:
18 Though these three men were in **the midst of it**,
as I live,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
they shall *deliver* **rescue** neither sons nor daughters,
but they only shall be *delivered themselves* **rescued**.
19 Or if I send a pestilence into that land,
and pour out my fury upon it in blood,
to cut off from it *man* **humanity** and *beast* **animal**:
20 Though *Noah* **Noach**, *Daniel* **Dani El**, and *Job* **Iyob**
were in **the midst of it**, as I live,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
they shall *deliver* **rescue** neither son nor daughter;
they shall *but deliver* **rescue** their own souls
by their *righteousness* **justness**.
21 For thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
How much more
when I send my four *sore* **evil** judgments
upon *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
the sword, and the famine,
and the *noisome* **beast evil live being**, and the pestilence,
to cut off from it *man* **humanity** and *beast* **animal**?
22 Yet, behold,
therein shall *be left a remnant* **remain escapees**
that shall be brought forth, *both* sons and daughters:
behold, they shall come forth unto you,
and ye shall see their way and their *doings* **exploits**:
and ye shall *be comforted* **sigh** concerning the evil
that I have brought upon *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
even concerning all that I have brought upon it.
23 And they shall *comfort* **sigh over** you,
when ye see their ways and their *doings* **exploits**:
and ye shall know
that I have not *done without cause* **worked gratuitously**
all that I have *done* **worked** in it,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH
CONCERNING THE CONSUMED VINE

15 And the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came unto me,
saying,
2 Son of *man* **humanity**,
what is the vine tree more than any tree,
or than a branch which is
— a **twig** among the trees of the forest?
3 shall wood **timber** be taken *thereof*
to *do* **work** any work?
or will men take a *pin of it* **shall a stake be taken**
to hang any *vessel* **instrument** thereon?
4 Behold, it is cast **given** into the fire for fuel;
the fire *devoureth* **consumeth** both the ends of it,
and the midst of it is *burned* **scorched**.
Is it meet **shall it prosper** for any work?
5 Behold, when it was *whole* **integrity**,
it was *meet for* **worked** no work:
how much less shall it *be meet* **work** yet for any work,
when the fire hath devoured it,
and it is *burned* **scorched**?
6 Therefore thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
As the vine tree among the trees of the forest,
which I have given to the fire for fuel,
so will **shall** I give
the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
7 And I will *set* **shall give** my face against them;
they shall go out from *one* fire,
and *another* fire shall *devour* **consume** them;
and ye shall know that *I am the LORD I* — **Yah Veh**,
when I set my face against them.
8 And I will *make* **shall give** the land desolate,
because they have
committed **treasoned** a *trespass* **treason**,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH
CONCERNING UNTRUSTING YERU SHALEM

16 Again the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came unto me,
saying,
2 Son of *man* **humanity**, cause *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
to know her *abominations* **abhorrences**,
3 And say,

YECHEZQ EL 14—16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and say, Sword, pass through the land;
so that I cut off humanity and animal from it:
18 and these three men in the midst thereof
— I live
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
they rescue neither sons nor daughters,
for they only *are* rescued.
19 Or, I send a pestilence into that land
and pour my fury thereon in blood
— to cut off humanity and animal therefrom:
20 and Noach, Dani El, and Iyob *are* in the midst
— I live
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
they rescue neither son nor daughter;
they rescue their own souls by their justness.
21 For thus says Adonay Yah Veh;
How much more when I send
my four evil judgments on Yeru Shalem
— the sword and the famine
and the evil live being and the pestilence
— to cut it off from humanity and animal?
22 Yet behold,
escapees remain therein
to bring out sons and daughters:
behold, they come to you;
and you see their way and their exploits:
and you sigh concerning the evil
I bring on Yeru Shalem
concerning all I bring thereon:
23 and they sigh over you
when you see their ways and their exploits:
and you know, I work not gratuitously
all that I work therein
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH
CONCERNING THE CONSUMED VINE

15 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
what is the vine tree more than any tree,
— a twig among the trees of the forest?
3 *Is* timber taken to work any work?
Or a stake taken to hang any instrument thereon?
4 Behold, it *is* given into the fire for fuel;
the fire consumes both the ends thereof
and scorches the midst thereof.
Prosper it for work?
5 Behold, in being integrity, it works no work:
How much less work works it
when the fire consumes and scorches?
6 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
As I give the vine tree among the trees of the forest
as fire for fuel,
thus I give the settlers of Yeru Shalem:
and I give my face against them;
they come from the fire; and fire consumes them:
and you know I — Yah Veh
when I set my face against them:
and I give the land desolate,
because they treason a treason
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH
CONCERNING UNTRUSTING YERU SHALEM

16 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
have Yeru Shalem know her abhorrences;
3 and say,

EZEKIEL 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh
unto Jerusalem Yeru Shalem;
Thy **birth origin** and thy **nativity kindred**
is of the land of Canaan **Kenaan**;
thy father was an **Amorite Emoriy**,
and thy mother an **Hittite Hethiy**.
4 And as for thy **nativity kindred**,
in the day thou wast **born birthed** thy navel was not cut,
neither wast thou **washed baptized** in water
to **supple thee for inspection**;
5 **in salting**, thou wast not salted at all,
nor swaddled at all in swathing, thou wast not swathed.
6 None eye pitied thee,
to **do any work one** of these unto thee,
to **have compassion upon** thee;
but thou wast cast out in the **open face of the field**,
to the lothing of thy **person soul**,
in the day that thou wast **born birthed**.
7 And when I passed by thee,
and saw thee **polluted trampled** in thine own blood,
I said unto thee *when thou wast* in thy blood, Live;
yea, I said unto thee *when thou wast* in thy blood, Live.
8 I have **caused given** thee
to **multiply abound by the myriads**
as the **bud sprout** of the field,
and thou hast **increased abounded**
and **waxen great greatened**,
and thou art come
to **excellent an ornament of ornaments**:
thy breasts are fashioned,
and thine hair *is grown sprouted*,
whereas thou wast naked and **bare nude**.
9 Now when I passed by thee, and **looked upon saw** thee,
behold, thy time was the time of love;
and I spread my **skirt wing** over thee,
and covered thy nakedness:
yea, I **sware oathed** unto thee,
and entered into a covenant with thee,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
and thou becamest mine.
10 Then **washed baptized** I thee with water;
yea, I thoroughly washed away thy blood from thee,
and I anointed thee with oil.
11 I **clothed enrobed** thee also
with **broidered work embroidery**,
and shod thee with badgers' skin,
and I **girded bound** thee *about* with **fine white** linen,
and I covered thee with silk.
12 I **decked adorned** thee also with ornaments,
and I **put bracelets gave clasps** upon thy hands,
and a chain on thy **neck throat**.
13 And I **put gave a jewel nosering**
on thy **forehead nostrils**,
and earrings in thine ears,
and a **beautiful crown of adornment**
upon thine head.
14 Thus wast thou **decked adorned** with gold and silver;
and thy **raiment robe** was of **fine white** linen,
and silk, and **broidered work embroidery**;
thou didst eat **fine flour**, and honey, and oil:
and thou wast **exceeding beautiful mightily beautified**,
and thou didst prosper into a **kingdom sovereigndom**.
15 And thy **renown name**
went forth among the **heathen goyim** for thy beauty:
for it was perfect through my **comeliness majesty**,
which I had **put set** upon thee,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
16 But thou **didst trust confidedst** in thine own beauty,
and **playedst the harlot whored**
because of thy **renown name**,
and pouredst out thy **fornications whoredoms**
on every one that passed by; his it was.
17 And of thy **garment clothes** thou didst take,
and **deckedst workedst** thy **high places bamahs**
with **divers colours patches**,
and **playedst the harlot whored** thereupon:
the like things it shall not come, neither shall it be so.
18 Thou hast also taken
thy **fair jewels instruments of adornment**

YECHEZQ EL 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Thus says Adonay Yah Veh to Yeru Shalem;
Your origin and your kindred *is* of the land of Kenaan
— your father an Emoriy and your mother a Hethiy:
4 and as for your kindred,
in the day you were birthed,
neither was your navel cut
nor were you baptized in water for inspection;
in salting, you were not salted;
in swathing, you were not swathed:
5 no eye spared you, to work one of these to you
— to compassion you;
but you were cast out in the face of the field,
to the loathing of your soul,
in the day you were birthed.
6 And I pass you by
and see you trampled in your own blood;
and I say to you in your blood, Live!
Yes, I say to you in your blood, Live!
7 I give you to abound by the myriads
as the sprout of the field:
and you abound and greaten;
and you come with ornaments of ornaments:
your breasts fashion and your hair sprouts,
and you are naked and nude.
8 And I pass you by and see you;
behold, your time *is* a time of loves:
and I spread my wing over you
and cover your nakedness:
yes, I oath to you
and enter a covenant with you
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
and you become mine:
9 and I baptize you with water;
yes, I thoroughly wash away your blood from you
and I anoint you with oil:
10 and I enrobe you with embroidery
and shod you with skin of badgers;
and I bind you with white linen
and I cover you with silk:
11 and I adorn you with ornaments
and I give clasps on your hands
and a chain on your throat:
12 and I give a nosering on your nostrils
and earrings in your ears
and a crown of adornment on your head:
and adorn you with gold and silver;
and your robe *is* of white linen
and silk and embroidery:
you eat flour and honey and oil:
and you are mightily beautified
and you prosper into a sovereigndom:
13 and because of your beauty
your name goes forth among the goyim:
for it *is* perfect through my majesty
which I set on you
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
14 And you confide in your own beauty
and whore because of your name;
and pour your whoredoms
on every one who passes by — to him.
15 And from your clothes, you take of the patches,
and work your bamahs and whore thereon:
such as neither has come, nor becomes.
16 And you take your instruments of adornment

EZEKIEL 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

of my gold and of my silver, which I had given thee,
and *madest* **workedst** to thyself images of *men* **males**,
and *didst* commit whoredom **whored** with them,
18 And tookest thy
broidered garment **clothes of embroidery**,
and coveredst them:
and thou hast set **given** mine oil and mine incense
before them **at their face**.
19 My meat also which I gave thee,
fine flour, and oil, and honey, *wherewith I fed thee* **to eat**,
thou hast even *set it before them* **given at their face**
for a sweet savour **scent of rest**:
and thus it was **became**,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
20 Moreover thou hast taken thy sons and thy daughters,
whom thou hast *borne* **birthed** unto me,
and these hast thou sacrificed
unto them to be *devoured* **eaten**.
21 Is this of thy whoredoms a *small matter* **trifling**,
That thou hast *slain* **slaughtered** my *children* **sons**,
and *delivered* **gave** them
to cause them to pass through *the fire* for them?
22 And in all thine *abominations* **abhorrences**
and thy whoredoms
thou hast not remembered the days of thy youth,
when thou wast naked and *bare* **nude**,
and wast *polluted* **trampled** in thy blood.
23 And **so be** it *came to pass* after all thy *wickedness* **evil**,
(woe, woe unto thee!)
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh;**
24 That thou hast also built unto thee
an *eminent place* **arch**,
and hast *made* **worked** thee *an high place* **a ramah**
in every *street* **broadway**.
25 Thou hast built thy *high place* **ramah**
at every head of the way,
and hast made thy beauty to be abhorred,
and hast *opened* **spread** thy feet
to every one that passed by,
and *multiplied* **abounded** thy whoredoms.
26 Thou hast also *committed fornication* **whored**
with the *Egyptians* **sons of Misrayim**
thy *neighbours* **fellow tabernaclers**, great of flesh;
and hast *increased* **abounded** thy whoredoms,
to *provoke* **vex** me to anger.
27 Behold,
therefore I have *stretched out* **spread** my hand over thee,
and have diminished thine *ordinary food* **statute**,
and *delivered* **gave** thee
unto the *will* **soul** of them that hate thee,
the daughters of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**,
which are ashamed of thy *lewd way* **of intrigue**.
28 Thou hast *played the whore* **whored** also
with the *Assyrians* **sons of Ashshur**,
because thou wast *unsatiable* **not satisfied**;
yea, thou hast *played the harlot* **whored** with them,
and yet couldest not be satisfied.
29 Thou hast *moreover*
multiplied **abounded** thy *fornication* **whoredom**
in the land of *Canaan* **Kenaan** unto *Chaldea* **Kesediym**;
and yet thou wast not satisfied herewith.
30 How weak is thine heart,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**,
seeing thou *doest* **workest** all these *things*,
the work of an *imperious* **a domineering** whorish woman;
31 In that thou buildest thine *eminent place* **arch**
in the head of every way,
and *makest thine high place* **workest thy ramah**
in every *street* **broadway**;
and hast not been as *an harlot* **a whore**,
in that thou *scornest hire* **ridiculest payoff**;
32 But as a *one woman*
that *commiteth adultery* **adulterizeth**,
which taketh strangers instead of her *husband* **man**!
33 They give *gifts* **payoffs** to all whores:
but thou givest thy *gifts* **payoffs** to all thy lovers,
and hirest them,
that they may come unto thee *on every side* **round about**
for thy whoredom.

YECHEZQ EL 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

of my gold and of my silver, which I give you,
and work images of males to yourself
and whore with them;
18 and take your clothes of embroidery
and cover them:
and you give my oil and my incense at their face:
19 and the meat I give you
— flour and oil and honey to eat,
you even give at their face for a scent of rest:
and so be it,
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
20 And you take your sons and your daughters,
whom you birthed to me,
and you sacrifice them to be eaten.
Are these trifling — your whoredoms,
21 to slaughter my sons,
and give them to pass through?
22 And in all your abhorrences and your whoredoms
you remember not the days of your youth,
when you *were* naked and nude,
and *were* trampled in your blood.
23 And so be it, after all your evil,
— woe, woe to you
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
24 you also build an arch to yourself
and work a ramah in every Broadway:
25 build your ramah at every head of the way
so that your beauty *is* abhorred;
and spread your feet to every one passing by
and about your whoredoms.
26 And you whore with the sons of Misrayim
your fellow tabernaclers, great of flesh;
and about your whoredoms to vex me.
27 Behold, I spread my hand over you
and diminish your statute;
and give you to the soul of them who hate you
— the daughters of the Peleshethiym
who shame over your way of intrigue.
28 And you whore with the sons of Ashshur,
because you *are* not satisfied;
yes, you whore with them,
and yet you *are* not satisfied.
29 You abound your whoredom
in the land of Kenaan to the Kesediym;
and yet you *are* not satisfied with this.
30 How weak your heart
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
seeing you work all these
— the work of a domineering whorish woman;
31 building your arch in the head of every way;
and working your ramah in every Broadway:
and not being as a whore who ridicules a payoff;
32 but as a woman who adulterizes,
who takes strangers instead of her man!
33 They give payoffs to all whores:
and you give payoffs to all your lovers,
and hire them to come to you from all around
for your whoredom.

EZEKIEL 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

34 And the contrary is in thee
from *other* women in thy whoredoms,
whereas none
followeth thee to commit whoredoms
whoreth after thee:
and in that thou givest a *reward* **payoff**,
and no *reward* **payoff** is given unto thee,
therefore thou art contrary.

35 Wherefore, O *harlot* **whore**,
hear the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh:**

36 Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh;**
Because thy *filthiness* **copper** was poured out,
and thy nakedness *discovered* **exposed**
through thy whoredoms with thy lovers,
and with all the idols of thy *abominations* **abhorrences**,
and by the blood of thy *children* **sons**,
which thou didst give unto them;

37 Behold, therefore I *will* **shall** gather all thy lovers,
with whom thou hast *taken pleasure* **been pleased**,
and all *them* that thou hast loved,
with all *them* that thou hast hated;
I *will* **shall** even gather them round about against thee,
and *will* **discover** **shall expose** thy nakedness unto them,
that they may see all thy nakedness.

38 And I *will* **shall** judge thee,
as *women* **adulteresses**
that *break wedlock and shed* **pour** blood
are judged **have judgments**;

39 and I *will* **shall** give thee blood in fury and jealousy.
And I *will* **shall** also give thee into their hand,
and they shall throw down thine *eminent place* **arch**,
and shall *break* **pull** down thy *high places* **ramahs**:
they shall strip thee also of thy clothes,
and shall take thy *fair jewels* **instruments of adornment**,
and leave thee naked and *bare* **nude**.

40 They shall also
bring up **ascend** a *company* **congregation** against thee,
and they shall stone thee with stones,
and *thrust* **section** thee *through* with their swords.

41 And they shall burn thine houses with fire,
and *execute* **work** judgments upon thee
in the *sight* **eyes** of many women:
and I *will* **shall** cause thee
to *cease* **shabbathize** from *playing the harlot* **whoring**,
and thou also shalt give no *hire* **payoff** any more.

42 So *will I* **make** **shall I rest** my fury toward thee *to rest*,
and my jealousy shall *depart* **turn** from thee,
and I *will* **be quiet** **shall rest**,
and *will* **shall** be no more *angry* **vexed**.

43 Because
thou hast not remembered the days of thy youth,
but hast *fretted* me **quiver** in all these *things*;
behold,
therefore I also *will* **recompense** **shall give** thy way
upon thine head,
saith the Lord **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh:**
and thou shalt not *commit* **work** this *lewdness* **intrigue**
above all thine *abominations* **abhorrences**.

44 Behold, every one that *useth* **proverbializeth** proverbs
shall *use* **proverbialize** this proverb against thee,
saying, As is the mother, so is her daughter.

45 Thou art thy mother's daughter,
that lotheth her *husband* **man** and her *children* **sons**;
and thou art the sister of thy sisters,
which lothed their *husbands* **men** and their *children* **sons**:
your mother was an *Hittite* **Hethiy**,
and your father an *Amorite* **Emoriy**.

46 And thine *elder* **great** sister is *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
she and her daughters that *dwell* **settle** at thy left *hand*:
and thy younger sister,
that *dwelleth* **settlet**h at thy right *hand*,
is *Sodom* **Sedom** and her daughters.

47 Yet hast thou not walked after their ways,
nor *done* **worked** after their *abominations* **abhorrences**:
but, *as if that were a very little thing* **lothed as a trifling**,
thou wast *corrupted* **ruined** more than they
in all thy ways.

48 As I live,
saith the Lord **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,**

YECHEZQ EL 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

34 And the contrary is in you
of women in your whoredoms;
whereas no one whores after you:
and in that you give a payoff
and no payoff is given to you:
so you are contrary.

35 So, O whore,
hear the word of Yah Veh!

36 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because your copper *is* poured,
and your nakedness exposed
through your whoredoms with your lovers
and with all the idols of your abhorrences,
and by the blood of your sons,
which you give them;
37 behold,
so I gather all your lovers whom you pleased
and all whom you loved
with all whom you hated
— and I gather them all around against you
and expose your nakedness to them
so that they see all your nakedness.

38 And I judge you with judgments
as adulteresses who pour blood;
and I give you blood and fury and jealousy:
39 and I give you into their hand:
and they throw down your arch
and pull down your ramahs:
and they strip you of your clothes
and take your instruments of adornment;
and leave you naked and nude:
40 and they ascend a congregation against you
and stone you with stones
and section you with their swords:
41 and they burn your houses with fire
and work judgments on you
in the eyes of many women:
and I shabbathize you from whoring
and that you give a payoff no more.

42 Thus I rest my fury toward you;
and turn my jealousy from you:
and I rest, and vex no more.

43 Because you remember not the days of your youth,
and quiver me in all these:
behold, even I also give your way on your head
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
that you not work this intrigue
above all your abhorrences.

44 Behold, every one who proverbializes proverbs
proverbializes this proverb against you, saying,
As the mother, thus her daughter.

45 You are the daughter of your mother
who loathes her man and her sons;
and you are the sister of your sisters,
who loathe their men and their sons:
your mother *is* a Hethiy
and your father an Emoriy:
46 and your great sister is Shomeron
— she and her daughters who settle at your left:
and your younger sister who settles at your right
is Sedom and her daughters.

47 Yet you neither walk after their ways,
nor work after their abhorrences:
but loathe as a trifling:
in all your ways, you are ruined more than they.

48 I live
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh

EZEKIEL 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Sodom Sedom thy sister hath not *done* **worked**,
she nor her daughters,
as thou hast *done* **worked**,
thou and thy daughters.

49 Behold, this was the *iniquity* **perversity**
of thy sister Sodom **Sedom**,
pride **pomp**, *fulness* **sufficiency** of bread,
and *abundance* **the serenity** of *idleness* **resting**
was in her and in her daughters,
neither did she strengthen the hand
of the *poor* **humble** and needy.

50 And they were *haughty* **lifted themselves**,
and *committed abomination* **worked abhorrence**
before me **at my face**:
therefore I took **turned** them away **aside** as I saw good.

51 Neither hath Samaria **Shomeron**
committed **sinned** half of thy sins;
but thou hast *multiplied* **abounded**
thine *abominations* **abhorrences** more than they,
and hast justified thy sisters
in all thine *abominations* **abhorrences**
which thou hast *done* **worked**.

52 Thou also, which hast judged thy sisters,
bear thine own shame for thy sins that thou hast
committed more *abominable* **abhorrent** than they:
they are more *righteous* **justified** than thou:
yea, be thou *confounded* **shamed** also,
and bear thy shame,
in that thou hast justified thy sisters.

53 When I shall *bring again* **return** their captivity,
the captivity of Sodom **Sedom**
and her daughters,
and the captivity of Samaria **Shomeron**
and her daughters,
then will I *bring again* **and** the captivity of thy captives
in the midst of them:

54 That thou mayest bear thine own shame,
and mayest be confounded
in all that thou hast *done* **worked**,
in that thou *art a comfort unto* **sighest over** them.

55 When thy sisters, Sodom **Sedom** and her daughters,
shall return to their former estate,
and Samaria **Shomeron** and her daughters
shall return to their former estate,
then thou and thy daughters
shall return to your former estate.

56 For thy sister Sodom **Sedom**
was not *mentioned* **reported** by thy mouth
in the day of thy *pride* **pomp**,

57 Before thy *wickedness* **evil** was *discovered* **exposed**,
as at the time of thy reproach
of the daughters of Syria **Aram**,
and all that are round about her,
the daughters of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiy**,
which despise thee round about.

58 Thou hast borne thy *lewdness* **thine intrigue**
and thine *abominations* **abhorrences**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

59 For thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
I *will* **shall** even *deal* **work** with thee
as thou hast *done* **worked**,
which hast despised the oath in breaking the covenant.

60 *Nevertheless*
I *will* **shall** remember my covenant with thee
in the days of thy youth,
and I *will* **establish** **shall raise** unto thee
an *everlasting* **eternal** covenant.

61 Then thou shalt remember thy ways,
and *be* **ashamed** **shame**,
when thou shalt *receive* **take** thy sisters,
thine elder **thy greater** and thy younger:
and I *will* **shall** give them unto thee for daughters,
but not by thy covenant.

62 And I *will* **establish** **shall raise** my covenant with thee;
and thou shalt know that I am the LORD I — Yah Veh:

63 That thou mayest remember,
and *be* **confounded** **shame**,
and never open thy mouth any more
because **at the face** of thy shame,

YECHEZQ EL 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Sedom your sister
— neither she nor her daughters
work as you work
— you and your daughters.

49 Behold, this is the perversity of your sister Sedom:
pomp, sufficiency of bread,
and the serenity of resting
are in her and in her daughters,
she strengthens not the hand
of the humble and needy:
50 and they lift themselves
and work abhorrence at my face:
and I turn them aside when I see.

51 As for Shomeron:
she sins not the half of your sins;
but you abound your abhorrences more than they
and justify your sisters
in all the abhorrences you work.

52 You also, who judge your sisters,
bear your own shame for your sins
— more abhorrent than theirs:
they are justified more than you:
yes you, shame also and bear your shame
in that you justify your sisters.

53 When I restore their captivity
— the captivity of Sedom and her daughters
and the captivity of Shomeron and her daughters
and the captivity of your captives in their midst:

54 that you bear your own shame
and confound in all you work
in that you sigh over them.

55 When your sisters, Sedom and her daughters,
return to their former estate,
and Shomeron and her daughters
return to their former estate,
then you and your daughters
return to your former estate.

56 For your mouth reports not your sister Sedom
in the day of your pomp
ere your evil is exposed

57 as at the time of reproach of the daughters of Aram
and all those around her,
the daughters of the Peleshethiy,
who despise you all around.

58 You bear your intrigue and your abhorrences
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

59 For thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
I work with you as you work
— who despise the oath to break the covenant.

60 I remember my covenant with you
in the days of your youth;
and I raise to you an eternal covenant.

61 Then you remember your ways and shame
— when you take your sisters
— your greater and your younger:
and I give them to you for daughters,
— and not by your covenant:

62 and I raise my covenant with you;
and you know, I — Yah Veh:
so that you remember, and shame;
that you not open your mouth any more
at the face of your shame,

EZEKIEL 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

when I am *pacified* **kapared/atoned** toward thee
for all that thou hast *done* **worked**,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.**

TWO EAGLES AND A VINE

17 And the word of the LORD **Yah Veh**
came unto me, saying,
2 Son of man **humanity**, put forth **propound** a riddle,
and speak **proverbialize** a *parable* **proverb**
unto the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
3 And say, Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
A great eagle with great wings,
longwinged **long pinioned**, full of feathers **plumage**,
which had divers colours **of embroidery**,
came unto Lebanon,
and took the *highest branch* **foliage** of the cedar:
4 He *cropped* **plucked** off
the top of his *young twigs* **sapplings**,
and carried it into a land of *traffick* **merchandise**;
he set it in a *city of merchants* **Kenaan**.
5 He took also of the seed of the land,
and *planted* **gave** it in a fruitful field;
he *placed* **took** it by great waters,
and set it as a willow tree.
6 And it *grew* **sprouted**,
and became a spreading vine of low *stature* **height**,
whose branches *turned toward* **faced** him,
and the roots *thereof* were under him:
so it became a vine, and *brought forth* **worked** branches,
and *shot forth sprigs* **spread foliage**.
7 There was also *another* **one** great eagle
with great wings and *many feathers* **much plumage**:
and, behold,
this vine *did bend* **bent** her roots toward him,
and *shot forth* **spread** her branches toward him,
that he might *water* **moisten** it
by the furrows of her plantation.
8 It was *planted* **transplanted**
in a good *soil* **field** by great waters,
that it might *bring forth* **work** branches,
and that it might bear fruit,
that it might be a *goodly* **mighty** vine.
9 Say thou, Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
shall it prosper?
shall he not *pull up* **tear** the roots *thereof*,
and *cut* **lop** off the fruit *thereof*, that it wither?
it shall wither in all the *leaves* **prey** of her *spring* **sprout**,
even without great power or many people
to *pluck* **bear** it up by the roots *thereof*.
10 Yea, behold, being *planted* **transplanted**,
shall it prosper?
in withering, shall it not *utterly* wither,
when the east wind toucheth it?
it shall wither in the furrows *where it grew* **of the sprout**.
11 Moreover
the word of the LORD **Yah Veh** came unto me, saying,
12 Say *now* **I beseech**, to the rebellious house,
Know ye not what these *things mean* **be**?
tell them, Behold, the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
is come to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and hath taken the king **sovereign** *thereof*,
and the *princes* **governors** *thereof*,
and led them with him to *Babylon* **Babel**;
13 And hath taken of the *king's* seed **of the kingdom**,
and *made* **cut** a covenant with him,
and hath taken an oath of him:
he hath also taken the mighty of the land:
14 That the *kingdom* might **sovereigndom** be *base* **lowly**,
that it might not lift itself *up*,
but that by *keeping* **guarding** of his covenant
it might stand.
15 But he rebelled against him
in sending his *ambassadors* **angels** into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
that they might give him horses and much people.
shall he prosper?
shall he escape that *doeth* **worketh** such *things*?
or shall he break the covenant,
and be *delivered* **rescued**?
16 As I live,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**,

YECHEZQ EL 16, 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

when I *kapar/atone* for you for all you work
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

TWO EAGLES AND A VINE

17 So be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity, propound a riddle,
and proverbialize a proverb
to the house of Yisra El;
3 and say, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
A great eagle, great winged,
long pinioned, full of plumage, of embroidery,
comes to Lebanon;
and takes the foliage of the cedar;
4 he plucks off the top of his sapplings
and carries it into a land of merchandise;
he sets it in Kenaan:
5 and he takes of the seed of the land
and gives it in a fruitful field;
he takes it by great waters
and sets it as a willow tree;
6 and it sprouts
and becomes a spreading vine of low height
whose branches face him;
with the roots under him:
and thus it becomes a vine
and works branches and spreads foliage.
7 And there is one great eagle
with great wings and much plumage:
and behold, this vine bends her roots toward him
and spreads her branches toward him
so that he moistens it
by the furrows of her plantation.
8 It is transplanted in a good field by great waters,
so as to work branches and to bear fruit
— to become a mighty vine.
9 Say, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
It prospers!
Tears he not the roots,
and lops off the fruit, so it withers?
It withers in all the prey of her sprout,
even without great power or many people
to bear it up by the roots.
10 Yes, behold, transplanting, it prospers!
In withering, withers it not
when the east wind touches it?
It withers in the furrows of the sprout.
11 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
12 Say, I beseech, to the rebellious house,
Know you not what these *are*?
Tell, Behold,
the sovereign of Babel comes to Yeru Shalem,
and takes the sovereign and the governors
and leads them with him to Babel:
13 and takes of the seed of the kingdom
and cuts a covenant with him
and takes an oath of him:
he also takes the mighty of the land:
14 so that the sovereigndom becomes lowly
— that it not lift itself;
to guard his covenant, so that it stands.
15 And he rebels against him
by sending his angels into Misrayim,
so that they give him horses and much people.
Prosper he?
Escapes he who works such?
Or, breaks he the covenant and escapes?
16 I live
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh

EZEKIEL 17, 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

surely in the place
where the king dwelleth **of the sovereign**
that made **caused** him king to reign,
whose oath he despised, and whose covenant he brake,
even with him in the midst of *Babylon* **Babel** he shall die.

17 Neither shall *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
with his *mighty army* **great valiant**
and great *company* **congregation**
make **work** for him in the war,
by *casting up* **pouring** mounts,
and building *forts* **battering towers**,
to cut off many *persons* **souls**:

18 Seeing he despised the oath by breaking the covenant,
when, *lo* **behold**, he had given his hand,
and hath *done* **worked** all these *things*,
he shall not escape.

19 Therefore thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
As I live, surely mine oath that he hath despised,
and my covenant that he hath broken,
even it *will I recompense* **shall I give** upon his own head.

20 And I *will* **shall** spread my net upon him,
and he shall be *taken* **apprehended** in my *snare* **lure**,
and I *will* **shall** bring him to *Babylon* **Babel**,
and *will* **shall** plead with him there
for his *trespass* **treason**
that he hath *trespassed* **treasoned** against me.

21 And all his fugitives with all his bands
shall fall by the sword,
and they that *remain* **survive**
shall be scattered toward all winds:
and ye shall know
that I *the LORD* **Yah Veh** have *spoken* it **worded**.

22 Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
I *will* **shall** also take
of the *highest branch* **foliage** of the high cedar,
and *will* **set** **shall give** it;
I *will* **crop off** **shall pluck**
from the top of his *young twigs* **sprouts** a tender one,
and *will* **plant** **shall transplant** it
upon an high mountain and *eminent* **lofty**:

23 In the mountain of the height of *Israel* **Yisra El**
will I plant **shall I transplant** it:
and it shall *bring forth boughs* **bear branches**,
and *bear* **worketh** fruit, and be a *goodly* **mighty** cedar:
and under it
shall *dwell* **tabernacle** all *fowl* **bird** of every wing;
in the shadow of the branches *thereof*
shall they *dwell* **tabernacle**.

24 And all the trees of the field shall know
that I *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
have *brought down* **lowered** the high tree,
have *exalted* **heightened** the low tree,
have *dried up* **withered** the *green* **fresh** tree,
and have *made* **blossomed** the dry tree to *flourish*:
I *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
have *spoken* **worded** and have *done* **worked** it.

THE SINNING SOUL DIES

18 The word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** came unto me again,
saying,

2 What mean ye, that ye *use* **proverbialize** this proverb
concerning the *land* **soil** of *Israel* **Yisra El**, saying,
The fathers have eaten sour grapes,
and the *children's* **sons'** teeth are *set on edge* **dull**?

3 As I live,
saith the Lord **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**,
ye it shall not have *occasion* **become you** any more
to *use* **proverbialize** this proverb in *Israel* **Yisra El**.

4 Behold, all souls are mine;
as the soul of the father,
so also the soul of the son is mine:
the soul that sinneth, it shall die.

THE JUST MAN LIVES

5 But if a man be just,
and *do that which is lawful* **work judgment**
and *right* **justness**,

6 And hath not eaten upon the mountains,
neither hath lifted up his eyes
to the idols of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,

YECHEZQ EL 17, 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

in the place of the sovereign who has him reign
— whose oath he despises
and whose covenant he breaks,
dies he not with him midst Babel?

17 Not even Paroh
with his great valiant and great congregation
works for him in the war
by pouring mounds,
and building battering towers to cut off many souls:
18 seeing he despises the oath
by breaking the covenant,
and behold, he gives his hand to work all these;
he escapes not.

19 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh: I live!
My oath that he despises,
and my covenant that he breaks,
give I not on his own head?

20 And I spread my net on him
and apprehend him in my lure;
and I bring him to Babel,
and there I plead with him
for the treason he treasons against me:
21 and all his fugitives with all his bands
fall by the sword;
and scatter them who survive toward all winds:
and you know that I Yah Veh have worded.

22 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
I also take of the foliage of the high cedar
and give it;
I pluck a tender one from the top of his sprouts
and transplant it on a high and lofty mountain
23 — transplant it
in the mountain of the height of Yisra El:
and it bears branches and works fruit
and becomes a mighty cedar:
and all birds of every wing tabernacle under it;
in the shadow of the branches they tabernacle:
24 and all the trees of the field
know that I Yah Veh
lower the high tree; heighten the low tree:
wither the fresh tree; and blossom the dry tree:
I Yah Veh word and work it.

THE SINNING SOUL DIES

18 And so be word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 What mean you, that you proverbialize this proverb
concerning the soil of Yisra El, saying,
The fathers eat sour grapes,
and the teeth of the sons dull?

3 I live!
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
it becomes you no more
to proverbialize this proverb in Yisra El.

4 Behold, all souls are mine;
as the soul of the father,
thus also the soul of the son is mine:
the soul who sins, dies.

THE JUST MAN LIVES

5 And a man, being just,
who works judgment and justness,
6 who:
neither eats on the mountains
nor lifts his eyes to the idols of the house of Yisra El;

EZEKIEL 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

neither hath *defiled fouled*
his *neighbour's wife friend's woman*,
neither hath *come near approached*
to a *menstruous an excluded* woman,
7 And hath not oppressed any *man*,
but hath restored to the debtor his pledge,
in stripping, hath *spoiled none by violence not stripped*,
hath given his bread to the *hungry famished*,
8 and hath covered the naked with a *garment clothes*;
He that hath not given forth upon usury,
neither hath taken any *increase bounty*,
that hath *withdrawn turned* his hand
from *iniquity wickedness*,
hath *executed true worked* judgment in truth
between man and man,
9 Hath walked in my statutes,
and hath *kept guarded* my judgments,
to *deal truly work in truth*;
he is just, **in living**, heshall *surely* live,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.**

THE TYRANT SON OF A JUST MAN DIES

10 If he *beget birth* a son that is a *robber tyrant*,
a *shedder pourer* of blood,
and that *doeth the like to any one of these things*
worketh these to one of his brothers,
11 And that *doeth worketh* not any of those *duties*,
but even hath eaten upon the mountains,
and *defiled fouled* his *neighbour's wife friend's woman*,
12 Hath oppressed the *poor humble* and needy,
in stripping, hath *spoiled by violence stripped*,
hath not restored the pledge,
and hath lifted up his eyes to the idols,
hath *committed abomination worked* **abhorrence**,
13 Hath given forth upon usury,
and hath taken *increase bounty*:
shall he then live? he shall not live:
he hath *done worked*
all these *abominations* **abhorrences**;
in dying, heshall *surely* die;
his blood shall be upon him.

THE JUST SON OF THE UNJUST FATHER LIVES

14 Now, *lo behold*, if he *beget birth* a son,
that seeth all his father's sins
which he hath *done worked*,
and *considereth seeth*, and *doeth worketh* not such like,
15 That hath not eaten upon the mountains,
neither hath lifted up his eyes
to the idols of the house of *Israel Yisra El*,
hath not *defiled fouled*
his *neighbour's wife friend's woman*,
16 Neither hath oppressed any *man*,
hath not withholden the pledge,
neither hath spoiled by violence
in stripping, hath *not stripped*,
but hath given his bread to the *hungry famished*,
and hath covered the naked with a *garment clothes*,
17 That hath *taken off turned* his hand
from the *poor humble*,
that hath not *received taken* usury nor *increase bounty*,
hath *executed worked* my judgments,
hath walked in my statutes;
he shall not die for the *iniquity perversity* of his father,
in living, heshall *surely* live.

THE UNJUST FATHER OF THE JUST SON DIES

18 As for his father,
because **in oppressing**, he *cruelly* oppressed,
spoiled in stripping, stripped his brother *by violence*,
and *did worked* that which is not good
among his people,
lo behold, even he shall die in his *iniquity perversity*.
19 Yet say ye, Why?
doth not the son bear the *iniquity perversity* of the father?
When the son hath *done worked*
that which is *lawful judgment* and *right justness*,
and hath *kept guarded* all my statutes,
and hath *done worked* them,
in living, heshall *surely* live.
20 The soul that sinneth, it shall die.
The son shall not bear the *iniquity perversity* of the father,

YECHEZQ EL 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

neither fouls the woman of his friend
nor approaches an excluded woman;
7 neither oppresses man;
restores the pledge to the debtor;
in stripping, strips not;
gives his bread to the famished;
and covers the naked with clothes;
8 neither gives on usury
nor takes any bounty;
turns his hand from wickedness;
works judgment in truth between man and man;
9 walks in my statutes and guards my judgments
to work in truth;
he is just: in living, he lives
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE TYRANT SON OF A JUST MAN DIES

10 And he births a son
— a tyrant — a pourer of blood
and has a brother work one of these
11 — *though the father* works none of those:
he eats on the mountains;
and fouls the woman of his friend;
12 oppresses the humble and needy;
in stripping, strips and restores not the pledge;
and lifts his eyes to the idols;
works abhorrences;
13 gives forth on usury and takes bounty:
Lives he? He lives not!
In working all these abhorrences,
in dying, he dies!
His blood becomes on him.

THE JUST SON OF THE UNJUST FATHER LIVES

14 And behold, he births a son,
who sees all the sins his father worked
who sees, and works not likewise:
15 who neither eats on the mountains
nor lifts his eyes to the idols of the house of Yisra El;
nor fouls the woman of his friend;
neither oppresses man
nor withholden the pledge;
in stripping, strips not;
gives his bread to the famished;
16 covers the naked with clothes;
turns his hand to the humble;
neither takes usury nor bounty,
works my judgments,
walks in my statutes:
17 he dies not for the perversity of his father:
in living, he lives.

THE UNJUST FATHER OF THE JUST SON DIES

18 His father,
because in oppressing, he oppresses,
in stripping, strips his brother,
and works what is not good among his people,
behold, even he dies in his perversity.

19 And say you, Why?
Bears not the son the perversity of the father?
The son who works judgment and justness;
guards all my statutes and works them;
in living, he lives.
20 The soul who sins, dies.
Neither the son bears the perversity of the father

EZEKIEL 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

neither shall the father bear the *iniquity* **perversity** of the son:
the *righteousness* **justness** of the *righteous* **just**
shall be upon him,
and the wickedness of the wicked shall be upon him.

THE WICKED WHO TURNS TO JUSTNESS LIVES

21 But if the wicked *will* **shall** turn from all his sins
that he hath *committed* **worked**,
and *keep* **guard** all my statutes,
and *do that which is lawful* **work judgment**
and *right* **justness**,
22 **in living**, he shall *surely* live, he shall not die.
All his *transgressions* **rebellions**
that he hath *committed* **worked**,
they shall not be *mentioned* **remembered** unto him:
in his *righteousness* **justness** that he hath *done* **worked**
he shall live.

23 Have I any *pleasure* **desire** at all
that the wicked should die?
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh:
and not that he should return from his ways, and live?

24 But when the *righteous* **just**
turneth away from his *righteousness* **justness**,
and *committeth iniquity* **worketh wickedness**,
and *doeth* **worketh**
according to all the *abominations* **abhorrences**
that the wicked *man doeth* **worketh**,
shall he live?
All his *righteousness* **justness** that he hath *done* **worked**
shall not be *mentioned* **remembered**:
in his *trespass* **treason** that he hath *trespassed* **treasoned**,
and in his sin that he hath sinned, in them shall he die.

THE GAGE OF JUSTNESS

25 Yet ye say,
The way of the Lord is not equal **Adonay gaugeth not**.
Hear now **I beseech**, O house of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Is not my way equal **gauged**?
are not your ways *unequal* **ungauged**?
26 When a *righteous man* **the just**
turneth away from his *righteousness* **justness**,
and *committeth iniquity* **worketh wickedness**,
and dieth in them;
for his *iniquity* **wickedness** that he hath *done* **worked**
shall he die.

27 Again, when the wicked *man* turneth away
from his wickedness that he hath *committed* **worked**,
and *doeth that which is lawful* **worketh judgment**
and *right* **justness**,
he shall save his soul alive **his soul shall live**.

28 Because he *considereth* **seeth**,
and turneth away from all his *transgressions* **rebellions**
that he hath *committed* **worked**,
in living, he shall *surely* live, he shall not die.

29 Yet saith the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
The way of the Lord **Adonay** is not equal **gauged**.
O house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
are not my ways equal **gauged**?
are not your ways *unequal* **not gauged**?

30 Therefore I *will* **shall** judge you,
O house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
every *one* **man** according to his ways,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
Repent, and turn *yourselves*

from all your *transgressions* **rebellions**;
so *iniquity* **perversity**
shall not be your *ruin* **stumblingblock**.
31 Cast away from you all your *transgressions* **rebellions**,
whereby ye have *transgressed* **rebelled**;
and *make* **work** you a new heart and a new spirit:
for why *will* **shall** ye die, O house of *Israel* **Yisra El**?

32 For I have no *pleasure* **delight**
in the death of him that dieth,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh:
wherefore turn *yourselves*, and live ye.

LAMENTATION

19 Moreover take **lift** thou up a lamentation
for the *princes* **hierarchs** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
2 And say, What is thy mother? A **roaring** lioness:
she lay down **crouched** among lions,

YECHEZQ EL 18, 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

nor the father bears the perversity of the son:
the justness of the just becomes on him,
and the wickedness of the wicked becomes on him.

THE WICKED WHO TURNS TO JUSTNESS LIVES

21 And if the wicked turns from all his sins he works
and guards all my statutes
and works judgment and justness;
in living, he lives; he dies not:
22 all the rebellions he worked
are not remembered to him:
in the justness he works, he lives.

23 Desire I at all that the wicked die?
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
and not that he return from his ways, and live?

24 But when the just turns from his justness,
and works wickedness,
and works according to all the abhorrences
the wicked work,
lives he?
All the justness he worked are not remembered:
in his treason, he treasoned,
and in the sin he sinned, he dies.

THE GAUGE OF JUSTNESS

25 And you say,
The way of Adonay gauges not.

Hear, I beseech, O house of Yisra El;
Is not my way gauged?
are not your ways ungauged?
26 When the just turns from his justness
and works wickedness
and dies in them,
for the wickedness he worked, he dies.

27 And when the wicked
turns from the wickedness he worked,
and works judgment and justness,
his soul lives:
because he sees
28 and turns from all the rebellions he worked;
in living, he lives: he dies not.

29 And the house of Yisra El says,
The way of Adonay is not gauged.

O house of Yisra El, are not my ways gauged?
Are not your ways not gauged?
30 So I judge you, O house of Yisra El,
every man according to his ways
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

Repent, and turn from all your rebellions;
so that perversity
becomes not your stumblingblock.
31 Cast from you all the rebellions you rebelled;
and work yourself a new heart and a new spirit:
and why die, O house of Yisra El?
32 For I delight not in the death of the dying
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
and you, turn and live.

LAMENTATION

19 And you,
lift a lamentation for the hierarchs of Yisra El,
and say, What is your mother?
A roaring lioness!
She crouches among lions,

EZEKIEL 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

she *nourished* **greatened** her whelps
among *young lions* **whelps**.
3 And she *brought up* **ascended** one of her whelps:
it became a *young lion* **whelp**,
and it learned to *catch the prey*;
it devoured *men* **humanity**.
4 The *nations* **goyim** also heard of him;
he was *taken* **apprehended** in their pit of **ruin**,
and they brought him with *chains* **hooks**
unto the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
5 Now when she saw that she had waited,
and her hope was **lost/destroyed**,
then she took *another one* of her whelps,
and *made set* him a *young lion* **whelp**.
6 And he went up and down among the lions,
he became a *young lion* **whelp**,
and learned to *catch the prey*,
and devoured *men* **humanity**.
7 And he knew their *desolate palaces* **abandonments**,
and he *laid waste* **parched** their cities;
and the land was desolate, and the fulness thereof,
by the *noise* **voice** of his roaring.
8 Then the *nations* **set goyim gave** against him
on every side **round about**
from the *provinces* **jurisdictions**,
and spread their net over him:
he was *taken* **apprehended** in their pit of **ruin**.
9 And they *put gave* him in *ward* **a cage** in *chains* **hooks**,
and brought him to the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**:
they brought him into *holds* **huntholds**,
that his voice should no more be heard
upon the mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
10 Thy mother is like a vine in thy blood,
planted **transplanted** by the waters:
she was *fruitful* **bore fruit** and *full of branches* **branched**
by reason of many waters.
11 And she had *strong rods* **of strength**
for the *sceptres* **scions** of them that *bare rule* **reigned**,
and her *stature* **height** was *exalted* **heightened**
among the *thick branches* **foliage**,
and she *appeared* **was seen** in her height
with the *multitude* **abundance** of her branches.
12 But she was *plucked up* **uprooted** in fury,
she was cast down to the *ground* **earth**,
and the east wind *dried up* **withered** her fruit:
her *strong rods* **of strength** were broken **off** and withered;
the fire consumed them.
13 And now she is *planted* **transplanted** in the wilderness,
in a *dry* **parched** and thirsty *ground* **earth**.
14 And fire is gone out of a rod of her branches,
which hath *devoured* **consumed** her fruit,
so that she hath no *strong rod* **of strength**
to be a *sceptre* **scion** to *rule* **reign**.
This is a lamentation, and shall be for a lamentation.

THE ABHORRENCES OF YISRA EL

20 And **so be** it *came to pass* in the seventh year,
in the fifth *month*, the tenth *day* of the month,
that *certain men* of the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**
came to enquire of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and sat *before me* **at my face**.
2 Then came the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** unto me,
saying,
3 Son of *man* **humanity**,
speak word unto the elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and say unto them,
Thus saith the *Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**:
Are ye come to enquire of me?
As I live,
saith the Lord **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**,
I *will* **shall** not be enquired of by you.
4 *Wilt* **Shalt** thou judge them, son of *man* **humanity**,
wilt shalt thou judge them?
cause them to know
the *abominations* **abhorrences** of their fathers:
5 And say unto them,
Thus saith the *Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**:
In the day when I chose *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and lifted up mine hand
unto the seed of the house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,

YECHEZQ EL 19, 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

she *greatens* her whelps among whelps:
3 and she ascends one of her whelps:
it becomes a whelp that learns to prey;
it devours humanity:
4 and the goyim hear of him
and apprehend him in their pit of ruin:
and with hooks
they bring him to the land of Misrayim.
5 when she sees, that in waiting, her hope destructs,
she takes one of her whelps,
and sets him a whelp:
6 and he goes up and down among the lions,
he becomes a whelp and learns to prey
and devours humanity.
7 And he knows their abandonments;
and he parches their cities;
and the land, and the fulness thereof desolates
by the voice of his roaring.
8 And the goyim give against him
from all around the jurisdictions;
and spread their net over him:
and apprehend him in their pit of ruin:
9 and with hooks they give him in a cage,
and bring him to the sovereign of Babel:
they bring him into the huntholds
so that his voice is heard no more
on the mountains of Yisra El.
10 Your mother is as a vine in your blood
transplanted by the waters:
she bears fruit and branches
by reason of many waters:
11 and she has rods of strength
for the scions of them who reign;
and her height heightens among the foliage,
and she is seen in her height
with the abundance of her branches:
12 and she is uprooted in fury
— cast down to the earth;
and the east wind withers her fruit:
her rods of strength break and wither;
the fire consumes them:
13 and now she is transplanted in the wilderness
— in a parched and thirsty earth:
14 and fire comes from a rod of her branches,
which consumes her fruit,
so that she has no rod of strength
to become a scion to reign.
This is a lamentation; and becomes for a lamentation.

THE ABHORRENCES OF YISRA EL

20 And so be it, in the seventh year,
in the fifth, in the tenth of the month,
men of the elders of Yisra El
come to enquire of Yah Veh, and sit at my face.
2 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
3 Son of humanity,
word to the elders of Yisra El, and say to them,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Come you to enquire of me?
I live!
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
I *am* not enquired of by you.
4 Judge you them, son of humanity?
Judge you them?
5 Have them know the abhorrences of their fathers:
and say to them,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
In the day I chose Yisra El,
and lifted my hand
to the seed of the house of Yaaqov,

EZEKIEL 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and made myself known unto them
in the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
when I lifted up mine hand unto them, saying,
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God Elohim;
6 In the day that I lifted up mine hand unto them,
to bring them forth of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*
into a land that I had *espied explored* for them,
flowing with milk and honey,
which is the *glory splendour* of all lands:
7 Then said I unto them,
Cast ye away every man the abominations of his eyes,
and *defile foul* not yourselves
with the idols of *Egypt Misrayim*:
I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God Elohim.
8 But they rebelled against me,
and *would willed to* not hearken unto me:
they did not every man
cast away the abominations of their eyes,
neither did they forsake the idols of *Egypt Misrayim*:
then I said, I *will shall* pour out my fury upon them,
to *accomplish finish off* my *anger wrath* against them
in the midst of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
9 But I *wrought worked* for my name's sake,
that it should not be *polluted profaned*
before in the eyes of the heathen goyim,
among whom they were,
in whose *sight eyes* I made myself known unto them,
in bringing them forth out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
10 Wherefore I caused them to go forth
out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
and brought them into the wilderness.
11 And I gave them my statutes,
and *shewed caused* them *to know* my judgments,
which if a *man do human work*,
he shall even live in them.
12 Moreover also I gave them my *sabbaths shabbaths*,
to be a sign between me and *between* them,
that they might know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*
that *sanctify hallow* them.
13 But the house of *Israel Yisra El*
rebelled against me in the wilderness:
they walked not in my statutes,
and they *despised spurned* my judgments,
which if a *man do human work*,
he shall even live in them;
and my *sabbaths shabbaths*
they *greatly polluted mightily profaned*:
then I said,
I *would should* pour out my fury upon them
in the wilderness, to consume them.
14 But I *wrought worked* for my name's sake,
that it should not be *polluted profaned*
before in the eyes of the heathen goyim,
in whose *sight eyes* I brought them out.
15 Yet also
I lifted up my hand unto them in the wilderness,
that I *would should* not bring them into the land
which I had given them,
flowing with milk and honey,
which is the glory of all lands;
16 Because they *despised spurned* my judgments,
and walked not in my statutes,
but *polluted profaned* my *shabbaths shabbaths*:
for their heart went after their idols.
17 Nevertheless
mine eye spared them from *destroying ruining* them,
neither did I *make an end work a final finish*
of them in the wilderness.
18 But I said unto their *children sons* in the wilderness,
Walk ye not in the statutes of your fathers,
neither *observe guard* their judgments,
nor *defile foul* yourselves with their idols:
19 *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God Elohim*;
walk in my statutes,
and *keep guard* my judgments, and *do work* them;
20 And hallow my *sabbaths shabbaths*;
and they shall be a sign between me and *between* you,
that ye may know
that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh your God Elohim*.

YECHEZQ EL 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and made myself known to them
in the land of Misrayim,
when I lifted my hand to them, saying,
I — Yah Veh your Elohim:
6 the day I lifted my hand to them,
to bring them from the land of Misrayim
to a land I explored for them
— flowing with milk and honey
— the splendor of all lands:
7 and I say to them,
You, every man
cast away the abominations of his eyes
and foul not yourselves with the idols of Misrayim:
I — Yah Veh your Elohim.
8 And they rebel against me
and will to not hearken to me:
they — every man
neither cast away the abominations of their eyes,
nor forsake the idols of Misrayim.
And I say, I pour my fury on them
to finish off my wrath against them
midst the land of Misrayim.
9 And for sake of my name,
I work to not profane it in the eyes of the goyim,
among whom they are
in whose eyes I make myself known to them
in bringing them from the land of Misrayim:
10 and I bring them from the land of Misrayim
and bring them into the wilderness:
and I give them my statutes
so that they know my judgments
— which, if a human works, he lives in them:
and also, I give them my shabbaths,
to become a sign between me and between them
so that they know that I Yah Veh hallow them.
11 And the house of Yisra El
rebels against me in the wilderness:
they walk not in my statutes
and they spurn my judgments
— which, if a human works, he lives in them;
and they mightily profane my shabbaths:
and I say,
I pour my fury on them in the wilderness
to consume them.
12 And for sake of my name,
I worked to not profane in the eyes of the goyim,
in whose eyes I brought them out.
13 And also,
I lifted my hand to them in the wilderness,
to not bring them into the land I gave them
— flowing with milk and honey
— the glory of all lands;
14 because they spurned my judgments
and walked not in my statutes;
and profaned my shabbaths:
for their heart went after their idols:
and my eye spared them from ruin:
and I worked not their final finish in the wilderness.
15 But I say to their sons in the wilderness,
Neither walk in the statutes of your fathers
nor guard their judgments
nor foul yourselves with their idols:
16 I — Yah Veh your Elohim!
Walk in my statutes
and guard my judgments and work them;
and hallow my shabbaths;
20 to become a sign between me and between you,
so that you know I — Yah Veh your Elohim.

EZEKIEL 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

21 Notwithstanding the *children sons* rebelled against me:
they walked not in my statutes,
neither *kept guarded* my judgments to *do work* them,
which if a *man do human work*,
he shall even live in them;
they *polluted profaned* my *sabbaths shabbaths*:
then I said, I *would shall* pour out my fury upon them,
to accomplish my *anger wrath* against them
in the wilderness.

22 *Nevertheless I withdrew I turned* mine hand,
and *wrought worked* for my name's sake,
that it should not be *polluted profaned*
in the *sight eyes* of the *heathen goyim*,
in whose *sight eyes* I brought them forth.

23 I lifted up mine hand unto them also in the wilderness,
that I *would should* scatter them
among the *heathen goyim*,
and *disperse winnow* them through the *countries lands*;
Because they had not *executed worked* my judgments,
but had despised my statutes,
and had *polluted profaned* my *sabbaths shabbaths*,
and their eyes were after their fathers' idols.

25 Wherefore I gave them also
statutes that were not good,
and judgments whereby they should not live;

26 And I *polluted fouled* them in their own *gifts offerings*,
in that they caused to pass through *the fire*
all that *openeth bursteth* the womb,
that I might *make them* desolate *them*,
to the end that
they might know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.

27 Therefore, son of *man humanity*,
speak word unto the house of *Israel Yisra El*,
and say unto them,
Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Yet in this your fathers have blasphemed me,
in that they have
committed treasured a trespass treason against me.

28 For when I had brought them into the land,
for the which I lifted up mine hand to give it to them,
then they saw every high hill, and all the thick trees,
and they *offered sacrificed* there their sacrifices,
and there they *presented gave*
the *provocation vexation* of their *offering qorban*:
there also they *made set* their *sweet savour scent of rest*,
and *poured out libated* there
their *drink offerings libations*.

29 Then I said unto them,
What is the *high place bamah* whereunto ye go?
And the name *thereof* is called Bamah unto this day.

30 **THE IDOLATRY OF THE HOUSE OF YISRA EL**
Wherefore say unto the house of *Israel Yisra El*,
Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Are ye polluted fouled
after the *manner way* of your fathers?
and *commit ye whoredom whore ye*
after their abominations?

31 For when ye *offer bear* your *gifts offerings*,
when ye *make cause* your sons to pass through the fire,
ye *pollute foul* yourselves with all your idols,
even unto this day:
and shall I be enquired of by you,
O house of *Israel Yisra El*?
As I live,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
I *will shall* not be enquired of by you.

32 And that
which *cometh ascendeth* into your *mind spirit*
shall not be at all,
that ye say, We *will shall* be as the *heathen goyim*,
as the families of the *countries lands*,
to *serve wood minister timber* and stone.

33 **THE JUDGMENT AND RESTORATION OF YISRA EL**
As I live,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
surely with a *mighty strong* hand,
and with a *stretched out spread* arm,
and with fury poured out,
will I rule shall I reign over you:

YECHEZQ EL 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

21 And the sons rebel against me:
and they neither walk in my statutes
nor guard my judgments to work them
— which, if a human works, he lives in them:
they profane my shabbaths.

And I say, I pour my fury on them
to accomplish my wrath against them
in the wilderness.
I turn my hand,
and work for sake of my name,
not to profane in the eyes of the goyim,
in whose eyes I brought them forth.

23 I also — I lift my hand to them in the wilderness
to scatter them among the goyim
and winnow them through the lands
because they work not my judgments;
and despise my statutes and profane my shabbaths:
and their eyes are after the idols of their fathers.

25 And I also — I give them statutes — not good
and judgments whereby they live not;
and I foul them in their own offerings
in that they pass through all who burst the womb
so that I desolate them
so that they know, I — Yah Veh.

27 So, son of humanity,
word to the house of Yisra El, and say to them,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Yet in this your fathers blasphemed me,
in treasoning a treason against me.

28 And I bring them into the land
for which I lifted my hand to give it to them,
and they see every high hill and all the thick trees;
and there they sacrifice their sacrifices,
and there they give the vexation of their qorban:
there they also set their scent of rest
and there they libate their libations.

29 And I say to them,
What is the bamah to which you go?
— and the name is called Bamah to this day.

THE IDOLATRY OF THE HOUSE OF YISRA EL

30 So say to the house of Yisra El,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Why foul you after the way of your fathers?
And whore after their abominations?
And when you bear your offerings
— when you pass your sons through the fire
you foul yourselves with all your idols to this day:
and *am I* inquired of by you, O house of Yisra El?
— I live
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
I *am* not inquired of by you.

32 And that which ascends into your spirit,
saying, We become as the goyim
— as the families of the lands
to minister timber and stone
surely becomes not.

THE JUDGMENT AND RESTORATION OF YISRA EL

33 I live
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
surely with a strong hand and with a spread arm
and with fury poured out
I reign over you:

EZEKIEL 20

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

34 And I **will shall** bring you out from the people,
and **will shall** gather you out of the *countries lands*
wherein ye are scattered,
with a *mighty strong* hand, and with a *stretched out spread* arm,
and with fury poured out.

35 And I **will shall** bring you
into the wilderness of the people,
and there **will shall** I plead with you face to face.

36 Like as I pleaded with your fathers
in the wilderness of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*,
so **will shall** I plead with you,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

37 And I **will shall** cause you to pass under the *rod scion*,
and I **will shall** bring you into the bond of the covenant:

38 And I **will shall** purge out from among you the rebels,
and them that *transgress rebel* against me:
I **will shall** bring them forth
out of the *country land* where they sojourn,
and they shall not enter into the *land soil* of *Israel Yisra El*:
and ye shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.*

39 As for you, O house of *Israel Yisra El*,
thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Go ye, serve ye every *one man* his idols,
and *hereafter also afterward*,
if ye **will shall** not hearken unto me:
but *pollute profane* ye my holy name no more
with your *gifts offerings*, and with your idols.

40 For in mine holy mountain,
in the mountain of the height of *Israel Yisra El*,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
there shall all the house of *Israel Yisra El*,
all of them in the land, serve me:
there **will I accept shall I be pleased with** them,
and there **will shall** I require your *offerings exaltments*,
and the *firstfruits firstlings*
of your *oblations loads/burdens*,
with all your *holy things holies*.

41 I **will accept you shall be pleased**
with your *sweet savour scent of rest*,
when I bring you out from the people,
and gather you out of the *countries lands*
wherein ye have been scattered;
and I **will shall** be *sanctified hallowed* in you
before in the eyes of the heathen goyim.

42 And ye shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*,
when I shall bring you into the *land soil* of *Israel Yisra El*,
into the *country land* for the which I lifted up mine hand
to give it to your fathers.

43 And there shall ye remember your ways,
and all your *doings exploits*,
wherein ye have been *defiled fouled*;
and ye shall lothe yourselves in your own *sight face*
for all your evils that ye have *committed worked*.

44 And ye shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*,
when I have *wrought worked* with you for my name's sake,
not according to your *wicked evil* ways,
nor according to your corrupt *doings exploits*,
O ye house of *Israel Yisra El*,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

45 **THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING THE SOUTH**
Moreover

46 the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came unto me, saying,
Son of *man humanity*,
set thy face *toward the south in the southerly way*,
and drop thy word *toward the south southward*,
and prophesy against the forest of the south field;

47 And say to the forest of the south,
Hear the word of *the LORD Yah Veh*;
Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Behold, I **will shall** kindle a fire in thee,
and it shall *devour consume* every *green fresh* tree in thee,
and every dry tree:
the flaming flame shall not be quenched,
and all faces from the south to the north
shall be *burned inflamed therein*.

48 And all flesh shall see
that I *the LORD Yah Veh* have *kindled burnt* it:
it shall not be quenched.

YECHEZQ EL 20

exeGeses companion BIBLE

34 and I bring you from the people
and gather you from the lands wherein you scatter
with a strong hand and with a spread arm
and pour with fury:

35 and I bring you into the wilderness of the people,
and there I plead with you face to face:

36 as I pleaded with your fathers
in the wilderness of the land of Misrayim,
thus I plead with you
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
and I pass you under the scion
and I bring you into the bond of the covenant:
and I purge the rebels from among you,
and they who rebel against me:
I bring them from the land where they sojourn
and they enter not into the soil of Yisra El:
and you know I — Yah Veh.

39 As for you, O house of Yisra El,
thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
You, go every man; serve his idols:
and afterward, if you neither hearken to me,
nor profane my holy name any more
with your offerings and with your idols —
for in my holy mountain
— in the mountain of the height of Yisra El
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
there all the house of Yisra El
— all of them in the land, serve me:
there I *am* pleased with them,
and there I require your exaltments,
and the firstlings of your loads/burdens,
with all your holies.

41 I *am* pleased with your scent of rest
when I bring you out from the people;
and gather you from the lands wherein you scattered;
and I *am* hallowed in you in the eyes of the goyim:
and you know I — Yah Veh,
when I bring you into the soil of Yisra El,
into the land for which I lifted my hand
to give it to your fathers:

43 and there you remember your ways
and all your exploits wherein you fouled;
and you loathe yourselves in your own face
for all the evils you worked:
and you know I — Yah Veh,
when I work with you for sake of my name
— neither according to your evil ways
nor according to your corrupt exploits
O you house of Yisra El
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

45 **THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING THE SOUTH**
And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
Son of humanity,
set your face in the southerly way
and drop southward
and prophesy against the forest of the south field;
and say to the forest of the south,
Hear the word of Yah Veh;
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I kindle a fire in you;
and it consumes every fresh tree in you
and every dry tree:
the flaming flame quenches not;
and all faces from the south to the north inflame:
and all flesh sees that I Yah Veh burn it:
it quenches not.

EZEKIEL 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

49 Then said I, *Ah Lord GOD Aha Adonay Yah Veh!*
they say of me,
Doth he not *speak parables proverbialize proverbs?*
THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING YISRA EL

21 And the word of the *LORD Yah Veh* came unto me,
saying,
2 Son of *man humanity*,
set thy face toward *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and drop *thy word* toward the *holy places holies*,
and prophesy against the *land soil of Israel Yisra El*,
3 And say to the *land soil of Israel Yisra El*,
Thus saith the *LORD Yah Veh*; Behold, I am against thee,
and *will shall* draw forth my sword out of his sheath,
and *will shall* cut off from thee
the *righteous just* and the wicked.
4 *Seeing then that I will Because I shall*
cut off from thee the *righteous just* and the wicked,
therefore shall my sword go forth out of his sheath
against all flesh from the south to the north:
5 That all flesh may know that I the *LORD Yah Veh*
have drawn forth my sword out of his sheath:
it shall not return any more.
6 Sigh therefore, thou son of *man humanity*,
with the breaking of thy loins;
and with bitterness sigh *before in front of* their eyes.
7 And *so be* it *shall be*, when they say unto thee,
Wherefore sighest thou?
that thou shalt *answer say*, For the *tidings report*;
because it cometh:
and every heart shall melt,
and all hands shall *be feeble slacken*,
and every spirit shall *faint dim*,
and all knees shall be *weak* as water:
behold, it cometh, and shall be *brought to pass*,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING THE SWORD

8 Again the word of the *LORD Yah Veh* came unto me,
saying,
9 Son of *man humanity*, prophesy, and say,
Thus saith the *LORD Yah Veh*;
Say, A sword,
a sword is sharpened, and *also furbished polished*:
10 It is sharpened to *make a sore slaughter a* slaughter;
it is *furbished polished that it may glitter as lightning*:
should we then *make mirth rejoice*?
it *contemneth spurneth the rod scion* of my son, as every tree.
11 And he hath given it to be *furbished polished*,
that it may be *handled manipulated by the palm*:
this sword is sharpened, and it is *furbished polished*,
to give it into the hand of the *slayer slaughterer*.
12 Cry and howl, son of *man humanity*:
for *so be* it *shall be* upon my people,
so be it *shall be* upon all the *princes hierarchs of Israel Yisra El*:
terrors by reason of precipitation as to the sword
shall be upon my people:
smite slap therefore upon thy *thigh flank*.
13 Because it is a *trial to proof*,
and what if *the sword contemn it spurneth*
even the *rod scion*?
so be it *shall be* no more,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
14 Thou therefore, son of *man humanity*, prophesy,
and smite *thine hands thy palms* together.
and let the sword be doubled the third *time*,
the sword of the *slain pierced*:
it is the sword of the great *men* that are *slain pierced*,
which entereth into their privy in their chambers.
15 I have set *given* the *point brandish* of the sword
against all their *gates portals*,
that their heart may *faint melt*,
and their *ruins be multiplied stumblingblocks* abound:
ah Ach! it is made *bright lightning*,
it is wrapped up for the slaughter.
16 *Go thee one way or other*,
either Unite on the right *hand*, or *set* on the left,
whithersoever thy face is set *congregateth*.
17 I *will shall* also smite mine *hands palms* together,
and I *will shall* cause my fury to rest:
I the *LORD Yah Veh* have said it *worded*.

YECHEZQ EL 20, 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

49 Then I say, Aha, Adonay Yah Veh!
they say of me,
Proverbializes he not proverbs?

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING YISRA EL

21 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
set your face toward Yeru Shalem
and drop toward the holies;
and prophesy against the soil of Yisra El:
3 and say to the soil of Yisra El,
Thus says Yah Veh: Behold, I am against you,
and draw my sword from its sheath;
and cut off from you the just and the wicked.
4 Because I cut off from you the just and the wicked,
so my sword comes from its sheath
against all flesh from the south to the north:
5 so that all flesh knows that I Yah Veh
draw my sword from his sheath:
to return no more:
6 and you, son of humanity,
sigh with the breaking of your loins;
and sigh with bitterness in front of their eyes.
7 And so be it, when they say to you, Why sigh you?
that you say, Because of the report; for it comes:
and every heart melts and all hands slacken
and every spirit dims and all knees as water:
behold, it comes, and so be it
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING THE SWORD

8 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
9 Son of humanity, prophesy;
and say, Thus says Yah Veh:
Say, A sword — a sword sharpened and polished
10 — sharpened to slaughter a slaughter
— polished as lightning:
Rejoice we?
11 It spurns the scion of my son, as every tree.
And he gives to polish
— to manipulate by the palm:
this sword, sharpened and polished,
to give into the hand of the slaughterer.
12 Cry and howl, son of humanity:
so be it on my people
— on all the hierarchs of Yisra El:
precipitation as to the sword:
so be it on my people:
so slap on your flank:
because it is to proof:
13 and what if it spurns even the scion?
So be it not
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
14 And you, son of humanity, prophesy;
and smite your palms together:
and double the sword thrice
— the sword of the pierced
— the sword of the great
who are pierced, in their chambers.
15 I give to brandish the sword
against all their portals;
to melt their heart
and abound their stumblingblocks:
Ach! it is made lightning,
— wrapped for the slaughter.
16 Unite on the right; set on the left:
— wherever your face congregates!
17 And I also — I smite my palms together,
and I rest my fury:
I Yah Veh have worded.

EZEKIEL 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 The word of the *LORD Yah Veh* came unto me again,
saying,
19 Also, thou son of *man humanity*,
appoint set thee two ways,
that the sword of the *king sovereign* of *Babylon Babel*
may come:
both *twain two* shall come forth out of one land:
and choose thou a *place hand*,
choose cut it at the head of the way to the city.
20 *Appoint Set* a way,
that the sword may come
to *Rabbath Rabbah* of the *Ammonites sons of Ammon*,
and to *Judah Yah Hudah* in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
the *defenced fortified*.
21 For the *king sovereign* of *Babylon Babel*
stood at the *parting mother* of the way,
at the head of the two ways, to use *divine* divination:
he *made sharpened* his arrows *bright*,
he *consulted with images asked of teraphim*,
he *looked saw* in the liver.
22 At his right *hand*
was the divination for *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
to *appoint captains set rams*,
to open the mouth in the *slaughter murder*,
to lift up the voice with shouting,
to *appoint battering set* rams against the *gates portals*,
to *cast pour* a mound, and to build a *fort battering tower*.
23 And *so be* it shall be unto them
as a *false vain* divination in their *sight eyes*,
to them that have *sworn oathed* oaths:
but he *will call to remembrance shall remember*
the *iniquity perversity*,
that they may be *taken apprehended*.
24 Therefore thus saith the *Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Because ye have
made memorialized your *iniquity perversity*
to be remembered,
in that your *transgressions rebellions*
are *discovered exposed*,
so that in all your *doings exploits*
your sins *do appear be seen*;
because, *I say*,
that ye *are come to remembrance have memorialized*,
ye shall be *taken apprehended* with the *hand palm*.
25 And thou,
profane wicked *prince hierarch* of *Israel Yisra El*,
whose day is come,
when *iniquity the time of perversity*
have an end shall be ended,
26 Thus saith the *Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Remove Turn aside the *diadem tiara*,
and *take lift* off the crown: this shall not be the same:
exalt lift him that is low, and abase him that is high.
27 *I will overturn Perverted, overturn perverted,*
overturn, perverted!
I set it: and *so be* it shall be no more,
until he come whose *right judgment* it is;
and *I will shall* give it *him*.
28 And thou, son of *man humanity*, prophesy and say,
Thus saith the *Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*
concerning the *Ammonites sons of Ammon*,
and concerning their reproach;
even say thou, The sword, the sword is *drawn loosed*:
for the slaughter it is *furbished polished*,
to consume because of the *glittering lightning*:
29 Whiles they see vanity unto thee,
whiles they divine a lie unto thee,
to *bring give* thee upon the necks
of them that are *slain pierced*,
of the wicked, whose day *is come has approached*,
when *the time of* their *iniquity perversity*
shall *have an end*.
30 Shall I cause it to return into his sheath?
I will shall judge thee
in the place where thou wast created,
in the land of thy *nativity origin*.
31 And *I will shall* pour out mine *indignation rage*
upon thee,
I will blow shall puff against thee in the fire of my wrath,

YECHEZQ EL 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 And so be the word of *Yah Veh* to me, saying,
19 And you, son of humanity,
set you two ways,
for the sword of the sovereign of Babel to come:
the two both come forth from one land:
and choose a hand,
cut it at the head of the way to the city:
set a way for the sword to come
— to Rabbah of the sons of Ammon
and to Yah Hudah in Yeru Shalem, the fortified.
20 For the sovereign of Babel
stands at the mother of the way
— at the head of the two ways, to divine divination:
he sharpens his arrows; he asks of teraphim:
he sees in the liver:
21 at his right *is* the divination for Yeru Shalem:
to set rams,
to open the mouth in the murder,
to lift the voice with shouting,
to set rams against the portals,
to pour a mound
and to build a battering tower.
22 And so be it to them
as a vain divination in their eyes
— to them who oath oaths:
and he remembers the perversity,
to apprehend them.
23 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because you memorialize your perversity,
in that you expose your rebellions
so that your sins are seen in all your exploits:
because you memorialize,
you are apprehended by the palm.
24 And you, profane wicked hierarch of Yisra El,
whose day approaches
in the time of perversity of the end.
25 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Turn aside the tiara, and lift off the crown:
this — not this
lift the low; and abase the high:
Perverted! Perverted! Perverted!
I set it: and so be it no more,
until he comes whose judgment it is;
and I give it.
26 And you, son of humanity, prophesy and say,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh
concerning the sons of Ammon
and concerning their reproach:
and say, The sword! Loosen the sword!
— polished for the slaughter
to consume because of the lightning.
27 As they see vanity for you,
as they divine a lie for you,
to give you on the necks of the pierced
— of the wicked whose day approaches,
the time of the perversity of the end.
28 Return it to his sheath.
I judge you in the place you were created
— in the land of your origin:
and I pour my rage on you;
I puff against you in the fire of my wrath

EZEKIEL 21, 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and deliver give thee into the hand
of brutish men men of burning,
and skilful engravers to destroy ruin.
32 Thou shalt be for fuel to the fire;
thy blood shall be in the midst of the land;
thou shalt be no more remembered:
for I the LORD Yah Veh have spoken it worded.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING THE ABHORRENCES OF YISRA EL

22

Moreover
the word of the LORD Yah Veh came unto me, saying,
2 Now, thou son of man humanity,
wilt shalt thou judge,
wilt shalt thou judge the bloody city?
yea, thou shalt shew make known to her
all her abominations abhorrences.
3 Then say thou,
Thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh,
The city sheddeth poureth blood in the midst of it,
that her time may come approach,
and maketh worketh idols against herself
to defile foul herself.
4 Thou art become guilty hast guilted
in thy blood that thou hast shed poured;
and hast defiled fouled thyself
in thine idols which thou hast made worked;
and thou hast caused thy days to draw near approach,
and art come even unto thy years:
therefore have I made given thee
a reproach unto the heathen goyim,
and a mocking ridicule to all countries lands.
5 Those that be near, and those that be far from thee,
shall mock ridicule thee,
which art infamous O polluted of name
and much vexed confused.
6 Behold, the princes hierarchs of Israel Yisra El,
every one man were in thee
to their power to shed pour blood.
7 In thee have they set light by abased father and mother:
in the midst of thee
have they dealt worked by oppression
with the stranger sojourner:
in thee
have they vexed the fatherless orphan and the widow.
8 Thou hast despised mine holy things holies,
and hast profaned my sabbaths shabbaths.
9 In thee are men,
that carry tales talebearers to shed pour blood:
and in thee
they eat upon the mountains:
in the midst of thee
they commit lewdness work intrigue.
10 In thee
have they discovered exposed their fathers' nakedness:
in thee
have they humbled debased her
that was set apart excluded for pollution foulness.
11 And one every man
hath committed abomination worked abhorrence
with his neighbour's wife friend's woman;
and another every man
hath lewdly defiled intriguingly fouled
his daughter in law;
and another every man in thee
hath humbled debased his sister, his father's daughter.
12 In thee
have they taken gifts bribes to shed pour blood;
thou hast taken usury and increase bounty,
and thou hast greedily gained of thy neighbours friends
by extortion,
and hast forgotten me,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
13 Behold, therefore I have smitten mine hand my palm
at thy dishonest greedy gain
which thou hast made worked,
and at thy blood which hath been in the midst of thee.
14 Can thine heart endure stand,
or can thine hands be strong,
in the days that I shall deal work with thee?

YECHEZQ EL 21, 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and give you into the hand
of the men of burning and engravers to ruin:
32 you become fuel for the fire;
your blood midst the land
is remembered no more:
for I Yah Veh word.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING THE ABHORRENCES OF YISRA EL

22

And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 You, son of humanity,
Judge you? Judge you the city of blood?
Yes, have her know all her abhorrences,
3 saying,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
The city pours blood in its midst,
so that her time approaches:
and she works idols against herself to foul herself.
4 You guilt in that you pour blood;
and foul yourself by the idols you work;
and you cause your days to approach,
and approach your years:
so I give you
— a reproach to the goyim
and a ridicule to all lands.
5 The near, and the far from you, all ridicule you,
O polluted of name and much confused.
6 Behold, the hierarchs of Yisra El,
every man of you,
according to his arm, pours blood:
7 in you they abase father and mother:
in your midst
they worked oppression with the sojourner:
in you they vex the orphan and the widow.
8 You despise my holies
and you profane my shabbaths:
9 in you are men
— talebearers to pour blood:
and in you
they eat on the mountains:
10 in your midst they work intrigue:
in you
they expose the nakedness of their fathers:
in you
they debase her who was excluded for foulness.
11 And every man works abhorrence
with the woman of his friend:
and every man intriguingly fouls his daughter in law:
and every man in you
debases his sister — the daughter of his father:
12 in you
they take bribes to pour blood:
you take usury and bounty
and you greedily gain of your friends by extortion:
and forget me
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
13 And behold, I smite my palm
at the greedy gain you work;
and at your blood in your midst.
14 Stands your heart?
Or are your hands strong
in the days I work with you?

EZEKIEL 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

I the LORD **Yah Veh** have spoken it worded,
and will do it **shall work**.
15 And I will scatter **shall winnow** thee
among the *heathen* **goyim**,
and disperse thee in the *countries* **lands**,
and will **shall** consume thy *filthiness* **foulness** out of thee.
16 And thou shalt
take thine inheritance in **profane** thyself
in the *sight eyes of the heathen* **goyim**,
and thou shalt know that *I am the LORD I* — **Yah Veh**.
17 And the word of the LORD **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
18 Son of *man* **humanity**,
the house of *Israel* **Yisra El** is to me become dross:
all they are *brass* **copper**, and tin, and iron, and lead,
in the midst of the furnace;
they are *even the dross* **drosses** of silver.
19 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Because ye are all become dross,
behold, therefore I will **shall** gather you
into the midst of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
20 As they gather silver, and *brass* **copper**,
and iron, and lead, and tin,
into the midst of the furnace,
to *blow* **puff** the fire upon it, to melt it;
so will **shall** I gather you
in *mine anger* **my wrath** and in my fury,
and I will **shall** leave you *there*, and melt you.
21 Yea, I will **shall** gather you,
and *blow* **puff** upon you in the fire of my wrath,
and ye shall be melted in the midst *thereof*.
22 As silver is melted in the midst of the furnace,
so shall ye be melted in the midst *thereof*;
and ye shall know that I the LORD **Yah Veh**
have poured out my fury upon you.
23 And the word of the LORD **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
24 Son of *man* **humanity**, say unto her,
Thou art the land that is not *cleansed* **purified**,
nor rained upon in the day of *indignation* **rage**.
25 There is a conspiracy of her prophets
in the midst *thereof*,
like a roaring lion *ravens* **tearing** the prey;
they have devoured souls;
they have taken
the *treasure* **wealth** and *precious things* **esteemed**;
they have *made* **abounded** her *many* widows
in the midst *thereof*.
26 Her priests have violated my *law* **torah**,
and have profaned mine *holy things* **holies**:
they have *put no difference* **not separated**
between the holy and profane,
neither have they *shewed difference* **made known**
between the *unclean* **foul** and the *clean* **pure**,
and have *hid* **concealed** their eyes
from my *sabbaths* **shabbaths**,
and I am profaned among them.
27 Her *princes* **governors** in the midst *thereof*
are like wolves *ravens* **tearing** the prey,
to *shed* **pour** blood, and to destroy souls,
to *get dishonest* **greedily gain** **greedy** gain.
28 And her prophets
have daubed them with *untempered mortar* **slime**,
seeing **seers of** vanity, and divining lies unto them,
saying, Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**,
when the LORD **Yah Veh** hath not *spoken* **worded**.
29 The people of the land
have used oppression **in oppressing**, **have oppressed**,
and *exercised robbery* **in stripping**, **have stripped**,
and have vexed the *poor* **humble** and needy:
yea, they have oppressed the *stranger* **sojourner**
wrongfully **without judgment**.
30 And I sought for a man among them,
that should *make* **wall** up the *hedge* **wall**,
and stand in the *gap* **breach**
before me **at my face** for the land,
that I should not *destroy* **ruin** it: but I found none.
31 Therefore
have I poured out mine *indignation* **rage** upon them;

YECHEZQ EL 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I Yah Veh word and work:
15 and I winnow you among the goyim
and disperse you in the lands
and consume your foulness from you:
16 and you profane yourself in the eyes of the goyim,
and you know I — Yah Veh.
17 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
18 Son of humanity,
the house of Yisra El is to me become dross:
all they are copper and tin and iron and lead
midst the furnace
— drosses of silver.
19 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because you all become dross,
behold, so I gather you midst Yeru Shalem:
20 a gathering of silver
and copper and iron and lead and tin
midst the furnace,
to puff the fire thereon, to melt:
thus I gather you in my wrath and in my fury
and I leave you and melt you:
21 yes, I gather you,
and puff on you in the fire of my wrath,
and melt you in the midst:
22 as silver melts midst the furnace,
thus you melt in the midst:
and you know that I Yah Veh
pour my fury on you.
23 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
24 Son of humanity, say to her,
You are the land
— neither purified nor rained on in the day of rage
— a conspiracy of prophets in her midst:
25 as a roaring lion tearing the prey, they devour souls:
they take the wealthy and esteemed;
they abound her widows in her midst:
26 her priests violate my torah and profane my holies:
they neither separate between the holy and profane
nor make known between the foul and the pure;
and conceal their eyes from my shabbaths,
and I am profaned among them.
27 Her governors midst her
are as wolves tearing the prey,
to pour blood; to destroy souls;
to greedily gain greedy gain:
28 and her prophets daub them with slime
— seers of vanity, divining lies to them,
saying, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
when Yah Veh words not.
29 The people of the land
in oppressing, oppress;
and in stripping, strip;
and vex the humble and needy:
yes, they oppress the sojourner without judgment.
30 And I seek for a man among them,
to wall up the wall,
and stand in the breach at my face for the land
to not ruin it:
and I find no one:
31 and I pour my rage on them;

EZEKIEL 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

I have *consumed* **finished** them **off**
with the fire of my wrath:
their own way

have I *recompensed* **given** upon their heads,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

WHORING IN MISRAYIM

23 The word of the *LORD Yah Veh* came again unto me,
saying,
2 Son of *man* **humanity**,
there were two women, the daughters of one mother:
3 And they *committed whoredoms* **whored**
in *Egypt Misrayim*;
they *committed whoredoms* **whored** in their youth:
there were their breasts *pressed* **pierced**,
and there they *bruised* **worked** the *teats* **nipples**
of their virginity.
4 And the names of them were
Aholah **Oholah** the *elder* **greater**,
and *Aholibah* **Oholi Bah** her sister:
and they were mine,
and they *bare* **birthed** sons and daughters.
Thus were their names;
Samaria is Aholah Shomeron is Oholah,
and *Jerusalem Aholibah Yeru Shalem Oholi Bah*.
5 And *Aholah* **Oholah**
played the harlot when she was mine **whored under me**;
and she *doted on* **panted after** her lovers,
on the *Assyrians* **Ashshuri** her neighbours,
6 Which were *clothed* **enrobed** with blue,
captains **governors** and *rulers* **prefects**,
all of them *desirable young men* **youths of desire**,
horsemen **cavalry** riding upon horses.
7 Thus she *committed* **gave** her whoredoms with them,
with all them
that were the chosen *men* **sons** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
and with all on whom she *doted* **panted after**:
with all their idols she *defiled* **fouled** herself.
8 Neither *left* **forsook** she her whoredoms
brought from Egypt **Misrayim**:
for in her youth they lay with her,
and they *bruised* **worked** the *breasts* **nipples** of her virginity,
and poured their whoredom upon her.
9 Wherefore
I have *delivered* **given** her into the hand of her lovers,
into the hand of the *Assyrians* **sons** of **Ashshur**,
upon whom she *doted* **panted after**.
10 These *discovered* **exposed** her nakedness:
they took her sons and her daughters,
and *slew* **slaughtered** her with the sword:
and she became *famous* **a name** among women;
for they had *executed* **worked** judgment upon her.
11 And when her sister *Aholibah* **Oholi Bah** saw this,
she was more *corrupt* **ruined**
in her *inordinate love* **panting** than she,
and in her whoredoms
more than her sister in her whoredoms.
12 She *doted upon* **panted after**
the *Assyrians* **sons** of **Ashshur**
her neighbours, *captains* **governors** and *rulers* **prefects**
clothed **enrobed** most gorgeously **splendidly**,
horsemen **cavalry** riding upon horses,
all of them *desirable young men* **youths of desire**.
13 Then I saw that she was *defiled* **fouled**,
that they *took* **be** both one way,
14 And that she increased her whoredoms:
for when she saw
men *pourtrayed* **engraved** upon the wall,
the images of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediyim**
pourtrayed **engraved** with vermilion,
15 *Girded* **Girdled** with girdles upon their loins,
exceeding in dyed attire upon their heads,
all of them *princes to look to* **tertiaries in visage**,
after the *manner* **likeness**
of the *Babylonians* **sons** of **Babel** of *Chaldea* **Kesediyim**,
the land of their *nativity* **kindred**:
16 And as soon as she saw them **at the sight**
with *of* her eyes,
she *doted upon* **panted after** them,
and sent *messengers* **angels** unto them into *Chaldea* **Kesediyim**.

YECHEZQ EL 22, 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I finished them off with the fire of my wrath:
I give their own way on their heads
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

WHORING IN MISRAYIM

23 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
two women are the daughters of one mother,
3 and they whore in Misrayim;
they whore in their youth:
there they pierce their breasts
and there they work the nipples of their virginity:
4 and their names,
Oholah and Oholi Bah her sister:
and they *are* mine; and they birth sons and daughters.
As to their names:
Shomeron is Oholah and Yeru Shalem Oholi Bah.
5 And Oholah whores under me;
and she pants after her lovers
— on the neighboring Ashshuri
6 — governors and prefects enrobed with blue
— all youths of desire
— cavalry riding on horses.
7 Thus she gives her whoredoms with them
— with all the chosen sons of Ashshur
and with all whom she pants after:
she fouls herself with all their idols:
8 she forsakes not her whoredoms from Misrayim:
for in her youth they lie with her
and work the nipples of her virginity
and pour their whoredom on her.
9 So I give her into the hand of her lovers
— into the hand of the sons of Ashshur
whom she pants after.
10 They expose her nakedness:
they take her sons and her daughters
and slaughter her with the sword:
and she becomes a name among women;
and they work judgments on her.
11 And her sister Oholi Bah sees this,
and in her panting, she ruins more than her,
and in her whoredoms
more than her sister in her whoredoms.
12 She pants after the neighboring sons of Ashshur
— governors and prefects enrobed most splendidly,
— cavalry riding on horses
— all youths of desire.
13 Then I see her foul — one way to both;
14 and she increases her whoredoms:
for when she sees men engraved on the wall
— images of the Kesediyim engraved with vermilion
girdled with girdles on their loins
exceeding in dyed attire on their heads
— all of them tertiaryaries in visage
after the likeness of the sons of Babel
of Kesediyim, the land of their kindred.
16 And at the sight of her eyes,
she pants after them,
and sends angels to them to Kesediyim:

EZEKIEL 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

17 And the *Babylonians* **sons of Babel** came to her
into the bed of love,
and they *defiled* **fouled** her with their whoredom,
and she was *polluted* **fouled** with them,
and her *mind* **soul** was alienated from them.
18 So she *discovered* **exposed** her whoredoms,
and *discovered* **exposed** her nakedness:
then my *mind* **soul** was alienated from her,
like as my *mind* **soul** was alienated from her sister.
19 Yet she *multiplied* **abounded** her whoredoms,
in *calling to remembrance* **remembering**
the days of her youth,
wherein she had *played the harlot* **whored**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
20 For she *doted upon* **panted after**
their *paramours* **concubines**,
whose flesh is as the flesh of asses **burros**,
and whose *issue* **flux** is like the *issue* **flux** of horses.
21 Thus thou *calledst to remembrance* **visitest**
the *lewdness* **intrigue** of thy youth,
in *bruising* **working** thy *teats* **nipples** by the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
for the *paps* **breasts** of thy youth.
22 Therefore, O *Aholibah* **Oholi Bah**,
thus saith the *Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**; Behold,
I *will raise up* **shall waken** thy lovers against thee,
from whom thy *mind* **soul** is alienated,
and I *will shall* bring them against thee
on every side **round about**;
23 The *Babylonians* **sons of Babel**,
and all the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**,
Pekod, and Shoa, and Koa,
and all the *Assyrians* **sons of Ashshur** with them:
all of them *desirable young men* **youths of desire**,
captains **governors** and *rulers* **prefects**,
great *lords* **tertiaries** and *renowned* **called out**,
all of them riding upon horses.
24 And they shall come against thee
with *chariots* **weapons**, *wagons* **chariots**, and wheels,
and with an *assembly* **a congregation** of people,
which shall set against thee
buckler **shield** and *shield* **buckler** and helmet
round about:
and I *will set* **shall give** judgment
before them **at their face**,
and they shall judge thee according to their judgments.
25 And I *will set* **shall give** my jealousy against thee,
and they shall *deal furiously* **work** with thee **in fury**:
they shall *take away* **turn aside**
thy *nose* **nostrils** and thine ears;
and thy *remnant* **posterity** shall fall by the sword:
they shall take thy sons and thy daughters;
and thy *residue* **posterity**
shall be *devoured* **consumed** by the fire.
26 They shall also strip thee out of thy clothes,
and take away thy *fair jewels* **instruments of adornment**.
27 Thus *will shall* I make thy *lewdness* **intrigue**
to *cease* **shabbathize** from thee,
and thy whoredom *brought*
from the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
so that thou shalt not lift up thine eyes unto them,
nor remember *Egypt* **Misrayim** any more.
28 For thus saith the *Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Behold, I *will deliver* **shall give** thee
into the hand of them whom thou hatest,
into the hand of them
from whom thy *mind* **soul** is alienated:
29 And they shall *deal* **work** with thee **hatefully in hatred**,
and shall take away all thy labour,
and shall *leave* **forsake** thee naked and **bare nude**:
and the nakedness of thy whoredoms
shall be *discovered* **exposed**,
both thy *lewdness* **intrigue** and thy whoredoms.
30 I *will do* **shall work** these *things* unto thee,
because thou hast *gone a whoring* **whored**
after the *heathen* **goyim**,
and because thou art *polluted* **fouled**
with their idols.
31 Thou hast walked in the way of thy sister;
therefore *will shall* I give her cup into thine hand.

YECHEZQ EL 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

17 and the sons of Babel come to her
into the bed of love,
and they foul her with their whoredom
and she is fouled by them;
and her soul alienates from them:
18 and she exposes her whoredoms
and exposes her nakedness:
and I alienate my soul from her
as I alienated my soul from her sister:
19 and she abounds her whoredoms
in remembering the days of her youth
wherein she whored in the land of Misrayim:
20 and she pants after their concubines
— whose flesh is as the flesh of burros
and whose flux is as the flux of horses.
21 You visit the intrigue of your youth,
in working your nipples by the Misrayim
for the breasts of your youth.
22 So, O Oholi Bah,
thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I waken your lovers against you,
from whom you alienate your soul;
and I bring them against you all around
23 — the sons of Babel and all the Kesediym;
Pekod and Shoa and Koa
with all the sons of Ashshur
— all youths of desire, governors and prefects,
great tertiaryaries and called out
— all riding on horses:
24 and they come against you with weapons
chariots and wheels;
and with a congregation of people,
who set shield and buckler and helmet
against you all around:
and I give judgment at their face
to judge you according to their judgments:
25 and I give my jealousy against you
that they work with you in fury:
they turn aside your nostrils and your ears
and your posterity falls by the sword:
they take your sons and your daughters
and consume your posterity by the fire:
26 and they strip your clothes
and take your instruments of adornment:
27 thus I shabbathize your whoredom from you
and your intrigue from the land of Misrayim:
so that you neither lift your eyes to them
nor remember Misrayim any more.
28 For thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I give you into the hand of whom you hate
— into the hand from whom your soul alienates:
29 and they work with you in hatred
and take away all your labor
and forsake you naked and nude:
and they expose the nakedness of your whoredoms
— both your intrigue and your whoredoms.
30 I work these to you
because you whore after the goyim;
because you foul with their idols:
31 you walk in the way of your sister;
and I give her cup into your hand.

EZEKIEL 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

32 Thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
Thou shalt drink of thy sister's cup deep and large:
thou shalt be *laughed to scorn* **ridiculed**
and *had in derision* **derided**;
it containeth *much* **an increase**.
33 Thou shalt be filled
with *drunkenness* **intoxication** and *sorrow* **grief**,
with the cup of *astonishment* **desolation** and desolation,
with the cup of thy sister *Samaria* **Shomeron**.
34 Thou shalt even drink it and suck it out,
and thou shalt *break* **crunch** the *sherds* **potsherds**
thereof,
and *pluck off* **tear** thine own breasts:
for I have *spoken it* **worded**,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
35 Therefore thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
Because thou hast forgotten me,
and cast me behind thy back,
therefore bear thou also
thy *lewdness* **intrigue** and thy whoredoms.
36 The LORD **Yah Veh** said *moreover* unto me;
Son of *man* **humanity**,
wilt **shalt** thou judge
Aholah **Oholah** and *Aholibah* **Oholi Bah**?
yea,
declare **tell** unto them their *abominations* **abhorrences**;
37 That they have *committed adultery* **adulterized**,
and blood is in their hands,
and with their idols
have they *committed adultery* **adulterized**,
and have also caused their sons,
whom they *bare* **birthed** unto me,
to pass for them through *the fire*, *to devour them* **for fuel**.
38 Moreover this they have *done* **worked** unto me:
they have *defiled* **foiled** my *sanctuary* **holies**
in the same day,
and have profaned my *sabbaths* **shabbaths**.
39 For when they had
slain **slaughtered** their *children* **sons** to their idols,
then they came the same day
into my *sanctuary* **holies** to profane it;
and, *lo* **behold**,
thus have they *done* **worked** in the midst of mine house.
40 And *furthermore* **also**,
that ye have sent for men to come from afar,
unto whom a *messenger* **an angel** was sent;
and, *lo* **behold**, they came:
for whom thou *didst wash* **baptizedst** thyself,
paintedst thy eyes,
and *deckedst* **adornedst** thyself with ornaments,
41 And satest upon a stately bed,
and a table *prepared before it* **arranged at its face**,
whereupon thou hast set mine incense and mine oil.
42 And a voice of a *serene* multitude *being at ease*
was with her:
and with the men
of the *common sort* **abundance of humanity**
were brought *Sabeans* **Sabaiym/carousers**
from the wilderness,
which *put bracelets* **gave clasps** upon their hands,
and *beautiful* crowns **of adornment** upon their heads.
43 Then said I unto *her* **the one**
that was *old* **worn out** in adulteries,
Will **Shall** they now *commit* **whoredoms** **whore** with her,
and she with them?
44 Yet they went in unto her,
as they go in unto a woman
that *playeth the harlot* **whoreth**:
so went they in
unto *Aholah* **Oholah** and unto *Aholibah* **Oholi Bah**,
the *lewd* **intriguing** women.
45 And the *righteous* **just** men,
they shall judge them
after the *manner* **judgment** of adulteresses,
and after the *manner* **judgment**
of women that *shed* **pour** blood;
because they are adulteresses,
and blood is in their hands.
46 For thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;

YECHEZQ EL 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

32 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Drink of the cup of your sister
— deep and large:
you are ridiculed and derided
— containing an increase
33 — filled with intoxication and grief
with the cup of desolation
and desolation with the cup of your sister Shomeron.
34 Drink and suck out;
craunch the potsherds and tear your own breasts:
for I have worded
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
35 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because you forget me
and cast me behind your back,
even thus
you also bear your intrigue and your whoredoms.
36 Yah Veh says to me;
Son of humanity,
Judge you Oholah and Oholi Bah?
Tell them their abhorrences:
37 that they adulterize and blood is in their hands;
and they adulterize with their idols;
and their sons whom they birthed to me
they also pass through for fuel.
38 Even yet, they work this to me:
they foul my holies
the same day they profane my shabbaths:
39 they slaughter their sons to their idols;
and the same day
they come into my holies to profane:
and behold, thus they work midst my house.
40 And also,
that you sent for men coming from afar,
to whom you sent an angel;
and behold, they come
— they, for whom you baptized yourself,
painted your eyes,
and adorned yourself with ornaments;
41 and you sit on a stately bed,
and arrange a table at its face,
whereon you set my incense and my oil.
42 And with her, a voice of a serene multitude:
and with the men of the abundance of humanity,
bring Sabaiym/carousers from the wilderness
who give clasps on their hands
and crowns of adornment on their heads.
43 And I say to the one worn out in adulteries,
Whore they now with her? And she with them?
44 And they go in to her,
as they go in to a woman who whores:
thus they go in to Oholah and to Oholi Bah
the intriguing women:
45 and the just men judge them
after the judgment of adulteresses
and after the judgment of women who pour blood
— because they are adulteresses
and blood is in their hands.
46 For thus says Adonay Yah Veh:

EZEKIEL 23, 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

I will bring up **shall ascend** a company congregation upon them,
and will **shall** give them to be removed and *spoiled* **for plunder**.
47 And the company **congregation** shall stone them with stones,
and *dispatch* **cut** them with their swords;
they shall *slay* **slaughter** their sons and their daughters,
and burn up their houses with fire.
48 Thus will **shall** I cause *lewdness* **intrigue** to cease **shabbathize** out of the land,
that all women may be taught not to do **work** after your *lewdness* **intrigue**.
49 And they shall *recompense* **give** your *lewdness* **intrigue** upon you,
and ye shall bear the sins of your idols:
and ye shall know that *I am the Lord* **GOD I — Adonay Yah Veh**.

THE CALDRON

24

Again in the ninth year,
in the tenth month, in the tenth *day* of the month,
the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** came unto me, saying,
2 Son of *man* **humanity**,
write **inscribe** thee the name of the day,
even of this same day:
the king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel** set **propped** himself
against *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** this same day.
3 And utter **proverbialize** a *parable* **proverb**
unto the rebellious house, and say unto them,
Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Set on a *pot* **caldron**, set it on,
and also pour water into it:
4 Gather the *pieces* **members thereof** into it,
even every good piece **member**,
the *thigh* **flank**, and the shoulder;
fill it with the choice bones.
5 Take the choice of the flock,
and *burn* **whirl** also the bones under it,
and *make it* **in boiling**, boil it well,
and let them seethe the bones of it **therein in its midst**.
6 Wherefore thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Woe to the bloody city,
to the *pot* **caldron** whose scum is therein,
and whose scum is not gone out of it!
bring it out *piece* **member** by *piece* **member**;
let no *lot* **pebble** fall upon it.
7 For her blood is in the midst of her;
she set it upon the *top* **clearing** of a rock;
she poured it not upon the *ground* **earth**,
to cover it with dust;
8 That it might cause fury to *come up* **ascend**
to *take vengeance* **avenge avengement**;
I have set **given** her blood
upon the *top* **clearing** of a rock,
that it should not be covered.
9 Therefore thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Woe to the bloody city!
I will **shall** even *make* **greaten** the pile for fire *great*.
10 *Heap on wood* **Abound the timber**,
kindle **inflame** the fire,
consume the flesh, and **in spicing**, spice it well,
and let the bones be *burned* **scorched**.
11 Then set **stand** it empty upon the coals *thereof*,
that the *brass* **copper** of it may be hot,
and may *burn* **scorch**,
and that the *filthiness* **foulness** of it
may be molten in *it* **its midst**,
that the scum of it may be consumed.
12 She hath wearied herself with *lies* **mischiefs**,
and her great scum went not forth out of her:
her scum shall be in the fire.
13 In thy *filthiness* **foulness** is *lewdness* **intrigue**:
because I have *purged* **purified** thee,
and thou wast not *purged* **purified**,
thou shalt not be *purged* **purified**
from thy *filthiness* **foulness** any more,
till I have caused my fury to rest upon thee.
14 *I the LORD* **Yah Veh** have *spoken it* **worded**:
so be it shall come to pass, and I will do **shall work** it;

YECHEZQ EL 23, 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I ascend a congregation on them,
and give them to be removed and for plunder.
47 And the congregation stones them with stones
and cuts them with their swords;
they slaughter their sons and their daughters,
and burn their houses with fire.
48 Thus I shabbathize intrigue from the land,
to teach all women to not work after your intrigue.
49 And they give your intrigue on you,
and you bear the sins of your idols:
and you know I — Adonay Yah Veh.

24

And so be the word of Yah Veh to me,
in the ninth year, in the tenth month,
in the tenth of the month, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
inscribe the name of the day — this same day:
the sovereign of Babel props himself
against Yeru Shalem — this same day:
3 and proverbialize a proverb to the rebellious house:
and say to them, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Set a caldron;
set, and also pour water into it:
4 gather the members into it — every good member
— the flank and the shoulder;
fill it with the choice bones:
5 take the choice of the flock
and also whirl the bones under it;
and in boiling, boil it well;
and seethe the bones midst it.
6 So, thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Woe to the city of blood
— to the caldron whose scum is therein,
and whose scum comes not out of it:
bring it out member by member;
and that no pebble fall thereon.
7 For her blood is in her midst;
she sets it on the clearing of a rock;
she pours it not on the earth,
to cover it with dust;
8 — to ascend fury — to avenge avengement;
I give her blood on the clearing of a rock
— not covered.
9 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Woe to the city of blood!
I — I greaten the pile for fire.
10 Abound the timber! Inflame the fire!
Consume the flesh! And in spicing, spice!
And scorch the bones:
11 and stand it empty on the coals,
that heat and scorch the copper thereof
so that the foulness thereof melts in the midst
— to consume the scum thereof.
12 She wearies herself with mischiefs
and her great scum goes not from her:
her scum is in the fire.
13 In your foulness is intrigue:
because I purify you; and you purify not:
you purify not from your foulness any more
until I rest my fury on you.
14 I Yah Veh have worded:
so be it; and I work it:

THE CALDRON

EZEKIEL 24, 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

I will **shall** not go back **release**, neither will **shall** I spare,
neither will **shall** I **repent sigh**;
according to thy ways,
and according to thy *doings* **exploits**,
shall they judge thee,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.**

THE DEATH OF THE WOMAN OF YECHEZQ EL

15 Also the word of the LORD **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
16 Son of *man* **humanity**, behold,
I take away from thee the desire of thine eyes
with a *stroke* **plague**:
yet neither shalt thou *mourn* **chop** nor weep,
neither shall thy tears run *down*.
17 *Forbear to cry* **Hush thy shrieking**,
make work no mourning for the dead,
bind *the tire of thine head* **thy tiara** upon thee,
and *put on* **set** thy shoes upon thy feet,
and cover not thy *lips* **upper lip**,
and eat not the bread of men.
18 So I *spake* **worded** unto the people in the morning:
and at even my *wife* **woman** died;
and I *did* **worked** in the morning
as I was *commanded* **misvahed**.
19 And the people said unto me,
Wilt **Shalt** thou not tell us what these *things* are to us,
that thou *doest* **workest so**?
Then I *answered* **said to** them,
The word of the LORD **Yah Veh** came unto me, saying,
21 Speak unto the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Behold, I will **shall** profane my *sanctuary* **holies**,
the *excellency* **pomp** of your strength,
the desire of your eyes,
and that which your soul *pitieth* **sympathizeth**;
and your sons and your daughters
whom ye have *left* **forsaken** shall fall by the sword.
22 And ye shall *do* **work** as I have *done* **worked**:
ye shall not cover your *lips* **upper lip**,
nor eat the bread of men.
23 And your *tires* **tiaras** shall be upon your heads,
and your shoes upon your feet:
ye shall not *mourn* **chop** nor weep;
but ye shall *pine away* **vanish**
for your *iniquities* **perversities**,
and *mourn one* **growl man** toward *another* **brother**.
24 Thus *Ezekiel* **Yechezq El** is unto you a *sign* **an omen**:
according to all that he hath *done* **worked**,
shall ye *do* **work**:
and when this cometh,
ye shall know that I *am the Lord* **GOD I — Adonay Yah Veh**.
25 Also, thou son of *man* **humanity**,
shall it not be in the day when I take from them
their *strength* **stronghold**,
the joy of their *glory* **adornment**, the desire of their eyes,
and that *whereupon they set*
the burden of their minds souls,
their sons and their daughters,
26 That *he that escapeth* **the escapees** in that day
shall come unto thee,
to cause thee to hear it with *thine ears*?
27 In that day shall thy mouth be opened
to *him which is escaped* **the escapees**,
and thou shalt *speak* **word**,
and be no more *dumb* **muted**:
and thou shalt be a *sign* **an omen** unto them;
and they shall know that I *am the Lord* **I — Yah Veh**.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH

CONCERNING THE SONS OF AMMON

25 The word of the LORD **Yah Veh**
came again unto me, saying,
2 Son of *man* **humanity**,
set thy face against the *Ammonites* **sons of Ammon**,
and prophesy against them;
3 And say unto the *Ammonites* **sons of Ammon**,
Hear the word of the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Because *thou saidst of thy saying*, Aha,
against my *sanctuary* **holies**, when it was profaned;

YECHEZQ EL 24, 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I neither release nor spare nor sigh:
according to your ways
and according to your exploits
they judge you
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE DEATH OF THE WOMAN OF YECHEZQ EL

15 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
16 Son of humanity, behold,
I take the desire of your eyes away from you
with a plague:
yet you neither chop nor weep nor your tears run.
17 Hush your shrieking;
work no mourning for the dead;
bind your tiara on you
and set your shoes on your feet;
and neither cover your upper lip
nor eat the bread of men.
18 Thus I word to the people in the morning:
and at even my woman dies;
and in the morning I work as I *am* misvahed.
19 And the people say to me,
Tell you not us what these which you work
are to us?
20 And I say to them,
And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
21 Speak to the house of Yisra El,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I profane my holies
— the pomp of your strength
the desire of your eyes
and the sympathy of your soul:
and your sons and your daughters whom you forsake
fall by the sword.
22 And you, work as I work:
neither cover your upper lip
nor eat the bread of men:
23 with your tiaras on your heads
and your shoes on your feet:
neither chop nor weep;
and you desolate for your perversities,
and growl — man toward brother.
24 Thus Yechezq El becomes an omen to you:
according to all he works, you work:
and when this comes,
you know I am Adonay Yah Veh.
25 And you, son of humanity,
is it not in the day I take their stronghold from them
— the joy of their adornment
— the desire of their eyes
and the burden of their souls
— their sons and their daughters?
26 In that day, the escapees come to you,
so that you hear with ears:
27 in that day you open your mouth to the escapees,
and word — muted no more:
and you become an omen to them;
and they know I — Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING THE SONS OF AMMON

25 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
set your face against the sons of Ammon
and prophesy against them:
and say to the sons of Ammon,
Hear the word of Adonay Yah Veh;
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because you say, Aha! against my holies,
when it profanes;

EZEKIEL 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and against the *land soil* of Israel **Yisra El**,
when it was *desolate* **desolated**;
and against the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
when they went into *captivity* **exile**;
4 Behold, therefore I *will deliver* **shall give** thee
to the *men* **sons** of the east for a possession,
and they shall set their *palaces* **walls** in thee,
and *make give* their *dwelling* **tabernacles** in thee:
they shall eat thy fruit, and they shall drink thy milk.
5 And I *will make* **shall give** Rabbah
a *stable* **habitation of rest** for camels,
and the *Ammonites* **sons of Ammon**
a *couching* **resting** place for flocks:
and ye shall know that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**.
6 For thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Because thou hast clapped *thine hands* **the hand**,
and stamped with the *feet* **foot**,
and *rejoiced* **cheered** in *heart* **soul**
with all thy despite against the *land soil* of Israel **Yisra El**;
7 Behold,
therefore I *will stretch out* **shall spread** mine hand upon thee,
and *will deliver* **shall give** thee for a *spoil* **plunder**
to the *heathen* **goyim**;
and I *will* **shall** cut thee off from the people,
and I *will* **shall** cause thee
to *perish* **destruct** out of the countries:
I *will destroy* **shall desolate** thee;
and thou shalt know that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**.
8 **THE WORD OF YAH VEh CONCERNING MOAB AND SEIR**
Thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Because *that of the saying* of Moab and Seir *do say*,
Behold,
the house of Judah **Yah Hudah**
is like unto all the *heathen* **goyim**;
9 Therefore, behold,
I *will* **shall** open the *side* **shoulder** of Moab
from the cities,
from his cities which are on his *frontiers* **edges**,
the *glory* **splendour** of the country,
Bethjeshimoth **Beth Ha Yeshimoth**,
Baalmeon **Baal Meon**, and *Kiriathaim* **Qiryathaim**,
10 Unto the *men* **sons** of the east
with the *Ammonites* **sons of Ammon**,
and *will* **shall** give them in possession,
that the *Ammonites* **sons of Ammon**
may not be remembered among the *nations* **goyim**.
11 And I *will execute* **shall work** judgments upon Moab;
and they shall know that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**.
12 **THE WORD OF YAH VEh CONCERNING EDMO**
Thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Because that Edom hath *dealt* **worked**
against the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
by *taking vengeance* **avenging avengement**,
and *in guilting*, hath *greatly offended* **guilted**,
and *revenged* **avenged** himself upon them;
13 Therefore thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**;
I *will* **shall** also *stretch out* **spread** mine hand upon Edom,
and *will* **shall** cut off
man **humanity** and *beast* **animal** from it;
and I *will make* **shall give** it *desolate* **parched**
from Teman;
and they of Dedan shall fall by the sword.
14 And I *will lay* **shall give** my *vengeance* **avengement**
upon Edom
by the hand of my people *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and they shall *do* **work** in Edom
according to *mine anger* **my wrath**
and according to my fury;
and they shall know my *vengeance* **avengement**,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
15 **THE WORD OF YAH VEh CONCERNING THE PELESHETHIYM**
Thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Because the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**
have *dealt* **worked** by *revenge* **avengement**,
and have *taken* **vengeance** **avenged**
with a *despiteful* **heart** **soul**,
to *destroy* **ruin** it for the *old hatred* **eternal enmity**;
16 Therefore thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**;

YECHEZQ EL 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and against the soil of Yisra El,
when it desolates;
and against the house of Yah Hudah,
when they go into exile;
4 behold, so I give you
to the sons of the east for a possession;
and they set their walls in you
and give their tabernacles in you:
they eat your fruit and they drink your milk:
5 and I give Rabbah as a habitation of rest for camels
and the sons of Ammon as a place of rest for flocks:
and you know I — Yah Veh.
6 For thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because you clap the hand,
and stamp the foot,
and cheer in soul with all your despite
against the soil of Yisra El;
7 behold, so I spread my hand on you
and give you for plunder to the goyim;
and I cut you off from the people,
and I destroy you from the countries:
I desolate you; and you know I — Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEh CONCERNING MOAB AND SEIR

8 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because of the saying of Moab and Seir,
Behold, Yah Hudah is as all the goyim;
9 so, behold,
I open the shoulder of Moab from the cities
— from his cities on his edges,
the splendor of the country
— Beth Ha Yeshimoth,
Baal Meon and Qiryathaim;
10 to the sons of the east with the sons of Ammon;
and give them in possession:
so that the sons of Ammon
are not remembered among the goyim;
11 and I work judgments on Moab;
and they know I — Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEh CONCERNING EDMO

12 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because Edom works against the house of Yah Hudah
by avenging avengement,
and in guilting, guilts,
and avenges himself on them;
13 so thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
I also spread my hand on Edom
and cut off humanity and animal from it:
and I give it parched from Teman;
and they of Dedan fall by the sword:
14 and I give my avengement on Edom
by the hand of my people Yisra El:
and they work in Edom
according to my wrath and according to my fury;
and they know my avengement
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEh CONCERNING THE PELESHETHIYM

15 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because the Peleshethiym work avengement;
and avenge with a despiteful soul
to ruin the eternal enmity;
16 so thus says Adonay Yah Veh:

EZEKIEL 25, 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Behold, I will stretch out **shall spread** mine hand upon the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**, and I will **shall** cut off the *Cherethims* **Kerethiym**, and destroy the *remnant* **survivors** of the sea coast **haven**.
17 And I will execute **shall work** great vengeance **avengements** upon them with *furious rebukes* **reproofs of fury**; and they shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*, when I shall lay my vengeance **give my avengement** upon them.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING SOR

26

And **so be** it came to pass in the eleventh year, in the first day of the month, that the word of the *LORD Yah Veh* came unto me, saying,
2 Son of man **humanity**, because that *Tyrus Sor* hath said against *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*, Aha, she is broken that was the gates — **the doors** of the people: she is turned unto me:
I shall be *replenished* **fulfilled**, now she is *laid waste* **parched**:
3 Therefore thus saith the Lord *GOD Adonay Yah Veh*; Behold, I *am* against thee, O *Tyrus Sor*, and **will shall** cause many *nations* **goyim** to come up **ascend** against thee, as the sea causeth his waves to come up **ascend**.
4 And they shall *destroy* **ruin** the walls of *Tyrus Sor*, and break down her towers:
I **will shall** also scrape **off** her dust from her, and **make give** her like the top **clearing** of a rock.
5 **So be** It shall be a place for the spreading of nets in the midst of the sea:
for I have *spoken it* **worded**, saith the Lord *GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh*: and it shall become **so be it a spoil** **plunder** to the *nations* **goyim**.
6 And her daughters which are in the field shall be *slain* **slaughtered** by the sword; and they shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.
7 For thus saith the Lord *GOD Adonay Yah Veh*; Behold, I **will shall** bring upon *Tyrus Sor Nebuchadrezzar Nebukadnets Tsar* king **sovereign** of *Babylon Babel*, a king **sovereign** of kings **sovereigns**, from the north, with horses, and with chariots, and with *horsemen* **cavalry**, and *companies* **congregations**, and much people.
8 He shall *slay* **slaughter** with the sword thy daughters in the field:
and he shall **make give** a fort **battering tower** against thee, and **cast pour** a mound against thee, and **lift up** *raise* the buckler **shield** against thee.
9 And he shall *set engines of war* **give battering rams** against thy walls, and with his axes **sword** he shall *break* **pull** down thy towers.
10 By reason of the abundance **the throngs** of his horses their dust shall cover thee: thy walls shall *shake* **quake** at the noise **voice** of the *horsemen* **cavalry**, and of the wheels, and of the chariots, when he shall enter into thy gates **portals**, as *men enter* **entering** into a **split** city wherein is made a breach.
11 With the hoofs of his horses shall he *tread down* **trample** all thy *streets* **outways**: he shall *slay* **slaughter** thy people by the sword, and thy *strong garrisons* **monoliths of strength** shall go down **lower** to the ground **earth**.
12 And they shall *make a spoil of* **plunder** thy *riches* **valuables**, and *make a prey of* **plunder** thy merchandise: and they shall break down thy walls, and *destroy* **pull down** thy pleasant houses: and they shall *lay* **set** thy stones and thy timber and thy dust in the midst of the water.

YECHEZQ EL 25, 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Behold, I spread my hand on the Peleshethiym and I cut off the Kerethiym and destroy the survivors of the sea haven.
17 And I work on them avengements with reproofs of fury; and they know I — Yah Veh, when I give my avengement on them.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING SOR

26

And so be it, in the eleventh year, in the first of the month, the word of Yah Veh is to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity, because Sor says against Yeru Shalem, saying, Aha, she is broken — the doors of the people: she turns to me: I am fulfilled; she is parched.
3 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh: Behold, I *am* against you, O Sor, and I ascend many goyim against you, as the sea ascends his waves: and they ruin the walls of Sor and break down her towers: and I scrape her dust from her and give her as the clearing of a rock.
4 and so be it for the spreading of nets midst the sea: I — I have worded — an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh and so be it, a plunder to the goyim: and her daughters in the field are slaughtered by the sword; and they know I — Yah Veh.
5 For thus says Adonay Yah Veh: Behold, I bring on Sor Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel — a sovereign of sovereigns, from the north, with horses and with chariots and with cavalry and congregations and much people.
6 He slaughters your daughters with the sword in the field: and he gives a battering tower against you and pours a mound against you and raises the shield against you:
7 and he give battering rams against your walls and with his sword he pulls down your towers.
8 By the throngs of his horses their dust covers you: your walls quake at the voice of the cavalry and of the wheels and of the chariots — when he enters into your portals *is* as entering into a split city.
9 With the hoofs of his horses he tramples all your outways: he slaughters your people by the sword and lowers your monoliths of strength to the earth.
10 And they plunder your valuables and plunder your merchandise: and they break down your walls and pull down your pleasant houses: and they set your stones and your timber and your dust midst the water.

EZEKIEL 26, 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

13 And I *will shall* cause the *noise roar* of thy songs
to cease **shabbathize**;
and the *sound voice* of thy harps shall be no more heard.

14 And I *will make shall give* thee
like the *top clearing* of a rock:
thou shalt be a place to spread nets upon;
thou shalt be built no more:
for I the **LORD Yah Veh** have *spoken it worded*,
saith the **Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.

15 Thus saith the **Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh**
to **Tyrus Sor**;
shall not the *isles shake islands quake*
at the *sound voice* of thy *fall ruin*,
when the *wounded cry pierced shriek*,
when the slaughter is *made slaughtered*
in the midst of thee?

16 Then all the *princes hierarchs* of the sea
shall *come down descend* from their thrones,
and *lay away turn aside* their *robes mantles*,
and *put off strip*
their *broidered garments clothes of embroidery*;
they shall *clothe enrobe* themselves with trembling;
they shall sit upon the *ground earth*,
and shall tremble *at every moment in a blink*,
and be astonished at thee.

17 And they shall *take up lift* a lamentation for thee,
and say to thee, How art thou destroyed,
that wast *inhabited settled* of *seafaring men the seas*,
the renowned city, which wast strong in the sea,
she and her *inhabitants settlers*,
which *cause give* their terror
to be on all that *haunt settle* it!

18 Now shall the *isles islands* tremble
in the day of thy *fall ruin*;
yea, the *isles islands* that are in the sea
shall be *troubled terrify* at thy departure.

19 For thus saith the **Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
When I shall *make give* thee a *desolate parched* city,
like the cities that are not *inhabited settled*;
when I shall *bring up ascend* the *deep abyss* upon thee,
and great waters shall cover thee;

20 When I shall bring thee down
with them that descend into the *pit well*,
with the **original** people of *old time*,
and shall *set settle* thee
in the *low parts nethermost* of the earth,
in *places desolate of old the original parched areas*,
with them that *go down descend* to the *pit well*,
that thou be not *inhabited settled*;
and I shall *set glory give splendour*
in the land of the living;

21 I *will make shall give* thee a *terror terrors*,
and thou shalt be no more:
though thou be sought for,
yet shalt thou *never not eternally* be found again,
saith the **Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING THE LAMENTATION OF SOR

27 The word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
came again unto me, saying,
2 Now, thou son of *man humanity*,
take up lift a lamentation for **Tyrus Sor**;
3 And say unto **Tyrus Sor**,
O thou that *art situate settlest* at the entry of the sea,
which art a merchant of the people
for many *isles islands*,
Thus saith the **Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
O **Tyrus Sor**, thou hast said, I am of perfect beauty.
4 Thy borders are in the *midst heart* of the seas,
thy builders have perfected thy beauty.
5 They have made all thy *ship boards tables*
of fir trees of Senir:
they have taken cedars from Lebanon
to *make work* masts for thee.
6 Of the oaks of Bashan
have they *made worked* thine oars;
the *company daughters* of the *Ashurites Ashshuriym*
have *made worked* thy *benches boards* of ivory,
brought out of the *isles islands* of *Chittim Kittim*.

YECHEZQ EL 26, 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

13 And I shabbathize the roar of your songs
and the voice of your harps are heard no more:

14 and I give you as the clearing of a rock
to spread nets on:
you are built no more:
for I Yah Veh have worded
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

15 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh to Sor:
Quake not the islands at the voice of your ruin
when the pierced shriek?
When the slaughter is slaughtered in your midst?

16 And all the hierarchs of the sea
descend from their thrones
and turn aside their mantles;
they strip their clothes of embroidery
and enrobe themselves with trembling;
they sit on the earth and tremble in a blink
and astonish at you:

17 and they lift a lamentation for you,
and say to you,
How you destruct, you settled of the seas;
the renowned city — strong in the sea;
she and her settlers,
who give their terror on all who settle it!

18 Now the islands tremble in the day of your ruin;
yes, the islands in the sea terrify at your departure.

19 For thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
When I give you as a parched city,
as the cities not settled;
when I ascend the abyss on you
and great waters cover you;
when I descend you
with them descending into the well
— to the original people,
and settle you in the nethermost of the earth
— in the original parched areas
with them descending to the well,
so that you not settle;
and I give splendor in the land of the living.
I give you as terrors, and you *are* no more:
though you are sought for,
yet you *are* not eternally found again
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING THE LAMENTATION OF SOR

27 So be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 You, son of humanity, lift a lamentation for Sor;
3 and say to Sor,
O you who settles at the entry of the sea;
a merchant of the people for many islands;
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
O Sor, you — you who say, I *am* of perfect beauty:
4 your borders are in the heart of the seas,
your builders perfect your beauty:
5 they make all your tables of fir trees of Senir;
they take cedars from Lebanon to work your masts;
6 from the oaks of Bashan they work your oars;
the daughters of the Ashshuriym
work your boards of ivory
— brought from the islands of Kittim.

EZEKIEL 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 *Fine White* linen with *broidered work* **embroidery**
from *Egypt* **Misrayim**
was that which thou spreadest forth **thy spreadings**
to be thy sail;
blue and purple from the *isles* **islands** of *Elishah* **Eli Shah**
was that which covered thee.

8 The *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Zidon* **Sidon** and Arvad
were thy *mariners* **paddlers**:
thy wise *men*, O *Tyrus* **Sor**, that were in thee,
were thy *pilots* **sailers**.

9 The *ancients* **elders** of Gebal and the wise *men thereof*
were in thee thy *calkers* **breach holders**:
all the ships of the sea with their mariners were in thee
to *occupy* **pledge** thy merchandise.

10 They of Persia and of Lud and of *Phut* **Put**
were in thine *army* **valiant**, thy men of war:
they hanged the *shield* **buckler** and helmet in thee;
they set **gave** forth thy *comeliness* **majesty**.

11 The *men* **sons** of Arvad with thine *army* **valiant**
were upon thy walls round about,
and the *Gammadims* **warriors** were in thy towers:
they hanged their shields upon thy walls round about;
they have *made* **perfected** thy beauty *perfect*.

12 Tarshish was thy merchant
by reason **because** of the *multitude* **abundance**
of all kind of *riches* **wealth**;
with silver, iron, tin, and lead,
they *traded* **gave** in thy *fairs* **markets**.

13 *Javan* **Yavan**, Tubal, and Meshech,
they were thy merchants:
they *traded the persons* **gave the souls** of *men* **humanity**
and *vessels* **instruments** of *brass* **copper**
in *of thy market* **merchandise**.

Apocalypse 18:12, 13

14 They of the house of Togarmah
traded **gave** in thy *fairs* **markets**
with horses and *horsemen* **cavalry** and mules.

15 The *men* **sons** of Dedan were thy merchants;
many *isles* **islands** were the merchandise of thine hand:
they *brought thee for a present* **restored for their hire**
horns of ivory and *ebony* **ebonies**.

16 *Syria* **Aram** was thy merchant
by reason **because** of the *multitude* **abundance**
of the *wares of thy making* **thy works**:
they *occupied* **gave** in thy *fairs* **markets** with emeralds,
purple, and *broidered work* **embroidery**,
and *fine* **bleached** linen, and coral, and *agate* **rubies**.

17 *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, and the land of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
they were thy merchants:
they *traded* **gave** in thy *market* **merchandise**
wheat of Minnith, and Pannag,
and honey, and oil, and balm.

18 *Damascus* **Dammeseq** was thy merchant
in the *multitude* **abundance** of the *wares of thy making*,
for the *multitude* **abundance** of all *riches* **wealth**;
in the wine of Helbon, and white wool.

19 *Dan* also **Vedan** and *Javan* **Yavan**
going to and fro **gadding about**,
occupied **gave** in thy *fairs* **markets**:
bright iron, cassia, and *calamus* **stalks**,
were in thy *market* **merchandise**.

20 Dedan was thy merchant
in *precious* clothes **of liberation** for chariots.

21 Arabia, and all the *princes* **hierarchs** of *Kedar* **Qedar**,
they *occupied with thee* **merchandised**
in lambs, and rams, and **he** goats:
in these were *they thy* **the** merchants **of thy hand**.

22 The merchants of Sheba and Raamah,
they were thy merchants:
they *occupied* **gave** in thy *fairs* **markets**
with *chief of all* **head** spices,
and with all *precious* **esteemed** stones, and gold.

23 Haran, and *Canneh* **Kanneh**, and Eden,
the merchants of Sheba,
Asshur **Ashshur**, and *Chilmad* **Kilmad**,
were thy merchants.

24 These were thy merchants
in *all sorts of things* **of splendour**,
in blue *clothes* **robes**, and *broidered work* **embroidery**,

YECHEZQ EL 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 Of white linen with embroidery from Misrayim
become your spreadings to become your sail;
blue and purple from the islands of Eli Shah
becomes your cover;
8 the settlers of Sidon and Arvad
become your paddlers;
your wise, O Sor, become your sailers;
9 the elders of Gebal and her wise
become your breach holders;
all the ships of the sea with their mariners
become to pledge your merchandise:
10 they of Persia and of Lud and of Put
become your valiant, your men of war:
they hang the buckler and helmet in you;
they give forth your majesty.

11 The sons of Arvad with your valiant
are on your walls all around
and the warriors in your towers:
they hang their shields on your walls all around;
they perfect your beauty.

12 Tarshish *is* your merchant
because of the abundance of wealth
— with silver, iron, tin, and lead
they give in your markets.

13 Yavan, Tubal, and Meshech *are* your merchants:
they give the souls of humanity
and instruments of copper of your merchandise.

Apocalypse 18:12, 13

14 They of the house of Togarmah
give horses and cavalry and mules
in your markets.

15 The sons of Dedan *are* your merchants;
many islands *are* the merchandise of your hand:
for their hire
they restore horns of ivory and ebonies.

16 Aram *is* your merchant
because of the abundance of your works:
they give in your markets with emeralds
purple and embroidery
and bleached linen and coral and rubies.

17 Yah Hudah, and the land of Yisra El,
are your merchants:
in your merchandise
they give wheat of Minnith and Pannag;
and honey and oil and balm.

18 Dammeseq *is* your merchant
in the abundance of the wares of your making,
for the abundance of all wealth;
in the wine of Helbon and white wool.

19 Vedan and Yavan gad about,
and in your markets
they give bright iron, cassia,
and stalks in your merchandise.

20 Dedan *is* your merchant
in clothes of liberation for chariots.

21 Arabia and all the hierarchs of Qedar,
merchandise in lambs and rams and he goats:
these *are* the merchants of your hand.

22 The merchants of Sheba and Raamah
are your merchants:
and in your markets
they give all head spices,
and all esteemed stones, and gold.

23 Haran, and Kanneh, and Eden,
the merchants of Sheba,
Ashshur, and Kilmad,
are your merchants:

24 these *are* your merchants of splendor
in blue robes and embroidery

EZEKIEL 27, 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and in chests of rich *apparel* **damasks**,
bound with cords, and *made of* cedar,
among thy merchandise.
25 The ships of Tarshish
did sing of thee strolled in thy market **merchandise**:
and thou wast *replenished* **fulfilled**,
and *made very glorious* **mightily honoured**
in the *midst* **heart** of the seas.
26 Thy *rowers* **paddlers**
have brought thee into great waters:
the east wind
hath broken thee in the *midst* **heart** of the seas.
27 Thy *riches* **wealth**, and thy *fairs* **markets**,
thy merchandise,
thy mariners, and thy *pilots* **sailers**,
thy *calkers* **breach holders**,
and the *occupiers* **pledgers** of thy merchandise,
and all thy men of war, that are in thee,
and in all thy *company* **congregation**
which is in the *midst* **heart** of thee,
shall fall into the midst of the seas in the day of thy ruin.
28 The suburbs shall *shake* **quake**
at the *sound* **voice** of the cry of thy *pilots* **sailers**.
29 And all that *handle* **manipulate** the oar,
the mariners, and all the *pilots* **sailers** of the sea,
shall *come down* **descend** from their ships,
they shall stand upon the land;
30 And shall cause their voice to be heard against thee,
and shall cry bitterly,
and shall *cast up* **ascend** dust upon their heads,
they shall wallow themselves in the ashes:
31 And *in balding*, they shall
make themselves utterly bald **balden themselves** for thee,
and gird them with *sackcloth* **saq**,
and they shall weep for thee with bitterness of *heart* **soul**
and bitter *wailing* **chopping**.
32 And in their *wailing* **lamentation**
they shall *take up* **lift** a lamentation for thee,
and lament over thee, *saying*,
What city is like *Tyrus* **Sor**,
like the *destroyed* **severed** in the midst of the sea?
33 When thy *wares* **markets** went forth out of the seas,
thou *filledst* **satisfied** many people;
thou didst enrich the *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth
with the *multitude* **abundance** of thy *riches* **wealth**
and of thy merchandise.
34 In the time when thou shalt be broken by the seas
in the depths of the waters
thy merchandise and all thy *company* **congregation**
in the midst of thee shall fall.
35 All the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the *isles* **islands**
shall be astonished at thee,
and their *kings* **sovereigns**
shall *be sore afraid* **shudder with horror**,
they shall be *troubled* **irritated** in their *countenance* **face**.
36 The merchants among the people shall hiss at thee;
thou shalt be a *terror* **terrors**,
and *never shalt be any more* **shall not be eternally**.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING THE EMINENT OF SOR

28 The word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came again unto me, saying,
2 Son of *man* **humanity**,
say unto the *prince* **eminent** of *Tyrus* **Sor**,
Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Because thine heart is *lifted up* **haughty**,
and thou hast said, *I am a God* — **El**,
I sit in the seat of *God* **Elohim**,
in the *midst* **heart** of the seas;
yet thou art a *man* **human**, and not *God* **El**,
though thou *set* **give** thine heart
as the heart of *God* **Elohim**:
3 Behold, thou art wiser than *Daniel* **Dani El**;
there is *no secret* **nought shut up**
that they can *hide* **shade** from thee:
4 With thy wisdom
and with *thine understanding* **thy discernment**
thou hast *gotten* **worked** thee *riches* **valuables**,
and hast *gotten* **worked** gold and silver into thy treasures:

YECHEZQ EL 27, 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and in chests of rich damasks
— bound with cords and of cedar,
among your merchandise.
25 The ships of Tarshish stroll in your merchandise:
and fulfill you
and mightily honor you in the heart of the seas.
26 Your paddlers bring you into great waters:
the east wind breaks you in the heart of the seas:
27 your wealth, and your markets,
your merchandise, your mariners, and your sailers,
your breach holders,
and the pledgers of your merchandise,
and all your men of war
— in you and in all your congregation among you
fall into the heart of the seas in the day of your ruin.
28 The suburbs quake
at the voice of the cry of your sailers:
29 and all who manipulate the oar
— the mariners and all the sailers of the sea
descend from their ships;
they stand on the land:
30 and hearken their voice against you and cry bitterly
and ascend dust on their heads:
they wallow themselves in the ashes:
31 and in balding, they balden themselves for you,
and gird themselves with saq;
and they weep for you
with bitterness of soul and bitter chopping:
32 and in their lamentation
they lift a lamentation for you
and lament over you,
What is as Sor
— as the severed midst the sea?
33 In your markets going from the seas,
you satisfied many people;
you enriched the sovereigns of the earth
with the abundance of your wealth
and of your merchandise.
34 In the time you *are* broken by the seas
in the depths of the waters
your merchandise and all your congregation
fall in your midst.
35 All the settlers of the islands astonish at you
and their sovereigns shudder with horror
— irritated in their face:
36 the merchants among the people hiss at you;
you become terrors,
and *are* not eternal.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING THE EMINENT OF SOR

28 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity, say to the eminent of Sor,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because your heart is haughty, and you say, I — El;
I sit in the seat of Elohim, in the heart of the seas.
— yet you are human, and not El,
though you give your heart as the heart of Elohim:
3 behold, you are wiser than Dani El;
naught shut up *is* shaded from you:
4 with your wisdom and with your discernment
you work valuables for yourself;
and work gold and silver into your treasures:

EZEKIEL 28

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 By thy great **the greatness of thy** wisdom
and by thy **traffick merchandise**
hast thou *increased* **abounded** thy **riches valuables**,
and thine heart is *lifted up*
because of thy **riches valuables**;

6 Therefore thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Because thou hast set **given** thine heart
as the heart of *God Elohim*;

7 Behold, therefore I *will shall* bring strangers upon thee,
the **terrible tyrant** of the **nations goyim**;
and they shall draw their swords
against the beauty of thy wisdom,
and they shall *defile* **profane** thy **brightness splendour**.
8 They shall bring thee down to the pit **of ruin**,
and thou shalt die the deaths of them
that are *slain* **pierced** in the **midst heart** of the seas.

9 **In saying,**
Wilt Shalt thou *yet say before him* **at his face**
that slayeth thee, *I am God I — Elohim?*
but thou shalt be a *man* **human**, and no *God El*,
in the hand of him that *slayeth* **slaughtereth** thee.

10 Thou shalt die the deaths of the uncircumcised
by the hand of strangers:
for I have *spoken it* **worded**,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.**

**THE WORD OF YAH VEH
CONCERNING THE SOVEREIGN OF SOR**

11 Moreover
the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came unto me, saying,
12 Son of *man* **humanity**,
take up **lift** a lamentation
upon the *king* **sovereign** of *Tyrus Sor*, and say unto him,
Thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Thou sealest up the *sum* **gauge**,
full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty.

13 Thou hast been in Eden the garden of *God Elohim*;
every *precious* **esteemed** stone was thy covering,
the sardius, topaz, and the diamond,
the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper,
the sapphire, the emerald, and the carbuncle, and gold:
the workmanship of thy *tabrets* **tambourines** and of thy pipes
was prepared in thee in the day that thou wast created.

14 Thou art the *anointed* **overspreading** cherub
that covereth;
and I have *set* **given** thee *so*:
thou wast upon the holy mountain of *God Elohim*;
thou hast walked up and down
in the midst of the stones of fire.

15 Thou *wast perfect* **integrious** in thy ways
from the day that thou wast created,
till *iniquity* **wickedness** was found in thee.

16 By the *multitude* **abundance** of thy merchandise
they have filled the midst of thee with violence,
and thou hast sinned:
therefore I *will shall* cast thee as profane
out of the mountain of *God Elohim*;
and I *will shall* destroy thee, O covering cherub,
from the midst of the stones of fire.

17 Thine heart was *lifted up* **haughty**
because of thy beauty,
thou hast *corrupted* **ruined** thy wisdom
by reason of thy **brightness splendour**:
I *will shall* cast thee to the *ground* **earth**,
I *will lay* **shall give** thee
before kings **at the face of sovereigns**,
that they may *behold* **see** thee.

18 Thou hast *defiled* **profaned** thy *sanctuaries* **holies**
by the *multitude* **abundance**
of *thine iniquities* **thy perversities**,
by the *iniquity* **wickedness** of thy *traffick* **merchandise**;
therefore *will shall* I bring forth a fire
from the midst of thee,
it shall devour thee,
and I *will bring* **shall give** thee to ashes upon the earth
in the *sight* **eyes** of all them that *behold* **see** thee.

19 All they that know thee among the people
shall be astonished at thee:
thou shalt be a *terror* **terrors**,
and *never shalt thou be any more* **thou art not eternal**.

YECHEZQ EL 28

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 by your great wisdom and by your merchandise
you abound your valuables;
and you lift your heart because of your valuables.

6 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because you give your heart as the heart of Elohim;
7 behold, so I bring strangers upon you
— the tyrants of the goyim:
and they draw their swords
against the beauty of your wisdom
and they profane your splendor:
8 they bring you down to the pit of ruin
and you die the deaths of the pierced
in the heart of the seas.

9 In saying, say you, I *am* Elohim!
— at the face of him who slays you?
you *are* but human, and not El
in the hand of him who slaughters you:
10 you die the deaths of the uncircumcised
by the hand of strangers:
for I have worded
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

**THE WORD OF YAH VEH
CONCERNING THE SOVEREIGN OF SOR**

11 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
12 Son of humanity,
lift a lamentation on the sovereign of Sor,
and say to him, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
You seal the gauge
— full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.
13 You, were in Eden the garden of Elohim;
every esteemed stone, your covering
— the sardius, topaz, and the diamond;
the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper; the sapphire,
the emerald and the carbuncle and gold:
the workmanship of your tambourines
and of your pipes
was prepared in you in the day that you were created.

14 You, the overspreading cherub who covers;
and I gave you on the holy mountain of Elohim;
to walk up and down midst the stones of fire.

15 You, integrious in your ways
from the day of your creating,
until wickedness was found in you.

16 By the abundance of your merchandise
they filled your midst with violence,
and you sinned.
So I cast you as profane
from the mountain of Elohim:
and I destroy you, O covering cherub,
from midst the stones of fire:

17 your heart is haughty because of your beauty;
you ruin your wisdom because of your splendor:
I cast you to the earth;
I give you at the face of sovereigns
so that they see you:
you profaned your holies
by the abundance of your perversities
— by the wickedness of your merchandise;
and I bring a fire from your midst to consume you:
and I give you to ashes on the earth
in the eyes of all who see you.

19 All among the people who know you
astonish at you:
you become terrors,
and you are not eternal.

EZEKIEL 28, 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING SIDON

20 Again the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came unto me,
saying,
21 Son of *man humanity*,
set thy face against *Zidon Sidon*, and prophesy against it,
22 And say, Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Behold, I am against thee, O *Zidon Sidon*;
and I *will shall* be *glorified honoured*
in the midst of thee:
and they shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*,
when I shall have *executed worked* judgments in her,
and shall be *sanctified hallowed* in her.
23 For I *will shall* send into her pestilence,
and blood into her *streets outways*;
and the *wounded pierced*
shall be *judged felled* in the midst of her
by the sword upon her *on every side round about*;
and they shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.
24 And there shall be no more
a *pricking brier bitter prickle*
unto the house of *Israel Yisra El*,
nor *any grieving painful* thorn
of all that are round about them,
that despised them;
and they shall know
that *I am the Lord GOD — Adonay Yah Veh*.
25 Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
When I shall have gathered the house of *Israel Yisra El*
from the people among whom they are scattered,
and shall be *sanctified hallowed* in them
in the *sight eyes* of the *heathen goyim*,
then shall they *dwell settle* in their *land soil*
that I have given to my servant *Jacob Yaaqov*.
26 And they shall *dwell safely settle confidently* therein,
and shall build houses, and plant vineyards;
yea, they shall *dwell with confidence settle confidently*,
when I have *executed worked* judgments
upon all those that despise them round about them;
and they shall know
that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh* their *God Elohim*.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH

CONCERNING THE SOVEREIGN OF MISRAYIM

29

In the tenth year,
in the tenth *month*, in the twelfth *day* of the month,
the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came unto me, saying,
2 Son of *man humanity*,
set thy face against *Pharaoh Paroh*
king sovereign of *Egypt Misrayim*,
and prophesy against him,
and against all *Egypt Misrayim*:
3 *Speak Word*, and say,
Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Behold, I am against thee,
Pharaoh king Paroh sovereign of *Egypt Misrayim*,
the great *dragon monster*
that *lieth croucheth* in the midst of his rivers,
which hath said,
My river is mine own,
and I have *made worked* it for myself.
4 But I *will put shall give* hooks in thy jaws,
and I *will shall* cause the fish of thy rivers
to stick unto thy scales,
and I *will bring shall ascend* thee *up*
out of the midst of thy rivers,
and all the fish of thy rivers shall stick unto thy scales.
5 And I *will leave shall abandon* thee
thrown into the wilderness,
thee and all the fish of thy rivers:
that thou shalt fall upon the *open face of the* fields;
that thou shalt not be *brought gathered* together,
nor gathered:
I have given thee for *meat food*
to the *beasts live beings* of the *field earth*
and to the *fowls flyers* of the *heaven heavens*.
6 And all the *inhabitants settlers* of *Egypt Misrayim*
shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*,
because they have been a *staff stalk* of *reed support*
to the house of *Israel Yisra El*.
7 When they *took hold of apprehended* thee by thy *hand palm*,

YECHEZQ EL 28, 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING SIDON

20 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
21 Son of humanity,
set your face against Sidon and prophesy against it,
22 and say, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I *am* against you, O Sidon;
and I am honored in your midst:
and they know I — Yah Veh,
when I work judgments in her,
and am hallowed in her.
23 And I send her pestilence
and blood in her outways;
and fell the pierced in her midst
by the sword on her all around;
and they know I — Yah Veh.
24 And neither *is* there any more a bitter prickle
to the house of Yisra El,
nor painful thorn
of all who *are* all around them who despise them;
and they know I — Adonay Yah Veh.
25 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
When I gather the house of Yisra El
from the people among whom they scattered,
and *am* hallowed in them in the eyes of the goyim,
then they settle in their soil
that I gave to my servant Yaaqov:
26 and they settle confidently
and build houses and plant vineyards:
yes, they settle confidently,
when I work judgments
on all who despise them all around them;
and they know I — Yah Veh their Elohim.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH

CONCERNING THE SOVEREIGN OF MISRAYIM

29

In the tenth year,
in the tenth, in the twelfth of the month,
so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
set your face against Paroh sovereign of Misrayim
and prophesy against him
— and against all Misrayim.
3 Word and say, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I *am* against you,
Paroh sovereign of Misrayim,
the great monster who crouches midst his rivers;
who says, My river is my own
and I work it for myself.
4 And I give hooks in your jaws
so that the fish of your rivers stick to your scales:
and I ascend you from midst your rivers,
and all the fish of your rivers stick to your scales:
5 and I abandon you in the wilderness
— you and all the fish of your rivers:
so that you fall on the face of the fields;
so that you *are* neither gathered together,
nor gathered:
I give you for food to the live beings of the earth
and to the flyers of the heavens:
6 and all the settlers of Misrayim know
I — Yah Veh,
because of their being a stalk of support
to the house of Yisra El.
7 They apprehend you by your palm;

EZEKIEL 29

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

thou didst *break* **crush**, and *rend* **split** all their shoulder:
and when they leaned upon thee, thou brakest,
and madest all their loins to *be at a stand* **shake**.
8 Therefore thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Behold, I will **shall** bring a sword upon thee,
and cut off *man* **humanity** and *beast* **animal** out of thee.
9 And the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
shall be desolate and *waste* **parched**;
and they shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*:
because he hath said,
The river is mine, and I have *made* **worked** it.
10 Behold,
therefore I am against thee, and against thy rivers,
and I will *make* **shall give** the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
utterly waste **in parching, parched** and desolate,
from the tower of *Syene* **Seven**
even unto the border of *Ethiopia* **Kush**.
11 No foot of *man* **humanity** shall pass through it,
nor foot of *beast* **animal** shall pass through it,
neither shall it be *inhabited* **settled** forty years.
12 And I will *make* **shall give** the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
desolate
in the midst of the *countries* **lands**
that are *desolate* **desolated**,
and her cities among the cities
that are *laid waste* **parched**
shall be desolate forty years:
and I will **shall** scatter the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
among the *nations* **goyim**,
and will *disperse* **shall winnow** them
through the *countries* **lands**.
13 Yet thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
At the end of forty years
will **shall** I gather the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
from the people whither they were scattered:
14 And I will *bring again* **shall return**
the captivity of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and will **shall** cause them to return
into the land of Pathros,
into the land of their *habitation* **origin**;
and they shall be there
a *base kingdom* **lowly sovereignty**.
15 **So be** it *shall be*
the *basest* **lowliest** of the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**;
neither shall it exalt itself any more
above the *nations* **goyim**:
for I will **shall** diminish them,
that they shall no more
rule over **subjugate** the *nations* **goyim**.
16 And **so be** it *shall be*
no more the confidence of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which *bringeth* **remembereth**
their *iniquity* to *remembrance* **perversity**,
when they shall *look face* after them:
but they shall know
that *I am the Lord GOD I — Adonay Yah Veh*.
17 And **so be** it *came to pass*
in the seven and twentieth year,
in the first *month*, in the first *day* of the month,
the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came unto me, saying,
18 Son of *man* **humanity**,
Nebuchadrezzar **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
caused his *army* **valiant**
to serve a great service against *Tyrus* **Sor**:
every head was *made bald* **baldened**,
and every shoulder was peeled:
yet had he no *wages* **hire**, nor his *army* **valiant**,
for *Tyrus* **Sor**, for the service that he had served against it:
19 Therefore thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Behold, I will **shall** give the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
unto *Nebuchadrezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**;
and he shall *take* **lift** her multitude,
and *take* **spoil** her spoil,
and *take her prey* **plundereth her plunder**;
and **so be** it *shall be* the *wages* **hire** for his *army* **valiant**.
20 I have given him the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
for his *labour* **deeds** wherewith he served against it,

YECHEZQ EL 29

exeGesés companion BIBLE

you crush and split all their shoulder:
and when they lean on you,
you break and shake all their loins.
8 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I bring a sword on you
and cut off humanity and animal from you;
9 and desolate and parch the land of Misrayim;
and they know I — Yah Veh:
because he says,
The river *is* mine and I work it.
10 So behold,
I am against you and against your rivers;
and in parching,
I give the land of Misrayim parched and desolate
— from the tower of Seven to the border of Kush:
11 neither foot of humanity passes through
nor foot of animal passes through;
nor *is* it settled forty years:
12 and I give the land of Misrayim desolate
midst the desolate lands;
and her cities among the parched cities
— desolate them forty years:
and I scatter the Misrayim among the goyim,
and winnow them through the lands.
13 Yet thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
At the end of forty years I gather the Misrayim
from the people where they are scattered:
14 and I restore the captivity of Misrayim
— restore them to the land of Pathros
to their land of origin;
and there they become a lowly sovereignty;
15 so be it, of all the sovereigndoms, the lowliest;
no more to exalt itself above the goyim:
for I diminish them
so that they no more subjugate the goyim.
16 And so be it no more
the confidence of the house of Yisra El
— who remembers their perversity,
when they faced after them:
and they know I — Adonay Yah Veh.
17 And so be it, in the twenty—seventh year,
in the first, in the first of the month,
so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
18 Son of humanity,
Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel
has his valiant to serve a great service against Sor:
every head baldens and every shoulder peels:
yet neither he nor his valiant have any hire from Sor
for the service he served against it.
19 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I give the land of Misrayim
to Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel;
to lift her multitude and spoil her spoil
and plunder her plunder;
and so be it the hire for his valiant.
20 I give him the land of Misrayim
for the deeds he served against it

EZEKIEL 29, 30

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

21 because they wrought worked for me,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
In that day will shall I cause the horn
of the house of Israel Yisra El to bud forth sprout,
and I will shall give thee the opening of the mouth
in the midst of them;
and they shall know that I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING MISRAYIM

30 The word of the LORD Yah Veh
came again unto me, saying,
2 Son of man humanity, prophesy and say,
Thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
Howl ye, Woe worth Hah the day!
3 For the day is near,
even the day of the LORD Yah Veh is near, a cloudy day;
it shall be the time of the heathen goyim.
4 And so be the sword shall come upon Egypt Misrayim,
and so be great pain shall be in Ethiopia Kush,
when the slain pierced shall fall in Egypt Misrayim,
and they shall take away her multitude,
and her foundations shall be broken down.

5 Ethiopia Kush, and Libya Put, and Lydia Lud,
and all the mingled people comingled, and Chub Kub,
and the men sons of the land that is in league covenant,
shall fall with them by the sword.
6 Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh;
They also that uphold Egypt Misrayim shall fall;
and the pride pomp of her power strength
shall come down topple:
from the tower of Syene Seven
shall they fall in it by the sword,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

7 And they shall be desolate
in the midst of the countries lands
that are desolate desolated,
and her cities
shall be in the midst of the cities that are wasted.
8 And they shall know that I am the LORD I — Yah Veh,
when I have set given a fire in Egypt Misrayim,
and when all her helpers shall be destroyed broken.
9 In that day shall messengers angels
go forth from me my face in ships
to make the careless Ethiopians confident Kushies
afraid tremble,

and great pain shall come upon them,
as in the day of Egypt Misrayim:
for, lo behold, it cometh approacheth.
10 Thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
I will shall also make cause
the multitude of Egypt Misrayim to cease shabbathize
by the hand of Nebuchadrezzar Nebukadnets Tsar
king sovereign of Babylon Babel.

11 He and his people with him,
the terrible tyrant of the nations goyim,
shall be brought to destroy ruin the land:
and they shall draw their swords against Egypt Misrayim,
and fill the land with the slain pierced.

12 And I will make shall work the rivers dry,
and sell the land into the hand of the wicked evil:
and I will make shall desolate the land waste,
and all that is therein the fulness thereof,
by the hand of strangers:

13 I the LORD Yah Veh have spoken it worded.
Thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
I will shall also destroy the idols,
and I will shall cause their images idols
to cease shabbathize out of Noph;
and there shall be no more
a prince hierarch of the land of Egypt Misrayim:
and I will put shall give a fear
in the land of Egypt Misrayim.

14 And I will make Pathros I shall desolate Pathros,
and will set shall give fire in Zoan Soan,
and will execute shall work judgments in No.

15 And I will shall pour my fury upon Sin,
the strength stronghold of Egypt Misrayim;
and I will shall cut off the multitude of No.

16 And I will shall set fire in Egypt Misrayim:
In writhing, Sin shall have great pain writhe,

YECHEZQ EL 29, 30

exeGesés companion BIBLE

because they worked for me
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

21 In that day,
I sprout the horn of the house of Yisra El,
and I give you
the opening of the mouth in their midst;
and they know I — Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING MISRAYIM

30 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity, prophesy and say,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Howl! Hah! The day!
— for the day is near

3 — the day of Yah Veh is near;
a day of clouds; it is the time of the goyim:
4 and so be the sword on Misrayim
and so be great pain in Kush;
the pierced fall in Misrayim:
and they take away her multitude
and break her foundations:
5 Kush and Put and Lud
and all the comingled and Kub
and the sons of the land in covenant
fall with them by the sword.

6 Thus says Yah Veh;
And they who uphold Misrayim fall;
and the pomp of her strength topples:
from the tower of Seven they fall by the sword
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
7 and they desolate midst the desolate lands;
and her cities midst the cities are wasted.
8 And they know I — Yah Veh,
when I give a fire in Misrayim
and when all her helpers are broken.
9 In that day, angels go from my face in ships
to make the confident Kushies tremble,
and great pain becomes them
as in the day of Misrayim:
for behold, it approaches.

10 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
I shabbathize the multitude of Misrayim
by the hand of Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of Babel:
11 he and his people with him
— the tyrant of the goyim,
he brings the land to ruin:
and they draw their swords against Misrayim,
and fill the land with the pierced.

12 And I work the rivers dry
and sell the land into the hand of the evil:
and I desolate the land and the fulness thereof
by the hand of strangers:
I Yah Veh have worded.

13 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
And I destroy the idols
and I shabbathize their idols from Noph;
and there is no more
a hierarch of the land of Misrayim:
and I give a fear in the land of Misrayim:
14 and I desolate Pathros
and give fire in Soan and work judgments in No:
15 and I pour my fury on Sin
the stronghold of Misrayim;
and I cut off the multitude of No;
16 and I set fire in Misrayim:
in writhing, sin writhes,

EZEKIEL 30, 31

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and No shall be rent asunder,
and Noph shall have *distresses* **tribulations** daily.
17 The *young men* **youths** of Aven **mischief**
and of *Pibeseth* **Pi Beseth** shall fall by the sword:
and these cities shall go into captivity.
18 At *Tehaphnehes* **Tachpanches** also
the day shall be *darkened* **spared**,
when I shall break there
the *yokes* **yoke poles** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
and the pomp of her strength
shall cease **shabbathize** in her:
as for her, a cloud shall cover her,
and her daughters shall go into captivity.
19 Thus *will I execute* **shall I work** judgments
in *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
and they shall know that *I am the* **LORD I — Yah Veh**.
20 And **so be** it *came to pass* in the eleventh year,
in the first *month*, in the seventh *day* of the month,
that the word of the **LORD Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
21 Son of *man* **humanity**,
I have broken the arm of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
king **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
and, *lo* **behold**,
it shall *not be* **be not** bound up
to be *healed* **give to healers**,
to *put* **set** a *roller* **bandage** to bind it,
to *make* **strengthen** it *strong*
to *hold* **apprehend** the sword.
22 Therefore thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Behold, I am against *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
king **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and *will* **shall** break his arms,
the strong, and that which was broken;
and I *will* **shall** cause the sword to fall out of his hand.
23 And I *will* **shall** scatter the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
among the *nations* **goyim**,
and *will* **shall** disperse them through the *countries* **lands**.
24 And I *will* **shall** strengthen the arms
of the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and *put* **give** my sword in his hand:
but I *will* **shall** break *Pharaoh's* **Paroh's** arms,
and he shall groan *before him* **at his face**
with the groanings of a *deadly wounded* **pierced** man.
25 But I *will* **shall** strengthen the arms
of the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and the arms of *Pharaoh* **Paroh** shall fall down;
and they shall know that *I am the* **LORD I — Yah Veh**,
when I shall *put* **give** my sword
into the hand of the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and he shall *stretch* **spread** it out
upon the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
26 And I *will* **shall** scatter the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
among the *nations* **goyim**,
and *disperse* **winnow** them among the *countries* **lands**;
and they shall know that *I am the* **LORD I — Yah Veh**.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING PAROH

31 And **so be** it *came to pass* in the eleventh year,
in the third *month*, in the first *day* of the month,
that the word of the **LORD Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
2 Son of *man* **humanity**,
speak unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
king **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and to his multitude;
Whom art thou like in thy greatness?
3 Behold, the *Assyrian* **Ashshuri** was a cedar in Lebanon
with *fair* **beautiful** branches,
and with a *shadowing shroud* **an overshadowing forest**,
and of an high *stature* **height**;
and his *top* **foliage** was among the thick *boughs* **foliage**.
4 The waters *made* **greatened** him *great*,
the *deep* **set** *abyss* **lifted** him *up on high*
with her rivers *running* **passing** round about his plants,
and sent her *little* **rivers** **channels**
unto all the trees of the field.
5 Therefore his height was *exalted* **heightened**
above all the trees of the field,

YECHEZQ EL 30, 31

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and No rips *apart*,
and Noph tribulates daily.
17 The youths of mischief
and of Pi Beseth fall by the sword;
and these cities go into captivity:
18 and spare the day in Tachpanches,
when I break the yoke poles of Misrayim:
and the pomp of her strength shabbathizes in her:
as for her, a cloud covers her
and her daughters go into captivity.
19 Thus I work judgments in Misrayim:
and they know I — Yah Veh.
20 And so be it, in the eleventh year,
in the first, in the seventh of the month,
so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
21 Son of humanity,
I broke the arm of Paroh sovereign of Misrayim;
and behold, it is not bound to give healing
to set a bandage to bind it,
to strengthen it to apprehend the sword.
22 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I am against Paroh sovereign of Misrayim,
and I break his arms
— the strong and the broken:
and I fell the sword from his hand;
23 and I scatter the Misrayim among the goyim
and disperse them through the lands:
24 and I strengthen the arms of the sovereign of Babel
and give my sword in his hand:
and I break the arms of Paroh,
and he groans the groanings
of a pierced man at his face.
25 And I strengthen the arms of the sovereign of Babel
and fell the arms of Paroh:
and they know I — Yah Veh,
when I give my sword
into the hand of the sovereign of Babel;
and he spreads it on the land of Misrayim:
26 and I scatter the Misrayim among the goyim
and winnow them among the lands:
and they know I — Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING PAROH

31 And so be it, in the eleventh year,
in the third, in the first of the month,
so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
speak to Paroh sovereign of Misrayim
and to his multitude;
3 To whom are you likened in your greatness?
Behold, the Ashshuri,
a cedar in Lebanon with beautiful branches
with an overshadowing forest
and high in height;
with his foliage among the thick foliage:
4 the waters greaten him; the abyss lifts him;
and her rivers pass all around his plants
and send her channels to all the trees of the field.
5 So his height heightens
above all the trees of the field;

EZEKIEL 31

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and his *boughs* **twigs** were multiplied **greatened**,
and his *branches* became long **foliage lengthened**
because of the *multitude* **abundance** of waters,
when he *shot* **spread** forth.

6 All the *fowls* **flyers** of *heaven* **the heavens**
made their nests **nested** in his *boughs* **twigs**,
and under his *branches* **foliage**
did all the *beasts* **live beings** of the field
bring forth **birth** their young,
and under his shadow
dwelt **settled** all great *nations* **goyim**.

7 Thus was he *fair* **beautified** in his greatness,
in the length of his branches:
for his root was by great waters.

8 The cedars in the garden of *God* **Elohim**
could not *hide* **shade** him:
the fir trees were not like his *boughs* **twigs**,
and the chesnut trees were not like his *branches* **foliage**;
nor any tree in the garden of *God* **Elohim**
was like unto him in his beauty.

9 I have *made* **worked** him *fair* **beautiful**
by the *multitude* **abundance** of his branches:
so that all the trees of Eden,
that were in the garden of *God* **Elohim**, envied him.

10 Therefore thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Because thou hast
lifted up thyself in **heightened thy** height,
and he hath *shot up* **given his top** **foliage**
among the thick *boughs* **foliage**,
and his heart is *lifted up* in his height;
I have therefore *delivered* **given** him
into the hand of the *mighty one* **el** of the *heathen* **goyim**;
in working, he shall *surely deal* **work** with him:
I have driven him out for his wickedness.

12 And strangers, the *terrible* **tyrants** of the *nations* **goyim**,
have cut him off, and have *left* **abandoned** him:
upon the mountains and in all the valleys
his branches are fallen,
and his *boughs* **foliage** are broken
by all the *rivers* **reservoirs** of the *land* **earth**;
and all the people of the earth
are *gone down* **descended** from his shadow,
and have *left* **abandoned** him.

13 Upon his ruin shall **tabernacle**
all the *fowls* **flyers** of the *heaven* **remain** **heavens**,
and all the *beasts* **live beings** of the field
shall be upon his *branches* **foliage**:

14 To the end that none of all the trees by the waters
exalt **heighten** themselves for their height,
neither shoot up **give** their *top* **foliage**
among the thick *boughs* **foliage**,
neither their trees **mighty oaks** stand up in their height,
all that drink water:
for they are all *delivered* **given** unto death,
to the *nether parts* **nethermost** of the earth,
in the midst of the *children* **sons of men** **humanity**,
with them that *go down* **descend** to the *pit* **well**.

15 Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
In the day
when he *went down* **descended** to the *grave* **sheol**
I caused a mourning:
I covered the *deep* **abyss** for him,
and I *restrained* **withheld** the *floods* **rivers** thereof,
and the great waters were stayed:
and I caused Lebanon to *mourn* **darken** for him,
and all the trees of the field *fainted* **languished** for him.

16 I *made* **caused** the *nations* **goyim**
to *shake* **quake** at the *sound* **voice** of his *fall* **ruin**,
when I *cast* **brought** him down to *hell* **sheol**
with them that *descend* **descended** into the *pit* **well**:
and all the trees of Eden, the choice and best of Lebanon,
all that drink water, shall *be comforted* **sigh**
in the *nether parts* **nethermost** of the earth.

17 They also *went down* **descended** into *hell* **sheol**
with him
unto them that be *slain* **pierced** with the sword;
and they that were his arm,
that *dwelt* **settled** under his shadow
in the midst of the *heathen* **goyim**.

YECHEZQ EL 31

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and his twigs **greaten** and his foliage lengthens
because of the abundance of waters
when he spreads forth:

6 all the flyers of the heavens nest in his twigs
and under his foliage
all the live beings of the field birth their young;
and all the great goyim settle under his shadow:
7 and he beautifies in his greatness
— in the length of his branches:
and so be his root by great waters:

8 the cedars in the garden of Elohim shade him not:
neither are the fir trees like his twigs;
nor the chesnut trees like his foliage;
nor any tree in the garden of Elohim
like him in his beauty:
9 I worked him beautiful
in the abundance of his branches:
so that all the trees of Eden in the garden of Elohim
envy him.

10 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because you heighten in height,
and he gives his foliage among the thick foliage
and lifts his heart in height;
11 so I give him
into the hand of the el of the goyim;
in working, he works with him:
I drive him out for his wickedness:
12 and strangers, the tyrants of the goyim,
cut him off and abandon him:
his branches fall
on the mountains and in all the valleys;
and his foliage breaks
by all the reservoirs of the earth;
and all the people of the earth
descend from his shadow and abandon him:

13 all the flyers of the heavens,
tabernacle on his ruin;
and all the live beings of the field
are on his foliage:

14 so that none of all the trees by the waters
heighten themselves in height;
neither give their foliage among the thick foliage
nor their mighty oaks stand in their height
— all drinking waters:
for they are all given to death;
to the nethermost of the earth
midst the sons of humanity,
who descend with them to the well.

15 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
In the day he descends to sheol
I cause a mourning; I cover the abyss for him:
and I withhold the rivers and stay the great waters:
and I darken Lebanon for him
and all the trees of the field languish for him:

16 I quake the goyim at the voice of his ruin
when I bring him down to sheol
with them who descend into the well:
and all the trees of Eden
— the choice and best of Lebanon
— all who drink water
sigh in the nethermost of the earth:
17 they also descend into sheol with him
to the pierced with the sword;
and settles his arm under his shadow midst the goyim.

EZEKIEL 31, 32

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 To whom art thou thus like in *glory* **honour**
and in greatness among the trees of Eden?
yet shalt thou be brought down with the trees of Eden
unto the *nether parts* **nethermost** of the earth:
thou shalt lie in the midst of the uncircumcised
with them that be *slain* **pierced** by the sword.
This is *Pharaoh* **Paroh** and all his multitude,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.**

LAMENTATION AGAINST PAROH

32

And **so be** it *came to pass* in the twelfth year,
in the twelfth month, in the first *day* of the month,
that the word of the LORD **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,

2 Son of *man* **humanity**, *take up* **lift** a lamentation
for *Pharaoh king* **Paroh sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and say unto him,
Thou art like a *young lion* **whelp** of the *nations* **goyim**,
and thou art as a *whale* **monsters** in the seas:
and thou camest forth with thy rivers,
and troubledst the waters with thy feet,
and foulest their rivers.

3 Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
I *will* **shall** therefore spread out my net over thee
with a *company* **congregation** of many people;
and they shall *bring* **ascend** thee *up* in my net.

4 Then *will I leave* **shall I abandon** thee upon the land,
I *will* **shall** cast thee forth upon the *open* **face of the** field,
and *will* **shall** cause

all the *fowls* **flyers** of the *heaven* **heavens**
to *remain* **tabernacle** upon thee,
and I *will* **shall** *satiare* the *beasts* **live beings**
of the whole earth with thee.

5 And I *will lay* **shall give** thy flesh upon the mountains,
and fill the valleys with thy *height* **carcase heaps**.

6 I *will* **shall** also *water* **wet** with thy blood
the land *wherein thou swimmest* **of thy swimming**,
even to the mountains;
and the *rivers* **reservoirs** shall be *full* **filled** of thee.

7 And when I shall put thee out,
I *will* **shall** cover the *heaven* **heavens**,
and *make* **darken** the stars *thereof* **dark**;
I *will* **shall** cover the sun with a cloud,
and the moon shall not *give her light* **lighten**.

8 All the *bright lights*
of the light of *heaven* **the heavens**
will I make dark **shall I darken** over thee,
and *set* **give** darkness upon thy land,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.**

9 I *will* **shall** also vex the hearts of many people,
when I shall bring thy *destruction* **breech**
among the *nations* **goyim**,
into the *countries* **lands** which thou hast not known.

10 Yea, I *will make* **shall cause** many people
amazed **to astonish** at thee,
and their *kings* **sovereigns**
shall be *horribly afraid* **shudder with horror** for thee,
when I shall *brandish* **flutter** my sword
before them **at their face**;
and they shall tremble *at every moment* **in a blink**,
every man for his own *life* **soul**, in the day of thy *fall* **ruin**.

11 For thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
The sword of the *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
shall come upon thee.

12 By the swords of the mighty
will **shall I** cause thy multitude to fall,
the *terrible* **tyrants** of the *nations* **goyim**, all of them:
and they shall *spoil* **ravage** the pomp of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and all the multitude *thereof*
shall be *destroyed* **desolated**.

13 I *will* **shall** destroy also all the *beasts* **animals** *thereof*
from beside the great waters;
neither shall the foot of *man* **humanity**
trouble them any more,
nor the hoofs of *beasts* **animals** trouble them.

14 Then *will* **shall I** make their waters *deep* **drown**,
and cause their rivers to *run* **go** like oil,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.**

15 When I shall *make* **give** the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
desolate,

YECHEZQ EL 31, 32

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 To whom are you thus likened in honor
and in greatness among the trees of Eden?
Yet I bring you down with the trees of Eden
to the nethermost of the earth:
to lie among the uncircumcised
with the pierced by the sword
— thus *is* Paroh and all his multitude
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

LAMENTATION AGAINST PAROH

32

And so be it, in the twelfth year,
in the twelfth month, in the first of the month,
so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,

2 Son of humanity,
lift a lamentation for Paroh sovereign of Misrayim,
and say to him,
You are like a whelp of the goyim
and as monsters in the seas:
and you come forth with your rivers
and trouble the waters with your feet
and foul their rivers.

3 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
And I spread my net over you
with a congregation of many people;
and they ascend you in my net:

4 and I abandon you on the land:
I cast you forth on the face of the field,
and all the flyers of the heavens tabernacle on you;
and with you,

I satiate the live beings of the whole earth:
and I give your flesh on the mountains
and fill the valleys with your carcase heaps:
and with your blood

5 I wet the land of your swimming
— even to the mountains;
and fill the reservoirs with you:
and when I put you out,
I cover the heavens and darken the stars:
I cover the sun with a cloud
and the moon lightens not:
6 all the lights of the light of the heavens
I darken over you
and give darkness on your land
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

9 And I vex the hearts of many people,
when I bring your breech among the goyim,
to the lands you know not.

10 Yes, many people astonish at you
and their sovereigns shudder with horror
when I flutter my sword at their face;
and in a blink, every man trembles for his own soul
in the day of your ruin.

11 For thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
The sword of the sovereign of Babel comes upon you.

12 By the swords of the mighty, I fell your multitude
— the tyrants of the goyim — all of them:
and they ravage the pomp of Misrayim,
and all the multitude desolates:
and I destroy all the animals
from beside the great waters;
neither the foot of humanity troubles them any more
nor the hoofs of animals trouble them.

14 Then I drown their waters
that their rivers go as oil
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

15 I give the land of Misrayim desolate

EZEKIEL 32

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the country **land** hall be *desitute desolated*
of that whereof it was full from the fulness thereof,
 when I shall smite all them that *dwell settle* therein,
 then shall they know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.*

16 This is the lamentation
 wherewith they shall lament her:
 the daughters of the *nations goyim* shall lament her:
 they shall lament for her,
 even for *Egypt Misrayim*, and for all her multitude,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

17 **So be** it *came to pass*
 also in the twelfth year, in the fifteenth *day* of the month,
that the word of the LORD Yah Veh came unto me,
 saying,

18 Son of *man humanity*,
wail lament for the multitude of *Egypt Misrayim*,
 and *cast bring* them down, *even her*,
 and the daughters of the *famous nations mighty goyim*,
 unto the *nether parts nethermost* of the earth,
 with them that *go down descend* into the *pit well*.
Whom dost thou pass in beauty?
With whom hast thou been most pleasant?
go down descend,
 and be thou laid with the uncircumcised.
 They shall fall in the midst of them
 that are *slain pierced* by the sword:
 she is *delivered given* to the sword:
 draw her and all her multitudes.

21 The *strong among el* of the mighty
 shall *speak word* to him
 out of the midst of *hell sheol* with them that help him:
 they *are gone down descend*,
 they lie uncircumcised, *slain pierced* by the sword.

22 *Asshur Ashshur* is there
 and all her *company congregation*:
 his *graves tombs* are *round* about him:
 all of them *slain pierced*, fallen by the sword:

23 Whose *graves tombs* are *set given*
 in the *sides flanks* of the *pit well*,
 and her *company congregation*
 is round about her *grave tomb*:
 all of them *slain pierced*, fallen by the sword,
 which *caused gave* terror in the land of the living.

24 There is *Elam* and all her multitude
 round about her *grave tomb*,
 all of them *slain pierced*, fallen by the sword,
 which are *gone brought* down uncircumcised
 into the *nether parts nethermost* of the earth,
 which *caused gave* their terror in the land of the living;
 yet have they borne their shame
 with them that *go down descend* to the *pit well*.

25 They have *set given* her a bed
 in the midst of the *slain pierced* with all her multitude:
 her *graves tombs* are round about him:
 all of them uncircumcised, *slain pierced* by the sword:
 though their terror
 was *caused given* in the land of the living,
 yet have they borne their shame with them
 that *go down descend* to the *pit well*:
 he is *put given* in the midst of them that be *slain pierced*.

26 There is *Meshech, Tubal*,
 and all her multitude:
 her *graves tombs* are round about him:
 all of them uncircumcised, *slain pierced* by the sword,
 though they *caused gave* their terror
 in the land of the living.

27 And they shall not lie with the mighty
 that are fallen of the uncircumcised,
 which are *gone down descended* to *hell sheol*
 with their *weapons instruments* of war:
 and they have *laid given* their swords under their heads,
 but their *iniquities perversities* shall be upon their bones,
 though they were the terror of the mighty
 in the land of the living.

28 Yea,
 thou shalt be broken in the midst of the uncircumcised,
 and shalt lie with them
 that are *slain pierced* with the sword.

29 There is *Edom*,

YECHEZQ EL 32

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and desolate the land from the fulness thereof
 and I smite all who settle therein:
 and they know I — Yah Veh.

16 This is a lamentation; and they lament her:
 the daughters of the goyim lament her:
 they lament her,
 for Misrayim and for all her multitude
 they lament her
 — an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

17 So be it,
 in the twelfth year, in the fifteenth of the month,
 so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
 Son of humanity,
 lament for the multitude of Misrayim,
 and descend them
 — them and the daughters of the mighty goyim,
 to the nethermost of the earth,
 with them who descend into the well.

19 With whom have you been most pleasant?
 Descend and lie with the uncircumcised.
 They fall in their midst
 — the pierced by the sword:
 she is given to the sword:
 they draw her and all her multitudes:

21 the el of the mighty words to him from midst sheol
 with them who help him:
 they descend;
 they lie uncircumcised; pierced by the sword.

22 There is Ashshur with all her congregation:
 surrounded by his tombs:
 all the pierced; the fallen by the sword:
 whose tombs are given in the flanks of the well;
 and her congregation surrounds her tomb:
 all of the pierced; the fallen by the sword:
 who give terror in the land of the living.

24 There is *Elam* with all her multitude:
 surrounded her tomb,
 all of the pierced; the fallen by the sword:
 who descend the uncircumcised
 into the nethermost of the earth;
 who give their terror in the land of the living;
 yet they bear their shame
 with them who descend to the well.

25 They give her a bed midst the pierced
 with all her multitude:
 her tombs surround him:
 all of the uncircumcised; the pierced by the sword:
 for their terror *is given* in the land of the living,
 yet they bear their shame
 with them who descend to the well:
 he *is given* midst the pierced.

26 There is *Meshech, Tubal*, and all her multitude:
 surrounded by her tombs:
 all of the uncircumcised; the pierced by the sword
 for they give their terror in the land of the living:
 and they not lie with the mighty
 — the fallen of the uncircumcised,
 who descend to sheol with their instruments of war:
 and they give their swords under their heads,
 and their perversities *are* on their bones,
 for the terror of the mighty in the land of the living.

28 Yes,
 you are broken among the uncircumcised,
 and lie with them
 who are pierced with the sword.

29 There is *Edom*,

EZEKIEL 32, 33

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

her kings **sovereigns**, and all her *princes* **hierarchs**,
which with their might are **laid given**
by them that were *slain* **pierced** by the sword:
they shall lie with the uncircumcised,
and with them that *go down* **descend** to the *pit well*.
30 There be the princes of the north,
all of them, and all the *Zidonians* **Sidonians**,
which are *gone* **brought** down with the *slain* **pierced**;
with their terror they are ashamed of their might;
and they lie uncircumcised
with them that be *slain* **pierced** by the sword,
and bear their shame
with them that *go down* **descend** to the *pit well*.
31 *Pharaoh Paroh* shall see them,
and shall be *comforted* **sigh** over all his multitude,
even *Pharaoh Paroh* and all his *army* **valiant**
slain **pierced** by the sword,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
32 For I have *caused* **given** my terror
in the land of the living;
and he shall be laid in the midst of the uncircumcised
with them that are *slain* **pierced** with the sword,
even *Pharaoh Paroh* and all his multitude,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.

YECHÉZQ EL, THE WATCHER

33

Again the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came unto me, saying,
2 Son of *man* **humanity**,
speak **word** to the *children* **sons** of thy people,
and say unto them,
When I bring the sword upon a land,
if the people of the land
take a **one** man from their *coasts* **edges**,
and *set* **give** him for their *watchman* **watcher**:
3 If when he seeth the sword *come upon* **approach** the land,
he *blow* **blast** the *trumpet* **shophar**,
and *warn* **enlighten** the people;
4 Then in **hearkening**, whosoever *heareth* **hearkeneth**
the sound **unto the voice** of the *trumpet* **shophar**,
and taketh not warning;
if the sword come, and take him away,
his blood shall be upon his own head.
5 He heard the *sound* **voice** of the *trumpet* **shophar**,
and took not warning; his blood shall be upon him.
6 But he that taketh warning shall *deliver* **rescue** his soul.
But if the *watchman* **watcher** see the sword come,
and *blow* **blast** not the *trumpet* **shophar**,
and the people be not warned; if the sword come,
and take *any person* **a soul** from among them,
he is taken away in his *iniquity* **perversity**;
but his blood *will* **shall** I require
at the *watchman's* **watcher's** hand.
7 So thou, O son of *man* **humanity**,
I have *set* **given** thee
a *watchman* **watcher** unto the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
therefore thou shalt hear the word at my mouth,
and *warn* **enlighten** them from me.
8 *When I say* **Saying** unto the wicked, O wicked *man*,
in dying, thou shalt *surely* **die**;
if thou dost not *speak* **word**
to *warn* **enlighten** the wicked from his way,
that wicked *man* shall die in his *iniquity* **perversity**;
but his blood *will* I require **shall I seek** at thine hand.
9 Nevertheless,
if thou *warn* **enlighten** the wicked of his way
to turn from it;
if he do not turn from his way,
he shall die in his *iniquity* **perversity**;
but thou hast *delivered* **rescued** thy soul.
10 Therefore, O thou son of *man* **humanity**,
speak **say** unto the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Thus ye *speak* **say**, saying,
If our *transgressions* **rebellions** and our sins be upon us,
and we *pine away* **vanish** in them,
how should we then live?
11 Say unto them, *As I live*,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**,
I have no *pleasure* **delight** in the death of the wicked;
but that the wicked turn from his way and live:

YECHÉZQ EL 32, 33

exeGesés companion BIBLE

her sovereigns, and all her hierarchs,
who in their might
are given with the pierced by the sword:
they lie with the uncircumcised,
and with them who descend to the well.
30 These *are* the princes of the north
— all of them and all the Sidonians
who descend with the pierced in their terror;
they shame of their might;
and they lie uncircumcised
with the pierced by the sword;
and bear their shame
with them who descend to the well.
31 Paroh sees them
and sighs over all his multitude
— Paroh and all his valiant pierced by the sword
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
32 For I give his terror in the land of the living:
and he lies among the uncircumcised
with the pierced of the sword
— Paroh and all his multitude
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

YECHÉZQ EL, THE WATCHER

33

And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
word to the sons of your people, and say to them,
When I bring the sword on a land,
if the people of the land
take one man from their edges,
and give him for their watcher:
3 and he sees the sword approach the land,
he blasts the shophar and enlightens the people:
4 and in hearing, one hears the voice of the shophar,
and takes not warning;
and the sword approaches and takes him away,
his blood is on his own head:
5 for he hears the voice of the shophar,
and takes not warning;
his blood is on himself:
and he who takes warning, rescues his soul.
6 And if the watcher sees the sword approach,
and neither blasts the shophar nor warns the people;
if the sword approaches
and takes a soul from among them,
he is taken away in his perversity;
and I require his blood
at the hand of the watcher.
7 Thus you, O son of humanity,
I give you as a watcher to the house of Yisra El:
so hear the word at my mouth
and enlighten them from me;
8 saying to the wicked, O wicked,
in dying, you die
if you word not to enlighten the wicked from his way:
that wicked dies in his perversity
and I seek his blood at your hand.
9 And you,
if you enlighten the wicked to turn from his way
and he turns not from his way,
he dies in his perversity and you rescue your soul.
10 And you, O son of humanity,
say to the house of Yisra El;
say thus, saying,
Surely our rebellions and our sins *are* on us,
and we vanish in them:
how then live we?
11 Say to them, I live
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
I delight not in the death of the wicked;
but that the wicked turn from his way and live:

EZEKIEL 33

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

turn ye, turn ye from your evil ways;
for why *will* **shall** ye die, O house of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
12 Therefore, thou son of *man* **humanity**,
say unto the *children* **sons** of thy people,
The *righteousness* **justness** of the *righteous* **just**
shall not *deliver* **rescue** him
in the day of his *transgression* **rebellion**:
as for the wickedness of the wicked,
he shall not *fall* **falter** thereby
in the day that he turneth from his wickedness;
neither shall the *righteous* **just** be able to live
for his *righteousness* **by it** in the day that he sinneth.
13 When I shall say to the *righteous* **just**,
that *in living*, he shall *surely* live;
if he *trust* **confide** to his own *righteousness* **justness**,
and *commit iniquity* **work wickedness**,
all his *righteousnesses* **justnesses**
shall not be remembered;
but for his *iniquity* **wickedness**
that he hath *committed* **worked**, he shall die for it.
14 Again, when I say *Saying* unto the wicked,
In dying, Thou shalt *surely* die;
if he turn from his sin,
and do that *which is lawful* **work judgment**
and *right* **justness**;
15 If the wicked restore the pledge,
give again **shalam** that *which* he had *robbed* **stripped**,
walk in the statutes of life,
without *committing iniquity* **working wickedness**;
in living, he shall *surely* live, he shall not die.
16 None of his sins that he hath *committed* **sinned**
shall be *mentioned* **remembered** unto him:
he hath *done* **worked**
that *which is lawful* **judgment** and *right* **justness**;
in living, he shall *surely* live.

THE WAY OF BALANCE

17 Yet the *children* **sons** of thy people say,
The way of the *Lord* **Adonay** is not *equal* **gauged**:
but as for them, their way is not *equal* **gauged**.
18 When the *righteous* **just**
turneth from his *righteousness* **justness**,
and *committeth iniquity* **worketh wickedness**,
he shall even die thereby.
19 But if the wicked turn from his wickedness,
and do that which is *lawful* **judgment** and *right* **justness**,
he shall live thereby.
20 Yet ye say,
The way of the *Lord* **Adonay** is not *equal* **gauged**.
O ye house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
I *will* **shall** judge you every *one* **man** after his ways.

YERU SHALEM SMITTEN

21 And *so be* it came to pass
in the twelfth year of our *captivity* **exile**,
in the tenth *month*, in the fifth *day* of the month,
that one that *had escaped* **escapee**
out of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** came unto me, saying,
The city is smitten.
22 Now the hand of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
was upon me in the evening,
afore he that was *escaped* came
at the face of the coming of the escapee;
and had opened my mouth,
until he came to me in the morning;
and my mouth was opened,
and I was no more *dumb* **mute**.
23 Then the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
24 Son of *man* **humanity**,
they that *inhabit* **settle** those *wastes* **parched areas**
of the *land* **soil** of *Israel* **Yisra El** *speak* **say**, saying,
Abraham was one,
and he *inherited* **was successor** of the land:
but we are many;
the land is given us for *inheritance* **possession**.
25 Wherefore say unto them,
Thus saith the *Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Ye eat with the blood,
and lift up your eyes toward your idols,
and *shed* **pour** blood:

YECHEZQ EL 33

exeGesés companion BIBLE

turn — turn from your evil ways;
for why die, O house of Yisra El?
12 And you, son of humanity,
say to the sons of your people,
The justness of the just
rescues him not in the day of his rebellion:
as for the wickedness of the wicked,
he falters not in the day he turns from his wickedness;
and the just are not able to live by it
in the day he sins.
13 When I say to the just, In living, he lives!
— and he confides in his own justness
and works wickedness,
all his justnesses *are* not remembered:
and for the wickedness he works, he dies for it.
14 And saying to the wicked, In dying, you die;
if he turns from his sin,
and works judgment and justness;
15 if the wicked restores the pledge
and shalams what he stripped;
and walks in the statutes of life
without working wickedness;
in living, he lives; he dies not.
16 Not one of the sins he sinned
are remembered to him:
he works judgment and justness;
in living, he lives.

THE WAY OF BALANCE

17 And the sons of your people say,
The way of Adonay *is* not gauged:
and as for them, their way *is* not gauged.
18 When the just turns from his justness,
and works wickedness,
he dies thereby:
19 and if the wicked turns from his wickedness,
and does judgment and justness,
he lives thereby.
20 And you say, The way of Adonay is not gauged.
— O you house of Yisra El,
I judge every man of you after his ways.

YERU SHALEM SMITTEN

21 And so be it, in the twelfth year of our exile,
in the tenth, in the fifth of the month,
that one escapee from Yeru Shalem comes to me,
saying, The city is smitten.
22 the hand of Yah Veh is on me in the evening,
ere the face of the coming of the escapee;
and opens my mouth,
until he comes to me in the morning;
and my mouth opens
and I *am* no more mute.
23 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
24 Son of humanity,
they who settle the parched areas
of the soil of Yisra El say, saying,
Abraham, being one, was successor of the land:
but we are many;
the land is given us for possession.
25 Why say to them, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
You eat with the blood
and lift your eyes toward your idols
and pour blood!

EZEKIEL 33, 34

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

26 and shall ye possess the land?
Ye stand upon your sword,
ye work *abomination* **abhorrence**,
and ye *defiled* **fouled**
every *one* **man** his *neighbour's wife* **friend's woman**:
and shall ye possess the land?
27 Say thou thus unto them,
Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**; As I live,
surely they that are in the *wastes* **parched areas**
shall fall by the sword,
and him that is in the *open* **face of the** field
will **shall** I give to the *beasts* **live beings** to be devoured,
and they that be in the *forts* **huntholds** and in the caves
shall die of the pestilence.
28 For I *will lay* **shall give** the land
most desolate **desolation and desolation**,
and the *pomp* **pomp** of her strength
shall *cease* **shabbathize**;
and the mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El** shall *be* desolate,
that none shall pass through.
29 Then shall they know that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**,
when I have *laid* **given** the land
most desolate **desolation and desolation**
because of all their *abominations* **abhorrences**
which they have *committed* **worked**.
30 Also, thou son of *man* **humanity**,
the *children* **sons** of thy people
still *are talking* **wording** against thee *by* **beside** the walls
and in the *doors* **portals** of the houses,
and *speak* **word** one to *another* **one**,
every *one* **man** to his brother, saying,
Come, I *pray* **beseech** you, and hear what is the word
that cometh forth from *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
31 And they come unto thee
as the people *cometh* **approach**,
and they sit *before thee* **at thy face** as my people,
and they hear thy words,
but they *will* **shall** not *do* **work** them:
for with their mouth they *shew much love* **work pantings**,
but their heart goeth after their *covetousness* **greedy gain**.
32 And, *lo* **behold**, thou art unto them
as a *very lovely* song of **pantings**
of one that hath a *pleasant* **beautiful** voice,
and can *play well* **strum goodly** on an instrument:
for they hear thy words, but they *do* **work** them not.
33 And when this *cometh to pass* **approacheth**,
(*lo* **behold**, it *will come* **shall approach**.)
then shall they know that a prophet hath been among them.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING TENDERS

34 And **so be** the word of *the LORD* **came Yah Veh**
unto me, saying,
2 Son of *man* **humanity**,
prophesy against the *shepherds* **tenders** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
prophesy, and say unto them,
Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**
unto the *shepherds* **tenders**;
Woe be **Ho** to the *shepherds* **tenders** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
that *do feed* **tend** themselves!
should not the *shepherds* **feed** **tenders tend** the flocks?
3 Ye eat the fat, and ye *clothe* **enrobe** you with the wool,
ye kill them that are fed **sacrifice the fattened**:
but ye *feed* **tend** not the flock.
4 The *diseased* **worn** have ye not strengthened,
neither have ye healed that which was sick,
neither have ye bound up that which was broken,
neither have ye *brought again* **restored**
that which was *driven away* **expelled**,
neither have ye sought that which was lost;
but with *force* **severity** and with *cruelty* **tyranny**
have ye *ruled* **subjugated** them.
5 And they were scattered,
because there is no *shepherd* **tender**:
and they became *meat* **food**
to all the *beasts* **live beings** of the field,
when they were scattered.
6 My *sheep* **wandered** **flock erred** **inadvertently**
through all the mountains, and upon every high hill:
yea, my flock was scattered upon all the face of the earth,
and none did search or seek *after them*.

YECHEZQ EL 33, 34

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Possess you the land?
26 You stand on your sword; you work abhorrence;
You foul the woman of the friend of every man:
Possess you the land?
27 You, say thus to them,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh: I live!
Surely they in the parched areas fall by the sword,
and him in the face of the field
I give to the live beings to devour;
and they in the huntholds and in the caves
die of the pestilence.
28 And I give the land a desolation and desolate,
and the pomp of her strength shabbathizes;
and the mountains of Yisra El desolate
so that no one passes through:
and they know I — Yah Veh
when I give the land a desolation and desolate
because of all the abhorrences they work.
30 And you, son of humanity,
the sons of your people still word against you
beside the walls and in the portals of the houses;
and they word one to one, every man to his brother,
saying, Come, I beseech you,
and hear the word that comes from Yah Veh.
31 And they come to you as people approaching
and they sit at your face as my people;
and they hear your words, and work them not:
for they work pantings with their mouth
but their heart goes after their greedy gain:
32 and behold,
you are to them as a song of pantings
— of a beautiful voice
strumming goodly on an instrument:
for they hear your words, and they work them not.
33 And when this approaches
— behold, it approaches
then they know a prophet is among them.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING TENDERS

34 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity,
prophesy against the tenders of Yisra El
— prophesy, and say to them,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh to the tenders:
Ho to the tenders of Yisra El who tend themselves!
Tend the tenders not the flocks?
3 You eat the fat and you enrobe with the wool;
you sacrifice the fattened:
you tend not the flock.
4 you neither strengthen the worn nor heal the sick;
nor bind the broken nor restore the expelled;
nor seek you the lost:
and with severity and with tyranny
you subjugate them.
5 And because there is no tender, they scatter:
and they become food
to all the live beings of the field;
yes, they scatter.
6 My flock errs inadvertently
through all the mountains and on every high hill:
yes, my flock scatters on all the face of the earth;
and no one searches or seeks.

EZEKIEL 34

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 Therefore, ye *shepherds tenders*,
hear the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*;
8 As I live,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
surely because my flock became a prey plunder,
and my flock became *meat food*
to every *beast live being* of the field,
because there was no *shepherd tender*,
neither did my *shepherds tenders* search for my flock,
but the *shepherds fed tenders tended* themselves,
and *fed tended* not my flock;
9 Therefore, O ye *shepherds tenders*,
hear the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*;
10 Thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
Behold, I am against the *shepherds tenders*;
and I *will shall* require my flock at their hand,
and cause them to *cease shabbathize*
from *feeding tending* the flock;
neither shall the *shepherds feed tenders tend* themselves
any more;
for I *will deliver shall rescue* my flock from their mouth,
that they may not be *meat food* for them.

THE TENDER OF YISRA EL

11 For thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
Behold, I, *even I*,
will shall both search my *sheep flock*,
and *seek search* them out.
12 As a *shepherd tender*
seeketh searcheth out his *flock drove*
in the day
that he is among his *sheep flock* that are scattered;
so *will I seek shall I search* out my *sheep flock*,
and *will deliver shall rescue* them
out of all places where they have been scattered
in the cloudy and *dark day of dripping darkness*.
13 And I *will shall* bring them out from the people,
and gather them from the *countries lands*,
and *will shall* bring them to their own *land soil*,
and *feed tend* them upon the mountains of *Israel Yisra El*
by the *rivers reservoirs*,
and in all the *inhabited places sites* of the *country land*.
14 I *will feed shall tend* them in a good pasture,
and upon the high mountains of *Israel Yisra El*
shall their *fold habitation of rest* be:
there shall they *lie crouch*
in a good *fold habitation of rest*,
and in a fat pasture shall they *feed graze*
upon the mountains of *Israel Yisra El*.
15 I *will feed shall tend* my flock,
and I *will shall* cause them to *lie down crouch*,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
16 I *will shall* seek that which was lost,
and *bring again restore*
that which was *driven away expelled*,
and *will shall* bind up that which was broken,
and *will shall* strengthen that which was sick:
but I *will destroy shall desolate* the fat and the strong;
I *will feed shall tend* them with judgment.
17 And as for you, O my flock,
thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
Behold, I judge between *cattle lambs* and *cattle lambs*,
between the rams and the he goats.
18 Seemeth it a *small thing Be it belittling* unto you
to have *eaten up tended* the good pasture,
but ye must tread down to have trampled with your feet
the *residue remnant* of your pastures?
and to have drunk of the *deep pond* waters,
but ye must to foul the residue that which remaineth
with your feet?
19 And as for my flock,
they *eat tend* that
which ye have *trodden trampled* with your feet;
and they drink that
which ye have *fouled trampled* with your feet.
20 Therefore thus saith
the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh unto them;
Behold, I, *even I*,
will shall judge between the fat *cattle lambs*
and between the *lean cattle emaciated lambs*.

YECHEZQ EL 34

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 So, you tenders, hear the word of Yah Veh:
8 I live
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
surely because my flock *are* a plunder
yes, my flock becomes food
to every live being of the field
because there *is* no tender;
my tenders search not for my flock:
and the tenders tend themselves
and tend not my flock.
9 So, O you tenders, hear the word of Yah Veh;
10 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I *am* against the tenders;
and I require my flock at their hand,
and shabbathize them from tending the flock;
and the tenders tend themselves no more;
and I rescue my flock from their mouth,
so that they not become food for them.

THE TENDER OF YISRA EL

11 For thus says Adonay Yah Veh;
Behold, I — I both search my flock
and search them out
12 as a tender searches his drove
in the day he is among his flock who scatter;
thus I search my flock and rescue them
from all places they scatter
13 in the day of cloud and dripping darkness:
and I bring them from the people
and gather them from the lands;
and bring them to their own soil
and tend them on the mountains of Yisra El
— by the reservoirs and in all the sites of the land:
14 I tend them in a good pasture,
and on the high mountains of Yisra El
is their habitation of rest:
there they crouch in a good habitation of rest
and in a fat pasture
they graze on the mountains of Yisra El.
15 I tend my flock and I crouch them
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
16 I seek the lost and restore the expelled
and bind up the broken and strengthen the sick:
and I desolate the fat and the strong;
I tend them with judgment.
17 And as for you, O my flock,
thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I judge between lambs and lambs;
between the rams and the he goats.
18 Is it belittling to you to tend the good pasture?
To trample the remnant of your pastures
with your feet?
To drink of the pond waters?
To foul what remains with your feet?
19 And as for my flock,
they tend what you trample with your feet;
and they drink what you trample with your feet.
20 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh to them;
Behold, I — I judge between the fat lambs
and between the emaciated lambs:

EZEKIEL 34, 35

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

21 Because ye have *thrust shoved* with side and with shoulder, and *pushed butted* all the *diseased worn* with your horns,
22 till ye have scattered them *abroad to the outways*;
Therefore *will shall* I save my flock,
and they shall no more be a *prey plunder*;
and I *will shall* judge
23 between *cattle lambs* and *cattle lambs*.
And I *will set up shall raise* one *shepherd tender* over them,
and he shall *feed tend* them, *even* my servant David;
he shall *feed tend* them,
and he shall be their *shepherd tender*.
24 And I *the LORD Yah Veh* *will shall* be their *God Elohim*,
and my servant David a *prince hierarch* among them;
I *the LORD Yah Veh* have *spoken it worded*.
YAH VEH CUTS A COVENANT OF SHALOM
25 And I *will make shall cut* with them a covenant of *peace shalom*,
and *will shall* cause the evil *beasts live beings* to *cease shabbathize* out of the land:
and they shall *dwell safely settle confidently* in the wilderness,
and sleep in the *woods forests*.
26 And I *will make shall give* them and the *places* round about my hill a blessing;
and I *will shall* cause the *shower downpour* to *come down descend* in his *season time*;
there shall be *showers downpours* of blessing.
27 And the tree of the field shall *yield give* her fruit,
and the earth shall *yield give* her *increase produce*,
and they shall be *safe confide* in their *land soil*,
and shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*,
when I have broken the *bands yoke poles* of their yoke,
and *delivered rescued* them
28 out of the hand of those that served themselves of them.
And they shall no more
be a *prey plunder* to the *heathen goyim*,
neither shall the *beast live being* of the land devour them;
but they shall *dwell safely settle confidently*,
and none shall *make terrify* them *afraid*.
29 And I *will shall* raise up for them a plant of *renown name*,
and they shall be no more *consumed gathered* with *hunger famine* in the land,
neither bear the shame of the *heathen goyim* any more.
30 Thus shall they know
that I *the LORD Yah Veh* their *God Elohim* am with them,
and *that they, even* the house of *Israel Yisra El*,
are my people,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
31 And ye my flock, the flock of my pasture,
are *men human*,
and I *am — your God Elohim*,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING MOUNT SEIR
35 Moreover
the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came unto me, saying,
2 Son of *man humanity*,
set thy face against mount Seir, and prophesy against it,
3 And say unto it,
Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Behold, O mount Seir, I am against thee,
and I *will stretch out shall spread* mine hand against thee,
and I *will make shall give* thee
most desolate desolation and desolation.
4 I *will lay shall set* thy cities *waste parched*,
and thou shalt be desolate,
and thou shalt know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.
5 Because thou hast had
a perpetual hatred an eternal enmity,
and hast *shed the blood of poured out*
the *children sons* of *Israel Yisra El*
by the *force hands* of the sword
in the time of their calamity,
6 in the time that their *iniquity perversity* had an end:
Therefore, as I live,

YECHEZQ EL 34, 35

exeGesés companion BIBLE

21 because you shove with side and with shoulder
and butt all the worn with your horns
until you scatter them to the outways.
22 So I save my flock
and they are no more a plunder;
and I judge between lambs and lambs:
23 and I raise one tender over them
— my servant David; and he tends them;
he tends them and he becomes their tender.
24 And I Yah Veh become their Elohim,
and my servant David a hierarch among them;
I Yah Veh have worded.
YAH VEH CUTS A COVENANT OF SHALOM
25 And I cut a covenant of shalom with them
and shabbathize the evil live beings from the land:
and they settle confidently in the wilderness
and sleep in the forests:
26 and I give all them all around my hill a blessing;
and I descend the downpour in its time
— downpours of blessing:
27 and the tree of the field gives her fruit
and the earth gives her produce
and they confide in their soil;
and know I — Yah Veh
when I break the yoke poles of their yoke,
and rescue them
from the hand of them who serve themselves of them.
28 And they *are* a plunder to the goyim no more,
and the live being of the land devours them not;
and they settle confidently and no one terrifies them.
29 And I raise for them a plant of name,
and they gather no more with famine in the land
and bear the shame of the goyim no more.
30 Thus they know that I — Yah Veh their Elohim,
am with them,
and they, the house of Yisra El, *are* my people
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
31 And you, my flock — the flock of my pasture,
are human; and I *am* your Elohim
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING MOUNT SEIR
35 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
2 Son of humanity, set your face against mount Seir,
and prophesy against it;
3 and say to it, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, O mount Seir, I *am* against you
and I spread my hand against you;
and I give you desolation and desolation.
4 I set your cities parched and desolate you;
and you know I — Yah Veh.
5 Because of your eternal enmity,
and you pour the sons of Yisra El
by the hands of the sword
in the time of their calamity
— in the time of the perversity of the end:
6 So, I live

EZEKIEL 35, 36

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,

I will prepare **shall work** thee unto blood,
and blood shall pursue thee:
since thou hast not hated blood,
even blood shall pursue thee.

7 Thus will I make **shall I give** mount Seir
most desolate **desolation and desolation**,
and cut off from it
him that passeth out and him that returneth.

8 And I will **shall** fill his mountains
with his *slain men* **pierced**:
in thy hills, and in thy valleys,
and in all thy *rivers* **reservoirs**,
shall they fall that are *slain* **pierced** with the sword.

9 I will make **shall give** thee
perpetual **eternal** desolations,
and thy cities shall not *return* **be settled**:
and ye shall know that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**.
Because *thou hast said* **saying**,

10 These two *nations* **goyim** and these two *countries* **lands**
shall be mine, and we will **shall** possess it;
whereas *the LORD* **Yah Veh** was there:

11 Therefore, as I live,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
I will **shall** even *do work*
according to *thine anger* **thy wrath**,

and according to *thine envy*
which thou hast *used* **worked**
out of thy hatred against them;
and I will **shall** make myself known among them,
when I have judged thee.

12 And thou shalt know that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**,
and that I have heard all thy *blasphemies* **scornings**
which thou hast *spoken* **said**
against the mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**, saying,

13 They are *laid desolate* **desolated**,
they are given us to *consume* **for food**.

13 Thus with your mouth
ye have *boasted* **greatened** against me,
and have *multiplied* **abounded** your words against me:
I have heard them.

14 Thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**:
When the whole earth *rejoiceth* **cheereth**,
I will make **shall work** thee desolate.

15 As *thou didst rejoice* **thy cheerfulness**
at the inheritance of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
because it was *desolate* **desolated**,
so will I *do* **shall I work** unto thee:
thou shalt be desolate,

O mount Seir, and all *Idumea* **Edom**, even all of it:
and they shall know that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh**.

PROPHECY AGAINST THE MOUNTAINS OF YISRA EL

36

Also, thou son of *man* **humanity**,
prophesy unto the mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**, and say,
Ye mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**,

2 hear the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
Thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**:
Because the enemy hath said against you, Aha,
even the *ancient high places* **eternal bamahs**
are our's in possession:

3 Therefore prophesy and say,
Thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**:
Because they have *made* **desolated** you *desolate*,
and swallowed you *up on every side* **round about**,
that ye might be a possession
unto the *residue* **survivors** of the *heathen* **goyim**,
and ye are *taken up* **ascended**
in the lips of *talkers* **tongues**,

4 and are an *infamy* **a slander** of the people:
Therefore, ye mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
hear the word of *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**:
Thus saith *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**
to the mountains, and to the hills,
to the *rivers* **reservoirs**, and to the valleys,
to the *desolate wastes* **desolated parches**,
and to the cities that are forsaken,
which became a *prey* **plunder** and derision
to the *residue* **survivors** of the *heathen* **goyim**
that are round about;

YECHEZQ EL 35, 36

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh

I work you to blood; and blood pursues you:
since you hate not blood,
blood also pursues you.

7 And I give mount Seir desolation and desolation;
and cut off from it

8 him who passes and him who returns:
and I fill his mountains with his pierced:
in your hills and in your valleys
and in all your reservoirs
the pierced fall with the sword.

9 I give you eternal desolations,
and settle not your cities:
and you know I — Yah Veh.

10 Because saying,
These two goyim and these two lands are mine,
and we possess it;
whereas Yah Veh is *already* there:

11 So, I live
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
and I work according to your wrath
and according to the envy you work
by your hatred against them;
and I make myself known among them
when I judge you:

12 and you know I — Yah Veh,
and that I hear all the scornings
you say against the mountains of Yisra El, saying,
They *are* desolated; they *are* given us for food.
13 And with your mouth you grieve against me;
and with your words about against me:
I hear them.

14 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
When the whole earth cheers, I work you desolate
— as your cheerfulness

15 at the inheritance of the house of Yisra El,
because it *is* desolated,
thus I work to you:
you are desolate,
O mount Seir, and all Edom — all thereof:
and they know I — Yah Veh.

PROPHECY AGAINST THE MOUNTAINS OF YISRA EL

36

And you, son of humanity,
prophesy to the mountains of Yisra El, and say,
You mountains of Yisra El, hear the word of Yah Veh:

2 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because the enemy says against you, Aha,
even the eternal bamahs are for us in possession:
so prophesy and say,

3 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because — yes, because they desolate you
and swallow you all around
to be a possession to the survivors of the goyim,
and ascend you on the lips of tongues
— a slander of the people:

4 so, O mountains of Yisra El,
hear the word of Adonay Yah Veh;
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh
to the mountains and to the hills;
to the reservoirs and to the valleys;
to the desolated parches and to the forsaken cities
— to become a plunder and derision
to the survivors of the goyim all around;

EZEKIEL 36

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 Therefore thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Surely in the fire of my jealousy have I *spoken worded*
against the *residue survivors* of the *heathen goyim*,
and against all *Idumea Edom*,
which have *appointed given* my land
into their possession
with the *joy cheerfulness* of all their heart,
with despiteful *minds souls*,
to cast it out for a prey a suburb to plunder.

6 Prophecy therefore
concerning the *land soil of Israel Yisra El*,
and say unto the mountains, and to the hills,
to the *rivers reservoirs*, and to the valleys,
Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*; Behold,
I have *spoken worded* in my jealousy and in my fury,
because ye have borne the shame of the *heathen goyim*:

7 Therefore thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
I have lifted up mine hand,
Surely the *heathen goyim* that are *round* about you,
they shall bear their shame.

8 But ye, O mountains of *Israel Yisra El*,
ye shall *shoot forth give* your branches,
and *yield bear* your fruit to my people of *Israel Yisra El*;
for they are *at hand approach* to come.

9 For, behold, I am for you,
and I *will turn shall face* unto you,
and ye shall be *tilled served* and *sown seeded*:
And I *will multiply men shall abound humanity*
upon you,
all the house of *Israel Yisra El*, even all of it:
and the cities shall be *inhabited settled*,
and the *wastes parched areas* shall be builded:

11 And I *will multiply shall abound* upon you
man humanity and *beast animal*;
and they shall *increase abound* and *bring bear* fruit:
and I *will shall* settle you after your *old former* estates,
and *will shall* do better unto you than at your beginnings:
and ye shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh.*

12 Yea, I *will shall* cause *men humanity*
to walk upon you,
even my people *Israel Yisra El*;
and they shall possess thee,
and thou shalt be their inheritance,
and thou shalt *no more henceforth not add*
to bereave them of men.

13 Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Because they say unto you,
Thou *land devourest up men eatest humans*,
and hast bereaved thy *nations goyim*:

14 Therefore thou shalt *devour men eat humans* no more,
neither bereave thy *nations goyim* any more,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

15 Neither *will shall* I cause *men* to hear in thee
the shame of the *heathen goyim* any more,
neither shalt thou
bear the reproach of the people any more,
neither shalt thou
cause thy *nations goyim* to *fall falter* any more,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

16 Moreover

17 the word of *the LORD Yah Veh* came unto me, saying,
Son of *man humanity*,
when the house of *Israel Yisra El*
dwelt settled in their own *land soil*,
they *defiled fouled* it
by their own way and by their *doings exploits*:
their way was *before me at my face*
as the *uncleanness foulness*
of a *removed woman one excluded*.

18 Wherefore I poured my fury upon them
for the blood that they had *shed poured* upon the land,
and for their idols wherewith they had *polluted fouled* it:

19 And I scattered them among the *heathen goyim*,
and they were dispersed through the *countries lands*:
according to their way

20 and according to their *doings exploits* I judged them.
And when they entered unto the *heathen goyim*,
whither they went, they profaned my holy name,
when they said saying to them,

YECHEZQ EL 36

exeGesés companion BIBLE

5 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Surely in the fire of my jealousy I word
against the survivors of the goyim
and against all Edom,
who give my land as their own possession
with cheerfulness of all their heart,
with despite of soul
— a suburb to plunder.

6 So, prophecy concerning the soil of Yisra El;
and say to the mountains and to the hills;
to the reservoirs and to the valleys,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I word in my jealousy and in my fury
because you bear the shame of the goyim.

7 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
I lift my hand;
surely the goyim all around you bear their shame:
and you, O mountains of Yisra El,
give your branches
and bear your fruit to my people of Yisra El;
for they approach to come.

9 For, behold, I am for you and I face to you;
and serve and seed you:
10 and I abound humanity on you
— all the house of Yisra El — all thereof
to settle the cities and build the parched areas:
11 and I abound on you humanity and animal;
and they abound and bear fruit:
and I settle you after your former estates
and do better to you than at your beginnings:
and you know I — Yah Veh.

12 Yes, I walk humanity all over you
— my people Yisra El;
and they possess you
and you become their inheritance;
and you add not to bereave them.

13 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Because they say to you,
You eat humans and bereave your goyim:
14 So you neither eat humans any more
nor bereave your goyim any more
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
— nor hear the shame of the goyim any more
nor bear the reproach of the people any more
nor that your goyim falter any more
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

16 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
17 Son of humanity,
the house of Yisra El settles in their own soil;
they foul it by their own way and by their exploits:
their way is at my face
as the foulness of one excluded:
18 and I pour my fury on them
for the blood they pour on the land,
and for their idols with which they foul it:
19 and I scatter them among the goyim,
and disperse them through the lands:
according to their way and according to their exploits
I judge them:
20 and they approach the goyim
where they approach;
they profane my holy name, saying to them,

EZEKIEL 36

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

21 These are the people of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
and are gone forth out of his land.
But I *had pity for* **compassioned** mine holy name,
which the house of *Israel Yisra El* had profaned
among the *heathen goyim*, whither they went.
22 Therefore say unto the house of *Israel Yisra El*,
thus saith the *Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
I *do work* not this for your sakes,
O house of *Israel Yisra El*,
but for mine holy name's sake,
which ye have profaned among the *heathen goyim*,
whither ye went.
23 And I *will sanctify* **shall hallow** my great name,
which was profaned among the *heathen goyim*,
which ye have profaned in the midst of them;
and the *heathen goyim* shall know
that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*,
saith the *Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh*,
when I shall be *sanctified* **hallowed** in you
before in front of their eyes.
24 For I *will shall* take you
from among the *heathen goyim*,
and gather you out of all *countries lands*,
and *will shall* bring you into your own *land soil*.
25 Then *will shall* I sprinkle *clean pure* water upon you,
and ye shall be *clean pure*:
from all your *filthiness foulness*, and from all your idols,
will I cleanse shall I purify you.
26 A new heart also *will shall I* give you,
and a new spirit *will I put shall I give* within you:
and I *will take away shall turn aside*
the stony heart out of your flesh,
and I *will shall* give you an heart of flesh.
27 And I *will put shall give* my spirit within you,
and *cause work* you to walk in my statutes,
and ye shall *keep guard* my judgments,
and *do work* them.
28 And ye shall *dwell settle*
in the land that I gave to your fathers;
and ye *shall* be my people,
and *I will be I AM* your *God Elohim*.
29 I *will shall* also save you
from all your *uncleannesses foulnesses*:
and I *will shall* call for the *corn crop*,
and *will increase shall abound* it,
and *lay give* no famine upon you.
30 And I *will multiply shall abound* the fruit of the tree,
and the *increase produce* of the field,
that ye shall *receive take* no more reproach of famine
among the *heathen goyim*.
31 Then shall ye remember your own evil ways,
and your *doings exploits* that were not good,
and shall lothe *yourselves in your own sight at your face*
for your *iniquities perversities*
and for your *abominations abhorrences*.
32 Not for your sakes *do work* I this,
saith the *Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh*,
be it known unto you:
be *ashamed shamed* and confounded for your own ways,
O house of *Israel Yisra El*.
33 Thus saith the *Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
In the day that I shall *have cleansed purify* you
from all your *iniquities perversities*
I *will shall* also cause you to *dwell settle* in the cities,
and the *wastes parched areas* shall be builded.
34 And the *desolate desolated* land shall be *tilled served*,
whereas it lay desolate
in the *sight eyes* of all that passed by.
35 And they shall say,
This land that was *desolate desolated*
is become like the garden of Eden;
and the *waste parched and desolate desolated*
and *ruined demolished* cities
are become *fenced fortified*, and are *inhabited settled*.
36 Then the *heathen goyim*
that are *left survive* round about you
shall know that *I the LORD Yah Veh*
build the *ruined places demolished*,
and plant that that was *desolate desolated*:

YECHEZQ EL 36

exeGesés companion BIBLE

21 These are the people of Yah Veh,
who come from his land.
And I compassion my holy name
which the house of Yisra El
profanes among the goyim wherever they go.
22 So say to the house of Yisra El,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
I work this, not for your sakes, O house of Yisra El,
but for sake of my holy name
— which you profane among the goyim,
wherever you go:
23 and I hallow my great name
profaned among the goyim
— which you profane among them;
and the goyim know I — Yah Veh
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
when I am hallowed in you in front of their eyes.
24 For I take you from among the goyim
and gather you from all lands
and bring you into your own soil:
25 and I sprinkle pure water on you and purify you:
from all your foulness and from all your idols
I purify you:
26 and I give you a new heart
and a new spirit I give within you:
and I turn aside the stony heart from your flesh
and I give you an heart of flesh:
27 and I give my spirit within you
so that you work to walk in my statutes
and guard my judgments and work them
28 and I settle you in the land I gave your fathers:
and you become my people
and I become your Elohim:
29 and I save you from all your foulnesses:
and I call for the crop and abound it;
and give no famine on you:
30 and I abound the fruit of the tree
and the produce of the field
that you take no more reproach of famine
among the goyim.
31 Then you remember your own evil ways
and your no good exploits;
and loathe at your face
for your perversities and for your abhorrences.
32 I work this not for your sakes
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
thus be it known to you:
shame and confound for your own ways,
O house of Yisra El.
33 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
In the day I purify you from all your perversities
I also settle you in the cities,
and build the parched areas:
34 and the desolated land is served
instead of becoming desolate
in the eyes of all who pass by.
35 And they say,
This desolated land is as the garden of Eden;
and the parched and desolated and demolished cities
fortified and settled.
36 And the goyim who survive all around you
know that I — Yah Veh
build the demolished and plant the desolated:

EZEKIEL 36, 37

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

I the LORD **Yah Veh** have spoken it worded,
and I will do **shall work** it.
37 Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
I will **shall** yet for this be enquired of
by the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**, to do **work** it for them;
I will increase **shall abound** them
with *men* **humanity** like a flock.
38 As the holy flock,
as the flock of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
in her solemn feasts **seasons**;
so shall the waste **parched** cities
be filled with flocks of *men* **humanity**;
and they shall know that I am the LORD I — **Yah Veh**.

THE VISION OF THE VALLEY OF DRY BONES

37 The hand of the LORD **Yah Veh** was upon me,
and carried me out in the spirit of the LORD **Yah Veh**,
and set **rested** me down in the midst of the valley
which was full of bones,
2 And caused me to pass by them
round about **and round about**: and, behold,
there were very many in the open **face of the** valley;
and, lo **behold**, they were very **mighty** dry.
3 And he said unto me,
Son of *man* **humanity**, can these bones live?
And I answered **said**,
O Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**, thou knowest.
4 Again he said unto me,
Prophesy upon these bones, and say unto them,
O ye dry bones, hear the word of the LORD **Yah Veh**.
5 Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh** unto these bones;
Behold, I will **shall** cause *breath* the **Spirit** to enter into you,
and ye shall live:
6 And I will lay **shall give** sinews upon you,
and will bring up **shall ascend** flesh upon you,
and cover you with skin,
and put *breath* **give spirit** in you, and ye shall live;
and ye shall know that I am the LORD I — **Yah Veh**.
7 So I prophesied as I was **commanded misvahed**:
and as I prophesied, there was a *noise* **voice**,
and behold a *shaking* **quake**,
and the bones *came together* **approached**,
bone to his bone.
8 And when I beheld **saw**, lo **behold**,
the sinews and the flesh *came up* **ascended** upon them,
and the skin covered them above:
but there was no *breath* **spirit** in them.
9 Then said he unto me, Prophesy unto the *wind* **Spirit**,
prophesy, son of *man* **humanity**,
and say to the *wind* **Spirit**,
Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Come from the four winds/**spirits**, O *breath* **Spirit**,
and breathe **puff** upon these *slain* **slaughtered**,
that they may live.
10 So I prophesied as he **commanded misvahed** me,
and the *breath* **Spirit** came into them,
and they lived, and stood up upon their feet,
an exceeding great army a **mighty great valiant**.

THE INTERPRETATION

11 Then he said unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
these bones are the whole house of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
behold, they say,
Our bones are *dried* **withered**, and our hope is lost:
we are cut off for our parts.
12 Therefore prophesy and say unto them,
Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Behold, O my people,
I will **shall** open your *graves* **tombs**,
and cause you to come up **ascend** out of your *graves* **tombs**,
and bring you into the *land* **soil** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
13 And ye shall know that I am the LORD I — **Yah Veh**,
when I have opened your *graves* **tombs**, O my people,
and brought **ascended** you up out of your *graves* **tombs**,
14 And shall put **give** my *spirit* **Spirit** in you,
and ye shall live,
and I shall place **set** you in your own *land* **soil**:
then shall ye know that I
the LORD **Yah Veh** have spoken it **worded**,
and performed it **worked**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

YECHEZQ EL 36, 37

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I Yah Veh worded, and I work.
37 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Yet for this I am enquired of by the house of *Yisra El*
to work it for them;
I abound them with humanity as a flock
— as the holy flock
38 — as the flock of *Yeru Shalem* in her seasons;
thus the parched cities
are filled with flocks of humanity:
and they know I — Yah Veh.

THE VISION OF THE VALLEY OF DRY BONES

37 And so be the hand of Yah Veh on me;
and he carries me in the spirit of Yah Veh
and rests me midst the valley full of bones:
2 and passes me by them
all around and all around:
and behold,
there are very many in the face of the valley;
and behold, they are mighty dry.
3 And he says to me,
Son of humanity, live these bones?
And I say, Adonay Yah Veh, you know.
4 And he says to me,
Prophesy on these bones, and say to them,
O you dry bones, hear the word of Yah Veh;
5 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh to these bones:
Behold, I enter a spirit into you, and you live:
6 and I give sinews on you
and ascend flesh on you
and cover you with skin
and give a spirit within you, and you live:
and you know I — Yah Veh.
7 And I prophesy as I was misvahed:
and as I prophesy, there is a voice;
and behold, a quake:
8 and the bones approach — bone to bone.
And I see, and behold,
the sinews and the flesh ascend on them,
and the skin covers them:
and there is no spirit in them.
9 And says he to me, Prophesy to the Spirit;
prophesy, son of humanity, and say to the Spirit,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
From the four winds/**spirits**, come O Spirit,
and puff on these slaughtered so that they live.
10 And I prophesy as he misvahs me;
and the Spirit comes into them:
and they live and stand on their feet
— a mighty great valiant.

THE INTERPRETATION

11 And he says to me, Son of humanity,
these bones are the whole house of *Yisra El*:
behold, they say,
Our bones withers and our hope destructs:
we are cut off for our parts.
12 So prophesy and say to them,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh; Behold, O my people,
I open your tombs
and ascend you from your tombs
and bring you to the soil of *Yisra El*:
13 and you know I — Yah Veh,
when I open your tombs, O my people,
and ascend you from your tombs;
14 and give my Spirit in you and you live;
and I set you in your own soil:
and you know I — Yah Veh have worded and worked
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

EZEKIEL 37

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH HUDAH AND YISRA EL BECOME ONE

15 The word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** came again unto me,
saying,
16 Moreover, thou son of *man* **humanity**,
take thee one *stick* **tree**, and *write* **inscribe** upon it,
For *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and for the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
his companions:
then take *another stick* **one tree**,
and *write* **inscribe** upon it,
For *Joseph* **Yoseph**, the *stick* **tree** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
and for all the house of *Israel* **Yisra El** his companions:
17 And *join* **approach** them one to *another* **one**
into one *stick* **tree**;
and they shall become one in thine hand.
18 And when the *children* **sons** of thy people
shall *speak* **say** unto thee, saying,
wilt **shalt** thou not *shew* **tell** us
what *thou meanest* **by these** **be**?
19 *Speak* **Word** unto them,
Thus saith the *Lord* **GOD** **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Behold, I *will* **shall** take the *stick* **tree** of *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
which is in the hand of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
and the *tribes* **scions of Israel** **Yisra El**
his *fellows* **companions**,
and *will* **put** **shall give** them with him,
even with the *stick* **tree** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and *make* **work** them one *stick* **tree**,
and they shall be one in mine hand.
20 And the *stick* **tree** whereon thou *writest* **inscribest**
shall be in thine hand *before* **in front of** their eyes.
21 And *say* **word** unto them,
Thus saith the *Lord* **GOD** **Adonay Yah Veh**; Behold,
I *will* **shall** take the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
from *among* **between** the *heathen* **goyim**,
whither they be gone,
and *will* **shall** gather them *on every side* **round about**,
and bring them into their own *land* **soil**:
22 And I *will* **make** **shall work** them one *nation* **goyim**
in the land upon the mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and one *king* **sovereign**
shall be *king* **sovereign** to them all:
and they shall be no more two *nations* **goyim**,
neither shall they be *divided* **halved**
into two *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** any more *at all* **still**.
23 Neither shall they *defile* **foul** themselves
any more with their idols,
nor with their *detestable things* **abominations**,
nor with any of their *transgressions* **rebellions**:
but I *will* **shall** save them out of all their *dwellingplaces* **sites**,
wherein they have sinned,
and *will* **cleanse** **shall purify** them:
so shall they be my people,
and I *will* **shall** be their *God* **Elohim**.

THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF DAVID

24 And David my servant
shall be *king* **sovereign** over them;
and they all shall have one *shepherd* **tender**:
they shall also walk in my judgments,
and *observe* **guard** my statutes, and *do* **work** them.
25 And they shall dwell in the land
that I have given unto *Jacob* **Yaaqov** my servant,
wherein your fathers have *dwelt* **settled**
and they shall *dwell* **settle** therein,
even they, and their *children* **sons**,
and their *children's children* **for ever** **sons' sons eternally**:
and my servant David
shall be their *prince* **for ever** **hierarch eternally**.

THE ETERNAL COVENANT OF YAH VEH

26 Moreover
I *will* **make** **shall cut** a covenant of *peace* **shalom**
with them;
so be it *shall be* an *everlasting* **eternal** covenant with them:
and I *will* **place** **shall give** them,
and *multiply* **abound** them,
and *will* **set** **shall give** my *sanctuary* **holies**
in the midst of them *for evermore* **eternally**.
27 My tabernacle also shall be with them:
yea, I *will* **shall** be their *God* **Elohim**,

YECHEZQ EL 37

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH HUDAH AND YISRA EL BECOME ONE

15 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
16 And you, son of humanity,
take one tree and inscribe thereon,
For Yah Hudah,
and for the sons of Yisra El his companions:
and take one tree and inscribe thereon,
For Yoseph, the tree of Ephrayim
and for all the house of Yisra El his companions:
17 and approach them one by one into one tree;
and they become one in your hand.
18 And when the sons of your people say to you,
saying, Tell you not us what these *are* to you?
19 Word to them, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I take the tree of Yoseph,
in the hand of Ephrayim,
and the scions of Yisra El his companions,
and give them with him, with the tree of Yah Hudah,
and work them, one tree,
and they become one in my hand.
20 And the tree whereon you inscribe
becomes in your hand in front of their eyes.
21 And word to them, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold,
I take the sons of Yisra El from between the goyim
where they went,
and gather them all around
and bring them into their own soil:
and I work them one goyim
in the land on the mountains of Yisra El;
and one sovereign becomes sovereign to them all:
and they neither become two goyim any more,
nor halved into two sovereigndoms any more:
22 neither foul they themselves
with their idols any more
nor with their abominations
nor with any of their rebellions:
and I save them from all their sites
wherein they sinned
and purify them:
so they are my people,
and I am their Elohim.

THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF DAVID

24 And David my servant *is* sovereign over them;
and their *is* one tender:
and they walk in my judgments
and guard my statutes and work them:
25 and they dwell in the land
I gave to Yaaqov my servant,
wherein your fathers settled:
and they settle therein — they and their sons,
and the sons of their sons eternally:
and my servant David *is* their hierarch eternally.

THE ETERNAL COVENANT OF YAH VEH

26 And I cut a covenant of shalom with them
— so be it, an eternal covenant with them:
and I give them and abound them;
and give my holies among them eternally.
27 My tabernacle also is with them:
yes, I am their Elohim

EZEKIEL 37, 38

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

28 and they *shall* be my people.
And the *heathen* **goyim** shall know
that I *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
do sanctify Israel **hallow Yisra El**,
when my *sanctuary* **holies** shall be in the midst of them
for evermore **eternally**.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING GOG

38

2 And the word of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
came unto me, saying,
Son of *man* **humanity**,
set thy face against Gog, the land of Magog,
the *chief prince* **Rosch hierarch**
of Meshech and Tubal,
and prophesy against him,
3 And say, Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
Behold, I am against thee, O Gog,
the *chief prince* **Rosch hierarch**
of Meshech and Tubal:
4 And I *will* **shall** turn thee back,
and *put* **give** hooks into thy jaws,
and I *will* **shall** bring thee forth,
and all thine *army* **valiant**, horses and *horsemen* **cavalry**,
all of them *clothed* **enrobed**
with *all sorts of armour* **splendour**,
even a great company **congregation**
with *bucklers* **shields** and *shields* **bucklers**,
all of them *handling* **manipulating** swords:
5 Persia, *Ethiopia* **Kush**, and *Libya* **Put** with them;
all of them with *shield* **buckler** and helmet:
6 Gomer, and all his bands;
the house of Togarmah of the north *quarters* **flanks**,
and all his bands: and many people with thee.
7 Be thou prepared, and prepare for thyself,
thou, and all thy *company* **congregation**
that are *assembled* **congregated** unto thee,
and be thou a guard unto them.
8 After many days thou shalt be visited:
in the latter years thou shalt come into the land
that is *brought back* **restored** from the sword,
and is gathered out of many people,
against the mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which have been *always* **waste** **continually parched**:
but it is brought forth out of the *nations* **goyim**,
and they shall *dwell safely* **settle confidently** all of them.
9 Thou shalt ascend and *come* like a *storm* **devastation**,
thou shalt be like a cloud to cover the land,
thou, and all thy bands, and many people with thee.
10 Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
It shall also *come to pass* **become**, that at the same time
shall *things come* **words ascend** into thy *mind* **heart**,
and thou shalt *think* **fabricate** an evil *thought* **fabrication**:
11 And thou shalt say,
I *will go up* **shall ascend**
to the land of *unwalled villages* **suburbs**;
I *will* **shall** go to them that *are at rest*,
that *dwell safely* **settle confidently**,
all of them *dwelling* **settling** without walls,
and having neither bars nor *gates* **doors**.
12 To *take* **spoil** a spoil,
and to *take a prey* **plunder a plunder**;
to turn thine hand
upon the *desolate places* **parched areas**
that are now inhabited,
and upon the people
that are gathered out of the *nations* **goyim**,
which have *gotten* **worked**
cattle **chattel** and *goods* **chattel**,
that *dwell in* **settle on the midst** **summit** of the land.
13 Sheba, and Dedan, and the merchants of Tarshish,
with all the *young lions* **whelps** *thereof*,
shall say unto thee, Art thou come to *take* **spoil** a spoil?
hast thou
gathered **congregated** thy *company* **congregation**
to *take* **plunder** a *prey* **plunder**?
to *carry* **bear** away silver and gold,
to take away *cattle* **chattel** and *goods* **chattel**,
to *take* **spoil** a great spoil?
14 Therefore, son of *man* **humanity**,
prophesy and say unto Gog,

YECHEZQ EL 37, 38

exeGesés companion BIBLE

28 and they become my people:
and the goyim know
that I Yah Veh hallow Yisra El,
when my holies is among them eternally.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH CONCERNING GOG

38

2 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
Son of humanity,
set your face against Gog of the land of Magog
— the Rosch hierarch of Meshech and Tubal,
and prophesy against him,
3 and say, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I *am* against you, O Gog,
the Rosch hierarch of Meshech and Tubal:
4 and I turn you back,
and give hooks in your jaws,
and I bring you forth,
and all your valiant, horses and cavalry
enrobed with splendor — all of them
— a great congregation with shields and bucklers,
all of them manipulating swords:
5 Persia, Kush, and Put with them;
all of them *with* buckler and helmet:
6 Gomer, and all his bands;
the house of Togarmah of the north flanks
with all his bands;
and many people with you.
7 Prepare — prepare for yourself
— you and all your congregation
who congregate to you,
and become their guard.
8 After many days you *are* visited:
in the latter years you enter the land
restored from the sword
— gathered from many people,
on the mountains of Yisra El,
being continually parched:
and it is brought forth from the goyim,
and they settle confidently — all of them.
9 You ascend as a devastation,
— as a cloud covers the land
— you and all your bands and many people with you.
10 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh;
and so be it, at the same time,
words ascend into your heart
and you fabricate an evil fabrication:
and you say, I ascend to the land of suburbs;
11 I go to them who rest — who settle confidently;
all of them settling without walls
and having neither bars nor doors;
12 to spoil a spoil and to plunder a plunder
— to turn your hand on the parched areas
now inhabited,
and on the people gathered from the goyim,
who work chattel and who chattel
— who settle on the summit of the land.
13 Sheba and Dedan and the merchants of Tarshish
with all their whelps,
say to you, Come you to spoil a spoil?
To congregate your congregation
to plunder a plunder?
To bear away silver and gold?
To take away chattel and to chattel?
To spoil a great spoil?
14 So, son of humanity,
prophesy and say to Gog,

EZEKIEL 38, 39

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
In that day when my people of *Israel* **Yisra El**
dwelleth safely settleth confidently,
shalt thou not know it?
And thou shalt come
15 from thy place out of the north *parts* **flanks**,
thou, and many people with thee,
all of them riding upon horses,
a great *company* **congregation**,
and a *mighty army* **great valiant**:
16 And thou shalt *come up* **ascend**
against my people of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
as a cloud to cover the land;
so be it *shall be* in the latter days,
and I *will* **shall** bring thee against my land,
that the *heathen* **goyim** may know me
when I shall be *sanctified* **hallowed** in thee, O Gog,
before **in front of** their eyes.
17 Thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
Art thou he
of whom I have *spoken* **worded** in *old* **ancient** time
by **the hand of** my servants the prophets of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which prophesied in those days *many* years
that I *would* **should** bring thee against them?
18 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*
at the same time **in that day**,
when the day Gog shall come
against the *land* **soil** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
that my fury shall *come up* **ascend** in my *face* **nostrils**.
19 For in my jealousy and in the fire of my wrath
have I *spoken* **worded**,
Surely in that day there shall be a great *shaking* **quake**
in the *land* **soil** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
20 So that the fishes of the sea,
and the *fowls* **flyers** of the *heaven* **heavens**,
and the *beasts* **live beings** of the field,
and all *creeping things* **creepers**
that creep upon the *earth* **soil**,
and all the *men* **humans**
that are upon the face of the *earth* **soil**,
shall *shake* **quake** at my *presence* **face**,
and the mountains shall be *thrown down* **demolished**,
and the steep *places* **steps** shall fall,
and every wall shall fall to the *ground* **earth**.
21 And I *will* **shall** call for a sword against him
throughout all my mountains,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh:
every man's sword shall be against his brother.
22 And I *will* **shall** judge against him
with pestilence and with blood;
and I *will* **shall** rain upon him, and upon his bands,
and upon the many people that are with him,
an overflowing *rain* **downpour**,
and great hailstones, fire, and *brimstone* **sulphur**.
23 Thus *will* I *magnify* **shall I** *greaten* myself,
and *sanctify* **hallow** myself;
and I *will* **shall** be known in the eyes of many *nations* **goyim**,
and they shall know that *I am the LORD I* — **Yah Veh**.
39 Therefore, thou son of *man* **humanity**,
prophesy against Gog, and say,
Thus saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh;
Behold, I am against thee, O Gog,
the *chief prince* **Rosch hierarch**
of Meshech and Tubal:
2 And I *will* **shall** turn thee back,
and *leave but the sixth part of* **hexsect*** thee,
and *will* **shall** cause thee to *come up* **ascend**
from the north *parts* **flanks**,
and *will* **shall** bring thee
upon the mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
3 And I *will* **shall** smite thy bow out of thy left hand,
and *will* **shall** cause thine arrows
to fall out of thy right hand.

*hexsect: divide into sixths

4 Thou shalt fall upon the mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
thou, and all thy bands, and the people that is with thee:
I *will* **shall** give thee
unto the *ravenous* **swooper** birds of every *sort* **wing**,

YECHEZQ EL 38, 39

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
In that day,
when my people of Yisra El settle confidently,
know you not thereof?
15 And you come from your place
— from the north flanks
— you and many people with you;
all of them riding on horses;
a great congregation and great valiant:
16 and you ascend against my people of Yisra El
as a cloud to cover the land;
and so be it in the latter days,
I bring you against my land,
so that the goyim know me
when I *am* hallowed in you, O Gog,
in front of their eyes.
17 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh;
Are you he of whom I worded in ancient time
by the hand of my servants the prophets of Yisra El,
who prophesied in those days — years
that I bring you against them?
18 And so be it, in that day,
the day Gog enters the soil of Yisra El
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
that my fury ascends in my nostrils.
19 For in my jealousy and in the fire of my wrath
— I have worded;
surely in that day
a great quake becomes in the soil of Yisra El;
20 so that the fishes of the sea
and the flyers of the heavens
and the live beings of the field
and all creepers creeping on the soil
and all the humans on the face of the soil
quake at my face:
and the mountains demolish
and the steep steps fall
and every wall falls to the earth:
21 and I call for a sword against him
throughout all my mountains
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
— the sword of every man is against his brother:
22 and I judge against him
with pestilence and with blood;
and I rain on him and on his bands
and on the many people with him,
an overflowing downpour and great hailstones,
fire and sulphur.
23 Thus I greaten myself and hallow myself;
and I *am* known in the eyes of many goyim;
and they know I — Yah Veh.
39 And you, son of humanity,
prophesy against Gog,
and say, Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Behold, I *am* against you, O Gog,
the Rosch hierarch of Meshech and Tubal:
2 and I turn you back and hexsect* you
and ascend you from the north flanks
and bring you on the mountains of Yisra El:
3 and I smite your bow from your left hand
and fell your arrows from your right hand.
*hexsect: divide into sixths
4 You fall on the mountains of Yisra El
— you and all your bands
and the people with you:
I give you to the swooper birds of every wing

EZEKIEL 39

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and to the *beasts* **live beings** of the field
to be *devoured* **for food**.
5 Thou shalt fall upon the *open* **face of the field**:
for I have *spoken* it **worded**,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
6 And I *will* **shall** send a fire on Magog,
and among them that *dwell* **carelessly settle confidently**
in the *isles* **islands**:
and they shall know that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*.
7 So *will* **shall** I make my holy name known
in the midst of my people *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and I *will* **shall** not
 let them pollute **profane** my holy name any more:
and the *heathen* **goyim** shall know
that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh*,
the Holy One in *Israel* **Yisra El**.
8 Behold, it *is* **hath** come, and it *is done* **hath become**,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**;
this is the day whereof I have *spoken* **worded**.
9 And they that *dwell* **settle** in the cities of *Israel* **Yisra El**
shall go forth,
and shall *set on fire* **burn**
and burn the *weapons* **armament**,
both the *shields* **bucklers** and the *bucklers* **shields**,
the bows and the arrows,
and the handstaves, and the *spears* **javelins**,
and they shall burn them with fire seven years:
10 So that they shall
 take lift **no wood timber** out of the field,
neither *cut down* **chop** any out of the forests;
for they shall burn the *weapons* **armaments** with fire:
and they shall spoil those that spoiled them,
and *rob* **plunder** those that *robbed* **plundered** them,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
11 And **so be** it *shall come to pass* in that day,
that I *will* **shall** give unto Gog
a place there of *graves* **tombs** in *Israel* **Yisra El**,
the valley of the *passengers* **passersby**
on the east of the sea:
and it shall stop the *noses of the passengers* **passersby**:
and there shall they *bury* **entomb** Gog
and all his multitude:
and they shall call it
The *valley of Hamongog* **Gay Hamon Gog/The Valley of the Multitude of Gog**.
12 And seven months shall the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
 be burying of **entomb** them,
that they may *cleanse* **purify** the land.
13 Yea, all the people of the land shall *bury* **entomb** them;
and it shall be to them a *renown* **name**
the day that I shall be *glorified* **honoured**,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
14 And they shall *sever out* **continually separate** men
of *continual employment* , passing through the land
to *bury* **entomb** with the *passengers* **the passersby**
those that remain upon the face of the earth,
to *cleanse* **purify** it:
after the end of seven months shall they *search* **probe**.
15 And the *passengers* **passersby**
that pass through the land,
when any seeth a *man's* **human** bone,
then shall he set *up a sign by* **a monument beside** it,
till the *buriers* **entombers** have *buried* **entombed** it
in the *valley of Hamongog* **Valley of the Multitude of Gog/Gay Hamon Gog**.
16 And also the name of the city shall be Hamonah.
Thus shall they *cleanse* **purify** the land.
17 And, thou son of *man* **humanity**,
thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
Speak unto every *feathered fowl* **bird of wing**,
and to every *beast* **live being** of the field,
 Assemble yourselves **Gather**, and come;
gather *yourselves on every side* **round about**
to my sacrifice that I *do* sacrifice for you,
 even a great sacrifice
upon the mountains of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that ye may eat flesh, and drink blood.
18 Ye shall eat the flesh of the mighty,
and drink the blood of the *princes* **hierarchs** of the earth,

YECHEZQ EL 39

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and to the live beings of the field for food:
5 you fall on the face of the field:
for I have worded
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
6 and I send a fire on Magog
and among them who settle confidently in the islands:
and they know I — Yah Veh.
7 Thus I make my holy name known
among my people Yisra El;
and I profane my holy name no more:
and the goyim know I — Yah Veh,
the Holy One in Yisra El.
8 Behold, it approaches, and so be it
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
this is the day whereof I worded.
9 And they who settle in the cities of Yisra El
go forth and burn — burn the armament;
both the bucklers and the shields
the bows and the arrows
and the handstaves and the javelins
and they burn them with fire seven years:
10 so that they neither lift timber from the field
nor chop any from the forests;
for they burn the armaments with fire:
and they spoil them who spoil them
and plunder them who plunder them
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
11 And so be it, in that day,
I give Gog a place there — a tomb in Yisra El,
in the valley of passersby on the east of the sea:
and the passersby stop
and there they entomb Gog and all his multitude:
and they call it
Gay Hamon Gog/The Valley of the Multitude of Gog.
12 And for seven months
the house of Yisra El entombs them
to purify the land.
13 Yes, all the people of the land entomb them;
and it becomes to them for a name
the day they honor me
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
14 And they continually separate men
passing through the land
with the passersby
to entomb them who remain on the face of the earth
— to purify it:
and after the end of seven months they probe:
and when the passersby pass through the land
and any sees a human bone,
he sets a monument beside it
until the entombers entombed it in
Gay Hamon Gog/The Valley of the Multitude of Gog:
15 and the name of the city
 is also Hamonah/Multitude:
thus they purify the land.
16 And you, son of humanity,
thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
Speak to every bird of wing,
and to every live being of the field,
Gather and come;
gather from all around
for the sacrifice I sacrifice for you
— a great sacrifice on the mountains of Yisra El
— to eat flesh and drink blood:
17 — to eat the flesh of the mighty
and drink the blood of the hierarchs of the earth,

EZEKIEL 39, 40

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

of rams, of lambs, and of **he** goats, of bullocks,
all of them fatlings of Bashan.
19 And ye shall eat fat *till ye be full* **unto satiety**,
and drink blood till ye be *drunken* **intoxicated**,
of my sacrifice which I have sacrificed for you.
20 Thus ye shall be *filled* **satiated** at my table
with horses and chariots,
with mighty *men*, and with all men of war,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
21 And I will set **shall give** my *glory* **honour**
among the *heathen* **goyim**,
and all the *heathen* **goyim** shall see my judgment
that I have *executed* **worked**,
and my hand that I have *laid* **set** upon them.
22 So the house of *Israel* **Yisra El** shall know
that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh* their *God* **Elohim**
from that day and *forward* **beyond**.
23 And the *heathen* **goyim** shall know
that the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
went into captivity **was exiled**
for their *iniquity* **perversity**:
because they *trespassed* **treasoned** against me,
therefore hid I my face from them,
and gave them
into the hand of their *enemies* **tribulators**:
so fell they all by the sword.
24 According to their *uncleanness* **foulness**
and according to their *transgressions* **rebellions**
have I *done* **worked** unto them,
and hid my face from them.

YAH VEh MERCIES YISRA EL

25 Therefore
thus *saith the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
Now *will I bring again* **shall I return**
the captivity of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and *have mercy upon* the whole house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and *will* **shall** be jealous for my holy name;
26 After that they have borne their shame,
and all their *trespasses* **treasons**
whereby they have *trespassed* **treasoned** against me,
when they *dwelt safely* **settled confidently**
in their *land* **soil**,
and none made them *afraid* **tremble**.
27 When I have *brought* **returned** them *again*
from the people,
and gathered them out of their enemies' lands,
and am *sanctified* **hallowed** in them
in the *sight* **eyes** of many *nations* **goyim**;
28 Then shall they know
that *I am the LORD I — Yah Veh* their *God* **Elohim**,
which caused them
to be *led into captivity* **exiled** among the *heathen* **goyim**:
but I have gathered them unto their own *land* **soil**,
and have *left* none of them **remain** any more there.
29 Neither *will* **shall** I hide my face any more from them:
for I have poured out my spirit
upon the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE HOUSE IS MEASURED

cp Apocalypse 11:1,2

40 In the five and twentieth year of our *captivity* **exile**,
in the beginning of the year,
in the tenth *day* of the month,
in the fourteenth year after that the city was smitten,
in the selfsame day
the hand of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** was upon me,
and brought me thither.
2 In the visions of *God* **Elohim**
brought he me into the land of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and set **rested** me upon a very **mighty** high mountain,
by which was as the *frame* **building** of a city
on the south.
3 And he brought me thither, and, behold,
there was a man,
whose *appearance* **visage**
was like the *appearance* **visage** of *brass* **copper**,
with a line of flax in his hand,
and a measuring *reed* **stalk**;
and he stood in the *gate* **portal**.

YECHEZQ EL 39, 40

exeGesés companion BIBLE

of rams, of lambs, and of he goats, of bullocks,
of all the fatlings of Bashan:
19 and you,
eat fat to satiety and drink blood to intoxication
of the sacrifice I sacrifice for you.
20 Thus satiate at my table with horses and chariots,
with mighty and with all men of war
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.
21 And I give my honor among the goyim
and all the goyim see the judgment I worked,
and my hand that I set on them:
22 thus the house of Yisra El knows
I — Yah Veh their Elohim
from that day and beyond:
23 and the goyim know that the house of Yisra El
is exiled for their perversity
because they treason against me:
so I hide my face from them,
and give them into the hand of their tribulators:
so they all fall by the sword
— according to their foulness
and according to their rebellions
that I work to them;
and I hide my face from them.
24
25 **YAH VEh MERCIES YISRA EL**
So, thus says Adonay Yah Veh;
Now I restore the captivity of Yaaqov
and mercy the whole house of Yisra El
and *am* jealous for my holy name;
26 after they bear their shame
for all the treasons they treason against me;
when they settle confidently in their soil
and no one trembles them.
27 When I restore them from the people
and gather them from the lands of their enemies
and *am* hallowed in them in the eyes of many goyim
28 — and they know I — Yah Veh their Elohim,
who exiled them among the goyim:
and I gather them to their own soil,
so that none of them remain there any more:
29 and I hide not my face from them any more:
for I pour my spirit on the house of Yisra El
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE HOUSE IS MEASURED

cp Apocalypse 11:1,2

40 In the twenty—fifth year of our exile,
in the beginning of the year,
in the tenth of the month,
in the fourteenth year after the city *is* smitten,
in this selfsame day,
and the hand of Yah Veh being on me,
brings me there
— in the visions of Elohim
he brings me into the land of Yisra El
and rests me on a mighty high mountain;
on which *is* as the building of a city on the south.
2
3 And he brings me there, and behold,
a man with a visage as the visage of copper
with a line of flax in his hand and a measuring stalk;
and he stands in the portal

EZEKIEL 40

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 And the man *said* **worded** unto me,
Son of *man* **humanity**,
behold **see** with thine eyes, and hear with thine ears,
and set thine heart
upon all that I shall *shew* **have** thee **see**;
for to the intent
that I might *shew* **have** them **see** unto thee
art thou brought hither:
declare **tell** all that thou seest
to the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

5 And behold a wall on the outside of the house
round about **and round about**,
and in the man's hand a measuring *reed* **stalk**
of six cubits *long* by the cubit
and *an hand* **breadth** a **palm span**:
so he measured the breadth of the building,
one *reed* **stalk**;
and the height, one *reed* **stalk**.

6 Then came he unto the *gate* **portal**
which *looketh toward the east* **faceth eastward**,
and *went up* **ascended** the *stairs* **steps** thereof,
and measured the threshold of the *gate* **portal**,
which was one *reed* **stalk** broad;
and the *other* **one** threshold of the *gate*,
which was one *reed* **stalk** broad.

7 And every *little* **each** chamber was one *reed* **stalk** long,
and one *reed* **stalk** broad;
and between the *little* chambers were five cubits;
and the threshold of the *gate* **portal**
by **beside** the porch of the *gate* **portal**
within **from the house** was one *reed* **stalk**.

8 He measured also the porch of the *gate* **portal**
within **from the house**, one *reed* **stalk**.

9 Then measured he the porch of the *gate* **portal**,
eight cubits;
and the *posts* **pilasters** thereof, two cubits;
and the porch of the *gate* **portal**
was inward **from the house**.

10 And the *little* chambers
of the *gate* **eastward** **portal of the way of the east**
were three *on this side* **here**, and three *on that side* **there**;
they three were of one measure:
and the *posts* **pilasters** had one measure
on this side **from here** and *on that side* **from there**.

11 And he measured
the breadth of the *entry* **opening** of the *gate* **portal**,
ten cubits;
and the length of the *gate* **portal**, thirteen cubits.

12 The *space* **border** also
before **at the face of** the *little* chambers
was one cubit *on this side* **from here**,
and the *space* **border**
was one cubit *on that side* **from there**:
and the *little* chambers
were six cubits *on this side* **from here**,
and six cubits *on that side* **from there**.

13 He measured then the *gate* **portal**
from the roof of *one little* chamber to the roof of *another*:
the breadth was five and twenty cubits,
door **portal** against *door* **portal**.

14 He *made* **worked** also *posts* **pilasters**
of *threescore* **sixty** cubits,
even unto the *post* **pilaster** of the court
round about **and round about** the *gate* **portal**.

15 And from the face of the *gate* **portal** of the entrance
unto the face of the porch of the inner *gate* **portal**
were fifty cubits.

16 And there were *narrow* **shuttered** windows
to the *little* chambers,
and to their *posts* **pilasters** within the *gate* **portal**
round about **and round about**,
and likewise to the arches: and windows
were round about **and round about** *inward* **within**:
and upon each *post* **pilaster** were palm trees.

THE OUTWARD COURT

17 Then brought he me into the outward court,
and, *lo* **behold**, there were chambers,
and a pavement made for the court
round about **and round about**:

YECHEZQ EL 40

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 and the man words to me, Son of humanity,
see with your eyes and hear with your ears
and set your heart on all I show you;
for I bring you here to show you
— to tell all you see to the house of Yisra El.

5 And behold,
a wall outside the house all around and all around;
and in the hand of the man, a measuring stalk
six cubits by the cubit and a palm span:
so he measures the breadth of the building, one stalk;
and the height, one stalk:

6 and he comes to the portal facing eastward
and ascends the steps
and measures the threshold of the portal,
one stalk broad;
and the one threshold, one stalk broad:

7 and each chamber,
one stalk long, and one stalk broad;
and between the chambers, five cubits;
and the threshold of the portal
beside the porch of the portal
from the house, one stalk;

8 and he measures the porch of the portal
from the house, one stalk;

9 and he measures the porch of the portal,
eight cubits;
and the pilasters, two cubits;
and the porch of the portal from the house.

10 And the chambers of the portal
of the way of the east,
three here and three there;
they three of one measure:
and the pilasters,
one measure from here and from there.

11 And he measures
the breadth of the opening of the portal, ten cubits;
and the length of the portal, thirteen cubits:
the border at the face of the chambers,
one cubit from here;
and the border, one cubit from there:
and the chambers,
six cubits from here, and six cubits from there.

13 And he measures the portal of the chamber
from roof to roof:
the breadth, twenty—five cubits,
portal against portal.

14 He also works pilasters, sixty cubits,
even to the pilaster of the court
all around and all around the portal:
and from the face of the portal of the entrance
to the face of the porch of the inner portal,
fifty cubits;

16 with shuttered windows to the chambers,
and to their pilasters within the portal
all around and all around;
and likewise to the arches:
with windows all around and all around within:
and on each pilaster, palm trees.

THE OUTWARD COURT

17 And he brings me into the outward court,
and behold, chambers;
and a pavement made for the court
all around and all around;

EZEKIEL 40

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

18 thirty chambers were upon the pavement.
And the pavement
by the *side* **shoulder** of the *gates* **portals**
over against **alongside** the length of the *gates* **portals**
was the *lower* **nether** pavement.

19 Then he measured the breadth
from the *forefront* **face** of the *lower gate* **nether portal**
unto the *forefront* of **face of** the inner court *without* **outward**,
an hundred cubits eastward and northward.

THE PORTAL AT THE FACE OF THE NORTHWARD WAY

20 And the *gate* **portal** of the outward court
that *looked toward* **faced** the *north* **northward way**
he measured the length *thereof*, and the breadth *thereof*.

21 And the *little* chambers *thereof*
were three *on this side* **from here**
and three *on that side* **from there**;
and the *posts* **pilasters** and the arches *thereof*
were after the measure of the first *gate* **portal**:
the length *thereof* was fifty cubits,
and the breadth five and twenty cubits.

22 And their windows, and their arches, and their palm trees,
were after the measure of the *gate* **portal**
that *looketh toward* **faceth** the *east* **eastward way**;
and they *went up* **ascended** unto it by seven steps;
and the arches *thereof* were *before* **faced** them.

23 And the *gate* **portal** of the inner court
was over against the *gate* **portal**
toward the north **northward**,
and *toward the east* **eastward**;
and he measured from *gate* **portal** to *gate* **portal**
an hundred cubits.

THE PORTAL OF THE SOUTHWARD WAY

24 After that
he *brought* **carried** me *toward* the *south* **southward way**,
and behold a *gate* **portal**
toward the south **the southward way**:
and he measured the *posts* **pilasters** *thereof*
and the arches *thereof* according to these measures.

25 And there were windows in it and in the arches *thereof*
round about **and round about**, like those windows:
the length was fifty cubits,
and the breadth five and twenty cubits.

26 And there were seven steps *to go up to it* **of ascent**,
and the arches *thereof* were *before* **at the face of** them:
and it had palm trees,
one on this side **one from here**,
and *another on that side* **one from there**,
upon the *posts* **pilasters** *thereof*.

27 And there was a *gate* **portal** in the inner court
toward the south **the southward way**:
and he measured from *gate* **portal** to *gate* **portal**
toward the south **the southward way** an hundred cubits.

THE INNER COURT

28 And he brought me to the inner court
by the *south gate* **southward portal**
and he measured the *south gate* **southward portal**
according to these measures;

29 And the *little* chambers *thereof*,
and the *posts* **pilasters** *thereof*,
and the arches *thereof*, according to these measures:
and there were windows in it and in the arches *thereof*
round about **and round about**:
it was fifty cubits long, and five and twenty cubits broad.

30 And the arches round about **and round about**
were five and twenty cubits long, and five cubits broad.

31 And the arches *thereof*
were toward the *utter* **outer** court;
and palm trees were upon the *posts* **pilasters** *thereof*:
and the *going up to it* **ascent** had eight steps.

32 And he brought me into the inner court
toward **the way of** the east:
and he measured the *gate* **portal**
according to these measures.

33 And the *little* chambers *thereof*,
and the *posts* **pilasters** *thereof*, and the arches *thereof*,
were according to these measures:
and there were windows therein
and in the arches *thereof* round about **and round about**:
it was fifty cubits long, and five and twenty cubits broad.

YECHEZQ EL 40

exeGesés companion BIBLE

18 with thirty chambers on the pavement:
and the pavement by the shoulder of the portals
alongside the length of the portals,
the nether pavement:
and he measures the breadth
from the face of the nether portal
to the face of the inner court outward,
a hundred cubits eastward and northward.

THE PORTAL AT THE FACE OF THE NORTHWARD WAY

20 And the portal of the outward court
facing the northward way,
he measures the length and the breadth:
and the chambers,
three from here and three from there;
and the pilasters and the arches
are after the measure of the first portal:
the length, fifty cubits,
and the breadth, twenty—five cubits.

22 And their windows, and their arches,
and their palm trees,
as the measure of the portal
facing the eastward way;
and they ascend to it by seven steps;
and the arches face them.

23 And the portal of the inner court
is over against the portal northward and eastward;
and he measures from portal to portal,
a hundred cubits.

THE PORTAL OF THE SOUTHWARD WAY

24 And after that, he carries me the southward way,
and behold, a portal the southward way;
and he measures the pilasters
and the arches according to these measures:
with windows therein and in the arches
all around and all around
like those windows:
the length, fifty cubits;
and the breadth, twenty—five cubits:
with seven steps of ascent,
and arches at their face:
and palm trees
— one from here and one from there
on the pilasters:

27 with a portal in the inner court the southward way:
and he measures from portal to portal
the southward way, a hundred cubits.

THE INNER COURT

28 And he brings me to the inner court
by the southward portal;
and he measures the southward portal
according to these measures:

29 and the chambers and the pilasters and the arches
according to these measures:
with windows therein and in the arches
all around and all around,
fifty cubits long, and twenty—five cubits broad:
and the arches all around and all around,
twenty—five cubits long, and five cubits broad:
with the arches toward the outer court;
and palm trees on the pilasters,
and the ascent eight steps.

32 And he brings me into the inner court
the way of the east:
and he measures the portal
according to these measures:

33 and the chambers and the pilasters and the arches
are according to these measures:
with windows therein
and in the arches all around and all around:
fifty cubits long, and twenty—five cubits broad:

EZEKIEL 40

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

34 And the arches *thereof* were toward the outward court; and palm trees were upon the *posts pilasters thereof, on this side from here, and on that side from there:* and the *going up to it ascent* had eight steps.

35 And he brought me to the north *gate portal,* and measured it according to these measures;

36 The *little chambers thereof,* the *posts pilasters thereof,* and the arches *thereof,* and the windows to it round about **and round about:** the length was fifty cubits, and the breadth five and twenty cubits.

37 And the *posts pilasters thereof* were toward the utter court; and palm trees were upon the *posts pilasters thereof, on this side from here, and on that side from there:* and the *going up to it ascent* had eight steps.

THE CHAMBERS OF THE HOLOCAUST

38 And the chambers and the *entries portals thereof* were by the *posts pilasters of the gates portals,* where they *washed cleansed* the *burnt offering holocaust.*

39 And in the porch of the *gate portal* were two tables *on this side from here,* and two tables *on that side from there,* to *slay slaughter* thereon the *burnt offering holocaust* and the *sin offering that for the sin* and the *trespass offering that for the guilt.*

40 And at the *side without shoulder outward,* as one *goeth up ascendeth* to the *entry opening of the north gate portal,* were two tables; and on the other *side shoulder,* which was at the porch of the *gate portal,* were two tables.

41 Four tables were *on this side from here,* and four tables *on that side from there,* by the *side shoulder of the gate portal;* eight tables, whereupon they *slew their sacrifices slaughtered.*

42 And the four tables were of hewn stone for the *burnt offering holocaust,* of a **one** cubit and an half long, and a **one** cubit and an half broad, and one cubit high: whereupon also they *laid set* the instruments wherewith they *slew slaughtered* the *burnt offering holocaust* and the sacrifice.

43 And *within in the house* were hooks, *an hand broad one palm span,* *fastened established* round about **and round about:** and upon the tables was the flesh of the *offering qorban.*

THE CHAMBERS OF THE SINGERS

44 And *without outward* the inner *gate portal* were the chambers of the singers in the inner court, which was at the *side shoulder of the north gate portal;* and their *prospect they faced* was toward the *south the southward way:* one at the *side shoulder of the east gate portal* having the *prospect at the face* toward the *north of the northward way.*

THE CHAMBERS OF THE PRIESTS

45 And he *said worded* unto me, This chamber, whose *prospect is toward the south at the face of the southerly way,* is for the priests, the *keepers guards of the charge guard of the house.*

46 And the chamber whose *prospect is toward the north at the face of the northward* is for the priests, the *keepers guards* of the *charge guard of the sacrifice altar:* these are the sons of *Zadok Sadoq* among the sons of Levi, which *come near to the LORD approach Yah Veh* to minister unto him.

47 So he measured the court, an hundred cubits long, and an hundred cubits broad,

YECHEZQ EL 40

exeGesés companion BIBLE

34 with the arches toward the outward court; and palm trees on the pilasters from here, and from there: and the ascent eight steps.

35 And he brings me to the north portal and measures it according to these measures: the chambers and the pilasters and the arches and the windows to it all around and all around: the length, fifty cubits, and the breadth, twenty—five cubits; with the pilasters toward the utter court; and palm trees on the pilasters from here, and from there: and the ascent eight steps.

THE CHAMBERS OF THE HOLOCAUST

38 And the chambers and the portals are by the pilasters of the portals where they cleanse the holocaust: and in the porch of the portal, two tables from here, and two tables from there, to slaughter thereon the holocaust and that for the sin and that for the guilt.

40 And at the shoulder outward, as one ascends to the opening of the north portal, two tables; and on the other shoulder at the porch of the portal, two tables.

41 Four tables from here, and four tables from there by the shoulder of the portal; eight tables, whereon they slaughter: with four tables of hewn stone for the holocaust, one and a half cubits long, and one and a half cubits broad, and one cubit high: whereon they set the instruments to slaughter the holocaust and the sacrifice: and hooks in the house, one palm span, established all around and all around: and on the tables, the flesh of the qorban.

THE CHAMBERS OF THE SINGERS

44 And outward the inner portal, the chambers of the singers in the inner court at the shoulder of the north portal; at the face of the southward way; one at the shoulder of the east portal at the face of the northward way.

THE CHAMBERS OF THE PRIESTS

45 And he words to me, This chamber at the face of the southward way is for the priests — the guards who guard the house: and the chamber at the face of the northward is for the priests, — the guards who guard the sacrifice altar: these are the sons of Sadoq among the sons of Levi who approach Yah Veh to minister to him: and he measures the court, a hundred cubits long, and a hundred cubits broad,

EZEKIEL 40, 41

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

foursquare square;
and the **sacrifice** altar
that was before **at the face of** the house.

48 And he brought me to the porch of the house,
and measured each *post* **pilaster** of the porch,
five cubits *on this side* **from here**,
and five cubits *on that side* **from there**:
and the breadth of the **gate portal**
was three cubits *on this side* **from here**,
and three cubits *on that side* **from there**.
49 The length of the porch was twenty cubits,
and the breadth eleven cubits,
and he brought me by the steps
whereby they went up **ascended** to it:
and there were pillars by the *posts* **pilasters**,
one on this side **one from here**,
and *another on that side* **one from there**.

41 Afterward he brought me to the *temple* **manse**,
and measured the *posts* **pilasters**,
six cubits broad *on the one side* **from here**,
and six cubits broad *on the other side* **from there**,
which was the breadth of the *tabernacle* **tent**.
2 And the breadth of the *door* **opening** was ten cubits;
and the *sides* **shoulders** of the *door* **opening**
were five cubits *on the one side* **from here**,
and five cubits *on the other side* **from there**:
and he measured the length *thereof*, forty cubits:
and the breadth, twenty cubits.

THE HOLY OF HOLIES

3 Then went he *inward* **within**,
and measured the *post* **pilaster** of the *door* **opening**,
two cubits;
and the *door* **opening**, six cubits;
and the breadth of the *door* **opening**, seven cubits.
4 So he measured the length *thereof*, twenty cubits;
and the breadth, twenty cubits
before at the face of the *temple* **manse**:
and he said unto me,
This is the *most holy place* **holy of holies**.
5 After he measured the wall of the house, six cubits;
and the breadth of every side *chamber*, four cubits,
round about **and round about** the house
on every side **round about**.
6 And the *side chambers* **sides** were
three, one over another, and thirty in order
side by side thirty—three times;
and they entered into the wall which was of the house
for the *side chambers* **sides**
round about **and round about**,
that they might have hold,
but they had not **taken** hold in the wall of the house.
7 And there was an enlarging,
and a *winding* **spiraling** about
still upward **upward and upward**
to the *side chambers* **sides**:
for the *winding* **spiraling** about of the house
went *still upward* **upward and upward**
round about **and round about** the house:
therefore the breadth of the house
was *still upward* **upward and upward**,
and so *increased* **ascended**
from the *lowest* **nethermost** chamber
to the *highest* **most high** by the midst.
8 I saw also the height of the house
round about **and round about**:
the foundations of the *side chambers* **sides**
were a full *reed* **stalk** of six *great* **elbow** cubits.
9 The *thickness* **breadth** of the wall,
which was for the *side chamber* **without outward**,
was five cubits:
and that which was left was the *place* **house**
of the *side chambers* **that were within** **sides to the house**.
10 And between the chambers
was the *wideness* **breadth** of twenty cubits
round about **and round about** the house
on every side **round about**.
11 And the *doors* **openings** of the *side chambers* **sides**

THE HOUSE

THE MANSE

YECHEZQ EL 40, 41

exeGesés companion BIBLE

square;
and the sacrifice altar at the face of the house.

48 And he brings me to the porch of the house
and measures each pilaster of the porch;
five cubits from here, and five cubits from there:
and the breadth of the portal,
three cubits from here, and three cubits from there:
49 the length of the porch, twenty cubits,
and the breadth, eleven cubits,
and the steps whereby they ascend to it:
with pillars by the pilasters,
one from here, and one from there.

THE HOUSE

THE MANSE

41 And he brings me to the manse
and he measures the pilasters;
six cubits broad from here,
and six cubits broad from there
— the breadth of the tent:
2 and the breadth of the opening, ten cubits;
and the shoulders of the opening,
five cubits from here, and five cubits from there:
and he measures the length, forty cubits:
and the breadth, twenty cubits.

THE HOLY OF HOLIES

3 And he goes inward
and measures the pilaster of the opening, two cubits;
and the opening, six cubits;
and the breadth of the opening, seven cubits:
4 and he measures the length, twenty cubits;
and the breadth, twenty cubits
at the face of the manse.
And he says to me,
This is the holy of holies.
5 And he measures the wall of the house, six cubits;
and the breadth of side, four cubits,
all around and all around the house all around:
6 and the sides, side by side, thirty—three times;
and they enter the wall of the house
for the sides all around and all around to hold,
but they are not to hold the wall of the house:
7 and there is an enlarging
and a spiraling around upward and upward
to the sides:
and the spiraling of the house
goes upward and upward
all around and all around the house:
thus the breadth of the house is upward and upward,
and thus ascends
from the nethermost to the most high by the midst.
8 And I see the height of the house
all around and all around:
the foundations of the sides,
a full stalk of six cubits by the elbow:
9 the breadth of the wall, for the side outward,
five cubits:
and what is left
are the side houses to the house.
10 And between the chambers,
the breadth of twenty cubits
all around and all around the house all around:
11 and the openings of the sides

EZEKIEL 41

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

were toward the place that **which** was left,
 one door **opening**
 toward **the way of** the north,
 and another door **one opening**
 toward the south **southerly**;
 and the breadth of the place that **which** was left
 was five cubits round about **and round about**.
 12 Now the building
 that was before **at the face**
of the separate place **separation**
 at the end toward the west **edge of the way of the sea**
 was seventy cubits broad;
 and the wall of the building was five cubits **thick broad**
 round about **and round about**,
 and the length thereof ninety cubits.
 13 So he measured the house, an hundred cubits long;
 and the separate place **separation**, and the building,
 with the walls thereof, an hundred cubits long;
 14 Also the breadth of the face of the house,
 and of the separate place **separation**
 toward the east **eastward**,
 an hundred cubits.
 15 And he measured the length of the building
 over against **at the face of** the separate place **separation**
 which was behind it,
 and the galleries thereof
 on the one side **from here**
 and on the other side **from there**,
 an hundred cubits,
 with the inner temple **manse**,
 and the porches of the court;
 16 The door posts **thresholds**,
 and the narrow **shuttered** windows, and the galleries
 round about **and round about** on their three stories,
 over against the door **threshold**,
 cieled with wood **with shingles of timber**
 round about **and round about**,
 and from the ground **earth** up to the windows,
 and the windows were covered;
 17 To that above the door **opening**,
 even unto the inner house,
 and without **outward**, and by all the wall
 round about **and round about**
 within **inward** and without **outward**, by measure.
 18 And it was made
 with cherubims **cherubim** and palm trees,
 so that a palm tree was between a cherub and a cherub;
 and every cherub had two faces;
 19 So that the face of a man **human**
 was toward the palm tree on the one side **from here**,
 and the face of a young lion **whelp**
 toward the palm tree on the other side **from there**:
 it was made through all the house
 round about **and round about**.
 20 From the ground **earth** unto above the door **opening**
 were cherubims **cherubim** and palm trees made,
 and on the wall of the temple **manse**.
 21 The posts of the temple **manse** were squared,
 and the face of the sanctuary **holies**;
 the appearance of the one **visage**
 as the appearance of the other **visage**.
 22 The sacrifice altar of wood **timber**
 was three cubits high,
 and the length thereof two cubits;
 and the corners thereof, and the length thereof,
 and the walls thereof, were of wood **timber**:
 and he said **worded** unto me,
 This is the table
 that is before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**.
 23 And the temple **manse** and the sanctuary **holies**
 had two doors.
 24 And the doors had two leaves *apiece*,
 two turning **folding** leaves;
 two leaves for the one door,
 and two leaves for the other door.
 25 And there were made on them,
 on the doors of the temple **manse**,
 cherubims **cherubim** and palm trees,
 like as were made upon the walls;

YECHEZQ EL 41

exeGesés companion BIBLE

toward what is left;
 one opening the northward way,
 and one opening the southward;
 and the breadth of what is left,
 five cubits all around and all around.
 12 The building at the face of the separation,
 at the edge of the way of the sea,
 seventy cubits broad:
 and the wall of the building,
 five cubits broad all around and all around;
 and the length ninety cubits.
 13 And he measures the house, a hundred cubits long;
 and the separation, and the building,
 with the walls, a hundred cubits long;
 14 and the breadth of the face of the house
 and of the separation eastward,
 a hundred cubits:
 15 and he measures the length of the building
 at the face of the separation behind it,
 and the galleries,
 from here, and from there, a hundred cubits,
 with the inner manse, and the porches of the court:
 16 the thresholds,
 and the shuttered windows, and the galleries
 all around and all around, three,
 over against the threshold,
 with shingles of timber all around and all around
 and from the earth up to the windows;
 and the covered windows;
 17 to that above the opening
 — even to the inner house and outward
 and by all the wall all around and all around
 inward and outward, by measure.
 18 And it is made with cherubim and palm trees,
 so that there is a palm tree
 between cherub and cherub;
 and each cherub has two faces;
 19 with the face of a human
 toward the palm tree from here,
 and the face of a whelp
 toward the palm tree from there
 — made through all the house
 all around and all around.
 20 From the earth to above the opening
 they make cherubim and palm trees,
 and on the wall of the manse.
 21 The posts of the manse are squared,
 and the face of the holies;
 the visage is as the visage.
 22 The sacrifice altar is of timber,
 three cubits high, and two cubits long;
 and the corners and the length and the walls, timber.
 And he words to me,
 This is the table at the face of Yah Veh.
 23 And the manse and the holies have two doors:
 24 and the doors, two leaves — two folding leaves;
 two for the one door, and two leaves for the other.
 25 And make on them — on the doors of the manse,
 cherubim and palm trees,
 as those made on the walls

EZEKIEL 41, 42

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and there were thick *planks* **timbers**
upon the face of the porch *without* **outward**.

26

And there were
narrow **shuttered** windows and palm trees
on the one side **from here**
and *on the other side* **from there**,
on the *sides* **shoulders** of the porch,
and upon the *side* **chambers** *sides* of the house,
and thick planks.

THE CHAMBERS OF THE PRIESTS

42

Then he brought me forth into the *utter* **outer** court,
the way *toward the north* **northward way**;
and he brought me into the chamber
that was over against the *separate place* **separation**,
and which was before the building
toward the north **northward**.

2

Before **At the face of** the length of an hundred cubits
was the north *door* **opening**,
and the breadth was fifty cubits.

3

Over against the twenty *cubits*
which were for the inner court,
and over against the pavement
which was for the *utter* **outer** court,
was gallery *against at the face of* gallery
in three stories **tiers**.

4

And *before at the face of* the chambers
was a walk to ten cubits breadth inward,
a way of one cubit;

5

and their *doors toward the north* **openings northward**.
Now the upper **most high** chambers were shorter:
for the galleries were *higher* **contained** more than these,
than the *lower* **nether**,

6

and than the middlemost of the building.
For they were in *three stories* **tiers**,
but had not pillars as the pillars of the courts:
therefore *the building was straitened* **it was set**
more than the *lowest* **nethermost** and the middlemost
from the ground **earth**.

7

And the wall that was *without* **outward**
over against **alongside** the chambers,
toward the utter **the way of the outer** court
on the forepart at the face of the chambers,
the length *thereof* was fifty cubits.

8

For the length of the chambers
that were in the *utter* **outer** court was fifty cubits:
and, *lo behold, before at the face of the temple* **manse**
were an hundred cubits.

9

And from under these chambers
was the entry on the east *side*,
as one goeth into them from the *utter* **outer** court.

10

The chambers were in the *thickness* **breadth**
of the wall of the court
toward the east to the eastward way,
over against at the face of the separate place **separation**,
and *over against at the face of* the building.

11

And the way *before them at their face*
was like the *appearance* **visage** of the chambers
which were *toward the north to the northward way*,
as long as they, as their length,
and as broad as they thus their breadth:
and all their *goings out* **proceedings** were both
according to their *fashions* **judgments**,
and according to their *doors* **openings**.

12

And according to the *doors* **openings** of the chambers
that were *toward the south to the southward way*
was a *door an opening* in the head of the way,
even the way

13

directly before turning at the face of the wall
toward the east to the eastward way,
as one entereth into them.

Then said he unto me,
The *north* **northward** chambers
and the *south* **southward** chambers,
which are *before at the face of the separate place* **separation**,
they be holy chambers,
where the priests that approach unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall eat the *most holy things* **holy of holies**:
there shall they *lay set*
the *most holy things* **holy of holies**, and the *meat* offering,

YECHEZQ EL 41, 42

exeGesés companion BIBLE

with thick timbers on the face of the porch outward:

26

with shuttered windows and palm trees
from here and from there
on the shoulders of the porch
and the sides of the house
with thick planks.

THE CHAMBERS OF THE PRIESTS

42

And he brings me forth into the outer court,
the northward way:
and he brings me into the chamber
over against the separation,
in front of the building northward.

2

At the face,
the length of the north opening, a hundred cubits,
and the breadth, fifty cubits.

3

Over against the twenty for the inner court,
and over against the pavement for the outer court,
the gallery at the face of gallery, in tiers.

4

And at the face of the chambers,
a walk ten cubits broad to the inside,
a way of one cubit;
and their openings, northward.

5

And the most high chambers *are* shorter:
for the galleries contain more than these
— than the nether

6

and than the middlemost of the building.
For they *are* in tiers,
but not pillars as the pillars of the courts:
so it sets back from the earth
more than the nethermost and the middlemost.

7

And the outward wall alongside the chambers,
the way of the outer court at the face of the chambers,
the length, fifty cubits.

8

For the length of the chambers
in the outer court, fifty cubits:
and behold, at the face of the manse,
a hundred cubits.

9

And under these chambers, the entry on the east,
as one enters them from the outer court:
with the chambers

10

in the breadth of the wall of the court
to the eastward way,
at the face of the separation,
and at the face of the building.

11

And the way at their face
is as the visage of the chambers
to the northward way;
as their length, thus their breadth:
and all their proceedings
according to their judgments,
and according to their openings.

12

And according to the openings of the chambers
to the southward way,
an opening in the head of the way;
the way,
turning at the face of the wall to the eastward way,
as one enters them.

13

Then says he to me,
The northward chambers
and the southward chambers
at the face of the separation,
are holy chambers,
where the priests who approach to Yah Veh
eat the holy of holies:
there they set the holy of holies and the offering

EZEKIEL 42, 43

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the sin offering **that for the sin,**
and the trespass offering **that for the guilt;**
for the place is holy.

14 When the priests enter therein,
then shall they not go out of the *holy place* **holies**
into the *utter* **outer** court,
but there they shall *lay set* their *garments* **clothes**
wherein they minister;
for they are holy;
and shall *put on* **enrobe** other *garments* **clothes,**
and shall approach to those *things*
which are for the people.

THE MEASURING OF THE OUTWARD COURT

15 Now when he had *made an end of* **finished**
measuring the inner house,
he brought me forth *toward* **the way of the gate** **portal**
whose prospect is toward **at the face**
of the east eastward way,
and measured it round about **and round about.**
16 He measured the east *side* **wind/spirit**
with the measuring *reed* **stalk,**
five hundred reeds **cubits of stalks,**
with the measuring *reed* **stalk**
round about **and round about.**
17 He measured the north *side* **wind/spirit,**
five hundred reeds **stalks,**
with the measuring *reed* **stalk**
round about **and round about.**
18 He measured the *south side* **southerly wind/spirit,**
five hundred reeds **stalks,** with the measuring *reed* **stalk.**
19 He turned about to the *west side* **seaward wind/spirit,**
and measured *five hundred reeds* **stalks**
with the measuring *reed* **stalk.**
20 He measured it by the four *sides* **winds/spirits:**
it had a wall round about **and round about,**
five hundred reeds long, and *five hundred* broad,
to make a separation **separate**
between the *sanctuary* **holies** and the *profane* **place.**

THE HONOUR OF YAH VEH FILLS THE HOUSE

43 Afterward he *brought* **carried** me to the *gate* **portal,**
even the gate **portal**
that *looketh toward* **faceth the way of** the east:
2 And, behold,
the *glory* **honour** of the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
came from the way of the east:
and his voice was like a *noise* **voice** of many waters:
and the earth shined with his *glory* **honour.**
3 And it was according to the *appearance* **vision**
of the vision which I saw,
even according to the vision that I saw
when I came to *destroy* **ruin** the city:
and the visions were like the vision that I saw
by the river *Chebar* **Kebar;**
and I fell upon my face.
4 And the *glory* **honour** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
came into the house by the way of the *gate* **portal**
whose prospect is toward **at the face of the way**
of the east.
5 So the spirit *took* **bore** me *up,*
and brought me into the inner court; and, behold,
the *glory* **honour** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** filled the house.
6 And I heard him speaking unto me out of the house;
and the man stood *by* **beside** me.
7 And he said unto me, Son of *man* **humanity,**
the place of my throne,
and the place of the soles of my feet,
where I *will dwell* **shall tabernacle**
in the midst of the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**
for ever **eternally,**
and my holy name,
shall the house of *Israel* **Yisra El** no more *defile* **foul,**
neither they, nor their *kings* **sovereigns,**
by their whoredom,
nor by the carcases of their *kings* **sovereigns**
in their *high places* **bamahs.**
8 In their *setting* **giving** of their threshold
by my thresholds,
and their post *by* **beside** my posts,
and the wall between me and **between** them,

YECHEZQ EL 42, 43

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and that for the sin and that for the guilt;
for the place *is* holy.

14 When the priests enter therein,
they not go from the holies into the outer court;
but there they set their clothes wherein they minister;
for they are holy:
and enrobe other clothes,
and approach those which are for the people.

THE MEASURING OF THE OUTWARD COURT

15 And he finishes measuring the inner house;
and he brings me forth the way of the portal
at the face of the eastward way,
and measures it all around and all around.
16 He measures the east wind/spirit
with the measuring stalk, five cubits of stalks,
with the measuring stalk all around and all around.
17 He measures the north wind/spirit,
five hundred stalks,
with the measuring stalk all around and all around.
18 He measures the southerly wind/spirit,
five hundred stalks, with the measuring stalk.
19 He turns around to the seaward wind/spirit,
and measures five hundred stalks
with the measuring stalk:
20 he measures it by the four winds/spirits:
with a wall all around and all around,
five hundred long, and five hundred broad,
to separate between the holies and the profane.

THE HONOR OF YAH VEH FILLS THE HOUSE

43 And he carries me to the portal,
the portal facing the way of the east:
2 and behold,
the honor of Elohim of Yisra El
comes from the way of the east:
with his voice as a voice of many waters:
and the earth shines with his honor:
and it according to the vision
is the vision I saw,
— according to the vision I saw
when I came to ruin the city:
and the visions as the vision I saw by the river Kebar;
and I fall on my face:
3 and the honor of Yah Veh
comes into the house by the way of the portal
at the face of the way of the east:
4 and the spirit bears me
and brings me into the inner court;
and behold, the honor of Yah Veh fills the house.
5 And I hear him speak to me from the house;
with the man standing beside me,
and he says to me, Son of humanity,
the place of my throne,
and the place of the soles of my feet,
where I tabernacle
among the sons of Yisra El eternally,
and my holy name,
the house of Yisra El fouls no more
— neither they nor their sovereigns
by their whoredom,
nor by the carcases of their sovereigns
in their bamahs.
8 In their giving of their threshold with my thresholds,
and their post beside my posts,
and the wall between me and between them,

EZEKIEL 43

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

they have even *defiled* **fouled** my holy name
by their *abominations* **abhorrences**
that they have *committed* **worked**:
wherefore I have *consumed* **finished** them **off**
in *mine anger* **my wrath**.
9 Now let them *put away* **far remove** their whoredom,
and the carcasses of their *kings* **sovereigns**,
remove far from me,
and I *will dwell* **shall tabernacle** in the midst of them
for ever **eternally**.

10 Thou son of *man* **humanity**,
shew **tell** the house, to the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that they may be ashamed
of their *iniquities* **perversities**:
and let them measure the *pattern* **gauge**.

11 And if they be ashamed
of all that they have *done* **worked**,
shew **make** them **know** the form of the house,
and the *fashion* **structure** thereof,
and the *goings out* **exits** thereof,
and the *comings in* **entrances** thereof,
and all the forms thereof,
and all the *ordinances* **statutes** thereof,
and all the forms thereof,
and all the *laws* **torah** thereof:
and *write it* **inscribe** in their *sight* **eyes**,
that they may *keep* **guard** the whole form thereof,
and all the *ordinances* **statutes** thereof,
and *do* **work** them.

12 This is the *law* **torah** of the house;
Upon the top of the mountain
the whole *limit* **border** thereof
round about **and round about**
shall be *most holy* **the holy of holies**.
Behold, this is the *law* **torah** of the house.

THE ALTAR MEASURED

13 And these are the measures of the **sacrifice** altar
after the cubits:
The cubit is a cubit and *an hand breadth* **palm span**;
even the *bottom* shall be **bosom** a cubit,
and the breadth a cubit,
and the border thereof by the *edge* **lip** thereof
round about shall be a **one** span:
and this shall be
the *higher place* **arch** of the **sacrifice** altar.

14 And from the *bottom upon* **bosom** of the *ground* **earth**
even to the *lower settle* **nether ledge** shall be two cubits,
and the breadth one cubit;
and from the *lesser settle* **ledge**
even to the *greater settle* **ledge**
shall be four cubits,
and the breadth *one* cubit.
15 So **And** the altar shall be four cubits;
and from *the altar* **Ari El** and upward shall be four horns.

16 And *the altar* **Ari El** shall be twelve *cubits* long,
twelve broad, square in the four *squares* **quarters** thereof.
17 And the *settle* **ledge** shall be fourteen *cubits* long
and fourteen broad in the four *squares* **quarters** thereof;
and the border **round** about it shall be half a cubit;
and the *bottom thereof* **bosom**
shall be a cubit **round** about;
and his *stairs* **steps** shall *look toward* **face** the east.

THE ORDINANCES OF THE SACRIFICE ALTAR

18 And he said unto me, Son of *man* **humanity**,
thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
These are the ordinances of the **sacrifice** altar
in the day when they shall make it,
to *offer burnt offerings* **holocaust holocausts** thereon,
and to sprinkle blood thereon.

19 And thou shalt give to the priests
the *Levites* **Leviym** that be of the seed of *Zadok* **Sadoq**,
which approach unto me, to minister unto me,
saith the Lord **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**,
a young **an ox son of a** bullock for a *sin offering* **the sin**.

20 And thou shalt take of the blood thereof,
and *put* **give** it on the four horns of it,
and on the four corners of the *settle* **ledge**,
and upon the border round about:
thus shalt thou cleanse and *purge* **kapar/atone** it.

YECHEZQ EL 43

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and they foul my holy name
by the abhorrences they work:
and I finish them off in my wrath.
9 Now have them remove their whoredom
and remove the carcasses of their sovereigns
far from me;
and I tabernacle midst them eternally.

10 You, son of humanity,
tell the house — the house of Yisra El,
to shame of their perversities;
and have them measure the gauge:
11 and if they shame of all they worked,
have them know the form of the house
and the structure and the exits and the entrances;
and all the forms of all the statutes
and all the forms of all the torah:
and inscribe in their eyes,
so that they guard the whole form and all the statutes
and work them.

12 This is the torah of the house:
on the top of the mountain
the whole border all around and all around
is the holy of holies.
Behold, this, the torah of the house.

THE ALTAR MEASURED

13 And these *are* the measures of the sacrifice altar
by cubits:
The cubit is a cubit and palm span;
and the bosom, a cubit;
and the breadth, a cubit;
and the border by the lip all around, one span:
and this *is* the arch of the sacrifice altar:
14 and from the bosom of the earth
to the nether ledge, two cubits;
and the breadth, one cubit;
and from the lesser ledge
to the greater ledge, four cubits,
and the breadth, a cubit.

15 And the altar, four cubits;
and from Ari El and upward, four horns:
16 and Ari El *is* twelve long, twelve broad,
square in the four quarters:
17 and the ledge,
fourteen long and fourteen broad in the four quarters;
and the border all around, half a cubit:
and the bosom, a cubit all around:
and his steps face the east.

THE ORDINANCES OF THE SACRIFICE ALTAR

18 And he says to me, Son of humanity,
thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
These *are* the ordinances of the sacrifice altar
in the day they make it
to holocaust holocausts thereon
and to sprinkle blood thereon.
19 And you, give the priests
— the Leviym of the seed of Sadoq
who approach to me, to minister to me
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
an ox son of a bullock for the sin:
and take of the blood and give it
on the four horns thereof
and on the four corners of the ledge
and on the border all around:
thus you cleanse and *kapar/atone* it.

EZEKIEL 43, 44

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

21 Thou shalt take the bullock also
of the *sin offering* **that for the sin**,
and he shall burn it
in the *appointed* **specified** place of the house,
without the *sanctuary* **holies**.

22 And on the second day
thou shalt offer a *kid* **oblade a buck** of the **doe** goats
without *blemish* for a *sin offering* **integrious for the sin**;
and they shall cleanse the **sacrifice** altar,
as they *did cleanse it* **cleansed** with the bullock.

23 When thou hast *made an end of* **finished** cleansing it,
thou shalt offer a *young* **oblade an ox son of a** bullock,
without *blemish* **integrious**,

24 and a ram out of the flock, *without blemish* **integrious**.
And thou shalt offer **holocaust** them
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh,
and the priests shall cast salt upon them,
and they shall offer **oblade** them up
for a *burnt offering* **holocaust** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**.

25 Seven days shalt thou *prepare* **work** every day
a *goat for a sin offering* **a buck for the sin**:
they shall also *prepare* **work**
a *young* **an ox son of a** bullock,
and a ram out of the flock, *without blemish* **integrious**.

26 Seven days shall they
purge **kapar/atone** the **sacrifice** altar and purify it;
and they shall *consecrate themselves* **fill their hands**.

27 And when these days are *expired* **finished**,
so be it shall be,
that upon the eighth day, and *so forward* **beyond**,
the priests shall *make* **work**
your *burnt offerings* **holocausts** upon the **sacrifice** altar,
and your *peace offerings* **shelamim**;
and I *will accept* **shall be pleased with** you,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.

THE PORTAL OF YAH VEH SHUT

44 Then he *brought* **turned** me back
the way of the *gate* **portal** of the outward *sanctuary* **holies**
which *looketh* **faceth** toward the east; and it was shut.

2 Then said *the LORD Yah Veh* unto me;
This *gate* **portal** shall be shut, it shall not be opened,
and no man shall enter in by it;
because
the LORD Yah Veh, the God Elohim of Israel Yisra El,
hath entered in by it, therefore it shall be shut.

3 It is for the *prince* **hierarch**;
the prince, he shall sit in it to eat bread
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh;
he shall enter by the way of the porch of that *gate* **portal**,
and shall go out by the way of the same.

4 Then brought he me the way of the north *gate* **portal**
before at the face of the house:
and I *looked* **saw**, and, behold,
the *glory honour of the LORD Yah Veh*
filled the house of *the LORD Yah Veh*:
and I fell upon my face.

5 And *the LORD Yah Veh* said unto me,
Son of *man* **humanity**, *mark well* **set thine heart**,
and *behold* **see** with thine eyes, and hear with thine ears
all that I say unto thee
concerning all the *ordinances* **statutes**
of the house of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
and all the *laws* **torah** thereof;
and *mark well* **set thy heart**
to the entering in **entrance** of the house,
with every *going forth* **exit** of the *sanctuary* **holies**.

6 And thou shalt say to the rebellious,
even to the house of Israel Yisra El,
Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*;
O ye house of *Israel Yisra El*,
let it suffice you **Enough**
of all your *abominations* **abhorrences**,

7 In that ye have brought *into my sanctuary* **in sons of** strangers,
uncircumcised in heart, and uncircumcised in flesh,
to be in my *sanctuary* **holies**, to *pollute* **profane** it,
even my house,
when ye *offer* **oblade** my bread, the fat and the blood,
and they have broken my covenant
because of **as to** all your *abominations* **abhorrences**.

YECHEZQ EL 43, 44

exeGeses companion BIBLE

21 And take the bullock of that for the sin
and burn it in the specified place of the house
outside the holies:
and on the second day
oblade an integrious buck of the doe goats
for the sin;
and cleanse the sacrifice altar
as they cleansed for the bullock:
when you finish cleansing,

23 oblade an integrious ox son of a bullock,
and an integrious ram from the flock
and holocaust them at the face of Yah Veh;
and the priests cast salt on them,
and they oblade them for a holocaust to Yah Veh.

25 Daily, for seven days
work a buck for the sin:
and also work an integrious ox son of a bullock
and a ram from the flock:
for seven days
kapar/atone the sacrifice altar and purify it;
and fill their hands.

27 And so be it, when these days are finished,
on the eighth day and beyond,
the priests work your holocausts
on the sacrifice altar
with your shelamim;
and I *am* pleased with you
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

THE PORTAL OF YAH VEH SHUT

44 And he turns me back to the way of the portal
of the outward holies facing eastward; and it is shut.
2 And Yah Veh says to me;
This portal is shut, not to be opened;
and no man enters in by it;
because Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El,
enters in by it, thus it is shut.

3 It is for the hierarch;
the hierarch sits therein
to eat bread at the face of Yah Veh;
he enters by the way of the porch of that portal
and goes out by the same way.

4 Then he brings me the way of the north portal
at the face of the house:
and I see, and behold,
the honor of Yah Veh fills the house of Yah Veh:
and I fall on my face.

5 And Yah Veh says to me,
Son of humanity, set your heart,
and see with your eyes, and hear with your ears
all I say to you
concerning all the statutes of the house of Yah Veh,
and all the torah;
and set your heart to the entrance of the house
with every exit of the holies.

6 And you,
say to the rebellious — to the house of Yisra El,
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
O you house of Yisra El,
enough of all your abhorrences,
in that you bring in sons of strangers
uncircumcised in heart and uncircumcised in flesh
to be in my holies, to profane it — my house,
when you oblade my bread, the fat and the blood,
and they break my covenant
with all your abhorrences:

EZEKIEL 44

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 And ye have not *kept* **guarded** the *charge* **guard**
of mine *holy things* **holies**;
but ye have set *keepers* **guards** of my *charge* **guard**
in my *sanctuary* **holies** for yourselves.
9 Thus saith the Lord **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
No **son of a** stranger,
uncircumcised in heart, nor uncircumcised in flesh,
shall enter into my *sanctuary* **holies**,
of any **son of a** stranger
that is among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

THE IDOLATROUS LEVIYM

10 And the *Levites* **Leviym**
that *are gone away* far **removed** from me,
when *Israel went astray* **Yisra El strayed**,
which *went astray* **strayed** away from me after their idols;
they shall even bear their *iniquity* **perversity**.
11 Yet they shall be ministers in my *sanctuary* **holies**,
having charge at the *gates* **portals** of the house,
and ministering to the house:
they shall *slay* **slaughter** the *burnt offering* **holocaust**
and the sacrifice for the people,
and they shall stand *before* **at the face of** them
to minister unto them.
12 Because they ministered unto them
before **at the face of** their idols,
and *caused* **became to** the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
to fall into iniquity **a stumblingblock of perversity**;
therefore have I lifted up mine hand against them,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
and they shall bear their *iniquity* **perversity**.
13 And they shall not come near unto me,
to *do the office of a priest* **priest the priesthood** unto me,
nor to come near to any of my *holy things* **holies**,
in the *most holy place* **holy of holies**:
but they shall bear their shame,
and their *abominations* **abhorrences**
which they have *committed* **worked**.
14 But I *will make* **shall give** them
keepers **guards** of the *charge* **guard** of the house,
for all the service *thereof*,
and for all that shall be *done* **worked** therein.

THE TRUSTWORTHY LEVIYM

15 But the priests the *Levites* **Leviym**,
the sons of *Zadok* **Sadoq**,
that *kept* **guarded**
the *charge* **guard** of my *sanctuary* **holies**
when the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
went astray **strayed** from me,
they shall *come near to* **approach** me
to minister unto me,
and they shall stand *before me* **at my face**
to *offer* **oblade** unto me the fat and the blood,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh:
16 They shall enter into my *sanctuary* **holies**,
and they shall *come near to* **approach** my table,
to minister unto me,
and they shall *keep* **guard** my *charge* **guard**.
17 And **so be** it shall *come to pass*,
that when they enter in
at the *gates* **portals** of the inner court,
that they shall *be clothed* **enrobe**
with *linen garments* **flax clothes**;
and no wool shall *come* **ascend** upon them,
whiles they minister
in the *gates* **portals** of the inner court,
and *within* **the house**.
18 They shall have *linen bonnets* **flax tiaras**
upon their heads,
and shall have *linen* **flax** breeches upon their loins;
they shall not gird *themselves*
with any *thing that causeth sweat* **sweater**.
19 And when they go forth into the *utter* **outer** court,
even into the *utter* **outer** court to the people,
they shall *put off* **strip** their *garments* **clothes**
wherein they ministered,
and *lay* **leave** them in the holy chambers,
and they shall put on other *garments* **clothes**;
and they shall not *sanctify* **hallow** the people
with their *garments* **clothes**.

YECHEZQ EL 44

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 and you guard not the guard of my holies:
and you set guards of my guard
in my holies for yourselves.
9 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
A son of a stranger,
neither uncircumcised in heart
nor uncircumcised in flesh,
enters into my holies
— of any son of a stranger among the sons of Yisra El.

THE IDOLATROUS LEVIYM

10 And the Leviym who removed afar from me
when Yisra El strayed
— strayed from me after their idols;
they bear their perversity.
11 And they are ministers in my holies;
having charge at the portals of the house
and ministering to the house:
they slaughter the holocaust and the sacrifice
for the people,
and they stand at their face to minister to them.
12 Because they minister to them
at the face of their idols,
and become a stumblingblock of perversity
to the house of Yisra El;
so I lift my hand against them
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
and they bear their perversity:
and they neither come near to me
to priest the priesthood to me,
nor to come near to any of my holies
in the holy of holies:
and they bear the shame
and the abhorrences they worked:
and I give them
for guards of the guard of the house
— for all the service
and for all they work therein.

THE TRUSTWORTHY LEVIYM

15 And the priests, the Leviym, the sons of Sadoq,
who guarded the guard of my holies
when the sons of Yisra El strayed from me,
they approach me to minister to me;
and they stand at my face
to oblate the fat and the blood to me
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh:
16 they enter my holies
and approach my table to minister to me,
and they guard my guard.
17 And so be it,
when they enter in at the portals of the inner court,
they enrobe with flax clothes;
and no wool ascends on them,
while they minister
in the portals of the inner court and the house
— flax tiaras on their heads
and flax breeches on their loins;
they gird not with any sweater.
18 And when they go forth into the outer court
into the outer court to the people,
they strip the clothes wherein they minister
and leave them in the holy chambers;
and they put on other clothes;
they neither hallow the people with their clothes.

EZEKIEL 44, 45

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

20 Neither shall they shave their heads,
nor **suffer spread** their locks *to grow long*;
they shall only *poll* **shear** their heads.

21 Neither shall any priest drink wine,
when they enter into the inner court.

22 Neither shall they take for their wives **women**
a widow,
nor her that is *put away* **expelled**;
but they shall take *maidens* **virgins**
of the seed of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
or a widow
that had a priest before **was the widow of a priest**.

23 And they shall teach my people
the difference between *the holy* and **between** profane,
and cause them to *discern* **know**
between *the unclean* **foul** and *the clean* **between pure**.

24 And *in* **concerning** controversy
they shall stand *in judgment* **and judge**;
and they shall judge *it* according to my judgments:
and they shall *keep* **guard** my laws **torah** and my statutes
in all *mine assemblies* **my congregations**;
and they shall hallow my *sabbaths* **shabbaths**.

25 And they shall come at no dead *person* **human**
to *defile* **foul** themselves:
but for father, or for mother, or for son, or for daughter,
for brother, or for sister that hath had no *husband* **man**,
they may *defile* **foul** themselves.

26 And after he is *cleansed* **purified**,
they shall *reckon* **scribe** unto him seven days.

27 And in the day that he goeth into the *sanctuary* **holies**,
unto the inner court, to minister in the *sanctuary* **holies**,
he shall *offer his sin offering* **oblate for his sin**,
saith the Lord GOD **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.

28 And it shall be unto them for an inheritance:
I am their inheritance:
and ye shall give them no possession in *Israel* **Yisra El**:
I am their possession.

29 They shall eat the *meat offering*,
and *the sin offering* **that for the sin**,
and *the trespass offering* **that for the guilt**;
and every *dedicated thing* **devotement** in *Israel* **Yisra El**
shall be theirs.

30 And the *first* **firstlings** of all the firstfruits of all *things*,
and every *oblation* **exaltment** of all,
of every sort **all** of your *oblations* **exaltments**,
shall be the priest's:
ye shall also give unto the priest
the *first* **firstlings** of your dough,
that he may *cause* **rest** the blessing *to rest* in thine house.

31 The priests shall not eat
of any *thing that is dead of itself* **carcase**, or torn,
whether it be *fowl* **flyer** or *beast* **animal**.

FELLING THE LAND FOR INHERITANCE

45 *Moreover*, when ye shall
divide by lot **fell** the land for inheritance,
ye shall *offer* **lift** an *oblation* **exaltment**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
an *holy portion* **holies** of the land:
the length
shall be the length of five and twenty thousand *reeds*,
and the breadth shall be ten thousand.

This shall be holy in all the borders *thereof* round about.

2 Of this there shall be for the *sanctuary* **holies**
five hundred *in length*, with **by** five hundred *in breadth*,
square round about;
and fifty cubits round about for the suburbs *thereof*.

3 And of this measure shalt thou measure
the length of five and twenty thousand,
and the breadth of ten thousand:
and in it shall be the *sanctuary* **holies**
and the *most holy place* **holy of holies**.

4 The *holy portion* **holies** of the land
shall be for the priests
the ministers of the *sanctuary* **holies**,
which shall *come near* **approach**
to minister unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
and it shall be a place for their houses,
and an *holy place* for the *sanctuary* — **a holies**.

5 And the five and twenty thousand of length,

YECHEZQ EL 44, 45

exeGesés companion BIBLE

20 nor shave their heads nor spread their locks;
in shearing, they shear their heads.

21 No priest drinks wine
in entering the inner court.

22 Neither take they a widow for their women
nor her that is expelled:
but virgins of the seed of the house of Yisra El
or a widow being the widow of a priest:
and they teach my people

23 between holy and between profane,
and that they know between foul and between pure:
and concerning controversy,
they stand and judge;
and they judge according to my judgments:
and they guard my torah and my statutes
in all my congregations;
and they hallow my shabbaths:
and they approach no dead human
to foul themselves:
except for father or for mother
or for son or for daughter;
for brother or for sister:
so that they foul no man.

24 And after he purifies,
they scribe seven days to him:
and in the day he goes into the holies
— to the inner court to minister in the holies,
he oblates for his sin
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
and so it becomes their inheritance;
I am their inheritance:
and you give them no possession in Yisra El;
I am their possession:
they eat the offering

25 and that for the sin and that for the guilt:
and every devotement in Yisra El
becomes theirs:

26 and the firstlings of all the firstfruits of all,
and every exaltment of all — of all of your exaltments
become for the priest:
and give the priest the firstlings of your dough
so that he rests the blessing in your house.

27 The priests eat not of any carcase or torn
— flyer or animal.

FELLING THE LAND FOR INHERITANCE

45 When you fell the land for inheritance,
lift an exaltment to Yah Veh
— a holies of the land:
the length, twenty—five thousand, the length;
and the breadth, ten thousand.

This is holy in all the borders all around:
and so be it, of this,
for the holies, five hundred by five hundred,
square all around;
and fifty cubits all around for the suburbs:
and of this measure,
measure the length, twenty—five thousand,
and the breadth, ten thousand:
and the holies and the holy of holies is therein.

The holies of the land, for the priests
— the ministers of the holies,
who approach to minister to Yah Veh:
and it is a place for their houses — a holies:
and the twenty—five thousand of length,

EZEKIEL 45

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the ten thousand of breadth,
shall also the Levites **Leviym**, the ministers of the house,
have for themselves,
for a possession for twenty chambers.
6 And ye shall **appoint** give the possession of the city
five thousand broad, and five and twenty thousand long,
over against **alongside** the **oblation exaltment**
of the **holy portion holies**:
7 **so be it shall be** for the whole house of **Israel Yisra El**.
And a **portion shall be so be it** for the **prince hierarch**
on the one side **from here**
and on the other side **from there**
of the **oblation exaltment** of the **holy portion holies**,
and of the possession of the city,
before the **oblation at the face of the exaltment**
of the **holy portion holies**,
and before **at the face of** the possession of the city,
from the **west side westward sea edge seaward**,
and from the east side **edge** eastward:
and the length shall be
over against **alongside** one of the **portions allotments**,
from the west **seaward** border unto the east border.
8 In the land shall be his possession in **Israel Yisra El**:
and my **princes hierarchs**
shall no more oppress my people;
and the rest of the land
shall they give to the house of **Israel Yisra El**
according to their **tribes scions**.
THE BALANCE SYSTEM OF YAH VEH
9 Thus saith the Lord **GOD**
An oracle of Adonay Yah Veh;
Let it suffice **Enough of** you,
O **princes hierarchs of Israel Yisra El**:
remove **turn aside** violence and **spoil ravage**,
and execute **work** judgment and **justice justness**,
take away **lift** your **exactions expulsions** from my people,
saith the Lord **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**.
10 Ye shall have just **balances Balances of justness**,
and a just **ephah an ephah of justness**,
and a just **bath a bath of justness**.
11 The ephah and the bath
shall be of one **measure gauge**,
that the bath may **contain bear**
the **tenth part tithe** of an **homer chomer**,
and the ephah the **tenth part** of an **homer chomer**:
the **measure quantity** thereof shall be
after the **homer chomer**.
12 And the shekel shall be twenty **gerahs**:
twenty shekels, five and twenty shekels, fifteen shekels,
shall be your **maneh**.
OFFERINGS
13 This is the **oblation exaltment** that ye shall **offer lift**;
the sixth part of an ephah of an **homer chomer** of wheat,
and ye shall give the sixth part of — **hexsect**
an ephah of an **homer chomer** of barley:
14 Concerning the **ordinance statute** of oil,
the bath of oil,
ye shall **offer** the **tenth part tithe** of a bath out of the **cor**,
which is an **homer chomer** of ten baths;
for ten baths are an **homer chomer**:
15 And one lamb out of the flock, out of two hundred,
out of the **fat pastures moist areas** of **Israel Yisra El**;
for a **meat an offering**,
and for a **burnt offering holocaust**,
and for **peace offerings shelamim**,
to make **reconciliation kapar/atone** for them,
saith the Lord **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.
16 All the people of the land
shall give this **oblation exaltment**
for the **prince hierarch** in **Israel Yisra El**.
17 And **so be it shall be** the **prince's part hierarch's**
to give **burnt offerings for holocausts**,
and **meat offerings**,
and **drink offerings libations**,
in the **feasts celebrations**,
and in the new moons, and in the **sabbaths shabbaths**,
in all **solemnities seasons** of the house of **Israel Yisra El**:
he shall **prepare the sin offering work that for the sin**,

YECHEZQ EL 45

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the ten thousand of breadth,
is for the Leviym, the ministers of the house
— for themselves,
for a possession for twenty chambers.
6 And you, give the possession of the city
five thousand broad,
and twenty—five thousand long,
alongside the exaltment of the holies:
so be it for the whole house of Yisra El.
7 And so be it for the hierarch
from here, and from there,
of the exaltment of the holies
and of the possession of the city;
at the face of the exaltment of the holies
and at the face of the possession of the city;
from the sea edge seaward
and from the east edge eastward:
and the length, alongside one of the allotments,
from the seaward border to the east border;
8 — and the land becomes his possession in Yisra El:
and my hierarchs oppress my people no more;
and they give the land to the house of Yisra El
according to their scions.

THE BALANCE SYSTEM OF YAH VEH

9 An oracle of Adonay Yah Veh:
Enough of you, O hierarchs of Yisra El:
turn aside violence and ravage
and work judgment and justness;
lift your expulsions from my people,
says Adonay Yah Veh.
10 Balances of justness,
an ephah of justness, a bath of justness:
11 the ephah and the bath being one gauge,
so that the bath bears the tithe of a chomer,
and the ephah the tenth of a chomer:
the quantity being after the chomer.
12 And the shekel, twenty **gerahs**:
twenty shekels,
twenty—five shekels, fifteen shekels,
being your **maneh**.
OFFERINGS
13 This is the exaltment you lift:
the sixth of an ephah of a chomer of wheat,
— hexsect an ephah of a chomer of barley:
14 concerning the statute of oil,
the bath of oil, the tithe of a bath from the **cor**,
a chomer of ten baths;
for ten baths are a chomer:
15 and one lamb from the flock, from two hundred,
from the moist areas of Yisra El;
for an offering and for a holocaust and for shelamim
to kapar/atone for them
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

16 All people of the land,
give this exaltment for the hierarch in Yisra El.
17 And so be it for the hierarch
for holocausts and offerings and libations
— in the celebrations
and in the new moons and in the shabbaths,
in all seasons of the house of Yisra El:
he works that for the sin

EZEKIEL 45, 46

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the meat offering, and the burnt offering **holocaust**,
and the peace offerings **shelamim**,
to make reconciliation **kapar/atone**
for the house of Israel **Yisra El**.
18 Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
In the first month, in the first day of the month,
thou shalt take a young **an ox son of a** bullock,
without blemish **integrious**,
and cleanse the sanctuary **holies**:
19 And the priest shall take of the blood
of the sin offering **that for the sin**,
and put give it upon the posts of the house,
and upon the four corners
of the settle **ledge** of the **sacrifice** altar,
and upon the posts of the gate **portal** of the inner court.
20 And so thou shalt **do work**
the seventh day of the month
for every one **man** that erreth **inadvertently**,
and for him that is simple **the gullible**:
so shall ye **reconcile kapar/atone** the house.
21 In the first month, in the fourteenth day of the month,
ye shall have the **passover pasach**,
a feast **celebration** of seven **a week of** days;
unleavened bread **matsah** shall be eaten.
22 And upon that day shall the **prince hierarch**
prepare work for himself
and for all the people of the land
a bullock for a **sin offering the sin**.
23 And seven days of the feast **celebration**
he shall **prepare work** a burnt offering **holocaust**
to the LORD **Yah Veh**,
seven bullocks and seven rams
without blemish **integrious** daily the seven days;
and a kid **buck** of the **doe** goats daily
for a **sin offering the sin**.
24 And he shall **prepare a meat work an** offering
of an ephah for a bullock, and an ephah for a ram,
and an hin of oil for an ephah.
25 In the seventh month,
in the fifteenth day of the month,
shall he **do work** the like
in the feast **celebration** of the seven days,
according to the sin offering **as that for the sin**,
according to the burnt offering **so that for the holocaust**,
and according to the meat offering **as for the offering**,
and according to **so for** the oil.

THE OFFERINGS OF RULERS

46 Thus saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**;
The gate **portal** of the inner court
that looketh **faceth** toward the east
shall be shut the six **working days days of work**;
but on the sabbath **shabbath** it shall be opened,
and in the day of the new moon it shall be opened.
2 And the **prince hierarch** shall enter
by the way of the porch
of that gate **without portal outward**,
and shall stand by the post of the gate **portal**,
and the priests
shall **prepare work** his burnt offering **holocaust**
and his peace offerings **shelamim**,
and he shall **worship prostrate**
at the threshold of the gate **portal**:
then he shall go forth;
but the gate **portal** shall not be shut until the evening.
3 Likewise the people of the land shall **worship prostrate**
at the door **opening** of this gate **portal**
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh**
in the sabbaths **shabbaths** and in the new moons.
4 And the burnt offering **holocaust**
that the **prince hierarch** shall offer **oblate**
unto the LORD **Yah Veh** in the sabbath **shabbath** day
shall be six lambs **without blemish integrious**,
and a ram **without blemish integrious**.
5 And the meat offering shall be an ephah for a ram,
and the meat offering for the lambs
as he shall be able to give **the gift of his hand**,
and an hin of oil to an ephah.
6 And in the day of the new moon

YECHEZQ EL 45, 46

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the offering and the holocaust and the shelamim,
to kapar/atone for the house of Yisra El.
18 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
In the first, in the first of the month,
take an integrious ox son of a bullock,
and cleanse the holies:
19 and the priest takes of the blood of that for the sin
and gives it on the posts of the house
and on the four corners
of the ledge of the sacrifice altar
and on the posts of the portal of the inner court.
20 And thus you work the seventh of the month
for every man who errs inadvertently,
and for the gullible:
thus you kapar/atone the house.
21 In the first, in the fourteenth day of the month,
the pasach, a celebration of a week of days;
eat matsah:
22 and on the day the hierarch works for himself
and for all the people of the land,
a bullock for the sin.
23 And seven days of the celebration
he works a holocaust to Yah Veh
— seven integrious bullocks and seven rams
daily for seven days;
and a buck of the doe goats daily for the sin:
24 and he works an offering
of an ephah for a bullock and an ephah for a ram
— a hin of oil for an ephah:
25 and in the seventh,
in the fifteenth day of the month,
he works likewise
in the celebration of the seven days;
as that for the sin, thus for the holocaust,
as for the offering, thus for the oil.

THE OFFERINGS OF RULERS

46 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
The portal of the inner court facing eastward
is shut the six days of work;
and open on the sabbath;
and open in the day of the new moon:
2 and the hierarch enters
by the way of the porch of that portal outward
and stands by the post of the portal;
and the priests work his holocaust and his shelamim;
and he prostrates at the threshold of the portal:
and he goes forth;
and the portal *is* not shut until the evening.
3 And the people of the land
prostrate at the opening of this portal
at the face of Yah Veh,
4 in the sabbaths and in the new moons:
and the holocaust the hierarch oblates to Yah Veh
in the sabbath day,
5 six integrious lambs and an integrious ram:
and the offering, an ephah for a ram,
and the offering for the lambs, the gift of his hand
and a hin of oil to an ephah:
6 and in the day of the new moon,

EZEKIEL 46

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

it shall be a *young* **an ox son of a** bullock
without *blemish* **integrity**,
and six lambs, and a ram:
they shall be without *blemish* **integrity**.

7 And he shall *prepare* a *meat* **work an** offering,
an ephah for a bullock, and an ephah for a ram,
and for the lambs
according as his hand shall *attain unto* **attain**,
and an hin of oil to an ephah.

8 And when the *prince* **hierarch** shall enter,
he shall *go in* **enter**
by the way of the porch of that *gate* **portal**,
and he shall *go forth* **exit** by the way *thereof*.

9 But when the people of the land
shall come *before the LORD* **at the face of Yah Veh**
in the *solemn feasts* **seasons**,
he that entereth in by the way of the north *gate* **portal**
to *worship* **prostrate**
shall *go out* **exit** by the way of the south *gate* **portal**;
and he that entereth by the way of the south *gate* **portal**
shall go forth by the way of the north *gate* **portal**:
he shall not *return* **exit** by the way of the *gate* **portal**
whereby he *came in* **entered**,
but shall *go forth over against* **exit opposite** it.

10 And the *prince* **hierarch** in the midst of them,
when they go in in entering, shall *go in* **enter**;
and *when they go forth in exiting*, shall *go forth* **exit**.

11 And in the *feasts* **celebrations**
and in the *solemnities* **seasons**
the *meat* offering shall be an ephah to a bullock,
and an ephah to a ram,
and to the lambs as *he is able to give* **the gift of his hand**,
and an hin of oil to an ephah.

12 Now when the *prince* **hierarch**
shall *prepare* **work** a voluntary *burnt offering* **holocaust**
or *peace offerings* voluntarily **voluntary shelamim**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
one **he** shall then open him the *gate* **portal**
that *looketh* **faceth** toward the east,
and he shall *prepare* **work** his *burnt offering* **holocaust**
and his *peace offerings* **shelamim**,
as he *did* **worked** on the *sabbath* **shabbath** day:
then he shall *go forth* **exit**;
and after his *going forth* **exiting**
one **he** shall shut the *gate* **portal**.

13 Thou shalt daily *prepare* **work**
a *burnt offering* **holocaust** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
of a lamb of the *first year* **yearling son**
without *blemish* **integrity**:
thou shalt *prepare* **work** it
every morning **morning by morning**.

14 And thou shalt *prepare* a *meat* **work an** offering for it
every morning **morning by morning**,
the sixth *part* of an ephah,
and the third part of an hin of oil,
to *temper* **sprinkle** with the *fine* flour;
a *meat* **an** offering continually
by a *perpetual ordinance* **an eternal statute**
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

15 Thus shall they *prepare* **work** the lamb,
and the *meat* offering, and the oil,
every morning **morning by morning**
for a continual *burnt offering* **holocaust**.

RIGHTS OF INHERITANCE

16 Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
If the *prince* **hierarch**
give a gift unto any **man** of his sons,
the inheritance *thereof* shall be his sons';
it shall be their possession by inheritance.

17 But if he give a gift of his inheritance
to one of his servants,
then it shall be his to the year of liberty;
after it shall return to the *prince* **hierarch**:
but his inheritance shall be his sons' for them.

18 Moreover the *prince* **hierarch**
shall not take of the people's inheritance by oppression,
to thrust them out of their possession;
but *he shall give* **that** his sons *inheritance* **shall inherit**
out of his own possession:

YECHEZQ EL 46

exeGesés companion BIBLE

an integrity ox son of a bullock,
and six integrity lambs, and an *integrity* ram:
and he works an offering,
an ephah for a bullock and an ephah for a ram,
and for the lambs according as his hand attains,
and a hin of oil to an ephah.

7

8 And the hierarch enters,
and he enters by the way of the porch of that portal
and he exits by the *same* way.

9 And when the people of the land
enters at the face of Yah Veh in their seasons,
he who enters to prostrate
by the way of the north portal,
exits by the way of the south portal;
and he who enters in by the way of the south portal
exits by the way of the north portal:
he exits not by the way of the portal
whereby he enters,
but exits opposite.

10 And the hierarch among them,
in entering, enters;
and in exiting, exits:

11 and in the celebrations and in the seasons,
the offering, an ephah to a bullock
and an ephah to a ram;
and to the lambs as the gift of his hand,
and a hin of oil to an ephah.

12 And when the hierarch
works a voluntary holocaust
or voluntary shelamim to Yah Veh,
he opens for himself the portal facing eastward;
and he works his holocaust and his shelamim
as he worked on the shabbath day:
then he exits;
and shuts the portal after he exits.

13 And work a daily holocaust to Yah Veh
an integrity lamb — a yearling son:
work it morning by morning:

14 And morning by morning, work an offering for it,
the sixth of an ephah and the third part of a hin of oil,
to sprinkle with the flour;
an offering by an eternal statute
continually to Yah Veh:

15 and work the lamb and the offering and the oil
morning by morning for a continual holocaust.

RIGHTS OF INHERITANCE

16 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh;
If the hierarch gives a gift to any man of his sons,
the inheritance *is* to his sons;
it becomes their possession by inheritance.

17 And if he gives a gift of his inheritance
to one of his servants,
it becomes his to the year of liberty;
afterward it returns to the hierarch:
and his inheritance becomes to his sons.

18 And the hierarch
takes no inheritance of the people by oppression
to thrust them from their possession;
but that his sons inherit from his own possession:

EZEKIEL 46, 47

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19 that my people be not scattered
every man from his possession.
After he brought me through the entry,
which was at the *side* **shoulder** of the *gate* **portal**,
into the holy chambers of the priests,
which *looketh toward the north* **faceth northward**:
and, behold, there was a place
on the two *sides* westward **flanks seaward**.

THE PLACE OF STEWING

20 Then said he unto me,
This is the place where the priests
shall *boil the trespass offering* **stew that for the guilt**
and *the sin offering* **that for the sin**,
where they shall bake the *meat* offering;
that they bear them not out into the *utter* **outer** court,
to *sanctify* **hallow** the people.

21 Then he brought me forth into the *utter* **outer** court,
and caused me to pass by the four corners of the court;
and, behold,

in every corner of the court there was a court

**a court in the corner of a court,
a court in the corner of a court.**

22 In the four corners of the court there were courts
joined **enclosed** of forty *cubits* long and thirty broad:
these four corners were of one measure.

23 And there was a row of *building* round about in them,
round about them four,
and it was made with *boiling places* **hearths**
under the *rows* **walls** round about.

24 Then said he unto me,
These are the *places* **houses** of them that *boil* **stew**,
where the ministers of the house
shall *boil* **stew** the sacrifice of the people.

WATERS ISSUE FROM THE HOUSE

47 *Afterward he brought me again* **And he returned me**
unto the *door* **opening** of the house;
and, behold, waters issued out
from under the threshold of the house eastward:
for the *forefront* **face** of the house
stood toward the east **is eastward**,
and the waters *came down* **descended**
from under from the right *side* **shoulder** of the house,
at the south *side* of the **sacrifice** altar.

2 Then brought he me
out of the way of the *gate* **portal** northward,
and *led* **turned** me about the way *without* **outward**
unto the *utter* **gate** **outward portal**
by the way that *looketh* **faceth** eastward;
and, behold,
there *ran out* **poured** waters on the right *side* **shoulder**.

THE WATERS MEASURED

3 And when the man that had the line in his hand
went forth eastward,
he measured a thousand cubits,
and he *brought* **passed** me through the waters;
the waters were to the ankles.

4 Again he measured a thousand,
and *brought* **passed** me through the waters;
the waters were to the knees.
Again he measured a thousand,
and *brought* **passed** me through;
the waters were to the loins.

5 *Afterward he measured a thousand*;
and it was a *river* **wadi** that I could not pass over:
for the waters were risen, waters to swim in,
a *river* **wadi** that could not be passed over.

6 And he said unto me,
Son of *man* **humanity**, hast thou seen *this*?

7 Then he *brought* **carried** me,
and caused me to return to the *brink* **lip** of the *river* **wadi**.
Now when I had returned, behold,
at the *bank* **lip** of the *river* **wadi**
were very **mighty** many trees

8 *on the one side* **from here** and *on the other* **from there**.
Then said he unto me,
These waters issue out toward the east *country* **region**,
and *go down* **descend** into the *desert* **plain**,
and go into the sea:
which being brought forth into the sea,

YECHEZQ EL 46, 47

exeGesés companion BIBLE

so that every man of my people
not scatter of his possession.

19 And he brings me in through the entry
at the shoulder of the portal
into the holy chambers of the priests
facing northward:
and behold, a place on the two flanks seaward.

THE PLACE OF STEWING

20 And he says to me,
This is the place where the priests stew
that for the guilt and that for the sin
— where they bake the offering;
that they not bear them out into the outer court
to hallow the people.

21 And he brings me into the outer court,
and passes me by the four corners of the court;
and behold,

a court in the corner of a court
a court in the corner of a court

22 — courts in the four corners of the court
enclosed, forty long and thirty broad:
these four corners of one measure:

23 and a row all around in them
— all around all four
— made with hearths under the walls all around.

24 And says he to me,
These are the houses of them who stew
— where the ministers of the house
stew the sacrifice of the people.

WATERS ISSUE FROM THE HOUSE

47 And he returns me to the opening of the house;
and behold, waters issue forth
from under the threshold of the house eastward;
for the face of the house is eastward:
and the waters descend
from under from the right shoulder of the house
at the south of the sacrifice altar:
2 and he brings me
from the way of the portal northward,
and turns me around to the way outward
to the outward portal
by the way that faces eastward;
and behold,
waters pour on the right shoulder.

THE WATERS MEASURED

3 And the man with the line in his hand goes eastward
and he measures a thousand cubits;
and he passes me through water
— water to the ankles:

4 and he measures a thousand;
and passes me through water
— water to the knees:
and he measures a thousand;
and passes me through
— waters to the loins:

5 and he measures a thousand;
— a wadi I cannot pass over:
for the waters rise — waters to swim in,
a wadi not to pass over.

6 And he says to me, See you, son of humanity?

7 And he carries me,
and returns me to the lip of the wadi:
and I return, and behold, at the lip of the wadi,
mighty many trees from here, and from there.

8 And he says to me,
These waters issue forth toward the east region
and descend into the plain and enter the sea
— brought forth into the sea;

EZEKIEL 47

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the waters shall be healed.
 9 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
 that every *thing* **soul** that liveth, which *moveth* **teemeth**,
 whithersoever the *rivers* **wadies** shall come, shall live:
 and there shall be a *very* **mighty** great multitude of fish,
 because these waters shall come thither:
 for they shall be healed;
 and every *thing* **all** shall live
 whither the *river* **wadi** cometh.
 10 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
 that the fishers shall stand upon it
 from *Engedi* **En Gedi** even unto *Eneglaim* **En Eglayim**;
 they shall be a *place* **become** to spread forth nets;
 their fish shall be *according to their kinds* **in species**,
 as the fish of the great sea, *exceeding* **mighty** many.
 11 But the *miry places* **mires** thereof
 and the *marishes* **dugouts** thereof shall not be healed;
 they shall be given to salt.
 12 And by the *river* **wadi** upon the *bank* **lip** thereof,
 on *this side* **from here** and on *that side* **from there**,
 shall *grow* **ascend** all trees for *meat* **food**,
 whose leaf shall not *fade* **wither**,
 neither shall the fruit thereof be consumed:
 it shall bring forth new fruit according to his months,
 because their waters
 they issued out of the *sanctuary* **holies**:
 and the fruit thereof shall be for *meat* **food**,
 and the leaf thereof for *medicine* **healing**.
THE BORDERS OF THE LAND
 13 Thus saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**;
 This shall be the border,
 whereby ye shall inherit the land
 according to the *twelve tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
Joseph **Yoseph** shall have *two portions* **boundaries**.
 14 And ye shall inherit it,
one as well **man** as *another* **brother**:
concerning the which I lifted up mine hand
 to give it unto your fathers:
 and this land shall fall unto you for inheritance.
 15 And this shall be the border of the land
toward the north *side* **edge**,
 from the great sea,
 the way of Hethlon, as men go to *Zedad* **Sedad**;
 Hamath, Berothah, *Sibraim* **Sibrayim**,
 which is between the border of *Damascus* **Dammeseq**
 and **between** the border of Hamath;
Hazar—hatticon **Hasar Hat Tichon**,
 which is by the *coast* **border** of Hauran.
 17 And the border from the sea
 shall be *Hazarenan* **Hasar Enon**,
 the border of *Damascus* **Dammeseq**,
 and the north northward, and the border of Hamath.
 And this is the north *side* **edge**.
 18 And the east *side* **edge**
 ye shall measure *from* **between** Hauran,
 and *from* *Damascus* **between** *Dammeseq*,
 and *from* *Gilead* **between** *Gilad*,
 and *from* **between** the land of *Israel* **Yisra El** by *Jordan* **Yarden**,
 from the border unto the east sea.
 And this is the east *side* **edge**.
 19 And the south *side* **edge** southward,
 from Tamar
 even to the *waters of strife* **Mayim Meribah**
 in *Kadesh* **Qadesh**,
 the *river* **wadi** to the great sea.
 And this is the south *side* **edge** southward.
 20 The *west side* **seaward edge** also
 shall be the great sea from the border,
 till a man come over against Hamath.
 This is the *west side* **seaward edge**.
 21 So shall ye *divide* **allot** this land unto you
 according to the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
 22 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
 that ye shall *divide it by lot* **fell it**
 for an inheritance unto you,
 and to the *strangers* **sojourners** that sojourn among you,
 which shall *beget children* **birth sons** among you:
 and they shall be unto you as *born in the country* **natives**
 among the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**;

YECHEZQ EL 47

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the waters heal.
 9 And so be it, every living soul that teems,
 wherever the wadies enter, lives:
 and there becomes a mighty great multitude of fish,
 because these waters enter:
 and they heal;
 and wherever the wadi enters, they all live.
 10 And so be it,
 the fishers stand thereon
 from En Gedi even to En Eglayim;
 they become to spread nets;
 their fish become in species,
 as the fish of the great sea — mighty many.
 11 And the mires and the dugouts heal not;
 they are given to salt.
 12 And by the wadi on the lip,
 from here and from there,
 all the trees ascend for food
 — whose leaf neither withers,
 nor is the fruit consumed:
 it brings forth new fruit according to his months
 because their waters issue from the holies:
 and the fruit is for food and the leaf for healing.
THE BORDERS OF THE LAND
 13 Thus says Adonay Yah Veh;
 This is the border whereby you inherit the land
 according to the twelve scions of Yisra El
 — the boundaries of Yoseph:
 and you inherit, man as brother:
 I lifted my hand to give to your fathers:
 and this land falls to you for inheritance.
 14 And this, the border of the land the north edge:
 from the great sea,
 the way of Hethlon as men go to Sedad;
 Hamath, Berothah, Sibrayim,
 between the border of Dammeseq
 and between the border of Hamath;
 — Hasar Hat Tichon, by the border of Hauran:
 and the border from the sea:
 Hasar Enon, the border of Dammeseq,
 and the north northward, and the border of Hamath:
 and this is the north edge.
 15 And the east edge:
 measure between Hauran
 and between Dammeseq and between Gilad
 and between the land of Yisra El by Yarden
 from the border to the east sea:
 and this is the east edge.
 16 And the south edge southward:
 from Tamar even to Mayim Meribah in Qadesh,
 the wadi to the great sea:
 and this is the south edge southward.
 17 And the seaward edge:
 the great sea from the border
 until a man comes over against Hamath:
 and this is the seaward edge.
 18 Allot this land to yourselves
 according to the scions of Yisra El.
 19 And so be it,
 fell it for an inheritance to yourselves
 and to the sojourners who sojourn among you
 who birth sons among you:
 and they are to you
 as natives among the sons of Yisra El:

EZEKIEL 47, 48

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 they shall have **fell** an inheritance with you
among the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
And **so be** it shall come to pass,
that in what *tribe* **scion** the *stranger* **sojourner** sojourneth,
there shall ye give him his inheritance,
saith the *Lord* **GOD** an **oracle** of **Adonay Yah Veh**.

APPORTIONING THE LAND

48

Now these are the names of the *tribes* **scions**.
From the north end
to the *coast* **hand** of the way of Hethlon,
as one goeth to Hamath, *Hazarenan* **Hasar Enan**,
the border of *Damascus* **Dammeseq** northward,
to the *coast* **hand** of Hamath;
for these are his *sides* **edges** east and west **seaward**;
a *portion* for Dan, **one**.
2 And by the border of Dan,
from the east *side* **edge** unto the west *side* **seaward edge**,
a *portion* for Asher, **one**.
3 And by the border of Asher,
from the east side edge
even unto the west *side* **seaward edge**,
a *portion* for Naphtali, **one**.
4 And by the border of Naphtali,
from the east *side* **edge** unto the west *side* **seaward edge**,
a *portion* for *Menashsheh* **Menash Sheh**, **one**.
5 And by the border of *Manasseh* **Menash Sheh**,
from the east *side* **edge** unto the *side* **seaward edge**,
a *portion* for *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**, **one**.
6 And by the border of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
from the east *side* **edge**
even unto the west *side* **seaward edge**,
a *portion* for Reu Ben, **one**.
7 And by the border of *Reuben* **Reu Ben**,
from the east *side* **edge** unto the west *side* **seaward edge**,
a *portion* for *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, **one**.

THE HALLOWED REFUGE

8 And by the border of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
from the east *side* **edge** unto the west *side* **seaward edge**,
shall be the *offering* **exaltment** which ye shall *offer* **lift**
of five and twenty thousand *reeds* in breadth,
and in length as one of the *other parts* **allotments**,
from the east *side* **edge** unto the west *side* **seaward edge**:
and the *sanctuary* **holies** shall be in the midst of it.
9 The *oblation* **exaltment**
that ye shall *offer* **lift** unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall be of five and twenty thousand in length,
and of ten thousand in breadth.
10 And for them, even for the priests,
shall be this holy *oblation* **exaltment**;
toward the north **northward**
five and twenty thousand *in length*,
and *toward the west* **seaward**
ten thousand in breadth,
and *toward the east* **eastward**
ten thousand in breadth,
and *toward the south* **southward**
five and twenty thousand in length:
and the *sanctuary* **holies** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall be in the midst *thereof*.
11 It shall be for the priests that are *sanctified* **hallowed**
of the sons of *Zadok* **Sadoq**;
which have *kept* **guarded** my *charge* **guard**,
which *went* **strayed** not *astray*
when
the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **went astray** **Yisra El** **strayed**,
as the *Levites* **went astray** **Leviym** **strayed**.
12 And this *oblation* **exaltment** of the land
that is *offered* **out of the exaltment**
shall be unto them a *thing most holy* **holy of holies**
by the border of the *Levites* **Leviym**.
13 And *over against* **alongside** the border of the priests
the *Levites* **Leviym** shall have
five and twenty thousand in length,
and ten thousand in breadth:
all the length shall be five and twenty thousand,
and the breadth ten thousand.
14 And they shall not sell of it, neither exchange,
nor *alienate* **pass away** the *firstfruits* **firstlings** of the land:
for it is holy unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

YECHEZQ EL 47, 48

exeGesés companion BIBLE

23 have them fell an inheritance with you
among the scions of Yisra El.
And so be it,
that in whatever scion the sojourner sojourns,
there you give him his inheritance
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

APPORTIONING THE LAND

48

These are the names of the scions.
From the north end
to the hand of the way of Hethlon,
as one goes to Hamath, Hasar Enan,
the border of Dammeseq northward,
to the hand of Hamath;
are his edges east and seaward;
for Dan, one.
2 And by the border of Dan:
from the east edge to the seaward edge;
for Asher, one.
3 And by the border of Asher:
from the east edge even to the seaward edge;
for Naphtali, one.
4 And by the border of Naphtali:
from the east edge to the seaward edge;
for Menash Sheh, one.
5 And by the border of Menash Sheh:
from the east edge to the seaward edge;
for Ephrayim, one.
6 And by the border of Ephrayim:
from the east edge even to the seaward edge;
for Reu Ben, one.

7 And by the border of Reu Ben:
from the east edge to the seaward edge;
for Yah Hudah, one.

THE HALLOWED REFUGE

8 And by the border of Yah Hudah:
from the east edge to the seaward edge,
is the exaltment you lift
— twenty—five thousand broad and long
— as one of the allotments,
from the east edge to the seaward edge;
and the holies are in the midst thereof:
the exaltment you lift to Yah Veh,
twenty—five thousand long,
and ten thousand broad.
10 And of these, the holy exaltment for the priests:
northward, twenty—five thousand;
and seaward, ten thousand broad,
and eastward, ten thousand broad,
and southward, twenty—five thousand long;
and the holies of Yah Veh is in the midst
— for the priests
— the hallowed of the sons of Sadoq;
who guarded my guard;
who strayed not when the sons of Yisra El strayed
as the Leviym strayed.
12 And this exaltment of the land
that is from the exaltment
is to them a holy of holies
by the border of the Leviym.
13 And alongside the border of the priests, the Leviym:
twenty—five thousand long,
and ten thousand broad:
all the length, twenty—five thousand
and the breadth, ten thousand.
14 And they neither sell thereof nor exchange
nor pass away the firstlings of the land:
for *it is* holy to Yah Veh.

15 And the five thousand,
that *are left* **remain** in the breadth
over against **at the face of** the five and twenty thousand,
shall be a profane *place* for the city,
for *dwelling sites*, and for suburbs:
and the city shall be in the midst *thereof*.

16 And these shall be the measures *thereof*;
the north *side* **edge** four thousand and five hundred,
and the south *side* **edge** four thousand and five hundred,
and on the east *side* **edge**
four thousand and five hundred,
and the west *side* **seaward edge**
four thousand and five hundred.

17 And the suburbs of the city shall be
toward the north **northward** two hundred and fifty,
and *toward the south* **southward** two hundred and fifty,
and *toward the east* **eastward** two hundred and fifty,
and *toward the west* **seaward** two hundred and fifty.

18 And the *residue* **that which remaineth**
in length *over against* **alongside**
the *oblation* **exaltment** of the *holy portion* **holies**
shall be ten thousand eastward,
and ten thousand *westward* **seaward**;
and it shall be *over against* **alongside**
the *oblation* **exaltment** of the *holy portion* **holies**;
and the *increase* **produce** *thereof*
shall be for *food* **bread** unto them that serve the city.

19 And they that serve the city
shall serve it out of all the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

20 All the *oblation* **exaltment** shall be
five and twenty thousand by five and twenty thousand:
ye shall *offer* **lift** the *holy oblation* **exaltment**,
foursquare **a fourth**, with the possession of the city.

THE AREA OF THE HIERARCH

21 And the *residue* **that which remaineth**
shall be for the *prince* **hierarchy**,
on the one side **from here** and *on the other* **from there**
of the *holy oblation* **exaltment**,
and of the possession of the city,
over against **at the face of** the five and twenty thousand
of the *oblation* **exaltment**
toward the east **to the eastward** border,
and *westward* **seaward**
over against **at the face of** the five and twenty thousand
toward the west **to the seaward** border,
over against **alongside** the *portions* **allotments**
for the *prince* **hierarchy**;
and it shall be the *holy oblation* **exaltment**;
and the *sanctuary* **holies** of the house
shall be in the midst *thereof*.

22 Moreover from the possession of the *Levites* **Leviym**,
and from the possession of the city,
being in the midst of that which is the *prince's* **hierarchy's**,
between the border of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
and the border of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
shall be for the *prince* **hierarchy**.

23 As for the rest of the *tribes* **scions**,
from the east *side* **edge** unto the west *side* **edge**,
Benjamin shall have a *portion* **Ben Yamin, one**.

24 And by the border of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**,
from the east *side* **edge** unto the west *side* **seaward edge**,
Simeon shall have a *portion* **Shimon, one**.

25 And by the border of *Simeon* **Shimon**,
from the east *side* **edge** unto the west *side* **seaward edge**,
Issachar a *portion* **Yissachar, one**.

26 And by the border of *Issachar* **Yissachar**,
from the east *side* **edge** unto the west *side* **seaward edge**,
Zebulun a *portion*, **one**.

27 And by the border of *Zebulun*,
from the east *side* **edge** unto the west *side* **seaward edge**,
Gad, a *portion* **one**.

28 And by the border of *Gad*,
at the south side edge southward,
the border shall be even from *Tamar*
unto the *waters of strife* **Mayim Meribah**
in *Kadesh* **Qadesh**,
and to the *river* **wadi** toward the great sea.

29 This is the land which ye shall *divide by lot* **fell**

15 And the five thousand broad
remaining at the face of the twenty—five thousand
is profane;
it is for the city, for sites, and for suburbs:
and the city is in the midst.

16 And these *are* the measures:
the north edge, four thousand and five hundred;
and the south edge, four thousand and five hundred;
and on the east edge, four thousand and five hundred;
and the seaward edge,
four thousand and five hundred.

17 And the suburbs of the city:
northward, two hundred and fifty;
and southward, two hundred and fifty;
and eastward, two hundred and fifty;
and seaward, two hundred and fifty.

18 And whatever remains in length
alongside the exaltment of the holies
— ten thousand eastward and ten thousand seaward
— being alongside the exaltment of the holies;
the produce is their bread who serve the city:
and they who serve the city
serve from all the scions of Yisra El.

20 All the exaltment,
twenty—five thousand by twenty—five thousand:
lift a fourth of the holy exaltment
with the possession of the city.

THE AREA OF THE HIERARCH

21 And whatever remains *is* for the hierarch
— from here and from there of the holy exaltment
and of the possession of the city
at the face of the twenty—five thousand
of the exaltment to the eastward border, and seaward,
at the face of the twenty—five thousand
to the seaward border,
alongside the allotments *is* for the hierarch:
being the holy exaltment;
and the holies of the house in the midst.

22 Moreover from the possession of the *Leviym*,
and from the possession of the city,
midst that which *is* of the the hierarch,
between the border of *Yah Hudah*
and the border of *Ben Yamin*,
is for the hierarch.

23 As for the rest of the scions:
from the east edge to the west edge;
Ben Yamin, one.

24 And by the border of *Ben Yamin*:
from the east edge to the seaward edge;
Shimon, one.

25 And by the border of *Shimon*:
from the east edge to the seaward edge;
Yissachar, one.

26 And by the border of *Yissachar*:
from the east edge to the seaward edge;
Zebulun, one.

27 And by the border of *Zebulun*:
from the east edge to the seaward edge;
Gad, one.

28 And by the border of *Gad*:
at the south side edge southward,
the border being from *Tamar*
to *Mayim Meribah* in *Qadesh*
and to the wadi toward the great sea.

29 This is the land you fell

EZEKIEL 48

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

unto the *tribes scions* of *Israel Yisra El* for inheritance,
and these are their *portions allotments*,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

30 And these are the *goings out exits* of the city
on the north *side edge*,
four thousand and five hundred measures.
31 And the *gates portals* of the city
shall be after the names
of the *tribes scions* of *Israel Yisra El*:
three *gates portals* northward;
one *gate portal* of *Reuben Reu Ben*,
one *gate portal* of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
one *gate portal* of *Levi*.
32 And at the east *side edge*
four thousand and five hundred:
and three *gates portals*;
and one *gate portal* of *Joseph Yoseph*,
one *gate portal* of *Benjamin Ben Yamin*,
one *gate portal* of *Dan*.
33 And at the south *side edge*
four thousand and five hundred measures:
and three *gates portals*;
one *gate portal* of *Simeon Shimon*,
one *gate portal* of *Issachar Yissachar*,
one *gate portal* of *Zebulun*.
34 At the *west side seaward edge*
four thousand and five hundred,
with their three *gates portals*;
one *gate portal* of *Gad*,
one *gate portal* of *Asher*,
one *gate portal* of *Naphtali*.
35 It was round about eighteen thousand *measures*:
and the name of the city from that day shall be,
The LORD is there Yah Veh Sham.

THE EXITS

YECHEZQ EL 48

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to the scions of *Yisra El* for inheritance,
and these are their allotments
— an oracle of *Adonay Yah Veh.*

30 And these are the exits of the city:
on the north edge:
four thousand and five hundred measures:
31 and the portals of the city
as the names of the scions of *Yisra El*.

Three portals northward:
the portal of *Reu Ben*, one;
the portal of *Yah Hudah*, one;
the portal of *Levi*, one.
32 And at the east edge
four thousand and five hundred
with three portals:
the portal of *Yoseph*, one;
the portal of *Ben Yamin*, one;
the portal of *Dan*, one.
33 And at the south edge
four thousand and five hundred measures
with three portals;
the portal of *Shimon*, one;
the portal of *Yissachar*, one;
the portal of *Zebulun*, one.
34 At the seaward edge
four thousand and five hundred
with their three portals;
the portal of *Gad*, one;
the portal of *Asher*, one;
the portal of *Naphtali*, one
35 — eighteen thousand all around.

And the name of the city from that day on,
Yah Veh Sham.

THE EXITS

DANIEL 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

NEBUKADNETS TSAR BESEIGES YERU SHALEM

1 In the third year
of the *reign* **sovereign**dom of *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**,
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
came *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
king **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel**
unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, and besieged it.
2 And the *Lord* **Adonay** gave *Jehoiakim* **Yah Yaqim**
king **sovereign** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** into his hand,
with part of the *vessels* **instruments**
of the house of *God* **Elohim**:
which he carried into the land of *Shinar*
to the house of his *god* **elohim**;
and he brought the *vessels* **instruments**
into the *treasure house* **treasury** of his *god* **elohim**.
NEBUKADNETS TSAR CHOOSES
SONS OF YISRA EL FOR SERVICE
3 And the *king* **sovereign** *spake* **said** unto *Ashpenaz*
the *master* **rabbi** of his eunuchs,
that he should bring
certain of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and of the *king's* **sovereign's** seed,
and of the *princes* **nobles**;
4 Children in whom was no blemish,
but *well favoured* **good visaged**,
and *skilful* **comprehending** in all wisdom,
and *cunning* **knowing** in knowledge,
and *understanding science* **discerning knowledge**,
and such as had *ability* **force** in them
to stand in the *king's palace* **sovereign's manse**,
and whom they might teach
the *learning* **scrolls** and the tongue
of the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**.
5 And the *king* **appointed** **sovereign** **numbered** them
a *daily provision* **day by day word**
of the *king's meat* **sovereign's delicacies**,
and of the wine which he drank:
so nourishing them three years,
that at the end *thereof*
they might stand **before at the face of the king** **sovereign**.
6 Now among these
were of the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
Daniel **Dani El**, *Hananiah* **Hanan Yah**,
Mishael **Misha El**, and *Azariah* **Azar Yah**:
7 Unto whom the *prince* **governor** of the eunuchs
gave **set** names:
for he gave **set** unto *Daniel* **Dani El**
the name of *Beltshazzar* **Belte Shats Tsar**;
and to *Hananiah* **Hanan Yah**, of *Shadrach*;
and to *Mishael* **Misha El**, of *Meshach*;
and to *Azariah* **Azar Yah**, of *Abednego* **Abed Nego**.
8 But *Daniel* **purposed** **Dani El** **set** in his heart
that he *would* **should** not *defile* **profane** *himself*
with the *portion* **delicacies** of the *king's meat* **sovereign**,
nor with the wine which he drank:
therefore he *requested* **besought**
of the *prince* **governor** of the eunuchs
that he might not *defile* **profane** *himself*.
9 Now *God* **Elohim** had brought *Daniel* **given** **Dani El**
into *favour* **mercy** and *tender love* **mercies**
with **at the face of the prince** **governor** of the eunuchs.
10 And the *prince* **governor** of the eunuchs
said unto *Daniel* **Dani El**,
I fear my *lord* **adoni** the *king* **sovereign**,
who hath
appointed **numbered** your *meat* **food** and your drink:
for why should he see your faces *worse liking* **enraged**
than the children which are of your *sort* **circle**?
then shall ye *make* **cause** me *endanger* **to owe** my head
to the *king* **sovereign**.
11 Then said *Daniel* **Dani El** to *Melzar* **the steward**,
whom the *prince* **governor** of the eunuchs
had *set over* **numbered**
Daniel **Dani El**, *Hananiah* **Hanan Yah**,
Mishael **Misha El**, and *Azariah* **Azar Yah**,
12 Prove **Test** thy servants, I beseech thee, ten days;
and let them give us *pulse* **herbs** to eat,
and water to drink.

DANI EL 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

NEBUKADNETS TSAR BESEIGES YERU SHALEM

1 In the third year of the sovereigndom
of *Yah Yaqim* sovereign of *Yah Hudah*,
Nebukadnets Tsar sovereign of *Babel*
comes to *Yeru Shalem* and besieges it:
2 and *Adonay* gives
Yah Yaqim sovereign of *Yah Hudah*
into his hand
with part of the instruments of the house of *Elohim*:
which he carried into the land of *Shinar*
to the house of his *elohim*;
and he brings the instruments
into the treasury of his *elohim*.
NEBUKADNETS TSAR CHOOSES
SONS OF YISRA EL FOR SERVICE
3 And the sovereign
says to *Ashpenaz* the *rabbi* of his eunuchs,
to bring of the sons of *Yisra El*
and of seed of the sovereign and of the nobles;
4 children in whom *is* no blemish
— and of good visage
and comprehending in all wisdom
and knowing in knowledge
and discerning in knowledge;
and such as have inner force
to stand in the manse of the sovereign;
and to teach them
the scrolls and the tongue of the *Kesediym*.
5 And the sovereign numbers them
a day by day word
of the delicacies of the sovereign,
and of the wine he drinks:
thus nourishing them three years;
so that at the end
they stand at the face of the sovereign.
6 Among these, of the sons of *Yah Hudah*,
Dani El, *Hanan Yah*, *Misha El*, and *Azar Yah*:
7 to whom the governor of the eunuchs set names:
and he sets to *Dani El*, *Belte Shats Tsar*;
and to *Hanan Yah*, *Shadrach*;
and to *Misha El*, *Meshach*;
and to *Azar Yah*, *Abed Nego*.
8 And *Dani El* sets in his heart to not profane
with the delicacies of the sovereign
or with the wine he drinks:
and he beseeches the governor of the eunuchs
that he not profane:
9 and *Elohim* gives *Dani El* mercy and mercies
at the face of the governor of the eunuchs.
10 And the governor of the eunuchs says to *Dani El*,
I fear my *adoni* the sovereign
who numbers your food and your drink:
for why sees he your faces *enraged*
more than the children of your circle?
You have me owe my head to the sovereign.
11 And *Dani El* says to the steward
whom the governor of the eunuchs numbers over
Dani El, *Hanan Yah*, *Misha El*, and *Azar Yah*,
12 Test your servants, I beseech you, ten days;
have them give us herbs to eat and water to drink:

DANIEL 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

13 Then let our countenances visages
be looked upon **seen** before thee **at thy face**,
and the countenance **visage** of the children that eat
of the **portion delicacies** of the king's meat **sovereign**:
and as thou seest, **deal work** with thy servants.

14 So he **consented hearkened** to them
in this **matter word**,
and **proved tested** them ten days.

15 And at the end of ten days their countenances **visages**
appeared fairer were seen better and fatter in flesh
than all the children which did eat
the **portion delicacies** of the king's meat **sovereign**.

16 Thus **Melzar the steward**
took away the portion of lifted their meat **delicacies**,
and the wine that they should drink;
and gave them **pulse herbs**.

17 As for these four children,
God Elohim gave them
knowledge and **skill comprehension**
in all **learning scrolls** and wisdom:
and **Daniel had understanding in Dani El discerned**
all visions and dreams.

18 Now at the end of the days
that the **king sovereign** had said he should bring them in,
then the **prince governor** of the eunuchs brought them in
before Nebuchadnezzar at the face of Nebukadnets Tsar.

19 And the **king communed sovereign worded** with them;
and among them all was found none
like **Daniel Dani El, Hananiah Hanan Yah,**
Mishael Misha El, and Azariah Azar Yah:
therefore stood they
before at the face of the king sovereign.

20 And in all **matters words** of wisdom
and **understanding of discernment**,
that the **king enquired sovereign besought** of them,
he found them ten **times hands** better than all
the **magicians horoscopists** and **astrologers enchanters**
that were in all his **realm sovereignty**.

21 And **Daniel Dani El** continued
even unto the first year of **king Cyrus sovereign Koresh**.

DREAMS OF NEBUKADNETS TSAR

2 And in the second year of the **reign sovereignty**
of **Nebuchadnezzar Nebukadnets Tsar**,
Nebuchadnezzar Nebukadnets Tsar dreamed dreams,
wherewith his spirit was **troubled agitated**,
and his sleep brake from him.

2 Then the **king commanded sovereign said** to call
the **magicians horoscopists**,
and the **astrologers enchanters**,
and the sorcerers, and the **Chaldeans Kesediym**,
for to **shew tell** the **king sovereign** his dreams.

So they came
and stood **before at the face of the king sovereign**.

3 And the **king sovereign** said unto them,
I have dreamed a dream,
and my spirit was **troubled agitated** to know the dream.

4 Then **spake worded the Chaldeans Kesediym**
to the **king sovereign in Syriack Aramaic**,
O king sovereign, live for ever eternally:
tell say to thy servants the dream,
and we **will shall** shew the interpretation.

5 The **king sovereign** answered
and said to the **Chaldeans Kesediym**,
The **thing utterance** is gone from me:
if ye **will shall** not make known unto me the dream,
with the interpretation **thereof**,
ye shall be **cut served** in pieces,
and your houses shall be **made set a dunghill cesspool**.

6 But if ye shew the dream, and the interpretation **thereof**,
ye shall **receive take from in front** of me
gifts and **rewards largess** and great **honour esteem**:
therefore shew me the dream,
and the interpretation **thereof**.

7 They answered **again secondly** and said,
Let the **king tell sovereign say to** his servants the dream,
and we **will shall** shew the interpretation of it.

8 The **king sovereign** answered and said,
I know of certainty that ye **would should** gain the time,
because ye see the **thing utterance** is gone from me.

DANIEL 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

13 then, at your face, see our visages
and the visage of the children
who eat of the delicacies of the sovereign:
and work with your servants as you see **fit**.

14 And he hearkens to them in this word
and tests them ten days:
15 and at the end of ten days
they see their visages better and fatter in flesh
than all the children
who eat the delicacies of the sovereign.

16 And the steward lifts their delicacies
and the wine they drink;
and gives them herbs.

17 As for these four children,
Elohim gives them knowledge and comprehension
in all scrolls and wisdom:
and Dani El discerns all visions and dreams.

18 And at the end of the days
the sovereign says to bring them in:
and the governor of the eunuchs
brings them in at the face of Nebukadnets Tsar:
and the sovereign words with them:
and among them all, no one was found
as Dani El, Hanan Yah, Misha El, and Azar Yah:
and they stand at the face of the sovereign.

20 And in all words of wisdom and of discernment
the sovereign beseeches of them
he finds them ten hands better
than all the horoscopists and enchanters
in all his sovereignty:
and Dani El continues
to the first year of sovereign Koresh.

DREAMS OF NEBUKADNETS TSAR

2 And in the second year
of the sovereignty of Nebukadnets Tsar,
Nebukadnets Tsar dreams dreams
which agitate his spirit;
and his sleep breaks from him:
and the sovereign says to call
the horoscopists and the enchanters
and the sorcerers and the Kesediym
to tell the sovereign his dreams.

And they come
and stand at the face of the sovereign:
and the sovereign says to them,
I dreamed a dream
and my spirit agitates to know the dream.

3 And the Kesediym word to the sovereign in Aramaic,
O sovereign, live eternally:
say the dream to your servants
and we show the interpretation.

4 The sovereign answers and says to the Kesediym,
The utterance is gone from me:
if you make not known to me
the dream with the interpretation,
they serve you in pieces,
and set your houses a cesspool:
and if you show the dream and the interpretation,
you take from in front of me
gifts and largess and great esteem:
so show me the dream and the interpretation.

5 They answer secondly and say,
May the sovereign say the dream to his servants
and we show the interpretation thereof.

6 The sovereign answers and says,
I know for certain that you are gaining time,
because you see the utterance is gone from me:

DANIEL 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

9 But if ye *will shall* not make known unto me the dream,
there is but — one decree for you:
for ye have prepared *lying false*
and *corrupt words ruinous utterances*
to *speak before say in front of* me,
till the time be changed:
therefore *tell say to* me the dream,
and I shall know
that ye can shew me the interpretation *thereof*.
10 The *Chaldeans Kesediym* answered
before in front of the king *sovereign*, and said,
There is not a man upon the *earth dry*
that can shew the *king's matter sovereign's utterance*:
therefore because there is no king *sovereign*,
lord great, nor ruler *dominator*,
that asked *such things utterances as these*
at any *magician horoscopist*,
or *astrologer enchanter*, or *Chaldean Kesediym*.
11 And it is a *rare thing an esteemed utterance*
that the *king requireth sovereign asketh*,
and there is none other that can shew it
before in front of the king *sovereign*,
except the *gods elahim*,
whose *dwelling whirling* is not with flesh.
12 For this cause *Therefore* the king was *angry sovereign raged*
and was very *furios enraged*,
and *commanded said* to destroy
all the *wise men magi* of *Babylon Babel*.
13 And the decree *went forth emerged*
that the *wise men magi* should be *slain severed*;
and they *sought requested*
Daniel Dani El and his *fellows companions*
to be *slain severed*.
14 Then *Daniel answered Dani El responded*
with counsel and *wisdom taste*
to *Arioch Aryoch* the *captain great*
of the *king's guard slaughterers of the sovereign*,
which was *gone forth emerged*
to *slay sever* the *wise men magi* of *Babylon Babel*:
15 He answered and said to *Arioch Aryoch*
the *king's captain sovereign's dominator*,
Why is the decree *so hasty severe*
from the king in front of the sovereign?
Then *Arioch Aryoch*
made the *thing utterance* known to *Daniel Dani El*.
16 Then *Daniel went in Dani El entered*,
and *desired requested* of the king *sovereign*
that he *would should* give him *time an appointment*,
and that he *would should* shew the king *sovereign*
the interpretation.
17 Then *Daniel Dani El* went to his house,
and made the *thing utterance* known
to *Hananiah Hanan Yah, Mishael Misha El*,
and *Azariah Azar Yah*, his companions:
18 That they *would desire should request* mercies
of the *God in front of Elah* of *heaven the heavens*
concerning this *secret mystery*;
that *Daniel Dani El* and his *fellows companions*
should not *perish destruct* with the *rest remainder*
of the *wise men magi* of *Babylon Babel*.
DANI EL EXPOSES THE MYSTERY
19 Then was the *secret revealed mystery exposed*
unto *Daniel Dani El* in a night vision.
Then *Daniel Dani El*
blessed the *God Elah* of *heaven the heavens*.
20 *Daniel Dani El* answered and said,
Blessed be the name of *God Elah*
for ever and ever from eternity until eternity:
for wisdom and might are his:
21 And he changeth the times and the seasons:
he *removeth kings passeth by sovereigns*,
and *setteth up kings raiseth sovereigns*:
he giveth wisdom unto the *wise magi*,
and *knowledge perception*
to them that know *understanding discernment*:
22 He *revealeth exposeth*
the *deep profound* and *secret things hidden*:
he knoweth what is in the darkness,
and the light *dwellleth with him he releaseth*.

DANI EL 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 and if you not make known to me the dream
— one decree for you:
for you prepare false and ruinous utterances
to say in front of me,
until the change of time:
so say to me the dream,
so that I know you show me the interpretation.
10 The Kesediym answer in front of the sovereign,
and say,
There is not a man on the dry
who can show the utterance of the sovereign:
because no sovereign, great, or dominator,
asks utterances as these
of any horoscopist or enchanter or Kesediym:
11 and it is an esteemed utterance the sovereign asks;
and there is no one other
who can show it in front of the sovereign
— except the elahim who whirl not with flesh.
12 So the sovereign rages — very enraged;
and says to destroy all the magi of Babel:
13 and the decree emerges to sever the magi;
and they request to sever
Dani El and his companions.
14 Then Dani El responds with counsel and taste
to Aryoch the great
of the slaughterers of the sovereign
— who emerges to sever the magi of Babel.
15 He answers Aryoch the dominator of the sovereign,
and says,
Why is the decree in front of the sovereign so severe?
Then Aryoch makes the utterance known to Dani El:
16 and Dani El enters,
and requests of the sovereign
to give him an appointment,
to show the sovereign the interpretation.
17 Then Dani El goes to his house,
and makes the utterance known
to Hanan Yah, Misha El, and Azar Yah
his companions:
18 to request mercies in front of Elah of the heavens
concerning this mystery;
so that Dani El and his companions not destruct
with the remainder of the magi of Babel.
DANI EL EXPOSES THE MYSTERY
19 Then in a night vision
the mystery is exposed to Dani El;
and Dani El blesses Elah of the heavens:
20 Dani El answers and says,
Blessed — the name of Elah from eternity to eternity:
for wisdom and might are his:
21 and he changes the times and the seasons:
he passes sovereigns by, and raises sovereigns:
he gives wisdom to the magi,
and perception to them who know discernment:
22 he exposes the profound and the hidden:
he knows what is in the darkness,
and releases the light.

DANIEL 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

23 I thank thee, and praise **laud** thee,
O thou *God* **Elah** of my fathers,
who hast given me wisdom and might,
and hast made known unto me now
what we *desired* **requested** of thee:
for thou hast *now* made known unto us
the *king's matter* **sovereign's utterance**.

24 Therefore
Daniel went in **Dani El entered** unto *Arioch* **Aryoch**,
whom the *king* **sovereign** had *ordained* **numbered**
to destroy the *wise men* **magi** of *Babylon* **Babel**:
he went and said thus unto him;
Destroy not the *wise men* **magi** of *Babylon* **Babel**:
bring enter me in *before* **front of the king sovereign**,
and I *will shall* shew unto the *king* **sovereign**
the interpretation.

25 Then *Arioch* **Aryoch** *brought in* *Daniel* **entered Dani El**
before in front of the king in haste **sovereign hastily**,
and said thus unto him,
I have found a *man* **mighty**
of the *captives* **sons of the exiles** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
that *will shall* make known unto the *king* **sovereign**
the interpretation.

26 The *king* **sovereign** answered
and said to *Daniel* **Dani El**,
whose name was *Belteshazzar* **Belte Shats Tsar**,
Art thou able to make known unto me
the dream which I have seen,
and the interpretation *thereof*?

27 *Daniel* **Dani El** answered
in the *presence* **front of the king sovereign**, and said,
The *secret* **mystery**
which the *king* **sovereign** hath *demanded* **asked**
cannot the *wise men* **magi**, the *astrologers* **enchanters**,
the *magicians* **horoscopists**, the *soothsayers* **discerners**,
shew unto the *king* **sovereign**;

28 *But* **However**
there is a *God* **an Elah** in *heaven* **the heavens**
that *revealeth secrets* **exposeth mysteries**,
and maketh known
to the *king* **sovereign** *Nebuchadnezzar* **sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar**
what shall be the *latter* **final** days.
Thy dream, and the visions of thy head upon thy bed,
are these;

29 As for thee, O *king* **sovereign**,
thy thoughts **thine intentions**
came into thy mind **ascended** upon thy bed,
what should *come to pass hereafter* **become after this**:
and he that *revealeth secrets* **exposeth mysteries**
maketh known to thee what shall *come to pass* **become**.

30 But as for me,
this *secret* **mystery** is not *revealed* **exposed** to me
for *any* wisdom that I have **in me** *more* than any living,
but for *their sakes* **words** that shall make known
the interpretation to the *king* **sovereign**,
and that thou mightest know
the *thoughts* **intentions** of thy heart.

DANI EL RECALLS THE MYSTERY

31 Thou, O *king* **sovereign**, sawest,
and behold a **one** great image. — This great image,
whose *brightness* **cheerfulness** was excellent,
stood before **rose up in front of** thee;
and the *form thereof* **appearance** was *terrible* **terrifying**.

32 This image's head was of fine gold,
his breast and his arms of silver,
his *belly* **inwards** and his *thighs* **flanks** of *brass* **copper**,

33 His legs of iron,
his feet *part of* **from** iron and *part of* **from** clay.

34 Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out
without **not by** hands,
which *smote* **struck** the image
upon his feet *that were* of iron and clay,
and *brake* **pulverized** them *to pieces*.

35 Then was the iron, the clay, the *brass* **copper**,
the silver, and the gold,
broken to pieces together **pulverized as one**,
and became like the chaff of the summer threshingfloors;
and the wind *carried* **bore** them away,
that no place was found for them:

DANI EL 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

23 I thank you, and laud you,
O you, Elah of my fathers,
who gives me wisdom and might
and now makes known to me
what we request of you:
that you make known to us
the utterance of the sovereign.

24 So Dani El enters to Aryoch,
whom the sovereign numbered
to destroy the magi of Babel:
he goes and says thus to him:
Destroy not the magi of Babel:
enter me in front of the sovereign
and I show the interpretation to the sovereign.

25 Then Aryoch hastily enters Dani El
in front of the sovereign, and says thus to him,
I found a mighty *one*
of the sons of the exiles of Yah Hudah
to make known the interpretation to the sovereign.

26 The sovereign answers and says to Dani El
— whose name *is* Belte Shats Tsar,
Are you able to make known to me
the dream I saw? — and the interpretation?

27 Dani El answers in front of the sovereign, and says,
The mystery the sovereign asks
the magi, the enchanters,
the horoscopists, the discerners,
cannot show to the sovereign;
but there is an Elah in the heavens
who exposes mysteries,
and makes known to sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar
what becomes in the final days.

Your dream
and the visions of your head on your bed are these:

29 As for you, O sovereign,
the intentions that ascended on your bed,
What becomes after this?
— and he who exposes mysteries
makes known to you what becomes.

30 As for me,
this mystery is not exposed to me
for wisdom that I have in me
any more than for any *one* living,
but for words to make
the interpretation known to the sovereign,
so that you know the intentions of your heart.

DANI EL RECALLS THE MYSTERY

31 You, O sovereign, saw, and behold,
one great image — this great image
whose excellent cheerfulness rises in front of you:
and the appearance terrifies.

32 This head of the image, of fine gold;
his breast and his arms, of silver;
his inwards and his flanks, of copper;

33 his legs, of iron;
his feet, of iron and of clay:

34 you see until a stone is cut — not by hands
which strikes the image on his feet of iron and clay
and pulverizes them:
then the iron, the clay,
the copper, the silver and the gold
pulverize as one,
and become
as the chaff of the summer threshingfloors;
and the wind bears them,
and no place is found for them:

DANIEL 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the stone that *smote* **struck** the image
became a great *mountain* **rock**,
and filled the whole earth.

DANI EL INTERPRETS THE MYSTERY

36 This is the dream;
and we *will tell* **shall say** the interpretation *thereof*
before the king **in front of the sovereign**.
37 Thou, O *king* **sovereign**,
art a *king* **sovereign** of *kings* **sovereigns**:
for the *God* **Elah** of *heaven* **the heavens**
hath given thee a *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
power, and *strength* **empowerment**, and *glory* **esteem**.
38 And *wheresoever* **everywhere**
the *children* **sons** of men *dwell* **whirl**,
the *beasts* **live beings** of the field
and the *fowls* **flyers** of the *heaven* **heavens**
hath he given into thine hand,
and hath made thee *ruler* **dominate** over them all.
Thou art this head of gold.
39 And *after thee* **in thy place**
shall arise another *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
inferior to thee **from thee of earth**,
and another third *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
of *brass* **copper**,
which shall *bear rule* **dominate** over all the earth.
40 And the fourth *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
shall be *strong* **mighty** as iron:
forasmuch **because that** as iron
breaketh in pieces **pulverizeth** and *subdueth* **crusheth**
all things:
and as iron that *breaketh* **shattereth** all these,
shall it *break in pieces* **pulverize** and *bruise* **shatter**.
41 And whereas thou sawest the feet and *toes* **digits**,
part of from **potter's** clay, and *part of from* **iron**,
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** shall be divided;
but from there shall be in it of the strength of the iron,
forasmuch **because that** as thou sawest the iron
mixed **comingled** with miry clay.
42 And as the *toes* **digits** of the feet
were *part of from* **iron**, and *part of from* **clay**,
so the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** shall be
partly strong **from might**, and *partly* **from** broken.
43 And whereas thou sawest iron
mixed **comingled** with miry clay,
they shall *mingle themselves* **become comingled**
with the seed of men:
but they shall not *cleave one to another* **be this with that**,
even **behold** as iron is not *mixed* **comingled** with clay.
44 And in the days of these *kings* **sovereigns**
shall the *God* **Elah** of *heaven* **the heavens**
set up **raise** a *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
which shall *never* **not** be *destroyed* **despoiled eternally**:
and the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
shall not be left to other people,
but it shall *break in pieces* **pulverize** and consume
all these *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**,
and it shall *stand for ever* **be raised eternally**.
45 *Forasmuch* **Because that** as thou sawest that the stone
was cut out of the *mountain* **without rock not by** hands,
and that it *brake in pieces* **pulverized** the iron,
the *brass* **copper**, the clay, the silver, and the gold;
the great *God* **Elah**
hath made known to the *king* **sovereign**
what shall *come to pass hereafter* **become after this**:
and the dream is certain,
and the interpretation *thereof* **sure trustworthy**.

NEBUKADNETS TSAR PROMOTES DANI EL

46 Then the *king* **Nebuchadnezzar** **sovereign** **Nebukadnets Tsar**
fell upon his face,
and *worshipped* **Daniel** **prostrated to** **Dani El**,
and *commanded* **said**
that they should *offer* **libate** an *oblation* **offering**
and *sweet odours* **savour of rest** unto him.
47 The *king* **sovereign** answered unto *Daniel* **Dani El**,
and said, *Of* **From** a truth it is,
that your *God* **Elah** is a *God* **an Elah** of *gods* **elahim**,
and a *Lord of kings* **master of sovereigns**,
and a *revealer* **an exposer** of *secrets* **mysteries**,
seeing **that** thou couldst *reveal* **expose** this *secret* **mystery**.

DANI EL 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the stone that strikes the image
becomes a great rock and fills the whole earth.

DANI EL INTERPRETS THE MYSTERY

36 This is the dream
and we say the interpretation in front of the sovereign:
37 You, O sovereign, are a sovereign of sovereigns:
for Elah of the heavens gives you a sovereigndom
— power and empowerment and esteem:
38 and everywhere the sons of men whirl;
and he gives the live beings of the field
and the flyers of the heavens into your hand,
and has you dominate over them all:
you are this head of gold.
39 And in your stead
rises another sovereigndom of earth
and another, a third sovereigndom of copper
who dominates over all the earth.
40 And the fourth sovereigndom
becomes mighty as iron:
because as iron pulverizes and crushes all:
and as iron shatters all these,
it pulverizes and shatters.
41 And as to what you saw — the feet and digits,
of clay of the potters, and of iron,
the sovereigndom becomes divided;
for the strength of the iron becomes therein
just as you saw the iron comingled with miry clay.
42 And the digits of the feet, of iron and of clay,
thus the sovereigndom
— becomes mighty, and becomes partly broken.
43 And as you saw iron comingled with miry clay,
they become comingled with the seed of men:
but they become not this with that
— behold, as iron is not comingled with clay.
44 And in the days of these sovereigns
Elah of the heavens raises a sovereigndom,
which despoils not eternally:
and the sovereigndom is not left to other people,
it pulverizes and consumes all these sovereigndoms
and it is raised eternally.
45 Because, as you saw,
the stone cut from the rock, not by hands,
and it pulverizes the iron, the copper, the clay,
the silver, and the gold;
the great Elah makes known to the sovereign
what becomes after this:
and the dream is certain,
and the interpretation trustworthy.
NEBUKADNETS TSAR PROMOTES DANI EL
46 Then sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar
falls on his face,
and prostrates to Dani El,
and says for them to libate an offering
and savour of rest to him.
47 The sovereign answers Dani El, and says,
Of a truth, your Elah is an Elah of elahim,
and a master of sovereigns,
and an exposer of mysteries,
that you can expose this mystery.

DANIEL 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

48 Then the king **sovereign**
made Daniel a great man **greatened Dani El**,
and gave him many great gifts,
and made **had** him ruler **dominate**
over the whole province **jurisdiction** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
and chief **great** of the *governors* **prefects**
over all the *wise men* **magi** of *Babylon* **Babel**.
49 Then Daniel **Dani El** requested of the king **sovereign**,
and he set **numbered**
Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**,
over the *affairs* **service**
of the province **jurisdiction** of *Babylon* **Babel**:
but Daniel and Dani El sat
in the gate **portal** of the king **sovereign**.
THE IMAGE OF GOLD OF NEBUKADNETS TSAR

3 *NEBUCHADNEZZAR* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
the king **sovereign** made an image of gold,
whose height was *threescore* **sixty** cubits,
and the breadth *thereof* six cubits:
he set it up **raised it** in the *plain valley* of *Dura*,
in the province **jurisdiction** of *Babylon* **Babel**.
2 Then *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
the king **sovereign**
sent to gather together the *princes* **satraps**,
the *governors* **prefects**, and the *captains* **governors**,
the *judges* **mighty diviners**, the *treasurers*,
the *counsellors* **decreers**, the *sherriffs*,
and all the *rulers* **dominators**
of the *provinces* **jurisdictions**,
to come to the *dedication* **hanukkah** of the image
which *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
the king **sovereign** had set up **raised**.
3 Then the *princes* **satraps**, the *governors* **prefects**,
and *captains* **governors**, the *judges* **mighty diviners**,
the *treasurers*, the *counsellors*, the *sheriffs*,
and all the *rulers* **dominators**
of the *provinces* **jurisdictions**
were gathered together
unto the *dedication* **hanukkah** of the image
that *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
the king **sovereign** had set up **raised**;
and they stood before **rose in front** of the image
that *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
had set up **raised**.
4 Then an *herald* **announcer**
cried aloud **called out with valour**,
To you it is *commanded* **they say**,
O people, nations, and *languages* **tongues**,
That at what time
5 ye hear the *sound* **voice** of the *cornet* **horn**,
flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, *dulcimer* **symphonia**,
and all *kinds* **species** of *musick* **psalming**,
ye fall down and *worship* **prostrate** to the golden image
that *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
the king **sovereign** hath set up **raised**:
6 And whoso
falleth not down and *worshipeth* **prostrateth**
shall the same *hour* **blink**
be cast **hurled** into the midst of a burning fiery furnace.
7 Therefore at that *time* **appointment**,
when **that** all the people
heard the *sound* **voice** of the *cornet* **horn**,
flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery,
and all *kinds* **species** of *musick* **psalming**,
all the people, the nations, and the *languages* **tongues**,
fell down and *worshipped* **prostrated**
to the golden image
that *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
the king **sovereign** had set up **raised**.
8 Wherefore **Therefore** at that *time* **appointment**
certain Chaldeans came near **mighty Kesediym** approached,
and *accused* **chewed out** the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**.
9 They *spake* **answered** and said to
the king *Nebuchadnezzar* **sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar**,
O king **sovereign**, live for ever **eternally**.
10 Thou, O king **sovereign**, has made **set** a decree,
that every man that shall hear
the *sound* **voice** of the *cornet* **horn**,
flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and *dulcimer* **symphonia**,

DANIEL 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

48 Then the sovereign greatens Dani El
and gives him many great gifts;
and has him dominate
over the whole jurisdiction of Babel
and the great of the prefects
— over all the magi of Babel.
49 And Dani El requests of the sovereign,
and he numbers Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed Nego
over the service of the jurisdiction of Babel:
and Dani El in the portal of the sovereign.
THE IMAGE OF GOLD OF NEBUKADNETS TSAR

3 Nebukadnets Tsar the sovereign
makes an image of gold
its height, sixty cubits; its breadth, six cubits:
he raises it in the valley of Dura,
in the jurisdiction of Babel.
2 And Nebukadnets Tsar the sovereign
sends to gather together
the satraps, the prefects and the governors,
the mighty diviners, the treasurers,
the decreers, the sheriffs
and all the dominators of the jurisdictions
to come to the hanukkah of the image
Nebukadnets Tsar the sovereign raised.
3 Then the satraps, the prefects and governors,
the mighty diviners, the treasurers,
the decreers, the sheriffs
and all the dominators of the jurisdictions
gather together to the hanukkah of the image
Nebukadnets Tsar the sovereign raised;
and they rise in front of the image
that Nebukadnets Tsar raised.
4 And an announcer calls out with valour,
To you they say,
O people, nations, and tongues,
at the time you hear the voice of the horn,
flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, symphonia,
and all species of psalming,
fall down and prostrate to the golden image
Nebukadnets Tsar the sovereign raised:
5 and whoever falls not down and prostrates
that same blink
is hurled midst a burning fiery furnace.
6 Therefore at that appointment,
all the people hear the voice of the horn,
flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery,
and all species of psalming,
and all the people, the nations and the tongues
fall down and prostrate to the golden image
Nebukadnets Tsar the sovereign raised.
7 Therefore at that appointment
mighty Kesediym approach
and chew out the Yah Hudiym;
8 they answer,
yes, they say to sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar,
O sovereign, live eternally:
9 You, O sovereign, set a decree,
10 that every man who hears the voice of the horn,
flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and symphonia,

DANIEL 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and all *kinds species of musick* **psalming**,
shall fall down and *worship* **prostrateth**
to the golden image:
11 And whoso
falleth not down and *worshippeth* **prostrateth**,
that he should be cast **hurled**
into the midst of a burning fiery furnace.
12 There are *certain Jews* **mighty Yah Hudiym**
whom thou has *set* **numbered** over the *affairs* **service**
of the *province* **jurisdiction** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**;
these *men* **mighty**, *O king* **sovereign**,
have not *regarded* **set their taste to** thee:
they serve not thy *gods* **elahim**,
nor *worship* **prostrate to** the golden image
which thou hast *set up* **raised**.
13 Then *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
in *his rage* **quiver** and fury
commanded **said** to bring
Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**.
Then they brought these *men* **mighty**
before in front of the *king* **sovereign**.
14 *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
spake **answered** and said unto them,
Is it *true* **your intent**,
O Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**,
do not ye serve my *gods* **elahim**,
nor *worship* **prostrate**
to the golden image which I have *set up* **raised**?
15 Now if ye be *ready* **prepared**
that at what time ye hear the sound of the *cornet* **horn**,
flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and *dulcimer* **symphonia**,
and all *kinds species of musick* **psalming**,
ye fall down and *worship* **prostrate**
to the image which I have made; *well*:
but if ye *worship* **prostrate** not,
ye shall be *cast* **hurled** the same *hour* **blink**
into the midst of a burning fiery furnace;
and who is that *God* **Elah**
that shall *deliver* **liberate** you out of my hands?
16 Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**,
answered and said to the *king* **sovereign**,
O *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**,
we are *not careful to answer* **need not respond to** thee
in this *matter* **decision**.
17 If it be so, our *God* **Elah** whom we serve
is able to *deliver* **liberate** us
from the burning fiery furnace,
and he *will deliver* **shall liberate** us
out of from thine hand, O *king* **sovereign**.
18 But if not, be it known unto thee, O *king* **sovereign**,
that we *will* **shall** not serve thy *gods* **elahim**,
nor *worship* **prostrate to** the golden image
which thou has *set up* **raised**.
19 Then was *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
full filled of fury,
and the *form* **image** of his *visage* **face**
was changed against
Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**:
therefore he spake **answered**, and *commanded* **said**
that they should *heat* **kindle** the furnace
one seven times more than it was wont to be heated
seven above the usual kindling.
20 And he *commanded* **said**
to the most mighty *men* **mighty of valour**
that were *in among* his *army* **valiant**
to *bind* **shackle**
Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**,
and to *cast* **hurl** them into the burning fiery furnace.
21 Then these *men* **mighty** were *bound* **shackled**
in their *coats* **mantles**, their *hosen* **undergarments**,
and their hats, and their *other garments* **robes**,
and were *cast* **hurled**
into the midst of the burning fiery furnace.
22 Therefore
because the *king's commandment* **sovereign's utterance**
was *urgent* **severe**,
and the furnace exceeding *hot* **kindled**,
the flame of the fire *slew* **severed** those *men* **mighty**

DANIEL 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and all species of psalming,
falls down and prostrates to the golden image:
11 and whoever falls not down and prostrates
is hurled midst a burning fiery furnace:
12 there are mighty Yah Hudiym
whom you numbered
over the service of the jurisdiction of Babel
— Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed Nego:
these mighty, O sovereign,
set not their taste to you:
they neither serve your elahim
nor prostrate to the golden image you raised.
13 Then Nebukadnets Tsar, in quiver and fury,
says to bring Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed Nego.
— then they bring these mighty
in front of the sovereign.
14 Nebukadnets Tsar answers and says to them,
Is it your intent,
O Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed Nego,
to neither serve my elahim
nor prostrate to the golden image I raised?
15 Now behold, if you are prepared,
at the time you hear the sound of the horn,
flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery and symphonia
and all species of psalming,
you fall down and prostrate to the image I made —
and behold, if you prostrate not,
at that same blink
you are hurled midst a burning fiery furnace!
Who is that Elah who liberates you from my hands?
16 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed Nego answer
and say to the sovereign,
O Nebukadnets Tsar,
we need not respond to you in this decision:
and so be it,
our Elah whom we serve
is able to liberate us from the burning fiery furnace,
and liberate us from your hand, O sovereign.
18 And behold, if not, know this, O sovereign,
that we neither serve your elahim
nor prostrate to the golden image you raised.
19 Then Nebukadnets Tsar fills with fury,
and changes the image of his face
against Shadrach, Meshach and Abed Nego:
he answers and says
for them to kindle the furnace
seven above the usual kindling.
20 And to the most mighty mighty of valour
among his valiant,
he says to shackle
Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed Nego,
and to hurl them into the burning fiery furnace.
21 Then they shackle these mighty in their mantles,
their undergarments and their hats and their robes
and hurl them midst the burning fiery furnace.
22 So because the utterance of the sovereign is so severe
and the furnace exceedingly kindled
the flame of the fire severs the mighty

DANIEL 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 that took up Shadrach,
Meshach and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**.
And these three *men* **mighty**,
Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**,
fell down *bound* **shackled**
into the midst of the burning fiery furnace.

24 Then *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
the *king* **sovereign** was *astoned* **marvelled**,
and rose up *in haste* **hastily**,
and *spake* **answered**, and *said* **saying** unto his counsellors,
Did not we *cast* **hurl** three *men* **mighty** bound
into the midst of the fire?
They answered and said unto the *king* **sovereign**,
True **Certainly**, O *king* **sovereign**.

25 He answered and said,
Lo **Behold**, I see four *men* **loose** **mighty** **released**,
walking in the midst of the fire,
and they have no *hurt* **damage**;
and the *form* **appearance** of the fourth
is like the *Son* **Bar** of *God* **Elah**.

26 Then *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
came near **approached** the *mouth* **portal**
of the burning fiery furnace,
and *spake* **answered**, and said,
Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**,
ye servants of the *most high* **God** **Elyon Elah**,
come forth **emerge**, and come *hither*.

Then Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**,
came forth of **emerged from** the midst of the fire.

27 And the *princes* **satraps**, *governors* **prefects**,
and *captains* **governors**,
and the *king's* **sovereign's** counsellors,
being gathered together, saw these *men* **mighty**,
upon whose bodies
the fire *had no power* **dominated not**,
nor was an hair of their head singed,
neither were their *coats* **mantles** changed,
nor the *smell* **scent** of fire had passed on them.

28 Then *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
spake **answered**, and said,
Blessed be the *God* **Elah** of
Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**,
who hath sent his angel
and *delivered* **liberated** his servants
that *trusted in* **attended** him,
and have changed the *king's* **word** **sovereign's** **utterance**,
and *yielded* **gave** their bodies,
that they might not serve nor *worship* **prostrate**
to any god **elah**, except their own *God* **Elah**.

THE DECREE OF NEBUKADNETS TSAR

29 *Therefore* I **set** a decree,
That every people, nation, and *language* **tongue**,
which *speak any thing amiss* **say** **misleadingly**
against the *God* **Elah** of
Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**,
shall be *cut* **served** in pieces,
and their houses
shall be *made a dunghill* **equated to a cesspool**:
because **that** there is no other *God* **Elah**
that can *deliver after this sort* **rescue thus**.

30 Then the *king* **sovereign**
promoted **prospered**
Shadrach, Meshach, and *Abednego* **Abed Nego**,
in the *province* **jurisdiction** of *Babylon* **Babel**.

THE PROCLAMATION OF NEBUKADNETS TSAR

4 *NUBUCHADNEZZAR* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
the *king* **sovereign**,
unto all people, nations, and *languages* **tongues**,
that *dwelt* **whirl** in all the earth;
Peace **Shalom** be *multiplied* **increased** unto you.

2 *I thought it good* **It was** **glorifying in front of me**
to shew the *signs* **omens** and *wonders* **marvels**
that the *high* **God** **Elyon Elah** hath *wrought* **served** toward me.

3 How great are his *signs* **omens**!
and how mighty are his *wonders* **marvels**!
his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
is an *everlasting* **kingdom** **eternal** **sovereigndom**,
and his dominion is from generation to generation.

DANIEL 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

who take Shadrach, Meshach and Abed Nego.

23 And these three mighty,
Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed Nego
fall down shackled midst the burning fiery furnace.

24 Then Nebukadnets Tsar the sovereign
marvels and rises hastily, and answers,
saying to his counsellors,
Hurled we not three mighty bound midst the fire?

They answer and say to the sovereign,
Certainly, O sovereign.

25 He answers and says,
Behold, I see four mighty released,
walking midst the fire with no damage;
and the appearance of the fourth is as the Bar of Elah.

26 Then Nebukadnets Tsar
approaches the portal of the burning fiery furnace;
and he answers and says,
Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed Nego,
you servants of Elyon Elah,
emerge, and come.
— then Shadrach, Meshach and Abed Nego
emerge from midst the fire.

27 And they gather together,
these satraps, prefects and governors
and the counsellors of the sovereign,
to see these mighty
on whose bodies neither the fire dominates
nor an hair of their head sings
nor their mantles change
nor the scent of fire passes on them.

28 Nebukadnets Tsar answers and says,
Blessed — Elah
of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed Nego
who sent his angel
to liberate his servants who attend him;
and changes the utterance of the sovereign;
and gives their bodies
that they neither serve nor prostrate to any elah
except their own Elah.

THE DECREE OF NEBUKADNETS TSAR

29 I set a decree,
To every people, nation, and tongue,
who say misleadingly against the Elah
of Shadrach, Meshach and Abed Nego
that they be served in pieces;
and equate their houses to a cesspool:
because that there is no other Elah
who can rescue thus.

30 Then the sovereign prospers
Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed Nego,
in the jurisdiction of Babel.

THE PROCLAMATION OF NEBUKADNETS TSAR

4 Nebukadnets Tsar the sovereign:
to all people, nations, and tongues
whirling in all the earth:
Shalom be increased to you.

2 It is glorifying in front of me
to show the omens and marvels
Elyon Elah serves toward me.

3 How great his omens!
And how mighty his marvels!
His sovereigndom is an eternal sovereigndom,
and his dominion from generation to generation.

DANIEL 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

THE DREAM OF NEBUKADNETS TSAR OF THE TREE

4 I *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
was at rest **serenized** in mine house,
and *flourishing* **verdant** in my *palace* **manse**:
5 I saw a dream which *made* **terrified** me *afraid*,
and the *thought* **conceptions** upon my bed
and the visions of my head *troubled* **terrified** me.
6 *Therefore made* I **set** a decree to *bring in* **enter**
all the *wise men* **magi** of *Babylon* **Babel**
before me **in front of me**,
that they might make known unto me
the interpretation of the dream.
7 Then *came in* **entered** the *magicians* **horoscopists**,
the *astrologers* **enchanters**, the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**,
and the *soothsayers* **discerners**:
and I *told* **said** the dream **before in front of** them;
but they did not make known unto me
the interpretation *thereof*.
8 *But at the last* **Until finally**
Daniel **Dani El** came in *before in front of* me,
whose name was *Belteshazzar* **Belte Shats Tsar**,
according to the name of my *god* **elah**,
and in whom is the spirit of the holy *gods* **elahim**:
and *before in front of* him I *told* **said** the dream, *saying*,
9 O *Belteshazzar* **Belte Shats Tsar**
master **great** of the *magicians* **horoscopists**,
because I know
that the spirit of the holy *gods* **elahim** is in thee,
and no *secret troubleth* **mystery distresseth** thee,
tell **say to** me the visions of my dream that I have seen,
and the interpretation *thereof*.
10 Thus were the visions of mine head in my bed;
I saw, and behold a tree in the midst of the earth,
and the height *thereof* was great.
11 The tree *grew* **greatened**, and was *strong* **empowered**,
and the height *thereof*
reached **spread** unto *heaven* **the heavens**,
and the sight *thereof*
to the *end* **consummation** of all the earth:
12 The *leaves thereof* were *fair* **foliage was beautiful**,
and the fruit *thereof* much,
and in it was *meat* **food** for all:
the *beasts* **live beings** of the field
had shadow **shaded** under it,
and the *fowls* **birds** of the *heaven* **heavens**
dwelt **whirled** in the *boughs* **branches** *thereof*,
and all flesh was *fed* **nourished** of it.
13 I saw in the visions of my head upon my bed,
and, behold, a *watcher* **waker** and an holy one
came down **descended** from *heaven* **the heavens**;
14 He *cried aloud* **called out with valour**, and said thus,
Hew **Cut** down the tree, and *cut* **chop** off his branches,
shake off his leaves **foliage**, and scatter his fruit:
let the *beasts* get away **live beings flee** from under it,
and the *fowls* **birds** from his branches:
15 *Nevertheless* **But**
leave the stump of his roots in the earth,
even with a band of iron and *brass* **copper**,
in the *tender grass* **sprouts** of the field;
and let it be *wet* **dyed**
with the dew of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and *let* his portion *be* with the *beasts* **live beings**
in the *grass* **herbage** of the earth:
16 Let his heart be changed from man's,
and let a *beast's* **live being's** heart be given unto him;
and let seven times pass over him.
17 This *matter* **decision**
is by the decree of the *watchers* **wakers**,
and the *demand* **mandate**
by the *word* **edict** of the holy ones:
to the *intent* **word** that the living may know
that *the most High* **ruleth Elyon is dominator**
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of men,
and giveth it to whomsoever he *will* **willeth**,
and *setteth up* **raiseth** over it the *basest* **lowliest** of men.
18 This dream
I *king* **Nebuchadnezzar** **sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar**
have seen.

DANIEL 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

THE DREAM OF NEBUKADNETS TSAR OF THE TREE

4 I Nebukadnets Tsar
being serene in my house and verdant in my manse:
5 I see a dream which terrifies me;
and the conceptions on my bed
and the visions of my head terrify me:
6 and I set a decree to have all the magi of Babel
enter in front of me,
to make known to me the interpretation of the dream:
7 then the horoscopists, the enchanters,
the Kesediym and the discerners enter:
and I say the dream in front of them;
and they make not known to me the interpretation:
8 until finally Dani El comes in front of me
— whose name is Belte Shats Tsar
according to the name of my elah
— and in whom is the spirit of the holy elahim:
and I say the dream in front of him,
9 O Belte Shats Tsar, great of the horoscopists,
because I know the spirit of the holy elahim is in you,
and no mystery distresses you,
say to me the visions of the dream I saw,
and the interpretation.
10 Thus are the visions of my head in my bed;
I see, and behold, a tree midst the earth,
and the height is great:
11 the tree greatens and empowers;
and the height spreads to the heavens,
and the sight to the consummation of all the earth:
12 the foliage is beautiful and the fruit much,
and food therein for all:
the live beings of the field shade under it
and the birds of the heavens whirl in its branches
and all flesh nourishes thereof.
13 I see, in the visions of my head on my bed,
and behold, a waker and a holy one
descend from the heavens;
14 he calls out with valour, and says thus:
Cut the tree and chop his branches;
shake its foliage and scatter its fruit:
so that the live beings flee from under it
and the birds from his branches:
15 but leave the stump of its roots in the earth,
even with a band of iron and copper
in the sprouts of the field
— dyed with the dew of the heavens;
and his portion with the live beings
in the herbage of the earth:
16 change his heart from that of a man
and give him a heart of a live being;
and seven times pass over him.
17 This decision is by the decree of the wakers;
and the mandate by the edict of the holy ones:
to the word so that the living know
Elyon is dominator in the sovereigndom of men,
and gives it to whomever he wills;
and raises the lowliest of men over it.
18 This dream, I sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar saw:

DANIEL 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Now thou, O Belteshazzar **Belte Shats Tsar**,
declare **say** the interpretation *thereof*,
forasmuch as **because that**

all the *wise men* **magi** of my *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
are not able to *make known unto me* **have me know**
the interpretation:
but thou art able;
for the spirit of the holy *gods* **elahim** is in thee.

DANI EL INTERPRETS THE DREAM OF THE TREE

19 Then *Daniel* **Dani El**,
whose name was *Belteshazzar* **Belte Shats Tsar**,
was *astonied* **astonished** for one *hour* **blink**,
and his *thoughts troubled* **intentions terrified** him.
The *king spake* **sovereign answered**, and said,
Belteshazzar **Belte Shats Tsar**,
let not the dream, or the interpretation *thereof*,
trouble **terrify** thee.
Belteshazzar **Belte Shats Tsar** answered and said,
My *lord* **master**, the dream be to them that hate thee,
and the interpretation *thereof* to thine enemies.
20 The tree that thou sawest,
which *grew* **greatened**, and was *strong* **empowered**,
whose height
reached **spread** unto the *heaven* **heavens**,
and the sight *thereof* to all the earth;
21 Whose *leaves were fair* **foliage was beautiful**,
and the fruit *thereof* much,
and in it was *meat* **food** for all;
under which
the *beasts* **live beings** of the field *dwelt* **whirled**,
and upon whose branches
the *fowls* **birds** of the *heaven* **heavens**
had their habitation **tabernacled**:
22 It is thou, O *king* **sovereign**,
that art *grown* **greatened**
and *become strong* **empowered**:
for thy greatness is *grown* **greatened**,
and *reacheth* **spreadeth** unto *heaven* **the heavens**,
and thy dominion to the *end* **consummation** of the earth.
23 And whereas the *king* **sovereign**
saw a *watcher* **waker** and an holy one
coming down **descending** from *heaven* **the heavens**,
and saying,
Hew **Cut** the tree down, and *destroy* **despoil** it;
yet **but**
leave the stump of the roots *thereof* in the earth,
even with a band of iron and *brass* **copper**,
in the *tender grass* **sprouts** of the field;
and let it be *wet* **dyed**
with the dew of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and *let* his portion
be with the *beasts* **live beings** of the field,
till seven times pass over him;
24 This is the interpretation, O *king* **sovereign**,
and this is the decree of the *most High* **Elyon**,
which is *come* **happened**
upon my *lord* **master** the *king* **sovereign**:
25 That they shall *drive* **expel** thee from men,
and thy *dwelling* **whirling**
shall be with the *beasts* **live beings** of the field,
and they shall *make* **cause** thee
to *eat* **feed** on *grass* **herbage** as *oxen* **bulls**,
and they shall *wet* **dye** thee
with the dew of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and seven times shall pass over thee,
till thou know that *the most High* **Elyon**
ruleth **dominateth** in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of men,
and giveth it to whomsoever he *will* **willeth**.
26 And whereas they *commanded* **said**
to leave the stump of the tree roots;
thy *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
shall be *sure* **permanent** unto thee,
after **from** that thou shalt *have known* **know**
that the heavens *do* **rule** **dominate**.
27 Wherefore **Therefore**, O *king* **sovereign**,
let my *counsel* **ruling** be *acceptable* **glorifying** unto thee,
and break off thy sins by *righteousness* **justness**,
and *thine iniquities* **thy perverseness**
by *shewing mercy* **granting charism** to the *poor* **humble**;

DANI EL 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and you, O Belte Shats Tsar, say the interpretation;
because all the magi of my sovereigndom
are not able to have me know the interpretation:
and you can;
for the spirit of the holy elahim is in you.

DANI EL INTERPRETS THE DREAM OF THE TREE

19 Then Dani El, whose name is Belte Shats Tsar,
is astonished for one blink
and his intentions terrify him.

The sovereign answers and says,
Belte Shats Tsar,
terrify not at the dream or the interpretation.

Belte Shats Tsar answers and says,
My master, the dream is to them who hate you;
and the interpretation to your enemies.
20 The tree you saw,
which greatens, and empowers,
whose height spreads to the heavens,
and the sight to all the earth;
21 whose foliage is beautiful, and the fruit much,
with food therein for all;
under which the live beings of the field whirl,
and on whose branches
the birds of the heavens tabernacle:
22 it is you, O sovereign,
who greatens and empowers:
for your greatness greatens
and spreads to the heavens,
and your dominion to the consummation of the earth.
23 And whereas the sovereign
saw a waker and an holy one
descend from the heavens,
and saying, Cut the tree, and despoil it;
but leave the stump of the roots in the earth
even with a band of iron and copper
in the sprouts of the field;
and dyed with the dew of the heavens,
and his portion with the live beings of the field,
until seven times pass over him.
24 This is the interpretation, O sovereign,
and this is the decree of the Elyon
which happens to my master the sovereign:
25 and they expel you from men
and you whirl with the live beings of the field;
and they have you feed on herbage as bulls
and they dye you with the dew of the heavens
and seven times pass over you,
until you know that Elyon
dominates in the sovereigndom of men,
and gives it to whomever he wills.
26 And whereas they say
to leave the stump of the tree roots;
your sovereigndom is permanent to you;
after you know that the heavens dominate.
27 Therefore, O sovereign,
my ruling is glorious to you;
and break off your sins by justness,
and your perverseness
by granting charism to the humble;

DANIEL 4, 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

if **whether** it may be
a lengthening of thy *tranquillity* **serenity**.

INTERPRETATION OF DANIEL FULFILLED

28 All this *came* **happened** upon
the king *Nebuchadnezzar* **sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar**.
29 At the end of twelve months
he walked in the *palace* **manse**
of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *Babylon* **Babel**.
30 The king *spake* **sovereign answered**, and said,
Is not this great *Babylon* **Babel**, that I have built
for the house of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
by the *might* **empowerment** of my power,
and for the *honour* **esteem** of my majesty?
31 While the *word* **utterance**
was in the *king's* **sovereign's** mouth,
there fell a voice from *heaven* **the heavens**, *saying*,
O king *Nebuchadnezzar* **sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar**,
to thee *it is spoken* **they are saying**;
The *kingdom* **sovereigndom** is *departed* **passed**
from thee.
32 And they shall *drive* **expel** thee from men,
and thy *dwelling* **whirling**
shall be with the *beasts* **live beings** of the field:
they shall *make* **cause** thee
to *eat grass* **feed on herbage** as *oxen* **bulls**,
and seven times shall pass over thee,
until thou know
that the *most High* **ruleth Elyon is dominator**
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of men,
and giveth it to whomsoever he *will* **willeth**.
33 The same *hour* **blink**
was the *thing fulfilled* **utterance consummated**
upon *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**:
and he was *driven* **expelled** from men,
and *did eat grass* **fed on herbage** as *oxen* **bulls**,
and his body was *wet* **dyed**
with the *dew of heaven* **the heavens**,
till his hairs were *grown* **greatened** like eagles' *feathers*,
and his nails like birds' *claws*.
34 And at the end of the days
I *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
lifted up mine eyes unto *heaven* **the heavens**,
and *mine understanding* **perception** returned unto me,
and I blessed the *most High* **Elyon**,
and I *praised* **lauded** and *honoured* **esteemed** him
that liveth *for ever* **eternally**,
whose dominion is an *everlasting* **eternal** dominion,
and his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
is from generation to generation:
35 And the *inhabitants of* **they that whirl on** the earth
are *reputed* **machinated** as *nothing* **nought**:
and he doeth *according to his will* **as he willeth**
in the *army* **among the valiant of heaven** **the heavens**,
and *among*
the *inhabitants of* **them that whirl on** the earth:
and none can *tay* his hand,
or say unto him, What *doest* **servest** thou?
36 At the same *time* **appointment**
my *reason* **perception** returned unto me;
and for the *glory* **esteem** of my *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
mine *honour* **majesty** and *brightness* **cheerfulness**
returned unto me;
and my counsellors and my *lords* **sought nobles**
requested unto me;
and I was *established* **restored**
in my *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
and excellent *majesty* **greatness** was added unto me.
37 Now I *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
praise **laud** and *extol* **exalt** and *honour* **esteem**
the *King* **Sovereign** of *heaven* **the heavens**,
all whose *works* **acts** are truth,
and his ways *judgment* **plead**:
and those that walk in *pride* **arrogance**
he is able to abase.

THE FEAST OF BEL SHATS TSAR

5 *Belshazzar* **Bel Shats Tsar**, the *king* **sovereign**
made a great feast to a thousand of his *lords* **nobles**,
and drank *wine* **fermentation**
before **in front of** the thousand.

DANIEL 4, 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

whether there be a lengthening of your serenity.

INTERPRETATION OF DANIEL FULFILLED

28 And all this happens on sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar.
29 At the end of twelve months
he walks in the manse of the sovereigndom of Babel:
30 the sovereign answers and says,
Is not this great Babel, which I built,
for the house of the sovereigndom
by the empowerment of my power,
and for the esteem of my majesty?
31 While the utterance
is still in the mouth of the sovereign,
a voice falls from the heavens,
O sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar,
to you they are saying;
the sovereigndom passes from you;
and they expel you from men;
32 and you whirl with the live beings of the field;
and feed on herbage as bulls:
and seven times pass over you;
until you know that the Elyon is dominator
in the sovereigndom of men,
and gives it to whomever he wills.
33 The same blink
the utterance consummates on Nebukadnets Tsar:
and he *is* expelled from men
and feeds on herbage as bulls;
and his body *is* dyed with the dew of the heavens,
until his hairs greaten as eagles and his nails as birds.
34 And at the end of the days,
I, Nebukadnets Tsar, lift my eyes to the heavens,
and perception returns to me,
and I bless Elyon,
and I laud and esteem him who lives eternally
— whose dominion is an eternal dominion
and his sovereigndom from generation to generation:
35 and all who whirl on the earth
are machinated as nought:
and he does as he wills
among the valiant of the heavens
and they who whirl on the earth:
and no one can strike his hand,
or say to him, What serve you?
36 At the same appointment
my perception returns to me;
and for the esteem of my sovereigndom,
my majesty and cheerfulness return to me;
and my counsellors and my nobles request to me;
and I *am* restored in my sovereigndom
and excellent greatness *is* added to me.
37 Now I, Nebukadnets Tsar,
laud and exalt and esteem
the Sovereign of the heavens
all whose acts are truth,
and his ways plead:
and they who walk in arrogance,
he is able to abase.

THE FEAST OF BEL SHATS TSAR

5 Bel Shats Tsar the sovereign
makes a great feast to a thousand of his nobles;
and drinks fermentation in front of the thousand.

DANIEL 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

2 Belshazzar **Bel Shats Tsar**,
whiles he tasted the *wine* **fermentation**,
commanded said to bring the golden and silver vessels
which his father *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar**
had taken **removed** out of the *temple* **manse**
which was in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
that the *king* **sovereign**, and his *princes* **nobles**,
his *wives* **mistresses**, and his concubines,
might drink *therein*.
3 Then they brought the golden vessels
that were taken **removed**
out of the *temple* **manse** of the house of *God* **Elah**
which was at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
and the *king* **sovereign**, and his *princes* **nobles**,
his *wives* **mistresses**, and his concubines, drank in them.
4 They drank *wine* **fermentation**,
and *praised* **lauded** the *gods* **elahim** of gold, and of silver,
of *brass* **copper**, of iron, of *wood* **timber**, and of stone.

THE SCRIBING ON THE WALL

5 In the same *hour* **blink**
came forth *fingers* **emerged digits** of a man's hand,
and *wrote* **inscribed**
over against **in front of** the *candlestick* **menorah**
upon the plaister of the wall
of the *king's palace* **sovereign's manse**:
and the *king* **sovereign** saw the *part* **palm** of the hand
that *wrote* **inscribed**.
6 Then the *king's countenance* **sovereign's cheerfulness**
was changed,
and his *thoughts* **troubled intentions** terrified him,
so that the *joints* **vertebrae** of his loins
were *loosed* **released**,
and his knees *smote* **knocked** one against another.
7 The *king* **cried aloud** **sovereign called out with valour**
to *bring in* **enter** the *astrologers* **enchanters**,
the *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**, and the *soothsayers* **discerners**.
And the *king* **spake** **sovereign answered**,
and said to the *wise men* **magi** of *Babylon* **Babel**,
Whosoever **Whatever man**
shall *read* **call out** this *writing* **inscribing**,
and shew me the interpretation *thereof*,
shall be *clothed* **enrobed** with *scarlet* **purple**,
and have a *chain* **necklace** of gold about his neck,
and shall be the third
ruler **to dominate** in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
8 Then *came in* **entered**
all the *king's wise men* **sovereign's magi**:
but they could not *read* **call out** the *writing* **inscribing**,
nor make known to the *king* **sovereign**
the interpretation *thereof*.
9 Then was *king* **Belshazzar** **sovereign Bel Shats Tsar**
greatly *troubled* **terrified**,
and his *countenance* **cheerfulness** was changed in him,
and his *lords* **nobles** were *astonied* **perplexed**.
10 Now the *queen* **sovereigness**
by reason **because** of the *words* **utterances**
of the *king* **sovereign** and his *lords* **nobles**
came **entered** into the banquet house:
and the *queen* **spake** **sovereigness answered** and said,
O *king* **sovereign**, live *for ever* **eternally**:
let not *thy thoughts* **trouble** **thine intentions** terrify thee,
nor let *thy countenance* **cheerfulness** be changed:
11 There is a *man* **mighty** in thy *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
in whom is the spirit of the holy *gods* **elahim**;
and in the days of thy father
light and *understanding* **comprehension** and wisdom,
like the wisdom of the *gods* **elahim**, was found in him;
whom
the king **Nebuchadnezzar** **sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar**
thy father, the *king* **sovereign**, I say, thy father,
made master **raised great** of the *magicians* **horoscopists**,
astrologers **enchanters**, *Chaldeans* **Kesediym**,
and *soothsayers* **discerners**;
12 *Forasmuch* **Because that** as an excellent spirit,
and *knowledge* **perception**,
and *understanding* **comprehension**,

DANIEL 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

2 Bel Shats Tsar, as he tastes the fermentation,
says to bring the golden and silver vessels
his father Nebukadnets Tsar
removed from the manse in Yeru Shalem;
for the sovereign and his nobles,
his mistresses and his concubines to drink.
3 Then they bring the golden vessels they removed
from the manse of the house of Elah at Yeru Shalem;
and the sovereign and his nobles,
his mistresses and his concubines drink in them.
4 They drink fermentation;
and laud the elahim of gold and of silver,
of copper, of iron, of timber and of stone.

THE SCRIBING ON THE WALL

5 In the same blink
digits of the hand of a man emerge,
and inscribe in front of the menorah
on the plaster of the wall
of the manse of the sovereign:
and the sovereign
sees the palm of the hand that inscribes:
then the cheerfulness of the sovereign changes
and his intentions terrify him
— so that the vertebrae of his loins release,
and his knees knock one against another.
6 The sovereign calls out with valour
to have the enchanters
the Kesediym and the discerners enter:
and the sovereign answers,
and says to the magi of Babel,
Whatever man calls out this inscribing
and shows me the interpretation
enrobes with purple
with a necklace of gold around his neck
and dominates — third in the sovereigndom.
7 Then all the magi of the sovereign enter:
but they can neither call out the inscribing
nor make known the interpretation to the sovereign.
8 Then sovereign Bel Shats Tsar terrifies greatly
and his cheerfulness changes in him;
and his nobles are perplexed.
9 The sovereigness,
because of the utterances
of the sovereign and his nobles,
enters into the banquet house:
and the sovereigness answers and says,
O sovereign, live eternally:
may neither your intentions terrify you,
nor your cheerfulness change:
10 there is a mighty in your sovereigndom
in whom is the spirit of the holy elahim;
and in the days of your father
light and comprehension and wisdom,
as the wisdom of the elahim, was found in him;
whom sovereign Nebukadnets Tsar your father
— the sovereign — your father raised
— the great of the horoscopists,
enchanters, Kesediym and discerners;
because of the excellent spirit
and perception and comprehension

DANIEL 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

interpreting of dreams,
and *showing* **solving** of *hard sentences* **enigmas**,
and *dissolving* **unraveling** of *doubts* **riddles**,
were found in the same *Daniel* **Dani El**,
whom the *king named* **sovereign set the name**
Belshazzar **Belte Shats Tsar**:
now let *Daniel* **Dani El** be called,
and he *will* **shall** shew the interpretation.
13 Then was *Daniel brought in* **Dani El entered**
before **in front of the king** **sovereign**.
And the *king* **sovereign**
spake **answered** and said unto *Daniel* **Dani El**,
Art thou that *Daniel* **Dani El**,
which art of the *children* **sons** of the *captivity* **exiles**
of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
whom the *king* **sovereign** my father
brought out of *Jewry* **Yah Hudah**?
14 I have even heard of thee,
that the spirit of the *gods* **elahim** is in thee,
and that light and *understanding* **comprehension**
and excellent wisdom is found in thee.
15 And now the *wise men* **magi**,
the *astrologers* **enchanters**,
have been *brought in before* **entered in front of** me,
that they should *read* **call out** this *writing* **inscribing**,
and make known unto me the interpretation *thereof*:
but they could not
shew the interpretation of the *thing* **utterance**:
16 And I have heard of thee,
that thou canst *make* **interpret** interpretations,
and *dissolve* **doubts** **unravel riddles**:
now if thou canst *read* **call out** the *writing* **inscribing**,
and make known to me the interpretation *thereof*,
thou shalt be *clothed* **enrobed** with *scarlet* **purple**,
and have a *chain* **necklace** of gold about thy neck,
and shalt be the third *ruler* **to dominate**
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
DANI EL INTERPRETS THE INSCRIBING
17 Then *Daniel* **Dani El** answered
and said *before* **in front of the king** **sovereign**,
Let thy gifts be to thyself,
and give thy *rewards* **largess** to another;
yet **however**
I will read **shall call out** the *writing* **inscribing**
unto the *king* **sovereign**,
and make known to him the interpretation.
18 O thou *king* **sovereign**,
the *most high* **God Elyon Elah**
gave *Nebuchadnezzar* **Nebukadnets Tsar** thy father
a *kingdom* **sovereigndom**, and *majesty* **greatness**,
and *glory* **esteem**, and *honour* **majesty**:
19 And *for the* **majesty from the greatness**
that he gave him,
all people, nations, and *languages* **tongues**
trembled **became agitated**
and *feared before* **terrified in front of** him:
whom he *would* **willed**, he *slew* **severed**;
and whom he *would* **willed**, he *kept alive* **let live**;
and whom he *would* **willed**, he *set up* **lifted**;
and whom he *would* **willed**, he *put down* **abased**.
20 But when his heart was lifted up,
and his *mind* **spirit**
hardened **empowered** in *pride* **seething**,
he was deposed from his *kingly* **sovereigndom** throne,
and they *took* **passed** his *glory* **esteem** from him:
21 And he was *driven* **expelled** from the sons of men;
and his heart
was *made like the beasts* **equated to live beings**,
and his *dwelling* **whirling**
was with the *wild asses* **onagers**:
they fed him with *grass like oxen* **herbage as bulls**,
and his body was *wet* **died**
with the dew of *heaven* **the heavens**;
till he knew that the *most high* **God Elyon Elah**
ruled **is dominator** in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of men,
and that he *appointeth* **raiseth** over it
whomsoever he *will* **willeth**.
22 And thou his *son* **bar**, O *Belshazzar* **Bel Shats Tsar**,
hast not *humbled* **abased** thine heart,

DANIEL 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

interpreting of dreams and solving of enigmas
and unraveling of riddles found in the same Dani El
— to whom the sovereign set the name
Belte Shats Tsar:
now call Dani El, and he shows the interpretation.
13 Then Dani El enters in front of the sovereign;
and the sovereign answers and says to Dani El,
Are you that Dani El
of the sons of the exiles of Yah Hudah
whom the sovereign my father
brought from Yah Hudah?
14 I hear of you, that the spirit of elahim is in you,
and that light and comprehension
and excellent wisdom *is* found in you:
15 and now the magi, the enchanters,
entered in front of me to call out this inscribing,
and make known the interpretation to me:
but they cannot show
the interpretation of the utterance:
and I — I hear of you,
16 that you can interpret interpretations
and unravel riddles:
now behold, *if* you can call out the inscribing
and make known the interpretation to me
I enrobe you with purple
with a necklace of gold around your neck;
and to dominate — third in the sovereigndom.
DANI EL INTERPRETS THE INSCRIBING
17 Then Dani El answers
and says in front of the sovereign,
Your gifts are yours
and give your largess to another;
however I call out the inscribing to the sovereign
and have him know the interpretation.
18 You, O sovereign,
Elyon Elah gave Nebukadnets Tsar your father
a sovereigndom and greatness
and esteem and majesty:
19 and from the greatness he gave him,
all people, nations and tongues
became agitated and terrified in front of him:
whom he willed, he severed;
and whom he willed, enlivened;
and whom he willed, he lifted;
and whom he willed, he abased:
20 and when he lifted his heart
and empowered his spirit in seething
he was deposed from the throne of his sovereigndom,
and his esteem passed from him
— expelled from the sons of men;
and his heart was equated to live beings,
and his whirling was with the onagers:
they fed him with herbage as bulls,
and his body was dyed with the dew of the heavens;
until he knew that Elyon Elah
is dominator in the sovereigndom of men,
and that he raises over it whomever he wills.
22 And you his bar, O Bel Shats Tsar,
have not abased your heart

DANIEL 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 *though because that* thou knewest all this;
But hast lifted up thyself
against the *Lord Master* of *heaven the heavens*;
and they have brought the vessels of his house
before in front of thee,
and thou, and thy *lords nobles*,
thy *wives mistresses*, and thy concubines,
have drunk *wine fermentation* in them;
and thou hast *praised lauded* the *gods elahim* of silver,
and gold, of *brass copper*, iron, *wood timber*, and stone,
which see not, nor hear, nor know:
and *the God Elah* in whose hand thy breath is,
and whose are all thy ways,
hast thou not *glorified esteemed*:
24 Then was the *part palm* of the hand
sent *from in front of him*;
and this *writing inscribing* was *written signed*.
25 And this is the *writing inscribing*
that was *written signed*,
MENE/NUMBERED, MENE/NUMBERED,
TEKEL/BALANCED, UPHARSIN/SPLIT.
26 This is the interpretation of the *thing utterance*:
MENE/NUMBERED;
God Elah hath numbered thy *kingdom sovereignty*,
and *finished it shalamed*.
27 TEKEL/BALANCED;
Thou art *weighed balanced* in the balances,
and art found *wanting deficient*.
28 PERES/SPLIT;
Thy *kingdom sovereignty* is *divided split*,
and given to the *Medes Maday* and Persians.
29 Then *commanded Belshazzar said Belte Shats Tsar*,
and they *clothed Daniel enrobed Dani El*
with *scarlet purple*,
and *put a chain necklace* of gold about his neck,
and *made a proclamation announced* concerning him,
that he should be the third *ruler dominator*
in the *kingdom sovereignty*.
30 In that night was *Belshazzar Bel Shats Tsar*,
the *king sovereign* of the *Chaldeans Kesediym*
slain severed.
31 And *Darius Daryavesh* the *Median Maday*
took the *kingdom sovereignty*,
being about threescore a son of sixty and two years *old*.
DARYAVESH RAISES ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY SATRAPS
6 It *pleased Darius was glorifying in front of Daryavesh*
to *set raise* over the *kingdom sovereignty*
an hundred and twenty *princes satraps*,
which should be over the whole *kingdom sovereignty*;
2 And over these three *presidents eunuchs*;
of whom *Daniel Dani El* was first:
that the *princes these satraps*
might give *accounts decrees* unto them,
and the *king sovereign* should have no damage.
3 Then this *Daniel Dani El*
was preferred became preeminent
above the *presidents eunuchs* and *princes satraps*,
because an excellent spirit was in him;
and the *king sovereign* thought to *set raise* him
over the whole *realm sovereignty*.
DARYAVESH RAISES A BOND
4 Then the *presidents eunuchs* and *princes satraps*
sought to find *occasion pretext* against *Daniel Dani El*
concerning the *kingdom sovereignty*;
but they could find
none occasion no pretext nor *fault ruining*;
forasmuch as because that he was *faithful trustworthy*,
neither was there any error or *fault ruining* found in him.
5 Then said these *men mighty*,
We shall not find any *occasion pretext*
against this *Daniel Dani El*,
except therefore we find it against him
concerning the *law decree* of his *God Elah*.
6 Then these *presidents eunuchs* and *princes satraps*
assembled together conspired to the *king sovereign*,
and said thus unto him,
King Darius Sovereign Daryavesh, live for ever *eternally*.
7 All the *presidents eunuchs* of the *kingdom sovereignty*,
the *governors prefects*, and the *princes satraps*,

DANIEL 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

23 *even though* you know all this;
and you lift yourself
against the Master of the heavens;
and they bring the vessels of his house in front of you;
and you and your nobles,
your mistresses and your concubines
drink fermentation in them;
and you laud the elahim of silver and gold,
of copper, iron, timber and stone,
which neither see nor hear nor know:
and Elah in whose hand your breath is,
and whose all your ways are,
you esteem not.
24 Then the palm of the hand is sent in front of him;
and this inscribing is signed:
25 and this is the inscribing that is signed,
MENE/NUMBERED, MENE/NUMBERED,
TEKEL/BALANCED, UPHARSIN/SPLIT.
26 This is the interpretation of the utterance:
MENE/NUMBERED;
Elah numbers your sovereignty,
and shalams:
27 TEKEL/BALANCED;
You are balanced in the balances,
and found deficient:
28 PERES/SPLIT;
Your sovereignty is split,
and given to the Maday and Persians.
29 Then Belte Shats Tsar says
to enrobe Dani El with purple,
with a necklace of gold around his neck;
and announces concerning him,
to become the third dominator in the sovereignty.
30 In that night,
Bel Shats Tsar the sovereign of the Kesediym
is severed.
31 And Daryavesh the Maday
takes the sovereignty
— a son of sixty—two years.
DARYAVESH RAISES ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY SATRAPS
6 And so it is glorifying in front of Daryavesh
to raise a hundred and twenty satraps
over the sovereignty
— three over the whole sovereignty
and over these eunuchs,
— of whom Dani El is one
— that these satraps give decrees to them,
that the sovereign have no damage.
3 Then this Dani El
becomes preeminent over the eunuchs and satraps
because of the excellent spirit in him;
and the sovereign thinks to raise him
over the whole sovereignty.
DARYAVESH RAISES A BOND
4 Then the eunuchs and satraps
seek to find a pretext against Dani El
concerning the sovereignty;
but they can find no pretext or ruining
because he is trustworthy;
nor find any error or ruining in him.
5 Then these mighty say,
We find not any pretext against this Dani El;
except we find against him
concerning the decree of his Elah.
6 Then these eunuchs and satraps
conspire to the sovereign;
and say thus to him,
Sovereign Daryavesh, live eternally.
7 All the eunuchs of the sovereignty
the prefects and the satraps

DANIEL 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the counsellors, and the *captains* **governors**,
have consulted together
to *establish* **raise up** a royal statute,
and to *make a firm a decree* **empower an edict**,
that whosoever shall *ask* **request a petition request**
of any *God* **Elah** or man *for* **until** thirty days,
save **except** of thee, O *king* **sovereign**,
he shall be *cast* **hurled** into the *den* **dugout** of lions.
8 Now, O *king* **sovereign**, *establish* **raise** the *decree* **bond**,
and sign the *writing* **inscribing**, that it be not changed,
according to the *law* **decree**
of the *Medes* **Maday** and Persians,
which *altereth* **passeth** not.
9 *Wherefore* **Therefore then**
king **Darius** **sovereign** **Daryavesh**
signed the *writing* **inscribing** and the *decree* **bond**.
10 Now when *Daniel* **Dani El** knew
that the *writing* **inscribing** was signed,
he *went* **entered** into his house;
and his windows being open in his *chamber* **upper room**
toward *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
he kneeled upon his knees
three *times* **appointments** a day,
and *prayed*,
and *gave thanks* **spread hands**
before **in front of** his *God* **Elah**,
as he did *afortime* **formerly**.
11 Then these *men* **assembled** **mighty conspired**,
and found *Daniel* **Dani El**
praying and making supplication **requesting charism**
before **in front of** his *God* **Elah**.
12 Then they *came near* **approached**,
and *spake before* **said in front of** the *king* **sovereign**
concerning the *king's decree* **sovereign's bond**;
Hast thou not signed a *decree* **bond**,
that every man that shall *ask a petition* **request**
of any *God* **Elah** or man *within* **until** thirty days,
save **except** of thee, O *king* **sovereign**,
shall be cast into the *den* **dugout** of lions?
The *king* **sovereign** answered and said,
The *thing* **utterance** is *true* **certain**,
according to the *law* **decree**
of the *Medes* **Maday** and Persians, which altereth not.
13 Then answered they
and said *before* **in front of** the *king* **sovereign**,
That *Daniel* **Dani El**, which is of the *children* **sons**
of the *captivity* **exile** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
regardeth not **his taste to** thee, O *king* **sovereign**,
nor the decree that thou hast signed,
but *maketh* **requesteth** his *petition* **request**
three *times* **appointments** a day.
14 Then the *king* **sovereign**,
when he heard these *words* **utterances**,
was sore displeased **much stank** with himself,
and set his *heart* **anxiety** on *Daniel* **Dani El**
to *deliver* **liberate** him:
and he laboured till the *going down* **downing** of the sun
to *deliver* **rescue** him.
15 Then these *men* **mighty**
assembled **conspired** unto the *king* **sovereign**,
and said unto the *king* **sovereign**,
Know, O *king* **sovereign**,
that the *law* **decree** of the *Medes* **Maday** and Persians is,
That no *decree* **bond** nor *statute* **edict**
which the *king* **establisheth** **sovereign raiseth**
may be changed.

DANI EL IN THE DUGOUT

16 Then the *king* **commanded** **sovereign** **said**,
and they brought *Daniel* **Dani El**,
and *cast* **hurled** him into the *den* **dugout** of lions.
Now the *king* **spake** **sovereign** **answered**
and said unto *Daniel* **Dani El**,
Thy *God* **Elah**
whom thou servest *continually* **perpetually**,
he *will deliver* **shall liberate** thee.
17 And a **one** stone was brought,
and *laid* **set** upon the mouth of the *den* **dugout**;
and the *king* **sovereign** sealed it with his own signet,
and with the signet of his *lords* **nobles**;

DANI EL 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the counsellors and the governors
consulted together to raise a royal statute
and to empower an edict
— that whoever requests a request
of any Elah or man until thirty days,
except of you, O sovereign,
be hurled into the dugout of lions:
8 now, O sovereign, raise the bond,
and sign the inscribing, that it not change,
according to the decree of the Maday and Persians
which passes not.
9 — so sovereign Daryavesh
signs the inscribing and the bond.
10 And Dani El, knowing the inscribing is signed,
enters into his house,
opens his windows in his upper room
toward Yeru Shalem,
he kneels on his knees three appointments a day,
and prays and spreads hands in front of his Elah,
as he did formerly.
11 Then these mighty conspire;
and find Dani El
requesting charism in front of his Elah:
12 then they approach in front of the sovereign
and say concerning the bond of the sovereign;
Signed you not a bond,
that every man who requests
of any Elah or man until thirty days,
except of you, O sovereign,
be cast into the dugout of lions?
The sovereign answers and says,
The utterance is certain,
according to the decree of the Maday and Persians
which alters not.
13 Then they answer
and say in front of the sovereign,
That Dani El of the sons of the exile of Yah Hudah
neither regards this taste to you, O sovereign,
nor the decree you signed;
but requests his request three appointments a day.
14 Then when the sovereign hears these utterances,
he stinks much with himself,
and sets his anxiety on Dani El to liberate him:
and he labors until the downing of the sun
to rescue him.
15 Then these mighty conspire to the sovereign
and say to the sovereign,
Know, O sovereign,
the decree of the Maday and Persians
— that any bond or edict the sovereign raises
is not changed.

DANI EL IN THE DUGOUT

16 Then the sovereign says to bring Dani El;
and they hurl him into the dugout of lions.
The sovereign answers and says to Dani El,
Your Elah, whom you serve perpetually,
he liberates you.
17 And they bring one stone
and set it on the mouth of the dugout;
and the sovereign seals it with his own signet
and with the signet of his nobles;

DANIEL 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that *the purpose* **his will** might not be changed concerning *Daniel* **Dani El**.

18 Then the *king* **sovereign** went to his *palace* **manse**, and *passed the night* **lodged overnight** fasting: neither were instruments of *musick* brought before **entered in front of** him: and his sleep *went* **fled** from him.

19 Then the *king* **sovereign** arose *very early in the morning* **in the splendour of dawn**, and went *in haste* **hastily** unto the *den* **dugout** of lions.

20 And when he *came to* **approached** the *den* **dugout**, he cried with a *lamentable* **contorting** voice unto *Daniel* **Dani El**: and the *king* **spake** **sovereign answered** and said to *Daniel* **Dani El**,
O *Daniel* **Dani El**, servant of the living *God* **Elah**, is thy *God* **Elah**, whom thou servest continually, able to *deliver* **liberate** thee from the lions?

DANI EL LIBERATED FROM THE DUGOUT

21 Then *said* *Daniel* **uttered Dani El** unto the *king* **sovereign**,
O *king* **sovereign**, live *for ever* **eternally**.
My *God* **Elah** hath sent his angel, and hath shut the lions' mouths, that they have not *hurt* **despoiled** me: *forasmuch as before* **because that in front of** him *innocency* **purity** was found in me; and also *before* **in front of** thee,
O *king* **sovereign**, have I done no *hurt* **wickedness**.

23 Then was the *king* **sovereign** exceeding *glad* **rejoiced** for him, and *commanded* **said** that they should take *Daniel* **up Dani El** out of the *den* **dugout**.
So *Daniel* **Dani El** was taken *up* out of the *den* **dugout**, and no *manner of hurt* **damage** was found upon him, because he *believed* **trusted** in his *God* **Elah**.

24 And the *king* **commanded** **sovereign said**, and they brought those *men* **mighty** which had *accused* *Daniel* **chewed out Dani El**, and they *cast* **hurled** them into the *den* **dugout** of lions, them, their *children* **sons**, and their *wives* **women**; and *had the mastery of* **the lions dominated** them, and *brake all* **pulverized** their bones *in pieces* or ever **ere** they *came* **happened** at the bottom of the *den* **dugout**.

THE DECREE OF DARYAVESH

25 Then *king* *Darius* **sovereign Daryavesh** wrote **inscribed** unto all people, nations, and *languages* **tongues**, that *dwell* **twirl** in all the earth;
Peace **Shalom** be *multiplied* **increased** unto you.
I *make* **set in front of me** a decree,
That in every dominion of my *kingdom* **sovereigndom** men *tremble* **become agitated** and *fear* **terrify** before the *God* **in front of the Elah** of *Daniel* **Dani El**:
for he is the living *God* **Elah**, and *stedfast for ever* **permanent eternally**, and his *kingdom* **sovereigndom** that which shall not be *destroyed* **despoiled**, and his dominion shall be *even* unto the *end* **consummation**.

27 He *delivereth* **liberateth** and rescueth, and he *worketh signs* **doeth omens** and *wonders* **marvels** in *heaven* **the heavens** and in earth, who hath *delivered* *Daniel* **liberated Dani El** from the *power* **hand** of the lions.

28 So this *Daniel* **Dani El** prospered in the *reign* **sovereigndom** of *Darius* **Daryavesh**, and in the *reign* **sovereigndom** of *Cyrus* **Koresh** the Persian.

THE DREAM OF DANI EL, OF FOUR LIVE BEINGS

7 In the first year of *Belshazzar* **Bel Shats Tsar** *king* **sovereign** of *Babylon* **Babel** *Daniel* **Dani El** saw a dream and visions of his head upon his bed:
then he wrote **inscribed** the dream, and *told* **said** the sum of the *matters* **utterances**.

DANI EL 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

that his will concerning Dani El not change.

18 Then the sovereign goes to his manse and lodges overnight fasting; and his instruments enter not in front of him and his sleep flees from him.

19 Then the sovereign rises in the splendor of dawn and goes hastily to the dugout of lions: and he approaches the dugout and with a contorted voice, cries to Dani El: and the sovereign answers and says to Dani El, O Dani El, servant of the living Elah, is your Elah, whom you serve continually, able to liberate you from the lions?

DANI EL LIBERATED FROM THE DUGOUT

21 Then Dani El utters to the sovereign, O sovereign, live eternally.

22 My Elah sent his angel, and shut the mouths of the lions that they not despoil me: because, in front of him, purity is found in me; and also in front of you, O sovereign, I did no wickedness.

23 Then the sovereign rejoices exceedingly for him; and says to take Dani El from the dugout: and they take Dani El from the dugout; and they find no damage on him, because he trusted in his Elah.

24 And the sovereign says to bring those mighty who chewed out Dani El; and they hurl them into the dugout of lions — them, their sons and their women; and the lions dominate them and pulverize their bones ere they happen at the bottom of the dugout

THE DECREE OF DARYAVESH

25 Then sovereign Daryavesh inscribes to all people, nations and tongues who whirl in all the earth, Shalom be increased to you.

26 I set a decree in front of me, that in every dominion of my sovereigndom that men agitate and terrify in front of the Elah of Dani El: for he is the living Elah and eternally permanent; and his sovereigndom despoils not, and his dominion is to the consummation. He liberates and rescues; and he does omens and marvels in the heavens and in earth — who liberated Dani El from the hand of the lions.

28 And this Dani El prospers in the sovereigndom of Daryavesh; and in the sovereigndom of Koresh the Persian.

THE DREAM OF DANI EL, OF FOUR LIVE BEINGS

7 In the first year of Bel Shats Tsar sovereign of Babel Dani El sees a dream and visions of his head on his bed: then he inscribes the dream and says the sum of the utterances:

DANIEL 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 Daniel spake **Dani El** answered and said,
I saw in my vision by night, and, behold,
the four winds of the *heaven* **heavens**
strove **rushed** upon the great sea.
3 And four great *beasts* **live beings**
came up **ascended** from the sea,
diverse **changed** one from another.
4 The first was like a lion, and had eagle's wings:
I beheld **saw** till the wings *thereof* were plucked,
and it was lifted up from the earth,
and *made stand* **raised** upon the feet as a man,
and a man's heart was given to it.
5 And behold another *beast* **live being**,
a second, like to a bear,
and it raised up itself on *one* **its** side,
and it had three ribs
in the mouth of it between the teeth of it:
and they said thus unto it, Arise, devour much flesh.
6 After this I beheld **saw**, and *lo* **behold** another,
like a leopard,
which had upon the back of it four wings of a *fowl* **flyer**;
the *beast* **live being** had also four heads;
and dominion was given to it.
7 After this I saw in the night visions,
and behold a fourth *beast* **live being**,
dreadful **terrifying** and *terrible* **burly**,
and *strong exceedingly* **exceedingly mighty**;
and it had great iron teeth:
it devoured and *brake in pieces* **pulverized**,
and *stamped* **trampled**
the *residue* **survivors** with the feet of it:
and it was *diverse* **changed**
from all the *beasts* **live beings**
that were *before* **in front of** it;
and it had ten horns.
8 I considered **was comprehending** the horns,
and, behold,
there *came up among* **ascended between** them
another little horn,
before **in front of** whom there were
three of the first horns *plucked up by the roots* **uprooted**:
and, behold, in this horn were eyes like the eyes of man,
and a mouth *speaking* **uttering** great things.
9 I beheld **saw** till the thrones were *cast down* **hurled**,
and the Ancient of days did sit,
whose *garment* **robe** was white as snow,
and the hair of his head like the *pure* **clean** wool:
his throne was like the fiery flame,
and his wheels as *burning* **flaming** fire.
10 A fiery *stream issued* **river flowed**
and *came forth* **emerged** from *before* **in front of** him:
thousand thousands ministered unto him,
and *ten thousand times ten thousand* **a myriad myriads**
stood before **rose up in front of** him:
the judgment was set,
and the *books* **scrolls** were opened.
11 I beheld **saw** then
because of the voice of the great *words* **utterances**
which the horn *spake* **uttered**:
I beheld *even* **saw**
till the *beast* **live being** was *slain* **severed**,
and his body destroyed, and given to the burning flame.
12 As *concerning* the *rest* **survivors**
of the *beasts* **live beings**,
they had their dominion *taken* **pass** away:
yet their lives were *prolonged* **given**
for a season **until an appointment** and time.
13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold,
one like the Son/**Bar** of man
came **coming** with the clouds of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and *came* **coming** to the Ancient of days,
and they *brought* **approached** him *near*
before **in front of** him.
14 And there was given him dominion,
and *glory* **esteem**, and a *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
that all people, nations, and *languages* **tongues**,
should serve him:

DANIEL 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 Dani El answers and says,
I see in my vision by night, and behold,
the four winds of the heavens rush on the great sea:
and four great live beings ascend from the sea,
changed one from another.
4 The first like a lion with wings of an eagle:
I see until the wings *are* plucked;
and it lifts from the earth
and it raises on its feet as a man;
and it *is* given the heart of a man.
5 And behold, another live being,
a second, like a bear:
and it raises itself on its side;
with three ribs in its mouth between its teeth:
and they say thus to it,
Rise, devour much flesh.
6 After this I see, and behold,
another like a leopard:
and on its back, four wings of a flyer;
the live being also having four heads;
and it *is* given dominion.
7 After this I see in the night visions,
and behold, a fourth live being,
terrifying and burly, and exceedingly mighty,
with great iron teeth:
it devours and pulverizes and tramples
the survivors with its feet:
and it *is* changed
from all the live beings in front of it
— with ten horns.
8 I am comprehending the horns, and behold,
another little horn ascends between them;
in front of whom three of the first horns uproot:
and behold, in this horn, eyes like the eyes of man,
and a mouth uttering greatly.
9 I see until the thrones are hurled:
and the Ancient of days sits
with robe as white snow,
and the hair of his head as clean wool;
his throne as a fiery flame
and his wheels as flaming fire.
10 A fiery river flows
and emerges from in front of him:
a thousand thousands minister to him,
and a myriad myriads rise in front of him:
the judgment is set,
and the scrolls are opened.
11 I see, then,
because of the voice of the great utterances
the horn utters:
I see until the live being is severed
and his body destroyed
and given to the burning flame:
the survivors of the live beings,
pass their dominion away:
yet their lives *are* given
until an appointment and time.
13 I see in the night visions,
and behold, like the Son/Bar of man,
comes with the clouds of the heavens,
and comes to the Ancient of days,
and they approach in front of him:
and he is given dominion
and esteem and a sovereigndom
— so that all people, nations and tongues serve him:

DANIEL 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

his dominion is an *everlasting eternal* dominion,
which shall not pass away,
and his *kingdom sovereignty*
that which shall not be *destroyed despoiled*.

15 I *Daniel Dani El* was grieved in my spirit
in the midst of my *body sheath*,
and the visions of my head *troubled terrified* me.

DANI EL INTERPRETS THE UTTERANCES

16 I *came near approached*
unto one of them that *stood by rose*,
and *asked requested of* him the *truth certainty* of all this.
So he *told said to me*, and made me know
the interpretation of the *things utterances*.

17 These great *beasts live beings*,
which are four, are four *kings sovereigns*,
which shall arise out of the earth.

18 But the *saints holy of the most High Elyon*
shall take the *kingdom sovereignty*,
and *possess hold* the *kingdom sovereignty*
for ever eternally,
even *for ever eternally* and *ever eternally*.

19 Then I *would willed to* know the *truth certainty*
of the fourth *beast live being*,
which was *diverse changed* from all the others,
exceeding *dreadful terrifying*,
whose teeth were of iron, and his nails of *brass copper*;
which devoured, *brake in pieces pulverized*,
and *stamped trampled* the *residue survivors* with his feet;

20 And of the ten horns that were in his head,
and of the other which *came up ascended*,
and *before in front of* whom three fell;
even of that horn that had eyes,
and a mouth that *spake uttered* very great *things*,
whose *look vision* was *more stout greater*
than his *fellows companions*.

21 I *beheld saw*,
and the same horn made war with the *saints holy*,
and prevailed against them;

22 *Until* the Ancient of days came,
and *judgment the pleading of the cause*
was given to the *saints holy of the most High Elyon*;
and the *time came appointment happened*
that the *saints holy*
possessed held the *kingdom sovereignty*.

23 Thus he said, The fourth *beast live being*
shall be the fourth *kingdom sovereignty* upon earth,
which shall be *diverse changed* from all kingdoms,
and shall devour the whole earth,
and shall tread it down, and *break pulverize it in pieces*.

24 And the ten horns out of this *kingdom sovereignty*
are ten *kings sovereigns* that shall arise:
and another shall rise after them;
and he shall be *diverse changed* from the first,
and he shall *subdue abase* three *kings sovereigns*.

25 And he shall *speak great words utter utterances*
against concerning the *most High Elyon*,
and shall wear out the *saints holy of the most High Elyon*,
and *think willet*h to change
times appointments and *laws decrees*:
and they shall be given into his hand
until a time and times and the dividing of time.

26 But the *judgment pleaded shall sit is set*,
and they shall *take pass* away his dominion,
to *consume desolate* and to destroy it
unto the *end consummation*.

27 And the *kingdom sovereignty* and dominion,
and the greatness of the *kingdom sovereignty*
under the whole *heaven heavens*,
shall be given to the people
of the *saints holy of the most High Elyon*,
whose *kingdom sovereignty*
is an *everlasting kingdom eternal sovereignty*,
and all dominions shall serve and *obey hearken unto* him.

28 *Hitherto Until thus*
is the *end conclusion* of the *matter utterance*.
As for me Daniel I — Dani El,
my *cogitations intentions* much *troubled terrified* me,
and my *countenance cheerfulness* changed in me:
but I *kept guarded* the *matter utterance* in my heart.

DANI EL 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

his dominion *is* an eternal dominion
which passes not away;
and his sovereignty despoils not.

15 I Dani El grieve in my spirit midst my sheath,
and the visions of my head terrify me.

DANI EL INTERPRETS THE UTTERANCES

16 I approach one of them who rises,
and request of him the certainty of all this:
and he says to me
and has me know the interpretation of the utterances.

17 These great live beings, four,
are four sovereigns rising from the earth:
18 and the holy of Elyon take the sovereignty,
and hold the sovereignty eternally
— even eternally and eternally.

19 Then I will to know
the certainty of the fourth live being,
who *is* changed from all the others
— exceeding terrifying,
— teeth of iron and his nails of copper;
who devours, pulverizes
and tramples the survivors with his feet;

20 and of the ten horns in his head,
and of the other which ascends,
and in front of whom three fall;
even of that horn with eyes
and a mouth uttering very great;
whose vision *is* greater than his companions.

21 I see,
and the same horn makes war with the holy;
and prevails against them;

22 the Ancient of days comes,
and gives the pleading of the cause
to the holy of Elyon;
and the appointment so happens
that the holy hold the sovereignty.

23 Thus he says, The fourth live being
becomes the fourth sovereignty on earth
which *is* changed from all kingdoms;
and it devours the whole earth,
and treads it down, and pulverizes it.

24 And the ten horns from this sovereignty
are ten sovereigns who rise:
and another rises after them
— changed from the first;
and he abases three sovereigns:
and he utters utterances concerning the Elyon
and wears out the holy of Elyon;
and wills to change appointments and decrees:
and they are given into his hand
until a time and times and the dividing of time.

26 And the pleading is set,
and they pass away his dominion,
to desolate and to destroy it to the consummation:
and the sovereignty and dominion,
and the greatness of the sovereignty
under the whole heavens,
is given to the people of the holy of Elyon,
whose sovereignty is an eternal sovereignty;
and all dominions serve and hearken to him.

28 So, thus is the conclusion of the utterance.
I — Dani El,
my intentions terrify me much
and my cheerfulness changes in me:
but I guarded the utterance in my heart.

DANIEL 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE VISION OF DANIEL: OF THE RAM AND THE BUCK

8 In the third year of the *reign* **sovereign**dom
of king *Belshazzar* **sovereign** Bel Shats Tsar
a vision *appeared unto* **was seen** by me,
even unto me *Daniel* **Dani El**,
after that which *appeared unto* **was seen** by me
at the *first* **beginning**.

2 And I saw in a vision; and it *came to pass* **became**,
when I saw, that I was at Shushan in the palace,
which is in the *province* **jurisdiction** of Elam;
and I saw in a vision, and I was by the river of Ulai.

3 Then I lifted up mine eyes, and saw, and, behold,
there stood *before* **at the face** of the river
a **one** ram which had two horns:
and the two horns were high;
but one was higher than the *other* **second**,
and the higher *came up* **ascended** last.

4 I saw the ram *pushing westward* **butting seaward**,
and northward, and southward;
so that no *beasts* **live beings**
might stand *before him* **at his face**,
neither was *there any* that could *deliver* **rescue**
out of his hand;
but he *did* **worked** according to his *will* **pleasure**,
and *became* **great** **greatened**.

5 And as I was *considering* **discerned**, behold,
an he goat **a buck of the doe goats**
came from the *west* **dusk**
on the face of the whole earth,
and touched not the *ground* **earth**:
and the *goat* **buck** had a *notable* **horn of vision**
between his eyes.

6 And he came to the ram *that had two* **master** of horns,
which I had seen standing *before* **at the face** of the river,
and ran unto him in the fury of his *power* **force**.

7 And I saw him *come* **touch** close unto **beside** the ram,
and he was *moved with choler* **embittered** against him,
and smote the ram, and brake his two horns:
and there was no *power* **force** in the ram
to stand *before him* **at his face**,
but he cast him down to the *ground* **earth**,
and *stamped upon* **trampled** him:
and there was none
that could *deliver* **rescue** the ram out of his hand.

8 Therefore the *he goat* **buck of the doe goats**
waxed very great **greatened mightily**:
and when he was *strong* **mighty**,
the great horn was broken;
and for it *came up* **ascended a vision** of four *notable ones*
toward the four winds of *heaven* **the heavens**.

9 And out of one of them came forth a little horn,
which *waxed exceeding great* **greatened exceedingly**,
toward the south, and toward the *east* **rising**,
and toward the *pleasant land* **splendour**.

10 And it *waxed great* **greatened**,
even to the host of *heaven* **the heavens**;
and it *cast down* **felled** *some of* the host and of the stars
to the *ground* **earth**,
and *stamped upon* **trampled** them.

11 Yea, he *magnified* **greatened himself**
even to the *prince* **governor** of the host,
and by him
the *daily sacrifice* **continual** was *taken away* **lifted**,
and the place of the *sanctuary* **holies** was cast down.

12 And an host was given him
against the *daily sacrifice* **continual**
by reason of *transgression* **rebellion**,
and it cast down the truth to the *ground* **earth**;
and it *practised* **worked**, and prospered.

13 Then I heard one *saint* **holy one** speaking,
and *another saint* **one holy one**
said unto *that certain saint* **such a one** which spake,
How long shall be the vision
concerning of the *daily sacrifice* **continual**,
and the *transgression* **rebellion** of *desolation* **desolating**,
to give both the *sanctuary* **holies** and the host
to be *trodden under foot* **trampled**?

14 And he said unto me,
Unto two thousand and three hundred

DANIEL 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE VISION OF DANIEL: OF THE RAM AND THE BUCK

8 In the third year
of the sovereigndom of sovereign Bel Shats Tsar
a vision was seen by me — Dani El,
after the *one* that was seen by me at the beginning.
2 And I see in a vision; and so be it,
I see, and I *am* at Shushan in the palace,
in the jurisdiction of Elam:
3 and I see in a vision, and I *am* by the river of Ulai:
and I lift my eyes and see, and behold,
there at the face of the river
stands one ram with horns:
and the horns *are* high;
but one *is* higher than the second
and the higher ascends last:
4 I see the ram butting seaward
and northward and southward;
so that live beings neither stand at his face,
nor *are* rescued from his hand;
and he works as he pleases; and greatens.

5 And I discern, and behold,
a buck of the doe goats comes from the dusk
on the face of the whole earth,
and touches not the earth:
6 and the buck has a horn of vision between his eyes:
and he comes to the ram master of horns
— whom I see standing at the face of the river;
and runs to him in the fury of his force:
7 and I see him touch close beside the ram
and he embitters against him;
and smites the ram and breaks his two horns:
and the ram has no force to stand at his face;
and he casts him to the earth and tramples him:
there is no one to rescue the ram from his hand.

8 And the buck of the doe goats greatens mightily:
and when he is mighty, the great horn breaks;
and a vision of four
ascends toward the four winds of the heavens:
9 and from one of them, comes a little horn
which greatens exceedingly,
toward the south and toward the rising
and toward the splendor:
10 and it greatens to the host of the heavens;
and it fells
some of the host and of the stars to the earth,
and tramples them.

11 Yes, he greatens, even to the governor of the host;
and he lifts the continual
and casts down the place of the holies:
12 and he gives a host against the continual
by reason of rebellion,
and casts down the truth to the earth;
and it works and prospers.

13 And I heard a holy one speaking,
and a holy one says to such a one who speaks,
How long *ere* the vision of the continual,
and the rebellion of desolating,
gives both the holies and the host a trampling?

14 And he says to me,
Until two thousand and three hundred

DANIEL 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

days evening mornings;
then shall the sanctuary holies be cleansed justified.

A MIGHTY INTERPRETS THE VISION

15 And so be it came to pass,
when I, even I Daniel Dani El, had seen the vision,
and sought for the meaning discernment,
then, behold,
there stood before me
as the appearance visage of a man mighty.
16 And I heard a man's human voice
between the banks of Ulai,
which called, and said, Gabriel Gabri El,
make cause this man one
to understand discern the vision.
17 So he came near beside where I stood:
and when he came,
I was afraid frightened, and fell upon my face:
but he said unto me,
Understand Discern, O son of man humanity:
for at the time of the end shall be the vision.
18 Now as he was speaking wording with me,
I was in a deep sleep sleeping soundly
on my face toward the ground earth:
but he touched me, and set stood me upright standing.
19 And he said, Behold,
I will make shall cause thee to know
what shall be in the last end of the indignation rage:
for at the time appointed season the end shall be.
20 The ram which thou sawest
having two master of horns
are the kings sovereigns of Media Maday and Persia.
21 And the rough goat buck buck
is the king sovereign of Grecia Yavan:
and the great horn that is between his eyes
is the first king sovereign.
22 Now that being broken,
whereas four stood up for it in its stead,
four kingdoms sovereigndoms shall stand up
out of the nation goyim, but not in his power force.
23 And in the latter time finality
of their kingdom sovereigndom,
when the transgressors rebels
are come to the full consummated,
a king sovereign of fierce countenance strong face,
and understanding dark sentences discerning riddles,
shall stand up.
24 And his power force shall be mighty,
but not by his own power force:
and he shall destroy wonderfully ruin marvelously,
and shall prosper, and practise work,
and shall destroy ruin the mighty
and the holy people people of the holy one.
25 And through his policy comprehension also
he shall cause craft deceit to prosper in his hand;
and he shall magnify greaten himself in his heart,
and by peace serenity shall destroy ruin many:
he shall also stand up
against the Prince Governor of princes governors;
but he shall be broken without by a final hand.
26 And the vision of the evening and the morning
which was told said is true in truth:
wherefore shut thou up the vision;
for it shall be for many days.
27 And I Daniel Dani El
fainted, and was became sick certain for days;
afterward I rose up,
and did worked the king's business sovereign's work;
and I was astonished stunned at the vision,
but none understood discerned it.

DANI EL DISCERNES THE SCROLL OF THE SEVENTY WEEKS

9 In the first year
of Darius Daryavesh the son of Ahasuerus Achach Rosh,
of the seed of the Medes Maday,
which was made king reigned sovereign
over the realm sovereigndom of the Chaldeans Kesediyim;
2 In the first year of his reign
I Daniel understood Dani El discerned by books scrolls
the number of the years,
whereof the word of the LORD Yah Veh

DANI EL 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

evening mornings;
then the holies is justified.

A MIGHTY INTERPRETS THE VISION

15 And so be it,
I — I Dani El see the vision and seek discernment,
and behold,
there stands in front of me as the visage of a mighty:
16 and I hear a human voice between Ulai,
and he calls and says,
Gabri El, this one discerns the vision.
17 So he comes beside where I stand:
and he comes, and I frighten and fall on my face:
and he says to me,
Discern, O son of humanity:
for the vision of the time of the end.
18 And as he words with me,
I sleep soundly on my face toward the earth:
and he touches me, and in standing, stands me:
19 and he says, Behold,
I have you know
what becomes in the last end of the rage
at the season of the end.
20 The ram you see — the master of horns
are the sovereigns of Maday and Persia:
21 and the buck buck, the sovereign of Yavan:
and the great horn between his eyes,
the first sovereign;
22 that, being broken, four stand in its stead
— four sovereigndoms from the goyim stand
— but not in his force.
23 And in the finality of their sovereigndom,
the rebels are consummated,
and a sovereign of strong face and discerning riddles
stands:
24 and his force is mighty
— and not by his own force:
and he ruins marvelously and prospers and works;
and ruins the mighty and the people of the holy one:
25 and through his comprehension
deceit also prospers in his hand;
and he greatens in his heart
and by serenity ruins many:
he also stands against the Governor of governors;
and is broken by a final hand.
26 And the vision of the evening and the morning
is said in truth:
and you, you shut up the vision;
for it is for many days.
27 And I Dani El, am sick for days,
I rise and work the work of the sovereign
— stunned at the vision; and no one discerns it.

DANI EL DISCERNES THE SCROLL OF THE SEVENTY WEEKS

9 In the first year
of Daryavesh the son of Achach Rosh
of the seed of the Maday,
who reigns sovereign
over the sovereigndom of the Kesediyim;
2 in the first year of his reign
I Dani El discern by scrolls
the number of the years the word of Yah Veh

DANIEL 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

came to *Jeremiah* **Yirme Yah** the prophet,
that he *would accomplish* **should fulfill** seventy years
in the *desolations* **parched areas**
of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
3 And I *set* **gave** my face
unto *the Lord God* **Adonay Elohim**,
to seek by prayer and supplications,
with fasting, and *sackcloth* **saq**, and ashes:
4 And I prayed unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh** my *God* **Elohim**,
and *made* **spread** my *confession* **hands**, and said,
I beseech O *Lord* **Adonay**,
the great and *dreadful God* **awesome El**,
keeping **guarding** the covenant and mercy
to them that love him, and to them
that *keep* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**;
5 We have sinned,
and have *committed iniquity* **perverted**,
and have done wickedly, and have rebelled,
even by *departing* **turning aside**
from thy *precepts* **misvoth** and from thy judgments:
6 Neither have we hearkened
unto thy servants the prophets,
which *spake* **worded** in thy name
to our *kings* **sovereigns**,
our *princes* **governors**, and our fathers,
and to all the people of the land.
7 O *Lord* **Adonay**,
righteousness belongeth **justness** unto thee,
but unto us *confusion* **shame** of faces, as at this day;
to the men of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and to the *inhabitants* **settlers** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and unto all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that are near, and *that are far off*,
through all the *countries* **lands**
whither thou hast driven them,
because of their *trespass* **treason**
that they have *trespassed* **treasoned** against thee.
8 O *Lord* **Adonay**,
to us *belongeth* **confusion** **be shame** of face,
to our *kings* **sovereigns**, to our *princes* **governors**,
and to our fathers,
because we have sinned against thee.
9 To *the Lord* **Adonay** our *God* **Elohim**
belong **be** mercies and forgivenesses,
though we have rebelled against him;
10 Neither have we *obeyed* **hearkened unto** the voice
of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
to walk in his *laws* **torah**,
which he *set before us* **gave at our face**
by **the hand of** his servants the prophets.
11 Yea, all *Israel* **Yisra El**
have *transgressed* **trespassed** thy *law* **torah**,
even by *departing* **turning aside**,
that they might not *obey* **hearken unto** thy voice;
therefore the *curse* **oath** is poured upon us,
and the oath that is *written* **inscribed**
in the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**
the servant of *God* **Elohim**,
because we have sinned against him.
12 And he hath *confirmed* **raised** his words,
which he *spake* **worded** against us,
and against our judges that judged us,
by bringing upon us a great evil:
for under the whole *heaven* **heavens**
hath not been *done* **worked**
as hath been *done* **worked** upon *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
13 As it is *written* **inscribed**
in the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
all this evil is come upon us:
yet *made* **stroked** we not *our prayer* **the face**
before the LORD **of Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**,
that we might turn from our *iniquities* **perversities**,
and *understand* **comprehend** thy truth.
14 Therefore
hath *the LORD* **Yah Veh** watched upon the evil,
and brought it upon us:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
is *righteous* **just** in all his works which he *doeth* **worketh**:
for we *obeyed* **hearkened** not **unto** his voice.

DANIEL 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

was to Yirme Yah the prophet,
concerning fulfilling the parched areas
of Yeru Shalem — seventy years.
3 And I give my face to Adonay Elohim,
to seek by prayer and supplications;
with fasting and saq and ashes.
4 And I pray to Yah Veh my Elohim,
and spread my hands, and say,
I beseech, O Adonay, great and awesome El,
who guards the covenant and mercy
to them who love him
and to them who guard his misvoth;
5 we sinned and perverted
and did wickedly and rebelled
— by turning aside
from your misvoth and from your judgments:
6 we hearkened not to your servants the prophets,
who worded in your name to our sovereigns,
our governors and our fathers
and to all the people of the land.
7 O Adonay, justness to you;
and shame of faces to us, as this day;
to the men of Yah Hudah
and to the settlers of Yeru Shalem
and to all Yisra El, near and far,
through all the lands you drove them,
because of the treason they treasoned against you.
8 Adonay, shame of face to us
— to our sovereigns, to our governors
and to our fathers,
because we sinned against you.
9 To Adonay our Elohim, mercies and forgivenesses
though we rebelled against him;
10 we hearkened not
to the voice of Yah Veh our Elohim
— to walk in the torah he gave at our face
by the hand of his servants the prophets.
11 Yes, all Yisra El trespassed your torah,
even by turning aside
to not hearken to your voice;
so the oath pours on us
— the oath inscribed in the torah
of Mosheh the servant of Elohim,
because we sinned against him.
12 And he raises the words he worded against us
and against our judges who judge us,
by bringing a great evil on us
— as never worked under the whole heavens
as he works on Yeru Shalem:
13 as inscribed in the torah of Mosheh,
all this evil comes on us:
yet we stroke not the face of Yah Veh our Elohim
to turn from our perversities
and comprehend your truth:
14 and Yah Veh watches on the evil,
and brings it on us:
for Yah Veh our Elohim
is just in all the works he works:
for we hearken not to his voice.

DANIEL 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 15 And now, O Lord **Adonay** our God **Elohim**,
that hast brought thy people forth
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
with a *mighty* **strong** hand,
and hast gotten **worked** thee *renown* **a name**,
as at this day;
we have sinned, we have done wickedly.
- 16 O Lord **Adonay**,
according to all thy *righteousness* **justness**,
I beseech thee,
let thine *anger* **wrath** and thy fury be turned away
from thy city *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, thy holy mountain:
because for our sins,
and for the *iniquities* **perversities** of our fathers,
Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem** and thy people
are *become* a reproach to all that are **round** about us.
- 17 Now therefore, O our God **Elohim**,
hear the prayer of thy servant, and his supplications,
and cause thy face to *shine* **lighten**
upon thy *sanctuary* **holies** that is desolate,
for the *Lord's* **Adonay's** sake.
- 18 O my God **Elohim**,
incline **spread** thine ear, and hear;
open thine eyes,
and *behold* **see** our *desolations* **desolated**,
and the city which is called by thy name:
for we do not *present* **fell** our supplications
before thee **at thy face**
for our *righteousnesses* **justnesses**,
but for thy great mercies.
- 19 O Lord **Adonay**, hear; O Lord **Adonay**, forgive;
O Lord **Adonay**, hearken and *do* **work**;
defer **delay** not, for thine own sake, O my God **Elohim**:
for thy city and thy people are called by thy name.
- 20 And whiles I was speaking, and praying,
and *confessing* **spreading my hands** for my sin
and the sin of my people *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and *presenting* **felling** my supplication
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh** my God **Elohim**
for the holy mountain of my God **Elohim**;
- 21 Yea, whiles I was speaking in prayer,
even the man *Gabriel* **Gabri El**,
whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning,
being *caused to fly swiftly* **wearied in weariness**,
touched me
about the time of the evening *oblation* **offering**.
- 22 And *he informed me* **discerned**,
and *talked* **worded** with me, and said,
O *Daniel* **Dani El**,
I am now come forth to *give* **cause** thee
skill and understanding **to comprehend discernment**.
- 23 At the beginning of thy supplications
the *commandment word* came forth,
and I am come to *shew* **tell thee**;
for thou art *greatly beloved* **desired**:
therefore *understand* **discern** the *matter word*,
and *consider* **discern** the vision.
- THE VISION OF THE SEVENTY WEEKS**
- 24 Seventy weeks are *determined* **cut** upon thy people
and upon thy holy city,
to *finish* **restrain** the *transgression* **rebellion**,
and to *make an end of* **seal up** sins,
and to *make reconciliation* **kapar/atone**
for *iniquity* **perversity**,
and to bring in *everlasting righteousness* **eternal justness**,
and to seal up the vision and *prophecy* **the prophet**,
and to anoint the *most Holy* **holy of holies**.
- 25 Know therefore and *understand* **comprehend**,
that from the
going forth **proceeding** of the *commandment word*
to restore and to build *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
unto the Messiah the *Prince* **Eminent** shall be
seven weeks, and *threescore* **sixty** and two weeks:
the *street* **broadway** shall be
built again **restored and rebuilt**,
and the *wall* **trench**,
even in *troublous* times **of distress**.
- 26 And after *threescore* **sixty** and two weeks
shall Messiah be cut off,

DANIEL 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 15 And now, Adonay our Elohim,
who brought your people from the land of Misrayim
with a strong hand,
and worked yourself a name, as this day;
we sin; we do wickedly.
- 16 Adonay, according to all your justness,
I beseech you,
turn away your wrath and your fury
from your city Yeru Shalem — your holy mountain:
because,
for our sins and for the perversities of our fathers
Yeru Shalem and your people
are a reproach to all, all around us:
- 17 and now, O our Elohim,
hear the prayer of your servant and his supplications;
and lighten your face on your holies
that are desolate for sake of Adonay.
- 18 O my Elohim, spread your ear and hear;
open your eyes and see our desolated;
and the city on whom your name is called:
for we fell not our supplications at your face
because of our our justnesses
— but because of your great mercies.
- 19 Adonay, hear; Adonay, forgive;
Adonay, hearken and work;
delay not, for your own sake, my Elohim:
for your city and your people
on whom your name is called.
- 20 And as I speak and pray
and spread my hands for my sin
and for the sin of my people Yisra El;
and fell my supplication
at the face of Yah Veh my Elohim
for the holy mountain of my Elohim;
- 21 yes, as I speak in prayer,
the man Gabri El,
whom I saw in the vision at the beginning,
wearied in weariness,
touches me about the time of the evening offering;
and discerns, and words with me, and says,
O Dani El,
I now come forth
to have you comprehend discernment:
at the beginning of your supplications
the word came forth,
and I come to tell; for you are desired:
so discern the word and discern the vision.
- THE VISION OF THE SEVENTY WEEKS**
- 24 Seventy weeks are cut on your people
and on your holy city
to restrain the rebellion
and to seal up sins
and to kapar/atone for perversity
and to bring in eternal justness
and to seal up the vision and the prophet
and to anoint the holy of holies.
- 25 So know and comprehend,
that from the proceeding of the word
to restore and to build Yeru Shalem
to the Messiah, the Eminent
is seven weeks and sixty—two weeks
— to restore and rebuild the Broadway and the trench
even in times of distress.
- 26 And after sixty—two weeks
Messiah is cut off;

DANIEL 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but not for himself:
and the people of the *prince eminent* that shall come
shall *destroy ruin* the city and the *sanctuary holies*;
and the end *thereof* shall be with a *flood an overflowing*,
and unto the end of the war
desolations are *determined appointed*.
27 And he shall *confirm empower*
the a covenant with many *for* one week:
and in the *midst half* of the week
he shall cause the sacrifice and the *oblation offering*
to *cease shabbathize*,
and for the *overspreading wing* of abominations
he shall *make it* desolate *it*,
even until the *consummation final finish*,
and that *determined appointed*
shall be poured upon the *desolate desolated*.

THE VISION OF DANI EL OF ONE HUMAN AND MICHAH EL

10

In the third year of *Cyrus Koresh*
king sovereign of Persia
a *thing word* was *revealed exposed* unto *Daniel Dani El*,
whose name was called *Belteshazzar Belte Shats Tsar*;
and the *thing word* was *true in truth*,
but the *time appointed hostility* was *long great*:
and he *understood discerned* the *thing word*,
and had *understanding discernment* of the vision.
2 In those days I *Daniel Dani El*
was mourning three *full weeks of days*.
3 I ate no *pleasant bread of desire*,
neither came flesh nor wine in my mouth,
in anointing, neither did I anoint myself *at all*,
till three *whole weeks of days* were fulfilled.
4 And in the four and twentieth day of the first month,
as I was by the *side hand* of the great river,
which is *Hiddekel Hiddeqel*;
5 Then I lifted up mine eyes, and *looked saw*,
and behold a *certain one* man *clothed enrobed* in linen,
whose loins were girded with fine *gold ore* of Uphaz:
6 His body also was like the beryl,
and his face as the *appearance visage* of lightning,
and his eyes as *lamps flambeaus* of fire,
and his arms and his feet
like in *colour to polished brass eye as burnished copper*,
and the voice of his words like the voice of a multitude.
7 And I *Daniel Dani El* alone saw the vision:
for the men that were with me saw not the vision;
but nevertheless
a great *quaking trembling* fell upon them,
so that they fled to hide themselves.
8 Therefore I was *left remained* alone,
and saw this great vision,
and there remained no *strength force* in me:
for my *comeliness majesty* was turned in me
into *corruption ruin*,
and I retained no *strength force*.
9 Yet heard I the voice of his words:
and when I heard the voice of his words,
then was I *in a deep sleep sleeping soundly* on my face,
and my face toward the *ground earth*.
10 And, behold, an hand touched me,
which set *staggered* me upon my knees
and *upon* the palms of my hands.
11 And he said unto me,
O *Daniel Dani El*, a man *greatly beloved desired*,
understand discern the words that I *speak word* unto thee,
and *in standing*, stand *upright*:
for unto thee am I now sent.
And when he had *spoken worded* this word unto me,
I stood trembling.
12 Then said he unto me, *Fear Awe* not, *Daniel Dani El*:
for from the first day
that thou didst set *give* thine heart to *understand discern*,
and to *chasten humble* thyself
before at the face of thy God Elohim,
thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words.
13 But the *prince governor*
of the *kingdom sovereignty* of Persia
withstood stood against me one and twenty days:

DANI EL 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

but not for himself:
and the people of the eminent who comes
ruins the city and the holies;
and the end is with an overflowing;
and to the end of the war
desolations are appointed.
27 And he empowers a covenant with many
— one week:
and in the half of the week
he shabbathizes the sacrifice and the offering;
and for the wing of abominations
he desolates it even until the final finish;
and pours what is appointed on the desolate.

THE VISION OF DANI EL OF ONE HUMAN AND MICHAH EL

10

In the third year of Koresh sovereign of Persia
a word is exposed to Dani El,
whose name is called Belte Shats Tsar;
and the word is truth and the hostility is great:
and he discerns the word
and discernment of the vision.
2 In those days I, Dani El mourn three weeks of days:
3 I neither eat bread of desire
nor flesh and wine come into my mouth;
and in anointing, I anoint not myself
until the fulfilling of three weeks of days:
4 and in the twenty—fourth day of the first month,
I am by the hand of the great river Hiddeqel;
5 and I lift my eyes and see;
and behold, one man enrobed in linen,
with loins girded with fine ore of Uphaz:
6 and his body as the beryl;
and his face as the visage of lightning;
and his eyes as flambeaus of fire;
and his arms and his feet
as the eye of burnished copper;
and the voice of his words as the voice of a multitude.
7 And I, Dani El alone see the vision;
and the men with me see not the vision:
and a great trembling falls on them;
so that they flee to hide themselves:
8 and I alone remain and see this great vision;
and no force remains in me:
for the majesty in me turns into ruin
and I retain no force:
9 yet I hear the voice of his words:
and I hear the voice of his words,
and I sleep soundly on my face
with my face toward the earth:
10 and behold, a hand touches me,
which staggers my knees and the palms of my hands.
11 And he says to me, O Dani El, a man desired,
discern the words I word to you,
in standing, stand:
for I am now sent to you.
— and when he words this word to me,
I stand trembling.
12 And he says to me, Awe not, Dani El:
for from the first day you gave your heart to discern
and to humble yourself at the face of your Elohim,
I heard your words;
and I come because of your words:
13 and the governor of the sovereignty of Persia
stands against me twenty—one days:

DANIEL 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but, *lo behold*, Michael Michah El,
one of the *chief princes* **head governors**,
came to help me;
and I remained there
with **beside** the *kings* **sovereigns** of Persia.
14 Now I am come
to *make* **cause** thee *understand* to **discern**
what shall befall thy people in the latter days:
for yet the vision is for *many* days.
15 And when he had *spoken* **worded** such words
unto me,
I *set* **gave** my face toward the *ground* **earth**,
and I became *dumb* **mute**.
16 And, behold, *one like the similitude* a **likeness**
of the sons of *men* **humanity** touched my lips:
then I opened my mouth, and *spake* **worded**,
and said unto him that stood **before** *in front of* me,
O my *lord* **adoni**,
by the vision my *sorrows* **pangs** are turned upon me,
and I have retained no *strength* **force**.
17 For how can the servant of *this my lord* **my adoni**
talk with this my lord **word this with my adoni?**
for as for me, *straightway* **at this time**
there *remained* **stood** no *strength* **force** in me,
neither *is* **remained** there breath *left* in me.
18 Then there came again and touched me
one like the appearance **visage** of a *man* **human**,
and he strengthened me,
19 And said, O man *greatly beloved* **desired**,
fear **awe** not:
peace **shalom** be unto thee, be strong, yea, be strong.
And when he had *spoken* **worded** unto me,
I was strengthened, and said,
Let my *lord* *speak* **adoni word**;
for thou hast strengthened me.
20 Then said he,
Knowest thou wherefore I come unto thee?
and now *will* **shall** I return
to fight with the *prince* **governor** of Persia:
and when I am gone forth, *lo* **behold**,
the *prince* **governor** of *Grecia* **Yavan** shall come.
21 But I *will* *shew* **shall tell** thee
that which is *noted* **signified**
in the *scripture* **inscribing** of truth:
and there is none that holdeth with me in these *things*,
but *Michael* **Michah El** your *prince* **governor**.

THE SOVEREIGNS OF THE NORTH AND THE SOUTH

11 Also I
in the first year of *Darius* **Daryavesh** the *Mede* **Maday**,
even I, I stood to *confirm* **strengthen him**
and to *strengthen him* **be his stronghold**.
2 And now *will I shew* **shall I tell** thee the truth.
Behold,
there shall stand *up* yet three *kings* **sovereigns** in Persia;
and the fourth shall be
far richer **enriched in greater riches** than they all:
and by his strength through his riches
he shall *stir up* **waken** all
against the *realm* **sovereigndom** of *Grecia* **Yavan**.
3 And a mighty *king* **sovereign** shall stand *up*,
that shall *rule* **reign** with great *dominion* **reign**,
and *do* **work** according to his *will* **pleasure**.
4 And when he shall stand *up*,
his *kingdom* **sovereigndom** shall be broken,
and shall be *divided* **halved**
toward the four winds of *heaven* **the heavens**;
and not to his posterity,
nor according to his *dominion* **reign**
which he *ruled* **reigned**:
for his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
shall be *plucked up* **uprooted**,
even for others beside those.
5 And the *king* **sovereign** of the south shall be strong,
and *one of his princes* **governors**;
and he shall be strong above him,
and *have* **dominion** **reign**;
his *dominion* **reign** shall be a great *dominion* **reign**.
6 And in the end of years
they shall *join themselves together* **unite**;

DANIEL 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and behold, Michah El, one of the head governors,
comes to help me;
and I remain there beside the sovereigns of Persia.
14 I come so that you discern
what befalls your people in the latter days:
for the vision is yet for days.
15 And he words such words to me,
and I give my face toward the earth, and I *am* mute:
16 and behold,
a likeness of the sons of humanity touches my lips:
and I open my mouth and word,
and say to him standing in front of me,
O my adoni, because of the vision,
my pangs turn on me and I retain no force.
17 For how can the servant of my adoni
word this with my adoni?
For as for me, at this time,
neither force stands in me,
yes, nor breath remains in me.
18 And as the visage of a human
comes again and touches me and strengthens me,
19 and says, O man desired,
awe not; shalom to you:
be strong; yes, be strong.
And when he words to me, I strengthen, and say,
My adoni, word;
for you strengthened me.
20 And he says, Know you why I come to you?
And now I return to fight with the governor of Persia:
and when I go, behold,
the governor of Yavan comes:
21 but I tell you
what is signified in the inscribing of truth:
and no one holds with me in these
except Michah El your governor.

THE SOVEREIGNS OF THE NORTH AND THE SOUTH

11 And I, in the first year of Daryavesh the Maday,
I stand to strengthen him and as his stronghold:
2 and now, I tell you the truth:
behold, three sovereigns still stand in Persia;
and the fourth enriches in greater riches than they all:
and by his strength and through his riches
he wakens all against the sovereigndom of Yavan:
and a mighty sovereign stands
who reigns with great reign;
and works according to his pleasure:
and he stands,
and his sovereigndom breaks in half
toward the four winds of the heavens:
and neither to his posterity
nor according to the reign he reigns:
for his sovereigndom uproots,
— and for others beside these.
5 And the sovereign of the south
— even his governors strengthen;
and he strengthens above him and reigns:
he reigns a great reign.
6 And in the end of years they unite;

DANIEL 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for the *king's sovereign's* daughter of the south
shall come to the *king sovereign* of the north
to *make an agreement work a straightness*:
but she shall not retain the *power force* of the arm;
neither shall he stand, nor his arm:
but she shall be given up,
and they that brought her, and he that *begat birthed* her,
and he that strengthened her in these times.
7 But out of a branch of her roots
shall *one stand up* in his *estate station*,
which shall come with an *army the valiant*,
and shall enter into the *fortress stronghold*
of the *king sovereign* of the north,
and shall *deal work* against them, and shall prevail:
8 And shall also carry captives into *Egypt Misrayim*
their *gods elohim*, with their *princes libations*,
and with their *precious vessels instruments of desire*
of silver and of gold;
and he shall *continue stand* more years
than the *king sovereign* of the north.
9 So the *king sovereign* of the south
shall come into his *kingdom sovereignty*,
and shall return into his own *land soil*.
10 But his sons shall be *stirred up throttled*,
and shall *assemble gather*
a multitude of *great forces valiant*:
and *in coming*, *one* shall *certainly* come,
and overflow, and pass through:
then shall he return, and be *stirred up throttled*,
even to his *fortress stronghold*.
11 And the *king sovereign* of the south
shall be *moved with choler embittered*,
and shall come forth and fight with him,
even with the *kingsovereign* of the north:
and he shall *set forth cause* a great multitude *to stand*;
but the multitude shall be given into his hand.
12 And when he hath *taken borne* away the multitude,
his heart shall be lifted up;
and he shall *cast down many ten thousands fell myriads*:
but he shall not be strengthened *by it*.
13 For the *king sovereign* of the north shall return,
and shall *set forth stand* a multitude
greater than the former,
and *in coming*, shall *certainly* come
after certain at the end of times, even years
with a great *army valiant*
and with much *riches acquisitions*.
14 And in those times there shall many stand up
against the *king sovereign* of the south:
also the *robbers sons of tyrants* of thy people
shall *exalt lift* themselves to *establish stand* the vision;
but they shall *fall falter*.
15 So the *king sovereign* of the north shall come,
and *cast up pour* a *mount mound*,
and *take capture* the most *fenced fortified* cities:
and the arms of the south shall not withstand,
neither his chosen people,
neither shall there be any *strength force* to withstand.
16 But he that cometh against him
shall *do work* according to his own *will pleasure*,
and none shall stand *before him at his face*:
and he shall stand in the *glorious land of splendour*,
which by his hand shall be *consumed fully finished*.
17 He shall also set his face to enter
with the *strength power*
of his whole *kingdom sovereignty*,
and *upright ones straight* with him;
thus shall he *do work*:
and he shall give him the daughter of women,
corrupting to ruin her:
but she shall not stand *on his side*, neither be for him.
18 After this
shall he *turn set* his face unto the *isles islands*,
and shall take many:
but a *prince commander* for his own behalf
shall cause *the his reproach offered by him*
to *cease shabbathize*;
without his own reproach
he shall cause it to turn upon him.

DANIEL 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and a daughter of the sovereign of the south
comes to the sovereign of the north
to work a straightness:
and she retains not the force of the arm;
and neither stands he nor his arm:
and she *is given*
— she, and they who bring her
and he who birthed her,
and he who strengthened her in these times.
7 And from a branch of her roots
one who stands in his station
comes with the valiant
and enters into the stronghold
of the sovereign of the north;
and works against them and prevails:
8 and also carries captives into Misrayim
— their elohim with their libations
and with their instruments of desire
of silver and of gold:
and he stands more years
than the sovereign of the north:
9 and the sovereign of the south
comes into his sovereignty,
and returns to his own soil:
10 and his sons throttle themselves
and gather a multitude of valiant:
and in coming, they come
and overflow and pass through:
and he returns,
and they throttle themselves to his stronghold.
11 And the sovereign of the south embitters
and comes and fights him
with the sovereign of the north:
and he withstands a great multitude;
and the multitude *is given* into his hand.
12 And he bears away the multitude,
and his heart lifts;
and he fells myriads:
but he strengthens not.
13 For the sovereign of the north returns
and withstands a multitude greater than the former;
and in coming, comes at the end of times
— even years with a great valiant
and with much acquisitions.
14 And in those times
many withstand the sovereignty of the south:
and the sons of tyrants of your people
lift themselves to withstand the vision;
and they falter.
15 And the sovereign of the north
comes and pours a mound
and captures the most fortified cities:
and neither the arms of the south withstand,
nor his chosen people,
neither is there any force to withstand:
16 and he who comes against him
works according to his own pleasure;
and no one stands at his face:
and he stands in the land of splendour,
fully finished by his hand.
17 And he sets his face to enter
with the power of his whole sovereignty,
and with his straight *ones*;
thus he works:
and he gives him the daughter of women
to ruin her:
and neither she stands, nor he.
18 After this he sets his face to the islands,
and takes many:
and a commander
shabbathizes his reproach of himself
and turns his own reproach on him:

DANIEL 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

19 Then he shall turn his face
toward the *fort* **stronghold** of his own land:
but he shall *stumble* **falter** and fall, and not be found.

20 Then shall stand up in his *estate* **station**
a *raiser of* **an exactor who passeth** taxes
in the *glory* **majesty** of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**:
but within *few days* **one day**
he shall be *destroyed* **broken**,
neither in *anger* **wrath**, nor in *battle* **war**.

21 And in his *estate* **station**
shall stand up a *vile person* **a despised**,
to whom they shall not give
the *honour* **majesty** of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**:
but he shall come in *peaceably* **serenity**,
and *obtain* **hold** the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
by *flatteries* **soothings**.

22 And with the arms of a *flood* **an overflowing**
shall they be *overflown* **overflowed**
from *before him* **his face**,
and shall be broken;
yea, also the *prince* **eminent** of the covenant.

23 And after *the league made with* **joining** him
he shall work deceitfully:
for he shall *come up* **ascend**,
and shall become *strong* **mighty**
with a small *people* **goyim**.

24 He shall enter *peaceably* **in serenity**
even upon the *fattest places* **fatness**
of the *province* **jurisdiction**;
and he shall *do* **work** that
which his fathers have not *done* **worked**,
nor his fathers' fathers;
he shall scatter among them
the *prey* **plunder**, and spoil, and *riches* **acquisitions**:
yea, and he shall
forecast **fabricate** his *devices* **fabrications**
against the *strong holds* **fortresses**, even for a time.

25 And he shall *stir up* **waken**
his *power* **force** and his *courage* **heart**
against the *king* **sovereign** of the south
with a great *army* **valiant**;
and the *king* **sovereign** of the south
shall be *stirred up* **throttled** to *battle* **war**
with a very **mighty** great and mighty *army* **valiant**;
but he shall not stand:
for they shall *forecast devices* **fabricate fabrications**
against him.

26 Yea,
they that feed of the *portion of his meat* **his delicacies**
shall *destroy* **break** him,
and his *army* **valiant** shall overflow:
and many shall fall down *slain* **pierced**.

27 And both of these *kings'* **sovereign's** hearts
shall be to *do mischief* **vilify**,
and they shall *speak* **word** lies at one table;
but it shall not prosper:
for yet the end shall be at the *time appointed* **season**.

28 Then shall he return into his land
with great *riches* **acquisitions**;
and his heart shall be against the holy covenant;
and he shall *do exploits* **work**,
and return to his own land.

29 At the *time appointed* **season** he shall return,
and come toward the south;
but it shall not be as the former, or as the latter.

30 For the ships of *Chittim* **Kittim** shall come against him:
therefore he shall be *grieved* **dejected**, and return,
and *have indignation* **rage** against the holy covenant:
so shall he *do* **work**;
he shall even return,
and *have intelligence* **discern** with them
that forsake the holy covenant.

31 And arms shall stand on his part,
and they shall *pollute* **profane** the *sanctuary* **holies**
of *strength* **the stronghold**,
and shall *take away* **turn aside**
the *daily sacrifice* **continual**,
and they shall *place* **give** the abomination
that *maketh desolate* **desolateth**.

DANIEL 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

19 and he turns his face
toward the stronghold of his own land:
and he falters and falls, and they find him not.

20 And in his station
stands *one* who passes an exactor of taxes
in the majesty of the sovereigndom:
and within one day he *is* broken
— neither in wrath nor in war.

21 And in his station stands *one* — despised
to whom they give not
the majesty of the sovereigndom:
and he comes in serenity,
and holds the sovereigndom by soothings.

22 And with the arms of an overflowing
they overflow at his face, and break;
yes, and also the eminent of the covenant.

23 And after joining him, he works deceitfully:
for he ascends mightily with a small goyim.

24 He enters in serenity
even on the fatness of the jurisdiction;
and he works what neither his fathers worked,
nor the fathers of his fathers;
and he scatters
the plunder and spoil and acquisitions among them:
yes, and he fabricates his fabrications
against the fortresses — even for a time:

25 and he wakens his force and his heart
against the sovereign of the south
with a great valiant;
and the sovereign of the south throttles to war
with a mighty great and mighty valiant;
and he withstands not:
for they fabricate fabrications against him:
yes, they who feed of his delicacies, break him;
and his valiant overflow and many fall pierced.

27 And the hearts of both of these sovereign vilify;
and at one table they word lies;
and it prospers not:
for yet the end *is* in season.

28 And he returns to his land with great acquisitions
and with his heart against the holy covenant;
and he works and returns to his own land:
he returns in season
and comes toward the south;
and not as in the former or as in the latter:

30 for the ships of Kittim come against him:
so he *is* dejected and returns;
and rages against the holy covenant:
thus he works; and returns;
and discerns with them
concerning them who forsake the holy covenant.

31 And arms stand up for him
and profane the holies of the stronghold
and turn aside the continual;
and they give the abomination that desolates.

DANIEL 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

32 And such as *do wickedly declare wicked*
against the covenant
shall he *corrupt profane* by *flatteries soothing*:
but the people that *do know their God Elohim*
shall be *strong strengthen*, and *do exploits work*.
33 And they that *understand comprehend*
among of the people
shall *instruct many have many discern*:
yet they shall *fall falter* by the sword, and by flame,
by captivity, and by *spoil plunder*, many days.
34 Now when they shall *fall falter*,
they shall be *holpen helped* with a little help:
but many shall *cleave join* to them
with *flatteries soothing*.
35 And some of them of *understanding that comprehend*
shall *fall falter*,
to *try refine* them, and to *purge*,
and to *make whiten* them *white*,
even to the time of the end:
because it is yet for a *time appointed season*.
36 And the *king sovereign*
shall *do work* according to his *will pleasure*;
and he shall exalt himself,
and *magnify greaten* himself above every *god el*,
and shall *speak marvellous things word marvels*
against the *God El of Gods Elohim*,
and shall prosper
till the *indignation rage* be *accomplished concluded*:
for that that is *determined appointed*
shall be *done worked*.
37 Neither shall he *regard discern*
the *God Elohim* of his fathers, nor the desire of women,
nor *regard discern* any *god elohah*:
for he shall *magnify greaten* himself above all.
38 But in his *estate station*
shall he honour the *God Eloah* of *forces strongholds*
and a *god an elohah* whom his fathers knew not
shall he honour with gold, and silver,
and with *precious esteemed* stones,
and *pleasant things desires*.
39 Thus shall he *do work*
in the *most strong holds fortresses of strongholds*
with a *strange god elohah*,
whom he shall *acknowledge recognize*
and *increase abound* with *glory honour*:
and he shall cause them to *rule reign* over many,
and shall *divide allot* the *land soil* for *gain price*.
40 And at the time of the end
shall the *king sovereign* of the south *push at butt* him:
and the *king sovereign* of the north shall come
against him like a *whirlwind and whirl him away*,
with chariots, and with *horsemen cavalry*,
and with many ships;
and he shall come into the *countries lands*,
and shall overflow and pass over.
41 He shall enter also
into the *glorious land of splendour*,
and many *countries* shall be *overthrown falter*:
but these shall escape out of his hand,
even Edom, and Moab,
and the *chief first* of the *children sons* of Ammon.
42 He shall *stretch forth spread* his hand also
upon the *countries lands*:
and the land of *Egypt Misrayim* shall not escape.
43 But he shall *have power reign*
over the *hidden treasures* of gold and of silver,
and over all the *precious things desires* of *Egypt Misrayim*:
and the *Libyans Lubiym* and the *Ethiopians Kushiym*
shall be at his *steps paces*.
44 But *tidings reports*
out of the *east rising* and out of the north
shall *trouble terrify* him:
therefore he shall go forth with great fury
to *destroy desolate*,
and *utterly to make away to devote* many.
45 And he shall plant
the *tabernacles tents* of his *palace pavilion* between the seas
in the *glorious holy mountain of splendour*;
yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.

DANIEL 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

32 And they who declare wicked the covenant
he profanes by soothing:
and the people who know their Elohim
strengthen and work:
33 and of the people who comprehend,
many discern:
yet they falter by the sword and by the flame
by captivity and by plunder — days:
and in their faltering,
34 are helped with a little help:
and many join them with soothing.
35 And they who comprehend, falter
in order to refine them and to purge
and to whiten them to the time of the end:
because it is yet for a season.
36 And the sovereign works according to his pleasure;
and exalts himself
and greatens himself above every el
and words marvels against the El of elohim,
and prospers until the rage concludes:
until that appointed is worked.
37 He neither discerns the Elohim of his fathers
nor the desire of women;
nor discerns any elohah:
for he greatens himself above all.
38 And in his station
he honors the elohah of strongholds
— an elohah whom his fathers knew not
he honors with gold and silver
and with esteemed stones and desires:
39 thus he works in the fortresses of strongholds
with a strange elohah
— whom he recognizes and abounds with honor:
and he has them reign over many
and allots the soil for a price.
40 And at the time of the end
the sovereign of the south butts him:
and the sovereign of the north
comes and whirls him away
with chariots and with cavalry and with many ships;
and he comes into the lands
and overflows and passes over:
41 and he enters into the land of splendor
and many falter:
and these escape from his hand:
Edom and Moab and the first of the sons of Ammon:
and he spreads his hand on the lands:
and the land of Misrayim escapes not:
42 and he reigns
over the hidden treasures of gold and of silver
and over all the desires of Misrayim:
with the Lubiym and the Kushiym at his paces.
44 And the reports from the rising and from the north
terrify him:
and he goes with great fury
to desolate and to devote many:
and he plants the tents of his pavilion
between the seas
in the holy mountain of splendor;
and he comes to his end and no one helps him.

DANIEL 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE TIME OF TRIBULATION

12 And at that time shall *Michael Michah* **El** stand up,
the great *prince* **governor**
which standeth for the *children* **sons** of thy people:
and there shall be a time of *trouble* **tribulation**,
such as never was since there was a *nation* **goyim**
even to that same time:
and at that time thy people shall *be delivered* **escape**,
every one that shall be found
written **inscribed** in the *book* **scroll**.

THE RESURRECTION

2 And **the** many of *them*
that sleep in the *dust of the earth* **soil of dust** shall awake,
some to *everlasting* **eternal** life,
and some to *shame* **reproach**
and *everlasting* **eternal** contempt.
3 And they that *be wise* **comprehend**
shall *shine* **have brilliancy**
as the *brightness* **brilliance** of the *firmament* **expanse**;
and they that *turn* **justify** many to *righteousness*
as the stars *for ever and ever* **eternally and eternally**.

THE SCROLL OF DANI EL SEALED

cp Apocalypse 22:10

4 But thou, O *Daniel* **Dani El**,
shut up the words, and seal the *book* **scroll**,
even to the time of the end:
many shall *run to and fro* **flit**,
and knowledge shall *be increased* **abound**.
5 Then I *Daniel* **looked Dani El saw**, and, behold,
there stood other two,
the one on this side of the *bank* **lip** of the river,
and the *other* **one** on that side of the *bank* **lip** of the river.
6 And *one* said to the man *clothed* **enrobed** in linen,
which was *upon* **above** the waters of the river,
How long **Until when** shall it be
to the end of these *wonders* **marvels**?
7 And I heard the man *clothed* **enrobed** in linen,
which was *upon* **above** the waters of the river,
when he *held* **lifted up** his right *hand* and his left *hand*
unto *heaven* **the heavens**,
and *sware* **oathed** by him that liveth *for ever* **eternally**
that it shall be
for a *time* **season**, *times* **seasons**, and an half;
and when he shall have *accomplished* **finished**
to scatter the *power* **hand** of the holy people,
all these *things* shall be finished.
8 And I heard, but I *understood* **discerned** not:
then said I, O my *Lord* **Adonay**,
what shall be the end of these *things*?
9 And he said, Go thy way, *Daniel* **Dani El**:
for the words are closed up and sealed
till the time of the end.
10 Many shall be purified,
and *made white* **whitened**, and *tried* **refined**;
but the wicked shall do wickedly:
and none of the wicked shall *understand* **discern**;
but the *wise* **enwisened**
shall *understand* **comprehendingly discern**.
11 And from the time that the *daily sacrifice* **continual**
shall be *taken away* **turned aside**,
and the abomination that *maketh desolate* **desolateth**
set up **be given**,
there shall be a thousand two hundred and ninety days.
12 *Blessed* **Blithesome** is he that waiteth,
and *cometh to* **toucheth**
the thousand three hundred and five and thirty days.
13 But go thou thy way till the end be:
for thou shalt rest,
and stand in thy *lot* **pebble** at the end of the days.

DANI EL 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE TIME OF TRIBULATION

12 And at that time
Michah **El** the great governor stands
— who stands for the sons of your people:
and there becomes a time of tribulation,
such as never became since there was a *goyim*
until that time:
and at that time your people escape
— every one found inscribed in the scroll.

THE RESURRECTION

2 And the many sleeping in the soil of dust awake
— some to eternal life;
and some to reproach and eternal contempt:
and they who comprehend
3 with brilliance as the brilliance of the expanse;
and they who justify many
as the stars eternally and eternally.

THE SCROLL OF DANI EL SEALED

cp Apocalypse 22:10

4 And you, O Dani El,
shut the words and seal the scroll
to the time of the end
— many flit and knowledge abounds.
5 Then I, Dani El see, and behold,
two others stand there
— the one on this side of the lip of the river
and the one on that side of the lip of the river:
6 and he says to the man enrobed in linen
above the waters of the river,
Until when end these marvels?
7 And I hear the man enrobed in linen
above the waters of the river;
and he lifts his right and his left to the heavens
and oaths by him who lives eternally,
For a season, seasons, and an half
— at the finishing
of the scattering of the hand of the holy people
all these finish.
8 And I hear, but I discern not:
and I say, O my Adonay,
what is the end of these?
9 And he says, Go your way, Dani El:
for the words are closed and sealed
until the time of the end:
10 many purify themselves and whiten and refine;
and the wicked *do* wickedly:
and no one of the wicked discerns;
and the enwisened discern comprehendingly.
11 And from the time they turn aside the continual
and give the abomination that desolates
is a thousand two hundred and ninety days.
12 Blithesome — he who awaits
and touches
the thousand three hundred and thirty—five days.
13 And you, go your way until the end:
and then you rest
and stand in your pebble at the end of the days.

HOSEA 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE WORD OF YAH VEH TO HOSHEA

- 1 The word of the *LORD Yah Veh* that came unto *Hosea being to Hoshea*, the son of Beerī, in the days of *Uzziah Uzzi Yah, Jotham Yah Tham, Ahaz Ach Az*, and *Hesekiah Yechizqi Yah*, kings **sovereigns** of *Judah Yah Hudah*, and in the days of *Jeroboam Yarob Am* the son of *Joash Yah Ash*, king **sovereign** of *Israēl Yisra El*.
- 2 The beginning of the word of the *LORD Yah Veh* by *Hosea Hoshea*. And the *LORD Yah Veh* said to *Hosea Hoshea*, Go, take unto thee a *wife woman* of whoredoms and children of whoredoms: for the land hath *committed great whoredom whored*, departing from the *LORD Yah Veh*.
- 3 So he went and took *Gomer* the daughter of *Diblaim*; which conceived, and *bare birthed* him a son.
- 4 And the *LORD Yah Veh* said unto him, Call his name *Jezreel Yizre El*; for yet a little *while*, and I *will avenge shall visit* the blood of *Jezreel Yizre El* upon the house of *Jehu Yah Hu*, and *will shall* cause to *cease shabbathize* the *kingdom sovereignty* of the house of *Israēl Yisra El*.
- 5 And *so be* it *shall come to pass* at that day, that I *will shall* break the bow of *Israēl Yisra El* in the valley of *Jezreel Yizre El*.
- 6 And she conceived again, and *bare birthed* a daughter. And *God he* said unto him, Call her name *Lo—ruhamah Lo Ruchamah*: for I *will no more have shall not add* to mercy upon the house of *Israēl Yisra El*; but *in bearing*, I *will shall* utterly take bear them away.
- 7 But I *will have shall* mercy upon the house of *Judah Yah Hudah*, and *will shall* save them by the *LORD Yah Veh* their *God Elohim*, and *will shall* not save them by bow, nor by sword, nor by *battle war*, by horses, nor by *horsemen cavalry*.
- 8 Now when she had weaned *Lo—ruhamah Lo Ruchamah*, she conceived, and *bare birthed* a son.
- 9 Then said *God He*, Call his name *Loammi Lo Ammi*: for ye are not my people, and I *will shall* not be *your God yours*.
- 10 Yet the number of the *children sons* of *Israēl Yisra El* shall be as the sand of the sea, which cannot be measured nor *numbered scribed*; and *so be* it *shall come to pass*, that in the place where it was said unto them, *Ye are not my people Lo Ammi*, there it shall be said unto them, *Ye are the sons of the living God El*.
- 11 Then shall the *children sons* of *Judah Yah Hudah* and the *children sons* of *Israēl Yisra El* be gathered together, and *appoint set* themselves one head, and they shall *come up ascend* out of the land: for great shall be the day of *Jezreel Yizre El*.
- 2 Say ye unto your brethren, *Ammi/My people*; and to your sisters, *Ruhamah/Mercied*.
- 2 Plead with your mother, plead: for she is not my *wife woman*, neither am I her *husband man*: let her *therefore put away turn aside* her whoredoms *out of her sight from her face*, and her adulteries from between her breasts;
- 3 Lest I strip her naked, and set her as in the day that she was *born birthed*, and *make set* her as a wilderness, and set her like a *dry parched* land, and *slay deathify* her with thirst.

HOSHEA 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE WORD OF YAH VEH TO HOSHEA

- 1 The word of *Yah Veh* being to *Hoshea* the son of Beerī in the days of *Uzzi Yah, Yah Tham, Ach Az* and *Yechizqi Yah*, sovereigns of *Yah Hudah*, and in the days of *Yarob Am* the son of *Yah Ash* sovereign of *Yisra El*.
- 2 The beginning of the word of *Yah Veh* by *Hoshea*: And *Yah Veh* says to *Hoshea*, Go, take to yourself a woman of whoredoms and children of whoredoms: for the land whores from *Yah Veh*.
- 3 And he goes and takes *Gomer* the daughter of *Diblaim* who conceives and births him a son.
- 4 And *Yah Veh* says to him, Call his name *Yizre El/EI Seeds*; for yet a little, and I visit the blood of *Yizre El* on the house of *Yah Hu*, and *shabbathize* the *sovereigndom* of the house of *Yisra El*.
- 5 And *so be* it, at that day, I break the bow of *Yisra El* in the valley of *Yizre El*.
- 6 And she conceives again, and births a daughter: and he says to him, Call her name *Lo Ruchamah/Not Mercied*: for I add not to mercy the house of *Yisra El*; for in bearing, I bear them away: and I mercy the house of *Yah Hudah*, and save them by *Yah Veh* their *Elohim*; and save them not by bow, or by sword, or by war, by horses, or by cavalry.
- 8 And she weans *Lo Ruchamah* and conceives and births a son.
- 9 Then he says, Call his name *Lo Ammi/Not My People*: for you are not my people, and I am not yours.
- 10 And the number of the sons of *Yisra El* is as the sand of the sea — neither measured nor scribed: and so be it, in the place where it says to them, *Lo Ammi* there it says to them, *You are the sons of the living El*:
- 11 and the sons of *Yah Hudah* and the sons of *Yisra El* gather together, and set themselves one head, and they ascend from the land: for great is the day of *Yizre El*.
- 2 Say to your brothers, *Ammi/My people*; and to your sisters, *Ruchamah/Mercied*. Plead with your mother — plead: for she is neither my woman nor I her man: have her turn aside her whoredoms from her face and her adulteries from between her breasts; lest I strip her naked and set her as in the day she was birthed; and set her as a wilderness and set her as a parched land and deathify her with thirst:

HOSEA 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 And I **will shall** not have mercy upon her children sons;
for they be the *children sons* of whoredoms.
5 For their mother hath *played the harlot whored*:
she that conceived them hath done shamefully:
for she said, I **will shall** go after my lovers,
that give me my bread and my water,
my wool and my flax, mine oil and my drink.
6 Therefore, behold,
I **will shall** hedge up thy way with thorns,
and **make wall** a wall, that she shall not find her paths.
7 And she shall *follow after pursue* her lovers,
but she shall not overtake them;
and she shall seek them,
but shall not find them:
then shall she say,
I **will shall** go and return to my first *husband man*;
for then was it better with me than **now at this time**.
8 For she did not know that I gave her *corn crop*,
and *wine juice*, and oil,
and *multiplied abounded* her silver and gold,
which they *prepared worked* for Baal.
9 Therefore **will shall** I return,
and take away my *corn crop* in the time *thereof*,
and my *wine juice* in the season *thereof*,
and **will recover shall rescue** my wool and my flax
given to cover her nakedness.
10 And now
will shall I *discover expose* her *lewdness vulva*
in the *sight eyes* of her lovers,
and **none no man**
shall **deliver rescue** her out of mine hand.
11 I **will shall** also
cause all her *mirth joy* to cease **shabbathize**,
her *feast days celebrations*, her new moons,
and her *sabbaths shabbaths*,
and all her *solemn feasts seasons*.
12 And I **will destroy shall desolate**
her vines and her fig trees,
whereof she hath said,
These are my *rewards payoffs*
that my lovers have given me:
and I **will make shall set** them a forest,
and the *beasts live beings* of the field shall eat them.
13 And I **will shall** visit upon her the days of Baalim,
wherein she *burned incense incensed* to them,
and she *decked adorned* herself
with her *earrings noserings* and her *jewels ornaments*,
and she went after her lovers, and forgot me,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
THE RESTORATION OF YAH VEH
14 Therefore, behold, I **will allure shall entice** her,
and **bring carry** her into the wilderness,
and **speak word** comfortably unto her.
15 And I **will shall** give her her vineyards from thence,
and *the valley of Achor Gaymek Achor*
for a **door an opening** of hope:
and she shall *sing answer* there,
as in the days of her youth,
and as in the day when she *came up ascended*
out of the land of *Egypt Misrayim*.
16 And it shall be at that day,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
that thou shalt call me *Ishi/My man*;
and shalt call me no more *Baali/My Baal*.
17 For I **will take away shall turn aside**
the names of Baalim out of her mouth,
and they shall no more be remembered by their name.
18 And in that day
will I make shall I cut a covenant for them
with the *beasts live beings* of the field
and with the *fowls flyers* of *heaven the heavens*,
and with the *creeping things creepers* of the *ground soil*:
and I **will shall** break the bow
and the sword and the *battle war* out of the earth,
and **will make shall cause** them
to lie down *safely confidently*.
19 And I **will shall** betroth thee unto me
for ever eternally;
yea, I **will shall** betroth thee unto me

HOSHEA 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 and I not mercy her sons;
for they *are* the sons of whoredoms:
5 for their mother whores:
she who conceived them shames
— for she says, I go after my lovers
who give me my bread and my water;
my wool and my flax; my oil and my drink:
6 so behold,
I hedge your way with thorns,
and wall a wall that she not find her paths:
7 and she pursues her lovers
and overtakes them not;
and she seeks them
and finds them not.
And she says, I go and return to my first man;
for it was better with me than at this time.
— and she knows not
that I gave her crop and juice and oil;
and abounded her silver and gold
which they worked for Baal.
9 So I return and take away my crop in time
and my juice in season;
and rescue my wool and my flax
which covers her nakedness.
10 And now I expose her vulva
in the eyes of her lovers,
and no man rescues her from my hand.
11 I also shabbathize all her joy
— her celebrations, her new moons,
and her shabbaths, and all her seasons:
and I desolate her vines and her fig trees
whereof she says,
These are my payoffs my lovers give me:
and I set them a forest
and the live beings of the field eat them:
13 and I visit on her the days of Baalim,
wherein she incenses to them;
and adorns herself
with her noserings and her ornaments,
and goes after her lovers, and forgets me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
THE RESTORATION OF YAH VEH
14 So behold, I entice her;
and carry her into the wilderness
and word comfortably to her:
15 and I give her her vineyards from there
and Gaymek Achor for an opening of hope:
and there she answers
as in the days of her youth
— as in the day she ascended
from the land of Misrayim.
16 And so be it, at that day,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that you call me *Ishi/My Man*;
and call me no more *Baali/My Baal*.
17 For I turn aside
the names of Baalim from her mouth,
— no more remembered by name:
18 and in that day,
I cut a covenant for them
with the live beings of the field
and with the flyers of the heavens
and with the creepers of the soil:
and I break the bow and the sword
and the war from the earth
and lay them down confidently:
19 and I betroth you to me eternally;
yes, I betroth you to me

HOSEA 2—4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

20 in *righteousness* **justness**, and in judgment,
and in *lovingkindness* **mercy**, and in mercies.
I *will shall* even betroth thee unto me
in *faithfulness* **trustworthiness**:
and thou shalt know *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
21 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*, in that day,
I *will hear shall answer*,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
I *will hear shall answer* the heavens,
and they shall *hear answer* the earth;
22 And the earth shall *hear answer* the *corn* **crop**,
and the *wine* **juice**, and the oil;
and they shall *hear Jezreel answer* **Yizre El**.
23 And I *will sow shall seed* her unto me in the earth;
and I *will have mercy shall Mercy/Ruchamah*
upon her that had not obtained mercy
Not Mercied/Lo Ruchamah;
and I *will shall* say to
them which were not my people
Not My People/Lo Ammi,
Thou art my people My People/Ammi;
and they shall say, *Thou art my God My Elohim*.

THE RECONCILIATION OF HOSHEA

3 Then said *the LORD* **Yah Veh** unto me, Go yet,
love a woman beloved of her friend, yet an adulteress,
according to the love of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
toward the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**,
who *look to face* other *gods* **elohim**,
and love *flacons* **cakes** of *wine* **grapes**.
2 So I bought her to me for fifteen *pieces of silver*,
and *for an homer* **a chomer** of barley,
and *an half homer* **a lethech** of barley:
3 And I said unto her,
Thou shalt *abide settle* for me many days;
thou shalt not *play the harlot* **whore**,
and thou shalt not be for another man:
so *will shall* I also be for thee.
4 For the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El**
shall *abide settle* many days
without a king **with no sovereign**,
and *without a prince* **no governor**,
and *without a no sacrifice*,
and *without an image* **no monolith**,
and *without an no ephod*,
and *without no teraphim*:
5 Afterward
shall the *children sons of Israel* **Yisra El** return,
and seek *the LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**,
and David their *king* **sovereign**;
and shall fear *the LORD* **Yah Veh** and his goodness
in the latter days.

THE CONTROVERSY OF YAH VEH

4 Hear the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
ye children **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh** hath a controversy
with the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land,
because there is no truth, nor mercy,
nor knowledge of *God* **Elohim** in the land.
2 By *swearing* **oathing**, and lying, and *killing* **murder**,
and stealing, and *committing* **adultery** **adulterizing**,
they *break out* **separate**, and blood toucheth blood.
3 Therefore shall the land mourn,
and every one that *dwellleth* **settleth** therein
shall languish,
with the *beasts* **live beings** of the field,
and with the *fowls* **flyers of heaven** **the heavens**;
yea, the fishes of the sea also
shall be *taken away* **gathered**.
4 Yet let no man strive, nor reprove *another man*:
for thy people are as they that strive with the priest.
5 Therefore shalt thou *fall* **falter** in the day,
and the prophet also
shall *fall* **falter** with thee in the night,
and I *will destroy shall sever* thy mother.
6 My people are *destroyed* **severed** for lack of knowledge:
because thou hast *despised* **spurned** knowledge,
I *will shall* also *reject* **spurn** thee,
that thou shalt be no priest to me:
seeing thou hast forgotten the *law* **torah** of thy *God* **Elohim**,

HOSHEA 2—4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

in justness and in judgment;
and in mercy and in mercies:
20 and betroth you to me in trustworthiness:
and you know Yah Veh:
21 and so be it, in that day, I answer
— an oracle of Yah Veh
— I answer the heavens
and they answer the earth;
22 and the earth answers the crop
and the juice and the oil;
and they answer Yizre El:
23 and I seed her to me in the earth;
and I have Mercy/Ruchamah
on Not Mercied/Lo Ruchamah;
and to Not My People/Lo Ammi,
I say My People/Ammi;
and they say, My Elohim.

THE RECONCILIATION OF HOSHEA

3 Then Yah Veh says to me,
Go again; love a woman beloved of her friend,
and an adulteress,
according to the love of Yah Veh
toward the sons of Yisra El,
who face other elohim and love cakes of grapes.
2 So I buy her for myself for fifteen silver
and a chomer of barley and a lethech of barley:
3 and I say to her,
You, settle for me many days;
neither whore,
nor become for another man:
and thus I also for you.
4 The sons of Yisra El settle for many days
with no sovereign and no governor;
no sacrifice, no monolith,
no ephod, no teraphim:
5 afterward the sons of Yisra El return
and seek Yah Veh their Elohim
and David their sovereign;
and fear Yah Veh and his goodness in the latter days.

THE CONTROVERSY OF YAH VEH

4 Hear the word of Yah Veh,
you sons of Yisra El:
because of a controversy of Yah Veh
with the settlers of the land;
because there is neither truth nor mercy
nor knowledge of Elohim in the land:
2 oathing and lying and murder
and stealing and adulterizing separate;
and blood touches blood.
3 So the land mourns
and every one settling therein languishes
with the live beings of the field
and with the flyers of the heavens;
yes, the fishes of the sea are gathered:
4 yet neither strive with man nor reprove man:
for your people are as they who strive with the priest.
5 And you falter in the day
and the prophet also falters with you in the night;
and I sever your mother.
6 My people are severed for lack of knowledge:
because you spurn knowledge,
I also spurn you from priesting to me:
seeing you forget the torah of your Elohim,

HOSEA 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

I will **shall** also forget thy *children* sons.
7 As they were increased **According to their abundance**,
so they sinned against me:
therefore will **shall** I change their *glory* **honour**
into *shame* **abasement**.
8 They eat *up* the sin of my people,
and they *set* **lift** their *heart* **soul**
on their *iniquity* **perversity**.
9 And there shall be, like people, like priest:
and I will *punish* **shall visit upon** them for their ways,
and *reward* them **return** their *doings* **exploits**.
10 For they shall eat,
and not *have enough* **be satisfied**:
they shall *commit* *whoredom* **whore**,
and shall not *increase* **break forth**:
because they have *left off* **forsaken**
to *take heed to the LORD* **guard unto Yah Veh**.
11 Whoredom and wine and *new wine* **juice**
take away the heart.
12 My people ask *counsel* at their *stocks* **trees**,
and their staff *declareth* **telleth** unto them:
for the spirit of whoredoms hath caused them to *err* **stray**,
and they have *gone* a *whoring* **whored**
from under their *God* **Elohim**.
13 They sacrifice upon the tops of the mountains,
and *burn* incense upon the hills,
under oaks and poplars and *elms* **terebinth**,
because the shadow *thereof* is good:
therefore your daughters shall *commit* *whoredom* **whore**,
and your *spouses* **brides**
shall *commit* *adultery* **adulterize**.
14 I will **shall** not *punish* **visit upon** your daughters
when they *commit* *whoredom* **whore**,
nor your *spouses* **brides**
when they *commit* *adultery* **adulterize**:
for themselves are separated with whores,
and they sacrifice with *harlots* **hallowed whores**:
therefore the people that *doth* **discerneth** not *understand*
shall fall.
15 Though thou, *Israel* **Yisra El**, *play the harlot* **whoreth**,
yet let not Judah offend **Yah Hudah become guilty**;
and come not ye unto Gilgal,
neither *go ye up to Bethaven* **ascend ye to Beth Aven**,
nor *swear* **oath**, *The LORD* **Yah Veh** liveth.
16 For *Israel slideth back* **Yisra El rebelleth**
as a *backsliding* **revolting** heifer:
now *the LORD will feed* **Yah Veh shall tend** them
as a lamb in a *large place* **an expanse**.
17 *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** is joined to idols:
let leave him alone.
18 Their *drink* **potion** is *sour* **turned**:
they have *committed* *whoredom* **whored** continually:
her *rulers* **bucklers** with *shame* **abasement** do love,
Give ye.
19 The wind hath bound her up in her wings,
and they shall be *ashamed* **shamed**
because of their sacrifices.

THE JUDGMENT OF YAH VEh AGAINST YISRA EL

5 Hear ye this, O priests;
and hearken, ye house of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and *give ye ear* **hearken**, O house of the *king* **sovereign**;
for judgment is toward you,
because ye have been a snare on *Mizpah* **Mispeh**,
and a net spread upon Tabor.
2 And the *revolters* **deviates**
are profound to make **have deepened** to slaughter,
though I have been a *rebuker* **discipliner** of them all.
3 I know *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** is not *hid* **concealed** from me:
for now, O *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
thou *committest* *whoredom* **whorest**,
and *Israel* **Yisra El** is *defiled* **fouleth**.
4 They will **shall** not *frame* **give** their *doings* **exploits**
to turn unto their *God* **Elohim**:
for the spirit of whoredoms is in the midst of them,
and they have not known *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
5 And the *pride* **pomp** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
doth testify **answereth** to his face:

HOSHEA 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I also forget your sons.
7 According to their abundance,
thus they sin against me:
so I change their honor into abasement.
8 They eat the sin of my people,
and they lift their soul on their perversity:
9 and so be it, as people, as priest:
and I visit on them for their ways,
and return their exploits.
10 For they eat, and satisfy not:
they whore, and not break forth:
because they forsake to guard to Yah Veh.
11 Whoredom and wine and juice
take away the heart:
12 my people ask at their trees,
and their staff tells them:
for the spirit of whoredoms strays them
and they whore from under their Elohim:
13 they sacrifice on the mountain tops
and incense on the hills;
under oaks and poplars and terebinth
because the shadow is good:
so your daughters whore
and your brides adulterize.
14 I neither visit on your daughters
when they whore;
nor your brides
when they adulterize:
for they separate with whores
and they sacrifice with hallowed whores:
a people who discerns not, falls.
15 Though you, Yisra El, whore,
and you, O Yah Hudah,
neither guilt nor come to Gilgal;
neither ascend to Beth Aven
nor oath, Yah Veh lives.
16 For Yisra El rebels as a revolting heifer;
now Yah Veh tends them as a lamb in an expanse:
17 Ephrayim joins with idols; leave him alone:
18 their potion turns; they whore continually:
her bucklers love abasement:
19 the wind binds her in her wings,
and they shame because of their sacrifices.

THE JUDGMENT OF YAH VEh AGAINST YISRA EL

5 Hear this, O priests;
and hearken, you house of Yisra El;
and hearken, O house of the sovereign:
for judgment is toward you
because you become a snare on Mispeh,
and a net spread over Tabor:
and the deviates deepen to slaughter,
and I discipline them all.
3 I know Ephrayim,
and Yisra El is not concealed from me:
for you, O Ephrayim, whore
and Yisra El fouls:
4 they give not their exploits
to return to their Elohim:
for the spirit of whoredoms is midst them
and they know not Yah Veh:
5 and the pomp of Yisra El answers to his face:

HOSEA 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

therefore shall *Israel Yisra El* and *Ephraim Ephrayim*
fall **falter** in their *iniquity* **perversity**;
Judah Yah Hudah also shall *fall falter* with them.
6 They shall go with their flocks and with their herds
to seek *the LORD Yah Veh*;
but they shall not find *him*;
he hath withdrawn himself from them.
7 They have dealt *treacherously* **covertly**
against *the LORD Yah Veh*:
for they have *begotten* **birthed** strange *children* **sons**:
now shall a month *devour* **consume** them
with their *portions* **allotments**.
8 *Blow Blast* ye the *cornet* **shophar** in *Gibeah* **Gibah**,
and the trumpet in Ramah:
cry aloud **shout** at *Bethaven* **the house of mischief**,
after thee, O *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**.
9 *Ephraim Ephrayim* shall be desolate
in the day of rebuke:
among the *tribes* **scions** of *Israel Yisra El*
have I made known
that which shall *surely* be **trustworthy**.
10 The *princes* **governors** of *Judah Yah Hudah*
were like them that remove the *bound* **border**:
therefore I will I shall pour out my wrath
upon them like water.
11 *Ephraim Ephrayim*
is oppressed and *broken* **crushed** in judgment,
because he *willingly walked* **willed to walk**
after the *commandment* **misvah**.
12 Therefore *will shall* I be unto *Ephraim Ephrayim*
as a moth,
and to the house of *Judah Yah Hudah* as rottenness.
13 When *Ephraim Ephrayim* saw his sickness,
and *Judah Yah Hudah* saw his *wound* **sore**,
then went *Ephraim Ephrayim* to the *Assyrian* **Ashshuri**,
and sent to *king Jareb* **sovereign Yareb to plead**:
yet could he not heal you,
nor cure you of your *wound* **sore**.
14 For I *will shall* be unto *Ephraim Ephrayim*
as a **roaring** lion,
and as a *young lion* **whelp**
to the house of *Judah Yah Hudah*:
I, *even I, will shall* tear and go away;
I *will take* **shall bear** away,
and none shall rescue *him*.
15 I *will shall* go and return to my place,
till they acknowledge their *offence* **having guilted**,
and seek my face:
in their *affliction* **tribulation** they *will shall* seek me early.

THE CALL TO YISRA EL TO RETURN TO YAH VEH

6 Come, and let us return unto *the LORD Yah Veh*:
for he hath torn, and he *will shall* heal us;
he hath smitten, and he *will shall* bind us *up*.
2 After two days *will he revive* **shall enliven** us:
in the third day he *will shall* raise us *up*,
and we shall live *in his sight* **at his face**.
3 Then shall we know,
if we *follow on* **pursue** to know *the LORD Yah Veh*:
his *going forth* **proceeding**
is prepared as the *morning* **dawn**;
and he shall come unto us as the *rain* **downpour**,
as the *latter and former* **after** rain **poureth** unto the earth.

THE RESPONSE OF YAH VEH

4 O *Ephraim Ephrayim*, what shall I *do work* unto thee?
O *Judah Yah Hudah*, what shall I *do work* unto thee?
for your *goodness* **mercy** is as a morning cloud,
and as the early dew it goeth away.
5 Therefore have I hewed them by the prophets;
I have *slain* **slaughtered** them
by the *words* **sayings** of my mouth:
and thy judgments are as the light that goeth forth.
6 For I desired *mercy*, and not sacrifice;
and the knowledge of *God* **Elohim**
more than *burnt offerings* **holocausts**.
7 But they like *men* **humanity**
have *transgressed* **trespassed** the covenant:
there have they dealt *treacherously* **covertly** against me.
8 *Gilead Gilad* is a city of them that *work iniquity* **do mischief**,
and *is polluted* **trippeth** with blood.

HOSHEA 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and *Yisra El* and *Ephrayim* falter in their perversity;
Yah Hudah also falters with them.
6 With their flocks and with their herds
they go to seek *Yah Veh*;
and find not:
he withdraws himself from them.
7 They deal covertly against *Yah Veh*:
for they birth strange sons:
now a month consumes them with their allotments.
8 You, blast the shophar in Gibah
and the trumpet in Ramah:
shout at the house of mischief,
After you, O Ben Yamin!
9 Ephrayim becomes desolate in the day of rebuke:
among the scions of *Yisra El*
I make known the trustworthy.
10 The governors of *Yah Hudah*
become removers of the border:
I pour my wrath on them as water.
11 Ephrayim *is* oppressed; crushed in judgment;
because he wills to walk after the misvah.
12 So I *am* to Ephrayim as a moth
and to the house of *Yah Hudah* as rottenness.
13 And Ephrayim sees his sickness
and *Yah Hudah* sees his sore;
and Ephrayim goes to the Ashshuri
and sends to sovereign Yareb to plead:
yet he can neither heal you
nor cure you of your sore.
14 For I *am* to Ephrayim as a roaring lion
and as a whelp to the house of *Yah Hudah*:
I — I tear and go away; I bear away;
and no one rescues:
15 I go and return to my place,
until they acknowledge their guilt
and seek my face:
in their tribulation they seek me early.

THE CALL TO YISRA EL TO RETURN TO YAH VEH

6 Come, and return to *Yah Veh*:
for he tears, and he heals us;
he smites, and he binds us:
after two days he enlivens us;
in the third day he raises us;
and we live at his face.
3 And we know — we pursue to know *Yah Veh*:
as the dawn
he prepares his proceeding;
and he comes to us as the downpour
— as the after rain pouring to the earth.

THE RESPONSE OF YAH VEH

4 O Ephrayim, what work I to you?
O *Yah Hudah*, what work I to you?
For your *mercy* *is* as a morning cloud,
and as the early dew, goes away.
5 So I hew them by the prophets;
I slaughter them by the sayings of my mouth:
and your judgments *are* as the light that comes forth.
6 For I desire mercy and not sacrifice;
and the knowledge of *Elohim* more than holocausts.
7 And they, as humanity, trespass the covenant:
there they deal covertly against me.
8 Gilad is a city of doers of mischief
and trips with blood:

HOSEA 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 And as troops of robbers wait for **await** a man,
so the *company* **commune** of priests
murder in the way *by consent* **to** Shechem:
for they *commit lewdness* **work intrigue**
10 I have seen *an horrible thing* **horror**
in the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
there is the whoredom of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
Israel **Yisra El** is defiled.
11 Also, O *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
he hath set an harvest for thee,
when I returned the captivity of my people.
7 When I *would* **should** have healed *Israel* **Yisra El**,
then the *iniquity* **perversity** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
was *discovered* **exposed**,
and the *wickedness* **evil** of *Samaria* **Shomeron**:
for they *commit* **do** falsehood;
and the thief *cometh in* **enters**,
and the troop of robbers
spoileth without **strippeth in the outways**.
2 And they *consider* **say** not in their hearts
that I remember all their *wickedness* **evil**:
now their own *doings* **exploits**
have *beset* **surrounded** them *about*;
they are *before* **in front of** my face.
3 They *make* **cheer**
the *king* **glad** **sovereign** with their *wickedness* **evil**,
and the *princes* **governors** with their *lies* **deceptions**.
4 They are all adulterers,
as an oven *heated* **burning** by the baker,
who *ceaseth* **shabbathizeth** from *raising* **waking**
after he hath kneaded the dough, until it be leavened.
5 In the day of our *king* **sovereign**
the *princes* **governors** have *made* **stroked** him *sick*
with *bottles of wine* **of fury**;
he *stretched* **drew** out his hand with scorners.
6 For they have *made ready* **approached**;
their heart *like is* an oven, *whiles* they *lie in wait* **lurk all night**:
their baker sleepeth *all the night*;
in the morning it burneth as a flaming fire.
7 They are all *hot* **heated** as an oven,
and have *devoured* **consumed** their judges;
all their *kings* **sovereigns** are fallen:
there is none among them that calleth unto me.
8 *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
he hath *mixed himself* **mingled** among the people;
Ephraim **Ephrayim** is a *cake* **an ashcake** not turned.
9 Strangers have *devoured* **consumed** his *strength* **force**,
and he knoweth it not:
yea, gray hairs are **greyness be** here and there upon him,
yet he knoweth not.
10 And the *pride* **pomp** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
testifieth **answereth** to his face:
and they do not return
to the *LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**,
nor seek him for all this.
11 *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** also
is like a *silly* **deluded** dove without heart:
they call to *Egypt* **Misrayim**, they go to *Assyria* **Ashshur**.
12 When they shall go,
I *will* **shall** spread my net upon them;
I *will* **shall** bring them down
as the *fowls* **flyers** of the *heaven* **heavens**;
I *will* **chastise** **shall discipline** them,
as *their congregation hath heard*
reported to their witness.
13 Woe unto them! for they have fled from me:
destruction **ravage** unto them!
because they have *transgressed* **rebelled** against me:
though I have redeemed them,
yet they have *spoken* **worded** lies against me.
14 And they have not cried unto me with their heart,
when they howled upon their beds:
they *assemble* **sojourn themselves**
for *corn* **crop** and *wine* **juice**,
and they *rebel* **turn aside** against me.
15 Though I have
bound **disciplined** and strengthened their arms,
yet do they *imagine mischief* **fabricate evil** against me.
16 They return, but not to *the most High* **Elyon**:

HOSHEA 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 and as troops await a man,
a commune of priests
murders in the way to Shechem:
for they work intrigue.
10 I see horror in the house of Yisra El:
— the whoredom of Ephrayim,
Yisra El defiles.
11 Also, O Yah Hudah,
I set a harvest for you
when I restore the captivity of my people.
7 When I heal Yisra El,
then I expose the perversity of Ephrayim
and the evil of Shomeron;
for they do falsehood:
and the thief enters
and the troop strips in the outways:
and they say not in their hearts
that I remember all their evil:
their own exploits surround them;
they are in front of my face:
3 they cheer the sovereign with their evil
and the governors with their deceptions:
they are all adulterers
4 — as an oven burning by the baker
who shabbathizes from waking
after he kneads the dough, until it leavens.
5 In the day of our sovereign
the governors stroke him with wine of fury;
he draws his hand with scorners:
6 for they approach; their heart is an oven:
they lurk all night; their baker sleeps:
in the morning it burns as a flaming fire.
7 They all heat as an oven and consume their judges;
all their sovereigns fall:
not one among them calls to me.
8 Ephrayim, he mingles among the people;
Ephrayim is an ashcake not turned.
9 Strangers consume his force and he knows it not:
yes, greyness here and there on him
yet he knows not.
10 And the pomp of Yisra El answers to his face:
and they neither return to Yah Veh their Elohim
nor seek him for all this:
11 and Ephrayim is as a deluded dove without heart:
they call to Misrayim; they go to Ashshur:
they go, and I spread my net over them;
I bring them down as the flyers of the heavens;
I discipline them as reported to their witness.
13 Woe to them! For they flee from me:
ravage to them — because they rebel against me:
and I — I redeem them;
yet they word lies against me:
14 and they cry not to me with their heart
but howl upon their beds:
they sojourn for crop and juice
and they turn aside against me.
15 Though I discipline and strengthen their arms,
yet they fabricate evil against me:
16 they return, but not to Elyon:

HOSEA 7—9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

they are like a deceitful bow:
their *princes* **governors** shall fall by the sword
for the rage of their tongue:
this shall be their derision
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.

8 Set the *trumpet* **shophar** to thy *mouth* **palate**.
He shall come
as an eagle against the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
because they have *transgressed* **trespassed** my covenant,
and *trespassed* **rebelled** against my *law* **torah**.
2 *Israel* **Yisra El** shall cry unto me,
My God **Elohim**, we know thee.
3 *Israel* **Yisra El** hath cast off *the thing* that **which** is good:
the enemy shall pursue him.
4 They have set up *kings* **sovereigns**, but not by me:
they have *made princes* **dominated**, and I knew it not:
of their silver and their gold
have they *made* **worked** them idols,
that they may be cut off.
5 Thy calf, O *Samaria* **Shomeron**, hath cast *thee* off;
mine anger **my wrath** is kindled against them:
how long *will* **shall** it be
ere they *attain to* **be capable of** innocency?
6 For from *Israel* **Yisra El** was it also:
the *workman made* **engraver worked** it;
therefore it is not *God* **Elohim**:
but the calf of *Samaria* **Shomeron**
shall be *broken in pieces* **shattered**.
7 For they have *sown* **seeded** the wind,
and they shall *reap* **harvest** the *whirlwind* **hurricane**:
it hath no stalk:
the *bud* **sprout** shall *yield* **work** no *meal* **flour**:
if so be it *yield* **work**, the strangers shall swallow it up.
8 *Israel* **Yisra El** is swallowed up:
now shall they be among the *Gentiles* **goyim**
as a vessel **an instrument** wherein is no *pleasure* **delight**.
9 For they are *gone up* **ascended** to *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
a wild ass **runner** alone by himself:
Ephraim **Ephrayim** hath hired lovers.
10 Yea, though they have hired among the *nations* **goyim**,
now *will* **shall** I gather them,
and they shall *sorrow* **be pierced** a little
for the burden of the *king* **sovereign** of *princes* **governors**.
11 Because *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
hath *made many* **abounded sacrifice** altars to sin,
sacrifice altars shall be unto him to sin.
12 I have *written* **inscribed** to him
the *great things* **myriads of greatneses** of my *law* **torah**,
but they were *counted* **fabricated** as a strange *thing*.
13 They sacrifice flesh
for the sacrifices of *mine offerings* **my holocausts**,
and eat it;
but the LORD **Yah Veh**
accepteth them not **is not pleased with them**;
now *will* **shall** he remember their *iniquity* **perversity**,
and visit their sins:
they shall return to *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
14 For *Israel* **Yisra El** hath forgotten his *Maker* **Worker**,
and buildeth *temples* **manses**;
and *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
hath *multiplied fenced* **abounded fortified** cities:
but I *will* **shall** send a fire upon his cities,
and it shall *devour* **consume** the *palaces* **citadels** thereof.
9 Rejoice **Cheer** not, O *Israel* **Yisra El**,
for joy **twirling**, as *other people*:
for thou hast *gone a whoring* **whored**
from thy *God* **Elohim**,
thou hast loved a *reward* **payoff**
upon every *cornfloor* **crop threshingfloor**.
2 The *floor* **threshingfloor** and the *winepress* **trough**
shall not *feed* **tend** them,
and the *new wine* **juice** shall *fail* **deceive** in her.
3 They shall not *dwell* **settle**
in the *LORD'S* land of **Yah Veh**;
but *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** shall return to *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and they shall eat *unclean things* **the foul**
in *Assyria* **Ashshur**.
4 They shall not *offer* **libate** wine offerings
to *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,

HOSHEA 7—9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

they are as a deceitful bow:
their governors fall by the sword
for the rage of their tongue:
this *is* their derision in the land of Misrayim.

8 A shophar to your palate
— as an eagle against the house of Yah Veh:
because they trespass my covenant
and rebel against my torah.
2 They cry to me,
My Elohim, we — Yisra El, know you!
3 Yisra El casts off the good:
an enemy pursues him.
4 they set sovereigns, but not by me:
they set dominators, and I know not:
they work idols of their silver and their gold
and cut themselves off.
5 Cast your calf, O Shomeron;
my wrath kindles against them:
how long ere they are capable of innocency?
6 For even of Yisra El:
the engraver works it; and it *is* not of Elohim:
for the calf of Shomeron shatters.
7 For they seed the wind
and harvest the hurricane:
there *is* no stalk; the sprout works no flour:
and if it works, strangers swallow it.
8 Yisra El is swallowed:
they are now among the goyim
as an instrument wherein *is* no delight:
for they ascend to Ashshur
— a wild runner alone by himself:
Ephrayim hires lovers.
9 Yes, though they hire among the goyim
I now gather them;
and they are pierced a little
by the burden of the sovereign of governors.
11 Because Ephrayim abounds sacrifice altars to sin,
they are his sacrifice altars to sin.
12 I inscribe to him
the myriads of greatneses of my torah,
they fabricate them as strange:
they sacrifice flesh
for the sacrifices of my holocausts,
and eat;
Yah Veh *is* not pleased with them;
now he remembers their perversity
and visits their sins:
they return to Misrayim.
14 And Yisra El forgets his Worker and builds manses
and Yah Hudah abounds fortified cities:
and I send a fire on his cities
and it consumes the citadels.
9 Neither cheer, O Yisra El; nor twirl as people:
for you whore from your Elohim,
you love a payoff on every crop threshingfloor.
2 The threshingfloor and the trough, they tend not
and the juice in her deceives:
3 they settle not in the land of Yah Veh;
and Ephrayim returns to Misrayim,
and they eat the foul in Ashshur.
4 They neither libate wine to Yah Veh,

HOSEA 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

neither shall they *be pleasing unto* **please** him:
their sacrifices shall be unto them
as the bread of *mourners* **mischief**;
all that eat *thereof* shall be *polluted* **fouled**:
for their bread for their soul
shall not come into the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
5 What *will shall* ye *do work* in the *solemn* **season** day,
and in the day
of the *feast* **celebration** of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**?
6 For, *lo* **behold**,
they are gone because of *destruction* **ravage**:
Egypt **Misrayim** shall gather them *up*,
Memphis **Moph** shall *bury* **entomb** them:
the *pleasant places* **desirables** for their silver,
nettles **thistles** shall possess them:
thorns shall be in their *tabernacles* **tents**.
7 The days of visitation *are come* **approach**,
the days of *recompence* *are come* **satisfaction approach**;
Israel **Yisra El** shall know *it*:
the prophet is a fool,
the *spiritual* man **of the spirit** is *mad* **insane**,
for the *multitude* **abundance**
of *thine iniquity* **thy perversity**,
and the great *hatred* **enmity**.
8 The *watchman* **watcher** of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
was with my *God* **Elohim**:
but the prophet is a snare of a *fowler* **snarer**
in all his ways,
and *hatred* **enmity** in the house of his *God* **El**.
9 They have *deeply* **deepened**,
corrupted themselves **they have ruined**,
as in the days of *Gibeah* **Gibah**:
therefore he *will shall* remember their *iniquity* **perversity**,
he *will shall* visit their sins.
10 I found *Israel* **Yisra El** like grapes in the wilderness;
I saw your fathers
as the firstripe in the fig tree at her *first time* **beginning**:
but they went to *Baalpeor* **Baal Peor**,
and separated themselves unto *that* **shame**;
and their abominations were according as they loved.
11 *As for Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
their *glory* **honour** shall fly *away* like a *bird* **flyer**,
from the birth,
and from the *womb* **belly**, and from the conception.
12 Though they *bring up* **nourish** their *children* **sons**,
yet *will shall* I bereave them,
that there shall not be a *man left* **human**:
yea,
woe also to them when I *depart* **turn aside** from them!
13 *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**, as I saw *Tyrus* **Sor**,
is *planted* **transplanted**
in a *pleasant place* **habitation of rest**:
but Ephraim **Ephrayim** shall bring *forth* his *children* **sons**
to the *murderer* **slaughterer**.
14 Give them, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
what *wilt shall* thou *give*?
give them a *miscarrying* **aborting** womb and dry breasts.
15 All their *wickedness* **evil** is in Gilgal:
for there I hated them:
for the *wickedness* **evil** of their *doings* **exploits**
I *will shall* drive them out of mine house,
I *will shall* add **not to** love them *no more*:
all their *princes* **governors** are revolvers.
16 *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** is smitten,
their root is *dried up* **withered**,
they shall *bear* **work** no fruit:
yea, though they *bring forth* **birth**,
yet *will shall* I slay
even the *beloved fruit* **desire** of their *womb* **belly**.
17 My *God* **will cast** **Elohim shall spurn** them away,
because they did not hearken unto him:
and they shall be wanderers
among the *nations* **goyim**.
10 *Israel* **Yisra El** is an *empty* **evacuating** vine,
he *bringeth forth* **equateth** fruit unto himself:
according to the *multitude* **abundance** of his fruit
he hath *increased* **abounded** the *sacrifice* **altars**;
according to the goodness of his land
they have made goodly *images* **monoliths**.

HOSHEA 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

nor please him:
their sacrifices *are* to them as the bread of mischief;
all who eat *are* fouled:
for their bread for their soul
comes not into the house of Yah Veh.
5 What work you in the day of the season
and in the day of the celebration of Yah Veh?
6 For behold, they are gone because of ravage:
Misrayim gathers them; Moph entombs them:
as for the desirables of their silver,
thistles possess them: thorns *are* in their tents.
7 The days of visitation approach,
the days of satisfaction approach;
Yisra El knows:
the prophet is a fool: the man of the spirit *is* insane,
because of the abundance of your perversity
and the great enmity.
8 Ephrayim is the watcher of my Elohim:
the prophet is a snare of the snarer in all his ways;
and enmity *is* in the house of his El.
9 They deepen; they ruin as in the days of Gibah:
he remembers their perversity; he visits their sins.
10 I find Yisra El as grapes in the wilderness;
I see your fathers
as the firstripe in the fig tree at her beginning:
they — they go to Baal Peor,
and separate themselves to shame
— their abominations are as their love.
11 Ephrayim is as a fowl
their honor flies from the birth
and from the belly and from the conception.
12 Though they nourish their sons,
yet I bereave them — without a human:
yes also, woe to them when I turn aside from them!
13 Ephrayim, as I saw Sor,
is transplanted in a habitation of rest:
and Ephrayim brings his sons to the slaughterer.
14 Give them, O Yah Veh!
What give you?
Give them an aborting womb and dry breasts.
15 All their evil *is* in Gilgal;
surely, there I hated them:
for the evil of their exploits
I drive them from my house;
I add not to love them:
all their governors are revolvers.
16 Ephrayim *is* smitten:
their root withers; they work no fruit:
yes, though they birth,
yet I slay the desire of their belly.
17 My Elohim spurns them,
because they hearken not to him:
and they become wanderers among the goyim.
10 Yisra El is an evacuated vine,
he equates fruit to himself:
as the abundance of his fruit
he abounds the sacrifice altars;
as the goodness of his land
they make goodly monoliths:

HOSEA 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 Their heart is *divided allotted*;
now shall they
be found faulty **acknowledge having guilted**;
he shall break *down* **the neck** of their altars,
he shall *spoil* **ravage** their *images* **monoliths**.

3 For now they shall say, We have no *king* **sovereign**,
because we *feared* **awed** not *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
what then should a *king do* **sovereign work a** to us?

4 They have *spoken* **worded** words,
swearing falsely **oathing vainly**
in *making* **cutting** a covenant:
thus judgment springeth *up*
as *hemlock* **rosh** in the furrows of the field.

5 The *inhabitants* **fellow tabernaclers**
of *Samaria* **Shomeron** shall *fear* **sojourn**
because of the *calves* **heifers** of *Bethaven* **Beth Aven**:
for the people *thereof* shall mourn over it,
and the *priests* **ascetics** *thereof* that *rejoiced* **twirled** on it,
for the *glory* **honour** *thereof*,
because it is *departed* **exiled** from it.

6 It shall be also *carried* **borne** unto *Assyria* **Ashshur**
for a *oblation* **an offering**
to *king Jareb* **sovereign Yareb** to **plead**:
Ephraim **Ephrayim**
shall *receive* **take** *shame*,
and *Israel* **Yisra El**
shall *be ashamed* **shame** of his own counsel.

7 As for *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
her *king* **sovereign** is *cut off* **severed**
as the *foam* **raging** upon the **face of the** water.

8 The *high places* **bamahs** also of *Aven*,
the sin of *Israel* **Yisra El**, shall be *destroyed* **desolated**:
the thorn and the thistle
shall *come up* **ascend** on their **sacrifice** altars;
and they shall say to the mountains, Cover us;
and to the hills, Fall on us.

9 O *Israel* **Yisra El**,
thou hast sinned from the days of *Gibeah* **Gibah**:
there they stood:
the *battle* **war** in *Gibeah* **Gibah**
against the *children* **sons** of *iniquity* **wickedness**
did not overtake them.

10 It is in my *desire* **I yearn**
that I should *chastise* **bind** them;
and the people shall *be gathered* **gather** against them,
when *they* **I** shall *bind* **themselves** **them**
in their two *furrows* **eyes**.

11 And *Ephraim* **Ephrayim** is as an heifer that is taught,
and loveth to *tread out the corn* **thresh**;
but I passed over upon her *fair* **good** neck:
I will *make Ephraim* **shall cause Ephrayim**
to *ride* **be ridden**;
Judah **Yah Hudah** shall plow,
and *Jacob* **Yaaqov** shall *break his clods* **harrow**.

12 Sow **Seed** to yourselves in *righteousness* **justness**,
reap in harvest **to your mouth** *mercy*;
break up **till** your *fallow ground* **tillage**:
for it is time to seek *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
till he come
and *rain righteousness* **pour justness** upon you.

13 Ye have plowed wickedness,
ye have *reaped iniquity* **harvested wickedness**;
ye have eaten the fruit of *lies* **deceptions**:
because thou didst *trust* **confide** in thy way,
in the *multitude* **abundance** of thy mighty men.

14 Therefore shall a *tumult* **an uproar** arise
among thy people,
and all thy fortresses shall be *spoiled* **ravaged**,
as *Shalman* **spoiled Betharbel** **ravaged Beth Arb El**
in the day of *battle* **war**:
the mother was *dashed in pieces* **splattered**
upon her *children* **sons**.

15 So **Thus** shall *Bethel do* **Beth El work** unto you
because **at the face of the evil**
of your *great wickedness* **evil**:
in a *morning* **the dawn**
shall the *king of Israel* **utterly be cut off**
in severing,
the sovereign of Yisra El shall be severed.

HOSHEA 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 their heart is allotted;
now they acknowledge having guilted:
he breaks the neck of their altars;
he ravages their monoliths.

3 For now they say, We have no sovereign,
because we awe not Yah Veh.
What then works a sovereign to us?

4 They word words;
oathing vainly in cutting a covenant:
thus judgment springs as rosh
in the furrows of the field:

5 the fellow tabernaclers of Shomeron sojourn
because of the heifers of Beth Aven:
for the people mourn over it;
and the ascetics twirl on it:
for the honor is exiled from it:

6 also it is borne to Ashshur
as an offering to sovereign Yareb to plead:
Ephrayim shames
and Yisra El shames of his own counsel.

7 As for Shomeron,
her sovereign is severed
as the raging on the face of the water.

8 And the bamahs of Aven,
the sin of Yisra El, desolates:
the thorn and the thistle
ascend on their sacrifice altars;
and they say to the mountains, Cover us!
and to the hills, Fall on us!

9 O Yisra El, you sinned from the days of Gibah:
there they stood:
the war in Gibah overtook them not
because of the sons of wickedness.

10 I yearn to bind them;
and when I bind their two eyes
the people gather against them.

11 And Ephrayim is as an heifer that is taught
— who loves to thresh;
and I — I pass over on her good neck:
Ephrayim, I ride;
Yah Hudah plows; and Yaaqov harrows.

12 Seed to yourselves in justness;
harvest to your mouth mercy;
till your tillage:
for it is time to seek Yah Veh,
until he comes and pours justness on you.

13 You plow wickedness; you harvest wickedness:
you eat the fruit of deceptions:
because you confide in your way
— in the abundance of your mighty.

14 And an uproar rises among your people;
and ravages all your fortresses
as Shalman ravaged Beth Arb El in the day of war:
— the mother splattered on her sons.

15 Thus Beth El works to you
at the face of the evil of your evil:
in the dawn
in severing, sever the sovereign of Yisra El.

HOSEA 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

11 When *Israel* **Yisra El** was a *child lad*,
then I loved him,
and called my son out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
2 As they called them, so they went from *them* **their face**:
they sacrificed unto Baalim,
and burned incense **incensed** to *graven images* **sculptiles**.
3 I taught *Ephraim* **caused Ephrayim** also to go **tread**,
taking them by their arms;
but they knew not that I healed them.
4 I drew them with cords of a *man* **human**,
with *bands* **ropes** of love:
and I was to them
as they that *take off* **lift** the yoke on their jaws,
and I *laid meat* **spread** unto them **to eat**.
5 He shall not return into the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and the *Assyrian* **Ashshuri** shall be his *king* **sovereign**,
because they refused to return.
6 And the sword shall *abide* **whirl** on his cities,
and shall *consume* **finish off** his branches,
and *devour them* **consume**, because of their own counsels.
7 And my people
are *bent* **prone** to *backsliding from me* **apostasy**:
though they called them to *the most High* **Elyon**,
none at all *would* **should** exalt him.
8 How shall I give thee up, *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**?
how shall I *deliver* **buckler** thee, *Israel* **Yisra El**?
how shall I *make* **give** thee as Admah?
how shall I *set* **set** thee as *Zeboim* **Seboim**?
mine heart is turned within me,
my *repentings* are *kindled* **solaces yearn** together.
9 I *will* **shall** not *execute* **work**
the *fierceness* **fuming** of *mine anger* **my wrath**,
I *will* **shall** not return to *destroy* *Ephraim* **ruin Ephrayim**:
for I am *God I* — **El**, and not man;
the Holy One in the midst of thee:
and I *will* **shall** not enter into the city.
10 They shall walk after *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
he shall roar like a lion:
when he shall roar,
then the *children* **sons** shall tremble
from the *west* **seaward**.
11 They shall tremble as a bird out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and as a dove out of the land of *Assyria* **Ashshur**:
and I *will* **place** **shall settle** them in their houses,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
12 *Ephraim compasseth* **Ephrayim surroundeth** me *about*
with *lies* **deceptions**,
and the house of *Israel* **Yisra El** with deceit:
but *Judah* yet *ruleth* **Yah Hudah rambles on** with *God El*,
and is *faithful* **trustworthy** with the *saints* **holy**.
12 *Ephraim feedeth* **Ephrayim grazeth** on wind,
and *followeth after* **pursueth** the *east wind* **easterly**:
he daily increaseth **every day he aboundeth** lies
and *desolation* **ravage**;
and they *do* **make** **cut** a covenant
with the *Assyrians* **Ashshuri**,
and oil is *carried* **borne** into *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
2 *The LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath also a controversy with *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and *will* **punish Jacob** **shall visit upon Yaaqov**
according to his ways;
according to his *doings* **exploits**
will **shall** he *recompense* **return** him.
3 He *took* **tripped** his brother by the heel
in the *womb* **belly**,
and by his strength
he *had power* **prevailed** with *God* **Elohim**:
4 Yea, he *had power* **dominated** over the angel,
and prevailed:
he wept,
and *made supplication unto him* **was granted charism**:
he found him in *Bethel* **Beth El**,
and there he *spake* **worded** with us;
5 Even *the LORD* **God of hosts** **Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**;
the LORD **Yah Veh** is his memorial.
6 Therefore *turn* **return** thou to thy *God* **Elohim**:
keep **guard** mercy and judgment,
and *wait on* **await** thy *God* **Elohim** continually.

HOSHEA 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

11 Because Yisra El *is* a lad, I love him;
and from Misrayim I call my son.
2 They call them; they go from their face:
they sacrifice to Baalim and incense to sculptiles.
3 And I tread Ephrayim
— taking them by their arms;
and they know not that I heal them
4 — draw them with human cords
— with ropes of love:
and I *am* to them
as they who lift the yoke on their jaws;
and I spread to them; and they eat.
5 He returns not to the land of Misrayim,
and the Ashshuri *is* his sovereign
— because they refuse to return:
6 and the sword whirls on his cities
and finishes off his branches and consumes
because of their own counsels.
7 And my people *are* prone to apostasy:
though they call Elyon to themselves,
no one at all exalts him.
8 How give I you up, Ephrayim?
How buckler I you, Yisra El?
How give I you as Admah?
How set I you as Seboim?
My heart turns within me;
my solaces yearn together.
9 I neither work the fuming of my wrath
nor return to ruin Ephrayim:
for I *am* El, and not man;
the Holy One among you:
and I enter not the city.
10 They walk after Yah Veh; he roars as a lion:
when he roars,
11 the sons from the seaward tremble:
they tremble as a bird from Misrayim
and as a dove from the land of Ashshur:
and I settle them in their houses
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
12 Ephrayim surrounds me with deceptions
and the house of Yisra El with deceit:
and Yah Hudah rambles on with El
and is trustworthy with the holy.
12 Ephrayim grazes on wind and pursues the easterly;
every day he abounds lies and ravages:
and they cut a covenant with the Ashshuri
and bear oil to Misrayim.
2 And Yah Veh has a controversy with Yah Hudah
and visits on Yaaqov according to his ways
— according to his exploits he returns to him.
3 He tripped his brother by the heel in the belly;
and by his strength he prevailed with Elohim:
4 Yes, he dominated over the angel
and prevailed by weeping and was granted charism:
he found him in Beth El and there he worded with us;
5 even Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth;
Yah Veh *is* his memorial.
6 And you, return to your Elohim;
guard mercy and judgment
and await your Elohim continually.

HOSEA 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 He is a merchant **Kenaar**,
the balances of deceit are in his hand:
he loveth to oppress.

8 And **Ephraim Ephrayim** said,
Yet I am become rich **enriched**,
I have found me out **substance strength**:
in all my labours
they shall find none **iniquity perversity** in me
that were sin.

9 And I that *am the LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
from the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
will **shall** yet **make cause** thee
to dwell **settle** in **tabernacles tents**,
as in the days of the **solemn feast seasons**.

10 I have also *spoken* **worded** by the prophets,
and I have **multiplied abounded** visions,
and used **similitudes comparisons**,
by the **ministry hand** of the prophets.

11 Is there **iniquity mischief** in **Gilead Gilad**?
surely they are vanity:
they sacrifice **bullocks oxen** in Gilgal;
yea, their **sacrifice** altars
are as heaps in the furrows of the fields.

12 And **Jacob Yaaqov**
fled into the **country field** of **Syria Aram**,
and **Israel Yisra El** served for a **wife woman**,
and for a **wife woman** he **kept sheep guarded**.

13 And by a prophet
the LORD brought Israel **Yah Veh ascended Yisra El**
out of **Egypt Misrayim**,
and by a prophet was he **preserved guarded**.

14 **Ephraim Ephrayim**
provoked **vexed** him to **anger**
most bitterly **with bitterness**:
therefore shall he **leave abandon** his blood upon him,
and his reproach
shall his **Lord return Adonay returneth** unto him.

13 When **Ephraim Ephrayim**
spake trembling **worded in terror**,
he **exalted lifted** himself in **Israel Yisra El**;
but when he **offended had guilted** in Baal, he died.

2 And now they **add to sin more and more**,
and have **made worked** them
molten images **molten** of their silver,
and idols
according to their own **understanding discerning**,
all of it the work of the **craftsmen engravers**:
they say of them,
Let the **men humanity** that **sacrifice sacrificeth**
kiss the calves.

3 Therefore they shall be as the morning cloud
and as the early dew that passeth away,
as the chaff that is
driven with the whirlwind **stormed**
out of the **floor threshingfloor**,
and as the smoke out of the **chimney window**.

4 Yet I *am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
from the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and thou shalt know no **god but elohim beside** me:
for there is no saviour **beside except** me.

5 I did know thee in the wilderness,
in the land of great **drought droughts**.

6 According to their pasture, so were they **filled satiated**;
they were **filled satiated**, and their heart was exalted;
therefore have they forgotten me.

7 Therefore I **will shall** be unto them as a **roaring lion**:
as a leopard by the way **will shall** I observe them:

8 I **will shall** meet them
as a bear that is bereaved of *her whelps*,
and **will rend shall rip** the **caul treasure** of their heart,
and there **will shall** I devour them like a **roaring lion**:
the wild **beast live being of the field** shall **tear split** them.

9 O **Israel Yisra El**, thou hast **destroyed ruined** thyself;
but in me is thine help.

10 I **will be thy king: Where is thy sovereign**
where is any other that may save **that saveth** thee
in all thy cities?
and thy judges of whom thou saidst,
Give me a **king sovereign** and **princes governors**?

HOSHEA 12, 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 **Kenaar** — the balances of deceit *are* in his hand;
he loves to oppress:

8 and Ephrayim says, Surely I enrich:
I find my strength in all my labors
they find no one perversity in me — sin.

9 And I — **Yah Veh** your **Elohim**
from the land of **Misrayim**;
and I return you to settle in tents
as in the days of the seasons.

10 And I word by the prophets,
and I abound visions,
and by the hand of the prophets
use comparisons.

11 Is there mischief in Gilad?
surely they are vanity:
they sacrifice oxen in Gilgal;
yes, their sacrifice altars *are* as heaps
in the furrows of the fields.

12 And **Yaaqov** flees into the field of **Aram**,
and **Yisra El** serves for a woman:
yes, for a woman he guards.

13 And by a prophet
Yah Veh ascends **Yisra El** from **Misrayim**,
— guarded by a prophet.

14 Ephrayim vexes himself with bitterness:
and he abandons his blood on him,
and **Adonay** returns his reproach to him.

13 When Ephrayim words in terror,
he lifts himself in **Yisra El**;
When he guilts in Baal, he dies.
And now they add to sin
and work themselves molten of their silver
— idols according to their own discerning
all the work of the engravers:
of humanity who sacrifices,
they say, Kiss the calves.

2 So they are as the morning cloud
and as the early dew that passes away:
as the chaff stormed from the threshingfloor
and as the smoke from the window.

3 Yet I — **Yah Veh** your **Elohim**
from the land of **Misrayim**
and you know no **elohim** except me:
for there is no saviour except me.

4 I — I knew you in the wilderness,
in the land of great droughts.

5 According to their pasture, they satiate;
— satiate, and exalt their heart;
so they forget me.

6 And I *am* to them as a roaring lion:
as a leopard by the way I observe them:
I meet them as a bear bereaved
and rip the treasure of their heart;
and there I devour them as a roaring lion:
as the wild live being of the field, split them.

7 O **Yisra El**, you ruin yourself;
but your help is in me.
Where is your sovereign
who saves you in all your cities?
And your judges of whom you say,
Give me a sovereign and governors?

HOSEA 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

11 I gave thee a king **sovereign** in mine anger **my wrath**,
and took him away in my wrath.
12 The *iniquity* **perversity** of Ephraim **Ephrayim**
is bound up; his sin is hid.
13 The *sorrows* **pangs** of a *travailing* **birthing** woman
shall come upon him: he is an unwise son;
for he should not stay
long in the place of the breaking forth
the time of the matrix
of children sons.
14 I *will* **shall** ransom them
from the *power* **hand** of the *grave* **sheol**;
I *will* **shall** redeem them from death:
O death, I *will* be thy *plagues* **where are thy pestilences**;
O grave **sheol**, I *will* be thy *destruction* **where is thy ruin**:
repentance **sighing** shall be hid from mine eyes.

I Corinthians 15:55

15 Though he be *fruitful* **bear fruit** among his brethren,
an east wind shall come,
the *wind* **wind/Spirit** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall *come up* **ascend** from the wilderness,
and his *spring* **fountain** shall *become* **dry shame**,
and his fountain shall *be dried up* **parch**:
he shall spoil the treasure
of all pleasant *vessels* **instruments**.
16 *Samaria* **Shomeron**
shall *become* **desolate** **hath** **guilted**;
for she hath rebelled against her *God* **Elohim**:
they shall fall by the sword:
their *infants* **sucklings**
shall be *dashed in pieces* **splattered**,
and their women *with child* **having conceived**
shall be *ripped up* **split**.

YAH VEH APPEALS TO YISRA EL

14

O *Israel* **Yisra El**,
return unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**;
for thou hast *fallen* **faltered**
by *thine iniquity* **thy perversity**.
2 Take with you words, and turn to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
say unto him, *Take away* **Bear** all *iniquity* **perversity**,
and *receive us* **graciously** **take goodly**:
so *will* **shall** we *render* **shalam**
the *calves* **bulllocks** of our lips.
3 *Asshur* **Ashshur** shall not save us;
we *will* **shall** not ride upon horses:
neither *will* **shall** we say any more
to the work of our hands,
Ye are our gods **Our elohim**:
for in thee
the *fatherless* **findeth** *mercy* **orphan is mercied**.
4 I *will* **shall** heal their *backsliding* **apostasy**,
I *will* **shall** love them *freely* **voluntarily**:
for *mine anger* **my wrath** is turned away from him.
5 I *will* **shall** be as the dew unto *Israel* **Yisra El**:
he shall *grow* **blossom** as the lily,
and *cast forth* **smite** his roots as Lebanon.
6 His *branches* **sprouts** shall spread,
and his *beauty* **majesty** shall be as the olive tree,
and his *smell* **scent** as Lebanon.
7 They that *dwell* **settle** under his shadow shall return;
they shall *revive* **enliven** as the *corn* **crop**,
and *grow* **blossom** as the vine:
the *scent* **memorial** thereof
shall be as the wine of Lebanon.
8 *Ephraim* shall say **Ephrayim**,
What have I to do any more with idols?
I have *heard him* **answered**, and observed him:
I am like a green fir tree. From me is thy fruit found.
9 Who is wise,
and he shall *understand* **discern** these *things*?
prudent **discerning**, and he shall know them?
for the ways of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** are *right* **straight**,
and the just shall walk in them:
but the *transgressors* **rebels** shall *fall* **falter** therein.

HOSHEA 13, 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

11 I give you a sovereign in my wrath;
and take him in my wrath:
12 the perversity of Ephrayim is bound; his sin is hid:
13 pangs of a birthing woman come on him:
he is an unwise son;
for he stays not to the time of the matrix of sons.
14 I ransom them from the hand of sheol;
I redeem them from death:
O death, where *are* your pestilences;
O sheol, where *is* your ruin:
sighing *is* hid from my eyes.

I Corinthians 15:55

15 Though he bears fruit among his brothers,
an east wind comes;
the wind/Spirit of Yah Veh
ascends from the wilderness;
and his fountain shames; and his fountain parches:
he spoils the treasure of all pleasant instruments.
16 Shomeron guilts;
for she rebelled against her Elohim:
they fall by the sword:
their sucklings splatter
and their conceiving women split.

YAH VEH APPEALS TO YISRA EL

14

O Yisra El, return to Yah Veh your Elohim;
for you falter by your perversity.
2 Take with you words, and turn to Yah Veh:
say to him, Bear all perversity and take the goodly:
thus we shalam the bulllocks of our lips.
3 Neither Ashshur saves us;
nor ride we on horses:
nor say we any more to the work of our hands,
Our elohim:
for in you the orphan *is* mercied.
4 I heal their apostasy; I love them voluntarily:
for my wrath turns from him.
5 I become as the dew to Yisra El:
he blossoms as the lily
and smites his roots as Lebanon:
his sprouts spread
and his majesty becomes as the olive
and his scent as Lebanon.
6 They who settle under his shadow return;
they enliven as the crop and blossom as the vine:
their memorial *is* as the wine of Lebanon.
7 Ephrayim,
What have I to do any more with idols?
I — I answer and observe him:
I *am* as a green fir tree: from me your fruit *is* found.
9 Who is wise, and discerns these?
Discerns, and knows them?
For straight *are* the ways of Yah Veh
and the just walk therein:
and the rebels falter therein.

JOEL 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

INTRODUCTION

1 The word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
that came to *Joel* **Yah El** the son of *Pethuel* **Pethu El**.
2 Hear this, ye *old men* **elders**,
and give ear **hearken**,
all ye *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land.
Hath this been in your days,
or even in the days of your fathers?

THE LAND DESOLATED

3 *Tell* **Scribe** ye your *children* **sons** of it,
and let your *children* tell **your sons** their *children* **sons**,
and their *children* **sons** another generation.
4 That which the palmerworm hath left
hath the locust eaten;
and that which the locust hath left
hath the cankerworm eaten;
and that which the cankerworm hath left
hath the caterpillar eaten.
5 Awake, ye *drunkards* **intoxicants**, and weep;
and howl, all ye drinkers of wine,
because of the *new wine* **squeezed juice**;
for it is cut off from your mouth.
6 For a *nation* **goyim**
is come up **hath ascended** upon my land,
strong **mighty**, and without number,
whose teeth are the teeth of a lion,
and he hath the *cheek teeth* **molars**
of a *great* **roaring** lion.
7 He hath *laid* **set** my vine waste **desolate**,
and *barked* **chipped away** my fig tree:
in stripping, he hath *made* **stripped** it *clean bare*,
and cast it away;
the *branches* **tendrils** thereof are *made* **white** **whitened**.
8 Lament like a virgin girded with *sackcloth* **saq**
for the *husband* **master** of her youth.
9 The *meat* offering and the *drink* offering **libation**
is cut off from the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
the priests, the *LORD'S* ministers of **Yah Veh**, mourn.
10 The field is *wasted* **ravaged**, the *land* **soil** mourneth;
for the *corn* is *wasted* **crop ravageth**:
the *new wine* is *dried up* **juice withereth**,
the oil languisheth.
11 Be ye ashamed, O ye *husbandmen* **cultivators**;
howl, O ye vinedressers, for the wheat and for the barley;
because the harvest of the field is *perished* **destroyed**.
12 The vine is *dried up* **withereth**,
and the fig tree languisheth;
the pomegranate tree, the palm tree also,
and the apple tree,
even all the trees of the field, are withered:
because *joy* **rejoicing** is withered away
from the sons of *men* **humanity**.

CALL TO REPENTANCE

13 Gird yourselves, and *lament* **mourn**, ye priests:
howl, ye ministers of the **sacrifice** altar:
come, *lie all night* **stay overnight** in *sackcloth* **saq**,
ye ministers of my *God* **Elohim**:
for the *meat* offering and the *drink* offering **libation**
is withholden from the house of your *God* **Elohim**.

THE DAY OF YAH VEh

14 *Sanctify* **Hallow** ye a fast,
call a *solemn* **private** assembly,
gather the elders
and all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land
into the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** your *God* **El**,
and cry unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Alas **Aha** for the day!
15 for the day of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** is at hand **nearby**,
and as a *destruction* **ravage** from *the Almighty* **Shadday**
shall it come.
16 Is not the *meat* **food** cut off *before* **in front of** our eyes,
yea, *joy* **cheerfulness** and *gladness* **twirling**
from the house of our *God* **Elohim**?
17 The *seed* is *rotten* **kernels rot** under their clods,
the *garners* **treasuries** are *laid* desolate,
the *barns* **granaries** are broken down;
for the *corn* is *withered* **crop withereth**.
18 How do the *beasts* **groan** **the animals sigh**!
the *herds* **doves** of cattle are perplexed,

YAH EL 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

INTRODUCTION

1 The word of Yah Veh
being to Yah El the son of Pethu El:
2 Hear this, you elders;
and hearken, all you settlers of the land:
becomes this in your days?
Or in the days of your fathers?

THE LAND DESOLATED

3 Scribe thereof to your sons;
and your sons to their sons;
and their sons to another generation.
4 What the palmerworm leaves, the locust eats;
and what the locust leaves, the cankerworm eats;
and what the cankerworm leaves, the caterpillar eats.
5 Waken, you intoxicants, and weep;
and howl, all you drinkers of wine:
because the squeezed juice
is cut off from your mouth.
6 For a goyim ascends on my land
— mighty and without number:
whose teeth, the teeth of a lion;
and the molars of a roaring lion.
7 He sets my vine desolate
and chips away my fig tree:
in stripping, he strips and casts away;
the tendrils whiten.
8 Lament as a virgin girl with saq
for the master of her youth:
9 the offering and the libation
is cut off from the house of Yah Veh;
the priests, the ministers of Yah Veh, mourn:
10 the field *is* ravaged; the soil mourns;
for the crop *is* ravaged:
the juice withers; the oil languishes.
11 Shame, O you cultivators!
Howl, O you vinedressers!
for the wheat and for the barley;
because the harvest of the field is destroyed.
12 The vine withers and the fig tree languishes;
— pomegranate tree,
also palm tree and apple tree
— all trees of the field wither:
because rejoicing withers from the sons of humanity.

CALL TO REPENTANCE

13 Gird and mourn, you priests!
Howl, you ministers of the sacrifice altar!
Come, stay overnight in saq,
you ministers of my Elohim:
for the offering and the libation
is withheld from the house of your Elohim.

THE DAY OF YAH VEh

14 Hallow a fast! Call a private assembly!
Gather the elders and all the settlers of the land
into the house of Yah Veh your El,
and cry to Yah Veh,
15 Aha for the day!
for the day of Yah Veh *is* nearby,
and comes as a ravage from Shadday.
16 Is not the food cut off in front of our eyes?
Cheerfulness and twirling
from the house of our Elohim?
17 The kernels rot under their clods;
the treasuries desolate;
the granaries break;
for the crop withers.
18 How the animals sigh!
The droves of cattle perplex,

JOEL 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

because they have no pasture;
yea, the flocks **droves** of sheep **flocks**
are made desolate **guilted**.
19 O LORD **Yah Veh**, to thee will I cry **shall I call out**:
for the fire
hath devoured **consumed** the *pastures* **folds** of the wilderness,
and the flame
hath **burned** **inflamed** all the trees of the field.
20 The *beasts* **animals** of the field
cry **yearn** also unto thee:
for the *rivers* **reservoirs** of waters
are *dried up* **withered**,
and the fire
hath devoured **consumed** the *pastures* **folds** of the wilderness.
2 Blow **Blast** ye the trumpet **shophar** in *Zion* **Siyon**,
and *sound an alarm* **shout** in my holy mountain:
let all the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land *tremble* **quiver**:
for the day of the LORD **Yah Veh** cometh,
for it is *nigh at hand* **nearby**;
2 A day of **dripping** darkness and of *gloominess* **darkness**,
a day of clouds and of thick darkness,
as the *morning* **dawn** spread upon the mountains:
a great people and a *strong* **mighty**;
there hath not been ever **eternally** the like,
neither shall **add to be any more** after it,
even to the years
of many generations **generation and generation**.
3 A fire devoureth before them **consumeth at their face**;
and behind them a flame *burneth* **inflameth**:
the land is as the garden of Eden
before them **at their face**,
and behind them a desolate wilderness;
yea, and *nothing shall escape them*
there shall be no escapees.
4 The *appearance* **visage** of them
is as the *appearance* **visage** of horses;
and as *horsemen* **cavalry**, so shall they run.
5 Like the *noise* **voice** of chariots
on the tops of mountains
shall they *leap* **dance**,
like the *noise* **voice** of a flame of fire
that *devoureth* **consumeth** the stubble,
as a *strong* **mighty** people set in *battle* **war** array.
6 Before **In front of** their face
the people shall *be much pained* **writhe**:
all faces shall gather *blackness* **flushness**.
7 They shall run like *mighty men*;
they shall *climb* **ascend** the wall like men of war;
and they shall march every *one* **man** on his ways,
and they shall not *break* **entangle** their *ranks* **paths**:
8 Neither shall *one* **man** thrust *another* **brother**;
they shall walk
every *one* **all the mighty** in *his path* **their highway**:
and when they fall upon the sword,
they shall not be *wounded* **cropped**.
9 They shall run to and fro in the city;
they shall run upon the wall,
they shall *climb up* **ascend** upon the houses;
they shall enter in at the windows like a thief.
10 The earth shall quake *before them* **at their face**;
the heavens shall *tremble* **quake**:
the sun and the moon shall *be dark* **darken**,
and the stars
shall *withdraw* **gather** their *shining* **brilliance**:
And the LORD **Yah Veh** shall *utter* **give** his voice
before **at the face of his army** **valiant**:
for his camp is *very* **mighty** great:
for he is *strong* **mighty** that *executeth* **worketh** his word:
for the day of the LORD **Yah Veh** is great
and *very terrible* **mighty awesome**;
and who can *abide* **contain** it?
12 Therefore also now,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
turn ye *even* to me with all your heart,
and with fasting,
and with weeping, and with *mourning* **chopping**:
And *rend* **rip** your heart,
and not your *garments* **clothes**,
and turn unto the LORD **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**:

YAH EL 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

because they have no pasture;
yes, the droves of flocks have **guilted**.
19 O Yah Veh, to you I call out:
for the fire consumes the folds of the wilderness;
and the flame inflames all the trees of the field;
20 also the animals of the field yearn to you:
for the reservoirs of waters wither,
and the fire consumes the folds of the wilderness.
2 Blast the shophar in *Siyon*!
And shout in my holy mountain!
All the settlers of the land quiver:
for the day of Yah Veh approaches — nearby:
a day of dripping darkness and of darkness;
a day of clouds and of thick darkness
as the dawn spread on the mountains:
a great people and a mighty;
neither became the like eternally
nor adds to become afterward
to the years of generation and generation.
3 A fire consumes at their face;
and behind them a flame inflames:
the land *is* as the garden of Eden at their face,
and behind them a desolate wilderness;
yes, and there are no escapees.
4 Their visage *is* as the visage of horses;
and as cavalry, thus they run:
5 as the voice of chariots on the mountain tops,
they dance;
— as the voice of a flame of fire consumes the stubble
— as a mighty people set in war array.
6 In front of their face the people writhe:
all faces gather flushness:
7 they run as the mighty;
they ascend the wall as men of war;
and every man marches on his ways:
and they neither entangle their paths
nor man thrust brother:
8 they walk all their mighty in the highway:
and when they fall on the sword, they are not cut off.
9 They run to and fro in the city;
they run on the wall;
they ascend on the houses;
they enter at the windows as a thief:
10 the earth quakes at their face;
the heavens quake;
the sun and the moon darken;
and the stars gather their brilliance:
and Yah Veh gives his voice
at the face of his valiant;
for his camp is mighty great:
for he who works his word *is* mighty:
for the day of Yah Veh *is* great and mighty awesome;
and who can contain it?
12 And also now
— an oracle of Yah Veh
you, turn to me with all your heart,
and with fasting
and with weeping and with chopping:
and rip your heart and not your clothes;
and turn to Yah Veh your Elohim:

JOEL 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for he is *gracious* **charismatic** and merciful,
slow to *anger* **wrath**, and of great *kindness* **mercy**,
and *repenteth him of* **he sigheth concerning** the evil.
14 Who knoweth? *if he will return* — **He returneth**
and repent **yea, he sigheth**,
and *leave a blessing* **leaveth a blessing** behind him;
even a meat — **an** offering and a *drink offering* **libation**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh** your **Elohim**.
15 Blow **Blast** the *trumpet* **shophar** in **Zion Siyon**,
sanctify **hallow** a fast, call a *solemn* **private** assembly:
16 Gather the people, *sanctify* **hallow** the congregation,
assemble **gather** the elders,
gather the children **sucklings**,
and those that suck the breasts:
let the bridegroom go forth of his chamber,
and the bride out of her *closet* **canopy**.
17 Let the priests, the ministers of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
weep between the porch and the **sacrifice** altar,
and let them say, Spare thy people, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
and give not thine *heritage* **inheritance** to reproach,
that the *heathen* **goyim** should *rule* **reign** over them:
wherefore should they say among the people,
Where is their **God Elohim**?
18 Then *will the LORD* **shall Yah Veh**
be jealous for his land,
and *pity* **compassion** his people.
19 Yea, *the LORD will* **let Yah Veh** answer
and say unto his people,
Behold, I *will* **shall** send you *corn* **crop**,
and *wine* **juice**, and oil,
and ye shall be satisfied therewith:
and I *will* **add** no more *make* **to give** you a reproach
among the *heathen* **goyim**:
20 But I *will* **shall** remove far off from you
the northern *army*,
and *will* **shall** drive him
into a land *barren* **parched** and desolate,
with his face toward the east sea,
and his *hinder part* **end** toward the *utmost* **latter** sea,
and his stink shall *come up* **ascend**,
and his *ill savour* **stench** shall *come up* **ascend**,
because he hath *done great things* **greatened to work**.
21 Fear **Awe** not, O *land* **soil**;
be glad **twirl** and *rejoice* **cheer**:
for the **LORD Yah Veh**
will do great things **shall work greatly**.
22 Be **Awe** not *afraid*, ye *beasts* **animals** of the field:
for the *pastures* **folds** of the wilderness do spring,
for the tree beareth her fruit,
the fig tree and the vine
do yield **give** their *strength* **valuables**.
23 Be glad **Twirl** then, ye *children* **sons** of **Zion Siyon**,
and *rejoice* **cheer**
in the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**:
for he hath given you
the *former rain* **moderately** **early pour in justness**,
and he *will* **shall** cause to *come* **bring** down for you
the *rain* **downpour**,
the *former* **early** rain, and the *latter* **after** rain
in the first *month*.
24 And the *floors* **threshingfloors**
shall be *full of wheat* **filled with grain**,
and the *fats* **troughs** shall overflow with *wine* **juice** and oil.
25 And I *will* **restore** **shall shalam** to you
the years that the locust hath eaten, the cankerworm,
and the caterpillar, and the palmerworm,
my great *army* **valiant** which I sent among you.
26 And ye shall eat *in plenty*,
eat and *be satisfied* **satiate**,
and *praise* **halal**
the name of the **LORD Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**,
that hath *dealt wondrously* **worked marvelously** with you:
and my people shall never *be ashamed* **shame eternally**.
27 And ye shall know
that I am in the midst of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**,
and none else:
and my people shall *never be ashamed* **not shame eternally**.

YAH EL 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for he *is* charismatic and merciful
slow to wrath and of great mercy;
and he sighs concerning the evil.
14 Who knows?
He returns; yes, he sighs:
and leaves a blessing behind him
— an offering and a libation
to Yah Veh your Elohim.
15 Blast the shophar in Siyon!
Hallow a fast! Call a private assembly!
16 Gather the people! Hallow the congregation!
Gather the elders! Gather the sucklings!
And they who suck the breasts!
Have the bridegroom come from his chamber!
And the bride from her canopy!
17 Have the priests, the ministers of Yah Veh,
weep between the porch and the sacrifice altar;
and have them say, Spare your people, O Yah Veh!
And give not your inheritance to reproach
so that the goyim reign over them!
Why have them say among the people,
Where is their Elohim?
18 And Yah Veh is jealous for his land
and compassions his people:
19 yes, Yah Veh answers to his people,
Behold, I send you crop and juice and oil
and satisfy you therewith:
and I add not to give you
as a reproach among the goyim:
20 and I remove the northern far from you;
and drive him into a land parched and desolate;
with his face toward the east sea
and his end toward the latter sea;
and his stink ascends; and his stench ascends,
because he greatens to work.
21 Awe not, O soil; twirl and cheer:
for Yah Veh works greatly.
22 Awe not, ye animals of the field:
for the folds of the wilderness spring up,
for the tree bears her fruit;
the fig tree and the vine give their valuables.
23 And twirl, you sons of Siyon;
and cheer in Yah Veh your Elohim:
for he gives you the early pour in justness,
and he brings down the downpour for you
— the early rain and the after rain in the first.
24 And the threshingfloors fill with grain
and the troughs overflow with juice and oil.
25 And I shalam to you
the years the locust eats
— the cankerworm
and the caterpillar and the palmerworm
— the great valiant I sent among you.
26 And you eat — eat and satiate;
and halal the name of Yah Veh your Elohim
who works marvelously with you:
and my people shame not eternally.
27 And you know I *am* midst Yisra El,
and I — Yah Veh your Elohim — and no one else:
and my people shame not eternally.

JOEL 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE SPIRIT OF YAH VEH POURS ON ALL FLESH

28 And **so be** it shall come to pass, afterward,
that I **will shall** pour out my spirit upon all flesh;
and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy,
your *old men* **elders** shall dream dreams,
your *young men* **youths** shall see visions:

29 And also
upon the servants and upon the *handmaids* **maids**
in those days **will shall** I pour out my spirit.

SIGNS OF OMENS

30 And I **will shew wonders shall give omens**
in the heavens and in the earth,
blood, and fire, and *pillars* **columns** of smoke.

31 The sun shall be turned into darkness,
and the moon into blood,
before at the face of the coming
of the great and *terrible awesome*
day of the **LORD Yah Veh** come.

32 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
that whosoever
shall call on the name of the **LORD Yah Veh**
shall be *delivered* **rescued**:
for in mount *Zion* **Siyon** and in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
shall be *deliverance* **an escape**,
as the **LORD Yah Veh** hath said,
and in the *remnant* **survivors**
whom the **LORD Yah Veh** shall call.

THE GOYIM JUDGED

3 For, behold, in those days, and in that time,
when I shall *bring again* **return** the captivity
of *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,

2 I **will shall** also gather all *nations* **goyim**,
and **will shall** bring them down
into the *valley of Jehoshaphat* **Gay Yah Shaphat**,
and **will shall** plead with them there
for my people and for my *heritage* **inheritance**
Israel **Yisra El**,

whom they have scattered among the *nations* **goyim**,
and *parted* **allotted** my land.

3 And they have cast *lots* **handle pebbles** for my people;
and have given a *boy* **child** for an *harlot* **a whore**,
and sold a *girl* **child** for wine, that they might drink.

4 Yea, and what have ye to do with me,
O *Tyre* **Sor**, and *Zidon* **Sidon**,
and all the *coasts* **regions** of *Palestine* **Pelesheth**?
I **will shall** ye *render* **deal** me a *recompence* **shalam**?
and if ye *recompence* **deal** me,
swiftly and *speedily* **quickly**
will shall I return your *recompence* **dealing**
upon your own head;

5 Because ye have taken my silver and my gold,
and have carried into your *temples* **manses**
my goodly *pleasant things* **desirables**:

6 The *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
and the *children* **sons** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
have ye sold unto the *Grecians* **sons of Yavaniy**,
that ye might remove them far from their border.

7 Behold, I **will raise shall waken** them
out of the place whither ye have sold them,
and **will shall** return your *recompence* **dealing**
upon your own head:

8 And I **will shall** sell your sons and your daughters
into the hand of the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and they shall sell them to the *Sabeans* **Shebaiym**,
to a *people* **goyim** far off:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded** it.

9 Proclaim ye **Call ye out** this among the *Gentiles* **goyim**;
Prepare **Hallow** war, wake up the *mighty men*,
let all the men of war draw near;
let them *come up* **ascend**:

10 *Beat* **Forge** your plowshares into swords,
and your *pruninghooks* **psalmpicks** into *spears* **javelins**:
let the *weak* **vanquished** say, I am *strong* **mighty**.

11 *Assemble yourselves* **Hurry**,
and come, all ye *heathen* **goyim**,
and gather yourselves together round about:
thither cause thy *mighty ones* to *come down* **descend**,
O **LORD Yah Veh**.

12 Let the *heathen* **goyim** be wakened,

YAH EL 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE SPIRIT OF YAH VEH POURS ON ALL FLESH

28 And so be it, afterward,
I pour my spirit on all flesh;
and your sons and your daughters prophesy;
your elders dream dreams;
your youths see visions:
29 and also on the servants and on the maids
in those days I pour my spirit.

SIGNS OF OMENS

30 And I give omens
in the heavens and in the earth
— blood and fire and columns of smoke:
31 the sun turns into darkness
and the moon into blood
at the face of the coming
the great and awesome day of Yah Veh.

32 And so be it,
whoever calls on the name of Yah Veh
is **rescued**:
for in mount *Siyon* and in *Yeru Shalem*
is an escape,
as Yah Veh says,
and in the survivors whom Yah Veh calls.

THE GOYIM JUDGED

3 For behold, in those days, and in that time,
when I restore the captivity
of Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem,
then I gather all the goyim
and bring them down
to Gay Yah Shaphat/Valley Yah Judges;
and there plead with them
for my people and for my inheritance *Yisra El*
— whom they scattered among the goyim
and allotted my land.

3 And they handle pebbles for my people;
and give a child for a whore,
and sell a child for wine to drink.
4 Yes, and what do you with me,
O Sor and Sidon and all the regions of Pelesheth?
Deal you me shalam?
And if you deal me,
I return your dealing

5 swiftly and quickly on your own head;
because you took my silver and my gold
and carried to your manses
— my goodly desirables:
6 and you sold the sons of Yah Hudah
and the sons of Yeru Shalem
to the sons of Yavaniy
— to remove them far from their border.

7 Behold, I waken them from the place you sold them;
and return your dealing on your own head:
8 and I sell your sons and your daughters
into the hand of the sons of Yah Hudah;
and they sell them to the Shebaiym
— to a goyim far off:
for Yah Veh has worded.

9 Call this out among the goyim!
Hallow war! Waken the mighty!
10 Draw all the men of war near! Ascend them!
Forge your plowshares into swords
and your psalmpicks into javelins!
Have the vanquished say, I am mighty.
11 Hurry and come, all you goyim!
And gather yourselves together all around:
and there have your mighty ones descend,
O Yah Veh.

12 Waken, O goyim;

JOEL 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and come up **ascend**
to the valley of Jehoshaphat **Gay Yah Shaphat**:
for there *will* **shall** I sit
13 to judge all the **heathen goyim** round about.
Put ye in **Spread** the sickle,
for the harvest is **ripe ripened**:
come, *get you down* **descend ye**;
for the *press is full* **winepress filleth**,
the *fats* **troughs** overflow;
for their *wickedness* **evil** is great.
14 Multitudes, multitudes in the valley of decision:
for the day of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** is near
in the valley of decision.
15 The sun and the moon shall be darkened,
and the stars
shall *withdraw* **gather** their *shining* **brilliance**.
16 *The LORD* **Yah Veh** also shall roar out of *Zion* **Siyon**,
and *utter* **give** his voice from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
and the heavens and the earth shall *shake* **quake**:
but *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
will shall be the *hope* **refuge** of his people,
and the *strength* **stronghold**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
17 So shall ye know
that *I am the LORD* **I — Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
dwelling **tabernacling** in *Zion* **Siyon**, my holy mountain:
then shall *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** be holy,
and there shall no strangers pass through her any more.
18 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*, in that day,
that the mountains
shall *drop down new wine* **drip squeezed juice**,
and the hills shall *flow* **go** with milk,
and all the *rivers* **reservoirs** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
shall *flow* **go** with waters,
and a fountain shall *come forth* **go**
of *from* the house of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and shall *water* **wet** the *valley wadi* of Shittim.
19 *Egypt* **Misrayim** shall be a desolation,
and Edom shall be a desolate wilderness,
for the violence
against the *children* **sons** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
because they have *shed* **poured** innocent blood
in their land.
20 But *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
shall *dwell for ever* **settle eternally**,
and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
from generation to generation.
21 For I *will cleanse* **shall exonerate** their blood
that I have not *cleansed* **exonerated**:
for *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
dwelleth **tabernacleth** in *Zion* **Siyon**.

YAH EL 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and ascend to Gay Yah Shaphat/Valley Yah Judges:
for there I sit to judge all the goyim all around.
13 Spread the sickle; for the harvest ripens:
come, descend; for the winepress fills:
the troughs overflow; for their evil is great.
14 Multitudes,
multitudes in the valley of decision:
for the day of Yah Veh is near
in the valley of decision.
15 The sun and the moon darken
and the stars gather their brilliance:
16 and Yah Veh roars from Siyon
and gives his voice from Yeru Shalem:
and the heavens and the earth quake:
and Yah Veh *is* the refuge of his people,
and the stronghold of the sons of Yisra El.
17 Thus you know I — Yah Veh your Elohim
tabernacling in Siyon, my holy mountain:
then Yeru Shalem becomes holy,
and strangers pass through her no more.
18 And so be it, in that day,
the mountains drip squeezed juice;
and the hills go with milk;
and all the reservoirs of Yah Hudah go with waters;
and a fountain goes from the house of Yah Veh
and wets the wadi of Shittim.
19 Misrayim becomes a desolation
and Edom becomes a desolate wilderness
— because they poured innocent blood in their land.
20 And Yah Hudah settles eternally,
and Yeru Shalem from generation to generation.
21 For I exonerate their blood
which I had not exonerated:
for Yah Veh tabernacles in Siyon.

AMOS 1

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

INTRODUCTION

1 The words of Amos,
 who was among the *herdmen* **branders** of Tekoa **Teqoa**,
 which he saw concerning *Israel* **Yisra El**
 in the days of *Uzziah* **Uzzi Yah**
king sovereign of Judah **Yah Hudah**,
 and in the days of *Jeroboam* **Yarob Am**
 the son of *Joash* **Yah Ash** *king sovereign* of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 two years *before* **ere the face of the earthquake quake**.
 2 And he said, *The LORD* **Yah Veh**
 will **shall** roar from *Zion* **Siyon**,
 and *utter* **give** his voice from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
 and the *habitations* **folde**s of the *shepherds* **tenders**
 shall mourn,
 and the top of *Carmel* **Karmel/orchard** shall wither.
 3 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
 For three
transgressions **rebellions** of *Damascus* **Dammeseq**,
 and for four,
 I *will* **shall** not *turn away the punishment thereof* **restore them**;
 because they have threshed *Gilead* **Gilad**
 with *threshing instruments* **sickles** of iron:
 4 But I *will* **shall** send a fire
 into the house of *Hazael* **Haza El**,
 which shall *devour* **consume**
 the *palaces* **citadels** of *Benhadad* **Ben Hadad**.
 5 I *will* **shall** break also the bar of *Damascus* **Dammeseq**,
 and cut off the *inhabitant* **settler**
 from the *plain* **valley** of *Aven*,
 and him that *holdeth* **upholdeth** the *sceptre*
 from the house of *Eden*:
 and the people of *Syria* **Aram**
 shall *go into captivity* **be exiled** unto *Kir Qir*,
 saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.
 6 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
 For three *transgressions* **rebellions** of *Gaza* **Azzah**,
 and for four,
 I *will* **shall** not *turn away the punishment thereof* **restore them**;
 because they *carried away captive* **exiled**
 the *whole captivity* **complete exiles**,
 to *deliver* **shut** them up to *Edom*:
 7 But I *will* **shall** send a fire on the wall of *Gaza* **Azzah**,
 which shall *devour* **consume** the *palaces* **citadels** thereof:
 8 And I *will* **shall** cut off the *inhabitant* **settler**
 from *Ashdod*,
 and him that *holdeth* **upholdeth** the *sceptre* **scion**
 from *Ashkelon*,
 and I *will* **shall** turn mine hand against *Ekron* **Eqron**:
 and the *remnant* **survivors** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**
 shall *perish* **destruct**,
 saith *the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**.
 9 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
 For three *transgressions* **rebellions** of *Tyrus* **Sor**,
 and for four,
 I *will* **shall** not *turn away the punishment thereof* **restore them**;
 because they *delivered up*
 the *whole captivity* **complete exiles** to *Edom*,
 and remembered not the *brotherly* **covenant of brethren**:
 10 But I *will* **shall** send a fire on the wall of *Tyrus* **Sor**,
 which shall *devour* the *palaces* **citadels** thereof.
 11 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
 For three *transgressions* **rebellions** of *Edom*,
 and for four,
 I *will* **shall** not *turn away the punishment thereof* **restore them**;
 because he did pursue his brother with the sword,
 and *did cast off all pity* **ruined mercies**,
 and his *anger* **wrath** did *tear* **perpetually** **eternally**,
 and he *kept* **guarded** his wrath *for ever* **in perpetuity**:
 12 But I *will* **shall** send a fire upon *Teman*,
 which shall *devour* the *palaces* **citadels** of *Bozrah*.
 13 Thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
 For three *transgressions* **rebellions**
 of the *children* **sons** of *Ammon*,
 and for four,
 I *will* **shall** not *turn away the punishment thereof* **restore them**;
 because they have
ripped up **split** the women with child of *Gilead* **Gilad**,
 that they might enlarge their border:
 14 But I *will* **shall** kindle a fire in the wall of *Rabbah*,

AMOS 1

exeGeses companion BIBLE

INTRODUCTION

1 The words of Amos,
 being among the branders of Tekoa,
 which he sees concerning Yisra El
 in the days
 of Uzzi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah;
 and in the days
 of Yarob Am the son of Yah Ash sovereign of Yisra El,
 two years ere the face of the quake.
 2 And he says,
 Yah Veh roars from Siyon
 and gives his voice from Yeru Shalem;
 and the folds of the tenders mourn
 and the top of Karmel/orchard withers.
 3 Thus says Yah Veh:
 For three rebellions of Dammeseq,
 and for four, I restore them not;
 because of threshing Gilad with sickles of iron:
 4 and I send a fire to the house of Haza El
 to consume the citadels of Ben Hadad:
 5 and I break the bar of Dammeseq
 and cut off the settler
 from the valley of Aven;
 and he who upholds the sceptre
 from the house of Eden:
 and exile the people of Aram to Qir,
 says Yah Veh.
 6 Thus says Yah Veh:
 For three rebellions of Azzah,
 and for four, I restore them not;
 because of exiling the complete exiles
 to shut them up to Edom:
 7 and I send a fire on the wall of Azzah
 to consume the citadels:
 8 and I cut off the settler from Ashdod
 and he who upholds the scion from Ashkelon;
 and I turn my hand against Eqron:
 and destroy the survivors of the Peleshethiym,
 says Adonay Yah Veh.
 9 Thus says Yah Veh:
 For three rebellions of Sor,
 and for four, I restore not;
 because of delivering the complete exiles to Edom
 and remember not the covenant of brothers:
 10 and I send a fire on the wall of Sor,
 to consume the citadels.
 11 Thus says Yah Veh:
 For three rebellions of Edom,
 and for four, I restore them not;
 because of pursuing his brother with the sword
 and ruining his mercies
 and tearing his wrath eternally;
 and guarding his wrath in perpetuity:
 12 and I send a fire on Teman,
 to consume the citadels of Bozrah.
 13 Thus says Yah Veh:
 For three rebellions of the sons of Ammon,
 and for four, I restore them not;
 because of splitting the women with child of Gilad,
 to enlarge their border:
 14 and I kindle a fire in the wall of Rabbah

AMOS 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and it shall devour the palaces **citadels** thereof,
with shouting **shouts** in the day of battle **war**,
with a tempest **storm**
in the day of the *whirlwind* **hurricane**:
15 And their *king* **sovereign** shall go into *captivity* **exile**,
he and his *princes* **governors** together,
saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

JUDGMENT ON YAH HUDAH AND YISRA EL

2 Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
For three *transgressions* **rebellions** of Moab,
and for four,
I will **shall** not turn away the *punishment* thereof **restore them**;
because he burned the bones
of the *king* **sovereign** of Edom into lime:
2 But I will **shall** send a fire upon Moab,
and it shall devour **consume**
the palaces **citadels** of *Kiriath* **Qerioth**:
and Moab shall die with *tumult* **an uproar**,
with shouting **shouts**,
and with the *sound* **voice** of the *trumpet* **shophar**:
3 And I will **shall** cut off the judge from the midst thereof,
and will *slay* **shall slaughter**
all the *princes* **governors** thereof with him,
saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
4 Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
For three *transgressions* **rebellions** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and for four,
I will **shall** not turn away the *punishment* thereof **restore them**;
because they have *despised* **spurned**
the *law* **torah** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and have not *kept* **guarded** his *commandments* **statutes**,
and their lies caused them to *err* **stray**,
after the which their fathers have walked:
5 But I will **shall** send a fire upon *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and it shall devour **consume**
the palaces **citadels** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
6 Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
For three *transgressions* **rebellions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and for four,
I will **shall** not turn away the *punishment* thereof **restore them**;
because they sold the *righteous* **just** for silver,
and the *poor* **needy** for a pair of shoes;
7 That *pant* **gulp** after the dust of the earth
on the head of the poor,
and turn *aside* **pervert** the way of the *meek* **humble**:
and a man and his father
will **shall** go in unto the *same* **maid lass**,
to profane my holy name:
8 And they *lay themselves down* **spread**
upon clothes laid to pledge
by **beside** every **sacrifice** altar,
and they drink the wine of the condemned
in the house of their *god* **elohim**.
9 Yet *destroyed* **desolated** I the *Amorite* **Emoriy**
before them **at their face**,
whose height was like the height of the cedars,
and he was *strong* **powerful** as the oaks;
yet I *destroyed* **desolated** his fruit from above,
and his roots from beneath.
10 Also I *brought* **ascended** you up
from the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and *led* **carried** you forty years through the wilderness,
to possess the land of the *Amorite* **Emoriy**.
11 And I raised up of your sons for prophets,
and of your *young men* **youths** for *Nazarites* **Separatists**.
Is it not even thus, O ye *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
12 But ye gave the *Nazarites* **Separatists** wine to drink;
and *commanded* **misvahed** the prophets, saying,
Prophesy not.
13 Behold, I am pressed under you,
as a *cart* **wagon** is pressed that is full of *sheaves* **omers**.
14 Therefore the flight shall *perish* **destruct** from the swift,
and the strong shall not strengthen his force,
neither shall the mighty *deliver himself* **rescue his soul**:
15 Neither shall he stand
that *handleth* **manipulateth** the bow;
and he that is swift of foot shall not *deliver* **rescue** himself:

AMOS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to consume the citadels
with shouts in the day of war;
with a storm in the day of the hurricane:
and their sovereign goes into exile
— he and his governors together,
says Yah Veh.

JUDGMENT ON YAH HUDAH AND YISRA EL

2 Thus says Yah Veh:
For three rebellions of Moab,
and for four, I restore them not;
because of burning the bones
of the sovereign of Edom into lime:
2 and I send a fire on Moab,
to consume the citadels of Qerioth:
and Moab dies with an uproar
— with shouts and with the voice of the shophar:
3 and I cut off the judge from among them
and slaughter all the governors with him,
says Yah Veh.
4 Thus says Yah Veh;
For three rebellions of Yah Hudah,
and for four, I restore them not;
because of spurning the torah of Yah Veh,
and not guarding his statutes;
and their lies stray them
— after the which their fathers walked:
5 and I send a fire on Yah Hudah,
to consume the citadels of Yeru Shalem.
6 Thus says Yah Veh:
For three rebellions of Yisra El,
and for four, I restore them not;
because of selling the just for silver
and the needy for a pair of shoes;
7 who gulp after the dust of the earth
on the head of the poor,
and pervert the way of the humble:
and a man and his father going in to the lass
to profane my holy name:
8 and they spread on clothes laid to pledge
beside every sacrifice altar;
and drink the wine of the condemned
in the house of their elohim.
9 And I — I desolate the Emoriy at their face,
whose height is as the height of the cedars
as powerful as the oaks;
and I desolate his fruit from above
and his roots from beneath.
10 And I ascended you from the land of Misrayim;
and carried you forty years through the wilderness
to possess the land of the Emoriy:
11 and I raised of your sons for prophets
and of your youths for Separatists.
Is it not even thus, O you sons of Yisra El?
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
12 And you have the Separatists drink wine;
and misvah the prophets, saying,
Prophesy not.
13 Behold, I press you under
— press as a wagon full of omers.
14 and the flight destructs from the swift:
neither the strong strengthens his force
nor the mighty rescues his soul:
15 neither stands he who manipulates the bow;
nor rescues he who is swift of foot:

AMOS 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

neither shall he that rideth the horse
deliver himself **rescue his soul**.
16 And he that is *courageous* **strong of heart**
among the mighty
shall flee away naked in that day,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**.
THE WORD OF YAH VEH AGAINST THE SONS OF YISRA EL
3 Hear this word
that the **LORD Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded** against you,
O *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
against the whole family which I *brought up* **ascended**
from the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**, saying,
2 You only have I known of all the families of the *earth* **soil**:
therefore I *will punish* **shall visit upon you**
for all your *iniquities* **perversities**.
3 Can two walk together,
except they *be agreed* **congregate**?
4 Will **Shall** a lion roar in the forest,
when he hath no prey?
will a *young lion cry* **shall a whelp give voice**
out of his *den* **habitation**,
if *except* he have *taken nothing* **captured**?
5 Can **Falleth** a bird *fall* in a snare upon the earth,
where no *gin* **snare** is for him?
shall one *take up* **ascend** a snare from the *earth* **soil**,
and *have taken nothing at all*
if in capturing, it hath not captured?
6 Shall a *trumpet be blown* **shophar blast** in the city,
and the people not *be afraid* **tremble**?
shall there be evil in a city,
and the **LORD Yah Veh** hath not *done* **worked** it?
7 Surely the *Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**
will *do nothing* **shall work no word**,
but he *revealeth* **exposeth** his *secret* **private counsel**
unto his servants the prophets.
8 The lion hath roared, who *will* **shall not fear awe**?
the *Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh** hath *spoken* **worded**,
who *can but* **doth not** prophesy?
9 Publish **Let it be heard**
in the *palaces* **citadels** at Ashdod,
and in the *palaces* **citadels** in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and say, Assemble yourselves
upon the mountains of *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
and *behold* **see** the great *tumults* **confusions**
in the midst *thereof*,
and the oppressed in the midst *thereof*.
10 For they know not
to *do right* **work straightforwardness**,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**,
who *store up* **treasure** violence and *robbery* **ravage**
in their *palaces* **citadels**.
11 Therefore thus saith the *Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**;
An adversary there shall be **A tribulator**
— even round about the land;
and he shall bring down thy strength from thee,
and thy *palaces* **citadels** shall be *spoiled* **plundered**.
12 Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh**;
As the *shepherd tender*
taketh **rescueth** out of the mouth of the lion
two legs, or a piece of an ear;
so shall the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
be *taken out* **rescued**
that *dwelt* **settle** in *Samaria* **sShomeron**
in the *corner* **edge** of a bed,
and in *Damascus* **Dammeseq** in a *couch* **bedstead**.
13 Hear ye,
and *testify* **witness** in the house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
saith the *Lord GOD* **an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**,
the *God of hosts* **Elohim Sabaoth**,
14 That in the day that I shall visit
the *transgressions* **rebellions** of *Israel* **Yisra El** upon him
I *will* **shall** also visit the *sacrifice* altars of *Bethel* **Beth El**:
and the horns of the *sacrifice* altar shall be cut off,
and fall to the *ground* **earth**.
15 And I *will* **shall** smite the winter house
with the summer house;
and the houses of ivory shall *perish* **destruct**,
and the great houses shall *have an end* **be consummated**,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**.

AMOS 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

nor rescues he his soul who rides the horse:
16 and among the mighty, he who is strong of heart
flees away naked in that day
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH AGAINST THE SONS OF YISRA EL

3 Hear this word that Yah Veh words against you,
O sons of Yisra El
— against the whole family
I ascended from the land of Misrayim, saying,
2 You only, know I of all the families of the soil:
so I visit on you for all your perversities.
3 Walk two together, unless they congregate?
4 Roars a lion in the forest, when he has no prey?
Gives a whelp his voice from his habitation
unless he captures?
5 Falls a bird in a snare on the earth
where he has no snare?
Ascends a snare from the soil
and in capturing, captures not?
6 Blasts a shophar in the city
and the people tremble not?
Becomes there evil in a city
and Yah Veh worked it not?
7 Surely Adonay Yah Veh works no word;
unless he exposes his private counsel
to his servants the prophets.
8 The lion roars, who awes not?
Adonay Yah Veh words, who prophesies not?
9 O that it be heard in the citadels at Ashdod
and in the citadels in the land of Misrayim,
and say, Assemble yourselves
on the mountains of Shomeron,
and see the great confusions in the midst
and the oppressed in the midst.
10 For they know not to work straightforwardness
— an oracle of Yah Veh
who treasure violence and ravage in their citadels.
11 So thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
A tribulator surrounds the land
and he brings down your strength
and plunders your citadels.
12 Thus says Yah Veh:
As the tender rescues from the mouth of the lion
two legs or a piece of an ear,
thus are the sons of Yisra El rescued
who settle in Shomeron in the edge of a bed;
and in Dammeseq in a bedstead.
13 Harken and witness in the house of Yaaqov
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth
in the day I visit the rebellions of Yisra El on him
I also visit the sacrifice altars of Beth El:
and cut off the horns of the sacrifice altar
to fall to the earth:
14 and I smite the winter house
with the summer house;
and destroy the houses of ivory,
and consummate the great houses
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

AMOS 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

YISRA EL UNREPENTANT

4 Hear this word, ye *kine* **heifers** of Bashan,
that are in the mountain of *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
which oppress the poor, which crush the needy,
which say to their *masters* **adonim**,
Bring, and let us drink.

2 *The Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**
hath *sworn* **oathed** by his holiness,
that, *lo* **behold**, the days shall come upon you,
that he *will take* **shall lift** you away with hooks,
and your posterity with fishhooks.

3 And ye shall go out at the breaches,
every cow at that which is before her **women in front**;
and ye shall cast them into the palace,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

4 Come to *Bethel* **Beth El**, and *transgress* **rebel**;
at Gilgal *multiply transgression* **abound rebellion**;
and bring your sacrifices every **at** morning,
and your tithes after three years **of days**;
5 And offer a *sacrifice of thanksgiving*
incense with spread hands
with *leaven* **fermentation**,
and *proclaim* **call out**
and *publish the free offerings* **let the voluntaries be heard**:
for *this liketh you* **thus have ye loved**,
O ye *children* **sons of Israel** *Yisra El*,
saith the Lord **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**.

6 And I also have given you
cleanness **innocency** of teeth in all your cities,
and *want* **lack** of bread in all your places:
yet have ye not returned unto me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

7 And also I have withholden the *rain* **downpour** from you,
when there were yet three months to the harvest:
and I caused it to rain upon one city,
and caused it not to rain upon *another* **one** city:
one *piece* **allotment** was rained upon,
and the *piece* **allotment** whereupon it rained not
withered.

8 So two or three cities wandered unto one city,
to drink water; but they were not satisfied:
yet have ye not returned unto me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

9 I have smitten you with blasting and *mildew* **pale green**:
when your gardens and your vineyards
and your fig trees and your *olive trees* **olives**
increased **abounded**,
the palmerworm devoured *them*:
yet have ye not returned unto me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

10 I have sent among you the pestilence
after the manner by the way of Egypt **Misrayim**:
your young men **youths**
have I *slain* **slaughtered** with the sword,
and have taken away your horses;
and I have *made* **caused** the stink of your camps
to *come up* **ascend** unto your nostrils:
yet have ye not returned unto me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

11 I have *overthrown some of* **turned against** you,
as *God* **Elohim**
overthrew *Sodom* **Sedom** and *Gomorrah* **Amorah**,
and ye were as a *firebrand* **brand**
plucked **rescued** out of the burning:
yet have ye not returned unto me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

12 Therefore thus *will I do* **shall I work** unto thee,
O *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and because I *will do* **shall work** this unto thee,
prepare to meet thy *God* **Elohim**, O *Israel* **Yisra El**.

13 For, *lo* **behold**,
he that formeth the mountains, and createth the wind,
and *declareth* **telleth** unto *man* **humanity**
what is his *thought* **meditation**,
that *maketh* **worketh** the *morning* **dawn** darkness,
and treadeth upon the *high places* **bamahs** of the earth,
The LORD, The God of hosts **Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**,
is his name.

AMOS 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

YISRA EL UNREPENTANT

4 Hear this word, you heifers of Bashan
in the mountain of Shomeron
— who oppress the poor; who crush the needy;
who say to their adonim,
Bring, and we drink.

2 Adonay Yah Veh oaths by his holiness,
that behold, days come on you,
that he lifts you with hooks
and your posterity with fishhooks:
and you go out at the breaches
— women in front;
and you cast them into the palace
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

4 Come to Beth El, and rebel;
abound rebellion at Gilgal:
and bring your sacrifices at morning,
and your tithes after three years of days:
5 and incense with fermentation with spread hands
and call out that the voluntaries be heard:
for thus you loved, O you sons of Yisra El
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh.

6 And I also
— I gave you innocency of teeth in all your cities
and lack of bread in all your places:
yet you returned not to me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

7 And I also
— I withheld the downpour from you,
when yet three months to the harvest:
and I, on one city, rained;
and on one city, rained not:
— one allotment, rained on;
and the allotment not rained on withers:
8 and two or three cities wander to one city
to drink water;
and they satiated not:
yet you returned not to me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

9 I smote you with blasting and pale green
when your gardens and your vineyards
and your fig trees and your olives abounded;
and the palmerworm devoured:
yet you returned not to me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

10 I sent the pestilence among you
by the way of Misrayim:
I slaughtered your youths with the sword
and took away your horses;
and I ascended the stink of your camps
to your nostrils:
yet you returned not to me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

11 I turned against you,
as Elohim overthrew Sedom and Amorah,
— as a brand rescued from the burning:
yet you returned not to me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

12 So thus I work to you, O Yisra El:
and because I work this to you,
prepare to meet your Elohim, O Yisra El.

13 For behold,
he who formed the mountains and created the wind,
who tells his meditation to humanity,
who works the dawn darkness,
who treads on the bamahs of the earth,
Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth is his name.

AMOS 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE LAMENTATION OF YAH VEh AGAINST YISRA EL

5 Hear ye this word which I *take up* **lift** against you,
even a lamentation, O house of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
 2 The virgin of *Israel* **Yisra El** is fallen;
 she shall *no more* **add not to** rise:
 she is forsaken upon her *land* **soil**;
 there is none to raise her up.
 3 For thus saith *the Lord* **COD Adonay Yah Veh**;
 The city that went out by a thousand
 shall leave an hundred,
 and that which went forth by an hundred
 shall leave ten,
 to the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
 4 For thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
 unto the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
 Seek ye me, and ye shall live:
 5 But seek not *Bethel* **Beth El**, nor enter into Gilgal,
 and pass not to *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba**:
 for **in exiling**,
 Gilgal shall *surely go into captivity* **be exiled**,
 and *Bethel* **Beth El** shall come to *nought* **mischief**.
 6 Seek *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, and ye shall live;
 lest he *break out* **prosper** like fire
 in the house of *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
 and *devour it* **consume**,
 and there be none to quench it in *Bethel* **Beth El**.
 7 Ye who turn judgment to wormwood,
 and leave off *righteousness* **justness** in the earth,
 8 Seek him that *maketh the seven stars* **worketh Kimah**
 and *Orion* **Kesil**,
 and turneth the shadow of death into the morning,
 and maketh the day dark with night:
 that calleth for the waters of the sea,
 and poureth them out upon the face of the earth:
The LORD **Yah Veh** is his name:
 9 That *strengtheneth* **releaseth** the *spoiled* **ravaged**
 against the strong,
 so that the *spoiled* shall **ravaged**
 come against the fortress.
 10 They hate him
 that *rebuketh* **reproveth** in the *gate* **portal**,
 and they abhor him
 that *speakech uprightly* **wordeth integriously**.
 11 Forasmuch therefore
 as your *treading* **trampling** is upon the poor,
 and ye take from him burdens of *wheat* **grain**:
 ye have built houses of hewn stone,
 but ye shall not *dwel* **settle** in them;
 ye have planted *pleasant* vineyards **of desire**,
 but ye shall not drink wine of them.
 12 For I know
 your *manifold transgressions* **great rebellions**
 and your mighty sins:
 they *afflict* **tribulate** the just,
 they take a *bribe* **koper/atonement**,
 and they *turn aside* **pervert** the *poor* **needy**
 in the *gate* **portal** *from their right*.
 13 Therefore the *prudent* **comprehending**
 shall keep *silence* **still** in that time; for it is an evil time.
 14 Seek good, and not evil, that ye may live:
 and so *the LORD, the God of hosts* **Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**,
 shall be with you, as ye have *spoken* **said**.
 15 Hate the evil, and love the good,
 and *establish* **set** judgment in the *gate* **portal**:
it may be that **perhaps**
the LORD God of hosts **Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth**
will be gracious **shall grant charism**
 unto the *remnant* **survivors** of *Joseph* **Yoseph**.

THE DAY OF YAH VEh

16 Therefore
the LORD, the God of hosts, the Lord,
Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth Adonay saith thus;
Wailing **Chopping** shall be in all streets;
 and they shall say in all the *highways* **outways**,
Alas! alas! **Hah! Hah!**
 and they shall call the *husbandman* **cultivator**
 to mourning,
 and such as *are skilful of* **know** lamentation
 to *wailing* **chopping**.

AMOS 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE LAMENTATION OF YAH VEh AGAINST YISRA EL

5 Hear this word I lift against you!
 A lamentation, O house of Yisra El.
 2 The virgin of Yisra El — fallen; she adds not to rise:
 forsaken on her soil
 she has no one to raise her up.
 3 For thus says Adonay Yah Veh:
 The city that comes by a thousand
 leaves a hundred;
 and that which comes by a hundred
 leaves ten to the house of Yisra El.
 4 For thus says Yah Veh to the house of Yisra El:
 Seek me, and live:
 5 neither seek Beth El nor enter Gilgal
 nor pass through Beer Sheba:
 for in exiling, Gilgal *is* exiled,
 and Beth El becomes for mischief.
 6 Seek Yah Veh, and live;
 lest he prospers as fire in the house of Yoseph
 and consumes;
 and no one in Beth El to quench it.
 7 You who turn judgment to wormwood,
 and leave off justness in the earth,
 8 seek him who works Kimah and Kesil
 and turns the shadow of death into the morning
 and makes the day dark with night:
 who calls for the waters of the sea
 and pours them on the face of the earth:
 Yah Veh *is* his name:
 9 — who releases the ravaged against the strong,
 so that the ravaged come against the fortress.
 10 They hate him who reproves in the portal
 and they abhor him who words integriously:
 11 so because you trample on the poor
 and take his burdens of grain;
 you build houses of hewn stone,
 and you settle not therein;
 you plant vineyards of desire,
 and you drink not their wine.
 12 For I know your great rebellions
 and your mighty sins:
 they tribulate the just;
 they take a koper/atonement;
 and they pervert the needy in the portal.
 13 So, in that time,
 the comprehending keep still; for it is an evil time.
 14 Seek good, and not evil, so that you live:
 and so be it, as you say,
 Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth *is* with you.
 15 Hate the evil and love the good
 and set judgment in the portal:
 perhaps Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth
 grants charism to the survivors of Yoseph.

THE DAY OF YAH VEh

16 So, thus says Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth Adonay:
 Chopping *is* in all streets;
 and in all the outways, they say, Hah! Hah!
 and they call the cultivator to mourning
 and such as know lamentation to chopping:

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

17 And in all vineyards shall be *wailing chopping*:
for I *will shall* pass through thee **in your midst**,
saith the LORD **Yah Veh**.

18 *Woe Ho* unto you
that desire the day of the LORD **Yah Veh!**
to what end is it for you?
the day of the LORD **Yah Veh** is darkness, and not light.

19 As if a man did flee from the **face of** a lion,
and a bear met him;
or went into the house,
and *leaned propped* his hand on the wall,
and a serpent bit him.

20 Shall not the day of the LORD **Yah Veh**
be darkness, and not light?
even very dark, and no *brightness brilliance* in it?

21 I hate, I *despise spurn* your *feast days celebrations*,
and I *will shall* not *smell scent*
in your *solemn private* assemblies.
22 Though ye *offer holocaust* me
burnt offerings holocausts
and your *meat offerings*,
I *will shall* not *accept them be pleased*:
neither *will shall* I *regard scan*
the *peace offerings shelamim* of your *fat beasts fatlings*.

23 Take **Turn** thou away **aside** from me
the *noise roar* of thy songs;
for I *will shall* not hear
the *melody psalm* of thy *viols bagpipes*.

24 But let judgment *run down roll* as waters,
and *righteousness justness*
as a *mighty stream perennial wadi*.

25 Have ye *offered brought near* unto me
sacrifices and offerings in the wilderness forty years,
O house of *Israel Yisra El*?

26 But ye have borne the *tabernacle sukkoth/brush arbor*
of your *Moloch sovereign* and *Chiun Kiun* your images,
the star of your *god elohim*,
which ye *made worked* to yourselves.

27 Therefore
will shall I cause you to go into *captivity exile*
beyond *Damascus Dammeseq*,
saith the LORD **Yah Veh**,
whose name is *The God of hosts Elohim Sabaoth*.

HO TO THEM WHO RELAX IN SIYON

6 *Woe Ho* to them that *are at ease relax* in *Zion Siyon*,
and *trust confide* in the mountain of *Samaria Shomeron*,
which are *named appointed*
chief firstlings of the *nations goyim*,
to whom the house of *Israel Yisra El* came!

2 Pass ye unto *Calneh Kalneh*, and see;
and from thence go ye to Hamath the *great rabbi*:
then go down descend to Gath
of the *Philistines Peleshethiym*:
be they better than these *kingdoms sovereigndoms*?
or their border greater than your border?

3 Ye that *put far cast* away the evil day,
and cause the *seat settlement* of violence to come near;
4 That lie upon beds of ivory,
and *stretch spread* themselves upon their *couches bedsteads*,
and eat the *lambs rams* out of the flock,
and the calves out of the midst of the stall;
5 That *chant chatter*
to the *sound mouth* of the *viol bagpipe*,
and *invent fabricate* to themselves
instruments of musick song,
like David;

6 That drink wine in *bowls sprinklers*,
and anoint themselves with the *chief firstlings ointments*:
but they are not *grieved worn*
for the *affliction breach* of *Joseph Yoseph*.

7 Therefore now shall they *go captive be exiled*
with the first that *go captive be exiled*,
and the *banquet feast of revelling*
of them that *stretched spread* themselves
shall be *removed turned aside*.

8 *The Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*
hath *sworn oathed* by *himself his soul**,

*Yah Veh is the soul of the triune deity

exeGeses companion BIBLE

17 and in all vineyards, chopping:
for I pass midst you, says Yah Veh.

18 Ho to you who desire the day of Yah Veh!
To what end is it for you?
The day of Yah Veh is darkness, and not light
— as a man flees the face of a lion
and a bear meets him;
or goes into the house and props his hand on the wall
and a serpent bites him:

20 *Is* not the day of Yah Veh darkness and not light?
— even very dark with no brilliance therein?

21 I hate, I spurn your celebrations,
and I scent not your private assemblies.
22 Though you holocaust
your holocausts and offerings to me,
I *am* neither pleased
nor scan I the shelamim of your fatlings:
23 turn aside the roar of your songs from me
for I hear not the psalm of your bagpipes:
24 and judgment rolls as waters
and justness as a perennial wadi.

25 Brought you near to me
sacrifices and offerings in the wilderness forty years
O house of Yisra El?

26 Yes, you bore
the sukkoth/brush arbor of your sovereign
and Kiun, the star of your elohim,
the images you worked to yourselves.

27 So I exile you beyond Dammeseq,
says Yah Veh,
whose name *is* Elohim Sabaoth.

HO TO THEM WHO RELAX IN SIYON

6 Ho to them who relax in Siyon
and confide in the mountain of Shomeron
— the appointed firstlings of the goyim
to whom the house of Yisra El comes!

2 Pass to Kalneh, and see;
and from there go to Hamath the rabbi:
descend to Gath of the Peleshethiym:
Are they better than these sovereigndoms?
Or their border greater than your border?

3 You who cast away the evil day;
who bring near the settlement of violence;
4 who lie on beds of ivory
and spread themselves on their bedsteads;
and eat the rams from the flock
and the calves from midst the stall;
5 who chatter to the mouth of the bagpipe
who, as David,
fabricate to themselves instruments of song;
6 who drink wine in sprinklers
and anoint themselves with the firstlings ointments;
who are not worn out for the breach of Yoseph:
7 so now they are exiled
with the first of the exiles,
and the feast of revelling
of them who spread themselves *is* turned aside.

8 Adonay Yah Veh oaths by his soul*

*Yah Veh is the soul of the triune deity

AMOS 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

saith the LORD the God of hosts

an oracle of Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth,

I abhor **loathe** the excellency **pomp** of Jacob **Yaaqov**,
and hate his **palaces citadels**:

therefore *will I deliver* **shall I shut** up the city
with *all that is therein* **the fulness thereof**.

9 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
if there remain ten men in one house, that they shall die.

10 And a *man's* **his** uncle shall **take bear** him up,
and he that *burneth* **cremateth** him,
to bring out the bones out of the house,
and shall say unto him

that is by the *sides* **flanks** of the house,

Is there yet any with thee?

and he shall say, **No Final**.

Then shall he say, *Hold thy tongue* **Hush**:
for we may not *make mention of* **memorialize**
the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

11 For, behold,
the LORD commandeth **Yah Veh misvaheth**,
and he *will shall* smite the great house

with *breaches* **dewdrops**,

and the little house with *clefts* **fissures**.

12 Shall horses run upon the rock?

will shall one plow *there* with oxen?

for ye have turned judgment into *gall* **rosh**,

and the fruit of *righteousness* **justness**

into *hemlock* **wormwood**:

13 Ye which *rejoice* **cheer** in a *thing* **word** of nought,
which say,

Have we not taken to us horns by our own strength?

14 But, behold,

I *will shall* raise up against you a *nation* **goyim**,

O house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,

saith the LORD the God of hosts

an oracle of Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth;

and they shall afflict you from the entering in of Hemath
unto the *river* **wadi** of the *wilderness* **plain**.

WARNING VISIONS

7 Thus *hath the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**
shewed unto me **hath me see**;

and, behold, he formed *grasshoppers* **grubbers**

in the beginning of the *shooting up* **ascending**

of the *latter* **after** growth;

and, *lo* **behold**, it was the latter growth

after the *king's mowings* **sovereign's shearings**.

2 And **so be** it *came to pass*,

that when they had *made an end of* **finished** eating

the *grass* **herbage** of the land,

then I said, *O Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**,

forgive, I beseech thee:

by whom **how** shall *Jacob* **Yaaqov** arise? for he is small.

3 *The LORD repented* **Yah Veh sighed** for this:

It shall not be, *saith the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

4 Thus *hath the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**

shewed unto me **hath me see**:

and, behold, *the Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**

called to contend by fire,

and it *devoured* **consumed** the great *deep* **abyss**,

and did eat up a *part* **an allotment**.

5 Then said I, *O Lord GOD* **Adonay Yah Veh**,

cease, I beseech thee:

by whom **How** shall *Jacob* **Yaaqov** arise? for he is small.

6 *The LORD repented* **Yah Veh sighed** for this:

This also shall not be,

saith the Lord GOD **Adonay Yah Veh**.

7 Thus he *shewed* **hath me see**: and, behold,

the Lord stood **Adonay stationed** upon a wall

made by a plumbline, with a plumbline in his hand.

8 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto me,

Amos, what seest thou?

And I said, A plumbline.

Then said *the LORD* **Yah Veh Adonay**,

Behold, I *will shall* set a plumbline

in the midst of my people *Israel* **Yisra El**:

I *will shall* not *again* **add to** pass by them any more:

9 And the *high places* **bamahs** of *Isaac* **Yischaq**

shall be *desolate* **desolated**,

AMOS 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— an oracle of Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth.

I loathe the pomp of Yaaqov and hate his citadels:
so I shut up the city with the fulness thereof.

9 And so be it,

if ten men remain in one house, they die:

10 and his uncle and his cremater lift him

to bring the bones from the house,

and say to him who is by the flanks of the house,

Are there yet any with you?

And he says, Final.

Then he says, Hush:

for we memorialize not the name of Yah Veh.

11 For, behold, Yah Veh misvahs;

and he smites the great house with dewdrops

and the little house with fissures:

12 Run horses on the rock?

Plows one with oxen?

For you turn judgment into rosh

and the fruit of justness into wormwood.

13 You who have no word of cheer,

who say, Have we not, by our own strength,

taken horns to ourselves?

14 Surely behold, I raise a goyim against you,

O house of Yisra El

— an oracle of Yah Veh Elohim Sabaoth

and they afflict you from the entering in of Hemath

to the wadi of the plain.

WARNING VISIONS

7

Thus Adonay Yah Veh shows me;

and behold, he forms grubbers

in the beginning of the ascending of the after growth;

and behold, it *is* the latter growth

after the shearings of the sovereign.

And so be it,

they finish eating the herbage of the land,

and I say, Adonay Yah Veh,

forgive, I beseech you:

How rises Yaaqov? For he is small.

2

Yah Veh sighs for this:

So be it not, says Yah Veh.

4

Thus Adonay Yah Veh shows me:

and behold, Adonay Yah Veh calls to contend by fire;

and it consumes the great abyss

and eats an allotment.

5

And I say, O Adonay Yah Veh,

cease, I beseech you:

How rises Yaaqov? For he is small.

6

Yah Veh sighs for this also:

So be it not, says Adonay Yah Veh.

7

Thus he has me see: and behold,

Adonay stations a plumb line on a wall

and a plumb line in his hand.

8

And Yah Veh says to me, Amos, what see you?

And I say, A plumbline.

Then Yah Veh Adonay says,

Behold, I set a plumbline among my people Yisra El:

I add not to pass by them any more:

9

and I desolate the bamahs of Yischaq

AMOS 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the sanctuaries **holies** of Israel **Yisra El**
shall be *laid waste* **parched**;
and I *will* **shall** rise
against the house of **Jeroboam Yarob Am** with the sword.
10 Then **Amaziah Amas Yah** the priest of **Bethel Beth El**
sent to **Jeroboam Yarob Am**
king **sovereign** of Israel **Yisra El**, saying,
Amos hath conspired against thee
in the midst of the house of **Israel Yisra El**:
the land is not able to *bear* **contain** all his words.
11 For thus Amos saith,
Jeroboam Yarob Am shall die by the sword,
and **in exiling**,
Israel Yisra El shall *surely be led away captive* **be exiled**
out of their own *land* **soil**.
12 Also **Amaziah Amas Yah** said unto Amos,
O thou seer, go,
flee thee *away* into the land of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and there eat bread, and prophesy there:
13 But **add not to** prophesy *not again*
any more at **Bethel Beth El**:
for it is the *king's chapel* **holies of the sovereignty**,
and it is the *king's court* **house of the sovereign**.
14 Then answered Amos, and said to **Amaziah Amas Yah**,
I was no prophet, neither was I a prophet's son;
but I was an herdman,
and a *gatherer* **pincher** of *sycomore fruit* **sycomores**:
15 And *the* **LORD Yah Veh** took me
as I followed the flock,
and *the* **LORD Yah Veh** said unto me,
Go, prophesy unto my people **Israel Yisra El**.
16 Now therefore
hear thou the word of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**:
Thou sayest, Prophesy not against **Israel Yisra El**,
and *drop* **drip** not
thy word against the house of **Isaac Yischaq**.
17 Therefore thus saith *the* **LORD Yah Veh**;
Thy *wife* **woman** shall be an *harlot* **whore** in the city,
and thy sons and thy daughters shall fall by the sword,
and thy *land* **soil** shall be *divided* **allotted** by line;
and thou shalt die in a *polluted land* **foul soil**:
and **in exiling**,
Israel Yisra El shall *surely go into captivity* **be exiled**
forth of **from** his *land* **soil**.

THE BASKET OF SUMMER FRUIT

8 Thus *hath the Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**
shewed unto me **hath me see**:
and behold a basket of summer fruit.
2 And he said, Amos, what seest thou?
And I said, A basket of summer fruit.
Then said *the* **LORD Yah Veh** unto me,
The end is come upon my people of **Israel Yisra El**;
I *will* **shall** not *again* **add to** pass by them any more.
3 And the *songs* **songstresses** of the *temple* **manse**
shall be howlings in that day,
saith the Lord **GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh**:
there shall be many *dead bodies* **carcasses** in every place;
they shall cast them forth *with* **silence hushed**.
4 Hear this, O ye that *swallow up* **gulp** the needy,
even to make the *poor* **humble** of the land
to *fail* **shabbathize**,
5 Saying,
When *will* **shall be** the new moon *be gone* **passed**,
that we may *sell corn* **market for kernels**?
and the *sabbath* **shabbath**,
that we may *set forth* **wheat open grain**,
making **lessening** the ephah *small*,
and **greatening** the shekel *great*,
and *falsifying* **twisting** the balances by deceit?
6 That we may *buy* **chattel** the poor for silver,
and the needy for a pair of shoes;
yea, and *sell* **market for kernels**
the *refuse* **chaff** of the *wheat* **grain**?
7 *The* **LORD Yah Veh** hath *sworn* **oathed**
by the *excellency* **pomp** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
Surely *I will never* **shall not in perpetuity**
forget any of their works.
8 shall not the land *tremble* **quake** for this,
and every one mourn that *dwelleth* **settleth** therein?

AMOS 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and parch the holies of Yisra El;
and I rise against the house of Yarob Am
with the sword.
10 And Amas Yah the priest of Beth El
sends to Yarob Am sovereign of Yisra El,
saying, Amos conspires against you
among the house of Yisra El:
the land is not able to contain all his words.
11 For Amos says thus:
Yarob Am dies by the sword,
and in exiling, Yisra El *is* exiled from their own soil.
12 Also Amas Yah says to Amos,
O you seer, go, flee into the land of Yah Hudah,
and there eat bread, and there prophesy:
13 and add not to prophesy any more at Beth El:
for it is the holies of the sovereignty
and it is the house of the sovereign.
14 Then Amos answers and says to Amas Yah,
I *am* neither a prophet nor a son of a prophet;
but I *am* a herdman and a pincher of sycomores:
15 and as I follow the flock,
Yah Veh takes me and Yah Veh says to me,
Go, prophesy to my people Yisra El.
16 And now, hear the word of Yah Veh:
You say, Neither prophesy against Yisra El
nor drip against the house of Yischaq.
17 So Yah Veh says thus:
Your woman whores in the city
and your sons and your daughters fall by the sword
and your soil *is* allotted by line;
and you die in a foul soil:
and in exiling, Yisra El *is* exiled from his soil.

THE BASKET OF SUMMER FRUIT

8 Thus Adonay Yah Veh shows me,
and behold, a basket of summer fruit:
and he says, Amos, what see you?
And I say, A basket of summer fruit.
And Yah Veh says to me,
The end comes on my people of Yisra El;
I add not to pass by them any more.
3 And the songstresses of the manse howl in that day
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh:
with many carcasses in every place;
they cast them forth:
Hush!
4 Hear this, O you who gulp the needy,
who shabbathize the humble of the land,
5 saying,
When passes the new moon, to market kernels?
— the shabbath, to open grain?
— to lessen the ephah and greaten the shekel?
— to twist the balances by deceit?
— to chattel the poor for silver
and the needy for a pair of shoes?
— to market kernels, the chaff of the grain?
6
7 Yah Veh oaths by the pomp of Yaaqov,
Surely I forget none of their works in perpetuity.
8 Quakes not the land for this?
And every one who settles therein mourns?

AMOS 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and it shall *rise up* **ascend** wholly as a *flood* **light**;
and it shall be *cast out* **expelled** and drowned,
as by the *flood* **river** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
9 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*, in that day,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
that I *will shall* cause the sun to *go down* **descend** at noon,
and I *will shall* darken the earth in the *clear* **light** of day:
10 And I *will shall* turn your *feasts* **celebrations**
into mourning,
and all your songs into lamentation;
and I *will bring up sackcloth* **shall ascend saq**
upon all loins,
and baldness upon every head;
and I *will make* **shall set** it
as the mourning of an only *son*,
and the end *thereof* as a bitter day.
11 Behold, the days come,
saith the Lord GOD an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh,
that I *will shall* send a famine in the land,
not a famine of bread, nor a thirst for water,
but of hearing the words of *the LORD Yah Veh*:
12 And they shall wander from sea to sea,
and from the north even to the east **rising**,
they shall *run to and fro* **flit**
to seek the word of *the LORD Yah Veh*,
and shall not find it.
13 In that day
shall the *fair* **beautiful** virgins and *young men* **youths**
faint **languish** for thirst.
14 They that *swear* **oath**
by the *sin* **guilt** of *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
and say, Thy *god* **elohim**, O Dan, liveth;
and, The *manner* **way** of *Beersheba* **Beer Sheba** liveth;
even they shall fall, and never rise *up* again.

JUDGMENT OF YAH VEH

9 I saw *the Lord Adonay*
standing **stationed** upon the **sacrifice** altar:
and he said, Smite the lintel of the door,
that the *posts* **thresholds** may *shake* **quake**:
and *cut* **crop** them in the head, all of them;
and I *will slay* **shall slaughter** the last of them
with the sword:
he that fleeth of them shall not flee away,
and *he that escapeth* **any escapee** of them
shall not be *delivered* **rescued**.
2 Though they dig into *hell* **sheol**,
thence shall mine hand take them;
though they *climb up* **ascend** to *heaven* **the heavens**,
thence *will shall* I bring them down:
3 And though they hide themselves
in the top of *Carmel* **Karmel/orchard**,
I *will shall* search and take them out thence;
and though they be hid from my *sight* **eyes**
in the *bottom* **floor** of the sea,
thence *will I command* **shall I misvah** the serpent,
and he shall bite them:
4 And though they go into captivity
before **at the face** of their enemies,
thence *will I command* **shall I misvah** the sword,
and it shall *slay* **slaughter** them:
and I *will shall* set mine eyes upon them for evil,
and not for good.
5 And *the Lord GOD of hosts* **Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth**
is he that toucheth the land, and it shall melt,
and all that *dwelt* **settle** therein shall mourn:
and it shall *rise up* **ascend** wholly like a *flood* **river**;
and shall be drowned,
as by the *flood* **river** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**.
6 It is he
that buildeth his *stories* **steps** in the *heaven* **heavens**,
and hath founded his *troop* **band** in the earth;
he that calleth for the waters of the sea,
and poureth them out upon the face of the earth:
The LORD Yah Veh is his name.
7 Are ye not
as *children* **sons** of the *Ethiopians* **Kushiym** unto me,
O *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**?
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.

AMOS 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And it all ascends as a light
and expels and drowns as by the river of Misrayim.
9 And so be it, in that day,
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
that I descend the sun at noon
and I darken the earth in the light of day:
10 and I turn your celebrations into mourning
and all your songs into lamentation;
and I ascend saq on all loins
and baldness on every head;
and I set it as the mourning of an only *one*
and the end as a bitter day.
11 Behold, days come,
— an oracle of Adonay Yah Veh
and I send a famine in the land
— neither a famine of bread nor a thirst for water;
but of hearing the words of Yah Veh:
12 and they wander from sea to sea
and from the north even to the rising;
and they flit to seek the word of Yah Veh
and find not.
13 In that day
the beautiful virgins and youths languish for thirst;
14 they who oath by the guilt of Shomeron,
and say, Your elohim, O Dan, lives!
and, The way of Beer Sheba lives!
— even they fall and never rise again.

JUDGMENT OF YAH VEH

9 I see Adonay stationed on the sacrifice altar;
and he says, Smite the lintel of the door,
so as to quake the thresholds:
and crop them in the head — all of them;
and I slaughter the last of them with the sword:
and he who flees, flees not to them,
and the escapee escapes not to them.
2 And if they dig into sheol
my hand takes them from there;
and if they ascend to the heavens
I bring them down from there:
3 and if they hide in the top of Karmel/orchard
I search and take them from there;
and if they hide from my eyes in the floor of the sea
I misvah the serpent to bite them there;
4 and if they go into captivity
at the face of their enemies,
I misvah the sword to slaughter them there:
and I set my eyes on them for evil
and not for good.
5 And Adonay Yah Veh Sabaoth
is he who touches the land, and it melts,
and all that settle therein mourn:
and it all ascends as a river
and drowns as the river of Misrayim.
6 He who builds his steps in the heavens
and founds his band in the earth;
he who calls for the waters of the sea
and pours them on the face of the earth;
Yah Veh *is* his name.
7 Are you not as sons of the Kushiym to me,
O sons of Yisra El?
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

AMOS 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- Have not I brought up Israel ascended Yisra El
out of the land of Egypt Misrayim?
and the Philistines Peleshethiym from Caphtor Kaphtor,
and the Syrians Aramiym from Kir Qir?
- 8 Behold, the eyes of the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh
are upon the sinful kingdom sovereignty,
and I will destroy shall desolate it
from off the face of the earth soil;
saving finally, that in desolating,
I will shall not utterly destroy desolate
the house of Jacob Yaaqov,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
- 9 For, lo behold, I will command shall misvah,
and I will sift shall shake the house of Israel Yisra El
among all nations goyim,
like as corn is sifted shaken in a sieve,
yet shall not the least grain a kernel fall upon the earth.
- 10 All the sinners of my people shall die by the sword,
which say,
The evil shall not overtake approach
nor prevent confront us.
- THE RESTORATION OF YISRA EL**
- 11 In that day will shall I raise up
the tabernacle sukkoth/brush arbor of David
that is fallen,
and close up wall the breaches thereof;
and I will shall raise up his ruins,
and I will shall build it as in the original days of old:
- 12 That they may possess the remnant survivors of Edom,
and of all the heathen goyim,
which are called by my name,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh
that doeth worketh this.
- 13 Behold, the days come,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
that the plowman plower
shall overtake approach the reaper harvester,
and the treader of grapes him that soweth draweth seed;
and the mountains
shall drop sweet wine drip squeezed juice,
and all the hills shall melt.
- 14 And I will bring again shall return
the captivity of my people of Israel Yisra El,
and they shall build the waste desolated cities,
and inhabit settle them;
and they shall plant vineyards,
and drink the wine thereof;
they shall also make work gardens,
and eat the fruit of them.
- 15 And I will shall plant them upon their land soil,
and they shall no more
be pulled up uprooted out of their land soil
which I have given them,
saith the LORD Yah Veh thy God Elohim.

AMOS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- Ascended I not Yisra El from the land of Misrayim?
And the Peleshethiym from Kaphtor?
And the Aramiym from Qir?
- 8 Behold, the eyes of Adonay Yah Veh
on the sinful sovereignty;
and I desolate it from off the face of the soil:
finally,
in desolating, I desolate not the house of Yaaqov
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
- 9 For behold, I misvah,
and I shake the house of Yisra El among all goyim
as shaken in a sieve;
yet not a kernel falls on the earth.
- 10 All the sinners of my people die by the sword,
who say,
The evil neither approaches nor confronts us.
- THE RESTORATION OF YISRA EL**
- 11 In that day
I raise the fallen sukkoth/brush arbor of David
and wall the breaches;
and I raise his ruins
and I build it as in the original days:
- 12 so that they possess the survivors of Edom
and of all the goyim on whom my name is called
— an oracle of Yah Veh who works this.
- 13 Behold, days come,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that the plower approaches the harvester
and the treader of grapes the drawer of seed;
and the mountains drip squeezed juice
and all the hills melt:
- 14 and I restore the captivity of my people of Yisra El:
and they build the desolated cities and settle them;
and they plant vineyards and drink the wine;
and work gardens and eat their fruit:
and I plant them on their soil
- 15 — no more uprooted from the soil I give them,
says Yah Veh your Elohim.

OBADIAH

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE VISION OF OBAD YAH CONCERNING EDMOM

1 The vision of *Obadiah* **Obad Yah**.
Thus saith *the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh*
concerning Edom;
We have heard a *rumour report* from *the LORD Yah Veh*,
and an ambassador is sent among the *heathen goyim*,
Arise ye, and let us rise up against her in *battle war*.
2 Behold,
I have *made given* thee small among the *heathen goyim*:
thou art *greatly mightily* despised.
3 The *pride arrogance* of thine heart hath deceived thee,
thou that *dweltest tabernaclest* in the clefts of the rock,
whose *habitation settlement* is high;
that saith in his heart,
Who shall bring me down to the *ground earth*?
4 Though thou *exalt heighten thyself* as the eagle,
and though thou set thy nest among the stars,
thence *will shall I bring descend* thee down,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh.
5 If thieves came to thee, if *robbers ravagers* by night,
(how art thou cut off!)
would should they not have stolen
till they had *enough satiated*?
if the *grapegatherers clippers* came to thee,
would should they not
leave *some grapes gleanings*?
6 How *are the things of Esau Esav hath been* searched out!
how are his *hidden things sought up treasures bulged*!
7 All the men of thy *confederacy covenant*
have *brought sent* thee even to the border:
the men that were at *peace shalom* with thee
have deceived thee, and prevailed against thee;
they *that eat set* thy bread
have laid a wound under to estrange thee:
there is *none understanding no discernment* in him.
8 shall I not in that day,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
even destroy the wise *men* out of Edom,
and *understanding discernment*
out of the mount of *Esau Esav*?
9 And thy mighty *men*, O Teman, shall be dismayed,
to the end that every *one man* of the mount of *Esau Esav*
may be cut off by *slaughter severing*.
10 For thy violence against thy brother *Jacob Yaaqov*
shame shall cover thee,
and thou shalt be *cut off for ever severed eternally*.
11 In the day that thou stoodest on the other side,
in the day that the strangers
carried away captive captured his *forces valiant*,
and *foreigners strangers* entered into his *gates portals*,
and *cast lots handled pebbles*
upon *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
even thou wast as one of them.
12 But thou shouldst not have *looked seen*
on the day of thy brother
in the day that he became a *stranger estranged*;
neither shouldst thou have *rejoiced cheered*
over the *children sons of Judah Yah Hudah*
in the day of their destruction;
neither shouldst thou
have *spoken proudly greatened thy mouth*
in the day of *distress tribulation*.
13 Thou shouldst not have entered
into the *gate portal* of my people
in the day of their calamity;
yea, thou shouldst not have *looked seen*
on their *affliction evil* in the day of their calamity,
nor have *laid hands spread* on their *substance valiant*
in the day of their calamity;
14 Neither shouldst thou have stood in the crossway,
to cut off those of his *that did escape escapees*;
neither shouldst thou have *delivered shut up*
those of his *that did remain survivors*
in the day of *distress tribulation*.
15 For the day of *the LORD Yah Veh*
is near upon all the *heathen goyim*:
as thou hast *done worked*,
it shall be *done worked* unto thee:
thy *reward dealing* shall return upon thine own head.

OBAD YAH

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE VISION OF OBAD YAH CONCERNING EDMOM

1 The vision of Obad Yah:
Thus says Adonay Yah Veh concerning Edom:
We hear a report from Yah Veh,
and an ambassador is sent among the goyim,
Rise; yes, rise against her in war.
2 Behold, I give you little among the goyim;
you are mightily despised:
3 the arrogance of your heart deceives you
— you who tabernacle in the clefts of the rock;
whose settlement is high;
he says in his heart,
Who descends me to the earth?
4 Though you heighten as the eagle
and though you set your nest among the stars,
I descend you from there
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
5 If thieves come to you, if ravagers by night
— how you are cut off
steal they not until they satiate?
If the clippers come to you,
leave they not gleanings?
How Esav is searched!
How his treasures bulge!
6 All the men of your covenant
7 send you to the border:
the men at shalom with you
deceive you and prevail against you;
they set your bread under you to estrange you:
there is no discernment in him.
8 In that day,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
destroy I not the wise from Edom?
And discernment from the mount of Esav?
9 And your mighty, O Teman, dismay,
so that every man of the mount of Esav
is cut off by severing.
10 For your violence against your brother Yaaqov,
shame covers you;
and you *are severed eternally*.
11 In the day you stand on the other side,
in the day the strangers capture his valiant,
and strangers enter his portals,
and handle pebbles on Yeru Shalem,
even you *are* as one of them:
12 and you neither see the day of your brother
— the day he is estranged;
nor cheer over the sons of Yah Hudah
in the day of their destruction;
nor greaten your mouth in the day of tribulation.
13 nor enter the portal of my people
in the day of their calamity;
yes, nor see their evil
in the day of their calamity;
nor spread over their valiant
in the day of their calamity;
14 nor stand in the crossway to cut off his escapees;
nor shut up his survivors
in the day of tribulation.
15 For the day of Yah Veh is near on all the goyim:
as you work, as worked to you:
your dealing returns on your own head:

OBADIAH

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 16 For as ye have drunk upon my holy mountain,
so shall all the *heathen* **goyim** drink continually,
yea, they shall drink, and they shall *swallow down* **gulp**,
and they shall be as though they had not been.
- 17 But upon mount *Zion* **Siyon**
shall be *deliverance* **an escape**,
and there shall be *holiness* **a holies**;
and the house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
shall possess their possessions.
- 18 And the house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov** shall be a fire,
and the house of *Joseph* **Yoseph** a flame,
and the house of *Esau* **Esav** for stubble,
and they shall *kindle* **inflame** in them,
and *devour* **consume** them;
and there shall not be any *remaining* **survivors**
of the house of *Esau* **Esav**;
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *spoken it* **worded**.
- 19 And they of the south
shall possess the mount of *Esau* **Esav**;
and they of the *plain* **lowland**
the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**;
and they shall possess the fields of *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
and the fields of *Samaria* **Shomeron**;
and *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin** shall possess *Gilead* **Gilad**.
- 20 And the *captivity* **exiles** of *this host* **the valiant**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
shall possess that of the *Canaanites* **Kenaaniym**,
even unto *Zarephath* **Sarephath**;
and the *captivity* **exiles** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
which is in *Sepharad*,
shall possess the cities of the south.
- 21 And saviours
shall *come up* **ascend** on mount *Zion* **Siyon**
to judge the mount of *Esau* **Esav**;
and the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
shall be the *LORD'S* **Yah Veh's**.

OBAD YAH

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 16 for as you drink on my holy mountain
thus all the goyim drink continually
— yes, they drink and they gulp,
and they become as though they had never become.
- 17 And on mount Siyon becomes an escape
and there becomes a holies;
and the house of Yaaqov possesses their possessions.
- 18 And so be it,
the house of Yaaqov becomes a fire
and the house of Yoseph a flame
and the house of Esav a stubble;
and they inflame among them, and consume them;
so that there are no survivors of the house of Esav;
for Yah Veh has worded.
- 19 And they of the south possess the mount of Esav;
and they of the lowland the Peleshethiym:
and they possess the fields of Ephrayim
and the fields of Shomeron:
and Ben Yamin possesses Gilad:
- 20 and the exiles of the valiant of the sons of Yisra El,
the Kenaaniym to Sarephath;
and the exiles of Yeru Shalem in Sepharad,
possess the cities of the south.
- 21 And saviours ascend on mount Siyon
to judge the mount of Esav;
and the sovereigndom becomes to Yah Veh.

JONAH 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE WORD OF YAH VEH TO YONAH

- 1 Now the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
came unto **Jonah Yonah** the son of **Amittai Amittay**,
saying,
2 Arise, go to Nineveh, that great city,
and cry **call out** against it;
for their **wickedness evil**
is come up before me hath ascended at my face.
- YONAH FLEES FROM YAH VEH**
- 3 But **Jonah Yonah** rose up to flee unto Tarshish
from the **presence face** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and went down **descended** to **Joppa Yapho**;
and he found a ship going to Tarshish:
so he **paid gave** the fare **hire** thereof,
and went down **descended** into it,
to go with them unto Tarshish
from the **presence face** of the **LORD Yah Veh**.
- 4 But the **LORD Yah Veh**
sent out cast a great wind into the sea,
and there was a **mighty tempest great storm** in the sea,
so that the ship was **like fabricated** to be broken.
- 5 Then the mariners were **afraid awed**,
and cried every man unto his **god elohim**,
and cast *forth* the **wares instruments** that were in the ship
into the sea, to lighten it of them.
- 6 But **Jonah was gone down Yonah descended**
into the **sides flanks** of the ship;
and he lay, and was **fast asleep sleeping soundly**.
- 7 So the **shipmaster came to great sailer approached** him,
and said unto him, What meanest thou, O **sound sleeper?**
arise, call upon thy **God Elohim**,
if so be that **God will think Elohim shall shine** upon us,
that we **perish destruct** not.
- 8 And they said every **one man to his fellow friend**,
Come, and let us **cast lots fell pebbles**,
that we may know
for whose cause on whose account this evil is upon us.
So they **cast lots felled pebbles**,
and the **lot pebble** fell upon **Jonah Yonah**.
- 9 Then said they unto him,
Tell us, we **pray beseech** thee,
for whose cause this evil is upon us;
What is **thine occupation thy work?**
and whence comest thou?
what is thy **country land?** and of what people art thou?
- 10 And he said unto them, I **am** an Hebrew;
and I fear the **LORD Yah Veh**,
the **God Elohim** of heaven **the heavens**,
which **hath made worked** the sea and the dry **land**.
- 11 Then were the men **exceedingly afraid greatly awed**,
and said unto him, Why hast thou **done worked** this?
For the men knew that he fled
from the **presence face** of the **LORD Yah Veh**,
because he had told them.
- 12 Then said they unto him,
What shall we **do work** unto thee,
that the sea may **be calm subside** unto us?
for the sea wrought, and **was tempestuous stormed**.
- YONAH SWALLOWED BY A GREAT FISH**
- 13 And he said unto them,
Take me up, and cast me forth into the sea;
so shall the sea **be calm subside** unto you:
for I know that **for on my sake account**
this great **tempest storm** is upon you.
- 14 Nevertheless the men **rowed paddled** hard
to **bring it return** to the **land dry**;
but they could not:
for the sea wrought,
and **was tempestuous stormed** against them.
- 15 Wherefore
they **cried called out** unto the **LORD Yah Veh**, and said,
We beseech thee, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
we beseech thee,
let us not **perish destruct** for this man's **life soul**,
and **lay give** not upon us innocent blood:
for thou, O **LORD Yah Veh**,
hast **done worked** as it **pleased delighted** thee.
- 16 So they **took up Jonah lifted Yonah**,
and cast him forth into the sea:

YONAH 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE WORD OF YAH VEH TO YONAH

- 1 And so be the word of Yah Veh
to Yonah the son of Amittay, saying,
2 Rise, go to Nineveh, that great city,
and call out against it;
for their evil ascends at my face.
- YONAH FLEES FROM YAH VEH**
- 3 And Yonah rises to flee from the face of Yah Veh
to Tarshish;
and descends to Yapho;
and he finds a ship going to Tarshish:
so he gives the hire and descends into it
to go with them to Tarshish
from the face of Yah Veh.
- 4 And Yah Veh casts a great wind on the sea,
and there is a great storm in the sea,
so that the ship fabricates to be broken:
5 and the mariners awe
and every man cries to his elohim;
and cast the instruments in the ship into the sea
to lighten it by them:
and Yonah descends into the flanks of the ship;
and he lies down and sleeps soundly:
6 and the great sailer approaches him,
and says to him, What mean you, O sound sleeper?
Rise, call on your Elohim,
if so be that Elohim shine on us that we not destruct.
- 7 And every man says to his friend,
Come, and we fell pebbles,
so that we know on whose account this evil is on us.
— and they fell pebbles
and the pebble falls on Yonah.
- 8 And they say to him, Tell us, we beseech you,
for whose cause this evil is on us!
What is your work? And whence come you?
What is your land? And of what people are you?
- 9 And he says to them, I — a Hebrew;
and I fear Yah Veh Elohim of the heavens,
who worked the sea and the dry.
- 10 And the men awe an awe,
and say to him, Why work you this?
— for the men know
he flees from the face of Yah Veh
— because he told them.
- 11 And they say to him,
What work we to you, to subside the sea to us?
— for the sea works and storms.
- YONAH SWALLOWED BY A GREAT FISH**
- 12 And he says to them,
Take me and cast me into the sea;
and thus the sea subsides to you:
for I know that on my account
this great storm is on you.
- 13 And the men paddle hard to return to the dry;
and they cannot:
for the sea works and storms against them.
- 14 And they call out to Yah Veh, and say,
We beseech you, O Yah Veh, we beseech you,
that we not destruct for the soul of this man,
and give not innocent blood on us:
for you, O Yah Veh, work as it delights you.
- 15 So they lift Yonah, and cast him into the sea

JONAH 1—3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 and the sea ceased **stood** from her raging.
Then the men
feared the LORD exceedingly **awed Yah Veh greatly,**
and *offered* **sacrificed** a sacrifice
unto the **LORD Yah Veh,**
and *made* **vowed** vows.
17 Now the **LORD Yah Veh**
had *prepared* **numbered** a great fish
to swallow up **Jonah Yonah.**
And **Jonah Yonah** was in the *belly* **inwards** of the fish
three days and three nights.

THE PRAYER OF YONAH, THE ANSWER OF YAH VEH

2 Then **Jonah Yonah**
prayed unto the **LORD Yah Veh** his **God Elohim**
out of the fish's *belly* **inwards,**
2 And said, I *cried* **called out**
by reason **because** of *mine affliction* **my tribulation**
unto the **LORD Yah Veh,**
and he *heard* **answered** me;
out of the *belly of hell* **sheol** cried I,
and thou *heardest* my voice.
3 For thou *hadst* cast me into the deep,
in the midst of the seas;
and the *floods compassed* **rivers surrounded** me *about:*
all thy *billows* **breakers** and thy waves passed over me.
4 Then I said,
I am cast out of **expelled from** thy *sight eyes;*
yet I *will* **shall** look again toward thy holy *temple* **manse.**
5 The waters *compassed* **surrounded** me *about,*
even to the soul:
the *depth closed* **abyss surrounded** me *round about,*
the *weeds* **reeds** were *wrapped* **bound** about my head.
6 I *went down* **descended**
to the *bottoms* **bases** of the mountains;
the earth with her bars was about me *for ever* **eternally:**
yet hast thou *brought up* **ascended** my life
from *corruption* **the pit of ruin,**
O **LORD Yah Veh** my **God Elohim.**
7 When my soul *fainted* **languished** within me
I remembered the **LORD Yah Veh:**
and my prayer came in unto thee,
into thine holy *temple* **manse.**
8 They that observe *lying* **vain** vanities
forsake their own mercy.
9 But I *will* **shall** sacrifice unto thee
with the voice of *thanksgiving* **spread hands;**
I *will pay* **shall shalam** that that I have vowed.
Salvation is of the **LORD Yah Veh.**
10 And the **LORD spake Yah Veh said** unto the fish,
and it vomited out **Jonah Yonah** upon the dry *land.*

THE SECOND WORD OF YAH VEH TO YONAH

3 And the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
came unto **Jonah the second time Yonah secondly,**
saying,
2 Arise, go unto Nineveh, that great city,
and *preach* **call out** unto it
the *preaching* **calling out** that I *bid* **word** thee.
3 So **Jonah Yonah** arose, and went unto Nineveh,
according to the word of the **LORD Yah Veh.**
Now Nineveh was an *exceeding* **a** great city of **Elohim**
of three days' *journey* **walk.**
4 And **Jonah Yonah** began to enter into the city
a **one day's journey walk,**
and he *cried* **called out,** and said,
Yet forty days,
and Nineveh shall be *overthrown* **turned against.**
5 So the *people* **men** of Nineveh
believed God **trusted Elohim,**
and *proclaimed* **called out** a fast,
and *put on sackcloth* **enrobed saq,**
from the greatest of them even to the *least* **lesser** of them.
6 For word *came* **touched**
unto the *king* **sovereign** of Nineveh,
and he arose from his throne,
and he *laid* **passed** his *robe* **mighty mantle** from him,
and covered him with *sackcloth* **saq,** and sat in ashes.
7 And he caused it to be *proclaimed* **cried out**
and *published* **said** through Nineveh
by the *decree* **taste** of the *king* **sovereign** and his nobles,

YONAH 1—3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and the sea stands from her raging:
16 and the men awe an awe to Yah Veh
and sacrifice a sacrifice and vow vows to Yah Veh:
17 and Yah Veh numbers a great fish
to swallow Yonah:
and Yonah is in the inwards of the fish
three days and three nights.

THE PRAYER OF YONAH, THE ANSWER OF YAH VEH

2 And Yonah prays to Yah Veh his Elohim
from the inwards of the fish,
2 and says, Because of my tribulation
I call to Yah Veh; and he answers me:
from the belly of sheol I cry; and you hear my voice:
3 for you cast me into the deep, midst the seas;
and the rivers surround me:
all your breakers and your waves pass over me.
4 Then I — I say, I am expelled from your eyes;
yet I look again toward your holy manse:
5 the waters surround me to the soul;
the abyss surrounds me;
the reeds bind around my head:
6 I descend to the bases of the mountains;
the earth with her bars around me eternally:
yet you ascend my life from the pit of ruin,
O Yah Veh my Elohim.
7 When my soul languishes within me
I remember Yah Veh:
and my prayer comes in to you
— into your holy manse.
8 They who observe vain vanities
forsake their own mercy;
9 and I sacrifice to you
with the voice of spread hands;
I shalam what I vow:
salvation is of Yah Veh.
10 And Yah Veh says to the fish,
and it vomits Yonah on the dry.

THE SECOND WORD OF YAH VEH TO YONAH

3 And so be the word of Yah Veh
to Yonah secondly, saying,
2 Rise, go to Nineveh, that great city;
and call out to it the calling I word you.
3 And Yonah rises, and goes to Nineveh
according to the word of Yah Veh
— Nineveh is a great city of Elohim
of a walk of three days.
4 And Yonah begins to enter the city
a walk of one day;
and he calls out, and says,
Yet forty days, and Nineveh is turned against.
5 So the men of Nineveh trust Elohim
and call a fast and enrobe saq
— from their greatest even to their lesser.
6 And word touches to the sovereign of Nineveh;
and he rises from his throne
and passes his mighty mantle from him
and covers himself with saq and sits in ashes:
7 and he cries throughout Nineveh,
saying by the taste of the sovereign and his nobles,

JONAH 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

saying,
Let neither *man* **humanity** nor *beast* **animal**, herd nor flock,
taste *anything* **ought**:
let them not *feed* **graze**, nor drink water:
8 But let *man* **humanity** and *beast* **animal**
be covered with *sackcloth* **saq**,
and *cry mightily* **call out severely** unto *God* **Elohim**:
yea, let them turn every *one* **man** from his evil way,
and from the violence that is in their *hands* **palms**.
9 Who *can tell* **knoweth**
if *God will* **Elohim shall** turn and *repent* **sigh**,
and turn away from his *fierce anger* **fuming wrath**,
that *we perish* **destruct** not?
10 And *God* **Elohim** saw their works,
that they turned from their evil way;
and *God repented* **Elohim sighed** of the evil,
that he had *said* **worded**
that he *would do* **should work** unto them;
and he *did* **worked** it not.
THE ANGER OF YONAH; THE MERCY OF YAH VEH
4 But it *displeased* **Jonah exceedingly**
was greatly evil to Jonah,
and he was very angry.
2 And he prayed unto *the LORD* **Yah Veh**, and said,
I *pray* **beseech** thee, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
was not this my *saying* **word**,
when I was yet in my *country* **soil**?
Therefore I *fled before* **anticipated to flee** unto Tarshish:
for I knew that thou art a *gracious* **God charismatic El**,
and merciful, slow to anger, and of great *kindness* **mercy**,
and *repentest* **sighest** thee of the evil.
3 Therefore now, O *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
take, I beseech thee, my *life* **soul** from me;
for it is better for me to die than to live.
4 Then said *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Doest thou well—**please** to be *angry* **inflamed**?
5 So *Jonah* **Yonah** went out of the city,
and sat on the east *side* of the city,
and there *made* **worked** him
a *booth* **sukkoth/brush arbor**,
and sat under it in the shadow,
till he might see what *would* **should** become of the city.
6 And *the LORD God* **Yah Veh Elohim**
prepared **numbered** a gourd,
and *made* **caused** it
to *come up* **ascend** over *Jonah* **Yonah**,
that it might be a shadow over his head,
to *deliver* **rescue** him from his *grief* **evil**.
So *Jonah was exceeding glad*
In cheering, Yonah greatly cheered of the gourd.
7 But *God prepared* **Elohim numbered** a *worm* **maggot**
when the *morning rose* **dawn ascended**
the *next day* **morrow**,
and it smote the gourd that it withered.
8 And **so be** it *came to pass*, when the sun did arise,
that *God* **Elohim**
prepared **numbered** a vehement east wind;
and the sun *beat* **smote** upon the head of *Jonah* **Yonah**,
that he *fainted* **languished**,
and *wished in himself* **asked of his soul** to die, and said,
It is better for me to die than to live.
9 And *God* **Elohim** said to *Jonah* **Yonah**,
Doest thou well—**please** to be *angry* **inflamed**
for the gourd?
And he said,
I *do well*—**please** to be *angry* **inflamed**, *even* unto death.
10 Then said *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
Thou hast *had pity on* **spared** the gourd,
for the which thou hast not laboured,
neither *madest it grow* **nourished**;
which *came up in* **was a son of** a night,
and *perished in* **destructed a son of** a night:
11 And should not I spare Nineveh, that great city,
wherein are *more than* **abound**
sixscore thousand persons **twelve myriads of humanity**
that *cannot discern* **know not**
between their right *hand* and their left *hand*;
and *also much cattle* **many animals**?

YONAH 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

saying,
Neither humanity nor animal, herd nor flock,
tastes *ought*:
neither grazes, nor drinks water:
8 and humanity and animal covers with saq
and calls out severely to Elohim:
yes, every man turns from his evil way
and from the violence in their palms.
9 Who knows?
Perhaps Elohim turns and sighs
— turns from his fuming wrath, and we destruct not!
10 And Elohim sees their works
— that they turn from their evil way;
and Elohim sighs of the evil
he worded to work to them;
and he works it not.
THE ANGER OF YONAH; THE MERCY OF YAH VEH
4 And it *is* greatly evil to Yonah
and he *is* very angry:
2 and he prays to Yah Veh, and says,
I beseech you, O Yah Veh,
was this not my word when I was yet in my soil?
So I anticipated to flee to Tarshish:
for I knew you are an El
— charismatic and merciful,
slow to anger and of great mercy;
and you sigh of the evil:
3 and now, O Yah Veh, I beseech you,
take my soul from me;
for it is better for me to die than to live.
4 And Yah Veh says,
Is your inflaming well—pleasing?
5 And Yonah goes from the city
and sits on the east of the city;
and works himself a sukkoth/brush arbor
and sits under its shadow
until he sees what becomes of the city.
6 And Yah Veh Elohim numbers a gourd
and ascends it over Yonah,
to become a shadow over his head
to rescue him from his evil:
and in cheering, Yonah cheers greatly for the gourd.
7 And Elohim numbers a maggot
at the ascending of the dawn on the morrow;
and it smites the gourd that it withers:
8 and so be it, when the sun rises,
Elohim numbers a vehement east wind;
and the sun smites on the head of Yonah
so that he languishes;
and asks of his soul to die, and says,
It is better for me to die than to live.
9 And Elohim says to Yonah,
Is your inflaming over the gourd well—pleasing?
And he says,
My inflaming is well—pleasing — even to death.
10 Then Yah Veh says,
You spared the gourd,
for which you neither labored nor nourished;
becoming a son of a night
and destructing a son of a night:
11 and I — spare I not Nineveh, that great city,
wherein twelve myriads of humanity abound
— who know not between their right and their left
— and many animals?

MICAH 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE WORD OF YAH VEh AGAINST SHOMERON AND YERU SHALEM

- 1 The word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
that came to *Micah* **Michah** the *Morasthite* **Moresethiy**
in the days of *Jotham* **Yah Tham**,
Ahaz **Ach Az**, and *Hesekiah* **Yechizqi Yah**,
kings **sovereigns** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
which he saw concerning
Samaria **Shomeron** and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
- 2 Hear, all ye people;
hearken, O earth, and all **the fulness** that therein is:
and let the *Lord* **GOD** be **Adonay Yah Veh**
witness against you,
the *Lord* **Adonay** from his holy temple **manse**.
- 3 For, behold,
the *LORD* **Yah Veh** cometh forth out of his place,
and will come down **shall descend**,
and tread upon the *high places* **bamahs** of the earth.
4 And the mountains shall be *molten* **melt** under him,
and the valleys shall be *cleft* **split**,
as wax *before* **at the face** of the fire,
and as the waters
that are poured down a *steep place* **descent**.
- 5 For the *transgression* **rebellion** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
is all this,
and for the sins of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
What is the *transgression* **rebellion** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**?
is it not *Samaria* **Shomeron**?
and what
are the *high places* **bamahs** of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**?
are they not *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**?
- 6 Therefore I will make *Samaria* **shall set Shomeron**
as an heap of the field,
and as plantings of a vineyard:
and I will **shall** pour down the stones *thereof*
into the valley,
and I will *discover* **shall expose** the foundations *thereof*.
7 And all the *graven images* **sculptiles** *thereof*
shall be *beaten to pieces* **crushed**,
and all the *hires* **payoffs** *thereof*
shall be burned with the fire,
and all the idols *thereof* will I lay **shall I set** desolate:
for she gathered it of the *hire* **payoff** of an *harlot* **a whore**,
and they shall return
to the *hire* **payoff** of an *harlot* **a whore**.
- 8 Therefore I will *wail* **shall chop** and howl,
I will **shall** go stripped and naked:
I will make **shall work** a *wailing* **chopping**
like the *dragons* **monsters**,
and mourning as the **daughters** of the owls.
9 For her wound is incurable;
for it is come unto *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
he is come **toucheth** unto the *gate* **portal** of my people,
even to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
- 10 Declare **Tell** ye it not at Gath,
in weeping, weep ye not at all:
in the house of Aphrah
roll in wallowing, **wallow** thyself in the dust.
11 Pass ye away,
thou *inhabitant* **settler** of *Saphir* **Shaphir**,
having thy shame naked:
the *inhabitant* **settler** of *Zaanan* **Saanan** came not forth
in the *mourning* **chopping** of *Bethzezel* **Beth Ha Esel**;
he shall *receive* **take** of you his standing.
- 12 For the *inhabitant* **settler** of Maroth
waited carefully for **awaited** good:
but evil came down **descended** from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
unto the *gate* **portal** of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
- 13 O thou *inhabitant* **settler** of Lachish,
bind yoke the chariot to the *swift beast* **stallion**:
she is the beginning of the sin
to the daughter of *Zion* **Siyon**:
for the *transgressions* **rebellions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
were found in thee.
- 14 Therefore shalt thou give presents
to *Moresethgath* **Moreseth Gath**:
the houses of Achzib shall be a lie
to the *kings* **sovereigns** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
15 Yet will **shall** I bring an *heir* **a successor** unto thee,

MICAH 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE WORD OF YAH VEh AGAINST SHOMERON AND YERU SHALEM

- 1 The word of Yah Veh
being to Michah the Moresethiy
in the days of Yah Tham, Ach Az and Yechizqi Yah
sovereigns of Yah Hudah,
which he sees
concerning Shomeron and Yeru Shalem.
- 2 Hear, all you people;
hearken, O earth, and all the fulness thereof:
Adonay Yah Veh witnesses against you
— Adonay from his holy manse.
- 3 For behold,
Yah Veh comes from his place and descends
and treads on the bamahs of the earth:
and the mountains melt under him
and the valleys split
— as wax at the face of the fire
and as the waters pour down a descent:
all this is for the rebellion of Yaaqov
and for the sins of the house of Yisra El.
- 5 What is the rebellion of Yaaqov?
Is it not Shomeron?
And what are the bamahs of Yah Hudah?
Are they not Yeru Shalem?
- 6 I set Shomeron as a heap of the field
— as plantings of a vineyard:
and I pour the stones into the valley
and I expose the foundations;
and crush all the sculptiles
and burn all the payoffs with the fire
and desolate all the idols;
for she gathers from the payoff of a whore
and to the payoff of a whore they return:
for this I chop and howl; I go stripped and naked:
I work a chopping as the monsters
and a mourning as the daughters of the owls:
for her wound is incurable;
for it comes to Yah Hudah:
he touches to the portal of my people
— to Yeru Shalem.
- 10 Tell it not at Gath;
in weeping, weep not:
in the house of Aphrah;
in wallowing, wallow yourself in the dust.
- 11 Pass on, you settler of Shaphir,
naked one of shame:
the settler of Saanan goes not;
in the chopping of Beth Ha Esel;
he takes his standing from you.
- 12 For the settler of Maroth awaits good;
for evil descends from Yah Veh
to the portal of Yeru Shalem.
- 13 You, settler of Lachish,
yoke the chariot to the stallion;
she is the beginning of sin to the daughter of Siyon
— for all the rebellions of Yisra El found in you.
- 14 So give presents to Moreseth Gath:
the houses of Achzib are a lie
to the sovereigns of Yisra El.
- 15 Yet I bring a successor to you,

MICAH 1—3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

O inhabitant **settler** of Mareshah:
 he shall come unto Adullam
 the *glory* **honour** of Israel **Yisra El**.
 16 Make **Balden** thee *bald*, and *poll* **shear** thee
 for thy delicate children **the sons of thy delights**;
 enlarge thy baldness as the eagle;
 for they are gone into captivity **exiled** from thee.

2 Woe **Ho** to them
 that *devise iniquity* **fabricate mischief**,
 and *work* **do** evil upon their beds!
 when the morning is light, they *practise* **work** it,
 because it is in the *power* **el** of their hand.

2 And they *covet* **desire** fields,
 and *take* **strip** them by *violence*;
 and houses, and *take* **bear** them away:
 so they oppress a *man* **mighty** and his house,
 even a man and his *heritage* **inheritance**.

3 Therefore thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**;
 Behold, against this family *do I devise* **I fabricate** an evil,
 from which ye shall not *remove* **depart** your necks;
 neither shall ye go haughtily: for this time is evil.

4 In that day
 shall one take up a *parable* **proverb** against you,
 and lament with a *doleful* lamentation **of lamentations**,
 and say, **In ravaging**, We be *utterly spoiled* **ravaged**:
 he hath changed the *portion* **allotment** of my people:
 how hath he *removed* **departed** it from me!
turning away **in restoring**,
 he hath *divided* **allotted** our fields.

5 Therefore thou shalt have none
 that shall cast a cord by *lot* **pebble**
 in the congregation of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

6 *Prophecy* ye **drip** not,
 say they to them that *prophecy* **they drip**:
 they shall not *prophecy* **drip*** to them,
 that they shall not *take* **remove** shame.

*drip: as in dripping words.

7 O thou that art named
 the house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov** sayeth,
 is the spirit of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** straitened?
 are these his *doings* **exploits**?
 do not my words *do good to* **well**—please him
 that walketh *uprightly* **straight**?

8 Even of late **From yesterday**
 my people is risen up as an enemy:
 ye *pull off* **strip** the *robe* **mighty mantle**
 with the *garment* **clothes**
 from them that pass by *securely* **confidently**
 as men *averse* **returning** from war.

9 The women of my people have ye *cast out* **expelled**
 from their *pleasant* houses **of delights**;
 from their *children* **sucklings**
 have ye taken away my *glory* for ever **majesty eternally**.

10 Arise ye, and depart; for this is not *your* rest:
 because it is *polluted* **fouled**, it shall *destroy* **despoil** you,
 even with a *sore* **destruction** — a **forceful despoiling**.

11 If a man walking in the spirit and falsehood do lie,
 saying, *I will prophecy* **I shall drip** unto thee of wine
 and of *strong drink* **intoxicants**;
 he shall *even be* the *prophet* of **drip** unto this people.

12 **YAH VEH GATHERS THE SURVIVORS OF YISRA EL**
I will surely assemble **In gathering, I shall gather**,
 O *Jacob* **Yaaqov**, all of thee;
I will surely gather **In gathering, I shall gather**
 the *remnant* **survivors** of Israel **Yisra El**;
I will put **shall set** them together
 as the *sheep* **flock** of *Bozrah* **the fold**,
 as the *flock* **drove** in the midst of their fold:
 they shall *make great noise* **quake**
 by *reason* **because** of the *multitude of men* **humanity**.

13 The *breaker* **separator** is *come up* **ascended**
 before them **at their face**:
 they have *broken up* **separated**,
 and have passed through the *gate* **portal**,
 and are gone out by it:
 and their *king* **sovereign** shall pass *before them* **at their face**,
 and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** on the head of them.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH TO YAAQOV AND YISRA EL

3

And I said, Hear, I *pray* **beseech** you,

MICAH 1—3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

O settler of Mareshah:
 he comes to Adullam, the honor of Yisra El.
 16 Balden yourselves and shear yourselves
 for the sons of your delights:
 enlarge your baldness as the eagle
 for they exile from you.

2 Ho to them who fabricate mischief
 — who work evil on their beds!
 In the light of the morning, they work
 because it is in the el of their hand:
 and they desire fields and strip them;
 and houses, and bear them away:
 and oppress a mighty and his house
 — even a man and his inheritance.

2 So thus says Yah Veh:
 Behold, I fabricate an evil against this family
 from which you neither depart your necks
 nor go haughtily:
 for this is a time of evil.

4 In that day, one takes a proverb against you
 and laments with a lamentation of lamentations
 and says, In ravaging, we are ravaged:
 he changes the allotment of my people.
 How he removes it from me!
 In restoring, he allots our fields.

5 So you have no one to cast a cord by pebble
 in the congregation of Yah Veh:
 you drip* not; they drip:
 they drip not to you,
 they remove not shame.

*drip: as in dripping words.

7 The house of Yaaqov says,
 Becomes the spirit of Yah Veh strait?
 Are these his exploits?
 My words,
 well—please they not him who walks straight?

8 From yesterday my people rise as an enemy:
 you strip the mighty mantle with the clothes
 from them who pass by confidently
 as men returning from war:
 you expel the women of my people
 from their houses of delights;
 from their sucklings
 you take away my majesty eternally.

10 Rise and depart; for this not rest:
 because of foulness, it despoils you
 — a forceful despoiling.

11 If a man walking with spirit/wind
 and with falsehood lies, saying,
 I drip to you of wine and of intoxicants;
 he drips to this people.

YAH VEH GATHERS THE SURVIVORS OF YISRA EL

12 In gathering, I gather Yaaqov — all of you;
 in gathering, I gather the survivors of Yisra El;
 I set them together as the flock of the fold;
 as the drove among their fold:
 they quake because of humanity.

13 The separator ascends at their face:
 they separate and pass through the portal;
 yes, they go through it:
 and their sovereign passes at their face,
 and Yah Veh at their head.

THE WORD OF YAH VEH TO YAAQOV AND YISRA EL

3 And I say, Hear, I beseech you,

MICAH 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

O heads of Jacob **Yaaqov**,
and ye *princes* **commanders**
of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
Is it not for you to know judgment?
2 Who hate the good, and love the evil;
who *pluck off* **strip** their skin from off them,
and their flesh from off their bones;
3 Who also eat the flesh of my people,
and *flay* **strip** their skin from off them;
and they break their bones,
and *chop* **spread** them *in pieces*,
as for the *pot* **caldron**, and as flesh within the caldron.
4 Then shall they cry unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
but he *will* **shall** not *hear* **answer** them:
he *will* **shall** even hide his face from them at that time,
as they have *behaved* **vilified** *themselves ill*
in their *doings* **exploits**.
5 Thus saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh** concerning the prophets
that *make* **cause** my people *err to* **stray**,
that bite with their teeth, and *cry* **call out**, *Peace* **Shalom**;
and he that *putteth* **giveth** not into their mouths,
they even *prepare* **hallow** war against him.
6 Therefore night shall be unto you,
that ye shall not have a vision;
and it shall be *dark* **darkness** unto you,
that ye shall not divine;
and the sun shall go down over the prophets,
and the day shall be *dark* **darkened** over them.
7 Then shall the seers *be* **ashamed** **shame**,
and the diviners *confounded* **blush**:
yea, they shall all cover their *lips* **upper lip**;
for there is no answer of *God* **Elohim**.
8 But *truly* I am *full* **filled** of *power* **force**
by the spirit of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and of judgment, and of might,
to declare unto *Jacob* **Yaaqov** his *transgression* **rebellion**,
and to *Israel* **Yisra El** his sin.
9 Hear this, I *pray* **beseech** you,
ye heads of the house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and *princes* **commanders** of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that abhor judgment, and pervert all *equity* **straightness**.
10 They build up *Zion* **Siyon** with blood,
and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** with *iniquity* **wickedness**.
11 The heads *thereof* judge for *reward* **bribes**,
and the priests *thereof* teach for *hire* **price**,
and the prophets *thereof* divine for *money* **silver**:
yet *will* **shall** they lean upon the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and *say* **saying**, Is not the *LORD* **Yah Veh** among us?
12 none evil can come upon us.
Therefore shall *Zion* **Siyon** for your sake
be plowed as a field,
and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** shall become heaps,
and the mountain of the house
as the *high places* **bamahs** of the forest.

THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF THE FINAL DAYS

4 But in the *last* **final** days **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
that the mountain of the house of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall be established in the top of the mountains,
and it shall be *exalted* **lifted** above the hills;
and people shall flow unto it.
2 And many *nations* **goyim** shall come,
and say, Come, and let us *go up* **ascend**
to the mountain of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and to the house of the *God* **Elohim** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**;
and he *will* **shall** teach us of his ways,
and we *will* **shall** walk in his paths:
for the *law* **torah** shall go forth of *Zion* **Siyon**,
and the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
3 And he shall judge among many people,
and *rebuke strong nations* **reprove mighty goyim** afar off;
and they shall *beat* **forge** their swords into plowshares,
and their spears into *pruninghooks* **psalmpicks**:
nation **goyim** shall not lift up a sword
against *nation* **goyim**,
neither shall they learn war any more.
4 But they shall sit every man
under his vine and under his fig tree;

MICHAH 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

O heads of Yaaqov
and you commanders of the house of Yisra El;
Is it not for you to know judgment?
2 — Who hate the good and love the evil?
Who strip their skin from off them
and their flesh from off their bones?
3 Who eat the flesh of my people?

They strip their skin
and they break their bones;
and spread them as for the caldron
and as flesh within the caldron.
4 Then they cry to Yah Veh,
and he answers them not:
he even hides his face from them at that time,
as they vilify in their exploits.
5 Thus says Yah Veh
concerning the prophets who stray my people
— who bite with their teeth
and call out, Shalom;
who give not into their mouths,
and hallow war against him.
6 So your night *is without* a vision
and darkness *without* a divination:
and the sun goes down over the prophets
and the day darkens over them:
7 and the seers shame and the diviners blush:
yes, they all cover their upper lip;
for there is no answer, O Elohim.
8 And I *am* filled of force by the spirit of Yah Veh;
and of judgment and of might
to declare to Yaaqov his rebellion
and to Yisra El his sin.
9 Hear this, I beseech you,
you heads of the house of Yaaqov
and commanders of the house of Yisra El
— who abhor judgment and pervert all straightness
10 — who build Siyon with blood
and Yeru Shalem with wickedness.
11 The heads judge for a bribe
and the priests teach for a price,
and the prophets divine for silver:
yet they lean on Yah Veh, saying,
Is not Yah Veh among us?
Evil approaches us not!
12 So because of you
Siyon *is* plowed as a field
and Yeru Shalem becomes heaps;
and the mountain of the house
as the bamahs of the forest.

THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF THE FINAL DAYS

4 And so be it, in the final days,
the mountain of the house of Yah Veh
is established in the top of the mountains
and lifted above the hills;
and people flow into it.
2 And many goyim come, and say, Come!
Ascend to the mountain of Yah Veh
and to the house of Elohim of Yaaqov;
and he teaches us of his ways
and we walk in his paths:
for from Siyon comes a torah
and the word of Yah Veh from Yeru Shalem:
3 and he judges among many people
and reproves mighty goyim afar off:
and they forge their swords into plowshares
and their spears into psalmpicks:
goyim neither lift a sword against goyim
nor learn war any more:
4 and every man sits under his vine and under his fig tree;

MICAH 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and none shall make them *afraid* **tremble**:
for the mouth of *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
hath *spoken it* **worded**.
5 For all people *will* **shall** walk
every *one* **man** in the name of his *god* **elohim**,
and we *will* **shall** walk
in the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**
for ever **eternally** and ever **eternally**.
6 In that day,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
will I assemble her **shall I gather those** that *halteth* **limp**,
and I *will* **shall** gather her that *is driven out* **the expelled**,
and her *those* that I have *afflicted* **vilified**;
7 And I *will* make her **shall set those** that *halted* **limp**
a *remnant* **survivor**,
and her *those* that *was* **were** cast far off
a *strong nation* **mighty goyim**:
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall reign over them
in mount *Zion* **Siyon** from henceforth,
even for ever **eternally**.
8 And thou, O *tower of the flock* **Migdal Eder**,
the *strong hold* **mound** of the daughter of *Zion* **Siyon**,
unto thee shall it come, even the first *dominion* **reign**;
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
shall come to the daughter of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
9 Now why dost thou *cry out aloud* **shout a shout**?
is there no *king* **sovereign** in thee?
is thy counsellor *perished* **destroyed**?
for pangs *have taken* **hold** thee
as a woman *in travail* **birthing**.
10 *Be in pain* **Writhe**, and *labour to bring forth* **birth**,
O daughter of *Zion* **Siyon**,
like a woman *in travail* **birthing**:
for now shalt thou go forth out of the city,
and thou shalt *dwell* **tabernacle** in the field,
and thou shalt go *even to* **Babylon Babel**;
there shalt thou be *delivered* **rescued**;
there *the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall redeem thee
from the *hand* **palm** of thine enemies.
11 Now also
many *nations* **goyim** are gathered against thee,
that say, Let her be *defiled* **profaned**,
and let our eye *look* **see** upon *Zion* **Siyon**.
12 But they know not
the *thoughts* **fabrications** of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
neither *understand* **discern** they his counsel:
for he shall gather them
as the *sheaves* **omers** into the *floor* **threshingfloor**.
13 Arise and thresh, O daughter of *Zion* **Siyon**:
for I *will* make **shall set** thine horn iron,
and I *will* make **shall set** thy hoofs *brass* **copper**:
and thou shalt *beat in pieces* **pulverize** many people:
and I *will* **consecrate** **shall devote** their **greedy** gain
unto the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and their *substance* **valuables**
unto the *Lord* **Adonay** of the whole earth.

THE BIRTH OF THE ETERNAL DOMINATOR

5 Now *gather thyself in troops* **troop together**,
O daughter of troops:
he hath *laid set* siege against us:
they shall smite the judge of *Israel* **Yisra El**
with a *rod* **scion** upon the cheek.
2 But thou, *Bethlehem Ephratah* **Beth Lechem Ephrath**,
though thou be
little among the thousands of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me
that is to be *ruler* **sovereign** in *Israel* **Yisra El**;
whose *goings forth* **proceedings**
have been from *of old* **antiquity**,
from *everlasting* **days eternal**.
3 Therefore *will* **shall** he give them up,
until the time that she which *travaieth* **birtheth**
hath *brought forth* **birthed**:
then the remnant of his brethren
shall return unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
4 And he shall stand and *feed* **tend**
in the strength of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,
in the *majesty* **pomp**
of the name of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** his *God* **Elohim**;

MICAH 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and no one trembles them:
for the mouth of Yah Veh Sabaoth has worded.
5 For all people
— every man walks in the name of his elohim,
and we walk in the name of Yah Veh our Elohim
eternally and eternally.
6 In that day,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
I gather the limping and I gather the expelled
and those whom I vilified;
7 and I set the limping, a survivor;
and the cast off, a mighty goyim:
and Yah Veh reigns over them in mount Siyon
from now on — even eternally.
8 And you, O Migdal Eder,
the mound of the daughter of Siyon,
to you it comes — even the first reign;
the sovereignty comes
to the daughter of Yeru Shalem.
9 Now, why shout you a shout?
Is there no sovereign in you?
Is your counsellor destroyed?
For pangs hold you as a woman birthing.
10 Writhe, and birth, O daughter of Siyon,
as a woman birthing:
for now you go from the city
and you tabernacle in the field
and you go to Babel — there to be rescued:
there Yah Veh redeems you
from the palm of your enemies.
11 And now, many goyim gather against you,
who say, She profanes!
— but our eye sees on Siyon.
12 They neither know the fabrications of Yah Veh
nor discern his counsel:
for he gathers them as the omers
into the threshingfloor.
13 Rise and thresh, O daughter of Siyon:
for I set your horn iron
and I set your hoofs copper;
and you pulverize many people:
and I devote their greedy gain to Yah Veh,
and their valuables to the Adonay of the whole earth.

THE BIRTH OF THE ETERNAL DOMINATOR

5 Now, troop together, O daughter of troops:
he sets a siege against us:
with a scion on the cheek
they smite the judge of Yisra El.
2 But you, Beth Lechem Ephrath,
being little among the thousands of Yah Hudah,
from you he comes to me
to become sovereign in Yisra El;
whose proceedings are from antiquity
— from days eternal.
3 So he gives them up,
until the time that she who is to birth, births:
and the remnant of his brothers
returns to the sons of Yisra El:
4 and he stands and tends in the strength of Yah Veh
in the pomp of the name of Yah Veh his Elohim:

MICAH 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and they shall **abide settle**:
for now shall he *be great* **greaten**
unto the *ends* **finalities** of the earth.
5 And this *man* shall be the *peace* **shalom**,
when the *Assyrian* **Ashshuriy** shall come into our land:
and when he shall tread in our *palaces* **citadels**,
then shall we raise against him seven *shepherds* **tenders**,
and eight *principal men* **libated of humanity**.
6 And they shall *waste* **tend**
the land of *Assyria* **Ashshur** with the sword,
and the land of Nimrod
in the *entrances* **openings** thereof:
thus shall he *deliver* **rescue** us
from the *Assyrian* **Ashshuri**,
when he cometh into our land,
and when he treadeth within our borders.
7 And the *remnant* **survivors** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
shall be in the midst of many people
as a dew from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
as the showers upon the *grass* **herbage**,
that *tarrieth* **awaiteth** not for man,
nor waiteth for the sons of *men* **humanity**.
8 And the remnant of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
shall be among the *Gentiles* **goyim**
in the midst of many people
as a lion among the *beasts* **animals** of the forest,
as a *young lion* **whelp**
among the *flocks* **droves** of *sheep* **flocks**:
who, if he *go* **pass** through,
both *treadeth down* **trampleth**, and teareth in pieces,
and none *can deliver* **rescueth**.
9 Thine hand shall be lifted up
upon *thine adversaries* **thy tribulators**,
and all thine enemies shall be cut off.
10 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that I *will* **shall** cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee,
and I *will* **shall** destroy thy chariots:
11 And I *will* **shall** cut off the cities of thy land,
and *throw down* **demolish** all thy *strong holds* **fortresses**:
12 And I *will* **shall** cut off *witchcrafts* **sorceries**
out of thine hand;
and thou shalt have no *more soothsayers* **cloudgazers**:
13 Thy *graven images* **sculptiles** also *will* **shall** I cut off,
and thy *standing images* **monoliths**
out of the midst of thee;
and thou shalt no more
worship **prostrate to** the work of thine hands.
14 And I *will pluck up* **shall uproot** thy *groves* **asherah**
out of the midst of thee:
so *will I* **destroy** **shall I desolate** thy cities.
15 And I *will execute* **vengeance** **shall work** **avengement**
in *anger* **wrath** and fury upon the *heathen* **goyim**,
such as they have not heard.

THE CONTROVERSY OF YAH VEH WITH YISRA EL

6 Hear ye *now* **I beseech**, what the *LORD* **Yah Veh** saith;
Arise, contend thou before the mountains,
and let the hills hear thy voice.
2 Hear ye, O mountains,
the *LORD'S* controversy **of Yah Veh**,
and ye *strong* **perennial** foundations of the earth:
for the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath a controversy with his people,
and he *will plead with Israel* **shall reprove** **Yisra El**.
3 O my people, what have I *done* **worked** unto thee?
and wherein have I wearied thee?
testify **answer** against me.
4 For I *brought* **ascended** thee up
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and redeemed thee out of the house of servants;
and I sent *before thee* **ere thy face**
Moses **Mosheh**, *Aaron* **Aharon**, and *Miriam* **Miryam**.
5 O my people, remember *now* **I beseech**,
what *Balak king* **Balaq sovereign** of Moab
consulted **counselled**,
and what Balaam the son of Beor answered him
from Shittim unto Gilgal;
that ye may know
the *righteousness* **justness** of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.

MICHAH 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and there they settle:
for now he greatens to the finalities of the earth:
5 and thus is this one of shalom.
And when the Ashshuriy come into our land
— when he treads in our citadels,
then we raise seven tenders against him,
and eight libated humans:
6 and they tend the land of Ashshur with the sword,
and the land of Nimrod in the openings:
thus he rescues us from the Ashshuri
when he comes into our land
and when he treads within our borders.
7 And so be the survivors of Yaaqov
among many people
— as dew from Yah Veh
— as the showers on the herbage,
who neither awaits man
nor awaits the sons of humanity.
8 And so be the remnant of Yaaqov among the goyim
among many people
— as a lion among the animals of the forest
— as a whelp among the droves of flocks:
who, if he passes through, both tramples and tears;
and no one rescues.
9 Lifted *is* your hand over your tribulators,
and all your enemies cut off.
10 And so be it, in that day,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
that I cut off your horses from your midst
and I destroy your chariots:
11 and I cut off the cities of your land
and demolish all your fortresses:
12 and I cut off sorceries from your hand
so that you have no cloudgazers:
13 and I cut off your sculptiles and your monoliths
from your midst;
and you prostrate no more to the work of your hands:
14 and I uproot your asherah from your midst
thus I desolate your cities:
15 and in wrath and fury
I work avengement on the goyim
such as they never heard.

THE CONTROVERSY OF YAH VEH WITH YISRA EL

6 Hear, I beseech, what Yah Veh says;
Rise! Contend in front of the mountains
so that the hills hear your voice.
2 Hear the controversy of Yah Veh,
O mountains,
and you perennial foundations of the earth:
for Yah Veh has a controversy with his people
and he reproves Yisra El.
3 O my people, what work I to you?
And wherein weary I you?
Answer against me.
4 For I ascended you from the land of Misrayim
and redeemed you from the house of servants;
and ere your face
I sent Mosheh, Aharon, and Miryam.
5 O my people, remember, I beseech,
what Balaq sovereign of Moab counselled
and what Balaam the son of Beor answered him
from Shittim to Gilgal;
so that you know the justness of Yah Veh.

MICAH 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

6 Wherewith shall I *come before the LORD* **confront Yah Veh**,
and bow myself *before in front of* the high *God Elohim*?
shall I *come before* **confront** him
with *burnt offerings* **holocausts**,
with *calves of a year old* **yearling sons**?
7 Will the *LORD* **Shall Yah Veh** be pleased
with thousands of rams,
or with *ten thousands* **myriads of rivers wadies** of oil?
shall I give my *firstborn* **birbirtthed**
for my *transgression* **rebellion**,
the fruit of my *body* **belly** for the sin of my soul?
8 He hath *shewed* **told** thee, O *man* **humanity**,
what is good;
and what doth *the LORD* **Yah Veh** require of thee,
but to *do justly* **work judgment**, and to love mercy,
and to walk humbly with thy *God* **Elohim**?
9 *The LORD'S* **Yah Veh's** voice
crieth calleth out unto the city,
and the *man of wisdom* **counsellor** shall see thy name:
hear ye the rod, and who hath *appointed* **congregated** it.
10 Are there yet the treasures of wickedness
in the house of the wicked,
and the *scant measure* **emaciated ephah**
that is *abominable* **enrageth**?
11 Shall I *count them pure* **purify them**
with the wicked balances,
and with the *bag* **pouch** of deceitful *weights* **stones**?
12 For the rich *men thereof* are *full* **filled** of violence,
and the *inhabitants* **settlers thereof**
have spoken *lies* **falsehoods**,
and their tongue is deceitful in their mouth.
13 Therefore also
will I make thee sick **shall I stroke thee** in smiting thee,
in *making* **desolating** thee *desolate* because of thy sins.
14 Thou shalt eat, but not be *satisfied* **satiated**;
and thy *casting down* **hunger**
shall be in the midst of thee;
and thou shalt *take hold* **remove**,
but shalt not *deliver* **escape**;
and that which *thou deliverest* **escapeth**
will **shall** I give up to the sword.
15 Thou shalt *sow* **seed**, but thou shalt not *reap* **harvest**;
thou shalt tread the olives,
but thou shalt not anoint thee with oil;
and *sweet wine* **juice**, but shalt not drink wine.
16 For the statutes of Omri are *kept* **guarded**,
and all the works of the house of *Ahab* **Ach Ab**,
and ye walk in their counsels;
that I should *make* **give** thee a desolation,
and the *inhabitants* **settlers thereof** an hissing:
therefore ye shall bear the reproach of my people.

WOE IS YISRA EL

7 Woe is me!
for I am as *when they have gathered* **the ingathering**
of the summer fruits,
as the *grapegleanings* **gleanings** of the *vintage* **crop**:
there is no cluster to eat:
my soul desired the *firstripe* **firstling** fruit.
2 The *good man* **merciful**
is *perished* **destructed** out of the earth:
and there is none *upright* **straight** among *men* **humanity**:
they all *lie in wait* **lurk** for blood;
they hunt every man his brother with a net.
3 That they may do evil
with both *hands earnestly* **palms well—pleasingly**,
the *prince* **governor** asketh,
and the judge *asketh for a reward* **for satisfaction**;
and the great *man*,
he uttereth his mischievous desire
wordeth the mischief of his soul:
so they *wrap* **pervert** it up.
4 The best of them is as a *brier* **thorn**:
the most upright is sharper
straighter than a thorn hedge:
the day of thy *watchmen* **watchers** and thy visitation
cometh;
now shall be their perplexity.
5 Trust ye not in a friend,
put **confide** ye not *confidence* in a *guide* **chiliarch**:

MICAH 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

6 With what confront I Yah Veh?
And bow myself in front of the high Elohim?
Confront I him with holocausts?
With yearling sons?
7 Please Yah Veh with thousands of rams?
With myriads of wadies of oil?
Give I my firstbirthed for my rebellion
— the fruit of my belly for the sin of my soul?
8 He tells you, O humanity, what is good.
And what requires Yah Veh of you
— except to work judgment and to love mercy
and to walk humbly with your Elohim?
9 The voice of Yah Veh calls to the city,
and the counsellor sees your name:
Hear the rod; and he who congregates it.
10 Are there yet treasures of wickedness
in the house of the wicked?
And the emaciated ephah that enrages?
11 Purify I them with balances of wickedness?
And with the pouch of stones of deceit?
12 — whose the rich are filled of violence
and the settlers speak falsehoods;
and their tongue is deceitful in their mouth?
13 And I also, in smiting you, I stroke you
— desolate you because of your sins.
14 You eat, and satiate not;
and hunger is among you;
and you remove, but escape not;
and whatever escapes, I give to the sword.
15 You — you seed, and you harvest not;
you — you tread the olive,
and you anoint not with oil;
and juice, and you drink not the wine.
16 And you guard the statutes of Omri
and all the works of the house of Ach Ab;
and you walk in their counsels:
and I give you for a desolation,
and the settlers for a hissing:
and you bear the reproach of my people.

WOE IS YISRA EL

7 Woe is me!
As the ingathering of the summer fruits;
as the gleanings of the crop;
there is no cluster to eat:
my soul desires the firstling fruit:
the merciful destruct from the earth;
and no one among humanity is straight:
they all lurk for blood;
every man hunts his brother with a net
to do evil with both palms well—pleasingly,
the governor and the judge ask for satisfaction;
and the great words of the mischief of his soul:
thus they pervert.
4 Their best is as a thorn;
straighter than a thorn hedge:
the day of your watchers and your visitation comes
— now their perplexity.
5 Neither trust in a friend nor confide in a chiliarch:

MICAH 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 keep **guard** the *doors opening* of thy mouth
from her that lieth in thy bosom.
For the son *dishonoureth* **disgraceth** the father,
the daughter riseth *up* against her mother,
the daughter in law against her mother in law;
a man's enemies are the men of his own house.

THE SURVIVORS IN THE FINAL DAYS

7 Therefore
I will look **shall watch** unto the *LORD Yah Veh*;
I will wait for the *God* **shall await Elohim**
of my salvation:
my *God* will **Elohim shall** hear me.
8 Rejoice **Cheer** not against me, O mine enemy:
when I fall, I shall arise;
when I sit in darkness,
the *LORD Yah Veh* shall be a light unto me.
9 I will **shall** bear the *indignation rage*
of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
because I have sinned against him,
until he plead my *cause* **plea**,
and *execute* **work** judgment for me:
he will **shall** bring me forth to the light,
and I shall *behold* **see** his *righteousness* **justness**.
10 Then *she that is* mine enemy shall see *it*,
and shame shall cover her which said unto me,
Where is the *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God* **Elohim**?
mine eyes shall *behold* **see** her:
now shall she be *trodden down* **trampled**
as the mire of the *streets* **outways**.
11 In the day that thy walls are to be built,
in that day shall the *decree* **statute** be far removed.
12 In that day *also*
he shall come even to thee from *Assyria* **Ashshur**,
and from the *fortified* **cities of siege**,
and from the *fortress* **siege** even to the river,
and from sea to sea, and from mountain to mountain.
13 Notwithstanding the land shall be desolate
because of them that *dwell* **settle** therein,
for the fruit of their *doings* **exploits**.
14 Feed **Tend** thy people with thy *rod* **scion**,
the flock of thine *heritage* **inheritance**,
which *dwell* **solitarily** **tabernacle alone**
in the *wood* **forest**,
in the midst of *Carmel* **Karmel/orchard**:
let them *feed* **graze** in Bashan and *Gilead* **Gilad**,
as in the **original** days of *old*.
15 According to the days
of thy coming out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
will I *shew* unto him *marvellous things*
shall I have him see marvels.
16 The *nations* **goyim** shall see
and be *confounded* **shamed** at all their might:
they shall *lay* **set** their hand upon their mouth,
their ears shall be *deaf* **deafen**.
17 They shall lick the dust like a serpent,
they shall *move* **quiver** out of their *holes* **strongholds**
like *worms* **creepers** of the earth:
they shall be *afraid* **fear**
of the *LORD Yah Veh* our *God* **Elohim**,
and shall *fear* **awe** because of thee.
18 Who is a *God* **an El** like unto thee,
that *pardoneth iniquity* **beareth perversity**,
and passeth by the *transgression* **rebellion**
of the *remnant* **survivors** of his *heritage* **inheritance**?
he *retaineth* **holdeth** not his *anger* **wrath**
for ever **eternally**,
because he delighteth in *mercy*.
19 He will **shall** turn again,
he will *have compassion upon* **shall mercy** us;
he will **shall** subdue our *iniquities* **perversities**;
and thou wilt **shalt** cast all their sins
into the *depths* **deep** of the sea.
20 Thou wilt *perform* **shalt give** the truth to *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and the mercy to Abraham,
which thou hast *sworn* **oathed** unto our fathers
from the days of *old* **antiquity**.

MICAH 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

guard the opening of your mouth
from her who lies in your bosom:
6 for son disgraces father;
daughter rises against her mother;
the daughter in law against her mother in law;
the enemies of a man are the men of his own house.

THE SURVIVORS IN THE FINAL DAYS

7 And I — I watch to Yah Veh;
I await Elohim of my salvation:
my Elohim hears me.
8 Cheer not against me, O my enemy:
when I fall, I rise;
when I sit in darkness Yah Veh is my light.
9 I bear the rage of Yah Veh
because I sinned against him;
until he pleads my plea
and works my judgment:
he brings me to the light and I see his justness.
10 And my enemy sees;
and shame covers her who says to me,
Where is Yah Veh your Elohim?
My eyes see her:
now she becomes for trampling
as the mire of the outways.
11 In the day to build your walls
— in that day the statute is far removed:
12 — in that day he even comes to you
from Ashshur and from the cities of siege
— the siege even to the river
and from sea to sea and mountain to mountain:
13 and the land becomes desolate
because of them who settle therein
— for the fruit of their exploits.
14 Tend your people with your scion
— the flock of your inheritance
who tabernacle alone in the forest
midst Karmel/orchard:
they graze in Bashan and Gilad
as in the original days.
15 According to the days
of your coming from the land of Misrayim
I have him see marvels.
16 The goyim see and shame at all their might:
they set their hand on their mouth;
— deafen their ears:
17 they lick the dust as a serpent;
they quiver from their strongholds
as creepers of the earth:
they fear Yah Veh our Elohim
and awe because of you.
18 Who is an El like to you,
who bears perversity,
and passes by the rebellion
of the survivors of his inheritance?
he holds not his wrath eternally
because he delights mercy.
19 He restores; he mercies us:
he subdues our perversities.
20 You cast all their sins into the deep of the sea;
You give truth to Yaaqov; mercy to Abraham
— which you oathed to our fathers
from the days of antiquity.

NAHUM 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE BURDEN OF NINEVEH

1 The burden of Nineveh.
The book **scroll** of the vision
of Nahum **Nachum** the **Elkoshite Elqoshiy**.
2 God **El** is jealous,
and the **LORD** **revenge**th **Yah Veh** **avengeth**;
the **LORD** **revenge**th **Yah Veh** **avengeth**,
and is **furious** a **master of fury**;
the **LORD** will **take vengeance** on **Yah Veh** **shall avenge**
his **adversaries** **tribulators**,
and he **reserveth wrath** **guardeth** for his enemies.
3 The **LORD** **Yah Veh** is slow to **anger** **wrath**,
and great in **power** **force**,
and in **exonerating**,
will **shall** not at all **acquit the wicked** **exonerate**:
the **LORD** **Yah Veh** hath his way
in the **whirlwind** **hurricane** and in the **storm** **whirling**,
and the clouds are the dust of his feet.
4 He rebuketh the sea, and **maketh it dry** **withereth**,
and drieth up all the rivers:
Bashan languisheth, and **Carmel** **Karmel/orchard**,
and the **flower** **blossom** of Lebanon languisheth.
5 The mountains quake at him, and the hills melt,
and the earth is **burned** **lifted** at his **presence** **face**,
yea, the world, and all that **dwelt** **settle** therein.
6 Who can stand
before **at the face** of his **indignation** **rage**?
and who **can abide** **rise**
in the **fierceness** **fuming** of his **anger** **wrath**?
his fury is poured out like fire,
and the rocks are **thrown** **pulled** down by him.
7 The **LORD** **Yah Veh** is good,
a **strong hold** **strength** in the day of **trouble** **tribulation**;
and he knoweth them that **trust** **seek** **refuge** in him.
8 But with an **overrunning** **flood** **overpassing** **overflowing**
he will **make an utter end** **shall work a final finish**
of the place **thereof**,
and darkness shall pursue his enemies.
9 What do ye **imagine** **fabricate**
against the **LORD** **Yah Veh**?
he will **make an full end** **shall work a final finish**:
affliction **tribulation** shall not rise up the second time.
10 For while they be **folden** **together** **entwined** as thorns,
and while they are **drunken** **carouse** as **drunkards** **carousers**,
they shall be **devoured** **consumed** as stubble fully dry.
11 There is one come out of thee,
that **imagineth** **fabricateth** evil against the **LORD** **Yah Veh**,
a **wicked** **counsellor** **counsellor** of **Beli** **Yaal**.
12 Thus saith the **LORD** **Yah Veh**;
Though they be **quiet** **at shalom**, and likewise many,
yet thus shall they be **cut** **down** **shorn**,
when he shall pass through.
Though I have **afflicted** **humbled** thee,
I will **afflict** **shall humble** thee no more.
13 For now will **shall** I break his yoke **pole** from off thee,
and will **burst** **shall tear** thy bonds **in sunder**.
14 And the **LORD** **Yah Veh**
hath **given a commandment** **misvahed** concerning thee,
that no more of thy name be **sown** **seeded**:
out of the house of thy **gods** **elohim**
will **shall** I cut off
the **graven** **image** **sculptile** and the **molten** **image**:
I will **make** **shall set** thy **grave** **tomb**;
for thou art **vile** **abased**.
15 Behold upon the mountains
the feet of him that **bringeth** **good tidings** **evangelizeth**,
that **publisheth** **peace** **hearkeneth** **shalom**!
O **Judah** **Yah** **Hudah**,
keep **celebrate** thy **solemn** **feasts** **celebrations**,
perform **shalam** thy **vows**:
for the **wicked** **Beli** **Yaal**
shall **no more** **not add** to pass through thee;
he is utterly cut off.

THE FALL OF NINEVEH

2 He that **dasheth** **in pieces** **shattereth**
is **come up** **before** **ascended** **in front** of thy face:
keep **guard** the **munition** **rampart**, watch the way,
make **strengthen** thy loins **strong**,
fortify **strengthen** thy power mightily.

NACHUM 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE BURDEN OF NINEVEH

1 The burden of Nineveh:
The scroll of the vision of Nachum the Elqoshiy.
2 El is jealous and Yah Veh avenges;
Yah Veh avenges and is a master of fury:
Yah Veh avenges his tribulators
and he guards for his enemies:
3 Yah Veh is slow to wrath and great in force;
and in exonerating, Yah Veh exonerates not:
his way is in the hurricane and in the whirling
and clouds are the dust of his feet:
4 he rebukes the sea
and withers and dries all the rivers:
Bashan and Karmel/orchard languish;
and the blossom of Lebanon languishes:
5 the mountains quake at him and the hills melt
and the earth lifts at his face
— yes, the world and all who settle therein.
6 Who stands at the face of his rage?
And who rises in the fuming of his wrath?
He pours his fury as fire
and pulls down the rocks.
7 Yah Veh is good,
a strength in the day of tribulation;
and he knows them who seek refuge in him.
8 And with an overpassing overflowing
he works a final finish of the place;
and darkness pursues his enemies.
9 What fabricate you against Yah Veh?
He works a final finish:
tribulation rises not secondly.
10 For while they entwine as thorns,
and while they carouse as carousers,
they are consumed as stubble fully dry.
11 From you
comes one who fabricates evil against Yah Veh
— a counsellor of Beli Yaal.
12 Thus says Yah Veh:
Though at shalom, and thus so many,
yet thus they are shorn when he passes through.
Though I humbled you, I humble you no more.
13 And now I break his yoke pole upon you,
and tear away your bonds:
and Yah Veh misvahs concerning you,
that your name is seeded no more:
from the house of your elohim
I cut off the sculptile and the molten:
I set your tomb; for you are abased.
15 Behold, on the mountains
the feet of him who evangelizes,
who hearkens, Shalom!
O Yah Hudah, celebrate your celebrations!
Shalam your vows!
for Beli Yaal adds not to pass through you;
he is utterly cut off.

THE FALL OF NINEVEH

2 He who shatters ascends in front of your face:
guard the rampart; watch the way;
strengthen your loins;
strengthen your power mightily:

NAHUM 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 For the LORD **Yah Veh** hath turned away
the excellency **pomp** of **Jacob Yaaqov**,
as the excellency **pomp** of **Israel Yisra El**:
for the emptiers **evacuators**
have emptied **evacuated** them out,
and **marred ruined** their vine **branches twigs**.
3 The **shield buckler** of his mighty men
is made red **reddened**,
the valiant men are in **dyed** scarlet:
the chariots shall be **fiery**
with **flaming torches cleavers of fire**
in the day of his preparation,
and the fir trees shall be **terribly** shaken.
4 The chariots shall **rage halal** in the **streets outways**,
they shall **jostle one against another** **prowl** in the broad ways:
they shall seem like torches their visage as flambeaus,
they shall run like the lightnings.
5 He shall **recount remember** his **worthies mighty**:
they shall **stumble falter** in their **walk way**;
they shall make haste to the wall **thereof**,
and the **defence covering** shall be prepared.
6 The gates of the rivers shall be opened,
and the **palace manse** shall be **dissolved melted**.
7 And **Huzzab it is set**:
she shall be **led away captive exiled/exposed**,
she shall be **brought up ascended**,
and her maids shall **lead drive** her
as with the voice of doves,
tabering tambourining upon their **breasts hearts**.
8 But Nineveh is of **old days** like a pool of water:
yet they shall flee away.
Stand, stand, **shall they cry**; but none shall look back.
9 Take **Plunder** ye the **spoil of silver**,
take **plunder** the **spoil of gold**:
for there is none end of the **store structure** and **glory honour**
out of all the **pleasant furniture vessels of desire**.
10 She is empty, and void, and waste **wasted**:
and the heart melteth, and the knees **smite together knock**,
and much pain is in all loins,
and the faces of them all gather **blackness flushness**.
11 Where is the **dwelling habitation** of the lions,
and the **feedingplace pasture** of the **young lions whelps**,
where the lion, **even the old roaring** lion, walked,
and the lion's whelp,
and none made **trembleth** them **afraid**?
12 The lion did tear in pieces enough for his whelps,
and strangled for his lionesses,
and filled his holes with prey,
and his **dens habitations** with **ravin prey**.
13 Behold, I am against thee,
saith the LORD of hosts an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth,
and I **will shall** burn her chariots in the smoke,
and the sword shall **devour consume** thy **young lions whelps**:
and I **will shall** cut off thy prey from the earth,
and the voice of thy **messengers angels**
shall no more be heard.

HO TO NINEVEH

3 Woe **Ho** to the bloody city!
it is all full of **lies deceptions** and **robbery tyranny**;
the prey departeth not;
2 The **noise voice** of a whip,
and the **noise voice**
of the **rattling quake** of the **wheels a wheel**,
and of the prancing horses,
and of the **jumping dancing** chariots.
3 The horseman **lifteth up ascendeth** both
the **bright flame of the sword**
and the **glittering lightning** spear:
and there is a **multitude an abundance** of **slain pierced**,
and a **great number the heaviness** of carcasses;
and there is none end of their corpses;
they **stumble falter** upon their corpses:
4 Because of the multitude of the whoredoms
of the **wellfavoured harlot whore of good charism**,
the **mistress baalah** of **witchcrafts sorceries**,
that selleth **nations goyim** through her whoredoms,
and families through her **witchcrafts sorceries**.

NACHUM 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 for Yah Veh turns away the pomp of Yaaqov
as the pomp of Yisra El:
for the evacuators evacuate them
and ruin their vine twigs:
3 the buckler of his mighty redden;
the valiant men are in dyed scarlet:
and fiery chariots with cleavers of fire
in the day of his preparation;
and the fir trees shake.
4 The chariots halal in the outways;
they prowl in the broadways:
their visage as flambeaus;
they run as the lightnings.
5 He remembers his mighty;
they falter in their walk;
they hasten to the wall
and prepare the covering:
the gates of the rivers open
and the manse melts.
6 And it is set:
she is exiled/exposed;
she ascends;
and her maids drive her as with the voice of doves
tambourining on their hearts.
7 And Nineveh is as a pool of water from days ago:
yet they flee.
Stand! Stand! And no one looks back.
8 Plunder the silver; plunder the gold:
for there is no end of the structure and honor
of all the vessels of desire;
she is empty and void and wasted:
and the heart melts and the knees knock
and much pain in all loins;
and all their faces gather flushness.
9 Where is the habitation of the lions?
And the pasture of the whelps?
Where walks the lion? The roaring lion?
And the whelp of the lion?
And no one trembles?
10 The lion tears enough pieces for his whelps
and strangles for his lionesses;
and fills his holes with prey
and his habitations with prey.
11 Behold, I **am** against you
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
and I burn her chariots in the smoke
and the sword consumes your whelps:
and I cut off your prey from the earth
and the voice of your angels **is** heard no more.

HO TO NINEVEH

3 Ho to the bloody city!
Full of deceptions and tyranny;
the prey departs not:
2 The voice of a whip
and the voice of the quake of a wheel
and of the prancing horses
and of the dancing chariots!
3 The horseman ascends both
— the flame of the sword and the lightning spear:
and there is an abundance of pierced
and the heaviness of carcasses;
and there is no end of their corpses:
they falter on their corpses.
4 Because of the multitude of the whoredoms
of the whore of good charism,
the baalah of sorceries,
who sells goyim through her whoredoms,
and families through her sorceries.

NAHUM 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 Behold, I am against thee,
saith the LORD of hosts **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
and I will discover **shall expose** thy skirts **drapings**
upon thy face,
and I will shew the nations **shall have the goyim see**
thy nakedness,
and the kingdoms **sovereigndoms**
thy shame **abasement**.
6 And I will **shall** cast
abominable filth **abominations** upon thee,
and make **wither** thee *vile*,
and will **shall** set thee as a *gazingstock* **spectacle**.
7 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
that all they that look upon **see** thee shall flee from thee,
and say, Nineveh is *laid waste* **ravaged**:
who will *bemoan* **shall wag over** her?
whence shall I seek *comforters* **sighers** for thee?
8 Art thou better **Well—pleasest thou**
more than populous No **No Ammon**,
that was *situate* **settled** among the rivers,
that had the waters round about it,
whose *rampart* **trench** was the sea,
and her wall was from the sea?
9 Ethiopia **Kush** and Egypt **Misrayim**
were her *strength* **might**,
and it was *infinite* **there was no end**;
Put and *Lubim* **Lubiym** were thy helpers.
10 Yet was she *carried away* **exiled**,
she went into captivity:
her young children **sucklings** also
were *dashed in pieces* **splattered**
at the top of all the *streets* **outways**:
and they *cast lots* **handled pebbles**
for her honourable men,
and all her great men were *bound* **chained** in chains.
11 Thou also shalt be *drunken* **intoxicated**:
thou shalt be *hid* **concealed**,
thou also shalt seek *strength* **a stronghold**
because of the enemy.
12 All thy *strong holds* **fortresses**
shall be like fig trees with the *firstripe figs* **firstlings**:
if they be shaken,
they shall *even* fall into the mouth of the eater.
13 Behold, thy people in the midst of thee are women:
the gates of thy land
in opening,
shall be *set wide open* **opened** unto thine enemies:
the fire shall *devour* **consume** thy bars.
14 Draw **Bail** thee waters for the siege,
fortify **strengthen** thy *strong holds* **fortresses**:
go into *clay mire* and tread the mortar,
make strong **strengthen** the brickkiln.
15 There shall the fire *devour* **consume** thee;
the sword shall cut thee off,
it shall eat thee *up* like the cankerworm:
make multiply thyself *many* as the cankerworm,
make multiply thyself *many* as the locusts.
16 Thou hast *multiplied* **abounded** thy merchants
above the stars of *heaven* **the heavens**:
the cankerworm *spoileth* **spreadeth**,
and *fleeth away* **flieth**.
17 Thy *crowned* **princes** are as the locusts,
and thy *captains* **officers**
as the *great grasshoppers* **grubbing grubbers**,
which *camp* **encamp** in the *hedges* **walls** in the cold day,
but when the sun ariseth they flee away,
and their place is not known where they are.
18 Thy *shepherds* **tenders** slumber,
O king **sovereign** of Assyria **Ashshur**:
thy *nobles* **mighty** shall *dwell in the dust* **tabernacle**:
thy people is scattered upon the mountains,
and *no man* **no one** gathereth *them*.
19 There is no healing of thy *bruise* **break**;
thy wound *is grievous* **worn**:
all that hear the *bruit* **report** of thee
shall clap the *hands* **palms** over thee:
for upon whom
hath not thy *wickedness* **evil** passed continually?

NACHUM 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 Behold, I *am* against you
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
and I expose your drapings on your face,
and I have the goyim see your nakedness
and the sovereigndoms your abasement:
6 and I cast abominations on you
and wither you and set you as a spectacle.
7 And so be it,
all who see you, flee from you;
and say, Nineveh is ravaged:
Who wags over her?
Where seek I sighers for you?
8 Well—please you more than No Ammon
who settles among the rivers surrounded by waters?
Whose trench *is* the sea? And the sea her wall?
9 Kush and Misrayim her might
and without end;
and Put and Lubiym your helpers.
10 Yet was she *is* exiled; she goes into captivity:
even her sucklings splatter
at the top of all the outways:
and they handle pebbles for her honorable men
and chain all her great in chains.
11 Even you intoxicate; you become concealed:
even you seek a stronghold because of the enemy.
12 All your fortresses *are* fig trees of the firstlings:
if you shake, they fall into the mouth of the devourer.
13 Behold, your people among you *are* women:
in opening,
the gates of your land open to your enemies:
the fire consumes your bars.
14 Bail waters for the siege; strengthen your fortresses:
go into mire and tread the mortar;
strengthen the brickkiln:
15 there the fire consumes you;
the sword cuts you off;
deviours you as the cankerworm:
multiply yourself as the cankerworm;
multiply yourself as the locusts.
16 You abound your merchants
above the stars of the heavens:
the cankerworm spreads and flies.
17 Your princes *are* as the locusts
and your officers as the grubbing grubbers
who encamp in the walls in the cold day;
and when the sun rises they flee,
and the place where they are is not known.
18 Your tenders slumber, O sovereign of Ashshur;
your mighty tabernacle:
your people scatter on the mountains
and no one gathers.
19 There is no healing of your breach;
your wound *is* worn:
all who hear your report
clap their palms over you:
for on whom passes not your evil continually?

HABAKKUK 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE FIRST BURDEN OF HABAKKUK

1 The burden which Habakkuk the prophet did see.
2 O LORD **Yah Veh**,
how long shall I cry, and thou *wilt shalt* not hear!
even cry out unto thee of violence,
and thou *wilt shalt* not save!
3 Why dost thou *shew me iniquity* **have me see mischief**,
and cause me to *behold grievance* **scan at toil**?
for *spoiling ravage* and violence are *before in front of* me:
and there are that *raise up lift* strife and contention.
4 Therefore the *law torah* is *slacked exhausted*,
and judgment
doth never go forth **goeth not in perpetuity**:
for the wicked
doth compass about surroundeth the *righteous just*;
therefore *wrong twisted* judgment proceedeth.

THE RESPONSE OF YAH VEH

5 *Behold See* ye among the *heathen goyim*,
and *regard look*, and *wonder marvel* marvellously:
for I *will shall* work a work in your days
which ye *will shall* not *believe trust*,
though it be *told you scribed*.
6 For, *lo behold*, I *raise up* the *Chaldeans Kesediyim*,
that bitter and hasty *nation goyim*,
which shall *march walk*
through the *breadth expanse* of the land,
to possess the *dwellingplaces tabernacles*
that are not theirs.
7 They are terrible and *dreadful awesome*:
their judgment and their *dignity exalting*
shall proceed of themselves.
8 Their horses also are swifter than the leopards,
and are *more fierce sharper* than the evening wolves:
and their *horsemen cavalry* shall spread themselves,
and their *horsemen cavalry* shall come from far;
they shall fly as the eagle that hasteth to eat.
9 They shall come all for violence:
their faces
shall *sup up as the east wind suck the easterly*,
and they shall gather the captivity as the sand.
10 And they shall *scoff at the kings ridicule sovereigns*,
and the *princes potentates*
shall be a *scorn laughingstock* unto them:
they shall *deride ridicule* every *strong hold fortress*;
for they shall heap dust, and *take capture* it.
11 Then shall his *mind spirit* change,
and he shall pass over, and *offend shall guilt*,
imputing this his power force unto his *god elohah*.

THE SECOND BURDEN OF HABAKKUK

12 Art thou not from *everlasting antiquity*,
O LORD **Yah Veh** my *God Elohim*, mine Holy One?
we shall not die.
O LORD **Yah Veh**,
thou hast *ordained set* them for judgment;
and, O *mighty God Rock*,
thou hast *established founded* them
for *correction reprovng*.
13 Thou art of purer eyes than to *behold see* evil,
and canst not look on *iniquity toil*:
wherefore lookest thou
upon them that deal *treacherously covertly*,
and *holdest thy tongue husheth* when the wicked
devoureth the man that is swallow him
that is more just righteous than he?
14 And *makest men workest humanity*
as the fishes of the sea,
as the *creeping things creepers*,
that have no *ruler sovereign* over them?
15 They *take up ascend* all of them with the *angle hook*,
they catch them in their net,
and gather them in their drag *net*:
therefore they *rejoice cheer* and are *glad twirl*.
16 Therefore they sacrifice unto their net,
and *burn incense* unto their drag *net*;
because by them their *portion allotment* is fat,
and their *meat plenteous food fattened*.
17 shall they therefore *empty drag* their net,
and not spare continually
to *slay slaughter* the *nations goyim*?

HABAKKUK 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE FIRST BURDEN OF HABAKKUK

1 The burden Habakkuk the prophet sees:
2 O Yah Veh, how long cry I, and you hear not!
— even cry out to you of violence, and you save not?
3 Why show me mischief,
and have me to scan at toil?
With ravage and violence in front of me?
And strife and contention lifting themselves?
4 So the torah *is* exhausted
and judgment goes not in perpetuity:
for the wicked surround the just;
so twisted judgment proceeds.

THE RESPONSE OF YAH VEH

5 See among the goyim and look;
and marvel marvellously:
for he works a work in your days which you trust not
though it *is* scribed.
6 For, behold, I raise the Kesediyim,
that bitter and hasty goyim,
to walk through the expanse of the land;
to possess the tabernacles which *are* not theirs:
— terrible and awesome:
their judgment and their exalting
proceeds from themselves:
8 with horses swifter than leopards
and sharper than the evening wolves:
and their cavalry spread themselves
and their cavalry comes from afar;
they fly as the eagle hastening to devour:
9 they all come for violence;
their faces suck the easterly
and they gather the captivity as the sand.
10 And they ridicule sovereigns,
and potentates *are* their laughingstock:
they ridicule every fortress;
for they heap dust and capture it.
11 Then his spirit passes on and he passes over;
yes, he guilts
his force *is* unto his elohah.

THE SECOND BURDEN OF HABAKKUK

12 Are you not from antiquity,
O Yah Veh my Elohim, my Holy One?
We die not, O Yah Veh:
you set them for judgment;
and O Rock, you founded them for reproof:
13 — eyes, purer than to see evil,
that cannot look on toil:
Why look on them who deal covertly?
And hush
when the wicked swallow him who *is* more just?
14 Works humanity as the fishes of the sea?
As the creepers who have no sovereign over them?
15 He ascends them all with the hook;
he catches them in their net
and gathers them in their dragnet:
so he cheers and twirls:
16 so he sacrifices to his net
and incenses to his dragnet;
because by them his allotment *is* fat,
and his food fattens.
17 So drags he not his net?
And spares he not
from continually slaughtering the goyim?

HABAKKUK 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 I *will shall* stand upon my *watch guard*,
and set me upon the *tower rampart*,
and *will shall* watch to see
what he *will say shall word* unto me,
and what I shall *answer respond*
when I am *reproved upon my reproof*.

THE RESPONSE OF YAH VEh

2 And the *LORD Yah Veh* answered me, and said,
Write *Inscribe* the vision,
and *make it plain explain it* upon *tables slabs*,
that he may run that *readeth it calleth out*.

3 For the vision is yet for an *appointed time a season*,
but at the end it shall *speak breathe*, and not lie:
though it *tarry, wait for it*;
because *in coming, it will surely shall* come,
it *will shall* not *tarry delay*.

4 Behold,
his soul which is *lifted up swollen*
is not *upright straight* in him:
but the just shall live by his *faith trustworthiness*.

5 Yea also,
because he *transgresseth dealeth covertly* by wine,
he is a *proud man an arrogant mighty*,
neither *keepeth at home resteth in his habitation*,
who enlargeth his *desire soul as hell sheol*,
and is as death, and cannot be satisfied,
but gathereth unto him all *nations goyim*,
and *heapeth gathereth* unto him all people:

6 Shall not all these
take up a parable lift a proverb against him,
and a *taunting proverb satire riddle* against him, and say,
Woe *Ho* to him
that *increaseth aboundeth* that which is not his!
how long?
and to him that *ladeth heavieith* himself
with *thick clay heavy pledges!*

7 Shall they not rise *up suddenly in a blink*
that shall bite thee,
and awake that shall vex *agitate* thee,
and thou shalt be for *booties plunder* unto them?
Because thou hast spoiled many *nations goyim*,
all the remnant of the people shall spoil thee;
because of *men's human* blood,
and for the violence of the land,
of the city, and of all that *dwelt settle* therein.

9 Woe *Ho* to him that *coveteth greedily gaineth*
an evil *covetousness greedy gain* to his house,
that he may set his nest on high,
that he may be *delivered rescued*
from the *power palm* of evil!

10 Thou hast *consulted counselled* shame to thy house
by *cutting scraping* off many people,
and hast sinned against thy soul.

11 For the stone shall cry out of the wall,
and the *beam crossbeam* out of the timber
shall answer it.

12 Woe to him that *buildeth a town with*
Ho to the builder of a city by blood,
and stablisheth a city by *iniquity wickedness!*

13 Behold,
is it not of the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*
that the *people nations* shall labour
in the very for sufficient fire,
and the people shall weary themselves
for *very sufficient* vanity?

14 For the earth shall be filled with the knowledge
of the *glory honour of the LORD Yah Veh*,
as the waters cover the sea.

15 Woe *Ho* unto him
that giveth his *neighbour friend* drink,
that *puttest scrapest* thy *bottle skin to him*,
and *makest intoxicatest* him *drunken also*,
that thou mayest look on their *nakedness pudenda!*

16 Thou art *filled satiated*
with shame — *abasement for glory honour*.
drink thou also,
and let thy *foreskin be uncovered be uncircumcised*:

HABAKKUK 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 I stand on my guard
and set myself on the rampart;
and watch to see what he words to me;
and what I respond to my reproof.

THE RESPONSE OF YAH VEh

2 And Yah Veh answers me, and says,
Inscribe the vision; and explain on slabs;
so that he who runs calls out:
for the vision is yet for a season;
and at the end it breathes and lies not:
though it tarries, await;
because in coming, it comes;
it delays not.

4 Behold, one swells up!
his soul within is not straight:
and the just lives by his trustworthiness.

5 Yes also, because he deals covertly by wine;
arrogant is the mighty
— who rests not in his habitation
— who enlarges his soul as sheol;
and as death, is never satisfied:
and gathers all goyim to himself,
and gathers all people to himself.

6 They, all of them,
lift they not a proverb against him?
and a satire riddle against him?
and say,
Ho to him who abounds in what is not his!
How long?
And to him who heavies himself with heavy pledges!
Rise they not in a blink — they who bite you?
And waken — they who agitate you?
And you become their plunder?

8 Because you spoil many goyim
all the remnant of the people spoil you
— because of human blood
and for the violence of the land;
of the city and all who settle therein.

9 Ho to him who greedily gains
an evil greedy gain to his house
— to set his nest on high
— to rescue himself from the palm of evil!

10 You counsel shame to your house
by scraping off many people
and sin against your soul.

11 For the stone cries from the wall:
and the crossbeam of timber answers.

12 Ho to him who builds a city by blood
— who establishes a city by wickedness!
Behold, is it not from Yah Veh Sabaoth
that the nations labor for sufficient fire?
And the people weary themselves
for sufficient vanity?

14 For the earth fills with the knowledge
of the honor of Yah Veh
as the waters cover the sea.

15 Ho to him who gives his friend drink
— who scrapes the wine skin
— who also intoxicates
just to look at their pudenda!

16 You satiate — abasement for honor:
and you drink and be uncircumcised:

HABAKKUK 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the cup of the LORD'S **Yah Veh's** right hand
shall be turned unto thee,
and *shameful spewing* **an abasement**
shall be on thy *glory* **honour**.
17 For the violence of Lebanon shall cover thee,
and the *spoil* **ravage** of *beasts* **animals**,
which *made* **terrified** them *afraid*
because of *men's* **human** blood,
and for the violence of the land,
of the city, and of all that dwell therein.
18 What profiteth the *graven image* **sculptile**
that the *maker* **former** thereof hath *graven* **sculpted** it;
the *molten image*, and a teacher of *lies* **falsehoods**,
that the *maker* **former** of his *work* **form**
trusteth **confideth** therein,
to *make* **dumb** *work* **mute** idols?
19 Woe **Ho** unto him
that saith to the *wood* **timber**, Awake;
to the *dumb* **silent** stone, *Arise* **Awake**, it shall teach!
Behold, it is *laid over* **manipulated** with gold and silver,
and there is no *breath* **spirit** at all in the midst of it.
20 But the LORD **Yah Veh** is in his holy *temple* **manse**:
let all the earth keep silence *before* *him* **at his face**.

THE LYRIC POEM OF HABAKKUK

3 A prayer of Habakkuk the prophet
upon *Shigionoth* **A Lyric Poem**.
2 O LORD **Yah Veh**, I have heard thy *speech* **report**,
and was *afraid* **awed**:
O LORD **Yah Veh**,
revive **enliven** thy *work* **deeds** in the midst of the years,
in the midst of the years make known;
in *wrath* **quivering** remember mercy.
3 God **Elohah** came from Teman,
and the Holy One from mount Paran.
Selah.
His *glory* **majesty** covered the heavens,
and the earth was *full of* **filled with** his *praise* **halal**.
4 And his *brightness* **brilliance** was as the light;
he had horns *coming* out of his hand:
and there was the hiding of his *power* **strength**.
5 *Before* *him* **At his face** went the pestilence,
and burning coals went forth at his feet.
6 He stood,
and *measured* **shook** the earth:
he *beheld* **saw**,
and *drove asunder* **loosed** the *nations* **goyim**;
and the *everlasting* **eternal** mountains were scattered,
the perpetual hills *did bow* **prostrated**:
his ways are everlasting.
7 I saw the tents of *Cushan* **Kushan** in *affliction* **mischiev**:
and the curtains of the land of *Midian* **Midyan**
did tremble **quivered**.
8 Was the LORD *displeased* **Yah Veh** **inflamed**
against the rivers?
was *thine anger* **thy wrath** against the rivers?
was thy wrath against the sea,
that thou *didst ride* upon thine horses
and thy chariots of salvation?
9 **In exposing**, Thy bow was *made quite naked* **exposed**,
according to the oaths of the tribes **the rods oathed**,
even thy word **saying**.
Selah.
Thou *didst cleave* **splittest** the earth with rivers.
10 The mountains saw thee, and they *trembled* **writhed**:
the *overflowing* **flooding** of the water passed by:
the *deep uttered* **abyss** **gave** his voice,
and *lifted up* his hands on high.
11 The sun and moon
stood still in their *habitation* **residence**:
at the light of thine arrows they went,
and at the *shining* **brilliance** of thy glittering spear.
12 Thou *didst march* **paced** through the land
in *indignation* **rage**,
thou *didst thresh* **threshed** the *heathen* **goyim**
in *anger* **wrath**.
13 Thou wentest forth for the salvation of thy people,
even for salvation with *thine anointed* **thy Messiah**;
thou *woundedst* **struck** the head
out of the house of the wicked,

HABAKKUK 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the cup of the right of Yah Veh turns to you,
and an abasement *is* on your honor.
17 For the violence of Lebanon covers you,
and the ravage of animals terrifies them
because of human blood;
and for the violence of the land,
of the city, and of all who dwell therein.
18 What profit *is* the sculptile
to the former who sculpts
— or the molten, to a teacher of falsehoods,
Confides the former of its form to work mute idols?
19 Ho to him
who says to the timber, Waken!
— to the silent stone, Waken! It teaches!
Behold, *it is* manipulated with gold and silver,
and there *is* no spirit at all in its midst.
20 And Yah Veh *is* in his holy manse:
silence at his face, all the earth.

THE LYRIC POEM OF HABAKKUK

3 A prayer of Habakkuk the prophet:
A Lyric Poem.
2 O Yah Veh, I hear your report, and awe:
O Yah Veh, enliven your deeds midst the years,
midst the years make known;
in quivering, remember mercy.
3 Elohah comes from Teman
and the Holy One from mount Paran.
Selah.
His majesty covers the heavens
and the earth fills with his *halal*:
with brilliance as the light;
his horns from his hand:
and there, the secret of his strength.
4 His majesty covers the heavens
and the earth fills with his *halal*:
with brilliance as the light;
his horns from his hand:
and there, the secret of his strength.
5 At his face goes the pestilence;
and burning coals go at his feet:
he stands, and measures the earth;
he sees, and loosens the goyim.
6 And the eternal mountains scatter;
the perpetual hills prostrate:
his ways are eternal.
7 I see the tents of Kushan in mischief:
the curtains of the land of Midyan quiver.
8 Yah Veh, inflame you against the rivers?
Your wrath against the rivers?
Your wrath against the sea
— so that you ride on your horses
and your chariots of salvation?
9 In exposing, you expose your bow;
the rods oath, saying,
Selah.
You split the earth with rivers;
the mountains see you, and writhe:
the flooding of the water passes by;
the abyss gives his voice:
and he lifts his hands on high.
10 The sun and moon stand still in their residence:
at the light, your arrows come
— at the brilliance of your glittering spear.
11 You pace through the land in rage;
you thresh the goyim in wrath:
you come for the salvation of your people
— for salvation with your Messiah;
12 you strike the head of the house of the wicked,

HABAKKUK 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

by *discovering* **stripping naked**
the foundation unto the neck.
Selah.

- 14 Thou *didst strike* **pierced** through with his staves **rods**
the head of his *villages* **suburbs**:
they *came out as a whirlwind* **stormed** to scatter me:
their *rejoicing* **jumping for joy**
was as to *devour* **consume** the *poor secretly* **humble covertly**.
- 15 Thou *didst walk* **treaded** through the sea
with thine horses,
through the heap of great waters.
- 16 When I heard, my belly *trembled* **quivered**;
my lips quivered at the voice:
rottenness entered into my bones,
and I *trembled* **quivered** in myself,
that I might rest in the day of *trouble* **tribulation**:
when he *cometh up* **ascendeth** unto the people,
he *will invade* **shall troop against** them with his troops.
- 17 Although the fig tree shall not blossom,
neither shall *fruit* **produce** be in the vines;
the labour of the olive shall *fail* **deceive**,
and the fields shall *yield* **work** no *meat* **food**;
the flock shall be cut off from the fold,
and there shall be no herd in the stalls:
- 18 Yet I *will rejoice* **shall jump for joy**
in the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
- 19 I *will joy* **shall twirl** in the *God* **Elohim** of my salvation.
The *LORD God* **Yah Veh Adonay**
is my *strength* **valour**,
and he *will make* **shall set** my feet like hinds' *feet*,
and he *will make* **shall cause** me
to *walk* **tread** upon *mine high places* **my bamahs**.
To the *chief singer* **his eminence**
on my *stringed instruments* **strummers**.

HABAKKUK 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

by stripping the foundation, naked to the neck.
Selah.

- 14 With his *own* rods
you pierce through the head of his suburbs:
they storm to scatter me:
they jump for joy to consume the humble covertly.
- 15 You tread through the sea with your horses
— through the heap of great waters.
- 16 I hear; my belly quivers;
my lips quiver at the voice:
rottenness enters my bones;
and I quiver in myself
that I rest in the day of tribulation:
he ascends to the people;
he troops against them with his troops.
- 17 Although neither the fig tree blossoms
nor produce among the vines;
the labor of the olive deceives
and the fields work no food;
the flock *is* cut off from the fold,
and there *is* no herd in the stalls:
yet I jump for joy in Yah Veh;
I twirl in Elohim of my salvation.
- 18 Yah Veh Adonay *is* my valour
and he sets my feet as the hinds;
and he has me tread on my bamahs.
To his eminence,
with my strummers.

ZEPHANIAH 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

INTRODUCTION

1 The word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
which came unto **Zephaniah Sephan Yah**
the son of **Cushi Kushi**,
the son of **Gedaliah Gedal Yah**,
the son of **Amariah Amar Yah**,
the son of **Hizkiah Yechizqi Yah**,
in the days of **Josiah Yoshi Yah** the son of Amon,
king **sovereign** of **Judah Yah Hudah**.

2 *I will utterly consume* **In gathering, I shall gather** all things
from off the **land face of the soil**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

3 *I will consume shall gather*
man humanity and **beast animal**;
I will consume shall gather
the **fowls flyers** of the **heaven heavens**,
and the fishes of the sea,
and the stumblingblocks with the wicked:
and I **will shall** cut off **man humanity**
from off **the face of the land soil**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

4 I **will shall** also *stretch out* **spread** mine hand
upon **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and upon all
the **inhabitants settlers** of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**;
and I **will shall** cut off the **remnant survivors** of Baal
from this place,
and the name of the **Chemarims ascetics** with the priests;
And them that **worship prostrate**
to the host of heaven the heavens upon the **housetops roofs**;
and them that **worship prostrate**
and that **swear oath** by the **LORD Yah Veh**,
and that **swear oath** by Malcham;
And them that are **turned back apostatized**
from the **LORD Yah Veh**;
and **those** that have not sought the **LORD Yah Veh**,
nor enquired for him.

7 *Hold thy peace Hush*
at the **presence face of the Lord GOD Adonay Yah Veh**:
for the day of the **LORD Yah Veh** is at hand **nearby**:
for the **LORD Yah Veh** hath prepared a sacrifice,
he hath **bid hallowed** his **guests called out ones**.

8 And **so be** it shall come to pass
in the day of the **LORD'S** sacrifice of **Yah Veh**,
that I **will punish shall visit upon** the **princes governors**,
and the **king's children sovereign's sons**,
and all such
as are **clothed enrobed** with strange **apparel robes**.
In the same day also *will I punish shall I visit upon*
all those that leap on the threshold,
which fill their **masters' adoniyim's** houses
with violence and deceit.

10 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
that there shall be the **noise voice** of a cry
from the fish gate **portal**,
and an howling from the second,
and a great **crashing breaking** from the hills.

11 Howl, ye **inhabitants settlers** of **Maktesh Machtsh**,
for all the **merchant** people of **Kanaan** are cut down;
all they that bear silver are **cut off severed**.

12 And **so be** it shall come to pass at that time,
that I **will shall** search **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**
with **candles lamps**,
and **punish visit upon** the men
that are **settled curdled** on their **lees dregs**:
that say in their heart,
The LORD will Yah Veh shall not do good well—please,
neither will shall he do evil vilify.

13 Therefore
their **goods valuables** shall become a **booty plunder**,
and their houses a desolation:
they shall also build houses, but not **inhabit them settle**;
and they shall plant vineyards,
but not drink the wine **thereof**.

14 **THE GREAT DAY OF YAH VEH**
The great day of the **LORD Yah Veh** is near, *it is near*,

SEPHAN YAH 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

INTRODUCTION

1 The word of Yah Veh
being to Sephan Yah the son of Kushi
the son of Gedal Yah the son of Amar Yah
the son of Yechizqi Yah
in the days of Yoshi Yah the son of Amon
sovereign of Yah Hudah.

2 **IMPENDING DOOM**
In gathering, I gather all from off the face of the soil
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

3 I gather humanity and animal;
I gather the flyers of the heavens
and the fishes of the sea,
and the stumblingblocks with the wicked:
and I cut off humanity from the face of the soil
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

4 And I spread my hand on Yah Hudah
and on all the settlers of Yeru Shalem;
and I cut off the survivors of Baal from this place;
and the name of the ascetics with the priests;
and they who prostrate
to the host of the heavens on the roofs;
and they who prostrate and oath by Yah Veh,
and oath by Malcham;
and they who apostatize from Yah Veh
— who neither seek Yah Veh nor enquire of him.

7 Hush at the face of Adonay Yah Veh:
for the day of Yah Veh is nearby:
for Yah Veh prepares a sacrifice;
he hallows his called ones.

8 And so be it, in the day of the sacrifice of Yah Veh,
I visit on the governors
and on the sons of the sovereign
and all such as enrobe with strange robes.
In the same day,
I also visit on all who leap on the threshold
— who fill the houses of their adoniyim
with violence and deceit.

10 And so be it, in that day,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
the voice of a cry from the fish portal
and an howling from the second
and a great breaking from the hills.

11 Howl, you settlers of Machtsh,
for all the people of Kanaan are cut down;
all who bear silver are severed.

12 And so be it, at that time,
I search Yeru Shalem with lamps;
and visit on the men who curdle on their dregs
— who say in their heart,
Yah Veh neither well—pleases nor vilifies.

13 And their valuables become a plunder,
and their houses a desolation:
and they build houses, and settle not;
and they plant vineyards, and drink not the wine.

14 **THE GREAT DAY OF YAH VEH**
The great day of Yah Veh is near — near

ZEPHANIAH 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and hasteth greatly mightily,
even the voice of the day of the LORD **Yah Veh**:
the mighty *man* shall cry **whoop** there bitterly.
15 That day is a day of wrath,
a day of *trouble* **tribulation** and distress,
a day of *wasteness* **devastation** and *desolation* **ruin**,
a day of darkness and *gloominess* **darkness**,
a day of clouds and *thick* **dripping** darkness,
16 A day of the *trumpet* **shophar** and *alarm* **blast**
against the *fenced* **fortified** cities,
and against the high *towers* **corners**.
17 And I will bring distress upon men
shall **tribulate** **humanity**,
that they shall walk like blind *men*,
because they have sinned against the LORD **Yah Veh**:
and their blood shall be poured out as dust,
and their *flesh* **eating** as the dung **ball**.
18 Neither their silver nor their gold
shall be able to *deliver* **rescue** them
in the day of the LORD'S **Yah Veh's** wrath;
but the whole land shall be *devoured* **consumed**
by the fire of his jealousy:
for he shall *make* **work**
even a *speedy* **riddance** **hasty final finish**
of all them that *dwell* **settle** in the land.

THE CALL OF YAH VEH TO THE GOYIM

2 Gather yourselves *together*, yea, gather *together*,
O *nation* **goyim** not desired **yearned for**;
2 Before **Ere** the decree bring forth **statute** **births**,
before **ere** the day pass as the chaff,
before **ere** the fierce anger **fuming** **wrath**
of the LORD **Yah Veh** come upon you,
before **ere** the day
of the LORD'S anger **wrath of Yah Veh** come upon you.
3 Seek ye the LORD **Yah Veh**,
all ye *meeek* **humble** of the earth,
which have *wrought* **done** his judgment;
seek *righteousness* **justness**, seek *meeekness* **humility**:
it may be **perhaps** ye shall be hid
in the day of the LORD'S anger **wrath of Yah Veh**.
4 For Gaza **Azzah** shall be forsaken,
and Ashkelon a desolation:
they shall drive out Ashdod at the noon *day*,
and Ekron **Eqron** shall be *rooted up* **uprooted**.
5 Woe **Ho** unto the *inhabitants* **settlers**
of the sea coast **boundary**,
the *nation* **goyim** of the *Cherethites* **Kerethiym!**
the word of the LORD **Yah Veh** is against you;
O *Canaan* **Kenaan**,
the land of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**,
I will **shall** even destroy thee,
that there shall be no *inhabitant* **settler**.
6 And the sea coast **boundary**
shall be *dwellings* **habitations of rest**
and *cottages* **meadows** for *shepherds* **tenders**,
and *folds* **walls** for flocks.
7 And the coast **boundary** shall be
for the *remnant* **survivors**
of the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**;
they shall *feed* **graze** thereupon:
in the houses of Ashkelon
shall they *lie down* **crouch** in the evening:
for the LORD **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim** shall visit them,
and turn away their captivity.
8 I have heard the reproach of Moab,
and the revilings of the *children* **sons** of Ammon,
whereby they have reproached my people,
and *magnified* **greatened** *themselves* against their border.
9 Therefore as I live,
saith the LORD of *hosts* **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
the God **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
Surely Moab shall be as *Sodom* **Sedom**,
and the *children* **sons** of Ammon as *Gomorrah* **Amorah**,
even the *breeding* **possession** of nettles, and saltpits,
and a *perpetual* **an eternal** desolation:
the *residue* **survivors** of my people
shall *spoil* **plunder** them,
and the remnant of my *people* **goyim**
shall *possess* **inherit** them.

SEPHAN YAH 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and the voice of the day of Yah Veh hastens mightily:
the mighty whoop there bitterly:
15 a day of wrath — that day;
a day of tribulation and distress;
a day of devastation and ruin;
a day of darkness and darkness;
16 a day of clouds and dripping darkness
a day of the shophar and blast
against the fortified cities
and against the high corners.
17 And I tribulate humanity
and they walk as the blind:
because they sin against Yah Veh
and pour blood as dust
and eat the dung ball.
18 Even their silver, even their gold
cannot rescue them
in the day of the wrath of Yah Veh;
and in the fire of his jealousy
consumes the whole land:
for he even works a hasty final finish
of all who settle in the land.

THE CALL OF YAH VEH TO THE GOYIM

2 Gather yourselves;
yes, gather, O goyim not yearned for:
2 ere the birth of the statute;
ere the day pass as the chaff;
ere the fuming wrath of Yah Veh comes on you;
ere the day of the wrath of Yah Veh comes on you.
3 Seek Yah Veh, all you humble of the earth,
who do his judgment:
seek justness; seek humility:
perhaps you are hidden
in the day of the wrath of Yah Veh.
4 For Azzah is forsaken and Ashkelon a desolation:
they drive out Ashdod at noon and uproot Eqron.
5 Ho to the settlers of the sea boundary
— the goyim of the Kerethiym!
the word of Yah Veh is against you;
O Kenaan, the land of the Peleshethiym:
I even destroy you, without settler.
6 And the sea boundary becomes habitations of rest
and meadows for tenders
and walls for flocks:
7 and the boundary becomes for the survivors
of the house of Yah Hudah to graze thereon:
in the houses of Ashkelon
they crouch in the evening:
for Yah Veh their Elohim visits them
and restores their captivity.
8 I hear the reproach of Moab
and the revilings of the sons of Ammon
— whereby they reproach my people,
and greaten against their border:
9 so, I live
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth Elohim of Yisra El.
Surely Moab is as Sedom
and the sons of Ammon as Amorah
— the possession of nettles and saltpits
— an eternal desolation:
the survivors of my people plunder them
and the remnant of my goyim inherit them.

ZEPHANIAH 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 This shall they have for their **pride pomp**,
because they have reproached
and magnified **greatened themselves** against the people
of the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
11 The LORD **Yah Veh**
will **shall** be **terrible awesome** unto them:
for he will **famish shall emaciate**
all the **gods elohim** of the earth;
and men shall **worship prostrate to** him,
every **one man** from his place,
even all the **isles islands** of the **heathen goyim**.
12 Ye **Ethiopians Kushiym** also,
ye shall be **slain pierced** by my sword.
13 And he will **stretch out shall spread** his hand
against the north,
and destroy **Assyria Ashshur**;
and will **make shall set** Nineveh a desolation,
and **dry parch** like a wilderness.
14 And **flocks droves** shall **lie down crouch**
in the midst of her,
all the **beasts live beings** of the **nations goyim**:
both the **cormorant pelican** and the **bittern**
shall **lodge stay overnight** in the upper lintels of it;
their voice shall sing in the windows;
desolation parch shall be in the thresholds:
for he shall **uncover strip naked** the cedar work.
15 This is the **rejoicing city of jumping for joy**
that **dwelt carelessly settled confidently**,
that said in her heart, **I am**, and there is none beside me:
how is she become a desolation,
a **resting place for beasts to lie down in live beings!**
every one that passeth by her shall hiss,
and wag his hand.

HO TO YERU SHALEM

3 **Woe Ho** to her
that is **filthy rebelleth** and **polluted profaneth**,
to — the oppressing city!
2 She **obeyed hearkened** not **unto** the voice;
she **received took** not **correction discipline**;
she **trusted confided** not in the **LORD Yah Veh**;
she **drew approached** not **near to** her **God Elohim**.
3 Her **princes governors** within her are roaring lions;
her judges are evening wolves;
they **gnaw craunch** not **the bones**
till the **morrow morning**.
4 Her prophets are **light frothy**
and **treacherous persons covert men**:
her priests have **polluted profaned** the **sanctuary holies**,
they have **done violence to violated** the **law torah**.
5 The just **LORD Yah Veh** is in the midst **thereof**;
he will **shall** not **do iniquity work wickedness**:
every morning **by morning**
doth he bring he giveth his judgment to light,
he **faileth lacketh** not;
but the **unjust wicked** knoweth no shame.
6 I have cut off the **nations goyim**:
their **towers corners** are **desolate desolated**;
I **made parched** their **streets waste outways**,
that none passeth by:
their cities are destroyed,
so that there is no man,
that there is **none inhabitant no settler**.
7 I said, Surely thou **wilt fear shalt awe** me,
thou **wilt receive instruction shalt take discipline**;
so their **dwelling habitation** should not be cut off,
howsoever I punished all that I visited upon them:
but **surely** they rose early,
and **corrupted ruined** all their **doings exploits**.

THE JUDGMENT OF THE GOYIM

8 Therefore wait ye upon me,
saith the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh,
until the day that I rise **up** to the prey:
for my **determination judgment**
is to gather the **nations goyim**,
that I may **assemble gather** the **kingdoms sovereigndoms**,
to pour upon them **mine indignation my rage**,
even all my **fierce anger fuming wrath**:
for all the earth
shall be **devoured consumed** with the fire of my jealousy.

SEPHAN YAH 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

10 This is for their pomp,
because they reproach and greaten
against the people of Yah Veh Sabaoth.
11 Yah Veh is awesome against them:
for he emaciates all the elohim of the earth;
and every man prostrates to him from his place
— all the islands of the goyim.
12 Also you, O Kushiym
you, pierced by my sword.
13 And he spreads his hand against the north
and destroys Ashshur;
and sets Nineveh as a desolation
and parches as a wilderness:
and droves crouch among her
— all the live beings of the goyim:
both the pelican and the bittern
stay overnight in the upper lintels thereof;
their voice sings in the windows;
parch is in the thresholds:
for he strips naked the cedar work
— this — the city of jumping for joy
who settles confidently
— who says in her heart,
I — and there is no one beside me!
15 How she becomes a desolation
— a resting place for live beings!
every one who passes by her
hisses and wags his hand.

HO TO YERU SHALEM

3 Ho to her who rebels and profanes,
— the oppressing city!
2 She hearkens not to the voice;
she takes not discipline;
she confides not in Yah Veh;
she approaches another Elohim.
3 Her governors within her are roaring lions;
her judges are evening wolves;
they craunch not until morning;
4 her prophets are frothy and covert men;
her priests profane the holies;
they violate the torah:
5 Yah Veh is just among her;
he works not wickedness:
morning by morning he gives his judgment to light;
he lacks not:
and the wicked shame not.
6 I cut off the goyim; desolate their corners:
I parch their outways so no one passes by:
destroy their cities
— without man; without settler.
7 I say, Only, awe me;
you, take discipline
that I not cut off your habitation
from all I visit on her:
but they rise early and ruin all their exploits.

THE JUDGMENT OF THE GOYIM

8 So await me
— an oracle of Yah Veh
until the day I rise to the prey:
for my judgment is to gather goyim;
to gather sovereigndoms;
to pour my rage on them — all my fuming wrath:
for I consume all the earth
with the fire of my jealousy.

ZEPHANIAH 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 For then *will shall* I turn to the people
a *pure language purified lip*,
that they may all
call upon the name of the *LORD Yah Veh*,
to serve him with one *consent shoulder*.
10 From beyond the rivers of *Ethiopia Kush*
my *suppliants entreaters*,
even the daughter of my *dispersed scattered*,
shall bring mine offering.
11 In that day shalt thou not be *ashamed shamed*
for all thy *doings exploits*,
wherein thou hast *transgressed rebelled* against me:
for then I *will take away shall turn aside*
out of the midst of thee
them that *rejoice jump for joy* in thy *pride pomp*,
and thou shalt *no more not add*
to be haughty lifted
because of my holy mountain.

THE SURVIVORS OF YISRA EL

12 I *will shall* also leave in the midst of thee
an *afflicted humbled* and poor people,
and they shall *trust seek refuge*
in the name of the *LORD Yah Veh*.
13 The *remnant survivors* of *Israel Yisra El*
shall not do *iniquity work wickedness*,
nor *speak word* lies;
neither shall a deceitful tongue be found in their mouth:
for they shall *feed graze* and *lie down crouch*,
and none shall *make tremble* them *afraid*.
14 Sing, O daughter of *Zion Siyon*;
shout, O *Israel Yisra El*;
be glad cheer and *rejoice jump for joy* with all the heart,
O daughter of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
15 The *LORD Yah Veh*
hath *taken away turned aside* thy judgments,
he hath *cast out faced* thine enemy:
the *king sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*,
even the *LORD Yah Veh*, is in the midst of thee:
thou shalt not see evil any more.
16 In that day it shall be said to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
Fear Awe thou not:
and to *Zion Siyon*,
Let not thine hands be *slack slacken*.
17 The *LORD Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
in the midst of thee is mighty;
he *will shall* save,
he *will shall* rejoice over thee with *joy cheerfulness*;
he *will rest shall hush* in his love,
he *will joy shall twirl* over thee with *singing shouting*.
18 I *will shall* gather *them that are sorrowful the grieved*
for the *solemn assembly congregation*, who are of thee,
to whom the reproach of it was a burden.
19 Behold, at that time
I *will undo shall work* all that *afflict humble* thee:
and I *will shall* save her that *halteth limpeth*,
and gather her that was *driven out expelled*;
and I *will get shall set* them
praise for a halal and *fame a name*
in every land
where they have been put to *of their* shame.
20 At that time *will shall* I bring you *again*,
even in the time that I gather you:
for I *will make shall give* you a name and a *praise halal*
among all people of the earth,
when I *turn back return* your captivity
before in front of your eyes,
saith the *LORD Yah Veh*.

SEPHAN YAH 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 For then I restore a purified lip to the people
so that they all call on the name of Yah Veh
to serve him with one shoulder.
10 From beyond the rivers of Kush
my entreaters, the daughter of my scattered,
bring my offering.
11 In that day you shame not
for all the exploits you rebel against me:
for then I turn aside from among you
all who jump for joy in your pomp;
and you add not to lift yourself
because of my holy mountain.

THE SURVIVORS OF YISRA EL

12 And I leave midst you
a humbled and poor people;
and they seek refuge in the name of Yah Veh:
the survivors of Yisra El
neither work wickedness nor word lies;
nor is a deceitful tongue found in their mouth:
for they graze and crouch and no one trembles.

14 Sing, O daughter of Siyon! Shout, O Yisra El!
Cheer and jump for joy with all the heart,
O daughter of Yeru Shalem!
15 Yah Veh turns aside your judgments;
he faces your enemy:
the sovereign of Yisra El, Yah Veh, is midst you:
you see no evil any more.

16 In that day they say to Yeru Shalem, Awe not!
Siyon, slacken not your hands!
17 Yah Veh your Elohim midst you is mighty;
he saves; he rejoices over you with cheerfulness;
he hushes in his love;
he twirls over you with shouting.

18 I gather the grieved from the congregation
who became from you;
whose reproach was a burden.
19 Behold, at that time,
I work all who humble you:
and I save her who limps,
and gather her who was expelled;
and I set them for a halal and a name
in every land of their shame.

20 At that time, I bring you,
even in the time I gather you:
for I give you a name and a halal
among all people of the earth,
when I restore your captivity in front of your eyes,
says Yah Veh.

HAGGAI 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE PEOPLE DISRUPT BUILDING THE HOUSE OF YAH VEh

1 In the second year of *Darius Daryavesh*
the *king sovereign*,
in the sixth month, in the first day of the month,
came the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*
by *Haggai the hand of Haggay* the prophet
unto *Zerubbabel Zerub Babel*
the son of *Shealtiel Shealti El*,
governor captain of Judah Yah Hudah,
and to *Joshua Yah Shua* the son of *Josedech Yah Sadaq*,
the *high great* priest, saying,
2 Thus *speake*th *saith*
the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*, saying,
This people say, The time *is approached* not *come*,
the time that the *LORD'S* house of *Yah Veh*
should be built.
THE DISCIPLINE OF YAH VEh FOR THE DISRUPTED WORK
3 Then came the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*
by *the hand of Haggai Haggay* the prophet, saying,
4 Is it time for you,
O ye, to *dwel* *settle* in your cieled houses,
and this house *lie* waste *parch*?
5 Now therefore
thus *saith* the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*;
Consider Set thy heart on your ways.
6 Ye have sown *much aboundingly*,
and *bring brought* in little;
ye eat, but ye have *not enough no satisfaction*;
ye drink, but ye are not *filled with drink intoxicated*;
ye *clothe enrobe* you, but there is none *warm heated*;
and he that *earneth wages hireth*
earneth wages hireth
to put it into a *bag with holes pierced bundle*.
7 Thus *saith* the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*;
Consider Set thy heart on your ways.
8 *Go up Ascend* to the mountain, and bring wood *timber*,
and build the house;
and I *will take pleasure shall be pleased* in it,
and I *will shall be glorified honoured*,
saith the *LORD Yah Veh*.
9 Ye *looked for much faced aboundingly*,
and, *lo behold*, it came to little;
and when ye brought it home, I *did blow puffed* upon it.
Why Wherefore?
saith the *LORD of hosts an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth*.
Because of mine house that is *waste parched*,
and ye run every man unto his own house.
10 Therefore the *heaven heavens* over you
is stayed from dew,
and the earth is stayed from her *fruit produce*.
11 And I called for a *drought parch* upon the land,
and upon the mountains, and upon the *corn crop*,
and upon the *new wine juice*, and upon the oil,
and upon that which the *ground soil* bringeth forth,
and upon *men humanity*, and upon *cattle animals*,
and upon all the labour of the *hands palms*.
THE WORK BEGINS AGAIN
12 Then *Zerubbabel Zerub Babel*
the son of *Shealtiel Shealti El*,
and *Joshua Yah Shua* the son of *Josedech Yah Sadaq*,
the *high great* priest,
with all the *remnant survivors* of the people,
obeyed hearkened unto the voice
of the *LORD Yah Veh* their *God Elohim*,
and the words of *Haggai Haggay* the prophet,
as the *LORD Yah Veh* their *God Elohim* had sent him,
and the people *did fear awed*
before the LORD at the face of Yah Veh.
13 Then *spake Haggai said Haggay*
the *LORD'S messenger angel of Yah Veh*
in the *LORD'S message evangelism of Yah Veh*
unto the people, saying,
I am with you,
saith the *LORD an oracle of Yah Veh*.
14 And the *LORD Yah Veh*
stirred up wakened the spirit of *Zerubbabel Zerub Babel*
the son of *Shealtiel Shealti El*, *governor of Judah Yah Hudah*,
and the spirit of *Joshua Yah Shua*

HAGGAY 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE PEOPLE DISRUPT BUILDING THE HOUSE OF YAH VEh

1 In the second year of Daryavesh the sovereign,
in the sixth month, in the first day of the month,
so be the word of Yah Veh
by the hand of Haggay the prophet
to Zerub Babel
the son of Shealti El captain of Yah Hudah
and to Yah Shua the son of Yah Sadaq the great priest,
saying,
2 Thus say Yah Veh Sabaoth, saying,
This people say, The time approaches not
— the time to build the house of Yah Veh.
THE DISCIPLINE OF YAH VEh FOR THE DISRUPTED WORK
3 So be the word of Yah Veh
by the hand of Haggay the prophet, saying,
4 Is it time for you
— you, to settle in your cieled houses
and this house a parch?
5 And now, thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
Set your heart on your ways.
6 You seed aboundingly, and bring in little;
you eat, and you satiate not;
you drink, and you intoxicate not;
you enrobe, and no one heats up;
and he who hires *himself out*
hires to put it into a pierced bundle.
7 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
Set your heart on your ways:
8 ascend to the mountain
and bring timber and build the house;
and please me and honor me,
says Yah Veh.
9 You face aboundingly,
and behold, little;
and when you bring it home, I puff thereon:
Why?
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
because my house *is* parched,
and you, every man runs to his own house:
10 so the heavens over you stay from her dew
and the earth stays from her produce:
11 and I call a parch on the land
and on the mountains and on the crop
and on the juice and on the oil
and on whatever the soil brings forth;
and on humanity and on animals
and on all the labor of the palms.
THE WORK BEGINS AGAIN
12 And Zerub Babel the son of Shealti El
and Yah Shua the son of Yah Sadaq the great priest
with all the survivors of the people
hearken to the voice of Yah Veh their Elohim
and the words of Haggay the prophet
as Yah Veh their Elohim sends him:
and the people awe at the face of Yah Veh.
13 And Haggay the angel of Yah Veh
in the evangelism of Yah Veh
says to the people, saying, I am with you
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
14 And Yah Veh wakens the spirit of Zerub Babel
the son of Shealti El governor of Yah Hudah,
and the spirit of Yah Shua

HAGGAI 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the son of *Josedech* **Yah Sadaq**, the *high* great priest,
and the spirit of all the *remnant* survivors of the people;
and they came and *did* worked work
in the house of the *LORD* of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
their *God* **Elohim**,
15 In the four and twentieth day of the sixth month,
in the second year
of *Darius* **Daryavesh** the *king* sovereign.

2

In the seventh *month*,
in the one and twentieth *day* of the month,
came the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
by the hand of the prophet *Haggai* **Haggay**, saying,
2 Speak now to *Zerubbabel* **Zerub Babel**
the son of *Shealtiel* **Shealti El**,
governor of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and to *Joshua* **Yah Shua** the son of *Josedech* **Yah Sadaq**,
the *high* great priest,
and to the *residue* survivors of the people, saying,
3 Who is left *survive*th among you
that saw this house in her first *glory* honour?
and how do ye see ye it now?
is it not in your eyes
in comparison of it *likened* as *nothing* nought?
4 Yet now be strong prevail, O *Zerubbabel* **Zerub Babel**,
saith the *LORD* an oracle of **Yah Veh**;
and be strong prevail, O *Joshua* **Yah Shua**,
son of *Josedech* **Yah Sadaq**, the *high* great priest;
and be strong prevail, all ye people of the land,
saith the *LORD* an oracle of **Yah Veh**,
and work: for I am with you,
saith the *LORD* of hosts an oracle of **Yah Veh Sabaoth**:
5 According to the word that I *covenanted* cut with you
when ye came out of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
so my spirit *remaineth* standeth among you:
fear awe ye not.
6 For thus saith the *LORD* of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
Yet once, it is a little while,
and I will shake shall quake the heavens,
and the earth, and the sea,
and the *dry* land parched areas;
7 And I will shake shall quake all *nations* goyim,
and the desire of all *nations* shall come goyim approaches:
and I will shall fill this house with *glory* honour,
saith the *LORD* of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
8 The silver is mine, and the gold is mine,
saith the *LORD* of hosts an oracle of **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
9 The *glory* honour of this latter house
shall be greater than of the former,
saith the *LORD* of hosts an oracle of **Yah Veh Sabaoth**:
and in this place will shall I give *peace* shalom,
saith the *LORD* of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.

THE TORAH CONCERNING THE HALLOWED

10 In the four and twentieth *day* of the ninth *month*,
in the second year of *Darius* **Daryavesh**,
came the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
by *Haggai* the hand of **Haggay** the prophet, saying,
11 Thus saith the *LORD* of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**:
Ask now I beseech, the priests concerning the *law* torah,
saying,
12 If one a man bear holy flesh
in the *skirt* wing of his garment clothes,
and with his *skirt* do wing touch bread,
or pottage, or wine, or oil, or any *meat* food,
shall it be *holy* hallowed?
And the priests answered and said, No.
13 Then said *Haggai* **Haggay**,
If one that is unclean by a dead body a fouled dead soul
touch any of these,
shall it be *unclean* fouled?
And the priests answered and said,
It shall be *unclean* fouled.
14 Then answered *Haggai* **Haggay**, and said,
So is this people,
and so is this *nation* before me goyim at my face,
saith the *LORD* an oracle of **Yah Veh**;
and so is every work of their hands;
and that which they offer oblate there is *unclean* fouled.
15 And now I beseech, I pray you,

HAGGAY 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the son of *Yah Sadaq* the great priest,
and the spirit of all the survivors of the people;
and they come and work the work
in the house of *Yah Veh Sabaoth* their *Elohim*
in the twenty—fourth day of the sixth month,
in the second year of *Daryavesh* the sovereign.

15

2

In the seventh, in the twenty—first of the month,
so be the word of *Yah Veh*
by the hand of the prophet *Haggay*, saying,
2 Speak now to *Zerub Babel*
the son of *Shealti El* governor of *Yah Hudah*,
and to *Yah Shua*
the son of *Yah Sadaq* the great priest,
and to the survivors of the people, saying,
3 Who among you survives
— who saw this house in her first honor?
And how see you now?
Likens it not in your eyes as naught?
4 And now prevail, O *Zerub Babel*
— an oracle of *Yah Veh*
and prevail, O *Yah Shua*
son of *Yah Sadaq* the great priest;
and prevail all you people of the land
— an oracle of *Yah Veh*
and work: for I am with you
— an oracle of *Yah Veh Sabaoth*
5 according to the word I cut with you
when you came from *Misrayim*,
thus my spirit stands among you: awe not.

6

For thus says *Yah Veh Sabaoth*:
Yet once, in a little *while*,
and I quake the heavens and the earth and the sea
and the parched areas;
7 and I quake all goyim
and the desire of all goyim approaches:
and I fill this house with honor,
says *Yah Veh Sabaoth*.

8

The silver is mine, and the gold is mine
— an oracle of *Yah Veh Sabaoth*.
9 So be the honor of this latter house
— greater than the former
— an oracle of *Yah Veh Sabaoth*
and in this place I give shalom,
says *Yah Veh Sabaoth*.

10

THE TORAH CONCERNING THE HALLOWED

10 In the twenty—fourth of the ninth,
in the second year of *Daryavesh*,
so be the word of *Yah Veh*
by the hand of *Haggay* the prophet, saying,
11 Thus says *Yah Veh Sabaoth*:
Ask, I beseech, the priests of the torah, saying,
12 If a man bears holy flesh in the wing of his clothes,
and with his wing touches bread
or pottage or wine or oil or any food,
is it hallowed?

13

And the priests answer and say, No.

14

Then *Haggay* says,
If a fouled dead soul touches any of these,
is it fouled?

15

And the priests answer and say, Fouled.
And *Haggay* answers and says,
Thus is this people and thus is this goyim at my face
— an oracle of *Yah Veh*
and thus is every work of their hands;
and what they oblate there is fouled.

15

And I beseech, I pray you,

THE NEW HOUSE

HAGGAI 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

consider **set thy heart** from this day and upward,
from before **ere** a stone was **laid set** upon a stone
in the **temple manse** of the **LORD Yah Veh**:
16 Since *those days were* **then**,
when one came to an heap of *twenty measures*,
there were *but* ten:
when one came to the *pressfat* **trough**
for to draw out *fats* **to strip** fifty vessels out of the press,
there were *but* twenty.
17 I smote you with blasting and with *mildew* **pale green**
and with hail in all the *labours* **works** of your hands;
yet ye turned not to me,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
18 Consider now **Set thy heart I beseech**,
from this day and upward,
from the four and twentieth day of the ninth *month*,
even from the day that the foundation
of the **LORD'S temple Yah Veh's manse**
was **laid founded**,
consider it **set thy heart**.
19 Is the seed yet in the *barn* **granary**?
yea, as yet the vine, and the fig tree,
and the pomegranate, and the olive tree,
hath not *brought forth* **borne**:
from this day *will* **shall** I bless *you*.
20 And *again* **secondly** the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
came unto *Haggai* **Haggay**
in the four and twentieth *day* of the month, saying,
21 Speak to *Zerubbabel* **Zerub Babel**,
governor of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**, saying,
I *will shake* **shall quake** the heavens and the earth;
22 And I *will overthrow* **shall overturn** the throne
of *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**,
and I *will destroy* **shall desolate** the strength
of the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the *heathen* **goyim**;
and I *will overthrow* **shall overturn** the chariots,
and *those that ride in them* **their riders**;
and the horses and their riders shall *come down* **topple**,
every *one* **man** by the sword of his brother.
23 In that day,
saith the LORD of hosts **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
will **shall** I take thee,
O *Zerubbabel* **Zerub Babel**, my servant,
the son of *Shealtiel* **Shealti El**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
and *will make* **shall set** thee as a *signet* **seal**:
for I have chosen thee,
saith the LORD of hosts **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**.

HAGGAY 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

set your heart from this day and upward,
ere you set stone on stone in the manse of Yah Veh:
16 From now on,
when one comes to an heap of twenty,
and it becomes ten:
when one comes to the trough
to strip fifty from the press,
and it becomes twenty.
17 I smite you with blasting and with pale green
and with hail in all the works of your hands;
yet you turn not to me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
18 Set your heart, I beseech,
from this day and upward,
from the twenty—fourth day of the ninth,
from the day of founding the foundation
of the manse of Yah Veh,
set your heart.
19 *Is* the seed yet in the granary?
Yes, as yet the vine and the fig tree
and the pomegranate and the olive tree
have not borne:
from this day I bless.
20 And secondly
so be the word of Yah Veh to Haggay
in the twenty—fourth of the month, saying,
21 Speak to Zerub Babel governor of Yah Hudah,
saying, I quake the heavens and the earth;
22 and I overturn the throne of sovereigndoms;
and I desolate the strength
of the sovereigndoms of the goyim;
and I overturn the chariots and their riders:
and the horses and their riders topple
— every man by the sword of his brother.
23 In that day
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
I take you, O Zerub Babel
my servant the son of Shealti El
— an oracle of Yah Veh
and set you as a seal:
for I choose you
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth.

ZECHARIAH 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH VEH IS ENRAGED WITH THE FATHERS

1 In the eighth month,
in the second year of *Darius Daryavesh*,
came the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
unto *Zechariah Zechar Yah*,
the son of *Berechiah Berech Yah*,
the son of Iddo the prophet, saying,
2 **In being enraged,**
The LORD Yah Veh hath been *sore displeased* **enraged**
with your fathers.
3 *Therefore* say thou unto them,
Thus saith *the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*;
Turn ye unto me,
saith *the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*,
and I *will shall* turn unto you,
saith *the LORD of hosts an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth*.
4 Be ye not as your fathers,
unto whom the former prophets have *cried called out,*
saying, Thus saying thus:
saith *the LORD of hosts an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth*;
Turn ye *now* **I beseech**, from your evil *ways exploits,*
and from your evil *doings exploits:*
but they *did heard* not *hear,*
nor *hearken hearkened* unto me,
saith *the LORD an oracle of Yah Veh*.
5 Your fathers, where are they?
and the prophets, *do they live for ever live they eternally?*
6 But my words and my statutes,
which I *commanded misvahed* my servants the prophets,
did they overtook not *take hold* of your fathers?
and they returned and said,
Like as *the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*
thought intrigued to *do work* unto us,
according to our ways,
and *according to our doings exploits,*
so hath he *dealt worked* with us.
THE RIDER ON THE RED HORSE
7 Upon the four and twentieth day of the eleventh month,
which is the month *Sebat Shebat*,
in the second year of *Darius Daryavesh*,
came the word of the **LORD Yah Veh**
unto *Zechariah Zechar Yah*,
the son of *Berechiah Berech Yah*,
the son of Iddo the prophet, saying,
8 I saw by night,
and behold a man riding upon a red horse,
and he stood among the myrtle trees
that were in the *bottom shade*;
and behind him were there red horses,
speckled bay, and white.
9 Then said I, O my *lord adoni*, what are these?
And the angel that *talked worded* with me said unto me,
I *will shew thee shall have thee see* what these be.
10 And the man that stood among the myrtle trees
answered and said,
These are they whom *the LORD Yah Veh* hath sent
to walk to and fro through the earth.
11 And they answered the angel of *the LORD Yah Veh*
that stood among the myrtle trees, and said,
We have walked to and fro through the earth,
and, behold,
all the earth *sitteth still settleth*, and *is at rest resteth*.
12 Then the angel of *the LORD Yah Veh*
answered and said,
O *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*,
how long *wilt shalt* thou not
have mercy on Jerusalem Yeru Shalem
and on the cities of *Judah Yah Hudah*,
against which thou hast *had indignation been enraged*
these *threescore and ten seventy* years?
13 And *the LORD Yah Veh*
answered the angel that *talked worded* with me
with good words
and *comfortable words words of solaces*.
14 So the angel that *communed worded* with me
said unto me, *Cry Call* thou *out*, saying,
Thus saith *the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*;
I am *jealous/zealous*
for *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem* and for *Zion Siyon*

ZECHAR YAH 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH VEH IS ENRAGED WITH THE FATHERS

1 In the eighth month,
in the second year of Daryavesh,
so be the word of Yah Veh to Zechar Yah
the son of Berech Yah the son of Iddo the prophet,
saying,
2 In enraging, Yah Veh enraged over your fathers.
3 You, say to them, Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
You, turn to me, says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
and I turn to you
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth.
4 Become not as your fathers
to whom the former prophets called out,
saying thus:
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
Turn, I beseech, from your evil ways
and from your evil exploits!
— and they neither heard nor hearkened to me
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
5 Your fathers, where are they?
And the prophets, live they eternally?
6 Only, my words and my statutes
which I misvahed to my servants the prophets,
overtook they not your fathers?
And they return and say,
As Yah Veh Sabaoth intrigues to work to us,
according to our ways and our exploits,
works he thus with us.
THE RIDER ON THE RED HORSE
7 On the twenty—fourth day
of the eleventh month, the month Shebat,
in the second year of Daryavesh,
so be the word of Yah Veh to Zechar Yah
the son of Berech Yah the son of Iddo the prophet,
saying,
8 I see by night, and behold,
a man riding on a red horse;
and he stands among the myrtle trees, in the shade;
and behind him, horses — red, bay, and white.
9 And I say, O my adoni, what are these?
And the angel wording with me says to me,
I — I have you see what these are.
10 And the man standing among the myrtle trees
answers and says,
These are they whom Yah Veh sends
to walk to and fro through the earth.
11 And they answer the angel of Yah Veh
standing among the myrtle trees, and say,
We walk to and fro through the earth,
and behold, all the earth settles and rests.
12 And the angel of Yah Veh answers and says,
O Yah Veh Sabaoth,
how long mercy you not
Yeru Shalem and the cities of Yah Hudah,
against whom you enraged these seventy years?
13 And Yah Veh answers the angel
who is wording with me
with words of good and words of solaces.
14 And the angel wording with me
says to me, Call out, saying,
Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
I am jealous/zealous for Yeru Shalem and for Siyon

ZECHARIAH 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 with a great jealousy/zeal.
And **in my enraging**,
I am *very sore displeased* **greatly enraged**
with the *heathen* **goyim** that *are at ease* **relax**:
for I was but a little *displeased* **enraged**,
and they helped *forward the affliction* **for the evil**.
16 Therefore thus saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**;
I am returned to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** with mercies:
my house shall be built in it,
saith the LORD of hosts **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
and a line shall be *stretched forth* **spread**
upon *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
17 Cry yet **Call out**, saying,
Thus saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
My cities through *prosperity* **good**
shall yet be *spread abroad* **scattered**;
and *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall yet *comfort Zion* **sigh over Siyon**,
and shall yet choose *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
THE FOUR HORNS
18 Then lifted I up mine eyes, and saw,
and behold four horns.
19 And I said unto the angel that *talked* **worded** with me,
What be these?
And he *answered* **said to me**,
These are the horns
which have *scattered Judah* **winnowed Yah Hudah**,
Israel **Yisra El**, and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
THE FOUR ENGRAVERS
20 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
shewed me **had me see** four *carpenters* **engravers**.
21 Then said I, What come these to *do* **work**?
And he *spake*, saying,
These are the horns
which have *scattered Judah* **winnowed Yah Hudah**,
so that no **mouth of** man *did lift up* **lifted** his head:
but these are come to *fray* **tremble** them,
to *cast out* **hand toss** the horns of the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
which *lifted up* their horn
over the land of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
to *scatter* **winnow** it.
THE MAN WITH THE MEASURING LINE
2 I lifted up mine eyes again, and *looked* **saw**,
and behold a man with a measuring line in his hand.
2 Then said I, Whither goest thou?
And he said unto me,
To measure *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
to see what is the breadth *thereof*,
and what is the length *thereof*.
3 And, behold,
the angel that *talked* **worded** with me went forth,
and another angel went out to meet him,
4 And said unto him, Run,
speak **word to this young man** *yonder lad*, saying,
Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem** shall be *inhabited* **settled**
as *towns without walls* **suburbs**
for the *multitude* **abundance** of *men* **humanity**
and *cattle therein* **animals in her midst**:
5 For I,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
will **shall** be unto her a wall of fire round about,
and *will* **shall** be the *glory* **honour** in the midst of her.
6 Ho, ho, *come forth*, and flee from the land of the north,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**:
for I have spread you *abroad*
as the four winds of the *heaven* **heavens**,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
7 *Deliver* **Rescue** thyself, O *Zion* **Ho Siyon**,
that *dwestest* **settlest** with the daughter of *Babylon* **Babel**.
8 For thus saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
After the *glory* **honour** hath he sent me
unto the *nations* **goyim** which spoiled you:
for he that toucheth you
toucheth the *apple* **pupil** of his eye.
9 For, behold, I *will* **shall** shake mine hand upon them,
and they shall be a spoil to their servants:
and ye shall know
that *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth** hath sent me.
10 Sing **Shout** and rejoice **cheer**, O daughter of *Zion* **Siyon**:

ZECHAR YAH 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 with a great jealousy/zeal:
and in my enraging,
I enrage greatly with the goyim who relax:
for I was but a little enraged,
and they helped for evil.
16 So thus says Yah Veh:
I return to Yeru Shalem with mercies:
build my house therein
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
and spread a line on Yeru Shalem:
17 call out, saying,
Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
My cities scatter through good;
and Yah Veh still sighs over Siyon,
and still chooses Yeru Shalem.
THE FOUR HORNS
18 Then I lift my eyes, and see,
and behold, four horns:
19 and I say to the angel wording with me,
What are these?
And he says to me,
These are the horns that winnow Yah Hudah,
Yisra El, and Yeru Shalem.
THE FOUR ENGRAVERS
20 And Yah Veh shows me four engravers:
21 and I say, What approach these to work?
And he speaks, saying,
These are the horns that winnow Yah Hudah,
so that no mouth of man lifts his head:
and these approach to tremble them,
to hand toss the horns of the goyim,
whio lift their horn over the land of Yah Hudah
to winnow it.
THE MAN WITH THE MEASURING LINE
2 And I lift my eyes, and see:
2 and behold, a man with a measuring line in his hand:
and I say, Where go you?
And he says to me, To measure Yeru Shalem,
to see what the breadth and what the length are.
3 And behold, the angel wording with me comes;
4 and another angel comes to meet him,
and says to him, Run!
Word to yonder lad, saying,
Yeru Shalem settles the suburbs
because of the abundance of humanity
and animals midst her:
5 and I
— an oracle of Yah Veh
— I am to her a wall of fire all around,
and I am for honor midst her.
6 Ho, ho, and flee from the land of the north
— an oracle of Yah Veh
for I spread you as the four winds of the heavens
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
7 Rescue yourself, Ho, Siyon,
who settles with the daughter of Babel.
8 For thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
After the honor he sends me
to the goyim who spoiled you:
for he who touches you touches the pupil of his eye.
9 For, behold, I shake my hand on them,
and they become a spoil to their servants:
and you know that Yah Veh Sabaoth sent me.
10 Shout and cheer, O daughter of Siyon:

ZECHARIAH 2—4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for, lo **behold**, I come,
and I *will dwell* **shall tabernacle** in the midst of thee,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh.**

11 And many *nations* **goyim**
shall be joined to *the LORD* **Yah Veh** in that day,
and shall be my people:
and I *will* **shall** dwell in the midst of thee,
and thou shalt know
that *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
hath sent me unto thee.

12 And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** shall inherit *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
his *portion* **allotment** in the holy *land* **soil**,
and shall choose *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** again.

13 *Be silent* **Hush**, O all flesh,
before the LORD **at the face of Yah Veh:**
for he is *raised up* **awaketh** out of his holy habitation.

YAH SHUA THE GREAT PRIEST

3 And he *shewed me* **had me see**
Joshua **Yah Shua** the *high* **great** priest
standing *before* **at the face of**
the angel of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**,

2 and Satan standing at his right *hand* to **resist** **oppose** him.
And *the LORD* **Yah Veh** said unto Satan,
The LORD **Yah Veh** rebuke thee, O Satan;
even the LORD **Yah Veh**

that hath chosen *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
rebuke thee:
is not this a brand *plucked* **rescued** out of the fire?

3 Now *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
was *clothed* **enrobed** with *filthy garments* **dungy clothes**,
and stood *before* **at the face of** the angel.

4 And he answered and *spake* **said**
unto those that stood *before him* **at his face**, saying,
Take away **Turn aside** the *filthy garments* **dungy clothes**
from him.

And unto him he said, *Behold* **See**,
I have caused *thine iniquity* **thy perversity**
to pass from thee,
and I *will clothe* **shall enrobe** thee
with change of *raiment* **mantles**.

5 And I said,
Let them set a *fair mitre* **pure turban** upon his head.
So they set a *fair mitre* **pure turban** upon his head,
and *clothed* **enrobed** him with *garments* **clothes**.

6 And the angel of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** stood by.
And the angel of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
protested **witnessed** unto *Joshua* **Yah Shua**, saying,
7 Thus *saith the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;

If thou *wilt* **shalt** walk in my ways,
and if thou *wilt keep* **shalt guard** my *charge* **guard**,
then thou shalt also *judge* **plead the cause in** my house,
and shalt also *keep* **guard** my courts,
and I *will* **shall** give thee places to walk
among these that stand by.

THE SPROUT

8 Hear now I **beseech**,
O *Joshua* **Yah Shua** the *high* **great** priest, thou,
and thy *fellows* **friends** that sit *before thee* **at thy face**:
for they are men *wondered at* **of omens**:

for, behold,
I *will* **shall** bring forth my servant the *BRANCH* **SPROUT**.

9 For behold the stone
that I have *laid* **given**
before Joshua **at the face of Yah Shua**;
upon one stone shall be seven eyes:
behold,

I *will* **shall** engrave the *graving* **engraving** thereof,
saith the LORD of hosts **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
and I *will remove* **shall depart**
the *iniquity* **perversity** of that land
in one day.

10 In that day,
saith the LORD of hosts **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
shall ye call every man his *neighbour* **friend**
under the vine and under the fig tree.

THE GOLDEN MENORAH AND THE TWO OLIVES

4 And the angel that *talked* **worded** with me
came again **returned**, and waked me,
as a man that is wakened out of his sleep.

ZECHAR YAH 2—4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for behold, I come and I tabernacle among you
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

11 And many goyim join Yah Veh in that day,
and become my people:
and I dwell midst you;
and you know that Yah Veh Sabaoth sent me to you:
12 And Yah Veh inherits Yah Hudah,
his allotment on the holy soil,
and again chooses Yeru Shalem.

13 Hush, O all flesh, at the face of Yah Veh:
for he wakens from his holy habitation.

YAH SHUA THE GREAT PRIEST

3 And he shows me Yah Shua the great priest
standing at the face of the angel of Yah Veh;
and Satan standing at his right to oppose him.

2 And Yah Veh says to Satan,
Yah Veh rebuke you, O Satan;
Yah Veh who chooses Yeru Shalem
rebukes you:
Is not this a brand rescued from the fire?

3 Yah Shua enrobes with dungy clothes
and stands at the face of the angel:
4 and he answers and says to them
standing at his face, saying,
Turn aside his dungy clothes.

And to him he says, See,
I pass your perversity from you;
and I enrobe you with change of mantles.

5 He also says,
Set a pure turban on his head.
— and they set a pure turban on his head,
and enrobe him with clothes.

6 And the angel of Yah Veh stands by;
and the angel of Yah Veh witnesses to Yah Shua,
saying,

7 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
If you walk in my ways and if you guard my guard,
then you also plead the cause in my house
and also guard my courts;
and I give you places to walk
among these standing by.

THE SPROUT

8 Hear I beseech, O Yah Shua the great priest
— you and your friends sitting at your face:
for they are men of omens:
for behold, I bring forth my servant the SPROUT.
9 For behold, the stone I give at the face of Yah Shua;
on one stone are seven eyes:
behold, I engrave the engraving
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
and I depart the perversity from that land in one day.

10 In that day,
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
you, have every man call his friend
under the vine and under the fig tree.

THE GOLDEN MENORAH AND THE TWO OLIVES

4 And the angel wording with me
returns and wakens me
— as a man wakens from his sleep:

ZECHARIAH 4, 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

2 And said unto me, What seest thou?
And I said, I *have looked* **saw**, and behold,
a *candlestick* **menorah** all of gold,
with a bowl upon the top of it,
and his seven lamps thereon,
and seven *pipes* **tubes** to the seven lamps,
which are upon the top *thereof*:
3 And two *olive trees* **olives** by it,
one upon the right *side* of the bowl,
and *the other* **one** upon the left *side thereof*.
4 So I answered
and *spake* **said** to the angel that *talked* **worded** with me,
saying, What are these, my *lord* **Adonay**?
5 Then the angel that *talked* **worded** with me
answered and said unto me,
Knowest thou not what these be?
And I said, No, my *lord* **Adonay**.
6 Then he answered and *spake* **said** unto me, saying,
This is the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
unto *Zerubbabel* **Zerub Babel**, saying,
Not by *might* **valour**, nor by *power* **force**,
but by my spirit,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
7 Who art thou, O great mountain?
before Zerubbabel **at the face of Zerub Babel**
thou shalt become a plain:
and he shall bring forth the headstone *thereof*
with *shoutings* **clamors**,
crying, Grace, grace **Charism, charism** unto it.
8 Moreover
the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** came unto me, saying,
9 The hands of *Zerubbabel* **Zerub Babel**
have laid the foundation of this house;
his hands shall also *finish it* **clip**;
and thou shalt know
that the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
hath sent me unto you.
10 For who hath *despised* **disrespected**
the day of *small things* **the lesser**?
for they shall *rejoice* **cheer**,
and shall see the *plummet* **tin weight**
in the hand of *Zerubbabel* **Zerub Babel**:
with those seven;
they are the eyes of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
which *run to and fro* **flit** through the whole earth.
11 Then answered I, and said unto him,
What are these two *olive trees* **olives**
upon the right *side* of the *candlestick* **menorah**
and upon the left *side thereof*?
12 And I answered *again* **secondly**, and said unto him,
What be these two olive branches
which *through by the hand of* the two golden *pipes* **tubes**
empty **pour out** the golden *oil* out of themselves?
13 And he *answered* **said to me and said saying**,
Knowest thou not what these be?
And I said, No, my *lord* **Adonay**.
14 Then said he,
These are the two *anointed ones* **sons of oil**,
that stand by the *Lord* **Adonay** of the whole earth.

THE FLYING ROLL

5 Then I turned, and lifted up mine eyes,
and *looked* **saw**, and behold, a flying roll.
2 And he said unto me, What seest thou?
And I *answered* **said**, I see a flying roll;
the length *thereof* is twenty cubits,
and the breadth *thereof* ten cubits.
3 Then said he unto me,
This is the *curse* **oath**
that goeth forth over the face of the whole earth:
for every one that stealeth shall be *cut off* **exonerated**
as on this side *according to it* **thus**;
and every one that *swaureth* **oatheth**
shall be *cut off* **exonerated**
as on that side *according to it* **thus**.
4 I *will* **shall** bring it forth,
saith the LORD of hosts **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
and it shall enter into the house of the thief,
and into the house of him
that *swaureth* **oatheth** falsely by my name:

ZECHAR YAH 4, 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

2 and says to me, What see you?
And I say, I see, and behold,
a menorah all of gold
with a bowl on the top of it
and his seven lamps on it
and seven tubes to the seven lamps on the top:
and two olives by it;
one on the right of the bowl and one on the left.
4 And I answer and say to the angel wording with me,
saying, What are these, my Adonay?
5 And the angel wording with me
answers and says to me,
Know you not what these *are*?
And I say, No, my Adonay.
6 And he answers and says to me, saying,
This is the word of Yah Veh to Zerub Babel, saying,
Neither by valour nor by force;
but by my spirit, says Yah Veh Sabaoth.
7 Who are you, O great mountain?
at the face of Zerub Babel you *are but* a plain:
and he brings forth the headstone with clamors,
Charism! Charism to it!
8 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
9 The hands of Zerub Babel founded this house;
and his hands clip;
and you know Yah Veh Sabaoth sent me to you.
10 For who disrespects the day of the lesser?
they cheer,
and see the tin weight in the hand of Zerub Babel:
these seven *are* the eyes of Yah Veh
flitting through the whole earth.
11 And I answer and say to him,
What *are* these two olives
on the right and on the left of the menorah?
12 And I answer secondly, and say to him,
What *are* these two olive branches
by the hand of the two golden tubes
pouring the golden *oil* from themselves?
13 And he says to me, saying,
Know you not what these *are*?
And I say, No, my Adonay.
14 And he says,
These are the two sons of oil
standing by the Adonay of the whole earth.

THE FLYING ROLL

5 And I turn and lift my eyes and see;
and behold, a flying roll:
and he says to me, What see you?
And I say, I see a flying roll;
the length twenty cubits and the breadth ten cubits.
3 And he says to me,
This *is* the oath
going over the face of the whole earth:
for every one who steals *is* exonerated
as on this side, thus;
and every one who oaths *is* exonerated
as on that side, thus.
4 I bring it forth
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
and it enters into the house of the thief
and into his house who oaths falsely by my name:

ZECHARIAH 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and it shall *remain* **stay overnight**
in the midst of his house,
and shall *consume* **finish it off**
with the timber *thereof* and the stones *thereof*.

5 Then the angel that *talked* **worded** with me went forth,
and said unto me, Lift *up now* thine eyes,
and see what is this that goeth *forth*.
6 And I said, What is it?
And he said, This is an ephah that goeth forth.
He said *moreover*,
This is their *resemblance* **eye** through all the earth.
7 And, behold, there was lifted up a *talent* **round** of lead:
and this is a **one** woman
that sitteth in the midst of the ephah.
8 And he said, This is wickedness.
And he cast it into the midst of the ephah;
and he cast the *weight* **stone** of lead
upon the mouth *thereof*.
9 Then lifted I up mine eyes,
and *looked* **saw**, and, behold,
there came out two women,
and the wind was in their wings;
for *they* **these** had wings like the wings of a stork:
and they lifted up the ephah
between the earth and **between** the *heaven* **heavens**.
10 Then said I to the angel that *talked* **worded** with me,
Whither do these *bear* **carry** the ephah?
11 And he said unto me,
To build it an house in the land of Shinar:
and it shall be established,
and set there upon her own *base*.

THE EPDAH

ZECHAR YAH 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and it stays overnight midst his house
and finishes it off with the timber and the stones.

5 And the angel wording with me
comes and says to me,
Lift your eyes, and see what this is that goes.
6 And I say, What is it?
And he says, This is the ephah coming.
And he says, This is their eye through all the earth.
7 And behold, a round of lead lifting:
and this is one woman sitting midst the ephah.
8 And he says, This is wickedness!
— and he casts it midst the ephah;
and he casts the stone of lead on the mouth.
9 And I lift my eyes and see, and behold,
two women come with the wind in their wings;
— wings as the wings of a stork:
and they lift the ephah
between the earth and between the heavens.
10 Then I say to the angel wording with me,
Where carry they the ephah?
11 And he says to me,
To build a house in the land of Shinar:
and to establish and set there on her own.

THE EPDAH

6 THE FOUR CHARIOTS

6 And I turned, and lifted up mine eyes,
and *looked* **saw**, and, behold,
there came four chariots
out from between two mountains;
and the mountains were mountains of *brass* **copper**.
2 in the first chariot were red horses;
and in the second chariot *black* **dark** horses;
3 And in the third chariot white horses;
and in the fourth chariot grisled and *bay* **strong** horses.
4 Then I answered
and said unto the angel that *talked* **worded** with me,
What are these, my *lord* **Adonay**?
5 And the angel answered and said unto me,
These are the four *spirits* **spirits/winds** of the heavens,
which go forth from standing
before the Lord **in front of Adonay** of all the earth.
6 The *black* **dark** horses which are therein
go forth into the north *country* **land**;
and the white go forth after them;
and the grisled go forth toward the south *country* **land**.
7 And the *bay* **strong** went forth,
and sought to go that **in walking**,
they might walk *to and fro* through the earth:
and he said, Get you hence,
in walking, walk *to and fro* through the earth.
So **in walking**, they walked *to and fro* through the earth.
8 Then cried he upon me, and *spake* **worded** unto me,
saying, *Behold* **See**,
these that go toward the north *country* **land**
have *quieted* **rested** my spirit in the north *country* **land**.

YAH SHUA CROWNED

9 And the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** came unto me,
saying,
10 Take of *them of the captivity* **the exile**,
even of Heldai **Helday**, of *Tobijah* **Tobi Yah**,
and of *Jedaiah* **Yeda Yah**,
which are come from *Babylon* **Babel**,
and come thou the same day,
and go into the house of *Josiah* **Yoshi Yah**
the son of *Zephaniah* **Sephan Yah**;
11 Then take silver and gold, and *make* **work** crowns,
and set them upon the head of *Joshua* **Yah Shua**
the son of *Josedech* **Yah Sadaq**, the *high* **great** priest;
12 And *speak* **say** unto him, saying,
Thus *speake*th the *LORD of hosts* **saith Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
saying,

THE FOUR CHARIOTS

6 And I turn and lift my eyes and see,
and behold,
four chariots coming from between two mountains;
and the mountains *are* mountains of copper.
2 In the first chariot, red horses;
and in the second chariot, dark horses;
3 and in the third chariot, white horses;
and in the fourth chariot, grisled and strong horses.
4 And I answer
and say to the angel wording with me,
What are these, my Adonay?
5 And the angel answers and says to me,
These are the four *spirits/winds* of the heavens,
coming from standing
in front of Adonay of all the earth:
6 the dark horses therein go into the north land;
and the white go after them;
and the grisled go toward the south land:
7 and the strong go,
and seek to go walking — walking through the earth:
and he says, Go!
In walking, walk through the earth.
— and in walking, they walk through the earth.
8 And he cries on me, and words to me, saying,
See, these going toward the north land
rest my spirit in the north land.
9 And so be the word of Yah Veh to me, saying,
10 Take of the exiles
— of Helday, of Tobi Yah and of Yeda Yah
who come from Babel,
and come the same day,
and go into the house of Yoshi Yah
the son of Sephan Yah:
11 and take silver and gold, and work crowns;
and set them on the head of Yah Shua
the son of Yah Sadaq the great priest;
12 and say to him, saying,
Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
saying,

YAH SHUA CROWNED

ZECHARIAH 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Behold the man whose name is The **BRANCH SPROUT**;
and he shall *grow up* **sprout** out of his place,
and he shall build
the *temple* **manse of the LORD Yah Veh**:
Even he
shall build the *temple* **manse of the LORD Yah Veh**;
and he shall bear the *glory* **majesty**,
and shall sit and *rule* **reign** upon his throne;
and he shall be a priest upon his throne:
and the counsel of *peace* **shalom**
shall be between them both.
And the crowns shall be to Helem,
and to *Tobijah* **Tobi Yah**, and to *Jedaiah* **Yeda Yah**,
and to Hen the son of *Zephaniah* **Sephan Yah**,
for a memorial
in the *temple* **manse of the LORD Yah Veh**.
And they that are far off shall come
and build in the *temple* **manse of the LORD Yah Veh**,
and ye shall know
that the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
hath sent me unto you.
And this shall *come to pass* **become**,
if in *hearkening*, ye will *diligently obey* **shall hearken**
unto the voice of the *LORD Yah Veh* your *God* **Elohim**.

CONCERNING FASTING

7 And **so be** it came to pass,
in the fourth year of *king Darius* **sovereign Daryavesh**,
that the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*
came unto *Zechariah* **Zechar Yah**
in the fourth *day* of the ninth month,
even in **Chisleu Kislav**;
2 When they had sent unto the house of *God El*
Sherezzer **Shareser** and *Regemmelech* **Regem Melech**,
and their men,
to *pray before the LORD* **stroke the face of Yah Veh**,
3 And to *speak* **say** unto the priests which were in
the house of the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
and to the prophets, saying,
should I weep in the fifth month,
separating myself,
as I have *done* **worked** these so many years?
4 Then came the word
of the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth** unto me, saying,
5 Speak unto all the people of the land, and to the priests,
saying,
When ye fasted and *mourned* **chopped**
in the fifth and seventh *month*,
even those seventy years,
did ye at all fast **in fasting, fasted ye** unto me,
even to me?
6 And when ye *did eat* **ate**, and when ye *did drink* **drank**,
did not ye eat for yourselves **ate ye not**,
and *drink* **drank ye not for yourselves them?**
7 *Should ye not hear* **Are not these** the words
which the *LORD Yah Veh* hath *cried* **called out**
by **the hand of** the former prophets,
when *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
was *inhabited* **settled** and *in prosperity* **serene**,
and the cities *thereof* round about her,
when *men inhabited* **they settled** the south
and the *plain* **lowland**?
8 And the word of the *LORD Yah Veh*
came unto *Zechariah* **Zechar Yah**, saying,
9 Thus *speaketh* **saith**
the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**, saying,
Execute true judgment **Judge judgment in truth**,
and *shew* **work** mercy and *compassions* **mercies**
every man to his brother:
10 And oppress not the widow, nor the *fatherless* **orphan**,
the *stranger* **sojourner**, nor the *poor* **humble**;
and let *none* **no man** of you *imagine* **fabricate** evil
against his brother in your heart.
11 But they refused to hearken,
and *pulled away the* **gave a revolting** shoulder,
and *stopped* **made heavy** their ears,
that they should not hear.
12 Yea, they *made* **set** their hearts
as an *adamant stone* **a brier**,
lest they should hear the *law* **torah**,

ZECHAR YAH 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Behold the man whose name is The **SPROUT**;
and he sprouts from his place
and he builds the manse of Yah Veh:
yes, he builds the manse of Yah Veh;
and he bears the majesty
and sits and reigns on his throne;
and he becomes a priest on his throne:
and the counsel of shalom
becomes between them both.
13
14 And the crown is to Helem
and to Tobi Yah and to Yeda Yah
and to Hen the son of Sephan Yah,
for a memorial in the manse of Yah Veh.
15 And they who are far off
come and build in the manse of Yah Veh;
and you know Yah Veh Sabaoth sends me to you.
And so be it,
if in hearkening,
you hearken to the voice of Yah Veh your Elohim.

CONCERNING FASTING

7 And so be it,
in the fourth year of sovereign Daryavesh,
so be the word of Yah Veh to Zechar Yah
in the fourth of the ninth month, in Kislav;
2 and Beth El
sends Shareser and Regem Melech and their men
to stroke the face of Yah Veh;
3 and to say
to the priests in the house of Yah Veh Sabaoth
and to the prophets, saying,
Weep I, in the fifth month, separating myself,
as I worked these so many years?
4 And so be the word of Yah Veh Sabaoth to me,
saying,
5 Speak to all the people of the land
and to the priests, saying,
When you fasted and chopped
in the fifth and seventh
— even these seventy years,
in fasting, fasted you to me — me?
6 And when you ate and when you drank
ate you not,
and drank you not for yourselves?
7 Are not these the words Yah Veh called out
by the hand of the former prophets
when Yeru Shalem settled serene?
And the cities all around her
when they settled the south and the lowland?
8 And so be the word of Yah Veh to Zechar Yah,
saying,
9 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
saying, Judge judgment in truth,
and every man,
work mercy and mercies to his brother:
10 and oppress not
widow and orphan, sojourner and humble;
and no man of you
fabricate evil against his brother in your heart.
11 And they refuse to hearken;
and give a revolting shoulder
and heavy their ears that they hear not.
12 Yes, they set their hearts as a brier
lest they hear the torah

ZECHARIAH 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the words which the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth hath sent in his spirit by the hand of the former prophets: therefore came a great wrath rage from the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth.
13 Therefore it is come to pass become, that as he cried called out, and they would should not hear; so they cried called out, and I would should not hear, saith the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth:
14 But I scattered stormed them with a whirlwind among all the nations goyim whom they knew not. Thus the land was desolate desolated after them, that no man one passed through nor returned: for they laid the pleasant set the land of desire desolate.

THE NEW RELATIONSHIP OF YAH VEH WITH YISRA EL

8 Again the word of the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth came to me, saying,
2 Thus saith the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth; I was jealous/zealous for Zion Siyon with great jealousy/zeal, and I was jealous/zealous for her with great fury.
3 Thus saith the LORD Yah Veh; I am returned unto Zion Siyon, and will dwell shall tabernacle in the midst of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem: and Jerusalem Yeru Shalem shall be called a city of truth; and the mountain of the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth the holy mountain.
4 Thus saith the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth; There shall yet old men eldermen and old women elderwomen dwell settle in the streets broadways of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem, and every man with his staff crutch in his hand for very age abundance of days.
5 And the streets broadways of the city shall be full filled of boys and girls playing in the streets broadways thereof.
6 Thus saith the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth; If it be marvellous in the eyes of the remnant survivors of this people in these days, should it not also be marvellous in mine eyes? saith the LORD of hosts an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth.
7 Thus saith the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth; Behold, I will save am the saviour of my people from the east country land of the rising, and from the west country land of the entrance of the sun;
8 And I will shall bring them, and they shall dwell tabernacle in the midst of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem: and they shall be my people, and I will be I am their God Elohim, in truth and in righteousness justness.
9 Thus saith the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth; Let your hands be strong, ye that hear in these days, these words by the mouth of the prophets, which were in the day that the foundation of the house of the LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth was laid founded, that the temple manse might be built.
10 For before at the face of these days there was no hire for man humanity, nor any hire for beast animal; neither was there any peace shalom to him that went out or came in because of the affliction tribulation: for I set send all men humanity every one man against his neighbour friend.
11 But now I will shall not be unto the residue survivors of this people as in the former days, saith the LORD of hosts an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth.
12 For the seed shall be prosperous at shalom; the vine shall give her fruit,

ZECHAR YAH 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the words Yah Veh Sabaoth sends his spirit by the hand of the former prophets: and so be it, a great rage from Yah Veh Sabaoth. and so be it, as he calls, and they hearken not; thus they call, and I hearken not, says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
14 and I storm them among all the goyim whom they know not: and thus desolate the land after them, so that one neither passes through nor returns: for they desolate their land of desire.

THE NEW RELATIONSHIP OF YAH VEH WITH YISRA EL

8 And so be the word of Yah Veh Sabaoth, saying,
2 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth: I am jealous/zealous for Siyon with great jealousy/zeal and I am jealous/zealous for her with great fury.
3 Thus says Yah Veh: I return to Siyon, and tabernacle midst Yeru Shalem: and call Yeru Shalem, The City of Truth; and the mountain of Yah Veh Sabaoth, The Holy Mountain.
4 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth: and eldermen and elderwomen still settle there in the broadways of Yeru Shalem; and every man with his crutch in his hand because of abundance of days: and the broadways of the city fill with boys and girls playing in the broadways.
5 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth: If it is marvellous in the eyes of the survivors of this people in these days, is it not also marvellous in my eyes? — an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth.
6 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth: Behold, I am the saviour of my people from the land of the rising and from the land of the entrance of the sun: and I bring them, and they tabernacle midst Yeru Shalem: and they become my people, and I am their Elohim in truth and in justness.
7 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth: Strengthen your hands you, who in these days, hear these words by the mouth of the prophets, of the day of founding the house of Yah Veh Sabaoth, to build the manse.
8 For ere the face of these days there was neither hire for humanity, nor any hire for animal; nor any shalom to him who comes or goes because of the tribulation: for I sent all humanity — every man against his friend.
9 And now I am not to the survivors of this people as in the former days — an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth.
10 For the seed has shalom; the vine gives her fruit

ZECHARIAH 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the *ground* **earth** shall give her *increase* **produce**,
and the heavens shall give their dew;
and I *will* **shall** cause
the *remnant* **survivors** of this people
to possess all these *things*.
13 And **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
that as ye were a *curse* **an abasement**
among the *heathen* **goyim**,
O house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and house of *Israel* **Yisra El**;
so *will* **shall** I save you, and ye shall be a blessing:
fear **awe** not, *but let* **strengthen** your hands *be strong*.
14 For thus saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
As I *thought* **intrigued** to *punish* **vilify** you,
when your fathers *provoked* **enraged** me to *wrath*,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
and I *repented* **sighed** not:
15 So *again* have I *thought* **turned back and intrigued**
in these days to *do well*—**please**
unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
and to the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**:
fear **awe** ye not.
16 These are the *things* **words** that ye shall *do* **work**;
Speak **Word** ye every man
the truth to his *neighbour* **friend**;
execute the judgment of truth **judge truth and judgment**
and *peace* **shalom** in your *gates* **portals**:
17 And let *none* **no man** of you
imagine **fabricate** evil in your hearts
against his *neighbour* **friend**;
and love no false oath:
for all these are *things* **those** that I hate,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
18 And the word of the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
came unto me, saying,
19 Thus saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
The fast of the fourth *month*, and the fast of the fifth,
and the fast of the seventh, and the fast of the tenth,
shall be to the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
joy **rejoicing** and *gladness* **cheerfulness**,
and *cheerful feasts* **good seasons**;
therefore love the truth and *peace* **shalom**.
20 Thus saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
It shall yet come to pass,
that there shall **yet** come people,
and the *inhabitants* **settlers** of many cities:
21 And the *inhabitants* **settlers** of one city
shall go to *another one*, saying,
Let us go speedily
to *pray before the LORD* **stroke the face of Yah Veh**,
and to seek the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**:
I *will* **shall** go also.
22 Yea, many people and *strong nations* **mighty goyim**
shall come to seek the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and to *pray before the LORD* **stroke the face of Yah Veh**.
23 Thus saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
In those days **so be** it *shall come to pass*,
that ten men shall take hold
out of all *languages* **tongues** of the *nations* **goyim**,
even shall take hold of the *skirt* **wing**
of *him that is a Jew* **a man Yah Hudyi**,
saying, We *will* **shall** go with you:
for we have heard that *God* **Elohim** is with you.

THE BURDEN OF YAH VEH

9 The burden of the word of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
in the land of *Hadrach*,
and *Damascus* **Dammeseq** shall be the rest *thereof*:
when the eyes of *man* **humanity**,
as of all the *tribes* **scions of Israel** **Yisra El**,
shall be toward the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
2 And *Hamath* also shall border thereby;
Tyrus **Sor**, and *Zidon* **Sidon**,
though it be *very wise* **mightily enwisened**.
3 And *Tyrus* **Sor**
did build **built** herself a *strong hold* **rampart**,
and heaped *up* silver as the dust,
and *fine gold* **ore** as the mire of the *streets* **outways**.
4 Behold, *the Lord* **will Adonay** **shall** cast her out,

ZECHAR YAH 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the earth gives her produce
and the heavens give their dew:
and I have the survivors of this people
to possess all these.
13 And so be it,
as you *were* an abasement among the goyim,
O house of Yah Hudah and house of Yisra El,
thus I save you, and you become a blessing:
awe not; strengthen your hands.
14 For thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
As I intrigued to vilify you
when your fathers enraged me,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
and I sighed not:
15 thus in these days,
I return to intrigue and well—please Yeru Shalem
and the house of Yah Hudah.
Awe not.
16 These are the words you work;
Every man of you, word truth to his friend;
judge truth and judgment of shalom in your portals:
17 and no man of you
fabricate evil in your hearts against his friend;
and love no false oath:
for all these are those that I hate
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
18 And so be the word of Yah Veh Sabaoth to me,
saying,
19 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
The fast of the fourth and the fast of the fifth
and the fast of the seventh and the fast of the tenth
are for rejoicing and cheerfulness and good seasons;
to the house of Yah Hudah:
so love truth and shalom.
20 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
People and settlers of many cities still come:
21 and the settlers of one come to one, saying,
We go speedily to stroke the face of Yah Veh
and to seek Yah Veh Sabaoth:
I go — even I.
22 Yes, many people and mighty goyim
come to seek Yah Veh Sabaoth in Yeru Shalem
and to stroke the face of Yah Veh.
23 Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
In those days, so be it,
ten men from all tongues of the goyim,
take hold — even take hold of the wing of a man
— a Yah Hudyi,
saying, We go with you:
for we hear that Elohim *is* with you.

THE BURDEN OF YAH VEH

9 The burden of the word of Yah Veh
against the land of *Hadrach*
and *Dammeseq* its place of rest:
when the eyes of humanity
and all the scions of Yisra El
are toward Yah Veh;
and *Hamath* borders thereby;
and *Sor* and *Sidon* enwisened mightily;
3 and *Sor* builds herself a rampart;
and heaps silver as the dust
and ore as the mire of the outways.
4 Behold, Adonay casts her out

ZECHARIAH 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and he *will* shall smite her power **valiant** in the sea;
and she shall be *devoured* **consumed** with fire.
5 Ashkelon shall see it , and *fear* **awe**;
Gaza **Azzah** also shall see it,
and be *very sorrowful* **writh** **mightily**, and Ekron **Eqron**;
for her expectation shall be ashamed;
and the *king* **sovereign**
shall *perish* **destruct** from Gaza **Azzah**,
and Ashkelon shall not be *inhabited* **settled**.
6 And a *bastard* **mongrel** shall *dwell* **settle** in Ashdod,
and I *will* shall cut off
the *pride* **pomp** of the *Philistines* **Peleshethiym**.
7 And I *will* take away shall **turn aside**
his blood out of his mouth,
and his abominations from between his teeth:
but he that *remaineth* **surviveth**,
even he, shall be for our *God* **Elohim**,
and he shall be
as a *governor* **chiliarch** in Judah **Yah Hudah**,
and Ekron **Eqron** as a *Jebusite* **Yebusiy**.
8 And I *will* shall encamp about mine house
because of the *army* **station**,
because of him that passeth by,
and because of him that returneth:
and no *oppressor* **exactor**
shall pass through them any more:
for now have I seen with mine eyes.

THE SAVING SOVEREIGN

9 *Rejoice greatly* **Twirl mightily**,
O daughter of *Zion* **Siyon**;
shout, O daughter of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
behold, thy *King* **Sovereign** cometh unto thee:
he is just, and *having salvation* **saving**;
lowly **humble**, and riding upon *an ass* **a burro**,
and upon a colt the *foal of an ass* **son of a she burro**.
10 And I *will* shall cut off
the chariot from *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
and the horse from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and the *battle* **war** bow shall be cut off:
and he shall *speak peace* **word shalom**
unto the *heathen* **goyim**:
and his dominion shall be from sea *even* to sea,
and from the river *even* to the *ends* **finalities** of the earth.
11 As for thee also,
by the blood of thy covenant
I have sent forth thy prisoners
out of the *pit* **well** wherein is no water.
12 Turn you to the *strong hold* **fortress**,
ye prisoners of hope:
even to day *do I declare* **I tell**
that I *will* **render** shall **return** double unto thee;
13 When I have bent *Judah* **Yah Hudah** for me,
filled the bow with *Ephraim* **Ephrayim**,
and *raised up* **wakened** thy sons, O *Zion* **Siyon**,
against thy sons, O *Greece* **Yavan**,
and *made* **set** thee as the sword of a mighty *man*.
14 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall be seen over them,
and his arrow shall go forth as the lightning:
and the *Lord* **GOD Adonay Yah Veh**
shall *blow* **blast** the *trumpet* **shophar**,
and shall go with *whirlwinds* **storms** of the south.
15 The *LORD* of *hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth** shall defend them;
and they shall *devour* **consume**,
and subdue with sling stones;
and they shall drink, and make a noise as through wine;
and they shall be filled like *bowls* **sprinklers**,
and as the corners of the *sacrifice* altar.
16 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**
shall save them in that day as the flock of his people:
for they shall be as the stones of a *crown* **separatism**,
lifted up **raised** as an ensign upon his *land* **soil**.
17 For how great is his goodness,
and how great is his beauty!
corn **crop**
shall make the *young men* **cheerful youths flourish**,
and *new wine* **juice** the *maids* **virgins**.

THE PROVISION OF YAH VEH

10 Ask ye of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** rain
in the time of the *latter* **after** rain;

ZECHAR YAH 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and smites her valiant in the sea;
and fire consumes her:
5 Ashkelon sees and awes;
Azzah also sees and writhes mightily;
and Eqron shames for her expectation;
and the sovereign destructs from Azzah,
and Ashkelon settles not:
6 and a mongrel settles in Ashdod,
and I cut off the pomp of the Peleshethiym:
7 and I turn aside his blood from his mouth,
and his abominations from between his teeth:
and he who survives, even he *is* for our Elohim;
and he becomes as a chiliarch in Yah Hudah,
and Eqron as a Yebusiy.
8 And I encamp around my house
because of those stationed
— because of him who passes by,
and because of him who returns:
and no exactor passes through them any more:
for now I see with my eyes.

THE SAVING SOVEREIGN

9 Twirl mightily, O daughter of Siyon!
Shout, O daughter of Yeru Shalem!
Behold, your Sovereign comes to you:
he is just and saving;
humble — and riding on a burro
and on a colt the son of a she burro.
10 And I cut off the chariot from Ephrayim
and the horse from Yeru Shalem
and cut off the bow of war:
and he words shalom to the goyim:
with his dominion from sea to sea
and from the river to the finalities of the earth.
11 And you,
by the blood of your covenant
I sent your prisoners from the well without water.
12 Turn to the fortress, you prisoners of hope:
even today I tell you that I return double to you;
13 when I bend Yah Hudah for me,
fill the bow with Ephrayim,
and waken your sons, O Siyon,
against your sons, O Yavan,
and set you as the sword of a mighty.
14 And Yah Veh is seen over them,
and his arrow comes as the lightning:
and Adonay Yah Veh blasts the shophar
and comes with storms of the south:
15 Yah Veh Sabaoth defends them;
and they consume, and subdue with sling stones;
and they drink, and make a noise as through wine;
and they fill up as sprinklers
and as the corners of the sacrifice altar.
16 And Yah Veh their Elohim
saves them in that day
as the flock of his people:
for they raise the stones of separatism
as an ensign on his soil.
17 How great his goodness and how great his beauty!
crop flourishes the youths; and juice the virgins.

THE PROVISION OF YAH VEH

10 Ask rain of Yah Veh
in the time of the after rain!

ZECHARIAH 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

so the LORD Yah Veh
shall make bright clouds **work lightnings**,
and give them *showers* **downpours** of rain **downpour**,
to every *one grass* **man herbage** in the field.
2 For the *idols* **teraphim**
have spoken *vanity* **worded mischief**,
and the diviners have seen a *lie* **falsehood**,
and have *told false* **worded vain** dreams;
they *comfort* **sigh** in vain:
therefore they went their way as a flock,
they were *troubled* **answered**,
3 because **that** there was no *shepherd* **tender**.
Mine anger **My wrath**
was kindled against the *shepherds* **tenders**,
and I *punished* **visited** the **he** goats:
for the LORD of hosts **Yah Veh Sabaoth**
hath visited his *flock* **drove**
the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and hath *made* **set** them
as his *goodly* horse of **majesty** in the battle.
4 Out of him came forth the corner,
out of him the *nail* **stake**, out of him the battle bow,
out of him every *oppressor* **extractor** together.
5 And they shall be as mighty *men*,
which *tread down* their *enemies* **trample**
in the mire of the *streets* **outways** in the battle:
and they shall fight,
because the LORD **Yah Veh** is with them,
and the riders on horses shall be *confounded* **shamed**.
6 And I will *strengthen* **prevail mightily**
shall the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**,
and I will **shall** save the house of *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
and I will *bring them again* to *place* **shall resettle** them;
for I have *mercy upon* them:
and they shall be as though I had not cast them off:
for I am the LORD **I — Yah Veh** their *God* **Elohim**,
and will *hear* **shall answer** them.
7 And *they of Ephraim* **Ephrayim**
shall be like a mighty *man*,
and their heart shall *rejoice* **cheer** as through wine:
yea, their *children* **sons** shall see it, and *be glad* **cheer**;
their heart shall *rejoice* **twirl** in the LORD **Yah Veh**.
8 I will **shall** hiss for them, and gather them;
for I have redeemed them:
and they shall *increase* **abound**
as they have *increased* **abounded**.
9 And I will *sow* **shall seed** them among the people:
and they shall remember me *in far countries* **afar off**;
and they shall live with their *children* **sons**,
and *turn again* **return**.
10 I will *bring* **shall return** them *again also*
out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and gather them out of *Assyria* **Ashshur**;
and I will **shall** bring them
into the land of *Gilead* **Gilad** and Lebanon;
and *place* shall not be found for them.
11 And he shall pass through the sea
with *affliction* **tribulation**,
and shall smite the waves in the sea,
and all the deeps of the river shall *dry up* **wither**:
and the *pride* **pomp** of *Assyria* **Ashshur**
shall be brought down,
and the *sceptre* **scion** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**
shall *depart away* **turn aside**.
12 And I will *strengthen* them **they shall prevail mightily**
in the LORD **Yah Veh**;
and they shall walk up and down in his name,
saith the LORD **an oracle of Yah Veh**.

THE RAVAGE OF LEBANON

11 Open thy doors, O Lebanon,
that the fire may *devour* **consume** thy cedars.
2 Howl, fir tree; for the cedar is fallen;
because the mighty are *spoiled* **ravaged**:
howl, O ye oaks of Bashan;
for the forest of the *vintage* **crop** *is come down* **be toppled**.
3 There is a voice of the howling of the *shepherds* **tenders**;
for their *glory is spoiled* **mighty be ravaged**:
a voice of the roaring of *young lions* **whelps**;
for the *pride* **pomp** of *Jordan* **Yarden** *is spoiled* **be ravaged**.

ZECHAR YAH 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Yah Veh works lightnings
and gives them downpours of downpour
— herbage to every man in the field:
because the teraphim words mischief,
and the diviners see a falsehood
and word vain dreams;
they sigh in vain:
so they go their way as a flock,
they answer that there is no tender.
3 My wrath kindles against the tenders,
and I visit the he goats:
for Yah Veh Sabaoth visits his drove
— the house of Yah Hudah
and sets them as his horse of majesty in the battle.
4 From him comes the corner;
from him the stake;
from him the battle bow;
from him every extractor together:
and they become as the mighty
5 who trample in the mire of the outways in the battle:
and they fight, for Yah Veh *is* with them,
and the riders on horses shame.
6 And the house of Yah Hudah prevails mightily,
and I save the house of Yoseph and I resettle them;
for I mercy them:
and they become as though I cast them not off:
for I — Yah Veh their Elohim,
and I answer them.
7 And Ephrayim is as the mighty;
and their heart cheers as through wine:
yes, their sons see, and cheer;
their heart twirls in Yah Veh.
8 I hiss for them, and gather them;
for I redeemed them:
and in abounding, they abound:
and I seed them among the people:
and they remember me afar off;
and they live with their sons, and return.
9 I return them from the land of Misrayim,
and gather them from Ashshur;
and I bring them into the land of Gilad and Lebanon;
and naught *is* found for them.
10 And he passes through the sea with tribulation
and smites the waves in the sea;
and all the deeps of the river wither:
and they bring down the pomp of Ashshur,
and the scion of Misrayim turns aside:
and they prevail mightily in Yah Veh;
and they walk up and down in his name
— an oracle of Yah Veh.

THE RAVAGE OF LEBANON

11 Open your doors, O Lebanon,
and fire consumes among your cedars.
2 Howl, fir tree; for the cedar falls;
because the mighty *are* ravaged!
Howl, O you oaks of Bashan;
for the forest of the crop topples!
3 A voice of howling of the tenders;
for their mighty *are* ravaged!
A voice of the roaring of whelps;
for the pomp of Yarden *is* ravaged.

ZECHARIAH 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 Thus saith the **LORD Yah Veh** my God **Elohim**;
Feed **Tend** the flock of the slaughter;
5 Whose *possessors* slay **chattelers slaughter** them,
and *hold themselves not guilty* **have not guilted**:
and they that sell them say,
Blessed be *the* **LORD Yah Veh**; for I am *rich* **enriched**:
and their own *shepherds* **pity tenders spare** them not.
6 For I **will shall** no more
pity spare the *inhabitants* **settlers** of the land,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**:
but, *lo* **behold**,
I *will deliver* the *men* **shall present** **humanity**
every one **each man** into his *neighbour's* **friend's** hand,
and into the hand of his *king* **sovereign**:
and they shall *smite* **crush** the land,
and out of their hand I **will shall** not *deliver* **rescue** them.
7 And I *will feed* **shall tend** the flock of slaughter,
even you **thus**, O *poor* **humble** of the flock.
And I took unto me two staves;
the one I called *Beauty* **Pleasantness**,
and the *other* **one** I called **Bands**;
and I *fed* **tended** the flock.
8 Three *shepherds* **tenders** also
I *cut* **chopped** off in one month;
and my soul loathed them,
and their soul also *abhorred* **loathed** me.
9 Then said I, I **will shall** not *feed* **tend** you:
that that dieth, let it die;
and that that is to be cut off, let it be cut off;
and let *the rest* **them that survive**
eat every one **each woman eat** the flesh of *another* **sister**.
10 And I took my staff, *even Beauty* **Pleasantness**,
and cut it asunder,
that I might break my covenant
which I had *made* **cut** with all the people.
11 And it was broken in that day:
and so the *poor* **humble** of the flock
that *waited upon* **guarded** me
knew that it was the word of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**.
12 And I said unto them,
If *ye think* **it be good** **in thine eyes**,
give me my *price* **hire**;
and if not, *forbear* **cease**.
So they weighed for my *price* **hire** thirty *pieces* of silver.
13 And *the* **LORD Yah Veh** said unto me,
Cast it unto the *potter* **former**:
a *goodly price* **mighty estimation**
that I was *prised* **appraised** at of them.
And I took the thirty *pieces* of silver,
and cast them to the *potter* **former**
in the house of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**.
14 Then I cut asunder *mine other* **my second** staff,
even **Bands**,
that I might break the brotherhood
between *Judah* **Yah Hudah** and *Israel* **between Yisra El**.
15 And *the* **LORD Yah Veh** said unto me,
Take unto thee yet
the instruments of a foolish *shepherd* **tender**.
16 For, *lo* **behold**,
I **will shall** raise up a *shepherd* **tender** in the land,
which shall not visit those that be cut off,
neither shall seek the *young one* **lad**,
nor heal that that is broken,
nor *feed* **sustain** that that *standeth still* **be stationed**:
but he shall eat the flesh of the fat,
and *tear* **crunch** their *claws in pieces* **hoofs**.
17 Woe **Ho** to the idol *shepherd* **tender**
that *leaveth* **forsaketh** the flock!
the sword shall be upon his arm, and upon his right eye:
his arm shall be *clean* **dried up** **wither**,
and **in dimming**,
his right eye shall be *utterly* **darkened** **dimmed**.

THE SIEGE OF YERU SHALEM

12 The burden of the word of *the* **LORD Yah Veh**
for *Israel* **Yisra El**,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**,
which *stretcheth forth* **spreadeth** the heavens,
and layeth the foundation of the earth,
and formeth the spirit of *man* **humanity** within him.

ZECHAR YAH 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 Thus says Yah Veh my Elohim:
Tend the flock of the slaughter;
5 whose chattelers slaughter them,
and they guilt not:
and they who sell them say,
Blessed — Yah Veh; for I enrich:
and their own tenders spare them not.
6 For I spare the settlers of the land no more
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
And behold,
I present humanity
— each man to the hand of his friend
and to the hand of his sovereign;
and they crush the land:
and from their hand I rescue them not:
and I tend the flock of slaughter
— even you, O humble of the flock.
And I take two staves to myself;
the one I call Pleasantness
and the one I call Bands:
and I tend the flock.
8 And in one month, I chop off three tenders;
and my soul loathes them,
and their soul also loathes me.
9 Then I say, I tend you not:
what dies, dies;
and what *is* cut off, *is* cut off;
and of them who survive,
each woman eats the flesh of sister.
10 And I take my staff, Pleasantness, and cut it,
to break the covenant I cut with all the people:
and I break it in that day:
and thus the humble of the flock
who guard me know it is the word of Yah Veh.
12 And I say to them,
If good in your eyes, give me my hire;
and if not, cease.
— and they weigh for my hire thirty silver.
13 And Yah Veh says to me,
Cast it to the former:
— a mighty appraisal I *am* appraised by them.
— and I take the thirty silver
and cast them to the former in the house of Yah Veh.
14 Then I cut my second staff, Bands,
to break the brotherhood
between Yah Hudah and between Yisra El.
15 And Yah Veh says to me,
Take to yourself again
the instruments of a foolish tender:
6 for, behold, I raise a tender in the land,
who neither visits the cut off,
nor seeks the lad,
nor heals the broken,
nor sustains the stationed:
and he eats the flesh of the fat
and craunches their hoofs.
17 Ho to the idol tender
who forsakes the flock!
the sword *is* on his arm and on his right eye:
his arm withers,
and in dimming, his right eye dims.

THE SIEGE OF YERU SHALEM

12 The burden of the word of Yah Veh for Yisra El
— an oracle of Yah Veh
who spread the heavens and founded the earth
and formed the spirit of humanity within him:

ZECHARIAH 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 Behold, I will make **Jerusalem shall set Yeru Shalem**
a **cup bason** of **trembling staggering**
unto all the people round about,
when they shall be in the siege
both against **Judah Yah Hudah**
and against **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
3 And in that day
will I make **Jerusalem shall I set Yeru Shalem**
a **burdensome stone of burden** for all people **goyim**:
all that burden themselves with it
in incising, shall be **cut in pieces incised**,
though all the people of the earth
be gathered **together** against it.

THE LIBERATION OF YERU SHALEM

4 In that day,
saith the **LORD an oracle of Yah Veh**,
I will **shall** smite
every horse with **astonishment consternation**,
and his rider with **madness insanity**:
and I will **shall** open mine eyes
upon the house of **Judah Yah Hudah**,
and will **shall** smite
every horse of the people with blindness.
5 And the **governors chiliarchs of Judah Yah Hudah**
shall say in their heart,
The **inhabitants settlers of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**
shall be my strength
in the **LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth their God Elohim**.
6 In that day will I make **shall I set**
the **governors chiliarchs of Judah Yah Hudah**
like an **hearth laver** of fire among the **wood timber**,
and like a **torch flambeau** of fire in a **sheaf an omer**;
and they shall **devour consume** all the people round about,
on the right **hand** and on the left:
and **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**
shall be **inhabited settled** again in her own place,
even in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
7 The **LORD Yah Veh** also
shall save the tents of **Judah Yah Hudah** first,
that the **glory adornment** of the house of David
and the **glory adornment**
of the **inhabitants settlers of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**
do not **magnify themselves** **greaten not**
against **Judah Yah Hudah**.
8 In that day shall the **LORD Yah Veh**
defend the **inhabitants settlers of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**;
and he that is **feeble faltereth** among them at that day
shall be as David;
and the house of David shall be as **God Elohim**,
as the angel of the **LORD Yah Veh**
before at the face of them.
9 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,
that I will **shall** seek
to **destroy desolate** all the **nations goyim**
that come against **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.

THE SPIRIT OF CHARISM

10 And I will **shall** pour upon the house of David,
and upon the **inhabitants settlers of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
the spirit of **grace charism** and of supplications:
and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced,
and they shall **mourn chop** for him,
as one **mourneth choppeth** for his only **son**,
and shall be in **bitterness embittered** for him,
as one that is in **bitterness embittered**
for his **firstborn birstbirthed**.

THE CHOPPING IN YERU SHALEM

11 In that day
shall there be a **great mourning** **greaten a chopping**
in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
as the **mourning chopping**
of **Hadadrimmon Hadad Rimmon**
in the **valley of Megiddon Gay Megiddo/Valley of Troops**.
12 And the land shall **mourn chop**,
every **family families by families** apart;
the family of the house of David apart,
and their **wives women** apart;
the family of the house of Nathan apart,
and their **wives women** apart;
13 The family of the house of Levi apart,

ZECHAR YAH 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 Behold, I set Yeru Shalem a bason of staggering
to all the people all around,
in the siege
both against Yah Hudah and against Yeru Shalem:
and in that day,
3 I set Yeru Shalem a stone of burden for all goyim:
all who burden themselves with it
in incising, incise themselves,
and all the people of the earth gather against it.

THE LIBERATION OF YERU SHALEM

4 In that day,
— an oracle of Yah Veh
I smite every horse with consternation
and his rider with insanity:
and I open my eyes on the house of Yah Hudah
and smite every horse of the people with blindness.
5 And the chiliarchs of Yah Hudah say in their heart,
The settlers of Yeru Shalem
are my strength in Yah Veh Sabaoth their Elohim.
6 In that day I set the chiliarchs of Yah Hudah
as a laver of fire among the timber;
and as a flambeau of fire in an omer;
and they consume all the people all around
on the right and on the left:
and Yeru Shalem settles again in her own place
— in Yeru Shalem:
7 and Yah Veh saves the tents of Yah Hudah first,
so that the adornment of the house of David
and the adornment of the settlers of Yeru Shalem
greaten not against Yah Hudah.

8 In that day,
Yah Veh defends the settlers of Yeru Shalem;
and so be it,
the faltering among them at that day are as David;
and the house of David as Elohim
— as the angel of Yah Veh at their face.
9 And so be it, in that day,
I seek to desolate all the goyim
who come against Yeru Shalem.

THE SPIRIT OF CHARISM

10 And I pour on the house of David,
and on the settlers of Yeru Shalem,
the spirit of charism and of supplications:
and they look on me whom they pierced,
and they chop for him as one chops for his only,
and embitter over him
as one embitters for his firstbirthed.

THE CHOPPING IN YERU SHALEM

11 In that day,
a chopping greatens in Yeru Shalem,
as the chopping of Hadad Rimmon
in Gay Megiddo/Valley of Troops:
and the land chops
— families by families apart:
the family of the house of David apart
and their women apart;
the family of the house of Nathan apart
and their women apart;
13 the family of the house of Levi apart

ZECHARIAH 12—14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

14 and their *wives* **women** apart;
the family of *Shimei Shimiy* apart,
and their *wives* **women** apart;
All the families that *remain survive*,
every family **families by families** apart,
and their *wives* **women** apart.

THE FOUNTAIN FOR SIN AND FOR EXCLUSION

13 In that day there shall be a fountain opened
to the house of David
and to the *inhabitants* **settlers of Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**
for sin and for *uncleanness* **exclusion**.

2 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
that I *will shall* cut off the names of the idols
out of the land,
and they shall no more be remembered:
and also I *will shall* cause the prophets
and the *unclean spirit of foulness* to pass out of the land.

3 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
that when any **man** shall yet prophesy,
then his father and his mother that *begat birthed* him
shall say unto him, Thou shalt not live;
for thou *speakest lies* **wordest falsehoods**
in the name of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
and his father and his mother that *begat birthed* him
shall thrust him through when he prophesieth.

4 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,
that the prophets shall *be ashamed* **shame**
every one **each man** of his vision,
when he hath prophesied;
neither shall they wear **enrobe**
a *rough garment* **mighty mantle of hair** to deceive:

5 But he shall say, I am no prophet,
I am an *husbandman* **a man that serveth the soil**;
for man *taught me to keep cattle* **a human chatteler**
from my youth.

6 And one shall say unto him,
What are these wounds in thine hands?
Then he shall *answer say*,
Those with which I was *wounded* **smitten**
in the house of my *friends* **beloved**.

7 Awake, O sword, against my *shepherd* **tender**,
and against the *man* **mighty** that is my *fellow* **friend**,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth**:
smite the *shepherd* **tender**,
and the *sheep* **flock** shall be scattered:
and I *will shall* turn mine hand
upon the *little ones* **belittled**.

8 And **so be** it shall come to pass, that in all the land,
saith the *LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**,
two *parts* **mouths** therein shall be cut off and *die* **expire**;
but the third shall *be left* **remain** therein.

9 And I *will shall* bring the third *part* through the fire,
and *will shall* refine them as silver is refined,
and *will try* **shall proof** them as gold is *tried* **proofed**:
they shall call on my name,
and I *will hear* **shall answer** them:

I *will shall* say, *It is my people* **My people**:
and they shall say,
The *LORD is my God* **Yah Veh, My Elohim**.

THE GATHERING OF THE GOYIM

14 Behold, the day of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** cometh,
and thy spoil
shall be *divided* **allotted** in the midst of thee.

2 For I *will shall* gather all *nations* **goyim**
against *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem* to battle;
and the city shall be *taken* **captured**,
and the houses *rifled* **plundered**,
and the women *ravished* **lain with and raped**;
and half of the city shall go forth into *captivity* **exile**,
and the *residue* **remnant** of the people
shall not be cut off from the city.

3 Then shall the *LORD* **Yah Veh** go forth,
and fight against those *nations* **goyim**,
as when **the day** he fought in the day of *battle* **war**.

THE RETURN OF YAH VEH

4 And his feet shall stand in that day
upon the mount of Olives,

ZECHAR YAH 12—14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

14 and their women apart;
the family of Shimiy apart
and their women apart:
— all the families who survive
families by families apart
and their women apart.

THE FOUNTAIN FOR SIN AND FOR EXCLUSION

13 And so be it, in that day,
a fountain opens to the house of David
and to the settlers of Yeru Shalem
for sin and for exclusion.

2 And so be it, in that day,
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth
I cut off the names of the idols from the land,
— no more remembered:
and also I pass the prophets
and the spirit of foulness from the land.

3 And so be it,
any man who still prophesies,
his father and his mother who birthed him
say to him, You live not!
— for you word falsehoods in the name of Yah Veh:
and his father and his mother who birthed him
thrust him through when he prophesies.

4 And so be it, in that day,
each man of the prophets shames for his vision
when he prophesies;
they enrobe not a mighty mantle of hair to deceive.

5 And *one* says, I *am* no prophet,
I *am* a man who serves the soil;
a human chatteler from my youth.

6 And *one* says to him,
What are these wounds in your hands?

And he says,
Because I was smitten in the house of my beloved.

7 Waken, O sword, against my tender,
and against the mighty, my friend
— an oracle of Yah Veh Sabaoth:
smite the tender, and the flock scatters:
and I turn my hand on the belittled.

8 And so be it, in all the land
— an oracle of Yah Veh
two mouths therein are cut off — they expire;
and the third remains therein:

9 and I bring the third through the fire
and refine them as the refining of silver,
and proof them as the proofing of gold:
they call on my name, and I answer them:

I say, My people:
and they say, Yah Veh, My Elohim.

THE GATHERING OF THE GOYIM

14 Behold, the day of Yah Veh approaches,
to allot your spoil among you:
2 and I gather all goyim to battle against Yeru Shalem;
and capture the city and plunder the houses;
and rape the women:
and half of the city goes into exile,
and not cut off the remnant of the people
from the city.

3 And Yah Veh comes and fights against those goyim,
as the day he fought in the day of war.

THE RETURN OF YAH VEH

4 And in that day,
his feet stand on the mount of Olives

ZECHARIAH 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which is before Jerusalem at the face of Yeru Shalem
on the east **rising**,
and the mount of Olives
shall cleave **split** in the midst thereof **half**
toward the east **eastward** and toward the west **seaward**,
and there shall be a very **mighty** great valley;
and half of the mountain
shall remove toward the north **depart northward**,
and half of it toward the south **southward**.
5 And ye shall flee to the valley of the mountains;
for the valley of the mountains
shall reach **touch** unto *Azal* **Asel**:
yea, ye shall flee, like as ye fled
from before **the face of** the earthquake **quake**
in the days of *Uzziah* **Uzzi Yah**
king **sovereign** of Judah **Yah Hudah**:
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** my God **Elohim** shall come,
and all the *saints* **holy** with thee.
6 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,
that the light shall not be *clear* **esteemed**,
nor *dark* **curdled**:
7 But it shall be one day
which shall be known to the *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
not day, nor night:
but **and so be** it shall come to pass,
that at evening time it shall be light.
8 And it shall be in that day,
that living waters
shall go out from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
half of them toward the *former* **ancient** sea,
and half of them toward the *hinder* **latter** sea:
in summer and in winter shall it be.
9 And the *LORD* **Yah Veh** shall be *king* **sovereign**
over all the earth:
in that day shall there be one *LORD* **Yah Veh**,
and his name one.
10 All the land shall be *turned* **surrounded** as a plain
from Geba to Rimmon south of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
and it shall be lifted up,
and *inhabited* **settled** in her place,
from *Benjamin's gate* **the portal of Ben Yamin**
unto the place of the first *gate* **portal**,
unto the corner *gate* **portal**,
and from the tower of *Hananeel* **Hanan El**
unto the *king's winepresses* **sovereign's troughs**.
11 And *men* shall *dwell* **settle** in it,
and there shall be no more *utter destruction* **devotement**;
but *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
shall be *safely inhabited* **confidently settled**.
12 And this shall be the plague
wherewith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
will **shall** smite all the people
that have *fought* **hosted** against *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
Their flesh shall *consume away* **dissolve**
while they stand upon their feet,
and their eyes shall *consume away* **dissolve**
in their holes,
and their tongue shall *consume away* **dissolve**
in their mouth.
13 And **so be** it shall come to pass in that day,
that a great *tumult* **confusion** from the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
shall be among them;
and they shall lay hold every *one* **each man**
on the hand of his *neighbour* **friend**,
and his hand shall *rise up* **ascend**
against the hand of his *neighbour* **friend**.
14 And *Judah* **Yah Hudah** also
shall fight at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
and the *wealth* **valuables**
of all the *heathen* **goyim** round about
shall be gathered *together*,
gold, and silver, and *apparel* **clothes**,
in *great* **mighty** abundance.
15 And so shall be the plague of the horse,
of the mule, of the camel, and of the *ass* **burro**,
and of all the *beasts* **animals**
that shall be in these *tents* **camp**s,
as this plague.

ZECHAR YAH 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

at the face of Yeru Shalem on the rising:
and the mount of Olives splits in half
— eastward and seaward
— a mighty great valley;
and half of the mountain departs northward
and half southward:
5 and you flee to the valley of the mountains;
for the valley of the mountains touches to Asel:
yes, you flee,
as you fled the face of the quake
in the days of Uzzi Yah sovereign of Yah Hudah:
and Yah Veh my Elohim approaches
— all the holy with you.
6 And so be it, in that day,
that the light neither esteems nor curdles:
7 and so be it, in one day,
known *only* to Yah Veh,
neither day nor night:
and so be it,
that at evening time it becomes light:
8 and so be it, in that day,
that living waters come from Yeru Shalem;
half of them toward the ancient sea
and half of them toward the latter sea:
and it becomes summer and winter.
9 And Yah Veh becomes sovereign over all the earth:
in that day,
there is one Yah Veh; and his name one.
10 All the land surrounds as a plain
from Geba to Rimmon south of Yeru Shalem:
and it lifts and settles in her place
from the portal of Ben Yamin
to the place of the first portal to the corner portal;
and from the tower of Hanan El
to the troughs of the sovereign.
11 And they settle in her,
and is no more devotement;
and Yeru Shalem settles confidently.
12 And this is the plague
wherewith Yah Veh smites all the people
who host against Yeru Shalem:
their flesh dissolves as they stand on their feet;
and their eyes dissolve in their holes;
and their tongue dissolve in their mouth.
13 And so be it, in that day,
there is a great confusion from Yah Veh
among them:
and each man lays hold on the hand of his friend;
and ascends his hand against the hand of his friend:
14 and Yah Hudah also fights at Yeru Shalem;
and they gather the valuables
of all the goyim all around
— gold and silver and clothes in mighty abundance.
15 And so be the plague of the horse,
of the mule, of the camel and of the burro;
and so be all the animals in these camps
— as this plague.

ZECHARIAH 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

16 And **so be** it shall come to pass,
that every one that is *left* **remaineth**
of all the *nations* **goyim**
which came against *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
shall *even go up from* **ascend sufficiently** year to year
to *worship* **prostrate to** the *King* **Sovereign**,
the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
and to *keep* **celebrate** the *feast* **celebration**
of *tabernacles* **sukkoth/brush arbors**.

17 And it shall be,
that whoso *will* **shall** not *come up* **ascend**
of all the families of the earth
unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
to *worship* **prostrate to** the *King* **Sovereign**,
the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
even upon them shall be no *rain* **downpour**.

18 And if the family of *Egypt* go **Misrayim ascend** not up,
and come not,
that *have no rain*; **then not on them**
there shall be the *plague*,
wherewith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
will **shall** smite the *heathen* **goyim**
that *come* **ascend** not up
to *keep* **celebrate** the *feast* **celebration**
of *tabernacles* **sukkoth/brush arbors**.

19 This shall be
the *punishment* **for the sin** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and the *punishment* **for the sin** of all *nations* **goyim**
that *come* **ascend** not up
to *keep* **celebrate** the *feast* **celebration**
of *tabernacles* **sukkoth/brush arbors**.

20 In that day shall there be
upon the *bells* **jinglers** of the horses,
HOLINESS UNTO THE LORD YAH VEH;
and the *pots* **caldrons**
in the *LORD'S* house **of Yah Veh**
shall be like the *bowls* **sprinklers**
before **at the face of** the *sacrifice* altar.

21 Yea, every *pot* **caldron**
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** and in *Judah* **Yah Hudah**
shall be *holiness* **holy**
unto the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
and all they that *sacrifice* shall come and take of them,
and *seethe* **stew** therein:
and in that day
there shall be no more the *Canaanite* **Kenaaniy**
in the house of the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.

ZECHAR YAH 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

16 And so be it,
every one of all the *goyim* who remain
who come against *Yeru Shalem*
ascend sufficiently year by year
to *prostrate to* the *Sovereign* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
and to *celebrate* the *celebration*
of *sukkoth/brush arbors*.

17 And so be it,
whoever, of the families of the earth,
who ascend not to *Yeru Shalem*
to *prostrate to* the *Sovereign* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
even on them *is* **downpour**.

18 And if the family of *Misrayim*
neither ascend nor come,
then the *plague* is on them
wherewith *Yah Veh* smites the *goyim*
who ascend not to *celebrate* the *celebration*
of *sukkoth/brush arbors*;
so be it for the *sin* of *Misrayim*
and for the *sin* of all *goyim*
who ascend not *celebrate* the *celebration*
of *sukkoth/brush arbors*.

20 In that day there is on the *jinglers of the horses*,
HOLINESS TO YAH VEH.

21 And so be the *caldrons* in the house of *Yah Veh*
— as the *sprinklers* at the face of the *sacrifice* altar:
and so be every *caldron*
in *Yeru Shalem* and in *Yah Hudah*
— *holy to* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
and all who *sacrifice* come and take thereof,
and *stew* therein:
and in that day,
the *Kenaaniy* is no more
in the house of *Yah Veh Sabaoth*.

MALACHI 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE LOVE OF YAH VEH FOR YISRA EL

- 1 The burden of the word of *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
to *Israel* **Yisra El** by **the hand** of Malachi.
- 2 I have loved you,
saith *the LORD* **an oracle of Yah Veh**.
Yet ye say, Wherein hast thou loved us?
Was not *Esau Jacob's* **Esav Yaaqov's** brother?
saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**:
yet I loved *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
- 3 And I hated *Esau* **Esav**,
and *laid set* his mountains
and his *heritage* **inheritance** waste
for the *dragons* **monsters** of the wilderness.
- 4 Whereas Edom saith, We are impoverished,
but we *will* **shall** return
and build the *desolate places* **parched areas**;
thus saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
They shall build, but I *will throw* **shall break** down;
and they shall call them, The border of wickedness,
and, The people against whom *the LORD* **Yah Veh**
hath indignation for ever **be enraged eternally**.
- 5 And your eyes shall see, and ye shall say,
The LORD will **Yah Veh shall** be *magnified* **greatened**
from the border of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
- PRIESTS PROFANE THE SACRIFICE ALTAR**
- 6 A son honoureth his father,
and a servant his *master* **adoni**:
if then I be a father, where is mine honour?
and if I be a *master* **an adoni**,
where is my *fear* **awesomeness**?
saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth** unto you,
O priests, that despise my name.
- 7 And ye say, Wherein have we despised thy name?
Ye *offer polluted* **bring profaned** bread
upon *mine* **my sacrifice** altar;
and ye say, Wherein have we *polluted* **profaned** thee?
In that ye say **Saying**,
The table of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** is *contemptible* **despised**.
- 8 And if ye *offer* **bring near** the blind for sacrifice,
is it not evil?
and if ye *offer* **bring near** the lame and sick, is it not evil?
offer oblate it now **I beseech**, unto thy governor;
will shall he be pleased with thee,
or *accept lift* thy *person* **face**?
saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
- 9 And now, I *pray* **beseech** you,
beseech God **stroke the face of El**
that he *will be gracious* **shall grant charism** unto us:
this hath been by your *means* **hand**:
will shall he regard *lift* your *persons* **faces**?
saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
- 10 Who is there even among you
that *would* **should** shut the doors for *nought*?
neither do ye *kindle fire on mine* **light my sacrifice** altar
for *nought* **gratuitously**.
I have no *pleasure* **delight** in you,
saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
neither *will I accept* **shall** an offering
at your hand **please me**.
- 11 For from the rising of the sun
even unto the *going down* **entry** of the same
my name shall be great among the *Gentiles* **goyim**;
and in every place
incense shall be *offered* **brought near** unto my name,
and a pure offering:
for my name shall be great among the *heathen* **goyim**,
saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
- 12 But ye have profaned it, *in that ye say* **saying**,
The table of *the LORD* **Yah Veh** is *polluted* **profaned**;
and the fruit thereof,
even his meat **food**, is contemptible.
- 13 Ye said also, Behold, what a *weariness* is it **trouble**!
and ye have *snuffed* **puffed** at it,
saith *the LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**;
and ye brought that which was *torn* **stripped**,
and the lame, and the sick;
thus ye brought an offering:
should *I accept* this of your hand **please**?
saith *the LORD* **Yah Veh**.

MALACHI 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE LOVE OF YAH VEH FOR YISRA EL

- 1 The burden of the word of Yah Veh
to Yisra El by the hand of Malachi.
- 2 I loved you
— an oracle of Yah Veh.
Yet you say, Wherein loved you us?
- Was not Esav the brother of Yaaqov? says Yah Veh;
Yet I loved Yaaqov:
and I hated Esav;
and set his mountains and his inheritance waste
for the monsters of the wilderness.
- 4 Because Edom says, We are impoverished,
and we return and build the parched areas.
- Thus says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
They build, and I break down;
and they call them,
The border of wickedness:
and,
The people against whom Yah Veh enrages eternally.
And your eyes see, and you say,
Yah Veh greatens from the border of Yisra El.
- PRIESTS PROFANE THE SACRIFICE ALTAR**
- 6 A son honors his father,
and a servant his adoni:
and if I *am* a father, where is my honor?
and if I *am* an adoni, where is my awesomeness?
- Yah Veh Sabaoth says to you,
O priests, who despise my name,
you say, Wherein despise we your name?
- 7 You bring profane bread on my sacrifice altar;
and you say, Wherein profane we you?
saying, The table of Yah Veh *is* despised.
- 8 And if you bring the blind for sacrifice, is it not evil?
And if you bring the lame and sick, is it not evil?
Oblate it, I beseech, to your governor;
Is he pleased with you? Or lifts he your face?
says Yah Veh Sabaoth.
- 9 And now, I beseech you, stroke the face of El
so that he grant us charism:
this being from your hand,
Lifts he your faces?
says Yah Veh Sabaoth.
- 10 Who, even among you, shuts the doors?
Yes, you light my sacrifice altar gratuitously;
I neither delight in you,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
nor an offering at your hand pleases me.
- 11 For from the rising of the sun
even to the entry of the same
my name *is* great among the goyim;
and in every place
incense *is* brought to my name,
and a pure offering:
for my name *is* great among the goyim,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth.
- 12 And you profane it, saying,
The table of Yah Veh *is* profane;
and the fruit, his food, contemptible.
- 13 You also say, Behold, what trouble!
and you puff at it,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth;
and you bring the stripped and the lame and the sick.
Thus bring you an offering: of your hand that pleases?
says Yah Veh.

MALACHI 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 But cursed be the deceiver,
which hath in his *flock* **drove** a male,
and voweth, and sacrificeth
unto the *Lord corrupt thing* **Adonay** a ruin:
for I am a great *King* **Sovereign**,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
and my name is *dreadful* **awesome**
among the *heathen* **goyim**.

A MISVAH FOR THE PRIESTS

2 And now, O ye priests,
this *commandment* **misvah** is for you.
2 If ye *will* **shall** not hear,
and if ye *will* **shall** not *lay* **set** it to heart,
to give *glory* **honour** unto my name,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
I *will* **shall** even send a curse upon you,
and I *will* **shall** curse your blessings:
yea, I have cursed them already,
because ye *do not lay* **set** it **not** to heart.
3 Behold, I *will corrupt* **shall rebuke** your seed,
and *spread* **winnow** dung upon your faces,
even the dung of your *solemn feasts* **celebrations**;
and one shall *take* **bear** you away with it.
4 And ye shall know
that I have sent this *commandment* **misvah** unto you,
that my covenant might be with Levi,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
5 My covenant was with him of life and *peace* **shalom**;
and I gave them to him for the *fear* **awesomeness**
wherewith he *feared* **awed** me,
and was *afraid before* **terrified at the face of** my name.
6 The *law* **torah** of truth was in his mouth,
and *iniquity* **perversity** was not found in his lips:
he walked with me
in *peace* **shalom** and *equity* **straightness**
and *did turn* **turned** many away from iniquity.
7 For the priest's lips should *keep* **guard** knowledge,
and they should seek the *law* **torah** at his mouth:
for he is the *messenger* **angel**
of the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
8 But ye are *departed* **turned aside** out of the way;
ye have caused many to *stumble* **falter** at the *law* **torah**;
ye have *corrupted* **ruined** the covenant of Levi,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
9 Therefore have I also *made* **given** you
contemptible **despised** and *base* **lowly**
before all the people,
according as *your mouth*
ye have not *kept* **guarded** my ways,
but have *been partial* **lifted thy face**
in **against** the *law* **torah**.
10 Have we not all one father?
hath not one *God* **El** created us?
why *do we deal treacherously* **deal we covertly**
every man against his brother,
by profaning the covenant of our fathers?
11 *Judah* **Yah Hudah** hath dealt *treacherously* **covertly**,
and an *abomination is committed* **abhorrence be worked**
in *Israel* **Yisra El** and in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
for *Judah* **Yah Hudah** hath profaned
the holiness of the *LORD* **Yah Veh** which he loved,
and hath married the daughter of a strange *god* **el**.
12 The *LORD* **will** *Yah Veh* **shall** cut off the man
that *doeth* **worketh** this,
the *master* **him that waketh**
and the *scholar* **him that answereth**,
out of the *tabernacles* **tents** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
and him that *offereth* **bringeth near** an offering
unto the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
13 And this have ye done *again* **secondly**,
covering the *sacrifice* altar of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**
with tears, with weeping, and with *crying out* **shrieking**,
insomuch
that he *regardeth* **faceth** not the offering any more,
or *receiveth* **taketh** it with *good will* **pleasure**
at your hand.
14 Yet ye say, *Wherefore* **Why?**
Because the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hath *been witness* **witnessed**
between thee and **between** the *wife* **woman** of thy youth,

MALACHI 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 And cursed is the deceiver
who has a male in his drove;
and vows and sacrifices a ruin to Adonay:
for I am a great Sovereign, says Yah Veh Sabaoth;
and my name is awesome among the goyim.

A MISVAH FOR THE PRIESTS

2 And now, to you O priests, this misvah.
2 If you hear not and if you set not to heart
to give honor to my name,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
I send a curse on you and I curse your blessings:
yes, I also curse, because you set it not to heart.
3 Behold, I rebuke your seed
and winnow dung on your faces
— the dung of your celebrations;
to bear you away with it.
4 And you know I send this misvah to you,
so that my covenant becomes with Levi,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth.
5 My covenant with him becomes life and shalom;
and I give them to him
for the awesomeness with which he awes me,
and because he terrifies at the face of my name.
6 The torah of truth being in his mouth,
and no perversity found in his lips:
he walks with me in shalom and straightness
and turns many away from iniquity.
7 For the lips of the priest guard knowledge
and they seek the torah at his mouth:
for he is the angel of Yah Veh Sabaoth.
8 And you turn aside from the way;
you falter many at the torah;
you ruin the covenant of Levi;
says Yah Veh Sabaoth.
9 So I also give you
despised and lowly in front of all the people
because according to your mouth
you guard not my ways,
and lift faces against the torah.
10 Have we not all one father?
Has not one El created us?
Why deal we covertly, every man against his brother,
by profaning the covenant of our fathers?
11 Yah Hudah deals covertly,
and works an abhorrence
in Yisra El and in Yeru Shalem;
for Yah Hudah profanes the holiness of Yah Veh
which he loved,
and married the daughter of a strange el.
12 Yah Veh cuts off the man who works this
— he who wakens and he who answers
from the tents of Yaaqov;
and he who brings near an offering
to Yah Veh Sabaoth.
13 And secondly, you do this:
you cover the sacrifice altar of Yah Veh
with tears, with weeping and with shrieking;
because there is no more facing the offering
or taking it with pleasure at your hand.
14 And you say, Why?
Because Yah Veh witnesses
between you and between the woman of your youth,

MALACHI 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

against whom thou hast dealt *treacherously covertly*:
yet is she thy companion,
and the *wife woman* of thy covenant.
15 And *did not he make worked he not* one?
Yet had he the *residue of the spirit of survival*.
And wherefore one?
That he might seek a *godly seed of Elohim*.
Therefore take heed to Guard your spirit,
and let none deal *treacherously covertly*
against the *wife woman* of his youth.
16 For the *LORD Yah Veh*,
the *God Elohim of Israel Yisra El*,
saith that he hateth *putting sending* away:
for one covereth violence with his *garment robe*,
saith the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*:
therefore take heed to guard your spirit,
that ye deal not *treacherously covertly*.
17 Ye have *wearied the LORD belaboured Yah Veh*
with your words.
Yet ye say, Wherein have we *wearied belaboured* him?
When ye say Saying,
Every one that *doeth worketh* evil
is good in the *sight eyes of the LORD Yah Veh*,
and he delighteth in them;
or, Where is the *God Elohim* of judgment?
PROPHECY OF THE ANGEL OF YAH VEH AND HIS ADONAY
3 Behold, I *will shall* send my *messenger angel*,
and he shall *prepare face* the way *before me at my face*:
and the *Lord Adonay*, whom ye seek,
shall suddenly come to his *temple manse*,
even the *messenger angel* of the covenant,
whom ye delight in:
behold, he shall come,
saith the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*.
Matthaios 11:10, Markos 1:2, Loukas 7:27
2 But who may *abide sustain* the day of his coming?
and who shall stand when he *appeareth be seen*?
for he is like a refiner's fire, and like fullers' soap:
3 And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver:
and he shall purify the sons of Levi,
and purge them as gold and silver,
that they may *offer bring near* unto the *LORD Yah Veh*
an offering in *righteousness justness*.
4 Then shall the offering
of *Judah Yah Hudah* and *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
be pleasant unto the LORD please Yah Veh,
as in the *days of old for ever original eternal days*,
and as in *former ancient* years.
5 And I *will come near to shall approach* you to judgment;
and I *will shall* be a *swift hasty* witness
against the sorcerers,
and against the adulterers,
and against false *swearers oathers*,
and against those
that oppress the hireling in his *wages hire*,
the widow, and the *fatherless orphan*,
and that *turn aside pervert the stranger sojourner*
from his right,
and *fear awe* not me,
saith the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*.
6 For I *am the LORD I — Yah Veh*, I change not;
therefore ye sons of *Jacob Yaaqov*
are not *consumed finished off*.
TITHING
7 Even from the days of your fathers
ye are *gone away turned aside*
from *mine ordinances my statutes*,
and have not *kept guarded* them.
Return unto me, and I *will shall* return unto you,
saith the *LORD of hosts Yah Veh Sabaoth*.
But ye said, Wherein shall we return?
8 *Will a man rob God Shall a human defraud Elohim*?
Yet ye have *robbed defrauded* me.
But *And* ye say, Wherein have we *robbed defrauded* thee?
In tithes and *offerings exaltments*.

MALACHI 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

against whom you dealt covertly:
yet is she your companion
and the woman of your covenant.
15 And worked he not one?
Yet he has the spirit of survival.
And why one?
To seek a seed of Elohim.
Guard your spirit
that no one deal covertly
against the woman of his youth.
16 For Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El
says that he hates sending away:
for one covers violence with his robe,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth:
guard your spirit,
that you not deal covertly.
17 You labor Yah Veh with your words:
yet you say, Wherein labor we him?
By saying,
Every one who works evil
is good in the eyes of Yah Veh,
and he delights in them!
— or, Where is the Elohim of judgment?
PROPHECY OF THE ANGEL OF YAH VEH AND HIS ADONAY
3 Behold, I send my angel,
and he faces the way at my face:
and the Adonay, whom you seek,
suddenly comes to his manse
— even the angel of the covenant
in whom you delight!
Behold, he comes,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth.
Matthaios 11:10, Markos 1:2, Loukas 7:27
2 And who measures the day of his coming?
And who stands when he is seen?
— for he is as the fire of a refiner
and as the soap of a fullers:
3 and he sits as a refiner and purifier of silver:
and he purifies the sons of Levi
and purges them as gold and silver,
so that they bring near an offering in justness
to Yah Veh.
4 and the offering of Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem
pleases Yah Veh
— as in the original eternal days
and as in ancient years.
5 And I approach you for judgment;
and I become a hasty witness against the sorcerers
and against the adulterers and against false oathers
and against those who oppress the hireling in his hire
— the widow and the orphan;
and who pervert the sojourner and awe me not,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth.
6 For I — Yah Veh; I change not:
so you sons of Yaaqov are not finished off.
TITHING
7 Even from the days of your fathers
you turn aside from my statutes
and guard them not.
Return to me and I return to you,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth.
And you say, Return in what?
8 A human, defrauds he Elohim?
— yet you defraud me.
And you say, Wherein defraud we you?
In tithes and exaltments.

MALACHI 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 Ye are cursed with a curse:
for ye have *robbed* **defrauded** me,
even this whole *nation* **goyim**.

10 Bring ye all the tithes into the *storehouse* **treasure house**,
that there *may* be *meat* **prey** in mine house,
and *prove* **proof** me *now* **I beseech**, herewith,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
if I *will* **shall** not open you
the windows of *heaven* **the heavens**,
and pour you out a blessing,
that *until* there shall not be
room enough to receive it sufficient.

11 And I *will* **shall** rebuke the devourer for your sakes,
and he shall not *destroy* **ruin** the fruits of your *ground* **soil**;
neither shall your vine *cast* **abort** her fruit
before the time in the field,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.

12 And all *nations* shall **goyim** call you *blessed* **blithesome**:
for ye shall be a delightful land,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.

13 Your words have *been* **stout prevailed** against me,
saith the *LORD* **Yah Veh**.
Yet ye say,
What have we *spoken* *so much* **worded** against thee?
Ye have said, It is vain to serve *God* **Elohim**:
and what *profit* **greedy gain** is it
that we have *kept* **guarded** his *ordinance* **guard**,
and that we have walked *mournfully* **darkly**
before the LORD of hosts **at the face of Yah Veh Sabaoth**?

15 And now we call the *proud* **arrogant** *happy* **blithesome**;
yea, they that work wickedness *are* **set up built**;
yea, they that *tempt* *God* **proof Elohim**
are even *delivered* **rescued**.

THE SCROLL OF REMEMBRANCE

16 Then they that *feared the LORD* **awed Yah Veh**
spake often one **worded man** to another **friend**:
and the *LORD* **Yah Veh** hearkened, and heard it,
and a *book* **scroll** of remembrance
was *written before him* **inscribed at his face**
for them that *feared the LORD* **awed Yah Veh**,
and that *thought upon* **fabricated** his name.

17 And they shall be mine,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
in that day when I *make up* **work** my *jewels* **peculiar treasure**;
and I *will* **shall** spare them,
as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

18 Then shall ye return, and *discern* **see**
between the *righteous* **just** and the wicked,
between him that serveth *God* **Elohim**
and **between** him that serveth him not.

THE DAY OF YAH VEH

4 For, behold, the day *cometh* **approacheth**,
that shall *burn* **inflame** as an oven;
and all the *proud* **arrogant**,
yea, and all that *do* **work** wickedly, shall be stubble:
and the day that *cometh* **approacheth** shall burn them up,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**,
that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

THE SUN OF JUSTNESS

2 But unto you that fear my name
shall the Sun of *righteousness* **justness** arise
with healing in his wings;
and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall.

3 And ye shall *tread down* **trample** the wicked;
for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet
in the day that I shall *do* **work this**,
saith the *LORD of hosts* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.

4 Remember ye the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh** my servant,
which I *commanded* **misvahed** unto him in Horeb
for all *Israel* **Yisra El**, with the statutes and judgments.

ELI YAH THE PROPHET

5 Behold, I *will* **shall** send you *Elijah* **Eli Yah** the prophet
before **ere the face of** the *coming* **approaching**
of the great and *dreadful* **awesome** day of the *LORD* **Yah Veh**:
6 And he shall turn the heart of the fathers
to the *children* **sons**,
and the heart of the *children* **sons** to their fathers,
lest **ere** I come and smite the earth with a *curse* **devotement**.

MALACHI 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 You are cursed with a curse:
for you defraud me — this whole goyim.

10 Bring all your tithes into the treasure house,
that there be prey in my house;
and proof me, I beseech, herewith,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
if I not open the windows of the heavens to you
and pour a blessing
until you not have sufficient.

11 And for your sakes, I rebuke the devourer
that he neither ruin the fruits of your soil;
nor your vine abort her fruit ere its time in the field,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth.

12 And all goyim call you blithesome:
for you become a delightful land,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth.

13 Your words prevail against me, says Yah Veh.
Yet you say, What word we against you?
You say, It is vain to serve Elohim!
and, What greedy gain is it to guard his guard,
and to walk darkly at the face of Yah Veh Sabaoth?

15 And now we call the arrogant, blithesome;
yes, those working wickedness are built up;
yes, they proof Elohim, and escape.

THE SCROLL OF REMEMBRANCE

16 Then they who awe Yah Veh
word man to friend:
and Yah Veh hearkens and hears
and inscribes a scroll of remembrance at his face
of them who awe Yah Veh
and of them who fabricate his name.

17 And they are mine, says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
in that day, when I work my peculiar treasure;
and I spare them
as a man spares his own son who serves him:
and you return and see
between the just and the wicked,
between him who serves Elohim
and between him who serves him not.

THE DAY OF YAH VEH

4 For behold,
the day approaches that inflames as an oven;
and all the arrogant,
yes, and all who work wickedly, become stubble:
and the day that approaches burns them,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth,
that it leaves them neither root nor branch.

THE SUN OF JUSTNESS

2 And to you who fear my name,
the Sun of justness rises with healing in his wings;
and you go, and grow as calves of the stall:
and you trample the wicked;
for they become ashes under the soles of your feet,
in the day I work,
says Yah Veh Sabaoth.

4 Remember the torah of Mosheh my servant,
that I misvahed to him in Horeb
for all Yisra El,
the statutes and judgments.

ELI YAH THE PROPHET

5 Behold, I send you Eli Yah the prophet
ere the face of the approaching
of the great and awesome day of Yah Veh:
6 and he turns the heart of the fathers to the sons
and the heart of the sons to their fathers
ere I come and smite the earth with a devotement.

JOHN 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

GENESIS OF THE EVANGELISMS: GENEALOGY OF THE WORD

1 In the beginning was* the Word,
and the Word was* with *God Elohim*,
and the Word was *God Elohim* was* the Word.
2 The same was in the beginning with *God Elohim*.
*was: in the sense of eternal being

THE WORD IS THE CREATOR

3 All things were made by **became through** him;
and without **apart from** him
was not any thing made **naught became**
that was made **became**.
4 In him was life;
and the life was the light of *men* **humanity**.
5 And the light *shineth* **manifesteth** in darkness;
and the darkness *comprehended* **overtook** it not.

THE WITNESS OF BAPTIZER YAHN

6 There was **became a man** **human**
sent **apostolized** from *God Elohim*,
whose name was *John Yahn*.
7 The same came for a **to** witness,
to bear witness of **concerning** the Light,
that all *men* through him might *believe* **trust**.
8 He was not that Light,
but was sent to bear witness of **concerning** that Light.
9 That was the true Light,
which lighteth every *man* **human**
that cometh into the *world* **cosmos**.
10 He was in the *world* **cosmos**,
and the *world* was made by **cosmos became through** him,
and the *world* **cosmos** knew him not.
11 He came unto his own,
and his own *received* **took** him not.

THE ELOHIM BIRTH

12 But as many as *received* **took** him,
to them gave he *power* **authority**
to become the *sons* **children** of *God Elohim*,
even to them that *believe on* **trust** in his name:
13 Which were *born* **birthed**,
not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh,
nor of the will of man,
but of *God* **Elohim**.

THE WORD BECAME FLESH

14 And the Word was made **became** flesh,
and *dwelt* **tabernacled** among us,
(and we *beheld* **saw** his glory,
the glory as of the only *begotten* **birthed** of the Father,)
full of *grace* **charism** and truth.
15 *John bare witness of* **Yahn witnessed concerning** him,
and cried, *saying* **wording**,
This was he of whom I *spake* **said**,
He that cometh after me
is preferred before **became ahead of** me:
for he was *before me* **first**.
16 And of his fulness have all we *received* **taken**,
and *grace* **charism** for *grace* **charism**.
17 For the *law* **torah** was given by *Moses* **through Mosheh**,
but *grace* **charism** and truth
came by *Jesus Christ* **became through Yah Shua Messiah**.
18 No *man* **one** hath seen *God* **Elohim**
at any time — **not ever**,
the only *begotten* **birthed** Son,
which is in the bosom of the Father,
he hath declared him.

BAPTIZER YAHN INTERROGATED

19 And this is the *record* **witness** of *John* **Yahn**,
when the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
sent **apostolized** priests and *Levites* **Leviym**
from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** to ask him, Who art thou?
20 And he *confessed* **professed**, and denied not;
but *confessed* **professed**, I am not the *Christ* **Messiah**.
21 And they asked him, **So** What *then?*
rt thou *Elias* **Eli Yah**?
And he *saith* **wordeth**, I am not.
Art thou that prophet?

YAHN 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

GENESIS OF THE EVANGELISMS: GENEALOGY OF THE WORD

1 In the beginning was* the Word
and the Word was* with Elohim
and Elohim was* the Word:
2 he was*, in beginning, with Elohim.
*was: in the sense of eternal being

THE WORD IS THE CREATOR

3 All became through him;
and apart from him
naught became that became:
4 in him life was;
and the life was the light of humanity:
5 the light manifested in darkness;
and the darkness overtook it not.

THE WITNESS OF BAPTIZER YAHN

6 And so be it,
a human apostolized from Elohim;
his name, Yahn:
7 he comes to witness
— to witness concerning the Light
so that, through him, all trust:
8 he is not that Light
— but witnesses concerning that Light
9 — the true light
who lights every human coming into the cosmos.

10 He was in the cosmos
and through him the cosmos became;
and the cosmos knows him not:
11 he comes to his own,
and his own take him not.

THE ELOHIM BIRTH

12 But as many as take him
he gives authority to become the children of Elohim
— to them who trust in his name:
13 who, neither of blood,
nor of the will of the flesh,
nor of the will of man,
but of Elohim, are birthed.

THE WORD BECOMES FLESH

14 And the Word became flesh
and tabernacles in us;
and we see his glory
— the glory as of the only birthed of the Father
full of charism and truth.

15 Yahn witnesses concerning him, and cries,
wording, This is he of whom I say,
He coming after me, became ahead of me;
for he was first:
16 and we all take of his fulness
— and charism for charism.

17 For the torah was given through Mosheh;
charism and truth became through Yah Shua Messiah.

18 No one has seen Elohim — not ever,
the only birthed Son
being in the bosom of the Father,
he declares.

BAPTIZER YAHN INTERROGATED

19 And this is the witness of Yahn
when the Yah Hudiym apostolize priests and Leviym
from Yeru Shalem to ask him, Who are you?

20 And he professes, and denies not;
but professes, I am not the Messiah.

21 And they ask him, So what? Are you Eli Yah?

And he words, I am not.

Are you that prophet?

JOHN 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

22 And he answered, No.
Then **So** said they unto him, Who art thou?
that we may give an answer to them that sent us.
What sayest **wordest** thou of **concerning** thyself?

23 He said,
I am the voice of one crying in the wilderness,
Make straight **Straighten** the way of the Lord **Yah Veh**,
exactly as said the prophet **Esaias Yesha Yah**.

Yesha Yah 40:3
24 And they which were sent **apostolized**
were of the Pharisees.
25 And they asked him, and said unto him,
So Why baptizest thou *then*,
if thou be not *that Christ the Messiah*,
nor *Elias Eli Yah*, neither that prophet?

26 **John Yahn** answered them, *saying wording*,
I baptize in water:
but there standeth one among you, whom ye know not;
27 He it is, who coming after me
is preferred before **became ahead of** me,
whose shoe's *latchet thongs* I am not worthy to unloose.
28 These *things were done* **became**
in *Bethabara Beth Abara* beyond *Jordan Yarden*,
where **John Yahn** was baptizing.

THE WORD IS THE LAMB OF ELOHIM
29 The next day
John Yahn seeth **Jesus Yah Shua** coming unto him,
and *saith wordeth*, Behold the Lamb of *God Elohim*,
which taketh away the sin of the *world cosmos*.
30 This is he of **concerning** whom I said,
After me cometh a man
which *is preferred before* **became ahead of** me:
for he was *before me* **first**.
31 And I knew him not:
but that he should be *made* manifest to *Israel Yisra El*,
therefore so am I come baptizing *with in* water.

THE WORD IS THE SON OF ELOHIM
32 And **John** bare record **Yahn** witnessed,
saying wording,
I saw the Spirit descending from heaven *like as* a dove,
and it abode upon him.
33 And I knew him not:
but he that sent me to baptize *with in* water,
the same said unto me,
Upon whom **ever** thou shalt see the Spirit descending,
and *remaining abiding* on him,
the same is he
which baptizeth *with in* the Holy *Ghost Spirit*.
34 And I saw, and *bare record* **witnessed**
that this is the Son of *God Elohim*.

YAH SHUA BEGINS HIS MINISTRY
35 Again the next day after **John Yahn** stood,
and two of his disciples;
36 And looking *upon Jesus at Yah Shua* as he walked,
he *saith wordeth*, Behold the Lamb of *God Elohim*!
37 And the two disciples heard him speak,
and they followed **Jesus Yah Shua**.
38 Then **Jesus Yah Shua** turned, and saw them following,
and *saith wordeth* unto them, What seek ye?
They said unto him, Rabbi,
(which is to say **word**,
being *interpreted Master translated Doctor*,)
where *dwellest abidest* thou?
39 He *saith wordeth* unto them, Come and see.
They came and saw where he *dwelt abode*,
and abode with him that day:
for it was about the tenth hour.

THE WORD IS THE MESSIAH
40 One of the two which heard **John Yahn** speak,
and followed him, was *Andrew Andreas*,
Simon Peter's Shimon Petros' brother.
41 He first findeth his own brother **Simon Shimon**,

YAHN 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And he answers, No.
22 So they say to him, Who are you?
— to give an answer to them who send us.
What word you concerning yourself?

23 He says,
I — the voice of one crying in the wilderness,
Straighten the way of Yah Veh,
exactly as Yesha Yah the prophet says.

Yesha Yah 40:3
24 And those apostolized are of the Pharisees:
25 and they ask him, and say to him,
So why baptize you,
if you are neither the Messiah
nor Eli Yah nor the prophet?

26 Yahn answers them, wording,
I baptize in water:
but one stands among you whom ye know not;
27 he coming after me, became ahead of me;
of whom I am not worthy
to unloose the thongs of his shoes.
28 — these become in Beth Abara beyond Yarden,
where Yahn baptizes.

THE WORD IS THE LAMB OF ELOHIM
29 On the morrow
Yahn sees Yah Shua coming to him,
and words, Behold the Lamb of Elohim,
who takes away the sin of the cosmos!
30 This is he concerning whom I say,
After me comes a man, who became ahead of me;
31 because he was first:
and I knew him not
other than to manifest him to Yisra El,
so I come baptizing in water.

THE WORD IS THE SON OF ELOHIM
32 And Yahn witnesses, wording,
I saw the Spirit descending as a dove from the heavens;
33 and abiding upon him:
and I knew him not:
but he who sent me to baptize in water, said to me,
Upon whomever you see the Spirit descending,
and abiding on him,
is he who baptizes in the Holy Spirit.
34 — and I saw and witness,
that this is the Son of Elohim.

YAH SHUA BEGINS HIS MINISTRY
35 Again on the morrow
Yahn stands with two of his disciples;
36 and looking at Yah Shua walking;
he words, Behold the Lamb of Elohim!
37 And the two disciples hear him speak,
and they follow Yah Shua.
38 Then Yah Shua turns and sees them following
and words to them, What seek you?
They say to him, Rabbi!
— which words — translated, Doctor!
Where abide you?
39 He words to them, Come and see.
They go and see where he abides;
and abide with him that day
— for it is about the tenth hour.

THE WORD IS THE MESSIAH
40 Andreas the brother of Shimon Petros
— one of the two
who heard from Yahn and follows him
41 first finds his own brother Shimon,

JOHN 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and *saith wordeth* unto him, We have found the Messias,
which is, being *interpreted translated*,
the *Christ Messiah*.

42 And he brought him to *Jesus Yah Shua*.
And when *Jesus beheld Yah Shua looked at* him, he said,
Thou art *Simon Shimon* the son of *Jona Yonah*:
thou shalt be called *Cephas Kepha*,
which is by *interpretation translation*, a *Stone Petros*.

43 The day following
Jesus would Yah Shua willed to go forth into *Galilee Galiyl*,
and findeth *Philip Philippos*,
and *saith wordeth* unto him, Follow me.

44 Now *Philip Philippos* was of *Bethsaida Beth Sayad*,
the city of *Andrew Andreas* and *Peter Petros*.

45 *Philip Philippos* findeth *Nathanael Nathan El*,
and *saith wordeth* unto him, We have found him,
of whom *Moses Mosheh* in the *law torah*,
and the prophets, *did write scribed*,
Jesus Yah Shua of Nazareth, the son of *Joseph Yoseph*.

46 And *Nathanael said Nathan El wordeth* unto him,
Can there **be** any good *thing come out of from* Nazareth?
Philip saith Philippos wordeth unto him, Come and see.

47 *Jesus Yah Shua* saw *Nathanael Nathan El*
coming to him,
and *saith of wordeth concerning* him,
Behold **truly** an *Israelite indeed Yisra Eliy*,
in whom is no *guile deception!*

48 *Nathanael saith Nathan El wordeth* unto him,
Whence knowest thou me?
Jesus Yah Shua answered and *said spake* unto him,
Before that Philip called Ere Philippos voiced out to thee,
when thou wast under the fig tree, I saw thee.

49 *Nathanael Nathan El* answered
and *saith wordeth* unto him,
Rabbi, thou art the Son of *God Elohim*;
thou art the *King Sovereign* of *Israel Yisra El*.

50 *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and *said spake* unto him,
Because I said unto thee, I saw thee under the fig tree,
believest trustest thou?
thou shalt see greater *things* than these.

51 And he *saith wordeth* unto him,
Verily, verily I say Amen! Amen! I word unto you,
Hereafter From now on ye shall see heaven open,
and the angels of *God Elohim*
ascending and descending
upon the Son of *man humanity*.

THE FIRST SIGN BY YAH SHUA

2 And the third day there was **became** a marriage
in *Cana Qanah* of *Galilee Galiyl*
and the mother of *Jesus Yah Shua* was there:

2 And both *Jesus Yah Shua* was called, and his disciples,
to the marriage.

3 And when they *wanted lacked* wine,
the mother of *Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth* unto him,
They have no wine.

4 *Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth* unto her,
Woman, what have I to do with thee?
What is that to me and to you, woman?
mine hour is not yet come.

5 His mother *saith wordeth* unto the *servants ministers*,
Whatsoever he *saith wordeth* unto you, do it.

6 And there were set there six waterpots of stone,
after the manner of the purifying of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*,
containing two or three *firkins apiece measures each*.

7 *Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth* unto them,
Fill the waterpots with water.
And they filled them *up* to the brim.

8 And he *saith wordeth* unto them, *Draw out Bail* now,
and bear unto the *governor arch* of the *feast entertainment*.

YAHN 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and words to him, We found the Messias!
— which translates, the Messiah.

42 And he brings him to Yah Shua:
and Yah Shua looks at him, and says,
You are Shimon the son of Yonah:
you are called Kepha!
— which translates, Petros.

43 On the morrow he wills to go to Galiyl
and finds Philippos;
and words to him, Follow me.

44 And Philippos is from Beth Sayad
the city of Andreas and Petros:
45 Philippos finds Nathan El, and words to him,
We found him
who was scribed by Mosheh in the torah
and in the prophets
— Yah Shua of Nazareth, the son of Yoseph.

46 And Nathan El words to him,
Can there be any good from Nazareth?
Philippos words to him, Come and see.

47 Yah Shua sees Nathan El coming to him,
and words concerning him,
Behold, truly an Yisra Eliy, in whom is no deception!

48 Nathan El words to him, Whence know you me?
Yah Shua answers him, speaking,
Ere Philippos voiced to you,
being under the fig tree, I saw you.

49 Nathan El answers him, wording,
Rabbi, you are the Son of Elohim!
You are the Sovereign of Yisra El!

50 Yah Shua answers him, speaking,
Because I say to you, I saw you under the fig tree,
trust you?
Greater than these you see.

51 And he words to him,
Amen! Amen! I word to you,
From now on you see the heavens opened,
and the angels of Elohim
ascending and descending on the Son of humanity.

THE FIRST SIGN BY YAH SHUA

2 And the third day
there is a marriage in Qanah, Galiyl;
and the mother of Yah Shua is there:
and they also call Yah Shua and his disciples
to the marriage.

3 And lacking wine,
the mother of Yah Shua words to him,
They have no wine.

4 Yah Shua words to her,
What *is that* to me and to you, woman?
My hour has not yet come.

5 His mother words to the ministers,
Whatever he words to you, do.

6 And there are six waterpots of stone
set according to the purifying of the Yah Hudiym
— each containing two or three measures.

7 Yah Shua words to them,
Fill the waterpots with water.
— and they fill them to the brim.

8 And he words to them, Bail now,
and bear to the arch of entertainment.

JOHN 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

And they bare it.
9 When the ruler **arch** of the feast **entertainment**
had tasted the water that *was made* **became** wine,
and knew not whence it was:
(but the *servants* **ministers**
which *drew* **bailed** the water knew;)
the governor **arch** of the feast **entertainment**
called **voiced out** to the bridegroom,
10 And *saith* **wordeth** unto him,
Every *man* **human** at the beginning
doth set forth good wine;
and when *men* **ever they** have *well drunk* **intoxicated**,
then that which is worse **so the lesser**:
but thou hast *kept* **guarded** the good wine until now.
11 This beginning of *miracles* **signs**
did *Jesus* **Yah Shua** in *Cana* **Qanah** of *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
and manifested *forth* his glory;
and his disciples *believed on* **trusted in** him.

YAH SHUA CLEARS THE PRIESTAL PRECINCT

12 After this he *went down* **descended**
to *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**,
he, and his mother, and his brethren, and his disciples:
and they *continued* **abode** there not many days.
13 And the *Jews'* **passover** **Yah Hudiym's pasach**
was at hand **near**,
and *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
went up **ascended** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
14 And found in the *temple* **priestal precinct**
those that sold oxen and sheep and doves,
and the *changers of money* **coindealers** sitting:
15 And when he had made a *scourge* **whip**
of small cords **ropes**,
he *drove* **cast** them all out of the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
and the sheep, and the oxen;
and poured out the *changers' money* **coindealer's coins**,
and *overthrew* **overturned** the tables;
16 And said unto them that sold doves,
Take these *things* hence;
make not my Father's house an house of merchandise.
17 And his disciples remembered
that it was *written* **scribed**,
The zeal of thine house hath *eaten* **consumed** me up.

Psalm 69:9

YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION

18 Then **So** answered the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
and said unto him,
What sign shewest thou unto us,
seeing that thou doest these *things*?
19 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered and said unto them,
Destroy **Release** this *temple* **nave**,
and in three days I *will* **shall** raise it up.
20 Then **So** said the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**,
Forty and six years was this *temple* **nave** in building,
and *wilt* **shalt** thou *rear* **raise** it up in three days?
21 But he *spake* **worded**
of concerning the *temple* **nave** of his body.
22 **So** When *therefore* he was risen from the dead,
his disciples remembered
that he had *said* **worded** this unto them;
and they *believed* **trusted** the scripture,
and the word which *Jesus* **Yah Shua** had said.

THE PASACH CELEBRATION

23 Now when he was in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
at the *passover* **pasach**, in the *feast day* **celebration**,
many *believed* **trusted** in his name,
when they saw the *miracles* **signs** which he did.
24 But *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
did not commit **entrusted not** himself unto them,
because he knew all *men*,
25 And needed not that any **one**
should *testify of man* **witness concerning humanity**:
for he knew what was in *man* **humanity**.

THE SPIRIT BIRTH

3 There was a *man* **human** of the Pharisees,
named Nicodemus,
a ruler **an arch** of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**:
2 The same came to *Jesus* **Yah Shua** by night,
and said unto him,

YAHN 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— and they bear.

9 And the arch of entertainment
tastes the water become wine,
and knows not whence it is
— but the ministers bailing the water know.

And the arch of entertainment
voices out to the bridegroom
and words to him,
10 Every human, at the beginning, sets good wine;
and whenever they intoxicate, then the lesser:
you guarded the good wine until now.

11 Yah Shua does this beginning of signs
in Qanah of Galiyl;
and manifests his glory:
and his disciples trust in him.

YAH SHUA CLEARS THE PRIESTAL PRECINCT

12 After this he descends to Kaphar Nachum
— he and his mother and his brothers and his disciples:
and they abide there not many days.

13 And the pasach of the Yah Hudiym is near
and Yah Shua ascends to Yeru Shalem;
and in the priestal precinct
finds them who sell oxen and sheep and doves
— and the coindealers sitting:
14 and he makes a whip of ropes
and casts them all from the priestal precinct
with the sheep and the oxen;
and pours out the coins of the coindealers
and overturns the tables;
15 and says to them who sell doves,
Take these hence;
make not the house of my Father
a house of merchandise.
16 — and his disciples remember it is scribed,
The zeal of your house consumes me.

Psalm 69:9

YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION

18 So the Yah Hudiym answer him, saying,
What sign show you us, that you do these?

19 Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Release this nave, and in three days I raise it.

20 So the Yah Hudiym say,
Forty—six years to build this nave,
and you, raise it in three days?

21 But he words concerning the nave of his body:
22 so when he rises from the dead,
his disciples remember that he worded this to them;
and they trust the scripture
and the word Yah Shua said.

THE PASACH CELEBRATION

23 And as he is in Yeru Shalem,
in the pasach, in the celebration,
many trust in his name,
24 seeing the signs he does:
and Yah Shua entrusts not himself to them
because he knows all;
25 and needs no one to witness concerning humanity:
for he knows what is in humanity.

THE SPIRIT BIRTH

3 And there is a human of the Pharisees;
his name, Nicodemus — an arch of the Yah Hudiym:
2 who comes to Yah Shua by night, and says to him,

JOHN 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

Rabbi, we know that thou art a *teacher doctor* come from *God Elohim*:
 for no *man one* can do these *miracles signs* that thou doest, *except God unless Elohim* be with him.

3 *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said unto him,
Verily, verily, I say Amen! Amen! I word unto thee,
Except a man Unless one be *born birthed again above*,
 he cannot see the *kingdom sovereignty* of *God Elohim*.

4 *Nicodemus saith wordeth* unto him,
 How can a *man human* be *born birthed* when he is old?
 can he enter the second time into his mother's womb,
 and be *born birthed*?

5 *Jesus Yah Shua* answered,
Verily, verily I say Amen! Amen! I word unto thee,
Except a man be Unless one is birthed
 of water and of the Spirit
 he cannot enter
 into the *kingdom sovereignty* of *God Elohim*.
 That which is *born birthed* of the flesh is flesh;
 and that which is *born birthed* of the Spirit is spirit.
 Marvel not that I said unto thee,
 Ye must be *born birthed again from above*.
 The *wind bloweth Spirit puffeth*
 where it *listeth he willeth*,
 and thou hearest the *sound thereof voice of him*,
 but *canst not tell knowest not*
 whence it cometh, and whither it goeth:
 so *thus* is every one that is *born birthed* of the Spirit.

9 *Nicodemus* answered and said unto him,
 How can these *things* be?
 How can these *things* be?
 How can these *things* be?
 How can these *things* be?

11 *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said unto him,
 Art thou a *master doctor* of *Israel Yisra El*,
 and knowest not these *things*?
Verily, verily I say Amen! Amen! I word unto thee,
 We speak that we do know,
 and *testify witness* that we have seen;
 and ye *receive take* not our witness.

12 If I have *told said to you of the* earthly *things*,
 and ye *believe trust* not,
 how shall ye *believe trust*,
 if *whenever I tell say to you of the* heavenly *things*?
 And no *man one* hath ascended up to heaven,
 but *except* he that *came down descended* from heaven,
 even the Son of *man humanity* which is in heaven.

14 **ETERNAL LIFE**
 And *exactly* as *Moses Mosheh*
lifted up exalted the serpent in the wilderness,
 even so *thus*
 must the Son of *man humanity* be *lifted up exalted*:
 That whosoever *believeth trusteth* in him
 should not *perish destruct*, but have eternal life.

15 Yahn 12:30—34
 For *God so Elohim* loved the *world, cosmos thus*:
 that he gave his only *begotten birthed* Son,
 that whosoever *believeth trusteth* in him
 should not *perish destruct*
 but have *everlasting eternal* life.

17 For *God Elohim*
sent apostolized not his Son into the *world cosmos*
 to *condemn judge* the *world cosmos*;
 but that the *world cosmos* through him might be saved.

18 He that *believeth on trusteth* in him
 is not *condemned judged*:
 but he that *believeth trusteth* not
 is *condemned judged* already,
 because he hath not *believed trusted* in the name
 of the only *begotten birthed* Son of *God Elohim*.

19 And this is the *condemnation judgment*,
 that light is come into the *world cosmos*,
 and men loved darkness rather than light,
 because their *deeds works* were evil.

20 For every one that doeth evil hateth the light,
 neither cometh to the light,
 lest his *deeds works* should be reprov'd.

21 But he that doeth truth cometh to the light,
 that his *deeds works* may be *made* manifest,
 that they are *wrought worked* in *God Elohim*.

22 **THE FINAL WITNESS OF BAPTIZER YAHN**
 After these *things*

YAHN 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Rabbi, we know you are a doctor come from Elohim:
 for no one can do these signs you do
 unless Elohim be with him.

3 Yah Shua answers him, saying,
 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
 Unless one is birthed from above,
 he cannot see the sovereignty of Elohim.

4 Nicodemus words to him,
 How can a human be birthed when he is old?
 Can he enter the womb of his mother
 a second time and be birthed?

5 Yah Shua answers,
 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
 Unless one is birthed of water and of the Spirit
 he cannot enter the sovereignty of Elohim:
 that birthed of the flesh is flesh;
 and that birthed of the Spirit is spirit:
 marvel not that I say to you,
 you need to be birthed from above.
 The Spirit puffs where he wills
 and you hear his voice;
 but know not whence it comes and where it goes:
 thus is everyone birthed of the Spirit.

9 Nicodemus answers him, saying,
 How can these be?

10 Yah Shua answers him, saying,
 You, a doctor of Yisra El, and know these not?

11 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
 We speak what we know,
 and witness what we see;
 and you take not our witness:
 if I say to you of the earthly, and you trust not,
 how trust you, whenever I say to you of the heavenlies?
 And no one ascends to the heavens,
 except whoever descends from the heavens
 — even the Son of humanity who is in the heavens.

14 **ETERNAL LIFE**
 And exactly as Mosheh
 exalted the serpent in the wilderness,
 even thus must the Son of humanity be exalted:
 so that whoever trusts in him
 destructs not, but has eternal life.

15 Yahn 12:30—34
 For Elohim loved the cosmos thus:
 that he gave his only birthed Son;
 that whoever trusts in him destructs not
 but has eternal life.

17 For Elohim
 apostolized not his Son into the cosmos
 to judge the cosmos;
 but that the cosmos be saved through him.

18 Whoever trusts in him is not judged;
 but whoever trusts not is already judged:
 because he trusts not
 in the name of the only birthed Son of Elohim.

19 And this is the judgment:
 light comes into the cosmos,
 and men love darkness rather than light
 because their works are evil.

20 For everyone doing evil hates the light;
 and comes not to the light lest his works be reprov'd:
 but whoever does truth comes to the light,
 to manifest that his works are worked in Elohim.

22 **THE FINAL WITNESS OF BAPTIZER YAHN**
 After these,

JOHN 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

came Jesus **Yah Shua** and his disciples
into the land of *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**;
and there he tarried with them, and baptized.
23 And *John* **Yahn** also was baptizing
in *Aenon* **Ainon** near to *Salim* **Shalem**,
because there was much water there:
and they came, and were baptized.
24 For *John* **Yahn**
was not yet cast into *prison* **the guardhouse**.
25 Then **So** there *arose* **became** a question
between some of *John's* **Yahn's** disciples
and the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** about purifying.
26 And they came unto *John* **Yahn**, and said unto him,
Rabbi, he that was with thee beyond *Jordan* **Yarden**,
to whom thou *barest witness* **witnessesest**,
behold, the same baptizeth, and all *men* come to him.
27 *John* **Yahn** answered and said,
A man **Humanity** can receive *nothing* **take naught**,
except **unless** it be given him from heaven.
28 Ye yourselves *bear me witness* **witnessed**, that I said,
I am not the *Christ* **Messiah**,
but that I am *sent before* **apostolized ahead of** him.
29 He that hath the bride is the bridegroom:
but the friend of the bridegroom,
which standeth and heareth him,
rejoiceth greatly **cheereth cheer**
because of the bridegroom's voice:
so this my joy *therefore* is fulfilled/**shalamed**.
30 He must *increase* **grow**, but I must *decrease* **lessen**.
31 He that cometh from above is above all:
he that is of the earth is *earthly* **of the earth**,
and speaketh of the earth:
he that cometh from heaven is above all.
32 And what he hath seen and heard,
that he *testifieth* **witnesseth**;
and no *man* *receiveth* **one** *taketh* his *testimony* **witness**.
33 He that hath *received* **taken** his *testimony* **witness**
hath set to his seal that *God* **Elohim** is true.
34 For he whom *God* **Elohim** hath *sent* **apostolized**
speaketh the *words* **rhema** of *God* **Elohim**:
for *God* **Elohim** giveth not the Spirit by measure unto him.
35 The Father loveth the Son,
and hath given all *things* into his hand.
36 He that *believeth on* **trusteth in** the Son
hath *everlasting* **eternal** life:
and he that *believeth not* **distrusteth** the Son
shall not see life;
but the wrath of *God* **Elohim** abideth on him.

YAH SHUA GOES TO GALIYL

4 **So** When *therefore* the *Lord* **Adonay** knew
how the Pharisees had heard
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** made and baptized
many more disciples than *John* **Yahn**,
2 (Though *Jesus* **Yah Shua** himself baptized not,
but his disciples),
3 He left *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**,
and departed again into *Galilee* **Galiyl**
YAH SHUA AND THE SHOMERONIY
4 And he must *needs go* **pass** through *Samaria* **Shomeron**.
5 Then **So** cometh he to a city of *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
which is *called* **worded** *Sychar*,
near to the *parcel of ground* **field**
that *Jacob* **Yaaqov** gave to his son *Joseph* **Yoseph**.
6 Now *Jacob's well* **Yaaqov's fountain** was there.
Jesus **therefore** **So** *Yah Shua*,
being wearied with **belabored from** his journey,
sat thus on the well:
and it was about the sixth hour.
7 There cometh a woman of *Samaria* **Shomeron**
to *draw* **bail** water:
Jesus **saith** **Yah Shua** **wordeth** unto her, Give me to drink.
8 (For his disciples were gone away unto the city
to *buy meat* **market for nourishment**).
9 Then *saith* **So** the woman of *Samaria* — **a ShomeroniY**
wordeth unto him,
How is it that thou, being a *Jew* **Yah HudiY**,
askest drink of me,
which am a woman of *Samaria* — **a ShomeroniY?**
for the *Jews* **have no dealings** **Yah HudiYm** **associate not**

YAHN 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Yah Shua and his disciples
go to the land of Yah Hudah;
and he tarries with them, and baptizes:
23 and Yahn also baptizes in Aion near Shalem
because there is much water there:
and they come, and are baptized:
24 for Yahn is not yet cast into the guardhouse.
25 So there is a question
between some of the disciples of Yahn
and the Yah Hudiym about purifying:
26 and they go to Yahn, and say to him,
Rabbi, he who is with you beyond Yarden,
to whom you witness,
behold, he baptizes, and all go to him.
27 Yahn answers, saying,
Humanity can take naught
unless it is given him from the heavens.
28 You yourselves witnessed that I said,
I am not the Messiah;
but that I am apostolized ahead of him.
29 He who has the bride is the bridegroom:
but the friend of the bridegroom
who stands and hears him,
cheers with cheer
because of the voice of the bridegroom:
so this my joy is fulfilled/shalamed.
30 He must grow; and me to lessen:
31 He who comes from above is over all:
He who is of the earth is of the earth,
and speaks of the earth:
whoever comes from the heavens is over all.
32 And what he see and hears, he witnesses;
and no one takes his witness:
whoever takes his witness
sets his seal that Elohim is true:
34 for he whom Elohim apostolizes
speaks the rhema of Elohim:
for Elohim gives him not the Spirit by measure.
35 The Father loves the Son
and gives all into his hand.
36 He who trusts in the Son has eternal life:
and he who distrusts the Son sees not life;
but the wrath of Elohim abides on him.

YAH SHUA GOES TO GALIYL

4 So when Adonay knows
that the Pharisees hear that Yah Shua
makes and baptizes many more disciples than Yahn,
2 — though Yah Shua himself baptizes no one
except his disciples,
3 he leaves Yah Hudah and departs again to Galiyl.

YAH SHUA AND THE SHOMERONIY

4 And he must pass through Shomeron:
5 so he goes to a city of Shomeron worded Sychar
near the field Yaaqov gave his son Yoseph;
6 and the fountain of Yaaqov is there:
so Yah Shua, belabored from his journey,
7 sits thus on the well at about the sixth hour:
and a woman of Shomeron comes to bail water.
8 Yah Shua words to her, Give me a drink.
— for his disciples had gone to the city
to market for nourishment.
9 So the woman — a ShomeroniY words to him,
How is it you, being a Yah HudiY,
ask drink of me, being a woman — a ShomeroniY?
— for the Yah HudiYm associate not

JOHN 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

with the Samaritans Shomeroniym

10 Jesus **Yah Shua** answered and said unto her,
If thou knewest the *gift* **gratuity** of God **Elohim**,
and who it is that *saith* **wordeth** to thee,
Give me to drink;
thou *wouldest* **shouldest ever** have asked of him,
and he *would* **should ever** have given thee living water.
11 The woman *saith* **wordeth** unto him,
Sir Adoni, thou hast *nothing* **naught** to draw **bail** with,
and the well is deep:
so from whence *then* hast thou that living water?
12 Art thou greater than our father *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
which gave us the well, and drank thereof himself,
and his *children* **sons**, and his *cattle* **stock**?
13 Jesus **Yah Shua** answered and said unto her,
Whosoever drinketh of this water shall thirst again:
14 But whosoever drinketh of the water
that I shall give him
shall never **ever** thirst **unto the eons**;
but the water that I shall give him
shall be in him a *well* **fountain** of water
springing up into *everlasting* **eternal** life.
15 The woman *saith* **wordeth** unto him,
Sir Adoni, give me this water, that I thirst not,
neither come hither to draw **bail**.
16 Jesus *saith* **Yah Shua** **wordeth** unto her,
Go, *call* **voice out** to thy *husband* **man**, and come hither.
17 The woman answered and said,
I have no *husband* **man**.
Jesus *said* **Yah Shua** **worded** unto her,
Thou hast well *said* **spoken**, I have no *husband* **man**:
18 For thou hast had five *husbands* **men**;
and he whom thou now hast is not thy *husband* **man**:
in that *saidst* **spakest** thou truly.
19 The woman *saith* **wordeth** unto him,
Sir Adoni, I perceive that thou art a prophet.
20 Our fathers worshipped in this mountain;
and ye *say* **word**, that in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
is the place where men *ought* **need** to worship.
21 Jesus *saith* **Yah Shua** **wordeth** unto her,
Woman, *believe* **trust** me, the hour cometh,
when ye shall neither in this mountain,
nor yet at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, worship the Father.
22 Ye worship ye know not what:
we know what we worship:
for salvation is of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**.
23 But the hour cometh, and now is,
when the true worshippers
shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth:
for the Father seeketh such to worship him.
24 God **Elohim** is a Spirit:
and they that worship him
must worship him in spirit and in truth.
25 The woman *saith* **wordeth** unto him,
I know that Messiah cometh,
which is *called* **Christ** **worded Messiah**:
when **ever** he is come,
he *will tell us* **shall evangelize** all *things us*.
26 Jesus *saith* **Yah Shua** **wordeth** unto her,
I that speak **I AM** **speaketh** unto thee *am he*.
27 And upon this came his disciples,
and marvelled that he *talked* **spake** with the woman:
yet **indeed** no *man* **one** said, What seekest thou?
or, Why *talkest* **speakest** thou with her?
28 **So** woman *then* **left** **forsook** her waterpot,
and went her way into the city,
and *saith* **wordeth** to the men,
29 Come, see a *man* **human**,
which told me *all things that* — **as much as** ever I did:
is not this the *Christ* **Messiah**?
30 *Then* **So** they went out of the city, and came unto him.

YAHN 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

with the Shomeroniym.

10 Yah Shua answers her, saying,
If you knew the gratuity of Elohim,
and who words to you, Give me a drink;
you had ever asked of him,
and he had ever given you living water.
11 The woman words to him,
Adoni, you have naught to bail and the well is deep:
so where have you that living water?
12 Are you greater than our father Yaaqov,
who gave us the well,
from which he and his sons, and his stock drank?
13 Yah Shua answers her, saying,
Whoever drinks of this water thirsts again:
14 but whoever drinks of the water I give
never ever thirsts to the eons;
but the water I give
becomes a fountain of water in him
springing up to eternal life.
15 The woman words to him,
Adoni, give me this water
that I neither thirst nor come here to bail.
16 Yah Shua words to her,
Go, voice out to your man, and come here.
17 The woman answers, saying,
I have no man.
18 Yah Shua words to her, Well spoken, I have no man:
for you had five men;
and he whom you now have is not your man
— in that you speak truly.
19 The woman words to him,
Adoni, I perceive you are a prophet:
our fathers worshipped in this mountain;
and you word, that in Yeru Shalem
is the place men need to worship.
20 Yah Shua words to her,
Woman, trust me, the hour comes,
when you neither in this mountain
nor in Yeru Shalem worship the Father:
you worship what you know not;
we worship what we know:
for salvation is of the Yah Hudiym.
21 But an hour comes, and now is,
when the true worshippers
worship the Father in spirit and in truth:
for the Father seeks such to worship him.
22 Elohim is a Spirit:
and they who worship him
must worship him in spirit and in truth.
23 The woman words to him,
I know that Messiah comes
— who is worded Messiah:
whenever he comes, he evangelizes us of all.
24 Yah Shua words to her, I AM speaks to you.
25 And upon this his disciples come,
and marvel that he speaks with the woman:
yet indeed no one says, What seek you?
or, Why speak to her?
26 So the woman forsakes her waterpot
and goes to the city and words to the men,
27 Come, see a human,
who told me as much as I ever did!
Is not this the Messiah?
28 — so they go from the city and come to him.

JOHN 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE FOOD OF YAH SHUA

31 In *the mean while* **between** his disciples *prayed* **asked** him,
saying **wording**, Master **Rabbi**, eat.
32 But he said unto them,
I have *meat* **food** to eat that ye know not of.
33 *Therefore said* **So worded** the disciples one to another,
Hath any *man* **one** brought him *ought* to eat?
34 *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua wordeth** unto them,
My *meat food* is to do the will of him that sent me,
and to *finish* **complete/shalam** his work.
35 Say **Word** not ye, There are yet four months,
and then cometh harvest?
behold, I say **word** unto you,
Lift up your eyes, and *look on* **see** the *fields* **regions**;
for they are white already to harvest.
36 And he that *reapeth* **harvesteth**
receiveth wages **taketh reward**,
and gathereth fruit unto life eternal:
that both he that *soweth* **sporeth**
and he that *reapeth* **harvesteth**
may *rejoice* **cheer** together.
37 And **For** herein is that *saying* **word** true,
One *soweth* **sporeth**, and another *reapeth* **harvesteth**.
38 I *sent* **apostolized** you
to *reap* **harvest** that whereon ye bestowed no labour:
other men **others** laboured,
and ye are entered into their labours.
39 And many of the *Samaritans* **Shomeronym** of that city
believed on **trusted in** him
for the *saying* **word** of the woman,
which *testified* **witnessed**,
He *told me all that* **said to me** — as much as ever I did.

YAH SHUA AND THE SHOMERONIYM

40 So when the *Samaritans* **Shomeronym**
were come unto him,
they *besought* **asked** him
that he *would tarry* **should abide** with them:
and he abode there two days.
41 And many more *believed* **trusted**
because of his own word;
42 And *said* **worded** unto the woman,
Now we *believe* **trust**, not because of thy *saying* **speech**:
for we have heard him ourselves,
and know that this is *indeed* **truly** the *Christ* **Messiah**,
the Saviour of the *world* **cosmos**.
43 Now after two days he departed thence,
and went into *Galilee* **Galiyl**.
44 For *Jesus* **Yah Shua** himself *testified* **witnessed**,
that a prophet hath no honour
in his own *country* **fatherland**.
45 *Then* **So** when he was come into *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
the *Galilaeans* **Galiliy** received him,
having seen all *the things* that he did
at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** at the *feast* **celebration**:
for they also went unto the *feast* **celebration**.

THE SECOND SIGN OF YAH SHUA

46 So *Jesus* **Yah Shua** came again
into *Cana* **Qanah** of *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
where he made the water wine.
And there was a *certain nobleman* **sovereign**,
whose son was *sick* **frail** at *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**.
47 When he heard that *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
was come out of *Judaea* **Yah Hudah** into *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
he went unto him,
and *besought* **asked** him
that he *would come down* **should descend**, and heal his son:
for he was at *the point of death* **about to die**.
48 *Then* **So** said *Jesus* **Yah Shua** unto him,
Except **Unless** ye see signs and *wonders* **omens**,
ye *will* **shall** not *believe* **trust**.
49 The *nobleman* **saith** **sovereign wordeth** unto him,
Sir **Adoni**, come *down* **descend** ere my child die.
50 *Jesus* **saith** **Yah Shua wordeth** unto him,
Go thy way; thy son liveth.
And the *man* **believed** **human trusted** the word
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** had *spoken* **said** unto him,
and he went his way.
51 And as he was *now going down* **already descending**,
his servants met him,

YAHN 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE FOOD OF YAH SHUA

31 In between, his disciples ask him,
wording, Rabbi, eat.
32 And he says to them,
I have food to eat that you know not.
33 So the disciples word to one another,
Has anyone brought him to eat?
34 Yah Shua words to them,
My food is to do the will of him who sent me
and to complete/shalam his work.
35 Word not, Yet four months, and harvest comes!
Behold, I word to you,
Lift your eyes, and see the regions;
for they are already white to harvest:
and whoever harvests, takes reward;
and gathers fruit to life eternal:
so that both the sporer and the harvester
cheer together.
37 For herein is that word true,
One spores, and another harvests.
38 I apostolize you
to harvest whereon you bestow no labour:
others labor, and you enter into their labors.
39 And many of the Shomeronym of that city
trust in him
because of the word of the woman who witnessed,
He said to me as much as I ever did.

YAH SHUA AND THE SHOMERONIYM

40 And the Shomeronym go to him,
and ask him to abide with them;
and he abides there two days:
41 and many more trust because of his own word.
42 And they word to the woman,
Now we trust, not because of your speech:
for we hear him ourselves,
and know that this is truly the Saviour of the cosmos
— the Messiah.
43 And after two days he departs from there,
and goes to Galiyl;
44 for Yah Shua himself witnessed
that a prophet has no honor in his own fatherland:
45 so he goes to Galiyl, and the Galiliym receive him,
seeing all he did at Yeru Shalem at the celebration;
for they also went to the celebration.

THE SECOND SIGN OF YAH SHUA

46 So Yah Shua comes again into Qanah, Galiyl
where he made the water wine:
and a sovereign whose son is frail at Kaphar Nachum
hears that Yah Shua
comes from Yah Hudah to Galiyl;
and he goes to him,
and asks him to descend and heal his son
for he is about to die.
48 So Yah Shua says to him,
Unless you see signs and omens, you trust not.
49 The sovereign words to him,
Adoni, descend ere my child die.
50 Yah Shua words to him,
Go your way; your son lives!
And the human trusts the word Yah Shua says to him
and he goes his way:
51 and as he descends, his servants meet him,

JOHN 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and told **evangelized** him saying **wording**,
Thy son **lad** liveth.
52 Then **So** enquired he of them
the hour *when* **in which** he began to amend.
And they said unto him,
Yesterday at the seventh hour the fever left him.
53 So the father knew that it was at the same hour,
in the which **Jesus Yah Shua** said unto him,
Thy son liveth:
and himself *believed* **trusted**, and his whole house.
54 This is again
the second *miracle* **sign** that **Jesus Yah Shua** did,
when he was come out of *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**
into *Galilee* **Galiyl**.

YAH SHUA HEALS ON THE SHABBATH

5 After this
there was a *feast* **celebration** of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**;
and **Jesus Yah Shua**
went up **ascended** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
2 Now there is at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
by the sheep *market* **gate** a pool,
which is called in the *Hebrew tongue* **Hebraic**
Bethesda **Beth Hesed**,
having five *porches* **porticos**.
3 In these lay a *great* **vast** multitude of *impotent folk* **frail**,
of blind, *halt* **lame**, withered,
waiting for the moving of the water.
4 For an angel *went down* **descended** at a certain season
into the pool, and *troubled* **agitated** the water:
sow **whosoever** *then* first
after the *troubling* **agitating** of the water
stepped in **entered**
was *made* **became** whole of whatsoever disease he had.
5 And a *certain man* **human** was there,
which had an *infirmity* **a fraility** thirty and eight years.
6 When **Jesus Yah Shua** saw him lie,
and knew that he had been
now a **long** **already** a **vast** time in that case,
he *saith* **wordeth** unto him,
Wilt **Willest** thou *be made* **become** whole?
7 The *impotent man* **frail** answered him,
Sir **Adoni**, I have no *man* **human**,
when **whenever** the water is troubled,
to put me into the pool:
but while I am coming,
another *steppeth down before* **descendeth in front of** me.
8 *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua wordeth** unto him,
Rise, take up thy *bed* **pad**, and walk.
9 And *immediately* **straightway**
the man was *made* **human became** whole,
and took up his *bed* **pad**, and walked:
and *on* **in** the same day was the *sabbath* **shabbath**.
10 **So** The *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** *therefore*
said **worded** unto him that was cured,
It is the *sabbath day* **shabbath**:
it is not *lawful* **allowed** for thee to carry thy *bed* **pad**.
11 He answered them, He that made me whole,
the same said unto me, Take up thy *bed* **pad**, and walk.
12 Then **So** asked they him,
What *man* **human** is that which said unto thee,
Take up thy *bed* **pad**, and walk?
13 And he that was healed *wist* **knew** not who it was:
for **Jesus Yah Shua** had conveyed himself away,
a multitude being in that place.
14 Afterward **Jesus Yah Shua**
findeth him in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
and said unto him,
Behold, thou art *made* **become** whole:
sin no more,
lest a **somewhat** worse *thing come* **become** unto thee.
15 The *man* **human** departed,
and *told* **evangelized** the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
that it was **Jesus Yah Shua**, which had made him whole.
16 And *therefore* **because of this**
did the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** persecute **Jesus Yah Shua**,
and sought to *slay* **slaughter** him,
because he had done these *things*
on **in** the *sabbath day* **shabbath**.
17 But **Jesus Yah Shua** answered them,

YAHN 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and evangelize him, wording, Your lad lives.
52 So he enquires of them
the hour he began to amend:
and they say to him,
Yesterday at the seventh hour the fever left him.
53 So the father knows it is at the same hour
Yah Shua said to him, Your son lives!
— and he and his whole house trust.
54 This again is the second sign Yah Shua does,
coming from Yah Hudah to Galiyl.

YAH SHUA HEALS ON THE SHABBATH

5 After these,
there is a celebration of the Yah Hudiym;
and Yah Shua ascends to Yeru Shalem:
2 and in Yeru Shalem by the sheep gate
there is a pool, called in Hebraic, Beth Hesed;
with five porticos:
3 and in these lie a vast multitude of the frail
— blind, lame, withered;
awaiting the moving of the water:
4 for at a certain season
an angel descends into the pool
and agitates the water;
so whoever enters first
after the agitating of the water
becomes whole of whatever disease he has.
5 And there is a human
who has a fraility thirty—eight years:
6 when Yah Shua sees him lie,
and knowing he already is there a vast time,
he words to him, Will you to become whole?
7 The frail answers him, Adoni, I have no human,
whenever the water troubles,
to put me into the pool:
but as I go, another descends in front of me.
8 Yah Shua words to him,
Rise, take your pad, and walk.
9 And straightway the human becomes whole,
and takes his pad, and walks.
— and that day is shabbath.
10 So the Yah Hudiym word to him who is cured,
It is shabbath:
you are not allowed to carry your pad.
11 He answers them, He who made me whole,
said to me, Take your pad and walk.
12 So they ask him,
What human said to you, Take your pad, and walk?
13 And he who is healed knows not who:
for Yah Shua conveyed himself away
— there being a multitude in that place.
14 After these
Yah Shua finds him in the priestal precinct,
and says to him,
Behold, you have become whole:
sin no more — lest somewhat worse becomes you.
15 The human departs,
and evangelizes the Yah Hudiym
that Yah Shua made him whole:
16 and because of this
the Yah Hudiym persecute Yah Shua,
and seek to slaughter him;
because he does these in shabbath.
17 And Yah Shua answers them,

JOHN 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

My Father worketh hitherto, and I work.

18 *Therefore* **And because of this**
the Jews **Yah Hudiym** sought the more to *kill* **slaughter** him,
because he not only
had *broken* **released** the *sabbath* **shabbath**,
but *said* **worded** also that *God* **Elohim** was his Father,
making himself equal with *God* **Elohim**.

read: Philippians 2:5—8

19 *Then* **So** answered *Jesus* **Yah Shua** and said unto them,
Verily, verily I say **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
The Son can do *nothing* **naught** of himself,
but what he seeth the Father do:
for what *things* soever he doeth,
these also doeth the Son likewise.

20 For the Father *loveth* **befriendeth** the Son,
and sheweth him all *things* that himself doeth:
and he *will* **shall** shew him greater works than these,
that ye may marvel.

21 For **exactly** as the Father raiseth *up* the dead,
and *quickeneth* **enliveneth** them;
even so **thus** the Son *quickeneth* **enliveneth**
whom he *will* **willeth**.

22 For the Father judgeth no *man* **one**,
but hath *committed* **given** all judgment unto the Son:
That all men should honour the Son,
even **exactly** as they honour the Father.

23 He that honoureth not the Son
honoureth not the Father which hath sent him.

24 *Verily, verily I say* **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
He that heareth my word,
and *believeth on* **trusteth** him that sent me,
hath *everlasting* **eternal** life,
and shall not come into *condemnation* **judgment**;
but is *passed* **departed** from death unto life.

25 *Verily, verily, I say* **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
The hour is coming, and now is,
when the dead
shall hear the voice of the Son of *God* **Elohim**:
and they that hear shall live.

26 For as the Father hath life in himself;
so **thus** hath he given to the Son to have life in himself;
27 And hath given him authority
to *execute* **do** judgment also,
because he is the Son of *man* **humanity**.

THE TWO RESURRECTIONS

28 Marvel not at this:
for the hour is coming, in the which
all that are in the *graves* **tombs** shall hear his voice,
29 And shall *come forth* **proceed**;
they that have done good,
unto the resurrection of life;
and they that have done evil,
unto the resurrection of *damnation* **judgment**.

30 I can of mine own self do *nothing* **naught**:
exactly as I hear, I judge: and my judgment is just;
because I seek not mine own will,
but the will of the Father which hath sent me.
31 *If* **Whenever** I bear witness of **concerning** myself,
my witness is not true.

32 There is another
that *beareth witness of* **witnesseth** **concerning** me;
and I know that the witness
which he witnesseth of **concerning** me is true.

33 *Ye sent* **apostolized** unto *John* **Yahn**,
and he *bare witness* **witnessed** unto the truth.
34 But I *receive* **take** not *testimony* **witness**
from *man* **humanity**:

but these *things* I say **I word**, that ye might be saved.
35 He was a burning and a *shining light* **manifest candle**:
and ye *were willing* **willed** for a season **an hour**
to *rejoice* **jump for joy** in his light.

36 But I have greater witness than that of *John* **Yahn**:
for the works
which the Father hath given me to *finish* **complete/shalam**,
the same works that I do, *bear witness of* **concerning** me,
that the Father hath *sent* **apostolized** me.

37 And the Father himself, which hath sent me,
hath *borne witness of* **witnessed** **concerning** me.
Ye have neither heard his voice *at any time* — **not ever**,

YAHN 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

My Father works until now; and I work.

18 *And because of this*
the Yah Hudiym seek the more to slaughter him;
because he not only releases the shabbath,
but also words that Elohim is his Father
— making himself equal with Elohim.

read: Philippians 2:5—8

19 So Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Amen! Amen! I word to you,
the Son can do naught of himself,
except what he sees the Father do:
for whatever he does,
these also the Son likewise does:
20 for the Father befriends the Son,
and shows him all he himself does:
and shows him greater works than these
so that you marvel.

21 For exactly as the Father raises the dead
and enlivens them;
even thus the Son enlivens whom he wills.

22 For the Father judges no one,
but gives all judgment to the Son:
23 so that all men honor the Son,
exactly as they honor the Father:
he who honors not the Son
honors not the Father who sent him.

24 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
Whoever hears my word and trusts him who sent me
has eternal life and goes not into judgment;
but departs from death to life.

25 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
an hour comes — and now is
when the dead hear the voice of the Son of Elohim:
and whoever hears, lives.

26 For as the Father has life in himself;
thus he gives the Son to have life in himself;
27 and also gives him authority to do judgment
because he is the Son of humanity.

THE TWO RESURRECTIONS

28 Marvel not at this:
an hour comes,
wherein all who are in the tombs hear his voice,
29 and whoever does good,
proceeds to the resurrection of life;
and whoever does evil,
to the resurrection of judgment.

30 I, of my own self, can do naught:
exactly as I hear, I judge; and my judgment is just:
because I seek not my own will
but the will of the Father who sent me.
31 Whenever I witness concerning myself,
my witness is not true:
32 another witnesses concerning me;
and I know
the witness he witnesses concerning me is true.

33 You apostolize to Yahn;
and he witnesses to the truth:
34 but I take no witness from humanity;
but I word these, that you be saved:
35 he was a burning and a manifest candle:
and for an hour
you willed to jump for joy in his light:
36 but I have greater witness than Yahn:
for the works the Father gave me to complete/shalam
— these works I do, they witness concerning me,
that the Father apostolized me.

37 And the Father himself, who sent me,
witnesses concerning me.
You neither heard his voice — not ever,

JOHN 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

38 nor seen his *shape* **semblance**.
And ye have not his word abiding in you:
for whom he hath *sent* **apostolized**, him ye *believe* **trust** not.
39 Search the scriptures;
for in them ye think ye have eternal life:
and they are they which *testify of* **witness concerning** me.
40 And ye will **to** not come to me, that ye might have life.
41 I receive **take** not *honour* **glory** from *men* **humanity**.
42 But I know you,
that ye have not the love of *God* **Elohim** in you.
43 I am come in my Father's name,
and ye receive **take** me not:
if whenever another shall come in his own name,
him ye will receive **shall take**.
44 How can ye *believe* **trust**,
which receive *honour* **take glory** one of another,
and seek not the *honour* **glory**
that cometh from *God* **Elohim** only?
45 Do not think that I will **shall** accuse you to the Father:
there is one that accuseth you,
even *Moses* **Mosheh**, in whom ye *trust* **hope**.
46 For had ye *believed* *Moses* **trusted Mosheh**,
ye would **should** have *believed* **trusted** me;
for he *wrote of* **scribed concerning** me.
47 But if ye *believe* **trust** not his *writings* **scribings**,
how shall ye *believe* **trust** my *words* **rhema**?

YAH SHUA FEEDS FIVE THOUSAND

6

After these *things*
Jesus **Yah Shua** went over the sea of *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
which is the sea of Tiberias.
2 And a *great* **vast** multitude followed him,
because they saw his *miracles* **signs**
which he did on them that were *diseased* **frail**.
3 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** went up into a mountain,
and there he sat with his disciples.
4 And the *passover* **pasach**,
a *feast* **celebration** of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**, was nigh.
5 When *Jesus* then **Yah Shua** lifted up his eyes,
and saw a *great company* **vast multitude** come unto him,
he *saith* **wordeth** unto *Philip* **Philippos**,
Whence shall we *buy* **market** bread, that these may eat?
6 And this he *said* **worded** to *prove* **test** him:
for he himself knew what he would **should** do.
7 *Philip* **Philippos** answered him,
Two hundred *pennyworth* **denarion** of bread
is not sufficient for them,
that *every one* **each** of them may take a little.
8 One of his disciples, *Andrew* **Andreas**,
Simon Peter's **Shimon Petros**¹ brother
saith **wordeth** unto him,
9 There is a *lad* **child** here,
which hath five barley *loaves* **bread**s,
and two small *fishes* **broilings**:
but what are they *among* **unto** so many?
10 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said,
Make the *men sit down* **humans repose**.
Now there was much *grass* **herbage** in the place.
So the men *sat down* **reposed**
in number about five thousand.
11 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** took the *loaves* **bread**s;
and when he had *given thanks* **eucharistized**,
he distributed to the disciples,
and the disciples to them that *were set down* **reposed**;
and likewise of the *fishes* **broilings**
as much as they would **willed**.
12 When they were filled,
he *said* **worded** unto his disciples,
Gather up **together** the fragments that *remain* **superabound**,
that *nothing be lost* **naught destruct**.
13 Therefore **So** they gathered them together,
and filled twelve baskets
with the fragments of the five barley *loaves* **bread**s,
which *remained* **superabounded** over and above
unto them that had eaten.
14 Then **So** those men,
when they had seen the *miracle* **sign**
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** did, *said* **worded**,
This is of a *truth* **truly** that prophet
that should come into the *world* **cosmos**.

YAHN 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

38 nor saw his *semblance*:
nor have you his word abiding in you:
for whom he apostolized, you trust not.
39 Search the scriptures;
for in them you think you have eternal life:
and these are those that witness concerning me.
40 And you will to not come to me, to have life.
41 I take no glory from humanity.
42 But I know you,
that you have not the love of Elohim in you.
43 I come in the name of my Father,
and you take me not:
whenever another comes in his own name,
him you take.
44 How can you trust
— you who take glory of one another,
and seek not the glory that comes from Elohim only?
45 Think not that I accuse you to the Father:
there is one who accuses you,
even Mosheh, in whom you hope:
46 for had you trusted Mosheh, you had trusted me;
for he scribed concerning me:
47 but if you trust not his scribings,
how trust you my rhema?

YAH SHUA FEEDS FIVE THOUSAND

6

After these
Yah Shua comes across the sea of Galiyl of Tiberias:
2 and a vast multitude follows him,
because they see the signs he does on the frail:
3 and Yah Shua ascends the mountain;
and sits there with his disciples:
4 and the pasach, a celebration of the Yah Hudiym,
is near.
5 Yah Shua, lifting his eyes,
sees a vast multitude come to him;
and words to Philippos,
Where market we bread for these to eat?
6 — he words this to test him:
for he himself knows what to do.
7 Philippos answers him,
Two hundred denarion of bread
is not sufficient for each of them to take a little.
8 One of his disciples,
Andreas, the brother of Shimon Petros, words to him,
9 Here is a child
who has five barley breads and two small broilings:
but what are they to so many?
10 And Yah Shua says, Have the humans repose.
— and there is much herbage in the place:
the men repose — about five thousand in number.
11 And Yah Shua takes the breads and eucharistizes;
and distributes to the disciples;
and the disciples to those reposing;
and likewise the broilings — as much as they will.
12 And when they are filled, he words to his disciples,
Gather together the fragments that superabound
so that naught destructs.
13 So they gather them together;
and fill twelve baskets
with the fragments of the five barley breads
which superabounded over and above them who ate.
14 So those men,
when they see the sign Yah Shua did, word,
This truly is that prophet to come into the cosmos.

JOHN 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 When Jesus therefore perceived So Yah Shua knowing
that they would **should** come and take **seize** him by force,
to make him a *king* **sovereign**,
he departed again into a mountain himself alone.
16 And when even was now come **being evening**,
his disciples went down **descended** unto the sea,
17 And entered **embarked** into a *ship* **sailer**,
and went over the sea
toward Capernaum **unto Kaphar Nachum**.
And it was now **had already become** dark,
and Jesus **Yah Shua** was not come to them.
18 And the sea **arose was roused**
by reason **the puffing** of a great *mega* wind that blew.
YAH SHUA WALKS ON THE SEA
19 So when they had rowed **were driven**
about five and twenty or thirty *furlongs* **stadia**,
they see Jesus **Yah Shua** walking on the sea,
and drawing **being** nigh unto the *ship* **sailer**:
and they were *afraid* **awestricken**.
20 But he saith **wordeth** unto them,
It is I I AM; be not *afraid* **awed**.
21 Then **So** they willingly received **willed to take** him
into the *ship* **sailer**:
and immediately **straightway** the *ship* **sailer**
was **became** at the land *whither* **into which** they went.
22 The day following, when the *people* **multitude**
which stood on the other side of the sea
saw that there was none other *boat* **skiff** there,
save **except** that one
whereinto his disciples were entered **embarked**,
and that Jesus **Yah Shua**
went not with his disciples into the *boat* **skiff**,
but that his disciples were gone away alone;
23 (Howbeit there came other *boats* **skiffs** from Tiberias
nigh unto the place where they did eat bread,
after that the Lord **Adonay** had given thanks **eucharistized**;)
24 **So** When the *people* therefore **multitude** saw
that Jesus **Yah Shua** was not there, neither his disciples,
they also took shipping **embarked into sailers**,
and came to Capernaum **Kaphar Nachum**,
seeking for Jesus **Yah Shua**.
25 And when they had found him
on the other side of the sea,
they said unto him, Rabbi,
when *camest* **becamest** thou hither?
26 Jesus **Yah Shua** answered them and said,
Verily, verily, I say **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
Ye seek me, not because ye saw the *miracles* **signs**,
but because ye did eat of the *loaves* **breads**,
and were *filled* **fed**.
27 *Labour* **Work** not for the *meat* **food**
which *perisheth* **destructeth**,
but for that *meat* **food**
which *endureth* **abideth** unto *everlasting* **eternal** life,
which the Son of *man* **humanity** shall give unto you:
for him hath God **Elohim** the Father sealed.
28 Then **So** said they unto him, What shall we do,
that we might work the works of God **Elohim**?
29 Jesus **Yah Shua** answered and said unto them,
This is the work of God **Elohim**,
that ye *believe on* **trust in** him
whom he hath *sent* **apostolized**.
30 **So** They said therefore unto him,
So What sign *shewest* **doest** thou *then*,
so that we may see, and *believe* **trust** thee?
what *dost* **workest** thou *work*?
31 Our fathers did eat manna in the *desert* **wilderness**;
exactly as it is *written* **scribed**,
He gave them bread from heaven to eat.
Nechem Yah 9:5
32 Then Jesus **So Yah Shua** said unto them,
Verily, verily I say **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
Moses **Mosheh** gave you not that bread from heaven;
but my Father giveth you the true bread from heaven.
33 For the bread of God **Elohim**
is he which *cometh down* **descendeth** from heaven,
and giveth life unto the *world* **cosmos**.
34 Then **So** said they unto him, Lord **Adonay**,
evermore give us this bread.

YAHN 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 So Yah Shua,
knowing that they come to seize him
to make him sovereign,
departs again into a mountain alone by himself:
16 and being evening,
his disciples descend to the sea
and embark in a sailer,
17 and go across the sea to Kaphar Nachum:
and being already dark,
Yah Shua had not come to them;
18 and the sea rouses by the puffing of a mega wind.
YAH SHUA WALKS ON THE SEA
19 So driving onward
about twenty—five or thirty stadia;
and they see Yah Shua walking on the sea
and being near the sailer: and they are awestricken.
20 And he words to them,
I AM! Awe not!
21 So they will to take him into the sailer:
and straightway the sailer
is at the land they are going.
22 On the morrow,
the multitude stands across the sea
and sees no other skiff there
except that one wherein his disciples embarked;
and that Yah Shua
had not gone with his disciples in the skiff,
but that his disciples departed alone;
23 — however other skiffs come from Tiberias
near the place where they ate the breads
after Adonay eucharistized.
24 So when the multitude sees
that neither Yah Shua nor his disciples are there,
they also embark into sailers
and go to Kaphar Nachum seeking Yah Shua:
and they find him across the sea,
and they say to him, Rabbi, when became you here?
25 Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Amen! Amen! I word to you,
You seek me, not because you see the signs,
but because you ate the breads and are fed.
26 Work not for the food that destructs;
but for the food that abides to eternal life
which the Son of humanity gives you:
for Elohim the Father sealed him.
27 So they say to him,
What do we to work the works of Elohim?
28 Yah Shua answers them, saying,
This is the work of Elohim:
to trust in him whom he apostolized.
29 So they say to him,
So what sign do you, that we see and trust you?
What work you?
30 Our fathers ate manna in the wilderness;
exactly as scribed,
He gave them bread from the heavens to eat.
Nechem Yah 9:5
31 So Yah Shua says to them,
Amen! Amen! I word to you,
Mosheh gave you not that bread from the heavens;
but my Father gives you the true bread from the heavens:
for the bread of Elohim
is he who descends from the heavens
and gives life to the cosmos.
32 So they say to him, Adonay,
Give us evermore this bread.

JOHN 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH SHUA, THE LIVING BREAD

35 And *Jesus Yah Shua* said unto them,
I am **I AM** the bread of life:
he that cometh to me shall never hunger;
and he that *believeth on trusteth in* me
shall never — **not ever** thirst.

36 But I said unto you,
That ye also have seen me, and *believe trust* not.
37 All that the Father giveth me shall come to me;
and him that cometh to me
I *will in no wise cast out shall never eject*.
38 For I *came down descended* from heaven,
not to do mine own will, but the will of him that sent me.
39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me,
that of all which he hath given me
I should lose *nothing naught thereof*,
but should raise it *up* again at the *last final* day.
40 And this is the will of him that sent me,
that every one which seeth the Son,
and *believeth on trusteth in* him,
may have *everlasting eternal* life:
and I *will shall* raise him *up* at the *last final* day.
41 *The Jews then So the Yah Hudiym* murmured
at **concerning** him,
because he said,
I am **I AM** the bread
which *came down descended* from heaven.
42 And they *said worded*,
Is not this *Jesus Yah Shua*, the son of *Joseph Yoseph*,
whose father and mother we know?
So how is it *then* that he *saith wordeth*,
I *came down descended* from heaven?
43 *Jesus therefore So Yah Shua*
answered and said unto them,
Murmur not *among yourselves with one another*.
44 No **man one** can come to me,
except **unless** the Father which hath sent me draw him:
and I *will shall* raise him *up* at the *last final* day.
45 It is *written scribed* in the prophets,
And they shall be all *taught doctriated* of **God Elohim**.
So Every *man therefore one* that hath heard,
and hath learned of the Father, cometh unto me.
Yesha Yah 54:13
46 Not that any **man one** hath seen the Father,
save **except** he which is of **God Elohim**,
he hath seen the Father.
47 *Verily, verily I say Amen! Amen! I word* unto you,
He that *believeth on trusteth in* me
hath *everlasting eternal* life.
48 I am **I AM** that bread of life.
49 Your fathers did eat manna in the wilderness,
and are dead.
50 This is the bread
which *cometh down descendeth* from heaven,
that a **man anyone** may eat thereof, and not die.
51 I am **I AM** the living bread
which *came down descended* from heaven:
if any man Whenever anyone eat of this bread,
he shall live *for ever unto the eons*:
and the bread that I *will shall* give is my flesh,
which I *will shall* give for the life of the *world cosmos*.
52 *The Jews therefore So the Yah Hudiym*
strove among *themselves one another, saying wording*,
How can this man give us his flesh to eat?
53 *Then Jesus So Yah Shua* said unto them,
Verily, verily I say Amen! Amen! I word unto you,
Except **Unless** ye eat the flesh of the Son of **man humanity**,
and drink his blood, ye have no life in you.
54 Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood,
hath eternal life;
and I *will shall* raise him *up* at the *last final* day.
55 For my flesh is *meat indeed truly food*,
and my blood is **truly** drink *indeed*.
56 He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood,
dwelleth abideth in me, and I in him.
57 **Exactly** As the living Father hath *sent apostolized* me,
and I live *by through* the Father:
thus he that eateth me, even he shall live *by through* me.
58 This is that bread

YAHN 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH SHUA, THE LIVING BREAD

35 And Yah Shua says to them,
I AM the bread of life:
whoever comes to me never famishes;
and whoever trusts in me never thirsts — not ever.

36 But I say to you,
that you also see me, and trust not:
37 all whom the Father gives me, come to me;
and whoever comes to me, I never eject.

38 For I descended from the heavens
— not to do my own will
but the will of him who sent me.
39 And this is the will of the Father who sent me,
of all whom he gave me, I lose none;
but raise him again at the final day:
40 and this is the will of him who sent me,
that everyone who sees the Son and trusts in him
has eternal life:
and I raise him at the final day.

41 So the Yah Hudiym murmur concerning him,
because he said,
I AM the bread that descended from the heavens.

42 And they word,
Is not this Yah Shua the son of Yoseph,
whose father and mother we know?
So how words he, I descended from the heavens?

43 So Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Murmur not with one another.
44 No one can come to me
unless the Father who sent me draws him:
and I raise him at the final day.
45 It is scribed in the prophets,
And they all are doctriated of Elohim.
So everyone who hears,
and learns of the Father, comes to me.
Yesha Yah 54:13

46 Not that anyone has seen the Father,
except he who is of Elohim; he has seen the Father.

47 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
Whoever trusts in me has eternal life.
48 I AM that bread of life.
49 Your fathers ate manna in the wilderness, and died.
50 This is the bread that descended from the heavens,
for anyone to eat thereof, and not die.
51 I AM the living bread descended from the heavens:
whenever anyone eats of this bread,
he lives to the eons:
and the bread I give is my flesh,
which I give for the life of the cosmos.

52 So the Yah Hudiym
strive among one another, wording,
How can this one give us his flesh to eat?

53 So Yah Shua says to them,
Amen! Amen! I word to you,
Unless you eat the flesh of the Son of humanity,
and drink his blood, you have no life in you.
54 Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood
has eternal life;
and I raise him at the final day.

55 For my flesh is truly food,
and my blood is truly drink.
56 Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood
abides in me; and I in him.
57 Exactly as the living Father apostolized me
— and I live through the Father;
thus whoever eats me, even he lives through me.
58 This is that bread

JOHN 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

which *came down* **descended** from heaven:
not **exactly** as your fathers did eat manna, and are dead:
he that eateth of this bread
shall live for ever **unto the eons**.
59 These *things* said he in the synagogue,
as he *taught* **doctrinated** in *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**.
60 **So** Many *therefore* of his disciples,
when they had heard this, said,
61 This is an hard *saying* **word**; who can hear it?
When *Jesus* **Yah Shua** knew in himself
that his disciples murmured *at* **concerning** it,
he said unto them, *Doth* this *offend* **scandalize** you?
62 *What and if* — **so whenever**
ye shall see the Son of *man* **humanity**
ascend *up* where he was before?
63 It is the spirit that *quickeneth* **enliveneth**;
the flesh *profiteth* **nothing benefiteth** **naught**:
the words **rhema** that I speak unto you,
they are spirit, and they are life.
64 But there are some of you that *believe* **trust** not.
For *Jesus* **Yah Shua** knew from the beginning
who they were that *believed* **trusted** not,
and who should betray him.
65 And he *said* **worded**, *Therefore* **So** said I unto you,
that no *man* **one** can come unto me,
except **unless** it were given unto him of my Father.
66 From that time many of his disciples went back,
and walked no more with him.

THE WITNESS OF PETROS

67 *Then* **So** said *Jesus* **Yah Shua** unto the twelve,
will ye also go away?
68 *Then* *Simon* **Peter** **So Shimon Petros** answered him,
Lord **Adonay**, to whom shall we go?
thou hast the words **rhema** of eternal life.
69 And we *believe* **trust** and *are sure* **know**
that thou art *that* **Christ** **the Messiah**,
the Son of the living **God** **Elohim**.
70 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered them,
Have not I chosen you twelve,
and one of you is a *devil* **Diabolos**?
71 He *spake* **worded** of *Judas Iscariot* **Yah Hudah** the urbanite
the son of *Simon* **Shimon**:
for he it was that should betray him,
being one of the twelve.

7

After these *things*
Jesus **Yah Shua** walked in *Galilee* **Galiyl**:
for he *would* **willed to** not walk in *Jewry* **Yah Hudah**,
because the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
sought to *kill* **slaughter** him.

THE TABERNACLE STAKING CELEBRATION — SUKKOTH/BRUSH ARBORS

2 Now the *Jews'* **feast** **Yah Hudiym's** **celebration**
of *tabernacles* **tabernacle staking** was *at hand* **nigh**.
3 **So** His brethren *therefore* said unto him,
Depart hence, and go into *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**,
that thy disciples also may see the works that thou doest.
4 For there is no *man* **one**
that doeth *any thing* **ought** in secret,
and he himself seeketh to be known *openly* **boldly**.
If thou do these *things*,
shew **manifest** thyself to the *world* **cosmos**.
5 For neither did his brethren *believe* **trust** in him.
6 *Then* *Jesus* **said** **So Yah Shua worded** unto them,
My *time* **season** is not yet *come* **here**:
but your *time* **season** is always *ready* **prepared**.
7 The *world* **cosmos** cannot hate you;
but me it hateth,
because I *testify of* **witness concerning** it,
that the works thereof are evil.
8 *Go* **Ascend** ye *up* unto this *feast* **celebration**:
I *go* **ascend** not *up* yet unto this *feast* **celebration**:
for my *time* **season** is not yet *full come* **fulfilled/shalamed**.
9 When he had said these words unto them,
he abode still in *Galilee* **Galiyl**.
10 But when his brethren were *gone up* **ascended**,
then *went* **ascended** he also *up*
unto the *feast* **celebration**,
not *openly* **manifestly**, but as it were in secret.

YAHN 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

descended from the heavens:
not exactly as your fathers ate manna, and died:
whoever eats of this bread lives to the eons.
— he says these in the synagogue,
as he doctrinates in Kaphar Nachum.
60 So many of his disciples,
when they hear this, say,
This is a hard word; who can hear it?
61 Yah Shua knows in himself
that his disciples murmur concerning it,
and he says to them, Does this scandalize you?
— so whenever you see the Son of humanity
ascend where he was previously?
63 The spirit enlivens; the flesh benefits naught:
the rhema I speak to you are spirit and life:
64 but there are some of you who trust not.
— for Yah Shua knew from the beginning
who they are who trust not,
and who betrays him.
65 And he words, So say I to you,
no one can come to me,
unless it is given of my Father.
66 — from that time many of his disciples go back,
and walk no more with him.

THE WITNESS OF PETROS

67 So Yah Shua says to the twelve,
Will you also to go away?
68 So Shimon Petros answers him,
Adonay, to whom go we?
You have the rhema of eternal life:
69 and we trust and know that you are the Messiah,
the Son of the living Elohim.
70 Yah Shua answers them,
Have I not chosen you twelve
— and one of you is Diabolos?
71 He words of Yah Hudah the urbanite — of Shimon:
for he is about to betray him, being one of the twelve.

7

After these Yah Shua walks in Galiyl:
for he wills to not walk in Yah Hudah,
because the Yah Hudiym seek to slaughter him.

THE TABERNACLE STAKING CELEBRATION — SUKKOTH/BRUSH ARBORS

2 And the celebration of the Yah Hudiym
of tabernacle staking is near.
3 So his brothers say to him,
Depart hence, and go to Yah Hudah,
so that your disciples also see the works you do.
4 For no one does ought in secret,
and seeks for himself to be known boldly.
if you do these,
manifest yourself to the cosmos.
5 — for not even his brothers trust in him.
6 So Yah Shua words to them,
My season is not yet here:
but your season is always prepared.
7 The cosmos cannot hate you;
but it hates me — because I witness concerning it
that its works are evil.
8 You ascend to this celebration:
I ascend not yet to this celebration
for my season is not yet fulfilled/shalamed.
9 He says these words to them
and still abides in Galiyl:
10 and his brothers ascend,
then he also ascends to the celebration
— not manifestly, but as in secret.

JOHN 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

11 *Then So* the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
sought him at the *feast* **celebration**,
and *said* **worded**, Where is he?
12 And there was much murmuring
among the *people* **multitude** concerning him:
for **indeed** some *said* **worded**, He is a good man:
others *said* **spake**, Nay;
but he *deceiveth* **seduceth** the *people* **multitude**.
13 *Howbeit* **Yet indeed**
no *man* **one** *spake* *openly* of **boldly about** him
for *fear* **awe** of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**.
14 *Now about* **Already** the midst of the *feast* **celebration**
Jesus went up **Yah Shua ascended**
into the *temple* **priestal precinct**, and *taught* **doctrinated**.
15 And the Jews **Yah Hudiym** marvelled, *saying* **wording**,
How knoweth this *man* **letters** **one scribings**,
having never learned?
16 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered them, and *said*,
My doctrine is not mine, but his that sent me.
17 *If* **Whenever** any *man* **will** **one willeth** to do his will,
he shall know of **concerning** the doctrine,
whether it be of *God* **Elohim**, or whether I speak of myself.
18 He that speaketh of himself seeketh his own glory:
but he that seeketh his glory that sent him,
the same is true,
and no *unrighteousness* **unjustness** is in him.
19 Did not *Moses* **Mosheh** give you the *law* **torah**,
and yet none of you *keepeth* **doeth** the *law* **torah**?
Why *go* **seek** ye *about* to *kill* **slaughter** me?
20 The *people* **multitude** answered and *said*,
Thou hast a *devil* **demon**:
who *goeth* **about** **seeketh** to *kill* **slaughter** thee?
21 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered and *said* unto them,
I have done one work, and ye all marvel.
22 *Moses* *therefore* **So Mosheh** gave unto you circumcision;
(not because it is of *Moses* **Mosheh**, but of the fathers);
and ye on the *sabbath* **day shabbath**
circumcise a *man* **human**.
23 If a *man* **human** on the *sabbath* **day shabbath**
receive **taketh** circumcision,
that the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**
should not be *broken* **released**;
are ye *angry* **choleric** at me,
because I have made a *man* **every whit** **human** whole
on the *sabbath* **day shabbath**?
24 Judge not according to the *appearance* **visage**,
but judge *righteous* **just** judgment.
25 *Then* *said* **So worded**
some of them of *Jerusalem* **the Yeru Shalemiym**,
Is not this he, whom they seek to *kill* **slaughter**?
26 But, *lo* **behold**, he speaketh boldly,
and they *say* **nothing** **word** **naught** unto him.
Do the *rulers* **archs** know *indeed* **truly**
that this is **truly** the *very* **Christ** **Messiah**?
27 *Howbeit* **Yet** we know this *man* **one** whence he is:
but when *Christ* **ever** the **Messiah** cometh,
no *man* **one** knoweth whence he is.
YAH SHUA DOCTRINATES IN THE PRIESTAL PRECINCT
28 *Then* **So** cried *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
in the *temple* **priestal precinct** as he *taught* **doctrinated**,
saying **wording**, Ye both know me,
and ye know whence *I* **am** **I AM**:
and I am not come of myself,
but he that *sent* **apostolized** me is true,
whom ye know not.
29 But I know him: for *I* **am** **from him** **of him**, **I AM**,
and he hath sent me.
30 *Then* **So** they sought to *take* **seize** him:
but no *man* **one** laid hands on him,
because his hour was not yet come.
31 And many of the *people* **multitude**
believed on **trusted in** him, and *said* **worded**,
When *Christ* **ever** the **Messiah** cometh,
will **shall** he do **many** more *miracles* **signs** than these
which this *man* **one** hath done?
32 The Pharisees heard that the *people* **multitude**
murmured *such things* **these** concerning him;
and the Pharisees and the *chief* **arch** priests
sent **officers** **apostolized attendants** to *take* **seize** him.

YAHN 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

11 So the Yah Hudiym seek him at the celebration
and word, Where is he?
12 And there is much murmuring
among the multitude concerning him:
for indeed some word, He is a good man.
Others speak, No; but he seduces the multitude.
13 Yet indeed no one speaks boldly about him
for awe of the Yah Hudiym.
14 Already midst the celebration
Yah Shua ascends into the priestal precinct
and doctrinates:
15 and the Yah Hudiym marvel, wording,
How knows this one scribings, not having learned?
16 Yah Shua answers them, saying,
My doctrine is not mine; but his who sent me:
whenever anyone wills to do his will,
he knows concerning the doctrine
— whether it be of Elohim,
or whether I speak of myself.
18 Whoever speaks of himself seeks his own glory:
but whoever seeks the glory of him who sent him,
that same one is true:
and there is no unjustness in him.
19 Gave not Mosheh you the torah?
And yet none of you does the torah!
Why seek you to slaughter me?
20 The multitude answers, saying, You have a demon!
Who seeks to slaughter you?
21 Yah Shua answers them, saying,
I do one work and you all marvel:
so Mosheh gave you circumcision
— not because it is of Mosheh, but of the fathers:
and you in shabbath circumcise a human:
23 if a human, on shabbath, takes circumcision,
that the torah of Mosheh not be released;
are you choleric at me
because I make a human whole on shabbath?
24 Judge not according to visage,
but judge just judgment.
25 So some of the Yeru Shalemiym word,
Is not this he, whom they seek to slaughter?
26 But, behold, he speaks boldly
and they word naught to him.
Know the archs truly that this is truly the Messiah?
27 Yet this one, we know whence he is:
but whenever the Messiah comes
no one knows whence he is.
YAH SHUA DOCTRINATES IN THE PRIESTAL PRECINCT
28 So in the priestal precinct
Yah Shua cries as he doctrinates,
wording, You both know me,
and you know whence I AM:
and I come not from myself,
but he who apostolized me is true
— whom you know not.
29 But I know him: for of him, I AM,
and he sent me.
30 So they seek to seize him:
but no one lays hands on him
because his hour is not yet come.
31 And many of the multitude trust in him
and word, Whenever the Messiah comes,
does he many more signs than these
which this one does?
32 The Pharisees hear that the multitude
murmur these concerning him;
and the Pharisees and the archpriests
apostolize attendants to seize him.

JOHN 7, 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

33 Then said **Jesus Yah Shua** unto them,
Yet a little *while* **time** am I with you,
and *then* I go unto him that sent me.
34 Ye shall seek me, and shall not find me:
and where I am, thither ye cannot come.
35 Then **So** said the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** among themselves,
Whither *will* **shall** he go, that we shall not find him?
will **shall** he go unto the *dispersed* **Diaspora**
among the *Gentiles* **Hellenes**,
and *teach* **doctrinate** the *Gentiles* **Hellenes**?
36 What *manner of saying* **word** is this that he said,
Ye shall seek me, and shall not find me:
and where I am, thither ye cannot come?
THE INVITATION OF YAH SHUA TO TAKE THE HOLY SPIRIT
37 In the *last* **final** day,
that *great* **mega** day of the *feast* **celebration**,
Jesus **Yah Shua** stood and cried, *saying* **wording**,
If **Whenever** any *man* **one** thirst,
let him come unto me, and drink.
38 He that *believeth on* **trusteth in** me,
exactly as the scripture hath said,
out of his belly shall flow *rivers* **streams** of living water.
39 (But this *spake* **said** he of **concerning** the Spirit,
which they that *believe on* **trust in** him should *receive* **take**:
for the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit** was not yet *given*;
because that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** was not yet glorified.)
40 **So** Many of the *people* **multitude** *therefore*,
when they heard this *saying* **word**, *said* **worded**,
Of a *truth* **Truly** this is the Prophet.
41 Others *said* **worded**, This is the *Christ* **Messiah**.
But some *said* **worded**,
shall *Christ* **the Messiah** come out of *Galilee* **Galiyl**?
42 Hath not **indeed** the scripture said,
That *Christ* **the Messiah**
cometh of the *seed* **sperma** of David,
and out of the *town* **village** of *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**,
where David was?
Michah 5:2

43 So there *was* **became** a *division* **schism**
among the *people* **multitude** because of him.

44 And some of them
would have taken **willed to seize** him;
but no *man* **one** laid hands on him.

45 Then **So** came the *officers* **attendants**
to the *chief* **arch** priests and Pharisees;
and they said unto them, Why have ye not brought him?

46 The *officers* **attendants** answered,
Never **ever** *man* spake a **human** like this *man* **human**.

47 Then **So** answered them the Pharisees,
Are ye also *deceived* **seduced**?

48 Have any of the *rulers* **archs** or of the Pharisees
believed on **trusted in** him?

49 But this *people* **multitude**
who knoweth not the *law* **torah** are cursed.

50 Nicodemus *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
(he that came to *Jesus* **Yah Shua** by night,
being one of them,)

51 Doth our *law* **torah** judge any *man* **human**,
before **unless** it **first** hear him, and know what he doeth?

52 They answered and said unto him,
Art thou also of *Galilee* **Galiyl**?

53 Search, and *look* **see**:
for out of *Galilee* **Galiyl** ariseth no prophet.
And every *man* **each** went unto his own house.

8 *Jesus* **But Yah Shua** went unto the mount of Olives.

THE ADULTERESS

2 And *early in the morning* **at dawn**
he came again into the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
and all the people came unto him;
and he sat down, and *taught* **doctrinated** them.
3 And the scribes and Pharisees brought unto him
a woman *taken* **overtaken** in adultery;
and when they had set her in the midst,
4 They *say* **word** unto him, *Master* **Doctor**,
this woman was *taken* **overtaken** in adultery,
in the very act.

YAHN 7, 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

33 Yah Shua says to them,
Yet a little time I am with you,
and I go to him who sent me.
34 You seek me, and find me not:
and where I am, you cannot come.
35 So the Yah Hudiym say among themselves,
Where goes he, that we find him not?
Goes he to the diaspora among the Hellenes
and doctrinates the Hellenes?
36 What word is this he says,
You seek me, and find me not:
and, Where I am, you cannot come?
THE INVITATION OF YAH SHUA TO TAKE THE HOLY SPIRIT
37 In the final day — that mega day of the celebration
Yah Shua stands and cries, wording,
whenever anyone thirsts, come to me and drink:
whoever trusts in me,
38 exactly as the scripture says,
from his belly flows streams of living water.
39 And he says this concerning the Spirit
whom those trusting in him are about to take:
for the Holy Spirit is not yet
because Yah Shua is not yet glorified.
40 So many of the multitude, when they hear this word,
word, Truly this is the Prophet.
41 Others word, This is the Messiah.
42 But some word, Comes the Messiah from Galiyl?
Indeed, says not the scripture,
The Messiah comes from the sperma of David
and from the village of Beth Lechem
where David was?
Michah 5:2

43 So there becomes a schism
among the multitude because of him:

44 and some of them will to seize him;
but no one lays hands on him.

45 So the attendants
go to the archpriests and Pharisees;
and say to them, Why bring you him not?

46 The attendants answer,
Never ever spoke a human as this human.

47 So the Pharisees answer them,
Are you also seduced?

48 Trust any of the archs or of the Pharisees in him?

49 But this multitude who know not the torah
are cursed.

50 Nicodemus words to them
— who came to Yah Shua by night
— being one of them,

51 Judges our torah any human
unless it first hears him and knows what he does?

52 They answer him, saying, Are you also of Galiyl?
Search and see! For no prophet rises from Galiyl.

53 And each goes to his own house
and Yah Shua goes to the mount of Olives.

8 And at dawn he goes again to the priestal precinct
and all the people come to him;
and he sits and doctrinates them:
and the scribes and Pharisees
bring him a woman overtaken in adultery;
and they set her among them.
4 They word to him, Doctor,
this woman was overtaken in the very act — adulterizing:

THE ADULTERESS

JOHN 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 Now Moses **Mosheh** in the *law torah*
commanded **misvahed** us, that such should be stoned:
but what *sayest* **wordest** thou?
6 This they *said* **worded**, *tempting testing* him,
that they might have to accuse him.
But *Jesus Yah Shua* stooped *down*,
and with his finger *wrote on* **scribed in** the ground,
as though he heard them not.
7 So when they *continued* **abode** asking him,
he *lifted up* **unbent** himself, and said unto them,
He that is *without sin* **sinless** among you,
let him first cast a stone at her.
8 And again he stooped *down*,
and *wrote on* **scribed in** the ground.
9 And they which heard it,
being *convicted* **reproved** by their own conscience,
went out one by one,
beginning at **from** the *eldest* **elders**, even unto the *last* **final**:
and *Jesus Yah Shua* was left alone,
and the woman standing in the midst.
10 When *Jesus Yah Shua* had *lifted up* **unbent** himself,
and saw *none but no one except* the woman,
he said unto her, Woman,
where are those thine accusers?
hath no *man one* condemned thee?
11 She said, no *man one*, *Lord Adonay*.
And *Jesus Yah Shua* said unto her,
Neither do I condemn thee: go, and sin no more.
12 Then **So** spake *Jesus Yah Shua* again unto them,
saying **wording**,
I am I AM the light of the *world cosmos*:
he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness,
but shall have the light of life.
13 **So** The Pharisees *therefore* said unto him,
Thou *bearest record of* **witnessest concerning** thyself;
thy *record* **witness** is not true.
14 *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said unto them,
Though I *bear record of* **witness concerning** myself,
yet my *record* **witness** is true:
for I know whence I came, and whither I go;
but ye *cannot tell* **know not** whence I come,
and whither I go.
15 Ye judge after the flesh; I judge no *man one*.
16 And yet *if* **whenever** I judge, my judgment is true:
for I am not alone, but I and the Father that sent me.
17 It is also *written* **scribed in** your *law torah*,
that the *testimony* **witness** of two *men* **humans** is true.
18 *I am one that bear witness of*
I AM witness concerning myself,
and the Father that sent me
bearth witness of **witnesseth concerning** me.
19 Then said **So worded** they unto him, Where is thy Father?
Jesus Yah Shua answered,
Ye neither know me, nor my Father:
if ye had known me,
ye should have known my Father also.
20 These *words* **rhema**
spake *Jesus Yah Shua* in the treasury,
as he *taught* **doctrinated** in the *temple* **priestal precinct**
and no *man* **laid hands on** **one seized** him;
for his hour was not yet come.
21 Then **So** said *Jesus Yah Shua* again unto them,
I go my way,
and ye shall seek me, and shall die in your sins:
whither I go, ye cannot come.
22 Then said **So worded** the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**,
will **shall** he *kill* **slaughter** himself?
because he *saith* **wordeth**, Whither I go, ye cannot come.
23 And he said unto them,
Ye are from beneath; I am from above:

YAHN 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 and in the torah
Mosheh misvahs us to stone such:
but what word you?
6 They word this to test him — to accuse him:
and Yah Shua stoops
and with his finger scribes in the ground
as though he hears them not.
7 And they abide asking him,
and he unbends himself and says to them,
The sinless among you,
cast the first stone at her.
8 Again he stoops and scribes in the ground;
9 but they who hear:
— reproved by their own conscience
they go out one by one
beginning from the elders even to the final;
and Yah Shua is left alone
with the woman standing in the midst.
10 And Yah Shua unbends himself
and sees no one except the woman:
and he says to her,
Woman, where are your accusers?
Is no one condemning you?
11 She says, No one, Adonay.
Yah Shua says to her,
Neither condemn I you: go, and sin no more.
12 So again Yah Shua speaks to them,
wording, I AM the light of the cosmos:
whoever follows me, walks not in darkness,
but has the light of life.
13 So the Pharisees say to him,
You witness concerning yourself;
your witness is not true.
14 Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Though I witness concerning myself,
yet my witness is true:
for I know whence I came, and where I go;
but you know not whence I came, and where I go.
15 You judge after the flesh; I judge no one:
16 and yet whenever I judge,
my judgment is true:
for I am not alone, but I and the Father who sent me.
17 And also it is scribed in your torah,
The witness of two humans is true.
18 I AM witness concerning myself;
and the Father who sent me witnesses concerning me.
19 So they word to him, Where is your Father?
Yah Shua answers,
You know neither me nor my Father:
had you known me,
you had known my Father also.
20 Yah Shua speaks these rhema in the treasury
as he doctrinates in the priestal precinct;
and no one seizes him
for his hour is not yet come.
21 So Yah Shua says to them again,
I go my way;
and you seek me; and die in your sins:
where I go, you cannot come.
22 So the Yah Hudiym word, Slaughters he himself?
Because he words, Where I go, you cannot come.
23 And he says to them,
You are from below; I am from above:

JOHN 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

ye are of this world **cosmos**;
I am not of this world **cosmos**.
24 So I said *therefore* unto you, that ye shall die in your sins:
for if **whenever** ye believe **trust** not that I am he I AM,
ye shall die in your sins.
25 Then said So worded they unto him, Who art thou?
And Jesus Yah Shua saith unto them,
Even the same
that I said **spake** unto you from the beginning.
26 I have many things **much** to say **speak** and to judge
of **concerning** you:
but he that sent me is true;
and I speak **word** to the world **cosmos**
those things which I have heard of him.
27 They understood **knew** not
that he **spake worded** to them of the Father.
TRUTH LIBERATES
28 Then said Jesus Yah Shua unto them,
When **ever** ye have
lifted up **exalted** the Son of man **humanity**,
then shall ye know that I am he I AM,
and that I do *nothing* **naught** of myself;
but exactly as my Father hath *taught* **doctrinated** me,
I speak these things.
29 And he that sent me is with me:
the Father hath not **left forsaken** me alone;
for I do always those things that please him.
30 As he spake these words,
many *believed on* **trusted in** him.
31 Then said Jesus So worded Yah Shua
to those Jews Yah Hudiym which *believed on* **trusted in** him,
If Whenever ye *continue* **abide** in my word,
then are ye **truly** my disciples *indeed*;
32 And ye shall know the truth,
and the truth shall **make liberate** you free.
33 They answered him, We be Abraham's seed **sperma**,
and were never — **not ever**
in bondage **servient** to any man **one**:
how sayest **wordest** thou, Ye shall be *made free* **liberated**?
34 Jesus Yah Shua answered them,
Verily, verily I say Amen! Amen! I word unto you,
Whosoever *committeth* **doeth** sin is the servant of sin.
35 And the servant abideth not in the house
for ever **unto the eons**:
but the Son abideth *for ever* **unto the eons**.
36 *If So whenever* the Son *therefore*
shall **make liberate** you free,
ye shall be **free liberated** indeed.
37 I know that ye are Abraham's seed **sperma**;
but ye seek to **kill slaughter** me,
because my word hath no place in you.
38 I speak that which I have seen with my Father:
and ye do that which ye have seen with your father.
39 They answered and said unto him,
Abraham is our father.
Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth unto them,
If ye were Abraham's children,
ye would **should** do the works of Abraham.
40 But now ye seek to **kill slaughter** me,
a man **human** that hath *told you* **spoken** the truth,
which I have heard of God **Elohim**: this did not Abraham.
41 Ye do the *deeds* **works** of your father.
Then So said they to him,
We be not **born birthed** of *fornication* **whoredom**;
we have one Father, even God **Elohim**.
42 Jesus Yah Shua said unto them,
If God **Elohim** were your Father,
ye would **should** love me:
for I proceeded *forth* and came from God **Elohim**;
neither came I of myself, but he *sent* **apostolized** me.
43 Why do ye not *understand* **know** my speech?
even because ye cannot hear my word.
44 Ye are of your father *the devil* **Diabolos**,
and the *lusts* **pantings** of your father ye will **do**.
He was a murderer from the beginning,
and *abode* **stood** not in the truth,
because there is no truth in him.
When **ever** he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own:
for he is a liar, and the father of it.

YAHN 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

you are of this cosmos; I am not of this cosmos:
24 so I say to you, that you die in your sins;
for whenever you trust not that I AM,
you die in your sins.
25 So they word to him, Who are you?
And Yah Shua says to them,
Even what I spoke to you from the beginning:
26 I have much to speak and to judge concerning you:
but he who sent me is true;
and I word to the cosmos what I hear from him.
27 — they know not
that he words to them of the Father.
TRUTH LIBERATES
28 Then Yah Shua says to them,
Whenever you exalt the Son of humanity,
then you know that I AM
and that I do naught of myself:
exactly as my Father doctrinates me, these I speak:
29 and he who sent me is with me:
the Father forsakes me not alone;
for I always do what pleases him.
30 — as he speaks these words, many trust in him.
31 So Yah Shua words
to the Yah Hudiym who trust in him,
Whenever you abide in my word
you are truly my disciples;
and you know the truth
and the truth liberates you.
32 They answer him, We are sperma of Abraham;
and never — not ever servient to anyone!
How word you, Become liberated?
34 Yah Shua answers them,
Amen! Amen! I word to you,
Whoever does sins is the servant of sin:
35 and the servant abides not in the house to the eons:
but the Son abides to the eons:
36 so whenever the Son liberates you,
you become liberated indeed.
37 I know you are sperma of Abraham;
but you seek to slaughter me
because my word has no place in you:
38 I speak what I see with my Father:
and you do what you see with your father.
39 They answer him, saying, Abraham is our father.
Yah Shua words to them,
If you were children of Abraham,
you had done the works of Abraham:
40 and now you seek to slaughter me,
a human who speaks the truth I heard from Elohim:
41 this Abraham did not:
you do the works of your father.
So they say to him,
We are not birthed of whoredom;
we have one Father — even Elohim.
42 Yah Shua says to them,
If Elohim were your Father, you had loved me:
for I proceeded and came from Elohim;
I came not from myself, but he apostolized me.
43 Why know you not my speech?
Even because you cannot hear my word.
44 You are of your father Diabolos
and the pantings of your father you will to do:
he is a murderer from the beginning;
and stands not in the truth
because there is no truth in him.
Whenever he speaks a lie, he speaks of his own:
for he is a liar, and the father thereof.

JOHN 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

45 And because I **tell word** you the truth,
ye **believe trust** me not.
46 Which of you **convinceth reproveh** me of **for** sin?
And if I say **word** the truth,
why do ye not **believe trust** me?
47 He that is of **God Elohim**
heareth **God's words the rhema of Elohim**:
so ye therefore hear them not,
because ye are not of **God Elohim**.
48 Then **So** answered the **Jews Yah Hudiym**,
and said unto him,
Say **Word** we not well
that thou art a **Samaritan Shomeronyi**,
and hast a **devil demon**?
49 **Jesus Yah Shua** answered, I have not a **devil demon**;
but I honour my Father, and ye **do** dishonour me.
50 And I seek not mine own glory:
there is one that seeketh and judgeth.
51 **Verily, verily, I say Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
If Whenever any man keep **one guard** my **saying word**,
he shall never see death **unto the eons**.
52 Then **So** said the **Jews Yah Hudiym** unto him,
Now we know that thou hast a **devil demon**.
Abraham is dead, and the prophets;
and thou sayest **wordest**,
If Whenever a man keep **any one guard** my **saying word**,
he shall never taste of death **unto the eons**.
53 Art thou greater than our father Abraham,
which is dead? and the prophets are dead:
whom makest thou thyself?
54 **Jesus Yah Shua** answered,
If Whenever I **honour glorify** myself,
my **honour glory** is **nothing naught**:
it is my Father that **honoureth glorifieth** me;
of whom ye say **word**, that he is your **God Elohim**:
55 Yet ye have not known him; but I know him:
and **if whenever** I should say, I know him not,
I shall be a liar like unto you:
but I know him, and **keep guard** his **saying word**.
56 Your father Abraham
rejoiced jumped for joy to see my day:
and he saw it, and was **glad cheered**.
YAH SHUA, THE ETERNAL I AM

57 Then **So** said the **Jews Yah Hudiym** unto him,
Thou art not yet fifty years **old**,
and hast thou seen Abraham?
58 **Jesus Yah Shua** said unto them,
Verily, verily I say Amen! Amen! I word unto you,
Before Ere Abraham was **became, I am I AM**.
59 Then **So** took they **up** stones to cast at him:
but **Jesus hid Yah Shua secreted** himself,
and went out of the **temple priestal precinct**,
going **passing** through the midst of them,
and **so thus** passed by.

YAH SHUA HEALS ONE BIRTHED BLIND

9 And as **Jesus passed passing** by,
he saw a **man human** which was blind from his birth.
2 And his disciples asked him, **saying wording**,
Master Rabbi, who did sin,
this man, or his parents, that he was **born birthed** blind?
3 **Jesus Yah Shua** answered,
Neither hath this man sinned, nor his parents:
but that the works of **God Elohim**
should be **made** manifest in him.
4 I must work the works of him that sent me,
while it is day:
the night cometh, when no **man one** can work.
5 As long as **Whenever** I am in the **world cosmos**,
I am **I AM** the light of the **world cosmos**.
6 When he had thus **spoken said**,
he spat on the ground, and made clay of the spittle,
and he **anointed supplied** the eyes of the blind **man**
with the clay,
7 And said unto him, Go,
wash in the pool of **Siloam Shiloach**,
(which is by **interpretation translates, Sent Apostolized**).
So He went his way **therefore**,
and washed, and came seeing.

YAHN 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

45 And because I word you the truth
you trust me not.
46 Which of you reproves me for sin?
And if I word the truth, why trust you me not?
47 Whoever is of Elohim, hears the rhema of Elohim:
so you hear them not
because you are not of Elohim.
48 So the Yah Hudiym answer him, saying,
Word we not well,
that you are a Shomeronyi, and have a demon?
49 Yah Shua answers, I have no demon;
but I honor my Father, and you dishonor me:
50 and I seek not my own glory:
there is one who seeks and judges.
51 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
Whenever anyone guards my word,
he never sees death to the eons.
52 So the Yah Hudiym say to him,
Now we know you have a demon:
Abraham is dead — and the prophets;
and you word,
Whenever anyone guards my word,
he never tastes death to the eons.
53 Are you greater than our father Abraham who died?
And the prophets who died?
Whom make you yourself?
54 Yah Shua answers,
Whenever I glorify myself, my glory is naught:
my Father glorifies me
— of whom you word that he is your Elohim:
55 yet you know him not; but I know him:
and whenever I say, I know him not,
I become a liar like you:
but I know him, and guard his word.
56 Your father Abraham jumped for joy to see my day:
and he saw, and cheered.
YAH SHUA, THE ETERNAL I AM

57 So the Yah Hudiym say to him,
You are not yet fifty years
— and have you seen Abraham?
58 Yah Shua says to them,
Amen! Amen! I word to you,
Ere Abraham became, I AM.
59 So they take stones to cast at him:
but Yah Shua secretes himself,
and goes from the priestal precinct,
passing through their midst, and thus passes by.

YAH SHUA HEALS ONE BIRTHED BLIND

9 And passing by,
he sees a human who is blind from birth:
2 and his disciples ask him, wording,
Rabbi, who sinned, this man or his parents,
that he is birthed blind?
3 Yah Shua answers,
Neither this man sinned, nor his parents:
but to manifest the works of Elohim in him.
4 I must work the works of him who sent me
while it is day:
the night comes when no one can work.
5 Whenever I am in the cosmos,
I am the light of the cosmos.
6 Saying these,
he spits on the ground and makes clay from the spit;
and he supplies the eyes of the blind with the clay;
7 and says to him, Go, wash in the pool of Shiloach,
— which translates, Apostolized.

So he goes his way and washes and comes seeing:

JOHN 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 So The neighbours *therefore*,
and they which before had seen him that he was blind,
said worded, Is not this he that sat and begged?
9 Some *said worded*, This is he:
 others *said*, He is like him:
 but he *said worded*, I am *he*.
10 *Therefore said So worded* they unto him,
 How were thine eyes opened?
11 He answered and said,
A man **human** that is *called Jesus worded Yah Shua*
 made clay,
and *anointed supplied* mine eyes, and said unto me,
 Go to the pool of *Siloam Shiloach*, and wash:
 and I went and washed, and I *received sight saw*.
12 *Then So* said they unto him, Where is he?
 He *said worded*, I know not.
13 They brought to the Pharisees
 him that *afortime once* was blind.
14 And it was the *sabbath day shabbath*
 when *Jesus Yah Shua* made the clay,
 and opened his eyes.
15 *Then So* again the Pharisees also asked him
 how he *had received his sight saw*.
 He said unto them, He put clay upon mine eyes,
 and I washed, and *do see*.
16 *Therefore said So worded* some of the Pharisees,
 This man **human** is not of *God Elohim*,
because he *keepeth guardeth* not the *sabbath day shabbath*.
 Others *said worded*,
 How can a man **human** that is a sinner
 do such *miracles signs*?
 And there was a *division schism* among them.
17 They *say word* unto the blind man again,
 What *sayest wordest* thou *of concerning* him,
 that he hath opened thine eyes?
 He said, He is a prophet.
18 But the *Jews Yah Hudiym* did not *believe trust*
 concerning him,
 that he had been blind, and *received his sight saw*,
 until they *called voiced out*
 to the parents of him that *had received his sight saw*.
19 And they asked them, *saying wording*,
Is this your son, who ye *say speak* was *born birthed* blind?
20 *So how then* doth he now see?
 His parents answered them and said,
 We know that this is our son,
 and that he was *born birthed* blind:
21 But by what means he now seeth, we know not;
 or who hath opened his eyes, we know not:
 he is *of age mature*; ask him:
 he shall speak *for concerning* himself.
22 These words *spake said* his parents,
 because they *feared awed* the *Jews Yah Hudiym*:
 for the *Jews Yah Hudiym* had *agreed covenanted* already,
 that *if whenever* any man **one**
 did confess professed that he was *Christ Messiah*,
 he should be *put out of the synagogue ex—synagogued*.
23 *Therefore So* said his parents,
 He is *of age mature*; ask him.
24 *Then again Of a second time*
 called voiced they *out to* the man **human** that was blind,
 and said unto him, Give *God Elohim* the *praise glory*:
 we know that this man **human** is a sinner.
25 He answered and said,
 Whether he be a sinner or no, I know not:

YAHN 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 So the neighbors
and whoever had previously seen that he was blind,
word, Is not this he who sat and begged?
9 Some word, This is he!
 Others, He is like him!
 But he words, I am!
10 So they word to him,
 How were your eyes opened?
11 He answers, saying,
A human, worded Yah Shua, made clay,
and supplied my eyes, and said to me,
Go to the pool of Shiloach, and wash:
and I went and washed and I see.
12 So they say to him, Where is he?
 He words, I know not.
13 They bring him who once was blind
 to the Pharisees:
14 and it is shabbath
 when Yah Shua makes the clay,
 and opens his eyes.
15 So again the Pharisees also ask him
 how he sees.
 He says to them, He put clay on my eyes
 and I washed and see.
16 So some of the Pharisees word,
 This human is not of Elohim,
 because he guards not the shabbath.
 Others word,
How can a human — a sinner do such signs?
— and there is a schism among them.
17 They word to the blind man again,
 What word you
 concerning him who opened your eyes?
 He says, He is a prophet.
18 But the Yah Hudiym trust not concerning him
 that he was blind, and sees;
19 until they voice out to the parents of him who sees:
 and they ask them, wording,
Is this your son, of whom you speak,
who was birthed blind?
so how sees he now?
20 His parents answer them, saying,
 We know this is our son;
 and that he was birthed blind:
21 but how he now sees, we know not;
 or who opened his eyes, we know not;
 he is mature; ask him:
 he speaks concerning himself.
22 — his parents say these words
 because they awe the Yah Hudiym:
 for the Yah Hudiym had already covenanted
 that whenever anyone professes Messiah,
 to ex—synagogue him.
23 So his parents say, He is mature; ask him.
24 They voice out a second time
 to the human who is blind,
 and say to him, Give Elohim the glory:
 we know this human is a sinner.
25 He answers, saying,
Whether he is a sinner or not, I know not:

JOHN 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

one thing I know, that, whereas I was blind, now I see.
26 Then **And** said they to him again, What did he to thee?
how opened he thine eyes?
27 He answered them, I have *told* **said to** you already,
and ye did not hear:
wherefore *would* **will ye to** hear it again?
will ye also **to** be his disciples?
28 Then **So** they *reviled* **abused** him, and said,
Thou art his disciple;
but we are *Moses'* **Mosheh's** disciples.
29 We know that *God* **Elohim** spake unto *Moses* **Mosheh**:
as for this *fellow*, we know not from whence he is.
30 The *man* **human** answered and said unto them,
Why **Indeed** herein is a *marvellous thing* **marvel**,
that ye know not from whence he is,
and yet he hath opened mine eyes.
31 Now we know that *God* **Elohim** heareth not sinners:
but *if* **whenever** any *man*
be a *worshipper of God* **Elohim**—**revering**,
and doeth his will, him he heareth.
32 *Since the world began* **From the first eon**
was it not heard
that any *man* **one** opened the eyes
of one that was *born* **birthed** blind.
33 *If this man* **Unless this one** were *not of God* **Elohim**,
he could do *nothing* **naught**.
34 They answered and said unto him,
Thou wast altogether *born* **birthed** in sins,
and dost thou *teach* **doctrinate** us?
And they *cast him out* **ejected him**.
YAH SHUA, THE SON OF ELOHIM
35 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** heard
that they had *cast* **ejected** him *out*;
and when he had found him, he said unto him,
Dost thou *believe on* **trust in** the Son of *God* **Elohim**?
36 He answered and said, Who is he, *Lord* **Adoni**,
that I might *believe on* **trust in** him?
37 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto him,
Thou hast both seen him,
and it is **be** he that *talketh* **speaketh** with thee.
38 And he said, *Lord* **Adonay**, I *believe* **trust**.
39 And he worshipped him.
And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said,
For **In** judgment I am come into this *world* **cosmos**,
that they which see not might see;
and that they which see might be *made* blind.
40 And some of the Pharisees which were with him
heard these words,
and said unto him, Are we blind also?
41 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto them,
If ye were blind, ye should have no sin:
but now ye *say* **word**, We see;
therefore **so** your sin *remaineth* **abideth**.

YAH SHUA, THE GOOD SHEPHERD

10 *Verily, verily, I say* **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
He that entereth not *by* **through** the *door* **portal**
into the sheepfold,
but *climbeth up* **ascendeth** some other way,
the same is a thief and a robber.
2 But he that entereth in *by* **through** the *door* **portal**
is the shepherd of the sheep.
3 To him the *porter* **portalguard** openeth;
and the sheep hear his voice:
and he calleth his own sheep by name,
and leadeth them out.
4 And when **ever** he putteth forth his own sheep,
he goeth *before* **ahead of** them,
and the sheep follow him: for they know his voice.
5 And a *stranger* **will** **another** shall they not follow,
but *will* **shall** flee from him:
for they know not the voice of *strangers* **another**.
6 This parable spake *Jesus* **Yah Shua** unto them:

YAHN 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

one I know, whereas I was blind, I now see.
26 And they say to him again, What did he to you?
How opened he your eyes?
27 He answers them, I already said to you,
and you heard not:
Why will you to hear it again?
Will you also to become his disciples?
28 So they abuse him and say,
You are his disciple;
but we are disciples of *Mosheh*:
29 we know *Elohim* spoke to *Mosheh*:
as for this, we know not whence he is.
30 The human answers them, saying,
Indeed herein is a marvel,
that you know not whence he is,
and yet he opened my eyes:
31 now we know that *Elohim* hears not sinners:
but whenever any is reverent of *Elohim*
and does his will,
him he hears.
32 From the first eon it was not heard
that anyone opens the eyes of one birthed blind.
33 Unless this one were of *Elohim*, he can do naught.
34 They answer him, saying,
You are altogether birthed in sins!
And you doctrinate us?
— and they eject him.

YAH SHUA, THE SON OF ELOHIM

35 *Yah Shua* hears they ejected him;
and when he finds him, he says to him,
Trust you in the Son of *Elohim*?
36 He answers, saying, Who is he, *Adoni*,
so that I trust in him?
37 And *Yah Shua* says to him,
You have both seen him,
and he who speaks with you is he.
38 And he says, *Adonay*, I trust.
— and he worships him.
39 And *Yah Shua* says,
I come to this cosmos in judgment,
that whoever sees not, sees;
and whoever sees, becomes blind.

40 And some of the Pharisees with him
hear these words, and say to him,
Are we also blind?

41 *Yah Shua* says to them,
If you had been blind, you had no sin:
but now you word, We see!
so your sin abides.

YAH SHUA, THE GOOD SHEPHERD

10 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
Whoever enters not the sheepfold through the portal,
but ascends some other way,
is a thief and a robber;
2 and whoever enters through the portal
is the shepherd of the sheep:
3 the portalguard opens to him
and the sheep hear his voice:
and he calls his own sheep by name
and leads them out:
4 and whenever he puts forth his own sheep
he goes ahead of them;
and the sheep follow him; for they know his voice:
5 and they follow not another; but flee from him:
for they know not the voice of another.
6 — *Yah Shua* speaks this parable to them:

JOHN 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

but they understood **knew** not
what things they were which he spake **told** unto them.

YAH SHUA, THE PORTAL

7 Then **So** said **Jesus Yah Shua** unto them again,
Verily, verily, I say **Amen! Amen! I word, unto you,**
I am **I AM** the **door portal** of the sheep.
8 All that — **As many as** ever came before me
are thieves and robbers:
but the sheep did not hear them.
9 I am **I AM** the **door portal**:
by **through** me if **whenever** any **man one** enter in,
he shall be saved,
and shall go in and out, and find pasture.
10 The thief cometh not, **but for except to steal thief,**
and to **kill sacrifice,** and to destroy:
I am come that they might have life,
and that they might have it
more abundantly superabundantly.

THE GOOD SHEPHERD PLACES HIS SOUL

11 I am **I AM** the good shepherd:
the good shepherd **giveth placeth** his **life soul** for the sheep.
12 But he that is an hireling, and not **being** the shepherd,
whose own the sheep are not, seeth the wolf coming,
and **leaveth forsaketh** the sheep, and fleeth:
and the wolf **catcheth seizeth** them,
and scattereth the sheep.
13 The hireling fleeth, because he is an hireling,
and **careth concerneth** not for the sheep.
14 I am **I AM** the good shepherd, and know my sheep,
and am known of mine.
15 **Exactly** As the Father knoweth me,
even so know I the Father:
and I **lay down place** my **life soul** for the sheep.

OTHER SHEEP, ANOTHER COURTYARD: ONE SHEPHERDDOM, ONE SHEPHERD

16 And other sheep I have,
which are not of this **fold courtyard**:
them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice;
and there shall be one **fold shepherddom,**
and one shepherd.
17 Therefore **So** doth my Father love me,
because I **lay down place** my **life soul,**
that I might take it again.
18 No **man one** taketh it from me,
but I **lay place** it **down** of myself.
I have **power authority** to **lay it down place,**
and I have **power authority** to take it again.
This **commandment misvah**
have I **received taken** of my Father.
19 **So** There was **became** a **division schism**
therefore again
among the **Jews Yah Hudiym** for these **sayings words.**
20 And many of them **said worded,**
He hath a **devil demon,** and **is mad raveth**;
why hear ye him?
21 Others **said worded,**
These are not the **words rhema**
of **him that hath a devil one demonized.**
Can a **devil demon** open the eyes of the blind?

YAH SHUA, THE MESSIAH

22 And it was **became** at **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**
the **feast of the dedication hanukkah,**
and it was **winter the downpour.**
23 And **Jesus Yah Shua**
walked in the **temple priestal precinct**
in **Solomon's porch Shelomoh's portico.**
24 Then came **So** the **Jews Yah Hudiym**
round about surrounded him, and **said worded** unto him,
How long Until when
dost thou **make us to doubt lift our soul in suspense?**
If thou be the **Christ Messiah,** **tell say to us plainly boldly.**

YAH SHUA AND FATHER ARE ONE

25 **Jesus Yah Shua** answered them,
I **told said to you,** and ye **believed trusted** not:
the works that I do in my Father's name,
they **bear witness of concerning** me.
26 But ye **believe trust** not,
because ye are not of my sheep,

YAHN 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

but they know not what he tells them.

YAH SHUA, THE PORTAL

7 So Yah Shua says to them again,
Amen! Amen! I word, to you,
I AM the portal of the sheep.
8 All — as many as ever came preceding me
are thieves and robbers:
but the sheep hear them not.
9 I AM the portal:
whenever anyone enters through me, he is saved;
and goes in and out, and finds pasture:
the thief comes not, except to thieve
and to sacrifice and to destroy:
I come that they have life,
and that they have it superabundantly.

THE GOOD SHEPHERD PLACES HIS SOUL

11 I AM the good shepherd;
the good shepherd places his soul for the sheep:
and a hireling, not being a shepherd,
whose own the sheep are not, sees the wolf coming;
and forsakes the sheep, and flees:
and the wolf seizes them, and scatters the sheep.
13 The hireling flees, because he is a hireling,
and not concerned for the sheep.
14 I AM the good shepherd and know my sheep;
and mine know me.
15 Exactly as the Father knows me,
even thus I know the Father:
and I place my soul for the sheep.

OTHER SHEEP, ANOTHER COURTYARD: ONE SHEPHERDDOM, ONE SHEPHERD

16 And I have other sheep, not of this courtyard:
I must also bring them;
and they hear my voice;
and there becomes one shepherddom
and one shepherd.
17 So my Father loves me,
because I place my soul — to take it again:
no one takes it from me; but I place it of myself:
I have authority to place,
and I have authority to take again:
I took this misvah from my Father.
19 — so again, there becomes a schism
among the Yah Hudiym for these words.
20 And many of them word,
He has a demon, and raves! Why hear him?
21 Others word,
These are not the rhema of one demonized:
Can a demon open the eyes of the blind?

YAH SHUA, THE MESSIAH

22 And the hanukkah becomes at Yeru Shalem;
and it is the downpour:
23 and Yah Shua walks in the priestal precinct
in the portico of Shelomoh.
24 So the Yah Hudiym surround him,
and word to him,
Until when lift you our soul in suspense?
If you are the Messiah, say to us boldly.

YAH SHUA AND FATHER ARE ONE

25 Yah Shua answers them,
I say to you, and you trust not:
the works I do in the name of my Father
witness concerning me:
but you trust not,
because you are not of my sheep,

JOHN 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

27 exactly as I said unto you.
My sheep hear my voice, and I know them,
and they follow me:
28 And I give unto them eternal life;
and they shall never *perish* **destruct unto the eons**,
neither shall any *man* **one**
pluck **seize** them out of my hand.
29 My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all;
and no *man* **one**
is able to *pluck* **seize** them out of my Father's hand.
30 I and my **the** Father are one.
YAH SHUA ACCUSED OF BLASPHEMY

31 Then **So** the *Jews* took up **Yah Hudiym bore** stones again
to stone him.
32 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered them,
Many good works have I shewed you from my Father;
for which of those works do ye stone me?
33 The *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** answered him, *saying* **wording**,
For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy;
and because that thou, being a *man* **human**,
makest thyself *God* **Elohim**.

Philippians 2:5—8
34 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered them,
Is it not *written* **scribed** in your *law* **torah**,
I said, Ye are *gods* **elohim**?

Psalms 82:6
35 If he called them *gods* **elohim**,
unto whom the word of *God* came **Elohim** became,
and the scripture cannot be *broken* **released**;
36 Say **Word** ye of him,
whom the Father hath *sanctified* **hallowed**,
and sent **apostolized** into the *world* **cosmos**,
Thou blasphemest;
because I said, *I am* **I AM** the Son of *God* **Elohim**?
37 If I do not the works of my Father,
believe **trust** me not.
38 But if I do, though ye *believe* **trust** not me,
believe **trust** the works:
that ye may know, and *believe* **trust**,
that the Father is in me, and I in him.
39 Therefore **So** they sought again to *take* **seize** him:
but he escaped out of their hand,
40 And went away again *beyond* **Jordan** **over** **Yarden**
into the place where *John* **Yahn** at first baptized;
and there he abode.
41 And many resorted unto him, and *said* **worded**,
Indeed, *John* **Yahn** did no *miracle* **sign**:
but all *things* that *John* *spake* of **Yahn** **said** about this man
were true.
42 And many *believed* on **trusted** in him there.

EL AZAR DIES

11 Now a *certain* *man* **someone** was *sick* **frail**,
named *Lazarus* — **El Azar**, of *Bethany* **Beth Ania**,
the town of *Mary* **Miryam** and her sister *Martha*.
2 (It was that *Mary* **Miryam**
which anointed the *Lord* **Adonay** with *ointment* **myrrh**,
and *wiped* **squeezedried** his feet with her hair,
whose brother *Lazarus* **El Azar** was *sick* **frail**.)
3 Therefore **So** his sisters sent **apostolized** unto him,
saying **wording**, *Lord* **Adonay**, behold,
he whom thou *lovest* **befriended** is *sick* **frail**.
4 When *Jesus* **Yah Shua** heard that, he said,
This *sickness* **frailty** is not unto death,
but for the glory of *God* **Elohim**,
that the Son of *God* **Elohim** might be glorified thereby.
5 Now *Jesus* **Yah Shua** loved *Martha*,
and her sister, and *Lazarus* **El Azar**.
6 **So** When he had heard *therefore* that he was *sick* **frail**,
he abode two days still in the same place where he was.
7 Then after that *saith* **wordeth** he to his disciples,
Let us go into *Judaea* **Yah Hudah** again.
8 His disciples *say* **word** unto him, *Master* **Rabbi**,
the *Jews* of *late* **Yah Hudiym** **now** sought to stone thee;
and goest thou thither again?

YAHN 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

27 exactly as I say to you.
My sheep hear my voice and I know them;
and they follow me:
28 and I give them eternal life;
and they neither *destruct* to the eons,
nor anyone seize them from my hand.
29 My Father who gave them to me, is greater than all;
and no one can seize them from the hand of my Father.
30 I and the Father are one.

YAH SHUA ACCUSED OF BLASPHEMY
31 So again the *Yah Hudiym*
bear stones to stone him.

32 *Yah Shua* answers them,
I show you many good works from my Father;
for which of those works stone you me?

33 The *Yah Hudiym* answer him, *wording*,
For a good work we stone you not;
but for blasphemy;
and because you, being human,
make yourself *Elohim*.

Philippians 2:5—8
34 *Yah Shua* answers them,
Is it not scribed in your *torah*,
I say, You are *elohim*?

Psalms 82:6
35 If he called them *elohim*,
to whom the word of *Elohim* became
— and the scripture cannot be released
word you of him whom the Father hallowed
and apostolized into the *cosmos*,
You blasphemest!
36 — because I say, I AM the Son of *Elohim*?
If I do not the works of my Father,
trust me not:
37 but if I do, though you *trust* me not,
trust the works:
so that you know and *trust*
that the Father is in me, and I in him.

39 So again they seek to seize him;
but he escapes from their hand
and goes again across *Yarden*
to the place *Yahn* first baptized;
and there he abides.

41 And many resort to him, and word,
Indeed, *Yahn* did no *sign*:
but all *Yahn* says about this man is true.
42 — and many trust in him there.

EL AZAR DIES

11 And someone frail, *El Azar* of *Beth Ania*
of the town of *Miryam* and her sister *Martha*:
2 — that *Miryam* who anointed *Adonay* with *myrrh*
and *squeezedried* his feet with her hair
whose brother *El Azar* is frail.

3 So his sisters apostolize to him,
wording, *Adonay*, behold,
he whom you befriend is frail.

4 When *Yah Shua* hears, he says,
This frailty is not to death; but for the glory of *Elohim*
and thereby glorifies the Son of *Elohim*.

5 And *Yah Shua* loves *Martha*
and her sister and *El Azar*:
6 and he hears he is frail:
so he still abides two days in the same place he is:
7 then after that he words to his disciples,
We go to *Yah Hudah* again.

8 His disciples word to him, *Rabbi*,
the *Yah Hudiym* **now** seek to stone you!
And go you there again?

JOHN 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

9 Jesus **Yah Shua** answered,
Are there **indeed** not twelve hours in the day?
If **Whenever** any **man one** walk in the day, he stumbleth not,
because he seeth the light of this **world cosmos**.
10 But if **whenever** a man walk in the night, he stumbleth,
because there is no light in him.
11 These **things** said he:
and after that he **saith wordeth** unto them,
Our friend **Lazarus El Azar** sleepeth;
but I go, that I may awake him out of sleep.
12 Then **So** said his disciples,
Lord Adonay, if he sleep, he shall **do well be saved**.
13 Howbeit **Jesus Yah Shua**
spake of said concerning his death:
but they thought that he had **spoken worded**
of taking of rest about sleeping in sleep slumber.
14 Then said **Jesus Yah Shua** unto them **plainly boldly**,
Lazarus El Azar is dead.
15 And I am glad for your sakes that I was not there,
to the intent that ye may believe trust;
nevertheless yet let us go unto him.
16 Then **So** said **Thomas Taom**,
which is called **Didymus worded Twin**,
unto his **fellowdisciples co—disciples**,
Let us also go, that we may die with him.
17 Then **So** when **Jesus Yah Shua** came,
he found
that he had lain in the **grave tomb** four days already.
18 Now **Bethany Beth Ania**
was nigh unto **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
about fifteen **furlongs stadia** off:
19 And many of the **Jews Yah Hudiym**
came to **them around** Martha and **Mary Miryam**,
to **comfort console** them concerning their brother.
20 Then **So** Martha,
as soon as she heard that **Jesus Yah Shua** was coming,
went and met him:
but **Mary Miryam** sat still in the house.
21 Then **So** said Martha unto **Jesus Yah Shua, Lord Adonay**,
if thou hadst been here, my brother had not died.
22 But I know, that even now,
whatsoever — as much as ever
thou wilt **shalt** ask of **God Elohim**,
God will Elohim shall give it thee.
23 **Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth** unto her,
Thy brother shall rise **again**.
24 Martha **saith wordeth** unto him,
I know that he shall rise **again**
in the resurrection at the **last final** day.
YAH SHUA, THE RESURRECTION AND THE LIFE
25 **Jesus Yah Shua** said unto her,
I am I AM the resurrection, and the life:
he that **believeth trusteth** in me,
though he were dead, yet shall he live:
26 And whosoever liveth and **believeth trusteth** in me
shall never die **unto the eons**.
Believest Trustest thou this?
27 She **saith wordeth** unto him, Yea, **Lord Adonay**:
I **believe trust** that thou art the **Christ Messiah**,
the Son of **God Elohim**,
which should come into the **world cosmos**.
28 And when she had so said, she went her way,
and **called Mary voiced out to Miryam** her sister secretly,
saying, The **Master Doctor** is come **here**
and **calleth for voiceth out** to thee.
29 As soon as she heard that,
she arose quickly, and came unto him.
30 Now **Jesus Yah Shua** was not yet come into the town,
but was in that place where Martha met him.
31 **So** The **Jews Yah Hudiym then**
which were with her in the house,
and **comforted consoled** her,
when they saw **Mary Miryam**,
that she rose up **hastily quickly** and went out,
followed her, **saying wording**,
She goeth unto the **grave tomb** to weep there.
32 Then **So** when **Mary Miryam** was come
where **Jesus Yah Shua** was, and saw him,

YAHN 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 Yah Shua answers,
Are there not indeed twelve hours in the day?
Whenever anyone walks in the day, he stumbles not,
because he sees the light of this cosmos:
10 but whenever a man walks in the night,
he stumbles,
because there is no light in him.
11 He says these:
and after this he words to them,
Our friend El Azar sleeps;
but I go to waken him from sleep.
12 So his disciples say,
Adonay, if he sleeps, he is saved.
13 — howbeit Yah Shua says concerning his death:
but they thought he words about sleeping in slumber.
14 Then Yah Shua says to them boldly, El Azar died:
15 and for your sakes I am glad I was not there
— so that you trust; still we go to him.
16 So Taom, who is worded Twin,
says to his co—disciples,
We also go, to die with him.
17 So when Yah Shua comes,
he finds he already laid in the tomb four days.
18 Now Beth Ania is near Yeru Shalem
— of about fifteen stadia:
19 and many of the Yah Hudiym
go to them around Martha and Miryam,
to console them concerning their brother.
20 So Martha,
as soon as she hears Yah Shua is coming,
goes to meet him:
but Miryam still sits in the house.
21 So Martha says to Yah Shua, Adonay,
if you had been here, my brother had not died:
22 but I know, even now,
— as much as ever you ask of Elohim,
Elohim gives you.
23 Yah Shua words to her, Your brother rises.
24 Martha words to him,
I know he rises in the resurrection at the final day.
YAH SHUA, THE RESURRECTION AND THE LIFE
25 Yah Shua says to her,
I AM the resurrection and the life:
whoever trusts in me,
though he dies, he still lives:
26 and whoever lives and trusts in me
never dies to the eons.
Trust you this?
27 She words to him, Yes, Adonay:
I trust that you are the Messiah
— the Son of Elohim who comes to the cosmos.
28 And saying these, she goes her way,
and voices out to Miryam her sister secretly,
saying, The Doctor is here and voices out to you.
29 As soon as she hears that
she rises quickly and comes to him:
30 and Yah Shua has not yet come to the town,
but is in the place Martha met him.
31 So the Yah Hudiym with her in the house
who are consolling her,
when they see Miryam rise quickly and go,
they follow her, wording,
She goes to the tomb to weep there.
32 So Miryam goes where Yah Shua is, and sees him,

JOHN 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

she fell down at to his feet, saying **wording** unto him,
Lord Adonay, if thou hadst been here,
my brother had not died.

33 **So** When *Jesus therefore* **Yah Shua** saw her weeping,
and the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** also weeping
which came with her,
he *groaned* **sighed** in the spirit, and was troubled.

34 And said, Where have ye *laid* **placed** him?
They said **worded** unto him, *Lord Adonay*, come and see.
35 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** wept.

36 *Then said* **So worded** the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**,
Behold how he *loved* **befriended** him!
37 And some of them said,
Could not this man, which opened the eyes of the blind,
have caused that even this man should not have died?

38 *Jesus therefore* **So** again **Yah Shua**
groaning **sighing** in himself cometh to the *grave* **tomb**.
It was a *cave* **grotto**, and a stone lay upon it.

39 *Jesus said* **Yah Shua worded**, Take ye away the stone.
Martha, the sister of him that was dead,
saith **wordeth** unto him,
Lord Adonay, by *this time* **already** he stinketh:
for he hath been dead four days.

40 *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua wordeth** unto her,
Said I not unto thee, that,
if **whenever** thou *wouldest believe* **shouldest trust**,
thou shouldest see the glory of *God* **Elohim**?

41 *Then* **So** they took away the stone
from the place where the dead was laid.
And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** lifted up his eyes, and said,
Father, I *thank* **eucharistize** thee that thou hast heard me.

42 And I knew that thou hearest me always:
but because of the *people* **multitude** which stand by
I said it, that they may *believe* **trust**
that thou hast *sent* **apostolized** me.

43 And when he thus had *spoken* **said**,
he cried with a *loud* **mega** voice,
Lazarus **El Azar**, come forth.

44 And he that was dead came forth,
bound hand and foot with *graveclothes* **swathes**:
and his face was bound about with a *napkin* **sudarium**.

Jesus saith **Yah Shua wordeth** unto them,
Loose **Release** him, and let him go.

45 *Then* **So** many of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
which came to *Mary* **Miryam**,
and had seen *the thing* **that** which *Jesus* **Yah Shua** did,
believed on **trusted in** him.

46 But some of them went their ways to the Pharisees,
and *told* **said to** them
what *things* **Jesus** **Yah Shua** had done.

47 *Then* **So** gathered the *chief* **arch** priests and the Pharisees
a *council* **sanhedrim**,
and *said* **worded**, What do we?
for this *man* **human** doeth many *miracles* **signs**.

48 If **Whenever** we *let* **allow** him thus *alone*,
all men will believe on **everyone shall trust in** him:
and the Romans shall come
and take away both our place and *nation* **goyim**.

49 And one of them, *named* Caiaphas,
being the *high* **arch** priest that same year,
said unto them, Ye know *nothing at all* **not aught**,
50 Nor *consider* **reason**
that it is *expedient* **beneficial** for us,
that one *man* **human** should die for the people,
and that the whole *nation* **perish** **goyim destruct** not.

51 And this *spake* **said** he not of himself:
but being *high* **arch** priest that year,
he prophesied
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** should die for that *nation* **goyim**;
52 And not for that *nation* **goyim** only,
but that also he should gather together in one
the children of *God* **Elohim** that were scattered abroad.

YAHN 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

she falls to his feet, wording to him,
Adonay, if you had been here,
my brother had not died.

33 So when Yah Shua sees her weeping,
and the Yah Hudiym coming with her
also weeping,
he sighs in spirit, and is troubled:
34 and says, Where have you placed him?
They word to him, Adonay, come and see.

35 Yah Shua weeps.

36 So the Yah Hudiym word,
Behold how he befriends him!

37 And some of them say,
Could not this man, who opens the eyes of the blind,
even cause this one not to die?

38 So again, Yah Shua sighing in himself,
goes to the tomb — a grotto;
and a stone lies thereon.

39 Yah Shua words, Take away the stone.
Martha, the sister of him who died, words to him,
Adonay, he already stinks — for it is four days.

40 Yah Shua words to her,
Said I not to you,
Whenever you trust, you see the glory of Elohim?

41 So they take away the stone
from the place the dead lies:
and Yah Shua lifts his eyes, and says,
Father, I eucharistize you that you hear me:
42 and I know that you hear me always:
but I say it because of the multitude standing by
— that they trust that you apostolized me.

43 And saying thus, he cries with a mega voice,
El Azar, come forth!

44 And he who was dead comes forth,
bound hand and foot with swathes:
and his face bound with a sudarium.

Yah Shua words to them,
Release him, and let him go.

45 So many of the Yah Hudiym who come to Miryam
seeing what Yah Shua did, trust in him:
46 but some of them go their ways to the Pharisees,
and say to them what Yah Shua did.

47 So the archpriests and the Pharisees
gather a sanhedrim, and word,
What do we? For this human does many signs.
48 Whenever we thus allow him,
everyone trusts in him:
and the Romans come and take
both our place and goyim.

49 And one of them, Caiaphas,
being the archpriest that same year,
says to them, You neither know aught;
50 nor reason that it is beneficial for us
that one human die for the people;
and that the whole goyim not destruct.

51 And he says this not of himself:
but being archpriest that year
he prophesies that Yah Shua dies for that goyim;
and not only for that goyim,
52 but that he also gathers together in one
the children of Elohim who are scattered abroad.

JOHN 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

53 Then **So** from that day forth they took counsel together
for to put him to death **slaughter** him.
54 *Jesus So Yah Shua therefore*
walked no more *openly* **boldly** among the Jews **Yah Hudiym**;
but went thence
unto a *country* **region** near to the wilderness,
into a city *called Ephraim* **worded Ephrayim**,
and there *continued* **tarried** with his disciples.
55 And the Jews' *passover* **Yah Hudiym's pasach**
was nigh *at hand*:
and many *went out of the country up* **ascended from the region**
to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
before **preceding** the *passover* **pasach**,
to *purify* **hallow** themselves.
56 Then **So** sought they for *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
and *spake among themselves* **worded with each other**,
as they stood in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
What think ye,
that he *will* **shall** not come to the *feast* **celebration**?
57 Now both the *chief* **arch** priests and the Pharisees
had given a *commandment* **misvah**,
that, *if whenever* any *man* **one** knew where he were,
he should *shew* **disclose** it, that they might *take* **seize** him.

MIRYAM ANOINTS YAH SHUA

12

Then Jesus **So Yah Shua**
six days before the *passover* **pasach**
came to *Bethany* **Beth Ania**, where *Lazarus* **El Azar** was,
which had been dead, whom he raised from the dead.
2 There they made him a supper;
and Martha *served* **ministered**:
but *Lazarus* **El Azar** was one of them
that sat *at the table* **reposed** with him.
3 *Then So* took *Mary* **Miryam**
a *pound* **litra** of *ointment* **myrrh** of *spikenard* **nard**,
very costly **trustworthy and vastly precious**,
and anointed the feet of *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
and *wiped* **squeezedried** his feet with her hair:
and the house was filled
with the *odour* **fragrance** of the *ointment* **myrrh**.
4 *Then saith So* **wordeth** one of his disciples,
Judas Iscariot **Yah Hudah the urbanite**,
Simon's **Shimon's** son, which should betray him,
5 Why was not this *ointment* **myrrh** sold
for three hundred *pence* **denarion**, and given to the poor?
6 This he said,
not that he *cared* **was concerned** for the poor;
but because he was a thief, and had the bag,
and bare what was put therein.
7 *Then So* said *Jesus* **Yah Shua**, *Let* **Allow** her *alone*:
against **to** the day of my *burying* **embalming**
hath she *kept* **guarded** this.
8 For the poor always ye have with you;
but me ye have not always.
9 **So** Much *people* **multitude** of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
therefore knew that he was there:
and they came not for *Jesus'* **Yah Shua's** sake only,
but that they might see *Lazarus* **El Azar** also,
whom he had raised from the dead.
10 But the *chief* **arch** priests *consulted* **counseled**
that they might
put Lazarus **slaughter** **El Azar** also *to death*;
11 Because that *by reason* **because** of him
many of the Jews **Yah Hudiym** went away,
and *believed on Jesus* **trusted in Yah Shua**.

THE TRIUMPHAL ENTRY OF YAH SHUA

12 On the next day much *people* **multitude**
that were come to the *feast* **celebration**,
when they heard that *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
was coming to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
13 Took branches of *palm trees* **phoinix**,
and went forth to meet him,
and cried, *Hosanna*: **Hoshia Na!**
Blessed is **Eulogized**
— the *King* **Sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
that cometh in the name of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**.
14 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
when he had found a *young ass* **burrito**, sat thereon;
exactly as it is written scribed,

YAHN 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

53 So from that day
they counsel together to slaughter him:
54 So Yah Shua walks boldly no more
among the Yah Hudiym;
but goes to a region near the wilderness
— to a city worded Ephrayim;
and tarries there with his disciples.
55 And the pasach of the Yah Hudiym is near:
and many ascend from the region to Yeru Shalem
to hallow themselves preceding the pasach.
56 So they seek for Yah Shua;
and word with each other
as they stand in the priestal precinct,
What think you,
that he comes not to the celebration?
57 Both the archpriests and the Pharisees
give a misvah,
that whenever anyone knows where he is,
that he discloses it, so as to seize him.

MIRYAM ANOINTS YAH SHUA

12

So six days prior to the pasach
Yah Shua goes to Beth Ania where El Azar is
— who died — whom he raised from the dead.
2 They make him a supper there;
and Martha ministers:
and El Azar is one of them reposing with him.
3 So Miryam takes a litra of myrrh of nard
— trustworthy and vastly precious
and anoints the feet of Yah Shua
and squeezedries his feet with her hair:
and the house fills with the fragrance of the myrrh.
4 So one of his disciples words
— Yah Hudah the urbanite of Shimon
who is to betray him,
5 Why was not this myrrh sold for three hundred denarion
and given to the poor?
6 — he says this,
not that he is concerned for the poor;
but because he is a thief and has the bag
and bears what is put therein.
7 So Yah Shua says, Allow her:
she guards this to the day of my embalming:
for you have the poor with you always;
but me you have not always.
8 So a vast multitude of the Yah Hudiym
knows he is there:
and they come, not only for sake of Yah Shua
but also to see El Azar whom he raised from the dead:
9 and the archpriests counsel
to also slaughter El Azar;
because, because of him,
10 many of the Yah Hudiym go and trust in Yah Shua.

THE TRIUMPHAL ENTRY OF YAH SHUA

12 On the morrow,
a vast multitude who come to the celebration,
when they hear that Yah Shua comes to Yeru Shalem,
13 they take branches of phoinix and go meet him,
and cry, Hoshia Na!
Eulogized — he who comes in the name of Yah Veh
— the Sovereign of Yisra El.
14 And Yah Shua finds a burrito and sits thereon;
exactly as scribed,

JOHN 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 Fear Awe not, daughter of Sion **Siyon**:
behold, thy King **Sovereign** cometh,
sitting on an ass's a burro's colt.
Psalm 118:25, 26; Zechar Yah 9:9

16 These things understood **knew** not his disciples
at the first:
but when Jesus **Yah Shua** was glorified,
then remembered they
that these things were written **scribed** of him,
and that they had done these things unto him.

17 **So** The people **multitude** therefore that was with him
when he called Lazarus **voiced out to El Azar**
out of his grave **tomb**, and raised him from the dead,
bare record witnessed.

18 For this cause the people **multitude** also met him,
for that they heard that he had done this **miracle sign**.

19 **So** The Pharisees therefore said among themselves,
Perceive See ye how ye prevail **nothing benefit naught?**
behold, the world **cosmos** is gone after him.

HELLENES WILL TO SEE YAH SHUA

20 And there were certain **Greeks some Hellenes**
among of them that came up **ascended** to worship
at the feast **celebration**:

21 The same **So these** came therefore to Philip **Philippos**,
which was of Bethsaida **Beth Sayad, Galilee Galiyl**,
and desired **asked** him, saying **wording**,
Sir Lord **Adoni**, we would **will** to see Jesus **Yah Shua**.

22 Philip **Philippos** cometh
and telleth Andrew **wordeth to Andreas**:
and again Andrew **Andreas** and Philip **Philippos**
tell Jesus **word to Yah Shua**.

YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND GLORIFICATION

23 And Jesus **Yah Shua** answered them, saying **wording**,
The hour is come,
that the Son of man **humanity** should be glorified.
Verily, verily, I say **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
Except **Unless** a corn **kernal of wheat grain**
fall into the ground and die, it abideth alone:
but if **whenever** it die, it bringeth forth much fruit.
He that loveth **befriendeth** his life **soul** shall lose it;
and he that hateth his life **soul** in this world **cosmos**
shall **keep guard** it unto life eternal.

26 If **Whenever** any man serve **one minister to** me,
let him follow me;
and where I am, there shall also my **servant minister** be:
if **whenever** any man serve **one minister to** me,
him **will shall** my Father honour.

27 Now is my soul troubled; and what shall I say?
Father, save me from this hour:
but for this cause came I unto this hour.

28 Father, glorify thy name.
Then **So** came there a voice from heaven, saying,
I have both glorified it, and **will shall** glorify it again.

29 **So** The people **multitude** therefore,
that stood by, and heard it,
said **worded** that it **thundered thunder became**:
others said **worded**, An angel spake to him.

THE ARCH OF THE COSMOS EJECTED: YAH SHUA EXALTED

30 Jesus **Yah Shua** answered and said,
This voice came **became** not because of me,
but for your sakes.

31 Now is the judgment of this world **cosmos**:
now shall the **prince arch** of this world **cosmos**
be cast out **ejected**.

32 And I, if **whenever** I be **lifted up exalted** from the earth,
will shall draw all men unto me.

33 This he said **worded**,
signifying what death he should die.
Loukas 10:18, Revelation 12:7 — 12

34 The people **multitude** answered him,
We have heard out of the law **torah**
that Christ **the Messiah** abideth **forever unto the eons**:
and how sayest **wordest** thou,
The Son of man **humanity** must be **lifted up exalted**?
who is this Son of man **humanity**?

35 Then Jesus **So Yah Shua** said unto them,
Yet a little **while time** is the light with you.

YAHN 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 Awe not, daughter of Siyon!
Behold, your Sovereign comes,
sitting on a colt of a burro.
Psalm 118:25, 26; Zechar Yah 9:9

16 At first, His disciples knew these not:
but when Yah Shua was glorified
then they remember these that are scribed of him;
and that they had done these to him.

17 So the multitude with him
witness that he voiced El Azar from his tomb
and raised him from the dead,
for this cause the multitude also met him,
for they hear he had done this sign.

18 So the Pharisees say among themselves,
See how you benefit naught?
Behold, the cosmos goes after him!

HELLENES WILL TO SEE YAH SHUA

20 And some Hellenes
ascend to worship at the celebration:
so they come to Philippos
who is of Beth Sayad, Galiyl,
and ask him, wording,
Adoni, we will to see Yah Shua.

22 Philippos goes and words to Andreas:
and again Andreas and Philippos word to Yah Shua.

YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND GLORIFICATION

23 And Yah Shua answers them, wording,
The hour is come to glorify the Son of humanity.

24 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
Unless a kernal of grain
falls to the ground and dies, it abides alone:
but whenever it dies, it brings forth much fruit.

25 Whoever befriends his soul,
loses it;
and whoever hates his soul in this cosmos,
guards it to life eternal:

26 whenever anyone ministers to me, follow me;
and where I am, there also is my minister:
whenever anyone ministers to me,
him my Father honors.

27 Now my soul troubles; And what say I?
Father, save me from this hour?
But for this cause, I come to this hour.

28 Father, glorify your name.

So a voice comes from the heavens, saying,
I both glorified, and glorify again.

29 So the multitude who stand by and hear,
word that thunder became:
others word, An angel speaks to him.

THE ARCH OF THE COSMOS EJECTED: YAH SHUA EXALTED

30 Yah Shua answers, saying,
This voice became not for my sake;
but for your sake.

31 Now is the judgment of this cosmos;
now is the arch of this cosmos ejected:
and I, whenever I am exalted from the earth,
draw all men to me.

33 — he words this, signifying what death he dies.
Loukas 10:18, Revelation 12:7 — 12

34 The multitude answers him,
We hear from the torah
that the Messiah abides to the eons:
and how word you,
The Son of humanity must be exalted?
Who is this Son of humanity?

35 So Yah Shua says to them,
Yet a little time the light is with you:

JOHN 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Walk while ye have the light,
lest darkness *come upon* **overtake** you:
for he that walketh in darkness
knoweth not whither he goeth.
36 While ye have light, *believe* **trust** in the light,
that ye may be the *children* **sons** of light.
These *things* spake *Jesus* **Yah Shua**, and departed,
and *did hide* **secreted** himself from them.
37 But though he had done so many *miracles* **signs**
before **in front of** them,
yet they *believed* **trusted** not *on* **in** him:
38 That the *saying* **word** of *Esaias* **Yesha Yah** the prophet
might be fulfilled/**shalamed** which he *spake* **said**,
Lord, who hath *believed* **trusted** our report?
and to whom hath the arm of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**
been *revealed* **unveiled**?

Yesha Yah 53:1

39 *Therefore* **So** they could not *believe* **trust**,
because that *Esaias* **Yesha Yah** said again,
40 He hath blinded their eyes,
and *hardened* **petrified** their heart;
that they should not see with their eyes,
nor *understand* **comprehend** with their heart,
and *be converted* **return**, and I should heal them.
41 These *things* said *Esaias* **Yesha Yah**,
when he saw his glory, and spake of **concerning** him.

Yesha Yah 6:1

42 *Nevertheless* **Yet indeed**,
among the chief rulers **even of the archs** also
many *believed on* **trusted in** him;
but because of the Pharisees they did not *confess* **profess** him,
lest they should be
put out of the synagogue **ex—synagogued**:
43 For they loved the *praise* **glory** of *men* **humanity**
more than the *praise* **glory** of *God* **Elohim**.
44 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** cried and said,
He that *believeth on* **trusteth in** me,
believeth not on **trusteth not in** me,
but *on* **in** him that sent me.
45 And he that seeth me seeth him that sent me.
46 I am come a light into the *world* **cosmos**,
that whosoever *believeth on* **trusteth in** me
should not abide in darkness.
47 And *if whenever* any *man* **one** hear my *words* **rhema**,
and *believe* **trust** not,
I judge him not:
for I came not to judge the *world* **cosmos**,
but to save the *world* **cosmos**.
48 He that *rejecteth* **setteth** me **aside**,
and *receiveth* **taketh** not my *words* **rhema**,
hath one that judgeth him:
the word that I have spoken,
the same shall judge him in the *last* **final** day.
49 For I have not spoken of myself;
but the Father which sent me,
he gave me a *commandment* **misvah**,
what I should say, and what I should speak.
50 And I know that his *commandment* **misvah**
is life *everlasting* **eternal**:
So whatsoever I speak *therefore*,
even exactly as the Father said unto me, *so* **thus** I speak.

13

Now *before* **preceding**

the *feast* **celebration** of the *passover* **pasach**,
when *Jesus* **Yah Shua** knew that his hour was come
that he should depart out of this *world* **cosmos**
unto the Father,
having loved his own which were in the *world* **cosmos**,
he loved them unto the *end* **completion/shalom**.

YAH SHUA PURIFIES THE FEET OF THE DISCIPLES

2 And supper *being ended* **having become**,
the devil **Diabolos** having *now* **already** put into the heart
of *Judas Iscariot* **Yah Hudah the urbanite**,
Simon's **Shimon's** son, to betray him;
3 *Jesus* **Yah Shua**, knowing that the Father
had given all *things* into his hands,
and that he was come from *God* **Elohim**,
and went to *God* **Elohim**;

YAHN 12, 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Walk while you have the light
lest darkness overtake you:
for whoever walks in darkness
knows not where he goes.
36 While you have light, trust in the light
that you become sons of light.

Yah Shua speaks these and departs
and secrets himself from them.
37 But though he does so many signs in front of them
yet they trust not in him:
38 to fulfill/shalam the word of Yesha Yah the prophet
wherein he says,
Who trusts our report?
And to whom is the arm of Yah Veh unveiled?
Yesha Yah 53:1

39 So they cannot trust,
because Yesha Yah says again,
40 He blinds their eyes,
and petrifies their heart;
that they neither see with their eyes
nor comprehend with their heart
and return, and I heal them.
41 Yesha Yah said these when he saw his glory,
and spoke concerning him.

Yesha Yah 6:1

42 Yet indeed,
even many of the archs also trust in him;
but because of the Pharisees, they profess him not,
lest they become ex—synagogued:
43 for they love the glory of humanity
more than the glory of Elohim.

44 Yah Shua cries and says,
Whoever trusts in me,
trusts not in me,
but in him who sent me:
and whoever sees me,
sees him who sent me.
45 I come — a light to the cosmos;
that whoever trusts in me
abides not in darkness:
46 and whenever anyone hears my rhema
and trusts not
I judge him not:
for I come not to judge the cosmos
but to save the cosmos.
47 Whoever sets me aside and takes not my rhema
has one who judges him:
the word I speak judges him in the final day.
48 For I speak not of myself;
but the Father who sent me gave me a misvah
— what to say, and what to speak:
50 and I know his misvah is life eternal:
so whatever I speak
exactly as the Father said to me, thus I speak.

THE FINAL NIGHT OF YAH SHUA: THE FINAL SUPPER

13

Preceding the celebration of the pasach,
Yah Shua, knowing his hour
to depart from this cosmos to the Father is come,
loving his own who are in the cosmos,
he loves them to the completion/shalom.

YAH SHUA PURIFIES THE FEET OF THE DISCIPLES

2 And being supper;
Diabolos having already put into the heart
of Yah Hudah the urbanite the son of Shimon
to betray him;
3 knowing that the Father gave all into his hands
and that he comes from Elohim
and goes to Elohim,

JOHN 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 He riseth from supper,
and *laid aside* **placed** his *garments* **clothing**;
and took a *towel* **linen**, and girded himself.

5 *After that* **Then So** he poureth water into a bason,
and began to wash the disciples' feet,
and to *wipe* **squeezedry** them
with the *towel* **linen** wherewith he was girded.

6 *Then So* cometh he to *Simon Peter* **Shimon Petros**:
and *Peter saith* **Petros wordeth** unto him,
Lord Adonay, dost thou wash my feet?

7 *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said unto him,
What I do thou knowest not now;
but thou shalt know *hereafter* **after this**.

8 *Peter saith* **Petros wordeth** unto him,
Thou shalt never wash my feet **unto the eons**.
Jesus Yah Shua answered him,
If Unless I wash thee *not*, thou hast no part with me.

9 *Simon Peter saith* **Shimon Petros wordeth** unto him,
Lord Adonay, not my feet only,
but also my hands and my head.

10 *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua wordeth** to him,
He that is *washed* **bathed**
needeth not save **except** to wash his feet,
but is *clean* **pure** every whit:
and ye are *clean* **pure**, but **indeed** not all.
For he knew who should betray him;
Therefore So said he, Ye are not all *clean* **pure**.

FOOT PURIFYING EXAMPLE

12 So after he had washed their feet,
and had taken his *garments* **clothing**,
and was *set down* **reposed** again,
he said unto them, Know ye what I have done to you?
Ye *call* **voice out** to me
Master Doctor and *Lord Adonay*:
and ye *say* **word** well; for so I am.

14 **So** if I *then*, your *Lord Adonay* and *Master Doctor*,
have washed your feet;
ye also *ought* **are indebted** to wash one another's feet.

15 For I have given you an example,
that ye should do **exactly** as I have done to you.

16 *Verily, verily, I say* **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
The servant is not greater than his lord;
neither he that is *sent* **apostolized**
greater than he that sent him.

17 If ye know these *things*,
happy **blessed** are ye *if* **whenever** ye do them.

18 I *speak* **word** not of **concerning** you all:
I know whom I have chosen:
but that the scripture may be fulfilled/**shalamed**,
He that eateth bread with me
hath lifted *up* his heel against me.

Psalm 41:9

19 Now I *tell* **word to** you *before* **ere** it *come* **becometh**,
that, when **ever** it *is* *come to pass* **becometh**,
ye may *believe* **trust** that *I am* **he I AM**.

20 *Verily, verily, I say* **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
He that *receiveth* **taketh** whomsoever I send
receiveth **taketh** me;
and he that *receiveth* **taketh** me
receiveth **taketh** him that sent me.

21 When *Jesus Yah Shua* had thus said,
he was troubled in spirit, and *testified* **witnessed**,
and said,
Verily, verily, I say **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
that one of you shall betray me.

22 *Then So* the disciples looked one on another,
doubting of **perplexed about** whom he *spake* **worded**.

23 Now there was *leaning* **reposing**
on *Jesus'* **in Yah Shua's** bosom
one of his disciples, whom *Jesus Yah Shua* loved.

24 *Simon Peter therefore So* **Shimon Petros** beckoned to him,
that he should ask who it should be
of **concerning** whom he *spake* **worded**.

25 He *then lying so* **falling** on *Jesus' breast* **Yah Shua's chest**
saith **wordeth** unto him, *Lord Adonay*, who is it?

YAHN 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 he rises from supper and places his clothing;
and takes a linen and girds himself:

5 so he pours water into a bason
and begins to wash the feet of the disciples;
and to squeeze dry them
with the linen he is girt.

6 So he comes to Shimon Petros:
and Petros words to him,
Adonay, you — wash my feet?

7 Yah Shua answers him, saying,
What I do you know not now;
but after this you know.

8 Petros words to him,
You wash not my feet to the eons.

Yah Shua answers him,
Unless I wash you, you have no part with me.

9 Shimon Petros words to him,
Adonay, not only my feet
but also my hands and my head.

10 Yah Shua words to him,
Whoever bathes, need not wash, except his feet,
but is wholly pure:
and you are pure — but indeed not all.
— for he knows who is to betray him;
so he says, You are not all pure.

FOOT PURIFYING EXAMPLE

12 After he washes their feet,
and takes his clothing and reposes again,
he says to them, Know you what I did to you?

13 You voice out to me, Doctor and Adonay:
and you word well; for I am.

14 So if I, your Adonay and Doctor, wash your feet;
you also are indebted to wash the feet of one another:
for I give you an example
to do exactly as I do to you.

16 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
Neither is the servant greater than his adoni;
nor the apostolized greater than he who sent him.
If you know these,
blessed — whenever you do them.

18 I word not concerning you all:
I know whom I chose:
except to fulfill/shalam the scripture,
He who eats bread with me
lifts his heel against me.

Psalm 41:9

19 Now I word to you ere it becomes,
so, whenever it becomes, you trust that I AM.

20 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
Whoever takes whomever I send, takes me;
and whoever takes me, takes him who sent me.

21 Saying thus, Yah Shua is troubled in spirit,
and witnesses, and says,
Amen! Amen! I word to you,
that one of you betrays me.

22 So the disciples look at one another,
perplexed about whom he words:
and reposing in the bosom of Yah Shua
is one of his disciples whom Yah Shua loves:
so Shimon Petros beckons him
to ask who it is concerning whom he words.

25 Then, falling on the chest of Yah Shua,
he words to him, Adonay, who is it?

JOHN 13, 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

26 *Jesus Yah Shua* answered, He it is,
to whom I shall give a *sop morsel*,
when I have *dipped* **baptized** it.
And when he had *dipped* **baptized** the *sop morsel*,
he gave it to *Judas Iscariot Yah Hudah the urbanite*
the son of Simon Shimon.

SATAN ENTERS YAH HUDAH

27 And after the *sop morsel then* Satan entered into him.
Then said Jesus So worded Yah Shua unto him,
That thou doest, do quickly.

28 Now no *man at the table one* **reposing**
knew for what *intent* he *spake* **said** this unto him.

29 For some of *them* thought,
because *Judas Yah Hudah* had the bag,
that *Jesus Yah Shua* had *said* **worded** unto him,
Buy Market for those things that we have need of
against **unto** the *feast* **celebration**;
or, that he should give *something* **somewhat** to the poor.

30 **So** He *then* having *received* **taken** the *sop morsel*
went *immediately* **straightway** out: and it was night.

31 *Therefore So*, when he was gone out,
Jesus said Yah Shua worded,
Now is the Son of *man* **humanity** glorified,
and *God Elohim* is glorified in him.

32 If *God Elohim* be glorified in him,
God Elohim shall also glorify him in himself,
and shall *straightway* glorify him.

33 Little children, yet a little while I am with you.
Ye shall seek me:
and **exactly** as I said unto the *Jews Yah Hudiym*,
Whither I go, ye cannot come;
so now I say I also word to you.

A NEW MISVAH

34 A new *commandment misvah* I give unto you,
That ye love one another;
exactly as I have loved you, that ye also love one another.

35 By this shall *all men everyone* know
that ye are my disciples,
if whenever ye have love *one to in one* another.

36 *Simon Peter said Shimon Petros worded* unto him,
Lord Adonay, whither goest thou?
Jesus Yah Shua answered him,
Whither I go, thou canst not follow me now;
but thou shalt follow me afterwards.

37 *Peter said Petros worded* unto him,
Lord Adonay, why cannot I follow thee now?
I *will lay down* **shall place** my *life soul* for thy sake.

38 *Jesus Yah Shua* answered him,
Wilt Shalt thou *lay down* **place** thy *life soul* for my sake?
Verily, verily, I say Amen! Amen! I word unto thee,
The *cock rooster* shall not *crow* **voice**,
till thou hast **utterly** denied me thrice.

YAH SHUA PROMISES HIS PAROUSIA

14 Let not your heart be troubled:
ye *believe* **trust** in *God Elohim*, *believe* **trust** also in me.

2 In my Father's house are many *mansions* **abodes**:
if it were not *so*, I *would* **should** have *told* **said** to you.
I *go depart* to prepare a place for you.

3 And *if whenever* I *go depart* and prepare a place for you,
I *will shall* come again,
and *receive* **take** you unto myself;
that where I am, there ye may be also.

4 And whither I go ye know, and the way ye know.

5 *Thomas saith Taom wordeth* unto him, *Lord Adoni*,
we know not whither thou goest;
and how can we know the way?

6 *Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth* unto him,
I *am I AM* the way, the truth, and the life:
no *man one* cometh unto the Father, *but except* by me.

7 If ye had known me,
ye should have known my Father also:
and from henceforth ye know him, and have seen him.

8 *Philip saith Philippos wordeth* unto him,

YAHN 13, 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

26 Yah Shua answers, It is he,
to whom I give a morsel when I baptize it.
— and he baptizes the morsel
and gives it to Yah Hudah the urbanite of Shimon.

SATAN ENTERS YAH HUDAH

27 And after the morsel, then Satan enters him:
and Yah Shua words to him,
What you do, do quickly.

28 And no one reposing
knows why he says this to him.

29 For some think,
because Yah Hudah had the bag,
that Yah Shua words to him,
Market what we need for the the celebration;
or to give somewhat to the poor.

30 So he takes the morsel
and straightway goes: and it is night.

31 So when he goes, Yah Shua words,
Now the Son of humanity is glorified!
and Elohim is glorified in him:
if Elohim is glorified in him,
Elohim also glorifies him in himself,
and straightway glorifies him.

32 Little children, yet a little I am with you.
You seek me:
and exactly as I say to the Yah Hudiym,
Where I go, you cannot come;
— I also word to you.

A NEW MISVAH

34 A new misvah I give you — to love one another;
exactly as I love you, you also love one another:
by this everyone knows you are my disciples
— whenever you have love in one another.

36 Shimon Petros words to him,
Adonay, where go you?

Yah Shua answers him,
Where I go, you cannot follow me now
— but follow me afterwards.

37 Petros words to him,
Adonay, why cannot I follow you now?
I place my soul for your sake.

38 Yah Shua answers him,
You, place your soul for my sake?

Amen! Amen! I word to you,
The rooster voices not,
until you utterly deny me thrice.

YAH SHUA PROMISES HIS PAROUSIA

14 Trouble not your heart:
you trust in Elohim; trust also in me.

2 In the house of my Father are many abodes:
and if it not, I had said to you.
I depart to prepare a place for you:
and whenever I depart and prepare a place for you
I come again and take you to myself;
that where I am, you also are.

4 And where I go you know, and the way you know.

5 Taom words to him, Adoni, we know not where you go;
and how can we know the way?

6 Yah Shua words to him,
I AM the way, the truth, and the life:
no one comes to the Father, except by me.
If you had known me,
you had also known my Father:
and from henceforth you know him and see him.

8 Philippos words to him,

JOHN 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Lord Adoni, shew us the Father,
and it *sufficeth* **satisfieth** us.

9 Jesus saith **Yah Shua wordeth** unto him,
Have I been so long time with you,
and yet hast thou not known me, *Philip Philippos?*
he that hath seen me hath seen the Father;
and how sayest **wordest** thou *then*, Shew us the Father?
10 Believe**st** **trustest** thou not that I am in the Father,
and the Father in me?
the words **rhema** that I speak unto you
I speak not of myself:
but the Father that *dwelleth* **abideth** in me,
he doeth the works.

11 Believe **Trust** me that I *am* in the Father,
and the Father in me:
or else **but if not**
believe **trust** me for the very works' sake.

12 Verily, verily, I say **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
He that *believeth on* **trusteth** in me,
the works that I do shall he do also;
and greater works than these shall he do;
because I go unto my Father.

13 And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name,
that *will* **shall** I do,
that the Father may be glorified in the Son.

14 *If* **Whenever — whatever**
ye shall ask *any thing* in my name, I *will* **shall** do it.

15 *If* **Whenever** ye love me,
keep **guard** my *commandments* **misvoth**.

YAH SHUA PROMISES THE PARACLETE

16 And I *will* **pray** **shall** ask the Father,
and he shall give you another *Comforter* **Paraclete**,
that he may abide with you *for ever* **unto the eons**;
17 Even the Spirit of truth;
whom the *world* **cosmos** cannot *receive* **take**,
because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him:
but ye know him;
for he *dwelleth* **abideth** with you, and shall be in you.

18 I *will* **shall** not *leave* **forsake** you *comfortless* **orphaned**:
I *will* **shall** come to you.

19 Yet a little *while*,
and the *world* **cosmos** seeth me no more;
but ye see me: because I live, ye shall live also.

20 At that day ye shall know that I *am* in my Father,
and ye in me, and I in you.

21 He that hath my *commandments* **misvoth**,
and *keepeth* **guardeth** them, he it is that loveth me:
and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father,
and I *will* **shall** love him,
and *will* **shall** manifest myself to him.

22 Judas saith **Yah Hudah wordeth** unto him,
not *Iscariot* **the urbanite**,
Lord **Adonay**, how is *be* it
that thou *wilt* **art about to** manifest thyself unto us,
and **indeed** not unto the *world* **cosmos**?

23 Jesus **Yah Shua** answered and said unto him,
If a man **Whenever anyone** love me,
he *will* **keep** **shall** **guard** my words:
and my Father *will* **shall** love him,
and we *will* **shall** come unto him,
and make our abode with him.

24 He that loveth me not
keepeth **guardeth** not my *sayings* **words**:
and the word which ye hear is not mine,
but the Father's which sent me.

25 These *things* have I spoken unto you,
being yet present **abiding** with you.

26 But the *Comforter* **Paraclete**, which is the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
whom the Father *will* **shall** send in my name,
he shall *teach* **doctrinate** you all *things*,
and *bring all things to your remembrance* **remind** you,
whatsoever I have said unto you.

YAH SHUA BESTOWS HIS UNITY

27 Peace **Shalom** I *leave* **release** with you,
my *peace* **shalom** I give unto you:
not **exactly** as the *world* **cosmos** giveth, give I unto you.
Let not your heart be troubled,
neither let it *be* **afraid** **coward**.

YAHN 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Adoni, show us the Father, and it satisfies us.

9 Yah Shua words to him,
Am I so long a time with you,
and yet you know me not, Philippos?
Whoever has seen me has seen the Father!
And how word you, Show us the Father?
10 Trust you not that I am in the Father,
and the Father in me?
The rhema I speak to you, I speak not from myself:
but the Father who abides in me
— he does the works.

11 Trust me:
I in the Father, and the Father in me:
but if not, trust me for sake of the very works.

12 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
Whoever trusts in me,
also does the works I do;
and greater works than these, he does;
because I go to my Father.

13 And whatever you ask in my name, this I do,
to glorify the Father in the Son.

14 Whenever — whatever you ask in my name, I do.

15 Whenever you love me, guard my misvoth.

YAH SHUA PROMISES THE PARACLETE

16 I ask the Father;
and he gives you another Paraclete
to abide with you to the eons;
17 even the Spirit of truth;
whom the cosmos cannot take
because it neither sees him, nor knows him:
but you know him;
for he abides with you, being in you.

18 I forsake you not orphaned; I come to you:
yet a little, and the cosmos sees me no more;
but you see me: because I live, you live also.

20 At that day you know
— I in my Father, and you in me, and I in you.

21 Whoever has my misvoth and guards them
loves me:
and whoever loves me is loved by my Father;
and I love him and manifest myself to him.

22 Yah Hudah words to him — not the urbanite,
Adonay, how is it
that you are about to manifest yourself to us,
and not indeed to the cosmos?

23 Yah Shua answers him, saying,
whenever anyone loves me, he guards my words;
and my Father loves him:
and we come to him and make our abode with him.

24 Whoever loves me not, guards not my words:
and the word you hear is not mine
but of the Father who sent me.

25 I speak these to you, abiding with you.

26 And the Paraclete — the Holy Spirit
whom the Father sends in my name,
he doctrinates you all;
and reminds you of whatever I said to you.

YAH SHUA BESTOWS HIS UNITY

27 I release shalom with you;
my shalom I give to you:
not exactly as the cosmos gives, give I you:
neither trouble your heart; nor cower.

JOHN 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

28 Ye have heard how I said unto you,
I go away, and come again unto you.
If ye loved me, ye *would rejoice* **should cheer**,
because I said, I go unto the Father:
for my Father is greater than I.
29 And now I have *told* **said to** you
before **ere** it *come to pass* **become**,
that, when **ever** it *is come to pass* **becometh**,
ye might *believe* **trust**.
30 Hereafter I *will* **shall** not *talk* **speak** much with you:
for the *prince* **arch** of this *world* **cosmos** cometh,
and hath *nothing* **naught** in me.
31 But that the *world* **cosmos** may know
that I love the Father;
and **exactly** as the Father
gave **misvahed** me *commandment*,
even *so* **thus** I do.
Arise, let us go hence.

ABIDING IN THE VINE

15

I am **I AM** the true vine,
and my Father is the *husbandman* **cultivator**.
2 Every branch in me that beareth not fruit
he taketh away:
and every branch that beareth fruit,
he *purgeth* **purifieth** it,
that it may *bring forth* **bear much** more fruit.
Now **Already** ye are *clean* **pure** through the word
which I have spoken unto you.
4 **Exactly** as the branch cannot bear fruit of itself,
except **unless** it abide in the vine;
no more **thus neither** can ye,
except **unless** ye abide in me.
5 *I am* **I AM** the vine, ye are the branches:
He that abideth in me, and I in him,
the same *bringeth forth* **beareth** much fruit:
for *without* **apart from** me ye can do *nothing* **naught**.
6 *If a man* **Unless anyone** abide *not* in me,
he is cast *forth* as a branch, and is withered;
and men gather them,
and cast them into the fire, and they are burned.
7 *If* **Whenever** ye abide in me,
and my words **rhema** abide in you,
ye shall ask what ye will, and it shall be *done* unto you.
8 Herein is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit;
so shall ye be my disciples.
9 **Exactly** As the Father hath loved me,
so have I loved you:
continue **abide** ye in my love.
10 *If* **Whenever** ye *keep* **guard** my *commandments* **misvoth**,
ye shall abide in my love;
even **exactly** as I have *kept* **guarded**
my Father's *commandments* **misvoth**,
and abide in his love.
11 These *things* have I spoken unto you,
that my *joy* **cheer** might *remain* **abide** in you,
and that your *joy* **cheer** might be full.
12 This is my *commandment* **misvah**,
That ye love one another, **exactly** as I have loved you.
13 Greater love hath *no man* **one** than this,
that a *man* **lay down** **one place** his *life* **soul** for his friends.
14 Ye are my friends, *if* **whenever** ye do
whatsoever **as much as ever** I *command* **misvah** you.

THE NEW RELATIONSHIP

15 Henceforth I *call* **word** you not servants;
for the servant knoweth not what his lord doeth:
but I have *called* **said** you friends;
for all *things* that I have heard of my Father
I have made known unto you.
16 Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you,
and *ordained* **set** you,
that ye should go and *bring forth* **bear** fruit,
and that your fruit should *remain* **abide**:
that whatsoever ye shall ask of the Father in my name,
he may give it you.
17 These *things* I *command* **misvah** you,
that ye love one another.
18 *If* the *world* **cosmos** hate you,
ye know that it hated me *before* it *hated* you **first**.
19 *If* ye were of the *world* **cosmos**,

YAHN 14, 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

28 You heard me say to you,
I go away, and come again to you.
If you love me, cheer!
— because I say, I go to the Father:
for my Father is greater than I.
29 And now I say to you, ere it becomes,
that, whenever it becomes, you trust.
30 Hereafter I speak not much with you:
for the arch of this cosmos comes,
and has naught in me.
31 But so that the cosmos knows that I love the Father,
and exactly as the Father misvahed me,
even thus I do.
Rise, we go hence.

ABIDING IN THE VINE

15

I AM the true vine,
and my Father the cultivator.
2 Every branch in me that bears not fruit
he takes away:
and every branch that bears fruit,
he purifies to bear much more fruit.
Already you are pure
through the word I spoke to you.
4 Exactly as the branch cannot bear fruit of itself
unless it abide in the vine;
thus neither can you
unless you abide in me.
5 I AM the vine, you are the branches:
whoever abides in me, and I in him,
the same bears much fruit:
for apart from me you can do naught.
6 Unless anyone abides in me,
he is cast as a branch and withers;
and men gather them
and cast them into the fire and burn them.
7 Whenever you abide in me,
and my rhema abides in you
ask what you will, and thus it becomes to you.
8 Herein is my Father glorified
— that you bear much fruit;
thus you become my disciples.
9 Exactly as the Father loves me, thus I love you:
you, abide in my love.
10 Whenever you guard my misvoth,
you abide in my love;
even exactly as I guard the misvoth of my Father,
and abide in his love.
11 I speak these to you,
so that my cheer abides in you,
and to fill your cheer.

12 This is my misvah,
to love one another, exactly as I love you.
13 Greater love has no one than this,
than to place his soul for his friends:
you are my friends,
14 whenever you do as much as ever I misvah you.

THE NEW RELATIONSHIP

15 Henceforth I word you not, servants;
for the servant knows not what his adoni does:
but I say of you, friends;
for all I heard of my Father I made known to you.
16 You chose me not, but I chose you,
and set you to go and bear fruit,
and that your fruit abide:
that whatever you ask of the Father in my name,
he gives you.
17 These I misvah you:
to love one another.
18 If the cosmos hates you, you know it hated me first.
19 If you are of the cosmos,

JOHN 15, 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

the world cosmos

would love **should ever befriend** his own:
but because ye are not of the world cosmos,
but I have chosen you out of the world cosmos,
Therefore **So** the world cosmos hateth you.

20 Remember the word that I said unto you,
The servant is not greater than his lord **adoni**.

If they have persecuted me,
they will **shall** also persecute you;
if they have kept **guarded** my saying word,
they will keep **shall guard** yours also.

21 But all these things
will **shall** they do unto you for my name's sake,
because they know not him that sent me.

22 If I had not come and spoken unto them,
they had not had sin:

but now they have no **cloak pretext** for their sin.

23 He that hateth me hateth my Father also.

24 If I had not done among them
the works which none other man did,
they had not had sin:

but now have they both seen and hated
both me and my Father.

25 But this *cometh to pass* **becometh**,
that the word might be fulfilled/**shalamed**
that is *written* **scribed** in their law **torah**,
They hated me *without a cause* **gratuitously**.

Psalms 35:19, 69:4

26 But when **ever** the Comforter **Paraclete** is come,
whom I will **shall** send unto you from the Father,
even the Spirit of truth,
which proceedeth from the Father,
he shall *testify of* **witness concerning** me:

27 And ye also shall *bear* witness,
because ye have been with me from the beginning.

EX—SYNOGOGUING AND MARTYRDOM

16

These things have I spoken unto you,
that ye should not be *offended* **scandalized**.

2 They shall *put* **ex—synagogue** you out of the synagogues:
yea, **yet** the time **hour** cometh,

that whosoever *killeth* **slaughtereth** you will **shall** think
that he *doeth* God service **offereth Elohim liturgy**.

3 And these things will **shall** they do unto you,
because they have not known the Father, nor me.

4 But these things have I *told* **spoken unto** you,
that when **ever** the time **hour** shall *come* **become**,
ye may remember that I told you of them.

And these things I said not unto you
at **from** the beginning,
because I was with you.

5 But now I go my way to him that sent me;
and none of you asketh me, Whither goest thou?

6 But because I have *said* **spoken** these things unto you,
sorrow hath filled your heart full.

THE MINISTRY OF THE PARACLETE

7 *Nevertheless* I tell **Yet I word** you the truth;
It is *expedient* **beneficial** for you that I go away:
for if **whenever** I go not away,
the Comforter will **Paraclete shall** not come unto you;
but if **whenever** I depart, I will **shall** send him unto you.

8 And when he is come,
he will **shall** reprove the world **cosmos**
of **concerning** sin,

and of *righteousness* **concerning justness**,

and of **concerning** judgment:

9 Of sin **Concerning sin indeed**,

because they *believe* **trust not on in** me;

10 Of *righteousness* **Concerning justness**,

because I go to my Father, and ye see me no more;

11 Of **Concerning** judgment,
because the *prince* **arch** of this world **cosmos** is judged.

12 I have yet *many things* **much** to say **word** unto you,
but ye cannot bear them now.

13 Howbeit when **ever** he, the Spirit of truth, is come,
he will **shall** guide you into all truth:
for he shall not speak of himself;

but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak:
and he will *shew* **shall evangelize** you
things **those** to come.

YAHN 15, 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

the cosmos ever befriends his own:
but because you are not of the cosmos,
but I chose you from the cosmos,
because of this the cosmos hates you.

20 Remember the word I said to you,
The servant is not greater than his adoni.
If they persecute me, they also persecute you;
if they guard my word, they guard yours also.
21 But they do all these to you for sake of my name,
because they know not him who sent me.

22 If I had not come and spoken to them,
they had not had sin:
but now they have no pretext for their sin.
Whoever hates me hates my Father also.

23 If I had not done among them
the works which no other man did,
they had not had sin:
but now have they both seen and hated
both me and my Father.

25 But this becomes,
to fulfill/shalam the word scribed in their torah,
They hated me gratuitously.

Psalms 35:19, 69:4

26 And whenever the Paraclete comes
— whom I send you from the Father
— even the Spirit of truth
who proceeds from the Father,
he witnesses concerning me:
and you also witness,
because you were with me from the beginning.

EX—SYNOGOGUING AND MARTYRDOM

16

I have spoken these to you,
that you not be scandalized.

2 They ex—synagogue you:
yet the hour comes that whoever slaughters you
thinks he offers Elohim liturgy:
and they do these to you
because they know neither the Father, nor me:
3 but I have spoken these to you,
4 that whenever the hour becomes,
to remember that I told you of them.

And I said these not to you from the beginning
because I was with you.

5 But now I go my way to him who sent me;
and none of you asks me, Where go you?
6 But because I have spoken these to you,
sorrow fills your heart full.

THE MINISTRY OF THE PARACLETE

7 Yet I word you the truth;
It is beneficial for you that I go away:
for whenever I go not away,
the Paraclete comes not to you:
but whenever I depart, I send him to you:
8 and when he comes, he reproves the cosmos
concerning sin,

and concerning justness,
and concerning judgment.

9 Concerning sin indeed,
because they trust not in me;
10 concerning justness,
because I go to my Father, and you see me no more;

11 concerning judgment,
because the arch of this cosmos is judged.
I still have much to word to you,
but you cannot bear them now.

12 However, whenever the Spirit of truth comes,
he guides you into all truth:
for he speaks not of himself;
but whatever he hears, he speaks
and he evangelizes you of those to come.

JOHN 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 He shall glorify me:
for he shall *receive* **take** of mine,
and shall *shew* **evangelize** it unto you.
**YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH,
RESURRECTION, AND PAROUSIA**

15 All *things that* — **as much as** the Father hath are mine:
Therefore **So** said I, that he shall take of mine,
and shall *shew* **evangelize** it unto you.

16 A little *while*, and ye shall not see me:
and again, a little *while*, and ye shall see me,
because I go to the Father.

17 *Then* **So** said some of his disciples
among themselves **to one another**,
What is this that he *saith* **wordeth** unto us,
A little *while*, and ye shall not see me:
and again, a little *while*, and ye shall see me:
and, Because I go to the Father?

18 **So** They *said* **worded** *therefore*,
What is this that he *saith* **wordeth**, A little *while*?
we *cannot tell* **know not** what he *saith* **wordeth**.

19 Now *Jesus* **Yah Shua** knew
that they *were* **desirous** **willed** to ask him,
and said unto them,
Do ye enquire among yourselves **Seek ye with one another**
of concerning that I said,
A little *while*, and ye shall not see me:
and again, a little *while*, and ye shall see me?

20 *Verily, verily, I say* **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
That ye shall weep and lament,
but the *world* **cosmos** shall *rejoice* **cheer**:
and ye shall be sorrowful,
but your sorrow shall *be turned into joy* **become cheer**.

21 A woman when **ever** she *is in travail* **births**
hath sorrow,
because her hour is come:
but *as soon as* **whenever**
she *is delivered of* **beareth** the child,
she remembereth no more the anguish,
for *joy* **cheer**
that a *man* **human** is *born* **birthed** into the *world* **cosmos**.

22 And **so indeed** ye now *therefore* have sorrow:
but I *will* **shall** see you again,
and your heart shall *rejoice* **cheer**,
and your *joy* **cheer** no *man* **one** taketh from you.

23 And in that day ye shall ask me *nothing* **naught**.
Verily, verily, I say **Amen! Amen! I word** unto you,
Whatsoever **As much as ever**
ye shall ask the Father in my name,
he *will* **shall** give it you.

24 Hitherto have ye asked *nothing* **naught** in my name:
ask, and ye shall *receive* **take**
that your *joy* **cheer** may be *full* **fulfilled/shalamed**.

25 These *things* have I spoken unto you in proverbs:
but the *time* **hour** cometh,
when I shall no more speak unto you in proverbs,
but I shall *shew* **evangelize** you *plainly* **boldly**
of concerning the Father.

26 At that day ye shall ask in my name:
and I *say* **word** not unto you,
that I *will pray* **shall ask** the Father for you:
For the Father himself *loveth* **befriendeth** you,
because ye have *loved* **befriended** me,
and have *believed* **trusted**
that I came out from *God* **Elohim**.

28 I came forth from the Father,
and am come into the *world* **cosmos**:
again, I leave the *world* **cosmos**, and go to the Father.

29 His disciples *said* **worded** unto him,
Lo **Behold**, now speakest thou *plainly* **boldly**,
and *speakest* **wordest** no proverb.

30 Now *are* we *sure* **know**
that thou knowest all *things*,
and needest not that any *man* should ask thee:
by in this we *believe* **trust**
that thou camest forth from *God* **Elohim**.

31 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered them,
Do ye now *believe* **trust**?

32 Behold, the hour cometh, yea, is now come,

YAHN 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 He glorifies me:
for he takes of mine and evangelizes to you.
**YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH,
RESURRECTION, AND PAROUSIA**

15 All — as much as the Father has is mine.
So I say,
He takes of mine, and evangelizes you.
A little, and you see me not;
and again, A little, and you see me;
because I go to the Father.

17 So some of his disciples say to one another,
What is this that he words to us,
A little, and you see me not:
and again, A little, and you see me:
and, Because I go to the Father?

18 So they word,
What is this that he words, A little?
We know not what he words.

19 Yah Shua knows that they will to ask him,
and says to them,
Seek you with one another concerning what I say,
A little, and you see me not:
and again, A little, and you see me?

20 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
You weep and lament, but the cosmos cheers:
and you sorrow, but your sorrow becomes cheer.
A woman, whenever she births, sorrows,
because her hour is come:
but whenever she bears the child,
she remembers no more the anguish,
for cheer that a human is birthed into the cosmos.

22 And so indeed, you now have sorrow:
but I see you again, and your heart cheers,
and no one takes your cheer from you:
and in that day you ask me naught.

23 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
As much as ever you ask the Father in my name,
he gives you.

24 Until now, you asked naught in my name:
ask and take to fulfill/shalam your cheer.

25 I speak these to you in proverbs:
but the hour comes,
when I no more speak to you in proverbs,
but I evangelize you boldly concerning the Father.

26 At that day you ask in my name:
and I word not to you,
that I ask the Father for you:
for the Father himself befriends you,
because you befriend me,
and trust that I came from Elohim.

28 I came from the Father
and came into the cosmos:
again, I leave the cosmos, and go to the Father.

29 His disciples word to him,
Behold, now you speak boldly and word no proverb:
now we know that you know all,
and need no one to ask you:
in this we trust — that you came from Elohim.

31 Yah Shua answers them, Trust you now?
32 Behold, the hour comes, yes, now comes,

JOHN 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that ye shall be scattered, every man each to his own,
and shall *leave* **forsake** me alone:
and yet I am not alone, because the Father is with me.
33 These *things* I have spoken unto you
that in me ye might have *peace* **shalom**.
In the *world* **cosmos** ye shall have tribulation:
but *be of good cheer*; **Courage!**
I have *overcome* **triumphed** over the *world* **cosmos**.

THE PRAYER OF YAH SHUA TO THE FATHER

17 These words spake *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
and lifted *up* his eyes to heaven, and said,
Father, the hour is come; glorify thy Son,
that thy Son also may glorify thee:
2 **Exactly** As thou hast given him *power* **authority**
over all flesh,
that he should give eternal life
to as many as thou hast given him.
3 And this is life eternal,
that they might know thee the only true *God* **Elohim**,
and *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**,
whom thou hast *sent* **apostolized**.
4 I have glorified thee on the earth:
I have *finished* **completed/shalamed** the work
which thou gavest me to do.
5 And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self
with the glory which I had with thee
before **ere** the *world* **cosmos** was.
6 I have manifested thy name unto *the men* **humanity**
which thou gavest me out of the *world* **cosmos**:
thine they were, and thou gavest them me;
and they have *kept* **guarded** thy word.
7 Now they have known that all *things*
whatsoever — **as much as ever** thou hast given me
are of thee.
8 For I have given unto them
the *words* **rhema** which thou gavest me;
and they have *received* **taken** them,
and have known *surely* **truly** that I came out from thee,
and they have *believed* **trusted**
that thou didst *send* **apostolize** me.
9 I *pray* **ask** for them: I *pray* **ask** not for the *world* **cosmos**,
but for them which thou hast given me; for they are thine.
10 And all mine are thine, and thine are mine;
and I am glorified in them.
11 And now I am no more in the *world* **cosmos**,
but these are in the *world* **cosmos**,
and I come to thee. Holy Father,
keep through **guard in** thine own name
those whom thou hast given me,
that they may be one, **exactly** as we are.
12 While I was with them in the *world* **cosmos**,
I *kept* **guarded** them in thy name:
those that thou gavest me I have *kept* **guarded**,
and none of them is lost,
but **except** the son of *perdition* **destruction**;
that the scripture might be fulfilled/**shalamed**.
13 And now come I to thee;
and these *things* I speak in the *world* **cosmos**,
that they might have my *joy* **cheer**
fulfilled/**shalamed** in themselves.
14 I have given them thy word;
and the *world* **cosmos** hath hated them,
because they are not of the *world* **cosmos**,
even **exactly** as I am not of the *world* **cosmos**.
15 I *pray* **ask** not
that thou shouldst take them out of the *world* **cosmos**,
but that thou shouldst *keep* **guard** them from the evil.
16 They are not of the *world* **cosmos**,
even **exactly** as I am not of the *world* **cosmos**.
17 *Sanctify* **Hallow** them *through in* thy truth:
thy word is truth.
18 **Exactly** As thou hast *sent* **apostolized** me
into the *world* **cosmos**,
even so have I also sent them into the *world* **cosmos**.
19 And for their sakes I *sanctify* **hallow** myself,
that they also might be *sanctified* **hallowed**
through in the truth.
20 **THE PRAYER OF YAH SHUA FOR FUTURE TRUSTERS**
Neither *pray* **ask** I for these *alone* **only**,

YAHN 16, 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

that you scatter — each to his own,
and forsake me alone:
and yet I am not alone, because the Father is with me.
33 I speak these to you that you have shalom in me.
In the cosmos you have tribulation:
but, Courage! I triumph over the cosmos.

THE PRAYER OF YAH SHUA TO THE FATHER

17 Yah Shua speaks these words
and lifts his eyes to the heavens, and says,
Father, the hour is come; glorify your Son,
so that your Son also glorifies you:
2 exactly as you gave him authority over all flesh
to give eternal life to as many as you give him.
3 And this is life eternal:
that they know you the only true Elohim,
and Yah Shua Messiah whom you apostolized.
4 I glorified you on the earth:
I completed/shalamed the work you gave me to do.
5 And now, O Father,
glorify me with your own self
with the glory I had with you ere the cosmos was.
6 I manifested your name to humanity
whom you gave me from the cosmos:
yours they are, and you gave them me;
and they guarded your word.
7 Now they know that all
— as much as ever you gave me are of you:
8 for I gave them the rhema you gave me;
and they took them;
and know truly that I come from you;
and they trust that you apostolized me.
9 I ask for them: I ask not for the cosmos,
but for those you gave me;
for they are yours:
10 and all mine are yours, and yours are mine;
and I am glorified in them.
11 And now I am no more in the cosmos;
but these are in the cosmos:
and I come to you. Holy Father,
guard in your own name
those whom you gave me,
that they be one, exactly as we.
12 When I was with them in the cosmos
I guarded them in your name:
those you gave me, I guarded;
and none of them is lost
except the son of destruction
— to fulfill/shalam the scripture.
13 And now I come to you;
and I speak these in the cosmos,
to fulfill/shalam my cheer in them.
14 I gave them your word;
and the cosmos hates them
because they are not of the cosmos
— even exactly as I am not of the cosmos.
15 I ask you not to take them from the cosmos,
but to guard them from the evil.
16 They are not of the cosmos
even exactly as I am not of the cosmos.
17 Hallow them in your truth:
your word is truth.
18 Exactly as you apostolized me into the cosmos,
even so I also sent them into the cosmos.
19 And for their sakes I hallow myself,
that they also be hallowed in the truth.
20 **THE PRAYER OF YAH SHUA FOR FUTURE TRUSTERS**
And I ask not for these only,

JOHN 17, 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

but for them also
which shall *believe on* **trust in** me through their word;
21 That they all may be one;
exactly as thou, Father, *art in* me, and I in thee,
that they also may be one in us:
that the *world cosmos* may *believe trust*
that thou hast *sent apostolized* me.
22 And the glory which thou gavest me
I have given them;
that they may be one, even **exactly** as we are one:
23 I in them, and thou in me,
that they may be *made perfect completed/shalamed* in one;
and that the *world cosmos* may know
that thou hast *sent apostolized* me,
and hast loved them, as thou hast loved me.
24 Father, I will that they also, whom thou hast given me,
be with me where I am;
that they may *behold see* my glory,
which thou hast given me:
for thou lovedst me
before ere the foundation of the *world cosmos*.
25 O *righteous just* Father,
the *world cosmos* hath not known thee:
but I have known thee,
and these have known
that thou hast *sent apostolized* me.
26 And I have declared unto them thy name,
and *will shall* declare it:
that the love wherewith thou hast loved me
may be in them,
and I in them.

YAH SHUA IN THE GARDEN

18 When *Jesus Yah Shua* had *spoken said* these words,
he went forth with his disciples
over the brook *Cedron Qidron*, where was a garden,
into the which he entered, and his disciples.
2 And *Judas Yah Hudah* also, which betrayed him,
knew the place:
for *Jesus ofttimes Yah Shua often*
resorted gathered thither with his disciples.
3 **YAH HUDAH BETRAYS YAH SHUA**
Judas then So Yah Hudah,
having *received taken*
a *band of men squad* and *officers attendants*
from the *chief arch* priests and Pharisees,
cometh thither
with lanterns and *torches lamps* and weapons.
4 *Jesus therefore So Yah Shua,*
knowing all *things* that should come upon him,
went *forth*, and said unto them, Whom seek ye?
5 They answered him,
Jesus of Nazareth Yah Shua the Nazarene.
Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth unto them, *I am he I AM.*
And *Judas Yah Hudah* also, which betrayed him,
stood with them.
6 **So** As soon *then* as he had said unto them, *I am he I AM,*
they went backward, and fell to unto the ground.
7 *Then So* asked he them again, Whom seek ye?
And they said, *Jesus of Nazareth Yah Shua the Nazarene.*
8 *Jesus Yah Shua* answered,
I have *told said to* you that *I am he I AM:*
so if *therefore* ye seek me, *let release* these *to* go their way:
9 That the *saying* might **word** be fulfilled/*shalamed*,
which he *spake said*,
Of them which thou gavest me have I lost none.
10 *Then Simon Peter So Shimon Petros* having a sword
drew it, and smote the *high arch* priest's servant,
and *cut off amputated* his right ear **lobe**.
The servant's name was *Malchus Melech*.
11 *Then So* said *Jesus Yah Shua* unto *Peter Petros*,
Put *up* thy sword into the sheath:
the cup which my Father hath given me,
shall I not drink it?

YAH SHUA ARRESTED

12 *Then So* the *band squad* and the *captain chiliarch*
and *officers attendants* of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*
took *Jesus Yah Shua*, and bound him,
13 And led him away to *Annas Hanan Yah* first;
for he was father in law to Caiaphas,

YAHN 17, 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

but also for them who trust in me through their word;
21 that they all be one;
exactly as you, Father in me; and I in you;
that they also be one in us:
22 that the cosmos trust that you apostolized me.
And the glory you gave me, I gave them;
that they be one, even exactly as we are one:
23 I in them, and you in me,
that they be completed/shalamed in one;
and that the cosmos know that you apostolized me,
and loved them as you loved me.
24 Father, I will that whomever you gave me
also be with me where I am;
to see my glory that you gave me:
for you loved me ere the foundation of the cosmos.
25 O just Father,
the cosmos knows you not; but I know you:
and these know that you apostolized me:
26 and I declared your name to them;
and declare
that the love with which you love me be in them;
and I in them.

YAH SHUA IN THE GARDEN

18 Having said these words,
Yah Shua goes with his disciples
across the brook Qidron to a garden,
which he and his disciples enter:
2 and Yah Hudah also, who betrays him,
knows the place:
for Yah Shua often gathered there with his disciples.

YAH HUDAH BETRAYS YAH SHUA

3 So Yah Hudah takes a squad
and attendants of the archpriests and Pharisees,
and goes there
with lanterns and lamps and weapons.
4 So Yah Shua, knowing all that is to come upon him,
goes and says to them, Whom seek you?
5 They answer him, Yah Shua the Nazarene.
Yah Shua words to them, I AM.
And Yah Hudah, who betrays him, also stands with them:
6 so when he says to them, I AM,
they go backward, and fall to to the ground.
7 So he asks them again, Whom seek you?
And they say, Yah Shua the Nazarene.
8 Yah Shua answers, I say to you, I AM:
9 so if you seek me, release these to go their way.
— to fulfill/shalame the word he had said,
Of them you gave me, I lost none.
10 So Shimon Petros, holding a sword,
draws it, and smites the servant of the archpriest,
and amputates his right ear lobe.
— the name of the servant, Melech.
11 So Yah Shua says to Petros,
Put your sword into the sheath:
the cup my Father gives me, am I not to drink?
12 So the squad and the chiliarch
and attendants of the Yah Hudiym
take Yah Shua, and bind him;
13 and lead him away to Hanan Yah first;
for he is father in law to Caiaphas,

YAH SHUA ARRESTED

JOHN 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 which was the *high arch* priest that same year.
Now Caiaphas was he,
which gave counsel to **counseled** the Jews **Yah Hudiym**,
that it was *expedient* **beneficial**
that one *man* **human** should **die be destroyed**
for the people.

THE FIRST DENIAL OF PETROS

15 And *Simon Peter* **Shimon Petros** followed *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
and so did another disciple:
that disciple
was *known unto* **acquainted with** the *high arch* priest,
and went in with *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
into the palace of the *high arch* priest.
16 But *Peter* **Petros** stood at the *door* **portal** without.
Then **So** went out that other disciple,
which was *known* **acquainted**
unto **with** the *high arch* priest,
and *spake* **said** unto *her* that kept the *door* **the portalguard**,
and brought in *Peter* **Petros**.
17 Then *saith* **So** *wordeth* the *damsel* **lass**
that kept the *door* — **the portalguard** unto *Peter* **Petros**,
Art not thou also one of this *man's* **human's** disciples?
He *saith* **wordeth**, *I am not* **Not I**.
18 And the servants and *officers* **attendants** stood there,
who had made a fire of coals; for it was cold:
and they warmed themselves:
and *Peter* **Petros** stood with them, and warmed himself.

THE WITNESS OF YAH SHUA

19 **So** The *high arch* priest then asked *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
of **concerning** his disciples, and of **concerning** his doctrine.
20 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered him,
I *spake* **openly** **boldly** to the *world* **cosmos**;
I ever taught in the synagogue,
and in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
whither the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
always *resort* **come together on all sides**;
and in secret have I *said* **nothing** **spoken** **naught**.
21 Why askest thou me? ask them which heard me,
what I have *said* **spoken** unto them:
behold, they know what I said.
22 And when he had thus *spoken* **said**,
one of the *officers* which stood by **attendants present**
struck *Jesus* with the *palm of his hand*
gave Yah Shua a slap, saying,
Answerest thou the *high arch* priest so **thus**?
23 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered him,
If I have spoken *evil* **evily**,
bear witness of **concerning** the evil:
but if well, why *smitest* **floggest** thou me?
24 Now *Annas* **Hanan Yah** had *sent* **apostolized** him
bound unto Caiaphas the *high arch* priest.

THE SECOND DENIAL OF PETROS

25 And *Simon Peter* **Shimon Petros**
stood and warmed himself.
So They said *therefore* unto him,
Art not thou also one of his disciples?
He denied it, and said, *I am not* **Not I**.

THE THIRD DENIAL OF PETROS

26 One of the servants of the *high arch* priest,
being his *kinsman* **kin**
whose ear *Peter* cut off **Petros amputated**,
saith **wordeth**, Did not I see thee in the garden with him?
27 *Peter* **So Petros** then denied again:
and *immediately* **straightway** the *cock crew* **rooster voiced**.

THE TRIAL OF YAH SHUA

28 Then **So** led they *Jesus* **Yah Shua** from Caiaphas
unto the *hall of judgment* **praetorium**:
and it was early **morning**;
and they themselves
went not into the *judgment hall* **praetorium**,
lest they should be defiled;
but that they might eat the *passover* **pasach**.
29 *Pilate* then **So Pilatos** went out unto them, and said,
What accusation bring ye against this *man* **human**?
30 They answered and said unto him,
If **Unless** he were *not a malefactor* **an evildoer**,
we *would* **should** not have delivered him *up* unto thee.

YAHN 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 who is the archpriest that same year
— the Caiaphas who counseled the Yah Hudiym
that it is beneficial
to destroy one human for the people.

THE FIRST DENIAL OF PETROS

15 And Shimon Petros and that other disciple
follow Yah Shua:
and that disciple is acquainted with the archpriest;
and goes with Yah Shua
into the palace of the archpriest.
16 But Petros stands outside at the portal:
so that other disciple,
who is acquainted with the archpriest,
goes out and says to the portal guard
to bring in Petros.
17 So the lass — the portal guard words to Petros,
Are not you also one of the disciples of this human?

He words, Not I.

18 And the servants and attendants
make a fire of coals and stand there; for it is cold:
and they warm themselves:
and Petros stands with them, and warms himself.

THE WITNESS OF YAH SHUA

19 So the archpriest asks Yah Shua
concerning his disciples and concerning his doctrine.

20 Yah Shua answers him,
I spoke boldly to the cosmos;
I ever taught in the synagogue
and in the priestal precinct
where the Yah Hudiym always come together;
and I spoke naught in secret.

21 Why ask me?
Ask them who heard me speak to them:
behold, they know what I said.

22 And when he says thus,
one of the attendants present gives Yah Shua a slap,
saying, Answer you the archpriest thus?

23 Yah Shua answers him,
If I have spoken evilly, witness concerning the evil:
but if well, why flog me?
24 — so Hanan Yah apostolizes to bind him
to Caiaphas the archpriest.

THE SECOND DENIAL OF PETROS

25 And Shimon Petros stands and warms himself.

So they say to him,
Are not you also one of his disciples?

He denies and says, Not I.

THE THIRD DENIAL OF PETROS

26 One of the servants of the archpriest,
being kin of him whose ear Petros amputated,
words, Saw I not you in the garden with him?

27 So Petros denies again:
— and straightway the rooster voices.

THE TRIAL OF YAH SHUA

28 So they lead Yah Shua
from Caiaphas to the praetorium:
and it is early morning;
and they themselves enter not the praetorium,
lest they defile themselves to eat the pasach.

29 So Pilatos goes to them, and says,
What accusation bring you against this human?

30 They answer him, saying,
Unless he were an evildoer,
we had not delivered him to you.

JOHN 18, 19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

31 Then **So** said Pilate **Pilat**os unto them, Take ye him,
and judge him according to your law **torah**.
The Jews therefore **So the Yah Hudiym** said unto him,
It is not lawful **allowed** for us
to put any man to death **slaughter anyone**:
32 That the saying word of Jesus **Yah Shua**
might be fulfilled/**shalamed**, which he *spake* **said**,
signifying what death he *should* **is about to** die.
33 Then Pilate **So Pilatos**
entered into the judgment hall **praetorium** again,
and called Jesus **voiced out to Yah Shua**,
and said unto him,
Art thou the King **Sovereign** of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**?
34 Jesus **Yah Shua** answered him,
Sayest **Wordest** thou this *thing* of thyself,
or did others *tell* **say it to thee of concerning me?**
35 Pilate **Pilat**os answered, Am I a Jew **Yah Hudiym**?
Thine own nation **goyim** and the chief **arch** priests
have delivered thee unto me: what hast thou done?
36 Jesus **Yah Shua** answered,
My kingdom **sovereigndom** is not of this world **cosmos**:
if my kingdom **sovereigndom** were of this world **cosmos**,
then would **had** my servants *fight* **attendants agonized**,
that I should not be delivered to the Jews **Yah Hudiym**:
but now is my kingdom **sovereigndom** not from hence.
37 Pilate therefore **So Pilatos** said unto him,
So Art thou a king *then* **sovereign**?
Jesus **Yah Shua** answered,
Thou sayest **wordest** that I am a king **sovereign**.
To this end was I *born* **birthed**,
and for **to** this cause came I into the world **cosmos**,
that I should *bear* witness unto the truth.
Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice.
38 Pilate saith **Pilat**os **wordeth** unto him, What is truth?
And when he had said this,
he went out again unto the Jews **Yah Hudiym**,
and saith **wordeth** unto them,
I find in him no *fault* **cause** at all.
39 But ye have a custom,
that I should release unto you
one at the *passover* **pasach**:
will **so shall** ye therefore that I release unto you
the King **Sovereign** of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**?
40 Then **So** cried they all again, saying **wording**,
Not this man, but *Barabbas* **Bar Abbas**.
Now *Barabbas* **Bar Abbas** was a robber.

YAH SHUA WREATHED

19 Then Pilate therefore **So then, Pilatos** took Jesus **Yah Shua**,
and scourged him.
2 And the *soldiers* **warriors**
platted **braided** a crown **wreath** of thorns,
and put it on his head,
and they put on **arrayed** him a **in** purple robe **clothing**,
3 And said **worded**, *Hail* **Cheers**,
King **Sovereign** of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**!
and they smote him with their hands **gave him a slap**.
4 Pilate therefore **So Pilatos** went forth again,
and saith **wordeth** unto them, Behold,
I bring him forth to you,
that ye may know that I find no *fault* **cause** in him.
5 Then **So** came Jesus forth **Yah Shua**,
wearing **bearing** the crown **wreath** of thorns,
and the purple robe **clothing**.
And Pilate saith **Pilat**os **wordeth** unto them,
Behold the man **human**!
6 **So** When the chief **arch** priests therefore
and officers **attendants** saw him,
they cried out, saying **wording**,
Crucify him, crucify him. Stake! Stake!
Pilate saith **Pilat**os **wordeth** unto them,
Take ye him, and *crucify him* **stake**:
for I find no *fault* **cause** in him.
7 The Jews **Yah Hudiym** answered him,

YAHN 18, 19

exeGeses companion BIBLE

31 So Pilatos says to them, You take him
and judge him according to your torah.
So the Yah Hudiym say to him,
We are not allowed to slaughter anyone:
32 — to fulfill/shalam the word of Yah Shua
that he said
signifying by which death he is about to die.
33 So Pilatos enters the praetorium again,
and voices out to Yah Shua, and says to him,
Are you the Sovereign of the Yah Hudiym?
34 Yah Shua answers him,
Word you this of yourself?
Or say others to you concerning me?
35 Pilatos answers, Am I a Yah Hudiym?
Your own goyim and the archpriests
delivered you to me.
What did you to?
36 Yah Shua answers,
My sovereigndom is not of this cosmos:
if my sovereigndom were of this cosmos,
my attendants had ever agonized
that I not be delivered to the Yah Hudiym:
but now my sovereigndom is not from here.
37 So Pilatos says to him,
So, are you a sovereign?
Yah Shua answers,
You word that I am a sovereign.
To this end I was birthed,
and to this cause I came into the cosmos
— to witness to the truth.
Everyone who is of the truth hears my voice.
38 Pilatos words to him, What is truth?
And when he says this
he again goes to the Yah Hudiym and words to them,
I find in him no cause at all:
but you have a custom,
that I release one to you at the pasach:
so is it your will that I release to you
the Sovereign of the Yah Hudiym?
40 YAH HUDIYM DEMAND YAH SHUA
So again they all cry, wording,
Not this man, but Bar Abbas.
— Bar Abbas is a robber.
YAH SHUA WREATHED
19 So then,
Pilatos takes Yah Shua and scourges him:
and the warriors braid a wreath of thorns
and put it on his head;
and they array him in purple clothing;
and word, Cheers!
Sovereign of the Yah Hudiym!
— and they give him a slap.
4 Pilatos goes again and words to them,
Behold, I bring him to you,
so that you know I find no cause in him.
5 So Yah Shua comes
bearing the wreath of thorns and the purple clothing:
and Pilatos words to them, Behold the human!
6 So when the archpriests and attendants see him
they cry out, wording, Stake! Stake!
Pilatos words to them, You take him, and stake:
for I find no cause in him.
7 The Yah Hudiym answer him,

JOHN 19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

We have a law **torah**,
and by our law **torah** he ought is indebted to die,
because he made himself the Son of God **Elohim**.
8 So When **Pilate Pilatos** therefore heard that saying word,
he was the more afraid **awestricken**;
9 And went again into the judgment hall **praetorium**,
and saith **wordeth** unto **Jesus Yah Shua**,
Whence art thou?
But **Jesus Yah Shua** gave him no answer.
10 then saith **Pilate So Pilatos wordeth** unto him,
Speakest thou not unto me?
knowest thou not
that I have power **authority** to crucify **stake** thee,
and have power **authority** to release thee?
11 **Jesus Yah Shua** answered,
Thou couldest have no power **authority** at all against me,
except it were given thee from above:
Therefore **So** he that delivered me unto thee
hath the greater sin.
12 And from thenceforth
Pilate Pilatos sought to release him:
but the **Jews Yah Hudiym** cried out, saying **wording**,
If **Whenever** thou let this man go release this one,
thou art not **Caesar's the kaisar's** friend:
whosoever maketh himself a **king sovereign**
speaketh against **Caesar contradicteth the kaisar**.
13 So When **Pilate Pilatos** therefore heard that saying,
he brought **Jesus Yah Shua** forth,
and sat down in the judgment seat **bamah**
in a place that is called **worded** the Pavement,
but in the **Hebrew Hebraic**, Gabbatha.
14 And it was the preparation of the **passover pasach**,
and about the sixth hour:
and he saith **wordeth** unto the **Jews Yah Hudiym**,
Behold your **king sovereign**!
15 But they cried out,
Away with him, away with him, crucify **stake** him.
Pilate saith Pilatos wordeth unto them,
Shall I crucify your King **Stake your Sovereign**?
The chief **arch** priests answered,
We have no king but **Caesar sovereign except the kaisar**.
YAH SHUA STAKED
16 So Then delivered he him therefore unto them
to be crucified **staked**.
And they took **Jesus Yah Shua**, and led him away.
17 And he bearing his **cross stake** went forth into a place
called **worded** the place of a skull **cranium**,
which is called **worded** in the **Hebrew Hebraic**,
Golgotha Golgoleth:
18 Where they crucified **staked** him,
and two other with him, on either side one,
and **Jesus Yah Shua** in the midst.
19 And **Pilate wrote Pilatos scribed** a title,
and put it on the **cross stake**.
And the writing **scribing** was
JESUS OF NAZARETH YAH SHUA THE NAZARENE
THE KING SOVEREIGN OF THE JEWS YAH HUDIYM.
20 So This title then read many of the **Jews Yah Hudiym**:
for the place where **Jesus Yah Shua** was crucified **staked**
was nigh to the city:
and it was written **scribed** in **Hebrew Hebraic**,
and **Greek Hellenic**, and **Latin Romaic**.
21 Then said **So worded**
the chief **arch** priests of the **Jews Yah Hudiym**
to **Pilate Pilatos**, Write **Scribe** not,
The King **Sovereign** of the **Jews Yah Hudiym**;
but that he said,
I am King **Sovereign** of the **Jews Yah Hudiym**.
22 **Pilate Pilatos** answered,
What I have written **scribed** I have written **scribed**.
WARRIORS GAMBLE OVER THE GARMENTS OF YAH SHUA
23 Then **So** the **soldiers warriors**,
when they had crucified **Jesus staked Yah Shua**,
took his **garments clothing**, and made four parts,
to every soldier **each warrior** a part;
and also his **coat tunic**:
now the **coat tunic** was without seam **seamless**,
woven from the top.
24 So They said therefore among themselves **each other**,

YAHN 19

exeGeses companion BIBLE

We have a **torah**,
and by our **torah** he is indebted to die
because he makes himself the Son of **Elohim**.
8 So when **Pilatos** hears that word
he is the more awestricken;
9 and goes again into the praetorium,
and words to **Yah Shua**, Whence are you?
— but **Yah Shua** gives him no answer.
10 So then **Pilatos** words to him, Speak you not to me?
Know you not that I have authority to stake you,
and I have authority to release you?
11 **Yah Shua** answers,
You have no authority at all against me,
unless given you from above:
so whoever delivered me to you
has the greater sin.
12 And from then on **Pilatos** seeks to release him:
but the **Yah Hudiym** cry out, wording,
Whenever you release this one,
you are no friend of the kaisar:
whoever makes himself a sovereign
contradicts the kaisar.
13 So when **Pilatos** hears that,
he brings **Yah Shua** forth, and sits in the **bamah**
— in a place worded, the Pavement;
and in **Hebraic**, Gabbatha.
14 And it is the preparation of the **pasach**,
and about the sixth hour:
and he words to the **Yah Hudiym**,
Behold your sovereign!
15 And they cry out, Away! Away! Stake him!
Pilatos words to them, Stake your Sovereign?
The archpriests answer,
We have no sovereign except the kaisar.
YAH SHUA STAKED
16 So then he delivers him to them to stake:
and they take **Yah Shua**, and lead him away:
17 and bearing his stake he goes to a place
worded, the Place of a Cranium,
which in **Hebraic**, is worded, **Golgoleth**:
18 where they stake him — and two others with him
— one on either side and **Yah Shua** in the midst.
19 And **Pilatos** scribes a title, and puts it on the stake:
and the scribing is:
YAH SHUA THE NAZARENE
THE SOVEREIGN OF THE YAH HUDIYM.
20 So many of the **Yah Hudiym** read this title:
for the place they stake **Yah Shua** is near the city:
and it is scribed in **Hebraic** and **Hellenic** and **Romaic**.
21 So the archpriests of the **Yah Hudiym**
word to **Pilatos**, Scribe not,
The Sovereign of the **Yah Hudiym**;
but, He says I am Sovereign of the **Yah Hudiym**.
22 **Pilatos** answers, What I scribed I scribed.
WARRIORS GAMBLE OVER THE GARMENTS OF YAH SHUA
23 So when the warriors stake **Yah Shua**,
they take his clothing, and make four parts
— a part to each warrior; and also his tunic:
and the tunic is seamless, woven from the top.
24 So they say among each other,

JOHN 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Let us not **rend split** it, but cast lots for it,
whose it shall be:

that the scripture might be fulfilled/**shalamed**,
which *saith wordeth*,

They *parted divided* my **raiment garment** among them,
and for my **vesture garments** they *did* cast lots.

So These *things indeed* *therefore* the **soldiers warriors** did.

Psalm 22:18

YAH SHUA PRESENTS HIS MOTHER TO YAHN

25 Now there stood by the **cross stake** of **Jesus Yah Shua**
his mother, and his mother's sister,
Mary the wife of Cleophas Miryam of Clopas,
and *Mary Miryam* the Magdalene.

26 **So** When **Jesus Yah Shua** *therefore* saw his mother,
and the disciple *standing by present*, whom he loved,
he *saith wordeth* unto his mother,
Woman, behold thy son!

27 Then *saith wordeth* he to the disciple,
Behold thy mother!
And from that hour
that disciple took her unto his own *home*.

YAH SHUA THIRSTS

28 After this, **Jesus Yah Shua** knowing that all *things*
were *now accomplished already completed/shalamed*,
that the scripture might be *fulfilled completed/shalamed*,
saith wordeth, I thirst.

29 Now there was set a vessel full of vinegar:
and they filled a sponge with vinegar,
and put it upon hyssop, and *put offered* it to his mouth.

30 **So** When **Jesus Yah Shua** *therefore*
had *received taken* the vinegar,
he said, It is *finished completed/shalamed**:
and he *bowed reclined* his head,
and *gave up the ghost surrendered his spirit*.

*see SUMMARY, SHALAM

PROPHESIES FULFILLED

31 **So** The **Jews Yah Hudiym** *therefore*,
because it was the preparation,
that the bodies should not *remain abide*
upon the **cross stake** on the *sabbath day shabbath*,
(for that *sabbath day shabbath* was *an high a mega* day,) *besought Pilate asked Pilatos* that their legs might be broken,
and that they might be taken away.

32 Then **So** came the **soldiers warriors**,
and **indeed** brake the legs of the first,
and of the other which was *crucified staked* with him.

33 But when they came to **Jesus Yah Shua**,
and saw that he was dead already,
they brake not his legs:

34 But one of the **soldiers warriors** with a spear
pierced his side,
and *forthwith straightway* came there out blood and water.

35 And he that saw it *bare record witnessed*,
and his *record witness* is true:
and he knoweth that he *saith wordeth* true,
that ye might *believe trust*.

36 For these *things were done became*,
that the scripture should be fulfilled/**shalamed**,
A **No** bone of him shall *not be broken be shattered*.
37 And again another scripture *saith wordeth*,
They shall *look on see unto* him whom they pierced.

Psalm 34:20, Zechar Yah 12:10

THE BODY OF YAH SHUA TAKEN

38 And after this **Joseph Yoseph** of **Arimathaea Ramah**,
being a disciple of **Jesus Yah Shua**,
but secretly for **awe** of the **Jews Yah Hudiym**,
besought Pilate asked Pilatos
that he might take away the body of **Jesus Yah Shua**:
and *Pilate gave Pilatos permitted* him leave.

So He came *therefore*, and took the body of **Jesus Yah Shua**.

39 And there came also Nicodemus,
which at the first came to **Jesus Yah Shua** by night,
and brought a mixture of myrrh and aloes,
about an hundred *pound weight litra*.

40 Then **So** took they the body of **Jesus Yah Shua**,
and *wound bound* it in linen clothes
with the *spices aromatics*,
exactly as the *manner custom* of the **Jews Yah Hudiym**
is to *bury embalm*.

YAHN 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Split it not, but cast lots for it, whose it becomes:

— to fulfill/shalam the scripture, wording,
They divided my garment among them;
and for my garments they cast lots.
— so these indeed the warriors did.

Psalm 22:18

YAH SHUA PRESENTS HIS MOTHER TO YAHN

25 And standing by the stake of Yah Shua
are his mother,
and the sister of his mother, Miryam of Clopas,
and Miryam the Magdalene.
26 So Yah Shua seeing his mother present
— and the disciple whom he loves,
he words to his mother, Woman, behold your son!
27 then he words to the disciple, Behold your mother!
And from that hour
that disciple takes her to his own.

YAH SHUA THIRSTS

28 After this,
Yah Shua, knowing that all are completed/shalamed
— to complete/shalam the scripture, words, I thirst.

29 So they set a vessel full of vinegar:
and fill a sponge with vinegar and put it on hyssop
and offer it to his mouth.

30 So when Yah Shua takes the vinegar,
he says, Completed/Shalamed*:
and he reclines his head and surrenders his spirit.

*see SUMMARY, SHALAM

PROPHESIES FULFILLED

31 So the Yah Hudiym, because it is the preparation,
that the bodies not abide on the stake on the shabbath
— for that shabbath is a mega day
ask Pilatos to break their legs and take them away.

32 So the warriors come,
and indeed break the legs of the first
and of the other staked with him:
33 but when they come to Yah Shua
and see that he is already dead,
they break not his legs:
34 but one of the warriors
pierces his side with a spear,
and straightway blood and water come forth.

35 And he who sees, witnesses;
and his witness is true:
and he knows that he words true, so that you trust.

36 For these became to fulfill/shalam the scripture,
No bone of him shatters.

37 And again another scripture words,
They see him whom they pierce.

Psalm 34:20, Zechar Yah 12:10

THE BODY OF YAH SHUA TAKEN

38 And after this,
Yoseph of Ramah, being a disciple of Yah Shua,
but for awe of the Yah Hudiym,
secretly asks of Pilatos
to take the body of Yah Shua:
and Pilatos allows him.

39 So he comes, and takes the body of Yah Shua:
and Nicodemus also comes
— who at the first came to Yah Shua by night
and brings a mixture of myrrh and aloes
— about a hundred litra.

40 So they take the body of Yah Shua
and bind it in linen cloths with the aromatics,
exactly as the custom of the Yah Hudiym to embalm.

JOHN 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH SHUA ENTOMBED

41 Now in the place where he was *crucified staked*
there was a garden;
and in the garden a new *sepulchre tomb*,
wherein was *never man yet laid no one had ever been placed*.
42 So There *laid placed* they *Jesus Yah Shua* therefore
because of the *Jews' Yah Hudy* preparation day;
for the *sepulchre tomb* was nigh at hand.

YAH SHUA DISENTOMBED

20 On The first *day* of the week *shabbaths*
cometh *Mary Miryam* the Magdalene
in the early morning, when it was yet dark,
unto the *sepulchre tomb*,
and seeth the stone taken away from the *sepulchre tomb*.
2 Then So she runneth,
and cometh to *Simon Peter Shimon Petros*,
and to the other disciple,
whom *Jesus loved Yah Shua befriended*,
and *saith wordeth* unto them,
They have taken away *the Lord Adonay*
out of the *sepulchre tomb*,
and we know not where they have *laid placed* him.
3 *Peter* therefore So **Petros** went forth,
and that other disciple,
and came to the *sepulchre tomb*.
4 So **And** they ran both together:
and the other disciple did outrun *Peter Petros*,
and came first to the *sepulchre tomb*.
5 And he stooping *down*, and looking in,
saw the linen clothes lying; yet **indeed** went he not in.
6 Then So cometh *Simon Peter Shimon Petros* following him,
and went into the *sepulchre tomb*,
and seeth the linen clothes lie,
7 And the *napkin sudarium*, that was about his head,
not lying with the linen clothes,
but wrapped together in a place *by itself apart*.
8 So Then went in also that other disciple,
which came first to the *sepulchre tomb*,
and he saw, and *believed trusted*.
9 For as yet they knew not the scripture,
that he must rise *again* from the dead.
10 Then So the disciples went away again
unto their own *home*.

THE RESURRECTED YAH SHUA APPEARS TO MIRYAM

11 But *Mary Miryam* stood without
at the *sepulchre tomb* weeping:
and as she wept,
she stooped *down*, and *looked* into the *sepulchre tomb*,
12 And seeth two angels in white sitting,
the one at the head, and the other at the feet,
where the body of *Jesus Yah Shua* had lain.
13 And they *say word* unto her,
Woman, why weepest thou?
She *saith wordeth* unto them,
Because they have taken away my *Lord Adonay*,
and I know not where they have *laid placed* him.
14 And when she had thus said,
she turned herself *back*,
and saw *Jesus Yah Shua* standing,
and knew not that it was *Jesus Yah Shua*.
15 *Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth* unto her,
Woman, why weepest thou? whom seekest thou?
She, *supposing thinking* him to be the gardener,
saith wordeth unto him,
Sir Lord Adoni, if thou have borne him hence,
tell me where thou hast *laid placed* him,
and I *will shall* take him away.
16 *Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth* unto her, *Mary Miryam*.
She turned herself, and *saith wordeth* unto him, *Rabboni*;
which is to *say word, Master Doctor*.
17 *Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth* unto her, Touch me not;
for I am not yet ascended to my Father:
but go to my brethren, and say unto them,
I ascend unto my Father, and your Father;
and to my *God Elohim*, and your *God Elohim*.
18 *Mary Miryam* the Magdalene came
and *told evangelized* the disciples
that she had seen *the Lord Adonay*,
and that he had *spoken said* these *things* unto her.

YAHN 19, 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH SHUA ENTOMBED

41 And there is a garden in the place he was staked;
and in the garden
a new tomb wherein no one had ever been placed:
42 so they place *Yah Shua* there
because of the *Yah Hudy* preparation day;
for the tomb is near at hand.

YAH SHUA DISENTOMBED

20 On the first of the shabbaths
in the early morning while it is still dark
Miryam the Magdalene goes to the tomb,
and sees the stone taken from the tomb.
2 So she runs and goes to *Shimon Petros*
and to the other disciple whom *Yah Shua* befriended
and words to them,
They took *Adonay* from the tomb,
and we know not where they placed him.
3 So *Petros* and that other disciple go
and come to the tomb
4 — and they both run together:
and the other disciple outruns *Petros*,
and comes to the tomb first:
5 and he stoops and looks
and sees the linen clothes lying;
yet indeed he goes not in.
6 So *Shimon Petros* comes following him
and enters the tomb;
7 and sees the linen clothes lying:
and the *sudarium* which was around his head
not lying with the linen clothes
but wrapped together in a place apart.
8 So then that other disciple also goes in
who had come to the tomb first:
and he sees and trusts.
9 — for as yet they know not the scripture
that he must rise from the dead.
10 — so the disciples go again to their own.

THE RESURRECTED YAH SHUA APPEARS TO MIRYAM

11 And *Miryam* stands outside the tomb weeping:
and as she weeps, she stoops into the tomb,
12 and sees two angels in white sitting;
the one at the head and the other at the feet,
where the body of *Yah Shua* had lain.
13 And they word to her, Woman, why weep you?
She words to them,
Because they took my *Adonay*
and I know not where they placed him.
14 And when she says thus,
she turns and sees *Yah Shua* standing;
and knows not it is *Yah Shua*.
15 *Yah Shua* words to her,
Woman, why weep you? Whom seek you?
She, thinking him to be the gardener, words to him,
Adoni, if you bore him hence,
tell me where you placed him, and I take him away.
16 *Yah Shua* words to her, *Miryam*.
She turns herself, and words to him, *Rabboni!*
— which is to word, *Doctor*.
17 *Yah Shua* words to her, Touch me not;
for I have not yet ascended to my Father:
but go to my brothers, and say to them,
I ascend to my Father, and your Father;
and to my *Elohim*, and your *Elohim*.
18 *Miryam* the Magdalene comes
and evangelizes the disciples that she saw *Adonay*
and that he said these to her.

JOHN 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE RESURRECTED YAH SHUA APPEARS TO TEN DISCIPLES

19 Then **So** the same day at evening,
being the first *day* of the week **shabbaths**,
when the *doors portals* were shut
where the disciples were assembled
for fear **awe** of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**,
came *Jesus* **Yah Shua** and stood in the midst,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Peace **Shalom** be unto you.

20 And when he had so said,
he shewed unto them his hands and his side.
Then were **So** the disciples *glad* **cheered**,
when they saw *the Lord* **Adonay**.

21 Then **So** said *Jesus* **Yah Shua** to them again,
Peace **Shalom** be unto you:
exactly as my Father hath *sent* **apostolized** me,
even so send I you.

THE RESURRECTED YAH SHUA BESTOWS THE HOLY SPIRIT

22 And when he had said this,
he *breathed on* **puffed into** them,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Receive **Take** ye the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**:
Whosoever sins ye *remit* **release**,
they are *remitted* **released** unto them;
and whosoever sins ye *retain* **hold**,
they are *retained* **held**.

TAOM APPEARS

24 But *Thomas* **Taom**,
one of the twelve, *called* **Didymus** **worded Twin**,
was not with them when *Jesus* **Yah Shua** came.
25 **So** The other disciples *therefore* said **worded** unto him,
We have seen *the Lord* **Adonay**.
But he said unto them,
Except **Unless** I shall see in his hands
the *print* **imprint** of the nails,
and put my finger into the *print* **imprint** of the nails,
and thrust my hand into his side,
I *will* **shall** not **believe** **trust**.

THE RESURRECTED YAH SHUA APPEARS TO ELEVEN DISCIPLES

26 And after eight days again his disciples were within,
and *Thomas* **Taom** with them:
then came *Jesus* **Yah Shua**, the *doors portals* being shut,
and stood in the midst, and said,
Peace **Shalom** be unto you.

27 Then *saith* **So** **wordeth** he to *Thomas* **Taom**,
Reach **Bear** hither thy finger,
and *behold* **see** my hands;
and *reach* **bear** hither thy hand,
and thrust it into my side:
and be not *faithless* **trustless**, but *believing* **trusting**.

THE WITNESS OF TAOM TO THE DEITY OF YAH SHUA

28 And *Thomas* **Taom** answered and said unto him,
My Lord **Adonay** and my *God* **Elohim**.
29 *Jesus* *saith* **Yah Shua** **wordeth** unto him,
Thomas **Taom**,
because thou hast seen me, thou hast *believed* **trusted**:
blessed are they that have not seen,
and yet have *believed* **trusted**.

30 And many other signs *truly* **indeed** did *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
in the *presence* **sight** of his disciples,
which are not *written* **scribed** in this *book* **scroll**:

31 But these are *written* **scribed**,
that ye might *believe* **trust**
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** is the *Christ* **Messiah**,
the Son of *God* **Elohim**;
and that *believing* **trusting**
ye might have life *through* **in** his name.

THE RESURRECTED YAH MANIFESTS HIMSELF AGAIN

21 After these *things*
Jesus shewed **Yah Shua** **manifested** himself again
to the disciples at the sea of Tiberias;
and *on this wise* shewed **thus** **manifested** he himself.
2 There were together *Simon Peter* **Shimon Petros**,
and *Thomas* *called* **Didymus** **Taom** **worded Twin**,
and *Nathanael* **Nathan El** of *Cana* **Qanah** in *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
and the sons of Zebedee, and two other of his disciples.

YAHN 20, 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE RESURRECTED YAH SHUA APPEARS TO TEN DISCIPLES

19 So the same day at evening,
being the first of the shabbaths,
the portals where the disciples assemble
being shut for awe of the Yah Hudiym,
Yah Shua comes and stands in their midst,
and words to them, Shalom to you.

20 And when he thus says,
he shows them his hands and his side;
so the disciples cheer when they see Adonay.

21 So again Yah Shua says to them, Shalom to you:
exactly as my Father apostolized me,
even thus I send you.

THE RESURRECTED YAH SHUA BESTOWS THE HOLY SPIRIT

22 And when he says this,
he puffs into them and words to them,
You, take the Holy Spirit:
23 whoever sins you release, are released to them;
and whose ever sins you hold, are held.

TAOM APPEARS

24 And Taom, one of the twelve, worded Twin,
was not with them when Yah Shua came:
25 so the other disciples word to him,
We saw Adonay.

And he says to them,
Unless I see in his hands the imprint of the nails,
and put my finger into the imprint of the nails,
and thrust my hand into his side,
I trust not.

THE RESURRECTED YAH SHUA APPEARS TO ELEVEN DISCIPLES

26 And again after eight days his disciples are inside
and Taom with them:
Yah Shua comes, the portals being shut,
and stands among them, and says,
Shalom to you.

27 Then he words to Taom,
Bear here your finger and see my hands;
and bear here your hand and thrust into my side:
and be not trustless, but trusting.

THE WITNESS OF TAOM TO THE DEITY OF YAH SHUA

28 And Taom answers him, saying,
My Adonay and my Elohim.

29 Yah Shua words to him,
Taom, because you see me, you trust:
blessed — whoever see not and still trust.

30 And indeed Yah Shua did many other signs
in the sight of his disciples,
which are not scribed in this scroll:
31 but these are scribed so that you trust
that Yah Shua is the Messiah the Son of Elohim;
and that trusting you have life in his name.

THE RESURRECTED YAH SHUA MANIFESTS HIMSELF AGAIN

21 After these
Yah Shua manifests himself again
to the disciples at the sea of Tiberias;
and he manifests himself thus:
2 Shimon Petros and Taom — worded Twin
and Nathan El of Qanah, Galiyl
and the sons of Zebedee
and two of his other disciples are together.

JOHN 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 *Simon Peter saith* **Shimon Petros** wordeth unto them,
I go a fishing.
They say **word** unto him, We also go **come** with thee.
They went forth, and **entered ascended**
into a *ship immediately sailer straightway*;
and that night they caught *nothing naught*.

CASTING THE NET

4 *But when the* **Yet early** morning
was now come **having already become**,
Jesus **Yah Shua** stood on the shore:
but the disciples knew not that it was *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.
5 *Then Jesus saith* **So Yah Shua** wordeth unto them,
Children, have ye any *meat eats*?
They answered him, No.
6 And he said unto them,
Cast the net on the right *side part* of the *ship sailer*,
and ye shall find.
So They cast *therefore*,
and now they were not able to draw it
for the multitude of fishes.
7 *Therefore* **So** that disciple whom *Jesus* **Yah Shua** loved
saith **wordeth** unto *Peter* **Petros**, It is *the Lord* **Adonay**.
Now when *Simon Peter* **Shimon Petros** heard
that it was *the Lord* **Adonay**,
he girt his fisher's *coat* **outer enduement** unto him,
(for he was naked,)
and did cast himself into the sea.
8 And the other disciples came in a *little ship skiff*;
(for they were not far from land,
but as it were two hundred cubits,)
dragging the net with fishes.
9 **So** As soon *then* as they were come to land,
they saw a fire of coals there,
and *fish broilings* laid thereon, and bread.
10 *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua** wordeth unto them,
Bring of the *fish broilings* which ye have now caught.
11 *Simon Peter went up* **Shimon Petros ascended**,
and drew the net to land full of *great mega* fishes,
an hundred and fifty and three:
and for all there were so many,
yet was not the net *broken split*.
12 *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua** wordeth unto them,
Come and dine.
And none of the disciples durst ask him, Who art thou?
knowing that it was *the Lord* **Adonay**.
13 *Jesus then* **So Yah Shua** cometh, and taketh bread,
and giveth them, and *fish broilings* likewise.
14 This is *now already* the third time
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** shewed himself to his disciples,
after that he was risen from the dead.

LOVE VS BEFRIEND

15 So when they had dined,
Jesus **Yah Shua**
saith **wordeth** to *Simon Peter* **Shimon Petros**,
Simon **Shimon**, son of *Jonas* **Yonah**,
lovest thou me **much** more than these?
He *saith* **wordeth** unto him, Yea, *Lord* **Adonay**;
thou knowest that I *love* **befriend** thee.
He *saith* **wordeth** unto him, Feed my lambs.
16 He *saith* **wordeth** to him again the second time,
Simon **Shimon**, son of *Jonas* **Yonah**, lovest thou me?
He *saith* **wordeth** unto him, Yea, *Lord* **Adonay**;
thou knowest that I *love* **befriend** thee.
He *saith* **wordeth** unto him, *Feed* **Shepherd** my sheep.
17 He *saith* **wordeth** unto him the third time,

YAHN 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 Shimon Petros words to them,
I go a fishing.

They word to him, We also go with you.
— and straightway they go and ascend into a sailer;
and that night they catch naught.

CASTING THE NET

4 Already being early morning,
Yah Shua stands on the shore:
but the disciples know not it is Yah Shua:
5 so Yah Shua words to them,
Children, have you any eats?
They answer him, No.
6 And he says to them,
Cast the net on the right part of the sailer, and find.

So they cast;
and now they are not able to draw
because of the multitude of fishes.

7 So that disciple whom Yah Shua loves
words to Petros, It is Adonay.

Now when Shimon Petros hears it is Adonay,
he girds his outer fishing enduement to him
— for he is naked
and casts himself into the sea:
8 and the other disciples come in a skiff
— for they are not far from land
but as it were two hundred cubits
dragging the net with fishes:
9 so as soon as they come to land,
they see a fire of coals
and broilings laid thereon and bread.

10 Yah Shua words to them,
Bring of the broilings you now caught.

11 Shimon Petros ascends
and draws the net full of mega fishes
— a hundred and fifty — three
to land:

and though there are so many, yet the net splits not.

12 Yah Shua words to them, Come and dine.

And none of the disciples dare ask him, Who are you?
— knowing it is Adonay.

13 So Yah Shua comes and takes bread
and gives them;
14 and likewise the broilings:
this is already the third time
Yah Shua shew himself to his disciples
after he rose from the dead.

LOVE VS BEFRIEND

15 So they dine,
and Yah Shua words to Shimon Petros,
Shimon son of Yonah,
love you me much more than these?

He words to him, Yes, Adonay;
you know I befriend you.

He words to him, Feed my lambs.

16 He words to him again the second time,
Shimon, son of Yonah love you me?

He words to him, Yes, Adonay;
you know I befriend you.

He words to him, Shepherd my sheep.

17 He words to him the third time,

JOHN 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Simon Shimon, son of *Jonas Yonah*,
lovest **befriendest** thou me?

Peter Petros was *grieved sorrowed*
because he said unto him the third time,
Lovest **Befriendest** thou me?

And he said unto him, *Lord Adonay*,
thou knowest all *things*;
thou knowest that I *love befriend* thee.

Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth unto him, Feed my sheep.

YAH SHUA PROPHECIES THE MARTYRDOM OF PETROS

18 *Verily, verily, I say Amen! Amen! I word* unto thee,
When thou wast young, thou girdedst thyself,
and walkedst whither thou *wouldst willest*:
but when **ever** thou shalt *be old senesce*,
thou shalt *stretch forth spread* thy hands,
and another shall gird thee,
and *carry bear* thee whither thou *wouldst willest* not.

19 This *spake said* he,
signifying by what death he should glorify *God Elohim*.

And when he had *spoken said* this,
he *saith wordeth* unto him, Follow me.

20 Then *Peter Petros*, turning *about around*,
seeth the disciple whom *Jesus Yah Shua* loved following;
which also leaned who had reposed
on his *breast chest* at supper, and said,
Lord Adonay, which is he that betrayeth thee?

Yahn 13:21—25

21 *Peter Petros* seeing him
saith wordeth to *Jesus Yah Shua*,
Lord Adonay, and what *shall this man do about this one*?

22 *Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth* unto him,
If Whenever I will that he *tarry abide* till I come,
what is that to thee?
follow thou me.

23 Then **So** went this *saying abroad word*
among unto the brethren,
that that disciple should not die:
yet *Jesus Yah Shua* said not unto him,
He shall not die;
but, *If whenever* I will that he *tarry abide* till I come,
what is that to thee?

CONCLUSION

24 This is the disciple
which *testifieth of witnesseth about* these *things*,
and wrote these *things*:

25 and we know that his *testimony witness* is true.
And there are also many *other things others*
which Jesus — as much as Yah Shua did,
the which,
if whenever they should be *written scribed* every one,
I suppose that even the *world cosmos* itself
could not contain the *books scrolls*
that should be *written scribed*
Amen.

YAHN 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Shimon, son of Yonah, befriend you me?

Petros sorrows
because he said to him the third time,
Befriend you me?

And he says to him, Adonay, you know all:
you know I befriend you.

Yah Shua words to him, Feed my sheep.

YAH SHUA PROPHECIES THE MARTYRDOM OF PETROS

18 Amen! Amen! I word to you,
When you were young, you girded yourself
and walked where you willed:
but whenever you senesce
you spread your hands;
and another girds you,
and bears you where you will not.

19 He says this
to signify by what death he is to glorify Elohim:
and when he says this, he words to him, Follow me.

20 Petros, turning around
sees the disciple Yah Shua loves following
— who had reposed on his chest at supper
and said, Adonay, who is he that betrays you?

Yahn 13:21—25

21 Seeing him, Petros words to Yah Shua,
Adonay, and what about this one?

22 Yah Shua words to him,
Whenever I will him to abide until I come,
what is that to you?
You, follow me.

23 So this word goes to the brothers,
that that disciple dies not:
yet Yah Shua said not to him, He dies not;
but, whenever I will him to abide until I come,
what is that to you?

CONCLUSION

24 This is the disciple
who witnesses concerning these and writes these:
and we know his witness is true.
25 And there are also many others
— as much as Yah Shua did
which, whenever they be scribed one by one,
I suppose that not even the cosmos itself
has space for the scrolls scribed.
Amen.

MATTHEW 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE GENESIS OF YAH SHUA

- 1 The book scroll of the generation genesis
of Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah**,
the son of David, the son of Abraham.
- 2 Abraham **begat birthed Isaac Yischaq**;
and Isaac **Yischaq begat birthed Jacob Yaaqov**;
and Jacob **Yaaqov begat birthed Judas Yah Hudah** and his brethren;
- 3 And Judas **Yah Hudah begat birthed Phares Peres** and Zara **Zerach**
of Thamar **Tamar**;
and Phares **Peres begat birthed Esrom Hesron**;
and Esrom **Hesron begat birthed Aram Ram**;
- 4 And Aram **Ram begat birthed Aminadab Ammi Nadab**;
and Aminadab **Ammi Nadab begat birthed Naasson Nachshon**;
and Naasson **Nachshon begat birthed Salmon**;
And Salmon **begat birthed Booz Boaz** of Rachab;
and Booz **Boaz begat birthed Obed** of Ruth;
and Obed **begat birthed Jesse Yishay**;
- 6 And Jesse **Yishay begat birthed David** the king sovereign;
and David the king sovereign
begat birthed Solomon Shelomoh
of her that had been the wife of Urias of Uri Yah's;
- 7 And Solomon **Shelomoh begat birthed Roboam Rechab Am**;
and Roboam **Rechab Am begat birthed Abia Abi Yah**;
and Abia **Abi Yah begat birthed Asa**;
- 8 And Asa **begat birthed Josaphat Yah Shaphat**;
and Josaphat **Yah Shaphat begat birthed Joram Yoram**;
and Joram **Yoram begat birthed Ozias Uzzi Yah**;
- 9 And Ozias **Uzzi Yah begat birthed Joatham Yah Tham**;
and Joatham **Yah Tham begat birthed Achaz**;
and Achaz **begat birthed Ezekias Yechizq Yah**;
- 10 And Ezekias **Yechizq Yah begat birthed Manasses Menash sheh**;
and Manasses **Menash Sheh begat birthed Amon**;
and Amon **begat birthed Josias Yoshi Yah**;
- 11 And Josias **Yoshi Yah begat birthed Jechonias Yechon Yah** and his brethren,
about the time they were carried away exiled to **Babylon Babel**;
- 12 And after they were brought exiled to **Babylon Babel**,
Jechonias **Yechon Yah begat birthed Salathiel Shealti El**;
and Salathiel **Shealti El begat birthed Zerobabel Zerub Babel**;
- 13 And Zerobabel **Zerub Babel begat birthed Abiud Abi Hud**;
and Abiud **Abi Hud begat birthed Eliakim El Yaqim**;
and Eliakim **El Yaqim begat birthed Azor Azzur**;
- 14 And Azor **Azzur begat birthed Sadoq Sadoq**;
and Sadoq **Sadoq begat birthed Achim Yah Qim**;
and Achim **Yah Qim begat birthed Eliud Eli Ud**;
- 15 And Eliud **Eli Ud begat birthed Eleazar El Azar**;
and Eleazar **El Azar begat birthed Matthan Mattan**;
and Matthan **Mattan begat birthed Jacob Yaaqov**;
- 16 And Jacob **Yaaqov begat birthed Joseph Yoseph**
the husband man of Mary **Miryam**,
of whom was born **birthed Jesus Yah Shua**,
who is called **Christ worded Messiah**.
- 17 So all the generations from Abraham to David
are fourteen generations;
and from David
until the carrying away exile into **Babylon Babel**
are fourteen generations;
and from the carrying away exile into **Babylon Babel**
unto **Christ the Messiah**
are fourteen generations.
- 18 Now the birth of **Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah**
was on this wise thus:
When as **indeed** his mother **Mary Miryam**
was espoused to **Joseph Yoseph**,
before they came together,
she was found with **child having in womb**
of the Holy **Ghost Spirit**.
- 19 Then **Joseph So Yoseph** her husband man,
being a just man,
and not willing to **having willed to not**
make her a publick example **expose her**,

MATTHAIOS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE GENESIS OF YAH SHUA

- 1 The scroll of the genesis of Yah Shua Messiah,
the son of David, the son of Abraham.
- 2 **FOURTEEN GENERATIONS: ABRAHAM TO DAVID**
Abraham births Yischaq,
and Yischaq births Yaaqov,
and Yaaqov births Yah Hudah and his brothers,
and Yah Hudah births Peres and Zerach of Tamar,
and Peres births Hesron,
and Hesron births Ram,
and Ram births Ammi Nadab,
and Ammi Nadab births Nachshon,
and Nachshon births Salmon,
and Salmon births Boaz of Rachab,
and Boaz births Obed of Ruth,
and Obed births Yishay,
and Yishay births David the sovereign,
- 3 **FOURTEEN GENERATIONS: TO THE BABEL EXILE**
and David the sovereign births Shelomoh
of the woman of Uri Yah,
and Shelomoh births Rechab Am,
and Rechab Am births Abi Yah,
and Abi Yah births Asa,
and Asa births Yah Shaphat,
and Yah Shaphat births Yoram,
and Yoram births Uzzi Yah,
and Uzzi Yah births Yah Tham,
and Yah Tham births Achaz,
and Achaz births Yechizq Yah,
and Yechizq Yah births Menash Sheh,
and Menash Sheh births Amon,
and Amon births Yoshi Yah,
and Yoshi Yah births Yechon Yah and his brothers
about the time they are exiled to Babel,
- 4 **FOURTEEN GENERATIONS: TO THE MESSIAH**
and after the exile to Babel
Yechon Yah births Shealti El,
and Shealti El births Zerub Babel,
and Zerub Babel births Abi Hud,
and Abi Hud births El Yaqim,
and El Yaqim births Azzur,
and Azzur births Sadoq,
and Sadoq births Yah Qim,
and Yah Qim births Eli Ud,
and Eli Ud births El Azar,
and El Azar births Mattan,
and Mattan births Yaaqov,
and Yaaqov births Yoseph the man of Miryam
of whom is birthed Yah Shua,
who is worded Messiah.
- 5 **FORTY—TWO GENERATIONS: SUMMARY**
So all the generations from Abraham to David
are fourteen generations;
and from David until the exile into Babel
are fourteen generations;
and from the exile into Babel to the Messiah
are fourteen generations.
- 6 **YAH SHUA MESSIAH BIRTHED BY THE HOLY SPIRIT**
Now the birth of Yah Shua Messiah is thus:
When indeed his mother Miryam espouses to Yoseph
— ere they come together,
she finds having in womb of the Holy Spirit.
So Yoseph her man, being just,
wills to not expose her,

MATTHEW 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

was minded **had willed** to put release her away
privily **secretly**.

20 But while he *thought* **pondered** on these things,
behold, the angel of the Lord **Yah Veh**
appeared **manifested** unto him in a dream,
saying **wording**, *Joseph Yoseph*, thou son of David,
fear **awe** not to take unto thee
Mary Miryam thy wife **woman**:
for that which is *conceived* **birthed** in her
is of the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.

21 And she shall *bring forth* **birth** a son,
and thou shalt call his name *Jesus* **Yah Shua**:
for he shall save his people from their sins.

YAH SHUA MESSIAH VIRGIN BIRTHED

22 Now all this was *done* **became**,
that it might be fulfilled/shalamed
which was *spoken of the Lord* **retorized by Yah Veh**
by **through** the prophet, *saying* **wording**,

23 Behold, a virgin shall *be with child* **have in womb**,
and shall *bring forth* **birth** a son,
and they shall call his name *Emmanuel* **Immanu El**,
which *being interpreted is* **translates**,
God **Elohim** with us.

Yesha Yah 7:14

24 *Then Joseph being raised* **And Yoseph**, rousing from sleep
did as the angel of the Lord **Yah Veh**
had *bidden* **ordered** him,
and took unto him his wife **woman**:
And knew her not

25 till she had *brought forth* **birthed** her *firstborn* **firstbirthed** son:
and he called his name *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.

THE VISIT OF THE MAGI

2 Now when *Jesus Yah Shua* was *born* **birthed**
in *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem** of *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**
in the days of Herod the *king* **sovereign**,
behold, there came *wise men* **magi**
from the *east* **rising** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,

2 *Saying* **Wording**,
Where is he
that is *born* **birthed** *king* **sovereign** of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**?
for we have seen his star in the *east* **rising**,
and are come to worship him.

3 When Herod the *king* **sovereign** had heard these things,
he was troubled and all *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** with him.

4 And when he had gathered all the *chief* **arch** priests
and scribes of the people together,
he *demande* **inquired** of them
where *Christ* **the Messiah** should be *born* **birthed**.

5 And they said unto him,
In *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem** of *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**:
for thus it is *written by* **scribed through** the prophet,
And thou *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**,

6 in the land of *Juda* **Yah Hudah**,
art not the least
among the *princes* **governors** of *Juda* **Yah Hudah**:
for out of thee shall come a Governor,
that shall *rule* **shepherd** my people *Israel* **Yisra El**.

Michah 5:2

7 Then Herod,
when he had *privily* **secretly** called the *wise men* **magi**,
enquired of them *diligently* **precisely**
what time the star *appeared* **manifested**.

8 And he sent them to *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**, and said,
Go and *search* **diligently** **investigate** **precisely**
for the young child;
and when ye have found him,
bring me word **again** **evangelize me**,
that I may come and worship him also.

9 When they had heard the *king* **sovereign**, they departed;
and, *lo* **behold**, the star,
which they saw in the *east* **rising**, went before them,
till it came and stood over where the young child was.

10 When they saw the star, they *rejoiced* **cheered**
with *exceeding great joy* **an extremely mega cheer**.

11 And when they were come into the house,
they saw the young child with *Mary* **Miryam** his mother,
and fell *down*, and worshipped him:
and when they had opened their treasures,
they *presented* **offered** unto him *gifts* **oblations**;

MATTHAIOS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

but wills to release her secretly.

20 And pondering these, behold,
the angel of Yah Veh manifests to him in a dream,
wording, Yoseph, you son of David,
awe not to take Miryam your woman to yourself:
for that birthing in her is of the Holy Spirit.

21 And she is to birth a son;
and you, call his name Yah Shua:
for he saves his people from their sins.

YAH SHUA MESSIAH VIRGIN BIRTHED

22 Now all this became,
to fulfill/shalam that rhetorized by Yah Veh
through the prophet, *wording*,
Behold, a virgin has in womb and births a son;
and they call his name Immanu El,
which translates, Elohim with us.

Yesha Yah 7:14

24 And Yoseph, rousing from sleep
does as the angel of Yah Veh orders him,
and takes his woman to him:
and knows her not
until she births her firstbirthed son:
and he calls his name Yah Shua.

THE VISIT OF THE MAGI

2 And Yah Shua is birthed
in Beth Lechem, Yah Hudah
in the days of Herod the sovereign.
Behold, magi come from the rising to Yeru Shalem,
wording, Where is he
who is birthed sovereign of the Yah Hudiym?
For we saw his star in the rising
and come to worship him.

3 When Herod the sovereign hears these,
he is troubled — and all Yeru Shalem with him:
and he gathers all the archpriests
and scribes of the people together;
and inquires of them where the Messiah is birthed.

5 And they say to him,
In Beth Lechem, Yah Hudah:
for thus it is scribed through the prophet,
And you Beth Lechem, in the land of Yah Hudah,
are not the least among the governors of Yah Hudah:
for from you comes a Governor,
to shepherd my people Yisra El.

Michah 5:2

7 Then Herod secretly calls the magi
and enquires of them
precisely the time the star manifested.

8 And he sends them to Beth Lechem, and says,
Go and investigate precisely for the young child;
and when you find him, evangelize me;
and I also come and worship him.

9 And they hear the sovereign, and depart;
and behold,
the star they see in the rising, precedes them,
until it goes and stands over the young child:
and they see the star
and cheer an extremely mega cheer.

10 And they enter the house,
and see the young child with Miryam his mother,
and fall and worship him:
and they open their treasures and offer him oblations

MATTHEW 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 gold, and frankincense, and myrrh.
And being *warned of God* **oracled** in a dream
that they should not return to Herod,
they departed into their own *country* **region**
through another way.

YOSEPH, MIRYAM, AND YAH SHUA FLEE TO MISRAYIM

13 And when they were departed, behold,
the angel of the *Lord* **appeareth** **Yah Veh manifesteth**
to *Joseph* **Yoseph** in a dream, *saying* **wording**,
Arise, and take the young child and his mother,
and flee into *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and be thou there until I *bring say* to thee *word*:
for Herod *will shall* seek the young child to destroy him.

14 When he arose,
he took the young child and his mother by night,
and departed into *Egypt* **Misrayim**:

15 And was there until the death of Herod:
that it might be fulfilled/**shalamed**
which was *spoken* **rhetorized**
of the *Lord* by **Yah Veh through** the prophet,
saying **wording**,
Out of *Egypt* **Misrayim** have I called my son.

Hoshea 11:1

16 Then Herod,
when he saw that he was mocked of the *wise men* **magi**,
was *exceeding* **wroth extremely furious**,
and *sent forth* **apostolized**,
and *slew* **took out** all the *children* **lads**
that were in *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**,
and in all the *coasts* **boundaries thereof**,
from two years *old* and under,
according to the time
which he had *diligently* **precisely** enquired
of the *wise men* **magi**.

17 Then was fulfilled/**shalamed** that which was
spoken **rhetorized** by *Jeremy* **Yirme Yah** the prophet,
saying **wording**,

18 In *Rama* **Ramah** was there a voice heard,
lamentation, and weeping,
and *great mourning* **much grieving**,
Rachel weeping for her children,
and *would* **willed to** not be comforted, because they are not.

Yirme Yah 31:5

YOSEPH, MIRYAM, AND YAH SHUA GO TO NAZARETH

19 But when Herod was dead,
behold, an angel of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**
appeareth **manifesteth** in a dream
to *Joseph* **Yoseph** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
Saying **Wording**, Arise,
and take the young child and his mother,
and go into the land of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
for they are *dead* **have died**
which sought the young child's *life* **soul**.

21 And he arose, and took the young child and his mother,
and came into the land of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
22 But when he heard
that Archelaus did reign in *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**
in the room of **for** his father Herod,
he was *afraid* **awestricken** to go thither:
notwithstanding, being *warned of God* **oracled** in a dream,
he *turned aside* **departed** into the parts of *Galilee* **Galiyl**:

23 And he came and *dwelt* **settled**
in a city *called* **worded** Nazareth:
that it might be fulfilled/**shalamed**
which was *spoken* by **rhetorized through** the prophets,
He shall be called a Nazarene.

cp Yesha Yah 11:1

YAHN THE BAPTIZER PREACHES REPENTANCE

3 In those days came *John* **Yahn** the *Baptist* **Baptizer**,
preaching in the wilderness of *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**,
2 And *saying* **wording**, Repent ye:
for the *kingdom* **sovereigndom of heaven** **the heavens**
is at hand **approacheth**.

3 For this is he that was *spoken* **rhetorized**
of by the prophet *Esaias* **Yesha Yah**, *saying* **wording**,
The voice of one crying in the wilderness,
Prepare ye the way of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**,
make his paths straight.

Yesha Yah 40:3

MATTHAIOS 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— gold and frankincense and myrrh.
12 And in a dream
being oracled to not return to Herod
they depart to their own region
through another way.

YOSEPH, MIRYAM, AND YAH SHUA FLEE TO MISRAYIM

13 And they depart, and behold,
the angel of Yah Veh manifests to Yoseph in a dream,
wording, Rise;
take the young child and his mother
and flee to Misrayim,
and be there until I say to you:
for Herod seeks to destroy the young child.

14 And he rises,
and takes the young child and his mother by night,
and departs to Misrayim;

15 and is there until the death of Herod:
to fulfill/**shalam**
that rhetorized by Yah Veh through the prophet,
wording, From Misrayim I call my son.

Hoshea 11:1

16 Then Herod, seeing he is mocked by the magi,
is extremely furious;
and apostolizes and takes out all the lads
in Beth Lechem and in all the boundaries
from two years and under
— according to the time
he precisely enquired of the magi.

17 — Then he fulfills/**shalams**
what Yirme Yah the prophet rhetorized, wording,

18 In Ramah a voice is heard:
lamentation and weeping and much grieving;
Rachel weeping for her children;
and wills to not be comforted because they are not.

Yirme Yah 31:5

YOSEPH, MIRYAM, AND YAH SHUA GO TO NAZARETH

19 And Herod dies; and behold,
an angel of Yah Veh manifests in a dream
to Yoseph in Misrayim,
wording, Rise,
Take the young child and his mother
and go to the land of Yisra El:
for whoever sought the soul of the young child have died.

21 And he rises,
and takes the young child and his mother
and goes to the land of Yisra El:
22 and he hears that Archelaus reigns in Yah Hudah
in the stead of his father Herod;
and he is awestricken to go there:
but being oracled in a dream,
he departs to the parts of Galiyl:
23 and he goes and settles in a city worded Nazareth:
to fulfill/**shalam** that rhetorized through the prophets,
He is called a Nazarene.

cp Yesha Yah 11:1

YAHN THE BAPTIZER PREACHES REPENTANCE

3 In those days, Yahn the Baptizer
comes preaching in the wilderness of Yah Hudah,
and wording, Repent!
2 For the sovereigndom of the the heavens approaches.
3 — for this is he
who is rhetorized by the prophet Yesha Yah,
wording, The voice of one crying in the wilderness,
Prepare the way of Yah Veh
make his paths straight.

Yesha Yah 40:3

MATTHEW 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 And the same *John Yahn*
had his *raiment* **endowment** of camel's hair,
and a leathern girdle about his loins;
and his *meat* **nourishment** was locusts and wild honey.
5 Then *went out* **proceeded** to him
Jerusalem Yeru Shalem, and all *Judaea Yah Hudah*,
and all the region round about *Jordan Yarden*,
6 And were baptized of him in *Jordan Yarden*,
confessing their sins.
YAHN THE BAPTIZER DERIDES THE PHARISEES AND SADOQIYM
7 But when he saw
many of the Pharisees and *Sadducees Sadoqiym*
come to his baptism,
he said unto them, O *generation progeny* of vipers,
who hath *warned* **exemplified** you
to flee from the wrath *to come about to be?*
8 *Bring forth* **So produce** *therefore*
fruits *meet* **worthy** for repentance:
9 And think not to say **word** within yourselves,
We have Abraham to our father:
for I say **word** unto you,
that *God Elohim* is able of these stones
to raise *up* children unto Abraham.
10 And *now* **already** also
the axe is laid unto the root of the trees:
therefore so every tree
which *bringeth* **produceth** not *forth* good fruit
is *hewn down* **excinded**, and cast into the fire.
11 I indeed baptize you *with in* water unto repentance:
but he that cometh after me is mightier than I,
whose shoes I am not *worthy* **adequate** to bear:
he shall baptize you
with in the Holy *Ghost Spirit*, and *with* fire:
12 Whose **winnowing** fan is in his hand,
and he *will shall* thoroughly purge his **threshing** floor,
and gather **together** his **wheat grain**
into the *garner granary*;
but he *will shall* burn *up* the chaff
with unquenchable fire.
YAHN THE BAPTIZER BAPTIZES YAH SHUA
13 Then cometh *Jesus Yah Shua*
from *Galilee Galiyl* to *Jordan Yarden* unto *John Yahn*,
to be baptized of him.
14 But *John Yahn* forbad him, *saying* **wording**,
I have need to be baptized of thee,
and comest thou to me?
15 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answering said unto him,
Suffer **Allow** it to be so now:
for thus it *becometh* **befitteth** us
to fulfill/**shalam** all *righteousness* **justness**.
Then he *suffered* **allowed** him.
16 And *Jesus Yah Shua*, when he was baptized,
went up **ascended** straightway out of the water:
and, *lo behold*, the heavens were opened unto him,
and he saw the Spirit of *God Elohim*
descending *like as* a dove,
and lighting upon him:
17 And *lo behold*, a voice from *heaven the heavens*,
saying **wording**, This is my beloved Son,
in of whom I am *well pleased* **well—approve**.
YAH SHUA TESTED BY DIABOLOS
4 Then was *Jesus led up* **Yah Shua brought** of the spirit
into the wilderness
to be *tempted* **tested** of the devil **Diabolos**.
2 And when he had fasted forty days and forty nights,
he was afterward an hungred.
3 And when the *tempter tester* came to him, he said,
If thou be the Son of *God Elohim*,
command **say** that these stones *be made* **become** bread.
4 But he answered and said, It is *written* **scribed**,
man Humanity shall not live by bread alone,
but by every *word* **rhema**
that proceedeth *out of* **through** the mouth of *God Yah Veh*.
Deuteronomy 8:3
5 Then *the devil Diabolos*
taketh him *up* into the holy city,
and setteth him
on a *pinnacle* **wing** of the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
6 And *saith* **wordeth** unto him,

MATTHAIOS 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 And this Yahn has his enduement of camel hair
and a leather girdle around his loins;
and his nourishment is locusts and wild honey:
5 Then Yeru Shalem and all Yah Hudah
and all the region all around Yarden proceed to him;
6 and confessing their sins,
he baptizes them in Yarden.
YAHN THE BAPTIZER DERIDES THE PHARISEES AND SADOQIYM
7 But he sees many of the Pharisees and Sadoqiym
come to his baptism:
and he says to them, O progeny of vipers,
who exemplifies you to flee from the wrath about to be?
8 So produce fruits worthy of repentance:
9 and think not to word within yourselves,
We have Abraham to our father:
for I word to you,
that Elohim is able to raise children to Abraham
from these stones:
10 and also
the axe is already laid to the root of the trees:
so every tree not producing good fruit
is excinded and cast into the fire.
11 I indeed baptize you in water to repentance:
but he coming after me is mightier than I,
whose shoes I am not adequate to bear:
he baptizes you in the Holy Spirit and fire:
12 whose winnowing fan is in his hand;
and he thoroughly purges his threshing floor,
and gathers his grain into the granary;
but he burns the chaff with unquenchable fire.
YAHN THE BAPTIZER BAPTIZES YAH SHUA
13 Then Yah Shua comes from Galiyl to Yarden
— to Yahn — to be baptized by him.
14 But Yahn forbids him, wording,
I need to be baptized by you
— and you come to me?
15 And Yah Shua answers him, saying,
Allow it for now:
for thus it befits us to fulfill/**shalam** all justness.
Then he allows him
and baptizes Yah Shua:
and he ascends straightway from the water:
and behold, the the heavens open to him,
and he sees the Spirit of Elohim descending,
as a dove, and lighting upon him:
17 and behold, a voice from the the heavens,
wording, This is my beloved Son,
of whom I well—approve.
YAH SHUA TESTED BY DIABOLOS
4 Then the spirit brings Yah Shua to the wilderness
to be tested by Diabolos:
2 and he fasts forty days and forty nights
and afterward famishes.
3 And the tester comes to him, and says,
If you are the Son of Elohim,
say that these stones become bread.
4 But he answers, saying, It is scribed,
Humanity lives, not by bread alone,
but by every rhema
proceeding through the mouth of Yah Veh.
Deuteronomy 8:3
5 Then Diabolos takes him to the holy city
and sets him on a wing of the priestal precinct;
6 and words to him,

MATTHEW 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

If thou be the Son of God **Elohim**, cast thyself down:
for it is *written* **scribed**,

He shall *give* **misvah** his angels *charge* concerning thee:
and in their hands they shall bear thee *up*,
lest at *any time* **ever** thou dash thy foot against a stone.

Psalm 91:11, 12

7

Jesus **Yah Shua** said unto him,
It is *written* **scribed** again,

Thou shalt not *tempt* **test** the Lord **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**.

Deuteronomy 6:16

8

Again, *the devil* **Diabolos** taketh him *up*
into an exceeding **extremely** high mountain,
and sheweth him

all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the world **cosmos**,
and the glory of them;

9

And *saith* **wordeth** unto him,
All these *things will* **shall** I give thee,
if whenever thou *wilt* **shalt** fall down and worship me.

10

Then *saith* **Jesus** **wordeth** **Yah Shua** unto him,
Get thee hence **Go**, Satan: for it is *written* **scribed**,
Thou shalt worship *the Lord* **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**,
and him only shalt thou *serve* **liturgize**.

Deuteronomy 6:13, 10:20

11

Then *the devil* **leaveth** **Diabolos** **forsaketh** him,
and, behold, angels came and ministered unto him.

12

Now when **Jesus** **Yah Shua** had heard
that **John** **Yahn** was *cast into prison* **betrayed**,

13

he departed into *Galilee* **Galiyl**;
And leaving Nazareth, he came
and *dwelt* **settled** in *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**,
which is *upon* **at** the sea coast **seaside**,
in the *borders* **boundaries**
of *Zabulon* **Zebulun** and *Nephtalim* **Naphtali**:

14

That it might be fulfilled/**shalamed**
which was *spoken* **rhetorized**
by Essias **through** **Yesha Yah** the prophet, *saying* **wording**,

15

The land of *Zabulon* **Zebulun**,
and the land of *Nephtalim* **Naphtali**,
by the way of the sea, beyond *Jordan* **Yarden**,
Galilee **Galiyl** of the *Gentiles* **goyim**;

16

The people which sat in darkness
saw *great* **a mega** light;
and to them which sat in the region and shadow of death
light is *sprung up* **risen**.

Yesha Yah 9:1, 2

YAH SHUA PREACHES, REPENT!

17

From that time **Jesus** **Yah Shua** began to preach,
and to *say* **word**, Repent:
for the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**
is at hand **approacheth**.

18

And **Jesus** **Yah Shua**, walking by the sea of *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
saw two brethren,
Simon **called** **Peter** **Shimon** **worded** **Petros**,
and *Andrew* **Andreas** his brother,
casting a net into the sea: for they were fishers.

19

And he *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Follow **Come** **after** me,

20

and I *will* **shall** make you fishers of *men* **humanity**.
And they straightway *left* **forsook** their nets,
and followed him.

21

And *going on* **advancing** from thence,
he saw other two brethren,
James **Yaaqovos** *the son of* **Zebedee** **Zabdi**,
and *John* **Yahn** his brother,
in a *ship* **sailer** with *Zebedee* **Zabdi** their father,
mending **preparing** their nets; and he called them.

22

And they *immediately* **straightway**
left **forsook** the *ship* **sailer** and their father,
and followed him.

23

And **Jesus** **Yah Shua** went about all *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
teaching **doctrinating** in their synagogues,
and *preaching*
the *gospel* **evangelism** of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
and *healing* **all manner of sickness** **curing** **every disease**
and *all manner of disease* **every debility**
among the people.

MATTHAIOS 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

If you are the SON of Elohim, cast yourself down:
for it is scribed,

He misvahs his angels concerning you:
and in their hands they bear you;
lest ever you dash your foot against a stone.

Psalm 91:11, 12

7

Yah Shua says to him, It is scribed again,
Test not **Yah Veh** your Elohim.

Deuteronomy 6:16

8

Again,
Diabolos takes him to an extremely high mountain
and shows him all the sovereigndoms of the cosmos
and their glory;
and words to him,
All these I give you,
whenever you fall and worship me.

9

10

Then **Yah Shua** words to him,
Go, Satan: for it is scribed,
Worship **Yah Veh** your Elohim,
and liturgize him only.

Deuteronomy 6:13, 10:20

11

Then **Diabolos** forsakes him:
and behold, angels come and minister to him.

12

13

And **Yah Shua** hears that **Yahn** is betrayed;
and he departs to *Galilee*;
and leaving Nazareth
he goes and settles in *Kaphar Nachum*
at the seaside

14

15

16

in the boundaries of *Zebulun* and *Naphtali*:
to fulfill/**shalam** that rhetorized
through *Yesha Yah* the prophet, *saying*,
The land of *Zebulun* and the land of *Naphtali*
by the way of the sea, beyond *Yarden*,
Galiyl of the *goyim*:
the people sitting in darkness
see a mega light;
and to them sitting in the region and shadow of death
light rises.

Yesha Yah 9:1, 2

YAH SHUA PREACHES, REPENT!

17

From that time **Yah Shua** begins to preach and to word,
Repent!
For the sovereigndom of the the heavens approaches.

18

And walking by the sea of *Galiyl*,
Yah Shua sees two brothers,
Shimon **worded** **Petros** and **Andreas** his brother
casting a net into the sea: for they are fishers:
and he words to them, **Come** **after** me;

19

20

— and straightway
they forsake their nets and follow him.

21

And advancing from there
he sees two other brothers
— **Yaaqovos** of **Zabdi** and his brother **Yahn**
preparing their nets in a sailer with **Zabdi** their father:
and he calls them.

22

— and straightway
they forsake the sailer and their father
and follow him.

23

And **Yah Shua** goes all around *Galiyl*
— **doctrinating** in their synagogues,
and **preaching** the **evangelism** of the **sovereigndom**
and **curing** every disease and every debility
among the people:

MATTHEW 4, 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

24 And his fame went *throughout* into all Syria:
and they *brought offered* unto him
all *sick people that were ill*
that were *taken held* with divers diseases and torments,
and those which were *possessed with devils demonized*,
and those which were *lunatick*,
and those that *had the palsy were paralytic*;
and he *healed cured* them.
25 And there followed him
great vast multitudes of people from *Galilee Galiyl*,
and from Decapolis, and from *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and from *Judaea Yah Hudah*,
and from beyond *Jordan Yarden*.

THE MOUNTAIN MESSAGE OF YAH SHUA: THE BEATITUDES

5 And seeing the multitudes,
he *went up ascended* into a mountain:
and when he was set, his disciples came unto him:
2 And he opened his mouth,
and *taught doctored* them, *saying wording*,
3 Blessed are the poor in spirit:
for theirs is the *kingdom sovereignty of heaven the heavens*.
4 Blessed are they that mourn:
for they shall be comforted.
5 Blessed are the meek:
for they shall inherit the earth.
6 Blessed are they
which do hunger and thirst after *righteousness justness*:
for they shall be filled.
7 Blessed are the merciful:
for they shall obtain mercy.
8 Blessed are the pure in heart:
for they shall see *God Elohim*.
9 Blessed are the *peacemakers they who shalam*:
for they shall be called the *children sons of God Elohim*.
10 Blessed are they
which are persecuted for *righteousness' justness'* sake:
for theirs
is the *kingdom sovereignty of heaven the heavens*.
11 Blessed are ye,
When *ever* men shall *revile reproach* you,
and persecute you,
and shall say *all manner of every evil rhema*
against you falsely, for my sake.
12 *Rejoice Cheer*, and *be exceeding glad jump for joy*:
for *great vast* is your reward in *heaven the heavens*:
for so *thus* persecuted they the prophets
which were before you.

THE POSITION OF THE TRUSTER

13 Ye are the salt of the earth:
but *if whenever*
the salt have *lost his savour become insipid*,
wherewith wherein shall it be salted?
it is thenceforth *good not able for nothing naught*,
but to be cast out,
and to be *trodden under foot trampled of men humanity*.
14 Ye are the light of the *world cosmos*.
A city that is set on *an hill a mountain*
cannot be *hid secreted*.
15 Neither do men *light burn* a candle,
and put it under a *bushel measure*,
but *rather* on a *candlestick menorah*;
and it *giveth light radiateth* unto all that are in the house.
16 Let your light *so shine thus radiate*
before men in front of humanity,
that they may see your good works,
and glorify your Father which is in *heaven the heavens*.

YAH SHUA FULFILLS THE TORAH

17 *Think Presume* not that I am come
to *destroy disintegrate* the *law torah*, or the prophets:
I am not come to *destroy disintegrate*,
but *rather* to fulfill/*shalam*.
18 For *verily I say Amen! I word* unto you,
Till heaven and earth pass,
one *jot iota* or one tittle
shall *in no wise never no way* pass from the *law torah*,
till all be fulfilled/*shalamed becometh*.
19 *So* Whosoever *therefore* shall *break release*
one of these least *commandments misvoth*,

MATTHAIOS 4, 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

24 and his fame goes to all Syria:
and they offer him all who are ill
— who are held with divers diseases and torments
— demonized, lunatic, paralytic;
and he cures them.
25 And vast multitudes of people from Galiyl,
and from Decapolis, and from Yeru Shalem,
and from Yah Hudah, and from beyond Yarden
follow him.

THE MOUNTAIN MESSAGE OF YAH SHUA: THE BEATITUDES

5 And seeing the multitudes,
he ascends a mountain and sits:
his disciples come to him:
2 and he opens his mouth and doctored them,
wording,
3 Blessed — the poor in spirit:
for theirs is the sovereignty of the the heavens.
4 Blessed — they who mourn:
for they are comforted.
5 Blessed — the meek:
for they inherit the earth.
6 Blessed — they who famish and thirst after justness:
for they are filled.
7 Blessed — the merciful:
for they obtain mercy.
8 Blessed — the pure in heart:
for they see Elohim.
9 Blessed — they who shalam:
for they are called the sons of Elohim.
10 Blessed — those persecuted for sake of justness:
for theirs is the sovereignty of the the heavens.
11 Blessed — you,
whenever men reproach you and persecute you,
and say every evil rhema against you falsely
for my sake.
12 *Cheer, and jump for joy!*
For vast is your reward in the the heavens:
for thus they persecuted the prophets preceding you.

THE POSITION OF THE TRUSTER

13 You are the salt of the earth:
but whenever the salt becomes insipid,
with what salt we?
It is able for naught but to cast out,
and for humanity to trample.
14 You are the light of the cosmos.
Neither can a city set on a mountain be secreted;
nor men burn a candle and put it under a measure;
but rather on a menorah;
and it radiates to all in the house.
16 Thus radiate your light in front of humanity;
so they see your good works
and glorify your Father in the heavens.

YAH SHUA FULFILLS THE TORAH

17 Presume not
that I come to disintegrate the torah or the prophets:
I come not to disintegrate; rather to fulfill/*shalam*.
18 For Amen! I word to you,
Until the heavens and earth pass,
not one iota or one tittle
never no way passes from the torah
until all becomes.
19 So whoever releases one of these least misvoth,

MATTHEW 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and shall *teach men so* **doctrinate humanity thus,**
he shall be called the least
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens:**
but whosoever shall do and *teach* **doctrinate** them,
the same shall be called *great* **mega**
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens.**
20 For I say **word** unto you,
That *except* **unless ever** your *righteousness* **justness**
shall *exceed the righteousness* **superabound much more**
of than the scribes and Pharisees,
ye shall *in no case* **no way** enter
into the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens.**
**THE VALUE SYSTEM OF YAH SHUA:
MURDER, RAGE, SLANDER**
21 Ye have heard that it was *said* **rhetorized**
of them of old time **to the ancients,**
Thou shalt not *kill* **murder;**
and whosoever shall *kill* **murder**
shall be *in danger of* **subject to** the judgment:
22 But I say **word** unto you,
That *whosoever* **everyone**
who is angry **wroth** with his brother
without a cause **in vain**
shall be *in danger of* **subject to** the judgment:
and whosoever shall say to his brother, *Raca* **Req,**
shall be *in danger of* **subject to** the *council* **sanhedrim:**
but whosoever shall say, *Thou fool,*
shall be *in danger of* **subject to**
hell **Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning** fire. **FORGIVING**
23 *Therefore if* **So whenever** thou *bring* **offer** thy *gift* **oblation**
to at the **sacrifice** altar,
and there rememberest
that thy brother hath *ought* **somewhat** against thee;
24 *Leave* **Release** there thy *gift* **oblation**
before in front of the **sacrifice** altar,
and go thy way;
first be reconciled to thy brother,
and then come and offer thy *gift* **oblation.**
SETTLING OUT OF COURT
25 Agree with thine adversary quickly,
whiles thou art in the way with him;
lest *at any time* **ever**
the adversary deliver thee to the judge,
and the judge deliver thee to the *officer* **attendant,**
and thou be cast into *prison* **a guardhouse.**
26 *Verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto thee,
Thou shalt *by no means* **never no way** come out thence,
till thou hast *paid* **given back**
the *uttermost farthing* **final quarter.**
ADULTERIZING
27 Ye have heard that it was *said* **rhetorized**
by them of old time **to the ancients,**
Thou shalt not commit adultery **adulterize not:**
Exodus 20:14, Deuteronomy 5:18
28 But I say **word** unto you,
That whosoever *looketh on* **all who observe** a woman
to *lust* **pant** after her
hath *committed adultery* **adulterized** with her
already in his heart.
AVOIDING GAY HINNOM/THE VALLEY OF BURNING
29 And if thy right eye *offend* **scandalize** thee,
pluck it *out,* and cast it from thee:
for it is *profitable* **beneficial** for thee
that one of thy members should *perish* **destruct,**
and not that thy whole body should be cast
into *hell* **Gay Hinnom/the valley of burning.**
30 And if thy right hand *offend* **scandalize** thee,
cut **excind** it *off,* and cast it from thee:
for it is *profitable* **beneficial** for thee
that one of thy members should *perish* **destruct,**
and not that thy whole body should be cast
into *hell* **Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning.**
DIVORCE
31 It hath been *said* **rhetorized,**
Whosoever shall *put away* **release** his *wife* **woman,**
let him give her a *writing* **scroll** of *divorcement* **apostasy:**
Deuteronomy 24:1
32 But I say **word** unto you,

MATTHAIOS 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and *doctrinates* humanity thus,
is called the least
in the *sovereigndom* of the heavens:
but whoever does and *doctrinates* them,
is called *mega*
in the *sovereigndom* of the heavens.
20 For I word to you,
That unless ever your *justness* **superabounds**
much more than the scribes and Pharisees,
you no way enter
the *sovereigndom* of the heavens.
**THE VALUE SYSTEM OF YAH SHUA:
MURDER, RAGE, SLANDER**
21 You heard it *rhetorized* to the ancients,
Murder not;
and whoever murders
becomes subject to the judgment.
22 But I word to you,
That everyone *wroth with his brother in vain*
becomes subject to the judgment:
and whoever says to his brother, *Req!*
becomes subject to the *sanhedrim:*
but whoever says, *Fool!*
becomes subject to the fire
of *Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning.*
FORGIVING
23 So whenever you offer your oblation
at the sacrifice altar,
and there remember
that your brother has somewhat against you;
24 release your oblation in front of the sacrifice altar,
and go your way;
first reconcile to your brother,
and then come and offer your oblation.
SETTLING OUT OF COURT
25 Agree with your adversary quickly
while you are with him in the way:
lest ever the adversary deliver you to the judge;
and the judge deliver you to the attendant;
and cast you into a guardhouse.
26 Amen! I word to you,
You never no way come from there,
until you give back the final quarter.
ADULTERIZING
27 You heard it *rhetorized* to the ancients,
Adulterize not:
Exodus 20:14, Deuteronomy 5:18
28 But I word to you,
That whoever observes a woman — to pant after her
already adulterizes with her in his heart.
AVOIDING GAY HINNOM/THE VALLEY OF BURNING
29 And if your right eye scandalizes you
pluck it out and cast it from you:
for it is beneficial for you
that one of your members destruct,
and not your whole body
cast into *Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning.*
30 And if your right hand scandalizes you,
excind it and cast it from you:
for it is beneficial for you
that one of your members destruct,
and not your whole body
cast into *Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning.*
DIVORCE
31 It was *rhetorized,*
Whoever releases his woman,
give her a scroll of apostasy.
Deuteronomy 24:1
32 But I word to you,

MATTHEW 5, 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

That whosoever shall *put away* **release** his *wife* **woman**,
saving **except**
for the *cause* **word** of *fornication* **whoredom**,
causeth her to *commit* **adultery** **adulterize**:
and whosoever shall marry her that is *divorced* **released**,
committeth **adultery** **adulterizeth**.

OATHING

33 Again, ye have heard that it hath been *said* **rhetorized**
by them of old time **to the ancients**,
Thou shalt not *forswear* **thysself** **oath**,
but shalt *perform* **give back** unto *the Lord* **Yah Veh**
thine oaths:
Leviticus 19:12, Numbers 30:2, Deuteronomy 23:21

34 But I say **word** unto you, *Swear* **Oath** not at all;
neither *by heaven* **in the heavens**;
for it is *God's* **Elohim's** throne:

35 Nor *by* **in** the earth; for it is his footstool:
neither *by Jerusalem* **in Yeru Shalem**;
for it is the city of the *great king* **mega sovereign**.

36 Neither shalt thou *swear* **by oath** in thy head,
because thou canst not make one hair white or black.

37 But let your *communication* **word** be,
Yea, yea; Nay, nay:
for whatsoever is more **superabundant** than these
cometh **is** of evil.

RETALIATION

38 Ye have heard that it hath been *said* **rhetorized**,
An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth:
Exodus 21:22—27, Leviticus 24:19, 20, Deuteronomy 19:21

39 But I say **word** unto you, That ye resist not evil:
but whosoever shall *smite* **slap** thee on thy right cheek,
turn to him the other also.

40 And *if any man* **to whoever**
will sue thee at the law **willeth to have thee judged**,
and take away thy *coat* **tunic**,
let him have **release** thy *cloak* **garment** also.

41 And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile,
go with him twain.

42 Give to him that asketh thee,
and from him that *would* **willeth to** borrow of thee
turn not thou away.

LOVING YOUR ENEMY

43 Ye have heard that it hath been *said* **rhetorized**,
Thou shalt love thy neighbour, and hate thine enemy.
Leviticus 19:18, Psalm 139:21, 22

44 But I say **word** unto you, Love your enemies,
bles **eulogize** them that curse you,
do good to them that hate you,
and pray for them which *despitefully use* **threaten** you,
and persecute you;

45 That ye may be the *children* **sons** of your Father
which is in *heaven* **the heavens**:
for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good,
and *sendeth rain* **raineth** on the just and on the unjust.

46 For *if* **whenever** ye love them which love you,
what reward have ye?
do not **indeed**
even the *publicans* **customs agents** the same?
And *if* **whenever** ye salute your brethren only,
what do ye *more than others* **so superabundantly**?
do not **indeed**
even the *publicans* **so customs agents thus**?

48 **So** Be ye *therefore* **perfect complete/at shalom**,
even **exactly**
as your Father which is in *heaven* **the heavens**
is *perfect* **complete/at shalom**.

DOING MERCIES

6 **Take** heed that ye do not your *alms* **mercies**
before men **in front of humanity**,
to be *seen* **observed** of them:
otherwise **and if not** ye have no reward of your Father
which is in *heaven* **the heavens**.

2 **Therefore** **So** when **ever** thou doest *thine alms* **thy mercies**,
do not sound a trumpet before **trump not ahead of** thee,
exactly as the hypocrites do
in the synagogues and in the streets,
that they may have glory of *men* **humanity**.
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
They have their reward.

MATTHAIOS 5, 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

Whoever releases his woman,
except for the word of whoredom,
causes her to adulterize:
and whoever marries her who is released,
adulterizes.

OATHING

33 Again, you heard it rhetorized to the ancients,
Oath not;
but give back your oaths to Yah Veh.
Leviticus 19:12, Numbers 30:2, Deuteronomy 23:21

34 But I word to you, Oath not at all;
neither in the the heavens;
for it is the throne of Elohim:
nor in the earth;
for it is the stool of his feet:
nor in Yeru Shalem;
for it is the city of the mega sovereign:
nor oath in your head,
because you cannot make one hair white or black:
but thus be your word, Yes, yes; No, no:
for whatever is more superabundant than these
is of evil.

RETALIATION

38 You heard it rhetorized,
An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth:
Exodus 21:22 — 27, Leviticus 24:19, 20, Deuteronomy 19:21

39 But I word to you, Resist not evil:
but whoever slaps you on your right cheek,
also turn the other to him:
and to whoever wills to have you judged
to take away your tunic,
release your garment also:
and whoever compels you to go a mile,
go with him two.
To him who asks, give,
and from him who wills to borrow of you,
turn not away.

LOVING YOUR ENEMY

43 You heard it rhetorized,
Love your neighbor, and hate your enemy.
Leviticus 19:18, Psalm 139:21, 22

44 But I word to you, Love your enemies;
eulogize them who curse you;
do good to them who hate you;
and pray for them
who threaten you and persecute you;
so that you become
the sons of your Father in the the heavens:
for his sun rises on the evil and on the good;
and rains on the just and on the unjust.

46 For whenever you love them who love you,
what reward have you?
Do not indeed even the customs agents the same?
And whenever you salute your brothers only,
what do you so superabundantly?
Do not indeed even the customs agents thus?
So be complete/at shalom,
exactly as your Father is in the the heavens
is complete/at shalom.

DOING MERCIES

6 **Heed** to not do your mercies in front of humanity
to be observed of them:
and if not,
you have no reward of your Father in the the heavens:
so whenever you do your mercies,
trump not ahead of you
exactly as the hypocrites
in the synagogues and in the streets,
to be glorified by humanity.
Amen! I word to you, they have their reward.

MATTHEW 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 But when thou doest *alms* **mercies**,
let not thy left *hand* know what thy right *hand* doeth:
4 That *thine alms* **thy mercies** may be in secret:
and thy Father which *seeth* **observeth** in secret
himself shall *reward* **give** thee *openly* **manifestly**.

PRAYER

5 And when **ever** thou prayest,
thou shalt not be **exactly** as the hypocrites are:
for they *love* **befriend** to pray standing in the synagogues
and in the corners of the *streets* **broadways**,
that they may be *seen of men* **manifest to humanity**.

Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
They have their reward.

6 But thou, when **ever** thou prayest,
enter into thy *closet* **pantry**,
and when thou hast shut thy *door* **portal**,
pray to thy Father which is in secret;
and thy Father which *seeth* **observeth** in secret
shall *reward* **give** thee *openly* **manifestly**.

7 But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions,
exactly as the *heathen* **goyim** do:
for they think that they shall be heard
for their *much speaking* **polylogy**.

8 **So** Be not ye *therefore* like unto them:
for your Father knoweth what *things* ye have need of,
before **ere** ye ask him.

A PRAYER EXAMPLE

9 *After this manner therefore* **So** pray ye **thus**:
Our Father *which art* in heaven **the heavens**,
Hallowed be thy name.

10 Thy *kingdom* **sovereigndom** come.
Thy *will be done* **become** in earth, as it is in heaven.

11 Give us this day our *daily* bread **of subsistance**.

12 And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

13 And *lead* **bring** us not into *temptation* **testing**,
but *deliver* **rescue** us from evil:

For thine is the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
and the *power* **dynamis**, and the *glory*, *for ever* **unto the eons**.
Amen.

FORGIVING

14 For *if* **whenever** ye forgive
men **humanity** their *trespasses* **backslidings**,
your heavenly Father *will* **shall** also forgive you:

15 But *if* **whenever** ye forgive not *men* **humanity**
their *trespasses* **backslidings**,
neither *will* **shall** your Father
forgive your *trespasses* **backslidings**.

FASTING

16 Moreover when **ever** ye fast,
be not, **exactly** as the hypocrites,
of a sad countenance — **sullen**:
for they *disfigure* **camouflage** their faces,
that they may *appear* **manifest** unto *men* **humanity** to fast.

Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
They have their reward.

17 But thou, when thou fastest,
anoint thine head, and wash thy face;
18 That thou *appear* **manifest** not unto *men* **humanity** to fast,
but unto thy Father which is in secret:
and thy Father, which *seeth* **observeth** in secret,
shall reward thee *openly* **manifestly**.

TREASURING TREASURES

19 *Lay* **Treasure** not up for yourselves
treasures upon earth,
where moth and rust *doth* **corrupt dissolve**,
and where thieves break through and steal:
20 But *lay up* **treasure** for yourselves treasures in heaven,
where neither moth nor rust *doth* **corrupt dissolveth**,
and where thieves do not break through nor steal:

21 For where your treasure is,
there *will* **shall** your heart be also.

THE EYE

22 The *light* **candle** of the body is the eye:
if therefore **so** *whenever* thine eye be *single* **clear**,
thy whole body shall be *full of light* **brightly lighted**.

23 But *if* **whenever** thine eye be evil,

MATTHAIOS 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 But when you do mercies,
let not your left know what your right does:
4 so your mercies are in secret:
and your Father who observes in secret
himself gives you manifestly.

PRAYER

5 And whenever you pray,
be not exactly as the hypocrites:
for they befriend to pray standing in the synagogues
and in the corners of the broadways
to manifest to humanity.

Amen! I word to you, they have their reward.

6 But you, whenever you pray,
enter your pantry and shut your portal;
pray to your Father in secret;
and your Father who observes in secret
gives you manifestly:

7 but in praying
use not vain repetitions exactly as the goyim:
for they think they are heard for their polylogy:

8 So you, liken not to them:
for your Father knows what you need
ere you ask him.

A PRAYER EXAMPLE

9 So pray thus:
Our Father in the heavens
hallowed be your name:
your sovereigndom come;

10 your will become in earth as in the heavens:

11 give us this day our bread of subsistance:

12 and forgive us our debts
as we also forgive our debtors:

13 and bring us not into testing
but rescue us from evil:

for yours is the sovereigndom
and the dynamis and the glory to the eons.
Amen.

FORGIVING

14 For whenever
you forgive humanity their backslidings,
your heavenly Father also forgives you:
15 but whenever you forgive not humanity their backslidings,
your Father forgives not your backslidings.

FASTING

16 Moreover whenever you fast,
be not exactly as the hypocrites — sullen:
for they camouflage their faces,
to manifest to humanity they fast.

Amen! I word to you,
They have their reward.
But you, when you fast,
anoint your head and wash your face;
17 that you not to manifest to humanity that you fast,
but to your Father in secret:
18 and your Father who observes in secret
rewards you manifestly.

TREASURING TREASURES

19 Treasure not for yourselves treasures on earth;
where moth and rust dissolve
and where thieves break through and steal:
20 but treasure for yourselves treasures in the heavens;
where neither moth nor rust dissolve
and where thieves neither break through nor steal:
21 for where your treasure is,
there your heart is also.

THE EYE

22 The candle of the body is the eye:
so whenever your eye is clear,
your whole body becomes brightly lit:
23 but whenever your eye is evil

MATTHEW 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

thy whole body shall be *full of darkness* **dark**.
So If *therefore* the light that is in thee be darkness,
how *great vast* is that darkness!

SERVING TWO ADONIM

24 No *man* **one** can serve two *masters* **adonim**:
for either he *will* **shall** hate the one,
and love the other;
or else he *will hold to* **shall uphold** the one,
and *despise* **disesteem** the other.
Ye cannot serve *God* **Elohim** and mammon.
25 *Therefore* **So** I say **word** unto you,
Take no thought **Be not anxious** for your *life* **soul**,
what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink;
nor yet for your body, what ye shall *put on* **endue**.
Is not **indeed**
the *life* **soul much** more than *meat* **nourishment**,
and the body than *raiment* **enduemnt**?
26 *Behold* **Look at** the *fowls* **flyers** of the *air* **heaven**:
for they *sow* **spore** not, neither do they *reap* **harvest**,
nor gather **together** into *barns* **granaries**;
yet your heavenly Father *feedeth* **nourisheth** them.
Are ye not *much better* **more surpassing** than they?
27 Which of you by *taking thought* **anxiety**
can add one cubit unto his *stature* **maturity**?
28 And why *take ye thought* **be ye anxious**
for *raiment* **enduemnt**?
Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow;
they *toil* **labour** not, neither do they spin:
29 And yet I say **word** unto you,
That even *Solomon* **Shelomoh** in all his glory
was not arrayed *like* **as** one of these.
30 *Wherefore*, **but if God so** **Elohim**
thus clothe the *grass* **herbage** of the field,
which to day is, and to morrow is cast into the oven,
shall he not much more *clothe* you,
O ye of little *faith* **trust**?
31 *Therefore* *take no thought* **So be not anxious**,
saying **wording**,
What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink?
or, Wherewithal shall we be *clothed* **arrayed**?
32 (For after all these *things* do the *Gentiles* **goyim** seek:)
for your heavenly Father knoweth
that ye have need of all these *things*.

THE PROVISION OF YAH SHUA

33 But seek ye first
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**,
and his *righteousness* **justness**;
and all these *things* shall be added unto you.
34 *Take therefore* *no thought* **So be not anxious**
for the morrow:
for the morrow
shall *take thought for the things* **be anxious** of itself.
Sufficient unto the day is the *evil* **malice** thereof.

JUDGING

7 Judge not, that ye be not judged.
2 For *with in* what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged:
and *with in* what measure ye *mete* **measure**,
it shall be *measured* **remeasured** to you *again*.

TWIGS AND BEAMS

3 And why *beholdest* **lookest** thou *at the mote* **twig**
that is in thy brother's eye,
but *considerest* **perceivest** not the beam
that is in thine own eye?
4 Or how *wilt* **shalt** thou say to thy brother,
Let **Allow** me
pull out to eject the *mote* **twig** out of thine eye;
and, behold, a beam is in thine own eye?
5 Thou hypocrite,
first *cast out* **eject** the beam out of thine own eye;
and then shalt thou see clearly
to *cast out* **eject** the *mote* **twig** out of thy brother's eye.

GIVING, ASKING, SEEKING, AND KNOCKING

6 Give not that which is holy unto the *dogs* **hounds**,
neither cast ye your pearls *before* **in front of** swine,
lest **ever** they trample them *under* **at** their feet,
and turn again and *rend* **tear** you.
7 Ask, and it shall be given you;
seek, and ye shall find;
knock, and it shall be opened unto you:

MATTHAIOS 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

your whole body becomes dark:
so whenever the light in you becomes darkness
— how vast that darkness!

SERVING TWO ADONIM

24 No one can serve two adonim:
for either he hates the one and loves the other;
or else he upholds the one and disesteems the other:
you cannot serve Elohim and mammon.
25 So I word to you, neither be anxious for your soul
— what you eat or what you drink;
nor yet for your body
— what you endue.
Is not indeed the soul much more than nourishment?
And the body than enduement?
26 Look at the flyers of the heavens:
for they neither spore nor harvest
nor gather together into granaries;
yet your Father of the heavenlies nourishes them.
Surpass you not them?
27 Who of you, by anxiety,
is able to add one cubit to his maturity?
28 And why be anxious about enduement?
Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow;
they neither labor nor spin:
29 and yet I word to you,
that even Shelomoh in all his glory
arrayed not as one of these.
30 But if Elohim thus clothes the herbage of the field
— which today is, and tomorrow cast into the oven
— how not much more You, O you of little trust?

31 So be not anxious, wording,
What eat we? or, What drink we?
or, With what array we?
32 For the goyim seek after all these:
for your Father of the heavenlies
knows you need all these.

THE PROVISION OF YAH SHUA

33 But first
seek the sovereigndom of Elohim and his justness;
and all these add to you.
34 So be not anxious for the morrow:
for the morrow has its own anxieties.
Each day has sufficient malice.

JUDGING

7 Judge not, so you are not judged.
2 For in what judgment you judge,
you are judged:
and in what measure you measure,
is remeasured to you.

TWIGS AND BEAMS

3 And why look at the twig in the eye of your brother,
but perceive not the beam in your own eye?
4 Or, how say you to your brother,
Allow me to eject the twig from your eye;
and behold, a beam in your own eye?
5 You hypocrite!
First eject the beam from your own eye;
and then you see clearly
to eject the twig from the eye of your brother.

GIVING, ASKING, SEEKING, AND KNOCKING

6 Neither give the holy to the hounds
nor cast you your pearls in front of swine;
lest ever they trample them at their feet
and turn and rip you *apart*.
7 Ask, and you are given;
seek, and you find;
knock, and it opens to you:

MATTHEW 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 For every one that asketh *receiveth* **take**th;
and he that seeketh findeth;
and to him that knocketh it shall be opened.
9 Or what *man* **human** is there of you,
whom *if* **whenever** his son ask bread,
will **shall** he give him a stone?
10 Or *if* **whenever** he ask a fish,
will **shall** he give him a serpent?
11 **So** if ye *then*, being evil,
know how to give good gifts unto your children,
how much more
shall your Father which is in *heaven* **the heavens**
give good *things* to them that ask him?

THE GOLDEN RULE

12 *Therefore* **So** all
things whatsoever ye would — **as much as ever ye** will
that *men* **humanity** should do to you,
do ye even *so* **thus** to them:
for this is the *law* **torah** and the prophets.

GATES

13 Enter ye in *at* **through** the *strait* **narrow** gate:
for wide is the gate, and broad is the way,
that leadeth to destruction,
and many there be which *go in thereat* **enter therein**:
14 Because *strait* **narrow** is the gate,
and *narrow* **tribulated** is the way,
which leadeth unto life,
and few there be that find it.

PSEUDO PROPHETS

15 Beware **But take heed** of *false* **pseudo** prophets,
which come to you in sheep's *clothing* **endument**,
but inwardly they are *ravening* **rapacious** wolves.
16 Ye shall know them by their fruits.
Do men gather **they** grapes of thorns, or figs of *thistles* **briers**?
17 Even *so* **thus** every good tree
bringeth forth **produceth** good fruit;
but a *corrupt* **putrefied** tree
bringeth forth **produceth** evil fruit.
18 A good tree cannot *bring forth* **produce** evil fruit,
neither can a *corrupt* **putrefied** tree
bring forth **produce** good fruit.
19 Every tree that *bringeth* **produceth** not *forth* good fruit
is *hewn down* **excinded**, and cast into the fire.
20 *Wherefore* **So then** by their fruits ye shall know them.

PSEUDO PROFESSORS

21 Not every one that *saith* **wordeth** unto me,
Lord Adonay, *Lord Adonay*,
shall enter into
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**;
but he that doeth the will of my Father
which is in *heaven* **the heavens**.
22 Many *will* **shall** say to me in that day,
Lord Adonay, *Lord Adonay*,
have we not prophesied in thy name?
and in thy name *have cast out devils* **ejected demons**?
and in thy name done many *wonderful works* **dynamis**?
23 And then *will* **shall** I profess unto them,
I never **ever** knew you:
depart from me, ye that *work iniquity* **violate the torah**.

BUILDING

24 *Therefore whosoever* **So everyone**
who heareth these *sayings* **words** of mine,
and doeth them,
I *will* **shall** liken him unto a *wise* **thoughtful** man,
which built his house upon a rock:
25 And the rain descended, and the *floods* **streams** came,
and the winds *blew* **puffed**, and beat upon that house;
and it fell not: for it was founded upon a rock.
26 And every one that heareth these sayings of mine,
and doeth them not,
shall be likened unto a foolish man,
which built his house upon the sand:
27 And the rain descended, and the *floods* **streams** came,
and the winds *blew* **puffed**,
and *beat* **dashed** upon that house;
and it fell: and *great* **mega** was the *fall* **downfall** of it.
28 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
had *ended* **completed/shalamed** these *sayings* **words**,

MATTHAIOS 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 for everyone who asks, takes;
and whoever seeks, finds;
and whoever knocks, it opens.
9 Or what human of you,
whenever his son asks bread,
gives him a stone?
10 Or whenever he asks a fish,
gives him a serpent?
11 So if you, being evil,
know how to give good gifts to your children,
how much more your Father in the heavens
gives good to them who ask him?

THE GOLDEN RULE

12 So all — as much as ever you will
that humanity does to you,
you do even thus to them:
for this is the torah and the prophets.

GATES

13 Enter through the narrow gate:
for wide the gate and broad the way
leading to destruction;
and many who enter therein:
14 because narrow the gate and tribulated the way,
leading to life;
and few are they who find it.

PSEUDO PROPHETS

15 But take heed of pseudo prophets
who come to you in the enduement of sheep;
but inwardly are rapacious wolves:
16 you know them by their fruits.
Gather they grapes of thorns?
Or figs of briers?
17 Even thus every good tree produces good fruit;
but a putrefied tree produces evil fruit.
18 A good tree cannot produce evil fruit;
and a putrefied tree cannot produce good fruit:
19 every tree not producing good fruit is excinded
and cast in the fire.
20 So then you know them by their fruits.

PSEUDO PROFESSORS

21 Not everyone who words to me, Adonay! Adonay!
enters the sovereigndom of the heavens;
but whoever does the will
of my Father in the heavens.
22 Many say to me in that day, Adonay! Adonay!
Prophesied we not in your name?
And ejected demons in your name?
And done many dynamis in your name?
23 And then I profess to them,
I never ever knew you:
depart from me, you who violate the torah.

BUILDING

24 So everyone
— whoever hears my words and does them,
I liken to a thoughtful man,
who builds his house on a rock:
25 and the rain descends and the streams come
and the winds puff and beat on that house;
and it falls not: for it is founded on a rock.
26 And whoever hears these sayings of mine
and does them not,
is likened to a foolish man
who builds his house on sand:
27 and the rains descend and the streams come
and the winds puff and dash on that house;
and it falls: and mega is the downfall.
28 And so be it,
when Yah Shua completes/shalams these words

MATTHEW 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

29 the people **multitude** were astonished at his doctrine:
For he *taught* **doctrinated** them as *one* having authority,
and not as the scribes.

YAH SHUA CLEANSSES A LEPER

8 When he
was come down **descended** from the mountain,
great **vast** multitudes followed him.
2 And, behold, there came a leper and worshipped him,
saying **wording**, *Lord Adonay*, if **whenever** thou wilt,
thou canst make **purify** me *clean*.
3 And *Jesus put forth* **Yah Shua spread** his hand
and touched him, saying **wording**,
I will; be thou *clean* **pure**.
And *immediately* **straightway**
his leprosy was *cleansed* **purified**.
4 And *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua wordeth** unto him,
See thou *tell* **say to no man one**;
but go thy way, shew thyself to the priest,
and offer the *gift* **oblation**
that *Moses commanded* **Mosheh ordered**,
for a *testimony* **witness** unto them.

YAH SHUA HEALS A PARALYTIC

5 And when *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
was entered into *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**,
there came unto him a centurion, beseeching him,
6 And saying **wording**, *Lord Adonay*,
my *servant lad* lieth at home *sick of the palsy* **paralyzed**,
grievously tormented **excessively tortured**.
7 And *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua wordeth** unto him,
I will **shall** come and *heal will* **shall cure** him.
8 The centurion answered and said, *Lord Adonay*,
I am not *worthy* **adequate**
that thou shouldest *come* **enter** under my *roof* **thatch**:
but *speak* **say** the word only,
and my *servant lad* shall be healed.
9 For I am a *man* **human** under authority,
having *soldiers* **warriors** under me:
and I say **word** to this man, Go, and he goeth;
and to another, Come, and he cometh;
and to my servant, Do this, and he doeth *it*.
10 When *Jesus* **Yah Shua** heard it, he marvelled,
and said to them that followed,
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
I have not found so *great faith* **much trust**,
no, not **even** in *Israel* **Yisra El**.
11 And I say **word** unto you,
That many shall come
from the east **rising** and west **the lowering**,
and shall *sit down* **recline** with Abraham,
and *Isaac* **Yischaq**, and *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of heaven **the heavens**.
12 But the *children* **sons** of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
shall be *cast out* **ejected** into outer darkness:
there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.
13 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto the centurion,
Go thy way;
and as thou hast *believed* **trusted**,
so be it *done* unto thee.
And his servant lad was healed in the selfsame hour.

YAH SHUA ALLEVIATES A FEVER

14 And when *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
was come into *Peter's* **Petros'** house,
he saw his *wife's mother* **mother in law** laid,
and *sick of a fever* **fevered**.
15 And he touched her hand,
and the fever *left* **forsook** her:
and she arose, and ministered unto them.
16 **YAH SHUA EJECTS DEMONIZED SPIRITS**
When the even was come **Being evening**,
they *brought* **offered** unto him
many that were *possessed with devils* **demonized**:
and he *cast out* **ejected** the spirits with his word,
and *healed* **cured** all that were *sick* **ill**:
17 That it might be fulfilled/**shalamed**
which was *spoken* **retorized**
by *Esaias* **through Yesha Yah** the prophet, saying **wording**,
Himself took our *infirmities* **frailities**,
and bare our *sicknesses* **diseases**.

Yesha Yah 53:4

MATTHAIOS 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

29 the multitude is astonished at his doctrine:
for he *doctrinates* them as having authority
and not as the scribes.

YAH SHUA CLEANSSES A LEPER

8 And he descends from the mountain
and vast multitudes follow him:
2 and behold, a leper comes and worships him;
wording, Adonay,
whenever you will, you can purify me.
3 And Yah Shua spreads his hand and touches him,
wording, I will! Purify!
— and straightway his leprosy purifies.
4 And Yah Shua words to him,
See that you say to no one;
but go your way, show yourself to the priest,
and offer the oblation Mosheh ordered
for a witness to them.

YAH SHUA HEALS A PARALYTIC

5 And Yah Shua enters Kaphar Nachum,
and a centurion comes to him, beseeching him,
6 and wording, Adonay,
my lad lies at home paralyzed — excessively tortured.
7 And Yah Shua words to him,
I come and cure him.
8 The centurion answers, saying, Adonay,
I am not adequate that you enter under my thatch:
9 but only say the word, and my lad heals:
for I also am a human under authority,
having warriors under me:
and I word to this man, Go! — and he goes;
and to another, Come! — and he comes;
and to my servant, Do this! — and he does.
10 And Yah Shua hears, and marvels;
and says to them who follow,
Amen! I word to you,
I find not this much trust
— no, not even in Yisra El:
11 and I word to you,
that many come from the rising and the lowering
and recline with Abraham and Yischaq and Yaaqov
in the sovereigndom of the heavens:
12 but the sons of the sovereigndom
are ejected into outer darkness:
with weeping and gnashing of teeth.
13 And Yah Shua says to the centurion,
Go your way; and as you trust, so be it to you.
— and his servant lad is healed in that hour.

YAH SHUA ALLEVIATES A FEVER

14 And Yah Shua goes to the house of Petros;
and he sees his mother in law lying fevered:
15 he touches her hand and the fever forsakes her;
and she rises and ministers to them.

YAH SHUA EJECTS DEMONIZED SPIRITS

16 And being evening,
they offer him many demonized;
and he ejects the spirits with his word
and cures all the ill:
to fulfill/shalamed
17 what Yesha Yah the prophet retorized,
wording,
Himself took our frailities and bore our diseases.
Yesha Yah 53:4

MATTHEW 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

FOLLOWING YAH SHUA

18 Now when *Jesus Yah Shua*
saw *great vast* multitudes about him,
he gave *commandment summoned*
to depart unto the other side.

19 And a certain scribe came, and said unto him,
Master Doctor,

20 I *will shall* follow thee whithersoever thou goest.
And *Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth* unto him,
The foxes have *holes burrows*,
and the *birds flyers* of the *air heaven* have nests;
but the Son of *man humanity*
hath not where to *lay recline* his head.

21 And another of his disciples said unto him,
Lord Adonay, *suffer allow* me first
to go and *bury entomb* my father.

22 But *Jesus Yah Shua* said unto him, Follow me;
and *let allow* the dead *bury to entomb* their dead.

YAH SHUA REBUKES THE WINDS AND THE SEA

23 And when he was *entered embarked* into a *ship sailer*,
his disciples followed him.

24 And, behold,
there *arose became* a *great tempest mega quake* in the sea,
insomuch that
the *ship sailer* was *covered with veiled by* the waves:
but he was asleep.

25 And his disciples came to him, and *awoke roused* him,
saying wording, *Lord Adonay*, save us:
we perish destruct.

26 And he *saith wordeth* unto them,
Why are ye *fearful cowardly*, O ye of little *faith trust*?
Then he arose, and rebuked the winds and the sea;
and there was *became* a *great mega* calm.

27 But the *men humans* marvelled, *saying wording*,
What manner of man is this,
that even the winds and the sea obey him!

YAH SHUA EJECTS DEMONS

28 And when he was come to the other side
into the *country region* of the *Gergesenes Girgashiyim*,
there met him two *possessed with devils demonized*,
coming out of the tombs,
exceeding fierce extremely furious,
so that no *man one* might *be able*
to pass by *through* that way.

29 And, behold, they cried out, *saying wording*,
What have we to do with thee, *Jesus Yah Shua*,
thou Son of *God Elohim*?
art thou come hither
to *torment torture* us *before ere* the *time season*?
And there was a *good way afar* off from them
an *herd a drove* of many swine feeding.

30 So the *devils demons* besought him, *saying wording*,
If thou *cast eject* us out,
suffer allow us to go away into the *herd drove* of swine.

31 And he said unto them, Go.
And when they were come out,
they went into the *herd drove* of swine:
and, behold, the whole *herd drove* of swine
ran violently down a *steep place cliff* into the sea,
and *perished died* in the waters.

32 And they that *kept fed* them fled,
and went their ways into the city,
and *told every thing evangelized all*,
and what was befallen
to the *possessed of the devils demonized*.

33 And, behold,
the whole city came out to meet *Jesus Yah Shua*:
and when they saw him,
they besought him that he *would should* depart
out of their *coasts boundaries*.

9 And he *entered embarked* into a *ship sailer*,
and passed over, and came into his own city.

YAH SHUA HEALS A PARALYTIC

2 And, behold, they *brought offered* to him
a *man sick of the palsy paralytic*, lying on a bed:
and *Jesus Yah Shua* seeing their *faith trust*
said unto the *sick of the palsy paralytic*;
Son, be of good cheer Courage, child;
thy sins be forgiven thee.

MATTHAIOS 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

FOLLOWING YAH SHUA

18 And Yah Shua sees vast multitudes around him;
and he summons to depart across:
and some scribe comes and says to him,
Doctor, I follow you wherever you go.

19

20 And Yah Shua words to him,
The foxes have burrows,
and the flyers of the heavens nests;
but the Son of humanity
has nowhere to recline his head.

21 And another of his disciples says to him,
Adonay, first allow me to go and entomb my father.

22 And Yah Shua says to him, Follow me;
and allow the dead to entomb their dead.

YAH SHUA REBUKES THE WINDS AND THE SEA

23 And he embarks into a sailer
and his disciples follow him:

24 and behold, a mega quake becomes in the sea,
so that the sailer is veiled by the waves:
but he sleeps.

25 And his disciples come to him and rouse him,
wording, Adonay, save us! We destruct!

26 And he words to them,
Why are you cowardly, O you of little trust?
— then he rises, and rebukes the winds and the sea
and there becomes a mega calm.

27 And the humans marvel, wording,
What manner is this,
that even the winds and the sea obey him?

YAH SHUA EJECTS DEMONS

28 And he goes across
to the region of the Girgashiyim;
and two demonized meet him
coming from the tombs — extremely furious
so that no one is able to pass through that way:

29 and behold, they cry out wording,
What have we to do with you Yah Shua
— you Son of Elohim?
Come you here to torture us ere the season?

30 And afar from them
a drove of many swine is feeding:
and the demons beseech him, wording,
If you eject us, allow us to go into the drove of swine.

31

32 And he says to them, Go.
— and they come out and go into the drove of swine:
and behold, the whole drove of swine
runs violently down a cliff into the sea
and dies in the waters:

33 and they who feed them flee
and go their ways to the city and evangelize all;
and what befell to the demonized:
and behold,
the whole city comes to meet Yah Shua:
and they see him, and beseech him
to depart from their boundaries:

9 — and he embarks in a sailer,
and passes over, and goes to his own city.

YAH SHUA HEALS A PARALYTIC

2 And behold,
they offer him a paralytic lying on a bed:
and seeing their trust
Yah Shua says to the paralytic;
Courage, child; your sins are forgiven.

MATTHEW 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SCRIBES ACCUSE YAH SHUA OF BLASPHEMY

3 And, behold,
certain **some** of the scribes said within themselves,
This *man* blasphemeth.
4 And *Jesus Yah Shua*,
knowing their *thoughts deliberations* said,
Wherefore *think ponder* ye evil in your hearts?
5 For whether is easier, to say, Thy sins be forgiven thee;
or to say, Arise, and walk?
6 But that ye may know that the Son of *man* **humanity**
hath **power authority** on earth to forgive sins,
(then *saith wordeth* he to the *sick of the palsy paralytic*.)
Arise, take *up* thy bed, and go unto thine house.
7 And he arose, and departed to his house.
8 But when the multitudes saw it,
they marvelled, and glorified *God Elohim*,
which had given such **power authority**
unto *men* **humanity**.

MATTHAIOS FOLLOWS YAH SHUA

9 And as *Jesus Yah Shua* passed *forth* from thence,
he saw a *man* **human**
named Matthew worded Matthaïos,
sitting at the *receipt of* custom:
and he *saith wordeth* unto him, Follow me.
And he arose, and followed him.

PHARISEES QUESTION THE DISCIPLES

10 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
as *Jesus sat at meat Yah Shua reposed* in the house,
behold, many *publicans customs agents* and sinners
came and *sat down reposed* with him and his disciples.
11 And when the Pharisees saw it,
they said unto his disciples,
Why eateth your *Master Doctor*
with *publicans customs agents* and sinners?
12 But when *Jesus Yah Shua* heard that,
he said unto them,
They that be *whole able* need not a *physician healer*,
but they that are *sick ill*.
13 But go ye and learn what that *meaneth is*,
I will *have* mercy, and not sacrifice:
for I am not come to call the *righteous just*,
but sinners to repentance.
14 Then came to him the disciples of *John Yahn*,
saying wording,
Why do we and the Pharisees fast *oft much*,
but thy disciples fast not?
15 And *Jesus Yah Shua* said unto them,
Can the *children sons* of the bridechamber mourn,
as long as the bridegroom is with them?
but the days *will shall* come,
When **ever** the bridegroom shall be taken from them,
and then shall they fast.

THE PARABLE OF GARMENTS

16 No *man one* putteth a *piece patch* of *new unfulled* cloth
unto an old garment,
for that *which is put in to fill it up fulness*
taketh from the garment,
and the *rent is made split becometh* worse.

THE PARABLE OF SKINS

17 Neither do men put new wine into old *bottles skins*:
else and if not the *bottles break skins burst*,
and the wine *runneth out poureth*,
and the *bottles perish skins destruct*:
but they put new wine into *new bottles skins*,
and both are preserved.

THE DEAD DAUGHTER OF AN ARCH

18 While he spake these *things* unto them, behold,
there came a *certain ruler an arch*, and worshipped him,
saying wording, My daughter is even now dead:
but come and *lay put* thy hand upon her,
and she shall live.
19 And *Jesus Yah Shua* arose, and followed him,
and so did his disciples.

YAH SHUA HEALS A HEMORRHAGE

20 And, behold, a woman,
which was *diseased with an issue of blood hemorrhaged*
twelve years, came behind him,
and touched the *hem edge* of his garment:

MATTHAIOS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SCRIBES ACCUSE YAH SHUA OF BLASPHEMY

3 And behold,
some of the scribes say within themselves,
This *one* blasphemeth.
4 And Yah Shua, knowing their deliberations, says,
Why ponder evil in your hearts?
5 For which is easier to say, Your sins are forgiven?
or to say, Rise, and walk?
6 But so you know that the Son of humanity
has authority on earth to forgive sins,
— then he words to the paralytic,
Rise, take your bed, and go to your house.
7 — and he rises and departs to his house.
8 And the multitudes see and marvel and glorify Elohim,
who gives such authority to humanity.

MATTHAIOS FOLLOWS YAH SHUA

9 And Yah Shua passes from there
and sees a human worded Matthaïos sitting at the custom:
and he words to him, Follow me.
— and he rises, and follows him.

PHARISEES QUESTION THE DISCIPLES

10 And so be it, as Yah Shua reposes in the house,
and behold, many customs agents and sinners
come and repose with him and his disciples.
11 And when the Pharisees see,
they say to his disciples,
Your Doctor,
why eats he with customs agents and sinners?
12 And Yah Shua hears, and says to them,
The able need no healer,
but they who are ill:
13 but you go and learn what this is,
I will mercy and not sacrifice:
for I come not to call the just;
but sinners to repentance.

14 Then the disciples of Yahn come to him, wording,
Why do we and the Pharisees fast much,
but your disciples fast not?

15 And Yah Shua says to them,
Can the sons of the bridechamber mourn,
as long as the bridegroom is with them?
But days come,
whenever the bridegroom is taken from them,
then they fast.

THE PARABLE OF GARMENTS

16 No one puts a patch of unfulled cloth
to an old garment;
for that fulness takes from the garment
and the split becomes worse.

THE PARABLE OF SKINS

17 Men put not new wine into old skins:
and if not, the skins burst and the wine pours
and the skins destruct:
but they put new wine into new skins,
and preserve both.

THE DEAD DAUGHTER OF AN ARCH

18 While he speaks these to them, behold,
an arch comes and worships him,
wording, My daughter has even died:
but come and put your hand on her, and she lives.
19 — and Yah Shua rises, and follows him
— and also his disciples.

YAH SHUA HEALS A HEMORRHAGE

20 And behold,
a woman hemorrhaging twelve years
comes behind him,
and touches the edge of his garment:

MATTHEW 9, 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

21 For she *said worded* within herself,
if **whenever** I may *but only* touch his garment,
I shall be *whole saved*.

22 But *Jesus Yah Shua* turned *him about*,
and when he saw her, he said,
Daughter, *be of good comfort courage*;
thy *faith trust* hath *made saved* thee *whole*.
And the woman was *made whole saved* from that hour.

YAH SHUA RESURRECTS THE DAUGHTER OF THE ARCH

23 And when *Jesus Yah Shua*
came into the *ruler's arch's* house,
and saw the *minstrels flutists*
and the *people making a noise multitude tumulting*,
He *said worded* unto them, *Give place Depart*:
for the *maid maiden* is not dead, but sleepeth.
And they *laughed ridiculed* him to *scorn*.
24 But when the *people multitude*
were put forth was ejected,
he *went in entered*,
and *took overpowered* her by the hand,
and the *maid maiden* arose.

26 And the fame thereof went abroad into all that land.

YAH SHUA OPENS BLIND EYES

27 And when *Jesus departed Yah Shua passed* thence,
two blind men followed him,
crying, and *saying wording*,
Thou son of David, *have mercy on us*.
28 And when he was come into the house,
the blind men came to him:
and *Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth* unto them,
Believe Trust ye that I am able to do this?
They *said worded* unto him, Yea, *Lord Adonay*.
29 Then *touched* he their eyes, *saying wording*,
According to your *faith trust* be it unto you.
30 And their eyes were opened;
and *Jesus Yah Shua*
straitly charged sternly enjoined them, *saying wording*,
See that no *man one* know it.
31 But they, when they were departed,
spread abroad his fame reported about him
in all that *country land*.

YAH SHUA EJECTS A DEMON

32 As they went out, behold,
they *brought offered* to him a *dumb man mute human*
possessed with a devil demonized.

33 And when the *devil demon* was *cast out ejected*,
the *dumb mute* spake:
and the multitudes marvelled, *saying wording*,
It was never *so seen ever thus manifested* in *Israel Yisra El*.

34 But the Pharisees *said worded*,
He *casteth out devils ejecteth demons*
through in the prince arch of the devils demons.

YAH SHUA HAS A SYMPATHETIC SPLEEN

35 And *Jesus Yah Shua*
went about all the cities and villages,
teaching doctrinating in their synagogues,
and preaching
the *gospel evangelism* of the *kingdom sovereigndom*,
and *healing curing* every *sickness disease*
and every *disease debility* among the people.
36 But when he saw the multitudes,
he was *moved with compassion had a sympathetic spleen*
on for them, because they fainted,
and were *scattered abroad tossed about*,
as sheep having no shepherd.

37 Then *saith So wordeth* he unto his disciples,
The harvest *truly indeed* is *plenteous vast*,
but the *labourers workers* are few;
38 Pray *So petition* ye *therefore*
the *Lord Adonay* of the harvest,
that he *will send shall cast* forth *labourers workers*
into his harvest.

YAH SHUA AUTHORIZES HIS TWELVE DISCIPLES

10 And when he had called unto him
his twelve disciples,
he gave them *power authority* against *unclean impure* spirits,
so as to *cast eject* them out,
and to *heal all manner of sickness cure every disease*
and *all manner of disease every debility*.

MATTHAIOS 9, 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

21 — for she words within herself,
whenever I only touch his garment, I am saved.

22 And Yah Shua turns and sees her, and says,
Daughter, courage! Your trust saves you.
— and the woman is saved from that hour.

YAH SHUA RESURRECTS THE DAUGHTER OF THE ARCH

23 And Yah Shua comes to the house of the arch
and sees the flutists and the multitude tumulting;
24 and he words to them, Depart:
for the maiden is not dead, but sleeps.
— and they ridicule him.

25 But they eject the multitude;
and he enters and overpowers her by the hand;
and the maiden rises.
26 — and the fame thereof goes to all that land.

YAH SHUA OPENS BLIND EYES

27 And Yah Shua passes there;
and two blind men follow him, crying, and wording,
You, son of David, mercy us.

28 And he goes to the house,
and the blind men come to him:
and Yah Shua words to them,
Trust you that I am able to do this?
They word to him, Yes, Adonay.

29 Then he touches their eyes, wording,
According to your trust, so be it to you.

30 And their eyes open;
and Yah Shua sternly enjoins them,
wording, See that no one knows.
— but they depart
and report about him in all that land.

YAH SHUA EJECTS A DEMON

32 As they go, behold,
they offer him a mute human — demonized:
33 and he ejects the demon and the mute speaks:
and the multitudes marvel, wording,
It was never ever thus manifested in Yisra El.

34 But the Pharisees word,
He ejects demons in the arch of demons.

YAH SHUA HAS A SYMPATHETIC SPLEEN

35 And Yah Shua goes around
all the cities and villages
— doctrinating in their synagogues
and preaching the evangelism of the sovereigndom;
and curing every disease
and every debility among the people:
36 and he sees the multitudes
and has a sympathetic spleen for them
— because they faint
— tossed about as sheep having no shepherd.

37 Then he words to his disciples,
The harvest indeed is vast, but the workers few;
38 so petition Adonay of the harvest
to cast workers into his harvest.

YAH SHUA AUTHORIZES HIS TWELVE DISCIPLES

10 And he calls his twelve disciples to him
and gives them authority against impure spirits
so as to eject them;
and to cure every disease and every debility.

MATTHEW 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE NAMES OF THE TWELVE APOSTLES

2 Now the names of the twelve apostles are these;
The first, *Simon* **Shimon**,
who is called *Peter* **worded Petros**,
and *Andrew* **Andreas** his brother;
James **Yaaqovos** the son of *Zebedee* **Zabdi**,
and *John* **Yahn** his brother;
3 *Philip* **Philippos**, and *Bartholomew* **Bar Talmay**;
Thomas **Taom**,
and *Matthew* **Matthaios** the *publican* **customs agent**;
James **Yaaqovos** the son of *Alphaeus* **Heleph**,
and *Lebbaeus*, whose surname was called *Thaddaeus*;
4 *Simon* the *Canaanite* **Kenaaniy**,
and *Judas* *Iscaiot* **Yah Hudah** the urbanite,
who also betrayed him.

YAH SHUA APOSTOLIZES HIS APOSTLES

5 These twelve *Jesus sent forth* **Yah Shua** apostolized,
and commanded **evangelized** them, saying **wording**,
Go not into the way of the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
and into any city of the *Samaritans* **Shomeroniym**
enter ye not:
6 But go rather
to the lost sheep of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
7 And as ye go, preach, saying **wording**,
The *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of heaven **the heavens**
is at hand **approacheth**.
8 Heal **Cure** the sick **frail**, cleanse **purify** the lepers,
raise the dead, cast out **devils** **eject demons**:
freely **gratuitously** ye have received **taken**,
freely **gratuitously** give.

THE POSSESSIONS OF AN APOSTLE

9 Provide **Acquire** neither gold, nor silver,
nor brass **copper** in your *purses* **girdles**,
10 Nor *scrip* for your journey **wallet in the way**,
neither two *coats* **tonics**, neither shoes, nor yet *staves* **rods**:
for the *workman* **worker** is worthy of his **meat** **nourishment**.

THE HOME OF AN APOSTLE

11 And into whatsoever city or *town* **village** ye shall enter,
enquire **interrogate** who in it is worthy;
and there abide till ye go thence.
12 And when ye *come* **enter** into an house, salute it.
13 And *if* **whenever** **indeed** the house be worthy,
let your *peace* **shalom** come upon it:
but *if* **whenever** it be not worthy,
let your *peace* **return** **shalom** **turn again** to you.
14 And whosoever — **whenever they** shall not receive you,
nor hear your words,
when ye depart out of that house or city,
shake off the dust of your feet.
15 *Verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto you,
It shall be more tolerable
for the land of *Sodom* **Sedom** and *Gomorra* **Amorah**
in the day of judgment, than for that city.
16 Behold, I *send* **apostolize** you *forth*
as sheep in the midst of wolves:
So be ye *therefore* **wise** **thoughtful** as serpents,
and *harmless* **unadulterated** as doves.

YAH SHUA PROPHESES BETRAYAL

17 But *beware of men* **heed humanity**:
for they will *deliver* **shall betray** you
up to the *councils* **sanhedrim**,
and they will **shall** scourge you in their synagogues;
18 And ye shall be brought
before governors and *kings* **sovereigns** for my sake,
for *in* a *testimony* **witness** against them
and the *Gentiles* **goyim**.
19 But when **ever** they *deliver* **betray** you *up*,
take no thought **be not anxious**
how or what ye shall speak:
for it shall be given you in that same hour
what ye shall speak.

20 For it is not ye that speak,
but the Spirit of your Father which speaketh in you.

YAH SHUA PROPHESES FAMILY TRAITORS

21 And the brother shall *deliver up* **betray** the brother
to death,

MATTHAIOS 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE NAMES OF THE TWELVE APOSTLES

2 And these are the names of the twelve apostles:
The first, *Shimon*, worded *Petros*;
and his brother *Andreas*;
Yaaqovos of *Zabdi* and his brother *Yahn*;
3 *Philippos* and *Bar Talmay*;
Taom and *Matthaios* the customs agent;
Yaaqovos of *Heleph* and *Lebbaeus* called *Thaddaeus*;
4 *Shimon* the *Kenaaniy* and *Yah Hudah* the urbanite
— who also betrays him.

YAH SHUA APOSTOLIZES HIS APOSTLES

5 *Yah Shua* apostolizes these twelve
and evangelizes them,
wording, Neither go the way of the *goyim*;
nor enter any city of the *Shomeroniym*:
6 but go rather
to the lost sheep of the house of *Yisra El*:
7 and preach as you go, wording,
The sovereignty of the heavens approaches.
8 Cure the frail; purify the lepers;
raise the dead; eject demons:
gratuitously you have taken; gratuitously give.

THE POSSESSIONS OF AN APOSTLE

9 Acquire neither gold nor silver
nor copper in your girdles
nor wallet in the way
nor two tunics nor shoes nor rod:
for the worker is worthy of his nourishment.

THE HOME OF AN APOSTLE

11 And into whatever city or village you enter,
interrogate who therein is worthy;
and abide there until you go:
and when you enter a house, salute:
and indeed whenever the house is worthy,
your shalom comes upon it:
but whenever it is not worthy
your shalom returns to you:
14 and whoever — whenever they neither receive you
nor hear your words
when you depart from that house or city
shake the dust off your feet.

15 Amen! I word to you,
that in the day of judgment
it becomes more tolerable
for the land of *Sedom* and *Amorah*
than for that city.

16 Behold, I apostolize you as sheep among wolves:
so be thoughtful as serpents,
and unadulterated as doves.

YAH SHUA PROPHESES BETRAYAL

17 But heed humanity:
for they betray you to the sanhedrim;
and they scourge you in their synagogues;
and bring you in front of governors and sovereigns
for my sake,
in a witness against them and the *goyim*.
18 And whenever they betray you
be not anxious how or what to speak:
for in that same hour you are given what to speak:
for it is not you who speaks,
but the Spirit of your Father who speaks in you.

YAH SHUA PROPHESES FAMILY TRAITORS

21 And the brother betrays the brother to death;

MATTHEW 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the father the child:
and the children shall *rise up against* **attack** their parents,
and cause them to be *put to death* **deathified**.
22 And ye shall be hated of all *men* for my name's sake:
but he that *endureth* **abideth** to the *end* **completion/shalom**
shall be saved.
23 But when **ever** they persecute you in this city,
flee ye into another:
for *verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto you,
Ye shall *not* **never no way**
have *gone over* **completed/shalamed** the cities of *Israel* **Yisra El**
till **ever** the Son of *man* **humanity** be come.

SERVICE RANKS

24 The disciple is not above his *master* **doctor**,
nor the servant above his *Lord* **Adoni**.
25 It is enough for the disciple
that he be as his *master* **doctor**,
and the servant as his *Lord* **Adoni**.
If they have called the *master of the house* **housedespotés**
Beelzebub **Baal Zebub**,
how much more shall they *call* them of his household?
26 *Fear* **So awe** them not *therefore*:
for *there is nothing covered* **naught that shall be veiled**,
that shall not be *revealed* **unveiled**;
and *hid* **secret**, that shall not be known.
27 What I *tell* **word to** you in darkness,
that *speak* **say** ye in light:
and what ye hear in the ear,
that *preach* ye upon the housetops.
28 And *fear* **awe** not them which *kill* **slaughter** the body,
but are not able to *kill* **slaughter** the soul:
but rather *fear* **awe** him
which is able to destroy both soul and body
in *hell* **Gay Hinnom/the valley of burning**.
29 Are not **indeed** two sparrows
sold for a *farthing* **an assarion**?
and **not** one of them shall *not* fall on the ground
without your Father.
30 But the very hairs of your head are all numbered.
31 *Fear* **So awe** ye not *therefore*,
ye are of *more value than* **surpass** many sparrows.

HOMOLOGIZING

32 **So all** — Whosoever *therefore* shall *confess* **profess** me
before men **in front of humanity**,
him *will* **shall** I *confess* **profess** also
before **in front of** my Father
which is in *heaven* **the heavens**.
33 But whosoever shall deny me
before men **in front of humanity**,
him *will* **shall** I also deny *before* **in front of** my Father
which is in *heaven* **the heavens**.
34 *Think* **Presume** not
that I am come to *send peace* **put shalom** on earth:
I came not to *send peace* **put shalom**, but a sword.
35 For I am come to *set a man at variance* **alienate a human**
against his father,
and the daughter against her mother,
and the *daughter in law* **bride** against her mother in law.
36 And a *man's* **human's** foes
shall be they of his own household.
37 He that *loveth* **befriendeth** father or mother more than me
is not worthy of me:
and he that *loveth* **befriendeth** son or daughter more than me
is not worthy of me.
38 And he that taketh not his *cross* **stake**,
and followeth after me,
is not worthy of me.

THE SOUL

39 He that findeth his *life* **soul** shall lose it:
and he that loseth his *life* **soul** for my sake shall find it.
40 He that receiveth you receiveth me,
and he that receiveth me
receiveth him that *sent* **apostolized** me.
41 He that receiveth a prophet in the name of a prophet
shall *receive* **take** a prophet's reward;
and he that receiveth a *righteous man* **the just**
in the name of a *righteous man* **the just**
shall *receive* a *righteous man's* **take the just's** reward.

MATTHAIOS 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the father the child:
and the children attack their parents;
and have them deathified:
22 and you are hated of all for sake of my name:
but whoever abides to the completion/shalom is saved.
23 And whenever they persecute you in this city
flee to another.

For Amen! I word to you,
You never no way complete/shalom the cities of Yisra El
until ever the Son of humanity comes.

SERVICE RANKS

24 Neither is the disciple above his doctor
nor the servant above his Adoni:
25 it is enough for the disciple to be as his doctor
and the servant as his adoni.
If they call the housedespotés Baal Zebub,
how much more they them of his household?
26 So awe them not:
for naught becomes veiled, that is not unveiled;
and secret, that is not known.
27 What I word to you in darkness,
say in the light:
and what you hear in the ear,
preach on the housetops.
28 And awe not them who slaughter the body,
but are not able to slaughter the soul:
but rather awe him
who is able to destroy both soul and body
in Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning.
29 Are not indeed two sparrows
sold for an assarion?
and not one of them falls on the ground
without your Father:
30 but the very hairs of your head are all numbered.
31 So awe not: you surpass many sparrows.

HOMOLOGIZING

32 So all —
whoever professes me in front of humanity
I also profess
in front of my Father in the heavens:
33 but whoever denies me in front of humanity
I also deny in front of my Father in the heavens.
34 Presume not that I come to put shalom on earth:
I come not to put shalom — but a sword.
35 For I come to alienate a human against his father
and the daughter against her mother
and the bride against her mother in law:
36 and the foes of a human
are they of his own household.
37 Whoever befriends father or mother more than me
is not worthy of me:
and whoever befriends son or daughter more than me
is not worthy of me:
38 and whoever takes not his stake
and follows after me
is not worthy of me.

THE SOUL

39 Whoever finds his soul loses it;
and whoever loses his soul for my sake finds it:
40 whoever receives you
receives me;
and whoever receives me
receives him who apostolized me;
41 whoever receives a prophet
in the name of a prophet
takes the reward of a prophet;
and whoever receives the just in the name of the just
takes the reward of the just:

MATTHEW 10, 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

42 And whosoever shall give to drink
unto one of these little ones
a cup of cold *water* only in the name of a disciple,
verily I say Amen! I word unto you,
he shall *in no wise never no way* lose his reward.

YAHN THE BAPTIZER IN PRISON

11 And **so be** it came to pass,
when *Jesus Yah Shua* had made an end **completed/shalamed**
of commanding **ordaining** his twelve disciples,
he departed thence
to *teach doctrinate* and to preach in their cities.
2 Now when *John Yahn* had heard in the prison
the works of *Christ the Messiah*,
he sent two of his disciples,
3 And said unto him, Art thou he that should come,
or do **await** we look for another?
4 *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said unto them,
Go and *shew John again evangelize Yahn*
those things which ye do hear and see **observe**:
5 The blind receive their sight **see**, and the lame walk,
the lepers are *cleansed purified*, and the *deaf mute* hear,
the dead are raised up,
and the poor have the gospel preached to them **are evangelized**.
6 — whosoever shall not be *offended scandalized* in me.

THE WITNESS OF YAH SHUA CONCERNING YAHN THE BAPTIZER

7 And as they departed,
Jesus Yah Shua began to say **word** unto the multitudes
concerning *John Yahn*,
What went ye out into the wilderness to see **observe**?
A reed shaken *with by* the wind?
8 But what went ye out for to see?
A man **human**
clothed in *soft raiment effeminate garment*?
behold, they that wear *soft clothing bear the effeminate*
are in *kings' sovereign's* houses.
9 But what went ye out for to see? A prophet?
yea, I say **word** unto you,
and more **superabundantly** than a prophet.
10 For this is he,
of concerning whom it is *written scribed*,
Behold, I *send apostolize my messenger angel*
before in front of thy face,

Yesha Yah 40:3, Malachi 3:1

11 *Verily I say Amen! I word* unto you,
Among them that are *born birthed* of women
there hath not risen
a greater than *John Yahn the Baptist Baptizer*:
notwithstanding but he that is least
in the *kingdom sovereigndom of heaven the heavens*
is greater than he.
12 And from the days of *John Yahn the Baptist Baptizer*
until now
the *kingdom sovereigndom of heaven the heavens*
suffereth violence is taken by force,
and the *violent enforcers* take it *by force*.
13 For all the prophets and the *law torah*
prophesied until *John Yahn*.
14 And if ye will **to** receive it,
this is *Elias Eli Yah*, which was for to come.
15 He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.
16 But whereunto shall I liken this generation?
It is like unto children sitting in the markets,
and calling unto their *fellows comrades*,
17 And saying **wording**,
We have *pipied fluted* unto you,
and ye have not danced;
we have *mourned lamented* unto you,
and ye have not *lamented chopped*.
18 For *John Yahn* came neither eating nor drinking,
and they say **word**, He hath a *devil demon*.
19 The Son of *man humanity* came eating and drinking,
and they say **word**,
Behold, a *man gluttonous human glutton*, and a winebibber,
a friend of *publicans customs agents* and sinners.
But wisdom is justified of her children.

MATTHAIOS 10, 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

42 and whoever gives drink to one of these little ones
— only a cup of cold in the name of a disciple
Amen! I word to you,
he never no way loses his reward.

YAHN THE BAPTIZER IN PRISON

11 And so be it, when Yah Shua completes/shalams
ordaining his twelve disciples,
he departs to doctriinate and to preach in their cities:
2 and in prison
Yahn hears of the works of the Messiah;
and he sends two of his disciples
3 who say to him,
Are you he who comes? Or await we another?
4 Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Go and evangelize Yahn
what you hear and observe:
5 the blind see and the lame walk;
the lepers purify and the mute hear;
the dead rise and the poor are evangelized:
6 and blessed — whoever is not scandalized in me.

THE WITNESS OF YAH SHUA CONCERNING YAHN THE BAPTIZER

7 And as they depart,
Yah Shua begins to word to the multitudes
concerning Yahn,
What went you out into the wilderness to observe?
A reed shaken by the wind?
8 But what went you out to see?
A human clothed in effeminate garment?
Behold, whoever bear the effeminate
are in houses of sovereigns.
9 But what went you out to see?
A prophet?
Yes, I word to you,
and superabundantly more than a prophet.
10 For this is he concerning whom it is scribed,
Behold, I apostolize my angel in front of your face
who prepares your way preceding you.
Yesha Yah 40:3, Malachi 3:1

11 Amen! I word to you,
Among them birthed of women
a greater than Yahn the Baptizer has not risen:
but whoever is least
in the sovereigndom of the heavens
is greater than he.
12 And from the days of Yahn the Baptizer until now
the sovereigndom of the heavens is taken by force:
and the enforcers take it.
13 For all the prophets and the torah
prophesied until Yahn:
14 and if you will to receive it,
this is Eli Yah, who was to come.
15 Whoever has ears to hear, hear!
16 But to what liken I this generation?
It is likened to children sitting in the markets
and calling to their comrades
and wording,
We flute to you and you dance not;
we lament to you and you chop not.
17
18 For Yahn comes neither eating nor drinking
and they word, He has a demon:
19 the Son of humanity comes eating and drinking
and they word,
Behold, a human glutton and a winebibber,
a friend of customs agents and sinners.
But wisdom is justified of her children.

MATTHEW 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH SHUA REPROACHES THE CITIES

20 Then began he to *upbraid* **reproach** the cities
wherein most of his *mighty works* **dynamis**
were done **became**,
because they repented not:
21 Woe unto thee, Chorazin!
woe unto thee, *Bethsaida* **Beth Sayad!**
for if the *mighty works* **dynamis**,
which were done **became** in you,
had been done **become** in Tyre **Sor** and Sidon,
they would **should** have repented long ago
in sackcloth **saq** and ashes.
22 *But I say* **Moreover I word** unto you,
It shall be more tolerable for Tyre **Sor** and Sidon
at **in** the day of judgment, than for you.
23 And thou, *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**,
which art exalted unto **the** heaven,
shalt be brought down to *hell* **sheol/hades**:
for if the *mighty works* **dynamis**,
which have been done **became** in thee,
had been done **become** in Sodom **Sedom**,
it would **should** have remained **abode** until this day.
24 *But I say* **Moreover I word** unto you,
That it shall be more tolerable
for the land of *Sodom* **Sedom** in the day of judgment,
than for thee.

YAH SHUA HOMOLOGIZES THE FATHER

25 At that *time* **season**,
Jesus **Yah Shua** answered and said,
I *thank* **confess** thee, O Father,
Lord **Adonay** of **the** heaven and **the** earth,
because thou hast *hid* **secreted** these *things*
from the wise and *prudent* **comprehending**,
and hast *revealed* **unveiled** them unto babes.
26 *Even so* **Yes**, Father:
for so **thus** it *seemeth good* **became well—approved**
in thy sight **front of thee**.
27 All *things* are delivered unto me of my Father:
and no *man* **one** knoweth the Son, *but* **except** the Father;
neither knoweth any *man* **one** the Father,
save **except** the Son,
and he to whomsoever the Son *will reveal* **shall unveil** him.

THE INVITATION OF YAH SHUA TO REST

28 Come unto me,
all ye that labour and are *heavy laden* **overburdened**,
and I *will give you* **shall rest you**.
29 Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me;
for I am meek and *lowly* **humble** in heart:
and ye shall find rest unto your souls.
30 For my yoke is *easy* **kind**, and my burden is light.

YAH SHUA, ADONAY OF THE SHABBATH

12 At that *time* **season**
Jesus **Yah Shua** went on the *sabbath day* **shabbath**
through the *corn* **spores**;
and his disciples were an hungred,
and began to pluck the *ears of corn* **cobs** and to eat.
2 But when the Pharisees saw it, they said unto him,
Behold,
thy disciples do that which is not *lawful* **allowed** to do
upon the sabbath day **in shabbath**.
3 But he said unto them,
Have ye not read what David did,
when he was an hungred, and they that were with him;
4 How he entered into the house of *God* **Elohim**,
and did eat the *shewbread* **prothesis bread**,
which was not *lawful* **allowed** for him to eat,
neither for them which were with him,
but **except** only for the priests?
5 Or have ye not read in the *law* **torah**,
how that on the *sabbath days* **shabbaths**
the priests in the *temple* **priestal precinct**
profane the *sabbath* **shabbath**,
and are *blameless* **unaccused**?
6 But I say **word** unto you,
That *in this place* is one *greater than the temple*
a greater than the priestal precinct is here.
7 But if ye had known what this *meaneth* **be**,
I will have mercy, and not sacrifice,

MATTHAIOS 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH SHUA REPROACHES THE CITIES

20 Then he begins to reproach the cities
wherein most of his dynamis became,
because they repent not.
21 Woe to you, Chorazin!
Woe to you, Beth Sayad!
for if the dynamis that became in you,
had become in Sor and Sidon,
they had repented long ago in saq and ashes.
22 Moreover I word to you,
It becomes more tolerable for Sor and Sidon
in the day of judgment, than for you.
23 And you, Kaphar Nachum
— exalted to the heavens to descend to sheol/hades:
for if the dynamis that became in you
had become in Sedom,
it had abode until this day.
24 Moreover I word to you,
that in the day of judgment
it becomes more tolerable for the land of Sedom,
than for you.

YAH SHUA HOMOLOGIZES THE FATHER

25 At that season, Yah Shua answers, saying,
I confess you, O Father,
Adonay of the heavens and the earth,
because you secrete these
from the wise and comprehending
and unveil them to babes.
26 Yes, Father:
for thus it becomes well—approved in front of you.
27 All are delivered to me by my Father:
and neither knows anyone the Son,
except the Father;
nor knows anyone the Father, except the Son
— and he to whomever the Son wills to unveil him.

THE INVITATION OF YAH SHUA TO REST

28 Come to me
all you belabored and overburdened
and I rest you:
29 take my yoke upon you and learn of me;
for I am meek and humble in heart:
and find rest to your souls:
30 for my yoke is kind and my burden light.

YAH SHUA, ADONAY OF THE SHABBATH

12 At that season, on the shabbath,
Yah Shua goes through the spores;
and his disciples famish
and begin to pluck the cobs and eat.
2 And the Pharisees see, and say to him,
Behold, your disciples do
what is not allowed to do in shabbath.
3 And he says to them,
Read you not what David did
when he famished — he and those with him;
4 how he entered the house of Elohim
and ate the prothesis bread
— which neither he is allowed to eat
nor them with him
— except only the priests?
5 Or read you not in the torah,
how that in the shabbaths
the priests in the priestal precinct
profane the shabbath and are unaccused?
6 But I word to you,
That a greater than the priestal precinct is here.
7 But if you had known what this is,
I will mercy, and not sacrifice,

MATTHEW 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 ye would **should** not
have **condemned** **adjudged** the **guiltless** **unaccused**.
For the Son of *man* **humanity** is *Lord* **Adonay**
even of the *sabbath day* **shabbath**.

Hoshea 6:6

YAH SHUA HEALS ON THE SHABBATH

9 And when he was departed thence,
he went into their synagogue:
10 And, behold,
there was a *man* **human** which had his hand withered.
And they asked him, *saying* **wording**,
Is it *lawful* **allowed**
to *heal* **cure** on the *sabbath days* **shabbaths**?
that they might accuse him.
11 And he said unto them,
What *man* **human** shall there be *among of* you,
that shall have one sheep,
and *if whenever* it fall into a *pit* **cistern**
on the *sabbath day* **shabbaths**,
will **shall** he not *lay hold on* **indeed, overpower** it,
and lift it out?

12 **So** How much *then*
is a man better than **a human surpasseth** a sheep?
Wherefore **So** it is *lawful* **allowable** to do well
on the *sabbath days* **shabbaths**.

13 Then *saith* **wordeth** he to the *man* **human**,
Stretch forth **Spread** thine hand.
And he *stretched* **spreads** it forth;
and it was restored whole, like as the other.
14 *Then* **And** the Pharisees went out,
and *held a* **took** council against him,
how they might destroy him.

YAH SHUA CURES THE MULTITUDES

15 But when *Jesus* **Yah Shua** knew it,
he withdrew himself from thence:
and *great vast* multitudes followed him,
and he *healed* **cured** them all;
16 And *charged* **admonished** them
that they should not make him *known* **manifest**:
17 That it might be fulfilled/**shalamed**
which was *spoken* **rhetorized**
by *Esaias* **through Yesha Yah** the prophet, *saying* **wording**,
18 Behold my *servant* **lad**, whom I have chosen;
my beloved,
in of whom my soul *is well pleased* **well—approveth**:
I *will* **shall** put my spirit upon him,
and he shall shew judgment to the *Gentiles* **goyim**.
19 He shall not strive, nor cry;
neither shall any *man* **one** hear his voice
in the *streets* **broadways**.
20 A *bruised* **crushed** reed shall he not break,
and smoking *flax* **linen** shall he not quench,
till he send forth judgment unto *victory* **triumph**.
21 And in his name shall the *Gentiles* **trust** **goyim hope**.

Yesha Yah 42:1—4

22 Then was *brought* **offered** unto him
one *possessed with a devil* **demonized**,
blind, and *dumb* **mute**:
and he *healed* **cured** him,
insomuch that
the blind and *dumb* **mute** both spake and *saw* **observed**.
23 And all the *people* **multitude** were *amazed* **astounded**,
and *said* **worded**, Is not this the son of David?

PHARISEES BLASPHEME THE HOLY SPIRIT

24 But when the Pharisees heard it, they said,
This *fellow* doth not *cast out devils* **eject demons**,
but by Beelzebub **except in Baal Zebub**
the *prince* **arch** of the *devils* **demons**.
25 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** knew their *thoughts* **deliberations**,
and said unto them,
Every *kingdom* **sovereigndom** divided against itself
is brought to desolation **shall desolate**;
and every city or house divided against itself
shall not stand:
26 And if Satan *cast out* **eject** Satan,
he *is divided* **divideth** against himself;
so how shall *then* his *kingdom* **sovereigndom** stand?
27 And if I *by Beelzebub* **in Baal Zebub**
cast out devils **eject demons**,

MATTHAIOS 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 you had not adjudged the unaccused.
For the Son of humanity is Adonay
even of the shabbath.

Hoshea 6:6

YAH SHUA HEALS ON THE SHABBATH

9 And he departs from there
and enters their synagogue:
10 and behold, a human whose hand is withered.

And they ask him, *wording*,
Is it allowed to cure in the shabbaths?
— to accuse him.

11 And he says to them,
What human of you, having one sheep,
and whenever it falls into a cistern in the shabbaths
overpowers he not indeed it and lifts it out?
12 So how much a human surpasses a sheep?
So it is allowed to do well in the shabbaths.

13 Then he words to the human, Spread your hand.
— and he spreads; and it restores whole, as the other.

14 And the Pharisees go,
and take council against him on how to destroy him.

YAH SHUA CURES THE MULTITUDES

15 And Yah Shua knows
and withdraws himself from there:
and vast multitudes follow him and he cures them all:
and admonishes them to not make him manifest:
16 to fulfill/shalam that
17 rhetorized through Yesha Yah the prophet, *wording*,
18 Behold my lad, whom I chose;
my beloved of whom my soul well—approves:
I put my spirit on him
and he shows judgment to the goyim:
19 he neither strives, nor cries;
nor anyone hear his voice in the broadways:
20 he neither breaks a crushed reed
nor quenches a smoking linen
until he sends judgment to triumph:
and in his name, the goyim hope.

Yesha Yah 42:1—4

21 Then they offer him
someone demonized, blind and mute;
and he cures him
so that the blind and mute both speaks and observes.

22 And all the multitude is astounded,
and word, Is not this the son of David?

PHARISEES BLASPHEME THE HOLY SPIRIT

23 But the Pharisees hear, and say,
This *one* ejects not demons,
except in Baal Zebub the arch of demons.

24 And Yah Shua knows their deliberations,
and says to them,
Every *sovereigndom* divided against itself
desolates;
and every city or house divided against itself
stands not:
25 and if Satan ejects Satan,
he divides against himself:
so how stands his sovereigndom?

26 And if I eject demons in Baal Zebub,

MATTHEW 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

by in whom do your children cast sons eject them out?
Therefore So they shall be your judges.
28 But if I cast out devils **eject demons**
by in the Spirit of God **Elohim**,
then the **kingdom sovereignty of God Elohim**
is come unto **has arrived upon** you.
29 how can **any one** enter into a strong man's house,
and **spoil plunder his goods vessels**,
except **unless** he first bind the strong man?
and then he **will spoil shall plunder** his house.
30 He that is not with me is against me;
and he that gathereth not with me scattereth *abroad*.
THE UNFORGIVEN SIN
31 Wherefore **Because of this** I say **word** unto you,
All manner of **Every** sin and blasphemy
shall be forgiven unto **men humanity**;
but the blasphemy **against of the Holy Ghost Spirit**
shall not be forgiven unto **men humanity**.
32 And whosoever **speaketh sayeth** a word
against the Son of **man humanity**,
it shall be forgiven him:
but whosoever **speaketh sayeth** against the Holy **Ghost Spirit**,
it shall not be forgiven him,
neither in this **world eon**,
neither in the **world to come about to be**.
33 Either make the tree good, and his fruit good;
or else make the tree **corrupt putrefied**,
and his fruit **corrupt putrefied**:
for the tree is known by his fruit.
YAH SHUA DENOUNCES THE SCRIBES AND PHARISEES
34 O **generation progeny** of vipers,
how can ye, being evil, speak good things?
for out of the **super** abundance of the heart
the mouth speaketh.
35 A good **man human**
out of the good treasure of the heart
bringeth forth good things ejecteth good:
and an evil **man human** out of the evil treasure
bringeth forth evil things ejecteth evil.
36 But I say **word** unto you,
That every idle **word rhema**
that men whatever humanity shall speak,
they shall **give account render word**
thereof concerning it
in the day of judgment.
37 For by thy words thou shalt be justified,
and by thy words thou shalt be **condemned adjudged**.
YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION
38 Then **certain some** of the scribes and of the Pharisees
answered, **saying wording, Master Doctor**,
we **would will to** see a sign from thee.
39 But he answered and said unto them,
An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign;
and there shall no sign be given to it,
but except the sign of the prophet **Jonas Yonah**:
40 For **exactly as Jonas Yonah**
was three days and three nights
in the **whale's monster's** belly;
so thus shall the Son of **man humanity**
be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.
YAH SHUA PROPHESES CONDEMNATION
41 **The men of Nineveh Men — Nineviy**
shall rise in judgment with this generation,
and shall condemn it:
because they repented
at in the preaching of **Jonas Yonah**; and, behold,
a greater much more than **Jonas Yonah** is here.
42 **The queen sovereignty** of the south
shall rise **up** in the judgment with this generation,
and shall condemn it:
for she came
from the **uttermost parts extremities** of the earth
to hear the wisdom of **Solomon Shelomoh**; and, behold,
a greater much more than **Solomon Shelomoh** is here.
IMPURE SPIRITS
43 When **ever** the **unclean impure** spirit
is gone out of a **man human**,
he **walketh passeth** through **dry waterless** places,
seeking rest, and findeth none.

MATTHAIOS 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

in whom do your sons eject?
So they become your judges.
28 But if I eject demons in the Spirit of Elohim,
then the sovereignty of Elohim arrives upon you.
29 How can any enter the house of a strong man,
and plunder his vessels,
unless he first bind the strong man?
— and then he plunders his house.
30 Whoever is not with me, is against me;
and whoever gathers not with me scatters.
THE UNFORGIVEN SIN
31 Because of this I word to you,
Every sin and blasphemy is forgiven humanity:
but the blasphemy of the Holy Spirit
is not forgiven humanity:
and whoever says a word
against the Son of humanity,
is forgiven:
but whoever says against the Holy Spirit,
is not forgiven
— neither in this eon nor in the about to be.
33 Either make the tree good and his fruit good;
or else make the tree putrefied and his fruit putrefied:
— for the tree is known by its fruit.
YAH SHUA DENOUNCES THE SCRIBES AND PHARISEES
34 O progeny of vipers,
how can you, being evil, speak good?
For the mouth speaks
from the super abundance of the heart:
35 a good human from the good treasure of the heart
ejects good:
and an evil human from the evil treasure
ejects evil.
36 But I word to you,
That every idle rhema — whatever humanity speaks,
renders word concerning it in the day of judgment:
for by your words you are justified;
and by your words you are adjudged.
YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION
38 Then some of the scribes and Pharisees answer,
wording, Doctor, we will to see a sign from you.
39 But he answers them, saying,
An evil and adulterous generation seeks after a sign;
and no sign is given
except the sign of the prophet Yonah:
40 for exactly as Yonah
was three days and three nights in the belly of the monster;
thus is the Son of humanity
three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.
YAH SHUA PROPHESES CONDEMNATION
41 Men — Nineviy
rise in judgment with this generation
and condemn it:
because they repented in the preaching of Yonah;
and behold, much more than Yonah is here.
42 The sovereignty of the south
rises in the judgment with this generation,
and condemns it:
for she came from the extremities of the earth
to hear the wisdom of Shelomoh;
and behold, much more than Shelomoh is here.
IMPURE SPIRITS
43 Whenever the impure spirit comes from a human
he passes through waterless places,
seeks rest, and finds none.

MATTHEW 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

44 Then he saith wordeth,
I will **shall** return into my house from whence I came out;
and when he is come,
he findeth it empty, swept, and *garnished* **adorned**.
45 Then goeth he,
and taketh with himself seven other spirits
more *wicked* **evil** than himself,
and they enter *in* and *dwelt* **settle** there:
and the *last* **final** state of that *man* **human**
is **becometh** worse than the first.
Even so **thus**
shall it be also unto this *wicked* **evil** generation.

RELATIONSHIP WITH YAH SHUA

46 While he yet *talked* **spoke** to the *people* **multitudes**,
behold, his mother and his brethren stood without,
desiring **seeking** to speak with him.
47 Then **And some** one said unto him, Behold,
thy mother and thy brethren stand without,
desiring **seeking** to speak with thee.
48 But he answered and said unto him that told him,
Who is my mother? and who are my brethren?
49 And he *stretched forth* **spread** his hand
toward his disciples, and said,
Behold my mother and my brethren!
50 For whosoever shall do the will of my Father
which is in *heaven* **the heavens**,
the same is my brother, and sister, and mother.

THE PARABLES OF THE SOVEREIGNDOM

13 The same day went *Jesus* **Yah Shua** out of the house,
and sat by the sea side.
2 And *great* **vast** multitudes
were gathered together unto him,
so that he *went* **embarked** into a *ship* **sailer**, and sat;
and the whole multitude stood on the shore.

THE PARABLE OF THE SPORER

3 And he spake *many things* **much** unto them in parables,
saying **wording**,
Behold, a *sower* **sporer** went forth to sow **spore**;
4 And *when he sowed* **in his sporing**,
some *seeds* **indeed** fell by the way side,
and the *fowls* **flyers** came and devoured them *up*:
5 Some **Others** fell upon *stony places* **rocky**,
where they had not much *earth* **soil**:
and *forthwith* **straightway** they sprung *up*,
because they had no *deepness* **depth** of *earth* **soil**:
6 And when the sun was *up* **rose**, they were scorched;
and because they had no root, they withered *away*.
7 And *some* **others** fell among thorns;
and the thorns *sprung up* **ascended**, and choked them:
8 But other fell into good *ground* **soil**,
and *brought forth* **gave** fruit,
some **indeed** an hundredfold,
some sixtyfold, some thirtyfold.
9 Who hath ears to hear, let him hear.

WHY PARABLES?

10 And the disciples came, and said unto him,
Why speakest thou unto them in parables?
11 He answered and said unto them,
Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries
of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**,
but to them it is not given.
12 For whosoever hath, to him shall be given,
and he shall *have more abundance* **superabound**:
but whosoever hath not,
from him shall be taken away even that he hath.
13 *Therefore* **So** speak I to them in parables:
because **in observing**, they *seeing* **see** **observe** not;
and hearing they hear not,
neither do they *understand* **comprehend**.
14 And in them
is fulfilled/*shalamed* the prophecy of *Esaías* **Yesha Yah**,
which *saith* **wordeth**,
By hearing ye shall hear,
and shall *not understand* **never no way comprehend**;
and *seeing* **observing**, ye shall *see* **observe**,
and shall *not* **never no way** perceive:
15 For this people's heart is *waxed* **gross** **calloused**,
and their ears are dull of hearing,

MATTHAIOS 12, 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

44 Then he words, I return to my house whence I come.
— and when he comes
he finds it empty, swept and adorned.
45 Then he goes and takes seven other spirits with him
— more evil than himself;
and they enter and settle there:
and the final state of that human
becomes worse than the first.
Even so be it also to this evil generation.

RELATIONSHIP WITH YAH SHUA

46 And he still speaks to the multitudes;
and behold, his mother and his brothers stand outside
seeking to speak with him:
47 and someone says to him, Behold,
your mother and your brothers stand outside,
seeking to speak with you.
48 But he answers, saying to him who told him,
Who is my mother? And who are my brothers?
49 — and he spreads his hand toward his disciples
and says, Behold my mother and my brothers!
50 For whoever does the will
of my Father in the heavens,
the same is my brother and sister and mother.

THE PARABLES OF THE SOVEREIGNDOM

13 And in that day Yah Shua comes from the house
and sits by the sea side:
2 and vast multitudes gather together to him;
and so he embarks in a sailer, and sits;
and the whole multitude stands on the shore.

THE PARABLE OF THE SPORER

3 And he speaks much to them in parables,
wording, Behold, a sporer comes to spore:
4 and in his sporing,
some indeed falls by the way side;
and the flyers come and devour them.
5 Others fall on rocky, where they have not much soil;
and straightway they spring up
because they have no depth of soil:
6 and the sun rises and they scorch;
and because they have no root, they wither.
7 And others fall among thorns;
and the thorns ascend and choke them.
8 And others fall on good soil and give fruit:
some indeed a hundredfold;
some sixtyfold; some thirtyfold.
9 Whoever has ears to hear, Hear.

WHY PARABLES?

10 And the disciples come and say to him,
Why speak you to them in parables?
11 He answers them, saying,
Because you are given to know the mysteries
of the sovereigndom of the heavens;
but they are not given:
12 for whoever has, is given; and superabounds:
but whoever has not,
even what he has is taken away.
13 So I speak to them in parables:
because in observing, they observe not;
and hearing, they hear not;
and they comprehend not.
14 And in them is fulfilled/*shalamed*
the prophecy of Yesha Yah
— which words, By hearing you hear,
and no way comprehend;
— and by observing you observe,
and no way perceive:
15 for this people callous their heart
and dull their ears from hearing

MATTHEW 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and their eyes they have *closed shut*;
lest at any time **ever** they should see with their eyes
and hear with their ears,
and should *understand comprehend* with their heart,
and should *be converted turn around*,
and I should heal them.

Yesha Yah 6:9,10

16 But blessed are your eyes, for they see **observe**:
and your ears, for they hear.

17 For *verily I say Amen! I word* unto you,
That many prophets and *righteous men just*
have *desired panted*
to see **observe** those *things* which ye see,
and have not seen them;
and to hear those *things* which ye hear,
and have not heard them.

18 **So** Hear ye *therefore* the parable of the sower **sporer**.
THE PARABLE EXPLAINED

19 When any one
heareth the word of the **kingdom sovereignty**,
and *understandeth comprehendeth* it not,
then cometh the *wicked evil* one,
and *catcheth away seizeth* that
which was *sown spored* in his heart.
This is he
which *received seed was sown spored* by the way side.

20 But he that *received the seed spored*
into the *stony places rocky*,
the same is he that heareth the word,
and *anon straightway with joy receiveth cheer taketh* it;
Yet hath he not root in himself,
but *dureth for a while is temporary*:
for when tribulation or persecution *ariseth become*
because of the word,
by and by straightway he is *offended scandalized*.

22 He also that *received seed among spored in* the thorns
is he that heareth the word;
and the *care anxiety* of this *world eon*,
and the deceitfulness of riches,
choke strangle the word, and he becometh unfruitful.

23 But he that *received seed spored* into the good *ground soil*
is he that heareth the word,
and *understandeth it comprehendeth*;
which *also now* beareth fruit,
and *bringeth forth produceth*,
some **indeed** an hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty.

THE PARABLE OF THE DARNEL AND SPERMA

24 Another parable *put set* he forth unto them,
saying wording,
The **kingdom sovereignty** of *heaven the heavens*
is likened unto a *man human*
which *sowed spored good seed sperma* in his field:
25 But while *men humanity* slept,
his enemy came
and *sowed tares spored darnel* among the *wheat grain*,
and went his way.

26 But when the *blade was sprung up herbage sprouted*,
and *brought forth produced* fruit,
then *appeared manifested the tares darnel* also.

27 So the servants of the *householder housesdespotes*
came and said unto him, *Sir Lord Adoni*,
didst not **indeed** thou *sow spore*
good *seed sperma* in thy field?
28 *from So* whence *then* hath it *tares darnel*?
He said unto them,
An enemy — **a human** hath done this.
The servants said unto him,
So Wilt thou *then* that we go and gather them *up*?
29 But he said, *Nay*;
lest while **ever** ye gather *up the tares darnel*,
ye *root up uproot* also the *wheat grain*
with them simultaneously.

30 Let **Allow** both grow together until the harvest:
and in the *time season* of harvest
I *will shall* say to the *reapers harvesters*,
Gather ye together first the *tares darnel*,
and bind them in bundles to burn them:
but gather **together** the *wheat grain*
into my *barn granary*.

MATTHAIOS 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and shut their eyes
— lest ever they see with their eyes
and hear with their ears
and comprehend with their heart
and turn around; and I heal them.

Yesha Yah 6:9,10

16 But blessed — your eyes; for they observe:
and your ears; for they hear.

17 For Amen! I word to you,
That many prophets and just
panted to observe what you see;
and saw them not:
and to hear what you hear;
and heard them not:
18 so hear the parable of the sporer.
THE PARABLE EXPLAINED

19 When anyone hears the word of the sovereignty
and comprehends not,
the evil one comes
and seizes what is spored in his heart:
this is that spored by the way side.

20 And that spored on the rocky
is whoever hears the word:
and straightway takes it with cheer;
21 yet has he no root in himself but is temporary:
for when tribulation or persecution become
because of the word,
he is straightway scandalized.

22 And that spored in the thorns
is whoever hears the word:
and the anxiety of this eon
and the deceitfulness of riches
strangle the word;
and he becomes unfruitful.

23 And that spored in the good soil
is whoever hears the word and comprehends:
and now bears fruit and produces
— some indeed a hundredfold;
some sixty; some thirty.

THE PARABLE OF THE DARNEL AND SPERMA

24 He sets them another parable, wording,
The sovereignty of the heavens
is likened to a human
who sows good sperma in his field:
25 and while humanity sleeps
his enemy comes and sows darnel among the grain
and goes his way:
26 and when the herbage sprouts and produces fruit,
then the darnel also manifests:
27 and the servants of the housesdespotes
come and say to him, Adoni,
spored you not indeed good sperma in your field?
So why has it darnel?

28 He says to them, An enemy — a human did this.
The servants say to him,
So will you that we go and gather them?

29 And he says, No;
lest in gathering the darnel
you also uproot the grain simultaneously:
30 allow both to grow together until the harvest:
and in the season of harvest I say to the harvesters,
First gather the darnel
and bind them in bundles to burn:
and gather the grain into my granary.

MATTHEW 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE PARABLE OF THE MUSTARD KERNEL

31 Another parable *put set* he forth unto them,
saying **wording**,
The kingdom **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**
is like to a *grain* **kernal** of mustard seed,
which a *man* **human** took, and *sowed* **spored** in his field:
32 Which indeed is the least of all *seeds* **spermas**:
but when **ever** it is grown,
it is the greatest among herbs, and becometh a tree,
so that the *birds* **flyers** of the *air* **heavens**
come and *lodge* **nest** in the branches thereof.

THE PARABLE OF FERMENTATION

33 Another parable spake he unto them;
The kingdom **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**
is like unto *leaven* **fermentation**, which a woman took,
and hid in three *measures* **seahs** of *meal* **flour**,
till the whole was *leavened* **fermented**.

THE PURPOSE OF PARABLES

34 All these *things* spake *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
unto the multitude in parables;
and *without* **apart from** a parable
spake he not unto them:
35 That it might be fulfilled/**shalamed**
which was *spoken by* **rhetorized through** the prophet,
saying **wording**, I *will* **shall** open my mouth in parables;
I *will* **shall** utter *things* **those**
which have been *kept secret* **secreted**
from the foundation of the world cosmos.

Psalm 78:2

THE PARABLE OF THE DARNEL AND SPERMA EXPLAINED

36 Then *Jesus sent* **Yah Shua released** the multitude away,
and went into the house:
and his disciples came unto him, *saying* **wording**,
Declare unto us the parable of the *tares* **darnel** of the field.
37 He answered and said unto them,
He that *soweth* **sporeth** the good *seed* **sperma**
is the Son of *man* **humanity**;
38 The field is the *world* **cosmos**;
the good *seed* **sperma**
are the *children* **sons** of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**;
but the *tares* **darnel**
are the *children* **sons** of the *wicked one* **evil**;
39 The enemy that *sowed* **spored** them is *the devil* **Diabolos**;
the harvest is the *end* **completion/shalom** of the *world* **eon**;
and the *reapers* **harvesters** are the angels.
40 **So exactly** As *therefore* the *tares* **darnel** are gathered
and burned in the fire;
so **thus** shall it be
in the *end* **completion/shalom** of this *world* **eon**.
41 The Son of *man* **humanity**
shall *send forth* **apostolize** his angels,
and they shall gather out of his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
all *things* **those** that *offend* **scandalize**,
and them which *do iniquity* **violate the torah**;
42 And shall cast them into a furnace of fire:
there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.
43 Then shall the *righteous* **just**
shine forth **resplend** as the sun
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of their Father.
Who hath ears to hear, let him hear.

Apocalypse 14:14—20

THE PARABLE OF THE SECRETED TREASURE

44 Again,
the kingdom **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**
is like unto treasure *hid* **secreted** in a field;
the which when a *man* **human** hath found,
he *hideth* **secreteth**,
and for *joy* **cheer** thereof
goeth and selleth all *that* — **as much as** he hath,
and *buyeth* **marketeth** that field.

THE PARABLE OF THE PRECIOUS PEARL

45 Again,
the kingdom **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**
is like unto a *merchant man* **human merchant**,
seeking goodly pearls:
46 Who, when he had found one pearl
of great price **vastly precious**,
went and sold all *that* — **as much as** he had,
and *bought* **marketed** it.

MATTHAIOS 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE PARABLE OF THE MUSTARD KERNEL

31 He sets them another parable, wording,
The sovereigndom of the heavens
is likened to a kernal of mustard;
which a human takes and spores in his field:
32 which indeed is the least of all spermas:
but whenever it is grown
it is the greatest among herbs;
and becomes a tree:
so that the flyers of the heavens
come and nest in the branches thereof.

THE PARABLE OF FERMENTATION

33 He speaks another parable to them:
The sovereigndom of the heavens
is likened to fermentation;
that a woman takes and hides in three seahs of flour
until the whole is fermented.

THE PURPOSE OF PARABLES

34 Yah Shua speaks all these to the multitude
in parables;
and speaks not to them apart from a parable:
35 to fulfill/shalam
that rhetorized through the prophet,
wording, I open my mouth in parables:
I utter those which have been secreted
from the foundation of the cosmos.

Psalm 78:2

THE PARABLE OF THE DARNEL AND SPERMA EXPLAINED

36 Then Yah Shua releases the multitude
and goes in the house:
and his disciples come to him, wording,
Declare to us the parable of the darnel of the field.
37 He answers them, saying,
He who spores the good sperma
is the Son of humanity:
38 the field is the cosmos;
the good sperma are the sons of the sovereigndom;
and the darnel are the sons of the evil;
39 the enemy who spores them is Diabolos;
the harvest is the completion/shalom of the eon;
and the harvesters are the angels:
40 so exactly as the darnel are gathered
and burned in the fire,
so be it in the completion/shalom of this eon.
41 The Son of humanity apostolizes his angels,
and from his sovereigndom
they gather all who scandalize
and who violate the torah;
42 and cast them into a furnace of fire:
and there becomes wailing and gnashing of teeth.
43 Then the just resplend as the sun
in the sovereigndom of their Father.
Whoever has ears to hear, hear.

Apocalypse 14:14—20

THE PARABLE OF THE SECRETED TREASURE

44 Again, the sovereigndom of the heavens
is likened to treasure secreted in a field:
which, when a human finds, he secretes;
and for cheer thereof
goes and sells all — as much as he has,
and markets that field.

THE PARABLE OF THE PRECIOUS PEARL

45 Again, the sovereigndom of the heavens
is likened to a human merchant
seeking goodly pearls:
46 who, when he finds one pearl, vastly precious,
goes and sells all — as much as he has
and markets it.

MATTHEW 13, 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE PARABLE OF THE NET

47 Again,
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**
is like unto a net, that was cast into the sea,
and gathered **together** of every *kind* **genos**:
48 Which, when it was full, they drew to shore,
and sat down, and gathered the good into vessels,
but cast the *bad* **putrefied** away.

THE COMPLETION/SHALOM OF THE EON

49 So shall it be
at the *end* **completion/shalom** of the *world* **eon**:
the angels shall come forth,
and sever **set apart** the *wicked* **evil** from among the just,
50 And shall cast them into the furnace of fire:
there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.
51 *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua wordeth** unto them,
Have ye *understood* **comprehended** all these *things*?
They say **word** unto him, Yea, *Lord* **Adonay**.

THE PARABLE OF THE HOUSEDESPTOTES

52 Then **And** said he unto them,
Therefore **So** every scribe which is *instructed* **discipled**
unto the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**
is like unto a *man that is an householder* **human housesdesptotes**,
which *bringeth forth* **ejecteth** out of his treasure
things new and old.

YAH SHUA REJECTED IN HIS FATHERLAND

53 And it *came to pass* **became**,
that when *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
had *finished* **completed/shalamed** these parables,
he departed thence.
54 And when he was come
into his *own country* **fatherland**,
he *taught* **doctrinated** them in their synagogue,
insomuch that they were astonished, and *said* **worded**,
Whence hath this man this wisdom,
and these *mighty works* **dynamis**?
55 Is not this the carpenter's son?
is not his mother *called* **Mary indeed worded Miryam**?
and his brethren, *James* **Yaaqovos**, and *Joses* **Yoses**,
and *Simon* **Shimon**, and *Judas* **Yah Hudah**?
56 And his sisters, are they not **indeed** all with us?
So Whence *then* hath this man all these *things*?
57 And they were *offended* **scandalized** in him.
But *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto them,
A prophet is not *without honour* **dishonoured**,
save **except** in his own *country* **fatherland**,
and in his own house.
58 And he did not many *mighty works* **dynamis** there
because of their *unbelief* **trustlessness**.

YAHN THE BAPTIZER BEHEADED

14

At that *time* **season**
Herod the tetrarch heard of the fame of *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
2 And said unto his *servants* **lads**,
This is *John* **Yahn** the *Baptist* **Baptizer**;
he is risen from the dead;
and *therefore* **because of this**
mighty works **dynamis**
do shew forth themselves **energizeth** in him.
3 For Herod had *laid hold on* **John overpowered Yahn**,
and bound him,
and put him in *prison* **a guardhouse** for Herodias' sake,
his brother *Philip's wife* **Philippos' woman**.
4 For *John* **Yahn** *said* **worded** unto him,
It is not *lawful* **allowed** for thee to have her.
5 And when he *would* **willed**
to have put slaughtered him *to death*,
he *feared* **awed** the multitude,
because they *counted* **regarded** him as a prophet.
6 But when Herod's birthday was *kept* **brought**,
the daughter of Herodias
danced before them **in their midst**,
and pleased Herod.
7 Whereupon he *promised* **professed** with an oath
to give her whatsoever she *would* **should** ask.
8 And she,
being *before instructed* **previously instigated**
of *by* her mother, said,
Give me here *John Baptist's* **Yahn the Baptizer's** head
in **on a charger** **platter**.

MATTHAIOS 13, 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE PARABLE OF THE NET

47 Again, the sovereigndom of the heavens
is likened to a net cast into the sea:
and gathers together of every genos:
48 which, when it fills full, they draw to shore;
and sit down, and gather the good in vessels,
but cast out the putrefied.

THE COMPLETION/SHALOM OF THE EON

49 So be it at the completion/shalom of the eon:
the angels come
and set the evil apart from among the just
and cast them into the furnace of fire:
50 there becomes wailing and gnashing of teeth.

51 Yah Shua words to them,
Comprehend you all these?

They word to him, Yes, Adonay.

THE PARABLE OF THE HOUSEDESPTOTES

52 And he says to them,
So every scribe
discipled to the sovereigndom of the heavens
is likened to a human housesdesptotes
who ejects new and old from his treasure.

YAH SHUA REJECTED IN HIS FATHERLAND

53 And so be it,
when Yah Shua completes/shalams these parables
he departs from there
54 and comes to his fatherland
and doctrinates in their synagogue,
so that they are astonished, and word,
Whence has this man this wisdom
and these dynamis?
55 Is not this the son of the carpenter?
Is not his mother indeed worded Miryam?
And his brothers, Yaaqovos and Yoses
and Shimon and Yah Hudah?
56 And his sisters, are they not indeed all with us?
So whence has this man all these?
57 — and they are scandalized in him.

And Yah Shua says to them,
A prophet is not dishonored
except in his own fatherland and in his own house.
58 — and he did not many dynamis there
because of their trustlessness.

YAHN THE BAPTIZER BEHEADED

14

At that season
Herod the tetrarch hears of the fame of Yah Shua,
2 and says to his lads,
This is Yahn the Baptizer; he is risen from the dead;
and because of this, dynamis energizes in him.
3 For Herod had overpowered Yahn,
and bound him,
and put him in a guardhouse for sake of Herodias
the woman of his brother Philippos:
4 for Yahn had worded to him,
You are not allowed to have her!
5 — and he wills to slaughter him
but he awes the multitude
because they regard him as a prophet.
6 But the birthday of Herod is brought on;
and the daughter of Herodias dances among them
and pleases Herod:
7 whereupon he professes with an oath
to give her whatever she asks.
8 And she,
being previously instigated by her mother,
Give me here, she says,
the head of Yahn the Baptizer on a platter.

MATTHEW 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 And the king was sorry **sovereign sorrowed**:
nevertheless for the oath's sake,
and them which *sat* **reposed** with him *at meat*,
he *commanded* **summoned** it to be given her.

10 And he sent,
and beheaded *John* **Yahn** in the *prison* **guardhouse**.

11 And his head was brought *in* **on** a *charger* **platter**,
and given to the *damsel* **maiden**:
and she brought it to her mother.

12 And his disciples came,
and took *up* the body, and *buried* **entombed** it,
and went and *told* *Jesus* **evangelized** *Yah Shua*.

13 When *Jesus* **Yah Shua** heard of it,
he departed thence *by ship* **in a sailer**
into a *desert* **desolate** place *apart* **privately**:
and when the *people* **multitude** had heard thereof,
they followed him on foot out of the cities.

14 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** went forth,
and saw a great vast multitude,
and was moved with *compassion* **had a sympathetic spleen**
toward them,
and he *healed* **cured** their *sick* **infirm**.

YAH SHUA FEEDS FIVE THOUSAND

15 And when it was **being** evening,
his disciples came to him, *saying* **wording**,
This is a *desert* **desolate** place,
and the *time* **hour** is *now* **already** past;
send **release** the multitude away,
that they may go into the villages,
and *buy* **market** themselves *victuals* **food**.

16 But *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto them,
They need not depart; give ye them to eat.

17 And they *say* **word** unto him,
We have **naught** here *but* **except only** five *loaves* **bread**s,
and two fishes.

18 He said, Bring them hither to me.

19 And he *commanded* **summoned** the multitude
to *sit down* **recline** on the *grass* **herbage**,
and took the five *loaves* **bread**s, and the two fishes,
and looking *up* to the *heaven* **heavens**,
he *blessed* **eulogized**, and brake,
and gave the *loaves* **bread**s to his disciples,
and the disciples to the multitude.

20 And they did all eat, and were filled:
and they took *up*
of the fragments that *remained* **superabounded**
twelve baskets full.

21 And they that had eaten
were about five thousand men,
beside **apart from** women and children.

22 And straightway *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
constrained **compelled** his disciples
to *get* **embark** into a *ship* **sailer**,
and to go before him unto the other side,
while he *sent* **released** the multitudes away.

YAH SHUA WALKS ON THE SEA

23 And when he had *sent* **released** the multitudes away,
he *went up* **ascended** into a mountain
apart **privately** to pray:
and when the **being** evening was come,
he was there alone.

24 But the *ship* **sailer**
was *now* **already** in the midst of the sea,
tossed with **tortured by** waves:
for the wind was contrary.

25 And in the fourth *watch* **guard** of the night
Jesus **Yah Shua** went unto them, walking on the sea.

26 And when the disciples saw him walking on the sea,
they were troubled, *saying* **wording**,
It is a *spirit* **phantasm**;
and they cried out for *fear* **awe**.

27 But straightway *Jesus* **Yah Shua** spake unto them,
saying **wording**, *Be of good cheer*; **Courage!**
it is I **AM**; *be not afraid* **Awe not**.

PETROS WALKS ON THE SEA

28 And *Peter* **Petros** answered him and said,
Lord **Adonay**, if it be thou,
bid **summon** me come unto thee on the water.

MATTHAIOS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 And the sovereign sorrows:
nevertheless for sake of the oath
and them who repose with him,
he summons to give it to her:

10 and he sends and beheads Yahn in the guardhouse:

11 and they bring his head on a platter
and give it to the maiden:
and she brings it to her mother.

12 And his disciples come
and take the body and entomb it;
and go and evangelize to Yah Shua.

13 When Yah Shua hears
he departs in a sailer privately to a desolate place:
and when the multitude hears thereof
they follow him on foot from the cities:

14 and Yah Shua goes and sees a great vast multitude
and has a sympathetic spleen toward them;
and he cures their infirm.

YAH SHUA FEEDS FIVE THOUSAND

15 And being evening;
his disciples come to him, wording,
This is a desolate place and the hour is already past;
release the multitude to go to the villages
and market themselves food.

16 And Yah Shua says to them,
They need not depart; you give them to eat.

17 And they word to him,
We have naught here
except only five breads and two fishes.

18 He says, Bring them here to me.
— and he summons the multitude
to recline on the herbage;
and takes the five breads and the two fishes;
and looking to the heavens,
he eulogizes and breaks
and gives the breads to his disciples
— and the disciples to the multitude.

20 And they all eat, and fill up:
and they take twelve baskets full
of the fragments that superabound:
and there are about five thousand men who eat
apart from women and children.

22 And straightway
Yah Shua compels his disciples to embark into a sailer
and to precede him across
while he releases the multitudes.

YAH SHUA WALKS ON THE SEA

23 And he releases the multitudes
and ascends to a mountain privately to pray:
and being evening; and he is there alone:

24 and the sailer is already midst the sea
tortured by waves — for the wind is contrary:

25 and in the fourth guard of the night
Yah Shua goes to them, walking on the sea.

26 And the disciples see him walking on the sea
and they are troubled, wording,
It is a phantasm!
— and they cry out for awe.

27 But straightway Yah Shua speaks to them,
wording, Courage! I AM; Awe not!

PETROS WALKS ON THE SEA

28 And Petros answers him, saying,
Adonay, if it is you,
summon me to come to you on the water.

MATTHEW 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

29 And he said, Come.
And when *Peter Petros*
was come down **descended** out of the *ship sailer*,
he walked on the water, to go to *Jesus Yah Shua*.
30 But when he saw **observed** the wind
boisterous mighty,
he was *afraid awed*;
and beginning to **sink submerge**, he cried,
saying **wording**, *Lord Adonay*, save me.
31 And *immediately straightway*
Jesus stretched forth Yah Shua spread his hand,
and *caught took hold of* him,
and *said worded* unto him, O thou of little *faith trust*,
wherefore why didst thou doubt?
32 And when they were **had**
come **embarked** into the *ship sailer*,
the wind *ceased relaxed*.
33 Then **And** they that were in the *ship sailer*
came and worshipped him, saying **wording**,
Of a truth Truly thou art the Son of *God Elohim*.
34 And when they were gone over,
they came into the land of *Gennesaret Kinneroth*.
35 And when the men of that place
had knowledge of him,
they *sent out apostolized*
into all that country round about,
and *brought offered* unto him all that were *diseased ill*;
36 And besought him
that they might only touch the *hem edge* of his garment:
and as many as touched
were *made perfectly whole saved*.

MISVAH VS TRADITION

15 Then came to *Jesus Yah Shua* scribes and Pharisees,
which were of *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*, saying **wording**,
2 Why do thy disciples
transgress the tradition of the elders?
for they wash not their hands when **ever** they eat bread.
3 But he answered and said unto them,
Why do ye also
transgress the *commandment misvah* of *God Elohim*
by **for** your tradition?
4 For *God commanded Elohim misvahed*,
saying **wording**, Honour thy father and mother:
and, He that *curseth vilifieth* father or mother,
let him die the death.
5 But ye say **word**,
Whosoever shall say to his father or his mother,
It is a gift An oblation,
by whatsoever
thou mightest be *profited benefited* by me;
6 And **in no way** honour not his father or his mother,
he shall be free.
Thus have ye *made invalidated*
the *commandment misvah* of *God Elohim* of none effect
by **for** your tradition.

Exodus 20:12, 21:17

7 Ye hypocrites,
well did *Esaias Yesha Yah* prophesy of **concerning** you,
saying **wording**,
This people
draweth nigh unto approacheth me with their mouth,
and honoureth me with their lips;
but their heart is far from me.
9 But in vain they do *worship venerate* me,
teaching doctrinating for doctrines
the *commandments misvoth* of *men humanity*.
Yesha Yah 29:13
10 And he called the multitude, and said unto them,
Hear, and *understand comprehend*:
11 Not that which *goeth entereth* into the mouth
defileth profaneth a man human;
but that which *cometh proceedeth* out of the mouth,
this *defileth profaneth a man human*.
12 Then came his disciples, and said unto him,
Knowest thou that the Pharisees were *offended scandalized*,
after they heard this *saying word*?
13 But he answered and said,
Every plant, which my heavenly Father hath not planted,
shall be *rooted up uprooted*.

MATTHAIOS 14, 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

29 And he says, Come.
And Petros descends from the sailer;
and he walks on the water to go to Yah Shua:
30 but he observes the mighty wind, and he awes;
and beginning to submerge,
he cries, wording, Adonay, save me!
31 And straightway Yah Shua spreads his hand,
and takes hold of him, and words to him,
O you of little trust! Why doubt you?
32 And they embark into the sailer
and the wind relaxes:
33 and they in the sailer come and worship him,
wording, Truly you are the Son of Elohim.
34 And they go over
and come to the land of Kinneroth:
35 and the men of that place know about him
and they apostolize all around that country;
and offer him all who are ill;
36 and beseech him
to only touch the edge of his garment:
and as many as touch are saved.

MISVAH VS TRADITION

15 Then the scribes and Pharisees of Yeru Shalem
come to Yah Shua, wording,
2 Why transgress your disciples
the tradition of the elders?
For they wash not their hands
whenever they eat bread.
3 And he answers them, saying,
Why transgress you also the misvah of Elohim
for your tradition?
4 For Elohim misvahed, wording,
Honor your father and mother:
and, Whoever vilifies father or mother,
deathify him to death.
5 But you word,
Whoever says to his father or his mother,
An oblation — by whatever you benefit by me;
6 and in no way honors his father or his mother.
— thus you invalidate the misvah of Elohim
for your tradition.
Exodus 20:12, 21:17
7 You hypocrites,
8 Yesha Yah prophesied well concerning you, wording,
This people approaches me with their mouth
and honors me with their lips;
but their heart is far from me:
9 and in vain they venerate me,
doctrinating for doctrines the misvoth of humanity.
Yesha Yah 29:13
10 And he calls the multitude, and says to them,
Hear, and comprehend:
11 not what enters the mouth
profanes a human;
but what proceeds from the mouth
profanes a human.
12 Then his disciples come and say to him,
Know you that the Pharisees are scandalized
after they hear this word?
13 And he answers, saying,
Every plant my Father of the heavenlies has not planted,
uproots.

MATTHEW 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 Let **Allow** them alone:
they be blind **leaders guides** of the blind.
And **if whenever** the blind **lead guide** the blind,
both shall fall into the **ditch cistern**.

15 Then **So** answered Peter **Petros** and said unto him,
Declare unto us this parable.

ENTERING THE MOUTH VS PROCEEDING FROM THE MOUTH

16 And Jesus **Yah Shua** said,
Are ye also yet
without understanding **noncomprehending?**
17 Do not ye yet *understand* **comprehend**,
that *whatsoever* **all that** entereth *in* at the mouth
goeth **passeth** into the belly,
and is *cast out* **ejected** into the *draught* **privy?**
18 But those *things* which proceed out of the mouth
come *forth* from the heart;
and they *defile* **profane** the *man* **human**.

FROM THE HEART VS FROM THE MOUTH

19 For out of the heart proceed evil *thoughts* **reasonings**,
murders, adulteries, *fornications* **whoredoms**,
thefts, *false* **pseudo** witness, blasphemies:
20 These are *the things* **those**
which *defile* **profane** a *man* **human**:
but to eat with unwashen hands
defileth **profaneth** not a *man* **human**.

YAH SHUA EJECTS A DEMON

21 Then Jesus **So Yah Shua** went thence,
and departed into the *coasts* **parts** of Tyre **Sor** and Sidon.
22 And, behold, a woman of *Canaan* — a **Kenaaniy**
came out of the same *coasts* **boundaries**,
and cried unto him, *saying* **wording**,
Have mercy on **Mercy** me, O **Lord Adonay**,
thou son of David;
my daughter
is *grievously vexed with a devil* **evilly demonized**.
23 But he answered her not a word.
And his disciples came and *besought* **asked** him,
saying **wording**, *Send her away* **Release her**;
for she crieth after us.
24 But he answered and said, I am not *sent* **apostolized**
but except only unto the lost sheep
of the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
25 Then came she and worshipped him, *saying* **wording**,
Lord Adonay, help me.
26 But he answered and said,
It is not *meet* **good** to take the children's bread,
and to cast it to *dogs* **puppies**.
27 And she said, *Truth* **Yea**, **Lord Adonay**:
yet **indeed** the *dogs* **puppies** eat of the crumbs
which fall from their *masters'* **adoni's** table.
28 Then **Jesus Yah Shua** answered and said unto her,
O woman, *great* **mega** is thy *faith* **trust**:
be it unto thee even as thou *wilt* **willest**.
And her daughter was made whole from that very hour.

YAH SHUA CURES THE MULTITUDES

29 And **Jesus Yah Shua** departed from thence,
and came nigh unto the sea of *Galilee* **Galiyl**;
and *went up* **ascended** into a mountain,
and sat down there.
30 And *great* **vast** multitudes came unto him,
having with them those that were lame,
blind, *dumb* **mute**, maimed, and many others,
and *cast* **tossed** them *down* at **Jesus' Yah Shua's** feet;
and he *healed* **cured** them:
31 Insomuch that the multitude *wondered* **marvelled**,
when they *saw* **observed** the *dumb* **mute** to speak,
the maimed to be whole, the lame to walk,
and the blind to *see* **observe**:
and they glorified the *God* **Elohim** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

YAH SHUA FEEDS FOUR THOUSAND

32 Then **Jesus So Yah Shua** called his disciples unto him,
and said,
I have *compassion* a **sympathetic spleen** on the multitude,
because they *continue* **already abide** with me
now three days,
and have *nothing* **naught** to eat:
and I will *to not send* **release** them *away* fasting,
lest **ever** they faint in the way.

MATTHAIOS 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 Allow them:
they are blind guides of the blind:
and whenever the blind guide the blind
both fall into the cistern.

15 So Petros answers him, saying,
Declare this parable to us.

ENTERING THE MOUTH VS PROCEEDING FROM THE MOUTH

16 And Yah Shua says,
Are you also yet noncomprehending?
17 Comprehend you not yet
that all that enters the mouth
passes into the belly and ejects into the privy?
18 But whatever proceeds from the mouth
comes from the heart and profanes the human.

FROM THE HEART VS FROM THE MOUTH

19 For from the heart proceed evil reasonings,
murders, adulteries, whoredoms,
thefts, pseudo witnesses, blasphemies:
20 these are those that profane a human:
but to eat with unwashed hands
profanes not a human.

YAH SHUA EJECTS A DEMON

21 And Yah Shua goes there
and departs to the parts of Sor and Sidon:
22 and behold, a woman — a Kenaaniy
comes from the same boundaries,
and cries to him, wording,
Mercy me, O Adonay, you son of David;
my daughter is evilly demonized.

23 But he answers her not a word:
and his disciples come and ask him,
wording, Release her; for she cries after us.

24 But he answers, saying, I am not apostolized
except only to the lost sheep of the house of Yisra El.

25 She comes and worships him,
wording, Adonay, help me.

26 But he answers, saying,
It is not good to take the bread of children
and to cast it to puppies.

27 And she says, Yes, Adonay:
yet indeed the puppies eat of the crumbs
that fall from the table of their adoni.

28 Then Yah Shua answers her, saying,
O woman, how mega your trust:
so be it to you even as you will.
— and her daughter is whole from that very hour.

YAH SHUA CURES THE MULTITUDES

29 And Yah Shua departs from there
and comes near the sea of Galiyl;
and ascends a mountain and sits:
30 and vast multitudes come to him;
having the lame, blind, mute, maimed
and many others with them,
and they toss them at the feet of Yah Shua;
and he cures them:
31 so that the multitude marvels
— observing mute speaking,
maimed whole, lame walking,
and the blind observing:
and they glorify the Elohim of Yisra El.

YAH SHUA FEEDS FOUR THOUSAND

32 And Yah Shua calls his disciples to him, and says,
I have a sympathetic spleen on the multitude;
because they already abide with me three days
and have naught to eat:
and I will to not release them fasting
— lest ever they faint in the way.

MATTHEW 15, 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

33 And his disciples say **word** unto him,
Whence should we have so much bread
in the wilderness,
as to fill so *great vast* a multitude?
34 And *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua wordeth** unto them,
How many *loaves breads* have ye?
35 And they said, Seven, and a few *little fishes* **fishling**.
And he *commanded* **summoned** the multitude
to *sit down* **repose** on the *ground* **soil**.
36 And he took the seven *loaves breads* and the fishes,
and *gave thanks* **eucharistized**,
and brake them, and gave to his disciples,
and the disciples to the multitude.
37 And they did all eat, and were filled:
and they took *up* of the *broken meat* **fragments**
that was *left* **superabounded** seven baskets full.
38 And they that did eat were four thousand men,
beside apart from women and children.
39 And he *sent away* **released** the multitude,
and *took ship* **embarked into a sailer**,
and came into the *coasts* **boundaries** of Magdala.

YAH SHUA REBUKES THE PHARISEES AND THE SADOQIYM

16 The Pharisees *also* with the *Sadducees* **Sadoqiym** came,
and *tempting testing*, *desired* **asked** him
that he *would* **should** shew them a sign from **the** heaven.

2 He answered and said unto them,
When it is **Being** evening,
ye say **word**, *It will be* fair weather:
for the *sky* **heaven** is *red* **fiery**.
3 And in the early morning,
It will be foul weather **Downpour** to day:
for the *sky* **heaven** is *red* **fiery** and *lowring* **gloomy**.

4 O ye hypocrites,
ye can **indeed know**
to discern the face of the *sky* **heaven**;
but can ye not *discern* the signs of the *times* **seasons**?
A wicked **An evil** and adulterous generation
seeketh *after* a sign;
and there shall no sign be given unto it,
but **except** the sign of the prophet *Jonas* **Yonah**.
And he left them, and departed.

YAH SHUA INTERPRETS THE PARABLE OF FERMENTATION

5 And when his disciples were come to the other side,
they had forgotten to take bread.
6 Then *Jesus* **And Yah Shua** said unto them,
Take heed **See** and beware of **heed**
the *leaven* **fermentation**
of the Pharisees and of the *Sadducees* **Sadoqiym**.
7 And they reasoned among themselves, *saying* **wording**,
It is because we have taken no bread.

8 *Which when Jesus perceived* **And Yah Shua, knowing**,
he said unto them, O ye of little *faith* **trust**,
why reason ye among yourselves,
because ye have *brought* **taken** no bread?
9 Do ye not yet *understand* **comprehend**,
neither remember
the five *loaves breads* of the five thousand,
and how many baskets ye took *up*?

10 Neither the seven *loaves breads* of the four thousand,
and how many baskets ye took *up*?
11 How is it that ye do not *understand* **comprehend**
that I *spake* **said** it not to you concerning bread,
that ye should *beware of* **heed** the *leaven* **fermentation**
of the Pharisees and of the *Sadducees* **Sadoqiym**?

12 Then *understood* **comprehended** they
how that he *bade* **said** to them not
beware of **heed** the *leaven* **fermentation** of bread,
but of the doctrine
of the Pharisees and of the *Sadducees* **Sadoqiym**.

OPINIONS CONCERNING YAH SHUA

13 When *Jesus* **Yah Shua** came into the *coasts* **parts**
of *Caesarea Philippi* **Kaisaria Philippos**,
he asked his disciples, *saying* **wording**,
Whom do *men* say **humanity word**
that I the Son of *man* **humanity** am?

MATTHAIOS 15, 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

33 And his disciples word to him,
Whence we have so much bread in the wilderness
to fill so vast a multitude?

34 And Yah Shua words to them,
How many breads have you?

And they say, Seven, and a few fishling.

35 And he summons the multitude
to repose on the soil:
36 and he takes the seven breads and the fishes,
and eucharistizes and breaks
and gives to his disciples;
and his disciples to the multitude.
37 and they all eat, and fill:
and they take seven baskets full
of the fragments that superabound:
38 and four thousand men eat
apart from women and children.

39 And he releases the multitude
and embarks in a sailer
and goes to the boundaries of Magdala.

YAH SHUA REBUKES THE PHARISEES AND THE SADOQIYM

16 And the Pharisees and Sadoqiym come testing;
and ask him to show them a sign from the heavens.

2 He answers them, saying,
And being evening, you word, Fair weather!
— for the heavens are fiery:
3 and in the early morning, Downpour today!
— for the heavens are fiery and gloomy.
Hypocrites!

You indeed know to discern the face of the heavens;
but the signs of the seasons you cannot.
4 An evil and adulterous generation seeks a sign;
and no sign is given
except the sign of the prophet Yonah.
— and he leaves them, and departs.

YAH SHUA INTERPRETS THE PARABLE OF FERMENTATION

5 And his disciples go across;
and they forget to take bread:
6 and Yah Shua says to them,
See and heed the fermentation
of the Pharisees and of the Sadoqiym.

7 And they reason among themselves, wording,
Because we took no bread.

8 And Yah Shua, knowing,
says to them, O you of little trust!
Why reason you among yourselves,
because you took no bread?
9 Comprehend you not yet?
Neither remember the five breads of the five thousand
— and how many baskets you took?
10 nor the seven breads of the four thousand
— and how many baskets you took?
11 How is it that you comprehend not
that I say not to you concerning bread
— but to heed the fermentation
of the Pharisees and of the Sadoqiym?

12 Then they comprehend
that he says not to them
to heed the fermentation of bread,
but of the doctrine
of the Pharisees and of the Sadoqiym.

OPINIONS CONCERNING YAH SHUA

13 And Yah Shua enters the parts of Kaisaria Philippos;
and asks his disciples, wording,
Whom words humanity
me the Son of humanity to be?

MATTHEW 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

14 And they said,
Some **indeed**,
say that thou art John **Yahn** the Baptist **Baptizer**:
some **Elias** others, **Eli Yah**;
and others, **Jeremias Yirme Yah**,
or one of the prophets.
THE WITNESS OF PETROS CONCERNING YAH SHUA
15 He saith **wordeth** unto them,
But whom say **word** ye that I am?
16 And **Simon Peter Shimon Petros** answered and said,
Thou art the **Christ Messiah**,
the Son of the living **God Elohim**.
17 And **Jesus Yah Shua** answered and said unto him,
Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona Shimon Bar Yonah:
for flesh and blood
hath not **revealed unveiled** it unto thee,
but my Father which is in **heaven the heavens**.
18 And I say **word** also unto thee,
That thou art **Peter Petros/Rock**,
and upon this rock/petra I **will shall** build my **church ecclesia**;
and the gates of **hell sheol/hades**
shall not **prevail against overpower** it.
19 And I **will shall** give unto thee the keys
of the **kingdom sovereignty** of **heaven the heavens**:
and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth
shall be bound in **heaven the heavens**:
and whatsoever thou shalt **loose release** on earth
shall be **loosed released** in **heaven the heavens**.
20 Then charged he his disciples
that they should **tell say to no man one**
that he was **Jesus Yah Shua** the **Christ Messiah**.
YAH SHUA PROPHECIES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION
21 From **that time forth then**
began **Jesus Yah Shua** to shew unto his disciples,
how that he must go unto **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
and suffer **many things much**
of the elders and **chief arch** priests and scribes,
and be **killed slaughtered**,
and be raised again the third day.
22 Then **Peter And Petros** took him,
and began to rebuke him, **saying wording**,
Be it far from Kapur/Atone unto thee, **Lord Adonay**:
this shall **not never no way** be unto thee.
23 But he turned, and said unto **Peter Petros**,
Get Go thee behind me, Satan:
thou art **an offence a scandal** unto me:
for thou **savourest mindest** not
the things those that be of **God Elohim**,
but those that be of **men humanity**.
24 Then said **Jesus Yah Shua** unto his disciples,
If any **man will willeth to** come after me,
let him **utterly deny** himself,
and take **up his cross stake**, and follow me.
LOSE THE SOUL TO FIND THE SOUL
25 For whosoever **will willeth to** save his **life soul**
shall lose it:
and whosoever **will shall** lose his **life soul** for my sake
shall find it.
26 For what is a **man profited human benefited**,
if whenever he shall gain the whole **world cosmos**,
and lose his own soul?
Or what shall a **man human** give in exchange for his soul?
27 For the Son of **man humanity** shall come
in the glory of his Father with his angels;
and then he shall **reward every man give each**
according to his **works acts**.
28 **Verily I say Amen! I word** unto you,
There be some standing here,
which shall **not never no way** taste of death,
till they see the Son of **man humanity**
coming in his **kingdom sovereignty**.
THE METAMORPHOSIS OF YAH SHUA
17 And after six days **Jesus Yah Shua** taketh **Peter Petros**,
James Yaaqovos, and **John Yahn** his brother,
and bringeth them **up** into an high mountain
apart privately,
2 And was **transfigured metamorphosed**
before in front of them:
and his face **did shine radiated** as the sun,

MATTHAIOS 16, 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

14 And they say,
Some indeed, Yahn the Baptizer:
others, Eli Yah:
and others, Yirme Yah:
or, One of the prophets.
THE WITNESS OF PETROS CONCERNING YAH SHUA
15 He words to them,
And You, whom word you me to be?
16 And Shimon Petros answers, saying,
You are the Messiah, the Son of the living Elohim.
17 And Yah Shua answers him, saying,
Blessed — you, Shimon Bar Yonah:
for flesh and blood unveiled not to you
but my Father in the heavens.
18 And I also word to you,
that you are Petros/Rock:
and on this rock/petra I build my ecclesia;
and the gates of sheol/hades overpower it not:
and I give you the keys
of the sovereignty of the heavens:
and whatever you bind on earth
becomes bound in the heavens:
and whatever you release on earth
becomes released in the heavens.
20 Then he charges his disciples
to say to no one that he is Yah Shua the Messiah.
YAH SHUA PROPHECIES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION
21 From then
Yah Shua begins to show his disciples
how he must go to Yeru Shalem;
and suffer much
from the elders and archpriests and scribes
— slaughtered and rise again the third day.
22 And Petros takes him and begins to rebuke him,
wording, Kapur/Atone to you, Adonay:
this never no way becomes you.
23 And he turns to Petros, saying,
Go you behind me, Satan!
You are a scandal to me:
for you mind not those of Elohim
but those of humanity.
24 Then Yah Shua says to his disciples,
If anyone wills to come after me,
he is to utterly deny himself,
and take his stake and follow me.
LOSE THE SOUL TO FIND THE SOUL
25 For whoever wills to save his soul, loses it:
and whoever loses his soul for my sake, finds it:
for what is a human benefited
whenever he gains the whole cosmos
and loses his own soul?
Or what gives a human in exchange for his soul?
27 For the Son of humanity comes
in the glory of his Father with his angels;
and then he gives each according to his acts.
28 Amen! I word to you,
Some standing here never no way taste death
until they see the Son of humanity
coming in his sovereignty.
THE METAMORPHOSIS OF YAH SHUA
17 And after six days
Yah Shua takes Petros,
Yaaqovos, and Yahn his brother,
and privately brings them to a high mountain;
and is metamorphosed in front of them:
and his face radiates as the sun

MATTHEW 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and his raiment was **garment became** white as the light.
3 And, behold, there appeared unto them
Moses **Mosheh** and *Elias* **Eli Yah** talking with him.
4 Then **And** answered *Peter* **Petros**,
and said unto *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
Lord **Adonay**, it is good for us to be here:
if thou wilt **willest**, let us make here three tabernacles;
one for thee,
and one for *Moses* **Mosheh**, and one for *Elias* **Eli Yah**.
5 While he yet spake, behold,
a bright **brightly lighted** cloud overshadowed them:
and behold a voice out of the cloud,
which said **wording**. This is my beloved Son,
in of whom I am well pleased **well—approve**;
hear ye him.
6 And when the disciples heard it, they fell on their face,
and were sore afraid **extremely awestricken**.
7 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** came and touched them,
and said, Arise, and be not afraid **awestricken**.
8 And when they had lifted up their eyes,
they saw no man **one**, save *Jesus* **except Yah Shua** only.
9 And as they came down **descended** from the mountain,
Jesus charged **Yah Shua** **misvahed** them, saying **wording**,
Tell **Say** the vision to no man **one**,
until the Son of man **humanity** be risen again from the dead.
YAHN THE BAPTIZER IS THE ELI YAH TO COME
10 And his disciples asked him, saying **wording**,
So Why then say **word** the scribes
that *Elias* **Eli Yah** must first come?
11 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered and said unto them,
Elias truly **Eli Yah** **indeed** shall first come **first**,
and restore all things.
12 But I say **word** unto you,
That *Elias* **Eli Yah** is come already,
and they knew him not,
but have done unto in him
whatsoever **as much as** they listed **willed**.
Likewise **Thus** shall also
the Son of man **humanity** suffer of them.
13 Then the disciples **understood** **comprehended**
that he spake **said** unto them
of *John* **concerning Yahn** the *Baptist* **Baptizer**.
YAH SHUA REBUKES A DEMON
14 And when they were come to the multitude,
there came to him a *certain man* **human**,
kneeling down to him, and saying **wording**,
15 Lord **Adonay**, have mercy on my son:
for he is lunatick, and sore vexed **suffereth evilly**:
for oftimes he falleth **often** into the fire,
and oft **often** into the water.
16 And I brought **offered** him to thy disciples,
and they could not cure him.
17 Then *Jesus* **So Yah Shua** answered and said,
O faithless **trustless**
and perverse **thoroughly perverted** generation,
how long **until when** shall I be with you?
how long **until when** shall I suffer **tolerate** you?
bring him hither to me.
18 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** rebuked the *devil* **demon**;
and he departed out of him:
and the *child* **lad** was cured from that very hour.
19 Then **So** came the disciples to *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
apart **privately**, and said,
Why could not we cast **eject** him out?
20 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto them,
Because of your *unbelief* **trustlessness**:
for verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
if **whenever** ye have *faith* **trust**
as a grain **kernal** of mustard seed,
ye shall say unto this mountain,
Remove **Depart** hence to yonder place;
and it shall **remove** **depart**;
and *nothing* **naught** shall be impossible unto you.
21 Howbeit this *kind* **goeth** **genos** **proceedeth** not out
but by **except in** prayer and fasting.

MATTHAIOS 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and his garment becomes white as the light:
3 and behold, Mosheh and Eli Yah appear to them,
talking with him.
4 And Petros answers Yah Shua, saying,
Adonay, it is good for us to be here:
if you will, we make three tabernacles here;
one for you and one for Mosheh and one for Eli Yah.
5 While he still speaks, behold,
a brightly lighted cloud overshadows them:
and behold, a voice from the cloud, wording,
This is my beloved Son, of whom I well—approve:
Hear him!
6 — and the disciples hear and they fall on their face
and are extremely awestricken.
7 And Yah Shua comes and touches them,
and says, Rise! and, Be not awestricken!
8 And they lift their eyes and see no one
— except Yah Shua only.
9 And as they descend the mountain,
Yah Shua misvahs them, wording,
Say the vision to no one,
until the Son of humanity rises from the dead.
YAHN THE BAPTIZER IS THE ELI YAH TO COME
10 And his disciples ask him, wording,
So why word the scribes that Eli Yah must first come?
11 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Eli Yah indeed comes first and restores all:
12 and I word to you,
that Eli Yah has already come:
and they know him not
but did in him as much as they willed:
Thus also the Son of humanity suffers of them.
13 Then the disciples comprehend
that he says to them concerning Yahn the Baptizer.
YAH SHUA REBUKES A DEMON
14 And they go to the multitude,
and a human comes to him
— kneeling to him, and wording,
15 Adonay, mercy my son:
for he is lunatick and suffers evilly:
for he falls often into the fire and often into the water:
16 and I offered him to your disciples,
and they cannot cure him.
17 So Yah Shua answers, saying,
O trustless and thoroughly perverted generation!
Until when am I with you? Until when tolerate I you?
Bring him here to me.
18 And Yah Shua rebukes the demon;
and he departs from him:
and the lad is cured from that very hour.
19 Then the disciples come to Yah Shua privately,
and say, Why could we not eject him?
20 And Yah Shua says to them,
Because of your trustlessness!
Amen! I word to you,
whenever you have trust as a kernal of mustard,
you say to this mountain,
Depart hence to yonder place!
— it departs:
— and naught is impossible to you
— and this genos proceeds not
except in prayer and fasting.

MATTHEW 17, 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION

22 And while they *abode* **remained** in *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
Jesus **Yah Shua** said unto them,
The Son of *man* **humanity**
shall be betrayed into the hands of *men* **humanity**:
23 And they shall *kill* **slaughter** him,
and the third day he shall *be raised again* **rise**.
And they were *exceeding sorry* **extremely sorrowed**.

THE DOUBLE DRACHMA

24 And when they were come
to *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**,
they that *received* **took**
tribute money **the double drachma**
came to *Peter* **Petros**, and said,
Doth not your *master* **doctor**
pay tribute **complete/shalom the double drachma**?
He *saith* **wordeth**, Yes.
And when he *was come* **had entered** into the house,
Jesus *prevented* **Yah Shua anticipated** him,
saying **wording**, What thinkest thou, *Simon* **Shimon**?
of whom do the *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth
take *custom* **completion/shalom** or tribute?
of their own *children* **sons**, or of *strangers* **others**?
26 *Peter saith* **Petros wordeth** unto him,
Of *strangers* **others**.
Jesus **Yah Shua** saith unto him,
Then **indeed** are the *children* **free sons liberated**.
27 *Notwithstanding* **But**,
lest we should *offend* **scandalize** them,
go thou to the sea, and cast an hook,
and take *up* the fish that first *cometh up* **ascendeth**;
and when thou hast opened his mouth,
thou shalt find a *piece of money* **stater**:
that take, and give unto them for me and thee.

THE GREATEST IN THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF THE HEAVENS

18 At the same *time* **hour**
came the disciples unto Jesus **Yah Shua**, *saying* **wording**,
So Who is the greatest
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom of heaven the heavens**?
2 And Jesus **Yah Shua** called a little child unto him,
and set him in the midst of them,
3 And said, *verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto you,
Except **Unless** ye be *converted* **turn**,
and become as little children,
ye shall *not* **never no way** enter
into the *kingdom* **sovereigndom of heaven the heavens**.
4 **So** Whosoever *therefore*
shall humble himself as this little child,
the same is greatest
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom of heaven the heavens**.
5 And whoso shall receive one such little child in my name
receiveth me.
6 But whoso shall *offend* **scandalize**
one of these little ones which *believe* **trust** in me,
it were *better* **beneficial** for him
that a millstone **turned by a burro**
were hanged about his neck,
and that he were *drowned* **submerged**
in the depth of the sea.
7 Woe unto the *world* **cosmos** because of *offences* **scandals**!
for it *must* **needs** be **necessary** that *offences* **scandals** come;
but **however** woe to that *man* **human**
by whom the *offence* **scandal** cometh!

AVOIDING SCANDALIZINGS

8 *Wherefore* **And**
if thy hand or thy foot *offend* **scandalize** thee,
cut **exscind** them *off*, and cast them from thee:
it is *better* **well** for thee
to enter into life *halt* **lame** or maimed,
rather than having two hands or two feet
to be cast into *everlasting* **eternal** fire.
9 And if thine *eye* **offend** **scandalize** thee,
pluck it *out*, and cast it from thee:
it is *better* **well** for thee
to enter into life *with one eye* **one-eyed**,
rather than having two eyes to be cast
into *hell* **Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning** fire.

MATTHAIOS 17, 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION

22 And they remain in Galiyl,
and Yah Shua says to them,
The Son of humanity
is about to be betrayed into the hands of humanity:
23 and they slaughter him;
and the third day he rises.
— and they are extremely sorrowed.

THE DOUBLE DRACHMA

24 And they come to Kaphar Nachum:
and they who take the double drachma
come to Petros, and say,
Your doctor
— completes/shalams he not the double drachma?
25 He words, Yes.

And he enters the house;
and Yah Shua anticipates him,
wording, What think you, Shimon?
Of whom do the sovereigns of the earth
take completion/shalom or tribute?
— Of their own sons? Or of others?

26 Petros words to him, Of others.

Yah Shua says to him,
Then indeed the sons are liberated:
27 but lest we scandalize them,
go to the sea and cast a hook;
and take the first fish that ascends;
and when you open his mouth, you find a stater:
take that, and give to them for me and you.

THE GREATEST IN THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF THE HEAVENS

18 At the same hour
the disciples come to Yah Shua, wording,
Who then is the greatest
in the sovereigndom of the heavens?
2 And Yah Shua calls a little child to him,
and sets him midst them,
3 and says, Amen! I word to you,
Unless you turn and become as little children,
you never no way enter the sovereigndom of the heavens.
4 So whoever
humbles himself as this little child,
the same is greatest in the sovereigndom of the heavens:
5 and whoever
receives one such little child in my name,
receives me:
6 and whoever scandalizes
one of these little ones who trust in me,
it is beneficial for him
that a millstone turned by a burro
hang around his neck,
and that he submerge into the depth of the sea.
7 Woe to the cosmos because of scandals!
for of necessity, scandals come;
however woe to that human
by whom the scandal comes!

AVOIDING SCANDALIZINGS

8 And if your hand or your foot scandalizes you,
exscind them and cast them from you:
it is well for you
to enter life lame or maimed,
rather than having two hands or two feet
and cast into eternal fire.
9 And if your eye scandalizes you,
pluck it and cast it from you:
it is well for you to enter life one-eyed
rather than having two eyes cast into the fire
of Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning.

MATTHEW 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 Take heed **See** that ye *despise* **disesteem** not
one of these little ones;
for I say **word** unto you,
That in *heaven* **the heavens**
their angels *do always* **through all time**
behold see the face of my Father
which is in *heaven* **the heavens**.

11 For the Son of *man* **humanity**
is come to save that which was lost.

THE PARABLE OF THE WANDERING SHEEP

12 How think ye?
if man have **whenever any human**
become an hundred sheep,
and one of them *be gone astray* **wander**,
doth he not *leave* **forsake** the ninety and nine,
and goeth into the mountains,
and seeketh that which *is gone astray* **wandereth**?

13 And *if* **whenever** so be that he find it,
verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
he *rejoiceth* **cheereth** more of that *sheep*,
than of the ninety and nine
which *went* **wandered** not *astray*.

14 Even so **thus** it is not the will **in front** of your Father
which is in *heaven* **the heavens**,
that one of these little ones should *perish* **be lost**.

A SINNING BROTHER

15 *Moreover if* **And whenever** thy brother
shall *trespass against* **sin unto thee**,
go and *tell* **reprove** him *his fault*
between thee and him alone:
if whenever he shall hear thee, thou hast gained thy brother.

16 But *if* **whenever** he *will* **shall** not hear thee,
then take with thee one or two more,
that in the mouth of two or three witnesses
every *word* **thema** may be established.

17 And *if* **whenever** he shall *neglect* **refuse** to hear them,
tell say it unto the *church* **ecclesia**:
but *if* **whenever** he *neglect* **refuse** to hear the *church* **ecclesia**,
let him be unto thee **exactly** as an *heathen man* **the goyim**
and a *publican* **customs agent**.

BINDING AND RELEASING

18 *Verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto you,
Whatsoever ye shall bind on earth
shall be bound in **the** heaven:
and whatsoever ye shall *loose* **release** on earth
shall be *loosed* **released** in **the** heaven.

SYMPHONIZING TRUST

19 Again I say **word** unto you,
That *if* **whenever** two of you
shall *agree* **symphonize** on earth
as touching **concerning** any *thing* **matter**
that they shall ask,
it shall *be done* **become** for them of my Father
which is in *heaven* **the heavens**.

20 For where two or three
are gathered together in my name,
there am I in the midst of them.

THE PARABLE ON FORGIVENESS

21 Then came *Peter* **Petros** to him, and said,
Lord **Adonay**,
how oft shall my brother sin *against* **unto** me,
and I forgive him? till seven times?

22 *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua wordeth** unto him,
I say **word** not unto thee, Until seven times:
but, Until seventy times seven.

23 *Therefore* **So**
is the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**
likened unto a *certain king* **human sovereign**,
which *would* **willed**
to *take account* **reckon word** of his servants.

24 And when he had begun to reckon,
one was brought unto him,
which *owed him* **a debtor of**
ten thousand talents **a myriad talent weights**.

25 But *forasmuch* as he had not to *pay* **give**,
his *Lord* **commanded** **adoni summoned** him to be sold,
and his *wife* **woman**, and children,
and all *that* — **as much as** he had,
and *payment to be made* **given back**.

MATTHAIOS 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 See that you not disesteem one of these little ones;
for I word to you,
That in the heavens, through all time,
their angels see the face of my Father in the heavens.

11 For the Son of humanity comes to save the lost.

THE PARABLE OF THE WANDERING SHEEP

12 How think you?
Whenever any human becomes a hundred sheep
and one of them wanders,
forsakes he not the ninety—nine,
and goes to the mountains,
and seeks that which wanders?

13 And so be it, whenever he finds it,
Amen! I word to you,
he cheers more over it
than of the ninety — nine who wander not.

14 Even thus it is not the will
in front of your Father in the heavens,
that one of these little ones be lost.

A SINNING BROTHER

15 And whenever your brother sins to you,
go and reprove him between you and him alone:
whenever he hears you, you gain your brother:
but whenever he hears you not
take one or two more with you;
so that in the mouth of two or three witnesses
you establish every rhema:
and whenever he refuses to hear them,
say it to the ecclesia:
and whenever he refuses to hear the ecclesia,
he becomes to you
exactly as the goyim and a customs agent.

BINDING AND RELEASING

18 Amen! I word to you,
Whatever you bind on earth
becomes bound in the heavens:
whatever you release on earth
becomes released in the heavens.

SYMPHONIZING TRUST

19 Again I word to you,
That whenever two of you symphonize on earth
concerning any matter — whatever they ask
it becomes for them
from my Father in the heavens:
for where two or three gather together in my name,
I am there midst them.

THE PARABLE ON FORGIVENESS

21 Then Petros comes to him, saying,
Adonay, how often sins my brother to me,
and I forgive him?
Until seven times?

22 Yah Shua words to him,
I word not to you, Until seven times:
but, Until seventy times seven.

23 So the sovereigndom of the heavens
is likened to a human sovereign,
who wills to reckon word of his servants:
and he begins to reckon;
they bring him a debtor of a myriad talent weights.
and having naught to give,
his adoni summons to sell him
and his woman and children,
and all — as much as he has
and to give back.

MATTHEW 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

26 So The servant therefore fell down,
and worshipped him, saying **wording**, Lord Adoni,
have patience with me, and I will pay shall give thee all.

27 Then And the lord adoni of that servant
was moved with compassion had a sympathetic spleen,
and loosed released him, and forgave him the debt.

28 But the same servant went out,
and found one of his fellow servants co—servants,
which owed him was indebted
an hundred pence denarion:
and he laid hands on overpowered him,
and took strangled him by the throat, saying **wording**,
Pay Give me that thou owest thy debt.

29 And his fellow servant co—servant
fell down at to his feet,
and besought him, saying **wording**,
Have patience with me, and I will pay shall give thee all.

30 And he would willed not:
but went and cast him into prison a guardhouse,
till he should pay give the debt.

31 So when his fellow servants co—servants saw
what was done had become,
they were very sorry extremely sorrowed,
and came and told unto their lord adoni
all that was done had become.

32 Then his lord adoni, after that he had called him,
said worded unto him, O thou wicked evil servant,
I forgave thee all that debt,
because thou desiredst besoughtest me:
Shouldst not thou also

33 have had compassion on mercied
thy fellow servant co—servant,
even as I had pity on mercied thee?

34 And his lord adoni was wroth,
and delivered him to the tormentors torturers,
till he should pay give
all that was due indebted unto him.

35 So Thus likewise
shall my heavenly Father in the heavenlies
do also unto you,
if unless ye from your hearts
forgive not every one each his brother
their trespasses backslidings.

19 And sobeit came to pass,
that when Jesus Yah Shua
had finished completed/shalamed these sayings words,
he departed from Galilee Galiyl,
and came into the coasts boundaries
of Judaea Yah Hudah beyond Jordan Yarden;

2 And great vast multitudes followed him;
and he healed cured them there.

RELEASING A WOMAN

3 The Pharisees also came unto him,
tempting testing him, and saying wording unto him,
Is it lawful allowed for a man human
to put away release his wife woman for every cause?

4 And he answered and said unto them,
Have ye not read,
that he which made created them at the beginning
made created them male and female,

5 And said, For this cause
a man human shall leave father and mother,
and shall cleave adhere to his wife woman:
and they twain shall be one flesh?

6 Wherefore So they are no more twain, but one flesh.
So What therefore
God Elohim hath joined together co—yoked,
let not man put asunder humanity separate.

7 They say word unto him,
So Why did Moses Mosheh then command misvah
to give a writing scroll of divorcement apostasy,
and to put release her away?

8 He saith wordeth unto them, Moses Mosheh,
because of the hardness of your hearts hardheartedness,
suffered permitted you
to put away release your wives women:
but from the beginning it was became not so thus.

9 And I say word unto you,
Whosoever shall put away release his wife woman,

MATTHAIOS 18, 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

26 So the servant falls and worships him,
wording, Adoni,
have patience with me and I give you all.

27 And the adoni of that servant
has a sympathetic spleen,
and releases him, and forgives his debt.

28 But the same servant goes
and finds one of his co—servants
who is indebted a hundred denarion:
and he overpowers him and strangles him,
wording, Give me your debt.

29 And his co—servant falls to his feet,
and beseeches him, wording,
Have patience with me and I give you all.

30 And he wills not:
but goes and casts him into a guardhouse
until he gives the debt.

31 So when his co—servants see what became,
they are extremely sorrowed,
and come and tell their adoni all that became.

32 Then his adoni, after he calls him, words to him,
O you evil servant,
I forgave you all that debt because you besought me:
Ought you not also mercy your co—servant
even as I mercied you?
— and his adoni is wroth
and delivers him to the torturers,
until he gives all he is indebted.

35 Thus likewise
my Father in the heavenlies does also to you
unless from your hearts
you each forgive your brother
his backslidings.

19 And so be it,
Yah Shua completes/shalams these words,
and departs from Galiyl
and goes to the boundaries of Yah Hudah
beyond Yarden;
and vast multitudes follow him;
and he cures them there.

RELEASING A WOMAN

3 The Pharisees also come to him,
testing him and wording to him,
Is a human allowed to release his woman
for every cause?

4 And he answers them, saying,
Read you not that he who created at the beginning
created them male and female,
and said, For this cause
a human leaves father and mother
and adheres to his woman:
and they two become one flesh?
So they are no more two — yet one flesh.
So what Elohim co—yokes,
humanity is not to separate.

7 They word to him,
So why misvahed Mosheh
to give a scroll of apostasy to release her?

8 He words to them,
Because of your hard heartedness,
Mosheh allowed you to release your women:
but from the beginning it was not thus.
And I word to you,
Whoever releases his woman

MATTHEW 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

except it be for fornication **whoredom**,
and shall marry another,
committeth adultery **adulterizeth**:
and whoso **ever** marieth her which is *put away* **released**,
10 *doth commit adultery* **adulterizeth**.
His disciples say **word** unto him,
If the case of the *man* **human**
be so **thus** with his *wife* **woman**,
it is not *good* **beneficial** to marry.
11 But he said unto them,
All *men* cannot *receive* **accept** this *saying* **word**,
save **rather** they to whom it is given.

EUNUCHS

12 For there are some eunuchs,
which were so born **thus birthed**
from their mother's womb:
and there are some eunuchs,
which were made eunuchs **eunuchized**
of *men* **humanity**:
and there be eunuchs,
which have *made* **eunuchized** themselves *eunuchs*
for the
kingdom **sovereigndom** of *heaven's* **the heavens'** sake.
He that is able to *receive* **accept** it,
let him *receive* **accept** it.

YAH SHUA RECEIVES LITTLE CHILDREN

13 Then were there *brought* **offered** unto him
little children,
that he should put his hands on them, and pray:
and the disciples rebuked them.
14 But *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said, *Suffer* **Allow** little children,
and forbid them not, to come unto me:
for of such
is the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**.
15 And he *laid* **put** his hands on them,
and departed thence.

ETERNAL LIFE

16 And, behold, one came and said unto him,
Good *Master* **Doctor**, what good *thing* shall I do,
that I may have eternal life?
17 And he said unto him,
Why *callest* **wordest** thou me good?
there is none good *but* **except** one,
that is, God **Elohim**:
but if thou *wilt* **willest to** enter into life,
keep **guard** the *commandments* **misvoth**.
18 He *saith* **wordeth** unto him, Which?
Jesus **Yah Shua** said,
Thou shalt do no **not** murder,
Thou shalt not *commit adultery* **adulterize**,
Thou shalt not steal,
Thou shalt not *bear false* **pseudo** witness,
Honour thy father and thy mother:
and, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.
19 The *young man* said **youth worded** unto him,
All these *things* have I *kept* **guarded** from my youth up:
what lack I yet?
20 *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto him,
If thou *wilt* **willest to** be *perfect* **complete/at shalom**,
go and sell that thou hast, and give to the poor,
and thou shalt have treasure in the heaven:
and come and follow me.
22 But when the *young man* **youth** heard that *saying* **word**,
he went away sorrowful:
for he had *great* **vast** possessions.

THE RICH AND THE SOVEREIGNDOM

23 Then *So* said *Jesus* **Yah Shua** unto his disciples,
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
That a rich man shall *hardly* **with difficulty** enter
into the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**.
24 And again I say **word** unto you,
It is easier for a *camel* **rope***
to go **pass** through the eye of a needle,
than for a rich man to enter
into the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**.

*rope: see Lamsa

25 When his disciples heard it,
they were *exceedingly* **amazed** **extremely astonished**,
saying **wording**, Who then can be saved?

MATTHAIOS 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— except for whoredom
and marries another, adulterizes:
and whoever marries her who is released, adulterizes.

10 His disciples word to him,
If the case of the human with the woman is thus,
it is not beneficial to marry.

11 But he says to them,
All cannot accept this word
— rather they to whom it is given.

EUNUCHS

12 For there are eunuchs
thus birthed from the womb of their mother:
and there are eunuchs eunuchized by humanity:
and there are eunuchs eunuchized by themselves
for sake of the sovereigndom of the heavens.
Whoever is able to accept, accept.

YAH SHUA RECEIVES LITTLE CHILDREN

13 Then they offer him little children
to put his hands on, and pray:
and the disciples rebuke them.

14 But Yah Shua says, Allow little children;
and forbid them not to come to me:
for of such is the sovereigndom of the heavens.
15 — and he puts his hands on them and departs.

ETERNAL LIFE

16 And behold, one comes to him, saying,
Good Doctor, what good do I to have eternal life?

17 And he says to him,
Why word you me, good?
None is good except one — Elohim:
but if you will to enter life, guard the misvoth.

18 He words to him, Which?

Yah Shua says,
Murder not:
Adulterize not:
Steal not:
Pseudo witness not:
19 Honor your father and your mother:
and, Love your neighbor as yourself.

20 The youth words to him,
I guarded all these from my youth:
What lack I still?

21 Yah Shua says to him,
If you will to be complete/at shalom,
go and sell what you have and give to the poor;
and have treasure in the heavens:
and come and follow me.

22 But the youth hears that word,
and goes away sorrowful:
for he has vast possessions.

THE RICH AND THE SOVEREIGNDOM

23 So Yah Shua says to his disciples,
Amen! I word to you,
That a rich man difficultly enters
the sovereigndom of the heavens.
24 And again I word to you,
It is easier for a rope*
to pass through the eye of a needle,
than for a rich man to enter
the sovereigndom of Elohim.

*rope: see Lamsa

25 When his disciples hear,
they are extremely astonished,
wording, Who then can be saved?

MATTHEW 19, 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

26 But Jesus beheld them Yah Shua looked,
and said unto them,
With men **humanity** this is impossible;
but with God **Elohim** all things are possible.

THE COST OF DISCIPLESHIP

27 Then answered Peter **Petros** and said unto him,
Behold, we have forsaken all, and followed thee;
what **then** shall we have *therefore*?
28 And Jesus **Yah Shua** said unto them,
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
That ye which have followed me,
in the *regeneration* **regenesis**,
when **ever** the Son of man **humanity**
shall sit in the throne of his glory,
ye also shall sit upon twelve thrones,
judging the twelve *tribes* **scions of Israel Yisra El**.
29 And every one that hath forsaken houses,
or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother,
or wife **woman**, or children, or lands,
for my name's sake,
shall *receive* **take** an hundredfold,
and shall inherit *everlasting* **eternal** life.
30 But many that are first shall be *last* **final**;
and the *last* **final** shall be first.

THE PARABLE OF THE VINEYARD WORKERS

20 For the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of heaven **the heavens**
is like unto a man **human**
that is an *householder* **housedespotés**,
which went out **simultaneously** early in the morning
to hire *labourers* **workers** into his vineyard.
2 And when he had *agreed* **symphonized**
with the *labourers* **workers** for a penny **denarion** a day,
he *sent* **apostolized** them into his vineyard.
3 And he went out about the third hour,
and saw others standing idle in the *marketplace* **market**,
4 And said unto them; Go ye also into the vineyard,
and whatsoever is *right* **just** I will **shall** give you.
And they went their way.
5 Again he went out about the sixth and ninth hour,
and did likewise.
6 And about the eleventh hour he went out,
and found others standing idle,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Why stand ye here all the day idle?
7 They say **word** unto him,
Because no man **one** hath hired us.
He *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Go ye also into the vineyard;
and whatsoever is *right* **just**, that shall ye *receive* **take**.
8 So when even was come **being evening**,
the lord **adoni** of the vineyard
saith **wordeth** unto his *steward* **manager**,
Call the *labourers* **workers**, and give them their hire,
beginning from the *last* **final** unto the first.
9 And when they came
that were hired about the eleventh hour,
they *received* every man **each took** a penny **denarion**.
10 But when the first came, they *supposed* **presumed**
that they should have *received* **taken much** more;
and they likewise
received every man **each took** a penny **denarion**.
11 And when they had *received* **taken** it,
they murmured
against the *goodman of the house* **housedespotés**,
12 saying **wording**,
These *last* **final** have *wrought* **produced** but one hour,
and thou hast made them equal unto us,
which have borne the burden and heat of the day.
13 But he answered one of them, and said,
Friend **Comrade**, I do **injure** thee *no wrong* **not**:
didst not thou *agree* **indeed symphonize** with me
for a penny **denarion**?
14 Take that thine is, and go thy way:
I will give unto this *last* **final**, even as unto thee.
15 Is it not *lawful* **allowed** for me
to do what I will with mine own?
Is thine eye evil, because I am good?

MATTHAIOS 19, 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

26 But Yah Shua looks, and says,
With humanity this is impossible;
but with Elohim all are possible.

THE COST OF DISCIPLESHIP

27 Then Petros answers him, saying,
Behold, we forsook all, and follow you;
what then, have we?
28 And Yah Shua say to them,
Amen! I word to you — to you who follow me:
In the regenesis,
when the Son of humanity
sits on the throne of his glory,
you also sit on twelve thrones
judging the twelve scions of Yisra El:
and everyone who forsakes houses
or brothers or sisters or father or mother
or woman or children or lands
for sake of my name;
takes a hundredfold and inherits eternal life:
30 but many who are first become final;
and the final first.

THE PARABLE OF THE VINEYARD WORKERS

20 For the sovereigndom of the heavens
is likened to a human — a housedespotés
who goes simultaneously early in the morning
to hire workers into his vineyard:
2 and he symphonizes with the workers
for a denarion a day;
and apostolizes them to his vineyard.
3 And about the third hour
he goes and sees others standing idle in the market
4 and says to them, You also go to the vineyard,
and I give you whatever is just.
— and they go their way.
5 Again about the sixth and ninth hour
he goes and does likewise.
6 And about the eleventh hour
he goes and finds others standing idle,
and words to them,
Why stand you here idle all the day?
7 They word to him, Because no one hires us.
8 He words to them,
You also go into the vineyard;
and whatever is just, you take.
9 And being evening;
the adoni of the vineyard words to his manager,
Call the workers, and give them their hire,
beginning from the final to the first.
10 And those hired about the eleventh hour, come;
and they each take a denarion.
11 And the first come;
and they presume to take much more;
and they likewise each take a denarion.
12 And they take it,
and murmur against the housedespotés,
wording, These final produced but one hour:
and you make them equal to us
who bore the burden and heat of the day.
13 And he answers one of them, saying,
Comrade, I injure you not.
Symphonized you not with me
indeed for a denarion?
14 Take what is yours and go your way:
I give to this final, even as to you.
15 Am I not allowed to do what I will with my own?
Is your eye evil because I am good?

MATTHEW 20

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 So **Thus** the *last final* shall be first,
and the first *last final*:
for many be called, but few *chosen selected*.
YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION
17 And *Jesus Yah Shua*
going up ascending to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
took the twelve disciples *apart privately* in the way,
and said unto them,
18 Behold, we *go up ascend* to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*;
and the Son of *man humanity* shall be betrayed
unto the *chief arch* priests and unto the scribes,
and they shall condemn him to death,
19 And shall *deliver betray* him to the *Gentiles goyim*
to mock, and to scourge, and to *crucify* him **stake**:
and the third day he shall rise *again*.

PRIORITY POSITIONS

20 Then came to him
the mother of *Zebedee's children Zabdi's sons*
with her sons, worshipping him,
and *desiring a certain thing asking somewhat* of him.
21 And he said unto her, What *wilt willest* thou?
She *saith wordeth* unto him,
Grant Say that these my two sons may sit,
the one *on at* thy right *hand*,
and the *other on one at* the left,
in thy *kingdom sovereigndom*.
22 But *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said,
Ye know not what ye ask.
Are ye able to drink of the cup
that I shall drink of,
and to be baptized with the baptism
that I am baptized with?
They *say word* unto him, We are able.
23 And he *saith wordeth* unto them,
Ye shall drink indeed of my cup,
and be baptized
with the baptism that I am baptized with:
but to sit *on at* my right *hand*, and *on at* my left,
is not mine to give,
but it shall be given to them
for whom it is prepared of by my Father.

THE TEN INDIGNANT DISCIPLES

24 And when the ten heard it,
they were *moved with indignation indignified*
against concerning the two brethren.
25 But *Jesus Yah Shua* called them unto him, and said,
Ye know that the *princes archs* of the *Gentiles goyim*
exercise dominion over rule over them,
and they that are *great mega*
exercise authority upon authorize over them.
26 But it shall not be *so thus* among you:
but whosoever *will willeth to* be *great mega* among you,
let him be your minister;
27 And whosoever *will willeth to* be *chief first* among you,
let him be your servant:
28 *Even Exactly* as the Son of *man humanity*
came not to be ministered unto, but to minister,
and to give his *life soul* a *ransom redemption* for many.

YAH SHUA HEALS TWO BLIND

29 And as they *departed proceeded* from *Jericho Yericho*,
a *great vast* multitude followed him.
30 And, behold, two blind men sitting by the way side,
when they heard that *Jesus Yah Shua* passed by,
cried out, *saying wording*, *Have mercy on Mercy* us,
O *Lord Adonay*, thou son of David.
31 And the multitude rebuked them,
because that they should *hold their peace hush*:
but they cried the more, *saying wording*,
Have mercy on Mercy us,
O *Lord Adonay*, thou son of David.
32 And *Jesus Yah Shua* stood still,
and *called voiced out to* them, and said,
What will ye that I shall do unto you?
33 They *say word* unto him,
Lord Adonay, that our eyes may be opened.

MATTHAIOS 20

exeGeses companion BIBLE

16 Thus the final become first,
and the first final:
for many be called but few selected.
YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION
17 And Yah Shua ascends to Yeru Shalem
and takes the twelve disciples privately in the way
and says to them,
18 Behold, we ascend to Yeru Shalem
for the betrayal of the Son of humanity
to the archpriests and to the scribes
to condemn him to death
19 — to betray him to the goyim
to mock and to scourge and to stake:
and the third day he rises.

PRIORITY POSITIONS

20 Then the mother of the sons of Zabdi
comes to him with her sons,
worshipping him and asking somewhat of him.
21 And he says to her, What will you?
She words to him,
Say that these my two sons sit,
the one at your right and the one at the left
in your sovereigndom.
22 But Yah Shua answers, saying,
You know not what you ask:
Are you able to drink of the cup I am about to drink?
And baptized with the baptism
I am about to be baptized?
They word to him, We are able.
23 And he words to them,
You indeed drink of my cup,
and baptize with the baptism I am about to be baptized:
but to sit at my right and at my left
is not mine to give:
but it is given to them
for whom it is prepared by my Father.

THE TEN INDIGNANT DISCIPLES

24 And the ten hear it,
and are indignified concerning the two brothers.
25 And Yah Shua calls them to him, and says,
You know that the archs of the goyim rule over them;
and they who are mega authorize over them.
26 But so be it not among you:
but whoever wills to be mega among you,
becomes your minister;
27 and whoever wills to be first among you,
becomes your servant.
28 Exactly as the Son of humanity
comes not to be ministered unto, but to minister:
and to give his soul a redemption for many.

YAH SHUA HEALS TWO BLIND

29 And as they proceed from Yericho
a vast multitude follows him:
30 and behold, two blind men sitting by the way side,
hear that Yah Shua passes by,
and they cry out, wording,
Mercy us, O Adonay, you son of David.
31 — and the multitude rebukes them to hush.
But they cry out the more, wording,
Mercy us, O Adonay, you son of David.
32 And Yah Shua stands still
and voices out to them, saying,
What will you that I do to you?
33 They word to him,
Adonay, that our eyes be opened.

MATTHEW 20, 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

34 So Jesus **Yah Shua**
had *compassion* a **sympathetic spleen** on them,
and touched their eyes:
and *immediately* **straightway** their eyes *received sight saw*,
and they followed him.

THE TRIUMPHAL ENTRY OF YAH SHUA

21

And when they
drew nigh **approached** unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and were come to *Bethphage* **Beth Pag**,
unto the mount of Olives,
then *sent Jesus* **Yah Shua** **apostolized** two disciples,
2 *Saying* **Wording** unto them,
Go into the village over against you,
and straightway ye shall find *an ass* a **burro** tied,
and a colt with her:
loose **release** them, and bring them unto me.
3 And *if whenever* any *man one* say ought unto you,
ye shall say, *the Lord* **Adonay** hath need of them;
and straightway he *will send* **shall apostolize** them.
4 All this *was done* **became**, that it might be fulfilled/**shalamed**
which was *spoken by* **rhetorized through** the prophet,
saying **wording**,
5 *Tell Say* ye the daughter of *Sion* **Siyon**,
Behold, thy *king* **sovereign** cometh unto thee,
meek, and *sitting* **mounted** upon *an ass* a **burro**,
and a colt the *foal* **son** of *an ass* a **burro**.

Zechar Yah 9:9

6 And the disciples went, and did **exactly**
as Jesus commanded **Yah Shua** **ordered** them,
7 And brought the *ass* **burro**, and the colt,
and put on them their *clothes* **garments**,
and they set him thereon.
8 And a *very great* **vast** multitude
spread their garments in the way;
others cut down branches from the trees,
and *strawed* **spread** them in the way.
9 And the multitudes that went before, and that followed,
cried, *saying* **wording**,
Hosanna **Hoshia Na** to the son of David:
Blessed **Eulogized** is he
that cometh in the name of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**;
Hosanna **Hoshia Na** in the *highest* **highests**.

Psalm 118:25, 26

10 And when he
was come **entered** into *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
all the city *was moved* **quaked**, *saying* **wording**,
Who is this?
11 And the multitude *said* **worded**,
This is *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
the prophet of Nazareth of *Galilee* **Galiyl**.

YAH SHUA CLEANSSES THE PRIESTAL PRECINCT

12 And *Jesus went into* **Yah Shua** **entered**
the *temple* **priestal precinct** of *God* **Elohim**,
and *cast out* **ejected** all them that sold and *bought* **marketed**
in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
and *overthrew* **upset** the tables
of the *moneychangers* **coindealers**,
and the *seats* **cathedras** of them that sold doves,
13 And *said* **worded** unto them, It is *written* **scribed**,
My house shall be called the house of prayer;
but ye have made it a *den* **grotto** of *thieves* **robbers**.

Yesha Yah 56:7

YAH SHUA CURES THE BLIND AND THE LAME

14 And the blind and the lame
came to him in the *temple* **priestal precinct**;
and he *healed* **cured** them.
15 And when the *chief* **arch** priests and scribes
saw the *wonderful things* **marvels** that he did,
and the *children* **lads** crying in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
and *saying* **wording**,
Hosanna **Hoshia Na** to the son of David;
they *were sore displeased* **indignified**,

Psalm 118:25, 26

16 And said unto him, Hearest thou what these *say* **word**?
And *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua** **wordeth** unto them, Yea;
have ye never ever read,
out of the mouth of babes and *sucklings* **nipplers**
thou hast *perfected* **praise** **prepared** **halal**?

Psalm 8:2

MATTHAIOS 20, 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

34 So Yah Shua has a sympathetic spleen on them
and touches their eyes:
and straightway their eyes see and they follow him.

THE TRIUMPHAL ENTRY OF YAH SHUA

21

And they approach *Yeru Shalem*,
and go to *Beth Pag*, to the mount of Olives.
2 Then Yah Shua apostolizes two disciples,
wording to them,
Go into the village opposite you;
and straightway you find a burro tied with a colt:
release them, and bring them to me:
3 and whenever anyone says aught to you,
say, *Adonay* needs them.
— and straightway he apostolizes them.
4 All this is to fulfill/shalam
what the prophet rhetorized, wording,
5 Say you the daughter of *Siyon*,
Behold, your sovereign comes to you
— meek and mounted on a burro
with a colt the son of a burro.

Zechar Yah 9:9

6 And the disciples go
and do exactly as Yah Shua orders them;
7 and bring the burro and the colt,
and put their garments on them;
and they set him on them.
8 And vast multitude
spreads their garments in the way;
others cut down branches from the trees
and spread them in the way:
9 and the multitudes preceding and following cry out,
wording, *Hoshia Na* to the son of David:
Eulogized — he who comes in the name of *Yah Veh*;
Hoshia Na in the highests.

Psalm 118:25, 26

10 And he enters *Yeru Shalem*;
and all the city quakes,
wording, Who is this?
11 And the multitude words,
This is *Yah Shua* the prophet of Nazareth, *Galiyl*.

YAH SHUA CLEANSSES THE PRIESTAL PRECINCT

12 And Yah Shua enters the priestal precinct of *Elohim*
and ejects all who sell and market
in the priestal precinct;
and upsets the tables of the coindealers
and the cathedras of them who sell doves.

13 And words to them, It is scribed,
My house is called the house of prayer;
but you make it a grotto of robbers.

Yesha Yah 56:7

YAH SHUA CURES THE BLIND AND THE LAME

14 And the blind and the lame
come to him in the priestal precinct
and he cures them.
15 And the archpriests and scribes
see the marvels he does:
and the lads crying in the priestal precinct,
and *wording*, *Hoshia Na* to the son of David
— they indignify.

Psalm 118:25, 26

16 And they say to him,
Hear you what these are wording?

And Yah Shua words to them, Yes;
have you never ever read,
From the mouth of babes and nipplers
you prepare **halal**?

Psalm 8:2

MATTHEW 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 17 And he left them,
and went out of the city into *Bethany Beth Ania*;
and he *lodged camped* there.
- YAH SHUA CURSES THE FIG TREE**
- 18 Now **But** in the **early** morning as he returned into the city,
he hungered.
- 19 And when he saw a fig tree in the way, he came to it,
and found *nothing naught* thereon,
but except leaves only,
and said **worded** unto it,
Let no fruit *grow on* **become from** thee
henceforward for ever **unto the eons**.
And *presently* **immediately** the fig tree withered away.
- 20 And when the disciples saw it,
they marvelled, *saying* **wording**,
How *soon is* **immediately** the fig tree withered away!
- 21 *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said unto them,
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
if whenever ye have *faith trust*, and doubt not,
ye shall not **only** do this *which is done* to the fig tree,
but also *if whenever* ye shall say unto this mountain,
Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea;
it shall be *done*.
- 22 And all *things*,
whatsoever — **as much as ever** ye shall ask in prayer,
believing trusting, ye shall *receive* **take**.
- ARCH PRIESTS AND PRESBYTERS OF THE PEOPLE
QUESTION THE AUTHORITY OF YAH SHUA**
- 23 And when he was come
into the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
the *chief arch* priests and the elders of the people
came unto him as he was *teaching* **doctrinating**,
and said **worded**,
By In what authority doest thou these *things*?
and who gave thee this authority?
- 24 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said unto them,
I also *will shall* ask you one *thing word*,
which *if whenever* ye tell me,
I *in like wise will tell* **shall also say to** you
by in what authority I do these *things*.
- 25 The baptism of *John Yahn*, whence was it?
from of the heaven, or of *men* **humanity**?
And they reasoned with themselves, *saying* **speaking**,
if whenever we shall say, *From Of* the heaven;
he *will shall* say unto us,
So Why did ye not *then believe* **trust** him?
But *if whenever* we shall say, *Of men* **humanity**;
we *fear awe* the *people* **multitudes**;
for all *hold John* **regard Yahn** as a prophet.
- 27 And they answered *Jesus Yah Shua*, and said,
We *cannot tell* **know not**.
And he said unto them,
Neither *tell word* I you
by in what authority I do these *things*.
- THE PARABLE OF THE TWO CHILDREN**
- 28 But what think ye?
A *certain man* **human** had two *sons* **children**;
and he came to the first, and said,
Son Child, go work to day in my vineyard.
- 29 He answered and said, I will not:
but afterward he *repented* **regretted**, and went.
- 30 And he came to the second, and said likewise.
And he answered and said, I go, *sir adoni*: and went not.
- 31 Whether of them twain did the will of his father?
They say **word** unto him, The first.
Jesus saith Yah Shua speaketh unto them,
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
That
the *publicans* **customs agents** and the *harlots* **whores**
go into the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God Elohim*
before preceding you.
- 32 For *John Yahn* came unto you
in the way of *righteousness* **justness**,
and ye *believed* **trusted** him not:
but the *publicans* **customs agents** and the *harlots* **whores**
believed **trusted** him:
and ye, when ye had seen it,
repented **regretted** not afterward,
that ye might *believe* **trust** him.

MATTHAIOS 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 17 And he leaves them
and goes from the city to Beth Ania
— and there he camps.
- YAH SHUA CURSES THE FIG TREE**
- 18 But in the early morning,
he returns to the city, famished.
19 And he sees a fig tree in the way
and comes to it,
and finds naught thereon except leaves only:
and he words to it,
No fruit becomes from you to the eons.
— and immediately the fig tree withers.
- 20 And the disciples see and marvel, wording,
How immediately the fig tree withers!
- 21 Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Amen! I word to you,
Whenever you have trust, and doubt not,
you not only do this to the fig tree,
but also, whenever you say to this mountain,
Remove! And be cast into the sea!
— so be it.
- 22 And all — as much as ever you ask in prayer,
trusting, you take.
- ARCHPRIESTS AND PRESBYTERS OF THE PEOPLE
QUESTION THE AUTHORITY OF YAH SHUA**
- 23 And he comes to the priestal precinct:
and the archpriests and the elders of the people
come to him as he doctrinates, and they word,
In what authority do you these?
and, Who gives you this authority?
- 24 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
I also ask you one word,
which, whenever you tell me,
I also say to you in what authority I do these.
- 25 The baptism of Yahn, whence is it
— Of the heavens? Or of humanity?
- And they reason with themselves, speaking,
Whenever we say, Of the heavens;
he says to us, So why trust you not him?
But whenever we say, Of humanity;
we awe the multitudes;
for all regard Yahn as a prophet.
— and they answer Yah Shua, saying,
We know not.
- And he says to them,
And I word not in what authority I do these.
- THE PARABLE OF THE TWO CHILDREN**
- 28 But what think you?
A human has two children:
and he comes to the first and says,
Child, go work today in my vineyard.
- 29 He answers, saying, I will not
— but afterward he regrets, and goes.
- 30 And he comes to the second, and says likewise.
And he answers, saying, I go, adoni: and goes not.
- 31 Which of the two does the will of his father?
They word to him, The first.
- Yah Shua speaks to them,
Amen! I word to you,
That the customs agents and the whores
precede you into the sovereigndom of Elohim.
32 For Yahn came to you in the way of justness,
and you trusted him not:
but the customs agents and the whores trusted him:
and you, when you saw,
regretted not afterward to trust him.

MATTHEW 21, 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE PARABLE OF THE VINEYARD

33 Hear another parable:
There was a *certain householder* **human housesdespotes**,
which planted a vineyard, and hedged it round about,
and digged a *winepress* **trough** in it, and built a tower,
and let **leased** it out to *husbandmen* **cultivators**,
and went *into a far country* **abroad**:
34 And when the *time* **season** of the fruit
drew near **approached**,
he sent **apostolized** his servants
to the *husbandmen* **cultivators**,
that they might *receive* **take** the fruits of it.
35 And the *husbandmen* **cultivators** took his servants
and beat **indeed flogged** one,
and **killed slaughtered** another, and stoned another.
36 Again, he sent **apostolized** other servants
much more than the first:
and they did unto them likewise.
37 But *last of all* **afterward**
he sent **apostolized** unto them his son, *saying* **wording**,
They will *reverence* **shall respect** my son.
38 But when the *husbandmen* **cultivators** saw the son,
they said among themselves, This is the heir;
come, let us **kill slaughter** him,
and let us seize on his inheritance.
39 And they *caught* **took** him,
and cast **ejected** him out of the vineyard,
and **slew slaughtered** him.
40 **So** When the *lord* **adoni** *therefore* of the vineyard cometh,
what will **shall** he do
unto those *husbandmen* **cultivators**?
41 They say **word** unto him,
He will *miserably* **shall evilly** destroy
those *wicked* **evil** men,
and will let out **shall lease** his vineyard
unto other *husbandmen* **cultivators**,
which shall *render* **give** him the fruits in their seasons.
42 *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua wordeth** unto them,
Did ye never **ever** read in the scriptures,
The stone which the builders *rejected* **disapproved**,
the same is become the head of the corner:
this is *the Lord's doing* **Yah Veh's becoming**,
and it is marvellous in our eyes?

Psalms 118:22, 23

43 *Therefore* say **So word** I unto you,
The *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**
shall be taken from you,
and given to a *nation* **goyim**
bringing forth **producing** the fruits thereof.
44 And whosoever shall fall on this stone
shall be *broken* **crushed**:
but on whomsoever it shall fall,
it will grind him to powder **shall be pulverized**.

Yesha Yah 8:14

45 And when the *chief* **arch** priests and Pharisees
had heard his parables,
they *perceived* **knew**
that he *spake of* **worded concerning** them.
46 But when they sought to lay hands on him,
they *feared* **awed** the multitude,
because they *took* **regarded** him *for* **as** a prophet.

THE PARABLE OF THE MARRIAGE FEAST

22 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered
and *spake* **said** unto them again by parables,
and *said* **wording**,
2 The *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**
is like unto a *certain king* **human sovereign**,
which made a marriage for his son,
3 And *sent forth* **apostolized** his servants
to call them that were bidden to the *wedding* **marriage**:
and they *would* **willed to** not come.
4 Again, he *sent forth* **apostolized** other servants,
saying **wording**, Tell them which are bidden,
Behold, I have prepared my dinner:
my *oxen* **bulls** and my fatlings are *killed* **sacrificed**,
and all *things* are *ready* **prepared**:
come unto the marriage.
5 But they *made light of* **disregarded** it, and went their ways,
one **indeed** to his *farm* **field**, another to his merchandise:

MATTHAIOS 21, 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE PARABLE OF THE VINEYARD

33 Hear another parable:
A human housesdespotes,
plants a vineyard and hedges it all around
and digs a trough in it and builds a tower
and leases it to cultivators and goes abroad:
34 and the season of the fruit approaches
and he apostolizes his servants to the cultivators
to take of the fruits:
35 and the cultivators take his servants;
and indeed flog one
and slaughter another and stone another.
36 Again, he apostolizes other servants
much more than the first:
and they do to them likewise.
37 And afterward he apostolizes his son to them,
wording, They respect my son.
38 But the cultivators see the son,
and they say among themselves, This is the heir!
Come! Slaughter him! Seize his inheritance!
39 And they take him
and eject him from the vineyard and slaughter him.
40 So when the adoni of the vineyard comes,
what does he to those cultivators?

41 They word to him,
He evilly destroys those evil men,
and leases his vineyard to other cultivators
who give him the fruits in their seasons.

42 Yah Shua words to them,
Read you never ever in the scriptures,
The stone the builders disapprove,
the same becomes the head of the corner:
this becomes of Yah Vah
and it is marvellous in our eyes?

Psalms 118:22, 23

43 So I word to you,
The sovereigndom of Elohim is taken from you
and given to a goyim producing the fruits thereof.
44 And whoever falls on this stone crushes:
but on whomever it falls, pulverizes.

Yesha Yah 8:14

45 And the archpriests and Pharisees
hear his parables,
and they know he words concerning them:
46 and they seek to lay hands on him,
but they awe the multitude
because they regard him as a prophet.

THE PARABLE OF THE MARRIAGE FEAST

22 And again Yah Shua answers them by parables,
wording,
2 The sovereigndom of the heavens
is likened to a human sovereign
who makes a marriage for his son:
3 and he apostolizes his servants
to call those bidden to the marriage:
and they will to not come.
4 Again, he apostolizes other servants,
wording, Tell those bidden,
Behold, I prepared my dinner:
my bulls and my fatlings are sacrificed
and all are prepared:
come to the marriage.
5 And they disregard, and go their ways:
one indeed to his field; another to his merchandise;

MATTHAIOS 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 And the *remnant* took **rest overpowered** his servants,
and *entreated* **insulted** them *spitefully*,
and *slew* **slaughtered** them.
7 But when the *king* **sovereign** heard thereof,
he was wroth:
and he sent *forth* his *armies* **warriors**,
and destroyed those murderers, and burned *up* their city.
8 Then *saith* **wordeth** he to his servants,
The *wedding* **marriage** is ready **indeed prepared**,
but they which were bidden were not worthy.
9 **So** Go ye *therefore* into the highways,
and as many as **ever** ye shall find, bid to the marriage.
10 **So** And those servants went out into the highways,
and gathered together all as many as they found,
both *bad* **evil** and good:
and the *wedding* **marriage** was *furnished* **filled**
with *guests* **those** **reposing**.
11 And when the *king* came in **sovereign** entered
to see the *guests* **observe those** **reposing**,
he saw there a *man* **human** which had not *on* **endued**
a *wedding* garment **marriage** **endowment**:
12 And he *saith* **wordeth** unto him, *Friend* **Comrade**,
how *camest* **enterest** thou in hither
not having a *wedding* garment **marriage** **endowment**?
And he was *speechless* **muzzled**.
13 Then *said* the *king* **sovereign** to the *servants* **ministers**,
Bind him hand and foot, and take him away,
and cast **eject** him into outer darkness,
there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.
14 For many are called, but few are *chosen* **selected**.

THE HERODIANS TEST YAH SHUA

15 Then went the Pharisees, and took counsel
how they might *entangle* **ensnare** him in *his* **talk** **word**.
16 And they *sent out* **apostolized** unto him
their disciples with the Herodians, *saying* **wording**,
Master **Doctor**, we know that thou art true,
and *teachest* **doctrinest** the way of *God* **Elohim** in truth,
neither *carest* **concernest** thou for any *man* **one**:
for thou *regardest* **lookest** not
on the *person* **face** of *men* **humanity**.
17 *Tell* **So** **say** to us *therefore*, What thinkest thou?
Is it *lawful* **allowed** to give tribute unto *Caesar* **the Kaisar**,
or not?

18 But *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
perceived **knew** their *wickedness* **evil**, and said,
Why *tempt* **test** ye me, ye hypocrites?
19 Shew me the tribute *money* **coin**.
And they *brought* **offered** unto him a *penny* **denarion**.
20 And he *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Whose is this *image* **icon** and *superscription* **epigraph**?
21 They *say* **word** unto him, *Caesar's* **The Kaisar's**.
Then *saith* **wordeth** he unto them,
Render therefore **So** **give**
unto Caesar the things which are Caesar's
the Kaisar's to the Kaisar;
and *unto God the things that are God's*
Elohim's to Elohim.
22 When they had heard these *words*, they marvelled,
and *left* **forsook** him, and went their way.

THE SADOQIYM TEST YAH SHUA

23 The same day came to him the *Sadducees* **Sadoqiym**,
which *say* **word** that there is no resurrection,
and asked him,
24 *Saying* **Wording**, *Master* **Doctor**,
Moses **Mosheh** said,
if whenever a *man* **one** die, having no children,
his brother shall marry his *wife* **woman**,
and raise *up* **seed** **sperma** unto his brother.
25 Now there were with us seven brethren:
and the first, when he had married a *wife*, *deceased* **died**,
and, having no *issue* **sperma**,
left **forsook** his *wife* **woman** unto his brother:
26 Likewise the second also,
and the third, unto the seventh.
27 And *last of all* **afterward** the woman died also.
Genesis 38:8—10
28 *Therefore* **So** in the resurrection
whose *wife* **woman** shall she be of the seven?
for they all had her.

MATTHAIOS 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 and the rest overpower his servants
and insult them and slaughter them.
7 And the sovereign hears, and he is wroth:
and he sends his warriors
and destroys those murderers and burns their city.
8 Then he words to his servants,
The marriage is indeed prepared
and they who are bidden are not worthy:
9 so go into the highways,
and as many as ever you find, bid to the marriage.
10 And those servants go into the highways
and gather all — as many as they find
— both evil and good:
and the marriage fills up with those reposing.
11 And the sovereign enters to observe those reposing:
and there he sees a human
not endued in a marriage endowment:
12 and he words to him, Comrade,
how entered you here, not having a marriage endowment?
— and he is muzzled.

13 Then the sovereign says to the ministers,
Bind him hand and foot and take him away
and eject him into outer darkness;
there becomes weeping and gnashing of teeth:
14 for many are called, but few are selected.

THE HERODIANS TEST YAH SHUA

15 Then the Pharisees go and take counsel
on how to ensnare him in words:
16 and they apostolize
their disciples with the Herodians to him,
wording, Doctor, we know you are true,
and doctrienate the way of Elohim in truth;
and you concern not about anyone:
for you look not on the face of humanity:
17 so say to us, What think you?
Is it allowed to give tribute to the Kaisar — or not?

18 But Yah Shua, knowing their evil,
says, Why test you me, you hypocrites?
19 Show me the tribute coin.
— and they offer him a denarion.

20 And he words to them,
Whose is this icon and epigraph?
21 They word to him, Of the Kaisar.

Then he words to them,
So give that of the Kaisar to the Kaisar;
and that of Elohim to Elohim.

22 And they hear these and marvel
and forsake him and go their way.

THE SADOQIYM TEST YAH SHUA

23 The same day the Sadoqiym come to him
— who word that there is no resurrection,
and ask him,
24 wording, Doctor, Mosheh says,
Whenever anyone dies, having no children,
his brother marries his woman
and raises sperma to his brother:
25 and there are seven brothers with us:
and the first, marries and dies;
and having no sperma,
forsakes his woman to his brother:
26 likewise the second also
and the third, to the seventh:
27 and afterward the woman also dies.

Genesis 38:8—10

28 So in the resurrection,
of the seven, whose woman becomes she?
— for they all had her.

MATTHEW 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

29 *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said unto them,
Ye *do err wander*, not knowing the scriptures,
nor the *power dynamis* of *God Elohim*.
30 For in the resurrection they neither marry,
nor are *given in marriage married off*,
but are as the angels of *God Elohim* in the heaven.
31 But
as *touching concerning* the resurrection of the dead,
have ye not read
that which was *spoken rhetorized* unto you
by *God Elohim*, *saying wording*,
32 *I am I AM* the *God Elohim* of Abraham,
and the *God Elohim* of *Isaac Yischaq*,
and the *God Elohim* of *Jacob Yaaqov*?
God Elohim is not the *God Elohim* of the dead,
but of the living.
33 And when the multitude heard this,
they were astonished at his doctrine.

Exodus 3:6

THE PHARISEES TEST YAH SHUA

34 But when the Pharisees had heard that he had
put muzzled the *Sadducees Sadoqiym* to silence,
they were gathered together.
35 Then *So* one of them, *which was a lawyer a torahist*,
asked him a question,
tempting testing him, and *saying wording*,
36 *Master Doctor*,
which is the *great commandment mega misvah*
in the *law torah*?
37 *Jesus Yah Shua* said unto him,
Thou shalt love *the Lord Yah Veh* thy *God Elohim*
with in all thy heart,
and *with in* all thy soul, and *with in* all thy mind.
38 This is the first and *great commandment mega misvah*.
39 And the second is like unto it,
Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.
40 *On In* these two *commandments misvoth*
hang all the *law torah* and the prophets.

Deuteronomy 6:5, Leviticus 19:18

YAH SHUA TESTS THE PHARISEES

41 While the Pharisees were gathered together,
Jesus Yah Shua asked them,
42 *Saying Wording*,
What think ye of *Christ concerning the Messiah*?
whose son is he?
They say *word* unto him, *The son* of David.
43 He *saith wordeth* unto them,
So How *then* doth David in spirit call him *Lord Adonay*,
saying wording,
44 *The LORD said An oracle of Yah Veh*
unto my *Lord Adonay*,
Sit thou *on at* my right *hand*,
till I *make place* thine enemies thy footstool?
45 *So* If David *then* call him *Lord Adonay*, how is he his son?
Psalm 110:1
46 And no *man one* was able to answer him a word,
neither durst any *man one* from that day *forth*
ask him any more questions.

THE PSEUDO RELIGION OF THE PHARISEES

23 Then spake *Jesus Yah Shua*
to the multitude, and to his disciples,
2 *Saying Wording*,
The scribes and the Pharisees
sit in *Moses' seat Mosheh's cathedra*:
3 *So* All *therefore whatsoever* — *as much as ever*
they *bid you observe say to you to guard*,
that *observe guard* and do;
but do not ye after their works:
for they say *word*, and do not.
4 For they bind heavy burdens
and *grievous to be borne oppressive*,
and *put place* them on *men's humanity's* shoulders;
but they themselves will *to not move wag* them
with one of their fingers.
5 But all their works they do
for to be *seen observed* of *men humanity*:
they *make broad broaden* their phylacteries,
and *enlarge magnify* the *borders edges* of their garments,

MATTHAIOS 22, 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

29 *Yah Shua* answers them, saying,
You wander, neither knowing the scriptures
nor the dynamis of *Elohim*:
30 for in the resurrection
they neither marry nor are married off;
but are as the angels of *Elohim* in the heavens.
31 But concerning the resurrection of the dead:
Read you not what *Elohim* rhetorized, wording,
32 I AM the *Elohim* of Abraham
and the *Elohim* of *Yischaq*
and the *Elohim* of *Yaaqov*?
Elohim is not the *Elohim* of the dead; but of the living.
33 — and when the multitude hears this,
they are astonished at his doctrine.

Exodus 3:6

THE PHARISEES TEST YAH SHUA

34 But the Pharisees hear he muzzled the *Sadoqiym*,
and they gather together to him:
35 and one of them, a torahist,
asks him a question; testing him, and wording,
36 Doctor, which is the mega misvah in the torah?
37 *Yah Shua* says to him,
Love *Yah Veh* your *Elohim* in all your heart
and in all your soul and in all your mind
38 — this is the first and mega misvah:
39 and the second is likened to it,
Love your neighbor as yourself:
40 — in these two misvoth
hang all the torah and the prophets.

Deuteronomy 6:5, Leviticus 19:18

YAH SHUA TESTS THE PHARISEES

41 And the Pharisees gather together;
and *Yah Shua* asks them,
42 wording,
What think you concerning the Messiah?
Whose son is he?
They word to him, Of David.
43 He words to them,
So how, in spirit, calls David him *Adonay*
wording,
44 An oracle of *Yah Veh* to my *Adonay*:
Sit at my right,
until I place your enemies a stool for your feet?
45 So if David calls him *Adonay*, how is he his son?
Psalm 110:1
46 And no one is able to answer him a word,
and from that day
no one dares ask him any more questions.

THE PSEUDO RELIGION OF THE PHARISEES

23 Then *Yah Shua* speaks to the multitude
and to his disciples,
2 wording,
The scribes and the Pharisees
sit in the cathedra of *Mosheh*:
3 so all — as much as ever they say to you to guard,
guard and do;
but after their works, do not:
for they word, and do not:
4 for they bind heavy and oppressive burdens
and place them on the shoulders of humanity;
but they themselves
will to not wag them with one of their fingers:
5 but they do all their works
to be observed of humanity:
they broaden their phylacteries
and magnify the edges of their garments;

MATTHEW 23

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

6 And love **befriend**
the *uppermost rooms* **preeminent resposings**
at *feasts* **suppers**,
and the *chief seats* **preeminent cathedras**
in the synagogues,
7 And *greetings* **salutations** in the markets,
and to be called of *men* **humanity**, Rabbi, Rabbi.
8 **HONORARY TITLES RESERVED FOR DEITY**
But be not ye called Rabbi:
for one is your Rabbi, even *Christ* **the Messiah**;
and all ye are brethren.
9 And call no man your father upon the earth:
for one is your Father, which is in *heaven* **the heavens**.
10 Neither be ye called *masters* **tutors**:
for one is your *Master* **tutor**, even *Christ* **the Messiah**.
11 But he that is greatest among you
shall be your *servant* **minister**.
12 And whosoever shall exalt himself
shall be *abased* **humbled**;
and he that shall humble himself shall be exalted.
13 **YAH SHUA DENOUNCES THE PHARISEES**
But woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites!
for ye shut up
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**
against men **in front of humanity**:
for ye neither *go in yourselves* **enter**,
neither *suffer* **allow** ye them that are entering to *go in* **enter**.
14 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites!
for ye devour widows' houses,
and for a *pretence* **pretext** make *long far out* prayer:
therefore **because of this** ye shall *receive* **take**
the *greater damnation* **superabundant judgment**.
15 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites!
for ye *compass* **go about the sea** and *land* **the dry**
to make one proselyte,
and when *ever* he is *made* **becometh**,
ye make him *twofold more* **double**
the child of *hell* **Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning**
than yourselves.
16 Woe unto you, ye blind guides, which say **word**,
Whosoever shall *swear* **oath**
by in the *temple* **nave**,
it is *nothing* **naught**;
but whosoever shall *swear* **oath**
by in the gold of the *temple* **nave**,
he is a debtor!
17 Ye fools and blind: for whether is greater,
the gold,
or the *temple* **nave** that *sanctifieth* **halloweth** the gold?
18 And, Whosoever shall *swear* **oath**
by in the *sacrifice* altar,
it is *nothing* **naught**;
but whosoever *swareth* **oatheth**
by in the *gift* **oblation** that is upon it,
he is *guilty* **a debtor**.
19 Ye fools and blind: for whether is greater,
the *gift* **oblation**,
or the *sacrifice* altar
that *sanctifieth* **halloweth** the *gift* **oblation**?
20 **So** Whoso *therefore* shall *swear* **oath**
by in the *sacrifice* altar,
swareth by **oatheth in** it, and *by in* all *things* thereon.
21 And whoso shall *swear* **oath**
by in the *temple* **nave**,
swareth by **oatheth in** it,
and *by in* him that *dwelleth* **settleteth** therein.
22 And he that shall *swear* **oath**
by in the *heaven*,
swareth by **oatheth in** the throne of *God* **Elohim**,
and *by in* him that *sitteth* thereon.
23 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites!
for ye pay tithes of mint and anise and *cummin* **kammon**,
and have *omitted* **forsaken**
the weightier matters of the *law* **torah**,
the judgment, and the mercy, and faith the trust:
these *ought* **needed** ye to have done,
and not to *leave the other* **forsake those** undone.
24 Ye blind guides,
which strain at a gnat, and swallow a camel.

MATTHAIOS 23

exeGeses companion BIBLE

6 and befriend the preeminent resposings at suppers
and the preeminent cathedras in the synagogues
7 and salutations in the markets;
and to be called by humanity, Rabbi, Rabbi.
8 **HONORARY TITLES RESERVED FOR DEITY**
And you, neither call yourselves Rabbi:
for one is your Rabbi — even the Messiah
and all you are brothers:
9 nor call any man on the earth your father;
for one is your Father — in the heavens:
nor be called tutors;
10 for one is your tutor, even the Messiah.
11 But whoever is greatest among you
becomes your minister:
12 and whoever exalts himself becomes humbled;
and whoever humbles himself, exalts.
13 **YAH SHUA DENOUNCES THE PHARISEES**
But woe to you, scribes and Pharisees! Hypocrites!
For you shut the sovereigndom of the heavens
in front of humanity:
for neither you enter
nor allow those entering to enter.
14 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees! Hypocrites!
For you devour houses of widows
and for a pretext make far out prayers:
because of this you take the superabundant judgment.
15 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees! Hypocrites!
For you go all around the sea and the dry
to make one proselyte,
and whenever he becomes,
you make him a double child
of Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning
more than yourselves.
16 Woe to You, you blind guides, who word,
Whoever oaths in the nave,
it is naught;
but whoever oaths in the gold of the nave,
is a debtor.
17 You fools and blind:
for which is greater,
The gold?
Or the nave that hallows the gold?
18 And, Whoever oaths in the sacrifice altar,
it is naught;
but whoever oaths in the oblation thereon,
is a debtor.
19 You fools and blind:
for which is greater,
The oblation?
Or the sacrifice altar that hallows the oblation?
20 So whoever oaths in the sacrifice altar,
oaths in it, and in all thereon:
and whoever oaths in the nave,
oaths in it,
and in him who settles therein:
21 and whoever oaths in the heavens,
oaths in the throne of Elohim,
and in him who sits thereon.
22 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees! Hypocrites!
For you pay tithes of mint and anise and kammon,
and forsake the weightier matters of the torah
— the judgment and the mercy and the trust:
these you need to do
and not forsake those undone.
23 You blind guides
who strain at a gnat and swallow a camel.

MATTHEW 23, 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

25 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites!
for ye *make clean* **purify**
the *outside of the cup* **cup outwardly** and of the platter,
but *within* **inwardly**
they are full of *extortion* **plunder** and *excess* **unrestraint**.

26 Thou blind Pharisee,
cleanse **purify** first
that which is within the **inward** cup and platter,
that *the outside* **outwardly**
of them **they** may be *clean* **purified** also.

27 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites!
for ye are like unto
whited sepulchres **whitewashed tombs**, which indeed
appear **manifest** beautiful *outward* **outwardly**,
but are *within* **inwardly** full of dead *men's* bones,
and of all *uncleanness* **impurity**.

28 Even so **thus indeed** ye also
outwardly *appear* **righteous** **manifest just** unto *men* **humanity**,
but *within* **inwardly** ye are full of hypocrisy
and *iniquity* **torah violations**.

29 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites!
because ye build the tombs of the prophets,
and *garnish* **adorn**
the *sepulchres* **tombs** of the *righteous* **just**,

30 And *say* **word**,
If we had been in the days of our fathers,
we *would* **should** not have been
partakers **communicants** with them
in the blood of the prophets.

31 *Wherefore ye be witnesses* **So ye witness** unto yourselves,
that ye are the *children* **sons** of them
which *killed* **murdered** the prophets.

32 *Fill ye up then* **Fulfill/Shalam**
the measure of your fathers.

33 Ye serpents, ye *generation* **progeny** of vipers,
how can ye *escape* **flee** the *damnation* **judgment**
of *hell* **Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning?**

34 *Wherefore* **Because of this**, behold,
I *send* **apostolize** unto you prophets,
and wise men, and scribes:
and some of them
ye shall *kill* **slaughter** and *crucify* **stake**;
and some of them shall ye scourge in your synagogues,
and persecute them from city to city:

35 That upon you may come all the *righteous* **just** blood
shed **poured** upon the earth,
from the blood of *righteous* **just** Abel
unto the blood of *Zacharias* **Zechar Yah**
son of *Barachias* **Berech Yah**,
whom ye *slew* **murdered**
between the *temple* **nave** and the *sacrifice* altar.

36 *Verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto you,
All these *things* shall come upon this generation.

YAH SHUA LAMENTS OVER YERU SHALEM

37 O *Jerusalem, Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem, Yeru Shalem**,
thou that *killest* **slaughterest** the prophets,
and stonest them which are *sent* **apostolized** unto thee,
how often *would* have I **willed**
gathered **to gather** thy children together,
even as **in the manner**
a hen gathereth her *chickens* **young** under her wings,
and ye *would* **willed** not!

38 Behold, your house is *left* **forsaken** unto you desolate.

39 For I *say* **word** unto you,
Ye shall *not* **never no way** see me henceforth,
till ye shall say, *Blessed* **Eulogized** is he
that cometh in the name of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**.

YAH SHUA PROPHECIES DISINTEGRATION OF THE PRIESTAL PRECINCT

24

And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** went *out*,
and departed from the *temple* **priestal precinct**:
and his disciples came to him for to shew him
the *buildings* **edifices** of the *temple* **priestal precinct**.

2 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto them,
See ye not all these *things*?
verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
There shall *not* **never no way** be *left* **allowed** here
one stone upon another,
that shall *not* **never no way** be *thrown down* **disintegrated**.

MATTHAIOS 23, 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

25 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees! Hypocrites!
For outwardly
you purify the cup and the platter;
but inwardly
they are full of plunder and unrestraint.
Blind Pharisee!
First purify the inward cup and platter,
so that it also becomes purified outwardly.

27 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees! Hypocrites!
For you are likened to whitewashed tombs
which outwardly indeed manifest beauty
but inwardly are full of dead bones
and of all impurity.

28 Even thus indeed
outwardly you also manifest as just
unto humanity,
but inwardly you are full of hypocrisy
and torah violations.

29 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees! Hypocrites!
For you build the tombs of the prophets
and adorn the tombs of the just;
and word,
If we had been in the days of our fathers,
we had not been communicants with them
in the blood of the prophets.
So you witness to yourselves
that you are the sons
of them who murdered the prophets:

32 and you — you fulfill/shalam
the measure of your fathers.

33 You serpents! You progeny of vipers!
How can you flee the judgment
of Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning?

34 Because of this, behold, I apostolize to you
prophets and wise men and scribes:
and of them, you slaughter and stake
and of them, you scourge in your synagogues
and persecute from city to city:
so that all the just blood poured on the earth
comes upon you
— from the blood of just Abel
— to the blood of Zechar Yah son of Berech Yah
whom you murdered
between the nave and the sacrifice altar.

36 Amen! I word to you,
All these come upon this generation.

YAH SHUA LAMENTS OVER YERU SHALEM

37 O, Yeru Shalem! Yeru Shalem!
— you who slaughter the prophets
and stone them apostolized to you!
how often I willed to gather your children together
— even in the manner
a hen gathers her young under her wings
— and you willed not!

38 Behold, your house is forsaken to you, desolate.

39 For I word to you,
You never no way see me henceforth,
until you say,
Eulogized — he who comes in the name of Yah Veh.

YAH SHUA PROPHECIES DISINTEGRATION OF THE PRIESTAL PRECINCT

24

And Yah Shua goes
and departs from the priestal precinct:
and his disciples come to him
to shew him the edifices of the priestal precinct.

2 And Yah Shua says to them,
See you not all these?
Amen! I word to you,
Never no way is stone upon stone allowed,
that never no way disintegrates.

MATTHEW 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE MOUNT OF OLIVES SPEECH OF YAH SHUA

3 And as he sat upon the mount of Olives,
the disciples came unto him privately,
saying **wording**, Tell us,
when shall these *things* be?
and what shall be the sign of thy *coming* **parousia**,
and of the *end* **completion/shalom** of the *world* **eon**?
4 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said unto them,
Take heed that no man **Look, lest anyone** deceive you.
5 For many shall come in my name, saying **wording**,
I am Christ I AM the Messiah;
and shall *deceive* **seduce** many.
6 And ye shall **be about**
to hear of wars and rumours of wars:
see that ye *be* not *troubled* **lament**:
for all these *things* must *come to pass* **become**,
but the *end* **completion/shalom** is not yet.
7 For *nation* **goyim** shall rise against *nation* **goyim**,
and *kingdom* **sovereigndom** against *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
and there shall be famines, and pestilences,
and *earthquakes* **quakes**, in divers places.
8 All these are the beginning of *sorrows* **travail**.
9 Then shall they *deliver* **betray** you up
to be afflicted **unto affliction**,
and shall *kill* **slaughter** you:
and ye shall be hated of all *nations* **goyim**
for my name's sake.
10 And then shall many be *offended* **scandalized**,
and shall betray one another, and shall hate one another.
11 And many *false* **pseudo** prophets shall rise,
and shall *deceive* **seduce** many.
12 And because
iniquity **torah violations** shall *abound* **multiply**,
the love of many shall *wax* **breathe** cold.
13 But he
that shall *endure* **abide** unto the *end* **completion/shalom**,
the same shall be saved.
14 And this
gospel **evangelism** of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
shall be preached in all the world
for *in* a witness unto all *nations* **goyim**;
and then shall the *end* **completion/shalom** come.
THE GREAT TRIBULATION
15 **So** When **ever** ye *therefore*
shall see the abomination of desolation,
spoken of **retorized**
by *Daniel* **through Dani El** the prophet,
stand in the holy place,
(whoso readeth, let him *understand* **comprehend**.)
16 Then let them which be in *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**
flee into the mountains:
17 Let him which is on the housetop
not *come down* **descend**
to take *any thing* **somewhat** out of his house:
18 Neither let him which is in the field
return back to take his *clothes* **garments**.
19 And woe unto them that *are with child* **have in womb**,
and to them that *give suck* **nipple** in those days!
20 But pray ye that your flight
be not in the *winter* **downpour**,
neither *on* **in** the *sabbath day* **shabbath**:
21 For then shall be *great* **mega** tribulation,
such as *was* **became** not
since **from** the beginning of the *world* **cosmos**
to this time **now**,
no, nor *ever* shall **no way** be.
22 And except those days should be shortened,
there should **not** no flesh **ever** be saved:
but **except** for the *elect's* **select's** sake
those days shall be shortened.
Dani El 9:27, 11:31, 12:11
23 Then *if* **whenever** any *man* **one** shall say unto you,
lo **Behold, here is Christ here — the Messiah**, or there;
believe it **trust** not.
24 For there shall arise *false* **Christs** **pseudo messiahs**,
and *false* **pseudo** prophets,
and shall *shew* **give great mega** signs and *wonders* **omens**;

MATTHAIOS 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE MOUNT OF OLIVES SPEECH OF YAH SHUA

3 And he sits on the mount of Olives
and the disciples come to him privately,
wording, Tell us,
When become these?
And what is the sign of your parousia?
And of the completion/shalom of the eon?
4 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Look, lest anyone deceive you:
5 for many come in my name,
wording, I AM the Messiah!
— and seduce many:
6 and you are about to hear
of wars and rumours of wars:
see that you not lament:
for all these must become;
but the completion/shalom is not yet.
7 For goyim rises against goyim,
and sovereigndom against sovereigndom
and so be it, famines and pestilences
and quakes in divers places
— all these are the beginning of travail.
8 Then they betray you to affliction,
and slaughter you:
and you become hated of all goyim
for sake of my name:
10 and then they scandalize many
and betray one another and hate one another:
11 and many pseudo prophets rise, and seduce many:
12 and because torah violations multiply,
the love of many breathes cold:
13 but whoever abides to the completion/shalom is saved.
14 And this evangelism of the sovereigndom
is preached in all the world in a witness to all goyim;
and then comes the completion/shalom.
THE GREAT TRIBULATION
15 So whenever you see the abomination of desolation
retorized through Dani El the prophet
stand in the holy place
— whoever reads, comprehend
16 Then whoever is in Yah Hudah, flee to the mountains:
17 whoever is on the housetop
descend not to take somewhat from his house:
18 Then whoever is in the field
return not to take his garments:
19 and woe to them who have in womb
and to them who nipple in those days!
20 And pray that your flight becomes
neither in downpour nor in shabbath:
21 for then becomes mega tribulation
such as became not from the beginning of the cosmos
to now,
no, nor no way becomes:
22 and except those days shorten,
no flesh is no way ever saved:
and except for sake of the select
those days are shortened.
Dani El 9:27, 11:31, 12:11
23 Then whenever anyone says to you,
Behold, here — the Messiah! or, There!
— trust them not.
24 For pseudo messiahs and pseudo prophets rise;
and they give mega signs and omens;

MATTHEW 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

insomuch that, if it were possible,
they shall *deceive* **seduce** the very *elect* **select**.
25 Behold, I have *told you before* **foretold you**.
26 *Wherefore if So whenever* they shall say unto you,
Behold, he is in the *desert* **wilderness**;
go not forth:
behold, he is in the *secret chambers* **pantry**;
believe it **trust** not.

THE PAROUSIA OF YAH SHUA

27 For **exactly**
as the lightning cometh out of the east **rising**,
and *shineth* **manifesteth** even unto the west **lowering**;
so thus shall also
the *coming* **parousia** of the Son of *man* **humanity** be.
28 For wheresoever the carcass is,
there *will* **shall** the eagles be gathered together.

POST—TRIBULATION OMENS

29 *Immediately* **Straightway**
after the tribulation of those days
shall the sun be darkened,
and the moon shall not give her *light* **brilliance**,
and the stars shall fall from *heaven* **the heavens**,
and the *powers* **dynamis** of the heavens shall be shaken:

THE PAROUSIA

30 And then shall *appear* **manifest**
the sign of the Son of *man* **humanity** in **the** heaven:
and then
shall all the *tribes* **scions** of the earth *mourn* **chop**,
and they shall see the Son of *man* **humanity**
coming in the clouds of **the** heaven
with *power* **dynamis** and *great* **vast** glory.
31 And he shall *send* **apostolize** his angels
with a *great sound* **mega voice** of a trumpet,
and they shall gather together
his *elect* **select** from the four winds,
from *one end* **the extremities** of *heaven* **the heavens**
to *the other* **their extremities**.

PRE—PAROUSIA SIGNS

32 Now learn a parable of the fig tree;
When **ever** his branch is yet **becometh already** tender,
and *putteth forth* **sprouteth** leaves,
ye know that *summer* **warmth** is nigh:
33 *So Thus* likewise ye,
when **ever** ye shall see all these *things*,
know that it is near, even at the *doors* **portals**.
34 *Verily I say* **Amen!** I word unto you,
This generation shall *not* **never no way** pass,
till all these *things* be fulfilled/**shalamed**.
35 **The** heaven and earth shall pass away,
but my words shall *not* **never no way** pass away.
36 But of **concerning** that day and hour
knoweth no *man* **one**,
no, not the angels of *heaven* **the heavens**,
but **except** my Father only.
37 But **exactly** as the days of *Noe* were **Noach**,
so thus shall also
the *coming* **parousia** of the Son of *man* **humanity** be.
38 For **exactly** as in the days *that were*
before **preceding** the *flood* **cataclysm**
they were eating and drinking,
marrying and *giving in marriage* **marrying off**,
until the day that *Noe* **Noach** entered into the ark,
39 And knew not until the *flood* **cataclysm** came,
and took them all away;
so thus shall also
the *coming* **parousia** of the Son of *man* **humanity** be.
40 Then shall two be in the field;
the one shall be taken,
and the *other left* **one be forsaken**.
41 Two *women* shall be grinding at **in** the mill;
the one shall be taken,
and the *other left* **one be forsaken**.
42 **So** Watch *therefore*:
for ye know not what hour
your *Lord doth come* **Adonay cometh**.
43 But know this,
that if the *goodman of the house* **housesdespotes**
had known
in what *watch* **guard** the thief *would* **should** come,

MATTHAIOS 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

so as, if possible, to seduce the very select.
25 Behold, I foretell you.
26 So whenever they say to you,
Behold, in the wilderness! — go not forth:
Behold, in the pantry! — trust not.

THE PAROUSIA OF YAH SHUA

27 For exactly as the lightning comes from the rising
and manifests even to the lowering
— thus also
becomes the parousia of the Son of humanity
for wherever the carcass,
the eagles gather together.

POST—TRIBULATION OMENS

29 Straightway after the tribulation of those days
the sun darkens
and the moon gives not her brilliance
and the stars fall from the heavens
and the dynamis of the heavens shakes.

THE PAROUSIA

30 And then the sign of the Son of humanity
manifests in the heavens:
and then all the scions of the earth chop:
and they see the Son of humanity
coming in the clouds of the heavens
with dynamis and vast glory:
and he apostolizes his angels
with a mega voice of a trumpet:
and they gather together
his select from the four winds
— from the extremities of the heavens
to their extremities.

PRE—PAROUSIA SIGNS

32 Now learn a parable of the fig tree;
Whenever his branch
becomes already tender and sprouts leaves
you know warmth is near:
thus likewise you,
whenever you see all these,
know it is near — even at the portals.

34 Amen! I word to you,
This generation never no way passes until all these fulfill:
35 the heavens and earth pass
but my words never no way pass:
36 but concerning that day and hour
no one knows
— no, not the angels of the heavens,
except my Father only.

37 But exactly as the days of Noach,
thus also becomes the parousia
of the Son of humanity.

38 For exactly as in the days preceding the cataclysm
— eating and drinking, marrying and marrying off,
until the day Noach entered the ark;
39 and knew not until the cataclysm came
and took them all;
thus also
becomes the parousia of the Son of humanity.

40 Then two, being in the field;
the one taken and the one forsaken:
41 two grinding in the mill;
the one taken, and the one forsaken.
42 So watch!
For you know not what hour your Adonay comes.
43 But know this,
that if the housesdespotes
had known in what guard the thief comes,

MATTHEW 24, 25

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

he *would* **should** have watched,
and *would* **should** not have *suffered* **allowed** his house
to be broken *up* **through**.
44 Therefore **So** be ye also *ready* **prepared**:
for in such an hour as ye think not
the Son of *man* **humanity** cometh.
45 **So** Who *then*
is a *faithful* **trustworthy** and *wise* **thoughtful** servant,
whom his *lord* **adoni**
hath *made* **seated** ruler over his *household* **therapy**,
to give them *meat* **nourishment** in due season?
46 Blessed *is* that servant, whom his *lord* **adoni**,
when he cometh shall find so **thus** doing.
47 *Verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto you,
That he shall *make* **seat** him *ruler*
over all his *goods* **holdings**.
48 But *and if* **whenever** that evil servant shall say in his heart,
My lord delayeth **adoni taketh** his **time** coming;
49 And shall begin
to *smite* **strike** his *fellow*servants **co—servants**,
and to eat and drink with the *drunken* **intoxicated**;
50 the *lord* **adoni** of that servant shall come
in a day when he *looketh* **expecteth** not *for him*,
and in an hour that he *is not aware of* **knoweth not**,
51 And shall *cut* **dichotomize** him *asunder*,
and *appoint him* **place** his portion with the hypocrites:
there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

THE PARABLE OF THE TEN VIRGINS

25 Then
shall the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *heaven* **the heavens**
be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps,
and went *forth* to meet the bridegroom.
2 And five of them were *wise* **thoughtful**,
and five were foolish.
3 They that were foolish took their lamps,
and took no **olive** oil with them:
4 But the *wise* **thoughtful**
took **olive** oil in their vessels with their lamps.
5 While **But** the bridegroom *tarried* **took his time**,
they all slumbered and slept.
6 And at midnight there *was* **became** a cry *made*,
Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him.
7 Then all those virgins arose,
and *trimmed* **adorned** their lamps.
8 And the foolish said unto the *wise* **thoughtful**,
Give us of your **olive** oil;
for our lamps are *gone out* **quenched**.
9 But the *wise* **thoughtful** answered,
saying **wording**, Not so;
lest **ever** there be not *enough* **sufficient** for us and you:
but go ye rather to them that sell,
and *buy* **market** for yourselves.
10 And while they went to *buy* **market**,
the bridegroom came;
and they that were *ready* **prepared**
went in **entered** with him to the marriage:
and the *door* **portal** was shut.
11 Afterward came also the *other* **rest of the** virgins,
saying **wording**, *Lord Adoni*, *Lord Adoni*, open to us.
12 But he answered and said,
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
I know you not.
13 **So** Watch *therefore*,
for ye know neither the day nor the hour
wherein the Son of *man* **humanity** cometh.

THE INVESTMENT TEST

14 For the *kingdom of heaven* is **exactly** as a *man* **human**
travelling into a far country **going abroad**,
who called his own servants,
and delivered unto them his *goods* **holdings**.
15 And unto one **indeed**
he gave five *talents* **talent weights**,
to another two, and to another one;
to every *man* **each**
according to his several *ability* **dynamis**;
and straightway *took his journey* **went abroad**.
16 Then **And** he that had *received* **taken**
the five *talents* **talent weights**
went and *traded with* **worked in** the same,

MATTHAIOS 24, 25

exeGeses companion BIBLE

he had watched,
and had not allowed his house to be broken through.
44 So you also, be prepared:
for in such an hour as you think not
the Son of humanity comes.
45 Who then is a trustworthy and thoughtful servant,
whom his adoni seats ruler over his therapy
to give them nourishment in due season?
46 Blessed — that servant, whom,
when his adoni comes, finds him thus doing.
47 Amen! I word to you,
He seats him over all his holdings.
48 But whenever that evil servant says in his heart,
My adoni takes his time coming;
49 and begins to strike his co—servants
and to eat and drink with the intoxicated;
50 the adoni of that servant
comes in a day when he expects not
and in an hour he knows not;
51 and dichotomizes him
and places his portion with the hypocrites:
there is weeping and gnashing of teeth.

THE PARABLE OF THE TEN VIRGINS

25 Then the sovereigndom of the heavens
is likened to ten virgins who take their lamps
and go to meet the bridegroom:
2 and five are thoughtful, and five are foolish:
3 the foolish take their lamps,
and take no olive oil with them:
4 but the thoughtful
take olive oil in their vessels with their lamps:
5 but the bridegroom takes his time
and they all slumber and sleep:
6 and at midnight there becomes a cry,
Behold, the bridegroom comes! Go meet him!
7 Then all those virgins rise and adorn their lamps:
8 and the foolish say to the thoughtful,
Give us of your olive oil, for our lamps are quenched.
9 And the thoughtful answer, wording, Not so;
lest ever there is not sufficient for us and you:
but go rather to them who sell
and market for yourselves.
10 And while they go to market,
the bridegroom comes;
and the prepared enter with him to the marriage:
and they shut the portal.
11 Afterward the rest of the virgins also come,
wording, Adoni, Adoni, open to us.
12 And he answers, saying,
Amen! I word to you, I know you not.
13 So watch:
for you know neither the day nor the hour
wherein the Son of humanity comes.

THE INVESTMENT TEST

14 For exactly as a human going abroad,
he calls his own servants,
and delivers his holdings to them:
15 and indeed he gives one five talent weights,
another two, and another one;
— each according to his several dynamis;
and straightway goes abroad.
16 And he who took the five talent weights
goes and works them,

MATTHEW 25

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and made them produced
other five talents **talent weights**.
17 And likewise he that had received two,
he also gained other two.
18 But he that had received **taken** one
went and digged in the earth **soil**,
and hid **secreted** his lord's money **adoni's silver**.
19 After a long **vast** time
the lord **adoni** of those servants cometh,
and reckoneth **words** with them.
20 And so he that had received **taken** five talents **talent weights**
came and brought **offered** other five talents **talent weights**,
saying **wording**, Lord **Adoni**,
thou deliveredst unto me five talents **talent weights**:
behold, I have gained beside them
five talents **more other talent weights**.
21 His lord **adoni** said unto him,
Well done, thou good and **faithful trustworthy** servant:
thou hast been **faithful trustworthy**
over a few things **little**,
I will make **shall seat** thee ruler over many things **much**:
enter thou into the joy **cheer** of thy lord **adoni**.
22 He also that had received **taken** two
talents **talent weights** came and said, Lord **Adoni**,
thou deliveredst unto me two talents **talent weights**:
behold, I have gained two other talents **talent weights**
beside them.
23 His lord **adoni** said unto him,
Well done, good and **faithful trustworthy** servant;
thou hast been **faithful trustworthy**
over a few things **little**,
I will make **shall seat** thee ruler over many things **much**:
enter thou into the joy **cheer** of thy lord **adoni**.
24 Then he which had received **taken**
the one talent **talent weight**
came and said, Lord **Adoni**,
I knew thee that thou art an hard man **human**,
reaping **harvesting** where thou hast not sown **spored**,
and gathering **together**
where thou hast not **strawed scattered**:
25 And I was **afraid awestricken**,
and went and hid **secreted** thy talent **weight**
in the earth **soil**:
lo behold, there thou hast that is thine.
26 His lord **adoni** answered and said unto him,
Thou **wicked evil** and slothful servant,
thou knewest that I reap **harvest** where I sowed **spored** not,
and gather **together** where I have not **strawed scattered**:
27 So Thou **oughtest needest therefore**
to have put my money **silver** to the exchangers,
and then at my coming
I should have received mine own with **usury interest**.
28 So Take **therefore** the talent **weight** from him,
and give it unto him
which hath ten talents **talent weights**.
29 For unto every one that hath shall be given,
and he shall have **super** abundance:
but from him that hath not
shall be taken away even that which he hath.
30 And cast **eject** ye the **unprofitable useless** servant
into outer darkness:
there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.
YAH SHUA TESTS THE GOYIM
31 When **ever** the Son of man **humanity**
shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him,
Then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory:
32 And **before in front of** him
shall be gathered all **nations goyim**:
and he shall **separate set apart** them one from another,
exactly as a shepherd
divideth setteth apart his sheep from the goats:
33 And he **indeed** shall set the sheep **on at** his right **hand**,
but the goats **on at** the left.
34 Then shall the king **sovereign** say
unto them **on at** his right **hand**,
Come, ye **blessed eulogized** of my Father,
inherit the **kingdom sovereigndom** prepared for you

MATTHAIOS 25

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and produces another five talent weights:
17 and likewise he who took two, also gains another two:
18 but he who took one, goes and digs in the soil
and secretes the silver of his adoni.
19 After a vast time the adoni of those servants
comes and reckons words with them.
20 And he who took five talent weights
comes and offers another five talent weights;
wording, Adoni,
you delivered five talent weights to me:
behold,
I gained another five talent weights beside them.
21 His adoni says to him,
Well done, you good and trustworthy servant:
you are trustworthy over a little;
I seat you over much:
enter the cheer of your adoni.
22 And he who took two talent weights
comes and says, Adoni,
you delivered two talent weights to me:
behold,
I gained another two talent weights beside them.
23 His adoni says to him,
Well done, good and trustworthy servant;
you are trustworthy over a little,
I seat you over much:
enter the cheer of your adoni.
24 He who took the one talent weight
comes and says, Adoni,
I know you, that you are a hard human,
harvesting where you spore not,
and gathering together where you scatter not:
25 and being awestricken,
I went and secreted your talent weight in the soil:
behold, you have your own.
26 His adoni answers him, saying,
You evil and slothful servant,
you know I harvest where I spore not,
and gather together where I scatter not:
27 so you needed to put my silver to the exchangers,
and then at my coming
I had received my own with interest.
28 So take the talent weight from him,
and give to him who has ten talent weights.
29 For to everyone who has, is given;
and he has super abundance:
but from him who has not
is taken away even what he has.
30 And eject the useless servant into outer darkness:
there becomes weeping and gnashing of teeth.
YAH SHUA TESTS THE GOYIM
31 Whenever the Son of humanity
comes in his glory — with all the holy angels,
then he sits on the throne of his glory:
32 and all goyim gather in front of him:
and he sets them apart one from another,
exactly as a shepherd
sets apart his sheep from the goats:
33 and indeed he sets the sheep at his right
and the goats at the left.
34 Then the sovereign says to them at his right,
Come, you eulogized of my Father,
inherit the sovereigndom prepared for you

MATTHEW 25, 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

35 from the foundation of the *world cosmos*:
For I was an hungred, and ye gave me *meat eats*:
I was thirsty, and ye gave me drink:
I was a stranger, and ye *took gathered* me in:
36 Naked, and ye *clothed arrayed* me:
I was *sick frail*, and ye visited me:
I was in *prison a guardhouse*, and ye came unto me.
37 Then shall the *righteous just* answer him,
saying wording, Lord Adonay,
when saw we thee an hungred, and *fed nourished* thee?
or thirsty, and gave thee drink?
38 When saw we thee a stranger,
and *took gathered* thee in?
or naked, and *clothed arrayed* thee?
39 Or when saw we thee *sick frail*,
or in *prison a guardhouse*,
and came unto thee?
40 And the *king sovereign* shall answer
and say unto them,
Verily I say Amen! I word unto you,
Inasmuch as ye have done it
unto one of the least of these my brethren,
ye have done it unto me.
41 Then shall he say also unto them *on at* the left *hand*,
Depart from me, ye cursed, into *everlasting eternal* fire,
prepared for *the devil Diabolos* and his angels:
42 For I was an hungred, and ye gave me no *meat eats*:
I was thirsty, and ye gave me no drink:
43 I was a stranger, and ye *took gathered* me not in:
naked, and ye *clothed arrayed* me not:
sick frail, and in *prison a guardhouse*,
and ye visited me not.
44 Then shall they also answer him, *saying wording*,
Lord Adonay,
when saw we thee an hungred, or athirst, or a stranger,
or naked, or *sick frail*, or in *prison a guardhouse*,
and did not minister unto thee?
45 Then shall he answer them, *saying wording*,
Verily I say Amen! I word unto you,
Inasmuch as ye did it not to one of the least of these,
ye did it not to me.
46 And these shall go away
into *everlasting eternal* punishment:
but the *righteous just* into life eternal.

YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS STAKING

26

And *so beit* came to pass,
when *Jesus Yah Shua*
had *finished completed/shalamed* all these *sayings words*,
he said unto his disciples,
2 Ye know that after two days
is the *feast of the passover pasach*,
and the Son of *man humanity*
is betrayed to be *crucified staked*.

THE PLOT TO SLAUGHTER YAH SHUA

3 Then assembled together the *chief arch* priests,
and the scribes, and the elders of the people,
unto the *palace courtyard* of the *high arch* priest,
who was *called worded Caiaphas*,
4 And *consulted counseled together*
that they might take Jesus to overpower Yah Shua
by subtilty deception,
and *kill slaughter* him.
5 But they *said worded*,
Not on *in* the *feast day celebration*,
lest there be an *uproar a tumult* among the people.

A WOMAN ANOINTS YAH SHUA

6 Now when *Jesus But Yah Shua* was in *Bethany Beth Ania*,
in the house of *Simon Shimon* the leper,
7 There came unto him a woman having an alabaster *box*
of very precious *ointment myrrh*,
and poured it on his head, as he *sat at meat reposed*.
8 But when his disciples saw it,
they had indignation indignified, saying wording,
To what purpose is this waste *destruction*?
9 For this *ointment myrrh* might have been sold for much,
and given to the poor.
10 When *Jesus understood it But Yah Shua knowing*,
he said unto them,

MATTHAIOS 25, 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

35 from the foundation of the *cosmos*:
for I famished, and you gave me eats;
I thirsted, and you gave me drink;
a stranger, and you gathered me in;
36 naked, and you arrayed me;
frail, and you visited me;
in a *guardhouse*, and you came to me.
37 Then the just answer him, *wording, Adonay*,
When saw we you famishing, and nourished you?
Or thirsting, and gave you drink?
38 When saw we you a stranger, and gathered you in?
Or naked, and arrayed you?
39 Or when saw we you *frail*?
Or in a *guardhouse*, and came to you?
40 And the sovereign answers them, *saying*,
Amen! I word to you,
As you did
to one of the least of these my brothers,
you did to me.
41 Then he also says to them at the left,
Depart from me, you cursed, into eternal fire,
prepared for *Diabolos* and his angels:
42 for I famished, and you gave me no eats;
I thirsted, and you gave me no drink;
43 a stranger, and you gathered me not in;
naked, and you arrayed me not in;
frail, and in a *guardhouse*, and you visited me not.
44 Then they also answer him, *wording*,
Adonay, when saw we you famishing or thirsting?
Or a stranger or naked or frail or in a *guardhouse*
and ministered not to you?
45 Then he answers them, *wording*,
Amen! I word to you,
As you did it not to one of the least of these,
you did it not to me:
46 and these go to eternal punishment:
but the just to life eternal.

YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS STAKING

26

And so be it,
when Yah Shua completes/shalams all these words,
he says to his disciples,
2 You know that after two days is the *pasach*,
and the Son of humanity is betrayed to staking.

THE PLOT TO SLAUGHTER YAH SHUA

3 Then the archpriests and the scribes
and the elders of the people assemble together
in the courtyard of the archpriest worded Caiaphas:
4 and they counsel together
on how to overpower Yah Shua by deception
and slaughter him:
5 but they word, Not in the celebration
lest there be a tumult among the people.

A WOMAN ANOINTS YAH SHUA

6 But Yah Shua is in Beth Ania
in the house of Shimon the leper,
7 and a woman comes to him
having an alabaster of very precious myrrh
and as he reposes, pours it on his head.
8 But his disciples see it, and are indignified,
wording, What is the purpose of this destruction?
9 For this myrrh could have been sold for much
and given to the poor.
10 But knowing, Yah Shua says to them,

MATTHEW 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Why *trouble* **belabour** and **embarrass** ye the woman?
for she hath *wrought* **worked** a good work *upon* **unto** me.
11 For ye have the poor always with you;
but me ye have not always.
12 For in that she hath
poured this *ointment* **myrrh** on my body,
she did it for **unto** my *burial* **embalming**.
13 *Verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto you,
Wheresoever this *gospel* **evangelism** shall be preached
in the whole *world* **cosmos**,
there shall also this, that this woman hath done,
be *told* for **spoken unto** a memorial of her.
YAH HUDAH SEEKS A BRIBE
14 Then one of the twelve,
called **Judas Iscariot worded** **Yah Hudah the urbanite**,
went unto the *chief* **arch** priests,
15 And said unto them,
What will ye **to** give me,
and I *will* **shall** deliver him unto you?
And they covenanted with him for *thirty* **pieces** of silver.
16 And from *that time* **then**
he sought opportunity to betray him.
THE FINAL PASACH OF YAH SHUA
17 Now the first day
of the *feast of unleavened bread* **matsah**
the disciples came to *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
saying **wording** unto him,
Where *wilt* **willest** thou that we prepare for thee
to eat the *passover* **pasach**?
18 And he said, Go into the city to *such a man* **so and so**,
and say unto him, The *Master* **saith** **Doctor wordeth**,
My time **season** is at *hand* **nigh**;
I *will* **keep shall do** the *passover* **pasach** at thy house
with my disciples.
19 And the disciples did
as *Jesus* **Yah Shua** had *appointed* **ordered** them;
and they *made ready* **prepared** the *passover* **pasach**.
20 Now when *the even was come* **being evening**,
he *sat down* **reposed** with the twelve.
21 And as they did eat, he said,
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
that one of you shall betray me.
22 And they were *exceeding* **extremely** sorrowful,
and began *every one* **each** of them to say **word** unto him,
Lord **Adonay**, is it I?
23 And he answered and said,
He that *dippeth* **baptizeth** his hand with me in the dish,
the same shall betray me.
24 The Son of *man* **humanity** **indeed** goeth
exactly as it is *written of* **scribed concerning** him:
but woe unto that *man* **human**
by **through** whom the Son of *man* **humanity** is betrayed!
it had been good for that *man* **human**
if he had not been *born* **birthed**.
25 *Then Judas* **But Yah Hudah**, which betrayed him,
answered and said, *Master* **Rabbi**, is it I?
He *said* **worded** unto him, Thou hast said.
THE FINAL EUCHARIST OF YAH SHUA
26 And as they were eating, *Jesus* **Yah Shua** took bread,
and *blessed* it **eulogized** and brake it,
and gave it to the disciples, and said,
Take, eat; this is my body.
27 And he took the cup, and *gave thanks* **eucharistized**,
and gave it to them, *saying* **wording**, Drink ye all of it;
28 For this is my blood of the new *testament* **covenant**,
which is *shed* **poured** for many
for **unto** the *remission* **forgiveness** of sins.
29 But I say **word** unto you,
I *will* **shall not never no way** drink henceforth
of this *fruit* **produce** of the vine,
until that day when I drink it new with you
in my Father's *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
30 And when they had *sung an hymn* **hymned**,
they went out into the mount of Olives.

MATTHAIOS 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Why belabor and embarrass the woman?
For she works a good work to me:
11 for you have the poor with you always;
but me you have not always:
12 for in pouring this myrrh on my body
she does it to my embalming.

Amen! I word to you,
13 Wherever this evangelism is preached
in the whole cosmos,
this also, what this woman did,
is spoken to her memorial.
YAH HUDAH SEEKS A BRIBE
14 Then one of the twelve,
worded Yah Hudah the urbanite,
goes to the archpriests,
15 and says to them,
What will you to give me to deliver him to you?
— and they covenant with him for thirty silver
— and from then
he seeks opportunity to betray him.
THE FINAL PASACH OF YAH SHUA
17 But on the first of matsah
the disciples come to Yah Shua, wording to him,
Where will you have us prepare for you
to eat the pasach?
18 And he says, Go into the city to so and so
and say to him,
The Doctor words, My season is near;
I do the pasach at your house with my disciples.
19 And the disciples do as Yah Shua orders them
and they prepare the pasach:
and being evening,
20 he reposes with the twelve.
21 And as they eat, he says,
Amen! I word to you,
that one of you betrays me.
22 And they are extremely sorrowful,
and each of them begins to word to him,
Adonay, is it I?
23 And he answers, saying,
He who baptizes his hand in the dish with me,
the same betrays me.
24 The Son of humanity indeed goes
exactly as scribed concerning him:
but woe to that human
through whom the Son of humanity is betrayed!
it had been good for that human
if he had not been birthed.
25 But Yah Hudah, who betrays him,
answers, saying, Rabbi, is it I?
He words to him, You said.
THE FINAL EUCHARIST OF YAH SHUA
26 And as they eat, Yah Shua takes bread,
and eulogizes and breaks,
and gives it to the disciples, and says,
Take, eat; this is my body.
27 And he takes the cup, and eucharistizes,
and gives it to them, wording,
Drink thereof — all:
28 for this is my blood of the new covenant
poured for many to the forgiveness of sins.
29 But I word to you,
I never no way drink henceforth
of this produce of the vine,
until that day I drink it anew with you
in the sovereigndom of my Father.
30 — and they hymn, and go to the mount of Olives.

MATTHEW 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

31 Then saith **Jesus wordeth Yah Shua** unto them,
All ye shall be *offended because of scandalized in me*
this night:
for it is *written scribed*, I *will shall* smite the shepherd,
and the sheep of the *flock shepherddom*
shall be scattered *abroad*.

32 But after I am risen *again*,
I *will go before shall precede* you into *Galilee Galiyl*.
Zechar Yah 13:7

33 Peter **Petros** answered and said unto him,
Though all *men* shall be *offended scandalized*
because of in thee,
yet *will shall* I never **ever** be *offended scandalized*.

34 **Jesus Yah Shua** said unto him,
Verily I say Amen! I word unto thee,
That this night, *before ere* the *cock crow rooster voiceth*,
thou shalt **utterly** deny me thrice.

35 Peter said **Petros worded** unto him,
Though I should And if I must die with thee,
yet *will shall* I not **ever** *utterly* deny thee.
Likewise also said all the disciples.

YAH SHUA IN GATH SHEMEN

36 Then cometh **Jesus Yah Shua** with them
unto a *place parcel*
called *Gethsemane worded Gath Shemen*,
and saith **wordeth** unto the disciples,
Sit ye here, while I go and pray yonder.

37 And he took with him **Peter Petros**
and the two sons of **Zebedee Zabdi**,
and began to be sorrowful and *very heavy to heave*.

38 Then saith **wordeth** he unto them,
My soul is exceeding sorrowful, even unto death:
tarry abide ye here, and watch with me.

39 And he went a *little farther proceeded*,
and fell on his face, and prayed, *saying wording*,
O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me:
nevertheless however not as I will,
but as thou *wilt willest*.

40 And he cometh unto the disciples,
and findeth them asleep,
and saith **wordeth** unto **Peter Petros**,
What Thus, could ye not watch with me one hour?
Watch and pray,
that ye enter not into *temptation testing*:
the spirit indeed is *willing eager*,
but the flesh *is weak frail*.

42 He went away again the second time, and prayed,
saying wording, O my Father,
if this cup may *not pass not* away from me,
except unless I drink it,
thy *will shall* be *done*.

43 And he came and found them asleep again:
for their eyes were heavy.

44 And he left them, and went away again,
and prayed the third time, saying the same words.

45 Then cometh he to his disciples,
and saith **wordeth** unto them,
Sleep on *now*, and *take your rest*:
behold, the hour *is at hand approacheth*,
and the Son of *man humanity*
is betrayed into the hands of sinners.

46 Rise, let us be going: behold,
he *is at hand approacheth* that *doth betray betrayeth* me.

THE BETRAYAL AND ARREST OF YAH SHUA

47 And while he yet spake, *lo behold*,
Judas Yah Hudah, one of the twelve, came,
and with him
a *great vast* multitude with swords and staves,
from the *chief arch* priests and elders of the people.

48 Now he that betrayed him gave them a sign,
saying wording, Whomsoever I shall kiss, that same is he:
hold overpower him *fast*.

49 And *forthwith straightway* he came to **Jesus Yah Shua**,
and said, *Hail Cheers, master Rabbi*;
and **ardently** kissed him.

50 And **Jesus Yah Shua** said unto him,
Friend Comrade, wherefore art thou come **here**?

MATTHAIOS 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

31 Then Yah Shua words to them,
All you scandalize in me this night:
for it is scribed, I smite the shepherd,
and the sheep of the shepherddom scatter:
but after I rise, I precede you into Galiyl.

32 Zechar Yah 13:7

33 Petros answers him, saying,
Though all scandalize in you,
yet I never ever scandalize.

34 Yah Shua says to him,
Amen! I word to you,
This night, ere the rooster voices,
you utterly deny me thrice.

35 Petros words to him,
And if I must die with you,
I never ever utterly deny you.
— likewise also say all the disciples.

YAH SHUA IN GATH SHEMEN

36 Then Yah Shua goes with them
to a parcel worded Gath Shemen;
and words to the disciples,
You sit here, while I go yonder and pray.

37 And he takes Petros
and the two sons of Zabdi with him,
and begins to sorrow and to heave:
then he words to them,
My soul sorrows exceedingly — even to death:
you abide here and watch with me.

39 And he proceeds and falls on his face
and prays, wording, O my Father,
if possible, pass this cup from me
— however, not as I will — but as you will.

40 And he comes to the disciples,
and finds them sleeping;
and words to Petros,
Thus, can you not watch with me one hour?
Watch and pray, that you not enter into testing:
the spirit indeed is eager; but the flesh, frail.

42 He goes again the second time, and prays,
wording, O my Father,
if this cup not pass from me unless I drink it,
your will become.

43 And he comes, and again finds them sleeping:
for their eyes are heavy:

44 and he leaves them and goes again
and prays the third time, saying the same words.

45 Then he comes to his disciples and words to them,
Sleep on! and, Rest!
Behold, the hour approaches,
to betray the Son of humanity
into the hands of sinners.

46 Rise! We go!
Behold, he who betrays me approaches.

THE BETRAYAL AND ARREST OF YAH SHUA

47 And as he yet speaks, behold,
Yah Hudah, one of the twelve, comes,
and with him
a vast multitude with swords and staves
from the archpriests and elders of the people.

48 And he who betrays him gives them a sign,
wording, Whomever I kiss, that same is he.
Overpower him.

49 And straightway he comes to Yah Shua,
and says, Cheers, Rabbi!
— and ardently kisses him.

50 And Yah Shua says to him,
Comrade, why are you here?

MATTHEW 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Then came they, and laid hands on *Jesus Yah Shua* and took **overpowered** him.
51 And, behold,
one of them which were with *Jesus Yah Shua* stretched out **spread** his hand, and drew **withdrew** his sword, and struck **smote** a servant of the *high arch* priest's, and smote off **removed** his ear lobe.
52 Then said *Jesus worded Yah Shua* unto him, Put up again **Return** thy sword into his place: for all they that take the sword shall **perish with destruct** in the sword.
53 Thinkest thou that I cannot now *pray to beseech* my Father, and he shall presently give me **much** more than twelve legions of angels?
54 But how *then* shall the scriptures be fulfilled/**shalamed**, that thus it must be?
55 In that same hour said *Jesus Yah Shua* to the multitudes, Are ye come out as against a **thief robber** with swords and staves for to take me? I sat daily with you teaching **doctrinating** in the *temple priestal precinct*, and ye *laid no hold on overpowered* me not.
56 But all this was *done became*, that the scriptures of the prophets might be fulfilled/**shalamed**. Then all the disciples forsook him, and fled.
YAH SHUA FACES THE ARCH PRIEST
57 And they that had *laid hold on Jesus overpowered Yah Shua* led him away to Caiaphas the *high arch* priest, where the scribes and the elders were assembled **together**.
58 But *Peter Petros* followed him **from afar off** unto the *high arch* priest's *palace courtyard*, and went in **entered**, and sat with the *servants attendants*, to see the *end completion/shalom*.
59 Now the *chief arch* priests, and elders, and all the *council sanhedrim*, sought **false pseudo** witness against *Jesus Yah Shua*, to put **deathify** him to death;
60 But found none: yea, though many *false pseudo* witnesses came, yet found they none.
61 At the last **Afterward** came two *false pseudo* witnesses, And said, This fellow said, I am able to **destroy disintegrate** the *temple nave of God Elohim*, and to build it *in through* three days.
62 And the *high arch* priest arose, and said unto him, Answerest thou *nothing naught*? what is it which these witness against thee?
63 But *Jesus held his peace Yah Shua hushed*. And the *high arch* priest answered and said unto him, I **adjure exorcise** thee by the living *God Elohim*, that thou **tell say to us** whether thou be the *Christ Messiah*, the Son of *God Elohim*.
64 *Jesus saith Yah Shua wordeth* unto him, Thou hast said: *nevertheless moreover* I say **word** unto you, *Hereafter From now on* shall ye see the Son of *man humanity* sitting *on at the right hand of power the dynamis*, and coming in the clouds of **the** heaven.
65 Then the *high arch* priest *rent ripped* his clothes, saying **wording**, He hath *spoken blasphemy blasphemed*; what further need have we of witnesses? behold, now ye have heard his blasphemy.
66 What think ye?
67 They answered and said, He is *guilty of subject to death*. Then did they spit in his face, and *buffeted punched* him; and others *smote slapped* him with the *palms of their hands*,
68 Saying **Wording**, Prophecy unto us, thou *Christ Messiah*, Who is he that smote thee?

MATTHAIOS 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

They come and lay hands on Yah Shua and overpower him:
51 and behold, one of them with Yah Shua spreads his hand and draws his sword and smites a servant of the archpriest and removes his ear lobe.
52 Then Yah Shua words to him, Return your sword to its place: for all who take the sword destruct in the sword.
53 Think you that I am not able now to beseech my Father, and he presently gives me much more than twelve legions of angels?
54 How then are the scriptures fulfilled/shalamed, that it must be thus?
55 In that same hour Yah Shua says to the multitudes, Come you as upon a robber to take me with swords and staves? I sat daily with you doctrinating in the priestal precinct, and you overpowered me not. — but all this becomes to fulfill/shalam the scriptures of the prophets. — then all the disciples forsake him, and flee.
YAH SHUA FACES THE ARCHPRIEST
57 And they who overpowers Yah Shua lead him to Caiaphas the archpriest, where the scribes and the elders assemble together:
58 and Petros follows him from afar to the courtyard of the archpriest; and enters and sits with the attendants to see the completion/shalom.
59 And the archpriests and elders and all the sanhedrim seek pseudo witnesses against Yah Shua to deathify him; but find none — yes, though many pseudo witnesses come, yet they find none.
60 Afterward two pseudo witnesses come, and say, This one says, I am able to disintegrate the nave of Elohim and to build it through three days.
61 And the archpriest rises, and says to him, Answer you naught? What witness these against you? — but Yah Shua hushes.
62 And the archpriest answers him, saying, I exorcise you by the living Elohim, to say to us whether you be the Messiah, the Son of Elohim.
64 Yah Shua words to him, You said! Moreover I word to you, From now on you see the Son of humanity sitting at the right of the dynamis, and coming in the clouds of the heavens.
65 Then the archpriest rips his clothes, wording, He blasphemates! What further need have we of witnesses? Behold, now you heard his blasphemy!
66 What think you?
67 They answer, saying, He is subject to death. — then they spit in his face and punch him.
68 And others slap him, Wording, Prophecy to us, you Messiah, Who smote you?

MATTHEW 26, 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE FIRST DENIAL OF PETROS

69 Now *Peter* **Petros** sat without in the *palace* **courtyard**:
and a *damsel* **lass** came unto him, *saying* **wording**,
Thou also wast with *Jesus* **Yah Shua** of *Galilee* **Galiyl**.
70 But he denied *before them* **in front of all**,
saying **wording**, I know not what thou *sayest* **speakest**.

THE SECOND DENIAL OF PETROS

71 And when he was gone out into the *porch* **gate**,
another *maid* saw him,
and *said* **worded** unto them that were there,
This *fellow*
was also with *Jesus* of *Nazareth* **Yah Shua the Nazarene**.
72 And again he denied with an oath,
I *do not* know **not** the *man* **human**.

THE THIRD DENIAL OF PETROS

73 And after a while came unto him they that stood by,
and *said* to *Peter* **Petros**,
Surely **Truly** thou also art one of them;
for thy speech *bewrayeth* **maketh** thee **evident**.
74 Then began he to curse and to *swear* **anathematize**,
saying, I know not the *man* **human**.
And *immediately* **straightway**
the *cock* **crew** **rooster** **voiced**.
75 And *Peter* **Petros** remembered
the *word* **rhema** of *Jesus* **Yah Shua**, which *said* unto him,
Before **Ere** the *cock* **crow** **rooster** **voiceth**,
thou shalt **utterly** deny me thrice.
And he went out, and wept bitterly.

YAH SHUA FACES PILATOS

27 *When the* **And being** *early* morning was come,
all the *chief* **arch** priests and elders of the people
took counsel against *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
to *put* **deathify** him to death:

2 And when they had bound him, they led him away,
and delivered him to Pontius *Pilate* **Pilatós** the governor.

THE REGRET OF YAH HUDAH

3 Then *Judas* **Yah Hudah**, which had betrayed him,
when he saw that he was condemned,
repented **himself** **regretted**,
and brought again the thirty *pieces* of silver
to the *chief* **arch** priests and elders,
4 *Saying* **Wording**, I have sinned
in that I have betrayed the *innocent* **guiltless** blood.
And they said, What is that to us? see thou to that.

5 And he *cast* **down** **tossed** the *pieces* of silver
in the *temple* **nave**,
and departed, and went and *hanged* **strangled** himself.
6 And the *chief* **arch** priests took the silver *pieces*,
and *said*, It is not *lawful* for **allowed**
to put them into the *treasury* **qurban**,
because it is the price of blood.
7 And they took counsel,
and *bought* with **marketed** of them the potter's field,
to *bury* **entomb** strangers *in*.
8 *Wherefore* **So** that field was called,
The field of blood, unto this day.

9 Then was fulfilled/**shalamed**
that which was *spoken* **rethorized**
by *Jeremy* **through Yirme** **Yah** the prophet,
saying **wording**, And they took the thirty *pieces* of silver,
the price of him that was *valued* **priced**,
whom they of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
did **value** **priced**;

10 And gave them *for* **unto** the potter's field,
exactly as the *Lord* **appointed** **Yah Veh** **ordered** me.

cp Zechar Yah 11:12,13

11 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
stood *before* **in front of** the governor:
and the governor asked him, *saying* **wording**,
Art thou the *king* **sovereign** of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**?
And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** *said* unto him,
Thou *sayest* **wordest**.

12 And *when he was* **in his being** accused
of the *chief* **arch** priests and elders,
he answered *nothing* **naught**.

13 Then *said* *Pilate* **worded** **Pilatós** unto him,
Hearest thou not
how *many things* **much** they witness against thee?

MATTHAIOS 26, 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE FIRST DENIAL OF PETROS

69 And Petros sits outside in the courtyard:
and a lass comes to him, wording,
You also are with Yah Shua of Galiyl.

70 And he denies in front of all,
wording, I know not what you speak.

THE SECOND DENIAL OF PETROS

71 And he goes to the gate, and another sees him:
and words to them who are there,
This *one* also was with Yah Shua the Nazarene.

72 And again he denies with an oath,
I know not the human.

THE THIRD DENIAL OF PETROS

73 And after a little,
those standing by come to Petros,
and say, Truly you also are one of them;
for your speech makes you evident.

74 Then he begins to curse and to anathematize,
I know not the human.
— and straightway the rooster voices.

75 And Petros remembers the rhema of Yah Shua,
saying to him,
Ere the rooster voices,
you utterly deny me thrice.
— and he goes and weeps bitterly.

YAH SHUA FACES PILATOS

27 And being early morning,
all the archpriests and elders of the people
take counsel against Yah Shua to deathify him:
and they bind him and lead him away
and deliver him to Pontius Pilatos the governor.

2

THE REGRET OF YAH HUDAH

3 Then Yah Hudah, who betrayed him,
seeing he is condemned, regrets,
and brings again the thirty silvers
to the archpriests and elders;
4 wording, I sinned in betraying guiltless blood.

And they say, What is that to us? You see to that.
5 — and he tosses the silver in the nave
and departs and goes and strangles himself.

6 And the archpriests takes the silver, and say,
It is not allowed to put them into the qurban
because it is the price of blood.

7 And they take counsel,
and they market of them
the field of the potter to entomb strangers:
8 so that field is called, The field of blood,
to this day.

9 — then to fulfill/shalam
what Yirme Yah the prophet rhetorized,
wording, And they take the thirty silvers
the price of him who is priced
— whom they of the sons of Yisra El priced;
10 and give them to the field of the potter
exactly as Yah Veh ordered me.

cp Zechar Yah 11:12,13

11 And Yah Shua stands in front of the governor:
and the governor asks him, wording,
Are you the sovereign of the Yah Hudiym?

12 And Yah Shua say to him, You worded.
— and in his being accused
by the archpriests and elders,
he answers naught.

13 Then Pilatos words to him,
Hear you not how much they witness against you?

MATTHEW 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

14 And he answered him
to never a word **not even a rhema**;
insomuch that the governor marvelled *greatly* **extremely**.

15 Now at that *feast* **celebration**
the governor was *wont* **accustomed**
to release unto the *people* **multitude** a prisoner,
whom they *would* **willed**.

16 And they had then a *notable* **an eminent** prisoner,
called *Barabbas* **worded Bar Abbas**.

17 *Therefore* **So** when they were gathered together,
Pilate **Pilatos** said unto them,
Whom *will* **shall** ye that I release unto you?
Barabbas **Bar Abbas**,
or *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
which is called *Christ* **worded Messiah**?

18 For he knew
that for envy they had delivered him.

19 When he was set down on the *judgment seat* **bamah**,
his *wife* **sent woman apostolized** unto him,
saying **wording**,
Have thou *nothing* **naught** to do with that just man:
for I have suffered *many things* **much** this day in a dream
because of him.

20 But the *chief* **arch** priests and elders
persuaded **convinced** the multitude
that they should ask *Barabbas* **Bar Abbas**,
and destroy *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.

21 The governor answered and said unto them,
Whether of the twain will ye that I release unto you?
They said, *Barabbas* **Bar Abbas**.

22 *Pilate* **saith Pilatos wordeth** unto them,
So What shall I do *then* with *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
which is called *Christ* **worded Messiah**?

23 They all *say* **word** unto him, *Let him be crucified* **Stake**.
And the governor said,
Why **Indeed**, what evil hath he done?
But they cried out *the more* **superabundantly**,
saying **wording**, *Let him be crucified* **Stake**.

24 When *Pilate* **Pilatos** saw
that he could *prevail* **nothing not benefit naught**,
but that rather a *tumult* **was made riot became**,
he took water,
and washed his hands *before* **in front of** the multitude,
saying **wording**,
I am *innocent* **guiltless** of the blood of this just person:
see ye to it.

25 *Then* **And** answered all the people, and said,
His blood *be* on us, and on our children.

26 **BAR ABBAS RELEASED, YAH SHUA BETRAYED**
Then released he *Barabbas* **Bar Abbas** unto them:
and when he had *scourged* **Jesus whipped Yah Shua**,
he delivered him to be *crucified* **staked**.

27 Then the *soldiers* **warriors** of the governor
took *Jesus* **Yah Shua** into the *common hall* **praetorium**,
and gathered **together** unto him
the whole *band* **squad** of soldiers.

28 And they stripped him, and put on him a scarlet robe.

29 And when they had
platted **braided** a *crown* **wreath** of thorns,
they put it upon his head, and a reed in his right *hand*:
and they *bowed the knee before* **kneeled in front of** him,
and mocked him, *saying* **wording**, *Hail* **Cheers**,
king **sovereign** of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**!

30 And they spit upon him, and took the reed,
and *smote* **struck** him on the head.

31 And after that they had mocked him,
they *took* **stripped** the robe *off* from him,
and *put* **endued** his own *raiment* **garment** on him,
and led him away to *crucify* **stake** him.

32 And as they came out,
they found a *man of Cyrene* **human — a Cyrenian**,
Simon **Shimon** by name:
him they compelled to bear his *cross* **stake**.

33 And when they were come unto a place
called *Colgotha* **worded Golgoleth**,
that is to *say* **word**, a *place of a skull* **cranium place**,

34 They gave him vinegar to drink mingled with *gall* **cholera**:
and when he had tasted thereof,
he *would* **willed to** not drink.

MATTHAIOS 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

14 And he answers him not even a rhema;
so that the governor marvels extremely.

15 And at that celebration
the governor is accustomed
to release a prisoner to the multitude
— whom they will:
and then they have an eminent prisoner,
worded Bar Abbas.

17 So they gather together, and Pilatos says to them,
Whom will you that I release to you?
Bar Abbas? Or Yah Shua, worded Messiah?
— for he knows they deliver him because of envy.

19 As he sits on the bamah,
his woman apostolizes him,
wording, Have naught to do with that just man:
for I suffered much this day in a dream
because of him.

20 But the archpriests and elders
convince the multitude to ask for Bar Abbas
and destroy Yah Shua.

21 The governor answers them, saying,
Which of the two will you that I release to you?
They say, Bar Abbas.

22 Pilatos words to them,
What then do I with Yah Shua who is worded Messiah?
They all word to him, Stake!

23 And the governor says,
Indeed, what evil has he done?
But they cry out superabundantly, wording, Stake!

24 And Pilatos sees he cannot benefit aught,
but rather, a riot becomes,
he takes water,
and washes his hands in front of the multitude,
wording,
I am guiltless of the blood of this just person:
you see to it.

25 And all the people answer, saying,
His blood — on us and on our children.

26 **BAR ABBAS RELEASED, YAH SHUA BETRAYED**
Then he releases Bar Abbas to them:
and he whips Yah Shua,
and delivers him to stake.

27 Then the warriors of the governor
take Yah Shua into the praetorium,
and gather the whole squad of soldiers to him:
and they strip him, and put a scarlet robe on him:
and they braid a wreath of thorns,
and put it on his head; and a reed in his right:
and they kneel in front of him, and mock him,
wording, Cheers, sovereign of the Yah Hudiym!

30 And they spit on him
and take the reed and strike him on the head:
and after they mock him
they strip off the robe
and endue his own garment on him;
and lead him away to stake him.

32 And as they come out,
they find a human — a Cyrenian, Shimon by name:
and they compel him to bear his stake.

33 And they come to a place worded Golgoleth
— worded, Cranium Place;
they give him vinegar mingled with cholera
to drink;
and he tastes thereof, and wills to not drink.

MATTHEW 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH SHUA IS STAKED

35 And they *crucified* **staked** him,
and *parted* **divided** his garments, casting lots:
that it might be fulfilled/**shalamed**
which was *spoken* **rhetorized** by the prophet,
They *parted* **divided** my garments among them,
and upon my *vesture* **did** **garment** they cast lots.

Psalm 22:18
36 And sitting down they *watched* **guarded** him there;
37 And *set up over* **put above** his head
his accusation *written* **scribed**,
THIS IS *JESUS* **YAH SHUA**
THE *KING* **SOVEREIGN** OF THE *JEW* **YAH HUDIYM**.

38 Then were there two *thieves* **robbers**
crucified **staked** with him,
one *on* **at** the right *hand*, and *another on* **one at** the left.

39 And they that passed by *reviled* **blasphemed** him,
wagging their heads,
40 And *saying* **wording**,
Thou that *destroyest* **disintegratest** the *temple* **nave**,
and *buildest* it in three days, *save* thyself.
If thou be the Son of *God* **Elohim**,
come down **descend** from the *cross* **stake**.

41 Likewise also the *chief arch* priests mocking him,
with the scribes and elders, *said* **worded**,
42 He saved others; himself he cannot save.
If he be the *king* **sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
let him now *come down* **descend** from the *cross* **stake**,
and we *will believe* **shall trust in** him.

43 He *trusted* **confided** in *God* **Elohim**;
let him *deliver* **rescue** him now,
if he *will have* **him** **willeth**:
for he *said*, I am the Son of *God* **Elohim**.

44 The thieves also,
which were *crucified* **staked** with him,
cast the same in his teeth **reproached** him.

45 Now from the sixth hour
there was **became** darkness over all the *land* **earth**
unto the ninth hour.

46 And about the ninth hour
Jesus **Yah Shua** cried with a *loud* **mega** voice,
saying **wording**,
Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani?
that is to say,
My *God* **Elohim**, my *God* **Elohim**,
why hast thou forsaken me?

Psalm 22:1
47 Some of them that stood there,
when they heard that, *said* **worded**,
This *man calleth for* *Elias* **voiceth to Eli Yah**.

48 And straightway one of them ran, and took a sponge,
and filled it with vinegar, and put it on a reed,
and gave him to drink.

49 The rest *said* **worded**, *Let be* **Allow**,
let us see
whether *Elias will* **Eli Yah shall** come to save him.

50 *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
when he had cried again with a *loud* **mega** voice,
yielded up the ghost **released his spirit**.

MATERIAL AND PHYSICAL REACTIONS

51 And, behold,
the veil of the *temple* **nave** was *rent* **split** in twain
from the *top to the bottom* **above to downward**;
and the earth *did* **quake** **quaked**, and the rocks *rent* **split**;
52 And the *graves* **tombs** were opened;
and many bodies of the *saints* **holy** which slept arose,
53 And came out of the *graves* **tombs**
after his *resurrection* **rising**,
and *went* **entered** into the holy city,
and *appeared* **manifested** unto many.

54 Now when the centurion,
and they that were with him,
watching *Jesus* **guarding Yah Shua**,
saw the earthquake **quake**,
and those *things that were done* **became**,
they *feared greatly* **awed extremely**, *saying* **wording**,
Truly this was the Son of *God* **Elohim**.

MATTHAIOS 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH SHUA IS STAKED

35 And they stake him,
and divide his garments, casting lots:
to fulfill/**shalam** what the prophet rhetorized,
They divided my garments among them
and upon my garment they cast lots.

Psalm 22:18
36 And sitting down they guard him there:
37 and above his head put his accusation scribed,
THIS IS YAH SHUA
THE SOVEREIGN OF THE YAH HUDIYM.

38 Then they stake two robbers with him,
one at the right and one at the left.

39 And those passing by blaspheme him,
wagging their heads
and wording,
40 You who disintegrates the nave
and builds it in three days, save yourself!
If you are the Son of Elohim, descend from the stake!

41 Likewise also the archpriests
with the scribes and elders mock him, wording,
42 He saved others; himself he cannot save.
If he be the sovereign of Yisra El,
have him now descend from the stake;
and we trust in him.

43 He confides in Elohim;
have him rescue him now — if he wills:
for he says, I am the Son of Elohim.

44 — the thieves staked with him also reproach him.

45 And from the sixth hour
darkness becomes over all the earth
to the ninth hour:
46 and about the ninth hour
Yah Shua cries with a mega voice, wording,
Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani?
that is,
My Elohim, my Elohim,
why forsake you me?

Psalm 22:1
47 Some of them standing there, hearing that,
word, This one voices to Eli Yah.

48 And straightway one of them runs
and takes a sponge and fills it with vinegar
and puts it on a reed and gives him to drink.

49 The rest word, Allow!
We see whether Eli Yah comes to save him.

50 And again Yah Shua cries with a mega voice
and releases his spirit.

MATERIAL AND PHYSICAL REACTIONS

51 And behold,
the veil of the nave splits in two
from above to downward;
and the earth quakes and the rocks split
and the tombs open;
52 and many bodies of the sleeping holy rise;
53 and come from the tombs after his rising
and enter the holy city and manifest to many.

54 And the centurion
and those with him guarding Yah Shua
see the quake and all that becomes;
and they awe extremely, wording,
Truly this is the Son of Elohim.

MATTHEW 27, 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

55 And many women were there
beholding **observing from afar off**,
which followed *Jesus Yah Shua* from *Galilee Galiyl*,
ministering unto him:
56 Among which was *Mary Miryam the Magdalene*,
and *Mary Miryam*
the mother of *James Yaaqovos* and *Joses Yoses*,
and the mother of *Zebedee's children Zabdi's sons*.
YAH SHUA ENTOMBED
57 *When the even was come* **And being evening**,
there came a rich *man human* of *Arimathaea Ramah*,
named *Joseph Yoseph*,
who also himself
was *Jesus' disciple* **disciplined by Yah Shua**:
58 He went to *Pilate Pilatos*,
and *begged* the body of *Jesus Yah Shua*.
Then *Pilate Pilatos*
commanded **summoned** the body to be *delivered* **given**.
59 And when *Joseph Yoseph* had taken the body,
he *wrapped* **entwined** it in a *clean pure* linen cloth,
60 And laid it in his own new tomb,
which he had *hewn* **quarried** out in the rock:
and he rolled a *great mega* stone
to the *door portal* of the *sepulchre tomb*,
and departed.
61 And there was *Mary Miryam the Magdalene*,
and the other *Mary Miryam*,
sitting over against the *sepulchre tomb*.
THE TOMB SEALED AND GUARDED
62 *Now the next day* **And being evening**,
that followed after the day of the preparation,
the *chief arch* priests and Pharisees
63 came **gathered** together unto *Pilate Pilatos*,
saying wording, *Sir Adoni*,
we remember that that *deceiver seducer* said,
while he was yet alive,
64 After three days I *will* **shall** rise again.
Command therefore **So Summon**
that the *sepulchre tomb* be *made sure* **secured**
until the third day,
lest **ever** his disciples come by night, and steal him away,
and say unto the people, He is risen from the dead:
so the *last error* **final deception**
shall be worse than the first.
65 *Pilate Pilatos* said unto them,
Ye have a *watch* **custodian**:
66 go your way, *make* **secure** it as *sure* as ye can **know**.
So they went,
and *made the sepulchre sure* **secured the tomb**,
sealing the stone, and setting a *watch* **custodian**.

28

In the *end eve* of the *sabbath shabbaths*,
as it began to dawn
toward unto the first *day* of the *week shabbaths*,
came *Mary Miryam the Magdalene*
and the other *Mary Miryam*
to see **observe** the *sepulchre tomb*.
2 And, behold,
there was a *great earthquake* **became a mega quake**:
for the angel of the *Lord Yah Veh*
descended from **the** heaven,
and came and rolled back the stone from the *door portal*,
and sat upon it.
3 His countenance was *like as* lightning,
and his *raiment* **endument** white as snow:
4 And for *fear awe* of him
the *keepers did shake* **guards quaked**,
and became as dead *men*
5 And the angel answered and said unto the women,
Fear not ye **Be ye not awestricken**:
for I know that ye seek *Jesus Yah Shua*,
which was *crucified* **staked**.
6 He is not here: for he is risen, **exactly** as he said.
Come, see the place where *the Lord Adonay* lay.
7 And go quickly,
and *tell say to* his disciples that he is risen from the dead;
and, behold, he *goeth before* **precedes** you into *Galilee Galiyl*;
there shall ye see him:
lo behold, I have *told* **said to** you.

MATTHAIOS 27, 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

55 And many women
who had followed *Yah Shua* from *Galiiyl*
who ministered to him
observe from afar
56 — among whom are *Miryam the Magdalene*,
and *Miryam the mother of Yaaqovos* and *Yoses*,
and the mother of the sons of *Zabdi*.
YAH SHUA ENTOMBED
57 And being evening,
a rich human of *Ramah* named *Yoseph* comes
— who himself was also *discipled* by *Yah Shua*:
58 he goes to *Pilatos*
and asks for the body of *Yah Shua*:
then *Pilatos* summons the body to be given.
59 And *Yoseph* takes the body
and entwines it in pure linen;
60 and lays it in his own new tomb
which he quarried in the rock:
and he rolls a mega stone to the portal of the tomb
and departs:
61 and *Miryam the Magdalene* and the other *Miryam*
sit opposite the tomb.
THE TOMB SEALED AND GUARDED
62 And on the morrow after the day of the preparation
the archpriests and Pharisees gather together to *Pilatos*,
63 *wording*, *Adoni*,
we remember that *seducer* say,
while he was still alive,
After three days I rise.
64 So summon to secure the tomb until the third day
— lest ever his disciples come by night
and steal him away and say to the people,
He rose from the dead!
— and the final deception is worse than the first.
65 *Pilatos* say to them, You have a custodian:
go your way, secure it as you know.
66 So they go and secure the tomb;
sealing the stone and setting a custodian.
YAH SHUA RESURRECTED

28

In the eve of the *shabbaths*
as it begins to dawn to the first of the *shabbaths*,
Miryam the Magdalene and the other *Miryam*
go to observe the tomb.
2 And behold, there is a mega quake:
for the angel of *Yah Veh* descends from the heavens
and comes and rolls the stone from the portal
and sits on it:
3 his countenance is as lightning
and his endument white as snow:
4 and the guards quake in awe of him
and become as dead.
5 And the angel answers the women, saying,
Awe not:
for I know you seek *Yah Shua* who was staked:
6 he is not here: for he rose exactly as he said:
come, see the place where *Adonay* lay:
and go quickly
7 and say to his disciples that he rose from the dead;
and behold, he precedes you into *Galiiyl*;
and there you see him:
behold, I have said to you.

MATTHEW 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 8 And they departed quickly from the *sepulchre* **tomb**
with *fear* **awe** and *great joy* **mega cheer**;
and did run to *bring* **evangelize** his disciples *word*.
9 And as they went to *tell* **evangelize** his disciples,
behold, *Jesus* **Yah Shua** met them, *saying* **wording**,
All hail **Cheers**.
And they came and *held* **overpowered** him by the feet,
and worshipped him.
10 Then *said* *Jesus* **worded** **Yah Shua** unto them,
Be **Awe** not *afraid*:
go *tell* **evangelize** my brethren
that they go into *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
and there shall they see me.
WARRIORS BRIBED TO DENY THE RESURRECTION
11 Now when they were going, behold,
some of the *watch* **custodians** came into the city,
and *shewed* **evangelized** unto the *chief* **arch** priests
all *the things* **those** that *were done* **became**.
12 And when they were assembled with the elders,
and had taken counsel,
they gave *large money* **ample silver**
unto the *soldiers* **warriors**,
13 *saying* **wording**, Say ye,
His disciples came by night,
and stole him away while we slept.
14 And *if this come to the governor's ears*
whenever the governor hears,
we *will persuade* **shall convince** him,
and *secure you* **make you unanxious**.
15 So they took the *money* **silver**,
and did as they were *taught* **doctrinated**:
and this *saying* **word** is commonly reported
among the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** until this day.
16 Then **And** the eleven disciples
went away into *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
into a mountain
where *Jesus* **Yah Shua** had *appointed* **ordained** them.
17 And when they saw him, they worshipped him:
but some doubted.
THE FINAL MISVAH OF YAH SHUA
18 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** came and spake unto them,
saying **wording**,
All *power* **authority** is given unto me
in heaven and in earth.
19 **So** Go ye *therefore*, and *teach* **disciple** all *nations* **goyim**,
baptizing them in the name* of the Father,
and of the Son,
and of the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**:
20 *Teaching* **Doctrinating** them to *observe* **guard**
all *things whatsoever* — **as much as ever**
I have *commanded* **misvahed** you:
and, *lo* **behold**, I am with you *always* **all days**,
even unto the *end* **completion/shalom** of the *world* **eon**.
Amen.
*name: Exodus 3:3—15, Yesha Yah 42:8, Yahn 8:58

MATTHAIOS 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 8 And they depart quickly from the tomb
with awe and mega cheer;
and run to evangelize his disciples.
9 And as they go to evangelize his disciples,
behold, Yah Shua meets them, wording, Cheers!
— and they come and overpower him by the feet
and worship him.
10 Then Yah Shua words to them, Awe not:
go evangelize my brothers to go to Galiyl
and see me there.
WARRIORS BRIBED TO DENY THE RESURRECTION
11 And as they go, behold,
some of the custodians come to the city,
and evangelize to the archpriests
all that became.
12 And they assemble with the elders
and take counsel;
they give ample silver to the warriors,
13 wording,
Say, His disciples came by night,
and stole him away while we slept:
14 and whenever the governor hears,
we convince him,
and make you unanxious.
15 So they take the silver
and do as they are doctrinated:
and this word is commonly reported
among the Yah Hudiym until this day.
16 And the eleven disciples go to Galiyl
— to a mountain where Yah Shua ordained them
— and they see him and worship him
— but some doubt.
THE FINAL MISVAH OF YAH SHUA
18 And Yah Shua comes and speaks to them,
wording,
All authority is given me
in the heavens and in earth.
19 So go and disciple all goyim,
baptizing them in the name* of the Father,
and of the Son,
and of the Holy Spirit:
20 doctrinating them to guard all
— as much as ever I misvahed you:
and behold, I am with you all days
— even to the completion/shalom of the eon.
Amen.
*name: Exodus 3:3—15, Yesha Yah 42:8, Yahn 8:58

MARK 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH SHUA MESSIAH, THE SON OF ELOHIM

1 The beginning of the *gospel* **evangelism**
of *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**, the Son of *God* **Elohim**;
2 As it is *written scribed* in the prophets, Behold,
I send **apostolize** my *messenger* **angel**
before **preceding** thy face,
which shall prepare thy way *before* **in front of** thee.
3 The voice of one crying in the wilderness,
Prepare ye the way of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**,
make his paths straight.

Malachi 3:1, Yesha Yah 40:3

YAHN THE BAPTIZER

4 **And so be it**, *John Yahn* did baptize in the wilderness,
and *preach* **preaching** the baptism of repentance
for the *remission* **forgiveness** of sins.
5 And there *went out* **proceeded** unto him
all the *land* **region** of *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**,
and *they of Jerusalem* **the Yeru Shalemiym**,
and were all baptized of him
in the *river* **stream** of *Jordan* **Yarden**,
confessing **homologizing** their sins.
6 And *John Yahn* was *clothed* **endued** with camel's hair,
and with a girdle of a *skin* **leather** about his loins;
and he did eat locusts and wild honey;
7 And *preached*, *saying* **wording**,
There cometh one mightier than I after me,
the *latchet* **thongs** of whose shoes
I am not worthy to stoop down and *unloose* **release**.
8 I indeed have baptized you *with* **in** water:
but he shall baptize you *with* **in** the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.

YAHN BAPTIZES YAH SHUA

9 And **so be it** *came to pass* in those days,
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** came from Nazareth of *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
and was baptized of *John Yahn* in *Jordan* **Yarden**.

HOLY SPIRIT DESCENDS ON YAH SHUA

10 And straightway
coming up **ascending** out of the water,
he saw the heavens *opened* **split**,
and the Spirit *like* **as** a dove descending upon him:
11 And there *came* **became** a voice
from *heaven* **the heavens**,
saying, Thou art my beloved Son,
in whom I *am well pleased* **well—approve**.

SATAN TESTS YAH SHUA

12 And *immediately* **straightway**
the spirit *driveth* **casteth** him into the wilderness.
13 And he was there in the wilderness forty days,
tempted **tested** of Satan; and was with the wild beasts;
and the angels ministered unto him.

YAH SHUA PREACHES THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF ELOHIM

14 Now after that *John Yahn* was *put in prison* **betrayed**,
Jesus **Yah Shua** came into *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
preaching the *gospel* **evangelism**
of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**,
15 And *saying* **wording**. The *time* **season** is fulfilled/shalamed,
and the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**
is at hand **approacheth**:
repent ye, and *believe* **trust** in the *gospel* **evangelism**.
16 Now as he walked by the sea of *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
he saw *Simon* **Shimon** and *Andrews* **Andreas** his brother
casting a net into the sea: for they were fishers.
17 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto them, Come ye after me,
and I *will* **shall** make you
to become fishers of *men* **humanity**.
18 And straightway they forsook their nets,
and followed him.
19 And when he had
gone a little farther **advanced** thence,
he saw *James* **Yaaqovos** *the son of Zebedee* **Zabdi**,
and *John* **Yahn** his brother,
who also were in the *ship* **sailer**
mending **preparing** their nets.
20 And straightway he called them:
and they *left* **forsook** their father *Zebedee* **Zabdi**
in the *ship* **sailer**
with the *hired servants* **hirelings**, and went after him.

YAH SHUA DOCTRINATES IN THE SYNAGOGUE

21 And they *went into* **entered** *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**;
and straightway on the *sabbath day* **shabbaths**

MARKOS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH SHUA MESSIAH, THE SON OF ELOHIM

1 The beginning of the evangelism
of Yah Shua Messiah, the Son of Elohim
as scribed in the prophets,
Behold,
I apostolize my angel preceding your face
who prepares your way in front of you
— the voice of one crying in the wilderness,
Prepare the way of Yah Veh,
make his paths straight.

Malachi 3:1, Yesha Yah 40:3

YAHN THE BAPTIZER

4 And so be it,
Yahn baptizes in the wilderness
and preaches the baptism of repentance
for the forgiveness of sins:
5 and all the region of Yah Hudah
and the Yeru Shalemiym proceed to him;
and he baptizes them all in the stream of Yarden,
homologizing their sins.

6 And Yahn endues with camel hair
and a leather girdle around his loins;
and he eats locusts and wild honey:
7 and preaches, wording,
One comes after me, mightier than I,
whose shoe thongs
I am not worthy to stoop down and release.
8 I indeed baptize you in water:
but he baptizes you in the Holy Spirit.

YAHN BAPTIZES YAH SHUA

9 And so be it, in those days,
Yah Shua comes from Nazareth, Galiyl,
and Yahn baptizes him in Yarden.

HOLY SPIRIT DESCENDS ON YAH SHUA

10 And straightway, ascending from the water,
he sees the heavens split,
and the Spirit as a dove descending on him:
11 and a voice becomes from the heavens,
You are my beloved Son in whom I well—approve.

SATAN TESTS YAH SHUA

12 And straightway
the Spirit casts him in the wilderness:
13 and there he is, in the wilderness forty days,
tested of Satan;
and is with the wild beasts;
and the angels minister to him.

YAH SHUA PREACHES THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF ELOHIM

14 And after Yahn is betrayed,
Yah Shua goes to Galiyl
preaching the evangelism
of the sovereigndom of Elohim:
15 and wording, The season fulfills/shalams,
and the sovereigndom of Elohim approaches:
repent, and trust in the evangelism.

16 And as he walks by the sea of Galiyl
he sees Shimon and Andreas his brother
casting a net into the sea — for they are fishers:
17 and Yah Shua says to them, Come after me,
and I make you to become fishers of humanity.
18 — and straightway they forsake their nets
and follow him.

19 And as he advances there,
he see Yaaqovos of Zabdi and his brother Yahn
also in the sailer preparing their nets
20 and straightway he calls them:
and they forsake their father Zabdi in the sailer
with the hirelings — and goes after him.

YAH SHUA DOCTRINATES IN THE SYNAGOGUE

21 And they enter Kaphar Nachum;
and straightway on the shabbaths

MARK 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

22 he entered into the synagogue, and *taught* **doctrinated**.
And they were astonished at his doctrine:
for he *taught* **doctrinated** them as one that had authority,
and not as the scribes.

YAH SHUA REBUKES AN IMPURE SPIRIT

23 And there was in their synagogue
a man **human** with an *unclean* **impure** spirit;
and he *cried out* **screamed**,
24 *saying* **wording**, *Let us alone* **Aha!**;
what have we to do with thee,
thou *Jesus of Nazareth* **Yah Shua the Nazarene?**
art thou come to destroy us?
I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of *God* **Elohim**.
25 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** rebuked him, *saying* **wording**,
Hold thy peace **Muzzle**, and come out of him.
26 And when the *unclean* **impure** spirit
had *tom* **convulsed** him,
and cried with a *loud* **mega** voice, he came out of him.
27 And they were all *amazed* **astonished**,
insomuch that they *questioned* **disputed** among themselves,
saying **wording**,
What *thing* is this? what new doctrine is this?
for with authority *commandeth* **ordereth** he
even the *unclean* **impure** spirits,
and they *do* obey him.
28 And immediately his fame spread abroad
throughout **into** all the region round about *Galilee* **Galiyl**.

YAH SHUA CURES THE MOTHER IN LAW OF SHIMON

29 And *forthwith* **straightway**,
when they were come out of the synagogue
they entered
into the house of *Simon* **Shimon** and *Andrew* **Andreas**,
with *James* **Yaaqovos** and *John* **Yahn**.
30 But *Simon's wife's mother* **Shimon's mother in law**
lay *sick of a fever* **fevered**,
and *anon* **straightway** they *tell* **word** to him of **about** her.
31 And he came and *took* **overpowered** her by the hand,
and lifted her up;
and *immediately* **straightway** the fever *left* **forsook** her,
and she ministered unto them.

YAH SHUA CASTS OUT DEMONS AND CURES

32 And *at even* **being evening**, when the sun *did* set,
they brought unto him all that were *diseased* **ill**,
and them that were *possessed with devils* **demonized**.
33 And all the city was gathered together at the *door* **portal**.
34 And he *healed* **cured** many
that were *sick* **ill** of divers diseases,
and cast out many *devils* **demons**;
and *suffered* **allowed** not the *devils* **demons** to speak,
because they knew him.

YAH SHUA PRAYS AND PREACHES

35 And in the **early** morning,
rising up a great while before day **extremely night**,
he went out, and departed into a *solitary* **desolate** place,
and there prayed.
36 And *Simon* **Shimon** and they that were with him
followed after him.
37 And when they had found him,
they *said* **worded** unto him, All *men* seek for thee.
38 And he *said* **worded** unto them,
Let us go into the *next towns* **nearby villages**,
that I may preach there also: for *therefore* **this** came I forth.
39 And he preached in their synagogues
throughout **in** all *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
and cast out *devils* **demons**.

YAH SHUA PURIFIES A LEPER

40 And there came a leper to him, beseeching him,
and kneeling down to him,
and *saying* **wording** unto him,
If Whenever thou *wilt* **willest**,
thou canst *make* **purify** me *clean*.
41 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
moved with compassion **sympathetic spleen**,
put forth **spread** his hand, and touched him,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto him,
I will; be thou *clean* **purified**.
42 And as soon as he had *spoken* **said**,
immediately **straightway** the leprosy departed from him,
and he was *cleansed* **purified**.

MARKOS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

22 he enters the synagogue and doctrinates:
and they are astonished at his doctrine:
for he doctrinates them as one having authority
and not as the scribes.

YAH SHUA REBUKES AN IMPURE SPIRIT

23 And in their synagogue
there is a human with an impure spirit;
and he screams,
24 *wording*, *Aha!*
What have we to do with you
— Yah Shua, Nazarene?
Come you to destroy us?
I know you, who you are — the Holy One of Elohim.

25 And Yah Shua rebukes him, *wording*,
Muzzle! and, Come from him!
26 — and as the impure spirit convulses him
he cries with a mega voice and comes from him.

27 And they are all astonished,
so that they dispute among themselves, *wording*,
What is this? What new doctrine is this?
For with authority he orders even the impure spirits
and they obey him.
28 — and immediately his fame spreads abroad
into all the region all around Galiyl.

YAH SHUA CURES THE MOTHER IN LAW OF SHIMON

29 And straightway, as they come from the synagogue,
they enter the house of Shimon and Andreas
with Yaaqovos and Yahn:
30 and the mother in law of Shimon
lies fevered;
and straightway they word to him about her:
31 and he comes and overpowers her by the hand
and lifts her;
and straightway the fever forsakes her
and she ministers to them.

YAH SHUA CASTS OUT DEMONS AND CURES

32 And being evening, as the sun sets,
they bring him all the ill and the demonized:
33 and all the city gathers together at the portal:
34 and he cures many who are ill of divers diseases
and casts out many demons;
and allows not the demons to speak
because they know him.

YAH SHUA PRAYS AND PREACHES

35 And very early morning, still extremely night,
he rises and goes and departs to a desolate place;
and there he prays:
36 and Shimon and those with him follow after him:
37 and they find him,
and they word to him, All seek for you.

38 And he words to them,
We go to the nearby villages,
to preach there also: for this I have come.
39 — and he preaches in their synagogues
in all Galiyl
and cast out demons.

YAH SHUA PURIFIES A LEPER

40 And a leper comes to him, beseeching him,
and kneeling down to him, words to him,
Whenever you will, you can purify me.

41 And Yah Shua, with sympathetic spleen,
spreads his hand and touches him,
and words to him, I will! Purify!
42 — and as soon as he says,
straightway the leprosy departs from him
and he purifies.

MARK 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

43 And he *straitly charged* **sternly enjoined** him,
and *forthwith sent* **straightway cast** him away **forth**;
44 And *saith* **wordeth** unto him,
See thou say *nothing* **naught** to any *man* **one**:
but go thy way, shew thyself to the priest,
and offer for thy *cleansing* **purifying**
those *things* which *Moses commanded* **Mosheh ordered**,
for **in** a *testimony* **witness** unto them.
45 But he went out, and began to *publish* **preach** it much,
and to *blaze abroad* **report** the *matter* **word**,
insomuch that *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
could no more *openly* **manifestly** enter into the city,
but was without in *desert* **desolate** places:
and they came to him from every quarter.

YAH SHUA CURES A PARALYTIC

2 And again
he entered into *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**
after *some* days;
and it was *noised* **heard** that he was in the house.
2 And straightway many were gathered together,
insomuch
that there was no **more** room to *receive* **place** them,
no, not *so much as* **even** about the *door* **portal**:
and he *preached* **spoke** the word unto them.
3 And they come unto him,
bringing *one sick of the palsy* **a paralytic**,
which was borne of four.
4 And when they could not come nigh unto him
for the *press* **multitude**,
they uncovered the *roof* **thatch** where he was:
and when they had broken it *up*,
they *let down* **lowered** the *bed* **pad**
wherein the *sick of the palsy* **a paralytic** lay.
5 When *Jesus* **Yah Shua** saw their *faith* **trust**,
he *said* **worded** unto the *sick of the palsy* **a paralytic**,
Son, **Child**, thy sins be forgiven thee.
6 But there were *certain* **some** of the scribes sitting there,
and reasoning in their hearts,
7 Why doth this man thus speak blasphemies?
who can forgive sins *but God only* **except one** — **Elohim?**
Yesha Yah 43:25
8 And *immediately* **straightway**
when *Jesus perceived* **Yah Shua knowing** in his spirit
that they *so* **thus** reasoned within themselves,
he said unto them,
Why reason ye these *things* in your hearts?
9 Whether is it easier to say
to the *sick of the palsy* **a paralytic**,
Thy sins be forgiven thee;
or to say,
Arise, and take *up* thy *bed* **pad**, and walk?
10 But that ye may know that the Son of *man* **humanity**
hath *power* **authority** on earth to forgive sins,
(he *saith* **wordeth** to the *sick of the palsy* **a paralytic**.)
11 I say **word** unto thee, Arise, and take *up* thy *bed* **pad**,
and go thy way into thine house.
12 And *immediately* **straightway** he arose,
took *up* the *bed* **pad**,
and went forth *before* **in front of** them all;
insomuch that they were all *amazed* **astounded**,
and glorified *God* **Elohim**, saying **wording**,
We never **ever** saw it *on this fashion* **thus**.

LEVI FOLLOWS YAH SHUA

13 And he went *forth* again by the sea side;
and all the multitude *resorted* **came** unto him,
and he *taught* **doctrinated** them.
14 And as he passed by,
he saw Levi *the son of Alphaeus* **Heleph**
sitting at the *receipt of custom* **customs**,
and *said* **worded** unto him, Follow me.
And he arose and followed him.
YAH SHUA REPOSES WITH CUSTOMS AGENTS AND SINNERS
15 And **so be** it *came to pass*, that,
as *Jesus sat at meat* **Yah Shua reposed** in his house,
many *publicans* **customs agents** and sinners
sat reposed also together
with *Jesus* **Yah Shua** and his disciples:
for there were many, and they followed him.

MARKOS 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

43 And he sternly enjoins him
and straightway casts him forth
and words to him,
44 See that you say naught to anyone:
but go your way, show yourself to the priest,
and for your purifying,
offer what Mosheh ordered in a witness to them.
45 But he goes, and begins to preach much,
and to report the word,
so that Yah Shua
can no more manifestly enter the city,
but is outside in desolate places:
and they come to him from every quarter.

YAH SHUA CURES A PARALYTIC

2 And again, days after,
he enters Kaphar Nachum;
and they hear he is in the house:
2 and straightway many gather together
so that there is no more room to place them
— no, not even around the portal:
and he speaks the word to them.
3 And they come to him
and bring a paralytic who is borne by four:
4 and they cannot approach him
because of the multitude;
and they uncover the thatch where he is:
and they break it,
and lower the pad wherein the paralytic lies.
5 And Yah Shua sees their trust
and he words to the paralytic,
Child, your sins be forgiven you.
6 And some of the scribes sitting there
reason in their hearts,
7 Why does this man thus speak blasphemies?
Who can forgive sins except one — Elohim?
Yesha Yah 43:25
8 And straightway Yah Shua, knowing in his spirit,
that they reason thus within themselves,
he says to them,
Why reason you these in your hearts?
9 Which is it easier to say to the paralytic,
Your sins be forgiven you?
or to say, Rise and take your pad and walk?
10 But so that you know that the Son of humanity
has authority on earth to forgive sins
— he words to the paralytic,
I word to you, Rise and take your pad
and go your way to your house.
11 — and straightway he rises, takes the pad,
and goes in front of them all;
12 so that they are all astounded, and glorify Elohim,
wording, We never ever saw it thus.

LEVI FOLLOWS YAH SHUA

13 And again he goes by the sea side;
and all the multitude comes to him
and he doctrinates them.
14 And as he passes by
he sees Levi of Heleph sitting at the customs
and words to him, Follow me.
— and he rises and follows him.
YAH SHUA REPOSES WITH CUSTOMS AGENTS AND SINNERS
15 And so be it,
as Yah Shua reposes in his house,
many customs agents and sinners
also repose together with Yah Shua and his disciples:
for they are many, and they follow him.

MARK 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 And when the scribes and Pharisees
saw him eat with *publicans* **customs agents** and sinners,
they *said* **worded** unto his disciples,
How is it that he eateth and drinketh
with *publicans* **customs agents** and sinners?
17 When *Jesus* **Yah Shua** heard it,
he *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
They that are *whole* **able**
have no need of the *physician* **healer**,
but they that are *sick* **ill**:
I came not to call the *righteous* **just**,
but sinners to repentance.

FASTING

18 And the disciples of *John* **Yahn** and of the Pharisees
used to fast:
and they come and *say* **word** unto him,
Why do the disciples of *John* **Yahn** and of the Pharisees fast,
but thy disciples fast not?
19 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto them,
Can the *children* **sons** of the bridechamber fast,
while **during the time** the bridegroom is with them?
as long **time** as they have the bridegroom with them,
they cannot fast.
20 But the days *will* **shall** come,
when the bridegroom shall be taken away from them,
and then shall they fast in those days.

PATCHING

21 No *man* **one**
also seweth a piece of *new* **unfulled** cloth
on an old garment:
else **but if not** the *new* **piece that filled it up** **fullness**
taketh away from the old,
and the *rent* is made **split** **becometh** worse.

NEW WINE, NEW SKINS

22 And no *man* **one**
putteth new wine into old *bottles* **skins**:
else **but if not** the new wine doth burst the *bottles* **skins**,
and the wine is *spilled* **poured**,
and the *bottles* **will be marred** **skins shall destruct**:
but new wine must be put into new *bottles* **skins**.

YAH SHUA, ADONAY OF THE SHABBATH

23 And **so be** it came to pass,
that he *went* **passed** through the *corn fields* **spores**
on the *sabbath day* **shabbaths**;
and his disciples began, as they *went* **made their way**,
to pluck *the ears of corn*.

24 And the Pharisees *said* **worded** unto him, Behold,
why do they on the *sabbath day* **shabbaths**
that which is not *lawful* **allowed**?
25 And he *said* **worded** unto them,
Have ye never **ever** read what David did,
when he had need, and *was an hungred* **famished**,
he, and they that were with him?
26 How he *went into* **entered** the house of *God* **Elohim**
in the days of *Abiathar* **Abi Athar** the *high arch* priest,
and did eat the *shewbread* **prothesis bread**,
which is not *lawful* **allowed** to eat
but **except** for the priests,
and gave also to them which were with him?

Leviticus 24:5—9

27 And he *said* **worded** unto them,
The *sabbath* **shabbaths**
was made **became** for *man* **humanity**,
and not *man* **humanity** for the *sabbath* **shabbaths**:
28 *Therefore* **So then** the Son of *man* **humanity**
is *Lord* **Adonay** also of the *sabbath* **shabbath**.

YAH SHUA CURES ON THE SHABBATH

3 And he entered again into the synagogue;
and there was a *man* **human** there
which had a withered hand.
2 And they *watched* **observed** him,
whether he *would heal* **should cure** him
on the *sabbath day* **shabbaths**;
that they might accuse him.
3 And he *saith* **wordeth**
unto the *man* **human** which had the withered hand,
Stand *forth* **in our midst**.
4 And he *saith* **wordeth** unto them,

MARKOS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

16 And the scribes and Pharisees
see him eat with customs agents and sinners,
and they word to his disciples,
How is it that he eats and drinks
with customs agents and sinners?
17 And Yah Shua hears, and he words to them,
The able need no healer, but they who are ill:
I come not to call the just, but sinners to repentance.

FASTING

18 And the disciples of Yahn and of the Pharisees fast:
and they come and word to him,
Why fast the disciples of Yahn and of the Pharisees
and your disciples fast not?
19 And Yah Shua says to them,
Can the sons of the bridechamber fast
during the time the bridegroom is with them?
As long time as they have the bridegroom with them,
they cannot fast:
20 but days come,
when the bridegroom is taken from them,
and then in those days they fast.

PATCHING

21 No one sows a piece of unfulled cloth
on an old garment:
but if not, the fullness takes away from the old,
and the split becomes worse.

NEW WINE, NEW SKINS

22 And no one puts new wine into old skins:
but if not, the new wine bursts the skins;
and the wine pours and the skins destruct:
— but new wine must be put into new skins.

YAH SHUA, ADONAY OF THE SHABBATH

23 And so be it,
he passes through the spores on the shabbaths;
and as they make their way
his disciples begin to pluck.
24 And the Pharisees word to him, Behold,
why do they what is not allowed on the shabbaths?
25 And he words to them,
Have you never ever read what David did
when he had need, and famished?
— he, and those with him?
26 How he entered the house of Elohim
in the days of Abi Athar the archpriest,
and ate the prothesis bread,
which is not allowed to eat — except for the priests,
and also gave to them with him?

Leviticus 24:5—9

27 And he words to them,
The shabbaths became for humanity
and not humanity for the shabbaths:
So then the Son of humanity
is also Adonay of the shabbath.

YAH SHUA CURES ON THE SHABBATH

3 And again he enters the synagogue;
and there is a human with a withered hand;
2 and they observe,
whether he cures him on the shabbaths;
to accuse him.
3 And he words to the human with the withered hand,
Stand midst us.
4 And he words to them,

MARK 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Is it *lawful* **allowed** to do good on the *sabbath days* **shabbaths**,
or to do evil?
to save *life* **soul**, or to *kill* **slaughter**?
But they *held their peace* **hushed**.

5 And when he had looked round about on them
with *anger* **wrath**,
being grieved for the *hardness* **petrification** of their hearts,
he *saith* **wordeth** unto the *man* **human**,
Stretch forth **Spread** thine hand.
And he *stretched it out* **spread**:
and his hand was restored whole as the other.

6 And the Pharisees went *forth*,
and straightway
took made counsel with the Herodians against him,
how they might destroy him.

7 But *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
withdrew himself with his disciples to the sea:
and a *great* **vast** multitude from *Galilee* **Galiyl**
followed him,
and from *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**,
8 And from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and from *Idumaea* **Edom**,
and from beyond *Jordan* **Yarden**;
and they about *Tyre* **Sor** and Sidon,
a *great* **vast** multitude,
when they had heard
what great things **as much as** he did,
came unto him.

9 And he *spake* **said** to his disciples,
that a *small ship* **skiff** should wait on him
because of the multitude,
lest they should *throng* **tribulate** him.

10 For he had *healed* **cured** many;
insomuch
that they *pressed* **fell** upon him for to touch him,
as many as had *plagues* **scourges**.

11 And *unclean* **impure** spirits,
when they saw *observed* him,
fell down before **prostrated in front of** him,
and cried, *saying* **wording**,
Thou art the Son of *God* **Elohim**.

12 And he *straitly charged* **admonished** them
that they should not make him *known* **manifest**.

13 **YAH SHUA ORDAINS THE TWELVE**
And he *goeth up* **ascendeth** into a mountain,
and calleth unto him whom he *would* **willed**:
and they came unto him.

14 And he ordained twelve,
that they should be with him,
and that he might *send* **apostolize** them *forth* to preach,

15 And to have *power* **authority**
to *heal sicknesses* **cure diseases**,
and to cast out *devils* **demons**:

16 And *Simon* **to Shimon**
he *surnamed* **added the name** *Petros*;
17 And *James the son of Zebedee* **Yaaqovos of Zabdi**,
and *John* **Yahn** the brother of *James* **Yaaqovos**;
and he *surnamed them* **added the names**
Boanerges **Ben Regaz**,
which is, The sons of thunder:

18 And *Andrew* **Andreas**, and *Philip* **Philippos**,
and *Bartholomew* **Bar Talmay**, and *Matthew* **Matthaios**,
and *Thomas* **Taom**,
and *James the son* **Yaaqovos** of *Alphaeus* **Heleph**,
and Thaddaeus,
and *Simon* **Shimon** the *Canaanite* **Kenaaniy**,
19 And *Judas Iscariot* **Yah Hudah the urbanite**,
which also betrayed him:
and they went into an house.

20 And the multitude cometh together again,
so that they could not so much as **even** eat bread.

21 And when his friends heard of it,
they went out to *lay hold on* **overpower** him:
for they *said* **worded**, He is *beside himself* **astounded**.

22 **YAH SHUA ACCUSED OF HAVING BAAL ZEBUB**
And the scribes
which came down from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**

MARKOS 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Is it allowed on the shabbaths
to do good? Or to do evil?
To save soul? Or to slaughter?
— but they hush.

5 And he looks all around them with wrath
being grieved for the petrification of their hearts;
he words to the human, Spread your hand!
— and he spreads
and his hand restores, whole as the other.

6 And the Pharisees go,
and straightway make counsel against him
with the Herodians
— how to destroy him.

7 But Yah Shua, with his disciples.
withdraws himself to the sea:
and a vast multitude follows him
— from Galiyl and from Yah Hudah
and from Yeru Shalem and from Edom
and from beyond Yarden:
and those around Sor and Sidon, a vast multitude,
having heard as much as he did, come to him.

9 And because of the multitude,
he says to his disciples, for a skiff to await him;
lest they tribulate him:
for he cures many;
so that they fall on him to touch him:
and as many as have scourges
and impure spirits,
11 when they observe him, prostrate in front of him,
and cry, wording, You are the Son of Elohim.
— and he admonishes them
to not make him manifest.

13 **YAH SHUA ORDAINS THE TWELVE**
And he ascends a mountain
and calls whom he wills to himself;
and they come to him:
and he ordains twelve to be with him
— to apostolize them to preach
and to have authority to cure diseases
and to cast out demons.

16 And to Shimon he adds the name Petros:
and to Yaaqovos of Zabdi
and Yahn the brother of Yaaqovos
he adds the names Ben Regaz,
which is, Sons of thunder:
18 and Andreas and Philippos and Bar Talmay
and Matthaios and Taom and Yaaqovos of Heleph
and Thaddaeus and Shimon the Kenaaniy
and Yah Hudah the urbanite
who also betrays him;
— and they come to a house.

20 And the multitude comes together again
so that they cannot so much as even eat bread:
and his friends hear of it
and come to overpower him:
for they word, He is astounded.

22 **YAH SHUA ACCUSED OF HAVING BAAL ZEBUB**
And the scribes from Yeru Shalem descend

MARK 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

said **spake**, He hath *Beelzebub* **Baal Zebub**,
and by **in** the *prince* **arch** of the *devils* **demons**
casteth he *out devils* **demons**.
23 And he called them unto him,
and said **worded** unto them in parables,
How can Satan cast out Satan?
24 And *if* **whenever** a *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
be divided against itself,
that *kingdom* **sovereigndom** cannot stand.
25 And *if* **whenever** a house be divided against itself,
that house cannot stand.
26 And if Satan rise *up* against himself, and be divided,
he cannot stand, but hath *an end* a **completion**.
27 No *man* **one** can enter
into a *strong man's* **the** house **of the mighty**,
and *spoil* **thoroughly plunder** his *goods* **vessels**,
except **unless** he *will* **shall** first bind the *strong man* **mighty**;
and then he *will* **spoil** **shall thoroughly plunder** his house.

THE UNFORGIVEN SIN

28 Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
All sins shall be forgiven unto the sons of *men* **humanity**,
and blasphemies
wherewith *soever* **as much as ever** they shall blaspheme:
29 But he that shall blaspheme against the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**
hath never forgiveness **unto the eons**,
but is *in danger of* **subject to** eternal *damnation* **judgment**.

30 Because they *said* **worded**,
He hath an *unclean* **impure** spirit.

MOTHER AND BRETHREN SEEK YAH SHUA

31 There came then his brethren and his mother,
and, standing without,
sent **apostolized** unto him, *calling* **voicing to** him.
32 And the multitude sat about him,
and they said unto him, Behold,
thy mother and thy brethren without seek for thee.
33 And he answered them, *saying* **wording**,
Who is my mother, or my brethren?
34 And he looked round about
on them which sat about him,
and *said* **worded**, Behold my mother and my brethren!
35 For whosoever shall do the will of *God* **Elohim**,
the same **this** is my brother, and my sister, and mother.

4 And he began again
to *teach* **doctrinate** by the sea side:
and there was gathered **together** unto him
a *great* **vast** multitude,
so that he *entered* **embarked** into a *ship* **sailer**,
and sat in the sea;
and the whole multitude was by the sea on the land.
2 And he taught **doctrinated** them
many things **by much in** parables,
and *said* **worded** unto them in his doctrine,

THE PARABLE OF THE SPORER

3 Hearken; Behold,
there went out a *sower* **sporer** to sow **spore**:
4 And it *came to pass* **became**, as he sowed **in his sporing**,
some **indeed** fell by the way side,
and the *fowls* **flyers** of the *air* **heaven**
came and devoured it *up*.
5 And *some* **others** fell on *stony ground* **rocky**,
where it had not much *earth* **soil**;
and *immediately* **straightway** it sprang *up*,
because it had no depth of *earth* **soil**:
6 But when the sun was *up* **risen**, it was scorched;
and because it had no root, it withered away.
7 And *some* **others** fell among thorns,
and the thorns *grew up* **ascended**, and *choked* **strangled** it,
and it *yielded* **gave** no fruit.
8 And other fell on good *ground* **soil**,
and *did* **yield** **gave** fruit
that *sprang up* **ascended** and *increased* **grew**;
and brought forth, *some* **one** thirty,
and *some* **one** sixty, and *some* **one** an hundred.
9 And he *said* **worded** unto them,
He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.

THE PURPOSE OF PARABLES

10 And when he was alone,
they that were about him with the twelve
asked of him the parable.

MARKOS 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and speak, He has Baal Zebub!
— and, In the arch of demons he casts demons.

23 And he calls them to him
and words to them in parables:
How can Satan cast out Satan?
24 — and, whenever a sovereigndom divides against itself,
that sovereigndom cannot stand!
25 — and, Whenever a house divides against itself,
that house cannot stand!
26 — and, If Satan rises and divides against himself,
he cannot stand — but has a completion.
27 No one can enter the house of the mighty;
and thoroughly plunder his vessels
unless he first binds the mighty;
and then he thoroughly plunders his house.

THE UNFORGIVEN SIN

28 Amen! I word to you,
All sins are forgiven the sons of humanity,
and blasphemies — as much as ever they blaspheme:
29 but whoever blasphemes against the Holy Spirit
never has forgiveness to the eons
but is subject to eternal judgment
30 — because they word, He has an impure spirit.

MOTHER AND BROTHERS SEEK YAH SHUA

31 So his brothers and his mother come;
and standing outside,
apostolize to him — voicing to him:
32 and the multitude sits around him and says to him,
Behold,
your mother and your brothers outside seek for you.

33 And he answers them, wording,
Who is my mother? Or my brothers?

34 And he looks around on those who sit around him,
and words, Behold my mother and my brothers!
35 For whoever does the will of Elohim
— this is my brother and my sister and mother.

4 And again he begins to doctrinate by the sea side:
and a vast multitude gathers to him
so that he embarks into a sailer and sits in the sea;
and the whole multitude is by the sea on the land:
2 and he doctrinates them much in parables
and words to them in his doctrine.

THE PARABLE OF THE SPORER

3 Hearken; Behold, a sporer goes sporing:
4 and so be it, in his sporing,
some indeed falls by the way side;
and the flyers of the heavens come and devour.

5 And others fall on rocky where it has not much soil;
and straightway it springs
because it has no depth of soil:
6 but the sun rises and scorches;
and because it has no root, withers away.

7 And others fall among thorns;
and the thorns ascend and strangle;
and it gives no fruit.

8 And others falls on good soil;
and gives fruit that ascends and grows;
and brings forth
— one thirty and one sixty and one a hundred.

9 And he words to them,
Whoever has ears to hear, hearken.

THE PURPOSE OF PARABLES

10 And when he is alone,
those around him with the twelve
ask him about the parable.

MARK 4

exeGes ready research BIBLE

11 And he said **worded** unto them,
Unto you it is given to know the mystery
of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**:
but unto them that are without,
all these *things are done* **become** in parables:
12 That *seeing* **observing** they may see **observe**,
and not perceive;
and hearing they may hear,
and not *understand* **comprehend**;
lest at any time **ever** they should be converted **turn**,
and their sins should be forgiven them.

Yesha Yah 6:9, 10

THE PARABLE OF THE SPORER INTERPRETED

13 And he said **worded** unto them,
Know ye not this parable?
and how then *will* **shall** ye know all parables?
14 The sower *soweth* **sporer sporeth** the word.
15 And these are they by the way side,
where the word is *sown* **spored**;
but when they have heard,
Satan cometh *immediately* **straightway**,
and taketh away the word
that was *sown* **spored** in their hearts.
16 And these are they likewise
which are *sown* **spored** on *stony ground* **rocky**;
who, when they have heard the word,
immediately **straightway**
receive **take** it with *gladness* **cheer**;
17 And have no root in themselves,
and so endure *but for a time* **temporarily**:
afterward **then**, when *affliction* **tribulation** or persecution
ariseth **becometh** for the word's sake,
immediately **straightway** they are *offended* **scandalized**.
18 And these are they which are *sown* **spored** among thorns;
such as hear the word,
19 And the *cares* **anxieties** of this world **eon**,
and the *lusts of other things* **remaining pantings** entering in,
choke **strangle** the word, and it becometh unfruitful.
20 And these are they
which are *sown* **spored** on good *ground* **soil**;
such as hear the word, and receive it,
and *bring forth* **bear** fruit, *some* **one** thirtyfold,
some **one** sixty, and *some* **one** an hundred.

THE PARABLE OF THE CANDLE

21 And he said **worded** unto them,
Is a candle brought to be put under a *bushel* **measure**,
or under a bed?
and not to be set **put** on a *candlestick* **menorah**?
22 For there is *nothing hid* **naught secreted**,
which shall not **lest it shall** be manifested;
neither was *any thing* **hath ought**
kept secret **become secreted**,
but that it should *come abroad* **become manifested**.
23 If any *man* **one** have ears to hear, let him hear.
24 And he said **worded** unto them,
Take heed **Observe** what ye hear:
with in what measure ye *mete* **measure**,
it shall be measured to you:
and unto you that hear shall *more* be given **added**.
25 For he that hath, to him shall be given:
and he that hath not,
from him shall be taken even that which he hath.

SPORE SEASON AND HARVEST

26 And he said **worded**, So **Even thus**
is the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**,
as if **whenever** a man **human**
should cast seed **spores** into the *ground* **soil**;
27 And should sleep, and rise night and day,
and the seed **spores** should *spring* **sprout** and grow up,
he knoweth not how.
28 For the earth *bringeth forth* **beareth** fruit
of herself **automatically**;
first the *blade* **herbage**, then the *ear* **kernel**,
after that the full *corn* **grain** in the *ear* **kernel**.
29 But when the fruit is *brought forth* **delivered**,
immediately **straightway**
he *putteth in* **apostolizeth** the sickle,
because the harvest is *come* **here**.

MARKOS 4

exeGes companion BIBLE

11 And he words to them,
You are given to know the mystery
of the sovereigndom of Elohim:
but to them outside,
all these become in parables:
12 that observing, they observe and perceive not;
and hearing, they hear and comprehend not
— lest ever they turn, and their sins be forgiven.

Yesha Yah 6:9, 10

THE PARABLE OF THE SPORER INTERPRETED

13 And he words to them,
Know you not this parable?
and, How then know you all parables?
14 The sporer spores the word:
15 And these are those by the way side
where the word is sowed;
but when they hear, Satan comes straightway,
and takes away the word spored in their hearts.
16 And likewise, these are they spored on rocky:
who, when they hear the word,
straightway take it with cheer;
and have no root in themselves,
and so endure temporarily:
so when tribulation or persecution become
because of the word,
straightway they scandalize.
17 And these are they spored among thorns;
such as hear the word:
and the anxieties of this eon
and the deceitfulness of riches
and the remaining pantings enter
and strangle the word;
and it becomes unfruitful.
18 And these are they spored on good soil:
such as hear the word, and receive, and bear fruit;
— one thirtyfold and one sixty and one a hundred.

THE PARABLE OF THE CANDLE

21 And he words to them,
Comes the candle to be put under a measure?
Or under a bed?
And not put on a menorah?
22 For naught is secreted, lest it become manifested;
and naught secreted, but to become manifested.
If anyone has ears to hear, hear!
23 And he words to them, Observe what you hear:
in what measure you measure, is measured to you:
and to you who hear is added:
for whoever has, is given:
and whoever has not, is taken even what he has.

SPORE SEASON AND HARVEST

26 And he words,
Even thus is the sovereigndom of Elohim,
as whenever a human casts spores into the soil;
and sleeps, and rises night and day,
and the spores sprout and grow, he knows not how:
for the earth bears fruit automatically:
first the herbage, then the kernel,
after that the full grain in the kernel.
27 and whenever the fruit is delivered,
straightway he apostolizes the sickle
because the harvest is here.

MARK 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE PARABLE OF THE MUSTARD KERNEL

30 And he *said* **worded**, Whereunto shall we liken
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**?
or with what *comparison* **parable**
shall we *compare it* **cast along side**?
31 It is like a *grain* **kernel** of mustard *seed*,
which, when it is *sown* **spored** in the earth,
is less than all the *seeds* **sperma** that be in the earth:
32 But when it is *sown* **spored**, it *groweth up* **ascendeth**,
and becometh greater than all herbs,
and *shooteth out great* **produceth more mega** branches;
so that the *fowls* **flyers** of the *air* **heaven**
may *lodge* **nest** under the shadow of it.

YAH SHUA EXPLAINS THE PARABLES

33 And with many such parables
spake he the word unto them,
exactly as they were able to hear it.
34 But *without* **apart from** a parable
spake he not unto them:
and when they were alone,
he *expounded* **explained** all *things* to his disciples.

YAH SHUA STILLS THE MEGA WHIRLWIND

35 And the same day,
when the even was come **being evening**,
he *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Let us pass *over* **through** unto the other side.
36 And when they had *sent away* **released** the multitude,
they took him even as he was in the *ship* **sailer**.
And there were also with him other *little ships* **skiffs**.
37 And there *arose* **became**
a *great storm of wind* **mega whirlwind**,
and the waves beat into the *ship* **sailer**,
so that it was *now* **already** full.
38 And he was in the *hinder part of the ship* **stern**,
asleep on a pillow:
and they *awake* **rouse** him, and *say* **word** unto him,
Master **Doctor**, *carest art* thou not **concerned**
that we *perish* **destruct**?
39 And he arose, and rebuked the wind,
and said unto the sea, *Peace* **Hush**, *be still* **muzzle**.
And the wind *ceased* **relaxed**,
and there *was a great* **became a mega** calm.
40 And he said unto them,
Why are ye *so fearful* **thus cowardly**?
how is it that ye have no *faith* **trust**?
41 And they *feared exceedingly* **awed a mega awe**,
and *said* **worded** one to another,
What manner of man **Who then** is this,
that even the wind and the sea obey him?

YAH SHUA EJECTS AN IMPURE SPIRIT OF DEMONS

5 And they came over unto the other side of the sea,
into the *country* **region** of the Gadarenes.
2 And when he was come out of the *ship* **sailer**,
immediately **straightway** there met him out of the tombs
a *man* **human** with an *unclean* **impure** spirit,
3 Who had his *dwelling* **settlement** among the tombs;
and no *man* **one** could bind him,
no, not *even* with *chains* **fetters**:
4 Because that he had been often bound
with *fetters* **shackles** and *chains* **fetters**,
and the *chains* **fetters**
had been *plucked asunder* **drawn apart** by him,
and the *fetters broken in pieces* **shackles shattered**:
neither could any *man* **one** tame him.
5 And *always* **continually**, night and day,
he was in the mountains, and in the tombs,
crying, and cutting himself with stones.
6 But when he saw *Jesus* **Yah Shua from** afar off,
he ran and worshipped him,
7 And cried with a *loud* **mega** voice, and said,
What have I to do with thee, *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
thou Son of the *most high* **God** **El Elyon**?
I *adjure* **oath** thee by *God* **Elohim**,
that thou *torment* **torture** me not.
8 For he *said* **worded** unto him,
Come out of the *man* **human**, thou *unclean* **impure** spirit.
9 And he asked him, What is thy name?

MARKOS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE PARABLE OF THE MUSTARD KERNEL

30 And he words,
Whereto liken we the sovereigndom of Elohim?
Or with what parable cast we along side?
31 As a kernel of mustard,
which, when it is spored in the earth,
is less than all the sperma on the earth:
32 and when it spores
it ascends and becomes greater than all herbs;
and produces more mega branches;
so that the flyers of the heavens
can nest under its shadow.

YAH SHUA EXPLAINS THE PARABLES

33 And with many such parables
he speaks the word to them
exactly as they are able to hear:
34 but he speaks not to them apart from a parable:
and when they are alone
he explains all to his disciples.

YAH SHUA STILLS THE MEGA WHIRLWIND

35 And the same day, being evening,
he words to them,
We pass through across.
36 And they release the multitude
and they take him even as he is in the sailer:
and there are also other skiffs with him:
37 and a mega whirlwind becomes
and the waves beat into the sailer
so that it is already full:
38 and he is in the stern, asleep on a pillow:
and they rouse him, and word to him,
Doctor, concern you not that we destruct?
39 And he rises, and rebukes the wind,
and says to the sea, Hush! Muzzle!
— and the wind relaxes and there is a mega calm.

40 And he says to them,
Why are you thus cowardly?
How is it you have no trust?

41 And they awe a mega awe,
and word to one another,
Who then is this,
that even the wind and the sea obey him?

YAH SHUA EJECTS AN IMPURE SPIRIT OF DEMONS

5 And they go across the sea
to the region of the Gadarenes;
and he comes from the sailer:
and straightway, from the tombs,
a human with an impure spirit meets him
who has his settlement among the tombs;
and no one can bind him
— no, not even with fetters:
because he was often bound
with shackles and fetters;
and he drew apart the fetters
and shattered the shackles;
and no one could tame him:
5 and continually, night and day,
he is in the mountains, and in the tombs,
crying, and cutting himself with stones.
6 And seeing Yah Shua from afar,
he runs and worships him;
7 and cries with a mega voice, and says,
What have I to do with you,
Yah Shua, you Son of El Elyon?
I oath you by Elohim, that you not torture me.
8 For he words to him,
Come from the human, you impure spirit.
9 And he asks him, What is your name?

MARK 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 And he answered, saying **wording**,
My name is Legion: for we are many.
And he besought him much
that he *would* **should** not *send* **apostolize** them away
out of the *country* **region**.

11 Now there was there nigh unto the mountains
a *great herd* **mega drove** of swine feeding.
12 And all the *devils* **demons** besought him,
saying **wording**,
Send us into the swine, that we may enter into them.

13 And *forthwith* **straightway**
Jesus gave **Yah Shua allowed** them *leave*.
And the *unclean* **impure** spirits went out,
and entered into the swine:
and the *herd* **drove** ran violently down a *steep place* **cliff**
into the sea,
(they were about two thousand;)
and were *choked* **strangled** in the sea.

14 And they that fed the swine fled,
and *told* **evangelized** it in the city,
and in the *country* **field**.
And they went *out* to see what it was
that *was done* **had become**.

15 And they come to *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
and see **observe** him
that was *possessed with the devil* **demonized**,
and had the legion,
sitting, and clothed, and *in his right mind* **sound minded**:
and they were *afraid* **awestricken**.

16 And they that saw it
told **declared** them how it *befell* **became** to him
that was *possessed with the devil* **demonized**,
and also concerning the swine.

17 And they began to *pray* **beseech** him
to depart out of their *coasts* **boundries**.

18 And when he *was come* **embarked** into the *ship* **sailer**,
he that had been *possessed with the devil* **demonized**
prayed **besought** him that he might be with him.

19 Howbeit *Jesus suffered* **Yah Shua allowed** him not,
but *saith* **wordeth** unto him, Go home to thy friends,
and *tell* **evangelize** them
how great things the Lord **as much as Adonay**
hath done for thee,
and hath *had compassion on* **merciéd** thee.

20 And he departed,
and began to *publish* **preach** in Decapolis
how great things Jesus **as much as Yah Shua**
had done for him:
and all *men* did marvel.

THE DAUGHTERLING OF YAIR IN HER FINAL EXTREMITY

21 And when *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
was passed over **through** again by *ship* **sailer**
unto the other side,
much people **vast multitudes** gathered unto him:
and he was nigh unto the sea.

22 And, behold, there cometh
one of the *rulers of the synagogue* **synagogue archs**,
Jairus **Yair** by name;
and when he saw him, he fell at his feet,
And besought him *greatly* **much**, *saying* **wording**,
My little daughter **daughterling**
lieth at the point of death **is in her final extremity**:
I pray thee, come and *lay* **put** thy hands on her,
that she may be *healed* **saved**; and she shall live.

24 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** went with him;
and *much people* **vast multitudes** followed him,
and thronged him.

YAH SHUA HEALS A FLUX

25 And a *certain* woman,
which had *an issue* **a flux** of blood twelve years,
26 And had suffered *many things* **much**
by many *physicians* **healers**,
and had spent all that she had,
and *was nothing bettered* **benefited naught**,
but rather grew worse,

27 When she had heard of *Jesus* **about Yah Shua**,
came in the *press* **multitude** behind,
and touched his garment.

28 For she *said* **worded**,

MARKOS 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

And he answers, wording,
My name is Legion: for we are many.
— and he beseeches him much
to not apostolize them from the region.

11 And near the mountains
a mega drove of swine is feeding:
12 and all the demons beseech him, wording,
Send us into the swine, to enter them.

13 And straightway Yah Shua allows them:
and the impure spirits go and enter the swine:
and the drove runs violently down a cliff into the sea
— about two thousand strangle in the sea.

14 And they who feed the swine flee,
and evangelize it in the city and in the field:
and they come to see what became:
15 and they come to Yah Shua,
and observe the demonized who had the legion
sitting and clothed and sound minded:
and they are awestricken.

16 And they who saw
declare how it became to the demoniac
and also concerning the swine:
17 and they begin to beseech him
to depart from their boundries.

18 And he embarks into the sailer:
and the demoniac beseeches to be with him:
19 and Yah Shua allows him not, but words to him,
Go home to your friends,
and evangelize them as much as Adonay did for you,
and merciéd you.
— and he departs
and begins to preach in Decapolis
as much as Yah Shua did for him:
and all marvel.

THE DAUGHTERLING OF YAIR IN HER FINAL EXTREMITY

21 And again by sailer, Yah Shua passes across:
and vast multitudes gather to him:
and he is near the sea.

22 And behold,
one of the synagogue archs comes — Yair by name;
and he sees him and falls at his feet
and beseeches him much, wording,
23 My daughterling is in her final extremity:
I pray you, come and put your hands on her,
to save her, and she lives.
24 — and Yah Shua goes with him;
and vast multitudes follow him and throng him.

YAH SHUA HEALS A FLUX

25 And a woman, having a flux of blood twelve years,
26 who suffered much by many healers
and spent all she had and benefited naught;
and rather grew worse:
27 she hears about Yah Shua;
and comes in the multitude behind
and touches his garment
— for she words,

MARK 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

29 If I may touch but his clothes, I shall be *whole saved*.
And straightway
the fountain of her blood was dried *up*;
and she *felt knew* in her body
that she was healed of that *plague scourge*.
30 And *Jesus immediately Yah Shua straightway*
knowing in himself
that *virtue dynamis* had gone out of him,
turned him about in the *press multitude*,
and *said worded*, Who touched my clothes?
31 And his disciples *said worded* unto him,
Thou seest *observest* the multitude thronging thee,
and *sayest wordest* thou, Who touched me?
32 And he looked round about
to see her that had done this *thing*.
33 But the woman *fearing awing* and trembling,
knowing what *was done became* in her,
came and *fell down before prostrated in front of* him,
and *told said to* him all the truth.
34 And he said unto her, Daughter,
thy *faith trust* hath *made saved* thee *whole*;
go in *peace shalom*, and be whole of thy *plague scourge*.
THE DAUGHTERLING OF YAIR RISES
35 While he yet spake,
there came
from the *ruler arch* of the *synagogue's house synagogue*
certain which said wording. Thy daughter is dead:
why *troublest harrassest* thou the *Master Doctor*
any further?
36 *As soon as Jesus Straightway when Yah Shua*
heard the word that was spoken,
he *saith wordeth* unto the *ruler arch* of the synagogue,
Be Awe not afraid, only believe trust.
37 And he *suffered allowed*
no *man one* to follow *with* him,
save Peter except Petros, and James Yaaqovos,
and *John Yahn* the brother of *James Yaaqovos*.
38 And he cometh to the house
of the *ruler arch* of the *synagogue synagogue*,
and *seeth observeth* the tumult,
and them that wept and *wailed greatly halooed much*.
39 And when he *was come in entered*,
he *saith wordeth* unto them,
Why make ye this *ado tumult*, and weep?
the *damsel child* is not dead, but sleepeth.
THE DAUGHTERLING OF YAIR LIVES
40 And they *laughed ridiculed* him *to scorn*.
But when he had *put cast* them all out,
he taketh the father and the mother of the *damsel child*,
and them that were with him,
and entereth *in*
where the *damsel was lying child reposed*.
41 And he *took overpowered* the *damsel child*
by the hand,
and *said wordeth* unto her, *Talitha cumi Taleh quwm*;
which is, being *interpreted translated*,
Damsel Maiden, I say word unto thee, arise.
42 And straightway the *damsel maiden* arose,
and walked;
for she was of the age of twelve years.
And they were *astonished astounded*
with a *great astonishment mega ecstasis*.
43 And he charged them *straitly much*
that no *man one* should know it;
and *commanded said*
that something should be given her to eat.
YAH SHUA DISHONOURED IN HIS FATHERLAND
6 And he went out from thence,
and came into his *own country fatherland*;
and his disciples follow him.
2 And when the *sabbath day shabbath*
was come became,
he began to *teach doctrinate* in the synagogue:
and many hearing him were astonished, *saying wording*,
From whence hath this man these things?
and what wisdom is this which is given unto him,
that even such *mighty works dynamis*
are *wrought become* by his hands?
3 Is not this the carpenter, the son of *Mary Miryam*,

MARKOS 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

If I even touch his clothes, I am saved.
29 — and straightway the fountain of her blood dries;
and she knows in her body that her scourge is healed.
30 And straightway, Yah Shua,
knowing in himself that dynamis goes from him,
turns around in the multitude,
and words, Who touched my clothes?
31 And his disciples word to him,
You observe the multitude thronging you;
and word you, Who touched me?
32 And he looks around to see her who did this:
33 and the woman, awing and trembling,
knowing what became in her,
comes and prostrates in front of him,
and says all the truth to him.
34 And he says to her, Daughter, your trust saves you;
go in shalom, and be whole of your scourge.
THE DAUGHTERLING OF YAIR RISES
35 While he yet speaks,
they of the arch of the synagogue, come wording,
Your daughter is dead:
Why harass the Doctor any further?
36 Straightway Yah Shua hears the word spoken,
and he words to the arch of the synagogue,
Awe not! Only trust!
37 — and he allows no one to follow with him
except Petros and Yaaqovos
and Yahn the brother of Yaaqovos:
38 and he comes to the house
of the arch of the synagogue;
and observes the tumult
and them who weep and haloo much.
39 And he enters and words to them,
Why make you this tumult, and weep?
The child is not dead, but sleeps.
40 — and they ridicule him.
THE DAUGHTERLING OF YAIR LIVES
And he casts them all out
and takes the father and the mother of the child
and those with him,
and enters where the child reposes:
41 and he overpowers the child by the hand,
and words to her, Taleh quwm;
which is, being translated,
Maiden, I word to you, Rise.
42 — and straightway the maiden rises and walks
— for she is of the age of twelve years.
And they are astounded with a mega ecstasis.
43 And he charges them much, that no one know it;
and says to give her somewhat to eat.
YAH SHUA DISHONOURED IN HIS FATHERLAND
6 And he goes from there,
and comes to his fatherland;
and his disciples follow him.
2 And so be it, shabbath;
and he begins to doctrinate in the synagogue.
And many hearing him are astonished,
wording, Whence has this one all these?
and, What wisdom is given him
that even such dynamis becomes by his hands?
3 Is not this the carpenter the son of Miryam

MARK 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the brother of *James Yaaqovos*, and *Joses Yoses*,
and of *Juda Yah Hudah*, and *Simon Shimon*?
and are not his sisters here with us?
And they were *offended scandalized* at him.
4 But *Jesus said Yah Shua worded* unto them,
A prophet is not *without honour dishonoured*,
but **except** in his *own country fatherland*,
and among his own kin, and in his own house.
5 And he could there do no *mighty work dynamis*,
save **except** that
he *laid put* his hands upon a few sick folk,
and *healed cured* them.
6 And he marvelled
because of their *unbelief trustlessness*.
And he went round about the villages,
teaching doctrinating.
THE TWELVE HAVE AUTHORITY OVER IMPURE SPIRITS
7 And he called unto him the twelve,
and began to *send apostolize* them *forth* by two and two;
and gave them *power authority* over *unclean impure* spirits;
8 And *commanded evangelized* them
that they should take *nothing naught* for their *journey way*,
save **except** a *staff rod* only;
no *scrip wallet*, no bread,
9 no *money copper* in their *purse girdle*:
But be *shod tied* with sandals;
and not *put on endue* two *coats tunics*.
10 And he *said worded* unto them,
In what place soever ye enter into an house,
there abide till ye depart from that place.
11 And *whosoever shall not*
as many as ever shall neither receive you,
nor hear you,
when ye depart thence, shake off the dust under your feet
for a *testimony witness* against them.
Verily I say Amen! I word unto you,
It shall be more tolerable
for *Sodom Sedom* and *Gomorrha Amarah*
in the day of judgment,
than for that city.
12 And they went *out*,
and preached that men should repent.
13 And they cast out many *devils demons*,
and anointed with *olive* oil many that were sick,
and *healed cured* them.
HEROD FEARS YAHN THE BAPTIZER
14 And *king sovereign* Herod heard of him;
(for his name was **became** spread *abroad manifestly*);
and he *said worded*,
That *John Yahn* the *Baptist Baptizer*
was risen from the dead,
and *therefore because of this*
mighty works dynamis
do shew forth themselves energizeth in him.
15 Others *said worded*, That it is *Elias Eli Yah*.
And others *said worded*, That it is a prophet,
or as one of the prophets.
16 But when Herod heard thereof, he said,
It **He** is *John Yahn*, whom I beheaded:
he is risen from the dead.
17 For Herod himself had *sent forth apostolized*
and *laid hold upon John overpowered Yahn*,
and bound him in *prison the guardhouse*
for Herodias' sake,
his brother *Philip's wife Philippos' woman*:
for he had married her.
18 For *John Yahn* had *said worded* unto Herod,
It is not *lawful allowed* for thee
to have thy brother's *wife woman*.
19 *Therefore But*
Herodias had a *quarrel against begrudged* him,
and *would willed to have killed slaughtered* him;
but she could not:
20 For Herod *feared John awed Yahn*,
knowing that he was a just man and an holy,
and *observed guarded* him;
and when he heard him, he did *many things much*,
and heard him *gladly with pleasure*.

MARKOS 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and brother of Yaaqovos and Yoses
and Yah Hudah and Shimon?
and, Are not his sisters here with us?
— and they are scandalized at him.
4 But Yah Shua words to them,
A prophet is not dishonored except in his fatherland
and among his own kin and in his own house.
5 — and he can do no dynamis there;
except he puts his hands upon a few sick folk
and cures them:
6 and he marvels because of their trustlessness.
— and he goes doctrinating around the villages.
THE TWELVE HAVE AUTHORITY OVER IMPURE SPIRITS
7 And he calls the twelve to him
and begins to apostolize them two by two;
and gives them authority over impure spirits;
8 and evangelizes them to take naught for their way
except only a rod
— no wallet, no bread, no copper in their girdle:
9 but tie on sandals; and not endue two tunics.
10 And he words to them,
Wherever you enter a house,
abide there until you depart:
and as many as ever
11 neither receive you nor hear you,
when you depart, shake off the dust under your feet
for a witness against them.
Amen! I word to you,
It is more tolerable in the day of judgment,
for Sedom and Amarah than for that city.
12 And they go and preach for men to repent:
13 and they cast out many demons
and anoint many sick with olive oil and cure them.
HEROD FEARS YAHN THE BAPTIZER
14 And sovereign Herod hears of him;
— for his name is spread manifestly:
and he words,
Yahn the Baptizer rises from the dead
and because of this dynamis energizes in him.
15 Others word, He is Eli Yah.
And others word, He is a prophet.
Or, As one of the prophets.
16 And Herod hears thereof, and says,
He is Yahn, whom I beheaded:
he rose from the dead.
17 — for Herod himself had apostolized
and overpowered Yahn,
and bound him in the guardhouse
for sake of Herodias
the woman of his brother Philippos
— because he had married her.
18 — for Yahn had worded to Herod,
You are not allowed
to have the woman of your brother.
19 — but Herodias begrudged him
and willed to slaughter him;
but she could not:
20 for Herod awed Yahn,
knowing he was a just and holy man;
and guarded him;
and he heard him and did much;
and heard him with pleasure.

MARK 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE BIRTHDAY SUPPER OF HEROD

21 And when a *convenient* an **opportune** day
was come **became**,
that Herod on his birthday
made **prepared** a supper to his *lords* **magistrates**,
high captains **chiliarchs**,
and *chief estates* **preeminent** of *Galilee* **Galiyl**;
22 And when the daughter of the said Herodias
came in **entered**, and danced,
and pleased Herod and them that *sat* **reposed** with him,
the *king* **sovereign** said unto the *damsel* **maiden**,
Ask of me whatsoever thou *wilt* **willest**,
and I *will* **shall** give it thee.
23 And he *sware* **oathed** unto her,
Whatsoever thou shalt ask of me, I *will* **shall** give it thee,
unto the half of my *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
24 And she went *forth*, and said unto her mother,
What shall I ask?
And she said,
The head of *John* **Yahn** the *Baptist* **Baptizer**.
25 And she came in **entered** straightway
with *haste* **diligence**
unto the *king* **sovereign** and asked, *saying* **wording**,
I will that thou give me
by and by in **immediately** on a *charger* **platter**
the head of *John* **Yahn** the *Baptist* **Baptizer**.
26 And the *king* **sovereign**
was exceeding *sorry* **became extremely sorrowful**;
yet for his oath's sake,
and for their sakes which *sat* **reposed** with him,
he *would* **willed** to not *reject her* **set her aside**.
27 **HEROD HAS YAHN THE BAPTIZER BEHEADED**
And *immediately* **straightway**
the *king* **sovereign**
sent an executioner **apostolized a speculator**,
and *commanded* **ordered** his head to be brought:
and he went
and beheaded him in the *prison* **guardhouse**,
28 And brought his head in **on a charger platter**,
and gave it to the *damsel* **maiden**:
and the *damsel* **maiden** gave it to her mother.
29 And when his disciples heard of it,
they came and took up his *corpse* **carcase**,
and *laid* **placed** it in a tomb.
30 **APOSTLES EVANGELIZE TO YAH SHUA**
And the apostles
gathered themselves together unto *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
and *told* **evangelized** him all *things*,
both *what as much as* they had done,
and *what as much as* they had *taught* **doctrinated**.
31 And he said unto them,
Come ye yourselves apart into a *desert* **desolate** place,
and rest a *while* **little**:
for there were many coming and going,
and they had no *leisure* **opportunity** so much as to eat.
32 And they departed into a *desert* **desolate** place
by *ship* **sailer** privately.
33 And the *people* **multitude** saw them *departing* **going**,
and many knew him,
and *ran afoot* **crushed together** thither out of all cities,
and *outwent* **preceded** them,
and came together unto him.
34 **YAH SHUA FEEDS FIVE THOUSAND**
And *Jesus* **Yah Shua**, when he came out,
saw *much* **people** **vast multitudes**,
and was moved with *compassion* **had a sympathetic spleen**
toward them,
because they were as sheep not having a shepherd:
and he began
to *teach* **doctrinate** them *many things* **much**.
35 And when the *day* **hour**
was now *far* **became already much** spent,
his disciples came unto him, and *said* **worded**,
This is a *desert* **desolate** place,
and now **already** the *time* **hour** is *far* **passed much**:
36 Send **Release** them away, that they may go
into the *country* **round about surrounding fields**,
and into the villages, and *buy* **market** themselves bread:
for they have *nothing* **naught** to eat.

MARKOS 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE BIRTHDAY SUPPER OF HEROD

21 And so be it, an opportune day:
and on his birthday
Herod prepares a supper to his magistrates,
chiliarchs and preeminent of *Galiyl*:
22 and the daughter of Herodias enters and dances;
and pleases Herod and those who repose with him.
And the sovereign says to the maiden,
Ask of me whatever you will, and I give you.
23 — and he oaths to her,
Whatever you ask of me,
I give You, to the half of my sovereigndom.
24 And she goes, and says to her mother, What ask I?
And she says, The head of Yahn the Baptizer.
25 And straightway she enters with diligence
to the sovereign and asks, wording,
I will that you give me, immediately on a platter,
the head of Yahn the Baptizer.
26 And the sovereign becomes extremely sorrowful;
yet for sake of his oath,
and for the sakes of them who repose with him,
he wills to not set her aside.
27 **HEROD HAS YAHN THE BAPTIZER BEHEADED**
And straightway
the sovereign apostolizes a speculator
and orders him to bring his head:
and he goes and beheads him in the guardhouse;
28 and brings his head on a platter
and gives it to the maiden:
and the maiden gives it to her mother:
29 and his disciples hear thereof
and come and take his carcase and place it in a tomb.
30 **APOSTLES EVANGELIZE TO YAH SHUA**
And the apostles gather together to Yah Shua
and evangelize all to him
— both as much as they do
and as much as they doctriinate.
31 And he says to them,
Come apart into a desolate place and rest a little.
— for many come and go
and they have no opportunity so much as to eat.
32 And they depart to a desolate place
by sailer privately;
33 and the multitude sees them go,
and many know him,
and crush together there from all cities,
and precede them and come together to him.
34 **YAH SHUA FEEDS FIVE THOUSAND**
And Yah Shua comes and sees vast multitudes;
and has a sympathetic spleen toward them
because they are as sheep not having a shepherd:
and he begins to doctriinate them much.
35 And already the hour being much
and his disciples come to him, and word,
This is a desolate place,
and already the hour is much:
36 release them to go
to the surrounding fields and to the villages
to market bread for themselves;
for they have naught to eat.

MARK 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

37 He answered and said unto them, Give ye them to eat.
And they say **word** unto him,
shall we go and **buy market**
two hundred **pennyworth denarion** of bread,
and give them to eat?
38 He saith **wordeth** unto them,
How many **loaves breads** have ye? go and see.
And when they knew, they say **word**,
Five, and two fishes.
39 And he **commanded ordered** them
to make all **sit down recline**
by companies symposium by symposium
upon the green **grass herbage**.
40 And they **sat down in ranks reposed row by row**,
by hundreds, and by fifties.
41 And when he had taken
the five **loaves breads** and the two fishes,
he looked **up** to the heaven,
and **blessed eulogized**, and brake the **loaves breads**,
and gave them to his disciples to set **before by** them;
and the two fishes divided he among them all.
42 And they did all eat, and were **filled fed**.
43 And they took **up** twelve baskets full of the fragments,
and of the fishes.
44 And they that did eat of the **loaves breads**
were about five thousand men.

YAH SHUA WALKS ON THE SEA

45 And straightway
he **constrained compelled** his disciples
to **get embark** into the **ship sailer**,
and to go to the other side
before preceding unto **Bethsaida Beth Sayad**,
while he **sent away released** the **people multitudes**.
46 And when he had **sent bid** them away **farewell**,
he departed into a mountain to pray.
47 And **when even was come being evening**,
the **ship sailer** was in the midst of the sea,
and he alone on the land.
48 And he saw them **toiling torturing** in rowing;
for the wind was contrary unto them:
and about the fourth **watch guard** of the night
he cometh unto them, walking upon the sea,
and **would willed to** have passed by them.
49 But when they saw him walking upon the sea,
they **supposed thought** it had been a **spirit** it **phantasm**,
and **cried out screamed**:
50 For they all saw him, and were troubled.
And **immediately straightway** he **talked spoke** with them,
and **saith wordeth** unto them,
Be of good cheer: it is I; Courage! I AM!
be not afraid Awe not.
51 And he **went up ascended** unto them
into the **ship sailer**;
and the wind **ceased relaxed**:
and they were **sore amazed astounded** in themselves
beyond measure very superabundantly,
and **wondered marvelled**.
52 For they **considered comprehended** not
the **miracle of the loaves about the breads**:
for their heart was **hardened petrified**.

YAH SHUA SAVES AT KINNORETH

53 And when they had passed over,
they came into the land of **Gennesaret Kinneroth**,
and **drew to the shore moored**.
54 And when they were come out of the **ship sailer**,
straightway they knew him,
55 And ran through that whole region round about,
and began to carry about in **beds pads**
those that were **sick ill**,
where they heard he was.
56 And whithersoever he entered,
into villages, or cities, or **country fields**,
they **laid placed** the **sick frail** in the **streets markets**,
and besought him that they might touch
if it were but the **border edge** of his garment:
and as many as touched him were **made whole ever saved**.

MARKOS 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

37 He answers them, saying, You give them to eat.
And they word to him,
Go we and market two hundred denarion of bread
and give them to eat?
38 He words to them,
How many breads have you? Go and see!
And knowing, they word, Five; and two fishes.
39 And he orders them all to recline
symposium by symposium on the green herbage:
and they repose row by row
— by hundreds and by fifties.
41 And he takes the five breads and the two fishes,
looks to the heavens and eulogizes,
and breaks the breads
and gives them to his disciples to set by them;
and he divides the two fishes among them all:
and they all eat and are fed:
42 and they take twelve baskets full
of the fragments and of the fishes:
43 and they who eat of the breads
are about five thousand men.

YAH SHUA WALKS ON THE SEA

45 And straightway
he compels his disciples to embark into the sailer
and to precede across to Beth Sayad,
until he releases the multitudes:
and he bids them farewell
and departs to a mountain to pray:
46 and being evening,
47 and the sailer is midst the sea
and he is alone on the land:
48 and he sees them tortured in rowing;
for the wind is contrary to them:
and at about the fourth guard of the night,
he comes to them, walking upon the sea,
and wills to pass by them:
49 and they see him walking on the sea
and think it is a phantasm, and they scream:
50 for they all see him and are troubled.
And straightway he speaks with them,
and words to them,
Courage! I AM! Awe not!
51 — and he ascends to them into the sailer;
and the wind relaxes:
and they are very superabundantly
astounded in themselves and marvel:
52 for they comprehended not about the breads:
for their heart is petrified.

YAH SHUA SAVES AT KINNORETH

53 And they pass over
and come to the land of Kinneroth,
and moore there:
54 and as they come from the sailer
straightway they know him;
55 and run all around that whole region all around,
and begin to carry the ill around in pads
to wherever they hear he is:
56 and wherever he enters
— villages or cities or fields
they place the frail in the markets
and beseech him
if only to touch the edge of his garment:
and as many as touch him are ever saved.

MARK 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

YAH SHUA ADMONISHES THE PHARISEES

7 Then came **gathered** together unto him the Pharisees,
and *certain* **some** of the scribes,
which came from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

2 And when they saw some of his disciples eat bread
with *defiled* **profane**,
that is *to say*, with unwashen hands,
they found fault.

3 For the Pharisees, and all the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**,
except **unless** they wash their hands *oft to the fist*,
eat not, *holding* **empowering** the tradition of the elders.

4 And when they come from the market,
except **unless** they wash **baptize**, they eat not.
And many other *things* there be,
which they have received to *hold* **empower**,
as the *washing* **baptism** of cups, and pots,
brasen vessels **copperware**, and of *tables* **beds**.

5 Then the Pharisees and scribes asked him,
Why walk not thy disciples
according to the tradition of the elders,
but eat bread with unwashen hands?

6 He answered and said unto them,
Well hath *Esaias* **Yesha Yah** prophesied
of **concerning** you hypocrites,
as it is *written* **scribed**,
This people honoureth me with their lips,
but their heart is far from me.

7 Howbeit in vain do they *worship* **venerate** me,
teaching **doctrinating** for doctrines
the *commandments* **misvoth** of *men* **humanity**.

Yesha Yah 29:13

8 For *laying aside* **forsaking**
the *commandment* **misvoth** of *God* **Elohim**,
ye hold **empower** the tradition of *men* **humanity**,
as the *washing* **baptism** of pots and cups:
and many other such like *things* ye do.

9 And he *said* **worded** unto them,
Full well ye *reject* **set aside**
the *commandment* **misvah** of *God* **Elohim**,
that ye may *keep* **guard** your own tradition.

10 For *Moses* **Mosheh** said,
Honour thy father and thy mother;
and, *Whoso* **curseth** **vilifieth** father or mother,
let him die the death:
Exodus 20:12, 21:17, Leviticus 20:9

11 But ye *say* **word**,
if whenever a *man* **human** shall say to his father or mother,
It is **Corban** **Qurban**,
that is to say **which is**, a *gift* **Oblation**,
by whatsoever thou mightest be *profited* **benefited** by me;
he shall be free.

12 And ye *suffer* **allow** him no more
to do ought for his father or his mother;

13 *Making* **Invalidating** the word of *God* **Elohim**
of none effect
through your tradition, which ye have *delivered* **betrayed**:
and many such like *things* do ye.

ENTERING IN VS PROCEEDING OUT

14 And when he had called all the *people* **multitude**
unto him, he *said* **worded** unto them,
Hearken unto me every *one* **all** of you,
and *understand* **comprehend**:

15 There is *nothing* **naught** from without a *man* **human**,
that entering into him can *defile* **profane** him:
but *the things* **those** which *come* **proceed** out of him,
those are they that *defile* **profane** the *man* **human**.

16 If any *man* **one** have ears to hear, let him hear.

17 And when he was entered into the house
from the *people* **multitude**,
his disciples asked him concerning the parable.

18 And he *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Are ye so **thus**
without understanding **uncomprehending** also?
Do ye not *perceive* **comprehend**,
that *whatsoever thing* **all that** from without
entereth **into** the *man* **human**,
it cannot *defile* **profane** him;

MARKOS 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

YAH SHUA ADMONISHES THE PHARISEES

7 And the Pharisees and some of the scribes
come from *Yeru Shalem*
and gather together to him:

2 and they see some of his disciples eat bread
with profane, that is, unwashed hands,
and they find fault:

3 for the Pharisees and all the *Yah Hudiym* eat not
unless they wash their hands to the fist;
thus empowering the tradition of the elders:

4 and coming from the market,
eat not unless they baptize:
and there be many others
— as the baptism of cups and pots
and copperware and beds.

5 Then the Pharisees and scribes ask him,
Why walk not your disciples
according to the tradition of the elders
— but eat bread with unwashed hands?

6 He answers them, saying,
Well prophesied *Yesha Yah*
concerning you hypocrites;
as scribed, This people honor me with their lips
but their heart is far from me;
and in vain they venerate me
doctrinating for doctrines the misvoth of humanity.

Yesha Yah 29:13

8 For, forsaking the misvoth of *Elohim*
you empower the tradition of humanity
— as the baptism of pots and cups
and you do many others like such.

9 And he words to them,
You full well set aside the misvah of *Elohim*
to guard your own tradition:
for *Mosheh* said,
Honor your father and your mother;
and, *Whoever* vilifies father or mother,
dies the death.
Exodus 20:12, 21:17, Leviticus 20:9

11 But you word,
Whenever a human says to his father or mother,
Qurban! which is, Oblation,
by whatever you benefit;
and you allow him no more
to do aught for his father or his mother;
invalidating the word of *Elohim*
through your tradition — which you betray:
and you do many like such.

ENTERING IN VS PROCEEDING OUT

14 And he calls all the multitude and words to them,
Hearken to me, all of you, and comprehend:
naught entering a human from outside,
can profane him:
but those that proceed from him
— these are those that profane the human.

16 If anyone has ears to hear, Hear.

17 And he enters the house from the multitude;
and his disciples ask him concerning the parable:
and he words to them,
Are you also thus uncomprehending?
Comprehend you not
that all that enters the human from outside
cannot profane him;

MARK 7, 8

exeGes ready research BIBLE

19 Because it entereth not into his heart,
but into the belly,
and goeth out **proceedeth** into the draught **privy**,
purging **purifying** all **meats food**?
20 And he said **worded**,
That which *cometh* **departeth** out of the *man* **human**,
that *defileth* **profaneth** the *man* **human**.
21 For from within, out of the heart of *men* **humanity**,
proceed evil thoughts, adulteries,
fornications **whoredoms**, murders,
22 Thefts, *covetousness* **avarices**,
wickedness **evils**, deceit, lasciviousness,
an evil eye **maliciousness**, blasphemy,
pride, *foolishness* **thoughtlessness**:
23 All these *evil things* **maliciousnesses**
come **proceed** from within,
and *defile* **profane** the *man* **human**.

YAH SHUA CASTS OUT A DEMON

24 And from thence he arose,
and went into the borders of Tyre **Sor** and Sidon,
and entered into an house,
and *would have* **willed that** no *man* **one** know it:
but he could not be hid.
25 For a *certain* woman,
whose *young daughter* **daughterling**
had an *unclean* **impure** spirit,
heard of **concerning** him,
and came and *fell* **prostrated** at his feet:
26 The woman was a *Greek* **Hellenist**,
a *Syrophenician* **Syrophoinissian** by *nation* **genos**;
and she *besought* **asked** him
that he *would* **should** cast forth the *devil* **demon**
out of her daughter.
27 But *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto her,
Let **Allow** the children first be *filled* **fed**:
for it is not *meet* **good** to take the children's bread,
and to cast it unto the *dogs* **puppies**.
28 And she answered and *said* **worded** unto him,
Yes, *Lord* **Adonay**:
yet **indeed** the *dogs* **puppies** under the table
eat of the children's crumbs.
29 And he said unto her, For this *saying* **word** go thy way;
the *devil* **demon** is gone out of thy daughter.
30 And when she was come to her house,
she found the *devil* **demon** gone out,
and her daughter *laid* **put** upon the bed.
31 And again, departing from the *coasts* **boundries**
of Tyre **Sor** and Sidon,
he came unto the sea of *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
through the midst of the *coasts* **boundries** of Decapolis.

YAH SHUA HEALS A TONGUE—TIED MUTE

32 And they bring unto him one that was *deaf* **mute**,
and *had an impediment in his speech* **could hardly speak**;
and they beseech him to put his hand upon him.
33 And he took him *aside* from the multitude,
and put his fingers into his ears,
and he spit, and touched his tongue;
34 And looking *up* to the heaven, he sighed,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto him, Ephphatha,
that is, Be opened.
35 And straightway his ears were opened,
and the *string* **bond** of his tongue was *loosed* **released**,
and he spake *plain* **straightforwardly**.
36 And he charged them
that they should *tell no man* **say to no one**:
but *the more* **as much as** he charged them,
so much the more *a great deal* **superabundantly**
they *published it* **preached**;
37 And were
beyond measure **superabundantly** astonished,
saying **wording**, He hath done all *things* well:
he maketh both the *deaf* **mute** to hear,
and the *dumb* **speechless** to speak.

YAH SHUA FEEDS FOUR THOUSAND

8 In those days the multitude being very great,
and having *nothing* **naught** to eat,
Jesus **Yah Shua** called his disciples unto him,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto them,

MARKOS 7, 8

exeGes companion BIBLE

19 because it enters not his heart
but the belly;
and proceeds into the privy purifying all food?
20 And he words,
That which departs from the human,
profanes the human.
21 For from within, from the heart of humanity,
proceed evil thoughts,
adulteries, whoredoms, murders,
22 thefts, avarices, evils, deceit, lasciviousness,
maliciousness, blasphemy, pride, thoughtlessness:
23 all these maliciousnesses proceed from within
and profane the human.

YAH SHUA CASTS OUT A DEMON

24 And from there he rises
and goes to the borders of Sor and Sidon,
and enters a house, and wills that no one know:
but they cannot hide him.
25 For a woman,
whose daughterling has an impure spirit
hears concerning him,
and comes and prostrates at his feet:
26 the woman is a Hellenist,
a Syrophoinissian by genos;
and she asks him to cast the demon
from her daughter.
27 But Yah Shua says to her,
First allow the children be fed:
for it is not good to take the bread of children,
and to cast it to the puppies.
28 And she answers him, wording,
Yes, Adonay:
yet indeed the puppies under the table
eat the crumbs of the children.
29 And he says to her, For this word go your way;
the demon is gone from your daughter.
30 — and she goes to her house
and finds the demon gone
and her daughter put upon the bed.
31 And again,
he departs from the boundries of Sor and Sidon,
and goes to the sea of Galiyl,
midst the boundries of Decapolis.

YAH SHUA HEALS A TONGUE—TIED MUTE

32 And they bring him a mute who can hardly speak;
and they beseech him to put his hand on him:
33 and he takes him from the multitude
and puts his fingers into his ears
and he spits and touches his tongue;
34 and looks to the heavens and sighs,
and words to him, Ephphatha — which is, Open!
35 And straightway his ears open
and the bond of his tongue releases
and he speaks straightforwardly.
36 And he charges them to say to no one:
but as much as he charges them,
so much the more superabundantly they preach;
37 and are superabundantly astonished,
wording, He does all well:
he makes both the mute to hear
and the speechless to speak.

YAH SHUA FEEDS FOUR THOUSAND

8 In those days, the multitude being very great,
and having naught to eat,
Yah Shua calls his disciples and words to them,

MARK 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 I have *compassion* a **sympathetic spleen**
on the multitude,
because
they have *now been* **already abode** with me three days,
and have *nothing* **naught** to eat:
3 And *if* **whenever** I *send* **release** them away fasting
to their own houses,
they *will* **shall** faint by the way:
for *divers* **some** of them came from far.
4 And his disciples answered him,
From whence can a *man* **satisfy anyone fill** these men
with bread here in the wilderness?
5 And he asked them, How many *loaves* **bread**s have ye?
And they said, Seven.
6 And he *commanded* **evangelized** the *people* **multitude**
to *sit down* **repose** on the *ground* **soil**:
and he took the seven *loaves* **bread**s,
and *gave thanks* **eucharistized** and brake,
and gave to his disciples to set *before* **by** them;
and they did set them
before **to** the *people* **multitude**.
7 And they had a few small fishes:
and he *blessed* **eulogized**,
and *commanded* **said** to set them also *before* **them**.
8 So they did eat, and were *filled* **fed**:
and they took *up* of the
broken meat that was left **superabundant fragments**,
seven baskets.
9 And they that had eaten were about four thousand:
and he *sent* **released** them away.
10 And straightway
he *entered* **embarked** into a *ship* **sailer**
with his disciples,
and came into the parts of Dalmanutha.
THE PHARISEES SEEK A SIGN
11 And the Pharisees came *forth*,
and began to *question* **dispute** with him,
seeking of him a sign from **the** heaven,
tempting **testing** him.
12 And he sighed deeply in his spirit, and *saith* **wordeth**,
Why doth this generation seek after a sign?
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
There shall no sign be given unto this generation.
YAH SHUA INTERPRETS THE PARABLE OF FERMENTATION
13 And he *left* **released** them,
and *entering* **embarking** into the *ship* **sailer** again
departed to the other side.
14 Now the disciples had forgotten to take bread,
neither had they in the *ship* **sailer** with them
more than **except** one *loaf* **bead**.
15 And he charged them, *saying* **wording**, *Take heed* **See**,
beware **observe** of the *leaven* **fermentation**
of the Pharisees,
and of the *leaven* **fermentation** of Herod.
16 And they reasoned among *themselves* **one another**,
saying **wording**, because we have no bread.
17 And when *Jesus* **Yah Shua** knew it,
he *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Why reason ye, because ye have no bread?
perceive ye not yet,
neither *understand* **comprehend**?
have ye your heart yet *hardened* **petrified**?
18 Having eyes, *see* **observe** ye not?
and having ears, hear ye not? and do ye not remember?
19 When I brake the five *loaves* **bread**s
among five thousand,
how many baskets full of fragments took ye *up*?
They say **word** unto him, Twelve.
20 And when the seven among four thousand,
how many baskets full of fragments took ye *up*?
And they said, Seven.
21 And he *said* **worded** unto them,
How is it that ye do not *understand* **comprehend**?

MARKOS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 I have a sympathetic spleen on the multitude
because they already abide with me three days
and have naught to eat:
3 and whenever I release them to their own houses fasting
they faint by the way:
for some of them come from afar.
4 And his disciples answer him,
Whence can anyone fill these men with bread
here in the wilderness?
5 And he asks them, How many breads have you?
And they say, Seven.
6 And he evangelizes the multitude
to repose on the soil:
and he takes the seven breads
and eucharistizes and breaks
and gives to his disciples to set by them;
and they set them to the multitude.
7 And they have a few small fishes:
and he eulogizes, and says to set them also:
so they eat, and are fed:
and they take seven baskets
of the superabundant fragments:
and they who eat are about four thousand:
and he releases them.
10 And straightway
he embarks in a sailer with his disciples,
and goes to the parts of Dalmanutha.
THE PHARISEES SEEK A SIGN
11 And the Pharisees come
and begin to dispute with him,
seeking a sign from the heavens — testing him.
12 And he sighs deeply in his spirit, and words,
Why seeks this generation after a sign?
Amen! I word to you,
no sign is given this generation.
YAH SHUA INTERPRETS THE PARABLE OF FERMENTATION
13 And he releases them,
and embarks in the sailer again
and departs across:
14 and the disciples forget to take bread,
and they have none in the sailer with them
except one bead.
15 And he charges them, wording, See!
observe the fermentation of the Pharisees
and the fermentation of Herod.
16 And they reason among one another,
wording, Because we have no bread.
17 And Yah Shua knows, and words to them,
Why reason you, because you have no bread?
Perceive you not yet? Comprehend you not?
Petrify you still your heart?
18 Having eyes, observe you not?
And having ears, hear you not?
And remember you not,
19 when I broke the five breads among five thousand,
how many baskets full of fragments took you?
They word to him, Twelve.
20 And the seven among four thousand,
how many baskets full of fragments took you?
And they say, Seven.
21 And he words to them,
How is it that you comprehend not?

MARK 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH SHUA HEALS A BLIND

22 And he cometh to *Bethsaida* **Beth Sayad**;
and they bring a blind *man* unto him,
and besought him to touch him.
23 And he took the blind *man* by the hand,
and led him out of the *town* **village**;
and when he had spit on his eyes,
and put his hands upon him,
he asked him if he *saw ought* **observed anyone**.
24 And he looked *up*, and *said* **worded**,
I see *men* **observe humans** as trees, walking.
25 After that **Then** he put his hands again upon his eyes,
and made him look *up*: and he was restored,
and *saw every man* **looked at everyone** clearly.
26 And he *sent* **apostolized** him away to his house,
saying **wording**, Neither *go into* **enter the town village**,
nor *tell say* it to any in the *town* **village**.

THE WITNESS OF PETROS CONCERNING YAH SHUA

27 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** went *out*, and his disciples,
into the *towns* **villages**
of *Caesarea Philippi* **Kaisaria Philippos**:
and *by on* the way he asked his disciples,
saying **wording** unto them,
Whom do *men say that I am* **humanity speak me to be**?
28 And they answered, *John Yahn* the *Baptist* **Baptizer**;
but *some others* say, *Elias* **Eli Yah**;
and others, One of the prophets.
29 And he *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
But whom *say ye that I am* **word ye me to be**?
And *Peter* **Petros** answereth and *saith* **wordeth** unto him,
Thou art the *Christ* **Messiah**.
30 And he *charged* **admonished** them
that they should *tell word* no *man of one* about him.

YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION

31 And he began to *teach* **doctrinate** them,
that the Son of *man* **humanity** must suffer *many things* **much**,
and be *rejected* **disapproved** of the elders,
and of the *chief priests*, **archpriests** and scribes,
and be *killed* **slaughtered**, and after three days rise again.
32 And he spake that *saying openly* **word boldly**.
And *Peter* **Petros** took him, and began to rebuke him.
33 But when he had turned about
and *looked on* **saw** his disciples,
he rebuked *Peter* **Petros**, saying **wording**,
Get thee behind me, Satan:
for thou *savourest* **mindest** not
the *things* **those** that be of *God* **Elohim**,
but the *things* **those** that be of *men* **humanity**.

LOSING THE SOUL TO SAVE THE SOUL

34 And when he had called the *people* **multitude**
unto him with his disciples also, he said unto them,
Whosoever come after me, let him deny himself,
and take *up* his *cross* **stake**, and follow me.
35 For whosoever *will* **willeth to** save his *life* **soul**
shall lose it;
but whosoever shall lose his *life* **soul** for my sake
and the *gospel's* **evangelism's**,
the **this** same shall save it.
36 For what shall it *profit* **benefit** a *man* **human**,
if **whenever** he shall gain the whole *world* **cosmos**,
and lose his own soul?
37 Or what shall a *man* **human** give
in exchange for his soul?
38 Whosoever *therefore* **indeed**
shall be *ashamed* **shame** of me and of my words
in this adulterous and sinful generation;
of him also shall the Son of *man* be *ashamed* **humanity shame**,
when he cometh
in the glory of his Father with the holy angels.

THE METAMORPHOSIS OF YAH SHUA

9 And he *said* **worded** unto them,
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
That there be some of them that stand here,
which shall not taste of death,

MARKOS 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH SHUA HEALS A BLIND

22 And he goes to Beth Sayad;
and they bring him someone blind
and beseech him to touch him:
23 and he takes the blind by the hand
and leads him from the village;
and he spits on his eyes and puts his hands on him,
and he asks him if he observes anyone.
24 And he looks, and words,
I observe humans as trees, walking.
25 Then again he puts his hands on his eyes,
and has him look:
and he is restored, and looks at everyone clearly:
26 and he apostolizes him to his house,
wording, Neither enter the village,
nor say it to any in the village.

THE WITNESS OF PETROS CONCERNING YAH SHUA

27 And Yah Shua and his disciples
go to the villages of Kaisaria, Philippos:
and on the way he asks his disciples,
wording to them,
Whom do humanity speak me to be?
28 And they answer, Yahn the Baptizer;
and others say, Eli Yah;
but others, One of the prophets.
29 And he words to them,
And You, whom word you me to be?

And Petros answers him, wording,
You are the Messiah!
— and he admonishes them
to word to no one about him.

YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION

31 And he begins to doctrinate them
that the Son of humanity must suffer much;
and be disapproved of the elders
and of the archpriests and scribes;
and be slaughtered
and after three days rise:
32 and he speaks that word boldly.
— and Petros takes him and begins to rebuke him.
33 But he turns around and sees his disciples
and he rebukes Petros, wording,
Get behind me, Satan:
for you mind not those of Elohim,
but those of humanity.

LOSING THE SOUL TO SAVE THE SOUL

34 And he calls the multitude with his disciples
and says to them,
Whoever comes after me
denies himself and takes his stake and follows me.
35 For whoever wills to save his soul,
loses it;
but whoever loses his soul
because of me and the evangelism,
saves it.
36 For what is a human benefited
whenever he gains the whole cosmos
and loses his own soul?
37 Or what gives a human in exchange for his soul?
38 Whoever indeed
shames of me and of my words
in this adulterous and sinful generation;
of him also the Son of humanity shames
when he comes in the glory of his Father
with the holy angels.

THE METAMORPHOSIS OF YAH SHUA

9 And he words to them,
Amen! I word to you,
some of those standing here taste not of death

MARK 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

till they have seen
the kingdom **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**
come with power in **dynamis**.
2 And after six days **Jesus Yah Shua** taketh with him
Peter Petros, and **James Yaaqovos**, and **John Yahn**,
and **leadeth bringeth** them up into an high mountain
apart by themselves **alone**:
and he was **transfigured metamorphosed**
before in front of them.
3 And his raiment became **shining gleaming**,
exceeding **very** white as snow;
so as no fuller on earth can white them.
4 And there appeared unto them
Elias Eli Yah with **Moses Mosheh**:
and they were talking with **Jesus Yah Shua**.
5 And **Peter Petros** answered
and **said worded** to **Jesus Yah Shua**,
Master Rabbi, it is good for us to be here:
and let us make three tabernacles;
one for thee,
and one for **Moses Mosheh**, and one for **Elias Eli Yah**.
6 For he **wist knew** not what to say **speak**;
for they were **sore afraid utterly frightened**.
7 And **there was so be it**,
a cloud that overshadowed them:
and a voice came out of the cloud, saying **wording**,
This is my beloved Son: hear him.
8 And suddenly, when they had looked round about,
they saw no **man one** any more,
save **Jesus but Yah Shua** only with themselves.
9 And as they came down from the mountain,
he charged them that they should **tell declare to** no **man one**
what **things** they had seen,
till except when the Son of **man humanity**
were risen from the dead.
10 And they **kept empowered** that **saying word**
with themselves,
questioning one with another disputing
what the rising from the dead should mean.
11 And they asked him, **saying wording**,
Why **say word** the scribes
that **Elias Eli Yah** must first come?
12 And he answered and **told said to** them,
Elias verily Eli Yah indeed cometh first,
and restoreth all **things**;
and how it is **written scribed**
of the Son of **man humanity**,
that he must suffer **many things much**,
and be set at nought.
13 But I **say word** unto you,
That **Elias Eli Yah** is indeed come,
and they have done unto him
whatsoever as much as they **listed willed**,
exactly as it is **written scribed** of him.

Malachi 4:5, 6

YAH SHUA CASTS OUT A DEMON

14 And when he came to his disciples,
he saw a **great vast** multitude about them,
and the scribes **questioning disputing** with them.
15 And straightway all the **people multitude**,
when they **beheld saw** him,
were **greatly amazed utterly astonished**,
and running to him saluted him.
16 And he asked the scribes,
What **question dispute** ye with them?
17 And one of the multitude answered and said,
Master Doctor, I have brought unto thee my son,
which hath a **dumb speechless** spirit;
18 And wheresoever he **taketh overtaketh** him,
he teareth him:
and he foameth, and gnasheth with his teeth,
and **pineth withereth** away:
and I spake to thy disciples that they should cast him out;
and they could not.
19 He answereth him, and **saith wordeth**,
O **faithless trustless** generation,
how long until when shall I be with you?
how long until when shall I **suffer tolerate** you?
bring him unto me.

MARKOS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

until they see
the sovereigndom of Elohim come in dynamis.
2 And after six days, Yah Shua takes
Petros and **Yaaqovos** and **Yahn** with him
and brings them to a high mountain alone:
and he is metamorphosed in front of them:
3 and his raiment becomes gleaming
— very white as snow
as no fuller on earth can whiten them:
4 and **Eli Yah** with **Mosheh** appears to them
and they talk with Yah Shua.
5 And **Petros** answers Yah Shua, wording,
Rabbi, it is good for us to be here;
and we make three tabernacles:
one for you and one for **Mosheh** and one for **Eli Yah**.
6 — for he knows not what to speak
for they are utterly frightened.
7 And so be it, a cloud overshadows them:
and a voice from the cloud, words,
This is my beloved Son! Hear him!
8 — and suddenly, as they look around
they see no one any more
but Yah Shua only with them.
9 And as they descend the mountain
he charges them to declare to no one what they saw,
except when the Son of humanity rises from the dead:
10 and they empower that word with themselves
disputing what the rising from the dead means.
11 And they ask him, wording,
Why word the scribes that **Eli Yah** must first come?
12 And he answers them, saying,
Eli Yah indeed comes first and restores all;
and how it is scribed of the Son of humanity
to suffer much and be set at naught.
13 But I word to you,
That **Eli Yah** indeed has come,
and they did to him as much as they willed
exactly as it is scribed of him.

Malachi 4:5, 6

YAH SHUA CASTS OUT A DEMON

14 And he comes to his disciples
and he sees a vast multitude around them;
and the scribes disputing with them:
15 and straightway, when they see him,
all the multitude is utterly astonished,
and running to him salute him.
16 And he asks the scribes,
What dispute you with them?
17 And one of the multitude answers, saying,
Doctor, I bring my son to you
who has a speechless spirit;
18 and wherever he overtakes him, he tears him:
and he foams and gnashes with his teeth
and withers away:
and I spoke to your disciples to cast him out;
and they cannot.
19 He answers him, wording, O trustless generation,
Until when am I with you? Until when tolerate I you?
Bring him to me.

MARK 9

exeGes ready research BIBLE

20 And they brought him unto him:
and when he saw him,
straightway the spirit *tare* **convulsed** him;
and he fell on the *ground* **soil**, and wallowed foaming.

21 And he asked his father,
How *long is it ago* **much time**
since this *came unto* **became** him?
And he said, *Of a child* **Since childhood**.

22 And *ofttimes* **often** it hath cast him into the fire,
and into the waters, to destroy him:
but if thou canst do *any thing* **aught**,
have *compassion* **a sympathetic spleen** on us, and help us.

23 *Jesus Yah Shua* said unto him,
If thou canst *believe* **trust**,
all *things* are possible to him that *believeth* **trusteth**.

24 And straightway the father of the child cried out,
and said **worded** with tears, *Lord Adonay*, I *believe* **trust**;
help thou *mine unbelief* **my trustlessness**.

25 When *Jesus Yah Shua* saw
that the *people* **multitude** came running together,
he rebuked the *foul* **impure** spirit,
saying **wording** unto him,
Thou *dumb* **speechless** and deaf spirit,
I *charge* **order** thee,
come out of him, and enter no more into him.

26 And *the spirit* **having** cried,
and *rent* **having convulsed** him *sore* **much**,
and came out of him: and he *was* **became** as one dead;
insomuch that many *said* **worded**, He is dead.

27 But *Jesus Yah Shua*
took **overpowered** him by the hand,
and lifted him *up*; and he arose.

28 And when he was come into the house,
his disciples asked him privately,
Why could not we cast him out?

29 And he said unto them,
This *kind* **genos** can come forth by *nothing* **naught**,
but **except** by prayer and fasting.

30 **YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION**
And they departed thence,
and passed through *Galilee* **Galiyl**;
and he *would* **willed**
not that any man **that no one** should know it.

31 For he *taught* **doctrinated** his disciples,
and *said* **worded** unto them,
The Son of *man* **humanity**
is *delivered* **betrayed** into the hands of men,
and they shall *kill* **slaughter** him;
and after that he is *killed* **slaughtered**,
he shall rise the third day.

32 But they *understood* **knew** not that *saying* **rhema**,
and were *afraid* **awestricken** to ask him.

THE FIRST ARE FINAL

33 And he came to *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**:
and being in the house he asked them,
What was it that ye *disputed* **reasoned** among yourselves
by **on** the way?
34 But they *held their peace* **hushed**:
for *by* **on** the way they had *disputed* **reasoned**
among *themselves* **one another**,
who should be the greatest.

35 And he sat *down*, and *called* **voiced to** the twelve,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
If any *man desire* **one willeth** to be first,
the same shall be *last* **final** of all,
and *servant* **minister** of all.

36 And he took a child, and set him in the midst of them:
and when he had taken him in his arms,
he said unto them,
37 Whosoever shall receive one of such children
in my name,
receiveth me:
and whosoever shall receive me,
receiveth not me, but him that *sent* **apostolized** me.

38 And *John Yahn* answered him, *saying* **wording**,
Master **Doctor**,
we saw one casting out *devils* **demons** in thy name,
and he followeth not us:
and we forbad him, because he followeth not us.

MARKOS 9

exeGes companion BIBLE

20 And they bring him to him:
and straightway, when he sees him,
the spirit convulses him;
and he falls on the soil and wallows foaming:
and he asks his father,
21 How much time since this became him?

And he says, Since childhood:
and often it has casts him into the fire
and into the waters to destroy him:
but if you can do aught,
have a sympathetic spleen on us and help us.

23 Yah Shua says to him, If you can trust!
All is possible to him who trusts.

24 And straightway the father of the child cries out
and words with tears, Adonay, I trust!
Help my trustlessness!

25 Yah Shua sees the multitude come running together
and rebukes the impure spirit, wording to him,
You speechless and deaf spirit,
I order you, come from him and enter him no more.

26 And crying and convulsing him much
it comes from him:
and he becomes as one dead;
so that many word, He is dead!

27 But Yah Shua overpowers him by the hand
and lifts him and he rises.

28 And he comes into the house,
and his disciples ask him privately,
Why could not we cast him out?

29 And he says to them,
This genos can come forth in naught,
except by prayer and fasting.

YAH SHUA PROPHESES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION

30 And they depart from there
and pass through Galiyl;
and he wills that no one know:
31 for he doctrinates his disciples, and words to them,
The Son of humanity
is betrayed into the hands of men;
and they slaughter him;
and after he is slaughtered, the third day he rises.
32 — but they know not that rhema,
and are awestricken to ask him.

THE FIRST ARE FINAL

33 And he goes to Kaphar Nachum:
and being in the house he asks them,
What reasoned you among yourselves on the way?
34 But they hush:
for on the way they reasoned among one another
who is the greatest.

35 And he sits,
and voices to the twelve, and words to them,
If anyone wills to be first,
the same becomes final of all, and minister of all.

36 And he takes a child and sets him in their midst:
and he takes him in his arms, and he says to them,
37 Whoever receives one of such children
in my name,
receives me:
and whoever receives me,
receives not me, but him who apostolized me.

38 And Yahn answers him, wording, Doctor,
we saw one casting out demons in your name;
and he follows us not:
and we forbad him because he follows us not.

MARK 9, 10

exeGes ready research BIBLE

39 But *Jesus Yah Shua* said, Forbid him not:
for there is no *man one*
which shall do a *miracle dynamis* in my name,
that can *lightly speak evil of quickly vilify* me.
40 For he that is not against us is on our part.
NEVER SCANDALIZE
41 For whosoever shall give you a cup of water to drink
in my name,
because ye belong to *Christ Messiah*,
verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
he shall not lose his reward.
42 And whosoever shall *offend scandalize*
one of these little ones that *believe trust* in me,
it is *better good* for him
that a millstone were hanged *about around* his neck,
and he were cast into the sea.
AMPUTATE WHEN NECESSARY
43 And *if whenever* thy hand *offend scandalize* thee,
cut it off amputate:
it is *better good* for thee to enter into life maimed,
than having two hands to go into
hell Gay Hinnom/the valley of burning,
into the fire *that never shall be quenched unquenchable*:
44 Where their *worm maggot* dieth not,
and the fire is not quenched.
45 And *if whenever* thy foot *offend scandalize* thee,
cut it off amputate:
it is *better good* for thee to enter *halt lame* into life,
than having two feet to be cast into
hell Gay Hinnom/the valley of burning,
into the fire *that never shall be quenched unquenchable*:
46 Where their *worm maggot* dieth not,
and the fire is not quenched.
47 And *if whenever* thine eye *offend scandalize* thee,
pluck cast it out:
it is *better good* for thee
to enter into the *kingdom sovereignty* of *God Elohim*
with one eye one-eyed,
than having two eyes to be cast into
hell Gay Hinnom/the valley of burning fire:
48 Where their *worm maggot* dieth not,
and the fire is not quenched.
49 For every one shall be salted with fire,
and every sacrifice shall be salted with salt.
50 Salt is good:
but *if whenever* the salt *have lost his saltness become saltless*,
wherewith *will shall* ye season it?
Have salt in yourselves,
and *have peace shalam* one with another.

10

And he arose from thence,
and cometh into the *coasts boundaries*
of *Judaea Yah Hudah*
by the farther side of Jordan across Yarden:
and the *people resort multitude go* unto him again;
and, as he was *wont accustomed*,
he *taught doctrinated* them again.
2 And the Pharisees came to him, and asked him,
Is it *lawful allowed*
for a man to *put away release* his *wife woman*?
tempting testing him.
3 And he answered and said unto them,
What did *Moses command Mosheh misvah* you?
4 And they said, *Moses suffered Mosheh allowed*
to *write scribe a bill scroll* of *divorcement apostasy*,
and to *put release* her away.
5 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said unto them,
For the *hardness of your heart hardheartedness*
he *wrote scribed* you this *precept misvah*.
6 But from the beginning of the creation
God Elohim made them male and female.
7 For this cause
shall a *man human* leave his father and mother,
and *cleave adhere* to his *wife woman*;

MARKOS 9, 10

exeGes companion BIBLE

39 But Yah Shua says, Forbid him not:
for no one doing dynamis in my name,
can quickly vilify me:
40 for whoever is not against us is on our part.
NEVER SCANDALIZE
41 For whoever gives you a cup of water to drink
in my name,
because you belong to Messiah,
Amen! I word to you,
he loses not his reward:
42 and whoever scandalizes
one of these little ones who trust in me,
it is good for him
to hang a millstone around his neck,
and cast him in the sea.
AMPUTATE WHEN NECESSARY
43 And whenever your hand scandalizes you,
amputate:
it is good for you to enter life maimed,
rather than two hands
go in Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning
— into the fire unquenchable:
44 where their maggot dies not
and the fire quenches not.
45 And whenever your foot scandalizes you,
amputate:
it is good for you to enter life lame,
rather than two feet
cast in Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning
— in the fire unquenchable:
46 where their maggot dies not
and the fire quenches not.
47 And whenever your eye scandalizes you,
cast it out:
it is good for you
to enter the sovereignty of Elohim one-eyed,
rather than two eyes
cast in Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning fire:
48 where their maggot dies not,
and the fire quenches not.
49 For everyone is to be salted with fire
and every sacrifice salted with salt:
50 salt is good:
but whenever the salt becomes saltless,
in what season you?
Have salt in yourselves,
and shalam one another.

MARRIAGE AND DIVORCE

10

And he rises from there,
and enters the boundaries of Yah Hudah
across Yarden:
and again the multitude comes to him;
and, as accustomed, he again doctrinates them.
2 And the Pharisees come to him, and ask him,
Is a man allowed to release his woman?
— testing him.
3 And he answers them, saying,
What misvahed Mosheh?
4 And they say,
Mosheh allowed to scribe a scroll of apostasy,
and to release her.
5 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Because of your hardheartedness
he scribed you this misvah:
6 but from the beginning of the creation
Elohim made them male and female.
7 For this cause a human leaves his father and mother
and adheres to his woman

MARK 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 And they twain shall be **into** one flesh:
so then they are no more twain, but one flesh.

9 **So** What *therefore*
God **Elohim** hath *joined together* **co—yoked**,
let not *man put asunder* **humanity separate**.

10 And in the house his disciples asked him again
of **concerning** the same matter.

11 And he *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Whosoever shall *put away* **release** his **wife woman**
and marry another,
committeth adultery **adulterizeth** against her.

12 And *if* **whenever** a woman shall *put away* **release** her man,
and be married to another,
she committeth adultery **adulterizeth**.

YAH SHUA EULOGIZES YOUNG CHILDREN

13 And they *brought* **offered** young children to him,
that he should touch them:
and his disciples rebuked those
that *brought* **offered** them.

14 But when *Jesus* **Yah Shua** saw it,
he *was much displeased* **indignified**, and said unto them,
Suffer Allow the little children to come unto me,
and forbid them not:
for of such is the **kingdom sovereignty** of God **Elohim**.

15 *Verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto you,
Whosoever shall not receive
the **kingdom sovereignty** of God **Elohim** as a little child,
he shall not enter therein.

16 And he took them *up* in his arms,
put his hands upon them, and *blessed* **eulogized** them.

WEALTHY BUT LOST

17 And when he *was gone forth* **departed** into the way,
there came one running, and kneeled to him,
and asked him, Good *Master* **Doctor**,
what shall I do that I may inherit eternal life?

18 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto him,
Why *callest* **wordest** thou me good?
there is none good *but* **except** one, *that is*, God **Elohim**.

19 Thou knowest the *commandments* **misvoth**,
Do not commit adultery **adulterize not**,
Do not kill **murder not**,
Do not steal **not**,
Do not bear false **pseudo witness not**,
Defraud not,
Honour thy father and mother.

20 And he answered and said unto him, *Master* **Doctor**,
all these have I *observed* **guarded** from my youth.

21 *Then* *Jesus* **And Yah Shua**
beholding **looking at** him loved him,
and said unto him, *One thing* thou lackest:
go thy way, sell *whatsoever* **as much as** thou hast,
and give to the poor,
and thou shalt have treasure in heaven:
and come, take *up* the **cross stake**, and follow me.

22 And he was *sad* **gloomy** at that *saying word*,
and went away *grieved* **sorrowed**:
for he had *great* **vast** possessions.

YAH SHUA AND RICHES

23 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** looked round about,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto his disciples,
How *hardly* **difficultly** shall they that have riches
enter into the **kingdom sovereignty** of God **Elohim**!

24 And the disciples *were* astonished at his words.
But *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answereth again,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Children, how *hard* **difficult** is it
for them that *trust* **confide** in riches
to enter into the **kingdom sovereignty** of God **Elohim**!

25 It is easier for a *camel* **rope***
to go **pass** through the eye of a needle,
than for a rich man
to enter into the **kingdom sovereignty** of God **Elohim**.

*see Lamsa

26 And they *were* astonished *out of measure* **superabundantly**,

MARKOS 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 and the two become into one flesh:
that they are no more two, but one flesh.

9 So what Elohim co—yokes,
humanity is not to separate.

10 And in the house his disciples ask him again
concerning the same matter:
and he words to them,
Whoever releases his woman
and marries another,
adulterizes against her:

12 and whenever a woman releases her man
and marries another,
she adulterizes.

YAH SHUA EULOGIZES YOUNG CHILDREN

13 And they offer him young children to touch:
and his disciples rebuke those who offer them.

14 But Yah Shua sees, and he indignifies,
and says to them,
Allow the little children to come to me
and forbid them not:
for of such is the sovereignty of Elohim.

15 Amen! I word to you,
Whoever receives not the sovereignty of Elohim
as a little child,
enters not therein.
— and he takes them in his arms,
puts his hands on them and eulogizes them.

WEALTHY BUT LOST

17 And as he departs in the way,
someone comes running and kneels to him,
and asks him, Good Doctor,
what do I to inherit eternal life?

18 And Yah Shua says to him,
Why word you me good?
None is good except one, Elohim.
You know the misvoth,
Adulterize not!
Murder not!
Steal not!
Pseudo witness not!
Defraud not!
Honor your father and mother!

20 And he answers him, saying, Doctor,
I guarded all these from my youth.

21 And Yah Shua, looking at him, loves him,
and says to him, You lack One:
go your way, sell as much as you have,
and give to the poor,
and you have treasure in the heavens:
and come, follow me, take the stake.

22 And he is gloomy at that word, and goes away sorrowed:
for he has vast possessions.

YAH SHUA AND RICHES

23 And Yah Shua looks around
and words to his disciples,
How difficultly they who have riches
enter the sovereignty of Elohim!
— and the disciples astonish at his words.

24 And again Yah Shua answers them, wording,
Children, how difficult for them who confide in riches
to enter the sovereignty of Elohim!
It is easier for a rope*
to pass through the eye of a needle,
than for a rich man
to enter the sovereignty of Elohim.

25 And they superabundantly astonish

*see Lamsa

26

MARK 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

saying **wording** among themselves,
Who *then* can be saved?

27 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** looking upon them *saith* **wordeth**,
With *men* **humanity** it is impossible,
but not with *God* **Elohim**:
for with *God* **Elohim** all *things* are possible.

28 Then *Peter* **And Petros** began to say **word** unto him,
Lo **Behold**,
we have *left* **forsaken** all, and have followed thee.

29 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered and said,
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
There is no *man* **one** that hath *left* **forsaken** house,
or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother,
or *wife* **woman**, or children, or *lands* **fields**,
for my sake, and the *gospel's* **evangelism's**,

30 But he shall *receive* **take** an hundredfold
now in this *time* **season**,
houses,
and brethren, and sisters, and mothers, and children,
and *lands* **fields**, with persecutions;
and in the *world* **eons** to come eternal life.

31 But many that are first shall be *last* **final**;
and the *last* **final** first.

YAH SHUA PROPHECIES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION

32 And they were in the way
going up **ascending** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
and *Jesus* went before **Yah Shua** preceded them:
and they were *amazed* **astonished**;
and as they followed, they were *afraid* **awestricken**.
And he took again the twelve,
and began to *tell* **word** to them
what *things should* **is about to** happen unto him,
Saying, Behold,

33 we *go up* **ascend** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
and the Son of *man* **humanity** shall be *delivered* **betrayed**
unto the *chief priests*, **archpriests** and unto the scribes;
and they shall condemn him to death,
and shall *deliver* **betray** him to the *Gentiles* **goyim**:
And they shall mock him, and shall scourge him,
and shall spit upon him, and shall *kill* **slaughter** him:
and the third day he shall rise *again*.

THE SELFISH WILL OF YAAQOVOS AND YAHN

35 And *James* **Yaaqovos** and *John* **Yahn**,
the sons of *Zebedee* **Zabdi**,
come unto him, *saying* **wording**, *Master*, **Doctor**,
we *would* **will** that thou shouldest do for us
whatsoever we shall *desire* **ask**.

36 And he said unto them,
What *would* **will** ye that I should do for you?

37 They said unto him,
Grant **Give** unto us that we may sit,
one *on* **at** thy right *hand*,
and the *other on* **one at** thy left *hand*, in thy glory.

38 But *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto them,
Ye know not what ye ask:
can ye drink of the cup that I drink of?
and be baptized
with the baptism that I am baptized *with*?

39 And they said unto him, We can.
And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto them,
Ye shall indeed drink of the cup that I drink of;
and *with* the baptism that I am baptized *withal*
shall ye be baptized:

40 But to sit *on* **at** my right *hand* and *on* **at** my left *hand*
is not mine to give;
but it shall be given to them for whom it is prepared.

41 And when the ten heard it,
they began to be *much displeased* **indignify**
with *James* **about Yaaqovos** and *Yahn* **Yahn**.

42 But *Jesus* **Yah Shua** called them to him,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Ye know that they which are *accounted* **thought**
to rule over the *Gentiles* **goyim**
exercise **lordship rule** over them;
and their *great* **mega** ones
exercise **authority upon** **authorize over** them.

43 But *so* **thus** shall it not be among you:
but whosoever *will* **willeth to** be *great* **mega** among you,
shall be your minister:

MARKOS 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— wording among themselves,
Who can be saved?

27 And Yah Shua, looking upon them, words,
With humanity it is impossible,
but not with Elohim:
for with Elohim all are possible.

28 And Petros begins to word to him,
Behold, we forsake all, and follow you.

29 And Yah Shua answers, saying,
Amen! I word to you,
no one who forsakes house
or brothers or sisters or father or mother
or woman or children or fields
for my sake, and the evangelism,
but he takes a hundredfold now in this season
— houses and brothers and sisters
and mothers and children
and fields with persecutions;
and eternal life in the coming eons.

31 And many first become final;
and the final first.

YAH SHUA PROPHECIES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION

32 And they are in the way ascending to Yeru Shalem;
and Yah Shua precedes them:
and they astonish;
and as they follow, they are awestricken.

And again he takes the twelve,
and begins to word to them
what is about to happen to him,
Behold, we ascend to Yeru Shalem;
that the Son of humanity
be betrayed to the archpriests and to the scribes
— to condemn him to death
and to betray him to the goyim
and to mock him and scourge him
and spit upon him and slaughter him
— and the third day he rises.

THE SELFISH WILL OF YAAQOVOS AND YAHN

35 And Yaaqovos and Yahn the sons of Zabdi
come to him, wording, Doctor,
we will that you do for us whatever we ask.

36 And he says to them,
What will you that I do for you?

37 They say to him, Give to us to sit,
one at your right and one at your left
in your glory.

38 But Yah Shua says to them,
You know not what you ask!
Can you drink of the cup I drink?
And be baptized with the baptism I am baptized?

39 And they say to him, We can.

And Yah Shua says to them, Indeed,
of the cup I drink, you drink;
and of the baptism I am baptized, you be baptized:
but to sit at my right and at my left
is not mine to give;
but it is given to them for whom it is prepared.

41 And the ten hear,
and begin to indignify about Yaaqovos and Yahn.

42 But Yah Shua calls them to him and words to them,
You know that they who are thought
to rule over the goyim, rule over them;
and their mega ones authorize over them.

43 But so be it not among you:
but whoever among you wills to be mega,
becomes your minister:

MARK 10, 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

44 And whosoever of you will **willeth**
to be *the chiefest first*,
shall be servant of all.

45 For even the Son of *man* **humanity** came
not to be ministered unto, but to minister,
and to give his *life* **soul** a *ransom* **redemption** for many.

YAH SHUA RESTORES THE SIGHT OF BAR TAME

46 And they came to *Jericho* **Yericho**:
and as he *went* **departed** out of *Jericho* **Yericho**
with his disciples
and a *great number of people* **an ample multitude**,
blind *Bartimaeus* **Bar Tame**, the son of *Timaeus* **Tame**,
sat by the *highway side* **wayside** begging.

47 And when he heard
that it was *Jesus of Nazareth* **Yah Shua the Nazarene**,
he began to cry out, and *say* **word**,
Jesus **Yah Shua**, thou son of David, *have mercy on me*.

48 And many *charged* **rebuked** him
that he should *hold his peace* **hush**:
but he cried the more a *great deal* **vastly**,
Thou son of David, *have mercy on me*.

49 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** stood still,
and *commanded him to be called* **said, Voice out to him**.
And they *call* **voiced out** to the blind man,
saying **wording** unto him,
Be of good comfort **Courage**, rise;
he *calleth* **voiceth out** to thee.

50 And he, casting away his garment,
rose, and came to *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.

51 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered
and *said* **worded** unto him,
What *wilt* **willest** thou that I should do unto thee?
The blind man said unto him,
Lord **Rabboni**, that I might *receive my sight* **see**.

52 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto him, Go thy way;
thy *faith* **trust** hath *made* **saved** thee *whole*.
And *immediately* **straightway** he *received his sight* **saw**,
and followed *Jesus* **Yah Shua** in the way.

THE TRIUMPHANT ENTRY OF YAH SHUA

11 And when they
came nigh to Jerusalem **approached Yeru Shalem**,
unto *Bethphage* **Beth Pag** and *Bethany* **Beth Ania**,
at the mount of Olives,
he *sendeth forth* **apostolizeth** two of his disciples,
And *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Go your way into the village *over against in front of* you:
and as *soon* **straightway** as ye be entered into it,
ye shall find a colt tied, whereon never *man* **human** sat;
loose **release** him, and bring him.

3 And *if whenever* any *man* **one** say unto you,
Why do ye this?
say ye that *the Lord* **Adonay** hath need of him;
and *straightway* he *will send* **shall apostolize** him hither.

4 And they went their way,
and found the colt tied by the *door* **portal** without
in a place where two ways met;
and they *loose* **release** him.

5 And *certain* **some** of them that stood there
said **worded** unto them,
What do ye, *loosing* **releasing** the colt?
And they said unto them
even as *Jesus* **Yah Shua** had *commanded* **misvahed**:
and they *let* **released** them *go*.

7 And they brought the colt to *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
and cast their garments on him; and he sat upon him.

8 And many spread their garments in the way:
and others
cut down branches **chopped spreadings** off the trees,
and *strawed* **spread** them in the way.

9 And they that *went before* **preceded**, and they that followed,
cried, *saying* **wording**, *Hosanna* **Hoshia Na**;
Blessed is **Eulogized**
he that cometh in the name of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**:
Blessed **Eulogized**
be the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of our father David,
that cometh in the name of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**:
Hosanna **Hoshia Na** in the *highest* **highests**.

Psalms 118:25, 26

MARKOS 10, 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

44 and whoever of you wills to be first,
becomes servant of all.

45 For even the Son of humanity comes,
not to be ministered to, but to minister;
and to give his soul a redemption for many.

YAH SHUA RESTORES THE SIGHT OF BAR TAME

46 And they come to Yericho:
and as he departs from Yericho
with his disciples and an ample multitude,
blind Bar Tame/Son of Tame,
sits by the wayside begging:
and he hears it is Yah Shua the Nazarene,
and he begins to cry out, and word,
Yah Shua, son of David, mercy me!
— and many rebuke him that he hush:

48 But he cries the more vastly,
Son of David, mercy me!

49 And Yah Shua stands, and says,
Voice out to him.

And they voice out to the blind man, wording to him,
Courage! Rise! He voices out to you!
— and he casts his garment, rises,
and comes to Yah Shua.

51 And Yah Shua answers him wording,
What will you that I do to you?

The blind man say to him,
Rabboni, that I see!

52 And Yah Shua says to him,
Go! Your trust saves you.
— and straightway he sees,
and follows Yah Shua in the way.

THE TRIUMPHANT ENTRY OF YAH SHUA

11 And they approach Yeru Shalem
to Beth Pag and Beth Ania at the mount of Olives,
and he apostolizes two of his disciples,
and words to them,
Go your way into the village in front of you:
and straightway as ye enter,
you find a colt tied, whereon never human sat:
release him and bring him:

3 and whenever anyone says to you, Why do you this?
you say, Adonay needs him;
and straightway he apostolizes him here.

4 And they go their way and find the colt tied
outside by the portal by the two ways;
and they release him:

5 and some who stand there word to them,
What do you, releasing the colt?

6 And they say to them even as Yah Shua misvahed:
and they release them:
and they bring the colt to Yah Shua
and cast their garments on it; and he sits on it:
and many spread their garments in the way:
and others chop spreadings off the trees
and spread them in the way:
and they who precede and they who follow
cry, wording, Hoshia Na!
Eulogized — he who comes in the name of Yah Veh:
Eulogized
— the coming sovereigndom of our father David
in the name of Yah Veh:
Hoshia Na in the highests.

Psalms 118:25, 26

MARK 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 11 And *Jesus Yah Shua* entered into *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and into the *temple priestal precinct*:
and when he had looked round about upon all *things*,
and now the *eventide* was come
already being the evening hour,
he went out unto *Bethany Beth Ania* with the twelve.
- YAH SHUA CURSES THE BARREN FIG TREE**
- 12 And on the *morrow*,
when they were come from *Bethany Beth Ania*,
he was hungry:
- 13 And seeing a fig tree afar *off* having leaves, he came,
if *haply perhaps* he *might* find *any thing somewhat* thereon:
and when he came to it,
he found *nothing but naught except* leaves;
for the *time season* of figs was not yet.
- 14 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said unto it,
no man **one** eat fruit of thee *hereafter any more*
for ever unto the eons.
And his disciples heard it.
- YAH SHUA CLEANSSES THE PRIESTAL PRECINCT**
- 15 And they come to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:
and *Jesus Yah Shua*
went into entered the *temple priestal precinct*,
and began to cast out them that sold and *bought marketed*
in the *temple priestal precinct*,
and overthrew the tables
of the *moneychangers coindealers*,
and the *seats cathedras* of them that sold doves;
- 16 And *would not suffer that any man allowed no one*
should carry to bear any vessel
through the *temple priestal precinct*.
- 17 And he *taught doctrinated, saying wording* unto them,
Is it not *written scribed*,
My house shall be called of all *nations goyim*
the house of prayer?
but ye have made it a *den grotto* of *thieves robbers*.
Yesha Yah 56:7, Yirme Yah 7:11
- 18 And the scribes and *chief arch* priests heard it,
and sought how they might destroy him:
for they *feared awed* him, because all the *people multitude*
was astonished at his doctrine.
- 19 And *when even was come being evening*,
he *went departed* out of the city.
- THE CURSED TREE WITHERED**
- 20 And in the *early morning*, as they passed by,
they saw the fig tree dried *up* from the roots.
- 21 And *Peter calling to remembrance Petros remembering*,
saith wordeth unto him, *Master Rabbi*, behold,
the fig tree which thou cursedst *is* withered away.
- MOUNTAIN MOVING TRUST**
- 22 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answering
saith wordeth unto them,
Have *faith trust* in *God Elohim*.
- 23 For *verily I say Amen! I word* unto you,
That whosoever shall say unto this mountain,
Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea;
and shall not doubt in his heart,
but shall *believe trust*
that those *things* which he *saith wordeth*
shall *come to pass become*;
he shall have whatsoever he saith.
- 24 *Therefore Because of this I say word* unto you,
What things soever ye desire
All — as much as ever you ask,
when ye pray, *believe trust* that ye *receive take* them,
and ye shall have them.
- FORGIVE, FORGIVEN**
- 25 And when ye stand praying,
forgive, if ye have ought against any:
that your Father also which is in heaven
may forgive you your *trespasses backslidings*.
- 26 But if ye do not forgive,
neither *will shall* your Father
which is in heaven
forgive your *trespasses backslidings*.
- THE AUTHORITY OF YAH SHUA CHALLENGED**
- 27 And they come again to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:
and as he was walking in the *temple priestal precinct*,

MARKOS 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 11 And Yah Shua enters Yeru Shalem
and the priestal precinct:
and he looks all around:
and already being the evening hour,
he goes to Beth Ania with the twelve.
- YAH SHUA CURSES THE BARREN FIG TREE**
- 12 And on the *morrow*, they come from Beth Ania,
and he famishes:
- 13 and seeing a fig tree afar having leaves,
he comes, if perhaps to find somewhat thereon:
and comes to it and finds naught except leaves
— for the season of figs is not yet.
- 14 And Yah Shua answers, saying to it,
No one eats your fruit any more unto the eons!
— and his disciples hear it.
- YAH SHUA CLEANSSES THE PRIESTAL PRECINCT**
- 15 And they go to Yeru Shalem:
and Yah Shua enters the priestal precinct
and begins to cast out them who sell and market
in the priestal precinct;
and he overthrows the tables of the coindealers
and the cathedras of them who sell doves;
- 16 and allows no one
to bear any vessel through the priestal precinct.
- 17 And he doctrinates them, wording,
Is it not scribed,
My house is called by all goyim the house of prayer?
And you make it a grotto of robbers.
Yesha Yah 56:7, Yirme Yah 7:11
- 18 And the scribes and archpriests hear:
and seek how to destroy him:
for they awe him
because all the multitude astonishes at his doctrine.
- 19 And being evening, he departs from the city.
- THE CURSED TREE WITHERED**
- 20 And in the early morning, as they pass by,
they see the fig tree dried from the roots:
and remembering,
Petros words to him, Rabbi, behold,
the fig tree you cursed withered.
- MOUNTAIN MOVING TRUST**
- 22 And Yah Shua answers them, wording,
Have trust in Elohim!
- 23 For Amen! I word to you,
That whoever says to this mountain,
Remove! and, Cast into the sea!
— and not doubt in his heart,
but trusts that what he words becomes
— he has whatever he says.
- 24 Because of this I word to you,
All — as much as ever you ask,
when you pray, trust that you take them,
and you have them.
- FORGIVE, FORGIVEN**
- 25 And when you stand praying,
forgive, if you have ought against any:
that your Father in the heavens
also forgives you your backslidings:
and if you forgive not,
your Father in the heavens
forgives not your backslidings.
- THE AUTHORITY OF YAH SHUA CHALLENGED**
- 27 And again they go to Yeru Shalem:
and as he walks in the priestal precinct

MARK 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

there come to him the *chief arch* priests
and the scribes, and the elders,
28 And say **word** unto him,
By **In** what authority doest thou these *things*?
and who gave thee this authority to do these *things*?
29 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said unto them,
I *will shall* also ask of you one *question word*,
and answer me, and I *will tell shall say to* you
by **in** what authority I do these *things*.
30 The baptism of *John Yahn*,
was it from heaven, or of *men humanity*? answer me.
31 And they *reasoned reckoned* with themselves,
saying **wording**, *if whenever* we shall say,
From *heaven the heavens*;
he *will shall* say, **So** Why *then* did ye not *believe trust* him?
32 But *if whenever* we shall say, Of *men humanity*;
they *feared awed* the people:
for all *men counted John regarded Yahn*,
that he was a prophet indeed.
33 And they answered and *said worded* unto *Jesus Yah Shua*,
We *cannot tell know not*.
And *Jesus Yah Shua* answering *saith wordeth* unto them,
Neither *do I tell word I to* you
by **in** what authority I do these *things*.

THE PARABLE OF THE VINEYARD

12 And he began to *speak word* unto them
by **in** parables.
A *certain man human* planted a vineyard,
and set an hedge about it,
and digged a *place for the winevat winevat*,
and built a tower,
and *let leased* it out to *husbandmen cultivators*,
and went into a *far country abroad*.
2 And at the season
he *sent apostolized* to the *husbandmen cultivators*
a servant,
that he might *receive take*
from the *husbandmen cultivators*
of the fruit of the vineyard.
3 And they *caught took* him, and *beat flogged* him,
and *sent apostolized* him away empty.
4 And again he *sent apostolized* unto them
another servant;
and at him they cast stones,
and *wounded struck* him in the head,
and *sent apostolized* him away
shamefully dishonourably handled.
5 And again he *sent apostolized* another;
and him they *killed slaughtered*, and many others;
beating indeed flogging some,
and *killing slaughtering* some.
6 **So** Having yet *Therefore* one son, his wellbeloved,
he *sent apostolized* him also *last finally* unto them,
saying wording,
They *will reverence shall respect* my son.
7 But those *husbandmen cultivators*
said among themselves,
This is the heir; come, let us *kill slaughter* him,
and the inheritance shall be ours.
8 And they took him, and *killed slaughtered* him,
and cast him out of the vineyard.
9 **So** What shall *Therefore the Lord Adoni* of the vineyard do?
he *will shall* come and destroy the *husbandmen cultivators*,
and *will shall* give the vineyard unto others.
10 And have ye not read this scripture;
The stone which the builders *rejected disapproved*
is become the head of the corner:
11 This *was the Lord's doing becomes of Yah Veh*,
and it is marvellous in our eyes?

Psalms 118:22, 23

ATTEMPTS TO OVERPOWER YAH SHUA

12 And they sought to *lay hold on overpower* him,
but *feared awed* the *people multitude*:
for they knew
that he had *spoken said* the parable against them:
and they *left forsook* him, and went their way.
13 And they *send apostolized* unto him
certain some of the Pharisees and of the Herodians,
to catch him in his words.

MARKOS 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

the archpriests and the scribes and the elders
come to him,
and word to him,
28 In what authority do you these?
And who gives you this authority to do these?
29 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
I also ask one word from you, and answer me,
and I say to you in what authority I do these:
30 The baptism of Yahn
— is it from the heavens? Or from humanity?
Answer me!
31 And they reckon with themselves, wording,
Whenever we say, From the heavens;
he says, So why trust you him not?
32 But whenever we say, From humanity;
they awe the people:
for all regard Yahn is a prophet indeed.
33 And they answer Yah Shua, wording,
We know not.
And Yah Shua answers them, wording,
And I word not to you in what authority I do these.

THE PARABLE OF THE VINEYARD

12 And he begins to word to them in parables:
A human plants a vineyard and sets a hedge around it
and digs a winevat and builds a tower
and leases it to cultivators and goes abroad:
2 and at the season
he apostolizes a servant to the cultivators
to take from the cultivators
of the fruit of the vineyard:
3 and they take him and flog him
and apostolize him away empty.
4 And again he apostolizes another servant to them:
and they cast stones at him
and strike him in the head;
and apostolize him away dishonorably handled.
5 And again he apostolizes another:
and they slaughter him
— and many others;
indeed flogging some and slaughtering some.
6 So still having one son — his wellbeloved,
he finally also apostolizes him to them,
wording, They respect my son.
7 But those cultivators say among themselves,
This is the heir! Come! Slaughter him!
And the inheritance becomes ours.
8 — and they take him and slaughter him
and cast him from the vineyard.
9 So what does the adoni of the vineyard?
He comes and destroys the cultivators
and gives the vineyard to others.
10 And read you not this scripture;
The stone the builders disapproved
becomes the head of the corner:
11 this becomes of Yah Vah,
and it is marvellous in our eyes?

Psalms 118:22, 23

ATTEMPTS TO OVERPOWER YAH SHUA

12 And they seek to overpower him
but awe the multitude:
for they know he says the parable against them:
and they forsake him, and go their way:
13 and they apostolize
some of the Pharisees and of the Herodians to him,
to catch him in his words.

MARK 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 And when they were come, they say **word** unto him,
Master **Doctor**, we know that thou art true,
and *carest for* **concerned about** no *man* **one**:
for thou *regardest* **observest** not
the *person* **face of men** **humanity**,
but *teachest* **doctrinatest** the way of *God* **Elohim** in truth:
Is it *lawful* **allowed**
to give tribute to *Caesar* **the Kaisar**, or not?
shall we give, or shall we not give?
15 But he, knowing their hypocrisy, said unto them,
Why *tempt* **test** ye me?
bring me a *penny* **denarion**, that I may see it.
16 And they brought it. And he *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Whose is this *image* **icon** and *superscription* **epigraph**?
And they said unto him, *Caesar's* **The kaisar's**.
17 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answering said unto them,
Render to Caesar the things that are Caesar's
Give the Kaisar's to the Kaisar,
and to God the things that are God's
and Elohim's to Elohim.
And they marvelled at him.
YAH SHUA ASKED CONCERNING THE RESURRECTION
18 *Then* **And** come unto him the *Sadducees* **Sadoqiym**,
which say **word** there is no resurrection;
and they asked him, *saying* **wording**,
19 *Master Doctor*, *Moses wrote* **Mosheh scribed** unto us,
If a man's **Whenever one's** brother die,
and leave his *wife behind him* **woman**,
and leave no children,
that his brother should take his *wife* **woman**,
and raise *up seed* **sperma** unto his brother.
20 Now there were seven brethren:
and the first took a *wife* **woman**,
and dying left no *seed* **sperma**.
21 And the second took her, and died,
neither left he any *seed* **sperma**: and the third likewise.
22 And the seven *had* **took** her, and left no *seed* **sperma**:
last of all **finally** the woman died also.
23 **So** In the resurrection *therefore*, when they shall rise,
whose *wife* **woman** shall she be of them?
for the seven had her to *wife* **woman**.
24 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answering said unto them,
So Do ye not *Therefore* **err wander**,
because ye know not the scriptures,
neither the *power* **dynamis** of *God* **Elohim**?
25 For when they shall rise from the dead,
they neither marry, nor are *given in marriage* **married off**;
but are as the angels which are in heaven.
26 And *as touching* **concerning** the dead, that they rise:
have ye not read in the *book* **scroll** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
how in the *bush* **God spake** **brier Elohim said** unto him,
saying **wording**, I am the *God* **Elohim** of Abraham,
and the *God* **Elohim** of Isaac **Yischaq**,
and the *God* **Elohim** of Jacob **Yaaqov**?
27 He is not the *God* **Elohim** of the dead,
but the *God* **Elohim** of the living:
so ye therefore do greatly err vastly wander.
THE GREATEST MISVAH
28 And one of the scribes came,
and having heard them *reasoning* **disputing** together,
and perceiving that he had answered them well,
asked him, Which is the first *commandment* **misvah** of all?
29 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered him,
The first of all the *commandments* **misvoth** is,
Hear, O *Israel* **Yisra El**;
the Lord **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim** is one *Lord* **Yah Veh**:
30 And thou shalt love *the Lord* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
with all thy heart, and with all thy soul,
and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength:
this is the first *commandment* **misvah**.
31 And the second is like, *namely this*,
Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.
There is none other *commandment* **misvah**
greater than these.
Deuteronomy 6:4, 5, Leviticus 19:8
32 And the scribe said unto him,
Well, *Master* **Doctor**, thou hast said the truth:

MARKOS 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 And they come and word to him, Doctor,
we know you are true, and concerned about no one:
for you observe not the face of humanity,
but doctriate the way of Elohim in truth:
Is it allowed to give tribute to the Kaisar? Or not?
15 For us to give? Or for us not to give?
And knowing their hypocrisy, he says to them,
Why test you me?
Bring me a denarion, to see.
16 And they bring it — and he words to them,
Whose is this icon and epigraph?
And they say to him, Of the kaisar.
17 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Give that of the Kaisar to the Kaisar,
and that of Elohim to Elohim.
— and they marvel at him.
YAH SHUA ASKED CONCERNING THE RESURRECTION
18 And the Sadoqiym come to him
— who word there is no resurrection
and they ask him, wording,
19 Doctor, Mosheh scribed to us,
Whenever a brother dies,
and leaves his woman, and leaves no children,
his brother takes his woman
and raises sperma to his brother:
20 there are seven brothers:
and the first takes a woman,
and dies leaving no sperma:
21 and the second takes her, and dies,
and leaves no sperma: and the third likewise:
22 and the seven take her, and leave no sperma:
finally the woman also dies:
23 so when they rise in the resurrection,
whose woman is she of them?
for the seven had her to woman.
24 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
So wander you not?
Neither knowing the scriptures
nor the dynamis of Elohim?
25 For when they rise from the dead,
they neither marry nor are married off;
but are as the angels in the heavens.
26 And concerning the dead, that they rise:
read you not in the scroll of Mosheh,
how, in the brier, Elohim said to him, wording,
I am the Elohim of Abraham
and the Elohim of Yischaq
and the Elohim of Yaaqov?
27 He is not the Elohim of the dead,
but the Elohim of the living:
so you vastly wander.
THE GREATEST MISVAH
28 And one of the scribes comes
and hears them disputing together;
and perceiving that he answers them well,
asks him, Which is the first misvah of all?
29 And Yah Shua answers him,
The first of all the misvoth is,
Hear, O Yisra El;
Yah Veh our Elohim is one Yah Veh:
30 and, Love Yah Veh your Elohim
with all your heart and with all your soul
and with all your mind and with all your strength:
this is the first misvah.
31 And the second is like,
Love your neighbor as yourself.
No other misvah is greater than these.
Deuteronomy 6:4, 5, Leviticus 19:8
32 And the scribe says to him,
Well, Doctor! You say the truth!

MARK 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

33 for there is one *God Elohim*;
and there is none other but he:
And to love him with all the heart,
and with all the *understanding comprehension*,
and with all the soul, and with all the strength,
and to love his neighbour as himself,
is **much** more than all
whole *burnt offerings holocausts* and sacrifices.
34 And when *Jesus Yah Shua* saw
that he answered *discreetly mindfully*,
he said unto him,
Thou art not far
from the *kingdom sovereignty of God Elohim*.
And no *man one* after that durst ask him any question.

YAH SHUA ASKS THE PHARISEES

35 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answered and said **worded**,
while he *taught doctrinated*
in the *temple priestal precinct*,
How say **word** the scribes
that *Christ the Messiah* is the son of David?
36 For David himself said *by in the Holy Ghost Spirit*,
the LORD said An oracle of Yah Veh
to my *Lord Adonay*,
Sit thou *on at my right hand*,
till I *make establish* thine enemies
thy footstool the stool of thy feet
37 So David *therefore* himself
calleth wordeth him *Lord Adonay*;
and whence is he then his son?
And the *common people vast multitude* heard him gladly.

Psalms 110:1

38 And he *said worded* unto them in his doctrine,
Beware of Observe the scribes,
which *love will to go walk* in *long clothing stoles*,
and *love salutations* in the *marketplaces markets*,
39 And the *chief seats preeminent cathedras*
in the *synagogues*,
and the *uppermost rooms preeminent reposings*
at *feasts suppers*:
40 Which *devour widows' houses*,
and for a *pretence pretext* make **long far out** prayers:
these shall *receive take*
greater damnation superabundant judgment.

THE OFFERING OF THE WIDOW

41 And *Jesus Yah Shua*
sat *over against in front of* the treasury,
and *beheld observed* how the *people multitude*
cast *money copper* into the treasury:
and many that were rich cast in much.
42 And there came a *certain poor widow*,
and she *threw put* in two *mites leptons*,
which *make be a farthing quarter*.
43 And he called unto him his disciples,
and *saith wordeth* unto them,
Verily I say Amen! I word unto you,
That this poor widow hath cast **much** more in,
than all they which have cast into the treasury:
44 For all they did cast in of their *abundance surplus*;
but she of her *want lack* did cast in all
that — as much as she had,
even all her *living subsistence*.

THE MOUNT OF OLIVES MESSAGE OF YAH SHUA

13

And as he *went departed*
out of the *temple priestal precinct*,
one of his disciples *saith wordeth* unto him,
Master Doctor, see **behold** what manner of stones
and what *buildings edifices* are here!
2 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answering said unto him,
Seest Observest thou these *great buildings mega edifices*?
these shall not be *left allowed* one stone upon another,
that shall not be *thrown down disintegrated*.
3 And as he sat upon the mount of Olives
over against in front of the temple priestal precinct,
Peter Petros and *James Yaaqovos*
and *John Yahn* and *Andrew Andreas* asked him privately,
4 *Tell Say to* us, when shall these *things* be?
and what *shall be the sign* when all these *things*
shall be fulfilled/*shalamed*?

MARKOS 12, 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

For there is one Elohim;
and there is no other but he.
33 and to love him with all the heart
and with all the comprehension
and with all the soul and with all the strength
and to love his neighbor as himself
is much more than all whole holocausts and sacrifices.

34 And Yah Shua sees that he answers mindfully,
and says to him,
You are not far from the sovereignty of Elohim.
— and after that no one dares ask him any question.

YAH SHUA ASKS THE PHARISEES

35 And doctrinating in the priestal precinct,
Yah Shua answers, wording,
How word the scribes
that the Messiah is the son of David?
36 For David himself says in the Holy Spirit,
An oracle of Yah Veh to my Adonay,
Sit at my right
until I establish your enemies the stool of your feet.

37 So David himself words him, Adonay;
and whence is he so his son?
— and the vast multitude hear him gladly.

Psalms 110:1

38 And he words to them in his doctrine,
Observe the scribes who will to walk in stoles
and salutations in the markets
and the preeminent cathedras in the synagogues
and the preeminent reposings at suppers
40 — who devour houses of widows
and for a pretext make far out prayers:
these take superabundant judgment.

THE OFFERING OF THE WIDOW

41 And Yah Shua sits in front of the treasury
and observes how the multitude
casts copper into the treasury
— and many rich cast in much:
and a poor widow comes
and puts in two leptons — being a quarter.

42 And he calls his disciples to him,
and words to them,
Amen! I word to you,
That this poor widow casts in much more
than they all cast into the treasury:
44 for they all cast in from their surplus;
but she from her lack casts in all
— as much as she has — even all her subsistence.

THE MOUNT OF OLIVES MESSAGE OF YAH SHUA

13

And as he departs from the priestal precinct
one of his disciples words to him, Doctor, Behold!
What manner of stones! And what edifices!

2 And Yah Shua answering him, says,
Observe you these mega edifices?
Not one stone is allowed upon stone,
that is not disintegrated.

3 And as he sits on the mount of Olives
in front of the priestal precinct,
Petros and *Yaaqovos* and *Yahn* and *Andreas*
ask him privately,

4 Say to us, when become these?
And what sign
when all these are about to be fulfilled/*shalamed*?

MARK 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 And Jesus **Yah Shua** answering them began to say **word**,
Take heed **Observe**, lest any *man* deceive **one** seduce you:
6 For many shall come in my name,
saying **wording**, *I am Christ I AM*;
and shall deceive **seduce** many.
7 And when ye shall hear of wars and rumours of wars,
be **lament** ye not *troubled*: for such *things* must needs be;
but the **end completion/shalom** shall not be yet.
8 For *nation* **goyim** shall rise against *nation* **goyim**,
and *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
against *kingdom* **sovereigndom**:
and there shall be *earthquakes* **quakes** in divers places,
and there shall be famines and troubles:
these are the beginnings of *sorrows* **travails**.
9 But take heed **observe** to yourselves:
for they shall *deliver* **betray** you up to *councils* **sanhedrim**;
and in the synagogues ye shall be *beaten* **flogged**:
and ye shall be *brought* **set**
before rulers **in front of governors** and *kings* **sovereigns**
for my sake,
for a *testimony* **witness** against them.
10 And the *gospel* **evangelism**
must first be *published* **preached** among all *nations* **goyim**.
11 But when they shall lead you,
and *deliver* **betray** you up,
take no thought beforehand **have no preanxiety**
what ye shall speak,
neither *do ye premeditate* **preanticipate**:
but whatsoever shall be given you in that hour,
that speak ye:
for it is not ye that speak, but the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.
12 Now **And** the brother shall betray the brother to death,
and the father the *son* **child**;
and children shall rise up against their parents,
and shall cause them to be *put to death* **deathified**.
13 And ye shall be hated of all *men* for my name's sake:
but he that shall *endure* **abide**
unto the **end completion/shalom**,
the **this** same shall be saved.

TRIBULATION

14 But when ye shall see the abomination of desolation,
spoken of **rheterized** by *Daniel* **Dani El** the prophet,
standing where it *ought* **must** not,
(let him that readeth *understand* **comprehend**),
then let them that be in *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**
flee to the mountains:
15 And let him that is on the housetop
not go down into the house,
neither enter *therein*, to take *any thing* **ought** out of his house:
16 And let him that is in the field
not turn back again for to take up his garment.
17 But woe to them that *are with child* **have in womb**,
and to them that *give suck* **nipple** in those days!
18 And pray ye that your flight
be not in the *winter* **downpour**.
19 For in those days shall be *affliction* **tribulation**,
such as *was* **became** not from the beginning
of the creation which *God* **Elohim** created
unto *this time* **now**, neither shall be.
20 And *except* **unless**
that the *Lord* **Adonay** had shortened those days,
no flesh should be saved:
but for the *elect's* **select's** sake,
whom he hath *chosen* **selected**,
he hath shortened the days.
21 And then *if* **whenever** any *man* **one** shall say to you,
Lo **Behold**, here is *Christ* **the Messiah**;
or, *lo* **Behold**, he is there;
believe **trust** him not:
22 For *false Christs* **pseudo messiahs**
and *false* **pseudo** prophets shall rise,
and shall *shew* **give** signs and *wonders* **omens**,
to seduce, if it were possible, even the *elect* **select**.
23 But take ye heed **observe**: behold,
I have foretold you all *things*.
POST—TRIBULATION

24 But in those days, after that tribulation,
the sun shall be *darkened* **darken**,
and the moon shall not give her *light* **brilliance**,

MARKOS 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

5 And answering them, Yah Shua begins to word,
Observe, lest anyone seduce you:
6 For many come in my name, wording, I AM;
and seduce many:
7 and when you hear of wars and rumours of wars
lament not; for such must become:
but the completion/shalom is not yet:
for goyim rises against goyim
and sovereigndom against sovereigndom:
and quakes become in divers places
and famines and troubles become:
these are the beginnings of travails.
9 But observe to yourselves:
for they betray you to sanhedrim;
and flog you in the synagogues:
and set you in front of governors and sovereigns
for my sake — for a witness against them:
and the evangelism
must first be preached among all goyim.
11 But when they lead you and betray you,
neither have preanxiety of what to speak,
nor preanticipate:
but whatever is given you in that hour, speak:
for it is not you who speaks, but the Holy Spirit.
12 And brother betrays brother to death,
and father, child;
and children rise against parents
and have them deathified:
13 and you become hated of all for sake of my name:
but whoever abides to the completion/shalom is saved.

TRIBULATION

14 But when you see the abomination of desolation
rheterized by Dani El the prophet
standing where it must not
— whoever reads, comprehend:
to them in Yah Hudah, flee to the mountains:
and to him on the housetop,
neither descend to the house
nor enter to take aught from his house:
and to him in the field,
turn not back to take his garment:
and woe to them who have in womb
and to them who nipple in those days:
and pray that your flight be not in the downpour.
19 For in those days tribulation becomes
— such as become not
from the beginning of the creation Elohim created
to now
— nor ever becomes.
20 And unless Yah Vah shortens those days
no flesh is ever saved:
but for sake of the select whom he selects,
he shortens the days.
21 And then whenever anyone says to you,
Behold, here the Messiah! or, Behold, there!
trust not:
22 for pseudo messiahs and pseudo prophets rise
and give signs and omens
to seduce, if possible, even the select.
23 But observe! Behold! I foretell all.
POST—TRIBULATION

24 But in those days, after that tribulation,
the sun darkens
and the moon gives not her brilliance

MARK 13, 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

25 And the stars of the heaven shall fall,
and the *powers* **dynamis** that are in heaven
shall be shaken.
26 And then shall they see the Son of *man* **humanity**
coming in the clouds
with *great power* **vast dynamis** and glory.
27 And then shall he *send* **apostolize** his angels,
and shall gather together his *elect* **select**
from the four winds,
from the *uttermost part* **extremity** of the earth
to the *uttermost part* **extremity** of heaven.

THE PARABLE OF THE FIG TREE

28 Now **But** learn a parable of the fig tree;
When her branch *is yet* **becometh already** tender,
and *putteth forth* **sprouteth** leaves,
ye know that summer is near:
29 So **Thus also** ye *in like manner*,
when ye shall see these *things come to pass* **become**,
know that it is nigh, even at the *doors* **portals**.
30 Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
that this generation shall not pass,
till all these *things be done* **become**.
31 Heaven and earth shall pass away:
but my words shall not pass.
32 But of **concerning** that day and that hour
knoweth no *man* **one**,
no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither the Son,
but **except** the Father.

OBSERVE, WATCH, PRAY

33 Take ye heed **Observe**, watch and pray:
for ye know not when the *time* **season** is.
34 For the Son of man *is* as a *man* **human**
taking a far journey **having gone abroad**,
who left **forsook** his house,
and gave authority to his servants,
and to every man **each** his work,
and commanded **misvahed** the porter **portalguard** to watch.
35 So Watch ye *therefore*:
for ye know not when the *master* **adoni** of the house cometh,
at even, or at midnight,
or at the *cockcrowing* **roostervoic**,
or in the *early* morning:
36 Lest coming suddenly he find you sleeping.
37 And what I say **word** unto you I say **word** unto all, Watch.

14

After two days was the *feast of the passover* **pasach**,
and of *unleavened bread* **the matsah**:
and the *chief priests* **archpriests** and the scribes sought
how they might *take* **overpower** him by *craft* **deception**,
and *put him to death* **slaughter him**.
2 But they *said* **worded**, Not on the *feast day* **celebration**,
lest **ever** there be an *uproar* **a tumult** of the people.
YAH SHUA ANOINTED
3 And being in *Bethany* **Beth Ania**
in the house of *Simon* **Shimon** the leper,
as he *sat at meat* **reposed**,
there came a woman having an alabaster box
of *ointment* **myrrh** of *spikenard* **nard**,
very precious **vastly trustworthy**;
and she *brake* **crushed** the box **alabaster**,
and poured it on his head.
4 And there were some
that *had indignation* **indignified** within themselves,
and *said* **worded**,
Why was this *waste* **destruction**
of the *ointment made* **myrrh**?
5 For it might have been sold
for more than three hundred *pence* **denarion**,
and have been given to the poor.
And they *murmured* **sighed** against her.
6 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said,
Let **Allow** her *alone*; why *trouble* **embarrass** ye her?
she hath *wrought* **worked** a good work on me.
7 For ye have the poor with you always,
and whensoever ye will ye may do them *good* **well**:
but me ye have not always.
8 She hath done what she could:
she *is come aforehand* **hath anticipated**
to *anoint* **myrrh** my body to the *burying* **embalming**.

MARKOS 13, 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

25 And the stars of the heavens fall,
and the dynamis in the heavens shake;
26 and then they see the Son of humanity come in the clouds
with vast dynamis and glory.
27 And then he apostolizes his angels
and gathers his select from the four winds
— from the extremity of the earth
to the extremity of the heavens.
THE PARABLE OF THE FIG TREE
28 But learn a parable from the fig tree;
When her branch becomes already tender
and sprouts leaves,
you know summer is near:
29 thus also you,
when you see these become
you know it is near — even at the portals.
30 Amen! I word to you,
that this generation passes not until all these become:
31 the heavens and earth pass
but my words pass not:
32 but concerning that day and that hour,
no one knows
— no, neither the angels in the heavens, nor the Son
— except the Father.

OBSERVE, WATCH, PRAY

33 Observe, watch and pray:
for you know not when the season is.
34 For as a human who goes abroad
— who forsakes his house
and gives his servants authority
— to each his work
and also misvahs the portalguard to watch.
35 So you watch:
for you know not when the adoni of the house comes
— at evening or at midnight
or at the rooster voice or in the morning:
lest coming suddenly he finds you sleeping:
36 and what I word to you I word to all, Watch!

14

And the pasach and the matsah are two days after:
and the archpriests and the scribes seek
how to overpower him by deception,
and slaughter him:
2 but they word, Not on the celebration,
lest ever there be a tumult of the people.
YAH SHUA ANOINTED
3 And being in Beth Ania in the house of Shimon the leper,
as he reposes, a woman comes
having an alabaster of myrrh of nard
— vastly trustworthy;
and she crushes the alabaster
and pours it on his head.
4 And some are indignified within themselves,
and word,
Why is this destruction of the myrrh?
5 — for it could have been sold
for more than three hundred denarion
and given to the poor.
— and they sigh against her.
6 And Yah Shua says,
Allow her! Why embarrass her?
She works a good work on me.
7 For the poor you have with you always,
and whenever you will, ye do them well:
but me you have not always:
8 she did what she could:
she anticipated to myrrh my body to the embalming.

MARK 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 9 Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
Wheresoever this *gospel* **evangelism** shall be preached
throughout the whole *world* **cosmos**,
this also that she hath done
shall be spoken of for a memorial of her.
- YAH HUDAH PLANS TO BETRAY YAH SHUA**
- 10 And Judas Iscariot **Yah Hudah the urbanite**,
one of the twelve,
went unto the *chief* **arch** priests
to betray him unto them.
- 11 And when they heard it, they were *glad* **cheered**,
and *promised* **pre—evangelized** to give him *money* **silver**.
And he sought how
he might *conveniently* **opportunistly** betray him.
- PASACH PREPARATION**
- 12 And the first day of *unleavened bread* **matsah**,
when they *killed* **sacrificed** the *passover* **pasach**,
his disciples *said* **worded** unto him,
Where wilt thou that we go and prepare
that thou mayest eat the *passover* **pasach**?
- 13 And he *sendeth forth* **apostolizeth** two of his disciples,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto them, Go ye into the city,
and there shall meet you
a *man* **human** bearing a pitcher of water: follow him.
And wheresoever he shall *go in* **enter**,
say ye to the *goodman of the house* **housedespot**,
The *Master* *saith* **Doctor** **wordeth**,
Where is the *guestchamber* **lodge**,
where I shall eat the *passover* **pasach** with my disciples?
- 15 And he *will* **shall** shew you
a *large* **mega** upper room
furnished **spread** and prepared:
there *make ready* **prepare** for us.
- 16 And his disciples went forth, and came into the city,
and found **exactly** as he had said unto them:
and they *made ready* **prepared** the *passover* **pasach**.
- YAH SHUA PROPHECIES HIS BETRAYAL**
- 17 And *in the* **being** evening
he cometh with the twelve.
- 18 And as they *sat* **reposed** and did eat,
Jesus **Yah Shua** said,
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
One of you which eateth with me shall betray me.
- 19 And they began to be sorrowful,
and to *say* **word** unto him one by one, *Is it I?*
and another said, *Is it I?*
- 20 And he answered and said unto them,
It is one of the twelve,
that *dippeth* **baptizeth** with me in the dish.
- 21 The Son of *man* **humanity** indeed goeth,
exactly as it is *written of* **scribed concerning** him:
but woe to that *man* **human**
by whom the Son of *man* **humanity** is betrayed!
good were it for that *man* **human**
if he had never been *born* **birthed**.
- THE FINAL PASACH OF YAH SHUA**
- 22 And as they did eat, *Jesus* **Yah Shua** took bread,
and *blessed* **eulogized**, and brake it, and gave to them,
and said, Take, eat: this is my body.
- 23 And he took the cup,
and when he had *given thanks* **eucharistized**,
he gave it to them:
and they all drank of it.
- 24 And he said unto them,
This is my blood of the new *testament* **covenant**,
which is *shed* **poured** for many.
- 25 *Verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto you,
I *will* **shall** drink no more of the *fruit* **produce** of the vine,
until that day that I drink it new
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**.
- 26 And when they had *sung an hymn* **hymned**,
they went out into the mount of Olives.

MARKOS 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 9 Amen! I word to you,
Wherever this evangelism is preached
throughout the whole cosmos,
this also what she did
is spoken of in a memorial of her.
- YAH HUDAH PLANS TO BETRAY YAH SHUA**
- 10 And Yah Hudah the urbanite, one of the twelve,
goes to the archpriests to betray him to them.
- 11 And they hear and cheer;
and pre—evangelize to give him silver:
and he seeks how to opportunely betray him.
- PASACH PREPARATION**
- 12 And the first day of matsah,
when they sacrifice the pasach,
his disciples word to him,
Where will you,
that we go and prepare for you to eat the pasach?
- 13 And he apostolizes two of his disciples,
and words to them, Go to the city;
and there meet a human bearing a pitcher of water:
follow him.
- 14 And wherever he enters, say to the housedespot,es,
The Doctor words,
Where is the lodge
to eat the pasach with my disciples?
— and he shows you a mega upper room
spread and prepared:
and there prepare for us.
- 16 — and his disciples go, and come to the city;
and find exactly as he said to them:
and they prepare the pasach.
- YAH SHUA PROPHECIES HIS BETRAYAL**
- 17 And being evening,
he comes with the twelve:
and as they repose and eat, Yah Shua says,
Amen! I word to you,
One of you who eats with me betrays me.
- 19 And they begin to sorrow
and to word to him one by one, I?
— and another says, I?
- 20 And he answers them, saying,
It is one of the twelve,
who baptizes with me in the dish.
- 21 The Son of humanity indeed goes,
exactly as scribed concerning him:
but woe to that human
by whom the Son of humanity is betrayed!
Good for that human
if he had never been birthed.
- THE FINAL PASACH OF YAH SHUA**
- 22 And as they eat, Yah Shua takes bread,
and eulogizes and breaks and gives them,
and says, Take! Eat! This is my body.
- 23 And he takes the cup and eucharistizes;
and gives them:
and they all drink thereof.
- 24 And he says to them,
This is my blood of the new covenant,
poured for many.
- 25 Amen! I word to you,
I drink no more of the produce of the vine,
until that day
I drink it anew in the sovereigndom of Elohim.
— and they hymn and go to the mount of Olives.

MARK 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH SHUA PROPHECIES SCANDALIZING

27 And *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua wordeth** unto them,
All ye shall be *offended* **scandalized**
because of **in** me this night:
for it is *written* **scribed**,
I **will shall** smite the shepherd,
and the sheep shall be scattered.

28 But after that I am risen,
I **will shall** go before you into *Galilee* **Galiyl**.
Zechar Yah 13:7

YAH SHUA PROPHECIES THE DENIALS OF PETROS

29 But *Peter Petros* said unto him,
Although all shall be *offended* **scandalized**,
yet **will shall** not I.
30 And *Jesus saith* **Yah Shua wordeth** unto him,
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto thee,
That this day, even in this night,
before **ere** the *cock crow* **rooster voiceth** twice,
thou shalt deny me thrice.

31 But he *spake* **worded**
the more *vehemently* **superabundantly**,
If **Whenever** I *should* **must** die with thee,
I **will not shall never ever no way** deny thee *in any wise*.
Likewise also *said* **worded** they all.

YAH SHUA IN GATH SHEMEN

32 And they came to a *place* **parcel**
which was named *Gethsemane* **Geth Shemen**:
and he *saith* **wordeth** to his disciples,
Sit ye here, while I shall pray.
33 And he taketh with him *Peter Petros*
and *James Yaaqovos* and *John Yahn*,
and began to *be sore amazed* **utterly astonish**,
and to *be very heavy* **distress**;
34 And *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
My soul is exceeding sorrowful unto death:
tarry **abide** ye here, and watch.

THE FIRST GATH SHEMEN PRAYER OF YAH SHUA

35 And he *went forward* **proceeded** a little,
and fell on the *ground* **soil**, and prayed that,
if it were possible, the hour might pass from him.

36 And he *said* **worded**, Abba, Father,
all *things* are possible unto thee;
take away this cup from me:
nevertheless **yet** not what I will, but what thou *wilt*.

37 And he cometh, and findeth them sleeping,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto *Peter Petros*,
Simon Shimon, sleepest thou?
couldst not thou watch one hour?

38 Watch ye and pray,
lest ye enter into *temptation* **testing**.
The spirit *truly* **indeed** is *ready* **eager**,
but the flesh is *weak* **frail**.

THE SECOND GATH SHEMEN PRAYER OF YAH SHUA

39 And again he went away, and prayed,
and *spake* **said** the same words.
40 And when he returned, he found them asleep again,
(for their eyes were heavy,)
neither *wist* **knew** they what to answer him.

THE THIRD GATH SHEMEN PRAYER OF YAH SHUA

41 And he cometh the third time,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Sleep *on now* **finally**, and *take your* rest:
it is enough, the hour is come;
behold, the Son of *man* **humanity**
is betrayed into the hands of sinners.

42 Rise *up*, let us go; *lo* **behold**,
he that betrayeth me *is at hand* **approacheth**.

YAH HUDAH BETRAYS YAH SHUA

43 And *immediately* **straightway**, while he yet spake,
cometh *Judas* **Yah Hudah**, **being** one of the twelve,
and with him

a *great vast* multitude with swords and staves,
from the *chief* **arch** priests and the scribes
and the elders.

44 And he that betrayed him
had given them a *token* **signal**, *saying* **wording**,
Whomsoever I shall kiss, that same is he;
take **overpower** him, and lead him away *safely* **securely**.

45 And as soon as he was come,

MARKOS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH SHUA PROPHECIES SCANDALIZING

27 And Yah Shua words to them,
All you scandalize in me this night:
for it is scribed,
I smite the shepherd, and scatter the sheep.
28 But after I rise, I precede you into Galiyl.
Zechar Yah 13:7

YAH SHUA PROPHECIES THE DENIALS OF PETROS

29 And Petros says to him,
Although all scandalize, yet not I.

30 And Yah Shua words to him,
Amen! I word to you,
That this day, even in this night,
ere the rooster voices twice,
you deny me thrice.

31 But he words the more superabundantly,
If I must die with you, I never ever no way deny you.
— likewise they all also word.

YAH SHUA IN GATH SHEMEN

32 And they come to a parcel named Geth Shemen:
and he words to his disciples,
Sit here while I pray.

33 And he takes
Petros and Yaaqovos and Yahn with him,
and begins to utterly astonish and to distress;
34 and words to them,
My soul is exceeding sorrowful to death:
abide here, and watch.

THE FIRST GATH SHEMEN PRAYER OF YAH SHUA

35 And he proceeds a little,
and falls on the soil, and prays,
that if possible, the hour pass from him.

36 And he words, Abba, Father,
all are possible with you; take this cup from me:
yet not what I will, but what you.

37 And he comes, and finds them sleeping,
and words to Petros,
Shimon, are you sleeping?
Can you not watch one hour?

38 Watch and pray lest you enter into testing.
The spirit indeed is eager, but the flesh is frail.

THE SECOND GATH SHEMEN PRAYER OF YAH SHUA

39 And he goes again, and prays,
and says the same words:
40 and he returns, and again he finds them sleeping,
— for their eyes are heavy,
and they know not what to answer him.

THE THIRD GATH SHEMEN PRAYER OF YAH SHUA

41 And he comes the third time, and words to them,
Sleep, finally! and, Rest! Enough!
The hour is come!
Behold!

42 The Son of humanity is betrayed into the hands of sinners.
Rise! We go! Behold!
he who betrays me approaches.

YAH HUDAH BETRAYS YAH SHUA

43 And straightway, while he yet speaks,
Yah Hudah comes, being one of the twelve,
and with him a vast multitude with swords and staves
of the archpriests and the scribes and the elders.

44 And he who betrays him, gives them a signal,
wording, Whomever I kiss, is he;
overpower him, and lead him away securely.

45 And as soon as he comes,

MARK 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

he goeth straightway to him,
and saith **speake**, Master, master **Rabbi, rabbi;**
and **ardently** kissed him.
46 And they laid their hands on him,
and **took overpowered** him.
47 And one of them *that stood by* **present** drew a sword,
and smote a servant of the *high arch* priest
and **cut off removed** his ear **lobe**.
48 And **Jesus Yah Shua** answered and said unto them,
Are ye come out, as against a **thief robber**,
with swords and with staves to take me?
49 I was daily with you in the *temple* **priestal precinct**
teaching doctrinating, and ye **took overpowered** me not:
but the scriptures must be fulfilled/**shalamed**.
50 And they all forsook him, and fled.
51 And there followed him a *certain young man youth*,
having a linen cloth cast about his naked body
who arrayed his nakedness in linen;
and the *young men youths*
laid hold on **overpowered** him:
52 And he left the linen *cloth*, and fled from them naked.
53 And they led **Jesus Yah Shua** away
to the *high arch* priest
and with him were **assembled come together**
all the *chief arch* priests and the elders
and the scribes.
54 And **Peter Petros** followed him afar off,
even into the *palace courtyard* of the *high arch* priest
and he sat with the *servants attendants*,
and warmed himself at the fire.
55 And the *chief arch* priests
and all the *council sanhedrim*
sought for witness against **Jesus Yah Shua**
to **put deathify** him to death; and found none.
THE TRIAL OF YAH SHUA
56 For many
bare false witness pseudo—witnessed against him,
but their witness *agreed not together* **was not equal**.
57 And there arose *certain some*,
and *bare false witness pseudo—witnessed* against him,
saying wording,
58 We heard him *say word*,
I will **destroy shall disintegrate**
this *temple that is made with hands* **handmade nave**,
and *within by* three days I will **shall** build another
made without hands **not handmade**.
59 But neither so **thus**
did was their witness *agree together* **equal**.
60 And the *high arch* priest stood up in the midst,
and asked **Jesus Yah Shua**, *saying wording*,
Answerest thou *nothing naught*?
what is it which these witness against thee?
61 But he *held his peace hushed*,
and answered *nothing naught*.
Again the *high arch* priest asked him,
and said **worded** unto him,
Art thou the *Christ Messiah*, the Son of the *Blessed Eulogized*?
YAH SHUA AFFIRMS HIS DEITY
62 And **Jesus Yah Shua** said, *I am I AM:*
and ye shall see the Son of *man humanity*
sitting *on at* the right *hand of power* **the dynamis**,
and coming in the clouds of heaven.
63 Then **And** the *high arch* priest
rent ripped his *clothes tunic*,
and saith **wordeth**, What need we any further witnesses?
64 Ye have heard the blasphemy:
what *think* **manifesteth to ye**?
And they all condemned him to be *guilty of* **subject to death**.
65 And some began to spit on him,
and to cover his face, and to *buffet punch* him,
and to say **word** unto him, Prophecy:
and the *servants attendants*
did strike him with the palms of their hands slapped him.
THE FIRST DENIAL OF PETROS
66 And as **Peter Petros** was beneath
in the *palace courtyard*,
there cometh
one of the *maids lasses* of the *high arch* priest:

MARKOS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

he goes straightway to him,
and speaks, Rabbi! Rabbi!
— and ardently kisses him.
46 And they lay their hands on him,
and overpower him:
47 and one of them present draws a sword,
and smites a servant of the archpriest
and removes his ear lobe.
48 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Come you out, as against a robber,
with swords and with staves to take me?
49 I doctriated with you daily in the priestal precinct
and you overpowered me not
— except to fulfill/shalam the scriptures.
50 — and they all forsake him, and flee.
51 And a youth follows him,
who arrays his nakedness in linen;
and the youths overpower him;
52 and he leaves the linen,
and flees from them naked.
53 And they lead Yah Shua to the archpriest:
and all the archpriests and the elders and the scribes
come together with him:
54 and Petros follows him afar off
even into the courtyard of the archpriest;
and he sits with the attendants
and warms himself at the fire:
55 and the archpriests and all the sanhedrim
seek witness against Yah Shua to deathify him;
and find none.
THE TRIAL OF YAH SHUA
56 For many pseudo witness against him,
but their witness is not equal:
57 and some rise and pseudo witness against him,
wording,
58 We heard him word,
I disintegrate this handmade nave,
and by three days I build another not handmade.
59 — but neither thus is their witness equal.
60 And the archpriest stands in their midst
and asks Yah Shua, wording,
Answer you naught?
What witness these against you?
61 — but he hushes and answers naught.
Again the archpriest asks him, and words to him,
Are you the Messiah, the Son of the Eulogized?
YAH SHUA AFFIRMS HIS DEITY
62 And Yah Shua says, I AM:
and you see the Son of humanity
sitting at the right of the dynamis,
and coming in the clouds of the heavens.
63 And the archpriest rips his tunic, and words,
What need have we of any further witnesses?
64 You hear the blasphemy!
What manifests to you?
— and they all condemn him to be subject to death:
65 — and some begin to spit on him
and to cover his face and to punch him,
and word to him, Prophecy!
— and the attendants slap him.
THE FIRST DENIAL OF PETROS
66 And as Petros is below in the courtyard
one of the lasses of the archpriest comes;

MARK 14, 15

exeGes ready research BIBLE

67 And when she saw *Peter Petros* warming himself,
she looked upon him, and *said worded*,
And thou also
wast with *Jesus of Nazareth Yah Shua the Nazarene*.
68 But he denied, *saying wording*,
I know not,
neither understand I what thou *sayest wordest*.
And he went out into the *porch forecourt*;
and the *cock called rooster voiced*.

THE SECOND DENIAL OF PETROS

69 And a *maid lass* saw him again,
and began to *say word* to them *that stood by present*,
This is one of them.
70 And he denied it again.

THE THIRD DENIAL OF PETROS

And a little after,
they that stood by those present
said worded again to *Peter Petros*,
Surely Truly thou art one of them:
for thou art a *Galilaeen Galiliy*,
and thy speech *agreeth homologizeth thereto*.
71 But he began to *curse anathemetize*
and to *swear oath*, *saying*,
I know not this *man human* of whom ye *speak word*.
72 And the second time the *cock crew rooster voiced*.
And *Peter called to mind Petros remembered*
the *word rhema* that *Jesus Yah Shua* said unto him,
Before the *cock crew rooster voiceth* twice,
thou shalt *utterly* deny me thrice.
And when he thought thereon, he wept.

YAH SHUA BETRAYED TO PILATOS

15 And straightway in the *early morning*
the *chief arch* priests *held made* a consultation
with the elders and scribes
and the whole *council sanhedrim*,
and bound *Jesus Yah Shua*, and *carried bore* him away,
and delivered him to *Pilate Pilatos*.
2 And *Pilate Pilatos* asked him,
Art thou the *King Sovereign* of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*?
And he answering said unto them,
Thou *sayest wordest* it.
3 And the *chief arch* priests
accused him of *many things much*:
but he answered *nothing naught*.
4 And *Pilate Pilatos* asked him again, *saying wording*,
Answerest thou *nothing naught*? behold,
how *many things much* they witness against thee.
5 But *Jesus Yah Shua* yet answered *nothing naught*;
so that *Pilate Pilatos* marvelled.
6 Now at that *feast celebration*
he released unto them one prisoner,
whomsoever they *desired asked*.
7 And there was one *named Barabbas worded Bar Abbas*,
which lay bound with them
that had *made insurrection co—rioted* with him,
who had *committed done* murder in the *insurrection riot*.
8 And the multitude crying *aloud* began to *desire ask* him
to do *exactly* as he had even done unto them.
9 But *Pilate Pilatos* answered them, *saying wording*,
will ye that I release unto you
the *King Sovereign* of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*?
10 For he knew that the *chief arch* priests
had *delivered betrayed* him for envy.
11 But the *chief arch* priests
moved excited the *people multitude*,
that he should rather release *Barabbas Bar Abbas*
unto them.
12 And *Pilate Pilatos* answered and said again unto them,
What will ye then that I shall do unto him
whom ye *call word*
the *king sovereign* of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*?
13 And they cried out again, *Crucify him. Stake!*
14 Then *Pilate said And Pilatos worded* unto them,

MARKOS 14, 15

exeGes companion BIBLE

67 and she sees *Petros* warming himself,
and she looks on him, and words,
And you also were with *Yah Shua the Nazarene*.

68 But he denies, wording,
I neither know nor understand what you word.
— and he enters the forecourt;
and the rooster voices.

THE SECOND DENIAL OF PETROS

69 And again a lass sees him
and begins to word to those present,
This is one of them.
70 — and again he denies.

THE THIRD DENIAL OF PETROS

And a little after,
those present again word to *Petros*,
Truly you are one of them:
for you are a *Galiliy* and your speech homologizes.
71 And he begins to anathemetize and to oath,
I know not this human of whom you word.
72 — and the rooster voices the second time.

And *Petros remembers*
the *rhema Yah Shua* said to him,
Ere the rooster voices twice,
you utterly deny me thrice.
— and he thinks thereon, and weeps.

YAH SHUA BETRAYED TO PILATOS

15 And straightway in the *early morning*
the archpriests make a consultation
with the elders and scribes and the whole sanhedrim;
and bind *Yah Shua* and bear him away
and deliver him to *Pilatos*.
2 And *Pilatos* asks him,
Are you the *Sovereign* of the *Yah Hudiym*?
And he answers them, saying,
You have worded.
3 And the archpriests accuse him of much:
but he answers naught.
4 And again *Pilatos* asks him, wording,
Answer you naught? Behold!
How much they witness against you.
5 And *Yah Shua* still answers naught;
so that *Pilatos* marvels.
6 Now at every celebration
he releases one prisoner to them
— whomever they ask.
7 And someone worded *Bar Abbas*,
lies bound with them, who co—rioted with him
who did murder in the riot.
8 — and crying out, the multitude begins to ask him
to do exactly as he had even done to them.
9 And *Pilatos* answers them, wording,
will ye that I release to you
the *Sovereign* of the *Yah Hudiym*?
10 — for he knows that the archpriests
betray him for envy.
11 And the archpriests excite the multitude
that he rather release *Bar Abbas* to them.
12 And again *Pilatos* answers them, saying,
So what will you have me do to him
whom you word the *sovereign* of the *Yah Hudiym*?
13 And again they cry out, *Stake!*
14 And *Pilatos* words to them,

MARK 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Why **Indeed**, what evil hath he done?
And they cried out the more **exceedingly superabundantly**,
15 *Crucify him. Stake!*
And so Pilate **Pilatos**,
willing to content **satisfy** the *people* **multitude**,
released *Barabbas* **Bar Abbas** unto them,
and delivered *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
when he had *scourged* **whipped** him,
to be *crucified* **staked**.
16 And the *soldiers* **warriors** led him away
into the *hall* **courtyard**, called the Praetorium;
and they call together the whole *band* **squad**.
17 And they *clothed* **endued** him with purple,
and *platted* **braided** a *crown* **wreath** of thorns,
and put it about his head,
18 And began to salute him,
Hail **Cheers, King Sovereign** of the Jews **Yah Hudiym!**
19 And they *smote* **struck** him on the head with a reed,
and *did* spit upon him,
and *bowing* **placing** their knees worshipped him.
20 And when they had mocked him,
they *took off* **stripped** the purple from him,
and *put* **endued** his own clothes on him,
and led him out to *crucify* **stake** him.
21 And they compel one *Simon* **Shimon** a Cyrenian,
who passed by, coming out of the *country* **field**,
the father of Alexander and Rufus, to bear his *cross* **stake**.
22 And they bring him
unto the place *Golgotha* **Gulgoleth**,
which is, *being interpreted* **translated**,
The place of a skull **Cranium Place**.
23 And they gave him to drink
wine *mingled* with **tincture** of myrrh:
but he *received* **took** it not.

YAH SHUA STAKED

24 And when they had *crucified* **staked** him,
they *parted* **divided** his garments,
casting lots upon them, what every man should take.
25 And it was the third hour,
and they *crucified* **staked** him.
26 And the *superscription* **epigraph** of his accusation
was *written over* **epigraphed**,
THE KING **SOVEREIGN** OF THE *Jews* **YAH HUDIYM**.
27 And with him they *crucify* **stake** two *thieves* **robbers**;
the one *on* **at** his right *hand*,
and the *other* **on** **one** at his left.
28 And the scripture was fulfilled/**shalamed**,
which *saith* **wordeth**,
And he was *numbered* **reckoned**
with the *transgressors* **torah violators**.
Yesha Yah 53:9, 12
29 And they that passed by *railed on* **blasphemed** him,
wagging their heads, and *saying* **wording**, *Ah Aha*,
thou that *destroyest* **disintegratest** the *temple* **nave**,
and *buildest* it in three days,
30 Save thyself, and come down from the *cross* **stake**.
31 Likewise also the *chief* **arch** priests mocking
said **worded** among *themselves* **one another**
with the scribes,
He saved others; himself he cannot save.
32 *Let Christ* **The Messiah!**
the *King* **Sovereign** of *Israel* **Yisra El!**
descend now from the *cross* **stake**,
that we may see and *believe* **trust**.
And they that were *crucified* **staked** with him
reviled **reproached** him.
33 And *when* **being** the sixth hour was *come*,
there was darkness **became** over the whole *land* **earth**
until the ninth hour.
34 And at the ninth hour
Jesus **Yah Shua** cried with a *loud* **mega** voice,
saying **wording**, Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?
which is, *being interpreted* **translated**,
My God **Elohim**, *my God* **Elohim**,
why hast thou forsaken me?

Psalms 22:1

35 And some of them *that stood by* **present**,
when they heard it, *said* **worded**, Behold,
he *calleth* **Elias** **voiceth** to **Eli Yah**.

MARKOS 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Indeed, what evil did he?
And they cry out the more superabundantly, Stake!
15 And Pilatos, willing to satisfy the multitude,
releases Bar Abbas to them,
and delivers Yah Shua, to whip and to stake.
16 And the warriors lead him away
into the courtyard — the Praetorium;
and they call the whole squad together:
17 and they endue him with purple
and braid a wreath of thorns
and put it around his head.
18 And they begin to salute him,
Cheers! Sovereign of the Yah Hudiym!
19 — and they strike him on the head with a reed
and spit on him;
and placing their knees they worship him:
20 and as they mock him
they strip the purple from him;
and endue his own clothes on him
and lead him out to stake him:
21 and they compel one Shimon a Cyrenian,
who passes by, coming from the field,
the father of Alexander and Rufus, to bear his stake.
22 And they bring him to the place Gulgoleth,
which translates, Cranium Place.
23 And they give him wine with tincture of myrrh
to drink:
but he takes it not.

YAH SHUA STAKED

24 And they stake him, and divide his garments,
casting lots upon them, whatever man takes.
25 And it is the third hour, and they stake him:
26 and the epigraph of his accusation is epigraphed,
THE SOVEREIGN OF THE YAH HUDIYM.
27 And they stake two robbers with him
— the one at his right and the one at his left.
to fulfill/shalam the scripture that words,
And he is reckoned with the torah violators.
Yesha Yah 53:9,12
29 And all who pass by blaspheme him,
wagging their heads, and wording, Aha,
you who disintegrates the nave
and builds it in three days:
30 Save yourself! and, Come down from the stake!
31 Likewise also the archpriests with the scribes
mock words among one another;
He saved others! Himself he cannot save!
32 The Messiah! The Sovereign of Yisra El!
Descend now from the stake,
so that we see and trust.
— and those staked with him, reproach him.
33 And being the sixth hour;
darkness becomes over the whole earth
until the ninth hour.
34 And at the ninth hour
Yah Shua cries with a mega voice,
wording, Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?
which translates,
My Elohim, my Elohim, why forsake you me?
Psalms 22:1
35 And some of them present hear,
and word, Behold! He voices to Eli Yah.

MARK 15, 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 36 And one ran and filled a sponge full of vinegar,
and put it on a reed, and gave him to drink,
saying **wording**. *Let alone Allow*;
let us see whether *Elias will Eli Yah shall* come
to take him down.
- 37 And **Jesus Yah Shua**
cried with a loud **released a mega** voice,
and gave up the ghost **expired**.
- REACTIONS: MATERIAL AND PHYSICAL**
- 38 And the veil of the *temple nave* was **rent split** in twain
from the *top above* to the *bottom below*.
- 39 And when the centurion,
which *stood over against* was **present opposite** him,
saw that he so **thus** cried out,
and gave up the ghost **expired**, he said,
Truly this *man human* was the Son of *God Elohim*.
- 40 There were also women *looking on observing* afar off:
among whom was *Mary Miryam the Magdalene*,
and *Mary Miryam*
the mother of *James Yaaqovos* the less and of *Joses Yoses*,
and *Salome Shalome*;
- 41 (Who also, when he was in *Galilee Galiyl*,
followed him, and ministered unto him);
and many other women
which *came up ascended* with him
unto *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
- YAH SHUA ENTOMBED**
- 42 And *now when the even* was come **already being evening**,
because it was the preparation,
that is, the *day before the sabbath foreshabbath*,
- 43 *Joseph Yoseph of Arimathaea Rahmah*,
an *honourable a respected* counsellor,
which also *waited for awaited*
the *kingdom sovereignty* of *God Elohim*,
came, and *went in boldly dared go in* unto *Pilate Pilatos*,
and *craved asked for* the body of *Jesus Yah Shua*.
- 44 And *Pilate Pilatos* marvelled if he were already dead:
and calling unto him the centurion,
he asked him whether he had been *any while long* dead.
- 45 And when he knew it of the centurion,
he gave **granted** the body to *Joseph Yoseph*.
- 46 And he bought *fine* linen, and took him down,
and wrapped him in the linen,
and laid him in a *sepulchre tomb*
which was hewn out of a rock,
and rolled a stone
unto the *door portal* of the *sepulchre tomb*.
- 47 And *Mary Miryam the Magdalene*
and *Mary Miryam the mother of Joses Yoses*
beheld observed where he was *laid placed*.
- YAH SHUA RESURRECTED**
- 16** And when the *sabbath shabbath* was past,
Mary Miryam the Magdalene,
and *Mary Miryam the mother of James Yaaqovos*,
and *Salome Shalome*,
had bought *sweet spices aromatics*,
that they might come and anoint him.
- 2 And very early in the morning
the *first day of the week shabbaths*,
they came unto the *sepulchre tomb*
at the rising of the sun.
- 3 And they *said worded* among themselves,
Who shall roll us away the stone
from the *door portal* of the *sepulchre tomb*?
- 4 And when they looked,
they saw **observed** that the stone was rolled away:
for it was *very great extremely mega*.
- 5 And entering into the *sepulchre tomb*,
they saw a *young man youth* sitting *on at* the right *side*,
clothed arrayed in a *long white garment stole*;
and they were *affrighted utterly astonished*.
- 6 And he *saith wordeth* unto them,
Be not *affrighted utterly astonished*:
Ye seek *Jesus of Nazareth Yah Shua the Nazarene*,
which was *crucified staked*:
he is risen; he is not here:
behold, the place where they *laid placed* him.
- 7 But go your way,
tell say to his disciples and *Peter Petros*

MARKOS 15, 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 36 And one runs and fills a sponge full of vinegar,
and puts it on a reed, and gives him to drink,
wording, Allow!
We see whether Eli Yah comes to take him down.
- 37 And Yah Shua releases a mega voice, and expires.
- REACTIONS: MATERIAL AND PHYSICAL**
- 38 And the veil of the nave splits in two
from above to below.
- 39 And the centurion who is present opposite him,
sees that he thus cries out, and expires,
he says, Truly this human is the Son of Elohim.
- 40 There are also women observing afar off:
among whom is Miryam the Magdalene,
and Miryam
the mother of Yaaqovos the less and of Yoses,
and Shalome;
- 41 — who also, when he was in Galiyl,
followed him, and ministered to him
and many other women
who ascended with him to Yeru Shalem.
- YAH SHUA ENTOMBED**
- 42 And already, being evening;
and because it is the preparation
— that is, the foreshabbath,
- 43 Yoseph of Rahmah, a respected counsellor,
who also awaits the sovereignty of Elohim,
comes, and dares to go to Pilatos,
and asks for the body of Yah Shua.
- 44 And Pilatos marvels if he is already dead:
and calling the centurion to him,
he asks whether he had long died:
and knowing from the centurion,
he grants the body to Yoseph.
- 45
- 46 And he buys linen, and takes him down,
and wraps him in the linen;
and lays him in a tomb hewn from a rock,
and rolls a stone to the portal of the tomb.
- 47 And Miryam the Magdalene
and Miryam the mother of Yoses
observe where he is placed.
- YAH SHUA RESURRECTED**
- 16** And the shabbath passes,
and Miryam the Magdalene
and Miryam the mother of Yaaqovos and Shalome
buy aromatics to go and anoint him:
and very early in the morning
on the first of the shabbaths,
they go to the tomb at the rising of the sun.
- 2
- 3 And they word among themselves,
Who rolls away the stone
from the portal of the tomb for us?
- 4 And they look
and observe the stone is rolled away:
for it is extremely mega.
- 5 And entering the tomb
they see a youth arrayed in a white stole
sitting at the right;
and they are utterly astonished.
- 6 And he words to them,
Be not utterly astonished:
You seek Yah Shua the Nazarene who was staked:
He is risen! He is not here!
Behold! The place where they placed him!
- 7 But go your way,
say to his disciples and Petros

MARK 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 that he goeth before **precedes** you into Galilee Galiyl:
there shall ye see him, **exactly** as he said unto you.
And they went out quickly,
and fled from the *sepulchre tomb*;
for they trembled
and were amazed **ecstasis overtook them**:
neither said they *any thing aught* to any man one;
for they were *afraid awestricken*.
9 Now when Jesus was **Having** risen early
the morning of the first day of the week **shabbaths**,
he appeared **manifested** first to Mary **Miryam the** Magdalene,
out of whom he had cast seven *devils demons*.
10 And she went
and **told evangelized** them that had been with him,
as they mourned and wept.
11 And they, when they had heard that he was alive,
and had been *seen observed* of her,
believed not distrusted.
12 After that he appeared in another form
unto two of them,
as they walked, and went into the *country field*.
13 And they went and **told evangelized** it
unto *the residue those remaining*:
neither *believed trusted* they them.
14 Afterward he appeared unto the eleven
as they *sat at meat reposed*,
and **upbraided them with reproached**
their *unbelief trustlessness*
and *hardness of heart hard—heartedness*,
because they *believed trusted* not them
which had *seen observed* him after he was risen.
15 **YAH SHUA APOSTOLIZES THE TRUSTING**
And he said unto them,
Go ye into all the *world cosmos*,
and preach the *gospel evangelism*
to every *creature all creation*.
16 He that *believeth trusteth* and is baptized
shall be saved;
but and he that *believeth not distrusteth*
shall be *damned condemned*.
17 **SIGNS FOLLOW THE TRUSTERS**
And these signs shall follow them that *believe trust*;
In my name shall they cast out *devils demons*;
they shall speak with new tongues;
18 They shall take *up serpents*;
and if they drink *any aught deadly thing*,
it shall not *hurt injure* them;
they shall lay hands on the sick,
and they shall *recover become well*.
Loukas 10:19, 20

YAH SHUA TAKEN

19 **But So indeed then**
after the Lord **Adonay** had spoken unto them,
he was *received taken up* into heaven,
and sat on **at** the right *hand of God Elohim*.
20 **SIGNS CONFIRM THE WORD**
And they went forth, and preached every where,
the Lord working with them Adonay co—working,
and confirming the word *with by* signs following.
Amen.

MARKOS 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

that he precedes you into Galiyl:
there you see him, exactly as he said to you.
8 And they go quickly and flee the tomb;
for they tremble and ecstasis overtakes them:
and they say naught to anyone;
for they are awestricken.
9 Having risen early the morning of the first shabbaths,
he first manifests himself to Miryam the Magdalene
from whom he had cast seven demons.
10 And she goes
and evangelizes them who had been with him,
— mourning and weeping.
11 And they, when they hear he is alive,
and that she observed him, distrust.
12 And after these,
he appears in another form to two of them,
as they walk and go into the field:
13 and they go and evangelize to those remaining:
and they trust them not.
14 Afterward he appears to the eleven as they repose,
and reproaches their trustlessness
and hard—heartedness
because they trusted not them
who observed him after he rose.
15 **YAH SHUA APOSTOLIZES THE TRUSTING**
And he says to them,
Go into all the cosmos
and preach the evangelism to all creation.
16 Whoever trusts and is baptized is saved;
and whoever distrusts is condemned.
17 **SIGNS FOLLOW THE TRUSTERS**
And these signs follow them who trust:
In my name they cast out demons;
they speak with new tongues;
they take serpents;
and if they drink aught deadly, it injures them not;
they lay hands on the sick, and they become well.
Loukas 10:19, 20
19 **YAH SHUA TAKEN**
And so indeed, after Adonay speaks to them,
he is taken into the heavens,
and sits at the right of Elohim.
20 **SIGNS CONFIRM THE WORD**
And they go and preach every where
— Adonay co—working
and confirming the word by signs following.
Amen.

LUKE 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

INTRODUCTION

1 Forasmuch as **Since indeed**
 many have taken in hand to set forth in order
 a declaration of **about** those *things* **matters**
 which are *most surely believed* **fully borne** among us,
 2 Even as they delivered them unto us,
 which from the beginning
 were *eyewitnesses* **saw for ourselves**,
 and *ministers* **became attendants** of the word;
 3 *It seemed good to me* **I thought** also,
 having *had perfect understanding* **followed precisely**
 of all *things* from the very first **above**,
 to write **scribe** unto thee in order **sequence**,
 most excellent *Theophilus* **powerful Theo Philus**,
 4 That thou mightest know
 the certainty of those *things* **words**,
 wherein **about which**
 thou hast been *instructed* **catechized**.
THE BIRTH OF YAHN THE BAPTIZER FORETOLD
 5 There was **became** in the days of Herod,
 the king **sovereign** of *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**,
 a certain priest named *Zacharias* **Zechar Yah**,
 of the course of *Abia* **Abi Yah**:
 and his wife **woman**
 was of the daughters of *Aaron* **Aharon**,
 and her name was *Elisabeth* **Eli Sheba**.
 6 And they were both *righteous* **just**
 before God **in the sight of Elohim**,
 walking in all
 the *commandments* **misvoth** and *ordinances* **judgments**
 of the Lord **Yah Veh** blameless.
 7 And they had no child,
 because that *Elisabeth* **as Eli Sheba** was barren **sterile**,
 and they both were
now well stricken in years **advanced in days**.
 8 And it came to pass **became**,
 that while he
 executed the *priest's office* **priested**
 before God **at the face of Elohim**
 in the order of his course,
 9 According to the custom of the *priest's office* **priesthood**,
 his lot was to *burn incense*
 when he went **entered**
 into the temple **nave** of the Lord **Yah Veh**.
 10 And the whole multitude of the people
 were praying without at the *time* **hour** of incense.
 11 And there appeared unto him
 an angel of the Lord **Yah Veh**
 standing **on** at the right *side* of the **sacrifice** altar of incense.
 12 And when *Zacharias* **Zechar Yah** saw him,
 he was troubled, and *fear* **awe** fell upon him.
 13 But the angel said unto him,
Fear **Awe** not, *Zacharias* **Zechar Yah**:
 for thy *prayer* **petition** is heard;
 and thy wife *Elisabeth* **woman Eli Sheba**
 shall bear **birth** thee a son,
 and thou shalt call his name *John* **Yahn**.
 14 And thou shalt have joy **he shall be thy cheer**
 and *gladness* **thy jumping for joy**;
 and many shall *rejoice* **cheer** at his birth.
 15 For he shall be *great* **mega** in the sight of the Lord **Yah Veh**,
 and shall not **no way** drink
 neither wine nor *strong drink* **intoxicants**;
 and he shall be filled/**shalamed** with the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
 even from his mother's womb.
 16 And many of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
 shall he turn to the Lord **Yah Veh** their God **Elohim**.
 17 And he shall go before **precede** him
 in the spirit and *power* **dynamis** of *Elias* **Eli Yah**
 to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children,
 and the *disobedient* **distrusting**
 to the *wisdom* **thought** of the just;
 to make ready **prepare** a people
 prepared for the Lord **Yah Veh**.
 18 And *Zacharias* **Zechar Yah** said unto the angel,
 Whereby shall I know this? for I am *an old man* **elderly**,
 and my wife **woman**
well stricken **advanced** in years **days**.

LOUKAS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

INTRODUCTION

1 Since indeed
 many took in hand to set forth in order
 a declaration about those matters
 which are fully borne among us
 — even as they delivered to us;
 2 who from the beginning saw for ourselves
 and became attendants of the word;
 3 I thought also,
 having precisely followed all from above,
 to scribe to you in sequence,
 most powerful Theo Philus,
 4 that you know the certainty of those words
 about which you have been catechized.
THE BIRTH OF YAHN THE BAPTIZER FORETOLD
 5 And so be it,
 in the days of Herod the sovereign of Yah Hudah
 there was a priest named Zechar Yah,
 of the course of Abi Yah:
 and his woman of the daughters of Aharon;
 and her name, Eli Sheba:
 6 and both are just in the sight of Elohim,
 and walk blameless
 in all the misvoth and judgments of Yah Veh:
 and they have no child, as Eli Sheba is sterile;
 and they both are advanced in days.
 7 And so be it,
 8 as he priests at the face of Elohim
 in the order of his course
 according to the custom of the priesthood,
 his lot is to incense
 as he enters the nave of Yah Veh:
 10 and outside, the whole multitude of the people
 is praying at the hour of incense.
 11 And an angel of Yah Veh appears to him
 standing at the right of the sacrifice altar of incense:
 12 and Zechar Yah sees him
 and he is troubled and awe befalls him.
 13 But the angel says to him, Awe not, Zechar Yah:
 for your petition is heard;
 and your woman Eli Sheba births you a son:
 and call his name Yahn:
 14 and he becomes your cheer
 and your jumping for joy;
 and many cheer at his birth:
 15 for he becomes mega in the sight of Yah Veh,
 and no way drinks wine or intoxicants;
 and he is fills full/shalams with the Holy Spirit
 even from the womb of his mother:
 16 and he turns many of the sons of Yisra El
 to Yah Veh their Elohim:
 17 and he precedes him
 in the spirit and dynamis of Eli Yah
 to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children,
 and the distrusting to the thought of the just;
 to prepare a people — prepared for Yah Veh.
 18 And Zechar Yah says to the angel,
 By what know I this?
 For I am elderly, and my woman advanced in days.

LUKE 1

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

19 And the angel answering said unto him,
I am *Gabriel* **Gabri El**,
that stand in the *presence* **sight** of *God* **Elohim**;
and am *sent* **apostolized** to speak unto thee,
and to *shew* **evangelize** thee *these glad tidings*.
20 And, behold,
thou shalt be *dumb* **hushed**, and not able to speak,
until the day that these *things* shall be *performed*,
because thou *believest* **trustest** not my words,
which shall be fulfilled/**shalamed** in their season.
21 And the people
waited for Zacharias **awaited Zechar Yah**,
and marvelled that he *tarried so long* **took his time**
in the *temple* **nave**.
22 And when he came out, he could not speak unto them:
and they *perceived* **knew**
that he had seen a vision in the *temple* **nave**:
for he *beckoned* **nodded** unto them,
and *remained speechless* **continually abode mute**.
23 And **so be** it *came to pass*, that,
as soon as the days of his *ministration* **liturgy**
were *accomplished*/**shalamed**,
he departed to his own house.
24 And after those days
his *wife Elisabeth* **woman Eli Sheba** conceived,
and *hid* **concealed** herself five months, *saying* **wording**,
25 Thus hath *the Lord dealt* **Yah Veh done** with me
in the days wherein he *looked on* **regarded me**,
to *take away* **remove** my reproach among *men* **humanity**.

THE BIRTH OF YAH SHUA FORETOLD

26 And in the sixth month the angel *Gabriel* **Gabri El**
was *sent* **apostolized** from *God* **Elohim**
unto a city of *Galilee* **Galiyl**, named Nazareth,
27 To a virgin
espoused to a man whose name was *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
of the house of David;
and the virgin's name was *Mary* **Miryam**.
28 And the angel came in unto her, and said,
Hail **Cheers**,
thou that art *highly favoured* **O charised* one**:
the Lord is **Yah Veh be** with thee:
blessed **eulogized** art thou among women.
29 And when she saw him,
she was troubled at his *saying* **word**,
and *cast in her mind* **reasoned**
what manner of salutation this should be.

*verb of charis

30 And the angel said unto her,
Fear **Awe** not, *Mary* **Miryam**:
for thou hast found *favour* **charism** with *God* **Elohim**.
31 And, behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb,
and *bring forth* **birth** a son,
and shalt call his name *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.
32 He shall be *great* **mega**,
and shall be called the Son of *the Highest* **Elyon**:
and *the Lord God* **Yah Veh Elohim**
shall give unto him the throne of his father David:
33 And he shall reign over the house of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**
for ever **unto the eons**;
and of his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
there shall be no *end* **finality**.
34 Then said *Mary* **Miryam** unto the angel,
How shall this be, *seeing* **since** I know not a man?
35 And the angel answered and said unto her,
The Holy *Ghost* **Spirit** shall come upon thee,
and the *power* **dynamis** of *the Highest* **Elyon**
shall overshadow thee:
therefore **so** also that holy *thing*
which *shall be born of thee* **thou shalt birth**
shall be called the Son of *God* **Elohim**.
36 And, behold, thy cousin *Elisabeth* **Eli Sheba**,
she hath also conceived a son in her *old age* **senescence**:
and this is the sixth month with her,
who was called *barren* **sterile**.
37 For with *God* **Elohim** *nothing* **no rhema** shall be impossible.
38 And *Mary* **Miryam** said,
Behold the *handmaid* **maiden** of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**;
be it unto me according to thy *word* **rhema**.
And the angel departed from her.

LOUKAS 1

exeGeses companion BIBLE

19 And the angel answers him, saying,
I am *Gabri El* who stands in the sight of *Elohim*;
and am *apostolized* to speak to you
and to evangelize you:
20 and behold, you become hushed
and not able to speak
until the day these become
— because you trust not
my words to fulfill/**shalam** in their season.
21 And the people await *Zechar Yah*
and marvel that he takes his time in the nave:
22 and he comes out and cannot speak to them:
and they know he saw a vision in the nave
— for he nods to them and continually abides mute.
23 And so be it,
as soon as he fulfills/**shalams** the days of his liturgy,
he departs to his own house.
24 And after those days
his woman *Eli Sheba* conceives
and conceals herself five months, wording,
25 Thus *Yah Veh* does with me
in the days wherein he regards me
to remove my reproach among humanity.

THE BIRTH OF YAH SHUA FORETOLD

26 And in the sixth month
Elohim apostolizes the angel *Gabri El*
to a city of *Galiyl* named Nazareth
— to a virgin espoused to a man
whose name is *Yoseph* of the house of David;
and the name of the virgin is *Miryam*.
27
28 And the angel comes to her, and says,
Cheers, O *charised** one:
Yah Veh be with you:
eulogized *are* you among women.
29 — and she sees him, and is troubled at his word;
and reasons what manner of salutation this is.
*verb of charis
30 And the angel says to her, *Awe* not, *Miryam*:
for you find *charism* with *Elohim*.
31 And behold, you conceive in your womb
and birth a son: and call his name *Yah Shua*.
32 He becomes *mega*
and is called the Son of *Elyon*:
and *Yah Veh Elohim*
gives him the throne of his father David:
33 and he reigns over the house of *Yaaqov*
to the eons;
and there is no finality of his sovereigndom.
34 So *Miryam* says to the angel,
How becomes this, since I know not a man?
35 And the angel answers her, saying,
The Holy Spirit comes upon you
and the dynamis of *Elyon* overshadows you:
so also that holy *one* birthed of you
is called the Son of *Elohim*.
36 And behold, your cousin *Eli Sheba*
also conceives a son in her senescence:
and this is her sixth month — who is called sterile:
37 for with *Elohim* no rhema is impossible.
38 And *Miryam* says,
Behold the maiden of *Yah Veh*;
so be it to me according to your rhema.
— and the angel departs from her.

LUKE 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

MIRYAM VISITS ELI SHEBA

39 And *Mary* **Miryam** arose in those days,
and went into the *hill country* **mountains**
with *haste* **diligence**,
into a city of *Juda* **Yah Hudah**;
40 And entered into the house of *Zacharias* **Zechar Yah**,
and saluted *Elisabeth* **Eli Sheba**.

THE SONG OF ELI SHEBA

41 And **so be** it *came to pass*, that,
when *Elisabeth* **Eli Sheba**
heard the salutation of *Mary* **Miryam**,
the *babe* **infant** leaped in her womb;
and *Elisabeth* **Eli Sheba** was filled/**shalamed**
with the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**:
42 And she *spake out* **exclaimed** with a *loud* **mega** voice,
and said,
Blessed **Eulogized** art thou among women,
and *blessed* **eulogized** is the fruit of thy womb.
43 And whence is this to me,
that the mother of my *Lord* **Adonay** should come to me?
44 For, *lo* **behold**,
as soon as the voice of thy salutation
sounded **became** in mine ears,
the *babe* **infant** leaped in my womb **and jumped** for joy.
45 And blessed is she that *believed* **trusted**:
for there shall be a *performance* **fulfilling/shalam**
of those *things* which were *told* **spoken to** her
from the *Lord* **Yah Veh**.

THE SONG OF MIRYAM

46 And *Mary* **Miryam** said,
My soul *doth magnify* the *Lord* **magnifieth Yah Veh**,
47 And my spirit *hath rejoiced* **jumpeth for joy**
in *God* **Elohim** my Saviour.
48 For he hath *regarded* **looked upon**
the *low estate* **humiliation** of his *handmaiden* **maiden**:
for, behold,
from *henceforth* **now on** all generations shall call me blessed.
49 For he that is *mighty* **able**
hath *done to* **dealt with** me *great things* **magnificently**;
and holy is his name.
50 And his mercy *is* on them that *fear* **awe** him
from generation to generation.
51 He hath *shewed strength* **dealt power** with his arm;
he hath scattered the proud
in the *imagination* **mind** of their hearts.
52 He hath put down the *mighty* **dynasties**
from their *seats* **thrones**,
and exalted *them of low degree* **the humble**.
53 He hath filled/**shalamed** the hungry with good *things*;
and the rich he hath *sent* **apostolized forth** empty away.
54 He hath *holpen* **supported** his *servant* **Israel lad Yisra El**,
in remembrance of his **to remember** mercy;
55 **Exactly** As he *spake to* our fathers,
to Abraham,
and to his *seed for ever* **sperma unto the eons**.
56 And *Mary* **Miryam** abode with her about three months,
and returned to her own house.

THE BIRTH OF YAHN THE BAPTIZER

57 Now *Elisabeth's full* **Eli Sheba's** time
came/was **shalamed**
that she should *be delivered* **birth**;
and she *brought forth* **birthed** a son.
58 And her *neighbours* **fellow settlers** and her *cousins* **kindred**
heard how the *Lord* **Yah Veh**
had *shewed great mercy upon* **magnified** her;
and they rejoiced with her.
59 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
that on the eighth day they came to circumcise the child;
and they called him *Zacharias* **Zechar Yah**,
after the name of his father.
60 And his mother answered and said, *Not so* **Indeed not**;
but he shall be called *John* **Yahn**.
61 And they said unto her,
There is none of thy kindred that is called by this name.
62 And they *made signs* **noded** to his father,
how he *would* **willed to** have him called.
63 And he asked for a *writing table* **tablet**,
and *wrote* **scribed**, *saying* **wording**,

LOUKAS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

MIRYAM VISITS ELI SHEBA

39 And in those days,
Miryam rises with diligence
and goes to the mountains to a city of Yah Hudah;
40 and enters the house of Zechar Yah
and salutes Eli Sheba.

THE SONG OF ELI SHEBA

41 And so be it,
when Eli Sheba hears the salutation of Miryam,
the infant leaps in her womb;
and Eli Sheba fullfills/shalams with the Holy Spirit.
42 And with a mega voice, she exclaims and says,
Eulogized — you among women!
And eulogized — the fruit of your womb!
43 And whence *is* this to me,
that the mother of my Adonay comes to me?
44 For behold,
as soon as the voice of your salutation
became in my ears,
the infant leaped in my womb and jumped for joy:
45 and blessed is she who trusts:
for there becomes a fulfilling/shalaming
of those spoken to her by Yah Veh.

THE SONG OF MIRYAM

46 And Miryam says, My soul magnifies Yah Veh,
47 and my spirit jumps for joy in Elohim my Saviour:
48 for he looked upon the humiliation of his maiden:
for behold,
from now on all generations call me blessed:
49 for he who is able does magnificently with me
and holy *is* his name.
50 And his mercy *is* on them who awe him
from generation to generation.
51 He deals power with his arm;
52 he scatters the proud in the mind of their hearts;
he puts down the dynasties from their thrones
and exalts the humble:
53 he fills/shalams the famished with good
and the rich he apostolizes forth empty:
54 he supports his lad Yisra El to remember mercy;
55 exactly as he spoke to our fathers,
to Abraham, and to his sperma to the eons.
56 — and Miryam abides with her about three months
and returns to her own house.

THE BIRTH OF YAHN THE BAPTIZER

57 And the time for Eli Sheba to birth fulfills/shalams;
and she births a son:
58 and her fellow settlers and her kindred
hear how Yah Veh magnifies her;
and they rejoice with her.
59 And so be it,
on the eighth day they come to circumcise the child;
and they call him Zechar Yah
after the name of his father.
60 And his mother answers, saying,
Indeed not! But he is called Yahn.
61 And they say to her,
None of your kindred is called by this name.
62 And they nod to his father,
how he wills to call him:
63 and he asks for a tablet, and scribes, wording,

LUKE 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

His name is **John Yahn**.
And they marvelled all.
64 And his mouth was opened immediately,
and his tongue loosed, and he spake,
and *praised God* **eulogized Elohim**.
65 And *fear came* **awe became** on all
that *dwelt* **settled** round about them:
and all these *sayings* **rhema**
were *noised abroad* **thoroughly told** throughout
all the *hill country* **mountains of Judaea Yah Hudah**.
66 And all they that heard them
laid **placed** them up in their hearts, *saying* **wording**,
What *manner of child* **then** shall this **child** be!
And the hand of *the Lord* **Yah Veh** was with him.
THE PROPHECY OF ZECHAR YAH
67 And his father *Zacharias* **Zechar Yah**
was filled/*shalamed* with the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
and prophesied, *saying* **wording**,
68 *Blessed* **Eulogized**
be the Lord God **Yah Veh Elohim of Israel Yisra El**;
for he hath visited
and *redeemed* **dealt redemption to** his people,
69 And hath raised up an horn of salvation for us
in the house of his *servant* **lad** David;
70 **Exactly** As he spake
by **through** the mouth of his holy prophets,
which have been *since* **from the world began eons**:
71 That we should *be saved* **have salvation**
from our enemies,
and from the hand of all that hate us;
72 To *perform the* **deal** mercy *promised to* **with our** fathers,
and to remember his holy covenant;
73 The oath which he *sware* **oathed** to our father Abraham,
74 That he *would grant* **should give** unto us,
that we being *delivered* **rescued**
out of the hand of our enemies
might *serve* **liturgize** him *without fear* **fearlessly**,
75 In *holiness* **mercy** and *righteousness* **justness**
before him **in his sight**, all the days of our life.
76 And thou, child,
shalt be called the prophet of *the Highest* **Elyon**:
for thou shalt *go before* **precede** the face of *the Lord* **Adonay**
to prepare his ways;
77 To give knowledge of salvation unto his people
by **in the remission** **forgiveness** of their sins,
78 Through the *tender* **spleen of** mercy of our *God* **Elohim**;
whereby the *dayspring* **rising** from on high
hath visited us,
79 To *give light to* **appear upon** them that sit in darkness
and in the shadow of death,
to *guide* **direct** our feet into the way of *peace* **shalom**.
80 And the child grew, and *waxed strong* **empowered** in spirit,
and was in the *deserts* **wildernesses**
till the day of his *shewing* **exhibiting** unto *Israel* **Yisra El**.

THE BIRTH OF YAH SHUA

2 And **so be** it *came to pass* in those days,
that there went out a *decree* **dogma**
from Caesar **Kaisar** Augustus
that all the world should be *taxed* **registered**.
2 (*And this taxing was* **registration** first *made* **became**
when Cyrenius was governor of Syria.)
3 And all went to *be taxed* **register**,
every one **each** into his own city.
4 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** also *went up* **ascended**
from *Galilee* **Galiyl**, out of the city of Nazareth,
into *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**, unto the city of David,
which is called *Bethlehem* **Beth Lechem**;
(because he was
of the house and *lineage* **patriarchy** of David:)
5 To *be taxed* **register** with *Mary* **Miryam**
his espoused *wife* **woman**,
being great with child **swelling within**.
6 And **so be** it was, that, while they were there,

LOUKAS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

His name is Yahn.
— and they all marvel.
64 And immediately his mouth opens
and his tongue loosens and he speaks
and he eulogizes Elohim.
65 And awe becomes on all who settle around them:
and they thoroughly tell all these rhema
throughout all the mountains of Yah Hudah.
66 And all who hear them
place them in their hearts, wording,
What them becomes of this child!
— and the hand of Yah Veh is with him.
THE PROPHECY OF ZECHAR YAH
67 And his father Zechar Yah,
filled full/*shalamed* with the Holy Spirit,
prophesies, wording,
68 Eulogized — Yah Veh Elohim of Yisra El:
for he visits and deals redemption to his people
and raises a horn of salvation for us
in the house of his lad David;
70 exactly as he spoke
through the mouth of his holy prophets,
being from the eons:
71 to have salvation from our enemies,
and from the hand of all who hate us;
72 to deal mercy with our fathers
and to remember his holy covenant;
73 the oath he oathed to our father Abraham
74 to fearlessly give us,
being rescued from the hand of our enemies,
to liturgize him,
75 in mercy and justness in his sight,
all the days of our life.
76 And you, child, are called the prophet of Elyon:
for you precede the face of Adonay
to prepare his ways;
77 to give knowledge of salvation to his people
in the forgiveness of their sins,
78 through the spleen of mercy of our Elohim;
whereby the rising from on high visits us;
79 to appear on them who sit in darkness
and in the shadow of death;
to direct our feet in the way of shalom.
80 And the child grows — empowered in spirit
and is in the wildernesses
until the day of his exhibiting to Yisra El.

THE BIRTH OF YAH SHUA

2 And so be it, in those days,
a dogma comes from Kaisar Augustus
to register all the world:
2 this registration first becomes
when Cyrenius is governor of Syria;
3 and all go to register — each to his own city.
4 And Yoseph also ascends from Galiyl
from the city of Nazareth to Yah Hudah
to the city of David, called Beth Lechem
— because he is of the house and patriarchy of David:
5 to register with Miryam his espoused woman
who is swelling within.
6 And so be it, in being there,

LUKE 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

the days were *accomplished* **fulfilled/shalamed**
that she should *be delivered* **birth**.

7 And she *brought forth* **birthed** her *firstborn* **firstbirthed** son,
and *wrapped* **swathed** him *in swaddling clothes*,
and *laid* **reclined** him in a manger;
because there was no *room* **place** for them
in the *inn* **lodge**.

8 And there were in the same *country* **region**
shepherds abiding in the field,
keeping watch **guarding the guard**
over their *flock* **shepherddom** by night.

9 And, *lo* **behold**, the angel of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**
came upon **stood over** them,
and the glory of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**
shone round about **haloed** them:
and they were *sore afraid* **awed a mega awe**.

10 And the angel said unto them, *Fear* **Awe** not:
for, behold,
I bring you good tidings **evangelize to you**
of *great joy* **mega cheer**,
which shall be to all people.

11 For unto you is born this day in the city of David
a Saviour,
which is *Christ the Lord* **Messiah Adonay**.

12 And this shall be a sign unto you;
Ye shall find the *babe* **infant**
wrapped in swaddling clothes **swathed**,
lying in a manger.

13 And suddenly there was **became** with the angel
a multitude of the heavenly host
praising God **halaling Elohim**, and *saying* **wording**,

14 Glory to *God* **Elohim** in the *highest* **highests**,
and on earth *peace* **shalom**,
good will **well—approval** toward *men* **humanity**.

15 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
as the angels were gone *away* from them into heaven,
the humans — the shepherds said one to another,
Let us now *go* **pass through**
even unto Bethlehem as far as Beth Lechem,
and see this *thing* **rhema**
which *is come to pass* **hath become**,
which the *Lord* **Yah Veh** hath made known unto us.

16 And they came with haste,
and found *Mary* **Miryam**, and *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
and the *babe* **infant** lying in a manger.

17 And when they had seen it,
they *made known abroad* **broadcasted** the *saying* **rhema**
which was *told* **spoken to** them concerning this child.

18 And all they that heard it
wondered at **marvelled about** those *things*
which were *told* **spoken to** them by the shepherds.

19 But *Mary* **Miryam**
kept preserved all these *things* **rhema**,
and *pondered* **considered** them in her heart.

20 And the shepherds returned,
glorifying and *praising God* **halaling Elohim**
for all the *things* **those**
that they had heard and seen,
exactly as it was *told* **spoken** unto them.

THE PRESENTATION OF YAH SHUA

21 And when eight days were *accomplished* **fulfilled/shalamed**
for the circumcising of the child,
his name was called *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
which was so *named* **called** of the angel
before **ere** he was conceived in the womb.

22 And when the days of her *purification* **purifying**
according to the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**
were *accomplished* **fulfilled/shalamed**,
they brought him to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
to present him to the *Lord* **Yah Veh**;
(Exactly As it is *written* **scribed**
in the *law* **torah** of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**,
Every male that openeth the *womb* **matrix**
shall be called holy to the *Lord* **unto Yah Veh**;))

24 And to *offer* **give** a sacrifice
according to that which is said
in the *law* **torah** of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**,
A *pair* **yoke** of turtledoves,
or two *young pigeons* **youngling doves**.

LOUKAS 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

she fulfills/shalams the days for her to birth:
7 and she births her firstbirthed son
and swathes him and reclines him in a manger;
because there is no place for them in the lodge.

8 And in the same region
shepherds abide in the field,
9 guarding the guard over their shepherddom by night:
and behold, the angel of Yah Veh stands over them
and the glory of Yah Veh haloes them:
and they awe a mega awe.

10 And the angel says to them, Awe not:
for behold, I evangelize to you of mega cheer
which becomes to all people:
11 for to you is birthed this day in the city of David
a Saviour who is Messiah Adonay:
12 and this is your sign;
You find the infant swathed, and lying in a manger.

13 And suddenly with the angel
there becomes a multitude of the heavenly host
halaling Elohim, and wording,
14 Glory to Elohim in the highests
and on earth shalom
and well—approval toward humanity.

15 And so be it,
as the angels go from them into the heavens,
the humans — the shepherds say one to another,
We pass through as far as Beth Lechem
and see this rhema which becomes
— which Yah Veh makes known to us.

16 And they come with haste
and find Miryam and Yoseph
and the infant lying in a manger:
17 and they see,
and they broadcast the rhema spoken to them
concerning this child:
18 and all who hear
marvel about what the shepherds speak to them.
19 — but Miryam preserves all these rhema
and considers them in her heart.

20 And the shepherds return glorifying and halaling Elohim
for all they heard and saw
— exactly as spoken to them.

THE PRESENTATION OF YAH SHUA

21 And when eight days fulfill/shalam
to circumcise the child,
his name is called Yah Shua
— being so called by the angel
ere he was conceived in the womb.

22 And when she fulfills/shalams the days of her purifying
according to the torah of Mosheh,
they bring him to Yeru Shalem
to present him to Yah Veh
23 — exactly as scribed in the torah of Yah Veh:
Every male opening the matrix
is called holy to Yah Veh:
24 and give a sacrifice
according to that said in the torah of Yah Veh,
A yoke of turtledoves or two youngling doves.

LUKE 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

25 And, behold,
there was a *man* **human** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
whose name was *Simeon* **Shimon**;
and *the same man* **this human**
was just and *devout* **well—received**,
waiting for **awaiting** the consolation of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
and the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit** was upon him.

26 And it was *revealed* **oracled** unto him
by the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
that he should not see death,
before **ere** he had seen *the Lord's Christ* **Yah Veh's Messiah**.

27 And he came *by* **in** the Spirit
into the *temple* **priestal precinct**:
and when the parents
brought in **introduced** the child *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
to do for him
after the custom **as accustomed** of the law **torah**,
Then took **And received** he him *up* in his arms,
and *blessed* **God eulogized Elohim**, and said,
28 *Lord* **Despotes**,
29 now *lettest* **release** thou thy servant *depart*
in *peace* **shalom**,
according to thy *word* **rhema**:
30 For mine eyes have seen thy salvation,
31 Which thou hast prepared
before **in front of** the face of all people;
32 A light to *lighten* **of apocalypse to** the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
and the glory of thy people *Israel* **Yisra El**.
33 And *Joseph* **Yoseph** and his mother
 marvelled at those *things*
 which were spoken of **concerning** him.
34 And *Simeon* **blessed Shimon eulogized** them,
and said unto *Mary* **Miryam** his mother,
Behold, this *child* is set
for the *fall* **downfall** and *rising again* **resurrection**
of many in *Israel* **Yisra El**;
and for a sign
which shall be *spoken against* **contradicted**;
35 (Yea, a *sword* **sabre**
shall *pierce* **pass** through thy own soul also,)
that the *thoughts* **reasonings** of many hearts
may be *revealed* **unveiled**.

36 And there was one *Anna* **Hannah**, a prophetess,
the daughter of *Phanuel* **Peni El**,
of the *tribe* **scion of Aser Asher**:
she was of *great age* **advanced in many days**,
and had lived with *an husband* **a man**
seven years from her virginity;
37 And she was a widow
of about *fourscore* **eighty** and four years,
which departed not from the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
but *served* **God liturgized Elohim**
with fastings and *prayers* **petitions** night and day.
38 And she *coming in* **standing by** that *instant hour*
gave thanks **homologized** likewise unto *the Lord* **Adonay**,
and spake of **concerning** him to all them
that *looked for* **awaited** redemption
in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

39 And when they had *performed* **completed/shalamed**
all *things*
according to the law **torah** of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**,
they returned into *Galilee* **Galiyl**, to their own city Nazareth.

40 And the child grew,
and waxed *strong* **empowered** in spirit, filled with wisdom:
and the *grace* **charism** of *God* **Elohim** was upon him.

THE LADHOOD MINISTRY OF YAH SHUA

41 Now **And** his parents
went to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** every year
at the *feast* **celebration** of the *passover* **pasach**.

42 And when he was **became** twelve years *old*,
they went *up* **ascended** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
after the custom of the *feast* **celebration**.

43 And when they had fulfilled/shalamed the days,
as they returned,
the *child* **Jesus lad Yah Shua**
tarried **abode** behind in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
and *Joseph* **Yoseph** and his mother knew not of it.

LOUKAS 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

25 And behold, in *Yeru Shalem*,
a human whose name *is* **Shimon**;
and this human is just and well—received,
awaiting the consolation of *Yisra El*:
and the Holy Spirit is upon him.

26 And the Holy Spirit oracles to him
that he not see death
ere he sees the Messiah of *Yah Veh*.

27 And he comes in the Spirit
into the priestal precinct:
and the parents introduce the child *Yah Shua*,
to do for him as accustomed by the torah.

28 And he receives him in his arms
and eulogizes Elohim and says

29 Despotes, now release your servant in shalom,
according to your rhema:
30 for my eyes see your salvation,
31 whom you prepared
in front of the face of all people;
32 a light of apocalypse to the goyim
and the glory of your people *Yisra El*.
— and *Yoseph* and his mother
marvel at what is spoken concerning him.

34 And *Shimon* eulogizes them,
and says to *Miryam* his mother, Behold,
this is set for the downfall and resurrection
of many in *Yisra El*;
and for a sign to contradict.
35 Yes, a sabre also passes through your own soul
to unveil the reasonings of many hearts.

36 And there is *Hannah*, a prophetess
the daughter of *Peni El* of the scion of *Asher*
— she is advanced in many days:
who lived with a man seven years from her virginity;
37 and she *is* a widow of about eighty—four years
who departs not from the priestal precinct,
but liturgizes Elohim with fastings and petitions
night and day.

38 And standing by that hour
she homologizes likewise to *Adonay*,
and speaks concerning him
to all in *Yeru Shalem* who await redemption.

39 And when they complete/shalam all
according to the torah of *Yah Veh*,
they return to *Galiyl*, to their own city Nazareth.

40 And the child grows,
empowered in spirit, filled with wisdom:
and the charism of Elohim is upon him.

THE LADHOOD MINISTRY OF YAH SHUA

41 And his parents go to *Yeru Shalem* every year
at the celebration of the pasach:
42 and when he becomes twelve years,
they ascend to *Yeru Shalem*
after the custom of the celebration
— and they fulfill/shalam the days.

And as they return,
the lad *Yah Shua* abides behind in *Yeru Shalem*;
and *Yoseph* and his mother know it not:

LUKE 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

44 But they, *supposing* **presuming** him
to have been in the *company* **caravan**,
went **had come** a day's journey;
and they sought him
among their *kinsfolk* **kin** and acquaintance.
45 And when they found him not,
they *turned back again* **returned**
to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, seeking him.
46 And **so be** it *came to pass*, that after three days
they found him in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
sitting in the midst of the doctors,
both hearing them, and asking them *questions*.
47 And all that heard him *were astonished* **astounded**
at his *understanding* **comprehension** and answers.
48 And when they saw him,
they *were amazed* **astonished**:
and his mother said unto him, *Son* **Child**,
why hast thou thus dealt with us? behold,
thy father and I have sought thee *sorrowing* **grieving**.
49 And he said unto them, How is it that ye sought me?
wist **knew** ye not
that I must be about my Father's business?
50 And they *understood* **comprehended** not
the *saying* **rhema** which he spake unto them.
51 And he *went down* **descended** with them,
and came to Nazareth,
and was *subject* **subjugated** unto them:
but **and** his mother
thoroughly kept all these *sayings* **rhemas** in her heart.
52 And *Jesus increased* **Yah Shua advanced**
in wisdom and *stature* **maturity**,
and in *favour* **charism**
with *God* **Elohim** and *man* **humanity**.
YAHN THE BAPTIZER FULFILLS/SHALAMS PROPHECY

3

Now in the fifteenth year
of the *reign* **governing** of *Tiberius Caesar* **Kaisar Tiberius**,
Pontius Pilate **Pilatos**
being governor of *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**,
and Herod being tetrarch of *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
and his brother *Phillip* **Phillipos**
being tetrarch of *Ituraea* **Yetur**
and of the region of Trachonitis,
and Lysanias the tetrarch of Abilene,
2 *Annas* **Hanan Yah** and Caiaphas
being the *high priests* **archpriests**,
the *word* **rhema** of *God* **Elohim**
came **became** unto *John* **Yahn**
the son of *Zacharias* **Zechar Yah** in the wilderness.
3 And he came into all the *country* **region**
round about *Jordan* **Yarden**,
preaching the baptism of repentance
for the *remission* **forgiveness** of sins;
4 As it is written **scribed** in the *book* **scroll**
of the words of *Esaias* **Yesha Yah** the prophet,
saying **wording**,
The voice of one crying in the wilderness,
Prepare ye the way of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**,
make his paths straight.
5 Every valley shall be filled,
and every mountain and hill
shall be *brought low* **humbled**;
and the *crooked* shall be made into straight,
and the *rough* **jagged** ways shall be made **into** smooth;
6 And all flesh shall see the salvation of *God* **Elohim**.
Yesha Yah 40:3—5
7 *Then said* **So** he **worded** to the multitude
that *came forth* **proceeded** to be baptized of him,
O *generation* **progeny** of vipers,
who hath *warned* **exemplified** you
to flee from the wrath *to come* **about to be?**
8 *Bring forth therefore* **So produce**
fruits worthy of repentance,
and begin not to say **word** within yourselves,
We have Abraham to our father:
for I say **word** unto you,
That *God* **Elohim** is able of these stones
to raise *up* children unto Abraham.
9 And *now* **already** also
the axe is laid unto the root of the trees:

LOUKAS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

44 and they, presuming he is in the caravan,
go a journey of a day;
and they seek him
among their kin and acquaintances:
45 and when they find him not
they return to Yeru Shalem, seeking him.
46 And so be it, after three days,
they find him in the priestal precinct
sitting midst the doctors
— both hearing them and asking them:
47 and all who hear him astound
at his comprehension and answers.
48 And they see him and astonish:
and his mother says to him,
Child, why deal you thus with us?
Behold, your father and I seek you grieving.
49 And he says to them, Why seek me?
Know you not
I must be about the business of my Father?
50 — and they comprehend not
the rhema he speaks to them.
51 And he descends with them and they go to Nazareth;
and he subjugates to them:
and his mother
thoroughly keeps all these rhemas in her heart:
52 and Yah Shua
advances in wisdom and maturity and in charism
with Elohim and humanity.

3

YAHN THE BAPTIZER FULFILLS/SHALAMS PROPHECY
Now in the fifteenth year
of the governing of Kaisar Tiberius,
Pontius Pilatos being governor of Yah Hudah,
and Herod tetrarch of Galiyl,
and his brother Phillipos tetrarch of Yetur
and of the region of Trachonitis,
and Lysanias the tetrarch of Abilene,
2 Hanan Yah and Caiaphas being the archpriests;
the rhema of Elohim
becomes to Yahn the son of Zechar Yah in the wilderness:
3 and he goes to all the region around Yarden
preaching the baptism of repentance
for the forgiveness of sins
— as scribed in the scroll
4 of the words of Yesha Yah the prophet, wording,
The voice of one crying in the wilderness,
Prepare the way of Yah Veh,
make his paths straight.
5 Every valley *is* filled,
and every mountain and hill humbled;
and the crooked made into straight,
and the jagged ways made smooth;
6 and all flesh sees the salvation of Elohim.
Yesha Yah 40:3—5
7 So he words to the multitude
who proceed to be baptized by him,
O progeny of vipers,
who exemplifies you to flee the wrath about to be?
8 So produce fruits worthy of repentance:
and begin not to word within yourselves,
We have Abraham to our father.
For I word to you,
that Elohim is able, from these stones,
to raise children to Abraham.
9 And also
the axe is already laid to the root of the trees:

LUKE 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

so every tree therefore
which *bringeth* **produceth** not forth good fruit
is *hewn down* **excinded**, and cast into the fire.
10 And the *people* **multitude** asked him, *saying* **wording**,
So What shall we do *then*?
11 He answereth and *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
He that hath two *coats* **tunics**,
let him impart to him that hath none;
and he that hath *meat* **food**, let him do likewise.
12 Then **And** came also *publicans* **customs agents**
to be baptized,
and said unto him, *Master* **Doctor**, what shall we do?
13 And he said unto them,
Exact no more
than that which is *appointed* **ordained** you.
14 And the *soldiers* **warriors** likewise
demanded **asked** of him,
saying **wording**, And what shall we do?
And he said unto them,
Do violence to **Intimidate** no man **one**,
neither *accuse any falsely* **sycophant**;
and be *content* **satisfied** with your wages.
15 And as the people *were in expectation* **awaited**,
and all men *mused* **reasoned** in their hearts
of John **about Yahn**,
whether **lest ever** he were **be** the *Christ* **Messiah**, or not;
16 *John Yahn* answered, *saying* **wording** unto them all,
I indeed baptize you *with in* water;
but one mightier than I cometh,
the latchet of whose shoes
I am not *worthy* **adequate** to unloose:
he shall baptize you *with the in* Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**
and *with in* fire:
17 Whose **winnowing** fan is in his hand,
and he *will shall* thoroughly purge his **threshing** floor,
and *will shall* gather the **wheat** **grain**
into his *garner* **granary**;
but the chaff he *will shall* burn with fire unquenchable.
18 And *many much* other *things* **indeed**
in his *exhortation* **beseeking**
preached **evangelized** he unto the people.
19 But Herod the tetrarch,
being *reproved* **rebuked** by him *for* **concerning** Herodias
his brother *Philip's wife* **Phillipos' woman**,
and *for* **concerning** all the evils which Herod had done,
20 Added yet this above all,
that he *shut up John* **locked Yahn**
in *prison* **the guardhouse**.

THE BAPTISM OF YAH SHUA

21 Now **And so be it**, when all the people were baptized,
it came to pass,
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** also being baptized, and praying,
the heaven was opened,
22 And the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit** descended
in a bodily *shape like* **semblance as** a dove upon him,
and a voice *came* **became** from heaven,
which *said* **worded**,
Thou art my beloved Son;
in thee I *am well pleased* **well—approve**.

THE GENEALOGY OF YAH SHUA

23 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** himself
began to be about thirty years *of age*,
being (as was *supposed* **presumed**)
the son of *Joseph* **Yoseph**,
which was the son of *Heli* **of Eli**,
24 Which was the son of Matthat,
which was the son of Levi,
which was the son of *Melchi* **of Melech**,
which was the son of *Janna* **of Yanah**,
which was the son of *Joseph* **of Yoseph**,
25 Which was the son of *Mattathias* **of Mattith Yah**,
which was the son of Amos,
which was the son of *Naum* **of Nachum**,
which was the son of Esli,
which was the son of *Nagge* **of Nogah**,
26 Which was the son of Maath,
which was the son of *Mattathias* **of Mattith Yah**,
which was the son of *Semei* **of Shimi**,
which was the son of *Joseph* **of Yoseph**,

LOUKAS 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

so that every tree not producing good fruit
is excinded, and cast into the fire.
10 And the multitude ask him, wording,
So what do we?
11 He answers them, wording,
Whoever has two tunics,
impart to him who has none:
and whoever has food, do likewise.
12 And customs agents also come to be baptized,
and say to him, Doctor, what do we?
13 And he says to them,
Exact no more than that ordained of you.
14 And the warriors likewise ask of him, wording,
And what do we?
And he says to them,
Intimidate no one! Sycophant not!
And be satisfied with your wages!
15 And as the people await
and all men reason in their hearts about Yahn
— lest ever he is the Messiah.
16 Yahn answers them all, wording,
I indeed baptize you in water;
but one mightier than I comes,
the latchet of whose shoes
I am not adequate to unloose:
he baptizes you in Holy Spirit and in fire:
17 whose winnowing fan is in his hand
and he thoroughly purges his threshing floor;
and gathers the grain into his granary;
but burns the chaff with fire unquenchable.
18 — and indeed, in his beseeching,
he evangelizes much other to the people.
19 And Herod the tetrarch,
being rebuked by him concerning Herodias
the woman of his brother Phillipos,
and concerning all the evils Herod did
still adds this above all:
he locks Yahn in the guardhouse.

THE BAPTISM OF YAH SHUA

21 And so be it, all the people are baptized,
and also Yah Shua, being baptized, prays;
and the heavens open,
22 and the Holy Spirit descends on him
in a bodily semblance as a dove;
and a voice becomes from the heavens, wording,
You are my beloved Son; in you I well—approve.

THE GENEALOGY OF YAH SHUA

23 And Yah Shua himself begins to be about thirty years
— being, as is presumed:
the son of Yoseph,
of Eli,
24 of Matthat,
of Levi,
of Melech,
of Yanah,
of Yoseph,
25 of Mattith Yah,
of Amos,
of Nachum,
of Esli,
of Nogah,
26 of Maath,
of Mattith Yah,
of Shimi,
of Yoseph,

LUKE 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

27 *which was the son of Juda of Yah Hudah,
Which was the son of Joanna of Yah Hanna,
which was the son of Rhesa of Rapha Yah,
which was the son of Zorobabel of Zerbub Babel,
which was the son of Salathiel of Shealti El,
which was the son of Neri of Neri Yah,*
28 *Which was the son of Melchi of Melech,
which was the son of Addi,
which was the son of Cosam of Qesem,
which was the son of Elmodam of Almodad,
which was the son of Er,*
29 *Which was the son of Jose of Yoses,
which was the son of Eliezer of Eli Ezer,
which was the son of Jorim of Yorim,
which was the son of Matthat,
which was the son of Levi,*
30 *Which was the son of Simeon of Shimon,
which was the son of Juda of Yah Hudah,
which was the son of Joseph of Yoseph,
which was the son of Jonan,
which was the son of Eliakim of El Yaqim,*
31 *Which was the son of Melea,
which was the son of Menan of Maina,
which was the son of Mattatha,
which was the son of Nathan,
which was the son of David,*
32 *Which was the son of Jesse of Yishay,
which was the son of Obed,
which was the son of Booz,
which was the son of Salmon,
which was the son of Naasson of Nachshon,*
33 *Which was the son of Aminadab of Ammi Nadab,
which was the son of Aram of Ram,
which was the son of Esrom of Hesron,
which was the son of Phares of Peres,
which was the son of Juda of Yah Hudah,*
34 *Which was the son of Jacob of Yaaqov,
which was the son of Isaac of Yischaq,
which was the son of Abraham,
which was the son of Thara of Terach,
which was the son of Nachor,*
35 *Which was the son of Saruch of Serug,
which was the son of Ragau of Reu,
which was the son of Phalec of Peleg,
which was the son of Heber of Eber,
which was the son of Sala of Shalach,*
36 *Which was the son of Cainan of Qeynan,
which was the son of Arphaxad of Arpachshad,
which was the son of Sem of Shem,
which was the son of Noe of Noach,
which was the son of Lamech of Lemech,*
37 *Which was the son of Mathusala of Methu Shelach,
which was the son of Enoch of Hanoch,
which was the son of Jared of Yered,
which was the son of Maleleel of Ma Halal El,
which was the son of Cainan of Qayin,*
38 *Which was the son of Enos of Enosh,
which was the son of Seth of Sheth,
which was the son of Adam,
which was the son of God of Elohim.*

THE TESTING OF YAH SHUA

4 *And Jesus Yah Shua
being full of the Holy Ghost Spirit
returned from Jordan Yarden,
and was led by the Spirit into the wilderness,
2 Being forty days tempted tested of the devil Diabolos.
And in those days he did eat nothing ate naught:
and when they were ended complete,
he afterward hungered.*
3 *And the devil Diabolos said unto him,
If thou be the Son of God Elohim,
command say this stone that it be made become bread.*
4 *And Jesus Yah Shua answered him, saying wording,
It is written scribed,
That man humanity shall not live by bread alone,
but by every word rhema of God Yah Veh.*

Deuteronomy 8:3

LOUKAS 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

27 *of Yah Hudah,
of Yah Hanna,
of Rapha Yah,
of Zerbub Babel,
of Shealti El,
of Neri Yah,
of Melech,
of Addi,
of Qesem,
of Almodad,
of Er,*
29 *of Yoses,
of Eli Ezer,
of Yorim,
of Matthat,
of Levi,
of Shimon,
of Yah Hudah,
of Yoseph,
of Jonan,
of El Yaqim,
of Melea,
of Maina,
of Mattatha,
of Nathan,
of David,
of Yishay,
of Obed,
of Booz,
of Salmon,
of Nachshon,
of Ammi Nadab,
of Ram,
of Hesron,
of Peres,
of Yah Hudah,
of Yaaqov,
of Yischaq,
of Abraham,
of Terach,
of Nachor,
of Serug,
of Reu,
of Peleg,
of Eber,
of Shalach,
of Qeynan,
of Arpachshad,
of Shem,
of Noach,
of Lemech,
of Methu Shelach,
of Hanoch,
of Yered,
of Ma Halal El,
of Qayin,
of Enosh,
of Sheth,
of Adam,
of Elohim.*

THE TESTING OF YAH SHUA

4 *And Yah Shua, full of the Holy Spirit,
returns from Yarden
and is led in the Spirit into the wilderness;
2 being tested forty days by Diabolos:
and in those days he eats naught:
and after they complete, he famishes.*
3 *And Diabolos says to him,
If you are the Son of Elohim,
say that this stone become bread.*
4 *And Yah Shua answers him, wording,
It is scribed,
Humanity lives not by bread alone,
but by every rhema of Yah Veh.*

Deuteronomy 8:3

LUKE 4

exeGes ready research BIBLE

5 And the devil **Diabolos**,
taking **bringing** him up into an high mountain,
shewed unto him
all the *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms** of the world
in a moment of time.

6 And the devil **Diabolos** said unto him,
All this *power* will **authority shall** I give thee,
and the glory of them:
for that is delivered unto me;
and to whomsoever I will **shall** I give it.

7 If **So whenever** thou *therefore*
wilt **shalt** worship me **in my sight**,
all shall be thine.

8 And Jesus **Yah Shua** answered and said unto him,
Get thee behind me, Satan:
for it is *written* **scribed**,
Thou shalt worship *the Lord* **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**,
and him only shalt thou *serve* **liturgize**.

Deuteronomy 6:13, 10:20

9 And he brought him to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and set **stood** him
on a *pinnacle* **wing** of the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
and said unto him,
If thou be the Son of God **Elohim**,
cast thyself *down* from hence:
For it is *written* **scribed**,

10 He shall *give* **misvah** his angels *charge over* **concerning** thee,
to *keep* **thoroughly guard** thee:

11 And in their hands they shall *bear* **lift** thee up,
lest at *any time* **ever** thou dash thy foot against a stone.

Psalm 91:11, 12

12 And Jesus **Yah Shua** answering said unto him,
It is said,
Thou shalt not *tempt* **test** the Lord **Yah Veh** thy God **Elohim**.

Deuteronomy 6:16

13 And when the devil **Diabolos**
had *ended* **completed** all the *temptation* **testing**,
he departed from him for a season.

THE MINISTRY OF YAH SHUA

14 And Jesus **Yah Shua** returned
in the *power* **dynamis** of the Spirit into *Galilee* **Galiyl**:
and there went out a fame of **concerning** him
through all the region round about.

15 And he *taught* **doctrinated** in their synagogues,
being glorified of all.

16 And he came to Nazareth,
where he had been *brought up* **nurtured**:
and, as his custom was, he *went* **entered** into the synagogue
on the *sabbath* day **of the shabbaths**,
and *stood up* for **rose** to read.

17 And there was *delivered* **given** unto him
the *book* **scroll** of the prophet *Esaias* **Yesha Yah**.
And when he had *opened* **unfurled** the *book* **scroll**,
he found the place where it was *written* **scribed**,

18 *The Spirit of the Lord* **Yah Veh** is upon me,
because he hath anointed me
to *preach the gospel* to **evangelize** the poor;
he hath *sent* **apostolized** me
to heal the *brokenhearted* **crushed in heart**,
to *preach deliverance* **forgiveness** to the captives,
and *recovering of sight* to the blind,
to *set at liberty* **apostolize** them that are *bruised* **crushed**
in forgiveness,

19 To *preach the acceptable year* of the Lord **Yah Veh**.

Yesha Yah 61:1, 2

20 And he *closed* **furled** the *book* **scroll**,
and he gave it *again* **back** to the *minister* **attendant**,
and sat down.
And the eyes of all them that were in the synagogue
were *fastened on* **stared at** him.

21 And he began to say **word** unto them,
This day is this scripture **fulfilled/shalamed** in your ears.

22 And all *bare him* witness **witnessed**,
and *wondered* **marvelled** at the *gracious* words of **charism**
which proceeded out of his mouth.

And they *said* **worded**, Is not this *Joseph's* **Yoseph's** son?
23 And he said unto them,

LOUKAS 4

exeGes companion BIBLE

5 And Diabolos brings him to a high mountain
and in a moment of time
shows him all the *sovereigndoms* of the world:
and Diabolos says to him,
6 I give you all this authority and all their glory
— for that is delivered to me
and to whomever I give it:
7 so whenever you worship in my sight,
all becomes yours.

8 And Yah Shua answers him, saying,
You, Go behind me, Satan:
for it is scribed,
Worship Yah Veh your Elohim;
and him only liturgize.

Deuteronomy 6:13, 10:20

9 And he brings him to Yeru Shalem
and stands him on a wing of the priestal precinct,
and says to him,
If you are the Son of Elohim
cast yourself from hence:
10 for it is scribed,
He misvahs his angels concerning you
to thoroughly guard you;
11 and they lift you in their hands
lest ever you dash your foot against a stone.

Psalm 91:11, 12

12 And Yah Shua answers him, saying,
It says,
Test not Yah Veh your Elohim.

Deuteronomy 6:16

13 — and Diabolos completes all the testing
and departs from him for a season.

THE MINISTRY OF YAH SHUA

14 And Yah Shua returns to Galiyl
in the dynamis of the Spirit:
and a fame concerning him
goes all around the region:
15 and he doctrinates in their synagogues,
being glorified by all.

16 And he goes to Nazareth where he was nurtured:
and as his custom,
he enters the synagogue on the day of the shabbaths
and rises to read:
17 and he is given the scroll of the prophet Yesha Yah:
and he unfurls the scroll,
and finds the place where it is scribed,
18 Spirit of Yah Veh is upon me,
because he anoints me to evangelize the poor;
he apostolizes me to heal the crushed in heart;
to preach forgiveness to the captives
and sight to the blind;
to apostolize the crushed in forgiveness;
to preach the acceptable year of Yah Veh.

Yesha Yah 61:1, 2

19 And he furls the scroll,
and gives it to the attendant and sits:
and the eyes of all in the synagogue stare at him.

21 And he begins to word to them,
This day this scripture fulfills/shalams in your ears.
— and all witness and marvel
at the words of charism
which proceed from his mouth:
and they word, Is not this the son of Yoseph?

22 And he says to them,

LUKE 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Ye will surely **shall most certainly** say unto me
this *proverb* **parable**,
Physician **Healer**, *heal* **cure** thyself:
whatsoever **as much as** we have heard
done **become** in *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**,
do also here in thy *country* **fatherland**.
24 And he said, *Verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto you,
No prophet is *accepted* **acceptable**
in his own *country* **fatherland**.
25 But I *tell* **word** you of a truth,
many widows were in *Israel* **Yisra El**
in the days of *Elias* **Eli Yah**,
when the heaven was shut up three years and six months,
when *great* **mega** famine
was **became** throughout all the land;
26 But unto none of them was *Elias* **Eli Yah** sent,
save **except** unto *Sarepta* **Sarephath**, a city of Sidon,
unto a woman that was a widow.
27 And many lepers were in *Israel* **Yisra El**
in the time of Eliseus **with Eli Shua** the prophet;
and none of them was *cleansed* **purified**,
saving **except** Naaman the *Syrian* **Syriaiy**.
28 And all they in the synagogue,
when they heard these *things*,
were filled **full** with *wrath* **fury**,
29 And rose up, and *thrust* **cast** him out of the city,
and led him unto the brow of the *hill* **mountain**
whereon their city was built,
that they might cast him down *headlong*.
30 But he passing through the midst of them
went his way,
31 And came down to *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**,
a city of *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
and *taught* **doctrinated** them
on the *sabbath days* **shabbaths**.
32 And they were astonished at his doctrine:
for his word was *with power* **in authority**.
YAH SHUA ORDERS AN IMPURE DEMON
33 And in the synagogue there was a *man* **human**,
which had a spirit of an *unclean devil* **impure demon**,
and *cried out* **screamed** with a *loud* **mega** voice,
34 *saying* **wording**, *Let us alone; Aha!*
what have we to do with thee,
thou *Jesus of Nazareth* **Yah Shua — Nazarene?**
art thou come to destroy us?
I know thee who thou art; the Holy *One of God* **Elohim**.
35 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** rebuked him, *saying* **wording**,
Hold thy peace **Be muzzled**, and come out of him.
And when the *devil* **demon**
had *thrown* **tossed** him in the midst,
he came out of him, and hurt him not.
36 And **so be it**, they were all *amazed* **astonish**,
and *spake* **talked** among *themselves* **one another**,
saying **wording**, What a word is this!
for *with in* **in** authority and *power* **dynamis**
he *commandeth* **ordereth** the *unclean* **impure** spirits,
and they come out.
37 And the *fame of* **echo** *concerning* him
went out **proceeded** into every place
of the *country* **region** round about.
YAH SHUA CURES THE MOTHER IN LAW OF SHIMON
38 And he arose out of the synagogue,
and entered into *Simon's* **Shimon's** house.
And *Simon's wife's* **Shimon's** mother *in law*
was *taken with* **overtaken by** a *great* **mega** fever;
and they *besought* **asked** him for **concerning** her.
39 And he stood over her, and rebuked the fever;
and it *left* **forsook** her:
and immediately she arose and ministered unto them.
40 Now **And** when the sun was *setting* **lowering**,
all *they that* — **as many as** had any *sick* **frail**
with divers diseases
brought them unto him;
and he *laid* **put** his hands on every **each** one of them,
and *healed* **cured** them.
41 And *devils* **demons** also came out of many,
crying out, and *saying* **wording**,
Thou art *Christ* **the Messiah** the Son of *God* **Elohim**.

LOUKAS 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Most certainly you say this parable to me,
Healer, cure yourself:
as much as we hear that became in Kaphar Nachum,
do also here in your fatherland.
24 And he says,
Amen! I word to you,
No prophet is acceptable in his own fatherland:
25 but of a truth, I word you,
many widows were in Yisra El in the days of Eli Yah
when the heavens shut for three years and six months,
when mega famine became throughout all the land:
26 and Eli Yah was sent to none of them
except to Sarephath of Sidon — to a widow woman:
27 and many lepers were in Yisra El
with Eli Shua the prophet;
and none of them was purified
except Naaman the Syriaiy.
28 And all in the synagogue hear these
and fill full with fury;
29 and they rise and cast him from the city
and lead him to the brow of the mountain
on which their city is built
— to cast him down:
30 and he passes through among them
and goes his way:
31 and goes down to Kaphar Nachum
a city of Galiyl,
and he doctrinates them on the shabbaths:
32 and they astonish at his doctrine:
for his word is in authority.
YAH SHUA ORDERS AN IMPURE DEMON
33 And in the synagogue there is a human
with a spirit of an impure demon;
screaming with a mega voice,
wording, Aha!
34 What have we to do with you,
Yah Shua — Nazarene?
Come you to destroy us?
I know you who you are — the Holy of Elohim.
35 And Yah Shua rebukes him, wording,
Muzzle! and, Come from him!
— and the demon, tossing him among them,
comes from him and hurts him not.
36 And so be it, all astonish
and they talk among one another,
wording, What a word this is!
For he orders the impure spirits
in authority and dynamis,
and out they come.
37 — and the echo concerning him
proceeds into every place all around the region.
YAH SHUA CURES THE MOTHER IN LAW OF SHIMON
38 And he rises from the synagogue
and enters the house of Shimon:
and the mother in law of Shimon
is overtaken by a mega fever;
and they ask him concerning her:
39 and he stands over her and rebukes the fever;
and it forsakes her:
and immediately she rises and ministers to them.
40 And as the sun lowers,
all — as many as have any frail with divers diseases
bring them to him;
and he puts his hands on each one of them
and cures them:
41 and demons also come from many
crying out and wording,
You are the Messiah the Son of Elohim.

LUKE 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

And he rebuking them
suffered **allowed** them not to speak:
for they knew that he was *Christ* the **Messiah**.
42 And when it was **being** day,
he departed and went into a *desert* **desolate** place:
and the *people* **multitude** sought him,
and came unto him, and *stayed* **held** him,
that he should not depart from them.
43 And he said unto them,
I must *preach* **evangelize**
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**
to other cities also:
for *therefore* **because of this** am I *sent* **apostolized**.
44 And he preached in the synagogues of *Galilee* **Galiyl**.

THE FIRST DISCIPLES OF YAH SHUA

5 And **so be** it *came to pass*, that,
as the *people* **pressed** **multitude** **imposed** upon him
to hear the word of *God* **Elohim**,
he stood by the lake of *Gennesaret* **Kinneroth**,
2 And saw two *ships* **sailers** standing by the lake:
but the *fishermen* **fishers**
were *gone out of* **had turned** from them,
and were rinsing their nets.
3 And he *entered* **embarked** into one of the *ships* **sailers**,
which was *Simon's* **Shimon's**,
and *prayed* **asked** him
that he *would thrust* **should launch** out a little from the land.
And he sat *down*,
and *taught* **doctrinated** the *people* **multitude**
out of the *ship* **sailer**.
4 Now when he had *left* **paused** speaking,
he said unto *Simon* **Shimon**,
Launch out into the *deep* **depths**,
and *let down* **lower** your nets for a *draught* **catch**.
5 And *Simon* **Shimon** answering said unto him,
Master **Rabbi**,
we have *toiled* **laboured through** all the night,
and have taken *nothing* **naught**:
nevertheless at thy *word* **rhema**
I *will let down* **shall lower** the net.
6 And when they had this done,
they inclosed a *great* **vast** multitude of fishes:
and their net *brake* **ripped**.
7 And they *beckoned* **nodded** unto their partners,
which were in the other *ship* **sailer**,
that they should come and *help* **take** them.
And they came, and filled **full** both the *ships* **sailers**,
so that they began to sink.
8 When *Simon Peter* **Shimon Petros** saw it,
he *fell down* **prostrated** at *Jesus'* **Yah Shua's** knees,
saying **wording**, Depart from me;
for I am a sinful man, O *Lord* **Adonay**.
9 For he was *astonished* **astonishment** enveloped him,
and all that were with him,
at the *draught* **catch** of the fishes which they had taken:
10 And *so was* **likewise** also
James **Yaaqovos**, and *John* **Yahn**, the sons of *Zebedee* **Zabdi**,
which were *partners* **partakers** with *Simon* **Shimon**.
And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto *Simon* **Shimon**,
Fear **Awe** not;
from *henceforth* **now on**
thou shalt *catch men* **capture live humans**.
11 And when they had
brought **moored** their *ships* **sailers** to land,
they forsook all, and followed him.

YAH SHUA PURIFIES A LEPER

12 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when he was in a *certain* city, behold,
a man full of leprosy:
who seeing *Jesus* **Yah Shua** fell on his face,
and *besought* **petitioned** him, *saying*, **wording**,
Lord **Adonay**, if *whenever* thou *wilt* **willest**,
thou canst *make* **purify** me *clean*.
13 And he *put forth* **spread** his hand, and touched him,
saying, I will: be thou *clean* **purified**.
And *immediately* **straightway** the leprosy departed from him.

LOUKAS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— and he rebukes them and allows them not to speak
for they know he is the Messiah.
42 And being day;
he departs and goes to a desolate place:
and the multitude seeks him
and comes to him and holds him
that he not depart from them.
43 And he says to them,
I must evangelize the sovereigndom of Elohim
to other cities also:
for because of this I am apostolized.
44 — and he preaches in the synagogues of Galiyl.

THE FIRST DISCIPLES OF YAH SHUA

5 And so be it,
as the multitude imposes on him
to hear the word of Elohim,
he stands by the lake of Kinneroth
2 and sees two sailers standing by the lake:
but the fishers had turned from them,
rinsing their nets:
3 and he embarks into one of the sailers
which is to Shimon,
and asks him to launch out a little from the land:
and he sits and doctrinates the multitude
from the sailer.
4 And he pauses speaking, and says to Shimon,
Launch out into the depths
and lower your nets for a catch.
5 And Shimon answers him, saying,
Rabbi, we labored all through the night,
and took naught:
nevertheless at your rhema, I lower the net.
6 And they do this,
and enclose a vast multitude of fishes
and their net rips:
7 and they nod to their partners in the other sailer,
to come and take them:
and they come, and fill full both the sailers
so that they begin to sink.
8 And Shimon Petros sees
and prostrates at the knees of Yah Shua, wording,
Depart from me;
for I am a sinful man, O Adonay.
9 — for astonishment envelops him
and all who are with him
at the catch of the fishes they took:
and likewise also
10 Yaaqovos and Yahn, the sons of Zabdi,
who are partakers with Shimon.
And Yah Shua says to Shimon, Awe not!
From now on you capture live humans.
11 — and they moore their sailers to land;
and forsake all and follow him.

YAH SHUA PURIFIES A LEPER

12 And so be it, he is in a city, and behold,
a man full of leprosy sees Yah Shua
and falls on his face and petitions him,
wording, Adonay,
whenever you will, you can purify me.
13 And he spreads his hand, and touches him,
saying, I will: Purify!
— and straightway the leprosy departs from him.

LUKE 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 14 And he *charged* **evangelized** him
to tell **say to no man one**:
but go, and shew thyself to the priest,
and offer for thy *cleansing* **purifying**,
according exactly as Moses commanded Mosheh ordered,
for a *testimony* **witness** unto them.
- 15 But so much the more
went there a fame abroad of him
word about him passed through:
and *great vast* multitudes came together to hear,
and to be *healed* **cured** by him
of their *infirmities* **frailties**.
- 16 And he withdrew himself into the wilderness,
and prayed.
- YAH SHUA HEALS A PARALYTIC**
- 17 And **so be** it came to *pass on a certain one* day,
as he was *teaching* **doctrinating**,
that there were Pharisees and doctors of the *law torah*
sitting *by*,
which were come out
of every *town* **village** of *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
and *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**, and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
and the *power* **dynamis** of the *Lord* **Adonay**
was *present* to heal them.
- 18 And, behold, men brought in a bed
a *man* **human** which was *taken with a palsy* **a paralytic**:
and they sought *means* to bring him in,
and to *lay* **place** him *before him* **in his sight**.
- 19 And when they could not find
by through what way they might bring him in
because of the multitude,
they *went up* **ascended** on the housetop,
and let him down through the tiling with his *couch* **recliner**
into the midst *before Jesus* **in front of Yah Shua**.
- 20 And when he saw their *faith* **trust**, he said unto him,
man **human**, thy sins are forgiven thee.
- 21 And the scribes and the Pharisees began to reason,
saying **wording**,
Who is this which speaketh blasphemies?
Who can forgive sins, *but God* **except Elohim** alone?
- 22 But *when Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
perceived **knowing** their *thoughts* **reasonings**,
he answering said unto them,
What reason ye in your hearts?
- 23 Whether is easier, to say, Thy sins be forgiven thee;
or to say, Rise *up* and walk?
- 24 But that ye may know that the Son of *man* **humanity**
hath *power* **authority** upon earth to forgive sins,
(he said unto the *sick of the palsy* **a paralytic**.)
I say **word** unto thee, Arise,
and take *up* thy *couch* **recliner**, and go into thine house.
- 25 And immediately he *rose up before them* **in their sight**,
and took *up* that whereon he lay,
and departed to his own house, glorifying *God* **Elohim**.
- 26 And they were all *amazed* **overtaken by ecstasis**,
and they glorified *God* **Elohim**,
and were filled **full** with *fear* **awe**, *saying* **wording**,
We have seen *strange things* **paradoxes** to day.
- YAH SHUA CALLS LEVI**
- 27 And after these *things* he went *forth*,
and saw a *publican* **customs agent**, named Levi,
sitting at the *receipt of custom* **customs**:
and he said unto him, Follow me.
- 28 And he left all, rose *up*, and followed him.
- 29 And Levi made him a *great* **mega** feast
in his own house:
and there was a *great company* **vast multitude**
of *publicans* **customs agents** and of others
that *sat down* **reposed** with them.
- 30 But **And** their scribes and Pharisees
murmured against his disciples,
saying **wording**, Why do ye eat and drink
with *publicans* **customs agents** and sinners?
- 31 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answering said unto them,
They that are whole need not a *physician* **healer**;
but they that are *sick* **ill**.
- 32 I came not to call the *righteous* **just**,
but sinners to repentance.

LOUKAS 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 14 And he evangelizes him to say to no one:
But go and show yourself to the priest;
and offer for your purifying
exactly as Mosheh ordered,
for a witness to them.
- 15 But so much the more,
word about him passes through:
and vast multitudes come together to hear
and to be cured by him of their frailties.
- 16 And he withdraws himself into the wilderness
and prays.
- YAH SHUA HEALS A PARALYTIC**
- 17 And so be it, one day as he doctrinates,
Pharisees and doctors of the torah sit
— who come from every village of Galiyl
and Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem:
and the dynamis of Adonay is to heal them.
- 18 And behold,
men bring in a paralyzed human on a bed:
and they seek to bring him in,
and to place him in his sight:
and they cannot find the way to bring him in
because of the multitude;
and they ascend on the housetop
and let him down through the tiling with his recliner
midst them in front of Yah Shua.
- 20 And he sees their trust, and says to him,
Human, your sins are forgiven you.
- 21 And the scribes and the Pharisees begin to reason,
wording, Who is this speaking blasphemies?
Who can forgive sins, except Elohim alone?
- 22 But Yah Shua, knowing their reasonings,
answers them, saying,
What reason you in your hearts?
Which is easier to say, Your sins be forgiven you?
or to say, Rise and walk?
- 24 But so that you know that the Son of humanity
has authority on earth to forgive sins
— he says to the paralyzed,
I word to you, Rise!
And take your recliner, and go to your house!
— and immediately he rises in their sight
and takes that on which he lies
and departs to his own house, glorifying Elohim.
- 26 And ecstasis overtakes them; and they glorify Elohim,
and fill full with awe, wording,
We see paradoxes today.
- YAH SHUA CALLS LEVI**
- 27 And after these,
he goes and sees a customs agent named Levi
sitting at the customs:
and he says to him, Follow me.
— and he leaves all, rises, and follows him.
- 29 And Levi makes him a mega feast
in his own house:
and there is a vast multitude
of customs agents and of others reposing with them.
- 30 And their scribes and Pharisees
murmur against his disciples, wording,
Why eat and drink with customs agents and sinners?
- 31 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
They who are whole need not a healer;
but they who are ill.
I come not to call the just,
but sinners to repentance.

LUKE 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH SHUA ON FASTING

33 And they said unto him,
Why do the disciples of *John Yahn*
fast *often frequently*, and make *prayers petitions*,
and likewise *the disciples of the Pharisees*;
but thine eat and drink?
34 And he said unto them,
Can ye make the *children sons* of the bridechamber fast,
while the bridegroom is with them?
35 But the days *will shall* come,
when *ever* the bridegroom
shall be *taken away removed* from them,
and then shall they fast in those days.
36 And he *spake worded* also a parable unto them;
no *man one* putteth a *piece patch* of a new garment
upon an old;
if otherwise but if not,
then both the new *maketh a rent splitteth*,
and the *piece that was taken patch* out of the new
agreeth symphonizeth not with the old.
37 And no *man one* putteth new wine into old *bottles skins*;
else but if not
the new wine *will shall* burst the *bottles skins*,
and be *spilled poureth*,
and the *bottles skins* shall *perish destruct*.
38 But new wine must be put into new *bottles skins*;
and both are preserved.
39 No *man one* also having drunk old *wine*
straightway desireth willeth new:
for he *saith wordeth*, The old is *better useful*.

YAH SHUA, ADONAY OF THE SHABBATH

6 And *so be* it *came to pass*
on the second *sabbath after the first first shabbath*,
that he went through the *corn fields spores*;
and his disciples plucked the *ears of corn kernels*,
and did eat, rubbing them in their hands.
2 And *certain some* of the Pharisees said unto them,
Why do ye that which is not *lawful allowed* to do
on the *sabbath days shabbaths*?
3 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answering them said,
Have ye not read so much as this, what David did,
when himself *was an hungred famished*,
and they which were with him;
4 How he *went entered* into the house of *God Elohim*,
and did take and eat the *shewbread prothesis bread*,
and gave also to them that were with him;
which it is not *lawful allowed* to eat
but except for the priests alone?

1 Shemu El 21:6

YAH SHUA RESTORES A WITHERED HAND

5 And he *said worded* unto them,
That the Son of *man humanity*
is *Lord Adonay* also of the *sabbath shabbath*.
6 And *so be* it *came to pass*
also on another *sabbath shabbath*,
that he entered into the synagogue and *taught doctrinated*:
and there was a *man human* whose right hand was withered.
7 And the scribes and Pharisees *watched observed* him,
whether he *would heal should cure*
on the *sabbath day shabbath*;
that they might find an accusation against him.
8 But he knew their *thoughts reasonings*,
and said to the *man human*
which had the withered hand,
Rise *up*, and stand *forth* in the midst.
And he arose and stood *forth*.
9 Then *So* said *Jesus Yah Shua* unto them,
I *will shall* ask you one *thing*;
Is it *lawful allowed* on the *sabbath days shabbaths*
to do good, or to do evil?
to save *life soul*, or to destroy *it*?
10 And looking round about upon them all,
he said unto the *man human*,
Stretch forth Spread thy hand.
And he did *so thus*:
and his hand was restored whole as the other.

LOUKAS 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH SHUA ON FASTING

33 And they say to him,
Why fast the disciples of Yahn frequently
and make petitions
— and likewise the Pharisees;
but yours eat and drink?
34 And he says to them,
Can you make the sons of the bridechamber fast,
while the bridegroom is with them?
35 But days come,
whenever the bridegroom removes from them,
and then they fast in those days.
36 And he also words them a parable;
No one puts a patch of a new garment on an old;
but if not, both split:
and the patch of the new symphonizes not with the old.
37 And no one puts new wine in old skins;
but if not, the new wine bursts the skins and pours,
and the skins destruct.
38 But new wine must be put into new skins;
and both are preserved.
39 Also no one who drinks the old wills the new:
for, he words, The old is useful.

YAH SHUA, ADONAY OF THE SHABBATH

6 And so be it, on the second first shabbath,
he goes through the spores;
and his disciples pluck the kernels and eat
rubbing them in their hands.

2 And some of the Pharisees say to them,
Why do you what is not allowed to do
on the shabbaths?

3 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Read you not even this
— what David and those with him did
when he famished?

4 How he entered the house of Elohim
and took and ate the prothesis bread;
and also gave to them with him
— which is not allowed to eat
except for the priests alone?

1 Shemu El 21:6

YAH SHUA RESTORES A WITHERED HAND

5 And he words to them,
The Son of humanity is also Adonay of the shabbath.

6 And so be it, also on another shabbath,
he enters the synagogue and doctrinates:
and there is a human with a withered right hand:
and the scribes and Pharisees observe him
whether he cures on the shabbath
— to find an accusation against him.

8 But he knows their reasonings,
and says to the human with the withered hand,
Rise, and stand in the midst.
— and he rises and stands.

9 So Yah Shua says to them,
I ask you one:
Is it allowed on the shabbaths to do good?
Or to do evil?
To save soul? Or to destroy?

10 And looking all round on them all,
he says to the human, Spread your hand.
— and he does thus:
and his hand restores whole as the other.

LUKE 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 11 And they were filled **full** with *madness* **mindlessness**;
and *communed* **talked thoroughly** one with another
what they might do to *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.
- YAH SHUA SELECTS TWELVE APOSTLES**
- 12 And **so be** it *came to pass* in those days,
that he went out into a mountain to pray,
and continued all night in prayer to *God* **Elohim**.
- 13 And *when it was* **being** day,
he called unto him his disciples:
and of them he *chose* **selected** twelve,
whom also he named apostles;
- 14 *Simon* **Shimon**, (whom he also named *Peter* **Petros**),
and *Andrew* **Andreas** his brother,
James **Yaaqovos** and *John* **Yahn**,
Philip **Phillipos** and *Bartholomew* **Bar Talmay**,
Matthew **Matthaios** and *Thomas* **Taom**,
James **Yaaqovos** the son of *Alphaeus* **Heleph**,
and *Simon* **Shimon** called *Zelotes* **the Zealot**,
- 16 And *Judas* **Yah Hudah** the brother of *James* **Yaaqovos**,
and *Judas* **Isariot** **Yah Hudah** the urbanite,
which also was **became** the traitor.
- 17 And he *came down* **descended** with them,
and stood *in the plain* **on a level place**,
and the *company* **multitude** of his disciples,
and a *great* **vast** multitude of people
out of all *Judaea* **Yah Hudah** and *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and from the sea coast of *Tyre* **Sor** and *Sidon*,
which came to hear him,
and to be healed of their diseases;
- 18 And they that were vexed *with unclean* **by impure** spirits:
and they were *healed* **cured**.
- 19 And the whole multitude sought to touch him:
for there went *virtue* **dynamis** out of him,
and healed them all.
- THE BEATITUDES**
- 20 And he lifted *up* his eyes on his disciples,
and *said* **worded**,
Blessed, *be ye* **the poor**:
for yours is the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**.
- 21 Blessed, *are ye* that *hunger* **famish** now:
for ye shall be filled.
- 22 Blessed, *are ye* that weep now: for ye shall laugh.
Blessed *are ye*,
when **ever** *men* **humanity** shall hate you,
and when **ever** they shall *separate* **set you apart**
from their company,
and shall reproach you, and cast out your name as evil,
for the Son of *man's* **humanity's** sake.
- 23 *Rejoice* **Cheer** ye in that day, and leap for joy:
for, behold, your reward is *great* **vast** in heaven:
for in the like manner did their fathers unto the prophets.
- THE WOES**
- 24 But woe unto you that are rich!
for ye have received your consolation **in full**.
- 25 Woe unto you that are full! for ye shall *hunger* **famish**.
Woe unto you that laugh now!
for ye shall mourn and weep.
- 26 Woe unto you,
when **ever** all *men* **humanity** shall *speak* **say** well of you!
for *so* **in like manner**
did their fathers to the *false* **pseudo** prophets.
- YAH SHUA ON LOVING ENEMIES**
- 27 But I *say* **word** unto you which hear,
Love your enemies,
do *good* **well** to them which hate you,
28 *Bless* **Eulogize** them that curse you,
and pray for them which *despitefully* **use** **threaten** you.
- 29 And unto him
that *smiteth* **striketh** thee on the *one* cheek
offer **present** also the other;
and him that taketh away thy *cloak* **garment**
forbid not *to take* thy *coat* **tunic** also.
30 Give to every man that asketh of thee;
and of him that taketh away thy goods
ask them **demand** not *again*.
- 31 And **exactly** as ye *would* will
that *men* **humanity** should do to you,
do ye also to them likewise.
- 32 For if ye love them which love you,

LOUKAS 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 11 And they fill full with mindlessness;
and talk thoroughly one with another
of what to do to Yah Shua.
- YAH SHUA SELECTS TWELVE APOSTLES**
- 12 And so be it, in those days,
he goes to a mountain to pray,
and continues all night in prayer to Elohim.
- 13 And being day, he calls his disciples to him:
and he selects twelve of them
whom also he names apostles:
- 14 Shimon, whom he also named Petros
and Andreas his brother,
Yaaqovos and Yahn,
Phillipos and Bar Talmay,
15 Matthaios and Taom,
Yaaqovos of Heleph
and Shimon called the Zealot
16 and Yah Hudah of Yaaqovos
and Yah Hudah the urbanite
— who also becomes traitor.
- 17 And he descends with them and stands on a level place:
and the multitude of his disciples
and a vast multitude of people
from all Yah Hudah and Yeru Shalem
and from the sea coast of Sor and Sidon
come to hear him
and to be healed of their diseases:
- 18 and those vexed by impure spirits are cured:
19 and the whole multitude seeks to touch him:
for dynamis comes from him and heals them all.
- THE BEATITUDES**
- 20 And he lifts his eyes on his disciples, and words,
Blessed — the poor:
for yours is the sovereigndom of Elohim.
- 21 Blessed — who now famish: for you fill.
Blessed — who now weep: for you laugh.
- 22 Blessed — you, whenever humanity hates you
and whenever they set you apart and reproach you
and cast out your name as evil
for sake of the Son of humanity.
23 Cheer in that day and leap for joy!
For behold, your reward in the heavens is vast:
for in the like manner their fathers did to the prophets.
- THE WOES**
- 24 But woe to you, the rich:
for you received your consolation in full;
25 woe to you the filled:
for you famish;
woe to you who now laugh:
for you mourn and weep;
26 woe to you
whenever all humanity says well of you:
for in like manner
their fathers did to the pseudo prophets.
- YAH SHUA ON LOVING ENEMIES**
- 27 But I word to you who hear:
Love your enemies;
do well to them who hate you;
28 eulogize them who curse you;
and pray for them who threaten you;
29 and to whoever strikes you on the cheek,
present also the other:
and to whoever takes away your garment,
forbid not also your tunic;
30 give to everyone who asks of you;
and of him who takes away your goods
demand not;
31 and exactly as you will that humanity do to you,
do you also to them likewise.
- 32 For if you love them who love you,

LUKE 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

33 what *thank have ye* **charism is yours?**
for sinners also love those that love them.
And *if whenever* ye do good to them
which do good to you,
34 what *thank have ye* **charism is yours?**
for sinners also do even the same.
And *if whenever* ye lend to them
of whom ye hope to receive **take**,
what *thank have ye* **charism is yours?**
for sinners also lend to sinners,
to receive *as much again* **take equal**.
35 But love ye your enemies, and do good, and lend,
hoping for *nothing* **naught** again;
and your reward shall be *great* **vast**,
and ye shall be the *children* **sons of the Highest Elyon**:
for he is kind unto the *unthankful* **uneucharistic**
and to the evil.
36 **So** Be ye *therefore* **merciful** **compassionate**
exactly as your Father also is *merciful* **compassionate**.
YAH SHUA ON JUDGING OTHERS
37 Judge not, and ye shall *not never no way* be judged:
condemn not, and ye shall *not never no way* be condemned:
forgive, and ye shall be forgiven:
38 Give, and it shall be given unto you;
good measure, *pressed down* **packed**,
and shaken *together*, and *running over* **overflowing**,
shall men give into your bosom.
For with the same measure that ye *mete* **withal** **measure**
it shall be *measured* **remeasured** to you *again*.
39 And he *spake* **said** a parable unto them,
Can the blind *lead* **guide** the blind?
40 shall they not **indeed** both fall into the *ditch* **cistern**?
The disciple is not above his *master* **doctor**:
but every one that is *perfect* **prepared**
shall be as his *master* **doctor**.
41 And why *beholdest* **seest** thou the *mote* **twig**
that is in thy brother's eye,
but perceivest not the beam that is in thine own eye?
42 Either how canst thou *say* **word** to thy brother,
Brother, *let* **allow** me
pull **cast** out the *mote* **twig** that is in thine eye,
when thou thyself
beholdest **seest** not the beam that is in thine own eye?
Thou hypocrite,
cast out first the beam out of thine own eye,
and then shalt thou see clearly
to *pull* **cast** out the *mote* **twig** that is in thy brother's eye.
YAH SHUA ON TREES AND FRUIT
43 For a good tree
bringeth **produceth** not *forth* **corrupt** **putrefied** fruit;
neither doth a *corrupt* **putrefied** tree
bring forth **produce** good fruit.
44 For every **each** tree is known by his own fruit.
For of thorns men do not gather figs,
nor of a *bramble bush* **brier** gather **dry** they grapes.
45 A good *man* **human**
out of the good treasure of his heart
bringeth forth **produceth** that which is good;
and an evil *man* **human**
out of the evil treasure of his heart
bringeth forth **produceth** that which is evil:
for of the **super** abundance of the heart
his mouth speaketh.
46 And why call ye me, *Lord* **Adonay**, *Lord* **Adonay**,
and do not *the things* **that** which I *say* **word**?
YAH SHUA ON FOUNDATIONS
47 Whosoever cometh to me,
and heareth my *sayings* **words**, and doeth them,
I *will shew* **shall exemplify** you to whom he is like:
48 He is like a *man* **human** which built an house,
and digged deep,
and *laid* **placed** the foundation on a rock:
and when the flood *arose* **became**,
the stream *beat* **vehemently** **burst** upon that house,
and could not shake it: for it was founded upon a rock.
49 But he that heareth, and doeth not,
is like a *man* **human**
that *without* **apart from** a foundation
built an house upon the earth;

LOUKAS 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

what charism is yours?
— for sinners also love those who love them:
and whenever you do good
to them who do good to you,
what charism is yours?
— for even sinners also do the same:
34 and whenever you lend from whom you hope to take,
what charism is yours?
— for sinners also lend to sinners to take equal.
35 But love your enemies and do good and lend,
hoping for naught again;
and vast is your reward
and you become the sons of Elyon:
— for he is kind to the uneucharistic and to the evil.
36 So be compassionate
exactly as your Father also is compassionate.
YAH SHUA ON JUDGING OTHERS
37 Judge not; that you never no way be judged:
condemn not; that you never no way be condemned:
forgive; and be forgiven:
38 give; and be given:
good measure, packed and shaken, and overflowing,
men give into your bosom:
for the measure you measure is remeasured to you.
39 And he says a parable to them,
Can the blind guide the blind?
Indeed fall they not both into the cistern?
40 The disciple is not above his doctor:
but everyone who prepares is as his doctor.
41 And why see you the twig
in the eye of your brother
but perceive not the beam in your own eye?
42 Or, how can you word to your brother,
Brother, allow me to cast out the twig in your eye
when you yourself see not the beam in your own eye?
Hypocrite!
First cast the beam from your own eye;
and then you see clearly
to cast the twig in the eye of your brother.
YAH SHUA ON TREES AND FRUIT
43 For neither a good tree produces putrefied fruit;
nor a putrefied tree produces good fruit:
for each tree is known by its own fruit.
44 For men neither gather figs of thorns,
nor dry grapes of a brier.
45 A good human
from the good treasure of his heart
produces good;
and an evil human
from the evil treasure of his heart
produces evil:
for his mouth speaks
from the super abundance of the heart.
46 And why call you me, Adonay, Adonay,
and do not what I word?
YAH SHUA ON FOUNDATIONS
47 Whoever comes to me
and hears my words and does them
— I exemplify you to whom he is likened:
he is likened to a human who builds a house
and digs deep and places the foundation on a rock:
and a flood becomes
and the stream bursts on that house
and cannot shake it for it is founded on a rock.
49 And whoever hears, and does not,
is likened to a human
who builds a house on the earth
apart from a foundation

LUKE 6, 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

against upon which the stream *did beat vehemently burst*,
and immediately **straightway** it fell;
and the *ruin fragmentation* of that house
was great **became mega**.

YAH SHUA HEALS THE SERVANT OF THE CENTURION

7 Now **And** when he had
ended **fulfilled/shalamed** all his *sayings rhema*
in the *audience hearing* of the people,
he entered into *Capernaum Kaphar Nachum*.
2 And a *certain centurion's servant*,
who was *dear honourable* unto him,
was *sick ill*, and *ready about* to die.
3 And when he heard of *Jesus concerning Yah Shua*,
he *sent apostolized* unto him
the elders of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*,
beseeching asking him
that he *would should* come and *heal save* his servant.
4 And when they came to *Jesus Yah Shua*,
they besought him *instantly diligently, saying wording*,
That he was worthy for whom he should *do cause* this:
5 For he loveth our *nation goyim*,
and he hath built us a synagogue.
6 Then *Jesus Yah Shua* went with them.
And when he was *now already* not far from the house,
the centurion sent friends to him,
saying wording unto him,
Lord Adonay, trouble harass not thyself
for I am not *worthy adequate*
that thou shouldst enter under my *roof thatch*:
7 *Wherefore So* neither *thought deemed* I myself worthy
to come unto thee:
but say in a word, and my *servant lad* shall be healed.
8 For I also am a *man human set ordained* under authority,
having under me *soldiers warriors*,
and I *say word* unto this one, Go, and he goeth;
and to another, Come, and he cometh;
and to my servant, Do this, and he doeth *it*.
9 When *Jesus Yah Shua* heard these *things*,
he marvelled at him,
and turned him about,
and said unto the *people multitude* that followed him,
I *say word* unto you,
I have not found so *great faith much trust*,
no, not even in *Israel Yisra El*.
10 And they that were sent, returning to the house,
found the servant whole that had been *sick frail*.

YAH SHUA RAISES THE SON OF A WIDOW

11 And **so be** it *came to pass the day after next*,
that he went into a city called Nain;
and *many enough* of his disciples went with him,
and much *people multitude*.
12 Now **And** when he
came nigh to approached the gate of the city, behold,
there was a dead man carried out,
the only **birthed** son of his mother,
and she was a widow:
and *much people sufficient multitude* of the city
was with her.
13 And when *the Lord Adonay* saw her,
he had *compassion a sympathetic spleen* on her,
and said unto her, Weep not.
14 And he came and touched the *bier coffin*:
and they that bare him stood *still*.
And he said, *Young man Youth*,
I *say word* unto thee, Arise.
15 And he that was dead sat *up*, and began to speak.
And he *delivered gave* him to his mother.
16 And *there came a fear on an awe overtook* all:
and they glorified *God Elohim, saying wording*,
That a *great mega* prophet is risen *up* among us;
and, That *God Elohim* hath visited his people.
17 And this *rumour of word concerning* him
went forth throughout all *Judaea Yah Hudah*,
and throughout all the region round about.

BAPTIZER YAHN ENQUIRES OF YAH SHUA

18 And the disciples of *John Yahn*
shewed evangelized him of **about** all these *things*.
19 And *John Yahn* calling unto him two of his disciples

LOUKAS 6, 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

— upon which the stream bursts
and straightway it falls;
and the fragmentation of that house becomes mega.

YAH SHUA HEALS THE SERVANT OF THE CENTURION

7 And when he fulfills/shalams all his rhema
in the hearing of the people,
he enters Kaphar Nachum:
2 and a servant of a centurion who is honorable to him
is ill and about to die:
3 and he hears concerning Yah Shua,
and apostolizes the elders of the Yah Hudiym to him,
asking him to come and save his servant.
4 And they come to Yah Shua,
and beseech him diligently, wording,
He is worthy, for whom you cause this:
5 for he loves our goyim and he built us a synagogue.
6 And Yah Shua goes with them:
and when he is already not far from the house
the centurion sends friends to him, wording to him,
Adonay, harass not yourself
for I am not adequate that you enter under my thatch:
7 so I deem myself not worthy
to come to you:
but say in a word, and my lad is healed.
8 — for I also am a human ordained under authority
having warriors under me:
and I word to this one, Go! — and he goes;
and to another, Come! — and he comes;
and to my servant, Do this! — and he does.
9 And Yah Shua hears these and marvels at him
and turns around
and says to the multitude following him,
I word to you,
I find not so much trust — not even in Yisra El.
10 — and they who were sent, return to the house
and find the servant who had been frail, whole.

YAH SHUA RAISES THE SON OF A WIDOW

11 And so be it,
next he goes to a city called Nain;
and enough of his disciples and a vast multitude
go with him:
12 and he approaches the gate of the city,
and behold, a dead man being carried out
— the only birthed son of his mother;
and she is a widow:
and a sufficient multitude of the city is with her.
13 And Adonay sees her,
and has a sympathetic spleen on her,
and says to her, Weep not!
14 — and he comes and touches the coffin
and they who bear him stand.
15 And he says, Youth, I word to you, Rise!
— and the dead sits, and begins to speak:
and he gives him to his mother.
16 And awe overtakes them all:
and they glorify Elohim, wording,
A mega prophet rises among us!
and, Elohim visits his people!
17 — and this word concerning him
goes in all Yah Hudah
and throughout the region all around.

BAPTIZER YAHN ENQUIRES OF YAH SHUA

18 And the disciples of Yahn
evangelize him about all these.
19 And Yahn calls two of his disciples to him

LUKE 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

sent them to *Jesus Yah Shua*, saying **wording**,
 Art thou he that should come? or *look await* we for another?
 20 When the men were come unto him, they said,
 John Baptist Yahn the baptizer
 hath sent **apostolized** us unto thee, saying **wording**,
 Art thou he that should come? or *look await* we for another?
 21 And in that same hour he cured many
 of their *infirmities* **diseases** and *plagues* **scourges**,
 and of evil spirits;
 and unto many *that were* blind
 he gave *sight* **granted** **charism** to see.
 22 Then *Jesus Yah Shua* answering said unto them,
 Go *your way*, and tell *John* **evangelize** **Yahn**
 what *things* ye have seen and heard;
 how that the blind see, the lame walk,
 the lepers *are* **cleansed** **purified**, the *deaf* **mute** hear,
 the dead *are* raised,
 to **and** the poor *the gospel is preached* **evangelized**.
 23 And blessed *is* he, whosoever
 shall not be *offended* — **unless you be scandalized** in me.
 24 And when the *messengers* **angels** of *John Yahn*
 were departed,
 he began to *speak* **word** unto the *people* **multitude**
 concerning *John Yahn*,
 What went ye out into the wilderness for to see?
 A reed shaken *with* **by** the wind?
 25 But what went ye out for to see?
 A *man* **human** clothed in *soft raiment* **effeminate** **garment**?
 Behold, they which are
 gorgeously apparelled **gloriously** **garmented**,
 and *live* **delicately** **indulgent**,
 are in *kings' courts* **sovereign's** **palaces**.
 26 But what went ye out for to see? A prophet?
 Yea, I say **word** unto you,
 and *much* **superabundantly** more than a prophet.
 27 This is he, *of* **concerning** whom it is *written* **scribed**,
 Behold,
 I send **apostolize** my *messenger* **angel**
 before **in front of** thy face,
 which shall prepare thy way *before* **in front of** thee.
 28 For I say **word** unto you,
 Among those that are *born* **birthed** of women
 there is not a greater prophet
 than *John Yahn* the *Baptist* **Baptizer**:
 but he that is least
 in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**
 is greater than he.
 29 And all the people that heard him,
 and the *publicans* **customs agents**, justified *God* **Elohim**,
 being baptized with the baptism of *John Yahn*.
 30 But the Pharisees and *lawyers* **torahists**
 rejected **set aside** the counsel of *God* **Elohim**
 against themselves,
 being not baptized of him.
 31 And *the Lord* **Adonay** said,
 Whereunto then
 shall I liken *the men* **humanity** of this generation?
 and to what are they like?
 32 They are like unto children
 sitting in the *marketplace* **market**,
 and calling one to another, and *saying* **wording**,
 We have *pipéd* **fluted** unto you,
 and ye have not danced;
 we have *mourned* **lamented** to you,
 and ye have not wept.
 33 For *John Yahn* the *Baptist* **Baptizer** came
 neither eating bread nor drinking wine;
 and ye say **word**, He hath a *devil* **demon**.
 34 The Son of *man* **humanity** is come eating and drinking;
 and ye say **word**, Behold,
 a gluttonous *man* **human**, and a winebibber,
 a friend of *publicans* **customs agents** and sinners!
 35 But wisdom is justified of all her children.
 A WOMAN SINNER ANOINTS YAH SHUA
 36 And one of the Pharisees
 desired **asked** him that he *would* **should** eat with him.

LOUKAS 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and sends them to Yah Shua, wording,
 Are you he who comes? Or await we another?
 20 And the men come to him, and say,
 Yahn the baptizer apostolizes us to you, wording,
 Are you he who comes? Or await we another?
 21 — and in that same hour he cures many
 of their diseases and of scourges and of evil spirits;
 and to many blind he grants charism to see.
 22 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
 Go, and evangelize Yahn what you see and hear:
 the blind see; the lame walk;
 the lepers purify; the mute hear;
 the dead rise; and the poor *are* evangelized.
 23 And blessed — he, whoever,
 — unless you scandalize in me.
 24 And the angels of Yahn depart,
 and he begins to word to the multitude
 concerning Yahn:
 What went you out to the wilderness to see?
 A reed shaken by the wind?
 But what went you out to see?
 25 A human clothed in effeminate garment?
 Behold, the gloriously garmented and indulgent
 are in palaces of sovereigns.
 26 But what went you out to see? A prophet?
 Yes, I word to you,
 and superabundantly more than a prophet.
 27 This is he, concerning whom it is scribed,
 Behold, I apostolize my angel in front of your face,
 to prepare your way in front of you.
 28 For I word to you,
 Among those birthed of women,
 there is not a greater prophet than Yahn the Baptizer:
 but the least in the sovereigndom of Elohim
 is greater than he.
 29 And all the people who hear him
 and the customs agents justify Elohim,
 being baptized with the baptism of Yahn:
 30 but the Pharisees and torahists
 set aside the counsel of Elohim against themselves
 not being baptized by him.
 31 And Adonay says,
 So to what liken I humanity of this generation?
 And to what liken they?
 32 They are likened to children sitting in the market
 and calling one to another, and wording,
 We flute to you, and you dance not;
 we lament to you, and you weep not:
 33 for Yahn the Baptizer comes,
 neither eating bread nor drinking wine;
 and you word, He has a demon:
 34 the Son of humanity comes eating and drinking;
 and you word,
 Behold, a human glutton and a winebibber
 a friend of customs agents and sinners!
 35 — and wisdom is justified of all her children.
 A WOMAN SINNER ANOINTS YAH SHUA
 36 And one of the Pharisees asks him to eat with him:

LUKE 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

And he went into entered the Pharisee's house,
and sat down to meat **reclined**.
37 And, behold, a woman in the city, which was a sinner,
when she knew that *Jesus Yah Shua*
sat at meat **reposed** in the Pharisee's house,
brought **provided** an alabaster box of ointment **myrrh**,
38 And stood at his feet behind him weeping,
and began to wash **moisten** his feet with tears,
and did wipe **squeezedried** them
with the hairs of her head,
and **ardently** kissed his feet,
and anointed them with the ointment **myrrh**.
39 Now **But** when the Pharisee which had *bidden* called him
saw it,
he spake within himself, saying **wording**,
This *man*, if he were a prophet,
would **should** have known who
and what manner of woman this is that toucheth him:
for she is a sinner.

YAH SHUA ON LENDERS

40 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answering said unto him,
Simon Shimon, I have somewhat to say unto thee.
And he saith, *Master Doctor*, say on.
41 There was a *certain creditor lender*
which had two debtors:
the one *owed* **was indebted**
five hundred *pence* **denarion**,
and the other fifty.
42 And when they had *nothing* **naught** to pay **give back**,
he *frankly forgave* **granted** them both **charism**.
Tell me therefore **So say**,
which of them *will* **shall** love him most?
43 *Simon Shimon* answered and said,
I suppose **perceive** that he,
to whom he *forgave* **granted** most **charism**.
And he said unto him,
Thou hast *rightly* **straightforwardly** judged.
44 And he turned to the woman,
and said unto *Simon Shimon*,
Seest thou this woman?
I entered into thine house,
thou gavest me no water for my feet:
but she hath *washed* **moistened** my feet with tears,
and *wiped them* **squeezedried** with the hairs of her head.
45 Thou gavest me no kiss:
but this *woman* **one** since *the time I came in* **I entered**
hath not ceased to **ardently** kiss my feet.
46 My head with **olive** oil thou didst not anoint:
but this *woman* **one**
hath anointed my feet with ointment **myrrh**.
47 Wherefore **For this cause** I say **word** unto thee,
Her sins, which are many, are forgiven;
for she loved much:
but to whom little is forgiven, *the same* loveth little.
48 And he said unto her, Thy sins are forgiven.
49 And they that *sat at meat* **reposed** with him
began to say **word** within themselves,
Who is this that forgiveth sins also?
50 And he said to the woman,
Thy *faith* **trust** hath saved thee; go in *peace* **shalom**.
8 And **so be** it came to pass *afterward* **in sequence**,
that he went *throughout* **passed through**
every city and village,
preaching and *showing the glad tidings of* **evangelizing**
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**:
and the twelve were with him,
2 And *certain* **some** women,
which had been *healed* **cured**
of evil spirits and *infirmities* **frailties**,
3 *Mary Miryam* called Magdalene,
out of whom went seven *devils* **demons**,
4 And *Joanna* **Yah Hanna** the *wife* **woman** of Chuza
Herod's *steward* **manager**,
and *Susanna* **Shoshanna**, and many others,
which ministered unto him of their *substance* **holdings**.
4 And when much *people* **multitude**
were gathered together,
and *were come* **journeyed** to him out of every city,

LOUKAS 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and he enters the house of the Pharisee and reclines:
37 and behold, a woman in the city — a sinner
knowing that Yah Shua reposes in the house of the Pharisee:
provides an alabaster of myrrh;
38 and stands at his feet behind him weeping
and begins to moisten his feet with tears;
and squeezedries them with the hairs of her head
and ardently kisses his feet
and anoints them with the myrrh.
39 But the Pharisee who called him, sees,
and speaks within himself, wording,
This — if he is a prophet,
knows who and what manner of woman this is
who touches him
— for she is a sinner.

YAH SHUA ON LENDERS

40 And Yah Shua answers him, saying,
Shimon, I have somewhat to say to you.
And he says, Doctor, say on.
41 A lender has two debtors:
the one is indebted five hundred denarion
and the other fifty:
42 and they having naught to give
he grants them both charism.
So say, which of them loves him most?
43 Shimon answers, saying,
I perceive him to whom he granted most charism.
And he says to him,
You judge straightforwardly.
44 And he turns to the woman, and says to Shimon,
See this woman?
I entered your house,
you gave me no water for my feet;
but she has moistens my feet with tears,
and squeezedries with the hairs of her head:
45 you gave me no kiss;
but this one — since I entered
ceases not to ardently kiss my feet:
46 you anointed not my head with olive oil;
but this one anoints my feet with myrrh:
47 for this cause, I word to you,
Her many sins are forgiven; for she loves much:
but to whom little is forgiven, loves little.
48 And he says to her, Your sins are forgiven.
49 — and they who repose with him
begin to word within themselves,
Who is this who also forgives sins?

50 And he says to the woman,
Your trust saves you! Go in shalom!

8

And so be it, in sequence,
he passes through every city and village
preaching and evangelizing of Elohim:
and the twelve are with him;
2 with some women
who were cured of evil spirits and frailties
— Miryam called Magdalene
from whom came seven demons,
3 and Yah Hanna the woman of Chuza
manager of Herod,
and Shoshanna, and many others
who ministered to him from their holdings.

YAH SHUA ON THE SPORER

4 And a vast multitude gathers together,
and journeys to him from every city:

LUKE 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 he spake by **said through** a parable:
 A sower **sporer** went out to sow **spore** his seed **sperma**;
 and as he sowed **spored**, some **indeed** fell by the way side;
 and it was **trodden down** **trampled**,
 and the **fowls** **flyers** of the air **heavens** devoured it.
 6 And **some** **others** fell upon a rock;
 and as soon as it was **sprung up** **sprouted**,
 it withered away, because it **lacked** **had no** moisture.
 7 And **some** **others** fell among thorns;
 and the thorns **sprang up** **sprouted** with it, and choked it.
 8 And other fell on good **ground** **earth**,
 and **sprang up** **sprouted**
 and **bare** **produced** fruit an hundredfold.
 And when he had **said** **worded** these **things**,
 he **cried** **voiced out**,
 He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.
 9 And his disciples asked him, **saying** **wording**,
 What might this parable be?
 10 And he said,
 Unto you it is given to know the mysteries
 of the **kingdom** **sovereigndom** of **God** **Elohim**:
 but to **others** **the rest** in parables;
 that seeing they might not see,
 and hearing they might not **understand** **comprehend**.
 11 Now the parable is this:
 The seed **sperma** is the word of **God** **Elohim**.
 12 Those by the way side are they that hear;
 then cometh **the devil** **Diabolos**,
 and taketh away the word out of their hearts,
 lest they should **believe** **trust** and be saved.
 13 They on the rock **are they**,
 which, when **ever** they hear,
 receive the word with **joy** **cheer**;
 and these have no root,
 which for a **while** **believe** **season** **trust**,
 and in **time** **season** of **temptation** **testing** fall away.
 14 And that which fell among thorns are they,
 which, when they have heard, go forth,
 and are **choked** **strangled**
 with **cares** **by anxieties** and riches and pleasures
 of **this life** **existence**,
 and bring no fruit to **perfection** **completion/shalom**.
 15 **But** **And** that on the **good ground** **beautiful earth** are they,
 which in an **honest** **a beautiful** and good heart,
 having heard the word, **keep it** **hold on**,
 and **bring forth** **bear** fruit with **patience** **by endurance**.

YAH SHUA ON CANDLES

16 No **man** **one**, when he hath lighted a candle,
 covereth **veileth** it with a vessel,
 or putteth it under a bed;
 but **setteth** **putteth** it on a **candlestick** **menorah**,
 that they which enter in may see the light.
 17 For **nothing** **naught** is **secret** **secreted**,
 that shall not be **made** manifest;
 neither **any thing** **hid** **secreted**,
 that shall not be known
 and **come abroad** **be** manifest.
 18 **Take heed therefore** **So see** how ye hear:
 for whosoever hath, to him shall be given;
 and whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken
 even that which he **seemeth to have** **thinketh he hath**.
 19 **Then** **And** came to him his mother and his brethren,
 and could not **come** **get** at him for the **press** **multitude**.
 20 And it was **told** **evangelized** him
 by **certain** **which** **said** **wording**,
 Thy mother and thy brethren stand without,
desiring **willing** to see thee.
 21 And he answered and said unto them,
 My mother and my brethren
 are these which hear the word of **God** **Elohim**, and do it.

YAH SHUA REBUKES THE WIND

22 **Now it came to pass on a certain** **And so be it one** day,
 that he **went** **embarked** into a **ship** **sailer**
 with his disciples:
 and he said unto them, Let us **go over** **pass through**
 unto the other side of the lake.
 And they **launched forth** **embarked**.
 23 But as they sailed he fell asleep:

LOUKAS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and through a parable, he says,
 5 A sporer goes to spore his sperma:
 and as he spores
 some indeed falls by the way side and it is trampled;
 and the flyers of the heavens devour it:
 6 and others fall on a rock;
 and as soon as it sprouts
 it withers because it has no moisture:
 and others fall among thorns;
 7 and the thorns sprout with it, and choke it:
 and others fall on good earth;
 8 and sprout and produce fruit a hundredfold.
 — and he words these and voices out,
 Whoever has ears to hear, hear!
 9 And his disciples ask him, wording,
 What is this parable?
 10 And he says,
 To you it is given to know the mysteries
 of the sovereigndom of Elohim:
 but to the rest in parables;
 that seeing, they see not,
 and hearing, they comprehend not.
 11 Now this is the parable:
 The sperma is the word of Elohim;
 12 those by the way side are they who hear;
 then Diabolos comes
 and takes the word from their hearts,
 lest they trust and be saved.
 13 They on the rock, who, whenever they hear,
 receive the word with cheer;
 and they have no root
 — who for a season trust
 and in season of testing fall away.
 14 And that falling among thorns
 are they who hear and go;
 and are strangled by anxieties
 and riches and pleasures of existence
 and bring no fruit to completion/shalom.
 15 And that on the beautiful earth
 are they who, in a beautiful and good heart,
 hear the word, hold on, and bear fruit by endurance.

YAH SHUA ON CANDLES

16 No one lights a candle and veils it with a vessel,
 or puts it under a bed;
 but puts it on a menorah,
 that whoever enters sees the light.
 17 For naught is secreted,
 that becomes not manifest;
 and naught is secreted,
 that is not known and manifest.
 18 So see how you hear:
 for whoever has, to him is given;
 and whoever has not, from him is taken
 even what he thinks he has.

19 And his mother and his brothers come to him,
 and cannot get at him for the multitude.
 20 And they evangelize him, wording,
 Your mother and your brothers stand outside;
 they will to see you.

21 And he answers them, saying,
 My mother and my brothers
 are these who hear the word of Elohim, and do it.

YAH SHUA REBUKES THE WIND

22 And so be it, one day,
 he embarks in a sailer with his disciples:
 and he says to them,
 Pass through across the lake.
 — and they embark.

23 And as they sail he falls asleep:

LUKE 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and there *came down* **descended**
a *storm of wind* **whirlwind** on the lake;
and they were filled **full** *with water*,
and were in *jeopardy* **peril**.
24 And they came to him, and *awoke* **roused** him,
saying **wording**, *Master, master* **Rabbi, rabbi**,
we perish **destruct**.
Then he arose,
and rebuked the wind and the *raging* **surging** of the water:
and they *ceased* **paused**, and there was **became** a calm.
25 And he said unto them, Where is your *faith* **trust**?
And they *being afraid* **wondered** **awing**, **marvelled**,
saying **wording** one to another,
What manner of man **Who then** is this!
for he *commandeth* **ordereth** even the winds and water,
and they obey him.

YAH SHUA EVANGELIZES IMPURE SPIRITS

26 And they *arrived* **sailed**
at down to the *country* **region** of the Gadarenes,
which is *over against Galilee* **opposite Galiyl**.
27 And when he went forth to land,
there met him out of the city a *certain* man,
which had *devils long* **demons enough** time,
and *ware no clothes* **not clothed in a garment**,
neither abode in any house, but in the tombs.
28 When he saw *Jesus* **Yah Shua**, he *cried out* **screamed**,
and *fell down before* **prostrated in front of** him,
and with a *loud* **mega** voice said,
What have I to do with thee, *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
thou Son of *God most high* **El Elyon**?
29 I *beseech* **petition** thee, *torment* **torture** me not.
(For he had *commanded* **evangelized**
the *unclean* **impure** spirit to come out of the *man* **human**.
For oftentimes it had caught him:
and he was *kept* **guarded**
bound with *chains* **fetters** and in *fetters* **shackles**;
and he *brake* **ripped** the *bands* **bonds**,
and was driven of the *devil* **demon** into the wilderness.)
30 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** asked him, *saying* **wording**,
What is thy name?
And he said, Legion:
because many *devils* **demons** were entered into him.
31 And they besought him
that he *would* **should** not *command* **order** them
to go out into the *deep* **abyss**.
32 And there was there *an herd* **a drove** of many **ample** swine
feeding **grazing** on the mountain:
and they besought him
that he *would suffer* **should allow** them to enter into them.
And he *suffered* **allowed** them.
33 *Then* **And** went the *devils* **demons** out of the *man* **human**,
and entered into the swine:
and the *herd* **drove** ran violently down a *steep place* **cliff**
into the lake, and were choked.
34 When they that *fed* **grazed** them
saw what *was done* **had become**,
they fled, and went and *told* **evangelized** it
in the city and in the *country* **field**.
35 Then they went out to see what *was done* **had become**;
and came to *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
and found the *man* **human**,
out of whom the *devils* **demons** were departed,
sitting at the feet of *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
clothed, and in *his right mind* **sound minded**:
and they were *afraid* **awestricken**.
36 They also which saw it *told* **evangelized** them
by what means **how**
he that was *possessed of the devils* **demonized**
was *healed* **saved**.
37 *Then* **And** the whole multitude
of the *country* **region** of the Gadarenes round about
besought **asked** him to depart from them;
for they were *taken* **held** with *great fear* **mega awe**:
and he *went up* **embarked** into the *ship* **sailer**,
and returned *back* **again**.

LOUKAS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and a whirlwind descends on the lake
and they fill full and *are* in peril:
24 and they come to him, and rouse him, wording,
Rabbi! Rabbi! We destruct!
And he rises,
and rebukes the wind and the surging of the water:
and they pause, and a calm beomes:
25 and he says to them, Where is your trust?
And awing, they marvel, wording one to another,
Who then is this?
Who even orders the winds and water
and they obey him?

YAH SHUA EVANGELIZES IMPURE SPIRITS

26 And they sail to the region of the Gadarenes
opposite Galiyl:
27 and he comes to land,
and a man from the city meets him
who has demons time enough:
he neither clothes in a garment,
nor abides in any house, but in the tombs:
28 and seeing Yah Shua, he screams,
and prostrates in front of him:
and with a mega voice, says,
What have I to do with you,
Yah Shua, you Son of El Elyon?
29 I petition you, torture me not.
— for he had evangelized
the impure spirit to come from the human:
for oftentimes it catches him:
and they guard him,
bind with fetters and in shackles;
and he rips the bonds,
and the demon drives him into the wilderness.
30 And Yah Shua asks him, wording,
What is your name?
And he says, Legion!
— because many demons entered him:
and they beseech him
to not order them to go into the abyss.
32 And there is an ample drove of swine
grazing on the mountain:
and they beseech him to allow them to enter them.
— and he allows them.
33 And the demons come from the human
and enter the swine:
and violently the drove runs down a cliff into the lake
and choke.
34 And they who graze them see what becomes,
and they flee,
and go and evangelize in the city and in the field.
35 And they go to see what became;
and come to Yah Shua
and find the human from whom the demons departed
sitting at the feet of Yah Shua,
clothed, and sound minded:
and they are awestricken:
and they who see
36 also evangelize them how the demonized was saved.
37 And the whole multitude
around the region of the Gadarenes
ask him to depart from them;
for they are held with mega awe:
and he embarks in the sailer and returns.

LUKE 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

38 And the man
out of whom the *devils* **demons** were departed
besought **petitioned** him that he might be with him:
but *Jesus sent* **Yah Shua released** him away,
saying **wording**,

39 Return to thine own house,
and *shew how great things* **declare as much as**
God Elohim hath done unto thee.
And he went his way,
and *published* **preached** throughout the whole city
how great things Jesus as much as Yah Shua
had done unto him.

40 And **so be** it *came to pass*, that,
when *Jesus Yah Shua* was returned,
the *people gladly* **multitude** received him:
for they were all *waiting for* **awaiting** him.

THE DYING DAUGHTER OF YAIR

41 And, behold, there came a man named *Jairus* **Yair**,
and he was a *ruler* **an arch** of the synagogue:
and he fell down at *Jesus'* **Yah Shua's** feet,
and besought him
that he *would come into* **should enter** his house:
For he had one only *begotten* daughter,
about twelve years of *age*, and she *lay a* **was** dying.
But as he went
the *people thronged* **multitude strangled** him.

WOMAN TOUCHES YAH SHUA

43 And a woman
having an *issue* **a flux** of blood twelve years,
which had spent all her *living* **subsistence**
upon *physicians* **healers**,
neither could be *healed* **cured** of any,
Came behind him,
and touched the *border* **edge** of his garment:
and immediately her *issue* **flux** of blood *stanchd* **stood**.

45 And *Jesus Yah Shua* said, Who touched me?
When all denied,
Peter Petros and they that were with him said,
Master **Rabbi**,

the *multitude throng* **hold** thee and press thee,
and *sayest* **wordest** thou, Who touched me?

46 And *Jesus Yah Shua* said,
Somebody **Someone** hath touched me:
for I *perceive* **know**
that *virtue* **dynamis** is gone out of me.

47 And when the woman saw that she was not hid,
she came trembling,
and *falling down before* **prostrating in front of** him,
she *declared* **evangelized** unto him
before in sight of all the people
for what cause she had touched him,
and how she was healed immediately.

48 And he said unto her, Daughter,
be of good comfort **Courage**:
thy *faith* **trust** hath *made* **saved** thee *whole*;
go in *peace* **shalom**.

THE DAUGHTER OF YAIR DIES

49 While he yet spake, there cometh one
from the *ruler of the synagogue's house* **synagogue arch**,
saying **wording** to him, Thy daughter is dead;
trouble **harass** not the *Master* **Doctor**.

50 But when *Jesus Yah Shua* heard it,
he answered him, saying **wording**, *Fear* **Awe** not:
believe **trust** only, and she shall be *made whole* **saved**.

51 And when he *came entered* into the house,
he *suffered* **allowed** no man **one** to go *in enter*,
save Peter **except Petros**, and *James* **Yaaqovos**, and *John* **Yahn**,
and the father and the mother of the *maiden* **lass**.

52 And all wept, and *bewailed* **chopped over** her:
but he said, Weep not; she is not dead, but sleepeth.

53 And they *laughed* **ridiculed** him to *scorn*,
knowing that she was dead.

YAH SHUA RAISES THE DAUGHTER OF YAIR

54 And he *put* **cast** them all out,
and *took* **overpowered** her by the hand,
and *called* **voiced out**, saying **wording**, *Maid* **Lass**, arise.

55 And her spirit *came again* **returned**,
and she arose straightway:
and he *commanded* **ordained** to give her *meat* **eats**.

LOUKAS 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

38 And the man from whom the demons departed
petitions him to be with him:
and Yah Shua releases him, wording,
Return to your own house,
and declare as much as Elohim did to you.
— and he goes his way
and preaches throughout the whole city
as much as Yah Shua did to him.

40 And so be it, as Yah Shua returns,
the multitude receives him:
for they all await him.

THE DYING DAUGHTER OF YAIR

41 And behold, a man named Yair comes;
and he is an arch of the synagogue:
and he falls down at the feet of Yah Shua
and beseeches him to enter his house:
for he has one only daughter
about twelve years and she is dying:
but as he goes, the multitude strangles him.

WOMAN TOUCHES YAH SHUA

43 And a woman having a flux of blood twelve years;
who spent all her subsistence on healers
and could not be cured by any,
comes behind him
and touches the edge of his garment:
and immediately her flux of blood stands.

45 And Yah Shua says, Who touched me?

When all deny,
Petros and those with him say, Rabbi,
the multitude holds you and presses you
— and word you, Who touched me?

46 And Yah Shua says, Someone touched me:
for I know dynamis is gone from me.

47 And the woman, seeing she is not hid,
comes trembling and prostrates in front of him;
she evangelizes to him in sight of all the people
why she touched him
and how she is immediately healed.

48 And he says to her, Daughter, Courage!
Your trust saves you! Go in shalom!

THE DAUGHTER OF YAIR DIES

49 While he yet speaks,
someone comes from the synagogue arch,
wording to him, Your daughter is dead;
harass not the Doctor.

50 But Yah Shua hears,
and answers him, wording, Awe not!
Only trust, and she is saved!

51 And he enters the house,
and allows no one to enter
except Petros and Yaaqovos and Yahn
and the father and the mother of the lass:
and all weep and chop over her.

52 But he says, Weep not! She is not dead, but sleeps!
— and they ridicule him, knowing she is dead.

YAH SHUA RAISES THE DAUGHTER OF YAIR

54 And he casts them all out
and overpowers her by the hand
and voices out, wording, Lass, rise!
— and her spirit returns and straightway she rises.
And he ordains to give her eats:

LUKE 8, 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

56 And her parents were *astonished* **astounded**:
but he *charged* **evangelized** them
that they should *tell* **say to no man one**
what was *done* **had become**.

YAH SHUA APOSTOLIZES THE TWELVE

9 Then **And** he called his twelve disciples together,
and gave them *power* **dynamis** and authority
over all *devils* **demons**, and to cure diseases.

2 And he *sent* **apostolized** them
to preach the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**,
and to heal the *sick* **frail**.

3 And he said unto them,
Take *nothing* **naught** for your journey,
neither *staves* **rod**, nor *scrip* **wallet**,
neither bread, neither *money* **silver**;
neither have two *coats* **apiece tunics each**.

4 And whatsoever house ye enter into,
there abide, and thence depart.

5 And *whosoever will* **as many as ever** not receive you,
when ye go out of that city,
shake off the very dust from your feet
for a *testimony* **witness** against them.

6 And they departed,
and went **passed** through the *towns* **villages**,
preaching the gospel **evangelizing**, and healing every where.

7 Now Herod the tetrarch
heard of all that was *done* **had become** by him:
and he was **thoroughly** perplexed,
because that it was *said* **worded** of some,
that *John Yahn* was risen from the dead;

8 And of some, that *Elias* **Eli Yah** had *appeared*; **manifested**
and of others,
that one of the *old* **ancient** prophets was risen *again*.

9 And Herod said, *John Yahn* have I beheaded:
but who is this, *of* **concerning** whom I hear such *things*?
And he *desired* **sought** to see him.

YAH SHUA FEEDS FIVE THOUSAND

10 And the apostles, when they were returned,
told **declared to him all that** **as much as** they had done.
And he took them,
and went *aside* **withdrew** privately
into a *desert* **desolate** place
belonging to the city called *Bethsaida* **Beth Sayad**.

11 And the *people* **multitude**,
when they knew it, followed him:
and he received them,
and spake unto them
of **concerning** the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**,
and healed them that had need of *healing* **therapy**.

12 And when the day began to wear away **recline**,
then **and** came the twelve, and said unto him,
Send **Release** the multitude away,
that they may go
into the *towns* **villages** and *country* **fields** round about,
and lodge, and *get* **victuals find food**:
for we are here in a *desert* **desolate** place.

13 But he said unto them, Give ye them to eat.
And they said,
We have no more but five *loaves* **bread**s and two fishes;
except **unless** we should go
and buy *meat* **food** for all this people.

14 For they were about five thousand men.
And he said to his disciples,
Make **Have** them *sit down* **recline** by fifties
in a company.

15 And they did so, and *made* **had** them all *sit down* **recline**.

16 *Then* **And** he took
the five *loaves* **bread**s and the two fishes,
and looking *up* to heaven,
he *blessed* **eulogized** them, and brake,
and gave to the disciples to set *before* **by** the multitude.

17 And they did eat, and were all filled:
and there was taken *up*
of fragments that *remained* **superabounded** to them
twelve baskets.

THE PROFESSION OF PETROS OF YAH SHUA

18 And **so be** it came to *pass*, as he was alone praying,
his disciples were with him:

LOUKAS 8, 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

56 and her parents are astounded:
but he evangelizes them to say to no one
what became.

YAH SHUA APOSTOLIZES THE TWELVE

9 And he calls his twelve disciples together
and gives them dynamis and authority over all demons,
and to cure diseases.

2 And he apostolizes them
to preach the sovereigndom of Elohim
and to heal the frail.

3 And he says to them,
Take naught for your journey
— neither rod nor wallet nor bread nor silver;
nor have two tunics each:
and whatever house you enter,
there abide and there depart:
and as many as ever receive you not
when you go from that city
shake off the very dust from your feet
for a witness against them.

6 — and they depart and pass through the villages
evangelizing and healing everywhere.

7 And Herod the tetrarch
hears of all that becomes by him
and he is thoroughly perplexed:
because some word that Yahn is risen from the dead;
and some, that Eli Yah is manifested;

8 and others, that one of the ancient prophets is risen.

9 And Herod says, Yahn I beheaded:
but who is this, concerning whom I hear such?
— and he seeks to see him.

YAH SHUA FEEDS FIVE THOUSAND

10 And the apostles return
and declare to him as much as they do.
And he takes them
and withdraws privately to a desolate place
belonging to the city called Beth Sayad.

11 And the multitude knows and follows him:
and he receives them and speaks to them
concerning the sovereigndom of Elohim;
and heals those in need of therapy.

12 And the day begins to recline,
and the twelve come to him and say,
Release the multitude
to go into the villages and around the fields
and lodge and find food:
for we are here in a desolate place.

13 But he says to them, You give them to eat.
And they say,
We have no more but five breads and two fishes
— unless we go and buy food for all this people.
— for they are about five thousand men.

14 And he says to his disciples,
Recline them by fifties in a company.
— and thus they do and recline them all.

16 And he takes the five breads and the two fishes
and looks to the heavens;
he eulogizes them and breaks;
and gives to the disciples to set by the multitude:
and they eat and all fill up:
and they take twelve baskets of the fragments
that superabound to them.

THE PROFESSION OF PETROS OF YAH SHUA

18 And so be it, as he is alone praying,
his disciples are with him:

LUKE 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and he asked them, saying **wording**,
Whom say the *people* **multitude** that I am?
19 They answering said, *John Yahn* the *Baptist baptizer*;
but some say *others, Elias Eli Yah*;
and others say,
that one of the *old ancient* prophets is risen *again*.
20 He said unto them, But whom say **word** ye that I am?
Peter Petros answering said,
The *Christ Messiah* of *God Elohim*.
21 And he straitly *charged* **admonished** them,
and *commanded* **evangelized** them
to tell no man that thing **say that to no one**;
22 Saying,
The Son of *man* **humanity** must suffer *many things* **much**,
and be *rejected* **disapproved** of the elders
and *chief arch* priests and scribes,
and be *slain slaughtered*, and be raised the third day.
23 And he said **worded** to them all,
If any *man* will **one willeth to** come after me,
let him deny himself,
and take up his *cross* **stake** daily, and follow me.
24 For whosoever will **willeth to** save his *life* **soul**
shall lose it:
but whosoever will **shall** lose his *life* **soul** for my sake,
the same shall save it.
25 For what is a *man* **advantaged** **human benefited**,
if he gain the whole *world* **cosmos**,
and lose himself, or be cast away **lost**?
26 For whosoever
shall be ashamed of me and of my words,
of him shall the Son of *man* **humanity** be ashamed,
when **ever** he shall come in his own glory,
and in his Father's, and of the holy angels.
27 But I tell **word to** you of a *truth* **truly**,
there be some standing here,
which shall **not never no way** taste of death,
till they see the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God Elohim*.
THE METAMORPHOSIS OF YAH SHUA
28 And **so be** it came to pass
about an eight days after these *sayings* **words**,
he took *Peter Petros* and *John Yahn* and *James Yaaqovos*,
and went up **ascended** into a mountain to pray.
29 And as he prayed,
the *fashion* **semblance** of his *countenance* **face**
was altered **became** another,
and his *raiment* **garment**
was white and *glistening* **effulgent**.
see Matthaiois 17:2, Markos 9:2
30 And, behold, there talked with him two men,
which were *Moses* **Mosheh** and *Elias* **Eli Yah**:
31 Who appeared in glory,
and spake **worded** of his *decease* **exodus**
which he *should accomplish* **was about to fulfill/shalam**
at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
32 But *Peter Petros* and they that were with him
were *heavy* **burdened** with sleep:
and when they were **thoroughly** awake,
they saw his glory, and the two men that stood with him.
33 And **so be** it came to pass, as they departed from him,
Peter Petros said unto *Jesus Yah Shua*,
Master Rabbi, it is good for us to be here:
and let us make three tabernacles;
one for thee,
and one for *Moses* **Mosheh**, and one for *Elias* **Eli Yah**:
not knowing what he said **worded**.
34 While he *thus* spake **worded** these,
there came **became** a cloud, and overshadowed them:
and they *feared* **awed** as they entered into the cloud.
35 And there came **became** a voice out of the cloud,
saying **wording**, This is my beloved Son: hear him.
36 And when the voice was past **had become**,
Jesus Yah Shua was found alone.
And they kept it close **hushed**,
and told **evangelized to** no man **one** in those days
any of those *things* which they had seen.
YAH SHUA REBUKES AN IMPURE SPIRIT
37 And **so be** it came to pass, that on the next day,
when they were come down from the *hill* **mountain**,
much *people* **multitude** met him.

LOUKAS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and he asks them, wording,
Whom say the multitude me to be?
19 They answer, saying, Yahn the baptizer;
but others, Eli Yah;
and others, One of the ancient prophets is risen.
20 He says to them, But whom word you me to be?
Petros answers, saying, The Messiah of Elohim.
21 And he straitly admonishes them
and evangelizes them to say that to no one;
22 saying, The Son of humanity must suffer much,
and be disapproved by the elders
and archpriests and scribes;
and slaughtered; and the third day rise.
23 And he words to them all,
If anyone wills to come after me,
have him deny himself
and take his stake daily and follow me.
24 For whoever wills to save his soul, loses it:
and whoever loses his soul for my sake, saves it.
25 For what is a human benefited
having gained the whole cosmos
and lose himself — or be lost?
26 For whoever shames of me and of my words,
of him the Son of humanity shames
— whenever he comes in his own glory,
and of his Father, and of the holy angels.
27 But I word to you truly,
some standing here, never no way taste of death,
until they see the sovereigndom of Elohim.
THE METAMORPHOSIS OF YAH SHUA
28 And so be it, about eight days after these words,
he takes Petros and Yahn and Yaaqovos
and ascends a mountain to pray:
29 and as he prays
the semblance of his face becomes another;
and his garment is white and effulgent:
see Matthaiois 17:2, Markos 9:2
30 and behold, two men talk with him
— Mosheh and Eli Yah:
31 who appear in glory,
and word of the exodus
he is about to fulfill/shalam at Yeru Shalem.
32 But Petros and those with him
are burdened with sleep:
and when they thoroughly waken,
they see his glory and the two men standing with him.
33 And so be it, as they depart from him,
Petros says to Yah Shua,
Rabbi, it is good for us to be here:
and to make three tabernacles
— one for you
and one for Mosheh and one for Eli Yah.
— not knowing what he words.
34 And as he words these,
a cloud becomes and overshadows them:
and they awe as they enter the cloud:
35 and a voice becomes from the cloud, wording,
This is my beloved Son! Hear him!
36 And when this voice becomes,
Yah Shua is found alone:
and they hush and evangelize to no one in those days
any of what they saw.
YAH SHUA REBUKES AN IMPURE SPIRIT
37 And so be it, the next day,
they descend the mountain
and a vast multitude meets him.

LUKE 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

38 And, behold, a man of the *company* **multitude** cried out,
saying **wording**, **Master Doctor**, I beseech **petition** thee,
look upon my son: for he is mine only *child* **birthed**.

39 And, *lo* **behold**,
a spirit taketh him, and he suddenly crieth out;
and it *teareth* **convulseth** him
that he foameth again **with frothing**,
and *bruising* **crushing** him hardly departeth from him.

40 And I besought **petitioned** thy disciples
to cast him out; and they could not.

41 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answering said,
O *faithless* **trustless**
and *perverse* **thoroughly perverted** generation,
how long until when shall I be with you,
and *suffer* **tolerate** you?
Bring thy son hither.

42 And as he was yet a coming,
the *devil* **threw demon burst** him down,
and *tare* **convulsed** him.

And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** rebuked the *unclean* **impure** spirit,
and healed the *child* **lad**,
and *delivered* **gave** him again **back** to his father.

43 And **But** they were all *amazed* **astonished**
at the *mighty power* **majesty** of *God* **Elohim**.
But while they *wondered* **marvelled** every one
at all *things* which *Jesus* **Yah Shua** did,
he said unto his disciples,

44 **Let Place** these *sayings* **sink down** **words** into your ears:
for the Son of *man* **humanity**
shall be delivered **is about to be betrayed**
into the hands of *men* **humanity**.

45 But they *understood* **knew** not this *saying* **rhema**,
and it was hid from them, that they perceived it not:
and they *feared* **awed** to ask him *of* **about** that *saying* **rhema**.

BEING THE GREATEST

46 Then there *arose* **entered** a reasoning among them,
which **ever** of them should be greatest.

47 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
perceiving the *thought* **reasoning** of their heart,
took **hold of** a child, and *set* **stood** him by him,
And said unto them,
Whosoever shall receive this child in my name
receiveth me:
and whosoever shall receive me
receiveth him that *sent* **apostolized** me:
for he that is least among you all,
the same shall be *great* **mega**.

49 And *John* **Yahn** answered and said, *Master* **Rabbi**,
we saw one casting out *devils* **demons** in thy name;
and we forbad him, because he followeth not with us.

50 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto him,
Forbid him not: for he that is not against us is for us.

SHOMERONIYM RECEIVE NOT YAH SHUA

51 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
when the *time* was *come* **day fulfilled/shalamed**
that he should be *received up* **taken**,
he *stedfastly* **set** **established** his face
to go to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,

52 And *sent* **messengers** **apostolized** **angels**
before **in front of** his face:
and they went,
and entered into a village of the *Samaritans* **Shomeroniym**
so as to *make ready* **prepare** for him.

53 And they did not receive him,
because his face was as though
he *would* **should** go to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

54 And when his disciples
James **Yaaqovos** and *John* **Yahn** saw this, they said,
Lord **Adonay**, *wilt* **willest** thou that we *command* **tell** fire
to *come down* **descend** from heaven,
and consume them, even as *Elias* **Eli Yah** did?
But he turned, and rebuked them, and said,
Ye know not what manner of spirit ye are of.

56 For the Son of *man* **humanity** is not come
to destroy *men's lives* **the souls of humanity**,
but to save them.
And they went to another village.

LOUKAS 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

38 And behold, a man of the multitude cries out,
wording, Doctor, I petition you;
look upon my son; for he is my only birthed:

39 and behold, a spirit takes him
and he suddenly cries out;
and it convulses him with frothing
and crushes him hardly and departs from him:
and I petitioned your disciples to cast him out;
and they cannot.

41 And Yah Shua answers, saying,
O trustless and thoroughly perverted generation,
until when am I with you, and tolerate you?
Bring your son here.

42 And as he is still coming,
the demon bursts him and convulses him:
and Yah Shua rebukes the impure spirit
and heals the lad
and gives him back to his father.

43 — and they all astonish at the majesty of Elohim.

And while everyone marvels at all that Yah Shua does,
he say to his disciples,
Place these words in your ears:
for the Son of humanity
is about to be betrayed into the hands of humanity.
— but they know not this rhema,
and it is hid from them, so that they perceive not:
and they awe to ask him about that rhema.

BEING THE GREATEST

46 But a reasoning enters among them,
whoever of them is greatest.

47 And Yah Shua,
perceiving the reasoning of their heart,
takes hold of a child and stands him by him,
and says to them,
Whoever receives this child in my name
receives me:
and whoever receives me
receives him who apostolized me:
for whoever is least among you all,
the same becomes mega.

49 And Yahn answers, saying, Rabbi,
we saw one casting out demons in your name;
and we forbad him because he follows not with us.

50 And Yah Shua says to him,
Forbid him not: for whoever is not against us is for us.

SHOMERONIYM RECEIVE NOT YAH SHUA

51 And so be it, when the day fulfills/shalams to take him,
he establishes his face to go to Yeru Shalem;
and apostolizes angels in front of his face:
and they go and enter a village of the Shomeroniym
so as to prepare for him:
and they receive him not,
because his face is as though he goes to Yeru Shalem.

54 And his disciples Yaaqovos and Yahn see this,
and say, Adonay,
will you that we tell fire to descend from the heavens,
and consume them — even as Eli Yah did?

55 But he turns and rebukes them, and says,
You know not of what manner of spirit you are:
for the Son of humanity comes not
to destroy the souls of humanity
but to save them.
— and they go to another village.

LUKE 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

PRIORITIES

57 And **so be** it came to pass, that, as they went in the way,
a certain man **one** said unto him, *Lord Adonay,*
I will shall follow thee whithersoever thou goest.
 58 And *Jesus Yah Shua* said unto him,
 Foxes have *holes burrows*,
 and *birds flyers* of the *air heavens* have nests;
 but the Son of *man humanity*
 hath not where to *lay recline* his head.
 59 And he said unto another, Follow me.
 But he said, *Lord Adonay,*
suffer allow me first to go and *bury entomb* my father.
 60 *Jesus Yah Shua* said unto him,
 Let **Allow** the dead *bury to entomb* their dead:
 but go thou and *preach evangelize*
 the *kingdom sovereignty* of *God Elohim*.
 61 And another also said, *Lord Adonay,*
I will shall follow thee;
 but let **allow** me first go bid them *farewell bye bye*,
 which are at home at my house.
 62 And *Jesus Yah Shua* said unto him, no *man one*,
 having put his hand to the plough, and looking back,
 is **well** fit for the *kingdom sovereignty* of *God Elohim*.

YAH SHUA APOSTOLIZES THE SEVENTY: THE FIRST EVANGELISTIC ADVANCE TEAM

10

Now After these *things*
the Lord appointed Adonay designated
 other seventy also,
 and sent **apostolized** them *two and two by twos*
before in front of his face into every city and place,
 whither he himself *would was about to* come.
 2 *Therefore said So worded* he unto them,
 The harvest *truly indeed* is *great vast*,
 but the *labourers are workers few*:
pray so petition ye therefore the Lord Adonay of the harvest,
 that he *would should*
send forth labourers cast workers into his harvest.
 3 *Go your ways: behold,*
 I send **apostolize** you *forth as lambs* among wolves.
 4 Carry **Bear** neither *purse pouch*, nor *scrip wallet*, nor shoes:
 and salute no *man one* by the way.
 5 And into whatsoever house ye enter,
 first say **word**, *Peace be Shalom* to this house.
 6 And *if whenever indeed* the son of *peace shalom* be there,
 your *peace shalom* shall *rest repose* upon it:
but if not, it shall *turn return* to you *again*.
 7 And in the same house *remain abide*,
 eating and drinking such *things* as they give:
 for the *labourer worker* is worthy of his hire.
Go Depart not from house to house.
 8 And into whatsoever city ye enter, and they receive you,
 eat such *things* as are set *before by* you:
 9 And *heal cure* the *sick frail* that are therein,
 and say **word** unto them,
 The *kingdom sovereignty* of *God Elohim*
is come nigh unto approacheth you.
 10 But into whatsoever city ye enter,
 and they receive you not,
 go your ways out into the *streets broadways* of the same,
 and say,
 11 Even the very dust of your city,
 which *cleaveth on adhereth to* us,
 we do *wipe scrape* off against you:
notwithstanding be ye sure of however know this,
 that the *kingdom sovereignty* of *God Elohim*
is come nigh unto hath approached you.
 12 But **And I** say **word** unto you,
 that it shall be more tolerable in that day
 for *Sodom Sedom*, than for that city.
 13 Woe unto thee, Chorazin!
 woe unto thee, *Bethsaida Beth Sayad!*
 for if the *mighty works dynamis*
 had been *done become* in *Tyre Sor* and Sidon,
 which have been *done become* in you,
 they had a *great while long* ago repented,
 sitting in *sackcloth saq* and ashes.

LOUKAS 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

PRIORITIES

57 And so be it, as they go in the way,
 one says to him, Adonay,
 I follow you wherever you go.
 58 And Yah Shua says to him,
 Foxes have burrows
 and flyers of the heavens have nests;
 but the Son of humanity
 has nowhere to recline his head.
 59 And he says to another, Follow me.
 But he says, Adonay,
 allow me first to go and entomb my father.
 60 Yah Shua says to him,
 Allow the dead to entomb their dead:
 but you go
 and evangelize the sovereignty of Elohim.
 61 And also another says, Adonay,
 I follow you;
 but allow me first go bid bye bye,
 to them at home at my house.
 62 And Yah Shua says to him,
 No one, having put his hand on the plough,
 and looking back,
 is well fit for the sovereignty of Elohim.

YAH SHUA APOSTOLIZES THE SEVENTY: THE FIRST EVANGELISTIC ADVANCE TEAM

10

Now after these,
 Adonay also designates seventy others;
 and apostolizes them by twos in front of his face
 to every city and place he is about to go:
 so he words to them,
 The harvest indeed is vast, but the workers few:
 so petition Adonay of the harvest,
 to cast forth workers into his harvest.
 2 *Go! Behold,*
 I apostolize you as lambs among wolves:
 Bear neither pouch nor wallet nor shoes;
 and salute no one by the way:
 and whatever house you enter,
 first word, Shalom to this house!
 3 And indeed whenever the son of shalom is there,
 your shalom reposes thereon:
 but if not, it returns to you:
 and abide in the same house
 eating and drinking such as they give:
 for the worker is worthy of his hire:
 depart not from house to house.
 4 And whatever city you enter, and they receive you,
 eat such as is set by you:
 and cure the frail therein,
 and word to them,
 The sovereignty of Elohim approaches you.
 5 But whatever city you enter
 and they receive you not:
 go your ways out into the broadways of the same,
 and say,
 6 Even the very dust of your city which adheres to us
 we scrape off against you:
 however know this,
 the sovereignty of Elohim approached you:
 and I word to you,
 that in that day it becomes more tolerable for Sedom
 than for that city.
 7 Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Beth Sayad!
 For if the dynamis that became in you
 had become in Sor and Sidon,
 they had long ago repented
 — sitting in saq and ashes.

LUKE 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 14 But it shall be more tolerable
for Tyre **Sor** and Sidon at the judgment, than for you.
- 15 And thou, *Capernaum* **Kaphar Nachum**,
which art exalted to heaven,
shalt be *thrust* **brought** down to *hell* **sheol/hades**.
Yesha Yah 14:12—15
- 16 He that heareth you heareth me;
and he that *despiseth* **setteth** you **aside**
despiseth **setteth** me **aside**;
and he that *despiseth* **setteth** me **aside**
despiseth **setteth** **aside** him that *sent* **apostolized** me.
- THE SEVENTY REPORT TO YAH SHUA**
- 17 And the seventy returned again with *joy* **cheer**,
saying **wording**, *Lord* **Adonay**,
even the *devils* are *subject* **demons** **subjugate** unto us
through **by** thy name.
- 18 And he said unto them,
I *beheld* **observed** Satan as lightning fall from heaven.
Yahn 12:31, 32, Apocalypse 12:9
- 19 Behold, I give unto you *power* **authority**
to *tread* **trample** on serpents and scorpions,
and over all the *power* **dynamis** of the enemy:
and *nothing* **naught** shall *by any means* **hurt** **no way** **injure** you.
- 20 *Notwithstanding* **However** in this *rejoice* **cheer** not,
that the *spirits* are *subject* **subjugate** unto you;
but rather *rejoice* **cheer**,
because your names are *written* **scribed** in heaven.
- 21 In that hour
Jesus rejoiced **Yah Shua jumped for joy** in spirit,
and said, I *thank* **avow** thee, O Father,
Lord **Adonay** of heaven and earth,
that thou hast *hid* **secreted** these *things*
from the wise and *prudent* **comprehending**,
and hast *revealed* **unveiled** them unto babes:
even so **yea**, Father;
for so **thus** it *seemed good* **became well—approved**
in thy *sight* **front of thee**.
- 22 All *things* are delivered to me of my Father:
and no *man* **one** knoweth who the Son is,
but **except** the Father;
and who the Father is, *but* **except** the Son,
and he to *whom* **whomever**
the Son *will* **willeth** to *reveal* **unveil** him.
- 23 And he turned him unto his disciples,
and said privately,
Blessed are the eyes which see *the things* **those** that ye see:
- 24 For I *tell* **word** unto you,
that many prophets and *kings* **sovereigns**
have *desired* **willed** to see those *things* which ye see,
and have not seen *them*;
and to hear those *things* which ye hear,
and have not heard *them*.
- YAH SHUA ON TRUE NEIGHBOURSHIP**
- 25 And, behold, a *certain* **lawyer** *stood up* **torahist** **rose**,
and *tempted* **tested** him, *saying* **wording**,
Master **Doctor**, what shall I do to inherit eternal life?
- 26 He said unto him,
What is *written* **scribed** in the *law* **torah**? how readest thou?
- 27 And he answering said,
Thou shalt love *the Lord* **Yah Veh** thy *God* **Elohim**
with all thy heart, and with all thy soul,
and with all thy *strength* **might**, and with all thy mind;
and thy neighbour as thyself.
- 28 And he said unto him,
Thou hast answered *right* **straightforwardly**:
this do, and thou shalt live.
- 29 But he, *willing* **having willed** to justify himself,
said unto *Jesus* **Yah Shua**, And who is my neighbour?
- 30 And *Jesus* answering **Yah Shua** **perceiving** said,
A *certain* **man** went down **human** **descended**
from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** to *Jericho* **Yericho**,
and fell among *thieves* **robbers**,
which stripped him of his raiment,
and *wounded* **plagued** him,
and departed, *leaving* **forsaking** him half dead.
- 31 And by *chance* **coincidence**,
there *came down* **descended** a *certain* priest that way:
and when he saw him,
he passed by *on the other side* **opposite**.

LOUKAS 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 14 But it is more tolerable
for Sor and Sidon at the judgment, than for you.
- 15 And you, Kaphar Nachum,
exalted to the heavens,
you descend to sheol/hades.
Yesha Yah 14:12—15
- 16 Whoever hears you, hears me;
and whoever sets you aside, sets me aside;
and whoever sets me aside
sets him aside who apostolized me.
- THE SEVENTY REPORT TO YAH SHUA**
- 17 And the seventy return with cheer, wording,
Adonay,
even the demons subjugate to us by your name.
- 18 And he says to them,
I observed Satan as lightning falls from the heavens.
Yahn 12:31, 32, Apocalypse 12:9
- 19 Behold, I give you authority
to trample on serpents and scorpions;
and over all the dynamis of the enemy:
and naught no way injures you.
- 20 However cheer not in this,
that the spirits subjugate to you;
but cheer rather,
because your names are scribed in the heavens.
- 21 In that hour Yah Shua jumps for joy in spirit,
and says, I avow you, O Father,
Adonay of the heavens and earth,
that you secrete these
from the wise and comprehending,
and unveil them to babes:
yes, Father;
and thus it becomes well—approved in front of you.
- 22 All are delivered to me by my Father:
and no one knows who the Son is, except the Father;
and who the Father is, except the Son;
and to whomever the Son wills to unveil him.
- 23 And he turns to his disciples, and says privately,
Blessed — the eyes that see what you see:
for I word to you,
that many prophets and sovereigns
willed to see what you see, and saw not;
and to hear what you hear, and heard not.
- YAH SHUA ON TRUE NEIGHBORSHIP**
- 25 And behold, a torahist rises, and tests him,
wording, Doctor, what do I to inherit eternal life?
- 26 He says to him,
What is scribed in the torah? How read you?
- 27 And he answers, saying,
Love Yah Veh your Elohim
with all your heart and with all your soul
and with all your might and with all your mind
— and your neighbor as yourself.
- 28 And he says to him,
You answer straightforwardly:
this do, and you live.
- 29 But he wills to justify himself,
and says to Yah Shua, And who is my neighbor?
- 30 And perceiving, Yah Shua says,
A human descends from Yeru Shalem to Yericho
and falls among robbers
who strip him of his raiment and plague him;
and depart, forsaking him half dead.
- 31 And by coincidence, a priest descends that way:
and he sees him and passes by opposite.

LUKE 10, 11

exeGes ready research BIBLE

32 And likewise a *Levite* **Levi**,
when he was **being** at the place,
came and *looked on him* **saw**,
and passed by *on the other side* **opposite**.
33 But a *certain Samaritan* **Shomerony**, as he journeyed,
came where he was: and when he saw him,
he had *compassion* a **sympathetic spleen** on him,
34 And went to him, and bound up his *wounds* **trauma**,
pouring in **olive** oil and wine,
and set **mounted** him on his own *beast* **animal**,
and brought him to an inn, and took care of him.
35 And on the morrow when he departed,
he *took out* **cast** two *pence* **denarion**,
and gave them to the *host* **innkeeper**, and said unto him,
Take care of him; and whatsoever thou spendest more,
when I come again, I *will repay* **shall give to** thee.
36 Which now of these three, thinkest thou,
was **became** neighbour
unto him that fell among the *thieves* **robbers**?
37 And he said, He that *shewed* **dealt** mercy *on* **with** him.
Then **So** said *Jesus* **Yah Shua** unto him,
Go, and do thou likewise.

YAH SHUA ON MINISTRY VS WORSHIP

38 Now it came to pass **And so be it**, as they went,
that he entered into a *certain* village:
and a *certain* woman named Martha
received him into her house.
39 And she had a sister called *Mary* **Miryam**,
which also sat at *Jesus'* **Yah Shua's** feet,
and heard his word.
40 But Martha was cumbered about much *servicing* **ministry**,
and came to **stood by** him, and said,
Lord **Adonay**, dost **art** thou not *care* **concerned**
that my sister hath left me to *serve* **minister** alone?
bid her therefore **so say** that she help me.
41 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answered and said unto her,
Martha, Martha, thou art *careful* **anxious**
and troubled about *many things* **much**:
42 But one *thing* is needful:
and *Mary* **Miryam** hath *chosen* **selected** that good part,
which shall not be *taken away* **removed** from her.

THE PATTERN FOR PRAYER OF YAH SHUA

11 And **so be** it came to pass, that,
as he was praying in a *certain* place,
when he ceased, one of his disciples said unto him,
Lord **Adonay**, teach **doctrinate** us to pray,
exactly as *John* **Yahn** also taught **doctrinated** his disciples.
2 And he said unto them,
when **ever** ye pray, say **word**,
Our Father which art in heaven,
Hallowed be thy name.
Thy *kingdom* **sovereigndom** come.
Thy will be *done* **become**,
as in *heaven* **the heavens**, so in earth.
3 Give us *day by day* **daily** our *daily* **subsistence** bread.
4 And forgive us our sins;
for we also forgive every one that is indebted to us.
And **lead bear** us not into *temptation* **testing**;
but *deliver* **rescue** us from evil.

YAH SHUA ON PERSISTENCE

5 And he said unto them,
Which of you shall have a friend,
and shall go unto him at midnight, and say unto him,
Friend, lend me three *loaves* **bread**s;
6 For **Since** a friend of mine in his journey is come to me,
and I have *nothing* **naught** to set *before* **by** him?
7 And he from within shall answer and say,
Trouble **Embarrass** me not:
the *door* **portal** is *now* **already** shut,
and my children are **lying** with me *in bed*;
I cannot rise and give thee.
8 I say **word** unto you,
Though he *will* **shall** not rise and give him,
because he is his friend,
yet **indeed** because of his *importunity* **impudence**
he *will* **shall** rise and give him as many as he needeth.
9 And I say **word** unto you,

LOUKAS 10, 11

exeGes companion BIBLE

32 And likewise a *Levite*, being at the place,
comes and sees and passes by opposite.
33 Some *Shomerony*, as he journeys,
comes where he is and sees him
and has a sympathetic spleen on him:
34 and goes to him and binds his trauma
— pouring in olive oil and wine
and mounts him on his own animal
and brings him to an inn and takes care of him:
35 and on the morrow as he departs,
he casts two denarion
and gives them to the innkeeper, and says to him,
Take care of him; and whatever you spend more,
when I come again, I give to you.
36 Who of these three, think you,
became neighbor to him who fell among the robbers?
37 And he says, He who dealt mercy with him.
So Yah Shua says to him, Go, and do likewise.

YAH SHUA ON MINISTRY VS WORSHIP

38 And so be it, as they go, he enters a village:
and a woman named Martha
receives him into her house:
39 and she has a sister called Miryam,
who also sits at the feet of Yah Shua
and hears his word:
40 but Martha is much encumbered about ministry
and stands by him, and says,
Adonay, are you not concerned
that my sister leaves me to minister alone?
So say that she help me.
41 And Yah Shua answers her, saying,
Martha, Martha,
you are anxious and troubled about much:
42 but one is needful:
and Miryam selects that good part,
not to be removed from her.

THE PATTERN FOR PRAYER OF YAH SHUA

11 And so be it, as he prays in a place,
when he ceases, one of his disciples say to him,
Adonay, doctrinate us to pray
exactly as Yahn also doctrinated his disciples.
2 And he says to them, whenever you pray, word,
Our Father in the heavens,
Hallowed be your name:
your sovereigndom come:
your will become —
as in the heavens, thus in earth.
3 Give us daily our subsistence bread:
4 and forgive us our sins;
for we also forgive everyone indebted to us.
And bear us not into testing
but rescue us from evil.

YAH SHUA ON PERSISTENCE

5 And he says to them,
Who of you has a friend
and goes to him at midnight, and says to him,
Friend, lend me three breads;
6 since a friend of mine in his journey comes to me
and I have naught to set by him?
7 — and he answers from inside, saying,
Embarrass me not:
the portal is already shut
and my children lie down with me;
I cannot rise and give you.
8 I word to you,
Though he not rise and give him
because he is his friend,
yet indeed because of his impudence
he rises and gives him as much as he needs.
9 And I word to you,

LUKE 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Ask, and it shall be given you;
 seek, and ye shall find;
 knock, and it shall be opened unto you.
 10 For every one that asketh *receiveth taketh*;
 and he that seeketh findeth;
 and to him that knocketh it shall be opened.
 11 *If* a son shall ask bread of any of you that is a father,
 will **shall** he give a stone?
 or if *he ask* a fish,
 will **shall** he for a fish give him a serpent?
 12 Or if **whenever** he shall ask an egg,
 will **shall** he offer give him a scorpion?
 13 If ye then, being evil,
 know how to give good gifts unto your children:
 how much more shall your heavenly Father
 give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?
YAH SHUA CASTS OUT A DEMON
 14 And he was casting out a *devil demon*,
 and it was *dumb mute*.
 And **so be** it came to pass,
 when the *devil demon* was gone out,
 the *dumb mute* spake;
 and the *people wondered multitude marvelled*.
YAH SHUA ACCUSED OF BLASPHEMY
 15 But some of them said,
 He casteth out *devils demons*
 through *Beelzebub* by **Baal Zebub**
 the *chief arch* of the *devils demons*.
 16 And others, *tempting testing* him,
 sought of him a sign from heaven.
 17 But he, knowing their thoughts, said unto them,
 Every *kingdom sovereigndom* divided against itself
 is brought to *desolation desolateth*;
 and a house *divided* against a house falleth.
 18 If Satan also *be divided divideth* against himself,
 how shall his *kingdom sovereigndom* stand?
 because ye say **word** that I cast out *devils demons*
 through *Beelzebub* by **Baal Zebub**.
 19 And if I by *Beelzebub* **Baal Zebub**
 cast out *devils demons*,
 by whom do your sons cast them out?
 therefore **because of this** shall they be your judges.
 20 But if I *with* by the finger of **God Elohim**
 cast out *devils demons*,
 no doubt **then** the *kingdom sovereigndom* of **God Elohim**
 is come **hath approached** upon you.
 21 When **ever** a *strong man the mighty* armed
 keepeth **guardeth** his *palace courtyard*,
 his *goods holdings* are in *peace shalom*:
 22 But when a *stronger mightier* than he
 shall come upon him,
 and *overcome triumph over* him,
 he taketh from him all his *armour panoply*
 wherein he *trusted confided*,
 and *divideth distributeth* his *spoils booty*.
 23 He that is not with me is against me:
 and he that gathereth not with me scattereth.
 24 When **ever** the *unclean impure* spirit
 is gone out of a *man human*,
 he walketh **passeth** through *dry waterless* places,
 seeking *rest repose*;
 and finding none, he *saith wordeth*,
 I **will shall** return unto my house whence I came out.
 25 And when he cometh,
 he findeth it swept and *garnished adorned*.
 26 Then goeth he, and taketh to him seven other spirits
 more *wicked evil* than himself;
 and they enter *in*, and *dwelt settle* there:
 and the *last state finality* of that *man human*
 is **becometh** worse than the first.
 27 And **so be** it came to pass,
 as he *spake worded* these things,
 a *certain woman* of the *company multitude*
 lifted up her voice, and said unto him,
 Blessed is the womb that *bare birthed* thee,
 and the *paps breasts* which thou hast *sucked nipped*.
 28 But he said, Yea **Yet then** rather,
 blessed are they that hear the word of **God Elohim**,
 and *keep guard* it.

LOUKAS 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Ask, and it is given you:
 seek, and you you find:
 knock, and it opens to you.
 10 For everyone who asks, takes;
 and whoever seeks, finds;
 and knocks, and it opens.
 11 And what father, if a son asks bread of you,
 gives him a stone?
 Or if a fish, for a fish gives a serpent?
 12 Or whenever he asks an egg, gives him a scorpion?
 13 So if you, being evil,
 know how to give good gifts to your children:
 how much more your Father in the heavenlies
 gives the Holy Spirit to them who ask him?
YAH SHUA CASTS OUT A DEMON
 14 And he casts a demon, and it is mute:
 and so be it,
 the demon goes and the mute speaks.
 — and the multitude marvels.
YAH SHUA ACCUSED OF BLASPHEMY
 15 And some of them say, He casts out demons
 by Baal Zebub the arch of the demons.
 16 And others, testing him,
 seek a sign from the heavens from him.
 17 But he, knowing their thoughts, says to them,
 Every sovereignty divided against itself desolates;
 and a house against a house falls.
 18 And also, if Satan divides against himself,
 how stands his sovereignty?
 — because you word that I cast out demons
 by Baal Zebub.
 19 And if I by Baal Zebub cast demons,
 by whom do your sons cast them?
 because of this they become your judges.
 20 But if by the finger of Elohim I cast out demons,
 then the sovereignty of Elohim approaches you.
 21 Whenever the mighty armed
 guards his courtyard,
 his holdings are in shalom:
 22 but when a mightier than he comes upon him
 and triumphs over him,
 he takes from him
 all his panoply wherein he confided
 and distributes his booty.
 23 Whoever is not with me is against me:
 and whoever gathers not with me scatters.
 24 Whenever the impure spirit goes from a human
 he passes through waterless places seeking repose:
 and finding none, he words,
 I return to my house whence I come.
 25 And when he comes,
 he finds it swept and adorned.
 26 Then he goes,
 and takes seven other spirits more evil than himself;
 and they enter and settle there:
 and the finality of that human
 becomes worse than the first.
 27 And so be it, as he words these,
 a woman of the multitude lifts her voice
 and says to him,
 Blessed — the womb that birthed you,
 and the breasts you nipped.
 28 But he says, Still rather,
 blessed — whoever hear the word of Elohim
 and guard it.

LUKE 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE SIGN OF YONAH

29 And when the *people* **multitude**
were gathered thick together **thronged**,
 he began to say **word**, This is an evil generation:
 they seek a sign; and there shall no sign be given it,
but **except** the sign of *Jonas* **Yonah** the prophet.

30 For **exactly** as *Jonas* **Yonah**
 was **became** a sign unto the *Ninevites* **Nineviym**,
 so **thus** shall also the Son of *man* **humanity**
 be to this generation.

31 *The queen* **A sovereignty** of the south
 shall rise *up* in the judgment
 with the men of this generation,
 and condemn them:
 for she came from the *utmost parts* **extremities** of the earth
 to hear the wisdom of *Solomon* **Sholomoh**;
 and, behold,
 a *greater* **much more** than *Solomon* **Sholomoh** is here.

32 The men of *Nineve* **Nineveh**
 shall rise *up* in the judgment with this generation,
 and shall condemn it:
 for they repented at the preaching of *Jonas* **Yonah**;
 and, behold,
 a *greater* **much more** than *Jonas* **Yonah** is here.

YAH SHUA ON CANDLES AND MENORAH

33 No *man* **one**, when he hath lighted a candle,
 putteth it in a secret place,
 neither under a *bushel* **measure**,
 but on a *candlestick* **menorah**,
 that they which *come in* **enter** may see the *light* **brilliance**.

34 The *light* **candle** of the body is the eye:
therefore **so** when **ever** thine eye is *single* **clear**,
 thy whole body also is *full of light* **brightly lighted**;
 but when *thine eye is evil*,
 thy body also is *full of darkness* **dark**.

35 *Take heed therefore* **So scope out**
 that the light which is in thee be not darkness.

36 **So** if thy whole body *therefore*
 be *full of light* **brightly lighted**, having no part dark,
 the whole shall be *full of light* **brightly lighted**,
 as when **ever** the *bright shining* **lightning** of a candle
 doth give **lighteth** thee *light*.

YAH SHUA ON THE SIX WOES

37 And as he spake,
 a *certain* Pharisee *besought* **asked** him to dine with him:
 and he *went in* **entered**, and *sat down to meat* **reposed**.

38 And when the Pharisee saw it, he marvelled
 that he had not first *washed* **baptized** before dinner.

39 And the *Lord* **Adonay** said unto him,
 Now *do ye* Pharisees
make clean the outside of **purify outward**
 the cup and the platter;
 but your inward *part*
 is full of *ravening* **plunder** and wickedness.

40 *Ye fools* **Thoughtless**,
 did not he that made that which is *without* **outward**
 make that which is *within* **inward** also?

41 But rather give *alms* **mercies**
 of *such things as ye have* **your inner self**;
 and, behold, all *things* are *clean* **pure** unto you.

42 But woe unto you, Pharisees!
 for ye tithe mint and rue and all *manner of* herbs,
 and pass over judgment and the love of *God* **Elohim**:
 these *ought* **must** ye to have done,
 and not to *leave* **forsake** the other *undone*.

43 Woe unto you, Pharisees!
 for ye love the *uppermost seats* **preeminent cathedras**
 in the synagogues,
 and *greetings* **salutations** in the markets.

44 Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites!
 for ye are as *graves which appear not* **covered tombs**,
 and the *men* **humans** that walk over them
 are not aware of them **know it not**.

45 Then answered one of the *lawyers* **torahists**,
 and *said* **worded** unto him, *Master* **Doctor**,
 thus *saying* **wording**, thou *reproachest* **insultest** us also.

46 And he said, Woe unto you also, ye *lawyers* **torahists**!
 for ye *lade men* **overburden humanity**

LOUKAS 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE SIGN OF YONAH

29 And the multitude throngs, and he begins to word,
 This is an evil generation:
 they seek a sign; and no sign is given
 except the sign of Yonah the prophet:
 for exactly as Yonah
 became a sign to the Nineviym
 thus also the Son of humanity to this generation.

31 A sovereignty of the south
 rises in the judgment with the men of this generation,
 to condemn them:
 for she came from the extremities of the earth
 to hear the wisdom of Sholomoh;
 and behold, much more than Sholomoh is here.

32 The men of Nineveh
 rise in the judgment with this generation
 to condemn it:
 for they repented at the preaching of Yonah;
 and behold, much more than Yonah is here.

YAH SHUA ON CANDLES AND MENORAH

33 No one lights a candle and puts it in a secret place
 neither under a measure;
 but on a menorah
 that whoever enters sees the brilliance.

34 The candle of the body is the eye:
 so whenever your eye is clear,
 your whole body also is brightly lighted;
 but when evil, your body also is dark.

35 So scope out;
 that the light within you be not darkness.

36 So if your whole body is brightly lighted
 having no part dark,
 the whole is brightly lighted,
 as whenever the lightning of a candle lights you.

YAH SHUA ON THE SIX WOES

37 And as he speaks,
 a Pharisee asks him to dine with him:
 and he enters, and reposes:
 and the Pharisee sees, and marvels
 that he not first baptizes preceding dinner.

39 And Adonay says to him,
 Now you Pharisees
 purify the cup and the platter outward;
 but your inward is full of plunder and wickedness.
 Thoughtless!
 He who made the outward
 made he not also the inward?

41 But rather give mercies of your inward self;
 and behold, all are pure to you.

42 But woe to you, Pharisees!
 For you tithe mint and rue and all herbs;
 and pass over judgment and the love of Elohim:
 these you must do, and not forsake the other.

43 Woe to you, Pharisees!
 for you love the preeminent cathedras in the synagogues
 and salutations in the markets.

44 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees! Hypocrites!
 for you are as covered tombs,
 and the humans who walk over know it not.

45 And one of the torahists answers,
 wording, Doctor,
 Thus wording, you also insult us.

46 And he says, Woe to you also, you torahists!
 For you overburden humanity

LUKE 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

with **oppressive** burdens *grievous to be borne*,
and ye yourselves touch not the burdens
with one of your fingers.
47 Woe unto you!
for ye build the *sepulchres* **tombs** of the prophets,
and your fathers *killed* **slaughtered** them.
48 Truly **Then** ye bear witness that ye *allow* **well—approve**
the *deeds* **works** of your fathers:
for they indeed *killed* **slaughtered** them,
and ye build their *sepulchres* **tombs**.
49 Therefore **Because of this**
also said the wisdom of God **Elohim**,
I will send **shall** *apostolize* them prophets and apostles,
and *some* of them they shall *slay* **slaughter** and persecute:
50 That the blood of all the prophets,
which was shed **poured**
from the foundation of the *world* **cosmos**,
may be required of this generation;
From the blood of Abel
51 unto the blood of *Zacharias* **Zechar Yah**
which perished **destroyed**
between the **sacrifice** altar and the *temple* **house**:
Verily I say **Yea I word** unto you,
It shall be required of this generation.
52 Woe unto you, *lawyers* **torahists!**
for ye have taken away the key of knowledge:
ye entered not in yourselves,
and them that were entering in ye *hindered* **forbad**.
53 And as he *said* **worded** these *things* unto them,
the scribes and the Pharisees
began to *urge* **begrudge** him *vehemently* **excessively**,
and to provoke him
to *speak of many things* **instruct about much**:
54 *Laying wait* **Lurking** for him,
and seeking to *catch* **hunt** something out of his mouth,
that they might accuse him.

YAH SHUA ON HYPOCRISY

12

In the mean time,
when there were gathered together
an innumerable a multitude of *people* **myriads**,
insomuch that they *trode* **trampled** one upon another,
he began to *say* **word** unto his disciples first of all,
Beware **Heed** ye **yourselves**
of the *leaven* **fermentation** of the Pharisees
which is hypocrisy.
2 For there is *nothing covered* **naught altogether concealed**,
that shall not be *revealed* **unveiled**;
neither *hid* **secreted**, that shall not be known.
3 Therefore **So**
whatsoever **as much as** ye have spoken in darkness
shall be heard in the light;
and that which ye have spoken in the ear in *closets* **pantries**
shall be *proclaimed* **preached** upon the housetops.
4 And I *say* **word** unto you my friends,
Be Awe not *afraid of* them that *kill* **slaughter** the body,
and after that have no more **superabundantly**
that they can do.
5 But I will *forewarn* **shall exemplify** you
whom ye shall *fear* **awe**:
Fear **Awe** him, which after he hath *killed* **slaughtered**,
hath *power* **authority**
to cast into *hell* **Gay Hinnom/the valley of burning**;
yea, I *say* **word** unto you, *Fear* **Awe** him.
6 Are not **indeed** five sparrows sold for two *farthings* **assarions**,
and not one of them is forgotten
before God **in the sight of Elohim**?
7 But even the very hairs of your head are all numbered.
Fear **So awe** not *therefore*:
ye are of *more value than* **thoroughly surpass** many sparrows.
8 Also I *say* **word** unto you,
Whosoever shall *confess* **profess** me
before men **in front of humanity**,
him shall the Son of *man* **humanity** also *confess* **profess**
before **in front of** the angels of *God* **Elohim**:
9 But he that denieth me *before men* **in sight of humanity**

LOUKAS 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

with oppressive burdens;
and you yourselves touch not the burdens
with one of your fingers.
47 Woe to you!
For you build the tombs of the prophets,
and your fathers slaughtered them:
48 then you witness that you well—approve
the works of your fathers:
for they indeed slaughtered them,
and you build their tombs.
49 Because of this also the wisdom of Elohim says,
I apostolize them prophets and apostles,
and of them, they slaughter and persecute:
50 that the blood of all the prophets,
poured from the foundation of the cosmos,
is required of this generation
— from the blood of Abel
51 to the blood of Zechar Yah
— who destroyed
between the sacrifice altar and the house:
yes, I word to you,
It is required of this generation.
52 Woe to you, torahists!
For you take the key of knowledge:
and you yourselves enter not;
and them entering, you forbid.
53 And as he words these to them,
the scribes and the Pharisees
begin to begrudge him excessively
and to provoke him to instruct about much
— lurking for him,
54 and seeking to hunt something from his mouth,
to accuse him.

YAH SHUA ON HYPOCRISY

12

In the mean time,
a multitude of myriads gathers together
so that they trample on one another:
and he begins to word to his disciples first,
Heed yourselves of the fermentation of the Pharisees
which is hypocrisy:
2 for naught is altogether concealed,
that is not unveiled;
and secreted, that is not known:
3 so as much as you speak in darkness
is heard in the light;
and what you speak in the ear in pantries
is preached on the housetops.
4 And I word to you my friends,
Awe not them who slaughter the body,
and after can do no more superabundantly:
5 but I exemplify you whom to awe;
awe him, who after he slaughters,
has authority
to cast into Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning;
yes, I word to you, awe him.
6 Are not indeed
five sparrows sold for two assarions?
— and not one is forgotten in the sight of Elohim.
7 But even the hairs of your head are all numbered.
So awe not:
you thoroughly surpass many sparrows.
8 Also I word to you,
whoever professes me in front of humanity,
the Son of humanity also professes
in front of the angels of Elohim:
9 but whoever denies me in sight of humanity

LUKE 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

shall be denied **before in sight** of the angels of *God Elohim*.
 10 And whosoever shall **speak say** a word
 against the Son of *man humanity*,
 it shall be forgiven him:
 but unto him
 that blasphemeth against the Holy *Ghost Spirit*
 it shall not be forgiven.
 11 And when **ever** they **bring offer** you
 unto the synagogues,
 and unto *magistrates hierarchies*, and *powers authorities*,
 take ye no thought **be ye not anxious**
 how or what *thing* ye shall answer,
 or what ye shall say **plead**:
 12 For the Holy *Ghost Spirit* shall **teach doctri**nate you
 in the same hour what ye *ought to must* say.
 YAH SHUA ON AVARICE
 13 And one of the *company multitude* said unto him,
 Master **Doctor**, *speak say* to my brother,
 that he divide the inheritance with me.
 14 And he said unto him, *man human*,
 who *made seated* me a judge or a divider over you?
 15 And he said unto them,
 Take heed **See**,
 and beware of *covetousness guard against avarice*:
 for a *man's one's* life
 consisteth **be** not in the **super** abundance
 of the *things which he possesseth his holdings*.
 16 And he *spake worded* a parable unto them,
 saying **speaking**.
 The *ground region* of a *certain rich man human*
 brought forth plentifully **bore well**:
 17 And he *thought reasoned* within himself,
 saying **wording**. What shall I do,
 because I have no room
 where to *bestow gather* my fruits?
 18 And he said, This *will shall* I do:
 I *will shall* pull down my *barns granaries*,
 and build greater;
 and there *will shall* I *bestow gather*
 all my *fruits produce* and my goods.
 19 And I *will shall* say to my soul,
 Soul, thou hast much goods laid up for many years;
 take *thine ease rest*, eat, drink, and be merry **rejoice**.
 20 But *God Elohim* said unto him, *Thou fool Thoughtless*,
 this night thy soul shall be required of thee:
 then whose shall those *things* be,
 which thou hast *provided prepared*?
 21 So **Thus** is he
 that *layeth up treasure treasureth* for himself,
 and is not rich toward *God Elohim*.
 YAH SHUA ON ANXIETY FOR THE SOUL
 22 And he said unto his disciples,
 Therefore **Because of this** I say **word** unto you,
 Take no thought **Be not anxious** for your *life soul*,
 what ye shall eat;
 neither for the body, what ye shall *put on endue*.
 23 The *life soul* is more than *meat nourishment*,
 and the body *is more than raiment enduement*.
 24 Consider **Perceive** the ravens:
 for they neither *sow spore* nor *reap harvest*;
 which neither have *storehouse pantry* nor *barn granary*;
 and *God feedeth Elohim nourisheth* them:
 how much more
 are ye *better than* ye **thoroughly surpass** the *fowls flyers*?
 25 And which of you *with taking thought by anxiety*
 can add to his stature one cubit?
 26 So If ye *then* be not able to do that *thing* which is least,
 why take **be ye thought anxious** for the rest?
 27 Consider **Perceive** the lilies how they grow:
 they *toil labour* not, they spin not;
 and yet I say **word** unto you,
 that *Solomon Sholomoh* in all his glory
 was not arrayed like one of these.
 28 But If *then God so Elohim thus* clothe the *grass herbage*,
 which is to day in the field,
 and to morrow is cast into the oven;
 how much more *will he clothe* you,
 O ye of little *faith trust*?

LOUKAS 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

is denied in sight of the angels of Elohim.
 10 And whoever says a word to the Son of humanity,
 is forgiven:
 but whoever blasphemes to the Holy Spirit
 is not forgiven.
 11 And whenever they offer you to the synagogues
 and to hierarchies and authorities,
 be not anxious how or what you answer
 or what you plead:
 12 for in that same hour
 the Holy Spirit doctriates you what you must say.
 YAH SHUA ON AVARICE
 13 And one of the multitude says to him,
 Doctor, say to my brother
 to divide the inheritance with me.
 14 And he says to him, human,
 who seated me a judge or a divider over you?
 15 And he says to them,
 See, and guard against avarice:
 for the life of one
 is not in the super abundance of his holdings.
 16 And he words a parable to them, speaking,
 The region of a rich human bears well:
 17 and he reasons within himself,
 wording, What do I?
 — because I have no room to gather my fruits.
 18 And he says, I do this:
 I pull down my granaries and build greater;
 and there gather all my produce and my goods:
 19 and say to my soul,
 Soul, you have vast goods laid for many years;
 Rest! Eat! Drink! Rejoice!
 20 And Elohim says to him, Thoughtless!
 This night your soul is required of you:
 so whose are those that you prepared?
 21 Thus is he who treasures for himself,
 and is not rich toward Elohim.
 YAH SHUA ON ANXIETY FOR THE SOUL
 22 And he says to his disciples,
 Because of this I word to you,
 be anxious, neither for your soul — what you eat;
 nor for the body — what you endue:
 23 the soul is more than nourishment
 and the body than enduement.
 24 Perceive the ravens:
 for they neither spore nor harvest
 — neither have pantry nor granary;
 and Elohim nourishes them.
 How much more thoroughly surpass you the flyers?
 25 And who of you by anxiety
 can add one cubit to his stature?
 26 So if you are not able to do what is least,
 why be anxious for the rest?
 27 Perceive the lilies how they grow:
 they neither labor, nor spin;
 and yet I word to you,
 that Sholomoh in all his glory arrayed not as one of these.
 28 But if Elohim thus clothes the herbage
 — which today is in the field
 and tomorrow is cast into the oven;
 how much more you, O you of little trust?

LUKE 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

29 And seek not ye what ye shall eat,
or what ye shall drink,
neither be ye of *doubtful mind* **in suspense**.
30 For all these *things*
do the *nations* **goyim** of the world **cosmos** seek after:
and your Father knoweth that ye have need of these *things*.
31 But rather
seek ye the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**;
and all these *things* shall be added unto you.
32 Fear **Awe** not, little *flock* **shepherddom**;
for it is your Father's good pleasure
your Father well—approveth
to give you the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
33 Sell that ye have **your holdings**,
and give *alms* **mercies**;
provide **make** yourselves *bags* **pouches**
which wax **antiquate** not old,
a treasure in the heavens that *faileth not* **inexhaustible**,
where no thief approacheth, neither moth corrupteth.
34 For where your treasure is,
there **will shall** your heart be also.
YAH SHUA ON PREPAREDNESS
35 Let your loins be girded about,
and your *lights* **candles** burning;
36 And **liken** ye yourselves *like* unto *men* **humanity**
that wait for **await** their Lord **Adonay**,
when he *will return* **shall depart** from the *wedding* **marriage**;
that when he cometh and knocketh,
they may open unto him *immediately* **straightway**.
37 Blessed are those servants, whom the Lord **Adonay**
when he cometh shall find watching:
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
that he shall gird himself,
and make **recline** them to sit down to meat,
and will come forth **shall pass by**
and serve **minister** to them.
38 And *if whenever* he shall come
— in the second *watch* **guard**,
or come in the third *watch* **guard**,
and find them so **thus**, blessed are those servants.
39 And this know,
that if the *goodman of the house* **housesdespotes**
had known what hour the thief *would* **should** come,
he *would* **should** have watched,
and not have *suffered* **allowed**
his house to be broken through.
40 **So** Be ye *therefore* ready **prepared** also:
for the Son of *man* **humanity**
cometh at an hour when ye think not.
41 Then Peter **And Petros** said unto him, Lord **Adonay**,
speakest **wordest** thou this parable unto us,
or even to all?
42 And the Lord **Adonay** said,
Who then is that *faithful* **trustworthy**
and *wise steward* **thoughtful administrator**,
whom his *lord* **adoni**
shall make *ruler* **seat** over his *household* **therapy**,
to give them their *portion* **measure** of *meat* **grain**
in due season?
43 Blessed is that servant,
whom his *lord* **adoni** when he cometh
shall find so **thus** doing.
44 Of a truth I say **Truly I word** unto you,
that he will make **shall seat** him *ruler*
over all that he hath **his holdings**.
45 But *and if whenever* that servant say in his heart,
My lord delayeth **adoni taketh** his **time in** coming;
and shall begin to *beat* **strike**
the *menservants* **lads** and *maidens* **lasses**,
and to eat and drink, and to be *drunken* **intoxicate**;
46 The *lord* **adoni** of that servant **will shall** come in a day
when he *looketh not* for **awaiteth** him **not**,
and at an hour when **which** he is not aware **knoweth not**,
and will cut him in sunder **shall dichotomize him**,
and will appoint him **shall place** his portion
with the *unbelievers* **trustless**.
47 And that servant, which knew his *lord's* **adoni's** will,

LOUKAS 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

29 And neither seek what to eat or what to drink;
nor be in suspense:
30 for all these the goyim of the cosmos seek after:
and your Father knows you need these:
31 but rather seek the sovereigndom of Elohim;
and all these add to you.
32 Awe not, little shepherddom;
for your Father well—approves
to give you the sovereigndom.
33 Sell your holdings and give mercies;
make yourselves pouches which antique not
— an inexhaustible treasure in the heavens
where neither thief approaches nor moth corrupts:
34 for where your treasure is, there also your heart is.
YAH SHUA ON PREPAREDNESS
35 Gird your loins all around with candles burning:
36 and liken yourselves to humanity
who await their Adonay
as he departs from the marriage;
so that when he comes and knocks,
they straightway open to him.
37 Blessed — those servants,
whom when Adonay comes, finds watching:
Amen! I word to you,
that he girds himself and recline them,
and passes by and ministers to them:
38 and whenever he comes
— in the second guard,
or comes in the third guard,
and find them thus, blessed — those servants.
39 And know this,
that if the housesdespotes
knows what hour the thief comes
he watches;
and allows not his house to be broken through.
40 So you also, be prepared:
for the Son of humanity
comes at an hour when you think not.
41 And Petros says to him, Adonay,
word you this parable to us — or even to all?
42 And Adonay says,
Who then is that trustworthy
and thoughtful administrator
whom his adoni seats over his therapy
to give their measure of grain in due season?
43 Blessed — that servant,
whom, when his adoni comes, finds doing thus.
44 Truly I word to you,
that he seats him over all his holdings.
45 But whenever that servant says in his heart,
My adoni takes his time in coming;
and he begins to strike the lads and lasses;
and to eat and drink and to intoxicate;
46 the adoni of that servant comes
in a day he awaits him not
and at an hour he knows not;
and dichotomizes him,
and places his portion with the trustless.
47 And that servant, who knows the will of his adoni,

LUKE 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and prepared not *himself*,
neither did according to his will,
shall be *beaten with many stripes flogged often*.
48 But he that knew not,
and *did commit things dealt* worthy of *stripes plagues*,
shall be *beaten with few stripes flogged little*.
For unto whomsoever much is given,
of him shall be much *required sought*:
and to whom men have *committed set forth* much,
of him they will *shall* ask *the more superabundantly*.

YAH SHUA ON UNITY VS DIVISION

49 I am come to *send cast* fire on the earth;
and what will I, if it be already *kindled lit*?
50 But I have a baptism to be baptized with;
and how am I *straitened held*
till it be *accomplished completed/shalamed!*
51 *Suppose Think* ye
that I am come to give *peace shalom* on earth?
I *tell word unto* you, *Nay Indeed not*; but rather division:
52 For from henceforth
there shall be five in one house divided,
three against two, and two against three.
53 The father shall be divided against the son,
and the son against the father;
the mother against the daughter,
and the daughter against the mother;
the mother in law against her *daughter in law bride*,
and the *daughter in law bride* against her mother in law.

YAH SHUA ON PROOFING THE SEASON

54 And he *said worded* also to the *people multitude*,
when *ever* ye see a cloud rise out of the *west lowering*,
straightway ye *say word*,
There cometh a *shower thunderstorm*;
and *so be* it is.
55 And when *ever*
ye see the *south wind blow the southerly puffeth*,
ye *say word*, There *will shall* be *heat a scorch*;
and *so be* it cometh to pass.
56 Ye hypocrites, ye *can discern know to proof*
the face of the *sky heavens* and of the earth;
but how is it
that ye *do not discern proof not* this *time season*?
57 Yea, and why even of yourselves
judge ye not what is *right just*?
58 *When Indeed as* thou goest with thine adversary
to the *magistrate arch*,
as thou art *in on* the way,
give *diligence work*
that thou mayest be *delivered released* from him;
lest *ever* he *hale drag* thee to the judge,
and the judge deliver thee to the officer,
and the officer cast thee into *prison the guardhouse*.
59 I *tell word unto* thee,
thou shalt *not never no way* depart thence,
till thou hast *paid given back* the *very last mite final flake*.

YAH SHUA ON REPENTANCE

13 There were present at that season
some that *told evangelized* him
of *about* the *Galilaeans Galiliym*,
whose blood *Pilate Pilatos* had mingled with their sacrifices.
2 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answering said unto them,
Suppose Think ye that these *Galilaeans Galiliym*
were *became* sinners above all the *Galilaeans Galiliym*,
because they suffered such *things*?
3 I *tell word unto* you, *Nay Indeed not*:
but, *except unless* ye repent,
ye shall all likewise *perish destruct*.
4 Or those eighteen,
upon whom the tower in *Siloam Shiloach* fell,
and *slew slaughtered* them,
think ye that they were *sinners became indebted*
above all *men humanity*
that *dwelt settled* in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*?
5 I *tell word unto* you, *Nay Indeed not*:
but *except unless* ye repent,
ye shall all likewise *perish destruct*.

LOUKAS 12, 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

who neither prepares nor does according to his will
is flogged often.
48 But whoever knows not
whose doings are worthy of plagues
is flogged little.

For to whomever much is given,
of him much is sought:
and to whom men set forth much,
of him they ask superabundantly.

YAH SHUA ON UNITY VS DIVISION

49 I come to cast fire on the earth;
and what will I, if it be already lit?
50 But I have a baptism to be baptized with;
and how I am held until it is completed/shalamed!
51 Think you that I come to give shalom on earth?
I word to you, Indeed not; but rather division:
for from henceforth
five in one house divide
— three against two and two against three
53 — the father divides against the son
and the son against the father;
the mother against the daughter
and the daughter against the mother;
the mother in law against her bride,
and the bride against her mother in law.

YAH SHUA ON PROOFING THE SEASON

54 And he also words to the multitude,
whenever you see a cloud rise from the lowering
straightway you word,
A thunderstorm comes; — and so be it.
55 And whenever the southerly puffs,
you word, A scorch becomes — and so be it.

Hypocrites!

You know how to proof
the face of the heavens and of the earth;
but how is it you proof not this season?
57 Yes, and even of yourselves,
why judge you not what is just?

58 Indeed as you and your adversary
go to the arch,
as you are on the way
give work to be released from him;
lest ever he drag you to the judge
and the judge deliver you to the officer
and the officer cast you into the guardhouse.
59 I word to you,
that you never no way depart there,
until you give the final flake.

YAH SHUA ON REPENTANCE

13 And present at that season
are some who evangelize him about the Galiliym,
whose blood Pilatos mingled with their sacrifices.
2 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
Think you that these Galiliym
became sinners above all the Galiliym
because they suffered such?
3 I word to you, Indeed not:
but unless you repent, you all likewise destruct.
4 Or those eighteen
upon whom the tower in Shiloach fell
and slaughtered them:
think you that they became indebted
above all humanity who settle in Yeru Shalem?
5 I word to you, Indeed not:
but unless you repent, you all likewise destruct.

LUKE 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

YAH SHUA ON THE FIG TREE

6 And He spake **worded** also this parable;
A certain man Someone had a fig tree
 planted in his vineyard;
 and he came and sought fruit thereon, and found none.
 7 Then **And** said he unto the dresser of his vineyard, Behold,
 these three years I come seeking fruit on this fig tree,
 and find none:
cut excind it down;
 why *cumbereth it* **inactivate** the *ground earth*?
 8 And he answering said **worded** unto him,
Lord Adoni, let allow it alone this year also,
 till I shall dig about it, and *dung it* **cast in manure**:
 9 And if it *bear* **indeed produce** fruit, *well*:
 and if not,
then after that thou shalt cut it down **be about to excind it**.

YAH SHUA CURES ON THE SHABBATH

10 And he was *teaching* **doctrinating**
 in one of the synagogues on the *sabbath* **shabbaths**.
 11 And, behold, there was a woman
 which had a spirit of *infirmity* **frailty** eighteen years,
 and was *bowed* **bent** together,
 and *could in no wise* **was completely unable**
lift up to unbend herself.
 12 And when *Jesus* **Yah Shua** saw her,
 he called *her to him*, and said unto her,
 Woman, thou art *loosed* **released** from thine *infirmity* **frailty**.
 13 And he *laid put* his hands on her:
 and immediately she *was made straight* **straightened**,
 and glorified *God* **Elohim**.
 14 And the *ruler of the synagogue* **arch**
 answered *with indignation* **indignifying**,
 because that *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
 had *healed* **cured** on the *sabbath day* **shabbath**,
 and *said* **worded** unto the *people* **multitude**,
 There are six days in which men *ought to* **must** work:
so in them *therefore* come and be *healed* **cured**,
 and not on the *sabbath day* **shabbath**.
 15 The *Lord then* **So Adonay** answered him, and said,
Thou hypocrite,
 doth not each one of you on the *sabbath* **shabbath**
 loose his ox or his *ass* **burro** from the *stall* **manger**,
 and lead him away to *watering* **moisten**?
 16 And *ought* **must** not this woman,
 being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan hath bound,
lo **behold**, these eighteen years,
 be loosed from this bond on the *sabbath* **shabbath** day?
 17 And when he had *said* **worded** these *things*,
 all his adversaries *were* **ashamed** **shamed**:
 and all the *people rejoiced* **multitude cheered**
 for all the *glorious things* **glories**
 that *were done* **became** by him.

YAH SHUA ON THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF ELOHIM: THE MUSTARD KERNEL

18 Then *said* **worded** he,
 Unto what is the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim** like?
 and whereunto shall I *resemble* **liken** it?
 19 It is like a *grain of* **mustard seed** **kernel**,
 which a *man* **human** took, and cast into his garden;
 and it grew, and *waxed* **became** a *great* **mega** tree;
 and the *fowls* **flyers** of the *air* **heavens**
lodged **nested** in the branches of it.

THE FERMENTATION

20 And again he said, Whereunto shall I liken
 the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**?
 21 It is like *leaven* **fermentation**,
 which a woman took
 and hid in three *measures* **seahs** of *meal* **flour**,
 till the whole *was leavened* **fermented**.
 22 And he went through the cities and villages,
teaching **doctrinating**,
 and *journeying* **making his way**
 toward *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

THE NARROW GATE

23 Then **And** said one unto him,
Lord Adonay, are there few that be saved?
 And he said unto them,
 24 *Strive* **Agonize** to enter *in at* **through** the *strait* **narrow** gate:

LOUKAS 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

YAH SHUA ON THE FIG TREE

6 And he words this parable:
 Someone has a fig tree planted in his vineyard;
 and he comes and seeks fruit, and finds none:
 7 and he says to the dresser of his vineyard, Behold,
 these three years I come seeking fruit on this fig tree
 and find none:
 Excind! Why inactivate the earth?
 8 And he answers him, wording,
 Adoni, allow it this year also,
 until I dig all around and cast in manure:
 9 and if indeed it produces fruit —
 and if not, be about to excind it.

YAH SHUA CURES ON THE SHABBATH

10 And he doctrinates
 in one of the synagogues on the shabbaths:
 11 and behold,
 a woman having a spirit of frailty eighteen years,
 and is bent together,
 and is completely unable to unbend:
 12 and Yah Shua sees her and calls and says to her,
 Woman, you are released from your frailty.
 13 — and he puts his hands on her:
 and immediately she straightens and glorifies Elohim.
 14 And answering, the synagogue arch is indignified
 because Yah Shua cures on the shabbath;
 so he words to the multitude,
 There are six days in which men must work:
 so come and be cured in them
 and not on the shabbath.

15 So Adonay answers him, saying,
 Hypocrite! Does not each one of you on the shabbath
 loose his ox or his burro from the manger
 and lead him away to moisten?
 16 And must not this woman,
 being a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan bound,
 behold, these eighteen years,
 be loosed from this bond on the shabbath day?
 17 — and he words these
 and all his adversaries shame:
 and all the multitude cheers
 for all the glories that become by him.

YAH SHUA ON THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF ELOHIM: THE MUSTARD KERNEL

18 Then he words,
 To what is the sovereignty of Elohim likened?
 And to what liken I it?
 19 It is likened to a mustard kernel
 a human takes and casts into his garden;
 and it grows and becomes a mega tree:
 and the flyers of the heavens nest in the branches.

THE FERMENTATION

20 And again he says,
 Where to liken I the sovereignty of Elohim?
 21 It is likened to fermentation
 a woman takes and hides in three seahs of flour
 until the whole ferments.

22 And he goes through the cities and villages
 doctrinating,
 and makes his way toward Yeru Shalem.

THE NARROW GATE

23 And someone says to him,
 Adonay, are there few that be saved?
 And he says to them,
 24 Agonize to enter through the narrow gate:

LUKE 13, 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

for many, I say **word** unto you, *will shall* seek to enter in,
and shall not be able.

25 *When once the master of the house is risen up*
From whenever the housesdespotes riseth,
and hath *shut to* **locked** the *door* **portal,**
and ye begin to stand without,
and to knock at the *door* **portal,** *saying wording,*
Lord Adonay, Lord Adonay, open unto us;
and he shall answer and say unto you,
I know you not whence ye are:

26 Then shall ye begin to say **word,**
We have eaten and drunk in thy *presence* **sight,**
and thou hast *taught* **doctrinated**
in our *streets* **broadways.**

27 But he shall say, I *tell* **word** unto you,
I know you not whence ye are;
depart from me, all ye workers of *iniquity* **injustice.**

28 There shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth,
when **ever** ye shall see
Abraham, and *Isaac* **Yischaq,** and *Jacob* **Yaaqov,**
and all the prophets,
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim,**
and you yourselves thrust out.

29 And they shall come
from the *east* **rising,** and *from the west* **lowering,**
and from the north, and *from* the south,
and shall *sit down* **recline**
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim.**

30 And, behold,
there are *last* **final** which shall be first,
and there are first which shall be *last* **final.**

THE RESPONSE OF YAH SHUA TO HEROD

31 The same day there came *certain* **some** of the Pharisees,
saying wording unto him,
Get thee out, and depart hence:
for Herod *will kill* **willeth to slaughter** thee.

32 And he said unto them, Go ye, and *tell* **say** to that fox,
Behold, I cast *out devils* **demons,**
and I *do cures* **fully complete/shalam** healings
to day and to morrow,
and the third *day* I shall be *perfected* **completed/shalamed.**

33 *Nevertheless* **However** I must walk
to day, and to morrow, and *the day following* **after:**
for it *cannot* be **not acceptable** that a prophet
perish **destruct** out of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem.**

THE CONCERN OF YAH SHUA OVER YERU SHALEM

34 O *Jerusalem, Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem, Yeru Shalem,**
which *killest* **slaughterest** the prophets,
and stonest them that are *sent* **apostolized** unto thee;
how often *would* I **willed**
to have gathered thy children together,
in manner as a hen *doth gather*
her brood **young** under *her* wings,
and ye *would* **willed** not!

35 Behold, your house is *left* **forsaken** unto you desolate:
and *Verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto you,
Ye shall *not* **never no way** see me,
until *the time* **it** come when ye shall say,
Blessed **Eulogized** is he
that cometh in the name of *the Lord* **Yah Veh.**

14

YAH SHUA HEALS ON THE SHABBATH

And **so be** it *came to pass,*
as he *went* **came** into the house
of one of the *chief* **arch** Pharisees
to eat bread on the *sabbath day* **shabbath,**
that they *watched* **observed** him.

2 And, behold,
there was a *certain man before* **human in front of** him
which had the dropsy — **dropical.**

3 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answering
spake **said** unto the *lawyers* **torahists** and Pharisees,
saying wording, Is it *lawful* **allowed**
to *heal* **cure** on the *sabbath day* **shabbath?**

4 And they *held their peace* **quieted.**
And he took **hold of** him,
and healed him, and *let* **released** him go;

5 And answered them, saying,
Which of you
shall have *an ass* **a burro** or an ox fallen into a pit,

LOUKAS 13, 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

for many, I word to you, seek to enter,
and are not able;

25 for from whenever the *housesdespotes* rises
and locks the *portal;*
and you begin to stand outside
and to knock at the *portal,* *wording,*
Adonay, Adonay, open to us;
— and he answers you, saying,
I know not whence you are:

26 — then you begin to word,
We ate and drank in your sight,
and you *doctrinated* in our *broadways.*

27 And he says, I word to you,
I know not whence you are;
depart from me, all you workers of *injustice.*

28 There becomes weeping and gnashing of teeth
whenever you see
Abraham and *Yischaq* and *Yaaqov* and all the prophets
in the *sovereigndom* of *Elohim*
— and you yourselves thrust out.

29 — and they come
from the rising and the lowering
and from the north and the south
and recline in the *sovereigndom* of *Elohim:*
— and behold,
the final become first,
and the first become final.

THE RESPONSE OF YAH SHUA TO HEROD

31 The same day, some of the Pharisees come,
and word to him,
Go! and, Depart hence!
— for Herod wills to slaughter you.

32 And he says to them, You go and say to that fox,
Behold, I cast demons,
and I fully complete/shalam healings today and tomorrow;
and on the third I am completed/shalamed:
however I must walk
today and tomorrow and after:
for it is not acceptable that a prophet
destruct from *Yeru Shalem.*

THE CONCERN OF YAH SHUA OVER YERU SHALEM

34 O, *Yeru Shalem, Yeru Shalem,*
who slaughters the prophets,
and stones them who apostolize to you;
how often I willed to gather your children together
in manner as a hen her young under her wings:
and you will not!

35 Behold, your house is forsaken to you desolate!
— and, Amen! I word to you,
You never no way see me until it comes when you say,
Eulogized — he who comes in the name of *Yah Veh.*

14

YAH SHUA HEALS ON THE SHABBATH

And so be it,
as he goes in the house of one of the arch Pharisees
to eat bread on the *shabbath,*
they observe him:
and behold,
there is a human in front of him — *dropical:*
and *Yah Shua* answers,
saying to the torahists and Pharisees, wording,
Is it allowed to cure on the *shabbath?*
— and they quiet.

2

3

4

5 And he takes hold of him
and heals him and releases him;
— and answers them, saying,
Which of you has a burro or an ox fallen into a pit

LUKE 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and *will shall* not straightway *pull draw* him out
on the *sabbath shabbath* day?
6 And they could not *answer contradict* him again
as to these *things*.
YAH SHUA ON POSITION
7 And he *put forth worded* a parable
to those which were *bidden called*,
when he marked *heeding* how they *chose out selected*
the *chief rooms preeminent recliners*;
saying *wording* unto them,
8 when *ever* thou art *bidden called*
of any *man one* to a *wedding marriage*,
sit recline not down in the highest room;
lest *ever* a more honourable *man* than thou
be *bidden called* of him;
9 And he that *bade called* thee
and him come and say to thee,
Give this *man one* place;
and thou begin with shame
to take *hold on to* the *lowest room final place*.
10 But thou art *bidden called*,
go and *sit down repose* in the *lowest room final place*;
that when *ever* he that *bade called* thee cometh,
he may say unto thee, Friend, *go up ascend* higher:
then shalt thou have *worship glory*
in the *presence sight* of them that *sit at meat repose* with thee.
11 For whosoever exalteth himself
shall be *abased humbled*;
and he that humbleth himself shall be exalted.
12 Then said *And worded* he also to him that *bade called* him,
when *ever* thou makest a dinner or a supper,
call voice not *out to* thy friends, nor thy brethren,
neither thy *kinsmen kin*, nor thy rich neighbours;
lest *ever* they also *bid call* thee again *back*,
and a recompence *be made become* thee.
13 But when *ever* thou makest a feast,
call the poor, the maimed, the lame, the blind:
14 And thou shalt be blessed;
for they cannot recompense thee:
for thou shalt be recompensed
at the resurrection of the just.
YAH SHUA ON THE MEGA SUPPER
15 And when one of them
that *sat at meat reposed* with him heard these *things*,
he said unto him,
Blessed *is* he that shall eat bread
in the *kingdom sovereignty* of God *Elohim*.
16 Then *But* said he unto him,
A *certain man human* made a *great mega* supper,
and *bade called* many:
17 And *sent apostolized* his servant at supper *time hour*
to say to them that were *bidden called*,
Come; for all *things* are now ready *already prepared*.
18 And they all *with one consent*
began to *make excuse beg off*.
The first said unto him,
I have bought a *piece of ground field*,
and I *must needs need* go and see it:
I *pray ask* thee have me *excused beg off*.
19 And another said,
I have bought five yoke of oxen, and I go to prove them:
I *pray ask* thee have me *excused beg off*.
20 And another said,
I have married a *wife woman*,
and *therefore because of this* I cannot come.
21 So that servant came,
and *shewed evangelized* his *lord adoni* these *things*.
Then the *master of the house housedespotes*
being *angry wroth* said to his servant,
Go out quickly
into the *streets broadways* and *lanes streets* of the city,
and bring in hither the poor, and the maimed,
and the *halt lame*, and the blind.
22 And the servant said, *Lord Adoni*,
so be it is *done* as thou hast *commanded ordered*,
and yet there is *room place*.
23 And the *lord adoni* said unto the servant,

LOUKAS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and not straightway draws him on the shabbath day?
6 — and they cannot contradict him as to these.
YAH SHUA ON POSITION
7 And he words a parable to those called
— heeding how they select the preeminent recliners;
wording to them,
8 Whenever anyone calls you to a marriage
recline not in the highest room;
lest ever he calls a more honorable than you:
and he who called you comes and says to you,
9 Give this one the place:
and you begin to shame to hold on to the final place.
10 But when you are called,
go and repose in the final place;
so that whenever he who called you comes,
he says to you, Friend, ascend higher!
— then you have glory
in the sight of them who repose with you.
For whoever exalts himself is humbled;
and whoever humbles himself is exalted.
11 And he also words to him who called him,
Whenever you make a dinner or a supper,
voice out, neither to your friends nor your brothers,
nor your kin nor your rich neighbors;
lest ever they also call you back
and a recompence becomes you:
12 but whenever you make a feast,
call the poor, the maimed, the lame, the blind:
13 and you are blessed;
for they cannot recompense you:
for you are recompensed
at the resurrection of the just.
YAH SHUA ON THE MEGA SUPPER
15 And one of them reposing with him hears these,
and says to him,
Blessed — whoever eats bread
in the sovereignty of Elohim.
16 But he says to him,
A human made a mega supper and called many:
17 and apostolized his servant at supper hour
to say to the called, Come!
For all are already prepared.
— and they all begin to beg off.
The first says to him,
I bought a field, and I need go and see it:
I ask you that I beg off.
19 And another says,
I bought five yoke of oxen, and I go to prove them:
I ask you that I beg off.
20 And another says,
I married a woman, and because of this
I cannot come.
21 So that servant comes,
and evangelizes these to his adoni.
So, being wroth,
the housedespotes says to his servant,
Go quickly into the broadways and streets of the city
and bring in the poor and the maimed
and the lame and the blind!
22 And the servant says, Adoni, so be it as you ordered,
and still there is place.
23 And the adoni says to the servant,

LUKE 14, 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Go out into the *highways ways* and hedges,
and compel them to *come in enter*,
that my house may be filled.
24 For I say **word** unto you,
That none of those men which were *bidden called*
shall taste of my supper.
YAH SHUA ON DISCIPLESHIP
25 And there went *great vast* multitudes with him:
and he turned, and said unto them,
26 If any *man* come to me,
and hate not his father, and mother, and *wife woman*,
and children, and brethren, and sisters,
yea, and **even** his own *life soul* also,
he cannot be my disciple.
27 And whosoever *doth shall* not bear his *cross stake*,
and come after me, cannot be my disciple.

THE TOWER

28 For which of you,
intending having willed to build a tower,
indeed sitteth not down first,
and *counteth computeth* the *cost expense*,
whether he have *sufficient to finish it for the finishing?*
29 Lest *haply ever*,
after he hath *laid placed* the foundation,
and is not able to *finish fully complete* it,
all that *behold observe* it begin to mock him,
30 saying **wording**. This *man human* began to build,
and was not able to *finish fully complete/shalom*.

TREATY OF SHALOM

31 Or what *king sovereign*,
going to *make encounter* war against another *king sovereign*,
indeed sitteth not down first,
and *consulteth counseleth*
whether he be able *with by* ten thousand
to meet him that cometh against him
with twenty thousand?
32 Or **else But if not**,
while the other is yet a *great way afar* off,
he *sendeth an ambassage apostolizeth a presbytry*
and *desireth conditions of peace asketh for shalom*.
33 So **likewise then**, whosoever he be of you
that *forsaketh biddeth* not **bye bye**
all that he hath to all his holdings,
he cannot be my disciple.

YAH SHUA ON INSIPID SALT

34 Salt is good:
but *if* the salt have *lost his savour become insipid*,
wherewith shall it be seasoned?
35 It is neither **well** fit for the *land earth*,
nor yet for *the dunghill manure*; but men cast it out.
He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.

YAH SHUA ON THE LOST SHEEP

15 *Then drew near And approached* unto him
all the *publicans customs agents* and sinners
for to hear him.
2 And the Pharisees and scribes murmured,
saying **wording**,
This *man receiveth one awaiteth* sinners,
and eateth with them.
3 And he *spake worded* this parable unto them,
saying **speaking**,
4 What *man human* of you, having an hundred sheep,
if he lose one of them,
doth not leave the ninety and nine in the wilderness,
and go after that which is lost, until he find it?
5 And when he hath found it,
he *layeth putteth* it on his shoulders, *rejoicing cheering*.
6 And when he cometh home,
he calleth together his friends and neighbours,
saying **wording** unto them, Rejoice with me;
for I have found my sheep which was lost.
7 I say **word** unto you,
that likewise *joy cheer* shall be in heaven
over one sinner that repenteth,
more than over ninety and nine just persons,
which need no repentance.

YAH SHUA ON THE LOST DRACHMA

8 *Either Or* what woman having ten *pieces of silver drachmas*,

LOUKAS 14, 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Go into the ways and hedges and compel them to enter,
to fill my house.
24 For I word to you,
That none of those men who are called
taste of my supper.
YAH SHUA ON DISCIPLESHIP
25 And vast multitudes go with him:
and he turns, and says to them,
26 If anyone comes to me,
and hates not his father and mother and woman
and children and brothers and sisters
— yes, and even his own soul,
he cannot be my disciple.
27 And whoever bears not his stake,
and comes after me, cannot be my disciple.

THE TOWER

28 For who of you, who wills to build a tower,
indeed sits not down first and computes the expense,
whether he has *enough for the finishing?*
29 Lest ever, after he places the foundation
and is not able to fully complete,
all who observe begin to mock him,
30 wording. This human began to build,
and is not able to fully complete/shalom.

TREATY OF SHALOM

31 Or what sovereign,
going to encounter war against another sovereign,
indeed sits not down first,
and counsels
whether he is able by ten thousand
to meet him who comes against him
with twenty thousand?
32 But if not, while the other is yet afar off,
he apostolizes a presbytry and asks for shalom.
33 So then, everyone of you
who bids not bye bye to all his holdings
cannot be my disciple.

YAH SHUA ON INSIPID SALT

34 Salt is good:
but the salt being insipid, how is it to season?
35 It is neither well fit for the earth,
nor yet for manure; but for men to cast.
Whoever has ears to hear, hear.

YAH SHUA ON THE LOST SHEEP

15 And all the customs agents and sinners
approach to hear him:
2 and the Pharisees and scribes murmur, wording,
This one awaits sinners and eats with them.
3 And he words this parable to them, speaking,
4 What human of you, having a hundred sheep,
and loses one of them,
leaves not the ninety—nine in the wilderness
and goes after the lost, until he finds it?
5 And when he finds it,
he puts it on his shoulders, cheering:
6 and when he comes home,
he calls together his friends and neighbors,
wording to them, Rejoice with me;
for I found my sheep — the lost.
7 I word to you,
that likewise cheer becomes in the heavens
over one sinner who repents
— more than over ninety—nine just persons
who need no repentance.

YAH SHUA ON THE LOST DRACHMA

8 Or what woman, having ten drachmas,

LUKE 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

if **whenever** she lose one *piece* **drachma**,
doth not **indeed** light a candle, and sweep the house,
and seek *diligently* **carefully** till she find it?
9 And when she hath found it,
she calleth her friends and her neighbours together,
saying **wording**, Rejoice with me;
for I have found the *piece* **drachma** which I had lost.
10 Likewise, I say **word** unto you,
there *is* joy **shall be cheer**
in the *presence* **sight** of the angels of *God* **Elohim**
over one sinner that repenteth.

YAH SHUA ON THE LOST SON

11 And he said, A *certain man* **human** had two sons:
12 And the younger of them said to his father,
Father, give me the portion of *goods* **substance**
that *falleth to* **is laid up for** me.
And he *divided* **distributed** unto them his *living* **subsistence**.
13 And not many days after
the younger son gathered all together,
and *took his journey* **went abroad**
into a *far country* **distant region**,
and there *wasted* **squandered** his substance
with *riotous* **dissipative** living.
14 And when he had spent all,
there *arose* **became** a mighty famine in that *land* **region**;
and he began to *be in* **want lack**.
15 And he went
and joined himself to a citizen of that *country* **region**;
and he sent him into his fields to *feed* **graze** swine.
16 And he *would fain have filled* **panted to fill** his belly
with the *husks* **pods** that the swine did eat:
and no *man* **one** gave unto him.
17 And when he came to himself, he said,
How many *hired servants* **hirelings** of my father's
have bread *enough and to spare* **super abundant**,
and I *perish* **destruct** with *hunger* **famine**!
18 I *will shall* arise and go to my father,
and *will shall* say unto him,
Father, I have sinned against heaven,
and *before thee* **in thy sight**,
19 And am no more worthy to be called thy son:
make me as one of thy *hired servants* **hirelings**.
20 And he arose, and came to his father.
But when he was yet a *great way* **afar** off,
his father saw him,
and had *compassion* **a sympathetic spleen**,
and ran, and fell on his neck, and **ardently** kissed him.
21 And the son said unto him, Father,
I have sinned against heaven, and in thy sight,
and am no more worthy to be called thy son.
22 But the father said to his servants,
Bring forth the *best robe* **preeminent stole**,
and *put it on* **endue** him;
and *put give* a **finger** ring on his hand,
and shoes on his feet:
23 And bring hither the fatted calf, and *kill it* **sacrifice**;
and let us eat, and *be merry* **rejoice**:
24 For this my son was dead, and *is alive again* **reliveth**;
he was lost, and is found.
And they began to *be merry* **rejoice**.
25 Now **And** his elder son was in the field:
and as he came and *drew nigh to* **approached** the house,
he heard *musick* **symphony** and *dancing* **chorus**.
26 And he called one of the *servants* **lads**,
and asked what these *things* **meant be**.
27 And he said unto him, Thy brother is come;
and thy father hath *killed* **sacrificed** the fatted calf,
because he hath *received* **taken** him safe and sound.
28 And he was **angry wroth**,
and *would* **willed to not go in enter**:
therefore so came his father out,
and *intreated* **consoled** him.
29 And he answering said to his father,
Lo Behold, these so many years do I serve thee,
neither transgressed I at any time
never ever have I passed over
thy *commandment* **misvah**:
and yet thou never **ever** gavest me a *kid* **goat**,
that I might *make merry* **rejoice** with my friends:

LOUKAS 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

whenever she loses one drachma,
does not indeed light a candle and sweep the house
and seeks carefully until she finds it?
9 And when she finds it,
she calls her friends and her neighbors together,
wording, Rejoice with me;
for I found the drachma I lost.
10 Likewise, I word to you,
cheer becomes in the sight of the angels of Elohim
over one sinner who repents.

YAH SHUA ON THE LOST SON

11 And he says, A human has two sons:
12 and the younger of them says to his father,
Father, give me the portion of substance laid up.
— and he distributes his subsistence to them.
13 And not many days after
the younger son gathers all together
and goes abroad to a distant region;
and there squanders his substance
with dissipative living
14 and he spends it all:
and a mighty famine becomes in that region;
and he begins to lack:
15 and he goes and joins himself
to a citizen of that region:
and he sends him into his fields to graze swine:
16 and he pants to fill his belly with the pods the swine eat:
and no one gives him.
17 And he comes to himself, and says,
How many hirelings of my father
have super abundant bread,
and I destruct with famine!
18 I rise and go to my father, and say to him,
Father, I sinned against the heavens and in your sight;
19 and am no more worthy to be called your son:
make me as one of your hirelings.
20 And he rises, and comes to his father.
and still being afar,
his father sees him and has a sympathetic spleen
and runs and falls on his neck
and ardently kisses him:
21 — and the son says to him, Father,
I sinned against the heavens and in your sight
and am no more worthy to be called your son.
22 But the father says to his servants,
Bring the preeminent stole and endue him;
and give a finger ring on his hand
and shoes on his feet;
23 and bring the fatted calf and sacrifice;
and eat, and rejoice:
24 for this my son was dead, and relives;
he was lost, and is found.
— and they begin to rejoice.
25 And his elder son is in the field:
and as he comes and approaches the house
he hears symphony and chorus:
26 and he calls one of the lads,
and asks what these be.
27 And he says to him, Your brother is come;
and your father sacrifices the fatted calf
because he takes him safe and sound.
28 — and he is wroth and wills to not enter.
29 So his father comes out to console him:
and he answers his father, saying,
Behold, so many years I serve you,
never ever passed I over your misvah:
and yet you never ever gave me a goat
to rejoice with my friends:

LUKE 15, 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

30 But as soon as this thy son was come,
which hath devoured thy *living subsistence*
with *harlots whores*,
thou hast *killed sacrificed* for him the fatted calf.
31 And he said unto him, *Son Child*,
thou art ever with me, and all that I have is thine.
32 It was *meet necessary*
that we should *make merry rejoice*, and *be glad cheer*:
for this thy brother was dead, and *is alive again reliveth*;
and was lost, and is found.

YAH SHUA ON THE THOUGHTFUL ADMINISTRATOR

16 And he *said worded* also unto his disciples,
There was a *certain rich man human*,
which had a *steward an administrator*;
and *the same this one* was accused unto him
that he had *wasted squandered* his *goods holdings*.
2 And he *called voiced out to* him, and said unto him,
How What is it that I hear this of *concerning* thee?
give an *account word*
of thy *stewardship administration*;
for thou mayest *not still* be *no longer*
steward administrator.
3 Then *And* the *steward administrator* said within himself,
What shall I do?
for my *lord taketh away adoni removeth* from me
the *stewardship administration*:
I cannot dig; to beg I am ashamed.
4 I am *resolved know* what to do,
that, when *ever* I am
put out of removed from the *stewardship administration*,
they may receive me into their houses.
5 So *And* he called *every each* one
of his *lord's adoni's* debtors unto him,
and *said worded* unto the first,
How much *owest art* thou *indebted* unto my *lord adoni*?
6 And he said, An hundred *measures baths* of *olive oil*.
And he said unto him, *Take Receive* thy *bill scribing*,
and sit down quickly, and *write scribe* fifty.
7 Then said he to another,
And how much *owest art* thou *indebted*?
And he said, An hundred *measures kors* of *wheat grain*.
And he *said worded* unto him,
Take Receive thy *bill scribing*,
and *write fourscore scribe eighty*.
8 And the *Lord Adonay*
commended halaled the unjust *steward administrator*,
because he had done *wisely thoughtfully*:
for the *children sons* of this *world eon* are
in their generation
wiser more thoughtful than the *children sons* of light.
9 And I *say word* unto you,
Make to yourselves
friends of the *mammon of unrighteousness injustice*;
that, when *ever* ye fail,
they may receive you
into *everlasting habitations eternal tabernacles*.
10 He that is *faithful trustworthy* in that which is least
is *faithful trustworthy* also in much:
and he that is unjust in the least
is unjust also in much.
11 So *If therefore*
ye have not *been faithful become trustworthy*
in the *unrighteous unjust* mammon,
who *will commit to your trust shall entrust you*
to *with* the true?
12 And if ye have not *been faithful become trustworthy*
in that which is *another man's another's*,
who shall give you that which is your own?
13 No *servant housekeeper*
can serve two *masters adonim*:
for either he *will shall* hate the one,
and love the other;
or else he *will hold to shall uphold* the one,
and *despise disesteem* the other.
Ye cannot serve *God Elohim* and mammon.
14 And the Pharisees also,
who *were covetous befriended silver*,
heard all these *things*:
and they *derided sneered* at him.

LOUKAS 15, 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

30 but as soon as this — your son comes
— who devoured your subsistence with whores,
for him you sacrifice the fatted calf.
31 And he says to him,
Child, you are ever with me; and all I have is yours.
32 It is necessary to rejoice, and cheer:
for this your brother was dead and relives;
and was lost, and is found.

YAH SHUA ON THE THOUGHTFUL ADMINISTRATOR

16 And he also words to his disciples,
A rich human has an administrator;
who is accused of squandering his holdings:
2 and he voices out to him, and says to him,
What hear I concerning you?
Give word of your administration;
for you are not still my administrator.
3 And the administrator says within himself,
What do I?
— for my adoni removes the administration from me:
I cannot dig; I am ashamed to beg:
4 I know what to do:
whenever I am removed from the administration,
that they receive me into their houses.
5 And he calls
each one of the debtors of his adoni to him;
and words to the first,
How much are you indebted to my adoni?
6 And he says, A hundred baths of olive oil.
And he says to him, Receive your scribing,
and sit down quickly and scribe fifty.
7 Then he says to another,
And how much are you indebted?
And he says, A hundred kors of grain.
And he words to him,
Receive your scribing and scribe eighty.
8 And Adonay halals the unjust administrator
because he did thoughtfully:
for the sons of this eon in their generation
are more thoughtful than the sons of light.
9 And I word to you,
Make yourselves friends of the mammon of injustice;
so that, whenever you fail,
they receive you into eternal tabernacles.
10 Whoever is trustworthy in the least
is also trustworthy in much:
and whoever is unjust in the least
is also unjust in much.
11 So if you are not trustworthy in the unjust mammon,
who entrusts you with the true?
12 And if you are not trustworthy
in that of another,
who gives you that which is your own?
13 No housekeeper can serve two adonim:
for either he hates the one and loves the other;
or else he upholds the one and disesteems the other.
You cannot serve Elohim and mammon.
14 And the Pharisees who befriend silver
also hear all these:
and they sneer at him.

LUKE 16, 17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 And he said unto them,
Ye are they which justify yourselves
before men in the sight of humanity;
but God Elohim knoweth your hearts:
for that which is highly esteemed high among men humanity
is abomination in the sight of God Elohim.

16 The law torah and the prophets were until John Yahn:
since that time then
the kingdom sovereignty of God Elohim
is preached evangelized,
and every man presseth one forceth into it.
17 And it is easier for heaven and earth to pass,
than one tittle of the law torah to fail fall.
18 Whosoever putteth away releaseth his wife woman,
and marrieth another, committeth adultery adulterizeth:
and whosoever marrieth her
that is put away released from her husband man
committed adultery adulterizeth.

19 YAH SHUA ON THE RICH HUMAN AND EL AZAR
There was a certain rich man human,
which was clothed in purple and fine white linen,
and fared sumptuously every day rejoiced radiantly daily:
20 And there was a certain beggar
named Lazarus El Azar,
which was laid cast at his gate, full of sores ulcerous,
21 And desiring panting to be fed filled with the crumbs
which fell from the rich man's table:
moreover but even the dogs came
and licked his sores ulcers.
22 And so be it came to pass, that the beggar died,
and was carried borne by the angels
into Abraham's bosom:
the rich man also died, and was buried entombed;
23 And in hell sheol/hades he lift up his eyes,
being in torments,
and seeth Abraham afar off,
and Lazarus El Azar in his bosom.
24 And he cried voiced out and said, Father Abraham,
have mercy on me, and send Lazarus El Azar,
that he may dip baptize the tip of his finger in water,
and cool my tongue;
for I am tormented grieved in this flame.
25 But Abraham said, Son Child,
remember that thou in thy life time
receivedst took thy good things,
and likewise Lazarus El Azar evil things:
but now he is comforted consoled,
and thou art tormented grieved.
26 And beside all this, between us and you
there is a great gulf fixed mega chasm established:
so that they which would will to pass through
from hence to you cannot;
neither can they pass through to us,
that would come from thence.
27 Then And he said, So I pray ask thee therefore, father,
that thou wouldest shouldst send him
to my father's house:
28 For I have five brethren;
that he may testify thoroughly witness unto them,
lest they also come into this place of torment.
29 Abraham saith wordeth unto him,
They have Moses Mosheh and the prophets;
let them hear them.
30 And he said, Nay Indeed not, father Abraham:
but if whenever one went unto them from the dead,
they will shall repent.
31 And he said unto him,
If they hear not Moses Mosheh and the prophets,
neither will shall they be persuaded convinced,
though if not even whenever one rose from the dead.

YAH SHUA ON SCANDALS

17 Then And said he unto the disciples,
It is impossible
but that offences will that scandals shall not come:
but woe unto him, through whom they come!
2 It were better more advantageous for him
that if a millstone turned by a burro

LOUKAS 16, 17

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 And he says to them,
You justify yourselves in the sight of humanity;
but Elohim knows your hearts:
for what is high among humanity
is abomination in the sight of Elohim.

16 YAH SHUA ON THE TORAH AND THE PROPHETS
The torah and the prophets were until Yahn:
since then, the sovereignty of Elohim is evangelized,
and everyone forces into it:
17 and it is easier for the heavens and earth to pass
than one tittle of the torah to fall:
18 whoever releases his woman and marries another
adulterizes:
and whoever marries her
who is released from her man
adulterizes.

19 YAH SHUA ON THE RICH HUMAN AND EL AZAR
A rich human clothed in purple and white linen
rejoices radiantly daily:
20 and a beggar named El Azar is cast at his gate
— ulcerous;
21 and panting to be filled with the crumbs
which fall from the table of the rich man:
but even the dogs come and lick his ulcers.
22 And so be it, the beggar dies,
and is borne by the angels to the bosom of Abraham:
the rich man also dies and is entombed;
23 and in sheol/hades, being in torments,
he lifts his eyes,
and sees Abraham afar off and El Azar in his bosom.
24 And he voices out and says, Father Abraham,
mercy me, and send El Azar
to baptize the tip of his finger in water
and cool my tongue;
for I grieve in this flame.
25 But Abraham says, Child,
remember that you in your life took your good;
and El Azar likewise evil:
26 and now he consoles and you grieve:
and beside all this, between us and you,
a mega chasm is established:
so that whoever wills
neither can pass through from hence to you;
nor can they pass through to us from there.
27 And he says, So I ask you, father,
to send him to the house of my father:
for I have five brothers
— to thoroughly witness to them
lest they also come into this place of torment.
28 Abraham words to him,
They have Mosheh and the prophets;
have them hear them.
29 And he says, Indeed not, father Abraham:
but whenever one from the dead goes to them,
they repent.
30 And he says to him,
If they hear not Mosheh and the prophets,
they are not convinced
even whenever one rises from the dead.

17 YAH SHUA ON SCANDALS
And he says to the disciples,
It is impossible that scandals not come:
but woe through whom they come!
2 It is more advantageous for him
if a millstone turned by a burro

LUKE 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

were hanged about his neck,
and he cast **tossed** into the sea,
than that he should *offend* **scandalize**
one of these little ones.
3 Take heed to yourselves:
if **whenever** thy brother *trespass* **sin** against thee, rebuke him;
and if **whenever** he repent, forgive him.
4 And if **whenever** he *trespass* **sin** against thee
seven times in a day,
and seven times in a day turn again to thee,
saying **wording**, I repent;
thou shalt forgive him.
5 And the apostles said unto *the Lord* **Adonay**,
Increase **Add to** our *faith* **trust**.
6 And *the Lord* **Adonay** said,
If ye had *faith* **trust** as a *grain of mustard seed* **kernel**,
ye might say **word** unto this sycamine tree,
Be thou *plucked up by the root* **uprooted**,
and be thou planted in the sea; and it should obey you.
7 But which of you,
having a servant plowing or *feeding cattle* **shepherding**,
will **shall** say unto him *by and by* **straightway**,
when he *is come* **entereth** from the field,
Go, and *sit down to meat* **pass near and repose**?
8 And *will* **But indeed**, **shall he** not *rather* say unto him,
Make ready **Prepare** wherewith I may sup,
and gird thyself,
and *serve* **minister to** me, till I have eaten and drunken;
and *afterward* **after these** thou shalt eat and drink?
9 *Doth he thank* **Hath he charism for** that servant
because he did *the things* **those**
that were *commanded* **ordained** of him?
10 I *throw* **think** not.
So likewise ye,
when **ever** ye shall have done all those *things*
which are *commanded* **ordained** you,
say **word**, We are *unprofitable* **useless** servants:
we have done that
which *was our duty* **we were indebted** to do.
11 **YAH SHUA HEALS TEN LEPERS**
And **so be** it *came to pass*,
as he went to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
that he passed through
the midst of *Samaria* **Shomeron** and *Galilee* **Galiyl**.
12 And as he entered into a *certain* village,
there met him ten men that were lepers,
which stood afar off:
13 And they *lifted up* their voices, and *said* **worded**,
Jesus **Yah Shua**, *Master* **Rabbi**, *have mercy* on us.
14 And when he saw them, he said unto them,
Go shew yourselves unto the priests.
And **so be** it *came to pass*, that,
as they went, they were *cleansed* **purified**.
15 And one of them, when he saw that he was healed,
turned back **returned**,
and with a *loud* **mega** voice glorified *God* **Elohim**,
And fell down on his face at his feet,
giving **eucharistizing** him *thanks*:
and he was a *Samaritan* **Shomeroniy**.
17 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** answering said,
Were there not **indeed** ten *cleansed* **purified**?
18 but where are the nine?
There are not found
that returned to give glory to *God* **Elohim**,
save **except** this *stranger* **alien**.
19 And he said unto him, Arise, go thy way:
thy *faith* **trust** hath *made* **saved** thee *whole*.
20 **YAH SHUA ON THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF ELOHIM**
And when he was *demand* **asked** of the Pharisees,
when the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**
should come,
he answered them and said,
The *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**
cometh not with observation:
21 Neither shall they say,
Lo **Behold** here! or, *Lo* **Behold** there! for, behold,
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim** is within you.
22 And he said unto the disciples,
The days *will* **shall** come,

LOUKAS 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

hangs around his neck,
and he is tossed into the sea,
than that he scandalize one of these little ones.
3 Heed yourselves:
Whenever your brother sins against you, rebuke him;
and whenever he repents, forgive him:
4 and whenever he sins against you seven times a day
and seven times a day turns again to you,
wording, I repent;
forgive him.
5 And the apostles say to Adonay,
Add to our trust.
6 And Adonay says,
If you had trust as a mustard kernel,
you ever word to this sycamine,
Uproot! Plant in the sea!
— and it obeys you.
7 But who of you,
having a servant plowing or shepherding,
says to him straightway as he enters from the field,
Come and repose?
8 But indeed, says he not to him,
Prepare somewhat to sup,
and gird yourself
and minister to me until I eat and drink
— and after these you eat and drink?
9 Has he charism for that servant
because he did what is ordained of him?
10 I think not.
So likewise you,
whenever you do all you are ordained,
word, We are useless servants:
we do what we are indebted to do.
11 **YAH SHUA HEALS TEN LEPERS**
And so be it, as he goes to Yeru Shalem,
he passes through midst Shomeron and Galiyl:
12 and as he enters a village,
ten men — lepers meet him, standing afar:
and they lift their voices, and word,
Yah Shua, Rabbi, mercy us.
13 And he sees them and says,
Go show yourselves to the priests.
— and so be it, as they go, they are purified.
14 And one of them seeing he is healed, returns,
and with a mega voice glorifies Elohim;
and falls on his face at his feet
and eucharistizes him
— and he is a Shomeroniy.
15 And Yah Shua answers, saying,
Were there not indeed ten purified?
but the nine — where?
16 None are found who return to give glory to Elohim
except this alien:
17 and he says to him, Rise, go your way:
your trust saves you.
18 **YAH SHUA ON THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF ELOHIM**
And the Pharisees ask
when the sovereigndom of Elohim is coming;
and he answers them, saying,
The sovereigndom of Elohim comes
neither with observation:
21 nor say they,
Behold here! or, Behold there!
for, behold,
the sovereigndom of Elohim is within you.
22 And he says to the disciples, Days come,

LUKE 17, 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

when ye shall *desire* **pant**
to see one of the days of the Son of *man* **humanity**,
and ye shall not see it.
23 And they shall say to you,
See **Behold** here; or, see **behold** there:
go not after *them*, nor *follow* **pursue** them.
24 For **exactly** as the lightning,
that *lighteneth* **lightningeth**
out of the one part under heaven,
shineth **radiateth** unto the other part under heaven;
so shall also the Son of *man* **humanity** be in his day.
25 But first must he suffer *many things* **much**,
and be *rejected* **dissapproved** of this generation.
26 And **exactly** as it was **became**
in the days of *Noe* **Noach**,
so shall it be also
in the days of the Son of *man* **humanity**.
27 They did eat, they drank, they married *wives*,
they were given in *marriage* **married off**,
until the day that *Noe* **Noach** entered into the ark,
and the *flood* **cataclysm** came, and destroyed them all.
28 Likewise also as it was **became** in the days of Lot;
they *did eat* **ate**, they drank,
they bought, they sold, they planted, they builded;
29 But the same day that Lot went out of *Sodom* **Sedom**
it rained fire and *brimstone* **sulphur** from heaven,
and destroyed *them* all.
30 *Even thus* **In like manner**
shall it be in the day
when the Son of *man* **humanity** is *revealed* **unveiled**.
31 In that day,
he which shall be upon the housetop,
and his *stuff* **vessels** in the house,
let him not *come down* **descend** to take it away:
and he that is in the field,
let him likewise not return *back*.
32 Remember Lot's *wife* **woman**.
33 Whosoever shall seek to save his *life* **soul**
shall lose it;
and whosoever shall lose *his life* **it**
shall preserve it.
34 I *tell word to* you, in that night
there shall be two *men* in one bed;
the one shall be taken,
and the other shall be *left* **forsaken**.
35 Two *women* shall be grinding together;
the one shall be taken, and the other *left* **forsaken**.
36 Two *men* shall be in the field;
the one shall be taken, and the other *left* **forsaken**.
37 And they answered and *said* **worded** unto him,
Where, *Lord* **Adonay**?

And he said unto them, Wheresoever the body is,
thither will there shall the eagles be gathered together.

YAH SHUA ON THE JUDGE AND THE WIDOW

18 And he *spake* **worded** a parable unto them
to this end,
that men *ought always to* **must ever** pray,
and not to *faint* **weary**;
2 *Saying* **Wording**,
There was in a city a judge,
which *feared* **awed** not *God* **Elohim**,
neither *regarded* *man* **respected humanity**:
3 And there was a widow in that city;
and she came unto him, *saying* **wording**,
Avenge me of mine adversary.
4 And he *would* **willed** not to for a *while* **time**:
but *afterward* **after these** he said within himself,
Though I *fear* **awe** not *God* **Elohim**,
nor *regard* *man* **respect humanity**;
5 Yet **indeed**
because this widow *troubleth* **embarrasseth** me,
I *will* **shall** avenge her,
lest by her *continual* coming **unto the completion/shalom**
she weary **subdue** me.
6 And *the Lord* **Adonay** said,
Hear what the unjust judge *saieth* **wordeth**.
7 And shall not *God* **Elohim** avenge his own *elect* **select**,
which cry day and night unto him,

LOUKAS 17, 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

when you pant
to see one of the days of the Son of humanity,
and you see it not:
and they say to you,
23 Behold here! or, Behold there!
neither go after, nor pursue them:
24 for exactly as the lightning
lightnings from the one part under the heavens,
radiating to the other part under the heavens,
so also becomes the Son of humanity in his day.
25 But first he must suffer much
and be dissapproved by this generation.
26 And exactly as it became in the days of Noach,
so it also becomes
in the days of the Son of humanity:
27 they ate, they drank, they married, they married off
until the day Noach entered the ark,
and the cataclysm came and destroyed them all.
28 Likewise also, so it became in the days of Lot;
they ate, they drank,
29 they bought, they sold, they planted, they built:
but the same day Lot came from Sodom
fire and sulphur rained from the heavens
and destroyed all.
30 In like manner, it becomes
in the day the Son of humanity is unveiled:
31 In that day,
whoever is on the housetop
and his vessels in the house,
descend not to take it away:
and likewise whoever is in the field,
return not.
32 Remember the woman of Lot.
33 Whoever seeks to save his soul, loses it;
and whoever loses it, preserves it.
34 I word to you, in that night,
two are in one bed;
the one *is* taken and the other forsaken:
35 two are grinding together;
the one *is* taken and the other forsaken:
36 two are in the field;
the one *is* taken, and the other forsaken.
37 And they answer him, wording,
Where, Adonay?
And he says to them, Wherever the body is,
the eagles gather together.

YAH SHUA ON THE JUDGE AND THE WIDOW

18 And he words a parable to them, to this end,
that men must ever pray and not weary:
2 wording, There is a judge in a city,
who neither awes Elohim nor respects humanity:
3 and there is a widow in that city;
and she comes to him, wording,
Avenge me of mine adversary.
4 And for a time, he wills not:
but after these he says within himself,
5 Though I neither awe Elohim nor respect humanity;
yet indeed, because this widow embarrasses me,
I avenge her;
lest by her coming to the completion/shalom,
she subdues me.
6 And Adonay says,
7 Hear what the unjust judge words:
avenges not Elohim his own select
who cry day and night to him

LUKE 18

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 though he *bear long* **be patient** with them?
I *tell* **word unto** you
that he *will* **shall** *avenge* them *speedily* **with quickness**.
Nevertheless **However**
when the Son of *man* **humanity** cometh,
shall he find *faith* **trust** on the earth?
9 And he *spake* **said** this parable unto *certain* **some**
which *trusted* **confided** in themselves
that they were *righteous* **just**,
and *despised others* **belittled the rest**:
YAH SHUA ON THE PHARISEE AND THE CUSTOMS AGENT
10 Two *men went up* **humans ascended**
into the *temple* **priestal precinct** to pray;
the one a Pharisee,
and the other a *publican* **customs agent**.
11 The Pharisee stood
and prayed *thus* **these** with himself,
God **Elohim**, I *thank* **eucharistize** thee,
that I am not **exactly**
as other men are **the rest of humanity**,
extortioners **plunderers**, unjust, adulterers,
or even as this *publican* **customs agent**.
12 I fast twice *in* **on** the week **shabbath**,
I *give tithes of* **tithe** all *that* — **as much as** I possess.
13 And the *publican* **customs agent**, standing afar off,
would **willed to** not **even** lift up so much as his eyes
unto heaven,
but *smote* **struck** upon his *breast* **chest**, *saying* **wording**,
God be merciful to **Elohim**, *kapur/atone* **for** me a sinner.
14 I *tell* **word unto** you,
this *man went down* **one descended** to his house justified
rather than the other:
for every one that exalteth himself
shall be *abased* **humbled**;
and he that humbleth himself
shall be exalted.
YAH SHUA ON INFANTS
15 And they *brought unto* **offered** him also infants,
that he *would* **should** touch them:
but when his disciples saw it, they rebuked them.
16 But *Jesus* **Yah Shua** called them *unto* **him**, and said,
Suffer **Allow** little children to come unto me,
and forbid them not:
for of such is the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**.
17 *Verily I say* **Amen! I word** unto you,
Whosoever shall not — **unless you**
receive the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**
as a little child
shall *in no wise enter* **no way entereth** therein.
YAH SHUA ON ETERNAL LIFE
18 And a *certain ruler* **an arch** asked him,
saying **wording**, *Good Master* **Doctor**,
what shall I do to inherit eternal life?
19 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto him,
Why *callest* **wordest** thou me good?
none is good, *save* **except** one, *that is*, *God* **Elohim**.
20 Thou knowest the *commandments* **misvoth**,
Do not commit adultery **adulterize not**,
Do not kill **murder not**,
Do not steal **not**,
Do not bear false **pseudo witness not**,
Honour thy father and thy mother.
21 And he said,
All these have I *kept* **guarded** from my youth up.
22 Now when *Jesus* **Yah Shua** heard these *things*,
he said unto him, Yet lackest thou one *thing*:
sell all *that* — **as much as** thou hast,
and distribute unto the poor,
and thou shalt have treasure in heaven:
and come, follow me.
23 And when he heard *this* **these**,
he was *very* **became exceeding** sorrowful:
for he was *very* **extremely** rich.
24 And when *Jesus* **Yah Shua** saw
that he was *very* **became exceeding** sorrowful, he said,
How *hardly* shall **difficultly** they that have riches
enter into the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim!**

LOUKAS 18

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— though he is patient with them?
I word to you
that he avenges them with quickness.
However when the Son of humanity comes,
finds he trust on the earth?
9 — and he says this parable to some
who confide in themselves that they are just
and belittle the rest:
YAH SHUA ON THE PHARISEE AND THE CUSTOMS AGENT
10 Two humans
ascend into the priestal precinct to pray;
the one a Pharisee and the other a customs agent.
11 The Pharisee stands and prays these with himself,
Elohim, I eucharistize you,
that I am not exactly as the rest of humanity
— plunderers, unjust, adulterers,
or even as this customs agent:
12 I fast twice on the shabbath,
I tithe all — as much as I possess.
13 And the customs agent, stands afar off,
and wills not even so much
as to lift his eyes to the heavens;
but strikes on his chest, wording,
Elohim, kapur/atone for me a sinner.
14 I word to you,
this one descends to his house justified
rather than the other:
for everyone who exalts himself, is humbled;
and whoever humbles himself, is exalted.
YAH SHUA ON INFANTS
15 And they also offer him infants to touch:
but his disciples see, and rebuke them.
16 But Yah Shua calls them, and says,
Allow little children to come to me
and forbid them not:
for of such is the sovereigndom of Elohim.
17 Amen! I word to you,
Whoever
— unless you receive the sovereigndom of Elohim
as a little child
you no way enter therein.
YAH SHUA ON ETERNAL LIFE
18 And an arch asks him, wording, Good Doctor,
What do I to inherit eternal life?
19 And Yah Shua says to him,
Why word you me good?
None is good, except one — Elohim.
20 You know the misvoth:
Adulterize not!
Murder not!
Steal not!
Pseudo witness not!
Honor your father and your mother!
21 And he says, I guarded all these from my youth.
22 And Yah Shua hears these, and says to him,
Yet you lack one:
sell all — as much as you have
and distribute to the poor
and have treasure in the heavens:
and come, follow me.
23 — and hearing these
he becomes exceeding sorrowful:
for he is extremely rich.
24 And Yah Shua sees
that he becomes exceeding sorrowful;
and he says, How difficultly they who have riches
enter the sovereigndom of Elohim!

LUKE 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

25 For it is easier for a camel **rope***
to go **enter** through a needle's eye,
than for a **the rich man**
to enter into the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**.
*see Lamsa
26 And they that heard it said, Who then can be saved?
27 And he said,
The things **Those** which are impossible with *men* **humanity**
are possible with God **Elohim**.
28 Then Peter **And Petros** said,
Lo **Behold**, we have *left* **forsaken** all, and followed thee.
29 And he said unto them,
Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
There is no *man* **one** that hath *left* **forsaken** house,
or parents, or brethren, or *wife* **woman**, or children,
for the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God's **Elohim's** sake,
30 Who shall not **no way**
receive manifold **take much** more
in this present *time* **season**,
and in the *world* **eon** to come life *everlasting* **eternal**.
YAH SHUA PROPHECIES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION
31 Then he took unto him the twelve, and said unto them,
Behold, we go up **ascend** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and all *things* that are *written* **scribed**
by **through** the prophets
concerning the Son of *man* **humanity**
shall be *accomplished* **completed/shalamed**.
32 For he shall be *delivered* **betrayed**
unto the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
and shall be mocked, and *spitefully entreated* **insulted**,
and spitted on:
33 And they shall scourge him,
and *put* **slaughter** him to *death*:
and the third day he shall rise *again*.
34 And they *understood* **comprehended**
none of these *things*:
and this *saying* **rhema** was *hid* **secreted** from them,
neither knew they
the things **those** which were *spoken* **worded**.
YAH SHUA HEALS SOMEONE BLIND
35 And **so be** it came to *pass*,
that as he was *come nigh* **approached**
unto *Jericho* **Yericho**,
a *certain* **someone** blind *man* sat by the way side begging:
36 And hearing the multitude *pass by* **going through**,
he asked what it meant.
37 And they *told* **evangelized** him,
that *Jesus of Nazareth* **Yah Shua the Nazarene**
passeth by.
38 And he cried, *saying* **wording**,
Jesus **Yah Shua**, thou son of David, *have mercy on me*.
39 And they which *went before* **preceded** rebuked him,
that he should *hold his peace* **hush**:
but he cried so much the more,
Thou son of David, *have mercy on me*.
40 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** stood,
and *commanded* **summoned** him to be brought unto him:
and when he was *come near* **approached**, he asked him,
41 *Saying* **Wording**,
What *wilt* **willest** thou that I shall do unto thee?
And he said, *Lord* **Adonay**,
that I may *receive my sight* **see**.
42 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto him,
Receive thy sight **See**: thy *faith* **trust** hath saved thee.
43 And immediately he *received his sight* **saw**,
and followed him, glorifying God **Elohim**:
and all the people, when they saw it,
gave *praise* **halal** unto God **Elohim**.
SALVATION COMES TO HOUSE OF ZAKKAY

19

And *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
entered and passed through *Jericho* **Yericho**.
2 And, behold, *there was* a man
named **Zacchaeus** by name called **Zakkay**,
which was the
chief among the publicans **arch customs agent**,
and he was rich.
3 And he sought to see *Jesus* **Yah Shua** who he was;
and could not for the *press* **multitude**,
because he was little of stature.

LOUKAS 18, 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

25 For it is easier for a rope*
to enter through the eye of a needle,
than for the rich
to enter the sovereigndom of Elohim.
*see Lamsa
26 And they who hear, say, So who can be saved?
27 And he says,
Those which are impossible with humanity
are possible with Elohim.
28 And Petros says,
Behold, we forsake all, and follow you.
29 And he says to them,
Amen! I word to you,
No one forsakes house
or parents or brothers or woman or children
for sake of the sovereigndom of Elohim,
30 who no way takes much more
in this present season;
and in the coming eon, life eternal.
YAH SHUA PROPHECIES HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION
31 And he takes the twelve to him, and says to them,
Behold, we ascend to Yeru Shalem,
to complete/shalam
all those scribed through the prophets
concerning the Son of humanity
32 — to betray him to the goyim
and to mock and insult and spit on:
33 and to scourge and slaughter him:
and the third day he rises.
34 And they comprehend none of these:
and this rhema is secreted from them,
and they know not what was worded.
YAH SHUA HEALS SOMEONE BLIND
35 And so be it, as he approaches Yericho,
someone blind sits by the way side begging:
36 and hearing the multitude going through,
he asks what it means:
37 and they evangelize him
that Yah Shua the Nazarene passes by:
38 — and he cries, wording,
Yah Shua, son of David, mercy me!
39 And they who precede, rebuke him to hush:
but he cries so much the more,
Son of David, mercy me!
40 And Yah Shua stands,
and summons to bring him:
and when he approaches, he asks him,
41 wording, What will you that I do to you?
And he says, Adonay, that I see!
42 And Yah Shua says to him,
See! Your trust saves you.
43 — and immediately he sees,
and follows him, glorifying Elohim:
— and all the people see it and give halal to Elohim.
SALVATION COMES TO HOUSE OF ZAKKAY
19 And Yah Shua enters and passes through Yericho.
2 And behold, a man by name called Zakkay;
and he is the arch customs agent; and he is rich:
3 and he seeks to see Yah Shua, who he is;
and cannot because of the multitude
because he is little of stature.

LUKE 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 And he ran *before* **in front**,
and *climbed up* **ascended** into a sycamore tree
to see him:
for he was **about** to pass *that way* **through**.
5 And when *Jesus Yah Shua* came to the place,
he looked *up*, and saw him, and said unto him,
Zacchaeus Zakkay,
make haste **hasten**, and *come down* **descend**;
for to day I must abide at thy house.
6 And he *made haste* **hastened**,
and *came down* **descended**,
and received him *joyfully* **cheerfully**.
7 And when they saw it, they all murmured,
saying **wording**,
That he was *gone* **entered** to be *guest lodge*
with a man that is a sinner.
8 And *Zacchaeus Zakkay* stood,
and said unto *the Lord Adonay*:
Behold, *Lord Adonay*,
the half of my *goods* **holdings** I give to the poor;
and if I have *taken any thing* **sycophanted ought**
from any *man* **one** by *false accusation*,
I *restore* **give** him fourfold.
9 And *Jesus Yah Shua* said unto him,
This day is salvation *come to* **become** this house,
forsomuch as he also is a son of Abraham.
10 For the Son of *man* **humanity**
is come to seek and to save that which was lost.
YAH SHUA ON THE TEN MINAS
11 And as they heard these *things*,
he added and *spake* **said** a parable,
because he was nigh to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and because they thought
that the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God Elohim*
should immediately **was about to** appear.
12 **So** He said *therefore*,
A *certain nobleman* **well birthed human**
went into a far *country* **region**
to *receive* **take** for himself a *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
and to return.
13 And he called his ten servants,
and *delivered* **gave** them ten *pounds* **minas**,
and said unto them, *Occupy* **Barter** till I come.
14 But his citizens hated him,
and *sent* **apostolized** a *message* **presbytery** after him,
saying **wording**,
We will not *have* **that** this *man* to reign over us.
15 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
that when he was *returned* **came back**,
having *received* **taken** the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
then he *commanded* **said to voice out**
these servants to be called unto him,
to whom he had given the *money* **silver**,
that he might know
how much *every man* **each**
had *gained by trading* **thoroughly applied himself**.
16 Then **And** came the first, *saying* **wording**, *Lord Adoni*,
thy *pound* **mina** hath *gained* **acquired** ten *pounds* **minas**.
17 And he said unto him, Well **done**, thou good servant:
because thou hast *been faithful* **become trustworthy**
in *very little* **the least**,
have thou authority over ten cities.
18 And the second came, *saying* **wording**, *Lord Adoni*,
thy *pound* **mina**
hath *gained* **produced** five *pounds* **minas**.
19 And he said likewise to him,
Be thou also over five cities.
20 And another came, *saying* **wording**,
Lord Adoni, behold, *here is thy pound* **mina**,
which I have *kept* **laid up** in a *napkin* **sudarium**:
21 For I *feared* **awed** thee,
because thou art an austere *man* **human**:
thou takest *up* that thou *layedst* **placedst** not down,
and *reapest* **harvestest**
that thou *didst* **sporest** not sow.
22 And he *saith* **wordeth** unto him,
Out of thine own mouth *will* **shall** I judge thee,
thou wicked **evil** servant.
Thou knewest that I was an austere *man* **human**,

LOUKAS 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 And he runs in front,
and ascends into a sycamore to see him:
for he is about to pass through.
5 And as Yah Shua comes to the place,
he looks, and sees him, and says to him,
Zakkay, hasten, and descend;
for today I must abide at your house.
6 — and he hastens and descends
and receives him cheerfully.
7 And they see, and they all murmur, wording,
He enters to lodge with a man — a sinner.
8 And Zakkay stands, and says to Adonay:
Behold, Adonay,
the half of my holdings I give to the poor;
and if I have sycophanted ought from anyone,
I give fourfold.
9 And Yah Shua says to him,
This day salvation becomes to this house.
— he also is a son of Abraham.
10 For the Son of humanity
comes to seek and to save the lost.
YAH SHUA ON THE TEN MINAS
11 And as they hear these, he adds and says a parable,
because he is near Yeru Shalem;
and because they think
the sovereigndom of Elohim is about to appear.
12 So he says,
A well birthed human goes to a far region
to take a sovereigndom for himself and to return.
13 And he calls his ten servants
and gives them ten minas;
and says to them, Barter until I come.
14 But his citizens hate him
and apostolize a presbytery after him, wording,
We will that this *one* not reign over us.
15 And so be it, when he comes back,
having taken the sovereigndom,
he says to voice out to call these servants to him
— to whom he had given the silver,
to know how much each thoroughly applied himself.
16 And the first comes, wording,
Adoni, your mina acquired ten minas.
17 And he says to him, Well done, you good servant:
because you became trustworthy in the least,
have authority over ten cities.
18 And the second comes, wording,
Adoni, your mina produced five minas.
19 And likewise he says to him,
You also be over five cities.
20 And another comes, wording,
Adoni, behold, your mina,
which I laid in a sudarium:
for I awe you,
because you are an austere human:
you take what you place not,
and harvest what you spore not.
22 And he words to him,
From your own mouth I judge you, evil servant:
you know I am an austere human,

LUKE 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 taking up that I **laid placed** not down,
and reaping **harvesting** that I **did spered** not sow:
Wherefore then **And why**
gavest not thou my **money silver** into the **bank table**,
that at my coming
I might have **required exacted** mine own with **usury interest?**
24 And he said unto them that stood by,
Take from him the **pound mina**,
and give it to him that hath ten **pounds minas**.
25 (And they said unto him, **Lord Adoni**,
he hath ten **pounds minas**.)
26 For I say **word** unto you,
That unto every one which hath
shall be given;
and from him that hath not,
even that he hath shall be taken away from him.
27 But those mine enemies,
which **would willed** not that I should reign over them,
bring hither,
and **slay slaughter** them **before in front of** me.
28 **YAH SHUA ENTERS YERU SHALEM**
And when he had **thus spoken said these**,
he went **before ahead**,
ascending up to **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**.
29 And **so be** it came to pass,
when he was **come nigh approached**
to **Bethpage Beth Pag** and **Bethany Beth Ania**,
at the mount called **the mount** of Olives,
he **sent apostolized** two of his disciples,
30 Saying,
Go ye into the village **over against opposite** you;
in the which at your entering ye shall find a colt tied,
whereon yet never **man human ever** sat:
loose **him**, and bring him **hither**.
31 And **if whenever** any **man one** ask you,
Why do ye loose **him**?
thus shall ye say unto him,
Because **the Lord Adonay** hath need of him.
32 And they that were **sent apostolized** went their way,
and found even as he had said unto them.
33 And as they were loosing the colt,
the **owners thereof adonim** said unto them,
Why loose ye the colt?
34 And they said, **the Lord Adonay** hath need of him.
35 And they brought him to **Jesus Yah Shua**:
and they **cast tossed** their garments upon the colt,
and they **set Jesus mounted Yah Shua** thereon.
36 And as he went,
they spread their **clothes garments** in the way.
37 And when he was **come nigh approached**,
even **already** at the descent of the mount of Olives,
the whole multitude of the disciples
began to **rejoice cheer**
and **praise God halal Elohim** with a **loud mega** voice
for all the **mighty works dynamis** that they had seen;
38 saying **wording**,
Blessed Eulogized be the **King Sovereign**
that cometh in the name of **the Lord Yah Veh**:
peace shalom in heaven,
and glory in the **highest highests**.
Psalm 118:25, 26
39 And some of the Pharisees from **among** the multitude
said unto him, **Master Doctor**, rebuke thy disciples.
40 And he answered and said unto them,
I **tell word unto** you that,
if whenever these should **hold their peace hush**,
the stones **would should** immediately cry out.
41 And when he was **come near approached**,
he **beheld saw** the city, and wept over it,
42 Saying **Wording**, If thou hadst known, even thou,
at least **yet indeed** in this thy day,
the things these
which **belong unto shall be for** thy **peace shalom**!
but now they are **hid secreted** from thine eyes.
43 For the days shall come upon thee,
that thine enemies
shall **cast envelop** a **trench palisade** about thee,
and **compass surround** thee **round**,
and **keep hold** thee in on every side,

LOUKAS 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

23 taking what I place not,
and harvest what I spore not:
And why gave you not my silver to the table,
so that at my coming
I had ever exacted my own with interest?
24 And he says to them who stand by,
Take the mina from him
and give to him having ten minas.
25 — and they say to him, Adoni, he has ten minas.
26 For I word to you,
To everyone who has, **is given**;
and from him who has not,
even what he has, is taken from him:
27 but those, my enemies,
who will that I not reign over them,
bring them here and slaughter in front of me.
YAH SHUA ENTERS YERU SHALEM
28 And he says these,
and he goes ahead and ascends to Yeru Shalem.
29 And so be it,
as he approaches Beth Pag and Beth Ania
at the mount called, Of Olives,
he apostolizes two of his disciples,
30 Saying, Go into the village opposite you;
wherein, as you enter, you find a colt tied,
whereon no human yet ever sat;
loose and bring him:
31 and whenever anyone asks you, Why loose you it?
say thus to him, Because Adonay has need of him.
32 — and the apostolized go their way
and find even as he said to them.
33 And as they loose the colt, the adonim say to them,
Why loose you the colt?
34 And they say, Adonay has need of him.
35 And they bring him to Yah Shua:
and they toss their garments on the colt
and they mount Yah Shua thereon:
and as he goes,
they spread their garments in the way.
36 And as he approaches,
already at the descent of the mount of Olives,
the whole multitude of the disciples
begins to cheer and halal Elohim with a mega voice
for all the dynamis they had seen;
37 wording,
Eulogized — the Sovereign
who comes in the name of Yah Veh:
shalom in the heavens and glory in the highests.
Psalm 118:25, 26
39 And some of the Pharisees from the multitude
say to him, Doctor, rebuke your disciples.
40 And he answers them, saying,
I word to you that whenever these hush,
the stones immediately cry out.
41 And as he approaches
he sees the city and weeps over it,
42 wording, If you had known, even you,
yet indeed in this, your day,
all these that be for your shalom!
But now they are secreted from your eyes.
43 For days come upon you,
that your enemies envelop a palisade around you,
and surround you and hold you in on every side,

LUKE 19, 20

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

44 And shall *lay* **raze** thee even with the ground,
and thy children within thee;
and they shall not *leave* **allow** in thee
one stone upon *another* **stone**;
because thou knewest not
the *time* **season** of thy visitation.
YAH SHUA ENTERS THE PRIESTAL PRECINCT

45 And he *went* **entered** into the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
and began to cast *out* them that sold therein,
and them that bought;
46 *Saying* **Wording** unto them,
It is *written* **scribed**, My house is the house of prayer:
but ye have made it a *den* **grotto** of *thieves* **robbers**.
47 And he *taught* **doctrinated** daily
in the *temple* **priestal precinct**.
But the *chief* **arch** priests and the scribes
and the *chief* **preeminent** of the people
sought to destroy him,
48 And could not find what they might do:
for all the people
were very attentive to hear him **heard him with suspense**.

THE AUTHORITY OF YAH SHUA QUESTIONED

20

And **so be** it *came to pass*,
that on one of those days,
as he *taught* **doctrinated** the people
in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
and *preached the gospel* **evangelized**,
the *chief* **arch** priests and the scribes
came upon **stood by** him with the elders,
And *spake* **said** unto him, *saying* **wording**,
Tell **Say to us**, by what authority doest thou these *things*?
or who is he that gave thee this authority?
3 And he answered and said unto them,
I *will* **shall** also ask you one *thing* **word**;
and *answer* **say to me**:
4 The baptism of *John* **Yahn**,
was it from heaven, or of *men* **humanity**?
5 And they *reasoned* **reckoned** with themselves,
saying **wording**, if **whenever** we shall say, From heaven;
he *will* **shall** say, Why then *believed* **trusted** ye him not?
6 But and if **whenever** we say, Of *men* **humanity**;
all the people *will* **shall** stone us:
for they be *persuaded* **convinced**
that *John* **Yahn** was a prophet.
7 And they answered,
that they *could* **knew** not *tell* whence it was.
8 And *Jesus* **Yah Shua** said unto them,
Neither *tell* **word** I you
by what authority I do these *things*.

YAH SHUA ON THE CULTIVATORS

9 Then **And** began he to *speak* **word** to the people
this parable;
A *certain man* **human** planted a vineyard,
and *let* **leased** it forth to *husbandmen* **cultivators**,
and went *into a far country* **abroad**
for a *long* **an ample** time.
10 And at the season he *sent* **apostolized** a servant
to the *husbandmen* **cultivators**,
that they should give him of the fruit of the vineyard:
but the *husbandmen* **beat** **cultivators** **flogged** him,
and *sent* **apostolized** him away empty.
11 And again he *sent* **added to send** another servant:
and they *beat* **flogged** him also,
and *entreated* **dishonoured** him *shamefully*,
and *sent* **apostolized** him away empty.
12 And again he *sent* **added to send** a third:
and they *wounded* **traumatized** him also,
and cast him *out*.
13 Then said the *lord* **adoni** of the vineyard,
What shall I do?
I *will* **shall** send my beloved son:
it may be **perhaps** they *will* **reverence** **shall respect** him
when they see him.
14 But when the *husbandmen* **cultivators** saw him,
they reasoned among themselves, *saying* **wording**,
This is the heir: come, let us *kill* **slaughter** him,
that the inheritance may be ours.
15 So they cast him out of the vineyard,
and *killed* **slaughtered** him.

LOUKAS 19, 20

exeGeses companion BIBLE

44 and raze you and your children within you;
and they allow not stone upon stone in you;
because you know not the season of your visitation.
YAH SHUA ENTERS THE PRIESTAL PRECINCT

45 And he enters the priestal precinct,
and begins to cast them who sell therein
and them who buy;
46 wording to them,
It is scribed, My house is the house of prayer:
but you make it a grotto of robbers.
47 And he doctrinates daily in the priestal precinct:
but the archpriests and the scribes
and the preeminent of the people
seek to destroy him,
48 and cannot find what to do:
for all the people hear him with suspense.

THE AUTHORITY OF YAH SHUA QUESTIONED

20

And so be it, on one of those days,
as he doctrinates the people in the priestal precinct
and evangelizes,
the archpriests and the scribes
stand by him with the elders,
and say to him, wording,
2 Say to us, By what authority do you these?
Or who gave you this authority?
3 And he answers them, saying,
I also ask you one word; and you say to me:
4 The baptism of Yahn
— is it from the heavens, or of humanity?
5 And they reckon with themselves, wording,
Whenever we say, From the heavens;
he says, So why trust you him not?
6 But when ever we say, Of humanity;
all the people stone us:
for they are convinced that Yahn is a prophet.
— and they answer that they know not whence it is.
8 And Yah Shua says to them,
Neither word I you by what authority I do these.

YAH SHUA ON THE CULTIVATORS

9 And he begins to word this parable to the people;
A human plants a vineyard
and leases it to cultivators
and goes abroad for an ample time:
and at the season
he apostolizes a servant to the cultivators
to give him of the fruit of the vineyard;
but the cultivators flog him
and apostolize him forth empty:
11 and again he adds to send another servant;
and they also flog him and dishonor him
and apostolize him empty:
12 and again he adds to send a third;
and they also traumatize him and cast him.
13 And the adoni of the vineyard says,
What do I? I send my beloved son:
perhaps they respect him when they see him.
14 But the cultivators see him,
and they reason among themselves,
wording, This is the heir: come, we slaughter him,
that the inheritance be ours.
15 — so they cast him from the vineyard
and slaughter him.

LUKE 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

16 So What therefore shall the *lord adoni* of the vineyard do unto them?
He shall come
and destroy these *husbandmen cultivators*,
and shall give the vineyard to others.
And when they heard it, they said,
God forbid **So be it not.**
17 And he beheld **looked at** them, and said,
So what is this *then* that is *written scribed*,
The stone which the builders *rejected disapproved*,
the same **this** is become the head of the corner?
18 Whosoever shall fall upon that stone
shall be *broken crushed*;
but on whomsoever it shall fall,
it will grind him to powder **shall be pulverized.**
Psalm 118:22, 23
19 And the *chief arch* priests and the scribes
the same hour sought to lay hands on him;
and they *feared awed* the people:
for they *perceived knew*
that he had *spoken said* this parable against them.
YAH SHUA ON TRIBUTE
20 And they *watched observed* him,
and *sent forth spies apostolized liars in waiting*,
which should *feign hypocrite* themselves just men,
that they might take hold of his words,
that so they might *deliver betray* him
unto the *power hierarchy* and authority of the governor.
21 And they asked him, *saying wording*,
Master Doctor, we know that thou *sayest wordest*
and *teachest rightly doctrinatest straightforwardly*,
neither *acceptest takest* thou the *person of any face*,
but *teachest doctrinatest* the way of *God truly Elohim in truth*:
22 Is it *lawful allowed* for us
to give tribute unto *Caesar the Kaisar*, or no?
23 But he perceived their *craftiness cunning*,
and said unto them, *Why tempt test* ye me?
24 Shew me a *penny denarion*.
Whose *image icon* and *superscription epigraph* hath it?
They answered and said, *Caesar's The Kaisar's*.
25 And he said unto them,
Render therefore unto Caesar the things which be Caesar's
So give the Kaisar's to the Kaisar,
and unto God the things which be God's
and Elohim's to Elohim.
26 And they could not
take hold of his *words before rhema in front* of the people:
and they marvelled at his answer,
and *held their peace hushed*.
YAH SHUA ON MARRIAGE IN THE RESURRECTION
27 Then **And** came to him
certain some of the *Sadducees Sadoqiym*,
which *deny contradict* that there is any resurrection;
and they asked him,
28 *Saying Wording, Master Doctor,*
Moses wrote Mosheh scribed unto us,
If Whenever any *man's one's* brother die,
having a *wife woman*,
and he die *without children childless*,
that his brother should take his *wife woman*,
and raise up *seed sperma* unto his brother.
29 **So** There were *therefore* seven brethren:
and the first took a *wife woman*,
and died *without children childless*.
30 And the second took her to *wife woman*,
and he died childless.
31 And the third took her;
and in like manner the seven also:
and they left no children, and died.
32 *Last of all Afterward* the woman died also.
33 *Therefore So* in the resurrection
whose *wife of them is woman becometh* she?
for seven had her to *wife woman*.
34 And *Jesus Yah Shua* answering said unto them,
The *children sons* of this *world eon* marry,
and are *given in marriage married off*:
35 But they which shall be accounted worthy
to obtain that *world eon*,

LOUKAS 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

So what *is* the adoni of the vineyard to do to them?
16 He comes and destroys these cultivators
and gives the vineyard to others.
— and they hear; and they say, So be it not.
17 And he looks at them, and says,
So what is this that is scribed,
The stone the builders disapproved,
this becomes the head of the corner?
18 Whoever falls upon that stone *is* crushed;
and on whomever it falls *is* pulverized.
Psalm 118:22, 23
19 And the same hour
the archpriests and the scribes seek to lay hands on him;
and they awe the people:
for they know he says this parable against them.
YAH SHUA ON TRIBUTE
20 And they observe him,
and apostolize liars in waiting
who hypocrite themselves as just men;
to take hold of his words
and to betray him
to the hierarchy and authority of the governor.
21 And they ask him, wording,
Doctor, we know that you word
and doctriate straightforwardly,
and you take not the face,
but doctriate the way of Elohim in truth:
22 Are we allowed to give tribute to the Kaisar?
Or no?
23 But he perceives their cunning and says to them,
Why test you me?
24 Show me a denarion.
Whose icon and epigraph has it?
They answer, saying, Of the Kaisar.
25 And he says to them,
So give that of the Kaisar to the Kaisar
and that of Elohim to Elohim.
26 And they cannot
take hold of his rhema in front of the people:
and they marvel at his answer and hush.
YAH SHUA ON MARRIAGE IN THE RESURRECTION
27 And some of the Sadoqiym come
— who contradict that there is any resurrection;
and they ask him,
28 wording, Doctor,
Mosheh scribed to us,
Whenever the brother of anyone dies,
having a woman, and he dies childless,
his brother takes his woman,
and raises sperma to his brother:
29 so there are seven brothers:
and the first takes a woman,
and dies childless:
30 and the second takes her to woman,
and he dies childless:
31 and the third takes her
— and in like manner, also the seven:
and they leave no children, and die:
32 afterward the woman also dies:
33 so in the resurrection, whose woman becomes she
— for seven had her to woman?
34 And Yah Shua answers them, saying,
The sons of this eon marry and are married off:
35 but they who are accounted worthy
to obtain that eon,

LUKE 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the resurrection from the dead,
neither marry, nor are *given in marriage* **married off**:
36 Neither **indeed** can they **even** die *any more*:
for they are equal unto the angels;
and are the *children* **sons** of God **Elohim**,
being the *children* **sons** of the resurrection.
37 Now **But** that the dead are raised,
even *Moses shewed* **Mosheh disclosed** at the *bush* **brier**,
when he *calleth the Lord* **wordeth Yah Veh**
the God **Elohim** of Abraham,
and the God **Elohim** of *Isaac* **Yischaq**,
and the God **Elohim** of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**.
Exodus 3:1— 6
38 For he is not a God **Elohim** of the dead,
but of the living: for all live unto him.
39 Then *certain* **Some** of the scribes answering said,
Master **Doctor**, thou hast well said.
40 And *after that* **yet**
they durst not ask him any question at all.

YAH SHUA ON THE MESSIAH

41 And he said unto them,
How say **word** they that *Christ* **the Messiah** is David's son?
42 And David himself
saith **wordeth** in the *book* **scroll** of Psalms,
the LORD said **an oracle of Yah Veh** unto my *Lord* **Adonay**,
Sit thou **on at** my right *hand*,
43 Till I *make* **place** thine enemies thy footstool.
Psalm 110:1
44 **So** David *therefore* calleth him *Lord* **Adonay**,
how is he then his son?
45 Then in the *audience* **hearing** of all the people
he said unto his disciples,
46 *Beware of* **Heed** the scribes,
which *desire* will to walk in *long robes* **stoles**,
and *love greetings* **befriend salutations** in the markets,
and the *highest seats* **preeminent cathedras**
in the synagogues,
and the *chief rooms* **preeminent recliners** at *feasts* **suppers**;
47 Which devour widows' houses,
and for a *shew* **pretext** make *long far out* prayers:
the same **these** shall receive **take**
greater damnation **more superabundant judgment**.

YAH SHUA ON THE TWO FLAKES OF THE WIDOW

21 And he looked *up*, and saw the rich *men*
casting their *gifts* **oblations** into the treasury.
2 And he saw also a *certain* **needy** poor widow
casting in thither two *mites* **flakes**.
3 And he said, *Of a truth I say* **Truly I word** unto you,
that this poor widow hath cast in more than they all:
4 For all these have of their **super** abundance
cast in unto the *offerings* **oblations** of God **Elohim**:
but she of her *penury* **lack**
hath cast in all the *living* **subsistence** that she had.

YAH SHUA ON THE COMPLETION OF THE EON

5 And as some *spake* **worded**
of about the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
how it was adorned with goodly stones and *gifts* **votives**,
he said,
6 As for these *things* which ye *behold* **observe**,
the days *will* **shall** come,
in the which there shall not be *left* **allowed**
one stone upon *another* **stone**,
that shall not be *thrown down* **disintegrated**.
7 And they asked him, *Saying* **Wording**, *Master* **Doctor**,
but so when shall these *things* be?
and what sign *will* **shall** there be
when **ever** these *things* shall *come to pass* **become**?
8 And he said,
Take heed **See** that ye be not *deceived* **seduced**:
for many shall come in my name, *saying* **wording**,
I am Christ **I AM**;
and the *time* **draweth near** **season approacheth**:
so go ye not *therefore* after them.
9 But when **ever** ye shall hear
of wars and *commotions* **instabilities**,
be not terrified:
for these *things* must first *come to pass* **become**;
but the *end* **completion/shalom** is not *by and by* **straightway**.

LOUKAS 20, 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the resurrection from the dead,
neither marry, nor *are* married off:
36 neither indeed can they even die:
for they are equal to the angels
— and are the sons of Elohim,
being the sons of the resurrection.
37 But that the dead are raised,
even Mosheh disclosed at the brier,
when he worded Yah Veh *is* the Elohim of Abraham
and the Elohim of Yischaq
and the Elohim of Yaaqov.
Exodus 3:1— 6
38 For he is not Elohim of the dead,
but of the living: for all live to him.
39 Some of the scribes answer, saying,
Doctor, you say well.
40 — and yet they dare no more
to ask him any question at all.

YAH SHUA ON THE MESSIAH

41 And he says to them,
How word they that the Messiah is the son of David?
42 And David himself words in the scroll of Psalms,
An oracle of Yah Veh to my Adonay,
Sit you at my right
43 until I place your enemies the stool of your feet.
Psalm 110:1
44 So David called him Adonay:
So how is he his son?
45 And in the hearing of all the people
he says to his disciples,
46 Heed the scribes who will to walk in stoles
and befriend salutations in the markets
and the preeminent cathedras in the synagogues
and the preeminent recliners at suppers;
47 who devour houses of widows
and for a pretext make far out prayers:
these take more superabundant judgment.

YAH SHUA ON THE TWO FLAKES OF THE WIDOW

21 And he looks and sees the rich
cast their oblations into the treasury:
2 and he also sees a needy poor widow
cast in two flakes.
3 And he says, Truly I word to you,
that this poor widow casts in more than they all:
4 for all these from their super abundance
cast in to the oblations of Elohim:
but she of her lack
casts in all her subsistence.

YAH SHUA ON THE COMPLETION OF THE EON

5 And as some word about the priestal precinct
— how it is adorned with goodly stones and votives,
he says,
6 As for these which you observe,
the days come,
in which there is not allowed stone upon stone,
that is not disintegrated.
7 And they ask him, Wording, Doctor,
so when become these?
and what *is* the sign whenever these become?
8 And he says,
See that you *be* not seduced:
for many come in my name, wording, I AM;
and the season approaches:
So you, go not after them.
9 But whenever you hear of wars and instabilities,
be not terrified:
for these must first be;
but the completion/shalom is not straightway.

LUKE 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 Then said **worded** he unto them,
Nation Goyim shall rise against nation goyim,
and kingdom sovereignty
against kingdom sovereignty:
 11 And *great earthquakes mega quakes*
shall be in divers places,
and famines, and pestilences;
and fearful sights awesomenesses and great mega signs
shall there be from heaven.
 12 *But before And ere* all these,
 they shall lay their hands on you, and persecute you,
delivering betraying you up to the synagogues,
and into prisons guardhouses,
being brought before in front of
kings sovereigns and rulers governors for my name's sake.
 13 And it shall turn to you for a *testimony witness.*
 14 *Settle So place* it therefore in your hearts,
not to meditate before premeditate
what ye shall answer plead:
 15 For I will **shall** give you a mouth and wisdom,
 which all your adversaries
 shall not be able to *gainsay refute nor resist withstand.*
 16 And ye shall be betrayed both by parents,
 and brethren, and *kinsfolks kin,* and friends;
 and some of you shall they *cause to be put to death deathify.*
 17 And ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake.
 18 But there shall **not never no way**
 an hair of your head *perish destruct.*
 19 In your *patience endurance* possess ye your souls.
 20 And when **ever** ye shall see *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
compassed with armies surrounded by warriors,
 then know
 that the desolation thereof *is nigh approacheth.*
 21 Then let them which are in *Judaea Yah Hudah*
 flee to the mountains;
 and let them which are in the midst of it depart *out;*
 and let not them that are in the *countries regions*
 enter *thereinto.*
 22 For these be the days of vengeance,
 that all *things* which are *written scribed*
 may be fulfilled/**shalamed.**
 23 But woe unto them that *are with child have in womb,*
 and to them that *give suck nipple,* in those days!
 for there shall be *great distress mega need*
in upon the land earth, and wrath upon this people.
 24 And they shall fall by the edge of the sword,
 and shall be *led away captive captured*
 into all *nations goyim:*
 and *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
 shall be *trodden down trampled* of the *Gentiles goyim,*
 until the *times seasons* of the *Gentiles goyim*
 be fulfilled/**shalamed.**
 25 And there shall be signs in the sun,
 and in the moon, and in the stars;
 and upon the earth *distress oppression* of *nations goyim,*
 with perplexity;
 the sea *surging* and *the waves roaring echoing;*
 26 *Men's hearts failing them Humanity breathing cold*
 for fear **awe,**
 and for *looking after awaiting* those *things*
 which are coming on the *earth world:*
 for the *powers dynamis* of heaven shall be shaken.
 Yesha Yah 13:9—13
YAH SHUA ON THE PAROUSIA OF THE SON OF HUMANITY
 27 And then shall they see the Son of *man humanity*
 coming in a cloud
 with *power dynamis* and *great vast* glory.
 28 And when these *things* begin to *come to pass become,*
 then *look up unbend,* and lift *up* your heads;
 for your redemption draweth nigh.
 29 And he *spake said* to them a parable;
 Behold **See** the fig tree, and all the trees;
 30 when **ever** they now *shoot put* forth,
 ye see and know of your own selves
 that *summer warmth* is now **already** nigh at hand.
 31 So likewise ye,
 when **ever** ye see these *things come to pass become,*
 know ye that the *kingdom sovereignty* of God **Elohim**
 is nigh at hand.

LOUKAS 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 Then he words to them,
 Goyim rises against goyim
 and sovereignty against sovereignty:
 11 and mega quakes in divers places
 and famines and pestilences
 and awesomenesses and mega signs
 become from the heavens.
 12 And ere all these,
 they lay their hands on you and persecute you
 betraying you to the synagogues
 and into guardhouses
 and bring you in front of sovereigns and governors
 for sake of my name:
 13 and it turns to you for a witness.
 14 So place in your hearts,
 to not premeditate what you plead:
 15 for I give you a mouth and wisdom,
 which all your adversaries
 can neither refute nor withstand:
 16 — and you are betrayed
 — both by parents and brothers and kin and friends;
 and some of you, they deathify:
 17 and you become hated of all men
 for sake of my name:
 18 but a hair of your head never no way destructs.
 19 In your endurance you possess your souls.
 20 And whenever you see Yeru Shalem
 surrounded by warriors,
 then know that the desolation thereof approaches:
 21 Then they in Yah Hudah, flee to the mountains;
 and they in her midst, depart;
 and they in the regions, enter not.
 22 For these are the days of vengeance,
 to fulfill/shalam all that *is scribed.*
 23 And woe to them who have in womb
 and to them who nipple in those days!
 for mega need becomes upon the earth
 and wrath upon this people:
 24 and they fall by the mouth of the sword,
 and are captured into all goyim:
 and Yeru Shalem becomes trampled by the goyim,
 until the seasons of the goyim fulfill/shalam.
 25 And signs become in the sun
 and in the moon and in the stars:
 and upon the earth,
 oppression by goyim with perplexity,
 the sea surging and echoing,
 26 humanity breathing cold for awe,
 and awaiting those coming on the world:
 for the dynamis of the heavens become shaken.
 Yesha Yah 13:9—13
YAH SHUA ON THE PAROUSIA OF THE SON OF HUMANITY
 27 And then they see the Son of humanity
 coming in a cloud with dynamis and vast glory.
 28 And when these begin to become,
 then unbend and lift your heads;
 for your redemption draws near.
 29 And he says a parable to them;
 See the fig tree and all the trees;
 30 whenever they now put forth
 you see and know of your own selves
 that warmth is already near:
 31 so likewise you,
 whenever you see these become,
 you know that the sovereignty of Elohim is near.

LUKE 21, 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

32 Verily I say **Amen! I word** unto you,
This generation shall *not never no way* pass away,
till all *be fulfilled* **becometh**.
33 Heaven and earth shall pass away:
but my words shall *not never no way* pass away.
34 And *take heed* to yourselves,
lest *at any time* **ever**
your hearts be *overcharged* **burdened**
with *surfeiting* **hangovers**, and *drunkenness* **intoxication**,
and *cares* **anxieties** of *this life* **existence**,
and so that day *come upon* **stand by** you unawares.
35 For as a snare shall it come on all them
that *dwell* **sit** on the face of the whole earth.
36 *Watch ye therefore* **So stay awake**,
and *pray always* **petition in every season**,
that ye may be accounted worthy
to escape all these *things*
that shall *come* **are about to pass become**,
and to stand *before* **in front of** the Son of *man* **humanity**.
37 And in the day *time* he was *teaching* **doctrinating**
in the temple **priestal precinct**;
and at night he went out, and *abode* **camped**
in the mount that is called *the mount* of Olives.
38 And all the people came
early in the morning **at dawn** to him
in the temple **priestal precinct**, for to hear him.

SATAN ENTERS YAH HUDAH THE URBANITE

22 Now **And** the *feast* **celebration** of *unleavened bread* **matsah**
drew nigh **approached**,
which is called **worded** the *Passover* **pasach**.
2 And the *chief* **arch** priests and scribes
sought how they might *kill* **take him out**;
for they *feared* **awed** the people.
3 Then **And** entered Satan into
Judas surnamed Iscariot **Yah Hudah called the urbanite**,
being of the number of the twelve.
4 And he went his way,
and *communed* **talked**
with the *chief* **arch** priests and *captains* **stratego**i,
how he might betray him unto them.
5 And they *were glad* **cheered**,
and covenanted to give him *money* **silver**.
6 And he *promised* **avowed**,
and sought opportunity to betray him unto them
in the absence of **away from** the multitude.

THE FINAL PASACH OF YAH SHUA

7 Then **And** came the day of *unleavened bread* **matsah**,
when the *passover* **pasach** must be *killed* **sacrificed**.
8 And he *sent Peter* **apostolized Petros** and *John* **Yahn**,
saying,
Go and prepare us the *passover* **pasach**, that we may eat.
9 And they said unto him,
Where *wilt* **willest** thou that we prepare?
10 And he said unto them, Behold,
when ye are entered into the city,
there shall a *man* **human** meet you,
bearing a pitcher of water;
follow him into the house where he entereth *in*.
11 And ye shall say
unto the *goodman of the house* **housesdespotes**,
The *Master* **saith Doctor wordeth** unto thee,
Where is the *guestchamber* **lodge**,
where I shall eat the *passover* **pasach** with my disciples?
12 And he shall shew you
a *large* **mega** upper room *furnished* **spread**:
there *make ready* **prepare**.
13 And they went,
and found **exactly** as he had said unto them:
and they *made ready* **prepared** the *passover* **pasach**.
14 And when the hour was *come* **had become**,
he *sat down* **reposed**, and the twelve apostles with him.
15 And he said unto them,
With *desire* **panting** I have *desired* **panted**
to eat this *passover* **pasach** with you *before* **ere** I suffer:
16 For I say **word** unto you,
I *will not any more* **shall never no way** eat thereof,
until it be fulfilled/**shalamed**
in the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**.

LOUKAS 21, 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

32 Amen! I word to you,
This generation never no way passes away
until all becomes.
33 The heavens and earth pass away:
but my words never no way pass away.
34 And heed to yourselves,
lest ever your hearts burden with hangovers
and intoxication and anxieties of existence,
so that day stands by you unawares.
35 For it comes as a snare
on all who sit on the face of the whole earth.
36 So stay awake
and petition in every season
that you be accounted worthy
to escape all these that are about to become;
and to stand in front of the Son of humanity.
37 And at day
he doctrinates in the priestal precinct;
and at night he goes out
and camps in the mount called, Of Olives:
38 and at dawn all the people come to him
in the priestal precinct to hear him.

SATAN ENTERS YAH HUDAH THE URBANITE

22 And the celebration of matsah approaches,
which is worded, pasach.
2 And the archpriests and scribes
seek how to take him out;
for they awe the people.
3 And Satan enters Yah Hudah called the urbanite
— being of the number of the twelve:
4 and he goes his way
and talks with the archpriests and strategoi
on how to betray him to them:
5 and they cheer and covenant to give him silver:
6 and he avows
and seeks opportunity to betray him to them
away from the multitude.

THE FINAL PASACH OF YAH SHUA

7 And the day of matsah comes,
to sacrifice the pasach:
8 and he apostolizes Petros and Yahn, saying,
Go and prepare us the pasach to eat.
9 And they say to him,
Where will you that we prepare?
10 And he says to them, Behold,
when you enter the city,
there you meet a human bearing a pitcher of water;
follow him to the house he enters:
11 and say to the housesdespotes,
The Doctor words to you,
Where is the lodge,
where I eat the pasach with my disciples?
12 — and he shows you a mega upper room spread:
there you prepare.
13 And they go and find exactly as he said to them:
and they prepare the pasach.
14 And when the hour becomes, he reposes,
and the twelve apostles with him.
15 And he says to them,
With panting
I pant to eat this pasach with you ere I suffer:
16 for I word to you,
I never no way eat thereof,
until it is fulfilled/shalamed
in the sovereigndom of Elohim.

LUKE 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

17 And he *took* **received** the cup,
and *gave thanks* **eucharistized**, and said,
Take this, and divide it among yourselves:
18 For I say **word** unto you,
I *will not* **shall never no way**
drink of the *fruit* **produce** of the vine,
until the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**
shall come.
19 And he took bread, and *gave thanks* **eucharistized**,
and brake it, and gave unto them, *saying* **wording**,
This is my body which is given for you:
this do in remembrance of me.
20 Likewise also the cup after *supper* **supping**,
saying **wording**,
This cup is the new *testament* **covenant** in my blood,
which is *shed* **poured** for you.
21 But, behold,
the hand of him that betrayeth me
is with me on the table.
22 And *truly* **indeed** the Son of *man* **humanity** goeth,
as it was *determined* **decreed**:
but woe unto that *man* **human**
by *through* whom he is betrayed!
23 And they began to *enquire* **dispute** among themselves,
which of them it was
that should *do* **be about to transact** this *thing*.
24 And there *was* **became** also a strife among them,
which of them should be *accounted* **thought** the greatest.
25 And he said unto them,
The *kings* **Sovereigns** of the *Gentiles* **goyim**
exercise lordship **rule over** them;
and they
that *exercise authority upon* **authorize over** them
are called *benefactors* **well—workers**.
26 But ye shall not be so:
but he that is greatest among you,
let him be as the younger;
and he that *is* **chief** **governeth**,
as he that *doth serve* **ministereth**.
27 For whether is greater,
he that *sitteth at meat* **reposeth**, or he that *serveth* **ministereth**?
is not **indeed** he that *sitteth at meat* **reposeth**?
but I am among you as he that *serveth* **ministereth**.
28 Ye are they which have continued **to abide** with me
in my *temptations* **testings**.
29 And I *appoint* **covenant** unto you a *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
exactly as my Father hath *appointed* **covenanted** unto me;
30 That ye may eat and drink at my table
in my *kingdom* **sovereigndom**,
and sit on thrones
judging the twelve *tribes* **scions** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
31 And the *Lord* **Adonay** said,
Simon, Simon **Shimon, Shimon**, behold,
Satan hath *desired to have* **demanded** you,
that he may sift you as *wheat* **grain**:
32 But I have *prayed* **petitioned** for thee,
that thy *faith* **trust** fail not:
and *when* **once** thou art *converted* **turned around**,
strengthen **establish** thy brethren.
33 And he said unto him, *Lord* **Adonay**,
I am *ready* **prepared** to go with thee,
both into *prison* **the guardhouse**, and to death.
34 And he said, I *tell* **word** unto thee, *Peter* **Petros**,
the *cock* **rooster** shall *not* **never no way**
crow **voice out** this day,
35 *before that* **ere** thou shalt thrice deny that thou knowest me.
And he said unto them,
When I *sent* **apostolized** you without *purse* **pouch**,
and *scrip* **wallet**, and shoes,
lacked ye *any thing* **ought**?
And they said, *nothing* **naught**.
36 *Then* **So** said he unto them, But now,
he that hath a *purse* **pouch**, let him take it,
and likewise his *scrip* **wallet**:
and he that hath no sword,
let him sell his garment, and buy one.

LOUKAS 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

17 And he receives the cup and eucharistizes,
and says, Take this and divide it among yourselves:
18 for I word to you,
I never no way drink of the produce of the vine
until the sovereigndom of Elohim comes.
19 And he takes bread and eucharistizes,
and breaks and gives to them, wording,
This is my body which is given for you:
do this in remembrance of me.
20 Likewise also the cup after supping, wording,
This cup is the new covenant in my blood,
which is poured for you.
21 But behold,
the hand of him who betrays me
is with me on the table:
22 and indeed the Son of humanity goes as decreed:
but woe to that human through whom he is betrayed!
23 And they begin to dispute among themselves,
which of them is about to transact this:
24 and also a strife becomes among them,
which of them is thought to be the greatest.
25 And he says to them,
The sovereigns of the goyim rule over them;
and they who authorize over them
are called well—workers:
26 but not you:
but he who is greatest among you,
becomes as the younger;
and he who governs as he who ministers.
27 For which is greater
— he who reposes or he who ministers?
Is not indeed he who reposes?
But I — I am among you as he who ministers.
28 You are they
who continue to abide with me in my testings:
29 and I covenant to you a sovereigndom,
exactly as my Father covenanted to me;
30 that you eat and drink at my table
in my sovereigndom,
and sit on thrones
judging the twelve scions of Yisra El.
31 And Adonay says, Shimon, Shimon,
behold, Satan demands you, to sift you as grain:
32 but I petitioned for you, that your trust not fail:
and once you turn, establish your brothers.
33 And he says to him, Adonay,
I am prepared to go with you,
both into the guardhouse, and to death.
34 And he says, I word to you, Petros,
the rooster never no way voices out this day
ere you thrice deny that you know me.
35 And he says to them,
When I apostolized you
without pouch and wallet and shoes,
lacked you ought?
And they say, Naught.
36 So he says to them, But now,
whoever has a pouch, take it,
and likewise his wallet:
and whoever has no sword,
sell his garment, and buy one.

LUKE 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

37 For I say **word** unto you,
that is *written scribed*
must yet be *accomplished* **completed/shalamed** in me,
And he was reckoned
among **with** the *transgressors* **untorahed:**
for the things **those** concerning me
have an *end* **a completion/shalom.**

Yesha Yah 53:2
38 And they said, *Lord Adonay,*
behold, here are two swords.
And he said unto them, It is enough.

THE PRAYERS OF YAH SHUA ON THE MOUNT OF OLIVES

39 And he came out, and went,
as he was *wont* **his custom**, to the mount of Olives;
and his disciples also followed him.

40 And when he was **became** at the place,
he said unto them,
Pray that ye enter not into *temptation* **testing.**

41 And he was withdrawn from them about a stone's cast,
and *kneeled down* **placed his knees**, and prayed,
42 *Saying* **Wording**, Father,
if thou *be willing* **willest**, remove this cup from me:
nevertheless **however** not my will,
but thine, *be done* **become.**

43 And there appeared an angel unto him from heaven,
strengthening **invigorating** him.

44 And being in an agony
he prayed more **earnestly intently:**
and his sweat was **became** as *it were*
great *drops* **clots** of blood
falling down to **descending upon** the *ground* **earth.**

45 And when he rose *up* from prayer,
and was come to his disciples,
he found them sleeping for sorrow,
46 And said unto them, Why sleep ye?
rise and pray, lest ye enter into *temptation* **testing.**

THE ARREST OF YAH SHUA

47 And while he yet spake, behold a multitude,
and he that was *called* **Judas worded Yah Hudah**,
one of the twelve, *went before* **preceded** them,
and *drew near* **approached** unto **Jesus Yah Shua** to kiss him.

48 But **Jesus Yah Shua** said unto him, **Judas Yah Hudah**,
betrayest thou the Son of *man* **humanity** with a kiss?

49 When they which were about him
saw what *would follow* **should become**,
they said unto him, *Lord Adonay,*
shall we smite with the sword?

50 And one of them
smote the servant of the *high* **arch** priest,
and *cut off* **removed** his right ear.

51 And **Jesus Yah Shua** answered and said,
Suffer **Allow** ye thus far.

And he touched his ear **lobe**, and healed him.

52 Then **Jesus Yah Shua** said unto the *chief* **arch** priests,
and *captains* **strategoi** of the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
and the elders, which were come to him,
Be ye come out,
as against a *thief* **robber**, with swords and staves?

53 When I was daily with you
in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
ye *stretched forth* **spread** no hands against me:
but this is your hour,
and the *power* **authority** of darkness.

THE THREE DENIALS OF PETROS

54 Then took they him, and led him,
and brought him into the *high* **arch** priest's house.
And **Peter Petros** followed afar off.

55 And when they had *kindled* **lighted** a fire
in the midst of the *hall* **courtyard**,
and were set down together,
Peter Petros sat down among them.

THE FIRST DENIAL OF PETROS

56 But a *certain maid* **beheld** **lass** saw him
as he sat by the *fire* **light**,
and *earnestly looked upon* **stared at** him, and said,
This *man* **one** was also with him.

LOUKAS 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

37 For I word to you,
what is scribed
must yet be completed/shalamed in me,
And he is reckoned with the torahed:
for those concerning me have a completion/shalom.

Yesha Yah 53:2
38 And they say, Adonay,
behold, here are two swords.

And he says to them, It is enough.

THE PRAYERS OF YAH SHUA ON THE MOUNT OF OLIVES

39 And he comes and goes, as *is* his custom,
to the mount, Of Olives;
and his disciples also follow him.

40 And being at the place, he says to them,
Pray that you enter not into testing.

41 And he withdraws from them about a stone cast,
and places his knees, and prays,
42 *wording*, Father,
if you will, remove this cup from me:
however not my will, but yours, become.

43 And an angel from the heavens appears to him
and invigorates him.

44 And being in an agony he prays more intently:
and his sweat becomes as great clots of blood
descending on the earth.

45 And he rises from prayer
and comes to his disciples;
and he finds them sleeping for sorrow,
46 and says to them, Why sleep you?
Rise and pray, lest you enter into testing.

THE ARREST OF YAH SHUA

47 And as he yet speaks, behold a multitude:
and he who is worded Yah Hudah,
one of the twelve, precedes them,
and approaches Yah Shua to kiss him.

48 But Yah Shua says to him, Yah Hudah,
betray you the Son of humanity with a kiss?

49 And those around him seeing what became,
say to him, Adonay, smite we with the sword?

50 And one of them
smites the servant of the archpriest,
and removes his right ear.

51 And Yah Shua answers, saying,
Allow you thus.
— and he touches his ear lobe and heals him.

52 And Yah Shua says to the archpriests
and strategoi of the priestal precinct,
and the elders who come to him,
Come you with swords and staves
as against a robber?

53 Being with you daily in the priestal precinct
you spread no hands against me:
but this is your hour and the authority of darkness.

THE THREE DENIALS OF PETROS

54 And they take him and lead him
and bring him into the house of the archpriest:
and Petros follows afar.

55 And they light a fire midst the courtyard
and sit down together;
and Petros sits down in their midst.

THE FIRST DENIAL OF PETROS

56 And a lass sees him as he sits by the light
and stares at him,
and says, This one is also with him.

LUKE 22, 23

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

57 And he denied him, saying **wording**,
Woman, I know him not.

THE SECOND DENIAL OF PETROS

58 And after a little *while* another saw him, and said,
Thou art also of them.
And Peter **Petros** said, *man human*, I am not **Not I**.

THE THIRD DENIAL OF PETROS

59 And about the space of one hour after **having passed**
another *confidently thoroughly* affirmed, saying **wording**,
Of a truth this *fellow one* also was with him:
for he is a *Galilaeen Galiliy*.

60 And Peter **Petros** said, *Man Human*,
I know not what thou sayest **wordest**.
And immediately, while he yet spake,
the *cock crew rooster* **voiced out**.

61 And the *Lord Adonay* turned,
and looked upon Peter **Petros**.
And Peter **Petros**
remembered the word of the *Lord Adonay*,
how he had said unto him,
Before **Ere** the *cock crew rooster* **voice out**,
thou shalt deny me thrice.

62 And Peter **Petros** went out, and wept bitterly.

YAH SHUA BLASPHEMED

63 And the men that held *Jesus Yah Shua* mocked him,
and *smote flogged* him.

64 And when they had *blindfolded entirely* covered him,
they struck him on the face, and asked him,
saying **wording**, Prophesy, who is it that smote thee?
65 And many other things **much more** blasphemously
spake worded they against him.

YAH SHUA IN FRONT OF THE SANHEDRIM

66 And as soon as it was **being** day,
the elders of the people and the *chief arch* priests
and the scribes *came gathered* together,
and led **brought** him into their *council sanhedrim*,
saying **wording**,

67 *Art thou the Christ? If thou be the Messiah*
Tell Say to us.

And he said unto them, *if whenever* I *tell say* to you,
ye will shall not **no way** believe trust:
68 And *if whenever* I also ask you,
ye will not shall never **no way** answer me,
nor let **release** me go.

69 *Hereafter shall* **From now on**
the Son of *man sit on* **humanity shall sit at** the right *hand*
of the *power dynamis* of *God Elohim*.

70 *Then And* said they all,
So Art thou *then* the Son of *God Elohim*?
And he said unto them, *Ye say word* that *I am I AM*.
71 And they said, What need we *any further still* witness?
for we ourselves have heard of his own mouth.

YAH SHUA IN FRONT OF PILATOS

23 And the whole multitude of them arose,
and led him unto *Pilate Pilatos*.

2 And they began to accuse him, saying **wording**,
We found this *fellow* perverting the *nation goyim*,
and forbidding to give tribute to *Caesar the Kaisar*,
saying **wording**
that he himself is *Christ a King Messiah Sovereign*.

3 And *Pilate Pilatos* asked him, saying **wording**,
Art thou the King Sovereign of the Jews Yah Hudiym?
And he answered him and said,
Thou sayest *it hast worded*.

4 *Then And* said *Pilate Pilatos* to the *chief arch* priests
and to the *people multitude*,
I find no *fault cause* in this *man human*.

5 And they were the more *fierce insistent*,
saying **wording**, He stirreth up the people,
teaching doctrinating throughout all *Jewry Yah Hudah*,

LOUKAS 22, 23

exeGeses companion BIBLE

57 And he denies him,
wording, Woman, I know him not.

THE SECOND DENIAL OF PETROS

58 And after a little, another sees him,
and says, You are also of them.

THE THIRD DENIAL OF PETROS

59 And Petros says, Human, Not I.

THE THIRD DENIAL OF PETROS

59 And one hour passes
and another thoroughly affirms, wording,
Of a truth this one also is with him:
for he is a Galiliy.

60 And Petros says, Human,
I know not what you word.

And immediately, while he yet speaks,
the rooster voices:
61 and Adonay turns and looks on Petros:
and Petros remembers the word of Adonay
— how he said to him,
Ere the rooster voices, you deny me thrice.
— and Petros goes out, and weeps bitterly.

YAH SHUA BLASPHEMED

63 And the men holding Yah Shua
mock him and flog him:
64 and they entirely cover him,
and strike him on the face, and ask him,
wording, Prophesy, who smote you?
65 And they word
much more blasphemously against him.

YAH SHUA IN FRONT OF THE SANHEDRIM

66 And being day,
the elders of the people and the archpriests
and the scribes gather together,
and bring him into their sanhedrim, wording,
If you are the Messiah, say to us.

67 And he says to them, Whenever I say to you,
you never no way trust:
68 and also, whenever I ask you,
you no way neither answer me nor release me.
69 From now on the Son of humanity
sits at the right of the dynamis of Elohim.

70 And they all say,
So are you the Son of Elohim?

And he says to them, You word that I AM.

71 And they say, Why need we still witness?
For we ourselves hear from his own mouth.

YAH SHUA IN FRONT OF PILATOS

23 And rising;
the whole multitude leads him to Pilatos.

2 And they begin accusing him, wording,
We find this *one* perverting the goyim,
and forbidding to give tribute to the Kaisar,
wording that he himself is Messiah Sovereign.

3 And Pilatos asks him, wording,
Are you the Sovereign of the Yah Hudiym?

And he answers him, saying,
You worded.

4 And Pilatos says to the archpriests
and to the multitude,
I find no cause in this human.

5 And they are the more insistent,
wording, He stirs the people,
doctrinating throughout all Yah Hudah

LUKE 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

beginning from Galilee Galiyl to this place here.
 6 When Pilate Pilatos heard of Galilee Galiyl,
 he asked whether the man human
 were be a Galilaeen Galiliy.
YAH SHUA IN FRONT OF HEROD
 7 And as soon as he knew
 that he belonged unto is from Herod's jurisdiction authority,
 he sent resent him to Herod,
 who himself also was at Jerusalem Yeru Shalem
 at that time in those days.
 8 And when Herod saw Jesus Yah Shua,
 he was exceeding glad extremely cheerful:
 for he was desirous had willed to see him
 of for a long season,
 because he had heard many things of much about him;
 and he hoped to have seen some miracle sign
 done become by him.
 9 Then And he questioned with asked him
 in many enough words;
 but he answered him nothing naught.
 10 And the chief arch priests and scribes stood
 and vehemently vigorously accused him.
 11 And Herod with his men of war warriors
 set belittled him at nought, and mocked him,
 and arrayed him in a gorgeous robe radiant apparel,
 and sent resent him again to Pilate Pilatos.
 12 And the same day Pilate Pilatos and Herod
 were made became friends together with one another:
 for before previously
 they were at enmity between themselves.
PILATOS WILLS TO RELEASE YAH SHUA
 13 And Pilate Pilatos,
 when he had called together the chief arch priests
 and the rulers archs and the people,
 14 Said unto them,
 Ye have brought offered this man human unto me,
 as one that perverteth turneth away the people:
 and, behold, I,
 having examined him before you in your sight,
 have found no fault cause in this man human
 touching of those things whereof ye accuse him:
 15 No, nor yet even Herod:
 for I sent resent you to him; and, lo behold,
 nothing naught worthy of death
 is done unto transacted by him.
 16 So I will therefore chastise shall discipline him,
 and release him.
 17 (For of necessity
 he must release one unto them at the feast celebration.)
 18 And they the whole multitude
 cried out all at once screamed simultaneously,
 saying wording, Away with Take this man one,
 and release unto us Barabbas Bar Abbas:
 19 (Who for a certain sedition riot
 made having become in the city, and for murder,
 was cast into prison the guardhouse.)
 20 Pilate therefore So Pilatos,
 willing having willed to release Jesus Yah Shua,
 spake again to them.
 21 But they cried shouted, saying wording,
 Crucify him, crucify him. Stake! Stake him!
 22 And he said unto them the third time,
 Why Indeed, what evil hath he done?
 I have found no cause of death in him:
 So I will therefore chastise shall discipline him
 and let release him go.
 23 And they were instant imposed with loud mega voices,
 requiring asking that he might be crucified staked.
 And the voices of them
 and of the chief arch priests prevailed overpowered.
 24 And Pilate gave sentence Pilatos adjudged
 that it should be as they required.
 25 And he released unto them
 him that for sedition riot and murder
 was cast into prison the guardhouse,
 whom they had desired asked;
 but he delivered Jesus betrayed Yah Shua
 to their will as they willed.

LOUKAS 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

beginning from Galiyl to here.
 6 When Pilatos hears of Galiyl,
 he asks whether the human be a Galiliy.
YAH SHUA IN FRONT OF HEROD
 7 And as soon as he knows
 that he is from the authority of Herod,
 he resends him to Herod,
 who himself is also at Yeru Shalem in those days.
 8 And Herod sees Yah Shua,
 and is extremely cheerful:
 for he had willed to see him for long,
 because he heard much about him;
 and he hoped to see some sign become by him.
 9 And he asks him enough words;
 but he answers him naught:
 10 and the archpriests and scribes stand
 and vigorously accuse him:
 11 and Herod with his warriors
 belittle him and mock him
 and array him in radiant apparel
 and resend him to Pilatos.
 12 And the same day Pilatos and Herod
 become friends with one another:
 for previously
 they were at enmity between themselves.
PILATOS WILLS TO RELEASE YAH SHUA
 13 And Pilatos calls together
 the archpriests and the archs and the people,
 14 and says to them,
 You offer this human to me
 as one who turns the people:
 and behold, I, examining him in your sight,
 find no cause in this human
 of those whereof you accuse him:
 15 nor even Herod:
 for I resent you to him; and behold,
 he transacted naught worthy of death:
 16 so I discipline him and release.
 17 — for of necessity
 he releases one to them at the celebration.
 18 And the whole multitude screams simultaneously,
 wording, Take this one,
 and release to us Bar Abbas:
 19 — who for a riot being in the city and for murder,
 was cast in the guardhouse.
 20 So Pilatos, wills to release Yah Shua,
 and speaks to them again:
 21 but they shout, wording, Stake! Stake him!
 22 And he says to them the third time,
 Indeed, what evil did he?
 I find no cause of death in him:
 23 so I discipline him and release him.
 And they impose with mega voices,
 asking to stake him:
 and the voices of them
 and of the archpriests overpowered.
 24 And Pilatos adjudges that it be as they require:
 25 and he releases to them
 him who for riot and murder
 was cast into the guardhouse,
 whom they had asked;
 but he betrays Yah Shua as they willed.

LUKE 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SHIMON BEARS THE STAKE OF YAH SHUA

26 And as they led him away,
they **laid took** hold upon *one* **Simon Shimon**, a Cyrenian,
coming out of the **country field**,
and on him they **laid put** the **cross stake**,
that he might bear it after **Jesus Yah Shua**.

27 And there followed him
a **great company vast multitude** of people,
and of women,
which also **bewailed chopped** and lamented him.

28 But **Jesus Yah Shua** turning unto them said,
Daughters of **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**, weep not for me,
but however weep for yourselves, and for your children.

29 For, behold, the days are coming,
in the which they shall say, **Blessed are the barren sterile**,
and the wombs that never **bare birthed**,
and the **paps breasts** which never **gave suck nipped**.

30 Then shall they begin to say **word** to the mountains,
Fall on us;
and to the hills, **Cover Vail** us.
For if they do these **things**
in a **green tree watered staff**,
what shall **be done become** in the dry?

32 And there were also two other,
malefactors evilworkers,
led with him to be **put to death taken out**.

YAH SHUA STAKED

33 And when they were come to the place,
which is called **Calvary Cranium**,
there they **crucified staked** him,
and the **malefactors evilworkers**,
one **on indeed at** the right **hand**,
and the other **on at** the left.

34 Then **said Jesus worded Yah Shua**,
Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do.
And they **parted divided** his **raiment garment**,
and cast lots.

35 And the people stood **beholding observing**.
And the **rulers archs** also with them **derided him sneered**,
saying wording, He saved others; let him save himself,
if he be **Christ the Messiah**,
the **chosen selected** of **God Elohim**.

36 And the **soldiers warriors** also mocked him,
coming to him, and offering him vinegar,
And **saying wording**,
If thou be the **King Sovereign** of the **Jews Yah Hudiym**,
save thyself.

38 And a **superscription an epigraph**
also was **written scribed** over him
in **letters scribings** of **Greek Hellenic**,
and **Latin Romaic**, and **Hebrew Hebraic**,
THIS IS THE KING SOVEREIGN
OF THE JEWS YAH HUDIYM.

39 And one of the **malefactors evilworkers**
which were hanged
railed on blasphemed him, **saying wording**,
If thou be **Christ the Messiah**, save thyself and us.

40 But the other answering rebuked him,
saying wording, Dost not thou **fear God awe Elohim**,
seeing thou art in the same **condemnation judgment**?

41 And we indeed justly;
for we **receive the due reward take that worthy**
of our **deeds transactions**:
but this **man one**
hath **done nothing amiss transacted naught inordinate**.

42 And he **said worded** unto **Jesus Yah Shua**,
Lord Adonay, remember me
when **ever** thou comest into thy **kingdom sovereigndom**.

43 And **Jesus Yah Shua** said unto him,
Verily I say Amen! I word unto thee,
To day shalt thou be with me in paradise.

YAH SHUA EXPIRES

44 And it was about the sixth hour,
and there was **became** a darkness over all the earth
until the ninth hour.

45 And the sun was darkened,
and the veil of the **temple nave**
was **rent split** in the midst.

LOUKAS 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SHIMON BEARS THE STAKE OF YAH SHUA

26 And as they lead him away,
they take hold on Shimon, a Cyrenian,
coming from the field;
and they put the stake on him
to bear it after Yah Shua.

27 And a vast multitude of people follow him,
and also of women who chop and lament him.

28 And Yah Shua turns to them and says,
Daughters of Yeru Shalem, weep not for me:
however weep for yourselves and for your children.

29 For, behold, the days come in which they say,
Blessed — the sterile
and the wombs that never birthed
and the breasts that never nipped.

30 Then they begin to word to the mountains,
Fall on us;
and to the hills, Veil us.
For if they do these in a watered staff,
what becomes in the dry?

32 And also two others — evilworkers
are led to be taken out with him.

YAH SHUA STAKED

33 And they come to the place called Cranium,
and there they stake him and the evilworkers,
one indeed at the right and one at the left.

34 And Yah Shua words, Father, forgive them;
for they know not what they do.
— and they divide his garment and cast lots.

35 and the people stand observing.
and also the archs with them sneer, wording,
He saved others; let him save himself,
if he be the Messiah, the select of Elohim.

36 And the warriors also mock him,
coming to him, and offering him vinegar,
and wording,
If you are the Sovereign of the Yah Hudiym,
save yourself.

38 And also an epigraph is scribed over him
in scribings of Hellenic and Romaic and Hebraic,
THIS IS THE SOVEREIGN
OF THE YAH HUDIYM.

39 And one of the evilworkers who is staked
blasphemes him, wording,
If you are the Messiah, save yourself and us.

40 But the other answers rebuking him, wording,
Awe you not Elohim,
seeing you are in the same judgment?

41 And we indeed justly;
for we take that worthy of our transactions:
but this **one** transacted naught inordinate.

42 And he words to Yah Shua,
Adonay, remember me
whenever you come into your sovereigndom.

43 And Yah Shua says to him,
Amen! I word to you,
Today you are with me in paradise.

YAH SHUA EXPIRES

44 And being about the sixth hour,
a darkness becomes over all the earth
until the ninth hour:
and the sun darkens,
and the veil of the nave splits in the middle.

LUKE 23, 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

46 And when *Jesus Yah Shua*
had *cried voiced* with a *loud mega* voice, he said,
Father, into thy hands I *commend set forth* my spirit:
and having said thus, he *gave up the ghost expired*.
47 Now when the centurion
saw what *was done had become*,
he glorified *God Elohim*, saying *wording*,
Certainly *Indeed* this was a *righteous man just human*.
48 And all the *people multitude*
that *came convened* together to that *sight observation*,
beholding the things observing these
which *were done had become*,
smote struck their *breasts chests*, and returned.
49 And all his acquaintance,
and the women that followed him from *Galilee Galiyl*,
stood afar off, *beholding seeing* these *things*.

YAH SHUA ENTOMBED

50 And, behold, there was a man named *Joseph Yoseph*,
being a counsellor; *and he was* a good man, and a just:
51 (The same had not *consented agreed*
to the counsel and *deed acts* of them;)
he was of Arimathaea Rahmah,
a city of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*:
who also himself *waited for awaited*
the *kingdom sovereignty* of *God Elohim*.
52 This *man one* went unto *Pilate Pilatos*,
and *begged asked* the body of *Jesus Yah Shua*.
53 And he took it down, and wrapped it in linen,
and *laid placed* it in a *sepulchre tomb*
that was *hewn in stone quarried from rock*,
wherein *never man before was no one yet had* laid.
54 And that day was the preparation,
and the *sabbath drew on shabbath dawned*.
55 And the women also,
which came with him from *Galilee Galiyl*,
followed after, and *beheld saw* the *sepulchre tomb*,
and how his body was *laid placed*.
56 And they returned,
and prepared *spices aromatics* and *ointments myrrh*;
and *rested indeed quieted on* the *sabbath day shabbath*
according to the *commandment misvah*.

THE RESURRECTION OF YAH SHUA

24 Now upon the first *day of the week shabbaths*,
very early deep in the morning,
they came unto the *sepulchre tomb*,
bringing the *spices aromatics* which they had prepared,
and *certain others some* with them.
2 And they found the stone
rolled away from the *sepulchre tomb*.
3 And they entered *in*,
and found not the body
of the *Lord Jesus Adonay Yah Shua*.
4 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
as they were *much thoroughly* perplexed thereabout,
behold, two men stood by them
in *shining garments flashing apparel*:
5 And *as they were afraid being awestricken*
and *bowed down reclined* their faces to the earth,
they said unto them,
Why seek ye the living *among with* the dead?
6 He is not here, but is risen:
remember how he spake unto you
when he was yet in *Galilee Galiyl*,
7 *Saying Wording*,
The Son of *man humanity* must be *delivered betrayed*
into the hands of *sinful men humanity*,
and be *crucified staked*, and the third day rise *again*.
8 And they remembered his *words rhema*,
9 And returned from the *sepulchre tomb*,
and *told evangelized* all these *things* unto the eleven,
and to all the rest.
10 It was *Mary Miryam the* Magdalene
and *Joanna Yah Hanna*,
and *Mary Miryam the mother of James Yaaqovos*,
and *other women the rest* that were with them,
which *told worded* these *things* unto the apostles.
11 And their *words rhema*
seemed to them manifested in their sight as *idle tales gab*,
and they *believed distrusted* them *not*.

LOUKAS 23, 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

46 And Yah Shua voices with a mega voice, saying,
Father, into your hands I set forth my spirit:
— and saying thus, he expires.
47 Now the centurion seeing what becomes,
glorifies Elohim, wording,
Indeed this is a just human.
48 And all the multitude
convening together to that observation,
observing these that become,
strike their chests, and return:
49 and all his acquaintances
and the women who followed him from Galiyl
stand afar off, seeing these.

YAH SHUA ENTOMBED

50 And behold, a man named Yoseph,
being a counsellor; a good man and just:
51 — who agreed not to their counsel and acts
— of Rahmah, a city of the Yah Hudiym:
who himself also
awaited the sovereignty of Elohim:
52 this one goes to Pilatos,
and asks the body of Yah Shua:
53 and he takes it down and wraps it in linen
and places it in a tomb quarried from rock
— wherein no one had yet laid:
54 and that day is the preparation
and the shabbath dawns.
55 And also the women
who came with him from Galiyl,
follow after, and see the tomb,
and how his body is placed:
56 and they return and prepare aromatics and myrrh;
and indeed quiet on the shabbath
according to the misvah.

THE RESURRECTION OF YAH SHUA

24 And on the first of the shabbaths,
deep in the morning, they come to the tomb,
bringing the aromatics they prepared,
and some with them:
2 and they find the stone rolled away from the tomb:
3 and they enter
and find not the body of Adonay Yah Shua.
4 And so be it,
they are thoroughly perplexed about this,
that behold,
two men in flashing apparel stand by them.
5 — and being awestricken,
they recline their faces to the earth.
6 And they say to them,
Why seek you the living with the dead?
He is not here, but is risen:
remember how he spoke to you
when he was still in Galiyl,
7 wording, The Son of humanity must be betrayed
into the hands of sinful humanity,
and be staked, and the third day rise.
8 And they remember his rhema;
9 and return from the tomb
and evangelize all these to the eleven
and to all the rest:
10 it is Miryam the Magdalene and Yah Hanna
and Miryam of Yaaqovos and the rest with them
word these to the apostles:
11 and their rhema manifests in their sight as gab;
and they distrust them.

LUKE 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 Then **But** arose Peter **Petros**,
and ran unto the *sepulchre tomb*;
and stooping down,
he beheld **saw** the linen clothes laid by themselves **alone**,
and departed, *wondering marvelling* in himself
at that which was *come to pass* **had become**.

ON THE WAY TO EMMAUS

13 And, behold, two of them went that same day
to a village called **named** Emmaus,
which was from *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
about *threescore furlongs* **sixty stadia**.
14 And they *talked homologized* together
of **about** all these *things* which had happened.
15 And **so be** it *came to pass*, that,
while they *communed homologized*
together with one another and *reasoned disputed*,
Jesus Yah Shua himself *drew near approached*,
and went with them.
16 But their eyes were *holden overpowered*
that they should not know him.
17 And he said unto them,
What manner of *communications words* are these
that ye *have one to cast one against* another,
as ye walk, and are *sad sullen*?
18 And the one of them, whose name was Cleopas,
answering said unto him,
Art Hast thou only
a stranger settled in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and hast not known *the things those*
which *are come to pass* **have become** there
in these days?
19 And he said unto them, What *things*?
And they said unto him,
Concerning *Jesus of Nazareth Yah Shua the Nazarene*,
which, was **being a man** — a prophet
mighty able in *deed work* and word
before God in front of Elohim and all the people:
20 And how the *chief arch* priests and our *arch* rulers
delivered him to be *condemned judged* to death,
and have *crucified staked* him.
21 But we *trusted hoped* that it had been he
which *should have redeemed Israel*
was about to redeem Yisra El:
and *beside all this but yet indeed*, to day is the third day
since these *things were done* **have become**.
22 *Yea, and certain* **Yet some** women also
of our company *made astounded us astonished*,
which were *early at dawn* at the *sepulchre tomb*;
23 And when they found not his body, they came,
saying wording,
that they had also seen a vision of angels,
which *said worded* that he was alive.
24 And *certain some* of them which were with us
went to the *sepulchre tomb*,
and found it even so as the women had said:
but him they saw not.
25 Then **And** he said unto them,
O fools mindless, and slow of heart
to *believe trust* all that the prophets have spoken:
26 **Indeed**,
Ought needed not *Christ the Messiah*
to have suffered these *things*,
and to enter into his glory?
27 And beginning at *Moses Mosheh* and all the prophets,
he *expounded translated* unto them
in all the scriptures *the things of those* concerning himself.
28 And they *drew nigh approached* unto the village,
whither they went:
and he *made as though had preplanned*
he would have gone to go further.
29 **But And** they constrained him, *saying wording*,
Abide with us: for it is toward evening,
and the day *is far spent* **reclineth**.
And he *went in entered* to *tarry abide* with them.

THE INTERRUPTED EUCHARIST

30 And **so be** it *came to pass*,
as he *sat at meat reclined* with them,
he took bread, and *blessed eulogized* it,

LOUKAS 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 But Petros rises and runs to the tomb;
and stooping down
he sees the linen clothes laid alone;
and departs,
marvelling in himself at what had become.

ON THE WAY TO EMMAUS

13 And behold, that same day,
two of them go to a village named Emmaus
— about sixty stadia from Yeru Shalem:
14 and they homologize together
about all these that happened.
15 And so be it,
as they homologize with one another and dispute,
Yah Shua himself approaches and goes with them:
16 but their eyes are overpowered
so that they know him not.
17 And he says to them,
What manner of words are these
that you cast one against another as you walk
— and are sullen?
18 And one, whose name is Cleopas, answers him,
saying, Have you only settled in Yeru Shalem,
and know not those that became there in these days?
19 And he says to them, What?
And they say to him,
Concerning Yah Shua the Nazarene,
who, being a man
— a prophet able in work and word
in front of Elohim and all the people:
20 and how the archpriests and our arch rulers
delivered him to judgment of death,
and staked him:
21 but we had hoped
it was he who is about to redeem Yisra El:
but yet indeed,
today is the third day since these became:
22 yet some women of our company astounded us
being at the tomb at dawn;
23 and they found not his body; and they come,
wording that they also saw a vision of angels,
who worded that he is alive:
24 and some of them with us went to the tomb
and found it even as the women said:
but they saw him not.
25 And he says to them,
O mindless and slow of heart
to trust all the prophets have spoken:
26 Indeed,
needed not the Messiah to suffer these
and to enter his glory?
27 — and beginning at Mosheh and all the prophets,
he translates to them
of all the scriptures of those concerning himself.
28 And they approach the village where they go:
and he preplans to go further:
29 and they constrain him, wording,
Abide with us: for it is toward evening,
and the day reclines.
— and he enters to abide with them.

THE INTERRUPTED EUCHARIST

30 And so be it, as he reclines with them,
he takes bread and eulogizes

LUKE 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and brake, and gave to them.
31 And their eyes were opened, and they knew him;
and he *vanished out of their sight* **became invisible**.
32 And they said one to another,
Did not **indeed** our heart burn within us,
while he *talked* **spoke** with us by the way,
and while he opened to us the scriptures?
33 And they rose *up* the same hour,
and returned to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and found the eleven gathered together,
and them that were with them,
34 *Saying* **Wording**, the Lord **Adonay** is risen indeed,
and hath appeared to *Simon* **Shimon**.
35 And they *told* **declared**
what things were done **of those in the way**,
and how he was known of them in breaking of bread.
YAH SHUA STANDS MIDST THE DISCIPLES
36 And as they thus spake,
Jesus **Yah Shua** himself stood in the midst of them,
and *saith* **wordeth** unto them,
Peace **Shalom** be unto you.
37 But they *were* **became** terrified and *affrighted* **awestricken**,
and *supposed* **thought** that they had *seen* **observed** a spirit.
38 And he said unto them, Why are ye troubled?
and why do thoughts *arise* **ascend** in your hearts?
39 *Behold* **See** my hands and my feet, *that it is I myself* **I AM**:
handle **touch** me, and see;
for a spirit hath not flesh and bones,
exactly as ye see **observe** me have.
40 And when he had thus *spoken* **said**,
he shewed them his hands and his feet.
41 And while they yet *believed* **not distrusted**
for joy **cheer**,
and *wondered* **marvelled**,
he said unto them, Have ye here any *meat* **food**?
42 And they gave him a *piece* **portion** of a broiled fish,
and of an honeycomb.
43 And he took it, and did eat *before them* **in their sight**.
44 And he said unto them,
These are the words which I spake unto you,
while I was yet with you,
that all *things* must be fulfilled/**shalamed**,
which were *written* **scribed**
in the law **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.
45 Then opened he their *understanding* **mind**,
that they might *understand* **comprehend** the scriptures,
46 And said unto them, Thus it is *written* **scribed**,
and thus it
behoved **Christ** **was necessary for the Messiah** to suffer,
and to rise from the dead the third day:
47 And that repentance and *remission* **forgiveness** of sins
should be preached in his name among all *nations* **goyim**,
beginning at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
48 And ye are witnesses of these *things*.
49 And, behold,
I *send* **apostolize**
the *promise* **pre—evangelism** of my Father upon you:
but *tarry* **sit** ye in the city of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
until ye be endued with *power* **dynamis** from on high.
YAH SHUA BORNE INTO THE HEAVENS
50 And he led them out as far as to *Bethany* **Beth Ania**,
and he *lifted up* his hands, and *blessed* **eulogized** them.
51 And **so be** it came to pass,
while he *blessed* **in his eulogizing** them,
he was *parted* **passed** from them,
and *carried up* **was borne** into heaven.
52 And they worshipped him,
and returned to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
with *great joy* **mega cheer**:
53 And were continually in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
praising **halaling** and *blessing* **God eulogizing Elohim**.
Amen.

LOUKAS 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and breaks and gives to them.
31 And their eyes open and they know him
— and he becomes invisible.
32 And they say one to another,
Burned not indeed our heart within us,
as he spoke with us by the way
and as he opened the scriptures to us?
33 And the same hour
they rise and return to Yeru Shalem;
and find the eleven gathered together
— and those with them,
34 wording, Adonay is risen indeed,
and appeared to Shimon.
35 And they declare of those in the way
and how he was known by them in breaking of bread.
YAH SHUA STANDS MIDST THE DISCIPLES
36 And as they thus speak,
Yah Shua himself stands in their midst;
and words to them, Shalom to you.
37 But being terrified and awestricken,
they think they observe a spirit.
38 And he says to them, Why are you troubled?
And why ascend thoughts in your hearts?
39 See my hands and my feet, I AM!
Touch me and see;
for a spirit has not flesh and bones,
exactly as you observe me have.
40 And he says thus,
and shows them his hands and his feet:
41 and while they yet distrust for cheer, and marvel,
he says to them, Have you any food here?
42 And they give him a portion of a broiled fish
and of a honeycomb:
43 and he takes it, and eats in their sight.
44 And he says to them,
These are the words I spoke to you
while yet with you,
that all must fulfill/**shalam**
which are scribed in the torah of Mosheh
and in the prophets and in the psalms concerning me.
45 Then he opens their mind
to comprehend the scriptures:
46 and he says to them, Thus it is scribed,
and thus it is necessary for the Messiah to suffer,
and to rise from the dead the third day:
47 and that repentance and forgiveness of sins
be preached in his name among all goyim
beginning at Yeru Shalem.
— and you are witnesses of these.
49 And behold,
I apostolize the pre—evangelism of my Father
upon you:
but you, sit in the city of Yeru Shalem,
until you be endued with dynamis from on high.
YAH SHUA BORNE INTO THE HEAVENS
50 And he leads them out as far as Beth Ania;
and he lifts his hands and eulogizes them.
51 And so be it, in his eulogizing them,
he passes from them and is borne into the heavens:
52 and they worship him,
and return to Yeru Shalem with mega cheer:
53 and are continually in the priestal precinct,
halaling and eulogizing Elohim.
Amen.

ACTS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

INTRODUCTION

1 **Indeed**, The former treatise **first word** have I made,
O *Theophilus* **Theo Philos**,
of **concerning** all that *Jesus Yah Shua*
began both to do and *teach* **doctrinate**,
2 Until the day in which he was taken up,
after that he through the Holy *Ghost Spirit*
had given *commandments* **misvahed** unto the apostles
whom he had *chosen* **selected**:
3 To whom also he *shewed* **presented** himself alive
after his *passion* **suffering** by many *infallible* proofs,
being seen of them **through** forty days,
and *speaking of the things* **wording about those**
pertaining to of
the kingdom **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**:
4 And, being *assembled* **thronged** together with them,
commanded **evangelized** them
that they should not
depart **separate** from *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
but wait for **await**
the *promise* **pre—evangelism** of the Father,
which, saith he, ye have heard of me.
5 For *John truly* **Yahn indeed** baptized *with in* water;
but ye shall be baptized *with in* the Holy *Ghost Spirit*
not many days *hence* **after this**.
6 When **So indeed** they *therefore* were come together,
and they asked of him, *saying* **wording**, *Lord Adonay*,
wilt shalt thou at this time restore *again*
the kingdom **sovereigndom** to *Israel Yisra El*?
7 And he said unto them,
It is not for you to know the times or the seasons,
which the Father hath put in his own *power* **authority**.
8 But ye shall *receive power* **take dynamis**,
after that the Holy *Ghost Spirit* is come upon you:
and ye shall be witnesses unto me
both in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and in all *Judaea Yah Hudah*,
and in *Samaria Shomeron*,
and unto the *uttermost part* **finality** of the earth.

THE ASCENSION OF YAH SHUA

9 And when he had *spoken* **said** these *things*,
while they *beheld* **looked**, he was *taken up* **lifted**;
and a cloud *received* **took** him out of their *sight* **eyes**.

PROPHECY OF THE PAROUSIA

10 And *while as* they *looked stedfastly* **stared**
toward into heaven as he went up,
behold, two men stood by them in white apparel;
11 Which also said, Ye men of *Galilee — Galiliym*,
why stand ye *gazing* **looking up** into heaven?
this same *Jesus Yah Shua*,
which is taken up from you into heaven,
shall **so thus** come in like manner
as ye have *seen* **observed** him go into heaven.

THE UPPER LOFT

12 Then returned they unto *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
from the mount called *Olivet Olive Orchard*,
which is from *Jerusalem near Yeru Shalem*
a *sabbath day's* **shabbath** journey.
13 And when they *were come in* **entered**,
they *went up* **ascended** into an upper *room* **loft**,
where abode both *Peter Petros*, and *James Yaaqovos*,
and *John Yahn* and *Andrew Andreas*,
Philip Philippos, and *Thomas Taom*,
Bartholomew Bar Talmay, and *Matthew Matthaios*,
and *James Yaaqovos the son of Alphaeus Heleph*,
and *Simon Zelotes Shimon the Zealot*,
and *Judas Yah Hudah the brother of James Yaaqovos*.
14 These all continued *with one accord* **in unanimity**
in prayer and *supplication* **petition**, with the women,
and *Mary Miryam* the mother of *Jesus Yah Shua*,
and with his brethren.

MATTHIAS REPLACES YAH HUDAH

15 And in those days
Peter stood up **Petros rose** in the midst of the disciples,
and said,
(the *number* **multitude** of names *together of them*
were about an hundred and twenty,)
16 Men and brethren,

ACTS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

INTRODUCTION

1 **Indeed**, I do this first word, O *Theo Philos*,
concerning all *Yah Shua* began
both to do and *doctrinate*
until the day he was taken
2 — after he, through the Holy Spirit,
misvahed to the apostles whom he selected:
3 to whom also he presented himself alive
after his suffering by many proofs;
being seen by them through forty days,
and wording about those
of the sovereigndom of *Elohim*:
4 and being thronged together with them,
evangelized them to not separate from *Yeru Shalem*,
but to await the pre—evangelism of the Father,
which, says he, you heard of me.
5 For *Yahn* indeed baptized in water;
but you, baptized in Holy Spirit
not many days after this.
6 So indeed they come together,
and ask him, wording, *Adonay*,
restore you the sovereigndom to *Yisra El* at this time?
7 And he says to them,
It is not yours to know the times or the seasons
the Father put in his own authority:
8 but you take dynamis,
at the coming of the Holy Spirit upon you;
and you become my witnesses
— both in *Yeru Shalem* and in all *Yah Hudah*
and in *Shomeron* and to the finality of the earth.

THE ASCENSION OF YAH SHUA

9 And having said these, and as they look,
he is lifted; and a cloud takes him from their eyes.

PROPHECY OF THE PAROUSIA

10 And as they stare into the heavens as he goes,
behold, two men stand by them in white apparel;
11 who also say, You men — *Galiliym*,
why stand you looking into the heavens?
This same *Yah Shua*,
taken from you into the heavens
comes thus in like manner
as you observed him go into the heavens.

THE UPPER LOFT

12 Then they return to *Yeru Shalem*
from the mount called *Olive Orchard*,
near *Yeru Shalem — a shabbath* journey.
13 And they enter and ascend to an upper loft,
where both *Petros* and *Yaaqovos*
and *Yahn* and *Andreas*
Philippos and *Taom*
Bar Talmay and *Matthaios*
and *Yaaqovos of Heleph* and *Shimon the Zealot*
and *Yah Hudah of Yaaqovos* abide.
14 These all continue in unanimity
in prayer and petition with the women
and *Mary Miryam* the mother of *Yah Shua*
and with his brothers.

MATTHIAS REPLACES YAH HUDAH

15 And in those days
Petros rises midst the disciples, and says,
— the multitude of their names
is about a hundred and twenty,
16 Men and brothers,

ACTS 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

this scripture must *needs* have been **be** fulfilled/shalamed,
which the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**
by **through** the mouth of David
spake before **foretold** concerning *Judas* about **Yah Hudah**,
which was **being** guide
to them that took *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.
17 For he was *numbered* **reckoned** with us,
and had *obtained part* **was allotted his lot** of this ministry.
18 Now **So indeed**
this man purchased **one acquired** a *field* **parcel**
with **from** the reward of iniquity;
and *falling* **being** headlong,
he burst *asunder* **cracked open** in the **midst**,
and all his *bowels* **gushed out spleen poured**.
Zechar Yah 11:12
19 And **so be** it was known
unto all *the dwellers* **who settled** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
insomuch as **so** that field is called
in their *proper tongue* **own dialect**,
Aceldama, **Heleq Dam**,
that is to say, The *field* **parcel** of blood.
20 For it is *written* **scribed** in the *book* **scroll** of Psalms,
Let his *habitation* **be hut become** desolate,
and let no *man dwell* **one settle** therein:
and his *bishoprick* **episcopate** let another take.
Psalm 69:25
21 *Wherefore* **So**
of these men which have *companied* **come** with us
all the time that *the Lord Jesus* **Adonay Yah Shua**
went in **entered** and *out* **exited** among us,
22 Beginning from the baptism of *John* **Yahn**,
unto that same day that he was taken *up* from us,
must one *be ordained to be* **become** a witness with us
of his resurrection.
23 And they *appointed* **set** two,
Joseph **Yoseph** called *Barsabas* **Bar Sabah**,
who was *surnamed* **called** Justus,
and Matthias.
24 And they prayed, and said, Thou, *Lord* **Adonay**,
which knowest the hearts of all men **all heart—knowing**,
shew whether of these two
the one thou hast *chosen* **selected**,
25 That he may take *part* **his lot**
of this ministry and apostleship,
from which *Judas* **Yah Hudah** by *transgression* **fell transgressed**,
that he might go to his own place.
26 And they gave forth their lots;
and the lot fell upon Matthias;
and he was *numbered* **enrolled** with the eleven apostles.
THE DAY OF PENTECOST
2 And *when in* the day of Pentecost
was fully come **being fulfilled/shalamed**,
they were all *with one accord* **in unanimity** in one place.
2 And **so be it**, suddenly
there came a sound — **an echo** from heaven
as of a *rushing mighty wind* **bearing forceful puff**,
and it filled **full** all the house where they were sitting.
3 And there appeared unto them
cloven **divided** tongues like as of fire,
and it sat upon each *one* of them.
4 And they were all filled **full** with the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
and began to speak with other tongues,
exactly as the Spirit gave them utterance.
5 And there were
dwelling **settling** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
Jews **Yah Hudiym**, *devout* **well—received** men,
out of every *nation* **goyim** under heaven.
6 Now *when* **And so be it**, this was *noised abroad* **voice** ,
the multitude came together,
and were *confounded* **confused**,
because that every *man* **each**
heard them speak in his own *language* **dialect**.
7 And they were all *amazed* **astounded** and marvelled,
saying **wording** one to another, Behold,
are not all these which speak *Galilaeans* **Galiliym**?
8 And how hear we
every *man* **each** in our own *tongue* **dialect**,
wherein we were *born* **birthed**?

ACTS 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

this scripture must fulfill/shalam,
that the Holy Spirit through the mouth of David
foretold about Yah Hudah,
being guide to them who took Yah Shua:
because he was reckoned with us,
and was allotted his lot of this ministry.
17 So indeed,
18 this one acquired a parcel from the reward of iniquity;
and being headlong, he cracked open in the middle
and all his spleen poured forth.
Zechar Yah 11:12
19 And so be it known to all who settle at Yeru Shalem;
so that field, in their own dialect,
is called, Heleq Dam,
that is to say, The Parcel of Blood.
20 For it is scribed in the scroll of Psalms,
His hut becomes desolate,
and no one settles therein:
and another takes his episcopate.
Psalm 69:25
21 So, of these men who came with us
all the time Adonay Yah Shua
entered and exited among us,
beginning from the baptism of Yahn,
to that same day he taken from us,
one must, with us,
become a witness of his resurrection.
22 And they set two,
Yoseph called Bar Sabah who is called Justus,
and Matthias:
23 and they pray, and say, You, Adonay,
all heart—knowing,
of these two, show the one you select
to take his lot of this ministry and apostleship
from which Yah Hudah transgressed
to go to his own place.
24 And they give their lots;
and the lot falls upon Matthias;
and he is enrolled with the eleven apostles.
THE DAY OF PENTECOST
2 And the day of Pentecost being fulfilled/shalamed,
they are all in unanimity in one place.
2 And so be it,
suddenly — an echo from the heavens,
as of a bearing forceful puff:
and it fills full the whole house where they sit:
and divided tongues as of fire appear to them,
and sit on each of them:
3 and they all fill full with the Holy Spirit
and begin to speak with other tongues
— exactly as the Spirit gives them utterance.
4 And settling at Yeru Shalem,
are Yah Hudiym — well—received men
from every goyim under the heavens:
5 and so be it, this voice;
6 and the multitude comes together and is confused
because each hears them speak in his own dialect.
7 And they all astound and marvel,
wording one to another, Behold,
are not all these who speak Galiliym?
8 And how hear we each in our own dialect
wherein we are birthed?

ACTS 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 Parthians, and *Medes Maday*, and *Elamites Elamiym*,
and *the dwellers they who settled* in Mesopotamia,
and in *Judaea Yah Hudah*, and Cappadocia,
in Pontus, and Asia,
10 Phrygia, and Pamphylia, in *Egypt Misrayim*,
and in the parts of Libya about Cyrene,
and *strangers of Rome the Romans residing there*,
Jews Yah Hudiym and proselytes,
11 Cretes and *Arabians Arabs*,
we do hear them speak in our tongues
the *wonderful works magnificence* of God **Elohim**.
12 And they were all *amazed astounded*,
and were in *doubt thoroughly perplexed*,
saying **wording** one to another,
What *meaneth willeth* this to be?
13 Others *mocking said jeering worded*,
These men are full of new sweet wine.

THE FIRST MESSAGE OF PETROS

14 But *Peter Petros*, standing up with the eleven,
lifted up his voice, and **uttered** unto them,
Ye men of Judaea Men — Yah Hudiym,
and all ye that *dwell settle* at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
be this known unto you,
and hearken to my *words rhema*:

THE PROPHECY OF YAH EL FULFILLED/SHALAMED

15 For these are not *drunken intoxicated*,
as ye *suppose perceive*,
seeing indeed it is but the third hour of the day.
16 But this is that which was *spoken said*
by **through** the prophet *Joel Yah El*;
17 And it shall *come to pass become* in the *last final* days,
saith God wordeth Elohim,
I *will shall* pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh:
and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy,
and your *young men youths* shall see visions,
and your *old men elders* shall dream dreams:
18 And **yet indeed**
on my servants and on my *hand maidens maids*
I *will shall* pour out in those days of my Spirit;
and they shall prophesy:
19 And I *will shew shall give*
wonders omens in the heaven above,
and signs in the earth *beneath below*;
blood, and fire, and vapour of smoke:
20 The sun shall be turned into darkness,
and the moon into blood,
before ere the *great mega* and *notable epiphanous*
day of the *Lord Yah Veh* come:
21 And **so be** it shall *come to pass*,
that **everyone** — whosoever
shall call on the name of the *Lord Yah Veh*
shall be saved.

Yah El 2:31, 32

YAH SHUA IS ADONAY AND MESSIAH

22 *Ye men of Israel Men — Yisra Eliym*, hear these words;
Jesus of Nazareth Yah Shua the Nazarene,
a man *approved of God Elohim, shown* among you
by *miracles dynamis* and *wonders omens* and signs,
which *God Elohim* did by **through** him
in the midst of you,
exactly as ye yourselves also know:
23 Him, being *delivered given over*
by the *determinate decreed* counsel
and *foreknowledge prognosis* of *God Elohim*,
ye have taken,
and by *wicked through untorahed* hands
have *crucified staked* and *slain taken out*:
24 Whom *God Elohim* hath raised up,
having loosed the *pains travail* of death:
because as it was not possible
that he should be *holden of overpowered* by it.

THE PROPHECY OF DAVID FULFILLED/SHALAMED

25 For David *speakeeth concerning wordeth* unto him,
I foresaw *the Lord always Yah Veh through all time*
before in sight of my face,
for he is *on at* my right *hand*,
that I should not be *moved shaken*:
26 *Therefore Because of this* did my heart rejoice,
and my tongue was *glad jumped* for joy;

ACTS 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 — Parthians and Maday and Elamiym
and they who settle in Mesopotamia
and in Yah Hudah and Cappadocia,
in Pontus and Asia,
10 Phrygia and Pamphylia, in Misrayim
and in the parts of Libya around Cyrene
and the Romans residing there,
Yah Hudiym and proselytes,
11 Cretes and Arabs
— we hear them speak the magnificence of Elohim
in our tongues.

12 And they are all astounded
and thoroughly perplexed,
wording one to another, Whatever will this be?

13 Others jeering, word,
These men are full of new sweet wine.

THE FIRST MESSAGE OF PETROS

14 But Petros, standing with the eleven,
lifts his voice, and utters to them,
Men — Yah Hudiym
and all you settling at Yeru Shalem,
Know this, and hearken to my rhema.

THE PROPHECY OF YAH EL FULFILLED/SHALAMED

15 For these are not intoxicated, as you perceive;
indeed it is but the third hour of the day:
16 but this is that said through the prophet Yah El:
17 And it becomes, in the final days, words Elohim,
I pour of my Spirit on all flesh:
and your sons and your daughters prophesy,
and your youths see visions,
and your elders dream dreams:
18 and yet indeed, in those days,
I pour of my Spirit;
on my servants and on my maids,
and they prophesy:
19 and I give omens in the heavens above
and signs in the earth below
— blood and fire and vapour of smoke:
20 the sun turns to darkness
and the moon to blood
ere the mega and epiphanous day of Yah Veh comes:
21 and so be it, everyone
— whoever calls on the name of Yah Veh is saved.
Yah El 2:31, 32

YAH SHUA IS ADONAY AND MESSIAH

22 Men — Yisra Eliym, hear these words,
Yah Shua the Nazarene, a man of Elohim,
shown to you by dynamis and omens and signs,
which Elohim did through him in your midst
— exactly as you yourselves also know:
23 this one, being given over
by the decreed counsel and prognosis of Elohim,
you took,
and through untorahed hands, staked and took out:
24 whom Elohim raised
— having loosed the travail of death:
as it is not possible
for him to be overpowered thereby.

THE PROPHECY OF DAVID FULFILLED/SHALAMED

25 For David words to him,
I foresaw Yah Veh through all time
in sight of my face;
26 for he is at my right that I not be shaken:
because of this my heart rejoices
and my tongue jumps for joy;

ACTS 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

27 moreover **yet** also my flesh shall **rest nest** in hope:
Because thou
wilt **shalt** not leave my soul in *hell* **sheol/hades**,
neither wilt **shalt** thou
suffer *thine Holy One* **give thy Merciful**
to see corruption.
28 Thou hast made known to me the ways of life;
thou shalt **make me full of joy shalam me with rejoicing**
with thy *countenance* **face**.

Psalm 16:8—11

29 Men and brethren,
let **allow me freely speak to boldly say** unto you
of **concerning** the patriarch David,
that he is both dead and *buried* **entombed**,
and his *sepulchre* **tomb** is with us unto this day.
30 Therefore **So** being a prophet,
and knowing that *God* **Elohim**
had *sworn with* **oathed** an oath to him,
that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh,
he *would* **should** raise up *Christ* **the Messiah**
to sit on his throne;
31 He *seeing* **foreseeing** this *before*
spake of the resurrection of *Christ* **the Messiah**,
that his soul was not left in *hell* **sheol/hades**,
neither his flesh did see corruption.
32 This *Jesus Yah Shua* hath *God* **Elohim** raised up,
whereof we all are witnesses.
33 Therefore **So**
being *by at* the right *hand of* *God* **Elohim** exalted,
and having *received* **taken** of the Father
the *promise* **pre—evangelism** of the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
he hath *shed forth* **poured** this,
which ye now see and hear.
34 For David is not ascended into the heavens:
but he *saith* himself **wordeth**,
the LORD said **An oracle of Yah Veh** unto my *Lord* **Adonay**,
Sit thou *on at* my right *hand*,
35 Until I **make place** thy *foes* **enemies**
thy *footstool* **the stool of thy feet**.

Psalm 110:1

36 Therefore **So** let all the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
know *assuredly* **certainly**,
that *God* **Elohim** hath made the same *Jesus Yah Shua*,
whom ye have *crucified* **staked**,
both *Lord* **Adonay** and *Christ* **Messiah**.

TAKING THE GRATUITY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

37 Now when they heard this,
they were *pricked* **pierced** in their heart,
and said unto *Peter Petros* and to the rest of the apostles,
Men and brethren, what shall we do?
38 Then *Peter Petros* said unto them,
Repent, and be baptized *every one* **each** of you
in the name of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*
for **unto** the *remission* **forgiveness** of sins,
and ye shall *receive* **take**
the *gift* **gratuity** of the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.
39 For the *promise* **pre—evangelism** is unto you,
and to your children, and to all that are afar off,
even as many
as *the Lord* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim** shall call.

Yah El 2:32

40 And with many other words
did he *testify* **witness** and *exhort* **beseech**,
saying **wording**,
Save yourselves **Be ye saved**
from this *untoward* **crooked** generation.

THE FIRST ECCLESIA

41 Then **So indeed**
they that *gladly* **with pleasure** received his word
were baptized:
and *the same* **that** day there were added *unto them*
about three thousand souls.
42 And they continued stedfastly
in the apostles' doctrine and *fellowship* **communion**,
and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.
43 And *fear* **came awe became** upon every soul:
and many *wonders* **omens** and signs
were done by **became through** the apostles.

ACTS 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

yet also my flesh nests in hope:
27 because you neither leave my soul in sheol/hades
nor give your Merciful to see corruption:
28 You make known to me the ways of life;
you fill full/shalam me with rejoicing with your face.

Psalm 16:8—11

29 Men and brothers,
allow me to boldly say to you
concerning the patriarch David
— that he is both dead and entombed
and his tomb is with us to this day.
30 So being a prophet
and knowing that Elohim oathed an oath to him
that, of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh,
he raises the Messiah to sit on his throne:
31 foreseeing this,
he speaks of the resurrection of the Messiah,
that neither his soul is left in sheol/hades,
nor his flesh sees corruption:
32 this Yah Shua Elohim raised
whereof we all are witnesses.
33 So, being exalted at the right of Elohim,
and having taken
the pre—evangelism of the Holy Spirit
from the Father,
he poured this, which you now see and hear.
34 For David ascended not into the heavens:
but he himself words,
An oracle of Yah Veh to my Adonay,
You, sit at my right
35 until I place your enemies the stool of your feet.
Psalm 110:1
36 So all the house of Yisra El certainly knows
that Elohim made the same Yah Shua
— whom you staked
both Adonay and Messiah.

TAKING THE GRATUITY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

37 And hearing this,
they are pierced in their heart
and say to Petros and to the rest of the apostles,
Men and brothers, What do we?

38 And Petros says to them,
Repent and be baptized — each of you
in the name of Yah Shua Messiah
to the forgiveness of sins,
and take the gratuity of the Holy Spirit:
39 for the pre—evangelism is to you
and to your children and to all who are afar
— even as many as Yah Veh our Elohim calls.

Yah El 2:32

40 And he witnesses and beseech
with many other words, wording,
You, be saved from this crooked generation.

THE FIRST ECCLESIA

41 So indeed
they who receive his word with pleasure
are baptized;
and about three thousand souls are added that day:
42 and they continue stedfastly
in the doctrine and communion of the apostles
and in breaking of bread and in prayers:
43 and awe becomes upon every soul:
and many omens and signs
become through the apostles.

ACTS 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

44 And all that *believed* **trusted** were *together* **in one**,
and had all *things* **common**;
45 And sold their possessions and goods,
and *parted* **divided** them to all *men*,
as every *man* **one** had need.
46 And they,
continuing daily *with one accord* **in unanimity**
in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
and breaking bread from house to house
did eat **partook** their *meat* **nourishment**
with gladness **in jumping for joy**
and *singleness* **simplicity** of heart,
47 *Praising God* **Halaling Elohim**,
and having *favour* **charism** with all the people.
And the Lord **Adonay** added to the *church* **ecclesia** daily
such as should be saved.

THE DAY OF PENTECOST: THE FIRST SIGN OF PETROS

3 Now *Peter* **Petros** and *John* **Yahn**
went up together **ascended themselves**
into the *temple* **priestal precinct** at the hour of prayer,
being the ninth hour.
2 And a *certain* man
being lame from his mother's womb was *carried* **borne**,
whom they *laid* **placed** daily
at the *gate* **portal** of the *temple* **priestal precinct**
which is *called* **worded** Beautiful,
to ask *alms* **mercies** of them
that entered into the *temple* **priestal precinct**;
3 Who seeing *Peter* **Petros** and *John* **Yahn**
about to go **enter** into the *temple* **priestal precinct**
asked an *alms* **mercies**.
4 And *Peter* **Petros**,
fastening **staring** his eyes upon him with *John* **Yahn**,
said, Look on us.
5 And he *gave heed unto* **heeded** them,
expecting **awaiting** to receive **take** something of them.
6 Then *Peter* **But Petros** said, Silver and gold have I none;
but such as I have give I thee:
In the name of
Jesus Christ of Nazareth **Yah Shua Messiah the Nazarene**
rise up and walk.
7 And he *took* **seized** him by the right hand,
and *lifted* **raised** him up:
and immediately his feet and *anle bones* **sockets**
received strength **solidified**.
8 And he *leaping up* stood, and walked,
and entered with them into the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
walking, and leaping, and *praising God* **halaling Elohim**.
9 And all the people saw him walking
and *praising God* **halaling Elohim**;
10 And they knew that it was he which sat for *alms* **mercies**
at the Beautiful gate of the *temple* **priestal precinct**:
and they were filled **full**
with *wonder* **astonishment** and *amazement* **ecstasis**
at that which had happened unto him.
11 And as the lame *man* which was healed
held Peter **overpowered Petros** and *John* **Yahn**,
all the people *ran* **rushed** together unto them
in the *porch* **portico** that is called *Solomon's* **Sholomoh's**,
greatly wondering **utterly astonished**.

THE SECOND MESSAGE OF PETROS

12 And when *Peter* **Petros** saw it,
he answered unto the people,
Ye men of Israel **Men — Yisra Eliym**, why marvel ye at this?
or why *look ye so earnestly on* **stare at** us,
as though by our own
power **dynamis** or *holiness* **reverence**
we had *made this man* **caused him** to walk?
13 The *God* **Elohim** of Abraham,
and of *Isaac* **Yischaq**, and of *Jacob* **Yaaqov**,
the *God* **Elohim** of our fathers,
hath glorified his *Son* **Jesus Lad Yah Shua**;
whom ye delivered up,
and denied him in the *presence* **face** of *Pilate* **Pilatos**,
when he was *determined* **had judged**
to *let* **release** him go.
14 But ye denied the Holy *One* and the Just,
and *desired* **asked a man** — a murderer

ACTS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

44 And all who trust are in one,
and have all in common;
45 and sell their possessions and goods
and divide them to all as everyone has need.
46 And continuing daily in unanimity
in the priestal precinct,
and breaking bread from house to house,
they partake their nourishment
in jumping for joy and simplicity of heart,
47 halaling Elohim
and having charism with all the people:
and Adonay adds those being saved
to the ecclesia daily.

THE DAY OF PENTECOST: THE FIRST SIGN OF PETROS

3 And Petros and Yahn
ascend into the priestal precinct
at the hour of prayer — the ninth:
2 and a man, lame from the womb of his mother,
is being carried
— whom they place daily
at the portal of the priestal precinct, worded Beautiful,
to ask mercies of them entering the priestal precinct:
3 who, seeing Petros and Yahn
about to enter the priestal precinct,
asks mercies.
4 And Petros,
staring his eyes on him with Yahn, says,
Look on us.
5 And he heeds them,
awaiting to take somewhat from them.
6 But Petros says, Silver and gold I have none;
but such as I have I give you:
In the name of Yah Shua Messiah the Nazarene,
rise and walk!
7 — and he seizes his right hand and raises him:
and immediately his feet and sockets solidify:
8 and leaping, he stands and walks
and enters the priestal precinct with them
— walking and leaping and halaling Elohim.
9 And all the people
see him walking and halaling Elohim:
10 and they know it is he who sat for mercies
at the gate Beautiful of the priestal precinct:
and they fill full with astonishment and ecstasis
at what happened to him:
11 and as the healed lame man
overpowers Petros and Yahn,
all the people
rush toward them in the portico called Of Sholomoh
utterly astonished.

THE SECOND MESSAGE OF PETROS

12 And Petros sees,
and he answers the people,
Men — Yisra Eliym, why marvel at this?
Or why stare at us
— as though by our own dynamis or reverence
we caused him to walk?
13 The Elohim of Abraham and of Yischaq and of Yaaqov
— the Elohim of our fathers
glorified his lad Yah Shua
— whom you delivered
and denied at the face of Pilatos
when he judged to release him:
14 but you denied the Holy and the Just,
and asked that a man — a murderer

ACTS 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

15 to be granted **charism** unto you;
And killed **slaughtered** the *Prince* **Hierarch** of life,
whom *God* **Elohim** hath raised from the dead;
whereof we are witnesses.
16 And his name *through faith* **by trust** in his name*
hath *made* **solidified** this man *strong*,
whom ye see **observe** and know:
yea, the *faith* **trust** which is *by* **through** him
the name* hath given him
this *perfect soundness* **complete wholeness**
in the presence of you all.

*the name: see 4:10—12

17 And now, brethren,
I *wot* **perceive** that through *ignorance* **unknowingness**
ye *did* **transacted** it,
exactly as *did* also your *rulers* **archs**.
18 But those *things*,
which *God* **before Elohim** had *shewed* **pre—evangelized**
by **through** the mouth of all his prophets,
that *Christ* **the Messiah** should suffer,
he hath so **thus** fulfilled/shalamed.
19 **So** Repent ye *therefore*, and *be converted* **turn around**,
that **unto wiping out** your sins *may be blotted out*,
when the *times* **seasons** of refreshing shall come
from the *presence* **face** of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**.

20 And he shall
send Jesus Christ **apostolize** *Yah Shua* **Messiah**,
which *before* **previously** was preached unto you:
Whom **indeed** the heaven must receive
until the times of *restitution* **restoration** of all *things*,
which *God* **Elohim** hath spoken
by **through** the mouth of all his holy prophets
since **from** the *world* **began eons**.
22 For *Moses truly* **Mosheh** **indeed** said unto the fathers,
A prophet shall *the Lord* **Yah Veh** your *God* **Elohim**
raise *up* unto you of your brethren, like unto me;
him shall ye hear in all *things*
whatsoever — **as much as** he shall say **speak** unto you.

Deuteronomy 18:15, 19

23 And **so be** it shall *come to pass*, that every soul,
which *will* **shall** not hear that prophet,
shall be **utterly** destroyed from *among* the people.
24 Yea, and all the prophets from *Samuel* **Shemu El**
and those that follow *after* **in sequence**,
as many as have spoken,
have likewise *foretold* **pre—evangelized** of these days.
25 Ye are the *children* **sons** of the prophets,
and of the covenant
which *God* **made Elohim** **covenanted** with our fathers,
saying **wording** unto Abraham,
And in thy *seed* **sperma**
shall all the *kindreds* **patriarchies** of the earth
be *blessed* **eulogized**.
26 Unto you first,
God **Elohim**, having raised *up* his *Son* **Jesus** **Lad** *Yah Shua*,
sent **apostolized** him to *bless* **eulogize** you,
in turning away *every one* **each** of you
from his *iniquities* **evils**.

THE FIRST PERSECUTION

4 And as they spake unto the people,
the priests, and the *captain* **strategos**
of the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
and the *Sadducees* **Sadoqiym**, *came upon* **stood by** them,
2 Being grieved
that **because** they *taught* **doctrinated** the people,
and *preached through* **Jesus** **evangelized in** *Yah Shua*
the resurrection from the dead.
3 And they laid hands on them,
and put them in *hold* **guard** unto the *next day* **morrow**:
for it was now eventide **being already evening**.
4 Howbeit
many of them which heard the word *believed* **trusted**;
and the number of the men
was **became** about five thousand.

THE THIRD MESSAGE OF PETROS

5 And *it came to pass on* **being** the morrow,
that their *rulers* **archs**, and elders, and scribes,
6 And *Annas* **Hanan Yah** the *high* **arch** priest,
and Caiaphas, and *John* **Yahn**, and Alexander,

ACTS 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

be granted charism unto you;
and slaughtered the Hierarch of life
whom Elohim raised from the dead
— whereof we are witnesses.
16 And by the trust in the name*,
solidified this one whom you observe and know:
yes, the trust that is through him
the name* gives him complete wholeness
in your presence.

*the name: see 4:10—12

17 And now, brothers,
I perceive that you transacted this
through unknowingness
— exactly as also your archs.
18 But those which Elohim pre—evangelized
through the mouth of all his prophets
— that the Messiah suffer, he thus fulfilled/shalamed.

19 So repent and restore, to wipe out your sins,
when the seasons of refreshing come
from the face of Yah Veh.

20 And he apostolized Yah Shua Messiah,
who was previously preached to you:
whom indeed the heavens must receive
until the times of restoration of all,
of which Elohim spoke
through the mouth of all his holy prophets
from the eons.

22 For Mosheh indeed said to the fathers,
Yah Veh your Elohim
raises a prophet to you of your brothers, like to me;
You, hear him in all
— as much as he speaks to you.

Deuteronomy 18:15, 19

23 And so be it,
every soul who hears not that prophet,
is utterly destroyed from the people.
24 Yes, and all the prophets from Shemu El
and those who follow in sequence,
as many as spoke,
likewise pre—evangelized of these days.

25 You are the sons of the prophets
and of the covenant
which Elohim covenanted with your fathers;
wording to Abraham,
And in your sperma
all the patriarchies of the earth eulogize.

26 To you first,
Elohim raised his lad Yah Shua,
apostolized him to eulogize you,
in turning each of you away from his evils.

THE FIRST PERSECUTION

4 And as they speak to the people,
the priests and the strategos of the priestal precinct
and the Sadoqiym stand by them,
2 grieved — because they doctrinate the people
and evangelize that the resurrection from the dead
is in Yah Shua:
3 and they lay hands on them
and put them in guard to the morrow
— already being evening.
4 Howbeit many of them who hear the word trust
— the number of the men being about five thousand.

THE THIRD MESSAGE OF PETROS

5 And being the morrow,
their archs and elders and scribes
and Hanan Yah the archpriest
and Caiaphas and Yahn and Alexander

ACTS 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and as many as were of the *kindred* **genos**
of the *high* **arch** priest,
were gathered together at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
7 And when they had set them in the midst, they asked,
By **In** what *power* **dynamis**, or by **in** what name,
8 have ye done this?
Then *Peter* **Petros**,
filled/shalamed with the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
said unto them,
9 Ye *rulers* **archs** of the people, and elders of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
If we this day be examined of the good *deed* **work**
done to the *impotent man* **frail human**,
10 by what *means* he **this one** is made *whole* **saved**;
Be it known unto you all,
and to all the people of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
that by **in** the name of
Jesus Christ of Nazareth **Yah Shua Messiah the Nazarene**,
whom ye *crucified* **staked**,
whom *God* **Elohim** raised from the dead,
even by *him* **doth in his name** this *man* **one** stand
11 here before you **in your sight** whole.
This is the stone
12 which was set at *nought* **belittled** of you builders,
which is become **unto** the head of the corner.
Neither is there salvation in any other:
for there is none other name under heaven
given *among men* **by humanity**,
whereby we must be saved.
13 Now when they saw **observed**
the boldness of *Peter* **Petros** and *John* **Yahn**,
and perceived **overtook** that they were
unlearned **unlettered** and *ignorant* **unlearned**
men **humans**,
they marvelled;
and they *took knowledge of them* **knew**,
that they had been with *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.
14 And beholding **seeing** the *man* **human**
which was *healed* **cured** standing with them,
they could say *nothing against* **not refute** it.
15 But when they had *commanded* **summoned** them
to go *aside* **get** out of the *council* **sanhedrim**,
they conferred **considered** among *themselves* **one another**,
16 *Saying* **Wording**,
What shall we do to these *men* **humans**?
for that indeed a *notable miracle* **known sign**
hath been done by **become through** them
is manifest to all them
that dwell **settle** in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
and we cannot deny it.
17 But that it spread no *further* **more** among the people,
let us *straitly* **threateningly** threaten them,
that they speak *henceforth* **no more** to no *man* **human**
in this name.
18 And they called them,
and *commanded* **evangelized** them
not to speak **utter** at all
nor teach **doctrinate** in the name of *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.
19 But *Peter* **Petros** and *John* **Yahn**
answered and said unto them,
Whether it be *right* **just** in the sight of *God* **Elohim**
to hearken unto you *more* **rather** than unto *God* **Elohim**,
20 judge ye.
For we cannot but speak
the things **those** which we have seen and heard.
21 So **But** when they had further threatened them,
they let **released** them go,
finding *nothing* **naught** how they might punish them,
because of the people:
for all *men* glorified *God* **Elohim**
for **over** that which was done **became**.
22 For the *man* **human**
was above **more than** forty years old,
on whom this *miracle* **sign** of healing
was shewed **had become**.
MESSIANISTS FILL/SHALAM WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT
23 And being let go **released**,
they went **came** to their own *company*,
and reported all that **evangelized as much as**
the *chief* **arch** priests and elders had said unto them.

ACTS 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and as many as are of the *genos* of the archpriest
gather together at *Yeru Shalem*.
7 And they set them among them, and ask,
In what *dynamis* or in what name do you this?
8 So *Petros*, filled/shalamed with the Holy Spirit,
says to them,
9 You archs of the people and elders of *Yisra El*,
If this day we *are* examined on the good work
done to the frail human,
10 by what/whom this *one* is saved;
so be it known to you all
and to all the people of *Yisra El*,
that in the name of *Yah Shua* Messiah the Nazarene
— whom you staked
— whom *Elohim* raised from the dead
— in whom this *one* stands whole in your sight.
11 This is the stone belittled by you builders
which became the head of the corner:
12 and salvation is in no other:
for there is no other name under the heavens
given by humanity,
whereby we must be saved.
13 But they observe the boldness of *Petros* and *Yahn*,
and overtaking
that they are unlettered and unlearned humans,
they marvel;
and they know that they were with *Yah Shua*.
14 And seeing the cured human standing with them,
they cannot refute it.
15 But they summon them to go from the sanhedrim,
and they consider among one another,
16 wording. What do we to these humans?
For indeed a known sign became through them
— manifest to all who settle in *Yeru Shalem*;
and we cannot deny it.
17 But so it spreads no more among the people,
threateningly we threaten them
to speak no more to no human in this name.
18 — and they call them and evangelize them
to neither utter at all
nor doctrinate in the name of *Yah Shua*.
19 But *Petros* and *Yahn* answer them, saying,
Whether it be just in the sight of *Elohim*
to hearken to you rather than to *Elohim*,
you judge.
20 For we cannot but speak what we saw and heard.
21 But they threaten them further and release them
finding naught how to punish them
because of the people:
for all glorify *Elohim* over what became;
22 for the human on whom this sign of healing became
was more than forty years.
MESSIANISTS FILL/SHALAM WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT
23 And being released, they come to their own,
and evangelize
as much as the archpriests and elders said to them:

ACTS 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

24 And when they heard that,
they lifted up their voice to God **Elohim**
with one accord in unanimity, and said,
Lord **Despotes**, thou art God **Elohim**,
which hast made heaven the heavens,
and earth, and the sea,
and all that in them is:

25 Who by through the mouth of thy servant **lad** David
hast said, Why did the heathen rage **goyim snort**
and the people imagine **premeditate** in vain things?

26 The kings **sovereigns** of the earth stood up,
and the rulers **archs** were gathered together
against the Lord **Yah Veh**, and against his **Christ Messiah**.

Psalm 2:1, 2

27 For of a truth,
against thy holy child **Jesus lad Yah Shua**,
whom thou hast anointed,
both Herod, and Pontius **Pilate Pilatos**,
with the **Gentiles goyim**, and the people of **Israel Yisra El**,
were gathered together,

28 For to do
whatsoever as much as thy hand and thy counsel
determined before **predetermined** to be done **become**.

29 And now, Lord **Yah Veh**, behold regard their threatenings:
and grant **give** unto thy servants,
that with all boldness they may speak thy word,
By stretching forth **spreading** thine hand to heal;
and that signs and **wonders omens** may be done **become**
by through the name
of thy holy child **Jesus lad Yah Shua**.

31 And when they had prayed **petitioned**,
the place was shaken
where they were assembled together;
and they were all filled/**shalamed**
with the Holy **Ghost Spirit**,
and they spake the word of God **Elohim** with boldness.

TRUSTERS SHARE THEIR HOLDINGS

32 And the multitude of them that **believed trusted**
were of one heart and of one soul:
neither **said worded** any of them
that ought of the things which he possessed **his holdings**
was his own;
but they had all things common.

33 And with great power **mega dynamis**
gave the apostles witness
of the resurrection of the Lord **Jesus Adonay Yah Shua**:
and great grace **mega charism** was upon them all.

34 **Indeed** Neither was there any among them that lacked:
for as many as were possessors of lands **parcels** or houses
sold them,
and brought the prices of the things **those** that were sold,
And **laid placed** them down at the apostles' feet:
and distribution was made **distributed**
unto every man **each**
according as he had need as any needed.

36 And **Joses Yoses**,
who by the apostles was surnamed **Barnabas called Bar Nabi**,
(which is, being interpreted **translates**
The son of consolation,)
a **Levite Levii**,
and of the country of **Cyprus by genos, a Cyprii**,
37 Having land a field, sold it,
and brought the money **riches**,
and **laid placed** it at the apostles' feet.

HANAN YAH AND SAPPHIRA LIE TO THE HOLY SPIRIT

5 But a certain man named **Ananias Hanan Yah**,
with **Sapphira** his wife **woman**, sold a possession,
2 And kept back part of the price,
his wife **woman** also being **privy to it aware**,
and brought a certain part,
and **laid placed** it at the apostles' feet.

3 But **Peter Petros** said, **Ananias Hanan Yah**,
why hath Satan filled/**shalamed** thine heart
to lie to the Holy **Ghost Spirit**,
and to keep back part of the price of the land **parcel**?

4 Whiles it remained **In abiding**,
was **abode** it not **indeed** thine own?
and after it was sold,
was it not in thine own **power authority**?

ACTS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

24 and when they hear,
they lift their voice to Elohim in unanimity, and say,
Despotes, you are Elohim,
who made the heavens and earth and the sea
and all therein:

25 who through the mouth of your lad David said,
Why do the goyim snort
and the people premeditate in vain?

26 The sovereigns of the earth stand,
and the archs gather together
against Yah Veh and against his Messiah.

Psalm 2:1, 2

27 For of a truth,
against your holy lad Yah Shua whom you anointed,
both Herod and Pontius Pilatos
with the goyim and the people of Yisra El
gathered together,

28 to do as much as your hand and your counsel
predetermined to become.

29 And now, Yah Veh, regard their threatenings:
and give to your servants
to speak your word with all boldness,
by spreading your hand to heal;
and that signs and omens become
through the name of your holy lad Yah Shua.

31 And having petitioned,
the place where they assemble together shakes;
and they all fill/shalam with the Holy Spirit,
and they speak the word of Elohim with boldness.

TRUSTERS SHARE THEIR HOLDINGS

32 And the multitude of them who trust
are of one heart and of one soul:
not any of them
word that aught of his holdings is his own;
but they have all in common:
33 and with mega dynamis
the apostles give witness
of the resurrection of Adonay Yah Shua:
and mega charism is on them all.

34 Indeed not any among them lack:
for as many as possess parcels or houses,
sell them, and bring the prices of those sold,
35 and place them at the feet of the apostles:
and distribute to each as any needed.

36 And Yoses,
whom the apostles call Bar Nabi,
which translates, Son of Consolation
— a Levii, and by genos, a Cyprii,
37 having a field, sells it, and brings the riches,
and places them at the feet of the apostles.

HANAN YAH AND SAPPHIRA LIE TO THE HOLY SPIRIT

5 But a man named Hanan Yah,
with Sapphira his woman, sell a possession;
2 and keep back of the price
— his woman also being aware;
and brings a part
and places it at the feet of the apostles.

3 But Petros says, Hanan Yah,
why has Satan filled/shalamed your heart
to lie to the Holy Spirit,
to keep back of the price of the parcel?

4 In abiding, abode it not indeed yours?
And, being sold, was it in your own authority?

ACTS 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

why hast thou *conceived* **placed** this *thing* **matter**
in thine heart?
thou hast not lied unto *men* **humanity**,
but unto *God* **Elohim**.

5 And *Ananias* **Hanan Yah** hearing these words fell down,
and *gave up the ghost* **expired**:
and **so be it**, *great fear* **a mega awe**
came on all them that heard these *things*.

6 And the *young men* **youths** arose,
wound **enshrouded** him *up*,
and *carried* **brought** him *out* **forth**,
and *buried* **entombed** him.

7 And **so be it** was
about the *space* **interval** of three hours after,
when his *wife* **woman**,
not knowing what was *done* **had become**,
came in **entered**.

8 And *Peter* **Petros** answered unto her, *Tell* **Say to** me
whether ye *sold* **gave up** the *land* **parcel** for so much?
And she said, Yea, for so much.

9 Then *Peter* **And Petros** said unto her,
How is it that ye have *agreed together* **symphonized**
to *tempt* **test** the Spirit of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**?
behold, the feet of them
which have *buried* **entombed** thy *husband* **man**
are at the *door* **portal**,
and shall *carry* **bring** thee *out* **forth**.

10 Then **And** fell she *down* **straightway** **immediately**
at his feet,
and *yielded up the ghost* **expired**:
and the *young men* **came in** **youths entered**,
and found her dead, and, *carrying* **bringing** her forth,
buried **entombed** her by her *husband* **man**.

11 And **so be it**, *great fear* **a mega awe**
came upon all the *church* **ecclesia**,
and upon *as many as* **all who** heard these *things*.

SIGNS AND OMENS

12 And *by* **through** the hands of the apostles
were many signs and *wonders* **omens**
wrought **become** among the people;
(and they were all *with one accord* **in unanimity**
in *Solomon's porch* **Sholomoh's portico**.)

13 And of the rest durst no *man* **one** join himself to them:
but the people magnified them.

14 And *believers* **they who trusted**
were the more added to the *Lord* **Adonay**,
multitudes both of men and women.)

15 *Insomuch* **So** that they brought forth the *sick* **frail**
into the *streets* **broadways**,
and *laid* **placed** them on beds and *couches* **pads**,
that *at the least* **even** the shadow of Peter
passing by **coming** might overshadow some of them.

16 There came also a multitude
out of the cities round about
unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
bringing *sick* **frail** folks,
and them which were vexed *with unclean* **by impure** spirits:
and they were *healed every one* **all cured**.

THE SECOND PERSECUTION

17 Then **And** the *high arch* priest rose up,
and all they that were with him,
(which is the *sect* **heresy** of the *Sadducees* **Sadoqiyim**),
and were filled/*shalamed* with *indignation* **zeal**,

18 And laid their hands on the apostles,
and put them in the *common* **public** prison.

19 But the angel of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**
by **through** the night
opened the *prison doors* **guardhouse portals**,
and *brought* **led** them *forth*, and said,

20 Go, stand and speak in the *temple* **priestal precinct**
to the people,
all the *words* **rhema** of this life.

21 And when they heard that,
they entered into the *temple* **early priestal precinct**
in the morning **by dawn**, and *taught* **doctrinated**.
But the *high arch* priest came,
and they that were with him,
and called the *council* **sanhedrim** together,

ACTS 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Why place you this matter in your heart?
You lie, not to humanity, but to Elohim.

5 And hearing these words,
Hanan Yah falls down and expires:
and so be it, a mega awe on all who hear these:

6 and the youths rise and enshroud him
and bring him forth and entomb him.

7 And so be it,
about the interval of three hours after,
his woman, not knowing what had become, enters.

8 And Petros answers her, Say to me,
whether you gave the parcel for so much?

And she says, Yes, for so much.

9 And Petros says to her,
Why symphonized you to test the Spirit of Yah Veh?
Behold, the feet of them who entombed your man
are at the portal, and bring you forth.

10 And immediately,
she falls at his feet and expires:
and the youths enter and find her dead;
and bring her and entomb her by her man.
And so be it, a mega awe on all the ecclesia,
and on all who hear these.

SIGNS AND OMENS

12 And through the hands of the apostles
many signs and omens become among the people;
and they are all in unanimity
in the portico of Sholomoh.

13 And of the rest,
no one dares join himself to them;
but the people magnify them:
and all the more
they who trust are added to Adonay
— multitudes both of men and women
— so that they bring the frail into the broadways
and place them on beds and pads
— so that if even the shadow of the coming of Peter
overshadow some of them.

14 And also a multitude from the surrounding cities
comes to Yeru Shalem,
bringing frail folks and those vexed by impure spirits
— and they are all cured.

THE SECOND PERSECUTION

17 And the archpriest and all with him rise
— which is of the heresy of the Sadoqiyim
and they fill/shalam with zeal;
and they lay their hands on the apostles
and put them in the public prison.

18 But through the night,
the angel of Yah Veh opens the guardhouse portals
and leads them, and says,
Go, stand in the priestal precinct
and speak to the people of all the rhema of this life.
— and when they hear that,
they enter the priestal precinct by dawn
and doctrinate.

But the archpriest and those with him come,
and call together the sanhedrim

ACTS 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and all the *senate* **ancients**
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and *sent* **apostolized** to the prison to have them brought.
22 But when the *officers* **attendants** came,
and found them not in the *prison* **guardhouse**,
they returned and *told* **evangelized**,
23 *Saying* **Wording**,
The prison *truly* **indeed** found we shut
with all safety **in security**,
and the *keepers* **guards** standing *without* **outside**
before **in front of** the *doors* **portals**:
but when we had opened, we found no *man* **one** within.
24 Now **And** when the *high* priest and the *captain* **strategos**
of the *temple* **priestal precinct**
and the *chief* **arch** priests heard these *things* **words**,
they *doubted of* **were thoroughly perplexed about** them
whereunto **whatever** this *would grow* **should be**.
25 Then **But** came one and *told* **evangelized** them,
saying **wording**,
Behold, the men whom ye put in *prison* **guardhouse**
are standing in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
teaching **doctrinating** the people.
26 Then went
the *captain* **strategos** with the *officers* **attendants**,
and brought them without violence:
for they feared **awed** the people,
lest that they should *have been* **not be** stoned.
27 And when they had brought them,
they set them *before* **in** the *council* **sanhedrim**:
and the *high* **arch** priest asked them,
28 *Saying*, **Wording, In evangelizing**,
Did not we *straitly command* **evangelize** you
that ye should not *teach* **doctrinate** in this name?
and, behold,
ye have filled/*shalamed* *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
with your doctrine,
and *intend* **will** to bring
this *man's* **human's** blood upon us.
29 Then *Peter* **But Petros** and the other apostles
answered and said,
We *ought to* **must first** obey *God* **Elohim**
rather than *men* **humanity**.
30 The *God* **Elohim** of our fathers
raised up *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
whom ye *slew* **thoroughly handled**
and hanged on a *tree* **staff**.
31 Him hath *God* **Elohim** exalted *with at* his right *hand*
to be a **Prince Hierarch** and a Savior,
for to give repentance to *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and forgiveness of sins.
32 And we are his witnesses of these *things* **rhema**;
and so is also the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
whom *God* **Elohim** hath given to them
that **first** obey him.
33 When they heard *that*, they *were* cut* *to the heart*,
and *took counsel* **counseled** to *slay* **take** them **out**.
*as in cutting an oath or a covenant
34 Then *stood there up* **But** one **rose**
in the *council* **sanhedrim**, a Pharisee,
named *Gamaliel* **Gamli El**, a doctor of the *law* **torah**,
had in reputation **honoured** among all the people,
and *commanded* **summoned**
to *put* **make** the apostles *forth* **out** a little space;
35 And said unto them, *Ye men of Israel* **Men — Yisra Eliym**,
take heed to yourselves
what ye *intend* **are about** to *do* **transact**
as *touching* **to** these *men* **humans**.
36 For *before* **ere** these days rose up Theudas,
boasting **wording** himself to be *somebody* **someone**;
to whom a number of men, about four hundred,
joined themselves:
who was *slain* **taken out**;
and all, as many as obeyed him,
were scattered **dissolved**, and *brought to* **became** nought.
37 After this man
rose up *Judas of Galilee* **Yah Hudah — a Galiliy**
in the days of the *taxing* **registration**,

ACTS 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and all the ancients of the sons of Yisra El,
and apostolize to the prison to have them brought.
22 But the attendants come
and find them not in the guardhouse;
and they return and evangelize,
23 wording,
We indeed found the prison shut in security,
and the guards standing outside in front of the portals:
but when we opened, we found no one inside.
24 And when the priest
and the strategos of the priestal precinct
and the archpriests hear these words,
they are thoroughly perplexed about them
— whatever this be.
25 But one comes and evangelizes them, wording,
Behold, the men you put in the guardhouse
are standing in the priestal precinct,
doctrinating the people.
26 Then the strategoi goes with the attendants
and brings them without violence:
that they not be stoned; for they awed the people.
27 And they bring them
and set them in the sanhedrim:
and the archpriest asks them,
28 wording, In evangelizing,
evangelized we not to not doctrinate in this name?
And behold,
you fill/shalam Yeru Shalem with your doctrine
and will to bring the blood of this human upon us.
29 But Petros and the other apostles answer, saying,
We must first obey Elohim rather than humanity.
30 The Elohim of our fathers raised Yah Shua
whom you thoroughly handled and hanged on a staff:
31 Elohim exalted him at his right
— a Hierarch and Savior
to give Yisra El repentance and forgiveness of sins:
32 and we are his witnesses of these rhema;
and so also the Holy Spirit,
whom Elohim gave to them who first obeyed him.
33 When they hear, they cut*,
and counsel to take them out.
*as in cutting an oath or a covenant
34 But one rises in the sanhedrim
— a Pharisee named Gamli El — a doctor of the torah
honored among all the people:
and he summons
to make a little space for the apostles;
35 and says to them, Men — Yisra Eliym,
heed to yourselves what you are about to transact
as to these humans.
36 For ere these days,
rose Theudas, wording himself to be someone;
to whom a number of men, about four hundred,
joined themselves;
and all, as many as obeyed him,
dissolved, and became to naught.
37 After this one, rose Yah Hudah — a Galiliy
in the days of the registration,

ACTS 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and drew away much people after him:
he also *perished* **destructured**;
and all, *even* as many as obeyed him,
were *dispersed* **scattered**.
38 And now I say **word** unto you,
Refrain **Depart** from these *men* **humans**,
and let them alone:
for if **whenever** this counsel or this work
be of *men* **humanity**,
39 it will come to nought **shall disintegrate**:
But if it be of *God* **Elohim**,
ye cannot *overthrow* **disintegrate** it;
lest *haply* **ever** ye be found
40 even to *fight against God* **be Elohim—opponents**.
And to *him* they agreed **he convinced them**:
and when they had called the apostles,
and *beaten* **flogged** them,
they *commanded* **evangelized**
that they should not speak in the name of *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
and let **released** them go.
41 And therefore **So indeed** they departed
from the *presence* **face** of the *council* **sanhedrim**,
rejoicing **cheering** that they were counted worthy
to *suffer shame* **be dishonoured** for his name.
42 And daily in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
and in every house,
they *ceased* **paused** not
to *teach* **doctrinate** and *preach* **evangelize**
Jesus Christ **Yah Shua the Messiah**.

THE MINISTRY OF TABLES

6 And in those days,
when the number of the disciples was multiplied,
there *arose* **became** a murmuring of the *Grecians* **Hellenists**
against the Hebrews,
because their widows were *neglected* **overlooked**
in the daily *ministration* **ministry**.
2 Then **And** the twelve
called the multitude of the disciples unto them,
and said, It is not *reason* **pleasing**
that we should leave the word of *God* **Elohim**,
and *serve* **minister** tables.
3 Wherefore **So**, brethren,
look ye **scope** out among you
seven men of *honest report* **witness**,
full of the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit** and wisdom,
whom we may *appoint* **seat** over this *business* **need**.
4 But we
will give ourselves continually **shall continue** in prayer,
and to the ministry of the word.
5 And the *saying* **word** pleased
in sight of the whole multitude:
and they *chose* *Stephan* **selected Stephanos**,
a man full of *faith* **trust** and of the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
and *Philip* **Philippos**, and Prochorus, and Nicanor,
and Timon, and Parmenas,
and Nicolas a proselyte of *Antioch* — **an Antiochan**:
6 Whom they set *before* **in the sight** of the apostles:
and when they had prayed,
they *laid* **put** their hands on them.
7 And the word of *God* **increased Elohim grew**;
and the number of the disciples multiplied
in *Jerusalem* **greatly Yeru Shalem extremely**;
and a *great company* **vast multitude** of the priests
were *obedient to the faith* **obeyed the trust**.

THIRD PERSECUTION

8 And *Stephen* **Stephanos**,
full of *faith* **trust** and *power* **dynamis**,
did *great wonders* **mega omens** and *miracles* **signs**
among the people.
9 Then **And** there arose *certain* **some** of the synagogue,
which is *called* **the synagogue of the worded** Libertines,
and Cyrenians, and Alexandrians,
and of them of Cilicia and of Asia,
disputing with *Stephen* **Stephanos**.
10 And they were not able to *resist* **withstand**
the wisdom and the spirit by which he spake.
11 Then they *suborned* **instigated** men, which *said* **worded**,
We have heard him speak blasphemous *words* **rhema**
against Moses **unto Mosheh**, and *against God* **Elohim**.

ACTS 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and drew many people after him; and he destructed:
and all, as many as obeyed him, scattered.
38 And now I word to you,
Depart from these humans, and let them alone:
for whenever this counsel or this work is of humanity,
it disintegrates:
39 but if it is of Elohim, you cannot disintegrate it;
lest ever
you are even found to be Elohim—opponents.
40 — and he convinces them.
And they call the apostles, and flog them,
and evangelize them
to not speak in the name of Yah Shua;
and release them.
41 So indeed
they depart from the face of the sanhedrim
— cheering that they are counted worthy
to be dishonored for his name:
42 and daily,
in the priestal precinct and in every house,
they pause not
to doctrinate and evangelize Yah Shua the Messiah.

THE MINISTRY OF TABLES

6 And in these days,
as the number of the disciples multiplies,
there becomes a murmuring of the Hellenists
against the Hebrews,
because they overlook the widows
in the daily ministry.
2 And the twelve
call the multitude of the disciples to them,
and say, It is not pleasing to leave the word of Elohim,
and minister tables:
3 so, brothers,
scope out seven men of witness
full of the Holy Spirit and wisdom
to seat over this need:
4 but we continue in prayer
and to the ministry of the word.
5 And the word pleases
in sight of the whole multitude:
and they select Stephanos,
a man full of trust and of the Holy Spirit,
and Philippos and Prochorus and Nicanor
and Timon and Parmenas
and Nicolas a proselyte — an Antiochan:
6 whom they set in the sight of the apostles:
and as they pray, they put their hands on them.
7 And the word of Elohim grows;
and the number of the disciples in Yeru Shalem
multiplies extremely;
and a vast multitude of the priests obey the trust.

THIRD PERSECUTION

8 And Stephanos, full of trust and dynamis,
does mega omens and signs among the people:
9 and some of the synagogue rise
— worded, Libertines
and Cyrenians and Alexandrians
and of them of Cilicia and of Asia;
and they dispute with Stephanos:
10 and they are not able to withstand
the wisdom and the spirit by which he speaks.
11 So they instigate men, who word,
We heard him speak
blasphemous rhema as to Mosheh and Elohim!

ACTS 6, 7

exeGes ready research BIBLE

12 And they *stirred up* **excited** the people,
and the elders, and the scribes,
and *came upon* **stood by** him,
and caught him, and brought him to the *council* **sanhedrim**,
13 And set *up false* **pseudo** witnesses, which *said* **worded**,
This *man ceaseth* **human pauseth** not
to speak blasphemous *words* **rhema**
against this holy place, and the *law* **torah**:
14 For we have heard him say **word**,
that this *Jesus of Nazareth* **Yah Shua the Nazarene**
shall *destroy* **disintegrate** this place,
and shall change the customs
which *Moses* **Mosheh** delivered us.
15 And all that sat in the *council* **sanhedrim**,
looking stedfastly on **staring unto** him,
saw his face as it had been the face of an angel.

THE MESSAGE OF STEPHANOS

7 Then said the *high arch* priest,
Are **If** these *things so* **be thus**?
2 And he said, Men, brethren, and fathers, hearken;
The *God* **Elohim** of glory
appeared unto our father Abraham,
when he was in Mesopotamia,
before **ere** he *dwelt* **settled** in Haran,
3 And said unto him,
Get thee out of thy *country* **land**, and from thy kindred,
and come into the land which I shall shew thee.
4 Then came he
out of the land of the *Chaldaeans* **Kesediym**,
and *dwelt* **settled** in Haran:
and from thence, *when* **after** his father was dead,
he *removed* **exiled** him into this land,
wherein ye now *dwelt* **settle**.
5 And he gave him none inheritance in it,
no, not so much as to set his foot on **even a foot bamah**:
yet he *promised* **pre—evangelized**
that he *would* **should** give it to him
for **unto** a possession,
and to his *seed* **sperma** after him,
when as yet he had no child.
6 And *God* **Elohim** spake *on this wise* **thus**,
That his *seed* **sperma** should *sojourn* **be a settler**
in a *strange* **another's** land;
and that they should bring them into *bondage* **servitude**,
and *entreat* **vilify** them *evil* four hundred years.
7 And the *nation* **goyim**
to whom **ever** they shall be *in bondage* **servient**
will **shall** I judge, said *God* **Elohim**:
and after that shall they come *forth*,
and *serve* **liturgize** me in this place.
8 And he gave him the covenant of circumcision:
and *so Abraham begat Isaac* **thus birthed Yischaq**,
and *circumcised* him the eighth day;
and *Isaac* **Yischaq**, *begat* **Jacob Yaaqov**;
and *Jacob* **Yaaqov**, *begat* the twelve patriarchs.
9 And the patriarchs, *moved with envy* **zeal**,
sold **gave** *Yoseph* **Yoseph** into *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
but **God** and **Elohim** was with him,
10 And *delivered* **released** him
out of all his *afflictions* **tribulations**,
and gave him *favour* **charism** and wisdom
in the sight of *Pharaoh* **Paroh**
king **sovereign** of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
and he *made* **seated** him governor
over *Egypt* **Misrayim** and all his house.
11 Now **But** there came a *dearth* **famine**
over all the land
of *Egypt* **Misrayim** and *Chanaan* **Kanaan**,
and *great affliction* **mega tribulation**:
and our fathers found no *sustenance* **forage**.
12 But when *Jacob* **Yaaqov** heard
that there was *corn* **grain** in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
he *sent out* **apostolized forth** our fathers first.
13 And at the second *time*
Joseph was made **Yoseph became** known to his brethren;
and *Joseph's kindred* **Yoseph's genos**
was *made known* **manifest** unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**.
14 Then *sent* **Joseph** **apostolized** **Yoseph**,

ACTS 6, 7

exeGes companion BIBLE

12 — and they excite the people
and the elders and the scribes.

And those standing by
catch him and bring him to the sanhedrim;
and set pseudo witnesses, who word,
13 This human pauses not
to speak blasphemous rhema
against this holy place and the torah:
14 for we heard him word,
that this Yah Shua the Nazarene
disintegrates this place,
and changes the customs Mosheh delivered us.
15 — and all who sit in the sanhedrim stare to him,
and see his face as the face of an angel.

THE MESSAGE OF STEPHANOS

7 And the archpriest says, If these be thus?
2 And he says, Men, brothers and fathers, hearken;
the Elohim of glory
appeared to our father Abraham
being in Mesopotamia, ere he settled in Haran,
3 and said to him,
You, go from your land and from your kindred;
and come to the land I show you.
4 Then he comes from the land of the Kesediym
and settles in Haran:
and from there, after his father dies,
he exiles him to this land wherein you now settle:
5 and he gave him no inheritance therein
— no, not even a foot bamah:
yet he pre—evangelized
to give it to him for a possession,
and to his sperma after him
— he having no child.
6 And Elohim spoke thus,
that his sperma becomes a settler
in the land of another;
and to bring them into servitude
and vilify them four hundred years.
7 And the goyim to whomever they be servient,
I judge, says Elohim:
and after that,
they come and liturgize me in this place.
8 And he gives him the covenant of circumcision:
and thus births Yischaq,
and circumcises him the eighth day;
and Yischaq, Yaaqov;
and Yaaqov, the twelve patriarchs.
9 And with zeal
the patriarchs give Yoseph into Misrayim:
and Elohim is with him
10 and releases him from all his tribulations,
and gives him charism and wisdom
in the sight of Paroh sovereign of Misrayim;
and he seats him governor
over Misrayim and all his house.
11 But a famine
comes over all the land of Misrayim and Kanaan
— and mega tribulation:
and our fathers find no forage:
12 but Yaaqov hears there is grain in Misrayim,
and apostolizes our fathers first:
13 and at the second
Yoseph becomes known to his brothers;
and the genos of Yoseph manifests to Paroh.
14 So Yoseph apostolizes,

ACTS 7

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and called his father **Jacob Yaaqov** to him,
and all his kindred,
threescore and fifteen **seventy and five** souls.
15 So **Jacob And Yaaqov**
went down **descended** into *Egypt* **Misrayim**, and died,
he, and our fathers,
16 And were *carried over* **transplaced**
into *Sychem* **Shechem**
and *laid* **placed** in the *sepulchre* **tomb**
that Abraham bought for a *sum* **price** of *money* **silver**
of the sons of *Emmor* **Hamor**
17 the *father* of *Sychem* **Shechem**.
But when **exactly** as the time
of the *promise* drew *nigh* **pre—evangelism** **approached**,
which *God* **Elohim** had *sworn* **oathed** to Abraham,
the people grew and multiplied in *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
18 Till another *king* **sovereign** arose,
which knew not *Joseph* **Yoseph**.
19 The *same* dealt *subtily* **This one** **sophisticated**
with our *kindred* **genos**,
and *evil entreated* **vilified** our fathers,
so that they *cast out* **exposed** their *young children* **infants**,
to the *end* **that** they might not live.
20 In which *time* **Moses** **season** **Mosheh** was *born* **birthed**,
and was exceeding *fair* **urbane** to *God* **Elohim**,
and *nourished up* **nurtured** in his father's house
three months:
21 And when he was *cast out* **exposed**,
Pharaoh's **Paroh's** daughter took him *up*,
and *nourished* **nurtured** him *for* **as** her own son.
22 And *Moses* **Mosheh** was *learned* **disciplined**
in all the wisdom of the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**,
and was *mighty* **able** in words and in *deeds* **works**.
23 And when *he* was *full*
forty years *old* **time** was **fulfilled/shalamed**,
it *came into* **ascended upon** his heart
to visit his brethren the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**.
24 And seeing one of them *suffer wrong* **injured**,
he defended him,
and *avenged* **dealt vengeance** for him
that was *oppressed* **worn**,
and smote the *Egyptian* **Misrayim**:
25 For he *supposed* **presumed** his brethren
would **should** have *understood* **comprehended**
how that *God* by **Elohim** *through* his hand
would deliver **should give** them **salvation**:
but they *understood* **comprehended** not.
26 And the next day
he *shewed himself* **appeared** unto them as they strove,
and *would* **should** have set them at *one* **shalom** again,
saying, *Sirs* **Men**, ye are brethren;
why *do* **injure** ye *wrong* one to another?
27 But he that *did* **injured** his neighbour *wrong*
thrust **shoved** him away, saying,
Who *made* **seated** thee
a *ruler* **an arch** and a judge over us?
28 *Wilt* **Willest** thou *kill me* **to take me out**
as *in the manner* thou *diddest* **tookest out**
the *Egyptian* **Misrayim** yesterday?
29 Then fled *Moses* **Mosheh** at this *saying* **word**,
and was **became** a *stranger* **settler**
in the land of *Madian* **Midyan**,
where he *begat* **birthed** two sons.
30 And when forty years were *expired* **fulfilled/shalamed**,
there appeared to him
in the wilderness of mount *Sina* **Sinay**
an angel of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**
in a flame of fire in a *bush* **brier**.
31 When *Moses* **Mosheh** saw it,
he *wondered* **marvelled** at the *sight* **vision**:
and as he drew near to *behold* **perceive** it,
the voice of the *Lord* came **Yah Veh** **became** unto him,
32 *Saying, I am the God* **I — Elohim** of thy fathers,
the *God* **Elohim** of Abraham,
and the *God* **Elohim** of Isaac **Yischaq**,
and the *God* **Elohim** of Jacob **Yaaqov**.
Then *Moses* **trembled** **Mosheh** **became** **trembling**,
and durst not *behold* **perceive**.

ACTS 7

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and calls his father Yaaqov and all his kindred to him
— seventy—five souls.
15 And Yaaqov descends into Misrayim and dies
— he, and our fathers,
16 and are transplaced to Shechem
and placed in the tomb Abraham bought
for a price of silver
from the sons of Hamor of Shechem.
17 But exactly at the time
the pre—evangelism approaches
— which Elohim had oathed to Abraham,
the people grow and multiply in Misrayim
— until another sovereign rises
who knows not Yoseph.
18 This one sophisticates with our genos
and vilifies our fathers;
19 so that they expose their infants to not live:
20 in which season Mosheh is birthed,
and is exceedingly urbane to Elohim,
and he is nurtured in the house of his father
three months:
21 and being exposed,
the daughter of Paroh takes him
and nurtures him as her own son:
22 and Mosheh is disciplined
in all the wisdom of the Misrayim,
capable in words and in works.
23 And forty years time fulfills/shalamed,
and it ascends on his heart
to visit his brothers, the sons of Yisra El:
24 and seeing one of them injured,
he defends him,
and deals vengeance for him who was worn;
and smites the Misrayim:
25 for he presumes his brothers comprehend
how Elohim, through his hand, gives them salvation:
and they comprehend not.
26 And the next day
he appears to them as they strive,
to set them at shalom again, saying,
Men, You, brothers, why injure one another?
27 But he who injures his neighbor
shoves him away, saying,
Who seated you an arch and judge over us?
28 Will you to take me out
in the manner you took out the Misrayim yesterday?
29 — and at this word, Mosheh flees
and becomes a settler in the land of Midyan,
where he births two sons.
30 And forty years fulfill/shalamed,
and an angel of Yah Veh appears to him
in a flame of fire in a brier
in the wilderness of mount Sinay.
31 And Mosheh sees, and marvels at the vision:
and as he draws near to perceive it,
the voice of Yah Veh becomes to him,
32 I — Elohim of your fathers;
Elohim of Abraham
and Elohim of Yischaq
and Elohim of Yaaqov.
— so Mosheh trembles, and dares not perceive.

ACTS 7

exeGes ready research BIBLE

33 Then **And** said the **Lord Yah Veh** to him,
Put off **Loose** thy shoes from thy feet:
for the place **whereon** thou standest
is holy ground **land**.

34 I have seen **In seeing**,
I have seen the **affliction vilification** of my people
which is in **Egypt Misrayim**,
and I have heard their **groaning sighing**,
and am **come down descended** to **deliver release** them.
And now come,
I will **send shall apostolize** thee into **Egypt Misrayim**.

35 This **Moses Mosheh** whom they **refused denied**,
saying,
Who **made seated** thee a **ruler an arch** and a judge?
the same did **God send Elohim apostolize**
to be a **ruler arch** and a **deliverer redeemer**
by the hand of the angel
which appeared to him in the **bush brier**.

Exodus 3:2—6

36 He brought **This one** led them out,
after that he had **shewed wonders made omens** and signs
in the land of **Egypt Misrayim**, and in the **Red Reed** sea,
and in the wilderness forty years.

37 This is that **Moses Mosheh**,
which said unto the **children sons of Israels Yisra El**,
A prophet shall **the Lord Yah Veh** your **God Elohim**
raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me;
him shall ye hear ye him.

Deuteronomy 18:15, 18, 19

38 This is he,
that was **became** in the **church ecclesia** in the wilderness
with the angel which spake to him
in the mount **Sina Sinay**, and with our fathers:
who received the **lively living** oracles to give unto us:
To whom our fathers **would willed**
to not obey become obedient,
but **thrust shoved** him **away** from them,
and in their hearts
turned back again returned into **Egypt Misrayim**,
Saying unto **Aaron Aharon**,
Make us **gods elohim** to **go before precede** us:
for **as for** this **Moses Mosheh**,
which **brought led** us out of the land of **Egypt Misrayim**,
we **wot know** not what is become of him.

41 And they made a calf in those days,
and **offered brought** sacrifice unto the idol,
and rejoiced in the works of their own hands.

42 Then **God But Elohim** turned,
and **gave surrendered** them up
to **worship liturgize** the host of heaven;
exactly as it is **written scribed**
in the **book scroll** of the prophets,
O ye house of **Israel Yisra El**,
have ye offered to me
slain beasts slaughters and sacrifices
by the space of forty years in the wilderness?

43 Yea, ye took up the tabernacle of **Moloch Molech**,
and the star of your god **Remphan Kiyun**,
figures types which ye made to worship them:
and I will **carry shall exile** you away
beyond **Babylon Babel**.

44 Our fathers
had the tabernacle of witness in the wilderness,
exactly as he had **appointed ordained**,
speaking unto **Moses Mosheh**, that he should make it
according to the **fashion type** that he had seen.

45 Which also our fathers
that came after having in succession received
brought in with **Jesus Yah Shua***
into the possession of the **Gentiles goyim**,
whom **God drave out Elohim expelled**
before from the face of our fathers,
unto the days of David;

46 Who found **favour charism**
before God in the sight of Elohim,
and **desired asked** to find a tabernacle
for the **God Elohim** of **Jacob Yaaqov**.

*Yah Shua: successor of Mosheh

ACTS 7

exeGes companion BIBLE

33 And Yah Veh says to him,
Loose your shoes from your feet:
for the place whereon you stand is holy land.

34 In seeing,
I see the vilification of my people in Misrayim
and I hear their sighing;
and descend to release them.
And now come, I apostolize you to Misrayim.

35 This Mosheh whom they denied, saying,
Who seated you an arch and judge?
this same **one** Elohim apostolized arch and redeemer
by the hand of the angel
who appeared to him in the brier.

Exodus 3:2—6

36 This **one** led them out,
after he made omens and signs
in the land of Misrayim and in the Reed sea,
and in the wilderness forty years:
this is that Mosheh,
who said to the sons of Yisra El,
Yah Veh your Elohim raises a prophet to you
of your brothers, like to me;
You, hear him.

Deuteronomy 18:15, 18, 19

38 This is he,
who became in the ecclesia in the wilderness
with the angel who spoke to him in the mount Sinay;
and with our fathers:
who received the living oracles to give to us:
to whom our fathers willed to not become obedient
but shoved him away from them,
and in their hearts returned to Misrayim,
saying to Aharon,
Make us elohim to precede us:
for this Mosheh,
who leads us from the land of Misrayim,
we know not what became of him.

41 And in those days, they make a calf
and bring sacrifice to the idol
and rejoice in the works of their own hands.

42 But Elohim turns,
and surrenders them
to liturgize the host of the heavens;
exactly as scribed in the scroll of the prophets,
You, house of Yisra El,
offer you slaughters and sacrifices to me
by the space of forty years in the wilderness?

43 Yes, you took the tabernacle of Molech
and the star of Kiyun, your el;
— types you made to worship:
and I exiled you beyond Babel.

44 Our fathers
had the tabernacle of witness in the wilderness,
exactly as he ordained,
speaking to Mosheh
to make it according to the type he saw:
which also our fathers,
having received in succession,
brought in with Yah Shua*
into the possession of the goyim
— whom Elohim expelled
from the face of our fathers
to the days of David;

46 who found charism in the sight of Elohim,
and asked to find a tabernacle
for the Elohim of Yaaqov.

*Yah Shua: successor of Mosheh

ACTS 7, 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

47 But Solomon **Sholomoh** built him an house.
48 *Howbeit the most High dwelleth* **Yet Elyon settleth** not
in *temples made with hands* **handmade naves;**
exactly as *saith wordeth* the prophet,
49 Heaven is my throne, and earth is my footstool:
what house *will shall* ye build me?
saith the Lord wordeth **Yah Veh:**
or what is the place of my **rest shabbath?**
Yesha Yah 66:1, 2
50 Hath not **indeed** my hand made all these *things?*
51 Ye *stiffnecked* **hardnaped**
and *uncircumcised* **noncircumcised** in heart and ears,
ye do always resist **ever oppose** the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit:**
as your fathers *did*, so do ye.
52 Which of the prophets
have not your fathers persecuted?
and they have *slain* **slaughtered** them
which *shewed before* **pre—evangelized**
of **concerning** the coming of the Just *One;*
of whom ye have been **become** now
the *betrayers* **traitors** and murderers:
53 Who have *received* **taken** the *law* **torah**
by **unto** the *disposition* **ordinance** of angels,
and have not *kept* **guarded** it.

STEPHANOS IS STONED

54 When they heard these *things*,
they were cut to the heart,
and they gnashed on him with their teeth.
55 But he, being full of the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
looked up stedfastly **stared** into heaven,
and saw the glory of *God* **Elohim**,
and *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
standing *on at* the right *hand* of *God* **Elohim**,
56 And said, Behold, I see **observe** the heavens opened,
and the Son of *man* **humanity**
standing *on at* the right *hand* of *God* **Elohim**.
57 Then **And** they cried out with a *loud* **mega** voice,
and *stopped* **held** their ears,
and ran **violently** upon him
with one accord **in unanimity**,
58 And cast him out of the city, and stoned him:
and the witnesses *laid put* down their *clothes* **garments**
at a *young man's feet* **the feet of a youth**,
whose name was Saul **called Shaul**.
59 And they stoned *Stephen* **Stephanos**,
calling upon *God* **Elohim**, and *saying* **wording**,
Lord Jesus Adonay Yah Shua, receive my spirit.
60 And he *kneeled down* **placed his knees**,
and cried with a *loud* **mega** voice,
Lord Adonay, *lay set* not this sin to their charge.
And when he had said this, he fell asleep.

8 And *Saul* **Shaul** was *consenting well—approving*
unto his death **his taking out**.

FOURTH PERSECUTION

And **so be it**, at that *time* **day**
there was a great a mega persecution
against upon the *church* **ecclesia**
which was at Jerusalem **in Yeru Shalem;**
and they were all *scattered abroad* **thoroughly dispersed**
throughout the regions
of *Judaea* **Yah Hudah** and *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
except the apostles.
2 And *devout well—received* men
carried *Stephen* **Stephanos** to *his burial*,
and made *great lamentation* **mega chopping** over him.
3 As for *Saul* **Shaul**,
he made *havock of* **ravaged** the *church* **ecclesia**,
entering into every house,
and *haling* **dragging** men and women
committed **delivered** them to *prison* **the guardhouse**.
4 Therefore **So indeed**
they that were *scattered abroad* **thoroughly dispersed**
went every where **passed through**
preaching **evangelizing** the word.

PHILIPPOS DOES SIGNS

5 Then *Philip* **And Philippos**
went down to the city of *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
and preached *Christ* **the Messiah** unto them.

ACTS 7, 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

47 But Sholomoh builds himself a house.
48 Elyon still settles not in handmade naves;
exactly as the prophet words,
49 The heavens are my throne
and earth is the stool of my feet!
What house build you *for* me?
words Yah Veh:
Or what is the place of my shabbath?
Yesha Yah 66:1, 2
50 Has not indeed my hand made all these?
51 You hardnaped and noncircumcised
in heart and ears,
you ever oppose the Holy Spirit.
As your fathers, also you.
52 Which of the prophets
have your fathers not persecuted?
And they slaughtered them
who pre—evangelized concerning the coming of the Just
— of whom you now become traitors and murderers:
53 who take the torah by the ordinance of angels,
and guard it not.

STEPHANOS IS STONED

54 They hear these and are cut to the heart;
and they gnash on him with their teeth:
55 but being full of the Holy Spirit,
he stares into the heavens
and sees the glory of Elohim;
and Yah Shua standing at the right of Elohim,
56 and says, Behold, I observe the heavens open,
and the Son of humanity
standing at the right of Elohim.
57 And they cry out with a mega voice
and hold their ears,
and run violently upon him in unanimity,
58 and cast him from the city, and stone him:
and the witnesses put down their garments
at the feet of a youth called Shaul:
59 and they stone Stephanos:
calling on Elohim, wording,
Adonay Yah Shua, receive my spirit.
60 And he places his knees
and cries with a mega voice,
Adonay, set not this sin to their charge.
— and saying this, he falls asleep.
8 — and Shaul well—approves his taking out.

FOURTH PERSECUTION

And so be it, in that day,
a mega persecution on the ecclesia in Yeru Shalem;
and they all thoroughly disperse
throughout the regions of Yah Hudah and Shomeron
— except the apostles.
2 And well—received men carry Stephanos
and make a mega chopping over him.
3 As for Shaul, he ravages the ecclesia
— entering every house,
and dragging men and women
and delivering them to the guardhouse.
4 So indeed, they thoroughly disperse
and pass through evangelizing the word.

PHILIPPOS DOES SIGNS

5 And Philippos goes down to the city of Shomeron
and preaches the Messiah to them:

ACTS 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 And the people with one accord **multitude in unanimity**
gave heed unto **heeded** those things
which *Philip spake* **Philippus worded**,
hearing and seeing the *miracles* **signs** which he did.
7 For *unclean* **impure** spirits,
crying with *loud* **mega** voice,
came out of many that were possessed with them:
and many *taken with palsies* **a paralytic**,
and *that were lame*, were **healed cured**.
8 And **so be it**,
there was great joy **a mega cheer** in that city.
9 But there was a *certain man*,
called Simon **named Shimon**,
which *beforetime* **previously** in the same city used sorcery,
and *bewitched* **astounded**
the people **goyim** of *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
giving out **wording** that himself was some *great* **mega** one:
10 To whom they all *gave heed* **heeded**,
from the least to the *greatest* **mega**, *saying* **wording**,
This man **one**
is the *great power* **mega dynamis** of *God* **Elohim**.
11 And to him they *had regard* **heeded**,
because that of long time
he had *bewitched* **astounded** them
with *sorceries* **magicing**.
12 But when they *believed Philip* **trusted Philippus**
preaching the things **evangelizing those**
concerning the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**,
and the name of *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**,
they were baptized, both men and women.
13 Then *Simon Shimon* himself *believed* **trusted** also:
and when he was baptized,
he continued with *Philip* **Philippus**,
and *wondered* **was astounded**,
beholding **observing**
the *miracles* **dynamis** and **mega** signs
which *were done* **became**.
14 Now **And** when the apostles
which were at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
heard that *Samaria* **Shomeron**
had received the word of *God* **Elohim**,
they *sent* **apostolized** unto them
Peter **Petros** and *John* **Yahn**:
15 Who, when they *were come down* **descended**,
prayed *for* **concerning** them,
that they might *receive* **take** the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**:
16 (For as yet he was fallen upon none of them:
only they were baptized
in the name of the *Lord* **Jesus Adonay Yah Shua**.)
17 Then *laid* **put** they their hands on them,
and they *received* **took** the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.
18 And when *Simon saw* **Shimon observed**
that through laying on of the apostles' hands
the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit** was given,
he offered them *money* **riches**,
19 *Saying* **Wording**, Give me also this *power* **authority**,
that on whomsoever I *lay* **put** hands,
he may *receive* **take** the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.
20 But *Peter* **Petros** said unto him,
Thy *money* **silver**
perish with thee **be unto thy destruction**,
because thou hast *thought* **presumed**
that the *gift* **gratuity** of *God* **Elohim**
may be *purchased with money* **acquired through riches**.
21 Thou hast neither part nor lot in this *matter* **word**:
for thy heart is not *right* **straight**
in the sight of *God* **Elohim**.
22 **So** Repent *therefore* of this thy *wickedness* **malice**,
and *pray* **God** **petition Elohim**,
if *perhaps* **indeed** the *thought* **mind** of thine heart
may be forgiven thee.
23 For I *perceive* **see**
that thou art in the *gall* **cholér** of bitterness,
and in the bond of iniquity.
24 Then answered *Simon* **Shimon**, and said,
Pray **Petition** ye to the *Lord* **Adonay** for me,

ACTS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 and in unanimity
the multitude heeds what Philippus words
— hearing and seeing the signs he does.
7 For impure spirits, crying with mega voice,
come from many of the possessed:
and many paralyzed and lame are cured;
8 and so be it, a mega cheer in that city.
9 But some man named Shimon,
who previously used sorcery in the same city,
who astounded the goyim of Shomeron;
wording that *he* himself is some mega one:
10 whom they all heed,
from the least to the mega, wording,
This *one* is the mega dynamis of Elohim.
11 — and they heed him,
because he astounded them with magicing
for a long time.
12 But when they trust Philippus
evangelizing those
concerning the sovereigndom of Elohim
and the name of Yah Shua Messiah,
they are baptized — both men and women:
13 and Shimon himself also trusts:
and being baptized, he continues with Philippus;
and is astounded,
observing the dynamis and mega signs that become.
14 And the apostles at Yeru Shalem hear
that a Shomeron receives the word of Elohim,
they apostolize Petros and Yahn to them:
15 who, having descended,
pray concerning them to take the Holy Spirit:
16 — for as yet he had fallen on none of them
— only being baptized
in the name of Adonay Yah Shua.
17 Then they put their hands on them,
and they take the Holy Spirit.
18 And when Shimon observes
that the Holy Spirit is given
through laying on of the hands of the apostles,
he offers them riches,
19 wording, Give me also this authority,
that on whomever I put hands,
he takes the Holy Spirit.
20 But Petros says to him,
Your silver be to your destruction!
— because you presume that the gratuity of Elohim
is acquired through riches.
21 You have neither part nor lot in this word:
for your heart is not straight in the sight of Elohim.
22 So repent of this your malice;
and petition Elohim,
if indeed the mind of your heart be forgiven you:
23 for I see you are in the cholér of bitterness
and in the bond of iniquity.
24 And Shimon answers, saying,
You, petition Adonay for me,

ACTS 8, 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

that none of these *things* which ye have *spoken* **said**
come upon me.

25 And therefore **So indeed** they,
when they had *testified* **witnessed**
and *preached* **spoken** the word of the *Lord* **Adonay**,
returned to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and *preached the gospel* **evangelized**
in many villages of the *Samaritans* **Shomeroniym**.

PHILIPPOS AND THE ETHIOPIAN

26 And the angel of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**
spake unto *Philip* **Philippos**, saying **wording**,
Arise, and go toward the *south* **midday**
unto the way
that *goeth down* **descendeth** from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
unto *Gaza* **Azzah**, which is *desert* **desolate**.

27 And he arose and went: and, behold, a man
of *Ethiopia* — **an Ethiopian**,
an eunuch of *great authority* — **a dynast** under Candace
queen **sovereignness** of the Ethiopians,
who had the charge of all her treasure,
and had come to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** for to worship,

28 Was returning, and sitting *in* **upon** his chariot
read *Esaïas* **Yesha Yah** the prophet.

29 Then the Spirit said unto *Philip* **Philippos**,
Go near, and join thyself to this chariot.

30 And *Philip* **Philippos** ran *thither* to him,
and heard him read the prophet *Esaïas* **Yesha Yah**,
and said, **Yet indeed**,
Understandest **Knowest** thou **then** what thou reatest?

31 And he said, **Indeed**, How can I,
except **unless** some *man* **one** should guide me?
And he *desired* *Philip* **besought Philippos**
that he *would come up* **should ascend** and sit with him.

32 The *place* **passage** of the scripture which he read
was this,
He was led as a sheep to the slaughter;
and *like as* a lamb
dumb before **voiceless in front of** his shearer,
so **thus** opened he not his mouth:

33 In his humiliation his judgment was taken away:
and who shall declare his generation?
for his life is taken from the earth.

Yesha Yah 53:7, 8

34 And the eunuch answered *Philip* **Philippos**,
and said, I *pray* **petition** thee,
of **concerning** whom *speaketh* **wordeth** the prophet this?
of **concerning** himself, or of **concerning** some other *man*?

35 Then *Philip* **And Philippos** opened his mouth,
and began *at* **from** the same scripture,
and preached unto him *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.

36 And as they went on their way,
they came unto a *certain* water:
and the eunuch said, See **Behold**, *here is* water;
what *doth hinder* **forbiddeth** me to be baptized?

37 And *Philip* **Philippos** said,
If thou *believest with* **trustest from** all thine heart,
thou *mayest* **art allowed**.
And he answered and said,
I *believe* **trust** that *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**
is the Son of *God* **Elohim**.

38 And he *commanded* **summoned** the chariot
to stand *still*:
and they *went down* **descended** both into the water,
both *Philip* **Philippos** and the eunuch;
and he baptized him.

39 And when they *were come up* **ascended**
out of the water,
the Spirit of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**
caught away *Philip* **seized Philippos**,
that the eunuch saw him no more:
and **indeed** he went on his way *rejoicing* **cheering**.

40 But *Philip* **Philippos** was found at *Azotus* **Ashdod**:
and passing through
he *preached* **evangelized** in all the cities,
till he came to *Caesarea* **Kaisaria**.

9

And *Saul* **Shaul**,
yet breathing out threatenings and *slaughter* **murder**

ACTS 8, 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

that none of these that you say come upon me.

25 So indeed,
having witnessed and spoken the word of Adonay,
they return to Yeru Shalem,
and evangelize in many villages of the Shomeroniym.

PHILIPPOS AND THE ETHIOPIAN

26 And the angel of Yah Veh
speaks to Philippos, wording,
Rise, and go toward the midday
to the way that descends from Yeru Shalem
— to Azzah — this is desolate.

27 And he rises and goes: and behold, a man
— an Ethiopian eunuch — a dynast under Candace
sovereignness of the Ethiopians
who has the charge of all her treasure,
and he comes to Yeru Shalem to worship;

28 and in returning;
sits on his chariot reading Yesha Yah the prophet.

29 And the Spirit says to Philippos,
Go near, and join yourself to this chariot.

30 And Philippos runs,
and hears him read the prophet Yesha Yah,
and says, Yet indeed, know you then what you read?

31 And he says, Indeed, how can I,
unless someone guides me?
— and he beseeches Philippos to ascend and sit with him.

32 The passage of the scripture he reads is this:
He is led as a sheep to the slaughter;
and as a lamb voiceless in front of his shearer,
thus he opens not his mouth:

33 in his humiliation his judgment is taken away:
And who declares his generation?
— for his life is taken from the earth.

Yesha Yah 53:7, 8

34 And the eunuch answers Philippos,
saying, I petition you,
concerning whom words the prophet this?
Concerning himself? Or concerning some other?

35 And Philippos opens his mouth
and begins from the same scripture
and preaches Yah Shua to him:

36 and as they go their way, they come to a water:
and the eunuch says, Behold, water!
What forbids me to be baptized?

37 And Philippos says,
If you trust from all your heart, you are allowed.

And he answers, saying,
I trust that Yah Shua Messiah is the Son of Elohim.

38 And he summons the chariot to stand:
and they both descend into the water
— both Philippos and the eunuch;
and he baptizes him.

39 And when they ascend from the water
the Spirit of Yah Veh seizes Philippos
so that the eunuch sees him no more:
and indeed he goes on his way cheering.
But Philippos is found at Ashdod:
and passing through
he evangelizes in all the cities
until he comes to Kaisaria.

9

And Shaul,
still breathing out threatenings and murder

YAH SHUA CONFRONTS SHAUL

ACTS 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

against **unto** the disciples of the Lord **Adonay**,
went unto the *high* **arch** priest,
2 And *desired* **asked** of him *letters* **epistles**
to *Damascus* **Dammeseq** to the synagogues,
that *if* **whenever** he found any **being** of this way,
whether they were men or women,
he might bring them bound unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
3 And as he *journeyed* **went**, **so be it**,
he *came near* **Damascus** **approached** **Dammeseq**:
and suddenly
there shined round about him **he was enveloped**
in a light from heaven:
4 And he fell to the earth,
and heard a voice *saying* **wording** unto him,
Saul, Saul **Shaul, Shaul**, why persecutest thou me?
5 And he said, Who art thou, *Lord* **Adonay**?
And the *Lord* **Adonay** said,
I am Jesus **I AM Yah Shua** whom thou persecutest:
it is hard for thee to *kick* **heel** against the *pricks* **stings**.
6 And he trembling and astonished said, *Lord* **Adonay**,
what *wilt* **willest** thou have me to do?
And the *Lord* **Adonay** said unto him,
Arise, and *go into* **enter** the city,
and it shall be *told* **spoken** thee what thou must do.
7 And the men which journeyed with him
stood *speechless* **nodding**,
indeed hearing a voice, but *seeing* **observing** no *man* **one**.
8 And *Saul* **Shaul** arose from the earth;
and when his eyes were opened, he saw no *man* **one**:
but they **hand** led him *by the hand*,
and brought him into *Damascus* **Dammeseq**.
9 And he was three days *without sight* **not seeing**,
and neither did eat nor drink.
10 And there was a *certain* disciple at *Damascus* **Dammeseq**,
named *Ananias* **Hanan Yah**;
and to him said the *Lord* **Adonay** in a vision,
Ananias **Hanan Yah**.
And he said, Behold, *I am here*, *Lord* **I — Adonay**.
11 And the *Lord* **Adonay** said unto him, Arise,
and go into the street which is called Straight,
and *enquire* **seek** in the house of *Judas* **Yah Hudah**
for one called *Saul* **named Shaul**, of *Tarsus* — **a Tarsiy**:
for, behold, he prayeth,
12 And hath seen in a vision
a man named *Ananias* **coming in** **Hanan Yah entering**,
and putting his hand on him,
that he might *receive his sight* **see**.
13 Then *Ananias* **And Hanan Yah** answered, *Lord* **Adonay**,
I have heard by many of **concerning** this man,
how much evil **as many evils** as he hath done
to thy *saints* **holy** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
14 And here he hath authority from the *chief* **arch** priests
to bind all that call on thy name.
15 *But the Lord* **And Adonay** said unto him, Go thy way:
for he is a *chosen* **selected** vessel unto me,
to bear my name
before **in the sight** of the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
and *kings* **sovereigns**,
and the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
16 For I will *shew* **shall exemplify** him
how great things **as much as** he must suffer
for my name's sake.
SHAUL FILLS/SHALAMS WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT
17 And *Ananias* **Hanan Yah** went *his way*,
and entered into the house;
and putting his hands on him said, Brother *Saul* **Shaul**,
the Lord **Adonay**, even *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
that appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest,
hath *sent* **apostolized** me,
that thou mightest *receive thy sight* **see**,
and be filled/**shalamed** with the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.
18 And *immediately* **straightway** there fell from his eyes
as it *had been* **scales** **were leperous flakes**:
and **immediately** he *received sight* **forthwith saw**,
and arose, and was baptized.

ACTS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to the disciples of Adonay,
goes to the archpriest,
2 and asks him for epistles to Dammeseq
— to the synagogues;
that whenever he finds any being of this way,
whether men or women,
to bring them bound to Yeru Shalem.
3 And as he goes, so be it, he approaches Dammeseq:
and suddenly he is enveloped
in a light from the heavens
and he falls to the earth:
4 and he hears a voice wording to him,
Shaul, Shaul, why persecute you me?
5 And he says, Who are you, Adonay?
And Adonay says,
I AM Yah Shua whom you persecute:
it is hard for you to heel against the stings.
6 And trembling and astonished,
he says, Adonay, what will you that I do?
And Adonay says to him, Rise and enter the city,
to be spoken to as to what to do.
7 — and the men journeying with him stand nodding
— indeed hearing a voice but observing no one.
8 And Shaul rises from the earth;
— his eyes are open but he sees no one:
but they hand lead him and bring him to Dammeseq:
9 and he is three days not seeing,
and neither eats nor drinks.
10 And there is a disciple at Dammeseq
named Hanan Yah;
and Adonay says to him in a vision,
Hanan Yah!
And he says, Behold, I — Adonay.
11 And Adonay says to him, Rise,
and go to the street called Straight,
and in the house of Yah Hudah
seek for one named Shaul — a Tarsiy:
for, behold, he prays:
12 and in a vision
he sees a man named Hanan Yah entering,
and putting his hand on him, to see.
13 And Hanan Yah answers, Adonay,
I hear from many concerning this man,
as many evils as he does to your holy at Yeru Shalem:
14 and here he has authority from the archpriests
to bind all who call on your name.
15 And Adonay says to him, Go your way:
for he is a selected vessel to me
to bear my name in the sight of the goyim
and sovereigns and the sons of Yisra El:
16 for I exemplify to him
as much as he must suffer for sake of my name.
SHAUL FILLS/SHALAMS WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT
17 And Hanan Yah goes and enters the house;
and putting his hands on him, says, Brother Shaul,
Adonay, even Yah Shua,
who appeared to you in the way as you came,
apostolized me
so that you see and fill/shalam with the Holy Spirit.
18 And straightway,
as leperous flakes fall from his eyes:
and immediately he sees and rises and is baptized:

ACTS 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

19 And when he had *received meat* **taken nourishment**,
he was *strengthened* **invigorated**.
Then was *Saul certain* **Shaul some** days
with the disciples which were at *Damascus* **Dammeseq**.
SHAUL PREACHES THE MESSIAH

20 And straightway
he preached *Christ the* **Messiah** in the synagogues,
that he is the Son of *God* **Elohim**.
21 *But And* all that heard him were *amazed* **astounded**,
and *said* **worded**;
Is not this he that *destroyed* **ravaged** them
which called on this name in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and came hither *for that intent*,
that he might bring them bound
unto the *chief* **arch** priests?
22 But *Saul* **Shaul**
increased the more in strength **dynamized much**,
and *confounded* **confused** the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
which *dwelt at Damascus* **settled in Dammeseq**,
proving **concluding** that this is *very Christ* **the Messiah**.
23 And after that many days were *fulfilled/shalamed*,
the *Jews took counsel* **Yah Hudiym counseled**
to *kill* **take** him **out**:
24 But their *laying await* **plotting**
was known of *Saul* **Shaul**.
And they *watched* **observed** the gates day and night
to *kill* **take** him **out**.
25 Then *But* the disciples took him by night,
and *let* **lowered** him *down by* **through** the wall
in a basket.
SHAUL IN YERU SHALEM

26 And when *Saul* **Shaul**
was come to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
he *assayed* **tried** to join himself to the disciples:
but and they were all *afraid of* **awed** him,
and *believed* **trusted** not that he was a disciple.
27 But *Barnabas* **Bar Nabi** took him,
and brought him to the apostles,
and declared unto them
how he had seen *the Lord* **Adonay** in the way,
and that he had spoken to him,
and how he had *preached boldly* **emboldened**
at *Damascus* **Dammeseq**
in the name of *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.
28 And he was with them
coming in **entering** and *going out* **departing**
at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.
29 And he *spake boldly* **emboldened**
in the name of the Lord Jesus,
and disputed against the *Grecians* **Hellenists**:
but they *went about* **took in hand**
to *slay him* **take** him **out**.
SHAUL IN TARSUS

30 Which when the brethren knew,
they brought him down to *Caesarea* **Kaisaria**,
and *sent* **apostolized** him forth to Tarsus.
31 Then *So indeed*
had the *churches rest* **ecclesiae shalom**
throughout all *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**
and *Galilee* **Galiyl** and *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
and were *edified* **built up**;
and walking in the *fear* **awe** of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**,
and in the *comfort* **consolation** of the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
were multiplied.
PETROS HEALS A PARALYTIC

32 And *so be* it *came to pass*,
as *Peter* **Petros** passed throughout *all quarters*,
he came down also to the *saints* **holy**
which *dwelt* **settled** at *Lydda* **Lod**.
33 And there he found a *certain man* **human** named Aeneas,
which had *kept* **lain upon** his *bed* **pad** eight years,
and was *sick of the palsy* **a paralytic**.
34 And *Peter* **Petros** said unto him, Aeneas,
Jesus Christ **Yah Shua the Messiah**
maketh **healeth** thee *whole*:
arise, and *make thy bed* **spread**.
And he arose *immediately* **straightway**.

ACTS 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

19 and he takes nourishment and invigorates.
and for some days
Shaul is with the disciples at Dammeseq.
SHAUL PREACHES THE MESSIAH

20 And straightway, in the synagogues,
he preaches that the Messiah is the Son of Elohim.
21 And all who hear him are astounded,
and word; Is not this he who ravages those
who call on this name in Yeru Shalem,
and comes here
to bring them bound to the archpriests?
22 But Shaul, much dynamized,
confuses the Yah Hudiym who settle in Dammeseq,
concluding that this is the Messiah.

23 And after many days fulfill/shalam,
the Yah Hudiym counsel to take him out:
24 but Shaul knows of their plotting:
and they observe the gates day and night
to take him out:
25 but the disciples take him by night
and lower him through the wall in a basket.
SHAUL IN YERU SHALEM

26 And Shaul comes to Yeru Shalem,
and tries to join himself to the disciples:
and they all awe him
and trust not that he is a disciple.
27 But Bar Nabi takes him,
and brings him to the apostles,
and declares to them
how he saw Adonay in the way, and spoke to him;
and how he emboldened at Dammeseq
in the name of Yah Shua.

28 And he is with them at Yeru Shalem
— entering and departing:
29 and emboldened,
he speaks and disputes against the Hellenists:
and they take in hand to take him out.
SHAUL IN TARSUS

30 But the brothers know,
and descend him to Kaisaria,
and apostolize him to Tarsus.
31 So indeed the ecclesiae has shalom
throughout all Yah Hudah and Galiyl and Shomeron;
and being built
and walking in the awe of Yah Veh
and in the consolation of the Holy Spirit
they multiply.
PETROS HEALS A PARALYTIC

32 And so be it, as Petros passes through,
he also comes down to the holy who settle at Lod:
33 and there he finds a human named Aeneas
who lays on his pad eight years paralyzed.
34 And Petros says to him, Aeneas,
Yah Shua the Messiah heals you!
Rise, and spread!
— and straightway he rises:

ACTS 9, 10

exeGes ready research BIBLE

35 And all that dwelt settled
at Lydda **Lod** and Saron **Sharon** saw him,
and turned to the *Lord Adonay*.

PETROS RAISES ONE DEAD

36 Now **And** there was at Joppa **Yapho**
a *certain* disciple* named Tabitha,
which *by interpretation* translates
is called *Dorcas* **worded, Gazelle:**
this woman **one**
was full of good works and *almsdeeds* **mercies**
which she did.

*feminine: a female disciple.

37 And **so be** it came to pass in those days,
that she was *sick* **frail**, and died:
whom when they had *washed* **bathed**,
they *laid* **placed** her in an upper *chamber* **loft**.
38 And *forasmuch as* Lydda **Lod** was nigh to Joppa **Yapho**,
and the disciples had heard that *Peter* **Petros** was there,
they *sent* **apostolized** unto him two men,
desiring **beseeching** him
that he *would* **should** not *delay* **hesitate**
to *come* **pass through** to them.
39 Then *Peter* **Petros** arose and went with them.
When he was come,
they brought him into the upper *chamber* **loft**:
and all the widows stood by him weeping,
and shewing the *coats* **tunics** and garments
which *Dorcas* — **as many as** *Gazelle* made,
while she was with them.
40 But *Peter* put **Petros** cast them all *forth* **out**,
and *kneeled down* **placed his knees**, and prayed;
and turning him to the body said, *Tabitha*, arise.
And she opened her eyes:
and when she saw *Peter* **Petros**, she sat up.
41 And he gave her his hand, and *lifted* **raised** her up,
and when he had called the *saints* **holy** and widows,
presented her alive.
42 And it was **became** known
throughout all Joppa **Yapho**;
and many *believed* **trusted** in the *Lord* **Adonay**.
43 And **so be** it came to pass,
that he *tarried* **abode** many days in Joppa **Yapho**
with one *Simon* **Shimon** a tanner.

THE VISION OF CORNELIUS

10 But There was a *certain* man in *Caesarea* **Kaisaria**
called **named** Cornelius,
a centurion of the *band* **squad** called the *Italian band*,
2 A *devout man* **well revered**,
and one that *feared God* **awed Elohim** with all his house,
which *gave much alms* **did many mercies** to the people,
and *prayed* **petitioned** to *God* **alway Elohim continually**.
3 He saw in a vision *evidently* **manifestly**
about the ninth hour of the day
an angel of *God* **Elohim** *coming in* **entering** to him,
and saying unto him, Cornelius.
4 And when he *looked on* **stared at** him,
he was *afraid* **became awestricken**, and said,
What is it, *Lord* **Adonay**?
And he said unto him,
Thy prayers and *thine alms* **thy mercies**
are *come up for* **ascended unto** a memorial
before God **in the sight of Elohim**.
5 And now send men to Joppa **Yapho**,
and *call for one* **Simon** **summon Shimon**,
whose surname is *Peter* **who is called Petros**:
6 He lodgeth with one *Simon* **Shimon** a tanner,
whose house is by the sea side:
he shall *tell* **speak to** thee what thou *oughtest to* **must** do.
7 And when the angel which spake unto Cornelius
was departed,
he called two of his *household servants* **housekeepers**,
and a *devout soldier* **well—revered warrior**
of them that waited on him *continually*;
8 And when he had declared all these *things* unto them,
he *sent* **apostolized** them to Joppa **Yapho**.

THE VISION OF PETROS

9 On the morrow,

ACTS 9, 10

exeGes companion BIBLE

35 and all who settle at Lod and Sharon see him
and turn to Adonay.

PETROS RAISES ONE DEAD

36 And there is a disciple* at Yapho named Tabitha,
which translates worded, Gazelle:
this one is full of good works and mercies
which she does.

*feminine: a female disciple.

37 And so be it, in those days, she is frail, and dies:
and they bathe her and place her in an upper loft.
38 And so be it, Lod is near Yapho,
and the disciples hear that Petros is there,
and they apostolize two men to him,
beseeching him to not hesitate
to pass through to them;
39 — and Petros rises and goes with them.

And he comes,
and they bring him into the upper loft:
and all the widows stand by him weeping
and showing the tunics and garments
— as many as Gazelle made, being with them.

40 But Petros casts them all out,
and places his knees and prays;
and turning to the body, he says, Tabitha, Rise!

And she opens her eyes;
and seeing Petros, she sits:
41 and he gives her *his* hand and raises her;
and calls the holy and widows
and presents her alive.
42 And it became known throughout all Yapho;
and many trust in Adonay.
43 And so be it,
he abides in Yapho many days
with one Shimon a tanner.

THE VISION OF CORNELIUS

10 But there is a man in Kaisaria named Cornelius
— a centurion of the squad called Italian;
2 well revered,
and one who awes Elohim with all his house;
who does many mercies to the people;
and petitions to Elohim continually.

3 About the ninth hour of the day
he sees manifest in a vision
an angel of Elohim entering to him,
and saying to him, Cornelius!

4 And he stares at him, and becomes awestricken,
and says, What is it, Adonay?

And he says to him,
Your prayers and your mercies
ascend to a memorial in the sight of Elohim:
5 and now send men to Yapho,
and summon Shimon who is called Petros:
6 he lodges with one Shimon a tanner
whose house is by the sea side:
he speaks to you what you must do.

7 And the angel who speaks to Cornelius departs:
and he calls two of his housekeepers,
and a well—revered warrior
of those who wait on him;
8 and he declares all these to them
and apostolizes them to Yapho.

THE VISION OF PETROS

9 On the morrow,

ACTS 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

as they went on their journey **journeyed**,
and drew nigh unto **approached** the city,
Peter **Petros**
went up **ascended** upon the housetop to pray
about the sixth hour:
10 And he became very **intensely** hungry,
and would **willed to** have eaten **tasted**:
but while they made ready **prepared**,
he fell into a trance **an ecstasis fell upon him**,
11 And saw **observed** heaven opened,
and a certain vessel descending upon him,
as it had been a great sheet — **a mega linen**
knit **bound** at the four corners **beginnings**,
and let down to the earth:
12 Wherein were all *manner*
of fourfooted beasts **quadrepeds** of the earth,
and wild beasts, and *creeping things* **creepers**,
and fowls **flyers** of the air **heavens**.
13 And **so be it**, there came a voice to him,
Rise, Peter **Petros**; **kill sacrifice**, and eat.
14 But Peter **Petros** said, *Not so* **No way, Lord Adonay**;
for I have never **ever** eaten *any thing* **ought**
that is *common* **profane** or *unclean* **impure**.
15 And the voice spake unto him again the second time
a second voice to him,
What God **Elohim** hath *cleansed* **purified**,
that call not thou *common* **thou shalt not profane**.
16 And This was *done* **became** thrice:
and the vessel was *received up* **taken** again into heaven.
17 Now **And** while Peter **Petros**
doubted **was thoroughly perplexed** in himself
what this vision which he had seen should *mean* **ever be**,
behold,
the men which were *sent* **apostolized** from Cornelius
had *made enquiry* **thoroughly interrogated**
for *Simon's* **Shimon's** house,
and stood *before* **by** the gate,
18 And called, and asked whether *Simon* **Shimon**,
which was *surnamed* Peter **called Petros**,
were lodged there.
19 While Peter thought **But as Petros pondered**
on **about** the vision,
the Spirit said unto him, Behold, three men seek thee.
20 **But** Arise *therefore*, and *get thee down* **descend**,
and go with them, doubting *nothing* **naught**:
for **because** I have *sent* **apostolized** them.
21 Then Peter went down **And Petros descended** to the men
which were *sent* **apostolized** unto him from Cornelius;
and said, Behold, I am he whom ye seek:
what is the cause wherefore ye are *come* **present**?
22 And they said, Cornelius the centurion,
a just man, and one that *feareth* God **aweth Elohim**,
and of *good report* **well** — **witnessed**
among **by** all the *nation* **goyim** of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**,
was *warned from* God **oracled** by an holy angel
to *send for* **summon** thee into his house,
and to hear *words* **rhema** of thee.
23 Then called **So** he **invited** them *in*, and lodged them.
And on the morrow Peter **Petros** went away with them,
and *certain* **some** brethren from *Joppa* **Yapho**
accompanied **came with** him.
24 And the morrow after
they entered into *Caesarea* **Kaisaria**.
And Cornelius *waited for* **awaited** them,
and he had called together
his kinsmen and *near* **dependant** friends.
25 And as Peter was *coming in* **Petros entered**,
Cornelius met him,
and fell *down* at his feet, and worshipped him.
26 But Peter took **Petros raised** him up, saying **wording**,
Stand up **Arise**; I myself also am a *man* **human**.
27 And as he *talked* **conversed** with him,
he went *in* **entered**,
and found many that were come together.
28 And he said unto them,
Ye know **understand** how that it is *an unlawful thing* **illicit**
for a man *that is a Jew* — **a Yah Hudy**
to *keep company* **join**,
or come unto one of another *nation* **scion**;

ACTS 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

as they journey and approach the city,
Petros ascends on the housetop to pray
at about the sixth hour;
10 and he becomes intensely famished
and wills to taste:
but as they prepare, an ecstasis falls on him;
11 and he observes the heavens open;
and a vessel descends on him
as a mega linen bound at the four beginnings,
and lowers to the earth:
12 wherein are all quadrepeds of the earth
and beasts and creepers
and flyers of the heavens:
13 and so be it, a voice to him,
Rise, Petros! Sacrifice, and eat!
14 But Petros says, No way, Adonay;
for I never ever ate aught profane or impure.
15 And a second voice to him,
What Elohim purifies, you profane not!
16 And this becomes thrice:
and the vessel is taken again into the heavens.
17 And as Petros
is thoroughly perplexed in himself
whatever this vision he sees, be,
behold, the men apostolized from Cornelius
thoroughly interrogate for the house of Shimon,
and stand by the gate,
18 and call, and ask whether Shimon called Petros,
lodges there.
19 But as Petros ponders about the vision;
the Spirit says to him,
Behold, three men seek you!
20 But rise and descend
and go with them — doubting naught:
because I apostolized them.
21 And Petros descends to the men
apostolized to him from Cornelius;
and says, Behold, I am whom you seek:
for what cause you are present?
22 And they say, Cornelius the centurion,
a just man, and one who awes Elohim,
and well — witnessed
by all the goyim of the Yah Hudiym,
was oracled by a holy angel to summon you to his house,
and to hear rhema of you.
23 So he invites them, and lodges them:
and on the morrow Petros goes with them,
and some brothers from Yapho come with him:
24 and on the morrow after, they enter Kaisaria.
And Cornelius awaits them,
and he calls together
his kinsmen and dependant friends:
25 and as Petros enters, Cornelius meets him,
and falls at his feet, and worships him.
26 And Petros raises him, wording,
Rise! I myself also am a human!
27 And as he converses with him, he enters,
and finds many come together:
28 and he says to them,
You understand how that it is illicit for a man
— a Yah Hudy to join
or come to one of another scion;

ACTS 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but God **But Elohim** hath shewed me
that I should not *call* **word** any *man* **human**
common **profane** or *unclean* **impure**.
29 Therefore **So** came I *unto you*
without gainsaying **unquestioningly**,
as soon as I was *sent for* **summoned**:
So I ask *therefore*
for what *intent* **word** ye have *sent for* **summoned** me?
30 And Cornelius said,
For Four days *ago* I was fasting until this hour;
and at the ninth hour I prayed in my house, and, behold,
a man stood *before me* **in my sight**
in bright clothing **radiant apparel**,
31 And said, Cornelius, thy prayer is heard,
and *thine alms* **thy mercies**
are *had in remembrance* **remembered**
in the sight of *God* **Elohim**.
32 **So** Send *therefore* to *Joppa* **Yapho**,
and call *hither* *Simon* **Shimon**,
whose surname is Peter **called Petros**;
he is lodged in the house of *one Simon* **Shimon**
a tanner by the sea side:
who, when he cometh, shall speak unto thee.
33 **So** Immediately *therefore* I sent to thee;
and thou hast well done that thou art come.
So Now *therefore* are we all here present
before God **in the sight of Elohim**,
to hear all *things* **those**
that are commanded thee of *God* **Elohim**.
THE FOURTH MESSAGE OF PETROS
34 Then *Peter* **Petros** opened his mouth, and said,
Of a truth I *perceive* **overtake**
that *God* **Elohim** is *no respecter of persons* **not partial**:
35 But in every *nation* **goyim**, he that *feareth* **aweth** him,
and worketh *righteousness* **justness**,
is *accepted* **acceptable** with him.
36 The word which *God* sent **Elohim** **apostolized**
unto the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
preaching peace **evangelizing shalom**
by Jesus Christ **through Yah Shua Messiah**:
(he is *Lord* **Adonay** of all:)
37 That *word* **rhema**, I say, ye know,
which was *published* **became**
throughout all *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**,
and began from *Galilee* **Galiyl**,
after the baptism which *John* **Yahn** preached;
38 How *God* **Elohim**
anointed *Jesus of Nazareth* **Yah Shua the Nazarene**
with the *Holy Ghost* **Spirit** and with *power* **dynamis**:
who went *about* **passed through**
doing good **working well**,
and healing all
that were *oppressed* **overpowered** of the *devil* **Diabolos**;
for *God* **Elohim** was with him.
39 And we are witnesses of all *things* which he did
both in the *land* **region** of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**,
and in *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**;
whom they *slew* **took out** and hanged on a *tree* **staff**:
40 Him *God* **Elohim** raised *up* the third day,
and *shewed* **gave him openly** **to become manifest**;
41 Not to all the people,
but unto witnesses
chosen before **preselected** of *God* **Elohim**,
even to us,
who did eat and drink with him
after he rose from the dead.
42 And he *commanded* **evangelized** us
to preach unto the people,
and to *testify* **witness** that it is he
which was *ordained* **decreed** of *God* **Elohim**
to be the Judge of *quick* **living** and dead.
43 To him give all the prophets witness,
that through his name
whosoever *believeth* **trusteth** in him
shall *receive remission* **take forgiveness** of sins.

HOLY SPIRIT Poured ON THE GOYIM

44 While *Peter* **Petros** yet spake these *words* **rhema**,
the *Holy Ghost* **Spirit** fell on all them which heard the word.

ACTS 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and Elohim showed me
that I not word any human profane or impure:
29 so I come unquestioningly
as soon as summoned:
So I ask, for what word summon you me?
30 And Cornelius says,
I fasted four days until this hour;
and at the ninth hour I prayed in my house,
and behold,
a man standing in my sight in radiant apparel,
31 and says, Cornelius, your prayer is heard,
and your mercies are remembered
in the sight of Elohim:
32 so send to Yapho,
and call Shimon called Petros;
he lodges in the house of Shimon
a tanner by the sea side:
who, when he comes, speaks to you.
33 So immediately I sent to you;
and you do well in coming.
So now we are all here present in the sight of Elohim,
to hear all those Elohim commanded you.

THE FOURTH MESSAGE OF PETROS

34 And Petros opens his mouth, and says,
Of a truth I overtake that Elohim is not partial:
35 but in every goyim,
whoever awes him and works justness
is acceptable with him.
36 The word Elohim apostolized to the sons of Yisra El,
evangelizing shalom through Yah Shua Messiah:
— he is Adonay of all:
37 that rhema, you know,
became throughout all Yah Hudah,
beginning from Galiyl,
as to the baptism Yahn preached:
38 how Elohim anointed Yah Shua the Nazarene
with the Holy Spirit and with dynamis:
who passed through working well,
and healing all who were overpowered by Diabolos
— for Elohim was with him.
39 And we are witnesses of all he did
both in the region of the Yah Hudiym
and in Yeru Shalem;
whom they took out and hanged on a staff:
40 whom Elohim raised the third day
and gave him to become manifest
41 — not to all the people,
but to witnesses preselected by Elohim
— to us who ate and drank with him
after he rose from the dead:
42 and he evangelized us to preach to the people,
and to witness that it is he who is decreed of Elohim
to be the Judge of living and dead:
43 to whom all the prophets witness,
that through his name
whoever trusts in him takes forgiveness of sins.

HOLY SPIRIT Poured ON THE GOYIM

44 While Petros still speaks these rhema,
the Holy Spirit falls on all who hear the word:

ACTS 10, 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

45 And they of the circumcision which *believed trusted*
were *astonished astounded*,
as many as came with *Peter Petros*,
because that on the *Gentiles goyim* also
was poured out the *gift gratuity* of the Holy *Ghost Spirit*.
46 For they heard them speak with tongues,
and magnify *God Elohim*.
Then answered *Peter Petros*,
47 Can any *man one* forbid water,
that these should not be baptized,
which have *received taken* the Holy *Ghost Spirit*
exactly as well as we?
48 And he commanded them to be baptized
in the name of *the Lord Adonay*.
Then *prayed asked* they him
to *tarry certain abide some* days.

THE VISION OF CORNELIUS: PETROS RELATES HIS VISION

11 And the apostles and brethren
that were in *Judaea Yah Hudah*
heard that the *Gentiles goyim*
had also received the word of *God Elohim*.
2 And when *Peter Petros*
was come up ascended to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
they that were of the circumcision contended with him,
3 *Saying Wording*,
Thou *wentest in interest* to men uncircumcised,
and didst eat with them.
4 But *Peter Petros*
rehearsed the matter from the beginning began,
and expounded it *by order in sequence* unto them,
saying wording,
5 I was in the city of *Joppa Yapho* praying:
and in a *trance an ecstasis* I saw a vision,
A *certain vessel descend*,
as *it had been a great sheet a mega linen*,
let down from heaven by four *corners beginnings*;
and it came *even* to me:
6 *Upon Unto* the which
when I had *fastened mine eyes stared*,
I *considered perceived*,
and saw *fourfooted beasts quadreped*s of the earth,
and *wild beasts*, and *creeping things creepers*,
and *fowls flyers* of the *air heavens*.
7 And I heard a voice *saying wording* unto me,
Arise, *Peter Petros*; *slay sacrifice* and eat.
8 But I said, *Not so No way, Lord Adonay*:
for nothing common naught profane or unclean impure
hath *at any time ever* entered into my mouth.
9 But the voice answered me *again twice* from heaven,
What *God Elohim* hath *cleansed purified*,
that *call not common profane thou not*.
10 And this *was done three times became thrice*:
and all were drawn *up* again into heaven.
11 And, behold, immediately there were three men
already *come unto standing by* the house
where wherein I was,
sent apostolized from *Caesarea Kaisaria* unto me.
12 And the Spirit *bade said for me go to come* with them,
nothing naught doubting.
Moreover
these six brethren *accompanied came with* me,
and we entered into the man's house:
13 And he *shewed evangelized* us
how he had seen an angel in his house,
which stood and said unto him,
Send Apostolize men to *Joppa Yapho*,
and *call for Simon summon Shimon*,
whose surname is Peter called Petros;
14 Who shall *tell speak rhemas to* thee *words*,
whereby thou and all thy house shall be saved.
15 And as I began to speak,
the Holy *Ghost Spirit* fell on them,
exactly as on us at the beginning.
16 Then *And* remembered I
the *words rhema* of the *Lord Adonay*,
how that he *said worded*,
John Yahn indeed baptized *with in* water;
but ye shall be baptized *with in* the Holy *Ghost Spirit*.

ACTS 10, 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

45 and they of the circumcision who trust
are astounded — as many as come with Petros,
because the gratuity of the Holy Spirit
is also poured on the goyim:
46 for they hear them speak with tongues,
and magnify Elohim.
Then Petros answers,
47 Can anyone forbid water,
that these not be baptized,
who took the Holy Spirit exactly as well as we?
48 — and he commands them to be baptized
in the name of Adonay.
Then they ask him to abide some days.

THE VISION OF CORNELIUS: PETROS RELATES HIS VISION

11 And the apostles and brothers in Yah Hudah
hear that the goyim also receive the word of Elohim.
2 And when Petros ascends to Yeru Shalem
they of the circumcision contend with him,
3 wording, You entered to uncircumcised men
and ate with them.
4 But Petros begins
and expounds to them in sequence, wording,
5 I was in the city of Yapho praying:
and in an ecstasis I saw a vision
— a vessel descending as a mega linen
lowered from the heavens by four beginnings;
and it came to me:
6 to which, when I stared, I perceived,
and saw quadreped of the earth
and beasts and creepers and flyers of the heavens:
7 and I heard a voice wording to me,
Rise, Petros! Sacrifice and eat!
8 And I said, No way, Adonay:
for naught profane or impure ever entered my mouth.
9 But a voice answers me twice from the heavens,
What Elohim purifies, profane not.
10 — and this became thrice:
and all were drawn into the heavens.
11 And behold, immediately there were three men
already standing by the house where I was,
apostolized from Kaisaria to me:
12 and the Spirit said for me to come with them,
naught doubting:
moreover these six brothers came with me
and we entered the house of this man.
13 And he evangelized us
how he saw an angel in his house,
which stood and said to him,
Apostolize men to Yapho
and summon Shimon called Petros;
14 who speaks rhemas to you,
whereby you and all your house become saved.
15 And as I began to speak,
the Holy Spirit fell on them,
exactly as on us at the beginning:
16 and I remembered the rhema of Adonay,
that he worded,
Yahn indeed baptizes in water;
but you, baptized in Holy Spirit.

ACTS 11, 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

17 Forasmuch then as **So if**
God **Elohim** gave them the *like gift equal gratuity*
as he did unto us, who *believed trusted*
on the Lord **Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**;
what was I, that I could *withstand God forbid Elohim*?
18 When they heard these *things*,
they *held their peace quieted*,
and glorified God **Elohim**, saying **wording**,
Then **And yet indeed**
hath God **Elohim** also to the *Gentiles goyim*
granted **given** repentance unto life.

FIRST MESSIANISTS

19 Now therefore **So indeed**
they which were *scattered abroad thoroughly dispersed*
upon by the *persecution tribulation*
that *arose about Stephen became after Stephanos*
travelled as far as Phenice passed through unto Phoinix,
and Cyprus, and Antioch,
preaching speaking the word to none
but except unto the Jews **Yah Hudiym** only.
20 And some of them
were men of Cyprus — **Cypriots** and *Cyrene Cyrenians*,
which, when they were come to **entered** Antioch,
spake unto the *Grecians Hellenists*,
preaching the Lord Jesus evangelizing Adonay Yah Shua.
21 And the hand of the Lord **Adonay** was with them:
and a *great vast* number *believed trusted*,
and turned unto the Lord **Adonay**.
22 Then *tidings of And word about these things*
came **was heard** unto the ears of the *church ecclesia*
which was in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:
and they *sent forth Barnabas apostolized Bar Nabi*,
that he should go as far as **pass through unto** Antioch.
23 Who, when he came,
and had seen the *grace charism* of God **Elohim**,
was *glad cheered*, and *exhorted besought* them all,
that with *purpose prothesis* of heart
they would cleave unto the Lord **should abide in Adonay**.
24 For he was a good man,
and full of the Holy *Ghost Spirit* and of *faith trust*:
and *much people a vast multitude*
was added unto the Lord **Adonay**.
25 Then departed *Barnabas Bar Nabi* to Tarsus,
for to seek *Saul Shaul*:
26 And when he had found him,
he brought him unto Antioch.
And **so be** it came to pass, that a whole year
they assembled themselves *with in the church ecclesia*,
and *taught doctrinated* much *people multitude*.
And the disciples were *called Christians oracled* **Messianists**
first in Antioch.
27 And in these days came prophets
from *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem* unto Antioch.
28 And there *stood up rose* one of them
named *Agabus Hagab*,
and signified by **through** the Spirit
that there *should was about to be*
great dearth a mega throughout famine upon all the world:
which came to pass **became**
in the days of Claudius Caesar under Kaisar Claudius.
29 Then **And** the disciples, *every man each one*
according to his ability exactly as each prospered,
determined decreed for ministry
to send *relief* unto the brethren
which *dwelt settled in Judaea Yah Hudah*:
30 Which also they did,
and sent it **apostolized** to the elders
by **through** the hands
of *Barnabas Bar Nabi* and *Saul Shaul*.

FIFTH PERSECUTION

12

Now **And** about that *time season*
Herod the *king stretched forth sovereign laid on* his hands
to vex certain **vilify some** of the *church ecclesia*.
2 And he *killed James took out Yaaqovos*
the brother of *John Yahn* with the sword.
3 And because he saw it pleased the Jews **Yah Hudiym**,
he *proceeded further added* to take *Peter Petros* also.
(Then were the days of *unleavened bread matsah*.)

ACTS 11, 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

17 So if Elohim gives them the equal gratuity
as he does us
who trust on Adonay Yah Shua Messiah;
and I — who am I to forbid Elohim?
18 When they hear these,
they quiet and glorify Elohim, wording,
Then indeed
Elohim also gives the goyim repentance to life.

FIRST MESSIANISTS

19 So indeed,
those thoroughly dispersed
by the tribulation that became after Stephanos,
pass through to Phoinix and Cyprus and Antioch,
speaking the word to none
except only to the Yah Hudiym.
20 And some of them — Cypriots and Cyrenians,
enter Antioch, and speak to the Hellenists,
evangelizing Adonay Yah Shua:
21 and the hand of Adonay is with them:
and a vast number trust and turn to Adonay.
22 And the ears of the ecclesia in Yeru Shalem
hear about these words;
and they apostolize Bar Nabi
to pass through to Antioch
— who, when he comes
and sees the charism of Elohim, cheers,
and beseeches them all,
that with prothesis of heart, they abide in Adonay.
23 For he is a good man,
and full of Holy Spirit and of trust:
and a vast multitude is added to Adonay.
24 And Bar Nabi departs to Tarsus to seek Shaul:
and he finds him, and brings him to Antioch.
25 And so be it, that for a whole year,
they assemble themselves in the ecclesia
and doctrienate a vast multitude:
and they oracle the disciples as Messianists
first in Antioch.
26 And in these days
prophets come from Yeru Shalem to Antioch:
27 and one of them named Hagab
rises and signifies through the Spirit
that there is about to be
a mega famine on all the world
— which becomes under Kaisar Claudius.
28 And the disciples,
each one exactly as each prospers,
decrees for ministry
to send to the brothers settled in Yah Hudah:
30 which they also do,
and apostolize to the elders
through the hands of Bar Nabi and Shaul.

FIFTH PERSECUTION

12

And about that season
Herod the sovereign lays on his hands
to vilify some of the ecclesia:
2 and he takes out Yaaqovos the brother of Yahn
with the sword:
3 and because he sees it pleases the Yah Hudiym,
he adds to also take out Petros
— these are the days of matsah:

ACTS 12

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 And when he had *apprehended* **seized** him,
he put him in *prison* **the guardhouse**,
and delivered him
to four quaternions of *soldiers* **warriors**
to keep **guard** him;
intending **having willed** after *Easter* **pasach**
to bring him forth to the people.
5 *Peter* therefore **So Petros indeed**
was kept **guarded** in *prison* **the guardhouse**:
but prayer was *made without ceasing* **became intense**
of the *church* **ecclesia** unto *God* **Elohim** for him.
6 And when Herod
would have brought **was about to bring** him forth,
the same night
Peter **Petros** was sleeping between two *soldiers* **warriors**,
bound with two *chains* **fetters**:
and the *keepers* before **guards in front of the door** **portal**
kept **guarded** the *prison* **guardhouse**.
7 And, behold,
the an angel of the *Lord* came upon him **Yah Veh stood by**,
and a light *shined* **radiated** in the *prison* **dwelling**:
and he smote *Peter* **Petros** on the side,
and raised him up, *saying* **wording**, Arise up quickly.
And his *chains* **fetters** fell off from his hands.
8 And the angel said unto him,
Gird thyself, and bind on thy sandals.
And so **thus** he did.
And he *saith* **wordeth** unto him,
Cast **Array** thy garment *about thee*, and follow me.
9 And he went out, and followed him;
and *wist* **knew** not that it was true
which was *done by* **became through** the angel;
but thought he saw a vision.
10 When they were *past* **had passed through**
the first and the second *ward* **guardhouse**,
they came unto the iron gate
that *leadeth* **beareth** unto the city;
which opened to them *of his own accord* **automatically**:
and they went out,
and *passed on* **proceeded** through one street;
and *forthwith* **straightway** the angel departed from him.
11 And when *Peter* was come **Petros became** to himself,
he said, Now I know *of a surety* **truly**,
that *the Lord* **Yah Veh** hath *sent* **apostolized** his angel,
and hath *delivered* **released** me out of the hand of Herod,
and from all the expectation
of the people of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**.
12 And when he had *considered the thing* **awared**,
he came to the house of *Mary* **Miryam**
the mother of *John* **Yahn**,
whose surname was **Mark** **who was called** **Markos**;
where many were gathered together praying.
13 And as *Peter* **Petros**
knocked at the *door* **portal** of the gate,
a *damsel* **lass** came to *hearken* **obey**, named Rhoda.
14 And when she knew *Peter's* **Petros'** voice,
she opened not the gate for *gladness* **cheer**,
but *ran in* **hastened**,
and *told* **evangelized**
how *Peter* **that Petros** stood before the gate.
15 And they *said* **worded** unto her, Thou art *mad* **ravest**.
But she *constantly* **thoroughly** affirmed
that it was *even so* **thus**.
Then **And** said they, It is his angel.
16 But *Peter* **continued** **Petros abode** knocking:
and when they had opened *the door*, and saw him,
they were *astonished* **astounded**.
17 But he, *beckoning* **signaling** unto them with the hand
to *hold their peace* **hush**,
declared unto them how *the Lord* **Yah Veh**
had *brought* **led** him out of the *prison* **guardhouse**.
And he said,
Go *shew* **evangelize** these *things* unto *James* **Yaaqovos**,
and to the brethren.
And he departed, and went into another place.
18 Now as *soon as it was* **And being** day,
there was no small *stir* **trouble**
among the *soldiers* **warriors**,
what was become of *Peter* **Petros**.

ACTS 12

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 and he seizes him and puts him in the guardhouse
and delivers him to four quaternions of warriors
to guard him;
and wills to bring him to the people after pasach.
5 So indeed Petros is guarded in the guardhouse:
and the prayer of the ecclesia to Elohim
for him becomes intense:
6 and when Herod is about to bring him
— that night Petros sleeps between two warriors
bound with two fetters:
and guards in front of the portal
guard the guardhouse:
7 and behold, an angel of Yah Veh stands by,
and a light radiates in the dwelling:
and he smites Petros on the side,
and raises him, wording, Rise quickly!
— and his fetters fall from his hands.
8 And the angel says to him,
Gird yourself and bind your sandals.
— and thus he does.
And he words to him,
Array your garment and follow me.
9 And he goes out, and follows him;
and knows not
that what becomes through the angel is true;
but thinks he sees a vision.
10 When they pass through
the first and the second guardhouse,
they come to the iron gate that bears to the city;
which opens to them automatically:
and they go and proceed through one street;
and straightway the angel departs from him.
11 And Petros, being by himself, says,
Now I know truly
that Yah Veh apostolized his angel
to release me from the hand of Herod
and from all the expectation
of the people of the Yah Hudiym.
12 And being aware,
he comes to the house of Miryam the mother of Yahn
who is called Markos
— where many gather together praying.
13 And as Petros knocks at the portal of the gate,
a lass named Rhoda comes to obey:
and she knows the voice of Petros:
and for cheer, she opens not the gate,
but hastens and evangelizes
that Petros stands in front of the gate.
14 And they word to her, You rave!
— but she thoroughly affirms that it is so.
And they say, It is his angel.
15 But Petros abides knocking:
and they open, and see him,
and they are astounded.
16 And he signals with the hand for them to hush,
and declares to them how Yah Veh
led him from the guardhouse.
And he says,
Go evangelize these to Yaaqovos and to the brothers.
— and he departs and goes to another place.
17 And being day,
there is no small trouble among the warriors
about what became of Petros:

ACTS 12, 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

19 And when Herod had sought for him,
and found him not,
he examined the *keepers* **guards**,
and *commanded* **summoned** that they
should be *put to death* **led away**.
And he went down from *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**
to *Caesarea* **Kaisaria**, and there *abode* **tarried**.
HEROD IS MAGGOT EATEN

20 And Herod was *highly displeased* **exasperated**
with *them of Tyre* **the Soriym** and *Sidon* **the Sidoniym**:
but they *came* **presented themselves**
with *one accord* **in unanimity** to him,
and, having *made* **convinced** Blastus
the king's chamberlain **their friend**
who was over the sovereign's bedchamber,
desired peace **asked for shalom**;
because their *country* **region**
was nourished by the *king's* **sovereign's** country.

21 And upon a *set* **an ordered** day Herod,
arrayed **endued** in *royal* **sovereign** apparel,
sat upon his *throne* **bamah**,
and *made an oration unto* **addressed** them.

22 And the *people* **gave a shout** **public shouted**, *saying*,
It is the voice of a god, and not of a *man* **human**.

23 And immediately
the **an** *angel of the Lord* **Yah Veh** smote him,
because he gave not *God* **Elohim** the glory:
and he was **became** eaten of *worms* **maggots**,
and *gave up the ghost* **expired**.

24 But the word of *God* **Elohim** grew and multiplied.

25 And *Barnabas* **Bar Nabi** and *Saul* **Shaul**
returned from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
when they had fulfilled/**shalamed** their ministry,
and took with them *John* **Yahn**,
whose surname was Mark **who was called Markos**.

SHAUL AND BAR NABI ARE SET APART

13 Now there were in the *church* **ecclesia**
that was at Antioch
certain **some** prophets and *teachers* **doctors**;
as *Barnabas* **Bar Nabi** and *Simeon* **Shimon**
that was called Niger,
and *Lucius of Cyrene* — **Loukios a Cyrenian**, and *Manaen*,
which had been *brought up* **nursed**
with Herod the tetrarch,
and *Saul* **Shaul**.

2 As they *ministered* **liturgized** to the *Lord* **Adonay**,
and fasted,
the *Holy Ghost* **Spirit** said,
Separate me **Now set apart**
Barnabas **Bar Nabi** and *Saul* **Shaul**
for **unto** the work whereunto I have called them.

THE FIRST JOURNEY OF SHAUL AND BAR NABI

3 And when they had **Then having** fasted and prayed,
and *laid* **put** their hands on them,
they *sent* **released** them away.

4 **So indeed** they,
being *sent forth* **dispatched** by the *Holy Ghost* **Spirit**,
departed **went down** unto Seleucia;
and from thence they sailed to Cyprus.

5 And when they were **being** at Salamis,
they *preached* **evangelized** the word of *God* **Elohim**
in the synagogues of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**:
and they had also *John* to **Yahn as** their *minister* **attendant**.

6 And when they had *gone* **passed** through the isle
unto Paphos,
they found a *certain* **sorcerer magi**,
a *false* **pseudo** prophet, a *Jew* **Yah Huidiy**,
whose name was *Bar—Jesus* **Bar Yah Shua**:
Which was with the *deputy* **proconsul** of the country,
Sergius Paulus **Paulos**,
a *prudent* man **of comprehension**;
who called for *Barnabas* **Bar Nabi** and *Saul* **Shaul**,
and *desired* **sought** to hear the word of *God* **Elohim**.

8 But Elymas the *sorcerer* **magi**
(for *so is* **thus** his name by *interpretation* **translates**)
withstood them,
seeking to *turn away* **thoroughly pervert**
the *deputy* **proconsul** from the *faith* **trust**.

ACTS 12, 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

19 and when Herod seeks for him, and finds him not,
he examines the guards
and summons that they be led away:
and he goes down from Yah Hudah to Kaisaria
and carries there.

HEROD IS MAGGOT EATEN

20 And Herod is exasperated
with the Soriym and the Sidoniym:
but they present themselves to him in unanimity;
and convince Blastus
who is over the bedchamber of the sovereign;
and ask for shalom;
because their region is nourished
by the country of the sovereign.

21 And on an ordered day,
Herod, endued in sovereign apparel,
sits on his bamah and addresses them.

22 And the public shouts,
The voice of an el and not of a human!

23 And immediately
an angel of Yah Veh smites him
because he gives not Elohim the glory:
and he becomes eaten of maggots and expires:
but the word of Elohim grows and multiplies.

24 And they fulfill/shalam their ministry,
and Bar Nabi and Shaul return from Yeru Shalem,
and take Yahn, who is called Markos with them.

SHAUL AND BAR NABI ARE SET APART

13 Now there in the ecclesia at Antioch
are some prophets and doctors;
as Bar Nabi and Shimon who is called Niger
and Loukios a Cyrenian and Manaen,
who was nursed with Herod the tetrarch, and Shaul.

2 And as they liturgize to Adonay and fast,
the Holy Spirit says,
Now set apart Bar Nabi and Shaul
to the work I called them.

THE FIRST JOURNEY OF SHAUL AND BAR NABI

3 Then having fasted and prayed,
they put their hands on them and release them.

4 So indeed, being dispatched by the Holy Spirit,
they go down to Seleucia;
and from there they sail to Cyprus:
and being at Salamis,
they evangelize the word of Elohim
in the synagogues of the Yah Hudiym
— and they also have Yahn as their attendant.

6 And they pass through the isle to Paphos
and find a magi — a pseudo prophet — a Yah Huidiy
whose name is Bar Yah Shua:
who is with Sergius Paulos the proconsul
— a man of comprehension;
who calls for Bar Nabi and Shaul,
and seeks to hear the word of Elohim.

8 But Elymas the magi
— thus his name translates
withstands them,
seeking to thoroughly pervert the proconsul
from the trust.

ACTS 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SHAUL IS PAULOS

9 Then Saul **Shaul**, (who also is called *Paul Paulos*),
filled/**shalamed** with the Holy *Ghost Spirit*,
set his eyes on **stared unto** him.
10 And said,
O full of all *subtilty* **deceit** and all *mischief* **malignity**,
thou *child* **son of the devil Diabolos**,
thou enemy of all *righteousness* **justness**,
wilt **shalt** thou not cease **pause**
to *pervert* **from thoroughly perverting**
the *right* **straight** ways of the *Lord* **Yah Veh?**
11 And now, behold,
the hand of the *Lord* is **Adonay** upon thee,
and thou shalt be blind,
not seeing the sun *for* **until** a season.
And immediately
there fell on him a *mist* **dimness** and a darkness;
and he went about seeking some
to **hand** lead him *by the hand*.
12 Then the *deputy* **proconsul**,
when he saw what was *done* **became**, *believed* **trusted**,
being astonished at the doctrine of the *Lord* **Adonay**.
13 Now **And** when *Paul Paulos*
and *his company* **those around him**
loosed **embarked** from Paphos,
they came to Perga in Pamphylia:
and *John Yahn* departing from them
returned to *Jerusalem* **Jeru Shalem**.
THE SYNAGOGUE MESSAGE OF PAULOS
14 But when they *departed* **passed through** from Perga,
they came to Antioch in Pisidia,
and *went* **entered** into the synagogue
on the *sabbath* **shabbath** day, and sat *down*.
15 And after
the reading of the *law* **torah** and the prophets
the *rulers of the* **synagogue archs**
sent **apostolized** unto them, *saying* **wording**,
Ye men and brethren,
if ye have any word of *exhortation* **consolation** for the people,
say **word on**.
16 Then *Paul* **stood up** **And Paulos** **arose**
and *beckoning* **signaling** with his hand said,
Men of *Israel* — **Yisra Eliym**,
and ye that *fear God* **awe Elohim**,
give audience **hearken**.
17 The *God* **Elohim** of this people of *Israel* **Yisra El**
chose **selected** our fathers,
and exalted the people
when they dwelt as strangers **in their settling**
in the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
and with an high arm *brought* **led** he them out of it.
18 And about the time of forty years
suffered **endured** he their manners in the wilderness.
19 And when he had
destroyed **taken out** seven *nations* **goyim**
in the land of *Chanaan* **Kenaan**,
he *divided* **allotted** their land to them *by lot*.
20 And after that he gave unto them judges
about the space of four hundred and fifty years,
until *Samuel Shemu El* the prophet.
21 And *afterward* **from thence**
they *desired* **asked** a *king* **sovereign**:
and *God* **Elohim** gave unto them *Saul Shaul*
the son of *Cis* **Qish**,
a man of the *tribe* **scion of Benjamin** **Ben Yamin**,
by the space of forty years.
22 And when he had removed him,
he raised *up* unto them David to be their *king* **sovereign**;
to whom also he *gave their testimony* **witnessed**,
and said, I have found David *the son of Jesse* **Yishay**,
a man after mine own heart,
which shall *fulfil* **do** all my will.
23 Of this man's *seed* **sperma** hath *God* **Elohim**
according to his *promise* **pre—evangelism**
raised unto *Israel* **Yisra El** a Saviour, *Jesus Yah Shua*:
24 When *John Yahn* had *first* **previously** preached
before **preceding the face of** his *coming* **entrance**
the baptism of repentance
to all the people of *Israel* **Yisra El**.

ACTS 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SHAUL IS PAULOS

9 So Shaul — also called Paulos,
fills/shalams with the Holy Spirit, stares at him,
10 and says, O full of all deceit and all malignity,
you son of Diabolos,
you enemy of all justness,
pause you not from thoroughly perverting
the straight ways of Yah Veh?
11 And now, behold,
the hand of Adonay upon you,
and you become blind
not seeing the sun until a season.
— and immediately
a dimness and a darkness falls on him;
and he goes around
seeking someone to hand lead him.
12 Then the proconsul
sees what becomes and trusts,
being astonished at the doctrine of Adonay.
13 And Paulos and those around him embark from Paphos,
and come to Perga in Pamphylia:
and Yahn departs from them and returns to Jeru Shalem.
THE SYNAGOGUE MESSAGE OF PAULOS
14 But they pass through from Perga
and come to Antioch in Pisidia;
and on the shabbath day
enter the synagogue and sit.
15 And after the reading of the torah and the prophets,
the synagogue archs apostolize to them, wording,
Men and brothers,
if you have any word of consolation for the people,
word on.
16 And Paulos rises, signals with his hand,
and says, Men — Yisra Eliym,
and you who awe Elohim, hearken!
17 The Elohim of this people of Yisra El
selected our fathers,
and exalted the people
in their settling in the land of Misrayim,
and with a high arm he led them from it:
and about the time of forty years
he endured their manners in the wilderness:
and he took out seven goyim
in the land of Kenaan,
and allotted them their land:
20 and after that, he gave them judges
about the space of four hundred and fifty years
— until Shemu El the prophet:
21 and from there, they asked a sovereign:
and Elohim gave them Shaul the son of Qish
— a man of the scion of Ben Yamin
by the space of forty years:
22 and he removed him,
and raised David to be their sovereign:
to whom also he witnessed, and said,
I find David of Yishay a man after my own heart,
who does all my will.
23 Of the sperma of this man,
according to his pre—evangelism,
Elohim raises to Yisra El a Saviour, Yah Shua
when Yahn previously preached
the baptism of repentance
preceding the face of his entrance,
to all the people of Yisra El.

ACTS 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

25 And as *John Yahn* fulfilled/**shalamed** his course **race**,
he said **worded**,
Whom *think surmise* ye that I am? I am not *he*.
But, behold, *there he* cometh *one* after me,
whose shoes of his feet I am not worthy to loose.

26 Men and brethren,
children sons of the *stock genos* of Abraham,
and whosoever among you *feareth God* **aweth Elohim**,
to you is the word of this salvation **sent apostolized**.

27 For they that *dwelt settle* at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
and their *rulers archs*, *because* they knew him not,
nor yet the voices of the prophets
which are read every *sabbath day shabbath*,
they have fulfilled/**shalamed**
them in condemning him by judging.

28 And though they found no cause of death *in him*,
yet *desired asked* they *Pilate Pilatos*
that he should be *slain taken out*.

29 And when they had fulfilled/**shalamed** all
that was *written of scribed concerning him*,
they took him down from the *tree staff*,
and *laid placed* him in a *sepulchre tomb*.

30 But *God Elohim* raised him from the dead:
31 And he was seen many days of them
which *came up ascended together* with him
from *Galilee Galiyl* to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
who are his witnesses unto the people.

32 And we *declare evangelize* unto you *glad tidings*,
how that the *promise pre—evangelism*
which was *made became* unto the fathers,
33 *God Elohim* hath fulfilled/**shalamed** *the same this*
unto us their children,
in that he hath raised *up Jesus again Yah Shua*;
as it is also *written scribed* in the second psalm,
Thou art my Son, this day have I *begotten birthed* thee.

Psalm 2:7
34 And as concerning that he raised him *up* from the dead,
now *no more not about* to return to corruption,
he said *on this wise thus*,
I *will shall* give you
the *sure mercies trustworthly mercifuls* of David.

Yesha Yah 55:3
35 Wherefore he *saith wordeth* also in another *psalm*,
Thou shalt not *suffer thine Holy One give thy Merciful*
to see corruption.

Psalm 16:10
36 For **indeed** David,
after he had *served tended* his own generation
by the *will counsel* of *God Elohim*, fell on sleep,
and was *laid added* unto his fathers, and saw corruption:
37 But he, whom *God Elohim* raised *again*,
saw no corruption.

38 **So** Be it known unto you *therefore*, men and brethren,
that through this man
is *preached evangelized* unto you the forgiveness of sins:
39 And *at in* him all that *believe trust*
are justified from all *things*,
from which ye could not be justified
at in the law torah of *Moses Mosheh*.

40 *Beware therefore So look*, lest that come upon you,
which is *spoken of said* in the prophets;
41 *Behold See*, ye despisers,
and *wonder marvel*, and *perish disappear*:
for I work a work in your days,
a work which ye shall *in no wise believe no way never trust*,
though a man if even though one declare it unto you.

42 And when the *Jews Yah Hudiym*
were *gone departed* out of the synagogue,
the *Gentiles besought goyim entreated*
that these *words rhema* might be *preached spoken* to them
the next *sabbath shabbath*.

43 Now when the *congregation synagogue*
was *broken up released*,
many of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*
and *religious venerating* proselytes
followed *Paul Paulos* and *Barnabas Bar Nabi*:
who, speaking to them,
persuaded convinced them to *continue abide*
in the *grace charism* of *God Elohim*.

ACTS 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

25 And as Yahn fulfills/**shalams** his race, he words,
Whom surmise you that I am? I am not *he*.
But, behold, he comes after me,
whose shoes of his feet I am not worthy to loose.

26 Men and brothers,
sons of the genos of Abraham,
and whoever among you awes Elohim,
the word of this salvation is apostolized o you.

27 For they who settle at Yeru Shalem, and their archs,
neither know this one,
nor the voices of the prophets read every shabbath
— who in judging, they fulfill/shalam.

28 And though they found no cause of death,
they still asked Pilatos to take him out:
29 and when they fulfilled/shalamed all
that is scribed concerning him,
they took him down from the staff
and placed him in a tomb:
30 but Elohim raised him from the dead:
31 and he was seen many days
by them who ascended together with him
from Galiyl to Yeru Shalem
— who are his witnesses to the people.

32 And we evangelize to you,
how that the pre—evangelism
which became the fathers,
33 Elohim fulfills/shalams to us their children,
in that he raised Yah Shua;
as also scribed in the second psalm,
You are my Son, this day I birthed you.

Psalm 2:7
34 And that he raised him from the dead,
no more to return to corruption,
he says thus,
I give you the trustworthly mercifuls of David.

Yesha Yah 55:3
35 Wherefore he also words in another,
You give not your Merciful to see corruption.

Psalm 16:10
36 For David indeed,
after he tended his own generation
by the counsel of Elohim, fell on sleep;
and was added to his fathers and saw corruption:
37 but he, whom Elohim raised,
saw no corruption.

38 So be it known to you, men and brothers,
that through this man
the forgiveness of sins is evangelized to you:
and all who trust in him are justified from all
— from which you could not be justified
in the torah of Mosheh.

40 So look, lest that come upon you,
which is said in the prophets;
41 See, you despisers; and marvel, and disappear:
for I work a work in your days,
a work which you no way never trust,
even though one declare it to you.

42 And the Yah Hudiym depart from the synagogue,
and the goyim entreat them
to speak these rhema to them the next shabbath.

43 And they release the synagogue,
and many of the Yah Hudiym
and venerating proselytes
follow Paulos and Bar Nabi:
who, speaking to them,
convince them to abide in the charism of Elohim:

ACTS 13, 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

44 And the next sabbath day coming shabbath
came almost **nearly** the whole city **gathered** together
to hear the word of God **Elohim**.
45 But when the Jews **Yah Hudiym** saw the multitudes,
they were filled/**shalamed** with **envy zeal**,
and **spake against contradicted** those things
which were spoken **worded** by Paul **Paulos**,
by contradicting and blaspheming.
PAULOS AND BAR NABI TURN TO THE GOYIM
46 Then Paul **Paulos** and Barnabas **Bar Nabi**
waxed **bold emboldened**, and said,
It was necessary that the word of God **Elohim**
should first *have been* **be** spoken to you:
but *seeing since* ye **put shove** it from you,
and judge yourselves unworthy of *everlasting* **eternal** life,
lo **behold**, we turn to the **Gentiles goyim**.
47 For so **thus**
hath the Lord **commanded Yah Veh misvahed** us, *saying*,
I have set **placed** thee to be a light of the **Gentiles goyim**,
that thou shouldst be *for* **unto** salvation
unto the **ends finality** of the earth.

Yesha Yah 42:6,7

48 And when the **Gentiles goyim** heard this,
they were *glad* **cheered**,
and glorified the word of the Lord **Adonay**:
and as many as were ordained to eternal life
believed **trusted**.
49 And the word of the Lord **Adonay**
was *published* **borne** throughout all the region.
50 But the Jews *stirred up* **Yah Hudiym enraged**
the *devout* **venerating** and *honourable* **well—respected**
women,
and the **chief preeminent** men of the city,
and **raised roused up** persecution
against Paul **upon Paulos** and Barnabas **Bar Nabi**,
and **expelled cast** them out of their **coasts boundaries**.
51 But they shook off the dust of their feet **upon** them,
and came unto Iconium.
52 And the disciples were filled/**shalamed** with **joy cheer**,
and with the Holy **Ghost Spirit**.

MINISTRY IN THE ICONIUM SYNAGOGUE

14 And it *came to pass* **became** in Iconium,
that they *went* **entered** both together
into the synagogue of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**,
and so **thus** spake, **so** that a **great vast** multitude
both of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
and also of the *Greeks believed* **Hellenists trusted**.
2 But the *unbelieving* Jews **distrusting Yah Hudiym**
stirred up **roused** the **Gentiles goyim**,
and **made vilified** their *minds evil affected* souls
against the brethren.
3 **So indeed** Long time *therefore abode* **tarried** they
speaking boldly **emboldened** in the Lord **Adonay**,
which *gave testimony* **witnessed**
unto the word of his *grace* **charism**,
and *granted* **gave** signs and *wonders* **omens**
to be *done by* **become through** their hands.
4 **But And** the multitude of the city was *divided* **schismed**:
and **indeed** part held with the Jews **Yah Hudiym**,
and part with the apostles.

MINISTRY IN LYCAONIA

5 And when
there was an *assault made* **became a violent impulse**
both of the **Gentiles goyim**,
and also of the Jews **Yah Hudiym** with their *rulers* **archs**,
to *use* **insult** them *despitefully*, and to stone them,
6 They were ware of it, and fled unto Lystra and Derbe,
cities of Lycaonia,
and unto the region *that lieth* round about:
7 And there they *preached the gospel* **evangelized**.

PAULOS HEALS ONE LAME

8 And there sat a *certain* man at Lystra,
impotent in his feet,
being a *cripple* **lame** from his mother's womb,
who never **ever** had walked:
9 *The same* **This one** heard Paul **Paulos** speak:
who *stedfastly beholding* **staring at** him,
and perceiving that he had *faith* **trust** to be **healed saved**,
10 Said with a **loud mega** voice,

ACTS 13, 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

44 and the coming shabbath
nearly the whole city gathers together
to hear the word of Elohim:
45 and the Yah Hudiym see the multitudes,
and fill/shalam with zeal,
and contradict those worded by Paulos,
by contradicting and blaspheming.

PAULOS AND BAR NABI TURN TO THE GOYIM

46 And Paulos and Bar Nabi embolden, and say,
It is necessary that the word of Elohim
be spoken to you first:
but since you shove it from you,
and judge yourselves unworthy of eternal life,
behold, we turn to the goyim:
47 for thus Yah Veh misvahed us:
I place you, a light of the goyim,
to be to salvation to the finality of the earth.
Yesha Yah 42:6,7

48 And the goyim hear this
and they cheer and glorify the word of Adonay:
and as many as are ordained to eternal life, trust:
49 and the word of Adonay
is borne throughout all the region:
50 but the Yah Hudiym enrage
the venerating and well—respected women
and the preeminent men of the city;
and rouse persecution on Paulos and Bar Nabi
and cast them from their boundaries:
51 but they shake the dust from their feet upon them,
and come to Iconium:
52 and the disciples fill/shalam with cheer and Holy Spirit.

MINISTRY IN THE ICONIUM SYNAGOGUE

14 And so be it, in Iconium,
they enter the synagogue of the Yah Hudiym together,
and thus speak;
so that a vast multitude
both of the Yah Hudiym and of the Hellenists trust:
2 and the distrusting Yah Hudiym rouse the goyim
and vilify their souls against the brothers.
3 So indeed they tarry a long time;
embolden in Adonay
and witness to the word of his charism
and give signs and omens to become through their hands.
4 And the multitude of the city schisms:
and indeed, part hold with the Yah Hudiym,
and part with the apostles.

MINISTRY IN LYCAONIA

5 And when a violent impulse
— both of the goyim
and of the Yah Hudiym with their archs;
to insult them and to stone them:
6 and being aware,
they flee to Lystra and Derbe — cities of Lycaonia,
and to the surrounding region:
7 and there they evangelize.

PAULOS HEALS ONE LAME

8 And at Lystra, a man sits, impotent in his feet;
being lame from the womb of his mother;
who never ever walked:
9 this one hears Paulos speak:
who stares at him,
and perceives he has trust to be saved,
10 and he says with a mega voice,

ACTS 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Stand upright **Arise straight** on thy feet.
And he leaped and walked.

11 And when the *people* **multitude** saw
what *Paul* **Paulos** had done,
they *lifted up* their voices,
saying wording in the speech of Lycaonia **Lycaoni**,
The *gods* **elohim** are *come down* **descended** to us
in the likeness of *men* **humanity**.

12 And **indeed**
they called *Barnabas* **Bar Nabi**, *Jupiter* **Zeus**;
and *Paul* **Paulos**, *Mercurius* **Hermes**,
because **since** he was
the *chief speaker* **governor of words**.

13 Then **And** the priest of *Jupiter* **Zeus**,
which was *before* **in front of** their city,
brought *oxen* **bulls** and *garlands* **wreaths** unto the gates,
and *would have done* **willed to** sacrifice
with the *people* **multitude**.

14 Which when the apostles,
Barnabas **Bar Nabi** and *Paul* **Paulos**, heard of,
they *rent* **ripped** their *clothes* **garments**,
and *ran in among* **leaped unto** the *people* **multitude**,
crying out,
15 And *saying* **wording**,
Sirs **Men**, why do ye these *things*?
We also are *men* **humans** of like passions with you,
and *preach* **evangelize** unto you
that ye should turn from these vanities
unto the living *God* **Elohim**,
which made heaven, and earth, and the sea,
and all *things* that are therein:

16 Who in *times past* **generations departed**
suffered **allowed** all *nations* **goyim**
to walk in their own ways.

17 *Nevertheless* **Though** he left not himself
without witness **unwitnessed**,
in that he did good,
and gave us rain from heaven, and fruitful seasons,
filling our hearts
with *food* **nourishment** and *gladness* **rejoicing**.

18 And with *wording* these *sayings*
scarce **with difficulty**
restrained **shabbathized** they the *people* **multitude**,
that they had not *done* **sacrifice sacrificed** unto them.

PAULOS STONED

19 And there came *thither certain Jews* **some Yah Hudiym**
from Antioch and Iconium,
who *persuaded* **convinced** the *people* **multitude**,
and having stoned *Paul* **Paulos**,
drew **dragged** him out of the city,
supposing **presuming** he had been dead **died**.

See: 2 Corinthians 12:1—3

20 *Howbeit*,
as the disciples *stood round about* **surrounded** him,
he rose *up*, and *came* **entered** into the city:
and **on** the *next day* **morrow**
he departed with *Barnabas* **Bar Nabi** to Derbe.

21 And when they had *preached the gospel* **evangelized**
to that city,
and had *taught* **discipled** many,
they returned *again* to Lystra,
and to Iconium, and Antioch,

22 *Confirming* **Establishing** the souls of the disciples,
and *exhorting* **beseeking** them
to *continue* **remain** in the *faith* **trust**,
and that we must through much tribulation
enter into the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**.

ECCLESIA ELDERS

23 And when they had *ordained* **voted** them elders
in every *church* **ecclesia**,
and had *prayed* with fasting,
they *commended* **set** them to the *Lord* **Adonay**,
on **in** whom they *believed* **trusted**.

24 And after they had passed throughout Pisidia,
they came to Pamphylia.

25 And when they had *preached* **spoken** the word
in Perga,
they *went down* **descended** into Attalia:
And thence sailed to Antioch,

ACTS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

Rise straight on your feet!
— and he leaps and walks.

11 And the multitude sees what Paulos does,
and they lift their voices, wording in Lycaoni,
The elohim descend to us in the likeness of humanity!

12 — and indeed, they call Bar Nabi, Zeus;
and Paulos, Hermes,
since he is the governor of words.

13 And the priest of Zeus, who is in front of their city,
brings bulls and wreaths to the gates,
and wills to sacrifice with the multitude:

14 and the apostles Bar Nabi and Paulos hear,
and they rip their garments and leap at the multitude,
crying out,
and wording,
15 Men, why do these?
We also are humans of like passions with you,
and evangelize to you
to turn from these vanities to the living Elohim
who made the heavens and earth and the sea
and all therein:
16 who in departed generations,
allowed all goyim to walk in their own ways:
17 though he left not himself unwitnessed,
in that he did good;
and gave us rain from the heavens
and fruitful seasons;
filling our hearts with nourishment and rejoicing.

18 — and wording these,
difficultly they shabbathize the multitude
to not sacrifice to them.

PAULOS STONED

19 And some Yah Hudiym
come from Antioch and Iconium,
who convince the multitude;
and they stone Paulos and drag him from the city,
presuming he died:

See: 2 Corinthians 12:1—3

20 and the disciples surround him;
and he rises and enters the city:
and on the morrow
he departs with Bar Nabi to Derbe.

21 And they evangelize to that city and disciple many;
and return to Lystra and Iconium and Antioch,
establishing the souls of the disciples,
and beseeching them to remain in the trust;
and that we must through much tribulation
enter the sovereigndom of Elohim.

ECCLESIA ELDERS

23 And they vote elders in every ecclesia,
and pray with fasting;
and they set them to Adonay,
in whom they trust.

24 And after they pass throughout Pisidia
they come to Pamphylia;

25 and they speak the word in Perga
and descend to Attalia;
and there sail to Antioch;

ACTS 14, 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

from whence they had been *recommended* delivered
to the *grace* **charism** of God **Elohim**
for **unto** the work which they fulfilled/*shalamed*.
27 And when they were come,
and had gathered the *church* **ecclesia** together,
they *rehearsed* **evangelized**
all that God **as much as Elohim** had done with them,
and how he had opened the *door* **portal** of *faith* **trust**
unto the *Gentiles* **goyim**.
28 And there they *abode long* **tarried no little** time
with the disciples.
YAH HUDIYM DOCTRINATE CUSTOM OF MOSHEH
15 And *certain* **some** men
which came down from *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**
taught **doctrinated** the brethren, and said,
Except **Unless** ye be circumcised
after the *manner* **custom** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
ye cannot be saved.
PAULOS AND BAR NABI ASCEND TO YERU SHALEM
2 *When therefore* **Paul** **So be it, Paulos** and *Barnabas* **Bar Nabi**
had no small *dissension* **riot** and disputation with them,
they *determined* **ordained**
that *Paul* **Paulos** and *Barnabas* **Bar Nabi**,
and *certain* **some** other of *them*
should *go up* **ascend** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
unto the apostles and elders about this question.
3 And *therefore* **so indeed**
being *brought on their way* **forwarded** by the *church* **ecclesia**,
they passed through
Phenice **Phoinix** and *Samaria* **Shomeron**,
declaring
the *conversion* **turning around** of the *Gentiles* **goyim**:
and they caused *great joy* **mega cheer**
unto all the brethren.
4 And when they were come to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
they were received of the *church* **ecclesia**,
and of the apostles and elders,
and they *declared* **evangelized**
all things that God **as much as Elohim** had done with them.
5 *But* **And** there rose up
certain **some** of the *sect* **heresy** of the Pharisees
which *believed* **trusted**, *saying* **wording**,
That it was *needful* **necessary** to circumcise them,
and to *command* **evangelize** them
to *keep* **guard** the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**.
6 And the apostles and elders *came* **assembled** together
for to *consider* of **know about** this *matter* **word**.
THE MESSAGE OF PETROS
7 And when there had been much *disputing* **disputation**,
Peter **Petros** rose up, and said unto them,
Men and brethren,
ye *know* **understand** how
that a *good while ago* **from ancient days**
God *made choice* **Elohim selected** among us,
that the *Gentiles* **by goyim through** my mouth
should hear the word of the *gospel* **evangelism**,
and *believe* **trust**.
8 And *God* **Elohim**,
which knoweth the hearts **all heart—knowing**,
bare them witness,
giving them the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
even **exactly** as *he did* unto us;
9 And *put no difference* **distinguished not**
between us and them,
purifying their hearts by *faith* **trust**.
10 **So** Now *therefore* why *tempt* **test** ye *God* **Elohim**,
to put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples,
which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear?
11 *But* **we believe** **trust**
that through the *grace* **charism**
of the *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
we shall be saved, *even* **in manner** as they.
THE WITNESS OF PAULOS AND BAR NABI
12 Then all the multitude *kept silence* **hushed**,

ACTS 14, 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

from whence they are delivered
to the charism of Elohim
to fulfill/*shalam* the work.
27 And they come and gather the ecclesia together;
and they evangelize
as much as Elohim does with them;
and how he opens the portal of trust to the goyim:
and there they tarry no little time with the disciples.
YAH HUDIYM DOCTRINATE CUSTOM OF MOSHEH
15 And some men come down from Yah Hudah
and doctrienate the brothers, and say,
Unless you circuncise after the custom of Mosheh,
you cannot be saved.
PAULOS AND BAR NABI ASCEND TO YERU SHALEM
2 So be it, there is no small riot and disputation
with Paulos and Bar Nabi,
they ordain Paulos and Bar Nabi and some others
to ascend to Yeru Shalem
to the apostles and elders about this question.
3 And so indeed,
being forwarded by the ecclesia,
they pass through Phoinix and Shomeron,
declaring the turning around of the goyim:
and they cause mega cheer to all the brothers.
4 And coming to Yeru Shalem,
the ecclesia and the apostles and elders receive them;
and they evangelize
as much as Elohim does with them.
5 And some of the heresy of the Pharisees who trust,
rise, wording,
It is necessary to circumcise them,
and to evangelize them to guard the torah of Mosheh.
6 — and the apostles and elders assemble together
to know what this word is about.
THE MESSAGE OF PETROS
7 And there being much disputation,
Petros rises, and says to them,
Men and brothers,
you understand how that from ancient days
Elohim selected among us,
that through my mouth
the goyim hear the word of the evangelism,
and trust:
8 and Elohim, all heart—knowing, bore them witness,
giving them the Holy Spirit, even exactly as to us;
9 and distinguished not between us and them,
purifying their hearts by trust:
10 so now, why test you Elohim,
to put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples,
which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear?
11 *But* through the charism
of Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
we trust to be saved, in manner as they.
THE WITNESS OF PAULOS AND BAR NABI
12 And all the multitude hushes,

ACTS 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and gave audience **hearkened**
to Barnabas **Bar Nabi** and Paul **Paulos**,
declaring

what miracles as many signs and wonders omens
God **Elohim** had wrought done
among the *Gentiles* by **goyim** through them.

THE WITNESS OF YAAQOVOS

13 And after they had held their peace **hushed**,
James **Yaaqovos** answered, saying **wording**,
Men and brethren, hearken unto me:
14 *Simeon* **Shimon** hath declared
exactly how God **Elohim** at the first
did visit the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
to take out of them a people for **unto** his name.
15 And to this
agree **symphonize** the words of the prophets;
exactly as it is written **scribed**,
16 After this I will **shall** return,
and will build again **shall rebuild** the tabernacle of David,
which is fallen down;
and I will build again **shall rebuild** the ruins **diggings** thereof,
and I will **shall** set it up:
17 That the residue **rest** of men **humanity**
might seek after the Lord **Yah Veh**,
and all the *Gentiles* **goyim**, upon whom my name is called,
saith the Lord **wordeth Yah Veh**,
who doeth all these things.

Amos 9:11, 12

18 Known unto God **Elohim**
are all his works from the beginning of the world **eons**.
19 Wherefore my sentence is **So I judge**,
that we trouble not **harrass** them **no further**,
which from among the *Gentiles* **goyim**
are turned to God **Elohim**:
20 But that we write **epistolize** unto them,
that they abstain from pollutions of idols,
and from *fornication* **whoredom**,
and from things **strangled**, and from blood.
21 For *Moses* **Mosheh**
of old time **from ancient generations**
hath in every city them that preach him,
being read in the synagogues every *sabbath day* **shabbath**.
22 Then pleased it the apostles and elders **thought well**
with the whole church **ecclesia**,
to send *chosen* **select** men of their own company
to Antioch
with Paul **Paulos** and Barnabas **Bar Nabi**; namely,
Juda surnamed *Barsabas* **Yah Hudah called Bar Sabah**,
and Silas, chief **governing** men among the brethren:
23 And they wrote letters by **scribed through** them
after this manner **thus**;
The apostles and elders and brethren send greeting
unto the brethren which are of the *Gentiles* **goyim**
in Antioch and Syria and Cilicia, **Cheers**.
24 Forasmuch **Since** as we have heard,
that certain **some** which went out from us
have troubled you with words,
subverting **upsetting** your souls, saying **wording**,
Ye must be circumcised,
and, keep **Guard** the law: **torah!**
to whom we gave no such *commandment* **charge**:
25 It seemed good unto us **We thought well**,
being assembled with one accord **in unanimity**,
to send *chosen* **select** men unto you
with our beloved Barnabas **Bar Nabi** and Paul **Paulos**,
26 Men **Humans**
that have hazarded **surrendered** their lives **souls**
for the name
of our Lord *Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**.
27 So We have sent **apostolized** therefore
Judas **Yah Hudah** and Silas,
who shall also **tell evangelize** you the same things
by mouth **through word**.

ACTS 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and hearkens to Bar Nabi and Paulos,
declaring as many signs and omens
Elohim did through them among the goyim.

THE WITNESS OF YAAQOVOS

13 And after they hush, Yaaqovos answers, wording,
Men and brothers, hearken to me!
14 Shimon declared exactly
how Elohim at the first visited the goyim,
to take from them a people to his name.
15 And to this
the words of the prophets symphonize;
exactly as scribed,
16 After this,
I return and rebuild the tabernacle of David that fell;
and I rebuild the diggings, and I set it:
17 so that the rest of humanity seeks after Yah Veh,
and all the goyim upon whom my name is called,
words Yah Veh, who does all these.
Amos 9:11, 12
18 Known to Elohim
are all his works from the eons:
19 so I judge that we harrass them no further,
who from among the goyim, turn to Elohim:
20 but that we epistolize them
to abstain from pollutions of idols
and from whoredom
and from strangled
and from blood.
21 For from ancient generations and in every city
Mosheh has them who preach of him;
being read in the synagogues every shabbath.
22 Then the apostles and elders
with the whole ecclesia
think well to send select men of their own company
to Antioch with Paulos and Bar Nabi
— Yah Hudah called Bar Sabah and Silas
— governing men among the brothers.
23 And through them, they scribe thus:
The apostles and elders and brothers
to the brothers of the goyim
in Antioch and Syria and Cilicia:
Cheers!
24 Since we hear that some who go out from us
trouble you with words; upsetting your souls;
wording to circumcise and guard the torah
— to whom we gave no such charge:
25 we think well, being in unanimity,
to send select men to you
with our beloved Bar Nabi and Paulos
— humans who surrender their souls
for the name of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
27 So we apostolize Yah Hudah and Silas,
who also evangelize you the same through word.

ACTS 15, 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

28 For it seemed good to
the Holy Ghost **Spirit**, and to us, **we thought well**
to lay **put** upon you no **greater more** burden
than **except** these necessary things;
29 That ye abstain
from *meats offered to idols* **idol sacrifices**,
and from blood, and from *things* strangled,
and from *fornication* **whoredom**:
from which *if ye keep yourselves*,
ye shall *do* **transact** well.
Fare ye well.
30 So **indeed**, when they were *dismissed* **released**,
they came to Antioch:
and when they had gathered the multitude together,
they *delivered* **gave over** the epistle:
31 Which when they had read,
they *rejoiced for* **cheered over** the consolation.
32 And Judas **Yah Hudah** and Silas,
being prophets also themselves,
exhorted **besought** the brethren *with* **through** many words,
and *confirmed* **established** them.
33 And after they *tarried there a space* **had done time**,
they were *let go* **released** in peace **shalom**
from the brethren unto the apostles.
34 Notwithstanding
it pleased Silas **thought well** to abide there still.
35 **THE SECOND JOURNEY OF PAULOS**
Paul Paulos also and *Barnabas* **Bar Nabi**
continued **tarried** in Antioch,
teaching **doctrinating** and *preaching* **evangelizing**
the word of the Lord **Adonay**, with many others also.
36 And some days after
Paul Paulos said unto *Barnabas* **Bar Nabi**,
Let us go *again* **now turn around**
and visit our brethren in every city
where **wherein** we have *preached* **evangelized**
the word of the Lord **Adonay**,
and see — how they do.
37 And *Barnabas* **determined** **Bar Nabi** **counseled**
to take with them *John* **Yahn**,
whose surname was **Mark** **who was called** **Markos**.
38 **PAULOS AND BAR NABI SEPARATE**
But *Paul* **thought not good** **Paulos** **deemed unworthy**
to take him with them,
who departed from them from Pamphylia,
and *went* **came** not with them to the work.
39 And **so be it**,
the contention was so sharp **an agitation** between them,
so that they *departed asunder* **separated** one from the other:
and so *Barnabas* **Bar Nabi** took *Mark* **Markos**,
and sailed unto Cyprus;
40 And *Paul* **chose** **Paulos** **selected** Silas, and departed,
being *recommended* **surrendered** by the brethren
unto the *grace* **charism** of God **Elohim**.
41 And he *went* **passed** through Syria and Cilicia,
confirming the *churches* **ecclesiae**.

TIMO THEOS JOINS PAULOS

16 Then *came* **arrived** he to in Derbe and Lystra:
and, behold, a *certain* disciple was there,
named *Timotheus* **Timo Theos**,
the son of a *certain* woman,
which was a Jewess, and believed
a trustworthy Yah Hudy;
but his father was a *Greek* **Hellene**:
2 Which was *well reported* **witnessed** of
by the brethren that were at Lystra and Iconium.
3 *Him would Paul have* **Paulos** **willed him**
to go forth with him;
and took and circumcised him
because of the *Jews* **Yah Hudyim**
which were in those *quarters* **places**:
for they knew all that his father was a *Greek* **Hellene**.
4 And as they went through the cities,
they delivered them the *decrees* **dogmas**
for to *keep* **guard**,
that were *ordained* **judged** of the apostles and elders

ACTS 15, 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

28 For the Holy Spirit and we
think well to put no more burden upon you
— except these necessary:
29 that you abstain from idol sacrifices
and from blood
and from strangled
and from whoredom;
from which, keeping yourselves, you transact well.
Fare you well!
30 So indeed,
they are released, and they go to Antioch:
and they gather the multitude together,
and they give over the epistle:
31 which, having read,
they cheer over the consolation.
32 And Yah Hudah and Silas, also being prophets,
beseech the brothers through many words
and establish them.
33 And after they do time,
they are released from the brothers to the apostles
in shalom.
34 Notwithstanding
Silas thinks well to abide there still.
35 **THE SECOND JOURNEY OF PAULOS**
Paulos and *Bar Nabi* also tarry in Antioch;
doctrinating and evangelizing the word of Adonay
with many others also.
36 And some days after, Paulos says to Bar Nabi,
Now we turn around and visit our brothers
in every city
wherein we evangelized the word of Adonay,
— how they do.
37 And Bar Nabi counsels to take Yahn,
who is called Markos with them.

PAULOS AND BAR NABI SEPARATE

38 And Paulos deems him unworthy to take with them
— who had departed from them from Pamphylia,
and came not to the work with them.
39 And so be it,
there is an agitation between them,
so that they separate one from the other:
and so Bar Nabi takes Markos and sails to Cyprus;
and Paulos selects Silas, and departs
— being surrendered by the brothers
to the charism of Elohim.
41 And he passes through Syria and Cilicia,
confirming the ecclesiae.

TIMO THEOS JOINS PAULOS

16 And he arrives in Derbe and Lystra:
and behold, a disciple is there named Timo Theos,
the son of a woman — a trustworthy Yah Hudy;
but of a father — a Hellene:
2 and the brothers at Lystra and Iconium
witness of him.
3 Paulos wills him to go with him;
and takes and circumcises him
because of the Yah Hudyim in those places:
for they all know his father is a Hellene.
4 And as they go through the cities,
they deliver them the dogmas to guard,
that are judged by the apostles and elders

ACTS 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 which were at Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**.
And so **indeed** were the *churches ecclesiae*
established solidified in the *faith trust*,
and *increased superabounded* in number daily.

THE VISION OF PAULOS

6 Now when they had gone throughout Phrygia
and the **Galatian** region of *Galatia*,
and were forbidden of the Holy *Ghost Spirit*
to *preach speak* the word in Asia,
7 After they were come to Mysia,
they *assayed tested* to go into Bithynia:
8 *but and* the Spirit *suffered allowed* them not.
And they passing by Mysia
came down descended to Troas.

9 And a vision appeared to *Paul Paulos*
in through the night;
There stood a man of *Macedonia* — a **Macedonian**
and prayed who besought him, *saying wording*,
Come over Pass through into Macedonia, and help us.

10 And after he had seen the vision,
immediately straightway
we *endeavoured sought* to go into Macedonia,
assuredly gathering concluding
that the *Lord Adonay* had called us
for to *preach the gospel evangelize* unto them.
11 *Therefore loosing So, embarking* from Troas,
we came *with a straight course straightly* to Samothracia,
and *the next day* to Neapolis;

ON TO PHILIPPI

12 And from thence to Philippi,
which is the *chief preeminent* city
of that part of Macedonia, and a colony:
and we were in that city
abiding certain tarrying some days.

13 And on the *sabbath day of the shabbaths*
we went out of the city by a *river stream* side,
where prayer was *wont presumed* to be made;
and we sat *down*, and spake unto the women
which *resorted thither came together*.

14 And a *certain* woman named Lydia,
a seller of purple, of the city of Thyatira,
which *worshipped God venerated Elohim*, heard us:
whose heart the *Lord Adonay* opened,
that she *attended heeded* unto the *things those*
which were spoken of by *Paul Paulos*.

15 And when she was baptized, and her household,
she *besought entreated* us, *saying wording*,
If ye have judged me
to be *faithful trustworthy* to the *Lord Adonay*,
come enter into my house, and abide *there*.
And she constrained us.

PAULOS EVANGELIZES OUT A SPIRIT OF PYTHON

16 And **so be** it *came to pass*, as we went to prayer,
a *certain damsel lass*
possessed with having a spirit of *divination Python* met us,
which *brought presented* her *masters adonim*
much *gain work* by soothsaying:

17 The same followed *Paul Paulos* and us,
and cried, *saying wording*,
These *men humans*
are the servants of the *most high God El Elyon*,
which *shew evangelize* unto us the way of salvation.

18 And this did she many days.
But *Paul Paulos*, being grieved,
turned and said to the spirit,
I *command evangelize* thee
in the name of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*
to come out of her.

19 And he came out the same hour.
And when her *masters adonim* saw
that the *hope hopes* of their *gains was work were* gone,
they *caught Paul took Paulos* and Silas,
and drew them into the *marketplace market*
unto the *rulers archs*,

20 And brought them to the *magistrates strategoi*, saying,
These *men, being Jews humans* — *Yah Hudiym*,
do exceedingly trouble utterly disturb our city,
21 And *teach evangelize* customs,

ACTS 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

at Yeru Shalem.
5 So indeed the ecclesiae solidify in the trust,
and superabound in number daily.

THE VISION OF PAULOS

6 And going throughout Phrygia and the Galatian region,
— forbidden by the Holy Spirit to speak the word in Asia;
7 and coming to Mysia, they test to go into Bithynia:
and the Spirit allows them not:
8 and passing by Mysia they descend to Troas.

9 And through the night, a vision appears to Paulos;
a man standing — a Macedonian
who beseeches him, wording,
Pass through to Macedonia, and help us.

10 And after he sees the vision,
straightway we seek to go to Macedonia,
concluding that Adonay calls us
to evangelize to them.

11 So embarking from Troas,
we come straightly to Samothracia,
and next to Neapolis.

ON TO PHILIPPI

12 And from there to Philippi
— the preeminent city of that part of Macedonia
— a colony;
and we tarry in that city some days:
13 and on the day of the shabbaths
we go from the city by a stream side,
where prayer is presumed to be made;
and we sit and speak to the women who come together.

14 And a woman named Lydia,
a seller of purple, of the city of Thyatira,
who venerates Elohim, hears us:
whose heart Adonay opens,
to heed to those spoken by Paulos:
15 and when she and her household are baptized,
she entertains us, wording,
If you judge me trustworthy to Adonay,
enter my house, and abide.
— and she constrains us.

PAULOS EVANGELIZES OUT A SPIRIT OF PYTHON

16 And so be it, as we go to prayer,
a lass having a spirit of Python meets us,
who presents her adonim much work by soothsaying:
17 who follows Paulos and us, and cries, wording,
These humans are the servants of El Elyon
who evangelize the way of salvation to us.
18 — and she does this many days.

But Paulos, being grieved,
turns to the spirit, and says,
I evangelize you in the name of Yah Shua Messiah
to come from her.
— and he comes out the same hour.

19 And when her adonim see
that the hopes of their work are gone,
they take Paulos and Silas,
and draw them into the market to the archs;
20 and bring them to the strategoi, saying,
These humans — Yah Hudiym
utterly disturb our city,
and evangelize customs
21

ACTS 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which are not *lawful* **allowed** for us to receive,
neither to *observe* **do**, being Romans.

22 And the multitude *rose up* **stood** together against them:
and the *magistrates* **strategoi**
rent off **rip** their *clothes* **garments**,
and *commanded* **summoned** to *beat* **bastinado** them.

PAULOS AND SILAS UNDER GUARD

23 And when they had
laid **put** many *stripes* **plagues** upon them,
they cast them into *prison* **the guardhouse**,
charging **evangelizing** the *jailor* **prison guard**
to *keep* **guard** them *safely* **securely**:
24 Who, having *received* **taken** such a *charge* **an evangelism**,
thrust **cast** them into the inner *prison* **guardhouse**,
and *made* **secured** their feet *fast* in the *stocks* **staves**.
25 And at midnight *Paul* **Paulos** and Silas prayed,
and *sang praises* **hymned** unto *God* **Elohim**:
and the prisoners heard them.

A MEGA QUAKE SHAKES THE PRISON

26 And suddenly
there was **became** a *great earthquake* **mega quake**,
so that the foundations of the prison were shaken:
and immediately all the *doors* **portals** were opened,
and every one's bands were loosed.
27 And the *keeper* **guard** of the prison
awaking out of his sleep **being awakened**,
and seeing the *prison doors* **guardhouse portals** open,
he *drew out* his sword,
and *would have killed* **was about to take** himself **out**,
supposing **presuming** that the prisoners had *been fled* **escaped**.
28 But *Paul* **cried** **Paulos called** with a *loud* **mega** voice
saying **wording**, *Do* **Transact** thyself no *harm* **evil**:
for we are all here.
29 Then **And** he *called* **asked** for a light,
and *sprang in* **leaped**, and *came* **became** trembling,
and *fell down* **prostrated**
before Paul **in front of Paulos** and Silas,
30 And brought them out, and said,
Sirs **Adonim**, what must I do to be saved?
31 And they said, *Believe* **Trust**
on the Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.
32 And they spake unto him
the word of *the Lord* **Adonay**,
and to all that were in his house.
33 And he took them **in** the same hour of the night,
and *washed* **bathed** their *stripes* **plagues**;
and was baptized, he and all his,
straightway **immediately**.
34 And when he had brought them into his house,
he set *meat before them* **a table**, and *rejoiced* **jumped for joy**,
believing **trusting** in *God* **Elohim** with all his house.
35 And *when it was* **being** day,
the *magistrates* **strategoi**
sent **apostolized** the *serjeants* **staff bearers**,
saying **wording**, *Let* **Release** those *men* **go** **humans**.
36 And the *keeper of the prison* **prison guard**
told **evangelized** this *saying* **word** to *Paul* **Paulos**,
The *magistrates* **strategoi** have sent to *let* **release** you *go*:
so now *therefore* depart, and go in *peace* **shalom**.
37 But *Paul* **Paulos** said unto them,
They have *beaten* **flogged** us *openly* **publicly**
uncondemned **unsentenced**,
being *Romans* **Roman humans**,
and have cast us into *prison* **the guardhouse**;
and now do they *thrust* **cast** us out *privily* **secretly**?
nay *verily* **indeed**;
but let them come themselves and *fetch* **lead** us out.
38 And the *serjeants* **staff bearers**
told **evangelized** these *words* **rhema**
unto the *magistrates* **strategoi**:
and they *feared* **awed**,
when they heard that they were Romans.
39 And they came and *besought* **entreated** them,
and led them out,
and *desired* **asked** them to depart out of the city.
40 And they went out of the *prison* **guardhouse**,

ACTS 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

neither allowed for us to receive,
nor, being Romans, to do.

22 And the multitude stands together against them:
and the *strategoi* rip their garments
and summon to *bastinado* them.

PAULOS AND SILAS UNDER GUARD

23 And they put many plagues on them
and cast them into the guardhouse,
evangelizing the prison guard to guard them securely:
24 who, having taken such an evangelism,
casts them into the inner guardhouse,
and secures their feet in the staves.
25 And at midnight,
Paulos and Silas pray and hymn to Elohim:
and the prisoners hear them.

A MEGA QUAKE SHAKES THE PRISON

26 And suddenly, there becomes a mega quake
so that the foundations of the prison shake:
and immediately all the portals open
and the bands of everyone loosen:
and being awakened,
the guard of the prison
seeing the guardhouse portals open,
he draws his sword
and is about to take himself out
— presuming the prisoners escaped.
28 But Paulos calls out with a mega voice,
wording, Transact yourself no evil: for we are all here.
29 And he asks for a light,
and leaps and becomes trembling
and prostrates in front of Paulos and Silas;
and brings them out, and says,
Adonim, what must I do to be saved?
31 And they say, Trust on Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
and you are saved — and your house.
32 And they speak the word of Adonay
to him and to all in his house:
and in the same hour of the night,
he takes them and bathes their plagues;
and immediately is baptized — he and all his:
and he brings them to his house
and sets a table and jumps for joy
— trusting in Elohim with all his house.
35 And being day,
the *strategoi* apostolize the staff bearers,
wording, Release those humans.
36 And the prison guard evangelizes this word to Paulos,
The *strategoi* send to release you:
so now depart, and go in shalom.
37 But Paulos says to them,
They flogged us publicly — unsentenced,
being Roman humans,
and cast us into the guardhouse!
And now cast they us out secretly?
Indeed not!
But have them come themselves and lead us out.
38 And the staff bearers
evangelizes these rhema to the *strategoi*:
and they awe when they hear they are Romans:
and they come and entreat them and lead them out
and ask them to depart from the city.
40 And they go from the guardhouse

ACTS 16, 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and entered into the house of **come unto** Lydia:
and when they had seen the brethren,
they *comforted* **consoled** them, and departed.

ON TO THESSALONIKEE

17

Now when they had passed through
Amphipolis and Apollonia,
they came to *Thessalonica* **Thessalonikee**,

2

where was a synagogue of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**:
And *Paul Paulos*, as his *manner custom* was,

3

went in unto them,
and three *sabbath days* **shabbaths**
reasoned with them out of the scriptures,

4

Opening and *alleging* **setting forth**,
that *Christ the Messiah* must needs have suffered,
and risen *again* from the dead;
and that this *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
whom I *preach* **evangelize** unto you,
is *Christ* **the Messiah**.

5

And some of them *believed* **confided**,
and *consorted* **associated** with *Paul Paulos* and Silas;
and of the *devout Greeks* **venerating Hellenes**

6

a *great vast* multitude,
and of the *chief preeminent* women not a few.

7

But the Jews which *believed not* **distrusting Yah Hudiym**,

moved with envy **being zealous**,

took unto them *certain lewd fellows* **some evil men**
of the baser sort — **forum debaters**,

and *gathered* **assembled** a *company* **multitude**,

and *set all* **tumulted** the city *on an uproar*,

and *assaulted* **stood by** the house of Jason,
and sought to bring them out to the *people* **public**.

8

And when they found them not,
they *drew* **dragged** Jason and *certain some* brethren

unto the *rulers of the city* **politarchees**, crying,
These that have *turned* **roused** the world *upside down*

are *come hither* **present** also; Whom Jason hath received:

and these all *do* **transact** contrary

to the *decrees* **dogmas** of *Caesar* **the Kaisar**,

saying **wording** that there is another *king* **sovereign**,

one *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.

9

And they *troubled* **agitated** the *people* **multitude**

and the *rulers of the city* **politarchees**,

when they heard these *things*.

10

And when they had taken *security* **sufficient** of Jason,
and of the *other* **rest**, they *let them go* **released them**.

11

ON TO BEREÁ

And the brethren *immediately* **straightway**

sent away *Paul* **dispatched Paulos** and Silas

by **through** night unto Berea:

who coming *thither*

went into the synagogue of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**.

12

These were more *noble* **well—birthed**

than those in *Thessalonica* **Thessalonikee**,

in that they received the word

with all *readiness of mind* **eagerness**,

and *searched* **examined** the scriptures daily,
whether those *things were so* **be thus**.

13

Therefore **So indeed** many of them *believed* **trusted**;

also of *honourable* **well—respected** women

which were *Greeks* **Hellenists**, and of men, not a few.

14

But when

the Jews **Yah Hudiym** of *Thessalonica* **Thessalonikee**

had knowledge that the word of *God* **Elohim**

was *preached* **evangelized** of *Paul Paulos* at Berea,

they came *thither* **there also**,

and *stirred* **shook up** the *people* **multitude**.

15

And then *immediately* **straightway**

the brethren *sent away* *Paul* **apostolized Paulos forth**

to go as *it were to* **upon** the sea:

but Silas and *Timotheus* **Timo Theos** abode there still.

ON TO ATHENS

16

And they that *conducted* *Paul* **seated Paulos**

brought him unto Athens:

and *receiving* **taking** a *commandment* **misvah**

unto Silas and *Timotheus* **Timo Theos**

for to come to him *with all speed* **most quickly**,

they departed.

ACTS 16, 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and come to Lydia:
and when they see the brothers,
they console them and depart.

ON TO THESSALONIKEE

17

And passing through Amphipolis and Apollonia

they come to Thessalonikee;

where there is a synagogue of the Yah Hudiym:

2

and as his custom, Paulos comes to them,

and for three shabbaths

reasons with them from the scriptures

3

— opening and setting forth

that the Messiah needed to suffer

and rise from the dead;

and that this Yah Shua whom I evangelize to you,
is the Messiah.

4

And some of them confide

and associate with Paulos and Silas

— with a vast multitude of the venerating Hellenes

and of the preeminent women not a few:

5

but the distrusting Yah Hudiym, being zealous,

take some evil men to them — forum debaters,

and assemble a multitude and tumult the city;

and stand by the house of Jason

and seek to bring them out to the public.

6

And when they find them not,

they drag Jason and some brothers to the politarchees,

crying, These who rouse the world are present also

— whom Jason received:

and these all transact contrary

to the dogmas of the Kaisar

— wording that there is another sovereign, Yah Shua.

8

And when they hear these

they agitate the multitude and the politarchees:

9

And taking sufficient from Jason and from the rest,

they release them.

ON TO BEREÁ

10

And straightway through the night

the brothers dispatch Paulos and Silas to Berea:

who come and enter

the synagogue of the Yah Hudiym

— these are more well—birthed

than those in Thessalonikee

— in that they receive the word with all eagerness

and examine the scriptures daily

— whether they be thus.

12

So indeed many of them trust;

also of well—respected women Hellenists;

and of men not a few.

13

But when the Yah Hudiym of Thessalonikee

know that the word of Elohim

is evangelized by Paulos at Berea,

they come there and shake the multitude:

and straightway

the brothers apostolize Paulos to go, as upon the sea:

and Silas and Timo Theos still abide there.

15

And they who seat Paulos bring him to Athens:

and take a misvah to Silas and Timo Theos

to come to him most quickly,

and they depart.

ON TO ATHENS

ACTS 17

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 Now **But** while Paul Paulos
waited for **awaited** them at Athens,
his spirit was **stirred agitated** in him,
when he saw **observed** the city
wholly given to idolatry **being downright idolatrous**.

17 Therefore **So indeed**
disputed **reasoned** he in the synagogue
with the Jews **Yah Hudiym**,
and with the *devout* **venerating** persons,
and in the market daily with them that met with him.

18 Then certain **But some** philosophers of the Epicureans,
and of the Stoicks, encountered him.
And some said **spake**,
What will **willeth** this *babbler* say **spermalogist to word?**
other some, He seemeth **thinketh well**
to be a *setter forth* **an evangelizer**
of strange *gods* **demons**:
because he *preached* **evangelized** unto them
Jesus **Yah Shua**, and the resurrection.

19 And they took him, and brought him unto Areopagus,
saying **wording**,
May **Can** we know what this new doctrine,
whereof thou speakest, is?
For thou *bringest* **bearest**
certain **somewhat** strange *things* to our ears **hearing**:
so we would **will to** know *therefore*
what these *things* will **to** mean.
(For all the Athenians and strangers
which were **residing** there
spent their time **leisured** in *nothing else* **none other**,
but either to *tell* **word**, or to hear some new *thing*.)

22 **THE AREOPAGUS MESSAGE OF PAULOS**
Then Paul **And Paulos**
stood in the midst of *Mars' hill* **Areopagus**,
and said, *Ye men of Athens* **Men — Athenians**,
I perceive **observe** that in all *things*
ye are too *superstitious* **demon—dreaders**.
For as I passed *by* **through**,
and beheld **considered**
your *devotions* **objects of reverence**,
I found *an altar* with *this inscription* **a bamah epigraphed**,
TO THE UNKNOWN GOD EL
So Whom *therefore*
ye *ignorantly worship* **unknowingly revere**,
him declare **evangelize** I unto you.

24 God **Elohim** that made the *world* **cosmos**
and all *things* therein,
seeing that he is *Lord* **this one being Adonay**
of heaven and earth,
dwelleth **settleth** not
in *temples* made with *hands* **handmade naves**;
Neither is *worshipped* **cured**
with *men's* **by human hands**
as though he needed *any thing* **ought**,
seeing he giveth to all life,
and *breath* **puffing**, and all *things*;
And hath made of one blood
all *nations* **goyim** of *men* **humanity**
for to *dwell* **settle** on all the face of the earth,
and hath *determined* **decreed** the times
before appointed **and prearranged the seasons**,
and the *bounds* **boundaries** of their *habitation* **settlement**;

27 That they should seek *the Lord* **Yah Veh**,
if *haply* **then indeed** they might *feel* **after** **touch** him,
and find him,
though he be not far from every **each** one of us:

Yesha Yah 55:6

28 For in him we live, and *move* **stir**,
and *have our being* **be**;
as *certain* **some** also of your own poets have said,
For we are also his *offspring* **genos**.

29 Forasmuch then as we are
So being the *offspring* **genos** of God **Elohim**,
we *ought* **are indebted** not to *think* **presume**
that the *Godhead* **Elohimness**
is **be** like unto gold, or silver, or stone,
graven **etched** by *art* **techniques**
and *man's* *device* **human deliberation**.

ACTS 17

exeGeses companion BIBLE

16 But Paulos awaits them at Athens;
and his spirit agitates within him
when he observes the city
being downright idolatrous:

17 so indeed he reasons in the synagogue
with the Yah Hudiym and with the venerating persons
and daily in the market with those meeting with him.

18 But some philosophers of the Epicureans
and of the Stoicks encounter him:
and some speak,
What wills this spermalogist to word?
and some others, He thinks well
to be an evangelizer of strange demons
— because he evangelizes
Yah Shua and the resurrection to them.

19 And they take him and bring him to Areopagus,
wording, Can we know this new doctrine
whereof you speak?

20 For you bear somewhat strange to our hearing:
so we will to know what these will to mean.

21 — for all the Asoians and strangers residing there
leisure in none other,
than either to word, or to hear somewhat new.

THE AREOPAGUS MESSAGE OF PAULOS

22 And Paulos stands midst Areopagus,
and says, Men — Asoians,
I observe that in all you are demon—dreaders.

23 For as I passed through
and considered your objects of reverence,
I found a bamah epigraphed,
TO THE UNKNOWN EL
— so whom you unknowingly revere,
I evangelize to you.

24 Elohim, who made the cosmos and all therein,
this one being Adonay of the heavens and earth,
neither settles in handmade naves
nor is cured by human hands
— as though he needed ought;
seeing he gives life and puffing and all to all;
and also made of one blood
all goyim of humanity
to settle on all the face of the earth;
and decreed the times and prearranged the seasons
and the boundaries of their settlement;
to seek Yah Veh
— if then indeed, to touch him and to find him
— though he is not far from each one of us:

Yesha Yah 55:6

28 for in him we live and stir and be;
as some also of your own poets say,
For we are also his genos.

29 So, being of the genos of Elohim,
we are indebted to not presume
that the likeness of Elohim
is likened to gold or silver or stone
etched by human techniques and deliberations.

ACTS 17, 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

30 *And therefore* **So indeed**
the times of this *ignorance* **unknowingness**
God winked at **Elohim overlooked;**
but now *commandeth* **evangelizeth** all *men* **humanity**
every where to repent:
31 Because he hath *appointed* **set** a day,
in the which he *will* **shall be about** to judge the world
in *righteousness* **justness**
by *that* a man whom he hath *ordained* **decreed;**
whereof he hath given assurance **having presented trust**
unto all *men*,
in that he hath raised him from the dead.
32 And when they heard of the resurrection of the dead,
some *mocked* **indeed jeered:** and others said,
We *will* **shall** hear thee again of **concerning** this *matter*.
33 *So Paul* **Thus Paulos** departed from among them.
34 Howbeit *certain* **some** men *clave unto* **joined** him,
and *believed* **trusted:**
among the which was
Dionysius the *Areopagite* **Areopagiy**,
and a woman named Damaris, and others with them.

ON TO CORINTH

18

After these things
Paul departed **Paulos separated** from Athens,
and came to Corinth;
2 And found a *certain Jew* **Yah Hudiym** named Aquila,
born in Pontos **a Pontican by genos**,
lately **recently** come from Italy,
with his *wife* **woman** Priscilla;
(because that Claudius had *commanded* **ordained**
all *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** to *depart* **separate** from Rome):
3 And because he was of *the same craft* **a fellow artisan**,
he abode with them, and *wrought* **worked:**
for by their *occupation* **art**
they were *tentmakers* **tabernaclemakers**.
4 And he reasoned in the synagogue
every *sabbath* **shabbath**,
and *persuaded* **convinced**
the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** and the *Greeks* **Hellenes**.
5 And when Silas and *Timotheus* **Timo Theos**
were come **down** from Macedonia,
Paul Paulos was *pressed* **held** in the spirit,
and *testified* **witnessed** to the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** was *Christ* **the Messiah**.
6 And when they opposed themselves,
and blasphemed,
he shook his *raiment* **garment**, and said unto them,
Your blood be upon your own heads; I am *clean* **pure;**
from *henceforth* **now on**
I *will* **shall** go unto the *Gentiles* **goyim**.
7 And he departed thence,
and *entered into* **came to**
a *certain man's* **someone's** house, named Justus,
one that *worshipped* **God** **venerated Elohim**,
whose house joined *hard* to the synagogue.
8 And Crispus, the *chief ruler* **arch** of the synagogue,
believed **trusted** on the *Lord* **Adonay** with all his house;
and many of the Corinthians hearing *believed* **trusted**,
and were baptized.
9 *Then spake the Lord* **And Adonay said** to *Paul Paulos*
in the night by **through** a vision,
Be **Awe** not afraid, but speak,
and *hold* **hush** not thy peace:
10 *For I am* **Because I AM** with thee,
and no *man* **one** shall *setput* on thee to *hurt* **vilify** thee:
for **because** I have much people in this city.
11 And he *continued* **sat** there a year and six months,
teaching **doctrinating** the word of *God* **Elohim**
among them.
12 And when Gallio was the *deputy* **proconsul** of Achaia,
the *Jews* **made insurrection** **Yah Hudiym rushed**
with one accord **in unanimity** against *Paul Paulos*,
and brought him to the *judgment seat* **bamah**,
13 *Saying* **Wording**, This *fellow* **one** persuadeth men
to *worship* **God** **venerate Elohim**
contrary to the *law* **torah**.
14 And when *Paul Paulos* was now about to open his mouth,
Gallio said unto the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**,

ACTS 17, 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

30 **So indeed**
Elohim overlooked the times of this unknowingness;
but now evangelizes all humanity every where
to repent:
31 because he set a day,
in which he is about to judge the world in justness
by a man whom he decreed;
having presented trust to all,
in that he raised him from the dead.
32 And they hear of the resurrection of the dead,
and indeed, some jeer:
and others say, We hear you again concerning this.
33 And thus Paulos departs from among them:
34 howbeit some men join him, and trust:
among whom is Dionysius the Areopagiy
and a woman named Damaris
and others with them.

ON TO CORINTH

18

After these,
Paulos separates from Athens and comes to Corinth;
2 and finds a Yah Hudiym named Aquila
— a Pontican by genos,
recently come from Italy with his woman Priscilla
— because Claudius ordained
that all Yah Hudiym separate from Rome:
and he comes to them:
3 and because he is a fellow artisan,
he abides with them and works
for by art, they are tabernaclemakers.
4 And he reasons in the synagogue every shabbath,
and convinces the Yah Hudiym and the Hellenes.
5 And when both Silas and Timo Theos
come down from Macedonia,
Paulos is held in the spirit,
and witnesses to the Yah Hudiym
that Yah Shua is the Messiah.
6 And when they oppose and blaspheme,
he shakes his garment, and says to them,
Your blood be upon your own heads; I am pure;
from now on I go to the goyim.
7 — and he departs thence.
And he comes to the house of one named Justus
— who venerates Elohim,
whose house joins the synagogue.
8 And Crispus, the arch of the synagogue,
trusts on Adonay with all his house;
and many of the Corinthians who hear
trust and are baptized.
9 And through a vision in the night
Adonay says to Paulos,
Awe not, but speak, and hush not:
because I AM with you:
and no one puts on you to vilify you
because I have much people in this city.
10 — and he sits there a year and six months
doctrinating the word of Elohim among them.
11 And while Gallio is the proconsul of Achaia,
the Yah Hudiym rush in unanimity against Paulos
and bring him to the bamah,
12 wording,
This *one* persuades men to venerate Elohim
contrary to the torah.
13 And as Paulos is now about to open his mouth,
Gallio says to the Yah Hudiym,

ACTS 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

Therefore **So indeed**,
If it were a **some** matter of **wrong injustice**
or **wicked lewdness evil villany**, O ye Jews **Yah Hudiym**,
reason would **according to word**,
that I should **bear with tolerate** you:
15 But if it be a question of **concerning** words and names,
and of your **law torah**, look ye to it;
for I will be **no to not be** judge of **such matters these**.
16 And he **drave dismissed** them
from the **judgment seat bamah**.
17 Then all the **Greeks Hellenes** took Sosthenes,
the **chief ruler arch** of the synagogue,
and **beat struck** him
before in front of the **judgment seat bamah**.
And Gallio **cared concerned himself**
for none of those **things**.

THE VOW OF PAULOS

18 And **Paul** after this **tarried there Paulos abode** yet
a **good while long day**,
and **then took his leave of bade bye bye to** the brethren,
and sailed thence into Syria,
and with him Priscilla and Aquila;
having shorn his head in Cenchrea: for he had a vow.
19 And he **came to arrived in** Ephesus,
and left them there:
but he himself entered into the synagogue,
and reasoned with the **Jews Yah Hudiym**.
20 When **And** they **desired asked** him
to **tarry longer abide more** time with them,
he consented not;
21 But bade them **farewell bye bye**, saying,
I **must by all means most certainly**
keep do this **feast celebration**
that cometh in **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**:
but I **will shall** return again unto you,
if God will Elohim willing.
And he **sailed embarked** from Ephesus.
22 And when he had
landed descended at **Caesarea Kaisaria**,
and **gone up ascended**, and saluted the **church ecclesia**,
he **went down descended** to Antioch.
23 And after he had **spent done** some time there,
he departed,
and **went over passed through**
all the **country of Galatia Galatian region** and Phrygia
in **order sequence**,
strengthening establishing all the disciples.

APOLLOS IN EPHEBUS

24 And a **certain Jew Yah Hudy** named Apollos,
born at Alexandria — an Alexandrian by genos,
an eloquent a man — an orator,
and **mighty able** in the scriptures,
came to arrived in Ephesus.
25 This **man one** was **instructed catechized**
in the way of the **Lord Adonay**;
and being **fervent zealous** in the spirit,
he **spake and taught diligently doctrinated exactly**
the things of the Lord concerning Adonay,
knowing understanding only the baptism of **John Yahn**.
26 And he began to **speak boldly emboldened**
in the synagogue:
whom when Aquila and Priscilla had heard,
they took him **unto them**, and expounded unto him
the way of **God Elohim more perfectly exactly**.
27 And when he was **disposed had willed**
to pass **through** into Achaia,
the brethren **wrote scribed**,
exhorting encouraging the disciples to receive him:
who, when he was come, **helped considered** them much
which had **believed trusted** through **grace charism**:
28 For he **mightily vigorously**
convinced overwhelmed the **Jews Yah Hudiym**,
and that publicly,
shewing **by through** the scriptures
that **Jesus Yah Shua** was **Christ the Messiah**.

PAULOS AT EPHEBUS

19 And **so be** it **came to pass**, that,
while Apollos was at Corinth,
Paul Paulos having passed through the upper **coasts parts**

ACTS 18, 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

So indeed,
If it is some matter of injustice or evil villany,
O you Yah Hudiym,
according to word, I tolerate you:
15 but if it be a question concerning words and names,
and of your torah, you look to it;
for I will to not be judge of these.
16 — and he dismisses them from the bamah.
17 All the Hellenes
take Sosthenes the arch of the synagogue,
and strike him in front of the bamah:
and Gallio concerns himself for none of those.

THE VOW OF PAULOS

18 And Paulos still abides a long day;
and bids bye bye to the brothers
and sails to Syria with Priscilla and Aquila;
and in Cenchrea he shears his head: for he has a vow:
19 and he arrives in Ephesus and leaves them there:
but he himself enters the synagogue,
and reasons with the Yah Hudiym.
20 And they ask him to abide more time with them;
and he consents not
21 but bids them bye bye, saying,
I most certainly must do the coming celebration
in Yeru Shalem:
and Elohim willing, I return again to you.
— and he embarks from Ephesus.
22 And he descends to Kaisaria,
and ascends and salutes the ecclesia:
and he descends to Antioch:
23 and after he does some time there,
he departs and passes through
all the Galatian region and Phrygia in sequence
— establishing all the disciples.

APOLLOS IN EPHEBUS

24 And a Yah Hudy named Apollos
— an Alexandrian by genos
a man — an orator and able in the scriptures,
arrives in Ephesus.
25 This **one** is catechized in the way of Adonay;
and being zealous in spirit,
he speaks and doctrinates exactly concerning Adonay
— understanding only the baptism of Yahn:
and he begins emboldened in the synagogue:
whom when Aquila and Priscilla hear,
they take him and expound to him
the way of Elohim more exactly.
27 And he wills to pass through into Achaia,
and the brothers scribe
to encourage the disciples to receive him:
who, when he comes, to consider them much,
who had the trust through charism:
28 for he vigorously overwhelms the Yah Hudiym
— and that publicly,
showing through the scriptures
that Yah Shua is the Messiah.

PAULOS AT EPHEBUS

19 And so be it, while Apollos is at Corinth,
Paulos passes through the upper parts

ACTS 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

came to Ephesus:
and finding *certain* **some** disciples,
2 He said unto them,
Have ye *received* **taken** the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**
since ye *believed* **trusted**?
And they said unto him,
We have not *so much as* **even** heard
3 *whether* **if** there be any Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.
And he said unto them,
Unto what then were ye baptized?
4 And they said, Unto *John's* **Yahn's** baptism.
Then **And** said *Paul* **Paulos**,
John **verily** **Yahn** **indeed**
baptized *with* the baptism of repentance,
saying **wording** unto the people,
that they should *believe on* **trust** in him
which should come after him,
that is, on *Christ Jesus* **in the Messiah** **Yah Shua**.
5 When they heard *this*,
they were baptized
in the name of *the Lord Jesus* **Adonay Yah Shua**.
6 And when *Paul* **Paulos**
had *laid* **put** his hands upon them,
the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit** came on them;
and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.
7 And all the men were about twelve.
8 And he *went* **entered** into the synagogue,
and spake boldly **emboldened**
for the space of **unto** three months,
disputing **reasoning** and *persuading* **convincing**
the things
concerning the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**.
9 But when *divers* **some** were hardened,
and *believed not* **distrusted**,
but *spake evil of* **vilified** that way
before **in the sight of** the multitude,
he departed from them,
and *separated* **set apart** the disciples,
disputing **dialoguing** daily in the school of one Tyrannus.
10 And this *continued* **became** by the space of **unto** two years;
so that all they which *dwelt* **settled** in Asia
heard the word of *the Lord Jesus* **Adonay Yah Shua**,
both *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** and *Greeks* **Hellenes**.
11 **THE DYNAMIS OF ELOHIM THROUGH PAULOS**
And *God* **Elohim**
wrought special miracles **did no ordinary dynamis**
by **through** the hands of *Paul* **Paulos**:
12 So that from his *body* **skin**
were brought unto the *sick* **frail**
handkerchiefs **sudarium** or aprons,
and the diseases *departed* **released** from them,
and the evil spirits went out of them.
13 Then *certain* **some** of the
vagabond Jews **wandering Yah Hudiym** — exorcists,
took upon them **in hand**
to *call* **name** over them which had evil spirits
the name of *the Lord Jesus* **Adonay Yah Shua**,
saying **wording**, We *adjure* **oath** you by *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
whom *Paul* **Paulos** preacheth.
14 And there were **some** seven sons of *one* **Sceva**,
a *Jew* **Yah Hudiy**, and *chief of the priests* **archpriest**,
which did so.
15 And the evil spirit answered and said,
Jesus **Yah Shua** I know,
and *Paul* **Paulos** I know **understand**;
but who are ye?
16 And the *man* **human** in whom the evil spirit was
leaped on them,
and *overcame* **rule over** them,
and prevailed against them,
so that they *fled* **escaped** out of that house
naked and *wounded* **traumatized**.
17 And this was **became** known
to all the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** and *Greeks* **Hellenes**
also *dwelling* **settling** at Ephesus;
and *fear* **awe** fell on them all,
and the name of *the Lord Jesus* **Adonay Yah Shua**
was magnified.

ACTS 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and comes to Ephesus:
and finding some disciples,
2 he says to them,
Having trusted, have you taken the Holy Spirit?
And they say to him,
We have not even heard
if there be any Holy Spirit.
3 And he says to them,
To what then were you baptized?
And they say, To the baptism of Yahn.
4 And Paulos says,
Yahn indeed baptized the baptism of repentance,
wording to the people
to trust in him who comes after him
— that is, in the Messiah Yah Shua.
5 When they hear,
they are baptized in the name of Adonay Yah Shua:
6 and when Paulos puts his hands on them,
the Holy Spirit comes upon them;
and they speak with tongues and prophesy.
— and in all, there are about twelve men.
8 And for three months
he enters the synagogue emboldened
— reasoning and convincing
concerning the sovereigndom of Elohim:
9 but when some harden and distrust,
and vilify that way in the sight of the multitude
he departs from them;
and sets apart the disciples,
dialoguing daily in the school of one Tyrannus:
10 and these become for two years,
so that all who settle in Asia
hear the word of Adonay Yah Shua
— both Yah Hudiym and Hellenes.
11 **THE DYNAMIS OF ELOHIM THROUGH PAULOS**
And it is no ordinary dynamis
that Elohim does through the hands of Paulos:
12 so that, from his skin,
they bring sudarium or aprons to the frail;
and the diseases release from them
and the evil spirits go from them.
13 And some of the wandering Yah Hudiym — exorcists
take in hand to name the name of Adonay Yah Shua
over those having evil spirits,
wording, We oath you by Yah Shua
whom Paulos preaches.
14 And there are some seven sons of Sceva
— a Yah Hudiy and archpriest, who do thus.
15 And the evil spirit answers, saying,
Yah Shua I know
and Paulos I understand!
But who are you?
16 And the human in whom the evil spirit is
leaps on them and rules over them
and prevails against them
— so that they escape from that house
naked and traumatized.
17 And this becomes known
to all the Yah Hudiym and Hellenes
also settling at Ephesus;
and awe falls on them all;
and the name of Adonay Yah Shua is magnified.

ACTS 19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 And many that *believed* **trusted** came,
and *confessed* **avowed**,
and *shewed* **evangelized** their *deeds* **acts**.
19 Many of them also
which *used curious arts* **transacted magic**
brought their *books* **scrolls** together,
and burned them *before in the sight of all men*:
and they *counted* **reckoned** the price of them,
and found it *fifty thousand pieces* **five myriads** of silver.
20 *So mightily* **Thus powerfully**
grew the word of *God* **Elohim** and prevailed.
21 After these *things* were *ended* **fulfilled/shalamed**,
Paul purposed **Paulos placed** in the spirit,
when he had passed through Macedonia and Achaia,
to go to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, saying,
After I have been there, I must also see Rome.
22 *So* **And** he *sent* **apostolized** into Macedonia
two of them that ministered unto him,
Timotheus **Timo Theos** and Erastus;
but he himself stayed in Asia for a *season* **time**.

TROUBLE OF THE SILVERSMITHS

23 And *the same time at that season*
there *arose* **became** no small *stir* **trouble**
about **concerning** that way.
24 For a *certain man* **someone** named Demetrius,
a silversmith,
which made silver *shrines* **naves** for *Diana* **Artemis**,
brought **presented** no small *gain* **work**
unto the *craftsmen* **technicians**;
25 Whom he *called* **gathered** together
with the *workmen* **workers**
of *like* **such** occupation, and said,
Sirs **Men**, ye *know* **understand** that by this *craft* **work**
we *have* our *wealth* **prosper**.
26 Moreover ye *see* **observe** and hear,
that not alone at Ephesus,
but *almost* **throughout** nearly all Asia,
this *Paul* **Paulos** hath *persuaded* **convinced**
and *turned away* **removed** much *people* **multitude**,
saying **wording** that they be no *gods* **elohim**,
which *are made with* **become** *through* hands:
27 So that not only this our *craft* **part**
is **come** in *danger* **peril**
to be *set at nought* **come to disrepute**;
but also that the *temple* **priestal precinct**
of the *great* **mega** goddess *Diana* **Artemis**
should be *despised* **reckoned unto naught**,
and her *magnificence* **majesty**
should be destroyed **is about to be taken down**,
whom all Asia and the world *worshippeth* **venerateth**.
28 And when they heard these *sayings*,
they *were* **became** full of *wrath* **fury**,
and cried out, *saying* **wording**,
Great is Diana **Mega** — **Artemis** of the Ephesians.
29 And the whole city was filled **full** with confusion:
and having caught Gaius and Aristarchus,
men of Macedonia — **Macedonians**,
Paul's companions in travel **Paulos' co—travellers**,
they *rushed with one accord* **ran violently in unanimity**
into the theatre.
30 And when *Paul* would have **Paulos had willed**
entered **to enter** in unto the *people* **public**,
the disciples *suffered* **allowed** him not.
31 And *certain* **some** of the *chief of Asia* **Asiarchs**,
which were his friends, sent unto him,
desiring **entreating** him
that he *would* **should** not *adventure* **give** himself
into the theatre.
32 *Some therefore* **So others indeed** cried one *thing*,
and some another:
for the *assembly* **ecclesia** was confused:
and the *more part* most knew not
wherefore **for what cause** they were come together.
33 And they *drew* **having previously instigated** Alexander
out of the multitude,
the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** putting him forward.
And Alexander *beckoned* **signaled** with the hand,
and *would* **willed to** have *made his defence* **pleaded**
unto the *people* **public**.

ACTS 19

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 And many who trust, come and avow
and evangelize of their acts.
19 Many of them also who transacted magic
bring their scrolls together
and burn them in the sight of all:
and they reckon the price of them
and find it five myriads of silver.
20 Thus powerfully
the word of Elohim grows and prevails.
21 After these fulfill/shalam, Paulos places in the spirit,
when he passes through Macedonia and Achaia,
to go to Yeru Shalem, saying,
After my being there, I must also see Rome.
22 And he apostolizes two who minister to him
to Macedonia
— Timo Theos and Erastus;
he himself stays in Asia for a time.

TROUBLE OF THE SILVERSMITHS

23 And at that season,
there being no small trouble concerning that way,
someone named Demetrius — a silversmith
who makes silver naves for Artemis,
presents no small work to the technicians;
24 whom he gathers together
with the workers of such occupation, and says,
Men, you understand that by this work we prosper:
25 moreover you observe and hear,
that not alone at Ephesus,
but throughout nearly all Asia,
this Paulos convinces and removes a vast multitude;
wording that no elohim becomes through hands:
26 so that not only this our part
comes in peril to disrepute;
but also that the priestal precinct
of the mega goddess Artemis
is reckoned as naught,
and her majesty is about to be taken down
— whom all Asia and the world venerates.
27 And hearing these, they become full of fury,
they cry out, wording,
Mega! Artemis of the Ephesians!
28 And the whole city fills/shalams with confusion:
and catching Gaius and Aristarchus,
men — Macedonians, co—travellers of Paulos,
they run violently in unanimity into the theatre.
29 And Paulos wills to enter to the public,
and the disciples allow him not:
30 and some of the Asiarchs — his friends,
send to him,
entreating him to not give himself into the theatre.
31 So others indeed cry out one, and some another;
for the ecclesia is confused:
and most of them know not
for what cause they come together.
32 And having previously instigated Alexander
from the multitude,
the Yah Hudiym put him forward:
and Alexander signals with the hand,
and wills to plead to the public:

ACTS 19, 20

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

34 But when they knew that he was a Jew **Yah Hudiy**,
all with one voice **there became one cry from all**
about the space of two hours **cried out for about two hours**,
Great is **Diana Mega — Artemis** of the Ephesians.
35 And when the townclerk **scribe**
had **appeased quieted** the **people multitude**,
he said, Ye men of **Ephesus — Ephesians, indeed**,
what **man human** is there that knoweth not
how that the city of the Ephesians
is a **worshipper nave sweeper**
of the great **mega** goddess **Diana Artemis**,
and of the **image which fell down from Jupiter meteorite**?
36 **So** Seeing then that these **things**
cannot be spoken against **being unquestionable**,
ye ought to **must** be quiet,
and to **do nothing rashly transact naught precipitously**.
37 For ye have brought hither these men,
which are neither
robbers strippers of churches priestal precincts,
nor yet blasphemers of your goddess.
38 **Wherefore So indeed**, if Demetrius,
and the **technicians artisans** which are with him,
have a **matter word** against any man,
the **law is open have them lead a forum debate**,
and there are **deputies proconsuls**:
let them **implead accuse** one another.
39 But if ye **enquire any thing seek aught**
concerning any other matters,
it shall be **determined resolved**
in a **lawful assembly by the ecclesia under the torah**.
40 For we are in **danger peril**
to be **called in question accused**
for **about** this day's **uproar riot**,
there being no cause **whereby concerning which**
we may **can** give an **account word**
of this **concourse coalition**.
41 And when he had **thus spoken said these**
he **dismissed released** the **assembly ecclesia**.

ON TO MACEDONIA AND HELLAS

20

And after the **uproar was ceased tumult paused**,
Paul Paulos called unto him the disciples,
and **embraced saluted them**,
and departed for to go into Macedonia.
2 And when he had
gone over passed through those parts,
and had **given besought** them
much exhortation with many words,
he came into **Greece Hellas**,
3 And there **abode did** three months.
And **so be it**,
when the **Jews laid wait the Yah Hudiy plotted** for him,
as he was about to **sail embark** into Syria,
he **purposed his decision became**
to return through Macedonia.
4 And there **accompanied followed** him into Asia
Sopater of Berea — a Berean;
and of the **Thessalonians Thessalonikeus**,
Aristarchus and Secundus;
and **Gaius of Derbe a Derbean**,
and **Timotheus Timo Theos**;
and of **Asia Asians**, **Tychicus and Trophimus**.
5 These **going before who preceded**,
tarried abode for us at Troas.
ON TO TROAS
6 And we sailed away from Philippi
after the days of **unleavened bread matsah**,
and came unto them to Troas in five days;
where we **abode tarried** seven days.
7 And upon the first **day of the week shabbath**,
when the disciples **came assembled** together
to break bread,
Paul preached Paulos reasoned unto them,
ready about to depart on the morrow;
and **continued stretched** his **speech words**
until midnight.
8 And there were many **lights lamps**
in the upper **chamber loft**,

ACTS 19, 20

exeGeses companion BIBLE

34 but knowing he is Yah Hudiy,
there becomes as one cry from all for about two hours,
Mega — Artemis of the Ephesians!
35 And the scribe, quieting the multitude,
says, Men — Ephesians, indeed,
what human is there who knows not
that the city of the Ephesians
is a nave sweeper of the mega goddess Artemis,
and of the meteorite?
36 So seeing,
and being unquestionable,
you must be quiet
and transact naught precipitously.
37 For you bring these men here,
who are neither strippers of priestal precincts,
nor yet blasphemers of your goddess.
38 So indeed, if Demetrius and the artisans with him
have a word against any man,
have them lead a forum debate;
and there are proconsuls:
have them accuse one another.
39 But if you seek aught
concerning any other matters,
resolve it by the ecclesia under the torah.
40 For we are in peril
of being accused about the riot of this day,
there being no cause concerning which
we can give word of this coalition.
41 — and he says these, and releases the ecclesia.

ON TO MACEDONIA AND HELLAS

20

And after the tumult pauses,
Paulos calls the disciples to him,
and salutes and departs to go into Macedonia:
2 and he passes through those parts,
and beseeches them with many words;
and he comes into Hellas
and does three months.
3
4 And so be it, the Yah Hudiy plot for him
as he is about to embark to Syria;
and his decision becomes to return through Macedonia:
and following him into Asia,
Sopater a Berean,
and **Aristarchus and Secundus of the Thessalonikeus**,
and **Gaius a Derbean**,
and **Timo Theos**,
and **Tychicus and Trophimus, Asians**:
5 these who precede, abide for us at Troas.

ON TO TROAS

6 And after the days of matsah
we sail from Philippi;
and in five days, come to them to Troas;
where we tarry seven days:
7 and on the first of the shabbath,
as the disciples assemble together to break bread,
Paulos reasons to them
— about to depart on the morrow;
and stretches his words until midnight.
8 And there are many lamps in the upper loft

ACTS 20

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 where they were gathered together.
And there sat in a window
a *certain young man* **youth** named Eutychus,
being fallen **brought down** into a deep sleep:
and as *Paul was long preaching* **Paulos reasoned much**,
he *sunk* **was brought down with by** sleep,
and fell down from the third loft, and was taken *up* dead.
10 And *Paul went down* **Paulos descended**,
and fell on him,
and embracing him said,
Trouble Tumult not yourselves; for his *life* **soul** is in him.
11 When he *therefore was come up* **ascended** again,
and had broken bread, and *eaten* **tasted**,
and *talked a long while* **homologized at length**,
even till *break of day* **dawn**, so **thus** he departed.
12 And they brought the *young man* **lad** alive,
and were not a *little comforted* **slight measure consoled**.
ON TO MILETUS
13 And we went before **proceeded** to *ship* **the sailer**,
and *sailed* **embarked** unto Assos,
there intending **thence about** to take in *Paul* **Paulos**:
for so **thus** had he *appointed* **ordained**,
minding himself to go afoot.
14 And when he *met with* **encountered** us at Assos,
we took him in, and came to Mitylene.
15 And we sailed thence, and *came the* **arrived** next day
over against **cast along side opposite** Hios;
and *the next day* **regarding another**, we arrived at Samos,
and *tarried* **abode** at Trogyllium;
and *the next day* we came to Miletus.
16 For *Paul* **Paulos** had *determined* **judged** to sail by Ephesus,
because he would **that it not become**
spend the **that he waste** time in Asia:
for he hastened, if it were possible for him,
to be at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** the day of Pentecost.
PAULOS AND THE EPHESIAN ELDERS
17 And from Miletus he sent to Ephesus,
and called the elders of the *church* **ecclesia**.
18 And when they were come to him, he said unto them,
Ye know **understand**,
from the first day
that I came **from which I embarked** into Asia,
after what manner I have *been* **become** with you
at all *seasons* **times**,
19 *Serving the Lord* **Adonay**
with all *humility of mind* **humblemindedness**,
and with many tears, and *temptations* **testings**,
which *befell* **happened to** me
by the *lying in wait* **plotting** of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**:
20 And how I *kept back nothing* **withheld naught**
that was *profitable unto you* **beneficial**,
but have shewed **that I have not evangelized unto** you,
and have *taught* **doctrinated** you publicly,
and from house to house,
21 *Testifying* **Witnessing** both to the Jews **Yah Hudiym**,
and also to the *Greeks* **Hellenes**,
repentance toward God **unto Elohim**,
and *faith* **trust**
toward unto our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**.
22 And now, behold,
I go bound in the spirit unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
not knowing *the things* **those**
that shall *befall* **meet** me there:
23 *Save* **Except** that the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**
witnesseth in every city,
saying **wording** that bonds and *afflictions* **tribulations**
abide me.
24 But none of these *things* **words** move me,
neither *count* **regard I** my *life* **soul** *dear* **precious** unto myself,
so that I might *finish* **complete/shalam** my *course* **race**
with *joy* **cheer**,
and the ministry, which I have *received* **taken**
of the Lord Jesus **Adonay Yah Shua**,
to *testify* **witness** the *gospel* **evangelism**
of the *grace* **charism** of *God* **Elohim**.
25 And now, behold, I know that ye all,
among whom I have *gone* **passed through**

ACTS 20

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 where they gather together:
and sitting in a window,
a youth named Eutychus
is brought down into a deep sleep:
and as Paulos reasons much,
he *is* brought down by sleep,
and falls from the third loft, and is taken for dead.
10 And Paulos descends, and falls on him,
and embracing him, says,
Tumult not yourselves; for his soul is in him.
11 And he ascends and breaks bread and tastes;
and homologizes at length — even until dawn,
thus he departs:
12 and they bring the lad alive,
and are consoled not a slight measure.
ON TO MILETUS
13 And we proceed to the sailer
and embark to Assos to take in Paulos there:
for thus he ordains, to go afoot.
14 And he encounters us at Assos,
and we take him in and come to Mitylene.
15 And there we sail;
and arrive next, cast along side opposite Hios;
and regarding another,
we arrive at Samos and abide at Trogyllium;
and next we come to Miletus.
16 For Paulos judges to sail past Ephesus,
that it be that he not waste time in Asia:
for he hastens, if possible,
to be at Yeru Shalem the day of Pentecost.
PAULOS AND THE EPHESIAN ELDERS
17 And from Miletus he sends to Ephesus
and calls the elders of the ecclesia:
18 and when they come to him, he says to them,
You understand,
from the first day I embarked into Asia,
after what manner I became with you at all times:
19 serving Adonay with all humblemindedness
and with many tears and testings
which happened to me
by the plotting of the Yah Hudiym:
20 and how I withheld naught beneficial,
that I evangelized not to you;
and doctrinated you publicly
and from house to house
— witnessing
both to the Yah Hudiym and to the Hellenes
repentance to Elohim,
and trust to our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
22 And now, behold,
I go bound in the Spirit to Yeru Shalem,
not knowing those that meet me there:
23 except that the Holy Spirit witnesses in every city,
wording that bonds and tribulations abide me.
24 But none of these words move me
nor regard I my soul precious to myself
— so as to complete/shalam my race with cheer,
and the ministry I took of Adonay Yah Shua,
to witness the evangelism of the charism of Elohim.
25 And now, behold, I know that you all,
among whom I pass through

ACTS 20, 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

preaching the *kingdom sovereignty* of God Elohím,
shall see my face no more.

26 *Wherefore So*
I take you to record **witness to you** in this day,
that I am pure from the blood of all men.
27 For I have not *shunned withheld*
to declare **evangelize** unto you
all the **whole** counsel of God Elohím.
28 Take **So** heed *therefore* unto yourselves,
and to all the *flock shepherddom*,
over the which the Holy *Ghost Spirit*
hath made **placed** you *overseers episcopates*,
to feed **shepherd** the *church ecclesia* of God Elohím,
which he hath *purchased acquired*
with **through** his own blood.
29 For I know this, that after my departing
shall *grievous burdenous* wolves
enter in *among unto* you,
not sparing the *flock shepherddom*.
30 Also of your own selves shall men arise,
speaking *perverse things thorough perversions*,
to draw away disciples after them.
31 *Therefore So* watch, and remember,
that *by the space of for* three years I *ceased paused* not
to warn every **remind each** one night and day with tears.
32 And now, brethren,
I commend you **set you forth** to God Elohím,
and to the word of his *grace charism*,
which is able to build you up,
and to give you an inheritance
among all *them which are sanctified the hallowed*.
33 I have *coveted panted after* no man's one's silver,
or gold, or *apparel garment*.
34 Yea, ye yourselves know,
that these hands
have *ministered tended* unto my necessities,
and to them that were with me.
35 I have *shewed you exemplified* all things,
how that so **thus** labouring
ye ought to support the *weak frail*,
and to remember
the words of the *Lord Jesus Adonay Yah Shua*,
how he said,
It is more blessed to give than to *receive take*.
36 And when he had *thus spoken said these*,
he *kneeled down placed his knees*,
and prayed with them all.
37 And *they all wept sore there became much weeping*,
and fell on *Paul's Paulos'* neck, and **ardently** kissed him,
38 *Sorrowing most of all Grieving especially*
for over the words which he *spake said*,
that they *should see were about to observe* his face no more.
And they *accompanied forwarded* him unto the *ship sailer*.

ON TO SOR

21

And **so be** it came to pass,
that after we were gotten **withdrew** from them,
and had *launched embarked*,
we came with a *straight course straightly* unto Coos,
and *the day following next* unto Rhodes,
and from thence unto Patara:
2 And finding a *ship sailer*
sailing over passing through unto *Phenicia Phoinix*,
we went aboard, and set forth
in embarking, we embarked.
3 Now **And** when we had *discovered* Cyprus **appeared**,
we left it on the left *hand*, and sailed into Syria,
and *landed moored* at Tyre **Sor**:
for there the *ship sailer* was to unlade her burden.

DISCIPLES WARN PAULOS

4 And finding disciples,
we *tarried abode* there seven days:
who *said worded* to *Paul Paulos* through the Spirit,
that he should not
go up ascend to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*.
5 And **so be it**,
when we had *accomplished completed/shalamed* those days,
we departed and went our way;

ACTS 20, 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

preaching the sovereignty of Elohím,
see my face no more.

26 So I witness to you in this day,
that I am pure from the blood of all:
27 for I withhold naught
to evangelize the whole counsel of Elohím to you.
28 So heed to yourselves
and to all the shepherddom,
over which the Holy Spirit placed you episcopates
— to shepherd the ecclesia of Elohím
which he acquired through his own blood.
29 For I know this, that after my departing,
burdenous wolves enter to you,
not sparing the shepherddom.
30 And of your own selves, men rise,
speaking thorough perversions,
to draw disciples after them.
31 So watch, and remember,
that for three years I paused not
to remind each one night and day with tears.
32 And now, brothers, I set you forth to Elohím,
and to the word of his charism,
which is able to build you,
and to give you an inheritance
among all the hallowed.
33 I panted after silver or gold or garment
from no one.
34 Yes, you yourselves know
that these hands tended to my necessities
— and to them with me.
35 I exemplified all,
how that thus laboring, you ought to support the frail,
and to remember the words of Adonay Yah Shua,
how he says, It is more blessed to give than to take.
36 — and saying these,
he places his knees and prays with them all.
37 And there becomes much weeping;
they fall on the neck of Paulos and ardently kiss him,
38 grieving especially over the words he says,
that they are about to observe his face no more.
— and they forward him to the sailer.

ON TO SOR

21

And so be it,
we withdraw from them and embark;
and we come straightly to Coos and next to Rhodes;
and from there to Patara:
2 and finding a sailer, we pass through to Phoinix;
in embarking, we embark
3 and Cyprus appears:
we leave it on the left and sail into Syria
and moore at Sor:
for there the sailer unburdens her burden.

DISCIPLES WARN PAULOS

4 We abide there seven days:
and find disciples who, through the Spirit,
word to Paulos to not ascend to Yeru Shalem.
5 And so be it, we complete/shalam those days,
and depart and go our way;

ACTS 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and they all *brought* **forwarded** us on our way,
with *wives* **women** and children,
till we were out of the city:
and we *kneeled down* **placed our knees** on the shore,
and prayed.

6 And when we had
taken our leave **saluted** one of another,
we *took ship* **embarked into a sailer**;
and they returned *home* **to their own** again.

7 And when we had *finished* **accomplished**
our *course* **sailing** from Tyre Sor,
we *came to* **arrived at** Ptolemais,
and saluted the brethren, and abode with them one day.

8 And the next day
we that were of *Paul's company* **around Paulos** departed,
and came unto *Caesarea* **Kaisaria**:
and we entered
into the house of *Philip* **Philippos** the evangelist,
which was one **being** of the seven; and abode with him.

9 And *the same man* **this one** had four daughters,
virgins, which did prophesy.

HAGAB WARNS PAULOS

10 And as we *tarried there* **abode** many days,
there came down from *Judaea* **Yah Hudah**
a *certain* prophet, named *Agabus* **Hagab**.

11 And when he was come unto us,
he took *Paul's* **Paulos'** girdle,
and bound his own hands and feet, and said,
Thus *saith* **wordeth** the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.
So **Thus** shall the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
bind the man that owneth this girdle,
and shall *deliver* **betray** him
into the hands of the *Gentiles* **goyim**.

12 And when we heard these *things*,
both we, and they of that place,
besought **entreated** him
not to go up **ascend** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

ON TO YERU SHALEM

13 Then *Paul* **But Paulos** answered,
What *mean* **do** ye to weep
and to *break* **crumble** mine heart?
for I am *ready* **prepared** not to be bound only,
but also to die at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
for the name of the *Lord Jesus* **Adonay Yah Shua**.

14 And *when* he,
would not be persuaded **not being convinced**,
we *ceased* **quieted**, saying,
So be The will of the *Lord* **be done** **Adonay**.

15 And after those days we *took up our* **carriages packed**,
and *went up* **ascended** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

16 There went with us also
certain **some** of the disciples of *Caesarea* **Kaisaria**,
and brought with them one Mnason of Cyprus,
an *old* **ancient** disciple, with whom we should lodge.

17 And *when* we
were come to Jerusalem **being at Yeru Shalem**,
the brethren received us *gladly* **with pleasure**.

THE VOW OF PAULOS

18 And *the day following next*
Paul went **Paulos entered in** with us
unto *James* **Yaaqovos**;
and all the elders were *present* **come**.

19 And when he had saluted them,
he declared *particularly* **each, one by one**
what *things* **God** **Elohim** had *wrought* **done**
among the *Gentiles* **by goyim through** his ministry.

20 And when they heard it,
they glorified *the Lord* **Adonay**,
and said unto him, Thou *seest* **observest**, brother,
how many *thousands* **myriads** of *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
there are which *believe* **trust**;
and they are all *zealous* **zealots** of the *law* **torah**:
And they are *informed of* **catechized about** thee,
that thou *teachest* **doctrinatest** all the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
which are among the *Gentiles* **goyim**
to *forsake* **Moses** **apostatize from Mosheh**,
saying **wording**
that they ought not to circumcise their children,
neither to walk after the customs.

ACTS 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and they all, with women and children,
forward us until we are out of the city:
and we place our knees on the shore and pray:
and saluting one another, we embark into a sailer;
and they return to their own again.

6

7 And when we accomplish our sailing from Sor
we arrive at Ptolemais and salute the brothers;
and abide with them one day.

8 And on the morrow,
we who are around Paulos depart
and come to Kaisaria:
and we enter the house of Philippos the evangelist
— being of the seven; and abide with him.

9 And this *one* has four daughters
— virgins, who prophesy.

HAGAB WARNS PAULOS

10 And abiding many days,
a prophet named Hagab comes down from Yah Hudah
and comes to us:
and he takes the girdle of Paulos,
and binds his own hands and feet, and says,
Thus words the Holy Spirit:
Thus the Yah Hudiym at Yeru Shalem
bind the man who owns this girdle;
and betray him into the hands of the goyim.

12 And when we hear these,
both we and they of that place
entreat him to not ascend to Yeru Shalem.

ON TO YERU SHALEM

13 But Paulos answers,
What do you, weeping and crumbling my heart?
For I am prepared, not only to be bound,
but also to die at Yeru Shalem
for the name of Adonay Yah Shua.

14 And he, not being convinced,
we quiet, saying, So be the will of Adonay.

15 And after those days,
we pack and ascend to Yeru Shalem:
and some of the disciples of Kaisaria
also come with us
and bring one Mnason of Cyprus with them
— an ancient disciple, with whom we are to lodge.

17 And being at Yeru Shalem,
the brothers receive us with pleasure.

THE VOW OF PAULOS

18 And next, Paulos enters with us to Yaaqovos;
and all the elders come:
and he salutes them,
and declares to each, one by one,
what Elohim did among the goyim
through his ministry.

20 — and they hear it and glorify Adonay.

And they say to him, You observe, brother,
how many myriads of Yah Hudiym
there are who trust;
and they are all zealots of the torah:
and they catechize about you,
that you doctriate
all the Yah Hudiym among the goyim
to apostatize from Mosheh,
wording that they ought
neither to circumcise their children,
nor to walk after the customs.

ACTS 21

exeGes ready research BIBLE

22 **So** What is it *therefore*?
the multitude must *needs* **most certainly** come together:
for they *will* **shall** hear that thou art come.

23 **So** Do *therefore* this that we say **word** to thee:
We have four men which have a vow on them;

24 Them take, and *purify* **hallow** thyself with them,
and be *at charges with* **spent by** them,
that they may shave their heads:
and all may know that those *things*,
whereof they were *informed* **catechized**
concerning about thee,
are *nothing* **naught**;

but that thou thyself also *walkest orderly* **marchest**,
and *keepest* **guardest** the law **torah**.

25 *As touching* **Concerning** the Gentiles **goyim**
which *believe* **trust**,
we have *written* **epistolized** and *concluded* **judged**
that they *observe no* **guard none** such *thing*,
save *only* **except** that they *keep* **guard** themselves
from *things offered to idols* **idol sacrifices**,
and from blood, and from strangled,
and from *fornication* **whoredom**.

26 Then *Paul* **Paulos** took the men,
and the *next day* **after**
purifying **hallowing** himself with them
entered into the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
to *signify* **evangelize** the *accomplishment* **fulfillment/shalom**
of the days of *purification* **hallowing**,
until that an offering should be offered
for every **each** one of them.

YAH HUDIYM SEIZE PAULOS

27 And when the seven days
were *almost ended* **about to be completed/shalamed**,
the Jews **Yah Hudiym** which were of Asia,
when they *saw* **observed** him
in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
stirred up all **confused** the *people* **whole multitude**,
and laid hands on him,

28 Crying out, Men of *Israel* — **Yisra Eliym**, help:
This is the *man* **human**,
that *teacheth all men* **doctrinateth everyone** every where
against the people, and the law **torah**, and this place:
and *further* **even** brought *Greeks* **Hellenes**
also into the temple **priestal precinct**,
and hath *polluted* **profaned** this holy place.

29 (For they had seen *before* **previously**
with him in the city Trophimus an Ephesian,
whom they *supposed* **presumed** that *Paul* **Paulos**
had brought into the *temple* **priestal precinct**.)

30 And all the city was *moved* **stirred**,
and the people *ran* **became rushing** together:
and they took *Paul* **Paulos**,
and drew him out of the *temple* **priestal precinct**:
and *forthwith* **straightway** the *doors* **portals** were shut.

31 And as they *went about* **sought** to *kill* **slaughter** him,
tidings came **reports ascended**
unto the *chief captain* **chiliarch** of the *band* **squad**,
that all *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** was *in an uproar* **confused**.

32 Who immediately
took *soldiers* **warriors** and centurions,
and ran down unto them:
and when they saw
the *chief captain* **chiliarch** and the *soldiers* **warriors**,
they *left beating of Paul* **paused from striking Paulos**.

33 Then the *chief captain* **chiliarch**
came near **approached**, and took him,
and *commanded* **summoned** him
to be bound with two *chains* **fetters**;
and *demanded* **asked** who he was,
and what he had done.

34 And *some* **others** cried one *thing*,
some another, among the multitude:
and when he could not know the certainty
for **because of** the tumult,
he *commanded* **summoned** him
to be *carried* **brought** into the *castle* **encampment**.

35 And when he *came* **became** upon the stairs,
so it was **it so happened**,

ACTS 21

exeGes companion BIBLE

22 So what is it?
The multitude must most certainly come together:
for they hear that you have come.

23 So do this, what we word to you:
We have four men who have a vow on them;

24 take them, and hallow yourself with them,
and be spent by them, to shave the head:
that all know that those,
whereof they are catechized about you, are naught;
but that you yourself also march and guard the torah.

25 And concerning the goyim who trust,
we epistolize and judge them to not guard such
— except to guard themselves from idol sacrifices
and from blood
and from strangled
and from whoredom.

26 Then Paulos takes the men,
and the day after, hallows himself with them;
and enters the priestal precinct
to evangelize the fulfillment/shalom
of the days of hallowing,
until an offering is offered for each one of them.

YAH HUDIYM SEIZE PAULOS

27 And as the seven days
are about to be completed/shalamed,
the Yah Hudiym of Asia,
when they observe him in the priestal precinct,
confuse the whole multitude and lay hands on him,
crying out, Men — Yisra Eliym, help!

28 This is the human
who doctrinates everyone every where
against the people and the torah and this place:
and even brings Hellenes into the priestal precinct
and profanes this holy place.
— for previously
they saw Trophimus an Ephesian
with him in the city
— whom they presumed that Paulos
brought into the priestal precinct.

29 And all the city stirs and the people rush together:
and they take Paulos
and draw him from the priestal precinct:
and straightway shut the portals.

30 And as they seek to slaughter him,
reports ascend to the chiliarch of the squad
that all Yeru Shalem is confused:
who immediately takes warriors and centurions
and runs down to them:
and seeing the chiliarch and the warriors
they pause from striking Paulos.

31 Then the chiliarch approaches and takes him;
and summons to bind him with two fetters;
and asks who he is and what he did.

32 And some among the multitude cry one,
and some another:
and as he cannot know the certainty
because of the tumult,
he summons to bring him into the encampment.
And being on the stairs, it so happens,

ACTS 21, 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that he was borne of the *soldiers warriors*
for the violence of the *people multitude*.
36 For the multitude of the people followed after,
crying, Away with him. **PAULOS PLEADS TO SPEAK**

37 And as *Paul Paulos*
was **about** to be *led brought* into the *castle encampment*,
he *said worded* unto the *chief captain chiliarch*,
may I **Am I allowed** to speak **somewhat** unto thee?
Who said, *Canst Knowest* thou *speak Greek Hellenic*?
38 **So** Art not thou that *Egyptian Misrayim*,
which *before ere* these days *madest an uproar roused*,
and *leddest out* into the wilderness
four thousand men that were *murderers assassins*?
39 But *Paul Paulos* said, I am **indeed** a *man human*
which am a Jew — a Yah Hudyi
of Tarsus, a city in — a Tarsiy of Cilicia,
a citizen of no *mean ignoble* city:
and, I *beseech petition* thee,
suffer allow me to speak unto the people. **PAULOS PLEADS TO THE PEOPLE**

40 And when he had *given allowed* him *licence*,
Paul Paulos stood on the stairs,
and *beckoned signaled* with the hand unto the people.
And when there was *made became*
a *great silence vast hush*,
he *spake unto addressed* them
in the Hebrew *tongue dialect, saying wording*,
22 Men, brethren, and fathers,
hear ye my *defence which I make pleading*
now unto you.
2 (And when they heard that he *spake addressed*
in the Hebrew *tongue dialect* to them,
they *kept presented* the more *silence quiet*: and he saith,)
3 I am *verily indeed* a man
which am a Jew — a Yah Hudyi,
born birthed in Tarsus, a *city in Cilicia*,
yet brought up nurtured in this city
at the feet of *Gamaliel Gamli El*,
and *taught disciplined*
according to the *perfect manner exactness*
of the *law torah* of the fathers,
and was *zealous being a zealot* toward *God Elohim*,
exactly as ye all are this day.
4 And I persecuted this way unto the death,
binding and *delivering betraying* into prisons
both men and women.
5 As also the *high arch* priest doth *bear me witness me*,
and all the *estate of the elders presbytry*:
from whom also
I received *letters epistles* unto the brethren,
and went to *Damascus Dammeseq*
to bring them which were there bound
unto *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
for to be *punished dishonoured*.
6 And **so be** it came to pass, that, as I *made my journey went*,
and was *come nigh approached* unto *Damascus Dammeseq*
about *noon midday*, suddenly
there shone from heaven a great light round about me
a vast light from the heavens enveloped me.
7 And I fell unto the ground,
and heard a voice *saying wording* unto me,
Saul, Saul Shaul, Shaul, why persecutest thou me?
8 And I answered, Who art thou, *Lord Adonay*?
And he said unto me,
I am Jesus of Nazareth I AM Yah Shua the Nazarene,
whom thou persecutest.
9 And they that were with me
saw observed indeed the light,
and were *afraid became awestricken*;
but they heard not the voice of him that spake to me.
10 And I said, What shall I do, *Lord Adonay*?
And the *Lord Adonay* said unto me, Arise,
and go into *Damascus Dammeseq*;
and there it shall be *told spoken* to thee
of concerning all things which are *appointed ordained*
for thee to do.

ACTS 21, 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

he is borne by the warriors
because of the violence of the multitude
36 — for the multitude of the people follow after,
crying, Away with him! **PAULOS PLEADS TO SPEAK**

37 And as they are about to bring Paulos
into the encampment,
he words to the chiliarch,
Am I allowed to speak somewhat to you?
Who say, Know you Hellenic?
38 So are you not that Misrayim
who ere these days
roused and led out four thousand men
— assassins into the wilderness?
39 But Paulos says, I indeed am a human
— a Yah Hudyi — a Tarsiy of Cilicia
— a citizen of no ignoble city:
and, I petition you, allow me to speak to the people.
— and he allows him. **PAULOS PLEADS TO THE PEOPLE**

Paulos stands on the stairs,
and signals with the hand to the people:
and there becomes a vast hush;
he addresses them in the Hebrew dialect,
wording,
22 Men, brothers, and fathers,
hear now my pleading to you.
2 And when they hear him address them
in the Hebrew dialect,
they present the more quiet.
And he says,
3 I indeed am a man
— a Yah Hudyi birthed in Tarsus, Cilicia,
yet nurtured in this city at the feet of Gamli El;
and disciplined
according to the exactness of the torah of the fathers,
and being a zealot toward Elohim
— exactly as all of you this day:
4 and I persecuted this way to the death,
binding and betraying
both men and women into prisons:
5 as also the archpriest and all the presbytry
witness of me:
from whom I also received epistles to the brothers,
and went to Dammeseq
to bring the bound to Yeru Shalem
to dishonor them.
6 And so be it, about midday,
as I went and approached Dammeseq,
suddenly a vast light from the heavens enveloped me
and I fell to the ground:
7 and I heard a voice wording to me,
Shaul, Shaul, why persecute you me?
8 And I answer, Who are you, Adonay?
And he said to me,
I AM Yah Shua the Nazarene whom you persecute.
9 And those with me indeed observed the light
and became awestricken;
but they heard not the voice of him who speaks to me.
10 And I said, What do I, Adonay?
And Adonay said to me,
Rise and go into Dammeseq;
and there be spoken to
concerning all you are ordained to do.

ACTS 22

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

11 And when I could not see **look**
for the glory of that light,
being **hand** led by the *hand* of them that were with me,
I came into *Damascus* **Dammeseq**.

12 And one *Ananias* **Hanan Yah**,
a *devout* **well—revered** man according to the *law* **torah**,
having a good report **well—witnessed**
of all the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
which *dwelt* **settled** there,

13 Came unto me, and stood **by**, and said unto me,
Brother *Saul* **Shaul**, receive thy sight **see**.
And the same hour I *looked up upon* **saw unto** him.

14 And he said,
The *God* **Elohim** of our fathers
hath *chosen* **preselected** thee,
that thou shouldest know his will, and see *that* **the** Just *One*,
and shouldest hear the voice of his mouth.

15 For thou shalt be his witness unto all *men* **humanity**
of what thou hast seen and heard.

16 And now *why tarriest thou* **what art thou about to do?**
arise, and be baptized, and *wash away* **bathe** thy sins,
calling on the name of *the Lord* **Adonay**.

17 And **so be** it *came to pass*, that,
when I *was come again* **returned**
to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
even while I prayed in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
I *was* **became** in a *trance* **an ecstasis**;

18 And saw him *saying* **wording** unto me,
Make haste **Hasten**,
and get thee quickly out of *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**:
for **because** they *will* **shall** not receive
thy *testimony* **witness** concerning me.

19 And I said, *Lord* **Adonay**,
they *know* **understand** that I imprisoned and *beat* **flogged**
in every synagogue
them that *believed* **trusted** on thee:

20 And when the blood of thy *martyr* **witness**
Stephen **Stephanos** was *shed* **poured forth**,
I also was standing by,
and consenting unto his *death* **taking out**,
and *kept* **guarded** the *raiment* **garment**
of them that *slew* **took** him out.

21 And he said unto me, Depart:
for I *will send* **shall apostolize** thee
far hence unto the *Gentiles* **goyim**.

22 And they *gave him audience unto* **heard** this word,
and then *lifted up* their voices, and *said* **worded**,
Away with such a *fellow* from the earth:
for it is not *fit* **becoming** that he should live.

23 And as they cried out,
and *cast off* **tossed** their *clothes* **garments**,
and *threw* **cast** dust into the air,

24 The *chief captain* **chiliarch**
commanded **summoned** him
to be brought into the *castle* **encampment**,
and *bade that he should be examined* **said to test him**
by scourging;
that he might know *wherefore* **for what cause**
they *cried so* **shouted thus** against him.

25 And as they *bound* **stretched** him with thongs,
Paul **Paulos** said unto the centurion that stood by,
Is it lawful for you **Are you allowed**
to scourge a *man that is* **human** — a Roman,
and *uncondemned* **unsentenced?**

26 When the centurion heard that,
he went and *told* **evangelized** the *chief captain* **chiliarch**,
saying **wording**,
Take heed **See** what thou *doest* **art about to do**:
for this *man* **human** is a Roman.

27 Then **And** the *chief captain* **chiliarch** came,
and said unto him,
Tell **Word unto** me, art thou a Roman?

28 He said, Yea.
And the *chief captain* **chiliarch** answered,
With a *great* **vast** sum
obtained **acquired** I this *freedom* **citizenship**.

29 And *Paul* **Paulos** said, But I *was free born* — **birthed**.
Then **So** straightway they departed from him
which *should have examined* **were about to test** him:

ACTS 22

exeGeses companion BIBLE

11 And I looked not, because of the glory of that light;
and those with me, hand led me,
and I came to Dammeseq.

12 And one Hanan Yah,
a well—revered man according to the torah,
well—witnessed
by all the Yah Hudiym who settle there,
came to me, and stood by, and said to me,
Brother Shaul, see!
— and the same hour I saw him.

14 And he said,
The Elohim of our fathers preselected you
to know his will and see the Just *One*,
and to hear the voice of his mouth:

15 because you become his witness to all humanity
of what you saw and heard.

16 And now what are you about to do?
Rise and be baptized and bathe your sins
— calling on the name of Adonay.

17 And so be it, when I returned to Yeru Shalem,
even as I prayed in the priestal precinct,
I became in an ecstasis;
and saw him wording to me,
Hasten, and quickly go from Yeru Shalem:
because they receive not
your witness concerning me.

19 And I said, Adonay,
they understand that in every synagogue
I imprisoned and flogged them who trust on you:
and when they poured the blood
of your witness Stephanos,
I also stood by,
and consented to taking him out,
and guarded the garment of them who took him out.

21 And he said to me, Depart:
for I apostolize you far hence to the goyim.

22 And they hear this word,
and they lift their voice, and word,
Away with such from the earth!
For it is not becoming for him to live!

23 And as they cry out,
and toss their garments and cast dust into the air,
the chiliarch
summons to bring him into the encampment,
and says to test him by scourging;
to know for what cause they shout thus against him.

25 And as they stretch him with thongs,
Paulos says to the centurion who stands by,
Are you allowed to scourge a human — a Roman
and unsentenced?

26 And the centurion hears that,
and he goes and evangelizes the chiliarch,
wording, See what you are about to do:
for this human is a Roman.

27 And the chiliarch comes and says to him,
Word to me, are you a Roman?

He says, Yes.

28 And the chiliarch answers,
I acquired this citizenship with a vast sum.
And Paulos says, But I — birthed.

29 So straightway, they who are about to test him
depart from him:

ACTS 22, 23

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and the *chief captain chiliarch* also
was *afraid awestricken*,
after he knew **knowing** that he was a Roman,
and because he had bound him.

PAULOS PLEADS TO THE SANHEDRIM

30 On the morrow,
because he *would willed*
to have known the certainty
wherefore he was accused of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*,
he loosed him from his *bands bonds*,
and *commanded summoned* the *chief arch* priests
and all their *council sanhedrim* to *appear come*,
and brought *Paul Paulos* down,
and set him *before unto* them.

23

And *Paul Paulos*,
earnestly beholding staring at the *council sanhedrim*,
said, Men and brethren,
I have *lived citizenized* in all good conscience
before *God Elohim* until this day.
2 And the *high arch* priest *Ananias Hanan Yah*
commanded ordered them that stood by him
to *smite strike* him on the mouth.
3 Then said *Paul Paulos* unto him,
God shall smite Elohim is about to strike thee,
thou *whited whitewashed* wall:
for sittest thou to judge me after the *law torah*,
and *commandest summonest* me to be *smitten stricken*
contrary to the *law torah*?
4 And they that stood by said,
Revilest Abusest thou *God's high Elohim's arch* priest?
5 Then said *Paul Paulos*, I *wist knew* not, brethren,
that he was the *high arch* priest:
for it is *written scribed*,
Thou shalt not *speak say* evil
of the *ruler arch* of thy people.
6 But when *Paul perceived Paulos knew*
that the one part were *Sadducees Sadoqiyim*,
and the other Pharisees,
he cried out in the *council sanhedrim*,
Men and brethren, I am a Pharisee, the son of a Pharisee:
of concerning the hope and resurrection of the dead
I am *called in question judged*.
7 And when he had *so said spoken*,
there arose a dissension so be it, a riot
between the Pharisees and the *Sadducees Sadoqiyim*:
and the multitude was *divided schismed*.
8 For the *Sadducees say Sadoqiyim indeed word*
that there is no resurrection, neither angel, nor spirit:
but the Pharisees *confess profess* both.
9 And *so be it, there arose a great a mega* cry:
and the scribes that were of the Pharisees' part arose,
and *strove fought fiercely, saying wording*,
We find no evil in this *man human*:
but and if a spirit or an angel hath spoken to him,
let us not *fight against God be Elohim—resisters*.
10 And when there arose a *great dissension so be it, a vast riot*,
the *chief captain chiliarch*,
fearing lest *Paul Paulos* should *have been be*
pulled in pieces thoroughly drawn apart of them,
commanded summoned the *soldiers warriors*
to *go down descend*,
and to *take seize* him by force from among them,
and to bring him into the *castle encampment*.

ADONAY ENCOURAGES PAULOS

11 And the *next night following*
the Lord Adonay stood by him,
and said, *Be of good cheer Courage, Paul Paulos*:
for as thou hast *testified of witnessed about* me
in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
so **thus** must thou bear witness also at Rome.

THE COALITION OF THE YAH HUDIYM

12 And when it was *being day*,
certain some of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*
banded together made a coalition,
and *bound anathematized* themselves *under a curse*,
saying wording
that they *would should* neither eat nor drink
till they had *killed Paul slaughtered Paulos*.

ACTS 22, 23

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the chiliarch is also awestricken
— knowing he is a Roman,
and because he had bound him.

PAULOS PLEADS TO THE SANHEDRIM

30 On the morrow,
because he wills to know the certainty
whereof he is accused of the Yah Hudiym,
he looses him from his bonds;
and summons the archpriests
and all their sanhedrim to come;
and brings Paulos down and sets him to them.

23

And staring at the sanhedrim,
Paulos says, Men and brothers,
in all good conscience
I citizenize in front of Elohim until this day.
2 — and the archpriest Hanan Yah
orders those standing by him
to strike him on the mouth.

3 Then Paulos says to him,
Elohim is about to strike you, you whitewashed wall:
for sit you to judge me after the torah,
and summon me to be stricken contrary to the torah?

4 And they who stand by say,
Abuse you the archpriest of Elohim?
5 So Paulos says, I knew not, brothers,
that he is the archpriest.

— for it is scribed,
You, say no evil of the arch of your people.

6 But Paulos,
knowing that the one part are Sadoqiyim
and the other Pharisees,
he cries out in the sanhedrim,
Men and brothers,
I am a Pharisee, the son of a Pharisee:
concerning the hope and resurrection of the dead
I am judged.

7 And when he thus speaks, so be it,
a riot between the Pharisees and the Sadoqiyim:
and the multitude schisms:
8 for the Sadoqiyim indeed word
that there is neither resurrection nor angel nor spirit:
but the Pharisees profess both.

9 And so be it, a mega cry:
and the scribes of the part of the Pharisees
rise and fight fiercely,
wording, We find no evil in this human:
and if a spirit or an angel has spoken to him,
that we not resist Elohim.

10 And so be it, a vast riot,
and the chiliarch fearing,
lest Paulos be thoroughly drawn apart by them,
summons the warriors to descend
and to seize him from among them;
and to bring him into the encampment.

ADONAY ENCOURAGES PAULOS

11 And the next night Adonay stands by him,
and says, Courage, Paulos!
For as you witnessed about me in Yeru Shalem,
thus you must also witness at Rome.

THE COALITION OF THE YAH HUDIYM

12 And being day,
some of the Yah Hudiym make a coalition
and anathematize themselves,
wording to neither eat nor drink
until they slaughter Paulos:

ACTS 23

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 13 And they were more than forty which had made this conspiracy.
- 14 And they came to the *chief arch* priests and elders, and said, We have *bound anathematized* ourselves under a great *curse anathema*, that we *will eat nothing shall taste naught* until we have *slain Paul slaughtered Paulos*.
- 15 **So** Now *therefore* ye with the *council sanhedrim* signify **manifest** to the *chief captain chiliarch* that he bring him down unto you to morrow, as though ye *would enquire something should know* more *perfectly concerning exactly* about him: and we, *or ever he come near ere he approacheth*, are ready **prepared** to *kill take* him out.
- 16 And when *Paul's Paulos'* sister's son heard of their *lying in wait lurking*, he went **came** and entered into the *castle encampment*, and *told Paul evangelized to Paulos*.
- 17 Then **Paul And Paulos** called one of the centurions unto him, and said, Bring this *young man youth* unto the *chief captain chiliarch*: for he hath a *certain thing somewhat* to *tell evangelize to* him.
- 18 So **indeed** he took him, and brought him to the *chief captain chiliarch*, and said, *Paul Paulos* the prisoner called me unto him, and *prayed asked* me to bring this *young man youth* unto thee, who hath *something somewhat* to *say speak* to thee.
- 19 Then **And the chief captain chiliarch** took him by the hand, and *went with him aside withdrew* privately, and asked him, What is that thou hast to *tell evangelize to* me?
- 20 And he said, The *Jews Yah Hudiym* have *agreed covenanted* to *desire ask* thee that thou *wouldest shouldest* bring down *Paul Paulos* to morrow into the *council sanhedrim*, as though they *would should* enquire somewhat of him more *perfectly exactly*.
- 21 *But do not thou yield unto them*
So let them not convince you:
for there *lie in wait lurk* for him of them more than forty men, which have *bound anathematized* themselves *with an oath*, that they *will shall* neither eat nor drink till they have *killed taken* him out: and now are they ready **prepared**, *looking for a promise awaiting a pre—evangelism* from thee.
- 22 So **indeed** the *chief captain chiliarch* then *let released* the *young man depart youth*, and *charged evangelized* him, See thou *tell divulge to* no man **one** that thou hast *shewed manifested* these *things* to me.
- ON TO KAISARIA**
- 23 And he called *unto him* two centurions, saying, *Make ready Prepare* two hundred *soldiers warriors* to go to *Caesarea Kaisaria*, and horsemen *threescore and ten seventy*, and *spearmen right receivers* two hundred, at *from* the third hour of the night;
- 24 And *provide present* them *beasts animals*, that they may *set Paul on mount Paulos*, and bring him safe unto *Felix Phelix* the governor.
- 25 And he *wrote a letter scribed an epistle* after this manner **containing this type:**
- 26 Claudius Lysias
unto the most *excellent powerful* governor *Felix Phelix*; *sendeth greeting Cheers*:
- 27 This man was taken of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*, and *should have been killed was about to be taken out* of them:
then *came I stood by* with an *army warriors*, and *rescued released* him, having *understood learned* that he was a Roman.
- 28 And when I *would willed to* have known the cause wherefore they accused him,

ACTS 23

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 13 and more than forty make this conspiracy.
- 14 And they come to the archpriests and elders, and say, We anathematized ourselves under a great anathema, to taste naught until we slaughter Paulos: so now you and the sanhedrim manifest to the chiliarch to bring him down to you tomorrow — as though to know more exactly about him: and ere he approaches, we are prepared to take him out.
- 16 And the son of the sister of Paulos hears of their lurking, and he comes and enters the encampment and evangelizes to Paulos.
- 17 And Paulos calls one of the centurions to him, and says, Bring this youth to the chiliarch: for he has somewhat to evangelize to him.
- 18 So indeed he takes him, and brings him to the chiliarch, and says, Paulos the prisoner called me to him, and asked me to bring this youth to you — who has somewhat to speak to you.
- 19 And the chiliarch takes him by the hand, and withdraws privately, and asks him, What have you to evangelize to me?
- 20 And he says, The Yah Hudiym covenanted to ask you to bring Paulos down to the sanhedrim tomorrow, as though to enquire somewhat more exactly of him: so let them not convince you: for more than forty of their men lurk for him, who anathematized themselves to neither eat nor drink until they take him out: and now they are prepared — awaiting a pre—evangelism from you.
- 22 So indeed, the chiliarch releases the youth, and evangelizes him, You, divulge to no one that you manifest these to me.
- ON TO KAISARIA**
- 23 And he calls two centurions, saying, Prepare two hundred warriors to go to Kaisaria and seventy horsemen and two hundred right receivers from the third hour of the night; and present animals for Paulos to mount to bring him safe to Phelix the governor.
- 25 And he scribes an epistle containing this type:
26 Claudius Lysias:
To the most powerful governor Phelix:
Cheers.
- 27 This man was taken by the Yah Hudiym, and they were about to take him out: and having learned he is a Roman I stood by with warriors and released him:
28 and when I willed to know the cause for which they accused him,

ACTS 23, 24

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

29 I brought him *forth* into their *council* **sanhedrim**:
Whom I *perceived* **found** to be accused of questions
of **about** their *law* **torah**,
but to have *nothing laid to his charge* **no accusation**
worthy of death or of bonds.

30 And when it was *told me* **disclosed**
how that the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
laid wait **plotted** for the man,
I sent *straightway* **immediately** to thee,
and *gave commandment* **evangelized** to his accusers
also to *say before* **word unto** thee
what they had against him.
Farewell.

31 *Then* **So indeed** the *soldiers* **warriors**,
as it was *commanded* **ordained** them, took *Paul* **Paulos**,
and brought him *by* **through** night to Antipatris.

32 **And** On the morrow
they *left* **allowed** the *horsemen* **cavalry** to go with him,
and returned to the *castle* **encampment**:

33 Who, when they *came to Caesarea* **entered Kaisaria**,
and *delivered* **gave over** the epistle to the governor,
presented *Paul Paulos* also *before* **in front of** him.

34 And when the governor had read *the letter*,
he asked of what province he was.

35 And when he *understood that he was asked*, of Cilicia;
I *will* **shall** hear thee **patiently**, said he,
when thine accusers are also come.
And he *commanded* **summoned** him to be kept **guarded**
in Herod's *judgment hall* **praetorium**.

THE ACCUSATION OF TERTULLUS AGAINST PAULOS

24

And after five days
Ananias **Hanan Yah** the *high arch* priest
descended with the elders,
and with a *certain* **some** orator named Tertullus,
who *informed* **manifested to** the governor
against *Paul Paulos*.

2 And when he was called *forth*,
Tertullus began to accuse him, *saying* **wording**,
Seeing that *by* **through** thee
we *enjoy great quietness* **have obtained vast shalom**,
and that very worthy deeds
are *done* **become** unto this *nation* **goyim**
by thy *providence* **provision**,

3 We *accept* **receive** it *always* **every way**,
and *in all places* **everywhere**,
most *noble* **Felix** **powerful Phelix**,
with all *thankfulness* **eucharist**.

4 *Notwithstanding* **But**,
that I *be not further tedious unto* **hinder** thee **no more**,
I *pray* **beseech** thee
that thou *wouldest* **shouldest** hear us
of thy *clemency* a *few words* **gentleness concisely**.

5 For we have found this man a pestilent *fellow*,
and a *mover of sedition* **stirring riot**
among all the Jews **Yah Hudiym** throughout the world,
and a *ringleader* **prime officer**
of the sect **heresy** of the Nazarenes:
Who also hath *gone about* **tested**
to profane the *temple* **priestal precinct**:
whom we *took* **overpowered**,
and *would* **willed to** have judged according to our *law* **torah**.

7 But the *chief captain* **chiliarch** Lysias *came upon us* **passed by**,
and with *great* **much** violence
took him away out of our hands,
commanding **summoning** his accusers
to come unto thee:
by examining of whom thyself
mayest take knowledge of **canst know about** all these *things*,
whereof we accuse him.

9 And the Jews **Yah Hudiym** also *assented* **covenanted**,
saying **professing** that these *things* were so **thus**.

PAULOS PLEADS TO PHELIX

10 Then *Paul Paulos*,
after that the governor had *beckoned* **nodded** unto him
to *speak* **word**, answered,

ACTS 23, 24

exeGesés companion BIBLE

I brought him to their sanhedrim:
and I found him
to be accused of questions about their torah;
but to have no accusation
worthy of death or of bonds:
and when it was disclosed
how the Yah Hudiym plotted for the man,
I immediately sent to you,
and also evangelized to his accusers to word to you
what they have against him.
Farewell.

31 So indeed the warriors,
as they were ordained, take Paulos,
and bring him through the night to Antipatris:
and on the morrow,
they allow the cavalry to go with him
and return to the encampment:
who, when they enter Kaisaria,
and give the epistle to the governor,
they also present Paulos in front of him.

34 And the governor reads,
and he asks of what province he is.

And when he asks, *he says*, Of Cilicia.

35 And he says, I hear you patiently
when your accusers also come.
— and he summons him
to be guarded in the praetorium of Herod.

THE ACCUSATION OF TERTULLUS AGAINST PAULOS

24

And after five days
Hanan Yah the archpriest descends with the elders
and with some orator named Tertullus
who manifests to the governor against Paulos.

2 And when he is called,
Tertullus begins to accuse him, wording,
Seeing that through you we obtain vast shalom,
and that by your provision
very worthy deeds become this goyim,
we receive it every way and everywhere,
most powerful Phelix, with all eucharist.
But so that I hinder you no more,
I beseech you, in your gentleness,
to hear us concisely.

5 For we find this man pestilent and stirring riot
among all the Yah Hudiym throughout the world,
and a prime officer of the heresy of the Nazarenes:
who also tested to profane the priestal precinct:
whom we overpowered
and willed to judge according to our torah.

7 But chiliarch Lysias passed by,
and with much violence, took him from our hands,
summoning his accusers to come to you:
who, by your examining,
can know about all these whereof we accuse him.
— and the Yah Hudiym also covenant,
professing that these are thus.

PAULOS PLEADS TO PHELIX

10 And after the governor nods to him to word,
Paulos answers,

ACTS 24

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

Forasmuch as I *know* **understand** that thou
hast been of many years a judge unto this *nation* **goyim**,
I do the more cheerfully *answer* **plead**
for **concerning** myself:
11 Because that thou *mayest understand* **canst know**,
that there are yet *but* **no more than** twelve days
since I went up **from my ascending**
to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** for to worship.
12 And they neither
found me in the *temple* **priestal precinct**
disputing reasoning with any *man* **one**,
neither *raising up* **making** the *people* **multitude** **conspire**,
neither in the synagogues, nor in the city:
13 Neither can they *prove the things* **present those**
whereof **about which** they now accuse me.
14 But this I *confess* **profess** unto thee,
that after the way which they *call* **word** heresy,
so worship **thus liturgize** I the *God* **Elohim** of my fathers,
believing **trusting** all *things* which are *written* **scribed**
in the *law* **torah** and in the prophets:
15 And have hope *toward* **God** **in Elohim**,
which they themselves also *allow* **await**,
that there *shall* **is about to** be a resurrection of the dead,
both of the just and unjust.
16 And *herein* **do in this** I exercise myself,
to have *always* **continually** a conscience void to offence
toward *God* **Elohim**, and *toward men* **humanity**.
17 Now *after* **And through** many years
I came to *bring alms* **do mercies** to my *nation* **goyim**,
and offerings.
18 Whereupon *certain Jews* **some Yah Hudiym** from Asia
found me *purified* **hallowed**
in the *temple* **priestal precinct**,
neither with multitude, nor with tumult.
19 Who *ought* **need** to have been here
before **present by** thee,
and *object* **accuse**, if *ever* they had ought against me.
20 Or else let these same here say,
if they have found any *evil doing* **injustice** in me,
while I stood *before* **by** the *council* **sanhedrim**,
21 *Except it be* **for Other than** **about** this one voice,
that I cried standing among them,
Touching **Concerning** the resurrection of the dead
I am *called in question* **judged** by you this day.
22 And when *Felix* **Phelix** heard these *things*,
having more *perfect* **exact** knowledge
of **concerning** that way,
he *deferred* **delayed** them, and said,
When *Lysias* the *chief captain* **chiliarch**
shall *come down* **descend**,
I *will* **shall** know
the uttermost of your matter **exactly as to you**.
23 And he *commanded* **ordained** a centurion
to *keep Paul* **guard Paulos**,
and to let him have *liberty* **relaxation**,
and that he should forbid none of his *acquaintance* **own**
to *minister* **tend** or come unto him.
THE WITNESS OF PAULOS TO PHELIX
24 And after *certain* **some** days,
when *Felix* **Phelix** came with his *wife* **woman** Drusilla,
which was **being** a *Jewess* **Yah Hudy**,
he *sent for Paul* **summoned Paulos**,
and heard him
concerning the *faith* **trust** in *Christ* **the Messiah**.
25 And as he reasoned
of righteousness **concerning justness**,
temperance **self—control**,
and **the judgment to come about to be**,
Felix trembled **Phelix became awestricken**
and answered,
Go thy way for *this time* **now**;
when I *have a convenient* **partake a** season,
I *will* **shall** call for thee.
26 He hoped *also* **simultaneously** that *money* **riches**
should *have been* **be** given him of *Paul* **Paulos**,
that he might loose him:
wherefore **so** he *sent for* **summoned** him the oftener,
and *communed* **homologized** with him.

ACTS 24

exeGeses companion BIBLE

I understand that for many years
you have been a judge to this goyim,
I plead the more cheerfully concerning myself:
11 because you can know
that there are yet no more than twelve days
from my ascending to Yeru Shalem to worship:
12 and they neither found me in the priestal precinct
reasoning with anyone,
nor making the multitude conspire
— neither in the synagogues nor in the city:
13 neither can they present those
about which they now accuse me.
14 But this I profess to you,
that after the way they word, heresy,
thus liturgize I the Elohim of my fathers,
trusting all which are scribed
in the torah and in the prophets:
15 and have hope in Elohim
— whom they themselves also await:
that there is about to be a resurrection of the dead
— both of the just and unjust.
16 And in this I exercise myself,
to continually have a conscience void of offence
toward Elohim and humanity.
17 And through many years
I come to do mercies and offerings to my goyim:
18 whereupon some Yah Hudiym from Asia
found me hallowed in the priestal precinct
— neither with multitude nor with tumult:
19 who need to be here, present by you,
and accuse, if they have aught against me.
20 Or else have these same here say,
if they find any injustice in me,
while I stand in front of the sanhedrim;
21 — other than about this one voice,
that I cried standing among them.
Concerning the resurrection of the dead
I am judged by you this day.
22 And hearing these, Phelix delays them,
to have more exact knowledge concerning that way;
and says, When Lysias the chiliarch descends,
I know exactly as to you.
23 And he ordains a centurion to guard Paulos
and that he have relaxation;
and to forbid none of his own
to tend him or come to him.
THE WITNESS OF PAULOS TO PHELIX
24 And after some days,
Phelix comes with his woman Drusilla
— being a Yah Hudy,
he summons Paulos,
and hears him concerning the trust in the Messiah:
25 and as he reasons concerning justness,
self—control, and the judgment about to be,
Phelix becomes awestricken, and answers,
Go your way for now;
when I partake a season, I call for you.
26 He hopes simultaneously
that Paulos gives him riches, so as to loose him:
so he summons him the oftener,
and homologizes with him.

ACTS 24, 25

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

27 But after two years **being fulfilled/shalamed**
Porcius Festus **Porkios Phestus**
came into Felix' room **succeeded Phelix:**
and Felix **Phelix,**
willing **having willed**
to shew the Jews **lay on the Yah Hudiym**
a *pleasure* **charism,**
left Paul **Paulos** bound.
YAH HUDIYM SEEK TO SUMMON PAULOS

25

Now **So** when Festus **Phestus**
was come **embarked** into the province,
after three days
he ascended from *Caesarea* **Kaisaria**
to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem.**
Then **And** the *high arch* priest
and the *chief preeminent* of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
informed **manifested** him against Paul **Paulos,**
and *besought* **entreated** him,
And *desired favour* **asked charism** against him,
that he *would send for* **should summon** him
to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem,**
laying wait **lurking** in the way to **kill take** him out.
But Festus **So indeed Phestus** answered,
that Paul **Paulos** should be **kept guarded**
at *Caesarea* **Kaisaria,**
and that he himself
would was about to depart *shortly* **quickly** thither.
So Let them *therefore,* said he, which among you are able,
go down with me, and accuse this man,
if there be any wickedness in him.
And when he had tarried among them
more than ten days,
he went down **descended** unto *Caesarea* **Kaisaria;**
and the *next day on the morrow*
sitting on the *judgment seat* **bamah**
commanded Paul **summoned Paulos** to be brought.
And when he was come,
the Jews **Yah Hudiym** which *came down* **descended**
from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** stood round about,
and *laid* **brought** many
and *grievous complaints* **burdenous accusations**
against Paul **Paulos,**
which they could not *prove* **show.**
While he answered **pleaded** for himself,
Neither *against unto* the *law* **torah** of the Jews **Yah Hudiym,**
neither *against unto* the *temple* **priestal precinct,**
nor yet *against* **Caesar unto the Kaisar**
have I *offended any thing at all* **sinned somewhat.**
But Festus **Phestus,**
willing having willed
to do **lay** the Jews **Yah Hudiym** a *pleasure* **charism,**
answered Paul **Paulos,** and said,
Wilt Willest thou
go up **ascend** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem,**
and there be judged
of concerning these *things before* **by** me?
PAULOS CALLS ON THE KAISAR
Then **But** said Paul **Paulos,**
I stand at *Caesar's judgment seat* **the Kaisar's bamah,**
where I *ought to* **must** be judged:
to the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
have I *done no wrong* **not injured,**
as thou very well knowest.
For **indeed** if I *be an offender* **have injured,**
or have *committed any thing* **transacted somewhat**
worthy of death,
I *refuse* **shun** not to die:
but if there be none of these *things*
whereof these accuse me,
no man may *deliver* **one can grant charism** of me
unto them.
I *appeal unto* **Caesar call upon the Kaisar.**
Then Festus **Phestus,**
when he had *conferred* **talked** with the council,
answered,
Hast thou appealed unto *Caesar* **the Kaisar?**
unto **Caesar the Kaisar** shalt thou go.
And *after certain* **some days having past,**

ACTS 24, 25

exeGeses companion BIBLE

27 But fulfilling/shalaming two years
Porkios Phestus succeeds Phelix:
and Phelix wills to lay a charism on the Yah Hudiym
and leaves Paulos bound.

YAH HUDIYM SEEK TO SUMMON PAULOS

25

So Phestus embarks to the province;
and after three days
he ascends from Kaisaria to Yeru Shalem.
And the archpriest
and the preeminent of the Yah Hudiym
manifest him against Paulos, and entreat him,
and ask charism against him
to summon him to Yeru Shalem
— lurking in the way to take him out.
So indeed Phestus answers,
to guard Paulos at Kaisaria,
and that he himself is about to depart quickly.
So have those among you, says he,
who are able,
go down with me and accuse this man
— if there be any wickedness in him.
And he tarries among them more than ten days,
and descends to Kaisaria;
and on the morrow, sitting on the bamah,
summons to bring Paulos:
and when he comes,
the Yah Hudiym who descended from Yeru Shalem
stand all around,
and bring many and burdenous accusations
against Paulos
which they cannot show.
And he pleads for himself,
Neither to the torah of the Yah Hudiym
nor to the priestal precinct
nor yet to the Kaisar have I sinned somewhat.
But Phestus
wills to lay a charism on the Yah Hudiym,
and answers Paulos, saying,
Will you to ascend to Yeru Shalem,
and there be judged by me concerning these?
PAULOS CALLS ON THE KAISAR
But Paulos says,
I stand at the bamah of the Kaisar
where I must be judged:
I injured not the Yah Hudiym,
as you very well know.
For indeed, if I injured
or transacted somewhat worthy of death,
I shun not to die:
and if there be none of these
whereof these accuse me,
no one can give me as a charism to them:
I call upon the Kaisar.
Then Phestus, having talked with the council,
answers,
Appeal to the Kaisar? To the Kaisar you go!
And some days having passed,

ACTS 25

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

king **sovereign** Agrippa and Bernice
came unto *Caesarea* **arrived in Kaisaria**
to salute *Festus* **Phestus**.

14 And when they had *been* **tarried** there many days,
Festus declared *Paul's* **Phestus propounded Paulos'** cause
unto the king **sovereign**, saying **wording**,
There is a *certain* **some** man
left in *bonds* **prisoner** by *Felix* **Phelix**:

15 About whom,
when I *was at Jerusalem* **became in Yeru Shalem**,
the *chief* **arch** priests and the elders
of the *Jews* **informed me Yah Hudiym manifested**,
desiring **asking** to have judgment against him.

16 To whom I answered,
It is not the *manner* **custom** of the Romans
to *deliver* **grant charism over any man human**
to *die* **unto destruction**,
before **ere** that he which is accused
have the accusers face to face,
and *have licence to answer for himself* **take his pleading**
concerning *the crime laid against him* **his accusation**.

17 Therefore **So**, when they were come hither,
without any **making no** delay
on the morrow I sat on the *judgment seat* **bamah**,
and *commanded* **summoned** the man to be brought forth.

18 Against **Concerning** whom
when the accusers stood *up*,
they brought none accusation
of such *things* as I *supposed* **surmised**:

19 But had *certain* **some** questions against him
of **concerning** their own *superstition* **demon—dreading**,
and of **about** one *Jesus* **Yah Shua**, which was dead,
whom *Paul* **affirmed Paulos** professed to be alive.

20 And *because I doubted* **being perplexed**
of such *manner of* **about these** questions,
I *asked him* **worded**,
whether he *would* **willed to** go to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**,
and there be judged of **concerning** these matters.

21 But when *Paul* **Paulos**
had *appealed* **called** to be *reserved* **guarded**
unto the *hearing* **diagnosis of Augustus Sebastos**,
I *commanded* **summoned** him to be kept
till I might send him to *Caesar* **the Kaisar**.

22 Then **And** Agrippa said unto *Festus* **Phestus**,
I *would also* **will to** hear the *man* **human** myself.
To morrow, said he, thou shalt hear him.

23 And **So** on the morrow,
when Agrippa was come, and Bernice,
with *great pomp* **much fantasy**,
and was entered into the place of hearing,
with the *chief captains* **chiliarchs**,
and *principal* **eminent** men of the city,
at *Festus' commandment* **Phestus' summons**
Paul **Paulos** was brought forth.

24 And *Festus* **Phestus** said, *King* **Sovereign** Agrippa,
and all men which are *here* present with us **together**,
ye see **observe** this man,
about whom all the multitude of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
have *dealt* **interceded** with me,
both at *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**, and also here,
crying that he *ought* **must** not to live any longer.

25 But when I *found* **overtook**
that he had *committed nothing* **transacted naught**
worthy of death,
and that he himself
hath *appealed* **called** to *Augustus* **Sebastos**,
I have *determined* **judged** to send him.

26 Of **About** whom
I have *no certain thing* **nought** to write **scribe**
unto my *lord* **adoni**.

Wherefore **So** I have brought him forth *before* **by** you,
and specially *before* **by** thee, O *king* **sovereign** Agrippa,
that, *after examination* **had having become**,
I might have somewhat to write **scribe**.

27 For *it seemeth to me unreasonable*
I thought it irrational to send a prisoner,
and not withal to signify the *crimes* **accusations**
laid against him.

ACTS 25

exeGeses companion BIBLE

sovereign Agrippa and Bernice
arrive in Kaisaria to salute Phestus.

14 And tarrying there many days,
Phestus propounds the cause of Paulos
to the sovereign, wording,
There is some man left prisoner by Phelix:
15 about whom, when I became in Yeru Shalem,
the archpriests and the elders
of the Yah Hudiym manifested,
asking to have judgment against him:
16 to whom I answered,
It is not the custom of the Romans
to give any human as a charism for destruction,
ere the accused has the accusers face to face,
and take his pleading concerning his accusation.

17 So, they came here,
and I, making no delay,
on the morrow I sat on the bamah,
and summoned to bring the man forth
18 — concerning whom, when the accusers stood,
they brought no accusation of such as I surmised:
19 but had some questions against him
concerning their own demon—dreading,
and about one Yah Shua, who is dead
— whom Paulos professes to be alive.

20 And being perplexed about these questions,
I worded whether he willed to go to Yeru Shalem,
and there be judged concerning these matters.

21 But Paulos called
to be guarded to the diagnosis of Sebastos;
and I summoned to keep him
until I send him to the Kaisar.

22 And Agrippa says to Phestus,
I also will to hear this human myself.

Tomorrow, says he, you hear him.

23 So on the morrow, with much fantasy,
Agrippa and Bernice come
and enter the auditorium,
with the chiliarchs and eminent men of the city;
and at the summons of Phestus, Paulos is brought.

24 And Phestus says, Sovereign Agrippa,
and all men present together,
observe this man,
about whom all the multitude of the Yah Hudiym
interceded with me
— both at Yeru Shalem and also here,
crying that he must not live any longer.

25 But I overtake
that he transacted naught worthy of death,
and that he himself calls to Sebastos,
I judge to send him
— about whom
I have naught to scribe to my adoni.
So I bring him by you
— and especially by you, sovereign Agrippa,
that examination having become,
I have somewhat to scribe.

27 For I thought it irrational to send a prisoner,
and not to signify the accusations laid against him.

ACTS 26

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

PAULOS PLEADS TO AGRIPPA

26 Then Agrippa said unto *Paul Paulos*,
 Thou art *permitted* **allowed** to speak **word** for thyself.
 Then *Paul stretched forth Paulos spread* the hand,
 and *answered* **pleaded** for himself:
 2 I think **deem** myself *happy blessed*,
king Sovereign Agrippa,
 because I *shall answer* **am about to plead** for myself
 this day
before **by** thee *touching* **concerning** all the things
 whereof I am accused of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*:
 3 Especially because I know thee
 to be *expert* **knowledgeable** in all customs and questions
 which are among the *Jews Yah Hudiym*:
wherefore **so** I beseech **petition** thee to hear me patiently.
 4 **So indeed**
My manner of life **existence** from my youth,
which was at the first **being from the beginning**
 among mine own *nation* **goyim** at *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
 know all the *Jews Yah Hudiym*;
 5 Which *knew* **foreknew** me from the *beginning* **above**,
if whenever they would *testify* **willed to witness**,
 that after the most *straitest* **sect** **exact heresy**
 of our *religion* **ceremonials** I lived a Pharisee.
 6 And now I stand and am judged
for **unto** the hope of the *promise* **pre—evangelism**
made of God **that became by Elohim**, unto our fathers:
 7 Unto which *promise* our twelve *tribes* **scions**,
instantly serving God **intently liturgizing** day and night,
 hope to *come* **arrive**.
For **Concerning** which *hope's sake* **hope**,
king Sovereign Agrippa,
 I am accused of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*.
 8 Why should it be *thought* **judged**
a thing incredible **trustless** with you,
 that *God* **if Elohim** should raise the dead?
 9 **So** I *verily* **indeed** thought with myself,
 that I *ought to do many things* **must transact much**
 contrary to the name
 of *Jesus of Nazareth Yah Shua the Nazarene*.
 10 Which *thing* I also did in *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*:
 and many of the *saints* **holy**
 did I *shut up* **lock down** in *prison* **the guardhouse**,
 having *received* **taken** authority
 from the *chief* **arch** priests;
 and when they were *put to death* **taken out**,
 I *gave my voice* **brought down my pebble** against them.
 11 And I *punished* **dishonoured** them oft
 in every synagogue,
 and compelled them to blaspheme;
 and *being exceedingly mad* **raving superabundantly**
 against them,
 I persecuted them even unto *strange* **outlying** cities.
 12 *Whereupon* **Wherein** as I went to *Damascus* **Dammeseq**
 with authority and *commission* **permission**
 from the *chief* **arch** priests,
 13 At midday, O *king* **sovereign**,
 I saw in the way a light from heaven,
 above the *brightness* **radiance** of the sun,
shining round about **haloing** me
 and them which *journeyed* **went** with me.
 14 And when we were all fallen **down** to the earth,
 I heard a voice speaking unto me,
 and *saying* **wording** in the Hebrew *tongue* **dialect**,
Saul, Saul Shaul, Shaul, why persecutest thou me?
 it is hard for thee to *kick* **heel** against the *pricks* **stings**.
 15 And I said, Who art thou, *Lord* **Adonay**?
 And he said,
 I am *Jesus* **I AM Yah Shua** whom thou persecutest.
 16 But rise, and stand upon thy feet:
 for I have appeared unto thee *for this purpose* **unto this**,
 to make **preselect** thee
 a *minister* **an attendant** and a witness
 both of these *things* which thou hast seen,
 and of those *things*
 in the which I *will* **shall** appear unto thee;
 17 *Delivering* **Releasing** thee from the people,
 and from the *Gentiles* **goyim**,

ACTS 26

exeGesés companion BIBLE

PAULOS PLEADS TO AGRIPPA

26 So Agrippa says to Paulos,
 You are allowed to word for yourself.
 So Paulos spreads the hand and pleads for himself:
 2 I deem myself blessed, Sovereign Agrippa,
 because this day
 I am about to plead for myself by you
 concerning all
 whereof I am accused by the Yah Hudiym:
 3 especially because I know you
 to be knowledgeable in all customs and questions
 among the Yah Hudiym:
 so I petition you to hear me patiently.
 4 So indeed, my existence from my youth,
 being from the beginning
 among my own goyim at Yeru Shalem,
 all the Yah Hudiym know;
 5 who foreknew me from above,
 whenever they will to witness,
 that after the most exact heresy of our ceremonials
 I lived a Pharisee:
 6 and now I stand,
 judged for the hope of the pre—evangelism
 that became to our fathers by Elohim:
 7 to which our twelve scions,
 intently liturgizing day and night, hope to arrive:
 concerning which hope, Sovereign Agrippa,
 I am accused by the Yah Hudiym.
 8 Why be it judged trustless with you,
 if Elohim raises the dead?
 9 So I indeed thought with myself,
 that I must transact much
 contrary to the name of Yah Shua the Nazarene.
 10 Which I also did in Yeru Shalem:
 and I locked many of the holy in the guardhouse,
 taking authority from the archpriests:
 and when they were taken out,
 I brought my pebble against them:
 11 and I dishonored them often in every synagogue,
 and compelled them to blaspheme:
 and raving superabundantly against them,
 I persecuted them even to outlying cities.
 12 Wherein as I went to Dammeseq
 with authority and permission from the archpriests,
 13 at midday, O sovereign,
 I see in the way a light from the heavens,
 above the radiance of the sun,
 haloing me and them who went with me:
 14 and we all fell to the earth,
 and I heard a voice speaking to me,
 and wording in the Hebrew dialect,
 Shaul, Shaul, why persecute you me?
 It is hard for you to heel against the stings.
 15 And I said, Who are you, Adonay?
 And he said,
 I AM Yah Shua whom you persecute.
 16 But rise and stand on your feet;
 and for this I appear to you:
 to preselect you, an attendant and a witness
 both of these which you have seen,
 and of those in which I am to appear to you;
 17 releasing you from the people and from the goyim

ACTS 26, 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

18 unto whom now I send **apostolize** thee,
 To open their eyes,
 and to turn them from darkness to light,
 and from the power **authority** of Satan
 unto **God Elohim**,
 that they may **receive take** forgiveness of sins,
 and **inheritance their lot** among them
 which are **sanctified hallowed** by **faith trust** that is in me.
 19 Whereupon, O **king Sovereign** Agrippa,
 I was **became** not **disobedient distrustful**
 unto the heavenly vision:
 20 But **shewed evangelized** first
 unto them of **Damascus Dammeseq**,
 and at **Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
 and **throughout** to all the **coasts regions** of **Judaea Yah Hudah**,
 and **then** to the **Gentiles goyim**,
 that they should repent and turn to **God Elohim**,
 and **do transact** works **meet for worthy of** repentance.
 21 For these causes the **Jews caught Yah Hudiym** took me
 in the **temple priestal precinct**,
 and **went about tried** to **kill thoroughly handle** me.
 22 **So** Having **therefore** obtained help of **God Elohim**,
 I **continue stand** unto this day,
 witnessing both to **small little** and **great mega**,
 saying **wording** none other **things**
 than **except** those which the prophets and **Moses Mosheh**
 did say should come **spoke of are about to become**:
 23 That **Christ Whether the Messiah** should suffer,
 and that **whether** he should be the first
 that should rise from the **resurrection of** the dead,
 and **should shew about to evangelize** light
 unto the people, and to the **Gentiles goyim**.
 24 And as he **thus spake pleaded these** for himself,
Festus Phestus said with a **loud mega** voice,
Paul Paulos, thou art **beside thyself ravest**;
 much **learning scribing** doth make thee **mad maniacal**.
 25 But he said, I am not **mad raving**,
 most **noble Festus powerful Phestus**;
 but **speak forth utter** the words **rhema** of truth
 and **soberness soundmindedness**.
 26 For the **king sovereign**
knoweth of understandeth about these **things**,
 before whom also I speak **freely emboldened**:
 for I am **persuaded convinced**
 that none of these **things** are hidden from him;
 for this **thing** was not **done transacted** in a corner.
 27 **King Sovereign** Agrippa,
believest trustest thou the prophets?
 I know that thou **believest trustest**.
 28 Then **And** Agrippa said unto **Paul Paulos**,
Almost In a little thou **persuadest convincest** me
 to **become** a **Christian Messiahist**.
 29 And **Paul Paulos** said,
 I **would should vow** to **God Elohim**,
 that not only thou, but also all that hear me this day,
 were **both almost become**
both in little, and **altogether in much**
such as what sort I am, except these bonds.
 30 And when he had **thus spoken said these**,
 the **king sovereign** rose up,
 and the governor, and Bernice,
 and they that sat with them:
 31 And when they were **gone aside had withdrawn**,
 they **talked between themselves spake to one another**,
 saying **wording**,
 This man **doeth nothing human transacteth** naught
 worthy of death or of bonds.
 32 Then said Agrippa unto **Festus Phestus**,
 This man **might human could** have been
 set at **liberty released**,
 if he had not **appealed except that he called**
 unto **Caesar the Kaisar**.

ON TO ROME

27

And when it was **determined judged**
 that we should sail into Italy,
 they delivered **Paul Paulos**
 and **certain some** other prisoners unto one named Julius,
 a centurion of **Augustus' band the venerable squad**.

ACTS 26, 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

18 — to whom I now apostolize you
 to open their eyes
 and to turn them from darkness to light;
 and the authority of Satan to Elohim,
 that they take forgiveness of sins:
 and their lot
 among them who are hallowed by their trust in me.
 19 Whereupon, O Sovereign Agrippa,
 I became not distrustful to the heavenly vision:
 20 but evangelized first to them of Dammeseq
 and at Yeru Shalem
 and to all the regions of Yah Hudah
 and to the goyim
 — to repent and turn to Elohim
 and transact works worthy of repentance.
 21 For these causes
 the Yah Hudiym took me in the priestal precinct
 and tried to thoroughly handle me.
 22 So having obtained help from Elohim,
 I stand to this day
 witnessing both to little and mega;
 wording none other except those
 of which the prophets and Mosheh spoke
 which are about to become:
 23 — whether the Messiah suffer
 and whether he be the first
 to rise from the resurrection of the dead;
 and about to evangelize light
 to the people and to the goyim.
 24 And as he pleads these for himself,
 Phestus says with a mega voice,
 Paulos, you rave!
 Much scribing makes you maniacal.
 25 But he says, I rave not, most powerful Phestus;
 but utter the rhema of truth and soundmindedness.
 26 For the sovereign understands about these,
 in front of whom I also speak emboldened:
 for I am convinced
 that none of these are hidden from him;
 for this is not transacted in a corner.
 27 Sovereign Agrippa, trust you the prophets?
 I know you trust!
 28 And Agrippa says to Paulos,
 In a little you convince me to become a Messiahist.
 29 And Paulos says,
 I vow to Elohim,
 that not only you, but also all who hear me this day,
 become both, in little and in much,
 what sort I am, except for these bonds.
 30 And when he says these,
 the sovereign and the governor and Bernice
 and they who sit with them rise:
 31 and they withdraw,
 and speak to one another, wording,
 This human transacted naught
 worthy of death or of bonds.
 32 And Agrippa says to Phestus,
 This human could have been released,
 except that he called to the Kaisar.

ON TO ROME

27

And when they judge us to sail to Italy,
 they deliver Paulos and some other prisoners
 to one named Julius
 — a centurion of the venerable squad.

ACTS 27

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

2 And *entering* **embarking**
into a *ship* **sailer** of Adramyttium,
we *launched* **embarked**,
meaning about to sail by the *coasts* **places** of Asia;
one Aristarchus,
a Macedonian of *Thessalonica* — **Thessalonikee**
being with us.
3 And *the next day* **on another**
we *touched at* **moored in** Sidon.
And Julius
courteously entreated Paul **supplied philanthropy to Paulos**,
and *gave him liberty* **allowed him** to go unto his friends
to *refresh himself* **obtain their care**.
4 And when we had *launched* **embarked** from thence,
we sailed under Cyprus,
because the winds were contrary.
5 And when we had sailed
over through the sea **deep** of Cilicia and Pamphylia,
we *came* **descended** to Myra, a city of *Lycia* **Loukia**.
6 And there the centurion
found a *ship* **sailer** of Alexandria sailing into Italy;
and he *put* **embarked** us *therein*.
7 And when we had sailed slowly many days,
and *scarce* **difficultly**
were come **being** over against Cnidus,
the wind not *suffering* **allowing** us,
we sailed under Crete, over against Salmone;
8 And, *hardly passing it* **difficultly sailing by**,
came unto a place which is called
The fair havens **Good Harbor**;
nigh whereunto was the city of Lasea.
9 Now when **And** much time was *spent* **being past**,
and when sailing was *now* **already being** dangerous,
because the fast was *now* **being** already past,
Paul *admonished* **Paulos advised** them,
10 And *said* **worded** unto them, *Sirs* **Men**,
I *perceive* **observe** that this *voyage* **sailing**
will is about to be
with *hurt* **hubris** and much *damage* **loss**,
not only of the lading and *ship* **sailer**,
but also of our *lives* **souls**.
11 *Nevertheless* **But** the centurion
believed the master **had confidence of the pilot**
and the *owner of the ship* **captain**,
more rather than those *things*
which were *spoken* **worded** by Paul **Paulos**.
12 And *because the haven* **harbor**
was not commodious **being inconvenient** to winter in,
the more part **most of them**
advised to depart **placed counsel to embark** thence *also*,
if by any means **somehow**
they might attain to **Phoinix could arrive in Phoinix**,
and there to winter;
which is an haven — **a harbor** of Crete,
and *lieth* **looketh**
toward the south west and north west.
13 And when the *south wind* **southerly**
blew softly **puffed gently**,
supposing **thinking** that they had
obtained **empowered** their *purpose* **prothesis**,
loosing thence, they sailed close by Crete.

THE STORM ON THE WAY

14 But not *long* **much** after
there *arose* **cast** against it a tempestuous wind,
called Euroclydon.
15 And when the *ship* **sailer** was caught,
and could not *bear up into* **eye against** the wind,
we *let her drive* **gave her up and were borne away**.
16 And *running under a certain* **sailing past some** island
which is called *Clauda*,
we had much work to come by the boat
were difficultly able to become masters of the skiff:
17 Which when they had taken *up*,
they used helps, undergirding the *ship* **sailer**;
and, *fearing* **awing**
lest they should fall into the quicksands,
strake **lowered** sail, and so **thus** were *driven* **borne**.
18 And we being *exceedingly* **extremely tempest** tossed
with a tempest,

ACTS 27

exeGeses companion BIBLE

2 And embarking in a sailer of Adramyttium,
we embark, about to sail by the places of Asia;
one Aristarchus — a Macedonian — a Thessalonikee
being with us.
3 And on another we moor in Sidon.
And Julius supplies philanthropy to Paulos
and allows him to go to his friends to obtain their care.
4 And embarking from there, we sail under Cyprus,
because the winds are contrary:
5 and sailing through the deep of Cilicia and Pamphylia,
we descend to Myra, of Loukia:
6 and there the centurion
finds a sailer of Alexandria sailing to Italy;
and he embarks us.
7 And sailing slowly many days, and difficultly,
being over against Cnidus
— the wind not allowing us,
we sail under Crete, over against Salmone;
8 and, difficultly sailing by,
come to a place called Good Harbor;
near the city of Lasea.
9 And much time being past,
and sailing already being dangerous,
because of the fast already being past,
Paulos advises them,
10 and words to them, Men,
I observe that this sailing
is about to be with hubris and much loss
— not only of the lading and sailer,
but also of our souls.
11 But the centurion
had the confidence of the pilot and the ship captain,
rather than those worded by Paulos.
12 And the harbor, being inconvenient to winter in,
most of them placed counsel to embark there,
if somehow they can arrive in Phoinix
— a harbor of Crete
that looks toward the south west and north west.
and to winter there.
13 And the southerly puffs gently;
and thinking they empower their prothesis,
loosing there, they sail close by Crete.

THE STORM ON THE WAY

14 But not much after
a tempestuous wind called Euroclydon
casts against it:
15 and the sailer is caught
and cannot eye against the wind;
and we give her up and are borne away.
16 And sailing past some island called *Clauda*,
we are able, difficultly,
to become masters of the skiff:
17 which, they take,
and using helps, undergird the sailer;
and awing, lest they fall into the quicksands,
lower sail, and thus are borne.
18 And we, being extremely tempest tossed,

ACTS 27

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19 *the next day they lightened the ship made an ejection;*
And the third day
we cast **tossed** out with our own hands
the tackling of the *ship sailer*.
20 And when neither sun nor stars
in many days appeared,
and no small *tempest downpour* lay on us,
all hope that we should be saved
was then **finally** taken away.
21 *But after long abstinence* **And there being much fasting**
Paul Paulos then stood forth in the midst of them,
and said, *Sirs O Men,*
ye **indeed**
should needed to have hearkened unto first obeyed me,
and not have *loosed embarked* from Crete,
and to have gained this *harm hubris* and loss.
22 And now I *exhort advise* you to *be of good cheer cheer up:*
for there shall be no loss
of any man's life among **soul of** you,
but **except** of the *ship sailer*.
23 For there stood by me this night
the **an** angel of *God Elohim,*
whose I am, and whom I *serve liturgize,*
24 *Saying Wording, Fear Awe* not, *Paul Paulos;*
thou must be *brought presented*
before Caesar in front of the Kaiser:
and, *lo behold,*
God Elohim hath *given granted* thee **charism**
of all them that sail with thee.
25 *Wherefore So, sirs men, be of good cheer cheer up:*
for I *believe God trust* **Elohim,**
that it shall be **even thus**
as it was told in the manner it was spoken unto me.
26 Howbeit
we must be *cast upon a certain island fall unto some isle.*
27 *But when And being* the fourteenth night was come,
as we were *driven up and down borne* in *Adria,*
about midnight
the *shipmen deemed sailer crew surmised*
that they drew near to some *country region;*
28 And sounded, and found it twenty fathoms:
and when they had *gone passed through* a little further,
they sounded again, and found it fifteen fathoms.
29 *Then fearing And awing* lest **somehow**
we should have fallen *upon rocks unto jagged places,*
they cast **tossed** four anchors out of the stern,
and *wished for the vowed that it become* day.
30 And as the *shipmen sailer crew*
were about to flee out of the *ship sailer,*
when they had *let down lowered* the *boat skiff* into the sea,
under *colour pretext* as though
they *would have cast were about to spread* anchors
out of the *foreship prow,*
31 *Paul Paulos*
said to the centurion and to the *soldiers warriors,*
Except Unless these abide in the *ship sailer,*
ye cannot be saved.
32 Then the *soldiers warriors*
cut off the ropes of the *boat skiff,*
and let her fall off.
33 And *while until* the day was *coming on became,*
Paul besought Paulos entreated them all
to *take meat partake nourishment, saying wording,*
This day is the fourteenth day that ye have *tarried awaited*
and *continued thorough completed/shalamed* fasting,
having taken *nothing naught.*
34 *Wherefore So I pray beseech* you
to take *some meat nourishment:*
for this is for your *health salvation:*
for there shall not an hair fall from the head of any of you.
35 And when he had *thus spoken said these,*
he took bread,
and *gave thanks eucharistized* to *God Elohim*
in *presence sight* of them all:
and when he had broken it, he began to eat.

ACTS 27

exeGesés companion BIBLE

19 they next make an ejection;
and third,
we toss out the tackling of the sailer
with our own hands.
20 And neither sun nor stars appear in many days,
and no small downpour lies on us,
and all hope to be saved is finally taken away.
21 And there being much fasting;
then Paulos stands in their midst, and says,
O Men, you indeed needed to have first obeyed me,
to not embark from Crete,
and to gain this hubris and loss:
22 and now I advise you to cheer up:
for there is no loss of your soul, except of the sailer.
23 For an angel of Elohim stood by me this night
— whose I am and whom I liturgize,
24 wording, Awe not, Paulos;
you must be presented in front of the Kaiser:
and behold, Elohim grants you charism
of all who sail with you.
25 So men, cheer up!
For I trust Elohim,
that so be it in the manner spoken to me.
26 However, we must fall to some isle.
27 And being the fourteenth night,
as we are borne in *Adria,* about midnight,
the sailer crew surmises
that they draw near to some region;
28 and sound; and find it twenty fathoms:
and when they pass through a little further,
they sound again; and find it fifteen fathoms.
29 And awing, lest somehow we fall to jagged places,
they toss four anchors from the stern,
and vow that it become day.
30 And as the sailer crew is about to flee from the sailer,
they lower the skiff into the sea,
under pretext
as though they are about to spread anchors
from the prow,
31 Paulos says to the centurion and to the warriors,
Unless these abide in the sailer, you cannot be saved.
32 So the warriors cut off the ropes of the skiff
and let her fall off.
33 And until day becomes,
Paulos entreats them all to partake nourishment,
wording, This day is the fourteenth day you await
and thoroughly complete/shalam fasting, taking naught.
34 So I beseech you to take nourishment:
for this is for your salvation:
for not a hair falls from the head of any of you.
35 And saying these,
he takes bread and eucharistizes to Elohim
in sight of them all:
and breaks and begins to eat.

ACTS 27, 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

36 Then were **And** they all of good cheer **became cheered**,
and they also took *some meat* **nourishment**.
37 And we were in all in the *ship* **sailer**
two hundred
threescore and sixteen **and seventy and six** souls.
38 And when they had
eaten enough **gluttonized nourishment**,
they lightened the *ship* **sailer**,
and cast out the *wheat* **grain** into the sea.
39 And *when it was* **being** day, they knew not the land:
but they *discovered a certain creek* **perceived some bay**
with a shore,
into the which they *were minded* **had counseled**,
if it were possible, to *thrust in* **propel** the *ship* **sailer**.
40 And when they had taken *up* the anchors,
they *committed themselves* **release** unto the sea,
and **simultaneously** loosed the rudder *bands* **tiller**,
and *hoised up* **lifted** the *mainsail* **foresail**
to the *wind* **puffing**,
and *made toward* **held onto** shore.
41 And falling into a place *where of the* two seas *met*,
they ran the ship *aground*;
and the *forepart* **prow indeed** stuck *fast* **tight**,
and *remained* **abode** unmoveable,
but the *hinder part* **stern** was *broken* **loosed**
with by the violence of the waves.
42 And the *soldiers'* **warriors'** counsel
was **became** to *kill* **slaughter** the prisoners,
lest any of them should swim out, and *escape* **flee**.
43 But the centurion,
willing having **willed** to save *Paul* **Paulos**,
kept forbad them from their *purpose* **counsel**;
and *commanded* **summoned** that they which could swim
should cast *themselves* first *into the sea*,
and *get* **depart** to land:
44 And the rest, some **indeed** on boards,
and some on *broken pieces* **some** of the *ship* **sailer**.
And so **be** it *came to pass*,
that they *escaped all safe* **were saved** to land.

SAVED AT MELITA ISLAND

28

And *when they were escaped* **being saved**,
then they knew that the island was called Melita.
2 And the *barbarous people* **barbarians**
shewed **presented** us no *little kindness* **ordinary philanthropy**:
for they *kindled* **lit** a fire, and received us every one,
because of the *present rain* **standing by**,
and because of the cold.

VIPER SEIZES THE HAND OF PAULOS

3 And when *Paul* **Paulos**
had gathered **tied** a *bundle* **multitude** of *sticks* **kindling**,
and *laid* **put** them on the fire,
there came a viper out of the heat,
and *fastened on* **seized** his hand.
4 And when the barbarians
saw the *venomous* beast hang *on* **from** his hand,
they *said* **worded** among *themselves* **one another**,
No doubt **Most certainly** this *man* **human** is a murderer,
whom, though he *hath escaped* **be saved from** the sea,
yet *vengeance* **suffereth** **judgment alloweth** not to live.
5 And *therefore* **So indeed**
he shook off the beast into the fire,
and *felt* **suffered** no *harm* **evil**.
6 Howbeit they *looked* **watched**
when he should *have swollen* **ought to be inflamed**,
or fallen down dead suddenly:
but after they had *looked a great while* **awaited much**,
and saw *no harm* **observed nought inordinate**
come to **become** him,
they changed their minds,
and *said* **worded** that he was a *god* **an El**.

PAULOS HEALS THE FATHER OF PUBLIUS

7 *In the same quarters* **Around those places**
were *possessions* **parcels**
of the *chief* **preeminent** man of the island,
whose name was Publius; who *received* **entertained** us,
and lodged us three days courteously.

ACTS 27, 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

36 And they all become cheered
and they also take nourishment.
37 And we in the sailer
are two hundred and seventy—six souls in all.
38 And they gluttonize nourishment,
and they lighten the sailer
and cast the grain in the sea.
39 And being day, they know not the land:
and they perceive some bay with a shore,
into which, they counsel, if possible,
to propel the sailer.
40 And they take the anchors and release to the sea;
and simultaneously loose the rudder tiller
and lift the foresail to the puffing
and hold toward shore.
41 And falling into a place of the two seas,
they run the ship *aground*;
and indeed the prow sticks tight
and abides unmoveable;
but the stern is loosed by the violence of the waves.
42 And the counsel of the warriors
is to slaughter the prisoners,
lest any of them swim out and flee.
43 But the centurion wills to save Paulos,
and forbids their counsel;
and summons those who can swim
to cast first and depart to land:
44 and the rest — some indeed on boards
and some on some of the sailer.
And so be it, they are saved to land.

SAVED AT MELITA ISLAND

28

And being saved,
they know the island is called Melita.
2 And the barbarians present us
no ordinary philanthropy:
for they light a fire and receive everyone of us
— because of the rain standing by
and because of the cold.

VIPER SEIZES THE HAND OF PAULOS

3 And Paulos ties a multitude of kindling,
and puts them on the fire;
and a viper comes from the heat and seizes his hand.
4 And when the barbarians
see the beast hang from his hand,
they word among one another,
Most certainly this human is a murderer,
whom, though being saved from the sea,
yet judgment allows not to live.
5 So indeed he shakes off the beast into the fire
and suffers no evil.
6 But they watch for when he ought to inflame,
or suddenly fall down dead:
but after they await much
and observe naught inordinate become him,
they change their minds, and word that he is an El.

PAULOS HEALS THE FATHER OF PUBLIUS

7 Around those places
are parcels of the preeminent man of the island,
whose name is Publius;
who entertains us,
and courteously lodges us three days.

ACTS 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 And **so be** it came to pass,
that the father of Publius *lay sick of* **was held by** a fever
and of a *bloody flux* **dysentery**:
to whom *Paul Paulos* entered *in*, and prayed,
and *laid put* his hands on him, and healed him.
9 So when this *was done* **became**,
others also **the rest**,
which had *diseases* **frailties** in the island,
came, and were *healed* **cured**:
10 Who also honoured us with many honours;
and when we *departed* **embarked**,
they *laded put* us with such *things*
as were *necessary* **needed**.
11 And after three months
we *departed* **embarked** in a *ship* **sailer** of Alexandria,
which had wintered in the isle,
whose sign was *Castor and Pollux* **Dioscuri**.
12 And *landing* **mooring** at Syracuse,
we *tarried* **abode** there three days.
13 And from thence
we *fetchd a compass* **wandered around**,
and *came to* **arrived in** Rhegium:
and after one day
the *south wind* **blew up** **southerly sprung**,
and we *came* **the next day** to Puteoli:
14 Where we found brethren,
and were *desired* **besought**
to *tarry with* **abide among** them seven days:
and *so* **thus** we went *toward* **unto** Rome.
15 And from thence,
when the brethren heard of **concerning** us,
they came to meet us
as far as Appii forum, and The three taverns:
whom when *Paul Paulos* saw,
he *thanked God* **eucharistized Elohim**, and took courage.
16 And when we came to Rome,
the centurion delivered the prisoners
to the *captain of the guard* **arch warrior**:
but *Paul Paulos*
was *suffered* **allowed** to *dwel* **abide** by himself
with a *soldier* **warrior** that *kept* **guarded** him.
PAULOS WITNESSES TO THE YAH HUDIYM
17 And **so be** it came to pass, that after three days
Paul Paulos called the *chief* **preminent**
of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** together:
and when they were come together,
he *said* **worded** unto them, Men and brethren,
though I have *committed nothing* **done naught**
against the people, or customs of our fathers,
yet was I delivered prisoner from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
into the hands of the Romans.
18 Who, when they had examined me,
would have let me go **had willed to release me**,
because there was no cause of death in me.
19 But when the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym**
spake against it **contradicted**,
I was *constrained* **compelled**
to *appeal call* unto *Caesar* **the Kaisar**;
not that I had *ought* **somewhat** to accuse my *nation* of **goyim**.
20 For **So for** this cause *therefore*
have I *called for* **besought** you,
to see you, and to speak with you:
because **indeed**,
that for **sake of** the hope of *Israel* **Yisra El**
I am bound with this chain **this fetter hangs around me**.
21 And they said unto him,
We neither received *letters* **scribings**
out of *Judaea* **Yah Hudah** concerning thee,
neither any of the brethren that came *shewed* **evangelized**
or spake any *harm of* **evil concerning** thee.
22 But we desire to hear of thee what thou thinkest:
for **indeed** as concerning this *sect* **heresy**,
we know that every where
it is *spoken against* **contradicted**.
23 And when they had *appointed* **ordained** him a day,

ACTS 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 And so be it,
the father of Publius is held by a fever and dysentery
— to whom Paulos enters and prays
and puts his hands on him and heals him.
9 So when this becomes,
the rest in the island, who have frailties,
come and are cured;
10 who also honor us with many honors:
and when we embark,
they put us with such as are needed.
11 And after three months
we embark in a sailer of Alexandria
which wintered in the isle
— whose sign is Dioscuri:
and mooring at Syracuse,
we abide there three days:
12 and from there, we wander around,
and arrive in Rhegium:
and after one day, the southerly springs forth,
and next we come to Puteoli:
13 where we find brothers,
who beseech us to abide among them seven days:
and thus we go to Rome:
14 and from there,
when the brothers hear concerning us,
they come to meet us
as far as Appii Forum and The Three Taverns
— whom when Paulos sees,
he eucharistizes Elohim and takes courage.
PAULOS COMES TO ROME
16 And when we come to Rome,
the centurion delivers the prisoners
to the arch warrior:
but allows Paulos to abide by himself
with a warrior to guard him.
PAULOS WITNESSES TO THE YAH HUDIYM
17 And so be it, after three days,
Paulos calls together
the preminent of the Yah Hudiym:
and when they come together,
he words to them, Men and brothers,
though I have done naught against the people
or customs of our fathers,
yet I am delivered — a prisoner from Yeru Shalem
into the hands of the Romans:
18 who, when they examined me,
willed to release me,
because there is no cause of death in me.
19 And when the Yah Hudiym contradicted,
I was compelled to call to the Kaisar
— not that I had somewhat to accuse my goyim.
20 So for this cause I beseech you,
to see you and to speak with you:
indeed, that for sake of the hope of Yisra El,
this fetter hangs around me.
21 And they say to him,
We neither received scribings
from Yah Hudah concerning you;
nor any of the brothers who came
evangelized or spoke any evil concerning you.
22 But we desire to hear from you, what you think:
for indeed as concerning this heresy,
we know it is contradicted every where.
23 And they ordain him a day;

ACTS 28

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

there came many to him into his lodging;
to whom he expounded and *testified* **witnessed**
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**,
persuading **convincing** them concerning *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
both out of the *law* **torah** of *Moses* **Mosheh**,
and out of the prophets, from **early** morning till evening.

24 And some *believed* **indeed confided**
the things **in those** which were *spoken* **worded**,
and some *believed* **not distrusted**.

PAULOS TURNS FROM THE YAH HUDIYM

25 And when they *agreed* **not disagreeing**
among themselves **with one another**,
they *departed* **released**,
after that *Paul* **Paulos** had spoken one *word* **rhema**,
Well spake the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**
by *Esaias* **through Yesha Yah** the prophet
unto our fathers,

26 Saying **Wording**, Go unto this people, and say,
Hearing ye shall hear,
and shall not *understand* **no way comprehend**;
and seeing ye shall see, and not *perceive* **no way see**:

27 For the heart of this people is *waxed* **gross calloused**,
and their ears *are* **dull burdensome** of hearing,
and their eyes have they *closed* **shut**;
lest **ever** they should see with their eyes,
and hear with their ears,
and *understand* **comprehend** with their heart,
and should *be* **converted turn around**,
and I should heal them.

Yesha Yah 6:9,10

THE SALVATION OF ELOHIM IS APOSTOLIZED TO THE GOYIM

28 **So** Be it known *therefore* unto you,
that the salvation of *God* **Elohim**
is *sent* **apostolized** unto the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
and that they *will* **shall** hear it.

29 And when he had said these words,
the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** departed,
and had *great reasoning* **much disputation**
among themselves.

PAULOS PREACHES AND DOCTRINATES THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF ELOHIM AND ADONAY YAH SHUA MESSIAH

30 And *Paul* **dwelt Paulos** **abode** two whole years
in his own *hired house* **rental**,
and received all that *came* **in entered** unto him,
31 Preaching the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**,
and *teaching* **doctrinating** those *things*
which concern
the Lord **Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
with all *confidence* **boldness**,
no man **forbidding him** **unhindered**.

ACTS 28

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and many come to him into his lodging;
to whom he expounds and witnesses
the sovereigndom of Elohim,
convincing them concerning Yah Shua,
both from the torah of Mosheh and from the prophets
from early morning until evening.

24 And some indeed confide in those that are worded
— and some distrust.

PAULOS TURNS FROM THE YAH HUDIYM

25 And disagreeing with one another,
they release after Paulos speaks one rhema,
Well spoke the Holy Spirit
through Yesha Yah the prophet,
to our fathers,

26 wording. Go to this people, and say,
Hearing you hear, and no way comprehend;
and seeing you see, and no way see:

27 for the heart of this people calloused,
and their ears burdensome of hearing,
and they shut their eyes;
lest ever they see with their eyes
and hear with their ears
and comprehend with their heart
and turn around
— and I heal them.

Yesha Yah 6:9,10

THE SALVATION OF ELOHIM IS APOSTOLIZED TO THE GOYIM

28 So be it known to you,
that the salvation of Elohim is apostolized to the goyim;
and they hear it.

29 And saying these words, the Yah Hudiym depart,
having much disputation among themselves.

PAULOS PREACHES AND DOCTRINATES THE SOVEREIGNDOM OF ELOHIM AND ADONAY YAH SHUA MESSIAH

30 And Paulos abides two whole years
in his own rental,
and receives all who enter to him,
31 preaching the sovereigndom of Elohim,
and doctrinating those
concerning Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
with all boldness — unhindered.

ROMANS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paul Paulos,
a servant of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*,
a called to be an apostle,
separated **set apart**
unto the *gospel evangelism of God Elohim*,
(Which he had *promised afore pre—evangelized*
by **through** his prophets in the holy scriptures,)
2 Concerning his Son *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*
our *Lord Adonay*,
which was made **became** of the *seed sperma* of David
according to the flesh;
4 And declared to be **decreed** the Son of *God Elohim*
with *power in dynamis*,
according to the spirit of holiness,
by the resurrection from the dead:
5 By **Through** whom
we have *received grace taken charisma* and apostleship,
for **unto** obedience to **of the faith trust**
among all *nations goyim*, for his name:
6 Among whom are ye also
the called of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*:
7 To all that be in Rome,
beloved of *God Elohim*, called to be *saints holy*:
Grace Charism to you and *peace shalom*
from *God Elohim* our Father,
and the *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*.
8 First **indeed**, I *thank eucharistize* my *God Elohim*
through *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah* for you all,
that your *faith trust* is *spoken of evangelized*
throughout in the whole world **cosmos**.
9 **PAULOS DESIRES TO VISIT ROME**
For *God Elohim* is my witness,
whom I *serve with liturgize in* my spirit
in the *gospel evangelism* of his Son,
that *without ceasing as unceasingly*
I make *mention remembrance* of you
always in my prayers;
10 Making *request Petitioning*,
if *by any means now at length somehow ever*
I might have a *prosperous journey prosper*
by **in** the will of *God Elohim* to come unto you.
11 **SPIRITUAL CHARISMA**
For I *long yearn* to see you,
that I may impart unto you some spiritual *gift charisma*,
to the *end ye may be established establish you*;
12 That is, that I may be *comforted consoled* together
with **in** you
by **through** the *mutual faith trust in one another*
both of you and me — yours and mine.
13 Now I *would will*
not have you ignorant that you not be unknowing, brethren,
that *oftentimes often*
I *purposed predetermined* to come unto you,
(but was *let forbidden* hitherto,)
that I might have some fruit among you also,
even **exactly** as among *other Gentiles the rest of the goyim*.
14 I am debtor
both to the *Greeks Hellenes*, and to the Barbarians;
both to the *wise*, and to the *unwise mindless*.
15 So **Thus**, as much as in me is,
I am *ready eager* to *preach the gospel evangelize*
to you that are at Rome also.
16 **THE DYNAMIS OF THE EVANGELISM**
For I am not ashamed
of the *gospel evangelism of Christ Messiah*:
for it is the *power dynamis of God Elohim* unto salvation
to every one that *believeth trusteth*;
both to the *Jew Yah Hudiy* first,
and also to the *Greek Hellene*.
17 For therein
is the *righteousness justness of God revealed Elohim unveiled*
from *faith trust to faith trust*:
exactly as it is *written scribed*,
The just shall live by *faith trust*.
Habakkuk 2:4

Habakkuk 2:4

IRREVERENCE AND INJUSTICE

18 For the wrath of *God Elohim*
is *revealed unveiled* from *heaven the heavens*

ROMANS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos, a servant of Yah Shua Messiah;
a called apostle
set apart to the evangelism of Elohim;
which he pre—evangelized
2 through his prophets in the holy scriptures;
3 concerning his Son Yah Shua Messiah our Adonay;
who, as to flesh,
became of the sperma of David;
4 and, as to spirit, of holiness
the decreed the Son of Elohim in dynamis
by the resurrection from the dead:
5 through whom we take charisma and apostleship
to obedience of the trust
among all goyim for his name:
6 among whom you are also
the called of Yah Shua Messiah:
7 To all in Rome,
beloved of Elohim, called holy:
charism and shalom to you
from Elohim our Father
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
8 First indeed, I eucharistize my Elohim
through Yah Shua Messiah for you all,
that your trust is evangelized in the whole cosmos.
9 **PAULOS DESIRES TO VISIT ROME**
For Elohim is my witness
— whom I liturgize in my spirit
in the evangelism of his Son;
as unceasingly
I make remembrance of you always in my prayers;
10 petitioning,
whenever I prosper in the will of Elohim
to come unto you.
11 **SPIRITUAL CHARISMA**
For I yearn to see you,
to impart some spiritual charisma to you
to establish you;
12 that is, to be consoled together in you
through the trust in one another — yours and mine.
13 And I will that you not be unknowing, brothers,
that I often predetermined to come to you;
— but was forbidden until now
that I also have some fruit among you,
exactly as among the rest of the goyim.
14 I am debtor
both to the Hellenes and to the Barbarians;
both to the wise and to the mindless.
15 Thus, as much as in me is,
I am also eager to evangelize to you
who are at Rome.
16 **THE DYNAMIS OF THE EVANGELISM**
For I am not ashamed
of the evangelism of Messiah:
for it is the dynamis of Elohim to salvation
to everyone who trusts
— both to the Yah Hudiy first and also to the Hellene.
17 For therein is the justness of Elohim unveiled
from trust to trust:
exactly as scribed,
The just live by trust.
Habakkuk 2:4
18 For the wrath of Elohim
is unveiled from the heavens

Habakkuk 2:4

IRREVERENCE AND INJUSTICE

ROMANS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19 against all *ungodliness* **irreverence**
and *unrighteousness* **injustice** of men **humanity**,
who hold the truth in *unrighteousness* **injustice**;
Because that which may be known of **God Elohim**
is manifest in them;
for **God Elohim** hath *shewed* **manifested** it unto them.
20 For the *invisible things* of him **his invisibles**
from the creation of the **world cosmos** are clearly seen,
being *understood* **comprehended**
by the *things that are made* **his doings**,
even **both** his eternal **power dynamis**
and **Godhead Divinity**;
so that they are *without excuse* **inexcusable**:
21 Because that, when they knew **God Elohim**,
they glorified him not as **God Elohim**,
neither were *thankful* **eucharistized**;
but became vain in their *imagination* **reasonings**,
and their *foolish* **uncomprehending** heart was darkened.
22 Professing themselves to be wise,
they became fools,
23 And changed the glory
of the incorruptible **God Elohim**
into an *image* **icon**
made like **likened** to corruptible *man* **humanity**,
and to *birds* **flyers**, and *fourfooted beasts* **quadrupeds**,
and *creeping things* **creepers**.
24 Wherefore **God Elohim** also
gave **surrendered** them up to *uncleanness* **impurity**
through in the lusts **pantings** of their own hearts,
to dishonour their own bodies
between among themselves:
25 Who *changed* **exchanged** the truth of **God Elohim**
into a lie,
and *worshipped* **venerated** and *served* **liturgized**
the creature *more than beyond* the Creator,
who is *blessed for ever* **eulogized unto the eons**.
Amen.

HOMOSEXUALITY

26 For this cause
God gave **Elohim surrendered** them up
unto *vile affections* **dishonourable passions**:
for even **both** their women **females**
did change **exchanged** the *natural use* **physical function**
into that which is against nature:
27 And likewise also the *men* **males**,
leaving **forsaking** the *natural use* **physical function**
of the woman **female**,
burned **inflamed** in their *lust* **craving** one toward another;
men with men **males among males**
working that which is *unseemly* **misbehaviour**,
and *receiving in* **taking unto** themselves
that *recompence* **retribution** of their *error* **seduction**
which was *meet* **necessary**.
28 And even **exactly** as they did not *like* **approve**
to *retain* **God regard** **Elohim** in their knowledge,
God gave **Elohim surrendered** them over
to a *reprobate* **disapproved** mind,
to do those *things* which are not *convenient* **becoming**;
29 Being filled with all *unrighteousness* **injustice**,
fornication **whoredom**, *wickedness* **evil**,
covetousness **avarice**, *maliciousness*;
full of envy, murder, *debate* **contention**,
deceit, *malignity* **mischievousness**; whisperers,
30 *Backbiters* **Slanderers**, *haters of God* **Elohim—haters**,
despiteful **insulters**, proud, *boasters* **braggarts**,
inventors of *evil things*,
disobedient **distrusting** to parents,
31 *Without understanding* **Uncomprehending**,
covenantbreakers **uncovenanted**,
without natural affection **selfish**,
implacable **disagreeable**, unmerciful:
32 Who knowing the judgment of **God Elohim**,
that they which *commit* **transact** such *things*
are worthy of death,
not only do the same,
but *have pleasure in* **think well of** them
that do **transact** them.

ROMANS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

against all irreverence and injustice of humanity
who hold the truth in injustice;
19 because what is known of Elohim
is manifest in them;
for Elohim manifests to them.
20 For his invisibles
from the creation of the cosmos are clearly seen
being comprehended by his doings
— both his eternal dynamis and divinity;
so that they are inexcusable:
21 because when they knew Elohim
they neither glorified him as Elohim,
nor eucharistized;
but became vain in their reasonings
and darkened their uncomprehending heart:
22 professing themselves to be wise
they became fools;
23 and changed the glory of the incorruptible Elohim
into an icon likened to corruptible humanity
and to flyers and quadrupeds and creepers.
24 So Elohim also surrendered them to impurity
in the pantings of their own hearts,
to dishonor their own bodies among themselves:
25 who exchanged the truth of Elohim into a lie
and venerated and liturgized the creature
beyond the Creator — who is eulogized to the eons.
Amen.

HOMOSEXUALITY

26 For this cause
Elohim surrendered them to dishonourable passions:
for both their females
exchanged the physical function
to that against nature:
27 and likewise also the males
forsaking the physical function of the female;
inflamed in their craving one toward another;
males among males working misbehavior;
and taking to themselves
that retribution of their seduction which is necessary.
28 And exactly as they approve
to not regard Elohim in knowledge,
Elohim surrenders them to a disapproved mind,
to do what is not becoming;
29 being filled with all injustice,
whoredom,
evil,
avarice,
maliciousness;
full of envy,
murder,
contention,
deceit,
mischievousness,
whisperers,
slanderers,
30 Elohim — haters,
insulters,
proud,
braggarts,
inventors of evil,
distrusting to parents,
31 uncomprehending,
uncovenanted,
selfish,
disagreeable,
unmercied:
32 who, knowing the judgment of Elohim,
that they, who transact such are worthy of death,
not only do the same
but think well of them who transact them.

ROMANS 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

2 Therefore thou art inexcusable, O *man* **humanity**,
 whosoever thou art that judgest:
 for wherein thou judgest another,
 thou condemnest thyself;
 2 for thou that judgest *doest* **transactest** the same *things*.
 But we *are sure* **perceive**
 that the judgment of *God* **Elohim** is according to truth
 against them which *commit* **transact** such *things*.
 3 And *thinkest* **reckonest** thou this, O *man* **humanity**,
 that judgest them which *do* **transact** such *things*,
 and doest the same,
 that thou shalt escape the judgment of *God* **Elohim**?
 4 Or *despisest* **disesteemest** thou
 the riches of his *goodness* **kindness**
 and *forbearance* **tolerance** and *longsuffering* **patience**;
 not knowing that the *goodness* **kindness** of *God* **Elohim**
 leadeth thee to repentance?
 5 But after thy hardness and *impenitent* **unrepentant** heart
 treasurest up unto thyself wrath
against **in** the day of wrath and *revelation* **apocalypse**
 of the *righteous* **just** judgment of *God* **Elohim**;
 6 Who *will render* **shall give back** to every *man* **each**
 according to his *deeds* **works**:
 7 To them who **indeed**
 by *patient continuance* **endurance** in *well doing* **good works**
 seek for glory and honour
 and *immortality* **incorruptibility**, eternal life:
 8 But unto them that are *contentious* **rivalrous**,
 and *do not obey* **indeed distrust** the truth,
 but obey *unrighteousness* **injustice**,
indignation **fury**, and wrath,
 9 Tribulation and *anguish* **distress**,
 upon every soul of *man* **doeth** **humanity**
that worketh evil,
both of the *Jew* **Yah Hudiy** first,
 and also of the *Gentile* **Hellene**;
 10 But glory, honour, and *peace* **shalom**,
 to every *man* **one** that worketh good,
both to the *Jew* **Yah Hudiy** first,
 and also to the *Gentile* **Hellene**:
 11 For there is no *respect of persons* **partiality**
 with *God* **Elohim**.
 12 For as many as have sinned without *law* **torah**
 shall also *perish* **destruct** without *law* **torah**:
 and as many as have sinned in *the law* **torah**
 shall be judged *by the law* **through torah**;
 13 (For not the hearers of the *law* **torah**
 are just *before God* **with Elohim**,
 but the doers of the *law* **torah** shall be justified.
 14 For when the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
 which have not the *law* **torah**,
 do by nature *the things* **those** contained in the *law* **torah**,
 these, having not the *law* **torah**,
 are a *law* **torah** unto themselves:
 15 Which *shew* **indicate** the work of the *law* **torah**
written **scribed** in their hearts,
 their conscience also *bearing witness* **co—witnessing**,
 and their *thoughts* **logic** *the mean while* accusing
 or else *excusing* **pleading between** one another;)
 16 In the day when *God* **Elohim**
 shall judge the secrets of *men* **humanity**
by Jesus Christ **through Yah Shua Messiah**
 according to my *gospel* **evangelism**.
THE YAH HUDIY AND THE TORAH
 17 Behold, thou art *called* a *Jew* **named Yah Hudiy**,
 and *restest* **reposest** in the *law* **torah**,
 and makest thy boast of *God* **in Elohim**,
 18 And knowest his will,
 and approvest *the things* **those**
 that are *more excellent* **thoroughly surpass**,
 being *instructed* **catechized** out of the *law* **torah**;
 19 And art confident
 that thou thyself art a guide of the blind,
 a light of them which are in darkness,
 20 An *instructor* **A pedagogue** of the *foolish* **thoughtless**,
 a *teacher* **doctor** of babes,
 which hast the form of knowledge
 and of the truth in the *law* **torah**.

ROMANS 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

THE JUST JUDGMENT OF ELOHIM

THE JUST JUDGMENT

2 So you are inexcusable, O humanity
 — all who judge:
 for wherein you judge another,
 you condemn yourself;
 for you who judge transact the same.
 2 And we perceive
 that the judgment of Elohim is according to truth
 against them who transact such.
 3 And reckon this, O humanity,
 who judges them who transact such
 and do the same,
 that you escape the judgment of Elohim?
 4 Or disesteem you the riches of his kindness
 and tolerance and patience;
 not knowing that the kindness of Elohim
 leads you to repentance?
 5 But according to your hardness
 and unrepentant heart
 you treasure to yourself wrath
 in the day of wrath and apocalypse
 of the just judgment of Elohim;
 6 who gives back to each according to his works:
 7 to them indeed, who by endurance in good works,
 seek for glory and honor
 and incorruptibility — eternal life:
 8 but to the rivalrous
 who indeed distrust the truth
 but obey injustice, fury and wrath,
 9 tribulation and distress
 upon every soul of humanity who works evil
 — both of the Yah Hudiy first and also of the Hellene;
 10 and glory, honor and shalom,
 to everyone who works good
 — both to the Yah Hudiy first and also to the Hellene:
 11 for there is no partiality with Elohim.
 12 For as many as sin without torah
 also destruct without torah:
 and as many as sin in torah
 are judged through torah;
 13 for not the hearers of the torah are just with Elohim,
 but the doers of the torah are justified.
 14 For when the goyim who have not the torah
 do by nature those contained in the torah,
 these, not having the torah, are a torah to themselves:
 15 which indicates the work of the torah
 scribed in their hearts;
 their conscience also co—witnessing
 and their logic accusing
 or else pleading between one another;
 16 in the day Elohim judges the secrets of humanity
 through Yah Shua Messiah
 according to my evangelism.

THE YAH HUDIY AND THE TORAH

17 Behold, you are named Yah Hudiy
 and repose in the torah
 and make your boast in Elohim,
 and know his will
 and approve those that thoroughly surpass,
 being catechized from the torah;
 18 and are confident
 that you yourself are a guide of the blind
 — a light of them in darkness,
 20 a pedagogue of the thoughtless,
 a doctor of babes
 having the form of knowledge
 and of the truth in the torah.

ROMANS 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

21 Thou therefore which *teachest* **doctrinatest** another,
teachest **doctrinatest** thou not thyself?
thou that preachest, *a man should not steal* **Steal not,**
dost thou steal **stealest thou?**

22 Thou that sayest **wordest,**
a man should not commit adultery **Thou shalt not adulterize,**
dost thou commit adultery **adulterize?**
thou that abhorrest idols,
dost thou commit sacrilege **strip priestal precincts?**

23 Thou that makest thy boast of *the law* **in torah,**
through *breaking* **transgressing** the *law* **torah**
dishonourest thou *God* **Elohim?**

24 For the name of *God* **Elohim**
is blasphemed among the *Gentiles* **goyim** through you,
exactly as *it is written* **scribed.**

25 For circumcision *verily profiteth* **indeed benefiteth,**
if whenever thou *keep* **transact** the *law* **torah:**
but *if whenever* thou *be a breaker of* **transgress** the *law* **torah,**
thy circumcision is *made* **become** uncircumcision.

26 Therefore *if whenever* the uncircumcision
keep **guard** the *righteousness* **judgment** of the *law* **torah,**
shall not **indeed** his uncircumcision
be *counted for* **reckoned unto** circumcision?
And *shall not* uncircumcision which is by nature,
if it fulfill **fulfilling/shalaming** the *law* **torah,** judge thee,
who *by* **through** the *letter* **scribing** and circumcision
dost transgress the *law* **torah?**

28 For he is not a *Jew* **Yah Hudiy,**
which is one *outwardly* **in manifestation;**
neither is that circumcision,
which is *outward* **in manifestation** in the flesh:

29 But he is a *Jew* **Yah Hudiy,**
which is one *inwardly* **in the secrets;**
and circumcision is that of the heart, in the spirit,
and not in the *letter* **scribing;**
whose *praise* **halal** is not of *men* **humanity,**
but of *God* **Elohim.**

THE SUPERABUNDANCE OF THE YAH HUDIY

3 What *advantage* **superabundance** then
hath the *Jew* **Yah Hudiy?**
or what *profit* **benefit** is *there of* circumcision?
2 Much every way **manner:** *chiefly* **first indeed,**
because that unto them
were *committed* **entrusted** the oracles of *God* **Elohim.**
3 For what if some *did not believe* **distrusted?**
shall their *unbelief* **distrust**
make the faith of God without effect
inactivate the trust of Elohim?

4 *God forbid* **So be it not:**
yea, let *God* **Elohim** be true, but every *man* **human** a liar;
exactly as *it is written* **scribed,**
That **ever** thou mightest be justified in thy *sayings* **words,**
and mightest *overcome* **triumph**
when thou art **in being** judged.

Psalm 51:4

OUR UNJUSTNESS

5 But if our *unrighteousness* **unjustness**
commend the *righteousness* **justness** of *God* **Elohim,**
what shall we say?
Is *God* **unrighteous** **Elohim unjust**
who *taketh vengeance* **bringeth wrath?**
(*I speak* **word** as a *man* **human**)
6 *God forbid* **So be it not:**
for then **otherwise**
how shall *God* **Elohim** judge the *world* **cosmos?**
7 For if the truth of *God* **Elohim**
hath more abounded through **superaboundeth** in my lie
unto his glory;
why yet am I also judged as a sinner?
8 And not *rather,*
(**exactly** as we be *slanderously reported* **blasphemed,**
and **exactly** as some *affirm* **say** that we *say* **word.**)
Let us do evil, that good may come?
whose *damnation* **judgment** is just.

9 What then? *are* **excel** we *better than they?*
No, *in no wise* **most certainly not:**
for we have *before proved* **previously accused**
both *Jews* **Yah Hudiyim** and *Gentiles* **Hellenes,**
that they are all under sin;

ROMANS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

21 So you who doctrinate another,
doctrinate you not yourself?
You who preach, Steal not, you — steal?
22 You who word, Adulterize not, you — adulterize?
You who abhor idols, you — strip priestal precincts?
23 You who boast in torah,
through transgressing the torah
dishonor you Elohim?
24 For through you
the name of Elohim is blasphemed among the goyim
exactly as scribed.

25 For circumcision indeed benefits,
whenever you transact the torah:
but whenever you transgress the torah,
your circumcision becomes uncircumcision.
26 So whenever the uncircumcision
guards the judgment of the torah,
is not indeed his uncircumcision
reckoned to circumcision?
27 And uncircumcision,
by nature fulfilling/shalaming the torah,
judges you,
who through the scribing and circumcision
transgress the torah.

28 For he is not a Yah Hudiy, manifestly;
nor circumcision in the flesh, manifestly:
29 But he is a Yah Hudiy, in the secrets;
and circumcision is of heart
— in spirit and not in scribing;
whose halal is not of humanity, but of Elohim.

THE SUPERABUNDANCE OF THE YAH HUDIY

3 So what superabundance has the Yah Hudiy?
Or what *is the* benefit of circumcision?
2 Much every manner:
first indeed,
because the oracles of Elohim were entrusted to them.
3 So what if some distrusted?
does their distrust inactivate the trust of Elohim?
4 So be it not:
yes — so be it: Elohim is true and every human a liar;
exactly as scribed,
That you ever be justified in your words
and triumph in being judged.

Psalm 51:4

OUR UNJUSTNESS

5 But if our unjustness
commends the justness of Elohim,
what say we?
Is Elohim, who brings wrath, unjust?
I word as a human.
6 So be it not:
otherwise how judges Elohim the cosmos?
7 For if the truth of Elohim superabounds to his glory
in my lie;
why am I yet also judged as a sinner?
8 And not, exactly as we are blasphemed,
and exactly as some say that we word,
Do evil, so that good comes?
— whose judgment is just.
9 So what? Excel we?
No, most certainly not:
for we previously accused
both Yah Hudiyim and Hellenes,
that they are all under sin;

ROMANS 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 Exactly As it is written scribed,
There is none *righteous just*, *no*, not *even* one:
11 There is none that *understandeth comprehendeth*,
there is none that seeketh after *God Elohim*.
12 They are all *gone out of the way deviated*,
they are *together simultaneously*
become unprofitable useless;
there is none that doeth *good kindness*, *no*, not *even* one.
Psalm 14:1—3
13 Their *throat larynx* is an open *sepulchre tomb*;
with their tongues they have *used deceit deceived*;
the *poison venom* of asps is under their lips:
14 Whose mouth is full of cursing and bitterness:
15 Their feet are *swift sharp* to *shed pour* blood:
16 *Destruction Crushing* and misery are in their ways:
17 And the way of *peace shalom* have they not known:
18 There is no *fear awe* of *God Elohim*
before in front of their eyes.
Psalms 5:9, 10:7, 36:1, 140:3, Yesha Yah 59:7,8
19 Now we know that
what things soever as much as the law saith torah wordeth,
it *saith speaketh* to them who are *under in* the *law torah*:
that every mouth may be *stopped sealed*,
and all the *world cosmos*
may become *guilty under judgment*
before God in front of Elohim.
20 Therefore *Because* by the *deeds works* of the *law torah*
there shall *no not* any flesh be justified in his sight:
for *by through* the *law torah* is the knowledge of sin.
JUSTNESS THROUGH TRUST
21 But now the *righteousness justness* of *God Elohim*
without apart from the *law torah* is manifested,
being witnessed by the *law torah* and the prophets;
22 Even the *righteousness justness* of *God Elohim*
which is by faith through trust
of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*
unto all and upon all them that *believe trust*:
for there is no *difference distinction*:
23 For all have sinned,
and *come short of failed* the glory of *God Elohim*;
24 Being justified *freely gratuitously* by his *grace charism*
through the redemption
that is in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*:
25 Whom *God Elohim* hath *set forth predetermined*
to be a *propitiation a kapporeth/an atonement*
through *faith trust* in his blood,
to *declare indicate* his *righteousness justness*
for the *remission passing over* of sins
that are *past have previously transpired*,
through *in* the *forbearance tolerance* of *God Elohim*;
26 To *declare, I say indicate*,
at this time in this present season
unto his righteousness justness:
that he might be just,
and the *justifier of justifying* him
which believeth by trust in Jesus Yah Shua.
27 Where is boasting then? It is excluded.
By *Through* what *law torah?* of works?
28 Nay *indeed*: but *by through* the *law torah* of *faith trust*.
Therefore we *conclude reckon*
that a *man human* is justified by *faith trust*
without apart from the *deeds works* of the *law torah*.
29 Or Is he the *God Elohim*
of the *Jews Yah Hudiym* only?
is he *indeed* not also of the *Gentiles goyim*?
Yes, of the *Gentiles goyim* also:
30 Seeing *Since* it is one *God Elohim*,
which shall justify the circumcision by *faith trust*,
and uncircumcision through *faith trust*.
31 Do we then *make void inactivate* the *law torah*
through *faith trust*?
God forbid So be it not:
yea *rather*, we *establish set* the *law torah*.

THE JUSTNESS OF ABRAHAM

4 What shall we say then that Abraham our father,
as pertaining to the flesh, hath found?
2 For if Abraham were justified by works,
he hath whereof to *glory boast*;
but not *before God toward Elohim*.

ROMANS 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 Exactly as scribed,
None is just — not even one:
11 none comprehend — none seek after Elohim.
12 They all deviate — simultaneously useless;
none doing kindness — not even one.
Psalm 14:1—3
13 Their larynx is an open tomb;
they deceive with their tongues;
the venom of asps is under their lips;
14 whose mouth is full of cursing and bitterness;
15 whose feet are sharp to pour blood;
16 crushing and misery are in their ways;
17 and the way of shalom they have not known;
18 there is no awe of Elohim in front of their eyes.
Psalms 5:9, 10:7, 36:1, 140:3, Yesha Yah 59:7,8
19 Now we know, as much as the torah words,
it speaks to those in the torah:
that every mouth be sealed
and all the cosmos become under judgment
in front of Elohim.
20 Because by the works of the torah
no flesh is justified in his sight:
for through the torah is the knowledge of sin.
JUSTNESS THROUGH TRUST
21 But now the justness of Elohim
manifests apart from the torah,
being witnessed by the torah and the prophets;
22 even the justness of Elohim
through trust of Yah Shua Messiah
to all and on all who trust
— for there is no distinction:
23 for all have sinned and failed the glory of Elohim;
24 being justified gratuitously by his charism
through the redemption in Messiah Yah Shua:
25 whom Elohim predetermined
to be a kapporeth/an atonement
through trust in his blood,
to indicate his justness for the passing over of sins
that previously transpired,
in the tolerance of Elohim;
26 to indicate in this present season to his justness:
for his being just
and justifies them who trust in Yah Shua.
27 So where is boasting? It is excluded.
Through what torah? Of works?
Indeed not — but through the torah of trust.
28 So we reckon that a human is justified by trust
apart from the works of the torah.
29 Or is he the Elohim of the Yah Hudiym only?
Is he indeed not also of the goyim?
Yes, also of the goyim:
30 Since one Elohim justifies the circumcision by trust
and uncircumcision through trust.
31 So inactivate we the torah through trust?
So be it not:
yes rather, we set torah.

THE JUSTNESS OF ABRAHAM

4 So what say we?
That Abraham our father found, as to flesh?
2 For if Abraham were justified by works
he has whereof to boast; but not toward Elohim.

ROMANS 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 For what *saith* **wordeth** the scripture?
Abraham *believed* God **trusted Elohim**,
and it was *counted* **reckoned** unto him
for *righteousness* **unto justness**.

Genesis 15:6

4 Now to him that worketh
is the reward not reckoned of *grace* **charism**, but of debt.

5 But to him that worketh not,
but *believeth* **trusteth** on him
that justifieth the *ungodly* **irreverent**,
his *faith* **trust**
is *counted for righteousness* **reckoned unto justness**.

6 Even **Exactly** as David also *describeth* **wordeth**
the blessedness of *the man* **humanity**,
unto whom
God imputeth righteousness **Elohim reckoneth justness**
without **apart from** works,
Saying, Blessed are they
whose *iniquities* **torah violations** are forgiven,
and whose sins are covered.

8 Blessed is the man to whom
the Lord will **Adonay shall not no way impute reckon** sin.

Psalm 32:1, 2

JUSTNESS VS ORDINANCES

9 *Cometh* this blessedness then
upon the circumcision *only*,
or upon the uncircumcision also?
for we say **word** that *faith* **trust** was reckoned to Abraham
for *righteousness* **unto justness**.

10 How was it then reckoned?
when he was being in circumcision,
or in uncircumcision?
Not in circumcision, but in uncircumcision.

11 And he *received* **took** the sign of circumcision,
a seal of the *righteousness* **justness**
of the *faith* **trust** which he had
yet through being **uncircumcised in uncircumcision**:
that he might be **unto his being** the father
of all them that *believe* **trust**,
though *they be not circumcised* **being in uncircumcision**;
that righteousness **unto justness**
might be imputed **being reckoned** unto them also:

12 And the father of circumcision
to them who are not of the circumcision only,
but who also *walk* **march** in the *steps* **tracks**
of that *faith* **trust** of our father Abraham,
which he had being *yet uncircumcised* **in uncircumcision**.

JUSTIFICATION VS THE TORAH

13 For the *promise* **pre—evangelism**,
that he should be the heir of the *world* **cosmos**,
was not to Abraham, or to his *seed* **sperma**,
through the *law* **torah**,
but through the *righteousness* **justness** of *faith* **trust**.

14 For if they which are of the *law* **torah** be heirs,
faith **trust** is *made void* **voided**,
and the *promise* **pre—evangelism**
made of none effect **inactivated**:

15 *Because* **Indeed** the *law* **torah** worketh wrath:
for where no *law* **torah** is, there is no transgression.

JUSTNESS THROUGH TRUST BY CHARISM

16 Therefore it is of *faith* **through trust**,
that it might be by *grace* **charism**;
to the end **unto** the *promise* **pre—evangelism**
might be sure **being stedfast** to all the *seed* **sperma**;
not to that *only* which is of the *law* **torah**,
but to that also which is of the *faith* **trust** of Abraham;
who is the father of us all,
(Exactly As *it is written* **scribed**,
I have *made* **placed** thee a father of many *nations* **goyim**.)
before **in front of** him whom he *believed* **trusted**,
even God **Elohim**,
who *quickeneth* **enliveneth** the dead,
and calleth those *things which be not* **not being**
as *though they were* **being**.

18 Who against hope *believed* **trusted** in hope,
that he might become the father of many *nations* **goyim**;
according to that which was *spoken* **said**,
So **Thus** shall thy *seed* **sperma** be.

Genesis 15:5, 17:5

ROMANS 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 For what words the scripture?
Abraham trusted Elohim
and it reckoned to him to justness.

Genesis 15:6

4 And to him who works,
the reward is not reckoned as to charism,
but as to debt:
and to him who works not
but trusts on him who justifies the irreverent,
his trust is reckoned to justness.

6 Exactly as David also words
of the blessedness of humanity,
to whom Elohim reckons justness apart from works,
Blessed — they whose torah violations are forgiven
and whose sins are covered.

7 Blessed — the man
to whom Adonay no way reckons sin.

Psalm 32:1, 2

JUSTNESS VS ORDINANCES

9 So this blessedness, *is* it on the circumcised?
Or also on the uncircumcised?
For we word
that trust was reckoned to Abraham to justness.

10 So how was it reckoned?
Being in circumcision?
Or in uncircumcision?
Not in circumcision but in uncircumcision.

11 And he took the sign of circumcision
— a seal of the justness of the trust he had
through being in uncircumcision:
to his being the father of all who trust,
though being in uncircumcision;
to justness also being reckoned to them:
and the father of circumcision to them,
not only of the circumcision,
but also to them who march in the tracks of the trust
of our father Abraham, being in uncircumcision.

JUSTIFICATION VS THE TORAH

13 For the pre—evangelism he had,
being the heir of the cosmos,
was not to Abraham or his sperma through the torah,
but through the justness of trust.
For if they of the torah are heirs
trust is voided;
and the pre—evangelism inactivated:
indeed the torah works wrath:
for where no torah is, no transgression is.

JUSTNESS THROUGH TRUST BY CHARISM

16 So as through trust, thus as to charism;
to the pre—evangelism
being steadfast to all the sperma;
not only to them of the torah,
but also to them of the trust of Abraham
— who is the father of us all:
exactly as scribed,
I placed you a father of many goyim,
in front of him whom he trusted — Elohim,
who enlivens the dead
and calls those not being, as being:
who against hope trusted in hope,
being the father of many goyim;
according to what was said,
Thus be your sperma.

Genesis 15:5, 17:5

ROMANS 4, 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

19 And being not *weak frail* in *faith the trust*,
he considered not his own body
now dead already deadened,
when he was about an *being some* hundred years old,
neither yet
the *deadness necrosis* of Sarah's *womb matrix*:
20 He *staggered doubted* not
at *unto* the *promise pre—evangelism* of *God Elohim*
through *unbelief trustlessness*;
but was *strong dynamized* in *faith trust*,
giving glory to *God Elohim*;
21 And being fully *persuaded assured* that,
what he had *promised pre—evangelized*,
he was able also to *perform do*.
22 And therefore it was *imputed reckoned* to him
for *righteousness unto justness*.
23 Now it was not *written scribed* for his sake alone,
that it was *imputed reckoned* to him;
24 But for us also,
to whom it shall be *imputed reckoned*,
if we *believe trust* on him
that raised up *Jesus Yah Shua* our *Lord Adonay*
from the dead;
25 Who was delivered for our *offences downfalls*,
and was raised again for our justification.

THE RESULT OF JUSTNESS

5 Therefore being justified by *faith trust*,
we have *peace shalom* with *God Elohim*
through our *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*:
2 By *Through* whom also we have access
by *trust faith* into this *grace charism* wherein we stand,
and *rejoice boast* in hope of the glory of *God Elohim*.
3 And not only *so*, but we *glory boast* in tribulations also:
knowing that tribulation worketh *patience endurance*;
4 And *patience endurance, experience proof*;
and *experience proof, hope*:
5 And hope *maketh shameth* not *ashamed*;
because the love of *God Elohim*
is *shed abroad poured* in our hearts
by *through* the Holy *Ghost Spirit* which is given unto us.
6 For when we were yet *without strength we being frail*,
in *due time season*
Christ Messiah died for the *ungodly irreverent*.
7 For *scarcely difficultly*
for a *righteous man will one the just shall some die*:
yet peradventure indeed perhaps
for a *good man the good*
some *would should* even dare to die.
8 But *God Elohim* commendeth his love *toward unto* us,
in that, *while* we were *being* yet sinners,
Christ Messiah died for us.
9 Much more then,
being now having been justified by *in* his blood,
we shall be saved from wrath through him.
10 For if, *when* we were *being* enemies,
we were reconciled to *God Elohim*
by *through* the death of his Son,
much more, being reconciled,
we shall be saved by *in* his life.
11 And not only *so*,
but we also *joy boast* in *God Elohim*
through our *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*,
by *through* whom we have now
received *taken* the *atonement reconciliation*.

THE ORIGIN OF SIN

12 Wherefore, *exactly* as by *through* one *man human*
sin entered into the *world cosmos*,
and death by *through* sin;
and *so thus* death passed *upon unto* all *men humanity*,
for that all have sinned:
13 (For until the *law torah* sin was in the *world cosmos*:
but sin is not *imputed reckoned*
when there is *being no law torah*.
14 Nevertheless *Rather*
death reigned from Adam to *Moses Mosheh*,
even over them that had not sinned
after the *similitude likeness* of Adam's transgression,
who is the *figure type* of *him the one*
that was *about to come be*.

ROMANS 4, 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

19 And not being frail in the trust,
he neither considered his own body
— already necrotized
— being some hundred years old,
nor yet the necrosis of the matrix of Sarah:
20 nor doubted he the pre—evangelism of Elohim
through trustlessness;
but dynamized in trust, giving glory to Elohim;
21 and being fully assured
that what he pre—evangelized
he was also able to do:
22 and so it was reckoned to him to justness.
23 And it was not scribed for his sake alone
that it was reckoned to him;
24 but also for us, to whom it is about to be reckoned
— to us who trust on him
who raised Yah Shua our Adonay from the dead:
25 who was delivered for our downfalls
and raised again for our justification.

THE RESULT OF JUSTNESS

5 So being justified by trust,
we have shalom with Elohim
through our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah:
2 through whom we also have access by trust
into this charism wherein we stand
and boast in hope of the glory of Elohim.
3 And not only,
but we also boast in tribulations:
knowing that tribulation works endurance;
4 and endurance, proof;
and proof, hope:
5 and hope never shames;
because the love of Elohim pours in our hearts
through the Holy Spirit who is given to us.
6 For in our frailty, in season,
Messiah died for the irreverent.
7 For difficultly, for the just some die:
indeed perhaps,
for the good, some even dare to die.
8 And Elohim commends his love to us,
in that we, still being sinners, Messiah died for us.
9 So much more, being justified in his blood,
through him we are saved from wrath.
10 For if, being enemies, we are reconciled to Elohim
through the death of his Son,
much more, being reconciled,
we are saved in his life.
11 And not only, but we also boast in Elohim
through our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
through whom we now take the reconciliation.

THE ORIGIN OF SIN

12 So, exactly as through one human,
sin entered into the cosmos,
and death through sin,
and thus death passed to all humanity
— for all sinned:
13 for until the torah, sin was in the cosmos:
but there being no torah, sin reckoned not.
14 Rather death reigned from Adam to Mosheh,
even over them who sinned not
after the likeness of the transgression of Adam
— who is the type of the one about to be.

ROMANS 5, 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

JUSTIFICATION AND LIFE THROUGH YAH SHUA MESSIAH

15 But not as the *offence* **downfall**,
so **thus** also is the *free gift* **charisma**.
For if through the *offence* **downfall** of one many be dead,
much more the *grace* **charism** of *God Elohim*,
and the *gift by grace* **gratuity in charism**,
which is by one *man* **human**,
Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah
hath *abounded* **superabounded** unto many.
16 And not as *it was by* **through** one that sinned,
so is the *gift* **gratuity**:
for the judgment **indeed** was by one
to condemnation,
but the *free gift* **charisma** is of many *offences* **downfalls**
unto justification.
17 For if by one man's *offence* **downfall**
death reigned *by* **through** one;
much more they which *receive* **take**
abundance a superabundance of *grace* **charism**
and of the *gift* **gratuity** of *righteousness* **justness**
shall reign in life *by* **through** one,
Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah.)
18 Therefore as *by the offence of* **through** one
judgment came upon **downfall to all men** **humanity**
is to condemnation;
even so **thus** *by the righteousness of* **through** one
the free gift **justification**
came upon all men to all humanity
is unto justification of life.
19 For **exactly** as
by **through** one *man's* **human's** disobedience
many were *made* **seated** sinners,
so *by* **thus** **through** the obedience of one
shall many be *made* **righteous** **seated just**.
20 Moreover the *law* **torah** *surreptitiously* entered,
that the *offence* **downfall** might *abound* **superabound**.
But where sin *abounded* **superabounded**,
grace **charism**
did much more abound **exceedingly superabounded**:
21 That **exactly** as sin hath reigned *unto in* death,
even so **thus** might *grace* **charism** reign
through *righteousness* **justness** unto eternal life
by Jesus Christ **through Yah Shua Messiah** our *Lord Adonay*.
DEAD TO SIN, ALIVE IN THE MESSIAH
6 What shall we say then?
shall we *continue* **abide** in sin,
that *grace* **charism** may *abound* **superabound**?
2 *God forbid* **So be it not**.
How shall we that are dead to sin,
still live *any longer* therein?
3 **Or** Know ye not, that so many of us
as were baptized into *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*
were baptized into his death?
4 Therefore we are *buried* **co—buried** with him
by **through** baptism into death:
that *like* **exactly** as *Christ Messiah*
was raised *up* from the dead
by **through** the glory of the Father,
even so **thus** we also should walk in newness of life.
5 For if we have been *planted together* **co—planted**
in the likeness of his death,
we shall be also
in the likeness **rather** of his resurrection:
6 Knowing this,
that our old *man* **humanity** is *crucified with him* **co—staked**,
that the body of sin might be *destroyed* **inactivated**,
so that *henceforth* we should **not** **longer** serve sin.
7 For he that is dead is *freed* **justified** from sin.
8 Now if we be dead with *Christ Messiah*,
we *believe* **trust** that we shall also *live* **co—live** with him:
9 Knowing that *Christ Messiah* being raised from the dead
dieth *no more* **not still**;
death *hath no more dominion over*
shall not still overlord him.
10 For in that he died, he died unto sin once:
but in that he liveth, he liveth unto *God* **Elohim**.
11 *Likewise* **Thus** reckon ye also yourselves
to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto *God* **Elohim**
through in Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah our *Lord Adonay*.

ROMANS 5, 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

JUSTIFICATION AND LIFE THROUGH YAH SHUA MESSIAH

15 But not as the downfall, thus also the charisma.
For if through the downfall of one many die,
much more the charism of Elohim
and the gratuity in charism
of one human, Yah Shua Messiah
superabounds to many.
16 And not as through one who sinned,
thus the gratuity:
for the judgment indeed was by one
to condemnation,
but the charisma *is* of many downfalls
to justification.
17 For if by the downfall of one
death reigns through one;
much more they
who take a superabundance of charism
and of the gratuity of justness
reign in life through one, Yah Shua Messiah.
18 Thus as through one downfall
all humanity is unto condemnation;
even thus through one justification
all humanity is unto justification of life.
19 For exactly
as through the disobedience of one human
many were seated sinners,
thus through the obedience of one
many are seated just.
20 And the torah entered surreptitiously,
so that the downfall superabound:
and where sin superabounded,
charism exceedingly superabounded:
so that exactly as sin reigned in death,
even thus charism reigns through justness
unto eternal life
through Yah Shua Messiah our Adonay.
DEAD TO SIN, ALIVE IN THE MESSIAH
6 So what say we?
Abide we in sin that charism superabound?
2 So be it not!
3 We who died to sin, how live we still therein?
Or Know you not,
as many of us
as are baptized into Yah Shua Messiah
are baptized to his death?
4 So we are co—buried with him
through baptism into death:
so that, exactly as Messiah rose from the dead
through the glory of the Father,
even thus we also walk in newness of life.
5 For if we become co—planted
in the likeness of his death,
thus we also become
rather of his resurrection:
6 Knowing this,
that our old humanity is co—staked
to inactivate the body of sin
so that we no longer serve sin.
7 For whoever dies is justified from the sin.
8 And if we die with Messiah,
we trust to also co—live with him:
9 knowing that Messiah, raised from the dead,
dies no more;
death overlords him no more.
10 For in that he died, he died to sin once:
but in that he lives, he lives to Elohim.
11 Thus indeed, also reckon yourselves dead to sin,
and living to Elohim
in Yah Shua Messiah our Adonay.

ROMANS 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

PRESENT YOUR MEMBERS AS WEAPONS OF JUSTNESS

12 Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body,
that ye should obey it in the *lusts* **pantings** thereof.

13 Neither *yield* **present** ye your members
as *instruments* **weapons** of *unrighteousness* **injustice**
unto sin:
but yield yourselves unto *God* **Elohim**,
as *those that are* alive from the dead,
and your members
as *instruments* **weapons** of *righteousness* **justness**
unto *God* **Elohim**.

14 For sin shall not *have dominion over* **overlord** you:
for ye are not under the *law* **torah**,
but under *grace* **charism**.

15 What then? shall we sin,
because we are not under the *law* **torah**,
but under *grace* **charism**?
God forbid **So be it not**.

16 Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves
servants to *obey* **to obedience**,
his servants ye are to whom ye obey;
whether **either indeed** of sin unto death,
or of obedience unto *righteousness* **justness**?

17 But *God be thanked* **charism to Elohim**,
that ye were the servants of sin,
but ye have obeyed from the heart
that *form* **type** of doctrine
which was **wherein ye were** delivered you.

18 Being then *made free* **liberated** from sin,
ye became *the servants of righteousness* **subservient to justness**.

19 I *speak after the manner of men* **word as a human**
because of the *infirmity* **frailty** of your flesh:
for **exactly** as ye have *yielded* **presented** your members
servants to *uncleanness* **impurity**
and to *iniquity* **torah violations**
unto *iniquity* **torah violations**;
even so **thus** now *yield* **present** your members
servants to *righteousness* **justness** unto holiness.

20 For when ye were the servants of sin,
ye were *free* **liberated** from *righteousness* **justness**.

21 What fruit had ye then
in those *things* whereof ye are now ashamed?
for the *end* **completion/shalom** of those *things* is death.

22 But now being *made free* **liberated** from sin,
and become *servants* **subservient to God Elohim**,
ye have your fruit unto holiness,
and the *end* **completion/shalom**, *everlasting* **eternal** life.

23 For the wages of sin is death;
but the *gift* **charisma** of *God Elohim* is eternal life
through Jesus **in Yah Shua Messiah** our *Lord* **Adonay**.

ANALOGY OF MARRIAGE

7 **Or** Know ye not, brethren,
(for I speak to them that know the *law* **torah**),
how that the *law* **torah**
hath dominion over a man **overlordeth a human**
as long **time** as he liveth?

2 For the woman *which hath an husband* **under man**
is bound by the *law* **torah** to her *husband* **man**
so long as he liveth;
but *if whenever* the *husband* **man** be dead,
she is *loosed* **inactivated**
from the *law* **torah** of her *husband* **man**.

3 *So then if whenever*,
while her *husband* **man** liveth
she *be married to another man* **becometh another man's**,
she shall be *called* **oracled as** an adulteress:
but *if her husband* **whenever her man** be dead,
she is *free* **liberated** from that *law* **torah**;
so that she is no adulteress,
though she *be married to* **become** another *man* **man's**.

4 *Wherefore* **So**, my brethren,
ye also are *become dead* **deathified** to the *law* **torah**
by *through* the body of *Christ* **the Messiah**;
that ye should be *married to another* **another's**,
even to him who is raised from the dead,
that we should *bring forth* **bear** fruit unto *God* **Elohim**.

5 For when we were in the flesh,
the *motions* **sufferings** of sins,
which were by *through* the *law* **torah**,

ROMANS 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

PRESENT YOUR MEMBERS AS WEAPONS OF JUSTNESS

12 So neither let sin reign in your mortal body
to obey its pantings:
nor present your members
as weapons of injustice to sin:
but yield yourselves to Elohim,
as living from the dead
and your members as weapons of justness to Elohim.

14 For sin overlords you not:
for you are not under the torah, but under charism.

15 So what?
Sin we, because we are not under the torah,
but under charism?
So be it not.

16 Know you not,
that to whomever you yield yourselves
as servants to obedience,
you are servants to whomever you obey
— indeed either of sin to death
or of obedience to justness?

17 And charism to Elohim,
that you, having been the servants of sin,
and from the heart
you obeyed that type of doctrine
wherein you were delivered.

18 And so being liberated from sin,
you became subservient to justness.

19 I word as a human
because of the frailty of your flesh:
for exactly as you presented your members
as servants to impurity
and to torah violations to torah violations;
thus even now
present your members servants to justness
— to holiness.

20 For when you were servants of sin,
you were liberated from justness.
So what fruit had you
in those whereof you are now ashamed?
For the completion/shalom of those is death.

22 And now, being liberated from sin
and being subservient to Elohim,
you have your fruit to holiness
and the completion/shalom — eternal life.
For the wages of the sin is death;
but the charisma of Elohim is eternal life
in Yah Shua Messiah our Adonay.

ANALOGY OF MARRIAGE

7 **Or** know you not, brothers,
for I speak to them who know the torah,
how that the torah overlords a human
as long time as he lives?

2 For the woman under man
is bound to her man by the torah;
but whenever the man dies,
she is inactivated from the torah of her man.

3 *So whenever*,
while her man lives she becomes to another man,
she is oracled as an adulteress:
and whenever her man dies,
she is liberated from that torah;
so that she is no adulteress,
though she becomes to another man.

4 *So my brothers*,
you also are deathified to the torah
through the body of the Messiah;
to become to another
— to him who rose from the dead,
so that we bear fruit to Elohim.

5 For when we were in the flesh,
the sufferings of sins, through the torah,

ROMANS 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 *did work energized* in our members
to bring forth bear fruit unto death.
But now
we are delivered inactivated from the law torah,
that being dead wherein we were held;
so that we should serve in newness of spirit,
and not in the oldness antiquity of the letter scribing.

7 What shall we say then?
Is the law torah sin?
God forbid So be it not.
Nay Rather, I had not known sin,
but by except through the law torah:
for I had not known lust panting,
except the law torah had said worded,
Thou shalt not covet pant.

8 But sin, taking occasion opportunity
by through the commandment misvah,
wrought worked in me
all manner of concupiscence panting.
For without apart from the law torah
sin was dead.
For I was alive
without apart from the law once torah formerly:
but when the commandment misvah came,
sin revived relived, and I died.

10 And the commandment misvah,
which was ordained to unto life,
I found to be this unto death.

11 For sin, taking occasion opportunity
by through the commandment misvah,
deceived seduced me,
and by through it slew slaughtered me.

12 Wherefore So indeed the law torah is holy,
and the commandment misvah holy, and just, and good.

TWO NATURES UNDER THE TORAH

13 Was then that which is good
made become death unto me?
God forbid So be it not.
But sin, that it might appear be manifest as sin,
working death in me by through that which is good;
that sin by through the commandment misvah
might become exceeding sinful.

14 For we know that the law torah is spiritual:
but I am carnal fleshly, sold under sin.

15 For that which I do work, I allow know not:
for what I would will, that do transact I not;
but what I hate, that do I.

16 If then I do that which I would not will,
I consent unto assent with the law torah that it is good.
Now then it is no more not still I that do work it,
but sin that dwelleth in me.

18 For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,)
dwelleth no good thing:
for to will is present with me;
but how to perform to work that which is good
I find not.

19 For the good that I would will, I do not:
but the evil which I would not will, that I do transact.

20 Now if I do that I would not will,
it is no more not still I that do work it,
but sin that dwelleth in me.

21 I find then a law the torah, that,
when I would will to do good, evil is present with me.

22 For I delight in the law torah of God Elohim
after the inward man human:

23 But I see another law torah in my members,
warring against the law torah of my mind,
and bringing capturing me into captivity
to the law torah of sin which is being in my members.

24 O wretched man that I am Miserable human — I!
who shall deliver rescue me from the body of this death?
I thank God eucharistize Elohim
through Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah our Lord Adonay.
So Therefore then with the mind
I myself indeed serve the law torah of God Elohim;
but with the flesh the law torah of sin.

ROMANS 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

energized in our members to bear fruit to death.

6 But now we are inactivated from the torah,
being dead wherein we were held;
to serve in newness of spirit
and not in the antiquity of the scribing.

7 So what say we? Is the torah sin?
So be it not.
Rather, I knew not sin, except through the torah:
nor knew I panting, except the torah worded,
Pant not.

8 And the sin, taking opportunity through the misvah,
worked all panting in me.
For apart from the torah, sin is dead.

9 For formerly apart from the torah, I lived:
but when the misvah came, sin relived and I died.
And the misvah for life, I found for death.

10 For sin, taking opportunity through the misvah,
seduced me
and thereby slaughtered me.
So indeed the torah is holy
and the misvah holy and just and good.

TWO NATURES UNDER THE TORAH

13 So has the good become my death?
So be it not.
But sin, manifest as sin,
to work death in me through the good;
so that through the misvah
sin becomes exceeding sinful.

14 For we know the torah is spiritual:
and I am fleshly, sold under sin.

15 For what I work, I know not:
for what I will, I transact not;
but what I hate, I do.
So if I do what I not will,
I assent with the torah that it is good.

17 So now it is not still I who work it,
but the sin dwelling in me.

18 For I know that in me, that is, in my flesh,
dwells no good:
for to will is present with me;
but to work good, I find not.
For the good I will, I do not:
but the evil I do not will, I transact.

20 And if I do what I not will,
it is not still I who works,
but sin that dwells in me.

21 So I find the torah, that,
when I will to do good, evil is present with me.
For I delight in the torah of Elohim
after the inward human:
and I see another torah in my members,
warring against the torah of my mind
and capturing me to the torah of sin
being in my members.

24 Miserable human — I!
Who rescues me from the body of this death?
I eucharistize Elohim
through Yah Shua Messiah our Adonay.
So indeed with the mind I serve the torah of Elohim;
and with the flesh, the torah of sin.

ROMANS 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE TORAH OF THE SPIRIT; LIFE IN THE MESSIAH

8 There is therefore now no condemnation to them
 which are in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*,
*who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit**.
 *not in mss; but see 8:4

2 For the law **torah** of the Spirit of life
 in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*
 hath made **liberated** me free
 from the law **torah** of sin and death.

3 For what the law could not do
the torah, in being incapable,
 in that it was weak **frail** through the flesh,
 God **Elohim** sending his own Son
 in the likeness of *sinful flesh* **the flesh of sin**, and for sin,
 condemned sin in the flesh:

4 That the *righteousness* **judgment** of the law **torah**
 might be fulfilled/**shalamed** in us,
 who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

IN FLESH VS IN SPIRIT

5 For they *that are* **being** after the flesh
do mind the things **think** of the flesh;
 but they *that are* after the Spirit
the things of the Spirit.

6 For *to be carnally minded* **the thought of the flesh**
 is death;
 but *to be spiritually minded* **the thought of the spirit**
 is life and *peace* **shalom**.

7 Because the *carnal mind* **thought of the flesh**
 is enmity *against God* **unto Elohim**:
 for it is not *subject* **subjugated**
 to the law **torah** of God **Elohim**,
 neither indeed can be.

8 So then they *that are in the* **being in** flesh
 cannot please God **Elohim**.

9 But ye are not in *the* flesh, but in *the* Spirit,
if so be that **whenever** the Spirit of God **Elohim** dwell in you.
 Now if *any man* **one**
 have not the Spirit of *Christ* **Messiah**,
 he is none of his.

10 And if *Christ* **Messiah** be in you,
 the body is **indeed** dead because of sin;
 but the Spirit *is* life because of *righteousness* **justness**.

11 But if the Spirit of him
 that raised up *Jesus* **Yah Shua** from the dead
 dwell in you,
 he that raised up *Christ* **Messiah** from the dead
 shall also *quicken* **enliven** your mortal bodies
 by **through** his Spirit that dwelleth in you.

12 *Therefore*, **So then**, brethren, we are debtors,
 not to the flesh, to live after the flesh.

13 For if ye live after the flesh, ye shall **be about to die**:
 but if ye through *the* Spirit
do mortify **deathify** the *deeds* **functions** of the body,
 ye shall live.

14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God **Elohim**,
 they are the sons of God **Elohim**.

THE SPIRIT OF SONSHIP

15 For ye have not *received* **taken**
 the spirit of *bondage* **servitude** again to *fear* **awe**;
 but ye have *received* **taken** the Spirit of *adoption* **sonship**,
whereby **wherein** we cry, Abba, Father.

16 The Spirit *itself* **selfsame** Spirit
 beareth witness **co—witnesseth** with our spirit,
 that we are the children of God **Elohim**:

17 And if children, then heirs; heirs of God **Elohim**,
 and *joint—heirs* **co—heirs indeed** with *Christ* **Messiah**;
if so be that **whenever** we suffer with him **co—suffer**,
 that we may be also *glorified together* **co—glorified**.

18 For I reckon
 that the sufferings of this present *time* **season**
 are not worthy *to be compared* with the glory
which shall **about to be revealed** **unveiled*** in us.

*verb of apocalypse

19 For the *earnest expectation* **intense anticipation**
 of the creature
 waiteth for **awaiteth** the *manifestation* **apocalypse**
 of the sons of God **Elohim**.

20 For the creature was *made* **subject** **subjugated** to vanity,
 not *willingly* **voluntarily**,

ROMANS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE TORAH OF THE SPIRIT; LIFE IN THE MESSIAH

8 So there is now no condemnation to them
 who are in Messiah Yah Shua.

*not in mss; but see 8:4

2 For the torah of the Spirit of life in Messiah Yah Shua
 liberates me from the torah of sin and death.

3 For the torah, being incapable,
 — frail through the flesh,
 Elohim sending his own Son
 in the likeness of the flesh of sin;
 and for sin, condemned the sin in the flesh:

4 to fulfill/shalom the judgment of the torah in us,
 who walk not after flesh, but after Spirit.

IN FLESH VS IN SPIRIT

5 For they being after flesh, think of the flesh;
 and they after Spirit, of the Spirit.

6 For the thought of the flesh, *is* death;
 but the thought of the spirit, life and shalom.

7 Because the thought of the flesh is enmity to Elohim:
 for it neither subjugates to the torah of Elohim
 nor indeed can.

8 So they who are in flesh, cannot please Elohim.

9 And you are not in flesh, but in Spirit
 whenever the Spirit of Elohim dwell in you.
 and if one has not the Spirit of Messiah,
 he is none of his.

10 And if Messiah *is* in you,
 the body *is* indeed dead because of sin;
 and the Spirit *is* life because of justness.

11 But if the Spirit of him
 who raised Yah Shua from the dead dwells in you,
 he who raised Messiah from the dead
 also enlivens your mortal bodies
 through his Spirit dwelling in you.

12 So then brothers, we are debtors,
 not to the flesh — to live after the flesh.

13 For if you live after flesh, you are about to die:
 but if you, through Spirit,
 deathify the functions of the body, you live.

14 For as many as are led by Spirit of Elohim,
 are the sons of Elohim.

THE SPIRIT OF SONSHIP

15 For you take not
 the spirit of servitude again to awe;
 but you take the Spirit of sonship,
 wherein we cry, Abba, Father.

16 The self—same Spirit
 co—witnesses with our spirit,
 that we are the children of Elohim:
 and if children, then heirs
 — heirs of Elohim
 — and indeed co—heirs with Messiah;
 whenever we co—suffer to also co—glorify.

18 For I reckon
 that the sufferings of this present season
 are not worthy
 of the glory about to be unveiled* in us.

*verb of apocalypse

19 For the intense anticipation of the creature
 awaits the apocalypse of the sons of Elohim.

20 For the creature subjugated to vanity
 — not voluntarily

ROMANS 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

21 but by reason of **through** him
who hath subjected the same **subjugated** in hope,
Because the creature itself also
shall be *delivered* **liberated**
from the *bondage* **servitude** of corruption
into the *glorious* liberty **of the glory**
of the children of *God* **Elohim**.
22 For we know that the whole creation
groaneth **co—sigheth** and *travaileth* **co—travaileth**
in pain *together* until now.
23 And not only *they*, but ourselves also,
which have the *firstfruits* **firstlings** of the Spirit,
even we ourselves *groan* *within* **sigh among** ourselves,
waiting for **awaiting** the *adoption* **sonship**,
to wit, the redemption of our body.
24 For we are saved by hope:
but hope that is seen is not hope:
for what a *man* **one** seeth,
why *doth* **shall** he yet hope *for*?
25 But if we hope for that we see not,
then *do* we
with patience wait for it **through endurance** await.
THE INTERCESSORY MINISTRY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT
26 Likewise the Spirit also *helpeth* **co—helpeth**
our *infirmities* **frailties**:
for we know not what we should pray for
according as we *ought* **must**:
but the Spirit *itself*
maketh *intercession* **intercedeth exceedingly** for us
with groanings which cannot be uttered **unutterable sighs**.
27 And he that searcheth the hearts
knoweth what is the *mind* **thought** of the Spirit,
because he *maketh* *intercession* **intercedeth**
for the *saints* **holy**
according to the will of *God* **Elohim**.
28 And we know that all *things*
work together for **co—work unto** good
to them that love *God* **Elohim**,
to them *who are* **being** the called
according to his *purpose* **prothesis**.
THE SEQUENCE OF THE PROTECTION OF ELOHIM
29 For whom he *did foreknow* **foreknew**,
he also *did predestinate* **predetermined**
to be conformed to the *image* **icon** of his Son,
that he might be **unto his being**
the firstborn among many brethren.
30 Moreover
whom he *did predestinate* **predetermined**,
them he also called:
and whom he called, them he also justified:
and whom he justified, them he also glorified.
NINE QUESTIONS, DIRECT AND RHETORICAL
31 What shall we then say to these *things*?
If *God* **Elohim** be for us, who *can be* against us?
32 He that **yet indeed** spared not his own Son,
but delivered him up for us all,
how **indeed** shall he not with him also
freely give us all things **grant us charism with all**?
33 Who shall *lay any thing* to the charge of **accuse**
God's elect **Elohim's select**?
It is God that *justifieth*. **Elohim that justifieth**?
34 Who is he that condemneth?
It is Christ **Messiah** that died,
yea rather, that is risen again,
who is even at the right *hand* of *God* **Elohim**,
who also *maketh* *intercession* for us. **intercedeth for us**?
35 Who shall separate us
from the love of *Christ* **the Messiah**?
shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution,
or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?
36 **Exactly** As *it is written* **scribed**,
For thy sake we are *killed* **deathified** all the day long;
we are *accounted* **reckoned** as sheep for the slaughter.
37 *Nay* **Rather**, in all these *things*
we are *more than conquerors* **exceedingly triumphant**
through him that loved us.

Psalms 44:22

ROMANS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

but through him who subjugated in hope,
21 so that the creature itself also liberates
from the servitude of corruption
into the liberty of the glory of the children of Elohim.
22 For we know that all creation
23 co—sighs and co—travails in pain until now:
and not only *they*, but we also,
who have the firstlings of the Spirit,
even we also sigh among ourselves,
awaiting the sonship — the redemption of our body.
24 For we are saved by hope:
but hope seen is not hope:
for why still hope for what one sees?
25 And if we hope for what we see not,
thus we, through endurance, await.
THE INTERCESSORY MINISTRY OF THE HOLY SPIRIT
26 Likewise the Spirit also co—helps our frailties:
for we know not what to pray for
according as we must:
but the Spirit intercedes exceedingly for us
with unutterable sighs.
27 And he who searches the hearts
knows the thought of the Spirit,
because he intercedes for the holy
according to the will of Elohim.
28 And we know that all co—works to good
to them who love Elohim,
to them being the called according to his prothesis.
THE SEQUENCE OF THE PROTECTION OF ELOHIM
29 For whom he foreknew, he also predetermined
— conformed to the icon of his Son,
to his being the firstborn among many brothers.
30 And whom he predetermined, he also called:
and whom he called, he also justified:
and whom he justified, he also glorified.
NINE QUESTIONS, DIRECT AND RHETORICAL
31 So what say we to these?
If Elohim *is* for us, who *is* against us?
32 — Who indeed spared not his own Son,
but delivered him up for us all,
how indeed, with him,
grants he us not also charism with all?
33 Who accuses the select of Elohim?
Elohim who justifies?
34 Who condemns?
Messiah who died, yes rather, who rose
— who is even at the right of Elohim
— who also intercedes for us?
35 Who separates us from the love of the Messiah?
— Tribulation or distress or persecution
or famine or nakedness or peril or sword?
36 Exactly as scribed,
For your sake we are deathified all the day long
— reckoned as sheep for the slaughter.
37 Rather, in all these we are exceedingly triumphant
through him who loved us.
Psalms 44:22

ROMANS 8, 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

38 For I am *persuaded* **convinced**,
that neither death, nor life, nor angels,
nor *principalities* **hierarchies**, nor *powers* **dynamis**,
nor *things* **the present**,
nor *things to come* **the about to be**,
39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other *creature* **creation**,
shall be able to separate us from the love of *God* **Elohim**,
which is in
Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua our *Lord* **Adonay**.

THE SELECTION OF YISRA EL BY ELOHIM

9 I say **word** the truth in *Christ* **Messiah**, I lie not,
my conscience also *bearing me witness* **co—witnessing**
in the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
2 That I have *great heaviness* **mega sorrow**
and *continual sorrow* **unceasing grief** in my heart.
3 For I *could wish* **vowed** that
myself were *accursed* **anathema** from *Christ* **the Messiah**
for my brethren, my *kinsmen* **kin** according to the flesh:
4 Who are *Israelites* **Yisra Elym**;
to whom pertaineth **whose is the adoption sonship**,
and the glory, and the covenants,
and the *giving* **setting** of the *law* **torah**,
and the *service of God* **liturgy**,
and the *promises* **pre—evangelisms**;
5 Whose are the fathers,
and of whom as concerning the flesh
Christ **the Messiah** came, *who is* **being** over all,
God blessed for ever **Elohim eulogized unto the eons**.
Amen.
6 Not **such** as though the word of *God* **Elohim**
hath *taken none effect* **failed**.
For they are not all *Israel* **Yisra El**,
which are of *Israel* **Yisra El**:
7 Neither, because they are the *seed* **sperma** of Abraham,
are they all children:
but, In *Isaac* **Yischaq** shall thy *seed* **sperma** be called.

Genesis 21:12

8 That is, They which are the children of the flesh,
these are not the children of *God* **Elohim**:
but the children of the *promise* **pre—evangelism**
are *counted for* **reckoned unto the seed sperma**.
9 For this is the word of *promise* **pre—evangelism**,
At this *time will* **season shall** I come,
and Sarah shall have a son.

Genesis 18:10

10 And not only *this*;
but when *Rebecca* **Rebekah**
also had *conceived* **coition** by one,
even by our father **Isaac Yischaq**;
11 (For *the children* being not yet born,
neither having *done* **transacted** any good or evil,
that the *purpose* **prothesis** of *God* **Elohim**
according to *election* **selection** might *stand* **abide**,
not of works, but of him that calleth;)
12 It was *said* **rhetorized** unto her,
The *elder* **greater** shall serve the *younger* **lesser**.

Genesis 25:23

13 **Exactly** As it is written **scribed**,
Jacob **Yaaqov** have I loved, but *Esau* **Esav** have I hated.

Malachi 1:2, 3

14 What shall we say then?
Is there unrighteousness **Injustice** with *God* **Elohim**?
God forbid **So be it not**.
15 For he *saith* **wordeth** to *Moses* **Mosheh**,
I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy
I shall mercy whomever I shall mercy,
and *I will have compassion*
on whom I will have compassion
and I shall compassion whomever I shall compassion.
16 So then it is not of him that willeth,
nor of him that runneth,
but of *God* **Elohim** that *sheweth* **mercy mercieth**.
17 For the scripture *saith* **wordeth** unto *Pharaoh* **Paroh**,
Even *for unto* this *same purpose* have I raised thee up,
that I might *shew* **indicate** my *power* **dynamis** in thee,
and that my name might be *declared* **evangelized**
throughout **in** all the earth.

Hoshea 1:10

ROMANS 8, 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

38 For I am convinced
that neither death nor life nor angels
nor hierarchies nor dynamis
nor the present nor the about to be
39 nor height nor depth nor any other creation
can separate us from the love of Elohim
in Messiah Yah Shua our Adonay.

THE SELECTION OF YISRA EL BY ELOHIM

9 I word the truth in Messiah; I lie not;
my conscience also co—witnesses in the Holy Spirit;
2 that I have mega sorrow
and unceasing grief in my heart.
3 For I vowed
— I myself to be anathema from the Messiah
for my brothers — my kin according to the flesh:
4 who are Yisra Elym;
to whom are the sonship and the glory
and the covenants and the setting of the torah
and the liturgy and the pre—evangelisms;
5 whose are the fathers
and of whom as concerning the flesh
the Messiah came, being over all
— Elohim eulogized to the eons.
Amen.

6 Not such as though the word of Elohim failed.
For neither are they of Yisra El,
all Yisra Elym:
7 nor because they are the sperma of Abraham,
all children:
but, In Yischaq is your sperma called.

Genesis 21:12

8 That is, the children of the flesh,
are not the children of Elohim:
but the children of the pre—evangelism
are reckoned to the sperma.
9 For this is the word of pre—evangelism,
At this season I come, and Sarah has a son.

Genesis 18:10

10 And not only so;
but also Rebekah having coition by one,
even by our father Yischaq;
11 neither being yet birthed,
nor having transacted any good or evil,
that the prothesis of Elohim
according to selection abide,
not of works, but of him who calls;
12 It was rhetorized to her,
The greater serves the lesser.

Genesis 25:23

13 Exactly as scribed,
Yaaqov I loved, and Esav I hated.

Malachi 1:2, 3

14 So what say we?
Injustice with Elohim?
So be it not.
15 For he words to Mosheh,
I mercy whomever I mercy
and I compassion whomever I compassion.
16 — so it is neither of him who wills,
nor of him who runs,
but of Elohim who mercies.

17 For the scripture words to Paroh,
Even to this I raised you,
to indicate my dynamis in you
and to evangelize my name in all the earth.

Hoshea 1:10

ROMANS 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 *Therefore* **So then,**
hath he mercy on whom he will have mercy
he mercieth whom he willeth,
and whom he will **willeth** he hardeneth.
19 Thou wilt **shalt** say then unto me,
Why doth he yet *find fault* **blame?**
For who hath *resisted* **withstood** his will **counsel?**
20 Nay but **Yet so,** O man **humanity,**
who art thou
that *replieth against God* **contradictest Elohim?**
shall the *thing formed it* **molded**
say to him that *formed* **molded** ,
Why hast thou made me thus?
21 **Or** Hath not the potter *power* **authority** over the clay,
of the same lump
to make one vessel **indeed** unto honour,
and another unto dishonour?
22 *What* **And if God Elohim,**
willing **willeth** to shew **indicate** his wrath,
and to make his *power* **ability** known,
endured with **bore in** much *longsuffering* **patience**
the vessels of wrath *fitted to* **prepared unto** destruction:
23 And that he might make known the riches of his glory
on the vessels of mercy,
which he had *afore* **previously** prepared unto glory,
24 Even us, whom he hath called,
not of the *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** only,
but also of the *Gentiles* **goyim?**
25 As he *saith* **wordeth** also in *Osee* **Hoshea,**
I will **shall** call them my people,
which were not my people;
and her beloved,
which was not beloved.
26 And it shall *come to pass* **become,**
that in the place where it was *said* **thetorized** unto them,
Ye are not my people;
there shall they be called
the *children* **sons** of the living *God* **Elohim.**
Hoshea 1:10
27 *Esaias* **Yesha Yah** also crieth
concerning Israel **in behalf of Yisra El,**
Though **Whenever** the number
of the *children* **sons** of *Israel* **Yisra El**
be as the sand of the sea,
a remnant shall be saved:
28 For he will *finish* **shall complete/shalam** the *work* **word,**
and cut it short in *righteousness* **justness:**
because a short *work* **word**
will the *Lord* **shall Yah Veh** make upon the earth.
Yesha Yah 10:22, 23
29 And **exactly** as *Esaias* **said before** **Yesha Yah** foretold,
Except the Lord of **Unless Yah Veh** Sabaoth
had left us **behind** a *seed* **sperma,**
we had *been* **ever become** as *Sodoma* **Sedom,**
and *been made like* **ever likened**
unto *Gomorrha* **as Amorah.**

JUSTNESS BY TRUST

30 What shall we say then?
That the *Gentiles* **goyim,**
which *followed* **pursued** not after *righteousness* **justness,**
have *attained to righteousness* **overtaken justness,**
even the *righteousness* **justness** which is of *faith* **by trust.**
31 But *Israel* **Yisra El,** which *followed after* **pursued**
the *law* **torah** of *righteousness* **justness,**
hath not attained
to the *law* **torah** of *righteousness* **justness.**
32 *Wherefore* **Why?**
Because *they sought it* not by *faith* **trust,**
but as *it were* by the works of the *law* **torah.**
For they stumbled at that stumblingstone;
33 **Exactly** As *it is written* **scribed,**
Behold, I lay **place** in *Sion* **Siyon** a stumblingstone
and rock of *offence* **scandal:**
and whosoever *believeth* **trusteth** on him
shall not *be* **ashamed** **shame.**

Psalm 118:22, Yesha Yah 8:14, 28:16

ROMANS 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 So, whomever he wills, he mercies;
and whomever he wills, he hardens.
19 So you say to me, Why blames he still?
For who withstands his counsel?
20 Yet so, O humanity,
who are you to contradict Elohim?
Says the molded to the molder,
Why made you me thus?
21 Or has not the potter authority over the clay
— to make of the same lump
one vessel indeed to honor
and another to dishonor?
22 And if Elohim wills to indicate his wrath
and to make known his ability,
bears in much patience
the vessels of wrath prepared for destruction:
23 and to make known the riches of his glory
on the vessels of mercy,
whom he previously prepared for glory,
24 — us, whom he called,
not of the Yah Hudiym only, but also of the goyim?
25 As he also words in Hoshea,
I call the Not my people, My people;
and the Not beloved, Beloved.
26 And so be it,
that in the place they rhetorized,
You, Not my people;
there they call them, Sons of the living Elohim.
Hoshea 1:10
27 Yesha Yah also cries in behalf of Yisra El,
Whenever the number of the sons of Yisra El
become as the sand of the sea,
only the remnant is saved:
28 for he completes/shalams the word
and cuts it short in justness:
because Yah Veh makes a short word upon the earth.
Yesha Yah 10:22, 23
29 And exactly as Yesha Yah foretold,
Unless Yah Veh Sabaoth had left behind a sperma,
we had ever become as Sedom
and ever likened as Amorah.

JUSTNESS BY TRUST

30 So what?
Say we that the goyim who pursued not justness
overtook justness — even the justness of trust?
31 And Yisra El, who pursued the torah of justness,
attained not to the torah of justness?
32 Why?
Because — not by trust,
but as by the works of the torah.
For they stumbled at that stumblingstone;
33 exactly as scribed,
Behold, I place in Siyon
a stumblingstone and a rock of scandal:
and whoever trusts thereon, shames not.
Psalm 118:22, Yesha Yah 8:14, 28:16

ROMANS 10

exeGes ready research BIBLE

YISRA EL LACKING TRUST

10 Brethren, **indeed**,
my heart's desire **the well approving of my heart**
 and *prayer* **petition** to God **Elohim** for *Israel* **Yisra El** is,
that they might be saved **unto their salvation.**

2 For I *bear them record* **witness**
 that they have a zeal of God **Elohim**,
 but not according to knowledge.

3 For they being *ignorant* **unknowing**
 of God's *righteousness* **Elohim's justness**,
 and *going about* **seeking**
 to *establish* **set** their own *righteousness* **justness**,
 have not *submitted* **subjugated** themselves
 unto the *righteousness* **justness** of God **Elohim.**

4 For *Christ* **Messiah**
 is the *end* **completion/shalom** of the law **torah**
for righteousness **unto justness**
 to every one that *believeth* **trusteth.**

5 For *Moses describeth* **Mosheh scribes**
the righteousness **of the justness** which is of the law **torah**,
 That the *man* **human** which doeth those *things*
 shall live by **in** them.

Leviticus 18:5

6 But the *righteousness* **justness** which is of *faith* **trust**
speaketh on this wise **wordeth thus**,
 Say not in thine heart,
 Who shall ascend into *heaven* **the heavens**?
 (that is, to bring *Christ* **Messiah** down from above:)

7 Or, Who shall descend into the *deep* **abyss**?
 (that is, to bring up *Christ* **Messiah** again from the dead.)

8 But what *saith* **wordeth** it?
 The *word* **rhema** is nigh thee,
even in thy mouth, and in thy heart:
 that is, the *word* **rhema** of *faith* **trust**, which we preach;

Deuteronomy 30:12—14

9 That *if* **whenever** thou shalt *confess with* **profess in** thy mouth
the Lord **Jesus Adonay Yah Shua**,
 and shalt *believe* **trust** in thine heart
 that God **Elohim** hath raised him from the dead,
 thou shalt be saved.

10 For with the heart
man believeth **trust is** unto *righteousness* **justness**;
 and with the mouth
confession **profession** is made unto salvation.

11 For the scripture *saith* **wordeth**,
 Whosoever *believeth* **trusteth** on him
 shall not be *ashamed* **shame**.

Yesha Yah 29:16, 49:23

12 For there is no *difference* **distinction**
between the Jew **both Yah Hudiy** and *the Greek* **Hellene**:
 for the same *Lord* **Adonay** over all
 is rich unto all that call upon him.

13 For whosoever
 shall call upon the name of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**
 shall be saved.

Yah El 2:32

14 **So** How then shall they call on him
 in whom they have not *believed* **trusted**?
 and how shall they *believe* **trust** in him
 of whom they have not heard?
 and how shall they hear *without* **apart from** a preacher?

15 And how shall they preach,
 except **unless** they be *sent* **apostolized**?
exactly as it is *written* **scribed**,
 How beautiful are the feet of them
 that *preach the gospel of peace* **evangelize shalom**,
 and *bring glad tidings of* **evangelize** good things!

Yesha Yah 52:7, Nachum 1:15

16 But they have not all obeyed the *gospel* **evangelism**.
 For *Esaias saith* **Yesha Yah wordeth**, *Lord* **Yah Veh**,
 who *hath believed* **trusted** our *report* **hearing**?

Yesha Yah 53:1

17 So then *faith* **trust** *cometh* by hearing,
 and hearing by the *word* **rhema** of God **Elohim**.

18 But I *say* **word**, Have they not heard?
 Yes *verily* **Yet indeed**, their sound went into all the earth,
 and their *words* **rhema**
 unto the *ends* **extremities** of the world.

Psalm 19:4

ROMANS 10

exeGes companion BIBLE

YISRA EL LACKING TRUST

10 Brothers, **indeed**,
 the well approving of my heart
 and petition to Elohim for Yisra El is to their salvation.

2 For I witness
 that they have a zeal of Elohim
 — but not according to knowledge:

3 For, unknowing of the justness of Elohim
 and seeking to set their own justness,
 subjugate themselves not to the justness of Elohim.

4 For Messiah is the completion/shalom of the torah
 to justness
 to everyone who trusts.

5 For Mosheh scribes of the justness of the torah,
 That the human doing them, lives in them.

Leviticus 18:5

6 And the justness of trust words thus,
 Say not in your heart,
 Who ascends to the heavens?
 — that is, to bring Messiah:
 or, Who descends to the abyss?
 that is, to bring Messiah from the dead.

7

8 But what words it?
 The rhema is near you
 — in your mouth and in your heart:
 that is, the rhema of trust, that we preach;

Deuteronomy 30:12—14

9 so that whenever you profess Adonay Yah Shua
 in your mouth
 and trust in your heart
 that Elohim raised him from the dead,
 you become saved.

10 For with the heart, trust is to justness;
 and with the mouth, profession is to salvation.

11 For the scripture words,
 Whoever trusts on him shames not.

Yesha Yah 29:16, 49:23

12 For there is no distinction
 — Yah Hudiy and Hellene:
 for the same Adonay over all
 is rich to all who call upon him.

13 For whoever calls upon the name of Yah Veh
 becomes saved.

Yah El 2:32

14 So then, how call they on him in whom they trust not?
 And how trust they in him whom they heard not?
 And how hear they apart from a preacher?

15 And how preach they unless they are apostolized?
 Exactly as scribed,
 How beautiful their feet
 who evangelize shalom and evangelize good!

Yesha Yah 52:7, Nachum 1:15

16 But not all of them obeyed the evangelism.
 For Yesha Yah words, Yah Veh,
 who trusted our hearing?

Yesha Yah 53:1

17 So, trust by hearing
 and hearing by the rhema of Elohim.

18 But I word, Heard they not?
 Yes indeed, their sound goes to all the earth
 and their rhema to the extremities of the world.

Psalm 19:4

ROMANS 10, 11

exeGes ready research BIBLE

19 But I say **word**, Did not *Israel* **Yisra El** know?
First *Moses* saith **Mosheh worded**,
I will *provoke* shall **incite** you to jealousy
by them that are *no people* a **nongoyim**,
and by a *foolish nation* an **uncomprehending goyim**
I will *anger* shall **enrage** you.

Deuteronomy 32:21

20 But *Esaias* **Yesha Yah** is very **bold courageous**,
and saith **wordeth**, I was found of them
that sought me not;

I was *made* **became** manifest unto them
that asked not after me.

21 But to *Israel* **Yisra El** he saith **wordeth**,
All day long I have *stretched forth* **spread** my hands
unto a *disobedient* **distrusting**
and *gainsaying* **contradicting** people.

Yesha Yah 42:6, 7, 65:1, 2

THE YISRA ELIY SURVIVORS

11

So I say **word then**,

Hath *God* cast **Elohim shoved** away his people?

God forbid **So be it not**.

For I also am an *Israelite* **Yisra Eliy**,

of the *seed* **sperma** of Abraham,

of the *tribe* **scion** of *Benjamin* **Ben Yamin**.

2 *God* **Elohim** hath not cast **shoved** away his people
which he foreknew.

Wot **Or perceive** ye not

what the *scripture* saith of *Elias* **wordeth in Eli Yah?**
how he *maketh intercession* **intercedeth** to *God* **Elohim**
against *Israel* saying **Yisra El wording**,

3 *Lord* **Yah Veh**, they have *killed* **slaughtered** thy prophets,
and digged down thine **sacrifice** altars;
and I **also** am *left* **behind** alone,
and they seek my *life* **soul**.

1 Sovereigns 19:10, 14

4 But what saith **wordeth**
the *answer of God* **oracle** unto him?

I have *reserved* **left** to myself seven thousand men,
who have not bowed the knee to the *image* of Baal.

1 Sovereigns 19:18

5 Even *so* **thus** then at this present *time* **season** also
there is a remnant

according to the *election* **selection** of *grace* **charism**.

6 And if by *grace* **charism**,
then is it *no more* **not still** of works:
otherwise *grace* **charism**
is *no more* **grace** **not still** **charism**.

But if *it be* of works,
then it is *no more* **grace** **not still** **charism**:
otherwise work is *no more* **not still** work.

7 What then?

Israel **Yisra El** hath not obtained
that which he seeketh for;
but the *election* **selection** hath obtained it,
and the rest were *blinded* **petrified**.

8 (*According* **Exactly** as it is *written* **scribed**,
God **Elohim** hath given them
the spirit of *slumber* **insensitivity**,
eyes that they should not see,

and ears that they should not hear;) unto this day **today**.

Yesha Yah 29:10

9 And David saith **wordeth**,
Let their table *be made* **become into** a snare,
and **into a trap** **prey**,
and **into a stumblingblock** **scandal**,
and **into** a recompence unto them:

10 Let their eyes be darkened, that they may not see,
and bow down their back *alway* **continually**.

Psalms 69:22

11 So I say **word then**,
Have they stumbled that they should fall?
God forbid **So be it not**:

but *rather* through their *fall* **downfall**
salvation is *come* unto the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
for to *provoke* **incite** them to jealousy.

12 Now if the *fall* **downfall** of them
be the riches of the *world* **cosmos**,
and the diminishing of them the riches of the *Gentiles* **goyim**;
how much more their fulness?

ROMANS 10, 11

exeGes companion BIBLE

19 But I word, Knows Yisra El not?
that Mosheh first worded,
I incite you to jealousy by a nongoyim
and by an uncomprehending goyim I enrage you.
Deuteronomy 32:21

20 And Yesha Yah is very courageous, and words,
I was found by them who sought me not;
I became manifest to them who asked not after me.

21 And to Yisra El he words,
All day long I spread my hands
to a distrusting and contradicting people.

Yesha Yah 42:6, 7, 65:1, 2

THE YISRA ELIY SURVIVORS

11

So I word,

Has Elohim shoved away his people?

So be it not.

For I also am an Yisra Eliy
of the sperma of Abraham, of the scion of Ben Yamin.

2 Elohim shoved not away his people
whom he foreknew.

Or perceive you not

what the *scripture* words in Eli Yah?
how he interceded to Elohim against Yisra El,
wording,

3 Yah Veh, they slaughtered your prophets
and dug your sacrifice altars!

And also, I am behind alone and they seek my soul!

1 Sovereigns 19:10, 14

4 But what words the oracle to him?
I leave to myself seven thousand men,
who bow not the knee to Baal.

1 Sovereigns 19:18

5 Thus also at this present season,
there is a remnant
according to the selection by charism:
and if by charism, it is not still by works:
otherwise charism is not still by charism:
and if by works, it is not still by charism:
otherwise work is not still by work.

7 So what?

Yisra El obtained not what he seeks;
but the selection obtained, and the rest petrified.

8 Exactly as scribed,
Elohim gives them the spirit of insensitivity,
eyes that they see not and ears that they hear not
— to this day today.

Yesha Yah 29:10

9 And David words,
Let their table become into a snare and into a prey
and into a scandal and into a recompence to them:
10 that their eyes darken, that they see not
and bow their back continually.

Psalms 69:22

11 So I word, Stumble they to fall?
So be it not.

But through their downfall,
there is salvation to the goyim
— to incite them to jealousy:

12 and if their downfall is the riches of the cosmos,
and their diminishing the riches of the goyim,
how much more their fulness/shalom?

ROMANS 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

13 For I speak **word** to you *Gentiles goyim*,
inasmuch **indeed**
as I am the apostle of the *Gentiles goyim*,
I *magnify mine office* **glorify my ministry**:
14 If *by any means* **somehow** I may *provoke incite*
to emulation them which are my flesh to jealousy,
and might save some of them.
15 For if the casting away of them
be the reconciling of the *world cosmos*,
what shall the *receiving* **reception** of them be,
but if not life from the dead?
16 For if the *firstfruit* **firstlings** be holy,
the lump is also *holy*:
and if the root be holy, so are the branches.
17 And if some of the branches be *broken off* **excinded**,
and thou, being a wild olive *tree*,
wert grafted in among them **were ingrafted**,
and with them
partakest **becamest co—partaker** of the root
and fatness of the *olive tree* **olives**;
18 Boast **Exult** not against the branches.
But if thou *boast* **exult**,
thou bearest not the root, but the root thee.
19 Thou *wilt shalt* say then,
The branches were *broken off* **excinded**,
that I might be *grafted in* **ingrafted**.
20 Well;
because of *unbelief* **trustlessness**
they were *broken off* **excinded**,
and thou standest by *faith* **trust**.
Be not highminded, but *fear* **awe**:
21 For if *God Elohim* spared not the natural branches,
take heed lest **somehow** he *also* spare not thee.
22 Behold therefore **So perceive**
the *goodness* **kindness** and severity of *God Elohim*:
on them which fell, **indeed** severity;
but toward thee, *goodness* **kindness**,
if whenever thou *continue* **abide** in his *goodness* **kindness**:
otherwise thou also shalt be *cut off* **excinded**.
23 And they also,
if unless ever they abide *not still* in *unbelief* **trustlessness**,
shall be *grafted in* **ingrafted**:
for *God Elohim* is able to *graft ingraft* them *in* again.
24 For if thou wert *cut* **excinded** out of the olive *tree*
which is wild by nature,
and wert *grafted contrary to* **ingrafted against** nature
into a good olive *tree*:
how much more shall these, which be the natural *branches*,
be *grafted* **ingrafted** into their own *olive tree* **olives**?
25 For I *would will* not, brethren,
that ye should be *ignorant* **unknowing** of this mystery,
lest ye should
be wise in your own conceits **think beyond yourselves**;
that *blindness in* **petrification by part**
is happened to Israel **became unto Yisra El**,
until the fulness of the *Gentiles* **be come in goyim enter**.
26 And so **thus** all *Israel* **Yisra El** shall be saved:
exactly as it is written scribed,
There shall come out of *Sion* **Siyon** the *Deliverer* **Rescuer**,
and shall turn away *ungodliness* **irreverence**
from *Jacob* **Yaaqov**:
27 For this is my covenant unto them,
when I shall *take away* **remove** their sins.
Psalm 14:7, Yesha Yah 59:20
28 **Indeed**, As concerning the *gospel* **evangelism**,
they are enemies for your sakes:
but as touching the *election* **selection**,
they are beloved for the fathers' sakes.
29 For the *gifts* **charismata** and calling of *God Elohim*
are *without repentance* **irrevocable**.
30 For **exactly** as ye *in times past* **formerly**
have not believed *God* **distrusted Elohim**,
yet have now obtained *mercy* **be mercied**
through their *unbelief* **distrust**:
31 Even so **thus**
have these also now *not believed* **distrusted**,
that through your mercy
they also may *obtain* *mercy* **be mercied**.

ROMANS 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

13 For I word to you — to the goyim:
indeed, inasmuch as I am the apostle of the goyim
I glorify my ministry:
14 if somehow I incite my flesh to jealousy
and save some of them.
15 For if their casting away
be the reconciling of the cosmos,
what a reception
if not life from the dead?
16 For if the firstlings be holy, the lump also:
and if the root be holy, the branches also.
17 And if some of the branches are excinded
and you, being a wild olive, are ingrafted
and with them become co—partaker of the root
and fatness of the olives;
18 exult not against the branches.
But if you exult,
you bear not the root, but the root you.
19 So you say,
The branches were excinded, to ingraft me.
20 Well!
Because of trustlessness, they were excinded
and by trust, you stand.

Be not highminded, but awe:
21 for if Elohim spared not the natural branches,
heed lest somehow he spare not you.
22 So perceive the kindness and severity of Elohim:
on them who fell, indeed severity;
and toward you, kindness
— whenever you abide in his kindness:
otherwise you also become excinded;
and they also become ingrafted,
unless they ever abide in trustlessness:
for Elohim is able to ingraft them again.
24 For if you, by nature,
are excinded from the wild olive,
and against nature are ingrafted into a good olive:
how much more are these the natural
ingrafted into their own olive?
25 For brothers,
I will not that you be unknowing of this mystery,
lest you think beyond yourselves;
that petrification by part became Yisra El,
until the fulness/shalom of the goyim enter.
26 And thus all Yisra El is saved!
Exactly as scribed,
The Rescuer comes from Siyon
and turns irreverence from Yaaqov:
for this is my covenant to them
when I remove their sins.
Psalm 14:7, Yesha Yah 59:20
28 Indeed, as concerning the evangelism,
enemies for your sakes:
but as touching the selection,
beloved for the sakes of the fathers.
29 For the charismata and calling of Elohim
are irrevocable.
30 For exactly as you formerly distrusted Elohim,
yet are mercied through their distrust:
31 even thus these also now distrust
— that through your mercy, they also are mercied.

ROMANS 11, 12

exeGes ready research BIBLE

32 For God **Elohim**
hath *concluded* **locked** them all **together**
in *unbelief* **distrust**,
that he might *have* mercy *upon* **them** all.
33 O the depth of the riches
both of the wisdom and knowledge of *God* **Elohim!**
how *unsearchable* **unexplorable** are his judgments,
and his ways *past finding out* **untraceable!**
34 For who hath known
the *mind* **Spirit of the Lord Yah Veh?**
or who hath been his counsellor?
35 Or who hath first given to him,
and it shall be recompensed unto him *again?*
36 For of him, and through him, and *to* **unto** him,
are all things:
to whom *be* glory *for ever* **unto the eons.**
Amen.

Yesha Yah 40:13

THE HOLY METAMORPHOSIS

12 So I beseech you *therefore*, brethren,
by **through** the *mercies* **compassions** of *God* **Elohim**,
that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice,
holy, *acceptable* **well—pleasing** unto *God* **Elohim**,
which is your *reasonable service* **logical liturgy.**
2 And be not *conformed* **configured** to this world **eon:**
but be ye *transformed* **metamorphosed**
by the renewing of your mind,
that ye may prove what is that good,
and *acceptable* **well—pleasing**,
and *perfect* **completed/shalamed**, will of *God* **Elohim.**

THE CHARISMATA

3 For I say **word**, through the *grace* **charism** given unto me,
to every *man* that *is* **one being** among you,
not to *think of himself* **superexalt**
more *highly* than he *ought to think* **need superexalt;**
but to think *soberly* **unto being soundminded**,
according as *God* **Elohim** hath *dealt* **imparted**
to every *man* **each** the measure of *faith* **trust.**

Philippians 2:1—8

4 For **exactly** as we have many members in one body,
and all members have not the same *office* **function:**
5 So **Thus** we, *being* many, are one body in *Christ* **Messiah**,
and every *one* **each** members one of another.
6 Having then *gifts* **charismata**
differing **thoroughly excelling**
according to the *grace* **charism** that is given to us,
whether if also prophecy,
7 *let us prophesy* according to the proportion of *faith* **trust;**
Or if also ministry,
let us wait on our ministering **in ministering:**
or he that teacheth if also doctrinating
on teaching **in doctrine;**
8 *Or he that exhorteth if also* consoling,
on exhortation **in consolation:**
he that giveth **in imparting**,
let him do it with simplicity **in liberality;**
he that ruleth **in presiding**,
with **in** diligence;
he that sheweth mercy **in mercying**,
with cheerfulness **in hilarity.**

I Corinthians 12:1—11

9 Let love be *without dissimulation* **unhypocritical.**
Abhor that which is evil;
cleave **adhere** to that which is good.
10 *Be kindly* **Cherish**
affectioned **befriending** one to another
with brotherly love **in befriending;**
in honour preferring one another;
11 Not slothful in *business* **diligence;**
fervent **zealous** in spirit;
serving the Lord Adonay **in season;**
12 *Rejoicing* **Cheering** in hope;
patient **abiding** in tribulation;
continuing instant in prayer;
13 *Distributing* **Imparting**
to the necessity **needs** of *saints* **the holy;**
given to hospitality **pursuing the befriending of strangers.**
14 *Bless* **Eulogize** them which persecute you:
bless **eulogize**, and curse not.

ROMANS 11, 12

exeGes companion BIBLE

32 For Elohim locked them all together in distrust
to mercy them all.
33 O the depth of the riches
of both the wisdom and knowledge of Elohim!
How unexplorable his judgments
and his ways untraceable!
34 For who knows the Spirit of Yah Veh?
Or who is his counselor?
35 Or who first gives to him
so that it is recompensed to him?
36 For of him and through him and to him, all *is:*
to whom *be* glory to the eons.
Amen.
Yesha Yah 40:13

THE HOLY METAMORPHOSIS

12

So I beseech you, brothers,
through the compassions of Elohim,
that you present your bodies a living sacrifice,
holy, well—pleasing to Elohim
— your logical liturgy.
2 And be not configured to this eon:
but metamorphosed by the renewing of your mind,
to prove what that good
and well—pleasing
and completed/shalamed will of Elohim is.

THE CHARISMATA

3 For through the charism given to me
I word to everyone being among you,
to not superexalt more than he need superexalt;
but to think to being soundminded,
as Elohim imparted to each the measure of trust.
Philippians 2:1—8

4 For exactly as we have many members in one body
and all members have not the same function:
5 thus we many are one body in Messiah
and each members one of another.
6 So having charismata — thoroughly excelling
according to the charism given to us,
if prophecy, according to the proportion of trust;
7 if also ministry, in ministering;
if also doctrinating, in doctrine;
8 if also consoling, in consolation;
if also imparting, in liberality;
if also presiding, in diligence;
if also mercying, in hilarity.
I Corinthians 12:1—11

9 Love, eunhypocritical;
abhor evil;
adhere to good;
10 in befriending one another, cherish befriending;
in honor, preferring one another;
11 not slothful in diligence;
zealous in spirit;
serving Adonay in season;
12 cheering in hope;
abiding in tribulation;
continuing instant in prayer;
13 imparting to the needs of the holy;
pursuing the befriending of strangers;
14 eulogize them who persecute you
— eulogize and curse not;

ROMANS 12, 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 15 Rejoice **Cheer** with them that *do rejoice* **cheer**,
and weep with them that weep.
- 16 Be of the same *mind* **thought** one toward another.
Mind **Think** not *high things* **highly**,
but *condescend to men of low estate* **lead with the humble**.
Be not wise in your own conceits
Think not beyond yourselves.
- 17 *Recompense* **Give back** to no *man* **one** evil for evil.
Provide things honest **good**
in the sight of all *men* **humanity**.
- 18 If it be possible, as much as *lieth in* **is of** you,
live peaceably **shalam** with all *men* **humanity**.
- 19 Dearly beloved, *avenge not yourselves*,
but *rather* give place unto wrath:
for it is *written* **scribed**, Vengeance is mine;
I will repay **shall recompense**,
saith the Lord **wordeth Yah Veh**.
- Deuteronomy 32:35
- 20 *Therefore if* **So whenever** thine enemy hunger,
force feed him;
if whenever he thirst, give him drink:
for in so doing
thou shalt heap coals of fire on his head.
- 21 *Be not overcome of evil* **Let not evil triumph over you**,
but *overcome evil with* **triumph over evil in** good.
- Proverbs 25:21, 22

ALL AUTHORITY IS ELOHIM—ORDAINED

13

- Let every soul *be subject* **subjugate**
unto the *higher powers* **superior authorities**.
For there is no *power* **authority**
but except of *God* **Elohim**:
the *powers* **authorities** that be
are ordained of *God* **Elohim**.
- 2 **So** Whosoever *therefore*
resisteth **withstandeth** the *power* **authority**,
resisteth **opposeth** the ordinance of *God* **Elohim**:
and they that *resist* **withstand**
shall *receive* **take** to themselves *damnation* **judgment**.
- 3 For *rulers* **archs** are not a *terror* **an awe** to good works,
but to the evil.
Wilt **Willest** thou then not be *afraid* **awestricken**
of the *power* **authority**?
do that which is good,
and thou shalt have *praise* **halal** of the same:
For he is the minister of *God* **Elohim** to thee for good.
But *if whenever* thou do that which is evil, be *afraid* **awed**;
for he beareth not the sword in vain:
for he is the minister of *God* **Elohim**,
a revenger to execute **the avenger unto** wrath
upon him that *doeth* **transacteth** evil.
- 5 Wherefore
ye must *needs be subject* **necessarily subjugate**,
not only for wrath, but also for conscience sake.
- 6 For for this cause *pay* **complete/shalam** ye tribute also:
for they are *God's ministers* **Elohim's liturgists**,
attending continually **continuing**
upon **unto** this very thing.
- 7 *Render therefore* **So give** to all their dues:
tribute to whom tribute is due
to whom tribute, tribute;
custom to whom custom
to whom completion/shalom, completion/shalom;
fear to whom fear
to whom awe, awe;
honour to whom honour
to whom honour, honour.
- 8 *Owe no man any thing* **Be indebted to no one**,
but except to love one another:
for he that loveth another hath fulfilled the *law* **torah**.
- 9 For this,
Thou shalt not *commit adultery* **adulterize**,
Thou shalt not *kill* **murder**,
Thou shalt not steal,
Thou shalt not *bear false* **pseudo** witness,
Thou shalt not *covet* **pant**;
and if *there be* any other *commandment* **misvah**,
it is *briefly comprehended* **summed up**
in this *saying* **word**, namely,
Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.

ROMANS 12, 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 15 cheer with the cheering
and weep with the weeping;
- 16 of the same thought one toward another;
think not highly, but lead with the humble;
think not beyond yourselves;
give no one evil for evil;
provide good in the sight of all humanity.
- 18 If possible, as much as is of you,
complete/shalam with all humanity.
- 19 Dearly beloved, *avenge not yourselves*,
but give place to wrath:
for it is scribed, Vengeance is mine;
I recompense, words Yah Veh.
- Deuteronomy 32:35
- 20 So whenever your enemy famishes,
force feed him;
whenever he thirsts, give him drink:
for in so doing you heap coals of fire on his head;
- 21 so that evil triumphs not over you,
but that the good triumphs over evil.
- Proverbs 25:21, 22

ALL AUTHORITY IS ELOHIM—ORDAINED

13

- Every soul,
subjugate to the superior authorities.
For there is no authority except of Elohim:
the authorities that be are ordained of Elohim.
- 2 So whoever withstands the authority
opposes the ordinance of Elohim:
and whoever withstands
stake judgment to themselves.
- 3 For archs are not an awe to good works
but to the evil.
So will you, to not be awestricken of the authority?
Do good
and you have halal of the same:
for he is your minister of Elohim for good.
But whenever you do evil, awe;
for he bears not the sword in vain:
for he is the minister of Elohim
— the avenger to wrath upon whoever transacts evil.
- 5 So it is necessary to subjugate,
not only for wrath, but also for sake of conscience.
- 6 For this cause complete/shalam your tribute also:
for they are liturgists of Elohim, continuing therein.
- 7 So give to all their dues:
to whom tribute, tribute;
to whom completion/shalom, completion/shalom;
to whom awe, awe;
to whom honor, honor.
- 8 Be indebted to no one except to love one another:
for whoever loves another fulfills/shalams the torah.
- 9 For:
adulterize not!
murder not!
steal not!
pseudo witness not!
pant not!
— and if *there is* any other misvah
it is summed up in this word,
namely,
Love your neighbour as yourself!

ROMANS 13, 14

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 Love worketh no *ill* evil to his neighbour:
therefore love is the fulfilling of the *law* torah.

Exodus 20:13—17, Leviticus 19:18

11 And that, knowing the *time* season,
that now **already** it is *high time* the hour
to awake **rise** out of sleep:
for now is our salvation nearer
than when we *believed* trusted.
12 The night is *far spent* advanced,
the day *is at hand* approacheth:
let us therefore *cast* put off the works of darkness,
and let us *put on* endue the *armour* weapon of light.
13 Let us walk *honestly* decorously, as in the day;
not in *rioting* carousing and *drunkenness* intoxication,
not in *chambering* coition and *wantonness* lechery,
not in *strife* contention and *envying* zeal.
14 But *put* endue ye on
the Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
and make not provision for the flesh
to fulfil the *lusts* thereof do its pantings.

THE FRAIL IN THE TRUST

14 Him that is weak frail in the *faith* trust
receive take ye unto yourselves,
but not to *doubtful disputations* discern reasonings.
2 For indeed one believeth trusteth
that he may eat all things:
another, who is weak frail, eateth herbs.
3 Let not him that eateth
despise belittle him that eateth not;
and let not him which eateth not
judge him that eateth:
for God Elohim hath received taken him unto himself.
4 Who art thou that judgest
another man's servant another's housekeeper?
to his own master adoni he standeth firm or falleth.
Yea, he shall be holden up stand:
for God Elohim is able to make him stand him.
5 One man esteemeth judgeth one day above another:
another esteemeth judgeth every day alike.
Let every man each be fully persuaded assured
in his own mind.
6 He that regardeth thinketh of the day,
regardeth thinketh it unto the Lord Adonay;
and he that regardeth thinketh not the day,
to the Lord Adonay he doth not regard it thinketh not.
He that eateth, eateth to the Lord Adonay,
for he giveth God thanks eucharistizeth Elohim;
and he that eateth not, to the Lord Adonay he eateth not,
and giveth God thanks eucharistizeth Elohim.
7 For none of us liveth to himself,
and no man one dieth to himself.
8 For whether whenever we live,
we live unto the Lord Adonay;
and whether whenever we die,
we die unto the Lord Adonay:
whether So whenever we live therefore,
or whenever we die, we are the Lord's Adonay's.
9 For to this end Christ Messiah
both died, and rose, and revived revived,
that he might
be Lord both of overlord the dead and living.

JUDGING AND JUSTNESS

10 But why dost thou judge thy brother?
or why dost thou set at nought belittle thy brother?
for we shall all stand
before by the judgment seat bamah of Christ the Messiah.
11 For it is written scribed,
As I live, saith the Lord wordeth Yah Veh,
every knee shall bow to me,
and every tongue shall confess avow to God Elohim.
Yesha Yah 45:23, Philippians 2:10, 12
12 So then every one each of us
shall give account of word concerning himself
to God Elohim.
13 Let us not no longer therefore
judge one another any more:
but judge this rather,
that no man one put a stumblingblock stumbling
or an occasion to fall a scandal in his brother's way.

ROMANS 13, 14

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 Love works no evil to his neighbour:
so love is the fulness/shalom of the torah.

Exodus 20:13 — 17, Leviticus 19:18

11 And this:
knowing the season,
that it is already the hour to rise from sleep;
for now our salvation is nearer than when we trusted.
12 The night advances, the day approaches:
so put off the works of darkness
and endue the weapon of light.
13 Walk decorously as in the day;
not in carousing and intoxication;
not in coition and lechery;
not in contention and zeal;
14 but endue Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
and make no provision for the flesh to do its pantings.

THE FRAIL IN THE TRUST

14 And take not the frail in the trust
to discern reasonings.
2 For indeed one who trusts, eats all:
another, who is frail, eats herbs.
3 Whoever eats, belittle not whoever eats not;
and whoever eats not, judge not whoever eats:
for Elohim takes them to himself.
4 You
— who are you to judge the housekeeper of another?
unto his own adoni he stands firm or falls.
Yes, he stands:
for Elohim is able to stand him.
5 One judges one day above another;
another judges every day.
Each of you, assure fully in your own mind.
6 Whoever thinks of the day,
thinks it to Adonay;
and whoever thinks not the day,
thinks it not to Adonay;
whoever eats,
eats to Adonay for he eucharistizes Elohim;
and whoever eats not to Adonay,
eats not and eucharistizes Elohim.
7 For none of us lives to self
and no one dies to self.
8 For whenever we live, we live to Adonay;
and whenever we die, we die to Adonay:
so whenever we live, whenever we die,
we are to Adonay.
9 For to this end
Messiah both died and rose and relived
— to overlord the dead and living.

JUDGING AND JUSTNESS

10 And you, why judge your brother?
Or why belittle your brother?
For we all stand by the bamah of the Messiah.
11 For it is scribed, As I live, Yah Veh words,
every knee bows to me
and every tongue avows to Elohim.
Yesha Yah 45:23, Philippians 2:10, 12
12 So each of us gives word to Elohim concerning self.
13 So judge one another no longer:
but rather judge this,
that no one put a stumbling
or a scandal in the way of his brother.

ROMANS 14, 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

14 I know, and am persuaded convinced
by the Lord Jesus in Adonay Yah Shua,
that there is *nothing unclean* **naught profane** of through itself:
but **except** to him that esteemeth **reckoneth**
any thing somewhat to be unclean **profane**,
to him it is *unclean* **profane**.

15 But if thy brother
be *grieved with thy meat* **sorrowed through food**,
now walkest thou not *charitably* **still longer in love**.
Destroy not him with thy *meat* **food**,
for whom *Christ* **Messiah** died.

16 Let not then your good be *evil spoken* of **blasphemed**:
17 For the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**
is not *meat* **eat** and drink;
but *righteousness* **justness**, and *peace* **shalom**,
and *joy* **cheer** in the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.

18 For he that in these *things* serveth *Christ* **the Messiah**
is *acceptable* **well—pleasing** to God **Elohim**,
and approved of *men* **humanity**.

19 Let us therefore *follow after* **then pursue**
the things those which make for *peace* **shalom**,
and *things those* wherewith one may edify another.

20 For *meat* **sake of food**
destroy **disintegrate** not the work of God **Elohim**.
All *things* indeed are pure;
but it is evil for that *man* **human**
who eateth *with offence* **through stumbling**.

21 It is good neither to eat *flesh* **meat**, nor to drink wine,
nor *any thing whereby* **ought wherein** thy brother stumbleth,
or is *offended* **scandalized**, or is *made weak* **frailed**.

22 Hast thou *faith* **trust**?
have it to thyself *before* God **in sight of Elohim**.
Happy **Blessed** is he
that *condemneth* **judgeth** not himself
in that *thing* which he *alloweth* **approveth**.

23 And he that doubteth
is *damned if* **condemned whenever** he eat,
because *he eateth* **it is** not of *faith* **trust**:
for whatsoever is not of *faith* **trust** is sin.

15

So We then that are *strong* **able**
ought **are indebted**
to bear the *infirmities* **frailties** of the *weak* **impotent**,
and not to please ourselves.

2 **Indeed** Let every *one* **each** of us please his neighbour
for *unto* **his** good to edification.

3 For even *Christ* **the Messiah** pleased not himself;
but, *exactly* as it is *written* **scribed**,
The reproaches of them that reproached thee fell on me.

4 For *whatsoever things* **as many as**
were *written aforetime* **preinscribed**,
were *written for* **preinscribed unto** our *learning* **doctrine**,
that we through *patience* **endurance**
and *comfort* **consolation** of the scriptures might have hope.

5 Now the *God* **Elohim**
of *patience* **endurance** and **the** consolation
grant you to be likeminded **give you like thoughts**
one toward **among** another
according to *Christ Jesus* **Messiah Yah Shua**:
6 That ye may with *one mind* **unanimity** and one mouth
glorify *God* **Elohim**,
even the Father
of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**.

7 Wherefore *receive ye* **take unto yourselves** one another,
exactly as *Christ* **the Messiah**
also *received* **took** us to the glory of *God* **Elohim**.

8 Now I say **word** that *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**
was **became** a minister of the circumcision
for the truth of *God* **Elohim**,
to *confirm* **establishing**
the *promises made* **pre—evangelisms** unto the fathers:

9 And that the *Gentiles* **goyim** might
glorify *God* **Elohim** for his mercy;
exactly as it is *written* **scribed**,
For this cause
I will *confess* **shall avow** to thee among the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
and *sing* **psalm** unto thy name.

Psalms 18:49

ROMANS 14, 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

14 I know and am convinced in Adonay Yah Shua
that naught is profane through itself:
except to him who reckons aught profane,
to him it is profane.

15 And if your brother sorrows through food,
you no longer still walk in love.
Destroy not him for whom Messiah died
through your food:

16 so that your good is not blasphemed.

17 For the sovereigndom of Elohim
is not eat and drink;
but justness and shalom
and cheer in the Holy Spirit.

18 For whoever serves the Messiah in these
is well—pleasing to Elohim
and approved of humanity.

19 So pursue those that make for shalom
and those that edify one another.
20 Disintegrate not the work of Elohim
for sake of food.

All indeed are pure;
but evil for that human who, through stumbling, eats.

21 It is good neither to eat meat
nor to drink wine
nor aught wherein your brother stumbles
or is scandalized, or is frailed.

22 Have you trust?
Have it to yourself in sight of Elohim.
Blessed
— whoever judges not self by what he approves.
23 And whoever doubts
is condemned whenever he eats
because it is not of trust:
for whatever is not of trust is sin.

PLEASING SELF

15

So we who are able
are indebted to bear the frailties of the impotent
and not to please ourselves.

2 Indeed,
each of us is to please his neighbour for good to edification.

3 For even the Messiah pleased not himself;
but exactly as scribed,
The reproaches of them who reproached you
fell on me:

4 for as many as were preinscribed,
were preinscribed to our doctrine,
so that we, through the endurance
and the consolation of the scriptures
have the hope.

5 And the Elohim
of the endurance and the consolation
give you like thoughts among one another
according to Messiah Yah Shua:
6 so that you,
with unanimity and one mouth glorify Elohim
— even the Father of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.

7 So take one another to yourselves,
exactly as the Messiah
also took us to the glory of Elohim.

8 And I word that Yah Shua Messiah
became a minister of the circumcision
for the truth of Elohim,
to establish the pre—evangelisms to the fathers:
9 and that the goyim glorify Elohim for his mercy;
exactly as scribed,
For this cause I avow to you among the goyim
and psalm to your name.

Psalms 18:49

ROMANS 15

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 And again he saith **wordeth**,
Rejoice, ye *Gentiles* **goyim**, with his people.
Deuteronomy 32:43

11 And again,
Praise the Lord **Halalu Yah**, all ye *Gentiles* **goyim**;
and *laud* **halal** him, all ye people.

12 And again, *Esaias* saith **Yesha Yah wordeth**,
There shall be a root of *Jesse* **Yishay**,
and he that shall rise
to *reign* **rule** over the *Gentiles* **goyim**;
in him shall the *Gentiles* **trust** **goyim hope**.
Psalm 18:49, 117:1, Yesha Yah 11:1,10, 42:6, 7

13 Now the *God* **Elohim** of hope fill you **full**
with all *joy* **cheer** and *peace* **shalom**
in *believing* **trusting**,
that ye may *abound* **superabound** in hope,
through **in** the *power* **dynamis** of the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.

14 And I myself also
am *persuaded* of **convinced** **concerning** you,
my brethren, that ye also *are* **be** full of goodness,
filled **full** with all knowledge,
able also to *admonish* **remind** one another.
15 *Nevertheless* **And so**, brethren,
I have *written* **scribed** the more boldly unto you
in some sort **partly**,
as putting you in mind of **re—reminding** you,
because of the *grace* **charism**
that is given to me of *God* **Elohim**,

16 That I should be the *minister* **liturgist**
of *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah** to the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
ministering **priesting**
the *gospel* **evangelism** of *God* **Elohim**,
that the offering *up* of the *Gentiles* **goyim**
might be *acceptable* **wellreceived**,
being *sanctified* **hallowed** by the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.

17 **So** I have *therefore* **whereof I may glory** **boasting**
through Jesus Christ **in Yah Shua Messiah**
in those things which pertain to God **toward Elohim**.

18 For I *will* **shall** not dare to speak of any of those *things*
which *Christ* **Messiah** hath not *wrought* **worked** by me,
to make the *Gentiles* **goyim** obedient,
by word and *deed* **work**,

19 *Through mighty* **In dynamis**
of signs and *wonders* **omens**,
by **in** the *power* **dynamis** of the Spirit of *God* **Elohim**;
so that from *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem** and round about
unto *Illyricum*,

I have *fully preached* **fulfilled/shalamed**
the *gospel* **evangelism** of *Christ* **the Messiah**.

20 Yea, so **thus** have I *strived* **befriendingly esteemed**
to *preach the gospel* **evangelize**,
not where *Christ* **Messiah** was named,
lest I should build
upon *another man's* **another's** foundation:
But **exactly** as it is *written* **scribed**,

To **Concerning** whom
he was **they that were** not *spoken of* **evangelized**,
they shall see:
and they that have not heard
shall *understand* **comprehend**.

Yesha Yah 52:15

THE TRAVEL PLANS OF PAULOS

22 *For which cause* **So** also
I have been much hindered from coming to you.
23 But now having no more place in these *parts* **climes**,
and having a *great desire* **an intense yearning**
these many years to come unto you;
24 *Whensoever* **Whenever**
I *take my journey* **depart** into *Spain* **Spania**,
I *will* **shall** come to you:
for I *trust* **hope** to see **observe** you
in my *journey* **going through**,
and to be
brought on my way thitherward **forwarded** by you,
if **whenever** first
I be *somewhat* **partly** filled with *your company* **by you**.

25 But now I go unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
to minister unto the *saints* **holy**.

ROMANS 15

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 And again he words,
Rejoice, you goyim, with his people.
Deuteronomy 32:43

11 And again,
Halalu Yah, all you goyim;
and halal him, all you people.

12 And again, Yesha Yah words,
And so be it, a root of Yishay;
and he rises to rule over the goyim:
in him the goyim hope.
Psalm 18:49, 117:1, Yesha Yah 11:1,10, 42:6,7

13 Now the Elohim of the hope
fill you full/shalam you
with all cheer and shalom in trusting;
so that you superabound in hope
in the dynamis of the Holy Spirit.

14 And I am convinced — I myself also
concerning you my brothers,
that you also be full of goodness
filled full/shalamed with all knowledge
also able to remind one another.

15 And so brothers,
I scribe the more boldly to you
partly to re—remind you,
because of the charism given me by Elohim,
being the liturgist of Yah Shua Messiah
to the goyim,
priesting the evangelism of Elohim,
so that the offering of the goyim is well—received,
being hallowed by the Holy Spirit.

17 So I boast in Yah Shua Messiah
toward Elohim.

18 For I dare not speak of any of those
that Messiah works not through me,
to make the goyim obedient by word and work
in dynamis of signs and omens,
in the dynamis of the Spirit of Elohim;
so that from Yeru Shalem and around to Illyricum,
I fulfilled/shalamed the evangelism of the Messiah.

20 Yes, thus I befriendingly esteemed to evangelize
— not where Messiah was named,
lest I build on the foundation of another:
but exactly as scribed,
Concerning those who were not evangelized,
See:
and whoever had not heard
Comprehend.

Yesha Yah 52:15

THE TRAVEL PLANS OF PAULOS

22 So also, I was much hindered to come to you:
23 and now having no more place in these climes
and having an intense yearning these many years
to come to you;
24 whenever I depart to Spania, I come to you:
for I hope to observe you in my going through
and have you forward *me*,
whenever you first partly enrich me.

25 And now I go to Yeru Shalem
to minister to the holy.

ROMANS 15, 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

26 For it hath pleased well—approved
them of Macedonia and Achaia
to make a certain contribution **communion**
for unto the poor saints **holy**
which are at Jerusalem in Yeru Shalem.
27 It hath pleased them verily **They indeed well—approved;**
and their debtors they are.
For if the *Gentiles* **goyim**
have been made partakers **communed**
of their *spiritual things* **spirituals,**
their duty is also **they are indebted**
to minister **liturgize** unto them in *carnal things* **fleshlies.**
28 **So** When *therefore*
I have performed **fully completed/shalamed** this,
and have sealed to them this fruit,
I will come by **shall depart through** you
into *Spain* **Spania.**
29 And I am sure that, when I come unto you,
I shall come in the fulness of the *blessing* **eulogy**
of the *gospel* **evangelism** of *Christ* **the Messiah.**
30 **But** Now I beseech you, brethren,
for the *Lord Jesus Christ's sake,*
sake of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
and for the love of the Spirit,
that ye *strive together* **co—strive** with me
in your prayers to *God* **Elohim** for me;
31 That I may be *delivered* **rescued** from them
that do not believe **distrust** in *Judaea* **Yah Hudah;**
and that my *service* **ministry**
which I have for *Jerusalem* **unto Yeru Shalem**
may be *accepted* **well—received** of the *saints* **holy;**
32 That I may come unto you with *joy* **in cheer**
by *through* the will of *God* **Elohim,**
and may with you be refreshed.
33 Now the *God* **Elohim** of *peace* **shalom** be with you all.
Amen.

PAULOS SALUTES THE HOLY

16 I commend unto you Phebe our sister,
which is **being** a *servant* **minister**
of the *church* which is at **ecclesia** in Cenchrea:
2 That ye *receive* **await** her in the *Lord* **Adonay,**
as *becometh saints* **worthily of the holy,**
and that ye *assist* **stand by** her
in whatsoever *business* **matter** she **ever** hath need of you:
for she hath *been* **become**
a *succourer* **patroness** of many,
and of myself also.
3 Greet **Salute** Priscilla and Aquila
my helpers **co—workers** in *Christ Jesus* **Messiah Yah Shua:**
4 Who have for my *life* **soul** laid down their own necks:
unto whom not only I *give thanks* **eucharistize,**
but also all the *churches* **ecclesiae** of the *Gentiles* **goyim.**
5 Likewise *greet* the *church* **ecclesia** that is in their house.
Salute my *wellbeloved* **beloved** Epauetus,
who is the *firstfruits* **firstlings** of Achaia
unto *Christ* **Messiah.**
6 Greet *Mary* **Salute Miryam,**
who *bestowed* **laboured** much *labour on* **unto** us.
7 Salute Andronicus and Junia, my *kinsmen* **kin,**
and my *fellowprisoners* **co—captives,**
who are of *note* **eminent** among the apostles,
who also *were* **became** in *Christ* **Messiah** before me.
8 Greet **Salute** Amplias my beloved in the *Lord* **Adonay.**
9 Salute *Urbane* **Urbanos,**
our *helper* **co—worker** in *Christ* **Messiah,**
and Stachys my beloved.
10 Salute Apelles approved in *Christ* **Messiah.**
Salute them which are of Aristobulus' *household.*
11 Salute Herodion my *kinsmen* **kindred.**
Greet **Salute** them that be of the *household* of Narcissus,
which are in the *Lord* **Adonay.**
12 Salute Tryphena and Tryphosa,
who labour in the *Lord* **Adonay.**
Salute the beloved Persis,
which laboured much in the *Lord* **Adonay.**
13 Salute Rufus *chosen* **selected** in the *Lord* **Adonay,**
and his mother and mine.
14 Salute Asyncritus, Phlegon, Hermas, Patrobas, Hermes,
and the brethren which are with them.

ROMANS 15, 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

26 For they of Macedonia and Achaia
well—approved to make a communion
to the poor holy in Yeru Shalem:
— they indeed well—approved;
and their debtors they are.
For if the goyim commune of their spirituals,
they are indebted to liturgize in their fleshlies.
28 So when I fully complete/shalam this
and seal this fruit to them,
I depart through you into Spania.
29 And I am sure that, when I come to you,
I come in the fulness/shalom of the eulogy
of the evangelism of the Messiah.
30 But I beseech you brothers,
for sake of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
and for the love of the Spirit,
that you co—strive in prayers to Elohim for me;
31 to be rescued from them in Yah Hudah
who distrust;
and that my ministry to Yeru Shalem
be well—received by the holy;
32 to come to you in cheer through the will of Elohim
and be refreshed with you.
33 And the Elohim of shalom be with you all.
Amen.

PAULOS SALUTES THE HOLY

16 I commend to you our sister Phebe,
being a minister of the ecclesia in Cenchrea:
2 that you await her in Adonay, worthily of the holy
and stand by her
in whatever matter she ever has need of you:
for she became a patroness of many, and also of me.
3 Salute Priscilla and Aquila
co—workers in Messiah Yah Shua:
4 who laid down their own necks for my soul:
to whom, not only I eucharistize,
but also all the ecclesiae of the goyim:
5 likewise the ecclesia in their house.
6 Salute my beloved Epauetus,
the firstlings of Achaia to Messiah:
7 salute Miryam who labored much to us:
salute Andronicus and Junia
my kin and my co—captives
who are eminent among the apostles
who also became in Messiah preceding me:
8 salute Amplias my beloved in Adonay:
9 salute Urbanos our co—worker in Messiah
and Stachys my beloved:
10 salute Apelles approved in Messiah:
salute them of Aristobulus:
11 salute Herodion my kindred:
salute them of Narcissus, who are in Adonay:
12 salute Tryphena and Tryphosa
who labor in Adonay:
salute the beloved Persis
who labors much in Adonay:
13 salute Rufus the selected in Adonay
and his mother and mine:
14 salute Asyncritus, Phlegon,
Hermas, Patrobas, Hermes
and the brothers with them:

ROMANS 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 salute Philologus, and Julia,
Nereus, and his sister, and Olympas,
and all the *saints* **holy** which are with them.
16 Salute one another *with in* a holy kiss.
The *churches* **ecclesiae** of *Christ the Messiah* salute you.
PAULOS WARNS THE HOLY
17 Now I beseech you, brethren,
mark **scope** them
which cause divisions and *offences* **scandals**
contrary to **against** the doctrine which ye have learned;
and *avoid* **deviate from** them.
18 For they that are such serve not
our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
but their own belly;
and *by good* **through kind** words
and *fair speeches* **eulogy**
deceive **seduce** the hearts of the simple.
19 For your obedience
is come abroad **spread** unto all *men*.
I *am glad* **cheer** therefore on your behalf:
but yet **indeed** I *would have* **will that you be** wise
unto that which is good,
and *simple concerning* **unadulterated as to** evil.
20 And the *God* **Elohim** of *peace* **shalom**
shall *bruise* **crush** Satan under your feet
shortly in quickness.
The *grace* **charism**
of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
be with you.
Amen.
SALUTES OF THE CO—WORKERS
21 *Timotheus* **Timo Theos** my *workfellow* **co—worker**,
and Lucius, and Jason, and Sosipater,
my *kinsmen* **kindred**, salute you.
22 I Tertius, who *wrote* **scribed** this epistle,
salute you in *the Lord* **Adonay**.
23 *Gaius mine host* **my stranger**,
and of the whole *church* **ecclesia**, saluteth you.
Erastus the *chamberlain* **administrator** of the city
saluteth you,
and Quartus a brother.
24 The *grace* **charism**
of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
be with you all.
Amen.
DOXOLOGY
25 Now to him that is *of power* **able** to stablish you
according to my *gospel* **evangelism**,
and the preaching of *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**,
according to the *revelation* **apocalypse** of the mystery,
which was *kept secret* **hushed**
since *the world began* **eternal time**,
26 But now is *made manifest* **manifested**,
and *by the* **through prophetic** scriptures of *the prophets*,
according to the *commandment* **order**
of the *everlasting God* **eternal Elohim**,
made known to all *nations* **goyim**
for unto the obedience of *faith* **trust**:
27 To *God* **Elohim** only wise,
be glory through *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**
for ever **unto the eons**.
Amen.

ROMANS 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 salute Philologus and Julia,
Nereus and his sister and Olympas
and all the holy with them:
16 salute one another in a holy kiss:
the ecclesiae of the Messiah salute you.
PAULOS WARNS THE HOLY
17 And I beseech you brothers,
scope them who cause divisions and scandals
against the doctrine you learned
— and deviate from them.
18 For they who are such
serve not our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
but their own belly;
and through kind words and eulogy
seduce the hearts of the simple.
19 For your obedience spreads to all:
so I cheer on your behalf:
but yet indeed, I will that you be wise as to good
and unadulterated as to evil:
20 and that the Elohim of shalom
quickly crush Satan under your feet.
The charism of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
be with you.
Amen.
SALUTES OF THE CO—WORKERS
21 Timo Theos my co—worker
and Lucius and Jason and Sosipater my kindred
salute you:
22 I Tertius, who scribe this epistle,
salute you in Adonay:
23 Gaius my stranger
and of the whole ecclesia, salute you:
Erastus the administrator of the city salutes you
and Quartus a brother.
24 The charism of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
be with you all.
Amen.
DOXOLOGY
25 And to him who is able to establish you
according to my evangelism
and the preaching of Yah Shua Messiah,
according to the apocalypse of the mystery
having been hushed since eternal time,
26 but now manifested;
and through prophetic scriptures,
according to the order of the eternal Elohim,
made known to all goyim to the obedience of trust.
27 To Elohim, only wise,
be glory through Yah Shua Messiah to the eons.
Amen.

1 CORINTHIANS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paul Paulos, called to be an a called apostle
of Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah**
through the will of God **Elohim**,
and Sosthenes our brother,
2 Unto the church **ecclesia** of God **Elohim**
which is at **being in** Corinth,
to them that are *sanctified* **hallowed**
in Christ Jesus **Messiah Yah Shua**,
called to be *saints* **holy**,
with all that in every place call upon the name
of Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah** our Lord **Adonay**,
both their's and our's:
3 Grace be **Charism** unto you, and peace **shalom**,
from God **Elohim** our Father,
and from
the Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**.
CHARISM AND CHARISMA
4 I thank **eucharistize** my God **Elohim** always
on your behalf **concerning** you,
for the grace **charism** of God **Elohim** which is given you
by Jesus Christ in **Yah Shua Messiah**;
5 That in every thing **all** ye are enriched by **in** him,
in all utterance **word**, and in all knowledge;
6 Even **Exactly** as
the testimony **witness** of Christ **the Messiah**
was confirmed **established** in you:
7 So that ye come behind **fail** in no gift **charisma**;
waiting for **awaiting** the coming **apocalypse**
of our Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**:
8 Who shall also confirm **establish** you
unto the end **completion/shalom**,
that ye may be *blameless* — **unaccusable**
in the day
of our Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**.
9 God **Elohim** is faithful **trustworthy**,
by **through** whom ye were called
unto the fellowship **communion** of his Son
Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah** our Lord **Adonay**.
SCHISMS IN THE ECCLESIA
10 Now I beseech you, brethren, by **through** the name
of our Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
that ye all speak **word** the same *thing*,
and that there be no *divisions* **schisms** among you;
but that ye be *perfectly joined together* **prepared**
in the same mind and in the same **judgment opinion**.
11 For it hath been *declared* **evidenced** unto me
of **concerning** you, my brethren,
by them which are of the house of Chloe,
that there are contentions among you.
12 Now this I say **word**,
that every one **each** of you saith **wordeth**,
I am **indeed** of Paul **Paulos**; and I of Apollos;
and I of Cephah **Kepha**; and I of Christ **Messiah**.
13 Is Christ **the Messiah** divided?
was Paul crucified **Paulos staked** for you?
or were ye baptized in the name of Paul **Paulos**?
14 I thank God **eucharistize Elohim**
that I baptized none of you,
but **except** Crispus and Gaius;
15 Lest any should say
that I had baptized in *mine own* **my** name.
16 And I baptized also the household of Stephanas:
besides **finally**, I know not *whether if* I baptized any other.
17 For Christ sent **Messiah apostolized** me not to baptize,
but to preach the gospel **evangelize**:
not with **in** wisdom of words,
lest the cross **stake** of Christ **the Messiah**
should be *made of none effect* **voided**.
18 For the preaching **word** of the cross **stake**
is to them that *perish* **destruct indeed** foolishness;
but unto us which are saved
it is the power **dynamis** of God **Elohim**.
19 For it is written **scribed**,
I will **shall** destroy the wisdom of the wise,
and will bring to *nothing* **shall set aside**
the understanding **comprehension**
of the prudent **comprehending**.

Yesha Yah 29:14

1 CORINTHIANS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos, a called apostle of Yah Shua Messiah
through the will of Elohim
and Sossoes our brother:
2 To the ecclesia of Elohim being in Corinth,
hallowed in Messiah Yah Shua — called holy;
with all who in every place
call on the name of Yah Shua Messiah our Adonay
— both theirs and ours:
3 Charism to you
and shalom of Elohim our Father
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
CHARISM AND CHARISMA
4 I always eucharistize my Elohim, concerning you,
for the charism of Elohim
given you in Yah Shua Messiah;
5 that you enrich in him in all
— in all word and all knowledge;
6 exactly as the witness of the Messiah
establishes in you:
7 so that you fail in no charisma;
awaiting the apocalypse
of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah:
8 who also establishes you to completion/shalom,
— unaccusable
in the day of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
Elohim is trustworthy,
through whom you were called
to the communion of his Son
Yah Shua Messiah our Adonay.
SCHISMS IN THE ECCLESIA
10 And I beseech you brothers,
through the name of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
that you all word the same
and that there be no schisms among you;
and that you prepare
in the same mind and in the same opinion.
11 For it was evidenced to me
concerning you my brothers,
by them of Chloe,
that there are contentions among you.
12 And I word this — that each of you words,
I am indeed of Paulos; and I of Apollos;
and I of Kepha; and I of Messiah.
13 Is the Messiah divided?
Was Paulos staked for you?
Or were you baptized in the name of Paulos?
14 I eucharistize Elohim that I baptized none of you,
except Crispus and Gaius;
15 lest any say that I baptized in my name:
16 and I also baptized the house of Stephanas;
finally, I know not if I baptized any other.
17 For Messiah apostolized me
not to baptize but to evangelize:
not in wisdom of words
lest the stake of the Messiah be voided.
18 For the word of the stake
is to them who destruct, foolishness indeed;
and to us, being saved, the dynamis of Elohim.
19 For it is scribed, I destroy the wisdom of the wise
and set aside the comprehension of the comprehending.
Yesha Yah 29:14

1 CORINTHIANS 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

20 Where is the wise? where is the scribe?
where is the disputer of this world **eon**?
hath not *God Elohim* indeed
made foolish **follied** the wisdom of this world **cosmos**?
21 For after that **since** in the wisdom of *God Elohim*
the world by **cosmos through** wisdom
knew not *God Elohim*,
it pleased *God Elohim* well—approved
by **that through** the foolishness of preaching
to save them that *believe trust*.
22 For **Since** the *Jews require Yah Hudiym* ask a sign,
and the *Greeks Hellenes* seek after wisdom:
23 But we preach *Christ crucified Messiah* staked,
unto the *Jews Yah Hudiym*
indeed a *stumblingblock scandal*,
and unto the *Greeks Hellenes* foolishness;
24 But unto them which are called,
both *Jews Yah Hudiym* and *Greeks Hellenes*,
Christ Messiah the *power dynamis* of *God Elohim*,
and the wisdom of *God Elohim*.
25 Because the foolishness of *God Elohim*
is wiser than *men humanity*;
and the *weakness frailty* of *God Elohim*
is stronger **mightier** than *men humanity*.
26 For ye see your calling, brethren,
how that not many wise *men* after the flesh,
not many **mighty able**, not many **noble well—birthed**,
are called:
27 But *God Elohim* hath *chosen selected*
the foolish *things* of the world **cosmos**
to *confound shame* the wise;
and *God Elohim* hath *chosen selected*
the *weak things frailties* of the world **cosmos**
to *confound shame* the *things which are* mighty;
28 And *base things the ignoble* of the world **cosmos**,
and *things which are despised the belittled*,
hath *God chosen Elohim* selected,
yea, and things which are not those not being,
to *bring to nought inactivate* things that are **those being**:
29 That no flesh should *glory boast* in his *presence sight*.
30 But of him are ye in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*,
who of *God Elohim* is made **become** unto us
wisdom, and *righteousness justness*,
and *sanctification holiness*, and redemption:
31 That, *according exactly as it is written scribed*,
He that *glorieth boasteth*,
let him *glory boast* in the *Lord Yah Veh*.

Yirme Yah 9:23, 24

PAULOS EVANGELIZES THE MESSIAH

2 And I **also**, brethren, when I came to you,
came not with excellency of *speech word* or of wisdom,
declaring **evangelizing** unto you
the *testimony witness* of *God Elohim*.
2 For I *determined judged*
not to know *any thing aught* among you,
save *Jesus Christ except Yah Shua Messiah*,
and him *crucified staked*.
3 And I was **became** with you in *weakness frailty*,
and in *fear awe*, and in much trembling.
4 And my *speech word* and my preaching
was not with *enticing in persuasive* words
of *man's human* wisdom,
but in *demonstration manifestation* of the Spirit
and of *power dynamis*:
5 That your *faith trust* should not **stand be**
in the wisdom of *men humanity*,
but in the *power dynamis* of *God Elohim*.
6 *Howbeit But* we speak wisdom
among them that are *perfect completed/shalamed*:
yet not the wisdom of this world **eon**,
nor of the *princes archs* of this world **eon**,
that *come to nought inactivate*:
7 But we speak the wisdom of *God Elohim* in a mystery,
even the hidden wisdom — the secreted,
which *God ordained Elohim predetermined*
before the world **eons** unto our glory:
8 Which none of the *princes archs* of this world **eon** knew:

1 CORINTHIANS 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

20 Where is the wise?
Where is the scribe?
Where is the disputer of this eon?
Elohim indeed,
follies he not the wisdom of this cosmos?
21 For since in the wisdom of Elohim
the cosmos knew not Elohim through wisdom,
Elohim well—approved
that through the foolishness of preaching
to save them who trust.
22 Since the Yah Hudiym ask a sign
and the Hellenes seek after wisdom:
23 we also — we preach Messiah staked
— to the Yah Hudiym, indeed a scandal
and to the Hellenes foolishness;
24 and to the called
— both Yah Hudiym and Hellenes,
Messiah
— the dynamis of Elohim and the wisdom of Elohim.
25 Because the foolishness of Elohim
is wiser than humanity;
and the frailty of Elohim
mightier than humanity.
26 For you see your calling brothers,
how that not many wise after the flesh,
not many able, not many well—birthed:
27 But Elohim selects the foolish of the cosmos
to shame the wise;
and Elohim selects the frailties of the cosmos
to shame the mighty;
28 and the ignoble of the cosmos and the belittled
Elohim selects;
yes, and those not being to inactivate those being:
so that no flesh boasts in his sight.
29 And you of him — you are in Messiah Yah Shua,
who of Elohim becomes our wisdom and justness
and holiness and redemption:
30 that, exactly as scribed,
Whoever boasts, boast in the Yah Veh.
Yirme Yah 9:23, 24

PAULOS EVANGELIZES THE MESSIAH

2 And I also, brothers, when I came to you
I came not with excellency of word or of wisdom,
evangelizing to you the witness of Elohim.
2 For I judged to know naught among you,
except Yah Shua Messiah and him staked.
3 And I became with you in frailty
and in awe and in much trembling:
4 and my word and my preaching
was not in persuasive words of human wisdom
— but in manifestation of the Spirit and of dynamis:
5 that your trust not be in human wisdom
but in the dynamis of Elohim.
6 But we speak wisdom
among the completed/shalamed:
— yet neither the wisdom of this eon
nor of the archs of this eon who inactivate:
7 but we speak the wisdom of Elohim in a mystery,
— the secreted
which Elohim predetermined to our glory
preceding the eons:
8 which none of the archs of this eon knew:

1 CORINTHIANS 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for if — had they known it, they would **should** not **ever**
have *crucified* **staked** the Lord **Adonay** of glory.

THE SECRETED MYSTERY SECRETED

9 But **exactly** as it is written scribed,
Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard,
neither have *entered* **ascended**
into the heart of *man* **humanity**,
the things **those** which God **Elohim** hath prepared
for them that love him.

Yesha Yah 64:4

THE SECRETED MYSTERY UNVEILED

10 But God **Elohim** hath *revealed* **unveiled** them unto us
by **through** his Spirit:
for the Spirit searcheth all *things*,
yea, the *deep things* **depths** of God **Elohim**.
11 For what *man* **human**
knoweth *the things* **those** of a *man* **human**,
save **except** the spirit of *man* **humanity** which is in him?
even so *the things* **thus those** of God **Elohim**
knoweth no *man* **one**,
but **except** the Spirit of God **Elohim**.
12 Now we have *received* **taken**,
not the spirit of the *world* **cosmos**,
but the spirit which is of God **Elohim**;
that we might know *the things* **those**
that are *freely given* **granted charism** to us of God **Elohim**.
13 Which *things* also we speak, not in the words
which *man's* **human** wisdom *teacheth* **doctrinateth**,
but **in** which the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit** *teacheth* **doctrinateth**;
comparing **co—judging** spiritual *things* with spiritual.
14 But the *natural man* **soulical human**
receiveth not *the things* **those** of the Spirit of God **Elohim**:
for they are foolishness unto him:
neither can he know *them*,
because they are spiritually *discerned* **judged**.
15 But he that is spiritual **indeed** judgeth all *things*,
yet he himself is judged of no *man* **one**.
16 For who hath known the mind of *the Lord* **Adonay**,
that he may *instruct* **coalesce** him?
But we have the mind of *Christ* **Messiah**.

SPIRITUAL VS FLESHLY

3 And I, brethren,
could not speak unto you as unto spiritual,
but as unto *carnal* **fleshly**,
even as unto babes in *Christ* **Messiah**.
2 I have *fed* **given** you with milk **to drink**,
and not with *meat* **food**:
for *hitherto* ye were not **yet** able to bear it,
but neither yet now are ye able.
3 For ye are yet *carnal* **fleshly**:
for whereas there is among you *envying* **zeal**,
and *strife* **contention**, and divisions,
are ye not *carnal* **indeed** **fleshly**
and walk as *men* **humanity**?
4 For while one *saith* **wordeth**,
I **indeed** *am* of *Paul* **Paulos**; and another, I *am* of Apollos;
are ye not *carnal* **indeed** **fleshly**?
5 Who then is *Paul* **Paulos**, and who is Apollos,
but ministers by **through** whom ye *believed* **trusted**,
even as the *Lord* **Adonay** gave to every *man* **each**?
6 I have planted, Apollos *watered* **irrigated**;
but God *gave* the *increase* **Elohim** **grew**.
7 So then neither is he that planteth *any thing* **aught**,
neither he that *watereth* **irrigateth**;
but God **Elohim** that *giveth* the *increase* **groweth**.
8 Now he that planteth and he that *watereth* **irrigateth**
are one:
and every *man* **each** shall *receive* **take** his own reward
according to his own labour.
9 For we are *labourers* together **co—workers** with God **Elohim**:
ye are *God's* **husbandry** — **Elohim's** **cultivation**,
ye are *God's* **building** — **Elohim's** **edifice**.
10 According to the *grace* **charism** of God **Elohim**
which is given unto me,
as a wise *masterbuilder* **architect**,
I have *laid* **placed** the foundation,
and another buildeth thereon.
But let every *man* **take heed** **each see**
how he buildeth thereupon.

1 CORINTHIANS 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for if they had known,
they had never staked Adonay of glory.

THE SECRETED MYSTERY SECRETED

9 But exactly as scribed,
Neither eye saw
nor ear heard
nor ascended to the human heart
what Elohim prepared for them who love him.

Yesha Yah 64:4

THE SECRETED MYSTERY UNVEILED

10 But Elohim unveils to us through his Spirit:
for the Spirit searches all — yes, the depths of Elohim.
11 For what human knows those of a human,
except the spirit of humanity within him?
Even thus, those of Elohim, no one knows,
except the Spirit of Elohim.
12 And we take not the spirit of the cosmos
but the spirit of Elohim
— so that we know those who granted charism to us
by Elohim:
13 which also we speak
not in the words that human wisdom doctrinates,
but in that which the Holy Spirit doctrinates;
co—judging spiritual with spiritual.
14 And the soulical human
receives not those of the Spirit of Elohim:
for they are foolishness to him:
nor can he know,
because they are spiritually judged.
15 But whoever is spiritual, indeed judges all;
yet he himself is judged by no one.
16 For who knows the mind of Adonay,
to coalesce him?
And we — we have the mind of Messiah.

SPIRITUAL VS FLESHLY

3 And brothers,
I was not able to speak to you as to spiritual
but as to fleshly — as to babes in Messiah.
2 I gave you milk to drink and not food:
for you were not yet able,
but not even now are you yet able:
for you are yet fleshly:
for among you
there are zeal and contention and divisions:
are you not indeed fleshly and walk as humanity?
3 For while one words,
I indeed of Paulos; and another, I of Apollos;
are you not indeed fleshly?
4 So who is Paulos and who is Apollos
but ministers through whom you trusted
— even as Adonay gave each to all?
5 I plant, Apollos irrigates;
but Elohim grows.
6 So neither is whoever plants aught
nor whoever irrigates;
but Elohim who grows.
7 And whoever plants and whoever irrigates are one:
and each takes his own reward
according to his own labor.
8 For we are co—workers with Elohim:
— the cultivation of Elohim — the edifice of Elohim.
9 According to the charism Elohim gives me,
as a wise architect,
I place the foundation, and another builds:
and each sees how he builds.

1 CORINTHIANS 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

11 For other foundation can no *man* lay **one** place
 than that is laid,
 which is *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*.
 12 Now if any *man* **one** build upon this foundation
 gold, silver, precious stones,
 wood **timber**, hay **herbage**, stubble;
 13 *Every man's Each one's* work
 shall be *made* manifest:
 for the day shall *declare* **evidence** it,
 because it shall be *revealed* by **unveiled** in fire;
 and the fire shall *try every man's* **proof each one's** work
 of what sort *it is*.
 14 If any *man's* **one's** work abide
 which he hath built thereupon,
 he shall *receive* **take** a reward.
 15 If any *man's* **one's** work shall be burned,
 he shall *suffer* **have** loss:
 but he himself shall be saved; yet so **thus** as by **through** fire.

THE HOLY NAVE OF ELOHIM

16 Know ye not
 that ye are the *temple* **nave** of *God Elohim*,
 and that the Spirit of *God Elohim* dwelleth in you?
 17 If any *man* *defile* **one** *corrupts*
 the *temple* **nave** of *God Elohim*,
 him shall *God Elohim* destroy;
 for the *temple* **nave** of *God Elohim* is holy,
 which *temple* ye are.
 18 Let no *man* *deceive* **one** *seduce* himself.
 If any *man* **one** among you
seemeth **thinketh** to be wise in this *world* **eon**,
 let him become a fool, that he may *be* **become** wise.
 19 For the wisdom of this *world* **cosmos**
 is foolishness with *God Elohim*.
 For it is *written* **scribed**,
 He *taketh* **graspeth** the wise
 in their own *craftiness* **cunning**.
 20 And again, *The Lord Yah Veh* knoweth
 the *thoughts* **reasonings** of the wise, that they are vain.
 lyob 5:13, Psalm 94:11, 20
 21 *Therefore* **So** let no *man* *glory* **one** *boast* in *men* **humanity**.
 For all *things* are your's;
 22 Whether *Paul Paulos*, or *whether* Apollos,
 or *Cephas* **whether Kepha**, or *whether* the *world* **cosmos**,
 or *whether* life, or *whether* death,
 or *things* **whether the** present,
 or *things to come* **whether the** about to be;
 all are your's;
 23 And ye are *Christ's* **Messiah's**;
 and *Christ* **Messiah** is *God's* **Elohim's**.

THE MINISTRY

4 Let a *man* so *account* of us **humanity** reckon us **thus**,
 as of the *ministers* **attendants** of *Christ* **Messiah**,
 and *stewards* **administrators**
 of the mysteries of *God Elohim*.
 2 *Moreover* **Finally**
 it is *required* **sought** in *stewards* **administrators**,
 that a *man* **each** be found *faithful* **trustworthy**.
 3 But with me it is a *very small thing* **insignificant**
 that I should be judged of you,
 or of *man's* *judgment* **humanity's** day:
 yea **yet**, I judge not mine *own* self.
 4 For I *know nothing* by *myself* **am aware** of **naught**;
 yet am I not *hereby* **herein** justified:
 but he that judgeth me is *the Lord* **Adonay**.
 5 *Therefore* **So then**
 judge *nothing* **naught** before the *time* **season**,
 until **ever** *the Lord* **Adonay** come,
 who both *will bring* to **shall** light up
 the *hidden things* **secrets** of darkness,
 and *will make* **shall** manifest the counsels of the hearts:
 and then shall *every man* **each**
 have *praise* **become** the **halal** of *God Elohim*.
 6 And these *things*, brethren,
 I have in a *figure* **transfigured** to myself
 and to Apollos for your sakes;
 that ye might learn in us not to think of *men*
 above **beyond** that which is *written* **scribed**,
 that no **lest** one of you be puffed up for one against another.

1 CORINTHIANS 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

11 For no one can place another foundation
 than the *one* laid — Yah Shua Messiah:
 12 and if anyone build on this foundation
 gold, silver, precious stones, timber, herbage, stubble;
 13 the work of each becomes manifest:
 for the day evidences it
 because it unveils in fire;
 and the fire proofs the work of each
 — of what sort.
 14 If anyone builds a work that abides
 he takes a reward:
 15 if the work of anyone burns
 he has loss — but he himself is saved
 — yet thus as through fire.

THE HOLY NAVE OF ELOHIM

16 Know you not that you are the nave of Elohim
 and that the Spirit of Elohim dwells in you?
 17 If anyone corrupts the nave of Elohim,
 him Elohim destroys;
 for the nave of Elohim, which you are, is holy.
 18 Seduce not yourselves.
 If anyone among you
 thinks to be wise in this eon,
 may he become a fool, that he becomes wise.
 19 For the wisdom of this cosmos
 is foolishness with Elohim.
 For it is scribed,
 He grasps the wise in their own cunning.
 20 And again,
 Yah Veh knows the reasonings of the wise,
 that they are vain.
 lyob 5:13, Psalm 94:11, 20

21 So boast not in humanity: for all are yours;
 22 whether Paulos,
 whether Apollos,
 whether Kepha,
 whether the cosmos,
 whether life,
 whether death,
 whether the present,
 whether the about to be
 — all are to you;
 23 and you are to Messiah;
 and Messiah is to Elohim.

THE MINISTRY

4 Humanity, reckon us thus:
 as attendants of Messiah
 and administrators of the mysteries of Elohim.
 2 Finally it is sought in administrators,
 to find each trustworthy.
 3 And for me,
 it is insignificant to be judged by you,
 or of the day of humanity:
 yet, I judge not myself.
 4 For I am aware of naught;
 yet I am not justified herein:
 but he who judges me is Adonay.
 5 So judge naught preceding the season,
 until ever Adonay comes,
 who both lights the secrets of darkness
 and manifests the counsels of the hearts:
 and then each becomes the halal of Elohim.
 6 And these, brothers,
 I transfigure to me and to Apollos for your sakes;
 that in us,
 you learn to not think beyond what is scribed,
 lest one of you puff one against another.

1 CORINTHIANS 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 For who maketh **distinguisheth** thee
to differ from another?
and what hast thou
that thou *didst* **hast** not receive **taken**?
now if thou *didst* receive it **hast taken**,
why *dost thou glory* **boatest thou**,
as if thou hadst not received it **taken**?
8 Now **Already** ye are full **have gluttonized**,
now **already** ye are rich **have enriched**,
ye have reigned as **kings sovereigns**
without **apart from** us:
and **yet indeed**,
I would to God **O that ye did reign had reigned**,
that we also might **reign co—reign** with you.
9 For I think that **God Elohim**
hath set forth **manifested** us the apostles last,
as it were appointed **doomed** to death:
for we are made **become** a spectacle
unto the world **cosmos**,
and to angels, and to men **humanity**.
10 We are fools for **Christ's Messiah's** sake,
but ye are wise **thoughtful** in **Christ Messiah**;
we are weak **frail**, but ye are strong **mighty**;
ye are honourable **glorious**,
but we are despised **dishonoured**.
11 Even unto this present hour we both hunger, and thirst,
and are naked, and are buffeted **punched**,
and have no certain dwellingplace **unsettled**;
12 And labour, working with our own hands:
being reviled **abused**, we bless **eulogize**;
being persecuted, we suffer **tolerate** it:
13 Being defamed **Blasphemed**, we comfort:
we are made **become**
as the filth **offscouring** of the world **cosmos**,
and are the offscouring **offscrapings** of all things
unto this day **until now**.
14 I write **scribe** not these things to shame you,
but as my beloved sons **children**, I warn **remind** you.
15 For though **even if** ye have
ten thousand instructors **a myriad pedagogues**
in **Christ Messiah**,
yet have ye not many fathers:
for in **Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua**
I have begotten you through the gospel **evangelism**.
16 Wherefore **So** I beseech you,
be ye followers **mimickers** of me.
17 For this cause
have I sent unto you **Timotheus Timo Theos**,
who is my beloved son **child**,
and faithful **trustworthy** in the Lord **Adonay**,
who shall bring **remind** you
into remembrance of my ways
which be in **Christ Messiah**,
exactly as I teach **doctrinate** every where
in every church **ecclesia**.
18 Now some are puffed up,
as though I would **should** not come to you.
19 But I will **shall** come to you *shortly* **quickly**,
if the Lord will **ever Adonay willeth**,
and will **shall** know,
not the speech **word** of them which are puffed up,
but the power **dynamis**.
20 For the kingdom **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**
is not in word, but in power **dynamis**.
21 What will ye?
shall I come unto you with a rod,
or in love, and in the a spirit of meekness?

PAULOS REBUKES WHOREDOME

5 It is reported commonly I **actually** hear
that there is fornication **of whoredom** among you,
and such fornication **whoredom**
as is not so much as **even** named
among the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
that one should have his father's wife **woman**.
2 And ye are puffed up,
and have not **indeed** rather mourned,
that he that hath done this deed **work**
might be taken away from among you.
3 For I verily **indeed**,

1 CORINTHIANS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 For who distinguishes you?
And what have you that you have not taken?
and if you have taken,
why boast as if you had not taken?
8 Already you gluttonize;
already you enrich;
— reign as sovereigns apart from us:
and yet indeed, O that you reign;
so that we also co—reign.
9 For I think that Elohim
manifests us the apostles last
as doomed to death:
for we become a spectacle
to the cosmos and to angels and to humanity:
10 We are fools for sake of the Messiah
— and you thoughtful in Messiah;
we are frail — and you mighty;
you glorious — and we dishonored.
11 Even to this present hour
we both famish and thirst
— naked and punched and unsettled;
12 and labor, working with our own hands:
abused, we eulogize;
persecuted, we tolerate;
13 blasphemed, we comfort;
we become as the offscouring of the cosmos,
the offscrapings of all until now.
14 I scribe these not to shame you,
but as my beloved children, I remind you.
15 For even if you have
a myriad pedagogues in Messiah,
yet not many fathers:
for in Messiah Yah Shua
I birthed you through the evangelism.
16 So I beseech you, become mimickers of me.
17 For this cause I sent you Timo Theos,
my beloved child and trustworthy in Adonay,
to remind you of my ways in Messiah,
exactly as I doctrinate every where in every ecclesia.
18 Now some are puffed as though I not come to you.
19 But I come to you quickly whenever Adonay wills
— and know not the word of them who are puffed,
but the dynamis.
20 For the sovereigndom of Elohim is not in word
but in dynamis.
21 What will you?
That I come to you with a rod?
Or in love and a spirit of meekness?

PAULOS REBUKES WHOREDOME

5 I actually hear of whoredom among you;
and such whoredom
as is not even named among the goyim;
that one has the woman of his father.
2 And you puff up, and indeed rather not mourn,
than take away from among you
whoever does this work.

3 For I indeed,

1 CORINTHIANS 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

as absent in body, but present in spirit,
have judged already, as though I were present,
concerning him that hath *so done this deed* **thus worked**,
4 In the name
of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
when ye are gathered together, and my spirit,
with the *power* **dynamis**
of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
5 To deliver such an one unto Satan
for **unto** the *destruction* **ruin** of the flesh,
that the spirit may be saved
in the day of the *Lord Jesus* **Adonay Yah Shua**.
6 Your *glorying* **boasting** is not good.
Know ye not that a little *leaven* **fermentation**
leaveneth **fermenteth** the whole lump?
7 **So** Purge out *therefore* the old *leaven* **fermentation**,
that ye may be a new lump,
exactly as ye are *unleavened* **as matsah**.
For even *Christ* **Messiah** our *passover* **pasach**
is sacrificed for us:
8 *Therefore* **So** let us *keep the feast* **celebrate**,
not with **in** old *leaven* **fermentation**,
neither with **in** the *leaven* **fermentation**
of malice and *wickedness* **evil**;
but with **in** the *unleavened bread* **matsah**
of sincerity and truth.
9 I *wrote* **scribed** unto you in an epistle
not to *company* **co—mingle**
with *fornicators* **whoremongers**:
10 Yet **most certainly** not *altogether*
with the *fornicators* **whoremongers** of this *world* **cosmos**,
or with the *covetous* **avaricious**,
or *extortioners* **plunderers**, or with idolaters;
for then must ye needs **otherwise be ye indebted**
to go out of the *world* **cosmos**.
11 But now I have *written* **scribed** unto you
not to *keep company* **co—mingle**,
if **whenever** any *man* **one** that is *called a* **named** brother
be **either** a *fornicator* **whoremonger**,
or *covetous* **avaricious**, or an idolater,
or a *railer* **an abuser**, or a *drunkard* **an intoxicator**,
or an *extortioner* **a plunderer**;
with such an one *no not* **never** to eat.
12 For what have I to do
to judge them also that are without?
do not ye **indeed** judge them that are within?
13 But them that are without *God* **Elohim** judgeth.
Therefore put **So take** away from among yourselves
that *wicked person* **evil**.

THE HOLY SUING THE HOLY

6 Dare any of you,
having a matter *against* **toward** another,
go to law before **be judged by** the unjust,
and not **indeed before** **by the saints** **holy**?
2 Do **Know** ye not *know*
that the *saints* **holy** shall judge the *world* **cosmos**?
and if the *world* **cosmos** shall be judged **by in** you,
are ye unworthy to judge the *smallest matters* **lesser**?
3 Know ye not that we shall judge angels?
how much more
things that pertain to **those of** this *life* **existence**?
4 if **then so indeed, whenever** ye have judgments
of *things pertaining to this life* **this existence**,
set them to judge
who are *least esteemed* **belittled** in the *church* **ecclesia**.
5 I *speak word* to your shame **you**.
Is it **so thus**,
that there *is not a* **be no** wise *man* among you?
no, not even one that shall be able to *judge* **discern**
between **among** his brethren?
6 But brother *goeth to law with* **judges** brother,
and that *before* **by** the *unbelievers* **trustless**.
7 *Now therefore* **So already indeed**
there is *utterly* **actually** a fault among you,
because ye *go to law one* **have judgments**
with *another* **your own**.
Why *do* **be** ye not rather *take wrong* **injured**?
why *do* **indeed be** ye not rather
suffer yourselves to be defrauded **cheated**?

1 CORINTHIANS 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

as being absent in body and being present in spirit
— as being present,
I already judged him who thus works.
4 In the name of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
when you co—gather with my spirit
and with the *dynamis*
of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
to deliver such an one to Satan
— to ruin the flesh — to save the spirit
in the day of Adonay Yah Shua.
6 Your boasting is not good.
Know you not that a little fermentation
ferments the whole lump?
7 So purge out the old fermentation
to be a new lump exactly as matsah.
For even Messiah our pasach is sacrificed for us:
8 so celebrate — neither in old fermentation
nor in the fermentation of malice and evil;
but in the matsah of sincerity and truth.
9 I scribed to you in an epistle
to not co—mingle with whoremongers:
10 yet most certainly not
with the whoremongers of this cosmos
or with the avaricious or plunderers or with idolaters;
otherwise you are indebted to go from the cosmos.
11 And now I scribe you to not co—mingle;
whenever anyone named brother
— either a whoremonger or avaricious or an idolater
or an abuser or an intoxicator or a plunderer;
never ever eat with such a one.
12 For what have I to do
to also judge those who are outside?
And not indeed judge those who are inside?
13 And those who are outside Elohim judges.
So take away that evil from among yourselves.

THE HOLY SUING THE HOLY

6 Dare any of you, having a matter toward another,
be judged by the unjust?
And not indeed by the holy?
2 Know you not that the holy are to judge the cosmos?
and if the cosmos judges you
are you unworthy to judge the lesser?
3 Know you not that we are to judge angels?
How much more those of this existence?
4 So indeed
whenever you have judgments of this existence,
set the belittled in the ecclesia to judge.
5 I word to shame you.
Is it thus, that there are no wise among you?
— not even one able to discern among his brothers?
6 But brother judges brother
— and that by the trustless.
7 So indeed already
there is actually a fault among you
because you have judgments with your own.
Why not rather be injured?
Why indeed not rather be cheated?

1 CORINTHIANS 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 Nay **Rather**, ye do wrong **injure**, and defraud **cheat**,
and that your brethren.
9 **Or** Know ye not
that the *unrighteous* **unjust** shall not inherit
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**?
Be not *deceived* **seduced**:
neither *fornicators* **whoremongers**, nor idolaters,
nor adulterers, nor effeminate,
nor *abusers of themselves with mankind* **homosexuals**,
10 Nor thieves, nor *covetous* **avaricious**,
nor *drunkards* **intoxicators**, nor *revilers* **abusers**,
nor *extortioners* **plunderers**,
shall inherit the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of *God* **Elohim**.
11 And *such* **these** were some of you:
but ye are *washed* **bathed**,
but ye are *sanctified* **hallowed**,
but ye are justified
in the name of the *Lord Jesus* **Adonay Yah Shua**,
and by **in** the Spirit of our *God* **Elohim**.
12 All *things* are *lawful* unto **allowed** me,
but all *things* are not *expedient* **beneficial**:
all *things* are *lawful* for **allowed** me,
but I *will* **shall** not be *brought*
under the *power* **authority** of any.
13 *Meats* **Food** for the belly, and the belly for *meats* **food**:
but *God* **Elohim** shall *destroy* **inactivate** both
it **these** and *them* **those**.
Now the body is not for *fornication* **whoredom**,
but for the *Lord* **Adonay**;
and the *Lord* **Adonay** for the body.
14 And *God* **Elohim** hath both raised up the *Lord* **Adonay**,
and *will* **shall** also raise up us
by **through** his *own* **power** **dynamis**.
15 Know ye not
that your bodies are the members of *Christ* **Messiah**?
so shall I *then* take the members of *Christ* **the Messiah**,
and make them the members of *an harlot* **a whore**?
God **forbid** **So be it not**.
16 *What?* **Or** know ye not
that he which is joined to *an harlot* **a whore** is one body?
for two, saith he, shall be **into** one flesh.

Genesis 2:24

17 But he that is joined unto the *Lord* **Adonay**
is one spirit.
18 Flee *fornication* **whoredom**.
Every sin *that a man if* **whenever a human** doeth
is without the body;
but he that *committeth* **fornication** **whoreth**
sinneth *against* **unto** his own body.
19 *What?* **Or** know ye not that your body
is the *temple* **nave** of the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**
which is in you,
which ye have of *God* **Elohim**, and ye are not your own?
20 For ye are bought with a price:
therefore **so** glorify *God* **Elohim** in your body,
and in your spirit, which are *God's* **Elohim's**.

INTIMATE RELATIONSHIPS

7 Now concerning the *things* **those**
whereof **about which** ye wrote **scribed** unto me:
It is good for a *man* **human** not to touch a woman.
2 *Nevertheless*, **And**
to avoid **fornication** **because of whoredom**,
let every *man* **each** have his own *wife* **woman**,
and let every *woman* **each** have her own *husband* **man**.
3 *Let the husband* **render**
The man is indebted to give
unto the *wife* **due benevolence** **woman well—mindedness**:
and likewise also the *wife* **woman**
unto the *husband* **man**.
4 The *wife* **woman**
hath not *power* **authority** of her own body,
but the *husband* **man**:
and likewise also the *husband* **man**
hath not *power* **authority** of his own body,
but the *wife* **woman**.

1 CORINTHIANS 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 But you
— you rather injure and cheat your brothers.
9 Or know you not
the unjust inherit not the sovereigndom of Elohim?
be not seduced:
neither whoremongers
nor adulterers
nor effeminate
nor homosexuals
10 nor thieves
nor avaricious
nor intoxicators
nor abusers
nor plunderers
inherit the sovereigndom of Elohim.
11 And some of you were these:
but you are bathed
but you are hallowed
but you are justified
in the name of Adonay Yah Shua
and in the Spirit of our Elohim.
12 I am allowed all;
but all are not beneficial:
I am allowed all
but I am not under the authority of any.
13 Food for the belly and the belly for food:
but Elohim inactivates both these and those.
And the body is not for whoredom,
but for Adonay;
and Adonay for the body:
14 raised Adonay and raises us through his dynamis.
15 Know you not
that your bodies are the members of Messiah?
So take I the members of the Messiah
and make them the members of a whore?
So be it not.
16 Or know you not
that whoever joins a whore is one body?
For two, says he, become one flesh.
Genesis 2:24
17 And whoever joins Adonay is one spirit.
18 Flee whoredom.
Every sin a human ever does is outside the body;
and whoever whores, sins against his own body.
19 Or know you not
that your body is the nave of the Holy Spirit in you
which you have of Elohim
— and you are not your own?
20 For you are bought with a price:
so glorify Elohim in your body
and in your spirit, which are of Elohim.

INTIMATE RELATIONSHIPS

7 Now concerning those
about which you scribed me:
It is good for a human to not touch a woman.
2 And because of whoredom
each is to hold his own woman
and each her own man.
3 The man is indebted
to give well—mindedness to the woman:
and likewise also the woman to the man.
4 The woman has not authority of her own body
— but the man:
and likewise also the man
has not authority of his own body
— but the woman.

1 CORINTHIANS 7

exeGes ready research BIBLE

5 Defraud **Cheat** ye not one the other,
except it be **somehow ever**
with consent **by symphonizing** for a *time* **season**,
that ye may give yourselves **have leisure**
to **for** fasting and prayer; and come together again,
that **lest** Satan tempt **test** you not
for your *incontinency* **restraint**.

6 But I *speak* **word** this by *permission* **experience**,
and not of *commandment* **by order**.

7 For I would **will**
that all *men* were **humanity be** even as I myself.
But *every man* **each**
hath his *proper gift* **own charisma of God Elohim**,
one after this manner **indeed thus**,
and another after that **thus**.

8 So I say **word** therefore to the unmarried and widows,
It is good for them *if* **whenever** they abide even as I.
9 But if they cannot *contain* **control themselves**,
let them marry:
for it is better to marry than to *burn* **be fiery**.

10 And unto the married I *command* **evangelize**,
yet not I, but *the Lord* **Adonay**,
Let not the *wife* depart **woman separate**
from her *husband* **man**:

11 But and *if* and **whenever** she *depart* **separate**,
let her *remain* **abide** unmarried
or be reconciled to her *husband* **man**:
and let not the *husband* **man**
put away **forsake** his *wife* **woman**.

12 But to the rest *speak* **word** I, not *the Lord* **Adonay**:
If any brother hath a *wife* **woman**
that *believeth* not — **trustless**,
and she *be pleased* **thinks well** to dwell with him,
let him not *put her away* **forsake her**.

13 And the woman which hath an *husband* **a man**
that *believeth* not — **trustless**,
and if he *be pleased* **thinks well** to dwell with her,
let her not *leave* **forsake** him.

14 For the *unbelieving husband* **trustless man**
is *sanctified* by **hallowed in** the *wife* **woman**,
and the *unbelieving wife* **trustless woman**
is *sanctified* by **hallowed in** the *husband* **man**:
else **then** were your children *unclean* **impure**;
but now are they holy.

15 But if the *unbelieving* depart **trustless separate**,
let him *depart* **separate**.

A brother or a sister is not *under bondage* **subservient**
in such cases:
but *God Elohim* hath called us to *peace* **in shalom**.

16 For what knowest thou, O *wife* **woman**,
whether thou shalt save thy *husband* **man**?
or how knowest thou, O man,
whether thou shalt save thy *wife* **woman**?

17 But **Except** as *God Elohim*
hath *distributed* **imparted** to *every man* **each**,
as *the Lord* **Adonay** hath called *every one* **to each**,
so **thus** let him walk.
And so **thus** ordain I in all *churches* **ecclesiae**.

CIRCUMCISION, DECIRCUMCISION, UNCIRCUMCISION

18 Is any *man* called being circumcised?
let him not *become uncircumcised* **decircumcise**.
Is any called in uncircumcision?
let him not *be circumcised* **circumcise**.

19 Circumcision is *nothing* **naught**,
and uncircumcision is *nothing* **naught**,
but the *keeping* **guarding**
of the *commandments* **misvoth** of *God Elohim*.

20 Let *every man* **each** abide in *the same* **that** calling
wherein he was called.

21 Art thou called *being* a servant?
care **concern** not for it:
but if thou mayest be *made free* **able to be liberated**,
use it rather.

22 For he that is called in *the Lord* **Adonay**,
being a servant,
is *the Lord's freeman* **Adonay's liberated**:
likewise also he that is called,
being free **liberated**, is *Christ's* **Messiah's** servant.

23 Ye are bought with a price;

1 CORINTHIANS 7

exeGes companion BIBLE

5 Cheat not one another,
except somehow ever by symphonizing for a season,
that you have leisure for fasting and prayer;
and come together again
— lest Satan test you for your restraint.

6 — and I word this by experience and not by order.

7 For I will that all humanity be even as I myself:
but each has his own charisma of Elohim,
indeed one thus and one thus.

8 So I word to the unmarried and widows,
It is good for them whenever they abide even as I:
and if they cannot control themselves,
have them marry:
for it is better to marry than *be* fiery.

10 And to the married, I evangelize
— not I but Adonay,
that the woman not separate from her man:
but and whenever she separates,
she is to abide unmarried or reconcile to her man:
the man is not to forsake his woman.

12 And to the rest, I word — not Adonay:
if any brother has a woman — trustless
and she thinks well to dwell with him
he is not to forsake her.

13 And the woman has a man — trustless
and he thinks well to dwell with her
she is not to forsake him.

14 For the trustless man is hallowed in the woman
and the trustless woman is hallowed in the man:
else then your children are impure;
but now they are holy.

15 And if the trustless separate, separate.
A brother or a sister is not subservient in such:
and Elohim calls us in shalom.

16 For what know you, O woman,
whether you save your man?
Or how know you, O man,
whether you save your woman?
Except as Elohim imparts to each,
as Adonay calls to each,
thus walk:
and thus I ordain in all ecclesiae.

CIRCUMCISION, DECIRCUMCISION, UNCIRCUMCISION

18 Is any called being circumcised?
Decircumcise not.
Is any called in uncircumcision?
Circumcise not.

19 Circumcision is naught
and uncircumcision is naught
but the guarding of the misvoth of Elohim.

20 Each of you,
abide in that calling wherein you are called.

21 Are you called a servant?
Concern not:
but if you are able to be liberated, use it rather.

22 For whoever in Adonay is called, Servant,
is the liberated of Adonay:
likewise also he that is called, Liberated,
is the servant of Messiah.

23 You are bought with a price;

1 CORINTHIANS 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

24 be not ye the servants of *men* **humanity**.
Brethren, let every *man* **each**, wherein he is called,
therein abide with *God* **Elohim**.

VIRGINS

25 Now concerning virgins
I have no *commandment of the Lord* **order from Adonay**:
yet I give my *judgment* **opinion**,
as one that hath *obtained mercy* **been mercied**
of the *Lord* **Adonay** to be *faithful* **trustworthy**.

26 **So** I *suppose therefore* **presume**
that this is good for the present *distress* **necessity**,
I say, that it is good for a *man* **so human thus** to be.
27 Art thou bound unto a *wife* **woman**?
seek not to be loosed.

Art thou loosed from a *wife* **woman**?
seek not a *wife* **woman**.
28 But and *if whenever* **whenever** thou marry, thou hast not sinned;
and *if whenever* **whenever** a virgin marry, she hath not sinned.
Nevertheless

such shall have *trouble* **tribulation** in the flesh:
but I spare you.
29 But this I say, brethren,
the *time* **season** is *short* **shortened**:

it *remaineth* **finally**,
that both they that have *wives* **women**
be as though they had none;
30 And they that weep, as though they wept not;
and they that *rejoice* **cheer**,

as though they *rejoiced* **cheered** not;
and they that buy, as though they *possessed* **held** not;
31 And they that use this *world* **cosmos**,

as not abusing it:
for the *fashion* **configuration** of this *world* **cosmos**
passeth away.

32 But I *would* **will**
have you without carefulness **that you be unanxious**.
He that is unmarried *careth* **is anxious**
for the *things that belong to the Lord* **that of Adonay**,

how he may please the *Lord* **Adonay**:
33 But he that is married *careth* **is anxious**
for the *things that are that* of the *world* **cosmos**,
how he may please his *wife* **woman**.

34 There is difference *also*
between a *wife* **woman** and a virgin.
The unmarried woman *careth* **is anxious**
for the *things that* of the *Lord* **Adonay**,
that she may be holy both in body and in spirit:
but she that is married *careth* **is anxious**
for the *things that* of the *world* **cosmos**,
how she may please her *husband* **man**.

35 And this I *speak* **word** for your own *profit* **benefit**;
not that I may *cast a snare* **lay a noose** upon you,
but for that which is *comely* **honourable**,
and that ye may *attend* **with a view**
upon the *Lord* **Adonay**

without distraction **to undistracted devotion**.
36 But if any *man* **think** **one presume**
that he *behaveth himself uncomely* **misbehaveth**
toward his virgin,

if whenever she *pass the flower of her age* **is beyond her acme**,
and *need so require* **thus becometh indebted**,
let him do what he *will* **willeth**, he sinneth not:
let them marry.

37 *Nevertheless* **nd**
he that standeth *stedfast* **grounded** in his heart,
having no *necessity* **distress**,

but hath *power over* **authority concerning** his own will,
and hath *so decreed* **thus judged** in his heart
that he *will keep* **shall guard** his virgin, doeth well.
38 So then he that *giveth her in marriage* **marrieth her off**
doeth well;

but he that *giveth her not in marriage* **marrieth her not off**
doeth better.

39 The *wife* **woman** is bound by the *law* **torah**
as long *time* as her *husband* **man** liveth;
but *if whenever* her *husband be dead* **man sleeps**,
she is *at liberty* **liberated** to be married to whom she will;
only in the *Lord* **Adonay**.

1 CORINTHIANS 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

24 be not the servants of humanity.
Brothers — each, wherein you are called,
abide therein with Elohim.

VIRGINS

25 Now concerning virgins
I have no order from Adonay;
still I give my opinion:
as one mercied by Adonay, to be trustworthy.

26 **So** I presume
that this is good for the present necessity
— that this is good for a human thus to be.
27 Are you bound to a woman?
Seek not to be loosed.

Are you loosed from a woman?
Seek not a woman.
28 But and whenever you marry, you sin not;
and whenever a virgin marries, she sins not:
and such have tribulation in the flesh:
and I spare you.

29 And I say this, brothers, the season is shortened:
finally,

that both whoever have women
be as not having;
30 and whoever weeps
as not weeping;
and whoever cheers
as not cheering;

and whoever buys
as not holding;
31 and whoever uses this cosmos
as not abusing:

for the configuration of this cosmos passes away.

32 But I will that you be unanxious.
whoever is unmarried
is anxious for that of Adonay
— how to please Adonay:

33 but whoever is married
is anxious for that of the cosmos
— how to please his woman.

34 There is difference between a woman and a virgin.
The unmarried woman
is anxious for that of Adonay
— to be holy, both in body and in spirit:

but whoever is married
is anxious for that of the cosmos
— how to please her man.

35 And I word this for your own benefit
— not to lay a noose upon you;
but for what is honorable
with a view upon Adonay to undistracted devotion.

36 And if anyone presumes
to misbehave toward his virgin,
whenever she is beyond her acme
and thus becomes indebted,

to do as he wills, he sins not — have them marry.

37 And whoever stands grounded in his heart,
not distressed,
and has authority concerning his own will
and thus judges in his heart to guard his virgin
does well.

38 So whoever marries her off does well;
and whoever marries her not off does better.

39 The woman is bound by the torah
as long time as her man lives;
but whenever her man sleeps,
she is liberated to marry whom she so wills
— only in Adonay.

1 CORINTHIANS 7—9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

40 But she is happier **blessed be she**
if **whenever** she so **thus** abide, after my *judgment opinion*:
and I think also that I have the Spirit of God **Elohim**.

IDOL SACRIFICES

8 Now as touching concerning
things offered unto idols **idol sacrifices**,
we know that we all have knowledge.
Knowledge puffeth up, but *charity* **love** edifieth.
2 And if any *man* **one** think,
that he knoweth *any thing* **ought**,
he knoweth *nothing* **naught** yet
3 **exactly** as he *ought* **needeth** to know.
But if any *man* **one** love God **Elohim**,
4 the same **this** is known of him.
As **So** concerning *therefore* the eating of those things
that are offered in sacrifice unto idols **idol sacrifices**,
we know that an idol
is *nothing* **naught** in the world **cosmos**,
and that there is none other God but **Elohim** except one.
5 For though if **even** there be those
that are called gods **worded** **elohim**,
whether in *heaven* **the heavens** or in earth,
(**exactly** as there be gods **elohim** many,
and lords **adoniyim** many.)
6 But to us, *there is but* one God **Elohim**, the Father,
of whom are all things **is**, and we in him;
and one Lord **Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
by **through** whom are all things **is**,
and we by **through** him.
7 *Howbeit* **Yet**
there is not in every *man* **one** that knowledge:
for some with conscience of the idol
unto *this hour* **until now** eat it
as a thing offered unto an idol **sacrifice**;
and their conscience being weak **frail** is defiled **stained**.
8 But **meat food**
commendeth **presenteth** us not to God **Elohim**:
for neither, if **whenever** we eat,
are we the better **do we superabound**;
neither, if **whenever** we eat not, are we the worse **do we lack**.
9 But take heed **see**,
lest by any means **somehow**
this *liberty* **authority** of your's
become a *stumblingblock* **stumbling**
to them that are weak **frail**.
10 For if **whenever** any *man* **one**
see thee which hast knowledge
sit at meat **repose** in the idol's temple **an idolion**,
shall not **indeed** the conscience of him
which is weak **being frail**
be emboldened **edified** to eat
those things which are offered to idols **idol sacrifices**;
11 And through thy knowledge
shall the weak **frail** brother *perish* **destruct**,
for whom *Christ* **Messiah** died?
12 But when ye sin so *against* **thus** unto the brethren,
and wound **strike** their weak **frail** conscience,
ye sin *against* **Christ** unto **Messiah**.
13 *Wherefore* **So**,
if *meat* make **food scandalize** my brother to offend,
I will **shall no way** eat no *flesh* **meat**
while unto the world standeth **eons**,
lest I make **scandalize** my brother to offend.

THE AUTHORITY OF THE HOLY

9 Am I not an apostle? am I not *free* **liberated**?
have I not **indeed** seen
Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah** our Lord **Adonay**?
are not ye my work in the Lord **Adonay**?
2 If I be not an apostle unto others,
yet *doubtless* **indeed** I am to you:
for the seal of mine apostleship
are ye in the Lord **Adonay**.
3 *Mine answer* **My pleading**
to them that *do examine* **judge** me is this,
4 Have we not *power* **authority** to eat and to drink?
5 Have we not *power* **authority** to lead about a sister,
a *wife* **woman**, as well as *other* **the rest of the** apostles,
and as the brethren of the Lord **Adonay**,
and *Cephas* **Kepha**?

1 CORINTHIANS 7—9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

40 But blessed — whenever she thus abides,
after my opinion:
and I also think I have the Spirit of Elohim.

IDOL SACRIFICES

8 And concerning idol sacrifices:
We know that we all have knowledge.
Knowledge puffs, but love edifies.
2 And if anyone thinks he knows ought,
still he knows naught, exactly as he needs to know.
3 And if anyone loves Elohim, he knows this .
4 So, concerning the eating of idol sacrifices,
we know that an idol is naught in the cosmos
and that there is no other Elohim except one.
5 For even if there are those who are worded, elohim,
whether in the heavens or in earth,
exactly as there are many elohim and many adoniyim
6 — yet to us, one Elohim the Father,
by whom all is, and we in him;
— and one Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
through whom all is and we through him.
7 Yet that knowledge is not in everyone:
for until now some with conscience of the idol
eat as an idol sacrifice;
and their conscience being frail is stained.
8 But food presents us not to Elohim:
for whenever we eat, we superabound not;
and whenever we eat not, we lack not.
9 But see — lest somehow your authority
becomes a stumbling to the frail.
10 For whenever anyone has knowledge,
and sees you repose in an idolion,
is not indeed the conscience of the frail
edified to eat idol sacrifices
11 — and through your knowledge,
the frail brother, for whom Messiah died, destructs?
12 And when you sin thus to the brothers
and strike their frail conscience
you sin to Messiah.
13 So if food scandalizes my brother,
I no way eat meat to the eons,
lest I scandalize my brother.

THE AUTHORITY OF THE HOLY

9 Am I not an apostle?
Am I not liberated?
Saw I not indeed Yah Shua Messiah our Adonay?
Are you not my work in Adonay?
2 If I am not an apostle to others,
yet indeed, I am to you:
for you are the seal of my apostleship in Adonay.
3 My pleading to them who judge me is this:
4 Have we not authority to eat and to drink?
5 Have we not authority
to lead about a sister, a woman,
as well as the rest of the apostles
and as the brothers of Adonay and Kepha?

1 CORINTHIANS 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 Or I only and Barnabas Bar Nabi,
have not we *power authority*
to *forbear working not work?*

7 Who goeth a warfare any time **ever warreth**
at his own charges **wages?**
who planteth a vineyard,
and eateth not of the fruit thereof?
or who *feedeth shepherdeth a flock shepherddom,*
and eateth not of the milk of the *flock shepherddom?*

8 Say **Speak** I these things as a *man human?*
or saith **indeed wordeth** not the *law torah* the same also?

9 For it is *written scribed*
in the *law torah* of Moses **Mosheh,**
Thou shalt not muzzle the mouth of the ox
that treadeth out the corn.
Doth God take care for Concerneth Elohim with oxen?
Deuteronomy 25:4

10 Or saith **wordeth** he it
altogether most certainly for our sakes?
For our sakes, *no doubt indeed,*
this is *written scribed:*
that he that ploweth *should is indebt* to plow in hope;
and that he that thresheth in hope
should be *partaker partake* of his hope.

11 If we have sown unto you *spiritual things spirituals,*
is it a *great thing so mega*
if we shall reap **harvest** your *carnal things fleshlies?*

12 If others
be *partakers partake* of this *power authority* over you,
are not we rather?
Nevertheless Yet we have not used this *power authority;*
but *suffer endure* all things,
lest we should **somehow** hinder
the *gospel evangelism* of *Christ the Messiah.*

13 Do **Know** ye not *know* that they
which *minister about holy things work the priestal*
live **eat** of the *things of the temple priestal precinct?*
and they which wait at **on** the *sacrifice* altar
are *partakers co—partakers* with the *sacrifice* altar?

14 Even so **thus** hath the *Lord Adonay* ordained
that they which *preach evangelize the gospel evangelism*
should live of the *gospel evangelism.*

15 But I have used none of these *things:*
neither have I *written scribed* these *things,*
that it should **thus** be *so done unto in* me:
for it were *better good* for me to die,
rather than that any *man one*
should *make my glorying void my boasting.*

16 For *though I preach the gospel whenever I evangelize,*
I have *nothing naught* to *glory of boast:*
for necessity is laid upon me; yea, *woe is* unto me,
if **whenever** I *preach evangelize* not the *gospel!*

17 For if I *do transact this thing willingly voluntarily,*
I have a reward:
but if *against my will involuntarily,*
a *dispensation of the gospel an administration*
is *committed entrusted* unto me.

THE REWARD OF THE HOLY

18 So What is my reward *then?*
Verily that, when I *preach the gospel evangelize,*
I may *make place*
the *gospel evangelism* of *Christ the Messiah*
without charge,
that I abuse not my *power authority*
in the *gospel evangelism.*

19 For though I be *free liberated* from all *men,*
yet have I *made myself servant I am subservient* unto all,
that I might gain the more.

20 And unto the *Jews Yah Hudiym,*
I became as a *Jew Yah Hudiym,*
that I might gain the *Jews Yah Hudiym;*
to them that are under the *law torah,*
as under the *law torah,*
that I might gain them that are under the *law torah;*

21 To them that are *without law untorahed,*
as *without law untorahed,*
(being not *without law untorahed* to *God Elohim,*
but *under the law entorahed* to *Christ Messiah.*)
that I might gain them that are *without law untorahed.*

1 CORINTHIANS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 Or only I and Bar Nabi,
have we not authority to not work?

7 Who wars at his own wages?
Who plants a vineyard and eats not of the fruit?
Or who shepherds a shepherddom
and eats not of the milk of the shepherddom?

8 Speak I these as a human?
Or indeed words not the torah the same also?

9 For it is scribed in the torah of Mosheh,
Muzzle not the mouth of the ox
that treads the corn.

Deuteronomy 25:4

10 Is Elohim concerned with oxen?
Or words he most certainly for our sakes?
Indeed, for our sakes, this is scribed:
that whoever plows
is indebted to plow in hope;
and whoever threshes in hope
partakes of his hope.

11 If we spore spirituals to you,
is it so mega if we harvest your fleshlies?
If others partake of this authority over you,
— not rather we?
Yet we use not this authority, but endure all;
lest somehow
we hinder the evangelism of the Messiah.

12 Know you not that whoever works the priestal
eats of the priestal precinct?
and whoever waits on the sacrifice altar
are co—partakers with the sacrifice altar?

13 Even thus has Adonay ordained
that whoever evangelizes the evangelism
lives by the evangelism.

14 And I neither use these:
nor scribe I these to be thus in me:
for it is good for me to die,
rather than anyone void my boasting.

15 For whenever I evangelize, I have naught to boast:
for necessity is laid upon me;
yes, woe to me, whenever I evangelize not!

16 For if I transact this voluntarily,
I have a reward:
but if involuntarily,
an administration is entrusted to me.

THE REWARD OF THE HOLY

17 What so is my reward?
That when I evangelize,
I place the evangelism of the Messiah without charge,
that I abuse not my authority in the evangelism.

18 For though I am liberated from all
yet I am subservient to all
— to gain the more.

19 And to the Yah Hudiym I become as a Yah Hudiym
to gain the Yah Hudiym;
to them under torah, as under torah,
to gain them under torah;

20 to them untorahed, as untorahed,
not being untorahed to Elohim,
but entorahed to Messiah,
to gain the untorahed.

1 CORINTHIANS 9, 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

22 To the weak **frail** became I as weak **frail**,
 that I might gain the weak **frail**:
 I am *made all things to all men* **become all to all**,
 that I might *by all means* **most certainly** save some.
 23 And this I do for the *gospel's evangelism's* sake,
 that I might be *partaker thereof with you* a **co—partaker**.
 24 Know ye not that they which run in a **race stadium**
indeed run all,
 but one *receiveth taketh* the *prize umpirage?*
 So run **Run thus**, that ye may *obtain* **overtake**.
 25 And every man **everyone**
 that *striveth agonizeth* for the mastery
 is *temperate* **self—controlled** in all things.
 Now **So** they *do it indeed*,
 to *obtain* **take** a corruptible *crown wreath*;
 but we an incorruptible.
 26 **So** I *therefore* **so run thus**, not as uncertainly;
so fight thus I fistfight,
 not as one that *beateth floggeth* the air:
 But I *keep under* **subdue** my body,
 27 and bring it into *subjection* **servitude**:
 lest *that by any means* **somehow**,
 when I have preached to others,
 I myself should *be a castaway* **become disapproved**.

WARNINGS AGAINST IDOLATRY

10 Moreover, brethren,
 I *would will* not that ye should be *ignorant unknowing*,
 how that all our fathers were under the cloud,
 and all passed through the sea;
 2 And were all baptized unto *Moses Mosheh*
 in the cloud and in the sea;
 3 And did all eat the same spiritual *meat food*;
 4 And did all drink the same spiritual drink:
 for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them:
 and that Rock was *Christ the Messiah*.
 5 But *with in* many of them
God was not well pleased **Elohim well—approved not**:
 for they were *overthrown scattered* in the wilderness.
 6 Now these *things were* **became** our *examples types*,
 to the *intent that* we should not *lust pant* after evil things,
exactly as they *also lusted panted*.
 7 Neither be ye idolaters,
exactly as were some of them;
 as *it is written scribed*,
 The people sat down to eat and drink,
 and rose up to *play* **ridicule**.
 Exodus 32:6
 8 Neither let us *commit fornication whore*,
exactly as some of them *committed whored*,
 and fell in one day three and twenty thousand.
 9 Neither let us *tempt Christ test the Messiah*,
exactly as some of them also *tempted tested*,
 and were destroyed of serpents.
 10 Neither murmur ye,
exactly as some of them also murmured,
 and were destroyed of the destroyer.
 11 Now all these *things* happened unto them
 for *ensamples types*:
 and they are *written scribed*
 for our *admonition reminding*,
 upon *unto* whom
 the *ends completion/shalom* of the *world eons*
 are *come* **has arrived**.
 12 *Wherefore So then* let him that thinketh he standeth
take heed see lest he fall.
 TESTING
 13 There hath no *temptation testing* taken you
 but **except** such as is *common to man human*:
 but *God Elohim* is *faithful trustworthy*,
 who *will shall* not *suffer allow* you to be *tempted tested*
above that ye are able **beyond your ability**;
 but *will shall* with the *temptation testing*
 also make a way to *escape an exit*,
 that ye may be able to *bear endure it*.
 14 *Wherefore So*, my *dearly* beloved, flee from idolatry.
 15 I *speak word* as to *wise men* **unto the thoughtful**;
 judge ye what I say.

1 CORINTHIANS 9, 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

22 To the frail I become as frail,
 to gain the frail:
 I become all to all,
 to most certainly save some.
 23 And this I do for sake of the evangelism,
 to become a co—partaker.
 24 Know you not, that whoever runs in a stadium,
 indeed all run, but one takes the umpirage?
 Run thus — to overtake.
 25 And everyone who agonizes for the mastery
 is self—controlled in all:
 they indeed, to take a corruptible wreath;
 but we an incorruptible.
 26 So thus I run — not as uncertainly;
 thus I fistfight — not as one flogging the air:
 27 but I subdue my body and bring it to servitude:
 lest somehow, having preached to others,
 I myself become disapproved.

WARNINGS AGAINST IDOLATRY

10 And brothers,
 I will that you not be unknowing,
 how that all our fathers were under the cloud
 and all passed through the sea;
 2 and all to Mosheh
 were baptized in the cloud and in the sea;
 3 and all ate the same spiritual food;
 4 and all drank the same spiritual drink:
 for they drank of a spiritual Rock following them:
 and the Rock was the Messiah.
 5 But in many of them
 Elohim well—approved not;
 for they scattered in the wilderness:
 6 and these became our types,
 to not pant after evil, exactly as they panted.
 7 Neither be idolaters, exactly as some of them:
 as scribed,
 The people sat down to eat and drink
 and rose up to ridicule.
 Exodus 32:6
 8 Whore not,
 exactly as some of them whored
 and twenty—three thousand fell in one day:
 9 nor test the Messiah,
 exactly as some of them also tested
 and were destroyed by serpents:
 10 nor murmur,
 exactly as some of them also murmured
 and were destroyed by the destroyer.
 11 And all these happened to them for types:
 and they are scribed to remind us,
 to whom the completion/shalom of the eons arrives.
 12 So, whoever thinks he stands,
 see lest he fall.
 TESTING
 13 No testing overtakes you except such as is human:
 but Elohim is trustworthy
 who allows you to not
 to be tested beyond your ability;
 but with the testing also makes an exit
 so that you are able to endure.
 14 So my beloved, flee from idolatry.
 15 I word as to the thoughtful,
 judge what I say.

1 CORINTHIANS 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

COMMUNION

16 The cup of *blessing* **eulogy** which we *bless* **eulogize**,
 is it not **indeed**
 the communion of the blood of *Christ* **the Messiah**?
 The bread which we break,
 is it not **indeed**
 the communion of the body of *Christ* **the Messiah**?
 17 For we being many are one bread, *and* one body:
 for we are all *partakers* **partake** of that one bread.
 18 *Behold Israel* **See Yisra El** after the flesh:
indeed, are not they which eat of the sacrifices
partakers **communicants** of the **sacrifice** altar?
 19 **So** What say I *then*?
 that the idol is *any thing* **somewhat**,
 or that
which is offered in sacrifice to idols **an idol sacrifice**
 is *any thing* **somewhat**?
 20 But I say,
 that *the things* **those** which the *Gentiles* **goyim** sacrifice,
 they sacrifice to *devils* **demons**, and not to *God* **Elohim**:
 and I *would* **will** not that ye
should have fellowships **become communicants**
 with *devils* **demons**.
 21 Ye cannot drink the cup of the *Lord* **Adonay**,
 and the cup of *devils* **demons**:
 ye cannot *be partakers* **partake** of the *Lord's* table **of Yah Veh**,
 and of the table of *devils* **demons**.

Malachi 1:7

CONSCIENCE

22 *Do* **Or, incite** we *provoke the Lord* **Adonay** to jealousy?
 are we *stronger* **mightier** than he?
 23 All *things* are *lawful* for **allowed** me,
 but all *things* are not *expedient* **beneficial**:
 all *things* are *lawful* for **allowed** me,
 but all *things* edify not.
 24 Let no *man* **one** seek his own,
 but every *man* **each** another's *wealth*.
 25 Whatsoever is sold in the shambles, *that* eat,
asking no question **not judging** for conscience sake:
 26 For the earth is *the Lord's* **Yah Veh's**,
 and the fulness/**shalom** thereof.

Psalm 24:1

27 If any of *them* that *believe not* **the trustless**
bid **call** you to a *feast*,
 and ye *be disposed* **will** to go;
 whatsoever is set *before* **by** you, eat,
asking no question **not judging** for conscience sake.
 28 But *if whenever* any *man* **one** say unto you,
 This is *offered in sacrifice unto idols* **an idol sacrifice**,
 eat not for his sake that *shewed* **disclosed** it,
 and for conscience sake:
 for the earth is *the Lord* **Yah Veh's**,
 and the *fulness* **shalom** thereof:

Psalm 24:1

29 Conscience, I say **word**,
 not **indeed** thine own, but of the other:
 for why is my liberty judged
 of *another man's* **another's** conscience?
 30 For if I *by grace* **be a partaker** **charism partake**,
 why am I *evil spoken of* **blasphemed**
 for that for which I *give thanks* **eucharistize**?
 31 **So** Whether *therefore* ye eat, *or* **whether** ye drink,
or **whether** whatsoever ye do,
 do all to the glory of *God* **Elohim**.
 32 *Give none offence* **Become inoffensive**,
neither to the Jews **Yah Hudiym**,
nor to the Gentiles **Hellene**,
nor **and** to the *church* **ecclesia** of *God* **Elohim**:
 33 Even as I please all *men* in all *things*,
 not seeking mine own *profit* **benefit**,
 but *the profit* of many, that they may be saved.

RELATIONSHIPS

11 Be ye *followers* **mimickers** of me,
even **exactly** as I also *am* of *Christ* **Messiah**.
 2 Now I *praise* **halal** you, brethren,
 that ye remember me in all *things*,
 and *keep* **hold** the *ordinances* **traditions**,
exactly as I delivered them to you.

1 CORINTHIANS 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

COMMUNION

16 The cup of eulogy we eulogize,
 is it not indeed
 the communion of the blood of the Messiah?
 The bread we break,
 is it not indeed
 the communion of the body of the Messiah?
 17 For we, being many, are one bread — one body:
 for we all partake of that one bread.
 18 See Yisra El after the flesh:
 indeed, are not they who eat of the sacrifices,
 communicants of the sacrifice altar?
 19 So what say I?
 That the idol is somewhat?
 Or that an idol sacrifice is somewhat?
 20 But those that the goyim sacrifice,
 they sacrifice to demons and not to Elohim:
 and I will
 that you not become communicants with demons.
 21 You cannot drink the cup of Adonay
 and the cup of demons:
 you cannot partake of the table of Yah Veh
 and of the table of demons.

Malachi 1:7

CONSCIENCE

22 Or, incite we Adonay to jealousy?
 Are we mightier than he?
 23 I am allowed all, but all is not beneficial:
 I am allowed all, but all edifies not.
 24 Seek not for your own,
 but each for the other.
 25 Whatever is sold in the shambles
 eat for sake of conscience — not judging:
 26 For the earth is to Yah Vah
 and the fulness/shalom thereof.
 27 If any of the trustless call you and you will to go;
 eat whatever is set by you
 for sake of conscience — not judging.
 28 But whenever anyone says to you,
 This is an idol sacrifice!
 eat not for sake of him who disclosed it
 and for sake of conscience:
 for the earth is to Yah Vah
 and the fulness/shalom thereof:

Psalm 24:1

Psalm 24:1

29 Conscience, I word,
 indeed not of your own, but of the other:
 for why is my liberty judged
 by the conscience of another?
 30 And if I, by charism partake,
 why blaspheme me for what I eucharistize?
 31 So, whether you eat
 whether you drink
 whether whatever you do
 — do all to the glory of Elohim.
 32 Become inoffensive,
 both to the Yah Hudiym and to the Hellene
 and to the ecclesia of Elohim:
 33 even as I please all in all,
 not seeking my own benefit
 but of many — to be saved.

RELATIONSHIPS

11 Become mimickers of me
 exactly as I also of Messiah.
 2 And I halal you brothers,
 that you remember me in all
 — and hold the traditions,
 exactly as I delivered them to you.

1 CORINTHIANS 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 But I would have **will that** you know,
that the head of every man is *Christ the Messiah*;
and the head of the woman is the man;
and the head of *Christ Messiah* is *God Elohim*.

4 Every man praying or prophesying,
having his head *covered veiled*,
dishonoureth shameth his head.

5 But every woman that prayeth or prophesieth
with her head *uncovered unveiled*
dishonoureth shameth her head:
for that is even all one as if she were shaven.

6 For if the woman be not *covered veiled*,
let her also be shorn:
but if it be a shame for a woman to be shorn or shaven,
let her be *covered veiled*.

7 For a man indeed
ought is indebted not to *cover veil* his head,
forasmuch being as he is the *image icon*
and glory of *God Elohim*:
but the woman is the glory of the man.

8 For the man is not of the woman:
but the woman of the man.

9 Neither **indeed** was the man created for the woman;
but the woman for the man.

10 For this cause *ought* the woman **is indebted**
to have *power authority* on her head
because of the angels.

11 *Nevertheless However*
neither is the man *without apart from* the woman,
neither the woman *without apart from* the man,
in the *Lord Adonay*.

12 For **exactly** as the woman is of the man,
even **so thus** is the man also *by through* the woman;
but all *things* of *God Elohim*.

13 Judge in yourselves: is it *comely befitting*
that a woman pray unto *God Elohim*
uncovered unveiled?

14 **Or** Doth not even nature itself *teach doctrienate* you,
that, *if whenever* a man have *long hair tresses*,
it is a *shame dishonour* unto him?

15 But *if whenever* a woman have *long hair tresses*,
it is a glory to her:
for *her hair is tresses are* given her for a *covering mantle*.

16 But if any *man one*
seem thinketh to be *contentious quarrelsome*,
we have no such custom,
neither the *churches ecclesiae* of *God Elohim*.

17 Now in this that I *declare unto you evangelize*,
I *praise halal* you not,
that ye come together not *for to* the better,
but *for unto* the worse.

18 For **indeed** first of all,
when ye come together in the *church ecclesia*,
I hear that there be *divisions schisms* among you;
and I *partly believe somewhat trust* it.

19 For there must be also heresies among you,
that they which are approved
may *be made become* manifest among you.

20 **So** When ye come together *therefore* into one place,
this is not to eat *the Lord's Adonay's* supper.

21 For in eating
every one taketh before other each anticipateth
his own supper:
and **indeed** one is hungry,
and another is *drunken intoxicated*.

22 *What? Indeed!*
have ye not houses to eat and to drink in?
or *despise disesteem* ye
the *church ecclesia* of *God Elohim*,
and shame them that have not?
What shall I say to you? shall I *praise halal* you in this?
I *praise halal* you not.

TRESSES

EUCCHARIST

1 CORINTHIANS 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 But I will you to know,
that the head of every man is the Messiah;
and the head of the woman is the man;
and the head of Messiah is Elohim.

4 Every man praying or prophesying
having his head veiled
shames his head:

5 and every woman praying or prophesying
having her head unveiled
shames her head
— for all that is even as one shaven.

6 For if the woman veils not,
have her also shear:
but if it is a shame for a woman to shear or shave,
have her veil.

7 For indeed a man is indebted to not veil his head,
being the icon and glory of Elohim;
but woman is the glory of man:
For man is not of woman;
but woman of man:

9 indeed man was not created for the woman;
but woman for the man.

10 For this cause the woman is indebted
to have authority on her head because of the angels.

11 However, in Adonay,
neither is man apart from woman
nor woman apart from man.

12 For exactly as the woman is of the man
even thus is the man also through the woman
— but all of Elohim.

13 Judge in yourselves:
Is it befitting that a woman pray to Elohim unveiled?
Or does not even nature itself doctrienate you,
that whenever a man has tresses
it is a dishonor to him?

15 And whenever a woman has tresses,
it is a glory to her
— for tresses are given her for a mantle.

16 And if anyone thinks to be quarrelsome,
neither we nor the ecclesiae of Elohim
have such custom.

17 And in evangelizing, I halal you not,
in that you come together
not to the better but to the worse.

18 For indeed first of all,
when you come together in the ecclesia,
I hear that there are schisms among you;
and I somewhat trust it.

19 For there must also be heresies among you,
so that those approved become manifest among you.

20 So you are coming together into one place,
not to eat the supper of Adonay:
for in eating,
each anticipates his own supper
— indeed one is famished and another is intoxicated.

22 Indeed, have you not houses to eat and to drink?
Or disesteem you the ecclesia of Elohim?
And shame them who have not?
What say I to you?
Halal I you in this?
I halal you not.

TRESSES

EUCCHARIST

1 CORINTHIANS 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE SEQUENCE OF THE EUCHARIST: PRECEDING SUPPER

23 For I have *received* **taken** of the Lord **Adonay**
that which also I delivered unto you,
That the Lord **Jesus Adonay Yah Shua**
in the same night in which he was betrayed
took bread:
24 And when he had *given thanks* **eucharistized**,
he brake it, and said,
Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you:
this do in remembrance of me.

AFTER SUPPER

25 After the same manner also *he took* the cup,
when he had supped **after supping**, saying **wording**,
This cup is the new *testament* **covenant** in my blood:
this do ye, as oft as **ever** ye drink it,
in remembrance of me.
26 For as often as **ever** ye eat this bread,
and drink this cup,
ye do *shew the Lord's* **evangelize Adonay's** death
till **ever** he come.
27 *Wherefore* **So** whosoever shall eat this bread,
and or drink this cup of the Lord **Adonay**, unworthily,
shall be *guilty of* **subject**
to the body and blood of the Lord **Adonay**.
28 But let a *man examine* **human proof** himself,
and so **thus** let him eat of that bread,
and drink of that cup.
29 For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily,
eateth and drinketh *damnation* **judgment** to himself,
not discerning the Lord's **Adonay's** body.
30 For this cause
many are *weak* **frail** and *sickly* **infirm** among you,
and many sleep.
31 For if we *would judge* **should discern** ourselves,
we should not **ever** be judged.
32 But when we are judged,
we are *chastened* **disciplined** of the Lord **Adonay**,
that we should not be condemned
with the world **cosmos**.
33 *Wherefore* **So** my brethren,
when ye come together to eat,
tarry **await** one for another.
34 And if any *man* hunger, let him eat at home;
that ye come not together unto *condemnation* **judgment**.
And the rest *will* **shall** I set in order **ordain**
when **as ever** I come.

SPIRITUALS

12 Now concerning *spiritual gifts* **spirituals**, brethren,
I *would* **will** not have you *ignorant* **unknowing**.
2 Ye know that ye were *Gentiles* **goyim**,
carried away **led** unto these *dumb* **voiceless** idols,
even as ye were **ever** led.
3 *Wherefore* I give **So I make known to** you to understand,
that no *man* **one** speaking by **in** the Spirit of God **Elohim**
calleth **Jesus accursed wordeth, Yah Shua anathema:**
and that no *man* **one** can say,
that Jesus is the Lord **Adonay Yah Shua**,
but by **except in** the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**.

DISTINCTIONS OF CHARISMATA MINISTRIES, AND ENERGIZINGS

4 Now there are *diversities* **distinctions**
of *gifts* **charismata**,
but the same Spirit.
5 And there are *differences* **distinctions**
of *administrations* **ministries**,
but the same Lord **Adonay**.
6 And there are *diversities* **distinctions**
of *operations* **energizings**,
but it is the same God **Elohim**
which *worketh* **energizeth** all in all.

1 CORINTHIANS 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE SEQUENCE OF THE EUCHARIST: PRECEDING SUPPER

23 For I — I took from Adonay
what I also delivered to you,
that Adonay Yah Shua
in the night he was betrayed, took bread:
24 and when he eucharistized,
he broke, and said, Take — eat:
this is my body, broken for you:
this do to the remembrance of me.

AFTER SUPPER

25 After the same manner also the cup,
after supping, wording,
This cup is the new covenant in my blood:
this do, as often as ever you drink,
in remembrance of me.
26 For as often as ever
you eat this bread and drink this cup,
you evangelize the death of Adonay
until ever he comes.
27 So whoever eats this bread,
or drinks this cup of Adonay — unworthily,
is subject to the body and blood of Adonay:
28 and each human is to proof himself
and thus eat of that bread and drink of that cup.
29 For whoever eats and drinks unworthily
eats and drinks judgment to himself
— not discerning the body of Adonay.
30 For this cause many among you are frail and infirm
and many sleep.
31 For if we discern ourselves,
we are never ever judged:
32 and being judged,
we are disciplined by Adonay,
to not be condemned with the cosmos.
33 So my brothers,
when you come together to eat, await one another.
34 And if any famish, eat at home;
that you not come together to judgment.
And the rest I ordain as ever I come.

SPIRITUALS

12 Now concerning spirituals, brothers,
I will that you not be unknowing.
2 You know that you were goyim,
led to these voiceless idols — as ever you were led.
3 So I make known to you,
that no one speaking in Spirit of Elohim
words, Yah Shua anathema:
and that no one can say, Adonay Yah Shua,
except in Holy Spirit.

DISTINCTIONS OF CHARISMATA, MINISTRIES, AND ENERGIZINGS

4 And there are distinctions of charismata
and the same Spirit:
5 and there are distinctions of ministries
and the same Adonay:
6 and there are distinctions of energizings
and the same Elohim who energizes all in all.

1 CORINTHIANS 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

DISTRIBUTIONS OF SPIRITUALS

7 But the manifestation of the Spirit
is given to every man **each** to profit withal **benefit**.
8 For **indeed** to one is given **by through** the Spirit
the word of wisdom;
to another the word of knowledge
by **in** the same Spirit;
9 To another **faith trust**
by **in** the same Spirit;
to another the **gifts charismata** of **healing healings**
by **in** the same Spirit;
10 To another
the **working energizings** of **miracles dynamis**;
to another prophecy;
to another **discerning discernments** of spirits;
to another **divers kinds genos** of tongues;
to another the **interpretation translation** of tongues:
11 But all these
worketh energizeth that one and the selfsame Spirit,
dividing distributing to every man **each his own**
severally exactly as he will **willeth**.

Romans 12:3—8

THE BODY OF THE MESSIAH

12 For **exactly** as the body is one,
and hath many members,
and all the members of that one body,
being many, are one body:
so thus also is **Christ the Messiah**.
13 For **by in** one Spirit are we all baptized into one body,
whether **we be Jews Yah Hudiym**,
or Gentiles whether Hellenes,
whether **we be bond or free servant, whether liberated**;
and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

ONE BODY, MANY MEMBERS

14 For the body is not one member, but many.
15 **If Whenever** the foot shall say,
Because I am not the hand, I am not of the body;
is it therefore not of the body?
16 And **if whenever** the ear shall say,
Because I am not the eye, I am not of the body;
so is it **therefore** not of the body?
17 If the whole body were an eye,
where were the hearing?
If the whole were hearing,
where were the smelling?
18 But now hath **God Elohim** set the members
every one each of them in the body,
exactly as it hath pleased him he willed.
19 And if they were all one member,
where were the body?
20 But now **indeed** are they many members,
yet but one body.
21 And the eye cannot say unto the hand,
I have no need of thee:
nor again the head to the feet,
I have no need of you.
22 **Nay Rather**, much more those members of the body,
which **seem we think** to be **more feeble frail**,
are necessary:
23 And those **members** of the body,
which we think to be **less honourable dishonourable**,
upon these
we **bestow more abundant place superabundant** honour;
and our **uncomely parts misbehaviors**
have **more abundant comeliness superabundant honour**.
24 For our **comely parts honourables** have no need:
but **God Elohim** hath **tempered co—mingled** the body
together,
having given **more abundant superabundant** honour
to that **part** which lacked.
25 That there should be no schism in the body;
but that the members
should have the same **care anxiety** one for another.
26 And whether one member suffer,
all the members **suffer with it co—suffer**;
or whether one member be **honoured glorified**,
all the members **rejoice with it co—rejoice**.
27 Now ye are the body of **Christ Messiah**,
and members in particular.

1 CORINTHIANS 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

DISTRIBUTIONS OF SPIRITUALS

7 And the manifestation of the Spirit
is given to each to benefit:
8 for indeed to one is given through the Spirit
the word of wisdom;
to another the word of knowledge
in the same Spirit;
9 to another trust
in the same Spirit;
to another the charismata of healings
in the same Spirit;
10 to another
the energizings of dynamis;
to another prophecy;
to another discernments of spirits;
to another genos of tongues;
to another the translation of tongues.
11 But all these
energize the one and the selfsame Spirit,
distributing to each his own,
exactly as he wills.

Romans 12:3—8

THE BODY OF THE MESSIAH

12 For exactly as the body is one
and has many members;
and all the members of that one body
being many, are one body;
thus also the Messiah.
13 For in one Spirit we all are baptized into one body,
whether Yah Hudiym, whether Hellenes,
whether servants, whether liberated;
and have all to drink into one Spirit.

ONE BODY, MANY MEMBERS

14 For the body is not one member, but many.
15 Whenever the foot says,
Because I am not the hand, I am not of the body;
so is it not of the body?
16 And whenever the ear says,
Because I am not the eye, I am not of the body;
so is it not of the body?
17 If the whole body were an eye,
where the hearing?
If the whole were hearing,
where the smelling?
18 And now Elohim sets the members
— each in the body — exactly as he wills.
19 And if they all were one member,
where the body?
20 And now indeed,
many members, yet but one body.
21 And the eye cannot say to the hand,
I have no need of you:
nor again the head to the feet,
I have no need of you.
22 Rather, much more,
those members of the body we think to be frail
are necessary;
23 and on those of the body
we think of as dishonorable,
we place superabundant honor;
and on our misbehaviors, superabundant honor.
24 For our honorables have no need:
but Elohim co—mingles the body
giving superabundant honor to what lacked;
25 that there be no schism in the body;
but that the members
have the same anxiety one for another.
26 And whether one member suffers,
all the members co—suffer;
or whether one member is glorified,
all the members co—rejoice:
27 and you are the body of Messiah
and members in particular.

1 CORINTHIANS 12, 13

exeGes ready research BIBLE

THE CHARISMATA IN THE ECCLESIA

28 And **indeed**
God Elohim hath set some in the *church ecclesia*,
 first apostles,
 secondarily prophets, thirdly *teachers* **doctors**,
after that miracles **then dynamis**,
 then *gifts* **charismata** of healings,
helps **supports**, *governments* **pilots**,
diversities **genos** of tongues.
 29 Are all apostles? are all prophets?
 are all *teachers* **doctors**?
 are **have** all *workers of miracles* **dynamis**?
 30 Have all the *gifts* **charismata** of *healing* **healings**?
 do all speak with tongues? do all *interpret* **translate**?
 31 But *covet earnestly* **be zealous**
for the best gifts better charismata:
 and yet shew I unto you a more excellent way.

THE WAY OF LOVE

13

Though **Whenever** I speak
 with the tongues of *men* **humans** and of angels,
 and have not *charity* **love**,
 I am become as *sounding brass* **echoing copper**,
 or a *tinkling halloooing* **cymbal**.
 2 And *though* **whenever** I have the *gift of* prophecy,
 and *understand* **perceive** all mysteries,
 and all knowledge;
 and *though* **whenever** I have all *faith* **trust**,
 so that I *could* remove mountains,
 and have not *charity* **love**, I am *nothing* **naught**.
 3 And *though* **whenever**
 I *bestow* **force feed** all my *goods* **holdings**
 to *feed the poor* **upon others**,
 and *though* **whenever**
 I *give* **surrender** my body to be burned,
 and have not *charity* **love**,
 it *profiteth* **benefiteth** me *nothing* **naught**.
 4 *Charity suffereth long* **Love is patient**, and is kind;
charity envieth not **love is never jealous**;
charity vaunteth not itself **love never brags**,
is not puffed up **never puffs**,
 5 *Doth not behave itself unseemly* **Never misbehaves**,
seeketh not her own **never self—seeking**,
is not easily provoked **never easily agitated**,
thinketh no **never reckoneth** evil;
 6 *Rejoiceth not in iniquity* **Never cheereth in injustice**,
 but *rejoiceth* **co—cheereth** in the truth;
 7 *Beareth* **Endureth** all things,
believeth **trusteth** all things,
hopeth all things,
endureth **abideth** all things.
 8 *Charity* **Love** never **ever** faileth:
 but whether *there be* prophecies,
 they shall *fail* **inactivate**;
 whether *there be* tongues,
 they shall *cease* **pause**;
 whether *there be* knowledge,
 it shall *vanish away* **inactivate**.
 9 For we know *in* **by** part, and we prophesy *in* **by** part.
 10 But when *that which is perfect* **the completed/shalamed**
 is come,
 then that which is *in* **by** part
 shall be *done away* **inactivated**.
 11 When I was a *child* **baby**,
 I spake as a *child* **baby**,
 I *understood* **thought** as a *child* **baby**,
 I *thought* **reckoned** as a *child* **baby**:
 but when I became a man,
 I *put away childish things* **inactivated the babyish**.
 12 For now we see through a *glass* **mirror**,
darkly **obscurely**;
 but then face to face:
 now I know *in* **by** part;
 but then shall I know *even* **exactly** as also I am known.
 13 And now *abideth* **faith trust**, *hope*, *charity* **love**,
 these three;
 but the greatest of these is *charity* **love**.

1 CORINTHIANS 12, 13

exeGes companion BIBLE

THE CHARISMATA IN THE ECCLESIA

28 And indeed Elohim set some in the ecclesia:
 first apostles,
 secondly prophets,
 thirdly doctors,
 then dynamis,
 then charismata of healings,
 supports,
 pilots,
 genos of tongues.
 29 All apostles?
 All prophets?
 All doctors?
 All dynamis?
 30 All the charismata of healings?
 All speak with tongues?
 All translate?
 31 But be zealous for the better charismata:
 and I show you a still more excellent way.

THE WAY OF LOVE

13

Whenever I speak
 with the tongues of humans and of angels
 and have not love,
 I become an echoing copper or a halloooing cymbal.
 2 And whenever I have prophecy
 and perceive all mysteries and all knowledge,
 and whenever I have all trust to remove mountains
 and have not love, I am naught.
 3 And whenever I force feed all my holdings on others
 and whenever I surrender my body to burn,
 and have not love
 it benefits me naught.
 4 Love is patient and is kind,
 love is never jealous,
 love never brags,
 never puffs,
 never misbehaves,
 never self—seeking,
 never easily agitated,
 never reckons evil,
 never cheers in injustice
 but co—cheers in the truth,
 endures all,
 trusts all,
 hopes all,
 abides all:
 love never ever fails.
 And whether prophecies, they inactivate;
 whether tongues, they pause;
 whether knowledge, it inactivates.
 9 For by part we know; and by part we prophesy:
 10 But when the completed/shalamed comes
 then the by part becomes inactivated.
 11 When I was a baby
 I spoke as a baby
 I thought as a baby
 I reckoned as a baby:
 and when I became a man
 I inactivated the babyish.
 12 For now we see obscurely as through a mirror;
 but then, face to face:
 now I know by part;
 but then I know exactly as also I am known.
 13 And now abide trust, hope, love
 — these three:
 and the greatest of these is love.

1 CORINTHIANS 14

exeGes ready research BIBLE

PROPHECY, TONGUES, AND TRANSLATION

14 Follow after charity Pursue love,
and desire spiritual gifts be zealous for spirituals,
but rather that ye may prophesy.
2 For he that speaketh in an unknown* a tongue
speaketh not unto men humanity, but unto God Elohim:
for no man understandeth one heareth him;
howbeit for in the spirit he speaketh mysteries.
*unknown tongues are unknown in Scripture
3 But he that prophesieth
speaketh unto men humanity to edification,
and exhortation beseeching, and comfort consolation.
4 He that speaketh in an unknown a tongue edifieth himself;
but he that prophesieth edifieth the church ecclesia.
5 I would will that ye all spake with tongues
but rather that ye prophesied:
for greater is he that prophesieth
than he that speaketh with tongues,
except unless he interpret translate,
that the church ecclesia may receive take edifying.
6 Now, brethren,
even if I come unto you speaking with tongues,
what shall I profit benefit you,
except unless I shall speak to you
either by revelation in apocalypse, or by in knowledge,
or by in prophesying, or by in doctrine?
7 And even Yet still,
things without life the soulless giving sound voice,
whether pipe flute or harp cither,
except unless they give a distinction in the sounds,
how shall it be known
what is piped fluted or harped cithered?
8 For if whenever the trumpet
give an uncertain sound voice,
who shall prepare himself to the battle war?
9 So Thus likewise ye,
except unless ye utter by give through the tongue
words easy to be well understood,
how shall it be known what is spoken?
for ye shall speak into the air.
10 There are, it may be if perhaps,
so many kinds genos of voices in the world cosmos,
and none of them is without signification voiceless.
11 Therefore if unless ever I know not
the meaning dynamis of the voice,
I shall be unto him that speaketh a barbarian,
and he that speaketh shall be a barbarian unto me.
12 Even so ye thus,
forasmuch as since ye are zealous of spiritual gifts spirits,
seek that ye may excel superabound
to the edifying of the church ecclesia.
13 Wherefore So let him that speaketh in an unknown a tongue
pray that he may interpret translate.
14 For if whenever I pray in an unknown a tongue,
my spirit prayeth,
but my understanding mind is unfruitful.
15 So What is it then?
I will shall pray with the spirit,
and I will shall pray with the understanding mind also:
I will sing shall psalm with the spirit,
and I will sing shall psalm
with the understanding mind also.
16 Else when Unless if
thou shalt bless eulogize with the spirit,
how shall he
that occupieth filleth the room place of the unlearned say
Amen at thy giving of thanks eucharist,
seeing since he understandeth perceiveth not
what thou sayest wordest?
17 For thou verily indeed
givest thanks eucharistizest well,
but the other is not edified.
18 I thank eucharistize my God Elohim,
I speak with tongues more than ye all:
19 Yet in the church ecclesia
I had rather will to speak five words
with through my understanding mind,
that by my voice I might teach catechize others also,
than ten thousand a myriad words in an unknown a tongue.

1 CORINTHIANS 14

exeGes companion BIBLE

PROPHECY, TONGUES, AND TRANSLATION

14 Pursue love
and be zealous for spirituals
— but rather to prophesy.
2 For whoever speaks in a tongue
speaks not to humanity
but to Elohim;
for no one hearkens;
for in spirit, he speaks mysteries.
3 And whoever prophesies to humanity
speaks to edification and beseeching and consolation:
4 whoever speaks in a tongue edifies himself;
and whoever prophesies edifies the ecclesia.
5 I will that you all speak with tongues
but rather that you prophesy:
for whoever prophesies
is greater than whoever speaks with tongues,
— unless he translates to edify the ecclesia.
6 And now brothers,
whenever I come to you speaking with tongues,
what benefit I you
— unless I speak to you
either in apocalypse or in knowledge?
Or in prophesying or in doctrine?
7 Still the soulless, giving voice,
whether flute or cither,
unless they give a distinction in the sounds,
how know we what is fluted or cithered?
8 And whenever the trumpet gives an uncertain voice,
who prepares himself to war?
9 Thus likewise you, unless through the tongue,
you give words well understood,
how know we what is spoken?
— for you speak to air.
10 There are, if perhaps,
so many genos of voices in the cosmos
and none of them is voiceless.
11 So unless ever I know the dynamis of the voice
I am as a barbarian to him who speaks
and whoever speaks as a barbarian to me.
12 Even thus, since you are zealous of spirits,
seek that you superabound to edify the ecclesia.
13 So whoever speaks in a tongue,
pray that he translate.
14 For whenever I pray in a tongue, my spirit prays,
but my mind is unfruitful.
15 So what?
I pray with the spirit
and I pray with the mind also:
I psalm with the spirit
and I psalm with the mind also.
16 Unless if you eulogize with the spirit,
he who fills the place of the unlearned,
how says he, upon your eucharist, Amen!
— since he perceives not what you word?
17 For indeed you eucharistize well
but the other is not edified.
18 I eucharistize my Elohim
— I speak with tongues more than you all:
yet in the ecclesia
19 I will to speak five words through my mind,
to catechize others also,
than a myriad words in a tongue.

1 CORINTHIANS 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

20 Brethren, be not children in *understanding thought*:
howbeit rather in malice be ye *children babies*,
but in *understanding thought* be men **completed/shalamed**.

21 In the *law torah* it is written **scribed**,
With men of In other tongues and *in* other lips
will I speak unto this people;
and yet *for all that will thus shall* they not hear me,
saith the Lord wordeth Yah Veh.
Yesha Yah 28:11, 12, Deuteronomy 28:49

22 Wherefore **So** tongues are *for unto* a sign,
not to them that *believe trust*,
but to them that *believe not the trustless*:
but prophesying
serveth is not for them that *believe not the trustless*,
but for them which *believe trust*.

23 therefore if **So whenever** the whole *church ecclesia*
be come together into one place,
and all speak with tongues,
and there *come in those that are enter the* unlearned,
or unbelievers trustless,
will **shall** they not say that ye *are mad rave*?
But if **whenever** all prophesy,
and there *come in enter*
one that believeth not a trustless, or *one an* unlearned,
he is *convinced reproved* of all, he is judged of all:

24 And thus are the secrets of his heart
made become manifest;
and so **thus** falling down on his face
he will **shall** worship *God Elohim*,
and *report evangelize*
that *God Elohim* is in you of a *truth indeed*.

25 **So** How is it *then*, brethren? when ye come together,
every *one each* of you hath a psalm, hath a doctrine,
hath a tongue, hath a *revelation an apocalypse*,
hath an *interpretation a translation*.
Let all *things* be done unto edifying.

RULES FOR SPEAKING IN A TONGUE

26 If **also** any *man one* speak in an *unknown a* tongue,
let it be by two, or at the most by three,
and that by *course part*; and let one *interpret translate*.

27 But if *there whenever there* be no *interpreter translator*,
let him *keep silence hush* in the *church ecclesia*;
and let him speak to himself, and to *God Elohim*.

RULES FOR PROPHETS AND DISCERNERS

28 Let the prophets speak two or three,
and let the other *judge discern*.

29 If any *thing Whenever aught* be *revealed unveiled*
to another that sitteth by,
let the first *hold his peace hush*.

30 For ye may **can** all prophesy one by one,
that all may learn, and all may be *comforted consoled*.

31 And the spirits of the prophets
are subject subjugate to the prophets.

32 For *God Elohim* is not the *author of confusion instability*,
but of *peace shalom*,

33 as in all *churches ecclesiae* of the *saints holy*.
Let your women *keep silence hush*
in the *churches ecclesiae*:
for it is not *permitted allowed* unto them to speak;
but they are *commanded*
to be under obedience subjugate,
exactly as also *saith wordeth the law torah*.

34 And if they will **to** learn any *thing somewhat*,
let them ask their *husbands own men* at home:
for it is a shame
for women to speak in the *church ecclesia*.

35 What? **Or** came the word of *God Elohim* out from you?
or *came it has it arrived* unto you only?

36 If any *man one* think himself to be a prophet, or spiritual,
let him acknowledge that
the things those that I *write scribe* unto you
are the *commandments misvoth* of the *Lord Adonay*.

37 But if any *man one* be *ignorant unknowing*,
let him be *ignorant unknowing*.

38 Wherefore **So**, brethren, **covet be zealous** to prophesy,
and forbid not to speak with tongues.

39 Let all *things* be done *decently become decorous*
and in order.

1 CORINTHIANS 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

20 Brothers, be not children in thought:
rather be babies in malice
and completed/shalamed in thought.

21 In the torah it is scribed,
With men in other tongues and in other lips
I will to speak to this people;
and thus they still hear me not,
words Yah Veh.
Yesha Yah 28:11, 12, Deuteronomy 28:49

22 So tongues are not a sign to the trusting
but to the trustless:
and prophesying is not for the trustless
but for the trusting.

23 So whenever the whole ecclesia
comes together to one place
and all speak with tongues
— and an unlearned or a trustless enter,
say they not that you rave?

24 And whenever all prophesy
and a trustless or an unlearned enters,
he is reproved by all; he is judged by all:
And thus the secrets of his heart become manifest;
and thus falling on his face he worships Elohim
and evangelizes that Elohim is in you indeed.

25 So how is it, brothers, when you come together,
each of you has a psalm?
Has a doctrine?
Has a tongue?
Has an apocalypse?
Has a translation?
Have all to edify.

RULES FOR SPEAKING IN A TONGUE

26 Also, if anyone speaks in a tongue,
by two, or at the most by three;
and that by part — and let one translate.

27 And whenever there is no translator,
have him hush in the ecclesia;
and speak to himself and to Elohim.

RULES FOR PROPHETS AND DISCERNERS

28 Have the prophets speak two or three,
and the others discern:
and whenever aught is unveiled
to another sitting by,
have the first hush.

29 For you can all prophesy one by one,
so that all learn and all be consoled.

30 And the spirits of the prophets
are subjugate to the prophets.

31 For Elohim is not of instability — but of shalom,
as in all ecclesiae of the holy.

32 Hush your women in the ecclesiae:
allow them not to speak;
but they are to subjugate,
exactly as the torah also words.

33 And if they will to learn somewhat,
have them ask their own men at home:
for it is a shame for women to speak in the ecclesia.

34 Or comes the word of Elohim from you?
Or arrives it only to you?
If anyone thinks himself
to be a prophet, or spiritual,
have him acknowledge that those I scribe to you
are the misvoth of Adonay.

35 And if anyone is unknowing,
have him be unknowing.

36 So, brothers, be zealous to prophesy
and forbid not to speak with tongues.
Have all become decorous and in order.

15 Moreover, brethren,
I declare **make known** unto you *the gospel* **evangelism**
which I *preached* **evangelized** unto you,
which also ye have *received* **taken**,
and wherein ye stand;
2 By **Through** which also ye are saved,
if ye *keep in memory what* **hold the word**
I *preached* **evangelized** unto you,
3 unless **except lest** ye have *believed* **trusted** in vain.
For I delivered unto you **in the first**
of all that which I also *received* **had taken**,
how that *Christ* **Messiah** died for our sins
according to the scriptures;
4 And that he was buried,
and that he rose *again* the third day
according to the scriptures:
5 And that he was seen of *Cephas* **Kepha**,
then of the twelve:
6 After that **Then**,
he was seen of above five hundred brethren at once;
of whom the *greater part* **remain most abide**
unto *this present* **now**,
but some are fallen asleep.
7 After that **Then**, he was seen of *James* **Yaaqovos**;
then of all the apostles.
8 And last of all he was seen of me also,
just as though as of one *born out of due time* **miscarried**.
9 For I am the least of the apostles,
that am not *meet* **adequate** to be called an apostle,
because I persecuted the *church* **ecclesia** of *God* **Elohim**.
10 But by the *grace* **charism** of *God* **Elohim**
I am what I am:
and his *grace* **charism**
which was bestowed upon **unto** me
was **became** not in vain;
but I laboured
more *abundantly* **superabundantly** than they all:
yet not I,
but the *grace* **charism** of *God* **Elohim**
which was with me.
11 Therefore **So** whether *it were* I, or **whether** they,
so **thus** we preach, and so **thus** ye *believed* **trusted**.
THE RESURRECTION, ESSENTIAL TO THE TRUST
12 Now if *Christ* **Messiah** be preached
that he rose from the dead,
how say **word** some among you
that there is no resurrection of the dead?
13 But if there be no resurrection of the dead,
then is *Christ* **Messiah** not risen:
14 And if *Christ* **Messiah** be not risen,
then is our preaching vain,
and your *faith* **trust** is also vain.
15 Yea **Yes**,
and we are found *false* **pseudo** witnesses of *God* **Elohim**;
because we have *testified* **witnessed** of *God* **Elohim**
that he raised *up* *Christ* **the Messiah**:
whom he raised not *up*,
if so be that **indeed** the dead rise not.
16 For if the dead rise not,
then is not *Christ* **Messiah** raised:
17 And if *Christ* **Messiah** be not raised,
your *faith* **trust** is vain; ye are yet in your sins.
18 Then they also
which are fallen asleep in *Christ* **Messiah**
are *perished* **destroyed**.
19 If in this life only we have hope in *Christ* **Messiah**,
we are of all *men* **humanity**
most miserable **least mercied**.
THE SEQUENCE OF THE RESURRECTION
20 But now is *Christ* **Messiah** risen from the dead,
and become the *firstfruits* **firstlings** of them that slept.
21 For since by *man* **through humanity**,
came death,
by man **through humanity**,
came also the resurrection of the dead.
22 For **exactly** as in Adam all die,
even so **thus** in *Christ* **the Messiah**
shall all be *made alive* **enlivened**.

15 And brothers,
I make known to you
the evangelism I evangelized to you
— which you also took, wherein you also stand;
2 through which also you are saved
if you hold the word I evangelized to you;
except lest you trust in vain.
3 For I first delivered to you of all I also took
— that Messiah died for our sins
according to the scriptures;
4 and that he was buried;
and that he rose the third day
according to the scriptures:
5 and that Kepha saw him, then the twelve:
6 then over five hundred brothers saw him at once,
most of whom abide to now;
7 but some fell asleep;
then Yaaqovos saw him;
8 then all the apostles;
and last of all I saw him,
9 just as though as one miscarried:
for I am the least of the apostles
— who am not adequate to be called an apostle:
because I persecuted the ecclesia of Elohim.
10 And by the charism of Elohim, I am what I am:
and his charism to me became not in vain;
but I labored more superabundantly than they all:
yet not I — but the charism of Elohim within me.
11 So whether I, whether they,
thus we preached, and thus you trusted.

THE RESURRECTION, ESSENTIAL TO THE TRUST

12 Now if we preach that Messiah rose from the dead,
how word some among you
that there is no resurrection of the dead?
13 And if there is no resurrection of the dead
Messiah rose not:
14 and if Messiah rose not,
then our preaching is vain
and also your trust is vain.
15 Yes, and we are found pseudo witnesses of Elohim;
because we witnessed that Elohim raised the Messiah:
whom he raised not — if indeed the dead rise not.
16 For if the dead rise not, Messiah rose not:
17 And if Messiah rose not,
your trust is vain — you are still in your sins.
18 Then also
they who fell asleep in Messiah are destroyed.
19 If in this life only we have hope in Messiah,
we are least mercied of all humanity.

THE SEQUENCE OF THE RESURRECTION

20 And now, Messiah rose from the dead
and became the firstlings of them who slept.
21 For since through humanity, death,
also through humanity, the resurrection of the dead.
22 For exactly as in Adam all die,
even thus in the Messiah all enliven:

1 CORINTHIANS 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 But every man **each** in his own order:
Christ **Messiah** the *firstfruits* **firstlings**;
afterward **then** they that are *Christ's Messiah's*
at his *coming* **parousia**.

24 Then *cometh* the *end* **completion/shalom**,
when he shall have delivered up
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** to *God* **Elohim**,
even the Father;
when he shall have *put down* **inactivated**
all *rule* **hierarchies** and all authority and *power* **dynamis**.

25 For he must reign,
till **whenever** he hath put all enemies under his feet.

26 The *last* **final** enemy
that shall be *destroyed* **inactivated**
is death.

27 For he hath *put* **subjugated** all *things* under his feet.
But when he saith
all *things* are *put under him* **subjugated**,
it is *manifest* **evident** that he is excepted,
which *did put* **subjugated** all *things* under him.

28 And when all *things*
shall be *subdued* **subjugated** unto him,
then shall the Son also himself
be *subject* **subjugated** unto him
that *put* **subjugated** all *things* under him,
that *God* **Elohim** may be all in all.

29 Else what shall they do
which are baptized for the dead,
if the dead rise not at all?
why are they then baptized for the dead?

30 And why stand we in *jeopardy* **peril** every hour?
31 *I protest by your rejoicing*
which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord,
I die daily
boasting in what I have
in Messiah Yah Shua our Adonay.

32 If after the manner of *men* **humanity**
I *have fought* **strove** with beasts at Ephesus,
what *advantageth* **benefiteth** it me, if the dead rise not?
let us eat and drink; for to morrow we die.

33 Be not *deceived* **seduced**:
evil *communications* **homilies**
corrupt *good manners* **kind habits**.

34 *Awake to righteousness* **Sober up justly**, and sin not;
for some *have not the knowledge* **are unknowing**
of *God* **Elohim**:
I *speak* **word** this to *your* shame **you**.

THE MANNER OF THE RESURRECTION

35 But some *man will* **shall** say,
How are the dead raised up?
and, with what body do they come?

36 Thou *fool* **thoughtless**,
that which thou sowest **sporest** is not *quickened* **enlivened**,
except **unless** it die:

37 And that which thou sowest **sporest**,
thou sowest **sporest** not that body that shall be,
but *bare grain* **naked kernel**,
it may chance **if perhaps** of *wheat* **grain**,
or of some other *grain*:

38 But *God* **Elohim** giveth it a body
exactly as it *hath pleased him* **he hath willed**,
and to every seed **each sperma** his own body.

39 All flesh is not the same flesh:
but there is **indeed** one *kind of* flesh of *men* **humanity**,
another flesh of *beasts* **animals**,
another of fishes,
and another of *birds* **flyers**.

40 There are also *celestial* bodies **heavenlies**,
and bodies *terrestrial* **earthly**:
but the glory of the *celestial* **heavenlies**
is one **indeed** **another**,
and the *glory of the terrestrial* **earthly**
is another.

41 *There is* one glory of the sun,
and another glory of the moon,
and another glory of the stars:
for one star
differeth from another **thoroughly surpasseth** star in glory.

1 CORINTHIANS 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

23 and each in his own order:
Messiah the firstlings;
then whoever are of the Messiah at his parousia.

24 Then the completion/shalom
when he delivers the sovereignty to Elohim
— even the Father;
when he inactivates
all hierarchies and all authority and dynamis.

25 For he must reign,
until whenever he puts all enemies under his feet.

26 The final enemy to inactivate is death.
27 For he subjugates all under his feet.
and when he says, All are subjugated,
it is evident that he is excepted,
who subjugated all under him.

28 And when all subjugates to him
then the Son himself also subjugates to him
who subjugated all under him
that Elohim be all in all.

29 Else what do they who are baptized for the dead
if the dead rise not at all?
Why then are they baptized for the dead?
And why stand we in peril every hour?

30 I die daily,
31 boasting in what I have
in Messiah Yah Shua our Adonay.
32 If after the manner of humanity
I strove with beasts at Ephesus,
what benefit I, if the dead rise not?
Eat and drink — for tomorrow we die.
33 Be not seduced;
evil homilies corrupt kind habits.
34 Sober up justly and sin not;
for some are unknowing of Elohim:
I word this to shame you.

THE MANNER OF THE RESURRECTION

35 But some say, How are the dead raised?
And with what body come they?
36 You thoughtless!
What you spore enlivens not unless it die:
37 and what you spore,
you spore not the body to be,
but a naked kernel,
if perhaps of grain or of some other:
38 and Elohim gives a body exactly as he wills
and to each sperma its own body.

39 All flesh is not the same flesh:
but indeed there is one flesh of humanity
another flesh of animals
another of fishes
another of flyers;
40 also bodies of the heavenlies
and bodies of the earthly:
but indeed the glory of the heavenlies is another
and of the earthly is another:
41 one glory of the sun
and another glory of the moon
and another glory of the stars:
for star thoroughly surpasses star in glory.

1 CORINTHIANS 15, 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

42 So **Thus** also is the resurrection of the dead.
It is sown spored in corruption;
it is raised in incorruption:
43 *It is sown spored* in dishonour;
it is raised in glory:
it is sown spored in weakness **frailty**;
it is raised in power **dynamis**:
44 *It is sown spored* a natural **soulical** body;
it is raised a spiritual body.
There is a natural **soulical** body,
and there is a spiritual body.
45 And so **thus** it is written **scribed**,
The first man **human** Adam
was made **became into** a living soul;
the last **final** Adam
was made a quickening into an enlivening spirit.
46 *Howbeit* **Rather** that was not first which is spiritual,
but that which is natural **soulical**;
and *afterward* **then** that which is spiritual.
47 The first man **human** is of the earth, **earthy dust**;
the second man **human**
is the Lord **Adonay** from heaven **the heavens**.
48 **Such** As is the **earthy dust**,
such are they also that are **earthy dust**:
and **such** as is the **heavenly heavenlies**,
such are they also that are **heavenly heavenlies**.
49 And **exactly**
as we have borne the **image icon** of the **earthy dust**,
we shall also
bear the **image icon** of the **heavenly heavenlies**.
50 Now this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood
cannot inherit the **kingdom sovereignty** of **God Elohim**;
neither doth **corruption corruptibility**
inherit **incorruption incorruptibility**.
51 **THE MYSTERY OF THE RESURRECTION**
Behold, I **shew word** you a mystery;
Indeed, We shall not all sleep,
but we shall all be changed,
52 In a moment, in the **twinkling atom** of an eye,
at in the last trump final trumpet:
for the trumpet indeed it shall sound trump,
and the dead shall be raised incorruptible,
and we shall be changed.
53 For this corruptible
must *put on incorruption endue incorruptibility*,
and this mortal must *put on immortality endue athanasia*.
54 So when this corruptible
shall have *put on incorruption ended incorruptibility*,
and this mortal
shall have *put on immortality endued athanasia*,
then shall be brought to pass the **saying word**
that is written **scribed**,
Death is swallowed up in **victory triumph**.
Yesha Yah 25:8

CONTRIBUTIONS

16 Now concerning the **collection contribution**
for to the saints holy,
exactly as I have *given order ordained*
to the **churches ecclesiae** of Galatia, even so **thus** do ye.
2 Upon the first day of the week **shabbaths**
let every one **each** of you *lay place* by him *in store*,
as God hath treasuring up as ever he prospered him,
that there be no **gatherings contributions** when I come.
3 And when I come,
whomsoever ye shall approve by **through your letters epistles**,

1 CORINTHIANS 15, 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

42 Thus also the resurrection of the dead:
spored in corruption;
raised in incorruption:
43 spored in dishonour;
raised in glory:
spored in frailty;
raised in dynamis:
44 spored a soulical body;
raised a spiritual body.
There is a soulical body
and there is a spiritual body.
45 And thus it is scribed,
The first human Adam became into a living soul;
the final Adam into an enlivening spirit.
46 Rather the spiritual — is not first;
but the soulical — and then the spiritual.
47 The first human is dust from the earth;
the second human is Adonay from the heavens.
48 Such as the dust,
such also those of dust:
and such as the heavenlies,
such also those of the heavenlies.
49 And exactly as we bear the icon of the dust
we also bear the icon of the heavenlies.
50 And this I say brothers,
that flesh and blood
cannot inherit the sovereignty of Elohim;
corruptibility inherits not incorruptibility.
THE MYSTERY OF THE RESURRECTION
51 Behold, I word you a mystery;
indeed, we all sleep not, and we all change;
52 in a moment — in the atom of an eye
— in the final trumpet:
for indeed it trumps;
and the dead rise incorruptible
and we all change.
53 For this corruptible must endue athanasia;
and this mortal must endue immortality.
54 So when this corruptible endues incorruptibility
and this mortal endues athanasia
— then becomes the word that is scribed,
Death is swallowed in triumph.
Yesha Yah 25:8

CONTRIBUTIONS

16 And concerning the contribution to the holy;
exactly as I ordained the ecclesiae of Galatia
even thus you also do.
2 On the first of the shabbaths
each of you place by him;
treasuring up as ever he prospered;
that there be no contributions when I come.
3 And when I come,
whomever you approve through your epistles,

1 CORINTHIANS 16

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

4 them *will shall* I send
 to *bring bear away* your *liberality* **charism**
 unto *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**.

4 And *if whenever* it be *meet* **worthy** that I go also,
 they shall go with me.

THE TRAVEL PLANS OF PAULOS

5 Now I *will shall* come unto you,
 when I shall pass through Macedonia:
 for I *do* pass through Macedonia.

6 And *it may be that perhaps* I *will shall* abide **nearby**,
 yea, and winter with you,
 that ye may *bring forward* me *on my journey*
 whithersoever I go.

7 For I *will have willed to* not see you now *by in* the way;
 but I *trust hope* to *tarry a while* **abide some time** with you,
 if *the Lord permit* **ever Adonay allow**.

8 But I *will tarry at* **shall abide in** Ephesus until Pentecost.

9 For a *great door* **mega portal** and *effectual* **energized**
 is opened unto me,
 and *there are* many adversaries.

10 Now *if whenever* Timotheus come,
 see that he may be with you *without fear* **fearless**:
 for he worketh the work of *the Lord* **Adonay**, as I also *do*.

11 Let no *man* **one** therefore *despise* **belittle** him:
 but *conduct forward* him *forth in* **shalom**,
 that he may come unto me:
 for I *look for* **await** him with the brethren.

12 As *touching* **Concerning** our brother Apollos,
 I *greatly desired* **besought** him **much**
 to come unto you with the brethren:
 but *his will was* **he willed most certainly**
 not at *all to* come at *this time* **now**;
 but he *will shall* come
 when he shall have *convenient time* **opportunity**.

ADMONITIONS AND SALUTES

13 Watch ye, stand *fast* **firm** in the *faith* **trust**,
 quit you like men **manly**, be *strong* **powerful**.

14 Let all *your things be done with* **charity** **be in love**.

15 I beseech you, brethren,
 (ye know the house of Stephanas,
 that it is the *firstfruits* **firstlings** of Achaia,
 and that they have *addicted* **ordained** themselves
 to the ministry of the *saints* **holy**.)

16 That ye *submit* **subjugate** yourselves *unto* **under** such,
 and to every one that *helpeth with us* **co—worketh**,
 and laboureth.

17 I am *glad of* **cheer over** the *coming* **appearing**
 of Stephanas and *Fortunatus* **Phortunatos** and Achaicus:
 for that which was lacking on your part
 they have *supplied* **fulfilled**.

18 For they have refreshed my spirit and your's:
 therefore so acknowledge ye them that are such.

19 The *churches* **ecclesiae** of Asia salute you.
 Aquila and Priscilla salute you much in *the Lord* **Adonay**,
 with the *church* **ecclesia** that is in their house.

20 All the brethren *greet* **salute** you.
 Greet ye one another *with in* an holy kiss.

21 The salutation of *me Paul* **Paulos** with mine own hand.

22 If any *man love* **one befriend** not
 the Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
 let him be Anathema. Maranatha.

23 The *grace* **charism**
 of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
 be with you.

24 My love be with you all
 in *Christ Jesus* **Messiah Yah Shua**.
 Amen.

1 CORINTHIANS 16

exeGesés companion BIBLE

4 I send to bear away your charism to Yeru Shalem.
 And whenever it is worthy that I also go,
 they go with me.

THE TRAVEL PLANS OF PAULOS

5 And I come to you when I pass through Macedonia:
 for I pass through Macedonia;
 and perhaps I abide nearby
 — yes, and winter with you;
 and that you forward me wherever I go.

6 For I will to not see you now in the way;
 but I hope to abide some time with you
 whenever Adonay allows.

7 And I abide in Ephesus until Pentecost:
 for a mega and energized portal opens to me
 — and many adversaries.

8 And whenever Timotheus comes,
 see that he becomes fearless with you:
 for he works the work of Adonay, as also I.
 no one of you is to belittle him:
 but forward him in shalom to come to me:
 for I await him with the brothers.

9 Concerning our brother Apollos,
 I besought him much
 to come to you with the brothers:
 and he most certainly willed to not come now;
 but he comes when he has opportunity.

ADMONITIONS AND SALUTES

10 Watch! Stand firm in the trust!
 Manly! Powerful!
 Have all become in love!

11 I beseech you brothers,
 that you know the house of Stephanas
 — that it is the firstlings of Achaia
 and that they ordained themselves
 to the ministry of the holy:
 that you subjugate yourselves under such
 and to everyone co—working and laboring.

12 I cheer over the appearing
 of Stephanas and Phortunatos and Achaicus:
 for they fulfilled/shalamed your lack;
 for they refreshed my spirit and yours:
 so acknowledge them who are such.

13 The ecclesiae of Asia salute you;
 Aquila and Priscilla salute you much in Adonay,
 with the ecclesia in their house;
 all the brothers salute you.
 Greet one another in an holy kiss.

14 The salutation of Paulos with my own hand.
 If anyone befriends not Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
 have him be anathema.
 Maranatha!

15 The charism of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
 be with you:
 my love be with you all in Messiah Yah Shua.
 Amen.

2 CORINTHIANS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paul Paulos, an apostle of Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah
by **through** the will of God Elohim,
and Timothy Timo Theos our brother,
unto the church **ecclesia** of God Elohim
which is at in Corinth,
with all the saints which are **holy** in all Achaia:
2 Grace be **Charism** to you and peace **shalom**
from God Elohim our Father,
and from the Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
3 Blessed **Eulogized** be God Elohim, even the Father
of our Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
the Father of *mercies* **compassions**,
and the God Elohim of all *comfort* **consolation**;
4 Who *comforteth* **consoleth** us in all our tribulation,
that we may be able to *comfort* **console** them
which are in any *trouble* **tribulation**,
by **through** the *comfort* **consolation** wherewith
we ourselves are *comforted* **consoled** of God Elohim.
5 For **exactly** as the sufferings of Christ the Messiah
abound **superabound** in us,
so **thus** our consolation also
aboundeth by Christ **superaboundeth** through Messiah.
6 And whether we be *afflicted* **tribulated**,
it is for your consolation and salvation,
which is *effectual* **energizeth** in the enduring
of the same sufferings which we also suffer:
or whether we be *comforted* **consoled**,
it is for your consolation and salvation.
7 And our hope of you is *stedfast*,
knowing, that
exactly as ye are *partakers* **communicants** of the sufferings,
so **thus** shall ye be also of the consolation.
8 For we *would* **will** not, brethren,
have you *ignorant* **unknowing** of our *trouble* **tribulation**
which *came to* **became** us in Asia,
that we were
pressed out of measure **excessively burdened**,
above strength **beyond dynamis**,
insomuch that we despaired even of *life* **living**:
9 But we had the sentence of death in ourselves,
that we should not *trust* **confide** in ourselves,
but in God Elohim which raiseth the dead:
10 Who *delivered* **rescued** us from so great a death,
and *doth deliver* **rescueth**:
in whom we *trust* **hope**
that he *will* **shall** yet *deliver* **rescue** us;
11 Ye also *helping together* **co—working**
by *prayer* **petition** for us,
that for the *gift bestowed upon* **charisma unto** us
by *the means of many persons* **faces**
thanks may be given by **eucharistized through** many
on our behalf.
12 For our *rejoicing* **boasting** is this,
the *testimony* **witness** of our conscience,
that in *simplicity* **with liberality**
and *Godly* **sincerity of Elohim**,
not with in *fleshly* wisdom,
but by in the *grace* **charism** of God Elohim,
we have had our *conversation* **behaviour**
in the world **cosmos**,
and more *abundantly* **superabundantly**
to you—ward **toward you**.
13 For we *write* **scribe** none other *things* unto you,
than **rather** what ye read or acknowledge;
and I *trust* **hope** ye shall acknowledge
even to the *end* **completion/shalom**;
14 **Exactly** As also ye have acknowledged us *in by* part,
that we are your *rejoicing* **boasting**,
even **exactly** as ye also are our's
in the day of the Lord Jesus Adonay Yah Shua.

THE ALTERED TRAVEL PLANS OF PAULOS

15 And in this confidence
I was *mindèd* **had willed** to come unto you before,
that ye might have a *second* **benefit charism**;
16 And to pass by **through** you into Macedonia,
and to come again out of Macedonia unto you,
and of you to be *brought on my way* **forwarded**
toward Judaea **unto Yah Hudah**.

2 CORINTHIANS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos, an apostle of Yah Shua Messiah
through the will of Elohim
and Timo Theos the brother:

To the ecclesia of Elohim in Corinth;
with all the holy in all Achaia:

2 Charism to you and shalom
from Elohim our Father
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.

3 Eulogized be Elohim
even the Father of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
— the Father of *compassions*
and the Elohim of all *consolation*:
4 who consoles us in all our tribulation;
so that we can console those in any tribulation;
through the *consolation*
whereby we ourselves are consoled of Elohim.
5 For exactly as the sufferings of the Messiah
superabound in us,
thus our *consolation*
also *superabounds* through Messiah.
6 And whether we be tribulated,
it is for your consolation and salvation,
which *energizes* in the enduring
of the same sufferings we also suffer:
whether we are consoled,
it is for your consolation and salvation.
7 And our hope for you is *steadfast*,
knowing that
exactly as you are *communicants* of the sufferings,
thus also of the *consolation*.
8 For we will not, brethren,
that you be *unknowing* of our tribulation
which became us in Asia;
that we were *excessively* burdened beyond dynamis
insomuch that we even despaired of living;
9 but we ourselves
had the sentence of death in ourselves
so that we *confided* not in ourselves
— but in Elohim who raised the dead:
10 who rescued us from so great a death
— and *rescues*;
in whom we hope to still *rescue*:
11 you also *co—working* for us by your petitions,
for the *charisma* to us by many faces,
and through many be eucharistized for us.

12 For this is our *boasting*:
the *witness* of our conscience:
that with *liberality* and *sincerity* of Elohim
— not in *fleshly* wisdom but in the *charism* of Elohim
we have our behavior in the *cosmos*
and more *superabundantly* toward you.
13 For we scribe none other to you
than rather what you read or acknowledge;
and I hope that you acknowledge
even to the *completion/shalom*;
14 exactly as also you acknowledged us by part
— that we are your *boasting*
exactly as you also are ours
in the day of Adonay Yah Shua.

THE ALTERED TRAVEL PLANS OF PAULOS

15 And in this confidence
I willed to come to you previously,
so that you have a *second* **charism**;
16 and to pass through you into Macedonia
and to come again to you from Macedonia
and to be forwarded by you to Yah Hudah.

2 CORINTHIANS 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE YES OF ELOHIM

17 So When I *therefore* was thus *minded* **counseled**,
did I **then** use *lightness* **levity**?
or the *things* **those** that I *purpose* **counsel**,
do I *purpose* **counsel** according to the flesh,
that with me there should be yea yea, and nay nay?
18 But as *God* **Elohim** is *true* **trustworthy**,
our word toward you was **became** not yea and nay.
19 For the Son of *God* **Elohim**,
Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah**,
who was preached among you by **through** us,
even by **through** me
and Silvanus and *Timotheus* **Timo Theos**,
was **became** not yea and nay,
but in him was **became** yea.
20 For *all as many as* the *promises* **pre—evangelisms**
of *God* **Elohim** in him are yea, and in him Amen,
unto the glory of *God* by **Elohim through** us.
21 Now he which stablisheth us with you
in *Christ* **Messiah**,
and hath anointed us, is *God* **Elohim**;
22 Who hath also sealed us,
and given the *earnest* **pledge** of the Spirit in our hearts.
23 Moreover I call *God* **Elohim**
for a *record* **witness** upon my soul,
that to spare you I came *not as yet* **no more** unto Corinth.
24 Not for that we
have dominion over **overlord** your *faith* **trust**,
but are *helpers* **co—workers** of your *joy* **cheer**:
for by *faith* **trust** ye stand.
2 But I *determined* **judged** this with myself,
that I *would* **should** not come again to you
in *heaviness* **sorrow**.
2 For if I *make you sorry* **sorrow you**,
who is he then that *maketh* **rejoiceth** me *glad*,
but the *same* **except that**
which is *made sorry* **sorrowed** by me?
3 And I *wrote* **scribed** this same unto you,
lest, when I came,
I should have sorrow *from them*
of whom I *ought to rejoice* **need cheer**;
having confidence in you all,
that my *joy is the joy* **cheer is** of you all.
4 For out of much *affliction* **tribulation**
and *anguish* **oppression** of heart
I *wrote* **scribed** unto you *with through* many tears;
not that ye should *be grieved* **sorrow**,
but that ye might know the love which I have
more *abundantly* **superabundantly** unto you.
FORGIVING THE OFFENDER
5 But if any have *caused grief* **sorrowed**,
he hath not *grieved* **sorrowed** me, but *in by* part:
that I may not *overcharge* **overburden** you all.
6 Sufficient to such a *man one*
is this *punishment* **disesteeming**,
which was *inflicted* of many.
7 So that contrariwise ye *ought* rather
to forgive him **grant charism**, and *comfort* **console** him,
lest *perhaps* **somehow** such a one should be swallowed up
with *overmuch* **superabundant** sorrow.
8 *Wherefore* **So** I beseech you
that ye *would* **should** confirm your love *toward* **unto** him.
9 For to this *end* also did I *write* **scribe**,
that I might know the proof of you,
whether ye be obedient in all *things*.
10 To whom ye
forgive any thing **somewhat grant charism**,
I *forgive* also:
for if I *forgave any thing* **somewhat granted charism**,
to whom I *forgave it* **granted charism**,
for your sakes *forgave I it*
in the *person* **face** of *Christ* **Messiah**;
11 Lest Satan should *get an advantage of* **defraud** us:
for we are not *ignorant* **unknowing**
of his *devices* **comprehensions**.
12 *Furthermore*, **And** when I came to Troas
to *preach Christ's gospel* **evangelize the Messiah**,
and a *door* **portal** was opened unto me
of *the Lord* **in Adonay**,

2 CORINTHIANS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE YES OF ELOHIM

17 So counseling thus, use I levity?
Or those I counsel,
counsel I according to the flesh
— so that with me there is Yes yes and No no?
18 And as Elohim *is* trustworthy,
our word toward you became not Yes and No.
19 For the Son of Elohim, Yah Shua Messiah,
being preached among you through us
— through me and Silvanus and Timo Theos
became not Yes and No;
but in him became Yes.
20 For as many as the pre—evangelisms of Elohim
in him are Yes and in him Amen,
to the glory of Elohim through us.
21 Now he who established us with you in Messiah
and who anointed us, is Elohim;
22 who also sealed us
and gave the pledge of the Spirit in our hearts.
23 And I call Elohim for a witness upon my soul,
so as to spare you, I came no more to Corinth.
24 Not that we overlord your trust,
but are co—workers of your cheer:
for by trust you stand.
2 And I judged this with myself,
to not come again to you in sorrow.
2 For if I sorrow you, who then rejoices me
— except whomever I sorrowed?
3 And I scribe this same to you,
lest, when I come,
I have sorrow from whom I needed cheer;
having confidence in you all,
that my cheer is of you all.
4 For from much tribulation and oppression of heart
I scribed to you through many tears;
not to sorrow you
— but that you know the love I have
more superabundantly to you.

FORGIVING THE OFFENDER

5 And if anyone sorrows
he sorrows not me — except partly:
that I not overburden you all.
6 Sufficient to such a one
is this disesteeming by many.
7 So that contrariwise
rather grant him charism and console him;
lest somehow
such a one is swallowed with superabundant sorrow.
8 So I beseech you to confirm your love to him.
9 For this I also scribe, to know the proof of you
— whether you be obedient in all.
10 To whom you somewhat grant charism
— I also:
for if I somewhat grant charism
I grant charism for your sakes in the face of Messiah;
lest Satan defraud us:
for we are not unknowing of his comprehensions.
11 And when I came to Troas
to evangelize the Messiah
and a portal was opened to me in Adonay,

2 CORINTHIANS 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

13 I had no rest **relaxation** in my spirit,
because I found not Titus my brother:
but *taking my leave* of **bidding** them **bye bye**,
I went from thence into Macedonia.

THE TRIUMPHANT IN THE MESSIAH

14 Now thanks **And charism** be unto *God Elohim*,
which always causeth us
to triumph in *Christ the Messiah*,
and *maketh manifest* **manifesteth** the *savour fragrance*
of his knowledge *by through* us in every place.

15 For we are unto *God Elohim*
a *sweet savour* **good fragrance** of *Christ Messiah*,
in them that are saved, and in them that *perish destruct*:
16 To the one **indeed**
we are the *savour fragrance* of death unto death;
and to the other the *savour fragrance* of life unto life.
And who is *sufficient* **adequate** for these *things*?
17 For we are not as many,
which *corrupt* **huckster** the word of *God Elohim*:
but as of sincerity, but as of *God Elohim*,
in the sight of *God Elohim* speak we in *Christ Messiah*.

SCRIBINGS OF THE HEART

3 Do we begin again to commend ourselves?
or need we **unless** as some *others*,
need weepistles of commendation to you,
or *letters of* commendation from you?
2 Ye are our epistle *written* **inscribed** in our hearts,
known and read of all *men* **humanity**:
3 *Forasmuch as ye are manifestly declared* **Manifested**
to be the epistle of *Christ Messiah* ministered by us,
written **inscribed** not with ink,
but with the Spirit of the living *God Elohim*;
not in *tables* **slabs** of stone,
but in *fleshy tables* **slabs** of the heart.
4 And such *trust* **confidence** have we
through *Christ to God—ward* **the Messiah toward Elohim**:
5 Not that we are *sufficient* **adequate** of ourselves
to *think any thing* **reckon somewhat** as of ourselves;
but our *sufficiency* **adequacy** is of *God Elohim*;
6 Who also hath *made* **enabled** us *able*
ministers of the new *testament* **covenant**;
not of the *letter* **scribing**, but of the spirit:
for the *letter killeth* **scribing slaughtereth**,
but the spirit *giveth life* **enliveneth**.
7 But if the *ministration* **ministry** of death,
written and **inscribings** engraven in stones,
was glorious **became in glory**,
so that the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
could not *stedfastly behold* **stare**
unto the face of *Moses Mosheh*
for the glory of his *countenance* **face**;
which *glory* was to be *done away* **inactivated**:
8 How **indeed**
shall not the *ministration* **ministry** of the spirit
be rather *glorious* **in glory**?
9 For if the *ministration* **ministry** of condemnation
be *glory*,
much more *doth*
the *ministration* **ministry** of *righteousness* **justness**
exceed **superaboundeth** in *glory*.
10 For even that which was *made glorious* **glorified**
had no *glory* in this *respect* **part**,
by reason **because** of the *glory* that *excelleth*.
11 For if that which is *done away* **inactivated**
was *glorious* **through glory**,
much more that which *remaineth* **abideth**
is glorious **be in glory**.

THE INACTIVATED COVENANT

12 Seeing then that we have such hope,
we use *great plainness* **much boldness** of speech:
13 And not **exactly** as *Moses Mosheh*,
which put a veil over his face,
that the *children* **sons of Israel Yisra El**
could not *stedfastly look* **stare** to the *end* **completion/shalom**
of that which is *abolished* **inactivated**:
14 But their *minds* **comprehensions**
were *blinded* **petrified**:
for until this day *remaineth* **abideth** the same
veil untaken away — **not unveiled**

2 CORINTHIANS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

13 I had no relaxation in my spirit;
because I found not Titus my brother:
but bidding them bye bye,
I went from there into Macedonia.

THE TRIUMPHANT IN THE MESSIAH

14 And charism be to Elohim,
who always causes us to triumph in the Messiah
and manifests the fragrance of his knowledge
through us in every place.

15 For to Elohim
we are a good fragrance of Messiah
— in them who are saved and in them who destruct:
indeed to the one the fragrance of death to death;
and to the other the fragrance of life to life.
And who is adequate for these?
17 For we are not as many
who huckster the word of Elohim:
but as of sincerity — but as of Elohim,
in the sight of Elohim we speak in Messiah.

SCRIBINGS OF THE HEART

3 Begin we again to commend ourselves?
Unless, as some,
need we epistles of commendation to you?
Or commendation from you?
2 You are our epistle inscribed in our hearts,
known and read of all humanity:
3 manifested to be the epistle of Messiah
ministered by us;
inscribed, not with ink,
but with the Spirit of the living Elohim;
not in slabs of stone,
but in fleshy slabs of the heart.
4 And we have such confidence
through the Messiah toward Elohim:
5 not that we are adequate of ourselves
to reckon somewhat as of ourselves;
but our adequacy is of Elohim
who also enables us
6 — ministers of the new covenant;
not of scribing but of spirit:
for the scribing slaughters, and the spirit enlivens.
7 And if the ministry of death
— inscribings engraved in stones
became in glory
— so that the sons of Yisra El
could not stare to the face of Mosheh
for the glory of his face
— which *inscribings* were being inactivated:
8 how indeed not rather
the ministry of the spirit be in glory?
9 For if the ministry of condemnation *be in* glory,
much more rather
the ministry of justness superabounds in glory.
10 For even that which was glorified
has no glory in this part
because of the glory that excels:
11 for if that which is inactivated was through glory,
much more that which abides *be* in glory.

THE INACTIVATED COVENANT

12 So seeing that we have such hope
we use much boldness of speech:
13 and not exactly as Mosheh
— who put a veil over his face
so the sons of Yisra El could not stare
to the completion/shalom of what is inactivated:
14 but their comprehensions petrified:
for until this day the same abides — not unveiled

2 CORINTHIANS 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

in the reading of the old testament covenant;
which *vail is done away* **inactivated** in *Christ Messiah*.
15 But even unto this day, when *Moses Mosheh* is read,
the vail is **laid** upon their heart.
16 Nevertheless
when **ever** it shall turn to *the Lord Yah Veh*,
the vail shall be taken away.

Exodus 34:34

17 Now *the Lord Adonay* is that Spirit:
and where the Spirit of *the Lord Yah Veh* is,
there is liberty.
18 But we all, with *open* **unveiled face**
beholding as in a glass **reflecting**
the glory of *the Lord Yah Veh*,
are *changed* **metamorphosed** into the same *image icon*
from glory to glory,
even **exactly** as by the Spirit of *the Lord Yah Veh*.

Exodus 16:7

THE LIGHT FROM THE DARK

4 *Therefore seeing we have* **So having** this ministry,
exactly as we have *received mercy* **been mercied**,
we *faint* **weary** not;
2 But have *renounced* **disowned**
the *hidden things* **secrets** of *dishonesty* **shame**,
not walking in *craftiness* **cunningness**,
nor handling the word of *God Elohim* deceitfully;
but by manifestation of the truth commending ourselves
to every *man's* **human's** conscience
in the sight of *God Elohim*.
3 But **And also**, if our *gospel* **evangelism** be *hid veiled*,
it is *hid* to **veiled among** them that are lost:
4 In whom the *God Elohim* of this *world eon*
hath blinded the *minds* **comprehensions**
of *them which believe not* **the trustless**,
lest the light of the
glorious gospel **evangelism of the glory** of *Christ the Messiah*,
who is the *image icon* of *God Elohim*,
should *shine* **radiate** unto them.
5 For we preach not ourselves,
but *Christ Jesus the Lord Messiah Yah Shua Adonay*;
and ourselves your servants for *Jesus' Yah Shua's* sake.
6 For *God Elohim*,
who *commanded* **said** the light
to *shine* **radiate** out of darkness,
hath *shined* **radiated** in our hearts,
to *give the light* **for the radiancy**
of the knowledge of the glory of *God Elohim*
in the face of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*.

CLAY VESSELS

7 But we have this treasure in *earthen* **clay** vessels,
that the excellency of the *power* **dynamis**
may be of *God Elohim*, and not of us.
8 We are *troubled on every side* **tribulated in all**,
yet not distressed;
we are perplexed, but not in despair;
9 Persecuted, but not forsaken;
cast down, but not destroyed;
10 Always *bearing about* **carrying** in the body
the *dying* **death** of *the Lord Jesus Adonay Yah Shua*,
that the life also of *Jesus Yah Shua*
might be *made* manifest in our body.
11 For we which live are *alway* **ever** delivered unto death
for *Jesus' Yah Shua's* sake,
that the life also of *Jesus Yah Shua*
might be *made* manifest in our mortal flesh.
12 So then **indeed** death *worketh* **energizeth** in us,
but life in you.

THE SPIRIT OF THE TRUST

13 We having the same spirit of *faith* **the trust**,
according as *it is written* **scribed**,
I *believed* **trusted**, and therefore have I spoken;
we also *believe* **trust**, and therefore speak;

Psalms 116:10

14 Knowing that
he which *raised up* *the Lord Jesus Adonay Yah Shua*
shall *raise up* us also by *Jesus Yah Shua*,
and shall present us with you.
15 For all *things* **these** are for your sakes,

2 CORINTHIANS 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

in the reading of the old covenant;
which is inactivated in Messiah.
15 But even to this day
when Mosheh is read, the veil lies on their heart.
16 Nevertheless whenever they turn to Yah Veh,
the veil is taken away.

Exodus 34:34

17 And Adonay is that Spirit:
and where the Spirit of Yah Veh is
there is liberty.
18 And we all, with unveiled face,
reflecting the glory Yah Veh,
are metamorphosed into the same icon
from glory to glory
exactly as by the Spirit of Yah Veh.

Exodus 16:7

THE LIGHT FROM THE DARK

4 So having this ministry,
exactly as we are mercied, we weary not;
2 but disown the secrets of shame;
neither walking in cunningness
nor handling the word of Elohim deceitfully;
but by manifestation of the truth
commending ourselves
to the conscience of every human
in the sight of Elohim.
3 And also, if our evangelism is veiled,
it is veiled among the lost:
4 in whom the elohim of this eon
blinds the comprehensions of the trustless,
lest the light of the evangelism
of the glory of the Messiah
— being the icon of Elohim
radiate to them.
5 For we preach not ourselves
but Messiah Yah Shua Adonay;
and ourselves your servants for sake of Yah Shua.
6 For Elohim, who said,
Light, radiate from darkness!
radiates in our hearts
for the radiancy of the knowledge
of the glory of Elohim
in the face of Yah Shua Messiah.

CLAY VESSELS

7 And we have this treasure in clay vessels;
that the excellency of the dynamis be of Elohim
and not of us.
8 We are tribulated in all, yet not distressed;
we are perplexed, but not in despair;
9 persecuted, but not forsaken;
cast down, but not destroyed:
10 Always carrying in the body
the death of Adonay Yah Shua,
so that the life of Yah Shua
also manifests in our body.
11 For we who live are ever delivered to death
for sake of Yah Shua,
so that the life of Yah Shua
also manifests in our mortal flesh.
12 So thus indeed,
the death energizes in us, and the life in you.

THE SPIRIT OF THE TRUST

13 We, having the same spirit of the trust,
according as scribed,
I trusted and thus I spoke;
we also trust and thus speak;

Psalms 116:10

14 knowing that he who raised Adonay Yah Shua,
through Yah Shua, also raises us
— and presents us with you.
15 For all these are for your sakes

2 CORINTHIANS 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that the *abundant grace* **superabundant charism**
might through the *thanksgiving eucharist* of many
redound **superabound** to the glory of *God Elohim*.
16 For which cause **So**, we *faint* **weary** not;
but though our outward *man* **perish** **humanity corrupt**,
yet the inward *man* is renewed day by day.
17 For our light *affliction* **tribulation**,
which is *but for a moment* **momentary**,
worketh for us
a *far more* **an exceeding unto** exceeding
and eternal *weight* **burden** of glory;
18 While we *look* **scope** not at the *things which are* seen,
but at the *things which are* not seen:
for the *things which are* seen are temporal;
but the *things which are* not seen are eternal.

HOUSES, TENTS, AND EDIFICES

5 For we know
that *if* **whenever** our earthly house of this tabernacle
were dissolved **disintegrate**,
we have a *building* **an edifice** of *God Elohim*,
an house not *made with hands* **handmade**,
eternal in the heavens.
2 For in this we *groan* **sigh**,
earnestly desiring **yearning** to be *clothed upon* **endued**
with our house which is from *heaven* **the heavens**:
3 If *so be that* **indeed** being *clothed* **endued**
we shall not be found naked.
AT HOME VS AWAY FROM HOME
4 For we *that are* **being** in this tabernacle *do groan* **sigh**,
being burdened:
not for that we would **since we will to not**
be *unclothed* **stripped**,
but *clothed upon* **endued**,
that *mortality* **the mortal** might be swallowed up of life.
5 Now he that hath *wrought* **worked** us
for the selfsame *thing* is *God Elohim*,
who also hath given unto us
the *earnest* **pledge** of the Spirit.
6 Therefore **So** we are always *confident* **encouraged**,
knowing that, whilst we are at home in the body,
we are *absent* **away from home** from *the Lord Adonay*:
7 (For we walk *by faith* **through trust**,
not *by sight* **through semblance**.)
8 We are *confident* **encouraged**, *I say*,
and *willing* **well—approve** rather
to be *absent* **away from home** from the body,
and to be *present* **at home** with *the Lord Adonay*.
9 Wherefore **So** we *labour* **befriendingly esteem**, that,
whether *present* **at home**,
or *absent* **whether away from home**,
we may be *accepted of* **well—pleasing unto** him.
10 For we must all *appear* **manifest**
before the judgment seat **in front of the bamah**
of *Christ the Messiah*;
that every *one* **each** may receive
the things done in **through** his body,
according to **toward** that he hath *done* **transacted**,
whether *it be* good, or *bad* **whether evil**.

ALL DIED

11 **So** Knowing *therefore* the *terror* **awe** of *the Lord Adonay*,
we *persuade men* **convince** **humanity**;
but we are *made* manifest unto *God Elohim*;
and I *trust* **hope** also
are *made* manifest in your consciences.
12 For we commend not ourselves again unto you,
but give you *occasion* **opportunity**
to *glory* **boast** on our behalf,
that ye may have somewhat *to answer* **toward** them
which *glory* **boast** in *appearance* **face**, and not in heart.
13 For whether we *be beside ourselves* **astounded**,
it is to *God Elohim*:
or whether we *be sober* **soundminded**,
it is for your cause.
14 For the love of *Christ the Messiah*
constraineth **holdeth** us **together**;
because we thus judge,
that if one died for all, then were all dead:
15 And *that* he died for all,

2 CORINTHIANS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— that the superabundant charism
through the eucharist of many,
superabound to the glory of Elohim.
16 So we weary not;
but if indeed our outward humanity corrupts,
yet the inward renews day by day.
17 For our momentary light tribulation works for us
an exceeding to exceeding eternal burden of glory;
18 while we scope not at the seen, but at the not seen:
for the seen are temporal; but the not seen are eternal.

HOUSES, TENTS, AND EDIFICES

5 For we know
that whenever our earthly house of this tabernacle
disintegrates,
we have an edifice of Elohim
— a house not handmade — eternal in the heavens.
2 For in this we sigh,
yearning to be endued
with our house from the heavens:
3 If indeed being endued we not be found naked.

AT HOME VS AWAY FROM HOME

4 For we sigh
— being in this tabernacle — being burdened:
since we will to not be stripped, but endued,
that the mortal be swallowed by life.
5 Now he who works the same for us is Elohim
who also gives us the pledge of the Spirit.
6 So we are always encouraged, knowing that,
while we are at home in the body,
we are away from home from Adonay:
7 For we walk through trust, not through semblance:
8 we are encouraged and well—approve
rather to be away from home from the body
and to be at home with Adonay.
9 So we befriendingly esteem that
— whether at home — whether away from home,
we be well—pleasing to him.
10 For we must all manifest
in front of the bamah of the Messiah;
that each, through his body,
receives according to what he transacted
— whether good — whether evil.

ALL DIED

11 So knowing the awe of Adonay,
we convince humanity;
and manifest to Elohim;
and I hope also, manifest in your consciences.
12 For we commend not ourselves again to you,
but give you opportunity to boast on our behalf,
to have somewhat toward them
who boast in face and not in heart.
13 For whether astounded, it is to Elohim;
or whether soundminded, it is to you.
14 For the love of the Messiah holds us together;
because we judge thus:
that if one died for all, thus all are dead:
15 and he died for all,

2 CORINTHIANS 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that they which live
should *not henceforth* **no longer** live unto themselves,
but unto him which died for them, and rose *again*.

THE MINISTRY OF RECONCILIATION

16 *Wherefore* **So**
henceforth know we no *man* **one** after the flesh:
yea, though we have known *Christ Messiah*
after the flesh,
yet **from** now henceforth **on**
know we him *no more* **not still**.
17 *Therefore* **So then** if any *man* **one** be in *Christ Messiah*,
he is a new *creature* **creation**:
old things are **the archaic** has passed away;
behold, all *things are* become new.
18 And all *things are* of *God Elohim*,
who hath reconciled us to himself
by Jesus Christ through Yah Shua Messiah,
and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation;
19 *To wit* **How**, that *God Elohim* was in *Christ Messiah*,
reconciling the *world* **cosmos** unto himself,
not *imputing* **reckoning**
their *trespasses* **backslidings** unto them;
and hath *committed unto* **placed in** us
the word of reconciliation.
20 *Now then* **So**
we are *ambassadors* **presbyters** for *Christ Messiah*,
as *though* *God Elohim*
did beseech you by **beseeching through** us:
we *pray* **petition** you in *Christ's Messiah's* stead,
be ye reconciled to *God Elohim*.
21 For he hath made him
to be sin for us **sin in our behalf**,
who knew no sin;
that we might *be made* **become**
the *righteousness* **justness** of *God Elohim* in him.

THE DAY OF SALVATION IS NOW!

6 **So** *We then, as workers together with him* **co—working**,
beseech you also
that ye receive not the *grace* **charism** of *God Elohim*
in vain.
2 (For he saith **wordeth**,
I have heard thee
in a *time accepted* **an acceptable season**,
and in the day of salvation
have I *succoured* **helped** thee:
behold, now is the *accepted* **well—received** time;
behold, now is the day of salvation.)
3 Giving no *offence* **stumbling** in *any thing aught*,
that the ministry be not *blamed* **blemished**:
4 But in all *things approving* **commending** ourselves
as the ministers of *God Elohim*,
in *much patience* **many endurances**,
in *afflictions* **tribulations**,
in *necessities* **compulsions**, in distresses,
5 In stripes, in *imprisonments* **guardhouses**,
in *tumults* **instabilities**, in labours,
in watchings, in fastings;
6 *By pureness* **In holiness**, by **in** knowledge,
by longsuffering **in patience**, by **in** kindness,
by **in** the Holy Ghost **Spirit**,
by **in** love *unfeigned* **unpretentious**,
7 *By* **In** the word of truth,
by **in** the power **dynamis** of *God Elohim*,
by **through** the *armour* **weapon** of *righteousness* **justness**
on **at** the right *hand* and on **at** the left,
8 *By honour* **Through glory** and dishonour,
by *evil report* **through defamation**
and *good report* **euphony**:
as *deceivers* **seducers**, and yet true;
9 As unknown, and yet well known;
as dying, and, behold, we live;
as *chastened* **disciplined**, and not *killed* **deathified**;
10 As *sorrowful* **sorrowed**,
yet *always rejoicing* **ever cheering**;
as poor, yet *making* **enriching** many rich;
as having *nothing* **naught**,
and yet *possessing* **holding** all *things*.
11 O ye Corinthians, our mouth is open unto you,
our heart is *enlarged* **broadened**.

2 CORINTHIANS 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

that whoever lives, lives no longer to themselves,
but to him who died for them and rose.

THE MINISTRY OF RECONCILIATION

16 So henceforth we know no one after the flesh:
yes, though we knew Messiah after the flesh,
yet from now on we still know not.
17 So anyone in Messiah is a new creation:
the archaic passed; behold, all becomes new.
18 And all are of Elohim,
who reconciles us to himself
through Yah Shua Messiah
and gives us the ministry of reconciliation;
19 — how that Elohim was in Messiah,
reconciling the cosmos to himself
— not reckoning their backslidings to them;
and places the word of reconciliation in us.
20 So we are presbyters for Messiah,
as Elohim beseeching through us:
we petition in the stead of Messiah,
be reconciled to Elohim.
21 For him, who knew no sin,
he made him sin in our behalf;
so that we become the justness of Elohim in him.

THE DAY OF SALVATION IS NOW!

6 So co—working, we also beseech you
to not receive the charism of Elohim in vain.
2 For he words,
In an acceptable season, I heard you;
and in the day of salvation, I helped you:
behold, now is the well—received time;
behold, now is the day of salvation.
Yesha yah 49:8

3 Give no stumbling in aught,
to not blemish the ministry:
4 but commend ourselves in all as the ministers of Elohim,
in many endurances,
in tribulations,
in compulsions,
in distresses,
5 in stripes,
in guardhouses,
in instabilities,
in labors,
in watchings,
in fastings;
6 in holiness,
in knowledge,
in patience,
in kindness,
in the Holy Spirit,
in love unpretentious,
7 in the word of truth,
in the dynamis of Elohim;
through the weapon of justness
at the right and at the left,
8 through glory and dishonor,
through defamation and euphony;
as seducers and true,
9 as unknown and well known,
as dying and behold, we live,
as disciplined and not deathified,
10 as sorrowed yet ever cheering,
as poor yet enriching many,
as having naught and holding all.
11 O you Corinthians, our mouth opens to you,
our heart broadens.

2 CORINTHIANS 6, 7

exeGes ready research BIBLE

12 Ye are not *straitened* **distressed** in us,
but ye are *straitened* **distressed**
in your own *bowels* **spleens**.

13 Now for a *recompence* **retribution** in the same,
(I *speak word* as unto *my* children,) **be**
ye also *enlarged* **broadened**.

UNEQUAL YOKES

14 Be ye not *unequally* yoked *together*
with *unbelievers* **the trustless**:
for what *fellowship* **partaking** hath *righteousness* **justness**
with *unrighteousness* **torah violations**?
and what communion hath light with darkness?
15 And what *concord* **symphony**
hath *Christ Messiah* with *Belial* **Beli Yaal**?
or what part hath *he that believeth* **the trusting**
with an *infidel* **the trustless**?
16 And what *agreement* **togetherness**
hath the *temple nave* of *God Elohim* with idols?
for ye are the *temple nave* of the living *God Elohim*;
exactly as *God Elohim* hath said,
I *will dwell in* **shall indwell** them,
and walk *in among* them;
and I *will shall* be their *God Elohim*,
and they shall be my people.

Leviticus 26:12, Yirme Yah 31:33,
Yechezq El 36:28, Zechar Yah 13:9

THE CALL TO BE SET APART

17 *Wherefore* **So** come out from among them,
and be ye *separate* **set apart**,
saith the Lord **wordeth Yah Veh**,
and touch not the *unclean thing* **impure**;
and I *will shall also* receive you,
18 And *will shall* be
a *Father* unto you, **Father**,
and ye shall be *my unto me*, sons and daughters,
saith the Lord Almighty **wordeth Yah Veh Sabaoth**.

Yesha Yah 52:11, Yirme Yah 31:9

THE CALL TO PURIFY

7 **So** Having *therefore* these *promises* **pre—evangelisms**,
dearly beloved, let us *cleanse* **purify** ourselves
from all *filthiness* **staining** of the flesh and spirit,
perfecting **fully completing/shalaming** holiness
in the *fear awe* of *God Elohim*.

2 *Receive* **Accept** us;
we have *wronged* **injured no man one**,
we have corrupted no *man one*,
we have defrauded no *man one*.

3 I *speak word* not this
to condemn you **for condemnation**:
for I have *said before* **foretold**,
that ye are in our hearts
to *die co—die* and *live with you co—live*.

4 *Great Much* is my boldness of speech toward you,
great much is my *glorying* **boasting** of you:
I am filled **full** with *comfort* **consolation**,
I am *exceeding* **exceedingly**
joyful **superabundantly cheerful** in all our tribulation.

5 For, when we were come into Macedonia,
our flesh had no *rest* **relaxation**,
but we were *troubled on every side* **tribulated in all**;
without were *fightings* **strifes**, within were *fears* **awes**.

6 *Nevertheless* *God* **Yet Elohim**,
that *comforteth* **consoleth**
those that are cast down **the humbled**,
comforted **consoled** us
by *in the coming* **appearing** of Titus;
7 And not by *in his coming* **appearing** only,
but by *in the consolation*
wherewith he was *comforted* **consoled** in you,
when he *told* **evangelized** us
your *earnest desire* **yearning**,
your *mourning* **grieving**,
your *fervent mind* **zeal** toward me;
so that I *rejoiced* **cheered** the more.

SORROW TOWARD ELOHIM, REPENTANCE TO SALVATION

8 For though I *made* **sorrowed** you *sorry*
with a letter **in an epistle**,
I *do not repent* **regret not**, though I did *repent* **regret**:

2 CORINTHIANS 6, 7

exeGes companion BIBLE

12 You are not distressed in us,
but you are distressed in your *own* spleens.
13 and as a retribution in the same,
I word as to children, that you also broaden.

UNEQUAL YOKES

14 Yoke not *unequally* with the trustless!
For what partaking has justness with torah violations?
And what communion has light with darkness?
15 And what symphony has Messiah with Beli Yaal?
Or what part has the trusting with the trustless?
16 And what togetherness
has the nave of Elohim with idols?

For you are the nave of the living Elohim;
exactly as Elohim says,
I indwell them and walk among them;
and I become their Elohim;
and they become my people.

Leviticus 26:12, Yirme Yah 31:33,
Yechezq El 36:28, Zechar Yah 13:9

THE CALL TO SET APART

17 So come out from among them,
and be set apart, words Yah Veh,
and touch not the impure;
and I also receive you,
and become to you, Father
and you become to me, sons and daughters,
words Yah Veh Sabaoth.

Yesha Yah 52:11, Yirme Yah 31:9

THE CALL TO PURIFY

7 So beloved,
having these pre—evangelisms,
we purify ourselves
from all staining of the flesh and spirit,
fully completing/shalaming holiness in the awe of Elohim.

2 Accept us:
we injured no one;
we corrupted no one;
we defrauded no one.

3 I word this not for condemnation:
for I foretold
that you are in our hearts to co—die and co—live.

4 Much *is* my boldness of speech toward you,
much *is* my boasting of you:
I am filled full with consolation;
I am exceedingly superabundantly cheerful
in all our tribulation.

5 For when we came into Macedonia
our flesh had no relaxation;
but we were tribulated in all
— outward strifes — inward awes.
6 Yet Elohim who consoles the humbled
consoled us in the appearing of Titus;
7 and not only in his appearing;
but in the consolation
wherewith he was consoled in you
— when he evangelized us of your yearning,
your grieving, your zeal toward me;
so that I cheered the more.

SORROW TOWARD ELOHIM, REPENTANCE TO SALVATION

8 For though I sorrowed you in an epistle,
I regret not — though I regretted:

2 CORINTHIANS 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 for I perceive **see** that *the same* **this** epistle
hath made **sorrowed** you *sorry*,
though *it were* but for a season **an hour**.
Now I rejoice **cheer**,
not that ye were *made sorry* **sorrowed**,
but that ye sorrowed *to* **unto** repentance:
for ye were *made sorry* **sorrowed**
after a Godly manner **toward Elohim**,
that ye might receive *damage* **have no loss** by us
in nothing.

10 For Godly sorrow **toward Elohim**
worketh repentance to salvation
not to be repented of **unrequitable**:
but the sorrow of the *world* **cosmos** worketh death.

11 For behold this *selfsame thing*,
that ye sorrowed *after a Godly sort* **toward Elohim**,
what carefulness **how much diligence**
it wrought **worked** in you,
yea, what clearing of yourselves **rather, pleading**,
yea, what **rather**, indignation,
yea, what fear **rather, awe**,
yea, what vehement desire **rather, yearning**,
yea, what **rather**, zeal,
yea, what revenge **rather, vengeance!**
In all *things* **these**
ye have *approved* **commended** yourselves
to be *clear* **hallowed** in this matter.

12 *Wherefore* **So**,
though I wrote **scribed** unto you,
I did it not for his cause **sake**
that had *done the wrong* **injured**,
nor for his *cause* **sake**
that *suffered wrong* **was injured**,
but **for sake** that our *care* **diligence** for you
in the sight of *God* **Elohim**
might *appear* **manifest** unto you.

13 *Therefore* **Sowe** were
comforted **consoled** in your *comfort* **consolation**:
yea, and exceedingly the more **superabundantly**
joyed **cheered** we for the *joy* **cheer** of Titus,
because his spirit was refreshed by you all.

14 For if I have boasted *any thing* **somewhat** to him
of you,
I am not ashamed;
but as we spake all *things* to you in truth,
even **so** **thus** our boasting, *which I made* before Titus,
is found **becometh** a truth.

15 And his *inward affection* **spleen**
is more *abundant toward* **superabundant unto** you,
whilst he remembereth the obedience of you all,
how with *fear* **awe** and trembling ye received him.

16 **So** I rejoice **cheer** *therefore*
that I *have confidence* **be encouraged**
in you in all *things*.

CONTRIBUTIONS

8 *Moreover, brethren,*
we *do you to wit* **make known to you**
of the *grace* **charism** of *God* **Elohim**
bestowed **given**
on *in the churches* **ecclesiae** of Macedonia;

2 How that in
a *great trial* **much proofing** of *affliction* **tribulation**
the *abundance* **superabundance** of their *joy* **cheer**
and their deep poverty
abounded **superabounded**
unto the riches of their liberality.

3 For to their *power* **dynamis**, I *bear record* **witness**,
yea, and beyond their power **dynamis**,
they *were willing* **volunteered** of themselves.

4 *Praying* **Petitioning** us with much *intreaty* **beseeching**
that we *would* **should** receive the *gift* **charism**,
and *take upon us* the *fellowship* **communion**
of the *ministering* **and ministry** to the *saints* **holy**.

5 And *this they did*, not **exactly** as we hoped,
but first gave their own selves to the *Lord* **Adonay**,
and unto us *by* **through** the will of *God* **Elohim**.

6 *Insomuch that we desired* **Unto my beseeching** Titus,
that **exactly** as he had begun **previously**,

2 CORINTHIANS 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 for I see that this epistle sorrowed you
though but for an hour.
Now I cheer — not that you were sorrowed;
but that you sorrowed to repentance:
for you sorrowed toward Elohim
so that you have no loss by us.

10 For sorrow toward Elohim
works repentance to salvation — unrequitable:
but the sorrow of the cosmos works death.

11 For behold this,
that you sorrowed toward Elohim,
how much diligence it worked in you
rather, pleading;
yes, rather indignation;
yes, rather awe;
yes, rather yearning;
yes, rather zeal;
yes, rather vengeance.
In all these you commend yourselves
to be hallowed in this matter.

12 So, though I scribe to you
— neither for sake of the injurer
nor for sake of the injured;
but for sake that in the sight of Elohim
our diligence for you be manifest to you.

13 So we consoled in your consolation:
yes and the more superabundantly
we cheered for the cheer of Titus
because you all refreshed his spirit.

14 For if I boasted to him somewhat of you,
I shame not;
but as we spoke to you all in truth,
even thus our boasting in front of Titus
becomes a truth.

15 And his spleen is more superabundant to you
while he remembers all your obedience
— how with awe and trembling you received him.
So I cheer that I am encouraged in you in all.

CONTRIBUTIONS

8 Brothers,
we have you know the charism of Elohim
given in the ecclesiae of Macedonia;
how that in much proofing by tribulation
the superabundance of their cheer
and their deep poverty
superabounds to the riches of their liberality.

2 For I witness to their dynamis
— yes and beyond their dynamis
that they volunteer of themselves;
petitioning us with much beseeching
to receive the charism
and the communion and ministry to the holy.

3 And not exactly as we hoped,
but first they gave their own selves to Adonay
and to us through the will of Elohim.

4 To my beseeching Titus,
that exactly as he previously began,

2 CORINTHIANS 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

so **thus** he would **should** also
finish **fully complete/shalam** in you
the same **grace this charism** also.
7 Therefore **Rather**,
exactly as ye *abound* **superabound** in *every thing all*,
in *faith* **trust**, and *utterance* **word**, and knowledge,
and in all diligence, and in your love to us,
see that ye *abound* **superabound**
in this *grace* **charism** also.
8 I speak **word**, not by *commandment* **order**,
but by *occasion of* **through** the *forwardness* **diligence** of others,
and to prove the *sincerity* **genuineness** of your love.
9 For ye know the *grace* **charism**
of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
that, *though* he was **being** rich,
yet for your sakes he *became* **poor impoverished**,
that ye through his poverty might be *rich* **enriched**.
10 And herein I give *my advice* **opinion**:
for this is *expedient* **beneficial** for you,
who have begun *before* **previously**, not only to do,
but also to be *forward* **will, from** a year ago.
11 Now therefore *perform* **fully complete/shalam**
the doing of it;
that **exactly** as there was a *readiness* **an eagerness** to will,
so there may be a *performance*
thus to fully complete/shalam also
out of that which ye have.
12 For if there be *first a willing mind* **set forth an eagerness**,
it is *accepted* **wellreceived**
according to *that a man* **whatever anyone** hath,
and not according to that he hath not.
13 For I mean not that *other men* **others** be eased **relaxed**,
and ye *burdened* **tribulated**:
14 But by an equality,
that *now at in this time* **present season**
your abundance
may be a *supply for* **unto** their *want* **lack**,
that their *abundance* **superabundance** also
may be a *supply for* **unto** your want:
that there may be equality:
15 **Exactly** As it is *written* **scribed**,
He that had *gathered* much
had nothing over **superabounded not**;
and he that had *gathered* little had no *lack* **less**.
Exodus 16:18
16 But *thanks* **charism** be to *God* **Elohim**,
which *put* **gave** the same *earnest care* **diligence**
into the heart of Titus for you.
17 For indeed
he *accepted* **received** the *exhortation* **consolation**;
but being more *forward* **diligent**,
of his own accord he **he voluntarily** went unto you.
18 And we have sent with him the brother,
whose *praise* **halal** is in the *gospel* **evangelism**
throughout all the *churches* **ecclesiae**;
19 And not that only,
but who was also *chosen* **voted** of the *churches* **ecclesiae**
to travel with us with this *grace* **charism**,
which is *administered* **ministered** by us
to the glory of the same *Lord* **Adonay**,
and *declaration* of your *ready mind* **eagerness**:
20 *Avoiding* **Abstaining** this,
that no man **lest anyone** should *blame* **blemish** us
in this *abundance* **stoutness**
which is *administered in this* **ministered** by us:
21 Providing for *honest things* **good**,
not only in the sight of *the Lord* **Adonay**,
but also in the sight of *men* **humanity**.
22 And we have sent with them our brother,
whom we have *oftentimes* **often** proved
being diligent in *many things* **much**,
but now much more diligent,
upon *the great* **much** confidence
which I have in **unto** you.
23 Whether *any do enquire* of Titus,
he is my *partner* **communicant** and *fellowhelper* **co—worker**
concerning **unto** you:

2 CORINTHIANS 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

thus he also fully completes/shalams
this charism in you.
7 Rather, exactly as you superabound in all
— in trust and word and knowledge
and in all diligence and in your love to us,
see that you superabound in this charism also.
8 I word, not by order,
but through the diligence of others,
and to prove the genuineness of your love.
9 For you know the charism
of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah:
that, being rich, for your sakes he impoverished:
that through his poverty, you enrich.
10 And herein I give opinion:
for this is beneficial for you,
who previously began,
not only to do, but also to will, from a year ago.
11 So now fully complete/shalam the doing thereof;
that exactly as there was an eagerness to will,
thus also to fully complete/shalam
from what you have.
12 For if you set forth an eagerness,
it is well—received
— according to whatever anyone has
and not according to whatever he has not
13 — not that others relax and you tribulate:
14 but by an equality,
that in this present season
your abundance becomes to their lack,
and also their superabundance becomes to your want
so that equality becomes:
15 exactly as scribed,
Whoever had much, superabounded not;
and whoever had little, lessened not.
Exodus 16:18
16 And charism to Elohim
who gives the same diligence into the heart of Titus
for you.
17 For he indeed received the consolation;
but being more diligent, he voluntarily went to you.
18 And with him,
we sent the brother whose halal is in the evangelism
throughout all the ecclesiae;
19 And not only that,
but who was also voted of the ecclesiae
to travel with us with this charism,
ministered by us
to the glory of the same Adonay
and of your eagerness:
20 abstaining from this,
lest anyone blemish us in this stoutness
ministered by us:
21 providing for good
— not only in the sight of Adonay
but also in the sight of humanity.
22 And with them, we sent our brother
whom we often proved to be diligent in much,
— but now much more diligent
upon much confidence to you;
23 whether of Titus
my communicant and co—worker to you:

2 CORINTHIANS 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

or whether our brethren be enquired of,
they are the messengers **apostles** of the churches **ecclesiae**,
and the glory of Christ **Messiah**.
24 Wherefore shew **So indicate** ye to them,
and before **unto the face of** the churches **ecclesiae**,
unto the proof indication of your love,
and of our boasting on your behalf.

THE ZEAL OF GIVING

9 For as **Indeed**, touching **concerning**
the *ministering* **ministry** to the *saints* **holy**,
it is superfluous for me to write **scribe** to you:
2 For I know *the forwardness of your mind* **eagerness**,
for which I boast of you
to *them of Macedonia* **the Macedonians**,
that Achaia was **ready prepared** a year ago;
and your zeal hath provoked very many.
3 Yet have I sent the brethren,
lest our boasting of you should be in vain in this **behalf part**;
that, **exactly** as I *said* **worded**, ye may be **ready prepared**:
4 Lest *haply* **somehow**
if they of Macedonia **whenever the Macedonians**
come with me,
and find you unprepared,
we (that we say **word** not, ye)
should be ashamed in this same confident boasting.
5 Therefore I thought **So I deemed** it necessary
to *exhort* **beseech** the brethren,
that they *would go before* **should precede** unto you,
and *make up beforehand* **pre—prepare** your *bounty* **eulogy**,
whereof ye had *notice before* **been pre—evangelized**,
that the same might be **ready prepared thus**,
as a *matter of bounty* **eulogy**,
and not **exactly** as of *covetousness* **avarice**.
6 But this I say, He which *soweth* **sporeth** sparingly
shall **reap harvest** also sparingly;
and he which *soweth* **sporeth bountifully** **unto eulogy**
shall **reap also bountifully harvest unto eulogy**.
7 Every man *according* **Each exactly**
as he *purposeth* **prefereth** in his heart, *so let him give*;
not *grudgingly of sorrow*, or of *necessity* **compulsion**:
for *God Elohim* loveth a **cheerful hilarious** giver.
8 And *God Elohim* is able to make all *grace* **charism**
abound toward **superabound unto** you;
that ye, always having all *sufficiency* **self—contentment**
in all *things*,
may *abound to* **superabound unto** every good work:
9 (**Exactly** As it is written **scribed**,
He hath *dispersed* **scattered** abroad;
he hath given to the *poor* **toiling**:
his *righteousness* **justness**
remaineth for ever **abideth unto the eons**.)

Psalms 112:9

10 Now he
that *ministereth seed* **contributeth sperma** to the sower
both *minister* **supply** bread *for your food* **to eat**,
and multiply your *seed sown* **spores**,
and *increase* **groweth** the *fruits* **produce**
of your *righteousness* **justness**;) Being enriched
11 in every thing to **unto** all *bountifulness* **liberality**,
which *causeth* **worketh** through us
thanksgiving **eucharist** to *God Elohim*.
12 For the *administration* **ministry** of this *service* **liturgy**
not only *supplieth* **fully furnisheth**
the *want* **lack** of the *saints* **holy**,
but is *abundant* **superabundant** also
by **through** many *thanksgivings* **eucharists**
unto *God Elohim*;
13 Whiles by **through** the *experiment* **proofing**
of this *ministraton* **ministry**
they glorify *God Elohim* for your professed subjection
unto the *gospel* **evangelism** of *Christ the Messiah*,
and for your liberal *distribution* **communion** unto them,
and unto all *men*;
14 And by their *prayer* **petition** for you,
which *long* **yearn** after you
for the exceeding *grace* **charism** of *God Elohim* in you.
15 Thanks **Charism** be unto *God Elohim*
for his *unspeakable gift* **indescribable gratuity**.

2 CORINTHIANS 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

whether of our brothers
the apostles of the ecclesiae, the glory of Messiah.
24 So indicate to them
and to the face of the ecclesiae,
the indication of your love
and of our boasting on your behalf.

THE ZEAL OF GIVING

9 Indeed, concerning the ministry to the holy,
it is superfluous for me to scribe to you:
2 for I know your eagerness
of which I boast to the Macedonians
— that Achaia prepared a year ago;
and your zeal provokes many.
3 Yet I sent the brothers,
lest our boasting of you be in vain in this part;
that, exactly as I worded, Be prepared:
4 Lest somehow
whenever the Macedonians come with me
and find you unprepared,
we — we word not, you
— we be shamed in this same confident boasting.
5 So I deemed it necessary
to beseech the brothers to precede to you
and pre—prepare your eulogy,
whereof you were pre—evangelized
— to prepare the same thus, as a eulogy
— and not exactly as of avarice.
6 And this, whoever sows sparingly
also harvests sparingly;
and whoever sows to eulogy
harvests to eulogy:
7 each exactly as he prefers in his heart
— not of sorrow or of compulsion:
for Elohim loves a hilarious giver.
8 And Elohim is able
to superabound all charism to you;
that you, always having all self—contentment in all,
superabound to every good work:
9 exactly as scribed,
He scatters abroad;
he gives to the toiling:
his justness abides to the eons.
Psalms 112:9
10 Now whoever contributes sperma to the sower
both supplies bread to eat
and multiplies your spores
and grows the produce of your justness;
11 being enriched to all liberality,
which, through us, works eucharist to Elohim.
12 For the ministry of this liturgy
not only fully furnishes the lack of the holy,
but also is superabundant
through many eucharists to Elohim;
13 while through the proofing of this ministry
they glorify Elohim for your professed subjection
to the evangelism of the Messiah
and for your liberal communion to them and to all;
14 And by their petition in your behalf
yearn after you
because of the exceeding charism of Elohim in you.
15 Charism to Elohim
for his indescribable gratuity.

2 CORINTHIANS 10

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE WITNESS OF PAULOS TO HIS MINISTRY

10 Now I *Paul* **Paulos** myself beseech you
by **through** the meekness and gentleness
of *Christ* **the Messiah**,
who **indeed** in *presence* **face**
am *base* **humble** among you,
but being absent
am **bold toward** **courageous** unto you:
2 But I beseech **petition** you,
that I may not be **bold** **courageous** when I am present
with that confidence,
wherewith I *think* **reckon** to be bold against some,
which *think of* **reckon** us
as if we walked according to *the* flesh.
3 For though we walk in *the* flesh,
we do not war after *the* flesh:
4 (For the weapons of our warfare are not *carнал* **fleshly**,
but *mighty* **able** through *God* **Elohim**
to the pulling down of *strong holds* **fortresses**;)
5 Casting down *imaginations* **logic**,
and every *high thing* **exaltation**
that exalteth itself against the knowledge of *God* **Elohim**,
and *bringing into captivity* **capturing**
every *thought* **comprehension**
to the obedience of *Christ* **the Messiah**;
6 And having in a *readiness* **preparedness**
to *revenge* **avenge** all disobedience,
when your obedience is fulfilled.
7 Do ye look on *things*
after the outward appearance **according to face**?
If any *man* **trust** to **one** **confides in** himself
that he is *Christ's* **Messiah's**,
let him of himself *think* **reckon** this again,
that, **exactly** as he is *Christ's* **Messiah's**,
even *so* **thus** are we *Christ's* **Messiah's**.
8 For *though* **even** **whenever** I should boast
somewhat more **superabundantly**
of **concerning** our authority,
which the *Lord* **Adonay** hath given us
for **unto** edification,
and not for *your destruction* **to pull you down**,
I should not be *ashamed* **shame**:
9 That I may not *seem* **be thought of**
as if I would *terrify* **ever** I should **utterly frighten** you
by *letters* **through** **epistles**.
10 For his *letters* **epistles** **indeed**, say they,
are *weighty* **burdenous** and *powerful* **mighty**;
but his *bodily presence* **body appearance** is *weak* **frail**,
and his *speech* **contemptible** **word belittling**.
11 Let such an one *think* **reckon** this, that,
such as we are in word by *letters* **through** **epistles**
when we are absent,
such **will shall** we be also in *deed* **work**
when we are present.
12 For we dare not
make **compare** ourselves of *the* number,
or *compare* **co—judge** ourselves
with some that commend themselves:
but they measuring themselves by **in** themselves,
and *comparing* **co—judging** themselves among themselves,
are **comprehend** not *wise*.
13 But we **will shall indeed** not boast
of *things* **without our measure** **immeasurably**,
but according to the measure of the *rule* **canon**
which *God* **Elohim** hath *distributed* **imparted** to us,
a measure to reach even unto you.
14 For we *stretch* **overspread** not ourselves
beyond our measure,
as though we reached not unto you:
for we are *come as far as* **have arrived** to you also
in *preaching the gospel* **evangelism** of *Christ* **the Messiah**:
15 Not boasting of *things*
without our measure **immeasurably**,
that is, of other men's **in other's** labours;
but having hope,
when your *faith* **trust** is *increased* **grown**,
that we shall be *enlarged* **magnified** by you
according to our *rule* **canon**
abundantly **unto** **superabundance**,

2 CORINTHIANS 10

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE WITNESS OF PAULOS TO HIS MINISTRY

10 And I myself — Paulos beseech you
through the meekness and gentleness of the Messiah
— who indeed in face *am* humble among you
but in absentia, courageous to you:
2 and I petition,
to not be courageous when I am present
with that confidence,
wherewith I reckon to be bold against some
— who reckon us as walking according to flesh.
3 For though we walk in flesh,
we war not according to flesh:
4 for the weapons of our warfare are not fleshly,
but able through Elohim to pulling down fortresses;
5 and casting down logic
and every exaltation that exalts itself
against the knowledge of Elohim;
and capturing every comprehension
to the obedience of the Messiah;
6 and prepared to avenge all disobedience
when you fulfill your obedience.
7 Look you according to face?
If anyone confides in himself to be of Messiah,
have him reckon himself again;
that, exactly as he is of Messiah,
even thus we are of Messiah.
8 For even whenever I boast
somewhat more superabundantly
concerning our authority,
that Adonay gave us to edify, and not to pull down,
I shame not:
9 That I not be thought of
as ever utterly frightening you through epistles.
10 For his epistles indeed, they say,
are burdenous and mighty;
and his body appearance is frail
and his word belittling.
11 Have such a one reckon this,
such as we are in word through epistles
when we are absent,
such also we are in work
when we are present.
12 For we dare not compare ourselves
or co—judge ourselves
with some who commend themselves:
but whoever measure themselves in themselves
and co—judge themselves among themselves,
comprehend not.
13 And indeed, we boast not immeasurably,
but according to the canon Elohim imparted to us,
a measure to reach even to you.
14 For we overspread ourselves not
as not reaching you:
for in the evangelism of the Messiah
we also arrived to you:
15 not boasting immeasurably in the labors of others;
but having hope, that as your trust grows,
that you magnify us according to our canon
to superabundance,

2 CORINTHIANS 10, 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

16 To preach the gospel **evangelize**
in the regions beyond you,
and not **prepare** to boast in *another man's* **another's**
line of things made ready to our hand **canon**.
17 But he that *gloriet* **boasteth**,
let him *glory* **boast** in the Lord **Yah Veh**.
Yirme Yah 9:24
18 For not he that commendeth himself is approved,
but whom *the Lord* **Yah Veh** commendeth.

11 Would to God **O** that ye could bear with **tolerate** me
a little in my *folly* **thoughtlessness**:
and *indeed* bear with **yet** **tolerate** me.
2 For I am *jealous* **zealous** over you
with *Godly jealousy* **the zeal of Elohim**:
for I have *espoused* **betrothed** you to one *husband* **man**,
that I may present you as a *chaste* **hallowed** virgin
to *Christ* **the Messiah**.
3 But I *fear* **awe**, lest by any means **somehow**,
as the serpent *beguiled* **Eve** **seduced** **Havvah**
through in his *subtily* **cunning**,
so **thus** your *minds* **comprehensions** should be corrupted
from the *simplicity* **liberality** that is in *Christ* **the Messiah**.
4 For *indeed* if he that cometh
preacheth another *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
whom we have not preached,
or if ye *receive* **take** another spirit,
which ye have not *received* **taken**,
or another *gospel* **evangelism**,
which ye have not *accepted* **received**,
ye might *well* bear with him **have tolerated** well.
5 For I *suppose* **reckon** I was not a *whit* **failed** in naught
behind **beyond**
the *very chiefest* **extremely superior** apostles.
6 But though I be *rude* **unlearned** in *speech* **word**,
yet not in knowledge;
but in **all** we have been *thoroughly made* manifest
among **unto** you in all *things*.
7 **Or** Have I *committed an offence* **sinned**
in *abasing* **humbling** myself that ye might be exalted,
because I have *preached* **evangelized** to you
the *gospel* **evangelism** of *God* **freely** **Elohim** **gratuitously**?
8 I *robbed* **stripped** other *churches* **ecclesiae**,
taking wages *of them*,
to do you service **for your ministry**.
9 And when I was present with you, and wanted,
I was *chargeable* **insensitive** to no *man* **one**:
for that which was lacking to me
the brethren which came from Macedonia
supplied **fully furnished**:
and in all *things* I have *kept* **guarded** myself
from being burdensome **burdenless** unto you,
and so *will* **thus shall** I *keep* **guard** myself.
10 As the truth of *Christ* **Messiah** is in me,
no man shall *stop* **seal** me of **unto** this boasting
in the *regions* **climes** of Achaia.
11 *Wherefore* **Why?** because I love you not?
God **Elohim** knoweth.
12 But what I do, *that I will do* **I do**,
that I may *cut off occasion* **excind opportunity**
from them which *desire occasion* **will for opportunity**;
that wherein they *glory* **boast**,
they may be found *even* **exactly** as we.

PSEUDO APOSTLES

13 For such are *false* **pseudo** apostles, deceitful workers,
transforming **transfiguring** themselves
into the apostles of *Christ* **Messiah**.
14 And no marvel; for Satan himself
is *transformed* **transfigured** into an angel of light.
15 Therefore it is *no great thing* **not mega**
if his ministers also be *transformed* **transfigured**
as the ministers of *righteousness* **justness**;
whose *end* **completion/shalom**
shall be according to their works.

THE SUFFERINGS OF PAULOS

16 I say **word** again,
Let no *man* **one** think me a *fool* **to be thoughtless**;
if *otherwise, yet as a fool* **even as thoughtless** receive me,
that I **also** may boast myself a little.

2 CORINTHIANS 10, 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

16 to evangelize beyond you
and not prepare to boast in the canon of others.
17 And whoever boasts, boast in Yah Veh.
Yirme Yah 9:24
18 For not he who commends himself is approved,
but whom Yah Veh commends.

11 O that you tolerate me a little
in my thoughtlessness
— and still tolerate me:
2 for I am zealous over you with the zeal of Elohim:
for I betrothed you to one man
a hallowed virgin, to present to the Messiah.
3 And I awe, lest somehow,
as the serpent seduced Havvah in his cunning,
that thus you corrupt your comprehensions
from the liberality in the Messiah.
4 For indeed
if whoever comes preaches another Yah Shua
whom we preach not,
or if you take another spirit you had not taken,
or another evangelism you had not received,
you tolerate it well.
5 For I reckon that I failed in naught
beyond the extremely superior apostles.
6 But though I am unlearned in word,
yet not in knowledge;
but in all we manifested all to you.
7 Or sin I in humbling myself to exalt you
— because I evangelize to you
the evangelism of Elohim gratuitously?
8 I stripped other ecclesiae
taking wages for your ministry.
9 And when I was present with you and wanted
I was insensitive to no one:
for whatever I lacked,
the brothers who came from Macedonia
fully furnished:
and in all I guarded myself burdenless to you:
and thus I guard myself.

10 As the truth of Messiah is in me,
my boasting is not sealed in the climes of Achaia.
11 Why? Because I love you not?
Elohim knows.
12 And I do what I do,
to excind opportunity
from them who will for opportunity;
that wherein they boast, they be found exactly as we.

PSEUDO APOSTLES

13 For such are pseudo apostles — deceitful workers,
transfiguring themselves to the apostles of Messiah:
and no marvel;
14 for Satan transfigures himself into an angel of light.
15 So it is not mega if his ministers also
transfigure as the ministers of justness;
whose completion/shalom is according to their works.

THE SUFFERINGS OF PAULOS

16 I word again
that no one think I am thoughtless;
and if otherwise, even receive me as thoughtless
so that I also boast a little.

2 CORINTHIANS 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

17 That which I speak,
I speak *it* not after the Lord Adonay,
but as *it were foolishly* in **thoughtlessness**,
in this confidence of boasting.
18 Seeing that **Since** many *glory* **boast** after the flesh,
I will *glory* **shall boast** also.
19 For ye *suffer fools* **tolerate the thoughtless**
gladly **with pleasure**,
seeing ye yourselves are wise **being thoughtful**.
20 For ye *suffer* **tolerate**,
if a man bring **anyone** *enslave* you into bondage,
if a man **anyone** devour you,
if a man **anyone** take of you,
if a man **anyone** exalt himself,
if a man *smite* **anyone** *flog* you on the face.
21 I speak as **word** concerning *reproach* **dishonour**,
as though we had been *weak* **frail**.
Howbeit **But** whereinsoever any is bold,
(I speak *foolishly* **word in thoughtlessness**.)
I am bold also.

APOSTLES VS PSEUDO APOSTLES

22 Are they Hebrews? *so am* I **also**.
Are they *Israelites* **Yisra Elym**? *so am* I **also**.
Are they the *seed* **sperma** of Abraham? *so am* I **also**.
23 Are they ministers of *Christ* **Messiah**?
(I speak as a *fool* **insanely**) I am more;
in labours more *abundant* **superabundant**,
in stripes *above measure* **excessively**,
in prisons more *frequent* **guardhouses superabundant**,
in deaths oft.
24 Of the Jews **Yah Hudiym**
five times *received* **took** I forty *stripes* save one.
25 Thrice was I *beaten with rods* **bastinadoed**,
once was I stoned,
thrice I *suffered shipwreck* **shipwrecked**,
a night and a day I *have been* **done** in the deep;
26 In *journeyings often*, in perils of *waters* **streams**,
in perils of robbers,
in perils by *mine own countrymen* **my genos**,
in perils by the *heathen* **goyim**, in perils in the city,
in perils in the wilderness, in perils in the sea,
in perils *among false* **of pseudo** brethren;
27 In *weariness* **labours** and *painfulness* **toil**,
in watchings often, in *hunger* **famine** and thirst,
in fastings often, in cold and nakedness.
28 *Beside* **Except apart from** those things that are without
that which *cometh* **conspireth** upon me daily,
the *care* **anxieties** of all the *churches* **ecclesiae**.
29 Who is *weak* **frail**, and I am not *weak* **frail**?
who is *offended* **scandalized**, and I *burn* not **fiery**?
30 If I must *needs* **glory** **boast**,
I will *glory* **shall boast** of the things **those**
which concern *mine infirmities* **my frailties**.
31 The God **Elohim** and Father
of our Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
which is *blessed* **being eulogized**
for evermore **unto the eons**,
knoweth that I lie not.
32 In *Damascus* **Dammeseq**
the governor **ethnarch** under Aretas the *king* **sovereign**
kept the city of the *Damascenes* **Dammeseqim**
with a garrison,
desirous **having willed** to *apprehend* **seize** me:
33 And through a window in a *basket* **wicker**
was I *let down by* **lowered through** the wall,
and escaped his hands.

PAULOS IN PARADISE

12 It is not *expedient* **beneficial** for me
doubtless **now** to *glory* **boast**.
I **indeed** will come to visions and *revelations* **apocalypses**
of the Lord **Adonay**.
2 I knew a man **human** in *Christ* **Messiah**
above fourteen years ago,
(whether in the body, I *cannot tell* **know not**;
or whether out of the body, I *cannot tell* **know not**;
God **Elohim** knoweth);
such an one
caught up to **seized unto** the third *heaven* **heavens**.

2 CORINTHIANS 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

17 What I speak, I speak not after Adonay,
but as in thoughtlessness, in this confidence of boasting,
18 since many boast after the flesh, I also boast.
19 For with pleasure, you tolerate the thoughtless,
you yourselves being thoughtful.
20 For you tolerate
if anyone enslaves you,
if anyone devours,
if anyone takes,
if anyone exalts himself,
if anyone flogs you on the face.
21 I word concerning dishonor, as being frail.
But wherever any is bold
— I word in thoughtlessness — I also am bold.

APOSTLES VS PSEUDO APOSTLES

22 Are they Hebrews? I also.
Are they Yisra Eliym? I also.
Are they the sperma of Abraham? I also.
Are they ministers of Messiah?
— I speak insanely — I more;
in labors, more superabundant;
in stripes, superexcessively;
in guardhouses, superabundant;
in deaths, often.
24 Of the Yah Hudiym
five times I took forty save one;
25 thrice bastinadoed;
once stoned;
thrice shipwrecked;
a night and a day done in the deep;
26 journeyings often;
perils of streams;
perils of robbers;
perils by my genos;
perils by the goyim;
perils in the city;
perils in the wilderness;
perils in the sea;
perils of pseudo brothers;
in labors and toil;
27 in watchings often,
in famine and thirst;
in fastings often,
in cold and nakedness:
except apart from those
that conspire upon me daily;
the anxieties of all the ecclesiae.
29 Who is frail and I not frail?
Who is scandalized and I not fiery?
30 If I must boast,
I boast of those that concern my frailties.
31 The Elohim and Father
of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
who is eulogized to the eons,
knows that I lie not.
32 In Dammeseq
the ethnarch under Aretas the sovereign
kept the city of the Dammeseqim with a garrison,
having willed to seize me;
33 and through a window in a wicker
I was lowered through the wall
and escaped his hands.

PAULOS IN PARADISE

12 It is not beneficial for me to boast:
indeed I come to visions and apocalypses of Adonay.
2 I knew a human in Messiah fourteen years ago;
whether in body, I know not;
whether out of the body, I know not:
Elohim knows;
such an one seized to the third heavens.

2 CORINTHIANS 12

exeGes ready research BIBLE

3 And I knew such a *man human*,
(whether in *the body*, or **whether** out of the body,
I *cannot tell* **know not**: *God Elohim* knoweth;)
4 How that he was *caught up* **seized** into paradise,
and heard *unspeakable words* **inexpressable rhema**,
which it is not *lawful* **allowed**
for a *man human* to *utter* **speak**.
5 Of such an one *will I glory* **shall I boast**:
yet of myself I *will* **shall** not *glory* **boast**,
but **except** in *mine infirmities* **my frailties**.
6 For *though* **whenever** I *would desire* **willed** to *glory* **boast**,
I shall not be a *fool* **thoughtless**;
for I *will* **shall** say the truth: *but now I forbear* **I spare**,
lest any *man* **one** should *think of* **reckon unto** me
above that which he seeth me *to be*,
or that he heareth **somewhat** of me.

THE THORN OF PAULOS

7 And lest I should be **superciliously** exalted
above measure
through the *abundance* **excellence**
of the *revelations* **apocalypses**,
there was given to me a thorn in the flesh,
the messenger **an angel** of Satan to *buffet* **punch** me,
lest I should be **superciliously** exalted *above measure*.
Numbers 33:55, Yah Shua 23:13, Judges 2:3,
Yechezq El 28:24, Nachum 1:10

8 For this *thing* I besought the *Lord* **Adonay** thrice,
that it might depart from me.

9 And he said unto me,
My *grace* **charism** is sufficient for thee:
for my *strength* **dynamis**
is *made perfect* **completed/shalamed** in *weakness* **frailty**.
Most gladly **So with pleasure** *therefore*
will **shall** I rather *glory* **boast** in my *infirmities* **frailties**,
that the *power* **dynamis** of *Christ the Messiah*
may *rest* **tabernacle** upon me.

10 Therefore I *take pleasure* **well—approve**
in *infirmities* **frailties**, in *reproaches* **hubris**,
in *necessities* **compulsions**, in persecutions,
in distresses for *Christ's* **Messiah's** sake:
for when I am *weak* **frail**, then am I *strong* **able**.
11 I am become a *fool* **thoughtless** in *glorying* **boasting**;
ye have compelled me:

for I *ought to have been commended of you* **was indebted**:
for in *nothing* **naught** am I behind
the *very chiefest* **extremely superior** apostles,
though I be *nothing* **naught**.

12 Truly **Indeed** the signs of an apostle
were *wrought among* **worked in** you
in all *patience* **endurance**,

in signs, and *wonders* **omens**, and *mighty deeds* **dynamis**.
13 For what is it wherein ye were *inferior* **slighted**
to *other churches* **the rest of the ecclesiae**,

except it be
that I myself was not *burdensome* **insensitive** to you?
forgive me this wrong
grant me charism for this injustice.

PAULOS PREPARES A THIRD MSIT

14 Behold,
the third time I *am ready* **have prepared** to come to you;
and I *will* **shall** not be *burdensome* **insensitive** to you:
for I seek not your's but you:
for the children *ought not* **are not indebted**
to *lay treasure up* for the parents,
but the parents for the children.

15 And I *will very gladly* **shall with pleasure** spend
and be *spent for you* **expended for your souls**;
though the more *abundantly* **superabundantly** I love you,
the less I be loved.

16 But be it so, I did not *burden* **load** you **down**:
nevertheless **rather**, being *crafty* **cunning**,
I *caught* **took** you with *guile* **deceit**.
17 Did I *make a gain of* **defraud** you
by through any of them whom I *sent* **apostolized** unto you?
18 I *desired* **besought** Titus,
and with him I *sent* **apostolized** a brother.
Did Titus *make a gain of* **defraud** you?
walked we not in the same spirit?
walked we — not in the same *steps* **tracks**?

2 CORINTHIANS 12

exeGes companion BIBLE

3 And I knew such a human,
whether in body, whether out of the body,
I know not; Elohim knows:
4 that he was seized into paradise
and heard inexpressable rhemas
not allowed for a human to speak.
5 Of such an one I boast:
yet of myself I boast not — except in my frailties.
6 For whenever I will to boast, I become not thoughtless;
for I say the truth; but I spare:
lest anyone reckon me above what he sees me,
or somewhat hears of me.

THE THORN OF PAULOS

7 And lest I be superciliously exalted
through the excellence of the apocalypses,
I was given a thorn in the flesh
— an angel of Satan to punch me,
lest I be superciliously exalted.
Numbers 33:55, Yah Shua 23:13, Judges 2:3,
Yechezq El 28:24, Nachum 1:10

8 For this I besought Adonay thrice
that it depart from me.

9 And he said to me,
My charism is sufficient for you:
for my dynamis is completed/shalamed in frailty.

So rather, with pleasure I boast in my frailties,
that the dynamis of the Messiah tabernacle upon me.

10 So I well — approve
in frailties,
in hubris,
in compulsions,
in persecutions,
in distresses for sake of Messiah:
for when I am frail, then I am able.
11 I become thoughtless in boasting;
you compel me — for I am indebted:
for I am behind in naught
of the extremely superior apostles
— though I am naught.

12 Indeed the signs of an apostle were worked in you
in all endurance
— in signs and omens and dynamis.

13 For wherein were you belittled
beyond the rest of the ecclesiae?
— unless I myself was not insensitive to you?
Grant me charism for this injustice.

PAULOS PREPARES A THIRD MSIT

14 Behold, I prepare to come to you a third time;
and I am not insensitive to you;
for I seek not yours — but you:
for the children are not indebted
to treasure for the parents,
but the parents for the children.
15 And with pleasure
I spend and expend for your souls;
though the more superabundantly I love you,
the less I am loved.

16 And so be it, I overloaded you not:
rather, being cunning, I took you with deceit.
17 Defrauded I you through any of them
whom I apostolized to you?
18 I besought Titus
and I apostolized a brother with him.
Defrauded Titus you?
Walked we not in the same spirit?
— Not in the same tracks?

2 CORINTHIANS 12, 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

PAULOS WARNS THE ECCLESIA

19 Again,
think ye that we *excuse ourselves* **plead** unto you?
we speak
before God in sight of Elohim in Christ Messiah:
but we do all *things*, *dearly beloved*, for your edifying.
20 For I *fear awe*, lest **somehow**, when I come,
I shall not find you such as I *would had willed*,
and that I shall be found unto you
such as ye *would had not willed*:
lest **somehow** there be *debates contentions*,
envyings zeals, *wraths furies*, *strifes rivalries*,
backbitings slanders, *whisperings*,
swellings puffings, *tumults*, **instabilities**:
21 And lest, when I come again,
my *God will Elohim shall* humble me *among unto* you,
and that I shall *bewail mourn* many
which have sinned *already previously*,
and have not repented of the *uncleanness impurity*
and *fornication whoredom* and *lasciviousness lechery*
which they have *committed transacted*.

13

This is the third *time* I am coming to you.
In the mouth of two or three witnesses
shall every *word be established rhema stand*.
2 I *told you before foresaid*, and *foretell you forespeak*,
as if I were present, the second time;
and being absent now:
I write **scribe** to them
which *heretofore previously* have sinned,
and to all *other the rest*,
that, *if whenever* I come again, I *will shall* not spare:
3 Since ye seek a proof of *Christ Messiah* speaking in me,
which *to you—ward unto you* is not *weak frail*,
but is *mighty dynamic* in you.
4 For *though if indeed*
he was *crucified through weakness staked by frailty*,
yet he liveth by the *power dynamis of God Elohim*.
For we also are *weak frail* in him,
but we shall live with him
by the *power dynamis of God toward Elohim unto* you.
5 Examine **Test** yourselves,
whether ye be in the *faith trust*; prove your own selves.
Or Know ye not your own selves,
how that *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah* is in you,
except **somehow**
ye be *reprobates somewhat disapproved*?
6 But I *trust hope* that ye shall know
that we are not *reprobates disapproved*.
7 Now I *pray vow* to *God Elohim* that ye do no evil;
not that we should *appear manifest* approved,
but that ye should do that which is *honest good*,
though we be as *reprobates disapproved*.
8 For we can do *nothing naught* against the truth,
but for the truth.
9 For we are *glad cheer*,
when we are *weak frail*, and ye are *strong able*:
and this also we *wish vow*, *even* your perfection.
10 Therefore I write **scribe** these *things* being absent,
lest being present I should use *sharpness severity*,
according to the *power authority*
which *the Lord Adonay* hath given me to edification,
and not to *destruction pull you down*.

SALUTE AND DOXOLOGY

11 Finally, brethren, *farewell Cheers*.
Be *perfect prepared*, be of good comfort,
be of one mind think the same,
live in peace completed/shalamed;
and the *God Elohim* of love and *peace shalom*
shall be with you.
12 Greet **Salute** one another *with in* an holy kiss.
13 All the *saints holy* salute you.
14 The *grace charism*
of *the Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*,
and the love of *God Elohim*,
and the communion of the Holy *Ghost Spirit*,
be with you all.
Amen.

2 CORINTHIANS 12, 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

PAULOS WARNS THE ECCLESIA

19 Again, think you that we plead to you?
We speak in sight of Elohim in Messiah:
and beloved, all are to edify you.
20 For I awe, lest somehow, when I come,
I find you not such as I willed
and that you find me such as you had not willed:
lest somehow there be contentions,
zeals,
furies,
rivalries,
slanders,
whisperings,
puffings,
instabilities:
21 lest, when I come again,
my Elohim humble me to you
and that I mourn many who previously sinned
and repented not of the impurity
and whoredom and lechery they transacted.

13

This is my third coming to you.
In the mouth of two or three witnesses
every rhema stands.
2 I foresaid and forespeak,
as being present, the second time;
and now being absent:
I scribe to them who previously sinned
and to all the rest,
that, whenever I come again, I spare not:
3 Since you seek a proof of Messiah speaking in me,
who to you is not frail but in you is dynamic.
4 For indeed if he was staked by frailty,
yet he lives by the dynamis of Elohim.
For we also are frail in him,
but we live with him
by the dynamis of Elohim unto you.
5 Test yourselves — whether you are in the trust;
prove your own selves.
Or know you not your own selves,
how that Yah Shua Messiah is in you,
except somehow you become disapproved?
6 And I hope you know
that we are not disapproved.
7 And I vow to Elohim that you do no evil
— not that we be manifest approved,
but that you do what is good,
though we be as disapproved.
8 For we can do naught against the truth
— but for the truth.
9 For we cheer when we are frail
and you are able:
and this also we vow — your perfection.
10 So being absent, I scribe these;
lest being present, I use severity,
according to the authority
Adonay gave me to edify
— and not to pull you down.

SALUTE AND DOXOLOGY

11 Finally brothers, Cheers.
be prepared;
of good comfort;
think the same;
completed/shalamed:
and the Elohim of love and shalom be with you.
12 Salute one another in a holy kiss.
13 All the holy salute you.
14 The charism of Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
and the love of Elohim
and the communion of the Holy Spirit,
be with you all.
Amen.

GALATIANS 1

exeGes ready research BIBLE
SALUTATION

1 Paul Paulos, an apostle,
(not of *men* **humanity**, neither by *man* **through humanity**,
but by *Jesus Christ* **through Yah Shua Messiah**,
and *God* **Elohim** the Father,
who raised him from the dead;)
2 And all the brethren which are with me,
unto the *churches* **ecclesiae** of Galatia:
3 *Grace be* **Charism** to you and *peace* **shalom**
from *God* **Elohim** the Father,
and from our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
4 Who gave himself for our sins,
that he might *deliver* **release** us
from this present evil *world* **eon**,
according to the will of *God* **Elohim** and our Father:
5 To whom be glory
for ever and ever **unto the eons of the eons**.
Amen.

ONE EVANGELISM

6 I marvel that ye are
so soon removed **thus quickly transplaced**
from him that called you
into the *grace* **charism** of *Christ* **Messiah**
unto another *gospel* **evangelism**:
7 Which is not another;
but **except** there be some that trouble you,
and *would pervert* **will to overturn**
the *gospel* **evangelism** of *Christ* **the Messiah**.
8 But *though* **whenever** we, or an angel from heaven,
preach **evangelize** any other *gospel* unto you
than that which we have *preached* **evangelized** unto you,
let him be *accursed* **anathema**.
9 As we *said before* **foretold**, so say **word** I now again,
If any *man* **preach** **one evangelize** any other *gospel*
unto you than that ye have *received* **taken**,
let him be *accursed* **anathema**.
10 For do I now *persuade men* **convince humanity**,
or *God* **Elohim**?
or do I seek to please *men* **humanity**?
for if I yet pleased *men* **humanity**,
I should not **ever** be the servant of *Christ* **Messiah**.

THE APOCALYPSE OF PAULOS

11 But I *certify you* **have you know**, brethren,
that the *gospel* **evangelism**
which was *preached of* **evangelized by** me
is not after *man* **humanity**.
12 For I neither *received* **took** it of *man* **humanity**,
neither was I *taught it* **doctrinated**,
but by **through** the *revelation* **apocalypse**
of *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**.
13 For ye have heard of my
conversation in time past **former behaviour**
in the *Jews' religion* **Yah Hudahism**,
how that *beyond measure* **excessively**
I persecuted the *church* **ecclesia** of *God* **Elohim**,
and *wasted* **ravaged** it:
14 And *profited* **advanced**
in the *Jews' religion* **Yah Hudahism**
above many my *equals* **contemporaries**
in mine own *nation* **genos**,
being more *exceedingly* **superabundantly**
zealous **a zealot** of the traditions of my *fathers* **patriarchs**.
15 But when *it pleased God* **Elohim well**—**approved**,
who *separated me* **set me apart** from my mother's womb,
and called me by **through** his *grace* **charism**,
16 To *reveal* **unveil** his Son in me,
that I might *preach* **evangelize** him
among the *heathen* **goyim**;
immediately **straightway** I *conferred* **counselled**
not with flesh and blood:
17 Neither *went* **ascended** I *up to Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
to them which were apostles *before* **preceding** me;
but I *went* **departed** into Arabia,
and returned again unto *Damascus* **Dammeseq**.
18 Then after three years
I *went up* **ascended** to *Jerusalem* **Yeru Shalem**
to see *Peter* **inquire of Petros**,
and abode with him fifteen days.

GALATIANS 1

exeGes companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos, an apostle
neither of humanity nor through humanity
— but through Yah Shua Messiah
and Elohim the Father who raised him from the dead;
and all the brothers with me:
2 To the ecclesiae of Galatia:
3 Charism to you and shalom
from Elohim the Father
and our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
4 who gave himself for our sins,
to release us from this present evil eon,
according to the will of Elohim and our Father:
5 to whom be glory to the eons of the eons.
Amen.

ONE EVANGELISM

6 I marvel that you are so quickly transplaced
from him who called you into the charism of Messiah
to another evangelism:
7 which is not another;
except that some who trouble you,
will to overturn the evangelism of the Messiah.
8 But whenever we, or an angel from the heavens
evangelize any other to you
than what we evangelized to you,
he becomes anathema.
9 As we foretold, and now word again,
If anyone evangelizes any other to you
than what you took,
he becomes anathema.
10 For now, convince I humanity? Or Elohim?
Or seek I to please humanity?
For if I yet please humanity,
I am never ever the servant of Messiah.

THE APOCALYPSE OF PAULOS

11 But I have you know, brothers,
that the evangelism evangelized by me
is not after humanity.
12 For I neither took it from humanity
nor was I doctrinated;
but through the apocalypse of Yah Shua Messiah.
13 For you heard
of my former behavior in Yah Hudahism,
how I excessively
persecuted and ravaged the ecclesia of Elohim:
and advanced in Yah Hudahism
above my many contemporaries in my own genos
— being more superabundantly
a zealot of the traditions of my patriarchs.
14 And when Elohim well—approved
— who set me apart from the womb of my mother
and through his charism, called me
to unveil his Son in me
to evangelize him among the goyim;
I neither straightway counseled with flesh and blood:
nor ascended to Yeru Shalem
to them who were apostles preceding me;
but I departed to Arabia and returned to Dammeseq.
15 Then after three years
I ascended to Yeru Shalem to inquire of Petros
and abode with him fifteen days.

GALATIANS 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19 But other of the apostles saw I none,
save James the Lord's **except Yaaqovos Adonay's** brother.
20 Now *the things that* which I write **scribe** unto you,
behold, *before God in sight of Elohim*, I lie not.
21 *Afterwards Then*
I came into the *regions climes* of Syria and Cilicia;
22 And was unknown by face
unto the *churches ecclesiae* of *Judaea Yah Hudah*
which were in *Christ Messiah*:
23 But they had heard only,
That he which persecuted us *in times past formerly*
now *preacheth evangelizeth* the *faith trust*
which once he *destroyed ravaged*.
24 And they glorified *God Elohim* in me.

THE BROTHERS APPROVE PAULOS

2 Then *through* fourteen years *after*
I went up **ascended** again to *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*
with *Barnabas Bar Nabi*, and took Titus with me also.
2 And I went up **ascended** by *revelation apocalypse*,
and *communicated propounded* unto them
that *gospel evangelism*
which I preach among the *Gentiles goyim*,
but privately to them
which were of *reputation well — thought of*,
lest by *any means somehow* I should run, or had run,
in vain.
3 But neither Titus, who was with me,
being a *Greek Hellene*,
was compelled to be circumcised:
4 And that because of *false pseudo* brethren
unawares brought surreptitiously smuggled in,
who came in *privily surreptitiously entered*
to spy out our liberty
which we have in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*,
that they might *bring enslave us into bondage*:
5 To whom we gave *place yielded* by subjection,
no, not for an hour;
that the truth of the *gospel evangelism*
might *continue continually abide* with you.
6 But of these
who *seemed were thought* to be somewhat,
(*whatsoever what sort* they *formerly* were,
it *maketh no matter mattereth not* to me:
God Elohim
accepteth taketh no man's person human's face:)
for they who *seemed were thought*
to be *somewhat in conference counsellors*
added *nothing naught* to me:
7 But contrariwise,
when they saw that *the gospel of* the uncircumcision
was *committed entrusted* unto me,
exactly as *the gospel of* the circumcision
was unto *Peter Petros*;
8 (For he that *wrought effectually energized*
in *Peter Petros* to the apostleship of the circumcision,
the same was *mighty energized*
in me *toward unto* the *Gentiles goyim*:)
9 And when *James Yaaqovos*,
Cephas Kepha, and *John Yahn*,
who *seemed were thought* to be pillars,
perceived knew the *grace charism*
that was given unto me,
they gave to me and *Barnabas Bar Nabi*
the *right hands rights of fellowship communion*;
that we should go unto the *heathen — we unto the goyim*,
and they unto the circumcision.
10 Only *they would* that we should remember the poor;
the same which I also was *forward diligent* to do.

PAULOS WITHSTANDS PETROS

11 But when *Peter Petros* was come to Antioch,
I withstood him to the face,
because he was to be *blamed condemned*.
12 For *before that prior* to
certain some came from *James Yaaqovos*,
he did eat with the *Gentiles goyim*:
but when they were come,
he withdrew and *separated set* himself **apart**,
fearing awestricken of them
which were of the circumcision.

GALATIANS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

19 But I saw none of the other apostles,
except Yaaqovos, the brother of Adonay.
20 Now what I scribe to you,
behold, in sight of Elohim, I lie not.
21 Then I came to the climes of Syria and Cilicia;
22 and I was unknown by face
to the ecclesiae of the Yah Hudiyim in Messiah:
23 but they only heard,
He who formerly persecuted us
now evangelizes the trust he once ravaged.
24 — and they glorified Elohim in me.

THE BROTHERS APPROVE PAULOS

2 So through fourteen years
I ascended again to Yeru Shalem with Bar Nabi
— and also took Titus with me.
2 And I ascended by apocalypse
and propounded to them
the evangelism I preach among the goyim
— but privately to them who were well—thought of,
lest somehow I run — or had run in vain.
3 But not even Titus, who was with me,
being Hellene,
was compelled to be circumcised:
4 and that because of pseudo brothers
surreptitiously smuggled in,
who surreptitiously entered to spy out the liberty
we have in Messiah Yah Shua,
to enslave us:
5 to whom we yielded by subjection
no — not for an hour;
that the truth of the evangelism
continually abide with you.
6 But of these who were thought to be somewhat
— whatever sort they formerly were
— it matters not to me
— Elohim takes no human by face
for those thought to be counsellors
added naught;
7 but contrariwise,
when they saw
that the uncircumcised were entrusted to me,
exactly as the circumcised to Petros
— for he who energized in Petros
to the apostleship of the circumcision,
energized in me to the goyim:
9 and when Yaaqovos and Kepha and Yahn,
thought to be pillars,
knew the charism given me,
they gave the right of communion
to me and Bar Nabi;
— we to the goyim and they to the circumcision:
10 only that we remember the poor;
which I also was diligent to do.

PAULOS WITHSTANDS PETROS

11 And when Petros came to Antioch,
I withstood him to the face,
because he was to be condemned.
12 For prior to some coming from Yaaqovos
he ate with the goyim:
and when they came
he withdrew and set himself apart
— awestricken of them of the circumcision.

GALATIANS 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

13 And the other Jews **rest of the Yah Hudiym**
dissembled **hypocrized** likewise with him;
insomuch so as that **Barnabas Bar Nabi** also
was *carried led* away with their *dissimulation* **hypocrisy**.

14 But when I saw that they
walked were not *uprightly* **straightfooted**
according to **unto** the truth of the *gospel* **evangelism**,
I said unto *Peter before* **Petros in front** of them all,
If thou, being a Jew **Yah Hudiym**,
livest *after the manner of Gentiles* **goyishly**,
and not *as do the Jews* **Yah Hudaically**,
why compellest thou the *Gentiles* **goyim**
to live as do the Jews **Yah Hudaicize?**

15 We who are *Jews* **Yah Hudiym** by nature,
and not sinners of the *Gentiles* **goyim**,

16 Knowing that a *man* **humanity** is not justified
by the works of the *law* **torah**,
but *by the faith* **only through trust**
of Jesus Christ **from Yah Shua Messiah**,
even we have *believed* **trusted**
in *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**
that we might be justified
by the *faith of Christ* **trust of Messiah**,
and not by the works of the *law* **torah**:
for because by the works of the *law* **torah**
shall no flesh be justified.

17 But if, while we seek to be justified *by Christ* **in Messiah**,
we ourselves also are found sinners,
is *therefore* **Christ then Messiah** the minister of sin?
God forbid **So be it not.**

18 For if I build again
the things those which I *destroyed* **disintegrated**,
I *make* **constitute** myself a transgressor.

19 For I through the *law* **torah** am dead to the *law* **torah**,
that I might live unto *God* **Elohim**.

20 I am *crucified* **co—staked** with *Christ* **Messiah**:
nevertheless I live;
yet not **no longer** I, but *Christ* **Messiah** liveth in me:
and the life which I now live in the flesh
I live by *in the faith* **trust** of the Son of *God* **Elohim**,
who loved me, and gave **surrendered** himself for me.

21 I do not *frustrate* **set aside**
the *grace* **charism** of *God* **Elohim**:
for if *righteousness* **justness**
come by **is through** the *law* **torah**,
then *Christ* **Messiah** is dead *in vain* **for naught**.

TAKING THE HOLY SPIRIT

3 O *foolish* **mindless** Galatians,
who hath *bewitched* **fascinated** you,
that ye should not obey the truth,
before in front of whose eyes *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**
hath been *evidently set forth* **preinscribed**,
crucified **staked** among you?

2 This only *would* **will I to** learn of you,
Received **Took** ye the Spirit
by the works of the *law* **torah**,
or by the hearing of *faith* **trust**?

3 Are ye *so foolish* **thus mindless**?
having begun in the Spirit,
are ye now *made perfect* **completed/shalamed** by the flesh?

4 Have ye suffered so *many things* **much** in vain?
if *it be yet* **indeed** in vain.

5 **So** He *therefore* that *ministereth* **supplieth** to you the Spirit,
and *worketh miracles* **energizeth dynamis** among you,
doeth he it by the works of the *law* **torah**,
or by the hearing of *faith* **trust**?

THE COVENANT OF ELOHIM WITH ABRAHAM

6 Even as Abraham *believed* **God trusted Elohim**,
and it was *accounted* **reckoned** to him
for righteousness **unto justness**.

7 Know ye therefore that they which are of *faith* **trust**,
the same are the *children* **sons** of Abraham.

8 And the scripture, foreseeing that *God* **Elohim**
would **should** justify the *heathen* **goyim**
through faith **by trust**,
preached before the gospel **pre—evangelized**
unto Abraham, *saying*,
In thee shall all *nations* **goyim** be **blessed eulogized**.

GALATIANS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

13 And likewise
the rest of the Yah Hudiym hypocrized with him;
so that also Bar Nabi was led away by their hypocrisy.

14 But when I saw that they were not straightfooted
to the truth of the evangelism,
I said to Petros in front of them all,
If you, being Yah Hudiym,
live goyishly and not Yah Hudaically,
why compel you the goyim to Yah Hudaicize?

15 We who are Yah Hudiym by nature
and not sinners of the goyim,
knowing that humanity is not justified
by the works of the torah,
but only through trust from Yah Shua Messiah,
even we trust in Yah Shua Messiah
to be justified by the trust of Messiah
and not by the works of the torah:
because no flesh is justified by the works of the torah.

17 But if, while we seek to be justified in Messiah,
we ourselves also are found sinners,
is Messiah the minister of sin?
So be it not.

18 For if I build again what I disintegrated,
I constitute myself a transgressor.

19 For through the torah I died to the torah
to live to Elohim.

20 I am co—staked with Messiah:
nevertheless I live;
— no longer I, but Messiah lives in me:
and the life I now live in the flesh
I live in the trust of the Son of Elohim,
who loved me and surrendered himself for me.

21 I set not aside the charism of Elohim:
for if justness is through the torah,
then Messiah died for naught.

TAKING THE HOLY SPIRIT

3 O mindless Galatians,
who fascinated you to not obey the truth
— in front of whose eyes Yah Shua Messiah
was preinscribed among you — staked?
I will to learn only this of you:
Took you the Spirit by the works of the torah?
Or by the hearing of trust?
Are you thus mindless?
Having begun in Spirit,
complete/shalam you now in flesh?

4 Suffer you so much in vain — if indeed in vain?

5 So he who supplies the Spirit to you
and energizes dynamis among you
— is it by the works of the torah
or by the hearing of trust?

THE COVENANT OF ELOHIM WITH ABRAHAM

6 Even as Abraham trusted Elohim
and it was reckoned to him to justness

7 — so you know that whoever are of trust
are the sons of Abraham.

8 And the scripture,
foreseeing that Elohim justifies the goyim by trust
pre—evangelized to Abraham,
In you all the goyim are eulogized.

GALATIANS 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

9 So then they which be of *faith trust*
are blessed with *faithful trustworthy* Abraham.

Genesis 12:1—3

THE WORKS OF THE TORAH VS THE CURSE OF THE TORAH

10 For as many as are of the works of the *law torah*
are under the curse:
for it is *written scribed*,
Cursed is every one
that *continueth abideth* not in all *things*
which are *written scribed*
in the *book scroll* of the *law torah* to do them.

11 But that no *man one* is justified
by *in the law torah in the sight of God by Elohim*,
it is evident:

12 for, The just shall live by *faith trust*.
And the *law torah* is not of *faith trust*:
but, The *man human* that doeth them shall live in them.

Deuteronomy 27:6, Habakkuk 2:4, Leviticus 18:5

THE MARKETING OF THE MESSIAH FROM THE CURSE OF THE TORAH

13 *Christ Messiah* hath *redeemed marketed* us
from the curse of the *law torah*,
being made having become a curse for us:
for it is *written scribed*,
Cursed is every one that hangeth on a *tree staff*:
14 That the blessing of Abraham
might *come on become unto* the *Gentiles goyim*
through Jesus Christ in Yah Shua Messiah;
that we might *receive take*
the *promise pre—evangelism* of the Spirit
through *faith trust*.

Deuteronomy 21:23

15 Brethren, I *speak word* after the manner of *men humanity*;
Though it be but a man's Yet still, a human covenant,
yet if it be being confirmed,

16 no *man disannulleth one setteth aside*, or addeth thereto.
Now to Abraham and his *seed sperma*
were the *promises made pre—evangelisms rhetorized*.
He *saith wordeth* not, And to *seeds spermas*, as of many;
but as of one, And to thy *seed sperma*,
which is *Christ Messiah*.

Genesis 13:15, 25:5, 6

17 And this I *say word*, that the covenant,
that was *confirmed before of God pre—ratified by Elohim*
in *Christ Messiah*,
the *law torah*,

which was *became* four hundred and thirty years after,
cannot *disannul invalidate*,
that it should
make the promise of none effect
inactivate the pre—evangelism.

18 For if the inheritance be *of the law by torah*,
it is *no more of promise not still by pre—evangelism*:
but *God gave it Elohim granted charism* to Abraham
by promise through pre—evangelism.

19 *Wherefore then serveth the law So why the torah?*
It was added because of transgressions,
till the *seed sperma* should come
to whom the *promise pre—evangelism* was made;
and it was ordained by through angels
in the hand of a mediator.

20 Now a mediator is not a *mediator* of one,
but *God Elohim* is one.

21 *So* is the *law torah then*
against the *promises pre—evangelisms of God Elohim?*
God forbid So be it not:

for if there had been a *law torah* given
which *could have given life was able to enliven*,
verily righteousness indeed justness
should have been by the *law torah*.

22 But the scripture
hath *concluded locked* all *together* under sin,
that the *promise pre—evangelism*
by *faith of Jesus Christ trust from Yah Shua Messiah*
might be given to them that *believe trust*.

23 But *before faith ere the trust* came,
we were *kept garrisoned* under the *law torah*,
shut up locked together unto the *faith trust*
which should afterwards be *revealed unveiled*.

GALATIANS 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 So they of trust
are blessed with trustworthy Abraham.

Genesis 12:1—3

THE WORKS OF THE TORAH VS THE CURSE OF THE TORAH

10 For as many as are of the works of the torah
are under the curse:
for it is scribed,
Cursed is everyone who abides not in all
which are scribed in the scroll of the torah
— to do them.

11 And it is evident
that no one is justified by Elohim in the torah:
for, The just live by trust.

12 — and the torah is not of trust:
but, The human who does them, lives in them.

Deuteronomy 27:6, Habakkuk 2:4, Leviticus 18:5

THE MARKETING OF THE MESSIAH FROM THE CURSE OF THE TORAH

13 Messiah marketed us from the curse of the torah
— becoming a curse for us:
for it is scribed,

14 Cursed *is* everyone who hangs on a staff:
that the blessing of Abraham becomes to the goyim
in Yah Shua Messiah;
to take the pre—evangelism of the Spirit through trust.

Deuteronomy 21:23

15 Brothers, I word after the manner of humanity;
Yet still, a human covenant, being confirmed,
no one sets aside, or adds thereto.

16 And the pre—evangelisms were rhetorized
to Abraham and his sperma.
He words not, And to spermas — as of many;
but as of one, And to your sperma, who is Messiah.

Genesis 13:15, 25:5, 6

17 And this I word, the covenant — the torah
which was pre—ratified by Elohim in Messiah,
which became four hundred and thirty years after,
cannot invalidate to inactivate the pre—evangelism.

18 For if the inheritance is by torah
it is not still by pre—evangelism:
but Elohim granted charism to Abraham
through pre—evangelism.

19 So why the torah?
It was added because of transgressions,
until the sperma come
— to whom the pre—evangelism was made
ordained through angels in the hand of a mediator.

20 And a mediator is not of one,
but Elohim is one.

21 So is the torah
against the pre—evangelisms of Elohim?
So be it not:

for if a torah had been given
which was able to enliven,
then indeed justness had been by the torah.

22 But the scripture locked all together under sin
— so that the pre—evangelism by trust
from Yah Shua Messiah
be given to them who trust.

23 But ere the trust came,
we were garrisoned under the torah
— locked together to the trust
to be unveiled afterwards.

GALATIANS 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

24 *Wherefore* So the law torah
was **became** our schoolmaster **pedagogue**
to bring us unto Christ **unto** Messiah,
that we might be justified by *faith* **trust**.
25 But after that *faith* **the trust** is come,
we are *no longer* **not still**
under a schoolmaster **pedagogue**.
26 For ye are all the children **sons of God Elohim**
by *faith* **through the trust**
in Christ Jesus **Messiah Yah Shua**.
27 For as many of you
as have been baptized into Christ **Messiah**
have put on Christ **endued** Messiah.
28 There is neither Jew **Yah Hudy** nor Greek **Hellene**,
there is neither bond nor *free* **liberated**,
there is neither male nor female:
for ye are all one in Christ Jesus **Messiah Yah Shua**.
29 And if ye be Christ's **Messiah's**,
then are ye Abraham's *seed* **sperma**,
and heirs according to the *promise* **pre—evangelism**.

FROM SERVANT TO SONSHIP

4 Now I say **word**, That the heir,
as long **time** as he is a *child* **baby**,
differeth nothing from **surpasseth not** a servant,
though he be lord **being adoni** of all;
2 But is under
tutors **managers** and *governors* **administrators**
until the *time appointed* **preappointment** of the father.
3 Even so **thus** we, when we were *children* **babies**,
were in *bondage* **subservient**
under the elements of the *world* **cosmos**:
4 But when the fulness of the time was come,
God sent forth **Elohim apostolized** his Son,
made become of a woman,
made become under the law **torah**,
5 To *redeem* **market** them that were under the law **torah**,
that we might *receive* **take** the *adoption of sons* **sonship**.
6 And because ye are sons,
God **Elohim**
hath sent forth **apostolized** the Spirit of his Son
into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.
7 *Wherefore* **So then** thou art *no more* **not still** a servant,
but a son;
and if a son,
then an heir of *God* **Elohim** through Christ **Messiah**.

CONCERNING SERVITUDE

8 *Howbeit* **But indeed** then,
when ye knew not *God* **Elohim**,
ye *did service* **were in servitude** unto them
which by nature are no *gods* **elohim**.
9 But now, after that ye have known *God* **Elohim**,
or rather are known of *God* **Elohim**,
how turn ye **around** again
to the weak **frail** and *beggarly* **poor** elements,
whereunto ye *desire again* **uppermostly** will
to be in *bondage* **servitude**?
10 Ye observe days, and months,
and *times* **seasons**, and years.
11 I am *afraid* **awestricken** of you,
lest **somehow** I have
bestowed upon you labour **laboured unto you** in vain.
12 Brethren, I beseech **petition** you, *be become* as I am;
for I am **also** as ye are:
ye have not injured me at all.
13 Ye know how through *infirmity* **frailty** of the flesh
I *preached the gospel* **pre—evangelized** unto you
at the first.
14 And my *temptation* **testing** which was in my flesh
ye *despised* **belittled** not, nor *rejected* **spit out**;
but received me as an angel of *God* **Elohim**,
even as Christ Jesus **Messiah Yah Shua**.

THE GALATIANS PERPLEX PAULOS

15 **So** Where is *then* the blessedness ye spake of?
for I bear you record **witness**, that, if it had been possible,
ye would have plucked out **had extracted**
your own eyes,
and have **had ever** given them to me.
16 **So then**, Am I *therefore* become your enemy,
because I *tell you the truth* **be true**?

GALATIANS 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

24 So the torah became our pedagogue to Messiah,
that we be justified by trust.
25 And the trust, having come,
we are not still under a pedagogue.
26 For you are all the sons of Elohim
through the trust in Messiah Yah Shua.
27 For as many of you, being baptized into Messiah,
endued Messiah.
28 There is neither Yah Hudy nor Hellene;
there is neither bond nor liberated;
there is neither male nor female:
for you are all one in Messiah Yah Shua;
and if you are of Messiah
then you of the sperma of Abraham
and heirs according to the pre—evangelism.

FROM SERVANT TO SONSHIP

4 And I word,
as long time as the heir is a baby,
he surpasses not a servant — being adoni of all;
but is under managers and administrators
until the pre—appointment of the father.
3 Even so thus we, when we were babies,
were subservient under the elements of the cosmos:
but when the fulness/shalom of the time came
Elohim apostolized his Son
— become of a woman — become under the torah
to market them who were under the torah
so that we take the sonship.
6 And because you are sons,
Elohim apostolized the Spirit of his Son
into your hearts, crying, Abba Father.
7 So then, you are not still a servant, but a son;
and if a son, then an heir of Elohim through Messiah.

CONCERNING SERVITUDE

8 But then indeed,
when you knew not Elohim,
you were in servitude to them,
who by nature, are no elohim.
9 But now, knowing Elohim
— or rather Elohim knowing us,
how return you to the frail and poor elements,
to which you uppermostly will to be in servitude?
10 You observe days and months
and seasons and years.
11 I am awestricken of you,
lest somehow I labored to you in vain.
12 Brothers, I petition you,
become as I; for I am also as you:
you injured me not at all.
13 You know how through frailty of the flesh
I pre—evangelized to you:
and my testing in my flesh
you neither belittled, nor spit out;
but received me as an angel of Elohim
— as Messiah Yah Shua.

THE GALATIANS PERPLEX PAULOS

15 So where is the blessedness of which you speak?
For I witness, that if possible,
you had extracted your own eyes
and had ever given them to me.
16 So, become I your enemy
because I am true?

GALATIANS 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

17 They *zealously affect* **are zealous over** you, but not well;
yea **rather**, they *would will to* exclude you,
that ye might *affect* **be zealous over** them.
18 But it is good to be *zealously affected* **zealous**
always in a **over** good thing,
and not only *when I am in my being* present with you.
19 My little children, of whom I travail in birth again
until *Christ Messiah* be formed in you,
20 I *desire will to* be present with you now,
and to change my voice;
for I *stand in doubt of* **am perplexed in** you.

ALLEGORY OF HAGAR AND SARAH

21 *Tell Word to me,*
ye that *desire will to* be under the *law* **torah**,
do ye not hear the *law* **torah**?
22 For it is *written scribed*, that Abraham had two sons,
the one by a *bondmaid* **the lass**,
the other by a *freewoman* **the liberated**.
23 But **indeed** he *who was of the bondwoman* **lass**
was *born birthed* after the flesh;
but he of the *freewoman* **liberated**
was by *promise through pre—evangelism*.
24 Which *things are an allegory* **are allegorized**:
for these are the two covenants;
the one **indeed** from the mount *Sinai* **Sinay**,
which *gendereth birtheth to bondage* **servitude**,
which is *Agar* **Hagar**.
25 For this *Agar* **Hagar** is mount *Sinai* **Sinay** in Arabia,
and *answereth correspondeth*
to Jerusalem with Yeru Shalem which now is,
and is in *bondage servitude* with her children.
26 But *Jerusalem which is the Yeru Shalem* above
is *free* **liberated**,
which is the mother of us all.
27 For it is *written scribed*,
Rejoice, thou *barren sterile* that *bearest birthest* not;
break forth and cry, thou that *travaillest not*:
for the desolate hath many more children
many are the children of the desolate
rather than she which *hath an husband* **a man**.

Yesha Yah 54:1

28 Now we, brethren, as *Isaac* **Yischaq** was,
are the children of *promise pre—evangelism*.
29 But **exactly** as then
he that was *born after the birthed* according to flesh
persecuted him *that was born after the according to* Spirit,
even so *it is thus* now.
30 *Nevertheless Rather*, what *saieth wordeth* the scripture?
Cast out the *bondwoman* **lass** and her son:
for the son of the *bondwoman* **lass**
shall not *be heir* **no way inherit**
with the son of the *freewoman* **liberated**.

Genesis 21:9, 10

31 So then, brethren,
we are not children of the *bondwoman* **lass**,
but of the *free* **liberated**.

THE LIBERTY OF THE LIBERATED

5 Stand *fast firm* therefore in the liberty
wherewith *Christ Messiah* hath *made us free* **liberated us**,
and be not *entangled begrudged* again
with the yoke of *bondage* **servitude**.

THE SERVITUDE OF SERVANTS

2 Behold, I *Paul say Paulos word* unto you,
that *if whenever* ye be circumcised,
Christ Messiah shall *profit benefit* you *nothing naught*.
3 For I *testify witness* again
to every *man human* that is circumcised,
that he is a debtor to do the whole *law* **torah**.
4 *Christ is become of no effect unto you*
Ye are inactivated from the Messiah,
whosoever of you are justified by *in the law* **torah**;
ye are fallen from *grace* **charism**.

THE HOPE OF THE HOLY

5 For we through the Spirit *wait for await* the hope
of *righteousness justness* by *faith* **trust**.
6 For in *Jesus Christ Yah Shua* **Messiah**
neither circumcision *availeth any thing is of any ability*,
nor uncircumcision;
but *faith trust* which *worketh by* **energizeth through** love.

GALATIANS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

17 They are zealous over you, but not well;
yes rather, they will to exclude you;
so that you be zealous over them.
18 And it is always good to be zealous over good
and not only in my being present with you.
19 My little children, of whom I travail in birth again
until Messiah forms in you,
20 I will to be present with you now
and to change my voice;
for I am perplexed in you.

ALLEGORY OF HAGAR AND SARAH

21 Word to me
— you who will to be under the torah,
Hear you not the torah?
22 For it is scribed, that Abraham had two sons,
the one by the lass, the other by the liberated.
23 But indeed he of the lass was birthed after the flesh;
and he of the liberated, through pre—evangelism;
24 which are allegorized:
for these are the two covenants;
the one indeed from the Mount Sinay
— which births to servitude — which is Hagar.
25 For this Hagar is Mount Sinay in Arabia
and corresponds with Yeru Shalem — which now is
and is in servitude with her children.
26 But the Yeru Shalem above is liberated
— the mother of us all.
27 For it is scribed,
Rejoice, you sterile who birth not;
break forth and cry, you who travail not:
for many are the children of the desolate
rather than she who has a man.

Yesha Yah 54:1

28 And brothers, as Yischaq,
we are the children of pre—evangelism.
29 But so exactly as he who was birthed according to flesh
persecuted him according to Spirit;
even thus now.
30 Rather, what words the scripture?
Cast out the lass and her son:
for the son of the lass
no way inherits with the son of the liberated.
Genesis 21:9, 10

31 So then brothers,
we are not children of the lass, but of the liberated.

THE LIBERTY OF THE LIBERATED

5 So stand firm in the liberty Messiah liberated us;
and begrudge not again
with the yoke of servitude.

THE SERVITUDE OF SERVANTS

2 Behold, I Paulos word to you,
whenever you circumcise
Messiah benefits you naught.
3 For I witness again to every circumcised human,
that he is a debtor to do the whole torah.
4 You — you who justify in torah
inactivate *yourselves* from the Messiah
— you are fallen from the charism.

THE HOPE OF THE HOLY

5 For by Spirit,
we await the hope of justness by trust.
6 For in Yah Shua Messiah
neither is circumcision of any ability,
nor uncircumcision;
but trust, that energizes through love.

GALATIANS 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE TORAH FULFILLED IN LOVE

7 Ye did run well;
who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth?
8 This *persuasion* **confidence**
cometh is not of him that calleth you.
9 A little *leaven* **fermentation**
leaveneth **fermenteth** the whole lump.
10 I have confidence in you *through* the Lord in **Adonay**,
that ye *will be none* **shall not think** otherwise *mindeth*:
but he that troubleth you shall bear his judgment,
whosoever he be.
11 And I, brethren, if I yet preach circumcision,
why do I yet suffer persecution?
then is the *offence* **scandal** of the *cross* **stake**
ceased **inactivated**.
12 *I would* **O that** they were *even cut off* **amputated**
which *trouble* **rouse you**.
13 For, brethren, ye have been called unto liberty;
only *use* not liberty
for an occasion **unto an opportunity** to the flesh,
but by **through** love serve one another.
14 For *all* the *law* **whole torah**
is fulfilled/**shalamed** in one word,
even in this; Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.
Leviticus 19:18
15 But if ye bite and devour one another,
take heed **see** that ye be not consumed one of another.

THE IN SPIRIT WALK

16 This I *say* **word** then, Walk in *the* Spirit,
and ye shall not **no way**
fulfil **complete/shalam** the *lust* **panting** of the flesh.
17 For the flesh *lusteth* **panteth** against the Spirit,
and the Spirit against the flesh:
and these are contrary
the one to the other **to one another**:
so that ye cannot do *the things* **those**
that ye *would* **ever will**.
18 But if ye be led of the Spirit,
ye are not under the *law* **torah**.

THE MANY WORKS OF THE FLESH

19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest,
which are *these*;
Adultery, fornication **whoredom**,
uncleanness **impurity**, *lasciviousness* **lechery**,
20 *Idolatry, witchcraft* **pharmacy**, *hatred* **enmity**,
variance **contention**, *emulations* **zeals**, *wrath* **fury**,
strife **rivalry**, *seditions* **divisions**, heresies,
21 *Envyings, murders, drunkenness* **intoxication**,
revellings **carousings**, and such like:
of the which I *tell you before* **forespeak**,
exactly as I have also *told you in time past* **foretold**,
that they which *do* **transact** such *things*
shall not inherit
the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**.

THE SINGULAR FRUIT OF THE SPIRIT

22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, *joy* **cheer**,
peace **shalom**, *longsuffering* **patience**,
gentleness **kindness**, *goodness*, *faith* **trust**,
23 *Meekness, temperance* **self—control**:
against such there is no *law* **torah**.
24 And they that *are* **Christ's** **be the Messiah's**
have *crucified* **staked** the flesh
with the *affections* **passions** and *lusts* **pantings**.
25 If we live in *the* Spirit,
let us also *walk* **march** in *the* Spirit.
26 Let us not be *desirous of vain glory* **vainglorious**,
provoking **irritating** one another, envying one another.

GALATIANS 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE TORAH FULFILLED IN LOVE

7 You run well;
who hinders you to not obey the truth?
8 This confidence is not of him who calls you.
9 A little fermentation ferments the whole lump.
10 I have confidence in you in Adonay,
that you not think otherwise:
but whoever troubles you — whoever
bears his judgment.
11 And I, brothers, if I still preach circumcision,
why suffer I still persecution?
Then the scandal of the stake is inactivated.
12 O that whoever rouses you, even amputate.
13 For brothers, you are called to liberty
— only not liberty to an opportunity of the flesh
but through love to serve one another.
14 For the whole torah fulfills/shalams in one word,
— in this; Love your neighbour as yourself.
Leviticus 19:18
15 And if you bite and devour one another,
see that you not consume one another.

THE IN SPIRIT WALK

16 So I word this, Walk in Spirit
and you never no way
complete/shalam the panting of the flesh.
17 For the flesh pants against the Spirit
and the Spirit against the flesh
— and these are contrary to one another:
so that you cannot ever do those that you ever will.
18 But if you are led by the Spirit,
you are not under the torah.

THE MANY WORKS OF THE FLESH

19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are:
Adultery,
whoredom,
impurity,
lechery,
idolatry,
pharmacy,
enmity,
contention,
zeals,
fury,
rivalry,
divisions,
heresies,
envyings,
murders,
intoxication,
carousings
and such like:
of which I forespeak exactly as I also foretold,
that whoever transacts such
inherit not the sovereigndom of Elohim.

THE SINGULAR FRUIT OF THE SPIRIT

22 And the fruit of the Spirit:
love,
cheer,
shalom,
patience,
kindness,
goodness,
trust,
meekness,
self — control:
against such there is no torah.
24 And whoever are of the Messiah
stake the flesh with the passions and pantings.
25 If we live in Spirit,
we also march in Spirit
— not being vainglorious,
irritating one another, envying one another.

GALATIANS 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE MINISTRY OF RESTORATION

6 Brethren,
 if **whenever** a *man* **human** be overtaken in a *fault* **backsliding**,
 ye which are spiritual,
 restore **prepare** such an one in the spirit of meekness;
 considering **scoping** thyself,
 lest thou also be *tempted* **tested**.
 2 Bear ye one another's burdens,
 and so **thus** fulfil the *law* **torah** of *Christ* **the Messiah**.
 3 For if a *man* **some one**
 think himself to be *something* **somewhat**,
 when he is *nothing* **being no one**,
 he *deceiveth* **deludeth** himself.
 4 But let every *man* **each** prove his own work,
 and then
 shall he have *rejoicing* **boasting** in himself alone,
 and not in another.
 5 For every *man* **each** shall bear his own burden.
 6 Let him that is *taught* **catechized** in the word
 communicate **impart** unto him that *teacheth* **catechizeth**
 in all good *things*.
 7 Be not *deceived* **seduced**;
 God **Elohim** is not *mocked* **snubbed**:
 for whatsoever a *man* **human** soweth **sporeth**,
 that shall he also *reap* **harvest**.
 8 For he that soweth **sporeth** to his flesh
 shall of the flesh *reap* **harvest** corruption;
 but he that soweth **sporeth** to the Spirit
 shall of the Spirit *reap* **harvest** life *everlasting* **eternal**.
 9 And let us not be weary in *well* doing **good**:
 for in *due* **our own** season we shall *reap* **harvest**,
 if we *faint* **weaken** not.
 10 **So** As we have *therefore* **opportunity** **season**,
 let us *do* **work** good unto all *men*,
 especially unto them
 who are of the household of *faith* **the trust**.
 THE BOASTING OF PAULOS
 11 Ye see how *large a letter* **great a scribing**
 I have *written* **scribed** unto you with mine own hand.
 12 As many as *desire* **will** to make a fair shew in the flesh,
 they *constrain* **compel** you to be circumcised;
 only lest they should suffer persecution
 for the *cross* **stake** of *Christ* **the Messiah**.
 13 For neither they themselves who are circumcised
 keep **guard** the *law* **torah**;
 but *desire* **will** to have you circumcised,
 that they may *glory* **boast** in your flesh.
 14 *But God forbid* **So be it not** that I should *glory* **boast**,
 save **except** in the *cross* **stake**
 of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
 by **through** whom
 the *world* **cosmos** is *crucified* **staked** unto me,
 and I **also** unto the *world* **cosmos**.
 15 For in *Christ Jesus* **Messiah Yah Shua**
 neither circumcision *availeth any thing* **is of any ability**,
 nor uncircumcision,
 but a new *creature* **creation**.
 16 And as many as *walk* **march**
 according to **by** this *rule* **canon**,
 peace **shalom** be on them, and mercy,
 and upon the *Israel* **Yisra El** of *God* **Elohim**.
 17 From henceforth
 let no *man* **trouble** **one** **belabour** to **embarrass** me:
 for I bear in my body
 the *marks* **stigmas** of the *Lord Jesus* **Adonay Yah Shua**.
 18 Brethren, the *grace* **charism**
 of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
 be with your spirit.
 Amen.

GALATIANS 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE MINISTRY OF RESTORATION

6 Brothers,
 whenever a human is overtaken in backsliding,
 you who are spiritual,
 prepare such a one in the spirit of meekness;
 scoping yourself, lest you also are tested.
 2 Bear the burdens of one another
 and thus fulfil the torah of the Messiah.
 3 For if someone thinks he is somewhat,
 being no one, he deludes himself:
 4 and each proofs his own work
 and then he boasts in himself alone
 and not in another:
 5 for each bears his own burden.
 6 Whoever catechizes in the word,
 impart to him who catechizes in all good.
 7 be not seduced: Elohim is not snubbed:
 for whatever a human sows
 he also harvests;
 8 because whoever sows to his flesh
 of the flesh harvests corruption;
 and whoever sows to the Spirit
 of the Spirit harvests life eternal.
 9 And let us not weary in doing good:
 for in our own season we harvest
 — if we weaken not.
 10 So as we have season, work good to all,
 especially to the household of the trust.
 THE BOASTING OF PAULOS
 11 You see how great a scribing
 I scribe to you with my own hand.
 12 As many as will to make a fair show in the flesh,
 compel you to circumcise;
 only lest they suffer persecution
 for the stake of the Messiah.
 13 For neither they who circumcise
 guard the torah;
 but they will to have you circumcised,
 so as to boast in your flesh.
 14 So be it not that I boast,
 except in the stake of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
 — through whom the cosmos is staked to me
 and also I to the cosmos.
 15 For in Messiah Yah Shua
 neither is circumcision of any ability
 nor uncircumcision
 — but a new creation.
 16 And as many as march by this canon,
 shalom and mercy on them
 and on the Yisra El of Elohim.
 17 From henceforth
 belabor not to embarrass me:
 for I bear in my body
 the stigmas of Adonay Yah Shua.
 18 Brothers,
 the charism of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
 be with your spirit.
 Amen.

EPHESIANS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paul Paulos,
 an apostle of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*
 by **through** the will of *God Elohim*,
 to the *saints which are at holy being in* Ephesus,
 and to the *faithful trustworthy*
 in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*:
 2 Grace be **Charism** to you, and peace **shalom**,
 from *God Elohim* our Father,
 and from
 the *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*.
 3 Blessed be the *God Elohim* and Father
 of our *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*,
 who hath blessed us *with in* all spiritual blessings
 in *heavenly places the heavenlies* in *Christ Messiah*:
 4 According **Exactly** as he hath *chosen selected* us in him
 before **ere** the foundation of the *world cosmos*,
 that we should be holy and *without blame unblemished*
 before him **in his sight** in love:
 5 Having *predestinated predetermined* us
 unto the *adoption of children sonship*
 by *Jesus Christ through Yah Shua Messiah* to himself,
 according to the *good pleasure well—approval* of his will,
 6 To the *praise halal* of the glory of his *grace charism*,
 wherein he hath
made us accepted ended us with charism
 in the beloved.
 7 In whom we have redemption through his blood,
 the forgiveness of *sins backslidings*,
 according to the riches of his *grace charism*;
 8 Wherein
 he hath *abounded toward superabounded unto* us
 in all wisdom and *prudence thought*;
 9 Having made known unto us the mystery of his will,
 according to his *good pleasure well—approval*
 which he hath *purposed predetermined* in himself:
 10 That in the *dispensation administration*
 of the fulness /shalom of *times seasons*
 he might *gather together in one sum up* all things
 in *Christ the Messiah*,
 both which are in *heaven the heavens*,
 and which are on earth; *even* in him:
 11 In whom also
 we have *obtained an inheritance inherited*,
 being *predestinated predetermined*
 according to the *purpose prothesis*
 of him who *worketh energizeth* all things
 after the counsel of his own will:
 12 That we should be **Unto our being**
 to the *praise halal* of his glory,
 who *first trusted forehoped* in *Christ the Messiah*.
 13 In whom ye also *trusted*,
 after that ye heard the word of truth,
 the *gospel evangelism* of your salvation:
 in whom also, *after that ye believed having trusted*,
 ye were sealed
 with that holy Spirit of *promise pre—evangelism*,
 14 Which is the *earnest pledge* of our inheritance
 until **unto** the redemption
 of the *purchased possession acquisition*,
 unto the *praise halal* of his glory.
THE SPIRIT OF WISDOM AND APOCALYPSE
 15 Wherefore **So** I also, after I heard of your *faith trust*
 in the *Lord Jesus Adonay Yah Shua*,
 and love unto all the *saints holy*,
 16 Cease **Pause** not to *give thanks eucharistize* for you,
 making *mention remembrance* of you in my prayers;
 17 That the *God Elohim*
 of our *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*,
 the Father of glory,
 may give unto you
 the spirit of wisdom and *revelation apocalypse*
 in the knowledge of him:
 18 The eyes of your *understanding mind*
 being enlightened;
that ye may know unto knowing
 what is the hope of his calling,
 and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance
 in the *saints holy*,

EPHESIANS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos, an apostle of Yah Shua Messiah
 through the will of Elohim:
 To the holy in Ephesus
 and trustworthy in Messiah Yah Shua:
 2 Charism to you and shalom,
 from Elohim our Father
 and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
 3 Blessed be the Elohim and Father
 of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
 who blessed us in all spiritual blessings
 in the heavenlies in Messiah:
 4 exactly as he selected us in him
 ere the foundation of the cosmos,
 to be holy and unblemished in his sight in love:
 5 having predetermined us to sonship
 through Yah Shua Messiah to himself,
 according to the well—approval of his will,
 to the halal of the glory of his charism,
 wherein he charised us in the beloved:
 6 in whom we have redemption through his blood
 — the forgiveness of backslidings
 according to the riches of his charism;
 7 wherein he superabounds us
 in all wisdom and thought;
 8 having us know the mystery of his will
 — according to his well—approval
 which he pre—determined in himself:
 9 that in the administration
 of the fulness/shalom of seasons
 he sum up all in the Messiah
 — both in the heavens and on earth
 — in him:
 10 in whom we also inherit,
 being pre—determined according to the prothesis
 of him who energizes all
 after the counsel of his own will:
 11 to our being to the halal of his glory,
 who fore—hoped in the Messiah:
 12 in whom you also, having heard the word of truth
 — the evangelism of your salvation:
 in whom also, having trusted,
 you were sealed
 with that holy Spirit of pre—evangelism,
 13 who is the pledge of our inheritance
 to the redemption of the acquisition,
 to the halal of his glory.

THE SPIRIT OF WISDOM AND APOCALYPSE

So I also,
 after I heard of your trust in Adonay Yah Shua
 and love to all the holy,
 14 pause not to eucharistize for you,
 making remembrance of you in my prayers;
 15 that the Elohim of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
 the Father of glory,
 give you the spirit of wisdom and apocalypse
 in the knowledge of him:
 16 the eyes of your mind being enlightened;
 to know the hope of his calling,
 and the riches of the glory of his inheritance
 in the holy,

EPHESIANS 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19 And what is the exceeding *greatness* **magnitude**
of his *power* **dynamis**
to us—ward **unto us** who believe **trust**,
according to the *working* **energizing**
of his mighty *power* might,
20 Which he wrought **energized** in *Christ* **the Messiah**,
when he raised him from the dead,
and set **sat** him at **at** his *own* right *hand*
in the *heavenly* **places** **heavenlies**,
21 Far above
all *principality* **hierarchies**, and *power* **authority**,
and might **dynamis**, and *dominion* **lordship**,
and every name that is named,
not only in this *world* **eon**,
but also in that which is to come:
22 And hath *put* **subjugated** all *things* under his feet,
and gave him *to be* the head over all *things*
to the *church* **ecclesia**,
23 Which is his body,
the fulness/**shalom** of him that filleth/**shalameth** all in all.

SALVATION BY CHARISM THROUGH THE TRUST

2 And you *hath* he quickened,
who were **being** dead in *trespasses* **backslidings** and sins;
2 Wherein *in time past* ye **you** **formerly** walked
according to the *course* **eon** of this *world* **cosmos**,
according to the *prince* **arch**
of the *power* **authority** of the air,
the spirit that now *worketh* **energizeth**
in the *children* **sons** of *disobedience* **distrust**:
3 Among whom also
we all had our *conversation* **behaviour**
in times past **ever** in the *lusts* **pantings** of our flesh,
fulfilling **doing** the *desires* **will**
of the flesh and of the mind;
and were by nature the children of wrath,
even as *others* **the rest**.
4 But *God* **Elohim**, *who is* **being** rich in mercy,
for his *great* **vast** love wherewith he loved us,
5 Even *when we were* **being** dead in *sins* **backslidings**,
hath *quickened us together* **co—enlivened us**
with *Christ* **the Messiah**,
(by *grace* **charism** ye are saved;)
6 And hath *raised* **co—raised** us *up together*,
and *made us sit together* **co—seated us**
in *heavenly* **places** **the heavenlies**
in *Christ* **Jesus** **Messiah** **Yah Shua**:
7 That in the *ages* **eons** to come
he might *shew* **indicate**
the exceeding riches of his *grace* **charism**
in his kindness toward us
through *Christ* **Jesus** **in** **Messiah** **Yah Shua**.
8 For by *grace* **charism** are ye saved
through *faith* **the trust**;
and that not of yourselves:
it is the *gift* **oblation** of *God* **Elohim**:
9 Not of works, lest any *man* **one** should boast.
10 For we are his *workmanship* **doing**,
created in *Christ* **Jesus** **Messiah** **Yah Shua**
unto good works,
which *God* **Elohim**
hath *before ordained* **previously prepared**
that we should walk in them.

SHALOM THROUGH THE BLOOD OF MESSIAH

11 Wherefore **So** remember,
that ye *being in time past* **ever**
Gentiles **goyim** in the flesh,
who are *called* **worded** Uncircumcision
by that which is *called* **the worded** Circumcision
in *the flesh* **made by hands** **handmade**;
12 That at that *time* **season**
ye were *without* **Christ** **apart from** **Messiah**,
being *aliens* **alienated**
from the *commonwealth* **citizenship** of *Israel* **Yisra El**,
and strangers
from the covenants of *promise* **the pre—evangelism**,
having no hope,
and *without* **God** **atheist** in the *world* **cosmos**:
13 But now in *Christ* **Jesus** **Messiah** **Yah Shua**

EPHESIANS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

19 and the exceeding magnitude of his dynamis
to us who trust,
according to the energizing of his mighty might,
20 which he energized in the Messiah
when he raised him from the dead
and sat him at his right in the heavenlies,
21 far above all hierarchies and authority
and dynamis and lordship
and every name that is named
— not only in this eon
but also in the coming:
22 and subjugated all under his feet
and gave him head over all to the ecclesia
23 — his body,
the fulness/shalom of him
who fills full/shalams all in all.

SALVATION BY CHARISM THROUGH THE TRUST

2 And you
— being dead in backslidings and sins
wherein you formerly walked
according to the eon of this cosmos,
according to the arch of the authority of the air,
the spirit that now energizes in the sons of distrust:
3 among whom also we all had our behavior
ever in the pantings of our flesh,
doing the will of the flesh and of the mind;
and by nature
being the children of wrath even as the rest:
4 and Elohim, being rich in mercy,
for his vast love wherewith he loved us,
5 even being dead in backslidings,
co—enlivened us with the Messiah
— by charism you are saved;
6 and co—raised and co—seated us
in the heavenlies in Messiah Yah Shua:
7 so that in the eons to come
he indicates the exceeding riches of his charism
in his kindness toward us in Messiah Yah Shua
8 — for you are saved by the charism
through the trust;
and that not of yourselves:
it is the oblation of Elohim:
9 not of works, lest anyone boast.

10 For we are his doing,
created in Messiah Yah Shua to good works,
which Elohim previously prepared
that we walk in them.

SHALOM THROUGH THE BLOOD OF MESSIAH

11 So remember that you, ever goyim in the flesh,
who are worded, Uncircumcision
by those worded, Circumcision
— in the flesh — handmade;
12 that at that season you, being apart from Messiah,
being alienated from the citizenship of Yisra El;
strangers from the covenants of the pre—evangelism
having no hope and atheist in the cosmos:
13 and now in Messiah Yah Shua

EPHESIANS 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

ye who sometimes were formerly being far off
are made have become nigh
by the blood of Christ the Messiah.
14 For he is our peace shalom, who hath made both one,
and hath broken down loosed
the middle wall hedge of partition between us;
15 Having abolished inactivated in his flesh the enmity,
even the law torah of commandments misvoth
contained in ordinances dogmas;
for to make in that through himself
of twain created the two into one new man human,
so making peace shalom;
16 And that he might fully reconcile
both unto God Elohim
in one body by through the cross stake,
having slain slaughtered the enmity thereby therein:
17 And came and preached peace evangelized shalom
to you which were afar off,
and to them that were nigh.
18 For through him we both have access by in one Spirit
unto the Father.

THE NEW HOLY NAVE

19 So Now therefore
ye are no more strangers and foreigners settlers,
but fellowcitizens co—citizens with the saints holy,
and of the household of God Elohim;
20 And are built upon the foundation
of the apostles and prophets,
Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah himself
being the chief corner stone;
21 In whom all the
building fitly framed together co—joined edifice
groweth unto an holy temple nave in the Lord Adonay:
22 In whom ye also are builded together co—settled
for an habitation unto a settlement of God Elohim
through the in Spirit.

THE APOCALYPSE OF THE MYSTERY OF THE ECCLESIA

3 For this cause I Paul Paulos,
the prisoner of Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah
for you Gentiles goyim,
2 If indeed ye have heard
of the dispensation administration
of the grace charism of God Elohim
which is given me to you—ward unto you:
3 How that by revelation apocalypse
he made known unto me the mystery;
(exactly as I wrote afore preinscribed in few words,
4 Whereby Whereunto, when ye read,
ye may understand be able to comprehend
my knowledge comprehension
in the mystery of Christ the Messiah)
5 Which in other ages generations
was not made known unto the sons of men humanity,
as it is now revealed unveiled
unto his holy apostles and prophets by the in Spirit;
6 That the Gentiles goyim should be fellowheirs co—heirs,
and of the same body co—bodied,
and partakers co—partakers of his promise pre—evangelism
in Christ by the Messiah through the gospel evangelism:
7 Whereof I was made became a minister,
according to the gift gratuity
of the grace charism of God Elohim
given unto me
by the effectual working energizing
of his power dynamis.
8 Unto me,
who am less than the least of all saints the holy,
is this grace charism given,
that I should preach evangelize
among the Gentiles goyim
the unsearchable untraceable riches
of Christ the Messiah;
9 And to make enlighten all men to see
what is the fellowship communion of the mystery,
which from the beginning of the world eons
hath been hid secreted in God Elohim,
who created all things
by Jesus Christ through Yah Shua Messiah:

EPHESIANS 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— being formerly afar
you became near by the blood of the Messiah.
14 For he is our shalom — who made both one
and loosed the middle hedge of partition;
15 inactivating the enmity in his flesh,
even the torah, misvoth in dogmas;
that through himself
he created the two into one new human,
making shalom;
16 and that he fully reconciled both to Elohim
in one body through the stake,
having slaughtered the enmity therein:
17 and came and evangelized shalom
— to you who were afar off
and to them who were near.
18 For through him, in one Spirit,
we both have access to the Father.

THE NEW HOLY NAVE

19 So now you are no more strangers and settlers
— but co—citizens with the holy
and of the household of Elohim;
20 built upon the foundation
of the apostles and prophets,
Yah Shua Messiah himself being the chief corner;
21 in whom all the co—joined edifice
grows to a holy nave in Adonay:
22 in whom you also are co—settled
for a settlement of Elohim in Spirit.

THE APOCALYPSE OF THE MYSTERY OF THE ECCLESIA

3 For this cause I Paulos
the prisoner of Yah Shua Messiah for you goyim,
2 if indeed you heard
of the administration of the charism of Elohim
given me regarding you:
3 how that by apocalypse
he had me know the mystery;
4 exactly as I pre—inscribed in few words,
whereof, when you read,
you can comprehend my comprehension
in the mystery of the Messiah;
5 which in other generations
was not known to the sons of humanity,
as it is now unveiled
to his holy apostles and prophets in Spirit;
6 that the goyim be co—heirs and co—bodied
and co—partakers of his pre—evangelism
in the Messiah through the evangelism:
7 whereof I became a minister,
according to the gratuity of the charism of Elohim
given me by the energizing of his dynamis:
8 to me — less than the least of all the holy
this charism is given
— to evangelize among the goyim
the untraceable riches of the Messiah;
and to enlighten so that all see
the communion of the mystery
— which from the eons was secreted in Elohim
who created all through Yah Shua Messiah:

EPHESIANS 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

10 To the intent so that now
unto the *principalities hierarchies* and *powers authorities*
in *heavenly places the heavenlies*
might be known by **through** the *church ecclesia*
the *manifold multifarious* wisdom of *God Elohim*,
11 According to the *eternal purpose prothesis of the eons*
which he *purposed made*
in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua* our *Lord Adonay*:
12 In whom we have boldness and access
with **in** confidence
by **through** the *faith trust* of him.
13 Wherefore **So** I *desire ask* that ye *faint weary* not
at my tribulations for you, which is your glory.

THE PRAYER OF PAULOS FOR LOVE

14 For this cause I bow my knees unto the Father
of our *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*,
15 Of whom the whole *family patriarchy*
in *heaven the heavens* and earth is named,
16 That he *would grant should give* you,
according to the riches of his glory,
to be *strengthened empowered* with *might dynamis*
by **through** his Spirit in the inner *man human*;
17 That *Christ the Messiah* may dwell in your hearts
by *faith through the trust*;
that ye, being rooted and *grounded founded* in love,
18 May be able to comprehend with all *saints the holy*
what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height;
19 And to know the love of *Christ the Messiah*,
which *passeth exceedeth* knowledge,
that ye might be filled/*shalamed*
with **unto** all the fulness/*shalom* of *God Elohim*.

DOXOLOGY

20 Now unto him
that is able to do *exceeding abundantly superabundantly*
above all that we ask or *think comprehend*,
according to the *power dynamis*
that *worketh energizeth* in us,
21 Unto him be glory in the *church ecclesia*
by *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*
throughout unto all *ages generations*,
world without end eon of the eons.
Amen.

THE UNITY OF THE SPIRIT

4 **So** I *therefore*, the prisoner of the *Lord in Adonay*,
beseech you that ye walk worthy
of the *vocation calling* wherewith ye are called,
2 With all *lowliness humblemindedness* and meekness,
with *longsuffering patience*,
forbearing tolerating one another in love;
3 Endeavouring **Diligent**
to *keep guard* the unity of the Spirit
in the bond of *peace shalom*.
4 *There is* one body, and one Spirit,
even **exactly** as ye are called in one hope of your calling;
5 One *Lord Adonay*, one *faith trust*, one baptism,
6 One *God Elohim* and Father of all,
who is above all, and through all, and in you all.

THE DESCENSION AND ASCENSION OF THE MESSIAH

7 But unto every **each** one of us is given *grace charism*
according to the measure of the *gift gratuity*
of *Christ the Messiah*.
8 Wherefore **So** he *saith wordeth*,
When he ascended *up* on high,
he led captivity captive,
and gave gifts unto *men humanity*.

Psalms 68:18

9 (Now that he ascended,
what is it **but except** that he also descended first
into the *lower substrata* parts of the earth?
10 He that descended
is the same also that ascended *up* far above all heavens,
that he might *fill fulfill/shalam* all *things*.)

THE FOURFOLD MINISTRY

11 And he gave some **indeed**, apostles;
and some, prophets; and some, evangelists;
and some, *pastors shepherds* and *teachers doctors*;
12 For the perfecting of the *saints holy*,
for **unto** the work of the ministry,
for **unto** the edifying of the body of *Christ the Messiah*:

EPHESIANS 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

10 so that now
through the *ecclesia*
the hierarchies and authorities in the heavenlies
know the multifarious wisdom of Elohim,
11 according to the prothesis of the eons
which he made in Messiah Yah Shua our Adonay:
12 in whom we have boldness and access
in confidence through the trust of him.
13 So I ask that you weary not
at my tribulations for you, which is your glory.

THE PRAYER OF PAULOS FOR LOVE

14 For this cause I bow my knees to the Father
of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
15 of whom the whole patriarchy
in the heavens and earth is named;
16 that he give you
— according to the riches of his glory
to be empowered with dynamis
through his Spirit in the inner human;
17 that through the trust
the Messiah dwell in your hearts;
that you, being rooted and founded in love,
18 can comprehend with all the holy
the breadth and length and depth and height;
19 and to know the love of the Messiah,
which exceeds knowledge,
to fill you full/shalam you
to all the fulness/shalom of Elohim.

DOXOLOGY

20 And to him who is able to do superabundantly
above all we ask or comprehend,
according to the dynamis energizing in us,
21 to him be glory in the *ecclesia*
by Messiah Yah Shua
to all generations — eon of the eons.
Amen.

THE UNITY OF THE SPIRIT

4 So I, the prisoner in Adonay,
beseech you to walk worthily
of the calling wherewith you are called,
2 with all humblemindedness and meekness,
3 with patience, tolerating one another in love;
4 diligent to guard the unity of the Spirit
in the bond of shalom:
— one body and one Spirit,
even exactly as you are called
in one hope of your calling;
5 — one Adonay, one trust, one baptism,
6 one Elohim and Father of all,
who is above all and through all and in you all.

THE DESCENSION AND ASCENSION OF THE MESSIAH

7 And charism is given to each one of us
according to the measure
of the gratuity of the Messiah.
8 So he words,
Having ascended on high,
he captured the captives and gave gifts to humanity.

Psalms 68:18

9 Now that he ascended,
what is it except that he also first descended
into the *substrata* parts of the earth?
10 He who descended
is the same who also ascended
far above all the heavens to fulfill/shalam all.

THE FOURFOLD MINISTRY

11 And indeed, he gave some, apostles;
and some, prophets;
and some, evangelists;
and some, shepherds and doctors;
12 for the perfecting of the holy
— to the work of the ministry
— to the edifying of the body of the Messiah:

EPHESIANS 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

13 Till we all *come attain*
in **unto** the unity of the *faith trust*,
and of the knowledge of the Son of *God Elohim*,
unto a *perfect man man of shalom*,
unto the measure of the *stature maturity*
of the fulness of *Christ the Messiah*:
14 That we *henceforth*
be no *more children longer babies*,
tossed to and fro surging, and carried about
with every wind of doctrine,
by **in** the *sleight dice* of men, and **in** cunning *craftiness*,
whereby they lie in wait to deceive
with their methods of seduction;
15 But *speaking the truth being true* in love,
may grow up into him in all *things*,
which is the head, *even Christ the Messiah*:
16 From whom the whole body
fitly joined together co—joined and *compacted coalesced*
by **through** that which every joint *supplieth contributeth*,
according to the *effectual working energizing*
in the measure of every **each single** part,
maketh *increase growth* of the body
unto the edifying of itself in love.

THE UNHOLY LIFE

17 *This I say therefore So I word*,
and testify **witness** in the *Lord Adonay*,
that ye *henceforth walk not no longer*
exactly as other *Gentiles walk the rest of the goyim*,
in the vanity of their mind,
18 Having the *understanding mind* darkened,
being alienated from the life of *God Elohim*
through the *ignorance unknowingness*
that is in them,
because of through the blindness petrification of their heart:
19 Who being *past feeling apathetic*
have *given surrendered* themselves over
unto *lasciviousness lechery*,
to work unto working all *uncleanness impurity*
with greediness in avarice.

THE HOLY LIFE

20 But ye have not so **thus** learned *Christ the Messiah*;
21 If *so be that indeed* ye have heard him,
and have been *taught by doctrinated* in him,
exactly as the truth is in *Jesus Yah Shua*:
22 That ye put off
concerning the *former conversation previous behaviour*
the old *man humanity*,
which is corrupt
according to the *deceitful lusts pantings of delusion*;
23 And be renewed in the spirit of your mind;
24 And that ye *put on endue* the new *man humanity*,
which after *God Elohim*
is created in *righteousness justness*
and true *holiness mercy*.
25 *Wherefore So* putting away lying,
let each speak *every man* truth with his neighbour:
for we are members one of another.

ADMONITIONS TO THE HOLY

26 Be ye *angry wroth*, and sin not:
let not the sun go down upon your *wrath rage*:
27 Neither give place to the *devil Diabolos*.
28 Let him that stole steal no more:
but rather let him labour,
working with his hands *the thing that* which is good,
that he may have
to *give impart* to him that *needeth hath need*.
29 Let no *corrupt communication putrefied word*
proceed out of your mouth,
but *that which is if there be any* good
to the *use of edifying of that which is needed*,
that it may *minister grace give charisma* unto the hearers.
30 And *grieve sorrow* not the holy Spirit of *God Elohim*,
whereby in whom ye are sealed
unto the day of redemption.
31 Let all bitterness, and *wrath fury*, and anger,
and *clamour crying out*, and *evil speaking blasphemy*,
be *put taken* away from you, with all malice:
32 And be ye kind one to another,
tenderhearted tenderspleened,

EPHESIANS 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

13 until we all attain to the unity of the trust
and the knowledge of the Son of Elohim
to a man of shalom;
to the measure of the maturity
of the fulness/shalom of the Messiah:
14 that we no longer be babies
surging and carried about with every wind of doctrine
in the dice of men and in cunning
with their methods of seduction;
15 but being true in love, grow up in him in all,
who is the head, the Messiah:
16 from whom the whole body
co—joined and coalesced
through what every joint contributes,
according to the energizing
in the measure of each single part,
makes growth of the body to edify itself in love.

THE UNHOLY LIFE

17 So I word this, and witness in Adonay,
to no longer walk exactly as the rest of the goyim
in the vanity of their mind;
18 darkened in mind
— alienated from the life of Elohim
through the unknowingness in them
through the petrification of their heart:
19 who being apathetic
surrender themselves to lechery;
working all impurity in avarice.

THE HOLY LIFE

20 And you learned not the Messiah thus;
21 if indeed you hear him
and being doctrinated in him
exactly as the truth is in Yah Shua:
22 that concerning your previous behavior
you put off the old humanity,
which according to the pantings of delusion
is corrupt;
23 and renew the spirit of your mind;
24 and endure the new humanity as to Elohim
— created in justness and true mercy.
25 So put away lying
— each speaking truth with your neighbour:
for we are members of one another.

ADMONITIONS TO THE HOLY

26 Be wroth and sin not:
neither have the sun go down upon your rage:
27 nor give place to Diabolos.
28 Whoever stole, steal no more:
but rather labor,
working good with the hands,
so as to impart to him who needs.
29 Have no putrefied word proceed from your mouth;
but if there be any good to the edifying of what is needed
that it give charism to the hearers.
30 And sorrow not the holy Spirit of Elohim,
in whom you are sealed to the day of redemption.
31 Take from you all bitterness and fury and anger
and crying out and blasphemy with all malice:
32 and be kind one to another,
tenderspleened,

EPHESIANS 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

*forgiving one another granting charism to yourselves,
even exactly as God for Christ's sake Elohim in Messiah
hath forgiven granted charism to you.*

WALKING HOLY

5 So Be ye therefore followers mimickers of God Elohim,
as dear beloved children;
2 And walk in love,
exactly as Christ Messiah also hath loved us,
and hath given surrendered himself for us
an offering and a sacrifice to God Elohim
for unto a
3 sweetsmelling savour well—fragranced fragrance.
But fornication whoredom,
and all uncleanness impurity, or covetousness avarice,
let it not no way be once named among you,
4 exactly as becometh saints befitteth the holy;
Neither filthiness shamefulness,
nor foolish talking morology, nor jesting repartee,
which are not convenient proper:
5 but rather giving of thanks eucharistize.
For this ye know,
that no whoremonger, nor unclean impure person,
nor covetous man avaricious, who is an idolater,
hath any inheritance in the kingdom sovereignty
6 of Christ the Messiah and of God Elohim.
Let no man deceive one delude you with vain words:
for because of through these things
cometh the wrath of God Elohim
upon the children sons of disobedience distrust.
7 So Be not ye therefore
partakers with them co—partakers.
8 For ye were sometimes formerly darkness,
but now are ye light in the Lord Adonay:
walk as children of light:
9 (For the fruit of the Spirit is in all goodness
and righteousness justness and truth;)
10 Proving what is acceptable well—pleasing
unto the Lord Adonay.
11 And have no fellowship co—partake not
with the unfruitful works of darkness,
but rather reprove them.
12 For it is a shame even to speak word of those things
which are done of become by them in secret.
13 But all things that are reprovéd
are made manifest by the light:
for whatsoever doth make manifest is light.
14 Wherefore So he saith wordeth,
Awake Arise thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead,
and Christ the Messiah shall give illuminate thee light.
Yesha Yah 60:1,2
15 See then that how precisely ye walk circumspectly,
not as fools unwise, but as wise,
16 Redeeming Marketing the time season,
because the days are evil.
17 Wherefore So be ye not unwise thoughtless,
but understanding comprehending
what the will of the Lord Adonay is.
18 And be not drunk intoxicated with wine,
wherein is excess dissipation;
but be filled with the shalamed in Spirit;
19 Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns
and spiritual songs odes,
singing and making melody psalming in your heart
to the Lord Adonay;
20 Giving thanks Eucharistizing always for all things
unto God Elohim and the Father in the name
of our Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah;
21 Submitting Subjugate yourselves one to another
in the fear awe of God Elohim.
SUBJUGATING
22 Wives Women,
submit subjugate yourselves unto your own husbands men,
as unto the Lord Adonay.
23 For the husband man is the head of the wife woman,
even exactly as Christ the Messiah
is the head of the church ecclesia:
and he is the saviour of the body.

EPHESIANS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

*granting charism to yourselves,
even exactly as Elohim in Messiah
grants you charism.*

WALKING HOLY

5 So as beloved children,
be mimickers of Elohim;
2 and walk in love,
exactly as Messiah also loved us
and surrendered himself for us
— an offering and a sacrifice to Elohim
to a well—fragranced fragrance.
3 And whoredom and all impurity or avarice
— never no way name it among you
exactly as befits the holy;
4 neither shamefulness
nor morology
nor repartee
which are not proper:
but rather eucharistize.
5 For you know this,
that every whoremonger or impure person
or avaricious who is an idolater,
has no inheritance
6 in the sovereignty of the Messiah and of Elohim.
Be not deluded with vain words:
for through these
the wrath of Elohim comes upon the sons of distrust.
7 So be not co—partakers.
8 For formerly you were darkness
and now light in Adonay:
walk as children of light:
9 for the fruit of the Spirit is in all goodness
and justness and truth;
10 proving what is well—pleasing to Adonay.
11 And co—partake not
with the unfruitful works of darkness
— but rather reprove them.
12 For it is a shame even to word of those
which become by them in secret.
13 And all who are reprovéd
are manifested by the light:
for whatever manifests is light.
14 So he words,
Rise you who sleep, and rise from the dead;
and the Messiah illuminates you.
Yesha Yah 60:1,2
15 So see that you walk precisely
— not as unwise, but as wise,
16 marketing the season because the days are evil.
17 So be not thoughtless,
but comprehend the will of Adonay.
18 And be not intoxicated with wine
wherein is dissipation;
but be filled full/shalamed in Spirit;
19 speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns
and spiritual odes,
singing and psalming in your heart to Adonay;
20 eucharistizing always for all to Elohim and Father
in the name of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah;
21 subjugating yourselves to one another
in the awe of Elohim.
SUBJUGATING
22 Women,
subjugate yourselves to your own men as to Adonay.
23 For the man is the head of the woman,
exactly as the Messiah is the head of the ecclesia;
and he is the saviour of the body:

EPHESIANS 5, 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

24 Therefore **Rather**,
exactly as the church ecclesia
is subject **subjugated** unto *Christ the Messiah*,
so let the wives be **even thus the women**
to their own *husbands men* in every thing all.

25 *Husbands Men*,
love your wives **women**,
even **exactly** as *Christ the Messiah*
also loved the church ecclesia,
and gave **surrendered** himself for it;

26 That he might *sanctify hallow* and *cleanse purify* it
with the washing **bathing** of water by in the word **rhema**,

27 That he might present it to himself
a glorious church **ecclesia**,
not having *spot stain*, or wrinkle, or any such thing;
but that it should be holy
and *without blemish unblemished*.

28 So *ought Thus men are indebted*
to love their wives **women** as their own bodies.
He that loveth his wife **woman** loveth himself.
For no *man one* ever yet hated his own flesh;
but *nourisheth nurtureth* and cherisheth it,
even **exactly** as the *Lord Adonay* the church **ecclesia**:

30 For we are members of his body,
of his flesh, and of his bones.

31 For this cause
shall a *man human* leave his father and mother,
and shall be *joined adhere* unto his wife **woman**,
and they two shall be **into** one flesh.

32 This is a great **mega** mystery:
but I speak **word**
concerning *Christ as to Messiah* and the church **ecclesia**.

33 Nevertheless **Moreover**,
let every one **each** of you in particular so **one by one**
thus love his wife **woman** even as himself;
and the wife **woman** see
that she reverence **awe** her husband **man**.

6 Children,
obey your parents in the *Lord Adonay*:
for this is *right just*.

2 Honour thy father and mother;
which is the first *commandment misvah*
with *promise in pre—evangelism*;

3 That it may be well with thee,
and thou *mayest live long shall be long lived*
on the earth.

Exodus 20:12

4 And, ye fathers,
provoke enrage not your children to *wrath*:
but *bring nurture* them up in the *nurture discipline*
and admonition of the *Lord Adonay*.

5 Servants,
be obedient to obey them that are your *masters adonim*
according to the flesh,
with *fear awe* and trembling,
in *singleness liberality* of your heart,
as unto *Christ the Messiah*;

6 Not with eyeservice, as *menpleasers humanitypleasers*;
but as the servants of *Christ the Messiah*,
doing the will of *God Elohim* from the *heart soul*;

7 With good will *doing service in servitude*,
as to the *Lord Adonay*, and not to *men humanity*:

8 Knowing that whatsoever good *thing*
any man each doeth,
the same shall he receive of the *Lord Adonay*,
whether *he be bond servant, or free whether liberated*.

9 And, ye *masters adonim*,
do the same *things* unto them,
forbearing leaving off threatening:
knowing that your *Master Adonay*
also is in *heaven the heavens*;

10 neither is there *respect of persons partiality* with him.
Finally, my brethren,
be *strong dynamized* in the *Lord Adonay*,
and in the power of his might.

THE PANOPLY OF ELOHIM

11 Put on **Endue** the whole *armour panoply* of *God Elohim*,
that ye may be able to stand
against the *wiles methods* of the *devil Diabolos*.

EPHESIANS 5, 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

24 Rather,
exactly as the ecclesia subjugates to the Messiah,
even thus the women to their own men in all.

25 Men,
love your women,
even exactly as the Messiah also loved the ecclesia
and surrendered himself for it;

26 to hallow and purify it
with the bathing of water in the rhema,
to present to himself a glorious ecclesia
— not having stain or wrinkle or any such;
but that it be holy and unblemished.

27 Thus the men are indebted
to love their women as their own bodies.
Whoever loves his woman loves himself.
For no one ever yet hates his own flesh;
but nurtures and cherishes it,
even exactly as Adonay the ecclesia:
for we are members of his body
— of his flesh and of his bones.

28 For this cause
a human leaves his father and mother
and adheres to his woman;
and the two become into one flesh.

29 This is a mega mystery:
but I word as to Messiah and the ecclesia.
Moreover — each of you — one by one
thus love his woman even as himself;
and the woman see that she awes her man.

6

Children,
obey your parents in Adonay:
for this is just.
2 Honour your father and mother;
which is the first misvah in pre—evangelism;
3 that it be well with you
and you be long lived on the earth.

Exodus 20:12

4 And you, fathers,
enrage not your children:
but nurture them
in the discipline and admonition of Adonay.

5 Servants,
obey your adonim according to the flesh
with awe and trembling;
in liberality of your heart as to the Messiah:
not with eyeservice, as humanitypleasers;
6 but as the servants of the Messiah
doing the will of Elohim from the soul;
7 with good will in servitude,
as to Adonay, and not as to humanity:
8 knowing that whatever good each does,
he receives the same of Adonay
— whether servant, whether liberated.

9 And you, adoniym,
do the same to them, leaving off threatening:
knowing also that your Adonay
is in the heavens;
and there is no partiality with him.

10 Finally, my brothers,
be dynamized in Adonay
and in the power of his might.

THE PANOPLY OF ELOHIM

11 Endue the whole panoply of Elohim,
to be able to stand against the methods of Diabolos.

EPHESIANS 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 For we **wrestle** **quiver** not against flesh and blood,
but against *principalities* **hierarchies**,
against *powers* **authorities**,
against the *rulers* **cosmic powers**
of the darkness of this *world* **eon**,
against spiritual *wickedness* **evil**
in *high places* **the heavenlies**.

13 *Wherefore* **So** take unto you
the whole *armour* **panoply** of *God* **Elohim**,
that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day,
and having *done* **worked** all, to stand.

14 Stand therefore,
having your loins girt about *with* **in** truth,
and having *on* **endued**
the breastplate of *righteousness* **justness**;
And your feet *shod* **with** **bound** in the preparation
of the *gospel* **evangelism** of *peace* **shalom**;
Above all, taking the shield of *faith* **the trust**,
wherewith **wherein** ye shall be able to quench
all the fiery *darts* **missiles** of the *wicked* **evil**.

17 And *take* **receive** the helmet of salvation,
and the sword of the Spirit,
which is the *word* **rhema** of *God* **Elohim**:
Praying *always* **with** **in all seasons**
through all prayer and *supplication* **petition** in the Spirit,
and watching thereunto *with* **in** all perseverance
and *supplication* **petition** for all *saints* **the holy**;
And for me,
that *utterance* **word** may be given unto me,
that I may **to open** my mouth *boldly* **in boldness**,
to make known the mystery of the *gospel* **evangelism**,

20 For which I am
an ambassador **a presbyter** in *bonds* **fetters**:
that therein I may *speak* **boldly** **be bold**,
as I ought **to** **and** **speaking** **as I must**.

21 *But* **And so** that ye also may know my affairs,
and how I *do* **transact**,
Tychicus, a beloved brother
and *faithful* **trustworthy** minister in the *Lord* **Adonay**,
shall make known to you all *things*:
Whom I have sent unto you
for **unto** the same purpose,
that ye might know **about** our affairs,
and that he might *comfort* **console** your hearts.

23 **BENEDICTION**
Peace **Shalom** be to the brethren,
and love with *faith* **trust**,
from *God* **Elohim** the Father
and the *Lord* **Jesus Christ** **Adonay Yah Shua** Messiah.

24 *Grace* **Charism** be with all them
that love our *Lord* **Jesus Christ** **Adonay Yah Shua** Messiah
in *sincerity* **incorruptibility**.
Amen.

EPHESIANS 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

12 For we quiver not against flesh and blood,
but against hierarchies,
against authorities,
against the cosmic powers of the darkness of this eon,
against spiritual evil in the heavenlies.

13 So take to yourselves
the whole panoply of Elohim,
to be able to withstand in the evil day
and having worked all, stand.

14 So stand;
gird your loins in truth
and endure the breastplate of justness:
and bind your feet in the preparation
of the evangelism of shalom:
above all, take the shield of the trust,
whereby you can quench
all the fiery missiles of the evil:
and receive the helmet of salvation
and the sword of the Spirit,
which is the rhema of Elohim:
praying in all seasons
through all prayer and petition in Spirit
and watching thereto in all perseverance
and petition for all the holy;
and in my behalf,
— that I be given a word
to open my mouth in boldness,
to make known the mystery of the evangelism,
for which I am a presbyter in fetters:
that therein I be bold and speak as I must:
and so that you know my affairs — you also
and how I transact,
Tychicus, a beloved brother
and trustworthy minister in Adonay,
so that you know all,
I send to you for this same purpose,
so that you know about our affairs
and to console your hearts.

23 **BENEDICTION**
Shalom to the brothers and love with trust
from Elohim the Father
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
Charism be with all those
who love our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
in incorruptibility.
Amen.

PHILIPPIANS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paul Paulos and Timotheus Timo Theos,
the servants of Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah,
to all the saints holy in Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua
which are at being in Philippi,
with the bishops episcopates and deacons ministers:
2 Grace Charism be unto you, and peace shalom,
from God Elohim our Father,
and from
the Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
THE EUCHARIST OF PAULOS FOR THE HOLY
3 I thank eucharistize my God Elohim
upon every remembrance of you,
4 Always in every prayer petition of mine for you
all making request petitioning with joy cheer,
5 For your fellowship communion
in the gospel evangelism
from the first day until now;
6 Being confident of this very thing,
that he which hath begun a good work in you
will perform complete/shalom it
until the day of Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah:
7 Even Exactly as it is meet just
for me to think this of you all,
because I have you in my heart;
inasmuch as being both in my bonds,
and in the
defence pleading and confirmation establishment
of the gospel evangelism,
ye all are partakers co—partakers of my grace charism.
8 For God Elohim is my record witness,
how greatly I long I yearn after you all
in the bowels spleen of Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah.
9 And this I pray,
that your love may abound superabound
yet more and more
in knowledge and in all judgment perception;
10 That ye may approve things those that are excellent;
that ye may be sincere and without offence inoffensive
till unto the day of Christ Messiah;
11 Being filled/shalamed
with the fruits of righteousness justness,
which are by Jesus Christ through Yah Shua Messiah,
unto the glory and praise halal of God Elohim.
LIFE IN MESSIAH
12 But I would ye should understand will that ye know,
brethren,
that the things which happened unto those concerning me
have fallen out rather come
unto the furtherance advancement of the gospel evangelism;
13 So that my bonds in Christ Messiah
are become manifest in all the palace praetorium,
and in to all other places the rest;
14 And many of the brethren in the Lord Adonay,
waxing confident convinced by my bonds,
are much more superabundantly bold
to speak the word without fear fearlessly.
15 Some indeed preach Christ the Messiah
even of through envy and strife contention;
and some also of good will through well—approval:
16 The one preach Christ indeed evangelizes Messiah
of contention from rivalry, not sincerely holily,
supposing to add affliction bring tribulation to my bonds:
17 But the other of love, knowing that I am set
for the defence unto the pleading
of the gospel evangelism.
18 What then indeed?
notwithstanding moreover, every way manner,
whether in pretence pretext, or whether in truth,
Christ Messiah is preached evangelized;
and I therein do rejoice rather cheer,
yea, and will rejoice shall cheer on.
19 For I know that this shall turn to my salvation
through your prayer petition,
and the supply contribution
of the Spirit of Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah,

PHILIPPIANS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos and Timo Theos
— the servants of Yah Shua Messiah:
To all the holy in Messiah Yah Shua in Philippi,
with the episcopates and ministers:
2 Charism to you and shalom
from Elohim our Father
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
THE EUCHARIST OF PAULOS FOR THE HOLY
3 I eucharistize my Elohim
on every remembrance of you,
4 always in my every petition for you all,
petitioning with cheer,
5 for your communion in the evangelism
from the first day until now;
6 confident of this
— that he who began a good work in you
completes/shalams it
until the day of Yah Shua Messiah:
7 exactly as it is just for me to think this of you all
because I have you in my heart;
being both in my bonds
and in the pleading and establishment
of the evangelism,
you all are co—partakers of my charism.
8 For Elohim is my witness
how I yearn after you all
in the spleen of Yah Shua Messiah.
9 And this I pray:
that your love superabound still more and more
in knowledge and in all perception;
10 to approve what is excellent;
11 to be sincere and inoffensive to the day of Messiah;
to be filled full/shalamed with the fruits of justness
through Yah Shua Messiah
to the glory and halal of Elohim.
LIFE IN MESSIAH
12 And I will you to know, brothers,
that those concerning me
come to the advancement of the evangelism;
13 to manifest my bonds in Messiah
in all the praetorium and to all the rest:
14 and many of the brothers in Adonay
convinced by my bonds
are superabundantly bold to speak the word fearlessly.
15 Indeed some even preach the Messiah
through envy and contention;
and some also through well—approval:
16 The one indeed evangelizes Messiah from rivalry,
not holily,
supposing to bring tribulation to my bonds:
and the other from love,
knowing that I am set
to the pleading of the evangelism.
17 How indeed?
18 moreover in every manner!
— whether in pretext — whether in truth
Messiah is evangelized;
and therein I rather cheer — and cheer on.
19 For I know that through your petition,
this turns to my salvation
and the contribution of the Spirit of Yah Shua Messiah,

PHILIPPIANS 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

20 According
to my *earnest expectation* **intense anticipation**
and my hope,
that in *nothing* **naught** I shall be ashamed,
but that *with in* all boldness, as always,
thus now also
Christ Messiah shall be magnified in my body,
whether *it be by* **through** life,
or by **whether through** death.

21 For to me to live is *Christ Messiah*,
and to die is gain.

22 But if I live in *the flesh*,
this is the fruit of my *labour work*:
yet what I shall choose I *wot* **know** not.

23 For I am in *a strait betwixt* **overtaken** by two,
having a *desire* **panting** to depart,
and to be with *Christ Messiah*;
which is *far* **rather much** better:

24 *Nevertheless* **And** to abide in the flesh
is *more needful* **necessary** for you.

25 And having this confidence,
I know that I shall abide and *continue* **remain** with you all
for **unto** your *furtherance* **advancement**
and *joy* **cheer** of *faith* **the trust**;

26 That your *rejoicing* **boasting**
may be *more abundant* **superabound**
in *Jesus Christ* for *Yah Shua Messiah* in me
by **through** my coming to you again.

27 Only let your *conversation* be **citizenize**
as it *becometh* **worthy**
of the *gospel* **evangelism** of *Christ the Messiah*:
that whether I come and see you,
or *else be* **whether** absent,
I may hear of **about** your affairs,
that ye stand *fast* **firm** in one spirit, with one *mind soul*,
striving together **co—striving**
for the *faith* **trust** of the *gospel* **evangelism**;

28 And in *nothing* **naught** terrified by your adversaries:
which **indeed** is to them
an *evident token* **indication** of *perdition* **destruction**,
but to you of salvation, and that of *God Elohim*.

29 For unto you *it is given* **is** *charism* **granted**
in the behalf of *Christ Messiah*,
not only to *believe* **trust** on him,
but also to suffer for his sake;

30 Having the same *conflict* **agony**
which **such as** ye saw in me, and now hear to be in me.

HUMBLING OF SELF

2 So If there be *therefore* any consolation in *Christ Messiah*,
if any *comfort* **consolation** of love,
if any *fellowship* **communion** of the Spirit,
if any *bowels* **spleens** and *mercies* **compassions**,
2 Fulfil/*Shalam* ye my *joy* **cheer**,
that ye be *likeminded* **of the same thought**,
having the same love,
being of one accord **co—souled**,
of one *mind* **thought**.

3 Let *nothing* **naught** be done
through *strife* **rivalry** or vainglory;
but in *lowliness of mind* **humblemindedness**
let each esteem other *better than* **superior** to themselves.

4 Look **Scope** not every man **each**
on **of** his own *things* **self**,
but every man **each** also on *the things* **those** of others.

THE SELF — HUMBLING OF MESSIAH

5 **Indeed** Let this *mind* **thought** be in you,
which was also in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*:
6 Who, being in the form of *God Elohim*,
thought **deemed** it not *robbery* **usurpation**
to be equal with *God Elohim*:
7 But *made* **voided** himself of *no reputation*,
and took *upon him* the form of a servant,
and was *made* **became** in the likeness of *men* **humanity**:
8 And being found in *fashion* **configuration**
as a *man* **human**,
he humbled himself,
and became obedient unto death,
even the death of the *cross* **stake**.

PHILIPPIANS 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

20 according to my intense anticipation and hope,
that I be ashamed in naught,
but that in all boldness, as always,
thus now also Messiah is magnified in my body,
— whether through life
— whether through death.

21 For to me, to live *is* Messiah;
and to die is gain.

22 And if to live in flesh, this is the fruit of my work:
still I know not what to choose.

23 For I am overtaken by two,
having a panting to depart and to be with Messiah;
which is rather much better:

24 and to abide in the flesh *is* necessary for you.

25 And confiding in this,
I know that I abide and remain with you all
to your advancement and cheer of the trust;

26 to superabound your boasting in Yah Shua Messiah
in me
through my coming to you again.

27 Only citizenize
worthily of the evangelism of the Messiah:
— whether I come and see you — whether absent
that I hear about your affairs,
that you stand firm in one spirit, with one soul,
co—striving for the trust of the evangelism;
and terrify in naught of your adversaries:
28 which indeed is to them an indication of destruction,
but to you of salvation and of Elohim.

29 For charism is granted you in behalf of Messiah,
not only to trust on him, but also to suffer for his sake;

30 having the same agony
such as you saw in me and now hear of in me.

HUMBLING OF SELF

2 So if there is any consolation in Messiah,
if any consolation of love,
if any communion of the Spirit,
if any spleens and compassions,
2 fulfil/shalam my cheer
— of the same thought,
having the same love,
co—souled, of one thought,
3 naught through rivalry or vainglory;
but in humblemindedness
esteem each other superior to self:
4 each not scoping for ones own self,
but each also on those of others.

THE SELF — HUMBLING OF MESSIAH

5 Indeed have this thought in you,
which is also in Messiah Yah Shua:
6 who, being in the form of Elohim,
deemed it not usurpation to be equal with Elohim:
7 but voided himself
and took the form of a servant
and became in the likeness of humanity:
8 and being found in configuration as a human,
he humbled himself
and became obedient to death
— even the death of the stake.

PHILIPPIANS 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE EXALTATION OF MESSIAH

9 Wherefore **So**,
God **Elohim** also hath *highly* **supremely** exalted him,
and given **granted** him **charism**
— a name *which is* above every name:
10 That at **in** the name of *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
every knee should bow,
of *things in heaven* **the heavenlies**,
and *things in earth* **earthly**,
and *things under the earth* **subterranean**;
11 And that every tongue should *confess* **avow**
that *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah** is *Lord* **Adonay**,
to the glory of God **Elohim** the Father.
Yesha Yah 45:22,23

WORKING OUT SALVATION

12 Wherefore **So then**, my beloved,
exactly as ye have always obeyed,
not as in my presence only,
but now much more in my *absence* **being away**,
work out your own salvation with *fear* **awe** and trembling.
Ephesians 2:8—10
13 For it is God **Elohim** which *worketh* **energizeth** in you
both to will and to do **energize**
of his *good pleasure* **well—approval**.
14 Do all *things without* **apart from** murmurings
and *disputings* **reasonings**:
15 That ye may be blameless
and *harmless* **unadulterated**,
the *sons* **children** of God **Elohim**,
without *rebuke* **unblemished**,
in the midst
of a crooked and *perverse nation* **perverted generation**,
among whom ye *shine* **manifest** as lights in the *world* **cosmos**;
16 Holding forth the word of life;
that I may *rejoice* **unto my boasting**
in **unto** the day of *Christ* **Messiah**,
that I have not run in vain, neither laboured in vain.
17 Yea **Rather**, and if I be *offered* **libated**
upon the sacrifice and service of your *faith* **trust**,
I *joy* **cheer**, and *rejoice* **co—rejoice** with you all.
18 For the same cause also do ye *joy* **cheer**,
and *rejoice with me* **co—rejoice**.
PAULOS SENDS TIMO THEOS AND EPAPHRODITUS
19 But I *trust* **hope** in the *Lord* **Jesus Adonay Yah Shua**
to send *Timotheus* **shortly** **Timo Theos** **quickly** unto you,
that I also may be of *good comfort* **well—souled**,
when I know **about** your state.
20 For I have no *man likeminded* **one like—souled**,
who *will naturally care* **is genuinely concerned**
for **about** your state.
21 For all seek their own,
not *the things* **those**
which are *Jesus Christ's* **Yah Shua Messiah's**.
22 But ye know the proof of him,
that, as a *son* **child** with the father,
he hath served with me in the *gospel* **evangelism**.
23 So Him **indeed** *therefore*
I hope to send *presently* **immediately**,
so soon as **ever** I shall see
about how it *will* **shall** go with me.
24 But I *trust* **confide** in the *Lord* **Adonay**
that I also myself shall come shortly.
25 Yet I *supposed* **deemed** it necessary
to send to you Epaphroditus,
my brother, and *companion in labour* **co—worker**,
and *fellowsoldier* **co—warrior**,
but your *messenger* **apostle**,
and he that ministered to my *wants* **need**.
26 For **Since** he *longed* **yearned** after you all,
and was *full of heaviness* **distressed**,
because that ye had heard that he had been *sick* **frail**.
27 For indeed he was *sick nigh unto* **frail close by** death:
but *God had mercy on* **Elohim mercied** him;
and not on him only, but on me also,
lest I should have sorrow upon sorrow.
28 So I sent him *therefore* **the more carefully** **diligently**,
so that, when ye see him again, ye may *rejoice* **cheer**,
and that I **also** may be *the less sorrowful* **ungrieving**.

PHILIPPIANS 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE EXALTATION OF MESSIAH

9 So Elohim also supremely exalted him
and granted him charism
— a name above every name:
10 that in the name of Yah Shua every knee bows
— of the heavenlies
and earthly
and subterranean;
11 and that every tongue avow
that Yah Shua Messiah is Adonay,
to the glory of Elohim the Father.
Yesha Yah 45:22,23

WORKING OUT SALVATION

12 So my beloved, exactly as you always obeyed,
not as in my presence only,
but now much more in my being away,
work out your own salvation with awe and trembling.
Ephesians 2:8—10
13 For it is Elohim who energizes in you
both to will and to energize his well—approval.
14 Do all apart from murmurings and reasonings:
15 that you be blameless and unadulterated
— the children of Elohim — unblemished
midst a crooked and perverted generation;
in whom you manifest as lights in the cosmos:
16 holding forth the word of life,
to boasting to the day of Messiah,
that I neither ran in vain nor labored in vain.
17 Rather, if I am libated
on the sacrifice and service of your trust,
I cheer and co—rejoice:
18 and for the same cause
you also cheer and co—rejoice with me.

PAULOS SENDS TIMO THEOS AND EPAPHRODITUS

19 And I hope in Adonay Yah Shua
to quickly send Timo Theos to you,
that I also be well—souled
when I know about your state:
20 for I have no one like—souled,
who is genuinely concerned about your state.
21 For all seek their own
— not those of Yah Shua Messiah.
22 But you know the proof of him,
who, as a child with the father,
he served with me in the evangelism.
23 So indeed, I hope to send him immediately,
as soon as ever I see how it goes with me.
24 And I confide in Adonay
that I myself also come shortly.
25 Yet I deemed it necessary
to send you Epaphroditus,
my brother and co—worker and co—warrior
— and your apostle and minister to my need.
26 Since he yearned after you all
and was distressed,
because you heard he had been frail.
27 For indeed he was frail — close by death:
but Elohim mercied him;
and not only him, but also me,
lest I have sorrow upon sorrow.
28 So I send him diligently,
so that when you see him again, you cheer
and that I also be ungrieving.

PHILIPPIANS 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

29 So Receive him *therefore* in the Lord Adonay
with all gladness **cheer**;
and hold such *in reputation* **honourable**:
30 Because for the work of Christ Messiah
he was *nigh* **approached** unto death,
not regarding **hazarding** his life soul,
to supply **fill full/shalam** your lack of service **liturgy**
toward me.

WARNINGS

3 Finally, my brethren, *rejoice* **cheer** in the Lord Adonay.
To write **scribe** the same *things* to you,
to me indeed is not *grievous* **slothful**,
but for you it is *safe* **certain**.
2 Beware of **See to the dogs**,
beware of **see to the** evil workers,
beware of the concision **see to the incisors**.
3 For we are the circumcision,
which *worship God* **liturgize Elohim** in the spirit,
and *rejoice* **boast** in Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua,
and have no confidence in the flesh.
4 Though I might also have confidence in the flesh.
If any other man thinketh that he hath whereof
he might *trust* **confide** in the flesh, I more:
5 Circumcised the eighth day,
of the *stock* **genos of Israel Yisra El**,
of the *tribe* **scion of Benjamin Ben Yamin**,
an Hebrew of the Hebrews;
as touching the *law* **torah**, a Pharisee;
6 Concerning zeal, persecuting the *church* **ecclesia**;
touching the *righteousness* **justness**
which is in the law **in torah, become** blameless.
7 But *what things those that* were gain to me,
those I *counted* **deemed** loss for Christ the Messiah.
8 Yea *doubtless* **Rather yet then**,
and I *count* **deem** all *things* but loss
for the *excellency* **superiority** of the knowledge
of Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua my Lord Adonay:
for whom I have *suffered the loss of* **lost** all *things*,
and *do count* **deem** them
but dung **to be hound dog droppings**,
that I may *win* Christ **gain** Messiah,
9 And be found in him,
not having mine own *righteousness* **justness**,
which is of the *law* **torah**,
but that which is through *the faith* **trust**
of Christ Messiah,
the *righteousness* **justness** which is of God from Elohim
by *faith* **the trust**:
10 That I may know him,
and the *power* **dynamis** of his resurrection,
and the *fellowship* **communion** of his sufferings,
being *made conformable* **conformed** unto his death;
11 If *by any means* **somehow**
I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.
12 Not *as though* **that** I had already *attained* **taken**,
either **or** were already *perfect* **completed/shalamed**:
but I *follow* **pursue** *after*,
if that I may apprehend
that for which also I am apprehended
of Christ Jesus **the Messiah Yah Shua**.
13 Brethren, I *count* **reckon** not myself to have apprehended:
but this one *thing* I *do*,
forgetting those *things* **indeed** which are behind,
and reaching *forth*
unto those *things* which are *before* **ahead**,
14 I *press* **pursue** toward the *mark* **scope**
for **unto** the *prize* **umpirage** of the *high* **upper** calling
of God **Elohim** in Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua.
15 Let us therefore, as many as be *perfect* **complete**,
be **think** thus *minded*:
and if in *any thing* **ought** ye be **think** otherwise *minded*,
God **Elohim** shall *reveal* **unveil** even this unto you.
16 *Nevertheless* **Moreover**,
whereto we have *already* attained,
let us *walk* **march** by the same *rule* **canon**,
let us *mind* **think** the same *thing*.
17 Brethren, be *followers together* **co—mimickers** of me,
and *mark* **scope out** them which walk *so* **thus**
exactly as ye have us for *an ensample* **a type**.

PHILIPPIANS 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

29 So receive him in Adonay with all cheer;
and hold such honorable:
30 for, because of the work of Messiah
he approached death, hazarding his soul,
to fill full/shalam your lack of liturgy toward me.

WARNINGS

3 Finally my brothers, cheer in Adonay.
To scribe the same to you,
to me indeed is not slothful, but for you it is certain.
2 See to the dogs;
see to the evil workers;
see to the incisors:
3 for we are the circumcision,
who liturgize Elohim in spirit
and boast in Messiah Yah Shua
and have no confidence in flesh.
4 Though I also have confidence in flesh.
If any other thinks he has whereof to confide in flesh,
I more:
5 circumcised the eighth day;
of the genos of Yisra El;
of the scion of Ben Yamin;
a Hebrew of the Hebrews:
as touching the torah, a Pharisee;
6 concerning zeal, persecuting the ecclesia;
touching the justness in torah, become blameless.
7 But what was gain to me,
I deemed loss for the Messiah.
8 Yes indeed, I still deem all loss
for the superiority of the knowledge
of Messiah Yah Shua my Adonay:
for whom I lost all
and deemed to be hound dog droppings
to gain Messiah
and to be found in him
— not having my own justness, of the torah,
but through trust of Messiah,
the justness of Elohim on the trust:
to know him
10 and the dynamis of his resurrection
and the communion of his sufferings
— being conformed to his death;
11 if somehow I attain to the resurrection of the dead.
12 Not that I had already taken,
or were already completed/shalamed:
but I pursue,
that if also I am apprehend
that for which also I am apprehended
of the Messiah Yah Shua.
13 Brothers, I reckon not myself to have apprehended:
but this one:
indeed forgetting those behind
and reaching to those ahead
I pursue toward the scope
to the umpirage of the upper calling
of Elohim in Messiah Yah Shua.
15 So, as many as are complete/at shalom, think thus:
and if in aught you think otherwise,
Elohim even unveils this to you.
16 Moreover, whereto we attain,
march by the same canon,
think the same.
17 Brothers, become co—mimickers of me
and scope them who thus walk
exactly as you have us for a type.

PHILIPPIANS 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 (For many walk,
of whom I have *told worded* to you often,
and now *tell word* to you even weeping,
that they are the enemies
of the *cross stake* of *Christ the Messiah*:
19 Whose *end completion/shalom* is destruction,
whose *God elohim* is their belly,
and whose glory is in their shame,
who *mind think* earthly *things*.)
THE CITIZENSHIP OF THE HEAVENS
20 For our *conversation citizenship*
is exists in *heaven the heavens*;
from whence also we *look for await* the Saviour,
the *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*:
21 Who shall *change transfigure*
our *vile body of humiliation*,
that it may be *fashioned become conformed*
like unto his glorious to the body of his glory,
according to the *working energizing* whereby he is able
even to *subdue subjugate* all *things* unto himself.

CHEER IN ADONAY ALWAYS

4 Therefore **So then**,
my brethren *dearly beloved* and *longed yearned* for,
my *joy cheer* and *crown wreath*,
so **thus** stand *fast firm* in the *Lord Adonay*,
my dearly beloved.
2 I beseech Euodias, and beseech Syntyche,
that they be of the same *mind thought*
in the *Lord Adonay*.
3 And I *intreat ask* thee also,
true yokefellow genuine colleague,
help uphold those women
which *laboured with me co—strived*
in the *gospel evangelism*,
with Clement also,
and with *others the rest*
of my *fellowlabourers co—workers*,
whose names are in the *book scroll* of life.
4 Rejoice **Cheer** in the *Lord Adonay* always:
and again I say, Rejoice **Cheer**.
5 Let your *moderation gentleness*
be known unto all *men humanity*.
The *Lord Adonay* is at *hand nigh*.
6 Be *careful anxious* for *nothing naught*;
but in *every thing all* by prayer and *supplication petition*
with *thanksgiving eucharist*
let your requests be *made known* unto *God Elohim*.
7 And the *peace shalom* of *God Elohim*,
which *passeth all understanding surpasses the mind*,
shall *keep garrison*
your hearts and *minds comprehensions*
through *Christ Jesus in Messiah Yah Shua*.
8 Finally, brethren,
whatsoever things as many as are true,
whatsoever things as many as are *honest venerate*,
whatsoever things as many as are just,
whatsoever things as many as are *pure hallowed*,
whatsoever things as many as are *lovely friendly*,
whatsoever things as many as are of *good report euphonious*;
if *there be* any virtue, and if *there be* any *praise halal*,
think on reckon these *things*.
9 Those *things*, which ye have both learned,
and *received taken*, and heard, and seen in me,
do transact:
and the *God Elohim* of *peace shalom* shall be with you.

PAULOS CHEERS IN ADONAY

10 But I *rejoiced cheered* in the *Lord Adonay*
greatly magnificently,
that now at the *last again* your *care thought* of me
hath *flourished again reflourished*;
wherein ye were also *careful thoughtful*,
but ye *lacked opportunity inopportune*.
11 Not that I *speak word* in respect of *want lack*:
for I have learned, in *whatsoever state* I am,
therewith to be *content selfcontent*.
12 I know both how to be *abased humble*,
and I know how to *abound superabound*:

PHILIPPIANS 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 For many walk,
of whom I often worded to you
and now word to you — even weeping,
the enemies of the stake of the Messiah:
19 whose completion/shalom is destruction,
whose elohim is their belly,
whose glory is in their shame,
who think earthly.

THE CITIZENSHIP OF THE HEAVENS

20 For our citizenship exists in the heavens;
from whence also we await the Saviour
Adonay Yah Shua Messiah:
21 who transfigures our body of humiliation,
to become conformed to the body of his glory,
according to the energizing
whereby he is able even to subjugate all to himself.

CHEER IN ADONAY ALWAYS

4 So my brothers, beloved and yearned for,
my cheer and wreath,
thus stand firm in Adonay, beloved.
2 I beseech Euodias and beseech Syntyche
to be of the same thought in Adonay.
3 And I also ask you, genuine colleague,
uphold those women
who co—strive in the evangelism;
also with Clement
and the rest of my co—workers
whose names are in the scroll of life.
4 Cheer in Adonay always — again I say, Cheer.
5 Have all humanity know your gentleness.
Adonay is near.
6 Be anxious for naught;
but in all by prayer and petition with eucharist
have Elohim know your requests.
7 And the shalom of Elohim that surpasses the mind
garrisons your hearts and comprehensions
in Messiah Yah Shua.
8 Finally, brothers,
as many as are true,
as many as are venerate,
as many as are just,
as many as are hallowed,
as many as are friendly,
as many as are euphonious;
if any virtue and if any halal, reckon these.
9 transact both those that you
learned and took and heard and saw in me:
and the Elohim of shalom be with you.
PAULOS CHEERS IN ADONAY
10 And I cheer in Adonay magnificently,
that now again you reflourish your thought of me;
wherein you also were thoughtful, but inopportune.
11 Not that I word in respect of lack:
for I learned, in whatever state I am,
to be selfcontent.
12 I know both how to humble
and I know how to superabound:

PHILIPPIANS 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

every where and in all things and in all
I am instructed **initiated**
both to be *full filled* and to be hungry,
both to *abound superabound* and to *suffer need lack*.
13 I can do all things **am mighty enough**
through **Christ in Messiah**
which *strengtheneth dynamizeth* me.
14 *Notwithstanding Moreover* ye have well done,
that ye *did communicate co—partook*
with **of my affliction tribulation**.
15 Now ye Philippians know also,
that in the beginning of the *gospel evangelism*,
when I departed from Macedonia,
no church communicated with **ecclesia imparted to me**
as concerning **in the word**
of giving and receiving taking,
but **except** ye only.
16 For even in *Thessalonica Thessalonikee*
ye sent once and *again twice* unto my *necessity need*.
17 Not because I *desire seek* a gift:
but I *desire seek* fruit that may *abound superabound*
to your *account word*.
18 But I have all, and *abound superabound*:
I am *full fulfilled/shalamed*,
having received of Epaphroditus
the things which were sent those from you,
an odour of a sweet smell a wellfragraned fragrance,
a sacrifice acceptable, well—pleasing to **God Elohim**.
19 But my **God Elohim** shall *supply fill full* all your need
according to his riches in glory
by **Christ Jesus in Messiah Yah Shua**.
SALUTES AND BENEDICTIONS
20 Now unto **God Elohim** and our Father be glory
for ever and ever unto the eons of the eons.
Amen.
21 Salute every *saint all the holy*
in **Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua**.
The brethren which are with me *greet salute* you.
22 All the *saints holy* salute you,
chiefly especially
they that are of *Caesar's the Kaisar's* household.
23 The *grace charism*
of our **Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
be with you all.
Amen.

PHILIPPIANS 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

in all and in all
I am initiated both to fill and to famish;
both to superabound and to lack.
13 I am mighty enough in Messiah
who dynamizes me.
14 Moreover you do well
in co—partaking of my tribulation.
15 And you also know — you Philippians,
that in the beginning of the evangelism
when I departed from Macedonia
no ecclesia imparted to me
in the word of giving and taking
— except you only.
16 For also in Thessalonikee
you sent once and twice to my need.
17 Not that I seek a gift:
but that I seek fruit, superabounding to your word.
18 And I have all and superabound:
I am fulfilled/shalamed
— having received those from you from Epaphroditus,
a well—fragraned fragrance,
a sacrifice acceptable, well—pleasing to Elohim.
19 And my Elohim fulfills/shalams all your need
according to his riches in glory
in Messiah Yah Shua.
SALUTES AND BENEDICTIONS
20 And to Elohim, even our Father
be glory to the eons of the eons.
Amen.
21 Salute all the holy in Messiah Yah Shua:
The brothers with me salute you:
22 All the holy salute you,
especially they of the house of the Kaisar.
23 The charism of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
be with you all.
Amen.

COLOSSIANS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paul Paulos,
an apostle of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*
by **through** the will of *God Elohim*,
and *Timotheus Timo Theos* our brother,
2 To the *saints holy and faithful trustworthy* brethren
in *Christ Messiah* which are at Colosse:
Grace be Charism unto you, and *peace shalom*,
from *God Elohim* our Father
and the *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*.
EUCCHARIST TO ELOHIM
3 We give thanks to *God eucharistize Elohim*
and the Father of our
Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
praying always for you,
4 Since we heard
of your *faith trust* in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*,
and of the love which ye have to all the *saints holy*,
5 For the hope which is laid up for you
in *heaven the heavens*,
whereof ye heard *before previously*
in the word of the truth of the *gospel evangelism*;
6 Which is *come present* unto you,
exactly as it is in all the *world cosmos*;
and *bringeth forth beareth* fruit,
exactly as it *doth* also in you,
since from the day ye heard of it,
and knew the *grace charism* of *God Elohim* in truth:
7 **Exactly** As ye also learned of Epaphras
our *dear fellowservant beloved co—servant*,
who is for you
a *faithful trustworthy* minister of *Christ the Messiah*;
8 Who also *declared evidenced* unto us
your love in *the Spirit*.
PRAYER FOR KNOWLEDGE OF THE WILL OF THE MESSIAH
9 For this cause we also, *since from* the day we heard it,
do pause not cease to pray for you,
and to *desire ask* that ye might be filled/*shalamed*
with the knowledge of his will in all wisdom
and spiritual *understanding comprehension*;
10 That ye might walk worthy of *the Lord Adonay*
unto all pleasing,
being fruitful fruitbearing in every good work,
and *increasing growing* in the knowledge of *God Elohim*;
11 *Strengthened with Dynamized* in all *might power*,
according to *his glorious the power of his glory*,
unto all *patience endurance* and *longsuffering patience*
with *joyfulness cheer*;
12 *Giving thanks Eucharistizing* unto the Father,
which hath *made enabled* us *meet to be partakers impart*
of the inheritance of the *saints holy* in light:
13 Who hath *delivered rescued* us
from the *power authority* of darkness,
and hath *translated removed* us
into the *kingdom sovereignty*
of *his dear the Son of his love*:
YAH SHUA, REDEEMER
14 In whom we have redemption through his blood,
even the forgiveness of sins:
YAH SHUA, ICON OF ELOHIM
15 Who is the *image icon* of the invisible *God Elohim*,
the firstborn of *every creature all creation*:
YAH SHUA, CREATOR
16 For *by in* him were all *things* created,
that are in *heaven the heavens*,
and that are *in upon* the earth,
visible and invisible,
whether *they be* thrones,
or dominions whether lordships,
or principalities whether hierarchies,
or powers whether authorities:
all *things* were created *by through* him,
and *for unto* him:
17 And he is before all *things*,
and *by in* him all *things* consist.
18 And he is the head of the body, the *church ecclesia*:
who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead;
that in all *things he might have he is* the preeminence.

COLOSSIANS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos, an apostle of Yah Shua Messiah
through the will of Elohim,
and Timo Theos our brother:
2 To the holy and trustworthy brothers in Messiah
at Colosse:

Charism to you and shalom,
from Elohim our Father
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
EUCCHARIST TO ELOHIM
3 We eucharistize Elohim and Father
of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
— always praying for you
4 since we heard of your trust in Messiah Yah Shua
and of your love to all the holy;
5 for the hope laid up for you in the heavens
whereof you previously heard
in the word of the truth of the evangelism;
6 which is present to you exactly as in all the cosmos;
and bears fruit exactly as also in you,
from the day you heard
and knew the charism of Elohim in truth:
7 exactly as you also learned from Epaphras
our beloved co—servant
who is a trustworthy minister of the Messiah for you;
8 who also evidenced your love in Spirit to us.
PRAYER FOR KNOWLEDGE OF THE WILL OF THE MESSIAH
9 For this cause, we also, from the day we heard,
pause not to pray for you
— and to ask that you be filled/*shalamed*
with the knowledge of his will in all wisdom
and spiritual comprehension,
10 that you walk worthy of Adonay,
pleasing to all,
fruitbearing in every good work,
and growing in the knowledge of Elohim;
11 dynamized in all power
according to the power of his glory
to all endurance and patience with cheer;
12 eucharistizing to the Father
who enables us
to impart of the inheritance of the holy in light;
13 who rescued us from the authority of darkness;
and removed us
into the sovereignty of the Son of his love:
YAH SHUA, REDEEMER
14 in whom we have redemption through his blood
— the forgiveness of sins:
YAH SHUA, ICON OF ELOHIM
15 who is the icon of the invisible Elohim,
the firstborn of all creation:
YAH SHUA, CREATOR
16 For in him all was created
— those in the heavens and those on the earth;
visible and invisible;
whether thrones
whether lordships
whether hierarchies
whether authorities
— all were created through him and to him:
17 and he preceded all, and in him all consists:
18 and he is the head of the body, the ecclesia
— the beginning — the firstborn from the dead;
so that in all he is the preeminence.

COLOSSIANS 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

19 For it pleased the Father that
For in him should all fulness **is well**—approved to dwell;
 Colossians 2:9
 20 And, having *made peace* **completed/shalamed**
 through the blood of his *cross stake*,
 by **through** him to **fully** reconcile all *things* unto himself;
 by **through** him, *I say*,
 whether *they be things* in upon the earth,
 or *things in heaven* **whether in the heavens**.
 21 And you,
 that were *sometime* **being formerly** alienated
 and enemies in *your mind* by **wicked in evil** works,
 yet now hath he **fully** reconciled
 22 In the body of his flesh through death,
 to present you holy and *unblameable* **unblemished**
 and *unreproveable* **unaccusable** in his sight:
 23 If **indeed** ye *continue* **abide** in the *faith* **trust**
grounded **founded** and *settled* **grounded**,
 and *be not moved away* **not transported**
 from the hope of the *gospel* **evangelism**,
 which ye have heard,
 and which was preached *to every creature* **in all creation**
 which is under heaven;
 whereof I *Paul* am made **Paulos** became a minister;
 24 Who now *rejoice* **cheer** in my sufferings for you,
 and *fill up* **supplement** that which is *behind* **lacketh**
 of the *afflictions* **tribulations** of *Christ* **the Messiah**
 in my flesh
 for his *body's sake* **body**, which is the *church* **ecclesia**:
 25 Whereof I am made **became** a minister,
 according
 to the *dispensation* **administration** of *God* **Elohim**
 which is given to me *for* **unto** you,
 to fulfil the word of *God* **Elohim**;
 26 Even the mystery which hath been *hid* **secreted**
 from *ages* **the eons** and from **the** generations,
 but now is *made* manifest to his *saints* **holy**:
 27 To whom *God would* **Elohim** willet to make known
 what is the riches of the glory of this mystery
 among the *Gentiles* **goyim**;
 which is *Christ* **Messiah** in you, the hope of glory:
 28 Whom we *preach* **evangelize**,
 warning every man **reminding all humanity**,
 and *teaching every man* **doctrinating all humanity**
 in all wisdom;
 that we may present every man **all humanity**
 perfect **completed/shalamed** in *Christ Jesus* **Messiah Yah Shua**:
 29 Whereunto I also labour,
 striving **agonizing** according to his *working* **energizing**,
 which *worketh* **energizeth dynamis** in me *mightily*.
2 For I would **will** that ye knew
 what *great conflict* **how much agony** I have for you,
 and *for* as many as have not seen my face in the flesh;
 2 That their hearts might be *comforted* **consoled**,
 being *knit together* **coalesced** in love,
 and unto all riches of the full *assurance* **bearance**
 of *understanding* **comprehension**,
 to the *acknowledgement* **knowledge**
 of the mystery of *God* **Elohim**,
 and of the Father, and of *Christ* **the Messiah**;
 3 In whom are *hid* **secreted**
 all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.
 4 And this I say **word**,
 lest any man **one** should *beguile* **delude** you
 with *enticing* **in persuasive** words.
 5 For though I be absent in the flesh,
 yet am I with you in *the spirit*,
 joying **cheering** and *beholding* **seeing** your order,
 and the *steadfastness* **solidity**
 of your *faith* **trust** in *Christ* **Messiah**.
 6 **So** As ye have *therefore* **received taken**
Christ Jesus **the Lord the Messiah Yah Shua Adonay**,
 so walk ye in him:
 7 Rooted and built up in him,
 and stablished in the *faith* **trust**,
exactly as ye have been *taught* **doctrinated**,
abounding **superabounding** therein
 with *thanksgiving* **in eucharist**.

COLOSSIANS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

19 For in him
 all fulness/shalom is well—approved to dwell;
 Colossians 2:9
 20 And having completed/shalamed
 through the blood of his stake,
 through him to fully reconcile all to himself;
 through him
 — whether on the earth — whether in the heavens.
 21 And you,
 being formerly alienated
 and enemies in mind in evil works,
 yet now he fully reconciles
 22 in the body of his flesh through death,
 to present you holy and unblemished
 and unaccusable in his sight:
 23 if indeed you abide in the trust
 founded and grounded;
 and not transported from the hope of the evangelism
 which you heard,
 which was preached in all creation under the heavens;
 whereof I Paulos became a minister;
 24 who now cheer in my sufferings for you
 and supplement whatever lacks
 of the tribulations of the Messiah in my flesh
 for his body, the ecclesia:
 25 whereof I became a minister,
 according to the administration of Elohim
 given to me to you
 to fulfill/shalam the word of Elohim
 — the mystery
 secreted from the eons and from the generations,
 26 but now manifested to his holy:
 to whom Elohim wills to make known
 the riches of the glory of this mystery
 among the goyim
 — Messiah in you, the hope of glory:
 27 whom we evangelize,
 reminding all humanity
 and doctrinating all humanity in all wisdom;
 to present all humanity
 28 completed/shalamed in Messiah Yah Shua:
 whereof I also labor;
 29 agonizing according to his energizing
 which energizes dynamis in me.
2 For I will you to know
 how much agony I have for you and them at Laodicea
 and as many as have not seen my face in the flesh;
 2 that their hearts be consoled — coalesced in love
 and to all riches
 of the full bearance of comprehension,
 to the knowledge of the mystery of Elohim
 and of the Father and of the Messiah;
 3 in whom all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge
 are secreted.
 4 And this I word,
 lest anyone delude you in persuasive words.
 5 For though I be absent in the flesh,
 I am still with you in spirit,
 cheering and seeing your order
 and the solidity of your trust in Messiah.
 6 So, as you took the Messiah Yah Shua Adonay,
 walk in him:
 7 root and build in him
 and establish in the trust,
 exactly as you were doctrinated,
 superabounding therein in eucharist.

COLOSSIANS 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

8 Beware **See to it** lest any *man* **spoil one seduce** you
 through philosophy and vain **deceit delusion**,
 after the tradition of *men* **humanity**,
 after the *rudiments* **elements of the world cosmos**,
 and not after *Christ* **Messiah**.

MESSIAH, THE FULNESS/SHALOM OF DEITY

9 For in him
 dwelleth all the fulness of *the Godhead* **Deity** bodily.

Colossians 1:19

10 And ye are complete/**shalamed** in him,
 which is the head
 of all *principality* **hierarchy** and *power* **authority**:
 In whom also
 ye are circumcised with the circumcision
made without hands **not handmade**,
 in *putting off* **stripping** the body of the sins of the flesh
 by *in* the circumcision of *Christ* **the Messiah**:
 12 *Buried with him* **Co—buried** in baptism,
 wherein also
 ye are *risen with him* **co—raised** through the *faith* **trust**
 of the *operation* **energizing** of *God* **Elohim**,
 who hath raised him from the dead.
 13 And you, being dead in your *sins* **backslidings**
 and the uncircumcision of your flesh,
 hath he *quickened together with him* **co—enlivened**,
 having *forgiven* **granted** you **charism**
all trespasses **for all your backslidings**;
 14 *Blotting* **Wiping** out
 the *handwriting* **handscribing of ordinances** **dogmas**
 that was against us,
 which was *contrary* **opposed** to us,
 and took it out of the way **midst**,
nailing **spiking** it to his *cross* **stake**;
 15 And having *spoiled* **stripped**
principalities **hierarchies** and *powers* **authorities**,
 he *made a shew of* **exposed** them *openly* **boldly**,
 triumphing over them in it.

WARNINGS

16 Let no *man* **one** therefore judge you
 in *meat* **food**, or in *drink*,
 or in *respect of an holyday* **apportioning a celebration**,
 or of the new moon, or of the *sabbath days* **shabbaths**:
 17 Which are a shadow of *things to come* **the about to be**;
 but the body is of *Christ* **the Messiah**.
 18 Let no *man* **beguile one defraud** you
 of your *reward in a voluntary* **of doing his will**
humility **in humblemindedness**
 and *worshipping* **ceremonials** of angels,
 intruding into those *things* which he hath not seen,
 vainly puffed up by *his fleshly* **the mind of his flesh**,
 19 And not *holding* **empowering** the Head,
 from which *all* the **whole** body
 by *through* joints and *bands* **bonds**
 having *nourishment ministered* **been supplied**,
 and *knit together* **co—alesced**,
increaseth **growth**
 with the *increase* **growth** of *God* **Elohim**.
 20 *Wherefore* **So then**
 if ye be dead with *Christ* **the Messiah**
 from the *rudiments* **elements of the world cosmos**,
 why, as though living in the *world* **cosmos**,
 are ye *subject to ordinances* **dogmatized**,
 21 (*Touch not; taste not; handle* **finger** not;
 22 Which all are to perish with the *using* **consuming**;) **3**
 after the *commandments* **misvoth** and doctrines
 of *men* **humanity**?
 23 Which *things* have indeed a *shew* **word** of wisdom
 in will *worship* **ceremony**,
 and *humility* **humblemindedness**,
 and neglecting of the body;
 not in any honour to the *satisfying* **gratifying** of the flesh.

THE HOLY LIFE

3 So if ye *then be risen* **co—raised** with *Christ* **the Messiah**,
 seek those *things* which are above,
 where *Christ* **the Messiah** sitteth
 on **at** the right *hand* of *God* **Elohim**.
 2 Set your *affection on things* **thought** above,
 not on *things on* **upon** the earth.

COLOSSIANS 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

8 See to it lest anyone seduce you
 through philosophy and vain delusion
 — after the tradition of humanity,
 — after the elements of the cosmos
 and not after Messiah.

MESSIAH, THE FULNESS/SHALOM OF DEITY

9 For in him
 dwells all the fulness/shalom of Deity bodily.

Colossians 1:19

10 And you are fulfilled/shalamed in him,
 who is the head of all hierarchy and authority:
 11 in whom also
 you are circumcised with the circumcision
 — not handmade,
 in stripping the body of the sins of the flesh
 in the circumcision of the Messiah;
 12 co—buried in baptism,
 wherein you are also co—raised through the trust
 of the energizing of Elohim,
 who raised him from the dead.
 13 And you, being dead in your backslidings
 and the uncircumcision of your flesh
 he co—enlivened,
 granting you charism for all your backslidings;
 14 wiping the handscribing of dogmas against us
 — opposed to us
 and taking it from among us, spiking it to his stake;
 15 and having stripped hierarchies and authorities,
 he exposed them boldly, triumphing over them in it.

WARNINGS

16 So no one is to judge you in food or in drink
 or in apportioning a celebration
 or of the new moon
 or of the shabbaths:
 17 which are a shadow of the about to be;
 and the body *is* of the Messiah.
 18 Be not defrauded
 of doing his will in humblemindedness
 and ceremonials of angels,
 by intruding into the not seen,
 vainly puffed up by the mind of his flesh,
 and not empowering the Head,
 19 from which the whole body through joints and bonds
 being supplied and co—alesced
 growing with the growth of Elohim.
 20 So if you die with the Messiah
 from the elements of the cosmos,
 why, as though living in the cosmos,
 are you dogmatized
 21 — touch not,
 taste not,
 finger not
 22 — which all destruct with the consuming
 after the misvoth and doctrines of humanity?
 23 Which indeed have a word of wisdom
 in will ceremony
 and humblemindedness and neglecting of the body
 — not in any honor to the gratifying of the flesh.

THE HOLY LIFE

3 So if you co—raised with the Messiah,
 seek those which are above,
 where the Messiah sits at the right of Elohim.
 2 Set your thought above — not on the earth.

COLOSSIANS 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

3 For ye are dead **died**,
and your life is *hid* **secreted** with *Christ* **the Messiah**
in *God* **Elohim**.

4 When *Christ* **ever the Messiah**, *who is our life*,
shall *appear* **be manifested**,
then shall ye also *appear* **be manifested**
with him in glory.

STRIPPING THE OLD HUMANITY

5 *Mortify therefore* **So deaden**
your members which are upon the earth;
fornication **whoredom**, *uncleanness* **impurity**,
inordinate affection **passion**, *evil concupiscence* **panting**,
and *covetousness* **avarice**, which is idolatry:
6 For **Through** which *things!* *sake*
the wrath of *God* **Elohim**
cometh on the *children* **sons** of *disobedience* **distrust**:
7 In the which ye also walked *some time* **formerly**,
when ye lived in them.

8 But now ye also put off all these;
anger **wrath**, *wrath* **fury**, malice, blasphemy,
filthy communication **shameful words** out of your mouth.

9 Lie not one to another,
seeing that ye have
put off **stripped** the old *man* **humanity**
with his *deeds* **functions**;

10 And have *put on* **endued** the new *man*,
which is renewed in knowledge
after the *image* **icon** of him that created him:
11 Where there is neither
Greek **Hellene** nor *Jew* **Yah Hudyi**,
circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian,
bond **servant** nor *free* **liberated**:
but *Christ* **Messiah** is all, and in all.

ENDING THE NEW HUMANITY

12 *Put on therefore* **So endue**,
as the *elect* **select** of *God* **Elohim**, holy and beloved,
bowels **spleens** of *mercies* **compassions**, kindness,
humbleness of mind **humblemindedness**,
meeekness, longsuffering **patience**;
13 *Forbearing* **Tolerating** one another,
and *forgiving* **granting** one another **charism**,
if whenever any *man* **one** have a *quarrel* **blame** against any:
even **exactly** as *Christ* **the Messiah**
forgave you **hath granted** you **charism**,
so **thus** also do ye.

14 And above all these, *things put on* **charity** **love**,
which is the bond of *perfectness* **completion/shalom**.

15 And let the *peace* **shalom** of *God* **Elohim**
rule **umpire** in your hearts,
to the which also ye are called in one body;
and be ye *thankful* **eucharistic**.

16 Let the word of *Christ* **the Messiah**
dwelt in **indwell** you richly in all wisdom;
teaching **doctrinating** and *admonishing* **reminding**
one another **yourselves**
in psalms and hymns and spiritual *songs* **odes**,
singing *with grace* **in charism** in your hearts
to the *Lord* **Adonay**.

17 And whatsoever ye **ever** do in word or *deed* **in work**,
do all in the name of the *Lord* **Jesus Adonay Yah Shua**,
giving thanks **eucharistizing**
to *God* **Elohim** and the Father *by* **through** him.

18 *Wives* **Women**,
submit **subjugate** yourselves
unto your own *husbands* **men**,
as *it is fit* **proper** in the *Lord* **Adonay**.

19 *Husbands* **Men**,
love *your wives* **the women**,
and be not *bitter* **embittered** against them.

20 Children,
obey *your* **the** parents in all *things*:
for this is well pleasing unto the *Lord* **Adonay**.

21 Fathers,
provoke **excite** not your children *to anger*,
lest they be *discouraged* **apathetic**.

22 Servants,
obey in all *things*
your masters **adoniym** according to the flesh;

COLOSSIANS 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

3 For you died
and your life is secreted with the Messiah in Elohim.

4 Whenever the Messiah, our life, manifests,
then you also manifest with him in glory.

STRIPPING THE OLD HUMANITY

5 So deaden your members on the earth:
whoredom,
impurity,
passion,
evil panting,
and avarice — which is idolatry:
6 through which
the wrath of Elohim comes on the sons of distrust:
7 in which you also formerly walked
when you lived therein.

8 But now, even you, put all these from your mouth;
wrath,
fury,
malice,
blasphemy,
shameful words.

9 Lie not one to another
— seeing that you stripped the old humanity
with his functions;
10 and endued the new,
renewed in knowledge
after the icon of him who created him:
11 where there is neither Hellene nor Yah Hudyi,
circumcision nor uncircumcision,
Barbarian, Scythian, servant, liberated:
— but Messiah is all and in all.

ENDING THE NEW HUMANITY

12 So endue,
as the select of Elohim, holy and beloved,
spleens of compassions,
kindness,
humblemindedness,
meeekness,
patience;
13 tolerate one another
and grant one another charism;
whenever anyone has a blame against any:
even exactly as the Messiah grants you charism
thus also you.

14 And above all these, love,
which is the bond of completion/shalom.

15 And the shalom of Elohim umpire in your hearts,
to which you are also called in one body;
and be eucharistic;
16 that the word of the Messiah
indwell you richly in all wisdom;
doctrinating and reminding yourselves
in psalms and hymns and spiritual odes,
singing in charism in your hearts to Adonay.

17 And whatever you ever do in word or in work,
do all in the name of Adonay Yah Shua,
eucharistizing to Elohim and the Father through him.

18 Women,
subjugate yourselves to your own men
as proper in Adonay.

19 Men,
love your women
and embitter not against them.

20 Children,
obey your parents in all
— for this is well—pleasing to Yah Veh.

21 Fathers,
excite not your children
lest they become apathetic.

22 Servants,
obey your adoniym according to flesh in all;

COLOSSIANS 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

not with in eyeservice, as menpleasers **humanitypleasers**;
but in *singleness* **liberality** of heart,
fearing God **awing Elohim**:
23 And whatsoever ye do,
do it heartily **work from the soul**, as to the Lord **Adonay**,
and not unto men **humanity**;
24 Knowing that of the Lord **Adonay**
ye shall receive **take** the reward **recompense**
of the inheritance:
for ye serve the Lord **Christ Adonay Messiah**.
25 But he that doeth wrong **injureth**
shall receive for the wrong **injury**
which he hath done:
and there is no respect of persons **partiality**.

4 Masters **Adoniym**,
give **present** unto your servants
that which is just and equal;
knowing that
ye also have a Master Lord **an Adonay**
in heaven **the heavens**.
2 Continue in prayer,
and watch in the same with *thanksgiving* **in eucharist**;
3 Withal **Simultaneously** praying also for us,
that God would **Elohim should** open unto us
a door **an opening/a portal** of utterance **the word**,
to speak the mystery of **Christ the Messiah**,
for which I am also in bonds:
4 That I may *make it* manifest, as I *ought to* **must** speak.
5 Walk in wisdom toward them that are without,
redeeming **marketing** the time **season**.
6 Let your *speech* **word** be always with *grace* **in charism**,
seasoned with salt,
that ye may know
how ye *ought to* **must** answer every man **each one**.
FINAL SALUTES

7 All my state
shall Tychicus *declare* **maketh known** unto you,
who is a beloved brother,
and a *faithful* **trustworthy** minister
and *fellow*servant **co—servant** in the Lord **Adonay**:
8 Whom I have sent unto you
for **unto** the same *purpose*,
that he might know **about** your estate,
and *comfort* **console** your hearts;
9 With Onesimus,
a *faithful* **trustworthy** and beloved brother,
who is *one* of you.
They shall make known unto you
all *things* which are *done* here.
10 Aristarchus my *fellow*prisoner **co—captive** saluteth you,
and Marcus **Markos**,
sister's son **cousin** to Barnabas **Bar Nabi**,
(*touching about* whom
ye received *commandments* **took misvoth**:
if **whenever** he come unto you, receive him);
11 And Jesus **Yah Shua**, which is *called* **worded** Justus,
who are **being** of the circumcision.
These only are my *fellow*workers **co—workers**
unto the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of God **Elohim**,
which have *been* **become**
a *comfort* **consolation** unto me.
12 Epaphras, who is *one* of you,
a servant of **Christ Messiah**, saluteth you,
always *labouring fervently* **agonizing** for you in prayers,
that ye may stand *perfect* **complete/in shalom**
and *complete* **fulfilled/shalamed**
in all the will of God **Elohim**.
13 For I *bear* **witness of** him *record*,
that he hath a *great* **vast** zeal for you,
and them *that are* in Laodicea, and them in Hierapolis.
14 Luke **Loukas**, the beloved *physician* **healer**,
and Demas, *greet* **salute** you.
15 Salute the brethren which are in Laodicea,
and Nymphas,
and the *church* **ecclesia** which is in his house.
16 And when **ever** this epistle is read among you,
cause that it be read also
in the *church* **ecclesia** of the Laodiceans;
and that ye likewise read *the epistle* **that** from Laodicea.

COLOSSIANS 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

not in eyeservice, as humanitypleasers;
but in liberality of heart, awing Elohim:
23 and whatever you do, work from the soul,
as to Adonay — and not as to humanity;
24 knowing that of Adonay
you take the recompense of the inheritance:
for you serve Adonay Messiah.
25 And whoever injures, receives for the injury:
and there is no partiality.

4 Adoniym,
present your servants with what is just and equal;
knowing also that you have an Adonay in the heavens.

2 Continue in prayer
and watch in the same in eucharist;
3 also praying simultaneously for us,
that Elohim open an opening/a portal of the word
to speak the mystery of the Messiah;
for whom I am also in bonds:
4 to manifest as I must speak.

5 Walk in wisdom toward those outside,
marketing the season
6 — your word always in charism seasoned with salt,
so that you know how you must answer each one.

FINAL SALUTES

7 Tychicus, a beloved brother
and a trustworthy minister
and co—servant in Adonay
has you know all my state:
8 whom I send to you to the same,
to know about your estate and console your hearts:
9 with Onesimus,
a trustworthy and beloved brother, who is *one* of you.
They have you know all that are here.

10 Aristarchus my co—captive salutes you
and Markos, cousin to Bar Nabi
— about whom you took misvoth;
whenever he comes to you, receive him:
11 and Yah Shua who is worded Justus,
being of circumcision;
these only are my co—workers
to the sovereigndom of Elohim
who became my consolation.

12 Epaphras, who is *one* of you,
a servant of Messiah, salutes you
— always agonizing for you in prayers,
that you stand complete/in shalom
— fulfilled/shalamed in all the will of Elohim.
13 For I witness of him,
that he has a vast zeal for you
and them in Laodicea and them in Hierapolis.

14 Loukas the beloved healer and Demas salute you.
15 Salute the brothers in Laodicea and Nymphas
and the ecclesia in his house.

16 And whenever this epistle is read among you,
also have it read in the ecclesia of the Laodiceans;
and that you likewise read that from Laodicea.

COLOSSIANS 4

exeGes ready research BIBLE

- 17 And say to Archippus, *Take heed* See to the ministry
which thou hast *received* **taken** in the Lord **Adonay**,
that thou fulfil/**shalam** it.
- 18 The salutation by the hand of me *Paul* **Paulos**.
Remember my bonds.
Grace **Charism** be with you.
Amen.

COLOSSIANS 4

exeGes companion BIBLE

- 17 And say to Archippus,
See to the ministry you took in Adonay,
to fulfil/shalam it.
- 18 The salutation by my hand — Paulos.
Remember my bonds.
Charism be with you.
Amen.

1 THESSALONIANS 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paul Paulos, and Silvanus, and *Timotheus* Timo Theos,
 unto the church **ecclesia**
 of the Thessalonians **Thessalonikeus**
 which is in God the in Elohim Father
 and in the Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**:
 Grace be **Charism** unto you, and peace **shalom**,
 from God **Elohim** our Father,
 and the Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**.

THE EUCHARIST OF PAULOS

2 We give thanks **eucharistize** to God **Elohim**
 always for you all,
 making *mention* **remembrance** of you in our prayers;
 3 Remembering *without ceasing* **unceasingly**
 your work of *faith* **trust**,
 and labour of love, and *patience* **endurance** of hope
 in our Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
 in the sight **front** of God **Elohim** and our Father;
 4 Knowing, brethren beloved,
 your *election of God* **selection by Elohim**.
 5 For our *gospel came* **evangelism became** not unto you
 in word only,
 but also in *power* **dynamis**, and in the Holy Ghost **Spirit**,
 and in much *assurance* **fullbearance**;
exactly as ye know what manner of men
 we were **became** among you for your sake.
 6 And ye became *followers* **mimickers** of us,
 and of the Lord **Adonay**,
 having received the word in much *affliction* **tribulation**,
 with joy **cheer** of the Holy Ghost **Spirit**.
 7 So that ye were *ensamples* **became types**
 to all that *believe* **trust** in Macedonia and Achaia.
 8 For from you *sounded out* **echoed forth**
 the word of the Lord **Adonay**
 not only in Macedonia and Achaia,
 but also in every place
 your *faith to God-ward* **trust toward Elohim**
 is *spread abroad* **gone**;
 so that we need not to speak *any thing* **ought**.
 9 For they themselves *shew* **evangelize** of us
 what manner of *entering in* **entrance** we had unto you,
 and how ye turned to God **Elohim** from idols
 to serve the living and true God **Elohim**;
 10 And to *wait for* **await** his Son from *heaven* **the heavens**,
 whom he raised from the dead, *even* **Jesus Yah Shua**,
 which *delivered* **rescued** us from the wrath to come.

THE MINISTRY OF THESSALONIKEUS

2 For yourselves, brethren,
 know our entrance in unto you,
 that it was **became** not in vain:
 2 But even after that we had suffered *before* **previously**,
 and were *shamefully entreated* **insulted**,
exactly as ye know, at Philippi,
 we were bold in our God **Elohim** to speak unto you
 the *gospel* **evangelism** of God **Elohim**
 with *in much contention* **agony**.
 3 For our *exhortation* **consolation**
 was not of *deceit* **seduction**,
 nor of *uncleanness* **impurity**, nor in *guile* **deceit**:
 4 But **exactly** as we were *allowed* **proofed** of God **Elohim**
 to be *put in trust* **entrusted** with the *gospel* **evangelism**,
 even so **thus** we speak;
 not as pleasing *men* **humanity**,
 but God **Elohim**, which *trieth* **proofeth** our hearts.
 5 For *neither at any time* **never ever**
 used **became** we *flattering in* **fawning** words,
exactly as ye know,
 nor *in a cloke* **pretext** of *covetousness* **avarice**;
 God is witness **Elohim witnesseth**:
 6 Nor of *men* **humanity** sought we glory,
 neither of you, nor yet of others,
 when we *might* **could** have been burdensome,
 as the apostles of *Christ* **Messiah**.
 7 But we were **became** gentle among you,
 even as a nurse **ever** cherisheth her children:
 8 So being *affectionately desirous* **Thus yearning** of you,
 we were *willing* **well—approved**
 to have imparted unto you,

1 THESSALONIKEUS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos and Silvanus and Timo Theos:
 To the ecclesia of Thessalonikeus
 in Elohim Father
 and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah:
 Charism to you and shalom,
 from Elohim our Father
 and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.

THE EUCHARIST OF PAULOS

2 We always eucharistize to Elohim for you all
 making remembrance of you in our prayers;
 3 unceasingly remembering your work of trust
 and labor of love and endurance of hope
 in our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
 in front of Elohim and our Father,
 4 beloved brothers,
 knowing your selection by Elohim.
 5 For our evangelism to you is not only in word,
 but also in dynamis and in Holy Spirit
 and in much fullbearance;
 exactly as you know
 what manner of men we became among you
 for your sake:
 6 and you became mimickers of us and of Adonay,
 receiving the word in much tribulation,
 with cheer of Holy Spirit:
 7 so that you became types to all who trust
 in Macedonia and Achaia:
 8 for the word of Adonay echoes from you
 — not only in Macedonia and Achaia
 but also in every place
 your trust toward Elohim goes;
 so that we need not speak aught.
 9 For they themselves evangelize of us
 what manner of entrance we had to you;
 and how you turned from idols to Elohim
 to serve the living and true Elohim;
 10 and to await his Son from the heavens
 — Yah Shua — whom he raised from the dead
 who rescued us from the wrath to come.

THE MINISTRY OF THESSALONIKEUS

2 For brothers,
 you yourselves know our entrance to you,
 that it became not in vain:
 2 but even after we previously suffered
 and were insulted at Philippi
 — exactly as you know
 we were bold in our Elohim to speak to you
 the evangelism of Elohim in much agony.
 3 For our consolation was neither of seduction,
 nor of impurity, nor in deceit:
 4 but exactly as we were proofed of Elohim
 to be entrusted with the evangelism,
 thus we speak;
 not as pleasing humanity
 but Elohim who proofs our hearts.
 5 For we never ever became in fawning words
 exactly as you know;
 nor in a pretext of avarice;
 as Elohim witnesses:
 6 we sought glory
 neither of humanity, nor of you, nor of others,
 when as the apostles of Messiah
 we could have been burdensome.
 7 But we became gentle among you,
 even as a nurse ever cherishes her children:
 8 thus yearning over you,
 we well—approved to impart to you

1 THESSALONIANS 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

not the *gospel evangelism* of God Elohim only,
but also our own souls,
because ye were dear **became beloved** unto us.
9 For ye remember, brethren, our labour and *travail* **toil**:
for *labouring working* night and day,
because **that** we would **should** not
be chargeable unto **overburden** any of you,
we preached unto you
the *gospel evangelism* of God Elohim.
10 Ye are witnesses, and God Elohim also,
how *holily mercifully* and justly and unblameably
we behaved ourselves **became** among you that believe **trust**:
11 **Exactly** As ye know
how we *exhorted besought* and *comforted consoled*,
and *charged every witnessed each* one of you,
as a father *doth* his children,
12 That ye would **should witness**
to walk worthy of God Elohim,
who hath called you
unto his *kingdom sovereignty* and glory.
13 For this cause also *thank eucharistize* we God Elohim
without ceasing unceasingly,
because, when ye *received took* the word of God Elohim
which ye heard of us,
ye received it not as the word of *men humanity*,
but **exactly** as it **truly** is *in truth*, the word of God Elohim,
which *effectually worketh energizeth* also in you
that believe **trust**.
14 For ye, brethren, became *followers mimickers*
of the *churches ecclesiae* of God Elohim
which *being in Judaea Yah Hudah*
are in Christ Jesus being in Messiah Yah Shua:
for ye also have suffered *in like manner things*
of **by** your own *countrymen co—scions*,
even **exactly** as they have of the *Jews Yah Hudiym*:
15 Who both *killed slaughtered*
the Lord Jesus Adonay Yah Shua, and their own prophets,
and have persecuted us;
and they please not God Elohim,
and are contrary to all *men humanity*:
16 Forbidding us to speak to the *Gentiles goyim*
that they might be saved,
to *fill up fill full/shalam* their sins alway:
for the wrath *is come arrived* upon them
to the *uttermost completion/shalom*.
17 But we, brethren,
being *taken orphaned away* from you your face
for a *short time in presence season of an hour*,
not in heart,
endeavoured the more abundantly
being more superabundantly diligent
to see your face with *great desire in much panting*.
18 Wherefore **So**
we would have **had willed to** come unto you,
even **indeed** I Paul Paulos,
once and *again twice*; but Satan hindered us.
19 For what is our hope, or joy **cheer**,
or crown **wreath** of rejoicing **boasting**?
Are **Or** not **indeed** even ye in the *presence front*
of our Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
at his *coming parousia*?
20 For ye are our glory and joy **cheer**.

THE HOLINESS OF THE TRUSTERS

3 Wherefore **So** when we could no longer *forbear endure*,
we *thought it good well—approved*
to be left at Athens alone;
2 And sent *Timotheus Timo Theos*,
our brother, and minister of God Elohim,
and our *fellowlabourer co—worker*
in the *gospel evangelism of Christ the Messiah*,
to establish you, and to *comfort console* you
concerning your *faith trust*:
3 That no man **one** should be *moved shaken*
by in these afflictions tribulations:
for yourselves know that we are *appointed set* thereunto.
4 For verily, when we were with you,
we *told you before forespoke*
that we should *suffer tribulation be tribulated*;
even **exactly** as it *came to pass became*, and ye know.

1 THESSALONIKEUS 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

not only the evangelism of Elohim
but also our own souls;
because you became beloved to us.
9 For you remember, brothers, our labor and toil
— working night and day
to not overburden any of you
we preached to you the evangelism of Elohim.
10 You and Elohim are witnesses,
how mercifully and justly and unblameably
we became among you who trust:
11 exactly as you know
how we besought and consoled
and witnessed each one of you
as a father his children;
12 that you witness to walk worthy of Elohim
who calls you to his sovereignty and glory.
13 For this cause also
we eucharistize Elohim unceasingly,
because, when you took the word of Elohim
which you heard of us,
you received it not as the word of humanity
but exactly as it truly is, the word of Elohim;
which also energizes in you who trust.
14 For you, brothers,
became mimickers of the ecclesiae of Elohim
being in Yah Hudah — being in Messiah Yah Shua:
for you also suffered in like manner
by your own co—scions;
even exactly as they have of the Yah Hudiym:
15 who slaughtered
both Adonay Yah Shua and their own prophets
and persecuted us;
and they please not Elohim
and are contrary to all humanity:
16 forbidding us to speak to the goyim to be saved
— to fill full/shalam their sins alway:
for the wrath arrives upon them
to completion/shalom.
17 And we, brothers,
being orphaned away from your face
for a season of an hour;
not in heart:
being more superabundantly diligent
to see your face in much panting.
18 So we willed to come to you,
— indeed I Paulos, once and twice;
and Satan hindered us.
19 For what is our hope? Or cheer?
Or wreath of boasting?
Or indeed are not even you in front
of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah at his parousia?
20 For you are our glory and cheer.

THE HOLINESS OF THE TRUSTERS

3 So when we could no longer endure,
we well—approved to be left alone at Asos;
and sent Timo Theos
our brother and minister of Elohim
and our co—worker in the evangelism of the Messiah
to establish you and to console you
concerning your trust:
3 that no one be shaken in these tribulations:
for you yourselves know that we are set thereto.
4 For verily, when we were with you,
we forespoke that we were about to be tribulated
— even exactly as it became — as you know.

1 THESSALONIANS 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 For this cause,
when **even** I could no longer *forbear* **endure**,
I sent to know your *faith* **trust**,
lest *by some means* **somehow**
the *tempter* **tester** have *tempted* **tested** you,
and our labour be *in vain* **void**.
6 But now when *Timotheus* **Timo Theos**
came from you unto us,
and *brought us good tidings* **evangelized**
of your *faith* **trust** and *charity* **love**,
and that ye have good remembrance of us always,
desiring greatly **yearning** to see us,
exactly as we also *to see you*:
7 *Therefore* **Because of this**, brethren,
we were *comforted* **consoled** over you
in all our *affliction* **tribulation** and *distress* **necessity**
by *through your faith* **trust**:
8 For now we live,
if whenever ye stand *fast* **firm** in the *Lord* **Adonay**.
9 For what *thanks* **eucharist**
can we *render* **recompense** to *God* **Elohim** again for you,
for all the *joy* **cheer** wherewith we *joy* **cheer** for your sakes
before in front of our God **Elohim**;
10 Night and day
praying exceedingly **petitioning** **superabundantly**
that we might see your face,
and might prepare
that which is lacking in your *faith* **trust**?
11 Now *God* **Elohim** himself and our Father,
and our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
direct our way unto you.
12 And *the Lord* **make you to increase**
Adonay superabound you
and *abound* **superabound** in love one *toward* **unto** another,
and *toward* **unto** all men,
even **exactly** as we *do toward* **unto** you:
13 *To the end he may* stablish your hearts
unblameable **unaccusable** in holiness
before God **in front of Elohim**, even our Father,
at the *coming* **parousia**
of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
with all his *saints* **holy**.

HOLINESS OVER IMMORALITY

4 *Furthermore then* **So finally** we beseech you, brethren,
and *exhort* **beseech**
you *by the Lord Jesus* **in Adonay Yah Shua**,
that **exactly** as ye have *received* **taken** of us
how ye *ought to* **must** walk and to please *God* **Elohim**,
so that ye would abound **should superabound**
more and more.
2 For ye know
what *commandments* **evangelisms** we gave you
by the Lord Jesus **through Adonay Yah Shua**.
3 For this is the will of *God* **Elohim**,
even your *sanctification* **holiness**,
that ye should abstain from *fornication* **whoredom**:
4 That every **each** one of you should know
how to *possess* **acquire** his vessel
in *sanctification* **holiness** and honour;
5 Not in the *lust* **passion** of *concupiscence* **panting**,
even **exactly** as the *Gentiles* **goyim**
which know not *God* **Elohim**:
6 That no man *go beyond* **one overstep**
and defraud his brother in any matter:
because that *the Lord* **Adonay**
is the avenger of **concerning** all such,
exactly as we also have *forewarned* **foretold** you
and *testified* **witnessed**.
7 For *God* **Elohim** hath not called us
unto *uncleanness* **impurity**, but *unto* **in** holiness.
8 **So** He *therefore* that *despiseth* **setteth aside**,
despiseth **setteth aside** not man **humanity**,
but *God* **Elohim**, who hath also given unto us his holy Spirit.

THE HOLY WALK

9 But *as touching* **concerning**
brotherly love **befriending** brethren
ye need not that I *write* **scribe** unto you:
for ye yourselves are *taught of God* **Elohim—doctrinated**
to love one another.

1 THESSALONIKEUS 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

5 For this cause
even when I could no longer endure,
I sent to know of your trust;
lest somehow the tester tests you
and our labor become void.
6 And now, when Timo Theos came from you to us
and evangelized of your trust and love
and that you have good remembrance of us always
— yearning to see us — exactly as we also to see you:
7 because of this, brothers,
we consoled over you
in all our tribulation and necessity
through your trust:
8 for now we live
— whenever you stand firm in Adonay.
9 For what eucharist
can we recompense to Elohim for you,
for all the cheer wherewith we cheer for your sakes
in front of our Elohim
— night and day petitioning superabundantly
to see your face
and prepare what is lacking in your trust?
11 And Elohim himself and our Father
and our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
direct our way to you.
12 And Adonay superabound you
superabundantly in love
to one another and to all
— even exactly as we to you:
13 to establish your hearts unaccusable in holiness
in front of Elohim — even our Father
at the parousia of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
with all his holy.

HOLINESS OVER IMMORALITY

4 So finally we beseech you brothers
— beseech you in Adonay Yah Shua,
that exactly as you took from us,
how you must walk and to please Elohim
— to superabound more and more:
2 for you know what evangelisms we gave you
through Adonay Yah Shua.
3 For this is the will of Elohim — even your holiness;
to abstain from whoredom:
4 that each one of you know how to acquire his vessel
in holiness and honor;
5 not in the passion of panting
exactly as the goyim who know not Elohim:
6 so that no one oversteps
and defrauds his brother in any matter:
because Adonay is the avenger concerning all such,
exactly as we also foretold you and witness.ed
7 For Elohim calls us not to impurity;
but in holiness.
8 So whoever sets aside,
sets aside not humanity
— but Elohim who also gives us his holy Spirit.

THE HOLY WALK

9 And concerning befriending brothers
you need me not to scribe to you:
for you yourselves are Elohim—doctrinated
to love one another.

1 THESSALONIANS 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

10 And indeed ye do it *toward unto* all the brethren
which are in all Macedonia:
but we beseech you, brethren,
that ye *increase* **superabound** more and more;
11 And that ye *study* **befriend esteeming** to be quiet,
and to *do* **transact** your own business,
and to work with your own hands,
exactly as we *commanded* **evangelized** you;
12 That ye may walk *honestly* **respectably**
toward them that are without,
and that ye may *have lack of nothing* **need naught**.

THE HOPE OF THE RESURRECTION

13 But I *would* **will that you not**
have you to be ignorant **be unknowing**, brethren,
concerning them which are asleep,
that ye sorrow not,
even **exactly** as *others* **the rest** which have no hope.
14 For if we *believe* **trust**
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** died and rose *again*,
even so **thus** them also
which sleep *in Jesus* **through Yah Shua**
will God **shall Elohim** bring with him.
15 For this we *say* **word** unto you
by in the word of *the Lord* **Adonay**,
that we which are alive and *remain* **survive**
unto the coming of *the Lord* **Adonay**
shall *not prevent* **never no way precede** them
which are asleep.
16 For *the Lord* **Adonay** himself
shall descend from heaven
with in a **shout summons**,
with in the voice of the archangel,
and *with in* the *trump* trumpet of *God* **Elohim**:
and the dead *in Christ* **Messiah** shall rise first:
17 Then we which are alive and *remain* **survive**
shall be *caught up together* **seized simultaneously**
with them in the clouds,
to meet *the Lord* **Adonay** in the air:
and so **thus** shall we ever be with *the Lord* **Adonay**.
18 *Wherefore* **So then**
comfort one another *with in* these words.
1 Corinthians 15:35—38

THE DAY OF ADONAY

5 But *of* **concerning** the times and the seasons, brethren,
ye have no need that I *write* **scribe** unto you.
2 For yourselves know *perfectly* **precisely**
that the day of *the Lord* **Adonay**
so **thus** cometh as a thief in the night.
3 For when **ever** they shall *say* **word**,
peace shalom and *safety* **security**;
then *sudden destruction* **unexpected ruin**
cometh upon **standeth over** them,
exactly as travail upon a woman
with child **having in womb**;
and they shall *not* **never no way** escape.
4 But ye, brethren, are not in darkness,
that that day should overtake you as a thief.
5 Ye are all the *children* **sons** of light,
and the *children* **sons** of the day:
we are not of the night, nor of darkness.
6 **So** *Therefore* let us not sleep, as *do others* **the rest**;
but let us watch and be sober.
7 For they that sleep sleep in the night;
and they that *be drunken* **intoxicate**
are drunken **intoxicate** in the night.
8 But let us, *who are* **being** of the day, be sober,
putting on **enduing** the breastplate of *faith* **trust** and love;
and for an helmet, the hope of salvation.
9 For *God* **Elohim** hath not *appointed* **placed** us to wrath,
but to *obtain* **acquire** salvation
by through our *Lord* **Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
10 Who died for us,
that, whether we *wake* **watch**,
or **whether** we sleep,
we should live *together* **simultaneously** with him.
11 *Wherefore* **So**
comfort yourselves together **console one another**,
and edify one another, even as also ye do.

1 THESSALONIQUEUS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

10 And indeed
you also do it to all the brothers in all Macedonia:
and we beseech you brothers,
to superabound more and more;
11 and to befriend esteeming quietness
and to transact your own business
and to work with your own hands
— exactly as we evangelized you;
12 to walk respectfully toward them on the outside:
and that you have need of naught.

THE HOPE OF THE RESURRECTION

13 And I will that you not be unknowing, brothers,
concerning them who sleep,
that you sorrow not
even exactly as the rest who have no hope.
14 For if we trust that Yah Shua died and rose,
thus they also who sleep through Yah Shua
Elohim brings with him.
15 For we word this to you in the word of Adonay,
that we the living
who survive to the parousia of Adonay
never no way precede them who sleep.
16 For Adonay himself descends from the heavens
— in a summons
in the voice of the archangel
and in the trumpet of Elohim:
and the dead in Messiah rise first:
17 then we the living who survive
are seized simultaneously with them in the clouds
to meet Adonay in the air:
and thus we ever be with Adonay.
18 So comfort one another in these words.
1 Corinthians 15:35—38

THE DAY OF ADONAY

5 And concerning the times and the seasons, brothers,
you have no need that I scribe to you.
2 For yourselves know precisely
that the day of Adonay comes thus
— as a thief in the night.
3 For whenever they word, Shalom and security;
then unexpected ruin stands over them
— exactly as travail upon a woman having in womb;
and they never no way escape.
4 And you brothers, are not in darkness,
that the day overtake you as a thief.
5 You are all the sons of light and the sons of the day:
we are neither of night nor of darkness.
6 So we sleep not as the rest;
but we watch and are sober.
7 For whoever sleeps, sleeps in the night;
and whoever intoxicates, intoxicates in the night.
8 And we, being of the day, be sober;
enduing the breastplate of trust and love;
and for a helmet, the hope of salvation.
9 For Elohim places us not to wrath,
but to acquire salvation
through our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
who died for us;
so that,
whether we watch,
whether we sleep,
we live simultaneously with him.
11 So console one another
and edify one another, even as also you do.

1 THESSALONIANS 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

FINAL INSTRUCTIONS

12 And we beseech **ask** you, brethren,
to know them which labour among you,
and are **preside** over you in the Lord **Adonay**,
and admonish **remind** you;
13 And to esteem them
very highly **more superabundantly** in love
for their work's sake.
And be at peace **shalam** among yourselves.
14 Now we exhort **beseech** you, brethren,
warn **remind** them that are *unruly* **disorderly**,
comfort **console** the feebleminded **timidsouled**,
support the weak **frail**, be patient toward all men.
15 See that *none* **not any one**
render **give back** evil for evil unto any man **one**;
but ever follow **pursue** that which is good,
both among yourselves **unto one another**,
and to all men **every one**.
16 Rejoice evermore **Cheer always**.
17 Pray without ceasing **unceasingly**.
18 In every thing give thanks **all eucharistize**:
for this is the will of God **Elohim**
in Christ Jesus concerning **Messiah Yah Shua** unto you.
19 Quench not the Spirit.
20 Despise **Belittle** not prophesyings.
21 Prove **Proof** all things; hold fast that which is good.
22 Abstain from all appearance **semblance** of evil.

TRIUNE HUMANITY

23 And the very God **Elohim** of peace **shalom himself**
sanctify **hallow** you wholly **completely/in shalom**;
and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body
be preserved **guarded** blameless
unto **in** the coming **parousia**
of our Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**.
24 Faithful **Trustworthy** is he that calleth you,
who also will **shall** do it.
25 Brethren, pray for us.

FINAL SALUTES AND BENEDICTION

26 Greet **Salute** all the brethren with **in** an holy kiss.
27 I charge **oath** you by the Lord **Adonay**
that this epistle be read unto all the holy brethren.
28 The grace **charism**
of our Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
be with you.
Amen.

1 THESSALONIQUEUS 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

FINAL INSTRUCTIONS

12 And we ask you, brothers,
to know them who labor among you,
who preside over you in Adonay and remind you;
and to esteem them more superabundantly in love
for sake of their work:
and shalam among yourselves.
14 And we beseech you brothers;
remind the disorderly,
console the timidsouled,
support the frail,
be patient toward all.
15 See that no one gives anyone evil for evil;
but ever pursue the good,
both to one another and to everyone.
16 Cheer always,
17 pray unceasingly,
18 eucharistize in all;
— for this is the will of Elohim
in Messiah Yah Shua to you.
19 Neither quench the Spirit
nor belittle prophesyings:
20 proof all,
21 hold what is good,
22 abstain from all semblance of evil:

TRIUNE HUMANITY

23 and the Elohim of shalom himself
hallows you completely/in shalom;
and guards your whole spirit and soul and body
blameless
in the parousia of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
Trustworthy is he who calls you — who also does.
25 Brothers, pray for us.

FINAL SALUTES AND BENEDICTION

26 Salute all the brothers in a holy kiss.
27 I oath you by Adonay
to have this epistle read to all the holy brothers.
28 The charism of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
be with you.
Amen.

2 THESSALONIANS 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paul Paulos, and Silvanus, and *Timotheus* Timo Theos,
unto the church **ecclesia**
of the *Thessalonians* **Thessalonikeus**
in God **Elohim** our Father
and the Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**:
2 Grace **Charism** unto you, and peace **shalom**,
from God **Elohim** our Father
and the Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**.

THE EUCHARIST OF PAULOS

3 We are bound **indebted**
to thank God **eucharistize Elohim** always for you,
brethren,
exactly as it is meet **worthy**,
because that your **faith trust**
groweth exceedingly **increaseth greatly**,
and the **charity love** of every **each** one of you all
toward each other **aboundeth superaboundeth**;
4 So that we ourselves **glory boast** in you
in the churches **ecclesiae** of God **Elohim**
for your **patience endurance** and **faith trust**
in all your persecutions and tribulations that ye endure:
5 Which is a **manifest token an indication**
of the **righteous just** judgment of God **Elohim**,
that ye may be counted worthy
of the **kingdom sovereignty** of God **Elohim**,
for which ye also suffer:
6 Seeing it is a **righteous thing if whenever it is just**
with God **Elohim**
to recompense tribulation
to them that **trouble tribulate** you;
7 And to you who are **troubled tribulated**,
rest relax with us,
when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed
in the **apocalypse of Adonay Yah Shua** from heaven,
with his **mighty angels of dynamis**,
8 In flaming fire **taking giving** vengeance
on them that know not God **Elohim**,
and that obey not the **gospel evangelism**
of our Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**:
9 Who shall be **punished penalized in judgment**
with **everlasting destruction eternal ruin**
from the **presence face** of the Lord **Adonay**,
and from the glory of his **power might**;
10 When **Whenever** he shall come
to be glorified in his **saints holy**,
and to be **admired marvelled** in all them that **believe trust**
(because our **testimony witness** among you
was **believed trusted**) in that day.

11 Wherefore **Unto which** also we pray always for you,
that our God **Elohim**
would count should deem you worthy of this calling,
and fulfill/**shalam** all the **good pleasure well—approval**
of his goodness,
and the work of **faith with power trust in dynamis**:
12 That the name
of our Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
may be glorified in you, and ye in him,
according to the **grace charism** of our God **Elohim**
and the Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**.

THE TORAH VIOLATOR

2 Now we **beseech ask** you, brethren,
by the **coming parousia**
of our Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
and by our **gathering synagoguing** together unto him,
2 That ye be not **soon quickly** shaken in of mind,
or be **troubled lament**,
neither by **through** spirit, nor by **through** word,
nor by **letter through epistle** as from us,
as that the day of Christ **the Messiah** is at **hand present**.
3 Let no man **deceive one seduce** you
by **in** any means **manner**:
for that day shall not come **because**,
except **unless** there come
a **falling away an apostatizing** first,
and that man **human** of sin be **revealed unveiled**,
the son of **perdition destruction**;

2 THESSALONIQUEUS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos and Silvanus and Timo Theos:
To the ecclesia of Thessalonikeus
in Elohim our Father
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah:

2 Charism to you and shalom
from Elohim our Father
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.

THE EUCHARIST OF PAULOS

3 We are always indebted
to eucharistize Elohim for you, brothers,
exactly as is worthy;
that your trust increase greatly
and the love of each one of you all
superabound toward each other;
4 so that we ourselves boast in you
in the ecclesiae of Elohim
for your endurance and trust
in all the persecutions and tribulations you endure:
5 which is an indication of the just judgment of Elohim
— to count you worthy of the sovereignty of Elohim
for which you also suffer:
6 whenever it is just with Elohim
to recompense tribulation to them who tribulate you;
7 and you who are tribulated, to relax with us,
in the apocalypse of Adonay Yah Shua
of the heavens,
with his angels of dynamis,
8 in flaming fire giving vengeance
on them who know not Elohim
— who obey not the evangelism
of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah:
9 to be penalized in judgment with eternal ruin
— from the face of Adonay
and from the glory of his might;
10 whenever he comes to be glorified in his holy
and to be marvelled in all who trust
— because you trust our witness among you in that day:
11 to which also we always pray for you,
that our Elohim deem you worthy of this calling
and fulfill/**shalam** all the well—approval of goodness
and the work of trust in dynamis:
12 that the name of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
be glorified in you — and you in him,
according to the charism
of our Elohim and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.

THE TORAH VIOLATOR

2 And we ask you, brothers,
by the parousia of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
and by our synagoguing together to him,
2 to not quickly shake the mind, or lament
— neither through spirit
nor through word
nor through epistle as **though** from us
— as that the day of the Messiah is present.

3 Be not seduced by anyone in any manner:
— because unless*.

*this sentence is incomplete in the mss

First comes an apostatizing
and the unveiling of the human of sin
— the son of destruction

2 THESSALONIANS 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 **The adversary**, Who,
 opposeth and exalseth **superciliously exalting** himself
 above all that is called *God* **worded Elohim**,
 or that is *worshipped* **venerated**;
 so that he, as *God* **Elohim**,
 sitteth in the *temple* **nave** of *God* **Elohim**,
 shewing himself that he is *God* **Elohim**.
5 Remember ye not, that, *when I was yet being* with you,
 I *told you* **worded these things unto you?**
6 And now ye know what *withholdeth* **holdeth back**
 that he might be revealed **unto his being unveiled**
 in his *time* **season**.
7 For the mystery of *iniquity* **torah violations**
 doth already work **energizeth**:
 only he who now *letteth* will let **holdeth back**
 until he be *taken out of the way* **your midst**.
8 And then shall that *Wicked* **torah violator**
 be revealed **unveiled**,
 whom *the Lord* **Adonay** shall consume
 with the spirit of his mouth,
 and shall *destroy* **inactivate**
 with the *brightness* **epiphany** of his *coming* **parousia**:
9 *Even him*, whose *coming* **parousia**
 is after the *working* **energizing** of Satan
 with **in** all *power* **dynamis**
 and signs and lying *wonders* **omens**,
10 And with **in** all *deceivableness* **delusion**
of *unrighteousness* **injustice** in them that *perish* **destruct**;
 because for they received not the love of the truth,
 that they might be **unto their being** saved.
11 And for this cause *God* **Elohim** shall send them
 strong delusion **an energized seduction**,
 that they should *believe* **trust** a lie:
12 That they all might be *damned* **judged**
 who *believed* **trusted** not the truth,
 but had *pleasure* **well-approved**
 in *unrighteousness* **injustice**.
13 But we are *bound* **indebted** to *give thanks* **eucharistize**
 alway to *God* **Elohim** for you,
 brethren beloved of *the Lord* **Adonay**,
 because *God* **Elohim** hath from the beginning
 chosen **selected** you to salvation
 through sanctification **in holiness** of the Spirit
 and *belief* **trust** of the truth:
14 Whereunto he called you
 by *through* our *gospel* **evangelism**,
 to the *obtaining* **acquiring** of the glory
 of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**.
15 *Therefore* **So**, brethren, stand *fast* **firm**,
 and *hold* **empower** the traditions
 which ye have been *taught* **doctrinated**,
 whether by *through* word,
 or **whether through** our epistle.
16 Now our
 Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah** himself,
 and *God* **Elohim**, even our Father, which hath loved us,
 and hath given us *everlasting* **eternal** consolation
 and good hope *through grace* **in charism**,
17 *Comfort* **Console** your hearts,
 and stablish you in every good word and work.

THE PETITION OF PAULOS FOR PRAYER

3 Finally, brethren, pray for us,
 that the word of *the Lord* **Adonay** may *have free course* **run**,
 and be glorified, even as *it is* with you:
2 And that we may be *delivered* **rescued** from
 unreasonable **inordinate** and *wicked men* **evil humanity**:
 for all *men* have not *faith* **trust**.
3 But *the Lord* **Adonay** is *faithful* **trustworthy**,
 who shall *stablish* **establish** you,
 and *keep* **guard** you from evil.
4 And we have confidence in *the Lord* **Adonay**
 touching **toward** you,
 that ye both do and *will* **shall** do *the things*
 that which we *command* **evangelize** you.
5 And *the Lord* **Adonay** direct your hearts
 into the love of *God* **Elohim**,
 and into the *patient waiting* **endurance**
 for *Christ* of the **Messiah**.

2 THESSALONIKEUS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 — the adversary who superciliously exalts himself
 above all that is worded Elohim, or that is venerated
 — so that he, as Elohim, sits in the nave of Elohim,
 shewing himself to be Elohim.
5 Remember you not, still being with you,
 I worded these to you?
6 And now you know
 what holds back his being unveiled in his season.
7 For the mystery of torah violations already energizes:
 he alone holds back
 until he becomes from your midst.
8 And then that torah violator is unveiled,
 whom Adonay consumes with the spirit of his mouth
 and inactivates with the epiphany of his parousia
9 — whose parousia is after the energizing of Satan
 in all dynamis and signs and lying omens,
10 and in all delusion of injustice
 in them who destruct:
 for they receive not the love of the truth to save them.
11 And for this cause Elohim sends them
 an energized seduction so that they trust a lie:
12 to judge all who trust not the truth,
 who well-approve injustice.
13 And we we are always indebted
 to eucharistize to Elohim for you brothers,
 beloved of Adonay,
 because from the beginning
 Elohim selected you to salvation
 in holiness of the Spirit and trust of the truth:
14 whereto he called you through our evangelism,
 to the acquiring of the glory
 of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
15 So, brothers, stand firm;
 and empower the traditions doctriated to you
 — whether through word
 — whether through our epistle.
16 And our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah himself
 and Elohim our Father who loved us
 and gave us eternal consolation
 and good hope in charism,
17 consoles your hearts
 and establishes you in every good word and work.

THE PETITION OF PAULOS FOR PRAYER

3 Finally brothers, pray for us
 that the word of Adonay run and be glorified
 even as with you:
2 and rescue us from inordinate and evil humanity:
 for not all have the trust.
3 And trustworthy is Adonay,
 who establishes you and guards you from evil.
4 And we confide in Adonay toward you,
 to both do and continue doing
 what we evangelize you:
5 that Adonay direct your hearts to the love of Elohim
 and to the endurance of the Messiah.

2 THESSALONIANS 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 Now we *command* **evangelize** you, brethren,
in the name
of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
that ye *withdraw yourselves* **abstain**
from every brother that walketh disorderly,
and not after the tradition which he *received* **took** of us.
7 For yourselves know
how ye *ought to follow* **must mimic** us:
for we behaved not ourselves disorderly among you;
8 Neither did we eat any *man's* **one's** bread for naught;
but *wrought* **working**
with **in** labour and *travail* **toil** night and day,
that we might not *be chargeable to* **overburden**
any of you:
9 Not because we have not *power* **authority**,
but to *make give* ourselves *an ensample* **a type** unto you
to *follow* **mimic** us.
10 For even when we were with you,
this we *commanded* **evangelized** you,
that if any *would* **willeth to** not work,
neither *should he* **let him** eat.
11 For we hear
that there are some which walk among you disorderly,
working not at all **not even working**,
but *are busybodies* **overworking**.
12 Now them that are such
we *command* **evangelize** and *exhort* **beseech**
by *through*
our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
that with quietness they work, and eat their own bread.
13 But ye, brethren, be not weary in *well* doing **good**.
14 And if any *man* **one**
obey not our word by *through* this epistle,
note **signify** that man,
and *have no company* **co—mingle not** with him,
that he may *be ashamed* **shame**.
15 Yet *count him* **deem** not as an enemy,
but *admonish him* **remind** as a brother.

BENEDICTION

16 Now *the Lord* **Adonay** of *peace* **shalom** himself
give you *peace* **shalom**
always by **through** all *means* **in every manner**.
The Lord **Adonay** be with you all.
17 The salutation of *Paul* **Paulos** with mine own hand,
which is the *token* **sign** in every epistle:
so **thus** I *write* **scribe**.
18 The *grace* **charism**
of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
be with you all.
Amen.

2 THESSALONIQUEUS 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 And we evangelize you brothers,
in the name of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
to abstain from every brother who walks disorderly
and not after the tradition which he took from us.
7 For you know how you must mimic us:
for we neither behave ourselves disorderly among you;
8 nor eat the bread of anyone for nought;
but work in labor and toil night and day
to not overburden any of you:
9 not because we have no authority,
but to give ourselves to you — a type to mimic us.

10 For even being with you,
we evangelized this to you,
that if any wills to not work, that he neither eat.
11 For we hear
that there are some who walk disorderly among you
— not even working, but overworking.
12 Now we evangelize and beseech
through our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
whoever are such
to work with quietness and eat their own bread:
and you, brothers, weary not in doing good.

14 And if anyone
obeys not our word through this epistle,
signify that man and co—mingle not with him
to shame him.
15 Yet deem him not as an enemy
but remind as a brother.

BENEDICTION

16 And Adonay of shalom himself give you shalom
through all in every manner.
Adonay be with you all.

17 The salutation of Paulos with my own hand,
being the sign in every epistle, thus I scribe.

18 The charism of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
be with you all.
Amen.

1 TIMOTHY 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paul Paulos,
an apostle of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*
by the *commandment order* of *God Elohim* our Saviour,
and *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*,

2 Unto *Timothy Timo Theos*,
my own son **genuine child** in the *faith trust*:
Grace Charism, mercy, and *peace shalom*,
from *God Elohim* our Father
and *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah* our *Lord Adonay*.

PAULOS BESEECHES TIMO THEOS

3 **Exactly** As I besought thee to abide still at Ephesus,
when I went into Macedonia,
that thou mightest *charge evangelize* some
that they
4 *teach no other doctrine* **not doctrinate otherwise**,
Neither *give heed to fables myths*
and *endless unending* genealogies,
which *minister cause* questions,
rather than *Godly edifying administration* of *Elohim*
which is in *faith trust*: *so do*.

5 Now the *end completion/shalom*
of the *commandment evangelism*
is *charity love* out of a pure heart,
and of a good conscience,
and of *faith unfeigned trust unhyppocritical*:
6 From which some having *swerved misaimed*,
have turned aside unto *vain jangling mataeology*;
7 *Desiring Having willed*
to be *teachers doctors* of the *law torah*;
understanding comprehending
neither what they say *word*,
nor *whereof about which* they **thoroughly** affirm.

8 But we know that the *law torah* is good,
if a man **whenever anyone** use it *lawfully torahically*;
9 Knowing this, that the *law torah*
is not *made set* for a *righteous man the just*,

10 *but for the lawless torah violator* and *disobedient insubordinate*,
for the *ungodly irreverent* and for sinners,
for *unholy unmercied* and profane,
for *murderers of fathers patriciders*
and *murderers of mothers matriciders*, for manslayers,
11 For whomongers,
for *them that defile themselves with mankind homosexuals*,
for *menstealers men subduers*,
for liars, for *perjured persons perjurers*,
and if there be any other *thing*
that is *contrary adverse* to sound doctrine;

12 According to
the *glorious gospel evangelism of the glory*
of the blessed *God Elohim*,
which was *committed to my trust entrusted to me*.

THE PERSONAL WITNESS OF PAULOS

12 And I *thank have charism*
Christ Jesus to Messiah Yah Shua our *Lord Adonay*,
who hath *enabled dynamized* me,
for that he *counted deemed* me *faithful trustworthy*,
putting me into the ministry;

13 *Who was before Previously being* a blasphemer,
and a persecutor, and *injurious insulter*:
but I *obtained mercy was mercied*,
because I did it *ignorantly unknowingly*
in *unbelief trustlessness*.

14 And the *grace charism* of our *Lord Adonay*
was exceeding abundant superabounded
with *faith trust* and love
which is in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*.

15 This is a *faithful saying trustworthy word*,
and worthy of all acceptance,
that *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*
came into the *world cosmos* to save sinners;
of whom I am *chief first*.

16 *Howbeit Yet* for this cause
I *obtained mercy was mercied*,
that in me first *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*
might *shew forth indicate* all *longsuffering patience*,

1 TIMO THEOS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos, an apostle of Yah Shua Messiah
by the order of Elohim our Saviour
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah our hope:

2 To Timo Theos, my genuine child in trust:

Charism, mercy and shalom,
from Elohim our Father
and Yah Shua Messiah our Adonay.

PAULOS BESEECHES TIMO THEOS

3 Exactly as I besought you to still abide at Ephesus
when I went into Macedonia,
so that you evangelize some
to neither doctrinate otherwise;
4 nor heed myths and unending genealogies
— which cause questions
rather than the administration of Elohim in trust.

5 And the completion/shalom of the evangelism
is love from a pure heart and a good conscience
and unhyppocritical trust:
6 from which some misaimed,
and turned aside to mataeology;
7 who willed to be doctors of the torah
— neither comprehending what they word,
nor what they thoroughly affirm.

8 And we know the torah is good
— whenever anyone uses it torahically;
9 knowing this, that the torah is not set for the just
— but for the torah violator and insubordinate,
for the irreverent and for sinners,
for unmercied and profane,
for patriciders and matriciders,
for manslayers,
10 for whomongers,
for homosexuals,
for men subduers,
for liars,
for perjurers;
and if any other that is adverse to sound doctrine,
11 according to
the evangelism of the glory of the blessed Elohim
entrusted to me.

THE PERSONAL WITNESS OF PAULOS

12 And I have charism
to Messiah Yah Shua our Adonay,
who dynamized me,
who deemed me trustworthy,
putting me into the ministry:
13 previously being a blasphemer
and a persecutor and insulter:
but I was mercied
because I did it unknowingly in trustlessness.
14 And the charism of our Adonay
superabounded with trust and love
in Messiah Yah Shua.

15 This word is trustworthy
and worthy of all acceptance,
that Messiah Yah Shua
came into the cosmos to save sinners;
of whom I am first.
16 Yet for this cause I was mercied,
that first
Yah Shua Messiah indicate all patience in me,

1 TIMOTHY 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for a *pattern* **prototype** to them
which should hereafter *believe* **trust** on him
to life *everlasting* **eternal**.

BENEDICTION

17 Now unto the *King eternal* **Sovereign of the eons**,
immortal **incorruptible**, invisible,
the only wise *God* **Elohim**,
be honour and glory
for ever and ever **unto the eons of the eons**.
Amen.

THE MANDATE OF PAULOS

18 This *charge* **evangelism** I *commit* **set forth** unto thee,
son Timothy **child Timo Theos**,
according to the prophecies
which *went before on* **preceded upon** thee,
that thou *by* **in** them mightest war a good warfare;
19 Holding *faith* **trust**, and a good conscience;
which some having *put* **shoved** away
concerning *faith* **the trust**
have *made shipwreck* **shipwrecked**:
20 Of whom is Hymenaeus and Alexander;
whom I have delivered unto Satan,
that they may learn **to discipline them** not to blaspheme.

PETITIONS, PRAYERS, INTERCESSIONS, AND EUCHARISTS

2 **So** I *exhort therefore* **beseech**, that, first of all,
supplications **petitions**, prayers, intercessions,
and *giving of thanks* **eucharists**,
be made for all *men* **humanity**;
2 *For kings* **sovereigns**,
and for all *that are* **being** in *authority* **supremacy**;
that we may *lead* **pass through**
a *quiet* **tranquil** and *peaceable life* **quiet existence**
in all *Godliness* **reverence** and *honesty* **veneration**.

3 For this is good and acceptable
in the sight of *God* **Elohim** our Saviour;
4 Who *will* **willeth**
have all men **humanity** to be saved,
and to come unto the knowledge of the truth.
5 For there is one *God* **Elohim**, and one mediator
between *God* **Elohim** and *men* **humanity**,
the *man Christ Jesus* **human Messiah Yah Shua**;
6 Who gave himself a *ransom* **redemption** for all,
to be testified **the witness** in *due* **his own** time.
7 Whereunto I am *ordained* **placed** a preacher,
and an apostle,
(I *speak* **word** the truth in *Christ* **Messiah**, and lie not;)
a *teacher* **doctor** of the *Gentiles* **goyim**
in *faith* **trust** and *verity* **truth**.

COSMIC MANNERS AND COSTUME

8 I *will* therefore **will**
that men pray **in** every *where* **place**,
lifting *up holy* hands **of mercy**,
without **apart from** wrath and *doubting* **reasoning**.
9 In like manner also, that women adorn themselves
in *modest apparel* **cosmic costume**,
with *shamefacedness* **awe**
and *sobriety* **soundmindedness**;
not *with broided* **in braided** hair, or gold, or pearls,
or *costly array* **vastly precious garments**;
10 But (which *becometh* **befitteth** women
professing Godliness **pre—evangelizing Elohim—reverence**)
with *through* good works.
11 Let the woman learn in *silence* **quietness**
with **in** all subjection.
12 But I *suffer* **permit** not a woman to *teach* **doctrinate**,
nor to *usurp authority over* **dominate** the man,
but to be in *silence* **quietness**.
13 For Adam was first *formed* **molded**, then *Eve* **Havvah**.
14 And Adam was not *deceived* **deluded**,
but the woman being *deceived* **deluded**
was **became** in the transgression.
15 *Notwithstanding* **And**
she shall be saved *in* **through** childbearing,
if whenever they *continue* **abide** in *faith* **trust** and *charity* **love**
and holiness with *sobriety* **soundmindedness**.

1 TIMO THEOS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for a *prototype*
to those about to trust on him to life eternal.

BENEDICTION

17 And to the Sovereign of the eons:
incorruptible,
invisible,
the only wise Elohim,
be honor and glory to the eons of the eons.
Amen.

THE MANDATE OF PAULOS

18 Child Timo Theos,
I set forth this evangelism to you,
according to the prophecies that preceded on you,
so that in them, you war a good warfare;
19 holding trust and a good conscience;
which some, concerning the trust,
shoved away and shipwrecked:
20 of whom are Hymenaeus and Alexander;
whom I delivered to Satan
to discipline them to not blaspheme.

PETITIONS, PRAYERS, INTERCESSIONS, AND EUCHARISTS

2 So first of all,
I beseech that petitions, prayers, intercessions
and eucharists be made for all humanity;
2 for sovereigns and for all being in supremacy:
so that we pass through
a tranquil and quiet existence
in all reverence and veneration.
3 For this is good and acceptable
in the sight of Elohim our Saviour;
4 who wills all humanity to be saved
and to come to the knowledge of the truth.

5 For there is one Elohim and one mediator
between Elohim and humanity
— the human Messiah Yah Shua;
6 who gave himself a redemption for all
the witness in his own time:
7 unto whom I am placed a preacher and an apostle.
I word the truth in Messiah and lie not;
a doctor of the goyim in trust and truth.

COSMIC MANNERS AND COSTUME

8 So I will that men pray in every place
lifting hands of mercy
apart from wrath and reasoning.
9 In like manner also
that women adorn themselves in cosmic costume
with awe and soundmindedness;
not in braided hair or gold or pearls
or vastly precious garments;
10 but whatever befits women
who pre—evangelize Elohim—reverence
through good works.
11 Have the woman learn in quietness
in all subjection.
12 And I permit a woman
neither to doctrinate nor to dominate the man
but to be in quietness.
13 For Adam was first molded, then Havvah.
14 And Adam was not deluded;
but the woman being deluded
became in the transgression:
15 and she is saved through childbearing
— whenever they abide in trust and love and holiness
with soundmindedness.

1 TIMOTHY 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE EPISCOPATE

3 This is a true saying **trustworthy word**,
 If a man **anyone**
desire reach for the office of a bishop **episcopate**,
 he *desireth* **panteth after** a good work.

2 A bishop then **So an episcopate**
 must be *blameless* **unapprehendable**,
 the husband **man** of one wife **woman**, *vigilant* **sober**,
sober **soundminded**, of good behaviour **cosmic**,
given to hospitality **befriend strangers**, *apt to teach* **didactic**;

3 *Not given to wine* **No winesop**, no striker,
 not greedy of filthy lucre **avaricious**; but *patient* **gentle**,
 not a brawler **amicable**, not covetous **unavaricious**;

4 One that *ruleth* **presideth well over** his own house,
 having his children in subjection
 with all *gravity* **veneration**;

5 (For if a man **one** know not
 how to *rule* **preside over** his own house,
 how shall he take care
 of the church **ecclesia** of God **Elohim**?)

6 Not a novice **neophyte**,
 lest being *lifted up with pride* **inflated**
 he fall into the *condemnation* **judgment**
 of the devil **Diabolos**.

7 Moreover **And** he must have a good report **witness**
 of them which are without;
 lest he fall into reproach
 and the snare of the devil **Diabolos**.

MINISTERS

8 Likewise *must the deacons be grave* **ministers venerant**,
 not *doubletongued* **doubleworded**,
 not *given to heeding* much wine,
 not *greedy of filthy lucre* **avaricious**;

9 Holding the mystery of the *faith* **trust**
 in a pure conscience.

10 And let these also first be proved;
 then let them *use the office of a deacon* **minister**,
 being *found blameless* **unimpeachable**.

11 *Even so* **Likewise**
 must their wives **women** be *grave* **venerant**,
 not *slanderers* **diabolic**, *sober*,
faithful **trustworthy** in all things.

12 Let the *deacons* **ministers**
 be the *husbands* **men** of one wife **woman**,
ruling well—**presiding over** their children
 and their own houses *well*.

13 For they that
have used the office of a deacon **minister well**
purchase **acquire** to themselves a good degree,
 and *great* **vast** boldness in the *faith* **trust**
 which is in *Christ Jesus* **Messiah Yah Shua**.

14 These *things write* **scribe** I unto thee,
 hoping to come unto thee *shortly* **very quickly**;

15 But *if whenever* I *tarry long* **delay**,
 that thou mayest know
 how thou *oughtest to* **must** behave thyself
 in the house of God **El**,

which is the church **ecclesia** of the living God **Elohim**,
 the pillar and ground of the truth.

THE MEGA PROFESSION OF PAULOS

16 And *without controversy* **professedly**
great **mega** is the mystery of *Godliness* **reverence**:
God **Elohim** was manifest in the flesh,
 justified in the Spirit, seen of angels,
 preached unto in the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
believed on **trusted** in the world **cosmos**,
 received up **taken** into glory.

PAULOS PROPHESES APOSTACY

4 Now the Spirit
speaketh expressly **wordeth rhetorically**,
 that in the latter *times* **seasons**
 some shall depart from the *faith* **trust**,
giving heed to **heeding** seducing spirits,
 and doctrines of *devils* **demons**;

2 *Speaking lies* **Pseudologists** in hypocrisy;

1 TIMO THEOS 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE EPISCOPATE

3 Trustworthy the word!
 If anyone reaches for the episcopate,
 he pants after a good work.

2 So an episcopate must be unapprehendable,
 the man of one woman,
 sober,
 soundminded,
 cosmic,
 befriend strangers,
 didactic,
 no winesop,
 no striker,
 not avaricious:
 but gentle,
 amicable,
 unavaricious,

4 one who presides well over his own house
 having his children in subjection with all veneration.

5 For if one knows not
 how to preside over his own house,
 how cares he for the ecclesia of Elohim?

6 Not a neophyte:
 lest being inflated
 he falls into the judgment of Diabolos:
 and he must have a good witness
 of those outside;

7 lest he fall into reproach and the snare of Diabolos.

MINISTERS

8 Likewise ministers:
 venerant,
 not doubleworded,
 not heeding much wine,
 not avaricious,

9 holding the mystery of the trust in a pure conscience:
 and also first be proved, and then minister:
 being unimpeachable.

11 Likewise their women:
 venerant,
 not diabolic,
 sober,
 trustworthy in all.

12 Ministers:
 the men of one woman,
 well—presiding over their children
 and their own houses.

13 For they who minister well
 acquire to themselves a good degree
 and vast boldness in the trust in Messiah Yah Shua.

14 I scribe these to you
 hoping to come to you very quickly:
 but whenever I delay,
 you know how you must behave yourself
 in the house of El
 — the ecclesia of the living Elohim
 the pillar and ground of the truth.

THE MEGA PROFESSION OF PAULOS

16 And professedly,
 mega is the mystery of reverence
 — Elohim manifested in flesh,
 justified in Spirit,
 seen of angels,
 preached in the goyim,
 trusted in the cosmos,
 taken into glory.

PAULOS PROPHESES APOSTACY

4 And the Spirit words rhetorically,
 that in the latter seasons, some depart from the trust
 — heeding seducing spirits and doctrines of demons:
 pseudologists in hypocrisy

2

1 TIMOTHY 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 having their conscience
 seared with a hot iron **cauterized**;
 3 Forbidding to marry,
 and commanding to abstain from meats **food**,
 which God **Elohim** hath created
 to be received **partaken** with *thanksgiving* **eucharist**
 of them which believe **by the trustworthy**
 and **which** know the truth.
 4 For every creature of God **Elohim** is good,
 and *nothing* **naught** to be *refused* **cast away**,
 if it be received **taken** with *thanksgiving* **eucharist**:
 5 For it is *sanctified* **hallowed**
 by **through** the word of God **Elohim**
 and *prayer* **intercession**.

BEING A GOOD MINISTER

6 If thou put **Lay these in front of** the brethren
 in remembrance of these things,
 thou shalt be a good minister
 of Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah**,
 nourished up **nurtured** in the words of *faith* **the trust**
 and of good doctrine,
 whereunto thou hast *attained* **closely followed**.
 7 But *refuse* **shun**
 profane and *old wives' fables* **anile myths**,
 and exercise thyself *rather* unto *Godliness* **reverence**.
 8 For bodily exercise *profiteth* **benefiteth** little:
 but *Godliness is profitable* **reverence is** unto all things,
 having *promise* **pre—evangelism** of the life that now is,
 and of that which is to come.
 9 This is a *faithful saying* **trustworthy word**
 and worthy of all acceptance.
 10 For *therefore* **thereunto**
 we both labour and suffer reproach,
 because we *trust* **hope** in the living God **Elohim**,
 who is the Saviour of all *men* **humanity**,
 specially of those that believe **the trustworthy**.

Evangelize These things command and teach **doctrinate**.

11 Let no man *despise* **one** **disesteem** thy youth;
 but be thou an *example* **a type**
 of the *believers* **trustworthy**,
 in word, in *conversation* **behaviour**, in *charity* **love**,
 in spirit, in *faith* **trust**, in purity.

12 Till I come, *give attendance* **heed** to reading,
 to *exhortation* **consolation**, to doctrine.

DISREGARD NOT THE CHARISMA

13 Neglect **Disregard** not the *gift* **charisma** that is in thee,
 which was given thee *by* **through** prophecy,
 with the laying on of the hands of the presbytery.
 14 Meditate upon these things;
 give thyself wholly to **be in** them;
 that thy *profiting* **advancement**
 may *appear to* **be manifest among** all.

15 Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine;
 continue **abide** in them:
 for in doing this thou shalt both save thyself,
 and them that hear thee.

ELDERS AND WIDOWS

5 Rebuke not an elder*,
 but *intreat him* **beseech** as a father;
 and the younger *men* as brethren;
 2 The elder** *women* as mothers;
 the younger as sisters, *with in* all purity.

*masculine, **feminine

3 Honour widows that are widows indeed.
 4 But if any widow
 have children or *nephews* **descendants**,
 let them learn first *to shew piety* **reverence**
 at **in his own** home,
 and to *requite* **give back recompense**
 to their *parents* **progenitors**:
 for that is good and acceptable
 before God **in sight of Elohim**.

5 Now she that is a widow indeed, and *desolate alone*,
 trusteth **hopeth** in God **Elohim**,
 and *continueth* **abideth**
 in *supplications* **petitions** and prayers
 night and day.

1 TIMO THEOS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

 their conscience cauterized,
 3 forbidding to marry,
 to abstain from food that Elohim created
 — for the trustworthy who know the truth
 to partake with eucharist.
 4 For every creature of Elohim is good,
 5 and not cast away when taken with eucharist:
 for it is hallowed
 through the word of Elohim and intercession.

BEING A GOOD MINISTER

6 Lay these in front of the brothers:
 to be a good minister of Yah Shua Messiah,
 nurtured in the words of the trust
 and of good doctrine
 which you closely followed:
 7 and shun profane and anile myths
 and exercise yourself to reverence.

8 For bodily exercise benefits little:
 but reverence is to all,
 having pre—evangelism of the life that now is,
 and is to come.

9 Trustworthy the word
 and worthy of all acceptance.
 10 For thereto we both labor and suffer reproach;
 because we hope in the living Elohim
 the Saviour of all humanity
 — specially of the trustworthy:
 11 evangelize and doctrinate these.

12 Have no one disesteem your youth;
 but be a type of the trustworthy
 in word, in behavior, in love,
 in spirit, in trust, in purity
 until I come:
 13 heed to reading, to consolation, to doctrine.

DISREGARD NOT THE CHARISMA

14 Disregard not the charisma within you
 — given you through prophecy
 with the laying on of the hands of the presbytery.
 15 Meditate on these:
 give yourself wholly to be in them
 to manifest your advancement among all.
 16 Heed to yourself and to the doctrine;
 abide in them:
 for in so doing
 you save both yourself and whoever hears you.

ELDERS AND WIDOWS

5 Rebuke not an elder*,
 but beseech as a father;
 the younger as brothers;
 the elder** as mothers;
 2 the younger as sisters, in all purity.

*masculine; **feminine

3 Honor widows who are widows indeed:
 4 and if any widow has children or descendants,
 have them first learn reverence in their own house;
 and to give recompense to their progenitors:
 for that is good and acceptable in sight of Elohim.

5 And she who is a widow indeed, and alone,
 hopes in Elohim
 and abides in petitions and prayers
 night and day:

1 TIMOTHY 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

6 But she that *liveth in pleasure* **luxuriateth**
is dead while she liveth.
7 And **evangelize** these *things give in charge,*
that they may be *blameless unapprehendable.*
8 But if any provide not for his own,
and specially for those of his own house,
he hath denied the *faith trust,*
and is worse than an *infidel the trustless.*
9 Let not a widow be *taken into the number enrolled*
under threescore at less than sixty years old,
having been **become** the *wife woman* of one man,
10 *Well reported of for Witnessed in good works;*
if she have *brought up fostered* children,
if she have lodged strangers,
if she have washed the *saints' feet of the holy,*
if she have relieved the *afflicted tribulated,*
if she have diligently followed every good work.
11 But the younger widows **refuse shun:**
for when **ever** they *have begun to wax wanton sensualize*
against *Christ Messiah, they will to marry;*
12 Having *damnation judgment,*
because they have *cast off set aside* their first *faith trust.*
13 And *withal simultaneously* they learn to be idle,
wandering about *from house to house the houses;*
and not only idle,
but *tattlers babblers* also and *busybodies overworking,*
speaking *things that* which they *ought must* not.
14 **So** I will *therefore* that the younger *women* marry,
bear birth children, *guide the house be housedespotess,*
give none *occasion opportunity*
to **cause** the adversary to speak *reproachfully abusively.*
15 For some are already turned aside after Satan.
16 If any *man trustworthy**
or *woman that believeth trustworthy***
have widows, let them relieve them,
and let not the *church ecclesia* be *charged burdened;*
that it may relieve them that are widows indeed.

*masculine; **feminine

17 Let the elders that *rule preside* well
be *counted deemed* worthy of double honour,
especially they who labour in the word and doctrine.
18 For the scripture *saith wordeth,*
Thou shalt not muzzle the ox that treadeth *out the corn.*
And, The *labourer worker* is worthy of his reward.
Deuteronomy 25:4, Loukas 10:7

RESOLVING ACCUSATIONS

19 Against an elder receive not an accusation,
but unless except before two or three witnesses.
20 Them that sin *rebuke before reprove in sight of all,*
that *others the rest* also may *fear awe.*
21 I *charge witness* thee *before God in sight of Elohim,*
and the *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,*
and the *elect select* angels,
that thou *observe guard* these *things*
without preferring one before another
apart from prejudging,
doing *nothing naught* by *partiality prejudice.*
22 Lay **Place** hands suddenly on no *man one,*
neither be *partaker partake* of *other men's another's* sins:
keep **guard** thyself *pure hallowed.*
23 Drink no longer water,
but use a little wine for thy stomach's sake
and *thine often infirmities thy frequent frailties.*
24 Some *men's human's* sins
are *open beforehand prevenient,*
going before preceding to judgment;
and some *men* they follow after.
25 Likewise also the good works of *some*
are *manifest beforehand prevenient;*
and they that are otherwise
cannot be *hid secreted.*

6 Let as many servants as are under the yoke
count deem their own *masters despotes*
worthy of all honour,
that the name of *God Elohim* and *his doctrine*
be not blasphemed.

2 And they
that have *believing masters trustworthy despotes,*
let them not *despise disesteem* them,

1 TIMO THEOS 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

6 and she who luxuriates, is dead while she lives:
7 — and evangelize these
— that they be unapprehendable.
8 And if anyone provides not for his own
and specially for those of his own house,
he denies the trust
and is worse than the trustless.
9 Enroll not a widow at less than sixty years:
having been the woman of one man
witnessed in good works;
10 if she fostered children,
if she lodged strangers,
if she washed the feet of the holy,
if she relieved the tribulated,
if she diligently followed every good work.
11 But shun the younger widows:
for whenever they sensualize against Messiah
they will to marry;
12 having judgment,
because they set aside their first trust:
13 and simultaneously they learn to be idle
wandering about the houses:
and not only idle, but also babblers and overworking;
speaking what they must not.
14 So I will that the younger marry,
birth children, be housedespotess;
giving no opportunity
to cause the adversary to speak abusively.
15 For some are already turned aside after Satan.
16 If any trustworthy* or trustworthy** have widows,
relieve them
and burden not the ecclesia;
that it relieve them who are widows indeed.

*masculine; **feminine

17 Deem the elders who preside well
worthy of double honor,
especially who labor in the word and doctrine.
18 For the scripture words,
Muzzle not the ox that treads.
And, The worker is worthy of his reward.
Deuteronomy 25:4, Loukas 10:7

RESOLVING ACCUSATIONS

19 Receive no accusation against an elder
unless except in front of two or three witnesses.
20 Reprove them who sin in sight of all
so that the rest also awe.
21 I witness you in sight of Elohim
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah and the select angels;
guard these apart from prejudging,
doing naught by prejudice.
22 Place hands suddenly on no one;
partake not of the sins of another;
guard yourself hallowed;
23 drink no longer water
but use a little wine for sake of your stomach
and your frequent frailties.
24 The sins of some humans are prevenient,
preceding to judgment:
and some follow after.
25 Likewise also the good works are prevenient;
and those that are otherwise cannot be secreted.

6 As many as are servants under the yoke
deem your own despotes worthy of all honor;
so as not to blaspheme
the name of Elohim and the doctrine

2 And whoever has trustworthy despotes,
disesteem them not;

1 TIMOTHY 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

because they are brethren;
but rather *do them service* **in servitude**,
because they are *faithful* **trustworthy** and beloved,
partakers **supporters** of the *benefit* **good work**.
These *things teach* **doctrinate** and *exhort* **beseech**.

PSEUDO DOCTRINE

3 If any *man teach* **one doctrinate** otherwise,
and *consent* **cometh** not to *wholesome* **sound** words,
even the words
of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
and to the doctrine
which is according to *Godliness* **reverence**;
4 He is *proud* **inflated**, knowing *nothing* **naught**,
but *doting* **is diseased** about questions
and *strifes of words* **logomachy**,
whereof *cometh* **becometh** envy, *strife* **contention**,
railings **blasphemies**, evil surmisings,
5 *Perverse disputings of men* **Human diatribes**
of corrupt minds,
and *destitute* **deprived** of the truth,
supposing **presuming**
that gain is Godliness **reverence to be gain**:
from such *withdraw thyself* **depart**.
6 But *Godliness* **reverence**
with *contentment* **selfcontentment**
is *great* **mega** gain.
7 For we brought *nothing* **naught** into this *world* **cosmos**,
and it is *certain* **evident**
we can *carry nothing out* **bring naught forth**.
8 And having *food* **sustenance** and *raiment* **covering**
let us be therewith *content* **satisfied**.
9 But they that will **to be rich**
fall into *temptation* **testing** and a *snare*,
and into many
foolish **mindless** and *hurtful lusts* **injurious pantings**,
which *drown men* **sink humanity**
in *destruction* **ruin** and *perdition* **destruction**.
10 For the *love of money* **befriending silver**
is the root of all evil:
which while some *coveted after* **reached for**,
they have *erred* **strayed** from the *faith* **trust**,
and pierced themselves through
with many *sorrows* **griefs**.
11 But thou, O *man* **humanity** of *God* **Elohim**,
flee these *things*;
and *follow after righteousness* **pursue justness**,
Godliness **reverence**, *faith* **trust**, *love*,
patience **endurance**, *meekness*.
12 *Fight* **Agonize** the good *fight* **agony of faith the trust**,
lay **take** hold on eternal life,
whereunto thou art also called,
and hast professed a good profession
before **in sight of** many witnesses.
13 I *give* **evangelize** thee *charge*
in the sight of *God* **Elohim**,
who *quickeneth* **enliveneth** all *things*,
and *before Christ Jesus* **Messiah Yah Shua**,
who *before* **in front of** Pontius *Pilate* **Pilatos**
witnessed a good *confession* **profession**;
14 That thou *keep* **guard** this *commandment* **misvah**
without spot **unstained**,
unrebukeable **unapprehendable**,
until the *appearing* **epiphany**
of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**:
15 Which in his *times* **seasons** he shall shew,
who is the blessed and only *Potentate* **Dynast**,
the *King* **Sovereign** of *kings* **reigners**,
and *Lord* **Adonay** of *lords* **adoniyim**;
16 Who only hath *immortality* **athanasia**,
dwelling in the **unapproachable** light
which no man can approach unto;
whom no *man* **human** hath seen, nor can see:
to whom be honour and power **everlasting eternal**.
Amen.

WARNING THE RICH

17 *Charge* **Evangelize** them that are rich in this *world* **eon**,
that they be not highminded,
nor *trust* **hope** in uncertain riches,
but in the living *God* **Elohim**,

1 TIMO THEOS 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

because they are brothers:
but rather in servitude
because they are trustworthy and beloved
— supporters of the good work.
Doctrinate these and beseech.

PSEUDO DOCTRINE

3 If anyone doctrinates otherwise
and comes not to sound words,
— the words of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
and to the doctrine according to reverence;
4 he is inflated, knowing naught;
but is diseased about questions and logomachy;
whereof becomes envy,
contention,
blasphemies,
evil surmisings,
5 human diatribes of corrupt minds,
deprived of the truth,
presuming reverence to be gain:
depart from such:
6 but reverence with selfcontentment is mega gain.
7 For we brought naught into this cosmos
and it is evident we can bring naught forth.
8 And having sustenance and covering,
be satisfied.
9 And whoever wills to be rich
falls into testing and a snare;
and into many mindless and injurious pantings,
which sink humanity in ruin and destruction.
10 For befriending silver is the root of all evil:
which, while some reach for,
strayed from the trust
and pierced themselves through with many griefs.
11 And you, O humanity of Elohim, flee these,
and pursue:
justness,
reverence,
trust,
love,
endurance,
meekness:
12 agonize the good agony of the trust,
take hold on eternal life
— to which you were also called,
and professed a good profession
in sight of many witnesses.
13 I evangelize you in the sight of Elohim
who enlivens all:
and Messiah Yah Shua
who witnessed a good profession
in front of Pontius Pilatos:
to guard this misvah
— unstained,
unapprehendable
until the epiphany of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah:
15 which he shows in his seasons
— the blessed and only Dynast
the Sovereign of reigners
and Adonay of adoniyim;
16 who alone has athanasia:
dwelling in the unapproachable light
whom no human has seen, nor is able to see:
to whom be honor and eternal power.
Amen.
17 Evangelize them who are rich in this eon,
that they neither be highminded
nor hope in uncertain riches
— but in the living Elohim

WARNING THE RICH

1 TIMOTHY 6

exeGeser ready research BIBLE

18 who giveth **presenteth** us richly all *things* to enjoy;
That they *do* **work** good,
that they be rich in good works,
ready to distribute **to share well**,
willing to communicate **to commune**;
19 *Laying up in store* **Treasuring** for themselves
a good foundation
against the time to come **unto the about to be**,
that they may *lay* **take** hold on eternal life.

FINAL MANDATE AND BENEDICTION

20 O *Timothy* **Timo Theos**,
keep **guard** that
which is *committed to thy trust* **laid by thee**,
avoiding **turning aside**
from profane and vain *babblings* **voices**,
and *oppositions* **the antithesis**
of *science falsely so called* **pseudonymed knowledge**:
21 Which some *professing* **pre—evangelizing**
have *erred* **misaimed** concerning the *faith* **trust**.
Grace **Charism** be with thee.
Amen.

1 TIMO THEOS 6

exeGeser companion BIBLE

18 who presents us richly to enjoy all;
to work good,
to enrich in good works,
to share well,
to commune;
19 treasuring a good foundation for themselves
to the about to be,
to take hold on eternal life.

FINAL MANDATE AND BENEDICTION

20 O Timo Theos, guard that laid by you,
turning aside from profane and vain voices
and the antithesis of pseudonymed knowledge:
21 which some pre—evangelize,
and misaim concerning the trust.

The charism be with you.
Amen.

2 TIMOTHY 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paul Paulos, an apostle of Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah
by **through** the will of God Elohím,
according to the *promise* **pre—evangelism** of life
which is in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*,
2 To Timothy **Timo Theos**, my dearly beloved son **child**:
Grace Charism, mercy, and *peace shalom*,
from God Elohím the Father
and *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua* our Lord Adonay.
3 I thank God **have charism** to Elohím,
whom I serve **liturgize** from my *forefathers progenitors*
with **in** pure conscience,
that *without ceasing* **unceasingly**
I have remembrance of **concerning** thee
in my *prayers* **petitions** night and day;
4 *Greatly desiring* **Yearning** to see thee,
being mindful of **remembering** thy tears,
that I may be filled/**shalamed** with *joy cheer*;
5 *When I call to* **Taking** remembrance
of the *unfeigned faith* **unhypocritical trust** that is in thee,
which *dwelt first in* **indwelt**
thy *grandmother* **mammy** Lois, and thy mother Eunice;
and I am *persuaded* **convinced** that in thee also.
6 *Wherefore* **For which cause**
I put **remind** thee *in remembrance*
that thou *stir up* **refire** the *gift* **charisma** of God Elohím,
which is in thee
by **through** the *putting* **laying** on of my hands.
7 For God Elohím hath not given us
the spirit of *fear* **cowardice**;
but of *power* **dynamis**, and of love, and of a sound mind.
8 **So** Be not thou *therefore* ashamed
of the *testimony* **witness** of our Lord Adonay,
nor of me his prisoner:
but *be thou partaker of the afflictions* **co—suffer**
of **in** the *gospel* **evangelism**
according to the *power* **dynamis** of God Elohím;
9 Who hath saved us, and called us with an holy calling,
not according to our works,
but according to his own
purpose **prothesis** and *grace* **charism**,
which was given us in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*
before the world began **eternal time**,
10 But is now *made* manifest
by **through** the *appearing* **epiphany**
of our Saviour *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*,
who hath *abolished* **indeed inactivated** death,
and hath *brought* **enlightened** life and immortality *to light*
through the *gospel* **evangelism**:
11 Whereunto I am *appointed* **placed**
a preacher, and an apostle,
and a *teacher* **doctor** of the *Gentiles* **goyim**.
12 For the which cause I also suffer these *things*:
nevertheless **yet** I am not ashamed:
for I know whom I have *believed* **trusted**,
and am *persuaded* **convinced** that he is able to *keep* **guard**
that which I have *committed* **surrendered** unto him
against **unto** that day.
13 Hold fast the *form* **prototype** of sound words,
which thou hast heard of me,
in *faith* **trust** and love
which is in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*.
14 That good *thing* which was *committed unto* **laid by** thee
keep by **guard through** the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**
which *dwelleth in* **indwelleth** us.
15 This thou knowest,
that all they which are in Asia be turned away from me;
of whom are Phygellus and Hermogenes.
16 *The Lord* **Adonay** give mercy
unto the house of Onesiphorus;
for he oft refreshed me,
and was not ashamed of my *chain* **fetter**:
17 But, *when he was* **being** in Rome,
he sought me out very diligently, and found me.
18 *The Lord* **grant** **Adonay** **give** unto him
that he may find mercy of *the Lord* **Adonay** in that day:
and in *how many things* **as much as**
he ministered unto me at Ephesus,
thou knowest *very well* **better**.

2 TIMO THEOS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos, an apostle of Yah Shua Messiah
through the will of Elohím,
according to the pre—evangelism of life
in Messiah Yah Shua:
2 To Timo Theos, beloved child:
Charism, mercy and shalom
from Elohím the Father
and Messiah Yah Shua our Adonay.
3 I have charism to Elohím,
whom I liturgize from my progenitors
in pure conscience,
that unceasingly I have remembrance concerning you
in my petitions night and day;
4 yearning to see you,
remembering your tears,
that I be filled/**shalamed** with cheer;
5 taking remembrance
of the *unhypocritical trust* within you,
which first *indwelt* your mammy Lois
and your mother Eunice:
and I am convinced, also in you:
6 for which cause I remind you
to *refire* the *charisma* of Elohím within you
through the *laying on* of my hands.
7 For Elohím gives us not the spirit of cowardice;
but of dynamis and of love and of a sound mind.
8 So neither shame of the witness of our Adonay,
nor of me his prisoner:
but *co—suffer* in the evangelism
according to the dynamis of Elohím;
9 who saved us and called us with an holy calling
— not according to our works
but according to his own prothesis and charism
given us in Messiah Yah Shua preceding eternal time;
10 and is now manifest through the epiphany
of our Saviour Yah Shua Messiah;
who indeed inactivated death
and enlightened life and immortality
through the evangelism:
11 whereto I am placed
— a preacher and an apostle and a doctor of the goyim.
12 For which cause I also suffer these:
yet I am not ashamed:
13 for I know whom I have trusted
and am convinced that he is able to guard
what I surrender to him to that day.
14 Hold fast the prototype of sound words,
which you heard of me,
in trust and love in Messiah Yah Shua.
15 Guard the good laid by you
through the Holy Spirit indwelling us.
16 Know this:
that all in Asia turned from me;
of whom are Phygellus and Hermogenes.
17 Adonay give mercy to the house of Onesiphorus;
for he often refreshed me
and shamed not of my fetter:
18 But, being in Rome,
he sought me out very diligently and found me.
Adonay give him
to find mercy from Yah Veh in that day:
and as much as he ministered to me at Ephesus,
you know much better.

2 TIMOTHY 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

ENDURING HARDSHIP

2 So Thou *therefore*, my son,
be strong **dynamized** in the *grace* **charism**
that is in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*.
2 And the *things* **those** that thou hast heard of me
among **through** many witnesses,
the same **commit set** thou **forth**
to *faithful men* **trustworthy humanity**,
3 who shall be *able* **ample** to *teach* **doctrinate** others also.
So Thou *therefore* endure *hardness* **hardship**,
as a good *soldier* **warrior**
of *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**.
4 No man **one** that warreth entangleth himself
with the *affairs* **transactions of this life** **existence**;
that he may please him
who hath *chosen* **enlisted** him to be a *soldier*.
5 And if a man **whenever anyone**
also *strive* **contend** for masteries,
yet is he not *crowned* **wreathed**,
except **unless** he *strive lawfully* **contend torahically**.
6 The *husbandman* that *laboureth* must be *first partaker*
cultivator must labor ere he partake of the fruits.
7 Consider **Comprehend** what I say **word**;
and the *Lord* **indeed Adonay** give thee
understanding **comprehension** in all *things*.
8 Remember that *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**
of the *seed* **sperma** of David
was raised from the dead
according to my *gospel* **evangelism**:
9 Wherein I *suffer trouble* **endure hardship**,
as an evil *doer* **worker**, *even* unto bonds;
but the word of *God* **Elohim** is not bound.
10 Therefore **So** I endure all *things*
for the *elect's* **select's** sakes,
that they may also obtain the salvation
which is in *Christ Jesus* **Messiah Yah Shua** with eternal glory.
11 It is a *faithful saying* **trustworthy word**:
For if we be *dead with him* **co—die**,
we shall also *live with him* **co—live**:
12 If we *suffer* **endure**,
we shall also *reign with him* **co—reign**:
if we deny *him*, he also *will* **shall** deny us:
13 If we *believe not* **distrust**,
yet he abideth *faithful* **trustworthy**:
he cannot deny himself.
14 Of these *things* **put remind** them in *remembrance*,
charging **witnessing**
them before the *Lord* **in the sight of Adonay**
that they *strive* **logomachize** not about words to no profit,
but to the *subverting* **catastrophe** of the hearers.
15 Study **Be diligent** to *shew* **present** thyself
approved unto *God* **Elohim**,
a *workman* **worker**,
that needeth not to be *ashamed* **unashamed**,
rightly dividing **straightcutting** the word of truth.
16 But *shun* **stand aloof**
from profane and vain *babblings* **voices**:
for they *will increase* **shall advance**
unto more *ungodliness* **irreverence**.
17 And their word *will eat* **shall pasture**
as *doth* a *canker* **gangrene**:
of whom is Hymenaeus and Philetus;
18 Who concerning the truth have *erred* **misaimed**,
saying **wording**
that the resurrection *is past* **hath** already **become**;
and *overthrow* **overturn** the *faith* **trust** of some.
19 Nevertheless **But yet indeed**
the foundation of *God* **Elohim** standeth *sure* **solid**,
having this seal,
The Lord **Adonay Yah Veh** knoweth them that are his.
And,
Let every one that nameth the name of *Christ* **Messiah**
depart from *iniquity* **injustice**.

Nachum 1:7, Yahn 10:14

20 But in a *great* **mega** house
there are not only vessels of gold and of silver,
but also of wood and of *earth* **clay**;
and some **indeed** to honour, and some to dishonour.
21 If a man **ever anyone** therefore purge himself from these,

2 TIMO THEOS 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

ENDURING HARDSHIP

2 So my son,
dynamize in the charism in Messiah Yah Shua.
2 And what you hear from me
through many witnesses,
set forth to trustworthy humanity,
who are ample to doctrinate others also.
3 So endure hardship
as a good warrior of Yah Shua Messiah.
4 No one who wars
entangles himself with the transactions of existence;
so as to please him who enlisted him.
5 And whenever anyone contends for masteries
he still is not wreathed unless he contends torahically.
6 The cultivator must labor
ere he partake the fruits.
7 Comprehend what I word;
so that indeed,
Adonay gives you comprehension in all.
8 Remember that Yah Shua Messiah
of the sperma of David
was raised from the dead
according to my evangelism:
9 wherein I endure hardship as an evil worker
— to bonds;
but the word of Elohim is not bound.
10 So I endure all for sake of the select,
so that they also obtain the salvation
in Messiah Yah Shua with eternal glory.
11 Trustworthy the word:
For if we co—die, we also co—live;
if we endure, we also co—reign;
if we deny, he also denies us;
if we distrust, he abides trustworthy;
he cannot deny himself.
14 Remind them of these,
witnessing in the sight of Adonay
to not logomachize about words that profit not
to the catastrophe of the hearers.
15 Be diligent to present yourself approved to Elohim,
a worker unashamed
straightcutting the word of truth:
16 and stand aloof from profane and vain voices;
for they advance to more irreverence;
17 and their word pastures as a gangrene:
of whom are Hymenaeus and Philetus;
18 who concerning the truth, misaimed,
wording that the resurrection already became:
and they overturn the trust of some.
19 But yet indeed
the foundation of Elohim still stands solid
— having this seal,
Yah Veh knows who are his.
And, Everyone who names the name of Messiah
departs from injustice.
Nachum 1:7, Yahn 10:14
20 And in a mega house there are vessels
— not only of gold and of silver
but also of wood and of clay;
and some indeed to honor
and some to dishonor:
21 so whenever anyone purges himself from these

2 TIMOTHY 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

he shall be a vessel unto honour,
sanctified **hallowed**,
and meet for the master's use **useful to the despotes**,
and prepared unto every good work.
22 Flee also youthful **lusts pantings**:
but follow **righteousness pursue justness**,
faith trust, charity love, peace shalom,
with them that call on the **Lord Adonay**
out of a pure heart.
23 But foolish and **unlearned undisciplined** questions
avoid **shun**,
knowing that they **do gender birth** strifes.
24 And the servant of the **Lord Adonay** must not strive;
but be gentle unto all **men**,
apt to teach didactic, patient enduring evil,
25 In meekness
instructing **disciplining** those that oppose themselves;
if God peradventure lestever Elohim
will **shall** give them repentance
to the **acknowledging knowledge** of the truth;
26 And that they may **recover themselves sober up**
out of the snare of the **devil Diabolos**,
who are **taken captive captured alive** by him
at **unto** his will.

THE FINAL APOSTACY

3 This know also, that in the **last final** days
perilous times furious seasons
shall **come become present**.
2 For **men humanity** shall **be**
lovers of their own selves befriending self,
covetous befriending silver, boasters braggarts, proud,
blasphemers, **disobedient distrusting** to parents,
unthankful uneucharistic, unholy unmercied,
3 **Without natural affection Selfish**,
trucebreakers disagreeable, false accusers diabolic,
incontinent uncontrollable, fierce savage,
despisers of those that are good unfriendly,
4 **Traitors, heady precipitous, highminded inflated**,
lovers of befriending pleasures
more than **lovers of God befriending Elohim**;
5 Having a form of **Godliness reverence**,
but denying the **power dynamis** thereof:
from such turn away.
6 For of this sort are they which creep into houses,
and **lead captive silly captivate little** women
laden heaped with sins,
led away with **divers lusts pantings**,
7 **Ever Always** learning,
and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth.
8 Now as **in the manner**
Jannes and Jambres withstood **Moses Mosheh**,
so **thus** do these also **resist withstand** the truth:
men humans of corrupt minds,
reprobate disapproved concerning the **faith trust**.
9 But they shall **proceed advance** no **further more**:
for their **folly mindlessness**
shall be **manifest exposed** unto all **men**,
as their's also was **became**.

THE FINAL MANDATE OF PAULOS

10 But thou hast
fully known closely followed my doctrine,
manner of life the lifestyle, purpose the prothesis,
faith the trust, longsuffering the patience,
charity the love, patience the endurance,
11 **the Persecutions, afflictions the sufferings**,
which came unto such as became me
at Antioch, at Iconium, at Lystra;
what **manner** persecutions I endured:
but out of **them all**
the Lord delivered Adonay rescued me.
12 Yea, and all that will **to live Godly reverently**
in **Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua** shall suffer persecution.

2 TIMO THEOS 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

he becomes a vessel to honor
— hallowed and useful to the despotes
prepared to every good work.
22 And flee youthful **pantings**:
and pursue **justness**,
trust,
love,
and **shalom**
with them who call on **Adonay** from a pure heart.
23 And **shun** foolish and **undisciplined** questions,
knowing that they **birth** strifes:
24 and the servant of **Adonay** never strives;
but is **gentle**,
didactic,
endures evil to all;
and in **meekness**
disciplines them who oppose themselves;
lestever Elohim gives them repentance
to the **knowledge of the truth**;
26 and that they **sober up** from the snare of **Diabolos**
— who **captures** them alive to his will.

THE FINAL APOSTACY

3 Know this also
that in the **final days** **furious seasons** are present.
2 For there **becomes** **humanity**
befriending self,
befriending silver,
braggarts,
proud,
blasphemers,
distrusting to parents,
uneucharistic,
unmercied,
3 **selfish**,
disagreeable,
diabolic,
uncontrollable,
savage,
unfriendly,
4 **traitors**,
precipitous,
inflated:
befriending pleasures more than **befriending Elohim**;
5 **having a form of reverence**
but denying the **dynamis** thereof;
— from such turn away.
6 For of this sort are they who creep into houses
and **captivate little** women **heaped** with sins
led away with **divers pantings**;
7 **ever learning**
and never able to come to the knowledge of the truth.
8 And even as **Jannes and Jambres** withstood **Mosheh**,
thus also these **withstand** the truth:
humans of corrupt minds
disapproved concerning the **trust**:
but they **advance** no more:
9 for their **mindlessness** is **exposed** to all
as theirs also **became**.

THE FINAL MANDATE OF PAULOS

10 And you — you **closely followed** my doctrine,
lifestyle,
prothesis,
the trust,
the patience,
the love,
the endurance,
11 **the persecutions**,
the sufferings;
such as **became** me at Antioch, at Iconium, at Lystra;
what **manner** persecutions I endured:
and **Adonay** rescued me from all.
12 Yes and all who will **to live reverently**
in **Messiah Yah Shua** suffer persecution:

2 TIMOTHY 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

13 But evil men **humanity** and seducers **enchanters**
shall wax worse and **advance** worse,
deceiving **seducing**, and being deceived **seduced**.

14 But **continue abide** thou in the things **those**
which thou hast learned
and hast been **assured of entrusted with**,
knowing of whom thou hast learned **them**;

15 And that from a **child infancy**
thou hast known the **holy scriptures priestal scribings**,
which are able to **make enwise** thee **wise**
unto salvation through **faith trust**
which is in **Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua**.

ALL SCRIPTURE IS ELOHIM—SPIRITED

16 All scripture
is given by inspiration of **God Elohim—Spirited**,
and is **profitable beneficial** for doctrine,
for **reproof proof**, for **correction setting straight**,
for **instruction discipline** in **righteousness justness**:

17 That the **man human** of **God Elohim**
may be **perfect equipped**,
thoroughly **furnished completed/shalamed**
unto all good works.

4 I **charge thee witness** therefore
before God in sight of Elohim,
and the **Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
who shall judge the **quick living** and the dead
at his **appearing epiphany**
and his **kingdom sovereignty**;

2 Preach the word;
be instant in season stand by opportunely,
out of season inopportunely;
reprove, rebuke,
exhort with **in** all **longsuffering patience** and doctrine.

3 For the **time will come season shall be**
when they **will shall** not **endure tolerate** sound doctrine;
but after their own **lusts pantings**
shall they heap to themselves **teachers doctors**,
having itching ears tickling their hearing;

4 And they shall **indeed**
turn away **their ears** from **hearing** the truth,
and shall **be turned turn** unto **fables myths**.

5 But **watch be** thou **sober** in all things,
endure **afflictions hardship**, do the work of an evangelist,
make full proof of fully bear thy ministry.

THE DEPARTURE OF PAULOS

6 For I am now ready to be **offered libated**,
and the **time season** of my departure
is at hand standeth by.

7 I have **fought agonized** a good **fight agony**,
I have **finished completed/shalamed** my **course race**,
I have **kept guarded** the **faith trust**;

8 Henceforth there is laid up for me
a **crown wreath** of **righteousness justness**,
which the **Lord Adonay**, the **righteous just** judge,
shall give me **at in** that day:
and not to me only,
but unto all them also that love his **appearing epiphany**.

9 **Do thy diligence Be diligent**
to come **shortly quickly** unto me:

10 For Demas hath forsaken me,
having loved this present **world eon**,
and is departed unto **Thessalonica Thessalonikee**;
Crescens to Galatia, Titus unto Dalmatia.

11 Only **Luke Loukas** is with me.
Take **Mark Markos**, and bring him with thee:
for he is **profitable useful** to me **for unto** the ministry.
And Tychicus have I **sent apostolized** to Ephesus.

12 The cloak that I left at Troas with Carpus,
when thou comest, bring **with thee**,
and the **books scrolls**, but especially the parchments.

BEING ON GUARD

14 Alexander the coppersmith
did indicated me much evil:
the **Lord reward Adonay give** him according to his works:

15 Of whom **be guard** thou **ware** also;
for he hath **greatly extremely** withstood our words.

16 At **In** my first **answer pleading**
no man **stood one convened** with me,
but all **men** forsook me:

2 TIMO THEOS 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

13 and evil humanity and enchanters advance worse
— seducing and seduced.

14 And you, abide in those you learned
and are entrusted with,
knowing of whom you learned;
and that from infancy

15 you have known the priestal scribings
which are able to enwise you to salvation
through trust in Messiah Yah Shua.

ALL SCRIPTURE IS ELOHIM—SPIRITED

16 All scripture is Elohim—Spirited and beneficial
for doctrine,
for proof,
for setting straight,
for discipline in justness

17 — to equip the human of Elohim
— thoroughly complete/at shalom
unto all good works.

4 So I witness in sight of Elohim
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah,
who judges the living and the dead
at his epiphany and his sovereignty:
preach the word;
stand by opportunely and inopportunely;
reprove,
rebuke,
exhort in all patience and doctrine:

3 For the season becomes
that they not tolerate sound doctrine;
but after their own pantings
they heap doctors to themselves
who tickle their hearing;

4 and indeed, they turn from hearing the truth
and turn to myths.

5 And you,
be sober in all,
endure hardship,
do the work of an evangelist,
fully bear your ministry.

THE DEPARTURE OF PAULOS

6 For I am now ready to be libated
and the season of my departure stands by.

7 I agonized a good agony;
I completed/shalamed my race;
I guarded the trust:

8 henceforth a wreath of justness is laid up for me
which Adonay the just judge gives me in that day
— and not only to me
but also to all them who love his epiphany.

9 Be diligent to come to me quickly:
10 for Demas forsook me,
loving this present eon;
and departed to Thessalonikee;
Crescens to Galatia;
Titus to Dalmatia:
11 only Loukas is with me.

12 Take Markos and bring him with you:
for he is useful to me to the ministry.
And I apostolized Tychicus to Ephesus.

13 When you come,
bring the cloak I left at Troas with Carpus
and the scrolls — especially the parchments.

BEING ON GUARD

14 Alexander the coppersmith indicates me much evil;
Adonay give him according to his works:
whom also, you guard;
for he extremely withstands our words.

16 In my first pleading
no one convened with me, but all forsook me:

2 TIMOTHY 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

I pray God
that it may **it** not be **laid reckoned** to their charge **them**.
17 *Notwithstanding the Lord* **And Adonay** stood with **by** me,
and *strengthened* **dynamized** me;
that **by through** me
the preaching might be fully *known* **borne**,
and that all the *Gentiles* **goyim** might hear:
and I was *delivered* **rescued** out of the mouth of the lion.
18 And the Lord **Adonay** shall *deliver* **rescue** me
from every evil work,
and *will preserve* **shall save** me unto his
heavenly kingdom **sovereigndom of the heavenlies**:
to whom be glory
for ever and ever **unto the eons of the eons**.
Amen.

SALUTES AND BENEDICTION

19 Salute Prisca and Aquila,
and the household of Onesiphorus.
20 Erastus abode at Corinth:
but Trophimus have I left at *Miletum* sick **Miletus frail**.
21 *Do thy diligence* **Be diligent**
to come *before winter* **ere the downpour**.
Eubulus *greeteth* **saluteth** thee,
and Pudens, and Linus, and Claudia, and all the brethren.
22 *The Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
be with thy spirit.
Grace **Charism** be with you.
Amen.

2 TIMO THEOS 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

so be it not reckoned to them.
17 And Adonay stood by me and dynamized me;
to fully bear the preaching through me;
and that all the goyim hear:
and I was rescued from the mouth of the lion:
18 and Adonay rescues me from every evil work
and saves me to his sovereigndom of the heavenlies:
to whom be glory to the eons of the eons.
Amen.

SALUTES AND BENEDICTION

19 Salute Prisca and Aquila
and the household of Onesiphorus.
20 Erastus abides at Corinth
and I left Trophimus frail at Miletus.
21 Be diligent to come ere the downpour.
Eubulus salutes you
— and Pudens and Linus and Claudia
and all the brothers.
22 Adonay Yah Shua Messiah be with your spirit.
Charism be with you.
Amen.

TITUS 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paul Paulos, a servant of God Elohim,
and an apostle of Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah,
according to the faith trust
of God's elect Elohim's select,
and the acknowledging knowledge of the truth
which is after Godliness reverence;
2 In hope of eternal life, which God Elohim,
that cannot lie the nonpseudo
promised pre—evangelized
before the world began preceding eternal times;
3 But hath in due times his own seasons
manifested his word through in preaching,
which is committed entrusted unto me
according to the commandment order
of God Elohim our Saviour;
4 To Titus, mine own son genuine child
after the according to common faith trust:
Grace Charism, mercy, and peace shalom,
from God Elohim the Father
and the Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
our Saviour.

SEATING OFFICERS

5 For this cause left I thee in Crete,
that thou shouldest set in order the things arrange those
that are wanting lacking,
and ordain seat elders in every city,
as I had appointed ordained thee:
6 If any be blameless unaccusable,
the husband man of one wife woman,
having faithful trustworthy children
not accused under accusation of riot dissipation
or unruly insubordination.
7 For a bishop an episcopate
must be blameless unaccusable,
as the steward administrator of God Elohim;
not selfwilled selfpleasing, not soon angry wrathful,
not given to wine no winesop, no striker,
not given to filthy lucre avaricious;
8 But a lover of hospitality befriending strangers,
a lover of good men befriending good,
sober soundminded,
just, holy merciful, temperate self—controlled;
9 Holding fast Upholding the faithful trustworthy word
as he hath been taught of doctrine,
that he may be able by in sound doctrine
both to exhort beseech and to convince reprove
the gainsayers contradicters.

EXPOSING INSUBORDINATES

10 For there are many
unruly and vain talkers insubordinate mataeologists
and deceivers thought deluders,
specially they of the circumcision:
Whose mouths must be stopped,
who subvert overturn whole houses,
teaching things doctrinating which they ought must not,
for filthy lucre's sake shameful gain.
12 One of themselves, even a prophet of their own, said,
The Cretians are always ever liars,
evil beasts, slow bellies idle wombs.
13 This witness is true.
Wherefore For which cause
rebuke reprove them sharply severely,
that they may be sound in the faith trust;
14 Not giving heed to Jewish fables Yah Hudaic myths,
and commandments misvoth of men humanity,
that turn from the truth.
15 Unto the pure indeed all things are pure:
but unto them that are defiled and unbelieving trustless
is nothing naught pure;
but even their mind and conscience is defiled.
16 They profess that they know God Elohim;
but in works they deny him,
being abominable, and disobedient distrustful,
and unto every good work reprobate disapproved.

TITUS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos, a servant of Elohim
and an apostle of Yah Shua Messiah,
according to the trust of the select of Elohim;
and the knowledge of the truth
according to reverence
in hope of eternal life;
2 that the non—pseudo Elohim
pre—evangelized preceding eternal times;
and in his own seasons
manifests his word in preaching
that which is entrusted to me
according to the order of Elohim our Saviour:
4 To Titus
— genuine child according to common trust:
Charism, mercy and shalom,
from Elohim the Father
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah our Saviour.

SEATING OFFICERS

5 For this cause I left you in Crete
to arrange what lacked;
to seat elders in every city as I ordained you:
6 if any be unaccusable,
the man of one woman,
having trustworthy children,
who are not under accusation
of dissipation or insubordination.
7 For an episcopate, as the administrator of Elohim,
must be unaccusable,
neither selfpleasing nor wrathful,
nor a winesop,
nor a striker,
nor avaricious;
8 but befriend strangers,
befriend good,
soundminded,
just,
merciful,
self—controlled,
9 upholding the trustworthy word of doctrine;
to be capable in sound doctrine
both to beseech and reprove the contradicters.

EXPOSING INSUBORDINATES

10 For there are many insubordinate mataeologists
and thought deluders
— specially those of the circumcision
whose mouths must be stopped;
11 who overturn whole houses
doctrinating what they must not
for shameful gain.
12 One of them — their own prophet said,
The Cretians are ever liars, evil beasts, idle wombs.
13 This witness is true.
For which cause reprove them severely
to be sound in the trust;
14 not giving heed to Yah Hudaic myths
and misvoth of humanity that turn from the truth.
15 Indeed, to the pure, all are pure:
and to the defiled and trustless, naught is pure;
but even their mind and conscience is defiled.
16 They profess to know Elohim;
but in works they deny:
being abominable and distrustful
and disapproved to every good work.

TITUS 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SOUND DOCTRINE

2 But speak thou *the things* **those**
which *become* **befit** sound doctrine:

2 That the *aged men* **elders*** be sober, *grave* **venerant**,
temperate **soundminded**, sound in *faith* **the trust**,
in charity **love**, in *patience* **endurance**.

3 The *aged women* **elders**** likewise,
that they be in behaviour as becometh holiness
in priestly demeanor,
not false accusers **diabolic**,
not given **subservient** to much wine,
teachers of **doctrinating** good things;

*masculine; **feminine

4 That *they may teach* the young** *women*
to may be *sober* **soundminded**,
to love **befriend** their *husbands* **men**,
to love **befriend** their children,

5 *To be discreet* **Soundminded**, *chaste* **hallowed**,
keepers at home **home guards**, good,
obedient **subjugated** to their own *husbands* **men**,
that the word of *God* **Elohim** be not blasphemed.

6 Young* *men* likewise
exhort **beseech** to be *sober* **sound** minded.

7 *In* **Concerning** all *things*
shewing **present** thyself a *pattern* **type** of good works:
in doctrine
shewing uncorruptness **presenting** **incorruption**,
gravity **veneration**, *sincerity* **incorruptibility**,
8 *Sound speech* **Faultless words**
that cannot be condemned;
that he that is of the contrary part
may be ashamed **shame**,
having no evil *thing* to say of **word** about you.

**feminine; *masculine

9 *Exhort* servants to be *obedient* **subjugate**
unto their own *masters* **despotes**,
and to *please* **well—please** them *well* in all *things*;
not answering again **contradicting**;

10 *Not* **purlaining** **embezzling**,
but *shewing* **indicating** all good *fidelity* **trust**;
that they may adorn the doctrine
of *God* **Elohim** our Saviour in all *things*.

THE SALVATIONAL CHARISM

11 For the *grace of God* that *bringeth* **salvation**
salvational charism of Elohim
hath appeared to all *men* **humanity**,

12 *Teaching* **Disciplining** us that,
denying **ungodliness** **irreverence**
and *worldly lusts* **cosmic pantings**,
we should live *soberly* **soundmindedly**, *righteously* **justly**,
and *Godly* **reverently**, in this present *world* **eon**;

13 *Looking for* **Awaiting** that blessed hope,
and the *glorious appearing* **epiphany of the glory**
of the *great God* **mega Elohim**
and our Saviour *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**;

14 Who gave himself for us,
that he might redeem us
from all *iniquity* **torah violations**,
and purify unto himself a peculiar people,
zealous of **zealots** in good works.

15 These *things* speak, and *exhort* **beseech**,
and *rebuke* **reprove** with all *authority* **order**.
Let no *man* **despise** **one** **disesteem** thee.

3 *Put* **Remind** them *in mind* to be *subject* **subjugate**
to *principalities* **hierarchies** and *powers* **authorities**,
to obey magistrates,
to be *ready* **prepared** to every good work,
2 To *speak evil of* **blaspheme** no *man* **one**,
to be *no brawlers* **amicable**, *but* gentle,
shewing **indicating** all meekness unto all *men* **humanity**.

3 For we ourselves also were sometimes *foolish* **mindless**,
disobedient **distrusting**, *deceived* **seduced**,
serving divers *lusts* **pantings** and pleasures,
living **passing through** in malice and envy,
hateful, *and* hating one another.

4 But *after that* **when** the kindness and *love* **philanthropy**
of *God* **Elohim** our Saviour *toward man* appeared,

TITUS 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SOUND DOCTRINE

2 And you, speak those that befit sound doctrine:

2 that the elders* be sober,
venerant,
soundminded,
sound in the trust, in love, in endurance.

3 Likewise the elders**:
in priestly demeanor,
not diabolic,
not subservient to much wine,
doctrinating good.

*masculine; **feminine

4 That the young** be soundminded,
befriending their men,
befriending their children,
soundminded,
hallowed,
home guards,
good,
subjugate to their own men;
that they not blaspheme the word of Elohim.

6 Likewise beseech the young* to be sound minded:

7 concerning all,
present yourself a type of good works:
in doctrine: , present:
incorruption,
veneration,
incorruptibility,
faultless words;

8 to shame whoever is of the contrary part,
with no evil to word about you.

**feminine; *masculine

9 Servants:
subjugate to your own despotes
to well—please them in all;
neither contradict,
nor embezzel;

10 but that they indicate all good trust,
to adorn the doctrine of Elohim our Saviour in all.

THE SALVATIONAL CHARISM

11 For the salvational charism of Elohim
appeared to all humanity,
disciplining us
to deny irreverence and cosmic pantings,
to live soundmindedly,
justly and reverently in this present eon;
awaiting that blessed hope

13 and the epiphany of the glory of the mega Elohim
and our Saviour Yah Shua Messiah;
who gave himself for us,
to redeem us from all torah violations
and purify a peculiar people to himself
— zealots in good works.

15 Speak these
and beseech and reprove with all order.
be disesteemed by no one;

3 remind them
to subjugate to hierarchies and authorities.
to obey magistrates.
to be prepared to every good work,
to blaspheme no one,
to be amicable, gentle,
to indicate all meekness to all humanity.

3 For we ourselves sometimes also are:
mindless,
distrusting,
seduced,
— serving divers pantings and pleasures,
passing through in malice and envy,
— hateful — hating one another.

4 And when the kindness and philanthropy
of Elohim our Saviour appeared

TITUS 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 5 Not by works of *righteousness in justness*
which we have done,
but according to his mercy he saved us,
by **through** the *washing bathing*
of *regeneration* **regenesís,**
and renewing of the Holy Ghost **Spirit;**
- 6 Which he *shed* **poured** on us *abundantly* **richly**
through *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah** our Saviour;
- 7 That *being* **having been** justified by his *grace* **charism,**
we should *be made* **become** heirs
according to the hope of eternal life.
- 8 This is a *faithful saying* **trustworthy word,**
and these *things* I will
that thou affirm *constantly* **thoroughly,**
that they which have *believed* **trusted** in God **Elohim**
might *be careful* **thoughtful**
to *maintain* **preside over** good works.
These *things* are good and *profitable* **beneficial**
unto *men* **humanity.**
- 9 But *avoid* **stand aloof from** foolish questions,
and genealogies, and contentions,
and *strivings about the law* **strifes of torahists;**
for they are *unprofitable* **unbeneficial** and vain.
- 10 A *man* **human** that is an heretick
after the first and second admonition *reject* **shun;**
- 11 Knowing that he that is such is *subverted* **perverted,**
and sinneth,
being *condemned of himself* **self—condemned.**
- PERSONAL INSTRUCTIONS**
- 12 When **ever** I shall send
Artemas unto thee, or Tychicus,
be diligent to come unto me to Nicopolis:
for I have *determined* **judged** there to winter.
- 13 Bring **Forward** Zenas the *lawyer* **torahist**
and Apollos *on their journey* diligently,
that *nothing* **naught** be *wanting* **lacking** unto them.
- 14 And let our's also learn to *maintain* **preside**
over good works *for unto* necessary *uses* **needs,**
that they be not unfruitful.
- SALUTES AND BENEDICTION**
- 15 All that are with me salute thee.
Greet **Salute** them that *love* **befriend** us in the *faith* **trust.**
Grace **Charism** be with you all.
Amen.

TITUS 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 5 — not by works in justness which we did
— but according to his mercy he saved us
through the bathing of regenesís
and renewing of the Holy Spirit;
which he richly poured on us
- 6 through Yah Shua Messiah our Saviour;
7 being justified by his charism,
to become heirs according to the hope of eternal life.
- 8 Trustworthy the word:
and I will that you thoroughly affirm these
— so that whoever trusts in Elohim
be thoughtful to preside over good works:
these are good and beneficial to humanity.
- 9 And stand aloof from foolish questions
and genealogies
and contentions
and strifes of torahists;
for they are unbeneficial and vain.
- 10 A human — a heretick
after the first and second admonition, shun;
11 knowing that whoever is such is perverted and sins,
being self—condemned.
- PERSONAL INSTRUCTIONS**
- 12 Whenever I send you Artemas or Tychicus,
be diligent to come to me to Nicopolis:
for I judge to winter there.
- 13 Diligently forward Zenas the torahist and Apollos,
that they lack naught.
- 14 And that those of us also learn to preside
over good works to necessary needs
— to not be unfruitful.
- SALUTES AND BENEDICTION**
- 15 All those me salute you.
Salute them who befriend us in trust.
Charism be with you all.
Amen.

PHILEMON

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 *Paul Paulos*, a prisoner of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*,
and *Timothy Timo Theos* our brother,
unto Philemon our *dearly* beloved,
and *fellowlabourer co—worker*,
2 And to our beloved Apphia,
and Archippus our *fellowsoldier co—warrior*,
and to the *church ecclesia* in thy house:
3 *Grace Charism* to you, and *peace shalom*,
from *God Elohim* our Father
and the *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*.
4 I *thank eucharistize* my *God Elohim*,
making *mention remembrance* of thee
always in my prayers,
5 Hearing of thy love and *faith trust*,
which thou hast toward the *Lord Jesus Adonay Yah Shua*,
and toward *unto* all *saints the holy*;
6 That the *communication communion* of thy *faith trust*
may become *effectual energized*
by the *acknowledging knowledge*
of every *all the good thing* which is in you
in *Christ Jesus Messiah Yah Shua*.
7 For we have
great joy vast charism and consolation in thy love,
because the *bowels spleens* of the *saints holy*
are *refreshed by rested through* thee, brother.
8 *Wherefore So*,
though I might *be have* much *bold boldness* in *Christ Messiah*
to *enjoin order* thee
to *do* that which is *convenient proper*,
9 Yet for love's sake I rather beseech thee,
being such an one as *Paul Paulos* the *aged elder*,
and now also a prisoner
of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*.
10 I beseech thee *for concerning* my *son child* Onesimus,
whom I have *begotten birthed* in my bonds:
11 Which in time past was to thee *unprofitable useless*,
but now *profitable useful* to thee and to me:
12 Whom I have sent again:
thou therefore *receive take* him *unto you*,
that is, mine own *bowels spleen*:
13 Whom I *would have had willed*
retained to hold back with me,
that in thy stead he might have ministered unto me
in the bonds of the *gospel evangelism*:
14 But *without apart from* thy *mind decision*,
would I will to do nothing naught;
that thy *benefit good* should not be
as it were of necessity,
but *willingly voluntarily*.
15 For perhaps
he *therefore departed separated* for a *season an hour*,
that thou shouldst *receive have* him *for ever eternally*;
16 *Not now No longer* as a servant, but above a servant,
a brother beloved,
specially to me, but how much more unto thee,
both in the flesh, and in the *Lord Adonay*?
17 *So* If thou *count regard* me *therefore*
a *partner communicant*,
receive take him *unto you* as myself.
18 If he hath *wronged thee injured*,
or *oweth thee is indebted* ought,
put reckon that *on mine account to me*;
19 I *Paul Paulos*
have *written it scribed* with mine own hand,
I *will repay it shall fully satisfy the penalty*:
albeit I *do word* not say to thee
how thou *owest art indebted* unto me
even thine own self *besides*.
20 Yea, brother,
let me have *joy benefit* of thee in the *Lord Adonay*:
refresh rest my *bowels spleen* in the *Lord Adonay*.
21 *Having confidence Being convinced*
in of thy obedience
I wrote *scribed* unto thee,
knowing that thou
wilt shalt also do more than I say *word*.

PHILEMON

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Paulos, a prisoner of Yah Shua Messiah
and Timo Theos our brother:
2 To Philemon our beloved and co—worker,
and to beloved Apphia
and Archippus our co—warrior
and to the ecclesia in your house.
3 Charism to you, and shalom,
from Elohim our Father
and Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
4 I eucharistize my Elohim,
making remembrance of you always in my prayers,
5 hearing of your love and trust
toward Adonay Yah Shua
and to all the holy;
6 to energize the communion of your trust
by the knowledge of all the good in you
in Messiah Yah Shua.
7 For we have
vast charism and consolation in your love,
because through you, brother,
the spleens of the holy rest.
8 So, though I have much boldness in Messiah
to order you to do what is proper,
9 yet for sake of love, I rather beseech you
— being such a one as Paulos the elder
and now also a prisoner of Yah Shua Messiah.
10 I beseech you concerning my child Onesimus,
whom I birthed in my bonds:
11 who in time past was useless to you,
and now useful to you and to me:
12 whom I send again:
so take him to yourself as my own spleen:
13 whom I had willed to hold back with me,
to minister to me in your stead
in the bonds of the evangelism:
14 and apart from your decision, I will to do naught;
that your good not be as of necessity, but voluntarily.
15 For perhaps he separated for an hour,
so that you have him eternally
16 — no longer as a servant
but above a servant — a beloved brother,
especially to me — but how much more to you
both in the flesh and in Adonay?
17 So if you regard me a communicant,
take him to you as myself.
18 If he has injured or has indebted aught
reckon that to me;
19 I Paulos scribe with my own hand,
I — I fully satisfy the penalty:
that I word not to you how you are indebted to me
— even your own self.
20 Yes brother, so that I benefit of you in Adonay:
I rest my spleen in Adonay.
21 Being convinced of your obedience
I scribe to you,
knowing that you also do more than I word:

PHILEMON

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

22 But *withal* **simultaneously** prepare me also a lodging:
for I *trust* **hope** that through your prayers
I shall be *given* **granted charism** unto you.

SALUTE AND BENEDICTION

23 There salute thee Epaphras,
my *fellowprisoner* **co—captive**
in *Christ Jesus* **Messiah Yah Shua**;
24 *Marcus* **Markos**, Aristarchus, Demas, *Lucas* **Loukas**,
my *fellowlabourers* **co—workers**.
25 The *grace* **charism**
of our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
be with your spirit.
Amen.

PHILEMON

exeGeses companion BIBLE

22 and simultaneously also prepare me a lodging:
for I *hope* that through your prayers
you grant me charism.

SALUTE AND BENEDICTION

23 These salute you:
Epaphras, my co—captive in Messiah Yah Shua;
24 Markos, Aristarchus, Demas, Loukas,
my co—workers.
25 The charism of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
be with your spirit.
Amen.

HEBREWS 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE SON OF ELOHIM IS THE ESSENCE OF ELOHIM

1 God, who at sundry times **In many portions**
and in *divers* **many** manners, *spake in time past* long ago,
Elohim spoke unto the fathers *by* in the prophets,
2 Hath in these *last* **final** days
spoken unto us *by* his in Son,
whom he hath appointed **placed** heir of all things,
3 *by* **through** whom also he made the *worlds* **eons**;
Who being the *brightness* **effulgence** of his glory,
and the *express image* **character** of his *person* **essence**,
and *upholding* **bearing** all things
by the word **rhema** of his power **dynamis**,
when he had *by* **through** himself
purged **purified** our sins,
sat down *on* **at** the right *hand* of the Majesty on high;
4 Being *made* so much better than the angels,
inasmuch as he hath *by inheritance* obtained **inherited**
a more excellent name than they.

THE SON, BETTER THAN THE ANGELS

5 For unto which of the angels said he *at any time* **ever**,
Thou art my Son, this day have I *begotten* **birthed** thee?
And again,
I *will* **shall** be to him, a Father,
and he shall be to me, a Son?

Psalm 2:7, 2 Shemu El 7:14

6 And again, when he bringeth *in*
the *firstbegotten* **firstborn** into the world,
he *saith* **wordeth**,
And let all the angels of God **Elohim** worship him.

Deuteronomy 32:43

7 And of **indeed** unto the angels he *saith* **wordeth**,
Who maketh his angels spirits,
and his *ministers* **liturgists** a flame of fire.

Psalm 104:4

8 But unto the Son *he saith*, Thy throne, O God **Elohim**,
is *for ever* and *ever* **unto the eons of the eons**:
a *sceptre* **scion** of *righteousness* **straightness**
is the *sceptre* **scion** of thy *kingdom* **sovereigndom**.
9 Thou hast loved *righteousness* **justness**,
and hated *iniquity* **torah violations**;
therefore God **so Elohim**, *even* thy God **Elohim**,
hath anointed thee
with the **olive** oil of *gladness* **jumping for joy**
above thy *fellows* **partners**.

Psalm 45:6, 7

10 And, Thou, *Lord* **Adonay**, in the beginning
hast *laid the foundation* of **founded** the earth;
and the heavens are the works of thine hands:
11 They shall *perish* **destruct**;
but thou *remainest* **continually abidest**;
and they all shall *wax old* **antiquate** as doth a garment;
12 And as a *vesture* **mantle** shalt thou *fold* **coil** them up,
and they shall be changed:
but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail.

Psalm 102:25—27

13 But to which of the angels said he *at any time* **ever**,
Sit *on* **at** my right *hand*,
until **ever** I *make* **place** thine enemies thy footstool?

Psalm 110:1

14 Are they not all *ministering* **indeed liturgizing** spirits,
sent forth **apostolized** to minister for them
who shall *be heirs of* **inherit** salvation?

2 *Therefore* **So** we ought **must**
to give the more earnest **more superabundantly** heed
to the things **those** which we have heard,
lest *at any time* **ever** we should *let them slip* **float away**.

2 For if the word spoken *by* **through** angels
was **became** steadfast,
and every transgression and disobedience
received **took** a just recompense of reward;
3 How shall we escape,
if we neglect **neglecting** so *great* **vast** salvation;
which *at the first* **began in the beginning** was **taken**
to be spoken by the Lord **and told through Adonay**,
and was *confirmed* **established** unto us
by them that heard *him*;

4 God **Elohim** also *bearing them witness* **co—witnessing**,

HEBREWS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE SON OF ELOHIM IS THE ESSENCE OF ELOHIM

1 In many portions and in many manners, long ago,
Elohim spoke to the fathers in the prophets,
2 and in these final days speaks to us in Son:
whom he placed heir of all;
through whom also he made the eons:
3 who being the effulgence of glory
and the character of his essence
and bearing all by the rhema of his dynamis,
when he, through himself,
made a purifying of our sins,
4 sat down at the right of the Majesty on high:
being so much better than the angels,
as he inherited a more excellent name than they.

THE SON, BETTER THAN THE ANGELS

5 For to which of the angels said he ever,
You are my Son, this day I birthed you?
And again,
I become to him, Father, and he becomes to me, Son?
Psalm 2:7, 2 Shemu El 7:14

6 And again,
when he brings the firstbirthed into the world,
he words,
And all angels of Elohim worship him.
Deuteronomy 32:43

7 And indeed to the angels he words,
Who makes his angels spirits
and his liturgists a flame of fire.

Psalm 104:4

8 But to the Son, Your throne, O Elohim,
is to the eons of the eons:
a scion of straightness
is the scion of your sovereigndom.
9 You loved justness and hated torah violations;
so Elohim — your Elohim anointed you
with the olive oil of jumping for joy
above your partners.

Psalm 45:6, 7

10 And in the beginning, O Adonay,
you founded the earth;
and the heavens are the works of your hands:
11 They destruct, and you abide continually;
and they all antique as a garment;
12 and as a mantle you coil them and they change:
and you are the same and your years fail not.

Psalm 102:25—27

13 And to which of the angels said he ever,
Sit at my right,
until ever I place your enemies the stool of your feet?
Psalm 110:1

14 Are they not indeed all liturgizing spirits
apostolized to minister
for them who inherit salvation?

2 So we must more superabundantly heed
what we heard
— lest ever we float away.
2 For if the word spoken through angels
became steadfast
and every transgression and disobedience
took a just recompense;
3 how escape we,
neglecting such a vast salvation;
which in the beginning
was taken and told through Adonay
and established to us by them who heard;
4 Elohim also co—witnessing,

HEBREWS 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

both with signs and wonders **omens**,
and with divers **miracles dynamis**,
and **gifts impartations** of the Holy **Ghost Spirit**,
according to his own will?
5 For unto the angels hath he not
put in subjection **subjugated** the world to come,
whereof we speak.
THE SON LOWERED AND WREATHED
6 But *one in a certain place* **someone somewhere**
testified **witnessed**, *saying* **wording**,
What is *man* **humanity**,
that thou *art mindful of* **rememberest** him?
or the son of *man* **humanity**, that thou visitest him?
7 Thou *madest* **hast lowered** him
a little lower **somewhat less** than the angels*;
thou *crownedst* **hast wreathed** him
with glory and honour,
and *didst set* **seated** him over the works of thy hands:
8 Thou hast *put* **subjugated** all *things in subjection*
under his feet.
For in that he *put* **subjugated** all *in subjection* under him,
he left nothing **allowed naught**
that is not put under **unsubjugated to** him.
But now we see not yet
all *things put* **subjugated** under him.
9 But we see *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
who was *made a little lower* **lowered somewhat less**
than the *angels* **Elohim***
for the suffering of death,
crowned **wreathed** with glory and honour;
that he by the *grace* **charism** of *God* **Elohim**
should taste death for every man.
*see Psalm 8:4—6
10 For it *became* **befitted** him,
for whom *are all things* **the all**,
and by *whom are all things* **through whom the all**,
in bringing many sons unto glory,
to *make* **complete/shalam**
the *captain* **hierarch** of their salvation *perfect*
through sufferings.
11 For both he that *sanctifieth* **halloweth**
and they who are *sanctified* **hallowed** are all of one:
for which cause he is not ashamed to call them brethren,
12 *Saying* **Wording**,
I *will declare* **shall evangelize** thy name
unto my brethren,
in the midst of the *church* **ecclesia**
will I sing praise **shall I hymn** unto thee.
Psalm 22:22
13 And again, I *will put my trust* **shall confide** in him.
And again, Behold I,
and the children which *God* **Elohim** hath given me.
Yesha Yah 8:17
14 *Forasmuch then* **So since**
as the children are partakers of flesh and blood,
he also himself likewise *took part* **partook** of the same;
so that through death he might *destroy* **inactivate** him
that had the power of death, that is, *the devil* **Diabolos**;
15 And *deliver* **release** them
who as many as through *fear* **awe** of death
were **through** all their lifetime
subject to *bondage* **servitude**.
16 For *verily* **doubtless indeed**
he took not *on him the nature* **hold** of angels;
but he took *on him* **hold of** the *seed* **sperma** of Abraham.
Yesha Yah 41:9
17 *Wherefore* **So**
in all *things it behooved him* **he was indebted**
to be *made like* **likened** unto his brethren,
that he might *be* **become**
a merciful and *faithful high* **trustworthy arch** priest
in things pertaining to God **unto Elohim**,
to *make reconciliation* **kapur/atone**
for the sins of the people.
18 For in that he himself hath suffered
being *tempted* **tested**,
he is able to *succour* **help** them
that are *tempted* **tested**.

HEBREWS 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

both with signs and omens and with divers dynamis
and impartations of the Holy Spirit
according to his own will?
5 For he subjugates not the world to come
whereof we speak
to angels.
THE SON LOWERED AND WREATHED
6 But somewhere someone witnessed, wording,
What is humanity, that you remember him?
Or the son of humanity, that you visit him?
7 You lowered him somewhat less than the angels*;
you wreathed him with glory and honor
and seated him over the works of your hands:
8 you subjugated all under his feet.
For in that he subjugated all under him
he allowed naught unsubjugated to him:
and now we still see not all subjugated under him.
9 And we see Yah Shua,
who was lowered somewhat less than Elohim*
for the suffering of death,
wreathed with glory and honor;
that he by the charism of Elohim
tasted death for every man.
*see Psalm 8:4—6
10 For it befitted him,
for whom the all, and through whom the all,
in bringing many sons to glory
to complete/shalam the hierarch of their salvation
through sufferings.
11 For both the hollower
and the hallowed are all of one:
for which cause
he is not ashamed to call them brothers,
12 wording,
I evangelize your name to my brothers,
midst the ecclesia I hymn to you.
Psalm 22:22
13 And again, I confide in him.
And again, Behold I —
and the children whom Elohim gave me.
Yesha Yah 8:17
14 So since, as the children partake of flesh and blood,
he also himself likewise partook of the same;
so that through death
he inactivated him who had the power of death
— that is, Diabolos;
15 and released them,
as many as through awe of death
who through all their lifetime
were subject to servitude.
16 For doubtless indeed he took not hold of angels;
but he took hold of the sperma of Abraham.
Yesha Yah 41:9
17 So he was indebted in all
to be likened to his brothers,
to become a merciful and trustworthy archpriest
to Elohim,
to kapur/atone for the sins of the people.
18 For in that he himself suffered, being tested in all,
he is able to help them who are tested.

HEBREWS 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but the word *preached* **heard** did not *profit* **benefit** them,
not being *mixed* **co—mingled** with *faith* **the trust**
in them that heard it.

3 For we which have *believed* **trusted**
do enter into rest **shabbath**,
exactly as he said,

As I have *sworn* **oathed** in my wrath,
if they shall enter into my *rest* **shabbath**:
although the works *were finished* **had been**
from the foundation of the *world* **cosmos**.

Psalm 95:1

4 For he *spoke in a certain place* **said somewhere**
of **about** the seventh day *on this wise* **thus**,
And *God* **Elohim**
did rest in **shabbathized** the seventh day
from all his works.

5 And in this *place* again,
If they shall enter into my *rest* **shabbath**.

6 *Seeing therefore* **So since** it remaineth
that some must enter therein,
and they to whom
it was *first preached* **previously evangelized**
entered not in because of *unbelief* **trustlessness**:

7 Again, he *limiteth* **decreed** a *certain day*,
saying **wording** in David, To day, after so long a time;
exactly as it is said,
To day *if* **whenever** ye *will* **shall** hear his voice,
harden not your hearts.

Psalm 95:7, 8

8 For if *Jesus* **Yah Shua***
had *given* **shabbathized** them *rest*,
then *would* **should** he not *afterward* **ever after**
have spoken of **about** another day.

*Yah Shua, successor to Mosheh

9 **So** There remaineth *therefore*
a *rest* **shabbatism** to the people of *God* **Elohim**.

10 For he that is entered into his *rest* **shabbath**,
he also hath *ceased* **shabbathized** from his own works,
exactly as *God* **Elohim** *did* from his.

11 *Let us labour therefore* **Be diligent**
to enter into that *rest* **shabbath**,
lest any *man* **one** fall
after in the same example of *unbelief* **trustlessness**.

12 For the word of *God* **Elohim** is *quick* **living**,
and *powerful* **energized**,
and sharper than any *twoedged* **doublemouthed** sword,
piercing even **thoroughly penetrating**
to the *dividing asunder* **parting** of soul and spirit,
and of the joints and marrow,
and is a *discerner*
of the *thoughts* **deliberation** and *intents* **mind**
of the heart.

Yesha Yah 49:2

13 Neither is there any *creature* **creation**
that is not manifest in his sight:
but all *things* are naked and *opened* **exposed**
unto the eyes of him with whom we have *to do* **word**.

Proverbs 15:11

THE SON, OUR MEGA ARCH PRIEST

14 **So** *Seeing then*
that we have a *great high* **mega arch** priest
that is passed into the heavens,
Jesus **Yah Shua** the Son of *God* **Elohim**,
let us *hold fast* **empower** our profession.

15 For we have not an *high* **arch** priest
which cannot *be touched* **sympathize**
with the *feeling of our infirmities* **frailties**;
but was in all points *tempted* **tested**
like as we are **according to our likeness**,
yet without **apart** from sin.

Hoshea 11:8

16 **So** Let us *therefore* come boldly
unto the throne of *grace* **charism**,
that we may *obtain* **take** mercy,
and find *grace* **charism** to **opportunistly** help
in time of need.

HEBREWS 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

but the word they heard benefited them not,
not being co—mingled with the trust
by them who heard it.

3 For we who trust, enter shabbath;
exactly as he said,
As I oathed in my wrath,
if they enter my shabbath — :
although the works became
from the foundation of the cosmos.

Psalm 95:1

4 For somewhere, about the seventh, he said thus:
And the seventh day
Elohim shabbathized from all his works.
5 And again in this,
If they enter my shabbath — .

6 So since it remains
that some must enter therein
— and they to whom
it was previously evangelized
entered not in because of trustlessness —
again, he decrees a day,
wording in David,
Today, after so long a time —
exactly as it is said,
Today whenever you hear his voice,
harden not your hearts.

Psalm 95:7, 8

8 For if Yah Shua* had shabbathized them,
than he had not ever after
have spoken about another day.

*Yah Shua, successor to Mosheh

9 So a shabbatism remains to the people of Elohim.

10 For whoever enters his shabbath
also shabbathizes from his own works
— exactly as Elohim from his.

11 So be diligent to enter that shabbath,
lest anyone fall in the same example of trustlessness.

12 For the word of Elohim is living and energized
and sharper than any double—mouthed sword,
thoroughly penetrating to the parting
of soul and spirit and of the joints and marrow:
and is a *discerner*
of the deliberation and mind of the heart.

Yesha Yah 49:2

13 And there is no creature
that is not manifest in his sight:
but all *are* naked and exposed to the eyes of him
with whom we word.

Proverbs 15:11

THE SON, OUR MEGA ARCHPRIEST

14 So seeing that we have a mega archpriest
who passed into the heavens
— Yah Shua the Son of Elohim,
we empower our profession.

15 For we have no archpriest
who cannot sympathize with our frailties;
but was in all points tested according to our likeness
— apart from sin.

Hoshea 11:8

16 So come boldly to the throne of charism,
to take mercy and find charism to opportunistly help.

HEBREWS 5, 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 For every *high arch* priest
taken from among *men* **humanity**
is *ordained* **seated** for *men* **humanity**
in *things pertaining to God* **unto Elohim**,
that he may offer
both *gifts* **offerings** and sacrifices for sins:
2 Who can *have* compassion
on the *ignorant* **unknowing**,
and on *them that are out of the way* **the wandering**;
for that **since** he himself also
is *compassed* **surrounded** with *infirmity* **frailty**.
3 And *by reason hereof* **through these**
he *ought* **was indebted**,
exactly as for the people, **so thus** also for himself,
to offer for sins.
4 And no *man* **one** taketh this honour unto himself,
but except he that is called of *God* **Elohim**,
exactly as was *Aaron* **Aharon**.
Exodus 28:1, Numbers 16:40
5 So **Thus** also *Christ* **the Messiah** glorified not himself
to *be made* **become** an *high arch* priest
but he that *said* **spake** unto him,
Thou art my Son, to day have I *begotten* **birthed** thee.
6 **Exactly** As he *saith* **wordeth** also
in *another place* **elsewhere**,
Thou art a priest *for ever* **unto the eons**
after the order of *Melchisedec* **Malki Sedeq**.
Psalm 2:7, 110:4
7 Who in the days of his flesh, when he had offered *up*
prayers **petitions** and *supplications* **entreaties**,
with *strong* **mighty** crying and tears
unto him that was able to save him from death,
and was heard *in that he feared* **by his revering**;
Psalm 19:9
8 Though *he were* **being** a Son, yet learned he obedience
by *the things* **those** which he suffered;
9 And being *made perfect* **completed/shalamed**,
he became the *author* **causer** of eternal salvation
unto all them that obey him;
10 **Called** **Addressed** of *God* **Elohim**
an *high arch* priest
after the order of *Melchisedec* **Malki Sedeq**.
11 **Of** **About** whom
we have many *things* **words** to *say* **word**,
and *hard* **untranslatable** to *be uttered* **speak**,
seeing **since** ye are *dull* **be sluggish** of hearing.
BECOMING DOCTORS
12 For when for the time
ye *ought* **are indebted** to be *teachers* **doctors**,
ye have need that one *teach* **doctrinate** you again
which be the first principles **the beginning elements**
of the oracles of *God* **Elohim**;
and are become such as have need of milk,
and not of *strong meat* **solid nourishment**.
13 For every one that *useth* **partaketh** milk
is *unskilful* **untested**
in the word of *righteousness* **justness**;
for he is a babe.
14 But *strong meat* **solid nourishment**
belongeth to **is for** them
that are of *full age* **completed/shalamed**,
even those who *by reason of use* **through habit**
have their *senses* **perceptions** exercised
to discern both good and evil.
BEARING ON TO COMPLETION/SHALOM
6 **Therefore** **So**
leaving forsaking the *principles* **beginnings**
of the *doctrine* **word** of *Christ* **the Messiah**,
let us go **bear** on unto *perfection* **completion/shalom**;
not *laying* **casting down** again
the foundation of repentance from dead works,
and of *faith* **trust** toward *God* **Elohim**,
2 Of the doctrine of baptisms, and of laying on of hands,
and of resurrection of the dead, and of eternal judgment.
3 And this *will* **shall** we do,
if God permit **whenever Elohim alloweth**.

HEBREWS 5, 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

5 For every archpriest taken from humanity
sits in behalf of humanity to Elohim
to offer both offerings and sacrifices for sins:
2 able to compassion
the unknowing and the wandering
— since he himself is also surrounded with frailty.
3 And through these he is indebted
— exactly as for the people, thus also for himself,
to offer for sins.
4 And no one takes this honor to himself
except those called of Elohim exactly as Aharon.
Exodus 28:1, Numbers 16:40
5 Thus also the Messiah glorified not himself
to become an archpriest;
but he who spoke to him,
You are my Son, — today I birthed you.
6 Exactly as he also words elsewhere,
You are a priest to the eons
after the order of Malki Sedeq
Psalm 2:7, 110:4
7 — who in the days of his flesh
when he offered petitions and entreaties,
with mighty crying and tears
to him who was able to save him from death
and was heard by his revering;
Psalm 19:9
8 though being a Son
he still learned obedience by what he suffered;
9 and being completed/shalamed
he became the causer of eternal salvation
to all who obey him;
10 addressed by Elohim,
An archpriest after the order of Malki Sedeq;
11 about whom we have many words to word
and untranslatable to speak
— since you are sluggish of hearing.
BECOMING DOCTORS
12 For at the time
you are indebted to be doctors,
you again need someone to doctrinate you
the beginning elements of the oracles of Elohim;
and become such as have need of milk
and not of solid nourishment.
13 For everyone who partakes of milk
is untested in the word of justness
— he is a babe:
14 and solid nourishment
is for the completed/shalamed
— who through habit exercised their perceptions
to discern both good and evil.
BEARING ON TO COMPLETION/SHALOM
6 So abandoning the beginnings
of the word of the Messiah,
we bear on to completion/shalom;
not casting again
the foundation of repentance from dead works,
and of trust toward Elohim,
2 of the doctrine of baptisms,
and of laying on of hands,
and of resurrection of the dead,
and of eternal judgment:
3 and this we do, whenever Elohim allows.

HEBREWS 6, 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

FALLING AWAY

4 For it is impossible
for those who were once enlightened,
and have tasted
of the heavenly gift **gratuity of the heavenlies**,
and were made **became** partakers of the Holy Ghost **Spirit**,

5 And have tasted the good word **rhema** of God **Elohim**,
and the powers **dynamis** of the world **eon** to come,

6 If they shall fall away,
to renew them again unto repentance;
seeing they **crucify** **restake** to themselves
the Son of God **Elohim** *afresh*,
and put **expose** him to an open shame.

7 For the earth
which drinketh in the rain that cometh oft upon it,
and bringeth forth herbs meet **botany wellfit** for them
by **through** whom it is dressed **cultivated**,
receiveth **partaketh** blessing from God **Elohim**:

Psalm 65:10
8 But that which *beareth* **bringeth** thorns and briers
is *rejected* **disapproved**, and is nigh unto cursing;
whose end **completion/shalom** is to be burned **scorching**.

9 But, beloved, we are *persuaded* **convinced**
of better things of **concerning** you,
and things that accompany **regarding** salvation,
though we thus speak.

10 For God **Elohim** is not *unrighteous* **unjust**
to forget your work and labour of love,
which ye have *shewed toward* **indicated unto** his name,
in that ye have ministered to the *saints* **holy**,
and do minister.

11 And we *desire* **pant** that every **each** one of you
do shew **indicate** the same diligence
to the full *assurance of hope* **bearance**
unto the end **completion/shalom**:

12 That ye be not *slothful* **sluggish**,
but *followers* **mimickers** of them
who through *faith* **trust** and patience
inherit the *promises* **pre—evangelisms**.

13 For when God **Elohim**
made promise to **pre—evangelized** Abraham,
because **since** he could swear **oath** by no greater,
he *swore* **oathed** by himself,

14 *Saying* **Wording**, Surely blessing I *will* **shall** bless thee,
and multiplying I *will* **shall** multiply thee.

Genesis 22:16,17
15 And so **thus**, after he had patiently endured **being patient**,
he obtained the *promise* **pre—evangelism**.

16 For men verily **humanity indeed**
swear **oath** by the greater:
and an oath for *confirmation* is to them **establisheth**
an end **finality** of all *strife* **controversy**.

17 Wherein God **Elohim**,
willing **having willed** more *abundantly* **superabundantly**
to shew unto the heirs of *promise* **pre—evangelism**
the immutability of his counsel,
confirmed it by an oath:

18 That by **through** two immutable *things* **matters**,
in which it was **is** impossible for God **Elohim** to lie,
we might have a *strong* **mighty** consolation,
who have fled for refuge
to lay hold upon **empower** the hope set *before* **in front of** us:

19 Which *hope* we have as an anchor of the soul,
both *sure* **certain** and stedfast,
and which entereth into that within the veil;

THE SON, OUR ARCH PRIEST UNTO THE EONS

20 Whither **Where** the forerunner is for us entered,
even **Jesus** **Yah Shua**,
made **having become** an *high* **arch** priest
for ever **unto the eons**
after the order of *Melchisedec* **Malki Sedeq**.

7 For this *Melchisedec* **Malki Sedeq**,
king **sovereign** of *Salem* **Shalem**,
priest of the most high **God** **El Elyon**,
who met **with** Abraham returning
from the *slaughter* **chopping** of the *kings* **sovereigns**,
and blessed him;

HEBREWS 6, 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

FALLING AWAY

4 For it is impossible for those once enlightened,
and tasted of the gratuity of the heavenlies,
and became partakers of Holy Spirit,
and tasted the good rhema of Elohim,
and the dynamis of the eon to come,
and fall away,
to renew again to repentance:
seeing they restake to themselves the Son of Elohim
and expose him.

7 For the earth
that drinks in the rain often coming upon it
and brings botany wellfitting
for them through whom it is cultivated,
partakes blessing from Elohim:

Psalm 65:10
8 and whoever brings thorns and briers
is disapproved and is near cursing
— whose completion/shalom is to scorching.
And beloved,
we are convinced of better concerning you
and regarding salvation,
though we thus speak.

9 For Elohim is not unjust
to forget your work and the labor of love
you indicate to his name,
ministering to the holy, and ministering.
And we pant that each of you
indicate the same diligence
to the full bearance to the completion/shalom:
to not be sluggish,
but mimickers of them,
who through trust and patience,
inherit the pre—evangelisms.

10 For when Elohim pre—evangelized to Abraham
— since he could oath by no greater
he oathed by himself,
wording, Surely in blessing, I bless you
and in multiplying I multiply you.

Genesis 22:16,17
15 And thus, being patient,
he obtained the pre—evangelism.
16 For humanity indeed oaths by the greater:
and an oath establishes a finality of all controversy.
17 Wherein Elohim willed more superabundantly
to show the heirs of pre—evangelism
the immutability of his counsel,
he confirmed it by an oath:
that through two immutable matters,
in which it is impossible for Elohim to lie,
we who fled for refuge, have a mighty consolation
to empower the hope set in front of us:
which we have as an anchor of the soul
— both certain and steadfast
that enters within the veil;

THE SON, OUR ARCHPRIEST TO THE EONS

20 where the forerunner — Yah Shua entered for us
— Yah Shua — being an archpriest to the eons
after the order of Malki Sedeq.

7 For this Malki Sedeq
— sovereign of Shalem — priest of El Elyon,
met with Abraham
returning from the chopping of the sovereigns
and blessed him:

HEBREWS 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

2 To whom also Abraham
gave **imparted** a *tenth part* **tithe** of all;
first *being by interpretation* **indeed translated**
King **Sovereign** of *righteousness* **justness**,
and *after that* **then** also
King **Sovereign** of *Salem* **Shalem**,
which is, King **Sovereign** of *peace* **shalom**;
3 Without father **Unfathered**,
without mother **unmothered**,
without descent **ungenealogized**,
having neither beginning of days
nor *end* **completion/shalom** of life;
but *made like* **likenessed** unto the Son of *God* **Elohim**;
abideth a priest *continually* **unto perpetuity**.
4 Now *consider* **observe**
how great this man was **his greatness**,
unto whom even the patriarch Abraham gave
the *tenth* **tithe from the top** of the *spoils* **heap**.
5 And *verily* **indeed** they that are of the sons of Levi,
who *receive* **take** the office of the priesthood,
have a *commandment* **misvah** to take tithes of the people
according to the *law* **torah**, that is, of their brethren,
though they come out of the loins of Abraham:
6 But he
whose descent is not counted from them
who is not genealogized
received tithes of **was tithed by** Abraham,
and blessed him that had the *promises* **pre—evangelisms**.
Genesis 14:20, Numbers 18:21
7 And *without* **apart from** all *contradiction* **controversy**
the *less* **lesser** is blessed of the better.
8 And here **indeed**
men **humans** that die *receive* **take** tithes;
but there
he receiveth them, of whom it is witnessed
witness that he liveth.
9 And as *I may so say* **saith the saying**,
Levi also, who *receiveth* **taketh** tithes,
payed tithes in **tithed through** Abraham.
10 For he was yet in the loins of his father,
when *Melchisedec* **Malki Sedeq** met **with** him.
11 **So indeed**, *if therefore* **perfection** **completion/shalom**
were *by* **through** the Levitical priesthood,
(*for under it the people received* **set** the *law* **torah**),
what *further* need was **still** there
that another priest should rise
after the order of *Melchisedec* **Malki Sedeq**,
and not be **called worded**
after the order of *Aaron* **Aharon**?
12 For the priesthood being *changed* **transplaced**,
there *is made* **becometh** of necessity
a *change* **transplacing** also of the *law* **torah**.
13 For he of whom these *things* are *spoken* **worded**
pertaineth to another tribe **another scion partaketh**,
of which no *man* gave *attendance* **one heeded**
at the *sacrifice* altar.
14 For it *is evident* **hath been preevidenced**
that our *Lord sprang* **Adonay rose** out of *Juda* **Yah Hudah**;
of **unto** which *tribe* **scion**
Moses **Mosheh** spake *nothing* **naught** concerning priesthood.
Genesis 49:8, 10
15 And it is yet *far more* **more superabundantly** evident:
for that **if** after the *similitude* **likeness**
of *Melchisedec* **Malki Sedeq** there ariseth another priest,
16 Who *is made* **becometh**, not after the *law* **torah**
of a *carnal commandment* **fleshly misvah**,
but after the *power* **dynamis** of an endless life.
17 For he *testifieth* **witnesseth that**,
Thou art a priest *for ever* **unto the eons**
after the order of *Melchisedec* **Malki Sedeq**.
Psalm 110:4
18 For **indeed**
there *is verily* **becometh** a *disannulling* **putting away**
of the *commandment going before* **preceding misvah**
for **because of** the *weakness* **frailty**
and *unprofitableness* **unbeneficialness** thereof.
19 For the *law* **torah**
made nothing perfect **completed naught**,
but the *bringing in* **introduction** of a better hope *did*;

HEBREWS 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

2 to whom Abraham also imparted a tithe of all;
first indeed translated, Sovereign of Justness
and then also, Sovereign of Shalem,
which is, Sovereign of Shalom:
3 unfathered
unmothered
ungenealogized;
neither beginning of days
nor completion/shalom of life;
but likenessed to the Son of Elohim;
abides a priest in perpetuity.
4 And observe his greatness,
to whom even the patriarch Abraham
gave the tithe from the top of the heap.
5 And indeed they of the sons of Levi
who take the office of the priesthood
have a misvah to take tithes of the people
according to the torah
— that is, of their brothers,
though they come from the loins of Abraham:
6 but whoever was not genealogized
was tithed by Abraham
and blessed him who had the pre—evangelisms.
Genesis 14:20, Numbers 18:21
7 And apart from all controversy
the lesser is blessed of the better.
8 And here, indeed, humans who die take tithes;
but there, witness that he lives.
9 And as says the saying,
Levi also, who takes tithes, tithed through Abraham.
10 For he was still in the loins of his father,
when Malki Sedeq met with him.
11 So indeed, if completion/shalom
were through the Levitical priesthood,
— for under it the people set the torah
— what need was still there that another priest rise
after the order of Malki Sedeq
and not worded after the order of Aharon?
12 For the priesthood, being transplaced,
there also becomes a necessity
to transplace the torah.
13 For he, of whom these are worded,
another scion partakes,
whom no one heeds at the sacrifice altar.
14 For it was pre—evidenced
that our Adonay rose from Yah Hudah;
to which scion
Mosheh spake naught concerning priesthood.
Genesis 49:8, 10
15 And it is still more superabundantly evident:
if after the likeness of Malki Sedeq
another priest rises,
16 who becomes,
not after the torah of a fleshly misvah,
but after the dynamis of an endless life.
17 For he witnesses,
You are a priest to the eons
after the order of Malki Sedeq.
Psalm 110:4
18 For indeed there becomes
a putting away of the preceding misvah
because of its frailty and unbeneficialness thereof.
19 For the torah completed/shalamed naught
but the introduction of a better hope

HEBREWS 7, 8

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

by the **through** which
we draw *nigh* unto God **approach Elohim**.
20 And inasmuch as not *without* **apart from** an oath
he was made *priest*:
21 (For those priests were made **had indeed become**
without **apart from** an oath;
but this with an oath
by **through** him that *said* **worded** unto him,
The Lord sware **Yah Veh oathed**
and will **shall** not *repent* **regret**,
Thou art a priest *for ever* **unto the eons**
after the order of *Melchisedec* **Malki Sedeq**.)
Psalm 110:4
22 By so much was *Jesus* **hath Yah Shua**
made a *surety* **become a pledge**
of a better *testament* **covenant**.
23 And they *truly were* **indeed became** many priests,
because they were *not suffered* **forbidden**
to *continue* **abide** by reason of death:
24 But this *man* **one**,
because he *continueth ever* **abideth unto the eons**,
hath an *unchangeable* **inviolable** priesthood.
25 Wherefore **So** he is able also
to save them to the *uttermost* **completely**
that come unto God by **Elohim through** him,
seeing he ever *liveth* **living**
to *make intercession* **intercede** for them.
26 For such an *high priest* became **arch priest** **befitted** us,
who is holy **merciful**, *harmless* **innocent**,
undefiled **unpolluted**, *separate* **separated** from sinners,
and made **being** higher than the heavens;
27 Who *needeth not daily* **hath no day by day necessity**,
exactly as those *high* , **arch** priests to offer up sacrifice,
first for his own sins, and then for the people's:
for this he did once, when he offered up himself.
28 For the law *maketh men* **torah seateth humans**
high priests which have infirmity **arch priests** **having frailty**;
but the word of the oath,
which was since **after** the law **torah**,
maketh the **completeth/shalameth** a Son,
who is consecrated for evermore **unto the eons**.

THE SON, OUR ARCH PRIEST

8 Now of the things **those**
which we have *spoken* **worded**, this is the sum:
We have such an *high* **arch** priest
who is *set* **seated** on the right *hand* of the throne
of the Majesty in the heavens;
2 A *minister* **liturgist** of the *sanctuary* **Holies**,
and of the true tabernacle,
which *the Lord pitched* **Yah Veh staked**,
and not *man* **humanity**.
3 For every *high* **arch** priest
is *ordained* to offer *gifts* **gratuities** and sacrifices:
Wherefore **So** it is of necessity
that this *man* **one** have somewhat also to offer.
4 For **indeed** if he were on earth,
he should not *be* **ever been** a priest,
seeing that there are **there being** priests
that offer *gifts* **offerings** according to the law **torah**:
5 Who *serve* **liturgize** unto the example and shadow
of *heavenly things* **the heavenlies**,
as Moses was admonished of God
exactly as oracled to Mosheh
when he was about
to *make* **complete/shalam** the tabernacle:
for, *See, saith he*,
that thou make all *things* according to the *pattern* **type**
shewed to thee in the mount.

Exodus 25:40

6 But now
hath he obtained a more excellent *ministry* **liturgy**,
by how much **inasmuch** as also
he is the mediator of a better covenant,
which was established
upon better *promises* **pre—evangelisms**.
7 For if that first *covenant* had been *faultless* **blameless**,
then should no place have been sought for the second.
Exodus 3:8, 19:5

HEBREWS 7, 8

exeGesés companion BIBLE

— through which we approach Elohim.
20 And inasmuch as not apart from an oath:
21 For indeed
they became priests apart from an oath;
but this with an oath
through him who worded to him,
Yah Veh oaths and regrets not,
You are a priest to the eons
after the order of Malki Sedeq.
Psalm 110:4
22 Yah Shua became a pledge
by a much better covenant:
23 and indeed, they became many priests,
because they were forbidden to abide
by reason of death.
24 And this one, because he abides to the eons,
has an inviolable priesthood.
25 So he is also able
to save them to completion/shalom
who come to Elohim through him
— ever living to intercede for them.
26 For such an archpriest befits us
— merciful,
innocent,
unpolluted,
separated from sinners,
and being higher than the heavens;
27 who has no day by day necessity
exactly as those archpriests
to offer sacrifice
first for his own sins
and then for those of the people:
for he did this once, offering himself.
28 For the torah seats humans
— archpriests having frailty;
but the word of the oath after the torah,
completes/shalams a Son to the eons.

THE SON, OUR ARCHPRIEST

8 And this is the sum of what we worded:
We have such an archpriest
seated at the right of the throne of the Majesty
in the heavens;
2 A liturgist of the Holies and of the true tabernacle
which Yah Veh staked — and not humanity.
3 For every archpriest offers gratuities and sacrifices:
so it is necessary
that this one also have somewhat to offer.
4 For indeed if he were on earth,
he had not ever been a priest,
there being priests
who offer offerings according to the torah:
5 who liturgize
to the example and shadow of the heavenlies,
exactly as oracled to Mosheh
when he was about
to complete/shalam the tabernacle:
for,
See that you make all according to the type
shown you in the mount.

Exodus 25:40

6 And now he obtained a more excellent liturgy,
inasmuch as
he is also the mediator of a better covenant
established upon better pre—evangelisms.
7 For if that first had been blameless,
then no place had been sought for the second.

Exodus 3:8, 19:5

HEBREWS 8, 9

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

8 For *finding fault with* **blaming** them, he *saith* **wordeth**,
Behold, the days come, *saith the Lord* **wordeth Yah Veh**,
when I *will make* **shall complete/shalam** a new covenant
with the house of *Israel* **Yisra El**
and with the house of *Judah* **Yah Hudah**:
9 Not according to the covenant
that I made with their fathers
in the day when I *took them by the* **held their** hand
to lead them out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**;
because they *continued* **abode** not in my covenant,
and I *regarded* **also disregarded** them *not*,
saith the Lord **wordeth Yah Veh**.
10 For this is the covenant that I *will make* **shall covenant**
with the house of *Israel* **Yisra El** after those days,
saith the Lord **wordeth Yah Veh**;
I *will put* **shall give** my laws **torah** into their mind,
and *write* **epigraph** them in their hearts:
and I *will* **shall** be to them, a *God* **Elohim**,
and they shall be to me, a people:
11 And they shall not **no way**
teach every man **doctrinate each** his neighbour,
and *every man* **each** his brother,
saying **wording**, Know *the Lord* **Yah Veh**:
for all shall know me, from the least to the *greatest* **mega**.
12 For I *will be merciful to* **shall kapur/atone**
their *unrighteousness* **injustice**,
and their sins and their *iniquities* **torah violations**
will I **shall I not no way still** remember *no more*.
Yirme Yah 31:31—34
13 In that he *saith* **wordeth**, A new *covenant*,
he hath *made the first old* **antiquated the first**.
Now that
which *decayeth* **antiquateth** and *waxeth old* **senesceth**
is *ready* **nigh** to *vanish away* **disappearing**.

THE COSMIC HOLY TABERNACLE

9 Then *verily* **But indeed** the first *covenant* **tabernacle**
had also
ordinances **judgments** of *divine service* **ministration**,
and a *worldly sanctuary* **cosmic Holies**.
2 For there was a tabernacle *made* **prepared**;
the first, wherein was the *candlestick* **menorah**,
and the table, and the *shewbread* **prothesis bread**;
which is *called* **worded** the *sanctuary* **Holies**.
Exodus 25:30
3 And after the second veil, the tabernacle
which is *called* **worded** the *Holiest of all* **Holy of Holies**;
4 Which had the golden *censer* **incenser**,
and the ark of the covenant
overlaid round **covered** about **on every side** with gold,
wherein was the golden *pot* **jar** that had manna,
and *Aaron's rod* **Aharon's scion** that *budded* **sprouted**,
and the *tables* **slabs** of the covenant;
Exodus 16:33, 25:10, 34:29, Leviticus 16:12,
Numbers 17:10, Deuteronomy 10:2, 5
5 And over it the *cherubims* **cherubim** of glory
shadowing the *mercyseat* **kapporeth**;
of about which we cannot now *speaking* **word**
particularly **according to its parts**.
6 Now when these *things* were thus *ordained* **prepared**,
the priests **indeed**
went always into **continually entered** the first tabernacle,
accomplishing **fully completing**
the *service of God* **liturgy**.
7 But into the second
went the *high* **arch** priest alone once every year,
not without **apart from** blood,
which he offered for himself,
and *for the errors* **unknowingnesses** of the people:
8 The *Holy Ghost* **Spirit** this *signifying* **evidencing**,
that the way into the *holiest of all* **Holies**
was not yet *made* manifest,
while as the first tabernacle was yet standing:
9 Which was a *figure* **parable**
for the time **unto that season** then present,
in which were offered both *gifts* **gratuities** and sacrifices,
that could not *make* **complete/shalam** him
that *did the service perfect* **liturgized**,
as pertaining to the conscience;
10 Which *stood only in meats* **upon food** and drinks,

HEBREWS 8, 9

exeGeses companion BIBLE

8 For blaming them, he worded,
Behold, days come, words Yah Veh,
when I complete/shalam a new covenant
with the house of Yisra El
and with the house of Yah Hudah:
9 not according to the covenant
I made with their fathers
in the day I held their hand
to lead them from the land of Misrayim
— because they abode not in my covenant
and I also disregarded them, words Yah Veh.
10 For this is the covenant
I covenant with the house of Yisra El:
After those days, words Yah Veh;
I give my torah in their mind
and epigraph them in their hearts:
and I become to them — Elohim
and they become to me — people:
and they never no way doctrinate
each his neighbour and each his brother,
wording, Know Yah Veh!
— for they all know me — from the least to the mega:
for I kapur/atone their injustice;
and their sins and their torah violations
I never no way still remember.
Yirme Yah 31:31—34
13 In that he words, A new,
he antiquates the first:
and whatever antiquates and senesces
is near disappearing.

THE COSMIC HOLY TABERNACLE

9 But indeed the first tabernacle
also had judgments of ministration
and a cosmic Holies:
2 for there they prepared a first tabernacle;
wherein were the menorah
and the table and the prothesis bread;
which is worded, Holies.
Exodus 25:30
3 And after the veil, the second tabernacle
which is worded, Holy of Holies;
4 having the golden incenser
and the ark of the covenant
covered all around on every side with gold,
wherein was the golden jar that had manna
and the scion of Aharon that sprouted
and the slabs of the covenant.
Exodus 16:33, 25:10, 34:29, Leviticus 16:12,
Numbers 17:10, Deuteronomy 10:2, 5
5 And over it,
the cherubim of glory shadowing the kapporeth;
about which we cannot word now about its parts.
6 And these being thus prepared,
the priests indeed
continually entered the first tabernacle,
fully completing the liturgy:
7 and into the second
the archpriest alone once every year
not apart from blood he offered for himself
and the unknowingnesses of the people:
8 — the Holy Spirit evidencing this
— that the way into the Holies was not yet manifest,
while the first tabernacle still stood
9 — a parable to that present season,
in which they offered both gratuities and sacrifices,
that could not complete/shalam him who liturgized,
as pertaining to the conscience
— only upon food and drinks

HEBREWS 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and *divers washings* **more excellent baptisms,**
and *carnal ordinances* **judgments of flesh,**
imposed on them until
the *time* **season of reformation thorough straightening.**
11 But *Christ* **Messiah** being come,
an *high* **arch** priest of **the coming** *good things to come,*
by **through** a greater
and *more perfect* **completed/shalamed** tabernacle,
not made with hands **handmade,**
that is to say, not of this *building* **creation;**
12 Neither by **through** the blood of goats and calves,
but by **through** his own blood
he entered in once into the *holy place* **Holies,**
having *obtained* **found** eternal redemption for us.
13 For if the blood of bulls and of goats,
and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the *unclean* **profane,**
sanctifieth **halloweth** to the purifying of the flesh:
14 How much more shall the blood of *Christ* **the Messiah,**
who through the eternal Spirit offered himself
without spot **unblemished** to God **Elohim,**
purge **purify** your conscience from dead works
to serve **liturgize** the living God **Elohim?**
15 And for this cause **which**
he is the mediator of the new *testament* **covenant,**
that by *means of* **having become by** death,
for **unto** the redemption of the transgressions
that were under the first *testament* **covenant,**
they which are called
might receive **take** the *promise* **pre—evangelism**
of eternal inheritance.
16 For where a *testament* **covenant** is,
there must also of necessity
be **brought** the death of the *testator* **covenantor.**
17 For a *testament* **covenant** is of force **stedfast**
after men are dead **upon death:**
otherwise it is of *no strength* **not mighty enough** at all
while the *testator* **covenantor** liveth.
18 Whereupon **And so**
neither the first *testament* was *dedicated* **hanukkahed**
without **apart from** blood.
19 For when *Moses* **Mosheh**
had spoken every *precept* **misvah**
to all the people according to the *law* **torah,**
he took the blood of calves and of goats,
with water, and scarlet wool, and hyssop,
and sprinkled both the *book* **scroll,**
and all the people,
20 *Saying* **Wording,**
This is the blood of the *testament* **covenant**
which God **Yah Veh** hath *enjoined* **misvahed** unto you.
21 Moreover **Likewise** he sprinkled with blood
both the tabernacle,
and all the vessels of the *ministry* **liturgy.**
Exodus 24:8, 29:12, 36, Leviticus 14:16
22 And almost **nearly** all things are,
by **according to** the *law* **torah,**
purged with **purified in** blood;
and *without shedding* **apart from pouring** of blood
is no remission **becometh no forgiveness.**
23 **So indeed** It was *therefore* necessary
that the *patterns of things* **examples** in the heavens
should be purified with these;
but the *heavenly things* **heavenlies** themselves
with better sacrifices than these.
24 For *Christ* **the Messiah** is not entered
into the *holy places* **made with hands** **handmade Holies,**
which are the figures **antitypes** of the true;
but into heaven itself,
now to *appear* **manifest**
in the *presence* **face** of God **Elohim** for us:
25 Nor yet that he should offer himself often,
exactly as the *high arch* priest
entereth into the *holy place* **Holies** every year
with **in** blood of others;
26 For *then* **Otherwise** must he often have suffered
since the foundation of the *world* **cosmos:**
but now once in the *end* **completion/shalom** of the *world* **eon**
hath he *appeared* **been manifest** to put away sin
by **through** the sacrifice of himself.

HEBREWS 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and more excellent baptisms
and judgments of flesh
— imposed until the season of thorough straightening.
11 And Messiah being come
— an archpriest of the coming good
through a greater and completed/shalamed tabernacle
— neither handmade
— nor of this creation
12 — nor through the blood of goats and calves
— but through his own blood:
he entered the Holies once
finding eternal redemption.
13 For if the blood of bulls and of goats
and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the profane
hallows to the purifying of the flesh:
14 how much more the blood of the Messiah
who through the eternal Spirit
offered himself unblemished to Elohim,
purify your conscience from dead works
to liturgize the living Elohim?
15 And because of this
he is the mediator of the new covenant:
whereas, under the first covenant,
death being the redemption of the transgressions,
the called
take the pre—evangelism of eternal inheritance.
16 For where the covenant is,
it is necessary
to bring/bear the death of the covenantor.
17 For a covenant is steadfast upon death:
otherwise it is not mighty enough at all
while the covenantor lives.
18 And so,
the first was not hanukkahed apart from blood.
19 For Mosheh, having spoken every misvah
to all the people according to the torah,
he took the blood of calves and of goats,
with water and scarlet wool and hyssop;
and sprinkled both the scroll and all the people,
20 wording, This is the blood of the covenant
Yah Veh misvahs you.
21 Likewise with blood,
he sprinkled
both the tabernacle and all the vessels of the liturgy.
Exodus 24:8, 29:12, 36, Leviticus 14:16
22 And according to the torah,
nearly all are purified in blood;
and apart from pouring of blood
no forgiveness becomes.
23 So indeed
it was necessary to purify the examples in the heavens
with these;
and the heavenlies themselves
with sacrifices better than these.
24 For the Messiah entered not
the handmade Holies — antitypes of the true;
but the heavens thereof,
to manifest for us now at the face of Elohim:
not that he still offers himself often,
25 exactly as the archpriest enters the Holies every year
in blood of others;
26 otherwise he must have suffered often
from the foundation of the cosmos:
but now in the completion/shalom of the eon
he manifests himself once
to put away sin through the sacrifice of himself.

HEBREWS 9, 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

27 And **inasmuch** as it is appointed **laid out**
unto **men** **humanity** once to die,
but after this the judgment:
28 So **Christ** **Thus the Messiah** was once offered **once**
to bear **offer** the sins of many;
and unto them that **look for** **await** him
shall he **appear** **be seen** the second **time**
without **apart from** sin unto salvation.

THE YEAR BY YEAR SACRIFICES UNDER THE TORAH

10 For the **law** **torah** having a shadow
of **the coming** good **things to come**,
and not the very **image** **icon** of the **things** **substance**,
can never **ever** with those sacrifices
which they offered year by year **continually** **in perpetuity**
make the comers thereunto perfect
complete/shalam them who come.

2 For then **Otherwise**
would **should** they not
have **ceased** **ever paused** to be offered?
because that
the **worshippers** **liturgizers** once **purged** **purified**
should **not still** have had *no more* conscience of sins.
3 But in those **sacrifices**
there is a remembrance *again* **made** of sins every year.

4 For it is *not possible* **impossible**
that the blood of bulls and of goats
should **take away** **remove** sins.

5 Wherefore **So** when he cometh into the **world** **cosmos**,
he **saith** **wordeth**,

Sacrifice and offering thou **wouldest** **willest** not,
but a body hast thou prepared me:
6 In **burnt offerings** **holocausts** and **sacrifices** for sin
thou hast **had** *no pleasure* **not thought well**.

7 Then said I, **Lo** **Behold**, I come
(in the **volume** **heading** of the **book** **scroll**
it is **written** of **scribed** **concerning** me,)
to do thy will, O **God** **Elohim**.

8 Above when he **said** **worded**,
Sacrifice and offering
and **burnt offerings** **holocausts** and **offering** for sin
thou **wouldest** **willest** not,
neither hadst **pleasure** *therein* **thought well**;
which are offered by the **law** **torah**;

Psalm 40:6—8

9 Then said he, **Lo** **Behold**,
I come to do thy will, O **God** **Elohim**.
He taketh away the first,
that he may **establish** **set** the second.
10 **By the** **In** which will we are **sanctified** **hallowed**
through the offering
of the body of **Jesus Christ** **Yah Shua Messiah**
once *for all*.

11 And every priest **indeed** standeth daily
ministering **liturgizing** and offering
oftentimes the same sacrifices **often**,
which can never **ever** take away sins:

THE SACRIFICE OF THE SON — ONCE

12 But this **man** **one**,
after he had offered one sacrifice for sins
for ever **in perpetuity**,
sat down *on* **at** the right **hand** of **God** **Elohim**;
13 From henceforth **expecting** **awaiting**
till his enemies be **made** **placed** his footstool.

Psalm 110:1

14 For by one offering
he hath **perfected** *for ever* **completed/shalamed** **in perpetuity**
them that are **sanctified** **hallowed**.

15 Whereof the Holy **Ghost** **Spirit** also
is a witness **witnesseth** to us:
for after that he had **said** *before* **foretold**,

16 This is the covenant
that I **will** **make** **shall** **covenant** with them
after those days,
saith the Lord **wordeth** **Yah Veh**,
I **will** **put** **shall** **give** my **laws** **torah** into their hearts,
and in their minds **will** I **write** **shall** I **epigraph** them;

17 And their sins and **iniquities** **torah** **violations**
will I **shall** I **not** **no way** **still** remember *no more*.

Yirme Yah 31:33, 34

HEBREWS 9, 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

27 And as it is laid out for humanity to die once
and after this the judgment:
28 thus the Messiah was offered once
to offer the sins of many;
and to them who await him
he appears the second — apart from sin to salvation.

THE YEAR BY YEAR SACRIFICES UNDER THE TORAH

10 For the torah
having a shadow of the coming good
and not the very icon of the substance,
can never ever with those sacrifices
which they offered year by year in perpetuity
complete/shalam them who come.

2 Otherwise were they not to pause in offering them
— because the liturgizers purified once
still had no conscience of sins?

3 — But in them, a remembrance of sins every year?
4 For it is impossible
for the blood of bulls and of goats to remove sins.

5 So coming into the cosmos, he words,
Sacrifice and offering you willed not,
but a body you prepared me:

6 Of holocausts and for sin you thought not well.

7 Then I said, Behold, I come
— the heading of the scroll scribes concerning me
— to do your will, O Elohim.

8 Wording above,
Sacrifice and offering and holocausts and for sin
you neither willed nor thought well
— which are offered by the torah;

Psalm 40:6—8

9 Then he says,
Behold, I come to do your will, O Elohim.
— he takes away the first to set the second:
10 in whose will we are hallowed
through the offering of the body of Yah Shua Messiah
once.

11 And indeed every priest stands daily
liturgizing and offering the same sacrifices often,
which can never ever take away sins.

THE SACRIFICE OF THE SON — ONCE

12 But this one,
after he offered one sacrifice for sins in perpetuity,
sat down at the right of Elohim;
13 from now on awaiting
until the placing of his enemies for his footstool.

Psalm 110:1

14 For by one offering
he completed/shalamed the hallowed in perpetuity
— the Holy Spirit also witnessing to us:
for after he foretold,

15 This is the covenant
I covenant with them after those days,
words Yah Veh,
I give my torah in their hearts
and epigraph them in their minds;
and their sins and torah violations
I never no way still remember.

Yirme Yah 31:33, 34

HEBREWS 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 Now where *remission* **forgiveness** of these is,
there is *no more* **not still** offering for sin.

19 **So** Having *therefore*, brethren,
boldness to enter into the *holiest* **Holies**
by *in* the blood of *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,

20 By a *new* **freshly slaughtered** and living way,
which he hath *consecrated* **hanukkahed** for us,
through the veil, that is *to say*, his flesh;

21 And having *an high* **a mega** priest
over the house of *God* **El**;

22 Let us *draw* **come** near with a true heart
in full *assurance* **bearance** of *faith* **trust**,
having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience,
and our bodies *washed* **bathed** with pure water.

23 Let us hold *fast* **down** the profession of *our faith* **hope**
without wavering **unwaveringly**;
(for he is *faithful* **trustworthy**
that *promised* **pre—evangelized**.)

24 And let us consider one another
to *provoke* **agitate** unto love and to good works:
Not forsaking
the *assembling* **synagoguing** of ourselves together,
exactly as the *manner* **custom** of some is;
but *exhorting one another* **consoling**;
and so much the more,
as **long as** ye see the day approaching.

SINNING VOLUNTARILY

26 For if we sin *wilfully* **voluntarily**
after that
we have *received* **taken** the knowledge of the truth,
there remaineth *no more* **not still** sacrifice for sins,
27 But a *certain fearful looking for* **an awesome expectation**
of judgment and *fiery indignation* **zeal of fire**,
which shall *devour* **consume** the *adversaries* **opposers**.

28 *He* **Anyone** that
despised Moses' law **set aside Mosheh's torah**
died without mercy **apart from compassion**
under two or three witnesses:

29 Of how much *sorer* **worse** punishment,
suppose **think** ye,
shall he be *thought* **deemed** worthy,
who hath *trodden under foot* **trampled down**
the Son of *God* **Elohim**,
and hath *counted* **deemed** the blood of the covenant,
wherewith **wherein** he was *sanctified* **hallowed**,
an unholy thing **profane**,
and hath *done despite unto* **insulted**
the Spirit of *grace* **charism**?

30 For we know him that hath said,
Vengeance *belongeth* unto me, I *will* **shall** recompense,
saith the Lord **wordeth Yah Veh**.

And again, *The Lord* **Yah Veh** shall judge his people.
Deuteronomy 32:35, 36

31 *It is a fearful thing* **How awesome**
to fall into the hands of the living *God* **Elohim**.

32 But *call to remembrance* **remember**
the *former* **previous** days, in which,
after ye were illuminated **having been enlightened**,
ye endured
a *great fight* **vast contention** of *afflictions* **sufferings**;

33 Partly **indeed**,
whilst ye were made a gazingstock **being theatricized**
both by reproaches and *afflictions* **tribulations**;
and partly,
whilst ye became *companions* **communicants**
of them that *were so used* **thus behaved**.

34 For ye
had compassion of **sympathized with** me in my bonds,
and took joyfully **received with cheer**
the *spoiling* **plunder** of your *goods* **holdings**,
knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven
a better and *an enduring substance* **abiding holdings**.

35 **So** Cast not away *therefore* your *confidence* **boldness**,
which hath *great* **mega** recompense of *reward*.

36 For ye have need of *patience* **endurance**, that,
after ye have **having done** the will of *God* **Elohim**,
ye might receive the *promise* **pre—evangelism**.

37 For yet a little *while* — as much as — as long as,

HEBREWS 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 And where there is forgiveness of these,
there is not still offering for sin.

19 **So** brothers,
having boldness to enter the Holies
in the blood of Yah Shua,
20 by a freshly slaughtered and living way,
that he hanukkahed for us through the veil
— his flesh;

21 and having a mega priest over the house of El;
22 we come near with a true heart
in full bearance of trust,
having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience
and our bodies bathed with pure water.

23 Hold down the profession of our hope
unwaveringly;
for he who pre—evangelized is trustworthy.

24 And consider one another
— to agitate to love and to good works:
not forsaking to co—synagogue
exactly as the custom of some is
— but consoling:
and so much the more,
as long as you see the day approaching.

SINNING VOLUNTARILY

26 For if we sin voluntarily
after we take the knowledge of the truth,
there remains not still sacrifice for sins;
27 but an awesome expectation
of judgment and zeal of fire to consume the opposers.

28 Anyone who set aside the torah of Mosheh
died apart from compassion
under two or three witnesses:
29 of how much worse punishment, think you,
is he deemed worthy
— who tramples the Son of Elohim?
— and deems profane
the blood of the covenant wherein he was hallowed?
— and insults the Spirit of charism?

30 For we know him who said,
Vengeance is mine — I recompense, words Yah Veh.
And again, Yah Veh judges his people.
Deuteronomy 32:35, 36

31 How awesome
falling into the hands of the living Elohim.

32 And remember the previous days
wherein having been enlightened
you endured a vast contention of sufferings;
33 partly indeed,
being theatricized both by reproaches and tribulations;
and partly,
while you became communicants
of them who thus behaved.

34 For you sympathized with me in my bonds
and with cheer received the plunder of your holdings,
knowing in yourselves that in the heavens
you have a better and abiding holdings.

35 So cast not away your boldness,
which have a mega recompense:
36 for you have need of endurance
— that having done the will of Elohim,
you receive the pre—evangelism.

37 For yet a little while — as much as — as long as

HEBREWS 10, 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and he that shall come, **will shall** come,
and **will shall** not tarry **take his time**.
38 Now the just shall live by **faith trust**:
but **if whenever** any man draw back **withdraw**,
my soul shall have no pleasure **not think well** in him.
Habakkuk 2:3, 4
39 But we are not of them
who draw back **withdraw** unto **perdition destruction**;
but of them that **believe trust**
to **unto** the **saving acquiring** of the soul.

11

Now **faith trust**
is the substance of **things hoped for our hoping**,
the **evidence proof of things those** not seen.
2 For by **in** it the elders **obtained a good report witnessed**.
3 Through **faith trust** we **understand comprehend**
that the **worlds eons** were **framed prepared**
by the word **rhema of God Elohim**,
so that **unto this**;
things **those** which are seen
were **became** not made
of things **those** which do appear **manifested**.
4 By **faith trust** Abel offered unto **God Elohim**
a more excellent **much better** sacrifice than **Cain Qayin**,
by **through** which he **obtained witness witnessed**
that he was **righteous to being just**,
God testifying Elohim witnessing of his **gifts gratuities**:
and by **through** it he being dead yet speaketh.
5 By **faith Enoch trust Hanoch** was **translated transplaced**
that he should not see death;
and was not found,
because **God Elohim** had **translated transplaced** him:
for **before ere** his **translation transplacing**
he had this **testimony witness**,
that he **pleased God well—pleased Elohim**.
6 But **without faith apart from trust**
it is impossible to **please him well—please**:
for he that cometh to **God Elohim**
must **believe trust** that he is,
and that he **is a rewarder becometh a recompenser**
of them that **diligently** seek him.
7 By **faith Noah trust Noah**,
being **warned of God oracled**
of things **concerning those** not seen as yet,
moved with **fear reverence**,
prepared an ark to the **saving salvation** of his house;
by the **through** which he condemned the **world cosmos**,
and became heir of the **righteousness justness**
which is by **faith trust**.
8 By **faith trust Abraham**,
when he was called to go out into a place
which he **should after receive was about to take**
for **unto** an inheritance, obeyed;
and he went **out**, not knowing whither he went.
9 By **faith trust**
he **sojourned settled**
in the land of **promise pre—evangelism**,
as in a **strange country another's**,
dwelling settling in tabernacles
with **Isaac Yischaq and Jacob Yaaqov**,
the **heirs with him co—heirs**
of the same **promise pre—evangelism**:
10 For he **looked for awaited** a city
which hath foundations,
whose **builder artificer and maker public worker**
is **God Elohim**.
11 Through **faith trust** also Sara **herself**
received strength took dynamis to conceive **seed sperma**,
and was **delivered of a child birthed**
when she was
past age beyond the season of maturation,
because **since** she **judged deemed** him
faithful trustworthy who had **promised pre—evangelized**.
12 Therefore **sprang there So there birthed**, even of one,
and him as good as dead,
so many **exactly** as the stars of the sky in multitude,
and as the sand which is by the sea shore innumerable.
13 These all died in **faith trust**,
not having **received taken** the **promises pre—evangelisms**,

HEBREWS 10, 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and he who comes, comes
and takes not his time.
38 And the just live by trust:
and whenever anyone withdraws,
my soul thinks not well in him.
Habakkuk 2:3, 4
39 And we are not of them
who withdraw to destruction;
but of them who trust to the acquiring of the soul.

TRUST

11

And trust
is the substance of our hoping;
the proof of the unseen.
2 For in this, the elders were witnessed to.
3 By trust
we comprehend that the eons
were prepared by the rhema of Elohim:
in this: the seen became not from those manifested.
4 By trust
Abel offered Elohim a much better sacrifice
than Qayin;
through which he witnessed to being just
— Elohim witnessing of his gratuities:
and through it, being dead, he still speaks.
5 By trust
Hanoch was transplaced to not see death;
and was not found;
because Elohim transplaced him:
for ere his transplacing he had this witness
— that he well—pleased Elohim:
and apart from trust
it is impossible to well—please:
for whoever comes to Elohim must trust that he is:
and that he comes a recompenser
to them who seek him.
7 By trust
Noah, being oracled concerning those still unseen,
moved with reverence;
prepared an ark to the salvation of his house;
through which he condemned the cosmos
and became heir of the justness by trust.
8 By trust
Abraham, when called to go to a place
he was about to take to an inheritance, obeyed;
and he went, knowing not where he goes.
9 By trust
he settled in the land of pre—evangelism,
as in another's,
settling in tabernacles with Yischaq and Yaaqov
— co—heirs of the same pre—evangelism:
for he awaited a city having foundations,
whose artificer and public worker is Elohim.
11 By trust
Sara also took dynamis to conceive sperma
— and birthed
when she was beyond the season of maturation;
since she deemed him who had pre—evangelized
trustworthy.
12 So even of one
and him as good as dead
birthed a multitude exactly as the stars of the sky
and innumerable as the sand by the sea shore.
13 These all died in trust
not taking the pre—evangelisms;

TRUST

HEBREWS 11

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

but having seen them afar off,
and were *persuaded of them* **convinced**,
and *embraced them* **saluted**, and *confessed* **professed**
that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth.
14 For they that say **word** such *things*
declare plainly **manifest**
that they seek a *country* **fatherland**.
15 And *truly* **indeed**,
if they had *been mindful of that country* **remembered**
from whence they came out,
they might have **ever** had *opportunity* **season**
to have returned.
16 But now they *desire* **reach for** a better *country*,
that is, an *heavenly* **heavenlies**:
Wherefore God **So Elohim**
is not ashamed to be called their *God* **Elohim**:
for he hath prepared for them a city.
17 By *faith* **trust** Abraham,
when he was *tried* **tested**, offered up Isaac **Yischaq**:
and he that had received the *promises* **pre—evangelisms**
offered up his only *begotten son*, **birthed**
18 Of **Unto** whom it was *said* **spoken**,
That in Isaac **Yischaq** shall thy *seed* **sperma** be called:
19 *Accounting* **Reckoning** that *God* **Elohim**
was able to raise *him up*, even from the dead;
from whence also he received him in a *figure* **parable**.
20 By *faith* **trust**
Isaac **Yischaq** blessed Jacob **Yaaqov** and Esau **Esav**
concerning *things* **those** to come.
21 By *faith* Jacob **trust** **Yaaqov**, when he was a dying,
blessed *both* **each of** the sons of Joseph **Yoseph**;
and worshipped,
leaning upon the top **tip** of his *staff* **scion**.
22 By *faith* Joseph **trust** **Yoseph**, when he died,
made mention **remembered**
of **concerning** the *departing* **exodus**
of the *children* **sons of Israel** **Yisra El**;
and gave *commandment* **misvahed** concerning his bones.
23 By *faith* Moses **trust** **Mosheh**, when he was *born* **birthed**,
was *hid* **secreted** three months of his *parents* **fathers**,
because they saw he was a *proper* **an urbane** child;
and they were not *afraid* **awestricken**
of the *king's commandment* **sovereign's ordinance**.
24 By *faith* Moses **trust** **Mosheh**,
when he was *come to years* **became mega**,
refused **denied** to be called **worded**,
the son of *Pharaoh's* **Paroh's** daughter;
25 Choosing rather to *suffer affliction* **co—suffer**
with the people of *God* **Elohim**,
than to *enjoy* the *pleasures* **temporal enjoyment**
of sin *for a season*;
26 Esteeming the reproach of *Christ* **the Messiah**
greater riches than the treasures in *Egypt* **Misrayim**:
for he *had respect* **looked away** unto the recompence
of the *reward*.
27 By *faith* **trust** he forsook *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
not *fearing* **awestricken**
by the *wrath* **fury** of the *king* **sovereign**:
for he *endured* **persevered**,
as seeing him who is invisible.
28 Through *faith* **trust** he *kept* **did** the *passover* **pasach**,
and the *sprinkling* **pouring** of blood,
lest he that destroyed the firstborn
should *touch* **finger** them.
29 By *faith* **trust**
they passed through the *Red* **Reed** sea
as by *through* **dry land**:
which the *Egyptians* **Misrayim**
assaying to do **taking on to test**
were *drowned* **swallowed**.
30 By *faith* **trust** the walls of Jericho fell *down*,
after they were *compassed about* **surrounded** seven days.
31 By *faith* **trust** **Rachab** the *harlot* **Rahab** **whore**
perished **co—destructured** not
with them that *believed not* **distrusted**,
when she had received the spies with *peace* **shalom**.
32 And what shall I *more* say **still word**?

HEBREWS 11

exeGesés companion BIBLE

but seeing them afar:
and were convinced and saluted and professed
that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth.
14 For whoever words such
manifest that they seek a fatherland.
15 And indeed,
if they had remembered from whence they came,
they had ever had season to return.
16 But now they reach for a better
— that is, the heavenlies:
so Elohim shames not to be called their Elohim:
for he prepared them a city.
17 By trust
when Abraham was tested, offered Yischaq
— he who received the pre—evangelisms
offered his only birthed son,
to whom it was spoken,
In Yischaq your sperma is called:
reckoning that Elohim was able to raise
— even from the dead;
whence also he received him in a parable.
20 By trust
Yischaq blessed Yaaqov and Esav
concerning those to come.
21 By trust
Yaaqov, dying,
blessed each of the sons of Yoseph;
and worshipped on the tip of his scion.
22 By trust
Yoseph, dying,
remembered concerning the exodus
of the sons of Yisra El;
and misvahed concerning his bones.
23 By trust
Mosheh, being birthed,
was secreted three months by his fathers,
because they saw he was an urbane child;
and they awed not by the ordinance of the sovereign.
24 By trust
Mosheh, becoming mega,
denied being worded
the son of the daughter of Paroh;
25 choosing rather
to co—suffer with the people of Elohim,
than the temporal enjoyment of sin;
esteeming the reproach of the Messiah
greater riches than the treasures in Misrayim:
for he looked to the recompence.
27 By trust
he forsook Misrayim;
not awestricken by the fury of the sovereign:
for he persevered — as seeing him who is invisible.
28 By trust
he did the pasach and the pouring of blood,
lest he who destroys the firstborn, finger them.
29 By trust
they passed through the Reed sea as through dry:
which the Misrayim took to test,
and were swallowed.
30 By trust
the walls of Jericho fell,
after they were surrounded seven days.
31 By trust
Rachab the whore co—destructured not
with them who distrusted,
when she received the spies with shalom.
32 And what word I still?

HEBREWS 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

for the time *would* **should** fail me
to tell of Gedeon **declare about Gidon**,
and of Barak **Baraq** also, and of Samson **Shimshon**,
and of Jephthae **Yipthach**; of David also,
and Samuel **Shemu El**, and of the prophets:
33 Who through *faith* **trust**
subdued *kingdoms* **sovereigndoms**,
wrought *righteousness* **worked justness**,
obtained *promises* **pre—evangelisms**,
34 *stopped* **sealed** the mouths of lions.
Quenched the *violence* **dynamis** of fire,
escaped **fled** the edge of the sword,
out of *weakness* **frailty** were *made strong* **empowered**,
waxed valiant **became mighty** in *fight* **war**,
turned to flight **put down** the *armies* **encampments**
of the *aliens* **others**.
35 Women received **took** their dead
raised to life again **by resurrection**:
and others were tortured,
not *accepting deliverance* **receiving redemption**;
that they might obtain a better resurrection:
36 And others *had trial of cruel* **took testings**
of mockings and scourgings, yea,
moreover **yet** of bonds and *imprisonment* **guardhouses**:
37 They were stoned,
they were *sawn asunder* **apart**,
were *tempted* **tested**,
were *slain with* **deathified in murder** by the sword:
they wandered about in sheepskins and goatskins;
being destitute **falling behind**,
afflicted **tribulated**, *tormented* **vilified**;
38 (Of whom the *world* **cosmos** was not worthy:)
they wandered
in *deserts* **wildernesses**, and in *mountains*,
and in *dens* **grottos** and *caves* **caverns** of the earth.
39 And these all,
having *obtained a good report* **witnessed**
through *faith* **the trust**,
40 received not the *promise* **pre—evangelism**:
God **Elohim**
having **previously** provided some better *thing* for us,
that they *without* **apart from** us
should not be *made perfect* **completed**.

FROM THE CLOUD OF WITNESSES TO YAH SHUA

12

Wherefore So

seeing we also are *compassed about* **surrounded**
with so *great* **vast** a cloud of witnesses,
let us *lay aside* **put away** every weight,
and the **well—standing** sin *which doth so easily beset us*,
and let us run *with patience* **through endurance**
the *race* **contest** that is set *before* **in front of** us,
2 *Looking* **Considering** unto *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
the *author* **hierarch** and *finisher* **completer**
of our *faith* **the trust**;
who for the *joy* **cheer** that was set before him
endured the *cross* **stake**,
despising **disesteeming** the shame,
and is *set down* **at seated**
at the right *hand* of the throne of *God* **Elohim**.

THE PURPOSE OF THE DISCIPLINE OF YAH VEH

3 For consider him
that endured such *contradiction* **controversy**
of *by* sinners *against* **unto** himself,
lest ye be wearied and *faint* **weakened**
in your *minds* **souls**.
4 Ye have not yet *resisted* **withstood** unto blood,
striving against **antagonizing with** sin.
5 And ye *have forgotten* **are utterly oblivious**
to the *exhortation* **consolation**
which *speakeeth* **reasoneth** unto you
as unto *children* **sons**,
My son, *despise* **disregard** not thou
the *chastening* **discipline** of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**,
nor *faint* **weaken**
when thou art *rebuked of* **reproved by** him:
6 For whom *the Lord* **Yah Veh** loveth
he *chasteneth* **disciplineth**,
and scourgeth every son whom he receiveth.

Proverbs 3:11, 12

HEBREWS 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

for the time fails me to declare about Gidon
and also Baraq and Shimshon and Yipthach;
also David and Shemu El and the prophets
33 — who through trust:
subdued sovereigndoms,
worked justness,
obtained pre—evangelisms,
34 sealed the mouths of lions,
quenched the dynamis of fire,
fled the edge of the sword,
from frailty were empowered,
became mighty in war,
put down the encampments of others,
35 women took their dead by resurrection,
and others were tortured
— not receiving redemption
to obtain a better resurrection,
36 and others
took testings of mockings and scourgings
— yes, still of bonds and guardhouses:
37 they were stoned,
they were sawn apart,
they were tested,
deathified in murder by the sword,
wondered about in sheepskins and goatskins,
38 falling behind — tribulated — vilified,
of whom the cosmos was not worthy:
wandering in wildernesses and mountains
and grottos and caverns of the earth.
39 And these all, witnessing through the trust,
40 received not the pre—evangelism:
Elohim having previously provided
somewhat better for us
— that they not completed/shalamed apart from us.

FROM THE CLOUD OF WITNESSES TO YAH SHUA

12

So seeing we also are surrounded
with so vast a cloud of witnesses,
put away every weight and the well—standing sin:
and through endurance,
run the contest set in front of us:
2 considering to Yah Shua
the hierarch and completer/shalamer of the trust
— who for the cheer set in front of him:
endured the stake,
disesteeming the shame,
and is seated at the right of the throne of Elohim.

THE PURPOSE OF THE DISCIPLINE OF YAH VEH

3 For consider him
who endured such controversy by sinners to himself;
lest you weary and weaken in your souls.
4 You have not yet withstood to blood
antagonizing with sin:
5 and you are utterly oblivious to the consolation
which reasons to you as to sons,
My son,
neither disregard the discipline of Yah Veh,
nor weaken when he reproves you:
6 for Yah Veh disciplines whom he loves
and scourges every son he receives.

Proverbs 3:11, 12

HEBREWS 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

7 If ye endure *chastening* **discipline**,
God *dealeth with* **Elohim offereth** you as with sons;
for what son is he
whom the father *chasteneth* **disciplineth** not?
8 But if ye be *without chastisement* **apart from discipline**,
whereof all *are* **become** partakers,
then are ye bastards, and not sons.
9 *Furthermore* **So indeed**
we have had fathers of our flesh
which *corrected* **disciplined** us,
and we *gave* **respected** them *reverence*:
shall we not much rather
be in subjection **subjugate** unto the Father of spirits,
and live?
10 For they *verily* **indeed** for a few days
chastened us **disciplined**
after their *own pleasure* **well** — **thinking**;
but he for *our profit* **benefit**,
that we might *be partakers* **partake** of his holiness.
11 Now **indeed** no *chastening* **discipline** for the present
seemeth **is thought** to be *joyous* **cheerful**,
but *grievous* **sorrowful**:
nevertheless afterward it *yieldeth* **giveth back**
the *peaceable* **shalom**
of the *fruit of righteousness* **justness**
unto them which are exercised *thereby* **through it**.
12 *Wherefore lift up* **So straighten** the **limping** hands
which hang down,
and the *feeble* **paralyzed** knees;
13 And make straight *paths* **tracks** for your feet,
lest that which is lame be turned *out of the way* **aside**;
but let it rather be healed.
14 *Follow peace* **Pursue shalom** with all *men*,
and holiness,
without **apart from** which
no *man* **one** shall see the *Lord* **Adonay**:
15 *Looking diligently* **Overseeing**
lest any *man* **fail** **one fall behind**
of the *grace* **charism** of *God* **Elohim**;
lest any root of bitterness *springing up* **sprouting**,
trouble **harass** you,
and *thereby* **through this** many be defiled;
16 Lest there be any *fornicator* **whoremonger**,
or *profane person* **profaner**,
as *Esau* **Esav**, who for one morsel of *meat* **food**
sold **gave up** his *birthright* **firstrights**.
17 For ye know *how* that *afterward* **thereafter**,
when he *would* **willed to** have inherited the blessing,
he was *rejected* **disapproved**:
for he found no place of repentance,
though he sought it *carefully* with tears.
18 For ye are not come
unto the mount *that might be* touched,
and that burned with fire,
nor **and** unto *blackness* **clouds of gloom**,
and darkness, and tempest,
19 And the *sound* **echo** of a trumpet,
and the voice of *words* **rhemas**;
which *voice* they that heard, *intreated* **shunned**,
that the word
should not be *spoken* **added** to them *any more*:
20 (For they could not *endure* **bear**
that which was *commanded* **charged**,
And *if so much as* **whenever**
a beast *touch* **fingers** the mountain,
it shall be stoned,
or *thrust* **pierced** through with a *dart* **missile**:
21 And **thus**
so *terrible* **awesome** was the *sight* **manifestation**,
that *Moses* **Mosheh** said,
I *exceedingly* **fear** **am utterly frightened**
and *quake* **trembling**.)
Exodus 19:12, 20:18, 19

SINAY VS SIYON

HEBREWS 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

7 If you endure discipline,
Elohim offers you as with sons;
for what son is there whom the father disciplines not?
8 And if you are apart from discipline,
whereof all become partakers,
then you are bastards and not sons.
9 So indeed
we have fathers of our flesh who discipline us
and we respect them:
and not much rather
subjugate to the Father of spirits and live?
10 For they indeed, for a few days,
discipline after their well—thinking;
but he for our benefit
that we partake of his holiness.
11 Now indeed, for the present,
no discipline is thought to be cheerful
— but sorrowful:
nevertheless afterward
it gives the shalom of the fruit of justness
to them who exercise through it.
12 So straighten the limping hands
and the paralyzed knees;
13 and make straight tracks for your feet,
lest whoever is lame turns aside;
but rather be healed.
14 Pursue shalom with all — and holiness
— apart from which no one sees Adonay:
15 overseeing
lest anyone fall behind of the charism of Elohim;
lest any sprouting root of bitterness harass you;
and through this many are defiled;
16 lest there be any whoremonger or profaner as Esav
— who for one morsel of food gave up his firstrights.
17 For you know that thereafter
when he willed to inherit the blessing
he was disapproved:
for he found no place of repentance,
though he sought it with tears.
18 For you come not to the mount
touched and burned with fire
and to clouds of gloom and darkness and tempest
and to the echo of a trumpet
and to the voice of rhemas
— which, they who heard, shunned
that the word not be added to them;
20 for they could not bear what was charged:
and whenever a beast fingered the mountain,
so be it stoned or pierced through with a missile:
21 and so awesome was the manifestation,
that Mosheh said, I utterly frighten and tremble:
Exodus 19:12, 20:18, 19

SINAY VS SIYON

22

But you come to Mount Siyon
to the city of the living Elohim
— the Yeru Shalem of the heavenlies
and to myriads of angels,

HEBREWS 12, 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

23 To the *general assembly* **whole gathering**
and *church* **ecclesia** of the firstborn,
which are *written* **registered** in *heaven* **the heavens**,
and to *God* **Elohim** the Judge of all,
and to the spirits of **the just men**
made perfect **having been completed/shalamed**,
24 And to *Jesus* **Yah Shua**
the mediator of the new covenant,
and to the blood of sprinkling,
that speaketh better *things* than *that of* Abel.
25 See that ye *refuse* **shun** not him that speaketh.
For if they *escaped* **fled** not
who *refused* **shunned** him that *spake* **oracled** on earth,
much more shall *not* we *escape*,
if we turn away from him
that speaketh from heaven **of the heavens**:
26 Whose voice then shook the earth:
but now he hath *promised* **pre—evangelized**,
saying **wording**,
Yet once more I *shake* **quake** not the earth only,
but also heaven.
27 And this *word*, Yet once more,
signifieth **evidenceth** the *removing* **transplacing**
of those *things* that are **shaken**,
as of *things* **those** that are made,
that those *things* which cannot be shaken
may *remain* **abide**.
28 *Wherefore* **So** we
receiving **taking** a *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
which cannot be moved **unmovable**,
let us have *grace* **charism**,
whereby **through which** we may *serve* **minister**
God acceptably **to Elohim well—pleasingly**
with *reverence* **awe** and *Godly fear* **reverence**:
29 For our *God* **Elohim** is a consuming fire.

CONCLUSION

13 Let *brotherly love* **befriending the brethren**
continue **abide**.
2 Be not forgetful to *entertain* **befriend** strangers:
for *thereby* **through this**
some have *entertained* **lodged** angels *unawares* **in hiding**.
3 Remember them that are *in bonds* **bound**,
as *bound with them* **being co—bound**;
and them which *suffer adversity* **are vilified**,
as being yourselves also in the body.
4 Marriage is honourable in all,
and the *bed undefiled* **coition unpolluted**:
but whoremongers and adulterers
God will **Elohim shall** judge.
5 Let your *conversation* **manner**
be *without covetousness* **unavaricious**;
and be *content* **satisfied** with
such things as ye have **the present**:
for he hath said,
I *will shall* never **no way** *leave* **let loose** of thee,
nor **no way** forsake thee.
6 So that we may *boldly say* **courageously word**,
The Lord **Yah Veh** is my helper,
and I *will shall* not **fear awe**
by what *man* **humanity** shall do unto me.

Psalm 118:6

7 Remember them which *have the rule over* **govern** you,
who have spoken unto you the word of *God* **Elohim**:
whose *faith follow* **trust mimic**,
considering the *end* **outcome** of their *conversation* **behaviour**.
8 *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah** the same yesterday,
and to day, and for *ever* **unto the eons**.
9 Be not carried about with divers and strange doctrines.
For it is a *good thing*
that the heart be established with *grace* **charism**;
not with *meats* **foods**,
which have not *profited* **benefited** them
that have *been occupied* **walked** therein.
10 We have *an* **a sacrifice** altar,
whereof they have *no right* **authority** to eat
which *serve* **minister** the tabernacle.
11 For the bodies of those *beasts* **live beings**,
whose blood is brought into the *sanctuary* **Holies**

HEBREWS 12, 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

23 to the whole gathering and ecclesia of the firstborn
registered in the heavens,
and to Elohim the Judge of all,
and to the spirits of the just
being completed/shalamed,
24 and to Yah Shua the mediator of the new covenant,
and to the blood of sprinkling
speaking better than Abel.
25 See that you not shun him who speaks.
For if they flee not
— they who shunned him who oracled on earth,
how much more we,
— we who turn from him of the heavens
whose voice then shook the earth.
26
And now he pre—evangelizes, wording,
Still once more I quake, not only the earth,
but also the heavens.
27
And this: Still once more
evidences the transplacing of those that are shaken
as of those that are made;
that those that cannot be shaken still abide.
28 So we, taking an unmovable sovereigndom,
have charism;
through which we minister to Elohim
well—pleasingly with awe and reverence:
29 For our Elohim is a consuming fire.

CONCLUSION

13 And abide befriending the brothers abides:
2 not forgetful to befriend strangers:
for through this some lodge angels in hiding.
3 Remember the bound as being co—bound;
and the vilified as also being in the body as you.
4 Marriage is honorable in all
and the coition unpolluted:
but Elohim judges whoremongers and adulterers.
5 Your manner, unavaricious;
being satisfied with the present.
For he said,
I neither no way let loose of you
nor no way forsake.
6 So courageously we word,
Yah Veh my helper:
and I awe not what humanity does to me.
Psalm 118:6
7 Remember them who govern you,
who speak the word of Elohim to you:
whose trust mimic,
considering the outcome of their behavior.
8 Yah Shua Messiah the same
— yesterday and today and to the eons.
9 Be not carried about
with divers and strange doctrines.
For it is good to establish the heart with charism;
and not with foods
which benefit not those who walk therein.
10 We have a sacrifice altar,
whereof whoever ministers the tabernacle
has no authority to eat.
11 For the bodies of those live beings,
whose blood is brought into the Holies

HEBREWS 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

12 by **through** the *high arch* priest for sin,
are burned without the *camp encampment*.
13 *Wherefore Jesus So Yah Shua* also,
that he might *sanctify hallow* the people
with **through** his own blood, suffered without the gate.
14 Let us go forth therefore unto him
without the *camp encampment*,
bearing his reproach.
15 For here have we no *continuing abiding* city,
but we seek one to come.
16 By **So through** him *therefore*
let us offer the sacrifice of *praise halal* to *God Elohim*
continually, that is,
the fruit of *our lips giving thanks to professing* his name.
17 But to do good and to *communicate communion*
forget not:
for with such sacrifices *God Elohim* is well—pleased.
18 Obey them that *have the rule over govern* you,
and submit yourselves:
for they watch for your souls,
as they that must give *account word*,
that they may do it with *joy cheer*,
and not with *grief sighing*:
for that is *unprofitable disadvantageous* for you.
19 Pray for us:
for we *trust are confident*
that we have a good conscience,
in all *things* willing to *live honestly behave well*.
20 But I beseech you *the rather superabundantly*
to do this,
that I may be restored to you *the sooner very quickly*.
21 Now the *God Elohim* of *peace shalom*,
that brought *again* from the dead
our *Lord Jesus Adonay Yah Shua*,
that *great mega* shepherd of the sheep,
through in the blood of the *everlasting eternal* covenant,
22 Make **Prepare** you *perfect* in every good work
to do his will,
working doing in you
that which is well—pleasing in his sight,
through *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*;
to whom be glory
for ever and ever unto the eons of the eons.
Amen.
23 And I beseech you, brethren,
suffer tolerate the word of *exhortation consolation*:
for I have *written a letter epistolized* unto you
in through few words.
24 Know ye
that *our brother Timothy Timo Theos* is *set at liberty released*;
with whom, *if whenever* he come *shortly very quickly*,
I *will shall* see you.
SALUTES AND BENEDICTION
25 Salute all them that *have the rule over govern* you,
and all the *saints holy*.
They of Italy salute you.
Grace **Charism** be with you all.
Amen.

HEBREWS 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

through the archpriest for sin,
are burned outside the encampment.
12 So Yah Shua also,
to hallow the people through his own blood,
suffered outside the gate.
13 So go forth to him outside the encampment,
bearing his reproach.
14 For we have no abiding city here,
but we seek one to come.
15 So through him
we continually offer the sacrifice of halal to Elohim,
that is, the fruit of our lips, professing his name:
and forget not to do good and communion:
for Elohim is well—pleased with such sacrifices.
16 Obey them who govern you
and submit yourselves:
for they watch for your souls
as they that must give word
— to do it with cheer and not with sighing:
for that is disadvantageous for you.
17 Pray for us:
for we are confident that we have a good conscience;
we will to behave well in all.
18 and I superabundantly beseech you to do this:
restore me to you very quickly.
19 And the Elohim of the shalom,
who brought our Adonay Yah Shua from the dead,
that mega shepherd of the sheep
in the blood of the eternal covenant
prepare you in every good work to do his will:
doing in you what is well—pleasing in his sight,
through Yah Shua Messiah;
to whom be glory to the eons of the eons.
Amen.
20 And I beseech you, brothers,
tolerate the word of consolation:
for I epistolize you through few words.
21 Know this, that brother Timo Theos is released;
with whom, whenever he comes very quickly,
I see you.
SALUTES AND BENEDICTION
22 Salute all who govern you and all the holy.
They of Italy salute you.
Charism be with you all.
Amen.

JAMES 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 James Yaaqovos,
 a servant of God **Elohim**
 and of the Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
 to the twelve tribes **scions**
 which are scattered abroad **of the diaspora**,
 greeting **Cheers**.

TRUST AND TESTINGS

2 My brethren,
 count **deem** it all joy **cheer**
 when ye fall into divers *temptations* **testings**;
 3 Knowing *this*,
 that the *trying* **proofing** of your *faith* **trust**
 worketh *patience* **endurance**.
 4 But let *patience* **And endurance**
 have *her perfect* a work **of completion/shalom**,
 that ye may be *perfect* **complete/at shalom** and *entire* **whole**,
 wanting *nothing* **lacking naught**.
 5 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God **Elohim**,
 that giveth to all *men* liberally,
 and *upbraideth* **reproacheth** not;
 and it shall be given him.
 6 But let him ask in *faith* **trust**,
nothing wavering **doubting naught**.
 For he that *wavereth* **doubteth**
 is like **resembleth** a wave **surge** of the sea
 driven with the wind **windtossed** and tossed.
 7 For let not that *man think* **human suppose**
 that he shall receive *any thing* **take aught**
 of the Lord **Adonay**.
 8 A double *minded* **souled** man
 is unstable in all his ways.
 9 Let the brother of *low degree* **humbleness**
 rejoice **boast** in that he is exalted **his exaltation**:
 10 But the rich,
 in that he is made *low* **his humiliation**:
 because as the *flower* **blossom** of the *grass* **herbage**
 he shall pass away.
 11 For the sun is no sooner risen
 with a *burning heat* **scorch**,
 but it withereth the grass,
 and the *flower* **blossom** thereof falleth,
 and the *grace* **befittingness** of the *fashion* of it **its face**
perisheth **destructeth**:
 so **thus** also
 shall the rich *man* fade away in his ways.
 12 Blessed is the man that endureth *temptation* **testing**:
 for when he is *tried* **because, being approved**,
 he shall receive **take** the *crown* **wreath** of life,
 which the Lord **Adonay** hath *promised* **pre—evangelized**
 to them that love him.
 13 Let no *man say* **one word** when he is *tempted* **tested**,
Because I am *tempted* **tested** of God **Elohim**:
 for God **Elohim**
 cannot **shall not** be *tempted* **tested** with evil,
 neither *tempteth* **testeth** he any *man* **one**:
 14 But every *man* **each** is *tempted* **tested**,
 when he is *drawn away* **enticed** of his own *lust* **panting**,
 and *enticed* **entrapped**.
 15 Then when *lust* **panting** hath conceived,
 it *bringeth forth* **birtheth** sin:
 and sin, when it is *finished* **complete/shalamed**,
bringeth forth **breedeth** death.
 16 Do **Wander** not err, my beloved brethren.
 17 Every good *gift* **gratuity**
 and every *perfect gift* **complete gratuity** is from above,
 and *cometh down* **descendeth** from the Father of lights,
 with whom is no *variableness* **changeableness**,
 neither shadow of turning.
 18 Of his own will
begat **bred** he us with the word of truth,
 that we should be
 a *kind of a firstfruits* **firstlings** of his creatures.
 19 Wherefore **So then**, my beloved brethren,
 let every *man* **human** be *swift* **quick** to hear,
 slow to speak, slow to wrath:
 20 For the wrath of man
 worketh not the *righteousness* **justness** of God **Elohim**.
 21 Wherefore lay apart **So put away** all *filthiness* **foulness**

YAAQOVOS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Yaaqovos,
 a servant of Elohim and of Adonay Yah Shua Messiah:
 To the twelve scions of the diaspora:
 Cheers.

TRUST AND TESTINGS

2 My brothers,
 deem it all cheer when you fall into divers testings;
 3 knowing that the proofing of your trust
 works endurance:
 4 and endurance have a work of completion/shalom
 so that you are complete/at shalom
 and whole — lacking naught.
 5 If any of you lack wisdom, ask of Elohim
 who gives liberally to all and reproaches not
 — and he is given.
 6 But ask in trust, doubting naught.
 For whoever doubts resembles a surge of the sea
 windtossed and tossed.
 7 For suppose not
 that such a human takes aught of Adonay.
 8 A double—souled man is unstable in all his ways.
 9 But the brother of humbleness
 boasts in his exaltation;
 10 and the rich in his humiliation:
 because he passes as the blossom of the herbage.
 11 For the sun rises with a scorch
 and withers the grass;
 and the blossom falls
 and destructs the befittingness of its face:
 thus also the rich fades in his ways.
 12 Blessed — the man who endures testing:
 because being approved
 he takes the wreath of life
 — which Adonay pre—evangelized
 to them who love him.
 13 Word not, when tested,
 Because I am tested of Elohim:
 for Elohim is neither tested with evil
 nor tests anyone:
 14 but each is tested
 when he is enticed of his own panting and entrapped.
 15 Then when panting conceives, it births sin:
 and when sin completes/shalams, it breeds death.
 16 Wander not, my beloved brothers.
 17 Every gratuity of good
 and every gratuity of completion/shalom
 is from above;
 and descends from the Father of lights
 — with whom is neither changeableness
 nor shadow of turning.
 18 Of his own will
 he bred us with the word of truth
 — to be some firstlings of his creatures.
 19 So then, my beloved brothers,
 thus be every human:
 quick to hear,
 slow to speak,
 slow to wrath:
 20 For the wrath of man
 works not the justness of Elohim.
 21 So put away all foulness

JAMES 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and *superfluity* **superabundance** of *naughtiness* **malice**,
and receive *with in* meekness the *engrafted* **implanted** word,
which is able to save your souls.
22 But be ye doers of the word,
and not hearers only,
deceiving **deluding** your own selves.
23 For **Because** if any be a hearer of the word,
and not a doer,
he *is like unto* **resembles** a man
beholding **perceiving** his *natural* **genetic** face
in a *glass* **mirror**:
24 For he *beholdeth* **perceiveth** himself,
and goeth *his way*,
and straightway forgetteth what manner *of man* he was.
25 But whoso looketh
into the *perfect law* **torah of completion/shalom** of liberty,
and *continueth* **abideth** therein,
he being not a forgetful hearer,
but a doer of the work,
this *man* **one** shall be blessed in his *deed* **doing**.
26 If any *man* **one** among you
seem **think** to be *religious* **ceremonious**,
and bridleth not his tongue,
but *deceiveth* **deludeth** his own heart,
this man's *religion* **ceremony** is vain.
27 Pure *religion* **ceremony** and *undefiled* **unpolluted**
before God **with Elohim** and the Father is this,
To *visit* **scope out** the *fatherless* **orphans** and widows
in their *affliction* **tribulation**,
and to *keep* **guard** himself *unspotted* **unstained**
from the *world* **cosmos**.

THE TEST OF PARTIALITY

2 My brethren,
have not the *faith* **trust** of our
Lord Jesus Christ, **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
the Lord of glory
with respect of persons **in partiality**.
2 For *if* **whenever** there come unto your *assembly* **synagogue**
a man *with a gold ring* **goldringed**,
in *goodly* **radiant** apparel,
and there come in also
a poor man in *vile raiment* **foul apparel**;
3 And ye *have respect to* **look upon** him
that *weareth* **beareth** the *gay clothing* **radiant apparel**,
and say unto him, Sit thou here *in a good place* **well**;
and say to the poor, Stand thou there,
or sit here under my footstool:
4 Are ye not then *partial* **discerning** in yourselves,
and are become judges of evil *thoughts* **reasonings**?
5 Hearken, my beloved brethren,
Hath not *God* **Elohim**
chosen **selected** the poor of this *world* **cosmos**
rich in *faith* **trust**,
and heirs of the *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
which he hath *promised* **pre—evangelized**
to them that love him?
6 But ye have *despised* **dishonoured** the poor.
Do not **the rich men** *oppress* **overpower** you,
and *draw* **drag** you *before* **unto** the judgment seats?
7 Do not they blaspheme that *worthy* **good** name
by the which ye are called?
8 If **yet indeed**
ye *fulfil* **complete/shalam** the *royal law* **sovereign torah**
according to the scripture,
Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself,
ye do well:
9 But if ye have *respect to persons* **partiality**,
ye *commit* **work** sin,
and are *convinced* **reproved** of the *law* **torah**
as transgressors.
10 For whosoever shall *keep* **guard** the whole *law* **torah**,
and yet *offend* **stumble** in one *point*,
he *is guilty of* **becometh subject to** all.
11 For he that said, Do not *commit adultery* **adulterize**,
said also, Do not *kill* **murder**.
Now if thou *commit no adultery* **dost not adulterize**,
yet if thou *kill* **murder**,
thou art become a transgressor of the *law* **torah**.

YAAQOVOS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and *superabundance* of malice;
and in meekness receive the implanted word
which is able to save your souls:
22 and become doers of the word
and not only hearers — deluding your own selves.
23 Because if any be a hearer of the word
and not a doer,
he resembles a man
perceiving his genetic face in a mirror:
24 for he perceives himself — and goes
— and straightway forgets what manner he is.
25 But whoever
looks into the torah of completion/shalom of liberty
and abides therein,
not being a forgetful hearer but a doer of the work,
this one becomes blessed in his doing.
26 If anyone among you
thinks himself as being ceremonious
and bridles not his tongue
but deludes his own heart
— the ceremony of this man is vain.
27 Pure and unpolluted ceremony
with Elohim and the Father is this:
To scope out the orphans and widows
in their tribulation
and to guard himself unstained from the cosmos.

THE TEST OF PARTIALITY

2 My brothers,
be not partial in the trust
of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah of glory.
2 For whenever a man comes to your synagogue
— goldringed, in radiant apparel;
and a poor man also comes in foul apparel;
3 and you look on him who bears the radiant apparel
and say to him, You sit here well!
and say to the poor, You stand there!
or, Sit here under my footstool!
4 discern you not in yourselves
and become judges of evil reasonings?
5 Hearken, my beloved brothers,
Selects not Elohim the poor of this cosmos
rich in trust and heirs of the sovereigndom
which he pre—evangelized to them who love him?
6 But you dishonor the poor.
Is it not the rich who overpower you?
And drag you to the judgment?
7 Blaspheme they not that good name
by which you are called?
8 If indeed
you still complete/shalam the sovereign torah
according to the scripture,
Love your neighbour as yourself,
you do well:
9 But if you are partial, you work sin;
and the torah reproves you as transgressors.
10 For whoever guards the whole torah
and still stumbles in one,
becomes subject to all.
11 For he who says, Adulterize not!
also says, Murder not!
And if you adulterize not and still murder,
you become a transgressor of the torah.

JAMES 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 So **thus** speak ye, and so **thus** do,
as they that shall be judged
by **through** the **law torah** of liberty.
13 For he shall have judgment *without mercy unmercied*,
that hath *shewed dealt* no mercy;
and mercy *rejoiceth exulteth* against judgment.
14 What *doth it profit benefit*, my brethren,
though a man say whenever one wordeth
he hath **faith the trust**, and have not works?
can **faith the trust** save him?
15 *if whenever* a brother or sister be naked,
and *destitute of lacketh* daily **food nourishment**,
16 And one of you say unto them,
Depart Go in **peace shalom**, be ye warmed and filled;
notwithstanding ye give them not
those *things* which are needful to the body;
what *doth benefiteth it profit?*
17 Even so **faith thus trust**, *if whenever* it hath not works,
by itself is dead, *being alone*.
18 Yea, a man may say **Yet one sayeth**,
Thou hast **faith trust**, and I **also** have works:
shew me thy **faith without trust** by thy works,
and I **will shall also** shew thee my **faith trust** by my works*.
19 Thou *believest trustest* that there is one **God Elohim**;
thou doest well:
the *devils demons* also *believe trust*,
and *tremble shudder*.
20 But *wilt willest* thou know, O vain **man human**,
that **faith without the trust apart from** works is dead?
21 Was not Abraham our father justified by works,
when he had offered *Isaac Yischaq* his son
upon the **sacrifice** altar?
22 Seest thou *how faith that the trust*
wrought co—worked with his works,
and by works
was *faith made perfect the trust completed/shalamed?*
23 And the scripture was fulfilled/shalamed
which *saith wordeth*,
Abraham *believed God trusted Elohim*,
and it was *imputed reckoned* unto him
for righteousness unto justness:
and he was called the Friend of **God Elohim**.
24 So Ye see *then how*
that by works a **man human** is justified,
and not by **faith trust** only.
25 Likewise also
was not *Rahab Rachab* the *harlot whore* justified by works,
when she had received the *messengers angels*,
and had sent them *out* another way?
26 For **exactly** as the body *without apart from* the spirit
is dead,
so faith without thus the trust apart from works
is dead also.

TESTING THE TONGUE

3 My brethren, be not many **masters doctors**,
knowing that
we shall *receive take* the greater condemnation.
2 For *in many things we offend all we all stumble much*.
If any *man offend one stumble* not in word,
the same this one is a **perfect completed/shalamed** man,
and able also to bridle the whole body.
3 Behold, we put bits in the horses' mouths,
that they may obey us;
and we turn *about* their whole body.
4 Behold also the *ships sailers*,
which *though they be being* so great,
and are driven of *fierce hard* winds,
yet are they turned *about*
with by a very *small helm short rudder*,
whithersoever the **violent impulse**
governor listeth of the straightener willeth.
5 Even so **thus** the tongue is a little member,
and boasteth *great things mega*.
Behold, how *great a matter much forest*
a little fire *kindleth lighteth*!
6 And the tongue is a fire,
a **world cosmos** of **iniquity injustice**:
so **thus** is the tongue **seated** among our members,

YAAQOVOS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 Thus speak and thus do
as being judged through the torah of liberty.
13 For whoever deals no mercy
has unmercied judgment;
and mercy exults against judgment.
14 What benefit, my brothers,
whenever one words that he has the trust
and has not works?
Can the trust save him?
15 Whenever a brother or sister is naked
and lacks daily nourishment,
and one of you says to them,
Go in shalom! Be warmed and filled!
— and not give them those needful to the body;
what benefit is it?
17 Thus, even trust,
whenever it has not works, by itself is dead.
18 Yet one says,
You have trust and I also have works:
show me your trust by your works
and I also show you my trust by my works*.
19 You — you trust that Elohim is one; you do well:
the demons also trust and shudder.
20 And will you to know, O vain human,
that the trust apart from works is dead?
21 Was not Abraham our father justified by works,
when he offered Yischaq his son
on the sacrifice altar?
22 See how the trust co—worked with his works?
And the trust completed/shalamed by works?
23 And the scripture fulfilled/shalamed, wording,
Abraham trusted Elohim
and it was reckoned to him to justness;
— and he was called the Friend of Elohim.
24 — so you see, a human is justified by works
and not only by trust.
25 Likewise also
was not Rachab the whore justified by works
when she received the angels
and sent them another way?
26 For exactly as the body apart from the spirit
is dead,
thus the trust apart from works
is also dead.

TESTING THE TONGUE

3 My brothers, be not many doctors;
knowing that we take the greater condemnation:
2 for we all stumble much.
If anyone stumbles not in word,
this one is a completed/shalamed man,
also able to bridle the whole body.
3 Behold the horses;
we put bits in their mouths to obey us;
and we turn their whole body.
4 Behold, also the sailers;
being so great and driven of hard winds;
yet are they turned by a very short rudder
wherever the violent impulse of the straightener wills.
5 Thus also the tongue;
a little member that boasts mega.
6 Behold, how much forest a little fire lights!
And the tongue is a fire — a cosmos of injustice:
thus the tongue sits among our members

JAMES 3, 4

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that it *defileth* **staineth** the whole body,
and *setteth on fire* **inflameth**
the *course* **track** of nature **genetics**;
and it is set on fire **inflamed**
of hell by **Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning**.
7 For every kind **all nature, both** of beasts,
and of *birds* **flyers**, and **both** of *serpents* **creepers**,
and of *things* **those** in the sea, is tamed,
and hath been tamed of *mankind* **human nature**:
8 But the tongue can no *man* **human** tame;
it is an *unruly* **unrestrainable** evil
full of *deadly poison* **death bearing venom**.
9 *Therewith* **Therein eulogize** we *God Elohim*,
even the Father;
and *therewith* **therein** curse we *men* **humanity**,
which are *made* **became**
after the *similitude* **likeness** of *God Elohim*.
10 Out of the same mouth
proceedeth **cometh** **eulogy** and cursing.
My brethren,
these *things* **ought not so to need not thus** be.
11 Doth a fountain send *forth* at the same *place* **cavern**
sweet *water* and bitter?
12 Can the fig tree, my brethren,
bear olive berries **make olives**?
either a vine, figs?
so can **thus** no fountain
maketh both *yield* salt water and fresh.
13 Who is a wise *man*
and *endued with knowledge* **understanding** among you?
let him shew out of a good *conversation* **behaviour**
his works *with* **in** meekness of wisdom.
14 But if ye
have bitter *envying* **zeal** and strife in your hearts,
glory **exult** not, and lie not against the truth.
15 This wisdom descendeth not from above,
but is earthly, *sensual* **soulical**, *devilish* **demonic**.
16 For where *envying* **zeal** and strife is,
there is *confusion* **instability** and every evil *work* **matter**.
17 But the wisdom that is from above
is first *pure* **indeed hallowed**,
then *peaceable* **at shalom**, gentle,
and *easy to be intreated* **agreeable**,
full of mercy and good fruits, *without partiality* **impartial**,
and *without hypocrisy* **unhypocritical**.
18 And the fruit of *righteousness* **justness**
is *sown* **spored** in *peace* **shalom**
of **by** them that make *peace* **shalom**.

SUBJUGATING AND RESISTING

4 From whence
come **are** wars and *fightings* **strifes** among you?
come **be they** not hence,
even of your *lust* **pleasures** that war in your members?
2 Ye *lust* **pant**, and have not:
ye *kill* **murder**,
and *desire to have* **are jealous**, and cannot obtain:
ye *fight* **strive** and war,
yet ye have not, because ye ask not.
3 Ye ask, and *receive* **take** not,
because ye ask *amiss* **evily**,
that ye may *consume* **spend** it
upon **in** your *lusts* **pleasures**.
4 Ye adulterers and adulteresses,
know ye not that the friendship of the *world* **cosmos**
is enmity with *God* **Elohim**?
so whosoever *therefore*
will **willeth** to be a friend of the *world* **cosmos**
is the **seated an** enemy of *God* **Elohim**.
5 Do ye **Or** think ye
that the scripture *saith* **wordeth** in vain,
The spirit that dwelleth in us *lusteth* **yearneth** to envy?
6 But he giveth *more grace* **greater charism**.
Wherefore **So** he *saith* **wordeth**,
God resisteth **Elohim opposeth** the proud,
but giveth *grace* **charism** unto the humble.
7 *Submit* **So subjugate** yourselves *therefore* to *God* **Elohim**.
Resist *the devil* **Diabolos**, and he *will* **shall** flee from you.
8 *Draw nigh to God* **Approach Elohim**,
and he *will* **draw nigh to** **shall approach** you.

YAAQOVOS 3, 4

exeGesés companion BIBLE

to stain the whole body
and inflame the track of genetics;
and it is inflamed
by Gay Hinnom/the Valley of Burning.
7 For all nature, both of beasts and of flyers,
both of creepers and of those in the sea,
is tamed — and has been tamed by human nature:
8 but the tongue, no human can tame
— an unrestrainable evil full of death bearing venom:
9 therein we eulogize our Elohim and Father;
and therein we curse humanity
who became after the likeness of Elohim.
10 From the same mouth comes eulogy and cursing.
My brothers, these need not be thus.
11 A fountain, at the same cavern,
sends it sweet and bitter?
12 Can the fig tree, my brothers, make olives?
Or a vine, figs?
Thus no fountain makes both salt water and fresh.
13 Who among you, is wise and understanding?
Show your works from a good behavior
in meekness of wisdom.
14 But if you have bitter zeal and strife in your hearts,
neither exult nor lie against the truth.
15 — this wisdom descends not from above
but is earthly, soulical, demonic.
16 For where there are zeal and strife,
there are instability and every evil matter.
17 And indeed,
the wisdom from above is first hallowed,
then at shalom,
gentle,
agreeable,
full of mercy and good fruits,
impartial and unhypocritical:
18 and the fruit of justness spores in shalom
by them who make shalom.

SUBJUGATING AND RESISTING

4 Whence *are* wars and strifes among you?
Are they not
from your pleasures warring in your members?
2 You pant and have not:
you murder and are jealous and unable to obtain:
you strive and war:
and you still have not because you ask not.
3 You ask and take not
because you ask evilly to spend it in your pleasures.
4 You adulterers and adulteresses,
know you not that the friendship of the cosmos
is enmity with Elohim?
So whoever wills to be a friend of the cosmos
is seated — an enemy of Elohim.
5 Or think you that the scripture words in vain,
The spirit dwelling in us yearns to envy?
6 But he gives greater charism.
So he words,
Elohim opposes the proud
and gives charism to the humble.
7 So subjugate yourselves to Elohim;
resist Diabolos and he flees from you;
8 approach Elohim and he approaches you;

JAMES 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

9 Cleanse **Purify** your hands, ye sinners;
and *purify* **hallow** your hearts, ye double minded souled.
Be afflicted **miserable**, and mourn, and weep:
let your laughter be *turned* **overturned** to mourning,
and your joy **cheer** to heaviness **sadness**.
10 Humble yourselves in the sight of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**,
and he shall *lift* **exalt** you up.
11 Speak **Slander** not evil one of another, brethren.
He that *speaketh evil of* **slandereth** his brother,
and judgeth his brother,
speaketh evil of **slandereth** the law **torah**,
and judgeth the law **torah**:
but if thou judge the law **torah**,
thou art not a doer of the law **torah**, but a judge.
12 There is one *lawgiver* **torahsetter**,
who is able to save and to destroy:
who art thou that judgest another?
13 Go to **Come** now, ye that say **word**,
To day or to morrow we *will* **shall** go into such a city,
and *continue* **deal** there a **one** year,
and *buy and sell* **merchandise**, and get gain:
14 Whereas ye *know* **understand** not
what shall be on the morrow.
For what is your life? It is *even* **indeed** a vapour,
that *appeareth* **manifesteth** for a little *time*,
and then *vanisheth away* **disappeareth**.
15 For that ye *ought to say* **word**,
If the Lord will **Whenever Adonay willet**,
we shall live, and do this, or that.
16 But now ye *rejoice* **boast** in your boastings:
all such *rejoicing* **boasting** is evil.
17 Therefore **So** to him that knoweth to do good,
and doeth it not, to him it is sin.

TREASURING TREASURES

5 Go to **Come** now, ye rich *men*,
weep and howl for your miseries that shall come upon you.
2 Your riches *are* **corrupted have putrefied**,
and your garments *are* **become** motheaten.
3 Your gold and silver *is* **cantered rusteth**;
and the rust of them
shall be **unto** a witness against you,
and shall eat your flesh as *it were* fire.
Ye have *heaped treasure* **treasured together**
for **in** the last **final** days.
4 Behold, the hire of the *labourers* **workers**
who have *reaped down* **ingathered** your *fields* **regions**,
of which *is of* you *kept back by fraud* **cheated**, crieth:
and the cries of them which have *reaped* **harvested**
are entered into the ears
of the *Lord of sabaoth* **Yah Veh Sabaoth**.
5 Ye have *lived in pleasure* **indulged** on the earth,
and *been wanton* **luxuriated**;
ye have nourished your hearts, as in a day of slaughter.
6 Ye have condemned and *killed* **murdered** the just;
and he *doth* **opposeth you** not resist you.

THE PAROUSIA

7 **So** Be patient *therefore*, brethren,
unto the *coming* **parousia** of the **Lord Adonay**.
Behold, the *husbandman* **cultivator**
waiteth for **awaiteth** the precious fruit of the earth,
and hath long patience for it,
until **ever** he *receive* **take**
the *early* **morning** and *latter* **evening** rain.
8 Be ye also patient; stablish your hearts:
for **because** the *coming* **parousia** of the **Lord Adonay**
draweth nigh **approacheth**.
9 *Grudge* **Sigh** not one against another, brethren,
lest ye be condemned:
behold, the judge standeth before the *door* **portal**.
10 Take, my brethren, the prophets,
who have spoken in the name of *the Lord* **Yah Veh**,
for an example of *suffering affliction* **injurious hardship**,
and of patience.
11 Behold, we count them *happy* **blessed** which endure.
Ye have heard of the *patience* **endurance** of *Job* **lyob**,
and have seen the *end* **completion/shalom**
of the **Lord Yah Veh**;
that the **Lord Adonay** is *very pitiful* **large spleened**,
and of *tender mercy* **compassionate**.

YAAQOVOS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

9 purify your hands, sinners;
and hallow your hearts, double souled;
be miserable and mourn and weep;
overturn your laughter to mourning
and your cheer to sadness;
10 humble yourselves in the sight of Yah Veh
and he exalts you.
11 Slander not one another, brothers.
whoever slanders his brother and judges his brother
slanders the torah and judges the torah:
but if you judge the torah,
you are not a doer of the torah, but a judge.
12 There is one torahsetter
— able to save and to destroy.
Who are you to judge another?
13 Come now, you who word,
Today or tomorrow we go to such a city
and deal one year and merchandise and gain:
whereas you understand not the morrow.
14 For what is your life?
It is indeed a vapour
— manifests for a little — and then disappears.
15 Instead word thus,
Whenever Adonay wills, we live and do this or that.
16 And now you boast in your boastings:
all such boasting is evil.
17 So, to him who knows to do good, and does not,
to him it is sin.

TREASURING TREASURES

5 Come now, you rich,
weep and howl for the miseries coming upon you.
2 Your riches putrefy
and your garments become motheaten:
3 your gold and silver rust;
and their rust becomes a witness against you
to consume your flesh as fire.
4 You treasured in the final days.
Behold, the hire of the workers
who ingathered your regions
— whom you cheated, cries out:
and the cries of them who harvest
enter the ears of Yah Veh Sabaoth.
5 You indulged on the earth and luxuriated;
you nourished your hearts as in a day of slaughter;
6 you condemned and murdered the just;
and he opposes you not.

THE PAROUSIA

7 So be patient, brothers,
until the parousia of Adonay.
Behold,
the cultivator awaits the precious fruit of the earth
and has long patience for it
until ever he takes the morning and evening rain.
8 You also, be patient; establish your hearts:
because the parousia of Adonay approaches.
9 Sigh not against one another, brothers,
lest you be condemned:
behold, the judge stands at the portal.
10 My brothers, take the prophets,
who speak in the name of Yah Veh,
for an example of injurious hardship and of patience.
11 Behold, we count them who endure, blessed.
You heard of the endurance of lyob
and saw the completion/shalom of Yah Veh;
that Adonay is large spleened and compassionate.

JAMES 5

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 12 But above **preceding** all *things*, my brethren,
swear **oath** not,
neither by *heaven* **the heavens**,
neither by the earth,
neither by any other oath:
but let your yea be yea; and *your* nay, nay;
lest ye fall into *condemnation* **hypocrisy**.
- THE VOW OF TRUST
- 13 Is any among you *afflicted* **enduring hardship**?
let him pray.
- 14 Is any *merry* **cheerful**? let him *sing psalms* **psalm**.
Is any *sick* **frail** among you?
let him call for the elders of the *church* **ecclesia**;
and let them pray over him,
anointing him with **olive** oil
in the name of *the Lord* **Adonay**:
And the *prayer* **vow of faith** **the trust**
shall save the *sick* **wearied**,
and *the Lord* **Adonay** shall raise him up;
and *if* **whenever** he have *committed* **done** sins,
they shall be forgiven him.
- 16 Confess your *faults* **backslidings** one to another,
and *pray* **vow** one for another, that ye may be healed.
The *effectual fervent prayer* **energized petition**
of a *righteous man* **the just**
availeth much **is mighty enough**.
- 17 *Elias* **Eli Yah** was a *man* **human**
subject to like passions **likepassioned** as we are,
and he prayed *earnestly* **a prayer** that it might not rain:
and it rained not on the earth
by the space of three years and six months.
- 18 And he prayed again,
and the *heaven* **heavens** gave rain,
and the earth *brought forth* **sprouted** her fruit.
- 19 Brethren,
if **whenever** any of **among** you *do err* **wander** from the truth,
and one *convert* **restores** him;
Let him know,
that he which *converteth* **turneth** the sinner **around**
from the *error* **wandering** of his way
shall save a soul from death,
and shall *hide* **vail** a multitude of sins.

YAAQOVOS 5

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 12 But preceding all, my brothers, oath not:
neither by the heavens,
nor by the earth,
nor by any other oath:
but that your yes be yes; and your no, no;
lest you fall into hypocrisy.
- THE VOW OF TRUST
- 13 Is any among you enduring hardship?
Pray!
Is any cheerful?
Psalm!
- 14 Is any frail among you?
Call for the elders of the ecclesia to pray over him;
anointing him with olive oil in the name of Adonay:
and the vow of the trust saves the wearied
and Adonay raises him;
and if he does sins, they are forgiven.
- 16 Confess your backslidings to one another
and vow for one another, to be healed.
The energized petition of the just is mighty enough.
- 17 Eli Yah was a human,
like—passioned as we;
and he prayed a prayer that it rain not:
and it rained not on the earth
by the space of three years and six months.
- 18 And he prayed again
and the heavens gave rain
and the earth sprouted her fruit.
- 19 Brothers,
whenever any among you wanders from the truth
and one restores him;
have him know,
whoever restores the sinner from his wandering way
saves a soul from death
and veils a multitude of sins.

1 PETER 1

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Peter Petros,
 an apostle of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*,
 to the *strangers scattered pilgrim diaspora*
 throughout Pontus, Galatia,
 Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia,
 2 Elect **Select** according to the *foreknowledge prognosis*
 of God **Elohim** the Father,
through sanctification of the in holiness of Spirit,
 unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood
 of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*:
 Grace **Charism** unto you,
 and *peace shalom*, be multiplied.

THE LIVING HOPE

3 Blessed **Eulogized** be the *God Elohim* and Father
 of our *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*,
 which according to his *abundant vast* mercy
 hath *begotten rebirthed* us again unto a *lively living* hope
 by the resurrection of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*
 from the dead,
 4 To an inheritance
 incorruptible, and *undefiled unpolled*,
 and that *fadeth not away — amaranthine*,
reserved in heaven for guarded in the heavens unto you,
 5 Who are kept **garrisoned**
 by *in the power dynamis of God Elohim*
 through *faith trust* unto salvation
 ready **prepared** to be *revealed unveiled*
 in the *last time final season*.
 6 Wherein ye *greatly rejoice jump for joy*,
 though now for a *season little*, if need be,
 ye are *in heaviness sorrowed*
through manifold temptations in divers testings:
 7 That the *trial proofing* of your *faith trust*,
 being much more precious
 than of gold that *perisheth destructeth*,
 though it be *tried with proofed through* fire,
 might be found unto *praise halal* and honour and glory
 at the *appearing apocalypse of Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*:
 8 Whom having not seen, ye love;
 in whom, though now ye see him not,
 yet *believing trusting*, ye *rejoice jump for joy*
 with *joy unspeakable inexpressible cheer*
 and *full of glory glorified*:
 9 Receiving the *end completion/shalom* of your *faith trust*,
 even the *salvation of your souls*.
 10 Of **Concerning** which salvation
 the prophets have inquired
 and *searched diligently investigated*,
 who prophesied of **concerning the grace charism**
that should come unto you:
 11 Searching **unto** what,
 or *what manner of time which season*
 the Spirit of *Christ Messiah* which was in them
did signify evidenced,
 when it *testified beforehand prewitnessed*
 the sufferings of *Christ unto Messiah*,
 and the *glory that should follow glories after these*.
 12 Unto whom it was *revealed unveiled*,
 that not unto themselves, but unto us
 they did minister *the things those*,
 which are now *reported evangelized* unto you
 by **through** them that have
preached the gospel evangelized unto you
 with the *in Holy Ghost Spirit*,
sent down apostolized from heaven the heavens;
 which *things* the angels *desire pant*
 to look **stoop** into.
 13 So *Wherefore* gird up the loins of your mind, be sober,
 and hope to the *end completion/shalom*
 for the *grace charism* that is to be brought unto you
 at the *revelation apocalypse*
 of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*;
 14 As obedient children,
 not *fashioning configuring* yourselves
 according to the *former lusts previous pantings*
 in your *ignorance unknowingness*:
 15 But as he which hath called you *is* holy,

1 PETROS 1

exeGeses companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Petros, an apostle of Yah Shua Messiah:
 To the pilgrim diaspora throughout Pontus,
 Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia and Biyournia,
 2 Select
 according to the prognosis of Elohim the Father,
 in holiness of Spirit,
 to obedience
 and sprinkling of the blood of Yah Shua Messiah:
 Charism to you and shalom be multiplied.

THE LIVING HOPE

3 Eulogized be the Elohim and Father
 of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah;
 who according to his vast mercy
 rebirthed us to a living hope
 through the resurrection of Yah Shua Messiah
 from the dead:
 4 to an inheritance
 incorruptible and unpolled and amaranthine,
 guarded in the heavens to you
 5 who are garrisoned in the dynamis of Elohim
 through trust to salvation
 — prepared to be unveiled in the final season:
 6 wherein you jump for joy:
 though now for a little, if necessary,
 you are sorrowed in divers testings
 7 that the proofing of your trust:
 being much more precious than gold that destructs:
 though being proofed through fire
 be found unto halal and honor and glory
 at the apocalypse of Yah Shua Messiah:
 8 whom, not having seen, you love;
 in whom, though now you see him not,
 yet trusting, you jump for joy
 with inexpressible cheer and glorified:
 9 receiving the completion/shalom of your trust
 — the salvation of your souls:
 10 concerning the salvation
 of which the prophets inquired and investigated;
 who prophesied concerning the charism to you:
 11 searching to what or which season
 the Spirit of Messiah was evidenced in them,
 when it prewitnessed the sufferings to Messiah
 and the glories after these:
 12 to whom it was unveiled
 that they ministered, not to them, but to us
 those that are now evangelized to you
 through them who evangelized to you
 in Holy Spirit apostolized from the heavens
 — into which angels pant to stoop into.
 13 So gird up the loins of your mind;
 be sober and hope to the completion/shalom
 for the charism to be brought to you
 at the apocalypse of Yah Shua Messiah:
 14 as obedient children,
 not configuring yourselves to the previous pantings
 in your unknowingness:
 15 but as he who called you *is* holy,

1 PETER 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

so be ye holy in all manner of conversation **behaviour**;
 16 Because it is *written scribed*,
 Be ye holy; *for because* I am holy.
 17 And if ye call on the Father,
 who without respect of persons
 judgeth according to *every man's each's* work,
pass behave the time of your *sojourning here settling*
 in *fear awe*:
 18 *Forasmuch as ye know* **Knowing** that ye were not
 redeemed with *corruptible things* **corruptibles**,
 as silver *and or* gold,
 from your vain
conversation received by tradition from your fathers
patriarchal traditions;
 19 But with the precious blood of *Christ* **Messiah**,
 as of a lamb
without blemish unblemished and without spot unstained:
 20 Who *verily indeed* was *foreordained foreknown*
before ere the foundation of the *world* **cosmos**,
 but was manifest in these *last final* times for you,
 21 Who *by through* him *do believe trust* in *God* **Elohim**,
 that raised him up from the dead, and gave him glory;
so that your *faith trust* and hope might be in *God* **Elohim**.
 22 Seeing ye have *purified hallowed* your souls
 in obeying the truth through the Spirit
 unto *unfeigned love* **unhypocritical befriending**
 of the brethren,
 see that ye love one another *with from* a pure heart
fervently intensely:
 23 Being *born again* **rebirthed**,
 not of corruptible *seed spore*, but of incorruptible,
by through the word of *God* **Elohim**,
 which liveth and abideth *for ever* **unto the eons**.
 24 *For Because* all flesh is as *grass* **herbage**,
 and all the glory of *man* **humanity**
 as the *flower blossom* of *grass* **herbage**.
 The *grass herbage* withereth,
 and the *flower blossom* thereof falleth away:
 25 But the word *rhema* of the *Lord Yah Veh*
endureth for ever **abideth unto the eons**.
 And this is the word *rhema*
which by the gospel is preached **evangelized** unto you.

AS NEWBORN INFANTS

2

Wherefore So
laying aside **putting away** all malice,
 and all *guile* **deceit**, and hypocrisies,
 and envies, and all *evil speakings* **slanders**,
 2 As newborn *babes* **infants**,
desire **yearn for**
 the *sincere* **undecentful** milk of the word **logic**,
 that ye may grow *thereby* **therein**:
 3 If *so be ever* ye have tasted
 that the *Lord Yah Veh* is *gracious* **kind**.

Psalms 34:8

AS LIVING STONES

4 To whom coming, *as unto* a living stone,
disallowed **disapproved** indeed of *men* **by humanity**,
 but *chosen of God* **select with Elohim**,
 and *precious* **honourable**,
 5 Ye also, as *lively* **living** stones,
 are built *up* a spiritual house, an holy priesthood,
 to offer *up* spiritual sacrifices,
acceptable well—received to God **Elohim**
by Jesus Christ through Yah Shua **Messiah**.
 6 *Wherefore So* also it is contained in the scripture,
 Behold, I *lay* **place** in *Sion* **Siyon** a chief corner stone,
elect **select**, *precious* **honourable**:
 and he that *believeth* **trusteth** on him
 shall not **no way** be *confounded* **shamed**.

Yesha Yah 28:16

7 **So** Unto you *therefore* which *believe* **trust**, he is precious:
 but unto them which *be* **disobedient** **distrust**,
 the stone which the builders *disallowed* **disapproved**,
 the *same* **this one**
is made **became** the head of the corner,
 8 And a stone of stumbling, and a rock of *offence* **scandal**,
 even to them which stumble at the word,
being disobedient **who distrust**:
 whereunto also they were *appointed* **set**.

1 PETROS 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

thus you be holy in all behavior:
 16 because it is scribed,
 You, become holy; because I am holy.
 17 And if you call on the Father,
 who without respect of persons
 judges according to the work of each,
 behave this time of your settling in awe:
 18 knowing that
 you were not redeemed with corruptibles
 as silver or gold of your vain patriarchal traditions;
 19 but with the precious blood of Messiah,
 as of a lamb,
 unblemished and unstained:
 20 who indeed was foreknown
 ere the foundation of the cosmos,
 and manifest in these final times in your behalf;
 21 who through him, trust in Elohim
 who raised him from the dead and gave him glory;
 so that your trust and hope be in Elohim.
 22 Seeing you hallowed your souls
 in obeying the truth through Spirit
 to un hypocritical befriending of the brothers
 — to love one another intensely from a pure heart;
 23 being rebirthed,
 not of corruptible spore, but of incorruptible,
 through the word of Elohim
 who lives and abides to the eons:
 24 because all flesh is as herbage
 and all the glory of humanity
 as the blossom of herbage.
 The herbage withers and the blossom falls:
 25 and the rhema of Yah Veh abides to the eons:
 and this is the rhema evangelized to you.

AS NEWBORN INFANTS

2

So putting away all malice and all deceit
 and hypocrisies and envies and all slanders,
 as newborn infants
 yearn for the undecentful milk of logic
 to grow therein:
 if ever you taste that Yah Veh is kind:

Psalms 34:8

AS LIVING STONES

4 coming to him, a living stone;
 disapproved indeed by humanity
 but with Elohim, select, honorable;
 5 and you yourselves, as living stones,
 are built a spiritual house
 — a holy priesthood to offer spiritual sacrifices,
 well—received to Elohim through Yah Shua Messiah.

6 So it is also contained in the scripture,
 Behold, I place in Siyon a chief corner stone,
 select, honorable:
 and whoever trusts on him never no way shames.
 Yesha Yah 28:16

7 So to you who trust, he is precious:
 but to them who distrust,
 the stone the builders disapproved
 this one became the head of the corner,
 8 and a stone of stumbling and a rock of scandal
 to them who stumble at the word — who distrust:
 to which also they were set.

1 PETER 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

9 But ye are a *chosen generation* **select genos**,
a royal **sovereign** priesthood, an holy *nation* **goyim**,
a peculiar *people* **acquisition unto himself**;
that ye should
shew forth **evangelize** the *praises* **exultation** of him
who hath called you out of darkness
into his marvellous light;
10 Which in time past were not a people,
but are now the people of *God* **Elohim**:
which had not *obtained mercy* **been mercied**,
but now *have obtained mercy* **be mercied**.

Hoshea 1:6—9

11 Dearly beloved,
I beseech you as *strangers* **settlers** and pilgrims,
abstain from fleshly *lusts* **pantings**,
which war against the soul;
12 Having your *conversation* **honest behaviour good**
among the *Gentiles* **goyim**:
that, *whereas* **in that which**
they *speak against* **slander** you as evildoers,
they may by *your* good works,
which they shall *behold* **observe**,
glorify *God* **Elohim** in the day of visitation.

SUBJUGATING TO GOVERNMENTS

13 *Submit* **So subjugate** yourselves
to every *ordinance of man* **creation of humanity**
for the *Lord's* sake **of Adonay**:
whether it be to the *king* **sovereign**, as supreme;
14 *Or* **Whether** unto governors,
as unto them that are sent by **through** him **indeed**
for the punishment of **unto avenging** evildoers,
and for the *praise* **halal** of them that do *well* **good**.
15 *For so* **Because thus** is the will of *God* **Elohim**,
that with *well doing* **doing good**
ye may *put to silence* **muzzle** the *ignorance* **unknowingness**
of *foolish men* **thoughtless humanity**:
16 As *free* **liberated**, and not *using your* **regarding** liberty
for a cloke **as a covering** of *maliciousness* **malice**,
but as the servants of *God* **Elohim**.
17 Honour all *men*. Love the brotherhood.
18 *Fear God* **Awe Elohim**. Honour the *king* **sovereign**.
Servants **Housekeepers**,
be subject **subjugate** to your *masters* **despotes**
with **in** all *fear* **awe**;

not only to the good and gentle,
but also to the *froward* **crooked**.
19 For this is *thankworthy* **charism**,
if a *man* **one** for conscience toward *God* **Elohim**
endure *grief* **sorrow**, suffering *wrongfully* **unjustly**.
20 For what *glory* **fame** is it,
if, when ye be *buffeted* **punched** for your *faults* **sinning**,
ye shall *take it patiently* **endure**?
but if, when ye do *well* **good**, and suffer *for it*,
ye *take it patiently* **endure**,
this is *acceptable* **charism** with *God* **Elohim**.
21 For even *hereunto* **unto this** were ye called:
because *Christ* **Messiah** also suffered for us,
leaving **behind** us an example,
that ye should follow his *steps* **tracks**.
22 Who did no sin,
neither was *guile* **deceit** found in his mouth:
23 Who, when he was *reviled* **abused**,
reviled not again **replied unabusively**;
when he suffered, he threatened not;
but *committed* **surrendered** himself to him
that judgeth *righteously* **justly**:
24 Who his own self
bare **took up** our sins in his own body on the *tree* **staff**,
that we, being dead to sins,
should live unto *righteousness* **justness**:
by whose *stripes* **bruises** ye were healed.
25 For ye were as **wandering** sheep *going astray*;
but are now returned
unto the Shepherd and *Bishop* **Episcopate** of your souls.

Yesha Yah 52:14—53:12

SUBJUGATING IN RELATIONSHIPS

3 Likewise, ye *wives* **women**,
be in subjection **subjugate yourselves**
to your own *husbands* **men**;

1 PETROS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 But you *are* a **select genos**,
a sovereign priesthood,
a holy **goyim**,
a peculiar acquisition to himself;
to evangelize the exultation
of him who called you from darkness
into his marvellous light:
10 who in time past were, Not a People,
but are now, People of Elohim:
who had been, Not Mercied,
and now, Mercied.

Hoshea 1:6—9

11 Beloved, I beseech you as settlers and pilgrims,
abstain from fleshly pantings
that war against the soul;
12 to have good behavior among the goyim:
so that, wherein they slander you as evildoers,
by observing your good works,
they glorify Elohim in the day of visitation.

SUBJUGATING TO GOVERNMENTS

13 So subjugate yourselves
to every creation of humanity
for the sake of Adonay:
whether to the sovereign as supreme;
14 whether to governors,
as to them who indeed are sent through him
to avenge evildoers,
and for the halal of them doing good.
15 Because thus is the will of Elohim,
that by doing good
you muzzle the unknowingness
of thoughtless humanity:
16 as liberated, and not regarding liberty;
as a covering of malice, but as the servants of Elohim.
17 Honor all.
Love the brotherhood.
Awe Elohim.
Honor the sovereign.

18 Housekeepers:
subjugate to your despotes in all awe
— not only to the good and gentle,
but also to the crooks.
19 For this is charism:
if for sake of conscience toward Elohim
one endures sorrow, suffering unjustly.
20 For what fame is it, if you endure,
when you are punched for your sinning?
But if you endure, when you do good and suffer,
this is charism with Elohim.

21 For even to this, you were called:
because Messiah also suffered for us,
leaving behind an example to follow his tracks
— who neither sinned
nor was deceit found in his mouth:
22 who, being abused, replied unabusively;
suffering, threatened not;
and surrendered himself to him who judges justly:
23 who his own self
took our sins in his own body on the staff,
that we, being dead to sins, live to justness:
by whose bruises you are healed.
24 For you were as wandering sheep
— but now you returned
to the Shepherd and Episcopate of your souls.

Yesha Yah 52:14—53:12

SUBJUGATING IN RELATIONSHIPS

3 Likewise, women:
subjugate yourselves to your own men;

1 PETER 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

that, if any *obey not* **one distrust** the word,
they also may without the word be *won* **gained**
by *through* the *conversation* **behaviour**
of the *wives* **women**;
2 While they *behold* **observe**
your *chaste conversation* **hallowed behaviour**
coupled with fear **in awe**.
3 Whose *adorning* **cosmos**
let it not be
that outward *adorning of plaiting* **braiding** the hair,
and of *wearing* **wrapping around** of gold,
or of *putting on of apparel* **enduing garments**;
4 But *let it be the hidden man* **the secret human**
of the heart,
in that which is *not corruptible* **incorruptible**,
even the ornament — of a meek and quiet spirit,
which is in the sight of *God* **Elohim**
of *great price* **vastly precious**.
5 For after this manner in the old time
the holy women also,
who *trusted* **hoped** in *God* **Elohim**, adorned themselves,
being in subjection **subjugating** unto their own *husbands* **men**;
6 Even as Sara **Sarah** obeyed Abraham,
calling him *lord* **adoni**:
whose *daughters* **children** ye are **became**,
as long as ye do *well* **good**,
and are not *afraid with* **awestricken of** any *amazement* **terror**.
7 Likewise, ye *husbands* **men**,
 dwell with them **co—settle** according to knowledge,
giving **bestowing** honour unto the wife,
as unto the *weaker* **frailer** vessel,
and as being *heirs together* **co—heirs**
of the *grace* **charism** of life;
that your prayers be not *hindered* **excinded**.
8 Finally **In completion/shalom**,
be ye all of *one mind* **likeminded**,
having compassion **sympathetic** one of another,
love **befriending** as brethren,
be pitiful **tenderspleened**, *be courteous* **friendly minded**:
9 Not *rendering* **giving** evil for evil,
or *railing* **abuse** for *railing* **abuse**:
but contrariwise *blessing* **eulogize**;
knowing that ye are *thereunto* called **unto this**,
that ye should inherit a *blessing* **eulogy**.
10 For he that *will* **willeth** to love life, and see good days,
let him *refrain* **pause** his tongue from evil,
and his lips that they speak no *guile* **deceit**:
11 Let him *eschew* **deviate from** evil, and do good;
let him seek *peace* **shalom**, and *ensue* **pursue** it.
12 For **Because** the eyes of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**
are over the *righteous* **just**,
and his ears are *open* unto their *prayers* **petitions**:
but the face of the *Lord* **Yah Veh**
is against them that do evil.
13 And who is he that *will* **harm** shall *vilify* you,
if *whenever* ye be *followers* **mimickers**
of that which is good?
14 But and if ye suffer for *righteousness*' **justness**' sake,
happy are ye **blessed**:
and be not *afraid* **awestricken**
of their *terror* **awesomeness**,
neither be troubled;
15 But *sanctify the Lord* **God*** **hallow Yah Veh Elohim***
in your hearts:
and be *ready always* **ever prepared**
to *give an answer* **plead** to every *man* **one**
that asketh you a *reason* **word**
of *concerning* the hope that is in you
with meekness and *fear* **awe**:

*some mss: Adonay Messiah

16 Having a good conscience; that,
whereas **in that which** they *speak evil of* **slander** you,
as of evildoers, they may *be ashamed* **shame**
that *falsely* **accuse** **threaten**
your good *conversation* **behaviour** in *Christ* **Messiah**.
17 For it is better,
if *the will of God* be so **Elohim so willeth**,
that ye suffer for *well* doing **good**, than for *evil* doing **evil**.

1 PETROS 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

that even if any distrust the word,
they also be gained without the word
through the behavior of the women;
2 While in awe,
they observe your hallowed behavior:
3 whose cosmos is not outward
— of braiding the hair
and of wrapping around of gold
or of enduing garments:
4 but that secret human of the heart
in what is incorruptible
— of a meek and quiet spirit
which is vastly precious in the sight of Elohim.
5 For thus also in the old time
the holy women who hoped in Elohim
adorned themselves;
6 subjugating to their own men
— as Sarah obeyed Abraham, calling him adoni:
of whom you became children
— as long as you do good
and are not awestricken of any terror.
7 Likewise men:
8 co—settle according to knowledge;
bestow honor as to the frailer vessel
and as being co—heirs of the charism of life;
that your prayers be not excinded.
9 In completion/shalom,
all likeminded,
sympathetic one of another,
befriending as brothers,
tenderspleened,
friendly minded:
10 not giving evil for evil or abuse for abuse
— but contrariwise eulogize;
knowing that you are called to this
— to inherit a eulogy:
11 For whoever wills to love life and see good days,
pause your tongue from evil,
and that your lips not speak deceit,
deviate from evil and do good,
seek shalom and pursue it.
12 Because the eyes of Yah Veh are over the just
and his ears to their petitions:
but the face of Yah Veh is against them who do evil.
13 And who *is* he that vilifies you,
whenever you become mimickers of good?
14 But and if you suffer for sake of justness,
Blessed!
And neither awestricken by their awesomeness
nor *be* troubled;
15 but hallow Yah Veh Elohim* in your hearts,
ever prepared to plead to everyone
who asks you a word concerning the hope in you
with meekness and awe:
*some mss: Adonay Messiah
16 having a good conscience;
so that they who slander you as evildoers,
who threaten your good behavior in Messiah,
shame.
17 For it is better, if Elohim thus wills,
that you suffer for doing good, than for doing evil:

1 PETER 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 For Christ **Because Messiah** also hath once suffered for sins,
the just for the unjust,
that he might bring us to **God Elohim**,
being put to death indeed deathified in the flesh,
but *quicken* **enlivened** by the Spirit:
19 By **In** which also he went and preached
unto the spirits in **prison the guardhouse**;
20 Which sometime were *disobedient* **distrusted**,
when once the *longsuffering* **patience of God Elohim**
waited **awaited** in the days of **Noah Noah**,
while the ark was a preparing,
wherein few, that is,
eight souls were saved by **through** water.
21 The *like figure* **antitype** whereunto *even* baptism
doth also now *save* **saveth** us
(not the *putting away* **laying aside** of the filth of the flesh,
but the *answer* **question** of a good conscience
toward God unto Elohim.)

by **through** the resurrection of *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**:

22 Who is gone into **heaven the heavens**,
and is *on* **in** the right *hand* of **God Elohim**;
angels and authorities and **powers dynamis**
being made subject **subjugated** unto him.

SUBJUGATING TO THE MESSIAH

4 Forasmuch then **So**
as *Christ* **Messiah** hath suffered for us in the flesh,
arm yourselves **be weaponed** likewise
with the same mind:
for **because** he that hath suffered in the flesh
hath *ceased* **paused** from sin;
2 That he no longer should *live* **exist**
the rest of his **remaining** time in the flesh
to the *lusts* **pantings** of *men* **humanity**,
but to the will of *God* **Elohim**.
3 For the **passing** time *past* of our *life* **existence**
may suffice us
to have *wrought* **worked** the will of the *Gentiles* **goyim**,
when we walked in *lasciviousness* **lechery**,
lusts **pantings**, *excess of wine* **violence**,
revellings **carousings**, *banquetings* **drinking bouts**,
and *abominable* **illicit** idolatries:
4 Wherein they think it strange
that ye *run* **rush** not *with them*
to the same *excess* **their effusion** of *riot* **dissipation**,
speaking evil of you **blaspheming**:
5 Who shall give *account* **word** to him
that is *ready* **prepared**
to judge the *quick* **living** and the dead.
6 For *for* **unto** this *cause*
was the gospel preached also to them that are dead
were the dead evangelized,
that they might **indeed** be judged
according to *men* **humanity** in the flesh,
but live according to *God* **Elohim** in the spirit.
7 But the *end* **completion/shalom** of all *things*
is at hand **approacheth**:
so be ye *therefore* **sober sound**, and watch unto prayer.
8 And *above* **preceding** all *things*
have *fervent charity among* **intense love unto** yourselves:
for charity **because love**
shall *cover* **vail** the multitude of sins.
9 Use *hospitality* **Befriend strangers** one to another
without *grudging* **murmuring**.
10 **Exactly** As *every man* **each**
hath *received* **taken** the *gift* **charisma**,
even so minister the same *one to another* **unto yourselves**,
as good *stewards* **administrators**
of the *manifold grace* **divers charism** of *God* **Elohim**.
11 If any *man* **one** speak,
let him speak as the oracles of *God* **Elohim**;
if any *man* **one** minister,
let him do it as of the *ability* might
which *God giveth* **Elohim supplieth**:
that *God* **Elohim** in all *things* may be glorified
through *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**,
to whom be *praise* **glory** and dominion
for ever and ever **unto the eons of the eons**.
Amen.

1 PETROS 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 because Messiah also suffered for sins once
— the just for the unjust, to bring us to Elohim,
indeed deathified in flesh
and enlivened in the Spirit:
19 wherein he also went and preached
to the spirits in the guardhouse
20 — who sometime distrusted
when once the patience of Elohim awaited
in the days of Noah while the ark was a preparing,
wherein few — that is eight souls
were saved through water:
21 to which baptism, the antitype, now also saves us
— not the laying aside of filth of flesh
but the question of a good conscience to Elohim
through the resurrection of Yah Shua Messiah:
22 who went into the heavens — at the right of Elohim
angels and authorities and dynamis
being subjugated to him.

SUBJUGATING TO THE MESSIAH

4 So as Messiah suffered for us in flesh,
weapon yourselves likewise with the same mind:
because he who suffered in flesh, paused from sin;
to no longer exist his remaining time in flesh
to the pantings of humanity
— but to the will of Elohim.
2
3 Enough of the past time of our existence!
— working the will of the goyim
— walking in lechery,
pantings,
violence,
carousings,
drinking bouts,
and illicit idolatries:
4 wherein they think it strange
that you not rush to their effusion of dissipation,
blaspheming:
5 who give word to him
who is prepared to judge the living and the dead.
6 For to this the dead were evangelized,
so that indeed
they be judged according to humanity in flesh,
but live according to Elohim in spirit.
7 But the completion/shalom of all approaches:
so be sound and watch to prayer.
8 And preceding all, have intense love to yourselves:
because love veils the multitude of sins.
9 Befriend strangers to one another
without murmuring.
10 Exactly as each takes the charisma,
minister the same to yourselves,
as good administrators
of the divers charism of Elohim.
11 If anyone speaks as the oracles of Elohim;
if anyone ministers as of the might that Elohim supplies:
glorify Elohim in all through Yah Shua Messiah,
to whom be glory and dominion
to the eons of the eons.
Amen.

1 PETER 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

TESTINGS OF FIRE

12 Beloved, *think is* it not strange concerning the *fiery trial* **firing in you** which is to *try* **test** you, as though *some* **somewhat** strange *thing* happened unto you:
 13 But *rejoice* **cheer**, *inasmuch* **according** as ye are partakers of *Christ's* **Messiah's** sufferings; that, *when his glory shall be revealed* **at the apocalypse of his glory**, ye may be *glad* also **cheer**, with *exceeding* **jumping** for joy.
 14 If ye be reproached *for* **in** the name of *Christ* **Messiah**, *happy* are ye **blessed**; *for* **because** the spirit of glory and of *God* **Elohim** resteth upon you: on their part he is *evil spoken of* **indeed blasphemed**, but on your part he is glorified.
 15 But **Indeed** let *none* **not any** of you suffer as a murderer, or as a thief, or as an evildoer, or as a busybody in other men's matters **overseeing others**.
 16 Yet if *any man suffer* as a *Christian* **Messianist**, let him not be ashamed; but let him glorify *God on* **Elohim** in this *behalf* **part**.
 17 *For the time is come* **Because this is the season** that judgment must begin *at* **from** the house of *God* **El**: and if *it first begin* *at* **from** us, what shall the *end* **completion/shalom** be of them that *obey not* **distrust** the *gospel* **evangelism** of *God* **Elohim**?
 18 And if the *righteous scarcely* **just** *difficultly* be saved, where shall the *ungodly* **irreverent** and the sinner *appear* **be manifest**?
 19 *Wherefore* **So** let them that suffer according to the will of *God* **Elohim** *commit the keeping of* **commend** their *own* souls *to him* in *well* doing **good**, as unto a *faithful* **trustworthy** Creator.

SHEPHERDING THE SHEPHERDDOM

5 The elders which are among you I *exhort* **beseech**, *who am also an elder* — **a co—elder**, and a witness of the sufferings of *Christ* **Messiah**, and also a partaker of the glory that shall be *revealed* **unveiled**:
 2 *Feed* **Shepherd** the *flock* **shepherddom** of *God* **Elohim** which is among you, *taking the oversight thereof* **overseeing**, not by *constraint* **compulsion**, but *willingly* **voluntarily**; not for *filthy lucre* **avarice**, but of a *ready mind* **eagerly**:
 3 Neither as *being lords over* **overlording** *God heritage* **the inheritance**, but *being ensamples* **becoming types** to the *flock* **shepherddom**.
 4 And when the *chief* **Arch** Shepherd shall *appear* **manifest**, ye shall receive a *crown* **wreath** of glory that *fadeth not away* — **amaranthine**.
 5 Likewise, ye younger, *submit* **subjugate** yourselves unto the elder. Yea, *all of you be subject* **subjugate** one to another, and be *clothed* **enrobed** with *humility* **humblemindedness**: *for God resisteth* **because Elohim opposeth** the proud, and giveth *grace* **charism** to the humble.
 6 **So** Humble yourselves *therefore* under the *mighty* **powerful** hand of *God* **Elohim**, that he may exalt you in *due time* **season**:
 7 *Casting* **Tossing** all your care **anxiety** upon him; *for* **because** he *careth for* **is concerned about** you.
 8 Be *sober*, **be vigilant watch**; because your adversary *the devil* **Diabolos**, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may *devour* **swallow**:
 9 Whom *resist stedfast* **withstand solid** in the *faith* **trust**, knowing that the same *afflictions* **sufferings**

1 PETROS 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

TESTINGS OF FIRE

12 Beloved, it is not strange concerning the firing in you, to test you, as though somewhat strange becomes you:
 13 But cheer, according as you are partakers of the sufferings of Messiah; so that at the apocalypse of his glory you also cheer with jumping for joy.
 14 If you are reproached in the name of Messiah, Blessed! — because the spirit of glory and of Elohim rests upon you: on their part he is indeed blasphemed, but on your part he is glorified.
 15 Indeed suffer not as a murderer or as a thief or as an evildoer or as overseeing others.
 16 Yet if as a Messianist, shame not; but glorify Elohim in this part.
 17 Because this is the season that judgment must begin from the house of El: and if first from us, what is the completion/shalom of them who distrust the evangelism of Elohim?
 18 And if the just are difficultly saved, where are the irreverent and the sinner manifested?
 19 So whoever suffers according to the will of Elohim, commend your own souls in doing good, as to a trustworthy Creator.

SHEPHERDING THE SHEPHERDDOM

5 I beseech the elders among you — I a co—elder and a witness of the sufferings of Messiah, and also a partaker of the glory to be unveiled.
 2 Shepherd the shepherddom of Elohim among you, overseeing — not by compulsion, but voluntarily; not for avarice, but eagerly; not as overlording the inheritance, but being types to the shepherddom: so that when the Arch Shepherd manifests, you receive a wreath of glory — amaranthine.
 3 Likewise, younger: subjugate yourselves to the elder. Yes, all subjugate to one another and enrobe with humblemindedness: because Elohim opposes the proud and gives charism to the humble.
 4 So humble yourselves under the powerful hand of Elohim, so that he exalts you in season: tossing all your anxiety upon him; because he is concerned about you.
 5 Sober! Watch! — because your adversary, Diabolos, as a roaring lion, walks around seeking whom to swallow: whom withstand solid in the trust, knowing that the same sufferings

1 PETER 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

are accomplished **completed/shalamed**
in your *brethren* **brotherhood**
that are in the *world* **cosmos**.

10 But the *God* **Elohim** of all *grace* **charism**,
who hath called us unto his eternal glory
by *Christ Jesus* **in Messiah Yah Shua**,
after that ye have suffered a *while* **little**,
make **prepare** you *perfect*, stablish,
strengthen **invigorate**, settle **found** you.

11 To him be glory and dominion
for ever and ever **unto the eons of the eons**.
Amen.

FINAL SALUTES

12 By **Through** Silvanus,
a *faithful* **trustworthy** brother unto you,
as I *suppose* **reckon**,

I have written *briefly* **scribed through few words**,
exhorting **beseeking**, and *testifying* **witnessing**
that this is the true *grace* **charism** of *God* **Elohim**
wherein ye stand.

13 *The church that is at Babylon* **They in Babel**,
electd together with you **the co—select**, saluteth you;
and so doth *Marcus* **Markos** my son.

14 Greet **Salute** ye one another with a kiss of *charity* **love**.
Peace **Shalom** be with you all
that are in *Christ Jesus* **Messiah Yah Shua**.
Amen.

1 PETROS 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

are completed/shalamed
in your brotherhood in the cosmos.

10 And the Elohim of all charism,
who calls us to his eternal glory in Messiah Yah Shua,
after you suffer a little,
prepare you,
establish,
invigorate,
foundation you.

11 To him be glory and dominion
to the eons of the eons.
Amen.

FINAL SALUTES

12 Through Silvanus your trustworthy brother,
I reckon that I scribed through few words,
beseeking and witnessing
that this wherein you stand
is the true charism of Elohim.

13 The co—select in Babel
and Markos my son salute you.

14 Salute one another with a kiss of love.
Shalom with all in Messiah Yah Shua.
Amen.

2 PETER 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Simon Peter **Shimon Petros**,
 a servant and an apostle of *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*,
 to them that *have obtained* **were allotted**
like **equally** precious *faith trust* with us
 through **in** the *righteousness justness of God Elohim*
 and our Saviour *Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah*:

2 Grace **Charism** and *peace shalom*
 be multiplied unto you
 through **in** the knowledge of *God Elohim*,
 and of *Jesus Yah Shua* our *Lord Adonay*,

3 According as his *divine power* **elohimic dynamis**
 hath given **granted** unto us all *things*
 that *pertain* unto life and *Godliness reverence*,
 through the knowledge of him
 that hath called us to **through** glory and virtue:
 Whereby **Through which** are given unto us
 exceeding great **magnificent**
 and precious *promises pre—evangelisms*:
 that by **through** these
 ye might be partakers of the divine nature,
 having escaped the corruption
 that is in the *world through lust cosmos iin its pantings*.

5 And beside this, *giving bringing in* all diligence,
 add to **supply in** your *faith trust*, virtue;
 and to **in** virtue, knowledge;

6 And to **in** knowledge, *temperance self—control*;
 and to *temperance in self—control, patience endurance*;
 and to *patience in endurance, Godliness reverence*.

7 And to *Godliness in reverence*,
brotherly kindness befriending brethren;
 and to *brotherly kindness in befriending brethren*,
charity love.

8 For if these *things be* **these being** in you,
 and *abound* **superabounding**,
 they *make* **seat** you
 that ye shall neither be *barren idle* nor unfruitful
 in the knowledge
 of our *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*.

9 But **Indeed** he
 that *lacketh to whom* these *things are not present*
 is blind, and *cannot see afar off* **blinketh**,
 and hath *forgotten taken forgetfulness*
 that he was *purged of the purifying*
 from his *old sins of long ago*.

10 Wherefore the **So** rather, brethren, give diligence
 to make your calling and *election sure* **selection stedfast**:
 for if ye do **doing** these *things*,
 ye shall *never fall* **not ever no way stumble**:
 For so **thus** an entrance
 shall be *ministered* **supplied** unto you *abundantly richly*
 into the *everlasting kingdom eternal sovereigndom*
 of our *Lord Adonay* and Saviour
Jesus Christ Yah Shua Messiah.

12 Wherefore I will **So I shall** not be *negligent* **disregard**
 to put **ever remind** you *always in remembrance*
 of **concerning** these *things*,
 though ye know *them*,
 and be established in the present truth.

THE FINAL EVANGELISM OF PETROS

13 Yea, I *think* **deem** it *meet just*,
 as long as I am in this tabernacle,
 to *stir* **rouse** you up
 by *putting in reminding* you *in remembrance*;

14 Knowing that *shortly quickly*
 I must put off this **be the laying aside** of my tabernacle,
 even **exactly** as
 our *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*
 hath *shewed* **evidenced** me.

Yahn 21:18, 19

15 Moreover I will *endeavour* **And I shall be diligent**
 that ye may be able **regard** after my *decease exodus*
 to have **do** these *things always ever* in remembrance.

16 For we have not followed
cunningly devised fables **sophisticated myths**,
 when we made known unto you
 the *power dynamis* and *coming parousia*
 of our *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*,
 but were *eyewitnesses* **became spectators** of his majesty.

2 PETROS 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Shimon Petros
 a servant and an apostle of Yah Shua Messiah:

To them
 who were allotted equally precious trust with us
 in the justness of Elohim
 and our Saviour Yah Shua Messiah:

2 Charism and shalom be multiplied to you
 in the knowledge of Elohim
 and of Yah Shua our Adonay;

3 as his divine dynamis grants us
 all of life and reverence;
 through the knowledge of him
 who called us through glory and virtue:
 through which he gives us
 magnificent and precious pre—evangelisms:
 that through these
 you become partakers of the divine nature
 — escaping the corruption in the cosmos
 in its pantings.

5 And beside this, in bringing you all diligence,
 supply in your trust, virtue;
 and in virtue, knowledge;

6 and in knowledge, self—control;
 and in self—control, endurance;
 and in endurance, reverence;
 and in reverence, befriending brothers;
 and in befriending brothers, love.

8 For these being in you, and superabounding,
 they seat you to be neither idle nor unfruitful
 in the knowledge of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.

9 Indeed he to whom these are not present
 is blind and blinks
 forgetting the purifying from his sins of long ago.

10 So the rather, brothers,
 give diligence
 to make your calling and selection steadfast:
 for doing these, you never ever no way stumble:

11 for thus you are richly supplied
 with an entrance into the eternal sovereigndom
 of our Adonay and Saviour Yah Shua Messiah.

12 So I disregard not
 to ever remind you concerning these,
 though you know
 being established in the present truth.

THE FINAL EVANGELISM OF PETROS

13 Yes I deem it just, as long as I am in this tabernacle,
 to rouse you in reminding you;
 knowing how quickly
 the laying aside of my tabernacle is
 — even exactly as our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
 evidenced me.

Yahn 21:18, 19

15 And I also am diligent for you,
 so that after my exodus,
 you ever regard these in remembrance.

16 For we followed not sophisticated myths
 when we had you know
 the dynamis and parousia
 of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah;
 but became spectators of his majesty.

2 PETER 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

17 For he *received* **hath taken** from *God Elohim* the Father
honour and glory,
when there *came* **was brought** such a voice to him
from the *excellent* **majestic** glory,
This is my beloved Son,
in of whom I *am well pleased* **well—approve**.
18 And this voice
which *came* **was brought** from *heaven* **the heavens** we heard,
when we were **being** with him in the holy mount.
SCRIPTURE PROPHECY

19 We have also a *more sure* **stedfast** word of prophecy;
whereunto ye do well that ye take heed,
as unto a light that *shineth* **manifesteth**
in a *dark* **an obscure place**,
until the day **thoroughly** dawn,
and the day *star* **phospherescence** arise in your hearts:
20 Knowing this first,
that *no not any* prophecy of the scripture
is **becometh** of
any private interpretation **personal explanation**.
21 For the prophecy
came not in old time **was not ever brought**
by the will of *man* **humanity**;
but holy *men* **humans** of *God Elohim* spake
as they were *moved* **borne** by the Holy *Ghost Spirit*.
PSEUDO PROPHETS AND PSEUDO DOCTORS

2 But there *were false* **became pseudo** prophets
also among the people,
even as there shall be *false teachers* **pseudo doctors**
among you,
who *privily* shall *bring in* **surreptitiously introduce**
damnable **destructive** heresies,
even denying the *Lord* **Despotes**
that *bought* **marketed** them,
and bring upon themselves *swift* **quick** destruction.
2 And many
shall follow their *pernicious* **destructive** ways;
by reason of **through** whom the way of truth
shall be *evil spoken of* **blasphemed**.
3 And *through covetousness* **in avarice**
shall they with *feigned* **fabricated** words
make merchandise of you:
whose judgment now of a *long time* **old**
lingereth **idleth** not,
and their *damnation* **destruction** slumbereth not.
4 For if *God Elohim* spared not the angels that sinned,
but *cast* **incarcerated** them *down to hell* **in Tartaros**,
and delivered them into *chains* **caverns** of darkness,
to be *reserved* **guarded** unto judgment;
5 And spared not the *old world* **ancient cosmos**,
but *saved Noah* **guarded Noah** the eighth *person*,
a preacher of *righteousness* **justness**,
bringing in the *flood* **cataclysm**
upon the *world* **cosmos** of the *ungodly* **irreverent**;
6 And *turning* **incinerating**
the cities of *Sodom* **Sedom** and *Gomorra* **Amorah** *into ashes*
condemned them with *an overthrow* **a catastrophe**,
making **setting** them an ensample unto those
that *after should* **were about to** live *ungodly* **irreverently**;
7 And *delivered* **rescued** just Lot,
vexed **worn down**
with by the filthy conversation **lecherous behaviour**
of the *wicked* **illicit**:
8 (For that *righteous man* **just one** dwelling among them,
in seeing and hearing,
vexed **tortured** his *righteous* **just** soul *from day to by* day
with their *unlawful deeds* **untorahed works**;)
9 *The Lord Yah Veh* knoweth how
to *deliver* **rescue** the *godly* **well**—**revering**
out of temptations **testings**,
and to *reserve* **guard** the unjust unto the day of judgment
to be punished:
10 But *chiefly* **especially** them that walk after the flesh
in the *lust* **panting** of *uncleanness* **defilement**,
and *despise government* **disesteem lordship**.
Presumptuous are they **Audacious**,
selfwilled **selfpleasing**,
they are not afraid **tremble not**
to *speak evil of dignities* **blaspheme glories**.

2 PETROS 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

17 For having taken honor and glory
from Elohim the Father
— when such a voice was brought to him
from the majestic glory,
This is my beloved Son of whom I well—approve.
18 — and we heard this voice
brought from the heavens
being with him in the holy mount.
SCRIPTURE PROPHECY

19 We also have a steadfast word of prophecy;
which you do well to heed,
as to a light manifesting in an obscure place,
until the day thoroughly dawn
and the day phospherescence arise in your hearts:
20 knowing this first,
that not any prophecy of the scripture
becomes by personal explanation:
21 for no prophecy
was ever brought by the will of humanity:
but holy humans of Elohim spoke
— borne by the Holy Spirit.

PSEUDOPROPHETS AND PSEUDODOCTORS

2 And so be it also,
pseudoprophets among the people
— even as pseudodoctors become among you
who surreptitiously introduce destructive heresies
— even denying the Despotes who marketed them;
and bring quick destruction on themselves.
2 And many follow their destructive ways
— who blaspheme the way of truth:
3 and in avarice
they fabricate words and merchandise of you:
whose judgment of old idles not
and their destruction slumbers not.
4 For if Elohim spared not the angels who sinned
but incarcerated them in Tartaros;
and delivered them into caverns of darkness
— guarded unto judgment;
5 and spared not the ancient cosmos;
but guarded Noah the eighth
— a preacher of justness;
bringing in the cataclysm
on the cosmos of the irreverent;
6 and incinerating the cities of Sedom and Amorah;
condemned them with a catastrophe
— setting an example to those all around
who live irreverently;
7 and rescued just Lot
worn down by the lecherous behavior of the illicit:
8 for that *just one* dwelling among them,
seeing and hearing,
tortured his just soul day by day
with their untorahed works;
9 Yah Veh knows how
to rescue the well—revering from testings
and to guard the unjust to the day of judgment
to punish:
10 and especially those walking after flesh
in the panting of defilement,
who disesteem lordship,
audacious,
selfpleasing,
who tremble not to blaspheme glories.

2 PETER 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

11 Whereas angels,
which are **being** greater
in power **might** and *might* **dynamis**,
bring *not railing accusation* **no blasphemous judgment**
against them *before the Lord with Yah Veh*.

12 But these,
as *natural brute beasts* **physical irrational live beings**,
made birthed to be taken **captured** and *destroyed* **corrupted**,
speak evil of the things **blaspheme those**
that they understand not in which they are unknowing;
and shall *utterly perish* **corrupt** in their own corruption;

13 And shall receive
the reward of *unrighteousness* **injustice**,
as they that *count* **deem** it pleasure
to *riot* **indulge** in the day time.
Spots they are **Stains** and blemishes,
sporting themselves **reveling**
with **in** their own *deceivings* **delusions**
while they *feast* **revel** with you;

14 Having eyes full of adultery,
and *that cannot cease* **restless** from sin;
beguiling **entrapping** unstable souls:
an heart they have exercised
with *covetous practices* **avarice**;
cursed children **of curse**:

15 Which have forsaken the *right* **straight** way,
and are *gone astray* **wander**,
following the way
of *Balaam* **Bilam** the son of *Bosor* **Beor**,
who loved
the *wages* **rewards** of *unrighteousness* **injustice**;

16 But was *rebuked* **reproofed**
for his *iniquity* **own torah violations**:
the *dumb ass* **voiceless burro**
speaking with man's **uttering in a human** voice
forbad the *madness* **insanity** of the prophet.

17 These are *wells without water* **waterless fountains**,
clouds
that are *carried with* **driven by** a *tempest* **whirlwind**;
to whom the mist of darkness
is *reserved for ever* **guarded unto the eons**.

18 For when they
speak great swelling words **utter overbulgings** of vanity,
they *allure* **entrap** through the *lusts* **phantings** of the flesh,
through much wantonness **lechery**,
those that were *clean* **indeed** escaped from them
who *live* **remain** in *error* **seduction**.

19 While they *promise them* **pre—evangelize** liberty,
they themselves are the servants of corruption:
for of whom a *man* **anyone** is *overcome* **slighted**,
of the same **by this** is he *brought in bondage* **subservient**.

20 For if after they have escaped
the *pollutions* **defilements** of the *world* **cosmos**
through the knowledge
of the *Lord* **Adonay** and Saviour *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**,
they are again entangled *therein* **by these**,
and *overcome* **slighted**,
the latter end is **their finality** *becometh* worse with them
than the *beginning* **first**.

21 For it had been better for them
not to have known the way of *righteousness* **justness**,
than, after they have known it,
to turn from the holy *commandment* **misvah**
delivered unto them.

22 But it is happened unto them
according to the true proverb,
The dog *is turned* **returneth** to his own vomit *again*;
and the *sow* **hog** that *was washed* **bathed**
to her wallowing in the mire.

Proverbs 26:11

THE FINAL DAYS

3 This second epistle, beloved,
I *now write* **scribe** unto you;
in *both* which I *stir up* **rouse** your *pure* **sincere** minds
by way of in remembrance:

2 That ye may *be mindful of* **remember** the words **rhemas**
which were *spoken before* **foresaid** by the holy prophets,
and of the *commandment* **misvah**
of us the apostles of the *Lord* **Adonay** and Saviour:

2 PETROS 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

11 Whereas angels,
being greater in might and dynamis,
brought no blasphemous judgment against them
with Yah Veh.

12 And these, as physical irrational live beings,
birthed to be captured and corrupted,
blaspheme those in which they are unknowing;
and corrupt in their own corruption;

13 and receive the reward of injustice,
as they who deem it pleasure
to indulge in the day time;
— stains and blemishes,
reveling in their own delusions as they revel with you;

14 eyes full of adultery,
and restless from sin;
entrapping unstable souls;
a heart exercised with avarice;
children of curse
who forsake the straight way and wander;
following the way of Bilam of Beor
who loved the rewards of injustice;

16 and was reproofed for his own torah violations:
the voiceless burro uttering in a human voice
forbad the insanity of the prophet.

17 These are waterless fountains
— clouds driven by a whirlwind
to whom the mist of darkness is guarded to the eons.

18 For by uttering overbulgings of vanity,
through the pantings of the flesh, by lechery,
they entrap them,
who indeed escaped from them
who remain in seduction.

19 While they pre—evangelize liberty,
they themselves are the servants of corruption:
for by whom anyone is belittled,
by him is he subservient.

20 For if,
having escaped the defilements of the cosmos
through the knowledge
of Adonay and Saviour Yah Shua Messiah,
and entangled again by these and belittled,
their finality becomes worse than at first.

21 For it had been better for them
to not have known the way of justness,
than having known,
to turn from the holy misvah delivered to them.

22 But it happens to them
according to the true proverb,
The dog returns to his own vomit;
and the hog that bathed to her wallowing in the mire.

Proverbs 26:11

THE FINAL DAYS

3 This second epistle, beloved, I scribe to you;
in which I rouse your sincere minds in remembrance:
2 to remember the rhemas
foresaid by the holy prophets
and the misvah
by us the apostles of Adonay and Saviour:

2 PETER 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

3 Knowing this first,
that there shall come in the *last* **final** days
scoffers mockers,
walking after their own *lusts pantings,*
4 And *saying wording,*
Where is the *promise pre—evangelism*
of his *coming parousia?*
for from since the fathers fell asleep,
all *things continue as they were continually abide thus*
as from the beginning of the creation.
5 For **From** this
they *willingly are ignorant of will to hide,*
that by the word of **God Elohim** the heavens were of old,
and the earth standing out of the water
and *in through* the water:
6 *Whereby Through which*
the world **cosmos** that then was,
being *overflowed flooded* with water,
perished destructed:
7 But the heavens and the earth, which are now,
by the same word are *kept in store treasured,*
reserved guarded unto fire
against unto
the day of judgment and *perdition destructio*
of ungodly men irreverent humanity.
8 But, beloved,
be not ignorant of this one thing hide not from this,
that one day is with *the Lord Yah Veh*
as a thousand years,
and a thousand years as one day.
9 *The Lord Yah Veh* is not slack
concerning his *promise pre—evangelism,*
as some *men count deem* slackness;
but is *longsuffering to us—ward patient unto us,*
not willing that any should *perish destruct,*
but that all should *come pass* to repentance.
THE DAY OF YAH VEH
10 But the day of *the Lord will Yah Veh shall* come
as a thief in the night;
in the which the heavens
shall *pass away with a great noise whirl,*
and the elements **being causticized,**
shall *melt with fervent heat let loose,*
the earth also and the works that are therein
shall be *burned up.*
11 *Seeing then that So* all these,
things shall be dissolved having let loose,
what manner of *persons ought ye to ye must be*
in all *holy conversation behaviour*
and *godliness reverence,*
12 *Looking for Awaiting* and hasting
unto the *coming parousia* of the day of **God Elohim,**
wherein through which the heavens being on fire
shall be *dissolved loosed,*
and the elements **being causticized,**
shall *melt with fervent heat down?*
13 *Nevertheless And* we,
according to his *promise pre—evangelism,*
look for await new heavens and a new earth,
wherein dwelleth *righteousness justness.*
14 *Wherefore, So* beloved,
seeing that ye *look for such things await these,*
be diligent that ye may be found of him in *peace shalom,*
without spot unstained, and *blameless unblemished.*
15 And *account deem* that the *longsuffering patience*
of our **Lord Adonay** is salvation;
even **exactly** as our beloved brother *Paul Paulos* also
according to the wisdom given unto him
hath *written scribed* unto you;
16 As also in all his epistles,
speaking in them of **concerning** these *things;*
in which are some *things*
hard to be understood incomprehensible,
which they that are unlearned and unstable *wrest twist,*
as *they do* also the *other rest of the* scriptures,
unto their own destruction.

2 PETROS 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

3 knowing this first:
that in the final days come mockers
walking after their own pantings;
4 and wording,
Where is the pre—evangelism of his parousia?
From since the fathers fell asleep,
all continually abides thus
as from the beginning of the creation.
5 They will to hide from this:
that by the word of Elohim
the heavens being of old
and the earth standing from the water
and through the water:
6 through which the cosmos then being
flooded with water and destructed:
7 and the heavens and the earth, now being,
by the same word are treasured
— guarded to fire
to the day of judgment
and destruction of irreverent humanity.
8 But beloved, hide not from this:
that one day with Yah Veh is as a thousand years
and a thousand years as one day.
9 Yah Veh is not slack
concerning his pre—evangelism
as some deem slackness;
but is patient to us,
who wills that not any destruct,
but that all pass to repentance.
THE DAY OF YAH VEH
10 But the day of Yah Veh comes
as a thief in the night;
in which the heavens pass with a whirl
and the elements, being causticized, let loose;
also the earth and the works therein burn.
11 So all these, having let loose,
what manner must you be
in holy behavior and reverence;
12 awaiting and hastening
to the parousia of the day of Elohim,
through which the heavens being on fire, are loosed;
and the elements being causticized, melt down?
13 And we, according to his pre—evangelism,
await the new heavens and a new earth,
wherein justness dwells.
14 So beloved, seeing that you await these,
be diligent to be found by him in shalom
— unstained and unblemished.
15 And deems the patience of our Adonay,
to be salvation;
even exactly as our beloved brother Paulos also
according to the wisdom given him
scribed to you;
16 as also in all his epistles,
speaking in them concerning these;
in which some are incomprehensible
— which the unlearned and unstable twist
— as also the rest of the scriptures
to their own destruction.

JUDE

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Jude **Yah Hudah**,
 the servant of *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**,
 and brother of *James* **Yaaqovos**,
 to them that are *sanctified* **hallowed**
by God in Elohim the Father,
 and *preserved* **guarded** in *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**,
 and called:

2 Mercy unto you,
 and *peace* **shalom**, and love, be multiplied.

AGONIZING FOR THE TRUST

3 Beloved,
 when I gave **made** all diligence to *write* **scribe** unto you
of concerning the common salvation,
it was needful for me **I needed** to *write* **scribe** unto you,
 and *exhort* **beseech** you that ye should earnestly
contend **agonize** for the *faith* **trust**
 which was once delivered unto the *saints* **holy**.

4 For *there are certain men* **some humans have**
crept **surreptitiously sneaked** in *unawares* **alongside**,
who were before of old **long ago**
ordained **preinscribed** to this *condemnation* **judgment**,
ungodly men **irreverent**,
turning **transplating** the *grace* **charism** of our *God* **Elohim**
 into *lasciviousness* **lechery**,
 and denying the only *Lord God* **Despotes Elohim**,
 and our *Lord Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**.

EXAMPLES OF PAST JUDGMENTS

5 *I will therefore put you in remembrance*

So I shall remind you,
 though ye once knew this,
 how that *the Lord* **Yah Veh**,
 having saved the people
 out of the land of *Egypt* **Misrayim**,
afterward **secondly** destroyed them
 that *believed* **trusted** not.

6 And the angels
 which *kept* **guarded** not their *first estate* **own hierarchy**,
 but left their own *habitation* **house**,
 he hath *reserved* **guarded**
in everlasting chains **eternal bonds** under *darkness* **gloom**
 unto the judgment of the *great* **mega** day.

7 Even as *Sodom* **Sedom** and *Gomorrha* **Amorah**,
 and the cities about them in like manner,
giving themselves over to fornication **whoring**,
 and going after *strange* **other** flesh,
 are set *forth* for an example,
suffering **enduring** the *vengeance* **judgment**
 of eternal fire.

8 *Likewise* **Yet indeed** also these *filthy* dreamers
 defile the flesh, *despise dominion* **set aside lordship**,
 and *speak evil of dignities* **blaspheme glories**.

9 Yet *Michael* **Michah El** the archangel,
 when *contending* **dialoguing** with *the devil* **Diabolos**
 he *disputed* **reasoned** about the body of Moses,
 durst not bring **up against him**
a railing accusation **blasphemy**,
 but said, *The Lord* **Yah Veh** rebuke thee.

10 But **indeed**, these *speak evil* **blaspheme**
of those things which **as much as** they know not:
 but *what* **as much as** they *know* **understand**
naturally **physically**,
 as *brute beasts* **irrational live beings**,
 in those *things* they corrupt themselves.

11 Woe unto them!
 for **because** they have gone in the way of *Cain* **Qayin**,
 and *ran greedily* **rushed**
 after the *error* **seduction** of *Balaam* **Bilam** for reward,
 and *perished* **destroyed**
 in the *gainsaying* **controversy** of *Core* **Korach**.

12 These are *spots* **reefs** in your *feasts of charity* **love**,
 when they *feast* **revel** with you,
feeding **shepherding** themselves *without fear* **fearlessly**:
waterless clouds *they are without water*,
 carried about of winds;
autumnal trees *whose fruit withereth*,
without fruit **unfruitful**, twice dead,
plucked up by the roots **uprooted**;

YAH HUDAH

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 Yah Hudah,
 the servant of Yah Shua Messiah
 and brother of Yaaqovos:

To the hallowed in Elohim the Father
 and guarded in Yah Shua Messiah — called:

2 Mercy to you
 and shalom and love, be multiplied.

AGONIZING FOR THE TRUST

3 Beloved, scribing to you in all diligence,
 concerning the common salvation,
 I need to scribe to you and beseech you
 to earnestly agonize for the trust
 once delivered to the holy.

4 For some humans
 surreptitiously sneaked alongside
 — who long ago were preinscribed to this judgment
 — irreverent
 transplating the charism of our Elohim into lechery
 and denying the only Despotes Elohim
 and our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.

EXAMPLES OF PAST JUDGMENTS

5 So, I remind you,,
 though you once knew this,
 how that Yah Veh saved the people
 from the land of Misrayim;
 and secondly destroyed them who trusted not:

6 and the angels who guarded not their own hierarchy
 but left their own house

he guards in eternal bonds under gloom
 unto the judgment of the mega day

7 — as Sedom and Amorah
 and the surrounding cities in like manner
 — whoring and going after other flesh,
 are set forth for an example
 — enduring the judgment of eternal fire.

8 Yet indeed,
 these dreamers still defile the flesh,
 set aside lordships,
 and blaspheme glories.

9 Yet Michah El the archangel
 dialoguing with Diabolos
 reasoning about the body of Moses,
 dared not bring a blasphemy;
 but said, Yah Veh rebuke you!

10 But indeed,
 these blaspheme as much as they know not:
 but as much as they understand physically,
 as irrational live beings,
 in those, they corrupt themselves.

11 Woe to them!
 because they go in the way of Qayin
 and rush for reward
 after the seduction of Bilam
 and destruct in the controversy of Korach.

12 These are reefs in your love as they revel with you,
 shepherding themselves fearlessly:
 waterless clouds carried about by winds,
 autumnal trees,
 unfruitful,
 twice dead,
 uprooted,

JUDE

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

13 Raging waves of the sea,
foaming out **frothing** their own shame;
wandering **planetary** stars,
to whom is reserved **guarded**
the blackness of *darkness* **gloom**
for ever **unto the eons**.

14 And Enoch **Hanoch** also, the seventh from Adam,
prophesied of these, saying **wording**,
Behold, the Lord **Yah Veh** cometh
with ten thousands of his saints **among his holy myriads**,

15 To execute **deal** judgment upon all,
and to *convince* **convict** all
that are *ungodly* **irreverent among them**
of **concerning** all their *ungodly deeds* **irreverent works**
which they have *ungodly committed* **irreverently done**,
and of **concerning** all their *hard speeches* **hardnesses**
which *ungodly* **irreverent** sinners
have spoken against him.

Deuteronomy 33:2

16 These are murmurers, *complainers* **fatalists**,
walking after their own *lusts* **pantings**;
and their mouth
speaketh *great swelling words* **overbulgings**,
having men's persons in admiration **marveling over faces**
because of *advantage* **benefit**.

REMEMBERING THE RHEMAS

17 But, beloved, remember ye the *words* **rhemas**
which were *spoken before* **foresaid** of the apostles
of our Lord *Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**;
18 How that they *told* **worded to** you
there should be mockers in the *last* **final** time,
who should walk after their own
ungodly lusts **irreverent pantings**.

19 These be they
who *separate themselves* **set boundaries**,
sensual **soulical**, having not the Spirit.

20 But ye, beloved,
building up yourselves on your most holy *faith* **trust**,
praying in the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**,
21 Keep **Guard** yourselves in the love of *God* **Elohim**,
looking for **awaiting** the mercy
of our Lord *Jesus Christ* **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**
unto eternal life.

22 And of some *have compassion* **indeed mercy**,
making a difference **discerning**;

23 And others save with *fear* **in awe**,
pulling **seizing** them out of the fire;
hating even the *garment* **tunic**
spotted **stained** by the flesh.

BENEDICTION

24 Now unto him that is able
to keep **guard** you from *falling* **unstumbling**,
and to *present* **stand** you *faultless* **unblemished**
before the presence **in sight** of his glory
with exceeding **in jumping for** joy,
25 To the only wise *God* **Elohim** our Saviour,
be glory and majesty,
dominion **power** and *power* **authority**,
both now and ever **unto all eons**.
Amen.

YAH HUDAH

exeGesés companion BIBLE

13 raging waves of the sea
frothing their own shame,
planetary stars
— to whom is guarded
the blackness of gloom to the eons.

14 And Hanoch also, the seventh from Adam,
prophesied of these, wording,
Behold, Yah Veh comes among his holy myriads,
to deal judgment on all
15 and to convict all who are irreverent among them
concerning all their irreverent works
which they have irreverently done;
and concerning all their hardnesses
which irreverent sinners have spoken against him.

Deuteronomy 33:2

16 These are murmurers
— fatalists walking after their own pantings;
and their mouth speaking overbulgings;
marveling over faces to benefit.

REMEMBERING THE RHEMAS

17 And you, beloved,
remember the rhemas foresaid by the apostles
of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah;
18 how they worded to you
that there be mockers in the final time,
walking after their own irreverent pantings:
19 who set boundaries;
soulical, not having the Spirit.

20 And you, beloved,
edifying yourselves on your most holy trust,
praying in Holy Spirit,
21 guarding yourselves in the love of Elohim
awaiting the mercy of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
to eternal life.

22 And to some indeed, mercy
— discerning thoroughly:
23 and others save in awe,
seizing them from the fire;
hating even the tunic stained by the flesh.

BENEDICTION

24 And to him who is able to guard you unstumbling
and to stand you unblemished
in sight of his glory — in jumping for joy,
to the only wise Elohim our Saviour
be glory and majesty,
power and authority,
both now and to all eons.
Amen.

1 JOHN 1, 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE WORD OF LIFE

1 That which was from the beginning,
 which we have heard,
 which we have seen with our eyes,
 which we have *looked upon* **observed**,
 and our hands have *handled* **touched**,
 of **concerning** the Word of life;
 2 (For the life was manifested,
 and we have seen it, and *bear* witness,
 and *shew* **evangelize** unto you that eternal life,
 which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us);
 3 That which we have seen and heard
 declare **evangelize** we unto you,
 that ye also may have *fellowship* **communion** with us:
 and truly our *fellowship* **communion** is with the Father,
 and with his Son *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**.
 4 And these *things* write **scribe** we unto you,
 that your *joy* may **cheer** be *full* **fulfilled/shalamed**.
 5 This then is the *message* **pre—evangelism**
 which we have heard of him,
 and declare **evangelize** unto you,
 that *God Elohim* is light, and in him is no darkness at all.
 6 *If Whenever* we say that we have
fellowship **communion** with him,
 and walk in darkness, we lie, and do not the truth:
 7 But *if whenever* we walk in the light, as he is in the light,
 we have *fellowship* **communion** one with another,
 and the blood of *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah** his Son
cleanseth **purifieth** us from all sin.
 8 *If Whenever* we say that we have no sin,
 we *deceive* **seduce** ourselves, and the truth is not in us.
 9 *If Whenever* we *confess* **profess** our sins,
 he is *faithful* **trustworthy** and just to forgive us our sins,
 and to *cleanse* **purify** us
 from all *unrighteousness* **injustice**.
 10 *If Whenever* we say that we have not sinned,
 we make him a liar, and his word is not in us.

YAH SHUA MESSIAH, THE PARACLETE

2 My little children,
 these *things* write **scribe** I unto you, that ye sin not.
 And *if whenever* any *man* **one** sin,
 we have an *advocate* **a Paraclete** with the Father,
Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah** the *righteous* **just**:
 2 And he is the *propitiation* **kopur/atonement** for our sins:
 and not for ours only,
 but also for *the sins* of the whole *world* **cosmos**.
 3 And *hereby* **in this** we do know
 that we *know* **have known** him,
if whenever we *keep* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**.
 4 He that *saith* **wordeth**, I *know* **have known** him,
 and *keepeth* **guardeth** not his *commandments* **misvoth**,
 is a liar, and the truth is not in him.
 5 But *whoso* *keepeth* **whoever** *guardeth* his word,
 in him *verily* **truly** is the love of *God* **Elohim**
perfected **completed/shalamed**:
hereby **in this** know we that we are in him.
 6 He that *saith* **wordeth** he abideth in him
ought **is indebted** himself also *so* **thus** to walk,
 even **exactly** as he walked.
 7 Brethren,
 I *write* **scribe** no new *commandment* **misvah** unto you,
 but an old *commandment* **misvah**
 which ye had from the beginning.
 The old *commandment* **misvah** is the word
 which ye have heard from the beginning.
 8 Again,
 a new *commandment* **misvah** I *write* **scribe** unto you,
 which *thing* is true in him and in you:
 because the darkness *is* **past** *passeth* **away**,
 and the true light *now* **shineth** **already** **manifesteth**.
 9 He that *saith* **wordeth** that he is in the light,
 and hateth his brother, is in darkness even until now.
 10 He that loveth his brother abideth in the light,
 and there is
none occasion of *stumbling* **no scandal** in him.
 11 But he that hateth his brother is in darkness,
 and walketh in darkness,
 and knoweth not whither he goeth,
 because *that* darkness hath blinded his eyes.

1 YAHN 1, 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE WORD OF LIFE

1 That which was from the beginning,
 which we heard,
 which our eyes saw,
 which we observed and our hands touched
 concerning the Word of life;
 2 for the life manifested
 and we saw and witness
 and evangelize to you the eternal life;
 being with the Father and manifest to us
 3 which we saw and heard:
 we evangelize to you,
 so that you also have communion with us:
 and truly our communion is with the Father
 and with his Son Yah Shua Messiah:
 4 and we scribe these to you
 that your cheer be fulfilled/shalamed.
 5 And this is the pre—evangelism
 we heard from him and evangelize to you
 — that Elohim is light and in him is no darkness at all.
 6 Whenever we say we have communion with him
 and walk in darkness,
 we lie and do not the truth:
 7 and whenever we walk in the light,
 as he is in the light,
 we have communion with one another
 — and the blood of Yah Shua Messiah his Son
 purifies us from all sin:
 8 whenever we say we have no sin
 we seduce ourselves and the truth is not in us:
 9 whenever we profess our sins,
 he is trustworthy and just to forgive our sins
 and to purify us from all injustice:
 10 whenever we say that we have not sinned
 we make him a liar and his word is not in us.

YAH SHUA MESSIAH, THE PARACLETE

2 My little children,
 I scribe these to you that you not sin:
 and whenever anyone sins
 we have a Paraclete with the Father
 — Yah Shua Messiah the just:
 2 and he is the kopur/atonement for our sins:
 and not for ours only, but also for the whole cosmos.
 3 And in this we know that we know him
 — whenever we guard his misvoth.
 4 Whoever words, I know him!
 — and guards not his misvoth,
 is a liar and the truth is not in him:
 5 and whoever guards his word,
 truly in him
 the love of Elohim is completed/shalamed:
 — in this we know that we are in him.
 6 Whoever words that he abides in him
 is also indebted to walk thus
 — exactly as he walked.
 7 Brethren, I scribe you no new misvah,
 but an old misvah that you had from the beginning:
 the old misvah
 is the word you heard from the beginning:
 8 again, I scribe you a new misvah
 which is true in him and in you:
 because the darkness passes away
 and the true light already manifests.
 9 Whoever words that he is in the light
 and hates his brother
 is in darkness even until now:
 10 whoever loves his brother abides in the light
 and there is no scandal in him:
 but whoever hates his brother
 is in darkness and walks in darkness
 and knows not where he goes
 — because darkness blinds his eyes.

1 JOHN 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

12 I write **scribe** unto you, little children,
because your sins are forgiven you for his name's sake.
13 I write **scribe** unto you, fathers,
because ye have known him that is from the beginning.
I write **scribe** unto you, *young men* **youths**,
because ye have
overcome **triumphed over** the *wicked evil* one.
I write **scribe** unto you, little children,
because ye have known the Father.
14 I have *written* **scribed** unto you, fathers,
because ye have known him that is from the beginning.
I have *written* **scribed** unto you, *young men* **youths**,
because ye are *strong mighty*,
and the word of *God Elohim* abideth in you,
and ye have *overcome* **triumphed**
over the *wicked evil* one.

LOVING THE COSMOS

15 Love not the *world* **cosmos**,
neither *the things* **those** that are in the *world* **cosmos**.
If Whenever any *man* **one** love the *world* **cosmos**,
the love of the Father is not in him.
16 *For Because* all that is in the *world* **cosmos**,
the *lust* **panting** of the flesh,
and the *lust* **panting** of the eyes,
and the pride of *life* **existence**,
is not of the Father, but is of the *world* **cosmos**.
17 And the *world* **cosmos** passeth away,
and the *lust* **panting** thereof:
but he that doeth the will of *God Elohim*
abideth *for ever* **unto the eons**.

THE ANTI-MESSIAH

18 Little children, it is the *last time* **final hour**:
and **exactly** as ye have heard
that *antichrist* **the antimessiah** shall come,
even now
are there many *antichrists* **antimessiahs**;
whereby we know that it is the *last time* **final hour**.

2 Yahn 7

19 They went out from us, but they were not of us;
for if they had been of us,
they *would no doubt* **should** have
continued **ever abode** with us:
but they *went out*,
that they might *be made* manifest
that they were not all of us.
20 But ye have an *unction* **anointing** from the Holy One,
and ye know all *things*.
21 I have not *written* **scribed** unto you
because ye know not the truth,
but because ye know it,
and that *no* **not any** lie is of the truth.
22 Who is a liar *but* **except** he that denieth
that *Jesus Yah Shua* is the *Christ Messiah*?
He is antichrist **This one is the antimessiah**,
that denieth the Father and the Son.

2 Yahn 7

23 Whosoever denieth the Son,
the same hath not the Father:
[but] he that acknowledgeth the Son hath the Father also.
24 Let that therefore abide in you,
which ye have heard from the beginning.
If Whenever that which ye have heard from the beginning
shall *remain* **abide** in you,
ye also shall *continue* **abide** in the Son, and in the Father.
25 And this is the *promise* **pre—evangelism**
that he hath *promised* **pre—evangelized** to us,
even — eternal life.
26 These *things* have I *written* **scribed** unto you
concerning them that seduce you.
27 But the anointing which ye have *received* **taken** of him
abideth in you,
and ye need not that any *man* **teach** **one** **doctrinate** you:
but as the same anointing
teacheth **doctrineth** you of **concerning** all *things*,
and is truth, and is no lie,
and *even* **exactly** as it hath *taught* **doctrinated** you,
ye shall abide in him.

1 YAHN 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

12 I scribe to you little children:
because your sins are forgiven for sake of his name.
13 I scribe to you fathers:
because you know him who *is* from beginning.
I scribe to you youths:
because you triumph over the evil one.
I scribe to you little children:
because you know the Father.
14 I scribe to you fathers:
because you know him who *is* from beginning.
I scribe to you youths:
because you are mighty
and the word of Elohim abides in you
and you triumph over the evil one.

LOVING THE COSMOS

15 Neither love the cosmos, nor those in the cosmos:
whenever anyone loves the cosmos
the love of the Father is not in him.
16 Because all that is in the cosmos
— the panting of the flesh,
and the panting of the eyes,
and the pride of existence
is not of the Father, but *is* of the cosmos.
17 And the cosmos passes away
and the panting thereof:
and whoever does the will of Elohim
abides to the eons.

THE ANTI-MESSIAH

18 Little children, it is the final hour:
and exactly as you heard
that the antimessiah comes,
even now there are antimessiahs;
whereby we know it is the final hour.

2 Yahn 7

19 They went from us, but they were not of us;
for if they had been of us
they had ever abode with us:
but they manifested they were not all of us.
20 And you have an anointing from the Holy One
and you know all.
21 I scribe not to you
because you know not the truth;
but because you know it, and no lie is of the truth.
22 Who is a liar
except whoever denies that Yah Shua is the Messiah?
This is the antimessiah
— who denies the Father and the Son.

2 Yahn 7

23 Whoever denies the Son has not the Father.
24 So you,
have what you heard from the beginning
abide in you.
Whenever what you heard from the beginning
abides in you,
you also abide in the Son and in the Father.
25 And this is the pre—evangelism
he pre—evangelized to us
— eternal life.
I scribe these to you
concerning them who seduce you.
27 And you, the anointing you took from him
abides in you
and you need no one to doctrinate you:
but as the same anointing
doctrinates you concerning all
— and is truth and is no lie
— exactly as it doctrinates you,
abide in him.

1 JOHN 2, 3

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

28 And now, little children, abide in him;
that, when he shall *appear* **manifest**,
we may have *confidence* **boldness**,
and not be ashamed *before* **in front** of him
at his *coming* **parousia**.
29 If **Whenever** ye know that he is *righteous* **just**,
ye know that every one that doeth *righteousness* **justness**
is *born* **birthed** of him.

THE LOVE OF THE FATHER

3 Behold **Perceive**,
what manner of love
the Father hath *bestowed upon* **given** us,
that we should be called the *sons* **children** of God **Elohim**:
therefore **because of this** the *world* **cosmos** knoweth us not,
because it knew him not.
2 Beloved, now are we the *sons* **children** of God **Elohim**,
and it *doth* **be** not yet *appear* **manifest**
what we shall be;
but we know that,
when **whenever** he shall *appear* **be** **manifest**,
we shall be like him;
for **because** we shall see him **exactly** as he is.
3 And every *man* **one** that hath this hope in him
purifieth **halloweth** himself,
even **exactly** as he is *pure* **hallowed**.
4 Whosoever *committeth* **doeth** sin
transgresseth **violateth** also the *law* **torah**:
for sin is the *transgression* **violation** of the *law* **torah**.
5 And ye know that he was manifested
to take away our sins;
and in him is no sin.
6 Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not:
whosoever sinneth hath not seen him,
neither known him.
7 Little children, let no *man* **deceive** **one** **seduce** you:
he that doeth *righteousness* **justness** is *righteous* **just**,
even **exactly** as he is *righteous* **just**.
8 He that *committeth* **doeth** sin is of the *devil* **Diabolos**;
for the devil **because** **Diabolos**
sinneth from the beginning.
For **Unto** this *purpose*
the Son of God **Elohim** was manifested,
that he might *destroy* **loosen**
the works of the *devil* **Diabolos**.
9 Whosoever is *born* **birthed** of God **Elohim**
doth not *commit* sin;
for **because** his *seed* **remaineth** **sperma** **abideth** in him:
and he cannot sin, because he is *born* **birthed** of God **Elohim**.
10 In this the children of God **Elohim** are manifest,
and the children of the *devil* **Diabolos**:
whosoever doeth not *righteousness* **justness**
is not of God **Elohim**,
neither he that loveth not his brother.

LOVING ONE ANOTHER

11 For **Because** this is the *message* **evangelism**
that ye heard from the beginning,
that we should love one another.
12 Not **exactly** as *Cain* **Qayin**,
who was of that *wicked* **evil** one,
and *slew* **slaughtered** his brother.
And *wherefore* **slew** **for what cause** **slaughtered** he him?
Because his own works were evil,
and his brother's *righteous* **just**.
13 Marvel not, my brethren,
if the *world* **cosmos** hate you.
14 We know
that we have *passed* **departed** from death unto life,
because we love the brethren.
He that loveth not his brother abideth in death.
Whosoever hateth his brother is a murderer:
and ye know that *no* **not any** murderer
hath eternal life abiding in him.
16 Hereby *perceive* we **In this we know** the love of God,
because he *laid down* **placed** his *life* **soul** for us:
and we *ought* **are** **indebted**
to *lay down* **place** our *lives* **souls** for the brethren.
17 But *whoso* **whoever**
hath this *world's* **good** **cosmos'** **subsistence**,
and *seeth* **observeth** his brother have need,

1 YAHN 2, 3

exeGeses companion BIBLE

28 And now little children,
abide in him;
so that when he manifests,
we have boldness
and not shame in front of him at his parousia.
29 Whenever you know that he is just,
you know that everyone who does justness
is birthed of him.

THE LOVE OF THE FATHER

3 Perceive!
What manner of love the Father gives us
— to be called the children of Elohim:
because of this, the cosmos knows us not,
because it knew him not.
2 Beloved, we are now the children of Elohim
and it is not yet manifest what we become;
but we know that,
whenever he becomes manifest, we become like him;
because then we see him exactly as he is.
3 And everyone who has this hope in him
hallows himself
— exactly as he is hallowed.
4 Everyone doing sin also violates the torah:
for sin is the violation of the torah.
5 And you know that he was manifested
to take away our sins
— and in him no sin is.
6 Whoever abides in him sins not:
whoever sins neither saw him nor knew him.
7 Little children, be seduced by no one:
whoever does justness is just — exactly as he is just:
everyone doing sin is of Diabolos
— because Diabolos sinned from the beginning.
Unto this the Son of Elohim manifested
— to loosen the works of Diabolos.
9 Whoever is birthed of Elohim sins not;
because his sperma abides in him:
and he cannot sin, because he is birthed of Elohim.
10 In this are the children of Elohim
and the children of Diabolos manifest:
whoever does not justness is not of Elohim,
neither whoever loves not his brother.

LOVING ONE ANOTHER

11 Because this is the evangelism
you heard from the beginning
— to love one another.
12 Not exactly as Qayin who was of that evil one,
who slaughtered his brother.
And for what cause slaughtered he him?
Because his own works were evil
and those of his brother, just.
13 Marvel not, my brothers, if the cosmos hates you.
14 We know that we departed from death to life,
because we love the brothers.
Whoever loves not his brother abides in death:
whoever hates his brother is a murderer
— and you know that not any murderer
has eternal life abiding in him.
16 In this we know the love
because he placed his soul for us:
and we are indebted
to place our souls for the brothers.
17 But whoever has the subsistence of this cosmos
and observes his brother has need

1 JOHN 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and shutteth up his bowels of compassion spleen from him,
 how dwelleth **abideth** the love of God **Elohim** in him?
 18 My little children, let us not love in word,
 neither in tongue; but in **deed work** and in truth.
 19 And **hereby in this** we know that we are of the truth,
 and shall **assure confide** our hearts
before in front of him.
 20 For if **Because whenever** our heart condemn us,
 God **Elohim** is greater than our heart,
 and knoweth all *things*.
 21 Beloved, if **whenever** our heart condemn us not,
 then have we *confidence* **boldness** toward God **Elohim**.
 22 And **whatsoever whenever** we ask,
 we *receive* **take** of him,
 because we *keep* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**,
 and do those *things* that are pleasing in his sight.
 23 And this is his *commandment* **misvah**,
 That we should *believe on* **trust**
 the name of his Son *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**,
 and love one another,
exactly as he gave us *commandment* **misvah**.
 24 And he that *keepeth* **guardeth** his *commandments* **misvoth**
dwelleth abideth in him, and he in him.
 And **hereby in this** we know that he abideth in us,
 by the Spirit which he hath given us.

THE ANTIMESSIAH

4 Beloved, *believe* **trust** not every spirit,
 but *try* **proof** the spirits
 whether they are of God **Elohim**:
 because many **false pseudo** prophets
 are gone out into the *world* **cosmos**.
 2 **Hereby In this** know ye the Spirit of God **Elohim**:
 Every spirit that *confesseth* **professeth**
 that *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah** is come in the flesh
 is of God **Elohim**:
 3 And every spirit that *confesseth* **professeth** not
 that *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah** is come in the flesh
 is not of God **Elohim**:
 and this is *that spirit of antichrist* **the antimessiah**,
 whereof ye have heard that it should come;
 and even now already is it in the *world* **cosmos**.

2 Yahn 7

4 Ye are of God **Elohim**, little children,
 and have *overcome* **triumphed over** them:
 because greater is he that is in you,
 than he that is in the *world* **cosmos**.
 5 They are of the *world* **cosmos**:
therefore for this speak they of the *world* **cosmos**,
 and the *world* **cosmos** heareth them.
 6 We are of God **Elohim**:
 he that knoweth God **Elohim** heareth us;
 he that is not of God **Elohim** heareth not us.
Hereby By this know we the spirit of truth,
 and the spirit of *error* **seduction**.

ELOHIM IS LOVE

7 Beloved, let us love one another:
for because love is of God **Elohim**;
 and every one that loveth is *born* **birthed of God** **Elohim**,
 and knoweth God **Elohim**.
 8 He that loveth not
knoweth not God **hath not known Elohim**;
for God **because Elohim** is love.
 9 In this was manifested
 the love of God *toward* **Elohim in us**,
 because that God **Elohim**
sent apostolized his only *begotten* **birthed** Son
 into the *world* **cosmos**,
 that we might live through him.
 10 *Herein In this* is love,
 not that we loved God **Elohim**, but that he loved us,
 and *sent* **apostolized** his Son
to be the propitiation **a kopur/an atonement** for our sins.
 11 Beloved, if God *so* **Elohim thus** loved us,
 we *ought are* **indebted** also to love one another.
 12 No *man* **one** hath *seen* God **observed Elohim**
 at any time — **not ever**.
If Whenever we love one another,
 God *dwelleth* **Elohim abideth** in us,
 and his love is *perfected* **completed/shalamed** in us.

1 YAHN 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and shuts his spleen from him
 — how abides the love of Elohim in him?

18 My little children,
 love — neither in word nor in tongue;
 but in work and in truth.
 19 And in this we know we are of the truth
 and confide our hearts in front of him.
 20 Because whenever our heart condemns us,
 Elohim is greater than our heart and knows all.
 21 Beloved, whenever our heart condemns us not,
 then we have boldness toward Elohim.
 22 And whenever we ask, we take of him:
 because we guard his misvoth
 and do what is pleasing in his sight.
 23 And this is his misvah:
 that we trust the name of his Son Yah Shua Messiah
 and love one another
 — exactly as he gave us misvah.
 24 And whoever guards his misvoth
 abides in him, and he in him.
 And in this we know that he abides in us
 — by the Spirit he gave us.

THE ANTIMESSIAH

4 Beloved, trust not every spirit
 but proof the spirits whether they are of Elohim:
 because many pseudoprophets
 have gone into the cosmos.
 2 In this you know the Spirit of Elohim:
 Every spirit professing
 that Yah Shua Messiah is come in the flesh
 is of Elohim;
 3 and every spirit not professing
 that Yah Shua Messiah is come in the flesh
 is not of Elohim;
 and this is the antimessiah
 whom you heard is to come,
 and even now already is in the cosmos.

2 Yahn 7

4 You are of Elohim, little children
 and triumph over them:
 because greater is he who is in you
 than he who is in the cosmos.
 5 They are of the cosmos:
 because they speak of the cosmos
 and the cosmos hears them.
 6 We are of Elohim:
 whoever knows Elohim hears us;
 whoever is not of Elohim hears us not.
 By this we know the spirit of truth
 and the spirit of seduction.

ELOHIM IS LOVE

7 Beloved, love one another:
 because love is of Elohim;
 and everyone who loves
 is birthed of Elohim and knows Elohim.
 8 Whoever loves not, knows not Elohim;
 because Elohim is love.
 9 In this the love of Elohim manifests in us,
 because Elohim apostolized his only birthed Son
 into the cosmos
 — that we, through him, live.
 In this is the love
 — not that we loved Elohim,
 but that he loved us and apostolized his Son,
 a kopur/an atonement for our sins.
 11 Beloved, if Elohim loved us thus,
 we also are indebted to love one another.
 12 No one ever observed Elohim — not ever.
 Whenever we love one another,
 Elohim abides in us
 and his love is completed/shalamed in us.

1 JOHN 4, 5

exeGes ready research BIBLE

13 Hereby **In this** know we that we *dwell* **abide** in him,
and he in us,
because he hath given us of his Spirit.
14 And we have *seen* **observed** and *do* **testify witness**
that the Father *sent* **apostolized** the Son
 to be the Saviour of the world **cosmos**.
15 Whosoever shall *confess* **profess**
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** is the Son of *God* **Elohim**,
 God dwelleth **Elohim abideth** in him,
and he in *God* **Elohim**.
16 And we have known and *believed* **trusted** the love
that *God* **Elohim** hath *to* **in** us.
 God **Elohim** is love;
and he that *dwelleth* **abideth** in love
 dwelleth **abideth** in *God* **Elohim**, and *God* **Elohim** in him.
17 *Herein* **In this** is our love *made perfect* **completed/shalamed**,
that we may have boldness in the day of judgment:
because **exactly** as he is, so are we in this *world* **cosmos**.
18 There is no *fear* **awe** in love;
but *perfect* love **of completion/shalom** casteth out *fear* **awe**:
because *fear* **awe** hath *torment* **punishment**.
He that *feareth* **aweth**
is not *made perfect* **completed/shalamed** in love.
19 We love him, because he first loved us.
20 *If a man* **Whenever one** say, **Because** I love *God* **Elohim**,
and hateth his brother, he is a liar:
for he that loveth not his brother whom he hath seen,
how can he love *God* **Elohim** whom he hath not seen?
21 And this *commandment* **misvah** have we from him,
That he who loveth *God* **Elohim** love his brother also.

TRIUMPHING OVER THE COSMOS

5 Whosoever *believeth* **trusteth**
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** is the *Christ* **Messiah**
is *born* **birthed** of *God* **Elohim**:
and every one that loveth him that *begat* **birthed**
loveth him also that is *begotten* **birthed** of him.
2 By **In this** we know
that we love the children of *God* **Elohim**,
when we love *God* **Elohim**,
and *keep* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**.
3 For this is the love of *God* **Elohim**,
that we *keep* **guard** his *commandments* **misvoth**:
and his *commandments* **misvoth** are not grievous.
4 For **Because** whatsoever is *born* **birthed** of *God* **Elohim**
 overcometh **triumpheth over** the *world* **cosmos**:
and this is the *victory* **triumph**
that *overcometh* **triumpheth over** the *world* **cosmos**,
even our *faith* **trust**.
5 Who is he
that *overcometh* **triumpheth over** the *world* **cosmos**,
but *except* he that *believeth* **trusteth**
that *Jesus* **Yah Shua** is the Son of *God* **Elohim**?
6 This is he that came by **through** water and blood,
even *Jesus Christ* — **Yah Shua Messiah**;
not by **in** water only, but by **in** water and blood.
And *it is* the Spirit that *beareth witness* **witnesseth**,
because the Spirit is truth.
7 For **Because** there are three
that *bear record* **witness** in *heaven* **the heavens**,
the Father, the Word, and the Holy *Ghost* **Spirit**:
and these three are one.
8 And there are three that *bear witness* in earth,
the Spirit, and the water, and the blood:
and these three **agree are** in one.
9 If we *receive* **take** the witness of *men* **humanity**,
the witness of *God* **Elohim** is greater:
for **because** this is the witness of *God* **Elohim**
which he hath *testified of* **witnessed concerning** his Son.
10 He that *believeth* **trusteth** on the Son of *God* **Elohim**
hath the witness in himself:
he that *believeth* **trusteth** not *God* **Elohim**
hath made him a liar;
because he *believeth* **trusteth** not **in** the *record* **witness**
that *God* gave of **Elohim witnessed concerning** his Son.
11 And this is the *record* **witness**,
that *God* **Elohim** hath given to us eternal life,
and this life is in his Son.
12 He that hath the Son hath life;
and he that hath not the Son of *God* **Elohim** hath not life.

1 YAHN 4, 5

exeGes companion BIBLE

13 In this we know that we abide in him
and he in us:
because he gave us of his Spirit.
14 and we observed and witness
that the Father apostolized the Son
— Saviour of the cosmos.
15 Whoever professes
that Yah Shua is the Son of Elohim,
Elohim abides in him, and he in Elohim.
16 And we
— we know and trust the love Elohim has in us.
Elohim is love;
and whoever abides in love
abides in Elohim — and Elohim in him.
17 In this our love is completed/shalamed,
that we have boldness in the day of judgment:
because exactly as he is, so are we in this cosmos.
18 There is no awe in love;
but love of completion/shalom casts out awe;
because awe has punishment:
whoever awes is not completed/shalamed in love.
19 We love him because he first loved us.
20 Whenever one says, Because I love Elohim!
— and hates his brother, he is a liar:
for whoever loves not his brother whom he sees,
how can he love Elohim whom he sees not?
21 And we have this misvah from him,
whoever loves Elohim also loves his brother.

TRIUMPHING OVER THE COSMOS

5 Whoever trusts that Yah Shua is the Messiah
is birthed of Elohim:
and everyone who loves him who birthed
also loves him whom he birthed.
2 In this we know we love the children of Elohim
— when we love Elohim and guard his misvoth.
3 For this is the love of Elohim:
to guard his misvoth;
and his misvoth are not grievous.
4 Because everyone birthed of Elohim
triumphs over the cosmos:
and this is the triumph that triumphs over the cosmos
— our trust.
5 Who triumphs over the cosmos
— except whoever trusts
that Yah Shua is the Son of Elohim?
6 This is he who came through water and blood
— Yah Shua Messiah;
not in water only, but in water and blood:
and the Spirit witnesses, because the Spirit is truth.
7 Because these three witness in the heavens:
the Father, the Word and the Holy Spirit:
and these three are one.
8 And these three witness in earth:
the Spirit and the water and the blood:
and these three are in one.
9 If we take the witness of humanity,
the witness of Elohim is greater:
because this is the witness of Elohim
which he witnessed concerning his Son.
10 Whoever trusts on the Son of Elohim
has the witness in himself:
whoever trusts not Elohim
makes him a liar;
because he trusts not in the witness
Elohim witnessed concerning his Son.
11 And this is the witness:
that Elohim gives us eternal life
and this life is in his Son.
12 whoever has the Son has life;
and whoever has not the Son of Elohim has not life.

1 JOHN 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

13 These *things* have I written **scribed** unto you
that *believe on* **trust**
in the name of the Son of *God Elohim*;
that ye may know that ye have eternal life,
and that ye may *believe* **trust**
on **in** the name of the Son of *God Elohim*.
14 And this is the *confidence* **boldness**
that we have *in* **toward** him, that,
if — **whatever** we ask *any thing* according to his will,
he heareth us:
15 And *if* **whenever** we know that he hear us,
whatsoever we ask,
we know that we have the *petitions* **requests**
that we *desired* **asked** of him.
16 *If* **Whenever** any *man one*
see his brother sin a sin which is not unto death,
he shall ask,
and he shall give him life
for them that sin not unto death.
There is a sin unto death:
I do not say **word** that he shall *pray* **ask** for it.
17 All *unrighteousness* **injustice** is sin:
and there is a sin not unto death.
18 We know that
whosoever is *born* **birthed** of *God Elohim* sinneth not;
but he that is *begotten* **birthed** of *God Elohim*
keepeth **guardeth** himself,
and that *wicked* **evil** one toucheth him not.
19 And we know that we are of *God Elohim*,
and the whole *world* **cosmos**
lieth in *wickedness* **the evil**.
20 And we know that the Son of *God Elohim* is come,
and hath given us *an understanding* **a mind**,
that we may know him that is true,
and we are in him that is true,
even in his Son *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**.
This is the true *God Elohim*, and eternal life.
21 Little children, *keep* **guard** yourselves from idols.
Amen.

1 YAHN 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

13 I scribe these to you
who trust in the name of the Son of Elohim;
so that you know you have eternal life
and that you trust in the name of the Son of Elohim.
14 And this is the boldness we have toward him
that if — whatever we ask according to his will,
he hears us:
15 and whenever we know that he hears us
— whatever we ask
we know we have the requests we ask of him.
16 Whenever anyone sees his brother sin a sin
not to death,
have him ask;
and he gives him life for them who sin
not to death.
There is a sin to death:
I word not that he ask for it.
17 All injustice is sin:
and there is a sin not to death.
18 We know that everyone is birthed of Elohim
sins not;
but everyone birthed of Elohim
guards himself;
and the evil touches him not.
19 And we know we are of Elohim
and the whole cosmos lies in the evil.
20 And we know the Son of Elohim has come
and gives us a mind to know him who is true:
and we are in him who is true
— in his Son Yah Shua Messiah.
This is the true Elohim and eternal life.
21 Little children:
guard yourselves from idols.
Amen.

2 JOHN

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 The elder unto the *elect* **select** lady* and her children,
whom I love in the truth;

*lady: feminine of adoni

and not I only,
but also all they that have known the truth;
2 For the truth's sake **Because of the truth**,
which *dwelleth* **abideth** in us,
and shall be with us *for ever* **unto the eons**.

3 *Grace* **Charism** shall be with you,
mercy, and *peace* **shalom**,
from *God* **Elohim** the Father,
and from

the Lord Jesus Christ **Adonay Yah Shua Messiah**,
the Son of the Father, in truth and love.

4 I *rejoiced greatly* **cheered extremely**
that I found of thy children walking in truth,
exactly as we have *received* **taken**
a *commandment* **misvah** from the Father.

5 And now I beseech thee, lady,
not as though I *wrote* **scribed**
a new *commandment* **misvah** unto thee,
but that which we had from the beginning,
that we love one another.

6 And this is love,
that we walk after his *commandments* **misvoth**.

This is the *commandment* **misvah**,
That, **exactly** as ye have heard from the beginning,
ye should walk in it.

THE ANTIMESSIAH

7 For **Because** many *deceivers* **seducers**
are entered into the *world* **cosmos**,
who *confess* **profess** not
that *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah** is come in the flesh.

This is a *deceiver* **the seducer**
and an *antichrist* **the antimessiah**.

1 Yahn 2:18, 22, 4:3

8 Look to yourselves,
that we lose not those *things* which we have *wrought* **worked**,
but that we *receive* **take** a full reward.

9 Whosoever transgresseth,
and abideth not in the doctrine of *Christ* **the Messiah**,
hath not *God* **Elohim**.

He that abideth in the doctrine of *Christ* **the Messiah**,
he hath both the Father and the Son.

10 If there come any unto you,
and bring not this doctrine,
receive **take** him not into your house,
neither *bid him* *God speed* **word to him, Cheers!**:

11 For he that *biddeth* **wordeth to him**,
God speed **Cheers!**
is partaker **partaketh** of his evil *deeds* **works**.

FINAL SALUTE

12 Having *many things* **much** to *write* **scribe** unto you,
I *would* **willed** not

write with paper **through sheet** and ink:
but I *trust* **hope** to come unto you,
and speak *face* **mouth to face** **mouth**,

that our *joy* **cheer** may be *full* **fulfilled/shalamed**.

13 The children of thy *elect* **select** sister *greet* **salute** thee.
Amen.

2 YAHN

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 The elder:

To the *select* lady* and her children,
whom I love in the truth:

*lady: feminine of adoni

and not I only,
but also all who know the truth;
2 because of the truth abiding in us
being with us to the eons.

3 Charism, mercy and shalom be with you;
from Elohim the Father
and from Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
the Son of the Father
in truth and love.

4 I cheer extremely
to find *some* of your children walking in truth,
exactly as we took a *misvah* from the Father.

5 And now I beseech you, lady,
not as though I *scribed* a new *misvah* to you,
but what we had from the beginning
— to love one another.

6 And this is love:
to walk after his *misvoth*.
This is the *misvah*,
that exactly as you heard from the beginning
— walk in it.

THE ANTIMESSIAH

7 Because many *seducers* enter the *cosmos*,
who *profess* not
that *Yah Shua Messiah* is come in the flesh.
This is the *seducer* and the *antimessiah*.

1 Yahn 2:18, 22, 4:3

8 Look to yourselves
— that we lose not what we worked
but that we take a full reward.

9 Whoever transgresses
and abides not in the doctrine of the Messiah,
has not Elohim:
whoever abides in the doctrine of the Messiah,
he has both the Father and the Son.

10 If any come to you and bring not this doctrine,
neither take him into your house,
nor word to him, Cheers!:

11 For whoever words him, Cheers!
partakes of his evil works.

FINAL SALUTE

12 Having much to scribe to you,
I will not through sheet and ink:
but I hope to come to you and speak mouth to mouth
to fulfill/shalam our cheer.

13 The children of your *select* sister salute you.
Amen.

3 JOHN

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 The elder unto the *wellbeloved* **beloved** Gaius,
whom I love in the truth.

2 Beloved, I *wish above* **vow concerning** all *things*
that thou mayest prosper and be *in health* **whole**,
even **exactly** as thy soul prospereth.

3 For I *rejoiced greatly* **cheered extremely**,
when the brethren came
and *testified* **witnessed** of the truth that is in thee,
even as thou walkest in the truth.

4 I have no greater *joy* **cheer than these**,
than to hear that my children walk in truth.

BEING TRUSTWORTHY

5 Beloved, thou *doest faithfully* **dealest trustworthily**
whatsoever **whenever** thou *doest* **workest**
to the brethren, and to strangers;

6 Which have *borne witness* **witnessed** of thy *charity* **love**
before **in the sight of** the *church* **ecclesia**:
whom if thou *bring forward on their journey*
after a godly sort **worthily of Elohim**,
thou shalt do well:

7 *Because* **Indeed** that for his name's sake they went *forth*,
taking *nothing* **naught** of the *Gentiles* **goyim**.

8 **So** We *therefore ought* **are indebted to receive** **take** such,
that we might be *fellowhelpers* **become co—workers**
to the truth.

9 I *wrote* **scribed** unto the *church* **ecclesia**:
but Diotrefes,
who *loveth* **befriendeth**
to have the preeminence among them,
receiveth us not.

10 *Wherefore, if* **So whenever** I come,
I *will* **shall** remember his *deeds* **works** which he doeth,
prating **babbling** against us with *malicious* **evil** words:
and not *content therewith* **satisfied by these**,
neither doth he himself receive the brethren,
and forbiddeth them that *would* **will**,
and casteth them out of the *church* **ecclesia**.

11 Beloved, *follow* **mimic** not that which is evil,
but that which is good.
He that doeth good is of *God* **Elohim**:
but he that doeth evil hath not seen *God* **Elohim**.

12 Demetrius *hath good report* **is witnessed** of all *men*,
and of the truth itself:
yea, and we also bear record **witness**;
and ye know that our *record* **witness** is true.

FINAL SALUTE

13 I had *many things* **much** to *write* **scribe**,
but I *will* **shall** not *with* **through** ink and *pen* **reed**
write **scribe** unto thee:

14 But I *trust* **hope** I shall *shortly* **straightway** see thee,
and we shall speak *face* **mouth** to *face* **mouth**.
Peace **Shalom** be to thee. *Our* friends salute thee.
Greet **Salute** the friends by name.

3 YAHN

exeGesés companion BIBLE

SALUTATION

1 The elder:

To the beloved Gaius,
whom I love in the truth:

2 Beloved, I vow concerning all
that you prosper and be whole,
exactly as your soul prospers.

3 For I cheered extremely
when the brothers came
and witnessed of the truth within you;
even as you walk in the truth.

4 I have no greater cheer than these
— than to hear that my children walk in truth.

BEING TRUSTWORTHY

5 Beloved, deal trustworthily
whenever you work to the brothers and to strangers
— who witnessed of your love
in the sight of the ecclesia:
whom, if you forward worthily of Elohim,
you do well:

7 indeed, for sake of his name they went forth
taking naught of the goyim.

8 So we are indebted to take such
to become co—workers to the truth.

9 I scribed to the ecclesia:
but Diotrefes,
who befriends preeminence among them,
receives us not.

10 So, whenever I come,
I remember the works he does,
babbling against us with evil words:
and not satisfied by these
he himself receives not the brothers
and forbids them who so will
— and casts them from the ecclesia.

11 Beloved, mimic not evil, but good.
everyone doing good is of Elohim:
but everyone doing evil has not seen Elohim.

12 Demetrius is witnessed by all,
and of the truth itself:
yes, and we witness;
and you know our witness is true.

FINAL SALUTE

13 I have much to scribe,
but I scribe not to you through ink and reed:
and I hope to see you straightway
and speak mouth to mouth.

Shalom to you.
The friends salute you.
Salute the friends by name.

REVELATION 1

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

1 The Revelation **Apocalypse**
of Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah**,
which God **Elohim** gave unto him,
to shew unto his servants *things those*
which must *shortly come to pass* **quickly become**;
and he *sent* **apostolized** and signified it
by **through** his angel
unto his servant **John Yahn**;
2 Who *bare record* **witnessed** of the word of God **Elohim**,
and of the *testimony* **witness**
of Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah**,
and of all *things* that he saw.

THE FIRST BEATITUDE

3 Blessed is he that readeth,
and they that hear the words of this prophecy,
and *keep* **guard** those *things*
which are *written* **scribed** therein:
for the *time* **season** is at hand **near**.

SALUTATION FROM THE TRIUNE ELOHIM

4 **John Yahn** to the seven *churches* **ecclesiae**
which are in Asia:
Grace be **Charism** unto you, and *peace* **shalom**,
from him
which is, and which was, and which is to come
who is, and who was, and who is coming;
and from the seven Spirits
which are before **in sight of** his throne;
5 And from Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah**,
who is the *faithful* **trustworthy** witness,
and the *first begotten* **firstborn** of the dead,
and the *prince* **arch** of the *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth.
Unto him that loved us,
and *washed* **bathed** us from our sins in his own blood,
6 And hath made us *kings* **sovereigns** and priests
unto God **Elohim** and his Father;
to him be glory and *dominion* **power**
for ever and ever **unto the eons of the eons**.
Amen.

7 Behold, he cometh with clouds;
and every eye shall see him,
and they *also* which pierced him:
and all *kindreds* **scions** of the earth
shall *wail* **chop** because of him.
Even so **Yes**, Amen.

8 *I am Alpha and Omega* **I AM the A and the Ω**,
the beginning and the *ending* **completion/shalom**,
saith the Lord **wordeth Yah Veh**,
which is, and which was, and which is to come
who is, and who was, and who is coming,
the *Almighty* **Sabaoth**.

THE SEVEN SCRIBINGS

9 *I John Yahn*, who also *am* your brother,
and *companion* **co—partaker** in tribulation,
and in the
kingdom **sovereigndom** and *patience* **endurance**
of Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah**,
was **became** in the isle that is called Patmos,
for the word of God **Elohim**,
and for the *testimony* **witness**
of Jesus Christ **Yah Shua Messiah**.
10 I was **became** in the Spirit
on the *Lord's* **in Adonay's** day,
and heard behind me a *great* **mega** voice,
as of a trumpet,
11 *Saying* **Wording**,
I am Alpha and Omega **I AM the A and the Ω**,
the first and the *last* **final**;
and, What thou seest, *write* **scribe** in a book **scroll**,
and send it unto the seven *churches* **ecclesiae**
which are in Asia;
unto Ephesus, and unto Smyrna, and unto Pergamos,
and unto Thyatira, and unto Sardis,
and unto Philadelphia, and unto Laodicea.
12 And I turned to see the voice that spake with me.
And *being turned* **turning**,
13 I saw seven golden *candlesticks* **menorah**;
And in the midst of the seven *candlesticks* **menorah**

APOCALYPSE 1

exeGesés companion BIBLE

PROLOGUE

1 The Apocalypse of Yah Shua Messiah,
that Elohim gave him
to show his servants what must quickly become;
and he apostolized and signified it through his angel
to his servant Yahn:
2 who witnessed of the word of Elohim
and of the witness of Yah Shua Messiah
and of all he saw.

THE FIRST BEATITUDE

3 Blessed — whoever reads
and whoever hears the words of this prophecy
and guard those scribed therein:
for the season is near.

SALUTATION FROM THE TRIUNE ELOHIM

4 Yahn to the seven ecclesiae in Asia:

Charism to you and shalom,
from him who is and who was and who is coming;
and from the seven Spirits in sight of his throne;
5 and from Yah Shua Messiah
the trustworthy witness
and the firstborn from the dead
and the arch of the sovereigns of the earth.

To him who loved us
and bathed us from our sins in his own blood
and made us sovereigns and priests
6 to Elohim and his Father;
to him be glory and power to the eons of the eons.
Amen.

7 Behold, he comes with clouds;
and every eye sees him
and those who pierced him:
and all scions of the earth chop because of him.
Yes, Amen.

8 I AM the A and the Ω,
the beginning and the completion/shalom,
words Yah Veh,
who is and who was and who is coming — Sabaoth.

THE SEVEN SCRIBINGS

9 I Yahn
also your brother and co—partaker in tribulation
and in the sovereigndom
and endurance of Yah Shua Messiah,
became in the isle called Patmos
for the word of Elohim
and for the witness of Yah Shua Messiah.

10 I became in Spirit in the day of Adonay;
and heard behind me a mega voice as of a trumpet,
11 wording,
I AM the A and the Ω — the first and the final:
and,
What you see, scribe in a scroll
and send it to the seven ecclesiae in Asia:
to Ephesus
and to Smyrna
and to Pergamos
and to Thyatira
and to Sardis
and to Philadelphia
and to Laodicea.

12 And I turn to see the voice that speaks with me;
and turning, I see seven golden menorah:
13 and midst the seven menorah;

REVELATION 1, 2

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

one like unto the Son of man **humanity**,
clothed with a garment down **endued** to the foot,
and girt about to the paps **breasts**
with a golden girdle.
14 His head and his hairs were white like as wool,
as white as snow;
and his eyes were as a flame of fire;
15 And his feet like unto fine brass **brilliant copper**,
as if they burned **fired** in a furnace;
and his voice as the sound **voice** of many waters.
16 And he had in his right hand seven stars:
and out of his mouth went **proceeded**
a sharp twoedged sword **double—mouthed sabre**:
and his countenance **visage**
was as the sun **shineth manifesteth** in his strength **dynamis**.
17 And when I saw him, I fell at **toward** his feet as dead.
And he laid **placed** his right hand upon me,
saying **wording** unto me,
Fear **Awe** not; I am **I AM** the first and the last **final**:
I am — he that liveth, and was **became** dead;
and, behold, I am alive for evermore **unto the eons**,
Amen;
and have the keys of **hell Hades/Sheol** and of death.
19 Write the things **Scribe those** which thou hast seen,
and the things **those** which are,
and the things which shall be **those about to become**
hereafter **after these**;
20 The mystery of the seven stars
which thou sawest in at my right hand,
and the seven golden **andlesticks menorah**.
The seven stars
are the angels of the seven **churches ecclesiae**:
and the seven **andlesticks menorah** which thou sawest
are the seven **churches ecclesiae**.

THE FIRST SCRIBING

2 Unto the angel
of the church **ecclesia** of **Ephesus Ephesians**
write **scribe**;
These things saith **wordeth** he
that holdeth **empowereth** the seven stars
in his right hand,
who walketh in the midst
of the seven golden **andlesticks menorah**;
2 I know thy works, and thy labour,
and thy **patience endurance**,
and how **that** thou canst not bear them which are evil:
and thou hast **tried tested** them
which say **they are profess to be** apostles, and are not,
and hast found them **liars pseudos**:
3 And hast borne, and hast **patience endurance**,
and for my name's sake
hast laboured, and hast not **fainted wearied**.
4 Nevertheless **Yet** I have **somewhat** against thee,
because thou hast **left forsaken** thy first love.
5 So Remember **therefore** from whence thou art fallen,
and repent, and do the first works;
or else I will **if not I shall** come unto thee quickly,
and will remove **shall stir** thy **andlestick menorah**
out of his place,
except **unless** thou repent.
6 But this thou hast,
that thou hatest the **deeds works** of the Nicolaitanes,
which I also hate.
7 He that hath an ear,
let him hear what the Spirit **saith wordeth**
unto the **churches ecclesiae**;
To him that **overcometh triumpheth**
will **shall** I give to eat of the tree **staff** of life,
which is in the midst of the paradise of **God Elohim**.

THE SECOND SCRIBING

8 And unto the angel
of the church in **Smyrna ecclesia** of **Smyrnians**
write **scribe**;
These things saith **wordeth** the first and the last **final**,
which was **became** dead, and is alive;
9 I know thy works, and tribulation, and poverty,
(but thou art rich)

APOCALYPSE 1, 2

exeGeses companion BIBLE

one like to the Son of humanity
endued to the foot
and girt to the breasts with a golden girdle:
14 his head and hairs
— white as wool — as white as snow;
and his eyes as a flame of fire;
15 and his feet like brilliant copper fired in a furnace;
and his voice as the voice of many waters.
16 And having seven stars in his right hand:
and a sharp double—mouthed sabre
proceeding from his mouth:
and his visage manifests as the sun in its dynamis.
17 And when I see him, I fall toward his feet as dead.
And he places his right hand on me,
wording to me,
Awe not — I AM the first and the final:
— the living who became dead;
and behold, I am alive to the eons;
Amen:
and have the keys of Hades/Sheol and of death.
19 Scribe those you saw
and those being
and those to become after these.
20 The mystery of the seven stars
you see at my right
and the seven golden menorah:
The seven stars are the angels of the seven ecclesiae:
and the seven menorah you see
are the seven ecclesiae.

THE FIRST SCRIBING

2 To the angel of the ecclesia of Ephesians,
scribe:
Thus words he
who empowers the seven stars in his right;
who walks midst the seven golden menorah:
2 I know your works
and your labor and your endurance;
and that you can not bear them who are evil:
and you tested them who profess to be apostles
and are not;
and found them to be pseudos:
and bear and have endurance;
and for sake of my name, labor and weary not.
4 Yet I have against you
because you forsook your first love.
5 So remember whence you fell
and repent and do the first works;
and if not, I come to you quickly
and stir your menorah from its place
unless you repent.
6 But this you have:
you hate the works of the Nicolaitanes,
which I also hate.
7 Whoever has an ear,
hear what the Spirit words to the ecclesiae:
Whoever triumphs
I give to eat of the staff of life
midst the paradise of Elohim.

THE SECOND SCRIBING

8 And to the angel of the ecclesia of Smyrnians,
scribe:
Thus words the first and the final
who became dead and lives:
9 I know your works and tribulation and poverty
— but you are rich;

REVELATION 2

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

and I know the blasphemy of them
which say they **word themselves**
are Jews **to be Yah Hudiym**,
and are not, but are the synagogue of Satan.
10 Fear **Awe** none of those things
which thou shalt **art about to** suffer: behold,
the devil shall **Diabolos is about to** cast some of you
into prison **the guardhouse**,
that ye may be **tried tested**;
and ye shall have tribulation ten days:
be thou **faithful trustworthy** unto death,
and I will **shall** give thee a **crown wreath** of life.
11 He that hath an ear,
let him hear what the Spirit saith **wordeth**
unto the churches **ecclesiae**;
He that **overcometh triumpheth**
shall not **no way** be **hurt injured** of the second death.
THE THIRD SCRIBING

12 And to the angel
of the church **ecclesia** in Pergamos
write **scribe**;
These things saith **wordeth** he
which hath the sharp
sword with two edges **double—mouthed sabre**;
13 I know thy works, and where thou **dweldest settlest**,
even where Satan's seat **throne** is:
and thou **holdest fast empowerest** my name,
and hast not denied my **faith trust**,
even in those days wherein Antipas
was my **faithful martyr trustworthy witness**,
who was **slain slaughtered** among you,
where Satan **dwelleth settleth**.
14 But I have a few things against thee,
because thou hast there
them that **hold empower** the doctrine of **Balaam Bilam**,
who **taught Balac doctrinated in Balaq**
to cast a **stumblingblock scandal**
before in the sight of the children **sons of Israel Yisra El**,
to eat things **sacrificed unto idols idol sacrifices**,
and to **commit fornication whore**.
15 So **Thus** hast thou also them
that **hold empower** the doctrine of the Nicolaitanes,
which thing I hate.
16 Repent;
or else I will **if not I shall** come unto thee quickly,
and will **fight against shall war with** them
with **in** the sword **sabre** of my mouth.
17 He that hath an ear,
let him hear what the Spirit saith **wordeth**
unto the churches **ecclesiae**;
To him that **overcometh triumpheth**
will **shall** I give to eat of the **hidden secreted** manna,
and will **shall** give him a white **stone pebble**,
and in the **stone pebble** a new name **written scribed**,
which no man **one** knoweth
saving **except** he that **receiveth taketh** it.
THE FOURTH SCRIBING

18 And unto the angel
of the church **ecclesia** in Thyatira
write **scribe**;
These things saith **wordeth** the Son of God **Elohim**,
who hath his eyes **like unto as** a flame of fire,
and his feet **are like fine brass as brilliant copper**;
19 I know thy works, and **charity love**,
and **service ministry**, and **faith trust**,
and thy **patience endurance**, and thy works;
and the **last to be final** more than the first.
20 **Notwithstanding Still** I have a few things against thee,
because thou **sufferest allowest**
that woman **Jezebel ly Zebel**,
which **calleth wordeth** herself a prophetess,
to **teach doctrinate** and to seduce my servants
to **commit fornication whore**,
and to eat things **sacrificed unto idols idol sacrifices**.
21 And I gave her **space time** to repent
of her **fornication whoredom**;
and she repented not.
22 Behold, I will **shall** cast her into a bed,
and them that **commit adultery adulterize** with her

APOCALYPSE 2

exeGesés companion BIBLE

and the blasphemy of them
who word themselves to be Yah Hudiym
and are naught but the synagogue of Satan.
10 Awe none of those you are about to suffer:
behold,
Diabolos is about to cast you in the guardhouse,
to test;
and you have tribulation ten days:
become trustworthy to death
and I give you a wreath of life.
11 Whoever has an ear,
hear what the Spirit words to the ecclesiae:
Whoever triumphs
is never no way injured of the second death.
THE THIRD SCRIBING

12 And to the angel of the ecclesia in Pergamos,
scribe:
Thus words he
who has the sharp double—mouthed sabre:
13 I know your works and where you settle
— where the throne of Satan is:
and you empower my name
and deny not my trust
— even in those days wherein Antipas
my trustworthy witness was slaughtered among you
— where Satan settles.
14 But I have a few against you,
because you have them
who empower the doctrine of Bilam,
who doctrinated in Balaq
to cast a scandal in the sight of the sons of Yisra El;
to eat idol sacrifices and to whore.
15 Thus you also have them
who empower the doctrine of the Nicolaitanes
— which I hate.
16 Repent:
if not I come to you quickly
and war with them in the sabre of my mouth.
17 Whoever has an ear,
hear what the Spirit words to the ecclesiae:
Whoever triumphs
I give to eat of the secreted manna;
and give him a white pebble;
and in the pebble scribe a new name
that no one knows except whoever takes it.

THE FOURTH SCRIBING

18 And to the angel of the ecclesia in Thyatira,
scribe:
Thus words the Son of Elohim
who has his eyes as a flame of fire
and his feet as brilliant copper:
19 I know your works and love and ministry and trust
and your endurance and your works:
and the final more than the first.
20 Still, I have a few against you,
because you allow that woman ly Zebel,
who words herself, Prophetess,
to doctrinate and to seduce my servants
to whore and to eat idol sacrifices:
21 and I gave her time to repent of her whoredom
and she repented not.
22 Behold, I cast her into a bed
and whoever adulterizes with her

REVELATION 2, 3

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

23 into great tribulation,
except **unless** they repent of their *deeds* **works**.
And I *will kill shall slaughter* her children
with **in** death;
and all the *churches* **ecclesiae** shall know
that *I am he* **I AM**:
which searcheth the reins and hearts:
and I *will shall* give unto *every one* **each** of you
according to your works.
24 But unto you I say **word**, and unto the rest in Thyatira,
as many as have not this doctrine,
and which have not known the depths of Satan,
as they *speak* **word**;
I *will shall* put upon you none other burden.
25 But that which ye have *already*
26 *hold fast* **empower** till **ever** I come.
And he that *overcometh* **triumpheth**,
and *keepeth* **guardeth** my works
unto the *end* **completion/shalom**,
to him
27 *will shall* I give *power* **authority** over the *nations* **goyim**:
And he shall *rule* **shepherd** them
with **in** a *rod* **scion** of iron;
as the vessels of a potter
shall they be *broken to shivers* **shattered**:
even as I *received* **also have taken** of my Father.
28 And I *will shall* give him the morning star.
29 He that hath an ear,
let him hear what the Spirit *saith* **wordeth**
unto the *churches* **ecclesiae**.

THE FIFTH SCRIBING

3 And unto the angel
of the *church* **ecclesia** in Sardis *write* **scribe**;
These *things* *saith* **wordeth** he
that hath the seven Spirits of *God* **Elohim**,
and the seven stars;
I know thy works,
that thou hast a name that thou livest, and art dead.
2 Be watchful,
and *strengthen* **establish** the *things* which remain **rest**,
that are *ready* **about** to die:
for I have not found thy works *perfect* **fulfilled/shalamed**
before *God* **in the sight of Elohim**.
3 **So** Remember *therefore*
how thou hast *received* **taken** and heard,
and *hold fast* **guard**, and repent.
if therefore **So whenever** thou shalt not watch,
I *will shall* come on thee as a thief,
and thou shalt not **no way** know
what hour I *will shall* come upon thee.
4 Thou hast a few names even in Sardis
which have not *defiled* **stained** their garments;
and they shall walk with me in white:
for **because** they are worthy.
5 He that *overcometh* **triumpheth**,
the same shall be *clothed* **arrayed**
in white *raiment* **garments**;
and I *will shall* not **no way**
blot out **erase** his name
out of the *book* **scroll** of life,
but I *will shall* confess his name *before* **in sight of** my Father,
and *before* **in sight of** his angels.
6 He that hath an ear,
let him hear what the Spirit *saith* **wordeth**
unto the *churches* **ecclesiae**.

THE SIXTH SCRIBING

7 And to the angel
of the *church* **ecclesia** in Philadelphia *write* **scribe**;
These *things* *saith* *he that is* **wordeth the** *holy*,
he that is the **true**, *he that hath* the key of David,
he that openeth, and no *man* **one** shutteth;
and shutteth, and no *man* **one** openeth;
8 I know thy works: behold,
I have *set before thee* **given in thy sight**
an open *door* **portal**,
and no *man* **one** can shut it:
for **because** thou hast a little *strength* **dynamis**,
and hast *kept* **guarded** my word,
and hast not denied my name.

APOCALYPSE 2, 3

exeGesés companion BIBLE

into great tribulation
— unless they repent of their works:
and I slaughter her children in death:
so that all the *ecclesiae* knows that I AM:
who searches the reins and hearts:
and I give to each of you according to your works.
23
24 But I word to you and to the rest in Thyatira
— as many as hold not this doctrine
and who know not the depths of Satan,
as they word:
I put no other burden upon you.
25 But empower what you have till ever I come.
26 And whoever triumphs
and guards my works to the completion/shalom,
I give him authority over the goyim:
27 and he shepherds them in a scion of iron,
to shatter as the vessels of a potter:
even as I also took from my Father:
and I give him the morning star.
28
29 Whoever has an ear,
hear what the Spirit words to the *ecclesiae*.

THE FIFTH SCRIBING

3 And to the angel of the *ecclesia* in Sardis,
scribe:
Thus words he
who has the seven Spirits of Elohim
and the seven stars:
I know your works
— that you have a name that you live, and are dead.
2 Be watchful
and establish the rest who are about to die:
for I have not found your works fulfilled/shalamed
in the sight of Elohim.
3 So remember how you took and heard:
and guard and repent:
so whenever you watch not
I come upon you as a thief;
and you never no way know
what hour I come upon you.
4 You have a few names — even in Sardis
who stained not their garments:
and they walk with me in white
because they are worthy.
5 Whoever triumphs arrays in white garments:
and I never no way
erase his name from the scroll of life,
and I confess his name in sight of my Father
and in sight of his angels.
6 Whoever has an ear,
hear what the Spirit words to the *ecclesiae*.

THE SIXTH SCRIBING

7 And to the angel of the *ecclesia* in Philadelphia,
scribe:
Thus words the holy, the true,
who has the key of David:
who opens and no one shuts
and shuts and no one opens:
8 I know your works: behold,
I give an open portal in your sight
and no one can shut it:
because you have a little dynamis
and guard my word
and deny not my name.

REVELATION 3, 4

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

9 Behold,
I will make **shall give** them of the synagogue of Satan,
which say they **word themselves**
are Jews **to be Yah Hudiym**,
and are not, but *do lie*;
behold, I will **shall** make them to come and worship
before **in sight of** thy feet,
and to know that I have loved thee.
10 Because
thou hast *kept* **guarded** the word of my patience,
I also will *keep* **shall guard** thee
from the hour of *temptation* **testing**,
which shall **about to** come upon all the world,
to *try* **test** them that *dwell* **settle** upon the earth.
11 Behold, I come quickly:
hold **empower** that *fast* which thou hast,
that no *man* **one** take thy *crown* **wreath**.
12 Him that *overcometh* **triumpheth**
will **shall** I make a pillar
in the *temple* **nave** of my *God* **Elohim**,
and he shall *go no more* **not no way still go** out:
and I will *write* **shall scribe** upon him
the name of my *God* **Elohim**,
and the name of the city of my *God* **Elohim**,
which is **the new Jerusalem Yeru Shalem**,
which *cometh down* **descendeth** out of *heaven* **the heavens**
from my *God* **Elohim**:
and I will *write upon him* my new name.
13 He that hath an ear,
let him hear what the Spirit *saith* **wordeth**
unto the *churches* **ecclesiae**.
14 **THE SEVENTH SCRIBING**
And unto the angel
of the *church* **ecclesia** of the Laodiceans
write **scribe**;
These *things* *saith* **wordeth** the Amen,
the *faithful* **trustworthy** and true witness,
the beginning of the creation of *God* **Elohim**;
15 I know thy works, that thou art neither cold nor hot:
I would **O that** thou wert cold or hot.
16 So then because thou art lukewarm,
and neither cold nor hot,
I will *spue* **am about to vomit** thee out of my mouth.
17 Because thou *sayest* **wordest**,
Because I am rich,
and *increased with goods* **enriched**,
and have need of *nothing* **naught**;
and knowest not that thou art *wretched* **miserable**,
and *miserable* **least mercied**,
and poor, and blind, and naked:
18 I counsel thee to *buy* **market** of me
gold *tried in* **fired by** the fire,
that thou mayest be *rich* **enriched**;
and white *raiment* **garments**,
that thou mayest be *clothed* **arrayed**,
and that the shame of thy nakedness
do not appear **be manifested**;
and anoint thine eyes with *eyesalve* **poultice**,
that thou mayest see.
19 As many as **ever** I love **befriend**,
I *rebuke* **reprove** and *chasten* **discipline**:
be zealous therefore, and repent.
20 Behold, I stand at the *door* **portal**, and knock:
if **whenever** any *man* **one** hear my voice,
and open the *door* **portal**,
I will **shall** come in to him,
and will **shall** sup with him, and he with me.
21 To him that *overcometh* **triumpheth**
will **shall** I *grant* **give** to sit with me in my throne,
even as I also *overcame* **triumphed**,
and am *set down* **seated** with my Father in his throne.
22 He that hath an ear,
let him hear what the Spirit *saith* **wordeth**
unto the *churches* **ecclesiae**.

IN SPIRIT, IN THE HEAVENS

4 After *this* I looked **these I perceived**, and, behold,
a *door* was **portal** opened in *heaven* **the heavens**:
and the first voice which I heard
was as *it were* of a trumpet *talking* **speaking** with me;

APOCALYPSE 3, 4

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 Behold, I give them of the synagogue of Satan,
who word themselves to be Yah Hudiym
and are not, but lie:
behold,
I have them come and worship in sight of your feet
so that they know I loved you.
10 Because you guarded the word of my patience
I also guard you from the hour of testing
— about to come on all the world
to test them who settle on the earth.
11 Behold, I come quickly:
empower what you have
so no one takes your wreath.
12 Whoever triumphs
I make a pillar in the nave of my Elohim;
and he never no way still goes out:
and I scribe on him the name of my Elohim
and the name of the city of my Elohim
— the new Yeru Shalem
descending from the heavens from my Elohim
and my new name.
13 Whoever has an ear,
hear what the Spirit words to the ecclesiae.
14 **THE SEVENTH SCRIBING**
And to the angel of the ecclesia of the Laodiceans,
scribe:
These words the Amen,
the trustworthy and true witness,
the beginning of the creation of Elohim:
15 I know your works
— that you are neither cold nor hot:
O that you were cold or hot.
16 So because you are lukewarm
and neither cold nor hot,
I am about to vomit you from my mouth:
because you word,
Because I am rich and enriched and need naught!
— and know not that you are miserable
and least mercied and poor and blind and naked:
18 I counsel you to market of me gold fired by the fire
to enrich you:
and white garments to array you
so that you not manifest
the shame of your nakedness:
and anoint your eyes with poultice
so that you see.
19 As many as ever I befriend
I reprove and discipline:
so be zealous and repent.
20 Behold, I stand at the portal and knock:
whenever anyone hears my voice
and opens the portal,
I come in to him and sup with him
— and he with me.
21 Whoever triumphs,
I give to sit with me in my throne;
even as I also triumphed
and sit with my Father in his throne.
22 Whoever has an ear,
hear what the Spirit words to the ecclesiae.

IN SPIRIT, IN THE HEAVENS

4 After these I perceive, and behold,
an opened portal in the heavens:
and the first voice I hear
is as a trumpet speaking with me;

REVELATION 4, 5

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

which said **wording**, Come up **Ascend** hither,
and I will **shall** shew thee *things*

those which must be *hereafter* **after these***.

*some mss place **after these** at the beginning of verse 2

2 And **after these*** *immediately* **straightway**
I was in the **became in** spirit: and, behold,
a throne was set in *heaven* **the heavens**,
and one sat on the throne.

3 And he that sat was *to look upon* **in vision**
like a jasper and a *sardine* **sardius** stone:
and there was a rainbow
round about **surrounding** the throne,
in *sight* **vision** like unto an emerald.

4 And *round about* **surrounding** the throne
were four and twenty *seats* **thrones**:
and upon the *seats* **thrones**
I saw four and twenty elders sitting,
clothed **arrayed** in white *raiment* **garments**;
and they had on their heads *crowns* **wreaths** of gold.

5 And out of the throne
proceeded lightnings and thunders and voices:
and *there were* seven lamps of fire
burning *before* **in sight of** the throne,
which are the seven Spirits of *God* **Elohim**.

6 And *before* **in sight of** the throne
there was a sea of glass like *unto crystal* **crystalline**:
and in the midst of the throne,
and *round about* **surrounding** the throne,
were four *beasts* **live beings** full of eyes
before **in front** and *behind* **in back**.

7 And the first *beast* **live being** was like a lion,
and the second *beast* **live being** like a calf,
and the third *beast* **live being**
had a face as a *man* **human**,

8 and the fourth *beast* **live being** was like a flying eagle.
And the four *beasts* **had live beings were**
each of them **surrounded with** six wings *about* him;
and they were full of eyes within:
and they **have no** rest *not* day and night,
saying **wording**, Holy, holy, holy,
Lord God Almighty **Yah Veh El Sabaoth**,
which was, and is, and is to come
who was, and who is, and who is coming.

Yesha Yah 6:3

9 And when those *beasts* **live beings**
give glory and honour and *thanks* **eucharist**
to him that sat on the throne,
who liveth *for ever and ever* **unto the eons of the eons**,
The four and twenty elders shall fall *down*
before **in sight of** him that sat on the throne,
and worship him that liveth
for ever and ever **unto the eons of the eons**,
and cast their *crowns* **before wreaths in sight of** the throne,
saying **wording**,

11 Thou art worthy, O *Lord* **Yah Veh**,
to receive **take** glory and honour and *power* **dynamis**:
for **because** thou hast created all *things*,
and for thy *pleasure* **will** they are and were created.

THE SEVEN SEALED SCROLL

5 And I saw *in on* the right *hand* of him
that sat on the throne
a *book written* **scroll scribed** within
and on the *backside* **in back**,
sealed with seven seals.

2 And I saw a strong angel
proclaiming **preaching** with a *loud* **mega** voice,
Who is worthy to open the *book* **scroll**,
and to loose the seals thereof?

3 And no *man* **one** in *heaven* **the heavens**,
nor in earth, neither under the earth,
was able to open the *book* **scroll**, neither to look thereon.

4 And I wept much,
because no *man* **one** was found worthy
to open and to read the *book* **scroll**,
neither to look thereon.

5 And one of the elders *saith* **wordeth** unto me,
Weep not:
behold, the Lion

APOCALYPSE 4, 5

exeGesés companion BIBLE

wording, Ascend hither,
and I show you

what must be after these*.

*some mss place after these at the beginning of verse 2

2 And after these* *straightway* I became in spirit:
and behold,
a throne set in the heavens
and one sitting on the throne:
and he sitting

3 is in vision like stone — a jasper and a sardius:
and a rainbow surrounds the throne
in vision like an emerald.

4 And surrounding the throne,
twenty—four thrones:
and on the thrones I see twenty—four elders sitting
— arrayed in white garments;
and wreaths of gold on their heads:
and from the throne

5 proceed lightnings and thunders and voices:
and seven lamps of fire
burning in sight of the throne
— which are the seven Spirits of Elohim:
and in sight of the throne
a sea of glass like crystalline:
and midst the throne and surrounding the throne,
four live beings full of eyes in front and in back.

7 And the first live being, like a lion;
and the second live being, like a calf;
and the third live being has a human face;
and the fourth live being, like a flying eagle.

8 And the four live beings
are each surrounded with six wings
and full of eyes within:
and they have no rest day and night,
wording, Holy, holy, holy, Yah Veh El Sabaoth,
who was and who is and who is coming.

Yesha Yah 6:3

9 And when the live beings
give glory and honor and eucharist
to him sitting on the throne
who lives to the eons of the eons,
the twenty—four elders fall
in sight of him sitting on the throne,
and worship him who lives to the eons of the eons
and cast their wreaths in sight of the throne,
wording,

11 You are worthy, O Yah Veh,
to take glory and honor and dynamis:
because you created all
and for your will they are and were created.

THE SEVEN SEALED SCROLL

5 And at the right of him sitting on the throne
I see a scroll scribed inside and backside
sealed with seven seals.

2 And I see a strong angel preaching with a mega voice,
Who is worthy to open the scroll
and to loose the seals thereof?

3 — and no one is able
neither in the heavens,
nor in earth,
nor under the earth,
to open the scroll,
nor to look thereon.

4 And I weep much,
because no one is found worthy
to open and to read the scroll
nor to look thereon.

5 And one of the elders words to me,
Weep not:
behold, the Lion,

REVELATION 5, 6

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

being of the *tribe scion* of **Juda Yah Hudah**,
the Root of David,
hath *prevailed triumphed* to open the *book scroll*,
and to loose the seven seals thereof.
6 And I *beheld perceived*, and, *lo behold*,
in the midst of the throne
and of the four *beasts live beings*,
and in the midst of the elders,
stood a Lamb **standing**
as *it had having* been *slain slaughtered*,
having seven horns and seven eyes,
which are the seven Spirits of *God Elohim*
sent forth apostolized into all the earth.
7 And he came and took the *book scroll*
out of the right *hand* of him that sat upon the throne.
8 And when he had taken the *book scroll*,
the four *beasts live beings* and four and twenty elders
fell *down before* **in sight of** the Lamb,
having every one **each** of them *harps cithers*,
and golden *vials phials* full of *odours incense*,
which are the prayers of *saints the holy*.
9 And they sung a new *song ode*, saying **wording**,
Thou art worthy to take the *book scroll*,
and to open the seals thereof:
for because thou wast *slain slaughtered*,
and hast *redeemed marketed* us to *God Elohim*
by thy blood
out of every *kindred scion*, and tongue,
and people, and *nation goyim*;
10 And hast made us unto our *God Elohim*
kings sovereigns and priests:
and we shall reign on the earth.
11 And I *beheld perceived*,
and I heard the voice of many angels
round about surrounding the throne
and the *beasts live beings* and the elders:
and the number of them was
ten thousand myriads times *ten thousand myriads*,
and thousands of thousands;
12 Saying **Wording** with a *loud mega* voice,
Worthy is the Lamb that was *slain slaughtered*
to receive *power take dynamis*, and riches, and wisdom,
and *strength* might, and honour,
and glory, and *blessing eulogy*.
13 And every creature *which is in heaven the heavens*,
and *on in* the earth, and under the earth,
and *such as are in upon* the sea,
and all *that are in them*,
heard I saying **wording**,
Blessing Eulogy, and honour, and glory, and power,
be unto him that sitteth upon the throne,
and unto the Lamb
for ever and ever unto the eons of the eons.
14 And the four *beasts said live beings worded*,
Amen.
And the four and twenty elders
fell *down* and worshipped him that liveth
for ever and ever unto the eons of the eons.

THE FIRST SEAL

6 And I saw when the Lamb opened one of the seals,
and I heard, as *it were* the *noise voice* of thunder,
one of the four *beasts saying live beings wording*,
Come and see.
2 And I saw, and behold a white horse:
and he that sat on him had a bow;
and a *crown wreath* was given unto him:
and he went forth *conquering triumphing*,
and to *conquer triumph*.
3 And when he had opened the second seal,
I heard the second *beast say live being wording*,
Come and see.
4 And there went out another horse *that was red* — **fiery**:
and *power* was given to him that sat thereon
to take *peace shalom* from the earth,
and that they should *kill slaughter* one another:
and there was given unto him a *great mega* sword.

THE SECOND SEAL

APOCALYPSE 5, 6

exeGeses companion BIBLE

being of the scion of Yah Hudah, the Root of David,
triumphed to open the scroll
and to loose the seven seals thereof.
6 And I perceive, and behold,
midst the throne and the four live beings
and midst the elders
— a Lamb standing — as having been slaughtered
— having seven horns and seven eyes
which are the seven Spirits of Elohim
apostolized into all the earth.
7 And he comes and takes the scroll
from the right of him sitting upon the throne.
8 And when he takes the scroll,
the four live beings and twenty—four elders
fall in sight of the Lamb,
each of them having cithers
and golden phials full of incense
which are the prayers of the holy;
9 and they sing a new ode, wording,
You are worthy to take the scroll
and to open the seals thereof:
because you were slaughtered
and marketed us to Elohim by your blood
from every scion and tongue and people and goyim;
10 and made us sovereigns and priests to our Elohim
to reign on the earth.
11 And I perceive and I hear
the voice of many angels surrounding the throne
and the live beings and the elders:
and their number is myriads times myriads
and thousands of thousands;
12 wording with a mega voice,
Worthy is the Lamb who was slaughtered
to take dynamis and riches and wisdom
and might and honor and glory and eulogy.
13 And I hear every creature in the heavens
and in the earth and under the earth
and on the sea and all therein,
wording, Eulogy and honor and glory and power,
to him sitting upon the throne
and to the Lamb to the eons of the eons.
14 And the four live beings word, Amen!
And the twenty—four elders fall
and worship him who lives to the eons of the eons.

THE FIRST SEAL

6 And I see when the Lamb opens one of the seals
and I hear, as the voice of thunder,
one of the four live beings wording,
Come and see.

2 And I see, and behold, a white horse:
and he sitting on him has a bow;
and he is given a wreath:
and he goes triumphing and to triumph.

THE SECOND SEAL

3 And when he opens the second seal,
I hear the second live being wording,
Come and see.

4 And another horse goes — fiery:
and he sitting thereon
is given to take shalom from the earth;
and that they slaughter one another:
and he is given a mega sword.

REVELATION 6

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE THIRD SEAL

5 And when he had opened the third seal,
I heard the third *beast* say **live being wording**,
Come and see.
And I *beheld* **perceived**, and *lo* **behold** a black horse;
and he that sat on him
had a *pair of balances* **yoke** in his hand.
6 And I heard a voice
in the midst of the four *beasts* say **live beings wording**,
A *measure* **choenix** of *wheat* **grain**
for a *penny* **denarion**,
and three *measures* **choinixes** of barley
for a *penny* **denarion**;
and see thou *hurt* **injure** not the *olive* oil and the wine.

THE FOURTH SEAL

7 And when he had opened the fourth seal,
I heard the voice of the fourth *beast* **live being**
say **wording**,
Come and see.
8 And I *looked* **perceived**, and behold a *pale* **green** horse:
and his name that sat on him was Death,
and *Hell* **Hades/Sheol** followed with him.
And *power* **authority** was given unto them
over the fourth *part* of the earth,
to *kill with sword* **slaughter in sabre**,
and *with hunger* **in famine**,
and *with* **in** death, and *with* **by** the beasts of the earth.

THE FIFTH SEAL

9 And when he had opened the fifth seal,
I saw under the *sacrifice* altar the souls of them
that were *slain* **slaughtered** for the word of *God* **Elohim**,
and for the *testimony* **witness** which they held:
10 And they cried with a *loud* **mega** voice,
saying **wording**,
How long **Until when**, O *Lord* **Despotes**,
the holy and **the** true,
dost thou not judge and avenge our blood
on **from** them that *dwelt* **settle** on the earth?
11 And white *robes* **stoles**
were given unto *every one* **each** of them;
and it was *said* **rhethorized** unto them,
that they should rest yet for a little *season* **time**,
until their *fellowservants* **co—servants** also
and their brethren,
that should be killed **about to be slaughtered**
as they were,
should be fulfilled/**shalamed**.

THE SIXTH SEAL

12 And I *beheld* **perceived**
when he had opened the sixth seal,
and, *lo* **behold**,
there was a *great earthquake* **became a mega quake**;
and the sun became black as *sackcloth* **saq** of hair,
and the moon became as blood;
13 And the stars of *heaven* **the heavens** fell unto the earth,
even as a fig tree casteth her *untimely figs* **unripened**,
when she is *shaken* **quaked** of a *mighty* **mega** wind.
14 And the *heaven* **departed** **heavens separated**
as a scroll when it is *rolled together* **coiled**;
and every mountain and island
were *moved* **stirred** out of their places.
15 And the *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth,
and the *great men* **magistrates**, and the rich *men*,
and the *chief captains* **chiliarchs**,
and the *mighty men* **able**,
and every *bondman* **servant**,
and every *free man* **liberated**,
hid **secreted** themselves in the *dens* **grottos**
and in the rocks of the mountains;
16 And *said* **worded** to the mountains and rocks,
Fall on us,
and *hide* **secrete** us
from the face of him that sitteth on the throne,
and from the wrath of the Lamb:
17 For **Because** the *great* **mega** day of his wrath is come;
and who shall be able to stand?

APOCALYPSE 6

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE THIRD SEAL

5 And when he opens the third seal,
I hear the third live being wording,
Come and see.
And I perceive, and behold, a black horse;
and he sitting on him has a yoke in his hand.
6 And I hear a voice midst the four live beings,
wording,
A choenix of grain for a denarion
and three choinixes of barley for a denarion;
and injure not the olive oil and the wine.

THE FOURTH SEAL

7 And when he opens the fourth seal,
I hear the voice of the fourth live being
wording,
Come and see.
8 And I perceive, and behold, a green horse:
and he sitting on him — his name is Death
and Hades/Sheol follows with him.
And they are given authority
over the fourth of the earth
to slaughter in sabre and in famine and in death
and by the beasts of the earth.

THE FIFTH SEAL

9 And when he opens the fifth seal,
I see under the sacrifice altar
the souls of them slaughtered for the word of Elohim
and for the witness they held.
10 And they cry with a mega voice, wording,
Until when, O Despotes, the holy and the true,
judge you not, and avenge our blood
from them who settle on the earth?
11 And each of them is given white stoles;
and they are rhetorized to rest yet for a little time,
until their co—servants and their brothers
about to be slaughtered as they,
also be fulfilled/shalamed.

THE SIXTH SEAL

12 And I perceive, when he opens the sixth seal;
and behold, a mega quake becomes;
and the sun becomes black as saq of hair
and the moon becomes as blood;
13 and the stars of the heavens fall to the earth,
even as a fig tree casts her unripened
when quaked by a mega wind:
14 and the heavens separate
as a scroll when it is coiled;
and every mountain and island
stirs from their places.
15 And the sovereigns of the earth
and the magistrates and the rich
and the chiliarchs and the able
and all the servants and all the liberated
secrete themselves in the grottos
and in the rocks of the mountains:
16 and word to the mountains and rocks,
Fall on us and secrete us
from the face of him sitting on the throne
and from the wrath of the Lamb:
17 because the mega day of his wrath is come;
and who is able to stand?

REVELATION 7

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

ONE HUNDRED FORTY—FOUR THOUSAND SEALED

7 And after these *things* I saw four angels
standing on the four corners of the earth,
holding overpowering the four winds of the earth,
that the wind should not *blow puff* on the earth,
nor on the sea, nor on any tree.

2 And I saw another angel
ascending from the *east rising of the sun*,
having the seal of the living *God Elohim*:
and he cried with a *loud mega* voice to the four angels,
to whom it was given to *hurt injure* the earth and the sea,

3 *Saying Wording, Hurt injure* not the earth,
neither the sea, nor the trees,
till we have sealed the servants of our *God Elohim*
in their foreheads.

4 And I heard the number of *them which were sealed*:
and there were — sealed
an hundred *and forty and* four thousand
of all the *tribes scions*
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*.
Of the *tribe scion of Juda Yah Hudah*
were sealed twelve thousand.
Of the *tribe scion of Reuben Reu Ben*
were sealed twelve thousand.
Of the *tribe scion of Gad*
were sealed twelve thousand.

6 Of the *tribe scion of Aser Asher*
were sealed twelve thousand.
Of the *tribe scion of Nephthali Naphtali*
were sealed twelve thousand.
Of the *tribe scion of Manasses Menash Sheh*
were sealed twelve thousand.

7 Of the *tribe scion of Simeon Shimon*
were sealed twelve thousand.
Of the *tribe scion of Levi*
were sealed twelve thousand.
Of the *tribe scion of Issachar Yissachar*
were sealed twelve thousand.

8 Of the *tribe scion of Zabulon Zebulun*
were sealed twelve thousand.
Of the *tribe scion of Joseph Yoseph*
were sealed twelve thousand.
Of the *tribe scion of Benjamin Ben Yamin*
were sealed twelve thousand.

THE MULTITUDE FROM MEGA TRIBULATION

9 After *this these* I *beheld perceived*, and, *lo behold*,
a *great vast* multitude, which no *man one* could number,
of all *nations goyim*, and *kindreds scions*,
and *people peoples*, and *tongues*,
stood before standing in sight of the throne,
and *before in sight of* the Lamb,
clothed arrayed with white *robes stoles*,
and *palms phoinix* in their hands;

10 And cried with a *loud mega* voice, *saying wording*,
Salvation to our *God Elohim*
which sitteth upon the throne,
and unto the Lamb.

11 And all the angels stood
round about surrounding the throne,
and *about* the elders and the four *beasts live beings*,
and fell *before in sight of* the throne on their faces,
and worshipped *God Elohim*,

12 *Saying Wording, Amen: Blessing Eulogy*,
and glory, and wisdom, and *thanksgiving eucharist*,
and honour, and *power dynamis*, and might,
be unto our God Elohim
for ever and ever unto the eons of the eons.
Amen.

13 And one of the elders answered,
saying wording unto me,
What are these which are arrayed in white *robes stoles*?
and whence came they?

14 And I said unto him, *Sir Adonay*, thou knowest.
And he said to me,
These are they which came out of *great mega* tribulation,
and have *washed flowed* their *robes stoles*,
and *made them white whitened their stoles*
in the blood of the Lamb.

APOCALYPSE 7

exeGesés companion BIBLE

ONE HUNDRED FORTY—FOUR THOUSAND SEALED

7 And after these I see four angels
standing on the four corners of the earth,
overpowering the four winds of the earth,
so that the wind puffs
neither on the earth nor on the sea nor on any tree.

2 And I see another angel
ascend from the rising of the sun,
having the seal of the living Elohim:
and he cries with a mega voice to the four angels,
who are given to injure the earth and the sea,
wording,

3 Injure neither the earth nor the sea nor the trees
until we seal the servants of our Elohim
in their foreheads.

4 And I hear the number sealed:
— sealed one hundred and forty—four thousand
of all the scions of the sons of Yisra El:
5 of the scion of Yah Hudah twelve thousand sealed;
of the scion of Reu Ben twelve thousand sealed;
6 of the scion of Gad twelve thousand sealed;
of the scion of Asher twelve thousand sealed;
of the scion of Naphtali twelve thousand sealed;
of the scion of Menash Sheh twelve thousand sealed;

7 of the scion of Shimon twelve thousand sealed;
of the scion of Levi twelve thousand sealed;
of the scion of Yissachar twelve thousand sealed;
8 of the scion of Zebulun twelve thousand sealed;
of the scion of Yoseph twelve thousand sealed;
of the scion of Ben Yamin twelve thousand sealed.

THE MULTITUDE FROM MEGA TRIBULATION

9 After these I perceive, and behold,
a vast multitude, which no one could number,
of all goyim and scions and peoples and tongues,
standing in sight of the throne and in sight of the Lamb
arrayed with white stoles and phoinix in their hands;

10 and crying with a mega voice, wording,
Salvation to our Elohim sitting upon the throne
and to the Lamb.

11 And all the angels
and the elders and the four live beings
stand surrounding the throne
and fall on their faces in sight of the throne
and worship Elohim,
wording, Amen:

12 Eulogy and glory and wisdom and eucharist
and honor and dynamis and might
to our Elohim to the eons of the eons.
Amen.

13 And one of the elders answers, wording to me,
Who are these arrayed in white stoles?
And whence came they?

14 And I say to him, Adonay, you know.
And he says to me,
These are they coming from mega tribulation
who flowed their stoles and whitened their stoles
in the blood of the Lamb:

REVELATION 7, 8

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

15 *Therefore* **Because of this**
 are they *before* **in sight of** the throne of *God* **Elohim**
 and *serve* **liturgize** *him* day and night in his *temple* **nave**:
 and he that sitteth on the throne
 shall *dwell* **tabernacle** among them.
 16 They shall **not still** hunger *no more*,
 neither **still** thirst *any more*;
 neither shall the sun *light* **fall** on them
 nor any *heat* **scorch**.
 17 *For* **Because** the Lamb
 which *is* in the midst of the throne
 shall *feed* **shepherd** them,
 and shall *lead* **guide** them unto living fountains of waters:
 and *God* **Elohim** shall wipe away
 all tears from their eyes.

THE SEVENTH SEAL

8 And when he had opened the seventh seal,
 there was *silence* **became a hush** in *heaven* **the heavens**
about **as** the space of half an hour.

THE SEVEN TRUMPS

2 And I saw the seven angels
 which stood *before* *God* **in sight of Elohim**;
 and to them were given seven trumpets.
 3 And another angel came and stood at the **sacrifice** altar,
 having a golden *censer* **frankincenser**;
 and there was given unto him much incense,
 that he should *offer* **give** it
 with the prayers of all *saints* **the holy**
 upon the golden **sacrifice** altar
 which was *before* **in sight of** the throne.
 4 And the smoke of the incense,
 which *came* with the prayers of the *saints* **holy**,
 ascended *up* *before* *God* **in sight of Elohim**
 out of the angel's hand.
 5 And the angel took the *censer* **frankincenser**,
 and filled it *with* **out of the** fire of the **sacrifice** altar,
 and cast *it* *into* **unto** the earth:
 and there were **became** voices, and thunderings,
 and lightnings, and *an* **earthquake a quake**.
 6 And the seven angels which had the seven trumpets
 prepared themselves to *sound* **trumpet**.

THE FIRST TRUMP

7 The first angel *sounded* **trumped**,
 and there *followed* **became** hail and fire
 mingled with blood,
 and they were cast *upon* **unto** the earth:
 and the third *part* of trees was burnt up,
 and all green *grass* **herbage** was burnt up.

THE SECOND TRUMP

8 And the second angel *sounded* **trumped**,
 and as *it* *were* a *great* **a mega** mountain burning with fire
 was cast into the sea:
 and the third *part* of the sea became blood;
 9 And the third *part* of the creatures
 which were in the sea, and had *life* **soul**, died;
 and the third *part* of the *ships* **sailers**
 were *destroyed* **corrupted**.

THE THIRD TRUMP

10 And the third angel *sounded* **trumped**,
 and there fell a *great* **mega** star from *heaven* **the heavens**,
 burning as *it* *were* a lamp,
 and it fell upon the third *part* of the *rivers* **streams**,
 and upon the fountains of waters:
 11 And the name of the star
 is *called* *Wormwood* **worded Absinthe**:
 and the third *part* of the waters
 became *wormwood* **absinthe**;
 and *many* *men* **much** *humanity* died of the waters,
 because they were *made* *bitter* **embittered**.

THE FOURTH TRUMP

12 And the fourth angel *sounded* **trumped**,
 and the third *part* of the sun was *smitten* **deformed**,
 and the third *part* of the moon,
 and the third *part* of the stars;
 so as **that** the third *part* of them was darkened,
 and the day *shone* **manifested** not for a third *part* of it,
 and the night likewise.

APOCALYPSE 7, 8

exeGeses companion BIBLE

15 because of this
 they are in sight of the throne of Elohim
 and liturgize in his nave day and night:
 and he sitting on the throne tabernacles among them.
 16 They neither still famish nor still thirst;
 nor falls the sun on them, nor any scorch:
 17 because the Lamb midst the throne
 shepherds them, and guides them
 to living fountains of waters:
 and Elohim wipes all tears from their eyes.

THE SEVENTH SEAL

8 And when he opens the seventh seal,
 a hush becomes in the heavens
 as the space of half an hour.

THE SEVEN TRUMPS

2 And I see the seven angels stand in sight of Elohim;
 and they are given seven trumpets.
 3 And another angel came
 and stands at the sacrifice altar
 having a golden frankincenser;
 and he is given much incense,
 to give with the prayers of all the holy
 on the golden sacrifice altar in sight of the throne.
 4 And the smoke of the incense
 with the prayers of the holy
 ascends from the hand of the angel in sight of Elohim:
 5 and the angel takes the frankincenser
 and fills it from the fire of the sacrifice altar
 and casts it to the earth:
 and there become voices and thunderings
 and lightnings and a quake.
 6 And the seven angels having the seven trumpets
 prepare themselves to trump.

THE FIRST TRUMP

7 The first angel trumps
 and there becomes hail and fire mingled with blood
 and they are cast to the earth:
 and the third of trees burns
 and all green herbage burns.

THE SECOND TRUMP

8 And the second angel trumps
 and as a mega mountain burning with fire
 is cast into the sea:
 and the third of the sea becomes blood;
 9 and the third of the creatures in the sea
 and having a soul, die;
 and the third of the sailers corrupt.

THE THIRD TRUMP

10 And the third angel trumps
 and a mega star falls from the heavens
 burning as a lamp;
 and it falls on the third of the streams
 and on the fountains of waters:
 11 and the name of the star is worded, Absinthe:
 and the third of the waters become absinthe;
 and much humanity dies from the waters,
 because they embittered.

THE FOURTH TRUMP

12 And the fourth angel trumps
 and the third of the sun deforms
 and the third of the moon
 and the third of the stars;
 so that the third of them darkens
 and the day manifests not for the third thereof
 and likewise the night.

REVELATION 8, 9

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE THREE WOES

13 And I beheld **perceived**, and heard an **one** angel flying through the midst of heaven **in the midheavens**, saying **wording** with a loud **mega** voice,
Woe, woe, woe,
to the inhabitants of **them who settle on** the earth by reason of the other **the rest of the** voices of the trumpet of the three angels, which are yet to sound **about to trump!**

THE FIFTH TRUMP

9 And the fifth angel **sounded trumped**, and I saw a star fall from **heaven the heavens** unto the earth: and to him was given the key of the **bottomless pit of the abyss**.
2 And he opened the **bottomless pit of the abyss**; and there **arose ascended** a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a **great mega** furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of **from** the smoke of the pit.
3 And there came out of the smoke locusts **upon unto** the earth: and unto them was given **power authority**, as the scorpions of the earth have **power authority**.
4 And it was **commanded rhetorized to** them that they should not **hurt injure** the **grass herbage** of the earth, neither any green **thing**, neither any tree; but **except** only those **men humans** which have not the seal of **God Elohim** in their foreheads.
5 And to them it was given that they should not **kill slaughter** them, but that they should be **tormented tortured** five months: and their **torment torture** was as the **torment torture** of a scorpion, when he **strike**th **smiteth** a **man human**.
6 And in those days shall **men humanity** seek death, and shall not find it; and shall **desire pant** to die, and death shall flee from them.
7 And the **shapes likenesses** of the locusts were like unto horses prepared unto **battle war**; and on their heads were as **it were crowns wreaths** like gold, and their faces were as the faces of **men humans**.
8 And they had hair as the hair of women, and their teeth were as **the teeth of as** lions.
9 And they had breastplates, as **it were** breastplates of iron; and the **sound voice** of their wings was as the **sound voice** of chariots of many horses running to **battle war**.
10 And they had tails like unto scorpions, and there were stings in their tails: and their **power authority** was to **hurt men injure humanity** five months.
11 And they had a **king sovereign** over them, which is — the angel of the **bottomless pit abyss**, whose name in the **Hebrew tongue Hebraic** is Abaddon,
but in the **Greek tongue Hellenic** hath his name Apollyon.
12 One woe is **past gone**; and, behold, there come two woes **more hereafter yet after these**.
THE SIXTH TRUMP
13 And the sixth angel **sounded trumped**, and I heard a **one** voice from the four horns of the golden **sacrifice** altar which is **before God in sight of Elohim**, saying **Wording** to the sixth angel which had the trumpet,
Loose the four angels which are bound in the **great river mega stream** Euphrates.
15 And the four angels were loosed, which were prepared for **unto** an hour, and a day, and a month, and a year, for to **slay slaughter** the third **part of men humanity**.
16 And the number of the **army warriors** of the horsemen were **two hundred thousand thousand myriads of myriads**: and I heard the number of them.

APOCALYPSE 8, 9

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE THREE WOES

13 And I perceive,
and hear one angel flying in the midheavens, wording with a mega voice,
Woe, woe, woe, to them who settle on the earth because of the rest of the voices of the trumpet of the three angels about to trump!

THE FIFTH TRUMP

9 And the fifth angel trumpets
and I see a star fallen from the heavens to the earth: and he is given the key of the pit of the abyss.
2 And he opens the pit of the abyss; and a smoke ascends from the pit as the smoke of a mega furnace; and the sun and the air darken from the smoke of the pit.
3 And from the smoke, locusts come to the earth: and they are given authority as the scorpions of the earth have authority.
4 And they are rhetorized to injure neither the herbage of the earth nor any green nor any tree; except only those humans who have not the seal of Elohim in their foreheads.
5 And they are given — not to slaughter but to torture them five months: and their torture is as the torture of a scorpion smiting a human.
6 And in those days humanity seeks death and finds not; and pants to die and death flees from them.
7 And the likenesses of the locusts — likens to horses prepared to war; and on their heads as gold — like wreaths and their faces as faces: of humans and they have hair as hair of women and their teeth as lions:
9 and they have breastplates as breastplates of iron; and the voice of their wings as the voice of chariots — of many horses running to war; and their tails like scorpions and stings in their tails:
10 and their authority **is** to injure humanity five months.
11 And they have a sovereign over them, — the angel of the abyss, his name in Hebraic, Abaddon, and in Hellenic has the name, Apollyon.
12 The first woe is gone: and behold, still two woes come after these.

THE SIXTH TRUMP

13 And the sixth angel trumpets
and I hear one voice from the four horns of the golden sacrifice altar in sight of Elohim,
14 wording to the sixth angel who has the trumpet, Loose the four angels bound in the mega stream Euphrates.
15 And the four angels are loosed, who are prepared to an hour and a day and a month and a year to slaughter the third of humanity:
16 and the number of the warriors of the horsemen is two myriads of myriads: and I hear their number.

REVELATION 9, 10

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

17 And thus I saw the horses in the vision,
and them that sat on them,
having breastplates of fire **fiery**, and of *jacinth* **jacinthine**,
and *brimstone* **sulphurous**:
and the heads of the horses *were* as the heads of lions;
and out of their mouths *issued* **proceeded** fire
and smoke and *brimstone* **sulphur**.
18 By these three
was the third *part* of *men killed* **humanity slaughtered**,
by the fire, and by the smoke,
and by the *brimstone* **sulphur**,
which *issued* **proceeded** out of their mouths.
19 For their *power* **authority** is in their mouth,
and in their tails:
for their tails *were* like unto serpents, and had heads,
and *with in* them they do **hurt injure**.
cp Apocalypse 16:12—14
20 And the rest of the *men* **humanity**
which were not *killed by* **slaughtered in** these plagues
yet repented not of the works of their hands,
that they should not worship *devils* **demons**,
and idols of gold, and silver, and *brass* **copper**,
and stone, and of wood:
which neither can see, nor hear, nor walk:
Neither repented they of their murders,
nor of their *sorceries* **pharmacies**,
nor of their *fornication* **whoredoms**,
nor of their *thefts* **thieveries**.

THE OPEN SCROLLETTE

10 And I saw another mighty angel
come down **descend** from *heaven* **the heavens**,
clothed **arrayed** with a cloud:
and a rainbow *was* upon his head,
and his face *was* as *it were* the sun,
and his feet as pillars of fire:
2 And he had in his hand a *little book* **scrollette** open:
and he set his right foot upon the sea,
and his left *foot* on the earth,
3 And cried with a *loud* **mega** voice,
exactly as *when* a lion roareth:
and when he had cried,
seven thunders *uttered* **spake in** their **own** voices.
4 And when the seven thunders
had uttered **spake in** their **own** voices,
I was about to *write* **scribe**:
and I heard a voice from *heaven* **the heavens**
saying **wording** unto me,
Seal up those *things* which the seven thunders *uttered* **spake**,
and *write* **scribe** them not.
5 And the angel
which I saw stand upon the sea and upon the earth
lifted *up* his hand to *heaven* **the heavens**,
6 And *sware by* **oathed in** him that liveth
for ever and ever **unto the eons of the eons**,
who created *heaven* **the heavens**,
and *the things that* **those** therein *are*,
and the earth, and *the things that* **those** therein *are*,
and the sea, and *the things which are* **those** therein,
that there should be time* *no longer* **not still**:
*Hellene: chronos
7 But in the days of the voice of the seventh angel,
when he shall *begin to sound* **trump**,
the mystery of *God* **Elohim**
should be *finished* **completed/shalamed**,
as he hath *declared* **evangelized**,
to his **own** servants the prophets.
8 And the voice which I heard from *heaven* **the heavens**
spake unto **with** me again, and *said* **worded**,
Go and take the *little book* **scrollette**
which is open in the hand of the angel
which standeth upon the sea and upon the earth.
9 And I went unto the angel, and *said* **worded** unto him,
Give me the *little book* **scrollette**.
And he *said* **worded** unto me, Take it, and eat it *up*;
and it shall *make* **embitter** thy belly *bitter*,
but it shall be in thy mouth sweet as honey.
10 And I took the *little book* **scrollette**
out of the angel's hand,
and ate it *up*;

APOCALYPSE 9, 10

exeGeses companion BIBLE

17 And thus I see the horses in the vision
and those sitting on them have breastplates
fiery and jacinthine and sulphurous:
and the heads of the horses as the heads of lions;
and fire and smoke and sulphur
proceeds from their mouths .
18 By these three
— by the fire and by the smoke and by the sulphur
proceeding from their mouths
the third of humanity is slaughtered:
19 for their authorities
are in their mouth and in their tails:
for their tails are like serpents having heads,
and in them they injure.
cp Apocalypse 16:12—14
20 And the rest of humanity
— not slaughtered in these plagues
repent not of the works of their hands
— to not worship demons
and idols of gold and silver and copper
and of stone and of wood:
21 which can neither see nor hear nor walk:
neither repent they of their murders
nor of their pharmacies
nor of their whoredoms
nor of their thieveries.

THE OPEN SCROLLETTE

10 And I see another mighty angel
descend from the heavens
arrayed with a cloud and a rainbow on his head:
2 and his face as the sun and his feet as pillars of fire:
and in his hand he has an open scrollette:
and he sets his right foot on the sea
and his left on the earth;
3 and cries with a mega voice exactly as a lion roars:
and when he cries,
seven thunders speak in their own voices.
4 And when the seven thunders
speak in their own voices,
I am about to scribe:
and I hear a voice from the heavens wording to me,
Seal what the seven thunders spoke
and scribe them not.
5 And the angel
I see standing on the sea and on the earth
lifts his hand to the heavens,
6 and oaths in him who lives to the eons of the eons
— who created the heavens and those therein
and the earth and those therein
and the sea and those therein,
that time* is not still:
*Hellene: chronos
7 But in the days of the voice of the seventh angel,
when he is about to trump,
to complete/shalam the mystery of Elohim,
as he evangelized to his own servants the prophets.
8 And again I hear a voice from the heavens
speaking with me and wording,
Go take the open scrollette
in the hand of the angel
standing on the sea and on the earth.
9 And I go to the angel and word to him,
Give me the scrollette.
And he words to me, Take and eat;
and it embitters your belly,
but it is sweet as honey in your mouth.
10 And I take the scrollette from hand of the angel
and eat it;

REVELATION 10, 11

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

and it was in my mouth sweet as honey:
and as soon as I had eaten it, my belly was *bitter embittered*.
11 And he said **worded** unto me,
Thou must prophesy again *before in front of* many peoples,
and *nations goyim*, and tongues, and *kings sovereigns*.

THE NAVE MEASURED

11 And there was given me a reed like unto a *rod scion*:
and the angel stood, *saying wording*,
Rise, and measure the *temple nave of God Elohim*,
and the **sacrifice** altar, and them that worship therein.
2 But the *court courtyard*
which is without outside the temple nave
leave cast out, and measure it not;
for because it is given unto the *Gentiles goyim*:
and the holy city shall they *tread under foot trample*
forty and two months.

THE TWO WITNESSES

3 And I *will shall* give *power* unto my two witnesses,
and they shall prophesy
a thousand two hundred *and threescore sixty* days,
clothed arrayed in *sackcloth saq*.
4 These are the two *olive trees olives*,
and the two *candlesticks menorah*
standing *before in sight of* the *God Elohim* of the earth.

Zechar Yah 4:2—6, 11—14

5 And if any *man will hurt one willeth to injure* them,
fire proceedeth out of their mouth,
and *devoureth consumeth* their enemies:
and if any *man will hurt one willeth to injure* them,
he must *in this manner thus* be *killed slaughtered*.

cp 11:13

6 These have *power authority* to shut *heaven the heavens*,
that *it rain not the rain not rain*
in the days of their prophecy:
and have *power authority* over waters
to turn them to blood,
and to smite the earth with all plagues,
as often as **ever** they will.
7 And when they shall have
finished completed/shalamed their *testimony witness*,
the beast that ascendeth out of the *bottomless pit abyss*
shall make war *against with* them,
and shall *overcome triumph over* them,
and *kill slaughter* them.

8 And their *dead bodies carcasses*
shall *lie in be on* the *street broadway*
of the *great city megalopolis*,
which spiritually is called *Sodom Sedom* and *Egypt Misrayim*,
where also our *Lord Adonay was crucified staked*.
9 And they of the people and *kindreds scions*
and tongues and *nations goyim*
shall see their *dead bodies carcasses* three days and an half,
and shall not *suffer allow* their *dead bodies carcasses*
to be put in *graves tombs*.

10 And they that *dwell settle* upon the earth
shall *rejoice cheer* over them, and *make merry rejoice*,
and shall send *gifts honorariums* one to another;
because these two prophets *tormented tortured* them
that *dwelt settled* on the earth.

11 And after three days and an half
the spirit of life from *God Elohim* entered into them,
and they stood upon their feet;
and *great fear mega awe*
fell upon them which *saw observed* them.

12 And they heard a *great mega* voice
from *heaven the heavens*
saying wording unto them, *Come up Ascend* hither.
And they ascended *up to heaven the heavens* in a cloud;
and their enemies *beheld observed* them.

13 And *the same in that* hour
was there *became a great earthquake mega quake*,
and the tenth *part* of the city fell,
and in the *earthquake quake*
were slain of men slaughtered
seven thousand *names of humanity*:
and the *remnant rest were affrighted became awestricken*,
and gave glory to the *God Elohim of heaven the heavens*.

cp 11:5

APOCALYPSE 10, 11

exeGeses companion BIBLE

and it is sweet as honey in my mouth:
and as soon as I eat it, my belly embitters.

11 And he words to me,
You must prophesy again in front of many peoples
and goyim and tongues and sovereigns.

THE NAVE MEASURED

11 And I am given a reed like a scion:
and the angel stands, *wording*,
Rise and measure the nave of Elohim
and the sacrifice altar and those worshipping therein:
2 and cast out the courtyard outside the nave
and measure it not;
because it is given to the goyim:
and they trample the holy city forty—two months.

THE TWO WITNESSES

3 And I give to my two witnesses to prophesy
a thousand two hundred and sixty days,
arrayed in saq.
4 These are the two olives and the two menorah
standing in sight of the Elohim of the earth.

Zechar Yah 4:2—6, 11—14

5 And if anyone wills to injure them,
fire proceeds from their mouth
and consumes their enemies:
and if anyone wills to injure them,
thus must they be slaughtered.

cp 11:13

6 These have authority to shut the heavens,
so that the rain rains not in the days of their prophecy:
and they have authority over waters
to turn them to blood
and to smite the earth with all plagues
as often as ever they will.

7 And when they complete/shalam their witness,
the beast ascends from the abyss
makes war with them
and triumphs over them and slaughters them:
and their carcasses
8 are on the broadway of the megalopolis,
which spiritually is called, Sedom and Misrayim
— where also our Adonay was staked.

9 And they of the people and scions
and tongues and goyim
see their carcasses three and a half days
and allow not to put their carcasses in tombs.
10 And they who settle on the earth
cheer over them and rejoice;
and send honorariums to one another;
because these two prophets tortured them
who settle on the earth.

11 And after three and a half days
the spirit of life of Elohim enters into them
and they stand on their feet;
and mega awe falls on them who observe them.

12 And they hear a mega voice from the heavens
wording to them, Ascend here!
— and they ascend to the heavens in the cloud;
and their enemies observe them.

13 And in that hour a mega quake becomes
and the tenth of the city falls;
and in the quake
seven thousand names of humanity are slaughtered:
and the rest become awestricken
and give glory to the Elohim of the heavens.

cp 11:5

REVELATION 11, 12

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

- 14 The second woe is *past gone*;
and behold, the third woe cometh quickly.
- THE SEVENTH TRUMP**
- 15 And the seventh angel *sounded trumped*;
and there *were great became*
mega voices in *heaven the heavens*,
saying wording,
The *kingdoms sovereignty* of this *world cosmos*
are become *the kingdoms of our Lord Yah Veh*,
and of his *Christ the Messiah*;
and he shall reign
for ever and ever unto the eons of the eons.
And the four and twenty elders,
which sat *before God in sight of Elohim*
on their *seats thrones*,
fell upon their faces, and worshipped *God Elohim*,
Saying Wording, We *give eucharistize* thee *thanks*,
O Lord God Almighty Yah Veh El Sabaoth,
which art, and wast, and art to come
who is, and who was, and who is coming;
because thou hast taken to thee
thy *great power mega dynamis*, and hast reigned.
- 16 And the *nations goyim* were *angry wroth*,
and thy wrath is come,
and the *time season* of the dead,
that they should be judged,
and that thou shouldest give reward
unto thy servants the prophets,
and to the *saints holy*, and them that *fear awe* thy name,
small minute and *great mega*;
and shouldest destroy them which destroy the earth.
- 17 And the *temple nave* of *God Elohim*
was opened in *heaven the heavens*,
and there was seen in his *temple nave*
the ark of his *testament covenant*;
and there *were became* lightnings,
and voices, and thunderings,
and an *earthquake a quake*, and *great mega* hail.

THE PANORAMA OF SIGNS AND EVENTS THE WOMAN

- 12 And there appeared
a *great wonder mega sign* in *heaven the heavens*;
a woman *clothed arrayed* with the sun,
and the moon under her feet,
and upon her head a *crown wreath* of twelve stars:
And she *being with child having in womb* cried,
travailing in *birth*, and *pained tortured* to be *delivered birth*.
- THE DRAGON**
- 3 And there appeared another *wonder sign*
in *heaven the heavens*;
and behold a *great red mega fiery* dragon,
having seven heads and ten horns,
and seven *crowns diadems* upon his heads.
And his tail
drew **dragged** the third *part* of the stars of *heaven the heavens*,
and did cast them to the earth:
and the dragon stood *before in sight of the woman*
which was ready about to be delivered birth,
for to devour her child as soon as *it was born she birthed*.
- THE MALE SON**
- 5 And she *brought forth birthed* a *man child male son*,
who was about to rule shepherd all *nations goyim*
with in a rod scion of iron:
and her child was *caught seized up* unto *God Elohim*,
and to his throne.
- 6 And the woman fled into the wilderness,
where she hath a place prepared of *God Elohim*,
that they should *feed nourish* her there
a thousand two hundred and *threescore sixty* days.
- WAR IN THE HEAVENS**
- 7 And there *was became* war in *heaven the heavens*:
Michael Michah El and his angels
fought warred against the dragon;
and the dragon *fought warred* and his angels,
And *prevailed was* not **mighty enough**;
neither was their place
still found *any more* in *heaven the heavens*.

APOCALYPSE 11, 12

exeGesés companion BIBLE

- 14 The second woe is gone:
and behold, the third woe comes quickly.
- THE SEVENTH TRUMP**
- 15 And the seventh angel trumpes;
and mega voices become in the heavens,
wording, The sovereigndoms of this cosmos
are become to Yah Veh and his the Messiah;
and he reigns to the eons of the eons.
- 16 And the twenty—four elders,
sitting on their thrones in sight of Elohim
fall on their faces and worship Elohim,
wording, We eucharistize you,
O Yah Veh El Sabaoth,
who is and who was and who is coming;
for you are taking your mega dynamis and reign:
and the goyim raved and your wrath is come:
also the season to judge the dead
and to give reward
to your servants the prophets and to the holy
and to them who awe your name
— minute and mega:
and to destroy them who destroy the earth.
- 17 And the nave of Elohim opens in the heavens
and the ark of his covenant is seen in his nave:
and there become lightnings
and voices and thunderings
and a quake and mega hail.
- THE PANORAMA OF SIGNS AND EVENTS
THE WOMAN**

- 12 And a mega sign appears in the heavens:
— a woman arrayed with the sun
and the moon under her feet
and a wreath of twelve stars on her head:
and having in womb, she cries,
travailing and torturing to birth.
- 2
- THE DRAGON**
- 3 And another sign appears in the heavens;
and behold, a mega fiery dragon
having seven heads and ten horns
and seven diadems on his heads;
and his tail drags the third of the stars of the heavens
and casts them to the earth:
and the dragon
stands in sight of the woman about to birth
to devour her child as soon as she births.
- THE MALE SON**
- 5 And she births a male son,
who is about to shepherd all goyim in a scion of iron:
and her child is seized to Elohim and to his throne.
- 6 And the woman flees to the wilderness,
where she has a place prepared by Elohim,
to be nourished
a thousand two hundred and sixty days.
- WAR IN THE HEAVENS**
- 7 And war becomes in the heavens:
Michah El and his angels war against the dragon;
and the dragon and his angels war;
and they are not mighty enough
and their place is not still found in the heavens.
- 8

REVELATION 12, 13

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

9 And the great **mega** dragon was cast out,
that *old* **ancient** serpent,
called *the Devil* **Diabolos**, and Satan,
which *deceiveth* **seduceth** the whole world:
he was cast out *into* **unto** the earth,
and his angels were cast out with him.

VICTORY IN THE HEAVENS

10 And I heard a *loud* **mega** voice
saying **wording** in *heaven* **the heavens**,
Now *is come* **becometh** salvation, and *strength* **dynamis**,
and the *kingdom* **sovereigndom** of our *God* **Elohim**,
and the *power* **authority** of his *Christ* **the Messiah**:
for because the accuser of our brethren is cast down,
which accused them *before* **in sight of** our *God* **Elohim**
day and night.

11 And they *overcame* **triumphed over** him
by **through** the blood of the Lamb,
and by **through** the word of their *testimony* **witness**;
and they loved not their *lives* **souls** unto the death.
12 *Therefore* **For this** rejoice, ye heavens,
and ye that *dwell* **tabernacle** in them.
Woe to the *inhabiters* **settlers** of the earth and of the sea!
for the devil **because Diabolos**
is come down **descended** unto you,
having *great wrath* **mega fury**,
because he knoweth
that he hath but a *short time* **little season**.

Yahn 12:31, 32, Loukas 10:18

THE DRAGON PURSUES THE WOMAN

13 And when the dragon saw
that he was cast unto the earth,
he *persecuted* **pursued** the woman
which *brought forth* **birthed** the *man child* **male**.
14 And to the woman
were given two wings of a *great* **mega** eagle,
that she might fly into the wilderness, into her place,
where she is nourished
for a time, and times, and half a time,
from the face of the serpent.
15 And the serpent cast out of his mouth
water as a *flood* **stream** after the woman,
that he might cause her
to be *carried away of the flood* **streamborne**.
16 And the earth helped the woman,
and the earth opened her mouth,
and *swallowed up* the *flood* **stream**
which the dragon cast out of his mouth.

THE DRAGON WARS WITH THE SPERMA OF THE WOMAN

17 And the dragon was wroth with the woman,
and went to make war
with the *remnant* **rest** of her *seed* **sperma**,
which *keep* **guard**
the *commandments* **misvoth** of *God* **Elohim**,
and have
the *testimony* **witness** of *Jesus Christ* **Yah Shua Messiah**.

THE BEAST FROM THE SEA

13 And I stood upon the sand of the sea,
and saw a beast *rise up* **ascend** out of the sea,
having seven heads and ten horns,
and upon his horns ten *crowns* **diadems**,
and upon his heads the name of blasphemy.
2 And the beast which I saw
was like unto a *leopard* **panther**,
and his feet were as *the feet* of a bear,
and his mouth as the mouth of a lion:
and the dragon gave him his *power* **dynamis**,
and his *seat* **throne**, and *great* **mega** authority.
3 And I saw one of his heads
as *it were wounded* **slaughtered** to death;
and his *deadly wound* **death plague** was *healed* **cured**:
and all the *world* **earth**
wondered **marvelled** after the beast.
4 And they worshipped the dragon
which gave *power* **authority** unto the beast:
and they worshipped the beast, *saying* **wording**,
Who is like unto the beast?
who is able to *make* war with him?

APOCALYPSE 12, 13

exeGeses companion BIBLE

9 And the mega dragon is cast out,
that ancient serpent called Diabolos and Satan,
who seduces the whole world:
he is cast to the earth
and his angels are cast out with him.

VICTORY IN THE HEAVENS

10 And I hear a mega voice in the heavens,
wording. Now becomes salvation and dynamis
and the sovereigndom of our Elohim
and the authority of his the Messiah:
because the accuser of our brothers is cast down
— who accused them in sight of our Elohim
day and night.

11 And they triumph over him
through the blood of the Lamb
and through the word of their witness;
and they love not their souls to the death.
12 For this rejoice, you the heavens
and you who tabernacle therein.
Woe to the settlers of the earth and of the sea!
— because Diabolos descends to you
having mega fury
because he knows he has but a little season.

Yahn 12:31, 32, Loukas 10:18

THE DRAGON PURSUES THE WOMAN

13 And when the dragon sees he is cast to the earth
he pursues the woman who birthed the male.
14 And the woman is given two wings of a mega eagle
to fly to her place to the wilderness;
where she is nourished
for a time and times and half a time
from the face of the serpent.
15 And from his mouth,
the serpent casts water as a stream after the woman,
so that she is streamborne:
16 and the earth helps the woman
and the earth opens her mouth
and swallows the stream
the dragon cast from his mouth.

THE DRAGON WARS WITH THE SPERMA OF THE WOMAN

17 And the dragon rages with the woman
and goes to make war with the rest of her sperma
who guard the misvoth of Elohim
and have the witness of Yah Shua Messiah.

THE BEAST FROM THE SEA

13 And I stand on the sand of the sea;
and see a beast ascend from the sea
having seven heads and ten horns;
and on his horns ten diadems;
and on his heads the name of blasphemy.
2 And the beast I see is like a panther
and his feet as of a bear
and his mouth as the mouth of a lion:
and the dragon gives him his dynamis
and his throne and mega authority.
3 And I see one of his heads as slaughtered to death;
and his death plague is cured:
and all the earth marvels after the beast.
4 And they worship the dragon
who gives authority to the beast:
and they worship the beast, wording,
Who is like to the beast?
Who is able to war with him?

REVELATION 13

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE BEAST WARS WITH THE HOLY

5 And there was given unto him a mouth speaking *great things* **mega** and blasphemies; and *power* **authority** was given unto him to *continue* **deal** forty *and* two months.

6 And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against *God* **Elohim**, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that *dwell* **tabernacle** in *heaven* **the heavens**.

7 And it was given unto him to make war with the *saints* **holy**, and to *overcome* **triumph over** them: and *power* **authority** was given him over all *kindreds* **scions**, and tongues, and *nations* **goyim**.

8 And all that *dwell* **settle** upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not *written* **scribed** in the *book* **scroll** of life of the Lamb *slain* **slaughtered** from the foundation of the *world* **cosmos**.

9 If any *man* **one** have an ear, let him hear.

10 *He that leadeth*
If anyone gathereth together into captivity *shall go* into captivity **goeth**:
 he that killeth with
if anyone slaughtereth at the sword,
 must be killed with **at** the sword **is slaughtered**.
Here is the *patience* **endurance**
and the *faith* **trust** of the *saints* **holy**.

THE BEAST FROM THE EARTH

11 And I *beheld* **perceived** another beast *coming up* **ascending** out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spake as a dragon.

12 And he *exerciseth* **dealeth** all the *power* **authority** of the first beast *before* **in sight of** him, and causeth the earth and them which *dwell* **settle** therein to worship the first beast, whose *deadly wound* **death plague** was *healed* **cured**.

13 And he doeth *great wonders* **mega signs**, so that he maketh fire *come down* **descend** from *heaven* **the heavens** *on* to the earth in sight of *men* **humanity**,
And *deceiveth* **seduceth** them that *dwell* **settle** on the earth *by the means of* **through** those *miracles* **signs** which he *had power* **was given** to do in sight of the beast; *saying* **wording** to them that *dwell* **settle** on the earth, that they should make an *image* **icon** to the beast, which had the *wound* **plague** by a sword, and *did live* **lived**.

15 And he *had power* **was given** to give life unto the *image* **icon** of the beast, that the *image* **icon** of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as **ever** *would* **should** not worship the *image* **icon** of the beast should be *killed* **slaughtered**.

THE TATTOO OF THE BEAST

16 And he causeth all, both *small* **minute** and *great* **mega**, rich and poor, *free* **liberated** and *bond* **servant**, to *receive* **give them** a *mark* **tattoo** in their right hand, or in their foreheads:

17 And that no *man* **one** might *buy* **be able to market** or sell, *save* **except** he that had the *mark* **tattoo**, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name.

THE NUMBER OF THE BEAST

18 Here is wisdom.
Let him that hath *understanding* **a mind** *count* **compute** the number of the beast: for it is the number of a *man* **human**; and his number is Six hundred *threescore* **sixty** *and* six.

APOCALYPSE 13

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE BEAST WARS WITH THE HOLY

5 And he is given a mouth speaking mega and blasphemies; and he is given authority to deal forty—two months.

6 And he opens his mouth in blasphemy against Elohim — to blaspheme his name and his tabernacle and them who tabernacle in the heavens.

7 And he is given to make war with the holy and to triumph over them: and he is given authority over all scions and tongues and goyim.

8 And all who settle on the earth worship him — whose names are not scribed in the scroll of life of the Lamb slaughtered from the foundation of the cosmos.

9 If anyone has an ear, hear.
10 If anyone gathers a captivity into captivity he goes: if anyone slaughters at the sword, at the sword he is slaughtered.
Here is the endurance and the trust of the holy.

THE BEAST FROM THE EARTH

11 And I perceive another beast ascending from the earth; and he has two horns like a lamb and he speaks as a dragon.

12 And he deals all the authority of the first beast in his sight; and causes the earth and them settled therein to worship the first beast, whose death plague is cured.

13 And he does mega signs, to make fire descend from the heavens to the earth in sight of humanity; and seduces those settled on the earth through those signs he is given to do in sight of the beast; wording to them settled on the earth who had the plague by a sword and lived to make an icon to the beast.

15 And he is given to give life to the icon of the beast, so that the icon of the beast both speaks and causes as many as ever who worship not the icon of the beast to be slaughtered.

THE TATTOO OF THE BEAST

16 And he has all — both minute and mega, rich and poor, liberated and servant, — to be given a tattoo in their right hand or in their foreheads: so that no one is able to market or sell, except them having the tattoo or the name of the beast or the number of his name.

THE NUMBER OF THE BEAST

18 Here is the wisdom: whoever has a mind, compute the number of the beast: for it is the number of a human; and his number is six hundred and sixty—six.

REVELATION 14

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE SEVEN VISIONS THE FIRST VISION

14 And I looked **perceived**, and, *lo behold*,
 a Lamb *stood* **standing** on the mount *Sion* **Siyon**,
 and with him an hundred forty *and* four thousand,
 having his Father's name
written **scribed** in their foreheads.

2 And I heard a voice from *heaven* **the heavens**,
 as the voice of many waters,
 and as the voice of a *great* **mega** thunder:
 and I heard the voice of *harpers* **citherists**
harping with **cithering** at their *harps* **cithers**:
 3 And they sung as *it were* a new *song* **ode**
before **in sight** of the throne,
 and *before* **in sight** of the four *beasts* **live beings**,
 and the elders:
 and no *man* **one** could learn that *song* **ode**
but **except** the hundred and forty *and* four thousand,
 which were *redeemed* **marketed** from the earth.

4 These are they
 which were not *defiled* **stained** with women;
 for they are virgins.
 These are they
 which follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth.
 These were *redeemed* **marketed**
 from among *men* **humanity**,
being the *firstfruits* **firstlings**
 unto *God* **Elohim** and to the Lamb.

5 And in their mouth was found no *guile* **deceit**:
 for they are *without* **fault** **unblemished**
before **in front** of the throne of *God* **Elohim**.

THE SECOND VISION

6 And I saw another angel
 fly in the *midst* of *heaven* **midheavens**,
 having the *everlasting* *gospel* **eternal evangelism**
 to *preach* **evangelize** unto them
 that *dwelt* **settle** on the earth,
 and to every *nation* **goyim**, and *kindred* **scion**,
 and tongue, and people,
 7 *Saying with* **Wording in** a *loud* **mega** voice,
Fear *God* **Awe Elohim**, and give glory to him;
for **because** the hour of his judgment is come:
 and worship him
 that made *heaven* **the heavens**, and earth, and the sea,
 and the fountains of waters.

THE THIRD VISION

8 And there followed another angel, *saying* **wording**,
Babylon **Babel** is fallen, is fallen,
 that *great* *city* **megalopolis**,
 because she *made* **gave** all *nations* **goyim** drink
 of the wine of the *wrath* **fury**
 of her *fornication* **whoredom**.

THE FOURTH VISION

9 And the third angel followed them,
saying with **speaking in** a *loud* **mega** voice,
 If any *man* **one** worship the beast and his *image* **icon**,
 and *receive* **take** his *mark* **tattoo** in his forehead,
 or in his hand,
 10 The same shall drink
 of the wine of the *wrath* **fury** of *God* **Elohim**,
 which is *poured out* **without mixture** **mingled undiluted**
 into the cup of his *indignation* **wrath**;
 and he shall be *tormented* **tortured**
with **in** *fire* and *brimstone* **sulphur**
 in the *presence* **sight** of the holy angels,
 and in the *presence* **sight** of the Lamb:
 11 And the smoke of their *torment* **torture** ascendeth *up*
for ever and *ever* **unto the eons of the eons**:
 and they have no rest day nor night,
 who worship the beast and his *image* **icon**,
 and *whosoever* **if any**
receiveth **taketh** the *mark* **tattoo** of his name.
 12 Here is the *patience* **endurance** of the *saints* **holy**:
 here are they that *keep* **guard**
 the *commandments* **misvoth** of *God* **Elohim**,
 and the *faith* **trust** of *Jesus* **Yah Shua**.

APOCALYPSE 14

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE SEVEN VISIONS THE FIRST VISION

14 And I perceive, and behold,
 a Lamb standing on the Mount Siyon:
 and with him an hundred and forty — four thousand
 having the name of his Father
 scribed in their foreheads.

2 And I hear a voice from the heavens,
 as the voice of many waters
 and as the voice of a mega thunder:
 and I hear the voice of citherists
 cithering at their cithers:
 3 and they sing a new ode in sight of the throne
 and in sight of the four live beings and the elders:
 and no one can learn that ode
 except the hundred and forty — four thousand,
 who are marketed from the earth.

4 These are they who stained not with women
 for they are virgins;
 these are they who follow the Lamb
 wherever he goes;
 these are marketed from among humanity
 — firstlings to Elohim and to the Lamb.

5 And no deceit is found in their mouth:
 for they are unblemished
 in front of the throne of Elohim.

THE SECOND VISION

6 And I see another angel fly in the midheavens;
 having the eternal evangelism
 to evangelize to them who settle on the earth
 and to every goyim and scion and tongue and people:
 7 wording in a mega voice,
 Awe Elohim and give him glory;
 because the hour of his judgment is come:
 and worship him
 who made the heavens and earth and the sea
 and the fountains of waters.

THE THIRD VISION

8 And another angel follows, wording,
 Babel is fallen, is fallen — that megalopolis;
 because she gave all goyim drink
 of the wine of the fury of her whoredom.

THE FOURTH VISION

9 And the third angel follows them,
 speaking in a mega voice,
 If anyone worships the beast and his icon
 and takes his tattoo in his forehead or in his hand,
 10 the same drinks of the wine of the fury of Elohim,
 mingled undiluted in the cup of his wrath;
 and is tortured in fire and sulphur
 in the sight of the holy angels
 and in sight of the Lamb:
 11 and the smoke of their torture ascends
 to the eons of the eons:
 and they who worship the beast and his icon
 — also if any take the tattoo of his name
 they have no rest day and night.

12 Here is the endurance of the holy:
 here are they who guard the misvoth of Elohim
 and the trust of Yah Shua.

REVELATION 14, 15

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE FIFTH VISION

THE SECOND BEATITUDE

13 And I heard a voice from *heaven* **the heavens**
saying **wording** unto me, *Write* **Scribe**,
Blessed are the dead
which die in *the Lord* **Yah Veh** from henceforth:
Yea, *saith* **wordeth** the Spirit,
that they may rest from their labours;
and their works do follow **with** them.

THE SIXTH VISION

THE HARVEST BY ONE LIKE UNTO THE SON OF HUMANITY

14 And I *looked* **perceived**, and behold, a white cloud,
and upon the cloud
one sat like unto the Son of *man* **humanity**,
having on his head a golden *crown* **wreath**,
and in his hand a sharp sickle.
15 And another angel came out of the *temple* **nave**,
crying *with in* a **loud mega** voice
to him that sat on the cloud,
Thrust **Send** in thy sickle, and *reap* **harvest**:
for because the *time* **hour** is come
for thee to *reap* **harvest**;
for because the harvest of the earth is *ripe* **dried**.
16 And he that sat on the cloud
thrust **cast** in his sickle on the earth;
and the earth was *reaped* **harvested**.

THE SEVENTH VISION

THE HARVEST BY THE ANGEL

17 And another angel came out of the *temple* **nave**
which is in *heaven* **the heavens**,
he also having a sharp sickle.
18 And another angel came out from the **sacrifice** altar,
which had *power* **authority** over fire;
and *cried* **voiced** with a **loud mega** cry
to him that had the sharp sickle, *saying* **speaking**,
Thrust **Send** in thy sharp sickle,
and *gather* **dry** the clusters of *the vine* of the earth;
for because her grapes are *fully ripe* **matured**.
19 And the angel *thrust* **cast** in his sickle into the earth,
and *gathered* **dried** the vine of the earth,
and cast it into the *great winepress* **mega trough**
of the *wrath* **fury** of *God* **Elohim**.
20 And the *winepress* **trough** was *trodden* **trampled**
without the city,
and blood came out of the *winepress* **trough**,
even unto the horse bridles,
by the space of **up to**
a thousand *and* six hundred *furlongs* **stadia**.

THE SEVEN FINAL PLAGUES

15 And I saw another sign in *heaven* **the heavens**,
great **mega** and marvellous,
seven angels having the seven *last* **final** plagues;
for because in them
is filled up **completed/shalamed** the *wrath* **fury** of *God* **Elohim**.
2 And I saw as *it were* a sea of glass mingled with fire:
and them that had *gotten the victory* **triumphed**
over **from** the beast,
and *over* **from** his *image* **icon**,
and *over* **from** his *mark* **tattoo**,
and *over* **from** the number of his name,
stand on the sea of glass,
having the *harps* **cithers** of *God* **Elohim**.
3 And they sing the *song* **ode** of *Moses* **Mosheh**
the servant of *God* **Elohim**,
and the *song* **ode** of the Lamb,
saying **wording**,
Great **Mega** and marvellous are thy works,
Lord **God Almighty** **Yah Veh El Sabaoth**;
just and true are thy ways,
thou *King* **Sovereign** of *saints* **the holy**.
4 Who shall not *fear* **no way awe** thee, O *Lord* **Yah Veh**,
and glorify thy name?
for because thou only art *holy* **merciful**:
for because all *nations* **goyim** shall come
and worship *before thee* **in thy sight**;
for because thy judgments are *made* manifest.

APOCALYPSE 14, 15

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE FIFTH VISION

THE SECOND BEATITUDE

13 And I hear a voice from the heavens
wording to me,
Scribe,
Blessed — the dead who die in Yah Veh henceforth:
Yes, words the Spirit,
that they rest from their labors;
and their works follow with them.

THE SIXTH VISION

THE HARVEST BY ONE LIKE TO THE SON OF HUMANITY

14 And I perceive, and behold, a white cloud
— and on the cloud
one sitting like to the Son of humanity,
having a golden wreath on his head
and a sharp sickle in his hand.

15 And another angel comes from the nave,
crying in a mega voice to him sitting on the cloud,
Send in your sickle and harvest:
because the hour for you to harvest is come;
because the harvest of the earth is dried.

16 And he sitting on the cloud
casts in his sickle on the earth;
and the earth is harvested.

THE SEVENTH VISION

THE HARVEST BY THE ANGEL

17 And another angel
comes from the nave in the heavens,
he also having a sharp sickle:
18 and another angel comes from the sacrifice altar,
who has authority over fire;
and with a mega cry
voices to him having the sharp sickle,
speaking, Send in your sharp sickle
and dry the clusters of the earth;
because her grapes are matured.

19 And the angel casts in his sickle to the earth
and dries the vine of the earth
and casts it in the mega trough of the fury of Elohim.
20 And the trough is trampled outside the city
and blood comes from the trough
even to the horse bridles
— up to a thousand and six hundred stadia.

THE SEVEN FINAL PLAGUES

15 And I see another sign in the heavens,
mega and marvellous:
seven angels having the seven final plagues;
because in them
the fury of Elohim is completed/shalamed.
2 And I see as a sea of glass mingled with fire:
and they who triumphed from the beast,
and from his icon,
and from his tattoo,
and from the number of his name,
stand on the sea of glass having the cithers of Elohim.
3 And they sing
the ode of Mosheh the servant of Elohim
and the ode of the Lamb;
wording, Mega and marvellous are your works,
Yah Veh El Sabaoth;
just and true are your ways,
Sovereign of the holy:
4 Who never no way awes you, O Yah Veh,
and glorifies your name?
Because you only are merciful;
because all goyim come and worship in your sight;
because your judgments are manifested.

REVELATION 15, 16

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

5 And after *that these I looked* **perceived**, and, behold,
the **temple nave** of the tabernacle
of the **testimony witness** in **heaven the heavens** was opened:
6 And the seven angels came out of the **temple nave**,
having the seven plagues,
clothed **endued** in pure and *white* **radiant** linen,
and *having their breasts girded* **girt about the chest**
with golden girdles.
7 And one of the four *beasts* **live beings**
gave unto the seven angels seven golden **vials phials**
full of the *wrath* **fury** of **God Elohim**,
who liveth *for ever and ever* **unto the eons of the eons**.
8 And the **temple nave** was filled with smoke
from the glory of **God Elohim**,
and from his *power* **dynamis**;
and no *man* **one** was able to enter into the **temple nave**,
till the seven plagues of the seven angels
were fulfilled/**shalamed**.

16 And I heard a *great* **mega** voice out of the **temple nave**
saying **wording** to the seven angels,
Go *your ways*,
and pour out the **vials phials**
of the *wrath* **fury** of **God Elohim**
upon **unto** the earth.

2 And the first went,
and poured out his *vial* **phial** upon the earth;
and there *fell* **became**
a noisome and grievous sore **an evil ulcer**
upon the *men* **unto humanity**
which had the *mark* **tattoo** of the beast,
and upon them which worshipped his *image* **icon**.

THE FIRST PLAGUE

3 And the second angel
poured out his *vial* **phial** upon **into** the sea;
and it became as the blood of a dead *man*:
and every living soul died in the sea.

THE SECOND PLAGUE

4 And the third angel
poured out his *vial* **phial** upon **into** the *rivers* **streams**
and **into** fountains of waters;
and they became blood.

THE THIRD PLAGUE

5 And I heard the angel of the waters say **wording**,
Thou art *righteous* **just**, O **Lord Yah Veh**,
*which art, and wast, and shalt be**
who is, and who was*,
because thou hast judged *thus* **these**.

*most mss omit, and shalt be/**who is coming**

6 For **Because** they have *shed* **poured**
the blood of *saints* **the holy** and prophets,
and thou hast given them blood to drink;
for they are worthy.

7 And I heard another out of the **sacrifice** altar
say **wording**,
Even so **Yea, Lord God Almighty, Yah Veh El Sabaoth**,
true and *righteous* **just** are thy judgments.

THE FOURTH PLAGUE

8 And the fourth angel
poured out his *vial* **phial** upon the sun;
and *power* **it** was given unto him
to scorch *men with* **humanity** in fire.

9 And *men* **humanity**
were scorched with *great heat* **mega scorch**,
and blasphemed the name of **God Elohim**,
which hath *power* **authority** over these plagues:
and they repented not to give him glory.

THE FIFTH PLAGUE

10 And the fifth angel
poured out his *vial* **phial** upon the *seat* **throne** of the beast;
and his *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
was full of darkness **became darkened**;
and they gnawed their tongues *for* **from** pain,
11 And blasphemed the **God Elohim** of *heaven* **the heavens**
because of **from** their pains and **from** their *sores* **ulcers**,
and repented not of their *deeds* **works**.

APOCALYPSE 15, 16

exeGeses companion BIBLE

5 And after these I perceive, and behold,
the nave of the tabernacle
of the witness in the heavens opens:
6 and the seven angels having the seven plagues
come from the nave
endued in pure and radiant linen
and girt about the chests with golden girdles.
7 And one of the four live beings
gives the seven angels
who live to the eons of the eons
seven golden phials full of the fury of Elohim.

8 And the nave fills with smoke
from the glory of Elohim and from his dynamis;
and no one is able to enter the nave
until the seven plagues of the seven angels
are fulfilled/**shalamed**.

16 And I hear a mega voice from the nave
wording to the seven angels,
Go and pour out the phials of the fury of Elohim
to the earth.

THE FIRST PLAGUE

2 And the first goes
and pours his phial upon the earth;
and there becomes an evil ulcer to humanity
having the tattoo of the beast
— who worship his icon.

THE SECOND PLAGUE

3 And the second angel
pours his phial into the sea;
and it becomes as the blood of the dead:
and every living soul in the sea dies.

THE THIRD PLAGUE

4 And the third angel
pours his phial into the streams
and into fountains of waters;
and they become blood.

5 And I hear the angel of the waters wording,
You are just, O Yah Veh,
who is and who was*,
because you judge these.

*most mss omit, and who is coming

6 Because they poured
the blood of the holy and prophets;
and you give them blood to drink;
for they are worthy.

7 And I hear another from the sacrifice altar wording,
Yes, Yah Veh El Sabaoth,
true and just are your judgments.

THE FOURTH PLAGUE

8 And the fourth angel
pours his phial on the sun;
and he is given to scorch humanity in fire:
9 and humanity is scorched with mega scorch:
and they blaspheme the name of Elohim
who has authority over these plagues:
and they repent not to give him glory.

THE FIFTH PLAGUE

10 And the fifth angel
pours his phial on the throne of the beast;
and his sovereigndom becomes dark;
and they gnaw their tongues from pain;
11 and blaspheme the Elohim of the heavens
from their pains and from their ulcers
— and repent not of their works.

REVELATION 16, 17
exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE SIXTH PLAGUE

12 And the sixth angel
poured out his *vial* **phial**
upon the *great river* **mega stream** Euphrates;
and the water thereof was dried up,
that the way of the *kings* **sovereigns**
of the *east* **rising of the sun** might be prepared.
13 And I saw three *unclean* **impure** spirits like frogs
come out of the mouth of the dragon,
and out of the mouth of the beast,
and out of the mouth of the *false* **pseudo** prophet.
14 For they are the spirits of *devils* **demons**,
working miracles **doing signs**,
which *go forth* **proceed** unto the *kings* **sovereigns**
of the earth and of the whole world,
to gather them to the *battle* **war**
of that *great* **mega** day of *God Almighty* **El Sabaoth**.

THE THIRD BEATITUDE

15 Behold, I come as a thief.
Blessed is he that watcheth,
and *keepeth* **guardeth** his garments,
lest he walk naked,
and they see his *shame* **misbehaviour**.
16 And he gathered them together into a place
called in the *Hebrew tongue* **Hebraic**,
Armageddon **Har Megiddo**.

THE SEVENTH PLAGUE

17 And the seventh angel
poured out his *vial* **phial** into the air;
and there came a *great* **mega** voice
out of the *temple* **nave** of *heaven* **the heavens**,
from the throne,
saying **wording**, *It is done* **hath become**.
18 And there *were* **became** voices,
and thunders, and lightnings;
and there *was* **became** a *great earthquake* **mega quake**,
such as was not *since men* **from when humanity**
were **became** upon the earth,
so mighty an earthquake **vast a quake**,
and *so great* **thus mega**.
19 And the *great city* **megalopolis**
was divided **became** into three parts,
and the cities of the *nations* **goyim** fell:
and *great Babylon* **mega Babel**
came in remembrance **was remembered**
before God **in sight of Elohim**,
to give unto her the cup of the wine
of the *fierceness* **fury** of his wrath.
20 And every island fled away,
and the mountains were not found.
21 And there *fell* **descended** upon *men* **humanity**
a *great* **mega** hail out of *heaven* **the heavens**,
every stone about the weight of a talent as a talentweight:
and *men* **humanity** blasphemed *God* **Elohim**
because of **from** the plague of the hail;
for **because** the plague thereof
was *exceeding* **great extremely mega**.

THE MEGA WHORE

17 And there came one of the seven angels
which had the seven *vials* **phials**,
and *talked* **spake** with me, *saying* **wording** unto me,
Come hither; *I will* **shall** shew unto thee the judgment
of the *great* **mega** whore that sitteth upon many waters:
2 With whom the *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth
have *committed* **fornication** **whored**,
and the *inhabitants* of **they who settled on** the earth
have *been made drunk* **intoxicated**
with **from** the wine of her *fornication* **whoredom**.
3 So he *carried* **bore** me away in the spirit
into the wilderness:
and I saw a woman sit upon a scarlet *coloured* **beast**,
full of names of blasphemy,
having seven heads and ten horns.
4 And the woman was arrayed
in purple and scarlet *colour*,
and *decked* **gilded** with gold and precious stones and pearls,
having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations
and *filthiness* **impurity** of her *fornication* **whoredom**:

APOCALYPSE 16, 17
exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE SIXTH PLAGUE

12 And the sixth angel
pours his phial on the mega stream Euphrates;
and the water thereof dries
to prepare the way
of the sovereigns of the rising of the sun.
13 And I see three impure spirits like frogs
from the mouth of the dragon
and from the mouth of the beast
and from the mouth of the pseudoprophet:
14 for they are spirits of demons doing signs
who proceed to the sovereigns of the earth
and of the whole world
— to gather them to the war
of that mega day of El Sabaoth.

THE THIRD BEATITUDE

15 Behold, I come as a thief.
Blessed — he who watches and guards his garments;
lest he walk naked and they see his misbehavior.
16 And he gathers them together into a place
called in Hebraic, Har Megiddo.

THE SEVENTH PLAGUE

17 And the seventh angel
pours his phial into the air;
and a mega voice
comes from the nave of the heavens
— from the throne,
wording, So be it!
18 And so be it,
voices and thunders and lightnings;
and a mega quake becomes
such as became not
since humanity became upon the earth
— so vast a quake and thus mega.
19 And so be it,
the megalopolis *is* in three parts
and the cities of the goyim fall:
and mega Babel is remembered in sight of Elohim,
to give her
the cup of the wine of the fury of his wrath:
20 and every island flees;
and the mountains are not found:
21 and a mega hail as a talentweight
descends from the heavens upon humanity:
and humanity blasphemes Elohim
from the plague of the hail;
because the plague thereof is extremely mega.

THE MEGA WHORE

17 And one of the seven angels
having the seven phials
comes and speaks with me,
wording to me, Come here!
I show you the judgment of the mega whore
sitting on many waters:
2 with whom the sovereigns of the earth whored;
and who settle on the earth
who intoxicate from the wine of her whoredom.
3 So he bears me in spirit to the wilderness:
and I see a woman sitting on a scarlet beast
full of names of blasphemy
having seven heads and ten horns.
4 And the woman is arrayed in purple and scarlet
and gilded with gold and precious stones and pearls;
having a golden cup in her hand
full of abominations and impurity of her whoredom:

REVELATION 17

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

5 And upon her forehead was a name written scribed,
MYSTERY,
BABYLON BABEL THE GREAT MEGA,
THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS WHORES
AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH.
6 And I saw the woman
drunken with **intoxicated** from the blood
of the **saints holy**,
and with **from** the blood
of the **martyrs witnesses** of **Jesus Yah Shua**:
and when I saw her,
I **wondered with great admiration**
marvelled a mega marvel.
THE MYSTERY OF THE WOMAN
AND THE BEAST FROM THE SEA
7 And the angel said unto me,
*Wherefore didst **Why marvellest** thou marvel?*
I **will tell shall say** thee the mystery of the woman,
and of the beast that *carrieth* **beareth** her,
which hath the seven heads and ten horns.
8 The beast that thou sawest
was, and is not;
and **shall is about to** ascend
out of the *bottomless pit* **abyss**,
and go into *perdition* **destruction**:
and they that *dwelt* **settle** on the earth
shall *wonder* **marvel**,
whose names were not *written* **scribed**
in the *book* **scroll** of life
from the foundation of the *world* **cosmos**,
when they *behold* **see** the beast
that was, and is not, *and yet* **though** is.
9 And here is the mind which hath wisdom.
The seven heads are seven mountains,
on which **whereon** the woman sitteth.
10 And there are seven **kings sovereigns**:
five are fallen,
and one is,
and the other is not yet come;
and when he cometh,
he must *continue* **abide** a *short space* **little**.
11 And the beast that was, and is not,
even he is the eighth, and is of the seven,
and goeth into *perdition* **destruction**.
12 And the ten horns which thou sawest
are ten **kings sovereigns**,
which have *received* **taken** no *kingdom* **sovereigndom**
as yet;
but *receive power* **take authority** as **kings sovereigns**
one hour with the beast.
13 These have one *mind* **opinion**,
and shall *give* **distribute** their *power* **own dynamis**
and *strength* **authority** unto the beast.
14 These shall *make* war with the Lamb,
and the Lamb shall *overcome* **triumph over** them:
for because he is **Lord Adonay** of **lords adoniym**,
and **King Sovereign** of **kings sovereigns**:
and they that are with him are called,
and *chosen* **select**, and *faithful* **trustworthy**.
15 And he *saith* **wordeth** unto me,
The waters which thou sawest, where the whore sitteth,
are peoples, and multitudes,
and *nations* **goyim**, and tongues.
16 And the ten horns which thou sawest upon the beast,
these shall hate the whore,
and shall make her desolate and naked,
and shall eat her flesh, and burn her *with* **in** fire.
17 For *God hath put* **Elohim gave** in their hearts
to *fulfil* **deal** his *will* **opinion**,
and to *agree* **deal one opinion**,
and give their *kingdom* **sovereigndom** unto the beast,
until the *words* **rhemas** of **God Elohim**
shall be fulfilled/**shalamed**.
18 And the woman which thou sawest
is that *great city* **megalopolis**,
which *reigneth* **having sovereigndom**
over the **kings sovereigns** of the earth.

APOCALYPSE 17

exeGesés companion BIBLE

5 and on her forehead, a name scribed,
MYSTERY!
BABEL THE MEGA
THE MOTHER OF WHORES
AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH.
6 And I see the woman
intoxicated from the blood of the holy
and from the blood of the witnesses of Yah Shua:
and when I see her I marvel a mega marvel.
THE MYSTERY OF THE WOMAN
AND THE BEAST FROM THE SEA
7 And the angel says to me, Why marvel?
I say to you the mystery of the woman
and of the beast who bears her
— having the seven heads and ten horns.
8 The beast you see was, and is not:
and is about to ascend from the abyss
and go into destruction:
and they who settle on the earth marvel
— whose names are not scribed in the scroll of life
from the foundation of the cosmos
— when they see the beast
who was and is not and though is.
9 And here is the mind having wisdom:
the seven heads are seven mountains
whereon the woman sits.
10 And there are seven sovereigns:
five are fallen
and one is
and the other has not yet come;
and when he comes he must abide a little.
11 And the beast who was and is not
he is also the eighth
and is of the seven
and goes into destruction.
12 And the ten horns you see are ten sovereigns,
who take no sovereigndom as yet;
but take authority as sovereigns with the beast
one hour.
13 These have one opinion
and distribute their own dynamis and authority
to the beast.
14 These war with the Lamb
and the Lamb triumphs over them:
because he is Adonay of adoniym
and Sovereign of sovereigns:
and those with him
are called and select and trustworthy.
15 And he words to me,
The waters you see, where the whore sits,
are peoples and multitudes and goyim and tongues.
16 And the ten horns you see on the beast,
these hate the whore
and make her desolate and naked
and eat her flesh and burn her in fire.
17 For Elohim gives in their hearts to deal his opinion;
and to deal one opinion
and give their sovereigndom to the beast,
until the rhemas of Elohim are fulfilled/shalamed.
18 And the woman you see is that megalopolis,
having sovereigndom over the sovereigns of the earth.

REVELATION 18

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

BABEL IS FALLEN, IS FALLEN

18

And after these *things*
 I saw another angel
come down **descend** from *heaven* **the heavens**,
 having *great power* **mega authority**;
 and the earth was lightened *with* **by** his glory.

2 And he cried *mightily* **in might**
 with a *strong* **mega** voice, *saying* **wording**,
Babylon **Babel** the *great* **mega** is fallen, is fallen,
 and is become the *habitation* **settlement** of *devils* **demons**,
 and the *hold* **guardhouse** of every *foul* **impure** spirit,
 and a *cage* **guardhouse**
 of every *unclean* **impure** and hateful *bird* **fowl**.

3 For **Because** all *nations* **goyim** have drunk of the wine
 of the *wrath* **fury** of her *fornication* **whoredom**,
 and the *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth
 have *committed* **fornication** **whored** with her,
 and the merchants of the earth are *waxed rich* **enriched**
through **from** the *abundance* **dynamis**
 of her *delicacies* **luxuries**.

4 And I heard another voice from *heaven* **the heavens**,
saying **wording**, Come out of her, my people,
 that ye be not *partakers* **co—partakers** of her sins,
 and that ye *receive* **take** not of her plagues.

5 For **Because** her sins
 have *reached* **followed** unto *heaven* **the heavens**,
 and *God* **Elohim** hath remembered her *iniquities* **injustices**.

6 *Reward* **Give** her
 even as she *rewarded* **gave to** you,
 and double unto her double according to her works:
 in the cup which she hath *filled* **fill** **mingled**
mingle to her double.

7 *How* **As** much **as** she hath glorified herself,
 and *lived* **deliciously** **luxuriated**,
 so much *torment* **torture** and *sorrow* **mourning** give her:
for **because** she *saith* **wordeth** in her heart,
 I sit a *queen* **sovereigness**, and am no widow,
 and shall **no way** see no *sorrow* **mourning**.

8 *Therefore* **For this** shall her plagues come in one day,
 death, and *sorrow* **mourning**, and famine;
 and she shall be *utterly* **burned with** **burnt in** fire:
for strong **because mighty**
 is the *Lord* **God** **Yah Veh Elohim**
 who judgeth her.

SOVEREIGNS WEEP OVER THE FALL OF BABEL

9 And the *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth,
 who have *committed* **fornication** **whored**
 and *lived* **deliciously** **luxuriated** with her,
 shall *bewail* **weep for** her, and *lament for* **chop over** her,
 when they shall see the smoke of her *burning* **firing**,

10 Standing **from** afar off
 for the *fear* **awe** of her *torment* **torture**, *saying* **wording**,
Alas **Woe**, *alas* **woe** that *great city* **Babylon** **megalopolis** **Babel**,
 that mighty city!
for **because** in one hour is thy judgment come.

MERCHANTS WEEP OVER THE FALL OF BABEL

11 And the merchants of the earth
 shall weep and mourn over her;
for **because** *no man* **one**
buyeth their merchandise **marketeth her wares** *any* **no** more:

12 The *merchandise* **wares** of gold, and silver,
 and precious stones, and of pearls,
 and *fine* **white** linen, and purple, and silk, and scarlet,
 and all *thyine wood* **incense timber**,
 and all *manner* vessels of *ivory* **elephantine**,
 and all *manner* vessels of most precious *wood* **timber**,
 and of *brass* **copper**, and iron, and marble,

13 And cinnamon, and *odours* **incense**,
 and *ointments* **myrrh**, and frankincense,
 and wine, and *olive* **oil**,
 and fine flour, and *wheat* **grain**,
 and *beasts* **animals**, and sheep, and horses, and chariots,
 and *slaves* **bodies**, and souls of *men* **humanity**.

14 And the *fruits* **evening hour**
that thy soul lusted after **of thy soul's panting**
 are *departed* **gone** from thee,
 and all *things which were dainty* **the greasy**
 and *goodly* **radiant** are *departed* **gone** from thee,
 and thou shalt find them no more *at all* **no way**.

APOCALYPSE 18

exeGeses companion BIBLE

BABEL IS FALLEN, IS FALLEN

18

And after these
 I see another angel descending from the heavens
 having mega authority;
 and the earth is lit by his glory.

2 And he cries in might with a mega voice,
 wording, Babel the mega is fallen! Is fallen!
 and becomes the settlement of demons
 and the guardhouse of every impure spirit
 and a guardhouse of every impure and hateful fowl.

3 Because all goyim drank
 of the wine of the fury of her whoredom
 and the sovereigns of the earth whored with her
 and the merchants of the earth enriched
 from the dynamis of her luxuries.

4 And I hear another voice from the heavens,
 wording, Come from her, my people,
 that you not co—partake of her sins
 and that you not take of her plagues.

5 Because her sins follow to the heavens
 and Elohim remembers her injustices.

6 Give to her even as she gave to you
 and double to her double according to her works:
 in the cup she mingles, mingle to her double:
 as much as she glorifies herself and luxuriates
 so much torture and mourning give her:
 because she words in her heart,
 I sit a sovereigness and am no widow
 and never no way see mourning.

8 For this her plagues come in one day
 — death and mourning and famine;
 and she utterly burns in fire:
 because mighty is Yah Veh Elohim who judges her.

SOVEREIGNS WEEP OVER THE FALL OF BABEL

9 And the sovereigns of the earth
 who whored and luxuriated with her,
 weep for her and chop over her
 when they see the smoke of her firing,
 standing from afar for the awe of her torture,
 wording, Woe!
 Woe that megalopolis Babel! — that mighty city!
 because in one hour is your judgment iis come.

MERCHANTS WEEP OVER THE FALL OF BABEL

11 And the merchants of the earth
 weep and mourn over her;
 because no one markets her wares never more

12 — the wares of gold and silver
 and precious stones and of pearls
 and white linen and purple and silk and scarlet
 and all incense timber and all vessels of elephantine
 and all vessels of most precious timber
 and of copper and iron and marble
 and cinnamon and incense
 and myrrh and frankincense and wine and olive oil
 and fine flour and grain
 and animals and sheep and horses and chariots
 and bodies and souls of humanity.

14 And the evening hour of the panting of your soul
 is gone from you;
 and all the greasy and radiant
 are gone from you;
 and you no way find them never more.

REVELATION 18, 19

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

15 The merchants of these things,
which were *made rich* **enriched** by her,
shall stand **from** afar off
for the *fear* **awe** of her *torment* **torture**,
weeping and *wailing* **mourning**,
16 And *saying* **wording**, *Alas* **Woe**,
alas **woe** that *great city* **megalopolis**,
that was *clothed* **arrayed** in *fine* **white** linen,
and purple, and scarlet,
and *decked with* **gilded** in gold,
and precious stones, and pearls!
17 For **Because** in one hour
so *great* **vast** riches is *come to nought* **desolated**.
PILOTS, PASSENGERS, AND SAILERS
CRY OVER THE FALL OF BABEL
And every *shipmaster* **pilot**,
and all the *company* **homogeneous crowd**
in *ships* **sailers**,
and *sailors* **ship crew**, and as many as *trade* **work** by sea,
stood **from** afar off,
18 And cried
when they saw the smoke of her *burning* **firing**,
saying **wording**,
What city is like unto this *great city* **megalopolis**!
19 And they cast dust on their heads, and cried,
weeping and *wailing* **mourning**, *saying* **wording**, *Alas* **Woe**,
alas **woe** that *great city* **megalopolis**,
wherein were *made rich* **enriched**
all that had *ships* **sailers** in the sea
by reason of **from** her *costliness* **preciousness**!
for **because** in one hour is she *made desolate* **desolated**.
20 Rejoice over her, *thou heaven* **heavens**,
and ye holy apostles and prophets;
for God **because** **Elohim**
hath *avenged you on* **judged your judgment** of her.
21 And a **one** mighty angel took up a stone
like a great as a mega millstone, and cast it into the sea,
saying **wording**, Thus with violence
shall that *great city* **Babylon megalopolis Babel**
be *thrown down* **cast**,
and shall **never no way**
still be found *no more* at all.
22 And the voice of *harpers* **citherists**, and musicians,
and of *pipers* **flutists**, and trumpeters,
shall **never no way still** be heard *no more* at all in thee;
and *no craftsman* **any technician**,
of whatsoever *craft he be* **technique**,
shall **never no way still** be found *any more* in thee;
and the *sound* **voice** of a millstone
shall **never no way still** be heard *no more* at all in thee;
23 And the light of a candle
shall **never no way still** *shine no more* at all **manifest** in thee;
and the voice of the bridegroom and of the bride
shall **never no way still** be heard *no more* at all in thee:
for because thy merchants
were the *great men* **magistrates** of the earth;
for by because in thy *sorceries* **pharmacies**
were all *nations* **deceived** **goyim seduced**.
24 And in her was found the blood of prophets,
and of *saints* **the holy**,
and of all that were *slain* **slaughtered** upon the earth.
THE FOUR HALALU YAHS FROM THE HEAVENS
19 And after these things I heard a *great mega* voice
of *much people* **many multitudes** in *heaven* **the heavens**,
saying **wording**, *Alleluia* **Halalu Yah**;
Salvation, and glory, and honour, and *power* **dynamis**,
unto the *Lord* **Yah Veh** our *God* **Elohim**:
2 For **Because** true and *righteous* **just** are his judgments:
for because he hath judged the *great mega* whore,
which *did corrupt* **corrupted** the earth
with in her *fornication* **whoredom**,
and hath avenged the blood of his servants at
from her hand.
3 And *again* **secondly** they said, *Alleluia* **Halalu Yah**.
And her smoke *rose up* **ascended**
for ever and ever **unto the eons of the eons**.

APOCALYPSE 18, 19

exeGesés companion BIBLE

15 Her merchants of these, whom she enriched,
stand from afar for the awe of her torture
— weeping and mourning
and wording, **Woe!**
Woe! — that megalopolis
arrayed in white linen and purple and scarlet
and gilded in gold and precious stones and pearls!
16 Because in one hour so vast riches are desolated.
PILOTS, PASSENGERS, AND SAILERS
CRY OVER THE FALL OF BABEL
And every pilot
and all the homogeneous crowd in sailers
and ship crew and as many as work by sea stand from afar;
17 and seeing the smoke of her firing, they cry,
wording, What is like to this megalopolis!
18 And they cast dust on their heads and cry,
weeping and mourning, wording, **Woe!**
Woe that megalopolis,
wherein all who had sailers in the sea
enriched from her preciousnesses!
Because in one hour she desolated.
19 Rejoice over her,
O the heavens and you holy apostles and prophets;
because Elohim judges your judgment of her.
20 And one mighty angel takes a stone
as a mega millstone and casts it into the sea, wording,
Thus with violence is that megalopolis Babel cast;
and are never ever no way still found in you:
21 and the voice of citherists and musicians
and of flutists and trumpeters
are never ever no way still heard in you;
and any technician of whatever technique,
are never ever no way still found in you;
and the voice of a millstone
are never ever no way still heard in you;
22 and the light of a candle
are never ever no way still manifested in you;
and the voice of the bridegroom and of the bride
are never ever no way still heard in you:
because your merchants
are the magistrates of the earth;
because in your pharmacies
all goyim are seduced:
23 and in her
are found the blood of prophets and of the holy
and of all those slaughtered on the earth.
THE FOUR HALALU YAHS FROM THE HEAVENS
19 And after these
I hear a mega voice of many multitudes
in the heavens,
wording, Halalu Yah!
Salvation and glory and honor and dynamis,
to Yah Veh our Elohim:
2 because true and just are his judgments:
because he judged the mega whore
who corrupted the earth in her whoredom
and avenged the blood of his servants from her hand.
3 And secondly they say, Halalu Yah!
— and her smoke ascends to the eons of the eons.

REVELATION 19

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

4 And the four and twenty elders
and the four *beasts* **live beings** fell down
and worshipped *God Elohim* that sat on the throne,
saying **wording**, Amen; *Alleluia Halalu Yah*.

5 And a voice came out of the throne, saying **wording**,
Praise Halal our *God Elohim*, all ye his servants,
and ye that *fear awe* him,
both *small minute* and *great mega*.

6 And I heard
as *it were* the voice of a *great vast* multitude,
and as the voice of many waters,
and as the voice of mighty thunderings,
saying **wording**, *Alleluia Halalu Yah*:
for **because**
the *Lord God omnipotent Yah Veh El Sabaoth* reigneth.

THE MARRIAGE OF THE LAMB IS COME

7 Let us be glad **cheer** and *rejoice jump* for joy,
and give *honour glory* to him:
for **because** the marriage of the Lamb is come,
and his *wife woman* hath *made prepared* herself ready.

8 And to her was *granted given*
that she should be arrayed in *fine white* linen,
clean pure and *white radiant*:
for the *fine white* linen
is the *righteousness justification* of *saints the holy*.

THE FOURTH BEATITUDE

9 And he *saith wordeth* unto me, *Write Scribe*,
Blessed are they
which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb.
And he *saith wordeth* unto me,
These are the true *sayings words* of *God Elohim*.
And I fell *at in front of* his feet to worship him.
And he *said worded* unto me, *See thou do it* not:
I am thy *fellow servant co—servant*,
and of thy brethren
that have the *testimony witness* of *Jesus Yah Shua*:
worship *God Elohim*:
for the *testimony witness* of *Jesus Yah Shua*
is the spirit of prophecy.

**THE SOVEREIGN OF SOVEREIGNS, ADONAY OF ADONIYM,
AND WARRIORS IN THE HEAVENS SMITE THE GOYIM**

11 And I saw *heaven the heavens* opened,
and behold, a white horse;
and he that sat upon him
was called *faithful Trustworthy* and True,
and in *righteousness justness*
he *doth judge judgeth* and *make war warreth*.
His eyes were as a flame of fire,
and on his head were many *crowns diadems*;
and he had a name *written scribed*,
that no man knew, *but except* he himself.

13 And he was *clothed arrayed* with a *vesture garment*
dipped baptized in blood:
and his name is called The Word of *God Elohim*.

14 And the *armies which were warriors* in *heaven the heavens*
followed him upon white horses,
clothed endued in *fine white* linen,
white and *clean pure*.

15 And out of his mouth
goeth proceedeth a sharp *sword sabre*,
that *with in* it he should smite the *nations goyim*:
and he shall *rule shepherd* them
with in a *rod scion* of iron:
and he *treadeth trampleth* the *winepress wine trough*
of the *fierceness fury* and wrath
of *Almighty God El Sabaoth*.

16 And he hath on his *vesture garment* and on his thigh
a name *written scribed*,
*KING SOVEREIGN OF KINGS SOVEREIGNS,
AND LORD ADONAY OF LORDS ADONIYM*.

THE SUPPER OF THE MEGA ELOHIM

17 And I saw *an one* angel standing in the sun;
and he cried with a *loud mega* voice,
saying **wording**
to all the fowls that fly in the *midst of heaven midheavens*,
Come and gather yourselves together
unto the supper of the *great God mega Elohim*;

APOCALYPSE 19

exeGeses companion BIBLE

4 And the twenty—four elders and the four live beings
fall and worship Elohim sitting on the throne,
wording, Amen! Halalu Yah!

5 And a voice comes from the throne, wording,
Halal our Elohim,
all you his servants and you who awe him
— both minute and mega.

6 And I hear as the voice of a vast multitude
and as the voice of many waters
and as the voice of mighty thunderings,
wording, Halalu Yah!
because Yah Veh El Sabaoth reigns.

THE MARRIAGE OF THE LAMB IS COME

7 Cheer and jump for joy and give him glory!
because the marriage of the Lamb is come
and his woman prepares herself.

8 And she is given to be arrayed in white linen
— pure and radiant:
for the white linen is the justification of the holy.

THE FOURTH BEATITUDE

9 And he words to me, Scribe, Blessed
— those called to the marriage supper of the Lamb.

And he words to me,
These are the true words of Elohim.

10 — and I fall in front of his feet to worship him.

And he words to me, See — not:
I am co—servant of you and of your brothers
who have the witness of Yah Shua:
worship Elohim:
for the witness of Yah Shua is the spirit of prophecy.

**THE SOVEREIGN OF SOVEREIGNS, ADONAY OF ADONIYM,
AND WARRIORS IN THE HEAVENS SMITE THE GOYIM**

11 And I see the heavens open;
and behold, a white horse;
and he sitting on him is called Trustworthy and True;
and in justness he judges and wars.

12 His eyes are as a flame of fire
and on his head are many diadems;
and he has a name scribed,
that no man knows — except he himself:
and he is arrayed with a garment baptized in blood:
and his name is called The Word of Elohim.

14 And the warriors in the heavens
follow him on white horses,
endued in white linen — white and pure:
and a sharp sabre proceeds from his mouth
to smite the goyim
and to shepherd them in a scion of iron:
and he tramples the wine trough
of the fury and wrath of El Sabaoth.

16 And on his garment and on his thigh
he has a name scribed,
SOVEREIGN OF SOVEREIGNS,
AND ADONAY OF ADONIYM.

THE SUPPER OF THE MEGA ELOHIM

17 And I see one angel standing in the sun;
and he cries with a mega voice
— wording to all the fowls that fly in the midheavens,
Come and gather yourselves together
to the supper of the mega Elohim

REVELATION 19, 20

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

18 That ye may eat the flesh of *kings* **sovereigns**,
and the flesh of *captains* **chiliarchs**,
and the flesh of mighty *men*,
and the flesh of horses, and of them that sit on them,
and the flesh of all *men*,
both free **liberated** and *bond* **servant**,
both small **minute** and *great* **mega**.

19 And I saw the beast,
and the *kings* **sovereigns** of the earth,
and their *armies* **warriors**, gathered together to make war
against with him that sat on the horse,
and *against with* his army **warriors**.

BEAST AND PSEUDO PROPHET CAST INTO THE LAKE OF FIRE

20 And the beast was *taken* **seized**,
and with him the *false* **pseudo** prophet
that *wrought miracles before him* **did signs in his sight**,
with in which he *deceived* **seduced** them
that had *received taken* the *mark* **tattoo** of the beast,
and them that worshipped his *image* **icon**.
These *both two* were cast alive
into a lake of fire burning *with brimstone* **in sulphur**.

THE SLAUGHTER OF THE REST

21 And the *remnant* **rest** were *slain* **slaughtered**
with at the sword **sabre** of him
that sat upon the horse,
which *sword* proceeded out of his mouth:
and all the fowls were filled *with from* their flesh.

SATAN BOUND

20 And I saw an angel
come down **descending** from heaven **the heavens**,
having the *key of the* **bottomless pit abyss**
and a *great chain* **mega fetter** in his hand.

2 And he *laid hold on* **overpowered** the dragon,
that *old* **ancient** serpent,
which is *the Devil* **Diabolos**, and Satan,
and bound him a thousand years,
3 And cast him into the *bottomless pit* **abyss**,
and shut him *up*, and *set a seal upon* **sealed** him,
that he should **never no way**
deceive still seduce the *nations* **goyim** *no more*,
till the thousand years
should be fulfilled/**shalamed**:
and after *that* **these**
he must be loosed a little *season* **time**.

THE AXED SOULS REIGN WITH MESSIAH

4 And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them,
and judgment was given unto them:
and *I saw* the souls of them that were *beheaded* **axed**
for the witness of *Jesus* **Yah Shua**,
and for the word of *God* **Elohim**,
and which had not worshipped the beast,
neither his *image* **icon**,
neither had *received taken* his *mark* **tattoo**
upon their foreheads, or in their hands;
and they lived and reigned with *Christ* **Messiah**
a thousand years.

THE FIRST RESURRECTION

5 But the rest of the dead *lived* **relived** not *again*
until the thousand years
were finished **shall be fulfilled/shalamed**.
This is the first resurrection.

THE FIFTH BEATITUDE

6 Blessed and holy
is he that hath *part* in the first resurrection:
on such **over these**
the second death hath no *power* **authority**,
but they shall be priests
of *God* **Elohim** and of *Christ* **Messiah**,
and shall reign with him a thousand years.

SATAN LOOSED

7 And when the thousand years
are *expired* **fulfilled/shalamed**,
Satan shall be loosed out of his *prison* **guardhouse**,
And shall go *out to deceive* **seduce** the *nations* **goyim**
which are in the four *quarters* **corners** of the earth,
Gog, and Magog, to gather them together to *battle* **war**:
the number of whom *is* as the sand of the sea.

APOCALYPSE 19, 20

exeGeses companion BIBLE

18 to eat the flesh of sovereigns,
and the flesh of chiliarchs,
and the flesh of mighty,
and the flesh of horses,
and of those sitting on them,
and the flesh of all
— liberated and servant — minute and mega.

19 And I see the beast
and the sovereigns of the earth and their warriors
gather together to make war
with him sitting on the horse and with his warriors.

BEAST AND PSEUDOPROPHET CAST INTO THE LAKE OF FIRE

20 And the beast is seized;
and with him
the pseudoprophet who did signs in his sight;
in which he seduced them
who took the tattoo of the beast
and them who worship his icon.
These two are cast alive
into a lake of fire burning in sulphur.

THE SLAUGHTER OF THE REST

21 And the rest are slaughtered
at the sabre of him sitting upon the horse,
proceeding from his mouth:
and all the fowls fill from their flesh.

SATAN BOUND

20 And I see an angel descending from the heavens,
having the key of the abyss;
and a mega fetter in his hand:
2 and he overpowers the dragon
— that ancient serpent who is Diabolos and Satan
and binds him a thousand years:
3 and casts him into the abyss
and shuts him and seals him,
so that he never no way still seduces the goyim
till the thousand years are fulfilled/shalamed:
and after these he must be loosed a little time.

THE AXED SOULS REIGN WITH MESSIAH

4 And I see thrones and those sitting thereon:
and they are given judgment:
and the souls of those axed
for the witness of Yah Shua
and for the word of Elohim
who neither worshipped the beast nor his icon;
nor had taken his tattoo
on their foreheads or in their hands;
and they live and reign with Messiah
a thousand years.

THE FIRST RESURRECTION

5 And the rest of the dead relive not
until the thousand years are fulfilled/shalamed.
This is the first resurrection.

THE FIFTH BEATITUDE

6 Blessed and holy
whoever has part in the first resurrection;
over these the second death has no authority:
but they become priests of Elohim and of Messiah
and reign with him a thousand years.

SATAN LOOSED

7 And when the thousand years
are fulfilled/shalamed,
Satan is loosed from his guardhouse;
and goes to seduce the goyim
in the four corners of the earth
8 — Gog and Magog — to gather them together to war:
whose number is as the sand of the sea.

REVELATION 20, 21

exeGeses ready research BIBLE

- 9 And they went up **ascended** on the breadth of the earth,
and *compassed* **surrounded**
the *camp* **encampment** of the *saints* about **holy**,
and the beloved city:
and fire *came down* **descended** from *God Elohim*
out of *heaven* **the heavens**, and devoured them.
- THE SENTENCE OF DIABOLOS**
- 10 And *the devil* **Diabolos** that *deceived* **seduced** them
was cast into the lake of fire and *brimstone* **sulphur**,
where the beast and the *false* **pseudo** prophet are,
and shall be *tormented* **tortured** day and night
for ever and ever **unto the eons of the eons**.
- THE JUDGMENT OF THE EARTH AND THE HEAVENS**
- 11 And I saw a *great* **mega** white throne,
and him that sat on it,
from whose face the earth and the *heaven* **heavens** fled away;
and there was found no place for them.
- THE JUDGMENT OF THE HOLY**
- 12 And I saw the dead, *small* **minute** and *great* **mega**,
stand *before God* **in sight of Elohim**;
and the *books* **scrolls** were opened:
and another *book* **scroll** was opened, which is *the book* of life:
and the dead were judged out of those *things*
which were written **scribed** in the *books* **scrolls**,
according to their works.
- THE JUDGMENT OF THE UNHOLY**
- 13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it;
and death and *hell* **Hades/Sheol**
delivered **gave** up the dead which were in them:
and they were judged
every man **each** according to their works.
- THE SENTENCE OF DEATH AND HADES/SHEOL**
- 14 And death and *hell* **Hades/Sheol**
were cast into the lake of fire.
This is the second death.
- THE SENTENCE OF THE UNHOLY**
- 15 And *whosoever if any* was not found
written **scribed** in the *book* **scroll** of life
was cast into the lake of fire.
- THE NEW HEAVENS AND THE NEW EARTH**
- 21** And I saw a **the** new *heaven* **heavens** and a **the** new earth:
for the first *heaven* **heavens** and the first earth
were passed away;
and there was *no more* **not still a** sea.
- THE NEW YERU SHALEM**
- 2 And I *John* **Yahn** saw the holy city,
new Jerusalem **Yeru Shalem**,
coming down **descending** from *God Elohim*
out of *heaven* **the heavens**,
prepared as a bride adorned for her *husband* **man**.
- THE NEW RELATIONSHIP OF ELOHIM WITH THE HOLY**
- 3 And I heard a *great* **mega** voice out of *heaven* **the heavens**
saying **wording**, Behold,
the tabernacle of *God Elohim* is with *men* **humanity**,
and he *will dwell* **shall tabernacle** with them,
and they shall be his *people* **peoples**,
and *God Elohim* himself shall be with them,
and *be* — their *God* **Elohim**.
- 4 And *God* **Elohim**
shall wipe away all tears from their eyes;
and there shall *be no more* **still becomes no** death,
neither sorrow, nor crying,
neither shall there **no way still** be *any more* pain:
for because the *former things* **first** are *passed away* **gone**.
- 5 And he that sat upon the throne said,
Behold, I make all *things* new.
And he said **worded** unto me, *Write* **Scribe**:
for because these words are true and *faithful* **trustworthy**.
- 6 And he said unto me, *It is done* **hath become**.
I am Alpha and Omega **I AM the A and the Ω**,
the beginning and the *end* **completion/shalom**.
I *will* **shall** give unto him that is athirst
of the fountain of the water of life *freely* **gratuitously**.
- 7 He that *overcometh* **triumpheth**
shall inherit all *things*
and I *will* **shall** be *his* **to him**, *God* **Elohim**,
and he shall be *my* **to me**, son.

APOCALYPSE 20, 21

exeGeses companion BIBLE

- 9 And they ascend on the breadth of the earth
and surround the encampment of the holy
and the beloved city:
and fire descends from Elohim from the heavens
and consumes them.
- THE SENTENCE OF DIABOLOS**
- 10 And Diabolos who seduced them
is cast into the lake of fire and sulphur
where the beast and the pseudoprophet are:
to be tortured day and night to the eons of the eons.
- THE JUDGMENT OF THE EARTH AND THE HEAVENS**
- 11 And I see a mega white throne
and him sitting thereon
from whose face the earth and the heavens flee;
and no place is found for them.
- THE JUDGMENT OF THE HOLY**
- 12 And I see the dead — minute and mega
standing in sight of Elohim;
and the scrolls are opened:
and another scroll is opened — of life:
and the dead are judged
from that scribed in the scrolls
according to their works.
- THE JUDGMENT OF THE UNHOLY**
- 13 And the sea gives up the dead in it;
and death and Hades/Sheol give up the dead in them:
and they are each judged according to their works.
- THE SENTENCE OF DEATH AND HADES/SHEOL**
- 14 And death and Hades/Sheol are cast into the lake of fire.
This is the second death.
- THE SENTENCE OF THE UNHOLY**
- 15 And if any are not found scribed in the scroll of life
they are cast into the lake of fire.
- THE NEW HEAVENS AND THE NEW EARTH**
- 21** And I see the new heavens and a new earth:
for the first heavens and the first earth passed away;
and there is not still a sea.
- THE NEW YERU SHALEM**
- 2 And I Yahn see the holy city — new Yeru Shalem
descending from Elohim from the heavens
prepared as a bride adorned for her man.
- THE NEW RELATIONSHIP OF ELOHIM WITH THE HOLY**
- 3 And I hear a mega voice from the heavens, wording,
Behold, the tabernacle of Elohim is with humanity
and he tabernacles with them;
and they become his peoples
and Elohim himself becomes with them
— their Elohim.
- 4 And Elohim wipes all tears from their eyes;
and there still becomes
neither death nor sorrow nor crying;
and never no way still becomes pain:
because the first have gone.
- 5 And he sitting on the throne says,
Behold, I make all new.
And he words to me, Scribe:
because these words are true and trustworthy.
- 6 And he says to me, *It is become!*
I AM the A and the Ω,
the beginning and the completion/shalom.
To him who thirsts
I give of the fountain of the water of life gratuitously.
- 7 he who triumphs inherits all;
and I become to him, Elohim
and he becomes to me, son.

REVELATION 21

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE SEVERED RELATIONSHIP OF ELOHIM FROM THE UNHOLY

8 But the *fearful cowardly*, and *unbelieving trustless*,
and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers,
and *sorcerers pharmacutists*, and idolaters,
and all *liars pseudos*,
shall have their part in the lake
which burneth with fire and *brimstone sulphur*:
which is the second death.

THE BRIDE

9 And there came unto me one of the seven angels
which had the seven *vials phials*
full of the seven *last final* plagues,
and *talked spake* with me, *saying wording*, Come hither,
I *will shall* shew thee the bride, the Lamb's *wife woman*.

THE NEW YERU SHALEM

10 And he *carried bore* me away in the spirit
to a *great mega* and high mountain,
and shewed me that *great city megalopolis*,
the holy *Jerusalem Yeru Shalem*,
descending out of *heaven the heavens* from *God Elohim*,
11 Having the glory of *God Elohim*:
and her light was like unto a stone most precious,
even like as a jasper stone, *clear as crystal crystalline*;
12 And had a wall *great mega* and high,
and had twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels,
and names *written thereon epigraphed*,
which are *the names of the twelve tribes scions*
of the *children sons of Israel Yisra El*:
13 *On By* the east *rising* three gates;
on by the north three gates;
on by the south three gates;
and *on by* the west *lowering* three gates.
14 And the wall of the city had twelve foundations,
and in them
the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

THE MEASUREMENTS OF THE NEW YERU SHALEM

15 And he that *talked spake* with me
had a golden reed to measure the city,
and the gates thereof, and the wall thereof.
16 And the city lieth foursquare,
and the length is as *large long* as the breadth:
and he measured the city with the reed,
twelve thousand *furlongs stadia*.
The length and the breadth and the height of it are equal.
17 And he measured the wall thereof,
an hundred *and forty and four* cubits,
according to the measure of a *man human*,
that which is, of the angel.

THE MATERIALS OF THE NEW YERU SHALEM

18 And the *building structure* of the wall of it
was *of jasper*:
and the city was pure gold, like unto *clear pure* glass.
19 And the foundations of the wall of the city
were *garnished adorned*
with all *manner of* precious stones.
The first foundation was jasper; the second, sapphire;
the third, a chalcedony; the fourth, an emerald;
20 The fifth, sardonyx; the sixth, sardius;
the seventh, chrysolite; the eighth, beryl;
the ninth, a topaz; the tenth, a chrysoprasus;
the eleventh, a jacinth; the twelfth, an amethyst.
21 And the twelve gates were twelve pearls:
every several each one gate was of one pearl:
and the *street roadway* of the city was pure gold,
as *it were transparent diaphanous* glass.

APOCALYPSE 21

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE SEVERED RELATIONSHIP OF ELOHIM FROM THE UNHOLY

8 And the cowardly and trustless
and the abominable and murderers
and whoremongers and pharmacutists
and idolaters and all pseudos
have their part in the lake
burning with fire and sulphur
— being the second death.

THE BRIDE

9 And one of the seven angels comes to me
— who had the seven phials
full of the seven final plagues
and speaks with me, wording, Come hither!
I show you the bride, the woman of the Lamb.

THE NEW YERU SHALEM

10 And in spirit,
he bears me to a mega and high mountain
and shows me that megalopolis
the holy Yeru Shalem
descending from the heavens from Elohim;
11 having the glory of Elohim:
and her light is like to a stone most precious
as a jasper stone, crystalline;
12 having a wall mega and high,
having twelve gates,
and at the gates twelve angels,
and names epigraphed,
being the twelve scions of the sons of Yisra El:
13 by the rising three gates;
by the north three gates;
by the south three gates;
and by the lowering three gates.
14 And the wall of the city has twelve foundations
and in them
the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

THE MEASUREMENTS OF THE NEW YERU SHALEM

15 And he speaking with me has a golden reed
to measure the city and the gates and the wall:
16 and the city lies foursquare
and the length is as long as the breadth:
and he measures the city with the reed,
twelve thousand stadia.
The length and the breadth and the height are equal.
17 And he measures the wall
a hundred and forty—four cubits
— the measure of a human — being the angel.

THE MATERIALS OF THE NEW YERU SHALEM

18 And the structure of the wall is jasper:
and the city is pure gold, like pure glass:
19 and the foundations of the wall of the city
are adorned with all precious stones:
the first foundation, jasper;
the second, sapphire;
the third, chalcedony;
the fourth, emerald;
20 the fifth, sardonyx;
the sixth, sardius;
the seventh, chrysolite;
the eighth, beryl;
the ninth, topaz;
the tenth, chrysoprasus;
the eleventh, jacinth;
the twelfth, amethyst.
21 And the twelve gates are twelve pearls:
each one gate is one pearl:
and the roadway of the city is pure gold
— as diaphanous glass.

REVELATION 21, 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

THE OMISSIONS OF THE NEW YERU SHALEM

22 And I saw no *temple nave* therein;
for the Lord God Almighty **Yah Veh El Sabaoth**
and the Lamb are the *temple nave* of it.
23 And the city had no need of the sun,
neither of the moon, to *shine manifest* in it:
for the glory of *God did lighten Elohim lightened* it,
and the Lamb is the *light candle* thereof.
24 And the *nations goyim* of them which are saved
shall walk in the light of it:
and the *kings sovereigns* of the earth
do bring their glory and honour into it.
25 And the gates of it
shall not **no way** be shut *at all* by day:
for there shall be no night there.
26 And they shall bring the glory and honour
of the *nations goyim* into it.
27 And there shall *in not no wise way* enter into it
anything aught that *defileth profaneth*,
neither *whatsoever worketh doeth* abomination,
or *maketh a lie lieth*:
but **except** they which are *written scribed*
in the Lamb's *book scroll* of life.

THE THRONE, STREAM, AND STAFF OF LIFE OF THE NEW YERU SHALEM

22 And he shewed me a pure *river stream*
of water of life,
clear radiant as *crystal crystalline*,
proceeding out of the throne of *God Elohim* and of the Lamb.
2 In the midst of the *street roadway* of it,
and on *either side hence and hence* of the *river stream*,
was there the *tree staff* of life,
which *bare dealt* twelve *manner of* fruits,
and *yielded gave* her fruit every **each single** month:
and the leaves of the *tree staff*
were for unto the *healing therapy* of the *nations goyim*.
3 And there shall **not still**
be *no more curse any anathema*:
but the throne of *God Elohim* and of the Lamb
shall be in it;
and his servants shall *serve liturgize* him:
4 And they shall see his face;
and his name shall be in their foreheads.
5 And there shall be no night there;
and they need no candle, neither light of the sun;
for the Lord God **because Yah Veh Elohim**
giveth lighteth them *light*:
and they shall reign
for ever and ever **unto the eons of the eons**.

SUMMATION

6 And he said unto me,
These *sayings words* are *faithful trustworthy* and true:
and the Lord God **Yah Veh Elohim** of the holy prophets
sent apostolized his angel
to shew unto his servants *the things those*
which must *shortly be done quickly become*.

THE SIXTH BEATITUDE

7 Behold, I come quickly:
blessed is he that *keepeth guardeth* the *sayings words*
of the prophecy of this *book scroll*.
8 And I *John Yahn* saw these *things*, and heard *them*.
And when I had heard and seen,
I fell *down* to worship
before in front of the feet of the angel
which shewed me these *things*.
9 Then *saith wordeth* he unto me, *See thou do it* not:
for I am thy *fellowservant co—servant*,
and of thy brethren the prophets,
and of them
which *keep guard* the *sayings words* of this *book scroll*:
worship *God Elohim*.
10 And he *saith wordeth* unto me,
Seal not the *sayings words*
of the prophecy of this *book scroll*:
for **because** the *time season* is *at hand near*.

APOCALYPSE 21, 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

THE OMISSIONS OF THE NEW YERU SHALEM

22 And I see no nave therein;
for Yah Veh El Sabaoth and the Lamb
are the nave thereof:
23 and the city needs neither the sun nor the moon
to manifest therein:
for the glory of Elohim lights it
and the Lamb is the candle thereof.
24 And the goyim of the saved
walk in the light thereof:
and the sovereigns of the earth
bring their glory and honor therein:
25 and the gates thereof
are never no way shut by day;
for there is no night there:
26 and they bring the glory and honor
of the goyim therein:
27 and aught that profanes
or does an abomination or a lie
never no way enters therein
— except those scribed
in the scroll of life of the Lamb.

THE THRONE, STREAM, AND STAFF OF LIFE OF THE NEW YERU SHALEM

22 And he shows me a pure stream of water of life
radiant as crystalline
proceeding from the throne of Elohim and of the Lamb.
2 midst the roadway
and hence and hence of the stream
is the staff of life dealing twelve fruits;
giving her fruit each single month:
and the leaves of the staff
are to the therapy of the goyim.
3 And there is not still any anathema:
and the throne of Elohim and of the Lamb are therein;
and his servants liturgize him:
4 and they see his face;
and his name *is* on their foreheads.
5 And there is no night there;
and they need neither candle nor light of the sun;
because Yah Veh Elohim lights them:
and they reign to the eons of the eons.

SUMMATION

6 And he says to me,
These words are trustworthy and true:
and Yah Veh Elohim of the holy prophets
apostolized his angel to show his servants
those which must quickly become.

THE SIXTH BEATITUDE

7 Behold, I come quickly:
blessed — whoever guards the words
of the prophecy of this scroll.
8 And I Yahn see and hear these:
and when I hear and see,
I fall to worship in front of the feet of the angel
who shows me these.
9 And he words to me, See — not:
for I am your co—servant,
and of your brothers the prophets,
and of them who guard the words of this scroll:
worship Elohim.
10 And he words to me,
Seal not the words of the prophecy of this scroll:
because the season is near.

REVELATION 22

exeGesés ready research BIBLE

11 He that is *unjust injureth*, let him *be unjust injure* still:
and he which is *filthy fouleth*, let him *be filthy foul* still:
and he that is *righteous just*,
let him *be righteous justify* still:
and he that is holy, let him *be holy hallowed* still.
12 And, behold, I come quickly;
and my reward is with me,
to give every man **up to each**
according as his work shall be.
13 *I am Alpha and Omega I AM the A and the Ω*,
the beginning and the end **completion/shalom**,
the first and the last **final**.

THE SEVENTH BEATITUDE

14 Blessed are they that do his *commandments misvoth*,
that they may have *right authority* to the *tree staff* of life,
and may enter in through the gates into the city.
15 For without are dogs, and *sorcerers pharmaceutists*,
and whoremongers, and murderers, and idolaters,
and whosoever *loveth befriendeth* and maketh a lie.

EPILOGUE

THE FINAL AFFIRMATION OF AUTHOR AND AUTHORSHIP

16 I *Jesus Yah Shua* have sent mine angel
to *testify witness* unto you
these in the *churches ecclesiae*.
I am I AM the root and the *offspring genos* of David,
and the *bright radiant* and *morning dawning* star.

THE FINAL INVITATION

17 And the Spirit and the bride *say word*, Come.
And let him that heareth, **let him** say, Come.
And let him that is athirst come.
And whosoever *will willeth*,
let him take the water of life *freely gratuitously*.

THE FINAL WARNING

18 For I *testify co—witness* unto every *man one*
that heareth the words of the prophecy
of this *book scroll*,
if whenever any man one shall *add place* unto these *things*,
God Elohim shall *add place* unto him
the plagues that are *written scribed* in this *book scroll*:
19 And *if whenever any man one* shall *take away remove*
from the words of the *book scroll* of this prophecy,
God Elohim shall *take away remove* his part
out of the *book scroll* of life, and out of the holy city,
and from the *things those*
which are written scribed in this *book scroll*.

THE FINAL PROMISE AND PRAYER

20 He which *testifieth witnesseth* these *things*
saith wordeth,
Surely Yea, I come quickly.
Amen.
Even so Yes, come, *Lord Jesus Adonay Yah Shua*.

THE FINAL BENEDICTION

21 The *grace charism*
of our *Lord Jesus Christ Adonay Yah Shua Messiah*
be with you all.
Amen.

APOCALYPSE 22

exeGesés companion BIBLE

11 he who injures, still injures:
and he who fouls, still fouls:
and he who is just, is still justified:
and he who is holy, is still hallowed.
12 And behold, I come quickly;
and my reward is with me
to give to each as to his work.
13 I AM the A and the Ω,
the beginning and the completion/shalom,
the first and the final.

THE SEVENTH BEATITUDE

14 Blessed — whoever does his misvoth;
that they have authority to the staff of life
and enter the city through the gates.
15 For outside are dogs,
and pharmaceutists,
and whoremongers,
and murderers,
and idolaters,
and whoever befriends and makes a lie.

EPILOGUE

THE FINAL AFFIRMATION OF AUTHOR AND AUTHORSHIP

16 I Yah Shua sent my angel to you
to witness these in the ecclesiae.
I AM the root and the genos of David,
the radiant and dawning star.

THE FINAL INVITATION

17 And the Spirit and the bride word, Come;
And whoever hears, say, Come.
And whoever thirsts, come.
And whoever wills, take the water of life gratuitously.

THE FINAL WARNING

18 For I co—witness to everyone
who hears the words of the prophecy of this scroll,
Whenever anyone places to these,
Elohim places to him
the plagues scribed in this scroll:
19 and whenever anyone removes
from the words of the scroll of this prophecy,
Elohim removes his part
from the scroll of life and from the holy city,
and those scribed in this scroll.

THE FINAL PROMISE AND PRAYER

20 He who witnesses these,
words, Yes, I come quickly.
Amen.
Yes, come, Adonay Yah Shua.

THE FINAL BENEDICTION

21 The charism of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah
be with you all.
Amen.

LEXICON

FORWARD

This is a precious season in the annals of time – the hush preceding the parousia – when so many Messianists are eager to more fully understand the Scriptures. And never was it more easy to accomplish.

All Messianists ought to be ever grateful for the Authorized King James Version – for it brought to the English speaking world one of the most trustworthy versions of Scripture.

The greatest help to its fuller comprehension was the work of James Strong, when he prepared his Exhaustive Concordance – and his remarkable numbering system – all without the help of modern technological advances.

And now in this, our day, so many of the old standard research works are being republished keyed to Strong's Concordance.

Some of the most important and helpful are:

Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament,

The Englishman's Hebrew and Chaldee Concordance of the Old Testament by Wigram,

The Englishman's Greek Concordance of the New Testament by Wigram,

Vine's Expository Dictionary of Biblical Words,

and of course, the works on which these others are based,

Strong's Exhaustive Concordance, Complete and Unabridged Edition.

Note: Many of these volumes are still being offered without Strong's numbering system; and even Strong's Concordance is being offered in condensed versions. Insist on unabridged editions keyed to Strong. They will expand your ministry within the span of life Elohim has granted you, and save you countless hours.

These five volumes together with the *exeGesés parallel BIBLE* are all you will ever need to thoroughly research Scripture for yourself – even though English is your only language.

FORMAT:

All words are keyed to Strong's Concordance numbers, thus:

Old Covenant numbers and words are within braces, thus: {0000 Transliterated Hebrew, Arami Word};

New Covenant numbers and words are within brackets, thus: [0000 Transliterated Hellenic Word].

Any words not covered in the LEXICON may be researched by following the guidelines in Strong's Concordance.

PARTS OF SPEECH:

In most Versions, parts of speech have been altered to suit the translator. Where a manuscript would say, I rest you, the translators say, I shall give you rest – thus altering rest from a verb to a noun. Another similar example, I mercy you, the translators say, I shall shew you mercy.

The *exeGesés parallel BIBLE* adheres to the manuscripts.

TRANSLATION versus TRANSLITERATION:

Translating is transcribing a word from one language to another:

Transliterating is transcribing a word from one alphabet to another.

A number of words are treated as **transliterations**, even though they are imperfect; this may be due to alphabetic differences (c, ch, k, ts, z), or prefixes, and suffixes; yet they are offered to draw your attention to the association between languages.

Also included from time to time are words to enhance your understanding:

see draws your attention to a related word;

cp draws your attention to compare a contrasting word;

read draws your attention to a related Scripture;

note: draws your attention to a matter worth noting.

This LEXICON has two sections.

SUMMARIES:

A grouping of words of similar and/or contrasting root or

subject matter. The HEADING presents the words of the grouping. Then each of the words under the HEADING is explicated.

For example, tabernacle, temple, and tent are used interchangeably in most versions; the definition and distinction of each is thoroughly explicated under the following SUMMARY:

TABERNACLE, TEMPLE, TENT:

tabernacle followed by the exegesis.

temple followed by the exegesis.

tent followed by the exegesis.

A thorough exegesis of each of the subjects under the HEADING will not only enlighten you on the various subjects, but give you insight into the understanding of what Scripture doctrinates.

DEFINITIONS:

This section follows the SUMMARY, and contains the translated and transliterated words unique to the *exeGesés parallel BIBLE*.

May your spirit be as enriched as you read and research the unsearchable riches of the Holy Word of Elohim.

SUMMARIES:

ADONAY, ADONI, ADONIM:

Adonay, adoni, adonim transliterated titles {113 adoni, plural adonim} {intensive plural 136 adonay} [2960 kuriakos] [2961 kuriuo] [2962 kurios] Lord; one who has authority, whether deity, sovereign, landlord, slavelord, or a woman's man; in their original consonantal form, Adonay and adoni were one and the same, the vowels being added in the Masoretic Text between 600 and 800 A.D.; the Masoretic text also attempted to distinguish deity by using the intensive, plural Adonay; their fallibility is most evident in Psalm 110:1; and this error was also continued in the New Covenant; and we, in our fallibility, have attempted to correctly distinguish between Adonay, adoni, and adonim; **see** Gesenius, Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament; **cp** Yah Veh.

ANGEL:

angel transliterated noun {4397, 4398 malak} [32 angelos] messenger; an angel may be a messenger of Satan, of humanity, or of Elohim; angels are ministering spirits; this does not imply that they are either embodied or disembodied; the angel of Yah Veh in the Old Covenant is an embodied manifestation of Elohim, and may well have been Adonay Yah Shua; Yahn the Baptizer was the angel prophesied in the Old Covenant, and manifested in the New Covenant. **angels (equal to) adjective** [2465 isangelos] like angels; angelic.

ANOINT, ANOINTED, ANOINTING, MESSIAH:

anoint, libate, pour verb {4886 mashach} {5258 nacak} {5260 necak} {5480 cuwk} {8210 shaphach} [218 alipho] [4689 spendomai] [5548 chrioi] symbolic of setting apart by libating (pouring on) of oil; of pouring a molten image.

anointed noun Messiah transliterated title {4899 mashiach} [5547 christos] anointed; Messiah is a transliteration of the Hebrew mashiach, and a translation of the Hellene Christos; Yah Shua Messiah is the Anointed of Yah Veh; **see** Messias; **note:** the *exeGesés parallel BIBLE* indicates whenever Messiah is preceded by the article, as in "the Messiah".

anointed, libated noun {5257 necik} symbolic of one set apart by libating (pouring on) oil.

anointing noun {4888 moshchah} [5545 chrisma] a spiritual endowment; a chrism; **cp** charism.

anointing flask noun {610 acuwk} a container to hold anointing oil.

anointing oil noun {4887 meshach} oil used for anointing;.

BAPTISM, BAPTIZE, BAPTIZER:

baptism transliterated noun [908 baptisma] immersion in water; an outward expression of inward experience; of identification with the death, burial, and resurrection of the Yah Shua Messiah; of an inward experience in the Holy Spirit. **baptismal noun** {7366 rachats} an instrument used for baptizing.

LEXICON

baptize *transliterated verb* {7364 rachats} [907 baptizo] [909 baptismos] [911 bapto] [1686 embapto] to immerse in a body of water; to immerse in the Holy Spirit; **note:** in the Old Covenant, baptism was required for physical purification of humans and animals; in the New Covenant, the baptism of Yahn the Baptizer was unto repentance; those baptisms were **in** water; the new baptism is **in** the Holy Spirit; all who have taken Yah Shua as their Messiah have the Holy Spirit; all who have been metamorphosed by the renewing of the mind are baptized **in** the Holy Spirit; **see** metamorphose.

Baptizer *transliterated participle* [910 baptistees] one who baptizes; used only of Yahn the Baptizer.

CHARISM, CHARISMA, CHARISMATIC, CHEERS:

charism *transliterated noun* [2580 chen] [5485 charis] grace; an unmerited spiritual endowment bestowed on all who trust in Adonay Yah Shua Messiah as Savior.

charism (bestow) *verb* [5487 charitoo] verb of charism; to endue, or to be endued with charism.

charism (grant) *transliterated verb* [2589 channoth] {2603, 2604 chanan} [5483 charizomai] [5486 charisma] verb of charism; to grant charism.

charisma *transliterated singular noun* **charismata** *plural noun* [2594 chaninah] [5486 charisma] a spiritual endowment.

charismatic *adjective* [2587 channun] having charisma.

cheers *noun* [5463 chairo] a salute of approval, of welcome; often used as a greeting; chairo is the prime root of words indicating charism.

COMPLETE, COMPLETELY, COMPLETER, COMPLETION:

complete *noun* [3651 holoteles] [5046 telios] perfect; finished; finalized; satisfaction, as in a state of being, or as payment of a debt.

complete *verb* [658 apoteleo] [4931 sunteleo] [5048 telioo] [5055 teleo] to perfect; to finish; to finalize; to satisfy.

complete (fully) *verb* [1615 ekteleo] [2005 epiteleo] to fully finish, finalize, perfect, satisfy.

completely *adverb* [3651 holoteles] [3838 panteles] [5049 telios] fully; totally.

completer *noun* [5051 teliootes] one who completes, fully satisfies, pays in full.

completion *noun* [4930 suntelia] [5047 teliootes] [5050 teliosis] [5056 telos] full satisfaction; full payment.

completion (bring to) *verb* [5052 telesphoreo] to bring to full satisfaction. **see** SHALAM, SHALOM.

DOCTOR, DOCTRINE, DOCTRINATE, RABBI:

doctor *noun* [1320 didaskalos] one who doctrinates; the Hellenic translation of rabbi, rabboni.

doctor of the torah *noun* [3547 nomodidaskalos] one who doctrinates the torah.

doctrinate *verb* [1318 didaktos] [1321 didasko] to teach.

doctrinate otherwise, other doctrine *verb* [2085 heterodidaskaleo] to doctrinate differently; to doctrinate different doctrines.

doctrinator of good *noun* [2567 kalodidaskalos] teacher of good.

doctrine *noun* [3948 leqach] [1319 didaskalia] [1322 didakee] teaching.

rabbi *noun* [1988 epistates] a doctor who doctrinates; the Hellenic translation of the Hebrew and Arami word for rabbi; scribed only by Loukas who spoke no Hebrew.

rabbi *transliterated noun* {7227 rab} [4461 rhabbi] a great doctor who doctrinates; the Hebrew transliteration for doctor as scribed by Yahn, Matthaios, and Markos; **see** great.

rabboni *transliterated noun* {7229 rab} [4462 rhabboni] the Arami transliteration for doctor as spoken by others, and scribed by Yahn and Markos; **see** great.

EL, ELAH, ELI, ELOHAH, ELOHIM, ELOI:

Most versions translate the many Hebrew, Aramaic, and Hellenic words of deity without any distinction.

The *exeGesés parallel BIBLE* transliterates all the Hebrew and Arami titles of deity of the Old Covenant, and translates all the Hellenic titles of the New Covenant corresponding to the Hebrew and Arami.

El, Eli *transliterated title* {410 el} [2241 eli] El, as being almighty.

Elah, Elohah, Eloi *transliterated singular title* {426 elah} [433 elohah] [1682 eloi] a male god.

Elohim, elohim *transliterated plural title* {430 elohim} plural of {433 eloahh, elowahh}; this plural title has a dual interpretation; at times it refers to pagan gods, and at times to the triune Father, Son, and Holy Spirit.

Elohimic *adjective* [2304 thios] Elohim-like.

Elohimic *noun* [2305 thiootes] Elohim-likeness.

Elohimic *noun* [2320 theotes] the total essence of Elohim.

Elyon *transliterated title* **uppermost** *adjective* [5943 illay] {5945, 5946 elyon} [5310 hupsistos] an uppermost place or position; a title of Elohim.

Elohim-doctrinated *verb* [2312 theodidaktos] doctrinated by Elohim.

Elohim-hater *noun* [2319 theostugees] one who hates Elohim.

Elohim-opponent *noun* [2314 theomakos] one who opposes Elohim.

Elohim-resister *noun* [2313 theomakeo] one who resists Elohim.

Elohim-reverence *noun* [2317 theosebia] reverence to Elohim.

Elohim-revering *adverb* [2318 theosebees] reverent of Elohim.

Elohim-spirited *verb* [2315 theopnustos] spirited by Elohim.

goddess *title* [2299 thea] a female deity.

theos *title* [2316 theos] a male deity; **note:** when theos refers to Elohim, the *exeGesés parallel BIBLE* so translates.

EUCHARIST, EUCHARISTIC, EUCHARITIZE:

eucharist *transliterated noun; also used verbally* [2169 eucharistia] an offering of charism: verb; to offer charism; usually related to the commemoration of memorial of our Lord's final communion service; **see** charism.

eucharistic *transliterated adjective* [2170 eucharistos] of good charism; **see** charism.

eucharistize *transliterated verb* [2168 eucharisteo] [2169 eucharistia] to express or offer charism; **see** charism.

EULOGIZE, EULOGY:

eulogize *transliterated verb* [1757 eneulogeomai] [2127 eulogeo] to word well.

eulogized *transliterated adjective* [2128 eulogeetos] well worded.

eulogy *transliterated noun* [2129 eulogia] a well word.

EVANGELISM, EVANGELIST, EVANGELIZE:

evangelism *transliterated noun* {1309 besorah} {4400 malakuth} [31 angelia] [2098 euangelion] [3852 parangelia] the Helene is from the root, angel; the evangelism is Elohim's message to humanity.

evangelist *transliterated noun, participle* {1319 basar} [2099 euangelistees] one who evangelizes the evangelism.

evangelize *transliterated verb* {1319 basar} [312 anangelo] [518 apangelo] [1229 diangelo] [1804 exangelo] [2097 euangelizo] [2605 katangelo] [3853 parangelo] to disperse the evangelism.

evangelizer *transliterated noun* [2604 katangelus] one who evangelizes.

pre-evangelism *transliterated noun* [1860 epangelia] [1862 epangelma] an evangelism previously prepared, or previously evangelized; **see** evangelism; **cp** angel.

pre-evangelize *transliterated verb* [1861 epangelo] [4279 proepangelomai] [4283 proeuangelizomai] [4293 prokatangelo] previously evangelized; an evangelism previously prepared for future evangelizing.

HOLY, HOLIES, HALLOW, NAVE:

holies *noun* {4720 miqdash} {6944 qodesh} [39 hagian] the outer court of the tabernacle; where the congregation congregated, where the doctrinating took place; the Old Covenant equivalent of the New Covenant priestal precinct; **cp** holy of holies; **see** congregation; **see** tabernacle.

holily *adverb* [55 hagnos] in a holy manner.

holiness *noun* [38 hagiasmos] [41 hagiootes] [42 hagosuneel] [47 hagnia] [54 hagnotees] the character of being holy.

holy (one) *adjective* {6918 qadosh} {6922 qaddish} spiritually whole; set apart unto Elohim.

holy (the) *noun* [40 hagos] that which has been hallowed; they who have been hallowed – set apart unto Elohim; whereas many versions interchange the words holy and saints, the *exeGesés parallel BIBLE* abides with holy.

holy of holies *noun* {6944 qodesh} [39 hagian] the inner court of the tabernacle; corresponds to the nave in the New

LEXICON

Covenant; **see** SUMMARY: TABERNACLE, TEMPLE, TENT.

hallow, hallowing *verb* {6942 qadash} [37 hagiazo] [48 hagnizo] [49 hagnismos] [53 hagnos] *verb* of holy; whereas many versions interchange the words sanctify and hallow, the *exeGes* *parallel* *BIBLE* abides with hallow.

hallowed whore *noun* {6948 qedeshah} a female whore for religious service.

hallowed whoremonger *noun* {6945 qadesh} a male whore for religious service.

nave *transliterated noun* [3485 naos] one of two Hellenic words mistranslated temple; the nave corresponds to the holy of holies of the tabernacle where, prior to the staking of the Messiah, only the archpriest was allowed to enter; when the Messiah shalamed complete satisfaction for the sins of humanity, the veil of the nave was split from above to below so that all Messianists may now freely enter into his presence. Halalu Yah!

priestal precinct *noun* [2411 hieron] one of two Hellenic words mistranslated temple; the priestal precinct refers to the holies area of the tabernacle where the doctrinating took place; **see** SUMMARY: TABERNACLE, TEMPLE, TENT.

JUDGE, JUDGMENT, JUST, JUSTNESS, JUSTIFICATION, JUSTICE:

judge, plead, examine *verb* {8199 shaphat} {8200 shephat} [350 anakrino] [2919 krino] to scrutinize; to investigate.

judge, judger *noun* {6414 palil} [1348 dikastees] [2923 kritees] [2924 kritikos] one that decides; one that sentences.

judgment (under) *verb* [5267 hupodikos] under sentence.

judgment *adjective, noun* {6416 pelili} {6417 peliliah} [2917 krima] [2920 krisis] [2922 kriterion] decision; crisis; criterion.

judgment, examination *noun* [351 anakrino] investigation.

judgment, justification *noun* {1779 duwn} {4941 mishpat} {8196 shephut} {plural 8201 shephet} [1345 dikaioma] [1347 dikaiosis] [1349 dikee] a judicial verdict; a sentence; also, an unsentencing.

judicators *plural noun* {8614 tiptay} ones who judge.

jurisdiction *noun* {4082, 4083 mediynah} a district under a judge.

just, justness *adjective* {6662 tsaddiq} {6664 tsedeq} {6665 tsidqah} {6666 tsedaqah} [1342 dikaios] [1343 dikaiosune] [1738 endikos] having justness; innocent in the sense of not having unjustness: whereas most versions alternate between just, justness and righteous, righteousness, just and justness are more accurate; this is the root of the Hellene word, Sadducees, transliterated Sadoqiy; **see** Yah Veh Sidqenu.

just judgment *noun* [1341 dikaiokrisia] a just sentence.

justice *noun* {6415 peliliah} a right judgment that is just.

justification, judgment **see** **judgment, justification.**

justify, justified *verb* {6663 tsadaq} [1344 dikaioo] to cause to be just; **see** just.

justly *adverb* [1346 dikaios] **see** just.

KAPPORETH, KAPUR/ATONE, KIPPURIM/ATONEMENTS, KOPUR/ATONEMENT:

kapporeth *noun* [3727 kapporeth] [2435 hilasteerion] the atonement cover of the holy ark.

kapur/atone *verb* {3722 kapar} [2433 hilaskomai] [2436 hileos] to expiate the guilt of by sufferance of penalty or some equivalent; to make complete satisfaction for.

kippurim/atonements *plural transliterated noun* [3725 kippurim] expiations; **see** Yom Kippurim.

koper/atonement *noun* [3724 kopher] [2434 hilasmos] an expiation; **see** camphire, pitch.

OFFER, OFFERING:

note: most versions insert the words **offer** and **offering**, even though they are not indicated in the manuscripts; **cp** holocaust; sacrifice; libation; **read** Leviticus 23:37.

offer *verb* [4374 prosphero] to offer an offering.

offer up, bear up, bring up *verb* [399 anaphero] to offer up an offering; to take up.

offering *noun* {4503, 4504 minchah} [4376 prosphora] a tribute; **note:** most versions often imply offer and offering even when not in manuscripts; **see** qorban.

offering *noun* {5379 nisseth} an offering, as received.

PRIEST, PRIESTAL PRECINCT, PRIESTHOOD:

priest *noun* [3548 kohen] [3549 kahan] [2409 hierus] an officer of sacrifices and ministries of the holies and the holy of

holies of the tabernacle; the eminent priests were classified as: **head** {7218 rosh}, **great** {1419 gadol}, and **arch** [749 archiereus] [758 archon].

priest, priested, priesting *verb* {3547 kahan} [2407 hieratuo] [2418 hierourgeo] to officiate as a priest.

priestal *adjective* [2413 hieros] hallowed.

priestal precinct *noun* [2411 hieron] one of two Hellenic words mistranslated temple; the priestal precinct refers to the holies area of the tabernacle where the doctrinating took place; **see** SUMMARY: TABERNACLE, TEMPLE, TENT.

priestal precinct stripper *noun* [2416 hierosuleo] [2417 hierosulos] one who strips priestal precincts, either by removing or desecrating.

priesthood *noun* {3550 kehunnah} [2405 hieratia] [2406 hieratuma] [2420 hierosune] the office of the priest.

priestlike, priestly *adjective* [2412 hieroprepes] hallowed.

SALVATION, SAVE, SAVIOUR:

salvation *noun* {3468 yesha} {8668 teshuah} [4991 soteria] [4992 soterion] the restoration to wholeness.

salvational *adjective* [4991 soteerios] rescue.

save, saviour *verb, noun* {3467 yasha} [1295 diasozo] [4982 sozo] to rescue; one who rescues; to restore wholeness.

Saviour title [4990 soter] a title reserved for our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah; one who saves, rescues, restores to wholeness. **see** shalom, shalom.

SATIATE, SATISFY, SATURATE, SUFFICIENT:

satiate, satisfy *verb* {7646 saba} to fill to satisfaction.

satiate, saturate *verb* {7301 ravah} to satisfy the appetite of hunger, or thirst.

satiated, satisfied *adjective* {7649 saba} sufficiently satisfied; sufficiently satiated.

satiated, saturated *noun* {7310 revayah} satisfied.

satiation, saturated *noun, adjective* {7302 raveh} satisfaction.

satiaty, satisfaction *noun* {7648 soba} {7654 sobah} sufficiently satisfied; sufficiently satiated.

satisfaction *noun* {7966 shillum} as a recompense for something owed; **see** shalom.

satisfied, sufficient *verb* [714 arkeo] to be satisfactory.

SHALAM, SHALOM, SHELAMIM:

also see SUMMARY: COMPLETE and fulfill.

shalam *verb* {transliterated 7999 shalom} {transliterated 8000 shelam} (to cause) to be at shalom; to complete; to fulfill; to satisfy a debt.

Note: The Hellene uses three different root forms which conform to the Hebrew **shalam** and **shalom**:

1. the first root form [1514 eireneuo *verb*] [1517 eirenopoieo *verb*] [1516 eirenikos *adjective*] [1518 eirenopoios *adjective*] relates primarily to the area of personal satisfaction and contentment: and it also conforms to the Hebrew noun, Shalom

2. the second root form [4137 pleero *verb*] in the Hellene, means to fill full, and to fulfill: and it also conforms to the Hebrew verb, Shalom:

3. the third root form [658 apoteleo *verb*] [4931 sunteleo *verb*] [5048 telioo *verb*] [5055 teleo *verb*] relates primarily to the area of satisfying a debt, spiritual, moral, material: and it also conforms to the Hebrew verb, Shalom.

shalom *noun* {7965 shalom} {7966 shillum} [5046 telios] complete satisfaction, as in a state of being, or as payment of a debt.

Mighty Important Consideration: The translators of the Septuagint, the Old Covenant from Hebraic and Aramaic into Hellene, have translated the words of **shalom** and **shalam** into the following Hellenic words: [467 autapodom] to recompense; [591 apadidom] to give back; [661 apotino] to repay; [1515 eireneuo] to be at peace; [1516 eirenikos] peace; [1517 eirenopoieo] to make peace; [3648 holokieuos] whole; [4982 sozo] heal, save; [4992 soteria] save; [5046 telios] perfect; [5055 teleo] finished: **see** Yahn 19:30. Since we know that Adonay Yah Shua Messiah spoke either Aramaic or Hebrew (and not Hellene) on the stake, is it possible that His word for **teleo** was literally, **shalam**?

shalom (of) *transliterated noun, adjective* {8001 shelam} {8003 shalem} [1515 eirene] [1516 eirenikos] of inward satisfaction.

shelamim *transliterated plural noun* {8002 shelamim} from {7999 shalom}; sacrifices of shalom.

LEXICON

SOUL, SOULICAL, SOULLESS:

soul *noun* {5315 nephesh} [5590 psuchee] the psyche; the soul is the center of the emotional attributes; the soul of the flesh is in the blood; **read** Leviticus 17:11; the inhalation of breath brings oxygen to the blood, which brings life to the flesh; the soul sustains life, but is not life itself; Yah Veh puffed (exsouled) into the nostrils of Adam; and Adam became a living soul; **see** puff; **read** Genesis 2:7; all live beings have souls; **note:** most versions render nephesh into more than forty different words, and psuchee into seven; only soul is correct; **cp** spirit.

soulical *adjective* [5591 psuchikos] emotional; **cp** spiritual.

soulless *noun* [895 apsuchos] without soul; figuratively, without emotion.

SPIRIT, SPIRITS, SPIRITUAL, SPIRITUALS:

Spirit, spirit, spirits *name, noun* {7307, 7308 ruwach} [4151 pneuma] the Hebrew and Arami word ruwach has the twofold meaning of spirit and wind; the Hellene word pneuma has the single meaning of spirit; **cp** wind.

The Holy Spirit is that essence of triune Elohim who participated in the creation, and Who conceived the flesh body of Elohim, Yah Shua the Messiah; the Holy Spirit guides the spiritually unborn to the Messiah; **read** Yahn 3:1–8; the Holy Spirit guides the spiritually born into all truth; the Holy Spirit is the "another Paraclete" of the Messiahist; **read** Yahn 15:26, 16:7–11; the Holy Spirit endues Messiahists with the spirituals of energies, ministries, and charisma; **read** 1 Corinthians 12:1–11; the King James Version sometimes translates Holy Spirit as Holy Ghost; in Germanic languages, their word for spirit is rooted in our word for ghost; in Latin languages, their word for spirit is rooted in our word for spirit; in modern day English, ghost is a dead spirit; Yah Shua became flesh of the living Holy Spirit of Elohim, and thus we translate Holy Spirit throughout; we are well aware that many Spirit-filled Messiahists prefer Holy Ghost – and this is by no means an effort to alter their personal convictions.

the human spirit is the center of the mental attributes; the will, memory, thought, including, but not limited to wisdom, knowledge, prophecy; all Messiahists are born of, and have the Holy Spirit; but not all Messiahists are filled with the Holy Spirit; Messiahists may also have "in Spirit" experiences; **read** Apocalypse 4:2.

demon spirits are evil spirits which may possess and control the spiritually unborn, and attack the Messiahist.

spiritual *adjective* [4152 pneumatikos] that mental attribute which is beyond that of the physical, or soulical.

spiritually *adverb* [4153 pneumatikos] in a spiritual manner.

spirituals *noun* [4152 pneumatikos] the spirituals bestowed upon humanity are often referred to as spiritual gifts; they are, more accurately, spirituals which the Holy Spirit endues as He wills upon whom He wills; here are nine of the spirituals as presented in 1 Corinthians 12:1–11:

(1) **word of wisdom** *nouns* [3056 logos] [4678 sophia] the spiritual of the promise of the ability to decide well.

(2) **word of knowledge** *nouns* [3056 logos] [1108 gnosis] the spiritual of the promise of the awareness of facts not necessarily gained through experiences of self or others.

(3) **trust** *noun* [4102 pistis] **note:** trust is a more accurate translation than the usual words, belief and faith; whereas belief and faith imply a directing of the mind, trust implies a total reliance of the being; the Hebrew word for trust is rooted in the word, amen; **see** amen.

(4) **charismata of healings** *plural nouns* [5486 charisma] [2386 iama] the spiritual of having the abilities of healings of various ailments.

(5) **energizing** *transliterated verb* **dynamis** *transliterated noun* [1755 energema] [1411 dunamis] the spiritual of energizing the ability; of having the energy and the ability.

(6) **word of prophecy** *nouns* [3056 logos] [4394 propheta] the spiritual of the promise of the ability to foretell; foretell is not to be confused with tell forth; **read** 1 Corinthians 12:10 with 2 Petros 1:19–21.

(7) **discernments of spirits** *plural nouns* [1253 diakrisis] [4151 pneuma] the spiritual ability to distinguish species or qualities of spirits; to test the spirits, whether they be of Elohim.

(8) **genos of tongues** *adjective/noun* [1085 genos] [1100 glossa] the spiritual of the ability to express in species of tongues other than those acquired through experience; including foreign and spiritual tongues.

(9) **translation of tongues** *nouns* [2058 hermeneia] [1100 glossa] the ability to hear a tongue or language other than learned by human experience, and rendering its meaning; **note:** dreams are interpreted; tongues are translated.

TABERNACLE, TEMPLE, TENT:

tabernacle *noun* {4907, 4908 mishkan} {7933 sheken} [4633 skene] [4636 skenos] [4638 skenoma] the structure surrounding the holies {6944 qodesh} [39 hagian] which is the priestal precinct [2411 hieron]; and the holy of holies {6944 qodesh} [39 hagian] which is the nave [3485 naos]; the holies/priestal precinct, the outer court of the tabernacle, is the place of doctrinating where Yah Shua doctrinated; although Yah Shua referred to the holy of holies/nave, He did not enter the holy of holies/nave until after he split the veil; tabernacle is also the housing of the human body; and the human body is also the nave of the Holy Spirit; **cp** manse; **see** holies, holy of holies, priestal precinct, nave; **note:** the *exeGes* *parallel BIBLE* accurately distinguishes between tent, and tabernacle.

tabernacle (over) (upon) *verb* {7931 shakan} {7932 shekan} [1981 episkenoo] [4637 skenoo] to abide in a tabernacle; to abide over, upon.

tabernaclemaker *noun* [4635 skenopoios] a maker of tabernacles; **note:** it is quite possible that Paulos manufactured tabernacles in which to congregate; there is no evidence that Paulos was a tentmaker.

tabernacler (fellow) (nearby) *adjective* {7934 shaken} a fellow who tabernacles nearby; a neighbour.

tabernaclestaking *verb* [4634 skenopegia] the setting up of the tabernacle; **see** Sukkoth/Brush arbor.

temple *noun*, in the Authorized King James and most other versions, are mistranslations; temple, as a place of worship, is unknown in Scripture: for {1964, 1965 heykal} **see** manse: for [2411 hieron] **see** priestal precinct: for [3485 naos] **see** nave.

tent *noun* [168 ohel] a portable lodging; a portable covering of cloth and/or skins; tent is designated as the abode of the Yisra Eliy: and tent is also designated as the covering of the tabernacle; **note:** the *exeGes* *parallel BIBLE* accurately distinguishes between tent and tabernacle.

tent *verb* [167 ahal] to abide in a tent.

TRUST, ENTRUST, TRUSTLESS, TRUSTWORTHY:

trust (little) *noun* [3640 oligopistos] literally, puny truster.

trust, amen, amenable *transliterated verb* {539 aman} to confirm; to confide in.

trust, entrust *verb* {539 aman} {540 aman} [4100 pistuo] [4104 pistoo] **see** amen; to confidently rely upon; **note:** whereas believing is a psyching up of the mental attributes, trust is the abandonment of self into the care of another.

trust, trustworthiness *noun* {529 emuwn} {2622 chacuth} [4102 pistis] **see** amen; the spiritual ability of total reliance in another; **note:** whereas faith is a psyching up of the mental attribute, trust is the abandonment of self into the care of another; **note:** the *exeGes* *parallel BIBLE* indicates whenever trust is preceded by the article, as in "the trust".

trustless *adjective, noun* [571 apistos] without trust.

trustlessness *noun* [570 apistia] to not trust.

trustlessness, distrust *noun* [543 apeitheia] obstinate and rebellious.

trustworthily, trustworthiness, trustworthy, trusting *adjective, adverb* {530 emunah} [4101 pistikos] [4103 pistos].

YAH HUDAH, YAH HUDIY, YAH HUDIYM:

In Strong's Concordance, Old Covenant, between {3050 Yah} and {3068 Yah Veh} are most of the words that pertain to the people of Yah Veh who are called by His name (2 Chronicles 7:14). There is a difference of vowel points between the words referring to Yah, and the words referring to Yah Hudah. However, these vowel points were not added until the seventh century A.D. in the masoretic text – long after the Hebrews decided that it was not proper to refer to Yah Veh by His name – even though Yah Veh had so commanded; **read** Genesis 29:24, Exodus 3:15, 2 Chronicles 7:14, Psalms 68:4, 83:18, Yeshua Yah 12:2, 42:8, 52:6, Yirme Yah 33:2, Ephesians 3:15, Apocalypse 14:1.

Yah Hudah, Yah Hudaim, Yah Hudiy; *transliterated names* {a place 3055 yehud} {the land, the people 3061 yehud} {the peoples 3062 yehudaim} {the scion 3063 yehudah} {a people, a person 3064, 3065 yehudi} {a land 2448, 2449 loudaia} {a

LEXICON

people, a person 2453 ioudaios] [a people, a person, a scion 2455 ioudas] Celebrated of Yah.

Yah Hudaic, Yah Hudaically *transliterated name* {3066 yehudith} [2451, 2452 ioudaikos] the Yah Huda'iy tongue; as a Yah Hudi'iy.

Yah Hudaism *noun* [2454 ioudaismos] the Yah Huda'iy religion, and usages.

Yah Hudaize *participle* {3054 yahad} [2450 ioudaizo] to cause to be Yah Huda'iy.

YAH, YAH SHUA, YAH VEH, and compound names:

Yah *transliterated name* {3050 yah} name of Deity in basic form: Eternal Existent One; **see** following for compound forms.

Yah Shua *transliterated name* {3091 yehowshua} {3442, 3443 yeshuwa} [2424 ieesous] Yah Saves; the name of Mosh'eh's successor, the name of our Adonay Messiah, and the name of other persons.

Yah Veh *transliterated name* {3068, 3069 yehovah} Eternal Existent One.

Yah Veh Nissi *transliterated name* {3071 yehovahnissi} Yah Veh Ensign.

Yah Veh Raah *transliterated name* {3068 yehovah} {7462 raah} Yah Veh Tends; **see** Psalm 23:1.

Yah Veh Raphah *transliterated name* {3068 yehovah} {7495 raphah} Yah Veh Healer.

Yah Veh Sabaoth *transliterated name* {3068 yehovah} {6635 tsabaah *plural* sabaoth} [3841 pantokrator] Yah Veh of Hosts; **see** Sabaoth.

Yah Veh Sadakah *transliterated name* {3068 yehovah} {6666 sadakah} Yah Veh of Justness.

Yah Veh Shalom *transliterated name* {3073 yehovahshalom} Yah Veh Shalom; **see** complete.

Yah Veh Sham *transliterated name* {3068 yehovah} {8033 sham} Yah Veh's Presence; **see** Yechezq El 48:35.

Yah Veh Sidqenu *transliterated name* {3072 yehovahtsidqenuw} a combined form of {3068 yehovah} and {6664 tsedek} Yah Veh of Justness.

Yah Veh Yireh *transliterated name* {3070 yehovahyireh} Yah Veh Sees.

DEFINITIONS:

A

A and Ω *title* [1 alpha] [5598 omega] the first and final letters of the Hellenic alphabet; a title that Adonay Yah Shua ascribes to Himself.

ab, abba, father *transliterated noun* {1 ab} {2 ab} {5 abba} [3962 pater] **ab** is Hebrew for father; **abba** is a Hellenic transliteration; **pater** is the Hellenic translation.

Abaddon *transliterated name, noun* {10 abaddoh} {11 abaddon} [3 abaddon] Destroyer; destruction; **cp** Apollyon.

abandon *adjective* {2310 chadel} destitute.

abandon, allow, leave, let, set *verb* {3240 yanach} {5203 natash} to abandon; to allow to be; to allow to be set.

abandon, cease, de cease, desist *verb* {2308 chadai} to be lacking; to stop.

abandon, release *verb* {8281 sharah} to free.

abase, abate, belittle, slight, swift, trifle *verb* {6819 tsaar} {6985 qat} {7034 qalah} {7043 qalal} [2274 heetaomai] to belittle in contempt; to make light of; to lessen.

abase, lower *verb* {8213 shaphel} {8214 shephal} to humiliate.

abasement, abasing *noun* {7022 qiyqalown} {7036 qalown} {7045 qelalah} an intense disgrace.

abate, abase, belittle, slight, swift, trifle *verb* {6819 tsaar} {6985 qat} {7034 qalah} {7043 qalal} [2274 heetaomai] to belittle in contempt; to make light of; to lessen.

abate, lack *verb* {2637 chacer} to lack, to lessen; spoken of the prophecy of the Messiah having become flesh; **read** Psalm 8:5.

Abde El *transliterated name* {5655 abdeel} Serving El.

Abdi El *transliterated name* {5661 abdiel} Servant of El.

Abel *transliterated name* {59 abel} Meadow.

Abel *transliterated name* {1893 hebel} [6 abel] son of Adam.

Abel Beth Maachah *transliterated name* {62 abelbethmaachah} Meadow of the House of Piercing.

Abel Hash Shittim *transliterated name* {63 abelhashshittim} Meadow of the Shittim; **see** Shittim.

Abel Keramim *transliterated name* {64 abelkeramim} Meadow of the Vineyards.

Abel Maim *transliterated name* {66 abelmayim} Meadow of

the Waters.

Abel Mecholah *transliterated name* {65 abelmecholah} Meadow of the Round Dance.

Abel Misrayim *transliterated name* {67 abelmitsrayim} Meadow of Misrayim; **see** Misrayim.

abhor *verb* {6973 quts} in the sense of cutting off from.

abhor, abhorrent *verb* {8581 taab} to shrink from with horror; to loathe.

abhorrence *noun* {8441 toebah} an extreme loathing, especially to idolatry.

Abi *transliterated name* {21 abi} Father.

Abi Albon *transliterated name* {45 abialbon} Father Valiant.

Abi Asaph *transliterated name* {23 abiasaph} {43 ebjasaph} Father Gatherer.

Abi Athar *transliterated name* {54 ebyathar} [8

abiathar] Father of the Remains.

Abi Dah *transliterated name* {28 abida} Father Knows.

Abi Dan *transliterated name* {27 abidan} Father Judge.

Abi El *transliterated name* {22 abiel} Father El.

Abi Ezer *transliterated name* {44 abiezer} Father of Help.

Abi Gail *transliterated name* {26 abigail} Father of Joy.

Abi Gibon *transliterated name* {25 abigibon} Father of Gibon (Hill).

Abi Ha Ezri *transliterated name* {33 abihazri} Father of Help; **cp** Abi Ezer.

Abi Hail *transliterated name* {32 abihail} Father of Valour.

Abi Hu *transliterated name* {30 abihu} Father of Him.

Abi Hud *transliterated name* {31 abihud} [10 abioud] Father of Majesty.

Abi Mael *transliterated name* {39 abimael} Father Mael; meaning of Mael uncertain.

Abi Melech *transliterated name* {40 abimelech} Father Sovereign.

Abi Nadab *transliterated name* {41 abinadab} Father Volunteer.

Abi Ner *transliterated name* {74 abiner} Father Lamp.

Abi Noam *transliterated name* {42 abinoam} Father of Pleasantness.

Abi Ram *transliterated name* {48 abiram} Father Lofty.

Abi Shag *transliterated name* {49 abishag} Father of Error.

Abi Shai *transliterated name* {52 abishai} Father of Presents.

Abi Shalom *transliterated name* {53 abishalom} Father of Shalom; **see** shalom.

Abi Shua *transliterated name* {50 abishua} Father of Opulence.

Abi Shur *transliterated name* {51 abishur} Father of the Wall.

Abi Tal *transliterated name* {37 abital} Father of Dew.

Abi Tub *transliterated name* {36 abitub} Father of Goodness.

Abi Yah *transliterated name* {29 abiyah} [7 abia] Father Yah.

Abi Yam *transliterated name* {38 abiyam} Father of the Sea.

Abib *transliterated name, unripe adjective* {3, 4 eb} {24 abib} an unripened or tender produce; a month of the Hebrew calendar; also a syllable in the name of the city, Tel Abib.

abide *verb* [1265 diameno] [1696 emmeno] [1961 epimeno] [2650 katameno] [3306 meno] [3887 parameno] [4357 prosmeno] [5278 hupomeno] the root, *meno*, with its various prefixes, carries various connotations; from remaining in a place, to having a oneship with Adonay Yah Shua; **read** Yahn 15:.

Abilene *transliterated name* [9 abilene] possibly, Of Abel.

able, can, enable, prevail *verb* {3201 yakol} {3202 yekel} {3546 kehal} [1410 dunamai] [2427 hikanoo] the dynamis to do; **see** dynamis.

abode *noun* [3438 mone] a staying, residence; the noun of abide; only in Yahn 14:2, 23.

abominable *adjective* [947 bdeluktos] stinky; loathsome; idolatrous.

abominate *verb* {8262 shaqats} [948 bdelussomai] to stink; to loathe.

abomination *noun* {8251 shiqquts} {8263 sheqets} [946 bdelugma] a stink; a loathing; especially in the nostrils of Elohim; usually refers to idols.

abort, bereave, bereft *verb* {7921 shakol} to miscarry or suffer abortion; to deprive of; to be deprived of.

abound by the myriads *verb* {7231 rabab} to increase innumerably; **see** myriad.

abound *verb* {6280 athar} to increase; to be abundant.

abound, greaten *verb* {7235 rabah} {7236 rebah} to increase; to be greatened, in any dimension.

above, up, upper *adverb* [507 ano] upward; the top.

above, upper, uppermost *adjective* [509 anothen] [510

LEXICON

anoterikos [511 anoteron] from above; the source of the rebirth; **read** Yahn 3:1–8.

Abraham *transliterated name* {85 abraham} [11 abraam] Father of a Multitude; Abram's name after Yah Veh changed it.

Abram *transliterated name* {87 abram} Father Lofty; Abraham's name before Yah Veh changed it.

abroad (gone) *adverb* [590 apodemos] absent from one's own people.

abroad (went) *verb* [589 apodemeo] to go away from one's own people.

absent *adjective* [548 apeimi] away.

absinthe, wormwood *transliterated noun* {3939 laanah} [894 apsinthos] a bitter plant.

abstinence, private assembly *noun* {6116 atsereth} a sacrifice of self-restraint; **see** restraint.

abundance *noun* {6283 athereth} an ample supply.

abundance *noun* {8635 tarbut} a greatening, in any dimension.

abundance, greatness, greatnesses *noun* {1420 gedullah} {1433 godel} {7230 rob} {7238 rebu} increase; magnitude; mighty acts.

abundance, throng *noun* {8229 shiphah} plenty; a crowd.

abundant, great, greater *adjective* {1419 gadol} {7227, 7229 rab} {7260 rabrab} {7690 saggii} plentiful; large; older.

abuse, encourage *verb* {7292 rahab} in the sense of urging; of pressuring.

abusive *adjective* [486 antiloidoreo] to rail in reply.

abyss *noun* {6683 tsulah} {8415 tehom} [12 abussos] a deep, depthless chasm; sometimes refers to sheol and hades.

accusation, cause *noun* [156 aita] [157 aitiama] [158 aition] as asked; as inquired into.

accustomed *verb* [1480 ethizo] [1486 etho] to accustom; customary; usage.

accustomed, use, used, useful *verb* {5532 cakan} to be familiar by use; to be serviceable to.

Ach Ab *transliterated name* {256 achab} Brother (Friend) of His Father.

Ach Archel *transliterated name* {316 acharchel} Behind the Intrenchment.

Ach Ban *transliterated name* {257 achban} Brother of Discerning.

Ach Rach *transliterated name* {315 achrach} After His Brother.

Ach Umay *transliterated name* {267 achuwmay} Brother of Water.

Ach Zay *transliterated name* {273 achzay} Possessor.

Achasbay *transliterated name* {308 achacbay} uncertain derivative.

achashtariy *transliterated noun* {326 achashtariy} courier; a designation, rather than a name.

Achashverosh *transliterated name* {325 achashverowsh} the title of a Persian sovereign.

Achaz *transliterated name* {271 achaz} [881 akaz] Possessor.

Achaz Yah *transliterated name* {274 achazyah} Possessed of Yah.

Acher *transliterated name* {313 acher} Next, Other.

Achi *transliterated name* {278 echiy} {277 achiy} Brotherly.

Achi Am *transliterated name* {279 achiyam} Brother of the Mother.

Achi Ezer *transliterated name* {295 achiezer} Brother of Help.

Achi Hud *transliterated name* {282 achihud} Brother of Majesty; **cp** Achi Hud {284}.

Achi Hud *transliterated name* {284 achichud} Brother of Propounding; **cp** Achi Hud {282}.

Achi Lud *transliterated name* {286 achilud} Brother of Birth.

Achi Maas *transliterated name* {290 achiyaats} Brother of Closure.

Achi Man *transliterated name* {289 achiman} Brother of a Portion.

Achi Melech *transliterated name* {288 achimelech} Brother of the Sovereign.

Achi Moth *transliterated name* {287 achimoth} Brother of Death.

Achi Nadab *transliterated name* {292 achinadab} Brother Volunteer.

Achi Noam *transliterated name* {293 achinoam} Brother of Pleasantness.

Achi Qam *transliterated name* {296 achiyqam} Brother of Rising.

Achi Ra *transliterated name* {299 achira} Brother of Evil.

Achi Ram *transliterated name* {297 achiram} Brother Lofty.

Achi Ramiy *transliterated name* {298 achiyramiy} Of Achi Ram.

Achi Samach *transliterated name* {294 achisamach} Brother Upholder.

Achi Shachar *transliterated name* {300 achiyshachar} Brother of the Dawn.

Achi Shar *transliterated name* {301 achishar} Brother Songster.

Achi Thophel *transliterated name* {302 achithophel} Brother of Slime.

Achi Tub *transliterated name* {285 achitub} Brother of Goodness.

Achi Yah *transliterated name* {281 achiyah} Brother of Yah.

Achlab *transliterated name* {303 achlab} Fatness.

Achlay *transliterated name* {304 achlay} O That.

Achoach *transliterated name* {265 achowach} Brotherly.

Achoachiy *transliterated name* {266 achowachiy} Of Achoach.

Achuz Zam *transliterated name* {275 achuzzam} Possession.

Achuz Zath *transliterated name* {276 achuzzath} Possession.

Achyan *transliterated name* {291 achyan} Brotherly.

Achyoy *transliterated name* {283 achyow} Brotherly.

acknowledge, know *verb* [1921 epiginosko] to recognize; to become acquainted with.

acquaintance *noun* {4378 makkar} one who is recognized.

acquaintance, known *noun* [1110 gnostos] one who is known by another.

acquire *verb* {5239 nalah} to gain; **see** acquisition.

acquire *verb* {7408 rakash} to acquire; to lay up.

acquisition *noun* {4512 minleh} that which is acquired; that which is gained.

acquisition *noun* {7399 rekush} that which is acquired; that which is layed up.

acre, pair, team, yoke *noun* {6776 tsemed} two, as joined; an acre, as a day's task for one yoke.

acts *noun* {4566, 4567 mabad} in the sense of deeds.

acts, function *noun* {4234 praxis} something done; a deed.

ad infinitum *adjective* {6783 tsmithuth} without limit.

Adalya *transliterated name* {118 adalya} of Persian derivative; a son of Haman.

Adam *transliterated name* {121 adam} [76 adam] Human; the first human; **see** human, humanity.

adam *transliterated noun* {120 adam} ruddy, human, humanity.

Adbe El *transliterated name* {110 adbeel} Lanquished of El.

add, again, augment, increase *verb* {3254 yacaph} to add to; to repeat.

Addar *transliterated name* {146 addar} Mighty.

Addi *transliterated name* {5716 adiy} [78 addi] Ornamental; **see** ornaments.

adhere *verb* {6821 tsaphad} to stick.

adhere, captivate, capture *verb* {3920 lachad} {3921 leked} [259 halosis] to catch; to cause to stick.

adhere, join, stick *verb* {1692 dabaq} {1693 debaq} [4347 proskollao] to join one's self to closely, stick to; to remain attached.

adhering *adjective* {1695 dabeq} joining closely; devoting.

Adi El *transliterated name* {5717 adiel} Ornament of El.

Adithayim *dual transliterated name* {5723 adiythayim} Double Prey.

adjudge *verb* [1948 epikrino] to decide or determine.

Adlay *transliterated name* {5724 adlay} the meaning uncertain.

Admatha *transliterated name* {133 admatha} a Persian nobleman.

administration *noun* [3622 oikonomia] management; oversight.

administrator *noun* [3621 oikonomeo] [3623 oikonomos] overseer; manager.

admonish, rebuke *verb* [2008 epitimao] to charge sharply.

Adoni; **see** SUMMARY: ADONAY, ADONI, ADONIM:

Adoni Bezeq *transliterated name* {137 adonibezeq} Adoni of Bezeq (in Pelesheth).

Adoni Qam *transliterated name* {140 adoniqam} Adoni of Rising.

Adoni Ram *transliterated name* {141 adoniyram} {151 adoram} Adoni Lofty.

Adoni Sedeq *transliterated name* {139 adonitsedeq} Adoni of Justness; **see** Sadoq.

Adoni Yah *transliterated name* {138 adoniyah} Adoni of Yah.

Adorayim *dual transliterated name* {115 adowrayim} Double Mound.

adorn *verb* {6286 paar} to embellish.

LEXICON

adornment *noun* {8597 tiphareth} ornament.

adornment, ornament, tiara *noun* {6287 peer} an embellishment; a tiara, as an adornment.

Adram Melech *transliterated name* {152 adrammelech} Mighty Sovereign.

Adri El *transliterated name* {5741 adriel} Drove of El.

Adullam *transliterated name* {5725 adullam} the meaning uncertain; a place in Pelesheth.

Adullamiy *transliterated name* {5726 adullamiy} Of Adullam.

adulterer *noun* {3432 moikos} male who commits sexual infidelity.

adulterer, adulteress *verbal noun* {5003 naaph} (adulterer) male and (adulteress) female who commit sexual infidelity.

adulteries *plural noun* {5004 niuph} {5005 naaphuph} sexual infidelities.

adulterize *verb* {5003 naaph} [3429 moikaomai] [3431 moikuo] to commit sexual infidelity.

adulterous *adjective* **adulteress** *noun* [3428 moikalis] given to sexual infidelity; a female who adulterizes.

adultery *noun* [3430 moikia] sexual infidelity.

advantage *noun* {3504 yithrown} {4195 mothar} gain.

adversary *noun* [476 antidikos] *plural noun* [480 antikimai] an opponent.

advocate *noun* {1781, 1782 dayan} one who pleads in behalf of another; **see** plead (for).

afar, far, distant past *adjective* {7350 rachoq} {7352 rachiq} {7369 racheq} remote; in time, or distance.

aftergrowth *noun* {3954 leqesh} a second growth or crop; metaphorically, development.

afterrain *noun* {4456 malqosh} the spring rain.

again, augment, increase, add *verb* {3254 yacaph} to repeat; to add to.

Age *transliterated name* {89 age} uncertain derivative.

age *noun* {2207 zoqen} old age.

age *verb* {2204 zaqen} to become old; **see** beard; **see** elder.

age (old) *noun* {plural 2208 zaqun} {2209 ziqnah} old age.

aged, elder *noun* {2205 zaqen} {3453 yashish} {3486 yashesh} one who is aged; an elder of a family or congregation.

agitate *verb* {2000 hamam} {2111, 2112 zuwa} {6470 paam} to disturb; to cause commotion.

agitation *noun* {2113 zevaah} commotion; disturbance.

agonize against *verb* [464 antagonizomai] literally, to antagonize; to struggle against.

agonize *verb* [75 agonizomai] to struggle; to contend.

agony, contest *noun* [73 agon] [74 agonía] a struggle; a contest.

Agrippas *transliterated name* [67 agrippas] Wild Horse Tamer.

Aha *interjection* [1436 ea] let it be.

Aha *interjection* {1889 heach} [3758 oua] an exclamation.

Aha *transliterated interjection* {162 ahahh} an exclamation; in most places used with Adonay Yah Veh.

Aharon *transliterated name* {175 aharon} [2 aaron] the meaning uncertain; the brother of Mosheh.

Achan *transliterated name* {5912 achan} Troublesome.

Achar *transliterated name* {5917 achar} Troublesome.

Achbor *transliterated name* {5907 achbowr} possibly, Mouse.

Achish *transliterated name* {397 achiysh} of uncertain derivative.

Akkad *transliterated name* {390 akkad} Fortress.

Akko *transliterated name* {5910 akkow} Hemmed In.

Akor *transliterated name* {5911 akowr} Troubled.

Achsah *transliterated name* {5915 achsah} Tinkler.

Achshaph *transliterated name* {407 achshaph} Sorcery.

Achzib *transliterated name* {392 achziyb} Deceitful.

Al Tashcheth *transliterated name* {516 altashcheth} Destroy Not.

alabaster *transliterated noun* [211 alabastron] the name of a stone; a container made of alabaster.

Alemeth *transliterated name* {5964 alemeth} Covering.

algumim *transliterated plural noun* {418 algummim} sticks of algum wood.

alien *noun* [241 allogenees] of other genes; foreigner; stranger.

alienate *verb* [526 apallotrioio] to estrange.

alienate *verb* [1369 dichazo] to make apart; to set against another.

alienate *verb* {5361 naqa} to feel aversion.

alienation *noun* {8569 tenuwah} enmity.

alight, drive *verb* {6795 tsanach} to come down; to cause to descend; to drive down.

Allam Melech *transliterated name* {487 allammelech} Oak of

the Sovereign.

allegorize *transliterated verb* [238 allegoreo] to present as an allegory, as a veiled presentation.

Allon Bachuth *transliterated name* {439 allownbachuwth} Oak of Weeping.

allot, smooth it over *verb* {2505 chalaq} literally, to smooth; as tossing smooth pebbles to allot lands, inheritances; smoothing over as through flattery.

allotment, portion, smooth *noun* {2506 cheleq} {2508 chalaq} {2511 challaq} {2513 chelqah} {2515 chaluqqah} {4255 machleqah} {4256 machalooqeth} {4521 menath} smoothness of tongue; usually an inheritance allotted by pebble.

allow *verb* [1832 exesti] to permit; often mistranslated lawful, but is unrelated to law.

allow, forgive, forsake, leave, release, *verb* [863 aphieemi] to send forth.

allow, give *verb* {5414 nathan} {5415 nethan} literally, to give; to give permission.

allow, leave, let, set, abandon *verb* [3240 yanach] {5203 natash} to allow to be; to allow to be set; to abandon.

Almighty *title* {46 abiyr} a title of Elohim; **cp** Shadday; **see** mighty.

Almodad *transliterated name* {486 almodad} [1678 elmodam] Wizard.

almond *noun* {8247 shaqed} the tree or nut, as the earliest in bloom.

almond shaped *adjective* {8246 shaqed} shaped like almonds.

almugim *transliterated plural noun* {484 almuggiym} sticks of almugim wood.

aloes *transliterated noun* [250 aloe] a gum.

altar (sacrifice) *noun* {4056 madbach} {4196 mizbeach} [2379 thusiasterion] a furniture on which sacrifices are sacrificed; the Hebrew is from the root of the verb, sacrifice {2076 zabach}; **see** sacrifice.

alter, change, double, duplicate, fold, reiterate, repeat *verb* {8132 shana} {8133 shena} {8138 shanah} to reinforce by folding, by doubling; may include disguise, camouflage.

altogether, together, unitedly *adverb* {3162 yachad} as one; **see** unite.

Alvah, Alyah *transliterated name* {5933 alvah, alyah} Wickedness.

Alvan, Alyan *transliterated name* {5935 alvan, alyan} Ascended.

always *adverb* [3842 pantote] at all times.

Am Ram *transliterated name* {6019 amram} High People.

Am Ramiy *transliterated name* {6020 amramiy} Of Am Ram.

Amaleq *transliterated name* {6002 amaleq} the meaning uncertain; Of Esav.

Amaleqiy *transliterated name* {6003 amaleqiy} Of Amaleq.

Amanah *transliterated name* {548, 549 amanah} Amenable; Trustworthy; from the root, amen.

Amar Yah *transliterated name* {568 amaryah} Saying of Yah.

amaranthine *transliterated noun* [262 amarantinos] [263 amarantos] an imaginary flower that is fading in character.

Amas Yah *transliterated name* {558 amatsyah} Strength of Yah.

Amas Yah *transliterated name* {6007 amacyah} Burden of Yah.

Amasay *transliterated name* {6022 amasay} Burdensome.

Amashay *transliterated name* {6023 amashcay} possibly, Burdensome.

ambassador *title pang noun* {6735 tsir} an ambassador, as a representative; a pang, as writhing.

ambassage *verb* {6737 tsayar} to send an ambassador.

amen *transliterated noun, interjection* {543 amen} {544 omen} [281 amen] trustworthy; worthy of trust; from the Hebrew and Arami root {539, 540 aman} meaning trust; one of two words which transliterates into every language.

amen, amenable, trust *transliterated verb* {539, 540 aman} to confirm; to confide in.

amethyst *transliterated noun* [271 amethystos] a stone as an anti-intoxicant.

amicable *adjective* [269 amachos] without strife.

Amittay *transliterated name* {573 amittay} Truly.

Ammi El *transliterated name* {5988 ammiel} People of El.

Ammi Hud *transliterated name* {5989 ammihud} {5991 ammihur} People of Majesty.

Ammi Nadab *transliterated name* {5992 amminadab} {5993 amminadib} [284 aminadab] People of Volunteers.

Ammi Shadday *transliterated name* {5996 ammishadday} People of Shadday (Elohim, as the Almighty).

Ammi Zabab *transliterated name* {5990 ammiyabab} People

LEXICON

of Endowment.

Ammon *transliterated name* {5983 ammown} People; Inbred.
Ammoniy *transliterated name* {5984 ammowniy} Of Ammon.
Ammoniyth *transliterated name* {5985 ammowniyth} a female Ammoniy.
Amnon *transliterated name* {550 amnon} Trustworthy; from the root of amen.
Amon *transliterated name* {526 amon} [300 amon] Trained.
among, inward, middle, midst, within *noun* {7130 qereb} {8432 tavek} the nearest part; the center.
Amoq *transliterated name* {5987 amowq} Deep.
Amorah *transliterated name* {6017 amorah} [1116 gomorrhah] Bind; Heap.
Amos *transliterated name* {531 amots} [301 amos] Strong.
Amos *transliterated name* {5986 amos} Burdened.
Amsi *transliterated name* {557 amtsiy} Strong.
Ana Yah *transliterated name* {6043 anayah} Answer of Yah.
Anacharith *transliterated name* {588 anacharith} Snorting.
Anam Melech *transliterated name* {6048 anammelech} Answer of Melech.
Anan Yah *transliterated name* {6055 ananyah} Overclouding of Yah.
Anaq *transliterated name* {6061 anaq} Choker.
Anaqiy *transliterated name* {6062 anaqiy} Of Anaq.
anathema *transliterated noun* [331 anathema] [2652 katanathema] a curse.
anathematize *verb* [332 anathematizo] [2653 katanathematizo] to bind by a curse.
Anathoth *plural transliterated name* {6068 anathoth} Answers.
Anathothi Yah *transliterated name* {6070 anthothiyah} Answers of Yah.
Anathothiy *transliterated name* {6069 anthothiy} Of Anathoth.
Ancient *title* {6268 attiq} the enduring one.
ancient, antiquity, east, easterly, eastern, eastward, formerly, preceding *noun* {6921 qadim} {6924 qedem} {6925 qodam} {6926 qidmah} {6927 qadmah} literally, the forefront; from the front.
ancient(s), east, eastern *adjective* {6930 qadmon} {6931 qadmoniy} anterior.
ancients *plural noun* {6917 qadumim} of antiquity.
ancients, archaic (the) *transliterated noun, adjective* [744 arkaios] that has been from the beginning; original; primeval.
Andreas *transliterated noun* [406 andreas] Manly.
angel; **see** SUMMARY: ANGEL.
Ani Am *transliterated name* {593 aniyam} Mourning of People.
anile *adjective* [1126 graodees] old womanish.
animal *noun* {929 behemah} [2934 kteenos] a domesticated live possession; **see** behemoth; **cp** beast.
anise *noun* [432 aneethon] a seed used for flavoring.
ankles *dual noun* {7166 qarcol} the joints connecting the feet and legs.
anklet, march *noun* {685 etsadah} {6807 tseadah} a pacing; an ornament of that which paces; an ankle chain.
announce *verb* {3745 keraz} to proclaim.
announcer *noun* {3744 karo} a proclaimer.
annul, disallow, discourage *verb* {5106 nuw} to refuse; dissuade.
anoint, anointed, anointing; **see** SUMMARY: ANOINT.
answer *noun* {4617 maaneh} response.
answer *verb* {6030, 6032 anah} to respond truthfully, as in witnessing.
ant *noun* {5244 nemalah} from its bisected appearance.
antelope *noun* {8377 tow} named after the white stripe on its cheek.
anticipate, confront, precede *verb* {6923 qadam} to front; **cp** east.
antimessiah *noun* [500 antikristos] one that opposes the Messiah; **cp** pseudo messiah.
Antipas *transliterated noun* [493 antipas] Stepfather.
antiquate, remove, transcribe *verb* {6275 athaq} that which has aged; to take away; to take down, as in transcribing.
antiquated, weaned *adjective* {6267 attiq} that which has endured; removed.
antique *adjective* {6266 athiq} {6276 atheq} that which has endured.
antiquity, east, easterly, eastern, eastward, formerly, preceding, ancient *noun* {6921 qadim} {6924 qedem} {6925 qodam} {6926 qidmah} {6927 qadmah} literally, the forefront; from the front.

antithesis *transliterated noun* [477 antithesis] an opposing thesis.
antitype *transliterated noun* [499 antitupon] the representation of a type.
Antothi Yah *transliterated name* {6070 antothiyah} Answers of Yah.
anus *noun* {6574 parshedon} the lower orifice of the alimentary canal.
anvil, step, support, time *noun* {6471 paamah} anvil, as a support; support, as a pedestal or column in a structure; a "stepper", as a supporter of the body; time, as an occasion or occurrence – but not as measured time.
anxiety *noun* [3308 merimna] excessive care or attention.
anxious *verb* [3309 merimnao] to be troubled with cares; to care for.
apart (from) *adverb* [5565 koris] separate; without making use.
apathetic *adjective* [524 apalgeo] to become apathetic; to cease to feel pain or grief.
apathetic (become) *verb* [120 athumeo] to become discouraged.
Apharesiym *plural transliterated name* {670 apharecay} Of a region in Ashshur.
Apharsechiy *transliterated name* {671 apharcechay} Of an Ashshur tribe.
Apheq, Aphiq *transliterated name* {663 apheq, apihyq} Fortress.
Apheqah *transliterated name* {664 apheqah} Fortress.
Aphiach *transliterated name* {647 apihyach} Puff.
aphis *noun* {2602 chanamal} a plant louse.
apocalypse *transliterated noun* [602 apokalupsis] a revelation, usually of the future; unveiling.
Apollo *transliterated name* [625 apollo] a sun deity.
Apollyon *transliterated name* [623 apolluon] Destroyer; the Hellene is a translation of the Hebrew Abaddon; **see** Abaddon.
apostasy *noun* {4878 meshubah} [647 apostasion] renunciation of a trust once held; renunciation of a marriage.
apostate *noun* {7726 shobab} {7628 shebiy} one who has turned from.
apostatize *verb* {5472 cuwg} [646 apostasia] renouncing a trust once held; renouncing a marriage.
apostle *noun* [652 apostolos] one who is commissioned; all apostles are disciples, but not all disciples are apostles; of his disciples, Yah Shua selected twelve to be his apostles; **cp** disciple.
apostleship *noun* [651 apostolee] the commission of the commissioned.
apostolize *verb* [649 apostello] [1821 exapostello] [4882 sunapostello] to commission as an apostle; **see** send.
Appayim *dual transliterated name* {649 appayim} Two Nostrils.
appear, look *verb* {8259 shaqaph} [398 anaphainoman] to become apparent; to gaze; **see** manifest.
appearance *noun* {7299 rave} aspect; from the root of {7200 raah} to see.
apple (tree) *noun* {8598 tappuach} the fruit or the tree.
appoint, bore, pierce *verb* {5344 naqab} to point out; to thrust or make a hole through.
appoint, number *verb* {4483 menah} {4484 mene} {4487 manah} to enumerate.
appointed *adjective* [2163 zahman] set; as in the setting of a time.
appointment *noun* {2165, 2166 zeman} a set period, usually of a specific time; **cp** time.
appraisal, arrangement *noun* {6187 erek} that which is lined up in a row for evaluation.
appraise, apprise, arrange, array, line up, rank *verb* {6186 arak} to line up in a row; to put in order.
approach *adjective* [7131 qareb] {7132 qerabah} used verbally; to bring near.
approach, bring near, oblate *verb* {7126 qarab} {7127 qereb} to draw near; to bring near; to offer for worship.
approve, prove, reprove *verb* {3198 yakach} [1381 dokimazo] to prove; to accept or reject the proving.
approved *adjective* [1384 dokimos] accepted; proved.
Aqan *transliterated name* {6130 aqan} Tortuous.
Aqqub *transliterated name* {6126 aqqub} Restrained.
Aquila *transliterated name* [207 akulas] Eagle.
Arab *transliterated name* {694 arab} [690 araps] Lurker.
Arabahi *transliterated name* {6164 arbathiy} Of (Beth Ha)

LEXICON

Arabah.

Arabia *transliterated name* {6152 arab} {688 arabia} Sterile.

Arabi *transliterated name* {6163 arabi} Of Arabia.

Arach *transliterated name* {733 arach} Caravaning.

Aram *transliterated name* {758 aram} Highland.

Aram Naharaim *transliterated name* {763 aramnaharayim} Aram of the Two Rivers (Tigris, Euphrates).

Aramaic *transliterated adverb* {762 aramiyth} Of Aram: one of the languages of the Old Covenant and the New Covenant.

Aramiy, Aramiym *transliterated name* {761 aramiy} {plural 761 aramiym} Of Aram.

Ararat *transliterated name* {780 ararat} the meaning uncertain.

Aravnah *transliterated name* {728 aravnah} Strong.

arch *transliterated noun* {758 archon} chief, as being first in rank or power.

arch, back, bow, rim *noun* {1354 gab} that which is bowed, curved; also the top or rim.

archaic (the), ancient(s) *transliterated noun, adjective* {744 arkaios} that which has been from the beginning; original; primeval.

archangel *transliterated noun* {743 archangelos} a hierarch angel; **see** hierarch; **see** angel.

Archippus *transliterated name* {751 archippos} an arch (ruler) of the horse.

architect *transliterated noun* {753 architekton} a chief constructor; **cp** Creator.

Archiy *transliterated name* {757 archiy} Of Erech.

archpriest *noun* {748 archieratikos} {749 archiereus} an arch priest.

archshepherd *noun* {750 archipoimeen} an arch shepherd.

Areli, Areliy *transliterated name* {692 areliy} Heroic; Of Areli.

Areopagus *transliterated name* {697 arios pagos} a compound name of Ares (a deity of war), and a stake (as a place to stake a tent).

Ari El *transliterated name* {739, 740, 741 ariel} Lion of El.

Ariday *transliterated name* {742 ariday} the meaning uncertain; a son of Haman.

arise, arose, raise, rise, rose, rouse *verb* {6965, 6966 qum}[450 anisteemi] [1453 egiro] to stand forth; to rise; to be stirred up, awakened.

ark *noun* {2787 kibotos} a box; the Hellene refers to all arks; including Mosheh's coffin, Noah's ark, and the ark of the covenant.

ark *noun* {727 aron} a box of Yah Veh Elohim; a burial box; most often used of the ark of the covenant.

ark *noun* {8392 tebah} Noah's floating box.

arm, foreleg *noun* {2220 zeroah} [1023 brakion] arm (human), foreleg (animal); denoting force, strength.

armament, armor, armory, arms *noun* {5402 nesheq} military equipment; arsenal.

Arodiy *transliterated name* {722 arowdiy} Of Arod.

Aroer *transliterated name* {6177 aroer} Naked.

Aroeriy *transliterated name* {6200 aroeriy} Of Aroer.

aromas *plural noun* {5561 samim} those that have an aroma.

arose, raise, rise, rose, rouse, arise *verb* {6965, 6966 qum}[450 anisteemi] [1453 egiro] to stand forth; to rise; to be stirred up, awakened.

Arpachshad *transliterated name* {775 arpachshad} [742 arphaxad] the meaning uncertain; a son of Noah.

arrange *verb* {392 anatassomai} to ordain; to line up in order.
arrange, array, line up, rank, appraise, apprise *verb* {6186 arak} to line up in a row; to put in order.

arrange, fail, hoe, lack *verb* {5737 adar} to arrange a vineyard, as in hoeing; to miss having.

arrangement, appraisal *noun* {6187 erek} that which is lined up in a row for evaluation.

arrangement, formation, rank *noun* {4633 maarak} {4634 maarakah} {4635 maareketh} an arrangement (physical or mental).

array, line up, rank, appraise, apprise, arrange *verb* {6186 arak} to line up in a row; to put in order.

arrogance *noun* {2087 zadan} presumptuous; haughtiness.

arrogant *adjective* {2086 zed} presumptuous; haughty.

arrow, quarry *noun* {4551 macca} a missile, as projecting; a quarry, in which stones are ejected.

arrowsnake *noun* {7091 qippoz} as darting after its prey.

Arsa *transliterated name* {777 artsa} Earthiness.

arsenals *plural noun* {8530 talpiah} tall towers.

Artach Shashta *transliterated title* {783 artachshasta} a title of Persian sovereigns.

Artemis *transliterated name* [735 aretemis] a Hellene goddess; mistranslated Dianna.

Arubboth *plural transliterated name* {700 arubbowth} Windows.

Aryeh *transliterated name* {745 aryeh} Lion.

Aryoch *transliterated name* {746 aryowch} the meaning uncertain; the name of two Babeliy.

as to what participle {3964 ma} concerning.

Asa *transliterated name* {609 asa} [760 asa] name of a sovereign.

Asa Yah *transliterated name* {6222 asayah} Worked (Worker) of Yah.

Asah El *transliterated name* {6214 asahel} Worked (Worker) of El.

Asal Yah *transliterated name* {683 atsalyahuw} Set Aside of Yah.

Asar El *transliterated name* {840 asarel} Blithed of El.

Asar Elah *transliterated name* {841 asarelah} Blithed of El.

ascend *verb* {5266 nacaq} {5559 celiq} [305 anabaino] [424 anerkomai] [4320 prosanabaino] to move upward; to go up; **cp** descend; **cp** descent.

ascend, holocaust, mount, regurgitate *verb* {5927, 5928 alah} to ascend, as a mountain; to mount an animal; to regurgitate food; to ascend a holocaust; **see** holocaust, *noun*.

ascent *noun* {4608 maaleh} a way, or steps of going up.

ascent, holocaust *noun* {5930 olah} an ascent to a higher area; an offering that has been holocausted; **see** holocaust, *verb*.

ascetics *plural noun* {3649 kamar} ones who withdraw to a solitary life.

Asel *transliterated name* {682 atsel} Set Aside.

Ash *transliterated name* {5906 ash} a constellation.

ashamed *adjective* [153 aiskunomai] [1870 epaiskunomai] humiliated; disgraced.

ashcake *noun* {5692 uggah} a round cake.

Ashchur *transliterated name* {806 ashchuw} Dark.

Ashdod *transliterated name* {795 ashdod} [108 azotos] Ravager.

Ashdodiy *transliterated name* {796 ashdowdiy} Of Ashdod.

Ashdath Pisgah *transliterated name* {798 ashdowthhappigah} Springs of Pisgah.

Asher *transliterated name* {836 asher} [768 aseer] Blithesome.

Asherah *transliterated name* {842 asherah} a Phoenician goddess.

asherah, asherim *transliterated noun* {842 asherah, plural asherim} a wooden cultic altar or memorial.

Asheriy *transliterated name* {843 asheriy} Of Asher.

Ashkenaz *transliterated name* {813 ashkenaz} the meaning uncertain.

Ashqelon *transliterated name* {831 ashqelown} Weighing.

Ashqeloniy *transliterated name* {832 eshqelowniy} Of Ashqelon.

Ashshur *transliterated name* {804 ashshur} Blithesome.

Ashshuriy *transliterated name* {805 ashshuwriy} Of Ashshur.

Ashtaroth *plural transliterated name* {6252 ashtaroth} Phoenician gods of riches; also a place.

Ashtaroth Qarnaim *plural dual transliterated name* {6255 ashtarothqarnayim} Ashtaroth of the Double Horns; **see** Ashtaroth.

Ashtarothiy *transliterated name* {6254 ashtarathiy} Of Ashtaroth.

Ashtoreth *transliterated name* {6253 ashtoreth} Phoenician goddess of riches.

Asi El *transliterated name* {6221 asiel} Worked of El.

Asia *transliterated noun* [773 asia] thought to mean Asia Minor, the western shore of Asia.

Asians *transliterated noun* [774 asianos] of Asia.

Asiarch *transliterated noun* [775 asiarches] an arch of Asia.

ask, lend, loan *verb* {7592 shael} {7593 sheel} [154 aiteo] to inquire; to request or demand.

Asmon *transliterated name* {6111 atsmon} Bone-like.

asp *noun* {6620 pethen} [785 aspis] as a twister.

asphalt *noun* {2203 zepheth} as softened by the sun.

Asri El *transliterated name* {844 asriel} Blithed of El.

Asri Eliy *transliterated name* {845 asrieliy} Of Asri El.

assarion *transliterated noun* [787 assarion] a Roman coin.

assembly *noun* {3862 lahaqah} a gathering.

assessment *noun* {4371 mekec} a remuneration based on an enumeration (census); **see** evaluation.

assuage *verb* {7918 shakak} to appease; to allay fears.

astonish, desolate, stun *verb* {8074 shamem} {8075 shemam}

LEXICON

to stun, as in to stupefy or devastate; to lay waste.

astonishment *noun* {8078 shimmamon} stun; **see** astonish.

Atha Yah *transliterated name* {6265 athayah} Reinforced of Yah.

Athach *transliterated name* {6269 athach} Lodging.

Athal Yah *transliterated name* {6271 athalyah} Constricted of Yah.

athanasia *transliterated noun* [110 athanasia] deathlessness.

Atharim *plural transliterated name* {871 atharim} Stepping Places.

athiest *noun* [112 atheos] without God.

Athlay *transliterated name* {6270 athlay} Constringent.

atom *transliterated noun* {823 atomos} minute; indivisible.

Atroth Beth Yah Ab *transliterated name* {5854 atrowthaddar} Crowns of the House of Yah Ab.

attach *verb* {2836 chashaq} to join; material to material; person to person.

attach, contrive, join *verb* {6775 tsamad} to link; to gird; mentally, to contrive.

attachments *plural noun* {2838 chashuq} rods connecting the posts or pillars.

attain, overtake, reach *verb* {5381 nasag} to attain by reaching for.

Attay *transliterated name* {6262 attay} Timely.

attend *verb* {7365 rechats} to tend at the bathing or baptizing.

attend, befriend, graze, tend *verb* {7462 raah} [5256 hupeereteo] to tend a flock or to pasture; to befriend, by attending to; to cause a flock to graze; **see** attendant; **see** Yah Veh Raah.

attendant *noun* [5257 hupeeretos] one who tends.

atonement *noun* **see** kopur/atonement.

audience, guard, hearing *noun* {4928 mishmaath} an audience; also obedience; a subject.

auditorium *noun* [201 akroateerion] a place of hearing.

aught, naught *noun* {3972 meumah} [3361 me] [3762 oudeis, oudemia, ouden] nil; several words, and combinations of words are used to indicate nil; these include the double negative, not aught, which the *exeGes* *parallel BIBLE* renders as naught; most versions use the word, thing, which indicates an object; the *exeGes* *parallel BIBLE* avoids thing; thing, as an object is not implied; **note:** ought is correctly aught, but the Authorized Version sometimes uses ought; when combined with the negative, naught, or nought. **augment, increase, add, again** *verb* {3254 yacaph} to add to; to repeat.

Augustus *transliterated name* [828 Augoustos] August; Venerable.

aunt *noun* [1733 dodah] a father's or mother's sister.

authority *noun* [1849 exousia] to have the right.

authorize *verb* [1850 exousiazō] to grant the right.

authorize over *verb* [2715 katexousiazō] to be granted the right; to exercise authority.

automatically *adverb* [844 automatos] self-moved; acting without intervention or instigation of another.

avarice *noun* [147 aiskrokerdees] [150 aiskros] [4124 pleonexia] greedy gain.

avaricious *adjective* [146 aiskrokerdees] [4123 pleonektees] greedy of shameful gain.

avenge *verb* {5358 naqam} [1556 ekdikeo] to wreak vengeance; to exact satisfaction.

avengement, vengeance *noun* {5359 naqam} {5360 neqamah} revenge; **see** avenge.

avenger *noun* [1558 ekdikos] a punisher.

avow *verb* [1843 exomologeō] to vow; **see** vow *verb*.

Avva *transliterated name* {5755 avva} Perverted.

Avviy, Avviym *transliterated name* {5757 avviy} {plural 5761 avviym} Of Avva.

await *adjective* {3175 yachiyl} to wait expectantly.

await, expect, receive, wait *verb* {2442 chakah} {3176 yachal} {6960 qavah} [324 anadekomai] [362 anameno] [553 apekdekamai] [4327 prosdekamai] [4328 prosdokaō] [4329 prosdokia] to anticipate; to wait expectantly, patiently; **cp** take.

awake, wake, waken *verb* {5782 uwr} {6974 quts} to wake up.

away from home *verb* [1553 ekdeemeo] to go abroad.

awe, awesome *adjective* {3373 yare} [127 aidos] [5398 phobeetron] [5401 phobos] reverential respect, fear.

awe, awesomeness *noun* {4172 morah} [5400 phobetron] [5401 phobos] reverential respect, fear.

awe, awestricken, awesome *verb* {3372 yare} [5399 phobeo]

to respectfully reverence; to fear.

awe, dread, terrify *verb* {6206 arats} to reverence; to harass.

awl *noun* {4836 martsea} an instrument that bores; noun of bore.

Ay, Aya, Ayath *transliterated name* {5857 ay, aya, ayath} Heap.

Ayah *transliterated name* {345 ayah} Hawk.

Ayalon *transliterated name* {357 ayalown} Deer-field; **see** hart.

Ayin *transliterated name* {5871 ayin} [137 ainon] Fountain.

Az Buq *transliterated name* {5802 azbuwq} Strong Hollow.

Azan Yah *transliterated name* {245 azanyah} Harkened of Yah.

Azar El *transliterated name* {5832 azarel} Helped of El.

Azar Yah *transliterated name* {5838, 5839 azaryah} Helped of Yah.

Azeqah *transliterated name* {5825 azeqah} Walled.

Azi El *transliterated name* {5815 aziel} Recouped of El.

Azzah *transliterated name* {5804 azzah} [1048 gaza] Strong.

Azzahiy *transliterated name* {5841 azzahiy} Of Azzah.

Azzur *transliterated name* {5809 azzuwr} [107 azor] Helper.

B

Baal, Baalim *transliterated title* {1168 baal} {plural 1168 baalim} [896 baal] a deity.

baal, married, mastered *transliterated noun* {1167 baal} {1169 beel} one who masters; one who is mastered.

baal, marry, master *verb* {transliteration 1166 baal} [1060 gameo] [1918 epigambroo] literally, baal means to be mastered; the ritual of one man and one woman becoming one flesh. **see** baalah.

Baal Berith *transliterated name* {1170 baalberith} Baal of the Covenant.

Baal Gad *transliterated name* {1171 baalgad} Baal of the Troop.

Baal Hamon *transliterated name* {1174 baalhamon} Baal of a Multitude.

Baal Hanan *transliterated name* {1177 baalhanan} Baal of Granting Charism.

Baal Hasor *transliterated name* {1178 baalchatsor} Baal of the Courts.

Baal Hermon *transliterated name* {1179 baalhermon} Baal of Abruptness.

Baal Meon *transliterated name* {1186 baalmeon} Baal of Habitation.

Baal Peor *transliterated name* {1187 baalpeor} Baal of Peor (Gap); a deity.

Baal Perasim *transliterated name* {1188 baalperatsim} Baal of the Breaches.

Baal Sephon *transliterated name* {1189 baaltsephon} Baal of the North.

Baal Shalishah *transliterated name* {1190 baalshalishah} Baal of Tripling.

Baal Tamar *transliterated name* {1193 baaltamar} Baal of the Palm Tree.

Baal Yada *transliterated name* {1182 beelyada} Baal Knows.

Baal Yah *transliterated name* {1183 bealyah} Baal of Yah.

Baal Zebub *transliterated name* {1176 baalzebub} [954 beelzeboul] Baal of the Fly.

Baalah *transliterated name* {1173 baalah} places in Pelesheth; **see** baalah.

baalah *transliterated noun* {1172 baalah} feminine of baal.

Baalath *transliterated feminine name* {1191 baalath} rule of a baalah; **see** baalah *noun*.

Baalath Beer *transliterated feminine name* {1192 baalathbeer} Baalah of a Well.

Baali *transliterated name* {1180 baali} Master; a title of Yah Veh.

Baalim, Baal *transliterated title* {1168 baal} {plural 1168 baalim} [896 baal] a deity.

Baalim Bamoth *plural transliterated name* {1181 baalibamoth} Baalim of the Bamahs; **see** Bamah.

Baale Yah Hudah *plural transliterated name* {1184 baaliyehudah} Baalim of Yah.

Baase Yah *transliterated name* {1202 baaseyah} Work of Yah.

babble *verb* {981 bahtah} [5396 phluareo] to utter nonsense; to make empty charges.

babblers *noun* [5397 phluaros] of one indulging in empty and foolish talk.

Babel *transliterated name* {894, 895 babel} [897 babulon]

LEXICON

Mingled; a place; an empire.

Babeliy *transliterated name* {896 babliy} Of Babel.

babes, babies *noun* {3515 neepiazo} {3516 neepios} literally, a very young person; figuratively, immature.

Bachurim *plural transliterated name* {980 bachuriym} Youths.

Bachurimiy *transliterated name* {978 bacharuwmiy} Of Bachurim.

back, bow, brow, rim, arch *noun* {1354 gab} that which is bowed, curved; also the top or rim.

backslide, backsliding *noun* {3900 paraptoma} a side-slip; a lapse or deviation from truth.

badger *noun* {8476 tachash} a clean furred animal; Strong suggests a species of antelope.

bag, bagpipe *noun* {5035 nebel} a skin bag to carry liquids; an instrument with an air supply bag.

bail *verb* {1802 dahlah} {7579 shaab} {501 antleo} to draw water; to let down a pail for drawing out water; verb of pail; see pail.

bakings, bakery *noun* {4580 maog} that which is baked, including bakery.

balance *verb* {8625 tekel} to balance, as in a balance scale.

balance, trample *verb* {5537 cala} {5541 calah} as suspended; as weighed; as trampled.

balance, weigh *verb* {8254 shakal} to suspend; to weigh by balancing a set weight against that being weighed; see shekel.

balances *dual noun* {3976, 3977 mozenim} a pair of scales to compare weights.

Balaq *transliterated name* {1111 balaq} {904 balak} Waster.

bald, baldy *noun* {7142 qreach} lacking hair on the back of the head.

balden *verb* {7139 qarach} to make bald.

balden, polish, rash *verb* {4178 mowrat} {4803 marat} {4804 marat} to rub (off); to pluck; to cause to be bald.

baldness *noun* {7146} a bald spot on the back of the head.

balm *noun* {6875 tseriy} balsam, as a balm.

Bamah, bamah *transliterated noun* {1116, 1117 bamah} {968 beema} {1041 bomos} Elevated; a tribunal; an elevated seat of judgment; **cp** ramah.

Bamoth Baal *plural transliterated name* {1120 bamothbaal} Baal of Heights; an elevated seat of judgment of Baal; see Bamah.

band, bond *noun* {4147 mocerah} {4562 masoreth} a restraint.

bandage *noun* {2848 chittul} loose material that is swathed; see swathe.

bandage, channel *noun* {8585 tealah} a bandage, as lifted on a wound; a channel into which water is raised.

bandage, sore *noun* {4205 mazor} in the sense of binding up, a bandage for a sore; an affliction.

bands *plural noun* {7196 qishshur} ornamental bands.

banish *verb* {5077 nada} to exclude.

banister *noun* {4552 micad} a railing of a stairway.

banner *noun* {1714 degel} a standard; a banner.

banner bearer *noun* {1713 dagal} one who carries a banner; to set up a standard; figuratively, to be noticeable.

banquet, drink *noun* {4960, 4961 mishteh} a banquet of eating and drinking; the act of drinking.

baptism, baptize, baptizer; see SUMMARY: BAPTISM.

Baqbaqqar *transliterated name* {1230 baqbaqqar} Searcher.

Baqbuk Yah *transliterated name* {1229 baqbukyah} Bottle (Emptying) of Yah.

Baqbuq *transliterated name* {1227 baqbuwq} Emptying, as a bottle emptying.

bar *verb* {5702 agan} disallow; prevent.

Bar, bar *transliterated noun* **son** *noun* {1247 bar, 1248 bar} heir apparent to the throne; also a prefix to a compound name indicating, son of; **cp** ben; see Psalm 2: where both bar and ben are used.

Bar Abbas *transliterated name* {1247 bar} {5 abagtha} {912 barabbas} Son of Abbas.

Bar Nabi *transliterated name* {1247 bar} {5029 nebiy} {921 barnabas} Son of a Prophet.

Bar Sabah *transliterated name* {1247 bar} {6638 tsabah} {923 barsabas} Son of a Host.

Bar Talmay *transliterated name* {1247 bar} {8526 talmay} {918 bartholomaios} Ridged Son.

Bar Tame *transliterated name* {1247 bar} {2931 tame} {924 bartimaios} Foul Son.

Bar Yah Shua *transliterated name* {1247 bar} {3091 yahshua} {919 barieeous} Son of Yah Shua.

Bar Yonah *transliterated name* {1247 bar} {3124 yonah} {920

barionas} Son of a Dove.

Barach El *transliterated name* {1292 barachel} Blessed of El.

Baraq *transliterated name* {1301 baraq} {913 barak} Lightning.

barb *noun* {7899 sek} {7905 sukkah} a barb or briar, as pricking.

bare *adjective* {2835 chasiph} stripped off, as exposed.

bare, bear, beget, birth, born *verb* {3205 yalad} {1080 gennaol} {5088 tikto} to produce from seed; of the male, to cause birth; of the female, to birth.

bare, strip *verb* {2834 chasaph} to strip off as to expose.

Bariach *transliterated name* {1282 bariyach} Fugitive.

barley *noun* {8184 seorah} a grain.

Barqos *transliterated name* {1302 barqos} of uncertain derivative.

barren *adjective* {6185 ariri} as stripped of children.

barren(s) *noun* {4629 maarch} {plural 4630 maarah} {plural 8205 shephee} bare areas; devoid of growth.

barren, expose *adjective* {8192 shaphah} bare.

Baruch *transliterated name* {1263 baruch} Blessed.

Barzillay *transliterated name* {1271 barzillay} Iron.

base, station *noun* {3653 ken} {4350 mekonah} {4369 mekunah} a base, as in furniture; a base, as in a station, or office.

Basha *transliterated name* {1201 basha} Offensiveness.

basket *noun* {5536 cal} *plural* {5552 calcillah} brush, as woven.

Baslith, Basluth *transliterated name* {1213 batsliyth, batsluwth} Peeling (onion).

bason, threshold *noun* {5592b saph} {5602 sephel} a container; as a vessel, or as a vestibule.

bastard *noun* {3541 nothos} an illegitimate person; **cp** mongrel.

bastinado *verb* {4463 rhabdizo} to beat with a rod or staff.

bath *transliterated noun* {1324, 1325 bath} {943 batos} a measure of liquids.

Bath, bath *transliterated noun* {1323 bath} daughter.

Bath Rabbim *transliterated name* {1337 bathrabbim} Daughter of Rabbim (Rabbis).

Bath Sheba *transliterated name* {1339 bathsheba} Daughter of an Oath.

Bath Shua *transliterated name* {1340 bathshua} Daughter of Opulence.

battering *noun* {6904 qabal} as in a battering ram.

battering ram *noun* {4239 mechiy} an instrument for striking.

Bavvay *transliterated name* {942 bavvay} the meaning uncertain; of Persian origin.

bay *adjective* {8320 saruq} fire colored.

Bayith *transliterated name* {1006 bayith} House; a place in Pelesheth.

bayith, beth, house, household, housing *noun* {1004, 1005 bayith, beth} {3613 oikeeteerion} {3614 oikia} {3624 oikos} usually translated house, as in family or dwelling, except when part of a name, as in Beth Abara; **cp** manse; nave; palace; priestal precinct.

bdellium *noun* {916 bedolach} a stone, separated or set apart.

be, became, become, *verb* {1933, 1934 havah} {1961 hayah} {1096 ginomai} {2071 esomai} to come into existence; to exist; the (Logos) Word, who always existed, became flesh; hayah is the root of the name Yah {3050 yahh}.

beads *noun* {3558 kumaz} *plural* {2737 charuzim} jewels.

beam *noun* 4500 manohr} {6982 qorah} a frame; a structural support.

bear, beget, birth, born, bare *verb* {3205 yalad} {1080 gennaol} {5088 tikto} to produce from seed; of the male, to cause birth; of the female, to birth.

bear, bore, borne *verb* {5445 sabal} {941 bastazo} to bear a burden or load; to lift.

bear, lade, lift, load, spare *verb* {5375 nacak} {5376 nesa} to lift, in a variety of applications.

bear, lift *verb* {5190 natal} {5191 netal} to raise; to lift as to impose.

bear fruit *verb* {6500 para} {6509 parah} {2592 karpophoreol} literally, or figuratively, to be fruitbearing.

bear up, bring up, offer up *verb* {399 anaphero} to take up; to offer up an offering.

beard *noun* {2206 zaqan} the beard as a sign of age; see aged, elder.

beast *noun* {1165 beiyr} literally, grazers; usually domesticated.

beautiful, handsome (very) *adjective* {3303 yapheh} {3304

LEXICON

yephehphiyah} {8209 shappir} [5611 horaios] timely; flourishing; beautiful.

beautify *verb* {3302 yaphah} to cause to be beautiful.

beauty *noun* {3308 yophiy}.

Bebay *transliterated name* {893 bebay} the meaning uncertain.

became, become, be *verb* {1933, 1934 havah} {1961 hayah} [1096 ginomai] [2071 esomai] to come into existence; to exist; the (Logos) Word, who always existed, became flesh; hayah is the root of the name Yah {3050 yahh}.

because *conjunction* [1360 dioti] on the account of; inasmuch as.

bed *noun* {4903, 4904 mishkab} from the verb, to lie (down); **see** lay, lie.

bed down, spread *verb* {3331 yatsa} to strew as a surface.

Bede Yah *transliterated name* {912 bedeyah} Servant of Yah.

bedstead *noun* {6210 eres} literally, an arch; a bedstead with a canopy.

Beer *transliterated name* {876 beer} Well (of water).

Beer Elim *transliterated name* {879 beerelim} Well of Elim.

Beer Lachay Roi *transliterated name* {883 beerlachayroi} Well of Living Vision.

Beer Sheba *transliterated name* {884 beersheba} Well of an Oath.

Beera *transliterated name* {878 beera} Well (of water).

Beerah *transliterated name* {880 beerah} Well (of water).

Beeri *transliterated name* {882 beeri} Well (of water).

Beeroth *plural transliterated name* {881 beeroth} Wells (of water).

Beerothy *transliterated name* {886 beerothy} Of Beeroth.

Beeroth Bene Yaaqan *plural transliterated name* {885 beerothbeneyaaqan} Wells of the Sons of Yaaqan.

befall, fall, fell, happen *verb* {5307 naphal} {5308 nephal} {7136 qarah} to cause to bring about; fall, fall down, fall away; to fell, as in felling timber.

befit, befitting *verb* {4998 naah} [4241 prepil] to be at home; as to be suitable or proper.

befit, befitting *adjective* {5000 naveh} at home; as suitable or proper.

befriend, graze, tend, attend *verb* {7462 raah} [5256 hupeereteo] to befriend, by attending to; to cause a flock to graze; to tend a flock or to pasture; **see** attendant; **see** Yah Veh Raah.

befriend, kiss *verb* {5401 nashaq} [5368 phileo] [5370 phileema] the Hellene is the verb of friend; a soulical expression of fondness; to kiss as a form of attachment; **cp** love; **read** Yahn 21:15–17; **see** eros.

befriend brethren *noun* [5360 philadelphia] fraternal affection.

befriend brethren *verb* [5361 philadelphos] fraternal.

befriend children *verb* [5388 philoteknos] maternal.

befriend Elohim *verb* [5377 philotheos] pious.

befriend men *verb* [5362 philandros] affectionate of a woman to her man.

befriend pleasure *verb* [5369 philedonos] to be voluptuous.

befriend self *verb* [5367 philautos] to be selfish; conceited.

befriend silver *verb* [5365 philarguria] [5366 philarguros] to be fond of money; avaricious.

befriend strangers *verb* [5381 philoxenia] [5382 philoxenos] to be hospitable.

befriendingly esteem *verb* [5389 philotimeomai] to be fond of honour; emulous.

beget, birth, born, bare, bear *verb* {3205 yalad} [1080 genna] [5088 tikto] to produce from seed; of the male, to cause birth; of the female, to birth.

beginning, first(s), head, top *noun* {7218 rosh} {7221 rishah} {7225 reshith} {8462 rechillah} the head, in a variety of applications; the head of the body, of time, of the month, of archs.

beginning, hierarchy *noun* [746 arche] origin; chief; as being first, foremost.

behave, overturn, remain, return *verb* [390 anastrepho] [396 anatrepo] to turn; in the manner one turns (behaves); to turn over; to overthrow.

behavior *noun* [391 anastrophee] manner of turning about.

behemoth *transliterated noun* {930 behemoth} a large animal; **see** animal.

behold *interjection* {431 aluw} {718 aruw} {1887 he} {1888 ha} {2005 hen} {2009 hinneh} [2396 ide] [2400 idou] an exclamation of observing with surprise.

Becher *transliterated name* {1071 becher} Dromedary.

Becheriy *transliterated name* {1076 bachriy} Of Becher.

Bechorath *transliterated name* {1064 bechowrath} Firstling.

Bel *transliterated name* {1078 bel} the Baal of the Babeliy.

Bel Adoni *transliterated name* {1081 baladan} Bel (is his) Adoni.

Bel Shats Tsar *transliterated name* {1112, 1113 belshatssar} a Babeliy sovereign.

belabour *adjective* {3023 yagea} weary of labour; **see** labour.

belabouring *noun* {3024 yegiah} weariness of labour; **see** labour.

Beli Yaal *transliterated name* {1100 beliyaal} [955 belial] Without Worth; a name ascribed to Satan.

belittle, slight, swift, trifle, abase, abate *verb* {6819 tsaar} {6985 qat} {7034 qalah} {7043 qalal} [2274 heetaomai] to belittle in contempt; to make light of; to lessen.

belly, matrix, womb *noun* {990 beten} {1512 gachon} [3770 keres] {4579 meah} {6896 qabab} {6897 qobah} {6898 qubbah} {7356 racham} {7358 rechem} [2836 koilia] the interior; a cavity as hollow; the abdominal cavity; sometimes refers to the womb.

beloved *noun* {3033 yediduwth} {3039 yedid} [27 agapeetos] a loved one.

beloved, lover, uncle *noun* {1730 dod} from the root, to boil; literally, an extremely warm caring for; a father's or mother's brother.

Belte Shats Tsar *transliterated name* {1095, 1096 belteshatssar} the Babeliy name of Dani El.

Ben, ben, son *transliterated noun* {1121, 1122, 1123 ben} son, as builder of the family name; also a prefix to a name; **cp** bar; **note:** both ben and bar appear in Psalm 2:.

Ben Ammi *transliterated name* {1151 benammi} Son of the People.

Ben Deqer *transliterated name* {1128 bendeqer} Son of Stabbing.

Ben Geber *transliterated name* {1127 bengebar} Son of Man of Valour.

Ben Hadad *transliterated name* {1130 benhadad} Son of Hadad.

Ben Hail *transliterated name* {1134 benhail} Son of Valour.

Ben Hanan *transliterated name* {1135 benhanan} Son of Granting Charism.

Ben Hased *transliterated name* {1136 bencheded} Son of Mercy.

Ben Hur *transliterated name* {1133 benhur} Son of Hur.

Ben Inu *transliterated name* {1148 beninu} Son of Ours.

Ben Oni *transliterated name* {1126 benoni} Son of Mischief.

Ben Regaz *transliterated name* {1123 son} [7266 regaz] [993 boanerges] Son of Rage.

Ben Yamin *transliterated name* {1144 binyamin} [958 beniamin] Son of the Right (as opposed to left).

Ben Yaminiy *transliterated name* {1145 binyaminiy} Of Ben Yamin.

Ben Zocheth *transliterated name* {1132 benzocheth} Son of Zocheth.

Bena Yah *transliterated name* {1141 benayah} Yah Builds.

bend, descend, penetrate, press, sink *verb* {5181 nachath} from the root, to sink; to go down; to press or lead down.

bend, pervert, twist *verb* {5753 avah} {5754 avvah} to crook; to overthrow.

Bene Beraq *plural transliterated name* {1139 beneberaq} Sons of Lightning.

Bene Yaaqan *plural transliterated name* {1142 beneyaaqan} Sons of Yaaqan.

beneficial *adjective* [5624 ophelimos] useful; advantageous.

beneficial *adjective* **benefit** *noun* [4851 sumphero] conducive; advantage.

benefit *noun* {8408 tagmuwl} [5622 ophelia] a bestowment; usefulness.

benefit *verb* {3276 yaal} [5623 opheleo] to be useful or valuable.

Beor *transliterated name* {1160 beor} [1007 bosor] Lamp.

Bera Yah *transliterated name* {1256 berayah} Created of Yah.

Berachah/blessing {1294 berachah} Blessing.

bereave, bereft, abort *verb* {7921 shakol} to deprive of; to be deprived of; to miscarry or suffer abortion.

bereaved, bereft *adjective* {7909 shakkul} deprived; left desolate.

bereavement(s) *noun* {7908 shekol} *plural* {7923 shikkulim} deprivation; childlessness.

Berech Yah *transliterated name* {1296 berechyah} [914

LEXICON

barakias] Kneel to Yah.

Bernice *transliterated name* [959 bernikee] Victorious.

Besal El *transliterated name* [1212 betsalel] In the Shadow of El.

Besay *transliterated name* [1153 beca] {1209 betsay} Trampled.

beseech *interjection* [577 anna] literally, Oh now!

beseech *participle* {4994 na} in the sense of pleading; see Hoshia Na.

beseech, console *verb* [3870 parakaleo] to invoke by consolation.

beseech, search, seek *verb* {1245 baqash} to search for, including a response to a petition; **cp** inquire, require.

Beser *transliterated name* {1221 betser} Digging (as an inaccessible spot).

besiege, bind, confine, form *verb* {6696 tsur} to confine; to form by shaping.

Besod Yah *transliterated name* {1152 becodyah} Counsel of Yah.

bestowing *verb* [632 aponemo] to confer as a gift.

Betach *transliterated name* [984 betach] Securely; Confidently.

Beth, beth, bayith, house, household, housing *noun* {1004, 1005 bayith, beth} [3613 oiketeerion] [3614 oikia] [3624 oikos] usually translated house, as in family or dwelling, except when part of a name, as in Beth Abara; **cp** manse; nave; palace; priestal precinct.

Beth Abara *transliterated name* {1004 bayith} {5679 abarah} [962 beethabara] House of the Crossing.

Beth Anath *transliterated name* {1043 bethanath} House of Answers.

Beth Ania *transliterated name* [963 beethania] House of Dates.

Beth Anoth *plural transliterated name* {1042 bethanoth} House of Answers.

Beth Arbel *transliterated name* {1009 bethharbel} House of Lurking of El.

Beth Aven *transliterated name* {1007 bethaven} House of Mischief.

Beth Azmaveth *transliterated name* {1041 bethazmaveth} House of Azmaveth (Strong of Death).

Beth Baal Meon *transliterated name* {1010 bethbaalmeon} House of Habitation of Baal.

Beth Barah *transliterated name* {1012 bethbarah} House of the Plain (Raft).

Beth Biri *transliterated name* {1011 beythbiry} House of the Creator.

Beth Dagon *transliterated name* {1016 bethdagon} House of Dagon (a fish deity).

Beth Diblathayim *dual transliterated name* {1015 beythdiblathayim} House of Two Lumps.

Beth Eden *transliterated name* {1040 betheden} House of Eden (Pleasure).

Beth El *transliterated name* {1008 bethel} House of El.

Beth Eliy *transliterated name* {1017 betheliy} Of Beth El.

Beth Eqed *transliterated name* {1044 beytheqed} House of Binding.

Beth Gader *transliterated name* {1013 bethgader} House of the Wall.

Beth Gamul *transliterated name* {1014 bethgamul} House of Dealing.

Beth Ha Arabah *transliterated name* {1026 beythhaarabah} House of the Plains.

Beth Ha Emeq *transliterated name* {1025 beythhaemeq} House of the Valley.

Beth Ha Esel *transliterated name* {1018 bethhaetsel} House Beside.

Beth Ha Ram *transliterated name* {1027 beythharam} House Lofted.

Beth Ha Ran *transliterated name* {1028 bethharan} House Lofted.

Beth Ha Yeshimoth *transliterated name* {1020 bethhayeshimoth} House of Desolations.

Beth Hag Gilgal *transliterated name* {1019 bethhaggilgal} House of the Wheel.

Beth Hak Kerem *transliterated name* {1021 bethhakkerem} House of the Vineyard.

Beth Ham Merchaq *transliterated name* {1023 bethhammerchaq} House Afar.

Beth Hash Shittah *transliterated name* {1029 beythhashshittah}

House of Shittah (a species of tree).

Beth Hessed *transliterated name* {1004 bayith} {2617 hesed} [964 bethesda] House of Mercy.

Beth Hogleh *transliterated name* {1031 bethchogleh} House of a Partridge.

Beth Horon *transliterated name* {1032 bethchoron} House on the Boundary.

Beth Kar *transliterated name* {1033 beythkar} House of Meadow.

Beth Lebaoth *plural transliterated name* {1034 bethlebaoth} House of the Roaring Lionesses.

Beth Lechem *transliterated name* {1035 bethlechem} [965 bethleem] House of Bread.

Beth Lechemiy *transliterated name* {1022 bethhallechemi} Of Beth Lechem.

Beth Markaboth *plural transliterated name* {1024 bethmarkaboth} House of Chariots.

Beth Nimrah *transliterated name* {1039 bethnimrah} House of the Leopard.

Beth Pag *transliterated name* {1004 bayith} {6291 pag} [967 bethphagee] House of Unripened.

Beth Pases *transliterated name* {1048 bethpatsets} House of Scattering.

Beth Pelet *transliterated name* {1046 bethpelet} House of Escape.

Beth Peor *transliterated name* {1047 bethpeor} House of the Gap; a deity.

Beth Rapha *transliterated name* {1051 bethrapha} House of Healing.

Beth Rechob *transliterated name* {1050 bethrechob} House of the Broadway.

Beth Sayad *transliterated name* {1004 bayith} {6719 tsayad} [966 bethsaida] House of the Hunt.

Beth Shean, Beth Shan *transliterated name* {1052 beythshean, beythshan} House of Relaxation.

Beth Shemesh *transliterated name* {1053 bethshemesh} House of the Sun.

Beth Shemeshiy *transliterated name* {1030 bethhashshimshiy} Of Beth Shemesh.

Beth Sur *transliterated name* {1049 bethsur} House of Rock.

Beth Tappuach *transliterated name* {1054 beythtappuwach} House of the Apple.

Bethu El *transliterated name* {1328 bethuwel} {1329 bethuwel} Desolated of El.

betray, deliver, surrender *verb* [3860 paradidomi] to deliver to an enemy; to release; to give to possession of another.

betroth, betrothe, congregate *verb* {781 aras} {3259 yaad} [718 harmozo] to join together as in marriage; to congregate.

betrothals *plural noun* {3623 kelulah} engagements for marriage.

better *adjective* [2909 kretton] more useful; more excellent.

beyond acme [5230 huperakmos] past the prime of youth.

Bezeq *transliterated name* [966 bezeq] Flash.

Bidqar *transliterated name* {920 bidqar} Stabber.

Bigvay *transliterated name* {902 bigvay} the meaning uncertain.

Bichri *transliterated name* {1075 bichriy} Firstling.

Bilam *transliterated name* {1109 bilam} [903 balaam] Not of the People.

Bilgay *transliterated name* {1084 bilgay} Relaxed.

Bina *transliterated name* {1150 bina} of unceratin derivative.

bind, bound *verb* {6123 aqad} {8244 saqad} to tie; to fasten.

bind, confine, form, besiege *verb* {6696 tsur} to confine; to form by shaping.

bind, conspire *verb* {7194 qashar} {7405 rakac} to tie; to tie together.

bind, harness *verb* {2280 chabash} to tie, or wrap.

bind, tyrannize *verb* {631 acar} {6014 amar} to bind with a bond; to bind a captive; to tyrannize.

Binnuy *transliterated name* {1131 binnuwy} Built Up.

bird *noun* {6833 tsippor} {6853 tsephar} a feathered vertebrate; **cp** flyer.

birth, born, bare, bear, beget *verb* {3205 yalad} [1080 gennaol] [5088 tikto] to produce from seed; of the male, to cause birth; of the female, to birth.

Birzoth *plural transliterated name* {1269 birzowth} Holes (as pierced).

bit *noun* [4964 metheg] the bit of a harness.

bit, bit by bit, few, little, petty, shortly *adjective, adverb* {4592 meat} diminutive; a few; a little.

LEXICON

bit of land *noun* {3530 kibrah} a short distance.
bite, blink, nip *verb* {7169 garats} a pinch, of the lids, of the lips, of the hands as forming.
bite, usure *verb* {5391 nashak} literally, as in usury, to take a bite.
Bith Yah *transliterated name* {1332 bithyah} Daughter of Yah.
bitter *adjective* {3992 maar} {4751 mar} {4815 meriri} {plural 8563 tamurim} {4089 pikros} pungent; acrid; embittered; painful.
bitter, bitterness *noun* {4470 memer} {plural 4472 mamrorim} {4786 morah} {4787 morrah} {4814 meriruth} {4088 pikria} pungent; acridity; trouble; grief.
bitter, gall, venom *noun* {plural 4844 merarim} {4845 mererah} {4846 merorah} bile; venom; a bitter herb.
bitterly *adverb* {4090 pikros} with poignant grief.
bitumin *noun* {2564 chemar} as frothing to the surface.
Bizyoth Yah *transliterated name* {964 bizyotheyah} Despised of Yah.
black tile *noun* {5508 sochereth} tessara; a border tile.
blade, flame *noun* {3851 lahab} a flame of fire; a flashing blade of a sword.
blameless *adjective* **blamelessly** *adverb* {273, 274 amemptos} without blame.
blanket *noun* {8063 semikah} a large covering.
blaspheme *transliterated verb* {1442 gadaph} {4167 muq} {5006 naats} {987 blasphemeeo} to vilify; to slander.
blasphemous *transliterated adjective* {989 blasphemos} vilifying.
blasphemy *transliterated noun* {5007 neatsah} {988 blasphemia} a vilification.
blast *verb* {7710 shadaph} to scorch; to blight.
blast *verb* {4537 salpizo} to blast a trumpet.
blast, clang, clap, shout, stake *verb* {7321 ruwa} {8628 taqa} {4078 peegnumi} {4717 stauroo} to sound loudly; to celebrate by shouting, and/or blasting shophars and trumpets unto Yah Veh; to shout and/or blast a battle cry; to stake a tabernacle or tent; to stake for execution.
blast, blasting *noun* {7711 shedephah} a scorch; a blight.
blast(ing), clang(ing), clap(ping), shout(ing), stake(ing) *noun* {8619 taqowa} {8643 teruah} a loud sound; the celebration of shouting, and/or blasting shophars and trumpets unto Yah Veh; also of shouting, and/or blasting a battle cry; a stake of a tent, or tabernacle; a stake for execution.
bleeding, menstuous *adjective* {1742 davvay} sick, as in having a period.
blemish *noun* {3971 mum} {3470 momos} imperfection.
blemish *verb* {3469 momeomai} become imperfect.
bless, kneel *verb* {1288 barak} {1289 berak} {3107 makarios} to beatify; the Hebrew also means to kneel in adoration.
blessed *noun* {3106 makarizo} beatified.
blessedness *noun* {3108 makarismos} beatification.
blessing *noun* {1293, 1294 berakah} an adoration.
blind *verb* {5786 avar} to cause blindness.
blind, blindness *noun* {5787 ivver} {5788 ivvaron} literally, or figuratively, undiscerning; without sight; sightlessness.
blink *adverb* {6621 petha} to open momentarily.
blink *noun* {7281 rega} {8160 shaah} the blink of the eye; a quick look; a moment.
blink, calm, rest, split *verb* {7280 raga} this word is derived from two roots; blink and split, as momentary; calm and rest, as soothing.
blink, nip, bite *verb* {7169 qarats} to pinch the lids, the lips, or the hands as forming.
blister *noun* {3555 kevyah} a branding.
blister *verb* {3554 kavah} to prick; to penetrate, as to blister.
bliithe *noun* {835 esher} pleasant; **cp** blessed.
bliithe *verb* {833 ashar} to please; **cp** bless.
bliithesome *adjective* {837 ohsher} pleasing.
blood *noun* {1818 dam} {129 haima} the soul sustaining fluid in the arteries.
blood pouring *verb* {130 haimatekchusia} an effusion of blood.
bloody *adjective* {1741 devay} sickly; menstuous; loathing.
blossom *noun* {5322 nets} {5328 nitstsah} {5339 nitstsan} {5563 semadar} {6525 perach} {6733 tsitsah} {6734 tsitsith} {438 anthos} a bloom.
blossom, flourish *verb* {6524 parach} {6692 tsuts} to bloom.
blossom, wing *noun* {6731 tsits} a blossom, as blooming brightly; a wing, as gleaming.
blow *verb* {5380 nashab} to disperse; **cp** puff.

blow away *verb* {6284 paah} from the root of puff.
blush *verb* {2659 chapter} to express shame by blushing.
board *noun* {7175 qeresh} a slab or plank.
boast *verb* {2744 kaukaomai} to brag; to vaunt; in either a good or bad sense.
boast, boasting *noun* {2745 kaukeeme} {2746 kaukeesis} bragging; vaunting; in either a good or bad sense.
Boaz *transliterated name* {1162 boaz} {1003 booz} derivative uncertain.
bodily *adjective* {4984 somatikos} relating to the body; corporeal, or physical.
bodily *adverb* {4985 somatikos} relating to the body; corporeally, or physically.
body *noun* {1465 gevah} {1472 geviah} {1610 gaph} {1655 geshem} {4983 soma} the physical housing of the soul and spirit.
boil *verb* {7570 rathach} to boil.
boilings *noun* {7571 rethach} that which is boiled.
Bocheru *transliterated name* {1074 bocheruw} Firstborn.
Bochim *plural transliterated name* {1066 bochiym} Weepers.
boldly *adverb* (**having**) **boldness** *noun* {3954 parreesia} {3955 parreesiazomai} unreserved in speech; confident.
bond *noun* {632, 633 ecar} a binding declaration.
bond, band *noun* {4147 mocerak} {4562 masoreth} a restraint.
bonds *plural noun* {4575 maadannahoth} clusters.
bone, skeleton *noun* {1634, 1635 gerem} {6106 etsem} {3747 osteon} a framework; a substance; usually of the body.
boot *noun* {5430 seon} a military boot; a protection.
booted *participle* {5431 saan} shod with a military boot.
border, enclosure *noun* {1367 gebulah} {4526 micgereth} that outward bounds which encloses.
border, wing *noun* {3671 kanaph} {4020 migbalah} literally, extreme edge.
bore, pierce, appoint *verb* {5344 naqab} to point out; to thrust or make a hole through.
born *adjective* {3209 yillod} brought forth.
born *noun* {3211 yalid} that which is brought forth.
born, bare, bear, beget, birth *verb* {3205 yalad} {1080 gennaol} {5088 tikto} to produce from seed; of the male, to cause birth; of the female, to birth.
borne, bear, bore *verb* {5445 sabal} {941 bastazo} to bear a burden or load; to lift.
borrow, join, lend *verb* {3867 lavah} literally, to entwine; to become wrapped up in; as a borrower, or as a lender.
Boses *transliterated name* {949 bowtsets} Bleached.
Bosmath *transliterated name* {1315 bosmath} Spices.
bosom *noun* {2436 cheq} {2683 chetsen} {2684 chotsen} {2859 kolpos} the breast; symbolic of one's inner self.
bosom, bowl *noun* {6747 tsallacheth} deep; as a bowl, as a bosom.
Bosqath *transliterated name* {1218 botsqath} Swell (of ground).
Bosrah *transliterated name* {1224 botsrah} Fold.
botany *transliterated noun* {1008 botanee} herbs and plants.
bound *noun* {615 acir} {616 accir} persons that are bound, as in imprisoned.
bound, bind *verb* {6123 agad} {8244 sagad} to tie; to fasten.
boundary *noun* {3725 horion} {3734 horothesia} as a boundary line; limit.
boundary, cord, line, pang *noun* {2256 chebel} literally, a rope; as a boundary line, or as binding one in a pang.
bounty *noun* {8228 shepha} {8636 tarbith} a premium; an abundance; an excess.
bow *noun* {7198 qesheth} {7199 qashshath} that which is bent; a bow in the heavens; the bow of an archer.
bow *verb* {6915 qadad} to bend in reverence or respect.
bow, brow, rim, arch, back *noun* {1354 gab} that which is bowed, curved; also the top or rim.
bowl, hollow, palm, paw, sole *noun* {3709 kaph} {6447 pas} {8168 shoal} a hollow of the hand, foot, paw, or body; also utensils with a hollow.
braggadocio *verb* {212 alazoneia} bragging.
braggard *noun* {213 alazon} one that brags.
braid *noun* {6616 pathil} that which is entwined.
braids *plural noun* {4253 machlaphoth} ringlets of hair.
branch *noun* {5342 netser} {6056, 6057 anaph} {plural 6073 opheim} {7754 sok} {902 baion} {2798 klados} {2814 kleema} a limb; a bough of a tree; a descendant; also of the Messiah; **cp** twig.
branch, ear, stream *noun* {7641 shibboleth} a branch or an ear of grain, as growing; a stream, as flowing.

LEXICON

branch, spear *noun* {7973 shelach} {7976 shilluchah} a spear, as a missile; a branch, as sprouting.
branching *adjective* {6058 aneph} as covering.
brand, etching, mark, tattoo *noun* {7085 qaaqa} {8420 tab} {5480 karagma} a scratched marking; a mark on animals; an x or a + as a signature of an illiterate; a mark of protection; **read** Yechezq El 9:4–6; **read** Apocalypse 13:16,17, 14:9–11, 15:2, 16:2, 19:20, 20:4; **cp** brand *verb*.
brand, mark, tattoo *verb* {8427, 8428 tavah} to mark an animal; to mark an x or + as a signature of an illiterate, or to mark for protection.
branded *verb* {5348 nagod} marked by piercing.
brander *noun* {5349 noqed} one who brands.
bray *verb* {5101 nahaq} a screaming from hunger; **cp** growl.
breach *verb* {6561 paraq} {6562 paraq} {6555 parats} to breach; to separate from; to split.
breach, break *noun* {7667 sheber} {7670 shibron} a breach; a break; a ruin.
breach, break *verb* {7665 shabar} to breach; to break open.
breach, break (off) (loose), craunch, crunch, separate, split *verb* {6561 paraq} {6562 paraq} {6555 parats} to breach; to separate from; to split.
breach, plunder *noun* {6563 pereq} a breach; that which was broken away from.
breach, separate, split *noun* {6556 perets} a breach; a separation from; a split.
breaches *dual noun* {4370 miknac} in the sense of concealing.
bread *noun* {3899 lechem} literally, food; consider our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah as the food – that which sustains life.
break, breach *noun* {7667 sheber} {7670 shibron} a breach; a break; a ruin.
break, breach *verb* {7665 shabar} to breach; to break open.
break, broken *verb* {6565 parar} to break; to violate; especially a covenant.
break (down), dismay, terrify *verb* {2865, 2866 chathath} to cause to prostrate; to break down by violence, or fear.
break (forth) *verb* {6476 patsach} usually in singing; also break bones.
break (off) (loose), craunch, crunch, separate, split, break (open) *verb* {6626 pathath} to break open.
break neck *verb* {6202 araph} to break the neck, as to destroy.
breakers *noun* {4867 mishbar} a breaker of the sea.
breakwater *noun* {4664 miphrats} break is literal; water is implied; from the root, break.
breast *noun* {2373 chazeh} {7699 shad} [3149 mastos] the bosom; **see** bosom; **cp** chest.
breath *noun* {5396 nishma} {5397 neshamah} air inhaled and exhaled.
breathe *verb* {1709 empneo} to inhale and exhale; from the root of spirit.
breathe, puff *verb* {6315 puwach} to exhale the breath; to blow air; **cp** spirit {7307 ruwach}.
breathe cold *verb* {674 apopsucho} {5594 psucho} to inhale and exhale; from the root of soul.
breather *noun* {6314 pugah} breathing space.
bribe *verb* {7809 shachad} to donate.
bribe, ransom *noun* {7810 shachad} a donation.
bribes *plural noun* {8021 shalmon} extortions.
brick (make), whiten *verb* {3835 laban} to make a brick; to cause to be white; this is a derivative of two words; **see** brick *noun*; **see** white.
brick *noun* {3843 lebenah} a block of white clay.
bride *noun* {3565 numphee} a man's woman.
bridechamber *noun* {3567 numphon} bridal suite.
bridegroom *noun* {3566 numphios} a woman's man.
brier *noun* {5636 carpad} {8068 shamir} {942 batos} [5146 tribolos] a thorny or prickly stem.
brigandine *noun* {5630 siryon} a coat of mail.
bright vine *noun* {8321 soreqah} [288 ampelos] the Hebrew indicates a burning bright.
brilliance, brilliancy *noun* {5051 nogahh} {plural 5053 nogahoth} brightness; splendor.
brilliant copper *noun* {2830 chashmai} a polished metal.
bring, embark *verb* {321 anago} to bring out; to embark in sailing.
bring near, oblate, approach *verb* {7126 qarab} {7127 qereb} to draw near; to bring near; to offer for worship.
bring up, offer up, bear up *verb* {399 anaphero} to take up; to offer up an offering.

broad, large *noun* {7341 rochab} {7342 rachab} wide, width; roomy.
broaden, enlarge *verb* {7337 rachab} to widen; to make larger.
broadness *noun* {7338 rachab} width.
broadway *noun* {7339 rechob} [4113 plateia] a broad way; a wide street.
brocades *plural noun* {4865 mishbetsahim} fabrics into which gold, silk, or silver are woven.
brood *verb* {1716 dagar} to brood over eggs or chicks.
broom *noun* {4292 matate} an instrument for sweeping.
brother *noun* {251 ach} [80 adelphos] a male child born of one's parents; also used figuratively.
brotherhood *noun* {264 achavah} [81 adelphotees] brotherliness; a fraternity.
brow, rim, arch, back, bow *noun* {1354 gab} that which is bowed, curved; also the top or rim.
brush arbors, sukkoth, Sukkoth/Brush Arbors *transliterated noun* {5520 sok} {5521 sukkah} {5522 sikkuwth} {5523 sukkowth} {7900 sok} [4634 skeenopeegia] name of places in Pelesheth and Misrayim; a brush arbor to harbor animals; a celebration of harvest, of spreading of branches, of Hoshia Na; Leviticus 23:33–44, Yahn 7:37, Psalm 118:25,26, Matthaïos 21:9–15, Markos 11:9,10, Yahn 12:13, Apocalypse 7:9,10; **see** Hoshia Na.
bubble *verb* {7370 rachash} to gush.
buck (goat) *noun* {6841 tsephir} {6842 tsaphir} a male goat.
buck, hairy *adjective* {8163 sair} shaggy; also a he goat.
buckler *noun* {4043 magen} {5507 socherah} a protector, as surrounding.
buckler *verb* {4042 magan} to protect to another's care.
bud, flee *verb* {5132 nuts} to flash, as in color; to flee in a flash.
build, edify *verb* {1124 benah} {1129 banah} [2026 epoikodomeo] [3618 oikodomeo] to build; to build up; to confirm; to construct; to erect.
building *noun* {1146, 1147 binyan} [3619 oikodomee] that which is erected or constructed.
bull *noun* {8450 tor} a male animal.
bullock *noun* {6499 par} a young bull, as breaking forth with strength.
bundle, kernel *noun* {6872 tseror} a package: as a parcel; as a particle.
Buqqi *transliterated name* {1231 buqqiy} Vacated; Evacuated.
Buqqi Yah *transliterated name* {1232 buqqiyah} Evacuating of Yah.
burden *noun* {2960 torach} {4614 maamacah} {4853 massa} {4858 massaah} [922 baros] a weight; **see** load; **see** overload.
burden *noun* {5447 sebel} {5448 sobel} {5450 sebalah} the load; the responsibility.
burden, lade, laden, load *verb* {6006 amas} to load a load; to impose a burden.
burden, uplift, uprise *noun* {4864 maseth} a raising; a reproach, as a burden.
burdenbearer *noun* {5449 sabbal} one that bears burdens; a porter.
burdened *adjective* [916 bareo] [925 baruno] weighed down.
burdenless *noun* [4 abares] not burdensome.
burn *verb* {6272 atham} to glow.
burn *verb* {8313 saraph} to fire; **see** seraph.
burn, kindle *verb* {3341 yatsah} {5400 nasaq} {6919 qadach} to set on fire; to desolate.
burn (down) *verb* {3344 yaqad} [2618 katakaio] to wholly consume.
burner, burnings *noun* {3350 yeqod} {4168 moqed} {4169 moqadah} a fire; a fuel.
burning *noun* {8316 serephah} a firing; a cremation; **see** seraph.
burning *participle* {3345 yeqad} {3346 yeqeda} a conflagration.
burning (coal) (flash) *noun* {7565 reshaph} a burning coal; a burning flash as of a flaming arrow.
burnished *adjective* {7044 qalal} brightened.
burst (open), liberated *adjective* {6359 patir} {6362 patar} burst open, as a flower; liberate, as a person.
burster *noun* {6363 pitrah} a firstborn; the first to burst the matrix.
bury, hide *verb* {2934 taman} to hide by covering.
bush *noun* {5572 ceneh} a shrub with branches.
butler, drink (give), drown, moisten, wet *verb* {8248 shaqah} {8257 shaga} to butler, as a bartender; to drink to quench

LEXICON

thirst; to drink unto drowning; to cause to be wet.

butlership, drinking, moistened, moisture *noun* {4945 mashqeh} to cause to be moistened, or drunken.

butt, push *adjective* {5056 naggach} butting, as vicious.

butt, push *verb* {5055 nagach} to butt with the horns; to war against.

buttocks *noun* {8357 shethah} the rump.

by, from, of *preposition* In most versions, these three words are used interchangeably as the translators desired; in the Hebrew, they are most often inferred; in the Hellene, two words [575 apo] [1537 ek, ex] (among others) are translated into more than thirty words; most often the context must decide their proper use; for example, it is not feasible to build a doctrine on the phrase, the trust **of** Yah Shua Messiah.

bysus *noun* {3768 karpac} a yellow flax.

C

cage *noun* {5474 sugar} an inclosure.

cake *noun* {809 ashishah} a bakery, usually of grapes.

cakes *plural noun* {8601 tuphinim} those which have been caked by baking; **see** bake.

calamity *noun* {6365 pid} to ruin by piercing.

calcinations, cremations *plural noun* {4955 misraphahoth} calcinations as of lime; cremations of bones.

calf *noun* {5695 egel} male calf; as frisking round; **cp** heifer.

call back *verb* {479 antikaleo} to return an invitation.

call, proclaim, recall *verb* {7121 qara} {7123 qera} [1941 epikaleomai] [2564 kaleo] [4341 proskaleomai] [4377 prosphoneo] to call forth; to call out; to call upon; to address; **cp** name.

called *noun* {7148 qari} the called ones.

calling *noun* {7150 qeriah} having been called.

callous, heavy *adjective* {3515 kated} [3975 pakunomai] as in grievous; as in thickskinned.

callous, heavy, honour *verb* {3513 kabad} to weigh down; to callous; to esteem.

callous, prevail, strengthen, uphold *verb* {553 amats} {555 omets} {2388 chazaq} {2393 chezqah} {5810 azaz} to become thickskinned; to enable physically.

calm, rest, split, blink *verb* {7280 raga} this word is derived from two roots; blink and split, as momentary; calm and rest, as soothing.

camel *transliterated noun* {1581 gamel} [2574 kameelos] burdenbearer.

camp *noun* {4264 machaneh} a tenting area; an army.

camp, encamp *verb* {2583 chanah} {8497 takah} [63 agraulo] [835 aulizomai] to pass the night in the open air; to tent; **see** pull stakes; **see** court, courtyard.

camphire, koper/atonement, pitch *noun* {3724 koper} camphor, a medication; a sealant for the ark of the flood; also an atonement: **see** koper/atonement.

can, enable, prevail, able *verb* {3201 yakol} {3202 yekel} {3546 kehal} [1410 dunamai] [2427 hikanoo] the dynamis to do; **see** dynamis.

cankerworm *noun* {3218 yeleq} a devourer.

canon *transliterated noun* {2583 kanon} a measured rule or regulation.

canopy *noun* {2646 chuppah} a cover.

cap *noun* {3805 kothereth} {6858 tsepheth} the top cap of a column.

capable, possible *adjective* [1415 dunatos] having sufficient dynamis; **see** dynamis.

captivate, capture, adhere *verb* {3920 lachad} {3921 leked} [259 halosis] to catch; to cause to stick.

capture, captivity *noun, adjective* {7622 shebiyth} {7628 shebiy} {7633 shibiyah} [161 aichmalosia] [162 aichmaloteuo] [164 aichmalotos] one that is captured; the state of being captured.

captive, captor *noun* **capture** *verb* {7617 shabah} [163 aikmalotizo] captive, as one captured; captor, as one who captures; capture, to transport into captivity; **see** survive.

capture, adhere, captivate *verb* {3920 lakad} {3921 leked} [258 halosis] to catch; to cause to stick.

capture, manipulate *verb* {8610 taphas} to manipulate; to seize with the hands; to use without warrant.

caravan *noun* {736 orechah} {1979 helikah} a group of travelers.

caravan *verb* {732 arach} to travel in groups.

carcase *noun* {1480 guphah} {5038 nebelah} {6297 peger} [2966 kolon] [4430 ptoma] corpse.

carcase heap *noun* {7419 ramuth} a heap of carcases.

carousal, potion *noun* {5435 cobe} a drinking revelry; a potion of carousing.

carouse *verb* **carouser** *participle* {5433 caba} to revel by drinking; one who carouses.

carousing *noun* [2970 komos] a drinking revelry.

carve *verb* {6605 pathach} {7049 qala} to hew in wood or stone; to plow the ground.

carve, chop *verb* {2404 chatab} to hew or cut.

carving *noun* {plural 2405 chatubah} {4734 miqlaath} {6603 pittuach} {6816 tsatsua} that which is carved or hewn.

cast, hurl, throw *verb* {7993 shalak} to throw out, down, or away.

cast, lie, put *verb* [906 ballo] to throw.

cast (away) (down) (forth) (out) *verb* {2904 tuwl} to pitch away, down, forth, or out.

castle *noun* {2038 harmon} a tall building.

castrated *adjective* {4790 meroach} literally, bruised testis.

castrated *noun* {1795 dakkah} literally, crushed testis.

cataract *noun* {8400 teballul} as flowing; a cataract in the eye.

catastrophe *transliterated noun* [2692 katastrophe] a calamity; a demolition.

catechize *transliterated verb* [2727 kateekoo] to doctrate by question and answer.

cathedra *transliterated noun* [2515 kathedra] a seat of one in authority.

cathedra (preeminent) *transliterated noun* [4410 protokathedria] first seat of one in authority.

cauldron *noun* {4802 marchesheth} a stewing instrument.

cause, accusation *noun* [156 aitia] [157 aitiama] [158 aition] as asked; as inquired into.

causer *noun* [159 aitos] one that causes to be; **cp** Creator.

cauterize *transliterated verb* [2743 kauteriazo] to sear or burn with a caustic.

cavalry *noun* {6571 parash} combat troops on horseback.

cave, cavern *noun* {4631 mearah} {plural 4492 minharoth} [3692 opee] an opening in the earth.

cease *verb* {988 batel} {989 betel} to desist; to stop.

cease, consummate *verb, participle* {1584 gamar} {1585 gema} to bring to conclusion.

cease, de cease, desist, abandon *verb* {2308 chadai} to be lacking; to stop.

cedar *noun* {8391 teashshur} a species of tree.

ceil, ciel *verb* {5603 saphan} to cover with a ceiling.

ceiling, cieling *noun* {5604 sippun} a ceiling as a cover.

celebrate *verb* {2287 chagag} {8567 tanah} [1858 heortazo] to commemorate by ceremony.

celebration *noun* {2282 chag} [1859 heortee] a ceremonial commemoration; a festive occasion; Elohim's intent was for the earthly life of humanity to be one celebration after another.

cement *noun* {4423 melet} literally, smooth.

censer *noun* {4730 miqtereth} [2369 thumiasterion] an incense holder; **see** incense; **see** frankincenser.

census, mandate *noun* **specified** *adjective* {4662 miphqad} an enumeration; a designated spot; an order, or command.

centurion *transliterated noun* [1543 hekatontarchees] [2760 kenturion] an arch over a hundred.

ceremonial, ceremony *noun* [2356 threeskia] the form of commemorating an event.

ceremonious *adjective* [2357 threeskos] formal; ritual.

certain, secure *adjective* **certainly, securely** *adverb* {3330 yatstsib} [804 asphalees] [806 asphalos] assuredly; safely.

certainly, security *noun* {3321 yetseb} [803 asphalia] safety; an undoubtable truth.

cesspool *noun* {5122 nevaluw} from the root, to foul; a pool that collects filthy waste.

chaff *noun* {4671 mots} {5784 ur} [892 akuron] that which is winnowed from the grain.

chaff, flakes *noun* {4651 mappal} that which falls off; that which is pendulous.

chain *noun* {6060 anaq} {7242 rabid} a collar; a chain of adornment.

chain *noun* {7569 rattoq} {7572 rattiqah} {plural 7577 rethuqahoth} {8331 sharshah} {8333 sharsherah} a chain as woven; a chain as linked.

chain *verb* {6059 anaq} to adorn with a chain.

chain *verb* {7576 rathaq} to chain with a woven chain.

chalice *noun* {6907 qubbaath} a goblet.

chamber *noun* {3326 yatsuah} {3957 lishkah} {5393 nishkah}

LEXICON

{8372 taah} a bedchamber; a cell; a room.

chameleon, swan *noun* {8580 tanshemeth} hard breather.

change, double, duplicate, fold, reiterate, repeat, alter *verb* {8132 shana} {8133 shena} {8138 shanah} to reinforce by folding, by doubling; may include disguise, camouflage.

change, exchange *verb* {3235 yamar} {4171 mur} {236 allasso} to alter; to change places.

changes *noun* {2487} chaliphah} alterations of ways of life; of clothing.

channel, bandage *noun* {8585 tealah} a channel into which water is raised; a bandage, as lifted on a wound.

charge *verb* [1291 diastellomai] to enjoin.

chariot, upper millstone *noun* {4817 merkab} {4818 merkabah} {7393 rekeb} {7396 rikbah} {7398 rekub} a vehicle; a rider; **cp** millstones.

charioteer *noun* {7395 rakkab} one that drives a chariot.

charism, charisma, charismatic; see SUMMARY: CHARISM.

charmer *noun* {2267 cheber} one who casts spells.

chart, inscribe *verb* {3789 kathab} {3790 kethab} {3799 katham} {1449 engrapho} to scribe; **see** scribe.

chase, flap, flee, wander *verb* {5074 nadad} {5323 natsa} to flap up and down; to shoo away.

chasm *noun* {6178 aruts} {7745 shuehah} {5490 chasma} a breach in a rock; an abyss.

chattel *noun* {4735 miqneh} {4736 miqnah} {7075 qinan} any human, animal, or material possession, except real estate.

chattel, chattelize *verb* {7069 qanah} to acquire chattel; to cause to be a chattel.

chatter *verb* {6527 parat} to scatter words.

cheat, deprive *verb* {650 apostereo} to deprive of some right.

checkered *adjective* {8665 tashbets} as reticulated.

cheek, jaw *noun* {3895 lechi} the side, or the bottom of the face.

cheer *noun* [5479 chara] cheerfulness; delight; **see** SUMMARY: CHARISM, CHEERS.

cheer *verb* {4010 mabliyyiyth} {8055 samach} to cheer.

cheerful *adjective* {8056 sameach} blithe.

cheerfulness *noun* {8057 simehah} blithsomeness.

charm, join *verb* {2266 chabar} literally, to join objects; to cast spells.

cherish befriending *verb* [5387 philostorgos] to have affection for being a friend.

cherub, cherubim *transliterated noun* {singular 3742 cherub} [plural 5502 cheroubim] figures which guarded the Garden of Eden and the Ark; **cp** seraph.

chesnut *noun* {6196 armon} a nut bearing tree.

chest *noun* [4738 steethos] the thorax of the body; **cp** breast.

chew, cut *verb* {1262 barah} chew food; to cut as in choosing.

chew out *verb* {399 akal} to eat at; to gnaw at.

chew out *verb* {7170 qerats} to chastize verbally.

chicks *plural noun* {667 ephroachim} as in bursters of a shell.

child, children (young) *noun* {2056 valad} {3206 yeled} {3207 yeled} {3808 paidarion} {3813 paidion} [5043 teknon]

young person or persons.

childbearer *noun* [5041 teknogoneo] a person who bears children.

childhood *noun* {3208 yalduth} [3812 paidiothen] the life period of a young person.

childless *adjective* [815 ateknos] without children.

children (fostered) *verb* [5044 teknotrophee] to bring up another person's children.

children (little) *noun* [5040 teknon] children of small stature.

chiliarch *transliterated noun* {441 alluph} [5506 chiliarchos] a ruler of a thousand.

chip away *verb* {7111 qetsaphah} to fragment.

chirp *verb* {6850 tsaphaph} to chirp or coo as a bird.

choice *adjective* {4004 mibchor} {4005 mibchar} select; best.

choir *plural noun* {1960 huyedah} a group of singers.

chomer, heap, mortar *transliterated noun* {2563 chomer} a dry measure as mixed, or heaped.

choose, chose *verb* {977 bacher} to select.

chop, carve *verb* {2404 chatab} to hew; to cut.

chop, chopping *noun* {4553 misped} [2870 kopetos] [2871 kopee] a beating of the breast as an expression of lamenting, mourning, or wailing.

chop, chopping *verb* {5594 saphad} [2875 kopto] to beat the breast as in expression of lamenting, mourning, or wailing.

chop, curtail, harvest, shorten *verb* {7114 qatsar} literally, or figuratively, to cut off.

chop off *verb* {7112 qatsats} [7113 qetsats] literally, or

figuratively, to chop off.

chops, cuttings *noun* {1279 biryah} a cut or chop of meat.

chorus *transliterated noun* [5525 choros] a band of singers.

chosen *adjective* {972 bachirr} a select people whom Yah Veh chose.

ciel, ceil *verb* {5603 saphan} to cover with a ceiling.

ceiling, ceiling *noun* {5604 sippun} a ceiling as a cover.

circle *noun* {2329 chug} a round.

circle *verb* {2328 chug} to go around.

circuit, crutch, spindle *noun* {6418 pelek} to be round; a spindle as whirled; hence a crutch.

circuit, revolution *noun* {8622 tequphah} a revolution of days; a revolving around.

circumcise *verb* {4135 mul} [4059 peritemno] to cut the foreskin; **cp** incise.

circumcision *noun* {4139 mulah} [plural 4139 muloth] [4061 peritomee] the cutting of the foreskin; **cp** decircumcision; **cp** incision; **cp** uncircumcision.

cistern *noun* [999 bothunos] a hole for storing water.

citadel *noun* {759 armown} a fortified dwelling.

citizen *noun* [4177 politees] a member of a nation.

citizenize *verb* [4176 polituomai] to cause to be, or become a citizen; citizenlike.

citizenship *noun* [4174 politia] [4175 polituma] membership in a nation.

city *noun* [5892 ayar] {6144 ar} {7149, 7151 qiryah} [7176 qereth] [4172 polis] (as in metropolis) a large town.

clamors *plural noun* {8663 teshuah} crashings; loud clamors.

clang, clap, shout, stake, blast *verb* {7321 ruwa} [8628 taqa] [4078 peegnumi] [4717 stauroo] to sound loudly; to celebrate by shouting, and/or blasting shophars and trumpets unto Yah Veh; to shout and/or blast a battle cry; to stake a tabernacle or tent; to stake for execution.

clang(ing), clap(ping), shout(ing), stake(ing), blast(ing) *noun* [8619 taqowa] {8643 teruah} a loud sound; the celebration of shouting, and/or blasting shophars and trumpets unto Yah Veh; also of shouting, and/or blasting a battle cry; a stake of a tent, or tabernacle; a stake for execution.

clap *verb* [4222 macha] to strike, especially hands.

clap, slap, slurp *verb* {5606 saphaq} as in clapping hands, slapping the thigh, slurping vomit; **see** gluttony.

clasp *noun* {6781 tsamid} a bracelet, as an arm clasp.

Claudius *transliterated name* [2804 klaudios] the name of a kaiser.

clay *noun* [2635 chacaph] [3749 ostrakinos] [4081 peelos] a substance of the earth; implies frailty.

clean *adjective* [5343 neqe] pure.

cleanse for sin, sin (against) *verb* {2398 chata} [264 hamartano] to misaim.

cleanse, polish, purge *verb* {1305 barar} [1571 ekkathairo] clarify, catharize; **cp** purify.

clear *adjective* [573 haplous] able to see distinctly, pure.

clear *adjective* **clearly** *adverb* {6703 tsach} bright; evident.

clear, gold *noun* [2091 zahab] literally, yellow shimmer.

clearing *adjective* {6708 tsechichi} as on the top of a rock.

clearing *noun* {6706 tsechiyach} as on the top of a rock.

cleave, pierce *verb* {6398 palach} to split in half; to pierce through.

cleaver *noun* {6393 peladah} a divider.

cleavered, cleft, clove, cloven *verb* {8156 shaca} [8158 shacaph] to split.

cleft *noun* {8157 sheca} a split.

cleft, clove, cloven, cleavered *verb* {8156 shaca} [8158 shacaph] to split.

cleft, twig *noun* {5585 caiph} a fissure of rocks; a small branch.

cliff *noun* [2911 kreemnos] the steep side of an elevation.

clip *verb* {5243 namal} to clip; to be clipped; as pruning; as circumcising.

clip *verb* {7094 qatsab} to clip or chop off.

clip, cut off *verb* [1219 batsar] to clip a crop; a city cut off by fortifying.

cloak *noun* [3737 karbela] {feminine 4304 mitpachath} a full outer garment.

cloak *verb* [3736 karbel] to put on a cloak; **see** cloak *noun*.

clot *noun* [2361 thronos] a large thick drop, especially of clotted blood.

cloth, clothes, covering *noun* {899 beged} [8008 salmah] [8071 simlah] that which is used to cover.

clothe *verb* {3271 yaat} [294 amphiennumi] to enrobe.

LEXICON

cloud *noun* {6050, 6051 anen} [3507 nephelee] [3509 nephos] a mist in the atmosphere.
cloud over, overcloud *verb* {6049 anan} to cover over with a cloud.
cloudiness *noun* {6053 ananah} the condition of mist in the atmosphere.
clove, cloven, cleaved, cleft *verb* {8156 shaca} {8158 shacaph} to split.
club *noun* {8455 tothach} a smiting instrument.
cluster *noun* [1009 botrus] a bunch or group.
coal *noun* [440 anthrax] anthracite.
coalfire *noun* [439 anthrakia] a fire of anthracite.
coat *noun* {3801 kethoneth} a covering; the first human covering in the Garden of Eden.
cocktail *noun* {4197 mezeg} {4469 mimcak} a mixed intoxicant.
cohabitation *noun* {5772 onah} the state of living together.
coil *verb* [1507 hellisso] [1667 helisso] to roll tightly; **cp** furl.
coincidence, incident *noun* {6294 pega} casual impact.
cold *noun* {7120 qor} {7135 qarash} chilly.
cold, hook, shield *noun* {6793 tsinnah} coldness, as piercing; a hook, as pointed; a shield, as a prickler.
colleague *noun* {3674, 3675 kenath} literally, one with the same title.
colts *plural noun* {5895 ayir} sons of a burro.
columns *plural noun* {8490 timarah} a round, vertical substance; a support; also of smoke.
comingle, mingle, pledge *verb* {6148, 6151 arab} to become colateral; **see** mingle.
comingling *noun* {8397 tebel} a mixing together; bestiality.
commander *noun* {5057 nagid} one who takes charge.
commander *noun* {7101 qatsin} one that determines.
commentary *noun* {4097 midrash} a treatise of notes or remarks.
common, profane *adjective* {2455 chol} [2839 koinos] that which is common; that which is held in common; that which is not hallowed.
commotion *noun* {7267 rogez} a quivering; **see** quiver.
commune *verb* [2843 koinonikos] to participate; to partake in common.
communicant, partaker *noun* [2844 koinonos] one who communes or partakes in common, or in communion.
communion *noun* [2842 koinonia] an act of sharing; the ceremony known as the Lord's Supper.
compact *adjective* {4568 maabeh} compressed.
companion *noun* {2269 chabar} {2271 chabbar} {2270 chaber} {2273 chabrah} {2278 chabereth} {4828 merea} a personal associate.
companionship *noun* [2274 chebrah] personal association.
company *noun* {7277 rigmah} a throng.
compare, liken *verb* {1819 dahmah} [3666 homoioo] to liken unto; to compare; to resemble; to consider; homoioo is the verb of likeness.
compassion *noun* [3627 oikteiro] [3628 oiktirmos] empathy.
compassion, compassionate *participle* {2551 chemlah} commiseration.
compassion, spare *verb* {2550 chamal} [3629 oiktirmon] to exercise compassion; to spare.
compel *verb* [315 anagakazo] to necessitate; to oblige.
complete, completely, completer, completion; see SUMMARY: COMPLETE.
comprehend *verb* **comprehending, comprehension** *participle* {7919 sakal} {7920 sekal} [3539 noieo] [4920 sunieme] a mental grasp; to understand.
comprehending *adjective* [4908 sunetos] a mental grasping; understanding.
comprehension *noun* {7922 sekel} {7924 soklethanu} [3540 noeema] [4907 sunesis] a mental grasp; understanding.
compulsion *noun* [317 anagakastos] the act of compelling.
comrade *noun* [2083 hetairos] a close companion.
conceal, cover (over) *verb* [3680 kacah] to fill up hollows.
conceal, cut off *verb* [3582 kachad] to secrete by act or word; to destroy.
conceal, veil *verb* {5956 alam} to conceal; to veil from sight.
concealed, concealment *noun* {8587 taalummah} that which is veiled; covered over.
conceive *verb* [2029 harah] {3179 yacham} to become pregnant.
conceive, hath conceived *adjective* {2030 hareh} pregnant.
concentrate, shut *verb* {5462 sagar} {5463 segar} shut; shut

tight; cold as shut tight, or concentrated.

conception *noun* {2031 harhor} {2032 heron} that which is conceived mentally, or physically.

concern *noun* {1674 dagah} to have care; anxiety.

concern *verb* {1672 deagah} to care about; to be anxious.

conclude, finish (off), fully finish *verb* {3615 kalah} {3635 kelal} to cease; to cause to de cease; to bring to an end; **cp** complete.

conclusion *noun* {8502 tiklah} {8503 taklith} the finality.

conclusion, consummation, end *noun* {5490 soph} {5491 soph} {7093 qets} {7097 qetseh} {7098 qatsah} the end, of an eon, of a scroll.

concubine *noun* {3904 lechenah} {6370 pilegesh} one who cohabits without a marital relationship.

condemn *verb* [2607 kataginosko] to have knowledge against; to find fault with.

condemn *verb* [2613 katadikazo] [2632 katakrino] to judge against.

condemnation *noun* [2631 katakrima] [2633 katakrisis] a judgment against.

confide *verb* {982 batch} to place confidence in; **see** trust.

confidence *noun* {985 bitchah} [986 bittahchohn] with assurance.

confidence *noun* {4009 mibtach} a refuge; assurance; **cp** hope; **cp** trust.

confident *plural noun* {987 battuchoth} assured.

confidently *adverb* {983 batch} with confidence.

configuration *noun* [4976 scheema] a schematic; an arrangement of a form.

configure *verb* [4964 suscheematizomai] to form according to a schematic.

confine, form, besiege, bind *verb* {6696 tsur} to confine; to form by shaping.

confines, distress, narrows, straits *noun* {4689 matsaq} {4691 metsuqah} {4712 metsar} from the root, belly; a narrow place; a confinement.

confiscate *verb* {6065 anash} to penalize by confiscation; a confinement for a fine.

conform *verb* [4832 summorphos] [4833 summorpho] to bring to the same form of another; **see** metamorphose.

confront, meet *verb* {7122 qara} {7125 qirah} to encounter.

confront, precede, anticipate *verb* {6923 qadam} to front; **cp** east.

confusion *noun* {4103 mehumah} to question reluctantly; uproar.

congregate *verb* {6950 qahal} {7035 qahall} to congregate a congregation.

congregate, betroth, betrothe *verb* {781 aras} {3259 yaad} [718 harmozo] to join together as in marriage; to congregate.

congregating, expectation *noun* [4723 miqveh] a collecting of troops, of water, of expectation.

congregation *noun* {4721 maqhel} {6951 qahal} {6952 qehillah} the assemblage of Yah Veh's selected people; the Hebrew and Aramaic corresponds to the Hellene, ecclesia.

congregation, season *noun* {4150, 4151 moed} [2540 kairos] an assemblage; an occasion of celebration; a season of the year, of existence.

Congregationer *noun* {6953 qohelath} the one that ministers to the congregation; the Preacher of Ecclesiastes.

consider, perceive *verb* [2657 kataneo] to observe attentively.

consider (well) *verb* [2648 katamanthano] to examine thoroughly.

considering *verb* [872 aphorao] to consider attentively.

consolation *noun* {plural 8575 tanchumuhoth} [3874 parakleesis] [3889 paramuthia] [3890 paramuthion] [3931 pareegoria] compassion; solace.

console, beseech *verb* [3870 parakaleo] to invoke by consolation.

conspiracy *noun* {7195 qesher} a tying together.

conspiracy *noun* {7285 regesh} renunciation; resistance.

conspire *verb* {7283 ragash} {7284 regash} to renounce, resist.

conspire, bind *verb* {7194 qashar} to tie; to tie together.

constellations *plural noun* {4208 mazzalah} {4216 mazzaroth} the stellar heavens.

constricted *adjective* **tribulation, tribulator** *noun* {6862 tsar} {6869 tsarah} a constriction; a time of constriction; a constricted place; one that constricts.

consume, consummate *verb* **integrious** *adjective* {8552 tamam} to finish off; to cause to be in consummate wholeness.

LEXICON

consummate, cease *verb* {1584 gamer} {1585 gemar} to bring to conclusion.

consummate, consume *verb* {5486, 5487 suph} {355 analisko} to end; to finish off; to be used up.

consummation, end, conclusion *noun* {5490 soph} {5491 soph} {7093 qets} {7097 qetseh} {7098 qatsah} the end, of an eon, of a scroll.

consumption *noun* {8399 tablith} the consuming.

contain, maintain, measure, sustain *verb* {3557 kuwl} to keep in.

contemplate *verb* {6448 pacag} to dissect; to analyze thoroughly.

contend *verb* {6229 asaq} to press upon.

contend, defend, plead, strive *verb* {7378 rub} to hold a controversy.

Contention *name* {6230 eseq} Strife.

contention *noun* {plural 4079 midyanim} {plural 4090 medanim} {4695 matstsuth} [119 athleesis] [2054 eris] argument.

contention, defence, plea, strife *noun* {7379 rib} a personal, or legal contest.

contest, agony *noun* [73 agon] [74 agonia] a struggle; a contest.

continual, continually, continuance *noun* {8548 tamid} to stretch out indefinitely.

contort, form, idolize *verb* {6087 atsab} to form; to contort; as in idolizing, to writhe in pain.

contorting *participle* {6088 atsab} writhing as in pain.

contorting, contortion, idol *noun* {6089 etseb} {6090 otseb} {6092 atseb} {6093 itstsabon} an earthen vessel; a writhing as in pain; **see** contort *verb*.

contortion, scar *noun* {6094 atstsebeth} contortion, as in pain; scars as causing contortion; **see** contort *verb*.

contradict *verb* [470 antapokrinomai] [483 antilego] to word against; to answer against.

contrive, join, attach *verb* {6775 tsamad} to link; to gird; mentally, to contrive.

control *noun* {4623 matsar} restraint.

controversy *noun* [485 antilogio] words against.

convocation *noun* {4744 miqra} a called meeting.

cool *adjective* {7119 qar} chilly.

cooling *noun* {4747 meqerah} a cooling off.

copper *noun* {5154 nechushah} {5174 nechash} {5178 nechosheth} a species of metal; that made of the metal.

copper, coppery *adjective* {5153 nachush} {5180 nechushtan} reddish; copper colored.

copulate *verb* {7250 raba} {7903 shekabeth} to squat; to lie out flat in copulation.

copulation, lying *noun* {7902 shekabah} the lying of the dew; the copulation of persons.

cord, hope *noun* {8615 tiqvah} hope, as to hang on to; a cord, to hang on to.

cord, line, pang, boundary *noun* {2256 chebel} literally, a rope; as a boundary line; as binding one in a pang.

corde *noun* {plural 4189 moshechoth} {4340 meythar} that which draws tight.

corner *noun* {4740 maqtsowa} {plural 4742 mequtsoth} an angle or recess.

corner *noun* {6434 pen} an angle; **cp** edge.

corner, chief *noun* {6438 pinnah} an angle; a pinnacle; a high person; **cp** edge.

corner, scrape *verb* {7106 qatsa} to corner off; to strip off.

corona *noun* {6843 tsephirah} as circling the head.

corrupt, corruptible *adjective* {7844 shechath} [5349 phthartos] decayable.

corrupt, destroy, destruct, lose, ruin, vanish *verb* {6 abad} {7 abad} {8 obed} {7843 shachath} [622 apollumi] [1311 diapthiro] [2704 kataphthiro] [5351 phthiro] to corrupt through decay.

corruption *noun* {7845 shachath} [1312 diapththora] [5356 phthora] decay.

corruption, disfigured {participle 2763 charam} {noun 4893 mishchath} **see** devote; **see** destroy.

cosmic *transliterated adjective* [2886 cosmikos] [2887 cosmios] cosmetic; mundane; orderly.

cosmic power *noun* [2888 cosmokrator] power over the cosmos; **see** cosmos.

cosmos *transliterated noun* [2889 cosmos] the globe on which we now exist; **see** world; **cp** earth.

counsel (private), councilmen *noun* {plural 4176 moetsoth}

{5475 cowl} {5483 eta} {6098 etsah} [1012 boulee] [1013 boouleema] purpose; advice; advisors.

counsel, consult *verb* {3272 yeat} {3289 yaats} {5779 uts} [1011 bouleuo] [4824 sumboulion] [4323 prosanatitheemi] to advise.

counsel, support *noun* {8454 tushiah} {plural 8458 tachbuloth} advice; support.

counsellor *noun* {plural 1907 haddabar} [1010 boulutees] [4825 sumboulos] adviser.

courage *noun* [2293 tharseo] [2294 tharsos] boldness; bravery.

courageous, encouraged *adjective* [2292 tharreo] to exercise courage.

courier *noun* {6432 pelethi} an official messenger (not angel); **cp** angel.

court, courtyard *noun* {2681 chatsir} {2691 chatser} [833 aulee] a residential court; a court of the tabernacle; a court for owls; a court as a village; often in conjunction with the name of the court.

court, ledge *noun* {plural 4052 migraah} {5835 azarah} {plural 7948 shalab} that which is surrounded; that which surrounds.

cousin *noun* [431 anepsios] the offspring of one's uncle or aunt.

covenant *noun* {1285 berith} [1242 diatheekee] literally, a cutting; in Scripture, a contract that was cut between Elohim and humanity; the shedding of blood is strongly implied.

covenant, covenantor *verb* [1303 diatithemai] [4934 suntitheemi] the act of covenanting; one who covenants.

covenant, cut *verb* {3772 karath} [4934 suntitheemi] literally, to cut; to covenant; to cut off; to cut down; to cut a cutting; to covenant a covenant.

cover *noun* {7184 qasah} a cover of an instrument.

cover *verb* {2643 chaph} {2645 chaphah} {2653 chophaph} in the sense of protection; of sins being covered.

cover *verb* {2926 talal} to strew over; to cover in.

cover *verb* {3728 kahphash} to cover, in the sense of atoning.

cover *verb* {7159 qaram} to cover.

cover, covering *noun* {3681 kacuy} {3682 kecuth} {4372 mikch} {4374 mekeacch} a protective covering; a veiling.

cover, covering *noun* {4539 masak} {4540 mesukkah} {4541 massekah} a cover as a veil, as a curtain.

cover, covert, covertly *noun, adjective* {5643 sether} a covering over; a concealment; also a hiding place of protection.

cover, demolish, hide *verb* {5641 sathar} {5642 sethar} to conceal by covering; to demolish and cover over.

cover, hedge *verb* {5526 sakak} to cover over; to hedge with a brush; **see** brush arbor.

cover, languish, veil *verb* {5848 ataph} {5968 alaph} to shroud; to cover over; to languish.

cover, veil, veil *verb* {3874 luwt} {5844 atah} {6809 tsaiph} [2619 katakaluptomai] to cover; to enrobe; to wrap; to withhold from view.

cover (over), conceal *verb* {3680 kakah} to fill up hollows.

coveralls *plural noun* {6446 pasim} a tunic many widths wide.

covering, cloth, clothes *noun* {899 beged} {8008 salmah} {8071 simlah} that which is used to cover.

covert *noun* {4563 mictowr} {4565 mictar} a protective cover; a refuge.

covertly *adverb* {2644 chapha} under cover.

covertly, enchantingly *adjective* {3909 lat} whispering a spell; under cover.

cowardice *noun* [1167 dilia] timidity.

cowardly *adjective* [1168 diliao] [1169 dilos] timid.

co-bound *verb* [4887 sundeomai] bound together.

co-citizens *noun* [4847 sumpolitees] citizens together.

co-destruct *verb* [4881 sunapollumi] to destroy or be destroyed in company with.

co-die *verb* [4880 sunapothneesko] die together.

co-elders *noun* [4850 sumpresbuteros] elders together.

co-enliven *verb* [4806 suzoopolio] enliven together.

co-heirs *noun* [4789 sunkleeronomos] heirs together.

co-judge *verb* [4793 sunkrino] judge together.

co-partake *verb* [4791 sunkoinonos] [4830 summetokos] to partake together.

co-partaker *noun* [4790 sunkoinoneo] [4829 summerizomai] [4830 summetokos] one who partakes with another.

co-scion *noun* [4853 sumphuletees] scions together.

co-seated *verb* [4775 sunkatheemai] [4776 sunkathizo] seated together.

LEXICON

co-servant *noun* [4889 sundoulos] servant together.
co-settle *verb* [4924 sunoikeo] [4925 sunoikodomeomai] to settle together.
co-souled *verb* [4861 sumpsukos] souled together.
co-staked *verb* [4957 sustauroo] staked together.
co-witness *verb* [4828 summartureo] [4901 sunepimartureo] to witness together.
crack, crush *verb* [2827 chashal] {7533 ratsats} {7779 shuph} to crack or crush to pieces; to weaken.
crafty *adjective* {3596 kiylay} withholding.
crag, ivory, tooth, tusk *noun* {8127, 8128 shen} {*plural* 8143 shenhabbim} [3599 adous] as being sharp.
cranium *transliterated noun* {1538 gulgoleth} [2898 kranion] the skull.
craunch, crunch, separate, split, breach, break (off) (loose) *verb* {6561 paraq} {6562 peraq} {6555 parats} to breach; to separate from; to split.
craunch bone, mighted, mightier, mightily, mighty *verb* {6105 atsam} to become mighty; to overpower a bone; to be powerful; to be numerous.
craw *noun* {4760 murah} an enlargement of the gullet of some birds to store food prior to gestation.
create, creator *verb* {1254 bara} [2936 ktizo] to cause to be; **cp** make; **cp** work.
creation *noun* {1278 beiryah} [2937 ktisis] that which is caused to be; **cp** work.
Creator *noun* [2939 ktistees] He who caused to be.
creature *noun* [2938 ktisma] that which the Creator caused to be.
creature, full breast *noun* [2123 ziyz] full breast in the sense of conspicuous, or "out in the open"; a moving creature.
creep *verb* {7430 ramas} to move on or near the ground.
creeper *noun* [2119 zachal] {7431 remes} [2062 herpeton] that which creeps.
cremate *verb* {5635 saraph} cremation of bones.
cremations, calcinations *plural noun* {4955 misraphahoth} cremations of bones; calcinations as of lime.
crimson *noun* {3758 karmil} carmine; a deep red.
crooked *noun* {4625 maaqash} [4646 skolios] bent; warped; wicked.
crooked, trap, trip *adjective* {6121 aqob} {6128 aqalqal} {6129 aqallathon} a trap; one that trips; crooked, as full of traps.
crop *noun* {1210 batssiyri} a harvest that has been cropped (clipped); **see** clip *verb*.
crop *noun* {1715 dagan} as an increase of growth.
crossway *noun* [296 amphodon] the place where two ways cross.
crotch *noun* [4667 miphsaah] the place of branching.
crouch *verb* {7251 raba} to sprawl on all fours.
crowd *noun* {5519 cak} a thicket of persons.
crown *noun* {5850 atarah} a circular headpiece; **cp** diadem; **cp** wreath.
crown *noun* {6936 qodqod} the circle of the head.
crown *verb* {5849 atar} to encircle with a crown.
crucible *noun* {4715 mitsreph} that in which metals are melted, and refined.
crumble, subjugate *verb* [7287 radah] to bring under; to conquer.
crumbs *plural noun* {5350 niqqud} as fragmented.
crunch, craunch, separate, split, breach, break (off) (loose) *verb* {6561 paraq} {6562 peraq} {6555 parats} to breach; to separate from; to split.
crush *verb* {1792 daka} {1794 dakah} {4277 machaq} to crush physically, or in spirit.
crush, crack *verb* [2827 chashal] {7533 ratsats} {7779 shuph} to crack or crush to pieces; to weaken.
crushed *adjective* {1793 dakkah} physically, or in spirit.
crutch, spindle, circuit *noun* {6418 pelek} to be round; a spindle as whirled; hence a crutch.
crutch, support *noun* [4938 mishenah] that on which one leans.
cry *noun* {2201 zaaq} {6818 tsaqaq} [2906 kraugee] an exclamation; a scream.
cry *verb* [2199 zaaq] [2200 zeiq] {4798 marzeach} {6817 tsaq} {7768 shava} {7769 shua} {7773 sheva} {7775 shavah} [310 anaboao] [994 boao] [1916 epiboao] [2896 krazo] [2905 kraugazo] to exclaim; to scream; **note**: {7768 shava} is the verb of salvation.
crystal, frost, ice *noun* {7140 qerach} as being smooth.

cubit *noun* [520 ammah] a linear measure, thought to be a forearm in length.
cucumber field *noun* {4750 miqshah} a cucumbered field.
cucumbers *plural noun* {6498 paqquahoth} as splitting open to shed its seeds.
cultivation *noun* [1091 georgion] that which is cultivated.
cultivator *noun* {406 ikkar} [1092 georgos] a digger of the soil.
culvert *noun* {6794 tsinnur} a hollow.
cunning *noun* [3834 panourgia] [3835 panourgos] trickery.
cup, little owl *noun* {3563 kowe} a container; an owl, from the cup-like cavity of its eye.
curdle *verb* {7087 qapha} to thicken.
cure *noun* {1456 gahah} that which heals.
cure *verb* [1455 gahah] [2323 therapeuo] the Hellene is the verb of therapy; **see** therapy.
curl, trough *noun* {7298 rahat} {*plural* 4857 mashabim} {8268 shoqeth} a ringlet of hair; a drinking trough for animals.
curled *adjective* {4748 miqsheh} turned; rounded.
curse *noun* {8381 taalal} [2671 kataral] an imprecation; a pronouncement of doom.
curse, cursing *verb* [779 arar] [3994 meerah] {6895 qabab} [685 ara] [1944 epikataratos] [2672 kataraoimail] to pronounce doom.
curtail *verb* [2179 zanab] literally, to cut the tail; **see** tail.
curtail, harvest, shorten, chop *verb* [7114 qatsar] literally, or figuratively, to cut off.
custom *noun* [1485 ethos] a usage prescribed by habit or law.
custom *noun* [1983 halak] a toll on goods.
cut *verb* [1504 gazar] to cut down, cut off, cut out.
cut, chew *verb* [1262 barah] chew food; to cut as in choosing.
cut, covenant *verb* {3772 karath} [4934 sunitheemi] literally, to cut; to cut off; to cut down; to cut a cutting (covenant a covenant); Elohim's covenants were cut; this cutting may imply shedding of blood; **see** circumcision; **see** covenant.
cut, decide, determine, point *verb* {2782 charats} [2852 chathak] to be cut; to cut a decision, or a determination; to point.
cut, scrape *verb* [7096 qatsah] to cut off; to scrape off, by cutting; to destroy.
cut (off) *verb* {5533 sakan} from the root, knife.
cut off *verb* [1219 batsar] to clip a crop; a city cut off by fortifying.
cut off, conceal *verb* [3582 kachad] to destroy; to secrete by act or word.
cut off, loathe, lothe *verb* [6962 qut] [6990 qatat] literally, or figuratively, to be cut off.
cutting, separation *noun* [1508 gizrah] a cutting as of a stone; a place set apart.
cuttings, chops *noun* {1279 biryah} a cut or chop of meat.
cymbal, harpoon, locust, whirring *noun* {6767 tselatsal} a clattering, as of a cymbal; a whirring, as of wings; a rattling, as of a harpoon.
cymbals *dual noun* {4700 metseleth} large double jinglers; **see** jinglers.
cypress *noun* {8645 tirzah} a kind of tree.

D

Dabbesheth *transliterated name* [1708 dabbesheth] Hump.
Daberath *transliterated name* [1705 daberath] Word.
Dagon *transliterated name* [1712 dagon] a fish deity.
Dahava *transliterated name* [1723 dahava] of uncertain derivative.
daily *adjective* [2184 epheemeros] for a day.
daily, by day *adjective* {3119 yomam} [2522 kathemerinos] during the period between sunrise and sunset, or sunrise to sunrise.
damage *noun* {2257 chabal} {5143 nezeq} hurt or injury.
damage (cause) (experience) *verb* [5142 nezaq] to suffer or inflict hurt, or injury.
damask *transliterated noun* [1833 demeshek] a fabric of Dammeseq.
Dammeseq *transliterated name* [*plural* 1153 damaskeenos] of Dammeseq.
Dammeseq *transliterated name* [1834 dammeseq] [1154 damaskos] a city of Syria; **see** damask.
Dan Yaan *transliterated name* [1842 dan yaan] Judge of Purpose.
dance *verb* {7540 raqad} [3738 orkeomail] to stomp; to spring about.
Dani El *transliterated name* [1840 daniel] {1841 daniel} [1158

LEXICON

daniel] Adoni of El.

darics plural transliterated noun {150 adarkon} Persian coins.

dark adjective {2841 chashrah} {7838 shachor} {7840 shecharchoreth} as in cloudy, dusky, swarthy.

dark noun {7835 shachar} dim, or dark in color.

darken verb {2821 chashak} {2825 chashekah} {6937 qadar} removing of light.

darkness noun {2816 chashok} {2821 chashach} {2822 choshek} {2824 cheshkah} {2825 chashechah} {3990 maaphel} {4285 machshak} {4588 mauph} {5890 eyphah} {6940 qadruth} {7815 shechor} absence of light.

darnel noun {2215 zizanon} darnel or false grain; resembling wheat except that the grains are black.

Darqon transliterated name {1874 darqown} of uncertain derivative; one of Shelomoh's servants.

dart noun {3591 kiydon} an instrument for striking.

Daryavesh transliterated title {1867, 1868 daryavesh} a title of several Persian sovereigns.

daughter noun {1323 bath} [2364 thugateer] a female offspring.

daughter in law noun {3618 kallah} a son's woman.

daughterling noun [2365 thugatrion] little daughter.

David transliterated name {1732 david} [1138 dabid] Loving.

dawn (at), dawning noun {4891 mishchar} {5053 nogahh} {7837 shachar} {7839 shacharuth} {8238 shepharphar} [827 augee] [3719 orthrizo] [3721 orthrios] [3722 orthros] daybreak.

dawn, dawning verb [1306 diagazo] [2020 epiphosko] [3720 orthrios] the breaking of day.

day, yom transliterated noun {3117, 3118 yom} [2250 heemera] including, but not limited to dawn to down, or dawn to dawn; 24 hours, or a nonspecific period such as the Day of Yah Veh, Yom Kippurim.

daylight noun {5105 neharah}.

dazzling white verb {6705 tsachach} as glaring.

dead noun [3498 nekros] necro; **see** necrosis; lifeless.

dead, death noun {4192 muth} {4193 moth} {4194 maveth} {plural 4463 mamoth} {8546 temuthah} [2288 thanatos] [5054 telutee] the cessation of life.

dead (half) noun [2253 heemithanees] as in entirely exhausted.

deaden verb [3499 nekroo] to cause to be lifeless.

deadly adjective [2286 thanasimos] fatal.

deal, ripen, wean verb {1580 gamal} transact.

dealing noun {1576 gemuwl} {1578 gemuwlah} transaction.

death (doomed to) verb [1935 epithanatos] destined to die.

deathbearing adjective [2287 thanateephoros] fatal.

deathify, die, necro- verb {4191 muth} [2289 thanatoo] to die; to put to death.

debate, discern, discriminate, doubt verb {995 biyn} [1252 diakrino] [1253 diakrissis] to distinguish; to thoroughly judge.

debtor noun [3781 ophiletees] used metaphorically of one who is under an obligation.

Decapolis transliterated name [1179 dekapolis] Ten City; a city which is tenth in size or influence; or a city over ten.

decease, desist, abandon, cease verb [2308 chadai] to be lacking; to stop.

deceased noun [2309 chedel] the state of the dead.

deceit noun **deceitful** adjective {4820 mirmah} {4860 mashshaon} {5231 nekel} {7423 remiah} fraud; treachery.

deceitfully/to Tormah adverb, transliterated name {8649 tormah} fraud.

deceive verb **deceiver** participle {5230 nakal} {8591 taa} to cheat.

deceive, deny, disown, emaciate verb {3584 kachash} [550 apeipomen] to be untrue in word, or deed.

deceive, hurl verb {7411 ramah} {7412 ramah} to throw; to betray.

deceive, mislead verb {5377 nasha} {7952 shalah} to lead astray; to wrong.

deception noun {7944 shal} a fault.

deception, denial, emaciation noun {3585 kachash} a failure of flesh.

deceptive adjective {3586 kechash} untrue in word, or deed.

decide, determine, point, cut verb [2782 charat] {2852 chathak} to be cut; to cut a decision, or a determination; to point.

decircumcision noun [1986 epispaomai] a circumcision which has been undone; **cp** circumcision.

decision noun {6600 pithgam} a judicial sentence.

decision, decisive, incision, incisor, ore, sickle, trench adjective, noun {2742 charuts} physically, soucally, or mentally, an incising.

decision, opinion noun [1106 gnomee] a personal judgment.

declaration noun [1335 diegesis] a setting forth in detail.

declare verb [1334 diegeomai] [1555 ekdiegeomari] [1834 exegeomai] the verb of exegesis; to set forth in detail.

decorous adjective [2158 uskeemonos] respectable.

decorously adverb [2156 uskeemonos] in a seemly manner; decently.

decorum noun [2157 uskeemosunee] that which is befitting.

decree noun {1510 gezerah} {1881, 1882 dath} [2942 teem] [3724 horizo] a regulatory order.

decree, taste noun [2941, 2942 teem] judgment; flavor.

decreer noun [1884 dethabar] one who decrees.

dedicated adjective {2593 chaniyk} from hanukkah; initiated; practised.

deed noun {4659 miphalah} that which is done; noun of the verb do.

deed noun {6467 poal} {6468 peullah} an act or work; **see** do, make.

deep noun {4688 metsulah} far down; **cp** depths.

deep, deeper, depth adjective {6011 omeq} {6012 ameq} further below; far lower.

deep fried verb [7246 rabak] bake by soaking in oil.

deepen verb {6009 amaq} to be deep; to make deep.

defamation noun [1426 duspheemia] a bringing into disrepute; dishonour; disgrace.

defat, fatten verb {1878 dashen} depending on the case, to make fat, or to remove fat; to enrich.

defence, plea, strife, contention noun {7379 rib} a personal, or legal contest.

defend, plead, strive, contend verb {7378 rub} to hold a controversy.

defile verb [3392 miaino] contaminate.

defraud verb {6906 qaba} to cover over.

degrees, steps noun {4609 maalah} steps; stations; a progression; 1/360th of a circle.

Dela Yah transliterated name [1806 delayah] Bailed of Yah.

delay, slack verb [1019 braduno] to be slow.

delicacies noun {plural 4303 matammoth} {plural 4516 manamim} {6598 pathbag} dainties; delicious foods.

delicate adjective {6028 anog} dainty; luxurious.

delicate participle **delight, luxuriate** verb {6026 anag} to be, or to become soft; to delight in; to deride.

delicately adverb [4574 maadan] cheerfully.

delight, desire adjective [2655 chaphets] pleased with.

delight, desire noun {2531 chemed} {2532 chemdah} {2656 chephets} {2837 chesheq} {plural 3970 maavayim} {4261 machmad} {plural 4262 machmadim} {8588 taanug} a delight; a pleasure; an object of desire, or pleasure, or of value.

delight, desire verb [2654 chaphets] literally, to bend toward; to be inclined toward.

delight, luxuriate verb **delicate** participle {6026 anag} to be, or to become soft; to delight in; to deride.

delights plural noun {8191 shaashua} pleasant strokes.

deliver, surrender, betray verb [3860 paradidomi] to release; to give to possession of another; to deliver to an enemy.

delude verb [538 apatao] to cheat; to deceive.

delusion noun {plural 4123 mahathallahoth} [539 apatee] a misleading of the mind.

demand verb [523 apaiteo] to demand back.

demand verb [1809 exaiteomai] to demand (for trial).

demolish verb [2040 harac] utterly destroy; break; break through.

demolish, hide, cover verb {5641 sathar} {5642 sethar} to conceal by covering; to demolish and cover over.

demolition noun [2034 haricah] {2035 haricuwth} [2041 herec] utter destruction.

demon noun [7700 shed] [1140 daimonion] [1142 daimon] an evil spirit; **see** spirit; **cp** Diabolos.

demonreader noun [1174 disidaimonesteros] a kind of worshipper.

demonreading verb [1175 disidaimonia] the dreading of demons.

demonic adjective [1141 daimoniodees] demon in character.

demonized verb [1139 daimonizomai] to be infused or overtaken by a demon.

denarion transliterated noun [1220 denarion] a Latin coin; a silver tenthpiece (dime).

LEXICON

denial, emaciation, deception *noun* {3585 kachash} a failure of flesh.

deny *verb* [533 aparneomai] [720 arneomai] to disown; to recant; to renounce.

deny, disown, emaciate, deceive *verb* {3584 kachash} [550 apeipomen] to be untrue in word, or deed.

depart, remove *verb* [5253 nacag] to retreat.

dependant, necessary *adjective* [316 anagkaiois] needed; depend upon.

depose, deposit, descend *verb* [5182 nechath] to go down; to bring away.

deprive, cheat *verb* [650 apostereo] to deprive of some right.

depth, deep, deeper *adjective* [6011 omeq] [6012 ameq] further below; far lower.

depths *plural noun* [4615 maamaqim] **cp** deep; lower region.

Deqer *transliterated name* [1857 deqer] Stab.

deride *verb* [3931 laab] [3932 laag] to ridicule.

derision *noun* [3933 laag] a ridicule.

descend *verb* [2597 katabaino] to go down.

descend, depose, deposit *verb* [5182 nechath] to go down; to bring away.

descend, lower, topple *verb* [3381 yarad] to go lower; to tip over.

descend, penetrate, press, sink, bend *verb* [5181 nachath] from the root, to sink; to go down; to press or lead down.

descendant *noun* [1549 ekgonon] one in the line of ancestors.

descending *adjective* [5185 nacheth] going down.

descent, festoon *noun* [4174 movrad] a place of going down; an ornamental hanging; a garland or wreath.

desert dwellers *noun* [6728 tsiyiy] they who dwell in the desert.

desert *noun* [6707 tsechichah] [6723 tsiah] [6724 tsion] a barren place.

designate, indicate *verb* [5567 saman] [322 anadiknumi] to show; to appoint.

desirables *plural noun* [2532 chemdah] valuables.

desire *noun* [8375 taabah] [8378 taavah] [8669 teshuqah] a longing for; **cp** will.

desire *verb* [183 avah] [8373 taab] to long for; **cp** will.

desire *verb* [2530 chamad] to delight in.

desire, delight *adjective* [2655 chaphets] pleased with.

desire, delight *noun* [2531 chemed] [2532 chemdah] [2656 chephets] [2837 chesheq] {*plural* 3970 maavayim} [4261 machmad] {*plural* 4262 machmadim} [8588 taanug] a delight; a pleasure; an object of desire, or pleasure, or of value.

desire, delight *verb* [2654 chaphets] literally, to bend toward; to be inclined toward.

desist, abandon, cease, decease *verb* [2308 chadai] to be lacking; to stop.

desolate, dry, parch *adjective* [2720 chareb] [8076 shamen] parched; ruined.

desolate, dry, parch *verb* [2717, 2718 charab] [3456 yashem] [8045 shamad] [8046 shemad] [2049 ereemoo] to lay waste; to destroy.

desolate, strive *verb* [5327 natsah] to struggle; to lay waste.

desolate, stun, astonish *verb* [8074 shamem] [8075 shemam] to lay waste; to stun, as in to stupefy or devastate.

desolation *noun* **desolate** *adjective* [2723 chorbah] {*plural* 3451 yeshiyamah} [3452 yeshimon] [4923 meshammah] [8047 shammah] [8077 shemamah] [2048b ereemos] [2050 ereemosis] an area which has been abandoned and left to ruin; **cp** wilderness.

despise *verb* [7750 suwt] to contemn.

despoil, pledge, spoil *verb* [2254, 2255 chabal] literally, to bind tightly; as in spoiling or as in binding a pledge.

despotes *transliterated title* [1203 despotes] a title ascribed to a lord of servants, to Yah Veh, and to Yah Shua; an absolute ruler; the present day connotation of tyrant did not appear until centuries later.

destroy, destruct, lose, lost *verb* [6 abad] [7 abad] [622 apollumi] to destroy fully.

destroy, destruct, lose, ruin, vanish, corrupt *verb* [6 abad] [7 abad] [8 obed] [7843 shachath] [622 apollumi] [1311 diapthiro] [2704 katapthiro] [5351 phthiro] to corrupt through decay.

Destroyer *title* [3644 olothrutees] a ruiner; the Hellenic translation of the Hebrew, Abbaddon; **see** Abbaddon.

destroying participle [4892 mashcheth] ruining.

destruct, lose, lost, destroy *verb* [6 abad] [7 abad] [622 apollumi] to destroy fully.

destruction *noun* [8 obed] [12 abdan] [13 obdan] [3589 kiyd] [4889 mashchith] [684 apolia] [3639 olethros] ruin.

determine, point, cut, decide *verb* [2782 charat] [2852 chathak] to be cut; to cut a decision, or a determination; to point.

Deu El *transliterated name* [1845 deuel] Known of El.

devastation *noun* [7722 shoah] ruin.

deviate *noun* [7846 set] one who turns aside.

deviate *verb* [7847 satah] to turn aside.

devote, doom *verb* [2763 charam] to set apart for dedication; to set apart for destruction; **see** disfigure.

devoted, doomed *noun* [2764 cheram] that which is set apart in dedication; that which is set apart for destruction.

dewdrops *plural noun* [7447 raciyc] drippings; droppings.

Di Zahab *transliterated name* [1774 diyzahab] Of Gold.

Diabolos *transliterated name* **diabolic** *adjective* [1228 diabolos] the Hellenic name of Satan; also used adjectively; **see** Satan; **cp** demon.

diadem *transliterated noun* [3804 kether] [1238 diadeema] a royal headpiece; **cp** crown; **cp** wreath.

diadem *verb* [3803 kathar] to place a diadem.

dialect *transliterated noun* [1258 dialektos] a provincial form of a language; **read** Acts 2:8–11.

dialogue *transliterated noun* [1261 dialogismos] a reasoning of words.

dialogue *transliterated verb* [1256 dialegomai] [1260 dialogizomai] to reason words, in argument or exhortation.

diaphanous *transliterated adjective* [1307 diaphanees] transparent; translucent.

diaspora *transliterated noun* [1290 diaspora] dispersion.

diatribe *transliterated noun* [3859 paradiatribe] a harangue.

Diblayim *dual transliterated name* [1691 diblayim] Two Lumps.

dichotomize *transliterated verb* [1371 dikotomeo] to cut into two parts.

didactic *transliterated adjective* [1317 didaktikos] able to doctriate.

didrachma *transliterated noun* [1323 didrachmon] double drachma.

die *verb* [599 apothneesko] [2348 thneesko] to become lifeless in the sense of dying off.

die *verb* [5053 telutao] to become lifeless in the sense of having come to completion.

die, necro-, deathify *verb* [4191 muth] [2289 thanatoo] to die; to put to death.

difficult *adjective* [1422 duskolos] impracticable.

difficultly *adverb* [1423 duskolos] impracticably.

dig, explore *verb* [2658 chapfar] to pry into.

dig, pierce *verb* [3738, 3739 kahrah] to bore; to dig.

dig, undermine *verb* [6979 qur] to trench; to estop.

digging *noun* [4290 machtereth] a burglary committed by digging into a building.

Dilan *transliterated name* [1810 dilan] of uncertain derivative.

dilute *verb* [4107 mahal] to cut down; to reduce.

dim, fade *adjective* [3544 kehah] obscure; dull.

dim, fade *verb* [3543 kahah] to become obscure, dull.

diminish, lessen *verb* [4591 maat] to reduce; to pare off.

dimness *noun* [887 aklus] dimness of sight.

Dioscuri *transliterated noun* [1359 dioskouroi] Twins of Zeus.

Diotrephes *transliterated noun* [1361 diotrephes] Nourished of Zeus.

Diqlah *transliterated name* [1853 diqlah] of foreign origin; a region of Arabia.

disadvantageous *adjective* [255 alusiteless] without advantage; without gain.

disallow, discourage, annul *verb* [5106 nuw] to refuse; dissuade.

disappear *verb* [6461 pacac] to disperse.

disapproved *verb* [593 apodokimazo] to refuse to accept as true.

discern, discriminate, doubt, debate *verb* [995 biyn] [1252 diakrino] [1253 diakrasis] to distinguish; to thoroughly judge.

discern, distinguish, estrange, notice, recognize *verb* [5234 nakar] to acknowledge; to scrutinize; to distinguish between; to ignore, hence to be estranged.

discernment *noun* [998, 999 binah] distinguishment; understanding.

discernment *noun* [8394 tabun] [144 aistheesis] detection; distinguishment.

disciple *noun* [3101 matheetees] [*feminine* 3102 matheetria] a

LEXICON

learner.

disciple *verb* {3925 lamad} [3100 matheetuo] to learn; to teach; **note:** not to be confused with discipline.

discipled *adjective* {3928 limmud} one who has learned, who has been taught; **see** learn, teach.

discipline *noun* {plural 4000 mabim} {4148 mucar} {4561 mocar} tutorial; may or may not include punishment; the Hellene is the verb of pedagogue; to tutor; **note:** not to be confused with disciple.

discipline *verb* {3256 yacar} {4148 mucar} [3809 paidia] [3811 paiduo] to tutor; may or may not include punishment; the Hellene is the verb of pedagogue; to tutor; **note:** not to be confused with disciple; **cp** discipline.

discourage, annul, disallow *verb* {5106 nuw} to refuse; dissuade.

discriminate, doubt, debate, discern *verb* {995 biyn} [1252 diakrino] [1253 diakrasis] to distinguish; to thoroughly judge.

disease *noun* {4064 madveh} {4245 machalah} {plural 4251 machluyim} sickness.

disesteem *verb* {2107 zuwl} [2706 kataphphroneo] to belittle. **disfigured, corruption** {participle 2763 charam} {noun 4893 mishchath} **see** devote; **see** destroy.

disgrace, folly, wither *verb* {5034 nabel} from the root, to wilt; to fall away; to fail.

disguise, search *verb* {2664 chaphas} to discover; to uncover; to mask.

dish *noun* {7086 qearah} as hollowed.

dishonour *noun* [819 atima] [820 atimos] disesteem.

dishonour *verb* [818 atimazo] to disesteem.

dishonourably *adverb* [821 atimoo] disesteemingly.

disintegrate, harass *verb* {7492 raats} to break in pieces.

disintegrator *noun* {4660 mappats} {4661 mappets} that which disintegrates.

dislocated *adjective* {4154 muwedeth} as slipped out of place.

dismay, terrify, break (down) *verb* {2865, 2866 chathath} to cause to prostrate; to break down by violence, or fear.

dismember *verb* {5408 nathach} to separate members of a body, human or animal; **see** members.

disown, emaciate, deceive, deny *verb* {3584 kachash} [550 apeipomen] to be untrue in word, or deed.

disperse *verb* {5086 nadaph} [1287 diaskorpizo] [1289 diaspiro] to scatter.

disperse, express, wound *verb* {6567 parash} to separate; to specify; to wound.

disregard *verb* [272 ameleo] as being unconcerned.

disrespect *noun* {937 buwz} {939 buwzah} abasement.

disrespect *verb* {936 buwz} to abase.

dissipate *noun* {3988 maac} to flow away.

dissolve *noun* {8557 temec} liquifaction; disappearance.

dissolve, flow, melt *verb* {4529 masah} to dissolve.

dissolve, melt *verb* {4127 muwg} to soften; to dissipate.

dissolve, vanish *verb* {4743 maqaq} [1262 dialuo] to dissolve; to dwindle; to vanish.

distant past, far, afar *adjective* {7350 rachoq} {7352 rachiq} {7369 racheq} remote; in time, or distance.

distant, receive in full *verb* {568 apeko} to have out; to keep away.

distend, extend *verb* {8311 sara} to extend oneself, as in stretching out; to distend, as an appendage.

distinction *noun* [1293 diastoles] [1243 diairesis] the difference between; a variation.

distinctly *participle* {6568 perash} to separate, as in words.

distinguish *verb* {6395 palah} [1243 diairesis] to differentiate.

distinguish, estrange, notice, recognize, discern *verb* {5234 nakar} to acknowledge; to scrutinize; to distinguish between; to ignore, hence to be estranged.

distortion *noun* {4297 mutteh} a stretching out of shape.

distress *noun* **distressful** *adjective* {6695 tsuqah} a strait.

distress, narrows, straits, confines *noun* {4689 matsaq} {4691 metsuqah} {4712 metsar} from the root, belly; a narrow place; a confinement.

distress, oppress *verb* {6693 tsuq} to compress.

distrust *verb* [544 apitheo] [569 apisteo] to lack trust.

distrust, trustlessness *noun* [543 apeitheia] [570 apistia] without trust; obstinate and rebellious.

distrusting *adjective* [545 apithees] lacking trust.

divide *verb* {6385 palag} {6386 pelag} to split.

dividing *noun* {6387 pelag} the division of a half.

divination *noun* {4738 miqcam} {7081 qecem} foreknowledge by magic.

divine *verb* {7080 qacam} to foreknow by magic.

diviner *noun* {1505 gezar} one who foreknows by magic.

division, rivulet *noun* {6390 pelaggah} {6391, 6392 peluggah} division of families; a split in the ground where a rivulet flows.

divorce *noun* {3748 keriythuth} a cutting of the marriage bond.

divulge *verb* [1583 eklaleo] to speak out.

do, keep, make, serve *verb* {5648 abad} in the sense of serving.

do, make *verb* {6466 paal} [4160 poieo] to assemble; to practice; to perform; **cp** create.

doctor, doctrine, doctrinate; **see** SUMMARY: DOCTOR.

Doda Yah *transliterated name* {1735 dowdavahuw} Beloved of Yah.

Dodah *transliterated name* {1737 dowday} Amatory.

doe *noun* {8166 seirah} a she animal.

doe goat *noun* {5795, 5796 ez} a she goat, as strong.

dogma *transliterated noun* [1378 dogma] a definite and authoritative doctrine.

dogmatic *transliterated adjective* [1379 dogmatizomai] true to the doctrine; **see** dogma.

dominant *noun* {7984 shilton} {7989 shalliyt} one that prevails.

dominate *verb* [2634 katakuriuo] [2961 kuriuo] to lord over.

dominate *adjective* {7990 shalliyt} mighty over; **cp** reign.

dominate *verb* {7786 sur} {7980 shalal} {7981 shelet} [831 authenteo] to be mighty over; **cp** reign.

domineering *adverb* {7986 shalleteth} ability to prevail.

doom, devote *verb* {2763 charam} to set apart for liturgy; to set apart for destruction; **see** disfigured.

doomed, devoted *noun* {2764 cheram} that which is set apart in liturgy; that which is set apart for destruction.

Dophqah *transliterated name* {1850 dophqah} Knock.

Dorcas, gazelle, Tabitha *noun* {6643 tsebiy} {6646 tsebiyah} [5000 tabitha] a gazelle, as beautiful; Tabitha is the Hellene transliteration of tsebiyah; Dorcas is the Hellene translation of tsebiyah.

double *adjective* [1362 diplous] two-fold.

double *verb* [1363 diploo] to repay or render two-fold.

double, duplicate, fold, reiterate, repeat, alter, change *verb* {8132 shana} {8133 shena} {8138 shanah} to reinforce by folding, by doubling; may include disguise, camouflage.

double, duplicate, second *noun* {4932 mishneh} a copy of; a double amount; a repetition.

doublemouthed *adjective* [1366 distomos] two-edged.

doublesouled *adjective* [1374 dipsukos] in the sense of being twofaced; **cp** doubleworded.

doubleworded *adjective* [1351 dilogos] as in wording differently on different occasions; in the sense of being twofaced; **cp** doublesouled.

doubt, debate, discern, discriminate *verb* {995 biyn} [1252 diakrino] [1253 diakrasis] to distinguish; to thoroughly judge.

doughboard *noun* {4863 mishereh} a board on which the dough rises.

downcast *adjective* {7807 shach} sunken.

downing *noun* {4606 meal} the downing, usually of the sun; **cp** dawn, dawning.

downing *verb* [1416 dumi] to go down, usually of the sun; **cp** dawn, dawning.

downpour *noun* {1653 geshem} [5494 kimon] a heavy rain.

downpour *verb* {1652 gasham} {1656 goshem} to rain heavily.

downward *adverb* {4295 mattah} in the direction of down.

dowry *noun* {4119 mohar} {plural 7964 shilluach} the price paid to marry a woman.

drachma *transliterated noun* [1406 drachme] a silver coin; literally, a handful of silver; **cp** didrachma.

drachmim *plural noun* {1871 darkmohneem} Persian coins.

drag *verb* {5498 sachab} to trail along.

drag net *noun* {4365 mikmereth} a net that is dragged; **see** net.

dragon *transliterated noun* [1404 drakon] a kind of serpent.

drape *noun* {7757 shul} that which hangs down; **cp** train.

draughts *plural noun* {8514 talubah} desiccations.

draw *verb* {8025 shalaph} as a drawn sword.

draw, pour *verb* {7324 ruq} to pour in; to pour out.

drawn *adjective* {8305 seriyqah} flax, as drawn.

dread, terrify, awe *verb* {6206 arats} to harass; to reverence.

dream *noun* {2472 chalom} {2493 chelem} [1798 enupnion] [3677 onar] thoughts, images, or emotions occurring during sleep.

dream *verb* {2492 chalam} [1797 enupniazomai] to

LEXICON

experience a thought, image, or emotion during sleep.

dregs *plural noun* {8105 shemer} the settlings of the wine.

drift, shake, stagger, totter, wag, wander, waver *verb* {5128 nuwa} to waver.

drink (give), drown, moisten, wet, butler *verb* {8248 shaqah} {8257 shaga} to butler, as a bartender; to drink to quench thirst; to drink unto drowning; to cause to be wet.

drink *noun* {8354 shathah} a liquid.

drink, banquet *noun* {4960, 4961 mishteh} the act of drinking; a banquet of eating and drinking.

drink, moisture *noun* {8249 shiqquv} {8250 shiqquw} a beverage.

drinking *noun* {8358 shethy} intoxicating.

drinking, moistened, moisture, butlership *noun* {4945 mashqeh} to cause to be moistened, or drunken.

drip, drop *noun* {1812 deleph} a dripping.

drip, drop *verb* {1811 dahlah} {5197, 5198 nataph} {6201 araph} {7491 raaph} to drip; to descend in drops; as in weeping.

dripping, fresh *adjective* {2961 tariy} to be moist.

dripping darkness *noun* {6205 araphel} gloom; as of a lowering sky.

drive, alight *verb* {6795 tsanach} to cause to descend; to come down; to drive down.

drive, ride *verb* {7392 rakab} to place upon; to dispatch.

drive (out), expel *verb* {1644 garash} {2957 terad} {5080 nadach} {5090 nahag} to expatriate; to push off; to carry away.

drop, spoil *verb* {7997 shalah} to let drop; to strip, or plunder.

dross *noun* {5509 sug} scoria.

drought, parch *noun* {2721 choreb} {2725 charabon} very dry.

drove *noun* {5739 eder} [34 agelee] an arrangement of; a herd, as being driven.

drown, moisten, wet, butler, drink (give) *verb* {8248 shaqah} {8257 shaga} to butler, as a bartender; to drink to quench thirst; to drink unto drowning; to cause to be wet.

drowsiness *noun* {5124 numah} {8572 tenuwm} sleepiness.

drudgery *noun* {6045 inyan} difficult task.

dry, parch, desolate *adjective* {2720 chareb} {8076 shamen} parched; ruined.

dry, parch, desolate *verb* {2717, 2718 charab} {3456 yashem} {8045 shamad} {8046 shemad} [2049 ereemoo] to lay waste; to destroy.

dry, wither *noun* {3002 yabesh} {3004 yabbashah} {3006, 3007 yabbsheth} lands and waters dry; plants, persons wither.

dry, wither *verb* {3001 yabesh} {5405 nashath} {7060 qamal} lands and waters dry; plants, persons wither.

dugout *noun* {1358 gob} {1360 gebe} a digging.

dull *verb* {6949 qahah} to unsharpen.

dumbfounded *verb* {1724 dahham} to cause to be speechless.

dung *noun* {plural 2755 charey yonim} {6569 peresh} {6675 tsoah} {6832 tsephua} excrement.

dungball *noun* {1557 gahlal} {1561 gehlel} a ball of excrement.

dunhill *noun* {830 ashpoth} {4087 madmenah} a heap of excrement.

dungy *adjective* {6674 tso} dunglike.

dupe, entice *verb* {6601 pathah} to delude; to tempt; **cp** test.

duplicate, fold, reiterate, repeat, alter, change, double *verb* {8132 shana} {8133 shena} {8138 shanah} to reinforce by folding, by doubling; may include disguise, camouflage.

duplicate, second, double *noun* {4932 mishneh} a copy of; a double amount; a repetition.

dusk, duskward *noun* {4628 maarabah} {5939 alatah} in the sense of shade.

dust *noun* {6083 apha} {2868 koniortos} {5522 choos} fine particles of matter.

dust *verb* {6080 apha} to dust with dust.

dusty *adjective* {5517 choikos} dirty; soil-like.

dwel, settle *verb* {1460 egkatoikeo} {2730 katoikeo} [3611 oikeyo] to reside.

dye *noun* {6648 tseba} a dye.

dye *verb* {6647 tseba} to dip into a dye.

dyled scarlet *participle, verb* {8529 tala} to dye a scarlet color.

dynamic *adjective* [1414 dunateo] able; capable.

dynamis *transliterated noun* [1411 dunamis] dynamic ability.

dynamize *verb* [1412 dunamoo] [1743 endunamoo] to endure with dynamis.

dynast, dynasty *noun* [1413 dunastees] one ended with dynamis; the seat of dynamis; **see** dynamis.

E

eagle *noun* {5403 neshar} {5405 nesher} from the root, to lacerate; as a bird of prey.

ear *noun* {241 ozen} [5621 otion] the organ for hearing.

ear, stream, branch *noun* {7641 shibboleth} a branch or an ear of grain, as growing; a stream, as flowing.

early (rise) (seek) *verb* {7836 shachar} to be early.

early start, start early *verb* {7925 shakam} to start early.

earrings *noun* {5694 agil} as being round; **cp** nosering.

earth, land *noun* {772 ara} {776 erets} {778 araq} [1093 gee] **cp** soil; **cp** cosmos.

earthly *adjective* [1919 epigios] as of the earth.

east, easterly, eastern, eastward, formerly, preceding, ancient, antiquity *noun* {6921 qadim} {6924 qedem} {6925 qodam} {6926 qidmah} {6927 qadmah} literally, the forefront; from the front.

east, eastern, ancient(s) *adjective* {6930 qadmon} {6931 qadmoniy} anterior.

eat, fight *verb* {3898 lacham} literally, to feed on food, to feed on an enemy.

eating verb food *noun* [1034 brosimos] literally, feeding; the act of eating.

Ebed Melech *transliterated name* {5663 ebedmelech} Servant of the Sovereign.

Eben Ezer *transliterated name* {72 ebenhaezer} Stone of Help.

Eber *transliterated name* {5677 eber} [1443 eber] Beyond; Crossover.

Ebes *transliterated name* {77 ebets} Conspicuous.

Ebron {5683 ebron} Over Against.

ecclesia singular ecclesiae plural *transliterated noun* [1577 ekklesia] refers to the congregation of the Messianists, and corresponds to the Hebrew word, congregation (except in Acts 2:38); **see** congregation.

echo *transliterated noun* [2279 echos] a reverberation; figuratively a rumor.

echo *transliterated verb* [2278 echeo] to reverberate.

Echud *transliterated name* {261 echuwd} United.

eclipses *plural noun* {3650 kimriyim} obscurages, as of lights.

ecstasis *transliterated noun* [1611 ekstasis] enraptured in a state of mental absorption.

Eden *transliterated name* {5729 eden} {5731 eden} Pleasure; **see** pleasure.

Eder *transliterated name* {5738 eder} Arrangement.

edge *noun* {6285 peah} {6366 peyah} from mouth, as the edge of the head.

edge, end *noun* {7093 qets} {7097 qetseh} {7098 qatsah} {7099 qetsev} an extremity.

edge, lip *noun* {8193 saphah} [5491 kilos] an edge; a shoreline; the physical lip; a language; **cp** tongue.

edict *noun* {3982 maamar} {3983 memar} {7010 qeyam} a spoken decree.

edify, build *verb* {1124 benah} {1129 banah} [2026 epoikodomeo] [3618 oikodomeo] to build; to build up; to confirm; to construct; to erect.

Edom, Edomiy *transliterated name* {123 edom} {130 edomi} [2401 idoumiaia] Red; Ruddy; a region; people of the region; **cp** Adam.

effulgence *noun* [541 apaugasma] radiance.

effusion *verb* [401 anakusis] a pouring out.

Eglayim *dual transliterated name* {97 eglayim} Double Drops.

El, Eli *transliterated name, transliterated title* {410 el} [2241 eli] El, as being mighty. **see** SUMMARY: El, Eli.

El Ad *transliterated name* {496 elad} Witnessed of El.

El Adah *transliterated name* {497 eladah} El Adorns.

El Aleh *transliterated name* {500 elaleh} El Ascends.

El Asah *transliterated name* {501 elasah} El Works.

El Azar *transliterated name* {499 elazar} [1648 eleazar] [2976 lazaros] El Helps.

El Beth El *transliterated name* {416 elbeythel} El of the House of El.

El Daah *transliterated name* {420 eldaah} El Knows.

El Dad *transliterated name* {419 eldad} El Beloved.

El Elohe Yisra El *transliterated name* {415 eleloheyyisrael} Mighty El of Yisra El.

El Hanan *transliterated name* {445 elchanan} El Grants Charism.

El Naam *transliterated name* {493 elnaam} El Pleases.

El Nathan *transliterated name* {494 elnathan} El Gives.

El Paal *transliterated name* {508 elpaal} El Makes.

El Paran *transliterated name* {364 eylparan} El of Paran.

LEXICON

El Qanah *transliterated name* {511 elqanah} El Chattelizes.
El Sabaoth *transliterated title* {410 el} {6635 tsebaah} **see** Sabaoth.
El Saphan *transliterated name* {469 elitsaphan} El of Treasure.
El Teqeh *transliterated name* {514 elteqeh} of unceratin derivative.
El Teqon *transliterated name* {515 elteqon} El Straightens.
El Tolad *transliterated name* {513 eltolad} El of Generations.
El Uzay *transliterated name* {498 eluwzay} El Recoups.
El Yachba *transliterated name* {455 elyachaba} El Hides.
El Yah Enay *transliterated name* {454 elyehoweynay} Towards El are my Eyes.
El Yaqim *transliterated name* {471 elyaqiyim} [1662 eliakeim] El Raises.
El Yasaph *transliterated name* {460 elyacaph} El Increases.
El Yashib *transliterated name* {475 elyashiyb} El Returns.
El Zabad *transliterated name* {443 elzabad} El Endows.
Elamiy *transliterated name* {5867 elam} [1639 elamiy] Of Elam.
Elamiy *transliterated name* {5962 almiy} Of Elam.
elbow *noun* {679 atstsiyl} literally, joint.
elder *noun* {2205 zaqen} {7868 sib} [4244 presbuterion] [4245 presbuteros] an elder, as grayed; a presbyter.
elephantine *transliterated adjective* [1661 elephantinos] of an elephant; ivory.
elevation *noun* {5131 noph} a raised area.
Eli *transliterated name* {5941 eli} [2242 heeli] Holocauster.
Eli, El *transliterated name, transliterated title* {410 el} [2241 eli] El, as being mighty. **see** SUMMARY: El, Eli.
Eli Ab *transliterated name* {446 eliab} El the Father.
Eli Ada *transliterated name* {450 eliada} El Knows.
Eli Am *transliterated name* {463 eliam} El of the People.
Eli Athah *transliterated name* {448 eliyathah} El of Consent.
Eli Dad *transliterated name* {449 elidad} El Beloved.
Eli El *transliterated name* {447 eliel} El of El.
Eli Enay *transliterated name* {462 eliyeynay} El the Eye; **see** El Yah Enay.
Eli Ezer *transliterated name* {461 eliezer} [1663 eliezer] El Helps.
Eli Horeph *transliterated name* {456 eliychoreph} El of Winter.
Eli Hu *transliterated name* {453 elihu} El of Him.
Eli Melech *transliterated name* {458 elimelech} El Sovereign.
Eli Phal *transliterated name* {465 eliphah} El of Prayer.
Eli Phaz *transliterated name* {464 eliphaz} El of Pure Gold.
Eli Phelehu *transliterated name* {466 eliyphelehuw} El Distinguishes.
Eli Phelet *transliterated name* {467 eliphelet} El of Escape.
Eli Qa *transliterated name* {470 eliyqa} El Vomits.
Eli Shah *transliterated name* {473 elishah} meaning uncertain.
Eli Shama *transliterated name* {476 elishama} El Hears.
Eli Shaphat *transliterated name* {478 elishaphat} El Judges.
Eli Sheba *transliterated name* {472 elisheba} [1665 elisabeth] El of Oath.
Eli Shua *transliterated name* {474 eliyshuwa} {477 eliysha} [1666 elissaios] El is Salvation.
Eli Sur *transliterated name* {468 elitsur} El of the Rock.
Eli Ud *transliterated name* {410 el} {1935 howd} [1664 eliud] El of Majesty.
Eli Yah *transliterated name* {452 eliyah} [2243 eelias] El of Yah.
Ellasar *transliterated name* {495 ellacar} an early country of Asia.
Elohah, Elohim, Elo; **see** SUMMARY: EL, ELAH, ELI.
Elon *transliterated name* {356 elown} Oak Grove.
Elon Beth Hanan *transliterated name* {358 eylovnbeythchanan} Oak Grove of the House of Charism.
Eloniy *transliterated name* {440 elowniy} Of Elon.
Elqoshiy *transliterated name* {512 elqoshiy} Of Elqosh.
Elyon *transliterated title* **uppermost adjective** {5943 illay} {5945, 5946 elyon} [5310 hupsistos] an uppermost place or position; a title of Elohim.
emaciate *verb* {7329 razah} to thin.
emaciate, deceive, deny, disown *verb* {3584 kachash} [550 apeipomen] to be untrue in word, or deed.
emaciated *adjective* {7330 razeh} {7534 raq} as flattened out; thin; skinny.
emaciation *noun* {7332 razon} {7334 raziy} thin; skinny.
emaciation *noun* {7829 shachepheth} as peeled thin.
emaciation, deception, denial *noun* {3585 kachash} a failure of flesh.

embalm, ripen, spice *verb* {2590 chanat} from the root, to spice.
embitter *verb* {4843 marar} [4087 pikraino] to cause to be bitter.
embroider *verb* **emroiderer** *participle* {7551 raqam} {7660 shabats} to variegated color; usually threads of gold.
embroidered mail *noun* {7661 shabats} a woven, or mesh armour.
embroidery *noun* {7553 riqmah} of variegated color.
embryo *noun* {1564 golem} a wrapped unformed mass.
Emim *plural transliterated name* {368 eymiym} Terrors.
eminence, eminent *noun* {5057 nagid} one that stands out.
eminent, oversee, perpetual, perpetuity (in) *adjective, participle* {5329 natsach} {5331 netsach} [1336 dienekes] continual, on and on; to oversee work; to be eminent.
Emmaus *transliterated name* {3222 yem} [1695 emmaous] Warm Spring.
Emoriy *transliterated name* {567 emoriy} Mountaineer.
empower, overpower, prevail *verb* {8280 sarah} {8630 taqaph} [2616 katadunastuo] [2729 katiskuo] [2901 krataioo] [2902 kratoe] to have ability over; to cause to have power.
empowerment *noun* {8632 teqoph} power.
empty, pour out, strip naked *verb* {6168 arah} {6379 pakah} to empty; to empty by pouring; to strip bare; **see** naked.
empty, req, vain, vanity, void *adjective* {1892 hebel} {transliteration 7385 riq} {transliteration 7386 req} {7723 shav} [transliteration 4469 rhaka] emptiness, voidness; figuratively, stupid.
empty, vainly, void *adverb* {7387 reqam} emptily; without effect; **cp** req.
En Eglayim *dual transliterated name* {5882 eyneglayim} Fountain of Two Calves.
En Haq Qore *transliterated name* {5875 eynhaqqowre} Fountain of Calling.
En Harod *transliterated name* {5878 eyncharod} Fountain of Trembling.
En Hasor *transliterated name* {5877 eynchatsowr} Fountain of a Court.
En Tappuach *transliterated name* {5887 eyntappuwach} Fountain of an Apple (Tree).
enable, prevail, able, can *verb* {3201 yakol} {3202 yekel} {3546 kehal} [1410 dunamai] [2427 hikanoo] the dynamis to do; **see** dynamis.
encamp, camp *verb* {2583 chanah} {8497 takah} [63 agraulo] [835 aulizomai] to pass the night in the open air; to tent; **see** pull stakes; **see** court, courtyard.
encampment *noun* {8466 tchanah} [3925 parembolee] a place to camp, to pitch tents.
enchant *verb* **enchanters** *participle* {3907 lachash} to whisper a spell; whisperers of spells.
enchanter *noun* {825 ashshaph} {826 ashshaph} [1114 goees] a conjurer; a whisperer of spells.
enchantingly, covertly *adjective* {3909 laht} whispering a spell; under cover.
enchantment *noun* {3908 lachash} a whispered spell.
enclose, inclose, lock, shod *verb* {5274 naal} {7000 qatar} to fasten; **see** shoe.
encounter, intercede, reach *verb* {6293 paga} to impinge.
encourage, abuse *verb* {7292 rahab} in the sense of urging; of pressuring.
end, conclusion, consummation *noun* {5490 soph} {5491 soph} {7093 qets} {7097 qetseh} {7098 qatsah} the end, of an eon, of a scroll.
end, edge *noun* {7093 qets} {7097 qetseh} {7098 qatsah} {7099 qetsev} an extremity.
end, part *noun* {7117, 7118 qetsath} a portion; a termination.
endow *verb* {2064 zabad} {4117 mahar} a bestowment of a dowry or a valuable; **cp** endue.
endowment *noun* {2065 zehved} a bestowment, a dowry.
endurance *noun* [5281 hupomonee] constancy.
endure *verb* {4722 stego} to keep by covering, to bear.
endure, abide *verb* {5278 hupomeno} [5297 hupophero] to bear, persevere.
endure, tolerate *verb* [430 anekomai] to hold oneself up against.
endure evil *verb* [420 anexikakos] to forbear.
enemy *noun* {340 ayab} {341 oyeb} {6145, 6146 ar} [2190 ekthros] one who hates.
energize, energizing *transliterated verb* [1753 energeia] [1754 energeo] [1755 energeema] [1756 energees] to impart energy.

LEXICON

enfold, gather *verb* {3664 kanac} to collect; to wrap.
engrave, (set) statute *verb* **statute setter** *participle* {2710 chaqaq} [1795 entupool] to engrave; to prescribe; **see** statue.
engrave *verb* **engraving** *participle, noun* {2707 chaqaq} {2799 charosheth} {2801 charath} to carve; a carved work; **see** statue.
engrave, open, pethach *verb* {6605 pathach} {6606 pethach} [*transliterated* 2188 ephphatha] to open; to loosen; to engrave.
engraver *noun* {2791 cheres} {2794 chosh} {2796 charash} {*plural* 2798 chaarashim} {2800 charosheth} a skilled engraver of any material.
engraving *noun* {2799 charosheth} {6603 pittuach} a sculpting.
enlarge, broaden *verb* {7337 rachab} to widen; to make larger.
enlighten *verb* {2094 zahar} *participle* {2095 zehar} to cause to gleam; to cause to understand.
enliven *verb* {2227 zoopoieo} to bestow life.
enmity *noun* {342 eybah} {4895 mastemah} [2189 ekthra] hatred.
Enosh *transliterated name* {583 enosh} [1800 enos] Man, Mortal.
enquire, examine, inquire, require, seek *verb* {1875 dahrash} to ask; to seek; **cp** beseech.
enrage *verb* {2194 zaam} {2196 zaaph} {7107 qatsaph} {7108 qetsaph} [3949 parorgizo] [3951 parotruno] to cause one to rage; to rage.
enraged *adjective* {2198 zaeph} angered.
enrich *verb* {6238 ashar} to cause to be rich; **see** rich.
enrobe *verb* {3847 labesh} {3848 lebash} to wrap around; **cp** robe.
ensign, pole, sail *noun* **Nissi** *transliterated title* {5251 nec} an ensign; the pole of an ensign; part of the title, Yah Veh Nissi, which means, Yah Veh Ensign.
ensign, sign *noun* {226 owth} [3902 parasemos] [4592 seemion] as emblematic, or as a signal; the sun, moon, and stars are for signs and seasons; Yonah was a sign to the Ninevehiy and the Yah Hudi; turning water into wine was Yah Shua's first sign; some signs are miraculous, some are not.
ensign (raise an) *verb* {5264 nacac} to lift up; as fluttering in the wind.
ensign bearer *noun* {5263 nacac} one who bears an ensign.
enslave *verb* {2615 katadouloo} to bring into bondage (to one's self).
ensnare, snare *verb* {3369 yaqosh} {5367 naqash} {6351 pachah} {6983 qosh} to lay, or spring a snare.
entangle *verb* {8308 sarqak} to interlace.
entangle, pawn, pledge *verb* {5670 abat} to entangle a people; to entangle a pledge by pawning.
enter *verb* {5954 alal} to enter, in the sense of thrusting.
entertain, laugh, ridicule *verb* {6711 tsachaq} {6712 tsechoq} {7832 sechag} to laugh; to laugh at; to laugh at in defiance.
entice, dupe *verb* {6601 pathah} to delude, to tempt; **cp** test.
entomb *verb* {6912 qabar} [2290 thapto] to deposit in a tomb; to bury, **see** tomb.
entombment *noun* [5027 taphee] burial.
entorahed *verb* [1772 ennomos] under the torah; **cp** untorahed.
entrap *verb* [64 agreuo] [1185 deleazo] to trap; to trip up.
entrust, trust *verb* {539 aman} {540 aman} [4100 pistuo] [4104 pistoo] **see** amen; to confidently rely upon; **note**: whereas believing is a psyching up of the mental attributes, trust is the abandonment of self into the care of another.
entwine *verb* {5440 sabak} {8276 sarag} [4553 sargane a *transliteration of the Hebrew 5440*] entangle; as woven.
enumeration *noun* {4510 minyan} a counting up of numbers.
environ, round, surround *noun* {3603 kikkar} literally, circle; the environs of an area; a round of material, usually of precious metals.
envy, jealousy, suspicion *noun* {7068 qinah} zeal, as jealousy, or envy.
envy, suspect *verb* **jealous, zealous** *adjective* {7065 qana} {7067 qanna} {7072 qannow} to be zealous, as jealous, or envious.
enwisen, wisen *verb* {2449 chakam} [4679 sophizo] to cause to be wise.
eon, eon of the eons *transliterated noun* [165 aion] unlimited; limitless periods of time.
Epaphroditus *transliterated name* [1891 epaphroditos] Devotee of Aphrodite (a deity).
ephah *transliterated noun* {374 ephah} a measure.

ephod *transliterated noun* {642 ephuddah} { 646 ephod} a shoulderpiece of clothing.
Ephrath *transliterated name* {672 ephrath} another name of Beth Lechem.
Ephrathiy *transliterated name* {673 ephrathiy} Of Ephrath.
Ephrayim *transliterated name* {669 ephrayim} {6085 ephron} [2187 ephraim] Double Fruit, or Fawn-like.
Epicurean *transliterated name* [1946 ephikourios] a follower of the philosopher Epikouroos.
epigraph *transliterated noun* [1923 epigraphee] a superscription; **cp** inscription.
epigraph *transliterated verb* [1924 epigrapho] to scribe an epigraph.
epiphanous *adjective* [2016 epiphanees] bright.
epiphany *noun* [2015 epiphania] a manifestation; usually, a manifestation of Christ as divine.
episcopate, visitation *transliterated noun* [1984 episcopel] [1985 episcopos] one who scopes; an inspector; inspection.
epistle *transliterated noun* {104 iggera} {107 iggereth} {5406, 5407 nishtevan} [1992 epistolee] a letter.
epistolize *transliterated verb* [1989 epistello] to communicate by epistle.
Eqr *transliterated name* {6134 eqer} Uprooted.
Eqron *transliterated name* {6138 eqrown} Eradication.
Eqroniy *transliterated name* {6139 eqroniy} Of Eqron.
equal, reign *noun* {4915 moshel} equal, in the sense of being able to liken unto, or compare with; reign, of being more than equal, of being over.
equal to angels *adjective* [2465 isangelos] like angels; angelic. **see** SUMMARY: ANGEL.
equate, equalize *verb* {7737 shavah} {7739 shevah} to level; to resemble.
equidistant *participle* {7947 shalab} of equal distance.
equip, rescue, strip *verb* {2502 chalats} literally, to strip for hostility; to strip out of danger.
Er *transliterated name* {6147 er} [2262 er] Awake.
Eraniy *transliterated name* {6198 eraniy} Of Eran.
erase, wipe, wipe out *verb* {4229 machah} [1813 exalipho] to rub; to rub out; to erase sins, tears, names.
Erastos *transliterated name* [2037 erastos] of eros; **see** Eros.
erect *noun* {6968 qomemiuth} high, as straightened out.
erect *verb* {5446 sebal} to raise up.
Erech *transliterated name* {751 erch} Length.
Erechiy *transliterated name* {756 archevay} Of Erech; **see** Archiy.
Eri *transliterated name* {6179 eriy} Waken.
Eriy *transliterated name* {6180 eriy} Of Eri.
Eros *transliterated title* **eros** *transliterated noun* Although eros does not appear in Scripture, it is worthy of definition; a deity; the expression of the physical emotion, often sexual; **cp** love, the spiritual expression; **cp** befriend, the soulical expression; **see** Erastos.
err inadvertently, inadvertently err *verb* {7683 shagag} {7686 shagah} to err unintentionally.
error *noun* {4870 mishgeh} {4879 meshugah} {7691 shegiah} {8442 toah} a moral or spiritual mistake.
error (inadvertent) *noun* {7684 shegagah} {*plural* 7691 shegiyahoth} unintentional error.
erupt *verb* {8368 sathar} to break out.
Esav *transliterated name* {6215 esav} [2269 esau] Worker.
Esbon *transliterated name* {675 etsbon} of uncertain derivative.
escape, rescue *verb* {4422 malat} literally, to smooth; to slip away; to be slipped away.
escape, rescue, strip *verb* {5337, 5338 natsal} to snatch away; favorably, or unfavorably.
escape, slip (away) (out) *verb* {6403 palat} {6405 peletah}.
escapee, escaped, escaping *noun* {6412 palit} {6413 peleytah} that which has escaped.
Esem *transliterated name* {6107 etsem} Bone.
Eseq *transliterated name* {6230 eseq} Contend.
Eser *transliterated name* {687 etser} Treasure.
Esh Baal *transliterated name* {792 eshbaal} Man of Baal.
Eshan *transliterated name* {824 eshan} Lean.
Esheq *transliterated name* {6232 esheq} Oppression.
Eshkol *transliterated name* {812 eshkol} Cluster.
Eshtaol *transliterated name* {847 eshtaol} Ask.
Eshtaoliy *transliterated name* {848 eshtauly} Of Eshtaol.
Esli *transliterated name* [2069 esli] meaning uncertain; possibly, Of El.
establish *verb* [950 bebaioo] to make sure.

LEXICON

establish, prepare *verb* {3559 kuwn} to set up.

establishment *noun* [951 bebaiosis] stability.

establishment *noun* {4349 makown} a base, as set up; **see** establish.

esteem *noun* {3367 yeqar} the regard; the value.

esteem *verb* {1921, 1922 hadar} to hold in honour; **cp** honour.

esteem *verb* {3365 yaqar} to value highly; to regard highly.

esteem, estimation *noun* {3366 yeqar} the value.

esteemed *adjective* {3357, 3358 yaqqiy} highly valued; highly regarded.

Ester *transliterated name* {635 ecter} the meaning uncertain; of Persian derivative.

estimate *verb* {3699 kacac} to appraise.

estrangle, notice, recognize, discern, distinguish *verb* {5234 nakar} to acknowledge; to scrutinize; to distinguish between; to ignore, hence to be estranged.

estrangle, strange *verb* {2114 zuwr} to cause to be strange; although a verb, often carries the force of a noun; **see** strange.

Esyon Geber *transliterated name* {6100 etsyongeber} Spine-like of a Man.

et cetera *participle* {3706 keeneth} and so on.

etching, mark, tattoo, brand *noun* {7085 qaaqa} {8420 tab} [5480 karagma] a scratched marking; a mark on animals; an x or a + as a signature of an illiterate; a mark of protection; **read** Yechezq El 9:4–6; **read** Apocalypse 13:16,17, 14:9–11, 15:2, 16:2, 19:20, 20:4; **cp** brand.

eternal, eternally, eternity, original *noun, adjective, adverbally* {5703 ad} {5769 olam} {5865 elom} {5957 alam} [126 aidios] [166 aionios] a limitless period – either past, present, or future.

Eth Qasin *transliterated name* {6278 ethqatsiyn} Time of a Commander.

ethnarch *transliterated title* [1481 ethnarchees] an arch over the ethnics.

eucharist, eucharistic, eucharistize; **see** SUMMARY: EUCHARIST.

eulogize, eulogy; **see** SUMMARY: EULOGIZE, EULOGY:

eunuch *transliterated noun* {5631 saric} {plural 5632 sarek} [2135 eunouchos] one who has gone beyond circumcision by castration.

eunuchize *transliterated verb* [2134 eunouchizo] to castrate; to become a eunuch.

euphonious *transliterated adjective* [2163 eupheemos] well sounding; praiseworthy.

euphony *transliterated noun* [2162 eupheemia] agreeableness of sound; a praise.

Euphrates *transliterated name* {6578 perath} [2166 euphratees] name of a river; Bursting; Rushing.

evaluation *noun* {4373 mikcah} an evaluation based on an enumeration (census); **see** assessment.

evangelism, evangelist, evangelize; **see** SUMMARY: EVANGELISM.

eve, even, evening *noun* {6153 erab} [2073 hespera] [3796 opse] the end of day; dusk.

evening *adjective* [3797 opsimos] duskward.

evening, obscure *verb* {6150 arab} in the sense of dusking; of becoming obscure.

evening breeze *noun* {5399 nesheph} a breeze at dusk.

ever *adverb* [104 ai] at any; at all; **cp** eon.

evil *adjective* {7451 ra} [2556 kakos] injurious.

evil *noun* {7455 ra} [4189 poneeria] [4190, 4191 poneeros] an opposition of all that is good, right, and whole.

evil (do) *verb* [2554 kakopoyeo] to injure; to sin; **see** vilify.

Evil Merodach *transliterated name* [192 eviylmerodach] possibly, Soldier of Merodach.

evildoer *noun* [2555 kakopoyos] one who does evil.

evilworker *noun* [2557 kakourgos] one who works evil.

ewe *noun* {7353 rachel} a young female.

ewe lamb *noun* {3535 kabsah} {3776 kisbah} a young female sheep.

exact *verb* **extract** *participle* {5065 nagas} {5378 nasha} {5383 nashah} to extract; one that extracts by tax or tyranny.

exact, forget *verb* {5382 nashah} to neglect; to remove from.

exact, transact *verb* [4238 prasso] to extract dues; to execute; to perform repeatedly.

exactly as, even as *participle* [2509 kathaper] [2531 kathos] [5618 hosper] just as.

exalt, extol, raise (up) *verb* {5549 salal} from the root, to mound up; **see** salah; **cp** halal.

exalt, lift, loft, raise *verb* {7311, 7313 rum} {7318 romam}

{7426 ramam} to lift hand, heart, offering, voice; to oath; **see** exalt.

exalt, loft *verb* {7682 sagab} to lift high.

exaltation *noun* {7319 romemah} {7427 romemuth} {7863 siy} elevation; praise.

exalting, lifting, swelling *noun* {7613 seeth} an elevation; from the verb, lift {5375}.

exaltment *noun* {8641 teremah} {8642 teremiah} the celebration of lifting a sacrificial exaltment unto Yah Veh.

examination, judgment *noun* [351 anakrisis] investigation.

examine, expect *verb* {7663 sabar} to scrutinize with expectation.

examine, inquire, require, seek, enquire *verb* {1875 darash} to ask; to seek; **cp** beseech.

examine, judge, plead *verb* {8199 shaphat} {8200 shephat} [350 anakrino] [2919 krino] to scrutinize; to investigate.

exceeding, greatly, increasing, many, mighty, much, very *adjective* {7689, 7690 saggii} superlatively mighty, or large.

exceeding, remainder, remnant, rest *noun* {3499 yether} the remainder, those left over.

excellent, exceeding *adjective* **exceedingly** *adverb* {3493 yattiy} preeminent; very.

exchange (in) *noun* {8545 temurah} [465 antallagma] to barter; to trade.

exchange, change *verb* {3235 yamar} {4171 mur} [236 allasso] to alter; to change places.

excise *noun* {1093 beloh} a tax on articles consumed.

excite *verb* [383 anasio] [2042 erethizo] to quake; to stir up.

exclaim *verb* [400 anaphoneo] to cry out.

exclusion *noun* {5079 niddah} one chased away; excluded, as a menstruous woman.

excrement *noun* {2716 chere} {plural 2755 charim} {plural 4280 macharaah} {6627 tsaah} human or animal dung.

executioners *plural noun* {3746 kariy} {3774 kerethi} guards in charge of executing.

exhale *adjective* {3307 yapheach} puffing.

exhaust, exhale *verb* {6313 pug} to exhale; to let out the breath.

exhausted *adjective* {4198 mazeh} sucked out.

exhausted *noun* {6296 pagar} to be exhaled; out of breath.

exile *noun* {1473 golah} {1546, 1547 gauwth} one who is expelled; an expulsion.

exile, expose *verb* {1540 galah} {1541 gelah} to expel; to expose.

exodus, exit *transliterated noun* {plural 8444 totsaaoh} [1841 exodos] an exit; of death as an exodus from life.

exonerate *verb* {5352 naqah} verb of innocent; to declare innocent; **see** innocent.

exonerated, innocent *adjective* {5355 naqi} [172 akakos] not guilty.

exoneration basins *plural noun* {4518 menaqqitho} sacrifice basins which held blood; from the verb, exonerate.

expand *verb* {7554 raqa} to expand by pounding thin; verb of expanse.

expanded *adjective* {7555 riqqua} thinned.

expanse *noun* {4800 merchab} an enlargement.

expanse *noun* {7549 raqia} noun of expand; of the heavens; **read** Genesis 1:8.

expect, examine *verb* {7663 sabar} to scrutinize with expectation.

expect, receive, wait, await *verb* {2442 chakah} {3176 yachal} {6960 qavah} [324 anadekomai] [362 anameno] [553 apekdekomai] [4327 prosdekomai] [4328 prosdokao] [4329 prosdokia] to anticipate; to wait expectantly, patiently; **cp** take.

expectation *noun* {4007 mabbat} {7664 seber} anticipation.

expectation, congregating *noun* {4723 miqveh} this Hebrew word has two roots; a congregating of troops, of water; of expectation.

expel, drive (out) *verb* {1644 garash} {2957 terad} {5080 nadach} {5090 nahag} to carry away; to expatriate; to push off.

expiration *noun* {4646 mappach} an exhausting of breath.

expire *verb* {1478 gava} to breathe one's last breath.

expire soul, pressure, puff *verb* {5301 naphach} [1634 ekpsucho] to breathe away one's soul; to pressure, as in a pressure cooker; and to puff; **cp** expire spirit.

expire spirit *verb* [1606 ekpneo] to breathe away one's spirit; **cp** expire soul.

explain *verb* {874 bahar} [1956 epiluo] to make plain; **cp** interpret; **cp** translate.

LEXICON

explanation *noun* [1955 epilusis] a making plain; **cp** interpretation; **cp** translation.
exploit, exploitation *noun* {4611 maalal} {5949 alilah} {5950 alillah} an act or accomplishment.
exploit, glean *verb* {5953 alal} to pick up after; in a good sense, to glean; in a bad sense, to exploit.
exploits, freaks *plural noun* {8586 taalul} deeds as exploitations.
explore, dig *verb* {2658 chapfar} {8446 tur} to pry into.
expose *verb* {5783 uwr} {6544 para} to loosen; to cause to be bare.
expose, exile *verb* {1540 galah} {1541 gelah} to expel; to expose.
expound *verb* {5419 phrazo} to define; to explain in detail.
express, wound, disperse *verb* {6567 parash} to separate; to specify; to wound.
excise *verb* {1575 ekklao} [1581 ekkopto] to cut off or out.
exsynagogue *transliterated verb* [656 aposunagogos] to excommunicate from a synagogue.
extend *verb* {3447 yahshat} to reach out.
extend, distend *verb* {8311 sara} to extend oneself, as in stretching out; to distend, as an appendage.
extend, happen *verb* {4291 meta} to extend unto the heavens; to happen upon.
extend, send *verb* {7971 shalach} {7972 shelach} to send; to send forth.
extend, spread (thin), stretch *verb* {5186 natah} {5628 sarach} to bend away; to spread out; to stretch.
extend hands, wring hands *participle* {3029 yeda} {3034 yadah} {8426 todah} to extend hands in praise; to wring hands in sorrow.
extending, sending *participle* {4916 mishloach} a sending out; from the verb, send.
extention *noun* {5629 serach} an augmentation.
exterminate *verb* {6789 tsamath} to eradicate; to wipe out.
extermination *noun* {7171 qerets} extirpation.
extol, raise (up), exalt *verb* {5549 salal} from the root, to mound up; **see** salah; **cp** halal.
extort, oppress *verb* {6231 ashaq} to press out of; to oppress.
extortion, oppression *noun* {6233 osheq} a pressing out of; an oppressing.
extortioner of gold *noun* {4062 madhebah}.
eye, fountain *noun* {5869, 5870 ayin} [3788 ophthalmos] as the eye of the landscape; the organ for seeing; **see** fountain.
eye against *verb* {503 antophthalmeo} to stare against.
eyelids *plural noun* {6079 aphaph} as fluttering.
eyeservice *noun* [3787 ophthalmodoulia] a deceitful ascent to agree; **cp** lipservice.
eyewitness *noun* [845 autopteos] one who physically witnessed.
Ezra *transliterated name* {5830, 5831 ezrah} Helper.
Ezrah *transliterated name* {5834 ezrah} Helper.
Ezri *transliterated name* {5836 ezri} Help.
Ezri El *transliterated name* {5837 ezriel} Help of El.
Ezri Qam *transliterated name* {5840 azriyqam} Help of an Enemy.

F

fabricate, machinate *verb, participle* {2803, 2804 chashab} to interpenetrate; to weave; to contrive; physically, to fabricate; mentally, to machinate.
fabricated *adjective* {6247 esheth} fabricated; machinated.
fabricated girdle *noun* {2805 chesheb} a girdle, as interlaced.
fabrication, machination *noun* {2808 cheshbohn} {plural 2810 chishshabonh} {4284 machashebeth} a contrivance of machine, or mind.
face *noun* {6440 paneh} [4383 prospon] the front of the head; also used verbally.
face *verb* {6437 panah} to turn face toward; facing.
face bread, prothesis bread *compound noun* {6440 paneh} {3899 lechem} [transliteration 4286 prothesis] [740 artos] the bread of the holy of holies as displayed; the face bread of the Old Covenant is identical to the prothesis bread of the New Covenant.
fade, dim *adjective* {3544 kehah} obscure; dull.
fade, dim *verb* {3543 kahah} to become obscure, dull.
fade, shade *verb* {6004 amam} in the sense of concealing; of fading.
fail, fall (away), (off) (out) *verb* [1601 ekpipto] to be without effect; to be driven out of one's course.

fail, hoe, lack, arrange *verb* {5737 adar} to miss having; to arrange a vineyard, as in hoeing.
failing *noun* {3631 killayon} as in finished off.
fall (away) (off) (out), fail *verb* [1601 ekpipto] to be without effect; to be driven out of one's course.
fall, fell, happen, befall *verb* {5307 naphal} {5308 nephah} {7136 qarrah} fall, fall down, fall away; to fell, as in felling timber; to cause to bring about.
false *adjective* {3538 cedab} deceitful.
false, falsehood *noun* {8267 sheqer} an untruth.
falsify *verb* {8266 shaqar} to cheat; to be untrue.
falter, stumble, trip *verb* {3782 kashal} to totter; to waver.
fame, hearing, notoriety, report *noun* {8052 shemuah} {8088 shema} {8089 shoma} [189 akoeel] that which is heard; an announcement; a rumor.
family *noun* {4940 mishpachah} parents and their offspring, ancestors and their descendants.
famine *noun* {7458 raab} {7459 reabon} a dearth of food.
famish *adjective* {7457 raeb} experiencing famine.
famish *verb* {7456 raeb} to experience famine.
far, afar, distant past *adjective* {7350 rachaq} {7352 rachiq} {7369 racheq} remote; in time, or distance.
far be it *interjection* [2486 chaliylah] in the sense of that which is profane.
far removed, removed far *verb* {7368 rachaq} from the root, to widen.
fascinate *verb* [940 baskaino] to lead away into error by wicked arts.
fast *verb* {6684 tsum} to abstain from eating.
fast, fasting *noun* {6685 tsom} {8589 taanith} [776 asitia] abstinence from eating.
fasting *adjective* [777 asitos] without food.
fat *adjective* {1879 dashen} {8082 shamen} fat symbolizes health and prosperity.
fat *noun* {6309 peder} the fat of the holocaust sacrifices.
fat, fatness *noun* {1880 deshen} {1881 dath} {2459 cheleb} {4924 mashman} the grease of the body; the richness, fertility; fat symbolizes health and prosperity.
Fate *name* {4507 meniy} Destiny; perhaps the name of an idol.
father, ab, abba *transliterated noun* {1 ab} {2 ab} [5 abba] [3962 pater] **ab** is Hebrew for father; **abba** is a Hellenic transliteration; **pater** is the Hellenic translation.
father in law *noun* {2524 cham} [3995 pentheros] the father of a man's woman or a woman's man.
fatherland *noun* [3968 patris] one's native home.
fatherless *adjective* [540 apator] without father.
fatling *noun* {4806 meriy} that which is stall fed.
fatten, defat *verb* {1878 dashen} {2954 taphash} {8080 shaman} depending on the case, to make fat, or to remove fat; to enrich.
fatten, plump *verb* {2492 chalam} {3780 kasah} to cause to be fat, to plump; to cover with flesh.
fattlings *plural noun* {4220 meachim} that which is fattened; prosperous.
faultless *adjective* [176 akatagnostos] literally, unfaulted.
fawn *noun* {6082 opher} from its dusty color.
fear *noun* {6343 pachad} {6345 pachdah} alarm; **cp** awe.
fear *verb* {3025 yagor} {6342 pachad} {7297 rahah} to be alarmed; to be afraid; **cp** awe.
feast *noun* [1403 doche] a reception.
feast *noun* {3900 lechem} literally, a feeding.
feast of mourning *noun* {4798 marzeach} a cry of grief.
feast of revelling *noun* {4797 mirzasch} a cry of joy.
feel, grope *verb* {4959 mashash} from the root, to feel of.
fell, happen, befall, fall *verb* {5307 naphal} {5308 nephah} {7136 qarrah} to fell, as in felling timber; to cause to bring about; fall, fall down, fall away.
fellow settler *noun* [4040 perioikos] associates or mates who settle together.
female *noun* {5347 neqebah} [2338 theelia] the species that births, whether human, animal, or plant.
fennel flower *noun* {7100 qetsach} from its pungency.
ferment, foam *verb* {2556 chamets} {2560 chamar} [2220 zumoo] to cause to ferment; action of enzymes induced by yeast or bacteria.
fermentation *noun* {2557 chamets} {2561 chemer} {2562 chamar} [2219 zumee] the action of enzymes induced by yeast or bacteria; **see** yeast.
fermented *adjective* {2558 chomets} that which is fermented.

LEXICON

festive mantle *noun* {6614 pethigil} a mantle for festive occasions.

festoon, descent *noun* {4174 mowrad} a place of going down; an ornamental hanging; a garland or wreath.

fetter *noun* {254 halusis} a restraint.

fetus *noun* {7698 sheger} {7988 shilyah} that which is finally ejected.

fever *noun* {2746 charchur} {6920 qaddachath} as hot; inflamed.

few, few men, men *plural noun* {4962 mathim} **see** Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament, 1263.

few, little, petty, shortly, bit, bit by bit *adjective, adverb* {4592 meat} diminutive; a few; a little.

fewer, lesser, little, pinky, younger *adjective* {6810 tsaor} {6995 qoten} {6996 qatan} less in age, number, size; little finger.

field *noun* {7704 sadeh} {7709 shedemah} {*plural* 8309 sheremahoth} [68 agros] land set aside for tillage, pasture, or sport.

fiery *adjective* [4447 purinos] inflamed.

fiery *noun* [4449 purrazo] [4450 purros] reddened; flame colored.

fiery, fired *verb* [4448 puroomai] to be inflamed; to burn; of the heat of passions; of anger.

fig *noun* {8384 tenah} [4810 sukun] a species of fruit.

fight, eat *verb* {3898 lacham} literally, to feed on food; to feed on an enemy.

fighting *noun* {3901 lachem} literally, a feeding on the enemy.

figtree *noun* [4808 sukee] a species of fruit tree.

figurine *noun* {5566 semel} a likeness; a carved figure; a statuette; an idol.

fill *verb* [1072 gemizo] [1705 empiplao, empleetho] to occupy wholly, including liquid in a bottle, a position of leadership; **cp** fill full, fulfill.

fill full, fulfill, fully fill *verb* {4390 mala} {4391 mela} {4395 meleah} [378 anapleeroo] [4130 pleetho] [4137 pleeroo] [4845 sumpleero] to bring to a conclusion; **see** [4137 pleero] under SUMMARY: SHALAM **cp** complete; **cp** shalom; **see** worship.

filling, fulfillment *noun* {*plural* 4394 milluim} {4396 milluah} {4402 milleth} that which has filled; that which is fulfilled; of sacrifices; of stones which fill mountings.

filth *noun* {7516 rephesh} as mud; **cp** foul.

final, finality [2078 eskatos] extreme; last in time or in place.

find *verb* {7912 shekach} [429 anurisko] to discover.

finger *verb* [2345 thigo] to point out; to touch with the finger.

finger, toe *noun* {676 etsba} {677 etsba} [1147 daktulos] literally, a digit as a grasper; **cp** great toe, thumb.

finial *noun* {3730 kaphtor} a chaplet; the top of a stem, or column.

finish (full) (final) *noun* {3617 kalah} the end; full and final cessation; **cp** completion.

finish (off), fully finish, conclude *verb* {3615 kalah} {3635 kelal} to cease; to cause to cease; to bring to an end; **cp** complete.

finished off *adjective* {3616 kaleh} to cease.

finishing *noun* [535 apartismos] completion.

fire, fiery *noun* {5135 nur} also used adjectively; from the root, to shine.

firing *noun* [4451 purosis] trials as a test; burning by which metals are refined.

firing *noun* {801 ashshah} a celebration of a firing as a sacrifice unto Elohim.

firm, form, pour *verb* {3332 yatsaq} to pour out; to shape by pouring into a mold; to make firm.

first(s), head, top, beginning *noun* {7218 rosh} {7221 rishah} {7225 reshith} {8462 rechillah} the head, in a variety of applications; the head of the body, of time, of the month, of archs.

first, head *adjective* {7223 rishon} {7224 rishoniy} head, as at the top; first, as at the beginning.

firstborn *noun* {*feminine* 1067 bekirah} {*masculine* 1069 bakar} the first to burst the womb.

firstborn, firstling *noun* {1060 bekor} {*plural* 1061 bikkuwr} [536 *plural* aparkee] [4416 prototokos] the first offspring of a family or of a harvest.

firstrights, firstling *noun* {1062 bekorah} [4415 prototokia] the rights afforded a firstborn.

firstripe *noun* {1073 bakkurah} that which ripens first.

fists *dual noun* {2651 chophen} clenched hands.

fistsful *plural noun* {6653 tsebeth} as much as the clenched hand can hold.

flake *noun* [3016 lepton] a flake, or shaving.

flakes, chaff *noun* {4651 mappal} that which falls off; that which is pendulous.

flambeau *noun* {3940 lappid} a flaming torch.

flame *noun* {3827 labbah} {3852 lehabah} {7631 sebib} {7632 shabib} {7957 shalhebeth} a flame, or a flare of fire as split into tongues; **read** Acts 2:3.

flame, blade *noun* {3851 lahab} a flame of fire; a flashing blade of a sword.

flame, inflame *verb* **flaming** *adjective* {3857 lahat} {3859 laham} to blaze; that which is inflamed by fire.

flamed, inflamed *adjective* {6867 tsarebeth} [4092 pimpramai] as burning.

flamings *plural noun* {3858 lahatim} flames, as enwrapping.

flank *noun* **flanks** *dual noun* {3409 yarek} {3410 yarka} {3411 yerechah} figuratively, the rear; the thigh, or thighs, as being soft.

flank, folly *noun* {3689 kecel} {3690 kiclah} silliness; the flank of the body; the flanks as symbolic of hope.

flap, flee, wander, chase *verb* {5074 nadad} {5323 natsa} to flap up and down; to shoo away.

flap, rebel *verb* {4754 mahrah} to flap one's self; to flap one's wings; to rebel.

flash, shine *verb* {3313 yapha} from the root, to shine.

flask *noun* {6378 pak} a container from which a liquid may flow.

flax *noun* {6593 pishteh} {6594 pishtah} flax as woven; flax as a wick

flee *verb* {5075 nedad} {5111 nud} {5127 nuwc} to depart; to flit.

flee, bud *verb* {5132 nuts} to flash, as in color; to flee in a flash.

flee, wander, chase, flap *verb* {5074 nadad} {5323 natsa} to flap up and down; to shoo away.

flesh *noun* {1320 basar} {1321 besar} [4561 sarx] literally, the substance of the living body; symbolically, the entire nature of man, sense and reason.

flesh, kinflesh *noun* {7607 sheer} {7608 shaarah} flesh, as food; flesh, as near of kin.

fleshly *adjective* [4559 sarkikos] under the control of animal appetites.

fleshy *adjective* [4560 sarkinos] consisting of flesh; soft.

flight, retreat *noun* {4498 manohs} {4499 menusah} a place to flee to; a fleeing.

flint *noun* {6862 tsar} {6864 tsor} a hard pebble; a tight place.

flip, flit, paddle *verb* {7751 shuwt} to flit forth and back; to flip oars.

flit, flitter, fly *verb* {5774 uph} {1675 daah} [4072 petomai] to move through the air.

flit, paddle, flip *verb* {7751 shuwt} to flit forth and back; to flip oars.

float, overflow *verb* {6687 tsuph} to float; to flow over.

flock *noun* {6629 tson} {6792 tsone} a group, usually of animals or birds.

flog *verb* [1194 dero] to scourge.

flood *noun* {2230 zerem} {3999 mabbuwl} an overflowing.

flood *verb* [2229 zaram] to overflow.

floor *noun* {7172 qarqa} a slab or board laid down.

flour *noun* {5560 soleth} flour, as stripped.

flour *noun* {7058 qemach} that which is ground.

flourish, blossom *verb* {6524 parach} {6692 tsuts} to bloom.

flourish, germinate *verb* {5107 nub} from the root, to germinate; to flourish.

flow, flux *verb* {2100 zoov} of land as flowing with milk and honey; of woman as fluxing with blood.

flow, melt, dissolve *verb* {4529 masah} to dissolve.

flow, pour *verb* {5047 negad} {5064 nagar} {5140 nazal} to flow out, as to clear the way; to pour out.

flow, sparkle *verb* {5102 nahar} to flow, as to assemble; to be cheerful; to sparkle.

flush {*adjective* 2447 chakliyl} {*noun* 2448 chakliluth} flush in color.

flushness *noun* {6289 parur} a glowing flushness.

flute *noun* {2485 chaliyl} as being perforated.

flute *noun* {4953 mashroqiy} {5155 nechiylah} [836 aulos] as a musical pipe, blown, or whistled.

flute *verb* [832 auleo] to blow or whistle the flute.

flutist *noun* [834 auleetees] one who flutes.

LEXICON

flux, flow *noun* {2101 zohv} {2231 zirmah} the flow as of blood or pus.
flux, flow *verb* {2100 zuwb} of land as flowing with milk and honey; of woman as fluxing with blood.
fly, flit, flitter *verb* {5774 uph} {1675 daah} [4072 petomai] to move through the air.
flyer *noun* {5775, 5776 oph} [4071 petinon] [4421 pteenon] that which flies.
foam, ferment *verb* {2556 chamets} {2560 chamar} [2220 zumoo] to cause to ferment; action of enzymes induced by yeast or bacteria.
fodder, mingle, mix up *verb* {1101 balal} to mix together; to mix up; **see** Beli Yaal; **see** comingle.
fold, reiterate, repeat, alter, change, double, duplicate *verb* {8132 shana} {8133 shena} {8138 shanah} to reinforce by folding, by doubling; may include disguise, camouflage.
foliage *noun* {6074 ophi} {6288 purah} {6788 tsammereth} whatever sprouts from a tree, vine, or plant.
foliage, rope, wreath, wreathen *noun* {5688 abothah} as entwined; a wreath of victory; **cp** crown; **cp** diadem.
folly *noun* {200 ivveleth} {5039 nebalah} {5529 sekel} {5531 sikluth} silliness; foolishness.
folly *verb* {5528 sakal} to do foolishly; to act silly.
folly, flank *noun* {3689 kecel} {3690 kiclah} silliness; the flank of the body; the flank, as symbolic of hope.
folly, wither, disgrace *verb* {5034 nabel} from the root, to wilt; to fall away; to fail.
food *noun* **eating** *verb* [1034 brosimos] that which is eaten.
food *noun* {3894 lachuwmm} [1033 broma] that which is eaten.
food *noun* {3978 maakal} {4202, 4203 mazown} an edible.
fool, foolish *adjective* {5036 nabal} stupid.
fool *noun* **Kesil** *transliterated name* {3684 kecil} {5530 sakal} a constellation; stupid, or silly.
foolish *adjective* {191 eviyil} {196 eviliy} {3687 keciyluth} silly.
foolish *adjective* {3688 kecal} to be silly.
foot (on) *noun* {7273 ragli} persons on foot; infantry.
foot (step) *noun* {4772 margelah} {7271 regal} {7272 regel} [4228 pous] the foot; a footstep.
foot (to the) *noun* [4158 podederees] full length.
foothold *noun* {4613 moomad} a place to secure the foot.
footstool *noun* {3534 kebesh} [5286 hupopodion] as trodden upon; as under foot.
forage *noun* [5527 chortasma] animal feed.
force, lizard, substance *noun* {3581 koach} [3981 maamats] pressure, physical or intellectual; also a lizard.
forehead *noun* [4696 metsach] [3359 metopon] the upper front of the head.
foreknow *verb* [4267 proginosko] to know prior to occurrence.
foreleg, arm *noun* {2220 zeroah} [1023 brakion] arm (human), foreleg (animal); denoting force, strength.
foresay *verb* [4280 proereo] to say prior to occurrence.
foresee *verb* [4308 proora] to see prior to occurrence.
foreshabbath *transliterated noun* [4315 prosabbaton] shabbath eve.
foreskin, uncircumcised *noun* {6190 orlah} [203 akrobustia] the foreskin of the penis; the foreskin not removed; **cp** circumcision; **cp** decircumcision.
forespeak *verb* [4302 prolego] to speak prior to occurrence.
forest *noun* {2793 choresh} [3264 yaor} [3293 yaar} [3295 yaarah] [5208 hulee] a growth of trees.
foretell *verb* [4277 proepo] to tell prior to occurrence.
forget *adjective* {7913 shekach} oblivious.
forget *verb* [7911 shakach] to be oblivious of.
forget, exact *verb* [5382 nashah] to neglect; to remove from.
forging *noun* {4300 metil} a metal as hammered out.
forgive *verb* {5545 salach} to grant charism.
forgive, forsake, leave, release, allow *verb* [863 apheemi] to send forth.
forgiveness *noun* [5547 celichah] [859 aphasis] charism granted.
forgiving *noun* {5546 callach} a granting of charism.
fork *noun* [4207 mazleg] {plural 4207 mezlagoth} an instrument to draw up.
form *noun* {3333 yetsukah} {plural 3338 yaturim} {8389 toar} [3444 morphee] [3446 morphosis] that which is formed; **see** metamorphose.
form *noun* [3336 yetser] to form of the thought.
form *noun* [6699 tsurah] a form, as shaped.
form *verb* {3335 yatsar} [3445 morphoomai] to shape; **see**

metamorphose.

form, besiege, bind, confine *verb* [6696 tsur] to confine; to form by shaping.

form, idolize, contort *verb* [6087 atsab] to form; to contort; as in idolizing, as in pain.

form, pour, firm *verb* [3332 yatsaq] to pour out; to shape by pouring into a mold; to make firm.

formation, rank, arrangement *noun* {4633 maarak} {4634 maarakah} {4635 maareketh} an arrangement (physical or mental).

formerly, preceding, ancient, antiquity, east, easterly, eastern, eastward *noun* {6921 qadim} {6924 qedem} {6925 qodam} {6926 qidmah} {6927 qadmah} literally, the forefront; from the front.

formula, quantity *noun* [4971 mathkuneth] a measured proportion of portions.

forsake, leave (behind), release, abandon *verb* [5800 azab] [1459 enkatalipo] to leave behind; in a good sense, to let remain over; in a bad sense, to abandon.

forsake, leave, release, allow, forgive, abandon *verb* [863 apheemi] to send forth.

forsaking, leaving, releasing, abandoning *noun* [5805 azubah] a desertion.

fortifications *plural noun* [8284 sharoth] reinforcements.

fortified, fortress, fortified *noun, adjective* [4013 mibtsar] [3794 okuroma] a reinforced building, or city.

forum *noun* [60 agoraios] a market; including a forum for open discussion, of the judiciary; **see** market.

foul *verb* {2930 tame} {2933 tamah} {2936 tanaph} {7515 raphas} [4510 rupoo] to become offensive to the senses; **cp** filth.

foul, foulness *noun* {2932 tumah} [4507 ruparia] [4508 rularos] [4509 rupos] loathsome; offensive to the senses.

fouled *adjective* {2931 tame} loathed.

found, foundation *verb* [3245 yacad] [2311 themelioo] to lay a base or basis for.

foundation *noun* {3246 yecud} {3247 yecod} {3248 yecudah} {4143 muwcad} {4144 mowcad} {4145 muwcadah} {plural 4146 mowcadah} {4328 meuccadah} {4527 maccad} {8356 shathah} [2310 themelios] [2602 katabolee] the base or basis, whether of a fact, or ediface.

fountain *noun* {1543 gulah} [4002 mabbua] {4599 mayan} [5033 nebek] a source, usually of water.

fountain *noun* [4726 maqor} a gusher; including tears, and menstruation of a woman.

fountain, eye *noun* [5869, 5870 ayin] [3788 ophthalmos] as the eye of the landscape; the organ for seeing.

foursquare, square *verb* [7251 raba] to cause to be quadrate.

owl *noun* {1257 barbur} {6853 tsephar} [3732 orneon] a species of flyer.

fracture *noun* [4386 mekittah] a crushing break.

fragment *noun* {7518 rats} {plural 7616 shabahim} [2801 klasma] of remnants of food, a broken piece.

frail *adjective* [770 astheneo] [772 asthenees] feeble.

frailty *noun* [769 asthenia] feebleness of body or mind.

frailty *noun* [771 astheneema] error arising from weakness of mind; a scruple of conscience.

framing *noun* [4746 meqareh] the frame of a building, as the meeting of timbers.

frankincense *noun* [3828 lebonah] [3030 libanos] a species of incense; **see** incense.

frankincenser *noun* [3031 libanoton] a censer for a species of incense; **see** censer.

fraud *noun* {8496 tok} {plural 8501 takakim} {plural 8595 tatuaim} in the sense of cutting up; also errors.

freaks, exploits *plural noun* {8586 taalul} deeds as exploitations.

fresh *adjective* [3892 lach} new, as unused; as undried.

fresh, dripping *adjective* [2961 tahiy} new, as moist.

freshness *noun* [3893 leach} vigor.

friend *noun* [5997 amith} [7453 rea} [7463 reeh} [7464 reah} [7468 reuth} [7474 raah} [5384 philos] a fond one; a soulical attraction.

friendly minded *noun* [5390 philophronos] [5391 philophron] agreeable.

friendship *noun* [5373 philia] relationship with a fond one.

fright *noun* [1205 beathah} extreme fear.

frighten *verb* [1204 baath} [7738 shavah} to cause extreme fear.

frivolity *noun* {8604 tiphlah} silliness.

LEXICON

frost, ice, crystal *noun* {7140 qerach} as being smooth.
froth *verb* {875 aphrizo} to foam at the mouth.
frothiness *noun* {6350 pachazuth} frothy; foamy; unimportant.
frothy *adjective* {6348, 6349 pachaz} frothy; foamy; as boiling over; as unimportant.
fruit (stray) *noun* {6528 peret} fruit left for strangers to glean.
fruit *noun* {5108 nob} {6529 peri} {2590 karpos} species of produce of the ground, usually self-seeded.
fuel *noun* {3980 maakolet} a feed for fire.
fuel pile *noun* {4071 medurah} an accumulation of fuel.
fugitive *noun* {1280 beriach} {1281 bariach} {4015 mibrach} {5211 niye} one who flees.
fulfill, fully fill, fill full *verb* {4390 mala} {4391 mela} {4395 meleah} {378 anapleeroo} {4130 pleetho} {4137 pleeroo} {4845 sumpleero} to bring to a conclusion; **cp** complete; **see** shalom; **see** worship.
fulfillment, filling *noun* {plural 4394 milluim} {4396 milluah} {4402 milleth} that which has filled; that which is fulfilled; of sacrifices; of stones which fill mountings.
full, fulness *adjective* {4392 male} {1073 gemo} {4134 pleerees} filling; filled full.
fully finish, conclude, finish (off) *verb* {3615 kalah} {3635 kelal} {535 apartismos} to cease; to cause to cease; to bring to an end; **cp** complete.
fulness *noun* {4138 pleeroma} the whole filling; the totality.
fulness, fulfillment *noun* {4395 meleah} that which is brought to a conclusion; an abundance.
fuming *adjective* {2740 charon} {2750 choriy} burning anger; **see** kindle, inflame.
function *noun* {4612 maamad} job; assigned activity.
function, acts *noun* {4234 praxis} something done; a deed.
furl *verb* {4428 ptusso} to roll up; **cp** coil; **cp** unfurl.
furnace, oven *noun* {8574 tannur} a fire pot.
furrow *noun* {6170 arugah} {8525 telem} a furrow, as dug and piled.
fury *noun* {2528 chema} {5678 ebrah} {2372 thumos} an outburst of passion.
fury, poison *noun* {2534 chemah} heat; an outburst of passion as poison.

G

Gabbatha *transliterated name* {1355 gab} {1042 gabbatha} Arch, Bow.
Gabbay *transliterated name* {1373 gabbay} Collective.
Gabri El *transliterated name* {1403 gabriel} {1043 gabrieel} Man of El.
Gacham *transliterated name* {1514 gacham} Flame.
Gacher *transliterated name* {1515 gacher} Lurker.
Gad *transliterated name* {1408, 1410 gad} {1045 gad} Treasure.
Gaddi *transliterated name* {1426 gaddiy} Treasured.
Gadi *transliterated name* {1424 gadiy} Treasured.
Gadi El *transliterated name* {1427 gaddiyel} Treasure of El.
Gadiy *transliterated name* {1425 gadiy} Of Gad; a Yisra Eliy.
gain, greed *noun* {1215 betsa} that which is greedily gained; **see** the verb; **read** Yechezq El 22:27, where the noun and the verb are used together.
gain, greed *verb* {1214 batsa} gaining through greed; **see** the noun.
Gal Ed *transliterated name* {1567 galed} Heap of Witness; a memorial cairn east of the Yarden.
galbanum *transliterated noun* {2464 chelbenah} a gum.
Galiyl *transliterated name* {1551 galiyl} {1056 galilaia} Circle; Corona.
Galiyliy *transliterated name* {1057 galilaio} Of Galiyl.
gall, venom, bitter *noun* {plural 4844 merarim} {4845 mererah} {4846 merorah} bile; venom; a bitter herb.
Gamli El *transliterated name* {1583 gamliel} {1059 gamalieel} Reward of El.
Gammadim/warriors *plural transliterated name* {1575 gammadim} Warriors, as grasping instruments.
gangrene *transliterated noun* {1044 gangraina} an ulcer, as gnawing.
gape, gasp *verb* {6473 paar} {6475 patsah} to open the mouth in gasping, or in gaping.
garden *noun* {1588 gan} {1593 gannah} {1594 ginnah} {2779 keepos} a ground for growing edibles and flowers; **cp** paradise.
gardener *noun* {2780 keepouros} one who tends a garden.
garment *noun* {4063 medev} a garment, as measured.

garment (masculine) *noun* {7897 shith} a masculine garment, as being put on.
garrison *verb* {1598 ganan} to hedge round about.
Gath Rimmon *transliterated name* {1667 gathrimmown} Winepress of the Pomegranate.
Gath Shemen *transliterated name* {1660 gath} {8081 shemen} {1068 gethseemane} Treader of (anointing) Oil.
gather *verb* {622 aseaph} {6908 qabats} {7197 qashash} to bring together; **cp** congregate.
gather, enfold *verb* {3664 kanac} {3673 kenash} to wrap; to collect.
gathering, ingathering *noun* {plural 624 acuppim} {625 oceph} {626 acephah} {plural 627 acuppah} {628 acpecuph} {6910 qebutsah} a collection of offerings, fruits, people, or learned persons.
gauge *noun* {8506 token} {8508 toknith} a measure of all dimensions; including, but not limited to size, volume, weight.
gauge *verb* {8505 takan} to measure all dimensions; including, but not limited to size, volume, weight.
Gay, valley *transliterated noun* {1516 gay} valley; sometimes transliterated when used in compound names.
Gay Chazi/Valley of the Seer *transliterated name* {1522 gechazyi} Valley of the Seer.
Gay Haregah/Valley of Slaughter *transliterated name* {1516 gay} {2028 haregah} Valley of Slaughter.
Gay Hinnom/Valley of Burning *name* {1516 gay} {2011 hinnom} {1067 geenna} used figuratively, as a name for the place (or state) of everlasting punishment; may be transliterated, Gay Hinnom.
Gay Hizzayon/Valley of Vision *transliterated name* {1516 gay} {2384 chizzayown} Valley of Vision.
Gay Melach/Valley of Salt *transliterated name* {1516 gay} {4417 melach} Valley of Salt.
gazelle, Tabitha, Dorcas *noun* {6643 tsebiy} {6646 tsebiyah} {5000 tabitha} a gazelle, as beautiful; Tabitha is the Hellene transliteration of tsebiyah; Dorcas is the Hellene translation of tsebiyah.
Geba *transliterated name* {1387 geba} Hillock.
Gedal Yah *transliterated name* {1436 gedalyah} Greatness of Yah.
Gederothayim *dual transliterated name* {1453 gederothayim} Double Wall.
Gemar Yah *transliterated name* {1587 gemaryah} Consummated of Yah.
genealogize *transliterated verb* {3187 yachas} {1075 genealogo} literally, to sprout; to sequence by birth.
genealogy *transliterated noun* {3188 yachas} {1076 genealogia} the sequence by birth.
generation *noun* {1755 dor} {1859 dar} a revolution of time.
generation *noun* {plural 8435 toledahoth} {1074 genea} descendants; history.
genesis, genetics *transliterated noun* {1078 genesis} beginning; birth.
genos *transliterated noun* {1085 genos} species; kinds.
gerah *transliterated noun* {1626 gerah} a small measure of weight, a coin.
germinate, flourish *verb* {5107 nub} from the root, to germinate; to flourish.
Geshur *transliterated name* {1650 geshuwr} Bridge.
Geshuriy *transliterated name* {1651 geshuwriy} Of Geshur.
Geu El *transliterated name* {1345 geuel} Triumph of El.
ghosts *plural noun* {7496 raphaim} the spirits of departed beings; **cp** spirit.
Giach *transliterated name* {1520 giyach} Fountain.
Giba *transliterated name* {1388 giba} Hill.
Gibah *transliterated name* {1390 gibah} Hillock.
Gibath *transliterated name* {1394 gibath} Hilliness.
Gibathiy *transliterated name* {1395 gibathiy} Of Gibath.
gibe *noun* {8148 sheninah} a snide; a scoff.
Gibon *transliterated name* {1391 gibown} Hilly.
Giboniy *transliterated name* {1393 giboniy} Of Gibon.
Gichon *transliterated name* {1521 gichown} Stream; a river of Paradise.
Gidon *transliterated name* {1439 gidown} {1066 gedeon} Feller; Toppler.
Gidoni *transliterated name* {1441 gidoniy} Felled; Cut Off.
gift *noun* {4976 mattan} {4978 mattena} {4979 mattanah} {4991 mattath} {5379 nisseth} {7862 shay} {8670 teshurah} {1390 doma} that which is voluntarily presented without compensation in return; **note:** in some versions, the word is

LEXICON

often inserted without reason, and at other times mistranslated.

Gilad *transliterated name* {1568 gilad} a region east of Yarden.

Giladiy *transliterated name* {1569 giladiy} Of Gilad.

Gilalay *transliterated name* {1562 gilalay} Dungy.

gird *verb* {2296 chagar} {8151 shanas} to bind.

girdle *noun* {2289 chagohr} {2290 chagorah} {4206 maziych} {4228 machagoreth} a binding, or belt for the waist.

Girgashiy *transliterated name* {1622 girgashiy} [1086 gergesenos] of uncertain derivative; Of Kenaan.

girt *verb* [4024 perizonnumi] to fasten by a girdle, to equip.

Gishpa *transliterated name* {1658 gishpa} of uncertain derivative.

Gittayim *dual transliterated name* {1664 gittayim} Double Winepress.

give *verb* {3051 yahab} {3052, 3053 yehab} [1325 didomi] [1394 dosis].

give, allow *verb* {5414 nathan} {5415 nethan} literally, to give; to give permission.

give over *verb* [325 anadidomi].

give (over) *verb* [1929 epididomi] to surrender.

give (up) (back) *verb* [591 apodidomi] to give away.

giver *noun* [1395 dotees] one who gives.

glean (after) *verb* {3950 laqat} {3953 laqash} to pick up after the harvest.

glean, exploit *verb* {5953 alal} to pick up after; in a good sense, to glean; in a bad sense, to exploit.

gleaning *noun* {3951 leqet} that which is left after the harvest.

glitter, resound *verb* {6670 tshal} to stand out; in color, or in sound.

glittering *participle* {6668 tshahab} from the root, to glitter.

glorify, glorifying *verb* {8231 shaphar} {8232 shephar} {8235 shiphrah} [1392 doxazo] [1740 endoxazomai] to brighten; to splendor.

glorious, glories *adjective* {8233 shepher} [1741 endoxos] splendorous; praiseworthy.

glory *noun* [1391 doxa] splendor; praise.

glory pavilion *noun* {8237 shaphrur} a canopy of splendor.

glutton, quake, shake *participle* {2151 zalal} to quake; to shake; to eat in excess; **cp** drunkard.

gluttony *noun* {5607 sepheq} overeating; **cp** drunkard.

gnash *verb* [1031 brukko] to grate the teeth in pain or rage.

gnashing *noun* [1030 brugmos] a grating of the teeth.

gnaw *verb* {6207 araq} to eat at; to pain.

gnawing *noun* {7469 reuth} {7475 rayah} a feeding upon, in the sense of desiring.

go, walk, went *verb* {3212 yahlach} literally, to walk.

go (about) (around), surround, turn (about) (around) *verb* {5437 cabab} to border; to revolve; to surround.

goad *verb* {5496 cuth} to prick; to stimulate.

goats (he) *plural noun* {6260 attud} as prepared; as full grown.

GOD *see* SUMMARY: EL, ELAH, ELI, ELOHAH, ELOHIM, ELOI:

Gog *transliterated name* {1463 gog} [1136 gog] derivative uncertain; an Yisra Eliy; a northern area.

gold, clear *noun* {2091 zahab} literally, yellow shimmer.

Golyath *transliterated name* {1555 golyath} Uncoverer (as in exposing).

Gomer *transliterated name* {1586 gomer} Ceased; Consumated.

good *adjective* [2570 kalos] valuable; praiseworthy.

govern *verb* {8323 sarar} to domineer.

governess *noun* {8282 sarah} the dominant female.

governing *noun* [2231 heegemonia] the time period of governing.

governor *noun* {6346, 6347 pechah} {8269 sar} {8660 tirshatha} [2230 hegemonu] [2232 hegemon] [2233 hegeomai] the dominant male; one who governs.

goy, goyim *transliterated noun* {singular 1471 goy} {plural 1471 goyim} [1484 ethnos] other nations; sometimes includes Yisra Eliy and Yah Hudy; a transliteration of the Hebrew; a translation of the Hellene.

goyim (as the) *adverb* [1482 ethnikos] [1483 ethnikos] *see* goy, goyim.

grain *noun* [1250 bar] grain of any species.

granary *noun* {4200 mezev} {plural 4460 mammegoroth} a building for storing grain.

granary, terror *noun* {4035 megurah} a fright; a place to store grain.

grant *verb* [1433 doreomai] to permit.

grant charism; *see* charism (grant).

grapevines *plural noun* {8291 saruq} vines of grapes.

grass *noun* {2682 chatsir} the lawn of a courtyard.

gratis, gratuitous *adjective, gratuitously* *adverb* {2600 chinnam} [77 adapanos] [1432 dorean] free; freely; bestowed freely.

gratuity *noun* [1431 dorea] [1434 doreema] an honorarium.

gray *verb* {7867 siyb} to grow gray; to age.

grayed, grayness *noun* {7869 seyb} {7872 seybah} aged.

graze, tend, attend, befriend *verb* {7462 raah} [5256 hupeereteo] to cause a flock to graze; to tend a flock or to pasture; to befriend, by attending to; *see* attendant; *see* Yah Veh Raah.

great toe, thumb *noun* {931 bohen} literally, large digit.

great, greater, abundant *adjective* {1419 gadol} {7227, 7229 rab} {7260 rabrab} {7690 saggij} large; older; plentiful.

greaten, abound *verb* {7235 rabah} {7236 rebah} to be greatened, in any dimension; to increase.

greaten, grow *verb* {1431 gadal} to enlarge.

greatly, increasing, many, mighty, much, very, exceeding *adjective* {7689, 7690 saggij} superlatively mighty, or large.

greatness, greatneses, abundance *noun* {1420 gedullah} {1433 godel} {7230 rob} {7238 rebu} increase; magnitude; mighty acts.

greed, gain *noun* {1215 betsa} that which is greedily gained; *see* the verb; *read* Yechezq El 22:27, where the noun and the verb are used together.

greed, gain *verb* {1214 batsa} gaining through greed; *see* the noun.

green *adjective* {7387, 7488 raanan} as flourishing; as prosperous.

green, greens *noun* {3418 yereq} {3419 yareq} as edibles.

green (pale) *adjective* {3420 yeraqon} [5515 chloros] a paleness; of plants from drought, or of people from fright.

griddle *noun* {4227 machabath} a baking pan.

grief *noun* {3015 yagah} {8424 tugah} affliction; oppression.

grieve *verb* {3013 yagah} {5701 agam} to be sad.

grinderteeth *plural noun* {4459 maltaaoth} the teeth that grind; the molars.

grits *plural noun* {7383 riphah} grits, as pounded.

groan, groaning *noun* {5009 neaqah} an audible, nonverbal expressing of grief; **cp** growl; **cp** sigh.

groan, groaning *verb* {5008 naaq} to express an audible, nonverbal utterance expressing grief; **cp** growl; **cp** sigh.

grope, feel *verb* {4959 mashash} from the root, to feel of.

grow, greaten *verb* {1431 gadal} to enlarge.

grow, scatter, spread *verb* {6335 push} [837 auxano] to grow, to enlarge; as in spreading out.

growl *verb* {5098, 5099 naham} [5286 naar] to snarl; **cp** groan.

growling *noun* {5100 nahamah} snarling; **cp** groan.

growth *noun* [838 auxeesis] increase.

growth (spontaneous) *noun* {5599 caphiach} that which grows of itself, sometimes without nurturing.

guard *noun* {4929 mishmar} {4931 mishmereth} {plural 8109 shemurah} [5441 phulax] one that protects; the guard of the night.

guard *verb* [1314 diaphulasso] [5442 phulasso] to protect; to obey.

guard, guardhouse *noun* [5438 phulakee] a person or place that guards.

guard, hearing, audience *noun* [4928 mishmaath] an audience; also obedience; a subject.

guard, on guard, regard *verb* {5201 natar} [5202 nater] {5341 natsar} {8104 shamar} {plural 8107 shimmurim} [8108 shomrah] [8176 shaar] [5083 tereo] in the sense of protecting from harm, observing observances, obeying misvahs.

guide, sustain *verb* {5095 nahal} literally, to lead with light.

guilt (for the) *noun* {819 ashmah} an offering to Elohim for having guilted; *see* guilt.

guilt, guiltiness *noun* {817 asham} a breach of code; **cp** subject to.

guiltless *adjective* [121 athoos] without guilt.

guilty *adjective* {818 ashem} [2054 vazar] to bear guilt; to have breached.

guilty *verb* {816 asham} to have breached a code.

Gulgoleth *transliterated name* {1538 gulgoleth} [1115 golgotha] Cranium; **cp** cranium.

gullible *adjective* {6612 pethai} seducible.

gullible *noun* {6615 pethayuth} seducible.

LEXICON

gulp *verb* {3886 luwa} to swallow; to be rash.

gulp *verb* {7602 shaaph} to inhale; to gulp.

Gur Baal *transliterated name* {1485 gurbaal} Sojourn of Baal.

gush *verb* {5042 naba} to gush the Spirit, water, words.

H

Haba Yah *transliterated name* {2256 habayah} Hidden of Yah.

Habaqqaq *transliterated name* {2265 chabaqquwq} Embrace.

habergeon *noun* {8302 shiryonah} {8473 tachara} a mesh garment of metal as armour; of linen as woven.

habitation *noun* {4583 maon} {4585 meonah} a habitat; an area in which to abide.

habitation (rest in) *verb* {5115 navah} to abide in rest.

habitation of rest *noun* {5116 navah} a restful abode.

Hachal Yah *transliterated name* {2446 chachalyah} Flushness of Yah.

Hachilah *transliterated name* {2444 chachiylah} Flushness.

Hachmoni *transliterated name* {2453 chachmowniy} Enwisen.

Hadad *transliterated name* {111 adad} {2301 chadad} Sharp.

hades, sheol *noun* {7585 sheol} [86 hades] literally, the unseen; sheol is a transliteration of the Hebrew; hades is a transliteration of the Hellene, which is a translation of the Hebrew; both refer to a temporary abode of the body and soul; there is a progressive distinction of purpose of sheol/hades from its inception to its final state; **read** Yechezq El 31:15-17, 32:18-29, Loukas 16:19-31, Apocalypse 20:13,14; **cp** Psalm 16:10, Acts 2:27.

Hadrach *transliterated name* {2317 chadrach} of uncertain derivative; a Syriaï deity.

Hagab *transliterated name* {2285 hagab} [13 agabos] Locust.

Hagaba *transliterated name* {2286 chagaba} Locust.

Hagar *transliterated name* {1904 hagar} [28 agar] mother of Yishma El.

Hagariy *transliterated name* {1905 hagriy} Of Hagar.

Haggay *transliterated name* {2292 chaggay} Celebrative.

Hah! *interjection* {1929 hahh} {1930 how} an expression of grief.

hair, hairy *noun* {8177 sear} {8181 saar} {8185 saarah} [2359 thrix, trikos] [5155 trikinos] a filament protruding from the skin; **cp** tresses.

hairy, buck *adjective* {8163 sair} shaggy; also a he goat.

Halach *transliterated name* {2477 chalach} of foreign origin; a region in Ashshur.

halal *noun* [133 ainesis] [136 ainos] [1868 epainos] laud.

halal *transliterated noun* {plural 1974 hillul} {4110 mahalal} {8416 tehillah} a hail; a reverent salutation; **cp** selah.

halal *transliterated verb* {1984 halal} to hail; to salute reverently; as in Halalu Yah.

halal *verb* [134 aineo] [1867 epaineo] to laud.

halaled one *transliterated title* {1966 heylel} hailed one; a title of Satan.

Halalu Yah *transliterated verb* {1984 halal} {3050 yah} [239 allelouya] Hail Yah.

Halchul *transliterated name* {2478 chalchuw} Wretched.

half, mid-, midst *preposition* {2676 chatsoth} {2677 chetsiy} {4275 mechetsah} {4276 machatsith} among; a half of a whole; the middle of.

halloo *verb* [214 alalazo] to sound out loudly.

hallow; **see** SUMMARY: HOLY, HOLIES, HALLOW:

haloed, haloing *verb* [4034 perilampo] to encircle as with a halo; to shine around.

halve *verb* {2673 chatsah} to separate one whole into two halves.

Hamath *transliterated name* {2574 chamath} Walled.

Hamath Rabbah *transliterated name* {2579 chamathrabbah} Wall of Rabbah (Great).

Hamath Sobah *transliterated name* {2578 chamathstowbah} Wall of Sobah (Station).

Hamathiy *transliterated name* {2577 chamathiy} Of Hamath.

hammer *verb* {1986 halam} to pound; to strike down.

hammer, quarry *noun* {4717 maqqabah} {4718 maqqebeth} that which is used to pound; a quarry, from which is pounded.

hammerings *plural noun* {4112 mahalummah} poundings of a hammer.

hammock *noun* {4412 maluwnah} a restingplace; **see** lodge.

Hammu El *transliterated name* {2536 chammuwel} Heat of El.

Hamor *transliterated name* {2544 chamor} [1697 emmor] Burro.

hamstring, uproot *verb* {6131, 6132 aqar} to pluck up the root; to cut the tendons.

Hanan El *transliterated name* {2606 chananel} Granted Charism of El.

Hanan Yah *transliterated name* {2608 chananyah} [367 ananias] [452 annas] Granted Charism of Yah.

hand *noun* {3027, 3028 yad} [5495 cheir] the body part below the wrist.

hand toss *verb* {3034 yadah} to toss by hand.

handle *noun* {5325 nitstab} a fixed handle.

handle *verb* {3032 yadad} {7061 qasmats} {7062 qomets} [5496 cheiragogeo] to manipulate with the hands.

handlead *verb* [5497 cheiragogos] to lead by the hand.

handmade *adjective* [5499 cheiropoietos] made by hand.

hands (extend) (wring) *participle* {3029 yeda} {3034 yadah} {8426 todah} to extend hands in praise; to wring hands in sorrow.

handscribing *noun* [5498 cheirographon] that which is scribed by hand.

handsome, beautiful (very) *adjective* {3303 yapheh} [3304 yephehphiyah] [8209 shappir] [5611 horaios] beautiful; timely; flourishing.

hang, suspend *verb* **prone** *participle* {8511 tala} {8518 talah} to suspend.

Hannah *transliterated name* {2584 channah} [451 anna] Endued with Charism.

Hanni El *transliterated name* {2592 channiel} Granted Charism of El.

Hanoch *transliterated name* {2585 chanoch} [1802 enok] Hanukkahed.

hanukkah *transliterated noun* {2597 chanukkah} [2598 chanukkah] [1456 enkainia] a celebration of hallowing.

hanukkah *transliterated verb* {2596 chanuk} [1457 enkainizo] to celebrate a hanukkah.

Haparayim *dual transliterated name* {2663 chapharayim} Double Pit.

happen, befall, fall, fell *verb* {5307 naphal} [5308 nephah] [7136 qarah] to cause to bring about; fall, fall down, fall away; to fell, as in felling timber.

happen, extend *verb* {4291 metah} to extend unto the heavens; to happen upon.

happening, occurrence *noun* {4745 miqreh} that which happens to occur.

Haqupha *transliterated name* {2709 chaquwpha} Crooked.

Har Megiddo *transliterated name* {2022 har} [4023 megiddo] [717 armageddon] Rendezvous Mountain.

Haran *transliterated name* {2771 charan} [5488 charrhan] Parched.

Harashim/engravers *plural transliterated name* {2798 charashim} Engravers.

harass, disintegrate *verb* {7492 raats} to break in pieces.

harbor *noun* [3040 limeen] a shelter or haven, usually for boats.

Harchas *transliterated name* {2745 charchac} possibly, Shining.

Harchur *transliterated name* {2744 charchuw} Inflammation.

hard, stern *adjective* {7186 qasheh} [4642 skleeros] harsh; severe.

hard, stern *verb* {7188 qashach} severe.

harden *verb* {7185 qashah} [4645 skleeruno] literally, or figuratively, to become obstinate.

hardheartedness *noun* [4641 skleerokardia] hardness of heart.

hardnaped *adjective* [4644 skleerotrakeelos] obstinate.

Harha Yah *transliterated name* {2736 charayah} Fearing Yah.

harness, bind *verb* {2280 chabash} to tie, or wrap.

harp *noun* {3658 kinnor} an instrument on which to twang.

harpoon, locust, whirring, cymbal *noun* {6767 tselatsal} a clattering, as of a cymbal; a whirring, as of wings; a rattling, as of a harpoon.

harrow *verb* {7702 sadad} to harrow a field.

hart *noun* {354 ayal} a stag; a male of the red deer.

Harum Aph *transliterated name* {2739 charuwmap} Devoted Nostrils.

Harus *transliterated name* {2743 charuwts} Earnest.

harvest *noun* {7105 qatsir} [2326 therismos] the harvest as clipped.

harvest *verb* {103 agar} [2325 therizo] to ingather.

harvest, shorten, chop, curtail *verb* {7114 qatsar} literally, or figuratively, to cut off.

harvester *noun* [2327 theristees] one that harvests.

Hasad Yah *transliterated name* {2619 chacadyah} Mercy of Yah.

LEXICON

Hasar Addar *transliterated name* {2692 chatsaraddar} Court of Addar.

Hasar Enan *transliterated name* {2704 chatsareynan} Court of Springs.

Hasar Enon *transliterated name* {2703 chatsareynown} Court of Fountains.

Hasar Gaddah *transliterated name* {2693 chatsargaddah} Court of Treasure.

Hasar Hat Tichon *transliterated name* {2694 chatsarhattiychowa} Court of the Middle.

Hasar Maveth *transliterated name* {2700 chatsarmaveth} Court of Death.

Hasar Shual *transliterated name* {2705 chatsarshuwal} Court of the Fox.

Hasar Susah *transliterated name* {2701chatsarcuwcah} Court of Cavalry.

Hasar Susim *plural transliterated name* {2702 chatsarcuwciym} Court of Horses.

Haserim *plural transliterated name* {2699 chatseriym} (masculine) Courts.

Haseroth *plural transliterated name* {2698 chatserowth} (feminine) Courts.

Haseson Tamar *transliterated name* {2688 chatsetsowntamar} Row of the Palm Tree.

Hashab Yah *transliterated name* {2811 chachabyah} Fabricated of Yah.

Hashabne Yah *transliterated name* {2813 chashabneyah} Machinated of Yah.

Hashbad Danah *transliterated name* {2806 chashbaddanah} Fabricated Rule.

Hashshub *transliterated name* {2815 chashshuwb} Fabricated.

Hasi Ham Menuchiy *transliterated name* {2680 chatsiyhammenachtiy} Of Hasi Ham Menuchoth.

Hasi Ham Menuchoth *plural transliterated name* {2679 chatsiyhammenuchowth} Midst of the Resting Places.

Hasor *transliterated name* {2674 chatsowr} Court.

Hasor Hadattah *transliterated name* {2675 chatsowrchadattah} New Hasor (Court).

haste *noun* {2649 chippazown} hurriedness.

haste, hasten *verb* {2363 chush} {2439 chiysh} {2648 chaphaz} {4116 mahar} Of hurry up; to be eager.

hastily chew *verb* {3216 yala} to utter inconsiderately.

hasting, skillful *adjective* {4106 mahir} to hurry along; to be skillful; quick, as skillful.

hasty *adjective* **hastily** *adverb* {4118 maher} hurry; hurriedly.

hate *verb* {8130 sane} {8131 sene} {3404 misseo} to have an intense aversion.

hated *adjective* {8146 sani} disliked intensely.

hateful *adjective* {4767 stugeetos} full of hate.

Hathach *transliterated name* {2047 hathach} of foreign origin; a Persian eunuch.

hatred *noun* {8135 sinah} an intense aversion.

haughtily, high *adverb* {7315 rom} {7317 romah} aloft; proudly.

haughtiness, haughty, height *noun* {7312, 7314 rum} haughty, as in highminded; height, as altitude.

haven *noun* {2348 chop} a place of covering, protection; see spare.

Havran *transliterated name* {2362 chavran} Cavernous.

Havvah *transliterated name* {2332 havvah} {2096 Eva} Lifegiver; name of the first female; Adam's woman.

Haza El *transliterated name* {2371 chazael} Seer of El; Seer, as seeing into the future; **cp** prophet.

Haza Yah *transliterated name* {2382 chazayah} Seer of Yah; Seer, as seeing into the future; **cp** prophet.

Hazi El *transliterated name* {2381 haziel} Seer of El; Seer, as seeing into the future; **cp** prophet.

he burro *noun* {2543 chamor} a male burro.

he goat *noun* {8495 tayish} that which butts.

he goats *plural noun* {6260 attud} as prepared; as full grown.

head *noun* {2776 kephalee} the top of the body.

head, first *adjective* {7223 rishon} {7224 rishoniy} head, as at the top; first, as at the beginning.

head, sum *noun* {7217 resh} the top of the body; the sum total.

head, top, beginning, first(s) *noun* {7218 rosh} {7221 rishah} {7225 reshith} {8462 rechillah} the head, in a variety of applications; the head of the body, of time, of the month, of archs.

headpieces *plural noun* {4763 meraashoth} as a headrest.

headships *plural noun* {4761 marashoth} one that heads

others.

headstone *noun* {68 eben} {7222 roshah}.

headstruck *verb* {2775 kephalaioo} a strike or wound on the head.

heal *verb* {7495 raphah} {2390 iaomai} to cause to be whole; see Yah Veh Raphah.

heal, healed, healthy [*verb* 5198 hugiaino] [*adjective* 5199 hugiees] to cause to be hygenized; to be hygenic; healthy, or healed in body, or in doctrine.

healer *noun* [*plural* 7499 rephuah] [2395 iatros] one who causes another to be whole, healthy; a medicine.

healing *noun* {724 arukah} {4832 marpe} {8644 teruphah} [2386 iama] [2392 iasis] wholeness.

health *noun* {7500 riphuth} the state of wholeness.

heap *noun* {5067 ned} {8510 tel} a mound; as piling up.

heap *noun* {6194 arem} {6652 tsibbur} a pile.

heap *verb* {6192 aram} {6651 tsabar} to pile up; to aggregate.

heap, mortar, chomer *transliterated noun* {2563 chomer} a dry measure as mixed, or heaped.

heaps *noun* {5856 iy} piles of rubble.

hear *verb* {8085 shama} {8086 shema} [191 akouo] to ear.

hearer *noun* [202 akroatees] one that hears.

hearing *noun* {4926 mishmag} that which the ear hears.

hearing, audience, guard *noun* {4928 mishmaath} an audience; also obedience; a subject.

hearing, notoriety, report, fame *noun* {8052 shemuah} {8088 shema} {8089 shoma} [189 akoe] that which is heard; an announcement; a rumor.

hearken *adjective* {7183 qashshab} attending to the ear.

hearken *verb* {238, 239 azan} emphatic of hear.

hearken *verb* {7181 qashab} {7182 qesheb} to attend to the ear.

heart *noun* {3820, 3821 leb} {3824, 3825 lebab} [2588 kardia] the blood pump of the body; symbolically of the center of the will.

hearth *noun* {4018 mebashshelah} a hearth for boiling, or cooking.

heartknowing *adjective* [2589 kardiognoste] knowing the heart.

heat *verb* {2552 chamam} to be, or cause to be hot.

heat, hot *noun* {2527 chom} literally, or figuratively.

heaven, heavens *noun* [*dual* 8064, 8065 shamayim] [3772 ouranos] the lofties; the name of the expanse surrounding the earth; **read** Genesis 1:6-8; in the Old Covenant, the heavens is always dual; in the New Covenant, sometimes singular, sometimes plural.

heavenlies *noun* [2032 epouranos] in the sphere of the heavens.

heavenly *adjective* [3770 ouranos] belonging to, or of the heavens.

heavens (from the) *adverb* [3771 ouranohen].

heaviness, heavy *noun* {3514 kobed} {3517 kebeduth} as in grievous.

heavy, callous *adjective* {3515 kated} as in grievous; as in thickskinned.

heavy, heaviness *noun* {3514 kobed} {3517 kebeduth} as in grievous.

heavy, honour, callous *verb* {3513 kated} to esteem; to weigh down; to callous.

Hebraic *transliterated adjective* [1444 hebraikos] [1446 hebrais] [1447 hebraisti] the Hebrew tongue.

Hebrew *transliterated name* {5680, 5681 ibriy} [1445 Hebraios] Of Eber.

hedge *noun* [5418 phragmos] a row of bushes; figuratively, a partition; a separation.

hedge *verb* {5473 cuwq} {7735 sug} {7753 suk} [5418 phragmos] to hedge in; to hem in; to inclose; to plant a row of bushes; to partition; to separate.

heel (restrain the) (trip the) *verb* {6117 aqab} to seize by holding the heel.

heel, heelprint, heel trippers, trip the heel *noun* {6119 aqeb} [4418 pterna] the back of the foot; a print made by the heel; ones that trip the heel by trapping.

Hege *transliterated name* {1896 hege} of Persian origin; a eunuch of Xerxes.

heifer *noun* {5697 eglah} {6510 parah} [1151 damalis] female calf; as being round; as being tame; **cp** calf.

height, haughtiness, haughty *noun* {7312, 7314 rum} haughty, as in highminded; height, as altitude.

height, high *noun* {6967 qomah} the highness.

LEXICON

heir *noun* {2818 kleeronomos} a possessor; one who received by allotment.

Helday *transliterated name* {2469 chelday} Transcient.

Heleph *transliterated name* {2501 cheleph} [256 alphaios] Change; Exchange.

Heleq *transliterated name* {2507 cheleq} Allotment.

Heleq Dam *transliterated name* {2506 cheleq} [1818 dam] [184 akeldama] Allotment of Blood.

Heleqiy *transliterated name* {2516 chelqiy} Of Heleq.

Heles *transliterated name* {2503 chelets} Equipped.

Helqath *transliterated name* {2520 chelqath} Smoothness.

Helgath Has Surim *plural transliterated name* {2521 chelqathatsuriym} Smoothness of the Rocks.

Hellas *transliterated name* [1671 hellas] the nation now known as Greece.

Hellene *transliterated name* [1672 hellen] Of Hellas.

Hellenic *transliterated name, adjective* [1673 hellenikos] [1676 hellenisti] the tongue of Hellas.

Hellenist *transliterated name* [1674 hellenis] [1675 hellenistees] Of Hellas.

helmet *noun* {3553 kowbah} as being arched.

help *noun* {5828 ezer} aid.

help *verb* **helper** *participle* {5826 azar} to protect; to aid.

Helqai *transliterated name* {2517 helqay} Allotted.

hemorrhage *noun* [131 haimorroeo] a heavy bleeding.

hemorrhoid, mound *noun* {2914 techor} a rising of earth; a rising by inflammation.

Hepshi Bah *transliterated name* {2657 chephtsiybahh} My Delight is in Her.

herb, herbage, herbs *noun* {6211 asab} {6212 eseb} [3001 lakanon] [5528 chortos] annual seed plants used primarily for healing and seasoning.

herbs *plural noun* {2235 zehrohgm} that which is sown.

heresy *transliterated noun* [139 haireisis] an opposing opinion.

Hereth *transliterated name* {2802 chereth} Forest.

heretical *transliterated adjective* [141 hairetikos] that of heresy.

Hermas *transliterated name* [2057 hermas] Of Hermes.

Hermes *transliterated name* [2060 hermees] An angel of Hellene deities.

Hermogenes *transliterated name* [2061 hermogenees] Of the genes of Hermes; **see** Hermes.

Herod *transliterated name* [2264 heerodees] Hero; Heroic.

Herodias *transliterated name* [2266 heerodias] Of Herod.

Herodion *transliterated name* [2267 heerodion] Of Herod.

Hesro *transliterated name* {2695 chetsrow} Court (inclosure).

Hesron *transliterated name* {2696 chetsrown} [2074 esrom] Courtyard.

Hesroniy *transliterated name* {2697 chetsrowniy} Of Hesron.

heterogenetic inductions *dual noun* {3610 kilayim} crossbreed; mix together.

Heth *transliterated name* {2845 cheth} Terrified.

Hethiy *transliterated name* {2850 chittiy} Of Heth.

hew *verb* {2672 chatsab} to cut or carve; as in lumbering, mining, or quarrying.

hewed, hewn *adjective* {4274 machtseh}.

hexect *verb* {8338 shawshaw} {8341 shashah} to divide into sixths.

Hezyon *transliterated name* {2383 chezyown} Seer; One Who Foresees.

Hi El *transliterated name* {2419 chiel} Life of El.

Hiday *transliterated name* {1914 hiday} of uncertain derivative.

hidden treasure *noun* {4301 matmon} {plural 4362 mikman} {plural 4710 mitspunim} {6840 tsaphin} {8226 saphan} a secreted valuable.

Hiddeqel *transliterated name* {2313 chiddeqel} of foreign origin; the Tigris river.

hide *verb* {2244 chaba} {2247 chabah} to withhold from view.

hide, bury *verb* {2934 taman} to hide by covering.

hide, cover, demolish *verb* {5641 sathar} {5642 sethar} to conceal by covering; to demolish and cover over.

hide, treasure *verb* {6845 tsaphan} to hide by covering over; to reserve, or protect.

hiding *noun* {2253 chebon} a withholding from view.

Hierapolis *transliterated name* [2404 hieropolis] Holy City.

hierarch, vapour *noun* {5387 nasi} [747 archeegos] a chief leader; as being first, foremost; also a vapour, as a rising mist.

hierarchy, beginning *noun* [746 arche] chief; origin; as being first, foremost.

high, haughtily *adverb* {7315 rom} {7317 romah} aloft; proudly.

high, height *noun* {4791 marom} {5299 naphah} elevation; elation.

high, height *noun* {6967 qomah} the highness.

high forehead *adjective* {1371 gibbeagh} as a frontal balding.

high forehead *noun* {1372 gabbachath} frontal baldness.

highway *noun* {4546 mecillah} {4547 masluwl} [1327 diexodes] an exitway.

hilarious *noun* [2431 hilaros] merriness; promptness or willingness.

hilarity *adjective* [2432 hilarotees] merry; prompt or willing.

hill *noun* {5316 nephet} a height.

Hillel *transliterated name* [1985 hillel] Halal; **see** halal.

Hilqi Yah *transliterated name* {2518 hilqiyah} Allotted of Yah.

hin *transliterated noun* {1969 hiyn} a unit of liquid measure.

hind leg, leg *noun* {7785 shoq} the leg of a biped; the hind leg of a quadruped.

hindrance *noun* {4622 matsor} an obstacle.

hire *noun* {4909 maskoreth} {7938 seker} {7939 sakar} reward, or return of that earned as a hireling.

hire *verb* {7936 sakar} {8566 tanah} to employ.

hireling *noun* {7916 sakir} {7917 sekirah} [3407 misthios] [3411 misthotos] one that is hired; an employee.

hiss *verb* {659 epha} {8319 sharaq} the sound of a prolonged s; used to show disapproval.

hisser *noun* {660 ephes} {6848 tsepha} that which hisses.

hisses, hissing *noun* {plural 8292 sheruqah} {8322 shereqah}.

Hizqi *transliterated name* {2395 chiziqi} Strong.

ho *transliterated participle, interjection* {1945 howy} an interjection of surprise, delight, exultation.

hoarfrost, tankard *noun* {3713 kephor} a covering; hoarfrost, as covering the ground; a tankard, as a covered vessel.

Hodav Yah *transliterated name* [1938, 1939 hodavyah] Majesty of Yah.

Hodev Yah *transliterated name* [1937 howdevah] Majesty of Yah.

Hodi Yah *transliterated name* [1940, 1941 hodayah] Majesty of Yah.

hoe *noun* {4282 macharesheth} {4576 mader} an instrument for picking; **cp** pick.

hoe, lack, arrange, fail *verb* {5737 adar} to miss having; to arrange a vineyard, as in hoeing.

Hoglah *transliterated name* {2295 choglah} possibly, a Partridge.

holding, holdings *noun* {4943 mesheq} {5232 nekac} {5233 nekec} {plural 5224 huparkonta} from the verb, hold: one's possessions including investments.

hole *noun* {3975 meurah} a crevice.

hole *noun* {5357 naqiyq} a boring in the rock.

hollow *noun* {5014 nabab} that which is empty inside.

hollow, palm, paw, sole, bowl *noun* {3709 kaph} {6447 pas} {8168 shoal} a hollow of the hand, foot, paw, or body; also utensils with a hollow.

hollow depressions *plural noun* {8258 sheqarurah}.

holocaust *noun* {plural 1890 habhabim} {5928 alah} {5930 olah} [transliteration 3646 holokautoma] a sacrificial burning.

holocaust, ascent *noun* {5930 olah} an ascent to a higher area; an offering that has been holocausted; **see** holocaust, *verb*.

holocaust, mount, regurgitate, ascend *verb* {5927, 5928 alah} to ascend, as a mountain; to mount an animal; to regurgitate food; to ascend a holocaust; **see** holocaust, *noun*.

holy, holies; see SUMMARY: HOLY, HOLIES, HOLLOW:

home (at) *verb* [1736 endeemeo] figuratively, as in the body.

home (away from) *verb* [1553 ekdeemeo] figuratively, as out of the body.

homolies *transliterated noun* [3657 homilia] wording together.

homologize *transliterated verb* [3656 homileo] [3662 homioazo] to word together.

homosexual *noun* [733 arsenokoitees] sexual desires for one of the same sex.

honour *noun* {3519 kabod} esteem.

honour, heavy, callous *verb* {3513 kabad} to esteem; to weigh down; to callous.

honour, honourable *adjective* {3520 kebuddah} [1784 entimos] one of esteem.

honour, price *noun* [5092 timee] of esteem; of value; money paid.

honour, price *verb* [5091 timao] to esteem; to value.

hoof *noun* {6541 parcah} the horn-like foot of some animals.

LEXICON

hook *noun* {2397 chach} {2443 chakkah} {*dual* 8240 shaphath} as an ornament, or as a grappler.

hook, shield, cold *noun* {6793 tsinnah} coldness, as piercing; a hook, as pointed; a shield, as a prickler.

hook, thorn *noun* {5518 sirah} [*plural* 7165 qeresim] literally, a boiler; a hook; a thorn.

hope *noun* {3689 kecel} {8431 towcheleth} {8615 tiqvah} [1680 elpis] a high expectation.

hope *verb* [1679 elpizo] to fully expect.

hope, cord *noun* {8615 tiqvah} hope, as to hang on to; a cord, to hang on to.

Hor Hag Gidgad *transliterated name* {2735 chorhaggidgad} Hole of the Cleft.

horn *noun* {7161, 7162 qeren} [2768 keras] a bonelike growth on the head of some animals; a music instrument.

Horonayim *dual transliterated name* {2773 choronayim} Double Hole.

horoscopist *noun* {1895 habar} [2748 chartom] {2749 chartom} one who foretells events by the zodiac.

horrible *adjective* **horribly** *adverb* {8186 shaarith} of horror.

horror, whirling *noun* {8178 saar} a whirling of a storm; a shuddering of horror.

horse, swallow *noun* {5483 cuc} {5484 cucah} a horse as leaping; a swallow as flitting.

Hosay *transliterated name* {2335 chowzay} Seer, as seeing into the future; **cp** prophet.

Hosha Yah *transliterated name* {1955 hoshayah} Salvation of Yah; **cp** Hoshia Na.

Hoshea *transliterated name* {1954 hoshea} [5617 hosee] Deliverer.

Hoshia Na *transliterated saying* {3467 yasha} {4994 na} [5614 hosanna] Save, we beseech; **see** beseech.

host, hosting *verb* {6633 tsaba} to assemble a host.

host, hosts *noun* **Sabaoth** *transliterated title* {6635 tsebaah *plural* tsabaoth} [3841 pantokrator] [*plural* 4519 sabaoth] of hosts; a vast array of warriors; often compounded with El and with Yah Veh; [4519 sabaoth] is the Hellenic transliteration of sabaoth, only in Romans 9:29, and Yaaqovos 5:4; [3841 pantokrator] is the Hellenic translation of sabaoth, only in 2 Corinthians 6:18, and throughout the Apocalypse; **see** host.

host, swell *verb* {6638 tsabah} to assemble a host; to swell up.

hot [2200 zestos] boiling hot; metaphorically of fervor of mind and zeal.

hot, heat *noun* {2527 chom} literally, or figuratively.

hot springs *plural noun* {3222 yamim}.

hour (half) *noun* [2256 heemiorion] one half of one literal hour.

hour *noun* [5610 hora] a specific period of time; an indefinite period of time, as the hour of Yah Shua's parousia.

house *noun* [3612 oikeema] a house to guard persons.

house, household, housing, bayith, beth *noun* {1004, 1005 bayith, beth} [3613 oikeeteerion] [3614 oikia] [3624 oikos] usually translated house, as in family or dwelling, except when part of a name, as in Beth Abara; **cp** manse; nave; palace; priestal precinct.

house (whole) *noun* [8332 panoiki] with the whole family.

houseguard *noun* [3626 oikouros] one who guards a house.

household *noun* [3609 oikios] [3615 oikiakos] members of a house; domestics, and all who are under the authority of the same householder.

housekeeper *noun* [3610 oiketees] one who keeps house.

housesdespotes *masculine noun* [3617 oikodespotes] despotes (head) of the house; **see** despotes.

housesdespotes *feminine verb* [3616 oikodespoteo] to be despotes (head) of the house.

hover *verb* {7363 rachaph} to hover over; to brood as a bird over her chicks.

howl (caused us to) *verb* {8437 total} to cause to emit a wailing cry.

howl *verb* {3213 yalal} a wailing cry.

howling *adjective* {3214 yelel} a wailing cry.

howling *noun* [3215 yelalah] a wailing cry.

hubris *transliterated noun* [5196 hubris] insolence; arrogance; violence.

hubs *plural noun* [2840 chishshur] as attached; **see** spokes.

human, humanity *noun* {119 adam} {120 adam} {121 adam} [444 anthropos] Adam {121 adam} is the name of the first adami (human) {120 adam}; who is the first anthropo (human) [444 anthropos]; Yah Shua Messiah, the son of Yah Veh, was born by the Holy Spirit through a woman; He is the son

humanity, not the son of man; a human being consists of at least three attributes: body, soul, spirit.

human, humanly *adjective* [442 anthropinos] as human.

humanity pleaser *noun* [441 anthropareskos] one who tries to please humanity.

humble *adjective* {6035 anav} {6041 aniy} [5011 tapinos] lowered in esteem or status.

humble, humbling, subdue *verb* {3665 kana} {6031 anab} {6033 anah} {6039 enuth} {6800 tsana} [5013 tapino] to cause to bend the knee; to knuckle under; to lower in esteem or status.

humblemindedness *noun* [5012 tapinophrosunee] of humble mind.

humbleness *noun* {6037 anvah} lowered in esteem or status.

humbling, subdue, humble *verb* {3665 kana} {6031 anab} {6033 anah} {6039 enuth} {6800 tsana} [5013 tapino] to cause to bend the knee; to knuckle under; to lower in esteem or status.

humiliation *noun* {6040 oniy} a disesteeming humbling.

humility *noun* {6038 anvah} humbleness.

hunt *verb* {6679 tsud} [2614 katadioko] to lurk for, and hunt down.

hunt, hunter *noun* {6718 tsaid} {6719 tsaad} {6720 tsedah} that which is hunted; one that hunts.

hunthold, lair, lure *noun* {4679 metsadah} {4685 metsodah} {4686 matsudah} a hunter's hideout; a lair; a lure.

Huqqoq *transliterated name* {2712 chuqqoq} Statute Setter.

Hur *transliterated name* {2354 chur} White.

hurl, deceive *verb* {7411 ramah} {7412 ramah} to throw; to betray.

hurl, throw, cast *verb* {7993 shalak} to throw out, down, or away.

hurricane *noun* {5492 cuphah} {5591 caar} a violent cyclone.

hurricaned *verb* {5590 caar} to toss.

hurry *verb* {5789 uwsh} to hasten.

hush *verb* (*imperative* 2013 hacah) {2814 chashah} to quiet.

hush, plow *verb* {2790 charash} literally, to scratch; to silence.

hush, subside *verb* {8367 shathaq} from the root, to subside.

Hushay *transliterated name* {2365 chuwshay} Hasty.

Hymenaeus *transliterated name* [5211 humenaios] God of Marriage.

hymn *transliterated noun* [5215 humnos] a song of praise.

hymn *transliterated verb* [5214 humneo] to sing in praise.

hyssop *transliterated noun* {231 ezob} [5301 hussopos] an aromatic plant used as a remedy for bruises.

I

I AM *title* {1961 hayah} [1473 ego] [1510 eimi] the eternal existant one; **cp** Yah; **note:** Whenever the scripture presents Yah Veh or Yah Shua as the eternal existant one, the *exeGes parallel BIBLE* indicates with all capital letters, thus: **I AM**.

Ibsan *transliterated name* {78 ibtsan} Splendid.

ice, crystal, frost *noun* {7140 qerach} as being smooth.

icon (sun) *noun* {2553 chamman} an image of the sun.

icon *transliterated noun* [1504 ikon] a likeness; an image.

idol *transliterated noun* {434, 457 eliy} [*plural* 1544 gillul] {6091 azab} [1497 idolon] an image or other object of worship.

idol, contorting, contortion *noun* {6089 etseb} {6090 otseb} {6092 atseb} {6093 itstsabon} an earthen vessel; a writhing as in pain; **see** contort *verb*.

idol, worthless *noun* {434 elul} {457 elil} of no worth.

idol of awe *noun* {4656 miphletseth} an idol of reverence.

idol sacrifice *noun* [1494 idolothuton] a sacrifice to an idol.

idolater *transliterated noun* [1496 idololatrees] an idol worshipper.

idolatrous (downright) *transliterated adjective* [2712 katidolos] utterly idolatrous.

idolatry *transliterated noun* [1495 idolotatria] a worship of an idol.

idoleon *transliterated noun* [1493 idolion] a place of idol worship.

idolize, contort, form *verb* {6087 atsab} to form; to contort; as in idolizing, to writhe in pain.

if *conjunction, noun* [1487 ei] a condition. **cp** if ever [1437].

if not, unless *participle* [3884 looleh].

if only, if though, O that *interjection* {3863 luw} as a petition.

if ever, whenever *adverb* [1437 ean] is a compound of [1487 ei] and [302 an] and may express the condition, if; or the

LEXICON

opportunity, when. **cp** if [1487].

ignoble *adjective* [36 agenes] without genos.

ilay *transliterated name* {5866 ilay} Ascended.

image *noun* {6754, 6755 tselem} semblance.

imagery, imagination *noun* [4906 maskiyth] images of stone; images of the imagination.

Immanu El *transliterated name* {6005 immanuel} [1694 emmanoueel] El With Us.

immeasurably *adverb* [280 ametros] without measure; unable to measure.

immoveable *adjective* [277 ametakineetos] not moveable.

immutable *adjective* **immutability** *noun* [276 ametathetos] unchangeable; unchangeability.

impartial *adjective* [87 adiakritos] not critical.

imparting, partaking *verb* [2841 koinoneo] communing and partaking by imparting.

impending, ready, treasured *adjective* {6259, 6264 athud} {6263 athid} prepared; treasured.

impossible *adjective* [418 anenekton] unable to be.

impossible, impotent *adjective* [101 adunateo] [102 adunatos] not able; without ability.

impoverish *verb* [4433 ptokuo] to be poor.

impoverish *verb* [4134 mowk] to become lean.

impoverish *verb* [7567 rashash] to cause to be poor by demolishing.

impoverish, lack *verb* [7326 rush] verb of poverty; to be destitute; **see** poverty.

impudence *noun* [335 anaidia] insolence.

impudent *adjective* [6277 athaq] in the sense of being carried away.

impure *adjective* [169 akathartos] not pure; **cp** pure.

impurity *noun* [167 akatharsia] [168 akathartees] without purity; **cp** purity.

in law *noun* [2860 chathan] a relative through marriage.

in order to, on account of, so (as) (that) *participle* {4616 maan} {5668 abur} for the purpose of.

inactivate *verb* [2673 katargeo] to render inactive; to abolish.

inadvertent error *noun* [7684 shegagah] unintentional error.

inadvertently err, err inadvertently *verb* [7683 shagag] {7686 shagah} to err unintentionally.

incense *adjective* [2367 thuinios] fragrant.

incense *noun* {6988 qetorah} {7002 qitter} {7004 qetoreth} [2368 thumiama] aromatic fumes; **cp** frankincense.

incense *verb* [4729 miqtar] {6999 qatar} {7002 qitter} {7004 qetoreth} [2370 thumiao] to fume aromatics.

incident, coincidence *noun* [6294 pega] casual impact.

incise *verb* [8295 sarat] to cut the flesh; forbidden by Yah Veh; **cp** circumcise; **cp** eunuchize.

incision *noun* [8296 sareteth] a cutting in the flesh; forbidden by Yah Veh; **cp** circumcision; **cp** eunuchize.

incision, incisor, minings, sickle, trench, decision, incisors *noun* [2699 katatome] mutilators; **cp** circumcise; **cp** eunuchize.

incision, incisor, ore, sickle, trench, decision, decisive *adjective, noun* [2742 charuts] literally, mentally, or soulically, an incising.

inclose, lock, shod, enclose *verb* [5274 naal] {7000 qatar} to fasten; **see** shoe.

inconvenient *adjective* [428 anuthetos] not well-suited.

incorruptibility *noun* [861 aphtharsia] not decayable.

incorruptible *adjective* [862 aphthartos] not subject to decay.

incorruptible *noun* [90 adiphthoria] not corrupt.

increase *noun* [6451 piccah] an expansion.

increase *noun* [7679 saga] an increase through growth.

increase *noun, adjective* **increasingly** *adverb* [4766 marbeh] {4767 mirbah} {4768 marbith} an oversupply; an oversupplying.

increase *verb* [7680 sega] {7685 sagah} to increase through growth.

increase, add, again, augment *verb* [3254 yacaph] to add to; to repeat.

increasing, many, mighty, much, very, exceeding, greatly *adjective* {7689, 7690 saggiy} superlatively mighty, or large.

indebted *verb* [3784 ophilo] to be under obligation; to owe.

indeed *adverb* [3689 ontos] in reality; in truth.

indeed, therefore, then *adverb* [686 ara] truly; in point of fact; the idea of drawing a conclusion.

indescribable *adjective* [411 ankieegetos] unable to describe; **cp** inexpressible.

indicate, designate *verb* [5567 caman] [322 anadiknumi] to

show; to appoint.

indignation *noun* [24 aganakteesis] resentment.

indignify *verb* [23 aganakteo] to resent.

indwell *verb* [1774 enoikeo] to dwell within.

inexcusable *adjective* [379 anapologeetos] without pleadability.

inexhaustible *adjective* [413 anekliptos] unable to explore competely.

inexpressible *adjective* [412 aneklaleetos] [731 arreetos] unable to express; **cp** indescribable.

infant *noun* [5768 olal] [1025 brephos] a young baby; **see** suckling.

inflare, flame *verb* **flaming** *adjective* {3857 lahat} {3859 laham} to blaze; that which is inflamed by fire.

inflare, kindle, scorch *verb* {2734 charah} {2787 charar} {6866 zarab} literally, or soulically, to glow; to blaze up.

inflamed, flamed *adjective* {6867 tsarebeth} [4092 pimpramai] as burning.

ingathering, gathering *noun* {plural 624 acuppim} {625 oceph} {626 acephah} {plural 627 acuppah} {628 acpecuph} {6910 qebutsah} a collection of offerings, fruits, people, or learned persons.

ingot *noun* [7192 qesitah] an ingot, as weighed and stamped for a coin.

ingraft *verb* [1461 enkentrizo] to cut into for the sake of inserting a scion; to graft in.

inherit *verb* [5157 nachal] [2816 kleeronomeo] [2820 kleeromai] to come into possession by allotment.

inheritance *noun* [5159 nachalah] [2817 kleeronomia] the acquisition of a possession by allotment.

injure *verb* [91 adikeo] verb of injustice; to be unjust; **see** injustice.

injustice *noun* [92 adikeema] [93 adikia] an injury; **see** unjust.

inkling *noun* {8102 shemets} a slight emission

inkwell *noun* [7083 qeceth] a container for ink.

inner, inward *adjective* {6442 peniyimiy} the inside of; **cp** out, outward.

innermost depths *noun* [4278 mechqar] that which is scrutinized.

innocency *noun* [5356 niqqaon] guiltlessness.

innocent, exonerated *adjective* [5355 naqi] [172 akakos] not guilty.

inopportune *adjective* [170 akaieomai] without opportunity.

inopportunately *adverb* [171 akairos] without opportunity.

inquire precisely *verb* [198 akriboo] to interrogate exactly.

inquire, require, seek, enquire, examine *verb* {1875 darash} to ask; to seek; **cp** beseech.

insane *noun* {7696 shaga} one that raves.

insanity *noun* [7697 shiggaon] a raving.

inscribe, chart *verb* {3789 kathab} {3790 kethab} {3799 katham} [1449 engrapho] to scribe; **see** scribe.

inscribing *noun* {3791, 3792 kethab} {4385 miktab} [1121 gamma] a writing; **cp** scribe.

inscription *noun* [3793 kethobeth] a tattoo on the skin; a caption; **see** superscription.

insignificant *adjective* **lessen** *verb* {6994 qaton} [1642 elattoo] a diminishing in rank or influence.

inspection *noun* [4935 mishiy] to examine thoroughly.

instability *adjective* [181 akatastasia] disorder; **see** unstable.

instead, in stead *participle* {8478 tachath} in lieu of.

instrument *noun* [3627 keliy] including, but not limited to music, ornament, weapon.

insubordinate, unsubjected *adjective* [506 anupotaktos] not subject to; refusing subordination.

integrious *adjective* **integriously** *adverb* {8535 tam} {8549 tamim} in consummate wholeness.

integrious *noun* **consummate, consume** *verb* {8552 tamam} to finish off; to cause to be in consummate wholeness.

integrity *noun* [4974 methom] {8537 tom} {8538 tummah} consummate wholeness.

intent, intention *noun* {6656 tseada} {7454 rea} {7470 reuth} {7476 raon} that which one attends to do; **see** tend.

intently *adverb* [1616 ektenia] [1617 ektenesteron] earnestly.

intercede *verb* [1793 entunkano] to intervene in behalf of.

intercede, reach, encounter *verb* {6293 paga} to impinge.

interest *noun* {4855 mashsha} a loan, interest on a loan; **cp** usuary.

intermarry, in law *verb* [2859 chathan] to contract affinity by marriage.

interpret *verb* [6590 peshar] to give the meaning of; **cp**

LEXICON

translate; **note:** dreams are interpreted; tongues are translated.
interpretation *noun* {6591 peshar} {6592 peshar} {6623 pithron} an explanation of the meaning of; **cp** translation;
note: dreams are interpreted; tongues are translated.
interval *noun* [1292 diasteema] a space between.
intimidate *verb* [1286 diasio] to make timid or fearful.
intoxicant *noun* {7941 shekar} [4608 sikera] that which intoxicates; an intoxicating agent.
intoxicate *verb* {7937 shakar} [3182 methuskomai] [3184 methuo] to drink unto intoxication; to cause intoxication.
intoxicated *adj* {7910 shikkor} one who is intoxicated.
intoxicated, intoxication *noun* {7943 shekar} [3178 methee] the state of being intoxicated.
intoxicator *noun* [3183 methusos] one who intoxicates.
intreat *verb* {6279 athar} to petition with urgency.
intrigue *noun* {2154 zimmah} [2162 zamam] {4209 mezimmah} conspiracy; strategy.
intrigue *verb* [2161 zamam] to conspire, to strategize.
invalidate *verb* [208 akuroo] to unconfirm.
invigoration *noun* {4241 michyah} from the root of enliven; the sustenance of life.
inviolable *adjective* [531 aparabatos] not violated.
invisible *adjective* [517 aoratos] incapable of being seen.
inward, inner *adjective* {6442 peniyimiy} the inside of; **cp** out, outward.
inward, middle, midst, within, among *noun* {7130 qereb} {8432 tavek} the nearest part; the center.
inwards *plural noun* {4577, 4578 meah} the innards; the intestines; figuratively, of sympathy, or empathy.
iota *transliterated noun* [2503 iota] the tenth letter of the Hebrew alphabet, and the eighth letter of the Hellenic alphabet; the minutest part.
iqqesh *transliterated name* {6142 iqqesh} Perverted.
Ir Ham Melach/City of Salt *transliterated name* {5898 iyrrhammelach} City of Salt.
Ir Nachash/City of the Serpent *transliterated name* {5904 iyrrnachash} City of the Serpent.
iron *noun* {1270 barzel} {6523 parzel} as an ore; as an instrument of cutting.
irreverence *plural noun* [763 asebia] without reverence.
irreverent *adjective* [765 asebees] without reverence.
irreverently *adverb* [764 asebeo] to act without reverence for.
irritate, thunder *verb* {7481 raam} to agitate; to be agitated.
Ish Bosheth *transliterated name* {378 ishbosheth} Man of Shame.
Ish Hod *transliterated name* {379 iyshhowsd} Man of Majesty.
Ish Tob *transliterated name* {382 ishtob} Man of Goodness.
island *noun* {336, 339 iy} [3520 nesos] a habitable spot of land.
island howlers *plural noun* {338 eieyim} a howler of an island.
isle *noun* [3519 neesion] a small island.
Ithi El *transliterated name* {384 ithiel} Blithed of El.
Ittay *transliterated name* {863 ittay} Near.
ivory, tooth, tusk, crag *noun* {8127, 8128 shen} {plural 8143 shenhabbim} [3599 adous] as being sharp.
Iy Ezer *transliterated name* {372 iyezer} No Help.
Iy Ezeriy *transliterated name* {373 iyezriy} Of Iy Ezer.
Iy Chabod *transliterated name* {350 iychabowd} No Honour.
Iy Thamar *transliterated name* {385 iythamar} Coast of the Palm.
Iy Zebel *transliterated name* {348 iyzebel} [2403 iezabeel] No Residing.
Iye Ha Abarim *plural transliterated name* {5863 iyeyhaabariym} Heaps of the Passers.
Iyim *plural transliterated name* {5864 iyiyim} Heaps.
Iyob *transliterated name* {347 iyowb} [2492 iob] Persecuted.
Iyon *transliterated name* {5859 iyown} Heap.

J

Jambres *transliterated name* [2387 iambrees] the meaning uncertain.
jasper *noun* [2393 iaspis] a precious stone of divers colors; thought to be dark green or opalescent.
javelin *noun* {7420 romach} from being hurled.
jaw, cheek *noun* {3895 lechi} the side, or the bottom of the face.
jealous, zealous *adjective* **envy, suspect** *verb* {7065 qana} {7067 qanna} {7072 qannow} to be zealous, as jealous, or envious.
jealousy, suspicion, envy *noun* {7068 qinah} zeal, as jealousy,

or envy.

jeering *adjective* {3934 laeg} **see** deride.

jinglers *plural noun* {4698 metsillah} little bells that jingle; **see** cymbals.

join *verb* {2338 chut} literally, to thread together; **see** thread.

join, attach, contrive *verb* {6775 tsamad} to link; to gird; mentally, to contrive.

join, charm *verb* {2266 chabar} literally, to join objects; to cast spells.

join, lend, borrow *verb* {3867 lavah} literally, to entwine; to become wrapped up in, as a borrower, or as a lender.

join, stick, adhere *verb* {1692 dabaq} {1693 debaq} [4347 proskollao] to join one's self to closely; stick to; to remain attached.

joint *noun* {2279 chobereth} {4225 machbereth} {plural 4226 mechabberoth} a place of joining.

journey *verb* [3593 hodeuo] [3596 hodoiporeo] [4922 sunodeuo] to travel; **see** sojourn.

journey, way *noun* {1870 derek} a road, as trodden; a walkway; figuratively, the journey of life.

journey, way *noun* {4550 macca} [3597 hodiporia] [3598 hodos] a trip; **see** sojourn.

joy *noun* {4885 masows} from the verb, rejoice.

jubilee *transliterated noun* {3104 yobel} the celebration of the year of jubile; **read** Leviticus 25:10–54, 27:17–24, Yah Shua 6:4–13.

judge, judgment; see SUMMARY: JUDGE, JUDGMENT:

juice *noun* {3955 leshad} {8492 tirosh} as freshly squeezed.

jump *verb* {5539 salad} to leap.

jump for joy *adjective* {5938 alez} {5947 alliyz} a physical expression of praise.

jump for joy *verb* {5937 alaz} {5970 alats} [20 agalliasis] [21 agalliao] to physically express praise.

jumping for joy *noun* {5951 alitsuth} a physical expression of praise.

juniper *noun* {7574 rethem} a species of evergreen shrub.

just, justness, justice, justification; see SUMMARY: JUDGE, JUDGEMENT, JUST:

K

Kaisar *transliterated title* [2541 kaisar] title of the Roman sovereign; the Hellene form for Tsar.

Kaisaria *transliterated name* [2542 kaisaria] Kaisar City.

Kaleb *transliterated name* {3612 kaleb} Dog.

Kaleb Ephrathah *transliterated name* {3613 kalebephathah} Dog of Fruitbearing.

Kalebiy *transliterated name* {3614 kalebiy} Of Kaleb.

Kalkol *transliterated name* {3633 kalkol} Sustenance.

Kalubay *transliterated name* {3621 keluwbay} Dog.

Kaluhay *transliterated name* {3622 keluwhay} Finished.

kammon *transliterated noun* {3646 kammon} [2951 kuminon] a dill or fennel.

Kaphar Nachum *transliterated name* {3723 kaphar} {5151 nachum} [2584 kapernaoum] Comfort Village.

kapporeth, kapur/atone; see SUMMARY: KAPPORETH:

Karmel/orchard *transliterated name, noun* {3759 karmel} a planting of fruit trees; an orchard.

Karmeliy *transliterated name* {3761 karmeliy} Of Karmel.

keep, make, serve, do *verb* {5648 abad} in the sense of serving.

Kelach *transliterated name* {3625 kelach} Maturity.

Kenaar *transliterated name* **merchant** *noun* {3667 kenaar} [5477 chanaan] merchant; made to bend the knee; humiliated; name of a person; name of a land.

Kenaarah *transliterated name* {3668 kenaarah} Humiliated.

Kenaaraniy *transliterated name* {3669 kenaaraniy} [2581 kanaanitees] [5478 chananaios] Of Kenaar; **see** Kenaar.

Kenan Yah *transliterated name* {3663 kenanyah} Planted of Yah.

Kepha *transliterated name* {3710 keph} [2786 keephas] Rock; Kepha is the Hellene transliteration of the Hebrew Keph; Petros is the Hellenic translation of Keph; **cp** Petros.

Keran *transliterated name* {3763 keran} of uncertain derivative.

kernal, bundle *noun* {6872 tseror} a package, as a parcel, as a particle.

kernel *noun* {plural 6507 perudah} {7666 shabar} {7668 sheber} [2848 kokkos] a seed within a hard shell; grain, as broken into kernels.

kernels (market for) *verb* {7666 shabar} to purchase kernels.

LEXICON

Kesedyi, Kesedyim *transliterated name* {3679 kacday} {plural 3778 kasdiym} {3779 kasday} [5466 chaldaios] Of Kesed.

Kesil *transliterated name* **fool** *noun* {3684 kecil} [5530 sakal] a constellation; stupid, or silly.

key *noun* [2807 kliš] an instrument for shutting a lock; figuratively, used to denote power and authority.

Kil Ab *transliterated name* {3609 kilab} Restraint of His Father.

Kilyon *transliterated name* {3630 kilyown} Failing.

kin, kindred *noun* {4129 moda} {4130 modaath} {4138 moledeth} [4772 sungenia] [4773 sungenees] blood relatives.

kind, kinder, kindness [5543 kreestos] as useful; benevolent.

kindle, burn *verb* {3341 yatsah} [5400 nasaq] {6919 qadach} to set on fire; to desolate.

kindle, inflame, scorch *verb* [2734 charah] [2787 charar] {6866 zarab} literally, or soulcally, to glow; to blaze up.

kinflesh, flesh *noun* {7607 sheer} {7608 shaarah} flesh, as food; flesh, as near of kin.

Kinneroth *transliterated name* {3672 kinnerowth} [1082 genneesaret] Harpist.

kippurim/atonements; see SUMMARY: KIPPURIM

kiss *noun* {5390 neshiqah} to touch with the lips.

kiss *verb* {5401 nashaq} as attaching; as fastening.

kiss, befriend *verb* {5401 nashaq} [5368 phileo] [5370 phileema] the Hellene is the verb of friend; a soulcal expression of fondness; to kiss as a form of attachment; **cp** love; **read** Yahn 21:15–17.

kiss (ardently) *verb* [2705 kataphileo] to kiss earnestly.

Kithlish *transliterated name* {3798 kithliysh} Wall of a Man.

Kittiy *transliterated name* {3794 kittiy} Of Cyprus; an islander.

Kiyimah *transliterated noun* {3598 kiyimah} the name of a cluster of stars.

Kiyun *transliterated name* {3594 kiyun} [4481 remphan] an idolc statue; the Hellene is an incorrect transliteration of the Hebrew.

knee *noun* {1290, 1291 bereck} [1119 gonu] the joint between the upper and lower leg.

kneel, bless *verb* [1288 barak] [1289 berak] [3107 makarios] to beatify; the Hebrew also means to kneel in adoration.

kneel, knuckle under *verb* [3766 kara] [1120 gonupeteo] to bend the knee; to fall to the knee.

knife, razor, sheath *noun* {8593 taar} a knife, or a razor, as making bare; a sheath, as being bare.

knobs *plural noun* {6497 peqaim} literally, openers.

knock *verb* [5368 neqash] [6375 piq] as in knees knocking.

know *verb* [1097 ginosko] to be aware of facts.

know, acknowledge *verb* [1921 epiginosko] to recognize; to become acquainted with.

know, perceive *verb* {3045 yada} {3046 yeda} [143 aisthanomai] [1492 eido] [5274 hupolambano] to be aware through the senses.

know exactly *verb* [1231 diaginosko] to diagnose.

knower *noun* {3049 yiddoni} one who has the spirit (not necessarily holy) of knowledge; **cp** seer.

knowledge *noun* **knowingly** *adverb* {4093 madda} intelligence; consciousness.

knowledge, perception *noun* {1843 dehag} [1844 dehгах] [1847 dahgath] [1108 gnosis] an awareness of facts.

known (become) (cause to be) *verb* [319 anagnorizomai] [1107 gnorizo] to cause to become known.

known, acquaintance *noun* [1110 gnostos] one who is known by another.

Kol Hozeh *transliterated name* {3626 kolchozeh} Every Seer.

Kon Yah *transliterated name* {3659 konyah} Established of Yah.

Konan Yah *transliterated name* {3562 konanyah} Established of Yah.

kopur/atonement; see SUMMARY: KOPUR.

kor *transliterated noun* {3734 kor} [2884 koros] a large dry measure.

Kor Ashan *transliterated name* {3565 kowrashan} Furnace of Smoke.

Koresh *transliterated name* {3566, 3567 koresh} a Persian sovereign.

Kush *transliterated name* {3568 kush} the son of Ham; that which is now Ethiopia.

Kushan Rishathaim *dual transliterated name* {3573 kuwshanrishathayim} Kushan of Double Wickedness.

Kushiy *transliterated name* {3569, 3570 kuwshiy} Of Kush.

Kushiyth *transliterated name* {3571 kuwshiyth} a female Kushiy.

Kuth *transliterated name* {3575 kuwth} the meaning uncertain; a province in Ashshur.

L

La El *transliterated name* {3815 lael} Of El.

labor, labour *noun* {3018 yegiya} {3022 yaga} the labor, including the result thereof.

labor, labour *verb* {3021 yaga} to labor; to toil; **see** belabour.

Lachmam *transliterated name* {3903 lachmam} Bread-like.

Lachmi *transliterated name* {3902 lachmiy} Bread.

lack *adjective* {2638 chacer} {2639 checer} {2640 chocer} {4270 machor} without; destitute of.

lack, abate *verb* {2637 chacer} to lack, to lessen; spoken of the prophecy of the Messiah having become flesh; **read** Psalm 8:5.

lack, arrange, fail, hoe *verb* [5737 adar] to miss having; to arrange a vineyard, as in hoeing.

lack, impoverish *verb* [7326 rush] verb of poverty; to be destitute; **see** poverty.

lacking *adverb* {2642 checrohn} deficiency.

lad *noun* {5288, 5289 naar} {5290 noar} {5958 elem} [3816 pais] male child; **cp** lass.

Ladah *transliterated name* {3935 ladah} the meaning uncertain.

Ladan *transliterated name* {3936 ladan} the meaning uncertain.

lade, laden, load, burden *verb* {6006 amas} to load a load; to impose a burden.

lade, lift, load, spare, bear *verb* [5375 nacah] [5376 nesa] to lift, in a variety of applications.

ladhood *noun* {5290 noar} the eon of being a lad.

lady *noun* [1377 gebiyrah] [1404 gebereth] [2959 kurial] feminine of lord.

lair, lure, hunthold *noun* {4679 metsudah} {4685 metsodah} {4686 matsudah} a hunter's hideout; a lair; a lure.

lake *noun* [3041 limnee] an inland body of water, as nearness of a shore.

Lamb (the), lamb *noun* [721 arnion] is used of Christ, as a sacrifice to expiate the sins of men; a small sheep.

lamb (ewe) *noun* {3535 kabsah} [3776 kisbah] a young female sheep.

lamb, lambs *noun* {563 immar} [2922 tela] [2924 taleh] {3532 kebes} {3775 keseb} [7716 seh] [286 amnos] [704 areen] small sheep.

lame *noun* [5560 kolos] limping; as deprived of a foot.

lament *verb* [5091 nahah] [6969 qun] [2354 threeneo] [2360 threomai] to mourn; to express deep sorrow for.

lamentation *noun* {4553 mi^{cp}ed} [5089 noahh] [5092 nehiy] {5093 niyah} [5204 niy] [7015 qinah] [2355 threenos] a mourning.

lamp *noun* [5216 nerah] that which glistens; a light.

land, earth *noun* [772 ara] [776 erets] [778 araq] [1093 gee] the soil; terra frima; **cp** cosmos.

languid *noun* [5889 ayeph] weak; wasted away.

languish *verb* [5888 ayeph] [5969 ulpeh] to weaken.

languish, veil, cover *verb* [5848 ataph] [5968 alaph] to shroud; to cover over; to languish.

Laodicea *transliterated name* [2993 laodikia] Laity of Judgment.

Laodicean *transliterated name* [2994 laodikus] Of Laodicea.

lap *verb* [3952 laqaq] to lick up with the tongue; **cp** lick.

Lappidoth *plural transliterated name* [3941 lappiydowth] Flambeaus.

Laqqum *transliterated name* [3946 laqqum] possibly, Fortification.

large, broad *noun* [7341 rochab] [7342 rachab] wide; width; roomy.

largess *noun* {5023 nebizbah} liberality; a bounty as owed.

larynx *transliterated noun* [2995 larunx] the body structure housing the vocal cords.

lash *noun* [2250 chabburah] the wound of a lashing or whipping.

lass *noun* [5291 naarah] [3814 paidiskee] female child; **cp** lad.

latter rain *noun* [4456 malqosh] the spring rain.

lattice, net, netting *noun* [7638 sabak] that which is entwined.

laud, soothe *verb* [7623 shabach] [7624 shecach] to extol with words; to smooth it over.

laugh, ridicule, entertain *verb* [6711 tsachaq] [6712 tsechoq] [7832 sechag] to laugh; to laugh at; to laugh at in defiance.

laughingstock *noun* [4890 mischag] an object of ridicule.

LEXICON

laughter, ridicule *noun* {7814 sechoq} a laugh; a laughing at; a laughing at in defiance.

launder *verb* {3526 kabac} to wash by treading; used only of ceremonial cleansing of clothing after their contamination, except in 2 Shemu El 19:24.

lay, lie (down) *verb* {7901 shakab} to lie down; **see** bed.

lay, repose *verb* {2621 katakimai} to lie down; recline at a meal.

lay waste *verb* {3765 kircem} to despoil.

layer *noun* {5073 nidbak} that which is laid vertically; a stratum.

laying aside *verb* {595 apothesis} to put away; to abandon for a time or permanently.

lead, led *verb* {5148 nachah} to guide; to transport.

leaders, leaderships *plural noun* {6546 parah} persons at the beginning; persons at the front.

leaf, leaves *noun* {5929 aleh} a foliage of a tree.

lean *verb* {8172 shaan} to rely on for support.

leap for joy *verb* {5965 alaz} to exult physically; **cp** jump for joy.

leap, lighten, loose *verb* {5425 nathar} [242 hallomai] to leap; to loosen; to untie.

leap, solidify *verb* {6339 pazaz} to become solid; to spring.

leaper *noun* {1788 dishon} that which leaps.

learn, teach *verb* {3925 lamad} literally, to goad; to disciple; to be disciplined; **see** disciple *verb*.

lease *verb* [1554 ekdidomi] to give out; to let out for hire.

leave, let, set, abandon, allow *verb* {3240 yanach} {5203 natash} to allow to be; to allow to be set; to abandon.

leave, release, allow, abandon, forgive, forsake *verb* {863 apheemi} to send forth.

leave (behind), release, abandon, forsake *verb* {5800 azab} [1459 enkatalipo] to leave behind; in a good sense, to let remain over; in a bad sense, to abandon.

leave off, loose *verb* {447 anieemi} to loosen; to let go of.

leaves *noun* [5444 phullon] as sprouts.

leaving, releasing, abandoning, forsaking *noun* {5805 azubah} a desertion.

lechery *noun* [766 aselgia] unrestrained lust; selfish pleasure.

Lechi *transliterated name* {3896 lechiy} Cheek.

ledge, court *noun* {plural 4052 migraah} {5835 azarah} {plural 7948 shalab} that which is surrounded; that which surrounds.

left *adjective* {8042 semaliy} leftward.

left *noun* {8040 semol} that which is opposite the right; **cp** right; example: when facing north, the west; most versions erroneously insert the words *hand*, or *side*; we sit not on Yah Shua's right hand, or on his left hand; but at his left, and at his right.

left over, leftovers *noun* {5736 adaph} a surplus.

left *verb* {8041 samal} to pass leftward.

leftover *noun* {5669 abur} that which has been passed over, or kept over.

leg *noun* {3767 kara} {8243 shaq} [4628 skelos] a limb of a human or animal.

leg, hind leg *noun* {7785 shoq} the leg of a biped; the hind leg of a quadruped.

Lekah *transliterated name* {3922 lekah} Walk.

Lemech *transliterated name* {3929 lemech} [2984 lamech] the meaning uncertain.

Lemu El *transliterated name* {3927 lemuel} Of El.

lend, borrow, join *verb* {3867 lavah} literally, to entwine; to become wrapped up in, as a borrower, or as a lender.

lend, loan, ask {7592 shael} {7593 sheel} [154 aiteo] to inquire; to request or demand.

lender *noun* {4874 mashsheh} {5386 neshiy} one to whom another is indebted.

lentiles *plural noun* {5742 adashim} an edible pea-like vegetable, usually cooked whole, or ground.

leopard *noun* {5245 nemar} {5246 namer} as being spotted.

leper, leprous *verb* {6879 tsara} to be stricken with leprosy.

leprosy *noun* {6883 tsaraath} a disease of the skin.

Lesha *transliterated name* {3962 lesha} Break Through.

lessen *verb* **insignificant** *adjective* {6994 qaton} [1642 elattoo] a diminishing in rank or influence.

lessen, diminish *verb* {4591 maat} to pare off; to reduce.

lesser, little, pinky, younger, fewer *adjective* {6810 tsaor} {6995 qoten} {6996 qatan} less in age, number, size; little finger.

let (down) (fall) (go) (loose), loose, loosen up, slacken *verb* {7503 raphah} to slacken.

let, set, abandon, allow, leave *verb* {3240 yanach} {5203 natash} to allow to be; to allow to be set; to abandon.

lethek *transliterated noun* {3963 lethek} a dry measure.

level, plain, straight, straightness *noun* {4334 miyshor, plural miyshorim} {4339 meyshar} {6160 arabah} plain, as unadorned; as a level land area; as of straight character; as just.

Levi, Leviy, Leviym *transliterated name* {3878 levi} {plural 3879, 3881 leviym} [3018 lui] [plural 3019 luitees] Attached; Joined; name of a person; of a scion of Yisra El.

leviathan *transliterated noun* {3882 livathan} a wreathed monster.

levir *noun* {2993 yabam} the one who is to levirate.

levirate *verb* {2992 yabam} to impregnate a deceased brother's widow to preserve his seed.

Levitical *transliterated adjective* {3878 levi} [3020 luitikos] of Levi.

libate, pour, anoint *verb* {4886 mashach} {5258 nacak} {5260 necak} {5480 cuwk} {8210 shaphach} [218 alipho] [4689 spendomai] [5548 chrio] symbolic of setting apart by libating (pouring on) of oil; of pouring a molten image.

libated, anointed *noun* {5257 necik} symbolic of one set apart by libating (pouring on) oil.

libation, pouring *noun* {5261 necak} {5262 necek} a pouring of worship; a pouring of images.

liberal, liberty *noun* {1865 derowr} from the root, to move rapidly; freedom.

liberality *noun* [572 haplotees] not restricted in giving, granting, or yielding.

liberate *verb* {2666 chaphash} {7804 shezab} [1659 elutheroo] to release; to free.

liberated *adjective* {2670 chopshiy} [1658 eltheros] released.

liberated *noun* [558 apelutheros] one released.

liberated, burst (open) *adjective* {6359 patir} {6362 patar} burst open, as a flower; liberate, as a person.

liberation *noun* {2667 chopshesh} {2668 chuphshah} a releasing.

liberty *adjective* {2669 chopshuth} spoken of a house; possibly in contrast to a guarded house.

lick *verb* {3897 lachak} to lap with the tongue; **cp** lap.

lie (down), lay *verb* {7901 shakab} to lie down.

lie *verb* {3576 kazab} to deceive.

lie, put, cast *verb* [906 ballo] to throw.

life (physical) *noun* {2424 chayuth} [2222 zoe] the portion of existence following birth and preceding death wherein a being grows, decides, and decays; life is sustained by the soul; **read** Leviticus 17:11; physical life is superceded by eternal life with Yah Veh, or eternal death in the lake of fire.

life, live, lively, living *adjective* {2416, 2417 chay} {2422 chayeh} the Hebrew and Arami adjective is used as a noun in English; **see** live.

lifestyle *noun* [72 agogee] a mode of living.

lift *verb* {7213 raam} to raise.

lift, bear *verb* {5190 natal} {5191 netal} to lift, as to impose; to raise.

lift, load, spare, bear, lade *verb* {5375 nacah} {5376 nesa} to lift, in a variety of applications.

lift, loft, raise, exalt *verb* {7311, 7313 rum} {7318 romam} {7426 ramam} to lift hand, heart, offering, voice; to oath; **see** exalt.

lift, take *verb* [142 airo] to take up; to take away.

lifting, swelling, exalting *noun* {7613 seeth} an elevation; from the verb, lift {5375}.

light *noun* {3974 maor} a luminary.

light, lit *verb* [381 anapto] to light a fire.

lighten, loose, leap *verb* {5425 nathar} [242 hallomai] to leap; to loosen; to untie.

lightning *noun* {1300 baraq} {2385 chaziz} [796 astrapee] a flashing light produced by an atmospheric discharge.

like *adjective* [3664 homiois] similar to.

like, likewise *adverb* [3668 homioios] same as; samewise.

like manner (in) *adverb* [5615 hosautos] in the same way.

likeminded *noun* [3675 homophron] of similar thoughts.

liken, compare *verb* {1819 dahmah} [3666 homioioo] to liken unto; to compare; to resemble; to consider; homioioo is the verb of likeness.

liken, proverbialize *verb* [4911 mashal] to present as a proverb; liken, as being equal; **see** equal.

likeness *noun* {1823 demuwth} {1825 dimyohn} [3665 homioitees] [3667 homioioma] [3669 homioiosis]

LEXICON

resemblance; noun of liken.

likesouled *noun* [2473 isopsuchos] with similar emotions.

lilies *plural noun* [2918 krinon] plants possessing a bell-like blossom.

lily, trumpet *noun* **Shoshanna** *transliterated name* {7799 shoshanna} [4677 sousanna] lily, as a flower, or as an ornament; trumpet, from its lily shaped bell.

limp *verb* {6760 tsala} to limp; as one-sided.

limp, limping *noun* {6761 tsela}.

line *noun* {6957 qav} {6961 qaveh} a line for measuring.

line up, rank, appraise, apprise, arrange, array *verb* {6186 arak} to line up in a row; to put in order.

line, pang, boundary, cord *noun* {2256 chebel} literally, a rope; as a boundary line; as binding one in a pang.

linen *transliterated noun* [3043 linon] a thread or cloth made of flax.

linen (bleached) *noun* [4616 sindon] a cloth or clothing of linen that has been lightened by bleaching.

linen (white) *noun* {948 buwts} [1039 bussinos] [1040 bussos] made of flax.

linen (white), marble (white) *noun* {8336 shesh} white, as bleached.

linger *verb* {4102 mahahh} to question; to hesitate.

lintel *noun* [4947 mashqoph] an overhang.

lion *noun* {3918 layish} a lion, as a crusher, from his destructive blows.

lion (roaring) *noun* {3833 lebia, plural lebaim} {7826 shachal} a lion, as a roarer.

lioness (roaring) *noun* {3833 singular lebeoth, plural lebaoth} a female lion, as the fiercer.

lip (upper) *noun* {8222 sapham} as the place for hair.

lip, edge *noun* {8193 saphah} [5491 kilos] an edge; a shoreline; the physical lip; a language; **cp** tongue.

Liqchi *transliterated name* [3949 liqchiy] Learned.

litra *transliterated noun* [3046 litra] a measured weight.

little *noun* [4705 mitzar] little in size, or significance.

little owl, cup *noun* {3563 kowe} a cup; a little owl, from the cup-like cavity of its eye.

little, petty, shortly, bit, bit by bit, few *adjective, adverb* {4592 meat} diminutive; a few; a little.

little, pinky, younger, fewer, lesser *adjective* {6810 tsaor} {6995 qoten} {6996 qatan} less in age, number, size; little finger.

liturgist *transliterated noun* [3011 litourgos] one who ministers a religious service.

liturgize *transliterated verb* [3000 latruo] [3008 litourgeo] to minister a religious service.

liturgizing *transliterated adjective* [3010 litourgikos] of religious service.

liturgy *transliterated noun* [2999 latria] [3009 liturgia] religious service.

live beings *noun* [2423 cheva] [2226 zoon] as in animal sacrifices in Hebrews 13:11; of irrational blasphemers in 2 Petros 2:12 and Yah Hudah 10; of live beings who worship throughout the Apocalypse; **see** life; **see** live.

live *verb* [2418, 2421 chayah] {2425 chayay} [2198 zao] to live; to enliven; **see** life.

liver *noun* {3516 kated} the largest glandular organ of the body.

living areas, Havoth *noun* {2333 chavvah} a residential area; **see** life; **see** live.

lizard *noun* {8079 semamith} as being poisonous.

lizard, substance, force *noun* {3581 koach} {3981 maamats} pressure; physical, or intellectual; also a lizard.

Lo Ammi *transliterated name* [3818 loammi] Not My People.

Lo Debar *transliterated name* {3810 lodebar} Not Pastured.

Lo Ruchamah *transliterated name* {3819 loruchamah} Not Mercied.

load *noun* {5385 nesuah} a load, as bearing, or lifting.

load, burden, lade, laden *verb* {6006 amas} to load a load; to impose a burden.

load, spare, bear, lade, lift *verb* {5375 nacak} {5376 nesa} to lift, in a variety of applications.

loan *noun* [4859 mashshaah] a loan; **cp** interest.

loan, lend, ask {7592 shael} {7593 sheel} [154 aiteo] to inquire; to request or demand.

loathe, lothe *verb* [1602 gaal] [2092 zaham] {5354 naqat} {8374 taab} to dislike intensely.

loathe, lothe, cut off *verb* {6962 qut} {6990 qatat} literally, or figuratively, to be cut off.

Lochesh *transliterated name* {3873 lowchesh} Enchanter.

lock *noun* {4514 manul} {4515 manal} a bolt.

lock, shod, enclose, inclose *verb* {5274 naal} {7000 qatar} to fasten; **see** shoe.

locksmith, lockup *noun* {4525 mager} one that makes or services locks; a place of lockup.

locust *noun* [200 akris] as pointed; or as lightning on the top of vegetation.

locust, whirring, cymbal, harpoon *noun* {6767 tselatsal} a clattering, as of a cymbal; a whirring, as of wings; a rattling, as of a harpoon.

Lod *transliterated name* {3850 lod} [3069 ludda] meaning uncertain.

lodge *noun* [4411 malown] a restingplace; **see** hammock.

loft, exalt *verb* {7682 saqab} to lift high.

loft, raise, exalt, lift *verb* {7311, 7313 rum} {7318 romam} {7426 ramam} to lift hand, heart, offering, voice; to oath; **see** exalt.

lofty *participle* {8524 talal} to elevate.

logic *transliterated noun* [3053 logismos] reasoning.

logical *transliterated adjective* [3050 logikos] rational.

logomachize *transliterated verb* [3054 logomakeo] to dispute words.

logomachy *transliterated noun* [3055 logomakia] disputation of words.

loins *noun* {plural 2504 chalats} {dual 4975 mothen} {plural 3751 osphus} the lower parts of the back; symbolically the seat of reproductive vigor.

long, longing *verb* {16 ebeh} to breathe after.

look (around) (at) (away) *verb* {5027 nabat} {8159 shaah} to look at; to regard favorably.

look, appear *verb* {8259 shaqaph} [398 anaphainoman] to become apparent; to gaze; **see** manifest.

lookout *noun* {8260 sheqeph} {plural 8261 shaquph} peep hole to look through.

lookout tower *adjective, noun* {969 bachown} a high structure for guarding by looking.

loose, leap, lighten *verb* {5425 nathar} [242 hallomai] to leap; to loosen; to untie.

loose, leave off *verb* [447 anieemi] to loosen; to release.

loose, loosen up, slacken, let (down) (fall) (go) (loose) *verb* {7503 raphah} to slacken.

loose, release *verb* [3089 luo] to set free, unbind.

lop (off) *verb* {7082 qacac} {8456 tazaz} to whack off.

lop *verb* {5586 caaph} to detwig.

lord *noun* {1376 gebiyr} a dignitary; one who prevails mightily; **cp** lady.

lord, Lord *title, LORD name: see* SUMMARY ADONAY, ADONI, ADONIM: **see** SUMMARY YAH, YAH SHUA, YAH VEH.

lordship *noun* [2963 kuriotees] lord over; **see** lord.

lose *verb* [2210 zeemioo] to sustain damage; to suffer loss.

lose, lost, destroy, destruct *verb* {6 abad} {7 abad} [622 apollumi] to destroy fully.

lose, ruin, vanish, corrupt, destroy, destruct *verb* {6 abad} {7 abad} {8 obed} {7843 shachath} [622 apollumi] [1311 diapthiro] [2704 kataphthiro] [5351 phthiro] to corrupt through decay.

loss, lost *noun* {9 abedah} [2209 zeemia] loss; destruction.

Lot *transliterated name* {3876 lot} [3091 lot] Veiled.

lot *noun* [2819 kleeros] an object used for casting lots; that which is obtained by lot; an allotted portion.

lothing *noun* {1604 goal} intense dislike.

lotuses *plural noun* {6628 tselim} of the lotus tree, as being slender.

Loukas *transliterated name* [3065 loukas] perhaps Enlightener.

Loukia *transliterated name* [3073 loukia] perhaps Enlightenment.

Loukios *transliterated name* [3066 loukios] perhaps Enlightening.

love *noun* {160 ahabah} [26 agapee] a spiritual caring for, above and beyond that which is soulical, or physical; **cp** friend; **cp** eros.

love *verb* {157 ahah} {plural 158 ahah} {plural 159 ohab} [25 agapao] to care for spiritually, above and beyond that which is soulical, or physical; **cp** befriend; **cp** eros.

loves, uncle, beloved *noun* {1730 dod} literally, from the root, to boil; an extremely warm caring for; an uncle.

low, lower, lowly *adjective* {8215 shephal} {8217 shaphal} humiliating; depressed.

LEXICON

lower, abase *verb* {8213 shaphel} {8214 shephal} to humiliate.
lower, topple, descend *verb* {3381 yarad} to go lower; to tip over.
lowland *noun* {8218 shiplah} {8219 shephelah} a depression of land.
lowliness *noun* {8216 shephel} as in humility.
Lubiym *plural transliterated name* {3864 luwbiym} Of the interior of Africa.
Luchith *transliterated name* {3872 luwchiyth} Slab.
Lud *transliterated name* {3865 luwd} the meaning uncertain; the name of two nations.
Ludiy *transliterated name* {3866 luwdiy} Of Lud.
lump *noun* {1690 debelah} that which is pressed together; usually of figs.
lure, hunthold, lair *noun* {4679 metsudah} {4685 metsodah} {4686 matsudah} a hunter's hideout; a lair; a lure.
lurk *noun* {695 erab} {3993 maarab} {6660 tseidah} a place from which to lie in wait; an ambush.
lurk *verb* {693 arab} {696 oreb} {6658 tsadah} [1747 enedra] [1748 enedreno] [1749 enedron] to lie in wait; to ambush.
lurking *noun* {698 orobah} that which is gained by lying in wait.
Lush *transliterated name* {3889 luwsh} Kneading.
luxuriate, delight *verb* **delicate** *participle* {6026 anag} to be, or to become soft; to delight in; to deride.
luxurious *adjective* **luxury** *noun* {6027 oneg} in luxury.
lyric poem *noun* {7692 shiggayon} a rambling poem.

M

Ma Halal El *transliterated name* {4111 mahalalel} [3121 malaeeel] Halal of El.
Maad Yah *transliterated name* {4573 maadyah} Adorned of Yah.
Maaday *transliterated name* {4572 maaday} Adornment.
Maachah *transliterated name* {4601 maachah} Pinched.
Maachahiy *transliterated name* {4602 maachathiy} Of Maachah.
Maas *transliterated name* {4619 maats} Closure.
Maase Yah *transliterated name* {4641 maaseyah} Work of Yah.
Maaz Yah *transliterated name* {4590 maazyah} Recouped of Yah.
Mach Nadbay *transliterated name* {4367 machnadbay} What is Like a Volunteer?
Machalath *transliterated name* {4258 machalath} Sickness.
Machanayim *dual transliterated name* {4266 machanayim} Double Camp.
Machaneh Dan *transliterated name* {4265 machanehdan} Camp of Dan.
Machath *transliterated name* {4287 machath} Erasure.
Machaviym *plural transliterated name* {4233 machaviym} Of Machaveh.
Machazioth *plural transliterated name* {4238 machaziyowth} Visions.
Machbena *transliterated name* {4343 machbena} Hilly.
Machbeniy *transliterated name* {4344 machbannay} Of Machbena.
Machi *transliterated name* {4352 machiy} Impoverished.
machinate, fabricate *verb, participle* {2803, 2804 chashab} to interpenetate; to contrive; physically, to fabricate; mentally, to machinate.
machination, fabrication *noun* {2808 cheshbohn} {*plural* 2810 chishshabonh} {4284 machashebeth} a contrivance of machine, or mind.
Machir *transliterated name* {4353 machiy} Sell.
Machiriy *transliterated name* {4354 makchiryiy} Of Machir.
Machlah *transliterated name* {4244 machlah} Sickness.
Machli *transliterated name* {4249 machliy} Sick.
Machliy *transliterated name* {4250 machliy} Of Machli.
Machlon *transliterated name* {4248 machlown} Sick.
Machol *transliterated name* {4235 machowl} Round Dancing.
Machpelah *transliterated name* {4375 machpelah} Double.
Machse Yah *transliterated name* {4271 machceyah} Refuge of Yah.
Maday *transliterated name* {4074, 4075, 4076, 4077 maday} [3370 meedos] a country of central Asia.
madness *participle* {1947 holelah} {1948 holelooth} in the sense of folly.
Magdala *transliterated name* {4026 migdalah} [3093 magdala] Tower.
Magdalene *transliterated name* {4026 migdalah} [3094

magdalene] of Magdala.

Magdi El *transliterated name* {4025 magdiel} Precious of El.
maggot eaten *verb* [4662 skoleekobrotos] eaten by maggots.
maggot *noun* {7415 rimmah} [4663 skoleex] a wormlike larva.
maggot, scarlet *noun* {8438 tolaath} a wormlike larva; scarlet, the color of the maggot.
magi *plural, magus* *singular noun* {*plural* 2445 chakkim} [7248 rabmag] [3097 magos] a title of wise ones; and in Acts 13: 6, 8 of sorcerers.
magnificent *adjective* **magnificently** *adverb* [3171 megalos] [3176 megistos] very great.
magnify *verb* [3170 megaluno] to extol; to greatness.
Magog *transliterated name* {4031 magog} [3098 magog] a northern region of prophecy; **read** Yechezq El 38:2, 39:6; **cp** Gog.
Magor Mis Sabib *transliterated name* {4036 magowrmiccabiyb} Terror Round About.
Magpi Ash *transliterated name* {4047 magpiyash} Smiter of Herbage.
Maharay *transliterated name* {4121 maharay} Hasty.
maid *noun* {519 amah} {8198 shiphchah} [1399 doulee] female servant.
maiden *noun* {7361 rachamah} [2877 korasion] an unmarried woman.
maimed *participle* {7038 qalat} [376 anapeeros] castrated; crippled.
maintain, measure, sustain, contain *verb* {3557 kuwl} to keep in.
majesty *noun* **majestic** *adjective* {1925 heder} {1926 hadar} [1927 hadarah] [3168 megaliootees] [3169 megaloprepees] [3172 megalosunee] greatness; splendor.
make, do *verb* {6466 paal} [4160 poieo] to assemble; to practice; to perform; **cp** create.
make, serve, do, keep *verb* {5648 abad} in the sense of serving.
Malachi *transliterated name* {4401 malachiy} Angel.
male *noun* {2138 zakur} {2145 zakar} [730 arreen] the species that fertilizes the female, whether human, animal, or plant.
malice *noun* {2549 kakia} ill will.
Malkam, Milkom *transliterated name* {4445 malkam, milkown} the meaning uncertain; the national idol of the Ammoniy.
Malki El *transliterated name* {4439 malkiyel} Sovereign of El.
Malki Eliy *transliterated name* {4440 malkiyeliy} Of Malki El.
Malki Ram *transliterated name* {4443 malkiyram} Sovereign of Exaltation.
Malki Sedeq *transliterated name* {4442 malkiytsedeq} [3198 melkisedek] Sovereign of Justness; sovereign of the Sadoq priesthood.
Malki Shua *transliterated name* {4444 malkiyshuwa} Sovereign of Salvation.
Malki Yah *transliterated name* {4441 malkiyah} Sovereign of Yah.
mallet *noun* {4650 mephiyts} an instrument that breaks.
Malluch *transliterated name* {4409 malluwch} Reigned.
mammon *transliterated noun* [3126 mammonas] avarice.
mammy *transliterated noun* [3125 mamme] granny.
man *noun* {376 iysh} {582 enosh} {606 enosh} [435 aneer] the human male adult; **cp** woman; **cp** human.
Manachath *transliterated name* {4506 manachath} Rest.
manager *noun* [2012 epitropos] one in charge of.
mandate *noun* {7595 sheela} the decision of an asking.
mandate, census *noun* **specified** *adjective* {4662 miphqad} an enumeration; a designated spot; an order, or command.
mandrake *noun* {1736 duwday} an herb, considered to be aphrodesiac.
maneh *transliterated noun* {4488 maneh} a measure.
manger *noun* {18 ebuwc} a foddering place.
manifest *adjective* [5318 phaneros] apparent.
manifestation *noun* [5321 phanerosis] [5324 phantazomai] an exhibition; a spectacle.
manifestation *noun* {8544 temunah} from species {4327 miyn} a specification.
manifested *verb* [5319 phaneroo] to render apparent.
manifestly *adverb* [5320 phaneros] clearly; openly.
manipulate, capture *verb* {8610 taphas} to manipulate; to seize with the hands; to use without warrant.
manly *adjective* {377 iysh} [407 andrizomai] to behave in manner of a man.
manna *transliterated noun* {4478 man} literally, a whatever.

LEXICON

Manoach *transliterated name* {4495 manowach} Rest.

manse *noun* {1964, 1965 heykal} usually mistranslated temple or palace; a large house for rulers, and also for Yah Veh; **see** tabernacle; **cp** nave; **cp** priestal precinct.

manslayer *noun* {409 androphonos} one who slays man.

mantle (mighty) *noun* {145 eder} {155 adaereth} a covering as symbolic of authority, power.

mantle *noun* {plural 4254 mechalatsah} {4594 maateh} {plural 4595 maataphah} {4598 meiy} {plural 5622 carbal} {4018 peribolaion} a covering, as easily stripped off.

manure *noun* {1828 domen} **cp** dung.

many, mighty, more, much *adjective* {3524 kabbiyr} vast.

many, mighty, much, very, exceeding, greatly, increasing *adjective* {7689, 7690 saggii} superlatively mighty, or large.

Maoch *transliterated name* {4582 maowch} Pierced.

Maon *transliterated name* {4584 maown} Habitation.

Maoniyim *plural transliterated name* {4586 meuwniy} Of Maon.

Maqas *transliterated name* {4739 maqats} End.

Maqheloth *plural transliterated name* {4722 maqheloth} Congregations.

Maqqedah *transliterated name* {4719 maqqedah} Branded.

maranatha {3134 maran atha} our Adonay comes.

marble (white), linen (white) *noun* {8336 shesh} white, as bleached.

march, anklet *noun* {685 etsadah} {6807 tseadah} a pacing; an ornament of that which paces; an ankle chain.

mare *noun* {7424 rammak} a brood mare.

Mareshah *transliterated name* {4762 mareshah} Summit.

mark, tattoo, brand *verb* {8427, 8428 tavah} to mark an animal; to mark an x or + as a signature of an illiterate, or to mark for protection.

mark, tattoo, brand, etching *noun* {7085 qaaqa} {8420 tab} {5480 karagma} a scratched marking; a mark on animals; an x or a + as a signature of an illiterate; a mark of protection; **read** Yechezq El 9:4-6; **read** Apocalypse 13:16,17, 14:9-11, 15:2, 16:2, 19:20, 20:4; **cp** brand.

market (for) kernels *verb* {7666 shabar} to aquire kernels at the market; **see** kernels.

market *noun* {5801 izzabon} {58 agora} a place to market, to purchase; **see** forum.

market *verb* {59 agorazo} {1805 exagorazo} to market in the sense of purchasing; Yah Shua marketed us to Elohim with His blood; Apocalypse 5:9.

Markos *transliterated name* {3138 markos} the meaning uncertain.

marriage *noun* {1062 gamos} the holy ritual wherein one man and one woman become one flesh.

married, mastered, baal *transliterated noun* {1167 baal} {1169 beel} one who masters; one who is mastered.

marrow *noun* {4221 moach} {3452 muelos} the tissue within the bone; fat.

marrowed *verb* {4229 machah} to fatten.

marry off *verb* {1547 ekgamizo} {1548 ekgamiskomai} to give in marriage.

marry, master, baal *verb* {transliteration 1166 baal} [1060 gameo] [1918 epigambroo] literally, baal means to be mastered; the ritual of one man and one woman becoming one flesh.

marsh, rush *noun* {98 agam} {99 agem} {100 agmone} a stagnant water, or that which grows therefrom.

Martha *transliterated name* {3136 martha} possibly Minister, in the sense of serving.

marvel *noun* {4652 miphlaah} {8540 temahh} a consternation; a miracle; a wonder.

marvel *verb* **marvels** *noun* **marvelous** *adjective* {6381 pala} {6382 pele} {6383 pali} [2295 thauma] [2297 thaumasios] [2298 thaumastos] an amazing miraculous sight.

marvel *verb* {8429 tevahh} {8539 tamahh} [2296 thaumazo] to be in consternation at the miraculous sight of.

Masay *transliterated name* {4640 masay} Workable.

masculine garment *noun* {7897 shith} a masculine garment, as being put on.

Masreqah *transliterated name* {4957 masreqah} Vineyard.

massage *verb* {4799 marach} to soften by rubbing.

Massah *transliterated name* **testing** *noun* {4531 maccah} Testing.

mast *noun* {8650 toren} a pole as a mast.

master *noun* {1397 geber} {1399 gebar} {1400 gebar} {1401 gibbar} one who prevails in power; **cp** mistress.

master *noun* {4756 marah} one that dominates.

master, baal, marry *verb* {transliteration 1166 baal} [1060 gameo] [1918 epigambroo] literally, baal means to be mastered; the ritual of one man and one woman becoming one flesh.

mastered, baal, married *transliterated noun* {1167 baal} {1169 beel} one who masters; one who is mastered.

mataeologist *transliterated noun* [3151 mataiologos] a babbler of words.

mataeology *transliterated noun* [3150 mataiologia] vain, unprofitable discourse or inquiry.

matricide *noun* [3389 meetraloes] mother murder.

matrix *noun* {4866 mishber} [3388 meetra] the mothering organ.

matrix, womb, belly *noun* {990 beten} {1512 gachon} {3770 kereb} {4579 meah} {6896 qabab} {6897 qobah} {6898 qubbah} {7356 racham} {7358 rechem} [2836 koilia] the interior; a cavity as hollow; the abdominal cavity; sometimes refers to the womb.

matsah *transliterated noun* {4682 matstsah} [106 azumos] unfermented bakery.

Mattan *transliterated name* {4977 mattan} [3157 matthan] Gift.

Mattatha *transliterated name* [3160 mattatha] form of Gift of Yah.

Mattattah *transliterated name* {4992 mattattah} form of Gift of Yah.

Mattenay *transliterated name* {4982 mattenay} Gift.

Matthaios *transliterated name* [3156 matthaios] form of Gift of Yah.

Matthat *transliterated name* [3158 matthat] form of Gift of Yah.

Matthias *transliterated name* [3159 matthias] form of Gift of Yah.

Mattith Yah *transliterated name* {4993 mattithyah} [3161 mattathias] Gift of Yah.

maturity *noun* {3624 kelach} to be fully finished.

may, might *auxiliary verbs* these auxiliary verbs are not in the manuscripts. So they are either italicised or omitted in the exeGesés parallel BIBLE. **cp** shall, should; will, would.

Mayim Meribah/Waters of Strife *plural transliterated name* {4325 mayim, 4809 meriybah} Waters of Strife.

Mayim Nephtoach/Waters of Nephtoach *plural transliterated name* {4325 mayim, 5318 nephtowach} Waters of a Spring; **see** Nephtoach.

Me Hay Yarqon *transliterated name* {4313 meyhayyarqon} Waters of the Pale Green.

Me Zahab *transliterated name* {4314 meyzahab} Waters of Gold.

meadow *noun* {3741 karah} a grassland.

meadow, ram, saddle *noun* {3733 kar} literally, plumpness, as in a full grown lamb; padding, as in a saddle; a meadow for sheep.

measure *noun* {4884 mesurah} a liquid measure.

measure *verb* {4058 madad} to fit; to size up.

measure, measurement, tailoring *noun* {4060 middah} {4067 madown} {plural 4461 memadim} size.

measure, sustain, contain, maintain *verb* {3557 kuwl} to keep in.

Mebunnay *transliterated name* {4012 mebunnay} Built Up.

Mechida *transliterated name* {4240 mechiyda} Propound.

Mechir *transliterated name* {4243 mechiyr} Price.

Mecholathiy *transliterated name* {4259 mecholathiy} Of Abel Mecholah.

Mechuya El *transliterated name* {4232 mechuyael} Erased of El.

Medatha *transliterated name* {4099 medatha} the meaning uncertain; the father of Haman.

mediate *verb* [3315 mesituo] to be in the middle of persons, usually to resolve differences.

mediator *noun* [3316 mesitees] one who is in the middle of persons, usually to resolve differences.

meditate *verb* {7742 suwach} {7878 siyach} to muse pensively; to ponder.

meditate, mutter *verb* {1897 hagah} to contemplate upon; to utter in a low voice.

meditation *noun* {1899 hegeh} {1900 haguth} {1901 hagig} {1902 higgayon} {7808 seach} {7879 siyach} {7881 siachah} a pensive musing; a pondering.

meet *verb* {6298 pagash} to contact; **cp** reach.

LEXICON

meet, confront *verb* {7122 qara} {7125 qirah} to encounter.

mega *adjective* [3173 megas] great.

Megiddo *transliterated name* {4023 megiddo, megiddon} Troop; in the New Covenant, it is transliterated with the prefix, Har, as in Armageddon; the Valley of Troops; **read** Apocalypse 16:16.

Mehetab El *transliterated name* {4105 mehetabel} Well—pleased of El.

Mecherahiy *transliterated name* {4382 mecherathiy} Of Mecherah.

Mechonah *transliterated name* {4368 mechonah} Base.

Melech *transliterated name* {4428, 4429 melech} [3124 malchos] [3197 melchil] Sovereign.

melech *transliterated title* {4428 melech} {4430 melech} sovereign.

melt *verb* {4549 macac} to liquify.

melt, dissolve *verb* {4127 muwg} to soften; to dissipate.

melt, dissolve, flow *verb* {4529 masah} to dissolve.

melt, pour *verb* {5413 nathak} to flow; to liquify.

melt away *adjective* {4523 mac} as in pining away.

member *noun* [3196 melos] a body part.

members *noun* {5409 nethach} parts of a body, human or animal.

memorial *noun* {234 azkarah} {2143 zeker} {2146 zikron} [3422 mneemosunon] a remembrance.

memorialize, remember *verb* {2142 zakar} {7876 shayah} [3403 mimeeskoma] [3415 mnaomai] [3421 mneemonuo] [5279 hupomimneesko] an acting of the memory; to hold in remembrance.

Memuchan *transliterated name* {4462 memuwchan} the meaning uncertain; a Persian satrap.

men, few, few men *plural noun* {4962 mathim} **see** Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament, 1263.

men subduers *noun* [405 andrapodistees] they that bring men to their feet.

Menachem *transliterated name* {4505 menachem} Sigh.

Menash Sheh *transliterated name* {4519 menashsheh} [3128 manassees] Forgetful.

Menash Shiy {4520 menashshiy} Of Menash Sheh.

menorah *transliterated noun* {4501 menorah} {5043 nebresha} [3087 luchnia] the holy candelabrum with seven candles.

menstrual *plural adjective* {5708 ed} as of a woman's period.

menstruate *verb* {1738 dahvah} to be sick, as in menstruation; **cp** bleed.

menstruation *adjective* {1739 dahveh} **cp** bleed.

Meonothay *plural transliterated name* {4587 meownothay} Habitations.

Mephi Bosheth *transliterated name* {4648 mephiybosheth} Dispeller of Shame.

Merayah *transliterated name* {4811 merayah} Rebellion.

Merayoth *transliterated name* {4812 merayowth} Rebellions.

merchandise *noun* {4627 maarab} {plural 4728 maqqechoth} {4819 markoleth} articles of exchange.

merchandise *noun* {7404 rekullah} that which a merchant peddles.

merchandise *verb, palpitate* *verb* **merchant** *participle* {5503 cachar} to peddle; a peddler (pedlar); to merchandise by travelling; to pound.

merchandise, merchant *noun* {5504, 5505 cachar} {5506 cechorah} that which is peddled; a peddler (pedlar).

merchandising *noun* {4536 micchar} buying and selling.

merchant *noun* **Kanaan** *transliterated name* {3667 kenaan} [5477 chanaan] merchant; made to bend the knee; humiliated; name of a person; name of a land.

merchant *noun* {7402 rachal} an itinerant trader; a peddler (pedlar).

mercies *noun* {7356 racham} {plural 7356 rachamim} {7359 rechem} [1654 eleemosunee] compassions; retributions withheld.

merciful, mercied *adjective* {2623 chacid} {7349 rachum} {7362 rachmani} [1655 eleemon] [3741 hosios] compassionate.

mercifully *adverb* [3743 hosios] compassionately.

mercy *noun* [1656 eleos] [3742 hosiotees] compassion; a retribution withheld.

mercy *noun* {2617 checed} literally, a bowing of the neck in kindness.

mercy *verb* {7355 racham} [1653 eleeo] to give mercy; to be mercied; to give compassion; to withhold retribution.

mercy, shame *verb* {2616 chaced} literally, to bow the neck in

kindness; to reprove.

Meri Baal *transliterated name* {4810 meriybaal} Rebellion of Baal.

Merib Baal *transliterated name* {4807 meribbaal} Strife of Baal.

Meribah *transliterated name* {4809 meribah} Strife.

Merodach Bel Adoni *transliterated name* {4757 merodachbaladan} a sovereign.

Merodach *transliterated name* {4781 merodach} an idol.

Meshach *transliterated name* {4335, 4336 meyshach} the meaning uncertain; the Babel name of Misha El.

Meshech *transliterated name* {4902 meshech} Sowing.

Meshelem Yah *transliterated name* {4920 meshelemyah} Shalom of Yah.

Meshezab El *transliterated name* {4898 meshezabel} Liberated of El.

Mesoba Yah *transliterated name* {4677 metsobayah} Found of Yah.

Messiah *transliterated title* **anointed** *noun* {4899 mashiach} {5547 christos} anointed; Messiah is a transliteration of the Hebrew mashiach, and a translation of the Hellene christos; Yah Shua Messiah is the Anointed of Yah Veh; **see** Messias; **note:** the *exeGes parallel BIBLE* indicates whenever Messiah is preceded by the article, as in "the Messiah".

Messianists *title* {4899 mashiach} {5546 kristianos} of the Messiah; all who trust in the Messiah.

Messias *transliterated title* [3323 messias] the Hellene transliteration of the Hebrew, Messiah; **see** Messiah.

metamorphose *transliterated verb* [3339 metamorphoomai] to change from one form to another; only in Matthaïos 17:2, Markos 9:2, Romans 12:2, 2 Corinthians 3:18; **see** form; **cp** transfigure.

meteorite *noun* [1356 diopetees] a body which has fallen from the heavens.

Methu Shelach *transliterated name* {4968 methushelach} [3103 mathousala] Man of Security; Man of Spear.

Methusha El *transliterated name* {4967 methushael} Man of El.

Mi Yamin *transliterated name* {4326 miyamin} From the Right.

Mibchar *transliterated name* {4006 mibchar} Choice.

Mibsar *transliterated name* {4014 mibtsar} Fortified.

Michah El *transliterated name* {4317 michahel} [3413 mikaeel] Who is Like unto El; or, O That El.

Michah *transliterated name* {4316, 4318 michah} Who is Like; or, O That.

Michah Yah *transliterated name* {4319 michahuw} {4320 miychayah} {4321 michayehuw} {4322 michayahuw} Who is Like unto Yah; or, O That Yah.

Michal *transliterated name* {4324 michal} Streamlet.

Michmash *transliterated name* {4363 michmash} Stored.

Michmethath *transliterated name* {4366 michmethath} Concealment.

Michri *transliterated name* {4381 michriy} Sell.

mid, middle, pupil *noun* {380 iyshown} literally, the middle man of the eye; the middle of the night.

middle *adjective* {8484 tikon} central.

middle, midst, within, among, inward *noun* {7130 qereb} {8432 tavek} the nearest part; the center.

midheaven *noun* [3321 mesouraneema] in the middle of the heavens.

midnight *noun* [3317 mesonuktion] the moment between two consecutive days.

midst, within, among, inward, middle *noun* {7130 qereb} {8432 tavek} the nearest part; the center.

Midyan *transliterated name* {4080 midyan} [3099 madian] Contentious; a son of Abraham.

Midyaniy, Midyaniym *transliterated name* {4084 midyaniy} {plural 4092 medyaniym} Of Midyan.

mid-, midst, half *preposition* {2676 chatsoth} {2677 chetsiy} {4275 mechetsah} {4276 machatsith} among; a half of a whole; the middle of.

Migdal Eder *transliterated name* {4029 migdaleder} Tower of Doves.

Migdal El *transliterated name* {4027 migdalel} Tower of El.

Migdal Gad *transliterated name* {4028 migdalgad} Tower of Troops.

Migdol *transliterated name* **tower** *noun* {4024 migdol} {4026 migdal} tower; a place in Misrayim.

might *noun* {353 eyal} {360 eyaluth} {1369, 1370 geburah} {6108 otsem} {6109 otsmah} {plural 6110 atstsumah} [2479 iskus] authority; power.

LEXICON

mighty *noun* {193 uwl} {352 ayil} strong; powerful.

mighty *verb* {142 adar} to be great.

mighty, mighted, mightier, mightily, craunch bone *verb* {6105 atsam} to become mighty; to be powerful; to be numerous; to overpower a bone.

mighty, mightier *adjective* {47 abbiyr} {117 addiyr} {1368 gibbor} {6099 atsum} {8623, 8624 taqqiph} {2478 iskuros} mighty; powerful; **see** Almighty.

mighty, mightily *adverb* {3966 meod} sometimes duple.

mighty, more, much, many *adjective* {3524 kabbiyr} vast.

mighty, much, very, exceeding, greatly, increasing, many *adjective* {7689, 7690 saggiiy} superlatively mighty, or large.

mighty diviner *noun* {148 adargazer} mighty prognosticator.

mighty enough *adjective* {2480 iskuo} to have, or exercise force.

mighty mantle *noun* {145 eder} {155 adaereth} a covering as symbolic of authority, power.

mighty oaks *noun* {436 elown} a forest of strong oaks.

migrate *verb* {6813 tsaan} to load up.

Milalay *transliterated name* {4450 milaly} Utter.

Milchah *transliterated name* {4435 milchah} Sovereigness.

millstone (upper), chariot *noun* {4817 merkab} {4818 merkabah} {7393 rekeb} {7396 rikbah} {7398 rekub} a vehicle; a rider; **cp** millstones.

millstones dual *noun* {7347 rekeh} an upper and a lower millstone, as used to mill grain.

Min Yamin *transliterated name* {4509 minyamiyn} From the Right.

mina *transliterated noun* {3414 mna} a Latin coin of a hundred weight.

mind *noun* [1271 dianoyia] [1771 ennoia] [1963 epinoia] [3563 nous] that mental facility of the spirit which remembers, and wills.

mingle, mix up, fodder *verb* {1101 balal} to mix together; to mix up; **see** Beli Yaal; **see** comingle.

mingle, pledge, comingle *verb* {6148 arab} to become colateral.

minister *noun* [1249 diakonos] one who serves.

minister *verb* {8120 shemash} {8334 sharath} [1247 kiakoneo] to serve.

ministry *noun* {8335 shareth} [1248 diakonia] the serving; the service.

Miqloth *transliterated name* {4732 miqlowth} Staffs.

Miqne Yah *transliterated name* {4737 miqneyah} Chattel of Yah.

mirage *noun* {8273 sharab} a mirage, as glaring.

Mirmah *transliterated name* {4821 mirmah} Defraud.

mirror *noun* {7209 reiy} that which reflects that which is seen.

Miryam *transliterated name* {4813 miryam} [3137 mariam] Rebellious; the true transliteration of Mary.

miscarriage *noun* {5309 nephel} as having fallen.

mischievous *noun* {205 aven} {611 acown} {plural 8383 teunim} harm; hurt.

Misha El *transliterated name* {4332, 4333 mishael} Who is Like unto El; or: O That El.

mislead, deceive *verb* {5377 nasha} {7952 shalah} to lead astray; to wrong.

misleading *noun* {7955 shalah} {7960 shaluw} wrongful.

Mispeh *transliterated name* {4708 mitspeh} {4709 mitspah} Watchtower.

Misrayim *transliterated name* {4713 mitsriy} {dual 4714 mitsrayim} [124 aiguptos] [125 aiguptos] **note:** Misrayim of the Old Covenant is translated to Egypt in the New Covenant.

Misrephoth Mayim *plural transliterated name* {4956 misrephowthmayim} Calcinations/Cremations of Water.

missile *noun* [956 belos] [1002 bolis] as a spear, or arrow.

mistress *noun* {1404 gebereth} feminine of {1376 gebiyr} {1400 gebar}.

mistress *noun* {7694, 7695 shegal} one that copulates with.

mistress *transliterated title* {1172 baalah} feminine of {1167 baal}.

mistress of mistresses *noun* {7705 shiddah} a woman of the house.

misvah *verb* {6680 tsavah} [1781 entellomai] the Hebrew is from the noun misvah; **see** misvah *noun*.

misvah, plural misvoth *transliterated noun* {4687 mitsvah} {6673 tsav} [1785 entolee] [1778 entalma] a command; commandments; **see** command *verb*.

Mithqah *transliterated name* {4989 mithqah} Sweetness.

mix *verb* {4537 macak} as a cocktail.

mix up, fodder, mingle *verb* {1101 balal} to mix together; to mix up; **see** Beli Yaal; **see** comingle.

mixture *noun* {4538 mecek} a cocktail.

Moad Yah *transliterated name* {4153 moadyah} Congregation of Yah.

mock *verb* {2048 hathal} to deride.

mockers *plural noun* {2049 hathollim} deriders.

moist *adjective* {7373 ratob} moist with sap.

moist *verb* {7372 ratob} to wetten.

moisten, rain *verb* [1026 breko] to moisten by a shower.

moisten, wet, butler, drink (give), drown *verb* {8248 shaqah} {8257 shaga} to butler, as a bartender; to drink to quench thirst; to drink unto drowning; to cause to be wet.

moistened, moisture, butlership, drinking *noun* {4945 mashqeh} to cause to be moistened, or drunken.

moisture, drink *noun* {8249 shiqquw} {8250 shiqquw} a beverage.

molars *plural noun* {4973 methalleah} literally, biters.

mold *verb* [4111 plasso] to form by molding.

molded *noun* [4110 plasma] the product that was formed by molding.

Molech *transliterated name* {4432 molech} Sovereign; an Ammoniy deity.

Molecheth *transliterated name* {4447 molecheth} Reigned.

molten *noun* {4541 maccekah} that which has been cast by a molten metal.

momentary *noun* [3910 parautika] at that very instant.

mongrel *noun* {4464 mamzer} one born of parents of different races; **cp** bastard.

mongrel, woof *noun* {6154 ereb} a crossed race of persons; the transverse threads.

monolith, stump *noun* {4676 matstsebah} {4678 matstsebeth} a singular block of stone.

monster *noun* {8565 tan} {plural 8568 tannoth} {8577 tannim} [2785 keetos] a malformed and/or huge animal.

month *noun* {3393 yerach} [3376 men] the period between two new moons; **see** month, moon (new).

month, moon (new) *noun* {2320 chodesh} [3561 noumeenia] a period of time from which events were scheduled; **see** month.

monument *noun* {6725 tsiun} any substance to memorialize.

moon (full) *noun* {3677 keceh} its festival.

moon, month *noun* {3391 yerach} {3393 yerach} {3394 yareach} {3842 lebanah} [4582 seleenee] the sign in the heavens by which seasons are measured; the body in the heavens which reflects the sun; known as the lesser light; **cp** new moon.

Mordechay *transliterated name* {4782 mordechay} meaning uncertain.

more, much, many, mighty *adjective* {3524 kabbiyr} vast.

Moresheithy *transliterated name* {4183 morashiy} Of Moresheh Gath.

Mori Yah *transliterated name* {4179 moriyah} Seen of Yah.

morning (early) *noun* {1242 boqer} [4404 proi] [4407 proinos] the first part of daylight.

morology *transliterated noun* [3473 morologia] silly words.

morphosis *transliterated noun* [3446 morphosis] form; figure; **cp** metamorphose.

morrow (the), tomorrow *noun* {4279 machar} [4283 mochorath] [839 aurion] [1887 epaurion] the following day.

morsel *noun* {6595 path} a bit.

mortal *adjective* [2349 thneetos] subject to death.

mortar, chomer, heap *transliterated noun* {2563 chomer} a dry measure as mixed, or heaped.

Mosa *transliterated name* {4162 mowsta} Proceeding.

Mosah *transliterated name* {4681 motsah} Wrung.

Moserah, plural Moseroth *transliterated name* {4149 mowcerah, mocerowth} Band(s).

Mosheh *transliterated name* {4872, 4873 mosheh} [3475 moseus, mooses, mouses] Drawn (as from the water).

moth *noun* {5580 cac} {6211 ash} an insect known for eating cloth.

motheaten *verb* {6244 ashash} eaten by moths.

mother *noun* {517 em} [3384 meeteer] a female parent.

mother in law *noun* {2545 chamoth} [3994 penthera] the mother of a man's woman, or a woman's man.

motherless *noun* [282 ameetor] without mother; possibly, unmothered.

moulding *noun* {2213 zer} a border.

mound, hemorrhoid *noun* {2914 techor} a rising of earth; a

LEXICON

rising by inflammation.

mound, mount *noun* {5550 solelah} as raised.

mount, mountain *noun* {2022 har} {2042 harar} {3714 orinos} {3735 oros} a high landmass.

mount, regurgitate, ascend, holocaust *verb* {5927, 5928 alah} to ascend, as a mountain; to mount an animal; to regurgitate food; to ascend a holocaust; **see** holocaust, *noun*.

Mount El *noun, name* {2025 harel} Mount of El.

mourn *verb* {578 anah} to lament through groaning.

mourning *noun* {8386 taaniyah} a lamenting.

mouth *noun* {6310 peh} {6433 pum} {4750 stoma} in the sense of edge.

much, many, mighty, more *adjective* {3524 kabbiyr} vast.

much, very, exceeding, greatly, increasing, many, mighty *adjective* {7689, 7690 saggiy} superlatively mighty, or large.

muffle *verb* {3813 lahat}.

Multitude of Gog *noun, name* {1996 hamongog} Multitude of Gog.

murder *noun* {7524 retsach} the killing of a person with malice aforethought; **cp** slaughter.

murder *verb* {7523 ratsach} to kill of a person with malice aforethought; **cp** slaughter.

murderer *noun* {443 anthropoktonos} one that kills a person with malice aforethought; **cp** slaughter.

murmurings *plural noun* {8519 telunnoth} grumblings.

mustard *noun* {4615 sinapi} a plant which grows from a very small seed to a remarkable size; refers to a small quantity which becomes great.

muster, oversee, visit *verb* {6485 paqad} to visit with friendly intent, to oversee; or to visit with hostile intent, to take care of; to muster for display.

muster, oversee, oversight, visitation *noun* {6486 pequddah} a visit with friendly intent, to oversee; or a visit with hostile intent, to take care of; a muster for display.

mute *noun* {482 elem} a silenced one.

mute, tie *verb* {481 alam} as in silencing by tying the tongue, or lips; tying bundles.

Muth, Muth Labben *transliterated name* {4192 muwth, muwthlabben} To Die for the Son.

mutilator *verb* {2699 katatomee} cutter; one who would go beyond circumcision.

mutter, meditate *verb* {1897 hagah} to contemplate upon; to utter in a low voice.

muzzle *noun* {4269 machcown} a muzzle.

myriads *noun* {7233 rebabah} {plural 7239 ribboth} {7240 ribbo} {3461 murias} {3463 murioi} an innumerable abundance; the number of ten thousand.

myriads (abound by the) *verb* {7231 rabab} to multiply by the myriads.

myrrh (tincture of) *transliterated noun* {4669 smurnizomai} a myrrh concentrate.

myrrh *transliterated noun* {3910 lot} {4753 mowr} {3464 muron} {4666 smurna} an anointing ointment.

myrrh *transliterated verb* {3462 murizo} to anoint with myrrh.

mystery *noun* {7328 raz} that which is hidden.

myth *transliterated noun* {3454 muthos} a religious legend.

N

Naaman *transliterated name* {5283 naaman} {3497 neeman} Pleasant.

Naamaniy *transliterated name* {5280 naamiy} Of Naaman.

Naarah *transliterated name* {5292 naarah} Lass.

Naaray *transliterated name* {5293 naaray} Youthful.

Nachali El *transliterated name* {5160 nachaliyel} Wadi of El; **see** wadi.

Nacham *transliterated name* {5163 nacham} Consolation.

Nachamani *transliterated name* {5167 nachamaniy} Consolatory.

Nachash *transliterated name* {5176 nachash} Serpent.

Nachath *transliterated name* {5184 nachath} Rest.

Nachbi *transliterated name* {5147 nachbiy} Hide.

Nachor *transliterated name* {5152 nachowr} {3493 nachor} Snorer.

Nachray *transliterated name* {5171 nachray} Snorter.

Nachshon *transliterated name* {5177 nachshon} {3476 naasson} Prognosticator.

Nachum *transliterated name* {5151 nachuwum} {3486 naoum} Comfortable.

nail *noun* {6856 tsipporen} the nail of a finger; a nail, as being pointy, for scratching.

Nain *transliterated name* {3484 nain} Home.

naked *adjective* {1131 gumnos} unclothed; scantily or poorly clothed.

naked, nakedness *adjective* {5903 eyrom} {6174 arom} nudity; partial, or total.

naked, nakedness *noun* {4626 maar} {plural 4636 maaromim} {6172 ervah} {6173 arvah} that which is stripped bare.

naked, nude *noun* {6181 eryah} stripped.

naked (be) *verb* {1130 gumneetuomai} to be stripped; to be scantily clothed.

naked tree *noun* {6176 arar} a tree, as stripped.

nakedness *noun* {1132 gumnotees} want of clothing, nakedness of the body.

nakednesses *noun* {plural 6169 arahoth} plots of land that are stripped bare.

Nachon *transliterated name* {5225 nachown} Prepared.

name *noun* {8034 shem} {3686 onoma} {5122 tounoma} a title by which a person is distinguished.

name *verb* {3687 onomazo} to bestow a title.

Naphtali *transliterated name* {5321 naphtali} {3508 nephtalim} Wrestler.

Naphtuchim *transliterated name* {5320 naphtuchiyim} the meaning uncertain.

Narcissus *transliterated name* {3488 narkissos} Erotic.

nard *transliterated noun* {5373 nerd} {3487 nardos} an aromatic anointing ointment.

narrowness *noun* {4164 muwtsaq} a pressing in.

narrows, straits, confines, distress *noun* {4689 matsoq} {4691 metsuqah} {4712 metsar} from the root, belly; a narrow place; a confinement.

Nathan *transliterated name* {5416 nathan} {3481 nathan} Given.

Nathan Melech *transliterated name* {5419 nathanmelech} Given of the Sovereign.

nation *noun* {523, 524 ummah} {3816 leom} a people united by a government; **cp** goyim; **cp** people.

nature *noun* {5449 phusis} the natural according to physics.

naught, aught *noun* {3972 meumah} {3361 me} {3762 oudeis, oudemia, ouden} nil; several words, and combinations of words are used to indicate nil; these include the double negative, not aught, which the *exeGes* *parallel BIBLE* renders as naught.

nave; see SUMMARY: HOLY, HOLIES, HALLOW:

navel *noun* {8270 shor} {8306 sharir} {8326 shorer} the umbilicus of the body.

navesweeper *noun* {3511 neokoros} one who sweeps the nave.

Navith *transliterated name* {5121 navyth} Habitation.

Nazarene *transliterated name* {3479 nazareenos} {3480 nazoraiois} of Nazareth; **cp** Separatist.

Nazareth *transliterated name* {3478 nazareth} derivation uncertain; not to be confused with Old Covenant separatist vow of separation.

Neapolis *transliterated name* {3496 neapolis} New City.

near, nearby, neighbor, nigh *adjective* {7138 qarob} near in place, kindred, or time.

Near Yah *transliterated name* {5294 nearyah} Lad of Yah.

Nebayoth *plural transliterated name* {5032 nebayowth} Fruitfulness.

Nebukadnets Tsar *transliterated name* {5019, 5020 nebukadnettsar} a Tsar of Babel.

Nebushazban *transliterated name* {5021 nebuwshazban} the meaning uncertain; Nebukadnets Tsar's chief eunuch.

necessary, dependant *adjective* {316 anankaios} needed; depend upon.

necessity, need *noun* {318 anankee} distress.

Nechem Yah *transliterated name* {5166 nechemyah} Consolation of Yah.

Nechlamiy *transliterated name* {5161 nechelamiy} Dreamed; Of Nechlam.

Nechum *transliterated name* {5149 nechuwum} Sighed Over.

Nechushta *transliterated name* {5179 nechushta} Copper.

Nechushtan *transliterated name* {5180 nechushtan} Copper.

neck *noun* {1621 gargeroth} {4665 miphreketh} {6203 oreph} {6676, 6677 tsavvar} {5137 trakeelos} the part connecting the head to the body.

necklace *noun* {2002 hamniyk} necklace or neck chain.

necromancer *noun* {178 ob} {plural 328 atim} one who communicates with the dead.

necrosis *transliterated noun* {3500 nekrosis} decease.

LEXICON

necro-, **deathify**, **die** *verb* {4191 muth} [2289 thanatoo] to die; to put to death.

Nedab Yah *transliterated name* {5072 nedabayah} Volunteer of Yah.

need, **necessity** *noun* [318 anankee] distress.

needy *noun* {34 ebyon} one who lacks necessities; **cp** poor.

Nei El *transliterated name* {5272 neiel} Wanderer of El.

neighbor, **nigh**, **near**, **nearby** *adjective* {7138 qarob} near in place, kindred, or time.

neighbour *noun* [1069 geton] [4139 plesion] one who dwells nearby; a fellow.

neighing *noun* {plural 4684 mitshalah} a whinnying; a whining.

Necho *transliterated name* {5224 nechow} the meaning uncertain; a Misrayim sovereign.

Nemu El *transliterated name* {5241 nemuel} (at the) Right of El.

Nemu Eliy *transliterated name* {5242 nemuweliy} Of Nemu El.

neophyte *transliterated noun* [3504 neophutos] a new convert; a proselyte.

Nephilim *transliterated plural name* {5303 nephilim} literally, Fellers; they who cause others to be felled; that is, to be toppled; **see** fall.

Nephisim *plural transliterated name* {5300 nephuwsheciym} {5304 nephiyciym} Expansions.

Nephtoach *transliterated name* {5318 nephtowach} Opened, as a spring.

Neqeb *transliterated name* {5346 neqeb} Mounting.

Nergal Shareser *transliterated name* {5371 nergalsharetser} the meaning uncertain.

Neri Yah *transliterated name* {5374 neriyah} [3518 neeri] Light of Yah; Overseen of Yah.

Nesiach *transliterated name* {5335 netsiyach} Conspicuous.

Nesib *transliterated name* {5334 netsiyb} Station.

nest *noun* {7064 qen} a nest, as fixed; figuratively, a dwelling.

nest *verb* {7077 qanan} to build, or occupy a nest.

net (drag) *noun* {4365 mikmereth} [293 amphibleestron] a net that is dragged.

net *noun* {4346 makbar} {4364 makmar} {4365 mikmereth} {7568 resheth} {plural 7636 shabie} that which is woven; a hair net; **cp** screen.

net, **netting**, **lattice** *noun* {7638 sabak} that which is intertwined.

Nethan El *transliterated name* {5417 nethanel} [3482 nathanaeel] Given of El.

Nethan Yah *transliterated name* {5418 nethanyah} Given of Yah.

nether, **nethermost** *adjective* {8481 tachton} {8482 tachtii} the lower, or lowest.

Nethinim *transliterated plural noun* {5411 nathinim} {5412 nethinim} those devoted exclusively to holy worship.

new, **fresh**, **anew** *adjective* [2537 kainos] new, especially in freshness, of a new kind.

new, **newness** *adjective* {2319 chadash} **see** renew, renovate.

new moon, **month** *noun* [2320 chodesh] [3561 noumeenia] a period of time from which events were scheduled; **see** month.

newness *noun* [2538 kainotees] in a new state.

Nibchaz *transliterated name* {5026 nibchaz} the meaning uncertain; a deity of the Avviy.

Nicodemus *transliterated name* [3530 nikodemos] Public Triumphant.

Nicolaitees *transliterated name* [3531 nikolaitees] Laity Triumphant.

Nicolas *transliterated name* [3532 nikolainos] Triumphant.

Nicopolis *transliterated name* [3533 nikopolis] Triumphant City.

Niger *transliterated name* [3526 niger] Black.

nigh, **near**, **nearby**, **neighbor** *adjective* {7138 qarob} near in place, kindred, or time.

night *noun* [3915 layil] [3916 leyleyla] [3571 nux] literally, a twisting away (of the light); the part of day from sunset to sunrise.

nightday *noun* [3574 nuktheameron] a full day; **cp** day.

Nineveh *transliterated name* [5210 nineveh] [3535 nineui] meaning uncertain.

Nineviy *transliterated name* [3536 ninuitees] of Nineveh.

nip, **bite**, **blink** *verb* {7169 qarats} a pinch; of the lids, of the lips, of the hands as forming.

nipple *noun* [1717 dad] the small protuberance of a breast or udder.

Nisroch *transliterated name* {5268 nisroch} the meaning

uncertain; a Babel idol.

Nissi *transliterated title* **pole**, **sail**, **ensign** *noun* {5251 nec} an ensign; the pole of an ensign; part of the title, Yah Veh Nissi, which means, Yah Veh Ensign.

nitre *noun* {5427 nether} named from its effervescing acid.

Noach *transliterated name* {5146 noach} [3575 noe] Rest; the patriarch of the flood.

Noad Yah *transliterated name* {5129 noadyah} Congregated (Betrothed) of Yah.

Noah *transliterated name* {5270 noah} Movement; a Yisra Eliyth.

Nobach *transliterated name* {5025 nobach} Bark.

Nobay *transliterated name* {5109 nowbay} Fruitful.

noble *noun* {7261 rabreban} a magnate.

nobles *plural noun* {2715 chor} persons of eminent character.

nobles *plural noun* {6579 partam} grandees.

Nochah *transliterated name* {5119 nowchah} Rest.

nocturnal spectre *noun* {3917 lilith} a night spectre.

nod, **nodding**, **nodded** *verb* [1769 enneos] [1770 enneuo] [2656 kataneuo] [3506 neuo] to signal with the head.

Nogah *transliterated name* {5052 nogahh} [3477 naggai] Brilliant.

noncircumcised *verb* [564 aperitmeetos] not circumcised; **cp** circumcised.

nonpseudo *adjective* [893 apseudees] not phony; **cp** pseudo.

Noomi *transliterated name* {5281 noomiy} Pleasantness.

noon, **window** *dual noun* {6672 tsohar} double light, as a window; double light, as noon.

noose *noun* [1029 brokos] figuratively, a snare.

noose *noun* {5364 niqqah} a rope, as encircling.

Nophach {5302 nophach} Gust.

north, **northerly**, **northern**, **northward**, **north quarter** *noun* {6828 tsaphon} literally, of the dark; used only of the north.

northern *adjective* {6830 tsephoniyy} of the north.

nosering *noun* {5141 nezem} meaning uncertain; a circular ornament.

nostril, **snout**, **wrath** *noun* {639 aph} {plural 5156 nechirim} [3709 orgee] the snorter, as in expressing wrath; **see** snorting.

nothing; **see** naught, nought, aught, ought.

notice, **recognize**, **discern**, **distinguish**, **estrangle** *verb* {5234 nakar} to acknowledge; to scrutinize; to distinguish between; to ignore, hence to be estranged.

notoriety, **report**, **fame**, **hearing** *noun* {8052 shemuah} {8088 shema} {8089 shoma} [189 akoeel] that which is heard; an announcement; a rumor.

nourish *verb* {2109, 2110 zuwn} to plumpen.

nourishment *noun* {4361 makkoeth} eats.

number, **appoint** *verb* {4483 menah} {4484 mene} {4487 manah} to enumerate.

Nun *transliterated name* {5126 nun} Perpetual.

nurture *verb* [397 anatrepho] soulically, and mentally, to nourish.

Nymphas *transliterated name* [3564 numphas] Veiled Oblation; a mythical Hellene goddess.

O

O, **Oh** *interjection* {994 biy} in the sense of pleading.

O that, if only, if though *interjection* {3863 luw} as a petition.

O that, whoever *participle pronoun* {4310 miy}.

oak *noun* {8410 tidhar} a species of tree.

oar, **scourge** *noun* {7885 shait} a whip; a paddle.

oath *noun* {7621 shebuah} [3727 horkos] literally, a seven; figuratively, the number of completion; a solemn affirmation.

oath *verb* {422 alah} {7650 shaba} [1964 epiokeo] [3660 omnumi, omnnoo] [3726 horkizo] [3728 horkomosia] literally, to seven; figuratively, to complete; to solemnly affirm.

Obad Yah *transliterated name* {5662 obadyah} Server of Yah.

Obed *transliterated name* {5744 obed} [5601 obed] Server.

Obed Edom *transliterated name* {5654 obededom} Server of Edom.

oblate, **approach**, **bring near** *verb* {7126 qarab} {7127 qereb} to offer for worship; to draw near; to bring near.

oblation *noun* [1435 doron] an oblation; a transliteration of the Hebrew qorban, and of the Hellenic qorban; **see** qorban; **read** Markos 7:11.

oblivion *noun* {5388 neshiyah} forgotten.

obscure, **evening** *verb* {6150 arab} in the sense of dusking; of becoming obscure.

obscure, **uncertain** *adjective* [82 adelos] [83 adelotes] unclear.

LEXICON

obscurity *noun* {4155 muwaph} shielded from view.
observant *noun* {7907 sekiyah} one that observes.
observation *noun* {7914 sekiyah} that which is observed.
observe, prowl *verb* {7789 shur} to spy out; to survey; **see** stroll.
observer, prowler *noun* {7790 shur} a foe, as lying in wait; **see** stroll.
obstinate *participle* {3267 yaaz} to be bold.
occasion *noun* {8385 taanah} opportunity; opportune time.
occurrence, happening *noun* {4745 miqreh} that which happens to occur.
ode *transliterated noun* {5603 ode} a poem set to music.
offer, offering; see SUMMARY: OFFER, OFFERING:
officer *noun* {2951 tiphcar} {7860 shoter} [4233 praktor] an official invested with an office.
offscouring *verb* {5501 cechiy} a scouring off; **see** scrape off.
offscraping *noun* {4067 peripsoma} what is scraped off; scum.
offspring *adjective* {3329 yetsiy} an issue.
offspring *noun* {5209 nin} {6526 pirschach} {plural 6631 tseesim} that which issued of; progeny; produce; **see** posterity.
ogling *participle* {8265 saqar} to blink coquettishly, playfully.
Oholah *transliterated name* {170 oholah} Her Tent.
Oholi Ab *transliterated name* {171 oholiyah} Tent of Father.
Oholi Bah *transliterated name* {172 oholiyah} My Tent is in Her.
Oholi Bamah *transliterated name* {173 oholiyah} Tent of the Bamah (Height).
oil *noun* {3323 yitshar} {8081 shemen} oil for anointing.
Ochran *transliterated name* {5918 ochran} Troubler.
old *adjective* {3820 palaios} not recent; worn out.
olive *noun* {2132 zayith} [plural 1636 elaia] an oily fruit.
olive (good) *noun* {2565 kallielaios} as cultivated; as improved.
olive (wild) *noun* {65 agrielaos} as uncultivated; as natural.
olive oil *noun* {1637 elaion} the oil of anointing.
olive orchard *noun* {1638 elaion}.
Olympas *transliterated name* {3652 olumpas} Heavenly.
omega *transliterated noun* {5598 omega} the last letter of the Greek alphabet; figuratively, finality.
omen *noun* {852 ath} [plural 852 atheen] {4159 mopeth} {5059 teras} a phenomenon.
omer *transliterated noun* {5995 amir} {6016 omer} a dry measure of grain.
on account of, so (as) (that), in order to *participle* {4616 maan} {5668 abur} for the purpose of.
on guard, regard, guard *verb* {5201 natar} {5202 nater} {5341 natsar} {8104 shamar} [plural 8107 shimmurim] {8108 shomrah} {8176 shaar} {5083 tereo} in the sense of protecting from harm, observing observances, obeying misvahs.
onager *noun* {6167 arad} {6171 arod} a wild burro.
Onesimus *transliterated name* {3682 oneesimos} Profitable.
Onesiphorus *transliterated name* {3683 onesiphoros} Tribute Bearer.
open, pethach, engrave *verb* [[transliterated 6605 pathach] [[transliterated 6606 pethach] [transliterated 2188 ephphatha] to open; to loosen; to engrave.
open, opening *verb* {6491 paqach} [455 anoigo] [457 anoixis] to open up.
opener *noun* {4668 maphtach} that which opens.
openeyed *adjective* {6493 piqqeach} clear sighted.
opening *noun* {4669 miphtach} as an aperture.
opening *noun* {6495 peqachqoach} as a way of escape.
opening, portal *noun* {6607 pethach} {6608 pethach} {6610 pithchon} {8179 shaar} {8651 tera} [2374 thura] an entrance or an exit.
Ophay *transliterated name* {5778 owphay} Flyer-like.
Ophel *transliterated name* {6077 ophel} Mound.
Opheniy *transliterated name* {6078 ophniy} Of Ophen.
opinion, decision *noun* [1106 gnomee] a personal judgment.
opinions *plural noun* {5587 saiphim} {8312 saraphim} literally, of divided mind; **see** skeptics.
opponent *noun* {7009 giym} one that rises against.
opponent *noun* {8324 sharar} one that opposes.
opportunity *noun* [874 aphorme] a starting point.
oppose *verb* [496 antipto] [498 antitassomai] to set against.
oppose *verb* {7852 satam} to lurk for; for noun, **see** satan.
opposite, toward, -ward *adjective* {4136 mowl} [481 antikru] [492 antiparerkomai] [495 antiperan] across from.
opposition *noun* {7855 sitnah} **see** oppose.
oppress *verb* {3238 yanah} to maltreat.

oppress, distress *verb* {6693 tsuwq} to compress.
oppress, extort *verb* {6231 ashaq} to press out of; to oppress.
oppress, press *verb* {3905 lachats} literally, to press; to distress.
oppression *noun* {3906 lachats} {4157 muwaqah} [plural 4642 maashaqqah] {4835 merutsah} {6125 aqah} [plural 6217 ashuq] [2347 thlipsis] constraint; oppression; pressure.
oppression, extortion *noun* {6233 osheq} a pressing out; an oppressing.
oppression, race *noun* {4793 merots} [4794, 4835 merutsah] a test of running; the pressures of life.
oppressor *noun* {4160 muwts} {6216 ashoq} one who oppresses.
opulent, outcry *noun* {7771 showa} one that is opulent; an outcry; **see** cry.
oracle *noun* {5001 naam} {5002 neum} [3051 logion] [5538 chrematismos] a verbal revelation or affirmation.
oracle *verb* [5537 chrematizo] to utter an oracle.
orator *noun* [3052 logios] one who words.
orator *noun* [4489 rector] one who rhetorizes.
orchard *noun, Karmel transliterated name* {3759 karmel} a planting of fruit trees; an orchard.
ordain *verb* [1299 diatasso] [5021 tasso] to set apart for ministry; to establish by appointment.
order *noun* [2003 epitage] [5001 tagma] [5010 taxis] an arrangement; a command.
order *verb* [2004 epitasso] [4367 protasso] [4929 suntasso] [5002 taktos] to arrange; to command.
ordinance *noun* [1296 diatage] [1297 diatagma] an order.
ore *noun* {3800 kethem} as carved out; as mined.
ore, sickle, trench, decision, decisive, incision, incisor *adjective, noun* {2742 charuts} literally, a mental, soulical, or material incising.
origin *noun* {4351 mekorah} as being dug; as if a mine.
original, eternal, eternally, eternity *noun, adjective, adverbally* {5703 ad} {5769 olam} {5865 elom} {5957 alam} [126 adidios] [166 aionios] a limitless period – either past, present, or future.
ornament *noun* {2481 chaliy} [2484 chelyah] a trinket as polished.
ornament *noun* {5716 adiy} an ornament that adorns.
ornament, adornment, tiara *noun* {6287 peer} an embellishment; a tiara, as an adornment.
orphan *transliterated noun* {3490 yathom} [3737 orphanos] without parents; bereft.
orphanize *transliterated verb* [642 aporphanzomai] to cause to become orphan.
Osem *transliterated name* {684 otsem} Strong.
Osnapper *transliterated name* {620 ocnapper} the meaning uncertain; an Ashshuriy sovereign.
ostriches *plural noun* {7443 renen} named from its cry.
other doctrine, doctrinate otherwise *verb* [2085 heterodidaskaleo] to teach differently; to teach different doctrines.
Othni *transliterated name* {6273 othni} Force.
Othni El *transliterated name* {6274 othniel} Force of El.
out, outside, outskirt, outward, outway, without *noun, adverb* {2351 chuts} a separated area.
outburst *noun* {8241 shetseph} an emotional outburst.
outcasts *plural noun* {6849 tsephiah} that which is cast out.
outcry *noun* {6682 tsevachah} a crying out.
outcry, opulent *noun* {7771 showa} one that is opulent; an outcry; **see** cry.
outresurrection *noun* [1815 exanastasis] a resurrection out of.
outrun, run *verb runner participle* {7323 ruts} {7325 rur} to run; to run faster than.
oven, furnace *noun* {8574 tannur} a fire pot.
overburden *verb* [1912 epibareo] to put a heavy load upon; to be burdensome.
overcast *verb* {5743 ub} to be dense.
overcloud, cloud over *verb* {6049 anan} to cover over with a cloud.
overflow *noun* {3502 yithrah} the surplus.
overflow *verb* {7857 shataph} to inundate.
overflow, float *verb* {6687 tsuph} {7783 shuq} to float; to flow over.
overflowing *noun* {7858 shetseph} an inundation.
overlay *noun* {6826 tsippuy} an encasement.
overlay, watch *verb watcher participle* {6822, 6823 tsaphah} to observe; to await; to sheet over.

LEXICON

overlay, subdue *verb* {7286 radad} to conquer; to sheet over.
overload *verb* {2959 tarach} to overburden; **cp** burden.
overlook *verb* {3865 paratheoreo} [5237 huperido] to disregard.
overlord *verb* [2634 katakuriuo] [2961 kuriuo] to lord over; **see** lord.
overpass, pass (over) (through), surpass, trespass *verb* {5674 abar} to cross over; this verb is unrelated to the mistranslation of passover.
overpower, prevail, empower *verb* {8280 sarah} {8630 taqaph} [2616 katadunastuo] [2729 katiskuo] [2901 krataioo] [2902 krateo] to have ability over; to cause to have power.
oversee, perpetual, perpetuity (in), eminent *adjective, participle* {5329 natsach} {5331 netsach} [1336 dieenekes] continual, on and on; to oversee work; to be eminent.
oversee, scope over *verb* [1983 episkopeo] to episcopate; to inspect over.
oversee, visit, muster *verb* {6485 paqad} to oversee; to visit with friendly intent, to visit with hostile intent, to take care of; to muster for display.
overseeing *noun* {6487 piqqadon} that which is being overseen, or watched over.
overseeing others *verb* [244 allotriepiskopos] in the sense of not minding one's own matters.
overseer *noun* {6488 peqiduth} {6496 paqid} one that oversees, or watches over.
overseer, oversight, visitation, muster *noun* {6486 pequddah} a visit with friendly intent, to oversee; or a visit with hostile intent, to take care of; a muster for display.
overshadow, overshadowing *verb* {6751 tsalal} to shade, as hovering over.
oversight, visitation, muster, overseer *noun* {6486 pequddah} a visit with friendly intent, to oversee; or a visit with hostile intent, to take care of; a muster for display.
overspread, spread over *verb* {5259 nacak} to interweave.
overspreading *adjective* {4473 mimshach} expanding over.
overtake, reach, attain *verb* {5381 nasag} to attain by reaching for.
overtake, take over *verb* [2638 katalambano] to lay hold of; to seize.
overthrow *noun* {2925 taltelah} {4072 midchek} {plural 4073 medachphah} {4114 mahpechah} an overthrow; a rejection.
overthrow *verb* [1760 dahghah] to overthrow by pushing down.
overturn, remain, return, behave *verb* [390 anastrepho] [396 anatrepo] to turn over; to overthrow; to turn; in the manner one turns (behaves).
overworking {4020 periergazomai} [4021 periergos] to bustle about uselessly.
owl (little), cup *noun* {3563 kowe} a container; an owl, from the cup-like cavity of its eye.
ox, oxen *noun* {7794 shor} an ox, or oxen as strolling; **see** stroll.

P

Paaray *transliterated name* {6474 paaray} Yawning.
pace *noun* {4703 mitsad} {6806 tsaah} a marching pace; the measured movement from one step to another; **cp** step.
pace *verb* {6805 tsaad} to pace; to march; **see** march.
Pachath Moab *transliterated name* {6355 pachathmowab} Pit of Moab.
pacify *verb* [1514 iereneuo] [1517 eirenopoieo] the verb of peace; to make peace; to be peaceful.
Paddan *transliterated name* {6307 paddan} Plateau.
Paddan Aram *transliterated name* {6307 paddanaram} Plateau of Aram.
paddle, flip, flit *verb* {7751 shuwt} to flit forth and back; to flip oars.
Pagi El *transliterated name* {6295 pagiel} Coincidence of El.
pail *noun* {1805 deli} [502 antlema] a container for drawing water; noun of bail.
pail *noun* {5845 atiy} container.
pain *noun* {3511 keeb} physically, soulically, or mentally, suffering.
pain *verb* {3510 kaab} to hurt; to feel pain.
palace *noun* {1001 bira} {1002 birah} {1055 bithan} {plural 1003 birahanith} a large house; **cp** house; manse; nave; priestal precinct.
Palal *transliterated name* {6420 palal} Prayer.
Palal Yah *transliterated name* {6421 palalyah} Prayer of Yah.
palanquin *noun* {668 appiryown} a passenger conveyance borne on shoulders by poles.
palanquin, tortoise *noun* {6632 tsab} a wagon, as covered; a tortoise, as covered.
palate *noun* {2441 chek} the roof of the mouth.
pale *verb* {2357 chavar} to turn pale; to blanch.
Pallu *transliterated name* {6396 palluu} Distinguished.
Palluiy *transliterated name* {6384 palluiy} Of Pallu.
palm, paw, sole, bowl, hollow *noun* {3709 kaph} {6447 pas} {8168 shoal} a hollow of the hand, foot, paw, or body; also utensils with a hollow.
palm (tree) *noun* {8558 tamar} {8560 tomer} {8561 timmor} a species of tree; symbolic of triumph; of being erect.
palm leaf *noun* {3712 kippah} as having a hollow as a palm.
palmspan *verb* [2946 taphach] to span with the palm.
palmspan, support *noun* {2947 tephach} [2948 tophach] the span of a palm; a support; **see** span.
Paloniy *transliterated name* {6397 pelowniy} Separate; Of Palon.
Palti *transliterated name* {6406 paltiy} Escaped.
Palti El *transliterated name* {6409 paltiel} Escape of El.
Paltiy *transliterated name* {6407 paltiy} Of Palti.
pamper *verb* {6445 panaq} to treat daintily.
pang *noun* **ambassador title** {6735 tsir} an ambassador, as a representative; a pang, as writhing.
pang *noun* {2427 chiyl} a throe, especially of childbirth.
pang, boundary, cord, line *noun* {2256 chebel} literally, a rope; as a boundary line, or as binding one in a pang.
pannag *transliterated noun* {6436 pannag} an article of trade or barter.
panoply *transliterated noun* [3833 panoplia] a full suit of armour.
pant (after) *verb* {5689 agab} [1937 epithumeo] to breathe hard after; **cp** sigh.
panter *noun* [1938 epithumeetees] one who pants.
panting *noun* {5691 agabah} {plural 5690 egeb} [1939 epithumia] a breathing hard after; **cp** the Hebrew agabah with the Hellenic agape.
parable *transliterated noun* [3850 parabole] similitude; a short narrative of a possible event in life, from which a moral or spiritual truth is drawn.
Paraclete *transliterated noun* [3875 parakleetos] one who consoles, guides, intercedes; Yah Shua is the Paraclete; 1 Yahn 2:1; the Holy Spirit is the "another Paraclete" whom Yah Shua sent after His rapture; **read** Yahn 14:16,26, 15:26, 16:7.
paradise, park *noun* {6508 pardec} [3857 paradisos] a park; refers to the original garden, the new garden in Apocalypse, as well as the third heaven in 2 Corinthians 12; **cp** garden.
paradox *transliterated noun* [3861 paradoxos] a contradiction.
Paran *transliterated name* {6290 paran} Ornamental.
parapet *noun* [4624 maaqeh] a rampart to protect warriors.
parcel *noun* [5564 chorion] a plot of land.
parch *noun* **parched** *adjective* {6704 tsicheh} {plural 6710 tsachtsachah} {6723 tsiyah} {6724 tsiywon} {7039 qaliy} parched land, throat, kernels.
parch, desolate, dry *adjective* {2720 chareb} {8076 shamen} parched; ruined.
parch, desolate, dry *verb* [2717, 2718 charab] {3456 yashem} {8045 shamad} {8046 shemad} [2049 ereemoo] to lay waste; to destroy.
parch, drought *noun* {2721 choreb} [2725 charabon] very dry.
parched (area) *noun* [2723 chorbah] [2724 charabah].
parched *adjective* {6704 tsicheh} from the root, to glow; parched.
parchment *noun* [3200 membrana] membrane.
parents *noun* [1118 gonus] father and mother.
Parnach *transliterated name* {6535 parnach} of uncertain derivative.
Paroh *transliterated title* {6547 paroh} [5328 pharao] title of Misrayim sovereigns.
Paroh Hophra *transliterated title and name* {6548 parahchophra} a Misrayim sovereign.
Paroh Nechoh *transliterated title and name* {6549 parahnechoh} a Misrayim sovereign.
parousia, appearance *transliterated noun* [3952 parousia] the presence to be; of the coming of ministers; especially of the return of our Adonay Yah Shua Messiah.
Parpar *transliterated name* {6554 parpar} Rapid.
part, end *noun* {7117, 7118 qetsath} a portion; a termination.
partake, partaking *verb* [3335 metalambano] [3352

LEXICON

metochee [3348 metecho] to take part together; to share in.
partake, support *verb* [482 antilambanomial] [484 antileepsis] to take part; to support.
partaker, communicant *noun* [2844 koinonos] one who communes or partakes in common, or in communion.
partaker, partner *noun* [3335 metalambano] [3336 metaleepsis] [3353 metokos] one who takes part.
partaking, imparting *verb* [2841 koinoneo] communing and partaking by imparting.
partiality *noun* [4380 prosopolepteo] [4382 prosopolepsia] favoritism.
partiality *noun* {4856 massoh} as in lifting one above another.
Paruach *transliterated name* {6515 paruwach} Blossomed.
Parvayim *transliterated name* {6516 parvayim} an Oriental region.
Pas Dammim {6450 pacdammiym} Coverall of Blood.
pasach *transliterated noun* {6453 pecach} [3957 pascha] a celebration of Elohim's protection; a celebration sacrifice of a lamb; Adonay Yah Shua Messiah as our protection; often mistranslated passover; **cp** suffer [3958 pasko]; **read** Vine; **read** Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament.
pasach *transliterated verb* {6452 pacach} to protect.
Pasach *transliterated name* {6457 pasach} Protection.
Pashchur *transliterated name* {6583 pashchuw} Liberation.
pass, passage *noun* {4569 maabarah} a place to cross over; **see** route.
pass (away) (over) (through) *verb* {2498, 2499 chalaph} from the root, to slide by; to pass on.
pass (over) (through), surpass, trespass, overpass *verb* {5674 abar} to cross over; this verb is unrelated to the mistranslation of passover.
pasture *noun* {4829 mireh} {4830 miriyth} {5097 nahalol} a place of feeding.
pasture *noun* {4999 naah} {7471 reiy} [3542 nome] grazing land.
patch *verb* {2950 taphal} literally, to patch clothes; to patch lies.
patch, spot *verb* {2921 tala} to color in spots; to repair in spots.
path, way *noun* {734, 735 orach} also includes the manner of a person.
pathos *transliterated noun* [3806 pathos] a suffering; a passion.
Pathrosiym *transliterated name* {6625 pathruciy} Of Pathros.
patriarch *transliterated noun* [3966 patriarches] [3967 patrikos] [3971 patroos] the arch fathers; the early fathers.
patriarchal tradition *noun* [3970 patroparadotos] the tradition of the arch fathers.
patriarchy *noun* [3965 patria] the reign of the arch fathers, past or present.
patricide *noun* [3964 patroloes] a parricide; a murderer of, or the murder of one's father.
patroness *noun* [4368 prostatistis] a female who sponsors or supports.
pattern *noun* {8403 tabnith} a model to be reproduced or followed.
Paulos *transliterated name* [3972 paulos] Little.
pause *verb* [3973 pauo] to stop.
pavement, red hot stones *noun* {7528 ratsaph} {7529 retseph} as used for baking; as used for laying a pavement.
pavilion *noun* {643 appeden} {8237 shaphrur} a large tent.
paw, sole, bowl, hollow, palm *noun* {3709 kaph} {6447 pas} {8168 shoal} a hollow of the hand, foot, paw, or body; also utensils with a hollow.
pawn, pledge, entangle *verb* {5670 abat} to entangle a people; to entangle a pledge by pawning.
payoff *noun* {866 ethnah} {868 ethnan} {5078 nedeh} {5083 nadan} usually the price paid to a whore.
peacocks *plural noun* {8500 tukkim} a species of imported creature.
pearls *plural noun* {6443 paniyn} as being round.
pebble *noun* {1486 goral} casting pebbles was a common manner of determining who received what; **see** Apocalypse 2:17.
peculiar acquisition *noun* [4047 peripoiesis] private, personal property; Messianists are Elohim's private personal property.
peculiar people *adjective* [4041 periouosios] private personal people; Messianists are Elohim's private personal people.
peculiar treasure *noun* {5459 cegullah} private treasure, as held close to the breast; private property.

pedagogue *transliterated noun* [3807 paidagogos] [3810 paidutees] one who disciplines children; a tutor.
Pedah El *transliterated name* {6300 pedahel} Redeemed of El.
Pedah Sur *transliterated name* {6301 pedatsur} Redeemed of the Rock.
Pedah Yah *transliterated name* {6305 pedayah} Redeemed of Yah.
peel *noun* {4286 machsoph} a peeling.
peel *verb* {6478 patsal} to strip, as tree bark.
peelings *plural noun* {6479 petsalah} that which is peeled.
peer *verb* {7688 shagach} to peep; to peer.
peevd *adjective* {5620 car} annoyed.
Pela Yah *transliterated name* {6411 pelayah} Marvel of Yah.
Pelat Yah *transliterated name* {6410 pelatyah} Escape of Yah.
Peleg *transliterated name* {6389 peleg} [5317 phalek] Split.
Pelesheth *transliterated name* {6429 pelesheth} Wallow; original name of Palestine.
Peleshethiy *transliterated name* {6430 pelishtiyy} Of Pelesheth.
pelican *noun* {6893 qaath} from its vomiting.
penalize *verb* {6064 anash} to inflict a penalty; to fine.
penalty *noun* {6066 onesh} a fine; **see** confiscate.
pendant *noun* {7720 saharon} a round ornament for the neck.
pendants *plural noun* {5188 netiyphahoth} pendants for the ears.
pendulous *plural noun* {8534 taltalim} vibrations.
penetrate, press, sink, bend, descend *verb* {5181 nachath} from the root, to sink; to go down; to press or lead down.
Peni El *transliterated name* {6439 peniel} [5323 phanouel] Face of El.
pentecost *transliterated noun* [4005 pentekostee] fiftieth; the fiftieth day following the pasach; **read** Leviticus 23:15-17, Acts 2:1-4.
Penu El *transliterated name* {6439 punuel} Face of El.
people, peoples *noun* {5971, 5972 am} [2992 laos] the body of citizens of a place, group, or class; **cp** goyim; **cp** nations.
Peqach *transliterated name* {6492 peqach} Open.
Peqach Yah *transliterated name* {6494 peqachyah} Opened of Yah.
Peqod/visitation *transliterated name, noun* {6489 peqowd} refers to Babel as a place of Yah Veh's visitation.
perceive, consider *verb* [2657 katanoeo] to observe attentively.
perceive, know *verb* {3045 yada} {3046 yeda} [143 aisthanomial] [1492 eido] [5274 hupolambano] to be aware through the senses.
perception *noun* {4486 manda} [144 aitheesis] [145 aistheeteerin] an awareness through the senses.
perception, knowledge *noun* {1843 dehag} {1844 dehgh} {1847 dahgath} [1108 gnosis] an awareness of facts.
perennial, permanent *adjective* {386 ethan} {7011 qayam} continually abiding; lasting.
Peres *transliterated name* {6557 perets} [5329 phares] Separatist; **see** Peresiyy.
Peres Uzza *transliterated name* {6560 peretsuzza} Separatist of Strength; **see** Peresiyy.
Peresiyy *transliterated name* {6558 partsi} [plural 5330 pharisaios] Separatist; one who separates from.
perfect *adjective, totality noun, totally* {3642 kaliyl} all inclusive; naught to be added.
perfect *verb* {3634 kalal} to finish to perfection.
perfection *noun* {plural 4357 miklah} {4359 miklal} splendid; with splendor.
perforated *adjective* {2751 choriyy} full of holes.
perfume *noun* {7544 reqach} {7545 roqach} [plural 7547 raqqachim] an aromatic; a scented substance.
perfume *verb* {7543 raqach} to perfume.
perfumer *noun* {masculine 7546 raqqach} {feminine 7548 raqqachah} one that perfumes.
Perizziyy *transliterated name* {6522 perizziyy} Of the suburbs.
permanent, perennial *adjective* {386 ethan} {7011 qayam} continually abiding; lasting.
permit *noun* {7558 rishyon} a permission.
perpetual, perpetuity (in), eminent, oversee *adjective, participle* {5329 natsach} {5331 netsach} [1336 dienekes] continual, on and on; to oversee work; to be eminent.
perpetually *adverb* {8411 tedira} continually on and on.
perpetuate *verb* {5125 nun} to continue on and on.
perplex *verb* {6323 pun} {7672 shebash} to confuse, to entangle.
persecuted, persecution *verb, noun* {4783 murdaph} {4788

LEXICON

marud) a maltreatment; to maltreat.

Persia, Persian *transliterated name* {6539, 6540 parac} {6542, 6543 parsci} the land of Persia; including settlers.

perverse *adjective* {2019 haphakpak} [1294 diastrepho] devious; distorted.

perverseness *noun* {3891 lezuwth} {5758 ivya} {5558 seleph} a turning from; a mental twistedness.

perversion *noun* **perverted** *adjective* {6143 iqqeshuth} as in perversion of mouth.

perversion, perversity *noun* {5771 avon} deviation.

perversities *plural noun* {5773 aveh} deviations.

pervert *noun* {5760 avil} perverse.

pervert verb {3868 luwz} {6140 aqash} to distort; to turn away from.

pervert verb {5686 abath} to interlace.

pervert, subvert *verb* {5557 calaph} to turn from; to undermine.

pervert, twist, bend *verb* {5753 avah} {5754 avvah} to crook; to overthrow.

perverted *adjective* {6141 iqqesh} distorted; turned away from.

pestle *verb* {3795 kathyth} {3806 kathash} {3807 kathath} to pulverize with a pestle.

pestle, socket *noun* {4388 maktesh} {5940 eliy} the pestle of a mortar; a socket.

pethach, engrave, open *verb* [[*transliterated* 6605 pathach] [[*transliterated* 6606 pethach] [*transliterated* 2188 ephphatha] to open; to loosen; to engrave.

Pethach Yah *transliterated name* {6611 pethachyah} Opened of Yah.

Pethu El *transliterated name* {6602 pethuel} Duped of El.

petition *noun* {7596 shelah} [1162 deesis] an asking; a solemn request.

petition *verb* {8469 tachanun} [1189 deomai] to solemnly request.

petrification *noun* [4457 porosis] rocklikeness; **see** Petros.

petrified *verb* [4456 poroo] become rocklike; **see** Petros.

Petros *transliterated name* {3710 keph} [4074 petros] Rock; **see** Kepha; **note:** Petros is a Hellenic translation of the Hebrew Keph, whereas Kepha is a transliteration of the Hebrew.

petty, shortly, bit, bit by bit, few, little *adjective, adverb* {4592 meat} diminutive; a few; a little.

Peullthay *transliterated name* {6469 peullthay} Laborious.

phantasm *transliterated noun* [5326 phantasm] a figment of the imagination.

pharmacist *transliterated noun* [5332 pharmakus] [5333 pharmakos] drug pushers; originally pharmacists were associated with drugs in the occult.

pharmacy *transliterated noun* [5331 pharmakia] the dispensary of drugs.

Pharsin *verb* {6537 peras} separated; split.

Philadelphia *transliterated noun* [5359 philadelphia] Friendship City.

philanthropically *transliterated adverb* [5364 philanthropos] friendly giving.

philanthropy *transliterated noun* [5363 philanthropia] friend of humanity; also friend of giving.

Philemon *transliterated name* [5371 philemon] Friendly.

Philetos *transliterated name* [5372 philetos] Friendly.

Philippos *transliterated name* [5376 philippos] Friend of Horses.

Philologos *transliterated name* [5378 philologos] Friend of Words; Philological.

phoenix *transliterated noun* [5404 phoinix] a type of palm.

phylactery *noun* {2903 towphaphah} [*transliteration* 5440 phulakterion] a guardcase worn on the forehead containing scripture passages.

physical *adjective* [5446 phusichos] of the physique; instinctive.

physically *adv* [5447 phusichos] instinctively.

Pi Ha Hiroth *plural transliterated name* {6367 pihachiyroth} Mouth of the Holes.

pick *noun* {4281 machareshah} an instrument for picking; **cp** hoe.

pierce *verb* {3735 kara} to be pierced in spirit.

pierce, appoint, bore *verb* {5344 naqab} to point out; to thrust or make a hole through.

pierce, dig *verb* {3738, 3739 kahrah} to bore; to dig through.

pierce, pinch *verb* {4600 maak} from the root, to press; to pierce.

pierce, pluck, profane *verb* {2490 chahal} {2610 chaneph} [2840 koinoo] to pierce a person; to pluck an instrument; to desecrate the hallowed.

pierced, profane *adjective* {2455 chol} {2491 chahal} [952 beebelos] of pierced (slaughtered) and profaned persons.

Pichol *transliterated name* {6369 piychol} Mouth of All.

Pilcha *transliterated name* {6401 pilcha} Slicing.

pilgrim *noun* [3927 parepidemos] a wanderer in a foreign land.

pillar *noun* {4690 matsuq} {5982 ammud} [*plural* 8564 tamrurim] [4769 stulos] a column; a vertical structural support; of smoke; of fire; **cp** statue.

Piltay *transliterated name* {6408 piltay} Escaped.

pinch, pierce *verb* {4600 maak} from the root, to press; to pierce.

Pinechas *transliterated name* {6372 piynechac} Mouth of a Serpent.

pinion *noun* {83 eber} {84 ebrah} the bone of the wing.

pinky, younger, fewer, lesser, little *adjective* {6810 tsaor} {6995 qoten} {6996 qatan} less in age, number, size; little finger.

Pirathoniy *transliterated name* {6553 pirathoniy} Of Pirathon.

Pisgah *transliterated name* {6449 picgah} Contemplation.

Pishon *transliterated name* {6376 piyshown} Spread.

Pisses *transliterated name* {6483 pitssets} Dispersive.

pit *noun* {4379 mikreh} {6354 pachath} as dug.

pit, pitfall *noun* {7825 shechith} {7882 shichah} as a depression.

pitch, camphire, koper/atonement *noun* {3724 koper} camphor, a medication; a sealant for the ark of the flood; also an atonement: **see** koper/atonement.

pitted *noun* {6356 pechetheth} pitted with holes or blemishes as in oxidation.

place *noun* {8499 tekunah} a fixed, or certain place.

place, put, set *verb* {7760, 7761 suwm} {7896 shith} {8239 shaphath} {8271 shathah} to put in place.

place (by), set (by), stand (by), station (by) *verb* {3320 yatsab} {3322 yatsag} {5324 natsab} from the root, to place, so as to stay.

placing *noun* {8667 tesumeth} a placing of the hand.

plague *noun* {4046 maggephah} a pestilence.

plague *transliterated noun* {5061 nega} {5063 negeph} [4127 plege] a heavy touch, or strike; an infliction of disease.

plague, reach, touch *verb* {5060 naga} to touch heavily; to strike.

plain, straight, straightness, level *noun* {4334 miyshor, *plural* miyshorim} {4339 meyshar} {6160 arabah} plain, as unadorned; as a level land area; as of straight character; as just.

plant *noun* {3657 kannah} {3661 kanan} [5451 phutia] organic produce which cannot move of itself.

plant *verb* {5193 nata, *plural* natiaim} [5452 phutuo] to place seed in the ground.

plant, plantation *noun* {5194 neta} a planting; a place of planting.

plant, planting, plantation *noun* {4218 mizra} {4302 matta} a field, as planted.

plea, pleading *noun* {1779, 1780 diyn} a defence; a petition.

plea, strife, contention, defence *noun* {7379 rib} a personal, or legal contest.

plead *verb* [626 apologeomai] to defend.

plead, examine, judge *verb* {8199 shaphat} {8200 shephat} [350 anakrino] [2919 krino] to scrutinize; to investigate.

plead, strive, contend, defend *verb* {7378 rub} to hold a controversy.

plead (for) *verb* {1777, 1778 diyn} to petition; to act in defence of.

pleader *noun* {1781, 1782 dayan} one who pleads.

pleading *noun* [627 apologia] words in defence.

pleading, plea *noun* {1779, 1780 diyn} a defence; a petition.

pleasant, pleasure *adjective* {5273 naiym} {6156 areb} delightful.

pleasantness *adjective* {5278 noam} delightful; agreeableness.

please, be pleased, pleasing, (have the) (take) pleasure *verb* {5276 naem} {5277 adan} {6149 areb} {7521 ratsah} [700 areko] [701 arestos] to please; to please (satisfy) a debt; **cp** shalom.

pleasing, pleasure *noun* {7522 ratson} a delight.

pleasure *noun* {5730 eden} **see** Eden.

pledge (heavy) *noun* {5667 abot} that which has been

LEXICON

pledged, or pawned.

pledge *noun* {2258 chabol} {6161 arubbah} {6162 arabon} {728 arrabon} an agreement as bound; that which is pledged for collateral.

pledge, comingle, mingle *verb* {6148, 6151 arab} to become collateral.

pledge, entangle, pawn *verb* {5670 abat} to entangle a people; to entangle a pledge by pawning.

pledge, spoil, despoil *verb* {2254, 2255 chabal} literally, to bind tightly; as in spoiling or as in binding a pledge.

pledges *plural noun* {8594 taarubahoth} sons, as security.

plough *verb* {2758 charish} literally, to slice.

plow, hush *verb* {2790 charash} literally, to scratch; to silence.

plowed fields *plural* {3010 yageb} literally, plowings, as in fields to plow.

plowers *participle* {3009 yagab} diggers; ploughers.

pluck *verb* {5394 nashal} to pluck off.

pluck, plucking, psalm, psalming *noun* {2158, 2159 zamir} {2170 zemar} {2172 zimrah} {2176 zimrath} {4210 mizmor} a string, fruit, or twig as plucked.

pluck, profane, pierce *verb* {2490 chalal} {2610 chaneph} {2840 koinoo} to pierce a person; to pluck an instrument; to desecrate the hallowed.

pluck, pull, pull stakes *verb* {5265 naca} to pluck; to pull up; to pull the tent stakes when moving; **read** Numbers 33:3–48.

pluck, strip *verb* {6998 qataph} {7059 qamat} to pluck out; to strip off.

plucker, psalmist *noun* {2171 zammar} plucker.

plumage *noun* {5133 notsah} the entire covering of feathers on a bird.

plumbline *noun* {4949 mishqeleth} a weight with a line attached for surveying.

plump *noun* {2109 yahsan} {6371 pimah} fat.

plump, fatten *verb* {2492 chalam} {3780 kasah} to cause to be fat, to plump; to cover with flesh.

plunder *noun* {957 baz} {961 bizzah} {4933 mechiccah} {724 harpage} a pillage.

plunder *verb* {962 bazaz} {8154 shasah} {8155 shacac} {1283 diarpazo} to seize apart; to pillage.

pockets *plural noun* {2754 charitim} literally, cutouts.

poem *noun* {4387 miktam} a metrical composition.

poet *transliterated noun* [4163 poietes] one who composes metrical compositions.

point, cut, decide, determine *verb* {2782 charat} {2852 chathak} to be cut; to cut a decision, or a determination; to point.

point, pointen *verb* {8150 shanan} to point; to cause to be pointy; to pierce.

poison, fury *noun* {2534 chemah} heat; as anger, as poison.

Pochereth Sebayim *transliterated name* {6380 pocherethsebayim} Trap of Gazelles.

pole, sail, ensign *noun* **Nissi** *transliterated title* {5251 nec} an ensign; the pole of an ensign; part of the title, Yah Veh Nissi, which means, Yah Veh Ensign.

pole, yoke pole *noun* {4132 mowt} the slip pole of a yoke.

polish, purge, cleanse *verb* {1305 barar} {1571 ekkathairo} clarify, catharize; **cp** purify.

polish, rash, balden *verb* {4178 mowrat} {4803 marat} {4804 merat} to rub (off); to pluck; to cause to be bald.

polish, scour *verb* {4838 maraq} to polish, so as to sharpen.

politarche *transliterated noun* [4173 politarches] arch politicians of the city.

pollution *noun* [234 alisgeema] a contamination.

polylogy *transliterated noun* [4180 polologia] multiwordedness.

pomp *noun* {1344 geah} {1346 gaavah} {1347 gaoun} {1348 qeuwth} ostentation; majesty.

pompous *adjective* {1341 ge} {1343 geeh} {1349 gaayon} ostentatious.

pond *noun* {4950 mishqa} a settling (of water).

poor *adjective* {1800 dal} weak; thin: **cp** needy; **note:** one can be poor without being needy.

poor *noun* [4434 ptokos] begging; lacking in anything.

Porkios *transliterated name* [4201 porkios] Porky.

portal, opening *noun* {6607, 6608 pethach} {6610 pithchon} {8179 shaar} {8651 tera} [2374 thura] an opening for entering and exiting.

portalguard *noun* {8652 tara} [2377 thuroros] one who guards a portal.

porter *noun* {7778 shoer} a janitor.

portico *noun* {4329 meycak} {4528 micderown} [4745 stoa] a porch, as being covered.

portion *noun* {4490 manah} a portion as measured out; **see** maneh.

portion, smooth, allotment *noun* {2506 cheleq} {2508 chalaq} {2511 challaq} {2513 chelqah} {2515 chaluqqah} {4255 machleqah} {4256 machaloqeth} {4521 menath} smoothness of tongue; usually an inheritance allotted by pebble.

possess *verb* {270 achaz} to have by seizing; verb of possession.

possess *verb* {3423 yaresh} [2932 ktaomai] to take hold; in some Hebrew stems, to dispossess.

possession *noun* [272 achuzzah] something seized.

possession *noun* {3424 yereshah} {3425 yerushshah} {4180 morash} {4181 morashah} {4476 mimshaq} that which is held on to.

possible, capable *adjective* [1415 dunatos] having sufficient dynamis; **see** dynamis.

posterity *noun* {5220 neked} from the root, to propagate; **see** offspring.

potentate *noun* {7333 razon} {7336 razan} one who possesses power.

Poti Phera *transliterated name* {6319 powtiyphera} the meaning uncertain; of Misrayim derivative.

potion, carousal *noun* {5435 cobe} a drinking revelry; a potion of carousing.

potsherd, pottery *noun* {2789 cheres} a piece of pottery.

potrage *noun* {5138 nazid} that which is boiled.

pouch *noun* {3219 yalqut} for gleanings, or for scrip.

pouch *noun* {3599 kiyc} [905 balantion] a money bag.

pounce *verb* {2907 tuws} to pounce upon, as a bird of prey.

pour, anoint, libate *verb* {4886 mashach} {5258 nacak} {5260 necak} {5480 cuwk} {8210 shaphach} [218 alipho] [4689 spendomai] [5548 chrio] symbolic of setting apart by libating (pouring on) of oil; of pouring a molten image.

pour, draw *verb* {7324 ruq} to pour in; to pour out.

pour, firm, form *verb* {3332 yatsaq} to pour out; to shape by pouring into a mold; to make firm.

pour, flow *verb* {5047 negad} {5064 nagar} [5140 nazel] to pour out; to flow out, as to clear the way.

pour, melt *verb* {5413 nathak} to flow; to liquify.

pour blood *verb* [130 haimatekchusia] as an effusion of blood.

pour (out) *verb* {6694 tsuwq}.

pour out, strip naked, empty *verb* {6168 arah} {6379 pakah} to empty; to empty by pouring; to strip bare; **see** naked.

poured (forth), (out) *verb* [1632a echeo] [1632b echuno] to pour forth; to bestow.

pouring *noun* {8211 shephek} a place where ashes are poured.

pouring, libation *noun* {5261 necak} {5262 necek} a pouring of worship; a pouring of images.

poverty *noun* {4544 mickenuth} {7389 rish} destitution.

power *noun* {2632 checen} {8632 teqoph} {8633 toqeph} [2904 kratos] ability.

powerful *adjective* {2626 chacin} {2634 chacon} [2900 krataios] [2903 kratistos] able.

praetorium *transliterated noun* [4232 praitorion] courtroom.

prancer *noun* {3753 karkarah} an animal that prances; probably a dromedary.

pray *verb* {6419 palai} {6739 tsela} [4336 proseuchomai] to entreat.

prayer *noun* {8605 tephillah} [4335 proseuche] an entreaty.

pre-evangelism *transliterated noun* [1860 epangelia] [1862 epangelma] an evangelism previously prepared, or previously evangelized; **see** evangelism; **cp** angel.

pre-evangelize *transliterated verb* [1861 epangelo] [4279 proepangellomai] [4283 prouangelizomai] [4293 prokatangelo] previously evangelized; an evangelism previously prepared for future evangelizing.

preach, preaching *verb* [2784 kerusso] to proclaim.

preacher *noun* [2783 keerux] proclaimer.

preaching *noun* [2782 keerugma] proclaiming.

prearrange *verb* [4384 protasso] previously arranged.

precede, anticipate, confront *verb* {6923 qadam} to front; **cp** east.

preceding, ancient, antiquity, east, easterly, eastern, eastward, formerly *noun* {6921 qadim} {6924 qedem} {6925 qodam} {6926 qidmah} {6927 qadmah} literally, the forefront; from the front.

precepts *plural noun* {6490 piqqudim} mandates.

LEXICON

precious (vastly) *adjective* [4185 poluteeles] [4186 polutimos] extremely valuable.

precious *noun* {4022 meged} highly regarded.

preciousnesses *plural noun* {4030 migdanahoth} that which is highly regarded.

precipitate *verb* {4048 magar} to yield up; to hurl from a precipice; to hurry.

precise (most) *adjective* [196 akribestatos] most exact.

precisely (inquire) *verb* [198 akriboo] to be exact.

precisely (more) *adverb* [197 akribesteron] [199 akribos] more exactly.

preciseness *noun* [195 akribia] exactness.

predetermine *verb* [4309 proorizo] [4388 protitheemi] to determine prior to occurrence.

preeminent *noun* {5330 netsach} most prominent.

preeminent cathedras *noun* [4410 protokathedria] the foremost seat; preeminence in council.

preeminent leader *noun* [4414 protostates] the most prominent leader at celebrations.

preeminent recliner *noun* [4411 protoklisia] the most prominent reclining place.

prevident *adjective* [4271 prodelos] known before all.

prefect, statue, station *noun* {5333 netsib} {plural 5460 seganin} {plural 5461 saganim} {6346, 6347 pechah} a stationed officer; that which is stationary; a station; also a statue.

preinscribe *verb* [4270 prographo] to write previously.

premeditate *verb* [4304 promeletao] to meditate prior to occurrence.

preparation *noun* [2091 hetoimasia] a making ready.

prepare *verb* [2090 hetoimazo] [2680 kataskuazo] [3903 paraskuazo] to prepare; make ready; equip.

prepare, establish *verb* {3559 kuwn} to set up.

prepared *adjective* [2092 hetoimos] prepared; ready.

preparedly *adverb* [2093 hetoimos] readily.

presbyter transliterated *noun* [4243 presbuo] [4245 presbuteros] an elder representative; the Hellene word for the congregational and ecclesiastical representatives.

presbytry transliterated *noun* [4242 presbia] the office of elder representative; corresponds to Old Covenant elder.

present *noun* {7862 shay} a gift.

press *noun* {6333 purah} a grape crusher.

press oil *verb* {6671 tsahar} to press out oil.

press, oppress *verb* {3905 lachats} literally, to press; to oppress.

press, sink, bend, descend, penetrate *verb* {5181 nachath} from the root, to sink; to go down; to press or lead down.

pressure, puff, expire soul *verb* {5301 naphach} [1634 ekpsucho] to breathe away one's soul; to pressure, as in a pressure cooker; and to puff; **cp** expire spirit.

presume, swell *verb* {6075 apha} to assume beforehand; an ascending, as swollen.

pretext *noun* {5931 illah} [4392 prophasis] a pretense.

prevail, able, can, enable *verb* {3201 yakol} {3202 yekel} {3546 kehal} [1410 dunamai] [2427 hikanoo] the dynamis to do; see dynamis.

prevail, empower, overpower *verb* {8280 sarah} {8630 taqaph} [2616 katadunastuo] [2729 katiskuo] [2901 krataioo] [2902 krato] to have ability over; to cause to have power.

prevail, strengthen, uphold, callous *verb* {553 amats} {555 omets} {2388 chazaq} {2393 chezqah} {5810 azaz} to enable physically; to become thickskinned.

prevail mightily *verb* {1396 gabar} might in verbal form, for which there is no English equivalent.

previously preached *verb* [4296 prokerusso] that which was proclaimed in advance; **cp** pre-evangelize.

prewitness *verb* [4303 promarturomai] to witness prior to occurrence.

prey, tear *noun* {2964 tereph} {2966 terephah} {5706 ad} a prey, as an object of attack; as being torn.

price *noun* {4242 mechiy} the payment.

price *noun* {4377 meker} the evaluation; the value to be paid; **cp** sell.

price, honour *noun* [5092 timee] of esteem; of value; money paid.

price, honour *verb* [5091 timao] to esteem; to value.

prickle *noun* {5544 cillon} a type of brier.

pride *noun* {7293 rahab} {7296 rohab} a vociferous boasting.

pride *noun* {7830 shachats} as in strutting.

priest, priestal precinct, priesthood; see SUMMARY: PRIEST.

prince *noun* {plural 4502 minnezarim} set apart.

prison guard *noun* [1200 desmophulax] one that guards a prison.

prison *noun* {3608 kele} {3628 kelu} [1201 desmoteerion] a place of binding.

prisoner *noun* [1202 desmotees] one that is bound.

private assembly *noun* {6116 atsereth} an assembly; a festival.

private counsel, councilmen *noun* {plural 4176 moetsoth} {5475 cowd} {5483 eta} {6098 etsah} [1012 boulee] [1013 boouleema] purpose; advice; advisors.

probe *verb* {2713 chaqar} to penetrate.

probe, probing *noun* {2714 chaqar} penetration.

proceeding, procedure, rising, springing *noun* {4161 motsa} {plural 4163 motsaoth} literally, the source of going forth, whether of persons, of water, of the sun.

procession *noun* {8418 tahalukah} an orderly walk; from the verb, to walk.

proclaim, recall, call *verb* {7121 qara} {7123 qera} [1941 epikaleomai] [2564 kaleo] [4341 proskaleomai] [4377 prophoneo] to call out; to call upon; to address; **cp** name.

proconsul *noun* [445 anthupatuo] [446 anthupatos] the highest officer.

produce *noun* {2981 yebuwl} {8393 tebuah} {8570 tenubah} the product of the soil.

produce, progeny *noun* [1081 gennema] offspring.

produce, promote *verb* {6329 puq} to bring forth.

profane, common *adjective* {2455 chol} [2839 koinos] that which is common; that which is held in common; that which is not hallowed.

profane *noun* {1352 goel} desecration.

profane *verb* {1351 gaal} [953 bebeloo] to cross the threshold in the sense of desecrating the holy.

profane, pierce, pluck *verb* {2490 chahal} {2610 chaneph} [2840 koinoo] to pierce a person; to pluck an instrument; to desecrate the hallowed.

profane, pierced *adjective* {2455 chol} {2491 chahal} [952 bebelos] of pierced (slaughtered) and profaned persons.

profaner *noun* {2611 chaneph} a desecrator.

profanity *noun* {2612 choneph} {2613 chanuphah} desecration.

profess *verb* [437 anthomologeomai] [3670 homologeoo] to homologize; to agree with words.

professedly *adverb* [3672 homologoumenos] confessedly.

profund *noun* [3671 homologia] homology.

profound *adjective* {5994 amiq} as unsearchable.

progenitors *noun* [4269 progonos] ancestors; forefathers.

progeny, produce *noun* [1081 gennema] offspring.

prognosis transliterated *noun* [4268 prognosis] foreknowledge.

prognosticate *verb* {5172 nachash} to predict.

prognostication *noun* {5173 nachash} a prediction.

prone participle suspend, hang *verb* {8511 tala} {8518 talah} to suspend.

proof *noun* [1382 dokime] a test; that which is tested.

proof *verb* {974 bachan} to test, as in a crucible.

proofing *verb* [1383 dokimion] that by which something is tested or proved.

prop, sustain, uphold *verb* {5564 camak} {8551 tamak} to prop up; with the hands, or with props.

proper *adjective* [433 aneko] to be proper; to attain unto.

prophecy transliterated *noun* {5016 nebuah} {5017 nebuah} [4394 prophetia] a foretelling prior to occurrence; does not mean a telling forth.

prophecy transliterated *verb* {5012 naba} {5013 neba} [4395 propheetuo] to foretell prior to occurrence; does not mean to tell forth.

prophet transliterated *noun* {5029 nebiy} {5030 nabiy} [4396 prophetes] one who foretells prior to occurrence; does not mean one who tells forth.

prophetess transliterated feminine *noun* {5031 nebiah} [4398 prophetis] a female who foretells prior to occurrence; does not mean one who tells forth.

prophetic transliterated *adjective* [4397 prophetikos] a foretelling; does not mean a telling forth.

propound *verb* {2330 chud} [394 anatithemi] to propose for consideration; see shew, show.

proselyte transliterated *noun* [4339 proselutos] one who has changed religions.

prosper, succeed *verb* {3787 kasher} {6743 tsaleach} {6744 tselach} to succeed; to press on.

prosperity *noun* {3574 kowsharah} {3788 kishron} success.

LEXICON

prostrate *verb* {5456 cagad} {5457 cegid} {7511 raphas} {7812, 7817 shachah} to lie with face to the soil as in doing obeisance.

protected *noun* {5336 natsiy} delivered.

prothesis *transliterated noun* {4286 prothesis} a setting forth of a thesis; the bread of the holies as displayed.

prothesis bread, face bread *transliterated noun* {6440 paneh} {3899 lechem} [4286 prothesis] [740 artos] the bread of the holy of holies as displayed; the face bread of the Old Covenant is identical to the prothesis bread of the New Covenant.

prototype *noun* [5296 hupotuposis] a type to be patterned after.

proud *adjective* {7295 rahab} as insolent; **note:** Yah Veh was never proud of His Son; but well-pleased.

prove, reprove, approve *verb* {3198 yakach} [1381 dokimazo] to prove; to accept or reject the proving.

proverb *noun* {4912 mashal} {4914 meshol} [3942 paroimia] an adage; a general truth of conduct expressed in a sententious form.

proverbialize, liken *verb* {4911 mashal} to present as a proverb; liken, as being equal; **see** equal.

prowl, observe *verb* {7789 shur} to survey; to spy out; **see** stroll.

prowl, yearn *verb* {8264 shaqaaq} to prowl as an animal; to greedily yearn for.

prowler, observer *noun* {7790 shur} a foe, as lying in wait; **see** stroll.

psalm *noun* [5568 psalmos] a sacred ode.

psalm, pluck *verb* {2167, 2168 zamar} [5567 psallo] as in plucking strings; **cp** strum.

psalm, psalming, pluck, plucking *noun* {2158, 2159 zamir} {2170 zemar} {2172 zimrah} {2176 zimrath} {4210 mizmor} a string, fruit, or twig as plucked.

psalmist, plucker *noun* {2171 zammar} plucker.

psalmpicks *plural noun* {4211 mazmerah} **note:** when the shalom of Yah Veh reigns, spears are turned into psalmpicks.

psalterion *transliterated noun* {6460 pecanterin} a transliteration of the Hellene psalterion; a lyre.

transliterated noun [5571 pseudes] phony.

pseudo apostles *transliterated noun* [5570 pseudapostolos] phony apostles.

pseudo brothers *noun* [5569 pseudadelphos] phony brothers.

pseudo doctors *noun* [5572 pseudodidakalos] phony doctors.

pseudo messiah *noun* [5580 pseudochristos] phony messiah.

pseudo prophets *transliterated noun* [5578 pseudoprophetes] phony prophets.

pseudo witnesses *noun* [5575 pseudomartur] phony witnesses.

pseudo witnessing *verb* [5576 pseudomarturia] phony witnessing.

pseudologists *transliterated noun* [5572 pseudologos] phony wordlists.

pseudonym *transliterated noun* [5581 pseudonumos] phony name.

Puah, Puvvah *transliterated name* {6312 puwah, puvvah} Blow Away.

pudenda *noun* {plural 4016 mabushim} {4589 maor} exposed part.

pudenda, socket *noun* {6596 poth} literally, a hole.

puff *verb* [4154 pneo] [4157 pneee] to blow hard; from pneuma (spirit).

puff *verb* {5301 naphach} [1720 emphusao] to blow hard; from nephesh; the Septuagint translates naphach to emphuzao; this word is used of Yah Veh puffing into Adam; of the Holy Spirit puffing into the dry bones; and of Yah Shua puffing into the disciples.

puff *verb* {5395 nasham} {5398 nashaph} to blow away; from nephesh.

puff, breathe *verb* {6315 puwach} **cp** spirit {7307 ruwach}.

puff, expire soul, pressure *verb* {5301 naphach} [1634 ekpsucho] to breathe away one's soul; to pressure, as in a pressure cooker; and to puff; **cp** expire spirit.

puffed up *adjective* [5448 phusioo] as in proud.

puffings up *noun* [5450 phusiosis] as in proud.

pull (down) (out) *verb* {5421 natha} {5422 nathats} to tear out; to tear down.

pull, pull stakes, pluck *verb* {5265 naca} to pluck; to pull up; to pull the tent stakes when moving; **read** Numbers 33:3–48.

pull, take, put (down) [2507 kathaereo] to take down, demolish.

pulling down *noun* [2506 kathairesis] a taking down, demolition.

pulpit *noun* {1687 debir} the furniture from whence the word is worded.

pulverize *verb* {1854 dahkak} {1855 dekak} {7833 shachaq} to crush to powder; to vapourize.

pulverized, thin *adjective* {1851 dak} thin; beaten small; emaciated.

punch *verb* [2852 kolaphizo] to strike with the fist; treat with violence.

Puniy *transliterated name* {6324 puwniy} Of Pun.

pupil *noun* {892 babah} the hollow of the eye.

pupil, mid, middle *noun* {380 iyshown} literally, the middle man of the eye; the middle of the night.

Pur, Purim *transliterated name, noun* {6332 puwr, plural puriyim} a celebration of deliverance; **read** Ester 9:24–32.

Purah *transliterated name* {6513 purah} Foliage.

pure *adjective* {1249 bar} {2889 tahor} physically, soulically, or mentally, completely pure.

pure *adjective* {2134 zak} {2135 zakah} [2513 katharos] clean; clear; catharized.

pure *noun* {2890, 2891 tehor} completely pure.

pure *noun, participle* {6337 paz} {6338 pazaz} refined; made pure.

pure, cleanse, polish *verb* {1305 barar} [1571 ekkathairo] clarify; catharize; **cp** purify.

purification *noun* {plural 4795 maruqim} {8562 tamruq} clarification; catharization.

purify *verb* {2135 zakah} {2141 zakak} {2891 taher} [2511 katharizo] physically, soulically, or mentally, to cause to be completely pure.

purifying *noun* [2512 katharismos] [2514 katharotees] a washing off; an expiation.

purity *noun* {1252 bor} {2136 zakuw} clarity; catharized.

purity, purification *noun* {2890 tehor} {2891 taher} {2892 tohar} {2893 tohorah} physically, soulically, or mentally, completely pure.

pursue *verb* {7291 radaph} to run after.

pus *verb* {2990 yabbel} the excretion of a running sore.

push, butt *adjective* {5056 naggach} butting, as vicious.

push, butt *verb* {5055 nagach} to butt with the horns; to war against.

pustules *plural noun* {76 ababuah} eruptions of pus.

Put *transliterated name* {6316 put} a son of Ham; his descendants.

put, cast, lie *verb* [906 ballo] to throw.

put, set, place *verb* {7760, 7761 suwm} {7896 shith} {8239 shaphath} {8271 shathah} to put in place.

Puthiy *transliterated name* {6336 puwthiy} Hinge; Of Puth.

Puti El *transliterated name* {6317 putiel} Contempt of El.

putrefied *adjective* [4550 sapos] [4595 seepo] rotten; worthless.

putrid *adjective* {8182 shoar} offensive; **cp** horrible.

putridity *noun* {4716 maq} a moldy mess.

Python *transliterated name* [4436 puthon] a species of snake used in pagan worship.

Q

qab *transliterated noun* {6894 qab} a scoop of dry measure.

Qabse El *transliterated name* {6909 qabtseel} Gathered of El.

Qadesh *transliterated name* {6946 qadesh} Hallowed.

Qadesh Barnea *transliterated name* {6947 qadeshbarnea} Hallowed Field of Wandering.

Qadmi El *transliterated name* {6934 qadmiel} Ancient of El.

Qadmoniy *transliterated name* {6935 qadmoniy} Ancient.

Qallay *transliterated name* {7040 qallay} Trifle.

Qamon *transliterated name* {7056 qamown} Raised.

Qanah *transliterated name* {7071 qanah} [2580 kana] Reedy; **cp** Reed Sea.

Qareach *transliterated name* {7143 qareach} Balden.

Qarqa *transliterated name* {7173 qarqa} Floor.

Qarqor *transliterated name* {7174 qarqor} Undermine.

Qartah *transliterated name* {7177 qartah} City.

Qartan *transliterated name* {7178 qartan} City.

Qatan *transliterated name* {6997 qatan} Small.

Qattath *transliterated name* {7005 qattath} Littleness.

Qayin *transliterated name* {7014 qayin} [2535 kain] Chattelizer.

Qayiniy *transliterated name* {7014 qayin} {7017 qeyniy} Of Qayin.

LEXICON

Qedar *transliterated name* {6938 qedar} Drakened.
Qedemah *transliterated name* {6929 qedemah} Precedence.
Qedemoth *transliterated name* {6932 qedemowth} Precedings.
Qedesh *transliterated name* {6943 qedesh} Hallowed.
Qehath *transliterated name* {6955 qehath} Allied.
Qehathiy *transliterated name* {6956 qohathiy} Of Qehath.
Qehelathah *transliterated name* {6954 qehelathah} Congregated.
Qeilah *transliterated name* {7084 qeiyah} Citadel.
Qelayah *transliterated name* {7041 qelayah} Abased.
Qelita *transliterated name* {7042 qeliya} Maiming.
Qemu El *transliterated name* {7055 qemuel} Raised of El.
Qenath *transliterated name* {7079 qenath} Chattel.
Qenaz *transliterated name* {7073 qenaz} Hunter.
Qenaziy *transliterated name* {7074 qenizziy} Of Qenaz.
Qeren Hap Puch *transliterated name* {7163 qerenhappuwch} Horn of Stibium.
Qerioth *plural transliterated name* {7152 qeriyowth} Cities.
Qeros *transliterated name* {7026 qeroc} Ankled.
Qesem *transliterated name* {7081 qecem} [2973 kosam] Divination.
Qesiah *transliterated name* {7103 qetsiyah} Cassia.
Qesis *transliterated name* {7104 qetsiyts} Chopped Off.
Qeturah *transliterated name* {6989 qetuwrath} Incensed.
Qeynan *transliterated name* {7018 qeynan} [2536 kainan] Nest.
Qibroth Hat Taavah *plural transliterated name* {6914 qibrowthbattaavah} Tombs of Desire.
Qibsayim *dual transliterated name* {6911 qibsayim} Double Heap.
Qidron *transliterated name* {6939 qidron} [2748 kedron] Dusky.
Qinah *transliterated name* {7016 qiynah} Lamentation.
Qir *transliterated name* {7024 qiyr} Wall.
Qir Hareseth *transliterated name* {7025 qiyrchareseth} Wall of Pottery.
Qiryath Arba *transliterated name* {7153 qiryatharba} City of the Four Giants.
Qiryath Arim *transliterated name* {7157 qiryathariym} City of Forests.
Qiryath Husoth *plural transliterated name* {7155 qiryathchutsowth} City of Outways.
Qiryath Sannah *transliterated name* {7158 qiryathcannah} City of Twigs.
Qiryath Sepher *transliterated name* {7158 qiryathcepher} City of a Scroll.
Qiryathaim *dual transliterated name* {7156 qiryathayim} Double City.
Qish *transliterated name* {7027 qish} [2797 kis] Bow.
Qishi *transliterated name* {7029 qiyshiy} Bowed.
Qishon *transliterated name* {7028 qiyshown} Ensnared.
Qishyon *transliterated name* {7191 qishyown} Stubborn.
Qitron *transliterated name* {7003 qitrown} Incensed.
Qola Yah *transliterated name* {6964 qolayah} Voice of Yah.
Qorach *transliterated name* {7141 qorach} [2879 kore] Baldened.
Qorachiy *transliterated name* {7145 qorchiy} Of Qorach.
qorban *transliterated noun* {7133 qorban} [2878 korban] a hallowed oblation; **see** oblation.
Qore *transliterated name* {6981 qore} Called.
Qos *transliterated name* {6976 qowts} Thorn.
quadruped *noun* [5074 tetrapous] four footed.
quake *noun* {7494 raash} a vibrating; a quivering.
quake *verb* [1949 huwm] {7322 ruph} {7493 raash} to vibrate; to quiver.
quake *verb* [5120 noot] to quake.
quake, glutton *participle* [2151 zalal] to shake; to eat in excess.
quake, quiver *verb* {7264 ragaz} {7265 ragaz} to quiver; in anger, or fear.
quake, shake, glutton *participle* {2151 zalal} to quake; to shake; to eat in excess; **cp** drunkard.
quantity, formula *noun* [4971 mathkuneth] a measured proportion of portions.
quarried rock *noun* [2991 laxutos] a rock, as fashioned, as distinct from a natural rock.
quarry, arrow *noun* [4551 macca] a quarry, in which stones are ejected; a missile, as projecting.
quarry, hammer *noun* [4717 maqqabah] [4718 maqqebeth] that which is used to pound; a quarry, from which is

quarter *noun* [2835 kodrantes] a quarter coin.
quickly *adverb* [4120 meherah] promptly.
quicksand *noun* [4950 surtis] sand that yields to pressure.
quietly *adverb* [3814 lat] silently; **cp** hush.
quit *verb* [2976 yaash] to desist.
quiver, quake *verb* {7264 ragaz} {7265 ragaz} to quiver; in anger, or fear.
quiver, tingle *verb* [6750 tsalal] to vibrate.
quivering *adjective* {7268 raggaz} timid.
quivering *noun* {7269 rogsah} trepidation.
Qusha Yah *transliterated name* {6984 qushayah} Snared of Yah.

R

Raam Yah *transliterated name* {7485 raamyah} Thunder of Yah.
Rab Shaqeh *transliterated name* {7262 rabshaqeh} Great Butler.
Rabbah *transliterated feminine name* {7237 rabbah} Feminine of {7227 rab} rabbi.
rabbi; **see** SUMMARY: DOCTOR, DOCTRINE, RABBI:
race *noun* [1408 dromos] figuratively, the course of life, or occupation.
race, oppression *noun* {4793 merots} {4794, 4835 merutsah} a test of running; the pressures of life.
Rachab *transliterated name* {7343 rachab} [4460 rhaab] [4477 rhachab] Large; Broad.
Racham *transliterated name* {7357 racham} Mercy.
Rachel *transliterated name* {7354 rachel} [4478 rhachel] Ewe (lamb).
Radday *transliterated name* {7288 radday} Domineering.
rafts *plural noun* {7513 raphcodah} as a flat on the water.
rage *noun* [2195 zaam] {7108 qetsaph} {7109 qetsaph} {7110 qetseph} [3950 parorgismos] raving anger.
rags *plural noun* [5499 cechabahoth] as ripped or torn.
Rahab *transliterated name* {7294 rahab} Proud.
railing *noun* {7507 rephidah} as spread along.
rain *noun* [4306 matar] [1028 brokee] [5205 huetos] showers; **cp** downpour.
rain *verb* [4305 matar] to rain; **cp** downpour.
rain, moisten *verb* [1026 breko] to moisten, as by a shower.
rain (early) *noun* [3138 yoreh] [4175 moreh] autumnal showers.
raise, exalt, lift, loft *verb* {7311, 7313 rum} {7318 romam} {7426 ramam} to lift hand, heart, offering, voice; to oath; **see** exalt.
raise, rise, rose, rouse, arise, arose *verb* {6965, 6966 qum} [450 anisteemi] [1453 egiro] to stand forth; to rise; to be stirred up, awakened.
raise (up), exalt, extol *verb* [5549 salal] from the root, to mound up; **see** selah; **cp** halal.
raisin cakes *plural noun* [6778 tsammuq] bakings of dried grapes.
Rachal *transliterated name* {7403 rachal} Merchant.
Ram *transliterated name* {7410 ram} [689 aram] Lofted.
ram, saddle, meadow *noun* [3733 kar] literally, plumpness, as in a full grown lamb; padding, as in a saddle; a meadow for sheep.
Ram Yah *transliterated name* [7422 ramyah] Lofted of Yah.
Ramah *transliterated name* [7414 ramah] [707 arimathai] [4471 rhama] Lofty Altar; **cp** bamah.
Ramah *transliterated name* [7484 ramah] Thunder.
ramah *transliterated noun* [7413 ramah] a lofted altar; **cp** bamah.
Ramah Ham Mispheh *transliterated name* [7434 ramathhammitspeh] Ramah of the Watch Tower.
Ramah Lechi *transliterated name* [7437 ramathlechi] Ramah of a Jaw.
Ramahayim Sophim *transliterated name* [7436 ramathayimtsowphiym] Double Ramah of Watchers.
Ramahiy *transliterated name* [7435 ramathiy] Of Ramah.
ramble on *verb* [7300 rud] mentally, soucally, or physically, to wander about.
rampart, siege *noun* [4692 matsur] [4694 matsor] a mound for protection; a seizing.
rank, appraise, apprise, arrange, array, line up *verb* [6186 arak] to line up in a row; to put in order.
rank, arrangement, formation *noun* [4633 maarak] [4634 maarakah] [4635 maareketh] an arrangement (physical or mental).

LEXICON

rank, row, shingle *noun* {7713 sederah} {7795 sorah} that which is regulated in rows.
ranks of five *noun* {2571 chamush} regulated rows of five.
ransom, bribe *noun* {7810 shachad}.
rape *verb* {7693 shagal} to ravish in copulation; **see** ravage.
Rapha, Raphaim *transliterated name* {singular 7497, 7498 rapha} {plural 7497 rephaim} Healer.
Rapha El *transliterated name* {7501 raphael} Healer of El.
Rapha Yah *transliterated name* {7509 rephayah} {4488 rhesa} Healer of Yah.
Raphu *transliterated name* {7505 raphu} Healed.
Raqqath *transliterated name* {7557 raqqath} Expanded.
Raqqon *transliterated name* {7542 raqqown} Emaciated.
rash, balden, polish *verb* {4178 mowrat} {4803 marat} {4804 merat} to rub (off); to pluck; to cause to be bald.
rasp *noun* {4883 massor} an instrument for rasping.
ravage *noun* {7701 shod} a devastation.
ravage *verb* {7703 shadad} {7736 shud} to devastate.
razor, sheath, knife *noun* {8593 taar} a knife, or a razor, as making bare; a sheath, as being bare.
Rea Yah *transliterated name* {7211 reayah} Seen of Yah.
reach, attain, overtake *verb* {5381 nasag} to attain by reaching for.
reach, encounter, intercede *verb* {6293 paga} to impinge.
reach, touch, plague *verb* {5060 naga} to touch heavily; to strike.
read *verb* {314 anaginosko} to decipher.
reading *noun* 320 anagnosis that which is read.
ready *verb* {6257 athad} to prepare.
ready, treasured, impending *adjective* {6259, 6264 athud} {6263 athid} prepared; treasured.
rebel *verb* {4775 marad} {4784 marah} {6586 pasha} {7279 ragan} to renounce; to resist.
rebel, flap *verb* {4754 mahrah} to flap one's self; to flap one's wings; to rebel.
rebellion *noun* {4776 merad} {4777 mered} {4805 meriy} {6588 pasha} renunciation; resistance.
rebellious *adjective* {4779 marad} {4780 maruth}.
rebirth *verb* {313 anagenna} to be reborn.
rebuild *verb* {456 anoikodomeo} to build again.
rebuke *noun* {1606 geahrah} a chiding.
rebuke *verb* {1605 gahgar} to chide.
rebuke, admonish *verb* {2008 epitimao} to charge sharply.
recall, call, proclaim *verb* {7121 qara} {7123 qera} {1941 epikaleomai} {2564 kaleo} {4341 proskaleomai} {4377 prosphoneo} to call out; to call upon; to address; **cp** name.
receive in full, distant *verb* {568 apeko} to have out; to keep away.
receive, wait, await, expect *verb* {2442 chakah} {3176 yachal} {6960 qavah} {324 anadekomai} {362 anameno} {553 apekedekomai} {4327 prosdekomai} {4328 prosdokao} {4329 prosdokia} to anticipate; to wait expectantly, patiently; **cp** take.
Rechab Am *transliterated name* {7346 rechabam} {4497 rhoboam} Enlarged the People.
Rechab Yah *transliterated name* {7345 rechayah} Enlarged of Yah.
Rechob *transliterated name* {7340 rechob} Broadway.
Rechoboth *plural transliterated name* {7344 rechoboth} Broadways.
Rechum *transliterated name* {7348 rechuw} Merciful.
recline *verb* {347 anaklino} the posture when eating; **cp** repose.
recognize, discern, distinguish, estrange, notice *verb* {5234 nakar} to acknowledge; to scrutinize; to distinguish between; to ignore, hence to be estranged.
recompense *noun* {468 antapodoma} {469 antapodosis} that which is given back.
recompense *verb* {467 antapodidomi} to give back.
reconcile (fully) *verb* {604 apokatallasso} completely restore.
reconcile *verb* {2644 katallasso} to restore.
reconciliation *noun* {2643 katallagee} restoration.
record *noun* {1799 dikrown} a register.
recoup *verb* {5756 uz} to restore strength.
red hot stones, pavement *noun* {7528 ratsaph} {7529 retseph} as used for baking; as used for laying a pavement.
redeem *verb*, **redeemer** *participle* {1350 gaal} {6299 padah} {3084 lutroo} {3086 lutrotes} to ransom; a ransomer; **cp** market.
redeemed *noun* {plural 6302 paduim} the ransomed.

redemption *noun* {1353 geullah} {6304 peduth} {6306 pidon} {487 antilutron} {629 apolutrosis} {3083 lutron} {3085 lutrosis} the ransom; the setting free.
Reed (Sea) *name* {5488 cuph} {5492 cuphah} [2063 eruthra] [2281 thalassa] of reeds; Reed Sea; **note:** Reed is mistranslated Red.
Reela Yah *transliterated name* {7480 reelayah} Shaken of Yah.
reem *noun* {7214 reem} a wild ox.
refine *verb* {2212 zaqaq} {6884 tsaraph} to purify; **cp** test; **cp** proof.
refiner *noun* {6885 tsorephi} one that refines.
refire *verb* {329 anazopureo} to fire up again.
reflourish *verb* {330 anathallo} to flourish again.
refrain, restrain, retain *verb* {3607 kala} {6113 atsar} to restrict; to hold back.
refresh *verb* {404 anapsuko} recovery of breath.
refreshing *noun* {403 anapsuxis} recovery of breath.
refuge *noun* {4152 muwadah} {4224 machabe} {plural 4224 machabeim} {4268 machaceh} {4733 miqlat} a place of protection.
refuge (seek) *verb* {2620 chacah} {2622 chacuth} to flee to for protection.
refuse *adjective* {3986 maen} {plural 3987 maenim} unwilling.
refuse *verb* {3985 maen} {3988 maac} to reject; to spurn; also to disappear.
refute *verb* {471 antepo} an answer instead of; as opposed to.
regard, guard, on guard *verb* {5201 natar} {5202 nater} {5341 natsar} {8104 shamar} {plural 8107 shimmurim} {8108 shomrah} {8176 shaar} [5083 tereo] in the sense of protecting from harm, observing observances, obeying misvoth.
regensis *noun* {3824 palingenesia} rebirth; renovation; restoration.
region *noun* {5561 chora} an area.
regirt *verb* {328 anazonnumi} to girt again.
regret *verb* {3338 metameல்லomai} to be sorry; **cp** repent.
regurgitate, ascend, holocaust, mount *verb* {5927, 5928 alah} to ascend, as a mountain; to mount an animal; to regurgitate food; to ascend a holocaust; **see** holocaust, *noun*.
reign *noun* {4474 mimshal} {4475 memshalah} the office of a sovereign.
reign *verb*, **sovereign** *participle* {4427 malak} {4910 mashal} {936 basiluo} to rule; the officiating of a sovereign; **see** sovereign.
reign, equal *noun* {4915 moshel} equal, in the sense of being able to liken unto, or compare with; reign; of being more than equal; of being over.
reinforce *verb* {5790 uth} to hasten; to encourage.
reinforcement *noun* {8136 shinan} to reinforce by doubling, or by duplicating.
reinforcing *participle* {4834 marats} pressuring; irritating.
reins *plural noun* {2910 tuwchah} {3629 keliy} [3510 nephros] literally, kidneys; symbolic of the innermost thoughts.
reiterate, repeat, alter, change, double, duplicate, fold *verb* {8132 shana} {8133 shena} {8138 shanah} to reinforce by folding, by doubling; may include disguise, camouflage.
reject *verb* {5010 naar} to not accept.
rejoice *verb* {2302 chadah} {2868 teeb} {7797 sus} to cheer.
rejoicing *noun* {8342 sason} a cheerfulness.
rejoicing *verb* {2304, 2305 chedvah} cheering.
rejuvenate *verb* {7375 rutaphash} made juvenile.
Rekah *transliterated name* {7397 rekah} Tenderized.
relax *verb* {7599 shaan} to loll.
relaxation, relaxed *noun* {7600 shaanan} [425 anesis] relaxation, as being secure; relief.
release *noun* {8059 shemittah} the negation of a debt.
release *verb* {8058 shamat} [525 apallasso] to loose; to let fall, or drop.
release, abandon *verb* {8281 sharah} to free.
release, abandon, forsake, leave (behind) *verb* {5800 azab} [1459 enkatalipo] to leave behind; in a good sense, to let remain over; in a bad sense, to abandon.
release, allow, forgive, forsake, leave *verb* [863 aphieemi] to send forth.
release, loose *verb* [3089 luo] to set free; to unbind.
release, unravel *verb* {8271 shere} to let loose.
released *noun* {8293 sheruth} set free; separate; freedom of persons.
releasing, forsaking, leaving *noun* {5805 azubah} the letting loose of, or from.
relive *verb* [326 anazao] to live again.

LEXICON

remain, remaining *verb* {3498 yathar} to be left over.
remain, return, behave, overturn *verb* {390 anastrepho} [396 anatrepo] to turn; in the manner one turns (behaves); to turn over; to overthrow.
remainder, remnant, rest, exceeding *noun* {3499 yether} the remainder, those left over.
Remal Yah *transliterated name* {7425 remalyah} Bedecked of Yah.
remeasure *verb* {488 antimetreo} to remeter.
remember, memorialize *verb* {2142 zakar} {7876 shayah} [3403 mimeeskoma] [3415 mnaomai] [3421 mneemonuo] [5279 hupomimneesko] an acting of the memory; to hold in remembrance.
remember, remind *verb* [363 anamimnesko] to recollect; to remind.
remembrance *noun* [364 anamneesis] [3417 mnia] [3420 mneeme] [5280 hupomneesis] a recollection; a memory.
remind *verb* [3560 noutheteo] to caution; to recall to mind; **see** mind.
remnant, rest, exceeding, remainder *noun* {3499 yether} the remainder, those left over.
remove *verb* [522 apairo] to lift off.
remove *verb* [851 apaireo] to take away.
remove, depart *verb* [5253 nacag] to retreat.
remove, transcribe, antique *verb* {6275 athaq} that which has aged; to take away; to take down, as in transcribing.
removed far, far removed *verb* {7368 rachaq} from the root, to widen.
renew, renewing, renovate *verb* [2318 chadash] [340 anakainizo] [341 anakainoo] [342 anakainosis] [365 ananeo] to make new again; to rebuild; to retore; **see** new.
repatee *verb* [2160 eutrapelia] to say in ready and witty reply.
repeat, alter, change, double, duplicate, fold, reiterate *verb* {8132 shana} {8133 shena} {8138 shanah} to reinforce by folding, by doubling; may include disguise, camouflage.
repent *verb* [3340 metanoeo] to be sorry afterwards; **cp** regret.
repentance *noun* [3341 metanoya] being sorry afterwards.
Rephach *transliterated name* {7506 rephach} Support.
report *verb* [1310 diapheemizo] to divulge; to tell thoroughly.
report, fame, hearing, notoriety *noun* {8052 shemuah} {8088 shema} {8089 shoma} [189 akoe] that which is heard; an announcement; a rumor.
repose *noun* [7258 rebets] a place of rest.
repose *verb* {7252 reba} [345 anakimai] [376 anapipto] [1879 epanapauomai] to prostrate; to rest; the posture when eating; **cp** recline.
repose, lay *verb* [2621 katakimai] to lie down; recline at a meal.
reproach *noun* [2781 cherpah] [3680 onidismos] [3681 onidos] a discredit; disgrace.
reproach *verb* [2778 charaph] [3679 onidizo] to discredit; to disgrace.
reproof *noun* [8433 tokachath] correction; refutation; noun of reprove; **see** reprove.
reprove, approve, prove *verb* [3198 yakach] [1381 dokimazo] to prove; to accept or reject the proving.
reputation *noun* {5082 nedibah} as of nobility.
req, vain, vanity, void, empty *adjective* {1892 hebel} {*transliteration* 7385 riq} {*transliteration* 7386 req} [7723 shav] {*transliteration* 4469 rhaka} emptiness; voidness; figuratively, stupid.
Reqem *transliterated name* {7552 reqem} Embroidered.
request *noun* [4862 mishalah] an asking.
require, seek, enquire, examine, inquire *verb* {1875 darash} to ask; to seek; **cp** beseech.
rescue *verb* {6308 pada} [4506 rhuomai] to retrieve; to pull from the current.
rescue, escape *verb* {4422 malat} literally, to smooth; to slip away; to be slipped away.
rescue, strip, equip *verb* {2502 chalats} literally, to strip for hostility; to strip out of danger.
rescue, strip, escape *verb* {5337, 5338 natsal} to snatch away; favorably, or unfavorably.
resend *verb* [375 anapempo] to send again.
Reseph *transliterated name* {7530 retseph} Red Hot Stones.
reservoir *noun* {650 aphiyq} a gathering of water; **see** gather.
reservoir *noun* [4724 miqvah] a congregating of waters; **see** congregate.
reside, residence *verb* {2082 zabal} {7871 shibah} to dwell.

residence *noun* {2073 zebul} a dwelling.
resident *noun* [1927 epidemeo] a dweller.
Resin *transliterated name* {7526 retsiyn} Pleasing.
resistance *noun* {8617 tequmah} ability to rise up against.
resound, glitter *verb* {6670 tsahal} to stand out; in color, or in sound.
respiration, respite *noun* {7305 revach} {7309 revachah} the inspiration and expiration; a spiritual respite; a spirit of rest; **see** spirit; **see** wind.
respire, scent *verb* {7304 ravach} {7306 ruwach} ruwach is the verb of spirit, wind; literally, to breathe freely; to refresh; to sense through the movement of air; **cp** breathe.
resplend *verb* [1584 eklampo] to be resplendent; to shine brilliantly.
respond, restore, return, turn (away) (back) (from) (to) *verb* {7725 shub} {8421 tub} from the root, to turn back; as to reply, to come back.
response, return, turn *noun* {8666 teshubah} a recurrence; a reply, as returned.
rest *adjective* {7282 ragea} restful.
rest *noun* {1679 dobe} {4494 manoach} {4496 menuchah} {4774 margeah} {5118 nuwach} {5183 nachath} {8253 sheqet} [372 anapausis] repose; tranquility.
rest *verb* {5117 nuwach} {8252 shaqat} [373 anapauo] to repose.
rest, exceeding, remainder, remnant *noun* {3499 yether} the remainder, those left over.
rest, split, blink, calm *verb* {7280 raga} this word is derived from two roots; blink and split, as momentary; calm and rest, as soothing.
rest in habitation *verb* {5115 navah} to rest, as at home; **see** habitation of rest.
restake *verb* [388 anastaroo] to stake again; **see** stake; **read** Hebrews 6:6.
resting place *noun* [4769 marbets] {4771 margoa} a place to rest.
restless *adjective* [180 akatapaustos] without rest; pauseless.
restore *verb* [600 apokathistemi] to reconstitute.
restore *verb* {8627 teqan} to set straight.
restore, return, turn (away) (back) (from) (to) respond *verb* {7725 shub} {8421 tub} from the root, to turn back; as to reply, to come back.
restrain the heel, trip the heel *verb* {6117 aqab} to seize by holding the heel.
restrain, retain, refrain *verb* {3607 kala} {6113 atsar} to restrict; to hold back.
restrainer *noun* {6115 etser} one that holds back; **see** abstinence.
restraint *noun* {6115 otser} a holding back; **see** abstinence.
resurrection *noun* [386 anastasis] a rising again.
retain, refrain, restrain *verb* {3607 kala} {6113 atsar} to restrict; to hold back.
retreat *verb* {7734 sug} to back off.
retreat, flight *noun* {4498 manohs} {4499 menusah} a place to flee to; a fleeing.
retribution *noun* {8005 shillem} {8011 shillumah} [489 antimisthia] retribution; reward in a negative sense.
return, behave, overturn, remain *verb* [390 anastrepho] [396 anatrepo] to turn; in the manner one turns (behaves); to turn over; to overthrow.
return, turn (away) (back) (from) (to) respond, restore *verb* {7725 shub} {8421 tub} from the root, to turn back; as to reply, to come back.
return, turn, response *noun* {8666 teshubah} a recurrence; a reply, as returned.
returning *noun* {7870 shibah} a turning back.
Reu *transliterated name* {7466 reu} [4466 rhagan] Friend.
Reu Ben *transliterated name* {7205 reuben} [4502 rouben] See a Son.
Reu Beniy *transliterated name* {7206 reuweniy} Of Reu Ben.
Reu El *transliterated name* {7467 reuel} Friend of El.
reverse (well), reverence (well) *verb* [2124 eulabia] [2125 eulabeomai] [2150 eusebia] [2151 eusebeo] to well venerate.
reverently *adverb* [2153 eusebos] venerationally.
revolt *noun* {5627 carah} turned away.
revolt, revolting *verb* {5637 sarar} turning away.
revolution, circuit *noun* {8622 tequphah} a revolution of days; a revolving around.
rhema *transliterated noun* [4487 rhema] a verbalization; the noun of rhetorize; **cp** word.

LEXICON

rhetorically *transliterated adverb* {4490 rhetos} verbally.
rhetorize *transliterated verb* {4483 reo} to express verbally.
rib, side *noun* {5967 ala} {6763 tsela} literally, a curve or an arch; a rib of a body; a rib of a structure.
Ribay *transliterated name* {7380 riybay} Contentious.
Riblah {1689 diblah} {7247 riblah} Fertile.
Ribqah *transliterated name* {7259 ribqah} [4479 rhebekka] Fetterer.
rich, riches *noun* {6223 ashir} {6239 osher} {plural 6251 ashteroth} enriched with riches; **see** enrich.
riddle *noun* {2420 chidah} a question, proposition, or rhyme worded so as to rouse conjecture.
riddle, vertebrae *noun* {7001 qetar} a knot; as that which is to be unravelled.
ride, drive *verb* {7392 rakab} to place upon; to despatch.
ridges *plural noun* {7406 rekek} a mountain ridge.
ridicule *noun* {7047 qelec} {7048 qallacah} a disparagement.
ridicule *verb* [2606 katagelao] to laugh at; to deride.
ridicule *verb* {7046 qalac} to disparage.
ridicule, entertain, laugh *verb* {6711 tsachaq} {6712 tsechoq} {7832 sechag} to laugh; to laugh at; to laugh at in defiance.
ridicule, laugh, laughter *noun* {6712 tsechoq} {7814 sechoq} laughter; a laughing at; a laughing at in defiance.
right *adjective* {3227 yeminiy} {3233 yeminay} **see** right *noun*; **cp** left.
right *noun* {3225 yamiyn} that which is opposite the left; **cp** left; example: when facing north, the east; most versions erroneously insert the words *hand*, or *side*; we sit not on Yah Shua's right hand, or on his left hand; but at his left, and at his right.
right *verb* {3231 yaman} to cause to go to the right.
rim *noun* {3749 karkob} a rim as encircling.
rim, arch, back, bow, brow *noun* {1354 gab} that which is bowed, curved; also the top or rim.
Rimmon Peres *transliterated name* {7428 rimmonperets} Pomegranate Split (of Separation).
ringleaders, rims *plural noun* {5633 ceren} instigators; rims of wheels.
ringstraked *adjective* {6124 aqod} round, circular stripes.
rip, shred *verb* {7167 qara} from the root, to rend.
ripen, spice, embalm *verb* {2590 chanat} from the root, to spice.
ripen, wean, deal *verb* {1580 gamal} transact.
ripped *verb* [1284 diarrhesso] to tear apart with force.
rise early, seek early *verb* {7836 shachar} to be early.
rise, rose, rouse, arise, arose, raise *verb* {6965, 6966 qum} [393 anatello] [450 anisteemi] [1453 egiro] to stand forth; to rise; to be stirred up, awakened.
risen being *noun* {3351 yequm} a being who has risen.
rising *noun* {4217 mizrach} [395 anatole] the rising (of the sun); the east; **cp** lowering.
rising *noun* {7012 qimah} an arising.
rising, springing, proceeding, procedure *noun* {4161 motsa} {plural 4163 motsaoth} literally, the source of going forth, whether of persons, of water, of the sun.
Risphah *transliterated name* {7532 ritspah} Hot Stone.
Risya *transliterated name* {7525 ritsya} Pleased.
rivalry *noun* [2052 erithia] a desire to put one's self forward; factiousness.
river, rivulet *noun* {2975 year} {5103 nehar} {5104 nahar} {6388 peleg} a stream of water.
roaming *verb* {7904 shakah} to roam.
roar *verb* [1993 hamah] to hum, as in commotion.
roar *verb* {7580 shaag} to rumble.
roar, uproar, waste *noun* {7588 shaon} a rumble; a destruction.
roaring *noun* {7581 shagah} a rumbling.
roaring lion *noun* {3833 lebia *plural* labaim} {7826 shachal} a lion, as a roarer.
roaring lioness *noun* {3833 lebeoth *plural* lebaoth} a lioness, as the fiercer.
roaring waste *noun* {7584 shaavah} a wasting away.
robe, robing *noun* {1545 gelowm} {3830, 3831 lebush} {4403 malbwsh} {8509 takrik} {8516 talbosheth} a wraparound; **see** enrobe.
rock *noun* {2906 tur} {5553 cela} {6697 tsur} [4073 petra] [4074 petros] a rock; a piece of rock; **cp** Petros.
rock *noun* {plural 3710 kephim} a hollow rock; **cp** Kepha.
rocky *adjective* [4075 petrodees] rock-like; **cp** Petros.
rod *noun* {2415 choter} [4464 rhabdos] rod, or twig; also a

rod of royalty.

rod *noun* {4294 mattah} an offshoot, branch, sprout of a tree; of a people; **note:** both rod and scion are translated *tribe* in both covenants of most versions; **cp** scion; **cp** sceptre.
Rohagah *transliterated name* {7303 rowhagah} Outcry.
roll *noun* {1549 gillayon} [4039 megillah] something rolled up; a roll of a scroll; a little scroll.
roll *noun* {megillah} a roll of a scroll.
roll *verb* {1556 gahlal} to roll; to roll up; to roll away.
roll *verb* {6428 palash} to roll, as in dust or ashes; an expression of humbling.
Roman *transliterated name* [4513 rhomaikos] [4514 rhomaios] [4515 rhomaisti] of Rome.
Rome *transliterated name* [4516 rhome] Strength.
roof *noun* {1406 gag} usually the top of a house or altar.
rooster *noun* [220 alektor] a male fowl.
roostervoiced *noun* [219 alektorophonía] the sound of a rooster.
root *noun* {8328 sheresh} {8330 shoresh} the underground part of a plant.
root, uproot *verb* {8327 sharash} {8332 sheroshu} to plant a root; to pull out by the root.
rope, wreath, wreathen, foliage *noun* {5688 abothah} as entwined; a wreath in victory; **cp** crown; **cp** diadem.
rose, rouse, arise, arose, raise, rise *verb* {6965, 6966 qum} [450 anisteemi] [1453 egiro] to stand forth; to rise; to be stirred up, awakened.
Rosh *transliterated name* {7220 rosh} Head; Top.
rosh *transliterated noun* {7219 rosh} a poisonous plant.
rot *verb* {5685 abash} to dry up.
rot *verb* {7537 raqab} to decay.
rotten, rottenness *noun* {7538 raqab} {7539 riqqabon} decay.
round *adjective* {5696 agol} circular.
round, strike (round about), surround *verb* {5362 naqaph} to strike; to strike all around; to surround; to round off the beard.
round, surround, environ *noun* {3603 kikkar} literally, circle; the environs of an area; a round of material, usually of precious metals.
round about *adverb* {5439 cabiyb} all around; surrounding.
round dance *noun* {4246 mechol} a dance in which participants form a ring.
round dancing *verb* {4234 machol} to dance with participants forming a ring.
rouse, arise, arose, raise, rise, rose *verb* {6965, 6966 qum} [450 anisteemi] [1453 egiro] to be stirred up, awakened; to stand forth; to rise.
rouse up *verb* [387 anastatoo] soulfully, to be roused.
route *noun* {4570 magalah} a rampart; a track; **see** pass, passage.
row, shingle, rank *noun* {7713 sederah} {7795 sorah} that which is regulated in rows.
row, turn *noun* {8447 tor} a succession of occasion; a row of.
rub, shake, wave *verb* {5130 nuph} to rub a bed with aromatics; to shake a hand; to wave an offering.
rub, sicken, stroke, worn (out) *verb* {2470 chalah} to wear out; to stroke the face as in appeasement.
rubbing rags *noun* {4418 malachim} literally, rubbers; that which is used to rub.
ruin *noun* {4288 mechittah} {4596 meiy} {4654 mappalah} {4658 mippelath} {4875 meshoah} {4876 *plural* mashshooth} {6986 qeteb} {6987 qoteb} [3639 olethros] utter destruction; death.
ruin, vanish, corrupt, destroy, destruct, lose *verb* {6 abad} {7 abad} {8 obed} {7843 shachath} [622 apollumi] [1311 diaphthiro] [2704 kataphthiro] [5351 phthiro] to corrupt through decay.
ruling *adverb* {4431 melak} adverb of reign.
rump *noun* {451 alyah} the hind of the body.
run, outrun *verb* **runner** *participle* {7323 ruts} {7325 rur} to run; one who runs; to run faster than.
rush *noun* {1999 hamullah} the sound of rushing.
rush, marsh *noun* {98 agam} {99 agem} {100 agmone} a stagnant water, or that which grows therefrom.
rushing *participle* {5584 caah} as a wind.
Ruth *transliterated name* {7327 ruth} [4503 routh] Friend.

S

Saanan *transliterated name* {6630 tsaanán} Flock.
Saananim, Saanayim *plural transliterated name* {6815 tsaananiym, tsaanayim} Migrates.

LEXICON

Sabaoth *transliterated title* **host, hosts** *noun* {6635 tsebaah *plural* tsabaoth} [3841 pantokrator] [*plural* 4519 sabaoth] of hosts; a vast array of warriors; often compounded with El and with Yah Veh; [4519 sabaoth] is the Hellenic transliteration of sabaoth, only in Romans 9:29, and Yaaqovos 5:4; [3841 pantokrator] is the Hellenic translation of sabaoth, only in 2 Corinthians 6:18, and throughout the Apocalypse; **see** host.

Sabtecha *transliterated name* {5455 cabtecha} the meaning uncertain; a son of Kush, and the region settled by him.

sack *noun* {6861 tsiqion} a sack, as tied at the mouth; **cp** saq.

sackbut *noun* {5443 sabbeka} a lyre, as being stringed.

sacrifice *noun* {1685 debach} {2077 zebach} {2378 thusia} an offering – usually an animal; Yah Shua Messiah became our sacrifice as a lamb unblemished.

sacrifice *verb* {1684 debach} {2076 zabach} {2380 thuo} to offer up – usually an animal.

sacrifice (idol) *noun* [1494 eidolothuton] a sacrifice to an idol.

sacrifice altar *noun* {4056 madbach} {4196 mizbeach} [2379 thusiasterion] a furniture on which sacrifices are sacrificed; the Hebrew is from the root of the verb, sacrifice {2076 zabach}; **see** sacrifice.

saddle, meadow, ram *noun* {3733 kar} literally, plumpness, as in a full grown lamb; padding, as in a saddle; a meadow for sheep.

Sadoq *transliterated name* {6659 tsadowq} [4524 sadok] Just; a scion of the priesthood; **see** justness.

Sadoqiy *transliterated name* {6659 tsadowq} [4523 saddoukaios] of Sadoq; the name of a religious sect who claimed the virtue of justness; **see** Sadoq; **see** justness.

saffron *noun* {3750 karkom} the crocus.

sail, ensign, pole *noun* **Nissi** *transliterated title* {5251 nec} an ensign; the pole of an ensign; part of the title, Yah Veh Nissi, which means, Yah Veh Ensign.

sailer *noun* {2259 chobel} one that handles riggings of rope on a sailor.

Sair *transliterated name* {6811 tsaiyr} Little.

Sachar *transliterated name* {7940 sachar} Hire.

Sal Monah *transliterated name* {6758 tsalmonah} Shade of Death.

Sal Munna *transliterated name* {6759 tsalmunna} Shade is Withheld.

Salaph *transliterated name* {6764 tsalaph} the meaning uncertain.

Salchah *transliterated name* {5548 calchah} Walking.

sale *noun* {4466 mimkereth} **see** sell.

Sallu, Sallay *transliterated name* {5543 calluw, callay} Balanced.

Salmah *transliterated name* {8009 salmah} Clothing.

Salmay *transliterated name* {8014 salmay} Clothed.

Salmon *transliterated name* {6756 tsalmown} Shady.

Salmon *transliterated name* {8012 salmon} [4533 salmon] [4534 salmone] Clothed.

salt *noun* **salty** *adjective* {4420 melechah} [358 analos] salted; an unfertile land caused by a high salt content.

salt *noun* {4415, 4416 melach} {4417 malach} [217 halas] [251 hals] [252 halukos] salt, as pulverized.

salt *verb* {4414 malach} [233 halizo] to rub on salt.

salutation *noun* {783 aspasmos} a greeting of welcome.

salute *verb* {782 aspazomai} to welcome.

salvation; **see** SUMMARY: SALVATION, SAVE:

Sancherib *transliterated name* {5576 cancheriyb} the meaning uncertain; an Ashshur sovereign.

sand *noun* {2344 chowl} [285 ammos] pulverized rock.

sanhedrim *transliterated noun* [4892 sunedriom] a Yah Hudiy tribunal.

Saphon *transliterated name* {6829 tsaphown} Northern.

saplings *plural noun* {3242 yeniqah} young trees.

sapphire *transliterated noun* {5601 sapir} a gem.

saq *transliterated noun* {8242 saq} [4526 sakkos] a mesh cloth; **cp** sack.

Sarah *transliterated name* {8283 sarah} [4564 sarrha] Marshaleess (female marshal); **cp** Saray.

Saray *transliterated name* {8297 saray} Governess; **cp** Sarah.

Sardis *transliterated name* [4554 sardis] Asked.

Sarephath *transliterated name* {6886 tsarephath} [4558 sarepta] Refinement.

Sarethan *transliterated name* {6891 tsarethan} Pierced.

Sarsechim *transliterated name* {8310 sarcechym} a Babeliy general.

satan *transliterated verb* {7853 satan} to oppose.

Satan *transliterated name* {7854 satan} [4566 satan] [4567 satanas] the Hebrew name of Diabolos; an opposer; the Hellene is a transliteration of the Hebrew; **see** satan; **see** Diabolos.

satiate, satisfy, saturate; **see** SUMMARY: SATIATE.

satrap *noun* {323, 324 achashdarpan} a governor.

savage *adjective* [434 anemeros] uncivilized.

save, saviour; **see** SUMMARY: SAVE, SAVIOUR:

savour of rest *noun* {5207, 5208 nichoach} a species of offering.

saw *verb* {7787 sur} to saw with a saw.

say, said, saith, saying *verb* {559, 560 amar} [2031 epos] [2036 epo] [2046 ereo] [5345 pheemi] to express in words.

saying, sayings *noun* {561 emer} {562 omer} {565 imrah} a statement, usually quoted, often as a proverb.

scab *noun* {5597 cappachath} a mange, as falling off.

scale *noun* {7193 qasqeseth} a scale of a fish; a scale of an armor.

scall *noun* {5424 netheq} a scurf.

scalp *noun* {6936 qodqod} the scalp of the head.

scan, tan *verb* {7805 shazaph} to scan; to be scanned by the sun; hence, to tan.

scandal *transliterated noun* [4625 skandalon] a trap; a stumblingblock; **see** stumblingblock.

scandal, scandalize *transliterated verb* [4624 scandalizo] to entice to sin; to be a stumblingblock.

scapegoat *noun* {5799 azazel} a goat which bears the sins of another; **read** Leviticus 16:8–26.

scar, contortion *noun* {6094 atstsebeth} contortion, as in pain; scars as causing contortion; **see** contort *verb*.

scarlet *noun* {8144 shaniy} the color; **see** crimson.

scarlet, maggot *noun* {8438 tolaath} a wormlike larva; scarlet, as the color of the maggot.

scarring *noun* {3587 kiy} a scar or brand caused by searing.

scatter, shatter, splatter *verb* {5310 naphats} {5311 nephets} {6327 puts} {6340 pazar} {7376 ratash} to disperse; to disperse by shattering.

scatter, spread, grow *verb* {6335 push} [837 auxano] to grow, to enlarge; as in spreading out.

scattering *noun* {8600 tephowtsah} a dispersal.

scatterings *plural noun* {4215 mezarehim} of winds.

scent *noun* {7381, 7382 reyach} an inspiration and expiration of a being; an aroma that is emitted.

sceptre, scion *noun* {7625 shebat} {7626 shebet} {8275 sharbit} [5443 phule] an offshoot, branch, sprout of a tree; a family of people; a symbol of rule; **cp** rod.

scholar *noun* {8527 talmid} a teacher or learner.

scion, sceptre *noun* {7625 shebat} {7626 shebet} {8275 sharbit} [5443 phule] an offshoot, branch, sprout of a tree; a family of people; a symbol of rule; **cp** rod.

scion (another) [246 allophulos] **see** scion.

scions (twelve) *noun* [1429 diodekaphulon] the twelve scions of Yisra El.

scope over, oversee *verb* [1983 episkopeo] to episcopate; to inspect over.

scorch *adjective* [2739 kaumatizo] burn; scorch; sear.

scorch, kindle, inflame *verb* {2734 charah} {2787 charar} {6866 zarab} literally, or soulically, to glow; to blaze up.

scorch, scorching *noun* [2738 kauma] [2740 kausis] [2742 kauson] painful and burning heat.

scorches *plural noun* {2788 charim} parched areas.

scorn *verb* {3887 luwts} {5006 naats} to mouth off; to deride.

scorn, scorner *verb, participle* {3945 latsats} to despise; a despiser.

scorn, scorning *noun* {3944 latsohn} {5007 neatsah *plural* neatsahoth} a derision.

scorpion *transliterated noun* [4651 skorpis] a species of lizard with a sting in its tail.

scour, polish *verb* {4838 maraq} to polish, so as to sharpen.

scourge *noun* {7850 shotet} a whip.

scourge, oar *noun* {7885 shait} a whip; a paddle.

scrape (off) (away) (together) *verb* {5500 cachah} {5595 caphah} {5596 caphach} to scrape; **see** offscouring.

scrape, cut *verb* {7096 qatsah} to cut off; to scrape off, by cutting; to destroy.

scream *verb* {6463 paah} [349 anakrazo] to utter a shrill screech.

screen *noun* {4345 makber} as woven; **cp** net.

scribe *noun* {5613 capher} [1122 grammatus] a writer; one that scribes; **see** scripture; **see** scroll.

LEXICON

scribe *verb* {5608 saphar} [1123 graptos] [1125 grapho] to write; to scribe; **see** inscribe, chart.

scribing *noun* {5610 sephar} {5615 sephorah} [1121 gramma] that which is scribed; **see** scroll.

scripture *noun* [1124 graphee] the writing, especially of Elohim; scripture *singular* usually encompasses the whole scroll of Elohim; scriptures *plural* usually encompasses segments of scripture *singular*.

scroll *noun* {5609 cephar} {5612 ciphrah} [975 biblion] [976 biblos] a roll or series of rolls which contain scribings.

scrollette *noun* [974 biblaridion] diminutive of scroll; **cp** roll.

sculpt *verb* {6458 pacal} to sculpt a sculptile.

sculptiles *noun* {plural 6456 pecil} {6459 pecel} that which is sculpted.

sea, seaward *noun* {3220, 3221 yam} [2281 thalassa] a great expanse of salt water; toward the sea.

seah *transliterated noun* {5429 ceah} {5432 caceah} [4568 saton] a measure of grain.

seal *noun* {2368 chotham} [4973 sphragis] a signature ring used to seal scrolls to indicate that they have not been tampered with; **see** signet.

seal *verb* {2856, 2857 chatham} [4972 sphragizo] [5420 phrasso] to affix a seal; to close up.

search *noun* {2665 chephes} an uncovering; a discovery; a masking.

search *verb* [2045 erunao] to seek; to examine into.

search, disguise *verb* {2664 chaphas} to uncover; discover; to mask.

search, seek, beseech *verb* {1245 baqash} to search for, including a response to a petition; **cp** inquire, require.

season *noun* [2540 kairos] an occasion; a measure of time; a fixed or proper time.

season, congregation *noun* {4150, 4151 moed} [2540 kairos] an assemblage; an occasion of celebration, of the year, of existence.

seat *verb* [2525 kathistemi] to place down.

Sebaiym *plural transliterated name* {5436 cebaiym} Of Seba.

Sebam, Sibmah *transliterated name* {7643 sebam, sibmah} Spice.

Seboim *plural transliterated name* {6636 tseboiym} Gazelles.

Seboim *plural transliterated name* {6650 tseboiym} Stripes.

second, double, duplicate *noun* {4932 mishneh} a copy of; a double amount; a repetition.

secondly *adverb* {8579 tinyanuth} a second time.

section *noun* {1335 bether} that which has been cut.

section *verb* {1333 bathaq} {1334 bathar} to cut into sections.

secure *verb* [805 asphalizo] to make firm, secure.

secure, certain *adjective* **securely, certainly** *adverb* {3330 yatstsib} [804 asphalees] [806 asphalos] assuredly; safely.

secure loft *noun* {4869 misgab} a lofty place; figuratively, an elevated refuge.

security, certainty *noun* {3321 yetseb} [803 asphalia] safety; an undoubtable truth.

Sedad *transliterated name* {6657 tsedad} Side.

Sedom *transliterated name* {5467 cedom} [4670 sodoma] Scorch.

seduce, wander *verb* [4105 planaon] to go; be led astray.

seducing *adjective* **seducer** *noun* [4108 planos] raving; a misleader.

seduction, wandering *noun* [4106 planee] a straying from.

seductions *plural noun* {4065 madduach} allurements.

see *adjective* {7202 raeh} as experiencing.

see *verb* {2370, 2372 chazah} to gaze; to envision; **see** seer.

see *verb* {7200 raah} [308 anablepo] the prime verb of to see; to see again.

see, spectacle *noun* {7210 roiy} from the root, sight.

seed *noun* {2221 zeruwa} [2233 zera] {2234 zerah} a seed, as planted; posterity.

seed *verb* {2232 zahrah} to plant seed.

seeing *participle* {7212 reith} sight.

seek *verb* [327 anazeeteo] to search for.

seek, beseech, search *verb* {1245 baqash} to search for, including a response to a petition; **cp** inquire, require.

seek, enquire, examine, inquire, require *verb* {1875 darash} to ask; to seek; **cp** beseech.

seek early, rise early *verb* {7836 shachar} to be early.

seek refuge *verb* {2620 chacah} {2622 chacuth} to flee to for protection.

seer *noun* {2374 chozeh} the former name of a prophet; one that sees into the future; **cp** knower.

seethe *verb* {2102, 2103 zuwd} literally, or soulically, to boil.

Seirah *transliterated name* {8167 seiyrah} Roughness.

Sechachah *transliterated name* {5527 sechachah} Covered; Hedged.

Sechu *transliterated name* {7906 sechuw} Observatory.

Sela *transliterated name* {6762 tsela} Limping.

Sela Ham Machleqoth *plural transliterated name* {5555 celahammachleqowth} Rock of the Allotments.

selah *transliterated noun* {5542 celah} a suspension in music; from the same root as halal; **see** exalt, extol; **cp** halal.

select *verb* [1586 eklegomai] to pick out; to choose.

selected [1588 eklektos] [1589 eklogeel] picked out; chosen.

Selel Poni *transliterated name* {6753 tselelpowniy} Shadow-Facing.

Seleq *transliterated name* {6768 tseleq} Fissure.

self-control noun control self *verb self-controlled* *adjective* [1466 enkratia] [1467 enkratuomai] [1468 enkrates] restraint of one's own desires and passions, especially his sensual appetites.

sell (out) *verb* {4376 makar} [4465 mimkar] to sell merchandise; to sell persons; **see** price.

Seloph Had *transliterated name* {6765 tselophchad} the meaning uncertain.

Selsach *transliterated name* {6766 tseltsach} Clear Shade.

Semach Yah *transliterated name* {5565 semachyahuw} Upheld of Yah.

Semarayim *dual transliterated name* {6787 tsemarayim} Double Wool.

Semariy *transliterated name* {6786 tsemariy} Of the Kenaaniy.

semblance *noun* [1491 eidos] a likeness; resemblance.

Senan *transliterated name* {6799 tseenan} Flock.

send, extend *verb* {7971 shalach} {7972 shelach} to send; to send forth.

sending, extending *participle* {4916 mishlach} from the verb, to send; a sending out.

sending, shooting *participle* {4917 mishlachath} from the verb, send; a release; an army.

senesce *verb* [1095 gerasko] to grow old.

senescence *noun* [1094 geeras] a growing old; aging.

sentence *noun* {6599 pithgam} [610 apokrima] the verdict of a judgment.

sentiments *plural noun* {5587 saiph} mentally divided; mixed feelings.

Senuah *transliterated name* {5574 cenuwah} Pointed.

separate *verb* [673 apokorizomai] to rend apart.

separate *verb* {914 badal} to divide; to segregate; to distinguish.

separate *verb* {5144 nazar} to set apart; **see** separatist, separatism.

separate, split *verb* {6536 parac} {6537 perac} to separate from; to split.

separate, split, breach *noun* {6556 perets} a breach; a separation from; a split.

separate, split, breach, break (off) (loose), crunch, crunch *verb* {6561 paraq} {6562 peraqa} {6555 parats} to breach; to separate from; to split.

separate, spread *verb* {6504 parad} to break through; to separate from; to spread out.

separation, cutting *noun* {1508 gizrah} a cutting as of a stone; a place set apart.

Separatist *title separatism* *noun* {5139 nazir} {5145 nezir} a person or object set apart for service; an emblem of the Separatist; sometimes mistranslated, Nazarite; **cp** Nazarene.

Sephan Yah *transliterated name* {6846 tsephanyah} Hidden (Treasured) of Yah.

Sepharvayim *dual transliterated name* {5617 cepharvayim} the meaning uncertain; a place in Ashshur.

Sepharviy *transliterated name* {5616 cepharviy} Of Sepharvayim.

Sephath *transliterated name* {6857 tsephath} Watcher.

Sephathah *transliterated name* {6859 tseph} Watcher.

Sephi *transliterated name* {6825 tsephiy} Watcher.

Sepho *transliterated name* {6825 tsephow} Watcher.

Sephon *transliterated name* {6827 tsephown} Watcher.

Sephoniyy *transliterated name* {6830 tsephowniy} Of Sephon.

sequins *plural noun* {5351 nequddoth} those which are little and punctured.

Ser *transliterated name* {6863 tser} Narrow.

Sera Yah *transliterated name* {8304 serayah} Prevailed of Yah.

Seraph *transliterated name* {8315 saraph} Burning; **see** seraph,

LEXICON

seraphim.

seraph, seraphim *transliterated noun* {8314 singular saraph plural saraphim} literally, on fire; a kind of serpent.

Seredah *transliterated name* {6868 tseredah} {6888 tserarah} Pierced.

Serediy *transliterated name* {5625 cardiy} Of Sered.

serenity *noun* {7959 shelev} {7962 shalvah} {7963 shelevah} complete satisfaction; **see** shalom *adjective*.

serene, serenity *adjective* {7961 shelevah}

serenely *adverb* {7987 sheliy}

serene, serenify, serenize *verb* {7951 shalah, shalav} {7954 shelah} to make or become serene.

Sereth *transliterated name* {6889 tsereth} Splendor.

Sereth Hash Shachar *transliterated name* {6890 tserethhashshachar} Splendor of the Dawn.

Seri *transliterated name* {6874 tseriy} Balm.

Seror *transliterated name* {6872 tseror} Bundle.

serpent *noun* {5175 nachash} {3789 ophis} a reptile; figuratively of Satan, or one who is cunning.

Seruah *transliterated name* {6871 tseruwah} Leprous.

Serug *transliterated name* {8286 serug} {4562 sarouch} Tendril.

Seruyah *transliterated name* {6870 tseruyah} Balm.

servant *noun* {5649 abad} {5650 ebed} {1401 doulos} male servant; **see** serve; **cp** maid.

servantry *noun* {5657 abuddah} that which serves.

serve *verb* **server** *participle* {6399 pelach} to serve; that which serves.

serve, servant *verb* {5647 abad} {1398 douluo} to serve in servitude; to serve the soil, as in agriculture.

serve, do, keep, make *verb* {5648 abad} in the sense of serving.

service *noun* {5652 abad} {5656 abodah} {5673 abidah} a deed.

service *noun* {6402 polchan} as worship.

servient (be), (in) servitude, subservient *verb, adjective* {1396 doulagoeo} {1402 doulool} to enslave.

servitude *noun* {5659 abduth} {1397 douliei} {1400 doulon} slavery.

set (apart) *verb* {873 aphorizo} to set off by boundary.

set (apart) *verb* {4560 macar} to separate from.

set (by), stand (by), station (by), place (by) *verb* {3320 yatsab} {3322 yatsag} {5324 natsab} from the root, to place, so as to stay.

set, abandon, allow, leave, let *verb* {3240 yanach} {5203 natash} to allow to be; to allow to be set; to abandon.

set, place, put *verb* {7760, 7761 suwm} {7896 shith} {8239 shaphath} {8271 shathah} to put in place.

set the torah *verb* {3548 nomothesia} to establish the torah.

settings *plural noun* {6183 ariph} the droopings of the sky.

settle *verb* {3427 yashab} {3488 yethib} {1460 enkatoikeo} {2730 katoikeo} {3611 oikeo} {3939 paroikeo} to settle down, as in a community, or as on a throne.

settle around *verb* {4039 perioikeo} to be a neighbor.

settlement *noun* {4186 moshab} {2731 katoikeesis} {2732 katoiketerion} {2733 katoikia} a place of settling; the act of settling; the state of being settled; **see** settle.

settler *noun* {8453 toshab} {3941 paroikos} one who has settled.

settling *verbal noun* {3940 paroikia} settlement.

seven *noun* {7651 shibah} a prime number; a week of days; symbolic of completion; the root of the verb, oath.

seven, seventh *adjective* {7637 shebiyiy} {7655 shibah} {7658 shibanah} {2033 hepta} **see** seven *noun*.

sevenfold *dual noun* {7659 shibathayim} literally, sevens; double seven.

sever *verb* {2685 chatsaph} {6991 qatal} {6992 qetal} {6993 qetel} {7088 qaphad} to cut off; to deathify.

severance *noun* {7089 qephadah} a cutting off.

Shaalbim *plural transliterated name* {8169 shaalbiym} Fox Holes.

Shaalbimiy *transliterated name* {8170 shaalboniy} Of Shaalbim.

Shaalim *transliterated name* {8171 shaaliym} Foxes.

Shaarayim *dual transliterated name* {8189 shaarayim} Double Portals.

shabbath *transliterated noun* {7676 shabbath} {2663 katapausis} {4521 sabbaton} a celebration of rest which Elohim commands humanity to guard.

shabbathism *transliterated noun* {4868 mishbath} {7674

shebeth} {7677 shabbathon} {4520 sabbatismos} a celebration of rest.

shabbathize *transliterated verb* {7673 shabath} {2664 katapauo} to celebrate a shabbathism.

Shabbethay *transliterated name* {7678 shabbethay} Restful.

Shacharayim *transliterated name* {7842 shacharayim} Double Dawn.

Shachasom *transliterated name* {7831 shachatsowm} Proudly.

shackle *verb* {3729 kephath} to bind, or confine the limbs to prevent free motion.

shackles *noun* {3976 pede} a ring or band that confines the feet to prevent their free motion.

Shadday *transliterated title* {7706 shadday} Nourisher; Nurturer; sometimes compounded with El; **cp** Almighty; **see** Theological Wordbook.

shade *noun* {4699 metsullah} a hovering over.

shade *verb* {2927 telal} to cover over.

shade, fade *verb* {6004 amam} in the sense of concealing; of fading.

shade, shadow *noun* {6738 tsel} {6752 tselel} literally, or figuratively, shade; shadow.

shadow of death *noun* {6757 tsalmaveth} the shade, or shadow of death.

Shadrach *transliterated name* {7714, 7715 shadrach} the Babeliy name of one of Dani El's companions.

shaggy *adjective* {5569 camar} bristling.

shake *verb* {1607 gaash} {5287 naar} {5363 noqeph} {5426 nethat} {7477 raal} to thresh; **cp** quake.

shake, glutton, quake *participle* {2151 zalal} to quake; to shake; to eat in excess; **cp** drunkard.

shake, stagger, totter, wag, wander, waver, drift *verb* {5128 nuwa} to waver.

shake, wave, rub *verb* {5130 nuph} to rub a bed with aromatics; to shake a hand; to wave an offering.

shalam, shalom; see SUMMARY: SHALAM, SHALOM.

Shalem *transliterated name* {8004 shalem} {4530 salim} {4532 shaleem} Complete; **see** complete.

Shalishah *transliterated name* {8031 shalishah} Triple.

shall, should *auxiliary verbs* these auxiliary verbs are not in the manuscripts. They are italicised in the *exeGesés ready research BIBLE*, and omitted in the *exeGesés companion BIBLE*. **cp** may, might; will, would.

Shallecheth *transliterated name* {7996 shallecheth} Cast.

Shalmaneser *transliterated name* {8022 shalmanecer} an Ashshuriy sovereign.

Shalmay *transliterated name* {8073 shamlay} Clothed; one of the Dedicates.

Shalome *transliterated name* {7965 shalom} {4539 salomee} Completely Satisfied; **see** shalom.

shame *noun* {955 buwshah} humiliation; disgrace.

shame *verb* {954 bush} {3001 yabesh} {3637 kalam} {1788 entrepo} {2617 kataiskuno} to humiliate; to disgrace.

shame, mercy *verb* {2616 chaced} literally, to bow the neck in kindness, or in reproof.

shame, shamefulness *noun* {1322 bosheth} {3639 kelimmah} {3640 kelimmuth} {149 aiskron} {151 aiskrotes} {152 aiskune} {1791 entrepee} the feeling, and condition of shame; of disgrace.

shameful words *noun* {148 aiskrologia} disgraceful words.

Shammay *transliterated name* {8060 shammay} Destructive.

Shamsheray *transliterated name* {8125 shamsheray} Sunlike.

Shamur *transliterated name* {8053 shamur} Observed.

Shaphat *transliterated name* {8202 shaphat} Judge.

Shaphat Yah *transliterated name* {8203 shephatyah} Judge of Yah.

Shaphir *transliterated name* {8208 shapiyr} Glorified.

Sharay *transliterated name* {8298 sharay} Hostile.

Shareser *transliterated name* {8272 sharetser} the meaning uncertain.

Sharon *transliterated name* {8289 sharon} {4565 saron} Straight.

Sharoniy *transliterated name* {8290 sharowniy} Of Sharon.

sharp *adjective* {2299 chad} {plural 2303 chaddud} {3691 oxus} as pointed keen.

sharpen *verb* {2300 chadad} to cause to be sharp.

sharpen *verb* {3913 latash} to hammer out an edge.

sharpened *adjective* {4593 maot} an edge, as thinned.

Sharuchen *transliterated name* {8287 sharuwchen} Abode of Charism.

Shashaq *transliterated name* {8349 shashaq} Pedestrian.

LEXICON

Shashay *transliterated name* {8343 shashay} Whitish.
shatter, splatter, scatter *verb* {5310 naphats} {5311 nephets} {6327 puts} {6340 pazar} {7376 ratash} to disperse; to disperse by shattering.
shatter, vilify, vilifying *verb* {7489 raa} {7490 rea} [2551 kakologeo] [2558 kakoucheo] [2559 kakoo] verb of evil; to make or declare evil; to vilify by shattering; **see** evil.
Shaul *transliterated name* {7586 shaul} [4549 saoul] [4569 saulos] Asked; Loaned.
Shaveh *transliterated noun* {7740 shaveh} Plain; Plains; also a prefix to names of plains.
Shaveh Qiryathayim *dual transliterated name* {7741 shavehqiryathayim} Plain of a Double City.
she burro *noun* {860 athown} a female burro.
Shealti El *transliterated name* {7597, 7598 shealtiyel} [4528 salathieel] Asked (Loaned) of El.
shear *verb* {1494 gazaz} {3697 kacam} to cut, usually hair or fleece.
Shear Yah *transliterated name* {8187 shearyah} Guard of Yah.
Shear Yashub *transliterated name* {7610 shearyashuwb} A Remainder Returns.
shearing *noun* {1488 gez} {1492 gazzah} that which is sheared.
sheath *noun* {5084 nadan} {5085 nidneh} a receptacle of a sword; figuratively, the body, as a receptacle of the soul.
sheath, knife, razor *noun* {8593 taar} a knife, or a razor, as making bare; a sheath, as being bare.
Sheba *transliterated noun* {7652 sheba} Seven.
Sheba, Shebaiym *transliterated noun* {7614 sheba} {*plural* 7615 shebaiym} the meaning uncertain; three progeniters of scions; a district in Ethiopia.
Shebaiym *transliterated name* {7615 shebaiym} Of Sheba.
Sheban Yah *transliterated noun* {7645 shebanyah} Crown of Yah.
Shebat *transliterated noun* {7627 shebat} the name of a month.
Shebu El, Shuba El *transliterated noun* {7619 shebuel, shubael} Captured of El.
Shechar Yah *transliterated noun* {7841 shecharyah} Early Seeker of Yah.
Shedey Ur *transliterated name* {7707 shedeyuwr} Spreader of Light.
sheep *noun* [4263 probaton] a wooly domestic animal.
sheep gate *noun* [4262 probatikos] a gate through which sheep are led.
Sheerah *transliterated name* {7609 sheerah} Kinflesh.
sheets, snare *noun* {6341 pach} a sheet, as pounded thin; a snare of lumina, as made to spring shut.
Shekan Yah *transliterated name* {7935 shekanyah} Tabernacle of Yah.
shekel *transliterated noun* {8255 sheqel} a set weight of a balance scale.
Shechem *transliterated name* {7927, 7928 shechem} [4966 suchem] Shoulder.
Shechemiy *transliterated name* {7930 shichmiy} Of Shechem.
Shelach *transliterated name* {7974 shelach} [4527 sala] Spear; Branch.
Shelah *transliterated name* {7956 shelah} Ask; Loan.
Shelahiy *transliterated name* {8024 shelaniy} Of Shelah.
shelamim; **see** SUMMARY: SHALAM, SHELAMIM:
Shelem Yah *transliterated name* {8018 shelemyah} Completed of Yah; from {7965 shalom}; **see** complete.
Shelomi *transliterated name* {8015 shelomi} Complete; from {7965 Shalom}; **see** complete.
Shelomith *transliterated name* {8019 shelomith} Complete; from {7965 shalom}; **see** complete.
Shelomoh *transliterated name* {8010 shelomoh} [4672 solomon] Complete; from {7965 shalom}; **see** complete.
Shelomoth *transliterated name* {*feminine plural* 8013 shelomoth} Complete; from {7965 shalom}; **see** complete.
Shelumi El *transliterated name* {8017 shelumiel} Completed of El; from {7965 shalom}; **see** complete.
Shem *transliterated name* {8035 shem} [4590 seen] means Name.
Shem Eber *transliterated name* {8038 shemeber} Name of Pinion.
Shema *transliterated name* {8087 shema} {8090 shema} Annunciation.
Shema Yah *transliterated name* {8098 shemayah} Heard of Yah.
Shemar Yah *transliterated name* {8114 shemaryah} Guarded of

Yah.

Shemer *transliterated name* {8106 shemer} Dregs.
Shemi Da *transliterated name* {8061 shemyda} Name of Knowing.
Shemi Daiy *transliterated name* {8062 shemydaiy} Of Shemi Da.
Shemi Ramoth *plural transliterated name* {8070 shemyramowth} Name of Ramoth.
Shemu El *transliterated name* {8050 shemuel} [4545 samouel] Heard by El.
Shenassar *transliterated name* {8137 shenatsar} Of Babel.
sheol, hades *noun* {7585 sheol} [86 hades] literally, the unseen; sheol is a transliteration of the Hebrew; hades is a transliteration of the Hellene, which is a translation of the Hebrew; both refer to a temporary abode of the body and soul; there is a progressive distinction of purpose of sheol/hades from its inception to its final state; **read** Yechezq El 31:15–17, 32:18–29, Loukas 16:19–31, Apocalypse 20:13,14; **cp** Psalm 16:10, Acts 2:27.
Shepham *transliterated name* {8221 shepham} Bare.
Shephamiy *transliterated name* {8225 shiphmiy} Of Shepham.
Shepher *transliterated name* {8234 shepher} Glorious.
shepherd *noun* [4166 poimen] one who tends.
shepherd *verb* [4165 poimaino] to tend.
shepherddom *noun* [4167 poimnee] [4168 poimnion] the sovereignty of a shepherd.
Shephuphan, Shephupham *transliterated name* {8197 shephupphan, shephupham} Adderlike.
Shereb Yah *transliterated name* {8274 sherebyah} Mirage of Yah.
Sheshach *transliterated name* {8347 sheshach} a symbolic name of Babel.
Sheshay *transliterated name* {8344 sheshay} Whitish.
Sheth *transliterated name* {8352 sheth} [4589 seeth] Set, as in authority; a son of Adam.
Shethar Bozenay *transliterated name* {8370 shetharbowzenay} the meaning uncertain; a Persian officer.
shew, show *verb* {2324 chava} {2331 chavah} to propose for consideration; **see** propound.
shewing, showing *noun* [323 anadixis] display.
Sheya *transliterated name* {7864 sheya} False.
Shibah *transliterated noun* {7656 shibah} Seven.
shibboleth *transliterated noun* {7641 shibboleth} a stream, as flowing; **cp** sibboleth; **see** Judges 12:6.
Shichor *transliterated name* {7883 shichor} Dark.
Shichor Libnath *transliterated name* {7884 shiychowlibnath} Darkish Whiteness.
shield *noun* {7982 shelet} a protector.
shield, cold, hook *noun* {6793 tsinnah} coldness, as piercing; a hook, as pointed; a shield, as a prickler.
Shikkeron *transliterated name* {7942 shikkerown} Intoxication.
Shilchi *transliterated name* {7977 shilchiy} Spear; Branch.
Shilchim *plural transliterated name* {7978 shilchiym} Spears; Branches.
Shillem *transliterated name* {8006 shillem} Retribution.
Shillemiy *transliterated name* {8016 shillemiy} Of Shillem.
Shiloach *transliterated name* {7975 shiloach} [4611 siloam] Spear; Branch.
Shiloh *transliterated title, name* {7886, 7887 shiloh} Tranquility; a title of the Messiah; a place in Pelesheth.
Shilohiy *transliterated name* {7888 shiloniy} Of Shiloh.
Shima *transliterated name* {8092 shima} Annunciation.
Shimah *transliterated name* {8039 shimah} {8093 shimah} Annunciation.
Shimahiym *plural transliterated name* {8101 shimathiym} Of Shimah.
Shimam *transliterated name* {8043 shimam} Annunciation.
Shimi *transliterated name* {8096 shimiy} [4584 semeil] Famous.
Shimiy *transliterated name* {8097 shimiy} Of Shimi.
Shimon *transliterated name* {7889 shimon} Desolation.
Shimon *transliterated name* {8095 shimon} [4613 simon] [4826 sumeon] Hearer.
Shimoniy *transliterated name* {8099 shimoniy} Of Shimon {8095}.
Shimron *transliterated name* {8110 shimrown} Guardianship.
Shimroniy *transliterated name* {8117 shimroniy} Of Shimron.
Shimshay *transliterated name* {8124 shimshay} Sunny.
Shimshon *transliterated name* {8123 shimshon} [4546 sampson] Sunlight.

LEXICON

shine, flash *verb* {3313 yapha} from the root, to shine.

shine, think *verb* {6245 ashath} {6246 ashith} as polishing.

shingle *noun* {7824 shachiph} a board, as a chip.

shingle, rank, row *noun* {7713 sederah} {7795 sorah} that which is regulated in rows.

shinquards *plural noun* {4697 mitschah} a piece of armor protecting the shin.

ship *noun* {590 oniy} {591 oniyah} {6716 tsiy} a large boat.

ship *noun* {5600 sephinah} a vessel as ceiled; a ship with a deck; **see** ceiled; **cp** sailer.

Shitray *transliterated name* {7861 shitray} Official.

shittah, shittim *transliterated noun* {7848 *singular* shittah, *plural* shittim} a species of tree, or the timber thereof.

Shiyon *transliterated name* {7866 shiyown} Devastation.

Shobach *transliterated name* {7731 showbach} Thicket.

Shobay *transliterated name* {7630 shobay} Captor.

Shobeq *transliterated name* {7733 showbeq} Forsaking.

Shobyah *transliterated name* {7634 shobyah} Captive.

shod, enclose, inclose, lock *verb* {5274 naal} {7000 qatar} to fasten; **see** shoe.

shoe *noun* {5275 naalah} **see** shod.

Shomeron *transliterated name* {8111 shomeron} {8115 shomrain} [4540 samaria] Guard Station.

Shomerone *transliterated name* {4542 samaritis} a female of Shomeron.

Shomerony *transliterated name* {8118 shomerony} [4541 samarites] Of Shomeron.

shoot *verb* {7232 rabab} to shoot an arrow.

shooting, sending *participle* {4917 mishlachath} from the verb, send; a release; an army.

Shophach *transliterated name* {7780 showphach} Poured.

shophar *noun* {7782 shophar} a Hebrew horn that sounds warning.

short *adjective* {7116 qatser} short, in a variety of applications.

shorten, chop, curtail, harvest *verb* {7114 qatsar} literally, or figuratively, to cut off.

shortly, bit, bit by bit, few, little, petty *adjective, adverb* {4592 meat} diminutive; a few; a little.

shortness *noun* {7115 qotser} impatience.

Shoshanna *transliterated name* **trumpet, lily** *noun* {7799 shoshanna} [4677 sousanna] Lily, as a flower, or as an ornament; trumpet, from its lily shaped bell.

shoulder *noun* {3802 katheph} {7926 shechem} [5606 omos] literally, a side piece; figuratively, the place of bearing a burden; the shoulder.

shoulder blade *noun* {7929 shikma} the bone of the shoulder.

shout *noun* {7440 rinnah} {7445 renanah} a shriek; a shout for joy.

shout *verb* {7438 ron} to shriek for deliverance; to shout for joy.

shout, blast *verb* {6681 tsavach} {7442 ranan} {7244 renen} {7321 ruwa} [2019 epiphoneo] to sound forth loudly, instrumentally or vocally.

shout, shouting *verb* {7442 ranan} {7444 rannen} to shriek; to shout for joy.

shout, stake, blast, clang, clap *verb* {7321 ruwa} {8628 taqa} [4078 peegnumi] [4717 stauroo] to sound loudly; to celebrate by shouting, and/or blasting shophars and trumpets unto Yah Veh; to shout and/or blast a battle cry; to stake a tabernacle or tent; to stake for execution.

shout, thunder *noun* {7452 rea} a crashing sound.

shout(ing), stake(ing), blast(ing), clang(ing), clap(ping) *noun* {8619 taqowa} {8643 teruah} a loud sound; the celebration of shouting, and/or blasting shophars and trumpets unto Yah Veh; also of shouting, and/or blasting a battle cry; a stake of a tent, or tabernacle; a stake for execution.

shove away *verb* {683 apothemoi} to push off; to reject.

shower *noun* {7377 riy} {plural 8164 saiy} moisture.

shred *noun* {2636 cha **cp**ac} from the root, to peel; a shred; a scale.

shred, rip *verb* {7167 qara} from the root, to rend.

shreds *plural noun* {7168 qeraim} rags.

shriek *verb* {603 anaqah} to screech.

shrieker *noun* {604 anaqah} a shrieking animal.

shriveled *adjective* {5384 nasheh} shrunken and wrinkled.

shrub *noun* {7880 siach} bush.

Shu Telach *transliterated name* {7803 shuwthelach} Waste of Breakage.

Shu Telachiy *transliterated name* {8364 shuthalchiy} Of Shu Telach.

Shuach *transliterated name* {7744 shuwach} Dell.

Shuachiy *transliterated name* {7747 shuchiy} Of Shuach.

Shual *transliterated name* {7586 shawl} [4549 saoni] [4569 saulos] Asked.

Shualiy *transliterated name* {7587 shauwliy} Of Shaul.

Shuchah *transliterated name* {7746 shuwchah} Chasm.

Shucham *transliterated name* {7748 shuwcham} Humbly.

Shuchamiy *transliterated name* {7749 shuwchamiy} Of Shucham.

shudder, whirl away *verb* {8175 saar} to storm; to shudder, as in fright; to be stormed away.

Shulamith *transliterated name* {7759 shuwlammiyth} Completely Satisfied.

Shumahi *transliterated name* {8126 shumathiy} Garlic; Of Shumah.

Shunem *transliterated name* {7766 shuwnem} Quietly.

Shunemi *transliterated name* {7767 shuwnamiyth} a female of Shunem.

Shuni *transliterated name* {7764 shuwniy} Quiet.

Shuniy *transliterated name* {7765 shuwniy} Of Shuni.

Shuphamiy *transliterated name* {7781 shuwphamiy} Of Shephupham.

Shushanchiy *transliterated name* {7801 shuwshanchiy} the meaning uncertain.

shut, concentrate *verb* {5462 cagar} {5463 cegar} to shut; to shut tight; cold as shut tight, or concentrated.

shut (up) (in) *verb* {5534 sakar} {5535 sakath} to shut up, as a mouth; to shut in, as a people.

shut (up), stop (up) *verb* {5640 satham} to stop up; figuratively, to keep secret.

Siba *transliterated name* {6717 tsiyba} Station.

Sibbechay *transliterated name* {5444 cibbechay} Entwined.

sibboleth *transliterated noun* {5451 cibboleth} an ear of grain; **cp** shibboleth; **see** Judges 12:6.

Sibon *transliterated name* {6649 tsibown} Dyes.

Sibrayim *dual transliterated name* {5453 cibrayim} Double Will.

Sibya *transliterated name* {6644 tsibya} Gazelle.

Sibyah *transliterated name* {6645 tsibyah} Gazelle.

Sicha *transliterated name* {6727 tsicha} Parched.

Sichon *transliterated name* {5511 ciychown} Tempestuous.

sicken, stroke, worn (out), rub *verb* {2470 chalah} to wear out; to stroke the face as in appeasement.

sickle *noun* {2770 chermesh} an incisor.

sickle, trench, decision, decisive, incision, incisor, ore *adjective, noun* {2742 charuts} physically, soucally, or mentally, an incising.

sickness *noun* {2483 choliy} {plural 8463 tachalim} a malady.

Siddim *plural transliterated name* {6661 tsiddim} Sides.

side, rib *noun* {5967 ala} {6763 tsela} literally, a curve or an arch; a rib of a body; a rib of a structure.

Sidon *transliterated name* {6721 tsiydon} [4605 sidon] Hunt (as provision).

Sidoni *transliterated name* {6722 tsiydoniy} [4606 sidoniy] Of Sidon.

Sidqenuw (Yah Veh) *transliterated title* {3072 yehovah tsidqenuw} a combined form of {3068 yehovah} and {6664 tsedeg} Yah Veh of Justness.

Sidqi Yah *transliterated name* {6667 tsidqiyah} Justness of Yah; of the priesthood of Yah.

siege, rampart *noun* {4692 matsur} {4694 matsor} a mound for protection; a seizing.

sigh *verb* {584 anach} {3306 yaphach} {5162 nacham} [1690 embrimaomai] an expressing of emotion; to sigh over, as in empathy; does not mean regret.

sigh, sighing *noun* {585 anachah} {592 aniyah} {5164 nocham} an expression of emotion.

sigh deeply *verb* {389 anastenazo} to express deep emotion.

sight *noun* {7203 roeh} {7207 roeh} [309 anablepsis] a vision; a seeing again.

sign *verb* {7560 resham} to signature.

sign, ensign *noun* {226 owth} [3902 parasemos] [4592 seemion] as emblematic, or as a signal; the sun, moon, and stars are for signs and seasons; Yonah was a sign to the Ninevehim and the Yah Hudahim; turning water into wine was Yah Shua's first sign; some signs are miraculous, some are not.

signal *verb* [2678 katasio] to make a sign; to signal.

signet *noun* {2858 chothemeth} {2885 tabbaath} {5824 izaq} a signet ring used for sealing; **see** seal.

LEXICON

signify *verb* {7559 rasham} [4591 seemaino] [4593 seemioomai] to distinguish; to indicate; to signal.
silence *noun* {1745 duwmah} from the root, to be mute.
silent *adjective, adverb* {1747 duwmiyah} [1748 duwmahm] mute; still.
Sillah *transliterated name* {6741 tsillah} Shade.
Sillethay *transliterated name* {6769 tsillethay} Shady.
silver *noun* [693 arguros] made of silver.
silver *noun* {3701 keceph} [696 arguros] the metal, especially as a medium of exchange.
simplicity *noun* [858 apheletes] smoothness.
simultaneously *adverb* [260 hama] at the same time.
Sin *transliterated name* {6790 tsin} Crag.
sin (against), cleanse for sin *verb* {2398 chata} [264 hamartano] to misaim.
sin (offering) (for the) *noun* {2399 chet} [2401 chataah] [2402 chattaah] [2403 chattath] [2408 chatiy] [2409 chattaya] [265 hamartema] [266 hamartia] a misaiming; in some instances implies an offering for sin.
Sinay *transliterated name* {5514 ciynay} [4614 sina] a mountain of Arabia.
sinew *noun* {1517 giyd} a tendon.
sing *verb* **songster, songstress** *participle* {7891 shiy, shuw} [103 ado] to sing; a male singer; a female singer.
singe *verb* {2760, 2761 charak} to scorch.
Siniy *transliterated name* {5513 ciyniy} Of one of the sons of Kenaan.
sink *verb* {7743 shuwach} literally, or figuratively, to sink.
sink, bend, descend, penetrate, press *verb* {5181 nachath} from the root, to sink; to go down; to press or lead down.
sinless *adjective* [361 anamartetos] one who is not misaiming.
sinner *noun* [2400 chatta] [268 hamartolos] one who misaims.
Sior *transliterated name* {6730 tsiyor} Belittle.
Siphon *transliterated name* {6837 tsiphyown} Watcher.
Sippay *transliterated name* {5598 cipay} Basin-like.
Sippor *transliterated name* {6834 tsippowr} Bird.
Sipporah *transliterated name* {6855 tsipporah} Bird.
Siqlag *transliterated name* {6860 tsiqlag} uncertain derivative.
Sis *transliterated name* {6732 tsiyts} Blossom.
Sismay *transliterated name* {5581 cicmay} of uncertain derivative.
sister *noun* [269 achowth] [79 adelphe] a female child of the same parents.
sister in law *noun* {2994 yebemeth} the sister of a man's woman, or of a woman's man.
sistrum *noun* {plural 4517 menanaim} an instrument consisting of metal frame and metal rods, which jingle; **cp** tambourine.
Sithri *transliterated name* {5644 cithriy} Protective.
Siyon *transliterated name* {6726 tsiyown} [4622 sion] Monument.
skeleton, bone *noun* {1634, 1635 gerem} [6106 etsem] [3747 osteon] a framework; a substance, usually of the body.
skeptics *plural noun* {5588 ceeph} literally, of divided mind; **see** opinions.
skillet *noun* {6517 parur} [6745 tselachah] a utensil; as flattened, as being spread out.
skillful, hastening *adjective* [4106 mahir] to hurry along; to be skillful; quick, as skillful.
skin *noun* {1539 geled} [5785 owr] [5559 chros] the covering of the body.
skin *noun* {2573 chemeth} [4997 nod] as tied to hold contents, usually liquid.
skip about *verb* {6852 tsaphar}.
sky, powder *noun* {7834 shachaq} the upper atmosphere; a substance of pulverized particles.
slab *noun* [4109 plax] a slab for engraving.
slab *noun* {3871 luach} a slab, as polished; usually of stone; figuratively, of the heart.
slack *adjective* [7504 rapheh] lacking energy.
slack, delay *verb* [1019 braduno] to be slow.
slacken, let (down) (fall) (go) (loose), loose, loosen up *verb* [7503 raphah] to slacken.
slackness *noun* {7510 riphion} a lack of energy.
slander *noun* {1681 dibbah} [2636 katalalia] defamation.
slander *verb* [2635 katalaleo] to be a cause of sin to; to defame.
slanderer *noun* [2637 katalalos] one who slanders.
slap, slurp, clap *verb* [5606 saphaq] as in clapping hands, slapping the thigh, slurping vomit; **see** gluttony.

slaughter *noun* {2027 hereg} [2028 haregah] [2874 tebach] [2878 tibehah] [4293 matbeach] [7821 shechitah] [4967 sphagee] [4968 sphagion] to slaughter for sacrifice; a massacre.
slaughter *verb* {2026 harag} [2873 tabach] [7819, 7820 shachat] [615 apoktino] [2695 katasphatto] [4969 sphatto] [4372 prospatos] to sacrifice; to massacre.
slaughterer *noun* {2876, 2877 tabbach} [2879 tabbachah] a butcher; an executioner.
slave *noun* [4522 mac, mic] one in forced servitude; **cp** servant; **cp** maid.
sledge *noun* {4173 morag} a sledge for threshing.
sledgehammers *plural noun* {3597 keylaph} from the root, to strike with noise.
sleep *noun* [8139, 8142 shenah] [8153 shenath] to slumber.
sleep *verb* [5123 nuwm] to slumber from drowsiness; **see** drowsiness.
sleep (sound) *noun* [8639 tardemah] also lethargy.
sleep soundly *verb* [7290 radam] to stun; to stupify with sleep, or with death.
slice *noun* [6400 pelach] a split; a division off a whole.
slice, slicer *noun* [2757 charits] slice of milk; may be cheese.
slight, swift, trifle, abase, abate, belittle *verb* {6819 tsaar} [6985 qat] [7034 qalah] [7043 qalal] [2274 heetaomai] to belittle in contempt; to make light of; to lessen.
slime *noun* [8602 taphel] soft, moist earth reduced to the consistency of slime; that which is slimy in consistency.
slime, saliva *noun* {7388 rir} from its broth texture.
sling *noun* {7050 qela} that which slings stones.
slinger *noun* {7051 qaila} one that slings stones.
slip (away) (out), escape *verb* [6403 palat] [6405 peletah].
slithful *verb* [6101 atsal] *adjective* [6102 atsel] *noun* [6103 atslah] [6104 atsluth] slow; sluggish.
slurp, clap, slap *verb* [5606 saphaq] as in clapping hands, slapping the thigh, slurping vomit; **see** gluttony.
smite *verb* [5062 nagaph] to touch heavily.
smite, smitten *verb* [5221 nakah] to strike lightly, or heavily; **cp** strike.
smiter *adjective* [5222 nekeh] a traducer; **cp** striker.
smitten *adjective* [5223 nakeh] maimed; dejected; **cp** stricken.
smoke *noun* [6227 ashan] literal, figurative smoke.
smoke *noun* [7008 qitor] as the fume of a fire.
smoke *verb* [6225 ashan] literally, or figuratively, to smoke.
smoking, smoky *adjective* [6226 ashen] literally, or figuratively, smoky.
smooth *adjective* [2509 chalaq] [2512 challuq] smooth of tongue; smooth stones.
smooth it over, allot *verb* [2505 chalaq] literally, to smooth; as tossing smooth pebbles to allot lands, inheritances; as smoothing over through flattery.
smooth *verb* [4452 malats] as in soothing.
smooth, allotment, portion *noun* [2506 cheleq] [2508 chalaq] [2511 challaq] [2513 chelqah] [2515 chaluqqah] [4255 machleqah] [4256 machaloqeth] [4521 menath] smoothness of tongue; usually an inheritance allotted by pebble.
snare *noun* [4170 moqesh] [4204 mazor] [7407 rokes] that which entangles; as in turning aside from truth.
snare, ensnare *verb* [3369 yaqosh] [5367 naqash] [6351 pachah] [6983 qosh] to lay, or to spring a snare.
snare, sheets *noun* [6341 pach] a sheet, as pounded thin; a snare of lumina, as made to spring shut.
snarer *noun* [3352 yaqosh] [3353 yaqosh] one who snares.
snatch *verb* [6642 tsabat] to reach for.
snatch away *verb* [3261 yaah] from the root, to brush aside.
sneezing *noun* [5846 atiyshah] from the root, to sneeze.
snorting *participle* [5170 nacharah] as expressing wrath; **see** nostrils.
snout, wrath, nostril *noun* [639 aph] {plural 5156 nechirim} [3709 orgee] the snorter, as in expressing wrath; **see** snorting.
snow *noun* [7950 sheleg] [8517 telag] [5510 chion] frozen atmospheric vapor.
snow-white *verb* [7949 shalag] to be white as snow.
so *adverb* [686 ara] the idea of drawing a conclusion; in point of fact. **cp** thus.
so (as) (that), in order to, on account of *participle* [4616 maan] [5668 abur] for the purpose of.
Soan *transliterated name* {6814 tsoan} meaning uncertain.
Soar *transliterated name* {6820 tsoar} Belittle.
Sobah *transliterated name* {6678 tsowbah} Station.
Sobebah *transliterated name* {6637 tsobebah} Palanquin.

LEXICON

sober up *verb* {366 ananepho} [1594 eknepho] to become sober; metaphorically, to return to soberness of mind.
Sochar *transliterated name* {6714 tsochar} White.
socket, pestle *noun* {4388 maktesh} {5940 eliy} the pestle of a mortar; a socket.
socket, pudenda *noun* {6596 poth} literally, a hole.
soil *noun* {127 adamah} ruddy; the soil of the earth: **cp** Adam; **cp** cosmos.
sojourn *verb* {1481 gur} to travel; **see** journey.
sojourner, sojourning *noun* {1616 ger} {4033 magur} a traveler; a travelling; **see** journey.
Sochoh *transliterated name* {7755 sochoh} Hedge.
solaces *plural noun* {5150 nichum} consolings.
sole, bowl, hollow, palm, paw *noun noun* {3709 kaph} {6447 pas} {8168 shoal} a hollow of the hand, foot, paw, or body; also utensils with a hollow.
solidify, leap *verb* {6339 pazaz} to become solid; to spring.
son *noun* {5207 huios} a male offspring; figuratively, kinship.
son, bar *noun* {1247, 1248 bar} a son; as heir apparent to the throne; also a prefix to a name; **cp** ben; **note:** both ben and bar appear in Psalm 2:.
son, ben, Ben *transliterated noun* {1121, 1122, 1123 ben} a son, as builder of the family name; also a prefix to a name; **cp** bar; **note:** both ben and bar appear in Psalm 2:.
song *noun* {7892 shir, shirah} words set to music.
songster, songstress *participle sing* *verb* {7891 shiy, shuwr} [103 ado] to sing; a male singer; a female singer.
sonship *noun* {5206 huiotesia} the placing as a son; much closer than adoption.
soothe, laud *verb* {7623 shabach} {7624 shecach} to extol with words; to smooth it over.
soothings *plural noun* {2514 chalaqqah} {2519 chalaqlaqqah} smoothings over; **see** smooth.
soothsaying *verb* {3132 mantuomai} predicting.
Sophach *transliterated name* {6690 tsoiphach} Breadth.
Sophar *transliterated name* {6691 tsoiphar} Skip About.
Sophim *plural transliterated name* {6839 tsoiphym} Watchers.
Sophnath Paneach *transliterated name* {6847 tsoiphathpaneach} Yoseph's Misrayim name.
Sor *transliterated name* {6865 tsor} [5184 turos] Flint; often rendered as Tyre, Tyrus.
Sorah *transliterated name* {6881 tsorah} Hornet.
Sorahiy *transliterated name* {6882 tsorathiy} Of Sorah.
sorcerer {*participle* 3784 kashaph} {*noun* 3786 kashshaph} one who does sorceries through evil spirits.
sorceries *plural noun* {3785 keshephim} the use of powers of evil spirits.
sore, bandage *noun* {4205 mazor} an affliction; in the sense of binding up; a bandage for a sore.
Soreq *transliterated name* {7796 sowreq} Choice.
Soriy *transliterated name* {6865 tsor} {6876 tsoriy} [5183 turios] Of Sor.
sorrow *noun* {4341 makob} [3077 lupe] sadness; **note:** not to be confused with sorry.
sorrow *verb* [3076 lupeo] to be sad; **note:** not to be confused with sorry.
sort, straighten *verb* {8626 taqan} to unbend; to become upright; to sort out.
Sotay *transliterated name* {5479 cowtay} Swerving.
soul, soulical, soulless; see SUMMARY: SOUL.
sound sleep *noun* {8639 tardemah} also lethargy.
soundmind *verb* [4994 sophronizo] to make soundminded.
soundminded *noun, adjective* [4993 sophroneo] [4995 sophronismos] [4998 sophron] of a sound mind; figuratively, self-controlled.
soundmindedly *adverb* [4996 sophronos] to make mindfully; of sound mind.
soundmindedness *noun* [4997 sophrosunee] soundness of mind.
sounds (empty) *noun* [2757 kenophonia] vain voices; figuratively, a useless discussion.
sounds *noun* [5353 phthoggos] an audible sensation perceived by the ear.
soup *noun* {6564 paraq} soup, as full of crumbled meat.
sour grape *noun* {1154 becer} {1155 bocer} an unripe grape.
southerly, southward *adjective* {8486 teman} on the right when facing dawnward.
sovereign *adjective* [934 basilios] [937 basilikos] the character of the priesthood of the Messianists, of a person, place, or thing.

sovereign *noun* [4428, 4430 melech] [935 basilus] the office of a male who reigns over a sovereigndom; **see** reign; **cp** title.
sovereign *participle reign* *verb* [4427 malak] [4910 mashal] [936 basiluo] to rule; the officiating of a sovereign; **see** sovereign.
sovereign palace *noun* [933 basilion] the area in which a sovereign resides.
sovereigndom *noun* {4410 melukah} {4437 malku} {4438 malkuth, malkuyah} {4467 mamlakah} {4468 mamlakuth} [932 basilia] the area or peoples over which a sovereign reigns.
sovereignness *noun* {4436 malkah} {4433 malka} {4446 melecheth} [938 basilissa] a sovereign's woman; the title of a female who reigns over a sovereigndom.
sowing *participle* [4901 meshek] a sowing.
span *noun* [1574 gomed] {2239 zereth} the breadth of a hand.
Spain *transliterated name* [4681 spania] a region of Europe.
spanned in the palms *plural verb* {2949 tippuch} held in the span of a palm.
spare *verb* {2347 chue} to cover as in protection; **see** haven.
spare *verb* {2820 chasak} to preserve.
spare, bear, lade, lift, load *verb* {5375 nacah} {5376 nesa} to lift, in a variety of applications.
spare, compassion *verb* {2550 chamal} [3629 oiktirmon] to compassion; to spare.
sparkle, flow *verb* [5102 nahar] to flow, as to assemble; to sparkle, as to be cheerful.
speak *verb* [2980 laleo] [4354 proslaleo] to express thoughts or articulate sounds.
spear *noun* [2595 chaniyth] {7013 qayin} a lance for thrusting.
species (in), (to) species *noun* {2177, 2178 zan} {4327 min} by specific kinds.
specified *adjective* **census, mandate** *noun* {4662 miphqad} an enumeration; a designated spot; an order, or command.
spectacle, see *noun* {7210 roiy} from the root, sight; a vision.
speech *noun* [2981 lalia] that which is spoken.
speechless *noun* [216 alalos] without speech.
spelt *noun* {3698 kuccemeth} a variety of grain.
sperma *transliterated noun* [4690 sperma] the seed from which anything develops.
spermatologist *transliterated noun* [4691 spermologos] a seedy worder; an empty talker.
spice, embalm, ripen *verb* [2590 chanat] from the root, to spice.
spice, spicery *noun* {5219 nekoth} {5238 nekoth} an aromatic gum, as pounded out; **see** smitten.
spicy *plural adjective* {4840 merqachim} spicy seasonings.
spicy broth *noun* {4841 merqachah} an effusion of spiced seasonings.
spin, twirl, twist *noun* {1524 giyl} {1525 giylah} a physical expression of joy.
spin, twirl, twist *verb, noun* {1523 giyl, guwl} {3769 karar} [4761 strebloom] to spin around, as in rejoicing; **cp** whirl.
spindle, circuit, crutch *noun* {6418 pelek} to be round; a spindle as whirled; hence a crutch.
spine *noun* {6096 atseh} the backbone.
spinning *noun* {4299 matveh} that made by spinning.
spinnings, spun *noun* {4749 miqshah} turned, as in a lathe.
spiral stairs *plural noun* {3883 lowlim} circular steps.
spiral upward *verb* [55 abak] to coil upward.
spiraling *participle* [4141 muwcab] a coiling.
spirit(s), spiritual(s); see SUMMARY: SPIRIT, SPIRITUAL:
spit *verb* {7556 raqq} to expectorate.
spit, spittle *noun* {7536 roq} **cp** saliva.
splatter, scatter, shatter *verb* {5310 naphats} {5311 nephets} {6327 puts} {6340 pazar} {7376 ratash} to disperse; to disperse by shattering.
spleen *noun* [4698 splankna] a large lymphatic organ which modifies the blood structure, symbol of compassion.
spleen (large) *noun* [4184 polusplanknos] the spleen as figurative of much compassion.
spleen (sympathetic) *noun* [4697 splanknizomai] the spleen as symbolic of sympathetic compassion.
spleen (tender) *noun* [2155 eusplanknos] the spleen as symbolic of tender compassion.
splendidly *adverb* {4358 miklowl} with splendor.
splendour *noun* {3314 yiphah} {*plural* 4360 miklulum} beauty.
split *verb* {1234 baqa} [4977 skizo] to separate into more than one.
split, blink, calm, rest *verb* [7280 raga] this word is derived

LEXICON

from two roots; blink and split, as momentary; calm and rest, as soothing.

split, breach, break (off) (loose), craunch, crunch, separate *verb* {6561 paraq} {6562 peraq} {6555 parats} to breach; to separate from; to split.

split, breach, separate *noun* {6556 perets} a breach; a separation from; a split.

split, schism *transliterated noun* [4978 schisma] a gap; a split.

split, separate *verb* {6536 parac} {6537 perac} to separate from; to split.

spoil *noun* {7998 shalal} that which is plundered.

spoil, despoil, pledge *verb* {2254, 2255 chabal} literally, to bind tightly; as in spoiling or as in binding a pledge.

spoil, drop *verb* {7997 shalal} to let drop; to strip, or plunder.

spokes *plural noun* {2839 chishshuq} as attached; **see** hubs.

spontaneous growth *noun* {5599 caphiyach} a self-growing growth.

spontaneous sprout *noun* {7823 shachic} a self-sprouting sprout.

spore *verb* {4687 spiro} the implanting or planting of sperma. **spot, patch** *verb* {2921 tala} to color in spots; to repair in spots.

spread *verb* {3331 yatsa} {6566 paras} {6576 parshez} {6581 pasah} to disperse; to spread thin.

spread *verb* {4969 mathach} as in stretching nets, or tents.

spread *verb* {7502 raphad} {7849 shatach} to expend.

spread, bed down *verb* {3331 yatsa} to strew as a surface.

spread, grow, scatter *verb* {6335 push} {837 auxano} to grow, to enlarge; as in spreading out.

spread, separate *verb* {6504 parad} to break through; to separate from; to spread out.

spread, strip *verb* {6584 pashat} to spread out; to deploy; to strip clothing; to flay the skin.

spread (thin), stretch, extend *verb* {5186 natah} {5628 sarach} to bend away; to spread out; to stretch.

spread over, overspread *verb* {5259 nacak} to interweave.

spreads *plural noun* {4765 marbadim} oversized spreads.

sprigs *plural noun* {2150 zalzal} small twigs.

springing, proceeding, procedure, rising *noun* {4161 motsa} {plural 4163 motsaath} literally, the source of going forth, whether of persons, of water, of the sun.

sprinkle *verb* {2236 zaraq} {4472 rhantizo} to sprinkle solids or liquids.

sprinkle *verb* {5137 nazah} {7450 racac} a ceremonious libating of blood, oil, or water.

sprinkler *noun* {4219 mizraq} a bowl or bason used to sprinkle.

sprout *noun* {1877 deshe} {1883 dethe} {3126 yoneq} {3127 yoneqeth} {4731 maqqlah} a sprout; a grass.

sprout *noun* {6780 tsemach} a sprout; also a prophetic title of the Messiah; **cp** rod; **cp** scion.

sprout *verb* {6779 tsamach} [985 blastano] to germinate; to sprout.

sprout (forth) *verb* {1876 dasha} [1631 ekphuo] [5453 phuo] to newly grow.

sprout (spontaneous) *noun* {7823 shachic} a self-sprouting sprout.

spurn *verb* {3973 maowc} to refuse with disdain.

spy, step, tread *verb* {7270 ragal} verb of foot; to measure out with the foot; **see** foot.

squad *noun* [4686 spira] a small group in a quad.

square, foursquare *verb* {7251 raba} to cause to be quadrate.

squeezed juice *noun* {6071 acic} juice, as freshly trodden.

squeezings *noun* {5332 netsach} as bright red juice of grapes. **stab** *verb* {1856 daqar} [2944 taan] {plural 4094 madqarah} to stab through.

staff bearer *noun* [4465 rabdoukos] one that bears a staff.

staff, staves, timber *noun* {905 bad} [3586 xulon] [4464 rhabdos] timber, or staves made therefrom.

stagger *verb* {7478 raal} to reel; to stagger.

stagger, stray, wander *verb* {8582 taah} to reel; to stray.

stagger, totter, wag, wander, waver, drift, shake *verb* {5128 nuwa} to waver.

staggering *noun* {6330 puqah} stumbling; **see** waver, wiggle.

staggering *noun* {8653 tarelah} reeling.

stain *noun* [3436 molusmos] blackish.

stain *noun* [4696 spilos] soil.

stain *verb* [3435 moluno] to blacken.

stain *verb* [4695 spiloo] to soil.

stake *noun* [3489 yathed] [4716 stauros] a tabernacle or tent

stake; an upright stake on which our Adonay was staked.

stake, blast, clang, clap, shout *verb* {7321 ruwa} {8628 taqa} [4078 peegnumi] [4717 stauroo] to sound loudly; to celebrate by shouting, and/or blasting shophars and trumpets unto Yah Veh; to shout and/or blast a battle cry; to stake a tabernacle or tent; to stake for execution.

stake(ing), blast(ing), clang(ing), clap(ping), shout(ing) *noun* {8619 taqowa} {8643 teruah} a loud sound; the celebration of shouting, and/or blasting shophars and trumpets unto Yah Veh; also of shouting, and/or blasting a battle cry; a stake of a tent, or tabernacle; a stake for execution.

stalk *noun* {7054 qamah} {7070 qaneh} the stem of a plant.

stallion *noun* {7409 rekeshe} as set aside.

stalls *dual noun* {4942 mishpathim} stalls for animals.

stammerer, stammering *adjective* {5926 illeg} stuttering.

stand, standing, station *noun* {4673 matsab} {4674 mutstsab} {4675 mitstsabah} {5979 emdah} a stand; a military station.

stand, stay, withstand *verb* {5975 amad} {5977 omed} [436 anthistemi] [478 antikathistemi] to stand steady; to stand against.

stand (by), station (by), place (by), set (by) *verb* {3320 yatsab} {3322 yatsag} {5324 natsab} from the root, to place, so as to stay.

stand guard *verb* {7520 ratsad} to look with suspicion.

star *noun* {3556 kowkab} [792 aster] [798 astron] a luminous body in the heavens.

start early, early start *verb* {7925 shakam} to start early.

stater *transliterated noun* [4715 stater] a coin with a standard of value.

station, base *noun* {3653 ken} a base, as in furniture; a base as in a station, or office.

station, stand, standing *noun* {4673 matsab} {4674 mutstsab} {4675 mitstsabah} {5979 emdah} a stand; a military station.

station (by), place (by), set (by), stand (by) *verb* {3320 yatsab} {3322 yatsag} {5324 natsab} from the root, to place, so as to stay.

statute *noun* {2706 choq} {2708 chuqqah} a law engraved in stone; **cp** statue.

statute *noun* {2711 cheqeq} an enactment.

statue, station, prefect *noun* {5333 netsib} {plural 5460 seganin} {plural 5461 saganim} {6346, 6347 pechah} a stationed officer; that which is stationary; a station; also a statue.

statue (set) *verb* **statue setter** *participle* **engrave** *verb* {2710 chaqaq} [1795 entupoo] to engrave; to prescribe; **cp** statue.

staves, timber, staff *noun* {905 bad} [3586 xulon] [4464 rhabdos] timber, or staves made therefrom.

stay, withstand, stand *verb* {5975 amad} {5977 omed} [436 anthistemi] [478 antikathistemi] to stand steady; to stand against.

stay around, surround *verb* {3803 kathar} to enclose.

stay overnight *verb* {3885 lun, lin}.

steal *verb* {1589 ganab} to thieve; to deceive; **see** thief.

steadfast *adjective* [949 bebaios] stable.

steep steps *noun* {4095 madregah} a steep, or inaccessible place.

steepings *noun* {4952 mishrah} maceration; a steeped juice.

stench *noun* {6292 piggul} {6709 tsachanah} a stink; a putrefaction.

step *noun* {4096 midrak} a treading.

step, support, time, anvil *noun* {6471 paamah} anvil, as a support; support, as a pedestal or column in a structure; a "stepper", as a supporter of the body; time, as an occasion or occurrence – but not as measured time.

step, tread, spy *verb* {7270 ragal} verb of foot; to measure out with the foot; **see** foot.

Stephanas *transliterated name* [4734 stephanas] Wreathed.

Stephanos *transliterated name* [4736 stephanos] Wreathed.

steps, degrees *noun* {4609 maalah} steps; stations; a progression; 1/360th of a circle.

sterile *adjective* {1565 galmuwd} {6135 aqar} barren; desolate.

stern *adjective* **harden** *verb* {7188 qashach} severe; without feeling.

stern, hard *adjective* {7186 qasheh} [4642 skleeros] harsh; severe.

steward *noun* {4453 meltsar} the tsar over the household.

stibium *noun* {6320 puk} a stibium dye for the face.

stick, adhere, join *verb* {1692 dabaq} {1693 debaq} [4347 proskollao] to join one's self to closely; stick to; to remain

LEXICON

attached.

stinger *noun* {3654 ken} a stinging insect.

stink *noun* {889 beosh} a bad smell.

stink *verb* {887 baash} {888 beesh} to smell bad; to be offensive.

stinkweed *noun* {890 boshah} {plural 891 beushiym} bad smelling weeds.

stitching *noun* {8278 serad} as pierced with a needle.

Stoic *transliterated name* {4770 stoikos} one of pantheistic philosophy.

stokade *noun* {4115 mahpecheth} a stokade, as being wrenched in.

stone *noun* {5619 caqal} {3035 lithinos} {3036 lithoboleo} {3037 lithos} a detached piece of rock.

stone *verb* {7275 ragam} {3034 lithazo} to hurl stones.

stoneheap *noun* {4773 margemah} a heap of stones.

stones (red hot), pavement *noun* {7528 ratsaph} {7529 retseph} as used for baking; as used for laying a pavement.

stood on end *verb* {5568 camar} to be erect; to bristle.

stool *noun* {1916 hadom} as a place to tromp or set the foot; see trample.

stop (up), shut (up) *verb* {5640 satham} to stop up; figuratively, to keep secret.

storage *plural adjective* {4543 mickenoth} an area to store valuables.

storm *noun* **stormy** *adjective* {5591 saar} {5592 caph} a weather storm.

storm *verb* {5590 caar} to agitate; to rush.

stoutness *noun* {100 hadrotes} plumpness in the sense of growth.

straight *adjective* {3474 yashar} {3477 yashar} {3717 orthos} as in upright; not crooked.

straight, straightness, level, plain *noun* {4334 miyshor, plural miyshorim} {4339 meyshar} {6160 arabah} plain, as unadorned; as a level land area; as of straight character; as just.

straight-footed {3716 orthopodeo} to go directly forward.

straighten *verb* {461 anorthoo} to straighten.

straighten, sort *verb* {8626 taqan} to unbend; to become upright; to sort out.

straightforward, straightforwardness *adjective* {5228 nakoach} {5229 nekoach} as integrative.

straightness *noun* {3476 yosher} {3483 yishrah} as in uprightness; as in integrative.

straightway *adverb* {2112 utheos} {2117 uthus} at once; immediately.

straits, confines, distress, narrows *noun* {4689 matsaq} {4691 metsuqah} {4712 metsar} from the root, belly; a narrow place; a confinement.

strange, estrange *verb* {2114 zuwr} to cause to be strange; although a verb, often carries the force of a noun.

strange, stranger *adjective* {5237 nokriy} {3579 xenizo} alien.

strange, stranger *noun* {2114 zur} {5235 noker} {5236 nekar} {3581 xenos} an alien; a cality.

strangers (lodge) *verb* {3580 zenodokeo} to be hospitable.

strangle *verb* {2614 chanaq} {519 apankomai} {4155 pnigo} {4846 sumpnigo} to choke.

strangled *noun* {4156 pniktos} that which is choked.

strangling *noun* {4267 machanaq} by choking.

strategize *verb* {6191 aram} to plot subtly.

strategoi *transliterated plural noun* {4755 strategos} strategists.

strategy *noun* {6193 orem} {6195 ormah} a subtle plot.

straw *noun* {8401 teben} stalk on which grain grows.

stray fruit *noun* {6528 peret} a stray fruit; a single fruit.

stray, wander, stagger *verb* {8582 taah} to reel; to stray.

stream *noun* {2988 yabal} {3105 yubal} a current of water.

stream, branch, ear *noun* {7641 shibboleth} a branch or an ear of grain, as growing; a stream, as flowing; see shibboleth.

streamlet *noun* {4323 miykal} a little stream.

street *noun* {7784 shuq} {4505 rhume} a road midst houses.

strength *noun* {202 own} {556 amtsah} {2391 chezeq} {2392 chozeq} {5797 oz} {5807 ezuz} physical ability.

strength *noun* {5326 nitsbah} {plural 8443 toaphah} firmness; speed.

strengthen, uphold, callous, prevail *verb* {553 amats} {555 omets} {2388 chazaq} {2393 chezqah} {5810 azaz} to enable physically; to become thickskinned.

stretch, extend, spread (thin) *verb* {5186 natah} {5628 sarach} to bend away; to spread out; to stretch.

stricken *adjective* {5218 naka} smitten.

stride *noun* {6587 pesa} a spread of the legs.

stride, spread *verb* {6585 pasa} {6589 pasaq} a spreading of the legs, or the lips.

strife *noun* {4066 maddown} {4683 matstah} {4808 meribah} a struggle of words; a quarrel; a contest.

strife, contention, defence, plea *noun* {7379 rib} a personal, or legal contest.

strike (round about), surround, round *verb* {5362 naqaph} to strike; to strike all around; to surround; to round off the beard.

strike *verb* {4223 mecha} {4272 machats} to strike in pieces; to impale.

strip *verb* {1497 gazal} to flay, or cut.

strip, bare *verb* {2834 chasaph} to strip off as to expose.

strip, equip, rescue *verb* {2502 chalats} literally, to strip for hostility; to strip out of danger.

strip, escape, rescue *verb* {5337, 5338 natsal} to snatch away; favorably, or unfavorably.

strip, pluck *verb* {6998 qataph} {7059 qamat} to pluck out; to strip off.

strip, spread *verb* {6584 pashat} to spread out; to deploy; to strip clothing; to flay the skin.

strip bare *verb* {6209 arar} to bare; figuratively, to demolish.

strip naked, empty, pour out *verb* {6168 arah} {6379 pakah} to empty; to empty by pouring; to strip bare; see naked.

stripped *noun* {7758 sholal} bare.

stripped *verb* {554 apekduomai} {555 apekduosis} to despoil.

stripped, stripping *noun* {1498 gazel} {1499 gezel} {1500 gezelah} that which has been flayed, or cut.

strive, contend, defend, plead *verb* {7378 rub} to hold a controversy.

strive, desolate *verb* {5327 natsah} to struggle; to lay waste.

stroke *noun* {4273 machats} {4347 makkah} a strike.

stroke, worn (out), rub, sicken *verb* {2470 chalah} to wear out; to stroke the face as in appeasement.

stroll *verb* {6808 tsaah} to pace at leisure; see pace.

stroll *verb* {7788 shur} to wander about; as a whore, as a merchant.

strong, tough *adjective* {533 ammits} {554 amots} {2389 chazaq} {5794 az} {5808 izzuz} forceful; harsh; physically able.

stronger *adjective* {2390 chazeq} more powerful.

stronghold *noun* {4581 mauz} a place of protection.

strongly *adverb* {2394 chozqah} vehemently.

structure *noun* {8498 tekunah} the architecture.

strum *verb* **strummers** *participle* {5059 nagan} to strum, as on a musical instrument; one who strums; **cp** pluck.

strummer, strumming *noun* {5058 neginah} a musical instrument.

strums, strummings *plural noun* {4482 minim} a musical chord as parted into strings.

stubble *noun* {7179 qash} the stubs left in the soil after harvesting.

stumble *noun* {3783 kishshalon} ruin.

stumble *verb* {4417 ptaio} to trip up; to err; to sin.

stumble, trip, falter *verb* {3782 kashal} to totter; to waver.

stumbling *noun* {4348 proskomma} {4349 proskopee} an obstacle; to provide an occasion for sinning.

stumblingblock *noun* {4383 mikshol} {4384 makshelah} an obstacle; an enticement.

stump *noun* {6136 iqqar} the underground part of a tree.

stump, monolith *noun* {4676 matstebah} {4678 matstebeth} a singular block of stone.

stun, astonish, desolate *verb* {8074 shamem} {8075 shemam} to stun, as in to stupefy or devastate; to lay waste.

stupid *adjective* {1198 baar} gullible; one who swallows.

stupidity *noun* {6580 pash} degeneracy.

stylus *noun* {2747 cheret} {5842 et} {8279 sered} an instrument for engraving or inscribing.

Suach *transliterated name* {5477 cuwach} Sweeping.

Suar *transliterated name* {6686 tsuwar} Belittle.

subdue *verb* {3533 kabash} literally, to tread down.

subdue *verb* {4355 makak} literally, to tumble.

subdue, humble, humbling *verb* {3665 kana} {6031 anab} {6033 anah} {6039 enuth} {6800 tsana} {5013 tapino} to cause to bend the knee; to knuckle under; to lower in esteem or status.

subdue, overlay *verb* {7286 radad} to conquer; to sheet over.

subject to *noun* {1777 enochos} as in, liable to a penalty.

subject *verb* {5293 hupotasso} to obey; to subordinate.

subjugate, crumble *verb* {7287 radah} to bring under; to

LEXICON

conquer.

submit *verb* [5226 hupiko] to yield; to surrender.

subside, hush *verb* {8367 shathaq} from the root, to subside.

substance, force, lizard *noun* {3581 koach} {3981 maamats} pressure, physical or intellectual; also a lizard.

substrata *noun* [2737 katoteros] underlayer; figurative of sheol/hades.

subterranean *noun* [2709 katakthonios] underground; of the world of departed souls.

subtil, subtle *adjective* {6175 arum} cunning.

suburb *noun* {4054 migrash} {6503 parbar} {6518 paraz} {plural 6519 perazah} a surrounding area.

suburban *adjective* {6521 peraziy; plural perozim} of a surrounding area.

suburbanite *noun* {6520 perazon} one that settles in a suburb; **cp** urbanite.

subvert, pervert *verb* {5557 calaph} to turn from; to undermine.

succeed, prosper *verb* {3787 kasher} {6743 tsaleach} {6744 tselach} to succeed; to press on.

successor *noun* {4497 manown} one who perpetuates.

such *noun* {6423 peloniy} a specific one.

such a one *noun* {6422 palmoniy} so and so.

suck (up) (out) *verb* {4041 megammah} {4711 matsats} {5966 ala} to suck up; to suck out.

suck, suckle, suckling *verb* {3243 yanaq} {5134 nuq} {5763 ul} to feed at the breast.

suck, sweeten *verb* {4985, 4988 mathaq} to be sweet; to relish.

suck, wring *verb* {4680 matsah} to wring, or squeeze out; to suck out.

suckling *noun* {5764 ul} {5768 olal} one who feeds at the breast; **see** infant.

sudarium *transliterated noun* [4676 soudarion] a cloth used to wipe perspiration from the face or to wrap the head of a corpse.

suddenly *adverb* {6597 pithom} instantly.

sufficiency *noun* {7647 saba} an overflow; plenty.

satire *noun* {4426 melitsah} {4485 manginah} a literary work holding up follies or shortcomings for ridicule.

sufficient *adjective* [566 apeki] adequate.

sufficient *adjective* [713 arketos] satisfactory.

sufficient, satisfied *verb* [714 arkeo] to be satisfactory. **see** SUMMARY: SATIATE, SATISFY, SUFFICIENT:

Suchahiy *transliterated name* {7756 suwachthiy} Of Sukah.

Sukkoth Benoth *transliterated noun* {5524 cukkowthbenowth} Brush Arbor of the Daughters.

Sukkoth/Brush Arbors, sukkoth, brush arbor *transliterated noun* {5520 cok} {5521 cukkah} {5522 cikkuwth} {5523 cukkowth} {7900 sok} [4634 skeenopeegia] Brush Arbor; name of places in Pelesheth and Misrayim; a brush arbor to harbor animals; a celebration of harvest, of spreading of branches, of Hoshia Na; Leviticus 23:33–44, Yahn 7:37, Psalm 118:25, 26, Matthaios 21:9–15, Markos 11:9,10, Yahn 12:13, Apocalypse 7:9,10; **see** Hoshia Na.

sulphur *noun* {1614 gophriyth} [2303 thion] as ignited.

sulphurous *adjective* [2306 thiodes] sulphur-like.

sum *noun* {6575 parashah} the full exposition; the total.

sum, head *noun* {7217 resh} the top of the body; the sum total.

sum up *verb* [346 anakephalaiomai] to total.

summer (fruit) (house) *noun* {7019 qaits} the summer season; summer fruit; a summer house.

summit *noun* [2872 tabbuwr] top of the pile.

summon *verb* {6817 tsaq} [2753 keluo] [3343 metapempo] to call to convene.

summons *noun* [2752 keleuma] a call to convene.

sun *noun* {8121, 8122 shemesh} [2246 helios] the brightest body in the heavens.

sun icons *plural noun* {2553 chamman} sun pillars.

sup, supping *verb* [1172 dipneo] to dine.

superabound *verb* [4052 perissuo] [4121 pleonazo] to exceed abundantly.

superabundance *noun* [4051 perissuma] a surplus.

superabundant *adjective, adverb* [4053 perissos] [5250 hyperpleonazo] in the sense of beyond; excessive, supreme.

superabundantly (more) *adverb* [4054 perissoteron] [4055, 4056 perissoteros] [4057 perissos] [5249 hyperperissos] more exceedingly.

superior *adjective* [5242 hupereko] to stand out; to excel; to be above.

Suph *transliterated name* {6689 tsuwph} Honeycomb.

supper *noun* [1173 dipnon] a formal meal usually in the evening

supplement *verb* [466 antanapleeroo] to fulfill; to fill up.

supplication *noun* {8467 techinnah} {plural 8469 tachanunim} entreaty; petition.

support, counsel *noun* {8454 tushiah} {plural 8458 tachbuloth} advice; support.

support, crutch *noun* {4938 mishenah} that on which one leans.

support, palmspan *noun* {2947 tephach} {2948 tophach} the span of a palm; a span; a support.

support, partake *verb* [482 antilambanomai] [484 antilepsis] to take part; to support.

support, supply *noun* [4937 mishen] that on which one leans.

support, time, anvil, step *noun* {6471 paamah} anvil, as a support; support, as a pedestal or column in a structure; a "stepper", as a supporter of the body; time, as an occasion or occurrence – but not as measured time.

support, uphold *verb* {5582 scaad} to support; usually, figuratively; **cp** prop.

Sur *transliterated name* {6698 tsur} Rock.

Suri El *transliterated name* {6700 tsuriel} Rock of El.

Suri Shadday *transliterated name* {6701 tsurishadday} Rock of Shadday; **see** Shadday.

surpass, trespass, overpass, pass (over) (through) *verb* {5674 abar} to cross over; this verb is unrelated to the mistranslation of passover.

surrender, betray, deliver *verb* [3860 paradidomi] to give to possession of another; to deliver to an enemy; to release.

surround, environ, round *noun* {3603 kikkar} literally, circle; the environs of an area; a round of material, usually of precious metals.

surround, round, strike (round about) *verb* {5362 naqaph} to strike; to strike all around; to surround; to round off the beard.

surround, stay around *verb* {3803 kathar} to enclose.

surround, turn (about) (around), go (about) (around) *verb* {5437 cabab} to border; to revolve; to surround.

survey *verb* {8376 taah} {8388 taar} to mark off; to designate.

survive *verb* {7604 shaar} {8277 sarad} as having escaped.

survive, survivors *noun* {7605, 7606 shear} {7611 sheeriyth} {8300 sariyd} as escaped.

survivor *noun* {2475 chaloph} as being orphaned.

suspect, envy *verb* **jealous, zealous** *adjective* {7065 qana} {7067 qanna} {7072 qannow} to be zealous, as jealous, or envious.

suspend, hang *verb* **prone** *participle* {8511 tala} {8518 talah} to suspend.

suspicion, envy, jealous *noun* {7068 qinah} zeal, as jealousy, or envy.

sustain, contain, maintain, measure *verb* {3557 kuwl} to keep in.

sustain, guide *verb* {5095 nahal} literally, to lead with light.

sustain, uphold, prop *verb* {5564 camak} {8551 tamak} to prop up; with the hands, or with props.

swallow *verb* [2666 katapino] to drink down; to destroy; to be overwhelmed with sorrow.

swallow, horse *noun* {5483 cuc} {5484 cucah} a horse as leaping; a swallow as flitting.

swan, chameleon *noun* {8580 tanshemeth} hard breather.

swarmers *noun* {6157 arob} insects as swarming; **cp** teemers.

swathe *verb* {2853 chathal} [2854 chathullah] to wrap as a baby, as a bandage.

sway, wag over, wander, waver *verb* [5110 nud] to waver.

sweater *noun* {3154 yeza} a garment that causes sweat.

sweep (away) *verb* [5502 cachaph] to scrape off.

sweepings *noun* {5478 suwachah} that which is swept away.

sweeten, suck *verb* {4985, 4988 mathaq} to be sweet; to relish.

sweeter, sweetness *adjective* {4966 mathoq} {4986 metheq} {4987 motheq} sweet; pleasantness.

swell *adjective* {6639 tsabeh} swollen.

swell, host *verb* {6638 tsabah} to assemble a host; to swell up.

swell, presume *verb* {6075 aphalt} to assume beforehand; an ascending, as swollen.

swelling, exalting, lifting *noun* {7613 seeth} an elevation; from the verb, lift {5375}.

swelling within *adjective* [1471 enkuos] pregnant.

swerve *participle swerver* *noun* {7750 sut} {plural 7750 sutim} one that turns to avoid.

LEXICON

swift *adjective* {7031 qal} rapid.
swift, trifle, abase, abate, belittle, slight *verb* {6819 tsaar} {6985 qat} {7034 qalah} {7043 qalal} [2274 heetaomai] to belittle in contempt; to make light of; to lessen.
swim *noun* {7813 sachu} from the verb, to swim.
swim *verb* {7811 sachah} to inundate; to swim.
swoop *verb* {5860 it} literally, or figuratively, to swoop down.
swooper *noun* {5861 ait} a being that swoops.
sword *noun* {2719 chereb} {4380 mekerah} a cutting instrument; a stabber.
sycamine fig *noun* [4807 sukaminos] a species of fig.
sycamore *transliterated noun* {8256 shaqam} [4809 sukomorai] a species of tree.
Sychar *transliterated name* {7941 shekar} [4965 suchar] Intoxicant.
sycophant *transliterated noun* [4811 sukophanteo] a fig informer; a tattletale.
sympathy *noun* {4263 machmal} compassion.
symphonia *transliterated dual noun* {5481 ciyphoneya} Hellenic; literally, a sounding as one; a soundbag with dual pipes.
symphonize *verb* [4856 sumphoneo] [4859 sumphonos] literally, to sound as one; to harmonize; to agree.
symphony *transliterated noun* [4857 sumpheesis] [4858 sumphonia] literally, a sounding as one; harmony; a group of instruments sounding together.
synagogue *transliterated noun* [4864 sunagogee] Hellenic translation of the Hebrew congregation.
synagogue arch *transliterated noun* [752 archchisunagogos] the arch over a synagogue.
synagogue together *transliterated verb* [1997 episunagoge] to co-congregate.
Syria *transliterated name* {6865 tsor} [4947 suria] Rock; **cp** Sor.
Syriaiy *transliterated name* {6865 tsor} [4948 suros] Of Syria.

T

Taanak *transliterated name* {8590 taanak} the meaning uncertain; a place in Pelesheth.
Taarea *transliterated name* {8390 taarea} possibly, Earthly.
Tab Rimmon *transliterated name* {2886 tabrimmown} Goodly to Rimmon.
Tabē El *transliterated name* {2870 tabeel} Goodly of El.
tabernacle; **see** SUMMARY: TABERNACLE.
Tabitha, Dorcas, gazelle *noun* {6643 tsebiy} {6646 tsebiyah} [5000 tabitha] a gazelle, as beautiful; Tabitha is the Hellene transliteration of tsebiyah; Dorcas is the Hellene translation of tsebiyah.
table *noun* {7979 shulchan} a table, as spread out.
tablet *noun* [4093 pinakidion] a small slab for scribing; **cp** slab.
Tachan *transliterated name* {8465 tachan} Encamped.
Tachaniy *transliterated name* {8470 tachaniy} Of Tachan.
Tachash *transliterated name* {8477 tachash} Badger.
Tachath *transliterated name* {8480 tachath} Beneath.
Tachkemoni *transliterated name* {8461 tachkemoniy} Enwisen.
Tachpanches *transliterated name* {8471 tachpanchec} the meaning uncertain; a place in Misrayim.
Tachpenes *transliterated name* {8472 tachpenecy} the meaning uncertain; a Misrayim woman.
Tachrea *transliterated name* {8475 tachrea} possibly, Earthly.
tail *noun* [2180 zahna] literally, a flapper; **see** curtail.
tailoring *noun* {4055 mad} measured, or fitted clothing.
tailoring, measure, measurement *noun* {4060 middah} [4067 madown] {plural 4461 memadim} size.
take *verb* [618 apolambano] [2983 lambano] to take hold of; to take aside.
take, lift *verb* [142 airo] to take up; to take away.
take, undertake *verb* {6901 qabal} {6902 qebal} [353 analambano] to acquire; to take up; **cp** receive.
take heed *verb* [4337 proseko] to hold the mind towards; to be cautious about.
take out *verb* [336 anairesis] [337 anaireo] in the sense of deathifying.
take over, overtake *verb* [2638 katalambano] to lay hold of; to seize.
taken up *verb* [354 analepsis] ascended.
taking *noun* [3028 lepsis] receipt.
talebearer *noun* {7400 rakil} a scandalmonger, as travelling about.

Talmay *transliterated name* {8526 talmay} Ridged.
Tamar *transliterated name* {8559 tamar} [2283 thamar] Erect.
tambourine *noun* {8596 toph} {8611 topheth} as being shaken; a shallow drum, played with the hands.
tambourining *verb* {8608 taphaph} to play the tambourine.
tame *verb* {3711 kaphah} to bend into submission.
Tanchumeth *transliterated name* {8576 tanchumeth} Consolations.
tankard, hoarfrost *noun* {3713 kephor} a covering; hoarfrost, as covering the ground; a tankard, as a covered vessel.
Taom *transliterated name* {8380 taomim} [2381 thomas] Twin; **see** Twin.
Tappuach *transliterated name* {8599 tappuwach} Apple.
target, target area *noun* {4307 mattarah} [4645 miphga] that which is aimed at; an area for aiming.
tarry *verb* [1304 diatribo] to remain.
Tarshish *transliterated name* {8659 tarshish} a place in the Mediterranean.
Tartaq *transliterated name* {8662 tartaq} the meaning uncertain; a deity of the Avviym.
Tartaros (incarcerate in) *verb* [5020 tartaros] possibly the lowest abyss in sheol/hades; **see** sheol/hades.
tassel *noun* {6731 tsits} as a tassel of hair; as an ornament.
taste *noun* {2940 taam} taste includes the full gestation.
taste *verb* {2938 taam} [1089 guomai] to taste; taste includes the full gestation.
taste, decree *noun* {2941, 2942 teem} judgment; flavor.
Tattenay *transliterated name* {8674 tattenay} the meaning uncertain; a Persian.
tattoo, brand, etching, mark *noun* {7085 qaaqa} {8420 tab} [5480 karagma] a scratched marking; a mark on animals; an x or a + as a signature of an illiterate; a mark of protection; **read** Yechezq El 9:4–6; **read** Apocalypse 13:16,17, 14:9–11, 15:2, 16:2, 19:20, 20:4; **cp** brand.
tattoo, brand, mark *verb* {8427, 8428 tavah} to mark an animal; to mark an x or + as a signature of an illiterate, or to mark for protection.
teach *plural verb* {4000 mabowm} to cause to discern.
teach, learn *verb* {3925 lamad} literally, to goad; to disciple; to be disciplined; **see** *verb* disciple.
tear *verb* [1145 dakruo] to shed tears.
tear *verb* {6533 param} {6582 pashach} to rip.
tear, prey *noun* {2964 tereph} {2966 terephah} [5706 ad] a prey, as an object of attack; as being torn.
tear (away) (up) *verb* {5420 nathac} [5423 nathaq] to tear off; to tear up.
Tebach *transliterated name* {2875 tebach} Slaughter.
Tebal Yah *transliterated name* {2882 tebalyah} Dipped of Yah.
Tebes *transliterated name* {8405 tebets} Whiteness.
Techinnah *transliterated name* {8468 techinnah} Supplication.
teem *verb* {8317 sharats} to become prolific.
teemer *noun* {8318 sherets} one who becomes prolific; **cp** swarmer.
teeth, tusks *plural noun* {6374 piphiah} {8143 shenhabbin} teeth of a person, animal, or instrument.
Tel Aviv *transliterated name* {8512 telaviv} Heap of Unripe.
Tel Harsha *transliterated name* {8521 telcharsha} Heap of an Engraver.
Tel Melach *transliterated name* {8528 telmelach} Heap of Salt.
Telach *transliterated name* {8520 telach} Breach.
tell *verb* {5046 nagad} to relate.
Temach *transliterated name* {8547 temach} the meaning uncertain; one of the Dedicates.
Teman *transliterated name* {8487 teman} Southerly.
Temaniy *transliterated name* {8489 teyaniy} Of Teman.
temple *noun* {7541 raqqah} the side of the head as being thin.
temple, tent; **see** SUMMARY: TABERNACLE, TEMPLE.
tend, attend, befriend, graze *verb* {7462 raah} [5256 hupeereteo] to tend a flock or to pasture; to befriend, by attending to; to cause a flock to graze; **see** attendant; **see** Yah Veh Raah.
tender *adjective* {7390 rak} [527 apalos] tender; as soft, as weak.
tender *noun* {7473 roiy} one that tends flocks.
tender *verb* {7401 rakak} to tenderize; to soften; to weaken.
tenderness *noun* {7391 rok} tenderness; as softness; as weakness.
tendril *noun* {5189 netishah} [8299 sarig] a spiral shoot of a plant which attaches itself for support.
Teqoa *transliterated name* {8620 teqowa} Blast.

LEXICON

Teqoiy *transliterated name* {8621 teqoiy} Of Teqoa.

Terach *transliterated name* {8646 terach} [2291 thara] derivative uncertain.

teraphim *transliterated plural noun* {8655 teraphim} family idols.

terrify *verb* {926 bahal} {927 behal} {1763 dechal} to panic; to hasten anxiously.

terrify, awe, dread *verb* {6206 arats} to harass; to reverence.

terrify, break (down), dismay *verb* {2865, 2866 chathath} to cause to prostrate; to break down by violence, or fear.

terror *noun* {928 behalah} {4032 magor} {4034 megorah} {7374 retet} panic.

terror *noun* {2844 chath} {2847 chittah} {2851 chittiyth} {plural 2849 chatchathim} in the sense of crushing.

terror, granary *noun* {4035 megurah} a fright; a place to store grain.

tertiary, thrice, tierce, triangle *noun* {7991 shalosh} an officer of the third rank; three times; an interval of a third; a three sided music instrument.

test *noun* {3984 pira} attempt.

test *verb* {5254 nacah} {426 anetazo} [1598 ekpirazo] [3985 pirazo] to test; to attempt; to try as in a court.

testi *noun* {6344 pachad} a testicle.

testing *noun* {3986 pirasmos} a putting to proof.

testing *noun* **Massah** *transliterated name* {4531 maccah} name means Testing.

tetrarch *transliterated title* [5075 tetrarcheo] [5076 tetrarchees] a ruler over a fourth part.

thatch *noun* [4721 stege] thatched roof.

then *adverb* {227 az} at that time, at that place: most versions, to avoid monotony, use **then** instead of **and**.

then *adverb* [687 ara] denoting an interrogation to which a negative answer is presumed: **see** so.

thence (from) [2547 kakithen] (of place) thence; (of time) thereafter, afterward.

Theo Philos *transliterated name* [2321 theophilos] Friend of God/Elohim.

therapist *transliterated noun* [2324 therapon] one skilled in therapeutics.

therapy *transliterated noun* [2322 therapia] cure.

thick (cloud), thicket, thickness *adjective* {5645, 5646 ab} {5672 abiy} {5687 aboth} thick; enveloping as a cloud.

thicken *verb* {5666 abah} to cause to be dense.

thicket *noun* {5441 cobek} {5442 cebak} {7730 sobek} trees or shrubs closely set.

thief *noun* {1590 gannab} one who steals.

thigh *noun* [3382 meros] the upper leg.

thin, pulverized *adjective* {1851 dak} thin; beaten small; emaciated.

thing, things *noun* **note:** These two word are never used throughout manuscripts; most often, they have been added by the translators to satisfy the English idiom. At times, they are a mistranslation of the word, **word**, and a very few other words. These instances are brought out in the *exeGeses companion BIBLE* thus: **thing word**.

think, shine *verb* {6245 ashath} {6246 ashith} as polishing.

think, think well, well thinking *verb* [1380 dokeo] [2106 eudokeo] [2107 eudokia] [5426 phroneo] the (well) exercise of the mind.

think amiss *verb* [5422 phrenapatao] to be misled in mind.

thirst *noun* {6772 tsama} {6773 tsimah} a dryness.

thirst *noun* {6774 tsimmaon} a place of thirst.

thirst *verb* {6770 tsame} [1372 dipsao] literally, or figuratively, to thirst for; to long for.

thirsty *adjective* {6771 tsame} literally, to thirst; figuratively, to be longing for.

thistle *noun* {plural 5621 carabim} {7057 qimosh} {7063 qimmashon} a prickly plant.

thong *noun* [2438 himas] a strap or strip of leather; a whip to lash or to bind criminals; also a fastener, as a of a sandal.

thorn, hook *noun* {5518 sirah} {plural 7165 qeresim} literally, a boiler; a hook; a thorn.

thorn, thorns *noun* {5518 cirah} {5544 cillon} {6791 tsen} {plural 6796 tsanimim} {6975 qots} {7898 shaith} [173 akantha] [174 akanthinis] [4647 skolops] a sharp projection on the stem of a plant.

thought *noun* {plural 6248 asthoth} {plural 6250 eshtonahoth} [1270 dianoema] [5424 phren] [5427 phronema] [5428 phronesis] that which results from thinking.

thought deluder *noun* [5423 phrenapates] a mind misleader; a

deceiver.

thoughtful *adjective* [5429 phronimos] [5431 phrontizo] exercising thought.

thoughtfully *adverb* [5430 phronimos] in a thoughtful manner.

thoughtless *adjective* [878 aphron] without thought; as ignorant; as rash.

thoughtlessness *noun* [877 aphrosunee] unthoughtful.

thread *noun* {2339 chut} from the root, to sew; a string.

three yesters ago *adverb* {8032 shilshom} {8543 temol} these two words are usually used in combination; day before yesterday.

three yesters ago *noun* {865 ethmowl} may refer to day before yesterday, or recently.

thresh *verb* [248 aloao] to tread out grain.

threshing floor *noun* {1637 goren} [257 halon] a smooth and/or hard place to thresh grain.

threshold waiter *noun* [5605 saphaph] one that waits upon the threshold; a doorman.

threshold, bason *noun* {5592 caph} {5602 cephel} a container; as a vessel, or as a vestibule.

thrice, tierce, triangle, tertiary *noun* {7991 shaloh} an officer of the third rank; three times; an interval of a third; a three sided music instrument.

throat *noun* {1621 gargeroth} {1627 garon} {3930 loa} the forepart of the neck.

throne *noun* {3676 kec} {3678 kicceh} {3764 korce} [2362 thronos] a seat of authority.

throng *noun* {6899 qibbutis} a crowd.

throng, abundance *noun* {8229 shiphah} a crowd, plenty.

throttle *verb* [1624 gahrah] to throttle the throat, to stir.

throw, cast, hurl *verb* {7993 shalak} to throw out, down, or away.

thrush *noun* {5693 aguwr} literally, to twitter; a species of bird.

thumb, great toe *noun* {931 bohen} literally, the large digit.

thunder *noun* {7482 raam} {7483 ramah} [1027 bronte] the voice caused by lightning.

thunder *verb* {7481 raam} to sound the voice caused by lightning.

thunder, irritate *verb* {7481 raam} to agitate; to be agitated.

thunder, shout *noun* {7452 rea} a crashing sound.

thunderstorm *noun* [3655 ombros].

thus *adverb* {3779 houto} in such manner. **see** Yahn 3:16.

tiara *noun* {4701 mitsnepheth} headpiece of a sovereign or archpriest.

tiara, ornament, adornment *noun* {6287 peer} an embellishment; a tiara, as an adornment.

Tibcath *transliterated name* [2880 tibcath] Slaughter.

tie, mute *verb* {481 alam} as in silencing by tying tongue, or lips; tying bundles.

tier, thirds, three, triple *noun* {8027 shalash} layers, or lofts; a whole, severed into three; three; threefold.

tierce, triangle, tertiary, thrice *noun* {7991 shaloh} an officer of the third rank; three times; an interval of a third; a three sided music instrument.

Tilgath Pilneser, Tilgath Pileser *transliterated name* {8407 tilgathpilnecer, tilgathpilecer} an Ashshuriy sovereign.

till *verb* {5214 niyr} to furrow the soil.

Timeaus *transliterated name* [5090 timaios] Fouled.

timber, staff, staves *noun* {905 bad} [3586 xulon] [4464 rhabdos] timber, or staves made therefrom.

timber, tree *noun* {6086 ets} {6097 etsah} a tree; timber; sticks of timber.

time *noun* {5732 iddan} not a specific measured period of time; rather an era of indeterminable length; as in this time, next time; of Arami origin, and appears only in Dani El.

time *noun* {6256 eth} [5550 chronos] chrono; a measured period of existence; including, but not limited to seconds, minutes, hours, days, weeks, months, years; **see** Apocalypse 10:6 for the prophecy when measured time ends and eternity begins; **cp** season.

time, anvil, step, support *noun* {6471 paamah} anvil, as a support; support, as a pedestal or column in a structure; a "stepper", as a supporter of the body; time, as an occasion or occurrence – but not as measured time.

time (at this) (by this) (from this) *adverb* {6258 attah} now; this present moment.

time (take) *verb* [5549 chronizo] to take a measured portion of time; **see** time.

time (waste) *verb* [5551 chronotribeo] to waste a measured

LEXICON

portion of time; **see** time.

timely *adjective* {6261 itti} opportunely.

timidity *noun* {4816 morek} literally, soft.

timidsouled *adjective* {3642 oligopsukos} shy; lacking courage.

Timna *transliterated name* {8555 timna} Withhold.

Timnah *transliterated name* {8553 timnah} Portion.

Timnahiy *transliterated name* {8554 timniy} Of Timnah.

Timnath Heres *transliterated name* {8556 timnathcherec} Portion of the Sun.

Timo Theos *transliterated name* {5095 timotheos} Honoured of God/Elohim.

tingle, quiver *verb* {6750 tsalal} to vibrate.

tinkle *verb* {5913 akac} to tinkle with tinklers.

tinkler *noun* {5913 ecec} an ornament that tinkles.

Tipsach *transliterated name* {8607 tiphcach} Ford.

Tiqvah *transliterated name* {8616 tiqvah} Cord.

Tirahiy *transliterated name* {8654 tirahiy} Gate; Of Tirah.

Tirchanah *transliterated name* {8647 tirchanah} the meaning uncertain; a Yisra Eliy.

Tireya *transliterated name* {8493 tiyeya} Awe.

Tirhaqah *transliterated name* {8640 tirhaqah} the meaning uncertain; a sovereign of Kush.

Tirsah *transliterated name* {8656 tirsah} Pleasure.

Tisbehiy *transliterated name* {8664 tishbiy} Recourse; Of Tishbeh (in Gilad).

Tisiy *transliterated name* {8491 tiytsiy} Of Tis.

tithe *noun* {4643 maasrah} [1181 dekate] one tenth.

tithe *verb* {6237 asar} [586 apodekatoo] [1183 dekatoo] to offer or receive one tenth.

title *transliterated noun* [5102 titlos] the rank of a person; a caption; **cp** inscription; **cp** superscription; **cp** epigraph.

titlle *noun* [2762 keraia] an infinitesimal part.

Titus *transliterated name* [5103 titos] meaning uncertain.

Tormah/deceitfully *transliterated name* {8649 tormah} Fraud.

Toach *transliterated name* {8430 towach} Humbled.

Tob Adoni Yah *transliterated name* {2899 tobadoniyah} Goodly of Adoni Yah.

Tobi Yah *transliterated name* {2900 tobiyah} Goodly of Yah.

Tochu *transliterated name* {8459 tochuw} Abasement.

toddler *noun* {2945 taph} little ones that toddle.

toe, finger *noun* {676 etsba} {677 etsba} [1147 daktulos] literally, a digit as a grasper; **cp** great toe, thumb.

together, unitedly, altogether *adverb* {3162 yachad} as one; **see** united.

toil *adjective* {6001 amel} hard working.

toil *noun* {5999 amal} to work hard.

toil *verb* {5998 amal} hard work.

Token *transliterated name* {8507 token} Gauge.

Tola *transliterated name* {8439 towla} Maggot.

Tolaiy *transliterated name* {8440 towlaiy} Of Tola.

tolerance *noun* [463 anokee] ability to restrain.

tolerate, endure *verb* [430 anekomai] to hold oneself up against.

tomb *noun* {6900 qeburah} {6913 qeber} [5028 taphos] burial; **see** entomb; **cp** grave.

tomorrow, morrow (the) *noun* {4279 machar} {4283 mochorath} [839 aurion] [1887 epaurion] the following day.

tongue *name* {3956 leshonah} {3961 lishshan} [1100 glossa] the physical body part in the mouth; a language; **cp** lip.

tonguelash *verb* {3960 lashan} to wag the tongue.

tongues (divided) *noun* [1266 diamerizo] also implies distributed.

tongues (foreign) *noun* {3937 laaz} foreign languages.

tongues (other) *noun* [2084 heteroglossos] another language; only in 1 Corinthians 14:21.

tongues of fire *noun* [1100 glossa] [4442 pur] licking flames; **note:** in Acts 2:1–4, divided (or, distributed) tongues of fire sat on each of the apostles; they spoke in other tongues, and were heard in many dialects; **see** dialect.

tooth, tusk, crag, ivory *noun* {8127, 8128 shen} {plural 8143 shenhabbim} {3599 adous} as being sharp.

top, beginning, first(s), head *noun* {7218 rosh} {7221 rishah} {7225 reshith} {8462 rechillah} the head, in a variety of applications; the head of the body, of time, of the month, of archs.

Topheth *transliterated name* {8612 topheth} {8613 tophtheth} meaning uncertain; Theological Wordbook suggests a place of spitting; Strong suggests a place of cremation; Scofield suggests a place in Gay Hinnom/Valley of Burning where

humans were sacrificed; **read** Yesha Yah 30:33, Yirme Yah 7:31, 32, 19:6–14.

topple, descend, lower *verb* {3381 yarad} to go lower; to tip over.

topple, totter, waver *verb* {4131 mowt} {4571 maad} to waver; to fall over.

Toqahath *transliterated name* {8445 towqahath} Obedience.

torah *transliterated noun* {8451, 8452 torah} [3551 nomos] Elohim's holy statute; the first five scrolls of the Scripture.

torah (doctors of the) [3547 nomodidaskalos] doctrinators of the torah, including rabbis and rabbonis.

torah (set the) *verb* [3549 nomotheteo] to legislate the torah.

torah (setting the) *verb* [3548 nomothesia] legislating the torah.

torah (violating the) *noun* [3891 paranomeo] to be opposed to the torah.

torah setter *noun* [3550 nomothetees] one who legislates the torah.

torah violation, violation of the torah *noun* [458 anomia] [3892 paranomia] a disregarding of the torah.

torahically *adverb* [3545 nomimos] according to the torah.

torahist *noun* [3544 nomikos] an expert of the torah.

torrential *adjective* [5464 cagrid] rushingly.

tortoise, palanquin *noun* {6632 tsab} a wagon, as covered; a tortoise, as covered.

tossings *plural noun* [5076 nadud] failings.

totality *noun*, **totally, perfect** *adjective* [3642 kaliyl] all inclusive; naught to be added.

totter, wag, wander, waver, drift, shake, stagger *verb* [5128 nuwa] to waver.

totter, waver, topple *verb* [4131 mowt] {4571 maad} to waver; to fall over.

touch *verb* {3237 yamash} (4184 muwsh) to touch.

touch, plague, reach *verb* [5060 naga] to touch heavily; to strike.

tough, strong *adjective* [533 ammits] {554 amots} [2389 chazaq] [5794 az] [5808 izzuz] forceful; harsh; physically able.

toward, –ward, opposite *adjective* {4136 mowl} [481 antikru] [492 antiparerkomai] [495 antiperan] across from.

tower *noun* **Migdol** *transliterated name* {4024 migdol} {4026 migdal} tower; a place in Misrayim.

tower *noun* [5470 cohar] a dungeon surrounded by walls.

tower *noun* {6877 tseriach} a citadel.

tracks *noun* [2487 ichnos] a way or path beaten by the feet; metaphorically used of imitating the example of another.

trail *noun* [5410 nathiybah] as trodden.

train *noun* {7640 shebel} the train of a gown, as flowing after; **cp** drape.

trample *verb* {1915 hadak} to crush with the foot; **see** stool.

trample *verb* {6072 acac} {7429 ramac} {7512 rephac} [3961 pateo] to tread; to squeeze underfoot.

trample, balance *verb* [5537 cala] {5541 calah} as suspended; as weighed; as trampled.

trampled *adjective* {4001 mebuwcah} {4823 mirmac} {4833 mirpas} trodden; treaded upon.

trampling *noun* {8395 tebucah} a treading down.

tranquil *adjective* {7946 shalanan} serene.

transact, exact *verb* [4238 prasso] to extract dues; to execute; to perform repeatedly.

transcience *adjective* **transient** *adverb* [2465 cheled] the fleeting of life.

transcribe, antique, remove *verb* {6275 athaq} that which has aged; to take away; to take down, as in transcribing.

transcript *noun* {6572, 6573 parshegen} a copy.

transfigure *verb* [3345 metaschematizo] to alter the figure; **cp** metamorphose.

transgress *verb* [3845 parabaino] to overstep.

transgression *noun* [3847 parabasis] an overstepping of the basis.

transgressor *noun* [3848 parabatees] one who oversteps.

translate *verb* {8638 tirgam} [2058 hermenia] [2059 hermeenuo] [3177 methermenuo] the rendering of words from one language to another; **note:** languages are translated; dreams are interpreted; **cp** interpret.

translate thoroughly *verb* [1329 diermenueo] to translate exactly, in detail.

translator *noun* {3887 luwts} [1328 diermenutees] one who translates from one tongue to another; **cp** interpreter.

transparent *adjective* {3840 libnah}.

LEXICON

transpose *verb* {3346 metatithemi} to put in another place; to transpose.

transplant *noun* {8363 shethil} that which has removed and planted elsewhere.

transplant *verb* {8362 shathal} to remove and plant elsewhere.

trap, trip, crooked *adjective* {6121 aqob} {6128 aqalqal} {6129 aqallathon} a trap; one that trips; crooked, as full of traps.

trauma *transliterated noun* {5134 trauma} a wound.

traumatize *transliterated verb* {5135 traumatizo} to wound or injure.

travail *noun* {5604 odin} pain; a pang of birthing.

travail *noun* {8513 telaah} a distress.

travail *verb* {5605 odino} to experience the pains of birth.

tray *noun* {4289 machtah} a tray to remove live coals, or ashes.

tread, spy, step *verb* {7270 ragal} verb of foot; to measure out with the foot; **see** foot.

treason *noun* {4604 maal} a covert act.

treason *verb* {4603 maal} to act covertly.

treasure *noun* {2344 thesauros} something precious; a treasury, that which is laid up in a treasury.

treasure *noun* {5458 cegor} as withheld at the heart.

treasure *verb* {686 atsar} {2343 thesaurizo} to reserve; to store up.

treasure, hide *verb* {6845 tsaphan} to hide by covering over; to protect; to reserve.

treasure, treasury *noun* {214 owtsar} {plural 1595 genezim} {1596 genaz} {1597 ginzak} a gathering place of valuables.

treasure (hidden) *noun* {4301 matmon} {plural 4362 mikman} {plural 4710 mitspunim} {6840 tsaphin} {8226 saphan} a secreted valuable.

treasure (peculiar) *noun* {5459 cegullah} private treasure, as held close to the breast; private property.

treasured, impending, ready *adjective* {6259, 6264 athud} {6263 athid} prepared; treasured.

treasurer *noun* {plural 1411 gedabar} {1489 gizbar} {1490 gizbar} one that oversees a treasury.

tree *noun* {363 iylan} [1186 dendron].

tree, timber *noun* {6086 ets} {6097 etsah} a tree; timber; sticks of timber.

tremble *verb* {2729 charad} {2730 chared} {6426 palats} {7460 raad} to shudder with terror.

trembling *noun* {2731 charadah} {6427 pallatsuwth} {7461 raad} {8606 tiphletseth} a shudder; fear.

trench *noun* {2430 cheylah} {2434 chayits} a trench for protection.

trench, decision, decisive, incision, incisor, ore, sickle *adjective, noun* {2742 charuts} mentally, soulically, or physically, an incising.

trench, valiant *noun* {2426 chel} character of a person who protects; a trench for protection.

trespass, overpass, pass (over) (through), surpass *verb* {5674 abar} to cross over; this verb is unrelated to the mistranslation of passover.

tresses *noun* {2863 komao} [2864 kome] a long lock of hair; hair as hanging; **cp** hair.

triangle, tertiary, thrice, tierce *noun* {7991 shaloh} an officer of the third rank; three times; an interval of a third; a three sided music instrument.

tribulate *verb* {2346 thlibo} to press hard upon.

tribulate *verb* {6887 tsarar} to constrict.

tribulation *noun* {2347 thlipsis} a pressing together.

tribulation *noun* **tribulator** *noun* **constricted** *adjective* {6862 tsar} {6869 tsarah} a constriction; a time of constriction; a constricted place; one that constricts.

tribute *noun* {4061 middah} a tribute of money.

trickery *noun* {6122 oqbah} to trip or trap by trickery.

trifle, abase, abate, belittle, slight, swift *verb* {6819 tsaar} {6985 qat} {7034 qalah} {7043 qalal} [2274 heetaomai] to belittle in contempt; to make light of; to lessen.

trip, crooked, trap *adjective* {6121 aqob} {6128 aqalqal} {6129 aqallathon} a trap; one that trips; crooked, as full of traps.

trip, falter, stumble *verb* {3782 kashal} to totter; to waver.

trip the heel, heel, heelprint, heel trippers *noun* {6119 aqeb} [4418 pterna] the back of the foot; a print made by the heel; ones that trip the heel by trapping.

trip the heel, restrain the heel *verb* {6117 aqab} to seize by holding the heel.

troop against *verb* {1464 guwd} to attack with a troop.

troop *noun* {1409 gad} {1416 geduwd} a crowd, usually military.

trouble *verb* {5916 akar} to disturb.

trough *noun* {3342 yeqeb} a trough for treading wine.

trough, curl *noun* {7298 rahat} {plural 4857 mashabim} {8268 shoqeth} a drinking trough for animals; a ringlet of hair.

true (being) *noun* [226 aleethuo] to be true.

true *adjective* [227 alethes] accurate; genuine; honest.

true, truly, truth *noun* {571 emeth} [225 alethia] literally, of a truth.

truly *adverb* {551 omnam} {552 umnam} [230 alethos] **note:** the Hebrew are from the root of amen; **see** amen.

truly, truth *noun* {7187 qeshot} {7189 qoshet} from the root, to balance; equity.

trumpet, lily *noun* **Shoshanna** *transliterated name* {7799 shoshanna} [4677 sousanna] lily, as a flower, or as an ornament; trumpet, from its lily shaped bell.

trumpet, trump *noun* {2689 chatsotrah} [4536 salpinx] a music instrument.

trump, trumpet, trumpeting *verb* {2690 chatsar} [4537 salpizo] to blow on a trumpet.

trumpeter *participle* {2690 chatsar} [4538 salpistees] one who trumpets.

trust, trustless, trustworthy; see SUMMARY: TRUST.

truthful *noun* [228 alethinis] factual.

Tubal Qayin *transliterated name* {8423 tuwbalqayin} Offspring of Qayin.

tubes *plural noun* {6804 tsantarah} hollows.

tuft *noun* {5296 neoreth} that which is shaken out, as the tuft from the flax.

Tulon *transliterated name* {8436 tuwlon} Lofty.

tumult *noun* {8351 sheth} [2351 thorubos] uprising; riot.

tumulting *verb* [2350 thorubeo] to make a noise or uproar; to disturb.

turban *noun* {plural 4021 migbaahoth} {6797 tsaniph} a wraparound headdress.

turn *noun* {5438 cibbah} a providential turn of affairs.

turn, response, return *noun* {8666 teshubah} a recurrence; a reply, as returned.

turn, row *noun* {8447 tor} a succession of occasion; a row of.

turn (about) (around), go (about) (around), surround *verb* {5437 cabab} to border; to revolve; to surround.

turn (aside) (in), twist (off) *verb* {5493 sur} from the root, to turn off.

turn (away) (back) (from) (to) respond, restore, return *verb* {7725 shub} {8421 tub} from the root, to turn back; as to reply, to come back.

turtledove *noun* {8449 tor} a ringdove; a term of endearment.

tusk, crag, ivory, tooth *noun* {8127, 8128 shen} {plural 8143 shenhabim} [3599 adous] as being sharp.

tusks, teeth *plural noun* {6374 pipihah} {8143 shenhabim} teeth of a person, animal, or instrument.

tutor *noun* [2519 kathegetes] teacher; **cp** doctor.

tweezers *noun* {plural 4212 mezammeroth} {dual 4457 malqachim} literally, pluckers or tweezers used to trim the menorah.

twig *noun* {2156 zemor} [2595 karpfos] a small branch; figuratively, a smaller fault.

twig *noun* {5577 Cancin} {5589 ceappah} {5634 carappah} **cp** branch.

twig, cleft *noun* {5585 caiph} a fissure of rocks; a small branch.

Twin, twins *name, noun* {plural 8380 taomim} [1324 didumos] Twin; **see** Taom.

twin, twinned *verb* {8382 taam} to bear twins; to twin; to twine; to duplicate.

twinkle *verb* {7335 razam} to twinkle the eye, as in mockery; **cp** blink.

twirl, twist, spin *noun* {1524 giyl} {1525 giylah} a physical expression of joy.

twirl, twist, spin *verb, noun* {1523 giyl, guwl} {3769 karar} [4761 strebloo] to spin around, as in rejoicing; **cp** whirl.

twirl, whirl, writhe *verb* {1752, 1753 duwr} [2342 chiyl] {3769 karar} {6801 tsanaph} to gyrate; to move in a circle; to dance.

twist (off), turn (aside) (in) *verb* {5493 sur} from the root, to turn off.

twist *verb* {5791 avath} {6127 aqal} to wrest away from.

twist, bend, pervert *verb* {5753 avah} {5754 avah} to crook;

LEXICON

to overthrow.

twisted *adjective* {5494 cuwr} of a plant as being twisted.

twisted *adjective* {6129 aqallathon} {6618 pethaltol} contorted, tortuous.

type *noun* {5179 tupos} an example for imitation or warning.

tyranny *noun* {6531 perek} violence.

tyranny, tyrant *noun* {6184 arys} a despotic rule; a despotic ruler.

tyrant *noun* **tyrannical** *adjective* {6530 perits} violent; one that is violent.

tyrannize, bind *verb* {631 acar} {6014 amar} to bind with a bond; to bind a captive; to tyrannize.

U

U El *transliterated name* {177 uel} possibly, Whether of El.

Ukal *transliterated name* {401 ukal} Devoured.

ulcer *noun* {7822 shechin} an inflammation.

umbilical cord *noun* {8270 shor} the navel cord connecting unborn infant to the mother.

unaccusable *adjective* {410 anegkletos} without cause of accusation.

unaccused *adjective* {338 anaitios} not accused; without accusation.

unadulterated *adjective* {185 akeraios} without mixture; without dilution.

unanxious *adjective* {275 amerimnos} without anxiety.

unapprehensible *adjective* {423 anepileptos} unable to take.

unapproved *adjective* {96 adokimos} not approved.

unashamed *adjective* {422 anepaischuntos} not ashamed.

unavaricious *adjective* {866 aphilarguros} undesiring of greedy gain.

unbend *verb* {352 anakupto} to rise; figuratively, to be elated.

unbeneficial *noun, adjective* {512 anopheles} without benefit.

unblemished *adjective* {298 amometos} {299 amomos} without imperfection.

unceasing *adjective* {88 adialiptos} not ceasing.

unceasingly *adverb* {89 adialiptos} not ceasingly.

uncertain, obscure *adjective* {82 adelos} {83 adelotess} unclear.

uncertainly *adverb* {84 adelos} unclear.

uncircumcise *verb* {6188 arel} as having the foreskin of the penis; as not having been circumcised; **cp** circumcise; **cp** decircumcise.

uncircumcised *adjective* {6189 arel} as having the foreskin of the penis; as not having been circumcised; **cp** circumcise; **cp** decircumcise

uncircumcised, foreskin *noun* {6190 orlah} {203 akrobustia} the foreskin of the penis; the foreskin not removed; **cp** circumcise; **cp** decircumcise.

uncle, beloved, loves *noun* {1730 dod} from the root, to boil; literally, an extremely warm caring for; an uncle.

uncomprehending *adjective* {801 asunetos} not having a mental grasp; without understanding.

uncontrollable *adjective* {193 akrates} not controllable.

uncovenanted *adjective* {111 athemitos} against, outside, or without covenant; **see** covenant.

uncovenanted *adjective* {113 athemos} {802 asunthetos} against, outside, or without covenant; **see** covenant.

undeceitful *adjective* {97 adolos} not deceitful.

undergarment *noun* {6361 pattish} a thin garment.

undermine, dig *verb* {6979 qur} to trench; to estop.

undertake, take *verb* {6901 qabal} {6902 qeбал} {353 analambano} to acquire; to take up; **cp** receive.

undiluted *adjective* {194 akratos} literally, without pouring together.

undisciplined *adjective* {521 apaidutos} without discipline; stupidly conjectured.

uneucharistic *adjective* {884 acharistos} without charism; **see** charism; **cp** eucharist.

unexplorable *adjective* {419 anexerunetos} unable to explore completely.

unfathered *verb* {540 apator} the negative of fathered; that is, no record of having been fathered; **cp** ungenealogized.

unfortunate *adjective* {2489 cheleka} literally, wretched.

unfortunates *plural noun* {2489 chelekim}.

unfriendly *adjective* {865 aphilagathos} not friendly.

unfruitful *adjective* {175 akarpos} barren.

unfurl *verb* {380 anaptusso} to unroll; **cp** furl.

ungenealogized *adjective* {35 agenealogetos} unrecorded genealogy; without genealogy.

ungrieving *adjective* [253 alupoteros] without grief.

unhypocritical *adjective* [505 anupokritos] without hypocrisy; sincere.

unintelligent *adjective* [801 asunetos] without intelligence.

unite *verb* {3161 yachad} to become one.

unitedly, altogether, together *adverb* {3162 yachad} as one; **see** unite.

unjust *adjective* [94 adikos] not just; **see** injure; **see** injustice.

unjustly *adverb* [95 akidos] without justness.

unknowing *adjective* [50 agnoeo] not knowing.

unknowingness *noun* [51 agnoema] [52 agnoia] [56 agnosia] without knowledge.

unknown *adjective* [57 agnostos] not known.

unlearned *noun* [261 amathes] [2399 idiots] idiot.

unless, if not *participle* {3884 luvley} if not.

unlettered *adjective* [62 agrammatos] not grammatic; unable to scribe; illiterate.

unmarried *noun* [22 agamos] not married.

unmercied *adjective* [448 anileos] [462 anosios] without being mercied.

unmerciful *adjective* [415 anele emon] without compassion.

unmindful *noun* [453 anoetos] without mind.

unmindfulness *noun* [454 anoia] stupidity.

unmothered *adjective* [540 apator] the negative of mother; that is, no record of having been mothered; **cp** ungenealogized.

unpolluted *adjective* [283 amiantos] not polluted; **see** polluted.

unquestionable *adjective* [368 anantirrhotos] no room for rhetoric.

unquestioning *adverb* [369 anantirrhotos] without room for rhetoric.

unravel, release *verb* {8271 shere} to separate; to free.

unregrettable *adjective* [278 ametameletos] without regret.

unrepentant *adjective* [279 ametanoetos] without repentance.

unrestrained *adjective* [180 akatapaustos] [183 akatasketos] [192 akrasna] without restraint.

unripe *adjective* **Abib** *transliterated name* {3, 4 eb} {24 abib} an unripened or tender produce; a month of the Hebrew calendar; also a syllable in the name of the city, Tel Abib.

unripe figs *noun* {6291 pag}.

unsentenced *adjective* [178 akatakritos] not sentenced.

unshod *adjective* {3182 yacheph} without footwear.

unstable *adjective* [182 akatastatos] not constant; **see** instability.

unstumbling *verbal noun* [679 aptaistos] not stumbling; without sin.

unsubordinated, insubordinate *adjective* [506 anupotaktos] not subject to; refusing subordination.

unteased *adjective* [46 agnaphos] of cloth that has not been carded or combed.

untestable *adjective* [551 apirastos] unable to test.

untested *adjective* [552 apiros] inexperienced; ignorant.

until when *participle adverb* {4970 mathay} extent of time.

untorahed *adjective* [459 anomos] [460 anomos] without torah; **cp** entorahed; **see** torah.

untraceable *adjective* [421 anexichniastos] unable to track out.

untranslatable *adjective* [1421 dusermenutos] not translatable.

unutterable *adjective* [215 alaletos] unable to utter.

unveil *verb* [343 anakalupto] [601 apokalupto] to uncover.

unveil *verb* {8365 shatham} to lift the lid.

unveiled *adjective* [177 akatakaluptos] uncovered.

unwashen *adjective* [449 aniptos] not washed.

unwavering *adjective* [186 aklines] without wavering.

unwise *adjective* [781 asophos] not wise.

unwitnessed *adjective* [267 amatuross] without witness.

unworthily *adverb* [371 anaxios] undeservingly; **see** worthy.

unworthy *adjective* [370 anaxios] undeserving; **see** worthy.

up, upper, above *adverb* [507 ano] upward; the top.

uphold *verb* [472 antechomai] to hold on to.

uphold, callous, prevail, strengthen *verb* {553 amats} {555 omets} {2388 chazaq} {2393 chezqah} {5810 azaz} to enable physically; to become thickskinned.

uphold, prop, sustain *verb* {5564 camak} {8551 tamak} to prop up; with the hands, or with props.

uphold, support *verb* {5582 scaad} to support; usually, figuratively; **cp** prop.

upholding *participle* {5583 cead} aiding.

uplift, uprise, burden *noun* {4864 maseth} a raising; a

LEXICON

reproach, as a burden.

upper, uppermost, above *adjective* [509 anothēn] [510 anoterikos] [511 anoterōn] from above; the source of the rebirth; **read** Yahn 3:1–8.

upper millstone, chariot *noun* {4817 merkab} {4818 merkabah} {7393 rekeb} {7396 rikbah} {7398 rekub} a vehicle; a rider; **cp** millstones.

upper room *noun* {5944 aliyah} {5952 alliyth} [508 anogēon] a space above earth; an upper loft.

uppermost *adjective* **Elyon** *transliterated title* {5943 illay} {5945, 5946 elyon} [5310 hupsistos] an uppermost place or position; a title of Elohim.

upright *plural adjective* {3651 ken} literally, set upright.

uprise, burden, uplift *noun* {4864 maseth} a raising; a reproach, as a burden.

uproar, waste, roar *noun* {7588 shaon} a rumble; a destruction.

uproot *verb* {5255 nacach} {5256 necach} {5428 nathash} to pluck up; to tear away.

uproot, hamstring *verb* {6131, 6132 aqar} to pluck up the root; to cut the tendons.

uproot, root *verb* {8327 sharash} {8332 sheroshu} to plant a root; to pull out by the root.

uprooted *adjective* {4535 maccach} {6133 eqer} usually of persons who are forced to move.

upset *verb* [384 anaskuazo] to pack up; figuratively, to upset.

Urbane *transliterated name* [3773 ourbanos] Urbane; of the city.

urbanite (the) *noun* {377 ish} {7149 qirah} [2469 iskarotes] City Man.

urge *verb* {6484 patsar} to peck at.

urgent *verb* {5169 nachats} to press for immediate action.

Uri *transliterated name* {221 uri} Flame.

Uri El *transliterated name* {222 uriel} Flame of El.

Uri Yah *transliterated name* {223 uriyah} [3774 ourias] Flame of Yah.

urinate *verb* {8366 shathan} from the root, to make water.

urines *plural noun* {7890 shain} the fluids secreted from the body.

Us *transliterated name* {5780 uwts} Consultation.

use, used, useful, accustomed *verb* {5532 cakan} to be familiar by use; to be serviceable to.

useful *adjective* [2173 euchreestos] easy to make use of.

useless *adjective* [888 achrios] [890 achreestos] unprofitable.

useless *verb* [889 achreio] to render unserviceable.

usure, bite *verb* {5391 nashak} literally, as in usury, to take a bite.

usurpation *noun* [725 harpagmos] the act of seizing and holding in possession by force, or without right.

usury *noun* {5392 neshek} interest on a debt, usually excessive.

Uthay *transliterated name* {5793 uwthay} Reinforcing.

utter *verb* {4448 malal} {4449 melal} [2044 erugomai] [5350 phtheggomai] to express vocally; **cp** speak; **cp** word.

utterance *noun* {4008 mibta} {4405, 4406 millah} [669 apophtheggomai] a vocal expression; **see** utter.

Uzzēn Sheerah *transliterated name* {242 uzzensheerah} Harkened of Sheerah.

Uzzi El *transliterated name* {5816 uzziel} Strength of El.

Uzzi Eliy *transliterated name* {5817 ozziyeliy} Of Uzzi El.

Uzzi Yah *transliterated name* {5814 uzziya} {5818 uzziyah} [3604 ozias] Strength of Yah.

V

Vehēb *transliterated name* {2052 vaheb} of uncertain derivative; a place in Moab.

vail *noun* {6532 poreketh} the separatrix in the tabernacle.

vail, veil *noun* {3875 lowt} {4044 meginnah} {4533 masveh} {plural 4555 micpachahoth} {5497 cuth} {6777 tsammah} {6809 tsaiph} {7289 radid} {7479 raalah} [2571 kaluma] a covering; that which is fastened on.

vail, veil, cover *verb* {3874 luwt} {5844 atah} {6809 tsaiph} [2572 kalupto] [2619 katakaluptomai] to cover; to enrobe; to wrap; to withhold from view.

vain (become) *verb* {1891 habal} to empty; to void; the Hebrew verb is not translatable into one English verb.

vain, vanity, void, empty, req *adjective* {1892 hebel} {transliteration 7385 riq} {transliteration 7386 req} {7723 shav} [transliteration 4469 rhaka] emptiness, voidness; figuratively, stupid.

vainly *adverb* [1500 eikee] [2756 kenos] idly; without reason.

vainly, void, empty *adverb* {7387 reqam} emptily; without effect; **cp** req.

valiant, trench *noun* {2426 chel} character of a person who protects; a trench for protection.

valiant, valour, valuable, virtue *noun* {2428, 2429 chayil} usually of persons of character; of valuables.

valley *noun* {1237 biqah} {6010 emeq} a lowland or split area between two heights.

Valley, Gay *transliterated noun* {1516 gay} sometimes transliterated when used in compound names.

Valley of Burning/Gay Hinnom *name* {1516 gay} {2011 hinnom} [1067 geenna] used figuratively, as a name for the place (or state) of everlasting punishment; may be transliterated, Gay Hinnom.

Valley of Engravers *transliterated plural name* {1516 gay} {2798 charashim} Valley of Engravers.

Valley of Salt/Gay Melach *transliterated name* {1516 gay} {4417 melach} Valley of Salt.

Valley of Slaughter/Gay Haregah *transliterated name* {1516 gay} {2028 haregah} Valley of Slaughter.

Valley of Vision/Gay Hizzayon *transliterated name* {1516 gay} {2384 chizzayon} Valley of Vision.

valour, valuable, virtue valiant *noun* {2428, 2429 chayil} usually of persons of character; of valuables.

Van Yah *transliterated name* {2057 vanyah} Answer of Yah.

vanish *verb* {4414 malach} to rub away; **see** salt *verb*.

vanish, corrupt, destroy, destruct, lose, ruin *verb* {6 abad} {7 abad} {8 obed} {7843 shachath} [1311 diapthiro] [2704 kataphthiro] [5351 phthiro] to corrupt through decay.

vanish, dissolve *verb* {4743 maqaq} [1262 dialuo] to dissolve; to dwindle; to vanish.

vanity, void, empty, req, vain *adjective* {1892 hebel} {transliteration 7385 riq} {transliteration 7386 req} {7723 shav} [transliteration 4469 rhaka] emptiness, voidness; figuratively, stupid.

vanquish *verb* {2522 chalash} to cause to prostrate.

vanquished *noun* {2523 challash} one caused to prostrate.

vapour, hierarch *noun* {5387 nasi} [747 archeegos] a vapour, as a rising mist; a chief leader; as being first, foremost.

vassal *noun* {4522 mac} one that is under homage.

Vayezatha *transliterated name* {2055 vayezatha} of foreign origin; a son of Haman.

Vedan *transliterated name* {2051 vedan} the meaning uncertain; a place in Arabia.

veil, conceal *verb* {5956 alam} to conceal; to veil from sight.

veil, cover, languish, shroud *verb* {5848 ataph} {5968 alaph} to cover over; to languish.

venerable *adjective* [4575 sebastos] adorable in the sense of able to adore.

venerant *noun* [4586 semnos] worthy of adoration.

venerate *verb* [4573 sebazomai] [4576 sebomai] to adore.

veneration *noun* [4574 sebasma] [4587 semnotes] adoration.

vengeance *noun* [1557 ekdikesis] punishment inflicted in return for an injury, or an offense.

vengeance, avengement *noun* {5359 naqam} {5360 neqamah} revenge; **see** avenge.

venom *noun* [2447 ios] as emitted.

venom, bitter, gall *noun* {plural 4844 merarim} {4845 mererah} {4846 merorah} bile; venom; a bitter herb.

vermillion *noun* {8350 shashar} as a piercing red.

vertebrae, riddle *noun* {7001 qetar} a knot; as that which is to be unravelled.

very, exceeding, greatly, increasing, many, mighty, much *adjective* {7689, 7690 saggiy} superlatively mighty, or large.

vex *verb* {3707 kaac} [3791 ochleo] to harass; to irritate; to agitate; to trouble.

vexation *noun* {3708 kaac} an agitation; a harassment; an irritation.

vile *adjective* {5240 nemibzeh} evil.

vilification *noun* [2561 kakosis] a declared evil.

vilify, vilifying, shatter *verb* {7489 ra} {7490 rea} [2551 kakologeō] [2558 kakoucheō] [2559 kakoo] verb of evil; to make or declare evil; to vilify by shattering; **see** evil.

village *noun* [2968 kome] [2969 komopolis] a small assemblage of houses.

village, whelp *noun* {3715 kephiy} a young lion, as covered with a mane; a village, as covered by walls.

vine (bright) *noun* {8321 soreqah} [288 ampelos] literally, a burning bright; a vine, as producing grapes.

LEXICON

vinedresser *noun* {3755 korem} [289 ampelourgos] one who tends the vines.

vineyard *noun* {3754 kerem} [290 ampelon] a plantation of grapevines.

violate *verb* [3845 parabaino] to go contrary.

violate *verb* {2554 chamac} to ravish.

violating the torah *verb* [3891 paranomeo] to disregard the torah.

violation *noun* [3847 parabasis] nonobservance; transgression.

violation of the torah, torah violation *noun* [458 anomia] [3892 paranomia] a disregarding of the torah; **see** torah.

violator *noun* [3848 parabates] one who violates the torah.

violence *noun* {2555 chamac} {4637 maaratsah} ravishment.

virgin *noun* {1330 bethulah} {5959 almah} {5961 alamothe} [3933 parthenos] one who has had no sexual intercourse.

virginity *noun* {1331 bethulim} [3932 parthenia] the quality or state of a virgin.

virtue valiant, valour, valuable *noun* {2428, 2429 chayil} usually of persons of character; of valuables.

visible *adjective* [3707 horatos] able to be seen.

visage *noun* [3799 opsis] appearance.

visage, vision *noun* {4758 mareh} {4759 marah} a vision, or visage, especially one of beauty.

vision *noun* {2376 chezev} {2377 chazon} {2378, 2379 chazoth} {2380 chazuth} {2384 chizzayon} {4236 machazeh} [3701 optasia] [3705 horama] [3706 horasis] that which is seen beyond eyesight.

visit, muster, oversee *verb* {6485 paqad} to visit with friendly intent, to oversee; or to visit with hostile intent, to take care of; to muster for display.

visitation, episcopate *transliterated noun* [1984 episcopo] [1985 episcopos] one who scopes; an inspector; inspection.

visitation, muster, overseer, oversight *noun* {6486 pequddah} a visit with friendly intent, to oversee; or a visit with hostile intent, to take care of; a muster for display.

visitation/Peqod *noun, transliterated name* {6489 peqowd} refers to Babel as a place of Yah Veh's visitation.

voice *noun* {6963 qol} [7032 qal] [5456 phonee] sound.

voice *verb* [5455 phoneo] to voice out; to emit a sound.

voiceless *noun* [880 aphonos] without voice.

void *noun* {4003 mebuwqah} empty.

void *verb* [6331 pur] to cause to be empty.

void, empty, req, vain, vanity *adjective* {1892 hebel} [transliteration 7385 riq] [transliteration 7386 req] [7723 shav] [transliteration 4469 rhaka] emptiness, voidness; figuratively, stupid.

void, empty, vainly *adverb* {7387 reqam} emptily; without effect; **cp** req.

voluminous *noun* {6282 athar} increased in volume.

voluntary *noun* {4530 miccah} an offering, as flowing.

voluntary, voluntarily *noun, adverb* {5071 nedabah} a willing offer.

volunteer, voluntarily *verb* {5068 nadab} {5069 nedab} to offer willingly.

volunteers, voluntary *noun, adjective* {5081 nadyb} a willing offer; one who willingly offers.

voluptuous *adjective* {5719 adiyen} sensual gratification.

vomit *noun* {6892 qiy} that which is spewed.

vomit *verb* {6958 qow} [7006 qayah] to spew.

votive *noun* [334 anatheema] an offering of a vow; **cp** anathema.

vow *noun* {5088 neder} [2171 euehee] a binding word.

vow *verb* {5087 nadar} [2172 euehemia] to bind by word.

vulture *noun* {7201 raah} from its sharp sight.

vulva *noun* {5040 nabluth} the female pudenda.

W

wadi *noun* {5158 nachal} a watercourse which is dry, except in the rainy season.

wafers *plural noun* [3561 kavvanim] as prepared; wafers used in sacrifice.

wag over, wander, waver, sway *verb* {5110 nud} to waver.

wag, wander, waver, drift, shake, stagger, totter *verb* {5128 nuwa} to waver.

wagon *noun* {5699 agalah} that which has revolving wheels.

wait, await, expect, receive *verb* {2442 chakah} {3176 yachal} {6960 qavah} [324 anadekomai] [362 anameno] [553 apekdekomai] [4327 prosdekomai] [4328 prosdokao] [4329 prosdokia] to anticipate; to wait expectantly, patiently; **cp** take.

wake, waken, awake *verb* {5782 uwr} {6974 quts} to wake up.

waker *noun* {5894 iyr} one that is awake; one that wakens.

walk *noun* {4109 mahalak} literally, a walk; a passage.

walk, went, go *verb* {3212 yahlach} literally, to walk.

walk gently *verb* {1718 dadah}.

wall *noun* {1444 geder} [1447 gader] [1448 gederah] [7023 qir] an encircling enclosure.

wall *noun* {2346 chomah} a divider, or separator.

wall *noun* {2918 tiyrah} a protective wall.

wall *noun* {3796 kothel} [3797 kethal] a barrier that holds in confinement.

wall *noun* {7791 shur} as surrounding.

wall *verb* [1443 gadar] [5823 azaq] to install a wall; to wall in.

wallet *noun* [4082 pera] a leather pouch for carrying provisions.

wander (around) *verb* [4022 perierkomai] to go about.

wander, chase, flap, flee *verb* {5074 nadad} [5323 natsa] to flap up and down; to shoo away.

wander, seduce *verb* [4105 planao] to go or be led astray.

wander, stagger, stray *verb* {8582 taah} to reel; to stray.

wander, waver, drift, shake, stagger, totter, wag *verb* {5128 nuwa} to waver.

wander, waver, sway, wag over *verb* {5110 nud} to waver.

wandering *noun* **Nod** *transliterated noun* {5112, 5113 nod} exile.

wandering, seduction *noun* [4106 planee] a straying from.

war *noun* {7128, 7129 qerab} an encounter.

war, warfare, warrior *noun* {4421 milchamah} a fight; a fighter; **see** fight.

wardrobe *noun* [4458 meltachah] room where clothing is spread.

warp *noun* {8307 sheriruth} bent out of shape.

warp *noun* {8359 shethiy} a fixture; the warp in weaving.

warriors/Gammadim *plural noun* {1575 gammadim} as grasping instruments.

waste *noun* {7591 sheiyah} {7612 sheth} a devastation; a ruin.

waste *verb* {1110 balaq} {7582 shaah} to devastate; to ruin.

waste, roar, uproar *noun* {7588 shaon} a rumble; a destruction.

watch *verb* **watcher** *participle* **overlay** *verb* {6822, 6823 tsaphah} to observe; to await; to sheet over.

watch *verb* {8245 shaqad} [69 agrupmeo] to be alert; unsleeping.

watching *noun* {6836 tsephiah} [70 agrupnia] unsleeping.

watchtower *noun* {6844 tsaphith} a sentry post.

water *noun* {dual 4325 mayim} [5204 hudor] a common liquid.

waterless *adjective* [504 anudros] without water; dry.

wave *noun* {8573 tenuphah} the celebration of undulating a loaf or a breast unto Yah Veh.

wave, rub, shake *verb* {5130 nuph} to rub a bed with aromatics; to shake a hand; to wave an offering.

waver *verb* [1365 distazo] to stand in two ways, implying uncertainty of which way to take.

waver, drift, shake, stagger, totter, wag, wander *verb* {5128 nuwa} to waver.

waver, sway, wag over, wander *verb* {5110 nud} to waver.

waver, topple, totter *verb* {4131 mowt} {4571 maad} to waver; to fall over.

waver, wiggle *verb* {6328 puq} emotionally, to waver; physically, to wiggle.

way, journey *noun* {1870 derek} a road, as trodden; a walkway; figuratively, the journey of life.

way, journey *noun* {4550 macca} [3597 hodiporia] [3598 hodos] a trip; **see** sojourn.

way, path *noun* {734, 735 orach} also includes the manner of a person.

wean, deal, ripen *verb* {1580 gamal} transact.

weaned, antiquated *adjective* {6267 attiq} removed; that which has endured.

weapon *noun* [2021 hotsen] from the root sharp, and/or strong.

weary *adjective* [3287 yaeph] fatigued.

weary *verb* {3286 yaaph} [3288 yaeph] [3811 laah] to fatigue.

web *noun* {4545 macceketh} as expanded.

week, weeks *noun* {7620 shabua} literally, a seven; symbolic of an oath; **see** oath.

weigh *verb* {6424 palac} a literal weighing; a weighing (considering) of thought.

LEXICON

weigh, balance *verb* {8254 shakal} to weigh by balancing a set weight against that being weighed; **see** shekel.

weight *noun* {4946 mishqol} {4948 mishqal} a measure of heaviness.

weight *noun* {6425 pelec} a balance of a scale.

weighty *adjective* {5192 netel} a burden.

well *noun* {875 ber} {plural 877 bor} {953 bor} that which is dug; **cp** pit.

well–approve *verb* {2106 eudokeo} to well–please; to think well of.

well–approved *noun* {2107 eudokia} to be well–thought of.

well–please *verb* {3190 yatab} {3191 yetab} {2100 euaresto} to cause to well–please.

well–pleasing *adjective* {2101 euaustos} fully agreeable.

well–receiving *adjective* {2126 eulabes} taking hold well.

well–souled *adjective* {2174 eupsuchoe} of beneficent soul.

well–working *adverb* {2109 euergeteo} beneficently; doing well.

well–working *noun* {2108 uergesia} beneficence.

went, go, walk *verb* {3212 yahlach} literally, to walk.

whenever, if ever *adverb* {1437 ean} is a compound of {1487 ei} and {302 an} and may express the condition, if; or the opportunity, when. **cp if** {1487}.

wet, butler, drink (give), drown, moisten *verb* {8248 shaqah} {8257 shaga} to butler, as a bartender; to drink to quench thirst; to drink unto drowning; to cause to be wet.

What trouble! *interjection* {4972 mattelaah} An Hebraic idiom.

wheat *noun* {4621 sitos} a cereal grain.

wheel, whirler *noun* {1534, 1535 galgal} {1536 gilgal} something that whirls.

whelp, village *noun* {3715 kephiyr} a young lion, as covered with a mane; a village, as covered by walls.

whip *noun* {7752 shot} literally, or figuratively, a lash.

whir *noun* {4500 rhoizedon} a sound of whirling.

whirl *noun* {6802 tsenephah} a rapid revolving.

whirl, writhe, twirl *verb* {1752, 1753 duwr} {2342 chiy} {3769 karar} {6801 tsanaph} to gyrate; to move in a circle; to dance.

whirl away, shudder *verb* {8175 saar} to storm; to shudder, as in fright; to be stormed away.

whirler *noun* {1754 dur} one who whirls.

whirler, wheel *noun* {1534, 1535 galgal} {1536 gilgal} that which whirls.

whirling *noun* {4070 medar} a spinning around, as in wandering.

whirling, horror *noun* {8178 saar} a whirling of a storm; a shuddering of horror.

whirlwind *noun* {2978 lailaps} a whirling wind.

whirring, cymbal, harpoon, locust *noun* {6767 tselatsal} a clattering, as of a cymbal; a whirring, as of wings; a rattling, as of a harpoon.

whisperer *noun* {5372 nirgan} {plural 5588 psithuristes} one who speaks without their vocal cords; figuratively, a slanderer.

whisperings *noun* {8103 shimtsah} {plural 5587 psithurismos} speaking without vocal cords; figuratively, slanders.

white *adjective* {3836 laban}.

white linen, white marble *noun* {8336 shesh} white, as in bleached.

whiten, brick (make) *verb* {3835 laban} to make a brick; to cause to be white; this is a derivative of two words; **see** brick; **see** white.

whoever, O that *participle pronoun* {4310 miy} An Hebraic idiom.

whoop *verb* {6873 tsarach} to express a shrill sound.

whore *noun* {4204 porne} one who commits sexual acts for hire; in Scripture, also includes deviation from Elohim's misvoth.

whore, whoring *verb* {2181 zanah} {1608 ekpornuo} {4203 pornuo} to commit idolatry; to commit forbidden sexual acts for hire.

whore (hallowed) *noun* {6948 qedeshah} a female whore for religious service.

whoredoms *noun plural* {2183 zanunim} {2184 zenuwth} {8457 taznuth} {4202 pornia} physical or spiritual infidelity.

whoremonger (hallowed) *noun* {6945 qadesh} a male whore for religious service.

whoremonger *noun* {4205 pornos} a male whore.

wicked (deal) (declare) (do) *verb* {5765 avel} {7561 rasha} to do or declare evil.

wicked *adjective* {5766 avel} {7563 rasha} evil.

wicked *noun* {4849 mirshaath} {5767 avval} evil; an evil doer.

wickedly *adverb* {5766 avel} evilly.

wickedness *noun* {2248 chabulah} {5766 aval} {5932 alvah} {7562 resha} {7564 rishah} evil.

widow *noun* {490 almanah} {5503 chera} an unmarried woman whose man deceased.

widowhood *noun* {489 almon} {491 almanuth} the position of being a widow.

width *noun* {6613 pethay} the wideness.

wiggle, waver *verb* {6328 puq} emotionally, to waver; physically, to wiggle.

wild *noun* {66 agrios} as pertaining to the undeveloped, the natural, as the field.

wild olive *noun* {65 agrielaiois} the natural growing olive.

wild runner *noun* {6501 pere} untamed runner.

wilderness *noun* {4057 midbar} {2047 eremia} {2048 eremos} an uninhabited and undeveloped area; **cp** desolation.

will *noun* {17 abowy} {35 abiyonah} {6640 tsebuw} {2307 thelema} {2308 thesis} the volition; the attribute of the spirit that decides.

will, willing *verb* {14 abah} {2974 yaal} {5452 cebar} {6634 tseba} {1014 boulomai} {2309 thelo} to volitionate; the exercise to volition in deciding or determining; **cp** will, would, auxiliary verbs.

will, would, auxiliary verbs Whenever will and/or would appear as auxiliary verbs in the *exeGesés ready research BIBLE*, they are changed to shall or should. They are omitted in the *exeGesés companion BIBLE*. **cp** will, willing; may, might; shall, should.

willceremony *verb* {1479 ethelothreskeia} a mental, or intellectual type ceremony.

wind *noun* {7307 ruach} {417 anemos} air in motion; ruach is the Hebrew word for both spirit and wind; great discernment must be exercised in some instances; therefore there are instances where the *exeGesés companion BIBLE* renders ruach as Spirit/wind; anemos is the Hellene word for wind; this distinction is important doctrinally; for most versions have mistranslated Spirit as wind in Yahn 3:8; **see** spirit.

window *noun* {2474 challown} as perforated.

window *noun* {4237 mechezah} as a look through.

window, noon *dual noun* {6672 tsohar} double light, as a window; double light, as noon.

windtossed *noun* {416 anemizo} tossed by the wind.

wine *noun* {3196 yayin} effervescence, as in fermentation.

wing *noun* {4419 pterugion} extremity; the top of the corner.

wing, blossom *noun* {6731 tsits} a blossom, as blooming brightly; a wing, as gleaming.

wing, border *noun* {3671 kanaph} {4020 migbalah} literally, extreme edge.

winnow *verb* {2219 zarah} to toss, as seed.

winnowing basket *noun* {4214 mizreh} a basket used to scatter chaff.

winnowing fork *noun* {7371 rachath} a fork used to scatter chaff.

winter (in) *verb* {3914 parakimazo} to stay with, or at a place over the winter season.

wipe, wipe out, erase *verb* {4229 machah} {1813 exalipho} to rub; to rub out; to erase sins, tears, names.

wisdom *noun* {2451, 2452 chokmah} {2454 chokmoth} {4678 sophia} the ability to decide well.

wise *adjective* {2450 chakam} {4680 sophos} deciding well.

wisen, enwisen *verb* {2449 chakam} {4679 sophizo} to cause to be wise.

withdraw *noun* {7873 siyg} removal into privacy.

withdraw *verb* {5756 uz} {402 anakoreo} to retire; to save by flight.

wither, disgrace, folly *verb* {5034 nabel} from the root, to wilt; to fall away; to fail.

wither, dry *noun* {3002 yabesh} {3004 yabbashah} {3006, 3007 yabbesheth} {7060 qamal} lands and waters dry; plants, persons wither.

wither, dry *verb* {3001 yabesh} {5405 nashath} {6798 tsanam} {7060 qamal} lands and waters dry; plants, persons wither.

within *adverb* {6441 penimah} literally, faceward; inside; **see** inward; **cp** without.

within, among, inward, middle, midst *noun* {7130 qereb} {8432 tavek} the nearest part; the center.

without, out, outside, outskirts, outward, outway *noun, adverb* {2351 chuts} a separated area.

LEXICON

withstand, stand, stay *verb* {5975 amad} {5977 omed} {436 anthistemi} [478 antikathistemi] to stand steady; to stand against.

witness *noun* {5707 ed} {7717 sahed} {8584 teuwdah} [3141 marturia] [3144 martus] [3142 marturion] evidence.

witness *noun* {5712 edah} {5713 edah} a people as a witness.

witness *noun* {5715 eduth} the witness; especially the ark of the witness.

witness, witnessing *verb* {5749 ud} [1263 diamarturomi] [1957 epimartureo] [3140 martureo] [3143 marturomai] to give evidence; the Hellene is from the root, martyr; one who through martyrdom became a witness of Yah Shua.

witness against *verb* [2649 katamartureo].

woe *interjection* [3759 ouai] exclamation of grief

wolf *noun* [3074 lukos] a wild dog.

woman, women *noun* {802 ishshah} {plural 802 nashim} {plural 5389 nashin} {7695 shegal} {7705 shiddah} [1134 gunaikios] [1135 guneel] an adult female; when married, the female becomes a man's woman.

womb (to have in) *verb* [1064 gaster] to be bearing in womb; pregnant.

womb, belly, matrix *noun* {990 beten} {1512 gachon} {3770 keres} {4579 meah} {6896 qabab} {6897 qobah} {6898 qubbah} {7356 racham} {7358 rechem} [2836 koilia] the interior; a cavity as hollow; the abdominal cavity; sometimes refers to the womb.

women (little) *noun* [1133 gunaikarion] used in a belittling sense.

woodwinds *noun* {5748 uggab} a breath controlled music instrument.

woof, mongrel *noun* [6154 erab] the transverse threads; a crossed race of persons.

word *noun* {1697 dabar} {1699 dibber} [1700 dibrah] [1701 dibrah] {plural 1703 dabroth} [3056 logos] an utterance or scribing of a thought; a promise, or guarantee (to give one's word); a manifestation; **note:** the noun, logos, is the outward expression of the verb, lego (Adonay Yah Shua Messiah is the physical manifestation of Elohim's word); **read** Yahn 1:1–14.

word *verb* {1696 dabar} [3004 lego] in Hebrew and Hellene, word implies much more than uttering, or scribing one's thought; word also includes that of promising, or guaranteeing, or having been given one's word; when Yah Veh states, I have worded, or when Yah Shua states, Amen! Amen! I word unto you, they are saying, I have given my word, and that's final.

words (kind) *plural noun* [5542 chrestologia].

work *noun* {4639 maasch} [4399 melakah] an employment; a product; a transaction; **cp** creation.

work *verb* [2038 ergazomai] to do; to labor.

work *verb* {6213 asah} to be engaged in, or with; to do or make; **cp** create; **note:** {6213 asah} is the verb of work *noun* {4639 maasch}.

work, working, effort *noun* [2039 ergasia] [2041 ergon] occupation; toil.

worker *noun* [2040 ergates] a toiler.

world *noun* {8398 tabel} [3625 oikoumene] the inhabited earth; the universe; **cp** cosmos.

wormwood, absinthe *transliterated noun* {3939 laanah} [894 apsinthos] a bitter plant.

worn (out), rub, sicken, stroke *verb* {2470 chalah} to wear out; to stroke the face as in appeasement.

worship *verb* [4352 proskuneo] to do obsequence, as by bowing and/or kissing.

worshipper *noun* [4353 proskunetes] one who worships.

worthily *adverb* [516 axios] deserving.

worthless, idol *noun* {434 elul} {457 elil} of no worth.

worthy (deem) *verb* [515 axioo] deserving.

worthy *adjective* [514 axios] deserving.

wound *noun* {6482 petsa} an open split.

wound *verb* {6481 patsa} to split open.

wound, disperse, express *verb* {6567 parash} to separate; to specify; to wound.

wraps *noun* {singular 5466 cadiyn} {plural 5156 nechirim} wraparounds.

wrath, nostril, snout *noun* {639 aph} {plural 5156 nechirim} [3709 orgee] the snorter, as in expressing wrath; **see** snorting.

wrathful *adjective* [3711 orgilos] intense anger.

wreath *noun* {3880 livyah} {plural 3914 loyoth} [4725 stemma] [4735 stephanos] as entwined; a wreath of victory; **cp** crown; **cp** diadem.

wreath, wreathen, foliage, rope *noun* {5688 abothah} as entwined; a wreath of victory; **cp** crown; **cp** diadem.

wreath *verb* [4737 stephanoo] to wreath in victory; **cp** crown; **cp** diadem.

wrestle *verb* {6617 pathal} to struggle; to entwine.

wrestlings *plural noun* {5319 naphtuim} strugglings.

wring hands, extend hands *participle* {3029 yeda} {3034 yadah} {8426 todah} to extend hands in praise; to wring hands in sorrow.

wring, suck *verb* {4680 matsah} to wring, or squeeze out; to suck out.

writhe, twirl, whirl *verb* {1752, 1753 duwr} [2342 chiyl] [3769 karar] {6801 tsanaph} to gyrate; to move in a circle; to dance.

writhing *noun* {5792 avvathah} twisting, as in pain.

wroth *adjective* [3710 orgizo] full of wrath.

Y

Yaalah *transliterated name* {3279 yaalah} Roe.

Yaanan *transliterated name* {3285 yaanan} Responsive.

Yaaqan *transliterated name* {3292 yaaqan} Tortuous.

Yaaqov, Yaaqovos *transliterated name* {3290 yaaqob} [2384 iakob] [2385 iakobos] Heel Seizer.

Yaaqovah *transliterated name* {3291 yaaqobah} Heel Seizer.

Yaare Oregim *plural transliterated name* {3296 yaarey oregim} Forests of Weavers.

Yaresh Yah *transliterated name* {3298 yareshyah} of uncertain derivative and Yah.

Yaasi El *transliterated name* {3300 yaasiel} Worked of El.

Yaasu *transliterated name* {3299 yaasu} They Work.

Yaazan Yah *transliterated name* {2970 yaazanyah} Harkened of Yah.

Yaazi El *transliterated name* {3268 yaziel} Obstinate of El.

Yaazi Yah *transliterated name* {3269 yaaziyah} Obstinate of Yah.

Yabal *transliterated name* {2989 yabal} Stream.

Yabboq *transliterated name* {2999 yabboq} Pouring Forth.

Yabes *transliterated name* {3258 yabets} Sorrowful.

Yabesh *transliterated name* {3003 yabesh} Dry.

Yabin *transliterated name* {2985 yabyn} Discerning.

Yabne El *transliterated name* {2995 yabneel} Built of El.

Yabneh *transliterated name* {2996 yabneh} Built.

Yachath *transliterated name* {3189 yachath} Unity.

Yachazi El *transliterated name* {3166 yachaziel} Seer of El.

Yachazi Yah *transliterated name* {3167 yachaziyah} Seer of Yah.

Yachdi El *transliterated name* {3164 yachdiel} United of El.

Yachdi Yah *transliterated name* {3165 yechdiyah} United of Yah.

Yachdo *transliterated name* {3163 yachdo} United.

Yachle El *transliterated name* {3177 yachleel} Awaiting El.

Yachle Eliy *transliterated name* {3178 yachleeliy} Of Yachle El.

Yachmay *transliterated name* {3181 yachmay} Hot.

Yachse El *transliterated name* {3183 yachtseel} Halved of El.

Yachse Eliy *transliterated name* {3184 yachtseeliy} Of Yachse El.

Yachsi El *transliterated name* {3185 yachtsiyel} Halved of El.

Yachzerah *transliterated name* {3170 yachzerah} Protection.

Yada *transliterated name* {3047 yada} Knowing.

Yaddua *transliterated name* {3037 yadduwa} Knowing.

Yadon *transliterated name* {3036 yadown} Thankful.

Yael *transliterated name* {3278 yael} Wild Goats.

Yah; see SUMMARY: YAH, YAH SHUA:

Yah Ab *transliterated name* {3097 yowab} Yah Fathered.

Yah Ach *transliterated name* {3098 yowach} Yah Brothered.

Yah Achaz *transliterated name* {3059 yehowachaz} {3099 yowachaz} Yah Possessed.

Yah Addah *transliterated name* {3085 yehowaddah} Yah Adorns.

Yah Addan *transliterated name* {3086 yehaddan} Yah Pleases.

Yah Arib *transliterated name* {3080 yehowariyb} Yah Contends.

Yah Ash *transliterated name* {3060 yehowash} Yah Fired.

Yah Ash *transliterated name* {3101 yowash} Yah Fired.

Yah Ash *transliterated name* {3135 yowash} Yah Hurries.

Yah Dai *transliterated name* {3056 yehday} Yudaic.

Yah El *transliterated name* {3100 yowel} [2493 ioeel] Yah El.

Yah Ezer *transliterated name* {3134 yowezer} Yah Helps.

Yah Ha *transliterated name* {3109 yowcha} Revived of Yah.

LEXICON

Yah Hanan, Yahn *transliterated name* {3076 yehowchanan} {3110 yowchanan} [contraction 2491 ioannees] Yah Grants Charism.
Yah Hanna, Yah Hannas *transliterated name* [2489 ioanna] [2490 ioannas] Yah Grants Charism.
Yah Hu *transliterated name* {3058 yewhu} Yah is He.
Yah Hudah, Yah Hudy, Yah Hudyim; see SUMMARY: YAH HUDAH.
Yahudiah *transliterated name* {3057 yehudiyah} a female Yah Hudy.
Yahudith *transliterated name* {3067 yehudith} a female Yah Hudy.
Yah Chebed *transliterated name* {3115 yowchebed} Honoured of Yah.
Yah Nadab *transliterated name* {3082 yehownadab} {3122 yownadab} Yah Volunteers.
Yah Nathan *transliterated name* {3083 yehownathan} {3129 yownathan} Yah Given.
Yah Qim *transliterated name* {3137 yowqiyim} {885 acheim} Yah Rises.
Yah Ram *transliterated name* {3088 yehowram} {3141 yowram} [2496 ioram] Yah Raises.
Yah Sadaq *transliterated name* {3087 yehowtsadaq} {3136 yowtsadaq} Yah Justifies.
Yah Shabath *transliterated name* {3090 yehowshabath} Yah Oaths; may be a form of Yah Sheba.
Yah Shah *transliterated name* {3144 yowshah} Equated of Yah.
Yah Shama *transliterated name* {1953 howshama} Yah Hears.
Yah Shaphat *transliterated name* {3092 yehowshaphat} {3146 yowshaphat} [2498 iosaphat] Yah Judges.
Yah Shavah *transliterated name* {3145 yowshavyah} Equated of Yah.
Yah Sheba *transliterated name* {3089 yehowsheba} Yah Oaths.
Yah Shua *transliterated name* {3091 yahshua} {3442, 3443 yahshua} [2424 ieous] Yah Saves; the name of Mosheh's successor, the name of our Messiah, and the name of other persons; **see** SUMMARY: YAH, YAH SHUA, YAH VEH.
Yah Tham *transliterated name* {3147 yowtham} [2488 ioatham] Yah Integrious.
Yah Veh Shammah *transliterated name* {3074 yehovahshammah} Yah Veh's presence; symbolic name of Yeru Shalem.
Yah Yada *transliterated name* {3077 yehowyada} {3111 yowyada} Known of Yah.
Yah Yachin *transliterated name* {3078 yehowyachiyn} {3112 yowyachiyn} Yah Establishes.
Yah Yaqim *transliterated name* {3079 yehowyaqiyim} {3113 yowyaqiyim} Yah Raises.
Yah Yarib *transliterated name* {3114 yowyariyb} Yah Contends.
Yah Zabad *transliterated name* {3075 yehowzabad} {3107 yowzabad} Yah Endowed.
Yah Zachar *transliterated name* {3108 yahzachar} Yah Remembers.
Yah Veh; see SUMMARY: YAH, YAH SHUA, YAH VEH:
Yahn, Yah Hanan *transliterated name* {3076 yehowchanan} {3110 yowchanan} [contraction 2491 ioannees] Yah Grants Charism.
Yahsah *transliterated name* {3096 yahtsah} possibly, Threshing (floor); a place east of the Yarden.
Yair *transliterated name* {2971 yaiyr} [2383 iairos] Enlightener.
Yairiy *transliterated name* {2972 yairiy} Of Yair.
Yachan *transliterated name* {3275 yachan} Troublesome.
Yachin *transliterated name* {3199 yachiyn} Establishes.
Yachiniy *transliterated name* {3200 yachiyniy} Of Yachin.
Yalam *transliterated name* {3281 yalam} Concealed; Veiled.
Yalon *transliterated name* {3210 yalown} Stay Overnight.
Yamin *transliterated name* {3226 yamiyn} Right.
Yaminiy *transliterated name* {3228 yemiyniy} Of Yamin.
Yamlech *transliterated name* {3230 yamlech} Reign.
Yanah *transliterated name* {3238 yanah} [2388 ianna] Oppressor.
Yanim *transliterated name* {3241 yaniym} Slumber.
Yanochah *transliterated name* {3239 yanowchah} Allowed to Stay.
Yaphia *transliterated name* {3309 yaphiya} Shining.
Yaphlet *transliterated name* {3310 yaphlet} He Escapes; He Slips Away.
Yaphletiy *transliterated name* {3311 yaphletiy} Of Yaphlet.
Yapho *transliterated name* {3305 yapho} [2445 ioppee]

Beautiful.

Yaqeh *transliterated name* {3348 yaqeh} Obedient.
Yaqim *transliterated name* {3356 yaqiyim} He Raises.
Yarah *transliterated name* {3294 yarah} Forest; Honeycomb.
Yarcha *transliterated name* {3398 yarcha} the meaning uncertain.
Yarden *transliterated name* {3383 yarden} [2446 iordanees] Descender.
Yareb *transliterated name* {3377 yareb} He Contends.
Yarib *transliterated name* {3402 yariyb} He Contends.
Yarmuth *transliterated name* {3412 yarmuwth} Lofty.
Yaroach *transliterated name* {3386 yarowach} Born At the New Moon.
Yarob Am *transliterated name* {3379 yarobam} Contender of People.
Yashen *transliterated name* {3464 yashen} Asleep.
Yashob Am *transliterated name* {3434 yashobam} People Return.
Yashub *transliterated name* {3437 yashuw} He Returns.
Yashubi Lechem *transliterated name* {3433 yashubylechem} Returner of Bread.
Yashubiy *transliterated name* {3432 yashubiy} Of Yashub.
Yathni El *transliterated name* {3496 yathniel} Saved of El.
Yattir *transliterated name* {3492 yattiy} Remaining.
Yaur *transliterated name* {3265 yawur} Forest; Honeycomb.
Yavan *transliterated name* {3120 yavan} Effervescing.
Yavaniy *transliterated name* {3125 yevaniy} Of Yavan.
Yazer *transliterated name* {3270 yazer} Helpful.
Ye Halal El *transliterated name* {3094 yehallalel} Halal to El.
yea [3483 nai] [3513 ne] a particle of affirmation.
year, yearling *noun* {8140 shenah} {8141 shaneh} [1763 eniautos] [2094 etos] [4070 perusi] the time span of the revolution of the earth around the sun; that which is a year in age.
Yearim *plural transliterated name* {3297 yeariyim} Forests.
yearn *verb* {3642 kamahh} {3648 kamar} {3700 kacaph} to pine after.
yearn, prowl *verb* {8264 shaqaq} to seek for greedily; to prowl as an animal.
yearning *verb* [2442 himiromai] desiring; longing for.
yeast *noun* {7603 seor} that which ferments.
Yeatheray *transliterated name* {2979 yeatheray} Stepping.
Yeberech Yah *transliterated name* {3000 yeberechyah} Blest of Yah.
Yebus *transliterated name* {2982 yebuwe} Trampled.
Yebusiy *transliterated name* {2983 yebuwciy} Of Yebus.
Yechezq El *transliterated name* {3168 yechezqel} Strengthened of El.
Yechi El *transliterated name* {3171 yechiel} Enlivened of El.
Yechi Eliy *transliterated name* {3172 yechiyeliy} Of Yechi El.
Yechi Yah *transliterated name* {3174 yechiyah} Enlivened of Yah.
Yechizqi Yah *transliterated name* {2396, 3169 yechiziqiyah} [1478 ezekias] Strengthened of Yah.
Yechubbah *transliterated name* {3160 yechubbah} Hidden.
Yeda Yah *transliterated name* {3042 yedayah} Extended Hands of Yah.
Yeda Yah *transliterated name* {3048 yedayah} Known of Yah.
Yedi *transliterated name* {3260 yediy} Congregate; Betroth.
Yedia El *transliterated name* {3043 yediyael} Known of El.
Yedid Yah *transliterated name* {3041 yedideyah} Beloved of Yah.
Yedidah *transliterated name* {3040 yedidah} Beloved.
Yeduthun *transliterated name* {3038 yeduthun} Extended Hands.
Yegar Sahadutha *transliterated name* {3026 yegarsahaduwtha} Heap of the Witness.
Yehuchal *transliterated name* {3081 yehuwchal} Able.
Yei El *transliterated name* {3273 yeiyel} Snatched Away of El.
Yeish *transliterated name* {3274 yeiysh} Hurried.
Yechol Yah *transliterated name* {3203 yecholyah} Yah Enables.
Yechon Yah *transliterated name* {3204 yechonyah} [2423 iechonias] Established of Yah.
Yemimah *transliterated name* {3224 yemiyamah} Warm.
Yemu El *transliterated name* {3223 yemuel} Day of El.
Yepheth *transliterated name* {3315 yepheth} Delude; Entice.
Yephunneh *transliterated name* {3312 yephunneh} He Faces.
Yeqabse El *transliterated name* {3343 yeqabteel} Gathered of El.

LEXICON

Yeqam Am *transliterated name* {3360 yeqamam} The People Rise.

Yeqam Yah *transliterated name* {3359 yeqamyah} Raised of Yah.

Yequthi El *transliterated name* {3354 yequthiel} Obedient of El.

Yerach *transliterated name* {3392 yerach} Moon.

Yerachme El *transliterated name* {3396 yerachmeel} Mercy of El.

Yerachme Eliy *transliterated name* {3397 yerachmeeliy} Of Yerachme El.

Yered *transliterated name* {3382 yered} [2391 iared] Toppler.

Yeremay *transliterated name* {3413 yeremay} Lofted.

Yeremoth, Yerimoth *plural transliterated name* {3406 yeriymowth, yereymowth} Elevations.

Yeri El *transliterated name* {3400 yeriel} Formed of El.

Yeri Yah *transliterated name* {3404 yeriyah} Formed of Yah.

Yeribay *transliterated name* {3403 yeriybay} Contentious.

Yericho *transliterated name* {3405 yericho} [2410 hieriko] Fragrant.

Yerioth *plural transliterated name* {3408 yeriyowth} Curtains.

Yerocham *transliterated name* {3395 yerocham} Merciful.

Yeru El *transliterated name* {3385 yeruel} Formed of El.

Yeru Shalem *transliterated name* {3389 yerushalaim} {3390 yerushalem} [2414 hierosoluma] [2419 hierousaleem] Founded Shalem.

Yeru Shalemiy *transliterated name* [2415 hierosolumites] Of Yeru Shalem.

Yerub Baal *transliterated name* {3378 yerubbaal} Contender of Baal.

Yerub Besheth *transliterated name* {3380 yerubbesheth} Contender of Shame.

Yerushah *transliterated name* {3388 yerushah} Possessed.

Yesar Elah *transliterated name* {3480 yesarelah} Straight Towards El.

Yeser *transliterated name* {3337 yetser} Form; Conception.

Yeseriy *transliterated name* {3340 yitsriy} Of Yeser.

Yesha Yah *transliterated name* {3470 yeshayah} [2268 hesaias] Saved of Yah.

Yeshanah *transliterated name* {3466 yeshanah} Old.

Yesheb Ab *transliterated name* {3428 yeshebab} Seat of His Father.

Yesher *transliterated name* {3475 yesher} Straight, as in right.

Yeshishay *transliterated name* {3454 yeshiyshay} Aged.

Yeshocha Yah *transliterated name* {3439 yeshochayah} Hungered of Yah.

Yeshurun *transliterated name* {3484 yeshuruwn} Straight, as in upright.

Yesima El *transliterated name* {3450 yesimael} Placed of El.

yesterday *adjective* [5504 chthes] the previous day.

Yetheriy *transliterated name* {3505 yithriy} Of Yether.

Yetheth *transliterated name* {3509 yetheth} of uncertain derivative.

Yetur *transliterated name* {3195 yetur} [2484 ituraea] Encircled.

Yeu El *transliterated name* {3262 yeuel} Snatched Away of El.

Yeus *transliterated name* {3263 yeuwts} Consultant.

Yeush *transliterated name* {3266 yeuwsh} Hurried.

Yezan Yah *transliterated name* {3153 yezanyah} Harkened of Yah.

Yezav El *transliterated name* {3149 yezavel} Sprinkled of El.

Yezav Yah *transliterated name* {3150 yezziyah} Sprinkled of Yah.

Yibchar *transliterated name* {2984 yibchar} Choice.

Yible Am *transliterated name* {2991 yibleam} Swallowing People.

Yibne Yah *transliterated name* {2997 yibneyah} Built of Yah.

Yibni Yah *transliterated name* {2998 yibniyah} Building of Yah.

Yibsam *transliterated name* {3005 yibsam} Spice.

Yidalah *transliterated name* {3030 yidalah} of uncertain derivative.

Yidbash *transliterated name* {3031 yidbash} Honeyed.

Yiddo *transliterated name* {3035 yiddow} Praised.

Yidlaph *transliterated name* {3044 yidlaph} Tearful.

Yigal *transliterated name* {3008 yigal} Redeemer.

Yigdal Yah *transliterated name* {3012 yigdalyah} Greatened of Yah.

Yimlah *transliterated name* {3229 yimlah} Full.

Yimna *transliterated name* {3234 yimna} Withhold; Hinder.

Yimnah *transliterated name* {3232 yimnah} Prosperity.

Yimrah *transliterated name* {3236 yimrah} Exchange.

Yiphde Yah *transliterated name* {3301 yiphdeyah} Redeemed of Yah.

Yiphtach *transliterated name* {3316 yiphtach} [2422 iephthae] Opener.

Yiphtach El *transliterated name* {3317 yiphtachel} Opened of El.

Yiri Yah *transliterated name* {3376 yiriyah} Awed of Yah.

Yirme Yah *transliterated name* {3414 yirmeyah} [2408 hieremias] Raised of Yah.

Yiron *transliterated name* {3375 yiron} Awesomeness.

Yirpe El *transliterated name* {3416 yerpeel} Healed of El.

Yischaq *transliterated name* {3327 yitschaq} {3446 yischaq} [2464 isaak] Laughter; Ridicule.

Yischar *transliterated name* {3328 yitschar} He Shines.

Yishar *transliterated name* {3324 yitshar} Oil (anointing).

Yishariy *transliterated name* {3325 yitshariy} Of Yishar.

Yishay *transliterated name* {3448 yishay} [2421 iessai] Existent.

Yishbach *transliterated name* {3431 yishbach} He Lauds.

Yishbaq *transliterated name* {3435 yishbaq} He Leaves.

Yishbo Be Nob *transliterated name* {3430 yishbowbenob} He Settles in Nob.

Yishi *transliterated name* {3469 yishiy} Saving.

Yishma *transliterated name* {3457 yishma} Desolate.

Yishma El *transliterated name* {3458 yishmael} Harkened of El.

Yishma Eliy *transliterated name* {3459 yishmaeliy} Of Yishma El.

Yishma Yah *transliterated name* {3460 yishmayah} Harkened of Yah.

Yishmeray *transliterated name* {3461 yishmeray} Guarded.

Yishpah *transliterated name* {3472 yishpah} He Exposes.

Yishpan *transliterated name* {3473 yishpan} He Hides.

Yishshi Yah *transliterated name* {3449 yishshiyah} Exacted of Yah.

Yishvah *transliterated name* {3438 yishvah} He Equalizes.

Yishvi *transliterated name* {3440 yishviy} Equalized.

Yishviy *transliterated name* {3441 yishviy} Of Yishvi.

Yiskah *transliterated name* {3252 yickah} Observant.

Yismach Yah *transliterated name* {3253 yicmacyah} Upheld of Yah.

Yisra El *transliterated name* {3478, 3479 yisrael} [2474 israel] Ruled of El.

Yisra Eliy *transliterated name* {3481 yisreeliy} [2475 israelitees] Of Yisra El.

Yisra Eliyth *transliterated name* {3482 yisreeliyth} a female Yisra Eliy.

Yisri *transliterated name* {3339 yitsriy} Formative.

Yissachar *transliterated name* {3485 yissachar} [2466 isakar] Exalted Hireling.

Yithlah *transliterated name* {3494 yithlah} It Hangs.

Yithmah *transliterated name* {3495 yithmah} Orphaned.

Yithnan *transliterated name* {3497 yithnan} Monster.

Yithra *transliterated name* {3501yithra} Remainder.

Yithran *transliterated name* {3506 yithran} Remaining.

Yithre Am *transliterated name* {3507 yithream} Remainder of People.

Yithro *transliterated name* {3503 yithrow} His Remainder.

Yizliah *transliterated name* {3152 yizliyah} Drawn.

Yizrach *transliterated name* {3155 yizrach} Risen.

Yizrach Yah *transliterated name* {3156 yizrachyah} Risen of Yah.

Yizre El *transliterated name* {3157 yizreel} Seeded of El.

Yizre Eliy *transliterated name* {3158 yizreeliy} Of Yizre El.

Yizre Eliyth *transliterated name* {3159 yizreeliyth} a female of Yizre El.

Yobab *transliterated name* {3103 yowbab} Howler.

Yoed *transliterated name* {3133 yowed} Congregate; Betroth.

Yoelah *transliterated name* {3132 yowelah} Furthermore.

Yogbehah *transliterated name* {3011 yogbehah} Height.

Yogli *transliterated name* {3020 yogliy} Exiled.

yoke *noun* {5923 ol} [2218 zugos] that which joins; that which connects; figuratively, of bondage.

yoke *verb* {7573 ratham} to yoke a yoke pole.

yokepole, pole *noun* {4132 mowt} the slip pole of a yoke.

Yom Kippurim *transliterated plural noun* {3117 yom} {3725 kippurim} day of atonements; **see** kippurim/atonements.

yom, day *transliterated noun* {3117, 3118 yom} [2250

LEXICON

heemera] including, but not limited to dawn to down, or dawn to dawn; 24 hours, or a nonspecific period such as the Day of Yah Veh; **see** Yom Kippurim.

Yonah *transliterated name* {3124 yonah} [2495 ionas] Dove.

Yoqde Am *transliterated name* {3347 yoqdeam} Burning of the People.

Yoqme Am *transliterated name* {3361 yoqmeam} The People Raise.

Yoqne Am *transliterated name* {3362 yoqneam} The People Lament.

Yoqshan *transliterated name* {3370 yoqshan} Ensnare.

Yoqtan *transliterated name* {3355 yoqtan} He Makes Little.

Yoqthe El *transliterated name* {3371 yoqtheel} Obedient of El.

Yorah *transliterated name* {3139 yowrah} Pouring.

Yoray *transliterated name* {3140 yowray} Pouring (rain).

Yorqe Am *transliterated name* {3421 yorqeam} People Pour Out.

Yoseph *transliterated name* {3084 yehowceph} {3130 yowceph} [2501 ioseph] Add; the name of several persons, including the name of the man of Miryam, the mother of Yah Shua.

Yoses *transliterated name* [2499, 2500 iosees] Add.

Yoshbe Qashah *transliterated name* {3436 yoshbeqashah} Hard Seat.

Yosheb Bash Shabbath *transliterated name* {3429 yoshebbashshebeth} Sitting in the Seat.

Yoshi Yah *transliterated name* {2977 yoshiyah} [2502 iosias] Founded of Yah.

Yoshib Yah *transliterated name* {3143 yoshibyah} Settled of Yah.

Yosiph Yah *transliterated name* {3131 yowciphyah} Yah Adds.

Yotbah *transliterated name* {3192 yotbah} Well-pleasing.

Yotbathah *transliterated name* {3193 yotbathah} Well-pleasing.

young *adjective* [3555 nossia] not born long.

younger, fewer, lesser, little, pinky *adjective* {6810 tsaor} {6995 qoten} {6996 qatan} less in age, number, size; little finger.

youngling *noun* {1469 gozal} [3502 neossos] [3556 nossion] the young of any species.

youngness *adjective* {6812 tseirah} smallness of age.

youth *noun* {970 bachur} {979 bechuroth} {979 bechurim} {plural 5271 neurah} {plural 5934 alum} [3494 neanias] [3495 neaniskos] [3503 neotees] a young person.

youthful *adjective* [3512 neoterikos] acting, being, or feeling young.

Yubal *transliterated name* {3106 yuwbal} Stream.

Yuchal *transliterated name* {3116 yuwchal} Able.

Yushab Hese *transliterated name* {3142 yuwshabcheched} Mercy Returns.

Yuttah *transliterated name* {3194 yuttah} Extended.

Z

Zabdi El *transliterated name* {2068 zabdiel} Endowment of El.

Zabdi *transliterated name* {2067 zabdi} [2199 zebedaiois] Endowment.

Zakkay *transliterated name* {2079 zabbay} {2140 zakkay} [2195 zakchaios] Pure.

Zakkur *transliterated name* {2139 zakuwr} Memorialize.

Zamzomiym *plural transliterated name* {2157 zamzomim} Intriguing; Of Pelesheth.

Zanoach *transliterated name* {2182 zanowach} Abandoned.

zeal *noun* [2205 zelos] used favorably, ardor; unfavorably, jealousy.

zealot *transliterated noun, transliterated title* [2207 zelotes] one burning with zeal; a title of Shimon.

zealous *adjective* [2206 zeloo] to have warmth of feeling for or against.

zealous, jealous *adjective* **envy, suspect** *verb* {7065 qana} {7067 qanna} {7072 qannow} to be zealous, as jealous, or envious.

Zebach *transliterated name* {2078 zebach} Sacrifice.

Zebidah *transliterated name* {2080 zebiydah} Endowed.

Zebulun *transliterated name* {2074 zebulun} [2194 zaboulon] Residence.

Zechar Yah *transliterated name* {2148 zecharyah} [2197 zakarias] Memorial of Yah.

Zecher *transliterated name* {2144 zecher} Memorial.

Zemirah *transliterated name* {2160 zemiyrah} Psalm.

Zerach *transliterated name* {2226 zerach} [2196 zara] Rising,

Dawn.

Zerach Yah *transliterated name* {2228 zerachyah} Rising of Yah.

Zerachiy *transliterated name* {250 ezrachiy} {2227 zarchiy} Of Zerach.

Zerub Babel *transliterated name* {2216, 2217 zerubbabel} [2216 zorobabel] Of Babel.

Zeus *transliterated name* [2203 zeus] deity of the Hellenes.

Zichri *transliterated name* {2147 zichriy} Memorable.

Ziph *transliterated name* {2128 ziyph} Flowing.

Ziphah *transliterated name* {2129 ziyphah} Flowing.

Ziphiy *transliterated name* {2130 ziyphiy} Of Ziph.

Zocheleth *transliterated name* {2120 zocheleth} Creeper.

Zocheth *transliterated name* {2105 zowcheth} of uncertain derivative.

Zuziym *plural transliterated name* {2104 zuwziym} Prominent; Of Pelesheth.

NOTES: